Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

- ☐ Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/ Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/ Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/ Seule édition disponible
- ☒ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/ Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

☐ Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires:

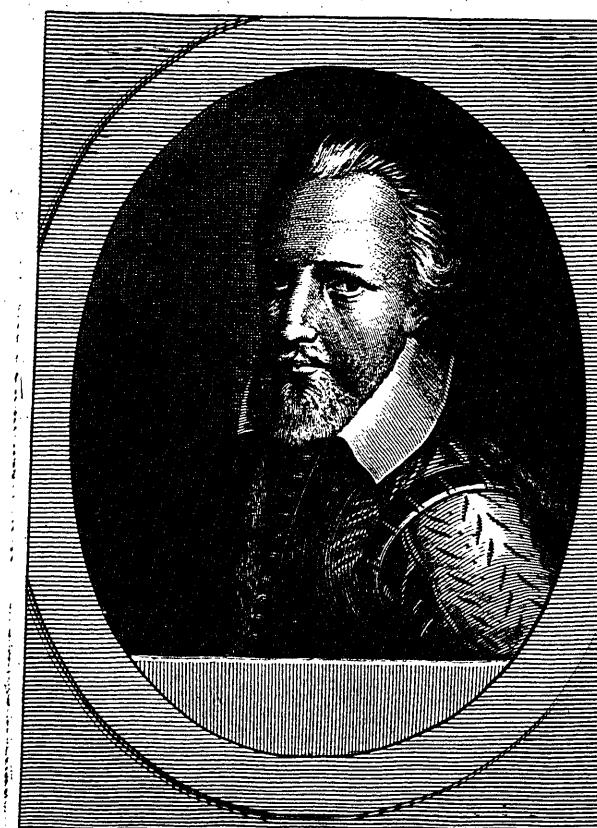
Irregular pagination: 1-120, 113-114,115-116, 117-118, 119-120, 121-122,123-162, 163-176, 177-178, 179-264, 301-484, 465-524, 501-502, 503-638, 339-340, 341-342, 643-805, 807-808,809-854, 855-856, 857-858, 865-866, 867-896, 897-903, 899-900, 901-902, 898-904, 905-928, 1-28, 33-34, 35-56, 12p.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
											✓

George Clifford Earle of Cumberland.

Sir Walter Rawleigh. Kt.



Sir Richard Grenvill Kt.

Sir John Hawkins Kt.

M. Vd. Gucht Sculp.

Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca:

OR, A COMPLEAT

COLLECTION

OF

Voyages and Travels:

Conſiſting of above

Four Hundred of the moſt Authentick Writers;

BEGINNING

With *Hackluit*, *Purchaſs*, &c. in *Engliſh*; *Ramuſio* in *Italian*; *Thevenot*, &c. in *French*; *De Bry*, and *Grynæi Novus Orbis* in *Latin*; the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company in *Dutch*:

And Continued, with

Others of Note, that have Publiſh'd HISTORIES, VOYAGES, TRAVELS, or DISCOVERIES, in the *Engliſh*, *Latin*, *French*, *Italian*, *Spaniſh*, *Portugueſe*, *German*, or *Dutch* Tongues;

RELATING

To any Part of ASIA, AFRICA, AMERICA, EUROPE, or the *Iſlands* thereof, to this preſent Time.

WITH THE

HEADS of ſeveral of our moſt Conſiderable *Sea-Commanders*; and a great Number of Excellent MAPS of all Parts of the WORLD, and CUTS of moſt Curious Things in all the VOYAGES.

ALSO,

An APPENDIX, of the Remarkable ACCIDENTS at Sea; and Several of our Conſiderable ENGAGEMENTS:

THE

CHARTERS, ACTS of PARLIAMENT, *&c.* about the *Eaſt-India* Trade; and PAPERS relating to the Union of the Two Companies.

Throughout the Whole

All Original PAPERS are Printed at Large; as the *Pope's Bull*, to Diſpoſe of the *Weſt-Indies* to the King of *Spain*; Letters Patents for Eſtabliſhing Companies of Merchants; as the *Ruſſia*, *Eaſt-India* Companies, *&c.* Letters from one Great Prince or State to another; ſhewing their Titles, Style, *&c.*

To which is Prefixed, A

HISTORY of the Peopling of the ſeveral Parts of the World, and particularly of *America*; An Account of the Ancient SHIPPING, and its ſucceſſive Improvements; together with the Invention and Uſe of the *Magnet*, and its Variation, *&c.*

By *JOHN HARRIS*, A.M. Fellow of the *Royal Society*.

VOLUME II.

LONDON:

Printed for *Thomas Bennet*, at the *Half-Moon*, in St. *Paul's* Church-yard; *John Nicholſon*, at the *King's-Arms*, in *Little-Britain*; and *Daniel Midwinter*, at the *Roſe* and *Crown*, in St. *Paul's* Church-yard. MDCCV.

THE CONTENTS OF THE Second Volume of *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca.*

BOOK I.
Voyages, Travels, &c. through *Poland, Muscovy, Tartary*, &c.

CHAP. I, II, III, IV.
THE Ambassadors from the Duke of Holstein's *Travels into* Muscovy, Pages 1, 9, 17, 39

CHAP. V, VI.
The Ambassadors from the Duke of Holstein's *Travels into* Persia, P. 53, 79

CHAP. VII.
The Travels of the Duke of Holstein's *Ambassadors into* Persia, Tartary *and* Muscovy, p. 100

BOOK II.

CHAP. I, II, III.
John Albert de Mandelsloe's *Voyages and Travels into the* East-Indies, *&c.* p. 115, 129, 153

CHAP. IV.
The Earl of Carlisle's *Embassie from King* Charles II. *to the Great Duke of* Muscovy, *and to the Kings of* Sweden *and* Denmark, *Anno* 1663 *and* 1664, p. 177
A Relation of the First Embassie into Muscovy, Ibid.

CHAP. V.
A Relation of the Second Embassie into Sweden, p. 205

CHAP. VI.
An Account of a Journey out of Poland *into* Muscovy; *with a Relation of the Expeditions of the* Muscovites *against the* Crim Tartars; *the Tumults and Revolutions which were contrived and managed chiefly by the Princess* Sophia, *Sister to his present Czarish Majesty* Peter Alexiowitz: *Some Observations on a Journey by Land from* Muscovy *into* China; *made by Mr.* Spatarus; *and upon the present State of* Muscovy *by the Sieur* Newstad. *Hereunto is annexed, a Letter from a certain Gentleman of* Germany; *written from* Musco, *concerning the Siege of* Asoph, *and* Kasikermeen, *and the other Warlike Exploits of the* Muscovites *in that War; with some Political Remarks upon the most remarkable Passages that have happen'd of late in the* Muscovite *Empire. Translated from the* Low Dutch, p. 213

CHAP. VII.
A Journal of an Embassie from their Majesties Iwan, *and* Peter Alexiowitz, *Czars of* Muscovy, *&c. over Land into* China, *through the Provinces of* Ustingha, Siberia, Dauria, *and the Great* Tartary *to* Peeking, *the Metropolis of* China, *by* Everard Isbrand, *their Ambassador, in the Years* 1693, 1694, *and* 1695. *Collected by* Adam Brand, *Secretary to the said Embassie, and translated from the* High Dutch *Original, printed at* Hamburgh, 1698, p. 229

CHAP. VII.
Of the Ancient and Modern Religion of the Muscovites, p. 238
Of the First Conversion of the Muscovites *to the Christian Faith,* Ibid.

CHAP. VIII.
Travels into divers Parts of Asia *and* Europe, *undertaken by the* French *King's Command, to discover a new Way by Land into* China, *by Father* Averil, p. 244
Father Averil's *Travels into* America, Armenia Ibid.

CHAP. IX.
Father Averil's *Travels into some Parts of* Tartary, p. 247

CHAP. X.
An Account of several Roads into China, p. 253

CHAP. XI.
Father Averil's *Travels into* Muscovy, p. 258

CHAP. XII.
Father Averil's *Travels into* Moldavia, p. 262

BOOK II.
Travels through *Asia, Africa*, and all *India*, &c.

CHAP. I.
The Travels of Mr. Johannes Baptista Tavernier, *thro'* Turkey *into* Persia, *and the* East-Indies, *&c.* p. 301
Of his First Voyage from Constantinople *to* Ispahan, *the chief City of* Persia, *thro' the Northern Provinces of* Turkey, Ibid.

CHAP. II.
Of the Road from Smyrna *to* Ispahan, *thro'* Natolia, p. 306

CHAP. III.
Mr. Tavernier's *Second Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan, *thro' the Southern Provinces of* Turkey, *and thro' the Desarts*, p. 308

CHAP. IV.
Mr. Tavernier's *Third Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan, *thro'* Mesopotamia, *and* Assyria, p. 310

CHAP. V.
Mr. Tavernier's *Fourth Voyage into* Asia, *viz. from* Paris *to* Ormus, p. 311

CHAP. VI.
Mr. Tavernier's *Fifth Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan, p. 315

CHAP. VII.
Mr. Tavernier's *Sixth and Last Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan; *with a Description of certain other less remarkable Roads thither,* Ibid.

CHAP. VIII.
Of several other Roads in Persia, *and the* Indies, *necessary to be known by Merchants and Traders,* p. 317
Sir John Chardin's *Travels into* Persia, Ibid.

CHAP. IX.
Persia *described,* p. 327

CHAP. X.
Of the Religion of the Persians *and* Armenians, p. 329

CHAP. XI.
Of the Kings of Persia; *their Power and Government,* p. 333

CHAP. XII.
Of the Justice and Policy of the Persians; *wherein their Money, Weights and Measures are considered,* p. 339

CHAP. XIII.
Of the Manners, Customs and Habits of the Persians, p. 340

CHAP. XIV.
Of the Diseases in Persia, *with their Cures; as also of their Death and Burial,* p. 343

CHAP. XV.
Of the Roads from Ispahan *into the* Indies, p. 344

The CONTENTS.

Mr. Tavernier's *Travels into* India; *containing an Account of the Roads from* Candabar *and* Surat *to* Agra, *and from* Agra *to* Dehly *and* Gehenabat, *where the Great* Mogul *then resided: As also how to travel to the Court of the King of* Golconda, *and to the King of* Vasapour, *and many other Places in the* Indies, p. 349

CHAP. I.

The Road from Surat *to* Agra, Ibid.

CHAP. II.

The Road from Candabar *to* Agra, p. 354

CHAP. III.

The Road from Agra *to* Patna *and* Daca, *Cities in the Province of* Bengal, p. 357

CHAP. IV.

Of the several Roads from Surat *to* Golconda, *and so to* Maslipatan, Gandicot, *and* Golconda, p. 359

CHAP. V.

Of the Empire and Kings of Indostan, *called the Great* Mogul's, *with their Court and Wars,* p. 364

CHAP. VI.

Of the Commodities, which are brought as well out of the Dominions of the Great Mogul, *as out of the Kingdoms of* Golconda, Visapour, *and other Parts of* India, p. 373

CHAP. VII.

Of the several Religions practised in the East-Indies, *and Things relating to them,* p. 376

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Fruits, Beasts, Birds, and other Things remarkable in Mogulistan, p. 383

CHAP. IX.

Of several small Kingdoms in the Indies, *which do not depend on the* Mogul, p. 385

The Travels of Monsieur Thevenot *into the* Levant, *faithfully abridg'd, with what is further taken Notice of by* Du Mont, *or* Le Brun, p. 394

CHAP. I.

Of the Way to Constantinople, *and the Description of the City,* Ibid.

CHAP. II.

Of the Shape, Strength, Cloathing, Customs and Manners of the Turks, p. 404

CHAP. III.

Of the Learning and Religion of the Turks, p. 405

CHAP. IV.

Of the Government of the Turks, p. 409

CHAP. V.

Of the Grand Seignior's Forces by Land and Sea, p. 411

CHAP. VI.

Of the Christians *and* Jews *that are subject to the Grand Seignior,* p. 412

CHAP. VII.

Of the Author's Voyage from Constantinople *to* Alexandria, *and Grand* Cairo *in* Ægypt, p. 314

CHAP. VIII.

The Author's Travels into other Parts of Ægypt, *and what he observed most remarkable,* p. 425

CHAP. IX.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels from* Cairo *into the Deserts of* Arabia, *and to the* Red-Sea, p. 432

CHAP. X.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels to* Jerusalem, *and several other Parts of* Judæa, *from* Cairo *in* Ægypt, p. 435

CHAP. XI.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels from* Alexandria *in* Ægypt *to* Leghorn, *and so Home,* p. 447

An Historical Relation of the Island of Ceilon, *in the* East-Indies, *by* R. Knox, *a Captain near Twenty Years; improved with all necessary Additions. Taken out of the History of Capt.* John Ribeyro, *a* Portuguese, *who lately writ of the said Island,* p. 450

CHAP. I.

A general Description of the Island of Ceilon, *with the Cities and Towns of greatest Note in it,* p. 453

CHAP. II.

Of their Corn, Fruits and Plants, p. 455

CHAP. III.

Of their Roots, Plants, Herbs and Flowers, p. 457

CHAP. IV.

Of their tame and wild Beasts and Insects, p. 458

CHAP. V.

Of their Birds, Fish, Serpents and Commodities, p. 459

CHAP. VI.

Of the King's Person, Power and Government, p. 461

CHAP. VII.

Of the King's Revenues, Treasures, Officers, Governours of Provinces, and Strength in War, p. 465

CHAP. VIII.

A Relation of a Rebellion against their King, p. 467

CHAP. IX.

Of the Inhabitants; their different Ranks and Qualities, p. 468

CHAP. X.

Of their Religion, Gods, Temples, Priests, Worship, Festivals, Doctrines and Practices, p. 471

CHAP. XI.

Of their Houses, Diet, Housewifery, Salutation and Apparel, p. 475

CHAP. XII.

Of their Lodging, Bedding, Whoredom, Marriages and Children, p. 477

CHAP. XIII.

Of their Employments and Recreations, p. 478

CHAP. XIV.

Of their Laws and Languages, p. 580

CHAP. XV.

Of their Learning, Astronomy and Magick, p. 482

CHAP. XVI.

Of their Sickness, Death and Burial, p. 483

An Account of the Kingdom of Siam. *Extracted out of the Voyages of Six Jesuits sent into the* Indies *by the* French *King*, 1685. *And the Relation of Monsieur* de la Loubere, *the* French *King's Envoy to* Siam, 1687, 1688, p. (465)

The Memoirs and Observations, Topographical, Natural, Civil and Ecclesiastical, made by Lewis Le Comte, *Jesuit and Confessor to the Dutchess of* Burgundy, *in his Journey thro' the Empire of* China; *and published in several Letters to Persons of the best Quality in* France; *Abridged: Together with what is further observable in Father* Gabriel Magellan's *History of* China, p. (486)

BOOK III.

Travels, &c. thro' all Parts of *Europe.*

DR. Edward Brown's *Travels into divers Parts of* Europe, *viz.* Hungaria, Bulgaria, Macedonia, Thessaly, Austria, Styria, Carinthia, Carniola, *and* Friuli: *Through a great Part of* Germany, *and the* Low-Countries; *through* Marca, Trevisana *and* Lombardy; *on both Sides the* Po; *with Observations on the Mines, Baths and Mineral-Waters in all those Parts,* &c. p. 501

A general Description of Hungary, Ibid.

A Journey from Vienna *in* Austria, *to* Larissa *in* Thessaly, *by* Dr. Brown, p. 504

A Description of Larissa *in* Thessaly, *by the Same,* p. 508

Some Occurrences and Observations in this Journey, by the Same, p. 511

A Journey from Gomorrah, *to the Mine-Towns in* Hungary, *and from thence to* Vienna, *by the Same,* p. 513

Travels from Norwich *to* Cologne, *by* Dr. Brown, p. 522

From Cologne *to* Vienna, *by the Same,* p. 526

From Vienna *in* Austria, *to* Hamburgh, p. 534

From Cologne *in* Germany, *to* London, p. 538

From Venice *to* Genoa, *by the Same,* p. 541

Ob-

The CONTENTS.

Observations Topographical, Moral, and Philosophical, made in a Journey through part of the Low-Countries, Germany, Italy, *and* France, *by Mr.* Ray, p. 550

A Relation of a Voyage made through a great Part of Spain, *by* Fr. Willoughby, *Esq;* p. 592

Mr. Lassel's *Voyage into* Italy, p. 599

— His Journey through Italy, p. 613

A new Voyage to Italy, *with a Description of its chief Towns, Churches, Tombs, Libraries, Palaces, Statues and Antiquities. By* Max. Misson, *Gent.* p. 639

— His Voyage to Italy, Part II. *with Instructions to those that intend to travel that Country,* p. 670

Dr. Northleigh's *Observations in divers Parts of* Europe, p. 703

CHAP. I.

A Description of the United-Privinces, Ibid.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Spanish Netherlands, p. 713

CHAP. III.

A Description of France, p. 722

CHAP. IV.

A Description of the Dukedom of Savoy, *and Principality of* Piedmont, p. 730

Letters of the Lady D—'s Travels into Spain, *giving an Account of the Devotions, Nunneries, Humour, Customs, Laws, Militia, Trade, Diet and Recreations of the* Spaniards, p. 733

Several Years Travels through Portugal, Spain, Italy, Germany, Prussia, Sweden, Denmark *and* United-Provinces, *by an* English *Gentleman,* p. 763

— His Voyage to Genoa, p. 769

Mr. Sandy's *Description of the* Holy Land, p. 783

Mr. Maundrel's *Journey from* Aleppo *to* Jerusalem, *being a Supplement to Mr.* Sandy's, p. 788

BOOK IV.
Travels, &c. through *America.*

CHAP. I.

SIR John Narborough's *Voyage to the Streights of* Magellan, &c. p. 801

CHAP. II.

The History of Bucaniers *of* America, *from their first Origine down to this Time,* p. 816

CHAP. III.

The Second Part of the Bucaniers *of* America, p. 821

CHAP. IV.

The Third Part of the History of the Bucaniers *of* America, p. 828

CHAP. V.

The Fourth Part of the History of the Bucaniers *of* America, *containing the Exploits of Capt.* Bartholomew Sharp, *and others, in the South Seas,* p. 834

CHAP. VI.

A Journal of a Voyage into the South Sea by the Bucaniers of America, *from the Year* 1684, *to* 1689, &c. *by Sieur* Raveneau de Lussan; *and of Sieur* de Montaubon, *on the Coast of* Guinea, *in the Year,* 1695, p. 845

CHAP. IV.

An Account of Capt. William Dampier's *Voyage round the World,* &c. p. 865

CHAP. V.

The Author's Voyage to the Isle of John Fernando, *in the South Sea. Their Arrival at the Isles of Cape* Verd. *A Description of these Islands, of* Sherborough *River, on the Coast of* Guinea, *and of the Isle of* John Fernando; *of the* Pacific *Sea; the* Andes *of* Peru *and* Chili; *of the Isles of* Cocos, *Cape* Blanco, *the Bay of* Caldera; *of the Isle and Harbour of* Rio-Leca, *and of the Gulph and Isles of* Amapalla, p. 872

CHAP. VII.

A Description of the Isle of Plata; *of the Buildings and Soil of* Peru; *of the Bay, River and Town of* Guiaquil. *Their Design upon that Place miscarries. The Coast betwixt Cape* Passao, *and Cape St.* Francisco *to* Panama. *The Inhabitants of the River of St.* Jago. *The Isles of* Gallo *and* Gorgona, *and the Pearl Oysters there. The Cape* Corientes *and* Garachina. *Several other Islands in these Seas. A Description of the Bay of* Panama; *of Old* Panama, *and the New City. The Gulph of St.* Michael, *and the Rivers of* Congos, Sambo *and St.* Maria. *An Account of the* Spanish *Fleet, and of an Engagement with the Privateers,* p. 878

CHAP. VIII.

A Description of the Coast to the West of the Bay of Panama; *of the Isles of* Quibo, Quicaro, Rancheria, Canales, *and* Cantarras. Puebla Nova, *and the City of* Leon *taken. The Harbour and Creek of* Rio-Laka. *The* Volcan *of* Guatimala, *and the Coast further to the West; as also the Isle of* Tangola, *and the adjacent Continent described. The Isle* Sacrificio. *The Town and Harbour of* Acapulco. *The Burning Mountain, Town, Valley and Bay of* Colima. *Cape* Corientes. *The Isles of* Chamethy, *and City of* Purification. *The Point and Isles of* Pontique. *The River and Town of* Rosario. *The Rivers of* Oletta, *and St.* Jago. *Of* California, *and the N. West and N. East Passage. They propose a Voyage to the* East-Indies, p. 885

CHAP. IX.

They set sail for Guam, *and thence to the* East-Indies. *A Description of the* Philippine *Islands, and the Port and Town of* Manilla. *Of the Isle of* Mindanao; *of* Pulo Condore. *The Isle of St.* John *on the* Chinese *Coast. Of the Isles of the* Piscadores *and* Formosa, p. 891

CHAP. X.

The Isle of Celebes *and* Bouton. Callasusung, *its chief Town and Harbour.* New Holland. *The* Nicobar *Isles.* Cudda, *a Harbour on the Coast of* Malacca. *A Golden Mountain in* Sumatra. *The River and Town of* Passange Jonca. *Of Prince* Yeoly *who died at* Oxford, *and the Isle of* Meangis *his Native Country. A Description of the Cape of* Good Hope, *and the* Dutch *Factory,* p. 896

CHAP. XI.

The Author's Departure from Achin, *through the Streights of* Malacca. *The River* Domao. *His Arrival at* Cachao. *A Description of* Tonquin, *and of* Cachao. *The State of Christianity in these Parts. The Author's Departure from* Tonquin. *Of the Country of* Cambodia. *The Author's Departure from* Malacca, *and Arrival at* Achin; *a Description of that Place; of the Coast of* Sumatra, *and of* Malacca; *of the Isle of* Dinding; *of Fort St.* George, *and of* Bencoyl *in* Sumatra, p. 903

CHAP. XII.

The Author's Voyage to the Bay of Campeachy, *and the adjacent Parts. The* Caribee Indians. *The Isles of* Triet, *of* Pines *and the* Triangle *Islands. The Town of* Campeachy, Campeton *River and* Port-Royal *Isle and Harbour.* Leg-Worms *in the* West-Indies. *The River of St.* Peter *and* Paul; Tobasco *Isle and River,* p. 902

CHAP. XIII.

The Author's Voyage to New-Holland. *A Description of the Bay of* All-Saints *in* Brasil, *with the Forts and Town; of* Shark's *Bay, and the Isles and Coast of* New-Holland, p. 904

CHAP. XIV.

A New Discovery of a large Country in the Northern America, *extending above Four Thousand Miles; by Father* Lewis Hennepin. *A Voyage to North* America, p. 906

CHAP. XV.

An Account of Mr. la Salle's *Undertaking to discover the River* Mississipi, *by Way of the Gulph of* Mexico. *By* Lewis Hennepin, p. 911

CHAP. XVI.

A Voyage to North America; *or, a Geographical Description of* Canada, *by the Baron* La Hontan, *Lord Lieutenant of the* French *Colony at* Placentia, *in* Newfoundland, p. 915

CHAP. XVII.

The Expedition of Mr. de la Barre, *the Governour-General, against the* Iroquese, p. 916

CHAP. XVIII.

The Expedition of the Marquess Denonville, *against the* Iroquese, p. 917

CHAP. XIX.

The Author is sent with his Detachment to Fort St. Joseph; *from whence being joined by some of the* French *Allies, he makes another Expedition against the* Iroquese, p. 918

CHAP. XX.

The Author's Journal of his Voyage from Missilimakinac, *to the River* Mississipi, *and thence up the Long River,* p. 919

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XXI.

Giving an Account of Mr. de Frontenac's *Arrival. A fatal Ambassie sent by the* French *to the* Iroquese, *and an Expedition of the* English *against* Quebec, p. 921

CHAP. XXII.

Containing an Account of the Author's Departure from Rochel *to* Quebec: *Of a Rencounter with an* English *Ship: Of an* Iroquese *burnt alive,* p. 922

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Author's Departure for France, *and his stopping at* Placentia, *which was attacked by an* English *Fleet. How the* English *fail'd in their Design. He pursues his Voyage to* France, *where the King bestows on him the Lieutenancy of* Newfoundland *in* Acadia. *He returns to* Placentia. *A Fleet of Thirty* English *Ships come to seize the Place. The Reason of their bad Success. The Author's Adventure with the Governour of* Placentia, *and Departure for* Portugal, p. 923

CHAP. XIV.

A short View of the Manners and Customs, and of the Diseases and Remedies of the Savages, p. 924

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Insects, Trees and Fruits of the Northern America, p. 925

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Interest of the French *and* English *in North* America, p. 926

APPENDIX.

THE Spanish *Invasion,* Anno 1588, Page 1

An Abstract of the Portugal *Voyage,* Anno 1589, *under Sir* John Norris *ann Sir* Francis Drake, *Generals,* p. 5

An Abstract of a Voyage to Cadiz, *and taking of it by the* English *Fleet in* 1596, p. 7

An Abstract of the Relation of the barbarous Proceedings of the Dutch *against the* English *at* Amboyna. *Published by the English* East-India *Company,* p. 8

An Abridgment of the Travels, Adventures and Observations of Capt. John Smith, p. 13

The Captivity of William Okely, William Adams, John Anthony, John Jeplis, *&c. at* Algiers, *with their wonderful Escape in a Boat of Canvass, and the Extremities they endured at Sea, till their Arrival at* Majorca, p. 16

Johnson's *Narrative of a great Deliverance in a Voyage to the* East-Country, p. 18

The Discoveries of John Lederer, *from* Virginia *to the West of* Carolina, *and other Parts of the Continent of North* America, *begun in* March, 1669, *and ended in* Sept. 1670, p. 19

The Captivity of Thomas Phelps *at* Machaness *in* Barbary *and his strange Escape from thence,* p. 23

The Expedition of the English *and* Dutch *Fleets to* Vigo *in* Gallicia, *with the Land Forces under the Command of the Duke of* Ormond, p. 26

An Abridgment of a Relation of the wonderful Preservation of Eight Men, who were accidentally left in Greenland. *Written by* Edward Pelham, *one of their Number,* p. 33

An Abridgment of Two Journals of 14 *Sailors,* 7 *of which passed a part of that preceding Year,* 1634, *and Seven others a part of the following Winter; the First in the Isle of St.* Maurice, *in* Greenland, *and the Second at* Spitzbergen, *in which two Places they all died. To which is added, an Account of the Death of Forty Two Persons, who perished by Shipwreck, near the aforsaid* Spitzbergen, *in the Year,* 1646. *And a Description of the Island likewise, abridg'd,* p. 34

The Second Journal of Seven other Dutch *Men, who died the next Year at* Spitzbergen, p. 35

An Account of the Shipwreck of Forty Two Persons, who all perished but one, amongst the Ice, near Spitzbergen *in* Greenland, *in the Year* 1646. *A Description of the Island,* p. 36

An Account of the Shipwreck of a Dutch *Vessel upon the Coast of the Isle of* Quelpaert; *with a Description of the Kingdom of* Corea, *in the* East-Indies. *Also of the tedious Captivity of Thirty Six Men, who got ashore upon that Isle; and of the Escape of Eight of them to* Japan; *and thence to* Holland: *First published in that Country by the Clerk of the Ship, who was one of them that escaped since. Translated and Abridg'd,* p. 37

A Description of the Isle of Formosa, *situate on the Coast of* China, *in the* East-Indies: *First written by Mr.* George Candidius, *a* Dutch *Minister, who resided at the Factory of that Nation in the aforesaid Island a considerable Time: Now abridged, with some Remarks upon the Empire of* Japan, p. 40

A Journal of the Expedition undertaken to Surat, *by Mr.* William Daniel, p. 41

An Abstract of the Charter granted by his Majesty King Charles *II. to the* East-India *Company, under the Great Seal of* England, *the* 3*d Day of* April, *in the Year* 1661, *and the Thirteenth of that Prince's Reign,* p. 45

An Abstract of the Charter granted by his Majesty King James *II. to the* East-India *Company, under the Great Seal of* England, *the* 12*th Day of* April, *in the Year* 1686, *and the Second of that Prince's Reign,* p. 47

Charter of Regulations to the East-India *Company by King* William *and Queen* Mary, Novemb. 11. 1693. p. 49

Id. iterum, *granted* September 6. 1694. p. 50

Id. *by King* William, Septemb. 1698. p. 51

Heads of Agreement between the Two East-India *Companies,* p. 54

Charter of Settlement for the Trade to the East-Indies, *granted upon the Agreement of the Two Companies,* p. 55

THE

NAVIGANTIUM
Atque ITINERANTIUM
BIBLIOTHECA.

VOL. II. LIB. I.

CHAP. I.

The Ambassadors from the Duke of Holstein's *Travels into* Muscovy.

1633. FRederick, Duke of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, &c. being resolved, after the building of the City of *Frederickstadt*, to settle the Silk-Trade there; which being to be brought thither by Land from *Persia*, by the Way of *Muscovy*, he appointed in the Year 1633. *Philip Crusius*, a Civilian, and his Privy-Counsellor, and *Otto Brueyman*, a Merchant of *Hamborough*, his Ambassadors to the *Sophy* and the *Czar*; who accordingly, *Octob.* 22. departed from *Gottorp* (the Duke's Residence) for *Hamborough*. They left this Place with a Retinue of 34 Persons the 6th of *November*, came the 7th to *Lubeck*, and the 8th to *Travemund*; where having taken into their Service one *Michael Cordes*, an experienced Seaman, to conduct them through the *Caspian* Sea, and received in their Train *Wendelin Sibelist*, (who was going to *Muscovy* in the Quality of the Great Duke's Chief Physician) they imbark'd the 9th aboard a Ship, call'd the *Fortune*, *John Muller* Commander, and about 9 at night set Sail, and made 20 Leagues that night. The next day the Secretary of the Embassy was appointed *Fiscal*, with whom were join'd *Sibelist*, and *Hartman Grammaus* our Physician, to prevent any disorders in our Family, in which they behaved themselves with so much exactness, that at the end of our Voyage (tho' but of 5 days) the Fines amounted to 22 Crowns, which were given to the Poor. The same day we pass'd within a League of *Bornholm*, an Isle of about 3 Leagues long, and as many broad, where is the Palace of *Hammershausen*, belonging to the King of *Denmark*. On the North-side of it are the Rocks, call'd *Erndem*. The 11th we were under 56 Degrees, and about night were overtaken by a violent Storm from the S. W. which proving for us carried us however 15 Leagues that night; tho' what with the stink of the corrupted salt Water in the Sink of the Ship, and the violent agitation of the Ship, most of us that were not used to the Sea, were very sick, and some vomited Blood. The 12th in the morning being becalmed, we diverted our selves with our Musick; and about noon the Wind veering about to the S. W. came to the Cape of *Damesnes*, on the Coast of *Courland*, where having continued at Anchor all night, we doubled the Cape the 13th, and came the 14th before the Fort of *Dunamond* (so call'd from its Situation near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*) within 2 Leagues of the City of *Riga*. It being a foggy Day, we gave notice of our Arrival by the Sound of a Trumpet to the Governor of the Fort, who, after the Custom-house Officers had search'd our Ship, sent us a Pilot, who conducted us the same night before the City. The 21st the Ambassadors were presented by the Magistrates with an Ox, some Sheep and Poultry, Hares, Partridges, and other Wild Fowl, Wheaten and Rye-Bread, and half a Tun of Rhenish-wine, who entertained *Andrew Ericson*, the Governor of *Riga*, and the Magistrates, on the 24th at Dinner; where were also present some of the Officers of the Garrison, and the *Lutheran* Superintendant, who supply'd the Office of a Bishop here.

The two Ambassadors set out on their Journey.

Set Sail from Travemund.

Bornholm.

Come to Riga.

Some will have the City of *Riga* to have been built 1196. by *Albert* III. Bishop of *Livonia*; others 1189. by *Bertold*, Successor to *Menard* in the Bishoprick of *Livonia*, the Seat whereof he settled in this City. It was rais'd to an Archbishoprick 1215, and made Metropolitan of *Livonia*, *Prussia*, and *Courland*. In ancient Times there were no small Contests betwixt these Archbishops, and the Knights of the *Espadon*, and afterwards the Master of the *Teutonick* Order of *Prussia*, concerning the Jurisdiction in this City, till their Authority was suppres'd by the Reformation. In the Year 1561. it was forced to implore the Protection of the Crown of *Poland*, by reason of a powerful Invasion of the *Muscovites*. After *Charles*, Duke of *Sudermannia*, Uncle to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, had got into the Possession of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, he laid twice Siege to this City, *viz.* 1605, and 1609. but in vain, till *Gustavus Adolphus*, the *Swedish* King took it 1621. since which time it has provisionally remain'd in their Hands, pursuant to the Truce made betwixt them and the *Poles* 1625. tho' by the Care they took to strengthen and encrease its Fortifications whilst we were there (which was near 5 Weeks) it seem'd, as if they had no Inclination to part with it upon easie Terms, being fortified on the Land-side with 6 regular Bastions, as many Half-moons, and a Pallisado and Counterscarp. It is situate upon the River *Dwina* or *Dune*, in a large and pleasant Plain, the River being thereabouts near a Mile broad. It is very populous, by reason of its great Commerce with the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Hanseatick* Boors, by the way of the *Baltick* Sea in Summer, and in Winter with the *Muscovites*. Provisions are nevertheless very cheap here, a good Ox being to be bought for 3 Crowns, a Hog for one, and Fowl and Venison at a very low rate, the Peasants having a Privilege here (the only one they enjoy) of Hunting. Since it has been under the *Swedish* Jurisdiction, no other Religion but the *Lutheran* is so much as tolerated, which is the Established Religion here: Most of the Inhabitants speak and understand, besides the *High Dutch*, the *Sclavonian* and *Courland* Languages; but the first is made use of in all their Publick Acts and Sermons, except that two Churches are allowed to preach in the *Sclavonian* and *Courland* Languages.

1633.

Submits to Poland.

Taken by the Swedes.

Its Commerce.

Dec. the 15th we left *Riga*, came the 18th to *Wolmar*, a small Town, 18 Leagues from *Riga*, miserably ruin'd in the late Wars: The 20th we reach'd the Castle of *Ermes*, belonging to Col. *de la Barre*, who entertain'd us with a great deal of Magnificence. The 21st we travell'd 4 Leagues to the Castle of *Hallmai*, where we saw a young Elk higher than a Horse: The 22d we advanced 4 Leagues further to the Castle of *Ringen*, and from thence 6 Leagues more to *Dorpt*, or *Dorpat* the 23d. It is situate upon the River *Embec*, betwixt the two Lakes of *Worzero* and *Peipis*. The *Muscovites* who call it *Juriogorod*, were Masters of it till 1230. It was taken from them by the Master of the *Teutonick* Order, who rais'd it to a Bishoprick. In the Year 1558. the famous *Russian* Tyrant, *Juan Basilowitz* retook it, but restor'd it to the *Polish* K. *Stephen Batori*, by virtue of a Peace concluded betwixt them 1582. In the Year 1625. the *Swedish* General *James de la Guardie* took it from the *Polanders*, since which time, pursuant to the before-mentioned Truce made 1635. they remain'd in possession of it. *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden* founded an University here 1632. but is not much frequented, except by a few *Swedes* and *Finlanders*.

The Ambassadors leave Riga.

Come to Dorpt.

An Episcopal City.

In various Revolutions.

1634. We left *Dorpat* the 29th of *January*, and arrived the 3d of *January* following at *Narva*, where we stay'd 6

Come to Narva.

A Description of Riga.

Made an Archbishoprick.

1634. Months for the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, that were to go along with us to the *Czar*'s Court. We diverted our ſelves with Feaſting, Muſick, Walking, and Hunting, to drive away the Tedioufneſs of our ſtay, as well as we could; notwithſtanding which, what with the Inconveniencies we lay under of getting Proviſions, the daily Quarrels that happen'd betwixt ſome of our Retinue and the Garriſon, and the long ſtay of the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, we were quite tir'd out.

Mr. *Fleming* was ſent the 18th of *February* with part of the Train and Baggage in Sledges to *Novogorod*, whilſt our Ambaſſadors went with a Retinue of 12 Perſons to *Revel*, where they were received under the Diſcharge of the great Cannon of the City, and ſplendidly entertain'd both by the Governor and Magiſtrates, during their ſtay, which was near 6 weeks. Of the two Cities of *Narva* and *Revel*, and the reſt of *Livonia*, we ſhall have occaſion to ſay more hereafter.

And to Revil.

Philip Sheiding, then Governor of *Revel*, being appointed Chief of the beforementioned *Swediſh* Embaſſy, received Intelligence the 10th of *May*, that his Collegues were come to *Narva*, whereupon we left *Revel* the 15th; and the 18th were met by Col. *Henry Fleming*, *Frick Guldenſtern*, and *Andrew Burans*, deſign'd for that Embaſſy, about a League from *Narva*, where we were welcomed (as the firſt time) with the Diſcharge of their Great Artillery.

Return to Narva.

The Ambaſſadors reſolving the next day to go to *Novogorod*, by the way of *Carelia* by Sea, or the Lake of *Ladoga*, they ſent word of it to the Governor of *Novogorod*; it being a received Cuſtom both in *Muſcovy* and *Perſia*, to receive Foreign Ambaſſadors on the Frontiers, and to appoint certain Perſons (call'd *Priſtaffs* by the *Muſcovites*, and *Mehemanders* by the *Perſians*) to conduct them to Court, and defray them both as to their Proviſions and Carriages. The *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors having left *Narva* the 22d of *May*, we ſtay'd there for ſome few days longer.

Anniverſary Ceremonies of the Muſcovits.

May the 24th, being *Whitſun*-Eve, I had the Curioſity to go over to the Suburbs, call'd *Ruſſian Narva*, to ſee their Anniverſary-Devotions, obſerved by the *Muſcovites* towards their deceaſed Kindred. I ſaw the Church-yard full of *Muſcovite*-Women, who had ſpread their Handkerchiefs fring'd with Silk over the Graves of their Friends, upon which they had ſet Diſhes of Fiſh, Cuſtards, Cakes, and painted Eggs; ſome were kneeling, others ſtanding, and bewailing their Loſs, whilſt the Prieſt (who perform'd his ſhare of the Ceremony with a great deal of Careleſsneſs) walk'd up and down among them, with a Cenſer in his hand, into which he caſt little Pieces of Wax to cleanſe the Sepulchres; and had a ſmall piece of Copper from each Woman for his Pains, beſides that the Clark took care to ſecure the Proviſions for his uſe.

The Ambaſſadors leave Narva.

The 26th having ſent away our Baggage by Water, we follow'd the 28th being conducted by Col. *Port*, the Governor of *Narva*, as far as *Gam*, a Fort in the Province of *Ingermanland*, about 3 Leagues from *Narva* upon a ſmall Torrent, call'd *Gam*: It was fortified with a ſtrong Stone-wall, and 5 Baſtions, the adjacent Village being inhabited by *Muſcovites*, ſubject to the Crown of *Sweden*.

Here we were provided with freſh Horſes, which brought us the 29th to *Kapurga* 6 Leagues from *Gam*; where being very ſplendidly entertain'd that night and the next day at Dinner by *Burgiſtaus Roſe*, the Governor, we continued our Journey the 30th, and travell'd all night till 3 the next morning, when we were nobly received by a certain *Muſcovite* Lord or *Boyar*, call'd *Baſilowitz*, a very handſome Perſon, and of an excellent Humour, who having ſerv'd in the Wars of *Germany*, and at the Battle of *Leipſick* 1631. entertain'd us at Dinner; and, to honour us the more, cauſed his Wife and Daughter, who were very handſome and richly accoutred, to come into the room where we were, and to drink each of them a Cup of *Aqua Vitæ* to each of the Ambaſſadors: This being look'd upon among the *Muſcovites* as the greateſt piece of Civility they can ſhew to Strangers, unleſs it be to ſuffer them to be ſaluted, which is the higheſt degree known to them.

We parted from thence the ſame day about One-a-clock, and travell'd 4 Leagues further to *Johanneſtat* (St. *John*'s Valley) ſo call'd from its Founder *John Skytte*; where having received Intelligence that the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors ſtay'd for us at *Nyſhantz*, we ſet out early in the morning the 1ſt of *June* towards the ſaid Fort, ſituate upon a Navigable River about 2 Leagues and a half from *Johanneſtat*; which riſing from the Lake of *Ladoga*, diſcharges it ſelf into the Gulph of *Finland*, and ſerves as a common Boundary betwixt the Provinces of *Carelia* and *Ingermanland*.

1634.

The *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, after a Conference of two hours with ours, continued their Journey to *Noteburgh*, whither we follow'd them the 2d of *June*, and were forced to ſtay near 6 weeks, expecting the Orders of the *Muſcovite* Court for Reception on the Frontiers. The *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors kept open Houſes at *Noteburgh*, and ſent every day their Steward, with ſome Gentlemen of their Train, to conduct the *Holſtein* Ambaſſadors to their Table.

Come to Noteburgh.

June the 17th Mr. *Spiring*, who was join'd with the other four *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors in Commiſſion for their Embaſſy into *Muſcovy*, arrived at *Noteburgh*; and thus having received Intelligence the 25th of *June*, that the *Muſcovite Priſtaff* was come to the Frontiers to receive them, they departed the 26th for *Laba* (I having obtained leave to go along with them, to ſee the Ceremonies of their Reception) and came the 27th to the River; which being not above 40 Paces broad thereabouts, is the Boundary betwixt *Sweden* and *Muſcovy* on that ſide.

The Ambaſſadors no ſooner underſtood that the *Muſcovite Priſtaff* had 17 Boats ready on the other ſide, but they ſent their Interpreter, to deſire the *Priſtaff* to ſend over ſome of them to fetch their Baggage firſt: Unto which the *Priſtaff* reply'd, that the *Czar* did not value the Expence of one days Entertainment; and that therefore he muſt begin with the Reception of the Ambaſſadors: And about noon ſent his Interpreter with 4 Muſqueteers (of which he had 30 for his Guard) to give them to underſtand, that he was ready to receive them. One of the Ambaſſadors told him, that they having ſtaid 5 weeks on the Frontiers, he hoped the *Priſtaff* would not take it ill, if they made him ſtay one day; and that his Collegues being aſleep at this time, they ſhould have notice given them, after they were awake, when it would be convenient to receive them. Accordingly they ſent word about 4 in the afternoon, and with their Interpreter went into one Boat, and I with ſome of their Gentlemen into another. The *Priſtaff* at the ſame time got with 15 of his *Strelitzes* into another Boat; and his drift being to let the Ambaſſador come to the middle of the River before him, he ordered the Watermen to row ſlowly, which one of the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, *Philip Sheiding*, perceiving, order'd his Boat-men to do the ſame; and cry'd out to the *Priſtaff*, that this piece of Pride was unſeaſonable: So that at laſt all the Boats meeting in the middle, the *Priſtaff* began to read his Commiſſion, containing, *That the Great Duke and Czar, Michael Federowitz, &c.* had order'd him to receive the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, and to provide them, and their Retinue, with Proviſions, Carriages, and all other Neceſſaries, as far as the City of *Muſco*; and ſo carried them aſhore to a certain *Simboyar's* Houſe, not far from the River-ſide, where we were conducted into a Room with a Stove; which, notwithſtanding the heat of the Seaſon being heated, we paſs'd our time but very indifferently, betwixt the Incommodities of the Smoak and Smother, Inconveniencies of our Entertainment, which was ſome Gingerbread, ſome *Aqua Vitæ*, and two ſorts of very bad Mead; which the Ambaſſadors only touch'd with their Lips: And the laſt giving the Cup to me, gave it this Encomium; *Addatur purum Sulphuris, & fiat potio infernalis.* After this Collation was over, I return'd to *Noteburgh*, where we ſtaid 3 weeks longer, becauſe the Carriages and Horſes appointed to conduct the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, were (as the *Priſtaff* told us) to come back to fetch us.

The *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors Reception on the Frontiers.

The Country about Noteburgh.

The Country about *Noteburgh* (call'd *Oſinea* by the *Muſcovites*) is very pleaſantly ſituated, eſpecially for Hunting; but not extraordinary healthy, by reaſon of the many Lakes and Fenns that lie about it. At a Miles diſtance from thence are two Iſles well ſtor'd with Wood, and an incredible number of Wild Fowl; and the Lake *Ladoga* affords vaſt numbers of Sea-dogs. It lies under 63 degr. 30 min. upon a ſmall Iſle, which is formed by the Lake of *Ladoga*, juſt at its Entrance in the ſhape of a Well, which has given the name to the Place. The *Muſcovites* have taken particular care to fortifie it with a ſtrong Wall 2 Fathom and an half thick; neither could the *Swedes* make themſelves Maſters of it, till by a long Siege, and a contageous Diſtemper, the *Muſcovite* Garriſon was reduc'd to two Men, who notwithſtanding all this capitulated upon Honourable Terms.

July the 16th, Notice being given us that *Simon Andrew Kureckſhin*, who was appointed our *Priſtaff*, was come

1634. come to the Frontiers we prepared every thing for our departure, and came the 20th to *Laba*, whither the *Priſtaff* ſent immediately his Interpreter with a Muſqueteer, to know whether the Ambaſſadors deſired to be received; and being ask'd again, whether he would receive us on this ſide, or the middle of the River; he anſwer'd, That we might paſs the River: Theſe Ceremonies being only obſerved with the *Swedes*, by reaſon of the Conteſts on foot betwixt them concerning the Frontiers.

The Ambaſſadors of *Muſcovy* reception.

Having paſs'd the River, the *Priſtaff* who was clad in a red Coat of Damask, came up towards the Ambaſſadors uncovered, till ſuch time he began to read his Commiſſion, when pulling off his Cap he ſaid,

His Majeſty the Czar, Michael Federowitz, *has ſent me hither to receive thee* Philip Cruſius, *and thee* Otto Bruyman, *Ambaſſadors from the Duke of* Holſtein, *and commanded me to accommodate you and your Train with Proviſions, Carriages, Horſes, and all other Neceſſaries, till you come to the City of* Muſco.

This done, he conducted the Ambaſſadors (unto whom he gave the upper hand) to their Inn, through a Party of 12 *Strelitze*'s, who giving us a Volley, the Secretary of the *Swediſh* Reſident was ſhot through his Buff-coat. After a Collation of Cherries, Gingerbread and *Aqua vitæ*, we paſs'd the Lake of *Ladoga* in 7 Boats, it being 12 Leagues over there.

They proſecute their Voyage.

At our landing near a Monaſtery call'd *Navolkus Konſky*, we were preſented by a Monk with ſome Bread and dry'd Salmon; and our *Priſtaff* having left it to our choice, whether we would accept of the Money allow'd for our Entertainment, and make uſe of our own Cooks; we readily accepted of his Offer, our daily Allowance amounting to 2 *Roubles* and 5 *Copees*, or 4 Crowns and 5 Pence; which in ſo cheap a Country as this, found us very good Fare.

Come to *Ladoga*.

From hence we came to a River which brought us to *Ladoga*, 17 Leagues from *Laba*; here we ſaw great numbers of Children run about, to offer Gooſeberries and other Fruits to ſell, at a very ſmall Price; their Dreſs being ſuch (which were only Shirts reaching to their Ankles) as that the Boys could not be diſtinguiſhed from the Girls. As we were ready to embark after Dinner upon the River *Wolgda*, we obſerved our *Strelitzes* to beg the Benediction of a Monk, it being their Cuſtom to ask the Bleſſing of all Monks or Churches they meet with, or at leaſt to pay their Reverences to the Croſſes and Images, and to ſay, *Hoſpodi Buchniſto*, that is, *Lord have mercy upon me:* We made uſe of our Sail, which had almoſt proved fatal to one of our *Strelitzes*, who by the negligence of the *Muſcovite* Boatmen, was ſtruck down dead by the fall of it, but at laſt by the help of a good Goblet of *Aqua vitæ* was brought to life again.

The River *Wolgda*.

The River *Wolgda* is as broad as the *Elbe*, but runs more ſlowly. Its riſe is near *Novogorod Veliki*, out of the Lake of *Ilmen*, and exonerates it ſelf into the Lake *Ladoga*; 7 Verſts (5 of which make a *German* League) from hence there is a moſt ſtrange Cataract, or Water-fall, and about 7 or 8 Verſts higher another, where the Current runs with ſuch violence betwixt the Rocks, that 100 Men are ſcarce ſufficient to draw a wooden Boat up the River. We ſaw all our Boats paſs ſafely except one, which being drawn up almoſt to the higheſt point the Rope broke, ſo that it would infallibly have ſplit againſt the Rocks, had not one end of the Rope, by good fortune, twiſted it ſelf about one of the Rocks: The other Cataract we paſs'd without any danger, and came to a Convent call'd *Nicolai Nepoſtiza*, where we ſtay'd the next Day. There were no more than 4 Monks in this Monaſtery, one of which welcom'd us with a Preſent of Turneps, pickl'd Cucumers, ſome green Peaſe, and 2 Wax-candles; we rewarded him with a Crown piece, which had ſuch an influence upon the good old Man, that he ſhew'd us the Church (contrary to the Cuſtom of *Muſcovy*) in his Sacerdotal Veſtments: He told us alſo, That the *Germans* and other Nations might be ſaved, provided they had a *Muſcovite* Soul, and led a Juſt Life. He alſo read to us the firſt Chapter of the Goſpel of St. *John*, which we found altogether the ſame with our Text. We made him a Preſent of another Crown, which ſo pleaſed him, that he bow'd his Head to the Ground, and would have ſhewn us every thing belonging to the Church, had not the *Strelitzes* grumbled at it; ſo that he took his leave of us, and the Wind turning fair about the ſame time, told us at parting, That St. *Nicholas* had ſent us this Wind, as a Reward for the kindneſs we had beſtow'd upon him.

Its two Cataracts.

We continued our Voyage the ſame Afternoon, and came the ſame Night to a Village call'd *Corodiza*, 4 Leagues from thence, but had our Supper dreſs'd on the Banks of the River; and about Midnight ſet forward for *Soliza*, 4 Leagues farther. 1634. Come to *Corodiza*.

The next Day we travel'd 6 Leagues, to a Village call'd *Grunza*, which being forſaken by the Inhabitants, we made a great Fire in a fair Meadow near a Pool, where we diverted our ſelves all Night with telling of Stories, having ſlept all the Day before; we ſaw above 300 Cranes in the Pool. To *Soliza* and *Grunza*.

The next Day, *July* 26. we embark'd again in the Morning, and by Noon had made 4 Leagues to *Wiſoko*. Our *Priſtaff* hearing us pronounce the Name of *Jeſus*, croſs'd himſelf ſeveral times, and deſired to have the Grace we ſaid before Dinner in writing, telling us farther, That he had not believed the *Germans* were ſo good Chriſtians and juſt Men. To *Wiſoko*.

We travel'd the 27th all Day and the Night following till break of Day, when we found our ſelves at the Village of *Kriſeviza* within 2 Leagues of *Novogorod*, from whence we ſent notice to the Governor of that City, of our arrival: Within 600 Paces of this Village is a very fair Convent, call'd by ſome *Nachatem*, but generally call'd *Kriſeviza Chutina Spaſiſ Monaſtir*, very well built and ſituated: It maintains 60 Monks under the Government of an Abbot, and has 400 Peaſants belonging to it, to cultivate their Grounds, but they are obliged to maintain 100 Soldiers of the Garriſon of *Novogorod*, where we arrived the 29th, being met by thoſe of our Retinue that were ſent before, and were extreamly rejoyced at the ſight of us. To *Kriſeviza*. Come to *Novogorod*.

The Governor regal'd us with a Tun of Beer, another of *Hydromel*, and a Barrel of *Aqua vitæ*, in lieu of which, we ſent him a Silver Cup Vermilion gilt: We ſtay'd here till the 13th of *July*, when we ſet forward for *Brunitz* 4 Leagues from hence, and ſo put an end to our Voyage by Water. To *Brunitz*.

Whilſt our Baggage was diſembarking *Auguſt* 10. we ſaw a *Muſcovite* Proceſſion to bleſs the River: In the Front march'd 2 Men abreaſt, 1 whereof carried a Croſs with the 4 Evangeliſts on the 4 Corners, the other an old printed Image covered with a white Linen Cloath. Theſe were follow'd by a Prieſt in his Pontifical Veſtments, with a wooden Croſs near half a Foot wide in his Hands, ſinging in Conſort, with a little Boy carrying a Book after him. After them came the People, Men, Women and Children, each with a Wax-candle, except the Children; and in the Rear one who ſeem'd to be the Clerk of the Pariſh, with 10 lighted Tapers faſtned together. Being come to the River, the Prieſt ſpent half an Hour in ſinging and reading, and then taking the lighted Tapers from the Clerk extinguiſh'd them in the Water, the People doing the like with theirs. This done, the Prieſt dipp'd his Croſs three times in the Water, and at taking it out, let it drop into a Baſin deſign'd for the preſervation of this Holy Water; and then the Women came running to plunge their Children over Head and Ears into the Waters, whilſt others brought their Horſes to have their ſhare of this conſecrated River. At laſt they return'd in the ſame manner as they came, to the Church, where they were diſmiſs'd with a Benediction from the Prieſt. A *Muſcovite* Proceſſion.

Our Baggage being diſpoſed into 50 Waggons, we got on Horſeback the ſame Afternoon, and came to the Village of *Coaſmiſtansky*, 5 Leagues from *Brunitz*.

The 2d of *Auguſt* we made 8 Leagues to *Gam Chreſta*, (*Gam* ſignifying as much among the *Muſcovites*, as a place where Travellers take freſh Horſes.)

The 3d we travell'd to *Jazebiza*, which being forſaken by the Inhabitants, and our Cook gone 2 Leagues before, we were forc'd to paſs the Night without Victuals or Sleep.

The 4th coming to *Semnogora* we met with Colonel *Fox*; and the 6th at *Wolſock* with Colonel *Charles*, which occaſioning divers Entertainments, our Trumpeter mortally wounded one of our *Strelitzes*. Come to *Wolſock*.

In a Village call'd *Coramna*, through which we paſs'd the 5th, we ſaw many great Blue Stones, which that famous *Ruſſian* Tyrant *Joan Baſilowitz* had cauſed to be removed from the Sepulchres of *Revel*, after the taking of that City, with a deſign to carry them to *Muſco*; but News being come of his Death, they were unloaden, and left here ever ſince.

The 7th, coming to the Village of *Budena*, our Horſes began to wince and to beat the Ground with their Feet, to that degree that we could not imagine what ſhould be the matter, till alighting we found them all

1634. over covered with Bees, which obliged us to take up our Quarters in an adjacent Field; and the next day we were told that thoſe Bees had been incenſed on purpoſe to prevent our Lodging in the Village.

To *Torſock.* The 8th we chang'd our Horſes, and towards night came to *Torſock*, a ſmall Fortified Town, built upon the Aſcent of a Hill; we ſtopp'd without the Place in huts of Boughs of Trees.

To *Twere.* The 9th after we had croſs'd two ſmall Rivers, we came at night to the City of *Twere*, built in the ſame manner as *Tarfrek*, on the ſide of a Hill, but ſomewhat bigger; each of theſe two has its own Governor; the laſt having borrow'd its name from the River, which bears the ſame name, and runs by it, as well as the *Wolga*, which continuing its courſe from hence for 600 *German* Leagues (making near 1500 *French*) thro' *Muſcovy*, exonerates it ſelf into the *Caſpian* Sea: We paſs'd this River in a Ferry-Boat, and took up our Quarters in the Suburbs.

The River *Wolga.*

The 13th we arrived within 2 Leagues from *Muſco*, to a Village call'd *Nichola Nachinski*; and the 14th our *Priſtaff* took his leave of the Ambaſſadors, who preſented him with a Silver Cup Vermilion gilt, and about 12 Crowns among his Followers. The ſame day, the Meſſenger ſent by our *Priſtaff* to *Muſco* to give notice of our Arrival, returning, brought us word to prepare immediately for our Entrance, which we made the ſame day: (1.) The *Strelitzes* who had conducted us hither. (2.) *Jacob Schova*, our Harbinger, *Michael Cordes*, our Ships Captain, and *John Algveyer*, Clerk of the Kitchin, all three a-breaſt. (3.) Three Led-Horſes, one Black, the other two dappled Greys, to be preſented to the Great Duke. (4.) Our Trumpeter. (5.) Our Steward. (6.) Three of our Gentlemen a-breaſt. (7.) Three more of our Gentlemen. (8.) The Secretary, Phyſician, and Comptroler. (9.) The two Ambaſſadors, attended each by four Guards *du Corps*, with their Carabines, with the *Priſtaff* who had conducted them, at ſome little diſtance on their right hand. (10.) The ſix Pages in two Ranks. (11.) A Coach with four Grey Horſes. 12. The Maſter of the Waggons, with 8 others, three in a Rank. (13.) The Preſents deſign'd for the *Czar*, in 5 Litters, covered with *Turkey* Tapeſtry. (14.) An open Waggon, wherein one Mr. *Simon Friſius* lay ſick. (15.) Forty ſix Waggons with our Baggage. (16.) Three Servants.

In this order we march'd on very ſlowly, till coming within half a League of *Muſco*, we ſaw two *Muſcovites* coming one after another, to tell the *Priſtaff* at what Place we were to be received by thoſe who were appointed for that purpoſe, with order ſometimes to advance ſlower, ſometimes with more haſte, according as they judged it moſt proper for us to meet at the ſame time at the Place deſign'd for our Reception. In the mean while we ſaw ſeveral *Muſcovites* ſumptuouſly accoutred, who paſs'd only at a diſtance to view us. About an *Engliſh* Mile from the City, we paſs'd through about 4000 *Muſcovites*, well mounted and accoutred; and not long after two *Priſtaffs* mounted on two fine White Horſes, and clad in Coats of Purple Satin, advanced towards us, the Chains (inſtead of Bridles) of their Horſes being compoſed of Links near two Inches broad, but ſcarce thicker than the back of a Knife, the holes being ſo big, that a Man might thruſt ones Fiſt into them, which made a ſtrange noiſe, as they moved along. They were follow'd by the *Czar*'s Maſter of the Horſe, with 20 White Led-Horſes, and a good number of Attendants.

The Ambaſſadors Reception at *Muſco.*

The Ambaſſadors and *Priſtaffs* being alighted, one of the two uncovering himſelf, ſaid; *The Grand Seignior, Czar, and Great Duke, Michael Federowitz, Conſervator*, (and ſo enumerating all his Titles) *receives you the great Ambaſſadors from the Duke of* Sleſwick, Holſtein, Stormar, *and* Ditmarſen, *Count of* Oldenburgh *and* Delmenhurſt, *and grants you and the Gentlemen of your Train, the Favour to make your Entry upon his own Horſes; having appointed us* Priſtaffs *to furniſh you with all Neceſſaries, during your Abode at* Muſco.

After the Ambaſſador *Cruſius* had return'd the Complement, two very ſtately White Horſes, with ſtately Saddles after the *German* Faſhion, and ſumptuous Harneſſes were brought for the Ambaſſadors to mount on, and ten other White Horſes, with *Muſcovite* Saddles, cover'd with Cloth of Gold, and Purple Satin, for the Gentlemen of our Retinue. The *Priſtaff* and *Strelitzes*, that had conducted us to *Muſco* being drawn off, the *Priſtaffs* placed themſelves on both ſides of the two Ambaſſadors, who were in the midſt, ſo that he that was on the right took the upper hand of them, he that has his right hand free, being always reputed to be in the moſt honourable Place among the *Muſcovites*. They were follow'd by a good number of the Grooms of the *Czar*'s Stables, the Coverings of their Saddles, being of Leopard-skins, Cloth of Gold, and Scarlet. Part of the Horſe through which we had paſs'd coming towards the City, made all the haſte they could through the Gates, to conduct the Ambaſſadors to their Lodgings, which were two Citizens Houſes built of Wood, in that part of the Town call'd *Czarskigorod*, *i. e.* the *Czar's* Town, the *Priſtaff* made us an Excuſe from the Great Duke, that a Fire having lately conſumed not only the ordinary Houſe for the Entertainment of Ambaſſadors, but alſo another appointed for their Lodging they hoped they would accept of this Accommodation; we were no ſooner come to our Lodgings, but we ſaw 32 *Muſcovites* marching all in a File, and carrying the Preſents ſent us from the Great Duke's Kitchin; *viz.* 8 Sheep, 30 Capons and Pullets, good ſtore of White and Brown Bread, and 22 ſorts of Liquors, Wine, Beer, Mead, and *Aqua Vitæ*. Then they lock'd the doors of our Lodgings, and put a Guard of 12 *Strelitzes*, partly to prevent our Correſpondence with the Inhabitants, partly to give us Attendance, and to buy our Proviſions: For which reaſon alſo an Interpreter, a Native of *Muſcovy*, but who had learnt the *German* Tongue at *Leipzig*, was left with us; and the *Priſtaffs* would come daily once a day to viſit us, and to ask whether we ſtood in need of their Service. The 17th was deſign'd for our Audience; but the Great Duke being gone without the City, we ſpent that day in Devotions for our ſafe Arrival here. Mr. *Balthaſor Moucheron*, the *Swediſh* Commiſſary at *Muſco*, having got leave to be preſent at the Sermon our Miniſter preached upon this occaſion, and at the Dinner that follow'd it, He told us, that they liked our Entrance exceeding well, and were ſurprized that a *Knez*, or Prince of *Germany* (for ſo they ſtile all Dukes, tho' their *Knez* have ſcarce 800 or 1000 Pounds *per Annum*, unleſs they are in ſome conſiderable Poſt at Court) ſhould be able to ſend ſo ſplendid an Embaſſy.

1634.

The *Priſtaff* takes the upper hand of the Ambaſſadors.

Refreſhments ſent to them from the *Czar.*

The 18th 2 *Priſtaffs* came to acquaint us, that the next day was appointed for our Publick Audience, deſiring at the ſame time a Catalogue of the Preſents deſign'd for the *Czar*.

The 19th in the Morning they came again, and finding us ready to go, they return'd immediately to Court, and brought us the ſame White Horſes we had made uſe of at our Entry. We got on Horſe-back with our Cockſon, but left our Swords behind; knowing that no body is permitted to appear in the *Czar*'s Preſence with them; and ſo advanced towards the Caſtle in the following Order.

36 *Strelitzes* led the Van; after them our Steward. (3.) Three Gentlemen of our Train. (4.) Three Gentlemen more. (5.) The Commiſſary, Secretary and Phyſician. Then the Preſents led and carried by *Muſcovites*, *viz.* (6.) one Coal-black Horſe. (7.) One Dapple-grey. (8.) Another Dapple-grey. (9.) Harneſs for one Horſe enriched with Silver, *Turkey*-ſtones, Rubies, and other Precious Stones, carried by two *Muſcovites*. (10.) A Croſs of Chryſolyte enchas'd in Gold, of half a Foot long, laid in a Baſon. (11.) An Ebony Cabinet, garniſh'd with Gold in the Form of a ſmall Apothecary's Shop, with its proper Boxes and Phials of Gold, enrich'd with precious Stones, fill'd with ſeveral excellent Chymical Preparations, carried by two *Muſcovites*. (12.) A ſmall Veſſel of Rock-Chryſtal, garniſh'd with Gold and ſet with Rubies. (13.) A great Looking-glaſs of an Ell and a quarter high, and half an Ell broad, with an Ebony-Frame, with Silver Flowers wrought thereon, carried by two *Muſcovites*. (14.) A Clock on which was painted the Parable of the Prodigal Son. (15.) A walking Staff, Vermilion-gilt, with a Perſpective within it. (16.) A large Ebony-Clock in an Ebony-Caſe, laid in with Silver. (17.) Two Gentlemen of the Chamber carrying two Credential Letters aloft, one for the *Czar*, the other for *Philaretes Nikidits*, the Patriarch, his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Father, who dy'd ſince our departure from *Holſtein*. (18.) The two Ambaſſadors between the two *Priſtaffs*, with their Interpreters before them, their Pages behind them, and 4 Lacqueys on each ſide.

The Preſents deſign'd for the *Czar.*

We march'd along in very good order through a Guard of 2000 *Strelitzes*, which were rank'd on both ſides of the Streets, the Windows of the Houſes being fill'd with Spectators; ſeveral Meſſengers met us,

1634. as we paſt along, who coming full ſpeed from the Court, gave us notice from time to time how to order our March, ſo as to come to the Hall of Audience at the ſame time the *Czar* had taken his place on the Throne. We were conducted through the Caſtle-Court, cloſe by the Chancellor's Office for foreign Affairs, where every one alighting and taking his place, the Steward before the Preſents and the reſt of the Gentlemen next before the Ambaſſadors, we were carried towards the Hall of Audience, which is on the right Hand, through a vaulted Gallery on the left, (whereas the *Turky*, *Perſian*, and *Tartarian* Ambaſſadors are conducted up a ſtone pair of Stairs on the right) into a great vaulted Apartment, where we ſaw among a great Multitude of other People, many Ancient Men with grey Beards, clad in ſtrip'd Satin Robes and Caps of Martins-skins; theſe they told us, were the *Czar*'s *Goſes* or Factors, who are obliged to attend at theſe Solemnities in thoſe Gowns, taken out of the *Czar*'s Wardrobe, which are there laid by for the ſame uſe again, after the Ceremony is over.

The Ambaſſadors admitted to Audience.

At the Door of the Antichamber the Ambaſſadors were Complemented by 21 *Boyars* in Robes of purple Satin embroidered with Pearls, who told them, That his *Czariſh* Majeſty did them and the Gentlemen of his Retinue, the favour of admitting them into his preſence.

The Preſents being ordered to remain in the Antichamber, the Ambaſſadors, Gentlemen, and Pages, were conducted into the Hall of Audience; *John Hermes*, the *Czar*'s Interpreter being at the head of them, who, as ſoon as he entred, ſaluted his Majeſty with a loud voice, and acquainted him, That the Ambaſſadors were come to do the ſame. It was a ſquare Hall, vaulted, the Floor and Sides of which were covered with Tapeſtry, the Roof being gilt, with ſome Paintings repreſenting ſome ſacred Stories.

The Great Duke himſelf was ſeated on a Chair directly oppoſite to the Door, being rais'd about 3 Steps cloſe to the Wall, with 4 Pillars on the 4 Corners of about 3 Inches thick, being Vermilion gilt, and an Ell and a half high, with the Imperial Eagle upon the ſaid Pillars, beſides which the ſaid Chair was adorned with 4 Turrets or Pyramids Vermilion gilt, with Eagles on the top, after the ſame manner.

They told us, That one *Iſaiah Zinekgraf*, a Native of *Nurenbergh*, was then making another Chair of State for the *Czar*, which was to coſt 25000 Crowns, 1600 Ounces of Silver, and 120 Ounces of Ducat Gold being allow'd for the gilding of it. The *Czar*'s Robe was embroider'd with Pearls, and beſet with precious Stones of all ſorts. On his Head he had a Cap of Martins-skin, and over it a Crown of Gold, ſet with large Diamonds; and in his Hand a very weighty Golden Scepter, likewiſe covered with Diamonds. He was attended on both ſides of his Chair by certain young *Boyars*, very remarkable for their large Stature and Dreſs, which were long Coats of White Damask, their Caps of Lynx-skins, with Gold Chains croſs their Breaſts, and reaching to their Hips, and each of them a Silver Battleaxe upon his Shoulders, whereunto they had put their Hands as if they were ready to ſtrike. On the right ſide, the Imperial Apple of maſſie Gold of the bigneſs of a Cannon-bullet of 48 Pounds, reſted upon a Pyramid of Silver curiouſly wrought, and at the ſame ſide at a ſmall diſtance from thence, a Baſon, an Ewer and Napkin, to waſh and wipe the *Czar*'s Hands after the Ambaſſadors and the Gentlemen had kiſs'd them. All along on one ſide of the Wall, and oppoſite to the *Czar* were placed about 50 *Boyars* on Benches richly clad, with Caps of black Fox Fur of a good quarter of an Ell high, the Chancellor ſtanding on the right ſide about 5 Paces from the *Czar*'s Chair.

The Ceremonies of the Audience.

The Ambaſſadors after having made a deep Reverence at their Entrance into the Audience-Hall, were placed in the midſt juſt oppoſite to the *Czar*, at about 10 Paces diſtance from the Chair; the 2 Gentlemen who carried the Credentials being on the right, and the *Czar*'s Interpreter on the left, the Gentlemen of their Retinue behind them. The *Czar* having made a Sign to the Chancellor, that he would admit the Ambaſſadors to kiſs his Hands, they went one after another to kiſs his Hand, which he reach'd to them with a ſmiling Countenance, holding his Scepter the mean while in his left; this being a Favour allow'd only to the Ambaſſadors of Chriſtian Princes.

This done, the Chancellor came to tell them, That if they had any thing to propoſe, they might do it; whereupon *Cruſius*, one of the Ambaſſadors, Complemented the *Czar* in the Duke our Maſter's Name, and Condoled him on account of the Death of the late Patriarch his Father; adding, That his Highneſs, in hopes we ſhould find him alive, had given them Credential Letters along with thoſe he had ſent to his Majeſty: And ſo taking both the Letters from thoſe that held them, he was going to deliver them to the Great Duke, who commanding the Chancellor to take them, whiſper'd him in the Ear afterwards what Anſwer he was to make. The Chancellor was no ſooner return'd to his former Station, but he began thus:

1634.

The Grand Signior, Czar *and* Great Duke, *tells thee* Philip Cruſius *and* Otto Bruyman, *Ambaſſadors from the Duke of* Holſtein, *That he had received his Highneſſes Letters, that he will order them to be tranſlated, that he will acquaint you with his Intention by Commiſſioners, and that he will give his Anſwer thereto.*

The Chancellor and all the *Boyars* remaining all this while covered, except when the Name of the *Czar*, and of his Highneſs of *Holſtein* were mentioned. The Ambaſſadors then being ſeated on a Bench covered with Tapeſtry, the Gentlemen belonging to their Train were admitted to kiſs his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Hands, who afterwards raiſing himſelf a little in his Chair, ask'd the Ambaſſadors, *Is Duke* Frederick *in good Health?* Whereto Anſwer was given, That he was well at our Departure, *God grant a long and good Life, and all Happineſs to his Majeſty and his Highneſs.*

After this the Preſents were placed before the *Czar*, and after a while order'd by the Chancellor to be removed into another Room: The Ambaſſadors being alſo told by the Chancellor, That they had leave to ſpeak concerning their Buſineſs; unto which they reply'd, That, in reſpect of the Treaty made betwixt the Crown of *Sweden* and his Highneſs, on the account of the Commerce of *Perſia*, they deſired they might treat of this Matter at a private Audience together, which was readily granted.

Then the *Czar* cauſed them to be ask'd, Whether they were in good Health? Whether they wanted any thing? And word was ſent them, That they were to be Treated with Meat from his own Table.

Accordingly we were conducted back to the Antichamber by the ſame *Boyars* who had received us there before; and mounting our Horſes in the ſame place where we alighted before, were re-conducted by our *Priſtaffs* to our Lodgings, in the ſame manner as we came to the Caſtle. We were follow'd immediately by a certain *Knez* of the *Czar*'s Chamber, a Perſon of a goodly Aſpect, and well attended, who as ſoon as he came in, ordered the Cloath to be laid, on which were ſet a Saltſeller, and 2 Vinegar Diſhes of Silver, ſeveral Cups, 2 of Silver, and 3 of Gold, being above a Foot in diameter. Having ſeated himſelf at the end of the Table, he deſired the Ambaſſadors to ſit down by him, the Gentlemen being order'd to ſtand before them; 38 Diſhes of roaſted and boiled Meats, with ſome Paſtry, were ſerved up on Plates, and 3 great Cups full of Sack, Rheniſh-wine and Mead, ſet before the Ambaſſadors. The *Knez* then ariſing firſt, and cauſing the Ambaſſadors to do the ſame, told them, That he hoped they were well pleaſed with the *Czar*'s Entertainment, and ſo took the great Cup full of excellent Mead made with Rasberry-juice, and begun his Majeſty's Health; the ſame quantity being given to the Ambaſſadors and the Gentlemen of their Train, they all drank the ſame Health at once. Some of the Gentlemen would have reach'd for their Cups croſs the Table, which the *Knez* would not allow of, but obliged them to come round about, alledging, That the Table repreſented the Great Duke's. Then he drank the Duke our Maſter's Health to the Ambaſſadors, ſaying, *God grant Health and Proſperity to his Highneſs, and make him long to continue in Amity and a good Correſpondency with his Majeſty.* The next Health was that of the *Czar*'s Son, and ſo they concluded the Feaſt with drinking ſome Goblets of Mulberry and Cherry Wines; the *Knez* being ſo well ſatisfied with a Silver Cup Vermilion gilt, weighing 3 Marks and a half, of which the Ambaſſadors made a Preſent to him at parting, that he order'd it to be carried before him, as he was returning to the Caſtle.

The Ambaſſadors are entertain'd by the *Czar*.

Auguſt 20. Our *Priſtaff* brought word that the *Czar* had been pleaſed to give us leave to go abroad in the City, and to converſe with the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors, offring his own Horſes for that purpoſe as often as we ſhould have occaſion for them; and in effect 2 Days 6 Horſes were ſent us out of the *Czar*'s Stables, to conduct

Have liberty given them to go abroad

1634. duct us to the *Swedish* Ambassador's Lodgings, with whom we kept a constant Correspondency afterwards. This was look'd upon as a peculiar Favour among the *Muscovites*, who used not to allow even the Servants of foreign Ambassadors to walk about the City without a *Strelitze*: Tho' the 23d of *August*, Dr. *Wendelin* and some others being invited to Dinner by our Ambassadors, were forbidden to see us till after 3 Days; the reason of which we afterwards found to be, because the Cabinet with the Chymical Preparations presented to the *Czar* had not been valued, nor could be without them.

The 24th News being brought, that Mr. *Spiring*, one of the *Swedish* Ambassadors appointed for the management of the Treaty of Commerce in concert with ours, was arrived near *Musco*, the *Muscovites*, who knew him a Person well versed in these Matters, would fain have found out a pretence not to admit him in that Country; but the other *Swedish* Ambassadors insisting upon it, could not avoid sending a *Pristaff* to receive him.

The *Muscovites* New Years Day.

September 1. Was the *Muscovites* New-Years Day; for as they know no other Epact but that of the Creation of the World, which, according to their Opinion, was created in *Autumn*, they begin their Year with this Month. The Procession made on this occasion, consisted of 20000 Persons, who being admitted into the outward Court of the Castle, the Patriarch accompanied with near 400 Priests carrying Banners, Images and Books, came out of the Church on the right hand of the second Court, whilst the *Czar* with his *Boyars* appear'd on the left; and meeting the Patriarch with his Cap in his Hand, they kiss'd, the Patriarch at the same time offering to the Great Duke a Cross beset with Diamonds to kiss, which done, he gave his Benediction to the People, wishing them a happy New Year. Soon after we saw the People lifting up their Petitions, and afterwards to throw them at the *Czar*'s Feet, from whence they were taken up, in order to be answered.

September 3. Mr. *Guldenstern*, *Burans* and *Spiring*, the 3 *Swedish* Ambassadors who were to be joyn'd with us in the Treaty concerning the Passage into *Persia*, had their Publick Audience, and desiring that Commissioners might be appointed to treat with in concert with us, the same was granted. Mr. *Philip Scheiding*, and Colonel *Henry Fleming*, the other 2 Ambassadors were in the mean while treating concerning the Differences about the Limits.

The *Swedish* and *Holstein* Ambassadors admitted jointly to a Conference.

Accordingly the *Swedish*, as well as our Ambassadors, were call'd *September* 5. to the Castle, and conducted into a Hall, where they found the 4 Commissioners of the *Czar* sitting at a Table; they were 2 *Boyars*, and 2 Chancellors, or Secretaries of State. They were very sumptuously clad in strip'd Satin, beset with great Pearls and precious Stones, with Golden Chains cross their Breasts. The 2 first wore a kind of Calots embroider'd with Pearls, having a Jewel of Diamonds and other precious Stones in the midst; the other 2 had theirs of black Fox Fur, made after the common fashion. They entreated the Ambassadors to sit down by them, but had taken care to get into the best Places before them; who being seated, a Bench was brought in for the 2 Secretaries of State, which was placed opposite to the others; besides which, only 2 Secretaries of the *Swedish* Embassy and ours, 2 Interpreters, and a *Muscovite* Clerk, were admitted into the Room. Every one having taken his place, one of the *Boyars* ask'd the Ambassadors, Whether they wanted any thing? And it being answered, That they did not; but returned their Thanks to his *Czarish* Majesty for the care he took of them, they all rise up, and the other *Boyar* began.

The Grand Seignior, Czar, *&c.* (and after a long recital of his Titles, all being sat down again, proceeded) *gives you Lords Ambassadors from the Crown of* Sweden, *and the Duke of* Holstein, *to understand, that he has caused your Letters to be translated, and has hearkened to the Propositions made at your publick Audience.*

Then they all arose again, and the other *Boyar* taking off his Calot, began: *The* Grand Seignior, Czar, *&c.* (and so enumerating the Titles went on) *wishes the Queen of* Sweden, *and Duke of* Holstein, *all Prosperity and Victory over their Enemies, and lets you know, that he has read their Letters, and well understands their Intention.*

The third Commissioner then arising said; *The* Grand Seignior, *&c. has seen the Letters you brought him, and is satisfy'd that all Credence ought to be given in what you propose, and shall be done so accordingly.* 1634.

The fourth added only, That the *Czar* had appointed them Commissioners to receive their Propositions, and thereupon read the Names of the Commissioners: 1. *Knez Boris Michaelowitz Likow Bolenscow*, Governor of *Twere*. 2. *Knez Basili Jeanowitz Stresnow*, Governor of *Tarsock*. 3, 4. The 2 Secretaries of State, call'd by them *Dumnoi Diaken*, were *Joan Tarascowitz Grammatin*, Lord Keeper or Chancellor, and *Joan Offonassvesin Gavaurenow* Vice-chancellor.

Then they all arise, and Mr. *Eric Guldenstern*, one of the *Swedish* Ambassadors, after having return'd the *Czar* thanks in her Majesty of *Sweden*'s Name, read to the Commissioners their Propositions in the *German* Tongue; but ours being very large, we thought it sufficient to deliver the same with the *Swedish* Propositions: The Commissioners carried them up immediately to the Great Duke's Chamber; who, after half an Hour sent us word by the Vice-chancellor, That His Majesty would have them translated, and let us know his Resolution thereupon, with the soonest.

The 10th, the 2 *Swedish* Ambassadors, who managed the Affairs of the Limits, had their last private Audience.

A Cavalcade of *Tartars*.

The 12th, 3 Ambassadors sent by the *Tartarian* Prince of *Casan*, one of the *Czar*'s Vassals, with a Train of 16 Persons, had their Publick Audience: They were clad only in course red Cloth Cassocks, with Bows and Arrows in their Hands; but at their return they appear'd in Satin and other Silk Vestments, which the *Czar* had bestow'd upon them; this, and a Present of some Furs, being their chief Errand, for which they send once a Year such an Embassy to *Musco*.

The 15th, our *Pristaff* brought us the News of the Great Dutchesses being delivered the Day before, which was Christned *Sophia*, according to the Custom of *Muscovy*, where they Baptize their Children immediately without any further Ceremony: We had double Allowance given us upon this occasion.

A *Turkish* Ambassador makes his Entry.

The 17th, we saw a *Turkish* Ambassador making his Entry into *Musco*: He was receiv'd without the Gates by a Body of 16000 Horse, who had only 6 Colours, many Trimbals and Hautboys, but only 6 Trumpets; besides which, there appear'd a great number of *Boyars*, and other Officers, most magnificently equipp'd, and excellently well mounted, and about 20 led Horses out of the *Czar*'s Stables, with Silver Chains instead of Bridles. The Gentlemen of the *Swedish* Ambassadors, and our Retinue, made up a Body of 50 Horse, and went about a League out of Town to meet the *Ottoman*, who perceiving us, look'd very earnestly upon us, we keeping along with him for a considerable time, to take a view of his Equipage and Cavalcade, which was ordered thus. (1.) 46 *Strelitzes* armed with Bows and Arrows instead of Firelocks, and Scimeters on their Sides. (2.) The *Pristaff* in a Brocado'd Robe, follow'd by 11 *Grecian* Ecclesiasticks, and *Greek* and *Turkish* Merchants in Gowns made of red flower'd Velvet. (3.) The Ambassador's Steward alone, with a Guard of 4 Bowmen behind him. (4.) 2 Horsemen richly accoutred. (5.) The Ambassador alone: He was of a middle Stature, much tann'd in the Face, with a long black Beard and a white Turbant on his Head, as had all the rest of his Train. His Vest was of white flower'd Satin, and his upper Garment of Satin with Gold Fringes, lined with Martins-skin. The Waggon he was in, was only of Wood, but covered with very rich Tapestry. He was follow'd by about 40 Baggage Waggons, managed by 1 or 2 Boys each. Being come within a quarter of a League of the Gates, where he supposed they were ready to receive him, he mounted on a very fine *Arabian* Horse, and was immediately after met by the 2 *Pristaffs*, who continued on Horseback till the Ambassador had alighted, and he on the other hand kept on his Turbant, tho' the *Pristaffs* pull'd off their Caps, as often as they mention'd the *Czar*'s Name. After the Complements were over, the Ambassador did what he could to get on Horseback first, but they having brought him a tall skittish Horse, with a high *Muscovite* Saddle, the *Pristaffs* got up before him, and placing themselves on both sides conducted him to the House appointed for the reception of Ambassadors, which was rebuilt since our Arrival at *Musco*.

The 19th we had a second Conference at the Castle joyntly with the *Swedish* Ambassadors: And the 23d the *Turkish* Ambassador was conducted to his first Pub-

1634. lick Audience in the following manner: Firſt of all rid 20 *Coſſacks* on White Horſes; theſe were follow'd by the *Turkiſh* and *Greek* Merchants, and theſe by the *Muſcovites* that carried the Preſents. (1.) 20 Pieces of Satin ſtrip'd with Gold carried by 20 *Muſcovites*, marching all in a File. (2.) A Golden Croſs of about a Finger's length, ſet with Diamonds, carried by a *Muſcovite* in a Baſon. (3.) A Veſſel of Rock-Cryſtal, adorn'd with Gold and precious Stones. (4.) A Belt for a Scymeter enrich'd with Gold and precious Stones. (5.) A very large Pearl laid on a Piece of watered Taffata in a Baſon. (6.) Harneſs for 2 Horſes, embroider'd with Gold and Pearls. (7.) A very fair Diamond-ring in a Baſon. (8.) A Ruby as broad as a Crown-piece of Silver enchac'd in Gold, carry'd in a Baſon. (9.) A very fine Battle-Ax, ſhap'd like a Scepter. After theſe march'd 8 *Turks*, two a-breaſt: Theſe were follow'd by 2 young proper Fellows, who carried upon a great piece of Silk the Credentials, which tho' folded were at leaſt half an Ell broad. The *Greek* Eccleſiaſticks were conducted to their Audience not till the 28th, being accompany'd by a great number of *Muſcovite* Prieſts: They were dreſs'd in Violet-Chamlet, and had a Croſs carried before them; their Preſents conſiſted in ſome Pieces of Satin and Taby's with Gold-flowers, a Prieſt's Cope, and ſome Relicks of Bones.

The Turkiſh Ambaſſador admitted to Audience.

Our Ambaſſadors having about this time received Letters from the Elector of *Saxony* to the *Czar*, they were conducted the 29th of *September* to a Publick Audience, as before, the Letters being carried upon black and yellow Taffata: The *Czar* enquir'd after the Elector's Health, and order'd us to be furniſh'd with Meat from his own Table, which was ſent us, but not ready dreſs'd.

Octob. the 1ſt, the *Muſcovites* celebrated one of their Annual Feſtivals in their Church of the *Bleſſed Trinity*; or, as the *Germans* call it, of *Jeruſalem*. The Patriarch preſented the *Czar* in the outward Court with an Image painted upon Paſt-board, unto which he made a low Reverence, and afterwards kiſs'd the Golden Croſs, wherewith the Patriarch alſo touch'd his Forehead and Temples, and ſo went to Church, where they concluded the Service. The *Greeks* that came along with the *Ottoman* Ambaſſador were admitted into the Church, a thing not at all allow'd in *Muſcovy* to any other Chriſtians.

A Muſcovite Feſtival.

Octob. 8. We had a third Conferencee in Conjunction with the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors with the *Czar*'s Commiſſioners, which laſted 2 hours.

The 12th of *October* we ſaw the Great Duke go on Pilgrimage to a Church not far from the City, being accompany'd by above 1000 *Knez* and *Boyars* on Horſe-back, 10-a-breaſt. The Great Dutcheſs, with the Prince Royal and the Princeſs, follow'd in a large Chariot drawn by 16 White Horſes; and after her came 22 other Chariots full of Ladies of Quality, being guarded on both ſides by 100 *Strelitzes*, to keep the People from thronging up to the Chariot in which the Great Dutcheſs was, the Curtains of which, as well as of all the other Ladies, were drawn cloſe; but the Wind having blown thoſe of the Great Dutcheſſes a little on one ſide, I had the good Fortune to ſee her, ſhe being very handſome, and moſt ſumptuouſly attired.

The Great Duke's Pilgrimage.

The 23d, the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors and ours, had a fourth Conference with the *Czar*'s Commiſſioners, in which we put an end to our Negotiation. The *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors after their Audience of leave the 28th of *October*, departed from *Muſco* the 7th of *November*; ſome for *Livonia*, the reſt directly for *Sweden*.

Nov. the 19th. In our 5th and laſt Conference, we were aſſured that the *Czar* had granted to the Duke of *Holſtein* (what had been deny'd to many others) a free Paſſage through *Muſcovy* into *Perſia*; but that before his Ambaſſadors went thither, they muſt return to *Holſtein*, in order to bring back the Ratification of the Treaty concluded betwixt them.

The Czar grants the Demands of the Holſtein Ambaſſadors.

After we had thus happily finiſh'd our Negotiations, we diverted our ſelves with Feaſting amongſt ſome of our Friends; and the 22d ſaw a ſolemn Proceſſion, at which the Great Duke and Patriarch being preſent, a boarded Paſſage was made from the Caſtle to the Church, which was built in a Place where the Image of our Lady was found.

A Muſcovite Proceſſion.

Firſt of all went a Man with an Ewer and a Napkin. (2.) Three Men with Banners, half red, half white. (3.) 61 Prieſts in their Copes. (4.) Four Cherubins carried upon long Poles. (5.) A Man with a Lanthorn faſten'd to a long Pole. (6.) 40 Prieſts. (7.) 8 Prieſts carrying a great Croſs faſten'd in a great Piece of Timber, double-croſs'd. (8.) 100 Monks and Prieſts, every one with a painted Image in his hands. (9.) Two Men carrying a great Image covered. (10.) 40 Prieſts. (11.) Three Men holding a large Image, adorn'd with precious Stones. (12.) Another leſſer Image. (13.) Four Prieſts ſinging. (14.) Another Image. (15.) A Croſs of Diamonds carried in a Baſon. (16.) Two Men carrying each a lighted Taper. (17.) The Patriarch in his Potificalibus under a Blue Canopy, leaning upon the Arms of two Men, ſurrounded by about 50 Prieſts. (18.) The *Czar* under a red Canopy, ſupported by two Lords, and attended by a great number of *Boyars*. (19.) The Great Duke's Chair of State carried by two Men. (20.) The Great Duke's Horſe. (21.) His Sledge drawn by 2 White Horſes. 1634.

Dec. 12. We had another ſight of a *Crim Tartar* Embaſſy, who were to the number of 32 conducted to Publick Audience. Being come into the Audience-Hall, ſome ſate, others lay down, on the Ground, where they were regaled each with a Goblet of Mead. The two Heads of the Embaſſy had a Preſent of Brocade Garments made them; the others of Scarlet, and thoſe of the moſt inferiour Rank, with ordinary Stuffs, ſome Furs and Caps of Martin-skins; the Great Dukes of *Muſcovy* being always willing to court the Friendſhip of theſe barbarous Neighbours by ſuch like Trifles, rather than to expoſe their Frontiers to the South to their Inſolencies.

An Embaſſy of Crim Tartars.

The 16th being the day appointed for our Audience of leave, we were conducted to the Caſtle with the ſame Pomp as at our firſt Audience, except that, by reaſon of the Snow, we had inſtead of Horſes, two ſumptuous Sledges, one being lin'd with Crimſon Satin, the other with Damask of the ſame Colour, with White Bear-skins, and rich Tapeſtry-hangings over the Backs: the Harneſſes, which were adorn'd with Fox-tails hanging down, being ſuitable to the reſt: The *Priſtaffs*, each in his Sledge, went on the right hand of the Ambaſſadors. As ſoon as they came into the Great Duke's Preſence, they being deſired to ſit down upon a Seat prepared for that purpoſe, the Chancellor ſaid, *The* Grand Signior, Czar, *&c. tells you, the Lords Ambaſſadors, that His Highneſs, Duke* Frederick *of* Holſtein, *having ſent you to his Czariſh Majeſty with the Letters he has received, he has upon your Entreaty cauſed your Propoſitions to be communicated unto, and examined by his* Boyars *and Counſellors,* Knez Boris, *&c. upon which all ſides have agreed to the Treaty you have aſſigned. His Majeſty has alſo received the Letters you brought from* John George, *Elector of* Saxony, *the Contents whereof he has alſo conſidered: You ſhall immediately receive his Majeſty's Anſwer, both to the Duke* Frederick *of* Holſtein, *and to thoſe of the Elector* John George.

The Ambaſſadors Audience of Leave.

Whereupon he having delivered them the Letters, which the Ambaſſadors received with a low Reverence, the great Duke ſaid, *When the Ambaſſadors ſhall be arrived at the Court of the moſt ſerene* John George, *Elector of* Saxony, *and His Highneſs Duke* Frederick *of* Holſtein, *they will ſalute them from me.*

After which the Gentlemen of their Retinue being admitted to kiſs the *Czar*'s Hand; and the Ambaſſadors having given their moſt humble Thanks to His Majeſty for all the Favours they had received at his Hands, took their leaves; and being reconducted in the uſual manner to their Lodgings, were entertained with 46 Diſhes of Fiſh, boil'd, broil'd, and fry'd in Oil (it being their Faſt) Knez *Iwan Wolf* being preſent at the Entertainment, who as well as the Groom of the *Czar*'s Stables, and the Butler, had each a Cup of Vermilion gilt preſented them by the Ambaſſadors, and the reſt of the Attendants, being 16 in number 32 *Rubles*, amounting to about 64 *French* Crowns.

The next day our *Priſtaffs*, with their Interpreters, came to ask us how many Horſes we ſhould ſtand in need of for our Journey; and having been told that we ſhould want 80, each of them received a Preſent of a large Drinking-Cup, Vermilion-gilt; the like was ſent to the Head-Secretary of the Chancery, and ſome *Boyars*.

The next day a new *Priſtaff*, named *Bogidan Fzergewitz Gomodef*, was preſented to us, who was to conduct us to the Frontiers.

The 22d, The Lord Treaſurer's Secretary brought the Preſents deſign'd for the Ambaſſadors, and their Retinue, from the *Czar*, they were carried by 12 *Muſcovites*. Eleven *Zimners* (each of which contains 20 Pair) of the beſt kind were for the Ambaſſadors;

1635. The Officers, Gentlemen, Pages, Harbinger, the Clerk of the Kitchin, and the Master of the Waggons, had each a Zimmer of Martin-skins for their share; the rest had some two, some but one pair allotted them. The Secretary had a Cup Vermilion-gilt for his Pains, and the Bearers 30 Crowns. The *Czar* also did us the Favour to desire us to stay till after *Christmas*, which we excused, being desirous to lose no time in order to our return into *Germany*; but considering that we were hereafter to travel into *Persia*, *Michael Cordes* was sent with 6 more to *Nisa*, with Orders to build such Ships as we should stand in need of upon the *Wolga*, and the *Caspian* Sea.

The Czar's Presents to the Ambassadors.

They leave Musco. *December* the 24th, being the day appointed for our departure from *Musco*, our two *Pristaffs* came with the same Sledges we had made use of at our last Audience, and some *Strelitzes* to conduct us a little way out of Town. We travell'd that day, and the next following night 90 Versts (18 *German* Leagues) to a Village call'd *Klin*, where we had a Sermon, it being *Christmas*-day: In the Afternoon, we prosecuted our Journey, and travelling all night, arrived the 26th at *Twere*, and the next day to *Turfock*, and the 31st to *Novogorod*, being 120 *German* Leagues from *Musco*, which we travell'd in 7 days; the *Muscovite* Horse being used frequently to travel in the Winter-Season, when the Roads are very plain, 12 *German* Miles without drawing Bit.

Come to Klin.

Twere, Turfock, Novogorod.

1635. The 1st of *January*, we set out from *Novogorod* for *Mokriza*, 36 *Versts* (7 *German* Leagues.)

Mokriza.

Twerin. The 2d we came to *Twerin*, 6 Leagues and an half.

Orlin. The 3d we travell'd 6 Leagues to *Orlin*.

Lilienhagen. The 4th we travell'd day and night 12 Leagues, 8 to *Sariza*, and 4 to *Lilienhagen*.

Narva. The next day we got 7 Leagues farther to *Narva*.

Revel. The 7th the Ambassadors set out from *Narva* (having sent their Baggage before) for *Revel*, where we arrived the 10th, and staid there for 3 Weeks; but the *Baltick* Sea continuing unnavigable, it was resolved to prosecute our Journey by Land, through *Prussia*, *Pomerania*, and *Mecklenburgh*.

Accordingly the Ambassadors having bestowed most of their Train to board with Mr. *Henry Kosen*, left *Revel* the 30th of *January*, and came the 2d of *February* to *Pernau*, a small Place, but strengthned by a good Castle, fortified after the *Muscovite* Fashion. It lies upon a River of the same Name; which arising out of a great Forest near the Castle of *Weissenstein*, exonerates it self into the *Baltick*, not far from this Place. It is numbred among the *Hanseatick* Towns.

Pernau.

The *Swedes* took it from the *Poles* 1562. who recovered it 1565. The *Muscovites* made themselves Masters of it 1575. but were forced to surrender it to the *Poles*, with the rest of *Livonia*, 1617. The *Swedes* took it, and remain'd in Possession of it ever since. We met here with the Countess Dowager *de la Tour*, of the Family of *Hardeck* in *Austria*, who did us all imaginable Honour, and gave us Letters for Count *Matthew de la Tour* her Father-in-Law.

To Riga. The 6th we made our Entry into *Riga*, where we were feasted by the Governor, and several others of our Friends.

To Mittau. The 13th we set forward from *Riga* towards *Mittau* in *Courland*, where we arrived the 14th about noon, in Company of a certain Ambassador of *France*; who being sent by the *French* King, *Lewis* the 13th, into *Muscovy*, his Collegue, *James Rousel*, had found means by the ill Offices he did him with the Patriarch, to get him banish'd into *Siberia*, from whence he was now returning into his own Country, being not above 36 years of Age.

Courland. The small City of *Mittau* is situate in *Semigallia*, a Province of *Courland*, being the Residence of the Dukes, within 6 Leagues of *Riga*. This Dutchy was anciently part of *Livonia*, from which it is separated by the River *Dune* or *Dwina*; but when the Master of the *Teutonick* Order was forc'd to submit to the Protection of the Crown of *Poland*, *Godard Kettle*, of *Nassalrath*, the last Master of the *Teutonick* Order in *Livonia*, was made Duke of *Courland* while it was a Fief of that Crown, whose Posterity enjoy it to this day.

We travell'd the same Night 3 Leagues farther to a Village, call'd *Dobben*, where we were forced to sup upon hard Cheese, brown Bread, and sour Beer.

Come to Badvo in Poland. The 15th we made 7 Leagues to *Badvo*, on the Frontiers of *Poland*, where we were very splendidly entertain'd by an ancient Gentleman, whose Name was *John Amdod*, both that night and the next day till Afternoon; so that we could go no farther that day than to *Hasshof*, 4 Leagues from thence, where we were fain to go to Rest without a Supper. 1635.

The 17th we travel'd 6 Leagues further to *Waltzan*.

On the 18th 6 Leagues to *Memel*, a pleasant little City at the very Mouth of the Lake of *Courland*, called *Courisshef*. Its Harbour is very commodious, and the Castle strongly fortified, being surrounded by the River *Tange*, which falls here into the Lake. It was built 1250, and by the Fryars of the Order of *Livonia*, sold to the Master of the Order of *Prussia*; and with that Dutchy since come into the possession of the Electors of *Brandenburgh*, by vertue of the Truce concluded 1635. betwixt *Sweden* and *Poland*. *Memel.*

The 20th we came to *Bulcapen*, 5 Leagues from *Memel*; and the 21st travell'd 8 Leagues to *Coningsberg*. This City, which is the Capital of the Ducal *Prussia*, formerly under the Jurisdiction of *Poland*, is situate upon the River *Pregel*. It was built by the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order in the 13th Century, and by them call'd *Coningsberg*, (i. e. *Mount Royal*) in honour of *Ottacurus* King of *Bohemia*, who had sent them considerable Supplies against the neighbouring *Pagans*, in the Year 1300. That part of the City which is call'd *Lebekiah's*, was added to it, and 1380 the *Kniphof*; each of which has its peculiar Magistrates and Jurisdiction. The Castle, or Ducal Palace, was built in the last Age, by *George Frederick* of *Brandenburgh*, then Duke of *Prussia*: Here is to be seen a Hall most artificially built, without Pillars, being 274 foot long, and 59 broad. The Library, which contains many most excellent Books, and among the rest certain Manuscripts of *Albert* of *Brandenburgh* first Duke of *Prussia*, who also founded an University here. The River *Pregel* rises in *Lithuania*, and disemboguing about a League below the City into a Gulph call'd *Frishaf*, draws a considerable Commerce to this City, and consequently makes it very populous; abundance of Oak, Soap-ashes, Wax, Honey, Mead, Leather, Furs, Wheat, Rye, Flax and Hemp, being brought hither from *Poland* and *Lithuania*: In exchange of which, the *English* and *Dutch* bring either Iron, Lead, Tin, Cloath, Wine, Salt, Butter or Cheese. The *German* is the general Language here, tho' most of the Inhabitants understand also the *Polish*, *Lithuanian*, or *Courland* Tongues. *Bulcapen.* *Coningsberg.*

We went from *Coningsberg* the 24th, and came the next Day to *Elbing*, a City situate upon a River of the same Name, in the Royal *Prussia*. It was considerably strengthned in its Fortifications by the *Swedes* whilst they were in possession of it, of the Fort of *Pilau*, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, at the entrance of the Gulph of *Frishaf*, were also in the possession of the *Poles*, this place might be considerably improved in its Traffick. *Elbing.*

The 27th. we arrived at *Dantzick*, where during our stay of 17 Days, we were well entertain'd both by the Magistrates and several of the Inhabitants. Its origin, tho' not of a very ancient Date, is uncertain; some attributing it to the *Danes*, others to the Dukes of *Pomerania*. Certain it is that it was for a considerable time in the possession of the last, afterwards by the *Poles*, and then by the Masters of the *Teutonick* Order in *Prussia*, from whom this City having redeem'd it self 1454, submitted to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, with a Reserve however of many Privileges; for they have their Seat and Suffrage in the Diet of that Kingdom, are govern'd by their own Magistrates, who finally determine all Criminal Causes without Appeal, and all Civil, not exceeding 1000 Livres; and with the Approbation of the Council of 100, impose necessary Taxes upon the Inhabitants. It is situate upon the *Vistula* and *Rodauna*, and tho' the River is so shallow, that no Ships of any Burthen can come up to the City, it is computed, that one year with another 730000 Tuns (2 of which make one Last) of Wheat, are exported from thence. It is one of the 4 Cities that have the Superintendency in the *Hanseatick* League. *Dantzick.*

March 16. we departed from *Dantzick*, and came the 25th to *Stettin*, the Capital City of *Pomerania*, situate upon a Descent of a Hill under 53 Degrees 27 Minutes Latitude, and 38 Degrees 45 Minutes Longitude. The River *Oder* hereabouts emits 4 Branches, one of which keeping its Name, runs by this City; the other 3 dispersing themselves through the Country, are joyn'd by 60 several Bridges, which put together are 996 *German* Ells long, and 24 foot broad, with a fair paved Causey betwixt them, guarded by a Royal Fort. *John Frederick* Duke of *Pomerania* laid the first Foundation of the Palace, a noble Structure, and famous *Stettin.*

1635. mous before the Wars for its Library and other Rarities. 'Tis one of the *Hanſeatick* Towns, and formerly enjoy'd great Privileges, moſt of which are loſt ſince the *Swedes* became Maſters of it, who however have much ſtrengthened its Fortifications.

Roſtock. *March* 29. we came to *Roſtock*. This City is ſituate upon the River *Warne* in the Dutchy of *Mecklenburgh*, but becauſe the Ships are forced to unload at the mouth of the River, call'd *Warnimunde*, it is not very fit for Traffick. It was built 1160 out of the Ruins of *Keſſin*, deſtroyed by *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxony*. Its Univerſity is one of the moſt ancient in *Germany*, being founded 1419. The *Swedes* took it 1631. from the *Imperialiſts*, who about 2 Years before had made themſelves Maſters of it, and the whole Dutchy of *Mecklenburgh*.

Wiſmar. The next following Day we travell'd from *Roſtock* to *Wiſmar*, being 7 Leagues. It owes its Origin to *Henry* of *Jeruſalem* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, who made it a City 1266. Both its Port and Situation are exceeding commodious, being ſeated upon the *Baltick*, amongſt the Fens, its Citadel being fortified with 5 regular Baſtions. *Adolphus Frederick* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, took it from the *Imperialiſts* 1632. with the aſſiſtance of the *Swedes*, who ever ſince remain in poſſeſſion of it.

The laſt of *March* we came to the Caſtle of *Schonberg*, belonging to the Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, from *Lubeck.* whence the Ambaſſadors went *April* 1. to *Lubeck*.

This City is ſituate betwixt the Rivers of *Trave* and *Wagenitz*, under 28 Degrees 20 Minutes Longitude, and 54 Degrees 48 Minutes Latitude, about 2 Leagues from the Sea ſide. It lies in that part of *Holſtein* which is call'd *Wagria*, and has the firſt Rank in the Supergiſters of which are kept in this City. Its place in the Diet of the Empire, is alternatively with the City of *Worms*, its Contributions it is to pay to the Empire, towards the Charges of the Journey to *Rome*, amounting to 1980 Livres *per Month*. We went the ſame Afternoon from hence to *Arnsbeck*, the Reſi- *Arnsbeck.* dence of *Joachim Erneſt* Duke of *Holſtein Sunderburgh*, who having Married our Princes Siſter, a Coach with 6 Horſes was ſent to fetch the Ambaſſadors to the Caſtle, where they Supp'd at the Duke's Table, and lay all Night.

The next Day after Breakfaſt we continued our Journey to *Pretz*, a place famous for a rich and ſump- *Pretz.* tuous Convent of young *Proteſtant* Ladies of Noble Families, who are maintain'd here, till they are Married.

The 6th of *April* towards Noon we came to *Kiel*, ſi- *Kiel.* tuate upon the *Baltick* Sea, famous for its Fair held there about *Twelfthide*; and arrived the ſame Night ſafely at *Gottorp*, where the Ambaſſadors gave the next *Gottorp.* Day a full account of their Tranſactions, to the Duke our Maſter.

CHAP. II.

The Ambaſſadors of the Duke of Holſtein's *Travels into* Muſcovy.

HIS Highneſs having underſtood the good Succeſs of this Embaſſy, in relation to their Paſſage through *Muſcovy* into *Perſia*, he ordered all the neceſſary Preparations to be made for the ſecond Embaſſy, and the Retinue to be conſiderably augmented, which was to conſiſt of a Steward, a Secretary of the Embaſſy, 4 Gentlemen of the Chamber, 8 other Gentlemen, among whom were the Miniſter and Interpreter; 4 Pa- The Ambaſſadors Train for the Second Voyage. ges of the Chamber, 4 other Pages, 4 Grooms of the Chamber, 4 Muſicians, a Controuler, a Harbinger, 2 Sumpter-men, an Overſeer of the Servants, 2 Trumpeters, 2 Watchmakers, 8 Halberdiers, who were of ſeveral Trades, 10 Footmen, a Clark of the Kitchin, 2 Head and 1 Under-Cook, a Maſter of the Waggons and his Servant, 10 Servants for the Gentlemen, 3 Interpreters, for the *Muſcovian*, *Perſian*, and *Turkiſh* Languages; 12 Seamen, 30 Soldiers, and 3 *Muſcovite* Officers with their Servants to be taken into our Service in *Muſcovy*.

All Summer and part of Autumn being ſpent in providing what was thought neceſſary for ſo long a Voyage, and ſo great an Embaſſy, we ſet out from *Hamborough*, *October* 21. 1635. and came the 24th to *Lubeck*; where having ſpent 2 Days in embarking our Baggage and 12 Horſes at *Travemund*, we went aboard a new Ship the 27th, and ſet Sail with a fair Wind the 28th, but heightned by Noon, and turn'd to a Tem- They Embark. peſt by Night, which forced us upon the *Daniſh* Coaſt by the 29th, which our Maſter miſtaking for the Iſle of *Bornholm*, we had been infallibly loſt, if by Break of Day we had not diſcovered Land.

Having altered our Courſe, we came in ſight of the Iſle of *Bornholm* by 9 of the Clock in the Morning, and thus continued our Courſe with a brisk Gale and all the Sail we could make, till 10 a Clock at Night, when every Body diſpoſing himſelf to Reſt, as thinking themſelves out of danger, the Ship ſtruck on a ſudden upon a Rock, which was covered with Water, with ſuch violence, that every Body thought we had Are in danger of being Shipwrecked. been at the end both of our Lives and Voyage. The Darkneſs of the Night was no ſmall addition to our Affliction, we put out our Lanthorn, and gave Signs of Diſtreſs by the Diſcharge of ſeveral Muſquets, but in vain, the Ship ſoon after beginning to lie on one ſide; ſo that all the Night long there was nothing to be heard among us, but moſt dreadful Outcries and Lamentations, the Maſter of the Ship himſelf being reduced to Deſpair, weeping bitterly among the reſt.

About One in the Morning we diſcovered a Fire, which made the Ambaſſadors order the Boat to be caſt out; but before they could get into it, it was ſo full of water, that they were forced to continue in this diſmal poſture till Break of Day, when the Wind being ſomewhat abated, and finding our ſelves near the Iſle of *Oeland*, 2 Fiſhermen came on board us, who, for a good Reward, landed the Ambaſſadors firſt, and ſome of their Retinue afterwards.

About Noon the People of the Iſland came with their Boats to get off the Ship, and whilſt they were buſie in accompliſhing it, the Wind turning to the N. W. raiſed the Waters to that degree, that we might paſs without much danger into the Sea, whither we were no ſooner gotten, but the Wind veering about to the S. W. carried us fairly through the Streights of *Cal-* Come to *Calmar.* *mar*, a Paſſage very dangerous even in the midſt of the Summer, by reaſon of the many Sand-banks thereabouts.

Here we ſtay'd for the Ambaſſadors coming; who having travell'd by Land, ſince they left the Ship, reimbark'd *November* 1. on board us, near an old ruin'd Fort, call'd *Ferſtat*. So ſoon as we came to *Calmar*, one of our Pages was diſpatch'd to *Gottorp* to get new Credential Letters, the others having been quite ſpoiled by the Sea water. Some Debates there were alſo here, whether we ſhould continue our Voyage by Land or by Sea; and the laſt being reſolved on, we provided our ſelves with 2 Pilots, who conducted us through the Sands into the open Sea.

The 3d we paſs'd within ſight of the Rock call'd, *The Swediſh Lady*, 8 Leagues from *Calmar*; and about Noon diſcovered the Caſtle of *Bornholm*, in the Iſle of *Oeland*. Towards Night, when we had ſcarce doubled the Point of the Iſle, there aroſe ſuch a Tempeſt from the N. E. that our Ship was almoſt full of Water, and to our great Misfortune, were forced to ſupply the defect of our Pump, which was out of order, with our Kettles and other Veſſels, to empty it. It continued till the next Day about Noon, when to our good fortune, it began to change, and carried us by Night in ſight of *Gothland*. This Iſle, which compre- *To Gothland.* hends 18 *German* Leagues in length, and near 4 in breadth, lies juſt oppoſite to the Province of *Schonen*, at 58 degrees Latitude: It is full of Rocks, Juniper, and Fir-trees, and has on the Eaſtſide *Oſtergaar*, *Sle-*

1635. *daf*, *Sandnig*, *Narvig*, and *Heiligoholm*, all very good Harbours. *Ostergaar* is a small Isle at an equal distance from the 2 Points of the great one, having a convenient Harbour after you are pass'd the Sands, which reach a good way into the Sea. *Sleid.af* lies to the Mouth of *Ostergaar*; here the Ships lie safe against all the Winds, being sheltred by 4 Sand-hills, which break the violence of the Waves. This Island has but one Town, call'd *Wisby*, but above 500 Farms; the Churches being built at a Leagues distance off one another, (like as in the Isle of *Oeland*) the Steeples of which, are sure Guides to the Ships at Sea. The Inhabitants are of *Danish* Offspring, tho' now subject to the *Swedes*, unto whom they pay yearly 50 Tuns of Pitch. Their chief Commodities are Cattle, Wood, and especially Deal-boards. I had a mind to take a view of the Town of *Wisby*, which being built upon the descent of a Hill near the Seaside, and fortified with some Bastions, together with the Ruines of 14 Churches, Houses, Gates and Walls of Freestone and Marble, shew it to have been much larger and more considerable than it now is; it being generally reported, that some time after the 8th Century, when its first Foundation was laid; it contained above 12000 Inhabitants, most Merchants, besides Foreigners, who flock'd thither in great numbers from all the Northern parts to Traffick. The first Regulation of the Maritime Affairs relating to the *Hanseatick* League, being said to be made here; but the Port is now quite lost.

The 5th the Wind began to increase, which made us choose the main Sea towards Night.

Tegeroort. The 6th meeting with a *Dutch* Vessel, she bid us steer our Course towards the Isle of *Tageroort*, which we reach'd before Night, but were forced back to Sea again.

The 7th by Noon, we were again come to the Point of *Tageroort*, but the Master of the Vessel mistaking it for *Oergensholm*, engaged us imprudently in a very dangerous Passage, call'd the *Hondesshuig*, out of which we had enough to do to escape by Night, when he perceived his Error by the Church-Steeple. All that Afternoon we kept within sight of *Livonia*, and came towards Night within sight of *Narga*: *Narga.* At the Entrance of the Harbour, our Master and Mate could not be perswaded either to go into, or come to an Anchor before *Tageroort*, but notwithstanding the Tempestuous Weather, would keep the main Sea; so that we had the misfortune to see both our Main-mast and the Mizen, and soon after part of the Forecastle taken away by the Winds.

The worst of all was, that on the 8th we found we had pass'd the Harbour of *Revel*, and the Tempest encreas'd to that degree, that Heaven and Earth seem'd to be in danger of being turn'd topsie-turvy; we must infallibly have been lost then, had not one of our Seamen in the Afternoon discovered *Hogland*, where we cast Anchor about 7 at Night at 19 Fathom Water. The Ambassadors going on shoar to take a view of the Country, who whilst they were debating whether they should go forward by Sea to *Narva*, or return towards *Revel*, comes the Master of the Ship about 9 a Clock and tells the Ambassadors, that the Wind being turn'd East, they were in the greatest danger that could be of being forc'd on shoar, unless they weigh'd Anchor immediately, and steer'd their Course for *Revel*; the Ambassadors having given him for Answer, That he might do what he thought best; and running immediately on board, they began to weigh Anchor, but in less than half an Hour the Wind rise again with such violence, that the Master changes his Mind, and resolved to cast Anchor again, but to no great purpose, it being impossible to fix our Anchors time enough to avoid Ship-wreck; so that nothing was left us in this Extremity, but to have recourse to our Boat, in which the Ambassadors, with some of their Retinue, were carried on shoar; the Ship striking not long after several times against a Rock, split and sunk; however, all our Men, the greatest part of our Goods, and 7 Horses were saved, whereof 2 died the next Day. *Are Ship-wrec'd.*

We sheltred our selves in some miserable Cottages inhabited by *Livonians*, where we dry'd our Cloaths.

The 10th we bestow'd in getting out some more of our Goods, especially in the Afternoon, when the Tempest being somewhat allay'd, we laid our Cloaths, Books, and other Goods, to dry in the Air. Our greatest Loss was a Clock valued at 1000 *l.* Sterling, which was broken to pieces by the Horses, struggling to get loose. Our next Misfortune was the want of Necessaries, for our Provisions being either lost or spoil'd by the Sea water, we were in great fear of being reduc'd to the extremity of feeding upon Barks of Trees, as had happened to some that were forced to Winter in this Island. We supply'd our present Necessities with what little Bisket we had saved, which being soak'd in Salt-water, we boil'd in fresh with Fennel and Cummin-seed, which we made into a Pottage. One Day we had the good fortune to catch as many Fish in a little Brook, as furnish'd us with two good Meals. 1635.

The Isle of *Hogland* (so named from its height) is to be seen at a great distance at Sea, being about 3 Leagues in length, and one in breadth, covered all over with Rocks, Fir-trees, and Thorns. We saw indeed some Hares, but our Dogs could not overtake them through the Thorny Woods, and cross the Rocks. *The Isle of Hogland.*

The 17th the Ambassadors having got 2 Fisherboats to transport them to the Continent, embark'd each with a Retinue of 5 Persons; but it being 12 Leagues over, we were in no less danger than before, the Boats being very old, and the Sails ragged, and so order'd that they were useless unless with a fair Wind; for scarce had we sail'd thus above 5 Leagues when the Wind turning against us, the Fishermen would have return'd from whence we came, had we not by fair Promises prevail'd upon them to row us to an Island which was within half a League of us, which we reach'd before Night, and stay'd there till next Day, being forced to be contented to Sup upon a piece of *Milan* Cheese without Bread.

The Wind turning fair again the next Day, we sail'd about 2 Leagues without any Obstacle, till a sudden Blast from the North turn'd the Vessel in which I was with the Ambassador *Brugman*, upon one side, so that it took Water, the Fishermen having enough to do to save it, by letting down the Sails, and running to the other side of the Boat; we had at least 3 of them in 2 Hours, which put us to no small danger, our Boat having besides 8 Persons all our Plate, and abundance of Luggage in it; but, what is most surprizing of all, is, that the other Boat, in which the Ambassador *Crusius* was, tho' within a Pistol-shot of us, felt nothing of all this. Thus, being come within half a League of the Continent, the Wind veer'd about to the South, so that our Boatsmen were ready to turn back again, had not the promise of 3 Pints of *Aqua vitæ* enlivened them to betake themselves to their Oars, which they did with so much alacrity, that in a little time they row'd us ashoar, where we landed the 18th at Night in the Province of *Esthonia*, after we had for 22 Days together been exposed to the mercy of the merciless Element of the *Baltick* Sea. *A dangerous Passage.* *Land in Livonia.*

The 22d two Barks being to our good fortune forc'd into *Hogland* by stress of Weather, those we had left there took this opportunity to transport themselves and the remaining Baggage and Horses to the Continent, where they safely arrived the 24th, and after some Days stay to refresh our selves, we went from hence to *Revel*, whither we came *December* 2. *Come to Revel.*

Our whole Train being now got together, the Ambassadors thought fit to publish his Highness's Order, which they had brought seal'd along with them, for the regulating of our Family, notwithstanding which frequent Quarrels happen'd betwixt them and the Apprentices of the City, in the Night time, in one of which, *Isaac Mercier* a *French* Man, who waited on the Ambassador *Brugman* in his Chamber, was kill'd *February* 11. with an Iron-bar, as he was coming to the relief of some of our Domesticks that were engaged with the Apprentices. 1636. *One of the Ambassadors Domesticks kill'd.*

Revel is the Capital City of the Province of *Esthonia* in *Livonia*, under 50 Degrees 25 Minutes Latitude, and 48 Degrees 30 Minutes Longitude, upon the *Baltick Sea*. It acknowledges for its Founder *Wolmar* II. King of *Denmark*, 1230. And *Wolmar* III. sold it to the Master of the Order in *Livonia*, 1347. About 100 Years since, being hardly press'd by the *Muscovites*, it surrendred to *Eric* of *Sweden*, and endured 2 memorable Sieges, 1570. and 1577. against the *Muscovites*, who were forced to retreat from thence with shame.

The Castle is built upon a Rock steepy on all sides, except towards the City, and is regularly fortified: It has been a Member of the *Hanseatick* League above 300 Years, and for some time had the Superintendency of the College of *Novogorod*, in conjunction with the City of *Lubeck*: till having broken with the *Hanseatick* Towns, 1550. and the *Muscovites* made themselves *A Description of Revel.*

1635. ſelves Maſters of *Narva*, about the ſame time they tranſplanted their Trade to that place. Many Priviledges were granted to this place by the Maſters of the *Livonian* Order; which, tho' confirm'd to them by ſeveral of the enſuing Treaties, have been conſiderably clipt by the *Swedes*.

The Inhabitants profeſs the *Lutheran* Religion, their Eccleſiaſtical Affairs being managed by a Conſiſtory and Superintendent. Their Political Conſtitution is *Democratical*, the Magiſtrate being obliged to take the Adviſe of the Chief Men of all the Corporations and Profeſſions, in Matters of moment.

1636. About the beginning of the 15th Century, a certain Merchant of this City built a fair Monaſtery (the Ruines of which are to be ſeen to this Day) not far from the Sea ſide, dedicated to St. *Bridget*, conſiſting both of Religious Men and Women; I ſaw the Book of the Foundation of this Convent, which tells you, That the Fryars and Nuns had found out a method of expreſſing their Intentions to one another by certain Signs, of which there is a ſmall Dictionary annexed to it.

Mark-Language.

Livonia borders to the Eaſt upon *Muſcovy*, to the South upon *Samogitia*, *Lithuania* and *Pruſſia*, on the North it has a Gulph of the *Baltick Sea*, by which it is ſeparated from *Sweden* and *Finland*; and to the Weſt the *Baltick Sea*. Its length is 120 *German* Leagues, and its breadth 40. It is divided into 3 Provinces, *Eſthonia*, *Lettia*, and *Courland*; the firſt being ſubdivided into 5 Diſtricts, call'd *Harric*, *Wirland*, *Allentaken*, *Jerwe* and *Wiecks*; its Capital City is *Revel*, *Riga* of *Lettia*, and *Goldingen* of *Courland*. *Livonia* was in former Ages ſubject to the *German* Empire upon a double account. Firſt, Becauſe the Maſters of that Order, ever ſince they conquered it from the Infidels, were Subjects of *Germany*: And Secondly, Becauſe the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, with his Suffragans, and the Maſter of the Order, after they had freed themſelves from the Subjection of the Maſter of the *Pruſſian* Order, were 1513. received among the Princes of the Empire; but that famous *Ruſſian* Tyrant *Joan Baſilowitz*, making a powerful irruption 1550. into *Livonia*, they ſollicited for Succours from the Empire; but none being to be expected, they made their Applications to the King of *Denmark*, and upon his refuſal, to *Eric* of *Sweden*, who promiſing them aſſiſtance againſt the *Muſcovites*, provided they would ſubmit themſelves under his Juriſdiction, the City of *Revel*, with the neighbouring Nobility, (who were moſt expoſed to danger) ſeparated themſelves from the Maſter of the Order, and put themſelves 1560. under the *Swediſh* Protection.

A Deſcription of *Livonia*.

The Year before the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, with the Coadjutor of the Order, were enter'd into a League with the *Poles*: But *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, their King, ſeeing that *Revel* had ſubmitted to the *Swedes*, refus'd to execute the ſaid Treaty, unleſs the Archbiſhop, and Maſter of the Order, would acknowledge the Sovereignty of *Poland*; which they were forced to conſent to, and accordingly 1561. put all the Acts and Privileges they had obtained from the Empire and Pope into the Hands of Prince *Radzivil*, the *Poliſh* Commiſſioner, unto whom they likewiſe took the Oath of Fidelity. *Godard Ketler*, the then Maſter of the Order, had *Courland*, with the Title of a Dutchy beſtow'd upon him, and his Poſterity, to hold it in Fief of the Crown of *Poland*, 1562. By the enſuing Treaty between the *Poles* and *Muſcovites* 1582. the firſt had all *Livonia* granted them by the laſt, except what was in the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*, who ſince that time are got into the poſſeſſion of all except *Courland*.

Livonia.

Its Fertility.

Livonia is a Country abounding in all ſorts of Grain, but eſpecially in Wheat, the Grounds having been much improved, and fitted for Tillage of late Years, by ſetting the great Foreſts on Fire, the Aſhes ſerving inſtead of Dung, which has been obſerv'd to produce very good Dung for three or four Years after. They have likewiſe abundance of Cattle and Fowl, every thing of that kind being much cheaper here than in *Germany*; for we uſed frequently to buy a Hare for Four-pence, and a Heath-Cock for Six-pence, and other things proportionable.

Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants of *Livonia* were involved in the Darkneſs of *Paganiſm* till the 12th Century, when the Knowledge of the Goſpel was firſt introduced there, by certain Merchants of *Bremen*. For about the Year 1158. one of their Ships being by ſtreſs of Weather forced into the Gulph of *Riga*, the Merchants aboard her approving of the Situation of the Place, reſolved to eſtabliſh both their Commerce, and the Chriſtian Religion here. *Meinard*, a Monk of *Sigeberg*, was the 1636. firſt Biſhop of *Livonia* 1170. He was ſucceeded by *Bertold*, who endeavouring to propagate Chriſtianity by Force of Arms, was kill'd 1186. with more Chriſtians.

Albert his Succeſſor, a Canon of *Bremen*, laid the firſt Foundation of the City, and *Riga*, and the *Livonian* Order, call'd the *Friars of the Short Sword*. They obſerv'd the ſame Rules as the *Templers*, and were call'd the *Friars*, or, *Knights of the Short Sword*, becauſe they wore on their White Cleaks, a *Red*, *Short Sword*, with a Star of the ſame Colour, which afterwards they chang'd into Two *Short Swords*, Saltarwiſe. They had, by Authority from Pope *Innocent* the 3d, a Third Part allow'd them of what they ſhould conquer from the Infidels; but finding it a hard Task to cope with them alone, they join'd with the Order of St. *Mary* of *Jeruſalem* in *Pruſſia* 1239. ſince which time the Maſter of *Livonia* had a dependance on the Grand Maſter of *Pruſſia*.

The *Livonian* Knights.

The greateſt part of the Two Provinces of *Eſthonia* and *Lettia*, is inhabited by the Poſterity of the Native Barbarians, who are Slaves to the Nobility and Chief Inhabitants of the Cities; which is the reaſon they call them *Unteuſthe*, *i. e.* no *Germans*, becauſe they were of a different Off-ſpring from the *Germans* their Conquerors. The ordinary Women of *Eſthonia* wear their Petticoats without any Pleats like Seams, and on their Backs little braſs Chains, with Counters of the ſame Metal hanging at the ends. Thoſe who would be thought better than the reſt, have a Necklace of Plates of Silver, of the bigneſs of a Crown or half Crown, but no thicker than the Back of a Knife, hanging down from their Necks, and upon their Breaſts, one as big as a Trencher. Both Men and Women are clad either in coarſe Woollen Stuff, or Linen; their Shooes being either of the Bark of Trees, or raw Leather. Maids wear nothing on their Head, but let their Hair hang careleſly like the Men.

The Marriage-Ceremonies in *Livonia*.

Their Ceremonies of Marriage are peculiar to themſelves: For, if a Country-fellow marries one of another Town, or Village, he goes thither on Horſe-back, ſets her behind him, and makes her embrace him with the right hand: He holds a Stick cleft at the end with a braſs Piece of Money in it in his hand, which he gives to him that opens the Wicket through which he is to paſs. Before him rides a Bagpipe-Player, and two of his Friends with naked Swords, who give two ſtrokes therewith croſs the door of the Houſe where the Marriage is to be conſummated; and as ſoon as the Bridegroom is ſeated, they put one of the Swords in a Beam over his Head, to prevent Charms, as they ſay; for which reaſon alſo the Bride ſcatters many little Pieces of red Stuffs on the Road, eſpecially on the Croſs-ways, and upon the Graves of Children, that died without Baptiſm, and are commonly buried on the High Way. The Bride ſits at Table with a Veil over her Face; but ſo ſoon as the Gueſts are well ſeated, they both riſe and go to Bed, and return in two hours after, and ſit down with the reſt: The Feaſt is concluded with Dancing, and Drinking, till they drop down among one another upon the Floor.

They are ſcarce Chriſtians.

Tho' the Chriſtian Religion was introduced here in the 12th Century, moſt of the *Livonians* are ſtill ſo addicted to their *Pagan* Superſtitions, as ſcarce to deſerve the Name of Chriſtians. 'Tis true they call themſelves Chriſtians, and moſt Villages are provided with Churches and Miniſters; yet if you except Baptiſm, they're quite ignorant of what elſe belongs to true Chriſtianity; for they rarely frequent Sermons, and ſcarce ever communicate, unleſs it be by Force, or for ſome End. 'Tis true, the Negligence and Ignorance of their Clergy has not a little contributed to the Obduration of theſe poor Wretches; but, of late Years, the Kings of *Sweden* have been more careful to have them inſtructed in the Tenets of the Chriſtian Religion than before; but their Slavery, which is almoſt inſupportable, ſeems to render them quite negligent in any thing relating to a future Life, of which they have beſides this but a very odd Notion.

Their Opinion of a future Life.

This puts me in mind of a *Livonian* Woman, who putting a Needle and Thread into her Husband's Grave, told the Standers by, *That ſhe ſhould be unwilling to let her Husband appear in rent Cloaths in the other World*. This makes them prefer the Neceſſaries of this Life before all the reſt; ſo that when they are to take an Oath at Law, for the deciding of any differences, inſtead of intereſting their Salvation, they have no other reſpect but to their Temporal Advantages; and, conſequently, take the following Oath:

1636.

Their Oath in Law Suits.

I, N. N. *am here present before Thee, since thou, O Judge, desirest to know, and askest me, Whether this Land on which I now am, is God's and mine, with a just Title? I swear to God, and his Saints; and accordingly God judge me at the last day, That this Land belongs to me of Right; That it is God's and mine, and, That my Father had been possess'd of it, and had enjoy'd it a long time: And, if the Oath I take prove false, I consent that the Curse of God fall upon my Body and Soul, upon my Children, and whatsoever appertains to me, even to the Ninth Generation.*

About *Riga*, when the Peasants are to take an Oath, they lay a Turf upon their Heads, with a white Stick in their Hands, expressing thereby, That if they swear falsly, their Children and Cattle may become as dry as the Turf and Stick. Of late Years, as I told you before, the Ministers have been very industrious to root out these Weeds of Idolatry among them; for which purpose the Catechism, Epistles, and Gospels, with their Explications, have been translated into their Native Tongue; but they are so deeply entangled in their Superstitions, that they still continue to do their Devotions upon some Hill or Tree chosen for that purpose: In the last they make Incisions, which they bind up again with red Stuff, and so pay their Devotions, which tend to nothing else but Temporal Blessings. Betwixt *Revel* and *Narva*, 2 Leagues from *Kunda*, there is an old ruin'd Chapel, whither these Peasants go on Pilgrimage upon the Day of our Ladies Visitation. It has a great Stone in the middle, round which some dance, others kneel, after they have put by their Cloaths: This done they produce their Offerings of Fruits and Flesh, and recommend themselves and their Cattle to its Protection. The whole Ceremony is concluded with Eating and Drinking, and commonly with Quarrelling.

Their Superstitions.

Sorcery.

Sorcery is a thing so generally received among 'em, that it is transplanted by the Parents to their Children, which they think absolutely necessary for the Preservation of their Cattle: For which reason it is, that to elude the Effects of it, they never kill a Beast, but a piece of it is cast away; they never brew, but somewhat of it is spill'd, that the Sorcery may fall upon it: They have also a Custom of rebaptizing their Children, if within 6 Weeks after they are troubled with any Distempers, which they attribute to its having received an improper Name; but this they are obliged to keep concealed for fear of the Magistrates, being otherwise as stubborn in the Observation of their old Customs, as they are in their Superstitions: Of which I had an Instance related to me, of an old Fellow, who being condemned to a Corporal Punishment, it was, in consideration of his Age, chang'd into a pecuniary Mulct, not exceeding 15 or 16 pence; but he told them, that rather than recede from the Customs of his Ancestors, he would undergo the Punishment, which he did accordingly, by putting off his Cloaths, lying himself upon the Ground, and receiving the Blows according to his Condemnation. This is the ordinary Chastisement inflicted upon the Peasants in *Livonia*; who, as they are not allow'd to purchase any Lands, besides the Allotments given them for their Subsistance; so they will often venture to cut down Trees in the Forests, and sow Wheat in the Ground, which they sell under-hand. If they are catch'd in this, or any other Fault, they are sure of such a Strapado, and are commonly whip'd with a Holly-wand till the Blood follows on all sides. They are no less restrain'd from having any Money; and if it be known they have any, certain Officers are appointed to take it from them. Of this I heard a sad Example related here: A Peasant being press'd by such an Officer to produce a certain Summ he had not, strangled his Wife and Children, and afterwards hung himself. This Severity the Gentmen excuse with the incorrigible Temper of the Peasants, who without it would become insupportable.

Stubbornness.

The Nobility of *Livonia*.

The Nobility of *Livonia*, but especially those of *Esthonia*, are in consideration of the Services done by their Ancestors against the Infidels and *Muscovites*, exempted from all Taxes. The first who confer'd on them Mannors to be held by Fealty, was *Wolmar* the 2d, King of *Denmark*, which were confirm'd by *Eric* the 7th, and by the Masters of the Order of *Livonia*, and the Grand Masters of *Prussia*.

Once every Year a Review is made of the Nobility of *Livonia*, which is look'd upon as the best Nursery of Officers the *Swedish* Kings have in their Dominions; who, when they submitted to their Protection, promised to preserve them in their Ancient Privileges: From whence it is, that the Government is still managed by the Nobility, who chuse twelve of their own Body, who are the Supreme Council of the Country, in which the Governor of *Livonia*, for the time being, is President. They keep their Publick Court once a year in *January*, when they decide all differences between Parties, who proceed only by way of Declaration and Answer. They chuse also every three Years a certain Gentleman, whom they stile the Captain of the Province, whose Business is to represent to the Council the Grievances of the People. Certain Judges are also appointed in each Province, for the regulating of the Limits of Lands belonging to private Persons, which have been brought in much confusion during the Wars with the *Muscovites*: These are likewise never continued for above three Years, and an Appeal lies from them to the Council. They have also their particular Surveyors of the High Ways.

1634.

The Government of *Livonia*.

But it is time to return to our Voyage: By this time our Page we had sent from *Colmar* to *Gottorp* for new Credentials, and our Interpreter, who had been sent to *Musco* to give an account of our Shipwrack, being return'd, and our Baggage sent before from *Revel* the 24th of *February* in 31 Sledges, we follow'd the 2d of March, and lay the same Night at *Kolka*, a Seat belonging to Count *de la Guardie*, 7 Lgs from *Revel*.

The continuation of the Voyage.

The 3d we came to *Kunda*; and the 4th to a Seat of Mr. *John Focks*, about 5 Leagues from the Count *de la Guardie*'s House.

The 5th we travell'd 5 Lgs farther to *Narva*. This City, which is not very big, is situate in the District of *Allentaken*, upon the River *Narva*, at 60 Dgs Lat. This River rises out of the Lake *Peipus*, and 2 Lgs below the Town, falls into the Gulph of *Finland*. About half a Lg above it is a Cataract, where the Waters break with such Violence upon the Rocks, that rising up high into the Air, it affords in a Sun-shiny Day a very agreeable Sight not unlike a Rain-bow.

They come to *Narva*.

Wolmar the 2d, King of *Denmark*, is supposed to be the Founder of this City 1213. It was taken 1558. by *Ivan Basilowitz*, the famous *Russian* Tyrant, from whom the *Swedes* recovered it 1581. and ever since remain'd in possession of it. It was anciently a Member of the *Hanseatick* Towns, but its Commerce has been quite ruin'd by the Wars with the *Muscovites*; great part of its Traffick being transferr'd to *Archangel*. The Castle which is very strong, is on that side of the River; as that of *Ivanogorod* built on a steep Rock by the *Muscovites*, resembling a *Peninsula* made by the River, stands on the other side: This Castle was not taken by the *Swedes* till 1617.

Ivanogrod.

At the foot of the Castle is the Suburb call'd *Muscovite-Narva*, being inhabited by *Muscovites*, but subject to the *Swedes*. Betwixt *Revel* and *Narva*, are abundance of Bears and Wolves, which do great mischief in the Country, when the Grounds are covered with Snow; of this we had several dreadful Stories told us; as for instance of a Wolf, 1634. who set upon 12 *Muscovite* Peasants, of whom he kill'd 4, and sorely hurt 2 more, the other 6 scarce being able to kill him at last; the Skin of this Creature is preserved at *Narva*. We were told such another of a Bear, which finding a Barrel of Herrings standing at an Alehouse Door, eat the Herrings; but going into the Stables, was pursu'd by several Peasants, he wounded some of them, and made the rest fly: This done he went into the Brewhouse, where he fell a drinking so much strong Liquor, that he reel'd as he came out, which the Peasants perceiving, follow'd him at a distance, till they saw him drop down asleep, where they kill'd him.

Remarkable Stories of a Wolf and a Bear.

Another Bear, 1634. digg'd up 13 Dead Carcasses in a Church-yard not far from *Narva*, and carried them away in Coffins.

They told us several other Stories of this Nature, as for instance, of a Womans being kept 15 Days by a Bear in his Den; and how she was deliver'd by a Peasant, who was likewise carried by a Bear towards the Den, but escaped by the help of his Dog, of which we will forbear to rehearse the Particulars for brevity sake.

We left *Narva March* 7. and travell'd 7 Leagues, as far as *Lilienhagen*, where we lodg'd that Night.

The Ambassadors proceed on their Journey from *Narva*.

The 8th we went 6 Leagues further to *Sarits*: And the 9th 4 Leagues more to *Orlin*.

Here having received the News, that the *Muscovite Pristaff* waited for us on the Frontiers, we parted forthwith

1634. with to meet him: We found him in a Wood, about a League from *Orlin*, attended by 24 *Strelitzes*, and 90 Sledges. His Name was *Conſtantino Juanowitz Arbuſou*, who no ſooner eſpy'd the Ambaſſadors alighting, but he alſo came out of his Sledge, being clad in a Veſt of Flower'd Velvet, with a Gold Chain croſs his Breaſt, his upper Garment being lined with Sables. They advanced towards one another with ſlow pace, till coming up together, the Ambaſſadors having pull'd off their Hats, the *Priſtaff* notwithſtanding this ſaid, *Ambaſſadors be uncovered*; and being told, That he ſaw they were ſo, he began to read his Paper.

Are received by the *Muſcovite Priſtaff* on the Frontiers.

Knez Peter Alexiowitz Repuin, *Waywod of* Novogorod, *has ſent me by Order from the* Grand Seignior, Czar, *and* Great Duke, *&c. to receive the Ambaſſadors* Philip Cruſius, *and* Otto Brugman, *and to accommodate you with Horſes, Carriages, Proviſions, and all other Neceſſaries for the continuation of your Voyage to* Novogorod, *and thence to* Muſco.

After we had returned him thanks, he gave the Ambaſſadors the precedency, and one travell'd along with us 6 Leagues that Day, to a Village call'd *Tzuerin*.

March 10. We came about Noon to *Deſun*, and at Night to *Mokriza*, 8 Leagues from *Tzuerin*.

Come to *Novogorod*.

The 11th we arrived at *Novogorod*, (40 *German* Leagues from *Narva*) where at our Entrance the *Priſtaff* took the precedency of the Ambaſſadors, for which however he ſent them an Excuſe, immediately after, alledging, That he had done it by expreſs Orders of the Waywod of *Novogorod*; who, if he had fail'd therein, would have done him ſome ill Office or other at Court.

The City of *Novogorod Veliki* is ſituate at 58 Deg. 23 Min. elev. according to my own Obſervations, which agrees very near with *Bureus* (ſome time *Swediſh* Ambaſſador in *Muſcovy*) his Calculation, who makes it above 58 Deg. 13. Min. tho' *Lundorp* puts it under 62, and *Jovius* under 64 Deg. It is ſeated in a ſpacious Plain, upon the River *Wolgda*, which ariſing out of the Lake *Ilmen*, half a League above this City, and croſſing the Lake of *Ladoga*, is augmented by the River *Niova*, near *Notcburg*, and exonerates itſelf by the Gulph of *Finland* into the *Baltick Sea*. It abounds in Fiſh of all ſorts, but eſpecially in *Breme*; it was formerly govern'd by its own Prince, who was independent from the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; the *Hanſeatick* Towns had their Office here; for the River being navigable from its Sourſe, and the Country round about abounding in Honey, Flax, Hemp, Wheat, Wax and *Ruſſia* Leather (which is better dreſs'd at *Novogorod*, than any other place of *Muſcovy*) they uſed to drive a great Trade in this City, which once was accounted the chief trading City of all the North, it being a Proverb in thoſe Days, *Who can oppoſe God, and the Great City of* Novogorod? And the number of its Steeples, together with the Ruines of the Walls, which appear to have been of a much greater extent than it now is, ſufficiently ſhew, that it had deſervedly obtained the Name of *Novogorod Veliki*, or *Novogorod the Great*. But notwithſtanding its Greatneſs *Vithold* Great Duke of *Lithuania*, forced this City 1427. to pay a conſiderable Annual Tribute, *viz.* 200000 Crowns.

The Tyrant *John Baſili Grotſdin*, after he had defeated an Army rais'd by this City, forc'd them in *November* 1477. to receive a Governor from him; but not thinking himſelf ſecure of a place of ſuch Importance, went thither in Perſon, pillag'd the Town of all the Gold, Silver, Jewels, rich Stuff, and other precious Moveables he could meet with, which he loaded upon 300 Waggons, and carried them, together with its chief Inhabitants to *Muſco*, inſtead of whom he ſent a Colony of *Muſcovites* thither. But the Tyrant *John Baſilowitz* was he who laid this noble City almoſt deſolate. For upon a ſuſpicion of a Revolt he had conceived of the Inhabitants, he cauſed a vaſt number of them to be drowned in the River, and trampled under the Horſes Feet; which ſtopping the Current of the Rivers, a great Famine inſued, which being the forerunner of a moſt dreadful Plague, which conſumed the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, the reſt of which were afterwards Sacrificed by the Sword to the Tyrant's Fury.

Cruelties exerciſed at *Novogorod*.

The Archbiſhop, who hitherto had eſcap'd his Hands, had, to appeaſe his Wrath, invited him to a Feaſt, but whilſt they were at Dinner, he ſent ſome of his Attendants to pillage the Church of *Sophia*, and all the other Churches both of their Ornaments, and the other Riches that were carried thither by the Inhabitants: After Dinner having ſerved the Archbiſhop's Palace in the ſame manner, he told him, That as the caſe now ſtood, there was no further occaſion of him at *Novogorod*, that therefore he would diſcharge him of his Prelacy, and preſent him with a Bagpipe and a Bear, to get his Livelihood: And he was no worſe than his word; for at his departure from thence he cauſed him to be put upon an old White Mare, with his Feet ty'd under her Belly, with Pipes, a Fiddle, and Timbrels hanging about his Neck. The other Abbots and Monks fared not ſo well, being all either cut to pieces, or forced into the River; the ſame fate underwent one *Theodore Sircon* a rich Merchant, who being unwilling to diſcover his Treaſure, he cauſed him to be drag'd through the River with a Rope about his Waſte; and that not ſucceeding, had his Feet put in boiling Oyl, till having diſcovered what the Tyrant wanted, he commanded him and his Brother to be cut to pieces.

The Baron *de Herberſtein*, who reſided in the Quality of a Publick Miniſter at *Muſco*, from the Emperor *Maximilian*, mentions a certain Idol, call'd *Perun*, or the God of Fire, with a Thunderbolt in his Hand, a conſtant Fire of Oak being kept to him, which the Inhabitants of *Novogorod*, after they were Converted to the Chriſtian Faith, caſt into the Water; but driving up againſt the Stream, ſtop'd at the Bridge of the City, and caſting a Stick among the Inhabitants, bid them keep it for his ſake. He further adds, That on a certain Day in the Year the Voice of *Perun* was heard, even in his time, and that the Inhabitants uſed to fall upon one another with Cudgels, with ſo much eagerneſs, that the Governor was forced to make uſe of his Authority to part them. But with all the Inquiry I could make, I could hear nothing of this, except that they ſhew'd me a Convent call'd *Perumski Monaſtir*, which they told me was built in the place where the Idol *Perun* ſtood before.

The Idol *Perun*.

The Caſtle is on the other ſide of the River fortified with a Stone Wall, the Reſidence of the Governor, and the Metropolitan of the Province, and is joyn'd to the City by a fair Bridge. Juſt oppoſite to the Caſtle, on the other ſide of the River, is the Monaſtery of St. *Anthony*; who, as the *Muſcovites* ſay, came from *Rome*, down the *Tiber*, and ſo croſſing the Seas upon a Milſtone, came up the River *Wolgda*, to *Novogorod*. They tell you further, That meeting in the River with ſome Fiſhermen, he bought the firſt Draught of them, which proving a Cheſt full of Prieſts Veſtments, Books and Money, he beſtow'd the laſt in building a Chappel, in which he lies interr'd, and where many Miracles are wrought by his Body. They ſhew'd us a Milſtone, which they ſay is the ſame upon which he croſs'd the Seas: The Pilgrims have been ſo liberal in their Gifts to this Chappel, that a fair Monaſtery has been erected near it.

St. *Anthony's* Convent.

After our ſtay of 5 Days we left *Novogorod*, where the Governor and *Bogdan Federowitz Obobiron*, ſent us ſeveral Preſents of Meats and other Refreſhments, in lieu of which the Ambaſſadors preſented the firſt with a Coach.

They leave *Novogorod*.

March 16. we travel'd 4 Leagues to *Brunitz*, and the next Day over *Miedna* to *Kreſſa* 12 Leagues and a half.

Come to *Brunitz*.

The 18th we paſs'd through *Faſelbitza* to *Simnagora*, 12 Leagues.

The 19th 9 Leagues to *Colimna*. And

The 20th 5 to *Wiſnawolloka*, where we ſaw a Married young Man of 12 Years of Age, as afterwards we met with a Married Woman of 11 Years at *Twere*, a thing ordinary in *Muſcovy* as well as *Finland*. We travel'd the ſame Day 7 Leagues farther, to *Windra Pusk*, where being no more than 3 Houſes, we had but very indifferent Entertainment.

The 21ſt we made 7 Leagues as far as *Toiſock*. *Toiſock*.

The 22d 6 to *Troitska Miedna*. *Twere*.

And the 23d 6 more to *Twere*: The Snow beginning to melt by this time, we left our Sledges and travell'd 6 Leagues upon the *Wolgda* (which was ſtill frozen) to *Gorodna*.

The 24th the Ice now giving way, we continued our Journey by Land through *Sawidona* to *Saulkſpas*, 7 Leagues, we paſs'd that Day ſeveral Brooks, not without great danger, the Ice being looſe; as we did the 25th the Brook *Siſtrea*, near the great Village of *Klin*, and lodged the next following Night at *Beschick*, 7 Leagues from thence.

The 27th after we had paſs'd 2 other Brooks, we came to *Zerkizoito* 6 Leagues from thence:

And

1636. And the next Day travell'd but 3 Leagues to *Nicola Darebna* (*Nichola Nachinski*) within 2 Leagues of *Musco*, where we received the *Czar*'s Orders for our Entry, which we made the next Day in the following Order.

Nicola Darebna.

Their Entrance into Musco.

In the Front march'd 24 *Cossacks*, who had been our Guard hitherto. 2. Our Steward alone. 3. Our Officers and Gentlemen 3 a breast, those of the best Quality first. 4 Three Trumpeters with Silver Trumpets. 5. Six Carabineers immediately preceeding the Ambassadors 2 Sledges, having 6 with Partisans on both sides: Their Sledges were follow'd by the Pages, and those by the rest of our Train on Horseback, and the Baggage. The *Pristaff* took the upper-hand of the Ambassadors.

Being come within half a League of the City, we met several small Troops of *Muscovites*, *Tartars* and *Germans*, who having taken a view of us, returned to the City. Soon after several Troops of *Muscovite* Horse encompass'd us on all sides, and so conducted us to *Musco*.

About an *English* Mile from the Gates, we were met by 2 other *Pristaffs* with the same Attendance and Equipage they had at our first Entry, in our late Embassy.

They were no sooner come within 20 Paces of the Ambassadors, but they sent them word, That they should alight and come to them; neither did they move out of their Sledges, nor uncovered themselves, till the Ambassadors had done both; the *Pristaffs* being under a strict Tye to observe these Punctilio's; which, if they neglect, they are sure to be turn'd out of their Places, and have a good Whipping or Cudgeling in to the Bargain.

Our Reception was perform'd in the same manner as at first; one of the *Pristaffs* telling us, That he was commanded by the *Czar*, &c. to receive us; the other repeating the same Titles, declaring, That his Colleague *Juan Juanosin Salmosin*, and himself, *Andrew Juanowitz Zaboroi* were to be our *Pristaffs* during our stay in *Muscovy*.

After them the Master of the *Czar*'s Horse presenting 2 very fine White Horses for the Ambassadors, and 12 more for the Chief of their Train, we were conducted through a double File of *Strelitzes* to a Stone-house in that part of the City call'd *Cataigorod*, not far from the Castle. We were no sooner entred our Lodgings, but all sorts of Meats and Drinks were brought us from the *Czar*'s Kitchen and Cellar; and afterwards our daily Allowance was, 62 Loaves, a quarter of Beef, 4 Sheep, 12 Pullets, 2 Geese, 1 Hare, and 1 Heath-cock alternatively; 50 Eggs, 10 Pence towards Candles, and 5 Pence for small things in the Kitchen; 1 Pot of Sack, 8 of Mead, 3 of Beer, and 3 small Pots of Strong-water. For a common Stock we had allow'd us a Tun of Beer, a lesser one of Mead, and a Barrel of Strong-water. For Extraordinaries we had 40 Pound of Butter a Week, as much Salt, 3 Pails of Vinegar, 2 Muttons and 1 Goose.

Their Allowance.

The first Day of our Arrival, upon *Palm-Sunday*, *Easter-day*, and the Young Prince's Birthday, the same was doubled, and all was dress'd by our own Cooks. The Doors of our House were guarded by a Corporal and 9 *Strelitzes*, till after our first Audience, but the *Pristaff* came every Day to visit us.

Their first Audience.

The 3d of *April* we were conducted to our first Publick Audience, with the same Order and Ceremony as in our former Embassy, through a Body of *Strelitzes*, who had made a Lane from our Lodging to the Castle. The Audience it self consisted only in some Compliments of Thanks to the *Czar*, for the favour he had been pleased to bestow upon them, in granting them a free Passage through *Muscovy* into *Persia*.

After our return to our Lodgings, *Knez Simon Petrowitz Luon*, one of the *Czar*'s Carvers came thither, with about 40 Dishes of Fish fry'd and broil'd (it being their *Lent*) and 12 sorts of Liquors for our drinking: His chief Business was to present to the Ambassadors, and each of their Retinue, a large Goblet of *Aqua vitæ* to the Great Duke's, the Young Prince's, and his Highness's Health, which he obliged them all to pledge. He had a piece of gilt Plate presented him for his Pains, and the Bearers of the Meat, each 2 Crowns; but they had put such a vast quantity of Garlick and Onions in their Sawces, that few of us cared for touching of it, but made up the defect we found in our Provisions with the excellent Wines the *Czar* had sent us.

April 5. we had the first Conference with the same Commissioners, we had in our former Negotiation, except *Juan Tarassowitz Grammatin*, who by reason of his great Age being excused from this Employment, his Place was supply'd by *Fedor Fedorousin Lichozou*: The same Day one of our Footmen, who some Days before was hurt by being overturned in a Sledge, died, and was buried in the *Germans* Church-yard; the *Czar* sending a *Pristaff* and 15 Horses out of his Stables to assist at the Funeral. 1636.

The 9th we had a second Conference.

The 10th, being *Palm-Sunday*, and we having express'd our desire of being Spectators of that Annual Procession, in which the *Muscovites* represent the Entrance of our Saviour into *Jerusalem*, Horses were sent to the Ambassadors and their Retinue from the *Czar*, to conduct them to a certain place near the Castle-Gate, where 2 small Theatres were erected for that purpose, one for us, the other for the *Persian* Ambassadors, who sat behind us.

The Muscovite Procession on Palm-Sunday.

After the Service perform'd in our Lady's Church, the *Czar* and Patriarch came from thence out of the Castle in the following order.

First of all we saw a boarded Chariot, very large, but low, drawing after it a Tree, on which hung many Apples, Figs and Grapes; within it being placed 4 little Boys with Surplices, singing the *Hosannah*. Then came a good number of Priests, in their Surplices and Copes, with Banners, Crosses, and Images fasten'd to long Poles, some Singing, others casting Incense among the People. They were follow'd by the *Czar*'s *Goses*, or Factors; and these by the *Diaken*, Clerks, Secretaries, *Knez* and *Boyars*, with Palm-twigs in their Hands. After these came the Great Duke, most sumptuously attired, with a Crown on his Head, supported by *Knez Juan Borissowitz Cyrkaski*, and *Knez Alekey Michaelowitz Wou*, his 2 principal Councellors of State; and leading the Patriarch's Horse (which was covered with a Cloath, and dress'd up like an Ass) by the Bridle. The Patriarch had a white round Satin-cap, beset with Pearls, on his Head, and about it a very rich Cornet: In his right Hand he carried a Cross, richly set with Diamonds, wherewith he gave his Benediction to the Spectators, who received it with a most profound Reverence. He was surrounded by some Metropolitans and Bishops, and follow'd by a great number of Priests, with Books and Censors in their Hands. Fifty Boys were seen to scatter their red Cassocks on the Ground, whilst others spread pieces of Cloath of an Ell square along the way where they pass'd.

The *Czar* being come over against our Theatre, made a Halt, and sent his Interpreter to enquire after our health, and stay'd till our Answer was brought him. They went to the Church, where after a stay of half an hour, they return'd, and the *Czar* stopp'd again to send us word, that we should be treated with Meat from his own Table, which was not done, but instead of it, we had a double Allowance sent us. The Patriarch is obliged to present the Great Duke, for the Honour he does him in leading the Horse on which he rides, with a Purse of 400 Crowns; and this Ceremony is observed on the same Day throughout all *Muscovy*, the Governors of the Provinces, and the Metropolitans supplying the Places of the *Czar* and Patriarch.

April 17. we saw them celebrate their *Easter-day*, with a great deal of rejoycing, which consists chiefly in Feasting and Debauches, the Publick-houses being fill'd that Day as well as the Streets at Night, with Drunken People of all sorts, both Ecclesiasticks and Laicks, Men and Women. This Day you see all along the Streets many who sell painted Eggs, which the *Muscovites* for 14 Days after send as Presents to their Friends; and if, during this time, they happen to meet one another, they Kiss, with this Salutation; *Christos wos Chreft*, i. e. *Christ is risen*; unto which the others answer, *Wostin wos Chreft*, i. e. *Truly he is risen*; and so he that kisses first, presents an Egg to the other, which (as well as the Kiss) no Body, of what Sex, Age, or Quality soever, dares to refuse. The *Czar* himself presents such Eggs to his principal Lords.

The Muscovite Easter-Day.

On *Easter-day* also, before he goes to Church, he visits the Prisons, and orders an Egg and some Sheep-skin Furr to be given to each of the Prisoners; telling them, That this is a Day of Rejoycing, since Christ, who dy'd for their Sins, is now risen again.

April 29. Mr. *Brugman*, one of our Ambassadors, desired and had a private Conference with the Commissioners without his Colleague, in the Exchequer, which lasted about 2 Hours, but what his Negotiation

The Ambassador Brugman has a separate Audience.

was,

1636. was, was not known till after our Return home, by the Charge exhibited againſt him.

May 6. both the Ambaſſadors had a third Conference with the Commiſſioners.

The 17th the fourth: And

The 27th the fifth and laſt.

May 30. The Governor went abroad (by the *Czar*'s permiſſion) a Hawking with ſome of our Gentlemen, who were entertain'd afterwards with Strong-water, Mead, Spiced-Gingerbread, and preſerved Cherries.

June 1. being the Prince's Birth-day, we had a double Allowance of Proviſions.

The 3d the Ambaſſador *Brugman* had a ſecond ſeparate Conference with the Commiſſioners.

The 4th, being *Whitſun-Eve*, the *Czar* gave Publick Audience to ſuch Ambaſſadors, as were ready to depart: We ſaw the *Perſian* Ambaſſador (a *Cupzin* or Merchant) return from thence, having a Garment of Crimſon Satin lined with the beſt kind of Sables over his *Perſian* Cloaths, the firſt being preſented him by the *Czar*. He was follow'd by a good number of *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Tartars*; who cauſed the Preſents they had received to be carried before them.

The 12th our Comptroller arrived from *Dantzick*, but was ſtay'd 3 Days without the City, by reaſon of the *Czar*'s Abſence.

The 15th the Great Duke and Dutcheſs returned with a great Attendance of Lords and Ladies to *Muſco*; 36 Maids of Honour appear'd on Horſeback aſtride, clad in red with white Hats on their Heads, and Scarfs of the ſame colour about their Necks, their Faces being very groſly painted.

The 17th I having ſome Matters to diſpatch with the Chancellor, and he being willing to do me all poſſible Honour, ordered a *Priſtaff* to conduct me, who being out of the way, made me ſtay 2 Hours in the Antichamber, but the kind reception I met with from the Chancellor and Vice-chancellor, and the ſudden diſpatch of my Buſineſs, made me ſome amends for this delay: The Room they were in was but meanly furniſh'd.

The 20th notice was given us by our *Priſtaff*, that we were at liberty to continue our Journey into *Perſia* when we pleaſed, and that at our Return, we ſhould have the Honour to kiſs his Majeſty's Hands, and to receive an Anſwer to our Credentials, it being not fit to be done before our laſt Publick Audience, at our returning into our own Country.

Accordingly we made all neceſſary Preparations for our Departure, provided our ſelves with Boats to carry us to *Niſa*, and with the *Czar*'s permiſſion, took 3 Lieutenants, 4 Serjeants, and 23 common Soldiers, *Scots* and *Germans*, out of his Guards, into our Service; to ſerve us as a Guard againſt the *Tartars*, upon the *Wolga*, beſides ſome *Muſcovites* for ordinary Services.

The 24th and 25th we beſtow'd in packing up our Baggage, and ſending part of it before to *Niſa*.

The Entrance of a *Poliſh* Ambaſſador.

The 26th being appointed for the reception of a *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, we went out of the City to ſee it; they no ſooner perceived us, but ſaluted us very courteouſly, but behaved themſelves very diſreſpectfully to the *Muſcovites*, not ſo much as uncovering themſelves, and obliging their *Priſtaffs* to alight and uncover firſt; nay, one of the Ambaſſadors told them roundly, That they were come there, not to give to them, but to receive Reſpect from them.

The fierceneſs of another *Poliſh* Ambaſſador.

Another *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, who not long before (immediately after the Defeat of the *Muſcovites* before *Smolensko*) was come to *Muſco*, had carried Matters to a much higher pitch: For, he not only delivered his Propoſition ſitting before the *Czar*, but alſo as often as he pronounced the Name of the King his Maſter, perceiving that the *Boyars* did not put off their Caps, he ſtop'd till ſuch time the *Czar* commanded them ſo to do. He having brought no Preſents from the King, preſented the *Czar* with a Coach upon his own account; in lieu of which, a Preſent of fine Sables being ſent him from the Great Duke, he refuſed them; who thereupon ſending back his Coach, the Ambaſſador threw the *Priſtaff* down a very high pair of Stairs: At which the *Czar* being highly exaſperated, ſent him word, That if what had been done, was according to the King his Maſters Orders, he muſt bear it with patience, till a more happy Conjuncture might put him in a Capacity to give himſelf Satisfaction for ſuch an Affront; but, if the ſame proceeded from his own Paſſion, without any Order, Complaint ſhould be made about it to the King his Maſter.

The 26th the *Czar*'s Paſs was brought us by a *Priſtaff*, of which we will give you the Tranſlation out of the *Muſcovite* Language. 1636.

The CZAR's Paſs.

FRom the Grand Seignior and Great Duke of all the Ruſſes, Michael Federowitz; *We enjoyn all our* Bojars, Weywods *and* Diaken, *and all our Commanders from the City of* Muſco *to* Columna, *and thence to* Pereſtaf, Reſansky, *and* Kaſimoua, *to* Murama, *and* Niſe-Novogorod, *to* Caſſan, *and* Aſtracan, *to let paſs* Philip Cruſius, *and* Otton Brugman, *Ambaſſadors and Counſellors from* Frederick, *Duke of* Holſtein, *whom we have permitted to go from* Muſco *into* Perſia, *to* Schach Sofi *of* Perſia: *By vertue of a Treaty made for the Paſſage and Commerce of the Merchants of* Holſtein. *We have alſo permitted them to take along with them their* Germans *of* Holſtein, *to the number of* 85 *Perſons, and for their convoy* 30 *Soldiers, choſen, with our conſent, out of the* Germans, *who ſerve in* Muſcovy, *which number they may augment, for the ſafety of their Voyage into* Perſia, *at* Niſa, Caſſan, *or* Aſtracan, *by* 11 *Men,* Germans *or* Muſcovites, *Volunteers. We alſo permit them, at* Niſa, *to hire two Pilots, who are acquainted with the courſe of the* Wolga. *We conſent, and in like manner permit the ſaid Ambaſſadors of* Holſtein, *if, at their return from* Perſia, *they ſtand in need of a Convoy, or other People for Buſineſs, to take at* Caſſan, *or* Aſtracan, *or any where elſe they ſhall think fit,* 40 *Men, or ſuch other number as they ſhall think requiſite for the proſecution of their Voyage: Provided, that thoſe of our People who ſhall hire themſelves to the ſaid Ambaſſadors, give in their Names to the* Bojars, Weywods, *and* Diaken, *of the place of their Abode, as well at their departure thence, as at their return thither, that there may be a Regiſter kept thereof. And if they return from* Perſia *in the Winter, it ſhall be lawful for them, for their Money, to take into their Service ſuch a number of Men, and Sledges, as they ſhall think requiſite for the continuation of their Voyage.*

We have alſo appointed Rodivon Gabato, *Gentleman of* Aſtracan, *to conduct the ſaid Ambaſſadors from* Muſco *to* Aſtracan: *Wherefore we command you, our* Boiars, Weywods, Diaken, *and Commanders, to let paſs the ſaid* Rodivon, *with the Ambaſſadors of* Holſtein, *without any let. And if after their Voyage of* Perſia, *at their return thence, they are deſirous to repaſs through the Countries in our Obedience, you ſhall permit them to take into their Service, for Labour, or for Convoy upon the* Wolga, 40 *Men, or ſuch other number as they ſhall ſtand in need of, which they ſhall take by vertue of this preſent Paſs-port, at* Aſtracan, Caſſan, *or any other place they ſhall think fit. And our ſaid Subjects ſhall be oblig'd to cauſe their Names to be enroll'd, as well at their departure, as at their return, to the end notice may be taken, that no Robbers,* Golops, *or fugitive Slaves get in among them. In like manner at the return of their Voyage, if they paſs through* Muſcovy *in the Winter time, it ſhall be lawful for them, at their own Charge, to hire ſuch a number of Sledges, as they ſhall think fit, ſo as that they be not hindred in the proſecution of their Voyage, either in Cities or in the Country. Enjoyning further, That all Reſpect be given to the Ambaſſadors of* Holſtein, *and all Civility done their People, both going and coming, not permitting that they ſhould ſuffer any Violence, or be Robbed: Obliging them alſo, for their part, not to take any Proviſions by force of any whatſoever; but it ſhall be lawful for them, to buy, for their Money, of thoſe that ſhall be willing to ſell to them, both going and coming.*

Writ at Muſco, *in the Year* 7144. June 20. *and Signed,* The Czar and Great Duke of all the Ruſſes, Michael Federowitz.

And lower, Deak Maxim Matuskin; *and Sealed with the Great Seal.*

After we had received our Paſsport, *June* 30. being appointed for our Departure, Horſes were brought us out of the Great Duke's Stables by our *Priſtaff*, who in Company of ſeveral Perſons of Quality, accompany'd us 3 Leagues out of the Town, to the Monaſtery of *Simana*, where we were to take Boat for the proſecution of our Voyage. They leave *Muſco*.

But before we leave *Muſco*, it will be abſolutely requiſite, we ſhould give you a Deſcription of this great and famous City; which, as it gives the Name to the whole Empire, ſo it has borrow'd its own from the A Deſcription of this City.

River

1636. River *Mosca*; which arising in the Province of *Twere*, dividing the Suburb call'd *Strelitza Slavoda* from the City it self, joyns with the River *Occa* near *Columna*; which about half a League thence falls into the *Wolga*. It lies under 55 Deg. 36 Min. Lat. and 66 Deg. Long. in the very Heart of *Muscovy*, about 120 *German* Leagues from the Frontiers. Its Circuit was then of 3 *German* Leagues, but if we may rely upon *Matthew de Michou*, a Canon of *Cracaw*, who flourished at the beginning of the 16th Century: He says, That in his time it was twice as big as the City of *Prague*. The *Crim Tartars* laid it in Ashes 1571, and the *Poles* burnt it 1611. and left nothing but the Castle. It contains about 40000 Houses; which, except some Houses belonging to the great Lords and rich Merchants, are made of Wood, and Beams and cross pieces of Fur laid one upon another. They commonly are covered with Bark of Trees, upon which sometimes are laid Turfs: This makes them very subject to Fires; so that there scarce passes a Month, but whole Streets art reduced to Ashes. To prevent its Progress, the *Strelitzes* as well that are upon the Guard, as the ordinary Watchmen, are provided in the Night time with Pole-axes, wherewith they break down the next adjoyning Houses, to stop the Progress of the Fire. The best conveniency is, that they may buy new ones at an easie rate, ready built, at a certain Market without the *White Wall*, which they transport from thence where they please.

Its Houses of Wood.

The Streets of this City are very broad, and handsom enough, but very dirty after the least Rain, that they would scarce be passable, were it not for the great Beams, which being laid together, make a kind of a Bridge, not unlike that of the *Rhine* near *Strasburgh*. The whole Body of this great City is divided into 4 distinct Quarters: The first whereof is called *Catay-gorod*, as lying in the midst of the rest, being divided from them by a Brick Wall, call'd by the *Muscovites*, *Crasne stenna*, *i. e.* a red Stone.

Cataygorod.

The River *Mosca* passes on the South side of it, as the River *Neglina*, which joyns with the other behind the Castle, does to the North.

Kremelena.

The Great Duke's Palace, call'd *Cremelena*, which for its bigness resembles a goodly City, takes up one half of it; it is fortify'd with 3 several Walls, and a good Ditch, well provided with Cannon. All the Steeples within the Castle, are covered with Copper gilt; amongst which 2 stand just in the midst, one of which, call'd *Juan Veliki*, i. e. *Great John*, is remarkable for its height, the other for its Bell, weighing 33600 Pounds, which is never Toll'd but upon extraordinary occasions, 24 Men being always employ'd to pull the Rope below in the Court, besides several others above, who help to thrust it: The Royal Palace, with the Patriarchs, and some others belonging to the Chief *Boyars* stand at the further end of the Castle: Besides which we saw a very fine piece of Architecture of Stone, built after the *Italian* manner, for the young Prince, but the *Czar* continues in his Wooden Palace, as being judged the most healthy.

The Exchequer, Magazine of Powder, and Storehouse for Provisions, and several other Publick Structures, are likewise within the compass of the Castle, and 2 fair Monasteries for Men, the other for Women; besides 30 Churches and Chappels built of Stone, those of the Blessed *Trinity*, of St. *Mary*, St. *Nicholas*, and St. *Michael* are remarkable before all the rest; in the last of which are the Tombs of the Great Dukes.

On the South side of the Castle-Gate, without the Walls, is a Church dedicated to the Blessed *Trinity*, and by some call'd *Jerusalem*, built by the famous *Russian* Tyrant *John Basilowitz*, who caused the Architects Eyes to be put out, to prevent his undertaking any thing like it for the future.

The chief Market of the City is before the Castle, where you see a great Concourse of all sorts of People, and abundance of Ships, as well as in all the Streets leading to it: It is observable, that every Trade has its particular Station, there being not the least intermixture betwixt the Mercers and Goldsmiths, or the Linen and Woollen-drapers, and so with other Trades and Professions, which carries this conveniency along with it, that at once you have the opportunity of viewing and choosing what you like best in its kind. A peculiar Street is allotted for the selling of the Images of their Saints; those who keep these Shops have an advantage above all the rest, for as much as the *Muscovites* looking upon it as a Crime to say they *bought* a Saint, but rather that they *exchanged* him; they give what is demanded without any Abatement. 1636.

The Sempstresses Shops, which are in the midst of the great Market-place, are commonly ply'd with a kind of Women Tenders, who under pretence of selling Rings with Rubies and Turquoises, take this opportunity of disposing of their hidden Commodities.

In this quarter there is another spacious place, call'd the *Hair-Market*, where most of the Inhabitants are shaved, which makes the Ground to be so covered with Hair, that you tread as soft upon them as walking upon Feathers. In this quarter of the City most of the *Czar*'s Factors, and some of the Chief Lords and *Boyars* have their Habitations. The second surrounds the former in form of a Half-Moon; it is call'd *Czargorod*, or the *City Royal*, being encompass'd by a Wall call'd *Bicla stenna*, i.e. *The White Wall*: Here is the Arsenal, and the place where the *Czar*'s great Guns are cast, which Art being first practis'd there in this *Czar*'s Reign by one *John Valk*, a Native of *Nurenberg*, the *Muscovites* are since grown as expert in the Art of Founding, as any of the Foreigners. Some Lords and *Simbojars* Houses are in this quarter, the rest is fill'd up with Country Traders, Bakers, Butchers, Cornchandlers, Meal-Shops, the Great Duke's Stables, and abundance of Tipling-Houses, who sell Beer, Mead, and Strong-waters. The third quarter, which encompasses the last mentioned from the East along the North to the West, is call'd *Skoradom*; and if we may believe the *Muscovites*, was before 1571. (when it was laid in Ashes by the *Crim Tartars*) 5 *German* Leagues in circumference. The River *Jaguza*, which joyns in its way with the *Mosca*, passes through this quarter, where among other things, is the chief Market for Wooden Houses, which, as I told you before, are taken into pieces, and transplanted from hence to any other part of the Town; the Beams which are laid one upon another, being til'd up only with Moss. The fourth quarter which lies to the South, on the opposite side of the River *Mosca*, is fortified with Wooden Ramparts and Bastions. This quarter had for its Founder *Basili Juanowitz*, Father to the famous *Basilowitz*, who built it for the conveniency of his Foreign Soldiers, from whence it was call'd *Naeilki*, or the quarter of *Drunkards*; but, since that time being appointed for the Habitations of the *Czar*'s Guards or *Strelitzes* (besides some of the poorer sort of People) it was from thence call'd *Strelitza Slavoda*, or the Suburb of the *Strelitzes*.

Czargorod.

Skoradom.

Strelitza Slavoda.

In the former Impression of these Travels we told you, that the Number of Churches and Chappels in these 4 quarters, amounted to 1500; which being by Mr. *John Lewis Godefrey* alledged as improbable; I do positively affirm, That there are above 2000: There being no Body who is acquainted with this City, but what will confirm the truth of it, there being scarce a Street but what has many Chappels, because there is no Lord but what keeps one for his private use; tho' it must at the same time be confess'd, That most of them are scarce above 15 foot square, and formerly were all of Wood, till the Patriarch ordered them to be built of Stone.

Churches and Chappels.

Archontal. Cosmic.

CHAP.

1636. 1633.

CHAP. III.

The Ambassadors from the Duke of Holstein's *Travels into* Muscovy.

Description of *Muscovy.*

THE City of *Musco*, as we told you before, has imparted its Name not only to the Province of *Muscovy*, but also to the whole *Muscovite* Empire, known before by that of *Russia*, or rather *White Russia*. Its extent being to the North, as far as the Frozen Sea, beyond the Artick Circle, and to the East, as far as the River *Oby*; and being to the South bounded by the *Crim Tartars*, and those of *Precop*; as to the West, its Borders extend as far as *Poland*, *Livonia*, and *Sweden*: Its whole length amounts to near 30 Deg. or 450 *German* Leagues, and its breadth to 16 Deg. or 240 *German* Leagues; which proves it to be the greatest Empire, for its extent, in *Europe*.

The Province of *Wolodomir*.

This vast Empire is divided into many Provinces, as may be gathered from the *Czar*'s Titles: In former Ages, the Province of *Wolodomir* or *Uladimer* claim'd the chiefest rank: Its Capital City, from whence it had borrow'd its Name, and was the Residence of the ancient Great Duke, till it was translated from thence to *Musco*, by Prince *Danilow Michaelowitz*, was built 928. by Prince *Wolodomir* 36 Leagues from *Musco* Eastward, between the Rivers of *Occa* and *Wolga*, in so fertile a Soil, that a Bushel of Wheat is said to yield 25 or 30. The River *Clesma*, which passes by, joyns with the *Occa*, near the City of *Murom*.

Of *Smolensko.*

The next Province bordering upon that of *Muscovy* to the East, is *Smolensko*, extending to the South as far as *Lithuania*, and to the West to *Livonia*, and the North to *Siberia*. Its chief City bearing the same Name, is situate upon the River *Nieper*, (or the ancient *Boristhenes*) having on the River side, a well fortify'd Cittadel. It was taken from the *Poles* by the *Muscovites*, 1514. and retaken by the first 1611. The *Muscovites* laid Siege to it again, 1633. but were obliged by the *Poles* to raise it, as we shall see anon: It was surrendred to the *Muscovites* by composition 1654. who remain in possession of it ever since. The other Cities of note in this Province, are *Prohobus* upon the *Nieper*, *Wesma* upon a River of the same Name, and *Mosaisko*.

Of *Rhesan.*

The Province of *Rhesan* is enclosed betwixt the Rivers, *Don*, *Occa* and *Aka*, being by the last divided from the Province of *Muscovy* to the West. Its Capital City is situated upon the *Occa* (being the same Name with the Province) in the most fertile part of *Muscovy*, abounding in Wheat, Honey, Fish, and all sorts of Venison and Fowl. Besides which, it has the Cities of *Corsira* and *Tulla*.

Of *Permic.*

The Province of *Permie*, one of the largest Provinces of all *Muscovy*, near 300 *German* Leagues distant from *Musco* to the North-East. Its Capital City, which has given the Name to the Province, is situate upon the River *Vishora*, which 15 Leagues from thence falls into the River *Kam*: It borders to the East upon the *Tartars* of *Tumen*, and the Inhabitants have a peculiar Language, use Herbs instead of Bread, and pay their Tribute in Horses and Furs.

Of *Jugaria.*

The Province of *Jugarie*, is according to *Herberstein*, the same from whence the *Hungarians*, who afterwards settled along the *Danube*, deduce their Origin.

Of *Wiatka.*

The Province of *Wiathka* lies beyond the River *Kam*: It has borrow'd its Name from the River *Wiathka*, which joyning with the *Kam*, fall together into the *Wolga*, not far below *Casan*.

This Province, which is 150 Leagues distance from *Musco*, is very Woody and Barren, and exposed to the frequent Inroads of the *Czircassian Tartars*, their old Masters, from whom the Great Duke *Basili* conquered it by the Sword.

Bielks. Rschevie. Twere.

The Principalities of *Bielks*, *Rschovie* and *Twere* derive their Names from their three respective Capital Cities: The first being *Biela*, the second *Rschova*, and the third of the same Name with its Province.

Plescow.

Plescow, the Dutchy and City of which also bare the same Name, was in former Ages under the Jurisdiction of its own Princes, till the Year 1509. when *John Basilowitz*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, united it with the *Muscovian* Empire. It is call'd *Pskow* by the *Muscovites*, from a Lake on which the chief City lies, and out of which rises a River of the same Name which passes through it.

Siberia.

The Province of *Siberia*, which was likewise govern'd by its own Princes, that were Tributaries to *Lithuania*, and consequently to the King of *Poland*, is of a vast extent: At last having withdrawn themselves from the Jurisdiction of the *Poles*, they submitted themselves to the *Muscovites*, who under the Reign of *Basili* ejected their Duke and incorporated the whole Province with the *Russian* Crown. Their chief City is *Novogorod Sibersky*, or *Novogorod* of *Siberia*, to distinguish it from others of the same Name; besides which, it has the Cities of *Starodub*, *Petivola*, *Czernigou* and *Branskoa*.

Jeroslaf. Rosthow. Susdal.

The 3 Dutchies of *Jeroslaf*, *Rosthow* and *Susdal*, were antiently Allotments for the younger Brothers of *Muscovy*; till *John Basilowitz* reunited them with the *Muscovian* Empire 1565.

Dwina.

The Province of *Dwina*, which formerly belonged to the Dukes of *Novogorod Veliki*, is the greatest and most Northern of all *Muscovy*; having received its Name from the River *Dwina*, which falls into the Sea near *Archangel*; and having 100 Leagues in length. Not many Years ago, this Province had but one City, but since the Trade has been translated from *Narva* to *Archangel*, it is one of the most populous Provinces of all *Muscovy*.

Archangel.

The City of *Archangel*, (so called from the Arch-Angel St. *Michael*) situate at the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, upon the Isle *Podesenski*, is a place of great Commerce, whither Foreigners from all parts transport their Commodities, which they exchange for the Products of *Muscovy*, notwithstanding the Customs are very heavy here upon all Commodities.

In the Gulph near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, are 3 Islands, call'd *Solofka*, *Anger* and *Colova*: In the first of which was the Sepulchre of a famous *Muscovite* Saint, which about 3 or 4 Years since was translated to *Musco*.

Ustingha.

The Province of *Ustingha*, bordering upon the Province of *Dwina* to the South, was likewise under the Jurisdiction of the Dukes of *Novogorod*. Its chief City which bears the same Name, derived its Name from its Situation, at the Confluence of the 2 Rivers *Fugh* and *Suchana*, from whence it is now half a Leagues distance. The Inhabitants live upon Venison and dry'd Fish instead of Bread, the best Black Foxes Skins are brought from hence.

Vologda.

The Province of *Vologda*, with its Capital City of the same Name, has taken its own from the River *Vologda*, which joyning with the *Dwina*, falls into the *White Sea*. It also belonged to the Dukes of *Novogorod*, but now is under the Subjection of the *Muscovites*. Its Capital City is the only one in *Muscovy*, which hath a Stone Wall about it; the Great Dukes being wont in time of War, to transfer their Treasures hither.

Bielejezero.

The Dutchy of *Bielejezoro*, one of the most Northern Provinces of *Muscovy*, is unaccessible, except in the Winter, by reason of the many Fenns and Woods.

Petzora.

The great Province of *Petzora*, which owes its Name to the River of *Petzora*, extends towards the East and North along the *Frozen Sea*: The River exonerates it self into the Sea, below the City of *Pustio Ziero*, by 6 several Channels, near the Streights of *Weigatz*. The *Riphean* and *Hyperborean* Mountains, (call'd *Zinnopojas*, i. e. *The Girdle of the Earth*, by the *Muscovites*) which afford the best Sables and Hawks, lie on both sides of it. The Rivers are generally Frozen here from *August* till *May*; their next Neighbours being the *Samojedes*, of whom we shall say more hereafter.

Obdorie.

The Province of *Obdorie*, extends along the River *Oby* (from whence it has got its Name) which rising out of the great Lake of *Kataisko*, and continuing its Course from the East to the North, exonerates it self into the *Frozen Sea*. They say that it is so broad at the

1636. Entrance, that a Ship with full Sails, can scarce cross it in 2 Days.

The Source and extent of the River *Wolga.*

The *Tartarian* Provinces we shall have occasion to speak of anon in our Travels along the *Wolga*; the Sourse of which is the Lake of *Wolga*, which being augmented by certain Rivers arising from the Lake of *Fronowo*, in the great Forest of *Wolkomskiles* of the Province of *Rschovie*, 2 Leagues from its Capital City; afterwards retains the Name of the Lake from whence it arises. This River (the *Rha* of *Ptolemy*) call'd *Edel* by the *Tartars*, is beyond all question the greatest in *Europe*, being (according to our own Computation, from the City of *Nise-Novogorod*, near which we went into it out of the River *Occa*, to the *Caspian Sea* above 500 *German* Leagues, not counting 100 more from its Source, to the place where the *Occa* falls into it.

The River *Boristhenes.*

The River *Boristhenes* (the *Dnieper*) the common boundary of *Lithuania* and *Muscovy*, owes its rise to the same Province, 10 Leagues from the Lake of *Fronowo*, near the Village of *Dniepersko*; from whence continuing its Course to the South, near *Wiesma*, it runs thence to the East, and passing by the Cities of *Progobus*, *Smolensko*, *Orsha Du Crowna* and *Mohilouw*, it takes its Course again to the South, and continuing its Current by *Kiovie*, near the *Circassian Tartars*, and from thence toward *Otzakow*, a City of the *Precopian Tartars*, dismbogues into the *Euxine Sea*.

The 2 Rivers of *Divina.*

Muscovy has 2 Rivers call'd *Dwina*; One owes its rise to the Lake of *Dwina*, 10 Leagues from the Lake of *Fronowo*, and as many from the Source of the *Dnieper*, and 2 Leagues below *Riga* exonerates it self into the *Baltick Sea*.

The other has its first Spring near the Confluence of the Rivers of *Jagel* and *Sacharka*, falls into the *White Sea* near *Archangel*.

The 2 Rivers of *Mosca* and *Occa* ought also not to be pass'd by in silence, but loose their Names with a great many others, in one or other of the before mentioned large Rivers.

The Air wholsome about *Musco.*

It is easie to imagine, that in Provinces so distant, there must be a considerable difference in the qualifications both of the Air and Earth. Thus the Air about *Musco* is very healthy, so that they scarce know what the Plague or other Epidemical Diseases are; which was the reason, that when in 1654. the Plague raged at *Musco*, they look'd upon it as a thing Supernatural, and block'd up all the Avenues of that great City.

Very cold in the Winter.

The Cold is so excessive here, that many feel the effects of it, with the loss of their Noses, Hands, or Feet: In the Year 1634. we saw in the Market-place before the Castle of *Musco*, the Earth open above 20 Fathoms in length, and a Foot broad, by the extremity of the Weather; and I my self have been an Eye Witness, that the Spittle and Water froze before they came to the Ground. Notwithstanding this, I observed the Spring not much more backwards than in *Germany*, the Snow which covers the Ground, being very instrumental in promoting Vegetation, by fomenting its natural heat. The Ice and the Snow render the Ways so smooth and easie for Passage, that they travel in their Sledges with a great deal of conveniency, which being well covered with course Cloth, and those within them with good Furs, they are rather inclined to Sweat, than feel the Cold even in the midst of the Winter. Their Horses are very fit for this Exercise, for tho' they are low, they are swift and hardy, and will travel 8 or 10, nay 12 Leagues, without making a Halt; so that a Country Fellow will carry you 50 Leagues for 3 or 4 Crowns.

Very hot in Summer.

The Heat in the Summer is as troublesome, as the Cold in the Winter; which proceeds not so much from the Rays of the Sun, which is here in a manner always above the Horizon, and makes the Days 18 Hours long) as it is occasioned by the vast Multitudes of Flies and Gnats, which are its Products among the Fenns, renders the Summer Season very incommodious, especially for Travellers. But notwithstanding this vast number of Fenns, which are all over *Muscovy*, the Grounds are extreamly fertile; for, except it be about *Musco*, where it is Gravelly, the Country produces more Wheat and Pasture, than the Inhabitants are able to consume; which is evident from hence, that in those Parts where they are destitute of Rivers, they seldom Manure more Ground, than will suffice for their Subsistance for a Year; yet there is scarce ever any such thing as Dearth to be heard of in *Muscovy*; tho' abundance of most excellent Ground lies Fallow, which produces only Hay, of which they Mow no more than they stand in present need of for their Cattle. 1636.

Exceeds *Livonia.*

It is very observable, that tho' the District of *Allen-taken* in *Livonia*, and the *Muscovite* Territories on that side, are divided only by the River *Narva*, the difference of the Soil is plainly perceivable, as soon as one passes the River. In *Muscovy*, as well as in *Ingermanland*, *Carelia*, and the Northern Parts of *Livonia*, they don't Sow till about 3 Weeks before Midsummer, because the Cold which has penetrated deep into the Earth, must have leisure to thaw; notwithstanding which, their Harvest is over in *August*; the Sun which remains so long in the Summer Season above the Horizon, soon putting forth, and ripening their Corn. But whereas the *Livonians* are forc'd to dry theirs by help of Ovens in the Barns after it is brought in, which is subject to many Inconveniences, and makes it unfit for Seed; the *Muscovites* carry theirs in dry, and ready to be Thrash'd.

Their Harvest.

What the Commentator upon the *Atlas* tells us, after *Herberstein* and *Guaguin* of *Muscovy*, *viz.* That it produces neither Apples, nor any other Fruit worth sending up to the Table, must be understood of some of the most Northern Provinces of *Muscovy*; it being beyond all dispute, that the rest, especially about *Musco*, afford excellent Fruits, as Apples, Cherries, Plumbs, and Gooseberries; tho' it be certain, that this Fruit being not brought to perfection by a just degree of heat, they will not keep so well as in *Germany*, and in some other more Southern Countries. They abound also in all manner of Pulse, Pot-herbs, Asparagus, Onions, Garlick, Roots, Cucumers, Gourds and Melons; the last of which are in great plenty, and excellent good here, and so big that in 1643. a Friend of mine presented me with a Melon that weighed 40 Pound.

Their Fruits.

Melons.

The *Muscovites* are very curious in managing their Melon-beds, which they make of Horsedung immediately after it is carried out of the Stable, this they lay 6 foot deep, and cover it with the richest Mould, in which they make flat Trenches of a foot and a half broad. The Seed, after they have steep'd it in Cows-Milk, or in an Infusion of fair Water, and Sheeps-dung, for 48 Hours, they put pretty deep into the Bed, and cover them in the Night, and sometimes in the Day time with Glass Bells, or Talk. They never transplant them, but only remove what is superfluous from about them. We were credibly inform'd, that about the City of *Samara*, betwixt the *Don* and the *Wolga*, grows a certain kind of Gourds resembling a Lamb in all its Members, fastned to the Ground with a Stalk, which represents the Navelstring; it changes place in growing, as far as the Stalk will reach, and where ever it turns, the Grass withers; which the *Muscovites* call feeding: They further say, that when it ripens the Stalk withers; and the outward Rind is covered with a kind of Hair, which they use instead of Fur. They shew'd us some of these Skins, which were covered with a soft frizling Wooll, not unlike that of a Lamb newly yean'd or taken out of the Sheeps Belly, and swore that they came from that Fruit; for which reason they call it *Boranez*, i. e. *A Lamb.*

How they order them in *Muscovy.*

Barmez.

Julius Scaliger speaks of them, and says, that they grow till the Grass fails them, and that they die for want of Nourishment. He also says, That the Wolf is the only Beast that will feed upon it, and that it is used as a Bait to catch him, which agrees with what the *Muscovites* affirm'd to us. *Exerc.* 134.

It was not till under the Reign of the Great Duke *Michael Federowitz*, who was a great lover of Gardening, that Flowers and Sweet Herbs were transplanted into *Muscovy*: And it is but a few Years ago, since the first *Provence* Roses were brought thither by *Peter Marcellis*, the *Danish* Commissary.

Flowers.

Asparagus.

Some of the *Germans* and *Dutch* have but lately shew'd them the way of managing the *Asparagus Beds*, with such success, that they grow as thick as 2 Thumbs. The *Muscovites* were a considerable time averse to Lettuce and other Sallad Herbs, but are of late pretty well reconciled to them.

Its fertility.

Hasle-trees and Vines are not to be found in *Muscovy*, except what is at *Astracan*; the defect of which is supply'd by the Foreign Merchants.

Honey and Wax is the main product of *Muscovy*, even the Woods abounding in them to such a degree, that besides the vast quantities that are consumed in Wax-candles, and Mead, they export Yearly above 20000 Quintals (or hundred weight) of Wax.

The

1636. The great Foreſts furniſh them with vaſt ſtore of Heathcocks, Pheaſants, Partridges, Wild Geeſe and Ducks: Herons and Swans are not much look'd upon here; and as for Thruſhes, Feldefares, Quails, Larks and other ſmall Birds, they don't think them worth their taking: Storks are not to be ſeen either in *Muſcovy* or *Livonia*, but divers ſorts of Birds of Prey; as Faulcons, Taſſels, *&c.* which in the more Northern Provinces are White.

Fowl.

Veniſon. No Deer. They have alſo all ſorts of Veniſon except Deer; eſpecially Elks and Wild Boars: Their Hares are generally Grey, but turn White in ſome Provinces in the Winter, as they do in *Livonia*; tho' in *Courland*, which is divided from it only by the River *Dwina*, the Hares never change their colour.

Bears, Wolves, Links, Tigers, Foxes, Martins and Sables, they have in ſuch plenty, that their Skins make up the moſt conſiderable part of the Traffick of the Country, ſo that it is computed, that the Foreign Merchants export Yearly the value of a Million of Gold in Furs of Black Foxes, Sables, Caſtors, White Bears, Ermins and Squirrils, beſides what is conſumed in the Country, and what is reſerved for the *Czar*'s own uſe. The Bears and Wolves are very dangerous and miſchievous here, as well as in *Livonia*, of which having given you ſome account before, we will not add any more here. The *Muſcovites* frequently take the Bears Whelps, and after they have taught them to Dance, and do ſome other Tricks, ſhew them about the Country.

All ſorts of Fiſh. The Lakes and Ponds of *Muſcovy*, are no leſs beneficial to them, than their Foreſts, affording them an incredible number of all ſorts of very good Fiſh, except Carps, which are not to be found in *Muſcovy* or *Livonia*, unleſs it be about *Aſtracan*, but are not well taſted.

No Carps.

Not many Years ago an Iron Mine was found out near *Tula*, on the Frontiers of *Tartary*, 120 Leagues from *Muſco*, which furniſh'd the *Czar* with a certain quantity of Iron-bars every Year; and about 15 Years ago information was brought to the *Czar Michael Federowitz*, of a certain Gold Mine, but the Undertaker of it having conſumed all his Subſtance in ſearch of it; and ſeveral others having met with the ſame Fate, the *Muſcovites* have ſince that time given but little credit to theſe ſorts of Projects.

But it is time to take a view alſo of the moſt Northern Province of *Muſcovy*, to wit, that of the *Samojedes*, ſince I had 1643. the opportunity of diſcourſing with 2 of their Deputies, who underſtood the *Muſcovite* Language, in the *Czar*'s Anti-chamber, by whom I was informed of ſeveral particulars relating to this Country.

The *Samojedes*. Theſe People were, without queſtion, comprehended formerly under the general Name of the ancient *Scythæ* and *Sarmates*, the Name *Samojedes* (which ſignifies as much as *Antropophagi*) being given them by the *Muſcovites*, ſince they came under their Juriſdiction, becauſe they uſed to mix the Fleſh of their deceaſed Friends among their Veniſon. As its Situation, which is on both ſides of the River *Oby*, upon the *Tartarian* Sea towards the Streights of *Weigatz*, ſhews it to be a far different Province from *Samogitia*, a Province of *Poland*, betwixt *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, ſo their Habitations, which are Huts, built Vaultwiſe half under Ground, with a hole on the top, which ſerves both for a Door and Chimney, ſufficiently convince us, that the *Abri*, mentioned by *Quintus Curtius*, who ſent their Ambaſſadors to *Alexander*, were not theſe living on the River *Oby*, but rather the *Tartars*, near the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, who living in Woods and Deſerts without any ſettled Habitations, *Alexander* did, as they expreſs it, fight with impenetrable Foreſts, Rivers, Ice and Snow. Their Huts have certain Walks under Ground, by which they converſe with

Their Habitations. one another, during the Winter, when the Sun leaving them in continual Darkneſs for 6 Months, and the Grounds being covered with Snow almoſt to the top of their Huts, they cannot ſtir abroad, but by means of theſe Subterranean Walks. The want of Light they ſupply with their Lamps, which are maintain'd by the Oyl of a certain Fiſh they gather in the Summer, which begins with them, as ſoon as the Sun enters the Septentrional Signs of the Zodiack, and brings them a Day as long as their Night had been before, which has given occaſion to thoſe fabulous Relations of People that ſleep 6 Months in the Winter, and

Their Food. riſe again in the Spring. As they neither cultivate the Ground, nor have any Cattle, ſo they feed inſtead of Bread upon dry'd Fiſh, and Honey and Veniſon, and cloath themſelves with the Skins of the Rein-Deer.

They are low of Stature, with broad flat Faces, little Eyes, and ſhort Legs, wearing their Hair long, not unlike the *Greenlanders*. 1636.

Their Stature.

The Rein-deer, as it is called by the *Laplanders*, a Beaſt well known in moſt of the Northern Parts, is ſomewhat bigger than a Stag, of a greyiſh White Colour, with a high Breaſt, long, rough Hair, and a cloven Hoof: Its Horns are higher than the Elks, and broader than the Stags, with two Brow-antlers on his Forehead. It is a ſociable and ſerviceable Creature, being uſed before little Sledges, which they draw with ſuch Swiftneſs, that they will run above 30 *German* Lgs in 24 hours. The *Samojedes* wear large Caps made of Furs, or Pieces of Cloth of divers Colours, which fall down about their Shoulders. Their Shirts are made of the tender Skins of the young Rein-deer, under which they wear their Drawers, and over their Shirts certain Caſſocks, reaching down to their mid-Leg, and open only at the Neck, with the Furs on the outſide. Theſe Caſſocks they put in very cold Weather over their Heads; the Face appearing only through the Cleft at the Neck, which has occaſion'd ſome of the ancient Hiſtorians to impoſe, People without Heads, and Faces on their Breaſts, upon the World. The *Samojedes*, as well as the *Laplanders* and *Finlanders*, wear a kind of Pattins upon the Snow, of an Ell and an half long, made of the Barks of Trees; the *Laplanders* and *Finlanders* make them as long towards the Heel, as the Toes; but the *Samojedes* have them only turn'd forwards.

The Rein-deer.

Their Cloathing.

The Error of ſome Hiſtorians.

Col. *Porter*, Governor of *Narva*, gave us the diverſion of ſeeing two *Finlanders*, belonging to the Garriſon, running down a Hill with theſe Pattins; which they did with ſo much Swiftneſs, that a Horſe in a Gallop could ſcarce overtake them.

The Nerves and Veins of this Beaſt they uſe inſtead of Thread, and the Shavings of the ſide of the Bark of Beach ſerves for a Handkerchief. I had the Curioſity to ask one of theſe *Samojedes*, what he thought of *Muſcovy*. He reply'd, That tho' *Muſcovy* was a Country pleaſant enough, yet he was confident, That if the Great Duke was ſenſible of the Security and Quiet of their Life, he would chuſe their Retirement before all his Grandeur. They were all Pagans, till within theſe few Years they were converted by a *Muſcovite* Biſhop of *Uladimar*.

Since the Author of theſe Travels has exſpatiated as far as *Samojede*, he thinks it may not be quite beyond the purpoſe, tho' not within the compaſs of his Travels, to give an Account of what he had occaſion to learn of the Condition of *Greenland*, from certain Perſons, who 1654. being ſent from *Copenhagen* to *Greenland*, brought a Man, two Women, and a Girl from thence, and the Plague raging at that time in *Denmark*, which had obliged the King of *Denmark* to retire to *Flensburgh* in *Holſtein*, they were brought thither, and from thence carried to the Duke my Maſter to *Gottorp*, where they were lodged ſeveral Days in my Houſe. They were low, but ſtrong, and well ſet, their Faces ſomewhat broad, with ſmall, lively, black Eyes; their Head and Feet ſhort, not unlike the *Samojedes*, or *Nagaian Tartars*, except that they were much more black, theſe being of an Olive Colour; tho' the youngeſt of the two Women was not ſo black as the other two, had larger Eyes, and diſcovered more Subtilty than the reſt. The Averſion ſhe ſhew'd for Fleſh, which the others did not, and to unclean Beaſts, made us gueſs that ſhe might be of the Poſterity of thoſe ancient Chriſtians, who lived in *Greenland*. Their Hair was as black as Jet, which they roll'd up, and ty'd together on their Gowns. When their Maids become Marriageable, they mark them like the *Americans*, with blew ſtrokes from the Lip to the Chin, or from the upper end of the Noſe between the two Eyes, and ſometimes over the Eye-brows to the Temples. They make them with a ſmall Thread, ſteep'd in train Oil. They ſhew'd me the holes in their Ears, and that they had worn Pendants in them; their Breaſts were very ugly ſhaped flagging down upon their Bellies, with very black Nipples.

A Deſcription of *Greenland*.

Of the Inhabitants.

Several Perſons, who for a conſiderable time did obſerve them, have aſſured me, that they have no Hair in any other Part of their Bodies, but on their Heads, and that they are not troubled with the Womens Monthly Diſeaſe. They ſpoke very faſt, and from the Throat, pronouncing the G very roughly, like the *Tartars*. They want the R in their Language, inſtead of which they uſe the L. Some few *Daniſh* Words are to be met with in their Language; the reſt of their Words (except perhaps two or three, which

Their Language.

1636. seem to be derived from the *Latin*) have not the least Congruity with any Language used in *Europe*: for the better confirmation of which, we will mention some few here used commonly in Conversation; *Keiling*, Heaven; *Ubleisin*, a Star; *Igne*, Fire; *Agakwangoo*, Yesterday; *Petting*, a Man; *Kajoictuinas*, Young; *Ekiken*, Deformed; *Niakau*, the Head; *Siutu*, an Ear; *Ukang*, the Tongue; *Tikagga*, a Finger; *Nasekka*, the Belly; *Ennowan*, a Wastcoat; *Kaksua*, an Arrow; *Kalipsi*, a Pot; *Uglessin*, a Bird; *Itaguptan*, to-morrow; *Kona*, a Woman; *Pannien*, a Child; *Kannoctuina*, Old; *Pinallu*, Fair; *Ubia*, Father; *Nulia*, Mother; *Isiken*, an Eye; *Keinga*, the Nose; *Kanekua*, the Mouth; *Kiguting*, a Tooth; *Pimikuin*, the Beard; *Aksceita*, the Hand; *Kablan*, the Thumb; *Kuggie*, a Nail; *Kana*, a Leg; *Sikadin*, a Foot, *&c.*

Their Cloathing. Their Cloaths are made of the Skins of Sea-dogs, Sea-calves, and of the Rein-deer, like the *Samojedes*, except that they have under them Wastcoats made of the Skins of Birds, such as Swans, Geese, Wild Ducks, *&c.* turning the Feathers inward or outward, according to the difference of Season. Their Sex is not easily distinguish'd, except that the Women wear a Piece of Skin hanging down before and behind half way to the Leg, and have a Capuche on their Wastcoats, like the *Recollects*; whereas that of the Men is not so broad, and not unlike those of the *Franciscans*. The Mens Breeches come below their Knees, but those of the Women not to above half the Thigh.

Their ordinary Employments. Fishing and Hunting are their daily Employments, in which they make use of Bows and Arrows only, which are also their Arms; tho' they also fish with a kind of a Hook, made of the tooth of the Fish *Tawak*: Of this they make also their Instrument, wherewith they kill the Whale, which they perform after a different manner from other Nations. They cut a very long Thong out of a Whale-skin, to one End of which they fasten the Instrument, and to the other a Sea-calf or Dog's-skin blown up; then they dart the Instrument at the Whale, the blown Skin floating upon the Water, and shewing the Track of the Whale, till her strength failing they kill and draw her ashore. The Fat and Oil of the Whale is accounted a great Dainty with them, the last of which they drink, which the Women that were with us, preferr'd before our Wines, Bread, or Sauces; which they refused, but instead of them were contented with common Water, their ordinary Drink in *Greenland*. They don't eat their Meat raw, as it is commonly reported, but either boil or roast it; their common Food being Sea-dogs, Sea-calves, Rein-deer, Foxes, House-dogs, and dry'd Fish.

Are Savages. As they are a People without Civility, Vertue or Shame, they may very well be numbred among the Savages; they always have a sour Countenance, are distrustful, stubborn and incorrigible; tho' it must be confess'd that, according to the Relations of those who have been on that Coast, those towards the S. W. are not so savage as those towards the North. So our three Women, who had been taken at the Entrance of *Davis*-streight, were pretty docile, and would imitate those Things Women are commonly employed about: They danc'd (tho' after a strange manner) with so much Exactness, as to Time and Cadence, that every Body was surprized thereat, when they saw them dance at a Ball before the King of *Denmark* at *Flensburgh*. However they would never take to any other Language but their own, tho' they could pronounce some *Danish* and *German* Words very distinctly.

They despise Gold and Silver. As they were unacquainted with the Value of Gold and Silver, so they prefer a Hatchet before a Piece of Gold, and a Nail before a Crown-piece; which is the reason that they are so fond of Knives, Sciffars, Needles, and such like other Toys of Iron or Steel, for which they exchange the Fat and Oil of Whales, Skins of Land-dogs and Sea-calves, the Teeth of the Fish *Towak*, whereof Mr. *Perreire* has given us an exact Description.

Treatise of *Greenland*. The Duke of *Holstein* has one of these Teeth, which is 8 Foot 2 Inches long, and weighs 18 Pound. The King of *Denmark* has one 6 Inches longer. *Greenland* produces also Talk and Marble of all Colours. And some Oar, as it is reported, was found here under the Reign of *Frederick* the 2d, King of *Denmark*, an hundred weight of which yielded 26 Ounces of *Silver*.

Are Pagans. We are ignorant hitherto as to what concerns their Religion, but I am apt to imagine they are Pagans, because I have a wooden Idol by me, which being brought out of *Davis*-Streight, our Women knew it at first sight, and call'd it *Nalim-qui-sang*, giving me to understand, that the Children used to dance about it. It was of a Foot and an half high, very roughly made, covered with Feathers and an hairy Skin, with Sea-dogs Teeth about the Neck. I observed also, that our Women would prostrate themselves, and weep at Sun-rising, which seems to imply that they adore the Sun. Mr. *Zeiler* makes the *Greenlanders* Sorcerers, and that they sell Winds like the *Laplanders*, tho' no such thing has been observed by the *Danes*. It was indeed taken notice of among those that were with us, That when one of them happen'd to fall sick, one of their Comrades used to lye by her upon her back; and the sick Person bound a Stick, with a Cloth, on the Forehead of her that ail'd nothing, muttering certain Words by it; which done, she that had her Head thus bound up, leaned it down very heavy at first, afterwards more easily, the sick Person continuing all this while her Prayers; the Mystery of which Ceremony no body was able to discover. 1636. Itinerar.

They live in a State of Equality among one another, without any Magistrates or Superiors: He that has the most Children, most Bows and Arrows, and Wild Fowl, is the richest amongst them. Their Colour, which is swarthy, contradicts what *Pliny* asserts, that the Heat of the Sun burns the Skin, and the Cold whitens it, if Experience had not sufficiently convinced us to the contrary; it being evident, That those living near the Streights of *Magellan*, are white, tho' as near the Sun as the Negroes of *Africk*. Thus the Inhabitants near the *Cape of Good Hope*, are Black, whereas the *Spaniards*, *Italians*, and *Persians*, living under the same degree, are White; and the same difference may be observed among the *Ethiopians*, and the *Malabars*, tho' at the same distance from the Line. L. 2. c. 72. They are swarthy.

But after so large a Digression, it is time to return to *Muscovy*, and give you an Account first of their Habit and Stature, and next, of their Temper and Manner of Living. They are, for the most part, very corpulent and well-set, their Complexion like the rest of the *Europeans*: Great Beards, with the Mustacho's hanging over their Lips, are in great Veneration among them; and I remember particularly that the *Czar*'s Factors, who attended at our Audience, were all chosen Men for Beards and Paunches. Persons of Quality shave their Heads close, those of an inferior degree only cut their Hair: The Clergy wear them hanging down round their Shoulders half ways their Backs; and so do the *Bojars*, if they are in disgrace at Court, as a Testimony of their Affliction. The Women are well proportion'd both in their Limbs and Features, notwithstanding which they paint their Faces, and that so grossly, as if it had been laid on with a Brush; which Custom has taken so deep Root in *Muscovy*, that among the Presents which the Bridegroom makes to his Bride, he always sends some Paint; and I remember, that when *Knez Juan Borissawitz Cirkaski* his Lady, who was one of the handsomest in all *Muscovy*, was unwilling to spoil her Beauty with such course Plaister-work, the rest of the Ladies at Court obliged her to comply with that preposterous Custom. The Stature of the *Muscovites*. Their Women.

Married Women thrust their Hair up under their Coifs, but the Maids wear it in two Tresses, hanging down behind with a Crimson Riband ty'd to the end. Children of both Sexes, under 10 years of Age, have their Hair cut, except two Locks over the Temples, their Sex being discovered only by a Brass or Silver Ring, the Girls wear in their Ears. Their Habit.

Their Habit is not unlike that of the ancient *Greeks*: They have wide and short Shirts scarce reaching to their Knees, without any Gatherings in the Neck, but are lin'd with a triangular Piece from the Shoulders down to the Reins, which is commonly sow'd down with Crimson Silk; and some have in the Seams and under the Arm-pits Fringes of the same Colour. The Neck-piece is about an Inch broad, which together with the end of the Sleeves, and on the Breast, the richer sort have embroider'd with Silk, or Gold, or precious Stones, and fasten the Neck-band with two great Pearls, or Gold and Silver Buttons before. Their Breeches are very large, and may be made either wider or streighter, like our Drawers; over which they wear a Wast-coat, call'd *Kaftan*, reaching down to their Knees, the Sleeves of which are so long, that they lay them in many Pleats: The Colour of this Wast-coat being above half a quarter of an Ell high, covers part of the Head behind, and is commonly lined with Plush or Sattin. Over this they wear a close-bodied

1636. bodied Coat, call'd *Feres*, coming down below the mid-leg; both theſe are generally made of Callicoe, Taffeta, Damask, or Sattin, according to the Quality of thoſe that wear them. Whenever they go abroad, they wear over theſe a kind of a Robe reaching down to their Heels, of a Violet or dark green Cloth; tho' the *Knez* and *Bojars* have them of Damask, Sattin, and other rich Silks. Of this kind are the Robes which they appear in at Court upon any Solemn Occaſion, which are taken out of the *Czar*'s Wardrobe.

The cloſe-bodied Coats have a kind of a broad Cape falling down upon the Shoulders, on which the richer ſort have Gold and Silver Loop-buttons, as well behind as before and on the ſides. The Sleeves are of the ſame length with the Coat, but narrow, and hanging by.

Inſtead of Hats, the *Muſcovites* were Caps: Perſons of Quality have theirs of Sables, or black Foxes Furs, half an Ell high, when they are to make their Appearance upon any Publick Occaſion; but thoſe they uſe at home, or in common Converſation, are of Velvet, lined with the ſaid Furs, with narrow Brims, trimm'd with Gold and Silver Loops, or embroider'd with Pearls. The Common People are contented with ſuch a Cap made of Stuff, in the Summer, and in the Winter, with Cloth ones lined with Sheep-skins. Their Boots are made of *Ruſſia* Leather, or *Perſian* Goat-skins, not unlike thoſe of the *Polanders*, ſhort and piked towards the Toe. The Womens Shooes-heels are a quarter high, ſo that they can ſcarce walk in them.

The Habit of the *Muſcovite* Women differs only in the largeneſs of their Coats, which are wider than thoſe of the Men; and the richer ſort have them trimm'd with rich Gold, Silver, and Silk Laces, or Button-loops: Their Sleeves are made ſo, as that they may either put them on, or let them hang by: They wear no *Kaſtans*, nor none of thoſe high Collars the Men are ſo proud of: Their Smock-ſleeves are 4 or 5 Ells long, folded upon their Arms: Their Caps or Coifs are generally of Damask, plain or flower'd Sattin; ſometimes embroider'd with Gold or Silver, and lined with Caſtors, the Hair whereof cover a great part of their Foreheads. The Maids have their Caps commonly lined with Fox-skin.

Not many Years ago all Foreigners in *Muſcovy* uſed to appear abroad in *Muſcovite* Habits, till the preſent Patriarch having obſerved ſome *Germans*, at a Proceſſion, ſhew an Irreverence as he was giving the Benediction to the People, was ſo exaſperated thereat, that he made his Application to the *Czar*, unto whom he repreſented that thoſe Foreigners of another Religion, being unworthy of the Benediction he imparted to the Faithful, it was abſolutely requiſite they ſhould appear in their own Country-dreſs, to diſtinguiſh them from the reſt, deſiring him, That he would be pleaſed to iſſue out his Ordinance for that purpoſe. The Great Duke having accordingly put forth his Proclamation, the Foreigners were forced to obey; but the Time appointed for the changing of their Dreſs being ſhort, and no Taylors being to be had in *Muſcovy* who could make any after the Foreign Mode, it was a pleaſant Spectacle to ſee thoſe, who had Places at Court, appear there in their Antick Dreſſes; moſt of them having belonged to their Grand, or Great Grandfather, who had, perhaps brought them out of *Livonia*, when they were forced by the Tyrant *Juan Baſilowitz*, to change their Native Habitations for thoſe of *Muſco*. Ever ſince, each Foreign Nation are clad after their own Modes.

The *Muſcovites* as they are very tenacious of their Cuſtoms, ſo they never change their Faſhion, it being ſeldom to be ſeen that any of them imitate a Foreign Dreſs. I knew but one in our Time, who being a Perſon of Quality, call'd *Knez Mikita Juanouitz Romanou*, would ſometimes appear according to the *Poliſh* or *French* Modes, at which the Patriarch was highly diſpleaſed. As for the Peaſantry of *Muſcovy*, they wear ſcarce any thing but courſe Canvaſs, and Shooes of Barks of Trees, wrought like our Basket-work, which they make themſelves; ſo, that what the Elector of *Brandenburgh* ſaid of a certain *Bayliwick* in *Pruſſia*, *viz. That there were above* 15000 *Shooemakers in it*, may be apply'd to *Muſcovy*, where as well as in that *Bayliwick* each Peaſant is his own Shooe-maker.

Their way of Living.

If due Reflection be made upon the manner of Living of the *Muſcovites*, it muſt be confeſs'd, That ſcarce any thing can be more barbarous than they are. They would fain perſwade the World, that they are deſcended from the Ancient *Greeks*, when at the ſame time they are ſo much involved in Barbariſm, that they deſpiſe all Arts and Sciences, and look upon a Mathematician no otherwiſe than a Sorcerer; which I found to be true, by my own Experience, when 1643. I ſhew'd them ſome Pieces in Opticks, and the *Czar* would have entertain'd me in his Service, in the Quality of his Aſtronomer and Mathematician; and of which I cannot forbear to give you another Inſtance, in a certain *Dutch* Chirurgeon living in *Muſco*, who playing one Night upon the Lute in a Room where a Skeleton hung againſt the Wall, certain *Strelitzes* paſſing by that way, and peeping through a Chink, ſaw the *Skeleton* moving by the Wind that came through the Window, they were ſo frighten'd thereat, that they run ſtraitways to Court, and inform'd the *Czar*, that they had ſeen the Skeleton dance; which being confirmed by others, who were ſent on purpoſe to diſcover the Truth, the poor Chirurgeon was condemned for a Sorcerer by the Council; and had certainly ſuffered as ſuch, had not *Knez Juan Boriſſowitz Cirkaski*, who was his Patron, interceeded with the Great Duke in his behalf, by remonſtrating to his Majeſty, that the Chirurgeons made uſe of theſe Skeletons, to find out the Compoſure and Juncture of the Bones. Notwithſtanding which, he was forced to leave the Country, and the Skeleton was drag'd about the Streets and burnt: An evident Sign that tho' they eſteem Phyſicians, they have an Averſion to that Science. 1636.

A *German* Painter, who had a dead Man's Skull in his Houſe, was in danger of undergoing the ſame Fate. But with all their Barbarity, it muſt be confeſs'd they are naturally ingenious, but ſeldom apply their Wit to any Vertuous or Honourable Action; which verifies the Character given them by a certain *Daniſh* Gentleman, who was ſent Ambaſſador thither by *Frederick* the 2d, King of *Denmark*: To wit; *That they are ſubtil, over-reaching, humourous, ſelf-will'd, obſtinate, inſolent and impudent, that Intereſt is the Guide of their Reaſon, and that they have bid farewel to all Vertues, to embrace all manner of Vice.*

They are very crafty.

This may eaſily be diſcovered in their way of Dealing; for, tho' they make it a Piece of Conſcience to retain any thing that is paid them more than their due, they don't look upon it as a Crime to over-reach a Buyer in a Bargain, be it never ſo unreaſonable, alledging, that a Merchant is not fit for Traffick, unleſs he have a good Talent, and knows how to make uſe of it, in ſurprizing thoſe he deals with: And I remember, that when ſome *Muſcovite* Merchants had been ſhrewdly over-reach'd by a certain *Dutchman*, they were ſo far from blaming him for it, that they deſired to be admitted his Partners, to be perfected in the way of Cheating. This makes them very miſtruſtful, and to look upon Lying and Calumnies as very neceſſary Qualifications: The laſt of which had got ſuch an Aſcendant in the Court of *Muſcovy* in former Times, eſpecially under the Reign of the Tyrant *Juan Baſilowitz*, that a great number of Perſons of the firſt Rank felt the direful Effects of it.

Liars.

And I had a very good Story of this kind told me at *Narva* by Mr. *Martin Baar*, who liv'd in *Muſcovy* under the Reign of the Great Duke *Boris Goudenou*. The ſaid Great Duke being very ill of the Gout, a certain *Bojar*'s Wife, who was but indifferently treated by her Husband, to revenge herſelf, inform'd the Court, that he had a moſt Sovereign Remedy againſt the Gout, but would not apply it to his Majeſty. The *Bojar* being ſent for immediately, and charged with the Thing, made all the Excuſes he could, but in vain; for all being attributed to his Malice, he was whipp'd twice moſt cruelly, and at laſt commanded to prepare himſelf for Death, unleſs he would apply the deſired Remedy. The poor Fellow being reduced to Deſpair, at laſt deſired 15 Days to prepare it; telling them, that not being ſure of its Certainty, he durſt not attempt to make Trial of it upon his Majeſty; which being granted to him, he ſent for a whole Waggon full of Herbs, good or bad, ſuch as they could meet with, wherewith he prepared a Bath for the Great Duke; who finding himſelf ſomewhat at eaſe, and being thereby confirmed in the Opinion he had conceived before, that the *Bojar* had refuſed to apply this Remedy out of Malice, order'd him a Third Whipping more ſevere than the Two former; and, at laſt, gave him a Reward of 400 Crowns, with 18 Peaſants for his Slaves, with a ſtrict Charge not to entertain any Animoſities againſt his Wife.

Of late Years, it muſt be confeſs'd, they have proceeded with more Caution; and, to ſtifle this Vice of Calumny, a Law has been made for the Accuſer to endure

1636. dure the Torture, before the Person accused can be condemned to it; notwithstanding which we saw an Example of this kind in another Woman, the Great Duke's Farrier's Wife, who willing to be rid of her Husband, accused him that he intended to poison the *Czar*'s Horses, and the Great Duke himself, if he could; Upon which being put to the Torture, and persisting in her Accusation, the Husband was banished into *Liberia*.

I thought my self obliged to mention these Instances of Treachery to one another, from whence a reasonable Inference may be made, what Strangers may expect at their Hands; it being certain, that as their Education never extends beyond Reading and Writing, so they, like Beasts, act meerly by Instinct, and act in the whole course of their Life, either according to their unbridled Passions, or Prospect of Interest.

Gross and insolent. Hence it is, that they want that Allay of Generosity, which is observable in most of the fiercest Nations; whereas they being on the contrary overcome with a sottish Pride and Conceit, especially of the Greatness, Power, and Wealth of their Monarch, before all others, they treat even the Ambassadors of the most potent Princes with a great deal of Insolence.

Uncivil. Private Persons don't treat one another with more Civility, nothing being more common among them, than to affront one another.

Whilst we were at *Nisa-novogorod*, the Chancellor's Steward, who came to see us, happen'd to quarrel with our *Pristaff* about Precedency, which in an instant rise to such an heighth, that in the Ambassadors Presence they call'd one another Son of a Whore, and Dog; but being desired to lay aside their Difference till a more convenient Time and Place, where they were invited to be merry, and not to quarrel, they drank so cordially together, as if there had not been the least Contest betwixt them.

Quarrelsome. They are extremely quarrelsome, and will make such a Noise at one another, that a Stranger cannot imagine, that they would ever part without Bloodshed; but this happens very seldom, unless it be by the means of a Switch, or Fists; the utmost piece they venture at, being a good Kick or two in or about the Belly. 'Tis true, if a Quarrel happens betwixt some *Knez* or *Bojars*, they decide it on Horse-back, but not with Sword and Pistol, the highest Piece of their Gallantry arising no higher than to fight it out with a good Whip. It must be confess'd, that in their Quarrels they seldom curse, or blaspheme; but, on the other hand, they rail at one another in such reviling Terms, and in such horrid Expressions, as ought not to be mention'd; the worst is, that these pass reciprocally betwixt Parents and Children, and from the vulgar sort to Persons of Quality; to refrain which Insolences, the same were forbidden under Pain of Whipping; but this proving insufficient, a Fine was injoin'd to be paid by the Offenders, according to the Quality of the injur'd Person.

They are so brutish in their Conversation, that they are not in the least asham'd to belch their Exhalations of Onions and Garlick, wherewith all their Meats are dress'd, into other Peoples Faces, without any distinction of Quality, unless in the Great Duke's Presence.

Are shameless. They are as much Foreigners to Arts and Sciences, as they are to the Knowledge of other Countries, which makes their Conversation run generally upon nothing but Brutalities; nay, such enormous Vices, as are not fit to be named, which they frequently commit in their Drink: The Postures of their Dancing, especially of their Women, are unquestionable Demonstrations of their Impudence. I have been an Eye-witness, my self, when both Men and Women came out of the Brothel-House stark Naked, and incited some of our Retinue to Lasciviousness by their Filthy Expressions. Our Interpreter related to me a remarkable Instance of this kind, at *Novogorod*, where a Woman, being among other Pilgrims, come thither to assist at an Anniversary Devotion, took so large a Morning Draught, that, as she came out of the Tipling-Place, she drop'd down quite uncovered in the Street: A drunken *Muscovite* happening not long after to come that way, lay down by her, made use of her, and before he had quite done, fell asleep in sight of a great many Standers by, who made a Ring about them, till an old Man passing by covered them with his Garments.

Drunkards. Drunkenness is a Vice so Currant in *Muscovy*, that scarce any Body is exempted from it: They have a Custom of taking a good Cup of *Aqua Vitæ* before, at, and after Meals, which introduces them into greater Debauches afterwards; nay, the vulgar sort are so much addicted to this Vice, that we used frequently to see them come out of a Tipling-house without their Cloths, nay, without their Shirts and Drawers, and appear in the Streets without the least Shame, like *Adamites*, covering their Privy Parts only with an handful of Herbs; and among the rest, I saw once a Priest at *Novogorod*, whilst he was going to give the Benediction to our Centinel at the Door, tumble head-long in the Dirt, without any sense or motion, which were suppressed by the Vapours of the strong Liquor he had drunk at a Neighbouring Tipling-house. The *Czar Michael Federowitz*, who was a professed Enemy to Drunkenness, endeavoured to moderate these Excesses, by suppressing a great number of these Tipling-Houses, and prescribing certain Rules and Measures to the rest; but this had no other effect, than that instead of meeting at the Publick Houses, they used to get drunk with one another at home. 1636.

So are the Women. The Women are no less addicted to it, than the Men, nothing being more common among them, than to see them come after their Husbands to the Tipling-house, where they will be sure to make the Cup go merrily round, and, after their Husbands are fal'n asleep upon the Floor, sit upon them, and continue drinking till they tumble down drunk among them, of which I saw an Example my self at *Narva*.

Tabaco forbidden. *Tabaco* was formerly so common in *Muscovy*, that they took it in great Quantities both in Snuff and Smoak, the poorer sort spending all to the last Peny upon that Weed; besides, that, by their negligence, many Houses were set on Fire, and they used to appear with their stinking Breaths before their Images, the Patriarch prevail'd with the *Czar*, 1634. to forbid the Importation, Sale, and Use of Tabaco, under severe Penalties.

Their Slavery. The base Disposition of the *Muscovites*, the Meanness of their Education, and that continuation of Slavery, unto which the highest from the lowest are born, makes them insensible of any thing else but Force, nothing but the Cudgel and the Whip being able to bring them to Reason, of which Slavish Chastisement even the greatest *Bojars* are not exempted. The poorer sort are so insensible of that Liberty, which other Nations value at so high a rate, that for a small Matter they will sell themselves and their whole Family; and if they happen to be delivered from Slavery, by some Accident or other, they will make the same Bargain a second time.

The utmost Reverence they pay to their Superiors, by bowing their Heads to the Ground, and prostrating themselves, after they have received a good Cudgelling, are infallible demonstrations of the lowness of their Spirits: The greatest Men themselves don't think it below their Stations to confess, nay, to brag, That they are the *Czar*'s Slaves; and, as a Sign of their Humility, never speak or write to him, but express their Names in the diminutive; as for Instance, *Petruske twoy Golop, I, Petrillo, your Slave*, instead of *I, Peter*. The worst of all is, that even such Foreigners as enter into the *Czar*'s-Service, must be subject to the same Treatment; especially the Physicians in former times, because the *Muscovites* used to look upon that Art as infallible.

When 1602. *John* Duke of *Holstein*, who had married the Daughter of the Great Duke *Boris Gondenou*, fell sick, the *Czar* sent word to his Physicians, that if he recovered not, their Heads should answer for it; and he happening to die not long after, the Physicians kept out of the way, till the Great Duke himself being seized with the Gout, he sent for one of them, in order to administer some proper Remedies to him; the poor Physician imagining no otherwise than that he was call'd to Execution, put on a tatter'd Garment, and advancing in a prostrate Posture to the *Czar*'s Bed, ask'd his Pardon; upon which one of the *Knez* there present, intending to divert the *Czar*, call'd him Dog, and kick'd him: But the Physician perceiving the *Czar* to look with a favourable Eye upon him, said to him with a certain Confidence:

Great Prince, I am sensible I am your Slave; but give me leave to tell you, that I am only Yours. I know I have deserved Death, and should think my self happy to receive it from your Hands; but it troubles me to be thus affronted by this Knez, my Fellow-slave; and I think it is not your Desire, that any other should have Power over me.

These Words, together with the Occasion the Great Duke had of his Assistance, procured him and his Fellow-

1636. low-Phyſicians a Pardon, beſides a Preſent of 1000 Crowns for himſelf, and the *Bojar* had a good Cudgelling for his Pains.

The Lords keep many Slaves.

As the Lords are abſolute Slaves to the *Czar*, ſo they keep great numbers of Slaves of their own in their Country-Houſes and Farms; beſides thoſe they keep for their Service in the City, who being kept at very ſmall Board-wages, this is the chief Cauſe of the many Diſorders that are committed in the Night-time in the Streets of *Muſco*: Thus our Maſter-Cook was kill'd one Night as he was coming home, and the *Swediſh* Ambaſſador's Steward underwent the ſame Fate. The Lieutenant who commanded our Muſqueteers in our Voyage into *Pruſſia*, was alſo killed one Night coming from a Wedding homewards; nay, I ſaw the Great Duke's Phyſician ſtruck from his Horſe, in the Day-time in the Streets; and they would have cut off his Finger, on which he had a Gold Ring, had he not been reſcu'd by ſome Servants of a *Knez* of his Acquaintance who lived hard by: And I remember that on St. *Martin*'s Eve, we counted once 15 dead Bodies in the Place, where they are expoſed to Publick View, that their Friends may take Care of their Burials.

But of late Years Watches have been appointed, who examine all ſuch as they find walking without Lanthorns, and commit them to the Guard Houſe of the *Strelitzes*.

Make the Streets and the Roads about *Muſco* very unſafe.

Theſe Slaves alſo make the Roads about *Muſco* very unſafe for Travellers, whom they rob and kill without any remorſe, if they are not very well provided againſt them. Theſe Slaves are ſold by their Maſters, like as we do our Horſes or Cows; nay, a Father may diſpoſe of his Son for his own advantage, which however they ſeldom do, unleſs it be to ſatisfie their Creditors, in which caſe they engage the Boys at 10 Crowns, and the Girls at 8 Crowns a Year, the Children in *Muſcovy* being obliged no leſs than their Parents, to give ſatisfaction to the Creditor, and to undergo the Puniſhment appointed for deſperate Debtors.

Are good Soldiers in the defence of a Place.

Notwithſtanding the *Muſcovites* are born Slaves (who were not allow'd to be liſted into the *Roman Legions*) their groſs Food, and the Hardſhips they are inured to from their Infancy, makes them very fit for Soldiery, eſpecially in the defence of Places, of which we have an inſtance 1579. in the Siege of *Noteburgh*, where they made an honourable Capitulation with the *Swedes*, after there were but 2 Men left. They ſhew'd no leſs Bravery in the defence of the Abby of *Padis* in *Livonia*, and the Caſtle of *Smikols*; the laſt of which was Beſieged by the *Poles*.

But not in the Field.

In the Field, it muſt be confeſs'd, they have rarely been able to act with any ſucceſs againſt the *Poles* or *Swedes*, but that muſt in a great meaſure be attributed to the ill management of their Officers, and eſpecially of their Generals, as it happened 1633. at the Siege of *Smolensko*, where the *Muſcovite* Army conſiſted of 100000 Men; among whom were 6000 *Germans*, under the Command of one *Herman Schein*, a *Poliſh* Renegade.

The diſgrace before *Smolensko*.

The Fortifications of the City being but in a very indifferent condition, the *Germans* had made a large Breach on their ſide, and attack'd it with ſo much Bravery, that they were in a manner Maſters of it, when the General, either out of Perfidiouſneſs or Envy, cauſed his great Guns to be turn'd againſt them, and forc'd them to give over the Aſſault. In the mean while the *Poles* having gathered a Body of 5000 choſen Men, poſſeſt themſelves of an advantageous Poſt, from whence they might cut off their Convoy of Proviſions, which reduced the *Muſcovite* Army in a little time to ſuch a diſtreſs, that they were forced to ſurrender themſelves and the whole Artillery at diſcretion, and to agree to a vaſt Ranſom for the Officers, which was paid afterwards by the Great Duke. The General return'd notwithſtanding this, to *Muſco*, truſting to the Patriarch's favour, and ſome of the Great ones, who had a Finger in the Treaſon, who in effect were ſo powerful, as to protect him againſt the Charge brought againſt him by the *German* Officers, but the People having got the ſcent of his Treachery, began to murmur ſo loudly, that they were forced to bring him to condign Puniſhment, his Head being ſever'd from his Body in *June* 1634. and his Kindred baniſh'd into *Siberia*.

Their Houſe keeping.

The *Muſcovites*, as well thoſe of a higher, as a lower degree, are very thrifty in their Houſe-keeping, the laſt live only in wretched Wooden Houſes; and it is not above 30 Years, ſince their Lords and rich Merchants have built Houſes of Stone. 1636.

Their ordinary Houſhold-ſtuff ſeldom exceeds 3 or 4 Pots, and as many Wooden or Earthen Diſhes; ſome few of the better ſort have Pewter, but ſcarce any Silver except ſome drinking Cups, and thoſe ſo ill kept, that the Great Duke's Plate looks like our Tavern Pots, being clean'd but once a Year, and that after a very ſlovingly manner. They alſo ſometimes hang their Rooms with Mats, and adorn them with a few Images miſerably painted. Some Perſons of Quality uſe Feather-beds, the reſt uſe Quilts, and the common People Chaff or Straw; for want of which, they make uſe of their Cloaths, which they lay upon a Bench or Table in the Summer, and upon their Stoves, which are flat, in the Winter; the whole Family being ſqueezed together in the ſame Room; nay, in the Country the Poultry and Pigs are quartered in the ſame place with the Maſter and Family belonging to the Houſe.

Their Food.

They are Strangers to ſuch Delicacies, as are in vogue among us; their common Food being courſe Meat, Turneps, Coleworts, and Cucumers, both freſh and pickled. Their chief Dainty is Salt Fiſh, which being not well Salted, ſmells very ſtrong. They are ſufficiently ſtock'd with Mutton and Beef, and their Foreſts furniſh them with very fat Swine, but as the better part of their Year is taken up with Faſts, ſo they are ſo much accuſtom'd to Fiſh and Pulſe, that they neglect Fleſh; which is the reaſon they dreſs their Fiſh, Herbs and Pulſe much better than the reſt; and, I remember that the *Czar* ſent us once 40 Diſhes, moſt Herbs and Pulſe: Of the Spawn of Fiſh, eſpecially that of Sturgeon, they make a kind of Ragout thus: After they have taken off the Skin, they keep it in Salt 8 or 10 Days, and then reduce it to a Paſte, which they cut in pieces, mix Onions and Pepper with it, and eat it with Oyl and Vinegar; inſtead of which, you may make uſe of the Juice of Citron. The *Muſcovites* call it *Icars*, and the *Italians Covajar*, which they eat in *Lent* time inſtead of Butter. The beſt is made near *Aſtracan*, upon the *Wolga*; whence it is tranſported beyond the Seas in Tuns of 700 or 800 weight. The *Czar* ingroſſes the Traffick of this Commodity to himſelf. After hard Drinking, the *Muſcovites* mince roaſted Veal, with ſome pickled Cucumers, and mix Pepper, Vinegar, and the Liquor of pickled Cucumers with them, which they eat for their Breakfaſt the next Morning. *Covajar.*

Their Drink.

Their ordinary Drink is a kind of ſmall Mead, they call *Quaz*, beſides which they never fail to take a Dram of *Aqua Vitæ* both before and after their Meals. But the better ſort are provided with Sack, alſo other ſorts of Wines, and Strong Beer, which they brew in *March*, and keep all the Summer in their Snow Houſes; they make a Bed of Ice and Snow mixt together, and then a Lay of Barrels; upon thoſe another Bed of Ice, and ſo another row of Barrels, which they cover with Straw and Blanks, which ſerve inſtead of a Vault, their Cellars being not covered.

How they keep their Strong Beer.

French and *Rhéniſh* Wines being too weak for a *Muſcovite* Stomach, they rather admire a ſort of ſtrong Hydromel, which they order with Cherries, Strawberries, Mulberries, or Rasberries; the laſt of which is the moſt pleaſant of all. They put the Rasberries in fair Water for 2 or 3 Nights, till it has extracted all the Taſte and Colour: Into this Infuſion they put ſome of the fineſt Honey, to each Pound 3 or 4 of Water, according as they would have it ſtronger or ſmaller: To make it Work, they put into it a Toaſt dipp'd in the Dregs of Beer, which they take out again as ſoon as it begins to ferment, for fear it ſhould give it an ill taſte; if they intend to keep it a good while a Working, they keep it in a warm place, if they would have it only for preſent uſe, they put it in a cool Room: To give it a good Flavour, they put in ſometimes a little Bag with Cinnamon, Grains of Paradiſe, and a few Cloves; ſome make an Infuſion of the Rasberries with *Aqua Vitæ*, inſtead of Water.

How they make Methegline.

Their common Mead.

Their ſmall Mead they make of Honey-combs, theſe they beat only in warm Water, ſtirring it frequently for 7 or 8 Hours; then they cleauſe it through a Sieve, boil and ſcum it, and ſo uſe it.

The greateſt Pride of Perſons of Quality in *Muſcovy*, conſiſts in their Retinues, which however puts them to no great Expence; for tho' they keep ſometimes 50 or 60 Slaves about them, maintain a good number of Horſes and have plenty of Proviſions, Beer, Mead, and other good Liquors at their Tables, yet are they furniſh'd with all theſe things from their Farms, which

The Expences of the Muſcovite Lords.

are

1636. are cultivated and look'd after by Slaves, who stand them in very little ready Money. Besides that most of the Entertainments of the *Bojars*, and the Governors of Places are made with no other intent, than to invite those who stand in need of their favour, who are obliged to return it by very considerable Presents. 1636.

At these Entertainments, when they intend to shew a more than ordinary respect to their Friends, they permit them to see their Wives, and after these have presented a Cup of *Aqua Vitæ* to the Guests, to let them kiss her. I remember, that when 1643. I Dined with Count *Leo Alexander de Slakow*, he introduced me into another Room, where his Lady was richly attired in her Wedding Garments, and a Gentlewoman with a Strongwater Bottle attending her. She bid her fill a Silver Cup, which she having put to her Lips, desired me to drink it off, which I having done thrice, the Count desired me to kiss her, which I did; after which she presented me with a Handkerchief, embroidered round the Edges with Gold, Silver and Silk, with a deep Fringe.

The *Knez* and *Boiars* have for the most part great Pensions, or Yearly Allowances besides their own real Estates, and the Merchants and Tradesmen live by Traffick and Trade. Those who have liberty to Traffick into Foreign Countries, carry thither such Commodities as are of the Product of *Muscovy*, *viz.* Sables and other Furs, Flax, Hemp, *Russia* Leather and Wax. All manner of Provisions being very cheap here, the Tradesmen not only provide with a great deal of ease for their Families, but also grow Rich: They are very dextrous at imitating any thing they see done, tho' they are not very well fitted for Inventions, as may be seen in their Carvers and Founders, who make carved Works, and cast as well as any Foreign Artists.

They Sleep after Dinner. There is scarce a *Muscovite*, what Quality soever he be of, but what will have his Afternoons Sleep; which is the reason the Shops are always shut up after Dinner; this is so natural to the *Muscovites*, that thereby, and his aversion to Baths, they first discovered the Imposture of the false *Demetrius*.

Their Baths. Their Baths are the only thing that have any resemblance of what we call Gentile, in *Muscovy*, tho' the Publick ones are but very indifferently fitted for that use. At *Astracan* I went *incognito* into one of them, which was only parted from another Room by a few Deal Boards, which being not well joyn'd, you might with ease see all what pass'd there; besides that there was but one Door for Men and Women to go out or in, some of both Sexes, who were pretty modest, hiding their Privy Parts with a handful of Leaves soak'd in Water, the rest appearing stark naked; nay, some of the Women came in that posture to speak with their Husbands in our Room, without the least sign of Bashfulness.

It is a most surprising thing to see them come out of such an intense degree of heat all on a sudden, and run into the cold Water, or have it poured upon them; or in the Winter wallow themselves in the Snow, and so return into the Stoves again; which we have also observed several times in the *Finlanders*, who live in *Livonia*, no other reason being to be assign'd for it, than a Custom, which being turn'd into a Habit, they are not sensible of these opposite Qualifications of Heat and Cold as other People are; for we made this Observation at *Narva*, That the *Muscovite* Boys of 8, 9, or 10 Years of Age would stand for half an Hour together bare-footed upon the Ice, without ever complaining of Cold. The *Germans* who dwell in *Muscovy* and *Livonia*, are very nice in their Stoves; they strew Pine Leaves powder'd, and all sorts of Herbs and Flowers upon the Floor; which, together with the Lye make a very agreeable Scent. The Seats or Benches which are along the Walls placed one above the other, that one may take what degree of Heat one pleases, are covered with clean Sheets and Pillows filled with Hay; upon those you lie down to Sweat, every one having a Servant Maid, who only in her Smock, Rubs, Washes and Wipes you. As soon as she comes in, she presents you with some Radish and Salt; and if you be a particular Friend, the Mistress of the the House, or her Daughter, brings you a composition of Wine and Beer, with some crum'd Bread, Limon Slices, Sugar and grated Nutmeg.

Are of a strong Constitution. The *Muscovites* in general, are of a very healthy Constitution, and long liv'd; if they happen to be ill, which is very rarely, they have recourse to Garlick and *Aqua Vitæ*, tho' it be in a high Fever. Persons of Quality make use of Physicians, and have a great esteem for that Profession. Tho' Fornication is a familiar Vice among them, they allow no Publick Stews, no more than Polygamy; Marriage being consider'd here as very honourable, in which they observe the degrees of Consanguinity; neither do they permit 2 Brothers to Marry 2 Sisters; nay, Godfathers and Godmothers to the same Child are forbidden to intermarry. A Widower or Widow may Marry twice or thrice, but the fourth time is not allow'd of.

Their Marriage Ceremonies. Their Marriage Ceremonies are performed in the following manner: When those who have Marriageable Children, especially Daughters, have pitch'd upon a Person they like (for the young Couple are not permitted to see, much less to discourse with one another) they address themselves to his Parents; if they approve of the Match, and the young Woman be handsome, leave is given for some other Woman of the Kindred to see her, if not it is perhaps denied: Every thing being agreed on betwixt the Parents, if they be of Quality, a certain Woman whom they call *Swacha*, is appointed on the Bridegrooms side, and another by the Brides Friends to take care joyntly of the Nuptials.

That on the Brides part is to take peculiar care of the Nuptial Bed, and to provide every thing which is fit for the Chamber where the new Married Couple are to lie: The Bed it self being made upon 40 Sheaves of Rye laid in good order, and encompass'd with several Barrels of Wheat, Barley and Oats.

The Nuptial Bed. Every thing being prepared for the Wedding Day, the Bridegroom goes late in the Evening from his House, in Company of his Kindred, the Priest who is to Marry him, leading the Van on Horseback. They are received at the Bride's Door by her Kindred, and invited to come in and sit down at a Table, where only 3 Dishes of Meat are served up, which are not touch'd by any body there present. A Place is left at the upper end of it for the Bridegroom, which is taken up by a young Lad appointed for that purpose, whilst the Bridegroom is talking with the Brides Friends; who having prevail'd, by the means of some Presents, with him who sits in his place to resign it to him, he takes his Seat, and the Bride richly attired, but with a Veil over her Face, is brought in and placed next to the Bridegroom, 2 Lads at the same time holding a piece of Taffata between them to prevent their seeing one another: This done the *Swacha* comes in and paints her, ties up her Hair in 2 Knots, puts a Cornet on her Head, and puts on all the other Attirements belonging to a Married Woman. The Crown is of Leaf-Gold, or Silver gilt lined with Silk, having on both sides near the Ears 5 or 6 rows of Pearls hanging down in Strings on her Breast. The upper Garment which has Sleves of an Ell and a half wide, is embroidered at the edges with Gold and Silver, especially about the Neck, where it is 3 Inches broad, and as stiff with Embroidery, as if it were a Dogs Collar; they sometimes bestow 1000 Crowns upon such a Robe. Then the Bridegroom's *Swacha* paints the Bridegroom, whilst the Women there present stand singing upon the Benches.

After this 2 young Men well attired, bring into the Room a large Cheese laid upon a Bier, with some Loaves, several Martin-skins hanging down from the Bier. The same being done on the Brides side, a great Silver Bason is set upon the Table fill'd with small pieces of Satin, little pieces of Silver, Hops, Barley and Oats mixt together; which as soon as the Brides Face is covered again, is thrown by handfuls by the Bride's *Swacha* among the Company, who gather them up from the Ground, and having received the Priests Benediction, go to Church, the Floor of which is covered with a piece of Taffata, where the young Couple are to stand, with a Canopy of the same Stuff over their Heads.

The Ceremonies in the Church. Here after they have made the usual Offrings of Fish, fry'd Meats and Pastry, the Priest gives them his Benediction, by holding Images over their Heads, and taking the Man by the right, and the Woman by the left Hand, at the same time asks them 3 several times, Whether it is both their Wills to be Married, and to love one another as they ought to do? Unto which both having answered, Yes; the whole Company joyn Hands, and the Priest sings the 128 Psalm, he one Verse and the Company the next, and so continue by turns, Dancing at the same time.

The

1636. The Pſalm ended, he puts a Garland of Rue upon their Heads; and if it be a Widow or Widower, about their Shoulders, ſaying, *Encreaſe and Multiply*; and conſummates the Marriage, by ſaying theſe words, *Whom God hath joined together, let no Man ſeparate.*

Whilſt the Prieſt pronounces theſe words, thoſe who are invited to the Wedding, do light each a Wax-candle, and one of them gives a Glaſs of Wine to the Prieſt, which he takes off, and the Married Couple having pledged the ſame 3 times each, the Bridegroom throws down the Glaſs, which he and the Bride treading under their Feet, ſay: *May they thus fall under our Feet, and be trod to pieces, who ſhall endeavour to ſow Diviſion or Diſcontent between us.*

Then the Women caſt ſome Flax and Hempſeed at the young Couple, wiſhing them much Proſperity, whilſt ſome pull the Bride by the Robe, as if they would take her away from the Bridegroom, unto whom ſhe ſticks ſo cloſe, that ſeemingly, they are not able to remove her.

The whole Marriage Ceremony being ended, the Bride returns in a Sledge, by the light of 6 Torches, or Wax-candles, and the Bridegroom on Horſeback, to the Houſe where the Wedding is kept. They are no ſooner come thither, but the Men ſit down at a Table well fill'd with Meat of all ſorts, whilſt the Women carry the Bride into her Chamber, undreſs, and put her to Bed; which done, they come to the Bridegroom, and force him to riſe from the Table, in order to be conducted to the Bride's Chamber, which is done by 6 or 8 young Men, each with a Torch in his Hand, which they put into the Barrels full of Wheat and Barley, that ſtand round the Bed; each of theſe having two Martins-skins for their pains.

As ſoon as the Bride ſees the Bridegroom come into the Bedchamber, ſhe puts on a Morning Gown lined with Martins-skins, meets him, and ſalutes him with a low inclination of the Head, which is the firſt time he ſees his Brides Face. The firſt thing they do, is to ſit down at a Table, where, among other Meats, they have a roaſted Fowl, which the Bridegroom pulls aſunder, and caſting away over his Shoulder, that part he lights on firſt, they eat the reſt.

This done, to Bed they go, the Gueſts at the Wedding being in the mean while employed about divers Charms they think advantageous to the Married Couple. An old Servant of the Houſe, that attends at the Door, coming after a while asks, Whether the Buſineſs be done? And as ſoon as the Bridegroom anſwers, Yes, the Trumpets and Timbrels upon the Word given, ſound till ſuch time the new Married Couple are conducted to the Stoves, where they Bath themſelves, but apart.

After they have been well waſh'd in the Bath, with Water, Mead and Wine, the Bride ſends the Bridegroom a Shirt richly Embroidered, eſpecially at the Neckband, and a rich Habit. The 2 next Days they ſpend in merry making, when the Women are ſure not to let ſlip a good opportunity whilſt their Husbands are Drunk.

Perſons of an Inferiour Condition, are contented with leſs Ceremonies: For the Night before the Wedding, the Bridegroom ſends ſome Cloaths, Jewels, a Comb and Looking-glaſs to his Bride.

The next Day, the Prieſt is brought in by 2 Lads, carrying Wax-candles lighted: As ſoon as he enters the Houſe, he gives his Benediction firſt to the 2 Lads, and then to the Gueſts. The young Couple being ſat down at the Table, the Lads holding a piece of Taffata betwixt them, the *Suacha* dreſſes the Brides Head; which done, a Looking-glaſs is brought, and the young Couple, joyning their Cheeks, look and ſmile one upon the other, whilſt the 2 *Suacha*'s caſt Hops upon them, and ſo to Church they go, where they are Married with the ſame Ceremonies as we have mentioned before.

The Wedding-day may be ſaid to be the laſt Day of Pleaſure of the *Muſcovite* Women; for after that, they muſt reſolve to live a retired Life, and not to ſtir abroad except upon extraordinary Occaſions. One Comfort they have, that as they are not much brought up to Houſe-keeping by their Parents, ſo they don't much trouble themſelves with it after they are married; their chief Employment being embroidering, ſowing, or making ſome little Purſes, and ſuch like inſignificant Toys: Within Doors their Cloths are very mean, but when they appear in Publick, they are very ſumptuouſly attired, and are ſure to paint their Faces, Necks, and Arms. The Wives of Perſons of Quality ride in Chariots in the Summer-time, attended by a great number of Slaves; the Horſe which draws the Chariot, being adorned with Fox-tails about the Neck and Tail, which they look upon as a great Ornament for Horſes, ſo that even the *Czar* himſelf makes uſe of them; with this difference only, that inſtead of them he uſes Martin-skins. 1636.

How the married Women live.

As the poor *Muſcovite* Women are debarr'd from thoſe Viſits and Converſation moſt other *European* Women enjoy, and ſeldom meddle with Houſewifery, the only Diverſion left them, is to paſs away their time with their Maids. They lay a Plank croſs a Block, and getting up on both ends, toſs one another up and down. Sometimes they ſwing themſelves in Ropes; and in the Country Villages they have a certain ſwinging Engine, in which four may divert themſelves at a time, by balancing one another. Their Diverſions.

The *Muſcovite* Men are not altogether without an Excuſe for the hard Uſage they put upon their Wives, it being certain that they have very lewd Tongues, are much addicted to ſtrong Liquor, and will upon a good Occaſion not deny a good Turn to a Friend: And this is the more tolerable to them, as long as they ſee their Friends and Neighbours treated after the ſame manner; which however does not juſtifie what *Barclay* ſays of the *Muſcovite* Women; *viz. That they don't think their Husbands love them, unleſs they give them now and then reall Proofs of it, by a good Cudgelling*: They being ſenſible of good and bad Uſage, as well as other Women, and have ſometimes ſhew'd their Reſentments againſt their Husbands upon ſuch like Occaſions, as is manifeſt in the *Bojar*'s and Farriers's Wife, we ſpoke of before. Why they are ſo hardly uſed.

Adultery is not ſo frequent in *Muſcovy*, as in ſome other Countreys of *Europe*; becauſe they account nothing Adultery, but when one Man marries anothers Wife, all the reſt being within the compaſs of Fornication; which in married Men, is puniſhed with Whipping, ſome Days Impriſonment, or perhaps, to live a few Days upon Bread and Water. If a married Woman be taken in ſuch a Fault, her Husband is at liberty to have her put into a Monaſtery, a Pretence often made uſe of by the *Muſcovites*, when they have a mind to be rid of their Wives; for when the Razor has touch'd her Head once, ſhe is ſure never to come out again; if they prove barren, they muſt expect the ſame Fate, and their Husbands may marry again in ſix Weeks. What Adultery is in *Muſcovy*.

The Great Dukes take the Privilege of ſending their Spouſes thither without Reprieve, if they bear only Females. And I remember that a *Polander*, who had embrac'd the *Greek* Religion, in order to marry a beautiful Woman he loved, being obliged to leave *Muſcovy* for about a Twelvemonth, his young Spouſe made ſhift to bring forth a Little One, without his Aſſiſtance, and hearing his Wrath, went into a Monaſtery. The Husband being exceedingly fond of his Wife, would, after his Return, fain have got her out of the Monaſtery, but in vain; for tho' ſhe was willing, it was alledged, that ſhe being ſhaved a Nun once, it would be a Sin againſt the Holy Ghoſt to change her Condition.

Another plauſible Pretence of Divorce is, when the Man, under a Religious Pretext, chuſes a Monaſtery before a married Life; which they have leave to do without their Wives Conſent, or making the leaſt Proviſion for their Children; and if their Wives marry again, they are capable of receiving Prieſthood, tho' they were only Mechanicks before.

The *Muſcovites* are much addicted to Venery, yet will they never have to do with a Woman unleſs they have firſt taken off the Croſs, that hangs about her Neck, which is given her at her Baptiſm; and if any Images of their Saints be in the room, they are ſure to cover them; neither will they go to Church, till they have waſh'd themſelves, and put on a clean Shirt. Some will not enter the Church, but remain ſtanding at the Door, which the Women are obliged to do, they being accounted more impure than the Men. Prieſts, after they have waſh'd themſelves about the Navel, may enter the Church, but muſt not approach the Altar. Inſtead of Repentance, they uſe bathing upon this as well as many other Occaſions. They are very Superſtitious.

It is beyond all Diſpute, that the Government of *Muſcovy* is now-a-days not only Monarchical, but alſo deſpotical, the *Czar* having as abſolute a Dominion, even over the greateſt Lords, as a Maſter has over his meaneſt Slaves; which they are ready to confeſs upon all Occaſions, calling themſelves His Majeſty's *Golop*, The Government of *Muſcovy*.

1636. or Slaves, and that their Lives and Estates are in his Disposal; nay, it is not many Years ago, since they were whip'd like Slaves, for very small Faults, which Punishment is now changed into some Days Imprisonment.

From hence it is they give their Sovereign the Title of *Velikii Knez*, or Grand Seignior; which Title indeed he may lay claim to as well as the Great Turk, both in respect of his absolute Power, and the Extent of his Dominions. And since the *Muscovites* were given to understand, That he who bears the first Rank among the Christian Princes, was dignified with the Title *Cæsar*, or *Kaysar*, they have appropriated the Word *Czar* to their Princes; which the Great Dukes Interpreters always explain by the Word *Cæsar*, or Emperor; tho' it be evident, that the Word *Czar* in the *Muscovite* Language, signifies no more than a King, as may be seen in their Bible; where speaking of the Kings of *Judah* and *Israel*, the Successors of *David*, they are called *Czars*.

The Signification of the Word *Czar*.

To back this Pretension they have, in imitation of the *German* Emperors, put a Spread Eagle in the *Czar*'s Arms; but the Wings somewhat less than the Imperial Eagle, having on the Breast in an Escutcheon one on Horseback fighting with a Dragon, representing the Archangel St. *Michael*, or rather St. *George*; above, and between the Eagles Heads, are Three Crowns, signifying *Muscovy*, and the two *Tartarian* Kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*.

The *Czar*'s Arms.

The Famous Tyrant *John Basilowitz* was the first Inventor of these Arms, unto whom the *Muscovites* are chiefly beholding for their Slavish Submission; whose Successors, to keep them in the same lowness of Spirit, have laid this down as one of their chief Maxims of State, that no *Muscovite*, upon Pain of Death, shall go out of the Country without the *Czar*'s special leave. I remember that *John Helmes*, the *Czar*'s Chief Interpreter, obtained Permission for his Son to go into *Germany*, to study Physick; he was so much taken with the sweet Enjoyment of Liberty, and the Climate, that he would never return into *Muscovy*; which was the Reason that when one of the *Czar*'s Envoys, that was sent into *Germany*, beg'd the same Favour for his Son, it was denied him both by the *Czar* and Patriarch, as fearing, not without reason, that he would either follow the others Foot-steps; or, at his Return, imprint into his Fellow-Subjects a true *Idea* of that Liberty other Nations enjoy.

Muscovites Kept in Ignorance.

It must nevertheless be confess'd, that what *Herberstein*, *Paulus Jovius*, and *Guagnin*, relate of the Tyrannical Government of the Great Duke *John Basilowitz*, ought not to be apply'd to our Times, the present Great Duke being a Person of a very mild Disposition, who, in all his Actions, endeavours to make himself rather belov'd than feared by his Subjects, and extends his Goodness even to those banished into *Siberia*, whom he relieves out of his own Purse, and renders their Condition tolerable.

From what has been said, it is easie to conceive, that the *Czar* of *Muscovy* has all the Prerogatives of Sovereignty vested only in himself: It is He that is the sole Author of all the Laws, unto which his Subjects pay a blind Obedience without reserve: He creates and deposes Magistrates, Officers, and Governors at Pleasure, as well as the Judges of the Provinces, who are impower'd by him to give final Judgment in all Causes, without Appeal; all which are changed from three Years to three Years. It is he that makes Peace and War, gives Rewards, and bestows Titles of Honour upon his Subjects, even to the Doctors of Physick and Chirurgeons, who being Strangers, owe their Privileges to his Letters-Patents.

His absolute Power.

The *Muscovite* Money.

His Coin is of Silver only, of an Oval Figure, and very small, so that the biggest Piece, call'd a *Copee* or *Deaning*, is worth no more than a Peny. For tho' the Words *Alkin*, which makes 3 *Copees*, *Grif*, which makes 10, and *Rouble*, which consists of 100 *Copees*, are frequently used by the *Muscovites* in their Accounts, they are no more than bare Names, invented for the Conveniency of Commerce. A *Poluske*, is half a *Copee*, and the *Mustofike*, a fourth part.

This Money is very troublesome, by reason of its Smallness; it is mark'd with the Arms of *Muscovy*, (which formerly only belonged to the Dutchy of *Novogorod*) and has on the other side the *Czar*'s Name then reigning, and the City where it was coined, there being no more than four Cities in all *Muscovy* who enjoy this Privilege; *viz.* *Musco*, *Novogorod*, *Twere*, and *Ploscow*. The Mints are commonly farm'd out to some Merchants of those Places. Rix-dollars of all sorts, as well as the *Joachim Dollars* and *Spanish Reals*, pass currant in *Muscovy*; but the first are generally melted down, because 2 outweigh 100 *Copees* by 2 Drams; and consequently turn to a considerable Advantage to the Farmers of the Mints. 1636.

There is no Gold coin'd in *Muscovy*, unless it be when the Great Duke has some Medals cast of that Metal, upon some extraordinary Occasions. All Taxes and Impositions are likewise disposed according to the *Czar*'s Absolute Pleasure, who taxes 5 *per Cent.* of all Merchandices imported or exported. Those sent abroad with a Publick Character to Foreign Courts, are either *Welikoi Poso*, or Grand Couriers, or *Postanicks*, *i. e.* Envoys.

How Ambassadors are treated here.

Foreign Ambassadors were formerly treated with very little Respect, which Custom now is much altered; yet do they retain much of their ancient barbarous Pride, when they are to treat with Foreign Ministers; tho' their Reception is commonly attended with a great deal of Magnificence. They defray their Charges from the first Day of their Entrance into the *Muscovite* Dominions, to their Departure thence; when they are not dismiss'd without considerable Presents, which always consists in Furs. Neither does the *Czar* ever send any Embassy to any Prince, but it carries very considerable Presents to the Prince it is sent to.

A valuable Present.

Fedor Jwanowitz sent 1595 to the Emperor *Rudolph* the 2d 1300 *Zimmers* (each containing 20 Pair) of Sables, 5019 *Zimmers* of ordinary Martin-skins, 120 black Fox-skins, 337000 ordinary Fox-skins, 3000 Beavers, 1000 Wolf-skins, 64 Elk-skins, valued in all at 100000 *l. Sterling*. Foreign Ambassadors are also provided with necessary Carriages for themselves, and their Baggage; for which purpose certain Peasants are appointed with their Horses at certain Stages, to be ready at Call, for which they have a Yearly Salary of 60 Crowns *per Annum*, besides Land enough for the Subsistance of their Family and Cattle, and some small Matter for every Journey, and are exempted from all manner of Taxes.

It is not many Years since they used to treat Ambassadors in a manner like Prisoners, by putting Sentinels at their Doors, who were to follow them where-ever they went abroad; but this is now continued no longer than till the first Audience is past, and in the mean time they are visited constantly by their *Pristaffs*, who at the same time serve as Spies, and provide them with Necessaries. The Presents brought to the Great Duke by Foreign Ambassadors, are always valued by those that understand their Worth.

After we have given you a Scheme of the Politick Government of *Muscovy*, I suppose it will not be beyond our purpose to give a brief Account also of the most remarkable Occurrences, which have happened in *Muscovy* within these last 200 Years.

A brief Account of the Revolutions in *Muscovy*.

That Famous *Russian* Tyrant *Juan Basilowitz*, Son of the Great Duke *Basili*, came early to the Crown 1540. who's long Reign being nothing else but a Concatenation of Tyrannies, cover'd under the outward Shew of Religion, has been so amply treated of by several Historians, that it would be an Imposition upon the Reader, to make a needless Repetition of it here. We will only mention here, that by 7 lawful Wives he had only 3 Sons; *viz.* by the first, *Juan* and *Fedor*, and by the last, *Demetrius*. The eldest being kill'd by his Father's own Hands, who struck him over the Head with a Staff hoop'd with Iron.

Fedor the Second Brother succeeded his Father *March* the 28th 1584. in the Throne, being then scarce 27 Years of Age. But being a very weak Prince, and unable to bear the Burthen of the Government upon his Shoulders, *Boris Goudenou*, High Steward of *Muscovy*, and Brother-in-Law to the *Czar*, was pitch'd upon as the fittest Person to manage the Publick Affairs of that Great Empire; which he performed with so much Dexterity and Conduct, that it was the general Discourse at *Musco*, that, if the two young Princes should happen to die without Issue, *Boris Goudenou* was the only Person fit to supply their Places.

Fedor Jwanowitz.

Boris encouraged by the good Will of the People; and looking upon *Demetrius* the youngest Prince, as the only Obstacle of his Hopes, (the *Czar* having no Issue) sent a certain Ruffian to *Uglitz*, where *Demetrius* was educated, who kill'd him with his own Hands; but returning to *Musco*, was by *Boris* his Orders, likewise kill'd with all his Accomplices, being unwilling that after so foul a Fact any should survive, who in time might be able to upbraid him with such a Piece of

Villainy,

1636. Villany, he would have conceal'd from the Eyes of the World at any rate; for which reaſon it was, he cauſed the City of *Muſco* to be ſet on Fire in ſeveral places, thereby to divert the People from reflecting upon the Prince's Death, whilſt they had ſufficient reaſon to deplore their own Calamities at home. And the better to palliate the matter, he cauſed the Caſtle of *Uglitz* to be demoliſhed, and the Inhabitants (whom he accuſed to have countenanced the Murther) to be Baniſh'd.

Some few Years after *Fedor Juanowitz* happening to die ſuddenly 1597, after a Reign of 12 Years, without leaving any Iſſue behind him, the whole Empire caſt their Eyes upon *Boris Goudenou*, as the only Perſon qualified for ſo high a Station, which he craftily declined, under pretence of retiring into a Monaſtery, whereby he obtain'd his aim; for the Great ones, edg'd on by his Reluctancy, without any farther conſideration, preſs'd him ſo hard, that with much ado, he was prevail'd upon to accept their Offer.

Boris Goudenou. But he was ſcarce well ſetled in his Throne, but he met with a formidable Rival in the Perſon of a certain *Muſcovite* Monk, Nam'd, *Griska Utropoja*, deſcended from a Noble Family, but not very Rich; and being for his lewd Life thruſt into a Convent, had contracted an intimate Friendſhip with another old Monk of the ſame Monaſtery: This old Monk finding him a Perſon of an extraordinary Wit, and of a handſome Countenance and Deportment, concerted Meaſures with him, to put him upon the *Muſcovite* Throne, under the feign'd Name of the late young Prince *Demetrius*.

The better to compaſs their Deſign, it was agreed, he ſhould enter himſelf into the Service of *Adam Wiſnowitski*, a Perſon of conſiderable Quality in *Lithuania*, into whoſe favour he inſinuated himſelf in a ſhort time, by his Ingenuity, to that degree, that he only waited for an opportunity to begin the Scene he intended to Act, by diſcovering his pretended Quality.

It was not long before one offered it ſelf; for *Wiſnowitski* happening one time in his Paſſion to call him Son of a Whore, he fell a Weeping; and told him, That if he knew who he was, he would not treat him thus: And his Lord being very curious to know the true meaning of his Diſcourſe, he, without any further delay, diſcovered himſelf to be the lawful Son of *Juan Baſilowitz*, whom *Boris Goudenou* would have murthered at *Uglitz*, but that he had eſcaped their Hands, by the means of a Friend, who had ſubſtituted another in his place, ſhewing at the ſame time a Golden Croſs richly beſet with Diamonds; which according to the *Muſcovite* Cuſtom, was hung about his Neck at his Baptiſm. He threw himſelf at his Lords Feet, imploring his Protection, and verifying his feign'd Story with ſo many probable Circumſtances, that *Wiſnowitski*, being perſwaded by theſe Appearances of truth, cauſed a ſplendid Equipage to be prepared for him, and treated him in all other reſpects, according to his pretended Quality.

The noiſe of this Diſcovery having ſoon reach'd *Boris Goudenou*'s Ears, he proffer'd a vaſt Sum of Money to any who ſhould bring this Impoſtor to him, either Dead or Alive, which rather increaſed than diminiſh'd his Credit and Authority, both in *Muſcovy*, and with his Friends in *Lithuania*; who thinking him not ſafe there, ſent him to the Weywode of *Sendomiria* into *Poland*, who promiſed to ſettle him in the Throne, provided he would promiſe to ſettle the *Roman Catholick Religion* in *Muſcovy*, which this pretended *Demetrius* not only promiſed to do, but alſo changed his Religion, and engaged to Marry the *Weywode*'s Daughter.

The *Weywode*, encouraged by theſe hopes, engaged all his Friends in the Quarrel, by whoſe aſſiſtance, they got together a conſiderable Army, wherewith they entred *Muſcovy*, and having declar'd open War againſt *Boris Goudenou*, made themſelves Maſters of ſeveral places, partly by force, partly by corrupting the Governors, with ſuch ſucceſs, that *Boris Goudenou*, dy'd with Grief, the 13th of *April*, 1605.

Notwithſtanding which, the *Knez* and *Boiars* cauſed his Son, *Fedor Boriſſowitz*, tho' very young, to be *Fedor Boriſſowitz.* Crowned *Czar* of *Muſcovy*. But it was not long before the Proſperity of *Demetrius*, made them change their Reſolution, which being back'd by the Cries of the People, *Long live* Demetrius, *the true Heir of the Kingdom*; they ſeized the new Great Duke in the Caſtle, impriſon'd him, and at the ſame time ſent 1636. to intreat *Demetrius* to come and take poſſeſſion of the Throne; aſſuring him of their Fidelity, as a Pledge of which, they offered to deliver the young Great Duke, his Mother and Family, into his Hands.

Upon which, *Demetrius* ſent one of his Secretaries, named *Juan Bogdenow*, who ſtrangled both the Mother and Son, *June* 10. 1605. in the ſecond Month of *Boriſſowitz*'s his Reign, giving it out, that they were Poiſon'd.

Within 6 Days after, *Demetrius* came with his whole Army to *Muſco*, where he made his Entry with great Solemnity, and was Crown'd *July* 21. *The ſuppoſed Demetrius.*

The firſt thing he did was to ſend for the Mother of the true *Demetrius*, from a Monaſtery at a great diſtance from *Muſco*; he went out to meet her with a noble Retinue, Lodged her in the Caſtle, and ſhew'd her all the Reſpects due to a Mother; which the good Lady took all in good part, from her pretended Son, partly out of Revenge againſt the Family of *Boris Goudenou*, partly to enjoy the ſweetneſs of a happy Life, after ſo many Afflictions, tho' ſhe knew her Son *Demetrius* had really been murthered at *Uglitz*. But this Joy was not very laſting; for ſcarce a few Months were paſs'd, when the *Muſcovites* having obſerv'd his manner of Life to be quite different from the Great Dukes his Anceſtors; and finding he was reſolv'd to Marry a *Roman Catholick* Lady, and that he waſted his Treaſure; to make good the Promiſes he had made to the Weywode of *Sendomiria* her Father, they began to be ſenſible of their Error.

One *Baſili Zuski*, a Perſon of the chiefeſt Quality in *Muſcovy*, began firſt to unfold the Riddle, and to remonſtrate to the reſt; unto what danger the State was likely to be expoſed by this Impoſtor, who intended to introduce another Religion with a Foreign Woman, he intended to Eſpouſe; ſo that after ſerious debate, it was agreed he ſhould be diſpatch'd out of the way: But the Conſpiracy being diſcovered, *Zuski* was condemned to Die, but was pardon'd by *Demetrius* upon the point of Execution. *A Conſpiracy againſt him.*

Things continued quiet after this for ſome time, *viz.* till *May* 8. 1606. the Day appointed for the Marriage, when the Bride being arrived with a good number of well appointed *Polanders*, *Zuski* began a ſecond time to repreſent to the Great Men of the Kingdom, the imminent danger they were expos'd to by the arrival of ſuch a number of Strangers, who were ſufficient to make themſelves Maſters of the City, if not prevented in time, offering at the ſame time his utmoſt aſſiſtance for the relief of his Countrey.

The reſt being encouraged by this Reſolution, freely promiſed to be ready to ſecond his good Intentions, the firſt opportunity that ſhould offer; which offer'd not long after: For *May* 17. being the laſt Day of the Nuptial Solemnities, the new Great Duke with his *Poliſh* Friends, being overwhelm'd in Sleep and Drink, the head of the Conſpirators cauſed the Alarum-Bell to be rung, whereupon all the Conſpirators got to their Arms, and taking their way directly to the Caſtle, kill'd the *Poliſh* Guards, and forcing the Gates, made the beſt of their way to the Great Duke's Bed-Chamber, who to avoid falling into the Hands of his Enemies, leap'd out of a Window into the Court, where ſome of the Guards were ſtill in Arms: But *Zuski* having obliged the pretended Mother of this counterfeit *Demetrius*, to ſwear by the Croſs, Whether this *Demetrius* was her Son? Which ſhe deny'd he was, they ſhot him through the Head with a Piſtol, whoſe Body they ſtrip'd, and dragg'd it to the Market-place before the Caſtle, where after it had lain expoſed for 3 *is kill'd.* Days, they buried it; but afterwards digg'd it up again, and burnt it to Aſhes.

The new Great Dutcheſs with her Father and Brother, were impriſon'd, together with the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador: Many Ladies and Gentlewomen were abuſed, and above 1700 *Poles* kill'd.

This done, *Zuski* was choſen Great Duke, and Crown'd *June* 1. 1606. But he was ſcarce aſcended the Throne, when one *Knez Gregory Schacopski*, who at the pillaging of the Caſtle, had ſeized upon the Seals, diſputed the poſſeſſion of it. For which purpoſe being got into *Poland*, he made uſe of the ſame Methods his Predeceſſor had done; taking upon him the Name of *Demetrius*, and that he had eſcap'd the Hands of the Enemies, who had kill'd another in his ſtead. *Zuski* made Great Duke. *A ſecond Impoſtor.*

1636.

A third Impostor.

Not long after, another Person, who had been a Clerk to one of the Secretaries of State, assumed also the Name of *Demetrius*; and having got together a strong Party, seized upon several Cities, and the *Poles* countenancing both these Impostors, this occasioned such Disorders, that *Zuski* was Deposed, Shaved, and put into a Convent.

Vladislaus chosen Great Duke.

The *Poles*, in the mean time, having publickly espoused the second *Demetrius*'s Party, and obliged the Weywode's Daughter to acknowledge him for her Husband, demanded also satisfaction for the Affront put upon them on *May* 17. so that the *Muscovites*, finding themselves in this Perplexity, and not knowing which way to choose to disentangle themselves out of these Domestick Troubles, thought it the best expedient to satisfie the *Poles*, by chooling *Vladislaus*, eldest Son to King *Sigismund*; who having approved of their Choice, *Stanislaus Silkanski*, who was encamped with an Army of *Poles*, near the Gates of *Musco*, received the Homage of the *Muscovites* in his Prince's Name, and was admitted into the Castle with 1000 *Poles*, the rest of the Army staying without the City.

Zuski dies.

Zuski in the mean while was, by vertue of the late Treaty, with some of his Adherents, sent into *Poland*, to King *Sigismund*; who kept him close Prisoner at *Smolensko*, where after a long Imprisonment he died, and was buried in the Highway betwixt *Thorn* and *Warsaw*.

An Insurrection against the *Poles* in *Musco*.

The *Poles* without the City having by this time found means to get by degrees into the Castle, to the number of 6000, began very much to incommode the City, and at last to be unsupportable to them, by committing great Violences, not only upon Women and Maids, but especially upon their Saints; which so enraged the *Muscovites*, that *January* 24. 1611. they met in the great Market-place before the Castle, loudly complaining of the Proceedings of the *Poles*, and that they were no longer able to maintain such a number of Foreign Troops, in the absence of their Great Duke, who not appearing among them, made them suspect there was something more than ordinary in the bottom; for which reason they should be obliged to look unto their own safety, unless their new Great Duke would apply a speedy Remedy to these Disorders by his Presence.

The *Polish* General did all that lay in his power to appease them, by inflicting severe Punishments upon such as had deserved it; but this not satisfying the *Muscovites*, he thought it best to secure himself, and the Castle, by doubling the Guards, and possessing themselves of the Avenues of the principal Streets, to prevent the *Muscovites* assembling in the Market-place. These being highly exasperated at it, rose up in Arms in divers parts of the City, to oblige the *Poles* to divide their Forces, but these play'd them another Game, for having set fire to the City in 4 several places, they set upon the *Muscovites*, whilst they were busied in relieving their Wives and Children from the Calamities of the Fire, ransack'd the Great Duke's Treasury, all the Churches and Monasteries, in which they got incredible Booty, which they sent into *Poland*; besides which, near 200000 Persons perished by the Sword and Flames, which also consumed the whole City, excepting the Castle, the Churches, and some few Stone-houses.

About 15 Days after *Zachary Lipstcnow* the *Muscovite* General besieged the *Poles* in the Castle, and after many Assaults, at last forced them to surrender the Castle, and leave the Kingdom by composition.

Michael Federowitz, chosen Great Duke.

The *Muscovites* having at last, after so many Domestick Calamities, rid their hands of the Foreigners, chose *Michael Federowitz*, the Son of *Fedor Nikitis*, a Kinsman, but far removed, of *Juan Basilowitz*. This Man having forsaken his Wife for God's sake, as they call it in *Muscovy*, and embraced a Monastick Life, was at last made a Patriarch. His Son always shew'd a great respect to his Father, unto whom he used to give the precedency at Publick Audiences and Ceremonies; he died 1633. a few Days before our first Embassy, and his Son, *July* 12. 1645. in the 49th Year of his Age, and the 33d Year of his Reign, being succeeded by his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz*.

A counterfeit *Zuski*.

The Reign of *Michael Federowitz* was very mild and quiet; notwithstanding which, there started up another Impostor, who assumed the Name and Quality of *Basili Ivanowitz Zuzki*, Son to the Great Duke *Juan Basilowitz Zuzki*. He was a Native of *Vologda*, his Name *Timoska Ankudina*, a Linnen-Draper's Son; and having by his Father's care attain'd to Reading and Writing, (the highest degree of Learning in *Muscovy*) and having a good Voice, he was recommended to the Archbishop of that Province, who took him into his Service, and not long after Married him to a Grand-child of his. But after the said Archbishop's Death, being reduced to a low Ebb of Fortune, he came with his Family to *Musco*, where by the Recommendation of his Wifes Relations, he was made a Receiver of the Taxes, paid for the Licenses of Tipling-houses; but having squander'd away some of the Money, so that he fell short 200 Crowns in his Account the very first Year, he went to a Friend of his named *Basili Gregorowitz Spilki*, and told him, That he expected some of his Wifes Relations from *Vologda*, and being willing she should appear in a condition sutable to his Employment, he desired him to lend him some Pearls and Jewels for that purpose; which the other did without the least difficulty; nay, without taking any Note under his Hand, tho' they amounted to the value of 10000 Crowns. 1636.

His Cheats.

Timoska was so far from disposing them, in order to make up his Accounts, that he sold them outright, spent the Money, and when his Friend demanded his Jewels, denied that he had received any from him; and being clapt in Prison, was soon released again, the other having no evidence or any other proof against him.

Not long after some difference arising betwixt *Timoska* and his Wife, she upbraided him with his perfidiousness, and Sodomy; so that fearing on the one hand to be accused by his Wife, and on the other side to be call'd to a severe account for what Money he was in Arrears to the Great Duke; he sent his Son abroad upon some Errands, and in the mean while shutting her up in a Stove, set the House on fire, where she was burnt, and he retir'd so secretly into *Poland*, that it was generally believed he had been burnt in the House.

Burns his Wife, and retires into *Poland*.

He had scarce been 2 Years there, when hearing 1645, that an Ambassador from the *Czar* was coming to *Warsaw*, he thought it his safest way to seek for Protection by *Chimielniski* the General of the *Cossacks*, under pretence that he was prosecuted upon no other account, but because he was a near Kinsman to the Great Duke *Juan Basilowitz Zuski*, which had such an influence upon the said General, that he treated him like a Person of the first Quality.

Craves Protection from the *Cossack* General.

But not long after an Envoy being sent by the *Czar*, to the said General, who knew him; he thought it not safe to tarry any longer in that place, he made shift to get to *Constantinople* 1648. and was circumcised; but fearing to be call'd to an account for some Crimes, he had committed, he retir'd after a little stay to *Italy*, and so to *Rome*, where he embrac'd the *Roman Catholick* Religion, and 1650, went to *Vienna*, and thence into *Transylvania* to Prince *Ragotski*, from whom he obtained Letters of Recommendation to *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*.

Turns *Turk* at *Constantinople*.

And *Roman Catholick* at *Rome*.

This Princess taking compassion of him, allow'd him an honourable Pension, which being soon come to the *Czar*'s Ears, he sent *Koslau*, the same Person who had formerly seen him with the *Cossack* General, as his Envoy to *Sweden*, which *Timoska* having got timely notice of, got away, but was taken at *Revel* in *Livonia*, and committed to Prison; from whence however he made his escape soon after, and found means to get to *Brussels*, and from thence to *Wittenbergh* and *Leipsick*, where he turn'd *Lutheran*, and at last came to *Newstad* in *Holstein*, where he was secured at the request of *Peter Miklas*, who lately had brought the following Letter to his Highness from the *Czar*.

Turns *Lutheran* at *Leipsick*.

The Great Duke's Letters to the Duke of *Holstein*.

IN the Name of Almighty God, who does all in all, and protects all Nations in good Consolations, from Him, who, by the Grace, Providence, Power, Vertue, Operation, and good Pleasure of God, to be magnified in the Blessed Trinity, and glorious in all Eternity, hath been chosen, and holds the Scepter of the true Christian Faith, to govern and preserve, with God's Assistance, in Peace and Quiet, without Troubles, the Great Empire of the Russians, *with all the Provinces thereunto annexed, by Conquest or otherwise. We the* Grand Seignior, Czar, *and* Great Duke, Alexis Michaelowitz, *Conservator of all the* Russes, *&c. to the Most Mighty* Frederick, *Hereditary*

1636. *Hereditary Prince of* Norway, *Duke of* Sleſwick, Holſtein, Stormarie *and* Ditmarſe, *Count of* Oldenbourg, *and* Delmenhorſt, *Health. In the year* 1644. *or, according to the Calculation of* Muſcovy, *in the Year* 7152. *the mentioned* Timoska Ankudina, *and* Koſtka Konichou, *having robbed our Treaſure, to avoid the Death they had deſerved, departed the Countries under our Juriſdiction, to go to* Conſtantinople, *where they profeſſed the* Turkiſh *Religion. There they did ſo great miſchief in a ſhort time, that they were forc'd to fly, and to retreat into* Poland *and* Lithuania, *where they endeavoured to ſow Diviſions between the neighbouring Princes. To that end they went to* Theodat Chimielniski, *General of the* Coſſacks, *whom the King* John Caſimir *of* Poland, *our Brother, commanded to put thoſe Robbers into the hands of* M. Germolitzowi, *Gentleman of his Chamber, who had order to ſend them to* Muſcovy, *under the conduct of* M. Peter Proteſiowi, *a Gentleman of our Retinue, as the ſaid* Chimielniski *had made known to our* Czariſh *Majeſty. But theſe Robbers and Traitors got to* Rome, *where they embraced the* Latin *Religion. Afterwards they paſſed through ſeveral other Provinces of* Europe, *where they changed their Names, ſo as* Timoska, *ſometimes, aſſumed that of* Zuski, *and ſometimes that of* Sinenſis, *while* Koſtka *went under the Name of his Servant, till ſuch time as both having been known at* Stockholm, *by ſome of our Merchants of* Novogorod, *and other places, and thereupon ſecured, one at* Revel, *the other at* Narva, *the Governors of thoſe two Places made ſome difficulty to deliver them up to us, without expreſs order from the Great Queen of* Sweden. *But when we had deſired the ſaid Great Queen of* Sweden, *to put thoſe Traytors into the Hands of the Gentleman whom we had ſent expreſly for that purpoſe, it happened that at his coming to* Revel, *with the Orders of the ſaid Great Queen, the Governor had already ſuffered one of them to make his Eſcape, ſo that he could bring along with him but only the ſaid* Koſtka. *We have underſtood ſince, that the other hath been taken and impriſoned in the Country of* Holſtein, *wherefore we have thought fit to ſend to your Highneſs our* Poſſanick, Baſili Spilki, *accompany'd by ſome of our Subjects, with Letters from our* Czariſh *Majeſty, to intreat you, That you will be pleaſed to deliver up unto them, and to ſend to us thoſe Traytors.*

The Letters were dated the laſt of *October*, 1652. after which the Great Duke ſent another of the 5th of *January*, 1653. to the ſame effect, ſave that at the end of the Letter, were added the Lines following.

SInce that time, there came to us, in the Month of December *laſt*, Peter Micklaf, *of* Novogorod, *who hath informed us, how that, in purſuance of your Orders, the ſaid Traytor had been ſecured in your Ducal City of* Newſtat, *and that upon the Remonſtrance made to you by the ſaid* Micklaf, *you had tranſlated him to* Gottorp, *to be there kept under a good and ſure Guard. Wherefore we ſend back again unto you the ſaid* Micklaf, *with Letters from our* Czariſh *Majeſty, to entreat you, to deliver up the ſaid Traytor to him and* Baſili Spilki, *that he may have no further opportunity to eſcape, and raiſe new Troubles in the World. In acknowledgment whereof, our* Czariſh *Majeſty ſhall ſerve your Highneſs, in ſuch occaſions as ſhall preſent themſelves. This Robber and Traytor to our* Czariſh *Majeſty, named* Timoska, *is of very mean Birth, the Son of a Linen-Draper that dealt only in coarſe Cloaths, named* Demki Ankudina, *of the Suburbs of* Vologda, *his Mother is called* Salmaniska; *and his Son, who is yet living,* Tereska. Timoska *was an under Officer in the* Nova Zetvert, *and he hath robb'd our Treaſury, hath kill'd his Wife, and, with his own Houſe, hath burnt ſeveral other Houſes that were near his, whereby many of our Subjects have been ruined. Wherefore knowing that he could not avoid Death otherwiſe than by flight, he got away in the manner we have mentioned.*

Given at our Czariſh *Reſidence of* Muſco, *the* 3*d of* January, *in the Year of the World's Creation,* 7161. *and of the Birth of our Saviour,* 1653.

After this, he alſo writ a third Letter, of the 17*th of* October *the ſame Year, upon which the Priſoner was delivered up to thoſe, whom the* Great Duke *had appointed to receive him.*

One of the Deputies ſent by the *Czar* to conduct *Timoska* to *Muſco*, was the ſame Perſon named *Spilki*, whom he had formerly cheated of his Jewels: They were confronted together, in hopes by this means to draw the truth out of him: Accordingly being ask'd by *Spilki*, Whether his Name was not *Timoska Ankudina?* Whether he had not cheated the Great Duke's Treaſury, and committed ſeveral other Crimes? Unto which he anſwered, That poſſibly one *Timoska Ankudina* might have been guilty of ſuch things, but that that was no concern of his, his Name being *Johannes Sinenſis*, in the *Poliſh* Language *Zuski:* But being further urg'd by *Spilki*, to remember his paſt Life, he gave him opprobrious Language. 1636.

Another time being at his own requeſt examin'd by his Highneſs's Chancellor, and ſome of his Council; they ask'd him, What Family he was of? Whether he were of Kin to the Great Duke? Why he proſecuted him? And what prejudice he was able to do him? He anſwered, That his Name was *Zuski*, that at his Baptiſm he had been named *Timotheus*, that his Father was *Baſil: Domitian Suiski*, ſo ſirnamed from *Suia*, a City in *Muſcovy*, but that he was Born and Educated in *Poland*, in the Province of *Novogarska Severskhio*, his Father being Hereditary Lord of *Hukagrina Severska*, on the Frontiers of *Muſcovy:* That he was not of Kin to the Great Duke, whoſe Father had been only a Gentleman, whereas his was born a Prince; and that was the reaſon why the Great Duke perſecuted him: That the *Cham* of the *Crim Tartars* had ſollicited him to enter *Muſcovy* with 100000 Men, but that God had diverted him from that deſign.

Not long after, the *Muſcovite* Envoy, who was lately come from *Sweden*, and knew him, having adviſed him to intercede with the Patriarch for his Pardon, he writ a Letter, which he delivered to the ſaid Envoy; in which he declared to the Patriarch, That he was Born a *Muſcovite*, and at his Baptiſm had been named *Timotheus*, of which *Timoska* is the diminutive: That he had once taken a Reſolution to enter *Muſcovy* with 300000 Men, but that he had been diverted from it by the Guardian-Angel of *Muſcovy*; and was come to *Neuſtat*, in order to his Return into *Muſcovy*; being now ready to go along with thoſe the Great Duke had ſent to conduct him thither.

The Envoy having gotten this Letter into his Hands, and not queſtioning but this might prove a means to bring him to a true Confeſſion, opened and read it in his preſence; but he ſoon found himſelf miſtaken in his aim, for *Timoska* confidently denied the Letter; telling the Envoy he was a Cheat, and that the Letter was counterfeited; to prove which, he writ another of a quite different Stile and Character: But notwithſtanding all theſe Evaſions, the conſiſtency of his Depoſitions ſufficiently convinced all thoſe that knew them, that he was an Impoſtor; for ſometimes he declared, that he was the Son of the Great Duke *Baſili Iuanowitz Zuski*; at another, that his Father's Name was *Baſili Domitian*, tho' it was ſufficiently known, that there were but 3 Lords of that Family, and none of them of that Name. He varies in his Depoſitions.

For the reſt he underſtood the *Latin*, *Italian*, *German* and *Turkiſh* Languages; and was ſo great a Maſter at counterfeiting all ſorts of Hands, that it was hard to convince him by what he had writ himſelf, whilſt in his firſt Employment. Whilſt he was on his Journey to *Muſco*, he endeavoured ſeveral times to kill himſelf, but being ſo narrowly watch'd, that it was impoſſible for him to put it in execution, he was brought to *Muſco*, and in the preſence of divers Perſons of Note, put to the Torture, where he conſtantly averr'd, That he was Son to the Great Duke *Baſili Iuanowitz Zuski*, tho' it was proved to his Face, That he was Son of *Demki Ankudina*, a Linnen-draper at *Vologda*; and that both the Great Duke and his 2 Brothers died without any Male Iſſue.

His Mother, and one *Peſcou*, with whom he had left his Son in *Muſco*, being brought in whilſt he endured the Torture, and being exhorted by them to confeſs the truth, he was ſo ſtartled at their Preſence, that he would not ſpeak one word afterwards; and continued this the next Day when he was put to the Torture again, ſo that he was carried ſtreight to the Market-place, where he had firſt his right Arm cut off below the Elbow with an Axe, then the left Leg below the Knee, and afterwards the left Arm and right Leg, and laſt of all the Head. This was done on the ſame Day a *Poliſh* Envoy was to have his Audience; who being conducted through the Market-place, was Is tortured at *Muſco*.

an

1636. an Eye-witneſs of the Tragical *exit* of this Impoſtor, who had in *Poland* been look'd upon as the Son and Heir of *Baſili Iuanowitz Zuski*.

Is executed.

We told you before, that *Michael Federowitz* dying *July* 12. 1645. was ſucceeded by his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz*; who being Born *March* 17. 1630. the *Bojars*, fearing his Enemies might take advantage of his tender Age, haſtned his Coronation, which upon that account was not performed with all the Ceremonies uſual upon that occaſion, which are as followeth.

The Ceremonies of the *Czar*'s Coronation.

All the Metropolitans, Archbiſhops, Biſhops, *Knez* and *Bojars*, as alſo the Chief Merchants throughout the Empire, being ſummon'd to appear at the Day appointed for the Coronation; the Patriarch, attended by the Metropolitans, conduct the Great Duke to a Scaffold about 3 Steps high, covered with rich *Perſian* Tapeſtry, erected in the Church within the Caſtle; on which 3 Brocado'd Chairs are placed at an equal diſtance, *viz.* one for the Great Duke, another for the Patriarch, and upon the third are ſet the Ducal Cap and Robe; the firſt being embroider'd with Pearls and Diamonds, having upon the Crown a Taſſel, on which hangs a little Crown, ſet all over with Diamonds: The Robe is of a rich Broccado, lined with the fineſt Sable.

As they enter the Church, the Clergy ſing their Hymns; which done, the Patriarch prays to God, to St. *Nicholas*, and to all the other Saints, begging their preſence at this Solemnity. Then the chief Miniſter of State taking the *Czar* by the Hand, preſents him to the Patriarch in theſe words.

Since the Knez *and* Bojars *have acknowledged this Prince to be the next of Kin to the late* Great Duke, *and lawful Heir to the Crown, they deſire, that as ſuch; you would immediately Crown him.*

Whereupon the Patriarch leading the new Great Duke to the Scaffold, and having ſeated him in one of the 3 before-mentioned Chairs, touches his Forehead with a little Croſs of Diamonds, and Bleſſes him; whilſt one of the Metropolitans reads the following Prayer.

O Lord our God, King of Kings, who didſt chooſe thy Servant David, *by the Prophet* Samuel, *and who didſt cauſe him to be Anointed King over thy People* Iſrael, *hearken to our Prayers; which, though unworthy, we offer up unto thee. Look down, from the higheſt Heavens, upon this thy faithful Servant, who is here ſeated upon this Chair, and whom thou haſt exalted to be King over thy People, whom thou haſt Redeemed by the Blood of thy Son. Anoint him with the Oyl of Gladneſs; protect him by thy Power; ſet upon his Head a precious Diadem; grant him a long and happy Life; put into his Hand a Royal Scepter, and make him ſit upon the Throne of Juſtice. Make ſubject to him all Barbarous Languages; let his Heart and his Underſtanding always continue in thy fear. In all the courſe of his Life, let him be conſtantly obedient to thy Commandment. Suffer not any Hereſie or Schiſm to come near his Perſon or Government. Teach him to maintain and obſerve whatſoever the Holy* Greek *Church commandeth and ordaineth. Judge thy People in Juſtice, and be Merciful to the Poor; that when they leave this Valley of Tears, they may be received into Eternal Joys.* Which Prayer the Patriarch concludes with theſe words: *For thine is the Kingdom, the Power, and the Glory: God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Ghoſt be with us, and remain with us.*

After the Prayer is ended, two Metropolitans take up the Ducal Cap and Robe by the Patriarch's command, who cauſes ſome of the *Bojars* to come upon the Scaffold, and to put them on the Great Duke. Then he Bleſſes him a ſecond time, by touching his Forehead with the little Diamond-Croſs. Then he orders them alſo to put the Ducal Cap on his Head, whilſt he gives him his Bleſſing a third time, and ſays; *In the Name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghoſt:* Which done, all the Prelates approach, and give the Benediction to the Great Duke, but with their Hand only.

After this, the *Czar* and the Patriarch ſit down, but riſing up immediately again, order the ſinging of the Litany, each Verſe of which ends with the uſual *Goſpodi Domine*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; frequently mentioning alſo the Great Duke's Name.

After the Litany is ended, they ſit down again; when one of the Metropolitans advances to the Altar ſinging: *God preſerve our* Czar, *and Great Duke of all the* Ruſſes, *whom God has out of his Love beſtow'd on us, in good Health, and grant him a long and happy Life:* Which words being repeated by all preſent in the Church, the *Bojars* advance towards the Great Duke, ſmite their Foreheads before him, and kiſs his Hand: Which done, the Patriarch alone ſtanding before the Great Duke, ſpeaks to him thus. 1636.

Since by God's Providence all the Eſtates of the Kingdom, as well Eccleſiaſtical as Temporal, have Eſtabliſh'd and Crown'd you Great Duke *over all the* Ruſſes, *and have entruſted you with the Government and Conduct of ſuch vaſt conſequence, you ought to apply all your Thoughts to love God, keep his Commandments, adminiſter Juſtice, and protect and maintain the true* Greek *Church.*

He ends theſe words with giving him once more his Benediction, and the whole Aſſembly withdraw from thence to the Church of St. *Michael* the Archangel; juſt oppoſite to this, when having ſung the Litany, they repair alſo to that of St. *Nicholas*, where the Ceremony is concluded by ſinging the Litany once more, and ſo withdraw to the Great Hall of the Caſtle, where they are entertained with a magnificent Dinner.

The Great Duke's Favourite.

Alexis Michaelowitz Moroſou, who had been the young Prince's Governour, changed that Quality immediately after the Coronation, into that of chief Miniſter of State: The better to eſtabliſh himſelf in that Dignity, he beſtow'd conſiderable Employments upon the Friends of the Great Dutcheſs-Mother (for whom he knew the young Prince to have a great Veneration) but ſo, as to remove them at a good diſtance from Court and the *Czar*'s Perſon; where he took care to place his own Creatures, ſuch as he knew to have an abſolute dependance on his Fortune. And to make ſure work, he thought he could pitch upon no better expedient, than to recommend to the young Prince a Spouſe intereſted in the ſame Faction, he brought him acquainted with the Daughter of a certain Gentleman, named *Ilia Danilowits Miloſtanski*, who being an intimate Friend of his, and whoſe ſecond Daughter he intended to Marry, he thereby hoped to engage himſelf with the ſtricteſt Tye of Alliance both to the *Czar*, and his Friends. His Project ſucceeded according to Expectation, for having perſwaded the Great Duke to ſend for his Friends 2 Daughters, under pretence of paying a Viſit to the Princeſſes his Siſters, he was ſo taken with the Beauty of the Eldeſt, that he ſent word immediately to her Father, that he intended to honour him with his Alliance, by Marrying his Eldeſt Daughter; accordingly they were Married on *Shrove-Sunday*, 1647. and 8 Days after, *Moroſou* Marrying the ſecond Siſter, thereby became Brother-in-Law to the Great Duke.

Ilia Danilowitz Miloſtanski, the Great Duke's new Father-in-Law, had no ſooner got a ſhare in the management of Affairs, but he made conſiderable Alterations among the Officers, eſpecially of the Houſhold, removing moſt of the old ones; inſtead of which, he put in his own Kindred, who were as Neceſſitous as himſelf; and conſequently let ſlip no opportunity of advancing their Fortunes.

Among the reſt, he got one *Leponti Steppanowitz Pleſſeou*, to be made chief Judge of *Muſco*, in that Juriſdiction they call *Semskoi Duor*, a Perſon of ſo profligate a Principle, that he would not ſtick at any thing that might turn to his Advantage. To take Preſents from both Parties, was become ſo habitual to him, that he look'd upon it his Due, rather than a Crime; and ſuch as neglected to do ſo, he put to ſo much vexation, by ſuborning falſe Witneſſes, and committing them to Priſon, that they were glad to redeem their Liberty with the beſt part of their Eſtates.

He had a Brother-in-Law, named *Peter Tichonnits Trochanioton*, who being made Surveyor of the Arſenal, play'd the ſame Game with the Cannoneers, Armorers, and the other Mechanicks under him; keeping their Salaries (which was wont to be paid them duly once a Month) ſo long, till out of Neceſſity they were forced to compound, and give a Diſcharge for the whole. Beſides this *Moroſou*, and his Faction, had found means to put new Impoſitions upon the People, by aboliſhing the old Yards, and forcing them to buy new ones of Iron, at the rate of a Crown apiece; and laying an additional Duty upon Salt, which ſo incenſed the *Muſcovites*, who had lived very quietly under the late Great Duke's Reign, that they reſolved to addreſs them-

1636. ſelves to the Great Duke, for the redreſſing of their Grievances.

Their chief aim being againſt *Leponti Steppanowitz Pleſſcon*, the Petitions they preſented by means of the *Bojars*, who favoured *Pleſſcon*, being not anſwered according to their expectation, they reſolved to take the firſt opportunity to declare their mind by word of Mouth to the *Czar* in Perſon. The 6th of *July* 1647. they took the advantage of a Proceſſion the Great Duke made that Day to a Monaſtery in the City of *Stertenskie*, and watching his return in the Market-place before the Caſtle, under pretence of ſeeing him paſs by, as they uſed to do, they broke through thoſe that attended him, and laying hold of his Horſes Bridle, entreated him not to neglect their Complaints they had made ſo often before againſt *Pleſſcon*, deſiring that another might be put into his place, who would act with more Integrity and Juſtice.

The Great Duke, tho' not a little ſtartled at ſo outrageous a proceeding, yet put the beſt Face upon the Matter, and told them, That he could not without trouble hear the juſt Grievances of his Subjects; that he would examine the Matter, and that they ſhould have Satisfaction.

The People appear'd to be well enough ſatisfy'd with this Anſwer, and wou'd queſtionleſs have gone no farther for that time, had not ſome of the *Bojars* there preſent, that were Friends of *Pleſſcon*, given abuſive Language to ſome as they were going away, and ſtruck others with their Whips, which ſo enraged them, that they began to pelt them with Stones, and obliged them to haſte with all the ſpeed they could to the Caſtle, whither they were purſued ſo vigorouſly by the Populace, that the Guards had enough to do to ſtop them, till they were got to the Great Duke's Apartments: But the People being more inflam'd at this reſiſtance, broke at laſt into the Caſtle, threatning to ranſack it, unleſs *Pleſſcon* were put immediately to Death. *Moroſon* appear'd in a Balcony, in hopes to appeaſe them by his Rhetorick, but was glad to withdraw as ſoon as they told him, That they had as much to ſay to him as to the reſt; and to make good their words, went ſtraightways to his Palace, ranſack'd it, threw one of his Servants out of a Window, and told his Lady, That ſhe being the Great Dutcheſs's Siſter, ſhe might be glad to come off with her Life, but took all her Jewels from her, and broke to pieces a very fine Coach, which had Silver inſtead of Iron round the Wheels. From whence they went to *Pleſſcon*'s, *Tichonowits*, the Chancellor's, and ſeveral other Palaces, where they play'd the ſame Game. The Chancellor, whoſe Name was *Nazari Juanowitz Triſton*, being ill a Bed, by reaſon of a fall, and conſequently not in a condition to make his Eſcape, had hid himſelf under a heap of Birch, covered with ſome Flitches of Bacon, where he had certainly ſaved his Life, had not one of his Servants betray'd him, for a Sum of Money; the enraged People dragg'd him out from thence into the Street, where they Cudgel'd him to Death.

An Inſurrection in *Muſco.*

Whilſt the Populace was thus buſied in ranſacking in the City, thoſe in the Caſtle had ſome leiſure to Barricado themſelves againſt the firſt Aſſault; but this being not thought ſufficient, when they found them to return thither, and to continue in Arms all the Night from the 6th to the 7th of *July*, the only Expedient left, was to order the *German* Officers to rendezvous their Troops in ſeveral places of the City, and to march to the relief of the Caſtle. They executed their Orders ſo ſtrictly, that the next Morning they march'd with Drums beating, and Colours flying to the Caſtle, where they took up their Poſts; the People being ſo far from oppoſing them, that they told them, That knowing them to be Gentlemen of Honour, who had no hand in their Oppreſſion, they had no Quarrel againſt them.

The Great Duke relying upon their Courage and Fidelity, ſent *Knez Nikita Juanowitz Romanou*, whom he knew to be in great reſpect with the People, to appeaſe their Rage: He appear'd to them uncovered, deſiring them to be ſatisfied with the Anſwer the Great Duke had given them the Day before: They anſwered, That they were not diſſatisfy'd with the Great Duke, but ſome of his Miniſters, who under the Cover of his Authority, impoſed upon the People; and that they would not ſtir, till they had delivered up to them, *Boris Juanowitz Moroſou*, *Leponti Steppanowitz Pleſſcon*, and *Peter Tichonowitz Trochaniſton Romanon*.

After having return'd them thanks for their kind Expreſſions towards the Great Duke, told them, That he would acquaint him with their Requeſt, and that he did not queſtion, but immediate order would be given for the Execution of them; but that he was ready to take his Oath, That *Moroſou* and *Trochaniſton* had made their Eſcape. 1636.

Romanou was no ſooner return'd to the Great Duke, but word was brought to the People, that *Pleſſcon* was coming forth in order to his Execution; and that the other 2 ſhould ſuffer the ſame Puniſhment as ſoon as they were found. He was accordingly brought out of the Caſtle in a quarter of an Hour after, to have his Head cut off in the Market-place; but the Populace ſaved the Executioner this labour; for they fell upon him with Cudgels, and kill'd him in a moment. *Pleſſcon* put to Death.

Moroſou had indeed made his Eſcape, but by ſome ſecret ways got again into the Caſtle; but *Trochaniſton* being taken near the Monaſtery of *Troitza*, his Head was cut off the 8th by the *Czar*'s Command. *Trochaniſton* executed.

This wrought ſo effectually upon the People, that they withdrew about 11 a Clock in the Morning to their reſpective Homes.

The ſame Afternoon there happened another Diſaſter, which was a moſt furious Fire, which burnt down the whole Quarter of *Zargorod*, and ſpreading it ſelf over the River *Neglina*, got into the Great Duke's Storehouſes of Strong-waters, which burnt with ſuch violence, that the Caſtle was in danger of being conſumed by it; thoſe who were appointed for the quenching of it, being all laid Drunk in the Streets.

About 11 a Clock at Night ſome Foreigners who ſtood at a diſtance to obſerve the Fire, they ſaw a Monk coming along with a great burthen, as they conceived by his blowing, who advancing towards them, deſired them to help him to caſt the dead Body of the villanous *Pleſſcon* into the Flames, as the only means left to ſtop their fury, which they refuſing to do, he left them, yet not without ſome Curſes; and at laſt, by the help of ſome *Muſcovites*, caſt it into the Fire, which began to abate immediately, and ſometime after was quite extinguiſhed.

Within a few Days after, the Great Duke preſented the *Strelitzes* with a good quantity of Strong-waters and Mead, and his Father-in-law ſpent ſeveral Days in Feaſting the Citizens of divers Profeſſions; the Places of the executed Perſons being alſo ſupply'd with Perſons of known Integrity; the Great Duke took the opportunity of the next Proceſſion to ſpeak to the People, in the preſence of *Nikita Juanowitz Romanou*; telling them, That he was ſorry to hear of the violence committed under the pretext of his Authority, and that in their ſtead he had put in others, who he hoped would do Juſtice to all; that he would repeal the additional Impoſition upon Salt, and aboliſh all Monopolies; the People having accepted the *Czar*'s Speech with a moſt profound Reverence, and thank'd him for his favour, he continued his Diſcourſe and ſaid; That it was true, he had promiſed to deliver up *Moroſou* to them; and that he would not in all reſpects juſtifie his Conduct; but that he hoped they would not deny him his firſt Requeſt; which was, to pardon his Brother-in-Law, who could not but be very dear to him; That he would be anſwerable for his future Behaviour, which ſhould be ſuch, as that they ſhould have no reaſon to complain of: The Great Duke accompany'd theſe laſt words with ſome Tears, which ſo mov'd the People, that they cry'd out with one Voice, *Long live our Great Duke, God's and his Will be done.*

The preceeding Account is a convincing Inſtance, that even the moſt ſubmiſſive and ſlaviſh minds may be reduced to ſuch a degree of Deſpair, as to make them courageous enough to break their Chains.

Another inſtance of this nature we had 1658. in *Muſcovy*: For purſuant to a Treaty made the preceding Year, betwixt *Muſcovy* and the Crown of *Sweden*, the firſt were to furniſh the *Swedes* with a certain quantity of *Rye*, in part of payment of a Debt of 390000 Crowns, and one *John de Rhodes* being ſent by the *Swediſh* Court to receive the ſame, Orders were ſent to *Fedor Amanilion*, a Merchant of *Pleſcou*, to provide the ſaid Rye: But he abuſing the *Czar*'s Command, ſeized upon all the Rye he could meet with, which ſo exaſperated the Citizens, that they joyn'd with thoſe of *Novogorod*, reſolving not to let either the Rye, or Money to be given to the *Swedes*, paſs that way, ſeized upon ſome *Swediſh* Merchants, and Impriſon'd their *Weywode* and beat the *Bojars*, who were ſent by the *Czar*, to appeaſe theſe Diſorders; which obliged the An Inſurrection in *Pleſcou*.

Great

1636. Great Duke to send a strong Guard with the *Swedish* Commissary to the Frontiers, and ordered a Body of Troops to reduce those of *Plescou* to Obedience; the Ringleaders of which were either punish'd with Death, or banish'd into *Siberia*.

These Disorders did however produce this good effect; that the other *Knez* and *Boyars* had ever after their share in the management of publick Affairs. In former Ages the chiefest Dignity of the Kingdom was that of Lord High Steward of *Muscovy*, which was suppress'd when *Zuski* came to the Crown.

The principal Officers of the Court, and their Rank.

The next which now bears the first Rank, is that of the *Great Master*, or Steward of the Houshold.

Next to him is the Master of the Horse, who has the oversight of the *Czar*'s Stables, and the Harnesses, and other Ornaments used at Publick Solemnities.

These are the 3 Officers that precede all the other *Bojars*, *Olconitz*, and Secretaries of State.

After them come the *Postilnizki*, who make the *Czar*'s Bed: The Chamberlain, the Carvers, Gentlemen Sewers, Gentlemen of the Privy-Chambers, the ordinary Gentlemen, the Pages, the Secretaries and Clerks.

The *Bojars* obliged to follow the Court.

To prevent the Disorders or Factions which might arise from the Authority the *Knez* and *Bojars* have in their respective Provinces, by reason of their great Estates, they are obliged to attend daily at Court, and to pay their Reverence by bowing down their Heads to the Ground before the *Czar*. Those who have but slender Estates, and no Places at Court, are permitted to live in the Country. They put a great value upon Ancient Nobility, as well among themselves, as with Foreigners, but are very cautious not to match with any of an inferiour Rank.

They esteem Nobility.

Considering the vast extent of the *Czar*'s Dominions, his Revenues must be very great, arising partly from his Dominions, partly from his Factors, and the Duties and Taxes he imposes upon his Subjects; the last of which amount sometimes to the 5th part of their Estates, as 1632. during the War with the *Poles*, sometimes to the 10th.

The *Czar*'s Revenue.

The *Knez*, *Bojars*, and Gentlemen, pay no Taxes, but in lieu thereof, are obliged to maintain a certain number of Horse and Foot, according to their Revenues.

The Custom-house of *Archangel*, brings in alone 60000 Crowns Yearly; and the Tipling-houses produce a vast Sum, there being at *Novogorod*, 3 Taverns who pay Yearly 12009 Crowns to the *Czar*; there being above 1000 such Houses, where the Great Duke has the sole advantage of the Sale of Strong Liquors.

A vast Profit also arises to the *Czar*, from the Furs and *Cavasyar*, and several other Commodities, which are sold only for his use; besides what he gains yearly by his Factors.

His Expences.

His Demesnes he Farms out at a certain Annual Rent, which is employed in maintaining 16000 *Strelitzes* in the City of *Musco*; besides which, he is obliged to maintain 100000 Men constantly to guard his Frontiers: If he happens to be engaged in a War, he is forced to carry it on at a much greater Expence than most other Princes do, by reason of the vast charge he is at in maintaining Foreign Officers and Soldiers at an expensive rate. The defrayments of Foreign Ambassadors and the Presents given to them, are very considerable; and his Table, and the expence of his Court, where above 1000 Persons are provided with Meat every Day, amounts to a great Sum. When the Great Duke is to go to Dinner, a certain Officer comes to the Kitchen, and cries, *The Grand Seignior would be served.* He sits alone at the Table, and if the Patriarch, or any other Person of Quality is to Dine with him, they sit at another Table, at the end of his, and are served with some of the Dishes which have been presented to the Great Duke; for whereas his Table is but one Course of 50 Dishes, the *Czar* makes choice of what he likes; and if no Body Dines with him, those Dishes he has not meddled with, are sent to some Lords in the Town, or to his Physicians, who have considerable Salaries, besides a considerable quantity of Wheat, Barly, Honey, and several other Provisions; besides that, the Great Duke is never Purged or Bled, but the Physician has 100 Crowns, a *Zimmer* of Sables worth as much, and a piece of Satin or Velvet.

The *Muscovite* Court has also Interpreters for all sorts of Languages, especially for the *German*, *Polish*, *Swedish*, *Turkish* and *Persian*. The whole Management of Publick Affairs is divided into 6 Classes or Courts of Chancery, as they term it. 1636.

The six Chambers for Publick Affairs.

The first is for Foreign Affairs.

The second for War.

The third for Crown Lands, and the *Czar*'s Revenues.

The fourth for the Accounts of Factors, and Tavern-keepers.

The fifth for Appeals in Civil Causes. And

The sixth for Criminal Causes.

The *Bojars* are concern'd not only in State Affairs, but also in the Decision of private Affairs; in which Courts they commonly are Presidents. The first Court is call'd *Pololskie Pricas*, where they regulate all Matters relating to Ambassadors, the Posts of the Empire, and the Concerns of Foreign Merchants.

The Courts of Justice.

In the second Chamber, call'd *Roscredai Pricas*, a Register is kept of the Families of the *Bojars*, and all Gentlemen of *Muscovy*, and the Advantages got, or Losses sustained in the Great Duke's Wars.

In the third Chamber, call'd *Pominstnoi Pricas*, a Publick Register is kept of all the Mannors held by Homage, and all Differences concerning the same are adjudged, and the Duties belonging to the Great Duke received.

In the fourth and fifth Chambers, call'd *Casanskoy*, and *Siberskoy Pricas*, all the Differences of the two Provinces of *Casan* and *Siberia* are adjusted, and an account kept of all the Sums brought from thence into the *Czar*'s Treasury.

The *Durovoi Pricas*, takes cognizance of the Differences betwixt the Servants of the *Czar*'s Houshold.

The *Inasemski Pricas*, is appointed for the decision of Differences betwixt Foreign Officers, and where they receive their Orders in time of Peace.

The *Reitarskoi Pricas*, judges the Causes of the *Muscovian* Cavalry, and here in time of Peace they receive their Orders and Pay, *viz.* 60 Crowns *per Annum* for every Horseman; these are commonly Gentlemen of small Estates, which they hold by homage and fealty.

The *Boschoi Pricas*, is appointed to take the Accounts of the Great Duke's Receivers of Taxes once a Year. The President of this Court has also the power of laying a Tax upon Foreign Bread and Wine, has the oversight of Weights and Measures throughout the Empire, and pays such Foreigners as are in the *Czar*'s Service, their Shares.

The *Sudnoy Wolodimirskoy*, and the *Sudnoy Moskauskoy Pricas*, are appointed the first to judge the *Knez* and *Bojars*, the second the Gentlemen and Officers of the Court.

In the *Robosnoy Pricas*, Robberies upon the Highway, Murders, and all Criminal Cases.

The *Puskarskoy Pricas*, is appointed for the decision of the Differences arising betwixt the Founders, Furbishers, Cannoneers, Armourers, Smiths, and such like, belonging to the Arsenal; and here they receive their Wages.

The *Jamskoy Pricas*, is for the regulation of Stages and Post-masters, and the payment of their Salaries, and to give Passes to such as are to have Carriages upon the Great Duke's account.

Thus the Secretaries, Clerks, Captains of the Gates, and Messengers of the *Prica*'s, have their own *Prica*'s, or Courts of Judicature, and so have the Slaves, where they are entred when they are sold, and have a Certificate when they recover their liberty.

The *Selmskoy Pricas*, is for the determination of all Civil Causes for the City of *Musco*: Here are also received the Duties arising from Houses sold, and the Taxes for reparation of Bridges, Gates, Forts, and all other publick Buildings.

The place where an account is kept of all Brocado's, Velvets, Satin, Damask, and other Stuffs, for the use of the Court, is call'd *Bolchikasni Pricas*.

The Causes of the Great Duke's Factors are determined in the Great Duke's Exchequer, where all the Money that remains at the Years end, is laid up.

All Ecclesiastical Persons, who are here subject to the Temporal Jurisdiction, except in some peculiar Cases, are judged in the *Monasterski Pricas*.

Thus the Masons, Carpenters, and other Workmen belonging to the Great Duke, have their Differences decided, and their Wages paid them in a peculiar Court.

The Receivers of the Cities of *Novogorod* and *Nisinovogorod*, give in their Accounts in the *Novorodkoi Pricas*, where also some Causes of the Inhabitants are adjudged,

1636. adjudged, when they remove their Cauſe from thence to *Muſco*, there being otherwiſe no Appeal from the Sentence of the *Weywodes*.

Thus the Provinces of *Gallitz*, and *Volodimir*, have their own Court of Juſtice, upon the ſame account; and the Cities of *Caſtrom* and *Jareſlou* their own, as well as thoſe of *Uſtingha* and *Colmogorod*.

The Taxes and Monies ariſing from the Taverns and other Tipling-houſes, are paid into the *Nova Zetwert*, where alſo thoſe who ſell without Licenſes are puniſhed.

The *Solotoya Almaſnoy Pricas*, is the Jewel-Office, where the Foreign Goldſmiths, Jewellers, and thoſe belonging to the Great Duke's own Armory, have their Differences decided.

Thus the Phyſicians, Chirurgeons, Apothecaries, and Operators, have their Overſeer, unto whom they pay Reverence, and acquaint him with what is wanting for the *Czar*'s uſe in their Profeſſion.

The *Bolſchoi Prichod*, is for taking the Accounts of the Duties of Entrance into the City of *Muſco*; as that of the Tenth Penny towards the War, is in the *Shora dezatti dengi Pricas*.

Beſides theſe there is a General *Pricas*, or Court of Juſtice for all ſuch Matters as fall not under the Juriſdiction of any of the before mentioned *Pricas's*.

The Patriarch alſo has 3 peculiar *Pricas's*: One called *Roſcrad*, where are kept the Regiſters of Church Goods, and their Charters and Rolls: The ſecond called *Sudny*, where he exerciſes his Spiritual Juriſdiction by Eccleſiaſtical Judges: The third called *Caſanoy*, is the Patriarch's Treaſury. Each *Pricas* has, beſides the Preſident (who is commonly a *Bojar*) and his Aſſeſſors, a Secretary, many Clerks and Copiers, who write very neatly, and underſtand Arithmetick, which they manage by Plum-ſtones, as we do with Counters, which they always carry about them in a little Purſe. They dare not take the leaſt Preſents, under pain of Whipping; notwithſtanding which, ſome will run the hazard of it, and offer Copies of Diſpatches themſelves; but they are very deceitful in this point, often ſubſtituting their own Forgeries, inſtead of the thing deſired: Of which we ſaw an inſtance in our time, when one of theſe Clerks ſold a ſuppoſititious Copy of our Tranſactions to a Foreign Miniſter, at a dear rate. They write their Regiſters on Rolls of Papers paſted together, 25 or 30 Ells in length.

Their Law and adminiſtration of Juſtice.

In former times the *Muſcovites* had but few Laws, and thoſe founded chiefly upon Cuſtom; they concern'd only Treaſons againſt the *Czar*, or the State, Adulteries, Theſts, and Debts, the reſt being left to the Judgment of the Judges: For it was not till 1647. that the Great Duke, with the Advice of all the knowing Men of the Kingdom, cauſed a Law-Book to be compiled and publiſhed in Folio, under the Title of *SOBORNA ULOSIENIA*, i. e. *Univerſal Right*, for the direction of the Judges.

Heretofore they proceeded thus: When there were no Evidences to prove the matter of Fact, the Defendant us'd to be ask'd by the Judges, Whether he would clear himſelf by Oath, or refer it to the Plaintiff's Oath? He that was to take the Oath, was admoniſhed three times, once a Week ſucceſſively, to take heed of what he was to ſwear to, the Salvation of his Soul being intereſted therein, and if he perſiſted after that in his Reſolution, the Oath was adminiſtred to him. After he had taken the Oath, tho' he ſpoke nothing but the Truth, he was look'd upon as an Infamous Perſon, and was not admitted to the Communion, till upon the point of Death; of late Years, they perform it with leſs Ceremonies; for they bring him who is to take the Oath, only before an Image, and after they have ask'd him, Whether he be willing to take the Oath? They give him a Crucifix to kiſs, and after that the Image; but they retain this, That he who has taken it, tho' the Oath be good, is not to receive the Communion in 3 Years after, and moſt People are very ſhie of his Company; which is the reaſon the *Muſcovites* are very unwilling to come to it; tho' in their common Converſation and Dealings they ſwear at every word *Po Chriſtum*, i. e. *By Chriſt*. Perjury is puniſh'd with a ſevere Whipping and Baniſhment. Foreigners are allow'd to take the Oaths according to their own Religion.

Their manner of taking the Oath.

Their Tortures by which they extort the truth from People are very cruel; and among theſe the *Strapado*, the worſt of all: They ſuſpend the Malefactor, with his Hands ty'd behind him, in the Air, having a great Beam faſtened croſs his Feet, upon which the Executioner gets ever and anon, to further the Diſlocation of the Joints, whilſt a Fire is made below his Feet, the Smoak of which almoſt ſtifles the poor Wretch. Sometimes they pour cold Water upon the Crown of his Head, which is ſhaved before in to the Bargain, and give him a ſevere Whipping, whilſt he is thus hanging, and lay a hot Iron to the Stripes. 1636.

All ſorts of Murther or Manſlaughter, without a neceſſity of Self-defence is puniſh'd by ſevering the Head from the Body, after the Priſoner has been kept 6 Weeks with Bread and Water. In ordinary Quarrels, he that gives the firſt Blow is caſt. Their Puniſhments.

Thieves they whip from the Caſtle-Gate, through the Market-place (after they have tortur'd them to confeſs their Accomplices) and then cut off an Ear, and the Offender is committed to Priſon for 2 Years. The ſecond time they undergo the ſame Puniſhment, and afterwards are Baniſh'd into *Siberia*: The Concealers and Abettors are puniſh'd with the ſame Severity.

Their ordinary Puniſhments are, ſlitting the Noſtrils, Whipping, and the *Piſtroki*; the laſt is not infamous, being uſed frequently by Maſters of Families, to their Slaves and Children. Their ordinary Puniſhments.

Thoſe who are to be Chaſtiſed, are ſtrip'd to their Shirts, keeping only their Drawers on, and being laid upon the Belly, 2 Men get a-croſs, one upon the Neck, the other upon the Feet; and thus with a little Wand or Switch, beat their Backs, like as the Fellmongers beat their Furs: Thoſe who have taken Tobacco, eſpecially in Snuff, have their Noſtrils ſlit.

Their Whipping is very barbarous; we ſaw 8 Men and 1 Woman Whipt *September* 24. 1634. for ſelling *Aqua Vitæ* and Tobacco. Being ſtrip'd ſtark naked to the Waſte, the Executioner's Man Hors'd them one after another, with their Feet ty'd together, the Cord of which paſſing betwixt the Legs of him that held them, was kept ſo ſtreight by another Fellow, that they were not able to ſtir, the Executioner with a Bulls-pizzle, having 3 Straps of untann'd Elks-skins, and the end lay'd on their Backs with all his Strength, the Blood guſhing out on all ſides at every Laſh. The Men had 25 or 26, and the Woman 16 Lathes, the laſt fell into a Swoon. After this they were ty'd 2 and 2 together, and Whip'd through the City for half a League, and then diſmiſs'd. This Puniſhment is ſo ſevere, that many die of it; to cure their ſliced Backs, they wrap themſelves in the Skin of a Sheep newly kill'd. Their Whipping.

Theſe Puniſhments were formerly not reputed infamous, no more than the Executioners Office, which was purchaſed at a good rate, but ſince the *Muſcovites* have been better inſtructed by the Converſation of Foreigners, this Office muſt continue in one Family, and if that fails, the Butchers are obliged to ſupply his place with one of their Fraternity. But the moſt rigorous of all theſe Puniſhments is inflicted upon Debtors, who, if they don't ſatisfie their Creditors according to the time preſcribed in the Bond, they are committed to a Serjeants Houſe, having in the mean time a certain time allow'd them to make ſatisfaction; which if they fail of, they are committed to Priſon, and from thence brought every Day to a certain place before the Chancery, where the Executioner for an Hour together, beats their Shin-bones with a Wand of the bigneſs of a little Finger; and this is repeated every Day, till the Debt be ſatisfy'd, without the leaſt reſpect of Sex, Quality, or Condition. Sometimes the Executioner is prevail'd upon by a Bribe, not to ſtrike very hard, or connives at their putting a thin Iron-Plate within their Boots: If they have nothing left to pay their Debts, they muſt ſell themſelves, their Wives and Children to the Creditors.

If it were not for Baptiſm, and the external Profeſſion of the Chriſtian Religion, it might perhaps be call'd in queſtion, Whether they were really Chriſtians, tho' they pretend to be the only true Chriſtians in the World, becauſe they are Baptized; whereas others are only ſprinkled, as they call it; for which reaſon they re-baptize all their Proſelytes; they acknowledge the Old and New Teſtament to be the true Rule of their Religion, and uſe the Sacraments; they uſe the Tranſlation of the 70 Interpreters, which has been ſome Years ago Tranſlated and Printed in the *Ruſſian* Language.

The Religion of the *Muſcovites*.

They are permitted to read the whole Bible in their Houſes, but are only to make uſe of the New Teſtament, and certain Verſes, taken out of the Pſalms and Prophets at Church, for fear of prophaning it by ſome immodeſt

1636. immodeſt Paſſages in the Old Teſtament. St. *Cyril*, Biſhop of *Jeruſalem*, who lived under *Theodoſius* (and muſt not be confounded with *Cyril* of *Alexandria*) is in great eſteem among them: Next to him are *John Damaſcene*, St. *Gregory Nazianzene*, St. *John Chryſoſtome*, and *Ephraim* Deacon of the Church of *Edeſſa* in *Syria*; they alſo rely much upon the authority of a certain Doctor named *Nicholas Sudatworitz*, who has writ ſeveral pieces in Divinity: His Memory is in ſuch Veneration with them, that they built a particular Chappel for his Image, and put lighted Wax-candles before it; both which were deſtroy'd by Fire.

They profeſs, according to *Athanaſius* his Creed, *God the Father* to be the Creator of the World; *God the Son*, the Saviour and Redeemer of all Mankind; and the *Holy Ghoſt*, the Sanctifier of all the Faithful.

But their Religion is overwhelmed with groſs Superſtitions, for they conſider the Virgin *Mary*, the *Evangeliſts*, the *Apoſtles*, nay, an innumerable company of Saints, not only as Interceſſors, but alſo as Co-operators, which makes them pay Divine Worſhip to their Images: Nay, the meaner ſort place the chiefeſt part of their Religious Worſhip in the Veneration they pay to theſe Images; and inſtruct their Children in nothing elſe but how to pay their Devotions before their Saints.

The only good Works (which they account meritorious) in vogue among them are, the building of Monaſteries, and Churches, and giving Alms; the reſt are not much valued here. They boaſt themſelves to be the true Progeny of the ancient *Greek* Church.

The Chriſtian Religion when introduced and planted in *Muſcovy*.

According to their Annals, the Chriſtian Religion was firſt planted here by St. *Andrew*, in the Apoſtles time, who leaving *Greece*, embark'd upon the *Boriſthenes*, and by the way of the Lake *Ladoga*, came to *Novogorod Veliki*; but that the ſame being rooted out by the *Tartars*, and other *Pagans*, who conquer'd *Muſcovy*; the ſame was revived by the Great Duke *Volodimir*, who having 989. gain'd many Victories over the neighbouring Infidels, rendred his Name ſo famous throughout the Eaſt, that *Baſilius* and *Conſtantinus Porphyrogennetes*, Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, ſent him a ſolemn Embaſſy, and ſeveral Biſhops and Prieſts along with them, who Inſtructed and Baptized both the Prince, and many of the People, according to the Rites of the *Greek* Religion. 1636.

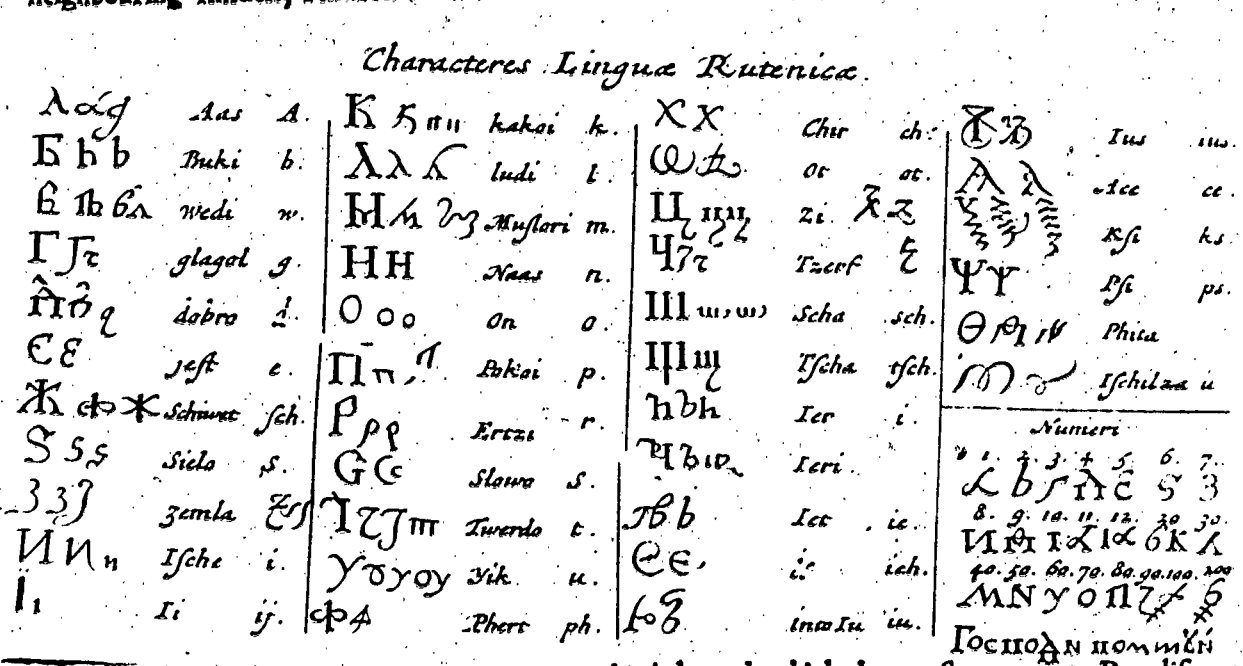
John Curopalates, who writ part of the *Byzantine* Hiſtory, adds, That the *Barbarians* not being able to comprehend the Miracles they ſpoke of, and challenged a Token from one of the Biſhops, he caſt the Bible into a Fire, where it remain'd untouch'd till the Fire was out, and being taken out, *Wolodimir* was ſo moved thereat, that he aboliſh'd Paganiſm in his Territories. This is alſo confirm'd by *Cedrenus* and *Zonaras*.

It is upon this Score, that the *Muſcovites* ſhow ſo much kindneſs to the *Greeks* upon all occaſions; I remember that when 1649. the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem* came to *Muſco*, to preſent the *Czar* with ſome Relicks, he was received with extraordinary reſpect, and had a Preſent of 100000 Ducats beſtow'd upon him, which however was taken from him by ſome *Turkiſh* Robbers in his return home.

The *Muſcovite* Religion being peculiar to that Empire, extends as far as its Dominions, unleſs it be that the *Tartars* inhabiting near the *Wolga*, and the *Caſpian* Sea, profeſs the *Mahometan* and *Pagan* Religion. There are ſcarce any, even among the Clergy, that can give any reaſon of their Belief, becauſe the Word of God is never preach'd among them; for which reaſon it is, that the Patriarch allows them not to enter into a diſpute with Foreigners; and I remember that a certain Monk, who had an Argument with a *Proteſtant* Miniſter at *Niſi-Novogorod*, was likely to have been caſt in Priſon, had he not ſaved himſelf with this excuſe, That the other had diſcovered to him ſome Inclination of embracing the *Muſcovite* Faith.

They have their Characters as well as their Religion from the *Greeks*, but have much altered and augmented them, as may be ſeen by the following Table.

Characteres Linguæ Rutenicæ.



These Characters they uſe both in Writing, and in their Books; their Language has nothing common with the *Greek*, but comes ſo near to the *Sclavonian* and *Poliſh*, that he that knows one, may underſtand the other.

Within theſe few Years a *Latin* and *Greek* School has been erected in *Muſco*; and as the *Muſcovites* don't want ingenuity, ſo, if it be continued, no queſtion, but ſome good may be expected from thence.

One of the Great Duke's Interpreters, a Native of *Denmark*, having tranſlated ſome *Latin* and *French* Books, the ſame were ſo well approved of, that there is no ſmall hopes, but that Perſons of Quality will by degrees apply themſelves to the Study of Foreign Languages.

Their Religious Exerciſes, conſiſting principally in Baptiſm, Reading in the Church, going to Maſs, praying to the Saints, paying their Reverences to the Images, Proceſſions, Pilgrimages, Faſting Days, Confeſſion and Communion, we will treat of each of them in particular.

Their Baptiſm.

As they acknowledge themſelves conceived and born in Sin, and that God has inſtituted Baptiſm for their Regeneration, ſo they look upon it not as the Door through which they muſt enter into Paradiſe, which is the reaſon they Baptize their Children immediately after they are Born, if they be weak, at home, (but not in the ſame Room where the Mother lies) but if well, in the Church. The Child is received at the Church Door by the Prieſt, who ſigning his Forehead with the Sign of the Croſs, ſays, *The Lord preſerve thy coming in, and thy going out*; and next faſtens 9 Wax-candles given him by the Godfathers, round the Font, ready lighted.

After having incenſed the Godfathers, and conſecrated the Water, he makes a Proceſſion with them, having each a Wax-candle in their Hands round the Font, which always ſtands in the midſt of the Church; this they do 3 times ſucceſſively, the Clerk carrying the Image of St. *John* before them, and the Prieſt reading out of a Book. This done, the Prieſt asks the Godfathers the Name of the Child, which they having given him in Writing, he puts it upon an Image which he holds upon the Childs Breaſt, whilſt he mutters out certain Prayers; and asks the Godfathers, Whether the Child believes in God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghoſt? Which ſaid, they turn their Backs immediately to the Font, to ſhew their averſion to the three

1636. three next enſuing Queſtions, which the Prieſt asks. *viz.* Whether the Child forſakes the Devil, his Angels, and his Works? And the Godfathers having anſwered to each Queſtion, Yes; and ſpit as often upon the Ground, they turn about again to the Font; where the Prieſt asks them, Whether they promiſe the Child ſhall be brought up in the true *Greek* Religion, and ſo Exorciſes him, laying his Hands upon the Child, ſaying: *Get out of this Child thou Unclean Spirit, and make room for the Holy Ghoſt*; and ſo blows upon the Child three times, croſs wiſe, to drive out the Devil, by whom they are of Opinion, Children are poſſeſs'd before Baptiſm; for which Reaſon alſo, they of late Years, as I have been inform'd, exorciſe the Child at the Church-door, becauſe the Devil, who leaves it, ſhould not prophane the Church. After this he cuts off a little of the Child's Hair, which he puts into a Book; and having ask'd the Godfathers, whether they deſired this Child to be baptized, he takes him ſtark naked into his Arms, and dipping him three times into the Water, with the ordinary Words of the Sacrament, *I baptize thee, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghoſt*, he puts a Corn of Salt into the Child's Mouth; and making the Sign of the Croſs on his Forehead, upon the Hands, the Breaſt, and the Back, with a certain conſecrated Oil, he puts a clean Shirt about him, ſaying, *Thou art as clean and as clear of thy Original Sin, as this Shirt*; and then hangs a ſmall Croſs of Gold, Silver, or Lead, according to every ones Ability, about his Neck, with a ſtrict Charge to wear it all his Life-time; in which they are ſo nice, that if they find no ſuch Croſs about the Perſon deceaſed, they will not allow Chriſtian Burial to the Carcaſe. He alſo aſſigns a peculiar Saint to the Child, whom he is to reverence hereafter as his Patron; and having kiſs'd the Child, and the Godfathers, exhorts them to mutual Love, but to take heed not to intermarry with one another. If more Children are to be baptized at the ſame time, the Font is empty'd as often as there are Children to be baptized, becauſe they look upon the Water as inquinated with the Original Sin of the preceeding Child. They will never heat this Water by the Fire, but only put it in ſome hot Place to make it a little warm.

Their Proſelytes, who are of Age, are baptized in ſome River or other, and plunged over Head and Ears, be it never ſo cold; and in the ſame manner they do with thoſe they call *Chaldeans*, who from the 18th of *Dec.* till Twelfth-tide, run about the Streets with Fire-works, in remembrance of *Shadrach*, *Meſhech*, and *Abednego*, who were caſt into the Fiery Furnace; who being all this while look'd upon as Pagans, muſt by Baptiſm be reconciled to the Church, which is therefore done on Twelfth-day, when the Vocation of the Gentiles happened. Theſe *Chaldeans* are upon the ſame account ſometimes rebaptized 10 or 12 times. Thoſe who are inclined to change their Religion for that of the *Muſcovites*, after they have received ſufficient Inſtructions for 6 Weeks in ſome Convent or other, are at their Baptiſm to abjure their former Religion, to deteſt it as Heretical; and, as a Sign of their Abhorrence, to ſpit on the Ground as often as it is named. After their Baptiſm, they are preſented from the Great Duke with, and clad in a rich *Muſcovian* Habit, and have a Penſion allow'd them according to their Quality.

This Encouragement makes the City of *Muſco* full of Apoſtates, not only of the vulgar ſort, but alſo of thoſe of better Quality, who for a little Subſiſtence-ſake change their Religion; as it happen'd in our time with the *Baron de Raymond*, Monſieur *Groyn*, a *French* Gentleman, Col. *Alexander Leſley*, and Count *Slakof*. This laſt came into *Holſtein* 1640. and afterwards into *Denmark*, where under Pretence of being deſcended from the ancient Houſe of *Slick* in *Bohemia*, (whereas he was a *Pole* by Birth of mean Parentage) and forced to fly his Native Country for the Proteſtant Religions-ſake, obtained Letters of Recommendation from his *Daniſh* Majeſty to the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; which produced this good Effect, that the ſaid *Slakof* having inſinuated to the *Czar*, that he was come on purpoſe to ſerve him, and to embrace the *Muſcovite* Religion, he was ſo well received by the Patriarch, and the whole Court, in reſpect of his pretended Quality, that they procured him a Penſion of 200 Crowns *per* Month from the *Czar*, with the Quality of a *Knez*, and the Name of *Leo Alexander Slick*, at his Baptiſm. Col. *Leſley* did not immediately turn to their Religion, but having after his Return from *Sweden* into *Muſcovy*, obtain'd certain Mannors with a certain number of Peaſants belonging to them, near the *Wolga*, from the *Czar*, might have lived with a great deal of Plenty upon them, had not his Wife's niggardly Temper, who did not allow the Peaſants what was fitting, and would make them eat Fleſh on their Faſt-days, drawn the Complaints of her Vaſſals upon her Husband, who being accuſed thereof before the Great Duke, and finding no other way to ſave his Eſtate, than by turning *Muſcovite*, he, his Wife and Children were baptized; which however was not ſufficient to recover his Eſtate; for his Vaſſals preferr'd another Petition, which being back'd by one Monſieur *Groyn*, who had alſo lately abjur'd his Religion, and had a former Grant of theſe Lands, he was forced to be contented with a Penſion of 90 Crowns *per Menſem*, another ſomewhat leſs for his Son, and a Preſent of 6000 Crowns. 1636.

Apoſtates frequent in *Muſcovy*.

The Conſtancy of an *Engliſh* Gentlewoman.

And ſince we are treating of the Apoſtates in *Muſcovy*, the Conſtancy of a certain Gentlewoman, the Daughter of *William Barneſley*, ought not to be paſs'd by in ſilence.

This Gentlewoman who claim'd the Precedency for her Handſomneſs before all the other Strangers in *Muſco*, was married very young to the Baron *de Raymond*, who, as we told you before, changed his Religion. According to the Law of *Muſcovy*, the Wife being in this Point obliged to follow the Example of her Husband, he did all what he could to perſwade her to do it; but all proving ineffectual, he had recourſe to the *Czar*'s Authority, who, as well as the Patriarch, endeavoured to engage her into the ſame Opinions, by vaſt Promiſes; which ſhe was ſo far from hearkening to, that ſhe and her Father threw themſelves at the *Czar*'s Feet, begging that he would rather take away her Life, than force upon her a Religion contrary to her Conſcience. But the Patriarch kick'd the Father aſide, telling him, that ſhe being no more than a Child (for ſhe was but 15 Years old) was not ſenſible of what ſhe did, and that he muſt take Care of her Soul, and ſo order'd her to be dragg'd by ſome Religious Women to the next Brook; where, notwithſtanding all her Proteſtations, they plunged her into the Water, into which ſhe drew one of the Women after her, and ſpit in the Faces of thoſe who would have obliged her to abjure her Religion. She lived afterwards with her Husband at *Swatka* three Years, where he was Governor; who dying ſoon after his Return to *Muſco*, ſhe was forc'd into a Convent about 12 Lgs from *Muſco*, where ſhe was kept 5 Years without hearing any thing from her Friends, and two Sons, that were taken from her, except once, when a Letter was conveyed to her by help of a *German* Tyler that work'd there.

Then the Patriarch happening to die, his Succeſſor relieved her out of the Monaſtery, and allow'd her Liberty of Conſcience in her own Houſe, and to receive Viſits, but not to frequent Proteſtant Sermons. I have viſited this Lady ſeveral times, whilſt ſhe lived in this condition, and have heard that ſhe dy'd two Years ago firm and conſtant in her Religion. Her Father not long ſince died in *England*, being 126 Years of Age, after he had married a ſecond Wife at 100.

Their Feſtivals and Feaſts.

Their Feſtivals and Feaſts are appointed on certain Days. At the time of our firſt Embaſſy, they uſed to open their Shops, and follow their ordinary Employments on the Holy-days in the Afternoon; but the preſent Patriarch has order'd them to be ſo ſtrictly obſerved, that now they muſt ſhut up their Shops on *Wedneſdays* and *Fridays* (being their ordinary Faſt-days) as well as on *Sundays*, and that no ſtrong Liquors ſhall be ſold in Service-time. They have beſides *Sunday* 13 Set-Feſtivals, which according to the beginning of their Year *September* 1ſt, ſtand in the following Order.

(1.) The Nativity of the Bleſſed Mother of God, *September* the 8th.
(2.) The Exaltation of the Croſs, *September* the 14th.
(3.) The Oblation of the Bleſſed Mother of God, *November* the 21ſt.
(4.) The Nativity of our Lord, *December* the 25th.
(5.) The Epiphany, *January* the 6th.
(6.) *Candlemas*-day, *February* the 2d.
(7.) The Annunciation of our Lady, *March* the 25th.
(8.) *Palm*-Sunday.
(9.) *Eaſter*-day.
(10.) The Aſcenſion of Chriſt.
(11.) *Pentecoſt*, or the Sending of the Holy Ghoſt.

1636. (12.) The Manifeſtation of the Glory of *Jeſus Chriſt* upon the Mountain, *Auguſt* the 6th.

(13.) The Aſcenſion, or the Aſſumption of the Mother of God, *Auguſt* the 15th.

The Feaſt of the *Trinity* they celebrate the next Day after *Pentecoſt*, and that of *All Saints* upon the following *Sunday*.

Every Day in the Year is dedicated to ſome peculiar Saint or other, ſometimes to two or three; but theſe are only celebrated by certain Offices, the Eccleſiaſticks ſay on thoſe Days. They have a perpetual Almanack, according to the Old Stile, which ſhews them all the Feaſts both moveable and unmoveable. They go thrice to Church every *Sunday* and Holy-day, in the Morning before Day to the *Matins*, which they call *Saſtarim*, at Noon to the *Obedny*, and in the Evening to the *Wadjuemi* or *Veſpers*.

Their whole Service conſiſts in reading of certain Chapters out of the Bible, Pſalms, and St. *Athanaſius*'s Creed; and ſometimes they read alſo a Homily of St. *Chryſoſtom*, and certain Prayers, which they ſing much after the ſame manner, as the *Antiphona*'s once ſung, repeating frequently the *Goſpodi Pomitui*, *Lord have Mercy upon me*, which the People ſing after them, making the Sign of the Croſs.

After this, the Prieſt goes up to the Altar, attended by the Clerk, where he ſays the Office according to St. *Baſil*'s Liturgy. He pours Wine and Water into the Chalice, with ſome little Bits of Bread, conſecrates them; and after having ſaid certain Prayers over it, he takes the Bread out with a Spoon, which he gives not to any other, unleſs a ſick Child be brought, to whom he gives the Communion. If the Prieſt has known his Wife that Day, he muſt not approach the Altar, but another officiates in his ſtead. The People ſtand all the Service-time, making continually their Reverences to the Images with the uſual *Goſpodi Pomitui*, or *the Lord have Mercy upon me*.

They never make any Explications upon the Text of the Scripture, from whence they ſay, ariſe Schiſms and Hereſies in the Church. I remember that 5 Years ſince the *Protopope* of *Merum* was baniſhed into *Siberia* by the Patriarch, for attempting it. They have however a certain Book, containing ſome Interpretations of the Hiſtories of the Goſpel; but they are intermix'd with ſuch frivolous Relations, and impertinent Circumſtances, that they rather ſerve to encourage, than to ſuppreſs Vice.

The *Daniſh* Ambaſſador, I had occaſion to mention before, gives us a very odd Inſtance of this kind, in his *Priſtaff*, a Man pretty well advanced in Years, who diſcourſing of *Mary Magdalene*, ſaid, that ſhe being a profeſs'd Courtezan, no queſtion but ſhe offended God very often; but meeting one Day with a Man upon the Road, who ask'd her the ſame Kindneſs, ſhe refuſed him, till ſuch time as he deſiring her to grant his Requeſt for God's ſake, ſhe conſented; and that by doing that for God's ſake which ſhe had denied before, this Act became ſo meritorious, as that it not only did expiate all her other Sins, but alſo got her a Place with red Letters in the Book of Saints. In the ſame manner, and with the ſame abominable Circumſtances, they adulterate moſt of the Evangelical Hiſtories.

They all appear bare-headed at Church, not excepting the *Czar* himſelf; yet the Prieſts keep on their Caps, which they receive at their Conſecration. As often as they bow to their Images, they make the Croſs with three Fingers of the right Hand, ſignifying the Trinity; theſe they put firſt to the Forehead, to put them in mind of Chriſt's Aſcenſion; next to the Breaſt, intimating that they ſhould love God with all their Heart; and laſtly from the right Shoulder to the left, to put them in mind of the Day of Judgment, when God will place the Righteous to the right, and the Wicked to the left.

Concerning their Images, they confeſs that they were not uſed, or at leaſt not adored in the Primitive Church, before the Time of *Conſtantine* the Great; but alledge, that in this Point they follow the Opinion of *John Damaſcene*; tho', in all probability, they have them from the *Greek* Church, which as well as theſe don't allow any Carved or Graved Image, becauſe theſe are forbidden in the Decalogue; but have Images painted with Oil upon Wood, wretchedly done, of about 4 Foot broad, and ſomething more in heighth: Theſe muſt be made by one of their own Religion. In former Times they obliged Strangers to keep them in their Houſes for their *Muſcovite* Servants ſake; but this Cuſtom is aboliſhed, becauſe they ſhould not prophane their Saints; and they are now become ſo nice in this Point, that ſome of the Peaſants where we lodged, did purifie them by Incenſe after we were gone. Theſe Images, of which the Walls of their Churches are full, commonly repreſent either our *Saviour*, the Virgin *Mary*, or St. *Nicholas*, the Patron of *Muſcovy*. 1636.

Perſons of Quality adorn the Images in their Houſes with Pearls and precious Stones, before whom they put Wax-Candles, and look ſtedfaſtly upon them as long as they are ſaying their Prayers. For, whenever a *Muſcovite* comes into a Houſe, before he utters one Word, he looks for the Saint; and if he ſees him not, asks, *Where is the God?* When he has found him, he makes his Reverence to him, pronouncing the *Goſpodi Pomitui*, then he goes to the Company. They are ſo much bigotted to their Images, that they don't ſtick to attribute to them the Virtue of performing Miracles.

Of this we ſaw an Example 1643. when an old Image turning ſomewhat red, the Patriarch was upon the Point of iſſuing his Orders for an extraordinary Faſt to be kept throughout the Empire, had not the Painters, who were adviſed in the Matter aſſured them, that the whole Miracle proceeded only from the Paint being worn off of the Wood, which made its natural Colour, which was red, appear. The *Muſcovite* Prieſts have alſo learnt the Art of making their Saints do Miracles, two of which had the Misfortune to be but indifferently rewarded for their Pains at *Archangel*; for having got together a good Summ of Money by their Impoſtures, they fell out about dividing the Spoil, and upbraided one another ſo publickly, that the Magiſtrate took cognizance of the Matter, and ordered them a good Whipping of 30 Laſhes each.

When the *Swedes* had taken *Novogorod*, and finding little worth taking in the *Muſcovites* Houſes, they ſeized upon their Images, which they redeem'd at a very good rate.

I remember, that a certain Woman at *Ladoga* where I lodged, would never give her Child, which could ſcarce ſtand or ſpeak, its Breakfaſt, till it had made nine Bows before the Saint, and as often ſaid the *Goſpodi* as well as it could. There are indeed ſome among the *Muſcovites*, who are not ſo much blinded with Ignorance, as not to diſcover the Vanity of theſe things.

We met with a certain *Ruſſian* at *Narva*, who told us plainly, that he look'd upon theſe Images, as well as the Faſtings, as meer Impoſitions; that he indeed ſuffered Images in his Houſe, in remembrance of their good Actions, as other People did the Pictures of Princes, and other famous Men; but that he did not expect his Salvation from Colours, and that he thought Praying was the beſt Mortification.

Being ask'd by the Ambaſſadors, why he did not inſpire the ſame Sentiments into his Countrymen? His Anſwer was, that it was not his Calling; and that being look'd upon already as a Heretick, he ſhould not prevail; in which Point he was not altogether miſtaken: For a *Protopope* of *Caſanskoy* inveighing in our Time againſt the Idolatrous Worſhip of Images, the Patriarch degraded him, and ſhut him up in a Monaſtery.

When the Images of their Saints begin to rot, they don't caſt them away, but either throw them in a River, or bury them in a Church-yard, or any other Garden. It is not to be imagined, that the *Muſcovite* Saints ſhould be deſtitute of Miracles.

Among the reſt, they have one named *Sudatworitz Philip Metropolite*, famous for the many Remonſtances he made to the Tyrant *Juan Baſilowitz*, who firſt ſhut him up into a Monaſtery; but he not deſiſting, the *Czar* ſent one of his Servants, who ſtruck him with a Knife to the Heart. The Monks of the ſame Convent put him in the Catalogue of the Holy Martyrs, and got his Body to be buried in the Iſland of *Solofka*, near *Archangel*, where they pretend he has done many Miracles: And the preſent Patriarch prevail'd with the *Czar* to have it tranſlated from thence to *Muſco*, where it was placed in the great Church of the Caſtle; and if you will believe the *Muſcovites*, did at firſt cure the Deaf, the Lame, the Blind, *&c.* but of late, by reaſon of the Incredulity of the People, as they ſay, the Vertue has left this Saints Body, which they affirm to be intire to this Day; but at the ſame time it is forbidden to lift up the Cloth that covers it, under Pain of Death.

They alſo celebrate the Memory of another Saint, named *Sergius*, who being a Soldier by Profeſſion, and very debauched in his Youth, turn'd Hermite, and at laſt

1636. laſt got into the Monaſtery of *Troitza*, where being ſoon after made Abbot, he wrought ſuch Miracles, that 1563. he was canonized after his Death. They ſay that his Head remains intire to this Day, and that it forc'd the *Poles* back in an Aſſault they made upon the Place.

The Monaſtery is by the Liberality of the Pilgrims grown ſo rich, that it maintains 300 Monks. The Great Duke, who goes thither on Pilgrimage twice every Year, alights from his Horſe half a Lg from the Convent, and walks the reſt of the way on Foot.

It is not many Years ſince they found an Image of the *Virgin Mary* at *Caſan*; which being ſent from thence to *Muſco*, it was placed in a Church in the Market-Place, built for that purpoſe, and named *The Holy Mother of Caſan*, whither they go on Pilgrimage, as they do likewiſe to the Sepulchre of a certain Saint, call'd *Warlam*, in the Convent of *Chutina*, not far from *Novogorod*.

Their Churches. Thoſe of their Churches which are built of Stone, are round and vaulted, becauſe God's Houſe, ſay they, ought to reſemble the Heavens: They have neither Benches nor Seats, nor any Organs, or other Muſical Inſtruments; and the preſent Patriarch is ſo profeſs'd an Enemy of Muſick, that he has forbidden the Uſe of it even in Private Houſes (thoſe of Strangers excepted) and cauſed five Waggons full of them to be burnt. Each Church has on the top in the midſt of four Turrets, a kind of a Tower form'd like the Knobs we ſet on our Bed-ſteads, with a Triple-Croſs on the top of it; which being, as they ſay, the Badge of Chriſtianity, the Church of Chriſt ought thereby to be diſtinguiſhed from the reſt. If any that are not of their own Communion enter their Churches, they look upon them as prophaned. At the time of our firſt Embaſſy, ſome of our People got into one of them, but they were thruſt out by the *Muſcovites*, who ſwept after them. If a Dog chances to get into a Church, they not only ſweep it, but purifie it with Incenſe; neither will they allow any Body to make Water in their Church-yards.

Their Bells are not hung in the Steeples, but in a certain Engine built for that purpoſe near the Church: They are commonly but ſmall, ſeldom exceeding 150 or 200 Pound. They toll them at the beginning of Service, and the Elevation of the Chalice; which is done but once, becauſe they put the Bread into it, immediately after the Conſecration. The Rope is faſten'd to the Clapper, ſo that one Man may manage 4 Bells at once, if the Ropes be faſten'd to both his Elbows and Hands.

The *Muſcovites* are much taken with this kind of Chiming, which when the Bells are moved together in ſo many Churches, makes a ſtrange confuſed Noiſe.

No Church is ſo ſmall, but it has an Image over the Door; nay, on each Corner of the Street, and the very Gates of the City, are beſet with Images, which the *Muſcovites* reverence as they paſs by, as well as the Croſſes on the Churches; not forgetting to ſay their *Goſpodi*.

The Hierarchy of the *Muſcovite* Church conſiſts firſt of a Patriarch, ſeveral Metropolitans, Archbiſhops, a Biſhop, Arch-Deacons, *Protopopes*, and *Popals*, or Prieſts. The Patriarch has the ſame Authority in the *Muſcovite* Church, as the Pope has in the *Latin*.

The Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* uſed to have the Nomination of him, which in time came only to a Confirmation; and this alſo he has loſt, *Filaretes Nikitis*, the late Great Duke's Father, being the laſt who received the ſaid Confirmation. Since that time he is choſen by the Prelates, who meeting in the Church of the Caſtle, call'd *Saborn*, named two or three Prelates, ſuch as are reputed the beſt qualify'd for ſo high a Station, by their good Life and Learning; theſe they preſent to the Great Duke, who in concert with them proceeds to the Election; but if the Competitors happen to be of ſuch Eminency, that they are at a ſtand who to pitch upon, the Election is decided by Lot; which was done with the laſt Patriarch, who was drawn three times ſucceſſively by Lot. His Name is *Nicon*, he was formerly Metropolitan of *Roſton* and *Jacoſlou*, being much admired for his good Houſe-keeping, and pleaſant Diſpoſition.

Their Eccleſiaſtical Government. The Patriarch of *Muſcovy* may be ſaid to have a Share in the Sovereignty of that Empire: For he is not only the Supreme Judge of all Eccleſiaſtical Cauſes, and what concerns Religion, but alſo has a Power to reform whatever he thinks prejudicial to good Manners, by his own Authority; which the *Czar* always orders to be put in Execution, without the leaſt Conteſtation. 1636.

He has under him 4 Metropolitans, 7 Archbiſhops, and 1 Biſhop. The Metropolitans are thoſe of

Novogodorski and *Wolikoluskoi*, who lives at *Novogorod*.
Of *Roſtoufskoi* and *Jaroſlauskoi*, at *Roſtof*.
Of *Caſanskoi* and *Swiatskoi*, at *Caſan*. And that of *Sarskoi*, and *Pandoskoi*, within the Caſtle of *Muſco*.

The Archbiſhops are, thoſe of

Wolodskoi, and *Weliko Premskoi*, who lives at *Wolodga*.
Of *Reſanskoi*, and *Moromskoi*, at *Raſan*.
Of *Sudalskoi*, and *Torruskoi*, at *Suſdal*.
Of *Twerskoi*, and *Caſſinskoi*, at *Twere*.
Of *Sibirskoi*, and *Tobolskoi*, at *Toboleska*.
Of *Aſtracanskoi*, and *Terskoi*, at *Aſtracan*.
Of *Pleskouskoi*, and *Sborskoi*, at *Pleſcou*.

There is but one Biſhop, *viz.* of *Comenskoi* and *Caſſieskoi*, who reſides at *Columna*. The Patriarch is always attended by an Arch-Deacon, who is his Vicar-General; he has alſo a *Proto Deacon* reſiding in the Caſtle of *Saborn*: The reſt of the Clergy are divided into *Proto-Popes*, *Popes*, or Prieſts and Deacons. Their Monaſteries are govern'd by *Archimandrites*, *Kilari's* and *Igument's*, *i. e.* Abbots, Priors, and Guardians.

The *Muſcovite* Prelates marry not. The Prelates of *Muſcovy* are obliged to make a Vow of Chaſtity whilſt they continue in that Dignity. Neither are they to wear any Rings on their Fingers, or Drawers, or Shirts of Linen-cloth, but they muſt be of Flanel.

The Habits of the Eccleſiaſticks. The Habit of the Prelates as well as of the Monks, is a black Caſſock, over which they wear a kind of a Robe, not unlike thoſe of the other *Muſcovites*, but likewiſe black. Their Hoods are near an Ell and an half Diameter, unto which is faſten'd in the midſt a round Piece of Stuff of the bigneſs of a large Trencher, which hangs down on the hinder part of the Head. When they walk abroad, they wear a Staff forked at the end, which they call a *Poſok*, and ſerves inſtead of a Croſier.

From the number of their Churches at *Muſco*, it may eaſily be conceived what a vaſt reſort of Prieſts there is to that City, the leaſt of theſe Churches having 3 or 4, or more Prieſts belonging to it. They obtain their Prieſthood at a very eaſie rate; for they only addreſs themſelves to the Patriarch, or any one of the Metropolitans, who, after he has examin'd them, whether they can read, write, and ſing in the Church, he beſtows the Holy Orders upon them, and gives them a Certificate for that purpoſe. At their Conſecration, they are habited, as we mention'd before, have the Hair on the Crown of their Heads cut off, and a *Calotte* put over it, the only Character of Prieſthood, which they never take off, but when they cut their Hair; and if any one that fights with a Prieſt ſhould ſtrike off this *Calotte*, he is ſeverely fin'd; for which reaſon he that is engag'd with a Prieſt, muſt take off his *Callot* firſt, and after he has bang'd him ſoundly, put it on again without any great prejudice to himſelf.

Their Prieſts obliged to marry. As the *Protopopes*, and *Popes* or Prieſts, are obliged to marry once, ſo they are abſolutely forbidden to marry a ſecond or third time, unleſs they quit the Holy Orders. This Opinion they found upon the Apoſtle's Words: *A Biſhop ſhall be the Husband of one Wife*; 1 Tim. 3. where they interpret the Word Biſhop, in relation to Prieſt, and that he muſt be the Husband of one Wife; which is one of the main Points in queſtion betwixt them and the *Greeks*, as well as the *Roman* Church, which allow not the Marriages of Prieſts. The *Muſcovites* alledging in their behalf the 4th Canon of the Council of *Gangres* in *Paphlagonia*, not long after that of *Nice*, which anathematizes thoſe who won't receive the Communion from the Hands of a married Prieſt. The *Muſcovites* are ſo nice in this Point, that they always marry before they take Orders; and are of Opinion, it muſt be a Maid, and no Widow, or a Woman of an ill Reputation; and if a Prieſt happen to find himſelf deceived the firſt Night, he muſt either quit his Wife, or the Prieſthood. A Prieſt who has known his Wife, muſt not approach the Altar the next day; and as ſoon as he is a Widower, he may be preſent at the Matins and Veſpers, but not at the Noon-Service, when the Sacrament is to be adminiſtred; neither can they give their Benedictions to Marriages. If they are diſpleaſed with a ſingle Life, they

1636. they may lay by their *Callotte* and Marry again; and if they are too Old for that, they commonly retire to a Monastery, where they end their Days.

Their Monasteries. Of these Monasteries, both for Men and Women, there are great numbers all over *Muscovy*, who generally follow the Rule of Great St. *Basil*. Heretofore those who embraced the Monastick Life of their own accord, made all their Estates over to the Monasteries, which Extravagancy prevail'd so far, that the Monks would soon have been Masters of the best part of the Country, had not a stop been put to it; yet are they now permitted to carry some part of their Estates along with them. They have their set Hours for Prayers, which they say by Beads. They lead a very Austere Life, eating no Flesh or fresh Fish, and drinking no Wine, nor *Aqua Vitæ*, or Mead; but live upon Salt-fish, Honey, Milk, Cheese, Herbs and Pulse; and drink nothing but *Quaz*. However when they are out of the Convent, they don't keep so strict to these Rules, but that they will eat of the best they can get, and drink so plentifully of strong Liquor, that they are glad to be carried home. Their Learning is like that of the other *Muscovites*, never extends beyond Reading and Writing. Few can say the Lord's Prayer, and much fewer the Creed and the Ten Commandments. They have also a kind of *Hermits*, call'd *Anchorites*, who build little Chappels on the Highways, and live upon the Alms given them by Travelers.

How the Monks live.

Their Fasts. Their ordinary Fast-days are *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, when they abstain not only from all kind of Flesh, but also from Eggs and Milk; nay, some of the more Devout will not use Sugar, because it is refined with Eggs.

Besides these two Days Weekly, and the Eves of great Festivals, they Fast 7 Weeks in *Lent*; being allow'd in the first (which is their *Carnaval*) to eat Butter, Milk and Eggs: The next Week they live upon Honey, Pulse, and Herbs, and drinking nothing but *Quaz*, by way of Expiation for the Debaucheries and Insolencies they have committed in the first. The other 5 Weeks they live temperately, eating nothing but Fish, except on *Sundays*.

Their second *Lent* begins 8 Days after *Whitsuntide*, and lasts till St. *Peter's-Tide*.

The third is from *August* 1st. to the 16th.

And the fourth from *November* the 12th. till *Christmas*.

As most of the *Muscovites* are strict observers of their *Lent*, or Fasting times, so on the other hand, they rarely eat Fish on *Sundays* or Holidays out of *Lent*; in which they follow the Rule of St. *Clement*, mentioned in the Times of the Councils, printed at *Venice*; which says, That an Ecclesiastick who Fasts on *Saturday* or *Sunday*, is to be degraded, and if a Layman, he is to be Excommunicated. They are likewise forbid to abstain from their Wives, during *Lent*.

Their Confession. As soon as a *Muscovite* is come to Years of Discretion, he goes to Confession, which they always do before Communion, which is generally done by extraordinary Preparations and Mortifications, for a whole Week; during which they eat scarce any thing but a kind of Bisket, and drink *Quaz* and fair Water. Their Confession they make standing before an Image, on which they keep their Eyes fixt as long as the Confession lasts, in which they make a particular recital of all their Sins, and having express'd their Remorse, and promised Amendment, the Priest, who gives them the Absolution, enjoyns them certain Penances; as for instance, to say the *Gospodi* so many times, to make a certain number of Bows before the Images, to abstain from Women, standing at the Church Door, and such like: If the Offence be extraordinary, they must use the Holy Water, which being consecrated on *Twelfth-day*, on purpose to cleanse Offenders from their Sins, the Priest sells some for Money.

Their Communion. They commonly receive the Communion upon *Easter-Eve*, and never but upon a Fast-day; for if any one should Communicate on Sunday, he is obliged not to eat Flesh that Day. They receive it in both kinds, their Wine is mixt with Water, into which they put a Morsel of Bread, and taking it out with some Wine, with a Spoon, give it to the Communicant. Their Bread, which is leavened, must be made by a Priests Widow: This Communion-Bread is about the thickness of a Crown-piece, and twice as big, having in the middle a Crucifix.

After it is Consecrated, the Priest takes off that Figure with an Iron like a Launcet, which he puts up in a close Wooden Box; of this they take a little, and pour a few Drops of red Wine and Water upon it, which is administred to Sick Persons with a Spoon; but if they are very weak, they give them only a little consecrated Wine. In the ordinary Administration of the Sacrament; they make use of consecrated Bread of the same form, but not bigger than half a Crown. 1636.

After they have taken off the Crucifix as before, they break it into as many pieces as there are Communicants, put them into some red Wine, mixt with warm Water. They believe Transubstantiation. The Priest at the Administration of the Sacrament, says these Words.

This is the true Body and the true Blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, which hath been given for thee, and for many more, for the Remission of thy Sins, which thou shalt take in remembrance of him.

Some go to Sleep immediately after Communion, that they may not sin again that Day. What remains of the Bread after Consecration, they call *Kutja*, of which the Priest gives a Morsel to each of those who have Communicated the time before.

They give the Sacrament to the youngest Child, that is, if it be Sick; but only in one kind, till it be 7 Years old; when, as they say, it begins to sin Mortally, and therefore Communicate it like the rest.

They don't deny the Communion even to Distracted People, with this difference however, that they only touch their Lips with the Bread, that has lain in Wine.

If a Priest has been at an Interment, or by chance touch'd a dead Corps, he can neither Consecrate nor Administer the Sacrament that Day. Nor must a Childbed Woman Communicate in the same Room where she is brought to Bed, but must be carried into another and washed.

Heretofore they used to send the Consecrated Bread to far distant places, where they had no Priests; nay, they used to give it to Travellers and others, who were to confess to their Saints, and take it upon extraordinary occasions of danger, or otherwise: But this is of late Years abolished in *Muscovy*; tho' the same has been mentioned both by St. *Cyprian* and *Tertullian*.

Such as have taken Oaths in Law Suits, are debarr'd from the use of the Sacrament for 3 Years; and those who are guilty of Murder, or any other hainous Crime, are not admitted to it, but at the point of Death. The last Unction is administred to sick Persons after the Communion; after which, they will not permit them to take any thing either of Medicine or Nourishment, unless there be very apparent Signs of their Recovery. They also commonly give to the Sick before Communion, a little fair Water, or *Aqua Vitæ*, wherein some Relicks have been put.

Some in that Condition, are so devout, as to have themselves shaved, and put on Monks Habit; which if they do, they are obliged to abstain from any thing for the next ensuing 8 Days, and if they recover, to perform their Vow; there being no retracting after the Razor has once pass'd upon their Heads.

Their Burials. Their Burials, as indeed all their other publick Actions, are perform'd with a great deal of Ceremony. For so soon as the Sick Person is departed, the Kindred and Friends are sent for by the Widow, who standing round the Corps, break out into Lamentations, asking the Deceased ever and anon, Why he would Die? Whether he wanted any thing? Whether his Wife were not Young and Handsom enough? Whether she had been Inconstant? Then they go to Washing the Body, and having put a clean Shirt or Shrowd about him, with a new pair of thin Shooes of *Russia* Leather on his Feet, they lay him with the Arms across his Breast in a Coffin, which is made of the Trunk of a Tree, not forgetting in the mean while to send a Present to the Priest to pray for his Soul. The Coffin is covered with a piece of Cloath, or perhaps with a Coat of the Deceased; the richer sort keep their Corps 8 or 10 Days (if the Season will permit it) during which time the Priest comes every Day to purifie it by Incense and sprinkling Holy Water upon it.

Their Interments are perform'd thus: The Priest precedes with the Image of the Patron Saint of the Deceased; he is follow'd by 4 Virgins the next of Kin to the Deceased, who make very mournful Lamentations, beginning and leaving off exactly at a time. Then comes the Body carried by 6 Men upon their Shoulders

1636. ders (if it be a Monk or Nun, thoſe of their own Profeſſion do them this Office) ſurrounded by ſeveral Prieſts who incenſe it, to keep off the Evil Spirits, ſinging Pſalms all this while; after the Corps come the Kindred and Friends with Wax-candles, but without any Order. Being come to the Grave, the Coffin is uncovered, over which the Prieſt holding the Image, he ſays certain Prayers, in which theſe Words are often repeated: *Lord look upon this Soul in Righteouſneſs:* The Widow in the mean while continuing her Lamentations, and asking the ſame Queſtions we mentioned before.

Then the Friends and Kindred take their leave, either kiſſing the Deceaſed or the Coffin, which done the Prieſt puts a piece of Paper betwixt his Fingers, being a kind of Paſs for the other World, which being Sign'd by the Patriarch, or Metropolitan of the place, and the Confeſſor, is ſold for more or leſs according to the Abilities of thoſe who purchaſe them: It runs thus.

WE, whoſe Names are hereunto ſubſcribed, the Patriarch, or Metropolitan, and Prieſt of the City of N. *do make known and Certifie, by theſe Preſents, That the Bearer of theſe our Letters hath always lived among us like a good Chriſtian, profeſſing the* Greek *Religion; and though he hath committed ſome ſins, yet that he hath confeſſed the ſame, and that thereupon he hath received Abſolution, and taken the Communion, for the Remiſſion of his Sins: That he hath honoured God and his Saints: That he hath ſaid his Prayers, and that he hath Faſted on the Hours and Days appointed by the Church, and that he hath carried himſelf ſo well towards me who am his Confeſſor, that I have no reaſon to complain of him, or to deny him the Abſolution of his Sins.*

In Witneſs whereof, we have given him this preſent Teſtimonial, to the end, that upon ſight thereof, St. Peter *may open unto him the Gate of Eternal Bliſs.*

Then the Coffin is ſhut up, and put into the Grave, the Face of the Deceaſed being turn'd to the Eaſt. Thoſe who have accompany'd the Corps thither, after their Devotions paid to the Images, return to the Mourning Houſe, where they drown their Sorrows in good Liquor. 1636.

Their whole time of Mourning laſts 40 Days, in which they make 3 Feaſts for the Kindred, *viz.* the 3d, the 9th, and 20th Day after the Burial. During this time the Prieſt ſays certain Prayers every Morning and Evening over the Grave, which for that purpoſe are cover'd with ſmall Huts of Mats: For tho' the *Muſcovites* don't believe a *Purgatory*, yet they do allow 2 places for the Souls to dwell in till the Day of Judgment; ſome in a pleaſant place among the Company of Angels, the reſt in a dark Valley, having the Converſation of Devils; and that the laſt may be delivered from thence, by the Prayers of Prieſts and Monks; ſuch as are able to give plentiful Alms, during thoſe 40 Days, a thing much uſed among the *Muſcovites*, who inriching themſelves by any means, believe that their Sins may be expiated by Alms.

The *Muſcovites* tolerate all Religions and Nations among them, except the *Roman Catholicks* and *Jews*. There is a great number of *Proteſtants* all over *Muſcovy*, but eſpecially at *Muſco*.

Heretofore thoſe of the Reform'd Religion, and the *Lutherans* had their Churches in the Quarter of *Czaargorod*. The *Lutherans* loſt theirs by a Quarrel that happened betwixt the Wives of the Officers and Merchants, who came to blows in the Church, about precedency; and thoſe of the Reform'd Religion, had theirs taken away, becauſe they had began to build a ſumptuous Edifice of Stone, inſtead of the old one which was of Wood. But ſince that time, the Foreigners having a place aſſign'd them by the *Czar*, without the City, they have built a Suburb of their own, call'd *Nova Inaſemska Slaboda*, where they have built themſelves convenient Houſes and Churches, 2 for the *Lutherans*, and 2 more, one for the *Dutch* and another for the *Engliſh*; wherein they enjoy the ſatisfaction of converſing with one another, without being interrupted by the barbarous ſociety of the *Muſcovites*, or being expoſed to the danger of Fire.

CHAP. IV.

The Ambaſſadors from the Duke of Holſtein's *Travels into* Muſcovy.

They proceed on their Voyage.

WE went from *Muſco* by Land, as far as the Monaſtery of *Simana*, where taking leave of our Friends, we Embark'd with our *Priſtaff*, named *Rodiwon Matſeowitz*, and had ſcarce quitted the Shoar, when the Governor of the young *Knez Boris Juanowitz Moroſou* came in, about to entreat us to come a-ſhoar; but the Ambaſſadors refuſing, he came into our Ship, where he ſtaid all Night, and at parting next Morning, cou'd ſcarce refrain from ſhedding of Tears. He was preſented with a Silver-Bowl, we having in the mean while made 80 *Verſts*, (or 16 *German* Leagues) and by Night made 40 more, to a Village call'd *Mortſchuck*; ſo that in 24 Hours, we had made ſo many *German* Leagues.

The next Day, *July* 2. we met about Noon with ſeveral Boats coming from *Aſtracan* laden with Honey, Salt, and Salt-fiſh; bound for *Muſco*: And at Night reach'd the City of *Columna*; 36 *German* Leagues from thence by Water, and 18 by Land. *Columna.*

The Confluence of the *Moska* and *Occa.* It lies on the right ſide of the River *Moska*, being of a conſiderable bigneſs, and ſurrounded with Stone-Walls and Towers; having its own *Weywode* or Governor. Three *Verſts* above the City, near the Convent of *Kolutin Sergé Monaſtir*, the River *Moska* falls into the *Occa*, which River is much broader and more pleaſant than the former; its Current paſſing from the South, through a very fruitful and well peopl'd Country. Its Banks are well ſtored on both ſides with Oaks, a kind of Rarity in thoſe parts.

We Embark'd again after Dinner, and paſſing by a pretty large Iſland, and ſeveral handſome Villages on the right ſide of the River, we came the 4th of *July* about Noon to the City of *Pereſla*, ſituate likewiſe up- *Pereſlai*
on the right hand of the River *Occa*, 22 Leagues from *Columna*, under 54 deg. 42 min. Elevation. It is likewiſe govern'd by its own *Weywode*.

The 5th we paſs'd by the Town of *Rheſan*, which was formerly a very gallant City, but being deſtroyed together with the circumjacent Country by the *Crim Tartars*, 1568. but the Great Duke in regard of the fertility of the Country along the *Occa*, cauſed Materials to be brought to a place about 8 Leagues from it, which was call'd *Pereſla Rsanski*: The Archbiſhop keeps his Reſidence ſtill in the old Town of *Rheſan*; the Province of which Name lying betwixt the *Don* and *Occa*, does not (as ſom affirm) lie Weſt, but Eaſt from the City of *Muſ*; and the Town of *Rheſan* it ſelf to the South. *Rheſan.*

We paſs'd that Day in ſight of ſeveral Monaſteries and Villages on both ſides of the River. In the Afternoon we made 4 Leagues.

And the 6th more, as far as the Convent of *Tericho*, on the left Hand: And 4 more in the Afternoon to *Kopanor*.

The 7th early in the Morning we left on the right Hand the Iſland *Dobronin Oſtrow*, 6 Leagues from the laſt Village: About 20 *Verſts* from thence, having left ſeveral Villages to the right, we paſs'd by the River *Muſreca*, to the left; and the Villages of *Malcowa*, *Gabiloska*, and *Babino* again to the right, 3 *Verſts* from *Caſſinogorod*, where we arrived at Night. *Caſſinogorod.*

This City, the Capital of the *Tartars* of *Caſſimov*, lies on the right ſide of the River *Occa*, where we met with the firſt *Mahometans*: The young Prince of the Country, lived at that time in an old Caſtle, not far from the City; his Name was *Res Ketzi*, and had a few Years before put himſelf under the *Czar*'s Protec-

tion

1636. ction: We sent him a Present of Tobacco and *Aqua Vitæ*; in lieu of which, he sent us 2 Sheep, a Barrel of Mead, another with Beer, and a third with *Aqua Vitæ*; besides some Ice, Cream, and fresh Butter, which the Princes Mother had taken the Pains to beat, excusing his not having invited the Ambassadors ashoar, for fear of giving occasion of Jealousie to the neighbouring *Muscovite* Governors.

The Night following, and the next Day being the 9th, we pass'd several Villages, Monasteries, and Taverns; and among the rest, the great Village of *Jekatma*, containing above 300 Houses; and from thence 20 *Versts* to the Forest of *Rusbonor*.

The 9th we made 15 *Versts* more to the large Village of *Lechi*, from thence to *Pretziste Resenskou*, and so to *Morumna* on the left hand of the River: Here we discovered a Troop of *Crim Tartars*, who retiring into the Woods, discharged at us, but we answering them with our Muskets, they did not think fit to approach: We came to an Anchor under the Isle of *Zuchtsko Ostrou*, where we set a good Guard for fear of a Surprize.

Morumna. The City of *Morumna*, the Capital of the *Tartars* of *Mordwa*, is inhabited both by *Muscovites* and *Tartars*, but under the Jurisdiction of the first.

The 10th we pass'd by the Town of *Prewospalo*, and on the right the River *Morsna Reka*; and 8 *Versts* from thence, the River *Clesna*, which comes from *Wolodimir*.

From hence, on the right side, the Shoar rises by degrees to such a height, that looking from the Waterside, you see nothing but one ridge of Mountains for 100 *German* Leagues along the River *Wolga*. These Mountains are in the hottest Season not free from Ice and Snow, tho' the Country beyond it for 100 Leagues to the South, is very plain and fertile.

July 11. having pass'd by the Villages of *Isbuilets*, *Troitsa*, *Slowoda*, the Monasteries of *Dudina* and *Nosimki*, we reach'd the City of *Nise*, or *Nisenovogorod* by Night, we found the Ship call'd the *Frederick*, which Captain *Cordes* had caused to be built there by the Ambassadors orders, not quite finish'd, yet the Ambassadors took up their Lodgings in it, being 120 foot long, and 40 broad, with 3 Masts, and so flat bottom'd, that it drew no more than 7 foot Water. It was very conveniently built with many Chambers and Closets, and provided with some Iron and Brass Guns, and 12 Seats for Oars, 2 Oars to every Seat. Besides which, we had a large Challop, to carry Anchors, Cables, and such other Necessaries, and to discover any Banks or Sands.

During our stay here, which was 3 Weeks, we spent most of our time in Feasting, betwixt us and the *Dutch* Merchants, and some other Friends in the City.

Here the *Occa* joyns with the *Wolga*, where the elevation is of 56 deg. 28 min. and the declination of the Needle 9 deg. to the West.

The Great Duke *Basili* caused this City to be built upon the Confluence of the 2 Rivers *Occa* and *Wolga*, *Nisenovogorod.* and gave it the Name of *Nisenovogorod*, from the great number of Inhabitants, which he forced to leave their Habitations at *Novogorod Veliki*, and to settle here. It is surrounded with Stone-Wals and Towers, but the Suburbs are much bigger than the City, being half a League in circumference: It is about 100 *German* Leagues from *Muscovy* by Land, and 150 by Water. It is inhabited by *Tartar*, *Muscovites*, and *Hollanders*, who have a *Protestant* Church here, consisting of 100 Persons. It has its own *Weywode*, or Governor; we bought here a Pullet for 1 Peny, a quartern of Eggs for a Penny, and a Mutton for 12, 15, and 18 Pence.

July 24. The Ambassadors sent Mr. *Mandesio*, and my self, with our *Pristaff*, and the *Muscovian* Interpreter, to thank him for the many civilities he had shewn to our People during their stay there, whilst they were building the Ship, which took up near a Years time, and to regale him with a Present worth about 25 *l.* Sterling.

The Reception he gave us, shew'd him to be a Person much beyond the ordinary Rank of the *Muscovites*: For, he sent 2 of his Gentlemen to receive us at the Gates of his Palace; from whence being conducted through a Gallery, we were at the Entrance of the Palace complemented by 2 others richly clad, who introduced us to the *Weywode*, who was in his Chamber in a Garment of Brocado, attended by a good number of Persons of Quality.

The Room was hung with very rich Tapestry, and a large Cupboard in it with Plate: After he had returned our Complement, and received the Present, he invited us to a Collation, during which, he was very excellent in his Conversation, much beyond what the *Muscovites* generally are; and among the rest ask'd, Whether we were not afraid of meeting with the *Cossacks*, who were sturdy Fellows, as brave as Lions, shewing us at the same time a Picture of *Sampson*'s Engagement with one of these Creatures: Unto which we replying, That we hoped to deal with the *Cossacks*, as *Sampson* did with the Lyon: He pass'd this Complement upon us, That no question the Reputation our Nation had gain'd in the *Czar*'s Service, would be so terrible to the *Cossacks*, as to withhold them from attempting any thing against us. 1636.

The River *Wolga* is at the Confluence of the 2 Rivers 4600 Geometrical feet broad: Its Waters are considerably encreased in the Months of *May* and *June*, by the Thawing of those Rivers that fall into it; which being the reason, why the Ships go from *Musco* to *Astracan*, take the opportunity of this time, to get with ease over the Sands and Shallow Places, which are so frequent in this River; we thought it also time to continue our Voyage before the Waters were fallen too low, therefore we appointed it should be the 30th of *July*.

The River *Wolga*, of which we gave you a general account in the preceding Book, being in my Opinion, one of the greatest and noblest Rivers in the World, I observed all the particulars of it with all possible exactness, with the assistance of a *Dutch* Master's Mate, call'd *Cornelius Nicholas*, a very able Person in that Science, and some *Muscovite* Pilots; according to which, I have drawn a very exact Map, which I here present to the Reader. The River *Wolga*.

Having provided our selves with all Necessaries for our Voyage as far as *Astracan*, we left *Nise* on the appointed Day, but had scarce made 2 *Versts*, 'ere we struck upon the Sands near the Monastery of *Petsora*, which took us up 4 Hours in getting off.

The 31st of *July* our Ship touch'd against another Sand-bank, after we had sail'd but one *Verst*, and by reason of the contrary Winds were forc'd to come to Anchor.

August 1. the Ambassadors gave orders how and what Guards should be kept whilst we were upon the *Wolga*, all that belonged to our Retinue, both Soldiers and Servants, that were able to bear Arms, being divided into 3 Companies, under the Command of the two Ambassadors and the Steward of the Embassy. Mr. *Crusius*, the first Ambassador, had the Master of the Horse for his Lieutenant, and Mr. *Brugman* the other Ambassador, the Secretary of the Embassy, who were to be upon the Guard alternatively, to place the Centinels in the Fore-castle and Stern, and keep their *Corps du Guard* at the Main-Mast.

The Wind continuing contrary, we had recourse to our Oars, but before we had made 500 Paces, struck upon the Sands again; and whilst we were getting off, some of our Gentlemen diverted themselves with Fowling in the high Country betwixt *Nise* and *Casan*, being equally furnish'd with good Pastures and Woods.

The 2d having weigh'd Anchor, after we had scarce advanced a quarter of a League, we were intangled among the Sand-banks near the Isle of *Tletinski*, and not long after among others near the Isle of *Subsinski*, where seeing a Wreck of a Ship that had been lost there not long before, and being 9 Hours a getting off, this I say, with the consideration of the length of our Voyage, (being 558 Leagues to the *Caspian Sea*) and the ignorance of our Pilot, made us almost despair of the Success of our Voyage.

We were however a little revived the 3d, when passing by the Villages of *Stolbiza* and *Stoba*, 3 Leagues from *Nise*, and afterwards the Isle of *Diploi* a League further, near which we met with a very large Vessel laden with Salt-fish, which had aboard 200 Men to assist in towing her up against the Stream, which is done with incredible pains, they scarce advancing 2 Leagues in a Day.

In the Afternoon, we found the elevation to be 56 deg. 21 min. near a Village on the right hand, call'd *Kusmitza*, and passing by the Villages of *Kubotka*, *Tzetschina*, *Targinits*, and *Jurkin*, (the last of which is 9 Leagues from *Nise*) we steer'd our Course betwixt 2 Isles at 21 foot Water.

The Wind being very fair at Night, our Sails stood us in good stead, and continuing thus the next Day, we left the Towns of *Masa* and *Cremenski*, on the right

1636. right hand; and caſt Anchor near the laſt, by reaſon of the ſhallowneſs of the River hereabouts, to avoid running upon the Sands in the Night.

The 5th, early in the Morning we came before the Village of *Pannino*, whence being ſupply'd with ſome Pullets, and other freſh Proviſions at a very cheap rate, we paſs'd betwixt 2 Iſles, and at Night came within ſight of *Baſiligorod*: Here we ſtay'd again all Night, for fear of the Sands.

Baſiligorod. The City of *Baſiligorod* being without Walls, and the Houſes of Wood, is rather a Village than a City, being ſituate at the foot of a Mountain on the right ſide of the River *Wolga*, at 55 deg. 51 min. elevation, at the Conflux of the *Wolga*, and the little River *Sura*, formerly the common boundary betwixt the *Muſcovites* and the *Tartars* of *Caſan*, call'd *Ceremiſſes*. This City was built and fortified by the Great Duke *Baſili*, but has been neglected ſince the *Muſcovites* have extended their Territories further on that ſide.

The Tartars Ceremiſſes.

The 6th having paſs'd the Sands with much difficulty, which made us not come up to the City till Afternoon, which we ſaluted with our great Guns, as we did to all the other Cities upon the River.

The Country inhabited by the *Ceremiſſian Tartars*, extends on both ſides of the River *Wolga* beyond *Caſan*: They live only in Huts, and feed upon Honey and Wild-fowl they take in the Woods, and Milk which their Paſtures furniſh them with: For the reſt, they are very barbarous, treacherous, and cruel, and much addicted to Sorcery and Robbery.

Thoſe living on the right ſide of the *Wolga* in a Mountainous Country, are called *Nagorni*, i. e. *Mountaineers*; but thoſe on the other ſide *Lugowi* or *Lugowizene*, from their plentiful Meadows which ſupply both them and the *Nagorni* with plenty of Hay. *Guagnin* makes them partly *Mahometans*, partly Heathens; but I am certain, that thoſe about *Caſan* are *Pagans*, knowing neither Circumciſion nor Baptiſm, it being their Cuſtom, when they are to give a Child a Name, to appoint a certain Day 6 Months after, and to Name it after the Perſon, they firſt meet with. They do indeed confeſs there is an Immortal Being, who being the Author of all that is good, ought to be reverenced: But their knowledge extends no further, being quite ignorant as to the Mortality of the Soul, and the Reſurrection of the Dead. Neither do they believe any thing of Hell, tho' at the ſame time they acknowledge there are Devils, or Evil Spirits, which afflict People in this Life, which conſequently ought to be appeaſed by Sacrifices.

They pay their Devotions to theſe Evil Spirits at a certain place call'd *Nemda*, among the Fens, about 4 Leagues from *Caſan*, where they never appear empty handed; it being their Opinion, That thoſe that do, ſhall languiſh to Death by ſome lingring Diſeaſe. But above all, one of the moſt principal Reſidences they aſſign to the Devil, is the Torrent of *Schockshem*, 2 Leagues from *Nemda*, which having a very ſwift Current betwixt 2 Mountains, is never frozen, and has imprinted ſuch an Idea of a hidden Myſtery into thoſe poor Wretches, that tho' they ſee the *Muſcovites* paſs it every Day, they think they cannot approach it, without manifeſt danger of their Lives. When they offer their Sacrifices to God, they kill an Oxe, Horſe or Sheep, hang the Skin thereof upon a Pole laid croſs betwixt 2 Trees; and after they have roaſted the Fleſh before a Fire underneath it, they take a ſlice of the Meat, and a Cup of Mead, and throw 'em both in the Fire, offering their Prayers at the ſame time to the Skin, to intercede in their behalf with God; ſometimes to God immediately, for the preſervation and augmentation of their Cattle; or ſome other Conveniencies of this Life. They alſo pay Adoration to the Sun and Moon, and have a peculiar veneration for whatever they Dream of, be it a Horſe, Cow, Fire, Water, or any thing elſe; and told us frankly, that theſe Creatures, which were things Animate, deſerved more Worſhip than the Wooden and Painted Gods of the *Muſcovites*.

Their Sacrifices.

They perform moſt of their Religious Ceremonies near the Torrent, and at the Death of their Friends, feaſt upon the beſt Horſe he left behind. They make uſe of no Prieſts or Books, and their Language has nothing common with the other *Tartars*, tho' ſome among them underſtand alſo the *Muſcovite*.

They not only ſuffer, but alſo incourage Polygamy; nothing being more common, than for a Man here to Marry 2 or 3 Siſters at a time.

Their Women, as well as Maids, are only wrap'd up in a piece of courſe white Cloath, ſcarce any thing being to be ſeen but their Faces; thoſe that are betrothed, have a peculiar Head-dreſs pointed at the end like a Horn, to the end of which is faſtned a Silk Taſſel, on which hangs a ſmall Bell. 1636.

The Men have Breeches under their Upper Garment, which reſembles a great Coat. They all ſhave their Heads, with this diſtinction however, that the Unmarried Men wear a long Treſs of Hair from the Crown, hanging down on their Backs; ſometimes they tie it up in a Knot. They were ſo much affrighted at the ſight of us, that ſome few would only venture to come to the River ſide, to ſee us paſs by; yet at Night when we came to the River of *Welluka*, near the Convent of *Junka*, one of theſe *Tartars* came aboard us, to ſell a Sturgeon, for which we paid him 15 Pence.

Auguſt 7. we arrived before the City of *Kuſmademianski*, 40 *Verſts* from *Baſiligorod*, ſituate at the foot of a Mountain, on the right Hand. Here we obſerved whole Foreſts of very large Elms, out of the Bark of which they make Sledges, and out of the Body of the Trees, cut Cylinderwiſe and hollow'd out, Barrels, Coffins, &c. all of one piece. *The City of Kuſmademianski.*

We came to an Anchor 3 *Verſts* thence, near the Iſle of *Krius*, where we were ſupply'd with freſh Proviſions by the Peaſants, and forced to ſtay all Night by reaſon of a Tempeſt.

The 8th we continued our Voyage with a fair Wind to the Iſle of *Turich*, where we had the misfortune to be forc'd upon a Sand-bank, being under full Sail, and were above 4 Hours before we got off again; in the mean while we ſaw abundance of *Tartars* at ſome diſtance from us, coming from Hay-making.

However by Night we got within ſight of the City of *Sabakzar*, 40 *Verſts* from the laſt, and upon the ſame ſide of the River: Its ſituation is the moſt pleaſant of any in all thoſe parts, but its Buildings are of Wood, like all the reſt. *Sabakzar.*

We ſaw a Boat near the Iſle of *Makrits*, which being ſent to get intelligence, who we were, return'd thither after they had taken a compaſs round our Ship; but having afterwards underſtood our Quality, above 300 Perſons appear'd on the River ſide, to ſee us paſs by.

The 9th we left the Iſle of *Coſin*, and the little City of *Kockſchaga*, both on the left ſide of the *Wolga*, the firſt 12, the ſecond 25 *Verſts* from *Sabakzar*.

The ſhallowneſs of the River put us to no ſmall trouble, and the 11th, the Current forc'd us a-ſhoar, and whilſt they were buſie in getting our Veſſel clear, Mr. *Mandeſlo* and I, had the curioſity to take a view of the Country, for which we were in danger of paying at a dear rate; for our Ship by the help of a fair Gale, was got out of ſight; ſo that after we had been forc'd to Travel a great way along the Banks, we at laſt eſpied a Boat, which was ſent to conduct us to our Veſſel, which we found at Anchor by Night.

The 12th we loſt one of our Anchors, which was faſtened in a Tree that was in the bottom of the River, as we were getting beyond a turning; we were told, That theſe Accidents were ſo frequent, by reaſon of the many Trees which are forc'd along with the Current, whilſt the Banks are overflown, that theſe Anchors, if taken out of the bottom, would purchaſe a Kingdom.

The 13th by Noon, after we had paſs'd by the Village of *Weſoska* on the right, we came before the City of *Suiatski*, ſituate on the left hand, on the aſcent of a Hill: It has a Caſtle, and ſome Churches of Stone, but all the private Buildings, as well as its Fortifications, of Wood. Abundance of People came in Boats to ſee us. *Suiatski.*

At Night we arrived before the City of *Caſan*, 20 *Verſts* from *Suiatski*. We here met with the Caravan of *Perſia* and *Circaſſia*; and a *Perſian Copti*, or Merchant, who was ſent Ambaſſador to *Muſco*. *Caſan.*

We alſo ſaw here a *Tartarian* Prince of *Terki*, call'd *Muſſal*, who had been at *Muſco* lately to do Homage to the *Czar*. *A Tartar Prince.*

The City of *Caſan* is ſituate in a large Plain upon the River *Caſanka*, (which has imparted its Name both to the City and the Province) about 7 *Verſts* from the *Wolga*, under 55 deg. 38 min. elevation. The City is very conſiderable for its bigneſs and ſituation as well as its ſtrength: The Caſtle and its Fortifications being of Stone, well provided with Artillery, and a good Garriſon of *Muſcovites*, the *Tartars* being forbid to enter it upon pain of Death.

1636. For the rest the Houses, Towns, and Ramniers of the City are of Wood only, unto which the River serves instead of a Ditch.

The Castle and City have each their peculiar Governor; the first Commands the Soldiery, the other administers Justice to the *Muscovites* and *Tartars* that live in the City.

The Province of *Casan*. The Province of *Casan* extends on the left side of the River *Wolga*, as far as *Siberia* to the North, and as far as the *Nagaian Tartars* to the East. It was formerly under the Subjection of the *Crim Tartars*, and was capable of bringing 60000 Men into the Field; neither did the *Muscovites* reduce them without much effusion of Blood, as we shall hear by the sequel of the following History.

Conquered by the *Muscovites*. *Basili Juanowitz* Father to the famous *Juan Basilowitz*, having subdued these *Tartars*, he made one *Scheale*, a *Tartar* by Birth, their Chief; but being hated by the *Tartars*, they rebell'd and expell'd him with the assistance of the *Crim Tartars*, who are *Mahometans* as well as they: The last being encouraged by this Success, entred *Muscovy* with a powerful Army, under the Conduct of 2 Brothers, named *Mendligeri* and *Sapgeri*, and having forced the *Muscovites* to retreat from the River *Occa*, where they had posted themselves to oppose their Passage to *Novogorod*, they Besieged, Took and Plundered the City of *Musco*, and reduced the Castle to that extremity, that the *Muscovites* were forced to purchase a Peace from them by very considerable Presents, and under very hard Conditions; one of which was, That the Great Duke and all his Subjects should be Tributaries to them; which *Basili* was forced to confirm by his Letters Patents.

They rebel.

The *Tartars* Masters of *Musco*.

Make the *Muscovites* Tributaries.

The *Tartarian* Princes not contented with this Advantage, unless they left a Monument of their Sovereignty behind them, caused a Statue to be erected in the City of *Musco*, with strict orders, That at the Day when the Tribute should be paid annually, the Great Duke and his Court should bow their Heads to the Ground before it; and *Mendligeri* in his return to the *Crim*, (*Casan* being fallen to the share of *Sapgeri*) laid Siege to the City and Castle of *Rhesan*, summoning the Governor to surrender the place to him, who was now his Sovereign.

The Governor returning for Answer, That a thing of such a nature was so surprising to him, that he could not possibly imagine it, unless he had undeniable proofs of it; *Mendligeri* conceived he could not satisfie him better, than by sending him the Letters-Patents, which the Governor had no sooner received, but being extreamly overjoy'd thereat, sent him word, That he was resolved to keep and defend them as well as the place to the last gasp.

The Bravery of the Governor of *Rexan*.

The *Tartar* highly exasperated thereat, furiously attack'd the place, but was as bravely repulsed; so that finding himself not in condition to take the place, he sent word to the Governor, That he would raise the Siege, provided he would restore the Letters-Patents to him, but he rejecting his Proposals, the *Tartars* were forced to quit their Enterprizes and to return home.

These Letters being sent to *Musco*, were received with great joy there; for the Statue was not only taken down immediately, but *Basili* soon after put himself at the Head of 25000 *Muscovites*, and Besieged the City of *Casan*; which however he was forced to raise afterwards with great loss.

But *Juan Basilowitz* the famous Son and Successor of *Basili*, having resolved to revenge this Affront, laid close Siege to it, and batter'd it most furiously for 2 Months, when being inform'd that the *Crim Tartars* were coming to its relief, he strictly commanded all the Walls to be Undermin'd; which having taken good effect, with the loss of many *Tartars*, the general Assault was given *July* 9. 1552. and the place carried by Storm; notwithstanding the *Tartars* after they saw the Enemy Masters of the Walls, defended themselves bravely from 2 Intrenchments they had made for that purpose, and seeing all desperate at last, fought their way through one of the Gates, over the River *Casanska*.

Casan Besieged and taken by Storm by the *Muscovites*.

Soon after, the whole Province being reduced under his Obedience, he caused the Fortifications to be repair'd, and the whole place to be strengthned with a Castle, which has 4 Bastions of Stone, many Towers, and a good Ditch. He that was Commander in Chief in the place at our Arrival thereabouts, was the Brother of the Governor of *Nise*, he was presented with a noble Ruby, by the Ambassadors, and Mr. *Mandesto* and I went ashoar to take a view of the place, and to buy some Provisions, but we could get nothing that was good, except some Fruits, and especially Melons, as big as our Pumpkins. 1636.

At our coming out of the City, being advertis'd by some *Tartars*, that our Ship was gone, we were forced to hire a Waggon; by the help of which, we were carried along the Shoar, till meeting with the *Pristaffs* Boat, we were carried aboard, and found our Vessel at an Anchor 2 Leagues below *Casan*.

It is to be observed, that the Course of the River *Wolga*, from *Nisenovogorod* to *Casan*, is E. and S. E. but from *Casan* to *Astrachan*, and to the *Caspian Sea*, from N. to S. The Course of the *Wolga*.

The Country is fertile, but almost desolate, by reason of its being so much infested with the *Cossacks*.

August 15. we were carried with a swift Current, occasioned by the narrowness of the River, 26 *Versts* from *Casan*, to the Village of *Klitsischa*, where we had much ado to pass the Sand-banks, and spent the remainder of this and the whole next Day in recovering our Anchors, yet were forced to leave one of our little ones behind us.

Thence we made 6 *Versts* further, to a Tavern call'd, *Kaback Tenkoski*, where we were troubled with another Sand-bank, and half a League beyond this, with another, near a Tavern call'd, *Keshofska*.

The 17th we pass'd over another such Bank, whereabout we saw the Shoar, which was very high, fallen down on one side, which lately had overwhelm'd a Boat with Cherries, whereof there is great store here. We also met with abundance of Ice under the right Shoar, some of which we took along with us, to cool our Drink.

Towards the Evening we pass'd by the place, where the great River *Kama* arising from the N. E. in the Province of *Permia* exonerates it self on the left in the *Wolga*, 60 *Versts* from *Casan*, being of the same breadth at the Mouth, as the River *Weser* in *Germany*, and its Waters blackish. It has 2 Islands at the Mouth of it, the biggest is call'd *Sokol*, having just opposite to it, on the Continent, a very fine Village call'd *Pagantzina*, and 3 *Versts* further another Nam'd *Corotai*, and 7 *Versts* from thence another call'd *Kirieska*, where we stay'd all Night. The River *Kama*.

The 18th with a fair Gale we got by Noon to the place, where the River *Zerdick* disembogues likewise to the left Hand into the *Wolga*, tho' the same is rather a Branch of the River *Kama*, which taking a compass, makes a kind of an Island, and joyns with the *Wolga* 30 *Versts* from the Mouth of the other. The River *Zerdick*.

From hence we could discover to the right of us, the City of *Tetus*, being straggligly built upon a little ascent 120 *Versts* from *Casan*. Betwixt this place and the *Caspian Sea*, there is no Village. The City of *Tetus*.

The same Afternoon we met near the Isle of *Proleikarsa*, with the Governor of *Terki*, a place upon the *Caspian Sea*, who was returning from his Government, being attended by 8 Boats with Musqueteers. At first, not knowing who they were, we made them keep at a distance; but coming nearer they told us, That 3000 *Cossacks* attended our coming upon the River and the *Caspian Sea*, for which purpose they had sent out 70 Horse to discover our coming at a distance; but we were so little frightned with these Stories, that we continued our Course without the least stay, gave them a Gun at parting, and made 70 *Versts* that Day, leaving the River *Utka*, which rises near the City of *Bulgara*, 25 *Versts* from *Tetus* to our left. The River *Utka*.

The Night following, to make tryal of our People, in case of a sudden Attack, a false Alarm was given by the Ambassadors orders, which succeeded to their satisfaction.

The 19th we came to an Island call'd *Staritzo*, which is 15 *Versts* long; I found the elevation 54 deg. 31 min. Behind this Island we found a great quantity of Stones shaped like Limons or Oranges, which being broken in the midst, represented a Star of divers colours, and some of Gold and Silver.

Thence we came within sight of a very pleasant place for its situation, the Ruines of which, shew'd it to have been a *Tartarian* City, call'd *Uneroskora*, and where was yet to be seen the Monument of a certain famous Saint, for which the Inhabitants of those parts shew a more than ordinary Devotion; it is 65 *Versts* from *Tetus*.

The 20th, some Fishermen of this last place, sold us 55 large Breams for 50 Pence. They have a peculiar way A peculiar way of Fishing.

1636. way of Fiſhing: They take a long Cord, unto one end of which they faſten a pretty big Stone which falls to the bottom; and to the other end of it ſeveral pieces of Wood, which ſwim upon the Water. All along the Cord are faſtned many leſſer ones, each with a Hook and a Fiſh for a Bait at the end; by which means they take Fiſhes of 8, 10, or 12 foot long, the Meat of which is very white and delicate.

In our return from *Perſia*, we had ſuch a one brought us, of which we pickled up a whole Barrel full, after thoſe belonging to the Boat in which the Ambaſſador *Cruſius* was, had made a good Meal of it.

When the *Muſcovites* paſs along the Rivers in their Boats, they make uſe of another Invention; they faſten a Hook to one end of a Cord, and to the other end of it a piece of a ſmooth Board of a Hands breadth, Tinn'd over; this they let drag along behind the Ship, or Boat, and the Stream cauſing the Tinn'd Board to turn frequently towards the Sun, makes it appear like Scales of Fiſh; by which means they draw after them, and take as many Fiſhes, and that of the greater ſort, as they have occaſion for; ſo that the *Muſcovites* make ſcarce any other Proviſion upon theſe occaſions, but of a kind of Biskets, being ſo uſed to living upon Fiſh, by reaſon of their many Faſt-days, that they make but little account of Fleſh when they are Abroad.

At this place we cauſed our Boat which had brought our Proviſions from *Niſe*, but was now empty, to be ſet on Fire, for fear it ſhould fall into the Hands of the *Coſſacks*.

About Noon we paſs'd by the Iſle of *Botenska*, which being 3 *Verſts* long, is divided by a narrow Channel from a kind of a ſmall Promontory call'd *Polibno*, behind which we were forc'd to come to an Anchor, near the Mouth of the River *Beitma*; which, as they ſay, is another branch of the River *Kama*.

The River *Beitma*.

The 21ſt we ſaw on the right Hand the Ruines of 2 places, extraordinary pleaſant for their ſituation, which are ſaid to have been 2 Great Cities deſtroy'd by *Tamerlain*, one was call'd *Simberska-Gora*.

The 22d we with much ado, paſs'd over 3 great Sand-banks, near which may be ſeen the Mount *Arbeuchim* on the right Hand, which owes its Name to a great City, the Ruines of which are alſo to be ſeen to this Day.

Hereabouts you may alſo diſcover betwixt 2 little Hills, a great Stone of 20 foot long and as many broad, with the following Inſcription:

Budeſch time dobro tobæ budet:

That is,

If thou raiſe me, thou ſhalt be well rewarded.

We were told, That 50 Paſſengers being forc'd aſhoar there ſome Years before, had the curioſity to lift up the Stone, and found on the other ſide nothing but theſe following Words:

Tſto iſches netſcho poloſchen:

That is,

In vain doſt thou look for what thou hadſt not put here.

At ſome ſmall diſtance from the River, you ſee a very fertile, ſpacious, Champagn Country, being rich Paſture Grounds, but deſtitute of Inhabitants, there remaining nothing to be ſeen now but the Ruines of Cities and great Villages deſtroy'd by *Tamerlain*.

The 23d we were forc'd to come to an Anchor near the River *Adrobe*, where I found the Elevation of 53 deg. 48 min.

The 24th we were driven twice aſhoar by the contrary Winds; and the 2 next following Days being much afflicted with getting over the Sand-banks, this with the ill Diet, moſt of our People were not accuſtomed to, and the frowardneſs of one of the Ambaſſadors, rendred this Voyage almoſt inſupportable.

The 25th we diſcovered to the right a Mountain, from whence the *Muſcovites* draw abundance of Salt; which being prepared in Huts built for that purpoſe, and dry'd in the Sun, is tranſported from hence to *Muſco*.

Oppoſite to it is the Iſle of *Koſtowata*, where the River is very broad, by reaſon of the low Banks on both ſides.

Not far hence you ſee another Mountain, at the foot of which, is the River *Uſſa*, which here falls into the *Wolga*, but is re-united with it 60 *Verſts* below *Samara*. Hereabouts are very good Paſtures, but a high Mountain with thick Woods, which ſerving for a Retreat to the *Coſſacks*, makes them almoſt uſeleſs. From hence to the Mountain *Dimiſagora*, i. e. *The Maids Mountain*, we had 60 foot Water.

1636.

The River *Uſſa*.

This Mountain is divided into many ſteep Hills towards the River ſide, which being of divers Colours, afford a very agreeable Proſpect at a diſtance; and upon each of theſe Hills is a row of Pine-trees ſo regularly planted, that were they not inacceſſible, they would rather be look'd upon as the product of Art than Nature.

At the foot of this Mountain ariſes another, extending 8 Leagues along the River: The Valley betwixt both, is call'd *Jabla-new-quas*, i. e. Apple-drink, from the vaſt number of Apple-trees here, which bear Apples only fit for Cyder.

The ſame Evening having received Advice by Letters from *Muſco*, and *Niſe*, that 4 *Coſſacks* were got into our Retinue, in the quality of Mariners, which made us be the more upon our Guard, eſpecially when after Sun-ſet we perceived 2 great Fires at the Entrance of a Wood on the right hand; but having diſpatch'd 5 or 6 Muſqueteers aſhoar, they diſcover'd them to be *Strelitzes*, who had guarded a *Perſian* Caravan.

The Night betwixt the 26th and 27th we were put in another Fright by 2 Fiſhermen, which paſſing by along our Ship ſide in a Boat, were ſtop'd by our Centinels; but finding them differing in their Relations, and ſuſpecting them to be *Coſſacks*, we ſent them the next Morning to the Governor of *Samara*.

The 27th we ſpy'd a certain Sand-Down in the middle of a ſpacious Plain to the left Hand, call'd *Sariol Kurgan*, of which the *Muſcovites* relate, That a certain *Tartarian* Prince call'd *Momaon*, as he was marching that way to invade *Muſcovy*, happening to die there, was Buried in that place, the Soldiers covering his Body with Sand, which they carried thither in their Head-pieces and Bucklers.

About a League from thence begins the Mountain *Saccobei*, reaching 15 *Verſts* along the River ſide, as far as *Samara*, it is one continued Rock, bare on the top, but otherwiſe covered all over with Trees.

Whilſt we were detain'd here by contrary Winds, 2 great red Snakes, which came from the Shoar, got up by the Cables of our Ship: The *Muſcovites* no ſooner perceived them, but they begg'd us not to kill them, but to give them ſome Food, they being the forerunners of fair Wind, ſent by St. *Nicholas*.

The Superſtition of the *Muſcovites*.

The 28th we came before Day near the City of *Samara*; it lies 2 *Verſts* from the River ſide on the left Hand, and 350 from *Caſan*: It is almoſt ſquare, and the Buildings, except ſome Churches, and 2 or 3 Monaſteries, of Wood.

The City of *Samara*.

Three *Verſts* from hence, the River *Samar* falls into the *Wolga*, but is not rightly united with it till 30 *Verſts* lower.

The Wind turning very fair, we chang'd our purpoſe of making ſome ſtay near this place, and made 115 *Verſts* before Night, when we arrived at the Mountain of the *Coſſacks*, which has got its Name from the frequent Robberies committed thereabouts by theſe Pirates, this being their Aſſembling place, from whence they uſed to diſcover what Ships came that way; but ſince 400 or 500 of them were killed there by the Garriſon of *Samara*, this Mountain has not been infeſted with this Vermin, or at leaſt not in ſuch Numbers.

The Mountain of the *Coſſacks*.

From the City of *Samara*, to the place where the River *Samar* falls into the *Wolga*, is one continued tract of Mountains; and oppoſite to it the River *Aſcula* joyning alſo with the ſaid *Wolga*, makes it near 2 Leagues broad here.

A little further on the right Hand, the Mountain *Peſtcherski* extends for 40 *Verſts* without any interruption all along the River ſide.

About 100 *Verſts* off *Samara*, is the Iſle of *Batrack*, and 10 *Verſts* lower, that of *Lopatin*, being 5 *Verſts* long, juſt oppoſite to the River *Liſran*, where it joyns with the *Wolga* on the right Hand.

Afterwards we paſs'd by a great many ſmall Iſlands, and ſo came at Night to the before mentioned Mountain of the *Coſſacks*. This Mountain, as well as all the reſt, do ſometimes reach a great way into the

1636. Country, ſometimes only ſerve as an edge to the Banks of the River.

Having ſtay'd here all Night, we continued our Voyage the 29th, and paſſing by the River *Pantzina*, which diſembogues into the *Wolga* on the right Hand, we made 45 *Verſts* that Day, and came to an Anchor by Night near the Iſle of *Zagerinsko*. Here we were advertiſed, that 40 *Coſſacks* had been ſeen hovering near the River ſide, and our Beer beginning to fail us, our People were forced to be contented for the future with Water mixt with Vinegar.

Auguſt 30. we paſs'd early in the Morning the Mouth of the River *Zagra*, on the right Hand of us, not far from the Iſle of *Zagerinsko*, and 40 *Verſts* further the Iſle of *Seſnou*.

About Noon we came in ſight of the Mountain of *Tichy*, which jets out ſo deep into the River, that at a diſtance it ſeems to ſtop the paſſage of the Current, which however is ſo ſhallow hereabouts, that it is ſaid to be fordable. Not far from thence, there is a noted Sand-bank, call'd *Owetzabrot*, and a little further ſeveral ſmall Iſles full of Buſhes and Bullruſhes, which ſerve for a Retreat to the *Coſſacks*.

Here we were again alarm'd with the News, that ſome of theſe Robbers laid in wait for us, which made us call 2 Fiſhermen aboard towards Evening, both of which declared, That they had ſeen 40 *Coſſacks* in an adjacent Wood they ſhew'd us, which made us be upon our Guard all that Night, and did not diſmiſs the Fiſhermen till next Day, in which we made 60 *Verſts*; and the 31ſt no leſs than 120.

The firſt thing we ſaw, was the Iſle of *Oſſino*, 100 *Verſts* from *Saratof*: and after we had ſpent much time and pains in paſſing the Sand-banks, where our Ship ſtruck ſeveral times, we came to the Iſle of *Schiſmamago*, 20 *Verſts* thence; and afterwards to that of *Kaltof*, 50 *Verſts* from *Saratof*; hereabouts we had from 16 to 42 Foot Water. Betwixt theſe 2 laſt Iſlands we met with 2 great Barges Mann'd with 400 Mariners each, laden with Proviſions and *Cavayar*: And near the Iſle of *Kaltof*, we met with 4 more coming from *Aſtrachan* with Salt and Salt-fiſh; they told us, That they had met with 200 *Coſſacks* near *Aſtrachan*, who had let them paſs by unmoleſted.

On the right Hand of this Iſle begins the Mountain of *Smiowa*, i. e. *The Mountain of Serpents*, from its winding ſometimes near to, ſometimes at a great diſtance from the Shoar, for 40 *Verſts* in length; from whence you have a full proſpect of what the *Muſcovites* call *Sarok Oſtrowe*, i. e. *Forty Iſles*.

The City of *Saratof*. *September* 1. we met early in the Morning 3 great Boats, and about 9 in the Morning, paſs'd in ſight of *Saratof*, a City ſituate 52 deg. 12 min. in a great Plain upon a Branch of the *Wolga*, 4 *Verſts* from the main River. It is inhabited only by *Muſcovite* Soldiers, who keep Garriſon here to bridle the *Calmouch Tartars*, inhabiting a vaſt Tract of Ground from hence to the *Caſpian Sea*, and the River *Jaika*: They are ſo conſiderable, that ſometimes they make open War againſt the *Czar*. From *Samara* to *Saratof*, are 350 *Verſts*.

September 2. we paſs'd by the Iſles of *Kriuſna* and *Sapuroſka*, and not long after to the Mountain of *Achmats Kigori*, which extends along the Shoar as far as the Iſle, which bears the ſame Name, 50 *Verſts* from *Saratof*: This Mountain makes a very fair Proſpect at a diſtance, becauſe the top of it is covered with moſt pleaſant Verdure, the Aſcent being checquer'd with a Mould of different Colours, and the skirt of it a Bank as even, as if it were made by Art.

Twenty *Verſts* from the beforementioned Iſle, we ſaw that of *Solotoi*, and not long after the Mountain of *Sallottogori*, i. e. *The Golden Mountain*; having gotten this Name from thence, becauſe the *Tartars* did once ſurprize hereabouts a Fleet of *Muſcovite* Veſſels, ſo richly laden, that they divided the Gold and Silver by the Buſhel.

We were ſcarce got out of ſight of this Mountain, but we diſcovered another, call'd *Millobe*, or the *Chalk Mountain*, which reaching 40 *Verſts* along the River, riſes by an eaſie aſcent to the top, which is all upon a level; and at the foot near the River, are planted many Trees Checquer-wiſe.

The next Mountain we came to, we call'd the *Mountain of Pillars*, from the Rocks of divers Colours, which appear like Pillars above the reſt.

Here meeting with another great Barge, we were told by the Pilot, that they had been in ſight of 70 *Coſſacks*, who had let their Veſſel paſs by, but had in the Night time ſtolen their Lighter, for which they made them pay a Ranſome of 500 Crowns. 1636.

We ſaw the ſame Evening 10 *Coſſacks* croſs the River in ſight of us; wherenpon 8 Muſqueteers were commanded by the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, to find them out, and to bring them aboard: But the *Coſſacks* having got time enough to get together with their Boat, into an adjacent Wood, and it being very late before our People return'd, this cauſed ſome Diſpute betwixt the ſaid Ambaſſador, and the Steward of the Embaſſy, the latter alledging, that it was very dangerous to expoſe our Men in the Dark, in an unknown place, where they muſt infallibly periſh for want of timely relief; but he had no other Anſwer but ill Language.

Septemb. 3. We paſs'd in ſight of the River *Ruſtana*, and oppoſite to it on the right, the Mountain of *Urakufs Karul*, 150 *Verſts* from *Saratof*; having its Name, as they ſay, from a certain *Tartar* Prince named *Urak*, that was ſlain there by the *Coſſacks*.

Thence we came to the Mountain of *Kamaſchinka*, and a River of the ſame Name ariſing out of the Torrent of *Iloba*, which falls into the *Don*; ſo that the *Coſſacks* croſs only this River in ſmall Boats, and make their Excurſions as far as the *Wolga*, which renders travelling very dangerous hereabouts, as may be ſeen by the many Croſſes ſet there along the River ſide, in remembrance of the *Muſcovites* ſlain by theſe Robbers.

We no ſooner had paſs'd this place, but finding our ſelves within ſight of the *Caravan* of *Perſia* and *Tartary*, we made all the haſte we could to get up with them, and ſaluted them with 4 pieces of Cannon, and a Volley of Small-ſhot, under the ſound of our Trumpets, which they return'd by a Volley of Small-ſhot.

The chief Perſons belonging to this Caravan, were a *Tartarian* Prince named *Muſſal*, the *Perſian Cuptzi* we mentioned before, a *Muſcovite* Envoy ſent into *Perſia*, a *Crim Tartar* Ambaſſador, and 2 or 3 *Perſian* Merchants, one of which was an Agent of the Chancellor of *Perſia*.

We ſaw immediately after a *Muſcovite* Officer with ſome *Strelitzes* coming in a Boat towards us, and after they had ſaluted us with a Volley of Small-ſhot, the Officer only came aboard to Complement us in the Name of the *Tartarian* Prince: The *Perſian Cuptzi* did the ſame ſoon after by one of his Retinue, and the Ambaſſadors ſent Mr. *Uchterits*, and Mr. *Melleville*, with our *Muſcovite* Interpreter to the Prince, and the Secretary of the Embaſſy, with our *Perſian* Interpreter, to the *Cuptzi*, to repay the Compliment.

The Secretary happening to come to the Lar-board ſide of the Veſſel, the *Cuptzi*'s Servants told him, that their Maſter's Wife being lodged on that ſide, they deſired him to come about to the other ſide of the Ship, which being done accordingly, we were received by ſeveral goodly Perſons, who lifted us up by the Arms into the Ship, and conducted us to the *Cuptzi*'s Chamber, where we found him ſitting upon a Couch cover- The *Perſian Cuptzi*.
ed with the beſt *Perſian* Tapeſtry, reſting his Back againſt a Crimſon-Cuſheon, and having his Legs croſs-wiſe, according to the *Perſian* Cuſtom: He put his Hands to his Breaſt with a low Inclination of the Head, the higheſt piece of Compliment uſed in *Perſia*, and intreating us to ſit down, (which we could not do without ſome trouble in that poſture) he anſwered our Compliment in a very obliging manner; telling us, among other things, That how deſirous ſoever he was of ſeeing his own Country and Houſe, he had conceived a much greater ſatisfaction at the ſight of our Ship. He added, That he hoped, as ſoon as we were entred *Perſia*, we would be ſenſible of the Difference there was betwixt the roughneſs and barbarity of the *Muſcovites*, and the politeneſs and frankneſs of the *Perſians*; and that after his return thither, he would employ all his Intereſt, to be made our *Mehemander*, or Conductor, on purpoſe to put all the Obligations upon us that were in his Power.

Before we left the Ship, he treated us with a Collation, ſerved up in Plate Vermillion-gilt, conſiſting in Fruits, Grapes, and Piſtacho's dry'd and pickl'd.

After we had drank the Ambaſſadors and ſeveral other Healths, he told us as a Secret at parting, That a *Poliſh* Ambaſſador was come by the way of *Conſtantinople* and *Bagdet* into *Perſia*, and that he was now upon his return, in order to go to the *Muſcovite* Court by the way of *Aſtrachan*, but that the Governor of the laſt place intended to ſtop his Paſſage, till he had received further Orders from Court;

and

1636. and ſo we were diſmiſs'd, and parted, each keeping his courſe.

Septemb. 4. ſeveral *Tartars*, whom *Muſſal* the *Tartarian* Prince had ſent to excuſe his not coming to viſit the Ambaſſadors, came aboard us: Theſe were *Circaſſian Tartars*, and he who appear'd to be the chief of them, was pretty Tall, of an Olive colour, with long, greaſie, and Black Hair, and his Beard of the ſame colour. Over his Garment, he had ſome Black Sheep-skin, the Woolly ſide outwards, a Cap cloſe to his Head, with a very frightful Countenance. The reſt were moſt of the ſame Stamp, having black or brown courſe Cloath Coats about them. We ſent them back well loaden with *Aqua Vitæ*.

By Noon we were advanced as far as the River *Bolloclea*, in the midway betwixt *Kamuſchinka* and *Zariza* 90 *Verſts* diſtant from each; and by Night caſt Anchor 16 *Verſts* further, near a great Sand-Bank, call'd *Strehlae*; upon which we were forced.

Septemb. 5. As ſoon as we had weigh'd Anchor, by the violence of the Current, whilſt we were employed in getting off, the Caravan got before us.

About Noon we came to a place, from whence you have not above a Days Journey to the *Don*, (the *Tanais* of the Ancients) which approaches within 7 Leagues of the *Wolga* on that ſide.

The firſt Branch of the Wolga. Somewhat lower the ſaid *Wolga* ſends forth a Branch to the left, which for a *Verſt* runs to the E. N. E. and then reaſſuming the ſame Courſe with the main River to the S. E. diſcharges it ſelf, by a peculiar Channel, into the *Caſpian Sea*. I found here the Elevation 48 deg. 57 min.

In a Plain about 5 *Verſts* from the River, and 7 from *Zariza*, are yet to be ſeen the Ruines of the once famous City of *Zarofgorod*, i. e. *City Royal*, built, as they ſay, by *Tamerlain*.

The Inhabitants of *Aſtrachan*, fetch from thence abundance of Bricks and Stones to build their Walls, Churches, and Monaſteries: Here a Fiſherman alſo ſold us a *Bicluga*, or White-fiſh, for 50 Pence, which he had taken near our Ship, and knock'd it on the Head with a Mallet. It was not unlike a Sturgeon, but had a wider Mouth, and whiter Fleſh, it was 8 foot long and 4 broad.

Septemb. 6. we overtook the Caravan at *Zariza*, where moſt of their Paſſengers were gone aſhoar, but the Wind being fair, we continued our Courſe.

The City of Zariza. The City of *Zariza*, 350 *Verſts* diſtant from *Saratof*, is ſituate at the bottom of a Hill, on the right ſide of the River, being fortified with 5 Baſtions, and as many Wooden Towers: It has no other Inhabitants but the Garriſon, which is kept here to bridle the *Coſſacks* and *Tartars*, and to ſerve for Convoys up and down the River. I found the Elevation 49 deg. 42 min.

All the Country betwixt *Zariza* and *Aſtrachan* being only Barren Grounds; the laſt is ſupply'd with Wheat from *Caſan* in ſuch plenty, that they buy it cheaper there than at *Muſco*.

Not far below *Zariza*, we paſs'd by the Iſle of *Zerpinske*, where the *Coſſacks* not long before, had ſurprized and Raviſh'd the Wives and Daughters of the Soldiers of the Garriſon of *Zariza*, who keep their Cattle there a Grazing, and ſo ſent them back. This Iſle is 12 *Verſts* long.

Behind this Iſle a ſmall River, which has its riſe in the River *Don*, falls into the *Wolga*, but it is ſcarce Navigable but by ſmall Boats. *Iſaac Maſſa* is the only one of all the Geographers, who has taken notice of it in his Map, and gives it the Name of *Kamous*. We found it as hot here in *September*, as we do in *Germany* in the Dog-days; yet the *Muſcovites* did not look upon it as extraordinary.

Septemb. 7. the Weather being very Tempeſtuous, we advanced but ſlowly, which made the Ambaſſador *Brugman* take this opportunity to ſummon all the Servants of the Embaſſy before him, and to charge them with want of Duty and Reſpect towards him; requiring the Muſicians, Guards, and Footmen to take an Oath of Fidelity to his Perſon. Unto which they anſwered, That he had no reaſon to ſuſpect their Fidelity, and that they were ready to ſacrifice their Lives in his Service; deſiring however, That they might be treated with leſs Rigour than they had been hitherto, which he promiſed, but was but indifferently perform'd.

The ſame Day meeting with a large Boat, in great diſtreſs for Proviſions, which had been taken from them 4 Days before by the *Coſſacks*, we ſupply'd them with a Sack full of pieces of Bread: 40 *Verſts* from *Zariza*, we paſs'd by the Iſle of *Naſſonofska*; and oppoſite to it on the right Hand, a great flat Mountain of the ſame Name, near which is a kind of a Grotto, famous for the Slaughter of a great number of *Muſcovites*, which were ſurprized there by the *Coſſacks*, as they were lying in Ambuſh for them. 1636.

In the Evening a Fiſherman brought us a certain Fiſh, call'd *Tziberika* by the *Muſcovites*; it was near 5 Foot long, with a long and broad Snout like the Bill of a Wild-Drake, the Body full of white and black Spots, like a Tygers-skin, except upon the Belly, which was quite white. It had a more luſcious Taſte than a Salmon. He alſo ſold ſome White-fiſh, of which there are abundance hereabouts.

The 8th, the Caravan we left behind at *Zariza*, overtook us near the Cape of *Popowitska-Jurga*, 70 *Verſts* from the ſaid City, and thence to the Mountain of *Kamnagar*, on the right 40 *Verſts* further.

We were much incommoded with the Sand-banks, till we came to the high Iſland of *Weſomi* which is 20 *Verſts* lower, and 4 in length, lying near a River of the ſame Name, which falls into the *Wolga*, on the right Hand: 30 *Verſts* lower we paſs'd cloſe by the Mouth of the River *Wolodinerski Uſga*; and after with much ado, we had diſentangled our ſelves from thence, we paſs'd by the Country of *Stupin*, 30 *Verſts* from the City of *Tzornogar*, the next City we were to come at.

Ten *Verſts* below the ſaid River, the *Wolga* emits a ſecond Branch to the left, call'd *Achtobeniſma Uſga*, which joyns its Channel with the firſt Branch we mentioned before. About 5 *Verſts* further, the whole Fleet came to an Anchor near the Iſle of *Oſſina*, 7 *Verſts* from *Tzornogar*; ſo that we made 135 *Verſts*, or 27 *German* Leagues that Day. A ſecond Branch of the Wolga.

From hence, as far as *Aſtrachan*, the Country on both ſides of the River, abounds in Liquorice, the Stalks being of the thickneſs of a Man's Arms, and near 4 foot high; the Seed, which is much like Vitch, lies in Cods upon the top of the Stalk. The Champagne Country of *Media*, eſpecially near the River *Arexes*, is alſo full of it, but the Juice much ſweeter, and the Root much bigger than thoſe of *Europe*.

Septemb. 9. a violent Wind carried us by Noon within ſight of the little City of *Tzornogar*, where we ſtay'd.

The City of Tzarnogar. This City, which lies 200 *Verſts* from *Zariza*, was then not built above 9 Years, in this place, the former being ſituate on a Shoar, where there was ill Landing, about half a Leag. hence, and was therefore tranſported to the place where it now ſtands, on a high Shoar on the right ſide of the River. Its Fortifications conſiſt of 8 Wooden-Towers, and a Rampier with thick Planks, fitted only for a Garriſon of 400 or 500 *Streletzes* that are kept there, to ſecure the circumjacent Country againſt the Incurſions of the *Coſſacks* and *Kalmuck Tartars*; for which reaſon 4 Watch-houſes, to wit, one on each corner of the City, are erected upon high Poles, from whence the Centinels may overlook a ſpacious Plain, without the leaſt hindrance. Betwixt this place and *Aſtrachan* no Trees are to be ſeen on the River ſide.

The 10th we left *Tzornogar*, but did not advance above 10 *Verſts*.

About Noon ſome Fiſhermen brought us a Carp weighing 30 Pounds, and ſome other Fiſh they call *Sandates*; they refuſed our Money, becauſe they fiſhed for certain Merchants, who have farm'd this part of the River, but were very glad of a Bottle of *Aqua Vitæ* we gave them for a Preſent.

Septemb. 11. we made 120 *Verſts* with a fair Wind: About Noon we paſs'd by the Mountain *Polowon*, lying half way betwixt *Zariza* and *Aſtrachan*, 250 *Verſts* from each of them.

We ſtay'd all Night near the Iſle of *Kyſſar*, where the Ambaſſador *Brugman* being upon the Guard, and perceiving a Boat coming too near our Ship, cauſed a great Gun to be diſcharged at it, which proved to be a Boat in which the Fellow being got Drunk, was deaf at the Call of our Centinels.

Sept. 12. We ſet Sail early in the Morning with a fair Gale, which ſoon carried us to the Third Branch on the left Hand of the *Wolga*, call'd *Bucu Woſtowa*, which falls into the two precedent; and thence to the Iſle of *Coppono*, which imparts its Name to the Country, which lies oppoſite to it on the right Hand of the River, it is call'd *Copponogar*, and lies 150 *Verſts* from *Aſtrachan*. 20 *Verſts* below it, the *Wolga* emits a Fourth The third and fourth Branch of the Wolga.

1636.

Fourth Branch on the left Hand, call'd *Daniloska Uts*, which has no Communication with the former three, but exonerates it self by a peculiar Chanel into the *Caspian Sea*. 15 *Versts* lower is the small, but pleasant River *Katorinski*, not far from whence we saw amongst the Sands the Carcass of a Boat half rotten, which was cast away there some time before. We lay the same Night as far as the Isle of *Piruski*, 80 Leagues from *Astracan*, having made 100 *Versts* that Day.

Sept. 13. Certain Boatsmen from *Astracan*, came and sold us some delicious Melons, Peaches, and Grapes, the Kernels of the last being as big as Nuts; which surprized us the more, because we were then reading at Morning Prayers, among others the 13th Chapter of *Numbers*, where *Moses* speaks of the Excellency of the Grapes of *Canaan* brought thence by the Spies.

The Fifth Branch of the Wolga.

Much about the same time we found our selves within sight of the Fifth Branch, which the *Wolga* sends forth there; it is call'd *Mituska*, and at some small distance from the main River is subdivided into two other Branches or Chanels; one of which joins with the Fourth Branch, and the other some *Versts* lower is reunited with the *Wolga*. We were told that this was one of the most dangerous Places for robbing, which in some measure we found to be true, having discover'd a good number of *Cossacks* betwixt the little Isles, but at the discharge of our great Guns they disappear'd. 5 *Versts* lower is the last Sand-bank, call'd *Kabangameel*. 5 *Versts* thence, the Promontory of *Kabangengar*; and 5 *Versts* lower, the Isle of *Itziburki*, 50 *Versts* from *Astracan*.

Hereabouts, and at *Astracan*, as far as to the *Caspian Sea*, we saw vast Multitudes of very large wild Geese, or rather Cormorants; of which more in the Description of *Nagaia*.

The 14th being detained by contrary Winds at 80 Feet-water, the *Tartarian* Prince sent us a Present of Beer, Mead, and *Aqua Vitæ*, offering us more if we stood in need of it.

Sept. 15. We pursued our Journey by 4 a-Clock in the Morning with a Fair Wind, and pretty early in the Morning reach'd the Isle of *Busan*, 25 *Versts* from *Astrachan*; and not long after, a Sixth Branch of the River *Wolga*, call'd *Baitzick*, within 15 *Versts* of *Astracan*.

Sixth Branch of the Wolga.

The Plain, which reaches from hence to the City, gave us a fair Prospect of it by 8 in the Morning. 3 *Versts* lower, and 12 from the City, the *Wolga* sends forth a Seventh Branch, call'd *Knilusse*, which makes the Island of *Dolgoi*, in which *Astrachan* is seated; and having compass'd the said Isle, falls into the *Caspian Sea* by several Chanels or *Ostia's*. We came by Noon to *Astracan*, and, as the said City lies on the other side of the *Wolga*, which in that Place divides *Europe* and *Asia*, we may say that at this Instant we were going to leave our own Country, and were making the first Step into the other. This made us salute the City from the midst of the River with a Volley both of all our Great Guns and Small Shot, to the no small Surprize of the Inhabitants, who are not much accustomed to the thund'ring Noise of the Great Guns. And in this Place, I think it not beyond our Scope to give an Account of the Situation of *Astracan*, the Qualities of the Country, and manner of Living of the Inhabitants.

They come to *Astracan*.

An Account of that City.

The Ancient Geographers had not the least Knowledge of these *Tartars*, whom they only mention under the general Names of *Scythians* and *Sarmatians*; tho' it be certain that they differ in Names, Languages, and manner of Life. This makes *Matthias de Michou*, a Physician and Canon of *Cracovia* not without Reason reprehend those, who confound them with the *Getæ*, *Scythæ*, and the *Sarmatæ*, forasmuch as since these *Tartars* have not been known till since the 13th Century. For about the Year 1211. certain *Indian* Lords having kill'd their King, *David*, settled themselves first towards the *Euxine Sea*, near the *Palus Mœotis*, where the Ancient *Getæ* lived, from whence they extended their Conquests, first to the *Don*, and afterwards to the *Wolga*. The same Author distinguishes them into Four different Nations; *viz.* the *Zavolhenses*, *Precopenses*, *Cosanenses*, and *Nohacenses*; and says, they are the *Tartars*, who live along the River *Velha* (*Wolga*) those of *Precop*, those of *Casan*, and those of *Nagaia*, of whom we are to treat at present; it being only our Design to give the Reader an Account of what we have seen in our Travels. We call then *Nagaia* that Part of *Tartary*, which is inclosed betwixt the Rivers *Wolga* and *Jaika*, as far as the *Caspian Sea*, of which *Astracan* is the Capital City, acknowledging a certain *Tartarian* Prince, named *Astra-Can* for its Founder. It is situate in the Isle of *Dolgoi* we mention'd before, to be made by Two Branches of the *Wolga*, upon which this City is situate, contrary to what (*a*) *Herberstein* affirms, That it lies some Days Journey from the River.

And Nagaia.

(*a*) Relation of *Moscovy*.

By the most exact Observations I could make, I found the Elevation of the Pole here to be 26 Degr. 22 Minutes, and the Climate so hot, that in *September* and *October*, the Heats were as excessive here as they are in *Germany* in the midst of the Summer; especially when the Wind blew from the *Wolga*-side, E. or N. E. But when the Wind blew from the Sea, *i. e.* from the South, which we found by our Experience at our Return that way, when we were detained there in *June*, *July*, and *August*, yet were the Heats pretty tolerable, because they were moderated by the cool Sea-Air, which the South-wind brought along with it, as well as the Scent of the Sea, which was not a little inconvenient to us. The Winter lasts here no longer than two Months, but is so exceeding cold, that the River is frozen up, and bears Sledges; which, tho' contradicted by others, the Reader may relie upon as an undoubted Truth.

The Isle of *Dolgoi* is all sandy and barren, producing nothing for the Subsistence of humane Life, except what is brought forth by the Industry of the Inhabitants in their Gardens, and some well cultivated Grounds. The Continent on the Right hand is no less barren, but on the left towards the River *Jaika* are very good Pastures. On this side the *Wolga* is a long Heath, extending 70 *German* Lgs to the West to the *Euxin Sea*, and another of 80 Lgs extending to the South to the *Caspian Sea*; the last of which cost us eleven tedious Days Journeys, at our Return from *Persia*.

The Isle of *Dolgoi*.

The only Thing these Deserts produce are certain Salt-Pits, call'd *Mozakofski*, *Kainkowa*, and *Gwostofski*, by the Inhabitants, being 10, 15, and 30 *Versts* from *Astracan*. These Salt Veins the Sun bakes and causes to swim upon the Surface of the Water of the thickness of a Finger, not unlike our Rock-Crystal; and that in such prodigious Quantities, that for an Half-peny you may take up a *Poude*, or 40 Pound-weight, one Crust being no sooner taken off, but another comes up; It smells like that of *France*. And these Salt Veins are questionless the same, which have misled (*a*) *Petreius* into the Error of his imaginary, inexhaustible Salt-Mountains, he calls *Busin*, and puts them 2 Lgs from *Astracan*; as he is no less erroneous in what he further adds, That *Media*, *Persia*, and *Armenia*, are supply'd with Salt from these Mountains, these Countries abounding in Salt-Marshes of their own, as we shall see anon.

Salt Veins.

(*a*) Hist. of *Muscovy*.

The River betwixt *Astracan*, and the *Caspian Sea*, being an Extent of 12 Lgs, so abounds in Fish, that we bought 12 large Carps for Two-pence, and 200 young Sturgeons for Half-a-Crown: Lobsters are here in infinite numbers, because the *Muscovites* and *Tartars* eat not of them.

Plenty of Fish.

The great multitude of Isles which are hereabouts, afford also an incredible number of all sort of Wild Fowl, especially Wild Geese and Wild Ducks; which the *Tartars* hunt with Falcons and Hawks, in the breeding of which Birds the *Tartars* are great Masters. They are also much addicted to the Sport of Hunting the Wild Boar, the Flesh of which they sell to the *Muscovites*, their Religion not permitting them to eat it.

And Wild Fowl.

The Fruits of *Nagaia* don't give way in Goodness or Beauty to those of *Persia*, especially their Apples, Quinces, Nuts, Peaches, and Melons; but, above all, that kind of Melons, or rather Citruls, by the *Muscovites* call'd *Arpus*, by the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Karpus*, because they are very cooling; and by the *Persians*, *Hinduanes*, because their first Seeds were brought from the *Indies*. They are pleasant both to the Eye and Taste, the Rind being of a lively Green Colour, the Meat of a pale Carnation, and the Seed black; we bought two or three for a Half-peny.

The Fruits of *Nagaia*.

Grapes were but lately introduced here, by the means of some *Persian* Merchants, who brought the first Sets to *Astracan*, and were planted by an old Monk belonging to a Convent in the Suburbs in his Garden. The *Czar* having tasted some of these Grapes, order'd the said Monk 1613. to propagate his Stock with all possible diligence; which he did so effectually, that at the time of our being there, scarce a House in the Town

1636. Town was without its Walks, or Arbors of Vines; which turn'd to such an Advantage to the Owners, that the Master of the House where we lodged, assur'd us, That the Year before, the Vines about his House had yielded no less to him than 100 Crowns; and some Years ago they have planted a Vinyard there, which produced no less than 60 Pipes of excellent Wine in one Year.

The said Monk was still living at our being here: He was a *German* by Birth, out of *Austria*, and being taken Prisoner by the *Turks*, sold into *Muscovy*, where he chang'd his Religion, and turning Monk, was then Superiour of the Convent; and tho' 105 Years old, still remembred some few *German* Words. He was a good humour'd Old Man, and would make us frequent Visits; and, as soon as he had got a Cup or two of *Aqua Vitæ*, would fall a dancing for Mirth.

The *Tartars* of *Nagaia* were formerly govern'd by their own Prince, as well as those of the *Crim* and *Casan*, till they were conquer'd by the *Czar Juan Basilowitz*, who, after the Conquest of *Casan* 1552. also took the City of *Astrachan* by Assault, *Aug.* 1. 1554. and after having forced thence all the *Tartars*, and in their stead settled a Colony of *Muscovites* in the City, which he surrounded with a Stone-wall, and strengthen'd it by other Additional Fortifications, the Great Duke *Michael Federowitz* much enlarged it, by adding that Part, which is call'd *Strelitzagorod*, where the Garrison of *Strelitzes* are quartered. The whole Compass of the City was then 8000 Geometrical Feet; and that side which looks to the River, which there is 2216 Feet broad, affords a goodly Prospect, by reason of the many Turrets and Steeples of Stone, which make a glorious Shew at a distance; but their Houses are generally of Wood, and but indifferently built. We were told that they had an Artillery of 500 Great Brass Pieces of Cannon, besides many Mortars; the Garrison consisted of 9 Regiments of 500 Muskets each, to keep the Neighbouring *Tartars* in awe.

As this City is in a manner the Common Frontier on this side betwixt the two most considerable Parts of the World, not only the *Crim*, *Precopense*, *Bugar*, and *Nagaian Tartars*, but also the *Persians*, *Armenians*, and the *Indians* themselves (who have a peculiar Market assign'd them) drive a considerable Traffick hither, which makes the Customs of this Place, tho' very low, to amount to 25000 Crowns *per Annum*.

The Inhabitants of Nagaia.

The Natives of *Nagaia* are not allow'd to inhabit within the Compass of the City, nor to build any, or to fortifie their Towns and Villages, but are forced to be contented with a Palanka, or Inclosure, with Palisadoes without the City, or else to live in Huts straggling in the open Fields. Their Huts are round, and towards the top like the Chicken-coops in *Germany*, having in the midst a Hole, through which goes out a Stick, having at the End a Piece of coarse Cloth to facilitate the going out of the Smoak, by turning it to the Wind, which they draw in, as soon as the Turf or Cow-dung (their ordinary Fuel) is reduced to a live Coal: They are made either of Bull-Rushes or Canes, and about 12 Feet Diameter. During the cold Season, they cover these Huts with a Covering of coarse Cloth, which keeps the Heat in; and so they pass their time within Doors with their Wives and Children, without scarce ever stirring abroad. In the Summer-time they move from Place to place, according as they meet with the best Pasture for the Feeding of their Cattle; which failing in one Place, they put their Wives and Children, with their Huts and Utensils, upon Carts, Camels, Oxen, and Horses, and so go to another, which is the Reason the *Muscovites* call them *Poloutski*, *i. e.* Vagabonds.

Winter approaching, they all retire about *Astrachan*, where they lodge in Troops at such a distance from one another, that they may be in a condition to assist one another against the *Calmuch Tartars*, otherwise call'd the *Tartars* of *Buchar*, and the *Tartars* near the River *Jaika*; which is also the Reason the *Muscovites* furnish them with Arms in the Winter, which they are obliged to return so soon as the Rivers and Roads are unthaw'd, they being not allow'd to have any Arms either offensive or defensive in the Summer.

These *Tartars*, as well as those of *Dagasthan* (of whom we shall speak anon) are free from all Taxes, but are obliged to serve the *Czar* in his Wars. They have Princes, Commanders, and Judges of their own; but to secure their Allegiance to the *Czar*, some of their Princes are left as Hostages in the Castle of *Astrachan*. 1636.

Their Stature and Clothing.

The *Nagaian*, as well as the *Crim Tartars*, are generally low of Stature inclining to Fat, with large Faces and little Eyes: They are of an Olive-colour, the Men seldom without Wrinkles, like our old Women, little Beards, and the Head shaven. Their Garment is a kind of *Cosaque*, of a coarse, grey Cloth, over which the *Nagaians* commonly wear a kind of a Mantle of black Sheep-skin with the woolly side outward, with a Cap of the same Stuff. Their Women are not unhandsome, and commonly clad in white Linen Cloth, with a kind of a Coif on their Heads, round about which hang a great many *Copees* or *Muscovite* Pence.

They have a Custom of devoting their Children to God, or some *Imam* or Saint; if it be a Girl, she is distinguished from others, by a Ring with a Ruby, Turquoise, or Coral, hanging in her Nostril; if a Boy, he wears it in his right Ear. The same Custom obtains also among the *Persians*. Their Children go all naked, and are Tun-belly'd.

Their Food.

They live upon what their Cattel, their Hunting, and Fishing supplies them with. Their Cattel are very large, like those of *Poland*. Their Sheep, like those of *Persia*, have great fat Tails weighing 20 or 30 Pounds, with hanging Ears, like our Spaniels, and flat Nosed. Their Horses are but small and ill shaped, but strong and hardy. Some Camels they have, but generally with two Bunches on their Backs.

Their ordinary Food is Fish dry'd in the Sun, which they use instead of Bread, tho' they sometimes make Cakes of Meal, Rice, and Millet, and fry them in Oil or Honey. They eat Camels and Horse-Flesh, and their Drink is Water or Milk, but Mares-Milk is in great Esteem among them; with this they treated our Ambassadors.

Their Religion.

They are for the most part *Mahometans* of the *Turkish* Sect: Some also profess the *Muscovite* Religion. They treated us with a great deal of Civility, considering the Constitution of their Country.

Whilst we were busie in providing Necessaries for our Voiage, we were often complemented and presented both by the *Persians* and the *Tartar* Prince; and we no sooner had cast Anchor before the City, but the first sent us all sorts of Fruits, Melons, Apples, Apricocks, Peaches, and Grapes; in lieu of which the Ambassadors regaled them with divers sorts of fine distill'd Waters and Sweat-meats.

The Custom of *Persia* not to come empty handed before Persons of Quality.

The next Day several of the *Persian* Merchants came aboard us, who, according to the Custom of their Country, brought every one a Present of Fruit; and as we were much taken with their frank and civil Behaviour, after we had been so long troubled with Barbarity, we made them so heartily welcome, that some of them fell down drunk upon the Deck, and one was forced to stay with us all night.

The 17th, the *Persian Cupzi* sent us a Present of very fine Rice, and a Vessel of *Garlick* preserv'd after the *Persian* way. Some of his Domesticks who brought the Present, and were Mariners, were surprized at its bigness, and agreed all in this Point, that it would not be fit for the *Caspian Sea*, whereof the high and in a manner contiguous Waves would overwhelm it, unless we took down our Masts. We were not much surprized at their Judgment, considering that their Ships are made like our *European* Bathing Tubs, which scarce take 2 or 3 Foot Water, without Hatches or Pumps, instead of which they use Shovels to cast out the Water. They make use but of one Sail, as well as the *Muscovites*, not knowing what it is to sail with a Side-wind; which is the reason they seldom venture farther than a good Pistol-shot into the Sea. The *Persians* being gone, the Ambassadors sent a large Drinking-Cup, Vermilion gilt, to *Fedor Basilowitz*, the Chief Governor, desiring his Advice concerning our intended Voiage; tho' soon after it was resolved to continue it by Sea.

A Tartar Prince visits the Ambassadors.

Sept. the 19th, we sent our Chaloop a-shore to fetch the *Tartarian* Prince aboard us; he brought besides a Retinue of 40 Persons, another *Tartar* Prince along with him: He was a Person of about 28 Years of Age, of a very good Deportment, fine Countenance, and merry Disposition, being richly clad after the *Muscovite* Fashion. He was received under the Sound of Trumpets, and the Discharge of Three Great Pieces of Ordinance; and, after a stay of two Hours in the Ambassadors Chamber, having taken a view of our Ship, but refused to take any thing of the Collation prepared for him, he was conducted in the same

manner

1636. manner as he came. The *Perſian Cuptzi* having at the Ambaſſadors Invitation promiſed to pay them a Viſit aboard our Veſſel, came accordingly the 21ſt of *September*, in company of a rich *Perſian* Merchant, and a *Priſtaff*. He was received in the ſame manner as the *Tartar* Prince, and treated with a very fine Collation and Muſick; which being ended, they made their Hautboys and Timbrels play ſeveral Tunes. Their Timbrels were made of Earth, the Noiſe of which we could hear, after they were come a good way within the City.

The Cuptzi viſits the Ambaſſadors.

The 22d in the Morning, the Governor having ſent the Ambaſſadors a Preſent of 20 Flitches of Bacon, 12 large Fiſhes dry'd in the Smoak, a Barrel of *Cavayer*, a Tun of Beer, and another of Mead. About Noon, two of the *Poliſh* Ambaſſadors Retinue, the *Cuptzi*, had mentioned to us formerly, came aboard us to complement our Ambaſſadors in the Name of their Maſter, and another Ambaſſador ſent from the *Sophi* of *Perſia* to the King of *Poland*. The *Poliſh* Ambaſſador was a *Jacobin* Friar, named *John de Lucca*; and the *Perſian*, an *Armenian* Biſhop, named *Auguſtinus Baſecius*; and the Perſons ſent to us, two *Capuchins*, one an *Italian*, the other a *Frenchman*.

A Poliſh and Perſian Ambaſſador.

The ſame Day the Ambaſſadors having deſired leave, and ſome Horſes from the Governor, to viſit the *Tartar* Prince, he ſent them very obligingly to the River-ſide the next Day; from whence being conducted to an Apartment prepared for us on purpoſe without the City, and Notice being given to the *Tartar* Prince of the Ambaſſadors Arrival, they walk'd towards his Lodgings, where the Prince received them in the Court, and conducted them into an Apartment richly hung, where they found the *Muſcovite* Envoy *Alexis*, and a *Crim Tartar* Ambaſſador. There was a moſt Noble Collation of Fruits prepared for us, and we had great Plenty of Wine, Beer, Mead, and *Aqua Vitæ*, the Governors Trumpets ſounding all the while. When the *Czar*'s, and his Highneſs our Maſter's Healths were drunk, the Prince preſented the Cup ſtanding, even to our Pages. In the mean time *Alexis*, the *Muſcovite* Envoy, entertain'd us with the Great Qualities of this Prince *Muſſal*, and the extraordinary Rank he bore among the other *Tartar* Princes, as being a Nephew to *Knez Juan Baſilowitz Circaski*, and that his Siſter was to be married to the King of *Perſia*. After the Entertainment, which laſted ſeveral Hours, was over, the Ambaſſadors would have taken a view of the Habitations of the *Tartars* beyond the City; but the *Muſcovite* Guards, according to their wonted Civility, ſhut the Gates againſt them, and ſo obliged us to return aboard our Ship.

The Ambaſſadors viſit the Tartar Prince.

A Piece of Muſcovian Civility.

The 24th, the *Muſcovite* Envoy *Alexis* came to pay the Ambaſſadors a Viſit, and was very magnificently treated at Dinner. This *Muſcovite*, who was about 50 Years of Age, had this Advantage beyond his Countrymen, that he had got ſome Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, and the Mathematicks; which he much improved during our ſtay here, and was arrived to the knowledge of the Uſe of the Aſtrolabe; ſo that when he came to any City, he would take the Elevation of the Pole in the Streets, to the no ſmall ſurprize of his Countrymen.

The 25th, the *Cuptzi* having invited the Ambaſſadors to a Feaſt, he ſent 7 Horſes the 26th, out of which the Ambaſſadors having choſen only two for their own Uſe, and ordered the Gentlemen to walk on foot, they were conducted to a Houſe, which the *Cuptzi* had borrowed from the Governor, for our Entertainment; over againſt which he had hir'd another, where a Scaffold was erected covered with Tapeſtry, for the Conveniency of his Hautboys and Timbrels, who did not ceaſe playing from the time of our coming till our Departure.

The Cuptzi his Feaſt.

The *Cuptzi* met the Ambaſſadors in the Court, from whence he conducted them through two Chambers hung with rich *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Tapeſtry, into a third hung with Gold and Silver Brocadoe.

In all the Chambers we ſaw Tables and Seats placed according to the *European* Faſhion, purpoſely for our Conveniency; the Tables being loaden with all ſorts of Fruits and Preſerves, ſuch as Grapes, Apples, Melons, Peaches, Apricocks, Almonds, Raiſins of the Sun, Kernels of Nuts, Piſtachoes, and ſeveral *Indian* Fruits, preſerved with Sugar and Honey, covered with Sattin or Taffata.

Soon after, the before-mentioned *Perſian* and *Poliſh* Ambaſſadors came in, having over their own Habits the rich Veſtments preſented to them by the King of *Perſia*, and each a Golden Croſs hanging down upon the Breaſt. As they were well vers'd in the *Latin*, *Spaniſh*, *Italian*, and *French* Languages, ſo their Diſcourſe was very welcome and diverting. 1636.

The Feaſt was according to the Cuſtom of *Perſia*, begun with the Fruits and Preſerves; after two hours, the Meat was brought up in great Silver Diſhes, fill'd with Rice of divers Colours; and upon that, ſeveral ſorts of Meat boil'd and roaſted, as Beef, Mutton, Tame Fowl, Wild Ducks, Fiſh, *&c.* well-order'd, and nicely dreſs'd.

As the *Perſians* make no uſe of Knives at Table, ſo their Cooks always cut their Meat ready for Eating in ſmall Pieces. Each Table has a Carver, whoſe Buſineſs is to take the Meat out of the great Diſhes, in which it is brought up, and to fill ſome leſſer ones, with three or four ſorts of Meat, ſo that each Diſh may ſerve 2 or 3 People. Our Drink was Beer, Mead, and *Aqua Vitæ*, of which however there was not much Drink, till towards the latter end of the Feaſt, when the Cups began to go merrily round, and the whole was concluded with a large Veſſel of Porcelane, full of a certain kind of hot, blackiſh Liquor they call *Kahawa*, of which more hereafter.

It muſt be confeſs'd that we were entertain'd with as much Civility, as poſſibly we could have met with in any part of *Europe*; and having thus taken our leave of all there preſent, we retired under the Sound of Trumpets, Hautboys, and Timbrels.

The 27th, the Ambaſſadors, with ſome of their Retinue, took a Walk round the City, towards the Quarters of the *Tartars*, to view their Habitations. We obſerved by the way that they did not thraſh their Corn here, but tread it out by Oxen and Horſes; neither was there any Hut ſo mean but what had its Hawk or Faulcon. In our Return we met one of their *Myrſes* or Princes, who came from Hawking, with his Hawk on his Fiſt, as had all the reſt of his Retinue: He complemented the Ambaſſadors, declaring how ſorry he was not to have been at home to entertain them.

The Tartars great Hawkers.

The ſame Day, the *Muſcovite* Envoy *Alexis Sawinowitz* ſet out in his Voiage into *Perſia*, by the way of the *Caſpian Sea*.

The 28th, the Ambaſſadors were treated with the ſame Magnificence as before, by a certain rich *Perſian* Merchant, named *Noureddin Mahomet*; and the 29th received a Viſit from the *Tartar* Prince, they had met 2 Days before, who preſented them with ſome wild Geeſe he had taken at the ſame time: He would have been very glad the Ambaſſadors would have gone a ſporting with him the next Day, but that the Governor would not give his Conſent.

Sept. the 30th, the ſaid Governor ſent a Preſent of Ginger-bread, and the Juice of Gooſe-berries made into a Paſte or Rolls, being of a ſharp and pleaſant Taſte: The *Muſcovites* uſe it frequently in their Sawces.

October the 1ſt, the Secretary of the Embaſſy, with two other Gentlemen of the Retinue, being order'd to attend the Governor concerning ſome Buſineſs, he received us very favourably, and made me ſit down by him. But before he would give an Anſwer to what was propoſed to him, he made heavy Complaints againſt the ill Conduct of the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, who had uſed very reviling Language to *Rodivon*, our *Priſtaff*, without the leaſt regard to his Quality, as being the Great Duke's Servant; unto whom if he had committed an Error, Complaint ought to have been made upon that Account, or to thoſe who repreſented his Perſon at *Aſtracan*: He added very obligingly, That tho' it was his Duty to make theſe Remonſtrances he would not impute this Miſcarriage to the whole Retinue, but would give us our Diſpatch, which he did accordingly.

In the mean while having provided our ſelves with good ſtore of Biſket and Beer of our own Baking and Brewing, and with 20 fat Oxen and ſome Barrels of Salt-fiſh for the proſecution of our Voyage, we hired, beſides our *Muſcovian* Pilot, certain *Tartars*, who promiſed to go before us in Boats, and to conduct us over the ſhallow Places at the Mouth of the *Wolga* into the main Sea.

Proviſion for their Voyage.

October 10. we left *Aſtracan*, ſteering our Courſe S. and S. W. but before we got a League, were forced by contrary Winds to the Shoar, where we ſtay'd that Day and the next. Here we were viſited by a certain *Tartar* Prince, a Perſon of a graceful Aſpect, who preſented us with a Mutton, and a Barrel of Milk.

They leave Aſtracan.

We

1636. We obſerved that hereabouts, and all along the *Wolga*, the Earth produces abundance of Simples of an exceſſive bigneſs; the Herb *Eſula* grew as high as a Man, and the *Angelica* Root as big as a Man's Arm.

Simples of a vaſt bigneſs.

The 12th we made but a League.

And the 13th no more, being forc'd to come to an Anchor near a little round Mountain 15 *Verſts* from *Aſtracan*, call'd *Tomakoi-gor* by the *Muſcovites*, we gave it the Name of the *Snaky-Mountain*, by reaſon of the many Serpents we ſaw there.

Serpents.

This Mountain was covered with Caper-Trees, and the Herb *Semper-Vivum* of divers kinds, as Sea Houſe-leek. The adjacent Plain, affords the moſt delightful Proſpect in the World, for ſeveral Leagues together.

The 14th we continued our Voyage with a N. N. E. Wind, and in the Afternoon came to a certain Chappel, call'd *Zuantzuk*, 30 *Verſts* from *Aſtracan*, being the beſt Fiſhing-place, belonging to the Convent of the *Trinity* at *Aſtracan*.

The River *Wolga* is hereabouts divided into many Channels, which make ſo many Iſles, all covered with Buſhes, Canes, and Oziers, as indeed is all the Coaſt of the *Caſpian Sea*, as far as the River *Koiſu*.

Among the reſt there is one Iſle 15 *Verſts* from hence, on which is built a Houſe of a conſiderable height, having on the top a Pole with a Sheeps-skull fixt to the end of it: They aſſur'd us, That this was the Sepulchre of a certain *Tartarian* Saint, and that the Inhabitants, as well as the *Perſians*, that paſs that way, kill a Sheep, part of which ſerves for a Sacrifice, the reſt is conſumed at a Feaſt, and the Head put upon the Pole, where it is left till another be put in the place, or fall off of it ſelf. Hence the *Muſcovites* call this place *Taraski Molobitza*, i. e. *The Tartars Sacrifice*. Behind the Iſle, upon an eaſie Aſcent we diſcovered many Huts.

At Night we came within ſight of another Fiſhing-place, fenc'd in, and guarded by 100 *Strelitzes*, 15 *Verſts* from the Sea. Here we ſaw a great many Dog-fiſhes, or Sea-Hounds, and of that kind of Fowl, call'd *Onocratalus* by *Pliny*, with long Beaks, round and flat at the end, like a Spoon beaten out; having taken its Name from the noiſe it makes like an Aſs, by putting its Beak into the Water.

Large Geeſe or Cormorants.

We alſo diſcovered great Numbers of a kind of large Wild-Geeſe, or rather Cormorants: The *Muſcovites* call them *Babbes*, the *Perſians*, *Kuthum*, and the *Moors* of *Guiny*, *Bombu*.

They reſemble Geeſe in all reſpects, except that they are larger than Swans: Their Bills above a foot and a half long, 2 Fingers broad and forked at the end. They have under their Bills a Bag of Skin, which they can contract or extend to ſuch a bigneſs, that it will contain 3 Gallons of Liquor; and this they uſe as a Reſervatory for the Fiſh they take, till they can ſwallow them.

The Ambaſſador *Cruſius* ſhot one of them upon the *Caſpian Sea* ſide, which was 2 Ells and a half betwixt the 2 Extremities of the Wings; and 7 Foot from the Head to the Feet.

Hiſtory of *Mexico*.

Franciſcus Fernandez ſays, That in *Mexico* there are ſome of this kind, that have Teeth within their Bills.

We alſo ſaw a kind of Wild-Ducks, but bigger than ours, and as black as Crows, with long Necks and forked Bills. The *Muſcovites* call them *Braclan*, they never are ſeen but in the Night time, and their Quills are harder and bigger than Crows Quills.

The 15th we reach'd the Mouth of the *Wolga* 12 Leagues from *Aſtracan*, and full of ſmall Iſles covered with Reeds and Canes, which extend 6 Leagues into the Sea, which is the reaſon, ſome have attributed as many Mouths as there are Iſlands hereabouts, to the *Wolga*, tho' it be certain, that they are within the Sea: The worſt is, that the bottom being all muddy with ſhallow Water, not above 4 or 5 Foot deep, which put us to ſo much trouble, that in 7 Days, we ſcarce advanced 4 Leagues. For,

The 18th we got on a Bank of 5 Foot Water, where after we had ſpent ſeveral Hours in getting off, we came to 6 Foot, but ſoon found it was only a Pit, ſurrounded on all ſides with Sands, at 4 and 4 and a half Foot Water, and the Wind turning to the N. W. the Water fell to 3 Foot, ſo that we found our Ship faſtned in the Mud. We unloaded our Proviſions into the *Tartarian* Boats, and work'd Day and Night to get out, but in vain, there being no hopes of relief till the return of the Water, which could not be expected, without the change of the Wind.

1636.

October 21. perceiving that the Waters were encreaſed to 5 Foot, we began to conceive ſome good hopes, and an enſuing Tempeſt from the S. S. E. brought it up to 9 Foot.

The 22d we might now have got out to Sea, had not the violence of the Winds forced us to continue at Anchor 5 Days longer.

The 23d being a clear Morning, I obſerved the riſing of the Sun, which I found, in reſpect of our Compaſs, to riſe 22 Deg. more to the South, than it ſhould; by which I diſcovered, that in this place, the Needle declined 22 Deg. from the N. towards the W.

The 27th the Tempeſt being allay'd, we hoiſed Sail, but were ſcarce got a League at Sea, before we found our ſelves again in the Mud.

But the 28th ſeeing 13 Sail behind us, coming out of the *Wolga*, which we ſuppoſed to be the *Caravan*, we ſent back our *Tartarian* Boat. But this proved only a Convoy of 500 *Strelitzes*, bound for the Garriſon of *Terki*, with the *Tartarian* Prince, and 2 *Perſian* Merchants.

Finding our *Muſcovite* Pilot very ignorant, and the Maps of the *Caſpian Sea* we had brought along with us, utterly falſe, we thought it our ſafeſt way to addreſs our ſelves to the Colonel of the *Strelitzes*, and to deſire him to furniſh us with an able Pilot to conduct us on the *Caſpian Sea*.

He came aboard us, and being very well treated and merry, he promiſed all the Service he was able to do us, and that he would ſend us a Pilot, we might confide in; but no ſooner was he got into his own Ship, but he ſet Sail, and left us in the lurch. After our Arrival at *Terki*, he had the impudence to viſit the Ambaſſadors aboard our Ship; and being charged with the breach of his Word, he laugh'd at it, and gave us for anſwer, *Ja wi nouat*, a fine matter indeed, to ſpeak of.

A *Muſcovite* Slur.

The only thing we had left upon this occaſion, was to try the Civility of the Maſter of the *Perſian* Ship; who, tho' Owner of all the Goods in the Ship, yet came freely aboard us, and having left the Management of his own Ship to his Servants, he return'd to ours, and being a Perſon pretty well vers'd in the Compaſs, much beyond what the *Perſians* generally are, he cauſed the Anchor to be weigh'd about 11 at Night, he ſteer'd his Courſe to the S. with an E. Wind, with 10 Foot Water, but towards Day we had 18 all along the Coaſt, call'd *Suchator*, to our right, which being a concatenation of 4 ſmall Mountains, jet out into the Sea, and make a great Promontory 100 *Verſts* from *Aſtracan*, and 200 to *Terki*.

The civility of a *Perſian*.

The 29th with a fair Gale, we kept on our Courſe to the S. the Wind S. E. And in the Afternoon, with the ſame Wind to the S. W. at 20 Foot Water, and a Gravelly Bottom, full of little Shells; we found the Declin. of the Needle 20 Deg. from N. to W. We could diſcover no Land all that Day, and came to an Anchor by Night.

October 30. we diſcovered immediately after Sunriſing, the Country of *Circaſſia*, which extending all along this Coaſt from the S. W. to the N. E. makes a ſpacious Bay, in the form of a Creſcent. We did all we could to get beyond the Point of the Gulph, but the Wind veering about to the S. E. had infallibly forc'd us into it, had we not caſt Anchor immediately at the Entrance of the Gulph, and 3 Fathom and a half Water, the Bottom a fat Earth, 6 Leagues from *Terki*.

About 20 Fiſherboats which came from *Terki*, to ſell us ſome Fiſh, put us at firſt into ſome fear, imagining they were *Coſſacks*; but coming nearer we ſoon diſcovered who they were, and bought good ſtore of very large Fiſh at 15 Pence a piece of them; moſt of which, had Lobſters and Crabs in their Bellies.

The remainder of the Day was ſpent in giving God Almighty Thanks for his Deliverance the laſt Year on the ſame Day from the danger we were in among the Rocks of *Oeland*. In the mean time our *Perſian* Pilot went aboard his own Veſſel, that was ſomewhat behind us, to give neceſſary Directions, and not only return'd early the next Morning, but alſo ſent a Boat before us, to ſerve as a Guide.

Octob. the 31ſt a thick Miſt and Calm detain'd us till Noon, when the firſt being diſperſed, and the Wind come to the N. we at laſt got the Point with laveering, where continuing an Anchor till after Midnight, we arrived

1636. *November* the 1st. early in the Morning before the City of *Terki*; and by reason of the Shallowness of the Water, cast Anchor a quarter of a League from the Shoar.

It seems the *Cossacks* had a design to Attack us the Night before near the Point, but missing us in the Dark, happened to light upon the small Fleet, which carried the *Tartarian* Prince, and the *Strelitzes*, but the noise of their Fire-Arms soon having given them to understand, that they were mistaken, and expecting nothing but Blows, they retired, but gave them to understand, that their Business was with the *Germans*.

A Rumor of this Attempt having been spread early in the Morning throughout the City of *Terki*, and the noise of our great Guns having increased their fear, because they knew their Prince *Mussal* to be there, occasioned a great Alarm in the place, which was however soon appeased, when the Prince and his Fleet soon after came into the Road, and after a Salute with their Fire-Arms, invited us to honour him with a Visit at his Mothers.

The City of *Terki*. The City of *Terki* is seated about half a League from the Sea-shoar, upon the small River *Timenski*, a Branch of the great River *Bustro*, and facilitates the Communication betwixt the Sea and the City, which has no other Avenues by Land, being surrounded with Fens for a quarter of a League round. For the rest it lies in a spacious Plain, contrary to what is represented by *Nicholas Jansson Visher*, in his Geographical Map, who mistaking the City of *Turku* in the Province of *Dagestan*, for this of *Terki*, has placed it upon a Mountain: The Elevat. of the Pole is here 43 Dg. 23 Min. 60 Lgs distant from *Astracan* by Sea, and 70 by Land, and the last frontier place of the *Czar* on this side. Its length is 2000 Feet, and breadth 800, the Building even to the Towers and Rampires, being of Wood; tho' of late the Great Duke has caused some Fortifications to be erected of Earth, after the modern way, which are well provided with Cannon. The Garrison consisted then of 20000 Men, 500 whereof were appointed for the *Tartar* Prince's Guards.

The Garrison of *Terki*.

The *Circassian Tartars* inhabit on this side of the River, but of them more at large in our return out of *Persia*.

The next Day the *Cuptzi*, and the other *Persian* Merchants sent the Ambassadors a Present of most excellent Fruit, and let them know at the same time, that if they had a mind to Travel by Land, they might take the conveniency of a great Convoy of 200 Camels, and a great number of *Mules*, which were conducting a *Muscovite* Ambassador to the Frontiers of *Dagesthan*, offering to bear them Company in this Journey, to convince them of the sincerity of their Intentions. As this Proposition was well reliss'd by the Ambassadors, so, (after having obtain'd leave from the Governor) they immediately dispatch'd *Rustan* our *Persian* Interpreter to the Frontiers of *Dagesthan*, 6 Leagues from *Terki*, who upon his Arrival found the Camels and Mules already return'd into *Persia*, the Governor having found means to delay his going by several tergiversations, till he had notice of their return into *Persia*, when he sent word to the Ambassadors, That tho' he had no express Orders upon that account from the *Czar*, yet he would not hinder their Passage by Land.

A Mutiny in the Ship. The Night following, a Mutiny happening in our Ship against *Michael Cordes*, the Captain of which, *Anthony Manson*, a Sail-maker, was found the Ring-leader; he was committed to Prison at *Terki*, till our return out of *Persia*.

November 4. being the Ambassador *Brugman*'s Birth-day, was celebrated in the Morning with a Consort of Musick, and a Discharge of the great Guns: And in the Afternoon a certain *Persian* Lord, an Eunuch, who was sent to carry the *Tartar* Prince's Sister into *Persia*, coming to pay a Visit to the Ambassadors, the Day was concluded with making good Cheer, so that the *Persian*, and his Retinue, were sent home well loaden with good Liquor.

A *Persian* Eunuch visits the Ambassadors.

The 5th Mr. *Mandesio*, the Pastor and Secretary of the Embassy, accompany'd by our *Tartarian* and *Persian* Interpreters, were sent to the Governor, to present him a large Vermilion gilt Cup, and his 2 Secretaries, each with a Ruby.

They present the Governor.

They were also ordered to Complement the *Tartar* Prince's Mother, upon the happy return of her Son. The Governor received and entertained us with great Civility and Magnificence, and among other things, speaking of the *Persians*, told us, That they were very liberal in their Promises, but those that believed above one half of it, would find themselves deceived in their Expectation. 1636.

The Reception of the Ambassadors Envoys by the *Tartar* Prince.

The *Tartarian* Prince *Mussal*, received us in Person at the entrance of his Court, with all imaginable Demonstrations of Friendship, and conducted us into a large and lofty Hall, the Walls whereof being of Earth, were so contrived, that you might see on all sides, at an equal distance, a certain number of Niches vaulted, adorned either with rich Beds, with Silk or Cotton Coverlets, or with many Pieces of *Persian* Tapestry, and Coverlets wrought with Gold and Silk, and great Chests covered with the same: Under the Ceiling hung 2 rows of Wooden and Earthen Dishes, and the Pillars which upheld the Structure, were hung with Cymeters, Quivers, and Arrows of the best kind. The Princes Mother sat in a Chair, wrap'd up in a Black Night-Gown, lin'd with Sables; being a Lady of about 45 Years of Age, of a Noble Stature and good Countenance; her Name was *Bika*. Behind on her Neck, she wore an Oxe-bladder blown up to the utmost, wound about with a rich Scarf embroidered with Gold and Silk; and about her Neck she had another Scarf, both ends whereof hung down about her Shoulders.

The Lady that attended her Person, had also an Oxe-bladder, which we afterwards understood to be the Badge of Widowhood. On her right Hand stood her 3 Sons, the 2 youngest of which could not be distinguish'd in their Habits, from the most inconsiderable Persons of the Country, and behind them several Servants, who in their Faces (being torn with their Nails) bore as yet the Marks of Mourning for the Death of her Eldest Son, who had lately been executed at *Musco*. On the left Hand stood several Aged *Tartars*, who were Officers of the Court.

After the Princess had return'd our Complement, a Collation of Fruit was brought in upon a little Table, and Seats for our conveniency; our Drink was Mead and *Aqua Vitæ*. We urged the Princes to sit down with us, but they excused themselves on account of the Custom of the Country, which did not allow them to sit down in their Mothers Presence. The Collation.

After the Collation, the Princess, and the rest there present, having taken particular notice of our Cloaths, the Princess her self, and the 3 Princes each presented to us a large Cup of *Aqua Vitæ*, extracted out of Millet, as strong as Brandy; the Princes did the same to our Servants.

In the mean time we saw on a sudden a Chamber-door opened behind the Princess; at the entrance of which, appear'd several Ladies, and among the rest, the Princess's Daughter, who was betrothed to the *Sophy* of *Persia*; she was about 16 Years of Age, very handsome and of a clear Complexion, unto which the blackness of her Hair added no small lustre.

The Curiosity of the *Tartar* Ladies. These Ladies were so curious to see our Cloaths, that they push'd one another backwards from the Door, which at the first Wink from the Princess, was shut; but they soon opened it again, to take a full view of us; nay, they would needs call in one of our Servants, were infinitely taken with his Cloaths, and made him draw his Sword, in order to view the Blade; but the *Persian* Eunuch happening to come in, the Door was shut immediately, and we took our leave of the Princess and Princes her Sons, in order to take a view of the City, where we met with several young handsome Women, clad only in a kind of Smocks or Frocks, who would stay us, to view our Cloaths.

Novemb. 6. The *Cuptzi* sent us the Governor of *Derbent*'s Answer to his dated at *Astracan*, *Septemb.* 25. in which he ordered him to bring us along with him by Sea, and *Rustan* our Interpreter returning the 7th from the Frontiers of *Dagesthan*, with Advice, That the beforementioned Convoy of Camels, &c. were return'd into *Persia*, it was resolv'd, that we should continue our Voyage by Sea.

The 8th we received a Present of 2 Sheep, 50 Pullets, and several other Provisions from the *Tartarian* Princess: We had also a Present of Beer, Mead, and a Sheep sent us by the High Chancellor of *Muscovy*.

In the Afternoon, Prince *Mussal* came aboard us, to bid us farewel. He brought along with him another *Tartarian Myrze*, a Brother to the Prince of *Tarku*, in *Dagesthan*; his Habit was the same with the rest of the *Tartars*, having a coarse Cloath Cloak over his old Cloaths, his Countenance sufficiently discovered the fierceness of his Nature, and his Behaviour was in all respects

1636. reſpects anſwerable to it, when he perceived us to pay more reſpect to Prince *Muſſal* than himſelf; for he refuſed to ariſe at the drinking of the *Czar*'s Health, as all the reſt did, and when admoniſh'd by *Muſſal*, to conſider what Country he was in: He anſwered, That he knew not whether he had not as much Right to it as the Great Duke, and began to reproach *Muſſal*, That with all his fine Cloaths, he was no more than a Slave; whereas he in Rags as he was, was nevertheleſs a Sovereign Prince, acknowledging no Superior but God, and abſolutely refuſing to drink the *Czar*'s Health at all, went his ways, and his Servants found means to make a Silver Spoon and a Knife to walk along with them.

The fierceneſs of a Tartarian Myrze.

Prince *Muſſal* ſtaid behind for ſome time, and at parting having ask'd the Enlargement of the Mariner Impriſoned at *Terki*, it was freely granted by the Ambaſſadors.

A good while after Night, juſt as we had diſpatch'd our Buſineſs, a Lacquey came to tell us, That the Wind being turn'd fair, our Ship was ready to ſail; we made all the haſte we could, notwithſtanding which, we found her already under Sail, but the Wind ſoon chopping about, forced her to come to an Anchor.

The Governor in the mean while having ſent us a Preſent of 100 Pieces of Hung-Beef, 4 Tuns of Beer, 1 of Mead, a Cask of Wine, and another of Vinegar, beſides 2 Sheep, ſome Cakes of Gingerbread, and ſome other Bread.

The Ambaſſadors leave Terki.

And the Wind turning to the S. W. we ſet ſail the 10th of *November* with Break of Day, directing our Courſe towards *Derbent*.

About Noon we diſcovered a Bark, which hovering about us at a diſtance, the Ambaſſador *Brugman* ordered a great Gun to be fired, which ſoon brought her near us; ſhe proved a Veſſel laden with Fruits, the Maſter whereof happened to be a Brother of our *Perſian* Pilot, and finding him among a ſort of ſtrange People, broke out into moſt horrid Lamentations, thinking both himſelf and his Brother loſt paſt all Reprieve; neither could he be perſwaded to the contrary, till his Brother gave him a circumſtantial account of the reaſon of our coming here, when he took the courage to come into our Ship with a Preſent of Apples, Pears, Quinces, Nuts, *&c.* and beſides this, ſold good ſtore of very good and large Apples to our People, at the rate of a hundred for 4 Pence.

An Iſle of the Caſpian Sea.

Not long after, we came to the Iſle the *Muſcovites* call *Tzetland*, and the *Perſians Tzenzeni*, 8 Leagues from *Terki*, on the left Hand; we came to an Anchor at 3 Fathom and a half Water, and ſtaid 24 Hours according to the Cuſtom of the *Perſians*. The Ambaſſadors went aſhoar to take a view of the Iſland, but met with nothing worth taking notice of, except 3 long Poles ſet up at the point of the Iſle, and faſtned together at the top, intended for a direction to Mariners, and 2 great Ditches or Holes, wherein lately fire had been made, which in all probability had been done by the *Coſſacks*, who infeſt thoſe Parts.

The whole Iſle, which from N. E. to S. E. is 3 Lgs long, is very Barren and Sandy, ſituate under 43 deg. 5 min. elev. If you look from this Iſle to the S. W. you ſee ſuch high Mountains, as are at firſt ſight ſcarce to be diſtinguiſh'd from the Clouds. The Inhabitants of *Circaſſia*, call it the Mountain *Salato*, and is no other than the *Caucaſus* of the Ancients, in the Province of *Colchis*, now call'd *Mengrelia*, famous for the Fable of *Jaſon*'s Golden-Fleece. The vaſt height of this Mountain has furniſh'd them with the fiction of *Prometheus*, having ſtoln the Fire from the Sun. What *Q. Curtius* affirms, *viz.* That it croſſes all *Aſia*, is not altogether without reaſon, it being certain that the Mountains *Ararat* and *Taurus* approach ſo near to it, that it ſeems but one concatenation of 3 Mountains, which extend through *Aſia*, from *Mengrelia* to the *Indies*. From the *Caſpian Sea* towards the *Euxine Sea* and *Aſia* the leſſer, it is near 50 Lgs in breadth.

Mount Caucaſus in Mengrelia.

Mount Ararat.

Mount *Ararat* upon which *Noah*'s Ark reſted, call'd *Meſſina* by the *Armenians*, *Agri* by the *Perſians*, and *Subeitahn* by the *Arabians*, is diſcovered 15 Lgs into the *Caſpian Sea*, being one vaſt black Rock, without any Verdure, and covered on the top with Snow both Summer and Winter, much exceeding in height Mount *Caucaſus* it ſelf. The *Armenians* and *Perſians* are of opinion, that there are ſtill ſome Remnants there of the ſaid Ark, but petrefied by length of time. We were ſhewn a Croſs of a very black and hard Wood at *Scamachy* in *Media*, which they would perſwade us, to have been made of the Wood of the Ark, notwithſtanding it is inacceſſible, by reaſon of the many Precipices, that encompaſs it on all ſides. 1636.

Theſe high Mountains ſerve for a great direction to thoſe that Sail upon the *Caſpian Sea*, according to the ſeveral Proſpects they afford in different places.

The 11th we continued our Voyage, ſteering our Courſe along the Iſle to the S. At the furthermoſt point of this Iſle is a great Sand-bank, which advancing towards that part of the Continent, from whence a Neck of Land, or Promontory jets out into the Sea, makes a narrow and dangerous Streight here, which made us caſt our Anchor, to avoid the Flats or Shallows: We found at firſt but 2 Fathom Water, but ſoon after 6 or 7, and the Wind turning fair, we ſteer'd our Courſe along the Shoar, and in ſight of it S. S. W. towards *Derbent*. The Wind chopping about, we were forc'd to laveer after Midnight, when ſoon after a Tempeſt ariſing, we were glad to come to an Anchor at 12 Fathom Water, and continued thus the 12th, till 9 at Night, when the Wind turning again to the N. we ſteer'd our Courſe to the S. S. E. By 11 at Night we found betwixt 20 and 30 Fathom Water, and by 12 no Bottom. Soon after the Wind turning to an abſolute Tempeſt, we furl'd up our Sails, and letting the Ship go directly before the Wind, we got thus 2 Leagues in leſs than an Hour.

We had 2 Boats, beſides our Shallop, one of which ſerved for the unloading our Ship, upon an occaſion, the other for the ſounding of the depth of the Water. The 2 Boats were ſoon ſwallow'd up by the Waves, and the Shallop follow'd not long after. Our Ship, which was only of Firr, and bore many a Shock upon the Sand-banks of the *Wolga*, opened ſo on all ſides, that we were forced to be without intermiſſion at the Pump. *A violent Tempeſt.*

Novemb. 13. At Break of Day we found our ſelves ſtill in ſight of Land, and diſcovered the Mountain of *Derbent* about 10 Lgs off, and the violence of the Tempeſt being ſomewhat abated, we hoiſted our Sails, with a reſolution to run the Ship a-ground. But as we had taken our Courſe too high the Night before, and the Wind blew ſtill from the N. W. we were forced beyond the City of *Derbent*, along the *Perſian* Coaſt, which there extends from N. to S. being deſtitute of any Road or Harbours, by reaſon of the Rocks which reach 6 Lgs into the Sea.

We made ſhift however to come to an Anchor about 4 in the Afternoon before the Village of *Niaſabath*, call'd by other Authors *Niſeway*, at 4 Fathom Water, but in a bottom ſo Muddy, and ſo rough a Sea, that it ſtood us in no great ſtead, the Hinges of our Rudder being broken ſoon after, and all Hands employed the whole next following Day and Night in emptying our Veſſel, which was almoſt overwhelmed by the Waves.

Next Morning being *Novemb.* 14. the Tempeſt being ſomewhat abated, we began to think of ſaving our ſelves; but being without a Boat or Shallop, and having given all the Signals of Diſtreſs by Great and Small Guns, without any hopes of Relief, we were endeavouring to make up a kind of Flat-bottom'd-Boat of Deal-Boards, when we ſaw 2 Boats ſent by the *Kaucha*, or Judge of the Village, come very ſeaſonably to our Aſſiſtance. Beſides a Preſent of Apples, they Complemented the Ambaſſadors in the Judges Name, exhorting them to convey into the Boats what was moſt valuable, and to go along with them in Perſon, before the Tempeſt reaſſumed its former Vigour, as they feared it would.

The Ambaſſadors get aſhoar.

The Ambaſſadors took their Advice, and having embark'd in the Boats, what was moſt conſiderable, they follow'd themſelves with part of the Retinue, ſome Soldiers and their Officers, leaving the Sieur *Uchteritz*, the Steward, and the Secretary of the Embaſſy in the Ship, with an intention to ſend the ſame Boats back to fetch them, after they were landed themſelves.

The Judge exepected their coming at the Sea-ſide on Horſeback, and alighted and ſent his Horſe for the more convenient Landing of the Ambaſſadors: But ſcarce had they ſet Foot on the *Perſian* Shoar, but the Fury of the Tempeſt encreaſed more and more, and that to ſuch a degree, that it was abſolutely impoſſible to ſend the Boats back, ſo that in an inſtant, we ſaw our ſelves put to the utmoſt hazard of Shipwreck. The worſt of all was, that by the Trees that ſtood near the Sea-ſide, we obſerv'd that our Anchor was looſe, and that we were forced a quarter of a League

1636. from the Place where the Ambassadors landed; whereupon we cast 2 others, but these as well as our Rudder were lost by 11 at Night. All the Hopes we had left was in our biggest Anchor, which held still; but the Ship drawing Water on all sides, and our Pump being become useless, the Seamen who were quite tired out with Watching and Toil, earnestly intreated the Secretary to consent to the cutting of the Rope, which he however refused for that time, either in hopes of change of Weather, or some speedy Relief from the Ambassadors.

But the Wind, which came about to the E. having also turn'd our Main and Mizen-Masts over-board; and the Day slipping away without any further Prospect of Relief, the Captain, Master, and Master's Mate were consulted, whether we had not best to run the Ship aground. They freely confess'd that the Ship could not hold out many Hours longer in this Condition; but at the same time gave manifest Signs of their Fear, that when the Ship should be lost, they might be look'd upon as useless Persons, and consequently have their full Wages disputed; which making them unwilling to consent to the running aground of the Ship, the Sieur *Uchteritz*, and the Secretary, being overcome with the Outcries of the Seamen, who challenged them to appear before the Tribunal of God, if they consented not, gave the said Captain, the Master, and Master's Mate, a Promise of their full Wages in Writing; which done, the Sieur *Uchteritz*, and the Secretary, gave the first Stroke upon the Cable, whose Example being follow'd by the Seamen, we made strait to the Land, and run the Ship aground near the Place where the Ambassadors, and the rest of our Friends expected as with a great deal of Impatience.

The Ship run aground.

We had no great trouble to justifie our Resolution of running her aground, the Ambassador *Brugman* telling us at first sight, that he with his drawn Sword would have forced some of our People to come to our Relief, or otherwise to order the Captain to do as we had done; but could not prevail with any to undertake that Task.

The *Caspian Sea* changes its Name, according to the Provinces, or the Inhabitants that border upon it: Anciently it was call'd, The Sea of *Chosar*, from the eldest Son of *Togarmah*, who was the Son of *Gomer*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, third Son of *Noah*.

The *Caspian* Sea.

(a) *Nubius* calls it the Sea of *Travisthan*, and the *Moors*, *Bohar Corsuin*, a Name they also give to the Gulph of *Arabia*. The *Persians* call it *Kulsum*, as they do also the *Red Sea*. By the *Greek* and *Latin* Authors it is stiled the *Hyrcanian Sea*, as also the *Mare Caspium*, and *Caspianum*. The *Persians* have also given it the Name of the Sea of *Baku*, from the City of *Bakuje*, in the Province of *Schirwan*, and the *Muscovites Gualenskoi-Mare*.

(a) Geograph.

Most of the ancient Geographers, as *Dionysius Afer*, *Pomponius Mela*, *Pliny*, *Solinus* and their followers, as *Strabo*, *Martianus*, *Capella*, St. *Basil* the Great, *Macrobius* and others, have endeavour'd to impose upon the World, in affirming this Sea to be only a Gulph of the Great *Indian*, or *Tartarian* Sea, or that it has a Communication with the *Euxine* Sea, or the *Palus Mæotis*, by the River *Tanais*; contrary to what has been asserted by *Herodotus* and *Aristotle*; *viz.* That the *Caspian Sea* is a Sea by it self, having no Communication with any other; which being agreeable to what hath been confirmed to us by the Inhabitants of *Kilan*, who live upon the E. side of that Sea, puts it beyond all Dispute, that as it is encompass'd on all sides with Land, so it may more justly be call'd the *Mediterranean*, than that which generally is known by that Name.

Is a Sea by it self.

But, on the other hand, what is most surprizing, are the great Numbers of Rivers that disembogue into this Sea, without being known what becomes of them; of which we were sufficiently convinced in our Return from *Persia*, when in 20 Days time we cross'd above 80 great and small Rivers. The most considerable we saw in our way were the *Wolga*, *Araxis*, or *Aras*, which joins with the *Cyrus*, now call'd *Kur*, the *Kistosein*, the *Bustrow*, the *Akjai*, and the *Koisu*. To the N. are the Rivers of *Jaika* and *Jems*; and towards the S. and E. the Rivers *Nios*, the *Oxus*, and the *Aroxontes*, call'd *Tanais* by *Q. Curtius*.

What Rivers disembogue into it.

Notwithstanding this vast Accession of Waters, this Sea is not perceived to be any wise encreased, or not known by what Passages these Waters are dispersed. The *Persians* are of Opinion, that betwixt the Provinces of *Tauristan* and *Mesendan*, near *Ferebath*, these Waters are swallow'd up into a bottomless Gulph, and from thence convey'd to the Mountains. But as, according to this Opinion, the said Gulph must be supposed to be as big as the Sea it self, I am rather inclined to side with those, who urge the same Reason for the discharging of the Waters in the *Caspian Sea*, that is alledged for the Ocean's not overflowing the Earth, tho' an infinite number of Rivers fall into it: To wit, That, besides what is consumed by the Mists, the rest is conveyed by Subterranean Chanels to the Sources of the Fountains and Rivers; being by the way cleansed both of its Filth and Salt, by way of Percolation, which makes the Waters of the Rivers be much more sweet near the Springs, than towards the Sea. Those who have given us an Account of the *Caspian Sea*, make its length 15 Days Journey, and its breadth 8; which may not prove much beyond the Scope, if we suppose the Weather to be calm, and they make use only of their Oars. But, upon this occasion, I must not pass by in silence what Observation I have made, contrary to the Opinion of all the Ancient Geographers, concerning the length of the *Caspian Sea*, which is not from E. to W. as it is set down in those Maps, that have been published since the first Impression of this Relation; but reaches from S. to N. as on the contrary its breadth is from W. to E.

1636.

The length and breadth of the *Caspian* Sea.

And this Opinion, besides my own Observation, is consonant in all respects to the Situation of the Maritime Provinces, according to the Tables of Longitude and Latitude, which I had from the *Persians*, and agrees with the Astronomical Fragments of the Learned Mr. *John Graves*; the true length of the *Caspian Sea*, from the Mouth of the River *Wolga* below *Astracan* to *Ferebath*, in the Province of *Mesenderan*, reaching 8 Dgs of the *Æquator*, or 120 *German* Lgs.; and its breadth from the Province of *Chuaresm*, otherwise call'd *Karragan*, to the Mountains of *Circassia*, or to *Schirwan*, being 6 Dgs or 90 *German* Lgs.

What *Q. Curtius* has observed concerning the *Caspian Sea*, *viz.* That its Waters are fresher than that of the Ocean, must also be look'd upon as a vulgar Error of his time, when the *Romans* had not yet passed the *Euphrates*, no more than their Arms; it being certain, that the Water of this Sea is as salt as any other that ever I could taste, unless it be upon the Coast of *Kilan*, or *Hyrcania*, where, by reason of the mixture of the Waters of a great many Rivers, that fall into it on that side, it is brackish, as it is in several Places on the Coast of *Holland*.; and tho' the loss of our Ship and Chaloop disappointed us in our Hopes of making a more ample Discovery of the *Caspian Sea*, yet this we can affirm for Truth, that it likewise neither ebbs nor flows, as having no Correspondence with the Ocean, and that its Waters are not black as Ink, as (a) *Petreius* would perswade us, and that it is full of Islands, the Water of it being of the same Colour as other Sea-water; and as to the Isles he mentions, tho' the *Tartars*, *Persians*, and *Muscovites* seldom venture far into this Sea, yet upon the most exact Enquiry I could make, they all agree in this Point, that there is but one Island in this Sea, wherein there is, I will not say, either Village or City, but not so much as a House, unless it be in the Isle of *Ensil*, near *Ferebath*, where they have erected a few Huts, not so much for their settled Habitations, as for the Conveniencies of their Pastures, which are very good there. Neither has it any safe Harbours. The Haven betwixt the Isle *Tzenzeni* and the Continent near *Terki*, (we spoke of before) and another on the side of the *Grand Tartary*, near the City of *Minkischlack* (wrongly call'd *Mangustave* by (b) *Jenkison*) deserve the Preference before the rest: Those of *Baku*, *Lenkeran*, and *Ferebath*, as they are none of the worst, being on the other side none of the safest.

The Water Salt.

Neither ebbs nor flows.

(a) History of *Muscovy*.

(b) In his Itinerary.

Q. Curtius likewise mentions an infinite Number of Serpents, which are bred in this Sea: But the Inhabitants of *Kilan* assur'd us, that it was a thing never heard of thereabouts, no more than what is related by (c) *Contarin* of a certain great round Fish, without a Head, of an Ell and an half Diameter, from whence the *Persians* draw an Oil to grease their Camels, and to use in their Lamps; but that they were plentifully furnished with such an oleaginous Liquor from the Mountain of *Barmach*, near the City of *Baku*, from whence incredible Quantities are transported all over the Kingdom.

(c) In his Travels.

'Tis true we saw a certain kind of a Fish, which they call *Naka*, *i. e. Glutton*, with a very short Nose, and the Head as it were within the Belly, with a round Tail, being 7 or 8 Foot in breadth, and as many in length.

This

1636. This as well as the white Fish fastens it self with the Tail to the Fishermens Boats; and, if they be not very careful, overturns them. They catch this Fish with a Hook tied to a great Cord, the Bait being the Liver or Flesh of Beef and Mutton; and this Creature is the only one I know of that deserves the name of a Monster, or *Bellua*, as (*d*) *Pomponius Mela* calls it, of which he says there is such an infinite number in the *Caspian Sea*, that thereby it is chiefly rendred unnavigable. Neither do *Contarin* and (*e*) *Bizarrus* deserve better Credit, when they assure us, that the *Caspian Sea* affords no other Fishes, nothing being more certain, than that there are abundance of *Sturgeons*, *Salmons*, and also a certain kind of *Herrings* in this Sea, besides good store of other Fish, which are numbred among the fresh Water Fishes, such as *Breams* and *Barbels*; but the last are insipid, if they are above 2 Foot long. It produces also a kind of *Trouts*, call'd *Suggath*: These they dry in Smoak; and after they have wrapp'd them in a clean Linen Cloth, broil them in hot Ashes, which makes a very good Dish. Pikes and Eels are not known in *Persia*: Their King farms out the Fishing of the *Caspian Sea*, near the Mouths of the Rivers, from *September* till *April*, during which time there is a Fence of Stalks or small Palisado's made round these Places; but all the rest of the Year every one is at liberty to fish in these Places, as well as in the *Caspian Sea*, at all Times. 1636.

(*d*) In his Geography.

(*e*) His Travels into Persia.

CHAP. V.

The Ambassadors from the Duke of Holstein's *Travels into* Persia.

THAT Part of *Persia* where we were Shipwrack'd, is call'd *Muskur*, Part of the Province of *Schirwan*, (the *Media* of the Ancients) under the Government of *Derbent*, which comprehends from that City to the Province of *Kilan* above 200 Villages. But before we proceed to give you a farther Account of our Travels, it will not be amiss to give the Reader a short Account of the Provinces belonging to the *Persian* Empire, considering especially that most of our Modern Authors have confounded the Names of the Cities and Provinces, taken from the *Greek* and *Latin* Histories, with the Modern.

(*a*) Hist. Lib. 7. The Name of *Persia*.

(*a*) *Herodotus* speaking of the Ambassador *Xerxes*, King of *Persia*, sent to the *Greeks*, tells us, That he pretended to be descended from *Perses*, the Son of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*. According to *Ammianus Marcellinus*, the *Persians* derive their Origin from the *Scythians*; who, as *Pliny* says, call them *Chorsari*. They are stiled *Elamites*, in the Scripture, and they give themselves the Name of *Schai*, thereby to be distinguish'd from the *Turks*, who for the same Reason call themselves *Sunni*. As the *Turks* are ambitious to be call'd *Mussulmans*, so the *Persians* affect the Name of *Kisilbachs*, *i. e. Red-Heads*: Of which more hereafter.

As *Parthia* and *Persia* were beyond all Dispute two distinct Kingdoms, and that the Name of *Persia* was not common to both, till the first was incorporated with the last; so we now comprehend under the Name of *Persia*, all the Provinces annexed to it, either by Conquest or otherwise subject to the *Persian* Empire, which reaches from N. to S. W. from the *Caspian Sea*, to the Gulph of *Persia*, and from E. to W. from the River *Euphrates* (call'd *Moratsu* by the *Turks*) to the City of *Candahar*, upon the Frontiers of the *Indies*. When we make the *Caspian Sea* its Frontier on one side, we comprehend therein one half Part of that Sea, extending along the Mountains of *Armenia*, to the W. as far as the River of *Ruth-Kane Kurkahn* (the *Oxus* of the Ancients) the common Boundary betwixt the *Persians* and the *Usbeques*, or the *Tartars* of *Buchar*, who are for the most part Tributaries to the Kings of *Persia*.

(*b*) Politic. Regia.

(*b*) *Bottero* makes the Extent of *Persia* from N. to S. 18 Degr. whereas from the first City of *Persia*, near the *Caspian Sea*, to the *Persian* Gulph, there are scarce 12 Degr. as is evident not only from the Map we here give of it, but also from that of Mr. *Sanson*'s, and that of Mr. *Graves* lately published in *England*, where you will find the City of *Husum*, call'd *Rescht* by the Inhabitants, within 2 Lgs from the *Caspian Sea* under 37 Degr. and the City of *Ormus*, upon the *Persian* Gulph, at 25 Degr. making no more that 12 in all. It cannot be denied but that its length is above 20 Degr. from the *Euphrates* to the *Indies*; but it must also be consider'd, that 1 Degr. of Longitude under the 37th Degr. of Latitude under which *Persia* lies, consists no more than of 50 Minutes.

The Principal Provinces of the Modern *Persia*, are; *Erak*, *Fars*, *Schirwan*, *Adirbeitzan*, *Kilan*, *Tnabristan* or *Mesenderan*, *Iran* or *Karabag*, *Gieraszan*, *Subustan*, *Sitzestan*, *Kirman*, *Guisistan*, and *Tzisire*, or *Diarbeck*.

The Province of *Erak*.

The Name of *Erak*, or *Hierak*, is common to two different Provinces, in one of which is the City of *Bagdat* or *Babylon*, its Metropolis, and is beyond all question the ancient *Assyria*: But of this we are not to treat here. The Province of *Erak* we are now to speak of, which is also call'd *Erak-atzem*, to distinguish it from the other, call'd *Erakain*, lies in the very Centre of *Persia*, adjoining to the Province of *Fars*, the *Parthia* of the Ancients. Besides the City of *Ispahan*, the Metropolis not only of this Province, but also of the whole Empire, it has the Cities of *Caswin*, *Soltanie*, *Senkan*, *Sawa*, *Kom*, *Kaschan*, *Rhey*, *Schaherrisur*, *Ebbeher*, *Hemedan*, *Dorkasin*, *Theheran*, and *Kulpajan*, at which last Place the best Bows in *Persia* are made.

The Province of *Fars*.

The Province of *Fars* is properly the Ancient *Persia*, of which *Persepolis*, burnt by *Alexander* the Great, was the Capital City; out of the Ruines of which the City of *Schiras*, upon the River *Bendemir* (call'd *Arakis* by *Q. Curtius*) was built. Its other Cities are *Kasirun*, *Bintizan*, *Firusabath*, and *Astar*; as also the little Province, and City of *Lahor*.

The Province of *Schirwan*.

The Province of *Schirwan*, commonly call'd *Servan*, is the same the Ancients call'd *Media Atropacia*, the most Northern Part of the Ancient *Media*. The Chief City of this Province is *Scamachie*, besides which there are *Bakuje*, situate upon the Foot of a Mountain near the *Caspian Sea*, which thereabouts is call'd the Sea of *Baku*: That of *Derbent*, call'd *Pilæ Caspiæ* by the Ancients, which owes its Origin to *Alexander* the Great, who gave it the Name of *Alexandria*, from whence it is to this day call'd by the Inhabitants, *Schacher Junan*, *i. e.* the *City of the Greeks*. The City of *Schabran* in the Country of *Muskur*, near which we were Shipwrack'd: There are also to be seen here the Ruins of the City of *Eres*, or *Aras*, upon the River *Arras*, now call'd *Arisbar*.

The Province of *Iran*.

The Province of *Iran*, call'd *Karabag* by the Inhabitants, is inclosed betwixt the two Famous Rivers of *Aras* and *Kur* (the *Araxes* and *Cyrus* of the Ancients) and comprehends Part of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, now call'd *Armenich* and *Gurtz*, by the *Persians*. This is one of the noblest Provinces of all *Persia*, as producing the greatest Quantity of Silk before any other: It is subdivided into the following Provinces; *Kappan*, *Tzulfa*, *Scabus*, *Sisian*, *Kesbetas*, *Sansebil*, *Ervan* or *Iruan*, *Kergbulag*, *Angustama*, *Aberan*, *Scorgel*, *Saschat*, *Intze*, *Thabak-melek*, *Thomanis*, *Aliget*, and *Tzilder*. Its Principal Cities and Forts are, *Berde*, *Bilagan*, *Skemkur*, *Kentze*, *Berkuschat*, *Nachtschuan*, *Ordebad*, *Bajesied*, *Maku*, *Magasburt*, *Tiflis*, and *Tzilder*. As I had the good Fortune to meet with a very accurate Map, together with an exact Description of this large Province, we will endeavour to find an occasion to speak more at large of it hereafter.

The Province of *Adirbeitzan*.

The Province of *Adirbeitzan*, (commonly called *Adirbajon*, or *Adarbigian* by the *Europeans*) is the most Southerly Part of *Media*, call'd *Media Major* by the Ancients. And considering that the Province of *Kurdestan* is the same which the Ancients call'd *Assyria*, this

1636. this Province may in some measure be call'd the most Northern Part of *Assyria*, since they have their Frontiers common, and in a manner confounded on that side. It borders to the E. upon the Province of *Kilan*; is divided from the Province of *Schirwan* by the Desarts of *Mokan*, and from that of *Karabag*, by the River *Aras*. This Province is also subdivided into many lesser ones, such as *Erschee*, *Meschkin*, *Kermeruth*, *Serab*, *Chalchal*, *Tharumat*, *Suldus*, *Utzan*, &c. Its Chief Cities are *Ardebil* and *Tauris*: The first of which is famous for the Birth of *Schich Sefi*, Author of the *Persian* Sect, whose Tomb, as well as those of several *Persian* Kings, are as yet to be seen here. The City of *Tauris* or *Tabris*, which some affirm to be that of *Gabris* mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and some the Ancient *Ecbatana*, formerly the ordinary Residence of the Kings of *Persia*, is still one of the richest and most populous of that Kingdom, being seated at the Foot of the Mountain *Orontes*, 8 Days Journey from the *Caspian* Sea. The other Cities are, *Merragne*, *Salmas*, *Choi*, *Miane*, *Karniarug*, *Thesu*, *Thel*, and *Tzunster*. *Tzors* and *Urumi* are two Places strongly fortified; the latter of which is famous for the Tomb of *Burla*, the Wife of King *Casan*, which is above 40 Feet long.

The Province of *Kilan*. The Province of *Kilan*, which is encompass'd after the manner of a Crescent, with a Mountain covered with Trees, and watered by many small Rivers, is the same with the Ancient *Hyrcania*, and comprehends now several other Provinces; among which some number that of *Thabristan* or *Mesenderan*, whose Inhabitants were call'd *Mardi* in the time of *Alexander* the Great. The rest are, *Kisilagas*, *Deschtenend*, *Maranku*, *Maschican*, *Lengerkuman*, *Astara*, *Buladi*, *Schigkeran*, *Nokeran*, *Kilikeraa*, *Houc*, *Lemur*, *Disckeran*, *Lissar*, *Tzoulandan*, *Rihk*, *Kesker*, *Resche*, *Lahetzan*, and *Astarabath*, containing 40 Cities, besides a great number of Villages. The Chief Cities are *Astarabath*, the Capital of the Province of that Name; and *Firascu*, where you meet with the finest Turquoises of all *Persia*.

Mesenderan. In *Mesenderan* are *Amul*, *Funkabun*, *Nei*, *Saron*, *Nourketzour*, and the noble and pleasant City of *Ferebath*; having taken its Name from the Word *Ferah*, which signifies Pleasant; the Country hereabouts being call'd by the *Persians*, the Garden of the Kingdom.

Lahetzan. The Principal Cities of *Lahetzan* are, *Lenkern*, *Kutsesbar*, and *Amelekende*. This Province is famous for the Goodness of the Silk it produces. The Province

Resets. of *Resche* has, besides the Capital City of the same Name, those of *Kisma*, *Fumen*, *Tullum*, *Scheft*, *Dilum*, and *Massula*; the last being built upon a Mountain, which contains a great Iron-Mine. This Province abounds also in Walnut-Trees, which furnish all *Persia*

Kesker. with Wood for Dishes. In *Kesker* are, the Cities of *Kesker*, *Scaherruth*, *Kurab*, *Hensheli*, *Dulab*, *Schal*; and, towards the N. *Ruesseru*, *Mumscaker*, *Sengueraszara*, *Houc*, *Choschkaderene*, *Henkelan*, and *Kisilagats*. There are only four Passages leading into the Province of *Kilan*, of which more in the last Book of our Travels, as also of the *Caspian* Gates.

The Province of *Chorasan*. The Province of *Chorasan* (the *Bactriana* of the Ancients) borders to the W. upon *Mesenderan*, and among other Provinces into which it is subdivided, comprehends that of *Heri*, the Capital City of which is *Herat*. This Province is one of the most renown'd of all *Persia*, for its Fertility, vast Extent, and Traffick. The City of *Mesched* otherwise call'd *Thus*, is surrounded with a noble Wall adorned with many fair Structures; and, if we may believe *Texeira*, with 300 Towers distant one from another about a Musquet-shot. Here is also the Tomb of *Iman Risa*, one of the 12 *Persian* Saints, of the Family of *Aly*, which in all respects is not inferiour to that of *Ardebil*. In the Country, near the City of *Nisabur*, is a certain Mountain which produces such excellent Turquoises, that the King does not allow any of them to be sold, but to himself. At *Herath*, the Second City of this Province, is made the best *Persian* Tapestry, where the *Indians* drive a great Trade, as lying in the direct road betwixt *Candahar* and *Ispahan*. The Cities of *Thun*, *Thabeskileki*, and *Thabes-Messinan*, are also very considerable for their Silk Manufactories. All the rest of the Cities, as *Sebsevar*, *Turschis*, *Kain*, *Puschentz*, *Badkis*, *Meru*, *Merwend*, *Tzurtzan*, *Fariab*, *Asurkan*, *Belch*, *Bamian*, *Semkan*, *Thalecan*, and *Sus*, are Places of great Traffick, and very populous: This Province produces also the best Manna in the World.

The Province of *Sablusthan*. The Province of *Sablusthan* lying more to the E. is the same whose Inhabitants are by *Q. Curtius* call'd *Paropamisadæ*, from the Mount *Paropamisus*, a Branch of the Mount *Taurus*; where, according to *Goropius Becanus* his Opinion, *Noah*'s Ark rested after the Deluge. The Cities of this Province are, *Beksabath*, *Meimine*, *Asbe*, *Busi*, and *Sarents*. 1636.

Sitzistan. The Province of *Sitzistan*, otherwise called *Segestan*, *Sagestan*, and *Sistan*, lies Southward from the Province of *Sablustthan*: Its Ancient Inhabitants were call'd *Drangæ*, being surrounded on all sides with high Mountains. It is the Country of *Rustan*, the Principal Hero of the *Persian* Histories and Romances: Its Cities are, *Sistan*, *Chalak*, *Ketz*, &c.

The Province of *Kirman*. The Province of *Kirman* is also one of the greatest of *Persia*, lying betwixt those of *Fars* and *Sitzistan*, and extending to the Sea-Shore, near the Isle of *Ormus*. Tho' the Country be very Mountainous, yet do the Valleys afford such vast Quantities of all sorts of odoriferous Flowers, but especially of Roses, that with the Water thereof a considerable Trade is carried on to *Ispahan*, by a certain kind of People call'd *Lurs*, distinguish'd from the other *Persians* by their Head-dress, being a kind of Coiffure, longer and narrower than the ordinary Turbants, with a Tassel hanging down over the back. This Province also produces a certain Drug, which is accounted a Sovereign Antidote against the Worms, and therefore called *Daru Kirman*, the Word *Kirman* signifying a Worm. Its chief Cities are, *Birsir*, *Bermasir*, *Bem*, *Chabis*, *Tzireft*, *Kamron*, and *Ormus*. *Kamron* is a Sea-Port, whence it is called *Bender*, or *Bender Kamron*. *Ormus*, by the *Persians* call'd *Hormous*, is an Island about 3 Lgs from the Continent; of which two last Places a further Account will be given in Mr. *Mandelslo*'s Travels into the *Indies*. This Province is barren to the N. but very fertile near the Sea-side: It comprehends also the Province of *Mekeran*, wherein are the Cities of *Firh*, *Kitz*, and *Chalak*.

The Province of *Chusistan*. The Province of *Chusistan*, (the *Susiana* of the Ancients) call'd *Elam* by the *Hebrews*, lies betwixt the Province of *Fars* and the River *Dilsel*, the Capital City of which was *Susa*, and is now call'd *Desu*. The Palace of *Susa* stood upon the River *Ulai*, famous for the great Feast made here by K. *Ahasuerus*. Its principal Cities are, *Ahawas*, *Ramchormus*, *Scabur*, *Askar*, and *Arhan*. The Heats are so excessive here on the S. side of the Mountains, that the Inhabitants are forced to leave the Cities, and to retire to the other side.

The Province of *Tzisire*. The Province of *Tzisire*, or *Diarbeck* (the Ancient *Mesopotamia*) is inclosed betwixt the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, which the *Turks* call *Digel*. This being a Frontier Province, is sometimes under the *Turkish*, sometimes under the *Persian* Jurisdiction, this Province commonly following the Fate of either of those two Princes, which of them is Master of *Bagdat* or *Babylon*, and *Mosul*, which some would have to be the Ancient *Nineve*; tho' indeed *Bagdat* is not properly in the Province of *Diarbeck*, but in that of *Erak* or *Eracain*, which has also the Cities of *Wasith*, *Besre*, *Rusa*, and *Medain*.

As it is beyond all Dispute, that *Bagdat* was built out of the Ruins of the Ancient *Babylon*, so nothing is more certain, than that it stands not in the same Place; this being situate upon the River *Tigris*, which falls into *Euphrates*, a Lg below this City, whereas *Babylon* stood upon the *Euphrates*, which, according to *Strabo*, ran thro' it. The *Persians* are of Opinion that the *Babylonians* had their Summer-Houses about the Place where *Bagdat* now stands, which appears not altogether improbable; the Word *Bag* signifying a *Garden*, and *Bagdat* a *Place full of Gardens*.

But it is time to return to our Travels. The Country where we were cast ashore was all Green at the time of our Arrival, and continued thus till the middle of *December*, the Soil being extraordinary fertile in Rice, Wheat, Barley, and Hay, tho' they make but little of the last, unless it be for the Convenience of Travellers, because they keep the Cattle abroad the whole Year round. This Province, as well as that of *Kilan*, produces great store of Vines, which being planted all along the Hedges, are fasten'd to the Trees, and affords vast Quantities of Wild Fowl, especially Pheasants, as also Hares in abundance. They have in those Parts two kinds of Foxes; one is the same with those of *Europe*, call'd *Tulki* by the Inhabitants; the other, call'd *Shakal*, of the same bigness; but having instead of Hair a certain Wool, and white Bellies, their Ears black, and their Tails not so big as our Foxes. They run in the Night-time in Herds about the Villages, and make a doleful Noise.

The Fertility of the Province of *Schirwan*.

The

1636. The Inhabitants make uſe of Buffiers, inſtead of Horſes, and make them draw Wood, or any other thing, like Horſes: They feed them with *Fenugreek*, which they ſow, as we do with Lentils; they cut it green, Herb and Seed together, and ſo give it them to eat. Their Cows Milk produces a Cream of 2 Fingers thick, of which they make a great ſtore of moſt excellent Butter, but make no Cheeſe, except out of Sheeps-Milk.

Their Houſes. The Village of *Niaſabath* lies under the 41 Dg 15 Min. Elev. having not above 15 or 16 poor Houſes ſcatter'd up and down, built of Clay exactly ſquare, with flat Roofs covered with Turfs, ſo that a Man may conveniently walk upon them; this being the way all over the Eaſt; nothing being more frequent in thoſe Parts, than to eat and ſleep on the flat Tops of their Houſes, under Tents erected for that purpoſe for the Coolneſs of the Air. However theſe Houſes we were at firſt lodged in, were handſome enough within, the Floors being covered with Tapeſtry, and we were very civilly entertain'd; but the Village being too ſmall to contain us all, we pitch'd our Tents near the Ambaſſadors Lodgings. The worſt of all was, that we were forc'd to make ſhift with the mouldieſt Scraps of Bread we could pick up out of the Wrack of our Ship, which furniſh'd us with Fuel; and inſtead of Beer, we were forced to be contented with the muddy Water of an adjacent Torrent.

Nov. the 19th, the *Sulthan*, or Governor of *Derbent*, ſent 2 Perſons very well accoutred to complement the Ambaſſadors upon their Arrival in *Perſia*; and, beſides his Letter, brought a Preſent of 2 Horſes, 2 Oxen, 12 Sheep, 20 Pullets, 3 Pitchers of Wine, 1 Pitcher of Water, 2 Paniers of Apples, and 3 Sacks of Wheat-flour.

The Ambaſſador *Brugman*'s Incivility. But the *Sulthan*'s Letter making mention but of one Horſe, and the Ambaſſador *Brugman* finding his not ſo good as the other, would by no means accept of it, notwithſtanding thoſe that brought them, proteſted ſolemnly, that this Miſtake was occaſioned by the Governor's ſuppoſing there had been but one Ambaſſador; but that they underſtanding by the way, that there were two, had brought the other as good as they could find it, as not queſtioning the *Sulthan*'s Intention, that they ſhould do ſo; but notwithſtanding all their Excuſes, the Ambaſſador perſiſted in his Reſolution, and would needs ſend back theſe 2 Perſons without any Preſents, contrary to the Cuſtom both of *Perſia* and *Muſcovy*: All which was ſo highly reſented by the *Sulthan*, that ever after he did us all the ill Offices he could.

The 22d of *Nov.* the Ambaſſadors ſent one of our Retinue, with a *Perſian* Interpreter to *Scamachie* to the *Chan*, or Governor-General of the Province of *Schirwan*, to give notice of our Arrival, and to deſire him to furniſh us with all Neceſſaries for the continuation of our Journey. But the ſaid Governor, having received Intelligence of our Arrival before, had immediately diſpatch'd a *Mehemander*, or Conductor, (who ſupplies the Office of the *Muſcovite Priſtaffs* in *Perſia*) but our People miſs'd him by the way.

Accordingly the ſaid *Mehemander* arrived the 29th of *November*, being ſumptuouſly cloathed, and excellently well mounted, the Harneſs being embroider'd with Gold and Turquoiſes. He complemented the Ambaſſadors in a very handſome and obliging manner, offering his utmoſt Aſſiſtance as long as we ſhould be under his Conduct, which was to be as far as *Scamachie*. We treated him, and his Retinue, with ſome Fruits and *Aqua Vitæ*, and entertain'd him with our Muſick, and the Diſcharge of ſome of our Great Guns; which he took ſo kindly, that, as ſoon as he was returned to his Lodgings, he ſent us a Preſent of 5 Sheep, 3 Pitchers of Wine, and ſome Pomegranates.

Nov. the laſt, the Meſſenger, and the Interpreter, that had been ſent to *Scamachie*, return'd from thence, with Advice that having met with the *Chan* at ſome diſtance from the City, he had given them a very kind Reception, aſſuring them that he had already diſpatcht a *Mehemander*, to conduct and provide for the Ambaſſadors: He told them further, that he underſtood that their Retinue conſiſted of 300 Perſons; but that, if they had twice the number, they ſhould be very welcome, and that he long'd to ſee them: He enquir'd at the ſame time of the Interpreter, concerning the Quality and Temper of the Ambaſſadors, and our manner of Life.

The firſt Effects we felt of the *Sulthan* of *Derbent*'s Diſſatisfaction, was, that having denied us a ſufficient number of Cattle for the proſecution of our Journey, we were forced to ſend back our *Mehemander* to *Scamachie*, to provide us with ſome from thence, and conſequently to ſtay near a Month at the Village of *Niaſabath*. 1636.

The *Perſian Captzi* comes to *Niaſabath*. Much about the ſame time the *Perſian Captzi* we mentioned before, arrived alſo at *Niaſabath*, after having run no ſmall hazards upon the *Caſpian Sea*.

A ſmall Boat with only 5 Perſons in it, being got in there before, *viz.* the 24th of *Nov.* after they had been ſtrugling for 10 Days together, to get aſhore. In the mean time, as the Humourſomeneſs of the Ambaſſador *Brugman* put ſome of our Company under no ſmall Affliction, we made a kind of a Club, and meeting with a kind of a ſmall Peninſula made by a River about a Quarter of a Lg from the Village, we uſed frequently to divert our ſelves there under the Shadow of the Vines, with a Cup of *Aqua Vitæ* and Sack, and ſome Gamon of Bacon, and Neats Tongues.

A Tartar Prince viſits the Ambaſſadors. *Dec.* the 9th, The ſame *Tartar* Prince of *Tarku*, whom we had ſeen near *Terki*, came to pay a Viſit to the Ambaſſadors, in company of his Brother, and a Retinue of 20 Perſons. The next Day he ſent us a Preſent of an Ox, ſome Sheep, and 2 great Paniers of Apples, in lieu of which the Ambaſſadors preſented him with ſome Ells of Cloth and Sattin, a Veſſel of *Aqua Vitæ*, and a Roll of Tabaco, beſides a Barrel of Gun-powder of 80 Pounds, which he moſt earneſtly deſired. But what rejoiced us moſt, was the ſight of our *Mehemander*, who returning the ſame Day from *Scamachie*, brought us the good News, that within 15 Days we ſhould be provided with Cattle and Carriages ſufficient for the Proſecution of our Journey: And accordingly the 12th, ſome Horſes and Camels came to us, the reſt being kept back by the falling of the Snow; which making the Ways ſlippery, the Camels, whoſe Hoofs are not ſo flat as thoſe of other Beaſts, could not travel without a great deal of Hazard, this obliged us to ſtay 10 Days longer; during which Interval, the Ambaſſador *Brugman* committed a great Piece of Indiſcretion, by cauſing ſome Pieces of Timber, that were by the *Sophy*'s Orders brought to the Sea-ſide for the building of Ships, to be cut in Pieces, to make Carriages thereof for our Artillery, notwithſtanding the Remonſtrances of the *Perſians*; who, to be even with us, took Care afterwards to furniſh us with ſo few Horſes, that we were forced to leave theſe Carriages behind us.

Dec. the 21ſt, Two *Mehemanders*, one from *Scamachie*, the other from *Derbent*, brought 40 Camels, 30 Waggons, drawn by Buffiers, and 80 Horſes: But the Baggage being loaden, and ſent before with part of the Retinue, there were but 60 Horſes left for 94 Perſons. The *Mehemander* laid the Fault thereof upon the Governor of *Derbent*, whom we had diſobliged, ſwearing *by the Head of his King*, (the moſt Sacred Oath among the *Perſians*) that this was the reaſon he could not get any more; but that as ſoon as we ſhould come within Limits of the Government of *Scamachie*, we ſhould not want any thing that was neceſſary.

The Ambaſſadors leave *Niaſabath*. Accordingly we left *Niaſabath* the 22d of *Dec.* ſome of the Footmen and Guards being forced to travel on Foot, we took our way to the S. along the *Caſpian Sea*, croſſing that Day 4 ſmall Rivers. The firſt Place we lodg'd at, was a Village call'd *Mordou*, 4 Lgs from *Niaſabath*. The Houſes here were built of *Ozier* and Canes, and round like thoſe of the *Tartars*; we ſpent the Night very ill, for want of Fuel, this Village lying in the midſt of the Fens, from whence it has derived its Name *Mordou*, ſignifying a Fen. The many Springs which are hereabouts, ſend forth their Waters with ſo much Violence, that they never freeze. They are full of Swans, whoſe Down is gathered for the *Sophy*'s Beds.

The *Padars*. The Inhabitants of this Village are call'd *Padars*, uſing a peculiar Dialect, participating both of the *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Languages. They are *Mahometans*, but inclining to the *Turkiſh* Sect, accompany'd with certain odd Superſtitions; among others, they never eat their Meat till it be almoſt cold after it is dreſs'd; and if any one happen to breath, or blow upon it, they caſt it away as impure.

The Ambaſſador *Brugman* having made his Complaint to the Bayly of *Niaſabath* concerning the ill Uſage of the *Sulthan* of *Derbent*, in not providing us with ſufficient Carriages, he excuſed the ſame, alledging that the ſaid *Sulthan* did perhaps not imagine we had ſo much Baggage: And the next Day our *Mehemander* brought us 20 Horſes more; ſo that having left part of our uſeleſs Baggage behind, we got all our People on Horſe-back, and travell'd the next Day 3 Lgs to a very handſome

1636. handsome Village, call'd *Tachouſt*. The 24th having travell'd 3 Lgs further, we came to the Mountain of *Barmach*, where we lodged that Night in a *Caravanſera* or Publick Inn, at the Foot of the Mountain. These *Caravanſera*'s are built within a Day's Journey from one another in the Deſarts of *Perſia*, for the Accommodation of Travellers, who muſt be ſure to bring all their Proviſions and Forage along with them, there being nothing to be met with in them, but bare Walls and Chambers, with a Roof on the top to keep them dry.

They lodge in a Caravanſera.

This *Caravanſera* was an ancient Four-ſquare Structure of about 40 Paces, built of Free-ſtone. Over the Gate were 2 Chambers, where we found certain Inſcriptions in *Hebrew* Letters and Character, but no body in the Company knew what to make of them.

The 25th of *Dec.* after our Morning Devotions, ſome of our Retinue being invited thereunto by the many ſurprizing Relations the *Perſians* gave us of this Mountain, had the Curioſity to go and take a View of it.

The Mountain of *Barmach*.

This Mountain, which by reaſon of its vaſt heighth is ſeen at a great diſtance, lies within a Quarter of a Lg from the *Caſpian Sea*. It has got the Name of *Barmach* from a ſteepy ſtreight Rock, which iſſuing out on the top, looks like a Finger ſtretch'd out above the reſt, *Barmagh* ſignifying a Finger.

We found the Graſs, which was very long upon the Mountain, to be covered with white Froſt, whereas the Weather was very mild and fair below near our *Caravanſera*. At the Foot of the ſaid Rock, upon the Edge of the Mountain is a Plain of about 50 Perches ſquare, in the midſt of which is a large Well faced with Stones, and about the Ruines of a very thick Wall, with certain Towers and Bulwarks at the Corners, ſurrounded with 2 good deep Ditches faced with Free-ſtone, which ſhew them to be the Ruines of ſome very ſtrong Fort. Towards the North-ſide of the Mountain we ſaw the Ruines of another Fort, which facilitating our Aſcent which was cut in the Rocks almoſt to the top, we there ſaw a Vault, and another Structure, which ſeem'd to be intended for a retreating Place after the loſs of the two other ſorts.

The Ruines of two Forts.

I am of Opinion that theſe Fortifications were the *Portæ Caſpiæ*, or *Ferreæ*, mentioned by the ancient *Greek* and *Latin* Hiſtorians: But the *Perſians* ſay, they were built by *Iſcander* (*Alexander*) the Great, and demoliſhed by *Tamerlane*. After we had reſted our ſelves here for ſome time, and gathered ſome Figs off the Trees, which grew out of the Clefts of the Rocks, we got down again by the common Path with much leſs danger than we were got up.

What theſe Forts were.

The 26th we left *Barmach*, the Sun caſting at that time a greater Heat than it does with us in *May*. The Baggage took the Way through the Plain towards *Bakue*, but the Ambaſſadors with the reſt on Horſeback thro' the Mountains, where we ſtaid that Night at the Village of *Chuncan*, 5 Lgs from the *Caravanſera* of *Barmach*. We met here abouts with moſt excellent Fruits and Honey; but the Water was muddy and ſtinking.

Dec. the 27th, we travell'd 5 Lgs further to the Village of *Pyrmaraas*, within 3 Lgs of *Scamachie*, famous for the Sepulchre of one of the *Perſian* Saints, named *Seid-Ibrahim*, which is ſurrounded with Walls, and has two Courts like a Caſtle. Our Ambaſſadors would fain have taken a view of it, but were only permitted to enter the firſt Court, which was full of ſquare Stones ſet up on end, being the Tomb-ſtones of private Perſons. The *Perſians* aſſured us, that *Tamerlane* who deſtroyed every thing elſe that lay in his way, had ſo much Veneration for this Place, that he would not deſtroy this Sepulchre.

The Sepulchre of a Perſian Saint.

Having a more than ordinary Curioſity to ſee if poſſible the ſaid Tomb, I got into the firſt Court, from whence, under pretence of taking ſome Inſcriptions in my Table-Book, I made ſhift to get into the ſecond, where finding many other Inſcriptions, in the copying of which I beſtow'd about half an hour; and perceiving that the *Perſians* took no further notice of me, I ventured to withdraw the Wooden Pin wherewith the Door that leads into the Structure was faſten'd, and got in, where I found many arched Apartments, which had no other Light but what came in through the Windows. In the firſt of theſe Apartments I ſaw a Tomb incloſed within an Iron Grate; it was juſt oppoſite to the Door, of about 2 Foot high, with as many ſteps to get up to it. I ſaw a Door on the left hand, which brought me into a great and very lightſome Gallery, the Walls being very white, and the Floor covered

A Deſcription of it.

1636. with rich Tapeſtry. In another Apartment on the right hand, which was vaulted, I ſaw 8 high Tombs, and through this paſs'd into another Vault, where was the Sepulchre of *Seid-Ibrahim*, the Tomb being 2 Foot above ground covered with a Carpet of yellow Damask. At the Head and Feet, as likewiſe on both ſides, were ſeveral Wax-Candles and Lanthorns, upon braſs Candleſticks, and many Lamps hung down from the Roof of the Vault.

About 2 Muſquet-ſhot from the ſame Village on the Eaſt-ſide, is a very ſumptuous Sepulchre in a Rock, belonging to a certain *Perſian* Saint, named *Tiribabba*, who, as they ſay, was Maſter to *Seid-Ibrahim*. Both theſe Places are famous for the many Pilgrimages which are made thither by the *Perſians*, eſpecially ſince this *Tiribabba* had new Garments beſtow'd upon him, and that the Pieces of the old ones are diſtributed among the Pilgrims, of which the Inhabitants relate ſtrange Miracles, which don't deſerve any Place here.

The Sepulchre of another Saint.

At the Entrance of this Sepulchre, we found this Inſcription in *Arabick* Letters, *Alla muſethi hil chuad*, i. e. *O God, open this Door*. Several Chambers, Niches, and Holes, are cut within the Rock in which the Pilgrims are lodged, and perform their Devotions; ſome of which are ſo high, that they can't get up to them without Ladders of 12 or 15 Foot high.

Three of us made ſhift to get up to the top of the Rock, where we found 4 ſpacious Chambers, and ſeveral Niches within cut in the Rock, to ſerve for Beds. But what moſt ſurpriz'd us was, that in a Vault upon the very top of the Rock we found ſuch abundance of Muſſel-ſhells, and in the Places round about it, that it ſeem'd as if the Rock were made up of Sand and Shells. We ſaw ſeveral of theſe Mountains along the *Caſpian Sea* in our Return out of *Perſia*, of which more hereafter.

Shells in Mountains far from the Sea.

The Inhabitants of the Village of *Pyrmaraas* abſtain from drinking of all ſorts of Wine, for fear of defiling the Holy Place. Near the Sepulchre of *Seid-Ibrahim*, is a great Ciſtern of 52 Foot in length and 20 Foot broad, incloſed with a Wall of Free-ſtone, where the Inhabitants keep their Snow and Ice.

The 29th the *Chan* ſent us word, that we might make our Entry into *Scamachie* that Day; but juſt as we were ready to take Horſe, a Meſſenger arrived from the *Chan* to intreat us to ſtay at *Pyrmaraas* till the next Day: And to ſhew that this was not done out of any ſiniſter Deſign, he ſent us a Preſent of 4 great Pitchers, and 2 Leathern Bags full of Wine, good ſtore of Pomegranates, Apples, Pears, Quinces and Cheſtnuts, and to each of the Ambaſſadors a very fine Horſe, with all Accoutrements. We could not at that time gueſs at the meaning of this delay, but were inform'd afterwards, that it proceeded from the *Chan*'s Aſtrologers, who had told him, that it was no fortunate Day to receive Strangers in.

The Superſtition of the *Perſians*.

The 30th of *Dec.* we got on Horſeback by 8 in the Morning, to make our Entrance into *Scamachie*, which was very noble. Within 2 Lgs of the Place a Meſſenger came to us from the *Chan* to bid us welcome, and to tell us, that the *Chan* would come in Perſon to receive us without the City, and afterwards march in the Front of our Cavalcade. Within a Lg of the City we met with 30 Gentlemen, who having taken a view of us, return'd to the City. Soon after we met with 100 more, who open'd on both ſides, and let us paſs through them.

The Entrance of the Ambaſſadors into *Scamachie*.

About 2 Muſquet-ſhot farther, we met with another Troop of Cavaliers, 12 of which had a peculiar Coiffure about their Heads, and their Turbants pointed at the top, which they call *Takia*, to ſignifie that they are of the Poſterity of their Prophet *Haly*. They ſaluted us with a low Inclination of the Head, and bid us welcome. Theſe having kept us Company for half a Lg, we diſcovered to the Right of us a Body of 500 Horſe; and being told, that the *Chan* and his *Calenter*, or Lieutenant, were among them in Perſon, and that the High Road we were then in, was very dirty near the City, and the open Fields more proper for the Ceremonies uſed at the Reception of Ambaſſadors, we were prevail'd upon to take our way ſtreight towards the *Chan*, who expected our coming upon an Eminency, and advanced towards the Ambaſſadors, as ſoon as he perceived them coming up that way. He had a Guard of 6 Men on his Right hand, arm'd with gilt Bows and Arrows, and as many on his Left, with Muſquets, being beſides theſe attended by a numerous Retinue of Gentlemen on Horſeback, all clad in Garments of *Brocado*, and Mantles and Caps embroider'd

Are met by the *Chan* of *Scamachie*.

1636. der'd with Gold and Silver. Being come near the Ambaſſadors, he took them one after the other by the hand, contrary to the Cuſtom of *Perſia*, and ordering Wine to be pour'd into a Silver Veſſel, drunk to the Ambaſſadors, who pledg'd him twice. The *Calenter* and *Muſcovite* Envoy *Alexis Savinowitz*, who were with the *Chan*, alſo bid us a hearty Welcome, by giving us their Hands.

As we march'd along, both ours and their Muſick led the way, conſiſting in Trumpets, Hautboys, Timbrels, Cornets, Tabours, and a certain kind of braſs *Hautboyes*, call'd *Kerrenai*, not unlike ours, but that they are 8 Foot long, and 2 Foot Diameter at the end, all which ſtanding ſometimes in a Circle, made a confuſed noiſe. We had not march'd far, before the *Chan* order'd a Halt to be made, and drunk to the Ambaſſadors; and whilſt they were pledging him, a Jeſter (whom they call *Tazuſch*) diverted the Company with ſinging and playing with Caſtagnets, and making a thouſand awkard Poſtures.

Within a quarter of a Lg of the City we were met by a Body of 2000 *Armenian* Foot, conſiſting of 5 Regiments, and diſtinguiſh'd one from the other by ſo many Colours faſten'd to the top of a long Pole. Their Muſick were Pipes, and certain other Inſtruments, being 2 braſs Baſons which they ſtruck one againſt the other. They bid us welcome with clapping their Hands for Joy, whilſt others threw their Caps into the Air. Here another halt was made, for the Ambaſſadors to drink once more. At the City-Gate we were received by another Set of Muſick, which joining with the reſt made a very loud Noiſe.

The *Chan* having invited the Ambaſſadors to Supper, would needs make them croſs the Court on Horſeback, to the very entrance of the Lodgings; but the reſt of our Retinue were obliged to alight at the outer Court. The Floors of all the Apartments being cover'd with rich Tapeſtry, the *Perſians* took off their Shooes before they went in; but tho' we were in Riding-boots, we were conducted in without pulling them off, thro' 3 very fair Chambers into a ſumptuous and ſpacious Hall, hung on the Walls with excellent Pieces of painted, naked Poſtures. Round the Fountain which was in the midſt of the Hall, ſtood ſeveral Silver Flaggons and Bottles of Wine to cool, and divers Tables were furniſhed with all ſorts of Conſerves; and oppoſite to the Fountain, Seats were made after the *European* Faſhion to oblige the Ambaſſadors, whom the *Chan* cauſed to ſit down at his right hand, and on his left; but upon the ground the *Calenter*, the *Minatſchim*, or Aſtrologer, his Phyſician, and ſeveral other Perſons of Quality. The Gentlemen, and others belonging to our Retinue, were placed on the Floor, on the other ſide of the Hall. The Muſicians ſtood directly oppoſite to the *Chan*, and continued playing as long as the Feaſt laſted, and near the Door attended ſeveral young luſty Fellows, clad in Garments of *Brocado*, with their Bows and Arrows in a ſhooting Poſture. Every one there preſent ſtood with his Back to the Wall, and his Face towards the *Chan* and Company, a Cuſtom conſtantly obſerved in all Aſſemblies in *Perſia*, not to turn their Backs to one another.

Seats made contrary to Cuſtom

Many little Tables full of Fruits and Conſerves, were brought in, each of which was ſerved to 2 at a time, whilſt 2 Pages were employed in filling Wine round to all the Company. After ſome time theſe were removed, and the like Tables covered with fine painted Callicoe put in their ſtead, to ſerve the Meat upon. About an hour after, the Meat being taken away, ſome other Conſerves were ſerved up again; and theſe Tables being ſoon after taken away again, great Pieces of Linen, which were to be inſtead of a Table-cloth, were ſpread on the Floor upon the Tapeſtry. The Carver came in with a great Wooden Diſh full of a certain thin bak'd Paſte, of 3 Foot in length, and as many in breadth, (they call it *Jucha*) one of which he gave to each of the Company, inſtead of a Napkin. Then the Meat was brought in in great Pewter-diſhes, which being ſet in the middle of the Hall, the *Suffretzi*, or Carver, kneeling down cut it to pieces, and diſpoſed it into little Diſhes, whereof one was ſerved to every one of the Company; each of whom had a *Tulſdan*, or Pot, ſtanding by him to ſpit in, and to put the Bones, Parings, and Cores of Fruits in. The Governor's Palace is ſeated upon the Aſcent of a Hill, whence might be ſeen a vaſt number of Lamps, which, purſuant to the *Chan's* Orders, were put up in all the Houſes throughout the City.

The Service of the Feaſt.

A Napkin to each Perſon.

The Neatneſs of the *Perſians*.

The *Chan*, ambitious to let the Ambaſſadors ſee his Dexterity in Shooting, deſired them to obſerve a certain Lamp that ſtood near them, which he ſtruck out twice ſucceſſively with a Muſquet-ſhot. To conclude the Feaſt, he carried the Ambaſſadors into a Room with a Fire in it, where he entertain'd them again with Conſerves, Wine, and *Aqua Vitæ*; of the laſt of which a certain *Perſian* of Quality took ſo much, that the next day he was found dead in Bed. 1636.

The *Chan* a good Marksman.

A Perſian kills himſelf with drinking.

About Midnight being permitted to withdraw, the *Chan* aſſign'd us our Lodgings among the *Armenians*, becauſe they were Chriſtians; but as they had no notice of it, and our Baggage was not arrived, we had but a very ill Nights Lodging after ſo good a Supper.

Dec. the 31ſt, The *Chan* ſent the Ambaſſadors a Preſent of Wine, Wild Fowl, and other Proviſions, and the *Calenter* appointed us a daily Allowance of 17 Sheep, 20 Pullets, 100 Eggs, a certain Quantity of Salt and Bread, 50 Quarts of Wine, and 20 Burthens of Wood, which we punctually received for ſeveral Days; but as our *Mehemander* was forced to get theſe Proviſions for the greateſt part out of the Neighbouring Villages, it was ſometimes 3 or 4 Days before we could get our Allowance, which putting us to no ſmall Inconvenience, the *Chan* ſent us word, that if we would buy our Proviſions our ſelves, we might be aſſur'd all ſhould be re-imburs'd before our Departure thence; for which reaſon he cauſed it to be proclaim'd by Sound of Trumpet, that all Proviſions ſhould be ſold to the *Frenqui* (ſo they call the *European* Chriſtians) at a reaſonable Rate.

During our abode at *Scamachie*, which was 3 months, whilſt we expected farther Orders from Court, the Governor and *Calenter* did all they could to divert us with Hunting, frequent Viſits, and Preſents they made us of Wine, Wild Fowl, and Fruits.

We began the New Year with the Interment of the *Perſian* Gentleman, who had kill'd himſelf with drinking: Of the Ceremonies of their Funerals, we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak at large hereafter. 1637.

Jan. the 2d, The *Chan* and *Calenter* gave a Viſit to the Ambaſſadors, and brought along with them Conſerves and Wine for a Collation. But the firſt being deſirous to hear our Muſick, he was ſo much pleaſed with it, that he would needs have the Ambaſſadors to ſup with him at the Caſtle, and to carry our Muſick, which conſiſted in a Violin, a Baſe-Viol, a Bandore, and a Voice, along with them. We were entertain'd much in the ſame manner as before, with this difference only, that the *Chan* order'd 27 of his beſt Horſes to be brought out, and caus'd one of the Gentlemen of his Chamber to mount them one after another, and to take ſeveral Turns on them round the Hall, which was covered on the Floor with very rich Tapeſtry.

Jan. the 5th, The *Chan* ſent word to the Ambaſſadors, that if they had an Inclination to ſee the Ceremonies uſed by the *Armenians*, at the Conſecration of the Holy Water, call'd *Chatſcha Schuran*, i. e. the *Baptiſm of the Croſs*, at which he intended to be preſent himſelf, he would order a Place to be kept for them.

The *Armenians* celebrate this Feaſt (and ſo do the *Muſcovites*, and ſome other Chriſtians) upon the 6th of *Jan.* or the Day of *Epiphany*. This was performed without the City, near a Bridge call'd *Puli Amberi*, which began early in the Morning with a Maſs, much with the ſame Ceremonies as the *Roman Catholicks* do in *Europe*. After which, a Sermon was preach'd by their Biſhop, who was come on purpoſe from his Reſidence. The Ambaſſadors Lodgings being near the *Armenian* Chapel, they aſſiſted at both, and were complemented by the Biſhop, who expreſs'd his Joy, at ſeeing *European* Chriſtians of ſuch Eminent Quality in their Aſſembly; adding, that they knew not who he was, but that he would take an Opportunity to acquaint them therewith. He alſo deſired the Ambaſſadors Interceſſion with the Governor, to permit them to finiſh a Monaſtery they had begun, which they promiſed to do.

The *Armenians* bleſs the Water

The Ambaſſadors preſent at this Solemnity.

The *Armenians* having, by Order from the *Chan*, brought us 15 Horſes, we rode to the River-ſide half a Lg from the City, whilſt thoſe poor People, who were flock'd from all Parts thereabouts to the City, went out in Proceſſion with Images, Croſſes, and Banners, under the Guard of a ſtrong Party of Souldiers, to protect them againſt the Inſults of the *Mahometans*. The *Chan* had caus'd a Tent to be pitch'd over againſt the

1637. the Place where the Ceremony was to be performed, very richly furnished, where a sumptuous Collation was order'd to be got ready. On his left hand we found the *Muscovite* Envoy sitting with many other Gentlemen, the right hand being kept for the Ambassadors, and the chiefest of their Retinue. After he had caused us to sit down, he commanded the *Armenians* to begin their Ceremonies, which they did accordingly, by reading at the River-side, whilst 4 Men leap'd in naked, and swum about for some time, to open the Water which was frozen a little. One of our Spaniels happening to leap in after them, this made excellent Sport for the *Persians*, who looking upon a Dog as an unclean Creature, were glad to see their Ceremonies thus defiled, as looking upon those poor People, and their Ceremonies, no better than a Piece of Pageantry; and the *Chan* himself does assist at this Ceremony for no other reason, and affords them his Protection but for the Gain of 1000 Crowns, which he draws yearly by way of Present from their Churches.

The Ceremonies of the Consecration.

After the Bishop had continued reading for an hour, and the Assembly given over singing and playing on the Timbrels, he pour'd a little consecrated Oil into the Water; and after having dip'd in it a Cross, beset with precious Stones, he gave it his Benediction, by holding the Crosier over it. Then you might have seen the *Arminians* running to the River-side, some plunging themselves into it, some to drink, others to sprinkle their Faces; whilst some of the *Chan*'s Domesticks mock'd them, by dashing the Priests and Women, till he commanded them to forbear, tho' at the same time he permitted his Jester and some others to dance, to mock the poor *Armenians*, that danced about their Bishop. The *Chan*'s Physician, an *Arabian* by Birth, a Person of no Religion, had the Impudence to ask the Ambassadors, whether they believed *Jesus Christ* to be the Son of God? Answer was made him, That they believed him to be the True God; but that he acted a very uncivil Part in scoffing at their Religion, concerning which they did not think fit to dispute with him. The Ceremony was concluded by a good Collation, at which the *Chan* drank so plentifully, that finding himself not in a Condition to bear any more, he got on Horseback, and left the Company without bidding them adieu. All the rest of the *Persians* follow'd his Footsteps, which not a little surprized us at that time; but were afterwards inform'd (which we found true by our own Experience) that the *Persians* take this Freedom to go their ways when they have enough, without making the least Excuse to those that have invited them; as on the other hand, those that have invited others, take the same Privilege with their Guests; of which we afterwards saw many Instances, even at the *Schach*'s own Table.

A peculiar Custom of the Persians.

Jan. the 9th, The *Armenian* Bishop, accompany'd by many Priests in their Pontifical Robes, and Wax-Candles in their Hands, came to pay a Visit to the Ambassadors, and brought a Present of 2 Pitchers of Wine, and a Dish of Apples, in the midst of which stood a Wax-Candle lighted. This Visit lasted near 3 hours; and, at parting, they reiterated their former Requests to the Ambassadors, to intercede with the *Chan* for the building of their Church.

The Calenter's Feast.

Jan. the 10th, The *Calenter* having invited the Ambassadors, and all their Retinue to a great Feast, first conducted them through all the Apartments of his Palace, which both in its Buildings and Furnitures much exceeded that of the *Chan*. The Hall where we dined was arched, and done with a certain Plaster-work wrought into Leaves and Branches, from whence there was a very fair Prospect over all the Gardens, which were below it. But what delighted us most, was a Fountain, which issued out of a Gallery on one side of the Hall, and casting it's Water very high into a lower Bason, made a very agreeable noise, being from thence conveyed into another in the midst of the Garden. The *Chan*, with several of his Courtiers, and the Marshal of the *Sophy*'s Court, who was lately come from *Ispahan*, were also present at the Feast, which lasted till night, when we were conducted back to our Lodgings with lighted Torches.

The Ambassadors Presents to the Chan.

Jan. the 18th, Our Steward, Secretary, and Comptroller were sent with the ordinary Presents to the *Chan*; *viz.* 10 Ells of Scarlet, 5 Ells of blue Satin, a Barrel of *Aqua Vitæ*, a Chest with 2 dozen Bottles of all sorts of Spirits, and 2 Pair of Knives with Amber Hafts. As we found him in a very good Humour, we thought this a fit Opportunity to present the Petition of the *Armenians* concerning the building of their Church. He answer'd us very obligingly, that tho' the *Armenians* were never suffer'd to have a Church at *Scamachie* ever since the Establishment of the *Mahometan* Religion there; yet to shew what respect he bore to the Ambassadors, he would not oppose it, and accordingly caused his Orders to be dispatch'd in our Presence. The *Armenians* were so over-joy'd at this good News, that, besides their humble Thanks, they assur'd the Ambassadors that their intended Structure should transmit their Names, and the good Offices they had done them, to Posterity. 1637.

The Chan permits an Armenian Church to be built.

The Express sent by the *Chan* to *Ispahan*, whilst we were yet at *Niasabath*, being return'd, the Ambassadors desired that the Orders of the Court, concerning the Prosecution of their Journey, might be communicated to them. The *Chan* gave for Answer, that he had not received any new Instructions; but that if we desired, we might hear the Letter read, which his Physician, after he had kiss'd it, and put to his Forehead, read accordingly. The Contents of it, as far as he read, were, That the Messenger from the *Sultan* of *Derbent* being arrived before him, who was sent by the *Chan* of *Scamachie*, had brought no other Account but that an Envoy from the *Czar* of *Muscovy* being arrived at *Derbent*, had reported that within a few Days after certain Ambassadors from a Prince of *Germany* were to arrive there: That the *Schach* having received no farther Account of their Arrival, had thought it sufficient to order the Governor of *Derbent* to receive and entertain them kindly, and to furnish them with every thing requisite for the Prosecution of their Journey to *Scamachie*, from whence he expected to hear of their Arrival, upon which he would send his farther Orders. The *Chan* then desired a Catalogue of the Names and Qualities of all our Retinue, and what Professions they were of, especially not to forget to mention our Physician, Chyrurgeon, a Painter, and Musicians; but we thought it sufficient to give them the Names of our People, and what Station they were in, on account of the Embassy; having a shrewd Suspicion that there was something else in the bottom of the Matter. To unfold this Riddle, we got the Express, who had brought this Letter, to our Quarters; and, by the help of a good Cup of Wine, and some small Presents, we drew the Secret out of him, which was this: That the *Chan*'s Brother having been executed lately at *Ispahan*, there was no Body who durst venture to deliver this Letter to the *Sophy*, till after a Months delay one of the Chamberlains having taken the Boldness to lay it at the King's Feet, who had made no answer to it, but order'd another to write, and to let him know, that Orders having been sent already to the *Sultan* of *Derbent*, the Contents thereof we had heard read, there needed no farther Answer to his Letter; but only an express Command to the *Chan*, to cut in pieces all the *Persians* as should offer any Affront to the *Germans*, during their stay in his Government. So that we saw our selves under a necessity of staying till the return of the Messenger the *Chan* was sending to Court.

The Schach's Orders concerning the Ambassadors.

Jan. the 25th, The *Chan*, and the *Muscovite* Envoy, with a great number of Courtiers, gave a Visit to the Ambassadors; but their Lent being begun, they would not participate of the Collation, but after they had heard our Musick they return'd to the Palace.

Jan. the 28th, The *Muscovite* Envoy continu'd his Journey to *Ispahan*, but indifferently satisfy'd with his Entertainment at *Scamachie*; for which he had no other redress, but to revenge himself upon his *Mehemander*, whom he abused upon the least occasion.

The Muscovite Envoy leaves Scamachie.

Feb. the 5th, We went by accident into a great House near the *Bazar*, or Market-place, which by its Structure, and the Nobleness of its Galleries, resembled a College, as we found it afterwards to be one of those Publick Schools, call'd *Mandresa*, of which there are many in *Persia*.

A Persian College.

Whilst we were taking a view of the Buildings, and saw some walking, others sitting with Books in their hands, one of their *Maderis*, or Regents, who read Publick Lectures, coming up with us, and finding upon my Cane engraven these Words in Arabick, *Bismi alla, ruhman rachim*, i. e. *in the Name of the merciful God who sheweth Mercy* (a Sentence the *Persians* generally put at the beginning of their Writings) he desired me to present him with it, promising me a better the next day; which I refusing, he cut out the Word *Alla*, i. e. *God*, in their Language, which he put into a clean Paper, telling me, That the Name of God ought not to be put upon a Walking-stick.

The

1637. The next Day intending to go to the ſame College, I cauſed a very fair Celeſtial Globe to be brought along with me; but by miſtake happen'd to come into another, where I was very civilly receiv'd by the Profeſſors, Regents, and Students, and much admired my Globe, and to find that Aſtronomy and the Mathematicks in general flouriſh'd better in *Europe* than in *Perſia*, where they were ignorant as yet of the uſe of the Globe, but only make uſe of an Aſtrolabe for the Inſtruction of their Students. They could however name all the Signs of the *Zodiack*, and gave me to underſtand, that they were not unacquainted with the Names of moſt of the other Stars.

A Perſian School for Children.

At another time, I had the Curioſity to go into a *Metzid*, or Church, near our Quarters, where they inſtruct their Children. The young Scholars ſate all round againſt the Wall, the *Mollah*, or School-Maſter, with ſome other aged Perſons, ſitting only in the midſt of the Hall, whither they invited me alſo, as ſoon as they ſaw me come in. The *Mollah* permitted me to turn over the *Alcoran* he had in his hands; which done, he took it back, and kiſs'd it, and offered it alſo to me to kiſs it, which I refuſing, and kiſſing another inſtead of it, which I held in my hand, he told me with a Smile I had done very well. I ſaw here among the reſt a certain Aſtrologer near 65 years of Age, named *Chalil*, who reading *Euclid* to his Diſciples, I knew the Book by the Figures, and having made ſome Demonſtrations, as well as I could expreſs my ſelf, the old Man was ſo taken with me, that he pull'd out his braſs Aſtrolabe, and ask'd me, whether ever I had ſeen the like, or knew the uſe of it? I had no ſooner told him, yes, and that I had one at my Lodgings, but he was ſo urgent with me to ſee it, that I went home to fetch it, and brought the Globe along with him. They were much ſurprized to ſee it, and much more, when they underſtood that I had made it my ſelf; and being deſirous to ſee how I could divide the Dgs with ſo much Exactneſs, in regard they have no Inſtruments fit for that purpoſe, I ſhew'd him, how, without much trouble, he might attain thereto. He was ſo well ſatisfy'd therewith, that for ever after he gave me all the poſſible demonſtrations of a real Friendſhip, and frequently viſited me, and gave me the Long. and Lat. of the chief Cities of all *Aſia*, which I compared with my own Obſervations, and found very exact.

The *Mollah*, or Maſter of the School, being a young but very good natur'd Man, would alſo often viſit me, and was very inſtrumental in aſſiſting me in my Study of the *Arabian* Tongue. He alſo brought me acquainted with one *Imanculi*, a Captain of a Troop of Horſe, and theſe two uſed to come every day alternatively, to teach me their Language, and to learn mine; in which they made ſuch Improvements, that in a ſhort time they would have attain'd to the knowledge of it, had it not been for the Malice of certain Perſons of our Retinue, who rend'ring them ſuſpected as if they had a Mind to change their Religion, they were forc'd ever after to make moſt of their Viſits by Night. One Day, *viz. Feb.* the 11th, being at the School to hear a Leſſon in the *Arabian* Tongue, a certain *Perſian* Servant came to tell the Maſter from the *Chan*, that it was his beſt courſe not to ſuffer Chriſtians to come into their Temple. The *Mollah* was at firſt a little ſurprized, but recollecting himſelf, that the *Perſians* were not forbidden the Converſation with Chriſtians, he took the Servant aſide, who ſoon confeſs'd, that he was ſent only by our Interpreter. Not long after, a difference ariſing between the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, and our Interpreter, the laſt acknowledged that it was by his Order, he had ſent the ſaid Servant, to hinder my Study of the Language.

An *Auſtin* Friar viſits the Ambaſſadors.

Feb. the 7th, A certain *Roman Catholick* Monk, named *Ambroſio dos Anios*, a *Portugueſe* by Birth, came to viſit the Ambaſſadors: He told them, that he came from *Teflis* in *Georgia*, 10 Days Journey from *Scamachie*, where he ſaid he was Prior of a Convent of the Order of St. *Auſtin*; where having underſtood, that a Potent Prince of *Germany* was ſending a ſolemn Embaſſy into *Perſia*, he had undertaken this Journey to wait on them, which he hoped would not be unacceptable to them; offering his Service in any thing that lay in his Power, in reſpect of their Negotiation, or otherwiſe, as having been 27 Years in that Kingdom.

We were at firſt ſomewhat ſhy of him; but after ſome Converſation, finding him honeſt in his Dealings, we made no further ſcruple to truſt him; and as, beſides the *Portugueſe*, he underſtood the *Georgian*, *Turkiſh*, and *Perſian* Languages, he did us conſiderable Service, eſpecially to my ſelf, in attaining the laſt of theſe Languages. 1637.

About this time, many of our People who had drunk too greedily of the ſtrong *Perſian* Wines, after they had been forced to be contented with Water for a conſiderable time before, fell ill of a burning Fever; but by the Care of our Phyſician, of 22 that kept their Beds at a time, not one died.

A Feaſt in memory of *Haly*.

The ſame Day, being the 21ſt Day of *Rameſan* of the *Perſians*, they celebrated their *Auſchur*, or Feaſt, in memory of their Great Patron *Haly*, which was perform'd in a Houſe built for that purpoſe without the City. Oppoſite to the Gallery, in which were the *Chan*, the *Calenter*, and other chief Courtiers, an open Chair of 8 Foot high was placed, under a kind of a Linen Canopy, for the *Chatib* or Prelate, who appear'd in a blue Garment, the Mourning Colour of the *Perſians*. He read for 2 whole hours in a Book they call *Machtelnama*, which treats of the Life and memorable Actions of *Haly*, ſinging with a loud and doleful, yet intelligible Voice without intermiſſion, except when he came to ſome extraordinary Paſſage, or Moral Sentence, whereof he ſaid only the firſt Word, the reſt being ſung by the Prieſts, that attended in great numbers about the Chair: One of whom at the end of every ſuch Paſſage, cry'd out, *Luanet Chudai ber kuſchendi Haly bad*, i. e. *God's Curſe on him who kill'd* Haly: Whereto the whole Aſſembly anſwered, *Biſch bad kem bad*, i. e. *rather more than leſs*. When he comes to that Paſſage where *Haly* tells his Children, that he ſhall not live long, and prophecies by whom he is to be kill'd, the *Perſians* begin to weep and ſob, as they alſo do, when he deſcribes to them the manner how he was kill'd in the Temple. So ſoon as the *Chatib* has given over, the *Chan* ſends him a Silk Garment, which he puts on, and then the Proceſſion begins, in which were conducted three Camels, carrying 3 Coffins covered with black Cloth, which repreſent thoſe of *Haly*, and his 2 Sons, *Haſſan* and *Hoſſein*. Theſe were follow'd by 2 Cheſts cover'd with blue Cloth, full of the ſpiritual Treatiſes written by *Haly*. Then came 2 very fine Horſes, having on the Pomels of the Saddles, and upon the Saddles, ſeveral Bows, Arrows, Turbants, and Flags. After theſe you ſee a ſingle Man carrying on the top of a long Pole a kind of a Tower, unto which were faſten'd 4 Cymitars; but ſo cover'd with Ribbons, and other Toys, that they could ſcarce be diſcern'd. In the Rere came many Men with little Boxes on their Heads, covered with Feathers and Flowers, in which the *Alcoran* lay open, dancing and leaping in cadence to a certain doleful Muſick of *Hautboyes*, Timbrels, Flageolets, and Tabers; whilſt on the other ſide many Boys danc'd and ſung together, clapping one another upon the ſhoulders, and crying, *Heder, Heder*, which is the Name of *Haly*, *Haſſan*, and *Hoſſein*, and ſo they march to the City. This Feaſt is celebrated the ſame Day all over *Perſia*; but *Mahomet*, their Great Prophet, has no peculiar Feſtival.

The Dreſs of a Perſian Preſlate.

The Proceſſion.

The 14th of *Feb.* being the New Moon, the Lent of the *Perſians* ended; which began the 16th of *Jan.* their firſt of *Rameſan*; but it happening to be upon a *Friday*, the Eve of their Sabbath, their Eccleſiaſticks thought fit to continue the Faſt till that day. The next day after, the *Chan* made a magnificent Entertainment for all the Court, at which the Ambaſſadors were alſo preſent.

The *Chan* entertains the Ambaſſadors.

The 27th, The Meſſenger ſent the 21ſt to *Iſpahan*, returning with Orders for our Departure; we were ſo rejoiced thereat, that we had a mind to divert our ſelves with Hunting. The *Chan* being prevented by ſome extraordinary buſineſs, could not go along with us, but ſent us his Huntſman, his Hounds, and Hawks, and among the reſt a Leopard, ſo well taught, that he would ſtart and take a Hare as well as a Grey-hound, and was as much at Command as a ſetting Dog, leaping up behind the Perſon who had the Management of him. The *Chan* had in the mean time cauſed a ſumptuous Collation to be got ready for us in his Garden without the City; but the Meſſenger, who was ſent to invite us, miſſing his way, we alſo miſs'd the Entertainment.

Receive Orders to depart.

The 1ſt of *March*, the *Perſians* celebrated another Feaſt, call'd *Chumniehater*, in memory of the Day when *Haly* took poſſeſſion of the Eſtate of his Couſin and Father-in-Law *Mahomet*. The *Chan* treated the Ambaſſadors that Day under a Tent, near the River-ſide: They had the Divertiſement of ſeveral ſorts of Dancing; and, among the reſt, a Youth play'd excellently well upon 2 little Cimbals, and danc'd to them with a great

Another Feaſt.

1637. great deal of Exactness; and an *Arabian* Moor leap'd and danc'd betwixt the Porcelane Dishes, in which the Meat was brought up, with such Nicety, that he did not touch one of them. The *Chan* being also in a humour to shew us a Trial of his Skill at the Bow, caused one of those Rings wherewith the *Persians* bend their Bows, and commonly wear them upon their Thumbs, to be fasten'd to a Horse's Hair, which being held by a Boy at above six Paces distance, he cut it twice one after another with his Arrow. He also shot with a Firelock an Apple, which was cast up into the Air.

After an Entertainment of 6 hours, we return'd to the City, when some of the *Persian* Officers would give us a Trial of the Swiftness of their Horses in a spacious Plain. It must be confess'd that it was most surprizing to me, no *English* Horse being to be compared with them upon this account; but this is all the *Persians* teach them. Tho' in their Engagements on Horseback, of which they gave us the Divertisement at the same time, they shew'd a most surprizing Activity in casting their Switches instead of Javelins, catching them in their hands when they were cast at them, and returning them upon those who pursued them with full speed. The *Chan*'s Master of the Horse carry'd the Bell before all the rest.

Another Festival. The 3d of *March*, the *Persians* celebrated the Feast, call'd *Tzar Schembesur*, *i. e.* the *Fourth sad Sabbath*, being the next *Wednesday* before the Vernal Equinox, by which they begin their Year, and look upon this *Wednesday* as the most unfortunate of the whole Year; which is the reason they don't do any business that Day, they keep their Shops shut, will not swear, no not so much as make a Debauch, but above all the rest are cautious not to pay any Money that day. Some do nothing but tell their Money at home, others go to the River-side, without speaking one word by the way, to fetch Water from thence to sprinkle their Houses; and if they meet with a particular Friend, they wish well to, they cast Water upon them, which they say diverts the Misfortune that is like to befal them. They have many such like Fopperies more, which however end by noon, after which they return to their ordinary Exercises. Some will have this Festival to be celebrated by the *Persians*, in commemoration of St. *John*'s Baptism; and thus much is certain, that the *Persians* have a Veneration for that Saint; and that, even to this day, they go on Pilgrimage to his Sepulchre at *Damas*, which may perhaps have been the first Origin of the Institution of this Feast; but the same is now quite lost.

The Persian New-year's day. *March* the 10th, the 20th according to our Stile, (the Author meaning in all Places the old) they celebrated their *Nauras*, or first day of the Year, with great Solemnity; of which we shall speak more at large hereafter.

The Ambassadors having sent some of us to complement the *Chan* upon this occasion, we found him sitting with his Astrologer at a Table, who rising ever and anon to observe the Sun, at the very moment it came to the *Equator*, caused the beginning thereof to be celebrated by the Discharge of some of the great Guns, both from the Castle and City-Walls, and a Consort of Musick of all sorts of Instruments. Opposite to the *Chan*, sat one of their Orators, or rather a Mimick, who with very awkard Gestures extoll'd the Victories of the *Persian* Kings over the *Turks*, *Usbeques*, and other Enemies. The Day was concluded with a merry Entertainment, at which we that were sent to complement him were present, the *Chan* inviting us to sit down at Table with him: And the next Day, the Ambassadors were invited to another great Feast, where also the *Portuguese* Monk was present.

March the 20th, The *Chan*, in company of the *Calenter*, came to take his leave of the Ambassadors, he being to take a Journey, and not likely to return before our Departure. But his *Hakim*, or Physician, pretending to some Skill in Astrology, having observed the Sky, told him that it was no lucky hour to enter into the Ambassadors Lodgings, they fell a drinking plentifully in the Court. When the *Chan* taking particular notice of one of the Ambassador *Crusius*'s Pages, a very handsome Lad, he ask'd the Physician, whether he were not a very fine Boy, and that he wish'd he were his Son. Upon which the Physician fell to consulting the Heavens again; tho' it was neither Night, nor a clear Sky; and told the *Chan*, that if by viewing the Boy again, he could imprint a stedfast *Idea* of him in his Imagination, and immediately went to enjoy a Woman, he might infallibly get such another handsome Boy. Which he and the Company believing, after he had once more view'd the Boy, he got on Horse-back immediately, and departed. 1637.

There was at that time a certain Slave at *Scamachie*, a *Muscovite* by Birth, but being sold in his Youth into *Persia*, was circumcised; who growing familiar with some of our Retinue that could speak his Native Tongue, inform'd them that our *Persian* Interpreter, whose Name was *George Rustan*, had lately writ unto his Friends at *Ispahan*, that, notwithstanding his long Abode among the *Christians*, he had not abandon'd *Mahometism*; of which he would give them further Proof before long. This *Rustan*, who was a *Persian* by Birth, and coming into *England* had been baptized there, from whence he went into *Muscovy* with the *English* Resident, who was his Godfather; and hearing we were to go into *Persia*, he interceeded with the Resident, to recommend him to us in the Quality of an Interpreter, under pretence that he had some private Affairs to look after in *Persia*. Having by his own hand-writing engaged himself to come back with us, we took him along with us; but he no sooner came to *Ardebil*, but he went to the Sepulchre of their great Saint *Schich-Sefi*, where he did his Devotions as a *Mahometan*; and having got a Certificate for his so doing, went along with us to *Ispahan*, where we secured him; but having made his Escape, he got to a Sanctuary, call'd *Alla-Capi*, and put himself under the King's Protection. Our Persian Interpreter, a Renegado.

March 22. Father *Ambrosio* took leave of the Ambassadors, in order to his Return into *Georgia*.

March the 24th, The *Chan* of *Scamachie* sent away the usual New-year's Gift to the King, *viz.* some very fine Horses richly harness'd, some Camels laden with *Russian* Leather, several rich Stuffs, 30 Bags full of Swans-down, and a great number of handsome Boys and Girls. The *Chan* having taken this Opportunity of going his Journey, under pretence of conducting the Presents out of the Town, our Affairs were left to the management of the *Calenter*, who immediately after sent to our Quarters the Summ of 60 *Tumains*, amounting to 1000 Crowns, as a reimbursement for the Charges we had been at during our stay at *Scamachie*; which not amounting to half the Summ, we ought to expect, the Ambassador *Brugman* sent him word, that he knew not whether the said Summ were sent them from the King, or the *Chan*, but that they would carry it seal'd up as it was to *Ispahan*; and that they could not forbear to complain of the Injury done them, in detaining them so long contrary to the Orders of the Court, desiring that speedy Care might be taken for their Departure. The *Calenter* answered, that the said Summ had been sent by his Majesty's Appointment; That he was much concerned at the delay of their Journey, which was occasion'd by the great number of People, and the Baggage belonging to them, for which they could not get Horses and Waggons enough before, intreating us at the same time to come and dine with him to morrow, which we did. The Ambassadors have their Charges reimbursed.

March the 27th, 60 Waggons, and 120 Saddle-horses were brought for the Prosecution of our Journey.

But before we leave *Scamachie*, it will not be beyond our Scope to give you a short Account of that City. (*a*) Father *Bizarrus* calls it sometimes *Summachia*, sometimes *Sumachia*, or *Samachia*, as does also (*b*) *Joseph Barbaro*; the *Spaniards* write it *Zamachi*. The Geographers don't agree in its true Situation, some placing it above, others below *Derbent*, others in both Places. Its true Name is *Sciamachie*, 40 *German* Lgs, or 6 Days Journey from *Derbent*, provided you take the way through the Mountains; for if you travel on Foot or Horse-back along the *Caspian Sea*, by the way of *Bakuje*, you may travel it in 2 Days. *Scamachie* is the Capital City of that Province, the Ancients have described it to us under the Name of *Media Atropatia*, or *Media Minor*, and now call'd *Schirwan*, tho' some, but by mistake, place this City in *Hyrcania*. It lies in a Valley inclosed betwixt 2 Mountains, at 34 Dgs 40 Min. Long. and 40 Deg. 50 Min. Lat. According to the Report of the *Persians*, it was built by *Schirwan Schach*; and before it was destroy'd by the *Turks*, under the Reign of K. *Abas*, contained above 5000 Houses. The whole City is divided into the S. and N. City: The Walls of the first were pull'd down by *Schach Abas*; the last, which is somewhat bigger than the other, and contains about 900 Houses, has its Walls standing still; but it is so low, and surrounded with so wretched a Ditch, that one may pass into the City at any time. The whole City has 5 Gates; but the

(*a*) Hist. of *Persia*. A Description of *Scamachie*.
(*b*) In his Travels.

1637. the Streets are very narrow, and the Houſes, which are for the moſt part built of Earth, very low. The Inhabitants are chiefly *Armenians* and *Georgians*, who being different in their Language, make uſe of the *Turkiſh*, which is common to both, not only in the Province of *Schirwan*, but alſo all over *Perſia*. Their chief Traffick lies in Silk, Stuffs, and Callicoes. Moſt of their Shops are in the South City, where is the great *Bazar*, or Market-place, into which abutt many Streets, which are all covered for the Conveniency of the Shop-keepers. Near the ſaid Market-place are alſo 2 great Store-houſes, divided into many Galleries and Chambers: One is call'd *Schach Caravanſera*, for the Conveniency of the *Muſcovite* Merchants, who there vent Tin, *Ruſſian* Leather, Copper, Furs, and other Commodities: The other, call'd *Loſgi Caravanſera*, appointed for the *Circaſſian Tartars*, who ſcarce bring any other Commodities, but Horſes, Women, young Lads, and handſome Maids, which they ſteal on the Frontiers of *Muſcovy*. The *Jews* have a part of this *Caravanſera* aſſign'd them for their Merchandizes, which bring hither from *Tabeſſerahn*, the beſt Woollen Tapeſtry, the refuſe of which are only brought into *Europe*; Silk Stuffs, Callicoes, Gold and Silver Brocadoes, as alſo Bows, Arrows, and Cymitars, which are ſold very cheap here.

Its Streets, Houſes, Inhabitants, and Languages.

In our Return from *Perſia*, I remember that the *Muſcovite* Envoy, *Alexis Savinowitz*, went into this Store-houſe of the *Tartars*, and cheap'ning a Boy of 15 or 16 years of Age, the *Tartar* ask'd 100 Crowns. *Alexis* who had no mind to buy, offer'd him no more than 32: At which the *Tartar* ſmiling, clap'd the Boy upon the Buttocks, and told the Envoy, That that Part was worth more than he had bid.

This City has alſo 3 *Hamans*, or Publick Baths, the Uſe of which is as general in *Perſia* as in *Muſcovy*: Two of theſe are common both to Men and Women; for the firſt at Night, and for the laſt in the Day-time. The third, call'd *Haman Schach*, belonging only to the Men. Near it are 2 loſty Trees, which being planted by *Schich Marith*, one of the *Perſian* Saints, who is buried in a Church hard by (of which there are 6 in this City) are in great Veneration among them. The Revenue of this Bath is employed in defraying the Charges belonging to his Sepulchre.

The *Chan* is not only Governor of the City, but alſo of the whole Province, in conjunction with the *Calenter*, who is his Lieutenant. The *Chan* has the Adminiſtration of all Civil and Military Affairs, and out of the Revenue of his Government, is obliged to maintain 1000 Men, and to put himſelf at the Head of them at the firſt warning. In his Abſence, the *Calenter* has the ſole Command all over the Province, who at all other times has the overſight over the Revenue and Crown-Lands, and never goes into the Wars. The *Chan*'s Name was *Areb*, who kept a very noble Court, tho' by his Extraction he was only the Son of a Peaſant, it being the Cuſtom among the *Perſians*, to value a Man rather by his Worth and Courage, than his Birth: And this *Areb* had given ſuch Proofs of his Valour, that *Schach-Sefi* made him Comptroller of his Ordinance at the Siege of *Erivan*, in which Place, and many Encounters he was in, he behaved himſelf ſo well, that *Terruch-Chan*, the late *Chan* of *Scamachie*, being ſlain in the Siege, he put him in his Place. *Areb* uſed to take great delight, to ſhew us the Scars of the Wounds he had received in skirmiſhing with the *Turks*, and to tell us how many *Turks* Heads he had brought to the King. Both the *Chan* and *Calenter* were Perſons of a brave and handſome Deportment, having all the Qualities requiſite for their Station; the worſt thing belonging to them, was, that they were ſuch Lovers of Wine, that they would begin with it early in the Morning; but the *Chan* could not bear ſo much as the other. Among other things I had the Curioſity to find out the Tower mentioned by (a) *John Cartwright*, which he ſays is built with Flint and Free-ſtone, with many dead Men's Skulls thruſt betwixt the Stones, but could neither find, nor hear any News of it. All what I ſaw of this kind, were two Men's Heads cut in Stone in the City-wall, of which no body could tell me the meaning. But what the ſame Author ſays of the Ruines of an old ſtrong Caſtle, not far from the City, I found true by Experience; there being to be ſeen to the North-ſide, upon a high and ſteep Mountain, the remainders of a very ſtrong Fortification. I went alſo to the top of the ſaid Mountain, where near a Well, the deepeſt I ever ſaw in my Life, I found a noble Cellar, all intire, both ſurrounded with the beſt Free-ſtone that could be found. The Inhabitants told us, That this Province had in ancient Times its own Kings; and that one of them, call'd *Schirwan Schach*, had built this Caſtle, which was afterwards deſtroyed by *Alexander the Great*. But I am apt to believe, we need not ſeek ſo far as the Times of *Alexander*, for the Etymology of the Name of this Caſtle; which being call'd *Kale Kuleſtan*, *i. e.* the Valley of Roſes, has queſtionleſs derived its Name from the adjacent Valley; which being water'd by a very pleaſant Brook, brings forth in the Spring an incredible Quantity of Tulips; nothing being more common in *Perſia*, than to give this Name of *Kuleſtan* to any Place, where they would expreſs an extraordinary Pleaſantneſs.

The Chan and Calenter's Charge.

(a) His Travels into *Perſia*.

1637.

Betwixt this Fort of *Kuleſtan* and the City, are alſo to be ſeen upon a Mountain, exceeding the laſt mentioned in height, two Chapels; in the biggeſt of which, built in the Form of a *Parallelogram*, is to be ſeen a very high Sepulchre, hung about with many Pieces of Cloth and other Rags, of divers Colours; as alſo ſeveral Rods of Iron, pointed at the end like the tops of Arrows, ty'd to the Sepulchre with a Silk String. In the other are two Tombs, ſet out much, after the ſame manner, belonging to ſome of their Saints near which the Inhabitants frequently do their Devotions. Out of this laſt Chapel, you go by an eaſie Deſcent into a large Vault, where is the Sepulchre of one of their King's Daughters, named *Amalek Kanum*, who having an Averſion to Marriage, and being betrothed by her Father to a certain *Tartar* Prince, kill'd her ſelf. Mr. *Cartwright* ſays, That the Maids viſit the Sepulchre of this Princeſs once a Year, which whether it was done in his time, I am not able to determine; but certain it is, that it is not Devotion, but the hot Season, which now adays draws the Inhabitants into this Mountain, as well as that of *Kuleſtan*; the Tradeſmen and Shop-keepers of *Scamachie*, ſtaying there only in the Night-time, whereas the *Chan*, and other Perſons of Quality dwell there under Tents, during the 3 hotteſt Months of the Year, and conſequently pay their Devotions more frequently to theſe Saints. During this Season, they alſo feed their Cattel in the Meadows (the beſt of all *Perſia*) near the Mountain of *Elbours*, where there is a more temperate Air than hereabouts. This Mountain is a Branch of the Mount *Caucaſus*, lying on the ſide of the Province of *Tabriſthan* towards *Georgia*; yet may it be eaſily diſcovered from *Kale Kuleſtan*, and the other Neighbouring Mountains of *Scamachie*. It is credibly affirm'd, that the ancient *Perſians* kept and worſhip'd their perpetual Fire upon this Mountain of *Elbours*; but at this time there are not the leaſt Footſteps of it left here, or near *Jeſcht*, notwithſtanding *Texeira*, and his Adherents, endeavour to make us believe the contrary. This Fire ſeems ſince to be tranſplanted to the *Indies*, where certain Religious Men keep a perpetual Fire, with the ſame Veneration and Care, as the ancient *Perſians* did; of which more hereafter, in Mr. *Mandelſlo*'s Travels into the *Indies*.

Sepulchre of Saints.

The perpetual Fire of the ancient Perſians and Modern Indians.

But we muſt return to our Journey. The Baggage being ſent before the 27th, we follow'd the 28th. But the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, being much diſſatisfy'd with the Treatment he had received at *Scamachie*, order'd us to depart 2 hours before Day, which we did accordingly on Foot without any Noiſe, and took Horſe without the Gates. We had ſcarce travell'd 2 Lgs, when we found a *Scotchman* of our Retinue, who was pretty well at our ſetting out, dead in the Waggon, whom we buried at the bottom of a little Hill, covered all over with Hyacinths.

The Ambaſſadors proceed in their Journey

After we had travell'd about half a League further, we came to the Sepulchre of another Saint, call'd by the *Perſians*, *Pyr Mardechan*; where, being againſt Night overtaken by a moſt violent Storm of Lightning, Thunder, Wind, Rain, and Snow, we paſs'd our time but very ill, under the bare Heavens, for want of our Tents.

The next Day, the Ambaſſador *Brugman* finding that ſome of our Cannon had been left behind at *Scamachie*, for want of Camels, broke out into very injurious Language againſt the *Chan* and *Calenter*, in the Preſence of our *Mehemander*; and had it not been for the want of Proviſions and Lodgings, would have obliged us to ſtay there till they were brought up; but it being reſolv'd to go on, we made 2 Lgs to a *Caravanſera*, call'd *Tachtſi*, and, after 2 Lgs Travel more, to the top of the Mountain of *Scamachie*, where we paſsd thro' a Fair and Fertile Plain, which in the Winter and Spring is ſubject to the ſame Sharpneſs of Weather, as moſt

The odd demeanor of one of the Ambaſſadors.

1637. most Parts of *Europe*. But no sooner were we come to the Descent, but we saw the Sun bright, and a serene Sky, and a Plain reaching above 10 Lgs, all covered with Verdure, which after some time discovered to us at a distance the so much celebrated Confluence of the 2 Rivers, *Araxes* and *Cyrus*. After an easie Descent of half a Lg we took up our Lodgings in certain *Tartarian* Huts, which the Shepherds had set up there near their Flocks.

March the 30th, We made 4 Lgs thro' the Plain, to the Village of *Kasilar*. By the way we met with a certain Company of *Tartarian* Cow and Sheep-herds, who had pack'd up their Huts, Houlhold-Goods, Wives, Children, and other Moveables in Waggons, or upon Horses, Cows, and Asses. We had ever after very fair Weather, and a serene Sky, except when we travell'd over the Mountains, we saw it a little overcast in the Morning; but these Clouds were soon after dispell'd by the Sun-beams.

The Nomades.

March the 31st, We pass'd 2 Lgs along the Riverside to the Village of *Tzavat*, upon the right side of the River *Kur* (*Cyrus*) where the Houses were all built of Reeds and Canes, and covered with Earth. About a quarter of a Lg above this Village, is the famous Confluence of this River, with the *Aras* (*Araxes*) at 39 Dgs 54 Min. Elev. the *Kur* coming from the W. N. W. and the *Aras* from the S. W. They are, after their conjunction, 400 Paces broad, the Banks pretty high on both sides, the Channel very deep, and the Water black. The Meadow-grounds along this River are full of Liquorice, the Stalks of which exceed sometimes the thickness of a Man's Arm, and the Juice is incomparably sweeter than that of *Europe*.

The Confluxe of the *Cyrus* and *Araxes*.

The River *Kur* is the common Boundary betwixt the 2 Provinces of *Schirwan* and *Mokan*, being join'd by a Bridge of Boats, near *Tzavat*. We had no sooner pass'd over this Bridge the 2d of *April*, but another *Mehemander*, sent by the Governor of *Ardebil*, brought us 40 fresh Camels, and 300 Horses, because we could not make use so conveniently of Waggons, by reason of the continued Mountains and Valleys. He also furnished us very plentifully with Provisions, our daily Allowance being 10 Sheep, 30 *Bramans* of Wine, and Rice, Butter, Eggs, Almonds, Raisins, Apples, and all other sorts of Fruits, as much as we pleased. Being *Sunday*, we did not set out till after Sermon; and taking our way for a Dg along the River *Aras*, took up our Quarters in Huts, set up there for that purpose, at the entrance of a great Heath, about half a Lg from the River.

The Frontiers of *Schirwan* and *Mokan*.

April the 3d, We travell'd 4 *Persian* Lgs over the Heath, and were lodged at Night in Huts, as the Night before. As we pass'd along, we saw a kind of Deer feeding in Herds, call'd *Tzeiran* by the *Turks*, and *Ahu* by the *Persians*. They resemble our Harts, but are rather Red than Fawn, and their Horns without Brow-antlers, but smooth and turning backwards, like the wild Goats. They are extremely swift, and no where to be met with, except in the Province of *Mokan*, about *Scamachie*, *Karrabath*, and *Merrage*.

Ahu, a kind of Deer.

April the 4th, Being forced to leave the Heath, for want of Water, tho' else much the nearer way, we travell'd a compass of 6 Lgs to the Torrent of *Balharu*. Here we found abundance of Tortoises, who had laid their Eggs in the Sand along the Torrent, exposed to the Mid-day Sun, the better to foment their Eggs. Some of our People having the Curiosity to cross the Current, to see the manner of Life of the Inhabitants on that side, they found their Children stark naked, and the rest covered only with Callicoe Smocks. They received us very civilly, and entertain'd us with some Milk, imagining that we were sent for by the *Schach*, to serve him in his Wars against the *Turks*: They wish'd us all imaginable Success, and that we might drive our Enemies before us as far as *Stampol*, i. e. *Constantinople*.

Tortoises.

The Enemies of the Persians.

April the 5th, We travell'd beyond the Heath of *Mokan* to the Mountain and Country of *Betzirwan*, and in this Days Journey cross'd a little River 12 times by reason of its many Windings, and lodged at the Village of *Schechmurat*, 5 Lgs from the Place where we lay the Night before. Some of the Houses of this Village were built on the Foot of the Mountain, others within the Mountain. But the *Persians* who had pass'd that way not long before, as with the *Chan* of *Scamachie*'s Presents to the *Schach*, having represented us as a barbarous People, the Inhabitants were retired into the Mountain among the Rocks. Some of our Retinue got to the top of the Mountain, where they met with nothing extraordinary, except with a very fair Spring, near which we saw coming out of a Cleft of a Rock a kind of a Crab, or rather Craw-Fish, call'd by the *Latins*, *Cancer*. 1637.

Betzirwan.

April the 6th, Being to travel cross the Mountains and Rocks, we could not make above 2 Lgs; we saw by the way a great many Fig-Trees, which the Earth produced without any Cultivation. Coming at Night to a Village left by its Inhabitants, just as we had almost unloaded our Baggage, word was brought us, that the Plague had made that Place so desolate. The Ambassadors had a Tent pitch'd for their Lodging in the Field; some of our People remained notwithstanding this in one of the Houses, where they made a large Fire and good Cheer, with the Wine they had brought along with them, to put away Melancholy, and the forward Humour of the Ambassadors, who rail'd with that Violence at the Sieur *Uchterits*, because he had stay'd behind in the Village to see the Baggage loaden and carried thence, that he fell into a Fever. The rest of our People, who did not think fit to venture themselves in the Village, were forced to be contented under the bare Sky, till such time, that by the *Mehemander*'s Care certain *Tartarian* Huts loaden upon Oxen were brought us, tho' very late at Night. These Huts are made only of several Pieces of Wood, fasten'd together at the Ends, so that they may easily be set up, and taken down again.

Tartarian Huts.

The 7th we had a very bad Days Journey, being forced to travel 10 Lgs without baiting, and that in a continual Trot, and in very cold, windy, and snowy Weather, by reason that in those Parts there is abundance of a kind of venomous Wormwood, which kills both Men and Beasts that eat of it. By the way we saw at a distance a very noble *Caravansera*, call'd *Agis*; and not long after, met a certain *Persian* very well mounted, and attended by 2 Servants, who was to be our *Mehemander*, and to conduct us to Court.

A venomous Herb.

A new *Mehemander*.

Our Lodgings which we that Night took up in the Village of *Tzanlu*, a Place surrounded with very pleasant Gardens, and great store of Fruit-Trees, made us some amends for the Toil of the Day; but for want of Wood we were forced to burn Cows and Camels-dung.

The 8th, after Breakfast, we got on Horse-back; and after 3 Lgs travelling along the Mountain of *Tzizetlu*, we came to the River *Karasu*, which arises out of the Mountain of *Bakru*, in the Province of *Kilan*. It has a very fair Bridge of 6 Arches, and 38 Fathom in length, in the Village of *Samajan* where we cross'd it; and, after we had made half a Lg more, took up our Quarters in the Village of *Thabedac*, 2 small Lgs from *Ardebil*; Here we were most miserably pester'd with Fleas, Lice, and other Vermine.

The 9th, being *Easter*-Day, we thrice discharged our Great Guns and Fire-Arms early in the Morning; and after Sermon, our new *Mehemander* came to pay us a Visit, and to complement us, upon Occasion of the Festival: His Name was *Netzefbee*, a Person of an excellent good Temper; he brought along with him, a Present of 5 Fishes dry'd in the Sun, some Bread, Pomegranates, Apples, and among the rest a sort of Pears shaped like a Citron, very juicy and well scented, some pickled Cucumbers, preserv'd Garlick, and some *Schiras*-Wine, which is the best that grows in *Persia*.

April the 10th, being *Easter-Munday*, we made our Entrance into *Ardebil*. The first we met with was a Troop of Horsemen, who having saluted and viewed us all round, took their way immediately to the City. *Taleb Chan*, the *Calenter* of *Ardebil*, an aged Person, met us at the Head of a Body of Horse, a little on this side of the Village of *Kelheran* (a Place so noble, by reason of its many Steeples and Towers built of Stone of divers Colours, that we took it for the City it self) who having saluted the Ambassadors, rid on one side of them. Not far beyond the Village we pass'd in a spacious Plain thro' a good number of Horse and Foot, who opened to make us way. Not many Paces thence, we saw the Governor of *Ardebil*, whose Name was *Kelbele Chan*, coming cross the Fields at the Head of a Brigade of 1000 Horse: He was not very tall, but of a goodly Aspect and pleasant Humour; and after the first Complements on both sides, he rode in betwixt the Ambassadors. In the Van march'd 2 young Lads covered with Sheep-skins of divers Colours over their clean Shirts, each of them carrying on the top of a long Pole, made of a Date-Tree, an Orange. They were Sons or Disciples of a certain *Abdalla*, of whom more

The Entrance of the Ambassadors into *Ardebil*.

1637. more anon) and read and sung out of a Book certain Verses in Praise of *Mahomet*, *Haly*, and *Schich-Sefi*. These were follow'd by others, who in a most surprizing manner imitated the singing of Nightingales, and other Birds: The Timbrels and Hautboys playing on both sides; and some of the People were dancing, others singing, others flinging up their Caps for Joy, and to bid us welcome. Not far from the City we saw the Guards placed in 2 Files, with Bows and Arrows in their Hands, and Coats of Mail about their Bodies; their Heads covered with Calotts, call'd *Aratskin*, in which they had abundance of Feathers, the ends whereof some had thrust thro' the Caps into the Skin. Many of them appear'd naked to the Waste; and tho' they had their Arms and Breasts pierced with Daggers, they did not shew the least Sign of any Pain. We saw also a Company of *Indians*, who saluted us with a low Inclination of the Head, and laying their Hands to their Breasts. As we approach'd the City-Gates, we saw such a Conflux of People, that we were forc'd to make our way thro' them with Bulls-pizzels, and within the Gates, the House-tops, Windows, Steeples, and Trees were crowded with such as were come from all Parts to be Spectators of our Entrance.

Are treated by the *Chan*.

We were by the *Chan* himself conducted thro' a spacious Garden into a noble Summer-house, and treated with a most splendid Collation in a very stately Gallery, the *Chan* presenting to each of the Ambassadors, and every one of those that came up with them, a silver Cup of Wine, the rest being entertain'd below in a Tent set up for that purpose. During the Collation, they were diverted with the best sort of Musick *Persia* affords, and a certain Dance or Entry made by Archers with their Bows and Arrows. The Collation ended, the Ambassadors were conducted to very spacious Lodgings, in one of the best Parts of the City, which formerly belonged to *Sara Chutza*, Lord High Chancellor of *Persia*. But this Summer-house being one of the noblest Structures I ever met with, ought not to be pass'd by here without a particular Description. It ow'd its Origin to *Salsagar Chan*, the Predecessor of the present Governor, who having brought the Model of it out of *Turkey*, spared no cost to have it brought to such a Perfection, that not any thing seems left that Art could desire.

A Description of the Summer-house.

Its Figure is *Octogonal*, the whole Structure being 3 Stories high, each of which has its peculiar Fountains, which cast their Waters above any Part of the Structure. All the Walls were covered with a kind of glist'ring Stones of divers Colours, wrought into various Figures, and the Floors were all covered with the best *Persian* Tapestry. A very spacious Gallery of Marble was built all round the House, adorn'd with Paintings of Flowers and Leaf-work. In one of the Corners of the said Gallery stood a Chair of State 4 Foot square, covered with embroider'd Tapestry, and a Quilt wrought with Gold and Silk instead of a Cushion, being surrounded with an Iron Rail, to signifie, that the King as he pass'd one day through *Ardebil*, having rested there, no body must be allow'd to approach it. The King had bestow'd this House upon the present *Chan*, during Life, after his Predecessor had been executed; which was the reason that another Summer-house of his own Building in a great Garden, near a very fair Stone-bridge without the City, lay desolate at that time.

The Veneration of the *Persians* for their Princes.

The next Day, *April* the 11th, was brought to the Ambassadors the *Thaberick*: These are certain Dishes of Meat for 3 Meals, sent to all Persons of Quality that come to *Ardebil*, pursuant to an Institution, obsery'd many Years ago about the Body of *Schich-Sefi*, the Founder of the Religion of the *Persians*; as also that of the late King, whose Sepulchres are at *Ardebil*. They brought us 32 great Dishes, or rather Basons, full of Rice, of all Colours, upon which the boiled and roasted Meat, as also some Omelets and Pastry, were laid according to the *Persian* way. But no Wine is allow'd at this Feast of the *Thaberick*; which tho' it pleased us not, yet we caused our great Guns to be discharged, and would have made a small Present to the Bearers, which they refused out of Devotion.

The Thaberick.

Is forbidden them Wine.

Next Day, the following daily Allowance was settled for our Kitchin, 16 Sheep, 200 Eggs, 4 *Batmans*, (which make 26 Pounds) of Butter, 13 Pounds of Raisins of the Sun, 6 Pounds and an half of Almonds, 100 *Batmans* of Wine, 2 *Batmans* of Syrup, Meal, Honey, and Poultrey in vast Plenty, not reckoning the extraordinary Presents sent us by the *Chan*; so that, during our stay at *Ardebil*, we consumed in Bread, 1960 *Batmans*. In Wine, 6250. In Eggs, 9300. 477 Sheep, and 472 Lambs.

Their allowance at *Ardebil*.

1637.

April the 12th, The *Chan* gave us the first Visit, with all the kind Offers of his Services that could be made, of which he gave us real Demonstrations afterwards. He sent also the same Day an Express to Court, to notifie our Arrival there, who did not return till two Months after.

The Governor's Visit.

April the 21st, The Ambassadors received a Visit from a certain *Armenian* Bishop, lately come from the City of *Ervan*. He was a Person of very good Discourse, and gave us a particular Account of the present State of the Christian Churches in *Asia*. He told us, among other things, That in a certain Convent near *Ervan*, were above 400 Monks; That in the Mountains, betwixt the River *Aras* and *Kur*, the Christians inhabited above 1000 Villages; and that about *Casvin* and *Tauris* lived at least 2000 Families more, which in all made up 500 Churches. He highly extoll'd the *Persians*, in not laying such heavy Taxes upon the Christians under their Jurisdiction, as the *Turks* do, and inviolably preserving their Privileges; desiring the Ambassadors to recommend them, and their Concerns, to the King.

The Visit of an *Armenian* Bishop.

The State of the Christian Churches in *Asia*.

April the 25th, which according to the *Arabian* Computation is the 10th of the Month *Silhotza*, was the great *Bairam*, or Festival, call'd by them *Kurban*, *i. e. Sacrifice*, in remembrance of that Sacrifice *Abraham* was going to make of his Son *Ismael*. They kill a Sheep or Lamb before break of Day, each at his own Door, which they cut to pieces, and give them to the Poor, even not sparing the Skin, according to the Example of *Abraham*, who reserv'd nothing of the Ram he sacrific'd instead of *Ismael*.

Kurban, or Sacrifice of the *Persians*.

It is much about the same time, the *Persians*, as well as the *Turks*, go on Pilgrimage to *Mecca*: And as *Noah* took 72 Persons along with him into the Ark, so say they, the number of Pilgrims at *Mecca* ought to be 72000, neither more nor less; if there be more, the same must be excluded for that Year; but they are very exact to have this number compleat, because the Angels would else be put to the trouble to make up as many as are wanting, which say they would shew want of respect to those Spirits. The Men wear at that time a peculiar kind of a white, woollen Turbant, being forbidden to wear it of any Colour, or of Silk. They call this *Turbant Esthiran*, which they wear only as they go, one part of it falling down on one side, passes under the Chin, and is fasten'd again on the other side. They generally take their way over *Jerusalem*, where having perform'd their first Devotions, they go from thence to the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* at *Medina*; where after they have continued the same for some time, and kiss'd his Tomb with great Veneration, they travel from thence to *Mecca*, or Mount *Arabat*, either quite naked to the Waste, or else covered only with a Shirt, as swift as a Horse can trot, or a Camel gallop, scarce giving themselves leisure to eat, drink, or sleep; because it is their Opinion, that the Sweat produced by this Motion cleanses them from all the Impurities of their Sins. The Women are allow'd to bind up their Breasts with a kind of a Scarf they call *Seamachze*, for the better conveniency of travelling.

The Pilgrimage of the *Turks* and *Persians* to *Mecca*.

The Particulars of this Pilgrimage.

The 10th of the Month *Silhotza*, is chiefly dedicated to their Devotions upon the Mount *Arafat*, the same, according to their Opinion, where *Abraham* was to have sacrificed *Ismael*. After they have spent here all the Night in Prayers, they come down with break of day to the City of *Mecca*, where the *Hetzas*, or High Priest, conducts a Camel intended for the Sacrifice, in Procession thro' the Chief Streets of the City, the Pilgrims at the same time thronging to come near to the Camel, and to get some of his Hair, which they look upon as a most precious Relick. At last, the High Priest leads the Camel to the *Meydan*, or Market-place, where the *Duroga*, or Chief Judge of the City, and some of his Attendants kill him, by giving him many Blows in the Head, Neck, and Breast. Then it is, that the Pilgrims, with Knives in their hands, endeavour to get a piece of his Flesh with so much eagerness, that many of them are thereby kill'd and wounded; the first being placed in their Martyrologies. To conclude the Ceremony, they go in Procession about the *Mosque*, and kiss a certain Stone, which was left after the finishing of that Structure: They take also of the Water, which is conveyed thro' a golden Pipe over the *Mosque*, as a sacred Relick, with a little piece of a certain blackish Wood, they commonly make Toothpicks of. The Pilgrims, after their return from thence, are call'd *Hazi*, and are *Nazarites*,

1637. *Zarites*, being forbidden the Use of Wine for ever after.

Upon the Account of this Sacrifice of *Mecca*, we will touch upon some few Heads only (the rest being too long to be inserted here) of what *Mahomet* says in relation to the Sacrifice of *Abraham*, as it is disguised with fabulous Inventions in all its Circumstances. They say, That *Abraham* being the Son of *Azar*, Graver to *Nimroth* King of *Egypt*, married *Sarah* a beautiful Woman, and growing jealous of her upon the King's Account, carried her into *Arabia*. But finding her barren, begot *Ismael* upon a Slave, named *Hagar*. But she being forced to leave the House by the ill Treatment of *Sarah*, *Abraham* follow'd her, and found her already delivered of a Son, who by setting his Feet upon the ground made a Spring come forth, but with such violence, that *Hagar* could not get any of the Water to quench her Thirst, till *Abraham*, by making a little Bank of Sand, stop'd the Current, and made *Hagar* drink.

Not long after *Ismael*'s Birth, the Angel *Gabriel* commanded *Abraham* from God, to build a House upon the said Torrent; but *Abraham* declining the same for want of Materials, the Angel reply'd, That God would provide; and accordingly Mount *Arafat* forc'd out of its Quarries a vast Quantity of Stones, which roll'd down the Mountain to the little River, where he built the said House, which has since been converted into a *Mosque*, and is the same where the Pilgrims of *Mecca* perform their Devotions. The Stone, which we told you was kiss'd by the Pilgrims, was, say they, the only one that was remaining after the finishing of the Structure, unto which *Abraham* promised, that it should be in great Veneration among the Faithful, and be kiss'd by them; which is turn'd black by so much kissing, whereas it was white before.

They further say, That God intending to try the Affection of *Abraham* to him, sent the Angel *Gabriel* to him again, to command him to sacrifice his Son *Ismael*, which he immediately consenting to, the *Sceithan*, or Devil, presented himself to *Hagar*, representing to her the hainousness of the Fact *Abraham* was going to commit, in sacrificing her Son. She ask'd the Devil, what could move *Abraham* so to do? Unto which the Devil having answered, That it was God's Command, *Hagar* acquiesced in the Will of God; and, to be rid of him, cast a Stone at him. This Effort of the Devil proving unsuccessful, he made his Application to *Abraham*, endeavouring to revive in him the Tenderness of a Father; but he being too well acquainted with his Deceits also sent him away, and cast a Stone after him. His last Attempts were upon *Ismael*, setting before his Eyes the Horror of an unnatural Death, but with no better Success; for he had no other Reception, but a good Stone at his Head. The Father and Son being come to the top of the Mountain *Arafat*, *Ismael* requested Three Things of his Father: First, That he would bind him fast, for fear the Pangs of Death might make him struggle against him. Secondly, That as soon as he had thrust the Knife into his Throat he would shut his Eyes, for fear that the Horror of the Action should take away the use of his Hands, and so make him die a ling'ring Death. The Third was, to remember his Duty to his Mother.

Abraham, according to the Promise made to his Son, having well bound his Son, and after he had put the Knife to his Throat, and shut his eyes, endeavoured to thrust it in with all his might; but finding no Entrance, and opening his Eyes, tried the edge of his Knife upon a Stone, which he cut in pieces; and being astonished at it, ask'd the Knife why it could not cut his Son's Throat as well as the Stone? Unto which the Knife made Answer, It was not God's Will to have it so. Immediately after the Angel *Gabriel* taking *Abraham* by the Hand, said, *Hold, God intended only to try thy Faith; unbind thy Son, and sacrifice this He-Goat*, which he shew'd him upon the Place; and *Abraham* offer'd it to God accordingly for a Burnt-Offering.

They positively affirm, that the three Stones which *Hagar*, *Abraham*, and *Ismael* threw at the Devil, are yet to be seen near the High-way, betwixt *Medina* and *Mecca*; and that 3 great Heaps are made there by the Pilgrims, who bring every one 3 Stones to be cast at the Devil, to prevent his disturbing them in their Devotions.

We saw also the same day above 500 Women going before day to the Graves of their Husbands or Kinsfolks, some eating, some reading certain Passages out of the *Alcoran*. Those of the better sort had Tents erected in the Church-yard, to prevent their being seen. This Devotion is commonly performed in their Lent-time. Prayers for the Dead. 1637.

The Ambassadors were also the same day treated again with the *Thaberick*. The Meat was brought in 6 large Copper Basons tinn'd over, they call them *Lenkeri*, and the Preserves in 9 great Porcelane Vessels.

The next Day they were again magnificently entertain'd by the *Chan* at one of his Summer-houses.

The 27th in the Evening, the *Chan* imparted to the Ambassadors the good News he had received of the Mutiny of the *Janizaries* at *Constantinople*, who had kill'd the *Grand Seignior*, at which great Rejoicing was made by the *Persians*, by Fireworks and Musick. The Ambassadors did the like, by causing their Trumpets to be sounded, and their Drums to beat, with a Discharge of all their Great Guns 6 times successively; which the *Chan* took so kindly, that he sent them two Flaggons of *Schiras* Wine, and a great Glass Vessel full of Candy'd Sugar. Rejoicing in *Persia* at the *Grand Seignior*'s Death.

May the 1st, being the Birth-day of the Ambassador *Crusius*, the same was celebrated with a magnificent Supper, at which our *Mehemander Netzefbeck* was present.

The 4th, The Ambassadors were visited by *Saru-Taggi*, the Son of the Chancellor of *Persia*, who was with some other Persons of Quality come on purpose from *Ispahan*. We entertain'd them with a very fine Collation, and Discharge of our Great Guns. A Visit from the Chancellor of *Persia*'s Son.

May the 14th, The *Persians* celebrated the Feast, called *Ashur*, *i. e. Ten*, because it lasts 10 Days, and begins with the Moon of the Month *Maheram*; which being intended in memory of the Death of *Hossein*, the youngest Son of *Haly*, is peculiar to the *Persian* Sect. A Feast peculiar to the *Persians*.

He was, say they, kill'd in the War against the *Calif Jesid*; and, after he had received 72 Wounds with Arrows, was run thro' the Body with a Sword by *Senan ben aneff*, and kill'd *Schem Sultzausen*. It lasts 10 Days, because he was so long pursu'd by his Enemies, before they overtook him. All this while the *Persians* shew all the Signs of Affliction, appear in Mourning, don't shave themselves, (which otherwise they do every day) drink no Wine, but only Water. There was nothing to be seen but Nunneries, and an awkard sort of Devotion throughout the City of *Ardebil*. You might have seen the Boys running in troops about the Streets with Banners, on the Extremities whereof were Snakes of Past-board, winding to and fro like *Mercury*'s Caduceus; and when they came to the Doors of the *Mosques*, they cry'd, *Ja Hossein; Ja Hossein, i. e. O Hossein.* After Sun-set, especially the 3 last Days, the Men met without the City under Tents, with Lanthorns, and Torches, and Oranges on the top of their Poles, singing and crying out, *Ja Hossein*, for an hour together; which done, they return in Procession with Banners and Torches thro' the chief Streets of the City. The 10th day the Devotion was concluded. In the Morning a Solemn Oration was made in Honour of *Hossein*, in the Court of the *Masar* of *Schich-Sefi*, where, near the Chancery, a Banner was planted, which, they say, was made by the Daughter of *Fatima*, the Daughter of *Mahomet*: And the *Persians* positively affirm, that it shakes as often as the Name of *Hossein* is mentioned in the said Oration; but I must confess I could see no such thing. Odd Devotion. A pretended Miracle.

Accordingly, *May* the 24th, the *Chan* sent word to the Ambassadors, that if they had a mind to be present at the Conclusion of this Feast, they should be very welcome; but that they must excuse him, if he entertain'd them without Wine.

Towards Evening the Ambassadors went to the *Chan*'s Palace, who met them at the Gate next to the Street, and assign'd them a Place on the left hand in the Court, where the Ceremonies were to be performed, Seats being erected there for their better Conveniency, and their Retinue, covered with rich Tapestry; and upon a Cloth before them upon the Ground were set several Vessels of Porcelane, with sugar'd and perfum'd Waters, as also brass Candlesticks 4 Foot high, with great Wax-Candles in them, and Lamps fill'd with Rags dip'd in Suet and Naphtha. The *Chan* sat down upon the Ground on the right side of the Gate. Round the Walls of the Court you might have seen 1000 Lamps, which cast so great a Light, that the whole Palace seem'd to be in a Flame, which was augmented by the Light of many Paper-Lanthorns, fasten'd to certain Cords drawn cross the Court. The Five Professions, or Wards, into which the City of *Ardebil* The Conclusion of the Feast.

1637. *bil* is divided, appear'd each in their reſpective Stations, and preſented the *Chan* with a Serenade compoſed by ſome of their Poets (of which there are a very great number in *Perſia*) in praiſe of *Haly* and *Hoſſein*, in lieu of which he preſented them with ſome Waters ſweeten'd with Sugar; before they went away, they wiſh'd the Ambaſſadors good Succeſs in their Intended Negotiation.

In the mean time ſeven poor Boys, diſguiſed for that purpoſe, by rubbing their naked Bodies with Suet, and Naphte, and ſome with Vermilion, the more lively to repreſent the Blood of *Hoſſein*, were dancing with little Stones in their hands, which they knock'd againſt one another, and ſmote their breaſt with them, to expreſs their Sorrow for the Death of *Hoſſein*.

Perſian Fire-Works.

The Ceremonies being ended, the *Chan* would needs entertain the Ambaſſadors with a Firework excellently well contriv'd, conſiſting of a little Caſtle with Towers, and a vaſt number of Squibs and Crackers. The Caſtle, which was about 3 Foot ſquare, and the Walls of Paper, of all ſorts of Colours, had abundance of lighted Wax-candles round the Moat, which diſcovered the painted Figures of the Paper. It was ſet on Fire firſt, but before the Body took Fire a vaſt multitude of Squibs and Crackers iſſu'd out from thence, for near 2 hours. The next thing that was ſet on Fire, is call'd *Derbende*, made in Form of a *Saucidge*, of 6 Inches thick and 3 Foot long, caſting out at both ends a ſhow'r of Fire, which being follow'd by a vaſt number of Squibs and Serpents, ſet the Peoples Cloths that were moſt of Callicoe on Fire, whilſt ſeveral ſorts of Rockets were thrown up into the Air, which turn'd into Stars and other Figures. Several Boxes full of Fireworks were alſo ſet on Fire. But what moſt diverted the Company, was a certain Engine full of Fireworks of all ſorts; which being faſten'd to the ground with a Chain, caſt out Fire at the mouth with ſo terrible a noiſe, that every body dreaded the Effects of it. They call this kind of Firework, *Kumbara*.

This done, ſome appear'd with Paper-lanthorns upon long Poles, fill'd with Squibs and Serpents, and out of each of thoſe Lanthorns you ſaw a piece of Linen fly out, folded together and ty'd in great Knots, in each of which Knots were ſeveral Squibs and Serpents, which made an admirable ſhew by the windings and turning of theſe Serpents thro' the Fold. Others had in their Aprons certain ſmall Fireworks, into which others as they paſs'd by caſt, as it were by chance, ſome Fire, which made thoſe ſhake their Aprons, and throw the Fireworks upon the ground, which burn there a long time like ſo many Stars.

The *Perſians* uſe abundance of Naphte in their Fireworks, which being a kind of *Petreolum*, the rectify'd Spirit of *Turpentine* may be uſed inſtead of it in *Europe*. We alſo ſaw at a great diſtance in the Air certain Flames, which vaniſhed immediately. I am apt to believe that theſe were procured by a certain Drug,

Bears-foot.

call'd *Dram* by the *Muſcovites*, being a yellow Powder made of an Herb, found in the Foreſts among the Pine and Birch-trees: The *Latins* call it *Acanthus*, the *French*, *Branche Urſine*, and the *Engliſh*, *Bears-foot*, or *Bears-breech*. Each Stalk of this Herb bears 2 Buttons, which being ripe in *Auguſt*, the *Muſcovites* gather and dry them in an Ox-bladder. It is a great drier, when apply'd to Wounds, and is good againſt the Itch. But the chief uſe the *Muſcovites* make of it, is in their Fireworks. They take a Tin Box made in the Form of a Pyramid, into which they thruſt that end of a Torch which is not lighted, and by that means make the Powder, which is very fine, come out and fall into the Flame, ſo that by continual thruſting they make ever and anon a new Flame, which is very lively and that without any Smoak, but it vaniſhes almoſt as ſoon as it appears. It is obſervable, that this Powder will not take Fire any other way, tho' you caſt it upon burning Coals, or thruſt a lighted Candle into it. The Fireworks laſted till Midnight, when we return'd to our Quarters.

The next day before Sun-riſing, the *Perſians* appear'd again in Proceſſion, to repreſent the Interment of *Hoſſein*. Many Banners were carried, and ſeveral excellent Horſes and Camels led, covered with blue Cloth, in which were quilted abundance of Arrows, as if they had been ſhot into it, repreſenting thoſe ſhot by the

The Interment of Hoſſein.

Enemies at *Hoſſein*. Upon the Horſes were mounted certain Boys with empty Coffins before them, covered with a little Hay or Straw; theſe repreſented the Children of *Hoſſein*: Some of theſe Horſes carried Turbants, Cymitars, Bows, and Quivers full of Arrows.

Immediately after Sun-riſing there appear'd in the Baſe-Court a great number of Men and Lads; the firſt let themſelves blood in the Arms, and that in ſuch a quantity, as if ſeveral Oxen had been kill'd. The laſt only ſlaſh'd and cut themſelves above the Elbow, and ſtriking all the Wounds with their hand, made the Blood ſpurt all over their Bodies: Thus they ran thro' the Streets, in commemoration of the Effuſion of the Blood of *Hoſſein*, being fully perſwaded that they thereby expiate their Sins; and if they die during this Feaſt, they are certainly ſaved: They have the ſame Opinion of the Feaſt of *Haly*, and of their Lent. 1637.

A bloody Devotion.

The City of *Ardebil*, call'd *Ardevil* by the *Turks*, and by ſome others *Ardonil*, lies in the Province of *Adirbeitzan*, (the *Media Major* of the Ancients) which beſides this, has the Cities of *Tauris*, *Merrague*, *Natſchan*, *Miane*, *Urumi*, *Choi*, *Salmas*, &c. The City of *Ardebil* challengeth this Prerogative of being one of the moſt ancient and moſt celebrated Cities of the *Perſian* Empire; partly, becauſe it was the uſual Reſidence of ſeveral of their Kings, and partly becauſe *Schich Sefi*, Author of their Sect, lived and died here. Some are of Opinion, that it is the ſame City mention'd by *Q. Curtius* by the name of *Arbela*. It boaſts alſo of the Tombs of the Kings of *Perſia*, and its Traffick renders it one of the moſt conſiderable of all the Eaſt, which makes the *Turkiſh* Language to be more current here than the *Perſian*. I found the Elev. to be 38 dgs, 5 min. and the Long. 82 dgs, 30 min. It is ſituate in the midſt of a very fair and ſpacious Plain, having above 3 Lgs in circumference, which is on all ſides inviron'd with Mountains like an Amphitheatre; the higheſt part whereof, call'd *Sabelhan*, to the W. of the City, is ſcarce ever free from Snow. Towards the S. S. W. lies the Mountain *Bakru* in the Province of *Kilan*. Theſe Mountains occaſion a continual Changeableneſs of Weather, from the Extremity of Heat to a high degree of Cold, which makes this City very ſubject to epidemical Diſtempers, eſpecially in *Auguſt*, when they begin already to be ſenſible here of the Inconveniences of *Autumn*. We alſo bore our ſhare of it; for beſides many Servants that fell ſick, the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, and our Phyſician were ſeized with a violent Fever, the laſt being reduced to that extremity, that his Life was deſpair'd of. We obſerved that every day about Noon, when the Heat is moſt exceſſive, there aroſe a certain Whirlwind which raiſed a great Duſt, but laſted not above an hour; from whence ariſes the *Perſian* Proverb, *Saba Ardebil, Nimrus Kardebil; in the Morning Ardebil, at Noon full of Duſt*.

A Deſcripti. of Ardebil.

The Air changeable.

For the reſt of the Day, and the Nights were generally calm. From hence it is evident, that it is not the Climate, but the Situation of this City, that hinders the Ground thereabouts to produce any Vines, Melons, Citrons, Oranges, and Pomegranates, which are frequent in all the other Parts of *Perſia*; but Apples, Pears, and Peaches they have in great Plenty here. This is to be underſtood no further than the Plain reaches, for the Air is much warmer and more temperate at the Foot of the Mountains; and the Ground produces Fruits, nay, the Trees, which ſcarce ever begin to bug at *Ardebil*, till *April*, were very forward at the Village of *Alaru*, lying at the Foot of the Mountain *Bakru*. However in all other reſpects the Plain tho' not very great, is ſo good, that it maintains above 60 Villages round the City; beſides, that it raiſes the King a conſiderable Revenue in the *Turkiſh* and *Arabian* Shepherds, who feed their Flocks there. One of the Clerks belonging to the Revenue told me, that within 15 Days there had paſſed above 100000 Sheep over the Bridge of *Ardebil*, for each of which they pay two-pence for Paſturage, and as much when they are ſold.

The Fertility of the Soil.

Ardebil is not much bigger than *Scamachie*, but without Walls: Each Houſe in the City having its Garden planted with Fruit-Trees, makes a very pleaſant ſhew at a diſtance; but being deſtitute of Wood for Fuel, they are ſupply'd with it from the Province of *Kilan*, 6 days Journey from thence. At the Village of *Scamashu*, a Lg to the S. of the City, riſes the ſmall River *Balachlu*, which ſoon after dividing it ſelf into 2 Branches, one paſſes through the City, and the other encompaſſes it; and afterwards rejoining again, fall together into the River *Karaſu*. The worſt is, that this River is ſo apt to overflow in the Spring, when the Snows begin to melt upon the circumjacent Mountains, that, if they are not very careful to divert the Current by making Trenches in the Plain, the whole City would be drown'd. As it happen'd in *Schach Abas* his

1637. his time, when the River having broken through the Dikes, did an incredible Mischief there: And I my self was an Eye-witness of such another danger on the 12th of *April*, when above 1000 Men were employ'd day and night in making of Trenches to divert the River.

Its Streets. *Ardebil* has, besides many small ones, 5 Capital Streets, named *Derwan*, *Tabar*, *Niardower*, *Kumbalan*, and *Kasirkuste*, which are planted with Elms and other Trees, which afford a very agreable Shadow against the burning heat of the Season.

The Market-Place. The *Maidan*, or Market-place, is 300 Paces long, and 150 broad, having Shops on all sides, and each Profession its peculiar Quarter. As you go to this Market, you see on the right hand (behind the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*, and the last *Persian* Kings) a *Mosque*, where lies interr'd *Iman Sade*, or one of the Children of their 12 Saints. This serves for a Sanctuary to Criminals for a certain time, from whence they retire to

A Persian Sanctuary. the Tomb of *Schich-Sefi*, their Great Sanctuary. As you come out of the Market-place, you see a very fair Arched square Building, call'd *Kaiserie*, which is appointed for the Sale of all the most precious Commodities, such as Gold and Silver Brocado's, Silk Stuffs, and precious Stones. This Structure has 3 Gates, leading into so many Streets, very well furnished with Shops, and cover'd over head. In these Streets are also several *Caravansera's*, or Store-houses, for the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Indians*, and other foreign Merchants. We saw there among the rest 2 *Chineses*, who sold *Porcelane* and *Lacque* Work.

This City is also well furnished with Publick Baths, and has many *Metzids* or *Mosques*; the chiefest of which, call'd *Metzid Adine*, being built upon a little Hill in the midst of the City, has a very fair Steeple, and at its Entrance a Fountain, which the late Chancellor of *Persia* had caused to be conveyed thence by Pipes, from a Mountain a Lg distant from the City to the S. W. The *Chan* sent us word on *Whitsun-Monday*, that if we had a mind to see the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*, he would go with us thither, but that we must abstain from Wine all that day, and that our Supper should be provided for us out of *Schich-Sefi*'s Kitchin.

Accordingly the Ambassadors being gone thither with all their Retinue, they were conducted into a spacious Court, pav'd with broad Stones, and furnish'd on both sides with Shops in Vaults; backwards it had

The Ambassadors visit the Tomb of Schich Sefi. a fair Publick Garden. The Gate thro' which we enter'd into this Court was very large, and had above it a great Silver Chain extended from one side to the other, at which hung down another perpendicularly in the middle, being a Present of *Aga Chan*, Governor of *Merrague*.

From hence the Governor conducted us to another Gate, which had just such another Chain, the Gift of *Mahomet Chan*, Governor of *Kentza*. Here we were

Are obliged to surrender their Arms. forc'd to deliver our Arms, in which Point they are so strict, that if a *Persian* should have only a Knife about him, it is Capital. The Threshold of this, as well as of all the following Gates, were round and of white Marble; and we were desired not to touch it with our Feet, because the *Persians* are wont to kiss it, but to step over it with the right Foot foremost. The Court we enter'd into, was as long as the first, but not so broad, pav'd in the same manner, and provided with vaulted Shops on both sides. On the right hand came out of the Wall, by means of a brass Cock, a fair Spring, (conveyed hither at a distance from hence;) and at the upper end of the Court to the right hand we were shew'd a very fine and large Vault, hung within with Tapestry, and pav'd at the Entrance with green and blue Stones. In the midst stood 2 large Brass Candlesticks with Lights in them, and all along the Walls sate several Priests clad in white, singing with a loud Voice, and expressing much Humility in their Devotions, moving without intermission all at once, like one Man from one side to the other, with so much exactness, that one would have believed they were all drawn by one Cord. They call this Place *Thschillachane*, because

Schich-Sefi's Fast of 40 days. *Schich-Sefi* used every year to fast in this Place for 40 days together, eating no more than one Almond a-day. Thence we were conducted thro' a third Gate, with a Silver Chain over it, as those beforementioned, (the Present of *Ali-Chan*, Governor of *Koppan*) into a less Court than the two former, pav'd with small square Stones of divers Colours. The Gate by which we enter'd into the Place, where the Sepulchre was, was built like a great Tower, the Clappers being all cover'd with Silver Plates, and adorn'd with Rings of the same Metal. The Pavement at the Entrance, which led into a large Structure, was all cover'd with Tapestry, and we were injoin'd to pull off our Shooes, which the Ambassadors having not without some Reluctancy consented to, we passed into a very large Gallery, hung and covered every where with Tapestry, and afterwards thro' another Gate covered with Plates of Gold, into another sumptuous Apartment arch'd all about. This Gate was the Gift of *Schach-Abas*, after a signal Victory obtained against the *Usbeque Tartars*. This Vault was 4 Fathom square, being inlight'ned by a great number of Gold and Silver Lamps, some of which were 3 Foot Diameter. On both sides sat 12 Priests, with Books of Parchment before them laid upon Desks, containing in *Arabick* Characters certain Chapters of the *Alchoran*, which they sung as our Monks do their Vespers, but with the same Motion we mentioned before. This Vault was divided from another by Silver Rails only, but raised higher by 3 Silver Steps. The *Chan*, and our Interpreter *Rustan*, having kiss'd these Steps, conducted the Ambassadors into it, who took only 4 of their Retinue along with them. We found this much more rich than any of the rest, and saw at one end of it a Place raised about a Foot higher from the ground, and fenc'd in with Rails of massy Gold. Behind this Partition was the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sefi*, made not of Gold, as some have perswaded the World, but of white Marble, being covered with Crimson Velvet, and raised 3 Foot above the ground: It has 9 Foot in length and 4 in breadth. From the Roof hung several Lamps of Gold and Silver, and on both sides 2 very large Candlesticks of massy Gold, with Wax-Candles lighted in the Night-time.

The Ambassadors would fain have prevail'd so far, as to have the Door of that golden Rail unlock'd, but could not, the *Persians* alledging, that no Laick, not the King himself, was permitted to enter there. We discovered on the left hand of the same Apartment where we were, a particular Vault, in which was the Tomb of *Schach-Ismael*, and that of *Schach-Sefi*'s Wife, as also those of some other Queens of *Persia*, but were not allow'd to look upon them, having only discovered thro' the Meeting of the Curtains, which were drawn at the Entrance, that there was nothing remarkable to be seen there. As we went along, we were follow'd by a grave old Fellow, who with certain Incenses purify'd all the Places thro' which we pass'd.

Laicks not permitted to approach the Sepulchre.

We were reconducted through the same Gallery to the right hand into another Apartment, arch'd all about and gilt, being without any Pillars, tho' it was as spacious as a large Church. This is a *Persian* Library they call *Tzenetsera*, consisting of Manuscripts, some upon Parchment, others upon Paper, most in *Arabick*, the rest in the *Turkish* and *Persian* Languages, all excellently painted, richly bound, and covered with Plates of Gold and Silver, carv'd and branch'd, especially the Historians, whose Books are embellish'd with several Representations in Colours; the worst is, that they are shuffled together in Drawers without any order. In several Niches on the sides, stood above 400 Porcelane Vessels, some of which were big enough to hold 10 Gallons of Liquor: These are never made use of, but upon occasion of the Entertainments, which are brought from the Sepulchre to Persons of great Quality who pass that way, they being not permitted to make use of Vessels of Gold or Silver, because *Schich-Sefi*, as they say, made use only of wooden Dishes.

A Library.

The Kitchin. We were then conducted to the Kitchin, the Doors whereof were likewise covered with Silver Plates, where every thing was disposed in a most admirable order, and the Water conveyed by many Pipes and divers Cocks all over the Kitchin; each Cook having his peculiar Place assign'd him according to his Function.

Out of this Kitchin above a 1000 Persons are provided for every Day, including those belonging to the House; the Poor having 3 times a-day, Pottage, Rice, and Meat distributed among them, *viz.* at 6 and 10 in the Morning, and at 3 in the Afternoon. For the 2 Morning Meals, *Schich-Sefi* himself has left a Foundation of 50 Crowns *per diem*, the rest is upon the King of *Persia*'s Account. Not to mention the Alms that are disposed here by private Persons, which are so excessive, that, besides what is given to the Poor, there is a sufficient Surplus sold to those who are asham'd to beg. Whilst these Distributions are made, they sound 2 Timbrels, which they say were brought by *Schach-Sedredin* from *Medina*, with the Banner of *Fatima*.

The Charity of the Place.

From the Kitchin we pass'd thro' a very fair Garden, which contained the Sepulchres of *Sultan Aider*, *Schach-*

1637. *Schach-Tamas*, and ſeveral other Kings of *Perſia*, without any other Covering but a ſmooth Stone. The other Sepulchres we ſaw, were,

Sepulchres of the Kings of Perſia.

1. *Schich-Sefi*, the Son of *Seid-Tzeibrail*.
2. *Schich-Sedredin*, the Son of *Sefi*.
3. *Schich-Tzinid*, the Son of *Sedredin*, call'd by ſome *European* Authors erroneouſly, *Guined*.
4. *Sulthan Aider*, the Son of *Tzinid*, who was flea'd alive by the *Turks*.
5. *Schich Aider*, the Son of *Sulthan Aider*.
6. *Schach-Iſmael*, the Son of *Schich-Aider*.
7. *Schach-Tamas*, the Son of *Schach-Iſmael*.
8. *Schach-Iſmael* the 2d, the Son of *Schach-Tamas*.
9. *Schach-Mahomet Choddabende*, the Son of *Schach-Iſmael*.
10. *Iſmael Myrſa*, Brother of *Choddabende*.
11. *Hemſa Myrſa*, } Sons of *Choddabende*.
12. *Schach-Abas*, }

This Sepulchre was firſt built by *Schich-Sedredin*, after the Death of his Father. *Schich-Sedredin*, after the Death of his Father; *Schich-Tzinid*, his Son, added thereto the great Court, and augmented it with many other Houſes, ſo that it now repreſents a very noble and large Caſtle, whither there is daily ſuch a Conflux of People, who come thither to diſcourſe or walk, that few Princes Courts exceed it in this reſpect. The vaſt Revenues annexed to it by ſeveral *Perſian* Kings, and the daily Preſents made to it, have ſo encreaſed its Wealth, that the ſame is computed to amount to many Millions of Gold; it being generally ſuppoſed, that it could raiſe more ready Money than the King himſelf, and to be able to maintain a very good Army in caſe of Neceſſity. For not to ſpeak of the Farms that belong to it about *Ardebil*, it has within the City 200 Houſes, 9 Publick Baths, 8 *Caravanſera's*, or Store-houſes, that great Structure call'd *Kaiſerie*, the Market-Place, with its Vaults and Shops, 100 other Shops in the *Bazar*, and the Markets where Cattle, Wheat, Salt and Oil are ſold; there being no Stall or Shop in the open Market, but what pay certain Duties to it. It is poſſeſs'd of 33 Villages and Towns, near *Ardebil*, of 5 Villages in the Province of *Serab*, of 60 Houſes and 100 Shops within the City of *Tauris*, and 2 Villages near it. Of ſeveral *Caravanſera's* and Baths in the City of *Caſuan*, and likewiſe in the Provinces of *Kilan* and *Aſtaran*, beſides certain Taxes of the Provinces of *Mokan*, *Chalchat*, *Kermeruth*, and *Haſchteruth*; not to mention here the many Preſents, Gifts, Donations, and Legacies, appropriated to the uſe of it, either in reſpect of certain Vows, or charitable Inclinations of thoſe of the *Perſian* Sect; which were received and managed by 2 Commiſſioners, call'd *Neſſirtzchan*, (from *Neſir*, *i. e.* a Vow,) who put all the Money, as likewiſe that ariſing from the Sale of the Horſes, Camels, *&c.* that bring theſe Preſents, into a great Cheſt, but cauſe the Oxen and Sheep brought thither to be kill'd for the uſe of the Poor. They are ty'd by a very ſtrict Oath to be faithful to their Truſt, and have a certain Village near the City allotted them for their Revenue.

Commiſſioners for the management of the Revenue.

The Pilgrims, at their departure, are alſo furniſhed with certain Certificates or Teſtimonials, which ſerve to them inſtead of Protections, upon many Occaſions, even to the ſaving of their Lives. Thus our Interpreter *Ruſtan*, as ſoon as he had taken a Reſolution to leave us, provided himſelf with 3 ſuch Teſtimonials, 2 of which being found among his Cloths, are preſerved to this day in his Highneſs of *Holſtein*'s Library at *Gottorp*.

Theſe Certificates, call'd *Sijaretname*, are likewiſe given at the Sepulchre of *Iman Riſa*, at *Meſchet*, which have the ſame effect as thoſe delivered at *Schich-Sefi*'s Sepulchre, in ſaving the Lives of thoſe who have forfeited them. Of this we had an Inſtance given us in *Agaſi-Beg*, which happen'd not long before our Arrival at the *Perſian* Court. This *Agaſi* attending at a certain time in the Quality of a Steward at the King's Table, *Tzirra-Chan*, a Perſon of the firſt Quality who had married lately one of the Ladies of the *Seraglio*, coming in, and being ask'd by the King what made him come ſo late, anſwer'd boldly, that he had been dallying with *Agaſi*'s Wife; at which the King bluſhing for Vexation, *Tzirra* thought fit to withdraw; but was no ſooner gone out of the Room, when the King ordered *Agaſi* to go and fetch his Head. *Agaſi* went accordingly, but inſtead of obeying the King's Orders, ſat down with *Tzirra* to be merry together; which the King being inform'd of, by a Meſſenger ſent for that purpoſe, he cry'd out, *O*, Agaſi, *poor Cuckold*! and ordered *Alieuli-Chan* to go and bring both their Heads to him. But *Agaſi* reflecting in the mean time upon his Neglect, thought fit to leave *Tzirra*; who being found at home, his Head was cut off, and brought to the King; which ſerving as a Warning to *Agaſi*, he undertook a Journey to the Sepulchre of *Iman Riſa*; whence bringing back a Certificate, he threw himſelf at the King's Feet ſometime after, who received him with theſe Words: *I commend thee for thy Wit, thou kind-hearted Cuckold, and pardon thee for* Iman Riſa's *ſake*.

The Inſolence of a Favourite punished.

1637.

The Clerks who have the management of theſe Teſtimonials, will ſometimes ſell them underhand with Blanks, to put in the Names of ſuch as may have occaſion for them: Of ſuch a one, there is a Copy extant in his Highneſs of *Holſtein*'s Library at *Gottorp*.

The Tomb of Schich Sefi's Father.

There is another Tomb in the ſame Village, built in the midſt of a fair Garden, in honour of *Seid-Tzeibrail* the Father of *Schich-Sefi*, who was only a Peaſant. It was round, raiſed 10 Steps high, adorned with Glaſs of divers Colours, and ſurrounded by Iron-grates. In the midſt of its Roof, which was Azure-gilt, and join'd by bowing Pillars, was a great round Tower of blue and green Stones: The Floor was covered with very rich Tapeſtry, and round the Walls were certain ſmall Vaults, where Children were educated and fitted for the Service of the Sepulchre. The Tomb it ſelf was about 6 Foot high, and about 4 in breadth, made of Joiners Work, the Junctures of which were faſten'd together by Copper-Plates: It was covered all over with green Velvet, and over it hung 2 golden, and as many ſilver Lamps, which were lighted every Night: Oppoſite to it ſtood a ſmall Chapel, containing the Tombs of ſeveral other Perſons of the Family of *Schich-Sefi*. The Governor of *Ardebil* is in reſpect of the Holineſs of this Place, and its being remote from the Frontiers, excuſed from the Charge of maintaining a certain number of Soldiers, as moſt of the other Governors are obliged to do: His Retinue and whole courſe of Life was very moderate, being not guilty of any Exceſs except the taking of Tabaco, (which he ſuck'd thro' a Cane put into a Glaſs of Water, according to the Cuſtom of the *Perſians*) and Coffee.

Medicinal Waters.

Near *Ardebil* are ſeveral Sources of hot Waters: That which ſprings forth at the Foot of the Mountain *Sabelan*, is lukewarm, and as clear as the fineſt Spring-water. Out of another part of the ſame Mountain ariſe 3 more very hot Springs, call'd *Meul*, *Daudau*, and *Randau*; they have ſeveral Springs of cold Water near them, which ſerves to qualifie the exceſſive Heat of theſe Springs, which are brought by Pipes into the Publick Baths. That of *Daudau* has this peculiar, that whenever certain Serpents appear in it, the Waters are accounted wholeſome, which are uſeleſs at other times.

Sulphureous Sources.

On the right ſide of the ſaid Mountain, there is a certain ſulphureous Spring, which with its Scent is diſcovered at a conſiderable diſtance: Its chief uſe is againſt the Itch, from whence it is call'd *Abcotour* by the *Perſians*. Within half a Lg of *Ardebil*, is a large Pond covered with great Pieces of Salt Peter, like a Cruſt, which is likewiſe a good Remedy againſt the Itch.

A new Mehmander to conduct the Ambaſſadors.

The 1ſt of *Jan. Abaſculi-Beg* being ſent by the King of *Perſia*, to conduct us to his Reſidence, arrived at *Ardebil*; and tho' he preſs'd our departure, yet 8 days elapſed before we did ſet out on our Journey, becauſe the Ambaſſador *Brugman* would needs carry our Cannon along with him. At laſt, after having preſented our former *Mehemander* 4 Pair of Sables, and ſeveral Ells of Cloth and Sattins, we took our leave from the *Chan*, who preſented the Ambaſſadors with a very fine Horſe each, bridled and ſaddled, beſides 2 Pieces of Sattin, and one of gold and ſilver Brocado, in return of the Preſents made to him by the ſaid Ambaſſadors; which conſiſted in 3 Pair of the fineſt Sables, a Clock, a Cellar with *Res Solis*, and 2 Pictures.

They leave *Ardebil*.

Jan. 11. Our Baggage which was loaden upon 160 Horſes and 12 Camel, was ſent away, and we follow'd the 12th, being at a Lgs diſtance from the City met by the *Chan* or Governor of *Ardebil*, in company of the *Sulthan* of *Tabris*, who conducted us into ſome of the Huts of the *Tartarian* Shepherds; and, after a Collation of cold Meat, Fruits, and Conſerves, took their laſt leave from the Ambaſſadors there, according to the Cuſtom of the *Perſians*, who never conduct thoſe they have entertain'd out of their Houſes. We travell'd all that day over craggy Mountains to the Village of *Buſnar*,

1637. 4 Lgs from *Ardebil*, where we overtook our Baggag and Artillery, but were forced to leave 6 of our largest Pieces behind us, the Carriages being quite spoil'd by the almost unpassable Ways among the Mountains.

Jan. 13. We continued our Journey in the same manner, tho' the Valleys were stor'd with many Villages and plentiful Meadows, as well as with Cattel. We travell'd that Day 5 Lgs to the Village of *Sengoa*, situate at the very entrance of the Province of *Chalcal*.

The 14th, we pass'd over high Mountains for 4 Lgs together, when coming into a pleasant Valley we there stay'd till the next Day about noon. Here I observ'd the Elev. to be 37 Dgs and 20 min. and saw certain Gras-hoppers, that were 3 Inches long, and one and an half in compass.

Large Gras-hoppers.

The 15th, we travell'd thro' a bottom, at the Foot of the Mount *Taurus*, (call'd *Perdelis* by the *Persians*) which lying betwixt 2 Mountains, is a very dangerous Passage for Travellers, by reason of the many Robberies committed here by those, who discover them at a great distance from the Mountains. For the rest, it is a most pleasant Valley, being stock'd with wild Almond-Trees, Cypress, and *Sena*-Trees.

The River *Kisilosein*.

Here it was we cross'd the River *Kisilosein*, over a Bridge of Brick containing 9 Arches. This River, which passes thro' many Precipices and Rocks, disembogues in the *Caspian Sea* in the Province of *Kilan*. We soon after came to the Ascent of the Mount, which was very steep, but winding to the very top, on both sides being nothing to be seen but most dreadful Precipices, which made us lead our Horses; but the worst was, that as soon as we got up the Mountain, we lost our way in the dark, because our *Mehemander* had staid behind, which he excused afterwards, by alledging in his behalf, that he was not able to hear the opprobrious Expressions which fell every foot from the Ambassador *Brugman*; but would take effectual Care we should be supply'd with all Necessaries, which he punctually perform'd.

After having travell'd thus at random for 3 whole hours, we got at last about midnight to a Village, called *Keintze*, where we stay'd all the next Day to refresh both our selves and Horses.

The 17th, we turn'd from the High Road to the Right Hand, and came to the Village of *Hatzimir*, situate amongst inaccessible Rocks, where we were kindly entertain'd with a Collation of Fruits, by the *Melik*, or Receiver-General of the Province.

The 18th taking our way betwixt 2 very steep Hills, we came about Midnight to a Village, call'd *Kamahl*, the Houses of which being scatter'd at a considerable distance from one another, 2 Centries were posted at the entrance of it, to give notice to the Retinue that were coming after us, where they were to be lodged.

The *Persians* attack the Ambassadors Guard.

But the *Persians* of the Village being surprized at our unexpected Arrival, got on Horse-back to the number of 20, and had certainly kill'd these Outguards, had they not been timely relieved by some of our People; whereupon 20 Fire-locks, under the Command of a Lieutenant, were order'd to keep Guard during our stay there, which was till the 20th, when early in the Morning we set out on our Journey again, and having pass'd a vast barren Heath, came about Noon to the City of *Senkan*, 6 Lgs from our last Lodgings, where we were treated with a Collation of Apricocks and Cucumers by the Governor of *Sulthanie*, who happen'd to be there at that time.

The City of Senkan.

Among many others that came to meet us at our entrance into the Suburbs, there was one on Horse-back, who without Hands or Feet managed his Horse as dexterously as the best; he having lost his Limbs as a due Punishment for his Debaucheries, by the *Schach*'s Orders.

A Man's manner of punishing Debauchees.

The City of *Senkan* was formerly very famous both for its Bigness and Traffick, till *Tamerlane*, and afterwards the *Turks*, put a period to its Ancient Glory, it being now without Walls, tho' there are still many goodly Houses to be seen here. The Grounds all about this City are very barren and sandy; and within half a Lg of it you see a Branch of the Mount *Taurus*, called *Peydar Peijamber*, extending from N. to S. towards *Kurdestan*. At the Foot of it is a most delicious Valley, full of very fine Villages.

Jan. 21. We continued our Journey, by the Light of the Moon, over a great Plain of 6 Lgs; at the farther end of which lies the City of *Sulthanie*, where we arrived by Sun-rising. But this proving a very cold Night, this sudden change threw 15 Persons of our Retinue into a burning Fever, with a benumb'dness in their Limbs.

The City of Sulthanie.

This City lies under 84 Dgs, 5 Min. Long. and 36 Dgs, 30 Min. Lat. in a very spacious Plain, which has a high Mountain on its 2 sides, especially on the right; which has mis-led Mr. *Cartwright* to affirm, that it is surrounded with a high Mountain on all sides. Some very magnificent Structures, with a great number of Steeples, the Remainders of its former Glory, shew it to have been one of the noblest Cities of *Persia* in former Ages; being still half a Lg in length, tho' the Marks on the Road to *Hamedan*, together with a certain Tower about half a Lg from the City, (part of the ancient City-Gates) are undeniable Proofs of its vast Extent. It acknowledges for its Founder *Sulthan Mahomet Chodabende*, who after he had extended his Conquests over part of the *Indies*, the *Usbeque Tartars* and *Turks* built it out of the Ruins of the ancient City of *Tigranocerta*; and having made it his Residence, gave it the Name of *Sulthanie*, the *Persian* Kings in those Days having the Name of *Sulthan*, which they have changed since into that of *Schach*. This City having rebell'd against their King *Chorza Reschid*, he destroy'd part of it, but its Ruin was accomplish'd by *Tamerlane*. There are yet to be seen here the noble Ruins of the Royal Palace, or rather a Castle, the Walls of which are built of most excellent Free-stone, strength'ned with a great many quadrangular Towers; but what exceeds all the rest, is the *Mosque*, which contains, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet Chodabende*. Its 3 Gates, which are much higher than those of St. *Mark*'s Church at *Venice*, being of the finest polish'd Steel, and not of Brass, as *Bizarrus* tells us.

1637.

Its Founder.

The *Persians* very confidently affirm, that the largest of these 3 Gates which faces the Market-place, can't be open'd by 20 of the lustiest Men, unless they pronounce these Words *Beask Aly Bukscha*, i. e. *Be open'd for* Haly's *sake*; which one, they say, a Child may open it. The Roof of this *Mosque*, which grows narrow by degrees towards the top, is made of white and blue Stones, with very fine Characters and Figures done upon them. That Part of the *Mosque*, where the Tomb of *Chodabende* is erected, is parted from the rest by brass Rails, within which we saw divers Books above half an Ell square, written in *Arabick* Characters of the length of a Man's Finger, and black and golden Lines alternatively. I got some few Leaves of them which are to be seen in his Highness of *Holstein*'s Library at *Gottorp*, and contain a certain Paraphrase upon the *Alchoran*, call'd *Seratt Elkulab*, i. e. *The Candle of the Heart*.

The Tomb of *Chodabende*.

The Tomb of *Sulthan Mahomet Chodabende*, which stands at that end of the *Mosque* where the Altar stands, is surrounded with a certain Grate of such excellent Workmanship, that nothing like it is to be seen all over *Persia*, being of *Indian* Steel, polish'd and wrought Damask-wise, each Bar being of the bigness of a Man's Arm, and so artificially join'd together, that some affirm to this day, that it is all of a piece. The Tower belonging to this *Mosque* was built in Form of an Octogon, encompass'd with a Gallery containing 8 lesser Towers; the Artillery consisted of 20 brass Guns and a Mortar-piece, besides 4 Cannon fit for Battery. The Balls were all of Marble. At the Entrance of this *Mosque* is a square Fountain, which is supply'd with Water from a Spring out of the Mountain *Keider*. It has also a pleasant Garden and fair Summer-house belonging to it. Another noted *Mosque* of this City is that founded by *Schach Ismael*. Over the great Gate at its Entrance is a round Tower, and within the Court a very noble Pyramid, somewhat endamaged at the top, standing in the midst of 8 fine Marble Pillars. The *Mosque* within is very high and well arched, the Roof being sustained by a great number of fine Pillars, with convenient Galleries, and a rich Pulpit in the midst. The Garden belonging to this *Mosque* has a Tower in the middle, whose Point ends in a Pyramid.

Those noble remainders of Antiquity seem to be so many Instances of what (*a*) *Paulus Jovius*, and *F. Perodin* affirm of *Tamerlane*, that tho' also the most barbarous Conqueror that ever the World beheld, yet always shew'd a general respect for every thing that was accounted Sacred.

(*a*) L. 14. Hist. Basil. Tamerlane.

Near this *Mosque* are also to be seen the Ruins of a Triumphal Arch of Free-stone, resting upon 2 Pillars of 20 Fathom high.

And here my Curiosity leading me to enquire after what has been asserted with so much Confidence by some *European* Travellers, *viz.* that they are forced here-

1637. hereabouts to change their Habitations, by reason of the excessive Cold, the *Persians* were much surprized thereat, this being ordinarily the effect, not of the Cold, but the Heat in *Persia*. Perhaps they have been misled into this Error, because they had understood that in some Places of *Persia*, especially about *Ervan*, where Firing is very scarce, the Inhabitants quit their upper Rooms, and retire into their Vaulted Cellars deep under ground, which in the Winter are to them a Defence against the Cold, as well as in the Summer against the excessive Heat.

The *Persian* Women travel in Chests.

After a stay of 3 Days at *Sulthanie*, we continued our Journey the 25th, our sick and weak Persons being disposed into certain Chests or Pannels, as the *Persian* Women travel in, and are put upon Camels-backs, like Carriers Packs. The stink of the Camels, which preceded that in a direct Line on which our Physician and I were mounted, was almost insupportable to us, during all that Days Journey, in which we made 6 Lgs thro' very fertile Grounds, leaving the Hills, called *Tzikitziki* to the left, where the best Race-Horses and Mares of the *Persian* Kings, are kept for Breed, and dined at the Village of *Chorandah*, i. e. *A Place of Pleasure*, by reason of the many Gardens belonging to it, situate upon a little River.

The 26th and 27th, we travell'd about 10 Lgs, and by Sun-rising came within sight of the City of *Caswin*, or *Cashan*, and stay'd 2 hours at an adjacent Village, till the *Daruga* or Judge, who commanded there in Chief, was ready to receive us; who accordingly came to meet us without the Gates, being accompany'd by 500 or 600 Persons, Horse and Foot. A certain *Indian* Prince also did us the same Honour, being attended by some of his own Country-men on Horse-back, and a considerable number of Pages and Footmen, which followed the Chariot in which he and another Person sat, and was drawn by 2 white Oxen with very short Necks, and a Bunch betwixt their Shoulders. The Charioteer sat before upon the Chariot, which being covered above run upon 2 Wheels, which instead of an Axel-Tree rested and turned upon an Iron Bar, which was crooked in the middle. He managed these Oxen as dexterously as we do our Horses, the Beam or Pole being fasten'd to their Horns, by means of a Cord drawn thro' their Nostrils.

Among the rest that appear'd in the Field to honour our Entry, there were 15 young Ladies mounted on very fine Horses, richly attired and adorned with very valuable Pearl-Necklaces, Pendants, and other Jewels, who as they appear'd bare-faced contrary to the *Persian* Custom, so they soon discovered themselves by their whole Demeanor, to be some of the most eminent Courtezans of the City. They entertain'd us with their Hautboyes, and a kind of Bag-pipes, all the way to our Lodgings, which was quite on the other end of it.

Caswin, the ancient *Arsacia*.

The City of *Caswin*, call'd *Arsacia* by the Ancients, is one of the first rank among the Cities of the Province of *Erak*, (the Ancient *Parthia*) which comprehends all the Cities from *Sulthania* as far as *Ispahan*. I found the Elevation here (which is conformable to the Calculation both of the *Arabians* and *Persians*) at 85 Dgs Log. and 36 Dgs 15 Min. Lat. It is seated in a great sandy Plain, the Mount *Elwend* beginning within half a Days Journey thence to the W. reaching to the S. W. as far as *Babylon*. Its Compass is about a *Germ.* Lg, but without any Fortifications or Garrison, and contains 100000 Inhabitants. They do indeed make

Its Language peculiar.

use here of the *Persian* Language, but their Dialect is as much different from the other *Persians*, as the *Low Dutch* is from the *German*. Their Houses are of Brick, without any Ornaments on the outside, but very well fitted and furnished within. The greatest Defect here is, that the Water is brought into this Place by Pipes as far as the Mountain *Elwend*, and that the Streets are very dusty, because they are not paved. Their Vaults are very convenient for the keeping of the Snow and Ice, and serve them for retiring Places against the Heat of the Summer.

This City was once the Residence of the *Persian* Kings, after *Schach-Tamas* (some say *Schach-Ismael*) transferred it thither from *Tauris*; who was also the

The Royal Palace and Gardens.

Founder of the Royal Palace near the Market-place, with a very fair Garden behind it, adorned with all the Embellishments used amongst the *Persians*. Directly opposite to this Palace is to be seen the most pleasant Garden that can be imagined, being half a Lg in compass, stor'd with vast numbers of Fruit-Trees of all sorts, and many spacious Walks of Cypress and the Trees called *Tzinnar*, which afford a most delightful Prospect. 1637.

It has 2 Market-Places, the biggest of which *Cartwright* calls by a mistake *Atmaidan*, i. e. *The Horse-Market*, instead of *Almaidan*. *al*, being the Article, and *Maidan* the Word, used for a Place where all sorts of things are exposed to Publick Sale. This Market-Place is longer, but not so broad as that of *Ardebil*, and has on the South-side several magnificent Structures, belonging to divers *Chans* and other *Persian* Lords. The other Market, call'd *Senke-Maidan*, lies to the W. both these Markets are full of Shops and Store-houses, where vast Quantities of Merchandizes, and among the rest, Rubies, Granates, and Turquoises are sold at a very cheap rate. I my self bought of that kind of *Turquoises*, they call *Firuse*, and are found near *Nisabur* and *Firuska*, as big as a large Pea, and some as big as a Horse-Bean, at 2 *s.* and 2 *s.* 6 *d.* a-piece.

Its Market-Places.

Turquoises very cheap.

In the Market on the E. side, after Shops are shut up, great numbers of Prostitutes are found sitting in a row, their Faces covered with Veils. The Bawd stands behind them, with a Quilt or Bed at hand, and an unlighted Candle, which she lights as soon as any body appears to cheapen her Ware; if, after they have looked upon several, the Bargain be struck, they follow her to a certain Place to accomplish the Matter.

The *Mosque*, which contains the Tomb of *Schach-Sade Hossein*, one of the Sons of *Hossein* lies also on the East-side of the City. At this, as well as at the Sepulchres of all their other Saints, or their next Kindred, the Oaths in Law-Suits are administred by the *Persians*, which is the reason, that whenever they question the Truth of a thing, they will ask, *Darest thou avouch this upon the Saints Sepulchre, or upon the Alchoran*? It has about 50 more *Mosques*, a great many *Caravansera's*, for the Accommodation of foreign Merchants, and many Publick Baths; among the last of which, that call'd *Haman Charabe*, behind the Royal Gardens, is most celebrated, tho' it be half destroy'd, by reason of a certain Story related by the *Persians* of a certain *Arabian* Physician, named *Lockman*, who living here, did upon his Death-bed deliver to his Son 3 Vials fill'd with certain Liquors, which he said had the Vertue of raising the Dead to Life, provided the Body were not corrupted; so, that upon the pouring of the first Glass upon the Deceased, the Soul would return, and exert some of its Functions: That at the pouring out of the second, the Body would raise it self upright; and at the third, the Body would be restored to a perfect State of Health. His Son, having very carefully observed his Father's Instructions, resolved to keep these Bottles till he might have occasion for them himself; and, pursuant to his Instructions, his Servant having caused his deceased Body to be brought into this Bath, poured upon it the 2 first Glasses one after another; which having the Effect proposed by *Lockman*, he began to raise himself upright, and to cry out to his Servant, *Bris, bris*, i. e. *Pour, pour*, at which the Fellow being sorely frighten'd, let fall the third Bottle, so that his Master for want of farther Relief, was obliged to pursue his former Journey to the other World. The *Persians*, being extremely addicted to such like Fabulous Stories, affirm positively that the Words, *Bris, bris*, are sometimes heard to this day in the Bath; whence it is, that so many Impostors have from time to time been seen among them.

The Tomb of the Son of *Hossein*.

The Fable of *Lockman*.

Such another Impostor was *Risa*, who not many Years before assuming the Name of *Schich*, or Prophet, had in a little time got above 30000 Followers: But *Schach-Abas*, fearing, not without reason, the ill Consequences of this Novelty, sent for him to Court, under pretence that he was desirous to be inform'd concerning his Doctrine. Upon which he being come accordingly, and the King requiring he should confirm it by Miracles, which he was not able to do, he caused him to be put to death.

Risa, an Impostor.

And before we leave *Caswin*, it will not be beyond our Scope to give a short Account of the Occasion which had brought so great an *Indian* Prince, as *Polagi* was by his Descent, into those Parts. This *Polagi* being left very young, after his Father the *Great Mogul*'s Decease, the sole Heir of that vast Empire, the Crown was usurped by *Choram* his Uncle, who was King of *Indosthan*, , or *Great Mogul*, at the time of our abode in *Persia*; and as he sought to establish himself in the Throne by all manner of Cruelties, so he soon lost the Affection of the People, who began to cast their Eyes upon *Polagi*, the Rightful Heir, and then arrived to an Age of Maturity; *Choram* resolved to dispatch *Polagi*;

The History of Prince *Polagi*.

1637. *Iagi*; which he having timely notice of, sought for shelter in *Persia*, and had for some Years past resided at *Ispahan*, where the *Schach* allow'd him 12000 Crowns *per Annum* for his Maintenance; but upon occasion of a late Embassy from his Uncle, sent to the *Persian* Court, to demand him, was sent out of the way to *Casmin*, the *Persians* not being inclined to grant the *Mogul*'s Request. The Ambassadors sent some of their Retinue (it being against the Custom of *Persia* for foreign Ministers to make any Visits in Person, before they have had Audience of the King) to pay a Visit to the said Prince, whom they found sitting upon a Velvet Cushion, and a very rich Piece of Tapestry near the Basin of a Fountain, being attended by a great number of Servants. He received them with extraordinary Demonstrations of Kindness, and entertain'd them with Wine and Fruits. The Kings of *Persia* have for a considerable time ago always look'd upon it as one of their great Maxims of State, to grant their Protection to the distressed *Indian* Princes of *Industhan*, which has often stood them in no small stead, by reason of the Neighbourhood of this potent Empire on the side of *Candahor*. Of this, and the fomenting the intestine Divisions of the *Indosthans*, we have divers Instances in the Reigns of *Schach-Ismael*, and *Schach-Tamas*, especially in that of the last, who upon the same Account afforded his Protection to *Humajun*, the Rightful Heir of that Crown; which being usurped by his Uncle, he was forced to fly into *Persia*: But being demanded by the Usurper, and *Schach-Tamas*, who was then engaged in a War against the *Turks*, and consequently unwilling to disoblige so potent a Prince, caused the said *Humajun* to be hidden in a Cage, which was hung into a Tree, whilst the *Mogul*'s Ambassadors had their Audience; unto whom he solemnly protested, that *Humajun was not upon his Lands*, and so dismiss'd them. but no sooner had he concluded a Peace with the *Turks*, but he put the said *Humajun* at the Head of a gallant Army, who soon forced his Uncle to quit the Throne.

A Visit paid to the said Prince.

Why the *Persians* afford Protection to the *Indosthan* Princes.

July 2. *Damga*, or Chief Judge of the City of *Casmin*, gave to the Ambassadors an Entertainment of Vaulting and Wrestling, under Tents pitch'd for that purpose in the Market-place, which was perform'd with wonderful Activity, and Strength of Body. This was follow'd by a Conflict betwixt 2 Rams, and a Fight betwixt 2 Birds, not much bigger than the common Parrots, who fought with more than ordinary Animosity. This Shew was concluded with the bringing in of 8 very large Wolves, who being fasten'd to Ropes, were several times let out among the common People, that stood in a Circle, but were drawn back without doing any harm. At last a certain Person clad with a thick-quilted Coat, took up to one of the Wolves, and carried him out of the Circle.

Divertisement made for the Ambassadors.

Prince *Polugi* would fain have given the Ambassadors the Divertisement of his Elephant; but he being at Grass, they did not think fit to stay for his coming. However we had sight of this monstrous Beast afterwards, which exceeded in heighth two of the tallest Men, and his Legs were bigger than any Man in the Waste, with his Ears hanging down by the Head half an Ell in length. He was guided by a little Boy, by touching his Forehead with a small, but well-pointed Pole-Axe, by which means he made him do many tricks, and to rise and lie down as he thought fit, which contradicts the fabulous Relations of those who affirm the want of Joints in the Elephants Legs. We told you before, that towards the S. S. W. of *Casmin* was the Mount *Elwend*, (which is a Branch of the Mount *Taurus*.) This Mountain is chiefly famous for its vast Quantity of the noblest white Marble Quarries, wherewith the whole Kingdom is supply'd from hence.

A monstrous Elephant.

They leave *Casmin*.

June 13. We left *Casmin* in the Night-time, and the 14th travelled thro' a Plain of 3 Lgs to the Village of *Alembre*, the Houses of which appear'd at a distance like Ovens, being all vaulted on the top. Here the Ambassador *Crusius* also felt his share of those Distempers, that had afflicted all the rest except Mr. *Maldelsloe*, who had not the least Symptoms of any Disease, during all the time of our Travels. We made 7 Lgs the next following Night; and the 15th, early in the Morning, came to a fair Village, named *Arasenc*, where we refresh'd ourselves with Pomegranates and Almonds. We continued our Journey the same Evening over a smooth Mountain or 6 Lgs, and lodged the 16th in the Morning at a *Caravansera*, named *Choskem*, built of Free-stone, with many Chambers and Vaults round a spacious Court, in the midst whereof was a very fine Well surrounded with Iron Rails. On the Walls many Persons of all Nations had left their Names behind, in remembrance of their Passage that way. 1637.

Having travell'd that Night nine Leagues, we came the 17th before Sun-rising within sight of the City of *Saba*, seated in a spacious Plain within sight of the Mountain of *Elwend*. The *Persians* put this City at 84 Dgs Long. and 35 Dgs Lat. but I found it at 34 Dgs, 50 Min. Lat. The Ruins of the City of *Rhei*, which is a good Days Journey from hence towards the E. is under the same Parallel. The Ground hereabouts being barren, and of a reddish Colour, which the *Persians* attribute to a certain Malediction, on the account of one *Omar*, who being the only Person among all the Captains of *Medina* that would serve against *Hossein*, had the City of *Rhei* with its Territories bestow'd upon him; but *Hossein* being kill'd in the said War, his Death brought upon that Country the Colour and Barrenness of the Ground.

The City of *Saba*.

The City of *Saba* tho' it be of no great Extent, and its Houses be much ruin'd, makes a very fair Show from without, by reason of its many Towers, and some Publick Structures. The Walls are only of Earth; but the most excellent Fruits, especially of Pomegranates and Almonds, which their Gardens produce in great abundance, make an ample amends for these Defects; and at the Foot of the Mountain there grows such a vast Quantity of Cotton and Rice, that the Inhabitants drive a great Trade with them.

Excellent Fruits.

We set out from thence the same Night, and having travell'd above 6 Lgs, came the 18th by Sun-rising to a *Caravansera*, call'd *Schach Ferabath*. The Heat being very excessive, our Tents were order'd to be set up abroad; but the Wind coming upon us like the Blasts of an Oven, about Noon we retired into the *Caravansera*.

The 19th we travell'd 5 Lgs farther, and came in the Morning before the City of *Kom*, where we were received by the *Damga* at the Head of 50 Gentlemen on Horse-back, and under the sound of the Timbrels, Hautboyes, and Fifes, several Tumblers who made use of Stilts, shewing many Tricks of Activity at the same time. The *Persians* place it at 85 Dgs, 40 Min. Long. and at 34 Dgs, 45 Min. Lat. But according to the most exact Observation I could make, I found the 20th of *July* precisely at Noon, that the Sun was 74 Dgs, 8 Min. above the Horizon, and the declination taken upon the same Meridian 18 Dgs, 35 Min. so that the Elevation of the Pole was no more than 34 Dgs, 17 Min. The City of *Kom*, call'd *Gurianx* by *Ptolemy*, is situate in a Place on the right hand of the Mount *Elwend*. The Ruine of its Walls shew it to have been of a much larger Extent, than it now is. A small River, which arising from 2 different Springs out of the same Mountain, and joining its Chanel near this City, passes thro' some part of it, which as it is no small Convenience for their Traffick, so it sometimes does considerable damage, of which an Instance was given us, which happen'd not above 3 years before our Arrival, when the Banks of this River being overflown, by reason of the Snow which the sudden Heat of the Spring had melted, the Current carried away above 1000 Houses. The Gardens, of which there is a vast number, produce, amongst other sorts of Fruits which are most excellent here, a certain kind of Melons, call'd *Scammame*, being of the bigness of an *Orange*, of an admirable Scent, and much more luscious Taste than any other Melons; the Rind is spotted with Spots of divers Colours. We saw some of the same kind at *Ardebil*,; *Grotius* in his (*a*) *Arabick Lexicon* gives a large Account of them. This Place affords also Cucumers of an extraordinary Size, call'd *Canchioner*; they are 2 Foot long, of the thickness of a Man's Arm, and grow crooked in Form of a bended Arm. The *Persians* pickle them with Vinegar only, but they have but an indifferent Taste.

The City of *Kom*.

A certain kind of Melons.

(*a*) P. 1309.

The Grounds hereabouts are very fertile of all sorts of Grain and Cotton; but the chiefest Commodities belonging to this City, are Earthen-pots and Sword-blades; these last made here being accounted the best of all *Persia*, and sold sometimes at the rate of 5 *l.* a-piece. The Mountain of *Demawend*, which is very rich in *Iron* Mines, furnishes them with the Materials for these Blades. Their Earthen Ware, but especially the great Pitchers made in this Place, are in great Esteem all over *Persia*, both for their Workmanship and the Repute they have got of keeping Water fresh and sweet, even in the greatest Heat of the Summer. We found some of the Inhabitants very light finger'd here, and many of our People were seized with the bloody Flux,

In Traffick.

1637. Flux, occaſion'd by the exceſſive Uſe of Melons, and other cooling Fruits.

They leave Kom. *July* 21. We left *Kom* after Sun-ſet, and having travell'd 5 Lgs that Night, ſtay'd the 22d at a great Village, call'd *Kaſmabath*, where we obſerved all the Houſes of a whole Street built in the Nature of one continued Arch or Vault.

The 23d, we made 7 Lgs to the Village of *Senſen*, where we were entertain'd with freſh Proviſions and Fruits brought thither on purpoſe from *Katſchan*, which is 5 Lgs from hence. In this Village dy'd one of our *Perſian* Interpreters, named *Gregory*, being a *Muſcovite* by Birth, but circumciſed in *Perſia*.

The Night following, we loſt alſo 2 *Muſcovian* Servants of our Retinue, and came the 24th early in the Morning to *Katſchan*, which made us halt for ſome time, till the *Damga* could get ready to receive us, which he did accordingly without the City, at the Head of a Company of 50 Gentlemen on Horſeback, with ſeveral ſumptuous led Horſes covered with Lyons-skins; and at the very Entrance into the City we ſaw 2 black *Indian* Oxen of a vaſt bulk, with Bells about their Necks, and Plumes of Feathers on their Heads and Cruppers. This *Damga* had formerly been a Footman to *Schach-Sefi*, when as yet being very young, he was forced to lie concealed for fear of his Grandfather *Schach-Abas*; and being deſtitute of Money, ſold the ſaid Footman for 15 *Tumains* (making about 75 Piſtols) but coming to the Crown, redeem'd him, and gave him the Government of *Katſchan*.

Come to Katſchan.

The City of *Katſchan* lies, according to the Computation of the *Perſians*, at 84 Dgs Long. and 34 of Lat. But by 3 Days ſucceſſive Obſervation, I found it to be at 33 Dgs and 51 Min. Lat. which is 9 Min. leſs. Its Length from E. to W. is above half a *Germ.* Lg. being ſituate in a large fertile Plain, whence may be diſcovered to the Right hand the Mount *Elwend* (*Taurus*) the Walls and Baſtions are of a kind of Potters Clay.

The City of Katſchan.

The King's Garden, which is near this City, has a Summer-Houſe in the midſt of it, which is ſaid to have 1000 Doors and Windows, comprehending thoſe that lead into the Galleries and Balconies. Here the King reſides when he comes to *Katſchan*. This City may be placed among thoſe of the firſt Rank of this Kingdom, being not only very populous, but alſo famous for the Concourſe of foreign Merchants, and eſpecially of the *Indians*, who have their peculiar Quarter aſſign'd them here. Their Private Buildings are generally very well built, and their Publick Structures ſuch as their Store-Houſes, Galleries, and Caravanſera's, beyond what is to be ſeen in moſt other Cities in thoſe Parts. The Silk-weavers work here in open Places: Their circumjacent Fields are ſo fruitful in all manner of Grain, Wine, and Fruits, that, as *Cartwright* has well obſerved, even the pooreſt ſort don't want ſome Delicacies. Their greateſt Want is freſh Water, which they are forced to dig for very deep under ground, and is muddy and ill taſted. Notwithſtanding all this Plenty, there are Beggars in this Place as well as elſewhere, which proceeds from the idle Temper of the *Perſians*, who leave moſt of their Buſineſs to their Slaves, whilſt they walk abroad to take their Pleaſure.

1000 Doors in one House.

The Country about *Katſchan* abounds more in venomous Creatures, than any other Part of *Perſia*, which has given Birth to the *Perſian* Proverb, *Akrab-Katſchan be deſtet ſenet, May the Scorpion of* Katſchan *pinch thee by the hand.* They are very black, of the length and thickneſs of a Man's Finger, not unlike our Crab-Fiſhes, but ſomewhat ſhorter, and walk faſter; with their Tails always ſticking up. The Inhabitants aſſured us, that they ſeldom hurt any Strangers, which I ſuppoſe to proceed from their being more careful of themſelves in this Point; tho' the Natives alſo preſerve themſelves againſt them, by laying their Beds upon Frames at a pretty diſtance from the ground.

Scorpions.

Their Sting proves ſeldom mortal, the preſent Remedy uſed againſt it, being a Piece of Copper Money they call *Puli*, which they put upon the Wound, and after 24 hours take it off again, and apply a Plaiſter of Honey and Vinegar. I had the Misfortune of being ſtung by ſuch a Scorpion at *Scamachie*, in our Return from *Iſpahan*, which occaſioned a Swelling on my Mouth, of a Finger's length, attended with an exceſſive Pain; but by the help of ſome Oil of Scorpions immediately apply'd to the Wound, and a good Doſe of *Venice* Treacle taken inwardly, the Pain was allay'd in 3 hours, and quite remov'd in 2 days after; tho' at certain Intervals I felt certain Remnants of a pricking Pain, eſpecially in *Autumn*, for ſeveral Years after. 1637.

A Remedy against them.

There is alſo another ſort of Inſect, not unlike a Spider, found hereabouts in ſtony Places, under a certain Herb, call'd *Tremne* by the *Perſians*, and *Jauchſchan* by the *Turks*, being much like our Wormwood, but that it has ſomewhat larger Leaves, and a ſtronger Scent. This Inſect, which is about 2 Inches round with many Spots, the *Perſians* call *Enkureck*, being the ſame the *Latins* call *Stellio*, and the *Spaniards* and *Italians*, *Tarantola*. It does not emit its Poiſon by ſtinging or biting, but by letting it fall like a drop of Water, which occaſions an inſupportable Pain in the Part where it faſtens; and communicating its Venom inceſſantly to the Stomach, ſends up from thence ſuch ſtrong Vapours to the Head, that they put the ſick Party into a profound Sleep, from which he is not to be awakened, but by applying one of the ſame Creatures cruſh'd upon the Wound. But if any of the ſame Creatures are not to be found, they take the following Courſe. After they have laid the Patient upon his Back, they pour as much Milk down his Mouth as poſſibly they can: This done, they lay him upon a Bier, faſten'd with Cords on the four Corners to a Beam; then turning the Bier about till the Cords are twiſted, they let it go back on a ſudden, ſo that by the untwiſting of the Ropes, and the violent Agitation occaſion'd thereby in the Head, the Stomach diſcharges it ſelf of the Milk, which appears greeniſh, by reaſon of the Poiſon, as is alſo a certain Matter, which iſſues from his Yard, not without exceſſive Pain. Thoſe that are cured in this manner, feel commonly ſome Remnants of this Pain once a-year at the ſame Seaſon. The Sheep are greedy after this Animal, nay, feed upon it.

Another venomous Creature.

The Remedy against it.

The Inhabitants of *Katſchan* tell an old Story of a certain Miller, call'd *Schutza Adin*, who having kill'd *Omar ben Alchitabi*, the third Succeſſor of *Mahomet*, was rewarded by *Haly*, who was to ſucceed him, with a Letter to the *Caſi* of *Katſchan*; ordering him to give his Daughter in Marriage to the Miller; and to haſten his Journey thither from *Medina*, lent him his Horſe *Duldul*, which carried him from thence in one Night to *Katſchan*, being 200 Lgs, and then vaniſh'd. Hence it is, that *Molla Haſſan Kaſchi*, one of their *Arabian* Interpreters ſays, *I ſerve the King of Kings, whoſe* (*Horſe*) Duldul *in one Night carried the Miller from* Medina *to* Katſchan.

The Story of Haly's Horſe.

The 26th of *July* at Night we left *Katſchan*, and having made 6 Lgs, came the next Morning to the *Caravanſera*, call'd *Chotza Kaſſim*, but pitch'd our Tents in a Garden near a pleaſant Rivulet.

They leave Katſchan.

The next following Night we made above 6 Lgs through barren Grounds, and the 28th, by 4 in the Morning arrived in the little City of *Nateus*, call'd *Nethas* by *Contarine*. Here we were lodged in a very convenient *Caravanſera*; but what we thought eſpecially worth our Obſervation here, were 2 high peaked Mountains on our right hand, upon one of which ſtood a great Tower, built there, as they ſay, by *Schach-Abas*, in memory of one of his Faulcons, who there kill'd an Eagle. Mr. *Mandelſlo* having the Curioſity to take a view of it, found it built of Brick, of an Octogonal Form, and 8 Paces diameter at the bottom, but grew narrower to the top, where it had many Windows to let in the Light on all ſides. It is almoſt ſurpriſing how they ſhould be able to bring the Materials up to the top of ſo high a Mountain, which coſt Mr. *Mandelſlo* 3 hours hard work to get up to, and as many to come down again.

Come to Natus.

The 29th we travell'd 4 Lgs over a great Mountain, and the next following as many more, and lodged in the Village of *Kuk* at the Judge's Houſe. After a ſtay of about 24 hours, we departed thence before Day-break, and after a Journey of 2 Leagues came to one of the King's Houſes, where we were quarter'd in the Royal Gardens.

The 3d of *Aug.* early in the Morning, word being brought us that we ſhould make our Entrance that day into *Iſpahan*, we were within a quarter of a Lg from the City met by one of the Chief Officers of the Court, named *Iſachan-Beg*, at the Head of 300 Horſemen, and ſoon after by 2 conſiderable *Armenian* Lords, who accompany'd the Ambaſſadors to their Lodgings, the Streets, nay even the tops of the Houſes of the Streets thro' which they paſs'd, being crowded with the People, tho' the Duſt that was raiſed by the Horſes was ſo thick, that it was impoſſible to diſcern any thing at any great diſtance.

Make their Entrance into Iſpahan.

We

We pass'd thro' the Market-Place near the Royal Place into the Suburbs, call'd *Tzulisa*, where we were lodged in the Quarter assign'd to the Chief *Armenians*, who are Christians. We were no sooner alighted, but the ordinary Provisions were brought out of the King's Kitchen. The Table-Cloth, which was laid on the Floor in the Ambassadors Room, was of fine Silk, upon which were set 30 Silver Dishes full of divers sorts of liquid and dry Preserves and raw Fruits, as Melons, Citrons, Quinces, Pears, and some others not commonly known in *Europe*. Then the Cloth being taken away, and another put in its room, the second Course was brought in, consisting of 50 Silver Dishes, with Rice of all Colours, boil'd and roasted Mutton, tame Fowl, Fish, Eggs, and Pyes, besides Sallat-dishes.

Are entertain'd out of the King's Kitchen.

Soon after Dinner, the Director for the *Dutch East-India* Company, whose Name was *Nicholas Jacobson Overschle*, and afterwards Governor of *Ceylon*, came to pay the Ambassadors a Visit, he was entertain'd with Plenty of Wine, and was so open-hearted, as to declare that he had received Orders to oppose our Negotiation, but that for the rest we might expect all Personal Civilities from him.

Are visited by the Dutch Director.

Scarce were we become sensible of the Joy we had conceived at our Arrival in the *Persian* Court, but a very sinister Accident interrupted our Satisfaction: For a Quarrel arising betwixt a Servant of our *Mehemander*, and a Domestick of an *Indian* Ambassador, sent thither by the *Great Mogul*, who with a Retinue of 300 Persons lodged not far from us; Matters rise to that heighth, that an *Indian* was kill'd by some of our Fusileers, and the rest pursued to their Quarters. The *Indians* were so exasperated, at it, that a few days after, *viz.* the 7th of *Aug.* when we were removing some of our Baggage, in order to send it to another Lodging which we had provided for us in the City, some of their Retinue set upon a Footman belonging to our Steward, kill'd him, and cut off his Head, and ty'd his Body to a Horse's Tail. The Ambassadors had no sooner notice of it, but they order'd all their Domesticks, that lay scatter'd up and down in the Suburbs, to repair to their Lodgings; but before they could put this in execution, the *Indians* had already possess'd themselves of all the Avenues leading thither; so that our Men were forced to fight their way thro' them, in which Attempt several were mortally wounded; tho' at last they got to the Ambassadors House, which being in the Corner of a narrow Street, we gall'd the *Indians* with our Firelocks; but they retreating behind an adjacent Wall, thro' which they had made holes, they answered us briskly with their Arrows, one of which passing thro' my Hair, stuck into a Post near by me. Their Arrows were very light, being made of Canes, but withal so swift and piercing, that they did as much Execution among our Men, who unwarily exposed themselves, as if they had used Firelocks. One of our Canoneers was thus kill'd, whilst he was levelling a Piece of Canon against them. One *Murraya Scotch* Sergeant being eager to revenge his Death, charged the *Indians* so furiously, that he slew 5 or 6 of them, till an Arrow taking him directly in the Breast he pluck'd it out again, and having kill'd another with his Firelock, fell down dead upon the Spot; which contradicts what *Curtius* says of the *Indian* Arrows: *Binum cubitorum sunt sagittæ, quas exercitus major nisi, quam effectu; quippe telum, cujus in levitate vis omnis est, inhabili pondere oneratur.* The number of the *Indians* increasing, it was thought convenient for our People to retreat into our outward Court; but the *Indians* breaking into the next adjacent House, so severely gall'd them from thence, that they were also forced to get on the top of our House, where they did great Execution among the *Indians*, their Leader being kill'd here among others by a Pistol-shot discharged at him by Mr. *Mandelslo*: But as this loss rather increased than abated their Fury; to the Ambassadors beginning to be doubtful of the Event, order'd some adjoining Walls belonging to the *Armenians* to be broke down, thereby to secure our Retreat, and in case of Necessity to further our Escape. But the *Indians* closely pursuing our Men, and the *Armenians* who were Spectators of the Combat wishing well to us, but not daring to stir in our behalf, we had but a slender Relish of the Pleasantness of these Gardens, which we dreaded would prove our Burial-place. Things being come to this Extremity, we were seasonably relieved by the most welcome Messenger of Peace that ever was seen: For the King having received Notice of this Tumult, had immediately sent this Officer with 100 chosen Men to our Relief, who being join'd by some of the Inhabitants, were no sooner discovered by the *Indians*, but they dispersed immediately; and the King being inform'd of the true occasion of it, which was the Murther of our Steward's Footman, was for having cut the *Indian* Ambassador's hands off, had he not been diverted from this Design by the Chancellor; however, Orders were sent him in a few Days after, to depart the Kingdom. In the mean while they had broken open our Chests, and plunder'd most of our Baggage, the loss of which amounting to 4000 Crowns, the King demanded an Account of it, in order to make it good; which good Design was however disappointed by the Mismanagement of one of the Chiefest Persons of the Embassy. In this Engagement, which lasted 4 hours, we lost 5 Men, and had 10 wounded; the loss of the *Indians* amounted to 24, and many more wounded.

1637.

Is stop'd by the King's Authority.

A bloody Quarrel with some Indians.

E. S. Hist.

This *Indian* Ambassador was a *Myrsa*, or Prince, sent by the *Great Mogul* to demand the *Myrsa Polagi*, (whom we spoke of before) Nephew to the then reigning *Mogul Chroamscha*, who had been forced to quit his Kingdom, and seek for shelter in *Persia*. His Errand being such as was not much approved of by the *Persians*, the Court detain'd him 3 whole Years before he was admitted to Publick Audience, when at last the King of *Persia* gave him for Answer, that it would be a breach of the Laws of Hospitality, to deliver up a Person who had made his Kingdom his Refuge; and that he was obliged to protect his Guest, till he thought fit to withdraw himself. They had however in the mean time treated him with all imaginable Honour, the King of *Persia* giving him 3000 *Tumains* (which make 50000 Crowns) to defray the Expence of his House-keeping, during his stay at *Ispahan*; as on the other hand, the said Ambassador had lived with a great deal of Magnificence, the Presents which he had made to the King of *Persia*, amounting in all above 10000 Crowns.

The Indian Ambassador's abode in Persia.

After his departure from *Ispahan*, the Court of *Persia*, to shew their Dissatisfaction at this late Engagement with our People, order'd *Hassan Chan*, Governor of the Province of *Herath* towards the *Indian* Frontiers, to stop 400 or 500 *Persian* Horses, which the Ambassador had bought up for his own use, the *Indian* Horses being both small and ill-shap'd; which was put in execution accordingly, notwithstanding the Remonstrances and Threats of the said Ambassador, who was forced to sell them upon the Frontiers for what the *Persians* thought fit to give for them. The *Indians* are, for the rest, a good natur'd People; but, on the other hand, when provok'd, never to be appeased without taking Revenge.

His departure.

The next Day after this Tumult, being the 8th of *Aug.* we contrived to change our Lodgings; which being at a considerable distance from one another, the K. of *Persia* not only forbid all the *Indians*, not excepting the Merchants themselves (of which there are 12000 at *Ispahan*) not to appear that Day in the Streets upon Pain of Death, but also order'd some of his Guards for our better Security, and permitted us to fortifie the weakest part of our Quarters against any sudden Attempt.

The Ambassadors change their Lodgings.

Our daily Allowance, during our stay at *Ispahan* by the King's Order, was 160 Sheep, 100 Fowl of all sorts, 200 Eggs, and 100 *Batmans* of Wine, with as much Fruit and Spice as we were able to consume: But great part of it being disposed by the Ambassador *Brugman* for other Uses, and sometimes upon Harlots, our People had sometimes not above one Meal a day, and some Days the Cloth was not laid at all for the Servants.

Their daily Allowance.

Aug. 10. We changed our Habits for the *Muscovian* Habit, ours being not very agreeable to the *Persians*. Some of our People that had been wounded in the last Engagement, dy'd this Day; and among the rest, our Harbinger of the bloody Flux, who were buried in the *Armenian* Church-yard in the Suburbs, call'd *Tzulsa*.

Aug. 16. Being appointed for our Audience, the Ambassadors were also invited to dine with the King, and 40 very fine Horses with rich Saddles and Harnesses, adorn'd with large Plates of Gold, being brought for the Use of the Ambassadors, and the Principal Gentlemen of their Retinue, (the rest being on Foot) they proceeded in the following Order: First, 3 on Horseback, 2 in compleat Armour, richly laid in with Golden Flowers, the other only Breast, Back and Head-pieces,

Their first Audience.

1637. piece. Theſe were follow'd by 40 Perſons, each with a Caſe of the fineſt Piſtols the Low Countries afford, in embroider'd Holſters. Next to theſe, 4 Men carrying 2 very rich Cymetars, the Sheaths being of yellow Amber garniſh'd with Gold, in rich Caſes. After theſe appear'd 2 Men with walking Staves, with fine Amber Heads (Amber being eſteem'd by the *Perſians* above Gold) in rich Caſes. Then came 4 Men, each with a great Candleſtick of Amber, and 2 others carrying a Cabinet of white and yellow Amber: Laſt of all came 4 more, who carried a Cabinet of Ebony laid in with Silver, in which were golden Boxes containing divers Drugs, Eſſences, and other Chymical Preparations; they were on the outſide beſet with fine Stones, intimating what kind of Preparation was contain'd in each of them. The Ambaſſadors Preſents (according to the Cuſtom of the Eaſtern Countries) were: Thoſe of Mr. *Cruſius*, an Arquebuſs ſtock'd with Ebony, which cock'd it ſelf, by letting down the Cock; a Veſſel of Rock Cryſtal, edged with Gold, and adorn'd with Turquois and Rubies; a Cabinet of Amber, and a ſmall ſtriking Clock. Thoſe of Mr. *Brueman*, a braſs gilt Candleſtick with 30 Branches, having a ſtriking Watch within the Body; a Pair of very fine Piſtols gilt with very rich Holſters; a very fair Hour-glaſs, a Watch in a Topaza Caſe; a Bracelet of Diamonds and Rubies, and a Writing by which the two Pieces of Cannon left at *Ardebil* were preſented to the King.

The Preſents.

The Places aſſign'd for our Retinue were as follows:

1. Three Sergeants with Halberds, at the Head of 15 Muſqueteers.

2. The Steward at the Head of the Gentlemen, who march'd three-a-breaſt.

3. Three Trumpeters with ſilver Trumpets, follow'd by the Guards four-a-breaſt, immediately before the Ambaſſadors, who had on both ſides of them 8 Halberdiers, and 2 Interpreters behind them.

Theſe were follow'd by 8 Pages on Horſeback in very rich Liveries, and theſe again by the reſt of our Retinue 24 in number, three-a-breaſt.

But as it is not the Cuſtom of the *Perſians* to be ty'd to any orderly Proceſſion, ſo this Order was but ill obſerved, and our People were obliged to march forward as well as they could, in Company of a great number of *Perſian* Gentlemen on Horſe-back, thro' the Market-Place to the Gates of the King's Palace, where they were received by the Maſter of the Ceremonies, and conducted into the Hall of Juſtice, and deſired to reſt themſelves till the King could be acquainted with their coming.

The Proceſſion.

After a ſtay of half an hour, Word was brought by ſeveral Perſons of Quality, that the King expected us, and we were introduced thro' a large Court, being an oblong ſquare, incloſed on both ſides with a double Wall, one of which being much lower than the other, was at about 6 Paces diſtance from the firſt built cloſe to a row of fair *Tzinnar*-Trees: This lower Wall on both ſides being lined with the Guards, and other Muſqueteers; the firſt being diſtinguiſh'd from the reſt by a certain kind of pointed Coiffure, ſet out with Plumes of divers Colours. At the end of this Court was the Hall appointed for our Audience, being the Place where the King keeps his Court of Juſtice in Perſon, it being not the Cuſtom in *Perſia* (as it is in *Muſcovy*) to have a peculiar Hall for the Audiences of Ambaſſadors, but their Kings have this Ceremony performed in any Place whither either their Buſineſs or Divertiſement call them.

Near to this Hall under the Trees, betwixt the two Walls, we ſaw above 50 fine young Horſes in their embroider'd Houſings, and ſome with rich Saddles and Harneſſes; they were moſt of an Iſabella Colour, and brought thither to be back'd, and were watered out of Pails Vermilion gilt: In this Court were alſo two large Citterns 4 Foot ſquare, for the cooling of Wine. This Hall, which was 8 Fathom broad and 12 long, had a Partition in the Nature of an Alcove, with a red Callicoe Curtain drawn before it; which when drawn up by a ſilk String, reſted upon certain Chapters of wooden Pillars finely carv'd and gilt with Branch-work, as were alſo the Walls, which were alſo adorn'd with ſome *European* Pictures. In the midſt of it was a Fountain, in the Baſin of which you ſaw Flowers, Oranges, Apples, and ſeveral other Fruits ſwimming upon the Water, and round the ſides of it a great number of Flaggons and Bottles of Gold and Silver; the whole Floor of the Hall being covered with Tapeſtry, the Ground-work of which was alſo of Gold and Silver. We found the King, who was about 27 Years of Age, ſitting upon the Ground upon a Satin Cuſhion behind the Fountain, with his back to the Wall: His Aſpect was very graceful, and his Complexion very ſmooth, but ſomewhat hook-noſed, as moſt of the *Perſians* are. His Habit, which was of Brocadoe, had nothing in it above the reſt, except that he had a Set of Plumes of Heron-Feathers on his Head, faſten'd with a very fine Bracelet of Diamonds: Over his upper Garment having 2 Sable Skins down from his Neck; but we ſaw ſome other *Perſian* Lords have the like. The Cymetar he had on his ſide, was alſo richly beſet with precious Stones, but his Bow and Arrows lay behind him upon the Ground: On his right hand attended 20 Pages, the Sons of *Chans* or Governors of Provinces, among whom ſome were Eunuchs; one of the handſomeſt of them was employed in fanning the King, with a certain Fan not unlike a Horſe-Tail, made of a certain Sea-Creature, call'd *Maheri Kutas*. At the Head of theſe Pages ſtood the *Meheter*, or Groom of the Chamber, who was their Governor. Before the King ſtood the *Elſchick Agaſi Baſchi*, or Lord Chamberlain, his Staff being all covered with Gold, with a large Button or Apple of the ſame Metal at the top of it. On his left ſide, about 4 Paces diſtance, ſat the *Ethemad Domlet*, or Chancellor; and next to him, the *Chans*, and the reſt of the Lords.

1637.

At the Entrance of the Hall, on the left hand, were placed an *Arabian* Ambaſſador, and the *Muſcovite* Envoy; and below them, the King's Muſicians. The Ambaſſadors were met at the Door of this Hall by the Prince *Tzani Chan*, *Kurtzi Baſchi*, and by *Aliculi-beck Divanbeki*, who took them under the Arm one after another, and held them ſo faſt that they had not the uſe of them themſelves.

Their Audience

This way of conducting foreign Miniſters thus to the King, which is uſed as well in the *Perſian* as *Ottoman* Court, as it is now look'd upon as a peculiar Honour, ſo it ſeems to be firſt introduced upon the ſcore of ſecuring their Prince's Lives againſt any Attempt, by this Ceremony; which is alſo the Reaſon alledged by ſome, that the King of *Perſia* does not give his Hand to Kiſs to Ambaſſadors, but his Knee, and to his Subjects his Foot only.

As the Ambaſſadors approach'd towards the King, they made a low Reverence, which he returned with a ſmiling Countenance, and a ſmall Inclination of his Head. They were deſired to ſit down upon low Seats, placed near the Lords for that purpoſe. Fifteen of our Retinue were likewiſe placed a little more to the left, but upon the Ground; and the Pages, and the reſt of our Train, entertain'd in a Court below, with 13 Women-Dancers richly adorn'd, being the handſomeſt Courtezans of *Iſpahan*; who, beſides their Annual Tribute, are obliged to attend at Court whenever they are call'd for: We were credibly aſſured, that a Man might have his Choice among them for a *Tumain* a-piece.

After the Ambaſſadors had reſted a little, the Lord Chamberlain ask'd them in the King's Name, by whom they were ſent, and what had occaſion'd their Embaſſy? Upon which they being obliged to riſe, went near to the King to deliver their Credentials, with a ſhort Complement, according to the Cuſtom of the *Perſians*, who being no Admirers of Harangues, would have all that approach their King, to ſhew their Reverence by a few Words.

The Chancellor having received the Credentials, and deſired the Ambaſſadors to take their Seats again, the Secretary of State came to tell them, that the *Schach* intending to have their Credentials tranſlated, would as ſoon as that was done, give them a ſecond Audience. Then the Preſents were brought in, which were carried cloſe by the King into an adjacent Room. In the mean while, a Callicoe Cloth was ſpread all over the Floor, which was covered all over with Baſons of Gold fill'd with Fruits and Preſerves, beſides 300 golden Flaggons more, diſpoſed all over the Hall for Oſtentations ſake. All this Plate was ſmooth, except the Flaggon and Cup out of which the King himſelf drank, which were beſet with Rubies and Turquoiſes. We had alſo vaſt Plenty of the beſt *Schiraz* Wine, and the Divertiſement of a Juggler, who acted the Part of *Legerdemaine* beyond whatever I ſaw in that kind before.

Golden Veſſels.

About an hour after, the Cloth being removed, and another of gold Brocado laid in the place of it, the Meat was brought in by 10 Men in large golden Veſſels, not unlike the Milk-Pots in *France*. The Carver having placed himſelf on the Floor in the midſt of the

1637. Vessels, disposed the Meat into lesser Dishes, with Rice of all sorts of Colours, upon which he put Mutton roast'd and boil'd, tame and wild Fowl, &c. sometimes 5 or 6 sorts in a Dish; the King being served first, then the Ambassadors, the Lords, and all the rest there present. This is done for Convenience's sake; for as they sit all along on one side only, as our Monks do, one Man cannot easily serve himself of divers Dishes. There was a profound Silence during this Feast, tho' at 3 several other Entertainments afterwards, the King was pleased to ask divers Questions of the Ambassadors concerning the State and present War in *Germany*.

Their manner of eating.

Musick and Dancing.

Our chiefest Diversion was the King's Musick, and the dancing of the beforementioned Courtezans, which performed their Part with wonderful Activity, and not without some Exactness of Cadences. It was observable, that whilst we were at Dinner, a certain *Persian*, who understood both the *Portugueze* and *Italian*, was placed near the Ambassadors behind the Hangings, to observe their Discourse concerning their Opinion of the Court. As our Interpreter was a *Portugueze Austin* Friar, call'd Father *Joseph*, who having lived 24 Years in *Persia*, was well acquainted with the Manners and Humours of the *Persians*, the Ambassador *Brugman* had several Discourses with him about the Pictures and Entertainment, which was interpreted much to his Prejudice; but as the Ambassador *Crusius* talk'd with our Interpreter in *Latin*, his Sentiments were not discovered to the *Persian* Spy.

After the Dinner had lasted about an hour and an half, the Cloth was taken away; and Water being brought to wash our hands, the Lord Chamberlain pronounced with a loud Voice this following Prayer: *Sigre baxine, Seahe Doulctine Kasiler Kuwetine, alla Dirim*, i. e. *Make us thankful for this Repast, prosper the King's Undertakings, give to his Soldiers and Servants true Courage; this we pray thee, O God*: Unto which the rest answered, *Alla, alla*; and without speaking a word went out of the room, our *Mehemandar* giving us notice at the same time, that we might withdraw as soon as we pleased; which we did accordingly, after having paid our Reverence to the King.

Immediately after, leave being granted us to converse with what Foreigners we pleased, we had frequent Visits made us by the *French*, *Spaniards*, *Italians*, *English*, and *Dutch*, then residing at *Ispahan*. Mr. *Honywood*, the *English* Factor, in Company of several other Merchants of his own Nation, came to pay us a Visit the 18th of *August*, and made us all possible Offers of his Service, which he actually performed upon all Occasions.

The 22d of *August*, we had a Present of Fruits, and 30 Flaggons of *Schiras* Wine sent us by the King.

The Ambassadors have their first private Audience.

The 24th, the Ambassadors had their first private Audience, concerning their Negotiation, from the King, attended by the Chancellor, and some other Lords of his Council, being conducted into the Apartment thro' a very fine Garden, where the whole Retinue diverted themselves in the mean while, who, as well as the Ambassadors, were afterwards entertain'd at Dinner in the same manner as before.

The 28th, The *Austin* Friars invited the Ambassadors to the Festival of St. *Austin* their Patron; which being to be celebrated the next day, the *Muscovite* Envoy, an *Armenian* Bishop, and several *English* Merchants (who notwithstanding their different Opinions in Religion, live like Brethren among the *Mahometans*) were also to be present there. There were no more than 6 *Monks*, all *Spaniards*, in the whole Monastery; which was a goodly Structure, had a very fair Church with 2 Steeples, with several Cells, and a very fair Garden belonging to it. The Ambassadors having been received at the Out-Gates of the Convent, were conducted by the Friars into the Church, where Mass was begun immediately; and our Musicians, with the Assistance of one of the Monks, who play'd upon the Organ, made very good Musick.

Mass being over, we were conducted into the Garden near a fair Fountain, which stood under a large Tree, whose Branches being full of Leaves, and twisted within one another, afforded a very agreeable Shade. About Noon we were carried into a goodly Hall, where being placed all along the Walls, as the Monks commonly sit in *Europe*, we were entertain'd with Fruits in Porcelane Dishes, and every one had his Dish of Meat set before him according to the *Persian* Fashion. We pass'd the remaining part of the Day under the same Tree.

The 1st of *Sept.* we began to be sensible of the change of the Season, the Nights being very cold. 1637.

Three *Armenian* Lords visit the Ambassadors.

The same day *Seferas-Beg*, Governor of *Armenia*, in company of 2 of his Brothers, came to pay a Visit to the Ambassadors, on purpose to contract an intimate Acquaintance with them. As they were all three Persons of an excellent good Temper, and frank Conversation, which agreed very well with the Ambassador *Brugman*'s Disposition, he presented to each of the two Elder a fine Fowling-piece, and the Younger with a Pair of Pistols.

They give Entertainment to the Ambassadors.

In requital of which they invited the Ambassadors, with their whole Retinue, against the 18th of *Sept.* When we went thither on Horseback, and the Ambassadors being received by *Seferas-Beg*, at the *Armenian* Church in the Suburbs, call'd *Tulfa*, where the Patriarch of the Place in a Cope of Cloth of Silver, with golden Flowers beset with Pearls, and in a Mitre covered all over with fine Pearls, was saying the Service. We saw divers Pictures hanging on the Walls of the Church, and the Floor covered with Tapestry, but their Musick was very indifferent. After Service, we went to *Seferas-beg* his Palace, where being conducted thro' a large and fair Arched Gallery into a Garden, and from thence into an open Hall, (according to the *Persian* Fashion) where the Cloth of Silver and Golden Brocado being laid, we were entertain'd with Fruits and Preserves, and a most delicious Liquor not unlike our *Ros solis*, but incomparably more rich. This Cloth being removed, and another Callicoe one laid in its place, the Meat was served up in Silver Dishes, and among the rest some Pork, and divers other Meats, which the *Persians* abhor.

The Magnificence of the *Armenian* Lord.

We had not long sat at Table, before we were conducted thence thro' a very noble Apartment into another Hall arched all about, which had a very agreeable Prospect into the Garden. The Floor was cover'd with rich Tapestry, on which were laid Cushions of flour'd Satin, the Ground-work being Gold and Silver. Round a Bason of white Marble, belonging to the Fountain in the Center of the Hall, stood a good number of Flaggons and Bottles fill'd with Wine; but what we thought most worth our Observation, were certain Pictures on the Walls, representing the Dresses of Women of most Nations in the World.

Porcelain-Musick.

Whilst we were busie in eating plentifully of the delicious Fruits and Preserves that were brought in, we were also diverted with Musick and Dancing. In the first of which *Elias-Beg*, second Brother to *Seferas-Beg*, excell'd above the rest; for he not only gave us several Tunes upon the *Tamera*, or *Persian* Lute, but also by striking with 2 little Sticks upon 7 Porcelain-Cups full of Water, made them accord with the Lute; *Seferas-Beg* not forgetting in the mean while to make the whole Company pledge the King's Health in Crystal Glasses full of Wine.

Night approaching, the Ambassadors thought it convenient to take leave of the Governor, who under pretence of conducting us to the Gate, brought us unexpectedly into a Gallery on the other side of the Garden, where we found a fresh Entertainment of Meat, Fish-Pyes, Fruits, and Preserves before us; and the Hall, as well as the Garden, illuminated with Lamps and Torches in vast numbers. But as we had been eating almost all the day, so we sat down only out of Complaisance, looking upon this Collation rather as an effect of our Hosts Generosity and Magnificence, than to be done with an Intention to make any Addition to the former Entertainment, which in all respects was one of the most pleasant we ever met with, and exceeded even that of the Kings.

Their second Private Audience.

The 19th of *September*, the Ambassador had a second private Audience of the King, which lasted not above half an hour, after which they dined at Court, as is usual upon such like Occasions: Our Musick, consisting of a Base-Viol, a Tenor, and a Violin, play'd before the King at the same time, according to his Desire for half an hour, when he sent word, that he did not mislike the Musick, but thought his own as good.

Are entertain'd by the *English*.

The 25th of *September*, the Ambassadors, and their whole Retinue, were most magnificently entertain'd by the *English* in the *Base* near the Market-place, being a very large Structure, with a very fine Garden belonging to it. We were first of all treated with Fruits and Preserves, set upon the Floor, according to the *Persian* Fashion, from whence we pass'd into a spacious Hall, where we found a Table well furnished with all sorts of Meats dress'd after the *English* way, and did not forget to drink plentifully the Healths of most

1637. moſt Kings and Princes of *Europe*. Dinner being over we were conducted into another Hall, which had a very fair Proſpect into the Garden, where we not only found another Collation of Fruits and Preſerves before us, but had alſo the Diverſion of 6 *Indian* Dancing-Women; ſome of whom brought their Husbands along with them, who play'd upon the Violin, and ſometimes join'd in dancing with them. Their Complexion was of an Olive-Colour, but had very good Features, a ſoft Skin, and were well ſhap'd. About their Necks they wear Necklaces of Pearls and Gold, and in their Ears Gold and Silver Pendants ſet with precious Stones. Some had alſo Braeelets of Pearls, others of Silver, but they had all Rings on their Fingers, and among the reſt one upon the Thumb, which inſtead of a Seal had a Piece of Steel of the bigneſs of a Crown-piece, ſo excellently well poliſh'd, that it ſerved inſtead of a Looking-glaſs.

Indian Dancing-women.

Are handſome and well-ſhap'd.

Their Habit.

They were all clad in a kind of Stuff, ſo thin that you might ſee any part of their Bodies thro' it, except thoſe Parts, which were covered by Drawers under their Petticoats. Some had Caps, others Tiffany-Dreſſes on their Heads, ſome wore ſilk Scarfs, with gold and ſilver Flowers, which coming round their Shoulders, hung down on both ſides to the ground. Some were bare-footed, others wore Shooes of a very odd Make. They had all juſt above the Inſtep a ſtring with Bells, by which they diſcovered the Exactneſs of their Cadence, as well as by their *Caſtagnets*, which they managed with the utmoſt Dexterity. Their Muſick conſiſted of *Tabors*, Pipes, and *Indian* Timbrels. Theſe laſt are about 2 Foot long, in the Shape of our Barrels, hanging about their Necks; they play upon them with their Fingers. The Actions of theſe *Indian* Women, eſpecially with their Hands and Feet, are moſt ſurprizing; and they will ſometimes with a moſt graceful, careleſs Air, and motion of their Bodies, addreſs themſelves to ſome of the Spectators, they being much more pleaſing in their Entertainments than the *Perſian* Dancing Women. They are all Publick Proſtitutes, and will ſhew their utmoſt Activity in their Poſtures, and what elſe you will, for ready Money. Not long after, the *French* Merchants made alſo a Feaſt for ſome of the chief Perſons of our Retinue.

The Ambaſſadors Feaſt.

The 1ſt of *October*, the Ambaſſadors entertain'd the *Muſcovite* Envoy, the 3 *Armenian* Lords, the principal *Engliſh* and *French* Merchants, the *Spaniſh Auſtin*-Friars, and ſome *Italian Carmelites*, with 40 Diſhes in 3 Courſes after the *German* Faſhion; and, whereas the Governor of *Armenia* was ſo much taken with ſome of our *German* Paſtes, that he ſpoke of them to the King, who ſeeming deſirous to ſee ſome of them, our Cook was order'd to make ſome of them, which being preſented to His Majeſty, he received them very obligingly, and preſented them to the Ladies at Court, who were extremely pleaſed with them. The Feaſt was concluded with the Divertiſement of running at the Ring, at which Mr. *Mandelſloe* got the firſt, and the Ambaſſador *Brugman* the ſecond Prize.

The Debaucheries of ſome of the Embaſſy.

The Prior of the *Auſtin* Friars coming the next day to our Secretary, to repreſent the Debaucheries of ſome of our Retinue, and eſpecially of the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, ſome among us having, after the Example of the *Armenians*, married Women of the Country, to the great Scandal of the Chriſtian Religion among the Infidels, the ſaid Secretary went to the Ambaſſador *Brugman*, to complain of the debauch'd Lives of ſome of our Retinue, deſiring that ſome Reformation might be introduc'd among them; but, as his ill Fortune would have it, he was no ſooner entred the Room, but he found the ſaid Ambaſſador with a certain *Armenian* Woman, named *Tulla*, which he looking upon as done with a Deſign to ſurprize him, he was ſo incenſed thereat, that he ſwore he would be revenged of him. The Secretary, who was not ignorant of his Temper, thought fit to retire to the Convent of the *Auguſtines*, with an Intention to leave the Embaſſy, and to retire by the way of *Babylon* and *Aleppo* into *Italy*, and thence into *Germany*: But the Ambaſſador *Brugman* being informed of his Reſolution, ſent him word, that he would certainly have him kill'd by the way, which as it was no very difficult Matter for him to have effected, ſo the Secretary thought it his ſafeſt way to endeavour his Reconciliation with him, which was at laſt procured by the Mediation of the Prior of the *Auguſtines*.

Marriages of the Armenians.

Some Days after, as I was going to the Suburbs of *Tzulfa*, I ſaw an *Armenian* going to Church, who was to be married there: In the Front march'd their Muſick, and after them a Boy of 12 Years, with a Wax-Candle in his hand. He was follow'd by the Bridegroom on Horſe-back, who had 2 Men riding on each ſides, and 4 behind him in 2 Ranks, all very richly clad. After theſe were carried 2 Diſhes of Meat, 2 Pitchers of Wine, and 2 Diſhes of Apples, all which was ſet before the Bridegroom, and thoſe that attended him, as ſoon as they came into the Church, but the Bridegroom did not touch it; and after the reſt had eat a little, the overplus was ſaved for the Prieſt, except the Wine, which was all drank off; of which the Bridegroom, who eſpy'd me, would have me take my ſhare. By this time the Bride, having on her right hand a young Maid, and on her left a married Woman, with their Faces covered with a Veil of thin Lawn, coming to the Church, the Prieſt brought the young Couple to the Altar, and bleſs'd them by holding a Wooden Croſs over them; whilſt they join'd their Hands and Heads, the Brides Head being laid to the Bridegroom's Breaſt, as a Token of her Submiſſion. After mutual Promiſes made of Fidelity and Loyalty, the Prieſt gave them the Communion, by giving to each of them a Piece of the Conſecrated Hoſt ſteep'd in Wine: The Bread of the Euchariſt among the *Armenians* being not leavened, as in the *Muſcovite*, and other *Greek* Churches, but is a Paſte unleavened of the bigneſs and thickneſs of a Crown-piece. During the Communion, they ſung and play'd on certain great Cymbals, call'd *Hambarzon*, it being a conſtant Practice among the *Armenians* never to communicate without Muſick. After the Communion, they caſt Roſe-water upon the new-married Couple, and all the reſt there preſent, and ty'd a Scarf about the Bride's right Hand, by which the Bridegroom draws her after him to the Church-door, from whence they all go on Horſe-back to the Place where the Wedding-Feaſt is prepared, which laſts 3 Days; and, in the mean while, the new-married Couple are not permitted to cohabit together.

1637.

An Armenian Baptism.

As I paſt along, hearing a Noiſe in another *Armenian* Church, which was made by the ſtriking with a Stick upon a Board, uſed inſtead of Bells, (the Uſe of them not being permitted in *Perſia*) I went in, and found it to be a Chriſtening: I ſaw no body in the Church, but the Prieſt and the Clerk, an aged Woman, who had brought the Child, and a young Man, who was to be God-father. The Prieſt after certain Prayers, and having put divers Queſtions to the God-father, the laſt carry'd the Child to the old Woman to unſwath it; which done, they went into the Sacriſty to the Font, which was placed there within a Wall like a Trough, half an Ell long, and a quarter broad. The Prieſt conſecrated the Water, and put into it ſome conſecrated Oil, and then putting the Child into the Font, baptized him *in the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghoſt*, by thrice pouring Water upon his Head, and afterwards all over the Body, making the Sign of the Croſs in the Forehead with conſecrated Oil. It is obſervable, that the *Armenians* do not commonly chriſten their Infants till they are 8 Days old, unleſs they be in danger of dying before, when they do it ſooner, it being their Opinion, that all ſuch Infants as die before Baptiſm, are not to be ſaved, for which reaſon they don't allow them a Burial in the Church-yard, which is alſo denied to all thoſe who die without having communicated once a-year at leaſt.

The tragical Account of a Clock-maker.

The 3d of *October*, there happen'd a very ſad Accident with a certain Clock-maker, a Servant to the *Perſian* King, a Native of *Zurick* in *Switzerland*, whoſe Name was *John Rudolph Stadler*, which proved very tragical in the end. This Man, who was about 38 Years of Age, had married the Siſter of *Tulla*, the Ambaſſador *Brugman*'s Darling, and being willing to return into his own Country, had at laſt obtained leave ſo to do, by the Ambaſſadors Interceſſion. In the mean while a Thief breaking into his Houſe, the Clock-maker catch'd him, and after a ſound banging him, turn'd him out of Doors; but ſoon after repenting that he had uſed him no worſe, run after him, and kill'd him with a Piſtol-ſhot. The Relations of the deceaſed immediately made their Complaint to the *Muſti* of the Murther committed by an Infidel upon one of the Faithful, who thereupon order'd the Clock-maker to be ſeized as he was going the next Morning to Court, and cauſed him to be put into the *Palank* (a wooden Inſtrument, which covers the Neck and Arms.) The Ambaſſadors left no Stone unturn'd to procure his Releaſement; but the Authority and Zeal of the *Muſti*

1637. prevailing, he was condemn'd to die, unless he would deserve the King's Pardon by turning *Mahometan*. Many of the *Persian* Lords, who esteem'd him for his Art, in which he was excellent, endeavoured to perswade him to save his Life, by the hopes of great Advantages; but this proving ineffectual, he was 2 several times brought to the Market-place, to try whether the Terror of Death would not make him alter his Sentiments, but in vain, he positively declaring, that tho' the King had the disposal of his Body, he would resign his Soul to his Creator, whom he intended to glorifie thereby to all the World. The *Austin* and *Carmelite* Friars would also fain have perswaded him to die in the *Roman Catholick* Faith, which he also refused, professing that he would persist to his last Gasp in the same Religion he was educated in, which was the *Reformed* Religion, which he did accordingly; for being delivered up to the Relations of the Deceased, the first who struck at him with his Cymetar miss'd, the second struck into the *Palank*, but the third hit his Neck, and severed the Head from the Body, whilst the other two gave him 3 Cuts more in the Head and Face. The Body lay all day expos'd in the Place of Execution, till in the Evening it was, at the Intercession of the Ambassador *Brugman* brought to our Quarters with an Intention to have it buried the next day: But the King happening to invite the Ambassadors to a Hunting-Match that day, the Interment could not be perform'd till the 22d, when the *Muscovite* Envoy, the Governor of *Armenia*, and several other Christians were present at the Burial.

Is executed.

His Burial.

The Ambassadors invited to the King's Hunting Match.

The 17th, the intended Hunting-Match being to begin, Horses and Camels were brought early in the Morning to our Lodgings by our *Mehemander*, who conducted us to a spacious Plain, where the King soon after appear'd, attended by 300 Persons of Quality mounted on very fine Horses, and richly accoutred, and, at first sight of the Ambassadors, saluted them very civilly. The King himself had that day a silver-brocado'd Vestment on, his Turbant being adorn'd with Herons Feathers; and the 4 Led-horses, which were carried after him, covered with very rich Saddles, Harnesses, and Cloaths embroider'd with Gold and precious Stones. Among the rest of the King's Retinue, who follow'd him very disorderly, was an Astrologer, that kept close to him, and continually made his Observations: This kind of People have a great Influence upon the Court. We rid up and down at least 3 Lgs that Morning, which was spent in Hawking.

An Astrologer.

About Noon we were entertain'd with a Campaign-Dinner by the King, under Tents in an *Armenian* Village: But our *Mehemander* quarter'd us after Dinner in another Village hard by, where we were visited by *Sefer-Beg*, and some other *Persian* Lords, who participated of the excellent Fruits, which were presented to the Ambassadors by the Inhabitants of the Villages, who were *Algerian* Christians transplanted thither from *Erivan* by *Schach-Abas*. But the King understanding that the *Mehemander* had lodg'd us in another Village, he order'd us forthwith to be lodged in a House next adjoining to that where he was himself; which was put in Execution immediately, and our Supper was brought us out of the King's Kitchin in Dishes of Gold.

The 18th, very early in the Morning, the Ambassadors went with the King a-Crane-hunting: A long, secret way was made under ground, at the end of which abundance of Wheat being scatter'd in a Field, vast numbers of Cranes flock'd thither, of which near 600 were taken. The King put some of their Feathers in his Turbant, and presented to each of the Ambassadors 2, who put them in their Hats.

They dined afterwards in the same House where they had dined the day before, the King being in an extraordinary good Humour: For towards Night he, and the Ambassadors, attended only by 6 Persons, went to hunt the Drake and wild Goose; and being arrighted 200 Paces from the Place intended for the Sport, enter'd into a large Hut made of Earth, near which the Nets were spread upon the side of a small Brook. But no Bird appearing, we pass'd away the time in drinking several Bottles of the best Wine with the King, and so returned to our Quarters, whither the King sent us cold Mutton boil'd and roasted, four Sheep's Gutts, Cheese, and divers Vessels full of Citrons, and some other Fruits raw and preserved.

The 19th was the chief Day for Sport; abundance of Hawks and Leopards, bred to Hunting, were brought in; but, after having for some time beaten the Bushes to no purpose, we went to one of the King's Parks, being 2 Lgs in Circumference, (call'd *Hazar Zirib* by the *Persians*) being surrounded on all sides with a high Wall, and distinguish'd by 3 several Partitions; in the first of which were kept Harts, wild Goats, Deer, Hares, and Foxes; in the second, that kind of Deer they call *Ahu's*; and in the third, wild Asses, call'd by them *Kouhrhan*. The Leopards being by the King's Command let in among the *Ahu's*, they soon dispatch'd each of them one. The next Diversion was among the wild Asses, at one of which the Ambassador *Brugman*, pursuant to the King's Pleasure, discharged his Pistol, but missing his Aim, the King, tho' riding at full speed, shot the Beast with the Arrow in the Breast, and another in the forehead, wounding several others, and never failing too in a full Gallop. He also cut another Ass with his Cymetar cross the Back, and with one blow cleft it to the Belly, another he cut with a single Blow almost the Head off; which done, one of the *Chans* wip'd it clean, and put into the Scabbard. Thence we went into a small Enclosure in the midst of the Park, where the King having commanded one of the 2 Huntsmen, who attend him with his Fowling-pieces, to shoot at an Ass, the more ancient of the two looking upon it as a Disgrace, the other should have it before him, shot at it; but missing his aim, was laugh'd at by the Company, which exasperated him to that degree, that he drew his Cymetar upon the other, and cut his Thumb off. The King being inform'd immediately of the Matter, ordered the others Head to be cut off; but at the Intercession of some there present, he had his Ears only cut off. But the Executioner forgetting part of his Duty, cut off but one half of the Ear, which the *Grand Huntsman Mortasculi Chan* perceiving alighted, and with his Knife cut off the remaining part, to our great Astonishment, who were not used to see Persons of his Quality to interfere with the Executioner.

A Persian Lord, an Executioner.

In this Enclosure a small Amphitheatre was erected, where the King entertain'd us with a Collation of Fruits and Preserves, and soon after 32 wild Asses were forced in, at which the King discharged some Shots with his Fowling-pieces, and wounded others with his Arrows; after which the Ambassadors being permitted to do the same as well as the other Lords, these Beasts sides were full of Arrows, which afforded no small Sport to the Spectators, especially when they run so close to one another, as to force the Arrows deeper into their sides, which made them fall a-biting, and running at one another with a great deal of fierceness. At last they were all knock'd down, and 30 more which were let in afterwards, in order to be sent to the King's Kitchen at *Ispahan*; the Flesh of these Beasts being in highest Esteem amongst the *Persians*.

Wild Asses Flesh esteemed in Persia.

By this time Dinner was brought to the same Place, when the Ambassador *Brugman* took the Opportunity to present the King with his Highness of *Holstein*'s Picture in a Box richly beset with Diamonds, as also with a steel Looking-glass polish'd on both sides, and embellish'd with several Figures by that famous Artist *John Dresden*: These Presents were made upon his own Account.

Presents from Brugman to the King.

Dinner being over, we were scarce retired to some Neighbouring Houses to take our mid-day's Repose, when the King sent us 10 *Ahu*'s, and a fine Stag, the Horns of which had 12 Brow-antlers; and word was brought us at the same time, that the King was got on Horse-back again, we did the same, and found him employed a-hawking; but he scarce had got sight of us, when he left that Sport, and with 9 Persons of his Retinue, and 6 of ours, retired to a large Walk, at the end of which was a Decoy for wild Ducks; but instead of employing our selves in that Diversion, we soon fell a-drinking, and became so merry, that the Ducks were sufficiently frighten'd from coming near us. Mr. *Mandelsloe* had the Honour to fill the King a Glass of Wine, and afterwards to kiss his Knee; and the King presenting him at the same time with an Apple, which is look'd upon as an Expression of the King's particular Kindness in that Court, he was afterwards consider'd there as a Person much in his Majesty's Favour. The *Kerek-jerak*, or Deputy-Steward of the Houshold, named *Mahomet Haly-Beg*, who had fill'd the King's Glasses, was got so drunk, that he made so hideous a Noise at the other end of the Walk, that the King sent one to bid him withdraw; and this not succeeding, order'd another to drag him thence, and to set him on Horse-back. But as they were going to

execute

1637. execute the King's Commands, *Haly-Beg* was ſo outrageous, as to abuſe and ſtrike thoſe that were commanded ſo to do; which the King perceiving, went thither to perſwade him, but finding himſelf not much better treated than the reſt, laid his Hand upon his Cymetar, threat'ning to cut off his Head, tho he was otherwiſe one of his beſt Favourites. This put the Steward into ſuch a fright, that the hot Vapours which had ſeized his Head before, were ſoon cooled; and conſidering with himſelf, that there was no jeſting with the King when once provoked, he got on Horſeback as nimbly as if he had not taſted a drop of Wine, which put the King into a laughing Humour, and he came very merrily to us, but retired ſoon after to his, and we to our Lodgings.

The 20th, the King did not go abroad a-hunting, but we dined with him in a Summer-houſe, which ſtood very pleaſantly in the midſt of a Garden, near the Water-ſide. In the Afternoon we took a Turn, and in our way took a white *Heron*.

Pigeon-ing. The 21ſt, being ſent for early in the Morning to go with the King a Pidgeon-hunting, we were carried up to the top of a very high Tower, within which were 1000 Nefts. Being all plac'd without, and our Trumpet commanded to ſound a Charge, the Pidgeons were driven out thro' the holes in vaſt numbers, moſt of which were kill'd by the King and the Company. This put an end to the Hunting for this time; but in our way towards the City, the King carried us into one of his Gardens, call'd *Tzarbach*, one of the fineſt of all *Perſia*; where being entertain'd with another magnificent Treat, we were no ſooner got to our Lodgings, but 12 wild Drakes, and 12 Pidgeons were brought us from the King, which the Ambaſſador *Brugman* kept for himſelf, and his Ladies.

The King hunts with their Ladies. Within a few Days after, Proclamation was made by the Crier of the City, that the King being to go abroad with the Ladies of the Court, no body ſhould preſume to appear in the Streets that Day. Whenever the King's Wives or Concubines go abroad, they are carried in Cheſts covered all over upon Camels; notwithſtanding which, no Perſon is permitted to come abroad in the Streets, or within a Muſquet-ſhot of the Field, where they take their Diverſion, under Pain of Death; becauſe they appear in the Field on Horſeback with Hawks in their hands, and make uſe of Bows and Arrows; which is the reaſon that no Men but the King and the Eunuchs muſt appear among them, the Lords which attend the King (who always goes out of the Town half an hour before the Women) being obliged to hunt at that time at half a Leg's diſtance from thence.

The King did not return from Hunting till the 28th of *November*; and as he was coming to Town, made us halt at the ſame Garden, where he had given us the Entertainment at our Return from the laſt Hunting; where he got ſo drunk with moſt of his Lords, that they were ſcarce able to ſit their Horſes, and ſome who had pleaſed him more than the reſt, had conſiderable Preſents beſtowed upon them; it having been obſerved, that it was his Temper to be profuſe in his Drink, of which he uſed to repent when he was ſober. Of this we had an Inſtance within 8 Days after, when the King being in a Humour of Drinking, and all the Company having left him, except the Chancellor and ſome Eunuchs, he commanded the firſt to drink his Health in a great Cup of Wine; which the Chancellor excuſing, he laid his drawn Cymitar by the Cup, telling him, that he muſt either take one or the other. The Chancellor, who was not able to drink ſo much, was forced to play the Hypocrite; and whilſt he was taking the Cup up to his Lips, finding the King to turn on one ſide, found means to get away. The King, not a little exaſperated at his Eſcape, ſent after him immediately; but being not to be found, play'd the ſame Game with an *Eunuch* there preſent, whom he had certainly kill'd, had not a certain *Mehuter*, or Gentleman of his Chamber, prevented it. At laſt the King finding himſelf left by all, got hold of one of his Pages, the Son of *Alymerdin Chan*, Governor of *Candahar*, asking him whether he ſhould take off the Cup? The young Lad thought beſt to act the Part of the Fox, told the King he would try what he could do; and ſo kneeling down before him, drank as much as poſſibly he could; but finding it impoſſible for him to compaſs the whole, and encouraged by the Wine and the King's engaging Words, roſe up, and throwing his Arms about his Neck, kiſſes him, ſaying, *I pray God grant the King long and happy Life.*

The King in his Debauches.

Which Frankneſs had ſuch a powerful Influence on the King, that he beſtowed upon him a Sword, whereof the Handle, Scabbard, and Belt, were beſet all over with precious Stones; and upon another Page, who had drank his ſhare of the Wine, another very rich Sword and a golden Cup. But his Courtiers finding him in a very ſplenetick Humour the next Day, were fain to get him into a better Temper, by redeeming the beſt Sword, and the golden Cup, with ſome *Tomans*.

The Chancellor treats the Ambaſſadors. The 19th of *Nov.* the *Eahtemad Dowlet*, or Lord Chancellor, made a moſt magnificent Entertainment for the Ambaſſadors in a moſt ſumptuous Hall, at the very Entrance of which was a very fair Fountain, and at the oppoſite part of the Door up to the Roof ſeveral Pictures of Women clad in divers Modes, copy'd after ſome *European* Originals: Below which, the Walls were on all ſides covered with Looking-glaſſes of divers Sizes. We were credibly informed, that there is an Apartment in the King's Palace belonging to his Wives, which was all done round with Looking-glaſſes, but much larger and finer than this. All our Meat was ſerved in Plate; beſides that, we had the King's Muſick, and the Diverſion of the Dancing-women, who not behaving themſelves here with the ſame Reſervedneſs as before the King, ſhew'd us ſeveral things beyond what ever we had ſeen before. Among the reſt, one of them having placed a Porcelane Veſſel in the midſt of the Hall of 2 Foot high, took it up in turning about betwixt her Legs with ſuch ſlight, that no body could perceive ſhe had any thing there, ſhe continuing to dance with the ſame Air, and returning it with the ſame Dexterity into the Place, without making the leaſt falſe ſtep. Theſe Women they call *Kachbchi*, their Employment being to oblige Men in whatever can be deſired of Women.

The Generoſity of the Perſians in treating their Guests. It muſt be confeſs'd of the *Perſians*, that whenever they entertain their Friends, they omit not any thing which they judge may contribute to their Diverſion; and as they are generally exceſſive Lovers of Women, ſo theſe never fail to be one main Ingredient of their Feaſts. Theſe Dancing-women the Maſter of the Feaſt offers to his Gueſts, he who has a mind to one of them, having no more to do than to riſe from the Table, and to conduct her into a private Room, and, ſo ſoon as the buſineſs is over, to return to his Place, there being no body there who takes the leaſt notice of what has been done. But ſuch as are not fram'd to venture, refuſe the Maſter's Civility with a Complement, and no harm done. *Ardebil* is the only Place throughout all *Perſia*, where theſe Dancing-women are not allow'd, *Schach-Abas* having baniſhed them from thence, by reaſon of the Sanctity of the Place.

The Muſick and Dancing-women being order'd to withdraw after Dinner, the Ambaſſadors had a private Conference with the Chancellor in his Garden, concerning their Negotiation over a Collation of Fruit and Preſerves. This Chancellor's Name was *Tagge*, being then about 60 years of Age, and an Eunuch, of which we had this farther Account: That being but young, and a Clerk in the City of *Keintze*, he forced a Boy to comply with his brutiſh Deſires; whereof Complaint being made to the King, he order'd his Privy Parts to be cut off. Others relate the Story in the following manner: That being upon the before-mentioned Account condemned to Death by *Schach Abas*, cut off his Privy Members himſelf; and ſending to the King, begg'd of him, That, ſince he himſelf had puniſh'd that Part of his Body which had committed the Crime, his Majeſty would be pleaſed to ſave his Head, which he hoped might one time or other prove ſerviceable to him; whereupon the King being taken with his Reſolution, made him Secretary of his Chancery; and *Schach-Sefi* having kill'd *Taleb-Chan* (his Predeceſſor) with his own Hands, ſent the Golden Inkhorn to *Tagge*, the Badge of Lord Chancellor of *Perſia*.

The Original of the Chancellor.

The 21ſt of *Nov.* The Ambaſſadors had another Conference with the Chancellor, and were afterwards entertain'd at Dinner, but not ſo magnificently as before.

The 29th, The 2 *Armenian* Lords, *Seferas* and *Elias Beg*, coming to pay a Viſit to the Ambaſſadors, they invited them to ſtay at Dinner; and *Elias* endeavouring to give ſome Proofs of his pleaſant Diſpoſition, the ſame were ſoon found to be check'd by ſome inward Grief, of which the eldeſt Brother gave us the following Account: That his Brother being in more than ordinary Favour with the King, he told him one day as they were together in a merry Vein, that nothing could

1637. could be added to the Accomplishment of his delightful Conversation, or could oblige him more, than if he would embrace *Mahometism.* Unto which *Elias-Beg* replying, That perhaps he might do so one time or other, nothing was spoke of it more for that time. But the Clock-maker's Constancy having put the King in mind of their Discourse, he sent certain Persons to him to desire him to be circumcised; which he endeavouring to evade by several Excuses, they circumcised him by Force. *Elias* afterwards confess'd the whole Truth of the Matter, adding, That notwithstanding this he would live and die a Christian.

8

Dec. 2. Our *Mehemander* brought the following Presents from the King, *viz.* To each of the Ambassadors,

The King's Presents to the Embassy.

1. A Horse, the Saddles and Bridles having large Plates and Buckles of Gold.

2. Two *Persian* Garments, with the Turbant and Girdle of gold Brocado.

3. 205 Pieces of 15 sorts of Silk, Stuffs, Satin, Damask, *Daras*, Taffata, Callico's, *&c.* and 200 *Tomans* in Money (making 1000 Pistols) to be divided betwixt them, towards their Expence in their return home. To the 5 principal Persons of our Retinue, to each a Satin Vestment, and another of Taffata, with gold and silver Flowers; to the rest of the Gentlemen, a Vestment of Taby, with Flowers of Gold to each; the rest had nothing.

Dec. 3. The Ambassadors being invited to dine once more with the King, they, at the Perswasion of our *Mehemander* (who alledged the Custom of the Country on his behalf) put on the best of the Garments the King had bestowed upon them over their own Cloaths. We dined in the *Divan-Chane*, or Justice-Hall, where we were entertain'd the first time, and with the same Ceremonies, except that the Chancellor ordered his Presents he makes usually once or twice a-year to the King (of which more hereafter) consisting in 12 fine Horses richly accoutred, 49 Camels loaden with Tapestry, and other fine Woollen Manufacturies, 15 Mules, 1000 *Tomans*, (50000 Livres) 40 Pieces of gold and silver Brocado's, *&c.* to pass before the King; which took up an hour and a half.

Entertains them the last time.

The Chancellor's Presents to the King.

This done the Lord High Chamberlain conducted the Ambassadors to take their leave of the King. He delivered to them with his own Hands the Answer he had thought fit to make to his Highness of *Holstein*'s Letter, promising that he would return his Courtesie by a most solemn Embassy. Our Ambassadors having return'd his Majesty all imaginable Thanks for the Honour and noble Treatments he had been pleased to bestow upon them, during their Abode in his Kingdom, return'd to their Quarters in the same Order as they went thither.

The Ambassadors take their leave of the King.

Dec. 4. The *Muscovite* Envoy obtain'd his Dismission, in order to return with us into *Muscovy*; and the following Days, such of the *Persian* Lords as had been regaled by the Ambassadors, sent their Presents to them.

Dec. 5. *Chosru Sultan* sent the Ambassadors 2 Horses.

Dec. 6. *Tzanichan*, the *Kurtzi-Bashi*, sent his Presents by our *Persian* Renegade, *Rustan*, which was the reason the Ambassadors sent him word they could not receive them; so, that within 3 days after, he sent by another hand 2 Horses, a Mule, and 18 Pieces of Stuff, which were accepted, and the Bearer rewarded with 5 Pistols.

Presents of the Persian Lords to the Ambassadors.

The 10th of *Dec.* the Lord Chamberlain sent 2 fine Horses, and the Chancellor 2 more, a Mule, and 40 Pieces of Stuffs; some whereof had the Ground-work of Gold. The same Day word being brought us, that the King intended to make a Progress in 8 Days to *Kuschan*; and, that we might take that Conveniency thither, every thing was prepared for our Departure, in order to which we made a great Entertainment the 12th of *Dec.* whereto the same Persons that had been at the first were invited, besides some *Armenians* of the Ambassador *Brugman*'s particular Acquaintance; and in the Afternoon we had another running at the Ring. During which time the Sound of the Trumpets and Timbrels, but especially our Artillery, made so terrible a Noise, that Father *Joseph*, our Interpreter, could not forbear to represent to the Ambassador *Brugman* the Danger he exposed himself, and the whole Retinue to, by thus irritating the King, who could hear every Shot at his Palace: But this was so far from prevailing upon him, that he ordered the Trumpets to sound, and the Great Guns to be discharged as much as ever before. 1637.

Brugman's Impudence and Insolence.

Another Piece of Insolence the said Ambassador committed against the *Persian* Sanctuary: For one *Lion Bernaldi*, a Gentleman of our Retinue, being suspected by him to keep a secret Correspondence with the *Dutch* Agent; but to smother the Jealousie accused of having robb'd the Ambassadors, had taken his Refuge in the Sanctuary, call'd *Alla Capi*, being part of the Royal Palace. The King being intreated by the Ambassadors to deliver up their Domestick, he answered, That if any of the Goods were found, they should be restored, but that it was not in his Power to take his Person out of the Sanctuary, tho' he had offended against his own Person; which Answer put the Ambassador *Brugman* into such a Passion, that he declared he would fetch him out of the King's Arms; and not thus contented, he suborn'd some *Armenians*, who were to cajole him out of the Sanctuary, whilst he sent 20 armed Persons, with Firelocks, who with Match lighted march'd into the Palace-Gate, with expres Orders to kill him as soon as he came out, or else to bring him away by Force, notwithstanding the other Ambassador *Crusius* opposed it with all his Might. The Party sent by *Brugman* were so diligent in executing what they were ordered, nay rather more, that they did not stick to attack the Guards who opposed their Entrance into the Gate of the Sanctuary; so that the King being awakened at the Noise, to prevent further disorder, commanded the Gate to be shut, a thing never known in the memory of Man, the Design of the Foundation being to keep it open at all times, for a certain Refuge for unfortunate Persons.

The King's Patience.

The King was so incensed at it, that he said the next Morning in Council, that it was high time either for him or the *Germans* to leave the City; and these two Actions, as well as another which happen'd soon after, when the said Ambassador sent some of our Retinue to the Assistance of *Seran*, an *Armenian*, to oppose the Searchers, which in the King's Name came to look for some handsome Lasses for the King's Use. All these Extravagancies, I say, made so deep an Impression upon the King's fierce Temper, that he had certainly caused the said Ambassador, and perhaps the whole Retinue to be sacrificed to his Resentments, had not the Lord Chancellor perswaded him not to violate the Laws of Nations, but to leave the Punishment of this Insolence to the Prince his Master.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

The Ambaſſadors from the Duke of Holſtein's *Travels into* Perſia.

1637. The City of *Ispahan*.

CONſidering *Iſpahan* as the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, of which ſcarce any ſatisfactory Account has been given hitherto, it will not be beyond our Scope, to give the Reader an Account of what we found moſt obſervable during our ſtay of 5 Months here. The City of *Iſpahan* is ſuppoſed to be the ſame, that heretofore was call'd *Hecatompolis*, being before *Tamerlane*'s time known by the Name of *Sipahan*, from the vaſt number of its Inhabitants, from the ancient *Perſian* and *Usbeque* Word *Sipe*, and the Plural *Sipehan*, which ſignifies Armies; *Tamerlane* having by tranſpoſing the two initial Letters, changed it into that of *Iſpahan*. *Ahmed ben Arebſcha*, who has writ the Life of *Tamerlane*, calls it *Isbahan*, and the Modern *Perſians* write it always *Isfahan* with an *f*, from an *Arabian* Word, which ſignifies a Batallion; tho' ſometimes they alſo pronounce it *Iſpahan*, which is its current Name now a-days.

It is ſituate in the Province of *Erak*, or *Hierak* (the Ancients *Perſia*) in a very Fair Plain, ſurrounded at about 4 Lgs diſtance from the City with very high Mountains, in the Form of an Amphitheatre, at 32 Dgs 26 Min. Lat. and 68 Dgs 40 Min. Long. the Declination of the Needle from the N. to W. being 7 Dgs. The Mountain of *Demawend* lyes to the S. and S. W. and the Mountain *Jeilak Perjan* to the N. Its whole Extent (including the Suburbs) is about 8 Lgs; it has 12 Gates, 9 whereof are only open, 18000 Houſes, and 500000 Inhabitants. The Fortifications are of Earth, and very inconſiderable, the Baſtions tho' of Brick, being ſo miſerably flank'd, that they are but a ſlender Defence to the Place; beſides, that the Ditch is ſo ruin'd, that at any time of the Year a Man may paſs over it dry-foot. *F. Bizarrus*, and ſome others, make the Walls of Chalk, of which there is not the leaſt Footſtep, except that the Caſtle-Wall appears as if it were whiten'd with Lime.

Its bigneſs.

It is waſh'd on the S. and S. W. ſide by the River *Senderut*, which ariſes out of the Mount *Demawend*; and before it reaches the City, divides it ſelf into two Channels, one whereof falls into the Park, call'd *Hazartzerib*, and the other paſſes by ſeveral artificial Canals under-ground to the Royal Gardens of *Tzarbagh*. It is conveyed into the City by Pipes which ſupply every Houſe with Water, wherewith they fill their Ciſterns, tho' beſides this, they are alſo well ſtor'd with Springs, the Waters whereof don't give way to that of the River. The Stone-bridge upon this River, betwixt the Garden of *Tzarbagh* and the City, which is as broad as the *Thames* at *London*, was built at the Charge of *Allaverdi-Chan*, ſometime Governor of *Schiras*. On the other ſide of the Mount *Demawend* riſes the River of *Abkuren*, which *Schach-Abas* deſigning to join with the *Senderut*, he employed above 1000 Pioneers for 14 Years together, thro' which means they were advanced within 200 Paces of accompliſhing the Work, when the Death of *Schach-Abas* put a Period to this great Deſign, his Succeſſor having not as yet thought fit to go about the finiſhing of the Work.

The River *Senderut*.

The City of *Iſpahan* had the Misfortune to feel twice the Effects of the Fury of that mercileſs Conqueror *Tamerlane*; *viz.* once when he took it from the *Perſian* King, the ſecond time when it revolted from him. *Joſ. Barbar*, who travell'd in *Perſia* 1647. ſays, That *Chotza* (whom he calls *Giaſa*) King of *Perſia*, intending to take a ſevere Revenge of this City for their Rebellion, ordered his Soldiers not to return thence without the Heads of ſome of the Inhabitants of *Iſpahan*; ſo that the Soldiers who could not meet with Men cut off the Womens Heads, and after they had ſhaved them, brought them to *Chotza*. It began firſt to recover under the Reign of *Iſmael* the 2d, but owes its preſent Glory to *Schach-Abas*, who tranſferr'd the Imperial Seat thither from *Caſwin*, and not only adorn'd it with many fair Structures, but alſo ſettled there ſeveral Colonies from divers Provinces of the Kingdom. Its chiefeſt Glory conſiſts at preſent in their *Meſquees*, Market-places, the *Baſar*, Publick Baths, and the Palaces of Perſons of Quality, with their Gardens thereunto belonging.

Twice deſtroy'd by *Tamerlane*.

1637.

It muſt be confeſs'd, that the greateſt Expence the *Perſians* are at in their Houſes, are in their Gardens, tho' they take a quite different courſe in them from what we do in moſt Parts of *Europe*: For as bountiful Nature ſtores their Fields with Tulips, and all manner of other fine Flowers, ſo theſe are not regarded in their Gardens, inſtead of which they apply all their Care to cultivate the moſt excellent Fruit-Trees, that Art and Nature can produce in ſo happy a Climate. They are alſo very curious in their Walks, which are ſet on both ſides with a kind of Plane or Poplar, not known in *Europe*, call'd *Tzinner* by the *Perſians*. They grow up to the heighth of a Pine, their Leaves being broad, and reſembling our Vine-leaves: It bears a Fruit not unlike a Cheſs-nut, but has no Kernel within. The Wood is dark brown, and ſo well ſtrip'd with Veins, that when rubb'd without, it exceeds in Beauty any thing that is made of the Root of the choiceſt Wall-nut Trees. The *Perſians* commonly make their Doors and Window-ſhutters of it.

Their Gardens.

The Fountains are alſo one of the chief Ingredients belonging to their Gardens, which have very large Receptacles, either of Marble or Free ſtone, from whence the Water is conveyed by Channels from one Baſon to another, for the Uſe of the Garden. Moſt of the *Perſian* Lords and rich Merchants, have certain Summer-Houſes, or Galleries, incloſed with a row of Pillars in their Gardens, on the four Corners of which are as many Rooms, where they take the Benefit of the Air, according as the Wind blows from one Corner or other. They are ſo curious in theſe Summer-houſes, that they often exceed both in the Buildings and Furniture their ordinary Dwelling houſes. Upon which Head it is to be obſerved, that tho' Perſons of Quality are very magnificent in the Furniture of their Houſes, yet make they but a ſlender Appearance without, being built only of Earth or Brick, bak'd in the Sun.

Their Fountains.

Their Houſes are generally ſquare, and commonly 4 Stories high, including the Ground-room. The Cellar, and all other Places under-ground, they call *Sirſemin*; the Ground-rooms, *Chane*; the firſt Story, *Kuſchk*; the ſecond, *Tzunſſe*; and the third, *Keſſar*; their open Halls are call'd *Eiwan*. Their Windows being for the moſt part as big as the Doors, they reach up to the Roof, their Rooms being ſeldom very lofty. Inſtead of Glaſs, they cover their Windows, which are made Lettice-wiſe, with oil'd Paper in the Winter.

Their Houſes.

Wood being a ſcarce Commodity in moſt Parts of *Perſia*, they make uſe of Stoves: They make a hole in the midſt of a low Room in the Ground, about the bigneſs of a good Kettle, this they fill with Charcoal, and lay a Plank acroſs it covered with a Carpet. As they always ſit upon the Ground, ſo they thruſt their Feet under the Carpet, drawing the ſame over their Bodies up to the Breaſt; which they look upon as extraordinary wholeſome, their Bodies being kept warm by a natural Heat with a little Fire, without the leaſt Offence to the Brains, the Vapours of the burning Coals being by certain Conduits drawn away by the Air under ground. They call theſe Stoves *Temurs*, and ſome dreſs their Meat with them. There is ſcarce a Houſe in *Iſpahan*, but what has its Court-yard before it.

Their Stoves.

I have heard them ſay, that the Streets of *Iſpahan* were formerly ſo broad, that 20 Horſe might march a-breaſt thro' them: But ſince *Schach-Abas*'s time, they are not ſo profuſe with the Ground, eſpecially in the middle of the City, near the Market-place and the *Baſar*, where now they are very narrow; tho' the Market-place it ſelf exceeds in bigneſs any that ever I ſaw in *Europe*, it being 700 Foot long, and 250 broad. The Houſes round about it are all of Brick, of an equal heighth, and the Shops vaulted. That ſide towards the Royal Palace, contains the Goldſmiths, Lapidaries, and Druggiſts, oppoſite to which are the Woollen-Drapers and Mercers, and thoſe that ſell Callico's, beſides the Taverns, and other Eating and Drinking-houſes. Theſe Houſes are but 2 Stories high, having

The Streets of *Iſpahan*.

The Market-place.

their

1637. their open Halls. All about the Market-place are planted certain Trees, not unlike Box, call'd *Scimscad*, but growing somewhat higher, the Branches always green, and so cut, that the Shops appearing very conveniently between these Trees, it affords a very agreeable Prospect. But one of the chiefest Ornaments, as well as Conveniencies of the Market-place, is the Rivulet, which at the Foot of these Trees is carried through a Chanel of Free-stone rais'd two Foot from the Ground, all about the Market-place, and exonerating it self into two large Basons at the two Corners of it, is from thence conveyed by Pipes to other Places of the City. Most Handy-craft Trades have their Work done by their Apprentices or Slaves, whilst they are employed in selling their Commodities in their vaulted Shops within the Market-places, or the circumjacent Streets; where each Trade has its peculiar Quarter, or perhaps a whole Street assign'd it, which being very nicely observed makes a very glorious Shew. At the end of the great vaulted Gallery, in which most of the Shops are in the Market-place, you see 2 Balconies opposite to one another, and covered over head, where the City-Musick plays every Night at Sun-set, or whenever the King passes thro' the Market-place, a Custom observed in all the Cities of *Persia* where a *Chan* resides, and said to be first introduced by *Tamerlane*.

The Royal Palace.

The Royal Palace, call'd *Dowlet-Chane*, or *Der Chane Schach*, stands upon the Market-place. Just before the Gate you see several Pieces of Canon, being most such as carry 36 and 48 Pound-Bullets, without Carriages. Mr. *Hem*, a *Dutchman*, who travelled into those Parts 1623, and 1624, says, they were brought thither from *Ormus*, for the Security of the Castle; which is not so, they being useless as they now are; besides, that the Palace has no other Fortifications but a single Wall, tho' pretty high; there being

Its Guards.

not above 3 or 4 upon the Guard in the Day-time, and about 15 in the Night, besides 30 Persons which watch within the King's Apartment, being the Sons of Persons of Quality; they have their own Captain, who every Night delivers to the King the Names of such as are then upon the Guard.

Over the outward Gate of this Palace is built a large, square Structure, having very large Windows on all sides. The Chief Apartments belonging to the Palace,

Its best Apartments.

are, The *Tah Chane*, a very large Hall, where the King treats all the Great Men of the Court upon the Day of their *Nauruz*, or New-Years-day: The *Di-wan-Chane*, or Great Hall of Justice, where Appeals be brought to the King, who presides there in Person, and frequently gives Audience to foreign Ambassadors; it having this Conveniency, that, as it adjoins to a spacious Court, the King may shew his best Horses, and their rich Equipages to Foreign Ministers, as we told you he did at our first Audience. In the *Haram-Chane* (being also a spacious Hall) the King's Concubines entertain'd him with their Musick, who are all Eunuchs, and Dancing. The Place of the King's Residence, and of his lawful Wives, is call'd *Deka*. Each of these Halls have many Chambers, Closets, Galleries, and other Apartments belonging to them, fit for the Entertainment of so great a Court, and so numerous a Train of Ladies, who live all in the same Palace; neither is there any considerable Apartment belonging to the Court, but has its peculiar Garden.

A Sanctuary.

At 40 Paces within the outward Gate to the right, you see another Gate leading into a spacious Garden: In the midst of it you see a Chapel, which is the Sanctuary we mentioned before; the *Persians* call it *Alla-Capi*, *i. e. God's Gate*. This Place is a most assured Refuge for all unfortunate Persons, whether Criminals or Debtors, even against the King himself, not excepting Murtherers and Assassins themselves, who may live here undisturbed, till they obtain the King's Pardon, if they have wherewithal to subsist. But Thieves are not permitted to stay long here.

The Citadel.

On the outside of the Royal Palace lies the Citadel, they call *Taberick Kale*, being fortified with a Rampier, and several Bastions of Earth. It is under the Command of a Governor, who has a strong Garrison under him for the Defence of the Place, the King's Treasury, Armory, and Stores of Ammunition, tho' the Artillery consists only in Field-peces.

Another Sanctuary.

Beyond the Market-place in a by-street, there is another Sanctuary, call'd *Tschehil Sutun*, from the 40 Beams which sustain the whole Roof of the *Mosque*, and all rest upon one Pillar, that stands in the midst of it. When *Tamerlane* took this City a second time, on occasion of their Rebellion, all the Inhabitants that 1637. fled to this *Mosque* were spared by the Conqueror; But *Schach-Ismael* made it a Sanctuary.

The great Mosque of Ispahan.

On the South-side of the Market-place, you see that most famous Structure, or *Mosque*, of which *Schach-Abas* laid the Foundation; but being not quite finished before he died, *Schach-Sefi* was about covering the Walls with Marble at the time of our being there, which was brought thither from the Mount *Elwend*. It is dedicated to a certain Saint, call'd *Mehadi*, the 12th of the Posterity of *Haly*, in Honour of whom the said *Schach-Abas* erected several other *Mosques*, tho' less magnificent, at *Tauris*, and other Places. As you come from the Market-place to this *Mosque*, you pass thro' a spacious Court paved with Free-stone, at the upper end of which there is under a Tree a fine Cistern, in which those who are to do their Devotions at the *Mosque* wash themselves.

Behind this Tree you go up a Pair of Stairs into another square Court, but much less than the former, and thence a little further to another *Mosque*, call'd *John de Lact*, the Portal of which is of white Marble, the Door being covered all over with Plates of Silver gilt in several Places. As you are to go to the great *Mosque*, you pass thro' a Door which brings you into a large Court, which has round it a vaulted Gallery, and in the middle a great Cistern of Free-stone, eight square and full of Water. Above this Gallery there is another, but somewhat lower, which upper Gallery has towards the Court a row of fair Marble Pillars, which are gilt in some Places. After you have cross'd this Court, you go into the *Mosque* thro' a Vault of an extraordinary heighth, lined within with blue, and gilt, glazed Tiles. The *Mosque* it self is a vast Structure, having many Niches and Chapels sustained by Marble Pillars. But what is most surprising is, that the Walls as well of the Galleries in the Court as of the *Mosque*, are of the whitest and best polish'd Marble, about 15 or 16 Foot high, each Piece of Marble being 5 or 6 Foot square, and so artificially join'd together, that the Junctures are imperceptible to the Eye. Within the *Mosque* you see the *Cathib* or Pulpit, and the *Meherab* or Altar, the latter of which is of one intire Piece of Marble, having on each side a Marble Pillar, all of one Piece. There are many other *Mosques* sufficiently remarkable for their Magnificence in *Ispahan*, but their vast multitude hinders us from ent'ring upon a particular Description of them.

In the very Centre of the *Maidan*, or Market-place, stands a high Pole, on the top of which they sometimes put a Melon, an *Arpus*, an Apple, or perhaps a Trencher with Money upon it, at which they shoot on Horse-back in a full gallop; the King himself, and sometimes the Lords of the Court assist at this Sport among the Inhabitants, and great Summs are lay'd. What Money falls from the Trencher belongs to the King's Footmen. He that carries the Prize is obliged to give an Entertainment to the whole Company, and the King himself, if he has shot among them.

Exercises of the Inhabitants.

They have another Game, call'd *Kuitskaukan*, which is like our Cricket; at this they play likewise on Horse-back, striking the Bowl, riding in a full Career. They also frequenrly exercise themselves at the Javelin, of which elsewhere. As the *Persians* are extremely curious in their Horses, so they make frequent Matches for Races, which are run from one Pillar to another, which stand at both ends of the Market-place. When the King has an Inclination to be Spectator of this Sport, he places himself in a kind of a wooden Hut, call'd *Seanescin*, which being set on 4 Wheels may be removed at Pleasure.

Taverns.

Opposite to that side where the great *Mosque* stands, are the Taverns, and other Tipling-houses of several kinds. They call those where they sell Wine, *Seire Chanes*, being for the most part infamous Places, where is a constant Conflux of the Scum of the Town, who commit all sorts of Brutalities there.

The best Coffee-houses.

The Places where they drink Thee (of which more hereafter) are of the best Repute at *Ispahan*, as being not frequented by the Inferiour sort. They spend most of their time in these Houses in playing at a kind of *Tick-Tack*, and *Chess*, at which they are very expert, even beyond the *Europeans* themselves. The *Persians* call this last Game, *Sedrentz*, or *Hundred Cares*, from the Care it requires in the Management of it. The Houses, call'd by them *Cahwa Coane*, are frequented most by those who are Lovers of *Tobacco*, and a certain blackish Liquor they call *Cahwa* (Coffee) of which we shall also have occasion to speak more hereafter. These

are

1637. are the conſtant Places, where their Poets and Hiſtorians are to be met with, who commonly ſit in a high Chair in the midſt of the Room, and entertain the Company with their Satyrical Stories, with various Geſtures, not unlike thoſe, who ſhew Tricks of *Leger-de-main* among us. Next adjacent to the Taverns and Tipling-houſes, are the Chirurgeons and Barbers Shops, which are two different Trades in *Perſia*: The firſt, call'd *Tzerrach*, being only for dreſſing and curing of Wounds; the others, called *Dellak*, trim only; tho' they are alſo ſometimes employed about Circumciſion. The Barbers Trade is very good here, there being not a *Perſian* but, as ſoon as the Hair comes out, ſhaves very frequently.

The Baſar. As you turn out of the *Maidan*, or Great Market-place, to the Right, you come to the *Baſar*, or ſecond Market-place, in the midſt of which you ſee the *Kaiſerie*, or open Cloiſter, which contains the principal Shops where they ſell the richeſt Stuffs and Commodities the whole Kingdom affords. A certain *Engliſhman*, named *Feſty*, made a very fine ſtriking Clock under the Reign of *Schach-Tamas*, which was put over the Gate of this Cloiſter; but as the ſaid Clock-maker was cut to pieces by the Relations of a certain Perſon he had kill'd, the Clock has never been in any good Order ſince. This Market-place is divided into ſeveral Streets, which being covered over head, contain a vaſt number of Shops excellently well ſtor'd with all ſorts of Commodities, nothing being ſo rare but what is to be met with here, and that at a very reaſonable rate. Every thing being very cheap at *Iſpahan*, except Fuel and Meat, the Country round about it being deſtitute of Foreſts and Meadows: For I remember that I bought in a Druggiſt's Shop the *China* Root, call'd *Bich Tzini*, and *Rhubarb*, call'd *Rawentzini*, though brought thither from *China* and the *Great Tartary* at a Crown a-pound.

Its Trade. The City of *Iſpahan* may be ſaid to be the chief Trading Place of all *Perſia*, which is frequented by all the *Aſiatick* and *European* Nations, and among the reſt above 12000 *Indians* inhabit there, their Commodities being incomparably more precious than thoſe of the *Perſians*; for not to mention the Musk and Ambergreaſe, they ſell great Quantities of Pearls and Diamonds. Beſides theſe, there are at *Iſpahan* great numbers of *Chuaſſon*, *Chattai*, and *Buchar Tartars*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Italians*, and *Spaniards*. The Province of *Kirman* ſupplies this City with Sheep and Lambs; that of *Kilan*, with Rice; and thoſe of *Kendeman*, *Taſam*, *Ebarku*, and *Jeſdi*, with Wheat and Barley; *Meſanderan* and *Feilack Perjan*, with Wood and Charcoal, which are ſold here by the Pound; the firſt at a Halfpeny, and the ſecond a Peny *per* Pound.

Perſian Money. The Current Money of *Perſia* is either Silver or Braſs, very little Gold. The *Abas*, the *Garem Abas*, or half *Abas*, call'd commonly *Chodabende*, the *Scahi* and *Biſti* are of Silver. The firſt, ſo call'd from *Schach Abas*, are about 18 *d.* *Sterling*, tho' their intrinſick Value is not above 15 *d.* The half *Abas* got its Name from *Schach Chodabende*; the *Scahi* is the 4th part of an *Abas*, and two *Biſti's* and an half make one *Scahi*. In *Schach-Iſmael's* time was coined a Piece of Money, call'd *Lari*, ſhap'd in the Faſhion of a thick Latin Wire, and flatted in the middle where the Impreſſion was made. *Pul* is the general Name for all braſs Money in *Perſia*, but what they call *Kasbeki* is the 40th Part of an *Abas*. Great Summs are computed by *Tumains*, each making 50 *Abas's*; tho' there be not a Piece of any ſuch Value, a *Tumain* being only a Name like a *Rouble* in *Muſcovy*, for the Conveniency of accounting. Foreigners are obliged to pay for what they buy, in *Rix-Dollars* or *Spaniſh Ryals*, which are generally converted into *Abas's*, becauſe they gain the 4th Part by it; for the Mint of *Perſia* being farm'd to private Perſons, they are always in League with the Bankers, or Money-Changers, who are obliged to bring all the Foreign Coin into the Mint, which they call *Serab-Chane*.

Braſs Money. It is further obſervable, that each City has its peculiar braſs Money, and particular Mark; which as it is not current in any other Place, ſo it is changed and recoined every Year, to the great Advantage of the King; who out of a Pound of Metal, which coſt about 18 *d.* makes 64 *Kasbeki*, beſides that by this means the Country is not eaſily overſtock'd with braſs Money. Their ordinary Mark is a Stag, a Deer, a Goat, a Satyr, a Fiſh, *&c.* Thus at our time the *Kasbeki* of *Iſpahan* were mark'd with a Lion; thoſe of *Scamachie*, with a Devil, at *Kaſchan*, with a Cock, and in *Kilan*, with a Fiſh. For the Conveniency of Trade, many *Caravanſera's*, or four-ſquare Store-houſes, ſurrounded with high Walls, are built at *Iſpahan*. They are commonly 3 Stories high, and, beſides the Vaults below, have all manner of Conveniencies, as Chambers, Halls, Galleries, *&c.* 1637.

Among the reſt of the Publick Structures of this City, the two Convents belonging to the *Spaniſh* and *Italian* Friars ought not to be paſs'd by in ſilence. One is the Convent of the *Auſtin* Friars, we have mentioned before; the other are *Carmelites*, who were no more than 10 in number at our time, notwithſtanding which the Structure might vie with any in *Europe* belonging to that Order. Their Priors's Name was *F. Tinas*, a very obliging Perſon, as were all the reſt, they living with a great deal more Circumſpection here among the Infidels, than they do in *Europe*. We never ſet foot in the Monaſtery, but they would treat us with a Collation: They preſented Mr. *Imhof*, a Patrician of *Nuremburgh*, and one of the Chief Gentlemen belonging to the Embaſſy, with a *Perſian* and *Italian* Lexicon, and afforded me a generous Protection whilſt I was at Variance with the Ambaſſador *Brugman*. Theſe two Monaſteries are in the Northern Quarter of the City, not above 1000 Paces diſtant from one another. *Spaniſh* and *Italian* Monks.

French Capuchins. Three *French Capuchins* were at our time alſo laying the Foundation of a Convent, in a Place they had purchaſed for that purpoſe, not far from the *Auſtin* Monks. They had already finiſhed the Chapel, and were building the Dormitory, which had a Kitchin, Garden, and Vineyard adjoining to it.

The King's Stables. Betwixt this and the Convent of the *Carmelites*, are the King's Stables, where the moſt remarkable thing is a high Tower, built altogether of Earth, and the Horns of *Ahu's* and Stags. The Story goes, that *Schach-Tamas* having in one Hunting kill'd 2000 of them, in memory thereof cauſed this Tower to be erected, and their Horns to be employed in the Building. They call this Tower *Keleminar*.

His Gardens. The King's Garden, call'd *Tzarbagh*, which is adjacent to the City, may challenge any other in the World, being above half a League in an exact Square, and divided by the River *Senderut* (which has ſpacious Walks on both ſides) into a Croſs, which makes four different Gardens. At one end of it to the South, you ſee a little Mountain planted with ſeveral Allys, having on both ſides ſteep Precipices, made by the artificial cutting of the Rocks into ſeveral Chanels, thro' which the River, which is brought up to the top of the Mountain, falls down into certain Baſons made for that purpoſe. Theſe Chanels are about three Foot broad, and ſo ſteep, that the Water being forced down with great Violence into the Baſon, makes a very agreeable Noiſe; beſides, that every Ally had its peculiar Baſon of white Marble, where the Water ſpouted forth in divers Figures; all the Water in the Garden being gathered at laſt into one large Pond in the midſt of it, and caſting up the Waters 40 Foot high. At the four Corners of this Pond were ſo many large Pavilions, the Apartments whereof were carved with Leaf-work, and gilt within; there being a paſſage from one to another by Walks planted with *Tzunar*-Trees, whereof there are Millions, which make a very delightful Shew.

Fruit-Trees. Beſides theſe, there are innumerable Fruit-Trees of all ſorts, which *Schach-Abas* had cauſed to be brought thither, even from *Turky* and the *Indies*. We ſaw here among the reſt a kind of Grapes, call'd by them *Hallague*, as big as a Man's Thumb, without any Stones, the Meat firm, and of a moſt delicious Taſte. Ten Maſter Gardeners are appointed to look after this Garden, each of whom has 10 other Gardeners under him; they are permitted to let any Body come into the Garden for 4 *Kasbeki's*, or 2 Pence a-piece, and to eat what Fruit they pleaſe, but they muſt carry none away.

The Suburbs of *Iſpahan*. The Body of the City of *Iſpahan* is ſurrounded with large Suburbs on all ſides, the chiefeſt and faireſt of which is call'd *Tzulfa*, inhabited by *Armenian* Chriſtians; moſt Merchants, who were tranſplanted thither by *Schach-Abas* out of *Armenia* the Great. Their yearly Tribute amounts to no more than 200 *Tumains*, or 1000 Livres. This Quarter contains 12 Churches, and about 3000 Houſes, which may vie with the beſt in the City. That of *Tzulfa*.

Tabriſabath. The Suburbs of *Tabriſabath* lie on the other ſide of the River *Senderut*; here *Schach-Abas* ſettled a Colony

1637. of People he brought along with him out of the Provinces of *Tauristhan*, which is the reason it is sometimes call'd *Abasabath*.

Hasenabath. The Suburbs of *Hasenabath* are inhabited by the *Tzurtzi*, or *Georgian* Christians, most of them rich Merchants, as well as the *Armenians*. They are much addicted to travelling with their Commodities, especially into the *Indies* and *Europe*; it being certain that those who at *Venice* and in *Holland* go under the Name of *Armenian* Merchants, are generally *Georgians*. Both these inhabit the Suburbs; not but that they, as well as all other Christians, have liberty to live in the City, but because they chuse rather to dwell for better Conveniencies sake among one another. For the *Persians* don't only suffer Christians to inhabit among them, as for instance, in the Quarter of *Nessera* within the City, but have also no small Kindness for them, both on the Account of the Profit they draw from them by their Commerce, and the Tribute they pay, but also on the account of cultivating their Vines, which, as well as the drinking of Wine being forbidden by the *Mahometan* Law, which however the *Persians* are much addicted to, they commit the dressing of their Vines to the *Armenians*, who are expert enough at that thing, but know not how to make or preserve Wine; for they don't keep it in Tuns, but in earthen Pots, or perhaps fill a whole Vault with it, without making use of any other Vessels. The *Persians* have such an Aversion to White-wine, that if, for want of Age, their Wines be not high colour'd enough, they put some Brazil-wood or Saffron into it.

Kebrabath. To the West-end of the City are the Suburbs, called *Kebrabath*, deriving that Name from *Kebber*, which signifies *Infidels*. I much question whether they may be number'd among the *Persians*, having scarce any thing common with them, but the Language; even their Beards which are very big, and their Habit being a Coat or Cassock coming down half way the Leg, open only at the Neck and Shoulders, shewing a manifest difference among them. Neither do their Women cover their Faces, and appear abroad in the streets, and yet are accounted no less chast than the *Persian* Women, who are not allow'd so to do.

The Religion of the Kebbers. All the Account I could get of these *Kebbers* was, that they are *Pagans*, having neither Circumcision nor Baptism, neither Priests nor Churches, or any Books relating to Devotion or Morality among them. Some affirm, that they adore the Fire, in imitation of the ancient *Persians*, but that must be look'd upon as an Error. Some glimpses they seem to have of the Immortality of the Soul, and of Hell and the *Elysian* Fields: For when any one among them happens to die, they let a Cock out of the House of the Deceased; if he is taken by a Fox, they conclude that his Soul is saved. They have also another Experiment, which they look upon as more assured; they put the best Cloaths the Deceased left, upon him, with golden Chains and Jewels about his Neck, and Rings upon his Fingers: This done, they set him upright against the Church-yard Wall, putting a Fork under his Chin to uphold him. If the Crows, or any such like Birds pick out his right Eye, they don't in the least doubt his Salvation, they bury him with a great deal of Ceremony, and lay the Corps very decently in the Grave. But if the said Birds light of the left Eye, they look upon it as an infallible Sign of his Damnation, and cast him headlong into the Grave.

There are near 1460 Villages round about *Ispahan*, the Inhabitants of which live, for the most part, upon silk and woollen Manufacturies. The Fields about this City are very low, without which the Country thereabouts would scarce be habitable, by reason of the excessive Heats; besides which, it affords them this Convenience, that they can make the River *Senderut* overflow them, as soon as the Heat of the Summer has melted the Snow in the Neighbouring Mountains. *Joh. de Persia* says, that this River leaves a Slime behind it, which infects the Air; but erroneously, the Air of *Ispahan* being as healthy as any in all *Persia*, except some few Provinces near the *Caspian Sea*. The Heats its true are excessive here in *June* and *July*; but their vaulted Apartments, and Halls and Galleries, with Windows on all sides, which afford a free passage to the Breezes of the Air, are no small allay to the same; as in the Winter, their Stoves easily defend 'em against the Cold, it seldom freezing so hard here, as that the Ice exceeds the thickness of a Man's Finger, which certainly thaws again in the day-time. Notwithstanding which, I have seen Pieces of Ice of two Foot thick in their Ice-Vaults. When they are to make this, they pitch upon a cool Place facing the North, pav'd with Free-stone or Marble, but uneven, and with an easie Descent. Upon this they pour Water, which as soon as they find congealed, they pour on more, and so continue it all night; in the day-time they cover it, to keep the Sun out, and repeat the same 3 or 4 nights successively, till they have Ice enough, which they afterwards break in pieces, and lay up in their Snow-Vaults; which are so frequent at *Ispahan*, that for 2 or 3 *Kasbeki's* you may have as much Ice as you want for the Summer. 1637.

The Situation of Persia. The Situation of *Persia*, betwixt the 25th and 37th of North Lat. shews it to be under the temperate Zone. It is divided in the middle by Mount *Taurus*, (as *Italy* is by the *Apennine*) which sends forth its Branches into many other Provinces, where they change their Names. Those Provinces where this Mountain lies betwixt them and the N. are excessive hot, whereas those who have it betwixt them and the S. enjoy a much more moderate Air: Which is the reason the Kings of *Persia* used to change their Habitations, according to the different Seasons. *Ecbatane* (now call'd *Tabris*) which has the Mountain betwixt it and the S. W. being always their Summer-residence; as they pass'd the Winter at *Susa* (which has given the Name of *Susistan* to its Province) where the Mountains not only defended them against the North-winds; but also, by the refraction of the Sun-beams upon the Mountains, render'd it so pleasant, that it deserved the Name of *Susa*, *i.e.* a *Lily*. In the *Spring* and *Autumn*, they commonly resided either at *Persepolis* or *Babylon*. The Modern Kings have in this Point not quite left the Footsteps of their Ancestors; for *Schach-Abas* used in the Winter to reside at *Ferahath*, in the Province of *Mesenderan*; and *Schach-Sefi* retires sometimes to *Tabris*, and sometimes to *Ardebil* or *Casvin*. But *Ispahan* is beyond all dispute the most commodiously situated for both Seasons, inasmuch as being seated in a great Plain, at an equal distance, not exceeding 3 Lgs from the Mountains; these send forth continual Breezes from all sides towards the City, which by passing thro' the Rooms cool the Air, without Intermission. We were very sensible of the difference of these Northern Winds, and the South-blasts in our Travels; the first of which, especially in the Night-time, sometimes quite benumb'd our Limbs, as the latter were often ready to choak us.

Distempers. As from hence it is evident, that the Provinces of *Persia* are not all equally healthful, so some are more subject to certain Epidemical Distempers than others. The Provinces of *Schirwan* and *Kilan* are much subject to Fevers, whereas the Goodness of the Air at *Tabris* is such, that scarce any such thing is to be heard of there; nay, that Air is look'd upon as a Sovereign Remedy against them. The Bloody Flux, and the Plague are not so often heard of here, as in some Parts of *Europe*; but the *French* Pox, which they call *Schemet Kaschi*, or the *Disease of Kaschan*, is very rife in that Place. For tho' the Situation of *Kaschan* be very excellent, yet the want of fresh Water makes the Air very unwholesome. As the Dropsie is a common Distemper in the Province of *Kilan*, so the Stone is a Disease rarely known, and the Gout not at all, throughout all *Persia*. They are generally long-lived, it being no extraordinary thing here to see People arrive to 100 years of Age. I my self knew a Judge in the Province of *Serab*, who was 130 years old, and the Father of *Hacwerdy*, who went along with us into *Germany*, was above 120.

The Soil of Persia. The Soil of *Persia*, except the Province of *Kilan*, is sandy and barren, especially in the Plains full of red Stones, Thistles, and Reeds; the last of which supply the defect of Wood in many Places. However the Valleys betwixt the Mountains are tolerably fertile, which is the reason that most of their Villages are there, the Inhabitants of which are very industrious in conveying the Waters, which arise in the Mountains by Chanels or Trenches of 4 Foot broad, into their Gardens and Till'd Grounds; and the better to furnish 'em with moisture their Fields require, (which are about 15 or 20 Fath. square) they make a kind of a Damm or Bank of a Foot high at one end, thro' which they let the Water in, out of their Channels over-night, and let it out again the next morning; when the almost perpendicular Sun-beams working upon the Moisture, render the Grounds fit for the Production of all sorts of Fruits in abundance. They make use of very large Ploughs, especially in *Irwan* and *Armenia*, where the Soil being

1637. being ſtrong, they are of ſo large a ſize, that 24 Buffalers are ſcarce ſtrong enough to draw them, and ſix Drivers are allow'd for each Plough, their Furrows being 1 Foot deep and 2 broad. Rice, Wheat, and Barley are the Grains they commonly deal in, Rye being not valued here, as Oats is not ſo much as known among them. They alſo ſow Millet, Lentils, Peaſe, and Beans, *Ricinus*, or *Palma Chriſti*, call'd by them *Kuntzut*, is alſo in great Requeſt with the *Perſians*; they ſqueeze the Oil, which is very pleaſunt, out of the Grain, and eat it. The Peaſants make a kind of Deſert of the Grain, Ciches and Currens.

Cotton. Cotton may be ſaid to be the ſtaple Commodity of *Perſia*; they call it *Pambeh*, and you may ſee whole Fields covered with it in the Provinces of *Irwan*, *Nachtzuan*, and *Kerabath*, in *Armenia*, *Adirbeitzan*, and in *Choraſan*. It is a Shrub 2 or 3 Foot high, having Leaves not unlike thoſe of the Vines, but ſomewhat leſs. At the end of its Branches ſhoots forth a Bud, of the bigneſs of a Nut, which, as ſoon as it ripens, opens in ſeveral Places, and brings forth the Cotton thro' the Clefts of the Rind. Beſides what is conſumed in Manufacturies of Callico's in the Country, vaſt Quantities of it are exported unwrought. There grows alſo in the Province of *Kilan* a kind of Flax, which makes very good Cloth. Sheep, Goats, Buffalers, Oxen and Cows, Camels, Horſes, Mules and Aſſes. Their ordinary Food for Horſes, is Barley mix'd with Chaff, or Rice, or Rice mix'd with ſhredded Straw. The *Perſians* never Water their Horſes till an hour and a half after their Meat, whereas the *Turks* water theirs immediately after. There is alſo a certain Herb, call'd *Genſcheht*, by the *Perſians*, this they ſow as we do our Clover, once in 7 Years: It ſprouts up near 3 Foot high with blue Flowers. They cut it twice a-year, and Perſons of Quality feed their Horſes with it; for *Perſia* produces very little common Hay, except in the Province of *Irwan*, and in *Armenia*; and in ſome Parts the Graſs is ſo plentiful, all the Year round, that they need not make any Hay. Above all they abound moſt in Sheep, this being their ordinary Food, tho' the Taſte is ſomewhat unpleaſing to thoſe that are not accuſtomed to it. They are a little bigger than they are generally in *Europe*, with ſhort and flat Noſes, and their Ears hanging down like Spaniels. Their Tails, which weigh 10, 20, nay, ſometimes 30 Pound, are very fat, the reſt of the Body being lean; the Fat hangs on them in great Gobbets, the Joints being for the reſt the ſame with our Sheep. In *Kurdiſtan*, they have a way of thruſting up theſe Tails into ſmall Carts with two Wheels, which they faſten with a little ſtick to their Necks. The *Tartarian* Sheep near the *Caſpian Sea*, are in all reſpects like thoſe of *Perſia*, as thoſe of the *Usbeque* and *Buchar Tartars*, are very different from them, being of a greyiſh Colour, with a long Wool curl'd at the Extremities, and turn'd into ſmall white Knots, like Pearls, which makes their Fleece the moſt eſteem'd of any Fur in *Perſia*, next to Sables, and they are very nicely kept by their Maſters, being always fed in the Shade; and if they are forced to oppoſe them to the rough Air, they cover them with Cloths, as we do our Horſes; their Tails are no bigger than thoſe of our Sheep.

Goats. The *Perſians* alſo feed numerous Flocks of Goats, the Fleſh of which they eat, make Candles of the Suet, and of their Skins make what we call *Spaniſh* Leather, which is brought by the way of *Muſcovy* into *Europe*. They Buffers. abound likewiſe in Bufflers, eſpecially near the *Caſpian Sea*, where ſome Peaſants maintain 500 or 600 of them. Both their Milk and Butter made thereof, are ſuppoſed to be very cooling. Neither do they want Oxen; but thoſe of the Province of *Kilan* have a bunch of Fat upon the Neck, like thoſe of the *Indies*. I have been credibly informed, that the Cows will not ſuffer themſelves to be milk'd without a Calf by their ſides; for which reaſon, if a Calf happens to die (for they never kill them to eat) they are forced to fill the Skin with Straw, and whilſt the Cow is licking, by caſting a little Salt upon it they make ſhift to milk her.

The *Perſians* have ſo great an Averſion to Swines-fleſh, that even the Chriſtians living among them breed very few Hogs, except in thoſe Parts where they live ſeparate from them; for which they alledge a certain Story out of the *Alchoran*, which intimates that out of the Elephant's and Neats Dung, that was gathered in *Noah*'s Ark, a Swine was engender'd, which with its Snout removed the ſaid Dung, *&c.* the reſt being too frivolous to be inſerted here. 1637.

Camels. Of Camels they have divers kinds; ſome have two Bunches, and theſe are call'd *Bughur*, and thoſe with one Bunch, *Schutur*. Theſe laſt are again ſubdivided into four ſorts: The firſt in rank they call *Ner*, *i. e.* the Male, being engender'd of a Dromedary, or Camel, with two Bunches, and a Female with one Bunch, call'd *Maje*; theſe are not to be covered by any other kind, as being the moſt eſteem'd of all, and ſometimes ſold at the rate of 100 Crowns a-piece; for they are ſcarce to be tired, and will carry 900 or 1000 weight. When they are over-heated, they foam at the Mouth, and are ſo malicious, that they will ſcarce feed, but bite, ſo that to prevent their doing of Miſchief, they muzzle them. It is obſervable that they ſoon degenerate, for thoſe Camels which come from them are very heavy, and ſeldom ſold for above 30 or 40 Crowns. The third ſort they call *Lohk*, being inferiour to the *Bughurs*, nor foam they at the Mouth like the *Ners*. When they go to rut, they put out under the Teeth a red Bladder, which they draw in with their Breath, lift up their Heads, and ſnort often. They are commonly ſold for 60 Crowns a-piece, being not near ſo ſtrong as the reſt. When the *Perſians* will expreſs a brave Fellow, they call him a *Ner*; but a Sluggard or Coward, they call *Lohk*. The 4th ſort the *Perſians* call *Schuturi baad* and the *Turks*, *Jeldoveſi*, *i. e.* Wind-Camels. They don't approach to the others in Bulk, but are more active and nimble, becauſe they will trot and gallop like Horſes, whereas the others never go beyond a Foot-pace. The King and great Lords keep many Teams of them, each Team conſiſting of 7 coupled together. Theſe ſerve for various Uſes; as to ride the Poſt, to meet Ambaſſadors, when they are ſumptuouſly accoutred with embroider'd Cloaths and Pack-Saddles, and Silver-Bells about their Necks. In the Wars they are extremely ſerviceable for the carrying of the Baggage; for they trot with that violence, that the Boy who rides upon the firſt Camel to guide the reſt, is forced to be tied round the Waſte to the Pummel. When they ſet a galloping, they ſtretch out their Necks forward with open Noſtrils, and run to that degree, that nothing is able to ſtop them. They are alſo very convenient for travelling, both for the Carriage of the Perſons and Baggage, one Man being able to guide a whole Team or more. As the Camels do travel at a conſtant rate, their Stages are without much difficulty appointed either in certain Villages, or *Caravanſera's*, built for the Accommodation of the *Caravans*. Some of theſe *Caravanſera's* Caravans have Hoſts, who provide you with Provender, but in the moſt you meet with nothing but bare Walls.

One good Quality belonging to the Camels is, that they are eaſily kept, feeding commonly upon Thiſtles and Nettles, tho' ſometimes they thruſt down their Throats a Ball or Paſte made of Chaff of Barley, weighing about 3 Pound; ſometimes they mixt ſome Cotton-ſeed with it, which is as big as a Pea. They can alſo live 3 days without Water, a thing very convenient whilſt they are travelling thro' the Deſarts, where there is generally great Scarcity of Water. When they are to receive their Burthens, the Guides only touch the Knees of their fore-legs; and ſo having laid themſelves upon their Bellies, they let any Body handle them as they pleaſe. A Man's Voice, and the ſound of an Inſtrument, enlivens them more than all the beating in the World; for which reaſon the *Perſians* tie ſmall Bells about their Knees, and one large one about their Necks: To the ſame purpoſe the *Arabians* make uſe of *Timbrels*. The greateſt Enemy to the Camels is a kind of Snail, call'd *Mohere*, which lying betwixt the Thiſtles, ſtings their Noſtrils, and proves mortal.

The Camels are ſo mindful of an Injury done them, that the *Camels Anger* is turn'd into a Proverb among the *Perſians*. Of this we had a very remarkable Inſtance related to us: A Camel, which was forgot to be muzzled, bit a Servant in the Arm; whereupon the Servant gave him many blows with a Cudgel about the Neck, being that Part which is the tendereſt about him. But not long after, being got looſe one night, he went among the Servants, which by reaſon of the cold Weather, lay near the Camels, ſingled out the Perſon that had beaten him, and trod him under feet, till he cruſh'd all his Bones to pieces; which ſufficiently contradicts what *Pliny* ſays of them, to wit, that they have no Gall; as Experience does the other Aſſertion of the ſame Author, concerning the Enmity betwixt

1637. the Camels and Horses, nothing being more obvious in *Persia*, than to see Camels, Horses, and Asses stand quietly together in the same Stable.

Their Horses. The *Persians* abound in most excellent Horses, which are very handsome about the Head, Neck, Ears, Crupper, and Legs. *Media* was formerly so famous for its Horses, that they were always preserved for the King's proper Use; nay, they are of a very fine Breed to this day, especially about *Ardebil*; nevertheless they are not to be compared to the Modern *Arabian* Horses, which are in such Esteem, even in *Persia* it self, that the choicest Horses belonging to the King's Stables, are of the *Arabian* Breed, tho' he has very fine breeding Places in *Erscheck*, *Mokan* (where are the best Meadows in *Persia*) *Schirwan*, and many other Provinces. Next to the *Arabian* Horses, the *Turkish* are most esteem'd. As the Strength of the *Persians* consists in their Cavalry, so they take particular care of their Horses; yet they don't litter them with Straw, but Horse-dung dry'd in the Sun, whereof they make Beds a Foot deep, upon which the Horses lie as soft as upon a Quilt; besides that this Litter serves a long time, for they only dry it again in the Sun, and it is as good as before; they cover them with their Cloaths lined with some coarse Cloth. Besides the Halters, they tie one of their Hind-feet to a Stake. The chief Manage they fasten on their Horses is to accustom them to start nimbly at a Race; they call their Race-Horses *Bad-pay*, *i. e. Wind-heel'd*. They have a Custom to colour the Tails, Main, and sometimes also the Legs of their White and Light-grey Horses, with Red or Orange, in which they are follow'd by the *Poles* and *Tartars*.

Their greatest Ostentation lies in the Equipages of their Horses, the Harnesses being sometimes adorn'd with Plates of Gold and Silver, and the Reins, Saddles, and Covering-cloths with Embroideries.

Mules. Besides their Horses, Mules are also in great Request among the *Persians*; nay, even with the King and Persons of Quality themselves, who commonly ride upon them; which is the reason they are as dear as Horses, an indifferent Mule being often sold for 100 Crowns. I was told they have some white Mules, but never saw any.

Asses. Asses are in *Persia* in greater abundance, than in any other part of the East; especially at *Ispahan*, where no Carts are allow'd, tho' they seem to be more slothful here than in other Countries.

The constant fair Weather, and the excessive Heat of the Summer, must needs produce most excellent Fruits in *Persia*. Those used in the Kitchin, are not only produced in greater abundance, but also much better here than in *Europe*: The Onions in the Province of *Tarum* weigh often 3 Pound a-piece; and their Cabbages are of an excellent Taste. As they take great care in cultivating their Melons, so they have very great Quantities of them, and that very excellent ones. They have two sorts; those they call *Kermeck*, are ripe in *June*, and eaten in the Summer, being very yellow, and extremely sweet: The other sort they call *Charbusei pasi*, which don't come to Perfection till *Autumn*, and will keep through the whole Winter; (they are very big, and weigh 30, 40, and sometimes 50 Pound weight) and that so nicely, that to distinguish them from the new ones, you must press the Rind with your Finger, to try whether it will give way. They have also a Method of keeping Grapes, by wrapping them in green Reeds, and hanging them up to the Roof. A third sort of Melons, call'd *Scammame*, is no bigger than an Orange, and not good to eat; but as they have a pleasant Scent, the *Persians* carry them commonly in their hands. They have also a kind of Water-Melons, call'd *Hinduane*, because they were first transplanted hither from the *Indies*; they are very big, but have a small Stalk: We had occasion to say something of them before in the Description of the City of *Astracan*.

Fruits of Persia.

Citruls. Among divers sorts of Citruls, or Citrul-Cucumbers, they have one call'd *Kabach*, known among the Herbalists under the Name of *Cucurbita Lagenaria*, being of the bigness of a large Man's head, and have a long neck; they must be eaten green before they ripen, for then the Rind dries and hardens, and is as tough as Leather, and the Meat consumed. The *Persians* make Flaggons, and Drinking Vessels of them.

Of Padintzar. There is a certain Fruit in *Persia*, call'd *Padintzar*, not known in *Europe*, being not unlike little Melons, or rather Cucumbers. They are green, and inclining to a Violet Colour towards the Stalk, having an oblong, and pretty large Seed. They are somewhat bitter when eaten raw; but boil'd, or fry'd with Butter, make a most delicious Dish. 1637.

Their Vines. As the Climate of *Persia* seems to be made for the Product of good Wine, so there is scarce a Province in the whole Kingdom, but what affords very fine Grapes: But as the Use of Wine is forbidden by the *Mahometan* Law, they commit the cultivating of the Vines to the *Armenians*; who, as we told you before, are however no great Artists at making, and preserving of Wine, which they keep in earthen Pitchers containing about half a Barrel: The *Persians* are however permitted to make a kind of Syrup of sweet Wine, by boiling it to a sixth Part, till it be reduced to the consistency of an Oil. This they call *Duschab*; and when *Dusch.* they use it, they mix it with Water, and a little Vinegar, and so make a very pleasant Drink of it. In the Northern Provinces, where the Wine is not so good, they dissolve it in the Country-wine, which by this means acquires the Taste and Colour of Sack. They sometimes boil this (*Duschab*) to the consistency of a Paste, for the more convenient Carriage, and afterwards dissolve it in Water, as before.

Of this *Duschab* they make a certain Conserve, call'd *Helwa*, by mixing it with beaten Almonds, some *Helwa* Flour, and peal'd Filberds: After they have put this Mixture into a long and narrow Bag, they make it into a Paste by the means of a Press, till it be so hard that you can't cut it without a Hatchet. They make also another kind of Conserve of the same *Duschab*, not *Zutzuch.* unlike a Pudding, this they call *Zutzuch*. Two sorts of Grapes which grow in *Persia*, are remarkable before the rest. The best, and most luscious, grow at *Schiras* and *Tabris*, from whence they are call'd *Tabersch*. It is a long Grape, without a Stone, and will keep all the Winter. The other sort, call'd *Keseki*, grow in *Tarum*, at *Tabris*, and at *Ordebath*; they are yellowish, and exceeding sweet, for which reason they occasion the Bloody Flux, if used immoderately. What we call Currants, are there yellow, and bigger than those of *Zante*: They have, besides these, several other sorts not known in *Europe*; as, for instance, the Grape call'd *Hallague*, being an Inch and an half thick, the Meat hard, without Juice or Stones; they will keep a whole Year. The *Enkuri Aly dereti* is a Grape, the Bunch whereof is above a Foot long, each Grape being of the bigness of a Damascen, of a dark red Colour, very juicy and sweet, but will not keep: They grow only in the Province of *Irwan*, between *Ordebath* and *Choddaseren*.

Fruit-trees. There is scarce any Fruit-tree in *Europe*, but what is to be found in *Persia*, tho' they have many not known in these Parts: As, for instance, near the City of *Ordebath*, grows a Pear about the bigness and colour of a Citron; they have a very sweet scent, are full of juice, but not extraordinary well tasted; they call them *Melletze*. Nature, without the least Addition of Art, furnishes the *Persians* with Pomegranate-trees, Almond-trees, and Fig-trees, in such vast quantities, that you see whole Forests of them in the Province of *Kilan*. Their wild Pomegranates are somewhat sourish, out of which they take the Seed, steep it in Water, and use it in their Sauces, unto which it gives a pleasing Colour and savoury Taste. The Juice of these Pomegranates boil'd, imparts also its Colour and pleasing Taste to the Rice they always make use of at their Feasts; for the *Persians* do delight extremely in sharp Sauces, which is the reason that the Scurvy is a rare Distemper among them. I will not pretend to enlarge my self here upon those Fruits we have in *Europe*, but will only add, that they differ in Goodness, according to the different Provinces which produce them. Thus *Jesche* and *Caswin* afford the best Pomegranates, but the Province of *Karabag* the biggest. Thus as *Ispahan* is celebrated for its Melons, so *Caswin* for Peaches, *Tabris* for its Apricocks, as the Provinces of *Kilan* and *Lahetzan* are for Silk.

Silk. The Mulberry-Tree, unto which the *Persians* owe their vast Products of Silks, ought not to be forgot among the other Fruit-trees: They have black and white Mulberry-trees, which the *Persians* plant close together, rather like Shrubs than Trees, not suffering them to come to the heighth of 6 Foot. As soon as the Mulberry Trees begin to bring forth their Leaves, the *Persians* carry the Spawn or Seed of the Silk-worms in a small Bag under their Arm-pits, till in 7 or 8 days they are hatch'd: Then they put them in wooden Dishes upon the Mulberry-leaves, which must be changed once a-day at least, and great Care is to be taken

they

1637. they get no wet. At the end of five days they sleep three, which time being expired, they dispose them into Rooms fitted for that purpose, Laths being nailed along the Beams to lay the Mulberry Branches with the leaves on for the Worms to feed upon; the Branches they change once or twice, and at last three times a day, according as the Worms encrease in bigness, and cover all the openings of the Room with Nets for fear of the Birds. Before they begin to spin, they sleep eight days, then great care must be taken that no Woman that has her Monthly Distemper come near them: They commonly begin to spin seven weeks after they are hatch'd, which is known by their leaving off eating, and by the Silk Threads that come out of their Mouths. They work twelve days at their Cod, which being expired, they take the Cods, and having preserved the biggest for Seed, throw the rest into a Kettle of boyling water, into which they put ever and anon a Besom made for that purpose, unto this the Silk sticks, which they wind up and cast the rest away. The Cods preserved for Seed, produce in 15 days after a kind of Butterfly, and these they keep for Seed, which must be kept in a moderate heat till the next Spring.

Nefte. Among the Fruits of *Persia* the *Nefte* deserves also its place, which the Sources of *Baku* afford in great plenty; as likewise the Salt wherewith the Salters of *Nachtsuan*, *Kulb*, *Vrum*, *Kemre*, *Hemedan*, *Bisethun*, *Suldus*, and *Kulissim* furnish whole *Persia*.

Salt.

Iron. At *Muasula* and *Keintze* are certain Iron Works, but the pureness of the first, afford the best, being so tractable, that it yields to the Hammer without heating. Some Gold and Silver Mines have been discovered between *Serab* and *Miane*; but by reason of the scarcity of Wood thereabouts, they could not be cultivated.

Between *Pirmaras* and *Schamachie* is a Mountain of *Lapis Specularis*, which in a Sun-shiny day, looks at a distance like a vast lump of Diamonds.

The Stature of the Persians. The *Persians* are but low of Stature, and not bulky; yet strong Limb'd, their Complection inclining to an Olive Colour, with black Hair, and Hawk Nos'd. The Men are shaved at least once a week. Now whereas the ancient *Persians* let their Hair grow, in which they are imitated at present by the *Seid*, who call themselves the Kindred of *Mahomet*. They also wear no Beards, but only Mustacho's, there being only a Religious Sect called *Pybr*, who wear their Hair both upon their Chins and Cheeks. Some there are who never cut their Mustacho's, which they say, they do in imitation of *Haly*, who being got into Paradise, and tasted of the Heavenly Liquor, some drops of it remain'd in his Mustacho's, which was the reason he would never cut them afterwards. Black Hair is that the *Persians* most of all delight in: They can dispense with fair Hair, but abominate red Hair'd People. If their Hair be not sufficently black, they make use of a mixture of the Herb and Seed called *Wesme*, of the Rinds of Pomgranates, Soap and Arsenick, which they boil in Water, and with it rub their Hair, and afterwards wash it with a Lee made of unslack'd Lime. They use also the Water that issues from the Vines in the Spring time for the same purpose. They have one very odd Custom, which is, that they paint their Hands, but without fail their Nails, with a certain Orange colour, resembling that of our Tanners: Some also do the same thing to their Face. This is so general a Custom, and so necessary an Ornament to Waiting-women here, that this paint is presented to all the Guests that are present at a Wedding-Dinner. Such as die Maids, are painted with it all over their Bodies, because they look upon it as a peculiar piece of cleanness. This Colour is made of a certain Herb called *Chinne*, which grows in the Province of *Erak*, its Leaves being like that of Myrtle: This after it is dry'd and beaten as small as Flour, they mix with the Juice of a wild Pomgranate, or of a Cittern, and sometimes only with fair Water: This Colour sticks so close to their Hands, that though they wash them never so often, it will not come off in fifteen days; especially if they rub their Hands with Wallnut-tree Leaves after it, which they often do when they would have the Colour appear more dark than before.

They paint their hands and nails.

Their Habit. Their Garments hang loose like those of the Women, and have something of Effeminacy in their wadling Gate. Those large Coats without question, were deriv'd from their manner of sitting cros leg'd upon the ground, like our Taylors, which makes them weak in the Hamms. *Diodorus Siculus* says that *Semiramis* introduced these Garments. Their Turbants which they call *Mendils*, are made either of fine Callicoes, or Silk Stuffs; which being of several colours, and about eight or nine yards long, come many times about their Heads, the Folds being stitcht together only, sometimes with Gold Thread. Their Princes wear them white, as they do all their Garments. Some have a Tassel hanging from their Turbant down their Backs a quarter of an Ell long. Those who derive their Pedigree from *Mahomet*, use green Silk Turbants. Some *Persians*, and those of the first Quality wear Caps, the inside and outside of which is of the Fur of the *Buchur* Sheep, which is soft as any Silk; they are sold at ten and twelve Crowns a piece. And as these are worn both in Summer and Winter, so it makes their Heads so tender, that they dare not expose them to the least cold, which is the reason that they never uncover themselves, neither in their Mosques, nor in saluting their Friends; nay, with even the King himself, but perform it by a low inclination of the Head, and putting their hand to their Breast. What *Herodotus* relates of the difference betwixt the Skulls of the *Persians* and *Egyptians*, *viz.* that after a Battle fought betwixt them, the Skulls of the first were found so thin, that a Man with ease might thrust his Finger into them, whereas those of the last were so hard, that they could not be broken with Stones, is founded upon the same reason, which agrees with what he himself alledges; for, says he, the *Egyptians* being from their Infancy accustomed to expose their bare Heads to the Sun, were grown hard; whereas the *Persians*, who had always their Heads covered, were tender in their Skulls. *Lib. 3.*

Kisilbasches. There are many among the *Persians* that use red Caps, which makes the *Turks* calls them in derision, *Kisilbaschs*, i. e. *Red Heads*. The several Authors that have writ of *Persia* represent them by different Names. The Origin of the *Kisilbaschs*, is thus: When the *Persians*, by the advice of *Schich Sefi* (the Author of the *Persian* Sect) broke Communion with the *Turks*, held, That the Twelve Successors of *Haly* (of whom more hereafter) were to be put among the number of Saints; and that their Religious Men wore red Caps, with twelve Plaits, in shape not unlike the Bottles used in *Languedoc* and *Provence*, which have flat Bodies and narrow Necks. These Religious Differences having occasioned a bloody War betwixt those two Nations, in which the *Turks* having the better, treated the *Persians*, but especially the Ecclesiasticks, very cruelly, which made them lay aside their Red Caps. At last *Schach Ismael* I. being forced back as far as the Province of *Kilan*, and fearing that in a little time he might be bereaved of the whole Kingdom, resolved to try his utmost, for which purpose he sent some of his Trusty Persons through the Country, to represent to the People the imminent danger they were exposed to, unless they would hazard all for their Lives and Liberty, promising such as would serve him in the Accomplishment of so great a Work, a general Exemption for themselves and their Posterity: This had the desired effect; for having by this means got together an Army of 300000 Men, and having retaken *Ardebil*, and consequently the Holy Sepulchre of *Schich Sefi*, he confirmed to them the beforesaid Privileges, ordering them as a Mark of their rightful Claim, to wear those Red Caps with 12 Plaits, in remembrance of their 12 Saints; which is the reason that the *Persians* are well pleased to be called *Kisilbaschs*, though none but the Posterity of *Haly*, and of those exempted Persons wear those Red Caps, the former for distinction sake, having them covered with Linen Cloth; the others without any thing at all. Their Posterity do still enjoy the benefit of these Exemptions, and out of them are chosen the Guards of the King's Body, as the *Switzers* are in many Courts of *Europe*. Their Habit is a kind of a *Casaque* without Sleeves, of printed Calicoe or Silk of divers Colours, reaching down to the middle Leg; those of Calicoe are commonly quilted: They draw the sides of them together under the left Arm, and about their Middle they wear a Scarf of two Ells long, wrapt several times about their Bodies. The better sort have another *Indian* Scarf over this, which is much more esteemed than the *Persian* Silks, both for the colour and fineness of the Silk. In this Scarf the *Persians* wear their Ponyards, Knives, Hankerchiefs, Money, and some an Ink-horn, Pen-

knife,

1637. knife, Letters, and such like; they serving them instead of Pockets, as the *Muscovites* do with their Boots. The King and Persons of Quality wear over this Coat a kind of Rocket without Skirts, which comes no farther than to the Waste, bordered with Sables; over this when they go abroad, (whether on Foot or Horse-back) they cast a loose Silk Garment of several colours, embroidered with Gold Flowers; this they call *Jakub Chani*, from a King of that Name, who first introduced them into *Persia*. Their Breeches which are of Calicoe, are made like Drawers, and they wear them under their Shirts, which are of red strip'd Calicoe, quite down to their Feet. Their Stockings are of Woollen-Cloath, very ill shap'd, without the least proportion to the Legs, they are generally green, out of an aversion to the *Turks*; for *Mahomet* having worn a green Cap, the *Persians* to dishonour the *Turkish* Religion, wear that colour upon their Feet. Their *Kefs* or Shooes, are picked at the Toes, and so low in the Quarters, that they slip them off and on like Slippers; which they do as often as they come into the King's Anti-Chamber, or come into their own, or their Friends Houses. I remember that one day I as was going to the *Chan* of *Schamachie* at Audience time, I saw more Shooes stand in the Anti-Chamber, than would furnish a substantial Shooe-maker's Shop, and an Attendant standing by them, who with a forked Stick, gave every one his own as they went out.

The Womens Apparel.

The Women in general, wear finer Stuffs than the Men, but without any thing about the Waste; their Drawers and Smocks being the same with the Men. They have scarce any Ornaments about their Heads, their Hair hanging down careless about their Shoulders, ty'd in Tresses; the only Ornament they have, is two or three rows of Pearls set over the Forehead, and coming down along the Cheeks, are fastened under the Chin; unto which seems to relate that passage in the *Canticles*, *Their Cheeks are comely with rows of Jewels.* Their Stockings are commonly of red or green Velvet. Maids wear Rings with precious Stones in them, in the right Nostril, as the *Tartarian* Women do, and on their Fingers, and Bracelets of Silver Plates on their Arms. But the Men are by the *Mahometan Law* forbidden to wear any Golden Rings. I remember that when the Ambassador presented a fine Diamond Ring set in Gold to the Chancellor, he had it put into Silver, and afterwards presented it to the King. When the Women are abroad, they always wear a white Veil, which reaching down below the Knees, they open a little to see their way.

Chap. 1.

The neatness of the *Persians.*

The *Persians* are very nice both in their Habitations and Clothes, not suffering the least spot to be seen, so that the richer sort change their Habits as soon as they find the least spot in them, and the Poor have them wash'd once a week, contrary to that the *Muscovites* do, whose Clothes are always greasie; and they don't keep their Bed-Chambers so clean as the *Persians* do their Stables: The *Persians* are both quick and of a sound Judgment; apply themselves to Study, and are great lovers of Poetry. They are rich in their Inventions, and their Fancies strong and lofty: With all this they are free from Vanity, not slighting any Man, but on the contrary obliging, and engaging in Conversation, civil to every body, but especially to strangers. Their Complements savour so much of Submission, that they exceed any thing of that kind, even in *France* it self. If a *Persian* invites a Friend to his House, and makes a proffer of his Service, he does it in these, or like Terms; *Let me beg of you to make my House noble by your Presence; I sacrifice my self to your Commands; I lie prostrate at your feet to serve you; I wish the Apple of my Eye might help to pave your way*, &c. But these must be considered for the greatest part as Complements. For I remember that a *Persian* who was troubled with a pain in his Side, coming to our Physician for advice, told him, that if he cured him, he would give him his Head; and being answered, that at that rate it would be needless to cure his pain; he replied, that it was only by way of speaking.

Their Ingenuity.

And to confess the truth, the *Persians* are not very Religious upon that point, it being their general Opinion, that those who speak their Sentiments at all times, are none of the wisest; which is the reason they never take it amiss, when you tell them they have spoke an untruth; and the word *Gullaneshi*, or Lyar, is accounted no more than a Jest among them. 1637.

True in their Friendship.

They are nevertheless very Religious in observing the nicest Rules of Friendship, which tie they say ought never to be dissolved but by Death; and preserve it before all the other obligations of Consanguity. It is sufficiently known how Friendships and Fraternities are contracted in *Germany* over their Cups; but these generally vanish as soon as the Vapours of the strong Liquor are evaporated. But the *Persians* have quite a different Sentiment of Friendship, it is their Custom to make once a Year an Entertainment for all their Kindred and Friends, and if it happen that at such a time any Persons out of a mutual affection, are desirous to enter into a more strict Friendship, they pitch upon one of the Company, whom they take by the border of his upper Garment, and having told him, that they have chosen him for their *Babba*, or God-father, (which he is obliged to accept of) they go all three to the *Calif*, lie down upon their Bellies, first the God-father, and then the Brethren at the *Calif*'s feet, who gives each of them a stroak with a Wand upon his back; pronouncing at the first stroak *Alla*, at the second *Mahomet*, and at the third *Haly*; this done, they kiss the Wand and the *Calif*'s hand, and thus the Fraternity is established, which is look'd upon among them, as a thing so sacred, that they are of opinion, that tho' most other sins may be pardoned, the violation of this Friendship is irremissible. If two of these Brethren happen to have any difference, a reconciliation is to be made at the next Feast; which is perform'd, thus; He that has been injur'd goes with his Head stooping down, and his Arms hanging carelesly by his Sides, to the other's door who has offended him, where he stands in that posture till the other has intreated him three times successively to come into his House, whence they go together to the Entertainment, were the Reconciliation is consummated.

As the *Persians* are very good natured, and sensible of any Obligation done them, so they scarce ever forget an Injury. They are also brave and good Soldiers, daring in an Enterprize, though never so dangerous.

Their Modesty.

Notwithstanding this, they are very modest and reserv'd in their outward behaviour, which is the reason, that when they make water, they squat down like Women, and if conveniency serves, are sure to wash themselves afterwards; and if possibly they can, will make water near some Brook, or in a Vessel fill'd with water, whence the *Turks* give them the nick-name of *Cher Scahei*, *i. e. Aly's Asses*, because Asses always piss as they are passing through water; as on the other hand the *Persians* bestow the Title of *Seksumi* on the *Turks*, because they piss against the Wall like Dogs.

It is observable, that most *Persians* of Note among the *Turks*, as well as the *Persians* in general, when they ease Nature, ever turn their Backs or Faces to the South, because they look that way which they say their Prayers.

Are addicted to Venery.

However this enforc'd Modesty of theirs does not hinder them from being much addicted to Venery; which is evident not only from the many Wives and Concubines they maintain, but especially from their publick Brothel-houses, which are allow'd in all great Cities of *Persia*, except *Ardebil*, and pay a certain annual Tribute. And it is upon this score, that, as we told you before, at their Feasts they also entertain their Guests with Women. The King himself entertains a great number of Prostitutes at his own Charge, who divert him with dancing, and making all manner of Postures; these follow him whenever he makes a Progress either into the Country or to the Army, after the example of the ancient *Persian Kings*.

To Sodomy.

Sodomy is look'd upon in *Persia* as a Vice scarce deserving Punishment, of which we had an instance given us in *Schach Sefi* himself, who being much addicted to this Vice, caused 1634. a young Lad, who had killed his Master as he was forcing him to commit this detestable Sin, to be torn in pieces by two *English* Mastiffs.

Polygamy.

As the *Mahometan* Religion puts its chief Beatitude in carnal Enjoyments, so Polygamy is not only permitted, but also encouraged among the *Persians*, whence it is that to provoke Lust, they much delight in the obscene postures of their Men and Women-

1637. Women-dancers, and to revive their Appetites, uſe the leaves and ſeed of Hemp; the firſt they gather before they come to ſeed, and after they have dry'd them in the ſhade, beat them to Power, which they make up with Honey in the nature of a *Bolus* of the bigneſs of a Pidgeons Egg, and take two or three of them at a time. The Seed they uſe fry'd, with a little Salt put to it. The *Perſians* after Copulation with a Woman, never fail either to bath, or waſh themſelves all over with cold water, and thus think themſelves ſufficiently cleanſed.

Their ordinary houſe-keeping.

The ordinary Charges of Houſe-keeping in *Perſia*, are not very great; their Cloathing, which is for the moſt part of Calicoe being very cheap, and their chief Proviſion of the Family nothing but Rice; and as to their Furniture, except a few Tapiſtry on the Floor of their Lodging-rooms, it is but mean. Fleſh is alſo generally cheap all over *Perſia*, except in ſome of the moſt populous Cities, where they have their Proviſions out of the remote Provinces: This defect is in theſe parts in ſome meaſure ſupply'd by their Gardens, which furniſh them with all ſorts of Fruits and Herbs in abundance; and as for their Drink, the common People make uſe of no other but what a Neighbouring Rivulet furniſhes them withal. They are however extreamly neat in their Houſes, ſuffer no Dogs to come into their Lodging-rooms, and at Meals have certain earthen Pots, not unlike our Chamber-Pots, which they put betwixt every two Perſons to ſpit in and caſt the Bones; the uſe of Trenchers being not common among them.

Their Kitchin-furniture.

The ordinary ſort of People dreſs their Meat by their Stoves. Their Kitchin-Furniture conſiſts in Braſs-Pots and Kettles, or of Copper well Tin'd; ſome alſo make uſe of Earthen Pots, which are all faſtened to the Hearth. In thoſe Provinces where Fuel is ſcarce, they burn Cow and Camels Dung dry'd in the Sun. Beſides their Diſhes of Porcelain, they are generally of Copper, but very finely Tin'd over: The Country People are contented with common Earthen Ware; and are generally ſparing enough in their Diet, as are almoſt all the *Perſians*, they ſeldom eating Fleſh above once a day, and being for the reſt contented with Butter, Cheeſe, and Fruits.

Their common Food.

Rice ſoak'd in Water is the moſt ordinary livelihood of the *Perſians*; this they often colour with the Juice of Pomgranates, of Cherries, or Saffron, and ſerve it up under boyl'd Mutton, Capons, broil'd Fiſh, *&c.* of divers Colours in one Diſh. Sorrel, Spinage, and Cabbages white and green are very common among them, but are not very fond of red ones. Small Birds, and all ſorts of Fowl they have in abundance, except Turkeys, which are ſold at a dear rate here; Partridges and Pheaſants are dog-cheap in ſome Provinces. The Rice is uſed in *Perſia* inſtead of Bread, yet do they make ſome of Wheat alſo. Wheat they call *Komatſh*, is three inches thick, and a foot and a half long; the *Reaſekeſſche* are Cakes of half an ell long; the *Sengek* are commonly bak'd over their Ovens, and are uneven by reaſon of the impreſſion made in them by the Pebbles that cover the Oven. The *Jaucha's* are a kind of Cakes as thin as Parchment, half an ell ſquare; theſe are uſed inſtead of Napkins to wipe their Fingers on wherewith they have taken up the Rice, and pull'd the Meat in pieces; for the uſe of Knives is a thing unknown in *Perſia*; at the end of the Meal they tear them to bits and eat them. Their Spoons, not excepting the Kings, are of Wood of an oval figure, the handle very thin, but a foot and a half long.

Their Drink.

Though Wine be ſold in many Provinces of *Perſia* at the rate of three pence a quart, yet the uſe of it being forbidden the *Mahometans*, Water mixt with ſome *Duſchab* and a little Vinegar, is their ordinary Drink; yet at their Feaſts they drink Wine very plentifully; and ſome that are not over ſcrupulous, ſuch as the poor Whores, and other Debauchees ſeldom refuſe it, thinking it ſufficient that they are not concerned in the making of Wine. Immediately after Meat, every one waſhes his hands with warm Water.

Their uſe of *Opium*.

Opium is ſo much in vogue among the *Perſians*, that ſome will take an ounce of it at a time; tho the more moderate ſort content themſelves with taking it only once in two or three days, which makes them giddy-headed, as if they had been overcome with Wine. There is a great quantity of it prepared about *Iſpahan*; they take the Poppy green, cleave the head of it, from whence iſſues a white Liquor, which in the Air is coagulated to a black ſubſtance: This is of ſuch vaſt uſe throughout all the Eaſt, not excepting the *Indians* themſelves, that *Bellon* ſays, he ſaw 50 Camels loaden with it, going from *Natolia* to *Turky*. The *Turks* attributing to it a quality of infuſing Courage into the faint-hearted, uſe it when they are to go upon ſome dangerous Enterprize. The Women ſeldom make uſe of it, except when they have a mind to rid themſelves of the inſupportable ſlavery put upon them by their Husbands, by an eaſie Death, in which caſe they take a good quantity of it, and drink cold water after it. 1637.

Of Tobacco.

Tobacco is a Weed ſo much eſteemed in *Perſia*, that even thoſe of the firſt Quality don't ſtick to take it, even in their *Moſques*: About *Bagdat*, and in *Kurdiſtan* grows abundance of it, but they want the Art of managing it, which is the reaſon that the *Tobacco* brought thither from *Europe*, is in high eſteem in *Perſia*; they having no other way of preparing it, than to let it dry like other common Herbs, the Leaves of it which we ſaw in the Shops at *Iſpahan*, being as ſmall as *Sena*, by reaſon of being ſqueezed up in Bags.

Thoſe that are nice in taking *Tobacco*, ſmoak it through Water, which they put in a Glaſs, or Earthen Bowl, or a Cocoe Shell, or a Veſſel made of the Rind of a certain root of *Citruls*, call'd *Kaback*; into this they put a ſmall Reed, having at the extremity a Bowl in which they put the *Tobacco*, which being lighted, they draw by the help of another Pipe of half an Ell long, the ſmoak through the Water, which is incomparably more pleaſant than our way; but ſuch as want theſe conveniencies, are glad to take it as we do, except that their Pipes, which are much longer than ours, are of Wood, though the Bowls be of Earth.

Of Coffee.

Their common Drink whilſt they are a ſmoaking, is Coffee, call'd by them *Cahwa*, a Fruit brought thither out of *Egypt*, its colour is like our Wheat, its taſte like *Turkiſh* Wheat, of the bigneſs of a ſmall Bean. After they have fry'd it in an Iron Pan, they beat it to Powder, and boil it in fair Water, being of no very pleaſant taſte. However the *Perſians* uſe it in great quantities, out of a Perſuaſion, that it allays the natural heat, and prevents the begetting of Children, unto which they have no ſmall averſion: The *Perſians* tell a very pleaſant Story upon this account concerning one of their Kings named *Sulthan Mahomet Caſtein*, who liv'd before *Tamerlain*, who being quite emaſculated by the exceſſive uſe of Coffee, and his Queen looking one day out of a Window into the Court, where they were gelding a Stone-horſe, and having ask'd the reaſon, was told that it was done in order to check his fiery temper; unto which ſhe anſwer'd, That ſhe thought it great pity, the poor Creature ſhould be uſed thus cruelly, when the uſe of *Coffee* would produce the ſame effect with leſs trouble. They further add, that this King being ſucceeded by his Son *Mahomet*, and having ordered their famous Poet *Hakim Tandauſi* to compoſe certain Verſes, for which he rewarded him ſo ſlenderly, that the Poet being exaſperated at this uſage made another Poem, in which having upbraided the King with his niggardly Temper, he concludes that he could ſcarce be ſuppoſed to be of Royal Extraction, but rather the Off-ſpring of a Baker, or Shop-keeper, who uſed to make ſuch Preſents; the Queen Mother imagined by that, ſomething of this nature might perhaps be come to the Poet's Ears, was ſo nettled thereat, that ſhe freely confeſs'd to her Son, that the King his Father being become impotent by the uſe of Coffee, ſhe had carried on an Intrigue with a certain Baker, who had furniſhed the Kingdom with an Heir; adviſing him at the ſame time to ſtop the Poet's Mouth by a good Preſent, for fear the thing ſhould take vent among the People, which the young King did accordingly.

Of Thee.

Thee is alſo in great requeſt among the *Perſians* as well as the *Chineſes* and *Indians*. It is an Herb brought by the *Usbegue Tartars* from *Chattur*, the leaves of which are an inch in length, and half an inch in breadth; when it is dry'd, it is of a dark grey colour, and ſhriveled up, but as ſoon as it is ſteep'd in hot boiling water, it ſpreads and reaſſumes its former ſhape and colour. The *Perſians* boil it till

the

1637.

the Water be somewhat bitterish, and add Fennil or Anniseed, or Cloves and Sugar: But the *Indians* make only an infusion of it in hot boiling Water. Its quality is astringent, and it disperses the gross vapours which sometimes disturb the Brains; but this Herb being now so well known in *Europe*, we will say nothing further of it.

Their way of living.

The *Persians* do maintain themselves, some by cultivating their Gardens, others by Husbandry, others Traffick, and the most by Trades; Many addict themselves entirely to Soldiery; and not a few get their livelihood by Writing, because Printing is not as yet introduced among them.

The Tradesmen sell their handy-works in their respective Stations in the Market-place, their Working Shops being commonly in another place.

Their most noted Professions are Weavers, Dyers, and Painters; the last of which paint Flowers and other Figures upon Silks and Calicoes so exactly as if they had been done by a good Painter. Their pieces of Stuffs seldom exceed five or six Ells, being as much as is requisite for a Garment according to their Fashion; the best are made at *Fescht* and *Kadschan*.

Their best Stuffs.

They export vast quantities yearly of Raw Silk and Cotton by the way of *Ormus*, which is there exchanged for Tin, Copper, *English* and *Dutch* Cloths, an ordinary Cloth yielding in *Persia*, where they are ignorant in the Woollen Manufactury, five or six pound *per* Yard: For *Persia* being computed to yield yearly 20000 Balls of Silk, *viz.* the Province of *Kilan* 8000, *Schirwan* 3000, *Chorasan* 3000, *Mesanderan* 2000, *Karabath* 2000, (besides what *Georgia* produces) and *Persia* being supposed not to consume above 1000 Balls, the rest is transported to other places. The value of Raw Silk in *Persia* is commonly 2 *s.* 6 *d.* or 2 *s.* 8 *d. per* pound. They weigh by the *Badman*. Wheat at *Tabris* is six pound, in *Kilan* twelve pound, and at *Schamachie* and at *Karabath* sixteen pound. Among all the Merchants of *Persia*, the *Armenians*, who are Christians, exceed the rest in Riches, they being the most industrious of all in travelling into foreign Countries, a thing allowed of in *Persia*, contrary to what it is in *Muscovy*: There is another peculiar conveniency for Traffick in *Persia*, as well as *Turky*, that notwithstanding they are engaged in a War, their Traffick is never obstructed, but the Caravans continue to pass unmolested.

Persia produces yearly 20000 Balls of Silk.

Traffick never obstructed.

If the *Persians* had the advantage of Navigation, in which they are altogether ignorant, it might contend for the Priority with any the greatest Empire of the World.

The *Mahometans* being permitted by the *Alcoran*, the use of as many Wives as they are able to maintain, the *Persians* follow this Rule so closely, that he who is able among them to maintain two or more Wives, will never be contented with one, notwithstanding the domestick Jars that often are the natural consequences of Polygamy in *Persia* as well as in all other places where it is in vogue.

The ill consequences of Polygamy.

Of this we had a notable example related to us concerning *Silfaher*, Chan of *Scamachie*, who having married the Sister of *Scach Chodabende*, Father to *Schach Abas*, she conceived such a Jealousie at his marrying of another young Lady, that having taken a resolution to be revenged of her Husband, she sent word to *Schach Tamas* her Nephew, to have a care of him, as having formed a design against his Life; which wrought so effectually upon the King, that he commanded *Kartschicai Chan* immediately to bring to him *Silfaher*'s Head, which was done accordingly.

Another thing of the same nature happened not long before our coming into *Persia*; A certain Tavern-keeper of *Ardebil*, happening to meet one night a Mule laden with Merchandices, convey'd the same to his House, and after having unladen the Goods, turn'd the Mule loose. Complaint being made of Robbery, no satisfaction could be given, till the Thief could be discovered, which was done at last by this Man's own Wife; having marry'd another Wife, and a Quarrel arising betwixt both about a Child, the first complained in such outragious Terms to her Husband, that nothing but the Cudgel could quiet her, but being resolved to be even with him, she made a discovery of the Robbery to the Governor, who caused her Husband to be hang'd, and both the Wives to be banished the City.

1637.

Incest among the *Persians*.

Incest is a thing not very strange in *Persia*, it often happening that a Man marries his Brother's Widow, however I would never be convinced of what has been asserted by some, that Carnal Copulations are allow'd betwixt Sons and Mothers, or own Brothers and Sisters.

Their Marriage Ceremonies.

Their Marriage Ceremonies are perform'd thus: If a young Man has by Report made to him of a certain Maid, taken a fancy to a Maid, he sends two of his Friends, either his God-fathers at his Circumcision, or two others of his Kindred, to desire her from her Friends or Parents; The first Proposal pursuant to the Custom of the Countrey, is commonly received with much coldness: But the young Man's Friends continue their Addresses till they have a more favourable reception, and then the Dowry (which here is given by the Bridegroom) being agreed upon, the same is either sent a few days before the Marriage to the Bride, or her Parents, according to the Agreement, or perhaps a certain Summ of Money or quantity of Silk promised to the Bride, in case of a Divorce. This Contract being made in the presence of, and signed by the *Kasi* or Ecclesiastical Judge, if it be in or near a City, and by the *Mollah*, if in a large Town, certain Persons are named on both sides, as their Representatives, who by the said *Kasi* or *Mollah* are Married in the Name of *God*, of *Mahomet*, and *Aly*, and have a certificate delivered to them of the said Marriage. This is commonly performed in the Field, or some other private Place, the *Persians* being extreamly afraid of Charms or Witchcraft upon this account; for which reason also, whenever the Marriage Ceremony is celebrated in publick before the *Kasi*, all that are present, are obliged to stretch out their hands to prevent their making use of any Charms under their Garments. The *Persian* who went along with us to *Holstein*, confidently affirm'd to us, that he himself had been rendred impotent by such a Charm, for two Years and a half, till he was delivered of it by a certain Sorcerer, who ordered him to take out a Nail out of a certain Wall, which done, the Charm was dissolved, and he restored to his natural vigour. The Modern *Persians* marry indifferently at all Seasons of the Year, except in the Month of *Ramesan*, which is their *Lent*; and the ten days of the *Schur*, when they Celebrate the Interment of *Hussein*.

The time of the Wedding appoaching, the Bridegroom sends the day before to his future Spouse, Pendants, Bracelets and other such like Ornaments, according to their Qualities, besides several Dishes of Meat, for the Entertainment of those Friends that are to conduct her to his House; but neither the Bride nor Bridegroom are present at this Feast. Towards evening she is brought upon a Mule, Horse, or Camel, covered with a Veil of Crimson Taffata, reaching down to her Knees, accompany'd by her Kindred and Friends, and a Sett of Musick to the Bridegroom's House, where she with her Maids is conducted into a separate Apartment, and the Bridegroom with his Friends into another: After Supper she is led to the Chamber where she is to lie, and the Bridegroom comes in soon after, and then has the first sight of her. If he finds her broken, he has the liberty to send her home without a Nose and Ears, but Persons of Quality seldom go to that extremity, but are satisfied with sending her and her Friends away immediately. But being satisfied that she is a Maid, the Tokens of Virginity are sent by an ancient Woman to her Friends, who then continue their Merry-making for three days successively. After the Bridegroom has tasted the First Fruits of his Bride, he returns to his Company, where he diverts himself for some hours; Their Poets and Men of Learning, appear frequently at these Feasts, who endeavour to draw the Guests into an admiration of their Knowledge by their Discourse, which commonly turns upon some point or other of Morality or speculative Philosophy.

Amongst other Diversions used at their Weddings, they bring in a large wooden Dish fill'd with Fruits, in the midst whereof is placed a little Tree, on each branch of which hangs some Fruit, or dry'd Preserves; if any one of the Company has dexterity enough to take away a piece of it, without being perceived by the Bridegroom, he is obliged to give him a certain Present, but if he be catch'd, he must pay an hundred fold for what he was going about to take. Another Custom they have, that if any of the Guests

happen

1637. happen to come the next day but never ſo little a time after the appointed hour for Dinner, he is faſtened to a Ladder, ſtanding up againſt the Wall with his Head downwards, and whip'd on the Soles of his Feet, with a Handkerchief roll'd together, till he redeems himſelf.

The Men and Women dance in two ſeparate Rooms, the Muſick ſtanding at the Door. The next day after the Wedding, the Bridegroom baths himſelf in the Water, but if in the Summer, he waſhes himſelf in ſome Neighbouring Rivulet; but the Bride baths in the ſame Houſe. Towards Evening two Spoons full of *Chinne* (wherewith they paint their Nails) is preſented upon a Hankerchief to every one there preſent; which done, the Gueſts make their uſual Preſents, and ſo withdraw, unleſs they are ſo loaden with Wine, that they think it beſt to ſtay where they are, for fear of the Watch, who ſuffer no body to paſs at Night without a Lanthorn. For they obſerve ſo ſtrict a Diſcipline in all the Cities of *Perſia*, in the Night-time, that the Watchmen appointed for the Guard, (of which there are 40 at *Ardebil*,) are reſponſible for any Robberies committed; and they are ſo exact in their Duty at *Iſpahan*, that they would bring us home with Torches for half a Lg, without meeting with the leaſt miſchief by the way, though it was ſometimes paſt Mid-night.

Their Watches in the Night.

The new-married Wife is obliged to obſerve ſtrictly another Cuſtom, which is, that if ſhe happen to live in the ſame Houſe with her Husbands Father, ſhe muſt not unveil her Face, or ſpeak to him, till he has engaged her thereto by a certain Preſent; and after all, ſhe is not allowed to appear in his Preſence with her Face uncovered, or her Mouth when ſhe eats, for which reaſon they have a piece of Cloath ty'd to their Ears, which hangs over the Mouth; it being a conſtant Maxim among the *Perſians*, that a Woman who will ſuffer her Face to be ſeen, cannot paſs for honeſt, though it be done to one of her neareſt Relations; whence it comes that they keep them cloſe Priſoners at home; and if neceſſity calls them abroad, they are covered with a white Veil, coming down to half the Leg, if they are on Foot, but if on Horſe-back, they are carried in Cheſts; and ſo muffled, that it is impoſſible for any to ſee them.

Two other ſorts of Marriage.

Beſides this they have two other ſorts of Marriage; the firſt is inſtituted for the conveniency of ſuch as are obliged often to Travel from place to place; theſe take Wives for a certain Term, allowing them a certain Penſion, by Vertue of a Contract made betwixt them, which being expired, they are both at their own diſpoſal, unleſs they immediately agree to renew it for a certain time.

The Third ſort is, when they cohabit with their Slaves, which being for the moſt part ſuch as are by the *Dageſthan Tartars* brought out of *Georgia* and ſold to the *Perſians*, are for the moſt part Chriſtians; their Children, alſo thoſe begotten by the ſecond ſort of Marriage, have their ſhare in their Fathers Eſtate, as well as thoſe lawfully begotten in Marriage; the Father being by the *Perſians* look'd upon as the Principle of Generation.

Superſtition of the *Perſians*.

The *Perſians* are very ſuperſtitious in reſpect of the delivery of their Child-bearing Women; for if the ſame prove difficult, they run ſtraightways to the next School, and by a good Preſent to the Maſter, obtain a Play-day for the Scholars, or a Pardon for ſuch as have deſerved Correction; by which good deed they pretend to procure a ſpeedier delivery to the Woman in labour: Upon the ſame ſcore it is that they buy Birds, and give them their Liberty. The ſame thing is practiſed by them for Perſons in agony of Death. The *Muſcovites* have a Cuſtom to let looſe ſome Birds, when they are going to Confeſſion, believing that as they free thoſe Birds, ſo God will free them from their Treſpaſſes.

Their Jealouſie.

Though the *Perſians* take an abſolute Liberty of indulging themſelves with Women, they will not allow the leaſt ſhare of it to their Wives, who are not permitted as much as to ſee a Man; and they are ſo addicted to extreams in this kind, that they puniſh no Crime with more Severity, or rather Barbarity, than Adultery in a Woman.

Of this we were told a remarkable Example, which happened in the Reign of *Schach Abas*, who being inform'd, that he whoſe buſineſs it was to carry his Bow and Arrows, was impoſed upon by his Wife in that kind, gave him notice of it, adding, that unleſs he purg'd his Houſe, he muſt quit his Employment; the Man being moved, partly by Jealouſie, partly by the danger of loſing his Place, went immediately to his Houſe where he cut his Wife, 2 Sons, 4 Daughters, and five Maids in pieces. By the Law of *Perſia* an Adulterer may be kill'd with the Woman, if they be taken in the Fact; and if any ſuch thing be done, he that kills them has a new Garment beſtowed upon him by the Judge of the Place. 1637.

Bills of Divorce are allowed both to Men and Women in *Perſia*, which is done before the Judge, who examines into the Reaſons of it. Frigidity actually diſſolves the Marriage. Both Parties are left at their liberty to marry again, but the Woman is obliged to ſtay three Months and ten days. Divorces allow'd.

The *Turks* have a certain Cuſtom, that if they have been divorced three times from their Wives, or at the firſt Separation ſay the word *Utzkatala*, i. e. *I renounce thee thrice*, and yet being deſirous to have her again after ſuch a Divorce, they muſt apply themſelves to the *Mollah*, who is to appoint a certain Perſon that is to enjoy her before her Husbands Face, before he can have her again. If the *Mollah* has a mind to be favourable, he perhaps ſends a young Lad, who is not fit for the work, to Bed to her; and ſo by this means removes the Matrimonial Tye.

Of this the *Perſians* relate a certain Story concerning one of their *Sulthans*, before the *Perſian* Sect was eſtabliſhed in this Kingdom; *to wit*, That the *Sulthan* having given the word *Utzkatala* to his Spouſe, ſoon after repented of it, and having conſulted his Eccleſiaſticks whether no means might be found to recover his Wife, but under thoſe hard Conditions: They declared unanimouſly he could not: But being very deſirous to have her again, he apply'd himſelf to a certain *Mollah* call'd *Huſſan Kaſhi*, a Man famous for his Jeſting Temper; who being confronted with the *Turkiſh* Prieſts, told them, That ſince the *Alchoran* it ſelf did not mention any ſuch thing, and that according to the Interpretation of *Sadnek* (*Hanife's* Maſter, whoſe Doctrine the *Turks* follow) a Woman ſhall not leave her Husband, though he beat her, the *Sulthan* might lawfully have his Spouſe again without being ſubject to that brutiſh Cuſtom; which ſo well pleas'd the *Sulthan*, that he immediately imbraced the *Perſian* Religion, and baniſh'd all the *Turkiſh* Prieſts.

They tell us ſuch another Story of *Solyman* the *Turkiſh* Emperor, who having pronounced the word *Utzkatala* to his Queen, and finding himſelf uneaſie till he had her again, as being one of the handſomeſt Women in all *Turkey*, had her (according to the Cuſtom obſerved in that reſpect) married to a *Dervis*, who for their Auſterity of Life are reputed Saints, not queſtioning but that by this means he had ſecured himſelf againſt any thing of that nature; ſo they were ordered to go to Bed, but the *Dervis* ſo far ſet aſide his Sanctity, and pleaſed the Lady ſo well, that they both declared, they would not be divorced, which muſt always be done in this caſe, before the Woman can be reſtored to her former Husband; and it being not in the power of the Law to force them to a Separation, *Solyman* was forced to acquieſce, and they for their better ſecurity retired into *Perſia*. Two pleaſant Stories.

The Education of their Children.

As the multitude of Wives produces a numerous Iſſue of Children; ſo they are commonly put out very young either to ſome Trade or to School to learn to read and to write. Their *Moſques* ſerve alſo for Schools, where the *Mollah* or School-Maſter ſits in the midſt with his Scholars about him all along the Walls. Their firſt beginning is the reading of the *Alchoran*, from whence they proceed to the *Kuluſthan* or the *Roſe-Garden* of *Schich Saadi*, his *Buſtan* or *Orchard*, and ſo further to *Hafis*, who has put *Buſtan* into Rhime, the two firſt of which are much eſteemed for the purity of their Stile, and the Excellency of their Inventions. The Children read very loud, all at once the ſame Text, moving their Bodies with one continual agitation from one ſide to the other, in the ſame manner as Reeds are ſhaken by the Winds.

Their Writing, Paper, and Ink.

As they know not the uſe of Tables, ſo they all write upon their Knees; their Paper is made of the Rags of Silk and Cotton, which being ſomewhat hairy, they ſmooth it with an Oyſter or Muſſel Shell. Their Ink is made of the Rind of Pomgranates, or of Galls and Vitriol, which they thicken with burnt Rice or Barley powdered, and ſo make it up into a Paſte, which they diſſolve in Gum-water. Their Pens are not of Gooſe Quills, but of Reeds, ſomewhat bigger than ours.

The *Perſian* Language participates of the *Arabian*, but The *Perſian* Language.

1637. but has not the least Affinity with the *Turkish*. There are also not a few *German* and *Latin* words found in it, which however does not prove to me, that therefore they owe their Original to them, as some would infer; But certain it is, that the Modern *Persian* Language is very different from the Ancient, if we may believe *Herodotus*, who says, That all their words ended in *s*, yet to this day most of their words have the Accent in the last Syllable. It is not very difficult to be learnt, as having very few irregular words, the guttural pronunciation being the only thing which is hardly attained by Strangers. The *Persians*, especially in those Provinces which have for some time been under the *Turkish* Jurisdiction, teach their Children the *Turkish* Language as well as the *Persian*; that the first is as generally spoken at Court, as the *Sclavonian* in the *Grand Seignior's*, and in the Court of the *Great Mogul* the *Persian*. But in the Province of *Fars* (the ancient *Persian*) and at *Schiras* they speak nothing else but the *Persian*. They are absolute Strangers to *Hebrew*, *Greek*, or *Latin*; the defect of which is supply'd by the *Arabian*, in which the *Alchoran* and all their Books of *Physick* or *Philosophy* being written, it passes as current among them, as the *Latin* in *Europe*; and the *Persians* make use of *Arabian* Characters in their Language.

They learn the *Turkish* Language.

Their Characters.

Though the Sciences are not brought to the same perfection in *Persia* as in *Europe*, yet are they much addicted to Study; and have their Colleges, Universities, and Professors; the last they call *Mederis*, and the first *Medressa*; their learned Men they stile *Filosufs*. Such Colleges are at *Ispahan*, *Schiras*, *Ardebil*, *Mesched*, *Tabris*, *Casvin*, *Kom*, *Jesdcht* and *Schamachie*, which are under the direction of the *Sedder*, or the Supream Head of their Religion, who provides for their Maintainance out of the Revenues of certain Provinces which pay no Taxes to the King; The Sciences most in vogue among the *Persians*, are Arithmetick, Geometry, Eloquence, Poetry, Natural and Moral Philosophy, Astronomy, Astrology, Law and Medicine. *Aristotle's* Philosophy they read in the *Arabian* Language, they call it *Duja piala*, i. e. the *Goblet of the World*; their common saying of it is, that it ought to be used moderately, like strong Liquors, which, if taken too much, will instead of refreshing, intoxicate the Brains. In Arithmetick they commonly use the *Indian* Characters, but the most learned the *Arabian*.

They join Oratory and Poesie under the same Precepts, which are not many, most of their Eloquent Pieces being written in Verse; and it must be confess'd that there are not many Nations in the World that give so much Incouragement to Poetry as the *Persians*: The Great Men of the Kingdom think their Feasts imperfect, unless they have some Poets there to divert the Company with some pleasant Invention or other; and the King himself entertains divers Poets as his Domestick Servants; nay, the Vulgar sort among the *Persians*, will scarce be merry at a Tipling-house without the Company of one that pretends to Poetry.

They admire Poetry.

The Poets are distinguished by their Habit, being the same that is used by their Philosophers, *viz.* a long white Coat, open before with great wide Sleeves; having on their Girdles a Pouch like our Hawking-Bags, in which they carry their Books, Paper and Ink-horn. Their under Garment being without Sleeves, is wrapt about them like a Cloak; instead of Stockings their Breeches come down to their Feet, and they wear Caps instead of Turbants.

Those Poetasters that frequent the Tipling-houses, wear Scarfs of divers colours, a little above the Waste, and passing over the right Shoulder, come a-cross under the left Arm, their chief Subject is to write some scurrilous Satyr against the *Turks* and their Saints.

Persia has this common with *France*, that it has produced very few good Authors of an *Epick Poem*; those of the best Repute among the *Persian* Poets are, *Saadi*, *Hafis*, *Firdausi*, *Enssuli*, *Chagani*, *Eheli*, *Schems*, *Naway*, *Scabidi*, *Ferahsed*, *Deheki*, *Nessimi*, &c. They are very nice in keeping the Rhime, though they are not so exact in keeping to the true number of Syllables: they rather will repeat the same words than in the least strain the Rhime, as for instance in the following Verses;

The noted *Persian* Poets.

Tziri, tziri, Tziragh Jani tze
Adamira demagh Jani tze;
Tziri, tziri, tziragh es teri bud,
Adamira demagh cheri bud.

where the allusion lies betwixt the words *Teri* and *Cheri*, one signifying moist, the other belonging to an Ass; the Sense runs thus: *Why does the Candle go out? Why does Man boast and is full of vain glory? Because the one wants moist Suet, and other is troubled with Asses Fat.* Among all their Authors they give the preference to the *Kulusthan* of *Schich Sandy*, writ in Verse, and imbellished with History and most remarkable Rules of Policy and Morality: There are very few in *Persia* who have not either read or studied this Book, and many have it by heart, and apply its Sentences and Comparisons in most of their Discourses. Neither are they careless in perusing the Histories of their Prophets, *Aly*, and his Son *Hussein*, two pieces written in a noble Stile, becoming the Dignity of a great Historian; besides which they have their Chronicles both Ecclesiastical and Prophane, and the Histories of the Lives and Wars of their Kings, besides those of some Foreign Nations; the most celebrated of which are, *Enecri*, *Zami*, *Walchi*, *Nussegri*, *Mirchond*, and others; the last of which having compiled a History of *Persia*, carries the Bell from all the rest, containing many large Volumes, with are worth in the Country 25 *l. Sterl.* which makes me conclude, they are scarce to be had perfect in *Europe*, though I am sensible that *Golius*, Professor of the Oriental Languages and Mathematicks at *Leyden*, and the famous Mr. *Gaullimin* have the greatest part of it. However no Man ought to imagine that an absolute Credit is to be given to those Relations contained in their Histories, especially in what relates to their Religion and Saints; which have rather a resemblance to our Romances than true History, as may be seen in the Relation they give of *Alexander the Great*, which might well deserve to be recited as a Pattern to judge by of the rest, if it were not too long to be inserted in an Epilogue. 1637.

As their Law is taken out of the *Alchoran*, and of a great extent, the rest being founded upon Custom, so that that Study is soon attained to, Physick being in more request, yet as they know not what Anatomy is, so their Practice is very gross, and founded upon the bare Principle of curing Distempers by contraries, so that in the case of a Fever occasioned by hard drinking, we saw a Moorish Physician apply Ice to the Patients Stomach: Their Physicians are all *Gallenists*, yet are somewhat averse to Phlebotomy. Their Pharmacy consists chiefly in Decoctions and Fomentations; Women and Children commonly consult a Midwife in their Distempers.

Their Law and Physick.

Our Physician, who was well versed in Chymistry, grew so famous at *Ispahan*, that the *Sophi* endeavoured to keep him in his Service by the Promises of great Rewards, which however he did not think fit to accept of.

The *Persians* were already in ancient times famous for the Study of Astronomy, which belonged most peculiarly to the *Magi*, call'd now-a-days *Minatzim*, with this difference however, that these last rather apply themselves to Judiciary Astrology, than the Science of the Motions of the Heavens, and Observation of the Stars, this being more beneficial than the former, because all the Persons of Quality and the King of *Persia* himself are so very Superstitious in this point, that they will not undertake any thing of any moment, without consulting with them; which makes these Astrologers always to carry an Astrolabe in their Bosom.

Astronomy.

For the rest they are so far from knowing the use of, or having any such thing as a Sphere or Globe, that they were much surprised to see me have one; though at the same time they spoke something concerning a very large Globe which they said was lost in their Wars with the *Turks*; but by the description they gave me of it, I conceived it much inferior to that famous Globe which by his Highness the Duke of *Holstein's* Command has been made and is kept at his Residence of *Gottorp*. It is a double Globe, all of Copper 10 Foot and a half diameter, of such a bigness, that 20 Persons can sit within it upon Seats round a Table, all which is fastened to one of the Poles. By the help of an Horizontal Circle within the Globe, you see the Stars and the Sun it self, coming out of its Centre, and moving of it self, through its Ecliptick Degrees; and how it rises and sets regularly, the whole motion of the Globe, being exactly congruous to that of the Heavens, which owes its Origin to certain Wheels driven by the Water, conveyed thither out of an adjacent Mountain, and let in in proportion of what is required more or less for the Motion of the Spheres.

Astrology.

The

1637. The *Persians* make use both of the *Solar* and *Lunar* Years, the last for their Festivals (which are appointed on certain Days of the Month) and for their Religious Ceremonies. Their Months begin and end with the *Moon*, and consequently their Years are shorter than ours by 12. Days: But their *Solar* Year consists of 365 Days, which is of an ancient date, for

Lib. 3. Hist. cap. 7. *Curtius* speaking of *Darius*'s Train, says, That the *Magi* were follow'd by 365 *Luds*, according to the number of the Days of the Year, which consisting of 12 Months, 7 of which had 30 Days, and 5 31 Days apiece, compleated the said number of 365.

Their Lunar and Solar Years. Their Year begins at the time of the *Equinox*, one of the chief Employments of their Astrologers being to make an exact Observation by the *Astrolabe*, of the very minute when the *Sun* coming to the *Equator*, enters into *Aries*. This Day they call *Naurus*, or *Neurus*, i. e. the new Day, and when they are to make any Computation of their Age, they say they have liv'd or compleated so many *Naurus's* or Years. Their *Epoche* begins with the *Hegira* or flight of *Mahomet*, which is coincident to the 10. *Jul.* 622 Years after the Birth of our Saviour.

(a) De emendat. (b) In Ephem. According to (*a*) *Scaliger* and (*b*) *Origanus*, the *Persians* had in ancient times their peculiar Almanack, every Day of the Month having assign'd its peculiar Name in remembrance of their Kings or some of their most famous Heroes; as for instance, *Oromasda*, *Behemer*, *Adarpahaschr*, *Scharias*, &c. but this is absolute now as well as the *Epoche* of *Jesdetzird*, who being the Grand-son of *Cosrhoes*, was kill'd by *Ottoman*, 1632. However this *Epoche* continued till 1079. when *Albu Arsalan* King of *Chorasan*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Persia*, a *Saracen*, with the assistance of 8 of the most famous Astronomers of his time, introduced a new *Epoche*, which begun on the 14th. Day of the Year, and is call'd *Tzelalee*, or *Sulthanee*, and in the *Arabian*, *Tarich Altzelatit*, i. e. the *Era* or *Epoche* of *Augustus*, the word *Tzelaf* implying as much as *Majesty* or *Highness*.

They make use now-a-days of the *Arabian* Kalendar, according to which their 12 Months are named thus: *Maharem*, *Sefar*, *Rebbi Ewel*, *Rebbi Achir*, *Tzemadi Ewel*, *Tzemadi Achir*, *Retzeb*, *Schabahn*, *Schawal*, *Dsilkade*, and *Dsilhatse*. The *Persians* also follow the footsteps of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, in accounting by four Years, as the first did in their *Olympiads*, and the last by their *Lustra*, consisting of 5 Years; but what is observable in this Computation is, that they give the Name of the first Month of the Year, to the first Year, and so the Name of the second, third, and fourth to the rest, with this difference only, that when they speak of their common Months, they add the word *Mah*, which signifies a Month. Their Week they begin on *Saturday*, so that their 7th. Day, which is the *Sabbath*, falls upon *Friday*: The Names of their 7 Days are as follows; Saturday *Scembe*, Sunday *Jekscembe*, Munday *Duschembe*, Tuesday *Seschembe*, Wednesday *Tschaschembe*, Thursday *Denscembe*, and Friday *Adine* or *Tzumeh*, i. e. the Day of Assembly, when they meet to perform their Religious Worship; I told you before, that they are much addicted to Astrology, which they have questionless got from the ancient *Chaldeans*; most Persons of Quality in *Persia* being so Superstitious in this point, as that they will not undertake even an indifferent matter, as for Instance, to go abroad to bath themselves, without having first consulted their Astrologer, their Opinion being founded upon that of the *Arabians*, viz. That the Stars are controuled by Intelligences, who have an absolute Power over all Sublunary things: But besides this, they have certain Women who pretend to foretel the event of things by Lots, in two different ways. The first call'd *Remal*, perform'd by 7 or 8 Dice strung together upon two little Wires, and according to their choice predict future things. The others, call'd *Falkir*, have about 30 or 40 pieces of Board, of an Inch square, thin and smooth, laid upon a Table, mark'd with certain Characters on that side which lies downwards; upon one of which he who comes to enquire after what is to befal him, puts a piece of Money, and so to work goes the *Falkir*, and looks over the Book in which are painted Angels, Devils, Satyrs, Dragons, and such like monstrous Figures, till she comes to the leaf which contains the Character resembling that upon which the Money was laid, and so makes her Predictions accordingly, muttering out certain words all the while she is turning over the leaves.

The Government of *Persia* in its Political Constitution is the same with *Muscovy*, both being Despotick and Arbitrary, each of these Princes commanding both the Lives and the Estates of their Subjects, not excepting those of the first Rank, at pleasure, without any legal proceedure. 1637. Their Political Constitutions.

The Modern Kings of *Persia* are stiled *Schach*, *Paschach*, and *Padischach*, all which signifies as much as a King or Great Lord. However the *Grand Seignior* never bestows the Title of *Schach* upon the *Persian* Kings, but only that of *Schich Ogli*, i. e. Son or Kinsman of the Prophet. Some Authors are positive, that the *Persian* Kings assume the Quality of *Choda* or *God*; but erroneously, the word *Chodabende* being a proper Name and no Title, as *Theodosius* and *Theodore* are among us, though on the other hand it can't be denied but that they are vain glorious enough in their Titles, which admits however of this excuse, that they are as free to bestow the same upon other Princes, as is evident by the Letters, *Schach Sefi* writ to the Duke of *Holstein*.

The Kings of *Persia* of the last Race much affect the Title of *Sophi*, as deriving its Original from *Schich Sofi* or *Sefi*, the Founder of their Sect; which ought to serve as a peculiar Observation to all such as read the *Persian* History, lest they confound the proper Names of their Kings with this additional Title, as for instance in *Ismael Sophi*, *Eider Sophi*, &c. as the King of *France* is stiled *The Most Christian*, the King of *Spain* the *Most Catholick*, and the King of *England* *Defender of the Faith*. The Title of Sophi.

The Crown of *Persia* is not only Hereditary to the Sons of their Kings begotten in Marriage, but also in case of failure of those, to the Sons of their Concubines, who have the preference before their Nephews, or any others of a Collateral Line; because the Children of Concubines (as we told you before) are not accounted illegitimate in *Persia*; but if a *Persian* King happen to die without leaving any Male Issue behind him, then the next of Kin by the Father's side claims the Right of Succession: These being descended from *Sefi*, are the Princes of the Blood Royal, and are call'd *Schich Elvend*, being endow'd with great Immunities, but so inconsiderable an Allowance for their Subsistence, that often times they make hard shift to live. If a Queen of *Persia* happens to be delivered in any other place but the place of Residence, the House where the Child is born, is surrounded with a lofty Wall, and made a Sanctuary. According to *Qu. Curtius*, the ancient *Persians* had for their Arms a Crescent, which is now used by the *Turks*, and the *Persians* instead of it, have the *Sun*, which they put upon the back of a Lion; tho' the Great Seal of the Kingdom has only Characters, it is about the bigness of a half Crown Piece; within the Ring are these words: *To God alone I* Schich Sefi *am a Slave with all my heart.* And in the Circumference; *Aly, let the World say what they please of thee, I will remain thy Friend*; *He who before this Gate looks upon himself otherwise than Dust and Ashes, though he were an Angel, Dust and Ashes be upon his Head.* In all the Letters the *Persian* Kings write to Christian Princes, this Seal is out of Respect set at the very bottom on the other side of the Writing. The Right of Succession in *Persia*, &c. The Arms of Persia.

The Ceremonies of the Coronation of the *Persian* Kings is now-a-days always perform'd at *Ispahan*, without much Pomp; For the King being placed on a Chair of State, with a Table before him, on which are laid many pieces of rich embroidred Carpets or Tapistry, as there have been Kings before him of the same Family, one of the *Chans* presents to the King the Crown which he Kisses three times, *viz.* in the Name of God, of *Mahomet*, and of *Aly*, and having put it to his Forehead, gives it back to the *Lele*, or Lord High Steward of the Kingdom, who puts it on his Head, whilst all there present redouble their Acclamations of *Long live the King, God grant that during his Reign each Year may be multiply'd to a thousand*: Then they kiss his Feet, and after having made their Offerings of the usual Presents; the rest of the Day is spent in Feasting, there being no such thing as a Coronation Oath, or Oath of Allegiance known among them. The Ceremonies of Coronation.

As the Kingdom of *Persia* is of a vast extent, so the remote Provinces are Govern'd by the King's Lieutenants, whom the *Persians* call *Chans*, which word however does not so much denote the Quality of their Employment, as a Dignity belonging to all the great Lords of the Kingdom; of which more hereafter, our intention being upon this occasion to give you now a

1637. short insight into the History of the *Persian* K's, (scarce ever treated of by any Authors) who have Reign'd within these Hundred Years, beginning with *Ismael* I. the Founder of that Family that now sways the *Persian* Scepter.

A short History of the Persian Kings.

It is to be observed, That one *Hassan Padschach*, Sir-named *Ussum Cassan*, i. e. Grand Seignior, by reason of his great Victories, was descended of the Family of the *Asimbels*, and lived about the Year 1501, and as he was Governour of *Armenia*, he had the opportunity of Conquering several Provinces of the *Turks*, and among the rest that of *Persia*, over which he assumed the Title of King.

He had three Sons, the first of which being strangled by his Father's Command, and the second poisoned by *Jacup*, the youngest, he succeeded his Father, but himself being soon after poisoned by his own Wife, *Schich Eider*, Son-in-law to *Ussum Cassan*, Sir-named *Harduellis*, laid claim to the Succession, but whilst *Indlaver*, *Baylinger*, and *Rustan* disputed the same with him, the *Turks* entred *Persia*, and having overthrown him in a Pitch'd Battel, took him Prisoner, and caused him to be flea'd alive. This *Schich Eider*, the first who changed the Name of *Schich* or *Prophet* into that of *Schach*, or *King*, left but one Son named *Ismael*, who being very young, was privately Educated by *Pyr Chalim*, a *Persian* Lord, and near Kinsman of his Father, whilst *Rustan*, *Agmar*, *Carabem*, and *Aluantes* Govern'd the Kingdom successively.

1585. Ismael I.

But *Ismael* was no sooner come to Years of Discretion, but he gave most eminent proofs of his Understanding and Courage. For having sent his Agents to most of the Princes of the Kingdom, to shew his Right to the Crown, and to discover his Intention of delivering them from the *Turkish* Yoak, he first gathered an Army of 20000 Men in the Province of *Kilan*, which by the great Concourse of the faithful *Persians* increasing soon after to 300000, he March'd directly to *Ardebil*, which he took from the *Turks*, as also not long after *Tabris*, *Scamachie*, and *Irwan*, with all the Provinces belonging to the *Persian* Empire; then entring the *Turkish* Dominions, he defeated them by a Set Battel, which was follow'd by the Reduction of *Bagdat*, *Baste*, *Kurdestan*, and many other strong holds upon their Frontiers. Thence he turn'd his Arms against the *Great Mogul*, from whom he took the Province of *Candahor*, and some other places, with the same good Success, that had attended him in his Wars with the *Turks*. When he arriv'd at *Castrin*, after a few Days stay, he March'd towards *Georgia*, and made *Simon Padschach* their King his Tributary; all which Victories raised his Name to such a vast Reputation among the Princes of *Europe*, that most of them made their Addresses to him by their Ambassadors; so that from this time must be dated the first Acquaintance we have got with the Affairs of the Modern *Persians*; and as he was a strict adherer to the Sect of *Aly*, this has induced some Authors to assert, that he was not only the chief Propagator, but the first Institutor of that Sect. He died at *Caswin*, in the 45th. Year of his Age; his Tomb was at *Ardebil*. He is commended among the *Persians* for his Justice, but would drink Wine, and eat Swines Flesh; nay, he used to keep a Hog he call'd *Bajazeth*, in his Court, in derision of the *Turks*.

Schach Tamas.

Schach Ismael was succeeded by his eldest Son *Tamas*, who being a weak Prince, *Sulthan Solyman*, the *Turkish* Emperor, sent a powerful Army into *Persia*, and recovered all what the *Persians* had taken from the *Turks*, except *Bagdat*, and *Wan*: Two Years after *Solyman* entred *Persia* in Person, and having made himself Master of *Tabris*, laid Siege to *Sulthania*, *Schach Tamas* not daring to attempt its Relief; But some few Days before the *Nauris*, or *Vernal Equinox*, there happening to fall a great Rain, which suddenly melting the Snow on the adjacent Mountains, this caused such an Inundation, that *Solyman* was forced to raise the Siege, and retreat towards his own Frontiers, but being engaged by the *Persians* in his March near *Britlis*, was put to the Rout.

Schach Tamas died the 11th. of *May* 1576. in the 68th. Year of his Age, and the 42d. of his Reign, being not much beloved by his Subjects, because he left the Administration of the Publick Affairs to his Ministers. He left eleven Sons, the eldest which he named *Muhomet*, having embraced a Religious Life, by reason of the weakness of his Eyes, was Sir-named *Chodabende*, i. e. *Servant of God*. The second was named *Ismael*, and the third *Eider*, who being in particular favour with his Father, put the Crown upon his Head before *Tamas* was expired, taking advantage of his elder Brother *Ismael*'s absence, who was confin'd in the Castle of *Cahak*: But being slain by *Schamal* a *Georgian*, his Uncle by the Mothers side, *Ismael*, upon the refusal of *Mahomet*, and by the Interest of his Sister *Periaconcona*, ascended the Throne in the 43d. Year of his Age; he began his Reign with the Execution of all such as had adhered to *Eider*'s Interest, or who had been in the least Instrumental in procuring his long Imprisonment; and not contented thus, he caused a rumour of his Death to be spread abroad, to try the Inclinations of the *Chans*, of whom he put to Death as many as he found had shewn the least satisfaction at his Death, which put the rest, but especially his Sister *Periaconcona* into such a fright, that by some means or other, she with some of her Adherents, contrived his Death the 24th of *November* 1577. though it is not known to this Day, by what means or how it was put in Execution. 1637. Ismael II.

Mahomet Chodabende.

The *Persians* were no sooner rid of this Tryant, but they made their Applications to *Mahomet Chodabende* the eldest Son of *Schach Tamas*, who, at their earnest request, accepted the Crown, under condition nevertheless, that *Periaconcona*, who had contrived the Death of his two Brothers, should be put to Death, which being done accordingly, he ascended the Throne, 1578. but shewed so much negligence and effeminacy in the Management of Publick Affairs, that the *Turks* and *Usbeque Tartars* laying hold of this opportunity, got into the Possession of several Provinces of *Persia*: He died 1585. leaving 3 Sons *Emir Hemse*, *Ismael* and *Abas*; the first of which succeeded him in the Kingdom, but was murdered at the instigation of *Ismael* after a Reign of 8 Months; who enjoy'd the Royal Dignity but a few Months also; for *Abas Myrza*, the youngest, then Governor of *Herat*, not questioning but he would play him the same Game, as soon as opportunity should serve, according to the Advice of *Murschiduli* his Governor, came to *Ismael*'s Barber, who cut his Throat in the Presence of several Lords that were privy to the Conspiracy, to justifie themselves, cut the Barber in pieces upon the spot.

Emir Hemse.

Ismael III. kill'd.

Schach Abas, after the Death of his two elder Brothers, ascended the *Persian* Throne with a general applause, and having caused *Murschiduli Chan*, (who had the confidence to upbraid him in open Council with want of Years and Knowledge) to be dispatch'd with all his Friends, and Adherents, he bent all his Thoughts upon the Recovery of those Provinces which were taken by the *Tartars* and *Turks* during his Father's Reign.

Schach Abas.

His War against the Tartars.

Accordingly the first obtained, *Abdalla*, Prince of the *Usbeque Tartars*, whom after some time, he forced to Retreat to *Mesched*, and within three Years after, put him to an entire Rout, taking himself and his three Sons Prisoners, as well as his Brother *Tilem*, who were all put to Death by his Order. After this, he transfer'd the Seat of the Empire to *Ispahan*, which he adorn'd with many Noble Structures, and among the rest founded the *Ala Capi*, or Sanctuary, and the Sumptuous *Mosque Mehedi*.

Against the Turks.

The *Tartarian War* being brought to a happy Conclusion, and having received Intelligence that the *Turks* lived in a profound Security at *Tabris*, he got together a small Body of choice Men, and Marched in 6 Days time (which is commonly 18 Days Travel for the Camels) from *Ispahan* to the Passage of *Saybli*, within 4 Days of *Tabris*, where having surprised, without any noise, those few that kept it, rather to receive the Customs than to defend it, he advanced straighways to *Tabris*, and after having defeated and taken Prisoner *Ale Bassa*, the *Turkish* Governor, soon became Master of the City, and within a Month after of the Citadel also, which he order'd to be demolish'd. Thence Marching to *Nachtzuan* he found it abandon'd by the *Turks*, so advanc'd towards *Irvan*, which he took after a Siege of 9 Months; all the other places possess'd by the *Turks* underwent the same Fate, except the Fortress of *Orumi*, which being built on the point of a Rock, he besieged in vain, for 8 Months together, but at last gain'd it by the assistance of the *Kurdes*, a free People inhabiting those Parts, whom he had brought over to his side by vast Promises; but no sooner had they done them this piece of Service, but *Schach Abas* fearing lest they might upon occasion do the same to the *Turks*, invited all their Chief Leaders to Dinner in his Tent, which having many turnings and windings, they were one after another, as they came in, Massacred by certain

People

1637. People appointed for that purpoſe. Having Conſtituted *Kaban Chan*, Governor of *Orumi*, he Marched to the Rivers *Cyrus* and *Araxis*, and having made himſelf Maſter of *Schamachia*, and the whole Province of *Scirwan*, the Inhabitants of *Derbent* kill'd the *Turkiſh* Garriſon, and acknowledged him their Sovereign. Having alſo Reduc'd thoſe in the Province of *Kilan*, that had Revolted in *Schach Tamas*'s Time, to their former Obedience, he returning Victorious to *Iſpahan*; but had ſcarce been there a whole Year, when word was brought that the *Turks* were preparing to Invade *Perſia* with an Army of 500000 Men; hereupon he March'd with what Forces he could gather, towards *Tabris*, and having ordered all the Inhabitants of the open Country to retire with their Cattle to places of Security; he haraſs'd the *Turks* by daily Skirmiſhes, of whom a great number were kill'd every day by a certain Body of Volunteers, who had a Reward of 50 Crowns for each *Turk*'s Head they brought into the Camp.

At the end of three Months a Battel was fought, betwixt both theſe great Armies, which laſted all Day, with almoſt equal Fortune, till they were ſeparated by the darkneſs of the Night, when the *Turks* thought fit to Retreat, and were purſued by the *Perſian* King as far as the *Mount Schend*, where *Mahomet Chan Kaſak*, *Schacheruch Chan*, *Eſſchar*, *Fiſchan*, and *Kurtzibaſchi* were commanded to be cut to pieces, becauſe they had attempted to poyſon the King, who eſcaped the danger by taking proper Antidotes in time.

Within two Years after the *Turks* beſieged *Irvan* with 300000 Men, but being forced to raiſe the Seige, return'd about two Years after, and after 5 ſeveral Engagements, which proved for the moſt part to the diſadvantage of the *Perſians*, made themſelves Maſters of *Tabris*; but were not able to keep it long, for *Schach Abas* at laſt put them to the Rout, and forced them to quit that City.

Perſia then enjoy'd the Fruits of Peace for 20 Years, after which the *Turks* made another powerful Invaſion under the Command of *Chalil Baſſa*; but being haraſſed, or rather tired with continual Skirmiſhes by the *Perſian* Horſe, they thought fit to Retreat, leaving two *Tartar* Princes, *Omersbeg* and *Schahinkerai Chan*, with the Baſſas of *Egypt* and *Aleppo*, *Erzirum* and *Wan* behind them, who being taken Priſoners by the *Perſians*, where ſent back with Preſents without paying any Ranſom.

He March'd afterwards into *Georgia*, where after he had Routed *Tameras Chan*, who had Made an Incurſion into the Province of *Seggen*, he pay'd his Army 12 Muſters, and having ſtrictly forbidden the uſe of Tobacco in the Camp, commanded a certain Tobacco Merchant, who had ſold ſome to the Soldiers, to be ſet upon his Bags filled with the ſame Commodity, and ſo burnt them to Aſhes.

Extraordinary Severity.

Thence *Abas* went into the Province of *Kilan*, where he commanded his eldeſt Son to be kill'd, after he had put out the Eyes of the two younger with Fire. This eldeſt Son named *Sefi Myrza*, was born of a Chriſtian Slave of *Georgia*, being equally beloved both by his Father and the People; the laſt of which brought him to an untimely Death. For the Cruel Reign of *Schach Abas* being become unſufferable to ſome of the *Chans*, a Note was caſt into *Sefi Myrza*'s Chamber, that in caſe he would procure his own happineſs, they would ſoon ſhew him the way how to aſcend the Throne. But *Sefi* deteſting any deſign againſt his Father, carried the Note immediately to him, proteſting his Sincerity, and an entire Submiſſion to his Father's Pleaſure, which he ſeemingly was well ſatisfied with for that time, but not long after fell into ſuch Frights, as deprived him of all reſt, and made him change his Lodgings twice or thrice a Night. Theſe dreadful apprehenſions made him think of his Son's Death, which being encourag'd by certain Court Paraſites, who heightned his Fears by a falſe alarm of a new Conſpiracy againſt his Life, he poſitively reſolved to rid himſelf of theſe Fears by the Death of *Sefi Myrza*.

Schach Abas puts his eldeſt Son to Death.

The firſt Perſon he apply'd himſelf to, was *Kartzſchuckai Chan*, Conſtable of *Perſia*, an *Armenian* by Deſcent; but the old Gentleman throwing himſelf at the King's Feet, and begging to be excuſed from embrewing his hands in the blood of the Royal Off-ſpring; he made the ſame Propoſition to a certain Gentleman belonging to his Court, named *Bebut-Beg*, who having undertaken the buſineſs, ſurpriſed *Sefi Myrza* as he was coming out of the Bath, attended only by one Page, and ſtopping his Mule, told him it was his Father's pleaſure he ſhould die, and ſo pull'd him down upon the ground, the poor unfortunate Prince with his Eyes lifted up to Heaven crying out, *O good God, What is it I have committed, to deſerve this Diſgrace? Curſe on the Traytor who is the occaſion of it. But ſince it is God's Will, his and the King's Will be done.* 1637.

He had ſcarce ſpoke theſe laſt words, when *Bebut* gave him two ſtabs with his Ponyard, of which he died inſtantly, and ordered his dead Carcaſs into a Fen at a good diſtance thence. The News of this Murther was no ſooner got into the City, but the People crouded about the Palace Gates, threatning to force them, unleſs the Authors were delivered into their hands, which put ſuch a Terror into moſt of the Courtiers, that they ſought for their Safety by a timely Flight. On the other hand, the Mother of *Sefi Myrza* being quite overwhelm'd with Grief, not only upbraided the King with his Tyranny, but even did not ſpare her hands, wherewith ſhe flew into his Face, all which he took very patiently, telling her with Tears in his Eyes; *What is it you would have had me done, when I was inform'd he had form'd a Conſpiracy againſt my Life? It is paſt remedy now, paſt things being not to be recall'd.* Certain it is, that he gave all the marks of a ſincere Repentance, for having been ſo over haſty in a buſineſs of ſuch vaſt conſequence; for the firſt 10 Days he always wore a Handkerchief over his Face, to keep it from the light of the Sun; and for a whole Month eat no more than juſt what was ſufficient to ſuſtain Nature; he went into Mourning for a whole Year, and all his Life his Cloaths had not the leaſt of pride in them; the Place where he was kill'd, he ordered to be incloſed with a high Wall, made it a Sanctuary, and Endow'd it with a certain Revenue for the entertainment of the Poor. And to compleat the Matter, he invited ſuch of the *Perſian* Lords as had been moſt inſtrumental in fomenting his Jealouſie againſt the Prince, to a Feaſt, and having ordered certain Poyſon to be mixt with their Wine, he kept them ſo long there, till he ſaw them all expire before his Face.

Bebut the chief Actor of this Tragedy did not come off much better; for though he had the Charge of *Daruga* of *Caſwin*, and the Dignity of *Chan* beſtowed upon him, yet the King, to be even with him in his own kind, commanded him to cut off with his own Hands his Son's Head, and to bring it to him. *Bebut* being forced to obey, and the King ſeeing him coming into the Room with his Son's Head, ask'd him how he did, unto which *Bebut* returning for Anſwer, that the Grief occaſioned by his having been forced to be the Inſtrument of the Death of his own Son, would infallibly bring him to the Grave; the King Reply'd, That at this time he was beſt in a Condition to judge of his Grief, when he brought him the Tidings of the Murther of his Son by his Hands; and ſaid he, *Comfort thy ſelf in this, that in this thou art equal to the King thy Maſter.*

Neither was it many Years after, before this Murtherer received a due Reward for his Cruelty; for having threatned ſeverely one of his Slaves, he conſpired with ſome of his Fellow Servants, and diſpatch'd him the next Night in his Drink; *Schach Abas* ſhew'd ſo little concern at it, that he would not have proſecuted the Villains, had not the reſt of the *Chans* repreſented to him the dangerous conſequence of ſuch a Connivance. But notwithſtanding all theſe Demonſtrations of Affliction, the Widow of *Sefi Myrza*, being under dreadful apprehenſions for the ſafety of *Sain Myrza*, her only Son, leſt he might participate of his Father's Fate, kept him conceal'd for a conſiderable time, till *Schach Abas* (whoſe two younger Sons being blinded, were incapable of ſwaying the Scepter) having given ſufficient proof of his tenderneſs towards him, and that he intended to make him his Succeſſor, he was brought to Court, and was kept under the Tuition of his Mother; yet ſuch was the Jealouſie of *Schach Abas*, that perceiving in this young Prince a certain vivacity of Spirit, which he feared might revive in the People the Affection they had born to his Father, he ordered a Doſe of Opium of the bigneſs of a Pea to be given him every Day, to ſtupifie his Senſes; inſtead of which his Mother gave him ſome Treacle, a Preſervative againſt any Poyſon that might be given him.

Tameras Chan taking the advantage of the King's abſence, who was then in the Province of *Kilan*, recovered all the Places taken from him before in *Georgia*, againſt whom the King ſent ſeveral *Chans*, but theſe returning

1637. returning without doing any thing, they paid for it with their Heads, and the King entring *Georgia* the next Year in Person, swore, that if he Conqnered the Country, he would sell the *Georgian* Prisoners at an *Abas*, or 15 pence a Head: The King having Vanquished the *Georgians* in a Set Battel, and taken a great number of Prisoners, a Souldier with two *Abas*'s in his Hand came to the King, and putting him in mind of his Promise, desired that two of the handsomest Maids might be sold him at that price, the King granted his Request. About the same time most of the *Georgian Christians* that live at *Ispahan*, were brought out of their own Country, and oblig'd to fix their Habitations there.

Two Georgians sold for half a Crown.

Soon after *Bekirkeha*, Commander in Chief of the *Turkish* Garrison of *Babylon*, upon some disgust given him by the *Turks* offering to Surrender that City to *Schach Abas*, he March'd thither with a good Army, but before he reach'd the Place, *Bekirkeha* being reconciled to the *Ottoman* Court, sent him word that he must expect nothing but Powder and Ball from him; *Schach Abas* being next to the Soul at this Affront, resolv'd to carry it by Force cost him what it would; and accordingly, after a Siege of Six Months, having pass'd the Ditch, he ordered a great Mine (in the Management of which the *Persians* are very expert) to be sprung under the next Bastion, which made such a Breach, that the *Persians* carried the Place by Assault. He commanded *Bekirkeha* to be sow'd up in a raw Ox Hide to be exposed in the open Air, and to be fed daily, till such time that the heat of the Sun-beams having made the Hide shrink together, he ended his Life in great torment; But his Son was pardon'd, and made Governor of *Schiras*.

Babylon carried by Storm by the Persians.

The next following Year, the *Turks* endeavoured the recovery of *Bagdat*, under the Command of *Bassa Hafis Ahmed*, but being forced to raise the Siege, and their Army mouldring away by Sickness, they were glad to retreat to *Constantinople*. After this Expedition, *Schach Abas* laid the Foundation of the City of *Ferabath* in the Province of *Mesanderan*, upon a pleasant River, which not far thence exonerates it self into the *Caspian-Sea*.

Two Years after the *Turks* having once more taken a Resolution to recover *Babylon*, *Chalil* Bassa was sent thither at the Head of an Army of 500000 Men, *Schach Abas* threw himself into the City, ordering *Currzschugai Chan* with a small Body, but of his best Troops, to relieve the Place, which he effected so well, that after having harrassed the *Turks* Army for 6 Months together, he at last Attack'd and Vanquish'd them, and forc'd them to retreat to *Netzed*; The *Persian* King was so overjoy'd at this signal Victory, that he went out of the City to meet his General, and as soon as he came near him, did alight from his own Horse, and having obliged the General to get upon it, he followed him on Foot to the City.

The Conquest of Ormus.

Among the many Victories obtained by *Schach Abas* the Conquest of the City of *Ormus* is none of the least; this he took from the *Portugueze* about 6 Years before his Death; of which more in *Mandelslo*'s Travels into the *Indies*.

Schach Abas dies.

Towards the latter end of the Year 1629. *Schach Abas* finding himself seized with a violent Distemper at *Ferabath*, he summoned 4 of the Chiefest Lords of the Kingdom before him, *to wit*, *Isa Chan*, the *Kurzibaschi*, *Seiul Chan*, the *Tuschmal*, or Chief Councellor of State, *Temerbey*, the *Outwogly*, or Lord High Steward, and *Jusef Aga*, Chief Lord of his Bed-Chamber; who being come to his Bed-side, he told them, That he believing that his Sickness would prove mortal, he did recommend to them, *Sain Myrza*, his Grand-son, for his Successor; charging them to see his Will executed, and to pay him all due Obedience. It was generally believed that he had Poyson given him, and finding such Antidotes as were ordered him, proved ineffectual, he prepared himself for Death, with a more than ordinary composure of Mind, being even careful in ordering the particulars for his Interment; which he would have Celebrated in three several Places, *viz.* at *Ardebil*, *Mesched*, and *Babylon*, at the same time; tho' most are of Opinion, that he was buried at *Kufa*, near the Sepulcre of *Aly*, to keep his Death concealed. The better to secure the Succession to his Grand-son, he ordered that his Body should be set upon a Chair of State in the Publick Hall of Justice, which was so well personated, that his Death was not discovered till 6 weeks after. He died in the 65th. Year of his Age, and the 45th. of his Reign.

The Memory of this Prince is in great Veneration to this Day among the *Persians*: For setting aside some Acts of Cruelty, he was a Prince that had an equal share of Wisdom and Courage, and who signalized himself by many Victories over the *Turks*, *Indians* and *Tartars*. The *Austin Fryars* assured us, that he had no Aversion for the Christian Religion, and would converse very familiarly with them; He was very liberal to the Poor, and neglected nothing that might contribute to their Assistance; he ordered a rich Baker who refused to sell Bread at the set Rate, to be put in a red hot Oven; and a Butcher to be hung with his Back to the Hooks, because his Weight was found too light; and gave several remarkable instances of his Aversion to corrupted Judges. 1637.

His Memory dear to the Persians.

Whilst *Temir Beg*, and *Jusuf Aga*, were employed in exposing the dead Body of *Schach Abas* in the Great Hall of Justice at *Ferabath*, *Seiul Chan* hastened to *Ispahan*, where having imparted the whole Secret to the *Daruga*, *Chosrou Myrza*, they went together to the Apartment of the Mother of *Sain Myrza*, intreating her to put the Prince into their Hands; but she being afraid of the same Fate that attended his Father, was so far from complying with the Request, that she baracaded all the Avenues leading to her Chamber, so that these two Lords after having spent 3 whole Days at her Chamber Door, and fearing lest they should let slip this opportunity of advancing her Son to the Throne, pursuant to his Grandfather's Will, sent her word, that if she refused any longer to hearken to their Persuasions, they should be obliged to force the Doors; she expected the worst, delivered into their Hands the young Prince her Son, with these words; *Go Child, follow thy Father, thy Murtherers are at hand, to send thee after him.* But seeing the two Lords kissing the Princes Feet, she was soon undeceived, and had the happiness to see her Son conducted to the Palace Royal, where he was with the usual Ceremonies Crowned King of *Persia*.

His Grandson succeeds him.

He took the Name of *Sefi*, according to the desire of *Schach Abas*, and at the very beginning of his Reign gave to the *Persians* very bloody instances of his Cruel Inclinations, for he not only ordered his only Brother, tho' born of a Concubine, to have his Eyes put out, but also commanded his two Uncles, who had been bereaved of their Eyes by *Schach Abas*, to be cast down from a Rock, because, as he said, they were useless to the World without their Eye-sight.

His Reign Cruel.

Isa Chan, who had married his Aunt, the Daughter of *Schach Abas*, received no better Treatment at his Hands, for she having jestingly upbraided *Schach Sefi* with the want of Heirs, adding, that one Day, for want of such, the *Persians* might pitch upon one of her three Sons for his Successor; the King was so nettled thereat, that he ordered their Heads to be cut off, which he presented to the Mother at Table, and not long after he commanded also *Isa Chan*'s Head to be brought to him, which was done accordingly; *Seiul Chan*, as we told you before, was one of those who had most contributed towards his Advancement to the Throne, and as he for ever after remain'd stedfast to his Interest; so, when several Lords, dreading the King's Tyrannical Temper, were forming a Conspiracy against him, 1632. whilst he lay encamp'd near the *Turks*, who had besieged *Bagdat*, he gave timely notice thereof to the King, advising him to rid his Hands of those that were his Enemies; *Schach Sefi* told him that he lik'd his Council, and to convince him of it, he would begin with his own Person, as knowing him a Person of great Authority among them: But *Seiul Chan* having found means to appease his Anger, he stop'd the Execution for that time; but finding him discoursing with his Mother, (who had follow'd him in this Expedition) the next Morning, he was so incens'd thereat, that he kill'd him with his own Hands.

This *Seiul Chan* was considered in his time as one of the greatest Men of *Persia*, having signalized himself by many remarkable Actions, during the Reign of *Schach Abas*. His Embassy to the *Great Mogul* deserves our peculiar Observation; For having received a particular Command from the King, to have a strict regard to his Reputation, he acquitted himself so well as to this particular, that he could not be prevail'd upon, either by Threats or great Presents, to render the *Great Mogul* that respect which is usually paid him in that Court; So that the *Indians* finding him resolute in supporting his Master's Grandeur, among all their Attempts, at last invented this Artifice; They made

1637. made directly oppoſite to the *Great Mogul*'s Throne, a Door ſo low, that he could not enter it without ſtooping, but *Seiul Chan* being ſoon convinced of their deſign, entred the ſaid Door backwards, which irreverence ſo exaſperated the *Great Mogul*, that he not only forbore to make him thoſe Preſents uſually given to Ambaſſadors, but alſo would not permit him to be ſupply'd with the ordinary Proviſions, which reduc'd the Ambaſſador to ſuch ſtreights, that he was forc'd to part with all his Plate, nay, to ſell the Gold and Silver belonging to his Equipage, for his preſent Subſiſtence.

Tabub Chan, the Lord Chancellor of *Perſia*, did not long after undergo the ſame Fate; For, whilſt he was entertaining *Ugurlu Chan*, the Lord High Steward, *Haſſan Beg* the Clerk of the King's Cloſet, and a certain Poet, at Supper, the Captain of the Guard came to give notice to *Ugurlu Chan*, that it was time for him to come to the King's Tent, (the *Chans* being oblig'd to be in Perſon in their ſeveral Turns, upon the Guards whilſt the King is in the Field,) the Chancellor, who was unwilling to part with his Gueſts, reply'd, that it was time enough, and that the King being but a Child, would not take notice of his abſence; but the Captain of the Guard urging the Matter further, the Chancellor commanded his Servants to thruſt him out of Doors, which not being done without ſome oppoſition, the Captain was hurt in the Face; who running all bloody as he was, gave him an ample account of the whole matter. The King diſſembled his Reſentment for that time, but the next Day, when the Chancellor came to his Tent, he aſk'd him what Puniſhment was due to a Perſon, who eating his Maſters Bread, and owing every thing to him, ſlighted him? Unto which the Chancellor replying, that he deſerv'd death, the King told him, thou art that Man, who haſt treated me yeſterday like a Child, thou haſt pronounced thy own Sentence, and ſo run him into the Belly with his Cymetar, and ſeeing one of his Pages who ſtood by, to turn away his Face, he commanded his Eyes to be put out; ſaying, they were of no uſe to him.

Urgulu Chan did not long ſurvive the Chancellor, *Aliculi Chan*, Preſident of the Council, being ſent by the King to bring his Head, which he did accordingly. *Haſſan Beg*, who was alſo at the Feaſt, received the ſame Treatment; and the Poet had not long after his Noſe, Ears, Tongue, Feet and Hands, cut off, whereof he died a few Days after.

Whilſt *Schach Sefi* was at *Caſwin*, he ſummoned all the Governors of his Provinces to come to Court, which they all did accordingly, except *Alymerdan Chan*, Governor of *Candahar*, and *Dauh Chan*, Governor of *Kentze*, who each of them ſent one of their Wives, and one of their Children as Pledges of their Fidelity: But the King being not ſatisfied therewith, the firſt revolted and put *Candahar* under the Protection of the *Great Mogul*; the ſecond having amaſs'd all his Wealth, retired with it, firſt into *Georgia*, and thence into *Turky*, where he was much reſpected by *Sulthan Ibrahim*. *Schach Sefi* commanded their Wives to the Houſes of Publick Proſtitutes; the Son of *Dauh Chan* was expoſed to be miſuſed by the Grooms; but the Son of *Alymerdan*, being a very handſom Lad, was kept for the Kings own uſe.

Imanculi Chan, Governor of *Schiras*, Brother to *Dauh Chan* truſting to his Services he had done the King, went among the reſt to *Caſwin*, but was no ſooner come there, ere the King commanded his Head to be cut off, and afterwards ordered the ſame Treatment for 15 of his Sons, the 16th. narrowly eſcaping with his Mother into *Arabia*, where her Father lived at *Helbiſe*.

This *Imanculi Chan* was a Perſon in great eſteem among the *Perſians*, being the Son of *Alla Werdi Chan*, who was one of the moſt famous Captains of his Age, and had at his own Charge built the Bridge of *Iſpahan*.

Theſe reiterated examples of his cruel Diſpoſition, ſtruck ſuch terror into moſt of the *Perſians*, that they reſolved to be rid of him at any rate; to effect which, a certain Doſe of Poyſon was given him, but it being not ſtrong enough, he eſcap'd its effect by a 2 Months Sickneſs. After his Recovery, Information having been given him by a Woman of the *Seraglio*, who was at variance with her Miſtreſs, that the Women had been concern'd in preparing the Poyſon, and that the Widow of *Iſa Chan*, his Aunt, had adminiſtred it to him; he ordered a deep Pit to be dug in the Garden near the *Seraglio*, wherein forty Ladies and their Attendants were buried alive, and a rumour being ſpread on a ſudden at the ſame time, that his own Mother was dead of the Plague, moſt People were of Opinion that ſhe went the ſame way with the reſt. It was obſervable, that when he was in the humour to put in execution any of thoſe Cruelties, he was commonly clad in Scarlet, the ſight of which made the whole Court tremble, no body knowing which way the Storm would fall. 1637.

His Temper.

It muſt be confeſs'd, that at the beginning of his Reign, he was Victorious againſt the *Turks* and other Enemies; but the good Succeſs of theſe Actions muſt rather be attributed to his Generals, than his own Valour; it being certain, that upon ſuch like occaſions, he expreſs'd more Temerity than true Courage; As for inſtance, at the Siege of *Irvan*, which having been beſieged by his Forces for 4 Months, but without much probability of Succeſs, he would needs go in Perſon to ſtorm it, tho' no breach was made; His Lords finding him bent upon ſo deſperate a Reſolution, which would beyond all queſtion, coſt him his Life, made their applications to his Mother, to perſuade him from ſo dangerous an Attempt; but inſtead of a Compliance, he welcom'd her with a good box on the Ear, and dreſſing himſelf in a Common Souldiers Garb with a Pole-ax in his Hand, ſwore he would lead on the reſt to the Aſſault. The *Perſian* Lords ſeeing him thus bent to his own Deſtruction, caſt themſelves at his Feet, intreating him to grant them but 24 hours longer, and that if they did not carry the Place in the mean while, they would not any farther attempt to obſtruct his Reſolutions, which being granted them, they made the whole Army Attack the Place on all ſides, and ſo carry'd it by Storm, but with the loſs of no leſs than 50000 Men.

After he had by his ſeveral Acts of Cruelty bereaved the Kingdom of the Service of ſo many Great Perſons, the effects of it appeared manifeſtly to all the World, in the many ill Succeſſes that attended his Arms, and eſpecially in the loſs of *Babylon*, which the *Turks* regain'd from the *Perſians* after theſe laſt had been Maſters of it 26 Years.

The only commendable thing in his whole Reign, was the ſending back of 7000 Perſons that were brought out of *Georgia*, *Irvan*, *Nachtzuan*, *Chaletz*, and were kept for Slaves at *Ferabath* by *Schach Abas*, tho' not above 300 of them return'd to their Habitations; the reſt having periſh'd through the hardſhips they endured.

A Lover of Wine.

His chief delight was drinking, and he ſhewed a great deal of fondneſs to thoſe who were his Companions in drinking, tho' his ordinary Divertiſements were Women and Hunting, leaving the Adminiſtration of Juſtice and other Publick Affairs to the management of his Miniſters.

His Wives.

He had married three Wives; the firſt was the Daughter of a Colonel, who by Deſcent was no more than a Mule-driver, but at laſt got the Command of 1000 Men; his Daughter being very handſom, *Schach Abas* had her educated at Court, in order to marry her to his Grand-ſon *Sain Myrſa*, (afterward *Schach Sefi*) who married her accordingly. The ſecond was a Chriſtian, the Daughter of *Tameras Chan*, a *Georgian* Prince. The third was Siſter to the *Tartarian* Prince *Muſſal*, and Daughter to *Bika*, of whom we have had occaſion to ſpeak before.

His Concubines.

He had beſides theſe about 300 Concubines, it being the Cuſtom of the *Perſian* Governors to preſent the *Schach* with all the handſom Maids that are brought up in their Houſes, or among their Relations, whereby they either win, or frequently recover his favour; and, as by reaſon of their great numbers, the King lies not above once or twice with ſome of them, he often beſtows them upon his Governors, or Court Favorites.

The *Armenians*, to prevent their Daughters being carried to the *Seraglio*, marry them before they are 12 Years of Age, if they be handſom.

His Death.

Schach Sefi died in the Year 1642. in the 12 Year of his Reign, during which, he had committed ſo many Cruelties, that his Tyranny being become inſupportable, he was taken away, as it is ſuppoſed, by Poyſon. What was moſt obſervable, that he was of a mild Countenance and pleaſing Aſpect; his looks not betraying the leaſt of his cruel Inclinations. He was but low of Stature, but well ſhap'd, and left but one Son behind him named *Abas*, who ſucceeded him immediately, tho' he was but 13 Years of Age.

The

1637. Is Succeeded by his Son *Abas.*

The Provinces and Cities of *Persia*, are Govern'd by *Chans*, *Sulthans*, *Calenters*, *Daruga's*, *Visiers*, and *Kauchas*, which are bestow'd here purely upon account of Merit, without the least respect to Birth or Descent; which is the reason the *Persians* are always well stor'd with a sufficient number of well qualified Persons, Vertue and Merits being the only means to open their way to the highest Dignities and Employments in the Kingdom, which are neither to be bought nor Hereditary in *Persia*; and tho' the King never makes a *Chan*, but at the same time gives him certain Allotments to maintain his Dignity, and that the Child can inherit their Paternal Estates, and are perhaps look'd upon with some respect, yet must they expect their Advancement to any Dignities from nothing else but their own Deserts.

The Provinces are governed by a *Chan*, and a *Calenter*, the first being entrusted with the Administration of Justice; the second with the King's Demesns and the other Revenues of the Province. The Cities have commonly a *Daruga*, and a Village a *Kaucha*, for their Governors; The *Daruga* takes all the care of the Revenue of the Place where he resides, but is unaccountable to the *Chan* of the Province; whereas the *Calenter* delivers up his Account to the Council; the *Chans* and *Sulthans* are frequently employed in Foreign Embassies, which are not very chargeable to the *Schach*, because the Province of which he is Governor bears half the Charge.

The *Chans*, few Provinces excepted, are obliged to maintain a certain number of Souldiers out of the ordinary Revenue of each Province, the extraordinary Taxes being only brought into the King's *Exchequer*; besides which they send Presents of great value, as New-years-gifts, to the King. Those Provinces and Cities which are not under the Jurisdiction of a *Chan*, but under a *Daruga*, as part of *Georgia*, the Cities of *Caswin*, *Ispahan*, *Kastham*, *Theheram*, *Hemedan*, *Mesched*, *Kirman*, *Ormus*, &c. are freed from the maintaining any Souldiers, but in lieu thereof pay certain constant Taxes; so that in a short time the *Chan* can bring together a great Army, which he stands constantly in need of against his Potent Neighbours the *Indians*, *Usbegne Tartars*, and *Turks*.

The *Persian* Army all Horse.

The *Persians* know not what Infantry is, their Armies being only composed of Horse and Dragoons, the last of which being Arm'd with Musquets, do the same Service there as our Foot; their Horse have no other Arms but Darts and Javelins: As the use of Fire-Arms and of Cannon was not introduced into *Persia* till the Reign of *Schach Abas*, so to this Day they use their great Guns chiefly in the defence of Places, their Armies which are very swift in their Marches, not admitting of the encumbrance of heavy Carriages; the *Persians* are accounted very dextrous in the Stratagems of War.

Their Military Officers.

A General of an Army is call'd *Sedar*; a Commander in Chief of 10, or 12000 Horse, *Kurtzibaschi*; a Colonel, who Commands 1000 Men, *Minbaschi*; a Captain of 100 Men, *Jusbaschi*; and a Corporal or Leader of 10 Men, *Ohmbaschi*.

Their Allowance for a Horse-man is 300 Crowns *per Annum*, and for a Dragoon 200.

The Persians are great Enemies to Cowards, and inflict severe Punishments upon such Officers as are wanting in their Duty; but they have but an indifferent Reputation as to the keeping of their Faith in Publick Matters, as may be seen in their breach of Faith in the Capitulation of the Garrison of *Irvan*.

The *Schach's* Revenue.

The *Schach's* Revenues are computed at 8 Millions of Gold; there is no Passage or Bridge throughout all *Persia*, but a certain Tax must be paid there as well by Foreigners as Natives. The Customs also amount to a considerable Summ, the King having 10 Crowns upon every Bail of Silk, of each Horse and Ox that is sold 15 *d.* for each Ass 7 *d.* and each Sheep 3 *d.* Besides that the King lets out the *Caravanseras* built for the lodging of Foreigners and their Merchandices, in all the chief Cities; of these there are 25 at *Ispahan*, the least of which pays 5000 Crowns *per Annum*.

The Fishing of the Rivers, Baths, Stoves, Brothel-houses, and the Springs of *Nefte* are also Farm'd out by the King, as also the Waters wherewith the Fountains of *Ispahan* are supply'd from the River *Senderut*, these yield 16000 Crowns yearly. Each *Armenian* Christian pays an Annual Poll-Tax of 2 Crowns a Head; and there is no Profession or Calling in *Persia*, but what pays a certain Imposition to the King, proportionable to what the Person that exercises it gets by it. Not to mention here the vast Presents the *Chans* make continually to the *Schach*, to make good which, they Fleece the poorer sort, who are sure to be kept under Hatches here. 1637.

Those Golden-Dishes, Flaggons, and other Vessels which we saw at our Audience, and are commonly produced at the Entertainment of Foreign Ambassadors, were made in the Reign of *Schach Abas*, and weigh in all 7200 Marks of Gold.

Their Officers of the Court.

Their Military Officers, as well as those belonging to the Court, are commonly of very mean Extraction; the chiefest are these: *Eatemad Dowlet*, or Lord Chancellor, is at the same time President of the Council, Chief Minister of State, and not unlike the Lord Lieutenant of all *Persia*, being also entrusted with the Superintendency of the King's Revenue.

The Chancellor.

The *Kurtzibaschi* is Commander in Chief of a standing Body of 10000 Horse, appointed to be kept in constant Pay, by *Schach Ismael*. In time of Peace they are permitted to retire to their respective Habitations, notwithstanding which, they have, besides many Indemnities, their full Pay allow'd them.

The *Kurtzibaschi.*

The *Meheter*, or Lord Chamberlain, is the first Lord of the King's Bed-Chamber, who being always near his Person, makes great advantages of the many opportunities he has to speak to him.

The *Meheter.*

The *Wakenhuis*, or Secretary of State, keeps also an account of the King's Revenue, and issues out all Dispatches sent to the Provinces; he has 40 Clerks under him.

The Secretary of State.

The *Divanbeki*, or President of the Council of Justice, presides at the Judgment of Criminal Causes, in conjunction with the *Sedar* and *Kasi*, and the other Secular and Ecclesiastical Judges; them they call *Schehra* and *Oef*; the chief Court of Judicature is kept at the Entrance of the Royal Palace, in a Hall call'd *Diwan-Chane*; the *Diwanbeki* is present at the Execution of Malefactors.

The Chief Judge.

The *Kularagasi* or Chief Commander of the *Kulam* or Slaves, of which 8000 are kept in constant Pay to serve in the Wars, they are permitted to live in time of Peace like the *Kurtzi*, and have the same Stipend, but don't enjoy the same Privileges.

Kularagasi.

The *Eischikagasi-Baschi*, or Lord High Steward, has 40 Under-Stewards, call'd *Eischikagasi*, of whom 4 or 5 are always in waiting at a time, which is by half Years; their Station is at the Door of the King's Apartment; the *Eischikagasi Baschi* himself always carries a Staff they call *Dekenek*, and is always to stand before the King, when he eats in Publick; He is also one of those who introduces Foreign Ambassadors under their Arms, to the Audience of the *Schach*.

Eischikagasi-Baschi.

The *Jesaul Scebet*, or Master of the Ceremonies, carries also a Staff, his chief business is to place Strangers at the King's Table, or at publick Ceremonies.

Jesaul Scebet.

The *Nasir*, or Controller of the Houshold, has also the Quality of *Kerek Jerak*, i. e. Purveyor General.

The *Nasir.*

The *Tuschmal*, or Chief Surveyor of the King's Kitchin.

The *Tuschmal.*

The *Dawatter*, or Secretary of the King's Closet, this word being derived from *Dawat*, i. e. an Ink-horn, his chief Function consisting in presenting the Ink-horn to the King, as often as he is to Sign any thing; but the King carries the Seal himself about his Neck, and Seals or Signs himself by putting the Seal into the Ink, and afterwards pressing it upon the Paper.

The Secretary of the Closet.

The *Aly-baly-bek*, Chief of the Gentlemen of the Stables, or Master of the Horse of *Persia*.

The Master of the Horse.

The *Mirischikar*, or Grand Faulconer. The *Seckbahm Bashi*, or Overseer of the Hunting-Dogs, or Chief Huntsman.

Grand Faulconer. Huntsman.

The *Jesalkor*, or Grand Marshal of the King's Lodgings, is also Judge of the Houshold; his business is to March before the King whenever he stirs abroad, with a Staff in his Hand to make way; he has several Under *Jesauls* under his Jurisdiction, who are like our Harbingers, and are sometimes employed for Messengers to secure such as are to be made Prisoners of State. The other Officers are: The *Suffretzi*, or Carver. The *Abdar*, whose Function is to keep the Water for the King's drinking sealed up in a Jarr, and to present it to him. The *Chazinedal*, or Superintendant of the King's Revenue. The *Ambadar*, or Overseer of the King's Granaries. The *Jesaul Nedar*, whose business it is to keep the King's Shooes, when he puts them off in the Anti-Chamber. The *Mehemanders*, who conduct Ambassadors from one Province to another to Court, and reconduct them to the Frontiers. The Officers of less Note are: The *Kischitzi-baschi*, or

The *Jesalkor.*

Captain

1637. Captain of the Guard. The *Tzabedar*, or Controller of the Artillery. The *Tzartzi*, Proclaims the King's Orders. The *Tzelaudar-baſchi* is the Chief over the Grooms, who conduct the King's led Horſes. The *Kitaddar*, or Library-keeper. The *Meamar*, or Engineer General. The *Seraidar*, or Surveyor of the Buildings. The *Klita*, or Captain of the Gate. The *Scherbedar*, or Keeper of the Preſerves and Spices. The *Cannati*, or Confectioner. The *Omarzdar*, or Governor of the Pages. The *Schirtzi*, or Cup-bearer. The *Eachtzi*, or Keeper of the King's Gold Plate. The *Ashtzi*, or Clerk of the Kitchin. The *Eemektzi*, the King's Baker. The *Farraſh*, kindles, and looks after the Fire. The *Sava* is the Water-bearer. The *Bildar*, are employed to mend the High-ways and make Steps where it is needful, for the better treading of the Camels; they alſo pitch Tents, and dig Pits to get Water when the King is to go any Journey. The *Schatir*, are the Kings Foot-men, and the *Riva* are the King's Body-Guard, Arm'd with Pole-Axes, and ſometimes ſerve for Executioners.

All theſe Officers have their certain Salaries and other Allowances; which are very punctually paid, the ſame being aſſigned either upon certain Demeſns, or upon ſome Branch of the Revenue, which they receive themſelves.

The *Perſians* obſerve conſtantly this Cuſtom, that they ſcarce ever meet about any buſineſs, without ſomething of Entertainment: thus we Din'd with the King at our firſt and laſt Audiences, and never parted without a Collation when we were Treating with the Chancellor.

The King never eats or appears in Publick without his *Hakim*, or Phyſician, who directs him what is beſt for him to eat; the *Seder*, who being choſen by the King and the *Kaſi*, is to explain certain Paſſages in the *Alchoran*, whilſt he is at Table; or without his *Minatzim*, or Aſtrologer, who is to obſerve and to determine the fortunate and unfortunate Hours. The *Seder* is not only adviſed with in Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, but alſo in Criminal Cauſes, and he always gives his Advice ſeal'd up, which the King generally approves with his own Seal, adding theſe words; *This is the Advice of our* Seder, *which we confirm.*

Their Adminiſtration of Juſtice. Moſt Civil Cauſes are decided by the *Oef* or Secular Judges, whoſe Head is the *Diwan-beki*, or Chief Juſtice, they plead generally on *Mondays* and *Thurſdays*; if the Cauſe be of extraordinary Moment, it is reported to the King, who, after having heard the Opinion of the Judges, decides the Matter.

Uſury not allow'd of. Uſury is a thing abſolutely forbidden in *Perſia*, thoſe that uſe it being accounted infamous, and ſeverely puniſhed; though at the ſame time they are allowed to beſtow their Money upon Mortgages of Lands, Gardens and Houſes, which if not redeemed by the prefixed time, are forfeited to the Mortgagees. We ſaw an Example of the puniſhment of an Uſurer whilſt we were at *Ardebil*, who had taken one and a half *per Cent. per Month*; they laid him ſtretch'd upon the ground, and knock'd out his Teeth one after another with a little Mallet.

Their Puniſhments ſevere. It muſt be confeſs'd, that the Puniſhments of the *Perſians* are very ſevere, and ſavouring not a little of Cruelty; it is but a ſmall Crime that deſerves the cutting off the Noſe, Ears, nay ſometimes of the Feet and Hands; a Rape is puniſhed with the amputation of the Member that committed the Crime, no other Witneſs being required than the Womans Oath, repeated 3 times. The two laſt Kings have cauſed ſeveral Malefactors to be ty'd betwixt two Boards, and ſo be ſawn aſunder. *Schach Abas* cut off with his own Hands the Noſe and Ears of one of his Ambaſſadors who had miſuſed his Domeſticks during his Embaſſy into *Spain*, and forced him to eat them immediately, together with a piece of Fleſh he cut out of his Arm. I remember that *Imanculi Chan*, who was ſent Ambaſſador by *Schach Sefi* to his Highneſs the Duke of *Holſtein*, ordered a red-hot Spit to be preſs'd cloſe to the Back of one of his Domeſticks for a very ſlender fault, and anothers Fingers to be broken with the back of a Hatchet.

The Religion of the *Perſians*. Without pretending to entangle our ſelves in the ancient Religion of the *Perſians*, we will in this place content our ſelves to inveſtigate the true difference betwixt them and the *Turks*, they being both *Mahometans*.

The Etymology of the word *Muſſulmans*. Notwithſtanding the conſtant Animoſity and Differences betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*, the firſt as well as the laſt challenge the Name of *Muſſulmans*; a word derived from the *Hebrew* word *Salama*, i.e. delivered or ſaved. For according to the *Alchoran*, all ſuch as refuſed to pronounce theſe words; *There is no other God but one, and* Mahomet *the Apoſtle of God*, being to be ſlain, ſuch as *ſaved* their Lives by this Confeſſion obtained the Name of *Muſſulmans*, or *delivered*; tho' the Modern *Turks* apply this word *ſaved* from eternal Damnation, for which reaſon they don't ſtile their Sons *Muſſulmans* till they are Circumciſed. 1637.

Circumciſion. The *Perſians* agree with the *Turks* in Circumciſion, which among the firſt is not done till they are 7, 8, or 9 Years of age, when, after they have given them a ſtupifying Draught, they cut off the Prepuce. But the main difference in their Religion conſiſts in this, (1.) They don't explain the *Alchoran* in the ſame manner. (2.) They don't acknowledge the ſame Saints. (3.) Nor the ſame Miracles. (4.) Neither have they the ſame *Moſques*, or Ceremonies.

The different Principles of Religion. They are diametrically oppoſite in the very Principles of their Religion; The *Perſians* alledge that *Mahomet* having by his laſt Will appointed *Aly* his Nephew and Son-in-law (for he married his Daughter *Fatima* and was his Brother's Son) to ſucceed him both in Spirituals and Temporals, *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Oſman*, all three Fathers-in-law to *Mahomet*, Uſurped the *Califate*, and Political Government, in oppoſition to *Aly* and his Adherents; and, when after their Death *Aly* got into the Poſſeſſion of the *Califate*, the ſame was call'd in Queſtion by the Relations of the 3 laſt *Califfs*: But as *Aly* changed nothing in the *Alchoran*, and ſubmitted to *Mahomet's* words where the Text was clear, explaining only ſome dubious Paſſages; this cauſed no real alteration in the *Mahometan* Religion, till the Year 1363. when a certain learned *Perſian* named *Sefi*, ſet up at *Ardebil*, and deducing his Origin from *Muſai Caſum*, the Son of *Hoſſein*, who was *Aly's* Son, and confirming his Pretenſions by a great Auſterity and outward innocent behaviour, he thereby raiſed himſelf to the Quality of *Schich*, or Prophet, and began to declare publickly both by words and Writing againſt *Abubeker*, *Omar* and *Oſman*, who had ſucceſſively defrauded *Aly* of his Right, and that he was ſent by God to undeceive the World, and to revive the Glory of *Aly*; to confirm which, he put them in mind of ſeveral Miracles, which he ſaid were done by *Aly*, but buried in Oblivion hitherto by the Malice of the Turks; becauſe in the true Explication of the *Alchoran* of *Aly*, which were digeſted into Writing by *Tzafer-ſaduk*, his Succeſſor, ſeveral things were aſſerted oppoſite to the Opinion of *Hanife*, whoſe Opinion the *Turks* had embraced. The *Perſians* being naturally inclined to Novelties, and perhaps willing enough to foment the Animoſities which were firmly rooted betwixt them and the *Turks*, occaſioned by the many Wars that had been betwixt them, about the Diviſion of their Frontiers; they were for maintaining the Reputation of *Aly*, and therefore added to the Creed of the *Turks*, *There is no other God but one, and* Mahomet *the Apoſtle of God*, theſe words; *and* Aly, *Coadjutor, or Lieutenant of God*; nay, they did not ſtop here, for tho' they acknowledged he was no God, yet did they affirm, that he did approach very near to Divinity, and prefer'd him before *Mahomet* himſelf, alledging, that the *Alchoran* was intended by God for *Aly*, but that by miſtake it happened to fall into *Mahomet's* Hands; all which together, with the Execrations iſſued againſt the *Turkiſh* Prophets, *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Oſman*, (which are ſo common in *Perſia*, that even thoſe who call the People together, never fail to do it,) an irreconcilable hatred was introduced betwixt theſe two Potent Nations.

The first Rite of the *Perſian* Religion. The *Perſians* not contented to have exalted their Darling Prophet *Aly* to ſo high a pitch, thought fit to aſſert that part of his Sanctity was tranſmitted to his Family, and that his firſt Succeſſors ought to be numbred among the Saints, by reaſon of their Miracles, for which purpoſe they have erected very Magnificent Tombs to their Memory. *Aly* left 2 Sons, *Haſſan* and *Hoſſein*, who left *Seinel*, *Abedin*, *Mahomet-Bagur*, *Tzafer-Saduk*, *Muſai-Caſum*, *Riſa*, *Mahomet-Taggi*, *Alli-Naggi*, *Hoſſein Alkeri*, and *Mehedii*; of which *Haſſan*, *Seinel*, *Abedin*, *Mahomet-Bagur*, *Mahomet-Taggi*, and *Alli-Naggi*, have their Sepulcres at *Medina*, *Tzafer-Saduk* at *Babylon*, and *Hoſſein*, *Muſai-Caſum*, and *Hoſſein-Alkeri* at *Kelbula*, or *Kufa*. The *Perſian* Saints.

Theſe are their 12 Head Saints, who they ſtile Prelates: Unto theſe as well as to *Schich Sefi*, the Foun-

1637. der of their Sect, they pay their Devotions, and go to his Tomb, and those of the other three, interr'd at *Kufa*, on Pilgrimage, when they can't conveniently go to *Medina* or *Mecca*. The Pilgrims receive a Certificate of their having perform'd the Duty of true *Mussulmans*, which besides this serves them as a sure Protection against the anger of the *Chans*, under whose Jurisdiction they live, and of the King himself. As the *Persians* celebrate with abundance of Ceremonies, the Anniversary of the Death of *Hassan*, and *Hossein*, the *Turks* laugh at it, and in lieu thereof extol *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*, as also *Hanife* their Chief Commentator upon the *Alchoran*, the three first of which the *Persians* look upon as Usurpers, and upon the last as an Impostor; who, say they, being a Servant of *Tzafer-saduk*, one of their Saints, preserv'd the Water wherewith he had wash'd his Hands, which he carry'd into *Turky*, and cur'd those that were blind with it, the Honour of which belonged only to that Saint.

Commentators upon the *Alchoran*.

Among all the Commentators upon the *Alchoran*, the *Persians* give the Preference to *Aly*, and *Tzafer-saduk*. The *Turks* declare with the same Passion for *Hanife*, as the *Usbeque Tartars* and the *Indians* follow the Opinions of *Hembili*, and *Maleki*; as the *Alchoran* is so obscurely writ in many places, as not to be understood by any human Art, the Commentators have supply'd its defects with such absurd Fictions and Impostures, that it is almost unconceivable how so cunning a Nation as the *Persians* are, and so well vers'd in the Affairs of the World, could possibly be so much imposed upon, as to give the least credit to those Fables, as well as the Miracles of their Saints; most of which carry so little probability along with them, that they scarce deserve to be mentioned, much less to be related here.

The *Turks* don't give the least credit to any of the *Persian* Miracles, though they have so much Veneration for *Aly*, as to acknowledge him for a Saint, and a near Kinsman of *Mahomet*, and praise him for an excellent Horse-man, which is the reason that when they get on Horse-back, they say, *Isa Aly, in the Name of* Aly.

Their difference in Religious Ceremonies.

The difference in their Religious Ceremonies are as great betwixt the *Persians* and *Turks* as their Principles. If a *Persian* is to prepare himself for his Devotion, by Ablution, he turns up his Sleeves above the Elbow, washes his Hands, which he afterwards puts two several times upon his Arms, stroaking them from the Elbow down to the Wrists, and stroaks his Face with the right hand only. A *Turk* takes up as much Water as he can conveniently hold betwixt his two Hands, rubs therewith his Face, and afterwards stroaks 3 several times, first from the Fore-head down to the Chin, and afterwards from the Chin up to the Fore-head; he also draws with his breath some Water out of his Hands, and therewith washes his Mouth and Nose. A *Persian* stroaks his Head with his moist Hand only, from the Nape of the Neck to the Fore-head, and his Feet up as far as to the Ancles; whereas a *Turk* first pours Water on his Head, and, then with his moist Hand washes his Feet, and he puts his Fore-finger into the Ears which he rubs soundly with the Thumb afterwards; and with the same Finger stroaks his Head from the Nape of the Neck to the Throat. The *Persians* make use of a peculiar Stone, or rather piece of greyish Clay hardned, of an Octogonal Figure, which being made of the Earth about *Meshef* and *Kufa*, where *Hossein* was kill'd and buried, is about three Inches Diameter, and contains the Names of the 12 *Persian* Saints; these are sold by the *Arabians* to the *Persians*, who, whilst they are at Prayers, touch their Fore-heads with them, or perhaps lay them upon the ground, and so touch it with their Fore-heads. The Oblation is performed at home, before they go to the *Mosque*, where no Women are permitted to appear.

Their Prayers.

The *Persians* begin their Prayers at the *Mosque* with *Alla Ekber*, with their Eyes fix'd on the Ground, and their Arms hanging down carelessly; but the *Turks* keep both their Hands upon their Breasts; the *Persians* afterwards putting their Hands upon their Ears, turn their Faces to the South, because *Medina* and *Mecca* lay to the South of *Ardebil*, where their Sect drew its first Origin. After they have turned their Faces to the South, they begin the *Alihemdo Lilla*, which done, they lay their Hands on their Knees, and so stooping lay the *Subhanna Rebbi*, and repeat the *Alla Ekber*. Then kneeling down they repeat the *Subhanna Rebbi* with their Arms stretch'd out, touching the grey Stone with their Fore-heads. They conclude their Prayers in this kneeling Posture, and rising up turn to the right and left, pronouncing with a low Voice, *Salom alekom, Salom alekom*, their Salutations to the Angels, by whose assistance they believe the Devils have been kept off from disturbing them in their Devotions. The *Turks* salute the Angels before they finish their Prayers. According to the Tenets of the *Persian* Religion, they ought to say their Prayers five several times a Day, *viz.* In the Morning with the rising of the Sun, at Noon, in the Afternoon, in the Evening, and at going to Bed. Their ordinary Prayer is the *Fatah*, and next to that the *Alihemdo lilla*, which runs thus, *Glory be to the Lord of all Creatures, the King of the last Judgment. We honour and adore thee; don't leave us in our necessities; Lead us in thy way, and into the path of those to whom thou hast shew'd thy goodness; and not into the way of those, upon whom thou hast poured out thy wrath; nor into the path of those, whom thou hast suffered to go astray.* Amen. 1637.

Are very Devout.

The *Persians* scarce ever undertake any thing, but they pronounce these words, *bismilla rahman rahim*, i.e. *in the Name of God*; all the Chapters in the *Alchoran* beginning with the same; unto which they add sometimes these words, *In the Name of him who affords his Protection to, and is the Refuge of Souls.* And they are so intent upon their Devotion whilst they are at Prayers, that I remember I have often come into the great *Mosque* of *Ispahan*, at their Prayer time, and found their Eyes either fix'd on the ground, or else lifted up to Heaven, with so much earnestness, that they did not take the least notice of me. Some pronounce their Prayers with so much fervency and assiduity, that they fall into a Swoon, being quite out of breath. Some use certain Beads consisting of three dozen, and distinguish'd by great Beads.

Friday being the Day chiefly dedicated to their Religious Exercises, the *Chatib*, or Preacher reads certain Chapters out of the *Alchoran* with their Explications, from the Pulpit. The Bible, which they say has been quite adulterated by the *Jews* and *Greeks*, they don't put in comparison with the *Alchoran*, which they say is more correct, and the true Word of God. Accordingly their Opinion of the Creation of the World, of the Last Judgment, and Eternal Life, are very strange and extravagant.

Their Opinions very odd.

They assert that God created 7 Hells and 7 Paradises, unto which the eighth was added afterwards, concerning which they tell you a fabulous Story of one *Ath*, Grand-father of *Nimroth*: They often assign their Children one of their Saints as his Patron, sometimes before they are brought into the World; hence come the Names of *Mahomedculi*, *Imamculi*, *Aliculi*, &c. *Slaves of* Mahomet, *of* Iman, *and* Aly; they have a i.e. hole in their Ears, being the Badge of their Slavery.

Dedicate their Children to Saints.

The *Persians* also sometimes devote their Children to a Religious Life, but when they grow up and dislike it, they may be dispensed from this Vow for a certain Summ of Money.

Their Lent.

Their Lent continues a Month once a Year, which begins and ends with the Course of the Moon, of the Month *Ramesan*; the *Persians* call it *Rusch*, and the *Turks Oruzs*; they are obliged neither to eat nor drink during this Fast, from Sun-rising to Sun-set, but as they have liberty to eat at their own pleasure all the Night time, most of them make it up then, and after they have fill'd themselves well with Wine and good Meat, go to sleep towards Morning, and so pass away the Days. A Dispensation may also be obtained for Money by those who don't care for fasting.

The Kindred of *Mahomet*.

The Posterity of *Mahomet* and *Aly*, called *Seid* by the *Persians*, enjoy great Immunities. They never cut their Hair above 2 Inches breadth, but tie it up in a Tress; they never marry out of their own Family, are clad in white, and wear flat Shooes. They are not only strictly forbidden the use of Wine, but also must not be present where any is drunk; if they touch a Dog they are unclean, and one single untruth forfeits all their Privileges; they have such a Veneration for their Descent, that they swear by nothing else but *by their Birth*, whereas the other *Persians* swear by *God*, *Aly*, *Schich-Sefi*, &c. Some who have Possessions in Cities and Villages are generally rich, because they are exempted from paying of Taxes. Some Vagabonds there are who assuming the Title of *Seid*, which they commonly confirm by forged Testimonials, travell from place to place, and sell some Hair, which they say was taken off *Mahomet's* Head, at a very dear rate; the *Persians* lay this upon their Books whilst

1637. whilſt they are ſaying their Prayers. We ſaw ſuch a one in the Province of *Kilan*, who, by the help of a Chryſtal cut half round, ſet Cotton on fire as we do with our Burning-Glaſſes, which being look'd upon by the *Perſians* as miraculous; he eaſily got the Reputation of being one of *Mahomet's* Kindred. I remember that I ſhew'd to the *Perſian Ambaſſadors* that came into *Holſtein*, how eaſie a thing it was to draw Fire from the Sun, even in the midſt of Winter, by means of a Chryſtal full of Water, or a piece of Ice it ſelf which I had made half round in a Pewter Porrenger, at which they were ſo ſurpriſed, that I had enough to do to perſuade them, that it was not done by Witchraft.

Another ſort of Religious Men.

There is alſo another ſort of Religious Men in *Perſia* call'd *Abdalla's*, who deduce their Origin from *Aly*, and are like the *Derviſes* among the *Turks*. They are a kind of Monks meanly habited in ſleeveleſs Coats, pieced together and quilted. Some wear no more than a Hair-Cloth wrapt about them, with a Serpent of Braſs round their Waſte, which is beſtow'd upon them by their Doctors as they enter into the Order. They are Conſecrated by the *Suffi-baſchi*, or Head of the *Suffi*. Their buſineſs is chiefly to get their Livelyhood, by ſtraggling up and down the Country, to preach to the vulgar ſort of People in the Publick Places, their chief Theme turning upon the Praiſe of their Saints, and reviling thoſe of the *Turks*, by telling obſcene and ridiculous Stories of them, to heighten the Animoſity the *Perſians* have conceived againſt the *Turkiſh* Religion. They have in their Hands a kind of a Wooden Scepter, wherewith they make very odd Geſtures; for the reſt they are a vicious ſort of People, Drinking, Buggery and Robbery being their common Practice, which is the reaſon that certain Chappels are built near the *Moſques*, for their Lodging, there being very few who care to receive them at their Houſes, by reaſon of their Debauchery. Of this we had an Inſtance, whilſt we were at *Ardebil*; For one of theſe *Abdalla's* being at the Village *Lekere*, ſcarce 3 Lgs from that City, found means to get into a Peaſants Houſe, whilſt his Wife, who was very handſome, was gone out to milk the Kine, ſollicited her in her Husbands's abſence, to admit him to her Bed, which the Woman ſeemingly conſented to, but under pretence of getting ſomething for her Supper, got into another Room, where ſhe barricadoed her ſelf up ſo ſtrongly, that the *Abdalla* not being able to force the Door, threatned to kill her Child, unleſs ſhe opened it, which ſhe refuſing to do, he cut the Child in four quarters, and having afterwards made a hole under the Threſhold of the Door, thruſt himſelf into it to get through; the Woman being put to the greateſt nonplus, happens to find a Plough-ſhare in the Room, wherewith ſhe cut his Head and Neck, till he expired. Her Husband and ſome of the Neighbourhood coming in immediately after, ſhe told them all that had happened, and how the Villain at the firſt blow ſhe gave him, begg'd to have his Life ſpar'd, offering a good Summ of Money if ſhe would ſave him, whereupon the Husband having thoroughly ſearched his ragged Coat, found 800 *Chequines* quilted in it. His Body was burnt to Aſhes.

Their Interments.

The *Perſians* commonly bury their Dead within a few hours after they are expired; they waſh the dead Bodies before their Interment, the Vulgar ſort in the Church-yard, Perſons of Note in their Houſes. I ſaw a young Man thus waſh'd at *Caſwin*; they carry'd him in his Cloaths, before he was well cold, ſinging, to the Church-yard, where being ſtrip'd, they put him into a Ciſtern of Free-ſtone of about 16 foot ſquare. After his Body had been well waſh'd by the Sexton, they put a clean ſhirt about him, and being wrap'd up in a Calicoe Sheet, he was laid upon a Bier, and thus carry'd to the Grave, which was hard by. Perſons of Quality are Inter'd with much Ceremony; for after they are waſh'd they ſet their Body upright, (all the Overtures of which are ſtopp'd with Cotton) and pour Camphir Water upon the Head, which runs down all over the Body. Then they depoſit the dead Body near the Grave, where the Prieſt reads certain Paſſages out of the *Alchoran*, which done, he lifts up the Head a little, but preſently lets it down again, and ſo puts it into the Grave without a Coffin; ſome of the Graves are Vaulted, others only Wainſcoted. The Body is laid on the right ſide of the Grave, with the Face to the Weſt, it being the Opinion of the *Perſians* that the Day of Judgment ſhall begin in the Weſt. Then the Prieſt takes up a little Earth, and having read another Paſſage out of the *Alchoran*, goes back 7 paces from the Grave, and afterwards returning again, reads another Paſſage out of the *Alchoran*, and ſo retires with the whole Company. The richer ſort make a Feaſt on the 3d. Day after the Interment, and ſometimes alſo on the 7th. the 40th. and at the *Naurus*, the *Kurban*, and *Rameſan*, then they give Alms to the Poor. 1637.

The reaſon they give for ſtopping ſo cloſe all the Overtures of their Bodies, and making their Graves Vault-wiſe is, that whilſt the Prieſt retreats 7 paces from the Grave, the 2 Angels *Nekir* and *Munkir* come into it, and if the Overtures were not thus cloſed, they might be defiled by ſome uncleanneſs. They further aſſert, that theſe 2 Angels bring the Soul back to the Body for that time, and that they ask ſeveral Queſtions of the Deceaſed, which if he anſwers to as he ought to do, they then ſeize upon the Soul, which thereby is certainly ſaved.

The *Perſians* of any Note are inter'd with a great deal of Pomp; the Gentleman of *Schamachie*, who, as we told you, kill'd himſelf with drinking of *Aqua-vitæ*, was buried in the following manner: In the Front of the Proceſſion 6 Men carry'd 6 Banners on 6 long Poles, wreath'd; theſe were follow'd by 4 Horſes, the firſt carrying the deceaſed Perſon's Bow and Arrows, the other 3 his Cloathes; and after theſe one of his Servants mounted on a fine Mule carry'd his Turbant. After him came 2 Men with certain Towers call'd *Nachal*, upon their Heads, adorn'd with large Plumes of Feathers, leaping and dancing to the ſound of certain Tabours and Copper Baſons, they ſtruck one againſt another. Betwixt the Muſicians and the Dancers you have certain Perſons who carried eight Diſhes of Preſerves, with a Sugar Cake in the midſt of each, wrap'd in blue Paper, which is their Mourning colour; round each Cake being placed 3 lighted Wax Candles. Next came divers of the *Suffi* with their white Turbants; then 2 Bands of Muſicians ſinging with a loud Voice the *la illa illaha*, and the *Alla Ekber*, with ſuch odd Countenances, and awkward Geſtures, as befitted rather a *Scaramouch* in a Farce than a Funeral. Theſe were followed by 3 Boys with their right Arms and Shoulders naked, their Arms and Fore-head ſo ſcratch'd, that the blood trickled down to the ground. This part of the Proceſſion was cloſed by 3 Men each of them carrying a Tree, on which were ty'd ſome red Apples, and ſome Treſſes of Hair, which his 3 Wives had either pull'd out, or cut off their Heads; as alſo many pieces of green and red Paper. Then the Body was carry'd upon a Bier on the Shoulders of 8 Men, being covered with a fine Garment made of the beſt *Buchar*-Sheep Skins. After the Corps came 4 Men, carrying a young Lad aloft in a Chair, who read certain Paſſages out of the *Alchoran*. The Relations and Friends brought up the Rear, and accompany'd the Corps to a certain place in the City, from whence it was to be transported to *Babylon*.

CHAP. VII.

The Travels of the Duke of Holstein's *Ambassadors into* Persia, Tartary, *and* Muscovy.

1637. HAving given you a large Account of what we found most remarkable during our stay at *Ispahan*, in the preceding Chapter, it will now be our Task to give you the particulars of our Return out of that Kingdom.

The first difficulty we met with, when we were just upon the point of leaving the Capital City of *Persia*, was, that *Abasculi Chan*, our *Mehemander*, having received expres Orders from the *Schach*, to conduct us in our return thro' the Province of *Kilan*, which being one of the finest of all *Persia*, he had a mind we should take a view of it in our Journey, besides that we were likely to meet with better Accommodation there, than any other way. But this being misinterpreted by some of our Retinue, as if the *Schach* out of an aversion he had taken against the Ambassador *Brugman*, had done it with an intention to sacrifice us all to the fury of a barbarous People, (for such are the Inhabitants of that Province,) *Michael Cordes*, the Captain of our Ship, and his Mate, one of the Pages, the Chirurgeon, and one of the Guard, took Sanctuary in the *Alla Capi*.

Some of the Retinue take Sanctuary.

However we left *Ispahan* the 21st. of *Dec.* in the Evening, and after having been treated with a Collation a League from the City by the *English*, we made that Night 3 Lgs to the Village of *Reschman*.

The Ambassadors leave *Ispahan*.

Here we stay'd all that Day, which gave opportunity to the *Austin Friars* at *Ispahan*, some *French* Merchants, and among the rest too, Mr. *Mandelsloe* to take their leaves of us; the last of which acquainted us, that *Imanculi Chan*, the *Schach*'s Ambassador to the Duke of *Holstein*, was to follow us in few Days, and that the Presents he was to carry along with him, were valued at 25000 Crowns.

The 23d. after having taken our final leave of our Friends there, we Traveled that Day 5 Lgs, to the *Caravansera* of *Dombi*; and the next Day 5 Lgs more, to the *Caravansera* of *Serdehe*. We continued our Journey the 25th. being *Christmas-day*, and seeing at some distance the Tents of divers colours, under which the *Schach* Encamp'd at that time; Mr. *Murrher* was sent to Complement him, whilst we continued our Journey to the little City of *Natens*.

Come to *Katschan*.

The 26th. we pass'd on to the *Caravansera* call'd *Chotzakassim*, and the 27th. to the City of *Katschan*, where we were detained 4 Days, in reconciling the Differences that were arisen betwixt the Ambassador *Brugman* (occasioned by his domineering humour) and our *Mehemander*, who would have left us, in order to make his Complaint at Court.

1638. *Jan.* 1st. After having celebrated the *New-years-day* by the firing of our *Cannon*, and a Sermon, we continued our Journey in the Afternoon, and made 5 Lgs to the Village of *Sensen*, and the 2d. 5 Lgs further, to *Kasmabath*.

To *Kom*.

The 3d. we arrived in the City of *Kom*, where being very conveniently Lodged near the Market-place, we staid the 4. and were very well entertain'd, first by our *Mehemander*, and at Night by the *Muscovite* Envoy.

Jan. 5th. We had scarce left the City of *Kom*, but we perceived the Sun eclipsed 3 parts in 4, in its greatest obscurity, and made 5 Lgs that Day, to the *Caravansera* of *Schaserabath*; just to the right of this *Caravansera* we saw the Mountain of *Kitissim*, which is not so much remarkable for its height, as its being surrounded with many Salt Hills, the Country thereabouts, producing likewise a vast quantity of Salt and Salt-Peter, wherewith this Mountain, as well as those of *Nachtzuan*, *Kulb*, *Urumi*, *Kemre*, *Hemedan*, *Bisetan*, and *Suldus*, furnish the whole *Persian* Empire, being digg'd out of a Quary like Stone. The *Persians* have a certain Proverb concerning the Mountain of *Kitissim*, viz. That *those who go it up, come not down*, from whence some others have taken occasion to represent this Mountain as of a most dangerous access, whereas the whole is only an Equivocation, implying no more than this, That whilst they are going up, they can't come down at the same time.

The Mountain of *Kitissim*.

The 6. we had scarce left our Quarters when the Ambassador *Brugman* by a fall from his Horse put his right Arm out of Joynt, which so disordered his Brains, that we were forced to stay at *Saba* the next Day; we continued our Journey the 8th. making 9 Lgs, to the *Caravansera* of *Choskera*. We lost a Mule by the way, which being stoln with its Loading by some Peasants, we found him again in an adjacent Village, but the Thieves had made their escape with part of the Booty. The same Evening the Ambassador *Crusius* took care to punish some of our Seamen, who had committed several Disorders at *Saba*; but they standing upon their Defence, were seized by force, and clapt into Irons till our arrival at *Schamachie*. All hereabouts, and till we came to the Mountains of *Kilan*, we found the Snow half a foot deep upon the ground.

1638. Come to *Saba*.

Jan. 9. After we had travell'd 3 Lgs, we met with a certain Person of Quality, whose Name was *Theophilus de Schonberg*, a German by Birth, being sent by the King of *Poland* as his Ambassador to the *Schach*. He had been obliged by the *Muscovites* to send back the greatest part of his Retinue, consisting of 200 Persons, from *Smolensko*, his Train consisting now of no more than 25. He delivered to us a Letter from the *Armenian* Bishop we saw at *Astrachan*, and told us that a good quantity of Provisions lay ready in that City for our use.

They meet with a *Polish* Ambassador.

As we were travelling along the Road, we saw at a distance upon a Hill, one of the King's Hunting-houses, which was a very fair Structure. Our intention was to lie that Night at the Village of *Arasenc*, 6 Lgs from our last Nights Quarters; but the Harbinger that was sent before to prepare our Lodgings, when the Inhabitants well remembring the Affront the Ambassador *Brugman* put upon the Judge of the Village, at the time of our coming into *Persia*, by throwing Water (which he had brought to *Brugman* to wash his hands) with the Bason into his Face, refused us entrance. The Villages of *Dowlet*, *Abath*, and *Ketzisan*, being of the same humour, we were forced to travel 3 Lgs further, through very slippery ways, to the Village of *Kulluskur*, so that some of our Retinue did not reach our Quarters till towards Day-light.

The 10th. proved not much better, for our Beasts being much tired with the last Days Fatigue, most of our People were forced to travel on foot, and some were left behind, which were sent for after our Arrival at *Caswin*, which was on the 11th. and where we were obliged to tarry 9 Days, till fresh Beasts could be provided for our Journey.

Come to *Caswin*.

Here we saw not far from the Ambassador's Lodgings, a great Tree full of Nails and Pibble-stones, dedicated to one of their *Pyrs*, or *Beats*, who is buried under this Tree; each Nail or Pibble being a peculiar mark of the Miracles he does there in curing the Tooth-ach, Agues, and certain other Distempers. Those who are troubled with the Tooth-ach, only touch the aking Tooth with a Nail or Pibble, which they fasten as high as they can reach with their Mouth, to the Tree, and so believe themselves cured by this means; as a Testimony whereof they tie certain Ribbonds on the Boughs of the Tree, and give certain Alms to the Religious Man that keeps it; which is the reason that divers Counterfeited Trees of this kind are found in *Persia*.

Superstitious Cures of the *Persians*.

Jan. 15th. Being the Birth-day of *Knez Juan Basilowitz*, one of the Great Ministers of State of the *Muscovian* Empire, the *Muscovite* Envoy, whose Patron he was, made a very Magnificent Feast upon this occasion; at which were present the Ambassadors, and the Chief Persons of our Retinue.

Jan. 20th. We prosecuted our Journey from *Caswin*, and leaving *Sulthania* and *Ardebil* to the N. W. we took our way to the North, towards the Province of *Kilan*; we made but 4 Lgs that Day, over Manur'd Hills, and lodg'd in the Village of *Achsbaba*, situate at the foot of a Mountain; so nam'd, as the *Persians* say,

1638. say, from a certain Person, who being 100 Years old, begot a Son upon his Wife of the same Age; in Testimony of which they shew'd us his Tomb under a great Vault, which his Son has caused to be erected there.

Jan. 21st. We travelled through a very fruitful Country to the Village of *Tzitelly*, the grounds hereabouts affording great Plenty of Pasture. The *Vice-Daruga* of *Casvin*, accompany'd the Ambassadors to this Place; and at Supper entertain'd them with the most remarkable things relating to his Life; he being descended originally from *Georgian* Christian Parents, who were conducted into *Persia* under the Reign of *Schach Abas*; among other things he told us, that our *Mehemander*, according to the Custom of the *Persians*, did extort much more from the Places through which we pass'd, than was allotted for the use of the Ambassadors. At parting he had a Present made him of some Ells of Cloth and Satin.

The 22d. We made 7 Lgs, all over Mountains of divers colours, *viz.* red, yellow, green and blue, which afforded a very delightful Prospect, through which runs a Brook, with such variety of turning and winding, that we cross'd it above 30 times that Day; and in the Evening pass'd the River *Senderuth* over a Bridge, which joyns the two Mountains thro' which it runs. We lodg'd at Night at the Village named *Kurtzibaschi*, situated in a pleasant Valley, having got its Name from a certain *Kurtzibaschi*, or Col. of 1000 Horse, who was the Owner thereof.

The 23d. The first 2 Lgs of our Journey was a very fair Road, along a Forest of Olive Trees, at the extremity of which we found our selves at that Place famous among the Ancients, under the Name of *Fauces Hyrcaniæ*, but among the Modern *Persians*, as well as in the Time of *Alexander the Great*, known by that of *Pylas*. It is a very narrow Passage, and the in-let into the Province of *Kilan*, where two Rivers joyning with a swift Current, fall with a most dreadful noise from among the Rocks. After the Confluence of this River it is called *Issaruth*; but before they joyn, the largest is call'd *Kisiloscin*, which passing under a Stone-Bridge, afterwards passes into the Province of *Kilan*, and by two several Channels exonerates it self into the *Caspian-Sea*.

Fauces Hyrcaniæ.

This Bridge has six large Arches, each of which contains a good Room, and a Kitchin, besides other Conveniences, sufficient to lodge a whole *Caravan*. No sooner are you past the Bridge, but the Road dividing it self, one leads through a fine Champaign Country, into the Province of *Chalcal*, and so to *Ardebil*, the other runs straight through the Province of *Kilan*; but over such Precipices, as are most dreadful to behold, it being cut out of a pure Rock, so steep and narrow, that there is scarce Passage for one Horse or Camel loaded; nay, in some places they have been forced to make up the defect of the Rock with Masonwork, the Rock reaching on the left hand up to the very Clouds, whereas on the other side there is nothing but most dreadful Precipices, and a most horrid Abyss, rendred more terrible by the noise of the River, which forces there its Current through the Rock. The *Persians* as well as our People were so astonished at the sight of it, that they were glad to lead their Horses, and that but loosely neither, for fear, in case the Beast should slip, it should draw the Master after him. The Horses went on very carefully, and not without some danger, but the Camels made sure steps, putting their Feet into those steps that were cut in the Rock for that purpose.

A Caravan-sera under a Bridge.

At the top of the Mountain we saw a Custom-house, the Receiver of which presented us with some Fruits, and we were not a little astonish'd to discover the Vallies on the other side full of Blossoms, whereas we were scarce got out of the Snow on the other part; we were more and more convinced of this difference, when we found the descent of the same Mountain, the ascent of which had been so troublesom and dreadful to us before, to change its Face into the most delightful Prospect that could be imagined, it being not only of a very easie descent, but besides this, it is covered all over with Olive, Cypress, Box, Citron, and Orange Trees; of the Fruit of which last we found such plenty here, that our People flung them at one another for their Diversion: But what was more surprizing to us than all the rest, was, that in one and the same Day we found the cold which had sufficiently pinch'd us the same Morning, to turn into heat before Night.

Winter and Summer in one day.

Wee took up our Quarters at the Village of *Pyle-rubar*, at the foot of the Mountain upon the River *Issaruth*; the Houses were indeed very little, but the inconveniencies we suffered in our Lodgings, were in some measure recompensed by the vast numbers of Gardens, Vineyards, Citron, Orange, and Pomgranate Trees, which were planted all round about them. 1638.

A Description of the Province of *Kilan*.

It must be confess'd by all those who have travelled in these Parts, that the Province of *Kilan* is a Terrestrial Paradise, abounding in Silk, Oyl, Wine, Rice, Tobacco, Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, and all sorts of other Fruits; the Vines (which spread themselves with their Branches up the Trees) being very excellent here, being as big in compass as a Man in the Waste. The *Caspian Sea*, as well as the Rivers belonging to this Province, afford to the Inhabitants prodigious quantities of Fish, as their Pasture-grounds furnish them with great store of Cattel, and their Forests with Venison and Wild Fowl, which makes me admire how *John de Laet*, who follows the Footsteps of *Johannes de Persia* could assert with so much confidence, that *Mesanderan*, (part of the Province of *Kilan*) lies under so cold a Climate, that the Fruits there seldom come to full maturity; when it is confess'd by all that have any right knowledge of those Parts, that among all the Provinces of that vast Empire, there is none that challenge Prerogative for a temperate and benign Air, before that of *Mesanderan*, which beyond all dispute, produces the best Fruits of all *Persia*. *Schach Abas* was so well convinced of this point, that he gave the Preference in his Opinion, to this Province before any other of all his Dominions, which made him lay the Foundation of the City of *Ferabath*, his ordinary Residence, where he died.

Its Fertility.

Having given you already an Account of the extent of this Province, and of its principal Cities, we will only add in this place, that the Province of *Kilan*, stretching all along the *Caspian Sea*, in the form of a Crescent, is encompass'd like an Amphitheatre, by a continued ridge of high Mountains, spreading its extremities to the *Caspian Sea*, and being covered all over with Trees; the whole Province appears at a distance, to be surrounded with one entire enclosure of Trees. Out of the Mountains arise divers Rivers, which watering the adjacent Plains, render them very fruitful, but carry this inconveniency along with them, that towards the Sea-side they render the Country Fenny, so that with this and the circumambient Mountains the Province is in a manner inaccessible, were it not for the several Cause-ways, which by *Schach Abas* were ordered to be made from *Astarabath* to *Astara*, quite through the Country, which renders the Passage easie, for Horses, Camels, Waggons, or any other Carriage.

L. V

The Inhabitants of the Province of *Kilan*, but especially those descended from their ancient Race, call'd *Kilek*, living betwixt *Kesker* and *Mesanderan*, are a hardy, and obstinate sort of People. They were in former times Govern'd by their own Kings, neither does the *Schach* exercise his absolute Power here in the same Degree as he does over the rest of his Provinces, for fear of a Revolt, to which they are much inclin'd; trusting to the advantages Nature has bestowed upon their Country, which is such, that they need not be beholding to their Neighbours for any thing necessary for the Sustenance of human Life, and being surrounded by high Mountains, and the *Caspian Sea*, makes it almost inaccessible, there being but 4 ways into this Province, and those so narrow, that not above one loaden Camel can pass at a time. The 1st. leads from the Province of *Chorasan*, by the way of *Astarabath*; The 2d. from *Mesanderan*, by the way of *Ferabath*; The 3d. by *Pyle-rubar*; and the 4th. by *Lenger Kunan*.

Its Inhabitants.

There is indeed another Passage through the Mountains, but this is so intricate as not easily to be ventured at by Foreigners; besides that the Passages may be made good by a few People. Those that live near the Sea-shore, are sometimes in danger of being rifled by the *Cossaques*.

Schach Abas had re-united this Province with the *Persian* Crown, not above 38 Years before our arrival in that Kingdom; but the *Kilek* dreading the Tyranny of *Schach Sefi*, his Successor, took up Arms, and having chosen the *Karib*, born in the Village of *Leschtensa*, and of the Race of the Ancient Kings of *Lahetzan*, in the Province of *Kilan*, brought together an Army of 14000 Men, and herewith he took the City of

A Revolt of the Kilek.

Reschd,

1638. *Rescht*, and several other of the Provinces, the Avenues of which he has guarded so well, that the *Chans* which were by the *Schach* sent against him, with an Army of 40000 Men, having divided the same into 3 several Bodies, and Attack'd him very furiously at once, were repulsed with great loss.

The History of *Karib*. If *Karib* had known how to make the best use of this advantage, he might questionless have maintain'd himself in his Post against the *Persians*; but being overwhelm'd with Pride by his last Victory, he Quartered his Soldiers in the adjacent Villages, where falling into Debaucheries, and keeping the Guard very negligently, the *Chans* with their united Forces surprized them in their Quarters, and put them to a total Rout, *Karib* himself narrowly escaping into a Garden, and being discovered by a Servant of *Emir Chan*, he gave him a considerable Present, and with Promises of a much greater Reward, engaged him to change his Clothes with him; which the Servant seemingly consented to, but had no sooner got the Present and his Clothes, but calling to his Aid some of his Comrades, carried him Prisoner to *Caswin*, where the King was at that time.

A very odd Punishment. His Punishment was extraordinary; for after he had, by *Schach Sefi*'s Order, been shod on his Hands and Feet, like a Horse, and kept thus 3 Days, he was fastened to the top of a high Pole in the Market-place, and shot to death with Arrows: The King was the first who let fly at him, and having given the word to the *Chans*, that all such as lov'd him should follow his Example; the Body of the miserable Wretch was in an instant all covered with Arrows.

The *Kilek* disarm'd. The *Kilek* were disarm'd, having ever since that time not the least thing that has any resemblance of Arms allow'd them, but a Hedge-Bill of about 4 foot long, for the conveniency of cutting their Wood, and dressing their Vines.

Whereas those call'd *Talischs*, living between *Kesker* and *Mesanderan*, who remain'd in Obedience to the *Schach*, retain the free use of all sorts of Arms to this Day.

Their Habits. The *Kilek* are distinguished from the other *Persians*, not only by their Garments, which are not so long, but also by their Complexion, which is much inclining to an Olive colour, but pretty clean, the Climate of this Province being much more Temperate than the other Provinces of *Persia*.

The *Talisch* The Women of the *Thalisch* are counted the handsomest of the whole Kingdom, neither do they (like the other *Persian* Women) cover their Faces. They tie their Hair in Tresses, the Maids having 24 or 25. the marry'd Women no more than 10 or 12. Their upper Garments are so short before, that their Smocks appear below them; instead of Shooes they wear Sandals of Wood, fastened with a string upon the Heel, and with a Wooden Button betwixt the great Toe and the next to it; though by reason of the slipperiness of the Ways in Rainy Weather, they generally go barefooted as well as the Men. The *Kileks* have Caps made of course Cloath, but the *Thalischs* of Lambs-Skin. Each of them have their peculiar Language, differing from the *Persian* only as to Dialect, though at the same time they scarce understand one another. The Women of *Kilan* have the Reputation of being the best Housewives all over the Kingdom; Spinning, Weaving of Stuffs, and Calicoes, making Syrups of Wine, are their Ordinary Employments. Besides which they bear their share in the Management of the Ground, they weed the Corn and bind it, and after it is brought into the Barn, thrash and sell it. They are all *Mahometans*, of the Sect of *Hanife*.

The Inhabitants were generally very obliging to us. And the 24th. of *Jan.* we continued our Journey along the River side, having to the left of us a Wood of Olive Trees, which afforded us a very agreeable shade against the heat of the Sun, which was very excessive. As we came within a Lg of *Pyle-rubar*, we saw a Rock in the midst of it, and upon it the Ruins of a Castle, and of a Bridge, which, they say, were demolished by *Alexander the Great*. Afterwards we pass'd over a very steep Rock, which brought us into a fair Plain, spread over with new Grass, and interspers'd with Violets, which afforded a very agreeable scent to our Nostrils. We lodged that Night in a Village where we saw the Sepulcre of *Iman Sade*. We observed that the Houses here were covered with Slates, and Tiles, because of the Rains which are very frequent here.

The 25th. after having Travel'd 5 Lgs we reach'd the City of *Rescht*, the Woods hereabouts having on both sides very good Corn Grounds, parted by deep Trenches, (call'd *Water-gangs* in *Flanders*,) into which they let in the Water, and make use of it for the watering of the Grounds, when the heat of the Summer has dry'd up the Water of the Rivers near their Sources. The Country People near this City apply themselves chiefly to the Husbandry of Rice, their Houses lying scattered at the end of each piece of Ground. 1638. Come to *Rescht*.

A Description of *Rescht*. The City of *Rescht* the Capital of the Province of *Kilan*, is of a considerable bigness, but without the least Defence, being open on all sides like a Village, and so well planted with Trees, that the Houses are not discovered from among them till you come within the Streets. Its Situation is according to the *Arabians* (who call it *Husum*,) at 85 deg. 10 min. Latitude, about 2 Lgs from the *Caspian Sea*. Their Houses are not so well built as those of the other Cities of *Persia*, but all covered with Slates or Tile; their best Ornaments without, being the vast numbers of Citron and Orange Trees, wherewith they are surrounded on all sides, and afford a very delightful Entertainment both to the Eye and Nostrils.

The Market-place is very large and well-stor'd with Shops; Provisions are sold here at a very easie rate, of which conveniency we were made sensible by the extraordinary Entertainment we received from our *Mehemander* during our stay of 5 Days here. This City is not Govern'd by a *Chan*, but only by a *Daruga*, whose Name was *Alyculi-Beg*.

Jan. 26th. We saw the Inhabitants of *Rescht* celebrate their Festival in Commemoration of *Aly*, with the same Ceremonies we had seen last Year at *Schamachie* 7th. of *Feb.* which now happen'd in *Jan.* because the *Persians* regulate their Festivals according to the Moon. The Preacher who made a very ample Harange upon the Miracles wrought by *Aly*, concluded with these words: *That if* Aly *where not really God, he approached at least very near a Divine Being.* Here we also saw the Sanctuary built by *Schach Abas*, in Memory of his Son *Sefi Myrza*, who was slain in that place by his Command, as we have related before. *Sefi Myrza's* Sanctuary.

The 30th. of *Jan.* Leaving *Rescht* in the Morning, we travelled over a spacious Plain all that Day, which reach'd to the very Borders of the Province of *Kilan*; it was planted with many Box and Mulberry Trees, and watered by many Rivers, the chiefest of which is the *Pesi-chan*, half a Lg from *Rescht*, that of *Cettiban*, a Lg from the other, and those of *Pischeru* and *Lissar*, all which have very high Bridges, by reason of the frequent overflowing of those Rivers, which makes them very difficult to pass; the Horses often tumbling down into the Water, as it happened with a Horse which carried our Physicians Baggage. Towards the Evening we cross'd the River *Tzomus*, which, as well as all the rest, affords plenty of Fish, from the Farming of which the *Schach* draws a considerable Revenue. We made 4 Lgs that Day, and took up our Quarters at *Kisma*, not far from the Town of *Fumen*, or *Pumen*, famous for the overthrow of *Karib*, of which we spoke before. They leave *Rescht*.

Jan. 31. We continued our Journey through the Plain for 4 Lgs, being so well stor'd with Mulberry Trees, that at a distance they made the shew of a Forest; we also saw many Vineyards.

Towards Evening we met the *Calenter*, or Deputy Governor of *Kesker*, at the Head of 30 Horse, and a Mule loaden with Wine, Fruits, and other Provisions, wherewith the Ambassadors made a Collation in the Field; we were met not long after by the *Chan*, the Governor, accompany'd by two Gentlemen on Horseback, who received the Ambassadors with more than ordinary Civility, conducted them to his own House at *Kurab*, and after they had taken part of a good Collation of Fruits and Preserves, ordered certain Gentlemen to attend us to the Lodgings prepared for us in the City, and made us a Present of 4 wild Boars: His Name was *Emir*, being the Son of a *Georgian Christian*, but circumcised in his Youth, and having done considerable Service to *Schach Abas*, at the Siege of *Irvan*, had thereby raised himself to the Dignity of the Government of this Place. He declared to us his good inclinations towards the Christians, notwithstanding which, we were told something concerning him, which had not the least resemblance to it, *viz.* That being lame, he had been advised by his Physicians, *Ut rem haberet cum cane fœmina*. Come to *Kurab*.

The

1638. The ſmall City of *Kurab* is ſeated among a great number of Trees, at the ſame diſtance from the *Caſpian Sea* as *Reſcht* is, *viz.* 2 Lgs; it is chiefly famous for the Birth of *Schach Sefi*, who Reign'd at the time of our Embaſſy; his Father *Sefi Myrza* and his Mother having follow'd *Schach Abas* in his Progreſs into the Province of *Kilan*; the Houſe in which he was born belonging to a wealthy Merchant, was, according to the *Perſian* Cuſtom, turn'd into a Sanctuary.

They leave *Kurab*

We left *Kurab Feb.* 1ſt. about 10 in the Morning, the Weather being very fair and hot. The *Chan* having taken his leave a Lg without the City, ordered the *Calenter*, a young Man of a very ſweet Diſpoſition, to Conduct us through his Government; He ſhew'd us by the way, ſeveral ſlights of his Activity, with the Bow and Half-Pike, which were very diverting. We had ſcarce made 2 Lgs when we came to the *Caſpian Sea*, and the Country thereabouts extending on the right hand, *viz.* from *Meſenderan*, and *Ferabath*, and to the left from *Aſtara*, a great way into the Sea like a Creſcent; we had a Proſpect of the whole Country, which was covered all over with Trees to the N. and S.

After we had travel'd about a Lg along the Sea-ſhore, we took up our Lodging at a Houſe call'd *Ruaſſeru-kura*, upon the Torrent of *Naſſeru*.

The 2d, We continued our Journey along the *Caſpian Sea-ſide*, for 6 Lgs together to the N. W. We paſs'd that Day at leaſt 14 ſmall Rivers, or rather Torrents; the moſt conſiderable of them were, *Schibern*, *Dinatſar*, *Chaleſſera*, *Alarus*, and *Nabarrus*; beſides the River of *Dinatſar*, which being the common Boundary, betwixt the Government *Kesker* and *Aſtara*, our *Calenter* about Noon left us, to the Conduct of the *Calenter* of *Aſtara*, who received us on the River ſide, and Conducted us from the High-road through ſome Corn Fields, to the Village of *Sengar-haſara*, where we were lodged that Night, and regaled with a Preſent of 5 wild Boars, of which there are vaſt quantities in the Foreſts here, becauſe the *Perſians* who are not permitted to eat them, ſeldom hunt them.

On 3d. we ſet out early in the Morning, and made 7 large Lgs that Day, in very ſnowy and rainy weather, taking our Courſe to the E. N. E. ſo near the Sea-ſide, that our Horſes frequently went up to the Girt in Water; our Lodging was as wretched as our Days Journey, in a miſerable Village, named *Hove-lemur*.

The 4th. Being provided with freſh Horſes, we continued our Journey early in the Morning, 4 Lgs along the Sea-Coaſt, to the N. After that we paſs'd through a Foreſt 2 Lgs long, and in that way croſs'd no leſs than 22 Rivers, the Bridges of which were ſo bad, that many fell into the Water, and 3 Peaſants and 4 Horſes were drown'd, and 6 more died by the way. The moſt conſiderable of theſe Rivers were *Lome*, *Konab*, and *Beskeſchan*. About half a Lg from the Village where we were to lodge that Night, we were met by the *Chan* of *Aſtara*, at the Head of 200 Horſe, who conducted the Ambaſſadors to the Village *Choskedehene*, (upon a River of the ſame Name, which runs through it,) his Name was *Saru Chan*, a Perſon of excellent Qualities, his ordinary Reſidence being at *Aſtara*, (which had borrowed its Name of the Province) a Place without Defence, within a Mile of the *Caſpian Sea*.

Feb. 6th. Being the concluſion of their *Lent*, the *Chan* entertain'd the Ambaſſadors at Noble Feaſt, where, among other excellent Diſcourſes, he gave them a particular account of the War, which enſued upon the Revolt of *Karib*, in which he had been in Perſon and among other things got *Karib*'s Table-Cloth of green Satin, flowered with Gold, which was laid at this Entertainment. He was in ſuch eſteem with the *Schach*, that he was then preparing for an Embaſſy to the *Indies*, which he was to begin the next Spring. He told us we muſt be upon our Guard, by reaſon of the danger that might attend us, from the *Coſſaques*, who had within 2 Years laſt paſt, Plundred the City of *Reſcht*. We found the Vines in thoſe Parts as big in Bulk as a Man's Middle, which, tho' it may ſcarce meet with Credit by ſome, yet may be atteſted by me, as well as many others, who having travel'd in theſe Parts, as well as in ſeveral others of *Perſia*, where they are no leſs big, are Eye-witneſſes of the truth of it.

This puts me in mind of what *Strabo* ſays of the Vines of *Margiana* (part of the Province of *Choraſan*) which turns to the ſame account, and further adds, that the moſt ordinary Stock yields a Pail full of Wine; but I can't affirm what he further tells us of the Bunches, *viz.* that they are above 4 foot long. At the foot of the Mountain of *Schindan* near *Aſtara*, lies the Village of *Schich-Sahadan*, which is exempted from all Taxes, on the account of the Sepulchre of *Schich-Sahadan*, *Aly*'s Maſter. 1638.

Feb. 7th. We made 7 Lgs along the Sea-ſhore, to the *Sreights* which lead into the Province of *Lengerkunan*, being a narrow Bank raiſed between the Mountains and the Fens, which is the only Paſſage from this ſide into the Province. At the end of this Cauſeway is the River *Serdane*, from whence we proceeded to *Lenkeran*, ſituate upon the River *Warſaſaruth*. The Town as well as the adjacent Country, has obtained its name from the eaſie Anchoring of Ships hereabouts, tho', to confeſs the truth, the Bay, which is made by the two Capes or Promontories, (one of which ſtretches into the Sea from the ſide of *Lenkeran*, being all covered with Trees, the other from *Kiſilagate*) makes no ſafe Harbours, but only a kind of Bay, where the Sea is ſo ſhallow, as not to be fit for the reception of Ships of any Burthen; beſides that, they lay open to the fury of the Eaſt Winds.

Come to the Province of *Lengerkunan*.

I remember to have read in (*a*) *George Dictander*, concerning a certain Ambaſſador, who 1603. was ſent by the Emperor *Rudolphus*, into *Perſia*, and being landed hereabouts, died here with moſt of his Retinue; but upon the moſt ſtrict enquiry I could make, I could not learn any thing as to this particular, from any of the Inhabitants. We ſtaid here 3 Days for ſome belonging to our Train that were left; as alſo to refreſh our Camels, and get freſh Horſes; and the 11th. proſecuted our Journey to *Kiſilagats*, five Leagues thence, croſſing in this Days Journey four great Rivers, *viz.* the *Kaſiende*, the *Noabine*, *Tzili*, and *Buladi*, the 3 firſt over Bridges, the laſt by the help of Boats, though it be very broad, and our Horſes were forced to ſwim; our Baggage was ſent by Sea in 6 ſmall Barks, the Sea-ſide as well as the adjacent Iſlands along this Coaſt, being covered all over with Canes, which ſerve for retreating places to the *Coſſaques* to attack ſuch Veſſels as paſs by that way, or elſe to croſs over from thence to the Continent. The ſmall City of *Kiſilagats*, i. e. *Red-wood*, is like all the reſt in thoſe Parts, upon all ſides, lying about half a Lg from the Sea to the N. W. in a fair Plain, upon a ſmall River, call'd *Willeſchi*. From hence we had a full view of the Mountain of *Kilan*, to the W. N. W. ſinking by degrees into little Hills, towards the Country of *Mokan*. At the foot of the Mountain were ſeveral fair Villages, and great numbers of Trees planted in a ſtraight Line along a very large Tract of Paſture Ground. I am apt to imagine that this is the fertile Plain *Strabo* mentions to be near the *Porta Caſpia*, adding, that it is kept for the King's Breeding Mares, and that it is able to maintain 50000 of them; but in this laſt he has ſomewhat overſhot the Mark, it being certain, that it is not near ſo large now-a-days; at leaſt, I remember that falling one Day into Diſcourſe with a certain Military Officer, belonging to the Duke of *Holſtein*, who pretended he had travelled into the *Great Tartary*, (though he had not been beyond *Aſtrachan*) he would needs be poſitive in aſſerting this Paſſage in *Strabo* to be true, and to be found ſo to this Day. Within, and about the Neighbouring Mountains are the Countries of *Kuawer*, *Marankn*, and *Deſchiewend*, as alſo the Village of *Dubil*, or, as ſome call it, *Chatiſekeka*, the Inhabitants whereof uſed to have their clandeſtine Meetings in the Night-time, and after having taken a good ſhare of ſtrong Liquor, the Candles were blown out, and then putting off their Cloaths, the Father with the Daughter perhaps, and the Mother with her Son, without any diſtinction of Age, Sex, or Proximity of Blood, went to the work of Generation, which coming to *Schach Abas*'s Ears, he commanded them to be quite extirpated, and a Colony of other People to be ſettled there.

(*a*) In his Travels

Leave *Lenkeran*.

The City of *Kiſilagats*.

Perhaps theſe were the ſame, or at leaſt the Offſpring of thoſe mentioned by *Herodotus*, who uſed to have Carnal Copulation promiſcuouſly like the Beaſts.

Three Lgs from the Continent, directly oppoſite to *Kiſilagats*, are 2 Iſlands named *Kelechol*, and *Alibaluck*, the laſt of which being 3 Lgs long, having gotten its Name from a pretended Miracle done by *Aly*, who being there in great diſtreſs for Water to quench his thirſt, a Spring of freſh Water broke out in an inſtant which they ſhew to this Day.

A pretended Miracle of *Aly*'s.

Feb. 12th. We purſued our Journey through a Champaign Country, and croſs'd ſeveral Rivers, and among

1638. among the rest the *Uskeru* and the *Butaru*, and took up our Quarters at Night in the Village of *Elliesdu*, seated at the foot of a very fertile Hill (as indeed is the whole descent of the Mountain) at the very entrance of the Heath of *Mokan*. The Village being inhabited only by Soldiers, maintained out of the King's Demesns in those Parts; the Houses were very mean, made of Laths, and plaistered with Clay.

Brugman's Barbarity.

Here happened a very odd Accident, occasioned chiefly by the violent Temper of the Ambassador *Brugman*; for his Groom as he was entring with a Led-Horse one of the Houses of those *Kisilbaschs*, was refused admittance by the Master thereof, who alledged, that by their Privileges they were exempted from Quarters; besides, that they had no accommodation for Horses; but the Groom persisting in his demand, the Souldier struck the Horse slightly with a Stick over the Head. The Ambassador *Brugman* having taken notice of what had pass'd, flew like Lightning upon the *Kisilbasch*, who being a Souldier, and not used to be attack'd in his own House, and, as he said, little expecting that it was the Ambassador who came to the Groom's assistance, gave *Brugman* such a welcom with his Stick, that being forc'd to cry out for help, some of our Retinue fell upon the *Kisilbasch*, and gave him such a furious beating, that with much a-do he made shift to crawl away, and to shelter himself in the next House: But the Ambassador not thinking himself sufficiently revenged upon this poor wretch, would needs make his Complaints to our *Mehemander*, who answered him, that the Officer of the *Kisilbaschs* being not at hand, he did not know what to do in the matter, but that the Person who had affronted him, had received so severe a Chastisement, as he would scarce be able to recover; but that for the rest, he might take what further satisfaction he thought fit. Hereupon the Ambassador *Brugman* not only ordered his Horse and Arms to be taken out of his House, but also having commanded all our Retinue (without communicating his design to his Collegue) to get on Horseback next Day, he demanded from the *Mehemander* the Souldier that had struck him, and being told by the said *Mekemander*, that he was not in a condition to be brought forth, by reason of his Wounds, he notwithstanding this, commanded him to be brought out in a Coverlet, and maugre all the intercessions of the *Persians* there present, caused a certain *Armenian* named *Mark Filerosse.n*, to Cudgel him, which this merciless Wretch did so effectually, that with two blows, one over the Arm, the other cross the Side, he laid the poor Souldier stretch'd upon the ground for dead, without sense or motion; *Brugman* telling the *Mehemander*, that it was no more than what he deserved, adding another Bravado, *viz.* That if *Schach Sefi* did neglect to give him further satisfaction, he would return himself in a short time, with so numerous an Attendance, as to be able to do it without him. His fellow Souldiers sufficiently discovered by their Countenances, that it was not for want of good will, that they did not revenge the Death of their Comrade; and as they wanted not strength to do it, I know not whether our Deliverance was owing to the presence of our *Mehemander*, or to a peculiar Providence.

Orders a Souldier to be kill'd.

We travel'd that Day, being the 13th. of *Feb.* 2 Lgs over the Heath of *Mokan*, and took up our Nights Lodging at *Oba* in Shepherds Huts; our *Mehemander*, who had staid behind in the Village, came to us at Night, with the Tidings that the poor Souldier was dead, desiring that the Ambassador *Brugman* would send back his Horse and Arms to the Widow whom he had left in a deplorable condition.

I made the following Observation here, *viz.* that the Sun rose to the E. S. E. and consequently the declination of the Load-stone 24 deg. from the N. towards the W. The Sun I observed at *Oba* at Noon, at the height of 40 deg. 48 min. and consequently the Elevation of the Pole 39 deg. 28 min. The Sea-Coast here stretched from the Pole to the N. E. The Mountain of *Scamachie* appearing within sight to the N. The Heath of *Mokan* call'd *Minumlack*, i. e. a *thousand ways*, or *thousand holes* by the *Turks*, is accounted to be 60 Lgs long, and 20 broad. Its Inhabitants are a sort of poor Wretches descended from certain Families, who having born Arms under *Jesid* against *Hossein*, were banished into this Desert, where they live in Tents in the Winter, and in the Summer remove with what small Stock of Cattel they have, to the foot of the Mountain. They live so wretchedly, that in derision they are call'd *Sumek Rajeti*, i. e. *from bone to bone*. They are most Savages, now their chief Families being call'd *Chotze*, *Tschaubani*, *Tekle*, *Elmenku*, *Hatzikasilu*, *Sulthan Baschelu*, *Carai*, *Ardenduschenlu*, *Chalerz*, &c. 1638.

The 14th. we made 3 Lgs Northward, and by the way saw the Sepulchre of *Bairam Tekle Obasi*, who being a famous Robber in *Schach Abas*'s time, did annoy the *Turkish* Army that was then entred *Persia*, with such success, that thereby the number of his Troops encreasing to 14000, they with continual Skirmishing did more mischief to the *Turks*, than the whole *Persian* Army, for which signal Service he was made a *Chan*, and had certain Lands assign'd him to maintain him according to his Quality. *A Robber made a Chan.*

We scarce were laid down in the Huts, when a Volley of Small Shot gave us such an unexpected Alarm, that every body betook himself to his Arms, fearing lest the *Kisilbaschs* were coming to revenge the death of their Comrade; but we soon understood that it was the *Muscovite* Envoy who had ordered this Discharge to be made under pretence of honouring the Ambassador *Brugman*'s Birth-day, but in reality to fright and put him in mind of his last Days Cruelty.

The 15th we made no less that 8 Lgs over the Heath, and came at Night within a Mile of the River *Aras*; our intention being to have lodg'd that Night at *Tzanar*, but understanding that *Areb*, Governor of *Scamachie*, was lodg'd there with all his Retinue, and was to continue there the next Day, we stay'd the 16th in the same place where we were, as having no great confidence in the said Governor, by reason of some misunderstanding that happened at the time of our first coming that way, but soon found our selves undeceived, the *Chan* being so generous as to pass by all those matters, laying the blame thereof upon our *Persian* Interpreter *Rustan*, who, as he said, had told him several Stories, and questionless had plaid him the same Game with us. He no sooner understood that we were come to the River *Aras*, but he sent a Person of Quality to receive us, and sent a Refreshment of 3 Bags of Wine, which came very seasonable to us; our Entertainment having been but slender the last two Days. Here we were also visited by *Aczebeg*, our first *Mehemander*, who presented the Ambassadors with a very fine Grey-hound Bitch.

The River Aras.

The 17th. We cross'd the famous River of *Aras*, (*Araxes*) by the means of a Bridge of Boats, near *Tzanar*. *Q. Curtius* speaking of this River, in two different Passages, and in a different Sense, has not a little puzled the Ancient Historians and Geographers, who indeed for the most part put it in the same Province, but can't agree in the description of its Course. For *Q. Curtius* in his 5th. Book puts it in *Persida*, and says its Course is to the S. whereas in his 7th. Book he makes it pass through *Media*, and to disimbogue in the *Caspian Sea*. *Strabo* is no less dubious, and (*a*) *Raderus* endeavouring to dissolve this Knot by asserting that the River *Medus*, before it is joyn'd with the *Araxes*, has its Course to the S. and afterwards exonerates it self into the *Caspian Sea*, is fallen into a gross mistake; for how is it to be conceived, that the River should make its way through the vast Mountain *Taurus*, which is so many Lgs in breadth, and divides not only all *Persia*, but even *Asia* it self, and so continues its Current from *Persepolis* to the *Caspian Sea*. The foundation of the whole Mistake lay here, that there are two Rivers which bear the Name of *Araxes*, in *Persia*; one in *Media*, the other in *Persida*; to the last, which washes the Walls of *Persepolis*, (now call'd *Schiras*) *Q. Curtius* has left the right Name of *Araxes*, but has taken the liberty to impose the Name of *Tanais* upon the *Jaxartes*, which passes through *Scythia*, as he has given the Name of *Caucasus* to the Eastern Branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, but with what Reason I am not able to determine.

(*a*) In his Comment upon *Q. Curtius.*

That which passes through *Persida*, is by the *Persians* call'd *Bend-Emir*, from a signal Miracle perform'd there by *Aly*; and disembogues in the Ocean in the *Persian* Gulph. That which we speak of now keeps its ancient Name, and rises out of the Mountains of *Armenia*, behind the great *Ararat*, and being joyn'd by many other Rivers, the chiefest whereof are, *Karasu*, *Senki*, *Kerni*, and *Arpa*, it turns its Channel near *Karasu*, deep into the Country, and afterwards near *Ordubath*, falls with a great noise, which is heard 2 Lgs thence, in the Plain of *Mokan*. Its Course there is very slow, and after having received into its Channel

1638. Channel about 12 Lgs above *Tzanat*, the River *Cur* or *Cyrus*, (as large a River as it self coming Northward out of *Georgia*,) it exonerates it self into the *Caspian Sea*. This sufficiently refutes *Ptolemy*, and those who follow his Footsteps, who make the *Araxes* and the *Cyrus* fall by two different Channels into the *Caspian Sea*. Thus they would have *Cyropolis* be the same which is by the Modern *Persians* call'd *Scamachie*, which *Maginus* would infer from the degrees of Latitude given by *Ptolemy*: But according to that Supposition, these 2 Rivers must not be placed above, but below the City, towards the S. it being certain, that when we travell'd in those Parts, we found the Conflux of those 2 Rivers at 39 deg. 54 min. and the City of *Scamachie* at 40 deg. 50 min. which is 13 Lgs thence, and under another Meridian. Neither is there any other River within 19 Days Journey of *Scamachie* on either side, which bears the least comparison in bigness, or otherwise to this River.

At Tzanat. The 17th. We were very splendidly treated by the *Mehemander* sent thither by the *Chan*; this Village owes its Name to the *Arabian* word *Tzanat*, which signifies a Passage, each Passenger being obliged to shew his Pass at the crossing of the River here, which is intended chiefly to keep the *Turks* out of the Kingdom.

The Mountain of Scamachie. The 19th. having travel'd 8 Lgs thro' a barren and desert Country, we were forced to take up our Lodgings at Night in 3 Huts, set up for that purpose, at the foot of the Mountain of *Scamachie*. Here our Painter died, and was buried the 22d. in the *Armenian* Church-yard, before *Scamachie*.

The 20th. We set out early in the Morning, that we might with the more leisure pass the Mountain of *Scamachie*, which extends it self thereabouts like a Crescent to the East, from the Sea along the River *Cyr*. The continual cold Rains had rendred the Ways so slippery, and difficult to pass, that this was one of the worst Days Journey we had since the beginning of it; those that were well mounted reach'd the City of *Scamachie* before Night, but others not till Mid-night, and some not before Morning, and the Camels with the heavy Baggage not till 8 Days after.

We were by the *Chan*'s special Order lodg'd with the same *Armenians* that had been our Landlords at the time of our first Passage through this City, who were all extreamly glad to see us, and I in particular had several Presents of Apples and Grapes sent me by my old Friends there, who all came the next Day to pay me their Visits, being desirous to see what Progress I had made in the *Persian* Language.

Feb. 22d. The *Chan* and the *Calenter* came in Person to invite the Ambassadors and their Retinue to Supper, which was very Magnificent; but what was most obliging, was the tender offers of his Friendship and Service, of which we found the effects during our stay of 5 Weeks at *Scamachie*, upon several occasions, the *Chan* taking all imaginable opportunities to divert us with Hunting, Feasting, and all other Divertisements the Place afforded.

The Chan's Civility to the Ambassadors The 1st. of *March*, the *Muscovite* Envoy Celebrated the Birth-day of the *Czar* his Master by a great and splendid Entertainment, as the *Chan* Celebrated the 3d. 6th. and 10th. their *Naurus*, or New-year, when the Ambassadors were splendidly treated at his own Palace; and the *Chan*'s Astrologer sent me a fat Lamb for my New-years-gift.

March 14th. *Arch-Chan* received the Garment (according to the Custom of *Persia*) the usual Mark of the continuation of the King's Favour towards him; after the Governours have sent their Presents to the King, he sends to them a Messenger to notifie to them, either his Favour or Displeasure; who being come near the City where the Governor Resides, gives him notice of his Arrival, and the *Chan*, being not sure whether he is likely to return again, takes his leave of the whole City, and so, in the Company of all his Friends, goes a Lg out of the City to meet the King's Envoy, who no sooner sees him a coming, but he makes a halt, and the Governor, after having laid aside his Sword, Turbant, and upper Garment, alights, and approaching in a submissive posture the Envoy, he has in a Box covered with rich Tapistry a Letter of Grace delivered to him, or else his Head is demanded. As a token of the King's favour he always receives a Garment from the Envoy's Hands, which after he has kiss'd at the Collar, and touch'd with his Fore-head, he puts on upon the spot; but if the King's Messenger is commanded to bring away his Head, it is cut off immediately and put into the Box. Of this kind there are divers instances, both in the Reign of *Schach Abas*, and of *Schach Sefi*. *Areb Chan* having received some underhand assurance of the King's Favour, and willing the Ambassadors should be present at this Solemnity, desired their Company, which they having accepted of, he appeared on Horse-back without any Arms, with divers very fine Led Horses before him, and a Guard of 15 Carabineers, besides a Retinue of above 400 Gentlemen, and certain Persons carrying on the tops of long Poles some *Turks* Heads fill'd with Hay, and the Colours *Areb* had taken from them. Being come in this Order to the King's Garden without the City, and seeing the King's Messenger standing at the entrance of it with the Box in his Hand, the *Chan* being come within 12 Paces of him, with a cheerful Countenance, laid aside his Garment and Turbant, but was a little startled, when he heard the Envoy say nothing, till at last breaking silence he said, *Schach Sefi sends thee a Garment and a Letter of Favour, thou art certainly beloved by the King.* Unto which the *Chan* Reply'd briskly, *I wish the King's Wealth to encrease for ever, and that every Day of his Life may be multiplyed to a thousand. I am one of the King's old Servants.* Then taking the Garment, which was of Sea-green Satin, and a Rochet of Cloth of Gold, a Girdle and Turbant; the Messenger assisted him in putting it on, and was presented with some *Tumains*. The Ceremony concluded with the *Casi* or Judges Prayer, which ended, the *Chan*'s Steward cry'd out aloud, *We pray for the King's Prosperity, the happy success of his Arms, and the Chan's Health*; unto which the People answered, *Alla, Alla, Alla*, and so the *Chan* return'd to the City, under the sound of the Trumpets and Timbrels, the before-mentioned *Turks* Heads and Colours being carried before him, he invited the Ambassadors to Dinner, but having drunk very freely before, he was forc'd to rise from Table, and so the whole Company withdrew soon after.

1638.

The 22d. Being *Holy Thursday*, we saw the *Armenians* perform the Ceremony of washing the Feet, which was perform'd at Church, the Priest wash'd the right Foot of the Men, and the left of the Women, and afterwards made thereon the Sign of the Cross with Consecrated Butter. This done, he was set in a Chair, and rais'd up aloft by 12 Men, who kept him up in the Air, with divers Acclamations, till he had invited them to Dinner. *The Ceremony of washing the Feet by the Armenians.*

The 25th. of *March*, being the *New-years-day* of the *Armenians*, which then fell on *Easter-day*, they made an extraordinary Procession; and the *Chan* having pitch'd his Tents without the City to be a Spectator of it, they stood with their Banners, Crosses, and Images before his Tent, the *Armenian* Women dancing in the mean while, in 3 separate Bodies, which without intermission relieved one another. The *Chan* diverted himself with letting out 2 Wolves among the People, but being ty'd to long Ropes, they might be drawn back at pleasure. He also ordered the Head of one of those Deer we have mentioned before, call'd *Ahu's*, to be cut off at one blow with a Cymitar, which was done, by striking the Beast first with a Stick over the Back, which made it lift up its Head, and afforded a fair aim to be cut off without missing. I was the same Night stung by a Scorpion. *Their New-year.*

The 26th. *Imanculi*, who was sent by the *Schach* to the Duke of *Holstein*, our Master, coming to *Scamachie*, he was by the *Chan* invited to Dinner, together with our Ambassadors; after which they had a long Conference concerning our intended Journey.

The 29th. *Imanculi* took leave of the Ambassadors, assuring them, that he intended to follow them in 8 Days. And *Abasculi-Beg*, our *Mehemander* being to return to Court, we had one *Hosseinculi-Beg*, appointed to Conduct us to the Frontiers of *Persia*.

The Ambassadors leave Scamachie. The 30th. The *Chan* and *Calenter* of *Scamachie* treated us very Magnificently half a Lg without the City, and having taken their leave with a great deal of Civility; we took the way to *Pyrmarias*, 3 Lgs thence, where we lodg'd that Night.

March 31st. We made 6 Lgs over the Mountains, without having as much as the sight of one single Village, yet at Night we took up our Quarters in a Valley, near the Village of *Cochani*.

April 1st. We made 7 Lgs more, over Hills, and through some Valleys as far as the Village of *Babel*, otherwise call'd *Sarra*, by reason of its Fertility in Millet.

Here the Chan is assured of the King's favour.

1638. The 2d. Leaving the Hills, we got into the plain Country, and having the Rock of *Barmuch* to the right, came within a Mile of the Sea. As we pass'd along we saw within the compass of 500 Paces, no less than 30 Springs of *Nefte* (being a kind of Medicinal Oyl, or rather a *Petroleum*, some white, others black, but more of the last than of the first, which has a much more agreeable scent.) The Pits were about 15 or 16 foot deep.

Sources of *Nefte*.

The 3d. We travell'd only 2 Lgs over three little Rivers to *Schabran*. The Mountains hereabouts are inhabited by a certain People call'd *Padar*, who living upon Rapine, make their Excursions in small Troops for 20 Lgs round to Rob Travellers; being inform'd that they had been at the Village to enquire after our Strength, the *Mehemander* advis'd us to be upon our Guard, and to keep close, and in sight of the Baggage in our March. The Inhabitants of *Schabran* are by the *Persians* call'd *Kurs*, which has misled some Authors into an Error, having mistaken them for the *Kurdes*, a People living in *Kurdestan* (the ancient *Chaldea*) which is far distant from this Place.

The *Padars*

April 4th. We made 4 Lgs thro' a pleasant hilly Country, and came up by the way with a *Carapan* of *Muscovite* and *Circassian* Merchants, who looking upon us as a sure defence against the danger of those Robbers, were very glad of our Company; for it was not long before one of the Gang appear'd at some distance, in order to take a view of us, but 12 *Persians* being by our *Mehemander* sent out to apprehend him, he escaped into the Wood, leaving a good Ox he had stoln, behind him, which was presented to the Ambassadors. In the Afternoon we pass'd through the Fenns near *Mschkar*, a Village within 2 Lgs of *Niasabath*, where we were Ship wreck'd; we found in one of the Houses belonging to the Priest of the Village, many fair Manuscripts.

The 5th, We travel'd thro' one continued Forrest and Desert 8 Lgs, to the Village of *Koptepe*, and upon the Road, not far from the Sepulcre of one of their Saints called *Pyr Schich Mulla Jusuf*, met with 25 Horsemen all Arm'd, who pretended to be Country People, and they travelled thus to secure themselves against the *Padars*; though it was more likely they were some of their Gang. Several of the adjacent Villages being inhabited by those Robbers.

The 6th. we made but 3 Lgs through the Woods, and cross'd 3 Rivers, the *Kossar*, *Sanbur*, and *Kurgane*. The *Sanbur* rises out of the Mountain of *Elbours*, and afterwards is separated into 5 several Branches, or Channels, which are so shallow, that the Water did not reach up half way our Horses Legs.

They come to *Derbent*.

The 7th. After a Days Journey of 3 Lgs, we came to the City of *Derbent*, where we were met only by a certain number of *Kisilbachs*, the Governor not darring, at that juncture, to leave the Castle for fear the Souldiers, who were disgusted, should surprise it in his absence.

A Description of *Derbent*.

The *Persians* put the City of *Derbent* at 85. deg. Long. and by my own Observation I found it at 41 deg. 50 min. Latit. It stretches from E. to W. a Lg in length, its breadth being 450 Paces. It may well be call'd the Gate of *Persia* on that side, because it reaches exactly from the foot of the Mountain, to the Sea-shore, the Waves beating sometimes over the Walls. The Modern *Persians* assert, that its Castle and the Wall on the South side of the City, was built by *Iscander* (*Alexander the Great*) which are of a great heighth, and near 5 foot thick; they appear at a distance as if they were of Free-Stone, but they are made only of Stones made of Mussel-shells, and pieces of Free-Stone beaten to Powder, and molded like Brick, which time has reduced to such a degree of hardness, that no Marble is comparable to it. The rest of the City was built by their King *Nauschiruan*. Upon one of the Gates belonging to that part of the Walls which acknowledges *Alexander the Great* for its Founder, I saw the Remnants of a *Syriack* Inscription in 3 lines, and in another place certain *Arabick* words and Characters, but so defaced by time, as not to be legible. The Castle, which is the ordinary Residence of the Governor, is built upon the top of a Mountain, and provided with 500 Men, of two different Nations, *viz.* the *Asumrumln* and *Koidurscha*, who keep a constant Guard there. The next and most populous Quarter of the City is just at the foot of the Mountain; but the Lower Town was much ruin'd by *Emir Hamse*, the Son of *Chodabende*, who regain'd it from the *Turkish* Emperor *Mustapha*, unto whom the Inhabitants had submitted by a voluntary Surrender; since which time, that part which extends to the Sea, is for the most part converted into Gardens, whereas before that time it was inhabited by the *Greeks*, whence to this Day it is call'd by the *Persians Scaher Juman*, that is, the *Greek* City. 1638.

The Coast all hereabouts is one entire Rock, and consequently very dangerous for Vessels; the Walls on this side are so broad, that a Waggon may with ease be driven on them.

The adjacent Mountain is full of Wood, notwithstanding which there are to be seen there the Ruins of a Wall above 50 Lgs in length; which they told us, in former *Ages*, reach'd from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine Sea*. In sundry places it appear'd still 5 or 6 foot high above the ground, in others perhaps 2 or 3, and in some places there was no Tract left. On the circumjacent Hills you might also discover the Ruins of many old Castles, which seem'd to have been four square. Two remain'd entire, and had a Garrison each for their Defence, as had divers Wooden Redoubts that were built upon certain Avenues.

Near this City is the Sepulchre of one *Tzumtzume*, who, as the *Persians* say, was a very Potent King, and relate a fabulous Story of him, concerning his interview with *Eissi*, (so they call our Saviour) which merits not to be mention'd here. Over his Sepulchre stands a great Tree, and near it a Scaffold of 20 foot high, and 16 square. On this side of the City we saw also above 5000 or 6000 Tombs, covered with a kind of Grave-Stones, exceeding the ordinary Stature of Men, being half round, Cylinder-wise, and hallow within; the Inscriptions were *Arabick*.

They affirm that a certain King of *Media*, named *Kassan*, being (since the time of *Mahomet*) ingaged in a War against the *Dagesthan Tartars*, was put to the Rout in that place, and that he ordered these Tombs to be made here for his Officers that were slain in the Battel.

Not far from the Sea-shore, we saw 40 more much bigger than the former, encompass'd with a very high Wall; they told us these were the Tombs of some of his Lords, and holy Men. Both the *Persians* and *Tartars* performed their Devotions at these Sepulcres.

They say further that King *Kassan* lived many Years after this Defeat, and was buried near the River *Atzi*, not far from *Tabris*; his Queen *Burla* is interr'd near the Fortress of *Urumi*, her Tomb being, as is reported, 40 foot long.

April 13th. Being the Day of the Commemoration of the Sacrifice of *Abraham*, among the *Mahometans*, we saw several *Tartars* of both Sexes paying their Devotions to these 40 Tombs, by kissing them, and laying their Hands upon them whilst they said their Prayers.

No Christians inhabit at *Derbent*, they being all *Mahometans*, except some few *Jews* of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, as they pretend; neither is it a place of Trade, unless, that the *Tartars* sell here such Children or other Captives as they have stoln, or otherwise taken from the *Turks* and *Muscovites*.

The Souldiers, as well as the Inhabitants, being an insolent uncivilized sort of People; our *Mehemander* forewarned us to be upon our Guard, and for the removing of all occasions of quarreling, strict Orders were given the 8th. to all our Retinue, not to give the least offence to any of the Souldiers or Inhabitants, and to be careful not to intermeddle in their Quarels.

The 9th. The *Chan* of *Tarku*, who, as we told you, gave a Visit to the Ambassadors in their first Passage that way, offer'd them a Convoy to conduct them safely through the *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*; but the Ambassadors considering him to be a *Dagesthan Tartar* as well as the rest, they sent him word, that they would not give him any trouble; but in lieu thereof ordered a view to be taken of all our Arms fit for Service, which were found to consist of 52 Muiquets and Fusees, 19. Cases of Pistols, 2 Brass Guns, and 4 Murthering-pieces.

After we had in vain staid several Days for the coming of the Ambassador *Imanculi*, who had promised to be with us in this Place, in a few Days, the Ambassadors gave Orders the 12th. to get every thing in readiness for our Departure, every Man having Bread delivered him for 4 Days, there being but little likelihood, we should meet with any by the way for some time.

They prepare for their Departure.

The

1638. The 13th. just as we were ready to go forward, word was brought us, that the Governor had caused the City Gates to be shut; and being ask'd by our *Mehemander* what was the Reason, he answer'd, that having received intelligence that one *Osmin*, a *Tartar* Prince near *Derbent*, intended to Attack us in our way, and that as he was answerable for us to the King, he could not let us depart without a Convoy, which being not at hand at present, he desired we might defer our Departure till the next Day. We were sufficiently sensible that this was no more than a fram'd excuse, neither were we desirous of his Convoy; yet we put the best Face we could upon the matter, we thank'd him for his Care, desiring only that we might have leave to go without the City that Day, and expect the Convoy there to Morrow, which being readily granted, we pitch'd our Tents a Mile without the City, near a fair Vineyard, upon the Bank of a small River, which thereabouts is the common Boundary betwixt the *Persians* and *Tartars* of *Dagesthan*.

Are stopt by the Chan of Derbent.

We saw likewise near this City the Sepulchres of 2 other *Mahometan* Saints, *viz.* that of *Pyr Muchar*, in the Plain, on the foot of the Mountain, and that of *Imam Kurchud*, within the Mountain. They told us, that the latter being a Kinsman and Disciple of *Mahomet*, lived 300 Years after him, and retired to King *Kassan*, and that at last he was slain by the *Dagesthan Tartars*, whilst he was endeavouring to bring them over to the *Mahometan* Faith.

His Sepulchre is within a Cave of the Rock. In the same Rock is another Cave, where you see a Coffin made only of 4 Boards nail'd together, and rais'd 4 foot from the ground: many Women and Maids repair thither every Day, who enter bare-footed into the Cave, and after having kiss'd the Coffin, and said their Prayers, make their Offering, Bread, Butter, Cheese, Milk, and Money, to an old Woman that has the keeping of it.

Leave Derbent.

We stay'd *April* 14th. 3 hours after Sun-rising, for the Convoy promised us by the Governor, but none appearing, we left *Derbent*. Our 3 Lieutenants with the Souldiers under Command in the Van. After these came a Field-piece, and the 4 Murthering-pieces, then the Baggage and the Ambassador *Crusius*; and these were followed by another Field-piece, and the Ambassador *Brugman*, with all the rest of the Retinue, and in this Order entred the Country of *Dagesthan*.

The Tartars of Dagesthan.

Ptolemy, and those who follow him, make this Country to be part of that *Albania*, from whence, according to *Q. Curtius*, *Thalestris*, the Queen of the *Amazons*, came to *Alexander* in *Hyrcania*, to obtain that kindness which Women will more willingly take than ask. The Inhabitants are call'd by the *Persians Lesgi*, and in their Native Tongue *Dagesthan Tartars*, i.e. *Highland Tartars*, from the word *Tag*, or *Dag*, which signifies a high Mountain, their Habitations being among the Mountains, and in the Plains at the foot of the Mountains, which are 20 or 30 Lgs distant from the *Caspian Sea*, as the Plains extend all along the Sea-coast to the N. as far as *Terki*, comprehending a Tract of 40 Lgs, tho' the Mountains extend in some places within half a Lg, and in some within 2 or 3 Lgs of the Sea; the interjacent Plains being very fertile, except very near the Sea-shore, which is Heathy and Barren.

The Complexion of these *Tartars* is a dark yellow, inclining to black, have good strong Limbs, but very ugly Faces; their black greasie Hair falling round their Shoulders: They are a very barbarous Nation.

Their Habit.

Their Garments are only a courie grey, or black close Coat of Cloth; their Cloak which they wear over it, being of the same Stuff, or sometimes of Sheep-Skins; their Caps are square, patch'd together of Cloath of divers colours, and their Shooes of Sheep-Skin, or Horse-Hide of one piece sow'd together at the Instep, or at the sides.

They are *Mahometans*, but besides the Ceremonies (which are the same used by the *Turks*) they are ignorant as to the substantial part of Religion. They live chiefly upon their Cattel, the management of which depends entirely upon the Women, the Mens Profession being to rob and steal, even the Children of their neerest Relations, who are sold into *Persia*.

Their Arms.

Their Defensive Arms, they put on and off with their Cloathes; they are a Coat of Mail, a Head-piece, and a Buckler; their Offensive Arms are the Cymitar, Bows and Arrows, and the Javelin; they set upon all which they meet with, not standing in fear either of the *Persians* or *Muscovites*, by reason of their retreating places among the Mountains, so that the *Carravannes* must either be strong enough to Encounter them, or else take their way by Sea. 1638.

Their Government.

They are not govern'd by one single Person, but each City with its Territories has its peculiar Lord, who is not Absolute, but shares the Government with the other Lords, and is Elective; he is called *Schemkal*, and upon his Death the *Myrsa's*, or Lords of the Country meet, and being sat down in a Circle, the Priest of the Place throws a Golden Apple into it, and he who is first touch'd by it, is the *Schemkal*.

Osmin's Country.

We entered the Country of *Dagesthan*, as we told you before, the 14th. of *April*, and travell'd 5 Lgs through divers Villages, and fertile Fields till we came to the Village of *Rustain*, in the Country of *Osmin*. We took care to Fortifie our selves as well as we could, with our Baggage, and placed Sentinels on all the Avenues to prevent any surprize.

Osmin's Son came in the Evening to our Quarters, but visited only the *Muscovite* Ambassadors, and so departed, after having sent 2 of his Officers only to Complement our Ambassadors.

The Lordship of Boinack.

The 15th. We travel'd through a Hilly Country, and took 9 Hares in a few hours. After a hard Days Journey of 6 Lgs, we entred the Lordship of *Boinack*, and fixed up our Quarters near a Village of the same Name, on the ascent of a Hill, which being unaccessible to the Sea-side, we took care to Guard our Quarters with our Baggage, in the form of a Cresсent; the Lord of *Boinack* is not very Potent in the extent of his Territories, but extreamly wealthy in Cattel.

The Ambassador *Brugman* was so peevish, that he could not endure that the People should stand and look upon us, and would have had some Fire-locks to be discharged, yet without Ball, to terrifie them from thence; he was highly incens'd at those who did not think fit to execute his Command, which it was our good fortune they did not; those *Barbarians* who were daring enough, grumbling sufficiently at his dislike, and telling us in plain terms, that the Country we were in was theirs and not ours; that they were in no great fear either of the King of *Persia*, or *Czar* of *Muscovy*; and that it would be no great difficulty for them to make us repent of our haughtiness. They were so disgusted at it, that they would not permit us to fetch Water without paying for it, but finding that the Well was within reach of our Cannon, they thought fit not to dispute that point any longer with us.

The *Schemkal* also sent us word the same Night, that we should not stir thence till he had visited our Baggage; but the Ambassadors answering that they were no Merchants, but Ambassadors, and such as would maintain their Prerogative; we heard no more of him.

A Polish Ambassador kill'd.

I have been credibly inform'd since, that the *Polish* Ambassador, whom, as I told you, we met upon the Road, in our return out of *Persia*, happening to lodge in his return, at this Place, and a Quarrel arising betwixt him and the inhabitants, he was kill'd by them with all his Retinue, except 3, who made their escape to *Derbent*.

The 16th. Setting out early on our Journey, we came in very good time into the Territories of the Prince of *Tarku*, where I narrowly escaped being taken by some of those *Tartarians* as I was walking with another Person of our Retinue, at some little distance from the rest towards the Sea-side.

Come to Tarku.

We saw that Day several small Troops of *Tartars*, sometimes before, sometimes behind us, and after a Days Journey of 7 Lgs, pitch'd our Tents near the City of *Tarku* within a Lg of the Sea.

The *Chan* himself being sick, he sent his Brother and 3 other Persons of Quality to Complement us upon our arrival, in return of which we sent him our Physician, who succeeded so well in the Cure, that we had thanks return'd us by him for this favour.

He was not above 38 Years of Age, named *Surchon Chan*, deducing his Descent from the Kings of *Persia*, with whom he always liv'd in Amity. Though his Authority is very great, yet the rest of the *Myrza's* take their share in the Management of the Government, and a Nephew of his, the Son of one of his Younger Brothers, was Lord of some part of the City.

A Description of Tarku.

Tarku, the Metropolis of all *Dagesthan*, is enclosed within the Mountains by steepy Rocks, which are so covered with Shells of the bigness of a Wall-Nut-shell, that at a distance they seem to consist of nothing else; and though the Rock be as hard as a Flint, yet it affords

1638. fords very good Pasture on the top; and many delicious Springs which furnish the City with fresh Water. The City is without Walls, and contains about 1000 Houses, built after the *Persian* fashion, but not so well. These *Tartars*, as well as those of *Boinak*, and the rest inhabiting towards the N. are call'd *Kaitack*, whereas those inhabiting the Mountain behind *Tarku*, to the W. are named *Kamuk*, or *Kasukumus*, being Govern'd by their particular Lords.

The Men hereabouts are very Savage and Barbarous, but their Women and Maids pretty well civilized, going with their Faces uncovered, and not living under the same restraint as the *Persian* Women do.

A German living among the Tartars.

We met here with one *Matthias Magmar*, an ancient Man, born in the Country of *Wertemburg* in *Germany*; and being taken by the *Turks*, had been sold to the *Tartars* who had Circumcised him, yet he declared he was still a Christian, and with much-a-do could say the Lord's Prayer, and the Creed in his Native Tongue. *Surchon Chan* having almost Complemented us into a good Opinion of his Sincerity, we were afterwards convinced that we were never in greater danger, during the 5 Weeks we stay'd among the *Tartars*. We would fain have persuaded our *Mehemander* to have gone along with us to *Terki*, but he excused himself with his having strict Orders to the contrary; and whilst we were treating with the Camel-drivers, to carry our Baggage thither, he without our knowledge took them back along with him in the Night. The surprise of this sudden departure, was not a little augmented by the Relation of 2 Women, who being born *Muscovians* and Christians, and married among the *Tartars*, told us that those of *Osmin* and *Boinak* had sent word to *Surchon Chan*, that we had pass'd their Country without paying any Custom; and besides that, had threatned them, and that therefore they were resolved to be revenged on us; we seem'd not to be much concern'd at their Relation, to put the better Face upon the Matter, but as we observ'd, that not the least care was taken for our Departure, and that many Messengers pass'd betwixt them, the Ambassadors summon'd a Council consisting of all the Chief of the Retinue, to consult what was best to be done in this extremity. Some could not forbear to reflect at this Juncture, upon the Conduct of the Ambassador *Brugman*, in exasperating those Barbarians; but as past things were not to be remedied, it was resolved, as there was no hopes of escape, to sell our Lives at the dearest rate, rather than fall into the Hands of those Barbarians. We understood since, that they were really concerting Measures at that time to set upon us, and had certainly done it, had not the *Schemkal*, who thought we had a vast Treasure along with us, not prevented it, in hopes by inviting us to take another way, to get the whole Booty to himself; to effect which, he sent us word by a Messenger, that he would have us take our way over the Bridge of Boats above the City where he resided, and that if we chose any other way, he must look upon us as Enemies.

The Ambassadors in great danger.

The Messenger had no sooner done his Erand, but rising from his Seat, was going his ways without expecting an Answer, when the *Muscovite* Envoy taking him resolutely by the Arm, told him, *Friend, tell thy Schemkal, it is not his business to direct the way we are to take, which we shall chuse at our own pleasure; perhaps it may not be any hard matter for him to cut off a handful of Men, but let him know, that the* Czar *my Master, whose Honour lies at stake, will take a most dreadful Vengeance of him.* This brave Resolution brought the *Tartars* to a more pliable Temper, which having made them change their Resolution, 4 of the *Tartar* Princes gave the Ambassadors a Visit, and Din'd with them the 20th. of *April*.

These were followed by *Osmin*'s Brother, and the *Daruga* of *Tarku*, who express'd a great deal of Civility; and the latter ask'd the reason why Carriages and other Conveniencies were not provided for our Departure; he told us frankly, that we must not rely upon them, before we had made *Surchon Chan* our Friend by a Present; accordingly we sent him the next Day a Pair of Gold Bracelets, a Pound of Tobacco, a Pistol, a Fusee, a Barrel of Powder, 2 pieces of *Persian* Satin, and some Spices, which put him in so good a humour, that he not only promised the Ambassadors all what they stood in need of, for their Money, but also invited them to Dinner, and entertain'd them and 4 more of our Retinue, with 8 Dishes of Mutton, Curds, and Whitings, with the Cloath laid upon the ground, and the Carver in the middle after the *Persian* way. Our ordinary Drink was Water in Glasses, and after that *Aqua vitæ* in Silver Cups. We entertain'd them for 3 hours with our Musick, after which Meat was brought in again, and among the rest the Liver and Rump of a Sheep, which weigh'd at least 6 pound. One of the 3 Carvers that were there, after he had mine'd the Meat, serv'd it up by handfuls, all which we were fain to comply with. 1638.

A Present to Surchon Chan.

April 21st. Another *Tartarian* Prince named *Imam Myrza*, who was scarce 18 Years of Age, and *Surchon Chan*'s Brother's Son, invited also the Ambassadors to Dinner, which was served up at a Table in a spacious Hall, with Chairs round about it; our Entertainment was much better than the former, every thing being better dress't; among other Dishes there was a whole Lamb roasted, of which each took that he lik'd best, but without Knives. Their drinking Cups were made of Cows Horns, the Liquor call'd *Bragga*, is made of Millet, resembling in colour the Lees of Beer; yet they drink of it very liberally, and so they do of *Aqua vitæ*, which makes them very drunk on a sudden, when they make a most odious noise. Within a few Days after the Ambassadors were invited by *Emir Chan*, another *Tartarian Prince*, their main aim being by this means to squeeze out of them some Presents. A Tartarian Feast.

The 23d. The Waggons for our Baggage being got ready, the same were loaded in order to our Departure the next Day, but the same Evening *Surchon Chan* let us know that having received Intelligence that the *Schemkal Sultan Mahmud* lay in Ambush near the River *Koisu*, to intercept our Passage, he could not permit us to depart; towards Evening 20 *Tartarian* Horse-men well Arm'd, pitch'd their *Tents* near ours, and being ask'd what business brought them thither, they told us, that they were sent by Prince *Osmin* to the *Schemkal*, to let them know, that the Ambassadors being Friends of the King of *Persia*, and the *Czar* of *Muscovy*, he had let them pass unmolested without paying any Duties, desiring him to do the same, which the *Schemkal* had promised to do, provided they carried no Merchadices along with them.

These *Tartars* departed early in the Morning the 24th. of *April*, and soon after 2 Messengers came from the *Schemkal Sulthan Mahmud*, to know the reason why the Ambassadors did not proceed on their Journey, promising them all imaginable assistance, provided they took the way he had appointed them.

These were no sooner gone than *Surchon Chan* came in Person, to give the Ambassadors a Visit, and being ask'd by them why he would not let them prosecute their Journey, he told them that every thing was ready for it, but that knowing the *Schemkal* better than we did (who never kept his word) he would advise us rather to stay 8 Days longer, in which time he hoped to see the *Persian* Ambassador there, and that he would provide us a sufficient Convoy; but, if notwithstanding his Advice we were resolved to depart, it was left to our Discretion, provided the Ambassadors would acknowledge it under their own Hands, which upon occasion might justifie his Conduct to the King of *Persia* and the *Czar* of *Muscovy*. These insinuations put us into a greater perplexity than ever, not knowing whom we had best to trust; besides that the arrival of the *Persian* Ambassador was very uncertain; in this extremity we had Recourse to the Governor of *Terki*, desiring him to send us a Convoy of *Strelitzes*, but he refused to do it: in the mean while the Messenger which *Surchon Chan* had sent to *Derbent*, having lost the Letters which the *Persian* Ambassador *Imanculi* had given him, and the unexpected Departure of some *Armenian* Merchants, who stay'd in hopes of going in our Company, and were now retired into the City, upon a Rumour that 200 *Tartars* intended to Attack us, was no small addition to our Jealousie; besides this, the continual Rains had sunk so through our Tents and Cloaks, that we could not make any Fire, and durst not venture to dispose of our selves in the *Tartarian* Huts, for fear of being carried away, like as it happened to one of our Souldiers, a *Scotch-man*, who being gone a little too far from our Quarters, was carried by the *Tartars* to the Fort of *Sachur*, 6 Lgs from *Tarku*. Another additional Misfortune happened to our Gunner, who approaching too near the Mark which some of the *Muscovites* were shooting at with Arrows, was shot into the Belly, whereof he died the next Day, all which rendered our present Condition the most deplorable in the World, not knowing which

wa;

1638. way to turn our ſelves and to conceal our Affliction; the *Tartars* would come every Day, and deſire our Muſick to play to them, at a time when we had more need to ſhed Tears, than for Rejoycings. Being reduced to the laſt Reſolutions to venture all, we ſent *May* 1ſt. a Meſſenger to *Sulthan Mahmud* to deſire Paſſage, who returning the next Day in company of 4 *Tartars*, brought us word from the *Schemkal*, that he was much ſurpriſed at the Character *Surchon Chan* had given him, and that without any cauſe, for which he would take Satisfaction in due time; That at the ſame time he offered us all his Intereſt and Service to forward us in our Journey, and that to give us all imaginable Teſtimony of his Sincerity, he would ſend to us 3 of the Principal Men of his Dominions, whom we might take along with us, or leave as Hoſtages with *Surchon Chan* till we were ſafely paſs'd his Territories. We were notwithſtanding all theſe aſſurances, put to a great nonpluſs what to reſolve upon, but being informed that *Sulthan Mahmud* was not ſo infamous a Perſon as *Surchon Chan* had repreſented him, and having received Letters the 6th. of *May* from the *Perſian* Ambaſſador from *Derbent*, that for want of his Diſpatches, he ſhould be forced to continue there at leaſt a Month longer, we reſolved to venture at all, and having by the means of another Preſent, and Security given for the return of the Beaſts, got leave to depart, we left *Tarku* the 12th. of *May*, and after ſome Conteſt with the Waggoners, travel'd that Day, 2 Lgs through a Plain but Barren Country, to a Rivulet which parts the Territories of *Sulthan Mahmud* and the *Surchon Chan*: We were forced to be contented with Bread and muddy Water for our Supper.

May 13th. being *Whit-Sunday*, we made about 4 Lgs thro' the Woods, and had been like to have been all loſt by the way, becauſe the *Muſcovite* Envoy having Cudgel'd one of the Waggoners, the reſt were for going their ways back, but they were appeas'd at laſt, and we paſs'd the Night in the Wood without a Supper.

The 14th. We made no more than 1 Lg to the River *Koiſu*, which I ſuppoſe to be the ſame *Ptolemy* calls *Albanus*. Its firſt Spring is in the *Mount Caucaſus*, its Courſe rapid, and the Waters muddy. It was in that place about the ſame breadth as the River *Elbe*, and 20 foot deep. The River *Albanus*.

The Town of *Andre*, the ordinary Reſidence of the *Schemkal*, is ſituate upon a Hill on this ſide the River. Near it is a Spring of ſeething Water, which being conveyed into an adjacent Pool, makes it fit for Bathing. The Inhabitants live upon Fiſhing, which they perform by thruſting a ſharp Hook baited, and faſtned to a very long Pole, to the bottom of the River, by which means they catch abundance of Sturgeons and other Fiſh.

I was told of a very odd Cuſtom they obſerve at their Weddings, that every Man who is invited, ſhoots an Arrow into the Floor, which is left there till it either rots or falls of it ſelf.

They no ſooner ſaw us come towards the River, but they came with their Boats, two of which were joyn'd together, and a Hurdle laid over them to carry us over; their demand was 2 Crowns for each Waggon, which amounting to a good Summ (becauſe we had 70 of them) we propoſed to bargain with them for the Tranſportation in the whole, which they no ſooner perceived, but they got with their Boats to the other ſide of the River, where they fell a laughing at us; the *Schemkal* ſtanding at the ſame time with ſome of his Lords at the entrance of an adjacent Wood.

Being again put to a plunge, we eat our Dinner under Huts we had made of the Boughs of Trees, where our Drink was nothing but a mixture of Water with a little Vinegar.

The 15th. We had Recourſe to the *Muſcovite* Envoy, who at our earneſt requeſt, croſs'd the River, and having argued the Caſe with the *Schemkal*, he prevail'd ſo far that the *Tartars* conſented to take 40 Crowns for the Tranſportation of all the Company and Baggage. Accordingly we paſs'd the River immediately to the other ſide, on which we pitch'd our Tents, and ſtrengthened our little Camp with our Baggage Waggons.

It was not long before the *Schemkal* with his Brothers and a Train of 50 Perſons on Horſe-back came to give them a Viſit; he might be of about 36 Years of Age, very robuſt, and of a goodly Countenance; his upper Garment, under which he had a Coat of Mail, was of green Satin, over which he wore a Cloak of very coarſe Cloath; his Arms, as well as of all thoſe in his Company, were the Cymitar, Bows and Arrows. He brought along with him ſome Sheep and Lambs, but eſpecially a great Chauldron full of Sturgeon, cut into ſmall pieces, boyl'd in Water and Salt, the Sawce Freſh Butter with a little Sorrel, a Diſh ſo agreeable to me at that time, that all the Delicacies of *Perſia* never pleaſed me ſo well. We entertain'd him with our Muſick, ſome *Aqua-Vitæ*, and the diſcharge of our Artillery for 2 hours, when being got half drunk he went his ways, but return'd not long after. 1638.

We took this opportunity to preſent him with a pair of Gold Bracelets, a Silver Cup, a Scarlet Cloak, lin'd with Furr, a Caſe of Piſtols, a Sword, a Barrel of Powder, ſome *Perſia* Silk Stuffs, and ſome Goats Skins dreſs'd into Leather; He was ſo taken with the Cloak, that he put it on upon the ſpot, and preſented the Ambaſſador *Brugman* with his own, who had the Complaiſance at that time to flatter him, and to tell him that they being not acquainted in theſe Parts, at ſo great a diſtance, had not provided themſelves with Preſents ſuitable to his Greatneſs: But that now having eſtabliſhed a free Commerce with *Perſia*, they would make an ample amends for it the next time they came this way, when they would bring along with them full Inſtructions to enter into a perpetual League with him, which he did not queſtion would turn to their mutual Advantage. Theſe Flatteries had ſo powerful an influence upon the Mind of this *Barbarian*, that to haſte our Return that way, he got Horſes and Carriages ready for us at a very reaſonable Rate.

We left *Andre* the 17th. of *May*, the *Schemkal* being ſo Complaiſant as to Conduct us with 50 Horſe through a thick Wood, half a Lg from the Town, where having taken leave in a very obliging manner on both ſides, we travell'd 2 Lgs croſs a Plain to the River *Akſai*, which being but narrow here, runs yet with a very ſlow Current. The Inhabitants affirm'd to us, that it was an Arm of the River *Koiſu*, into which it falls near the Sea. We being forc'd to ſtay ſome time for the Boats and Hurdles, thoſe of *Andre*, brought upon Waggons for our Tranſportation, we did croſs it by Moon-light, paying 40 Crowns for our Paſſage. Leave *Andre*.

The 17th. After having travel'd 7 Lgs over a vaſt Heath, we left ſight of the Mount *Caucaſus*, and pitch'd our Tents at Night in a Foreſt near the River *Buſtro*, which is very muddy, and as broad, but not ſo rapid as the River *Koiſu*. It runs Weſtward, and within 5 Lgs of the *Caſpian Sea*, is ſeparated into two Chanels, one of which being call'd *Timenki* (but formerly *Terki*) has given its Name to the City of *Terki*, where it is 50 foot broad. The 2d. Chanel is call'd *Kiſilar*, from the Grains of Gold which it carries down with the Sand; it is as broad as the other, but ſo ſhallow in the Summer, that one may often croſs it dry foot. It exonerates it ſelf into the *Caſpian Sea* 8 Lgs above *Terki*.

It is very obſervable, that the Current of all theſe Rivers comes from the W. N.W. and that betwixt the River *Kiſilar* and the *Wolga*, (a diſtance of 65 Lgs) there is not any other River, which makes me conclude that the *Akſai* is the ſame River which *Ptolemy* calls *Ceſius*, that the *Buſtor* is the *Gerrus*, the *Timenki* or *Terki*, the *Alonta*, and *Kiſilar* the *Adonta*, it being certain that there are only thoſe Rivers between the *Koiſu* (*Albanus*) and the *Wolga* and *Rha*.

The River *Buſtro* being the common Boundary betwixt the *Dageſthan* and *Circaſſian Tartars*, our Waggoners could not by any means be perſuaded to go beyond it.

May 18th. We paſs'd the River with all our Baggage, and ſo entred *Circaſſia*, which tho' inhabited for the moſt part by *Pagans* and *Mahometan Tartars*, yet was it not a ſmall ſatisfaction to us, to ſee our ſelves in a Country under the Juriſdiction of a Chriſtian Prince. Proviſions, but eſpecially Meat were ſo ſcarce here, that they would ſcarce let us have any for Money, ſo that we paid above 30 Shillings for a Sheep.

The 19th. We made 5 Lgs through a plain Country full of Reeds, and pitch'd our Tents at Night upon the Heath near a Well, the Water of which was ſo muddy and ſtinking, that the Beaſts would not ſo much as touch it. We found the ground full of holes, which the Serpents had made.

The 20th. We continued our Journey for 4 Lgs together, over Heathy and Barren Grounds, to the

City

1638. City of *Terki*; on our way we saw many Serpents of the bigness of a Man's Arm, and 6 foot in length, sporting themselves in the heat of the Sun; and near *Terki* a peculiar kind of *Field-Mice*, call'd *Jerbuah* by the *Arabians*. They are near as big as a Squirrel, and not unlike it in Shape, except that they are more inclining to the black, have Heads like Rats, long Ears, the fore Feet shorter than the hindermost, which makes them unfit for running, but will leap 5 or 6 foot high from the ground, with their Tails laid over their Backs, which are long without Hair, like those of other Mice, but that they are not so big. They are in vast quantities in *Arabia*, and about *Babylon*, where they are frequently eaten by the Inhabitants.

Field Mice.

If they get into the Houses, they will carry all the Money they meet with into their Nests, as it happened to a certain *Persian* (the Father of one *Achwerdi*, who was my Servant) who having miss'd several times his Money, at last found more than he had lost, in the Nest of this Creature.

About a Mile from *Terki* we were met by the Brother of Prince *Mussal* (of whom we have had occasion to speak before) with a Colonel, sent by the *Muscovite Weywode* to Complement us upon our happy arrival; we were received and entertained in Tents without the City, with a Collation of Ginger-bread, Hydromel and *Aqua-vitæ*, whilst they were preparing our Lodgings for us in the City.

The next following Day the Ambassadors were treated with 4 Dishes out of the *Weywode*'s Kitchin; they sent to Complement the Princess *Bika*, Prince *Mussal*'s Mother; and within a few Days after, gave her a Visit in Person, din'd with her, and gave her the divertisement of our Musick

In the precedent part of this Relation, we mention'd only the *Tartars* of *Circassia*, referring the further account of them to our Return.

The *Circassian Tartars* were, as far as I ever could learn, quite unknown to the Ancient Historians, as well as to most of our Modern Authors. 'Tis true *Scaliger* makes mention of them, but in very few words, and with *Strabo* gives them the Name of *Zigi*, and assigns their Habitations beyond the Mount *Caucasus*, upon the *Euxine-Sea*, near the *Palus Mœotis*, betwixt *Asia* and *Europe*; whereas those we speak of are descended from the *Scythians*, or *Caspian Sarmatians*, inhabiting part of the ancient *Albania*, being enclosed on the E. and W. by the *Caspian Sea* and Mount *Caucasus*, to the S. and N. by the River *Bustro* and the vast Deserts of *Tartary* and *Astrachan*.

Exerc. 33. 167. & 303. Sect. 3. *Contr. Card.*

The City of *Terki*.

The Capital City of the *Circassian Tartars* is *Terki*, which since their being reduc'd under the *Czar* of *Muscovy*'s Obedience, is, as well as all their other Cities Garrison'd by *Muscovites*, the Natives being only allow'd to live in open Places and Villages, tho' the Management of the Government, but especially of the Courts of Justice, remains in the *Tartarian* Lords, who being ty'd by an Oath to the *Czar*, transact every thing of Moment, in the Presence of the *Weywode* of the Place, and in the *Czar*'s Name. Their Houses are very low and mean, being made only of Boughs of Trees, plaistered over with Earth or Clay.

The Government.

The Men are generally strong Limb'd, of a Tauny Complexion, but not quite so broad Fac'd as the *Nagajan Tartars*; they wear black and long Hair, but shave the midst of their Heads, from the Forehead to the Neck, but not above the breadth of an inch; leaving a Lock just at the Crown, which falls down behind.

Scaliger makes them the most Barbarous and Perfidious of any Nation, which perhaps might with much more reason be apply'd to those of *Dagesthan*, because the *Circassians* are much more Civilized; but this perhaps must be attributed to their Conversation with Christians, since they have been reduced by the *Muscovites*.

Their Language.

Besides their own Language, which is the same with the other *Tartars*, they make use also of the *Muscovian*.

Habit.

Their Cloaths are likewise like the rest of the *Tartars* inhabiting in those Parts, only that their Cloaks which are either of Sheeps-Skin, of very course Cloth, are somewhat larger; they are fastened at the Neck with a String; but as they are too straight to cover the whole Body, they turn them according to Wind and Rain.

Women.

Their Women have both very good Faces and Shapes, with a clear Complexion, and well coloured Cheeks. They never cover their Faces, and their black Hair hangs down in two Tresses on both sides. They wear black Coifs upon their Heads, and cover them with a piece of fine Calicoe, or Linen Cloth, ty'd under the Chin. In the Summer the Women wear scarce any thing but a Smock, which is green, yellow, or blue; they are cut so deep before, that you may look with ease below the Navel. 1638.

Their Widows have this peculiar, that a full blown Ox Bladder covered with Calicoe, or some other Stuff of divers colours hangs behind in their Necks. Their Women appear'd very familiar to us, taking particular notice of our Cloathes, and not taking it amiss, that some of our Retinue, under pretence of handling their Neck-laces of Amber, Copper, or Tin, slip'd their Hands into their Bosoms. Some invited us to their Huts, tho' their Husbands were busied abroad in the Fields, and gave us to understand, that if they were at home they would go abroad, it being the Custom of that Country so to do. They have notwithstanding this, the Reputation of being very Vertuous; one of the Officers belonging to our Retinue, being got into a familiar acquaintance with one of them, who was very handsom, having an opportunity to make tryal of her Chastity, found her impregnable, tho' she was very willing to do him divers little kindnesses, and to grant him some favours.

Are Chaste.

They are allow'd to marry as many Wives as they are able to maintain, but generally are satisfied with one; if a Man happen to die without Issue, his Brother is obliged to marry his Widow, of which we had an instance in Prince *Mussal* himself, who married his Brother's Widow.

As to their Religion, tho' they use some *Mahometan* Ceremonies, and are circumcised, yet may rather be called *Pagans*; they having neither *Alchoran*, Priests nor *Mosques*, every one offering his own Sacrifice, especially on St. *Elias*'s Day.

Their Religion.

When a Person of any Note dies, the Relations of both Sexes appoint a Meeting in the Field to perform the Sacrifice, which is a He-Goat. The first thing they do, is to try whether it be proper for the Sacrifice; to know which, they cut off the Privy-Members, which being cast against a Wall, if they stick there, they flea the Goat, and stretch the Skin upon a long Pole, before which they offer the Sacrifice; the Flesh is both boyl'd and roasted, and afterwards eat. After the Feast the Men pay their Devotions to the Skin, which done, the Women are sent home, and the Men conclude the Day with drinking *Aqua Vitæ* to that excess, that they appear rather like Beasts than Men, and rarely part without blows. The Skin remains standing with the Pole, till another is put in the place of it, which is not done till another Person of Quality dies. We saw one of those Skins near *Terki*, upon a black Cross, with the Head and the Horns on it; it was fix'd in the middle of a Quickset-hedge to keep the Dogs and other Cattel from prophaning it.

Sacrifices.

For the rest they bury their Dead with a great deal of Ceremony, Persons of Quality having Houses erected over their Tombs. That of the lately deceased Brother of Prince *Mussal*, was built of Boards of several Colours nail'd a-cross Chequer-wise, with divers Wooden Statues, but meanly done, representing the shapes of some wild Beasts on the top of it.

Their Burials.

To express their Affliction at the loss of their deceased Friends, they scratch their Fore-heads, Arms and Breasts, till the Blood follows; and sometimes they renew their Wounds, by tearing of them open again after they have been healed up.

May 21st. We began to prepare for our Departure; and bargain'd with the Waggoners of *Terki* at a Crown a Waggon, with 2 Horses a-piece, to carry us over the Desart (being 70 Lgs) to *Astrachan*, and as many *Persian*, *Turkish*, *Greek* and *Muscovite* Merchants joyned with us, that we were above 200 Waggons strong, each carrying 3 or 4 Persons. Our Allowance for so great a Journey was but very slender, consisting only in some hard Biskt, a Loaf of moldy brown Bread, and half a dry'd stinking Salmon for each Man; we made no Provision for Drink, because the Ambassador *Brugman* would not be at the Expence of hiring a Waggon to carry it, and most of us did not much urge the matter of which we had sufficient reason to repent afterwards.

We had no sooner left *Terki*, *Jan.* 4th. But got sight of that dreadful Desart, taking our way to the left from the *Caspian Sea*; it was no small surprise to us to travel 11 Days without seeing as much as a City, Village, or Hills; nay, not so much as a Tree, or Bird,

They leave *Terki*.

1638. Bird, nor any River except the *Kisilar*; but only a vast Sandy Plain, which here and there produced a little Grass, and some standing Pools of salt and stinking Water, near one of which we took up our first Nights Lodging, having made no more than 2 Lgs that Day.

The Desart of Astrachan.

The 5th. We reach'd the River *Kisilar*, and the 6th. made 6 Lgs. These 3 Days we directed our Journey to the W. N. W. and E. N. E. towards the River *Wolga*.

The 7th. We travel'd 7 Lgs thro' Fenny Grounds, which were scarce passable, and were not a little afflicted with Heat, Thirst, Gnats, Wasps, and other Insects; especially the Camels, who having no Tails, could not defend themselves against them so well as the Horses.

The 8th. We made 4 Lgs in the Forenoon, and after having refresh'd our Beasts, we made 4 more in the Afternoon; in the Evening the *Tartars* roasted one of their Horses, which they had kill'd because it was ready to drop.

The 9th. We Encamp'd after a Days Journey of 7 Lgs near a standing Pool, made by the overflowng of the Sea, but the Water was so corrupted, that we could not drink it without stopping our Nostrils.

The 10th. After we had travel'd 7 Lgs farther, we had the good fortune to meet with some fresh Water, in a small Brook derived thither from the *Wolga*.

The 11th. We made again 7 Lgs to a standing Pool of fresh Water made by the overflowing of the River *Wolga*; but its scent was so nauseous that it was unfit for drinking. This Day some *Tartars* being in pursuit of 12 wild Boars, which pass'd hard by us, the Horses of the Waggon in which the Physician, the Steward, Mr. *Uchteritz* and my self were, fell a running, so that the two first fell out of the Waggon, but Mr. *Uchteritz* and I with much a-do kept our Places till the Horses stopt.

The 12th. We made 8 Lgs, and found an Eagles Nest with 2 young Eagles not quite fledg'd.

The 13th. After a hard Days Journey of 8 Lgs, we at last came to a place within sight of *Astrachan*, and after having travel'd 3 Lgs farther the next Day, *viz.* 14th. we took up our Quarters upon the Banks of the *Wolga*, opposite to *Astrachan*; it was a wonder to behold many of our People, who had scarce tasted any fresh Water since they had left *Terki*, running up to the Knees in the River to Drink, we were no sooner arrived here, but some of our Friends came from *Astrachan* to bid us welcom, and fresh Provision being brought us at the same time, we stay'd all that Day near the River, to give leisure to the Governor to provide for our Lodgings.

They come to Astrachan.

Jan. 15th. We pass'd the River, and had our Quarters appointed us in a large Store-house without the City, near the River side; we met here with good store of Provisions sent thither by Mr. *David Rutz*, his Highness the Duke of *Holstein*'s Factor at *Muscow*. The Ambassador *Brugman* having ordered all the Baggage to be shut up in one Room, which was done accordingly; some of our Retinue were so exasperated thereat, that they forced the Doors, and took away their Chests in spite of the Centinel that was to guard it.

Jan. the last, The Ambassadors received a Present of 4 Sheep, 1 Ox, 10 Wild Ducks, 10 Pullets, 6 Geese, 1 Tun of Beer, and one of Mead from the Governor, in return of a Present they had made him before. About this time we began to be more and more sensible of the indifferent understanding that was betwixt the 2 Ambassadors, occasioned chiefly by the mismanagement of the Ambassador *Brugman*, who beginning to be sensible of the ill consequences that were in all likelihood to attend them upon his return into *Holstein*, scarce ever spoke a word at Table, except when his peryerse humour prompted him to break out into injurious Language, as it happened one Day among the rest with the Secretary, that not being able and longer to endure his vilifying words directed to him, made some Reply, at which he was so enraged, as to threaten him with his Knife, so that he was forced to quit the Table, for which affront he received afterwards Satisfaction in *Holstein* from *Brugman*: His implacable Temper reach'd even to the Chaplain of the Embassy, whom having touch'd in his Sermons upon some things that were not agreeable to him, he kept, so poorly, that he had not wherewithal to provide himself with necessary Clothes; and as he was administring the Sacrament at *Scamachie*, the *Muscovite* Envoy, perceiving him to have only a pair of Drawers under his Cassock, he offer'd to make him a Present of a Suit of Clothes, which the Minister was forced to refuse, for fear of the said Ambassador *Brugman*. Neither was it long before we had warning given us by the *Muscovian* Envoy, (unto whom he had communicated his Design) that his intention was to leave his Collegue at *Astrachan*, and to go privately with a few of his own Creatures by Land to *Muscow*, in order, as it was supposed, to trapan his Collegue at the *Czar*'s Court. Within a few Days after the said *Muscovite* Envoy left *Astrachan*, taking his way by Land, but got no sooner to *Nise*, (as we were informed afterwards) when being inform'd by some Letters writ to him from *Muscow*, that he was likely to meet but with an indifferent Reception from the *Czar*, he poyson'd himself, of which he died at the same Place.

1638.

Jan. 25th. A certain *German* whose Name was *Andrew Reusner*, provided with Letters of Recommendation from the Duke of *Holstein* to the King of *Persia*, came with a *Muscovite Caravan* to *Astrachan*, where in a little time he entred into so strict an intimacy with the Ambassador *Brugman*, that he changed his Resolution of travelling into *Persia*, in order to return with the first convenienency into *Holstein*, to manage the said Ambassador's Affairs there.

Aug. 1st. Was a great Festival among the *Muscovites*, in Commemoration of the Conquest of *Astrachan*, which was taken on the same Day 1554.

Aug. 16th. *Imanculi Sulthan*, the *Persian* Ambassador to the *Duke* of *Holstein*, made his Publick Entry into *Astrachan*.

The Persian Ambassador comes to Astrachan.

Aug. 11th. *Henry Krabs* one of our Interpreters died here, was buried in the Church-yard of the *Armenians*.

Septemb. 5th. A *Muscovian* Caravan consisting of 200 Persons, went by Land from hence to *Moscow*, which opportunity the before mentioned *Andrew Reusner* took for his Departure; part of our Retinue with some Horses, were also sent at the same time, every thing being by this time in readiness for our Departure; for which purpose the Ambassadors had bought two large Boats of 60 foot long, and 15 broad, for 600 Crowns, and hired 30 Water-men at 12 Crowns a Head, to carry them by Water as far as *Casan*. A few Days before our Departure, some *Muscovite Strelitzes* brought to the Ambassadors 2 young Girls, one of 10, the other of 7 Years of Age, to be sold, the first was the Daughter of a *Tartar* of *Trecos*, taken by the *Cosacques* at the taking of *Asson*, *Aug.* 1st. a Place situate upon the *Palus Mæotis* at the entrance of the River *Don*; the latter had been stoln not far from *Astrachan*, and being very young they had put her naked in a Bag, like a Pig; she had in her Cheeks 2 blue Marks made by her Parents to be know again upon occasion. The Ambassador *Brugman* was so Charitable as to purchase them both, one at 25, the other at 16 Crowns, and after his return into *Holstein*, presented them to the Dutchess, who had them instructed and baptized, 1642.

Much about the same time the *Persian* Ambassador bought himself a Wife for 120 Crowns, and a Horse valued at 10, though he was 70 Years of Age, but was of a vigorous Constitution, being much addicted to the use of Hemp-seed bak'd in the Embers, which they look upon as a great Restorative; but that it hinders Conception. This Lady was the Sister of a *Tartar Myrza*, our Interpreter for the *Turkish* Language being also a *Tartar*, born in those Parts, who had embraced Christianity in *Muscovy*, his Relations would fain have prevail'd with him to stay among them, offering a sufficient Ransom for him; but as he remained stedfast in his Resolution of persevering in the Christian Religion, so he was very careful in not going at any distance from the Ambassadors Quarters, for fear of being surprised, and carried away by them.

Purchases a Wife.

Septemb. 7th. The Ambassadors having divided their Retinue, each of them Embark'd in his own Boat (upon the *Wolga*) and came to an Anchor within half a Lg of *Astrachan*, there they staid till next Day for the *Persian* Ambassador, who coming up with them in three Boats, was saluted with a Volley, and so they set sail together.

The Ambassadors divide their Retinue and leave Astrachan.

The 10th. we pass'd near the Isle of *Busan*, where we saw a Guard of 50 *Strelitzes* posted to prevent the *Crim* and *Precopense Tartars* from crossing the River, which is very narrow in that place; we sent them some Bread.

The 15th. We came to an Anchor before *Tzornogar*, (call'd also *Michailo Novogorod*, from the *Czar Michael Federowits*, its Founder) about 300 *Versts* or 600 *German* Lgs from *Astrachan*.

Come to Tzornogar.

The

1638. The 24th. We reach'd *Sariza* 200 *Versts* from *Tzornogar*, and the 29th. made 40 *Versts* with a fair Gale.

To Sariza. *Octob.* 2. One of the *Persian* Boats being run a Ground, the Ambassadors got a-shore whilst she was getting off, where they Din'd, and some of the *Persians* were got so drunk with *Aqua Vitæ*, that they were forced to be carried aboard again, and one of the *Persian* Ambassador's Pages had the misfortune to be drown'd, and was not miss'd till the next Day. There also arose a Quarrel betwixt the *Persians* and the *Muscovite* Guards which might have proved of bad consequence, had it not been timely appeased by our Ambassadors.

To Saratof. By the 6th. we were advanced as far as *Saratof*, 350 *Versts* from *Sariza*. Here we understood, that a Troop of *Cosaques* had had a design to set upon the before-mentioned *Caravan* that went from *Astrachan*, but finding themselves not strong enough, contented themselves with carrying off some few *Persian* Horses.

The 14th. We were overtaken by so violent a Tempest from the S. W. that the Ambassador *Crusius*'s Boat and 2 of the *Persian* Ambassadors which carried Horses were so disabled, that with much a-do they saved the Horses, which were forced to be sent by Land.

To Samara. We set sail again the 17th. and arrived before *Samara* the 24th. 70 Lgs from *Saratof*.

Novemb. 6th. We pass'd by the Mouth of the great River *Kama*, and by Night very seasonably entred that

To Casan. of the River *Casan*, the River *Wolga* being frozen over the next Morning.

The then Governor of *Casan* was *John Basilowits Morosou*, who having opposed our Negotiation at our first coming into *Moscow*, gave us but an indifferent Reception, and sending the next Day after our arrival a *Simbojar*, to the Ambassador *Brugman*'s Boat, he ask'd them which of the two was the Ambassador, which the Merchant, which so enraged *Brugman* (who found himself so gall'd by these words) that he took the *Simbojar* by the Arm, and told him, *Go tell thy Master, that if he can't read himself, he must get one that can, to understand from the Great Dukes Pass what Quality he gives us.* But to be even with us, he made us to continue for several Days, on the River side, notwithstanding the rigour of the Season; and though by way of Complement he sent us word we might lodge in the City at our own Cost, he forbid the Inhabitants to entertain us.

Novemb. 11th. The *Persian* Ambassador, having made his Publick Entrance at *Casan*, was lodg'd in the City, and at his Intercession, we were permitted to take up our Quarters in the Suburbs on the 13.

Nov. 20th. The Ambassadors having, among other Presents, bestowed their two Boats upon the Governor of *Casan*, we met with a much kinder Entertainment afterward.

Dec. 16th. Being the Anniversary, on which the *Muscovites* keep the Festival of their Patron Saint *Nicholas*, nothing but Drinking and Debaucheries was to be seen for the space of 8 Days: The Parson of the Parish coming to my Quarters to Incense the Images, told me a strange Story of 2 Monks named *Warsinofi* and *Kursi*, whose Bodies had been found uncorrupted 40 Years ago, in the Monastry of *Syras*, in the City of *Casan*, and what prodigious Miracles they had perform'd since, by restoring Health to such sick People as came to pay their Devotions at their Sepulchres. But when I ask'd him why they did not cure the Blind and other Distemper'd People which we had seen at *Casan*, he was put to such a nonplus, that he withdrew without answering a word.

After a stay of 5 Weeks at *Casan*, till the Ice was able to bear, we continued our Journey the 13th. of *Dec.* with 60 Sledges, leaving the *Persian* Ambassador, by the Governor's Order, behind us.

They leave *Casan*, come to *Nise*. We travel'd along the *Wolga*, and came 21st to *Nise*, 300 *Versts*, or 60 Lgs from *Casan*. Here is a *Lutheran* Church, but the Minister being dead some Months before, ours Preach'd the *Sunday* before *Christmass* in their Church. The 23d. in the Afternoon, we quitted the *Wolga*, and passing over the side of the *Occa*, we came to the Village of *Kurim* the 24th. 10 Lgs from *Nise*, and travel'd 10 Lgs farther the 25th.

The 29th. We arrived at *Wolodimer* within 18 Lgs of *Moscow*, and 42 from *Nise*; the Ruins of the Walls are unquestionable demonstrations both of the antiquity and vast extent of this City.

The last Day of *Dec.* we came to the Village of *Rubossa*, 8 Lgs from *Moscow*, wherewe received Orders 1638. from the *Czar* to prepare for our Publick Entry into *Moscow*, against the 2d. of *Jan.* next, which was put in Execution accordingly; for having travel'd *Jan.* 1. 5 Lgs to the Village of *Bechra*, we made the next Day 1639. our Publick Entrance; each of the Ambassadors in a very rich Sledge lin'd with Crimson Velvet, and adorned with *Persian* Carpets, having a *Pristaf* to Conduct them; and the chief of our Retinue being mounted on 12 white Horses, out of the *Czar*'s Stables. We found the Horses and the rest of our Train Make their Entry into *Mosc.* which were sent away by Land from *Astrachan*, already there, who, as well as the whole Embassy were defrayed at the Great Duke's Charge.

Jan. 6th. We saw the *Muscovites* Celebrate the Feast of the Consecration of the Holy Water, in the Presence of the *Czar*, and the Patriarch.

The 8th. the Ambassadors had their first Private Audience which lasted above an hour, and the 9th. *Knez Juan Michaelowits*, the *Czar*'s second Son died, The *Czar*'s second Son dies. in the 8th. Year of his Age: This put the City of *Moscow* into Mourning, most Men and Women laying aside all their Jewels and Silk Apparel, and appearing only in old Cloathes, for the most part of a dark grey colour; and when the Ambassadors were admitted to their second Private Audience *Jan.* 21. they were conducted thither on black Horses, the Court was all hung in Mourning, and the Courtiers Clad in black Chamblet.

Jan. 30th. The Sieur *Uchteritz*, a Gentleman belonging to our Embassy, obtained with much ado, leave from the Ambassador *Brugman* to return into *Holstein*, under Condition nevertheless that he should carry no Letters but what he should first Communicate to him; which he promised to do, and accordingly shew'd him divers Letters of the Ambassador *Crusius*, (with his consent) but was careful enough not to let him see several others which he carried away without *Brugman*'s Knowledge.

Feb. 2. Died Mr. *Grumeauld*, a Patrician of *Dantzick*, another Gentleman belonging to the Embassy, who had travelled formerly into the *East* and *West Indies*.

The 5th. the *Persian* Ambassador, whom we mention'd before, made his Publick Entrance into *Moscow*, and on the 8th. following, was conducted to his first Audience.

The 11th. The Ambassador *Brugman* (according to his request) was admitted to a Private Audience, without the Knowledge of the Ambassador *Crusius*.

Feb. 19th. Both the Ambassadors had their Audience of Leave from the *Czar*, and the *Persian* Ambassador leaving *Moscow* the 15th. taking his way towards *Germany*, our Ambassadors did the like on the 17th. and the approaching Spring making them to fear not without reason, that they should lose the convenience of Sledges, they travel so hard, that they arrived the 28th. at *Twere*, and the 29th. at *Torsock*, a small City, which has however near thirty Churches and Chappels. They leave *Mosc.*

The 3d. They overtook the *Persian* Ambassador at *Novogrod*, and continuing their Journey the 24th. arrived the 27th upon the Frontiers of *Ingermania*, and on the last of *March* made our Publick Entry into *Narva*, being met without the City by Col. *Wrangel* at the Head of 80 Horse. Come to the *Muscovite* Frontiers.

The *Persian* Ambassador being lodg'd at one of the Senator's Houses, and the People flocking thither in great numbers, to get sight of his Wife, (a thing very unpleasing to a *Persian*) he had always a Curtain drawn betwixt the Doors and the Sledge which carried her, to prevent her being seen by any body. To *Narva*

April 6th. The Ambassadors left *Narva*, and came the 8th to *Kunda*, a Country Seat of a Senator of *Riga*, where they were forced to change their Sledges for Horses, for want of Snow, and so continued their Journey to *Revel*, where they arrived the 13th. and were received with great Splendor by the Senate; the Ambassador *Brugman* now beginning more and more to dread the event of his many miscarriages, was so unwilling to return home, that without any real necessity, we stay'd here 3 whole Months, during which time several belonging to the Embassy, and among the rest the Ambassador *Crusius* engaged themselves in Wedlock, the last marrying a Senators Daughter of that City. The Secretary of our Embassy being quite tired with the many Indignities he daily received from the Ambassador *Brugman*, took the first opportunity of a Vessel bound from thence to *Lubeck*, from whence he continued his Journey to the Court of *Holstein*. Leave *Narva*. Came to *Revel*.

July 11th. Our Ambassadors, the *Persian* Ambassador, and a *Muscovite* Envoy sent by the *Czar* to the Duke of *Holstein*, embark'd at *Revel*, and after 11 Days sail came upon the Coast of *Holstein*, near the Isle of *Femern*; and the contrary Winds hindering them from making the Harbour of *Kiel*, they were forced to cast Anchor before *Newstadt*, 2 Lgs from *Lubeck*; but being informed that a contagious Distemper reigned there at that time, they went on to *Travemunde*, where they arrived safely the 23d. of *July*. Orders being taken for the Baggage, and most of our People to continue their Voyage by Sea to *Kiel*, they travelled by Land to *Eutin*, and the 28th. being splendidly entertained by *John*, Duke of *Holstein*, Bishop of *Lubeck*, our Princes Brother, came the 30th. to *Kiel*, where having left the *Persian* Ambassador, and the *Muscovite Pristanik*, they arrived at *Gottorp* the 1st of *Aug.* where they met his Highness the Duke of *Holstein* in perfect Health, and thus put a period to their Travels into *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, and *Persia*. They Embark at *Rev.* Come to *Travemunde*. To *Eutin*. To *Kiel*. To *Hostein*.

FINIS.

THE

Voyages and Travels

OF

Mr. *JOHN ALBERT DE MANDELSLO,*

(A Gentleman belonging to the former *Embaſſy*)

INTO THE

EAST-INDIES,

In the Years 1638, 1639, and 1640.

Containing a Particular

DESCRIPTION

OF THE

EMPIRE

OF THE

GREAT MOGUL,

The Kingdoms of *Decan*, *Calicut*, *Cochim*, *Zeylon*, *Coromandel*, *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Cambodia*, *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Amboina*, *Banda*, the *Moluccas*, *Philippine*, and other Iſlands of *Japan*, the *Chineſe* Empire, the *Cape of Good Hope*, *Madagaſcar*, &c.

In Three PARTS.

John Albert de Mandelsloe's *Voyages and Travels into the East-Indies, &c.*

CHAP. I.

1638. THE Ambassadors of *Holstein* having left *Ispahan*, and being not long after follow'd by *Imanculi Eschagasi*, a Native of *Karabath*, who was sent in the Quality of an Ambassador from the King of *Persia* to the Duke of *Holstein*, I according to the Permission I had obtained from the Duke my Master, prepared for my Journey into the *Indies*, and being the 12th. of *Jan.* introduced to a particular Audience of the *Sophi*, he permitted me with much kindness to kiss the Hem of his Garment.

The Author leaves *Ispahan.* I set out from *Ispahan* the 16. of *Jan.* with a Retinue of 4 Persons, a Chirurgeon, a Footman, a Groom, and one *Persian* Servant. Being conducted out of the Town by Mr. *Honywood*, the *English* Agent, and several *English* and *French* Merchants; I took my leave of them a Lg thence, and travel'd 8 more the same Day to the Village of *Majar*, where I stay'd the next Day, and continued my Journey the 18th. to *Kamscha*, 6 Lgs thence; the whole Road being one continued Walk of Trees, made by the adjacent Gardens; the *Caravansera* I lodg'd in had nothing but bare Walls, but that wherein I was lodg'd the next Night at the Village of *Machsud*, 6 Lgs from *Kamscha*, had both convenient Lodging-Rooms and Stables.

Comes to *Majar.*

To *Kamscha.*

To *Machsud.*

The 20th. I came to the Village of *Hannabath*, seated upon the descent of a very pleasant Hill.

To *Hannabath.*

The 21st. I made 10 Lgs in very Snowy and Windy Weather, and lodg'd in a *Caravansera* named *Jurgisthan*. Betwixt this place and *Surma*, there being neither Village nor *Caravansera*, I was forc'd to travel the 22d. 12 Lgs, and the 23d. was obliged to make 12 more, before I could reach the Village of *Gusti*, where we met with very indifferent accommodations, scarce meeting with a House there we could put our Heads in, or preserve our Horses against the bad Weather; The next Day, being the 24th. proved rather worse; for being forced to travel 12 Lgs through the Mountains covered with Snow, and that in very ill Weather, we with much ado, late at Night reach'd the great and famous Village call'd *Meschid Maderre Suleiman*, from a Sepulchre which is within half a Lg of it; this Sepulchre is to be seen within a little Chapel of white Marble, the Tomb it self being erected upon a high Square of Free-stone, unto which you may go up by steps on all sides. The Air and Rains have penetrated through the Walls in several places, and divers Pillars round the Structure are almost consumed by Time; upon the Walls of the Chapel I found in *Arabian* Characters these words; *Mader Suleiman*. The general Opinion of the Inhabitants is, That this is the Sepulchre of *Solomon*'s Mother, but the *Carmelite Friars* of *Schiras* inform'd me with much more probability, that the Mother of *Schach Soliman*, the 14th. King of the Posterity of *Aly*, was interred here.

To *Gusti.*

To *Maderre Suleiman.*

Elmacin gives her the Name of *Wallada*, and that she was the Daughter of *Abbas Abbascam*; he tells us that this *Soliman* liv'd in the Year 715. and that being a very handsom Person, and viewing himself one Day in a Looking-Glass, he was so taken with himself, that he said that he might with the same right pretend to the Title of the King of Youth, as of the Kingdom; which being overheard by one of the Ladies of his *Seraglio*, she answered, That provided it was in his power to insure to himself any continuance of what perhaps he might not be able to enjoy very long, he might justly lay claim to such a Title; this struck such a damp upon his Spirits, that he died within a few Days after. We met here with an *Armenian* Caravan.

Hist. Arab. l. c. 14.

The 26th. I travel'd 5 Lgs to *Sivan*, and the 27th. as many more to *Mardasch*, one of the most famous Villages of those Parts, by reason of the Antiquities that are to be seen near it, which obliged me to take a full view of them.

They are the Ruins of a very ancient Structure call'd *Tzilminar*, i. e. *Forty Pillars* by the *Persians*, who affirm that this most Magnificent Palace was built by *Szemseid Padschal*, Grand-father to *Alexander the Great*, by the Mother-side, though some among them make King *Solomon*, others *Darius* the last *Persian* King its Founder. But the before-mentioned *Carmelites of Schiras* assured me, that it was the general Opinion of the Learned, that this was the place whereabouts the ancient *Persepolis* had stood, and that these were the Ruins of that famous Palace built by *Cyrus*. The Foundation or Ground-work on which this vast Structure was erected, is raised 22 Geometrical Feet, having at each of its four Corners a pair of Stairs of white Marble of 95 Steps, so flat and broad that 12 Horses may go up conveniently together a breast. Before you come to the main Body of the Structure it self, you pass through a Square, where you see the Ruins of a Wall, and the remainders of 2 great Gates, each of which have a Horse Harness'd and Saddled after a very antick manner, Carv'd on one side, and on the other 2 Creatures resembling a Horse, except that they have Wings on each side, and the Head is crown'd, and like that of a Lion. On the one side you see the Ruins of 19 Pillars of white and black Marble, the least of which are 8, and some 10 Ells high without the Bases, but whether they had been intended for the support of some large Hall, or were built purely in the Air is not to be distinguished at this time. The Inhabitants thereabouts told me, that not many Years before, there were 40 of these Pillars standing; as you go on further you meet with the Ruins of two Rooms, but indifferently large, as may be judged by the Doors and Windows, but every thing is of the finest polished Marble. Several Figures of Men of an extraordinary size are to be seen on both sides the Doors, some in a sitting, others in a standing posture. Their Hair are falling down carelessly over their Shoulders, and their Garments reaching down to their Heels, with very wide Sleeves, and a Girdle round the Waste. They had very long Beards, and round Caps on their Heads. Not far thence are two other Chambers, much of the same bigness as the former, but so ruin'd that nothing but the Doors and the Crossbars of the Windows are left. This Structure seems to have this common with most of the Buildings of a modern date in *Persia*, that it had many Doors, which is done here to give the more free passage to the Wind to cool the Rooms. Hard by these two last Chambers you find certain unknown Characters engraven upon a square Pillar; which have no resemblance to the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Arabian*, or any other Language, being triangular, or rather Pyramidal, not unlike Obliques. There are 12 lines of them, so well proportioned, and nicely engraven, that they have not the least footsteps in them of *Barbarism*. Some believe them to be *Telesms*, and to contain certain Mysteries. Besides these before-mentioned Rooms, there is upon the same Ground-work a large Court, 90 Paces square, with 2 Gates on each side, some of which are 6, others only 3 Paces wide. They are of the finest polish'd Marble, each of the pieces of which are 8 foot long, and 3 in breadth. You see also in another Court very curious carv'd work in Marble, Battles, Triumphs, Olympick Games; every thing in its due Proportion. Upon each of the Gates you find a graceful Person carv'd, sitting with a Globe in one, and a Scepter in his other Hand, tho' it be evident that the Kings of *Persia* never sate in that Posture.

1638. To *Tzilminar.*

Persepolis.

My Curiosity led me to get up on high, where I saw a King represented, paying his Devotions to the Sun, Fire, and a Serpent. As the Inhabitants do to this Day carry from thence a great quantity of Marble to carry on their private Buildings thereabouts, this with the length of Time has so defaced, or rather ruin'd this Noble Structure, that it is impossible to determine, whether its Architecture was of the *Ionick*,

1638. *Dorick*, or *Corinthian* Order; notwithstanding which even its Ruins are so surprising, that it is great pity that no body hitherto has undertaken the engraving of them, it being certain, that even these Remnants would find work for a very good Painter for above 6 Months. If we trace the ancient *Persian* History, we find, that according to *Ælian*, the Grand *Cyrus* laid himself the Foundation, and built a most Magnificent Palace at *Persepolis*, as *Darius* did at *Susa*; Perhaps these Ruins belong to that famous Palace mentioned by *Diodorus Siculus*, being encompass'd with 3 Walls of Marble, the first whereof was 16, the second 32, and the third 60 Ells high, and all the Gates and Balconies of Brass; All which, together with the inestimable Treasure it contained, was in a few hours reduced to Ashes by *Alexander the Great*, at the request of a Harlot.

Lib. 1. c. 59.

Lib. 17.

2 *Curtius*, l. 5. c. 7.

Having spent a whole Day in viewing these Antiquities, I continued my Journey the 28th. of *Jan.* and travell'd that Day 10 Lgs, to the City of *Schiras*. Here I met with 4 *Carmelite Friars*, *Italians* by birth, who were possess'd of a goodly Monastery, and had the free exercise of their Religion allow'd them. Not many Years before the *Portuguese* had here likewise a Convent of *Austin* Monks, but they were forc'd thence, as well as all the other *Portuguese*, after the taking of the City of *Ormus* by the *Persians*.

The City of *Schiras*.

Schiras is the Capital City of the Province of *Fars*, situate at the foot of a most pleasant Mountain upon the River *Sendemer*, (heretofore call'd *Araxes*) which exonerates it self into the *Persian* Gulph. This City lies under 29 Deg. 36 Min. Elev. It contains about 10000 Houses, but the Ruins of a great Wall at 2 Miles distance from the City, shew its extent to have been much larger than it is at this time. It may be truly said, that whatever Nature is able to produce, either for conveniency or pleasure, is centred in this place, and that in great plenty, as Wheat, Oranges, Limons, Pomgranates, Almonds, Dates, Pistacho's, *&c.* The Wine which grows hereabouts, is the best of all *Persia*, which being transported hence all over the Kingdom, and look'd upon as the best Entertainment they can give to their Friends, this makes it to be sold at a dear rate at *Ispahan*, where you can't have a Pottle of good *Schiras Scharab* under Half a Crown. Its taste is not unlike that of Canary Wine, but is more sprightly, and has a more pleasant flavour. This City being so much celebrated thro' all *Persia* for Wine and Women. The *Persians* are wont to say, that *if* Mahomet *had been sensible of the pleasures of* Schiras, *he would have beg'd of God Almighty to make him immortal there.* The Sheep hereabouts are of an Ash grey colour, with one white Eye, their Wool curled, and their Tails of such a bigness, as to weigh sometimes 18 or 20 pounds. The Woods hereabouts afford great store of Mastick, which is gathered in Dishes fastened to the Tree, and is green at first, but afterwards turns brown.

Leaves *Schiras*.

After a stay of 8 Days at *Schiras*, I left it the 5th. of *Feb.* and made 10 Lgs that Day to a certain *Caravansera*; the 6th. I travell'd 7 Lgs through very bad Roads, but the Prospect I had of many Villages, and a vast number of Date Trees, made me some amends for the toil of the Day.

The 7th. I made 10 Lgs, to the little City of *Scharim*, seated in the middle of a Date Tree Wood.

The 8th. We could make no more than 5 Lgs, the ways betwixt the steepy Rocks on one side, and the Precipices on the other side being so rough and narrow, that one can't pass them without great danger; of which I had a tryal in my Passage, for my Horses Hoof, which I was leading by the Bridle, being fill'd with Snow, he slip'd and tumbled upon me, which forcing me out of the way, I had infallibly tumbled down into the Precipice, had I not by good chance catch'd hold of a wild Almond Tree which stood there. I was forced to take up my Quarters that same Night at a *Caravansera* where there was not any Provisions either for Man or Beast.

The 9th. after I had travell'd 3 Lgs, I came to a *Caravansera* where we had the opportunity of refreshing our Horses, and having made 5 Lgs more in the Afternoon, I overtook the *Armenian Caravan* I spoke of before, at another *Caravansera*, and in their Company rode 2 Lgs farther, to the Village of *Berry*, near which I lodg'd in one of the best *Caravanseras* I met with in my whole Journey.

Berry.

The City of *Laar*.

The 10th. I travell'd through very bad ways, and came late at Night to the City of *Laar*, situate in a spacious Plain, at the foot of a Mountain; there is no Wine hereabouts, but Dates in abundance: The Air is very unwholsom here, and the Water (the ordinary Drink of the Inhabitants) very muddy, which breeds in them certain Worms betwixt the Skin and Flesh, of which we shall have occasion to speak more at large hereafter. 1638.

They say that this City owns for its Founder *Pilaes*, the Son of *Siroes*, whose Successor was *Gorgion Melech*, the first King of *Laar*, and that the 32d. Successor was one *Ebrahim Chan*, who was divested of the Kingdom 1602. by *Schach Abas*, King of *Persia*. It contains about 4000 Houses, built of Brick bak'd in the Sun; but is without any Walls or Gates: The Citadel which is built by the *Persians* since their Conquest, and advantageously seated upon a steepy Rock, is very well fortified with a Rampire of Free-stone, and commands the whole City; the Garison consisted at that time of no more than 100 Men, a sufficient number to defend it against any sudden Attack, the way which leads unto it being cut out of the Rock, and so narrow, that scarce 2 Horses can go a-breast; but they have a Magazine of Arms for 3000 Men. The worst is, that the Water within the Fort being brakish, they must, in case of a Siege, live upon Rain-water, which falls plentifully there at certain Seasons of the Year, and is preserv'd in Cisterns.

After a stay of 24 hours at *Laar*, I was going to leave it the 12th. but was stopt by the Custom-house Officers, who demanded half a *Tumain* (making betwixt 40 and 50 *s.*) for my Baggage; but having sent my Letters of Recommendation from the *Sophi* to the Governor of *Gamron*, to the Commander in Chief of the Citadel, he ordered my Departure without paying any thing, and I made that Day no less than 14 Lgs, which great Days Journey, together with the muddy Waters I had used, and the excessive heat, put me into a violent Griping and Looseness, which made me tarry in this little Village in hopes of getting a Litter, but no such thing being to be had, I was forc'd to get upon the Sumpter-horse, where I had a conveniency made to rest my Back, and so continued my Journey the 19th. to a large Village within 12 Lgs of *Gamron*. That same Evening we met here with 2 *English* Merchants, one of which was to succeed the *English* Director at *Ispahan*, who not only refresh'd my almost spent Spirits with some *Spanish* Wine, and other Refreshments, but also gave me Letters of Recommendation to an *English* Merchant of *Gamron*, desiring him to receive me into the House of their Company there, and to assist me in every thing that might conduce towards the prosecution of my Journey to *Suratte*. They continued their Journey the same Evening, whereas my Indisposition detained me till the 22d. of *Feb.* when I made 6 Lgs, to a *Caravansera*, where having rested my self a little, till the heat of the Day was somewhat abated, I travel'd 3 Lgs farther to another *Caravansera*, and found my self all that Night in a burning Fever, but there being no staying for me here, I made the best of my way to *Gamron*, where being arrived the 23d. of *Feb.* the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch* there, took such effectual care of my Distemper, which was by this time changed into a Bloody Flux, accompanied by a violent Fever, that I was pretty well restor'd in 4 Days, and found my self in a condition to pay a Visit to the Governor, unto whom I had sent *Schach Sefi*'s Letters of Recommendation immediately after my arrival there.

Leaves *Laar*.

His Indisposition.

Comes to *Gamron*.

He no sooner heard of my Recovery, but he invited me to Dinner against the 28th. and entertain'd me very courteously in the Company of several *Dutch* Merchants. The same Evening arrived at *Gamron* a Vessel from *Suratte*; of 600 Tun, belonging to the Governor of *Suratte*, she brought hither a certain Widow Queen, Mother to the King of *Golconda*, who falling in Love with her Daughter, his own Sister, would have marry'd her, but the Mother refusing to consent to such an incestuous Match, had been banish'd the Kingdom with her Daughter; who came along with her, and was, as it was reported, to be marry'd either to the King of *Persia* himself, or one of the Chief of the Kingdom.

Dines with the Governor.

March 11th. It being the *Nauruz* of the *Persians*, the Governor invited me again to Dinner upon this solemn occasion, with several *English* and *Dutch* Merchants. The same Day return'd to *Gamron* Mr. *Chapman*, whom I had met with the *English* new *President*, near *Laar*. He brought along with him another *English* Merchant, with whom I having contracted a familiar Acquaintance before at *Ispahan*, I was extreamly pleased to meet

1638. meet in this place with a Friend, in whom I could put some confidence, because the *Dutch*, tho' in outward shew very obliging to me, had opposed our Negotiation at *Ispahan*.

March 13th. I was intreated by the *English* to take up my Lodgings at the House belonging to their Company, which I did accordingly.

The 21st. One Mr. *Hall* an *English* Merchant arrived at *Gamron* with 233 Bails of Silk, valued at 150000 Pistoles, which he had received on account of the Moyety of the Custom of *Gamron*, due to the *English*, of which more anon.

The same Day my Surgeon died of a Fever, the loss of whom was no small Affliction to me, he having been a great Traveller, and attained to the Knowledge of the *Spanish*, *Italian*, *Polish*, and *East-India* Languages. As I was walking abroad one Day, to amuse my self a little, with some *English*, I met with

Lib. 9. one of those Trees mentioned by *Q. Curtius*, the Branches of which spring out of the Trunk of a Tree, and bowing down to the Earth had taken Root there, and growing up afresh, had produced a new Tree 15 or 20 foot high, which casting forth other Branches in the same manner as before, made rather a small Forest than a Tree; that which I saw being 214 Paces in Circumference, capable of affording shelter for 2000 Persons. The *Portuguese* call it *Arbol de Rays*, and is generally known by the Name of the *Indian Fig-Tree*, by reason of its Fruit, which both in bigness and the abundance of its Grains, like our common Figs, resembles that Fruit; but its taste is more unsavory, luscious, and its colour red; the Leaves of the Tree, are like those of Quince Trees.

The Indian Fig Tree.

Near the head Trunk of this Tree, we saw a small Chapel, and within, the Sepulchre of a certain *Benjan*. We found the Tomb strew'd all over with Beans of divers colours, and several Lamps, which burn Night and Day, hanging over it under a Canopy; these *Benjans* adhering to the Opinion of *Pythagoras*, that the Souls of the Deceased retreat into Beans, which Opinion is generally received among the *Pagans*, both in the *Indies*, and in *China*.

Of the Religion of these *Benjans* we shall have occasion to say more hereafter. The Guardian of the Sepulchre treated us with some Almonds, Nuts, and Dates.

April 1st. An Envoy from *Schach Sefi* being come to *Gamron*, to assure the Governor of the continuance of his Favour, I in Company of several *English* and *Dutch* Merchants, invited for that purpose by the *Chan*, saw him go unarmed a Mile out of the City, where meeting with the said Envoy, he received the King's Letter, the Garment and Turbant, with a great deal of Submission, in the same manner, and with the same Ceremonies, as has been related before in the preceding Treatise of our Embassy into *Persia*.

The City of *Gamron*, or rather *Bandar Gamron*, i.e. The Port of *Gamron*; is by the *Persians* and *Arabians* put at 25 Deg. but erroneously, its true Latitude, according to the Computation of the *Hollanders*, whose foot-steps we follow in this Point, being at 27 Deg. most of the Maps of *Persia* being hitherto very defective, which proceeds from hence, that by placing the *Caspian Sea* too high, they extend the breadth of *Persia* from N. to S. beyond its true Bounds; for they put the City of *Resecht* at 41 Deg. whereas it is at 37. so that the whole breadth of *Persia* from *Gamron* to *Resecht* is no more than 10 Deg. which plainly shews the mistake of *Boterus*, who makes the extent of *Persia* 8 Deg. whereas, if according to their own Computation, we should grant *Ormus* to be at 25 Deg. the breadth of *Persia* could amount to no more than 12 deg. It is not many Years since this City was a meer Village, inhabited by a few Fishermen, but, since the Reduction of *Ormus*, the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Indian* Ships have found out the conveniency of this Harbour, and the Traders of *Ispahan*, *Schiras*, and *Laar*, bring thither their Silk and other Manufactures, which they exchange for *European* and *Indian* Commodities.

The City of Gamron.

The true Latitude.

Its Situation. Its Situation is upon the *Persian Gulph*, the entrance at the Haven in which Ships may ride at Anchor without the least danger, at 5, or 6 fathom Water, being defended by 2 strong Castles, and a square Redoubt. The Castle is fortified with some antick round Bastions, but well provided with Artillery.

The Houses of *Gamron* are of Brick, made of a mixture of stiff Clay, Sand, shredded Straw, and Horse-dung; whereof having sett one Layer, they cover it with a Layer of Straw or Faggots, and so alternatively till they have raised it to 6 or 7 foot high; then they set it on Fire, and burn it to Brick. Their Mortar is a Composition of the same Ingredients, mixed with Salt Water, and some Lime, which becomes as hard as the Brick it self. The Houses of Note are the *Sulthan's* Palace, and the Ware-houses, where the *English* and *Dutch* are lodged, which are so near the Sea-side, that at High-Tide the Water comes up to the very Walls of them. The lower Rooms being employed for the laying up of their Merchandices, and the uppermost for Lodgings, being the most convenient for the free passage of the Air. The poorer sort cover their Houses only with the Sprigs and Leaves of Date-Trees. 1638.

The Streets of this City are very narrow, irregular, and not kept clean, which together with the excessive heat of the Climate, and the changeableness of the Winds, renders the Air very pernicious here. For in the Morning they are sufficiently sensible of the effects of a cold East Wind, which towards Noon changes to the other extream, *viz.* a very hot S. Wind; the West Wind, which blows towards Night, from the side of *Arabia*, continues the Heat of the Day till Mid-night, when a cold North Wind coming from the Mountains, introduces a sudden Alteration. Besides this, it Rains so seldom here, that 1632. they ordered a Publick Thanksgiving for a plentiful Shower of Rain, after a continual Draught of 3 Years.

Its Streets and Air.

A great Draught.

This is the reason that all about the City you see not any thing of Grass, or other Herbs, except what is produced with incredible labour in some Gardens, where they have Garlick, Onions, Chibols, Radishes, and Cucumbers, but these must be watered twice or thrice a Day.

It is the Isle of *Kismisch* which chiefly furnishes this City with all manner of Pulse and Fruits; it lies 3 Lgs from the Continent of *Gamron*, being 15 Lgs in length, and 3 Lgs in breadth.

The Isle of *Kismisen*.

In *June* and the rest of the Summer Month this Isle produces Grapes, Damascens, Peaches, Mangoes, Quinces, Oranges, Limons, and Pomgranates both red and white; and in *October* Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, Radishes, Onions, Turneps, Almonds, Pistachoes, Apples, Pears, and divers other Fruits, and that in such vast Quantities, that they are sold here at an easier rate than at any other place in all *Persia*. Whence it comes that the Inhabitants feed, for the most part, upon Pulse, Fruits, and what Fish the Neighbouring Sea furnishes them with; the Meat hereabouts being, by reason of the excessive heat, not very well tasted, and of little Nourishment; though otherwise they have sufficient store of Cattel, such as Oxen, Cows, Sheep, but especially of Goats, which are sold at the rate of 6 or 8 *s.* a-piece. They have here also a kind of Rams with 4 Horns, but no wild Fowl; among other Fish, Pilchards, Smelts, Oysters, and Crabs are catch'd here in vast Quantities. Their ordinary Drink is fair Water, which being brought into the City 2 Lgs thence, is very dear sometimes; the drink also *Aqua Vitæ* made of Rice, or Dates. Persons of Note, and the best Merchants have their Cloathes after the *Persian* Mode, but the Common People take no further care than to cover their Privy Parts; the Women look upon it as their chief Ornament, to have many Rings of Silver, Brass or Iron, according to their respective Abilities, about their Arms and Legs; to their Hair, which hangs down over their Fore-heads, they fasten a kind of a Bodkin of Silver gilt, or Brass; and wear in the left Nostril of their Nose a Gold Ring, with a Turquoise, a Granate, or perhaps only a Gold Knobb, enamel'd or plain; their Pendants are so weighty, as to draw their Ears down almost to their Shoulders.

The Traffick of *Gamron*.

Their Winter Season being betwixt *October* and *May*, when the Heats are less violent, this is their chief time for Trading, when the *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Banjans*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, *Tartars*, come thither with the *Caravans*, which set out at certain times from *Aleppo*, *Bagdat*, *Ispahan*, *Schiras*, *Lahor*, *Herat*, and *Bassora*, under the Convoy of certain *Janizaries*.

The *English* and Dutch commonly come thither by Sea, and besides their ready Money, bring divers Commodities both out of *Europe* and the *Indies*, which they exchange for *Persian* Tapistry, Raw Silk, Cotton, Rhubarb, Saffron and Rose-water, which is made in vast quantities about *Schiras*, either by Infusion which they call *Gull-ab*, and look upon it as the best; or by Distillation, and this they call *Areka-gull*, i. e. the Sweat of Roses; both kinds are much used all over the *Indies*, where they mix it with Perfumes and use it

1638. it to sweeten their Rooms with. Here is also abundance of Callicoe made, in portable Looms, which the Weavers fasten to a Tree, or some other place without the City, and having finish'd their Days work, carry it home again without any trouble, being composed only of Canes, fastened to the Woof of the Cloth.

Their Coin. They have here a certain Copper Coin which they call *Besorg*, 6 whereof make a *Peys*, 10 *Peys* a *Chay*, which is equivalent to 5 Pence *English*. Two *Chays* make a *Mamoudy*, 2 whereof make an *Abas*, and 3 *Abas's* a *French* Crown, 100 *Mamoudy's* make a *Tumain*, which is worth 5 *French* Pistoles: But *Spanish Rials* and *Rix-dollars* are prefer'd before all the other Coins in *Persia*, by reason of the advantage they make of them in melting them down.

Weights. As to their Weights a *Man* is 6 Pound, a *Muncha* 12, and the *Mansurats* 30 Pound.

Pearl Fishing. The Pearl-Trade is also one of the chiefest at *Gamron*, which are taken near the Isle of *Bahram*, 6 Lgs from this City. The Fisherman's Head is enclosed in a Bag of boil'd Leather, which has a Pipe reaching up above the Water to fetch breath through; he rakes together all the Shells he meets with at the bottom, and having fill'd his Bag, which hangs about his Neck, at a certain signal given by him, he is drawn up into the Boat which waits for that purpose.

The King of Persia's Officers at Gamron. The Governor of *Gamron* has the Dignity of *Sultan* annexed to his Office, and has under him a *Visir*, or Secretary, and a *Couteval*, or Captain of his Guards. Besides these there is a *Sabandar*, or a Receiver of the Customs; tho' the *Hollanders*, pursuant to a Privilege granted them by *Schach Abas*, pay none; and the *English* are so far from paying any Duties here, that they ought to have one Moiety of all that is received here, (upon what account shall be shewn anon) but are forced to be contented with one tenth part; the *Persians* not looking upon it as the least Crime to defraud any Strangers, especially if they be Christians, of their Due, when their Princes Interest is concern'd.

Persian Horse much valued in the Indies. As the *Persian* Horse are incomparably better than the *Indians*, the *English* as well as the *Dutch*, pay 50 Crowns Custom for every Horse they Export; however the *English* have the Privilege of Transporting 12 Horses yearly without paying any Custom for them; an indifferent *Persian* Horse being worth 400 Crowns in the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants of *Gamron* are, generally speaking, *Persians*, *Arabians*, and *Indians*, who all speak the *Portuguese* Language, which had been introduced into those Parts, whilst the *Portuguese* were Masters of *Ormus*; tho' ever since the Conquest of it by the *Persians*, they are not permitted to come to *Gamron*, which is open to all other Nations, *Christians*, *Jews*, *Pagans*, and *Mahometans* being permitted to Traffick here; which is the occasion they live in open Hostility with the *Persians*, take their Ships as Prizes, and frequently land in the Neighbouring Islands; unto one of which, about 3 Lgs off the Continent, the King of *Spain's* Subjects are permitted to command Traffick, paying certain Duties, to the Governor of the Castle that Commands the Island.

The Island and City of Ormus. The City of *Ormus* is seated in an Island of the same Name, about 2 Lgs from the Continent, and 6 Lgs in Circumference, being composed of nothing but Salt Rocks, not producing the least fresh Water: But in the advantage and goodness of its Harbour and Situation, which makes it so famous for Commerce, that it was said as a Proverb among the *Arabians*, that, *if the World were a Ring*, Ormus *ought to be considered as the Diamond of it.*

According to *Texeira*, *Schach Abas*, a Native of *Arabia*, having in the 10th Age made himself Master of the Provinces bordering upon the *Arabian Gulph*, pass'd over into that Island, where he built the City of *Ormus*. *Schabedin Mahomet*, of the Posterity of *Mahomet*, the 11th. King of *Ormus*, died 1228. and he who Reign'd 1608. when it was Conquered by the *Portuguese*, was named *Seyfadin*, a Tributary to the King of *Persia*.

How Conquered by the Portuguese. For *Albuquerque* having been sent from *Zocotora* to visit the Coasts of *Arabia*, being inform'd that the People of *Ormus* lived in no good understanding with their King, by reason of the Mismanagement of his Chief Minister, came the 25th. of *Septemb.* before that City, and after having defeated their Fleet, obliged the King of *Ormus* to acknowledge the King of *Portugal* for his Sovereign, to pay a certain Tribute, and permit *Albuquerque* to build a Citadel where he should think fit most proper, which was perform'd accordingly, and the Citadel call'd *Our blessed Lady of Victory.* 1638.

The *Moors* soon after repenting of their Bargain, made several efforts to rid their Hands of these unwelcom Guests, but they being constantly upon their Guard, not only frustrated all their Designs, but also engross'd all the Commerce of those Parts to themselves, only permitting *Seyfadin* to live in the Isle at a good distance from the Citadel.

Schach Abas being provoked by their Insolence, and especially by their having given Protection to a certain *Italian* named *Gabrieli*, who was fled out of *Persia*, engaged the *English* to joyn with him in reducing this Place, which was Attack'd and Carry'd 1622. and put into the Hands of the *Persians*; the Walls of the City being demolish'd and carry'd to *Gamron*, which was there raised upon the Ruins of *Ormus*; and the *English* as a Reward of their Service, had not only an exemption of all Duties granted them at *Gamron*, but also a Moiety of all the Customs that should be received there.

By this time an *English* Ship call'd the *Swan*, Burthen 300 Tuns, carrying 24 Guns, being arrived in the Harbour of *Gamron*, bound for *Suratte*, Mr. *Honywood*, the Chief *Agent* for the *English* Company, recommended me to the Captain, to carry me and defray all my Charges thither. But that that proved very vexatious to me, was that of 8 Horses, which I had brought along with me, and could have sold for 150 Crowns a piece at *Suratte*, I could carry no more than 2, being obliged to sell the rest at *Gamron* for half what they cost me.

The Author Embarked for Suratte. Accordingly I Embark'd the 6th. of *April*, with Mr. *Manley* and Mr. *Hall*, 2 *English* Merchants, and went from *Gamron* to *Suratte* in 19 Days, during which time I was very civilly entertained by the Captain, who resign'd his own Bed to me, and being well provided with Fowl, Mutton, good Sack, *English* Beer, *French* Wine, and other Refreshments, this with the use of *Ptisane* made with Cinnamon and the Rind of Pomgranates, and of a good quantity of *Thee*, restored me entirely to Health. The Wind proving contrary that Day, we were fain to lie at Anchor till the next, when we took our Course toward the Isle of *Ormus*, but being surprised by a Tempest from the West, were forced to come to an Anchor in sight of this Island.

The 8th. We endeavoured by labouring with a W. Wind to pass betwixt the Isles of *Ormus* and *Kismisch*, which are 4 Lgs distant from one another; the same Day one of our Seamen, who died of the Bloody Flux, being thrown over Board, and I being as yet afflicted with the same Distemper, the sight of it caused divers melancholy speculations in me. The next following Night having pass'd betwixt the 2 fore-mentioned Islands, we coasted it along the Sea-shore of *Arabia*, which is very safe thereabouts.

The 10th. Being detain'd there by a Calm, we left the said Coast the 11th. and made over to that of *Persia*, which we kept in sight all that Night; but the 12. we steer'd our Course with a W. N. W. Wind to the E. S. E. at 25 Deg. 50. Min. Elev.

April 13th. Being in the open Sea, we discovered a Pirate, who sometimes came pretty near us, but finding we endeavoured to get the Wind of him, he made towards the Isle of *Zocotora*; situate at 21 Deg. 40. Min. at the very entrance of the *Red Sea*: To the S. W. and N. E. it has *Melinda*, or *Ethiopia*, and to the S. the Continent of *Arabia*, from whence it is not above 16 Lgs distant; its length is about 25th Lgs and the breadth 10, having very good Harbours and safe Anchorage on all sides. The Inhabitants, who are govern'd by a *Sultan* under the Jurisdiction of the King of *Arabia*, are of a mean Stature, inclining to leanness, of a black Complection, but very hardy; they feed chiefly upon Fish and Fruits. They live very friendly with their Wives, who are for the most part *Arabians*, but permit them not to be seen by Strangers. As they are very Crafty in their Dealings, and adulterate those few Commodities they have, so they are always mistrustful of others. They use the Paste of Dates instead of Bread. The Island affords some Oranges, but none of the best; Tobacco, and Citruls; as also some Cocoa Trees, but the Fruit seldom comes to Maturity, by reason of the Stony Grounds.

The Isle of Zocotora.

The Aloes of Zocotora. Their chief Commodity is Aloes, the Juice of which is gathered in Bladders or Goat Skins, dry'd in the Sun. They are also well stor'd with the Gumm call'd Dragons Blood, and keep abundance of Civit Cats;

10

1638. so that Civit may be bought here for 3 or 4 Crowns *per* Ounce, but the worst is, that they adulterate it with Grease; they have no wild Fowl, and very little Tame, yet are not destitute of Cattel, such as Camels, Asses, Oxen, Cows, Sheep and Goats, the Hair of which about the Thighs are curl'd, as our Satyr, are painted. The Residence of the Governor is call'd, *Tamary*, being defended by a Fort not above a Cannon shot from the Sea-side.

Their Arms. They make use of broad Swords, with large Hilts, without a Guard. Their Ponyards, which they wear constantly on their Girdles, have Blades of 3 inches broad near the Hilt, but very sharp towards the Point. They also understand the Management of Fire Arms, but don't keep them well, and are very expert in the use of their small Bucklers, wherewith they defend themselves against their Enemies.

They have no other Shipping but a few flat-bottom'd Fisher-Boats. The Waters which fall down from the Mountains into the Sea like a River, furnish all the Ships that come into that Road with sufficient fresh Water. They eat no Swines Flesh, no more than all the other *Mahometans*, but have no *Mosques*, or any other Publick Places of Devotion, which consists chiefly in adoring the *Sun* every Morning and Evening, and the rising and setting of the *Sun*, which they repeat 3 or 4 times a Day, besides muttering out certain words as they make their Reverence.

The 14th. of *April* we were at 23 deg. 24 min. the 15th. at 22 deg. 40 min. and the 16th. at 22 deg. 40 min. the 17th. at 21 deg. 55. min. when our Captain fell sick of a Fever: The 18th. at 21 deg. 8 min. the 19th. at 20 deg. 42 min. the 20th. at 20 deg. 50 min. the 22d. 20 deg. 50 min. the 23d. at 20 deg. 18. min. and the 25th. arrived safely in the Road of *Suratte*, where we cast Anchor 2 Lgs from the Shore, because the Captain not intending to stay long here, would be sure of the Convenience of going away when he pleased; besides that from *May* to *September*, there is no safe riding at Anchor in this Road, by reason of the frequent Tempests, whereas on the Eastern Coast of the *Indies*, in the Gulph of *Bengala* the Season is very fair and calm all that time. For it is to be observed, that the Year here has only 3 Seasons; for in the Months of *February*, *March*, *April* and *May* it is excessive hot; in *June*, *July*, *August*, and *September* it does nothing else but Rain, with Thunder and Lightning; and the Months of *October*, *November*, *December*, and *January*, are cold, as far as is consistent with that Climate.

Come to *Suratte*.

Three Seasons of the Year.

April 26th. The Captain having sent advice of his arrival, the chief Director of the *English* Company at *Suratte*, sent 2 young Merchants on Board us to come to *Suratte*, so that after having shew'd my acknowledgment to him for his many Civilities by a small Present, I left the Ship the 29th. and were no sooner entred the River *Tapte* or *Tynde*, upon which *Suratte* lies, but we had a very agreeable Prospect of a very fertile Soil, and many pleasant Gardens and Summer-Houses, all white (a colour much affected by the *Indians*) and surrounded with green Trees. It is so shallow at the entrance, that it will scarce carry a Bark of 70 or 80 Tun. We landed near the *Sulthan's* Palace, and from thence went straightways to the Custom-House, to have our things search'd, which is done with so much rigor here, that they even spare not your Cloathes or Pockets. And what is worst, the *Sulthan*, nay, the Chief Custom-House Officers have a Custom to oblige Strangers to part with any thing they like best, at such a price as they themselves please to afford; accordingly the *Sulthan* having espied an Amber Bracelet and a Diamond among my things, would needs cheapen them both, but I telling him that as I was no Merchant, so I intended not to sell them, but to keep them for the sake of those that had presented them to me; I sav'd my Diamond, but he would needs take the Bracelet, under pretence, that he would restore it to me whenever I should honour him with a Visit. By this time the *English* Chief Director having sent his Coach drawn by two white Oxon, I went to the House belonging to their Company, at the entrance of which I was received by the Director himself, and his Deputy, one Mr. *Fremling*; as the Director understood *Dutch* very well, he acosted me in that Language, telling me, that in such a Country as this, he thought all Christians were obliged to give assistance to one another, but that to me he was obliged to do it more particularly, in return of the affection I had express'd to some of his Country-men at *Ispahan*. Having returned the Complement, I was conducted into a Room where a Collation of Fruits and Preserves was ready for me; we were no sooner sat down, but having understood that my intention was to return to *Germany* within 12 Months, he invited me very obligingly to stay with him 5 or 6 Months, because that no more Ships would come in that Road this Year, advising me to spend what time I had, in viewing the Country, and offering his Recommendation to the *English* Merchants living in those Places, through which I was to pass. His obliging expressions engaged me to choose my Chamber in the same House, next to that of the Deputies, and in the Evening divers Merchants came thither to conduct me to Supper in a spacious Hall, where I found the Minister and about 12 Merchants more; after Supper the Minister brought me into an open Gallery, where we found the Director and his Deputy (who were not accustomed to Suppers) taking the benefit of the cool breezes of the Sea Air, which was our ordinary Rendevouz after Supper; at Dinner we had commonly 15 or 16 Dishes, besides the Desert. Every thing was carried on in this House with an extraordinary good Order and Decorum. We had twice Prayers every Day, and *Sundays* 3 times. 1638.

The Order and Diversions of the *English*.

On *Fridays* after Evening Prayers, we had a certain Club, where we drunk our Wives and Friends Healths beyond the Seas, in *Sack* or *Pale Punch*, being a mixture of *Aqua Vitæ*, Rose-water, Juice of Citrons and Sugar.

At our ordinary Meetings we as well as the *Dutch* were entertain'd with *Thee*, instead of which the *Persians* use *Coffee*.

The English have a very fair Garden without the City, where we used constantly to take a walk on *Sundays* after Sermon, and oftentimes on other Days; our Exercise was shooting at the Butt, and I made a shift to get near 5 *l. Sterling* a Week among them; we seldom went away without a good Collation, and often bathed our selves in a Cistern, which had 5 foot water. My chiefest affliction was, that not understanding the *English* Tongue, I could not converse with any of them to my satisfaction, except with the President, who spoke *Dutch*: But before I proceed to give you a further account of what I observed at *Suratte*, and in my Voyage, it will not be beyond the Scope, to give you a short view of the *Mogul's* Country.

A Description of Indostan.

The Country which properly challenges the Name of *India* (call'd *Indostan* by the *Persians* and *Arabians*) begins on the West-side from the River *Indus* or *Sindo* and reaches to the River *Ganges*. It was known among the Ancients by the Name of *Carmania*, and it hath a Haven call'd *Guader*, 25 deg. on this side the Line. The *Persians* and *Indostnans* themselves have given the Name of *Pangah*, i. e. *Five Waters* to the River *Indus*, because it is joyn'd with so many Rivers before it exonerates its self into the Sea. The first is the River *Bugal*, or *Begal*, whose Sourse is near *Kabul*; the 2d. is call'd *Chanab*, which rises in the Province of *Quesmir*, or *Cassimier*, 15 Days Journey to the North, above *Lahor*. The 3d. is that of *Ravy* or *Ravee*, which rises not far from *Lahor*, and runs by it. The two others, *viz.* the Rivers *Via* and *Osuid*, have their Sourses at a vast distance, their Confluence being near *Bakar*, which lies at an equal distance betwixt *Lahor* and the Sea. Some Authors have confounded this River with that of *Diul*, and placed it at 24 deg. on this side the Line. The vast Empire of the *Great Mogul* borders to the East upon the Kingdom of *Mavy*; to the West upon part of *Persia* and the South Sea, on the North side it is enclosed by Mount *Caucasus* and the *Great Tartary*, and to the South it has the Kingdom of *Decan*, and the Gulph of *Bengala*. It comprehends in all 37 Provinces, which anciently were as many Kingdoms.

The Province of *Candahar* which has given its Name to the Capital City, borders upon *Persia*; as the Province of *Kabul* has received its Name from its Metropolis; it borders upon the *Great Tartary*. Here rises the River *Begal*, of which before. The Province of *Multan* with its chief City of the same Name extends along the River *Indus* to the East, as the Province of *Haca Chan*, or *Hangi-Chan* has the same River to the West. *Bachar*, or *Bukar*, lies on both sides of the River *Indus*. The Province of *Tatta* is a congeries of many Islands made by the same River. *Soret* is a small Province extending from the Sea-side to the East as far as the Province of *Guzarata*. The Province of *Iselmere* is enclosed betwixt the Provinces of *Soret*, *Bachar*,

1638. *char*, and *Tatta*. The Province of *Attach* is seated upon the River *Nibal*, (which falls into the *Indus*) and is by it divided from the Province of *Haca-chan*. That of *Pangab* (so called from the 5 before mentioned Rivers that pass thro' it) is the chiefest of all the Kingdom; its Capital City is *Lahor*. The Province of *Chismer*, or *Quexmer* lies upon the River *Bezat*, or *Badt*, which after it has made a vast number of Islands in this Province, joyns its Current with the River *Ganges*. The Province of *Bankisch* borders to the East upon that of *Chismer*, and the Province of *Jengapar*, or *Jemipar*, lies between the Cities of *Lahor* and *Agra*. The hilly Province of *Jemba*, or *Jamba*, borders to the West upon that of *Pang-ab*. The Province of *Delly* lies between that of *Jemba* and *Agra*, not far from the Province of the River *Gemini*, or *Semana*; which passes by the City of *Agra*, and afterwards falls into the *Ganges*; the Capital City bearing the same Name with the Province, was formerly the Metropolis of all *Indosthan*. The Province of *Bando* hath on the West side the City of *Agra*. The Province of *Malway*, or *Malwa*, has for its Capital City *Ratipore*, within half a Lg of the River *Cepra*, which falls into the Sea in the Gulph of *Cambaja*. The Province of *Chitor* borders to the East upon that of *Candisch*, and to the South upon that of *Guzuratta*; it was formerly a very flourishing Kingdom, its Metropolis bearing the same Name with the Province, being 60 Lgs in compass, which was laid desolate by the *Great Mogul*, *Achabar*, Great-grandfather of *Schach Chiram*. The Province of *Guzuratta*, (call'd *Cambaja* by the *Portuguese* from its Capital City where they drive a considerable Trade) is one of the Noblest and most Powerful Provinces of all the *Mogul's* Country, of which more hereafter. The Province of *Candisch*, the Metropolis whereof is *Bursampour*, or *Brampour*, is divided from the Country of the Prince of *Partaphà*, a Vassal of the *Great Mogul*, by the River *Tabet*, or *Tipte*, which disembogues in the Gulph of *Cambaja*. The Province of *Berar* extends to the South to *Guzuratta*, and the Mountain of *Rana*. The Province of *Gualor*, or *Gualiar*, is famous for the Tower or Castle, whither the *Mogul* commonly sends his Prisoners of State, and lays up part of his Treasure. The Province *Agra* (of which more at large hereafter) and its Metropolis unto which it has imparted its Name, claims now-a-days the Precedency before all the rest. The Province of *Sambel*, or *Sanbel*, is divided by the River *Gemini*, which falls into the *Ganges*, from that of *Narvar*. At the Confluence of these two Rivers near the City of *Hallebasse*, they make a kind of Isle, which has given the Sir-name of *Doab*, i. e. *Interaquas* to this *Province*. The Province of *Bakor* extends along the Western Bank of the *Ganges*; as that of *Narvar* is divided by a very large River, which joyns its Current with the *Ganges*. The Province of *Nagracut*, or *Nakarkut*, is one of the most Northern Provinces of the *Mogul's* Dominions. Its chief City bears the same Name, where in a sumptuous Chapel (the Floor whereof is covered with Plates of Gold) is kept the Figure of a Monster call'd *Matta*, unto which the *Indians*, who flock thither from all Parts, offer a little Snip, which they cut out of their Tongues. Near the City of *Kalamaka*, belonging to the same Province, arises a certain Spring out of the Rocks, which casts forth Flames, and for that reason is reverenced by the Pilgrims that come thither from all Parts. The Province of *Siba* is famous for the Sourse of the River *Ganges*. Both this and the Province of *Nakarkut* are very mountainous, as well as that of *Kakares*, which is divided from the *Great Tartary* by the Mount *Caucasus*. The Province of *Gor*, which is also very mountainous, gives its rise to the River *Perselis*, which joyns its Current with the *Ganges*, as does the River *Kunda*, which divides the Province of *Pitan*, or *Partan*, bordering to the W. upon that of *Jamba*. The Province of *Kandnana*, which together with that of *Gor*, are the most Northerly Provinces of the *Mogul's* Dominions, extends on both sides of the River *Iderelis*. The Province of *Porena*, being enclosed betwixt the 4 Rivers of *Ganges*, *Perselis*, *Gemini* and *Kandach*, is very fruitful. That of *Jewal*, is famous only for its chief City call'd *Rajapour*, or *Rajapor*. The Province of *Menat*, a barren Country, extends from the *Ganges* to the East. That of *Voessa*, or *Voeza*, is the uttermost Province to the East. The Province of *Bengala*, which imparts its Name to the Gulph, into which the *Ganges* exonerates its Waters, challenges one of the first places among all the rest under the *Mogul's* Jurisdiction. It is subdivided into several Provinces, the chiefest of which are *Puna* and *Palan*, which have formerly been dignified with the Title of *Kingdoms*. 1638.

Texeira (a) mentions a certain Province call'd *Utrat*, but gives us no more than the bare Name; and what he says of the Kingdom of *Cacche*, *viz.* that it lies near *Cambaya* to the North, and is famous for the excellent breed of Race Horses it produces, can be understood of no other than the Province of *Candisch*. (a) Descr. Pers.

The whole extent of the *Mogul's* Territories is from E. to W. 600 *French* Lgs, and from N. to S. 700, its uttermost Frontiers to the S. being at 20, and to the N. at 43 deg.

The Province of *Guzuratta*, (call'd *Cambaja* by the *Portuguese*) lies westward along the Sea-side in the form of a Peninsula, having on each side a Gulph or Bay, one whereof is 8 Lgs broad at the entrance, and grows narrower and narrower for 40 Lgs thence; it is bounded to the North by the Provinces of *Soret*, *Quismer* and *Bando*, to the E. by those of *Chitor* and *Bando*, and to the S. by the Kingdom of *Decan*; though its extent was much larger formerly, yet does it comprehend above 20000 Cities, Towns, and Villages; the chiefest thereof laying near the Sea-side are, *Suratte*, *Broitschia*, *Gandeer*, *Goga*, *Cambaja*, *Dieu*, *Patepatane*, *Mangalor*, *Gondore*, *Nassary*, *Gandivi*, and *Balsara*. It has 3 noted Rivers, *viz.* the *Nadabat*, which passes near *Broitschia*, the *Tapta*, and the *Wasset*, two of the best Harbours of the *Indies*, viz. that of *Suratte* and of *Cambaja*. The Province of Guzuratta. Its Rivers and Ports.

For Fertility this Province may also challenge the Precedency before any of the *Indies*, most of the circumjacent Provinces being supply'd thence with Fruits and Provisions; tho' the great Drought in 1640, and the ensuing Rains did almost lay this Province desolate; which however it has sufficiently recovered since. But it is time to return to our Relation. Fertility

The *Persian* Servant whom I had brought along with me from *Ispahan*, being born of *Christian Georgian* Parents, had given me some hopes of returning to the Christian Faith, which was the reason that I treated him with more than ordinary Civility, and allow'd him 4 Crowns Wages *per* Month; but I was much surprised to understand that the young Fellow, in hopes of getting better Preferment, by the assistance of an Uncle of his, who was Master of the Horse to the *Mogul*, was gone to *Agra*, and could not but be perswaded that his intention of leaving me thus on a sudden, was in part to betray me into the hands of the *Indians*, he being not ignorant of what had happened betwixt them and our People at *Ispahan*; but I had great reason to admire God's Providence in sending him as it were on purpose thither to save me, for without him I had certainly been lost at *Agra*, as will appear by the sequel of this Relation.

In *May* we received News at *Suratta*, that the *Chan* of *Candahar*, dreading the *Sophi's* anger, had revolted and surrendred the Place to the *Mogul*, who had sent 500000 Crowns as a Reward for him and the Garrison. *Candahar* surrendred to the *Mogul*.

June the 16th. we went a hunting with a *Dutch* Merchant and another *Englishman*, cross the River to a Place call'd *Reniel*, where the *Dutch* have a Warehouse, and being nobly treated there that Night, went the next Day to a Village call'd *Bodick*, there we kill'd divers wild Ducks, and a Heron; we saw also a good number of Deer with grey Skins, but chequered all over with white spots; their Horns were very fair, and had several Brow-antlers. Some were inclining to a dark brown, chequered likewise with white spots, with very fine Horns, and of the bigness of our Roe-Bucks. Some are of Opinion that they are a kind of *Cervi-capras*, which produce the *Bezoar*; all the Fields have a small Dyke raised about them here to keep in the Water, the Rice requiring abundance of moisture. Here we also drunk some *Terry*, a Liquor they draw out of the Palm-Tree, by making an incision in the Bark on the top of the Tree, unto which they fasten an Earthen Vessel into which the Liquor distils; it is very sweet, but soon turns sower. Palm Wine.

The City of *Surat*, or *Suratta* it self lies at 21 deg. 42 min. upon the River *Tapta*, which arising near *Barampour* disembogues into the Sea, 4 Lgs below *Suratta*, which is built four square upon the very Banks of the River. It has no Fortifications on the River-side, but is provided with a good Stone Rampier on the Land-side, and the Castle is all of Free-stone. The City of Surat.

It has 3 Gates, one leading to the Village of *Brion*, the second to *Barampour*, and the third to *Nassary*. All the Houses are flat on the Top, and have generally fair Gardens. Its Gates and Houses.

The

1638. The Castle has no more than one Gate, which looks into the great Market-place; not far thence is the Governor's Palace and the Custom-house; the Governor of the Castle has not the least dependance on the *Sulthan*, whose business is the Administration of Justice, and to look after the Customs; all Merchandises imported or exported, pay 3 and a half *per Cent.* here, except Silver coin'd or uncoin'd, which pays no more than 2 *per Cent.* Both the *English* and *Dutch* have very fair Houses, call'd *Lodges*, well provided with Chambers, Halls, and Galleries.

The Castle.

The Port of *Suratte.*

The Harbour of *Suratte* is about 2 Lgs from the City, near the Village of *Suhaly*, where Ships are unladen, and the Commodities brought thence to *Suratte*, by Land Carriages. The Haven lies at 21 deg. 50 min. upon the Course of N. E. and S. W. The Entrance is narrow, and at High-water not above 7 fathom deep, at low but 5; the Harbour it self being not above 500 Paces broad, a sandy bottom, with sharp and steepy Banks, which are almost dry at Low Water; it is however safe Anchoring here, there being no danger, but from the S. W. Wind, except from *May* to *September*, when there is no abiding here, by reason of the furious Tempests.

Its Inhabitants.

Most of the Inhabitants of *Suratte* are either *Benjans*, *Bramans*, or *Moguls*; the last are more respected than the rest, as being *Mahometans*, and that they always apply themselves to Arms, as on the contrary the *Benjans* make Traffick their chiefest business, and are much addicted to Religion; of whom we shall have occasion to say more hereafter. Besides these, some *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Armenians*, *Turks* and *Jews* inhabit here, but the most considerable of all Foreigners here, are the *English* and *Dutch*, who have their Setlements, Directors, Merchants, and Clerks here; especially the *English*, who have made this the chief Place of their Traffick in the *Indies*; all the other Factories they have at *Agra*, *Ispahan*, *Masulipatan*, *Cambay*, *Amadabat*, *Brodra*, and *Broitschia*, having a dependance on that of *Suratta*, and being obliged to be accountable to their Chief Director residing in this City; and there is scarce an *English* Ship which either going or coming into those Parts does not touch at *Suratte*.

The chief Factory of the *English.*

The Circumjacent Country.

The Country round about this City, is very delightful, being adorn'd with a vast number of Gardens and Fruit Trees, and among the rest I observed hereabouts one of those Trees, the Branches of which take root a-fresh in the ground, mentioned in the Description of *Gamron*. Among other things I saw a large Cistern of Free-stone eight square, having at each Angle a pair of Stairs, and in the midst of it a most sumptuous Sepulchre of its Founder; this Cistern is so large, that it supplies the whole City with Water.

About the 14th. of *Sept.* then the Tempest began to cease, 2 *English* Ships arrived in the Port of *Suratte*, call'd the *Discovery* and the *Mary*; the first 600 Tun burthen, 28 Guns, and 190 Men; the 2d. of 1200 Tun, carrying 48 Guns; we were very generously entertain'd aboard them for 8 Days together, our constant Employment being to go ashore every Day a hunting, and to return aboard by Night.

Several Ships arrive at *Suratte.*

The 24th of the same Month arrived two other Ships, one a *Dutchman* of 1400 Tun, bound from *Batavia* for *Holland*; the other an *English* Vessel call'd the *Swan*; we were likewise very generously entertain'd aboard them, the *Dutch* Vessel being both the biggest and best contrived of any Ship that ever came out of *Holland*. With these and such like Divertisements I pass'd my time pleasantly enough at *Suratte*, but understanding that it would be several Months before the *English* Ships would be ready for their Departure, I resolved to take the opportunity of a certain *Caravan*, sent by the *English* to *Amadabat*, under a Convoy of some *English* Souldiers, to take a view of the *Great Mogul*'s Court.

The Author leaves *Suratte.*

Thinking my self thus sufficiently guarded against the *Rasbootes*, (a Gang of *Tories* and *Robbers* inhabiting the Mountains betwixt *Brodra* and *Broitschia*) I left *Suratte* the last of *Sept.* and joyning with the *Caravan*, we took our way towards *Broitschia*, crossing the River at the Village of *Brion* 4 Lgs thence, we pass'd by *Cattodera*, and afterwards by *Enklisser*, where we kill'd abundance of wild Ducks, and other Waterfowl, as also a Roe-Buck, Deer, and wild Boors being in such a plenty hereabouts, that one need not be long in want of Provisions, especially at this time, when we had a good Cook along with us. Before we came to *Broitschia*, we cross'd a broad, but shallow River, and were no sooner arrived, but the *English* Secretary invited us to Dinner. 1638.

The City of *Broitschia* lies at 21 deg. 56 min. 12 Lgs from *Suratte*, and 8 from the Sea-side; upon a River which coming out of the Mountains, is the common boundary betwixt the Kingdom of *Decan*, and that of *Balagatta*. As it is situate upon a steepy Hill, and is provided with Walls of Free-stone, it is accounted one of the strongest Fortresses of all the *Indies*. It has two large Gates to the Land-side, and as many lesser ones upon the River; all Merchandices that pass through it pay 2 *per Cent.* It is very well Peopled, but for the most part with Callicoe Weavers, who make the best here of any in the whole Province; the Fields for 6 or 7 Lgs round the City are very flat, which, as well as the Mountains beyond them to the S. W. call'd *Pindatsche*, are very fertile in Rice, Wheat, Barley and Cotton. These Mountains produce abundance of *Agat*, which is so much celebrated in *Europe*. Four Lgs below the City the River dividing it self into 2 Branches, which after they have made an Island of 2 Miles in Circumference, disimbogue into the Sea by 2 different Channels. Eight Lgs beyond *Broitschia*, upon the way leading to *Cambaya* is the Village of *Jambuysar*, or *Jambousser*, famous for the great quantity of *Indigo*; and in the way to *Amadabat* is to be seen the Sepulchre of a certain *Mahometan* Saint, whither they come on Pilgrimage with Pad-locks on their Mouths, and Chains on their Arms, till they have perform'd their Vows.

Leaves *Broitschia.*

We left *Broitschia* in the Evening, and travel'd all that Night, and part of the next Day, till the excessive heat oblig'd us to seek for Refreshment near a standing Pool, where we pass'd the Remainder of that Day, and, part of the Night following; we continued our Journey about Mid-night, taking our way through the Villages of *Karawanet*, and *Kabol*, where they made us pay certain Passage Money.

Comes to *Brodra.*

The 17th. of *Octob.* we came to *Brodra*, where the *English* Merchants that belong'd to our *Caravan*, and my self were lodg'd, and most nobly Entertain'd in the *English* Lodge, and among the rest had the Divertisement of the Women-Dancers, who being mighty curious to see my Cloathes made after the *German* Fashion, would fain have had me strip'd my self naked, offering to do the same, which I refusing to do, they went away discontented.

A Description of *Brodra.*

The City of *Brodra* is seated in a large sandy Plain, upon a small River call'd *Wasset*, about 15 Lgs from *Broitschia*; It was built of late Years by *Rasia Ghie*, Son of *Sultan Mahomet Begeran*, the last King of *Gusseratta* out of the Ruins of the old *Brodra*, which was half a Lg thence. It is indifferently well fortified after the antick way, and has five Gates, one whereof is damm'd up. The City, but especially the Western Suburbs, are for the most part inhabited by Callicoe-Weavers, Dyers, and other Workmen belonging to that Manufactury; which are made somewhat narrower here, and the Pieces shorter than at *Broitschia*. The Governor of *Brodra* has no less than 210 Villages under his Jurisdiction, 65 of which are assign'd for the Payment of the Garison, and the other 135 allotted for Pensions to certain Officers belonging to the *Mogul*'s Court.

Lacque.

Among these there is a certain Village call'd *Sindickera*, which produces every Year 25000 Pounds of *Lacque*; this *Lacque* is a red Gum which comes from a Tree resembling our Plumb-tree, which being dry'd, and beaten to Powder, they give it what colour they please, and make it into sticks to seal Letters with, or for Lackering of Cabinets, Boxes, *&c.* This Country affords also abundance of *Indigo*. I went the same Day to rejoyn the *Caravan*, which I found at the Corner of a Grove of Coco-trees without the City, and one of the *English* Merchants of *Brodra* would needs accompany us as far as *Wasset*, an old ruin'd Castle upon a very high Mountain, where is kept a Garrison of 100 Horse, who being to be maintain'd out of the Customs paid there, which amounted to 4 each Waggon, but we having a Pass from the *Mogul*, and consequently not thinking our selves obliged to pay it, this occasion'd a Contest betwixt them and us, which was very likely to have ended in a bloody Engagement. For we forcing our way, and having cross'd the River where we staid that Night, they would have attack'd us, but a *Dutch Caravan* coming to our assistance, after the exchange of some Small Shot, the matter was compos'd, and the Garrison forced to be contented with a Present of 3 Crowns. Thence we pass'd 2 Lgs and a half further

1638. through the Village of *Ammenoygii* and 3 Lgs and a half further through that of *Sejuntra*; and so to the small City of *Niriad*, or *Niriaud*, 9 Lgs from *Brodra*.

Comes to Niriad.

Octob. 11th. We arrived at *Mamadebath* a small City situate upon a pretty large River, 5 Lgs from *Niriad*; the Inhabitants are *Benjans*, who maintain themselves by making of Cotten-Thread.

To Mamadebath.

Octob. 12th. After we had travel'd 5 Lgs and pass'd in our way by *Canis*, *Barova* and *Issempour*, got safe to *Amadabat*. We were met in a fair Garden within half a Lg from the City, by Mr. *Benjamin Roberts*, the chief Merchant of the Factory there, who carried me in his Coach, drawn after the *Indian* Fashion, by two white Oxen, which were as mettlesom as the best Horses, into the City, ordering the 2 *English* Merchants that were my Fellow-Travellers, to tarry there for the coming up of the *Caravan*.

To Amadabath.

The *Indian* Oxen as mettlesom as our Horses.

The *English* Lodge is a very fair Structure, in the very heart of the City, fitted with very convenient Apartments, and divers Courts for the disposal of Merchandices. Mr. *Roberts* gave me a Collation in his own Chamber, which look'd into a Flower-Garden, and was very richly furnish'd. We Supp'd in a very spacious Hall, where the *Dutch* Head Factor with some of his Merchants, came to pay us a Visit; after he was gone, I was conducted by the whole Company into my Lodging-room, which I had chosen my self; Mr. *Roberts* kept me Company there till Midnight, and to give me all imaginable diversion, sent for 6 Women-dancers of the Country, telling me that if I lik'd any thing in them besides their singing and activity, I might command it, which Civility I refused with a Complement; they were mightily taken with my Cloathes and Hair, and would scarce be persuaded but that I was a Woman in disguise.

Two Days after my noble Host carry'd me in his Coach to view the City; the Market-place, call'd *Meydan-Schach*, or the *Royal Market*, is at least 1600 foot long, and above 800 broad, Planted all about with Palm and Date Trees, intermix'd with Orange and Citron Trees, whereof there are also many in the Streets, the sight, smell, and shadow whereof are very desirable and pleasant. There are besides these 4 *Basars* or Publick Places for the sale of Merchandices.

The *Meydan*

Not far from the *Meydan* we saw a House built of Brick, which is the King's Palace, the Apartments were sumptuously furnish'd, and adorn'd with many Pictures, more remarkable for the diversity of colours, than any exactness of proportion, according to the *Indian* way; Over the Gate of this Palace, was a large Balcony for the Musick, consisting of Violins, Haut-Boys, and Bagpipes, to play there 3 times a Day, *viz.* in the Morning, at Noon, and Night, a Custom observed in most of the *Mahometan* Countries. The Walls of the City were tolerably well built, with 12 Gates, and many Towers, but the Ditch, which is 16 fathom broad, was ruin'd and dry in several places.

The Castle.

We also took a view of the Castle, which is very large, and built altogether of Free-stone.

The great Mosque of the Benjans.

The Chief *Mosque* of the *Benjans*, is one of the finest Structures that ever I saw, it being but lately built then; and stands in the Center of a vast Court, surrounded with a very high Wall of Free-stone, all about which is a *Piazza*, divided into Cells, in each of which stands a Statue either white or black, representing a naked Woman sitting with her Legs under her, according to the Eastern Fashion. Some of these Cells had three Statues, *to wit*, a great one betwixt 2 little ones.

As soon as you enter the *Mosque*, you see two Elephants of black Marble, done to the life, and upon one of them the Effigies of the Founder, a rich *Benjan* Merchant named *Santides*. The *Mosque* is vaulted, and the Walls adorn'd with the Figures of Men, and other living Creatures. There was not the least thing to be seen within the *Mosque*, except 3 Chapels, which were very dark, and divided only by Wooden Rails, wherein were placed Statues of Marble like those in the Cells, the middlemost having a Lamp hanging before it. We saw the Priest busie in receiving from such as were performing their Devotions there, Flowers, Oyl, Wheat and Salt; with the first he adorn'd the Images, his Mouth and Nose being covered with a piece of Callicoe, for fear of prophaning the Mystery by the impurity of his breath; the Oyl was intended for the Lamps, and the Wheat and Salt for the Sacrifice. He muttered out certain Prayers over the Lamp, and wash'd ever and anon his hands in the smoak of the flame, out of an Opinion they have, that Fire having a greater Power of purifying than Water, they may without offence lift up their Hands to God. 1638.

Amadabat, the Capital City of all the Province of *Gusuratta*, is seated upon a small River, which not far thence joins its Current with the River *Indus*, at 23 deg. 32 min. on this side the Line, 18 Lgs from *Cambaya*, and 45 from *Suratte*. It comprehends in its Circuit (including the Suburbs) near 7 Lgs: Its Streets are very spacious, and its private Buildings and *Mosques* very Noble, especially the Governor's House. The *Mogul* keeps constantly a good Garrison here, to bridle the *Badures*, a sort of People living not above 25 Lgs distant thence, who make frequent Incursions into the Country. It may safely be said that there is scarce any Nation in the World, or any Commodity in *Asia*, but may be seen in this City, where there is also a vast Manufactury of Silk and Callicoes, as also of Gold and Silver Brocades, but they are slight and dear, which is the reason the Inhabitants use much of *China* Silks, which are both finer and cheaper.

A Description of Amadabat.

At the time of my being there, they had invented a new kind of Stuff of Silk and Cotton with Gold Flowers, which was sold at 5 Crowns *per* Ell; they also deal much here in Sattins, and Velvets, Taffatas, Carpets, Sugar, Candy'd or in Powder, Cummin, Honey, Lacque, Opium, Borax, Ginger, *Myrobalans*, or *Indian* Plumbs dry'd and preserv'd, Preserves of all sorts, Salt-Peter, *Sal Armoniack* and *Indigo*. They also sell Diamonds here, which are brought thither from *Visiapour*, and Ambergreece and Musk, which they have from *Pegu*, *Bengala*, *Mosambique*, and *Cabo-verde*, and is sold here at 8 Crowns *per* Ounce Some would have the Ambergreece to be the Seed of the Whale congeal'd, but without the least probability; others would make it the Product of certain Sources of Mines like the *Nafte*, but with as little likelihood of truth, it being certain that it is found no were but near the Sea-side, and grows like our Mushrooms at the bottom of the Sea, whence it is torn off and cast ashore. *Peter de la Brouk* (*a*) assures us that in his time there was found a piece of Ambergreece at *Cabo-verde* near the Mouth of the River *Gambi*, which weigh'd 80 pounds, of which he bought a piece.

Its Commodities.

Musk and Ambergreece.

(a) His Voyage to Angola, Guinea, and the Indies.

The Musk is by the joynt opinion of all Naturalists, the product of a certain Protuberance or swelling rising about the Navel of a certain Animal which some make only of the bigness of a Fox, others like a Roe-buck. Some call this Creature *Gazela*. But the greatest conveniency of Traffick at *Amadabat* is, that the *Benjans* having a general Correspondence in all parts of *Asia*, even to *Constantinople* it self, which makes Trading by way of Exchange, both very easie and advantageous; add to this the Exemption from all Customs of all Merchandices imported or exported, the King's Receiver having no more than 15 pence, by way of Present for every Waggon, and the liberty allow'd to all Strangers to deal in what Commodities they pleased, except that the Exportation of Gun-Powder, Lead and Salt-Peter, without the Governor's Licence is forbidden, which is soon obtain'd by a small Present.

The City of *Amadabat* having under its Jurisdiction 25 large Towns, and 2998 Villages; its yearly Revenue amounts to above 6 Millions of Crowns, which the Governor disposes of in the maintaining of a certain number of Souldiers for the King's Service, and for the clearing of the High-ways, which are very unsafe hereabouts.

Its Revenue.

The *Couteval*, or his Deputy commands under him, and has the Administration as well of the Government, as of the Courts of Justice in Conjunction with the *Kasi*, or Judge of the Place.

Among divers noted Sepulchres which are near this City, is that of a certain *Kasi*, built by a King of *Gusuratta*, in the Village of *Zirkees*, a Lg and a half from the City. The whole Structure is of Marble, being sustained by 440 Pillars, 30 foot high, within which are to be seen the Tombs of three Kings that were buried there. At the entrance of it is a large Cistern full of Water, the Wall about it having several Windows on all sides, and about a Lg thence there is a very large and fair Garden and House, the work of the *Mogul*, *C. on Chimaum*, built in memory of a Victory obtained by him over the last King of *Gusuratta*. About a Lg and a half on the other side of the City we were shewn another Sepulchre, erected in Memory of a certain Moor, a rich Merchant, named *Ha-*

The Sepulchre of a Kasi.

Jam

1638. *jam Majom*, who being in love with his own Daughter, and having by fraudulent means obtained the *Kasi's* consent, would have married his Daughter, but she refusing to comply, he ravish'd her, for which he had his Head cut off, whence it is call'd to this Day *Betti Chuit*, i. e. *thy Daughters shame discovered*. A little way without the City of *Amadabat*, you may discover the vast Mountains of *Marva*, extending above 70 Lgs towards *Agra*, and above 100 towards *Onyen*, where the *Rasgai* (or Prince) named *Rana*, had his Residence in the Castle of *Gurchitto*, among the inaccessible Rocks, so that the joint Forces of the *Mogul*, and the King of *Pettan* were scarce able to reduce it. The *Pagan Indians* retain still a great Veneration for that Prince, who as they say, was able to bring 120000 Horse into the Field. In the Mountain betwixt *Amadabat* and *Trappe* lives such another Prince, who by reason of the inaccessibleness of the Woods and Deserts, maintains his Soveraignty against the *Mogul*; and the *Rasgai* (Prince) of *Ider*, tho' he is his Vassal, yet oftentimes refuses to execute his Commands.

Among many noble Gardens which are about this City, that of *Schach-bag*, or the *King's Gardens* in the Suburbs, call'd *Begampour*, claims the Precedency, being enclosed with a noble Wall, within which stands a very fair Summer-house, very richly furnished. I pass'd thence over a very fine Stone-bridge 400 Paces in length, into another Garden, call'd *Niccinabag*, i.e. the *Jewel*, which they say is the work of a beautiful rich Lady. The House as well as the Garden, is not so remarkable for their bigness, as the most admirable Prospect it has from the descent on which it lies, into a fine Champagne Country; it has a very large Fish-pond, which during the Winter Season is supply'd with Water by the Rains, but in the Summer Season it is fill'd out of certain deep adjacent Wells, the Water of which is drawn up by certain Engines, turn'd by Oxen. You can scarce ever come into this Garden, but you will find some Ladies bathing themselves there; they would not allow the *Indians* to see them, but gave us the freedom to come in and to talk with them. The whole Country round *Amadabat*, and the City it self, is so full of Gardens and Trees, that at a distance it resembles a great Forest.

There is among other remarkable things here, a Walk very straight, and Planted with a double row of Cocoe-trees on each side, which reaches to a Village 6 Lgs from the City; but that which reaches from *Agra* to *Barampour*, 150 Lgs in length, surpasses this without all comparison. These vast numbers of Trees are the receptacles of prodigious multitudes of Apes, some of which are as big as Grey-hounds, yet will rarely assault any body, unless they be provoked. They are generally of a brown colour, inclining to a mixture with green, with white long Beards and Eye-brows; they multiply beyond what can be imagined, because the *Benjans*, who are more numerous here than the *Mahometans*, believing the Transmigration of the Soul, and looking upon these Creatures as having the greatest resemblance in all respect to Mankind, are so far from killing them, that they cherish them. Hence it is that you shall see the Apes come in great numbers into Peoples Houses; for I remember that at one time I counted no less than 50 together in the *English* Lodge; and I used to give some Almonds and Dates to 2 or 3 of them, which made them duly attend every Morning at my Chamber-door, in expectation of their Breakfast, which they would take out of my Hand; sometimes I used to catch hold of one, which made the rest snarle, till I had let go their Companion again.

These Trees also harbour abundance of wild Fowl, and an incredible number of Parrots of all kinds, the biggest of which are called *Indian* Crows, being all white, or of a Cream colour, with a Tuft of Feathers of a Carnation colour on the Head. They are so common all over the *Indies*, that they build their Nests under the Eaves of Houses, as our Swallows do. But the lesser sort of Parrots build their Nests in the Woods, on the extremities of the top Branches of the Trees; and tho' they do much mischief to the Fruits and Rice, the *Benjans* look upon it as a crime to hinder them from eating, no more than they do to the wild Ducks, Herons and Cormorants, of which there are abundance in this River. Having had occasion to speak of them before, I will only add in this place, that they will swallow Mussels till being opened by the heat of the Stomack, they cast them out again, to eat the Fish.

This Country also abounds in all kinds of wild Fowl, and Venison, but Fallow-Deer, Roe-Bucks, *Ahus's*, or wild Asses, wild Boars, and Hares are in vast plenty here; and as they are sufficiently stored with tame Creatures, such as Bufflers, Oxen, Cows and Sheep, and that the River furnishes them with Fish in abundance, I scarce know any place in the World where a Man may indulge himself with more ease than here. The only thing they want is Wine, but instead of that, generally make use of the Liquor of the Cocoe-tree, and their Water is most excellent; besides that out of Rice, Sugar and Dates, they make a kind of *Aqua Vitæ* with exceeds that made in *Europe*: But as they are sufficiently furnish'd with beneficial Creatures, so they have their share of others that are as mischievous.

1638.

Another of an Incestuous Father.

The Mountains of Marvas.

Schach-bag Garden.

An Alley of Trees of 150 Leagues.

errors.

Cormorants.

owl and enison.

Tame Creatures and fish.

They want Wine.

Crocodiles.

30 foot long.

A Crocodile with a Woman in his Belly.

(a) *Nat. Hist.*

Serpents.

Bats as big as Crows.

Crocodiles are found here in abundance, which often surprise Men in the River, where they lie lurking among the high Grass; I am positive that those in the Ditches of *Pegu*, were of above 30 foot long, they did such prodigious mischief, that scarce a Day pass'd, but some or other were kill'd by them; notwithstanding which, the *Benjans*, who believe that such as are devoured by them, go straightways to Paradise, will not destroy them. The King having ordered one in particular, which did more mischief than all the rest, to be kill'd, they found a Woman with all her Cloathes in his Belly. They lay about 28 or 30 Eggs which they cover in the Sand, where being hatch'd, they kill most of the young ones, without which they would multiply infinitely. *Johnston.* (*a*) tells us that near *Panama* in the *West-Indies* are *Crocodiles* of 100 foot in length, but I will ingeniously confess that of all that I saw, none were above 12 or 15 foot long; the Scales on their Backs being Musquet proof, they must be wounded in the Belly.

This Country produces also abundance of Serpents, and Snakes, and among the rest some with 2 Heads, as they told me, tho' I must confess I never saw any of them; which induces me to imagine, that this Error has been introduced by such as have seen Serpents, which, contrary to the Nature of all Reptiles, were as big towards the Tail as towards the Head. The Woods are likewise full of Lions, Leopards, Tigers and Elephants: But the most troublesom Creatures all over the *Indies*, are a certain kind of Bats, as big as our Crows, nay, some of our Hens; which obliges the Country People to keep constant watch in their Gardens.

The City of *Amadabat* is obliged to maintain out of its Revenues 12000 Horse and 50 Elephants, who stand under the Command of their *Sulthan*, who has the Quality of *Rasgai*, or Prince annex'd to his Dignity. *Areb-Chan*, a Person of 60 Years of Age, was Governor of this City at that time, and, as I was credibly inform'd, had amass'd a Treasure worth 50 Millions of Crowns. Not long before my arrival, his Daugher was marry'd to the *Mogul*'s second Son, when her Father at her departure sent her with an Attendance of 20 Elephants, and 1000 Horse to Court, besides 6000 Waggons loaden with Riches. His Attendance consisted of 500 Persons, 400 of which were his Slaves, dieted at his own Charge, the Expence of his House-keeping amounting to 5000 Crowns a Month, not including his Stables, where he maintained constantly 500 Horses, and 50 Elephants for his own use. The Chief of his Attendants were generally sumptuously clad, tho' he himself seldom wore any thing but Callicoe, except when he appeared in Publick, when he was carried in a rich Chair of State upon an Elephant, being attended by a Guard of 200 Men, with many *Persian* Led Horses, and Standards and Banners before him.

The City of *Amadabat*'s Wealth.

His Expence.

Octob. 18. I went with an *English* Merchant to pay a Visit to the *Chan*, whom we found in a Tent looking into a Garden; having understood from the Merchant that Curiosity had only led me into that Country, he ask'd my Age, and I having told him that I was 24 years old, 3 of which I had already spent in Travelling, he wonder'd at my going abroad so young, as well as at my Habit, which I still wore after the *German* Fashion; after an hours Discourse, I was entertain'd with a very noble Dinner, serv'd up after the *Persian* way, and at parting he was pleased to tell me in the *Turkish* Language, which I had told him I understood pretty well, *Senni dahe kurim*, i. e. we shall see you again.

The Author Visits the *Sultan*.

Being encouraged by this obliging Invitation, we went the 20th. a second time, when having changed my Cloathes according to the Mode of the Country, I found him very well pleased with it; we found him

A second Visit to the *Chan*.

1638. in the ſame place, buſie in diſpatching ſome Orders, and taking a view of certain Companies of Horſe and Foot, which made us take our leave of him, but he would needs make us ſtay to Dine with him. His Diſcourſe run much upon *Schach Sefi*, concerning whom he ask'd me ſeveral Queſtions, and eſpecially whether he continued ſtill in his Cruelties, unto which I having anſwer'd, that his Age had moderated much of his youthful extravagant Temper; he reply'd, that Tyranny and Cruelty was an Inheritance to him, derived from his Grandfather *Abas*; and that that was the only reaſon why lately the *Chan* of *Candahar* had put himſelf under the *Mogul*'s Protection. He then was for exaggerating the prodigious Wealth of the *Mogul*, in compariſon of that of *Perſia*, asking my Sentiment upon that ſcore, unto which I reply'd, that it muſt be confeſs'd that the Wealth I had ſeen in the *Great Mogul*'s Country, was without Compariſon much greater than what could be expected in *Perſia*; but that on the other hand, it muſt be acknowledged that *Perſia* had one thing, which was to be valued above all the Riches of the World, *viz.* that great number of brave *Kiſilbachs*, with whoſe aſſiſtance he might be able to conquer all *Aſia*. Knowing the *Chan* to be a *Kiſilbach* by deſcent out of the Province of *Schirwan*, I ſaid this on purpoſe to pleaſe his fancy, which took ſo well with him, that he not only agreed to what I ſaid, but alſo told ſome of his Officers that ſtood hard by him, *I believe this Young Gentleman is brave, becauſe he ſpeaks ſo advantagiouſly of thoſe that are ſo.* His Diſcourſe with the Author.

After Dinner we took our leave of the *Chan*, who would have ſtaid us, and given us the Entertainment of the Women Dancers, but he being call'd aſide about ſome earneſt buſineſs, and we not very eager to ſee more of what we had ſeen ſo often before; we return'd his offers with a Complement. For the reſt the Governor was a Perſon of extraordinary Judgment, but very rigorous in his Government; one Day having invited the 2 Chief Directors of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to Dinner, and deſirous to give them the Diverſion of the Women Dancers, they came accordingly, who according to the cadence of the Haut-Boys and Timbrels, danced with great activity through Hoops, with great variety of Poſtures; which done, he ſent for another Band of the ſame Gang; but thoſe being employ'd elſewhere in the City, ſent an excuſe, that being ſick they could not come; but the *Chan* not thus contented, he ſent a ſecond time, ordering his Servants to bring them along with them, who returning without them upon the ſame pretence, he ordered them to be Cudgel'd immediately. Theſe poor Wretches finding themſelves in ſuch danger, caſt themſelves at the *Chan*'s Feet, acknowleding that it was not any ſickneſs, but the hopes of Lucre that had made theſe Women refuſe to obey his Commands; at which he laugh'd, but immediately ſent ſome of his Guards to fetch them, who no ſooner had brought them into the Room, but he ordered their Heads to be cut off immediately, which was executed in an inſtant. The Governor perceiving that the Strangers were ſtartled at this Severity, fell a laughing, and told them, that if he ſhould not by ſuch Examples maintain his Authority, he ſhould not be long Governor of *Amadabat*. His Character.

Octob. 21. I left *Amadabat* in the Company of a young *Engliſh* Merchant, and travell'd that Day to the Garden of *Tſchichbag*, of which more anon. The Author leaves *Amadabat*.

The 22d. We made 7 Lgs, to the Village of *Serguntra*, and the 23d. 5 Lgs further, to *Cambaya*, where I was lodg'd and very well accommodated at the Houſe of a certain *Mahometan*, the *Engliſh* Head Factor being from home. The City of *Cambaya* lies 16 Lgs from *Broitſchia*, upon ſandy Grounds near the River, which makes there a great Bay, into which the River *Mey* exonerates it ſelf. The Haven is none of the beſt, for, tho' at High-water there be 7 fathom depth, yet at Low Tide the Ships are almoſt ſwallowed up in the Sand and Mud. It has a very fair Wall of Free-ſtone, with 12 Gates, large Houſes, ſtraight and very broad Streets. It is 10 Lgs in Compaſs. A Deſcription of *Cambaya*.

The Inhabitants are *Pagans*, *Benjans* and *Rasboutes*; the laſt of which apply themſelves to the exerciſe of Arms, as the *Benjans* do to Commerce. Their chief Trafficks is at *Achim*, *Dio*, *Goa*, *Mecca*, and into *Perſia*. Taking a Walk out of the City, I ſaw there among ſeveral other very curious Gardens, one, that for its ſituation and proſpect to the Sea, on one ſide, and into the faireſt Champagne Country that could be, to the Land ſide, deſerves the Precedency of any that ever I ſaw before, it was ſurrounded by a very high Wall, which had within its Compaſs 2 very fine Structures, and in the midſt of the Garden was the Sepulchre of a *Mahometan*, who was the Founder of it. Whilſt I was contemplating the Tomb, ſome *Engliſh* Merchants came in to reprove me for the affront I had put upon them, as they interpreted it, of preferring a *Mahometan* Houſe before theirs, to lodge in; and as a reparation ask'd me to go along with them to morrow morning, to a place where an *Indian* Widow was to burn her ſelf, her Husband who was a *Rasboute*, having been kill'd 200 Lgs thence. We went accordingly to the place of this voluntary Execution, near the River ſide, where we ſaw the Woman, who was ſcarce 20 Years of Age, coming up with ſo cheerful a Countenance, as is ſcarce to be imagined. It is to be obſerved, that the Governor, who was a *Mahometan*, and conſequently would willingly quite aboliſh this barbarous Cuſtom of the *Pagans*, had for a long time oppoſed her Reſolution under pretence that her Husbands death might be uncertain at ſo great a diſtance, in hopes that time might make her change her Reſolution; but finding her immovable, he at laſt gave his conſent. 1638.

In the Front of the Proceſſion march'd the Muſick, conſiſting of Haut-Boys and Timbrels, theſe were followed by a good number of Maids and Women, dancing and ſinging before the Widow, who was dreſt in her beſt Apparel, and had many Rings and Bracelets on her Fingers, Arms, and Legs; in the Reer came a confuſed multitude of Men, Women and Children. She had waſh'd her ſelf before in the River, and coming near the Funeral Pile, which was made of the Wood of Apricock-trees, mixt with ſome Sanders and Cinnamon, ſhe ſtop'd a little, and looking over it with a great deal of careleſneſs, took her laſt farewel of her Kindred and Friends; I was very near on Horſe-back, and ſhe perceiving perhaps in my Countenance, that I had compaſſion of her, ſhe caſt me one of her Bracelets, which I keep to this Day, diſtributing the reſt among her Friends. So ſoon as ſhe had placed her ſelf on the Pile, and perceived that they had ſet fire to it, ſhe poured a Veſſel full of perfum'd Oil over her Head, which the Fire taking hold of, burnt her to Aſhes immediately, without giving the leaſt ſign of reluctancy, whilſt all there preſent fill'd the Air with their Shouts and Acclamations. An *Indian* Woman burns voluntarily.

This Cuſtom, as it ſeems, was firſt introduced into the *Indies* to prevent the Jealouſie of the Women created to Polygamy; which had this diſmal effect, that they uſed frequently to poyſon their Husbands, it having been found by experience, that in one Year their uſed to be 4 Men buried to one Woman; to prevent which it was thought convenient, that a certain Law ſhould be introduced, for all Women that would be accounted honeſt, to accompany their Husbands at their Deaths, as the only means to make them careful of their lives; yet was no puniſhment inflicted upon ſuch as did not think fit to comply with this rigorous impoſition, except that they were look'd upon as infamous for ever after. How this Cuſtom was introduced.

This Ceremony being over, I paid a Viſit to one *Myrſabeg*, one of the chiefeſt *Mahometan Merchants* in that City, unto whom I delivered the Letter of recommendation from the Director of the *Engliſh* at *Amadabat*. As he underſtood the Language, ſo he complemented me with all imaginable expreſſions of Civility, endeavouring to perſuade me to tarry for ſome time at *Cambaya*, and proffering his Service in every thing, that might tend to my Satisfaction; whilſt I was returning his Civilities, came up to us the King's Lieutenant or Deputy Governor, who with a very ingaging Air intreated me to give him a Viſit, which I promiſed to do. I went home, and ſcarce had eat my Dinner, when the before-mentioned Merchant ſent me 2 Muttons, 12 Capons and Pullets, beſides ſome Fruits, and a very fine Veſſel of Agat. I ſent back the bearer with a ſmall Preſent, telling him that I would return my hearty thanks to his Maſter the next Morning, but I was ſcarce got out of the Bed, when he came and told me that the fear of parting with me, without taking his leave, had made him come ſo early; I thank'd him, and as a Pledge of the good will I bore him, preſented him with a very fine *Engliſh* Pocket Piſtol, which he at firſt refuſed to accept of, excuſing himſelf that it was not handſom to receive a Preſent from a Stranger, were it not that his refuſal might be miſinterpreted by me to his diſadvantage, upon which ſcore he could not forbear to accept of what I had been pleaſed to beſtow upon him with ſo much

1638. much kindness. I thought fit to make particular mention in this place of these Civilities, to convince the World that Barbarism which the *Indians* are so often branded with by some Authors, is not so deeply rooted among them, but that they understand and make use of Civility as well as some other Nations, who challenge the preference upon that account before all others, but fall short in that sincerity which is natural to the *Indosthans*, who are as good Friends to those unto whom they have promised their Friendship, as they are irreconcilable to their Enemies. I caused a Box of *Bettele* to be presented to the Merchants, a Drug as commonly used in the *Indies*, as Bread is in *Europe*; of which he having taken a little, he took his leave; soon after as I was going to call at the Deputy Governor's House, I met him in the Street in his Coach, and he no sooner espied me, but obliged me to go back with him to his House, built in one of the most pleasant parts of the City. He treated me with *Bettele*, and some Palm Wine, and sent one of his Servants to give order at the Gates to let me pass unmolested without paying any Customs. I stay'd not above half an hour, and immediately proceeded on my Journey, but being pretty late, before I could reach *Serguntra*, the *Benjans* who burn no lights, for fear of hurting the Flies or other Insects, would not open their Shops, to sell us some Forrage for our Beasts, being a certain Paste of Sugar, Meal and some Butter, which is used here for want of Oats and Hay; but at last were prevail'd upon to let us have some, because we threatned to break open their Shops.

The Civility of the Indosthans.

The Author leaves Cambaya.

We made 5 Lgs the next Day, before Noon, to a great Village, where having baited our Beasts, we continued our Journey to the Garden of *Tschictbag*.

The Garden of Tschictbag.

This Garden, which we had occasion to mention not long before, is look'd upon as one of the most considerable of all the Empire, not only in respect of its noble Buildings, and the vast quantity of most excellent Fruits, but especially for the Conquest of *Guzuratta*, in memory of which it was founded, and thence has got the Name of *Tschictbag*, i. e. the *Garden of Victory*. The Alleys of this Garden, of which there are many, are all planted with Fruit Trees, such as Orange and Citron Trees, Pomgranate, Date, Almond and Mulberry Trees, besides many of those that bear Mango's, Coco's, and some other that were unknown to us. Having taken a short View of it whilst our Beasts were baiting, we continued our Journey and came that Night to *Amadabat*; we were not a little troubled by the way with the Apes, of whom I shot two with my Pistol, which so incensed the rest, that about 20 of the largest size pursued us for half a Lg, and by their odd looks gave us to understand, that they were ready to do us any mischief, if they durst approach us.

Goes for Agra.

At *Amadabat* I met with a *Caravan* of *English* and *Benjan* Merchants, bound for *Agra*, and being recommended to them by the Director of the *English* Factory of *Amadabat*, I went along with them the 28th. of *Octob.* We met in 5 Days Journey with no more than one Village worth mentioning, called *Painger*, and came the 6 Days after our setting out from *Amadabat*, to the small City of *Heribath*, 50 Lgs thence. It is without Walls or Gates, which have been destroyed by the famous Conqueror *Tamerlain*, as well as the adjacent Castle, the Ruins of which are to be seen near a high Mountain. Betwixt this City and that of *Damtiges*, which is 50 Lgs from *Heribath*, we met a *Caravan* of *Benjan* Merchants, who told us that they had been set upon by 200 *Rasboutes* who had forced them to pay them 100 *Roupies*; accordingly we ordered our Waggons to be fastened together, and disposed our Guards in such a manner as we thought them most serviceable. Neither was it long after before we got sight of 50 of the same Gang, that were sent, without question to view us, but finding us too well guarded, let us pass unmolested.

Comes to Heribath.

We travell'd 50 Lgs further, before we came to the Village of *Sardek*, which has a strong old Castle; as we were travelling in a Bottom, ten *Rasboutes* surprized some of our Waggons that were got about 600 Paces before the rest, and wounded 2 *Benjans*, but some of our Guards being sent to their relief, the Robbers were forced to betake themselves to their Heels, and to leave the Booty behind them.

After this Rencounter, we met with no further disaster, and arrived safely at *Agra*, where I was received with the same Civility by the *English*, as I had been in all the other Places through which I pass'd.

To Agra.

The City of *Agra*, without comparison, the noblest of all *Indosthan*, is the ordinary Residence of the *Great Mogul*; it is seated at 28 deg. on this side of the Line, in the Province of *Indosthan*, upon the River *Gemini*, which joins its Waters with the *Ganges*, above the Kingdom of *Bengala*. It being twice as big as *Ispahan*, a Man can scarce ride round it on Horseback in a whole Day. Its Fortifications are of a kind of red Free-stone, and the Ditch is above 30 fathom broad. The Streets are fair and large, there being some Vaulted, which are a Mile in length; and are furnished with Shops of all sorts of Trades, each of which have their peculiar Streets and Quarters assign'd them. It contains 15 *Meydans* and *Basars*, the most spacious of which is before the Castle. In the midst of it stands a high Pole, where the *Mogul* himself shoots sometimes at a wooden Parrot fastened to the top of it. Eighty *Caravanseras*, are appointed for the Reception of Foreign Merchants, and their Merchandices; they are provided with noble Appartments and convenient Shops, Vaults, Stables, and other Conveniencies. As the Mogul and the chiefest of his Court are *Mahometans*, so there is a vast number of *Mosques* throughout the City, of which 70 are remarkable for their bigness, and six among them appointed for their Devotions on Holy-days; these last they call *Metschidadine*. In one of these they shew you the Sepulchre of a certain *Saint* named *Seander*, of the Posterity of *Aly*, and in another the Tomb of a Giant Saint, being 30 foot in length, and 16 in breadth. His Tomb was surrounded on all sides with little Banners or Flags, as so many tokens of his Heroick Atchievements; whence it is that his Sepulchre is frequented by a vast number of Pilgrims, who bring thither daily their Offerings, out of which, and the ordinary Revenue belonging to it (which is very great) are maintained so vast a number of Poor, that in those respects, it is not inferior to the Sepulchre of *Schich Sefi* at *Ardebil*.

1638.

Its Description.

Fifteen Market Places.

Eighty Caravanseras.

Mosques.

The Tomb of a Giant.

These *Mosques*, with their adjacent Courts, are so many Sanctuaries both in Criminal and Civil Cases, the *Mogul* himself never presuming to take any Criminal, tho' he be never so great an Offender, thence, out of a Veneration all the *Mahometans* have for their Saints.

Sanctuaries.

In the City of *Agra* are above 800 Publick Baths, which pay a considerable Summ yearly to the *Mogul*; for as Purification is one of the main ingredients of the *Mahometan* Religion, so these Baths are daily frequented by a vast number of People. The Great Lords of the Court, who bear the Title of *Rosgai*, or Princes, who have very many Magnificent Houses both within and without the City, where the King also has several Gardens and Summer-houses, to retire to upon occasion, with the Women-Dancers, who dance before him stark naked.

800 Baths.

But his Palace which stands upon the River *Gemini*, and is 4 Lgs in compass, surpasses all that I ever saw of that kind before or since. It is surrounded with a Wall of Free-stone, and a broad Ditch, having a Draw-bridge at each Gate; the Gate on the West side leading to the *Basar*, is call'd *Ciftei*; Under this Gate is kept the Court of Judicature, and in an adjoyning spacious Hall, the Chief *Visier*, or Lord Chancellor, dispatches all matters relating to Military Affairs, whereof the Originals are kept here. Immediately within this Gate you come into a very spacious Street, with Shops on both sides, leading directly to the *Mogul*'s Palace, the Gate of which is call'd *Achebarke Dezwage*, i. e. King *Achobar*'s *Gate*, through which all the Great Lord's of the Court, except the King's Sons, are obliged to go in on foot; this being the Quarter where the dancing and singing Women are lodg'd.

The Royal Palace.

There is another Gate leading to the River, where the *Mogul* every Morning pays his Devotions to the *Sun*, at his rising. It is on that side the Great Men pay their daily Respects to the King, from a certain Eminency where the King can take particular notice of them. The Commanders of Horse do also stand on that side, but at a greater distance, at a place where the *Mogul* sees the Engagements every day betwixt Lions, Elephants, Bulls, &c. except *Fridays*, a Day dedicated to their Devotions: There is also another Gate, which brings you into the Guard-Hall; through this Hall is passage into a Pav'd Court, at the further end of which you see a row of Silver Pillars under a *Piazza*, where is kept another Guard, to prevent the common People from entering there; here I met with my *Per-*

The Mogul Worships the Sun.

sian

1638. *sian* Servant who had left me at *Suratte*, he offered me all the Service he was able to do me, and would fain have brought me within these Pillars, but that the Guards would not permit it; this being the ready way to the *Mogul*'s Apartment, where is a row of Golden Pillars of a lesser size, and within them the Royal Throne of Massie Gold, enrich'd all over with Diamonds, Pearls and Precious Stones, and above it a Gallery, where the *Mogul* appears every Day at a certain time, to hear and determine the Complaints of his Subjects; but this Tryal is so dangerous, unless you prove the matter of Fact by undeniable Evidence, you run the hazard of your Life. None but the King's Sons who fan him, and keep off the Flies, are admitted within the compass of those Golden Pillars, neither is any other Person admitted into the innermost parts of the King's Lodgings, except the Eunuchs, who being 1200 in number, wait on the Ladies of the *Seraglio*.

His Throne.

Seraglio.

There is another Apartment in the Castle very remarkable for its Tower, which is covered with Gold, and the Treasure it contains, having 8 large Vaults fill'd with Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, the value of which is inestimable.

I had it from very credible Persons, that *Schach Choram*, who reign'd in my time, had a Treasure which amounted to 1500 Millions of Crowns; I had from the same hand an exact Inventory communicated to me of the Treasure which was found at the Death of *Schach Achobar*, his Grand-father, which I will faithfully communicate to the Reader.

The *Mogul*'s Treasure.

In a certain sort of Money coined by special Order of the said *Achobar*, of 25, 50, and 100 *Toles*, the first of which was valued at 200122 Crowns, the second at 40025, and the third at the rate of 80050 and a half Crowns a piece, 148 Millions 790000 Crowns.

In another kind of Money call'd from his Name, *Achobar Repies*, 50 Millions of Crowns.

In another sort of Money call'd *Peyses*, 60 whereof make a Crown, 383333 Crowns and 10 Pence.

In Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, Sapphires, Pearls, and other Precious Stones, 30 Millions, 26026 Crowns.

In Statues of Gold of divers Creatures, 9 Millions 503370 Crowns and a half.

In Houshold-stuff, Gold Plate, as Dishes, Cups, *&c.* 5 Millions 866895 Crowns 5 Pence.

In Brass and Copper Utensils, 25612 Crowns and a half.

In Porcelain and other Earthen Vessels, to the Value of one Million 253873 Crowns and a half.

In Brocadoes and other Gold and Silver Stuffs, and in Silk and Calicoes, 7 Millions 654989 Crowns and a half.

In Woollen Clothes 251626 Crowns.

In Tents, Hangings, and Tapistry, 4 Millions 962772 Crowns and a half.

Twenty four thousand Manuscripts richly bound, valued at 3 Millions 231865 Crowns and a half.

In Artillery and Ammunition, 4 Millions 287985 Crowns and a half.

His Magazine of Small Arms, Swords, Bucklers, Pikes, Bows, Arrows, *&c.* 3 Millions 777752 Crowns and a half.

In Saddles, Bridles, and other Gold and Silver Accoutrements, to the Value of one Million 262824 Crowns.

In Covering Clothes for Horses and Elephants, Embroidred with Gold and Silver, and Pearls, 2 Millions 500000 Crowns, all which cast up together amounts to 174 Millions 113793 Crowns, which falls far short of 1500 Millions, supposed to be the present *Mogul*'s Treasure; it being certain, that tho' the ordinary Revenue is not considerably encreased, yet by the many and vast Presents made by the Governors, and the Escheats that fall daily to the Crown from the Estates of the Great Lords, whose Children can claim no Right of Inheritance here, his Wealth must be considerably encreased since that time.

No Hereditary Dignity in *Indostan*.

As there is no Inheritance of Estates belonging to the Children of Great Persons, so they can claim no share in their Fathers Dignity, the Title of *Rasgai* being more inheritable here than that of the *Chans* in *Persia*; the only advantage they have, is, that they are entrusted with lesser Charges by the *Mogul*, till by their Merits they can raise themselves to the highest Dignity.

The Chief Officers

The chiefest Officers of the Court are the Head *Visier*, or Lord Chancellor.

The chief of the Eunuchs, or Lord High Steward of the Treasury, Principal Secretary of State, General of the Elephants, and Surveyor of the Houshold-stuff, Tents, and Jewels. These are constant Members of the *Mogul*'s Privy Council, unto which is also sometimes called the *Conteval*, who is both Chief Justice, and Commander in Chief of the *Mogul*'s Guards. 1638.

The Council commonly sits in the Night-time, from 7. till 9. The *Mogul* appears every Day in the Morning at Sun-rising, when the Lords come to pay their Veneration to him; about Noon, when he comes to see the fighting of the wild Beasts, and about Evening when he appears at a certain Window, to see the Sun setting.

The *Mogul*'s Revenue.

According to the Roll of the Kingdom, the Provinces of *Candahar*, *Cabul*, *Agra*, *Guzuratta*, *Cassimer*, *Barampour*, *Dely*, *Bengala*, *Orixa*, and some others bring in a yearly Revenue of 87 Millions 250000 Crowns, the Province of *Guzuratta* is able to raise 90000 Horse, *Cambaya* 12000, *Cabul* as many, *Orixa* 80000, and *Dely* 150000, besides those of the other Provinces, of which I could learn no certainty.

This Militia is divided into certain Brigades of 15000, or 12000 Horse, commanded either by the King's Sons, or the chiefest Lords of the Empire; some of whom have also under their command certain Regiments of 2000, 3000, and 4000 Horse.

Certain it is that then the present *Mogul* went in Person into the Field against *Chan Chaan*, 1630. his Army consisted of 144500 Horse, divided into 4 Brigades, besides a vast number of Elephants, Camels, Mules, and Artillery Horses.

Their Arms.

The Arms used in their Camp, were the Bow and Arrows, a Javelin, which they dart with great dexterity, a Cymitar, Ponyard, and Buckler, which hang about their Necks.

The Horse use no Fire-Arms, but their Infantry manage the Musquet tolerably well. Their Pike-Men have Pikes of 10 or 12 foot long, which they dart at the Enemy instead of opposing the Horse with them as we do in *Europe*; some use Coats of Mail reaching down to their Knees, but are without Head-pieces.

Martial Discipline.

They understand nothing of Martial Exercise, the Van or Rear, Front and File being things never heard of among them, but fight without any Method or Order. Their chiefest Trust lies in their Elephants, on the Backs of which are fix'd certain wooden Towers, carrying 3 or 4 Harquebuses with as many Men to order them; and the Elephants serve them instead of a Bull-wark, to hinder the Enemy from breaking in upon them; but the worst is, that these Beasts being terrify'd by artificial Fire-works, or some other means, make a greater havock among their own People than the Enemy.

Their Artillery.

They commonly have a great Train of Artillery, and some very large Pieces. They also make Gunpowder, but not so good as ours; their Copper Trumpets and Timbrels make no unpleasant noise in the Field; their Armies never march above 5 Lgs in a Day, as in their Encampments they take up a vast circumference of Ground, so they observe a very good Order in them, every thing being as well regulated there as in a well govern'd City; and it is observable that the *Mogul* and the General of the Army always have their Tents pitch'd without the reach of Musquet Shot from the rest.

Their ordinary Encampment.

Its ordinary Guard is 12000 Men strong, besides the 600 Men that have the Title of the Guard of his Body, and are always attending his Person. The *Mogul* sometimes confers the Dignity of *Rasgai* or Prince upon his chief *Visier*, or Lord Chancellor, who has the Supream Management of all Civil and Military Affairs throughout the Kingdom. He is not permitted to take the least Presents, but his Clerks are so little conscientious in this point, that for Money a Man may know every thing that passes through their Hands. The *Rasgai* and other great Men pay a most profound Veneration to their Monarch; they never approach or speak to him without many bows and reverences, and when they are going away, they do it backwards, bowing their Heads down to the ground, putting their Hands over their Eyes, and afterwards upon their Breasts, to shew their humility.

The *Mogul*'s Retinue.

The *Mogul* never stirs abroad out of the City or otherwise, without a Guard of 10000 Men, in the Head of which march a 100 Elephants, covered with Scarlet, Velvet, and Brocades, each having two Men on his Back, *viz.* one who guides the Beast, the other carries a Banner of Silk; upon 7 or 8 of the foremost are mounted the Musicians, who play upon the Timbrel. The *Mogul* himself is either mounted on a fine *Persian* Horse, or is carried in a Coach, drawn by 2 white Oxen, or carried in a Chair; the chief Men of

1638. of the Court follow immediately after, and after them the Baggage. He commonly pitches his Tents in the Field, the better to enjoy the conveniency of the cool Air in the Summer, and to chuse the warmest places in the Winter; which is the reason that he commonly leaves *Agra* in *April*, and passes the Months of *May*, *June*, *July* and *August* at *Lahor*, or in some other Northern Province.

He changes his Residence with the Season.

The City of *Agra*.

The City of *Agra* is so populous, that it is able to raise 200000 Fighting Men; most of the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, but there is scarce any Nation in the World but what Traffick thither, and all Commodities, whether imported or exported, pay 10 *per Cent* Custom.

This City has under its Jurisdiction 40 small Cities, and 3500 Villages, its Teritories extending above 60 Lgs about. The circumjacent Country is very fertile in Indigo, Cotton, Salt-Peter, and several other Commodities.

The Festival of the *New-Year*.

The Festival of the *Nauruz*, or *New-years-day* is celebrated in this City with a great deal of Ceremony. Before the King's Palace a Threatre or Scaffold richly adorn'd, is erected, surrounded with small Pillars, in the nature of a Balcony, where the King is seated upon richly embroidered Velvet Cushions, being attended by his 7 Ministers of State, the Queen being not far off in a Gallery, where she can see the whole Ceremony, but can't be seen by any body. Near the King's Scaffold is another erected painted and embellish'd with Mother of Pearl, whither the Principal Lords come out of their Tents pitch'd, and furnish'd with their most precious Movables, in the outermost Court of the Palace, to pay their Venerations to the King; which done he leaves the Theatre, and being seated upon his Throne, he receives the Presents of his Subjects; and this he continues for 18 Days successively. Towards the conclusion of these 18 Days, the King in return of the Presents, the Lords and others have made him, bestows upon them his Presents, which are certain Employments and Honours proportionable to the Gifts he has received from their Hands.

The *Mogul*'s Birth-day.

The *Mogul*'s Birth-day is also celebrated here after a peculiar manner. The Day is begun with all manner of Divertisements, which done, he shews himself to the Queen Mother if living, in her own Apartment, where the great Lords are obliged to appear, and to bring along with them considerable Presents. After Dinner he puts on the richest Apparel that can be contrived, being loaden all over with Gold and Precious Stones, thus he goes into a Tent, and in the Presence of the Chief Lords, weighs himself in a Pair of Scales of massy Gold, the Chains whereof being of the same Metal, and beset with Precious Stones. He is set in one of the Scales, and in the other are put several Bags of Silver, one of Gold, some Precious Stones, certain pieces of Silk-Stuffs, Callicoes, Pepper, Cloves, Nutmegs, Cinnamon, Wheat, Pulse and Herbs, and an exact account is kept of the difference of his weight from one Year to the other.

This done, the King gives the Money with his own Hands to the Poor *Mahometans*, and the rest is distributed among certain *Benjans*, then being seated in his Throne, he orders to be cast among the Lords of his Court Nuts, Pistachoes, Almonds, and divers other sorts of Fruit of Gold, but so slightly made, that 1000 of them scarce weighed 30 Crowns; which, tho' it may seem incredible, yet is it certain, and has been try'd by experience that a whole large Bason full of this kind of wrought things have not amounted to above 10 Crowns; and it is computed that all what this Great Monarch bestow'd upon this occasion, could not amount to above the value of 100 Crowns; the Day is concluded with a great Feast at Court, unto which are invited all the principal Lords of the Court, who pass away the Night with the *Mogul* in drinking.

nother east.

They also celebrate another Festival which begins 10 Days after the New Moon, of the Month of *July*. This is observed to perpetuate the Memory of 2 Brothers named *Janze* and *Jawze*, who being *Haly*'s Servants, went on Pilgrimage to the Court of *Coromandel*, and were there kill'd by the *Bramans* and other *Pagans*. They carry Coffins covered with Bows, Arrows, Turbants, Cymitars, and Garments of Silk, through the City, the People following in whole Troops, with great Lamentations, some slashing their Arms till the Blood issues forth plentifully. In the Evening they make divers Figures of Straw, representing the Persons who murdered them, at these they shoot their Arrows, and at last burn them to Ashes; they perform this with so much animosity, that no *Pagan* dares to appear about that time in the Streets. The *Indian Mahometans* also celebrate the Feast of the Sacrifice of *Abraham*, it is done in *June*, when they kill a He-Goat, which serves them to entertain their Friends with that Day. 1638.

The Mogul descended from Tamerlain.

The *Great Mogul* deduces his Off-spring from the Great *Tamerlain*, in a direct Masculine Line; the said *Tamerlain* being descended from the Family of *Chinguis Chan*, King of *Tartary*. *Schach Choram*, who reign'd at the time of my Travels into those Parts, usurped the Crown from his Nephew, Prince *Polagi*, whom, as we told you, we saw at *Cassin*. The *Mogul* was then about 60 Years of Age, he had 3 Sons; the eldest was about 25: but his Affections being most for the youngest, he intended to bestow the Crown upon him, and to make the other 2 to rest contented with the Government of certain Provinces. The beginning of his Reign had savour'd not a little of Cruelty, and even afterwards he could not but betray his Inclinations, by putting such as were guilty of High Treason to unheard of Torments. For the rest, he was of a pleasant humour enough, taking much delight in Musick, and to see the Women Dancers to dance naked before him; of these I heard the *English* relate a pleasant Story, *to wit*, That a certain Person of Note belonging to the Court, in whose Conversation the *Mogul* took particular delight, being missing one Day at Court, the *Mogul* enquired after the reason of his absence, and being answered that he had taken Physick, the *Mogul* ordered his Women Dancers to go to his House, to strip themselves naked, and to ease their Natures before him; the Gentleman hearing of their coming, and having got some scent of what their Errant was, ask'd them immediately after their coming into the Room, what the King had commanded them to do, and being answer'd that they were to ease themselves there, he told them, that they might put the King's Command in Execution as soon as they pleased, but asking them at the same time whether they had any further Commands from the King, and they having answered no, he bid them have a special care not to transgress the Orders laid upon them, for, says he, If any of you piss but one drop, I will have you all soundly whipp'd; which put them into such a fright, that not daring to run the hazard of the Lash, they return'd to the *Mogul*, who understanding by what invention the Gentleman had diverted them from what they were ordered to do, laugh'd very heartily at his ingenuity.

A pleasant Story.

Divertisements.

His daily Divertisements were to see the Lions, Elephants, Tygers, Leopards, and other wild Beasts to fight one another; he also often delighted in seeing Men engage with those Savage Creatures, but never without their own good liking, there being not wanting those who in hopes of obtaining thereby the *Mogul*'s Favour, would hazard their Lives upon that score. I remember, the *Mogul* at his Son's Birth-day, being present at the Combat betwixt a Lion and a Tyger, which were both very much hurt, he ordered Proclamation to be made upon the spot, that whoever had so much Courage as to fight with any one of these Beasts, with Sword and Buckler only, should be, if he vanquished honoured with the Title of *Chan*; it was not long before three *Indostans* appear'd to accept the Challenge, and having laid by their Coats of Mail, one engaged with a furious Lion, and for some time made his Party good very couragiously, but the Beast pressing very hard upon his left Hand, in which he held his Buckler, the weight thereof at last forced the Buckler out of his Hand, so that seeing himself in unavoidable danger of his Life, he thrust a Dagger which he wore on his Girdle, into the Lion's Jaws, who thereupon let go his hold, and was marching off, but the *Indosthan* followed him, and with a blow cross his Head laid him dead upon the ground; great were the Acclamations of the People upon this occasion, but the *Mogul* was so far from being pleased with the Action, that on the contrary being highly incensed at his having made use of any other Arms except his Sword and Buckler, he command the Fellows Belly to be rip'd up, and the Body to be expos'd to the view of the whole City. The second *Indosthan*, made up with no less Courage than the former to a Tyger brought in for that purpose, but this fierce Creature was so dextrous and nimble, as to seize him by the Throat, and so kill'd him. The third *Indostan*, tho' a Person of a very mean Stature, and worse Aspect, nothing

A Combat betwixt a Man and a Lion.

A Combat betwixt a Man and a Tyger.

1638. nothing dismay'd at the Misfortune of his Comerade, engag'd the same Tyger with unspeakable Bravery, who was for playing the same Game with this as he had done with the other; but as he was going to fasten on the *Indostan*'s Throat, he cut off both his Fore-paws at one blow, and soon after dispatch'd him; at which the *Mogul* was so well pleased, that he presented this Man (whose Name was *Geily*) with a Garment of *Brocado* from his own Hands, and bestow'd the Dignity of a *Chan* upon him.

Courage rewarded.

I should not have left *Agra* so soon, had not an unhappy Accident made me alter my first Resolution. For, as I was talking one day in the Streets with my *Persian* Servant, who left me at *Suratte*, an *Indostan* of a very goodly Aspect came up to me, asking me what Business I had in those Parts; unto whom I having given in answer, that I was a Native of *Germany*, whom Curiosity had brought thither: He told me, that unless he were much mistaken, I was the Person that had kill'd his Kinsman, in the Engagement at *Ispahan* betwixt the *Indostans* and *Germans*. As I was convinced in my Conscience that he spoke Truth, so I was not a little amazed at it; but 2 *English* Merchants that were along with him, protesting that I was lately come from *England* by Sea to *Suratte*, made me persist positively in it, that I had never set a foot in *Persia*: This would perhaps however have stood me but in little stead, had not the same Servant declared and sworn by his *Mahomet* and *Hossein*, that he knew me, and that I said nothing but Truth; so with much ado we got rid of the *Indostan* at that time; but as his sight was not very agreeable to me, so I made it my business to take the next opportunity of leaving *Agra*, which I did accordingly, taking the conveniency of a *Caravan*, that was going thence to *Lahor*, 60 Lgs deeper into the Country; all which way we travelled thro' one continued Alley of Palm, Date, Coco, and other Fruit-trees, which with the Company of 2 *Dutch* Merchants, and some *Benjans*, made this Journey very pleasant, tho' these last were not very well pleased with the Diversion I took to shoot at the Apes, Parrots, and some other Creatures, and among the rest at a Serpent, a thing much esteem'd by them.

The Author in great danger.

Leaves *Agra*.

The City of *Lahor* is seated upon the River *Ravy*, one of those that with 4 more joins its Waters with the *Indus*: It lies at 32 dgs 30 min. having many fair Gardens on the River-side, and the Country about it, being fertile in Fruits of all sorts, but especially in Wheat and Rice. The Royal Palace, which lies in the middle of the City, is surrounded by a very high Wall, besides that it contains many other Palaces belonging to such Persons of Note, as generally attend the *Mogul* where-ever he goes, and a great number of *Mosques* and Publick Baths. I had the Curiosity to go into one of those Baths, which I found to be exactly after the *Persian* Fashion, with several Partitions made half round within, narrow at the entrance and wide at the bottom, each having its peculiar Door, and 2 Cisterns for the receiving the Water, which is let in by brazen Cocks, more or less according as those who bath are pleased to order it. After bathing I was desired to lay down upon a Stone 7 or 8 Foot long, and 4 broad, where being soundly rubb'd first upon my Belly, and afterwards all along the Back-bone down towards the Sides. The Fellow would have rubb'd the Soles of my Feet also with some Sand, which I not being able to endure, he ask'd me immediately whether I was a Christian? And I having told him, that I was, he gave me the Hair-cloth to rub them my self. In this Journey to *Lahor* I rid upon 4 several Creatures, to wit, a Camel, a Mule, an Elephant, and an Ox, who trotted so fiercely, that he carried me 6 or 7 Lgs within 4 hours.

Description of *Lahor*.

The *Mahometan* Baths.

Having received Letters from *Agra*, that the *English* Director was preparing for his Embarkment, in order to his return from *Suratte* to *England*, I took the conveniency of a small *Caravan* of *Indian* Merchants that were going to *Amadabath*, where I was no sooner arrived, but understood that he expected only the coming of the *Caravans* of *Agra* and *Amadabat*, in order to the prosecution of his Voyage to *England*, desiring me to make what haste I could to *Suratte*, being very desirous I should be present at the Resignation of his Presidentship, which was to be perform'd in a few Days.

Whilst I was at *Amadabat*, I saw the *Mahometans* celebrate a Feast: All the Windows of the Houses round the great Market-place were fill'd with Lamps, before which stood Glass-Vessels full of Water of all sorts of Colours, which afforded a very delightful Prospect at a distance; and the Night was concluded with Feasting and fine Fire-works, composed of Squibs, Crackers, and divers other ingenious Inventions of that kind; among the rest they had fasten'd certain Lamps to Wheels, which being turn'd round with great violence, made no unpleasing shew.

A *Mahometan* Feast.

1638.

The *Caravan* of *Agra* was no sooner arrived at *Amadabat*, but I prepared to go along with them to *Suratte*. The first Day we made 6 Lgs to *Mamadabath*; but the next Day, the *English* Director, and his Deputy (being desirous to be at *Suratte*, at the Resignation of the chief Director there,) my self and another left the *Caravan*, taking 24 Soldiers along with us for our Guards.

We cross'd the River *Wasset*, with our Banners before us, according to the *Indian* Custom, where Persons of any Note always have Banners not unlike our Cornets carried before them. At night we took up our Quarters in the Fort of *Saselpour*, where meeting with the *English* Factor of *Brodra*, we staid in that Place all the next Day, but continued our Journey in the Evening, and were lodged the next following Night in a Garden, whence we proceeded on our Journey the next Day to a noted Cistern for fresh Water, call'd *Sambord*; which being at that time guarded by a Troop of Country People, who pretended to keep us from fetching the Water we had occasion for, thence a Dispute arose betwixt them and some of our Soldiers, which at last came to Blows; for whilst our People were drawing up their Water, the Country-Fellows wounded five of ours with their Arrows, which so exasperated the rest, that they kill'd three of the Country People.

The use of Banners in the *Indies*.

An Encounter with the Country People.

But before next Day appear'd, met with another Encounter, which was likely to have proved fatal to some of us; for the *Dutch Caravan*, (which we had overtaken by the way) going away about Midnight, we follow'd soon after, but were not gone far before we perceived one of those Trumpeters (who in the *Indies* commonly march before the *Caravans*, or before Troops of Horse) to sound his Instrument of Brass (which is much longer than our Trumpets) in an adjacent Wood: As we had been already forewarned against the *Rasboutes*, who had committed several Robberies, and kill'd divers Persons hereabouts the day before; so we did not in the least question, that this sounding was the Signal of our coming to be given to those Rogues; neither was it long before we found our guess verified, by their coming out of the Wood with Pikes, Bucklers, Bows and Arrows; but the best was, that they had no Fire-Arms. We had scarce time enough to put our selves in a posture of defence; but the *English* Merchant and I getting on Horse-back, we bestow'd the 4 Firelocks we had among those of our Company that were in a Coach, reserving 3 Pair of Pistols for our use on Horse-back: Our agreement was not to fire, till we were sure to do good Execution. And the *Rasboutes* gave us a fair Opportunity to employ our Fire-Arms to the best advantage; for as they were coming towards us in a very close Body, we discharged our Firelocks, which were charged with square pieces of Iron among them, which made three drop at once; but trusting in their number, they push'd forward, kill'd 2 of our Soldiers, shot an Arrow into the Pommel of my Saddle, and another into the Turbant of the *English* Merchant; nay, they came so near us, that I received 2 Thrusts with their half Pikes upon my Buff-collar, which I was beholding to at that time for my Life; nay 2 of these *Rasboutes* got hold of my Horses Bridle, and were just a going to carry me off, when the *English* Merchant came in very seasonably to my Relief, so that I made shift to kill one of them by a Pistol-shot, and to get clear of the other. By this time 10 Soldiers belonging to the *Dutch* beforementioned *Caravan*, came in to our Assistance; and the *Caravan* it self being not much behind, the *Rasboutes* did not think it convenient to stay much longer, but made the best of their way to the Wood, leaving 6 of their Comrades kill'd upon the spot, besides several others sorely wounded, whom they carried off. We had only 2 Foot-Soldiers kill'd, and about 8 wounded Persons: We expected another Visit from them, but we heard no farther of them, and so arrived about Noon at *Broitschia*, and made 8 Lgs more the same Day to the Village of *Onclasser*, and the next Day, being the 26th of *December*, to *Suratte*.

With the *Rasboutes*.

Next Day after my Arrival at *Suratte*, I was present at the Resignation of Mr. *Merwold*, the then Chief Director

1638. rector of the *English East-India* Company at *Surat* of his Office to Mr *Fremling*, who had been his Deputy before; there were present at it 5 Consuls, or Head-Factors of that Nation in the *Indies*, 3 Ministers, 2 Physicians, and 25 Merchants.

The Chief Director of the English resigns his Charge.

After he had given them thanks for their Fidelity to the Company; and for the Affection and Respect they had shew'd to his Person, he beg'd of them to continue in the same both to the Company and Mr. *Fremling*; and thus, with a short Complement, delivered the Commission to the said Mr. *Fremling*.

After which he gave us a very magnificent Entertainment, there being not any thing wanting there the Season afforded, besides that we had a good share both of the *English* and the *Indian* Musick, as well as the Women-dancers.

Dec. 28. The new *Sultham*, or Governor of *Suratta*, made his Publick Entry in that Place, having carried before him a certain number of *Palanquins* (or Chairs) follow'd by 120 Foot-Soldiers, 20 of which carried Banners after the *Indian* Fashion: His name was *Myrsa Mahomet*, and was mounted on a most excellent *Persian* Horse, almost all the Persons of Note of the Province, and among the rest, the chief of the *English* Merchants (who carried me along with them) conducted him to his Palace.

Immediately after the Establishment of the New *English* chief Director, the Factors and Merchants return'd to their respective Places of Residence, and the 2 *English* Ships then in the Harbour there, call'd the *Mary* and the *Swan*, were ordered to dispose every thing for their Voyage, the latter being to sail 10 Days before the other, and to expect our coming at the *Cape of good Hope*. But before we take our last Farewel of *Suratta*, it will be requisite we should discharge our selves of our Promise of giving you some account of the Province of *Guzuratta* in which it lies.

How *Guzuratta* was conquer'd.

The occasion of the Kingdoms of *Guzuratta* being joined with the *Mogul*'s Empire, happened thus: *Ebamet-Chan* a Favorite of *Sulthan Mahomet*, King of *Guzuratta*, who died 1545. and constituted Guardian to the Young King his Son, who was then not above 11 years of Age, finding himself uneasie in this Station, by reason of the Jealousie of the Chief Lords of the Kingdom against him, craved the Assistance of *Achobar*, the then *Great Mogul* of *Indosthan*, to nominate him in this Dignity, offering the City of *Amadabath* to him as a Pledge of his Fidelity. The *Mogul* willing to accept of so fair an Opportunity, not only possess'd himself of *Amadabath*, but also of the whole Kingdom, carrying both the young King and his Guardian away into Captivity: The King being afterwards come to Age of Maturity, found means to make his escape, and to repossess some part of his Dominions; but the *Mogul* was so close upon his Heels, that in less than a Twelve-month's time he again chased him thence; and the King of *Guzeratta* finding himself a second time fall'n into his Enemies Hands, from whence he expected no good Treatment, he cut his own Throat.

The Viceroy of Guzaratta.

Ever since that time this Province is governed by a *Sulthan* or Viceroy, who has an absolute Authority here, in managing both the publick Affairs of the Government, as well as all the Revenues thereunto belonging, which is very great, and formerly amounted to 18 Millions of Gold, besides the Customs of *Broitschia* and *Brodra*, which produced 800000 Crowns *per An.* the rest arising, for the most part, out of the third part of the arable Lands, which belong to the King, the Revenues of which are assign'd to the Governor for the maintenance of a certain Body of Horse and Foot, to bridle the Insolencies of certain petty Princes inhabiting the Mountains, and to clear the High-ways from certain Tories or Robbers, which issue forth out of the Woods in Troops of 300 or 400, and make the Roads very unsafe. But as the number of Troops that are kept thus, falls very short from what they ought to be, this with the absolute disposal of Justice, which the Governor is intrusted with, gives him such an opportunity of amassing such prodigious Wealth as is almost inconceivable. His ordinary Residence is at *Amadabath*, and his Court and Equipages so splendid when he appears in Publick, that scarce any Court in *Christendom* is to be compared with it; for as the continuance of these Governors are merely depending on the *Mogul*'s Pleasure, so they are sure to make the best use that possibly they can of their time, to enrich themselves at any rate. Hence it is, that he who complains first, and knows how to back it with Money, shall seldom go off a Loser; neither is any Crime so great, but what may be bought off with Money. 1638.

The Administration of Justice.

The *Couteval* or Governor's Deputy has however the Privilege of giving Judgment in Affairs of less moment, and 'tis he, who has the Surveyorship over the Brothel-Houses, and receives their Taxes; for as they look upon Murther and Adultery, (especially if committed with a Woman of Quality) as the greatest Crimes, so that they not only allow, but also protect Prostitutes; and that with so much Circumspection, that it is both without danger or blame that People frequent these Houses.

Having given you before a short account of those Cities we pass'd through in our Journey to and from *Agra*, we will here also say something of the rest of the Cities belonging to this Province.

Goga.

Goga is an open Place 30 Lgs from *Cumbaya*, situate upon the Gulph, where it is so narrow, that it rather resembles a River than an Inland Sea. It is chiefly inhabited by *Benjans*, the *Portugeuse* Ships keep here their *Rendezvous*, in order to convey their Ships to *Goa*.

Pattepatane, *Mangerol*.

Pattepatane and *Mangerol*, 2 large Towns, 9 Lgs from *Goga*, are inhabited by Calicoe-weavers. The City of *Diu* lies upon the Southern Frontiers of the Kingdom; the *Portugueses* have 3 considerable Forts here.

Bisantagan.

The City of *Bisantagan* contains above 20000 Houses, and is consequently one of the bigstest of the whole Province. The Fertility of the circumjacent Country in Rice, Wheat, Cotton, and Pasture; and its Situation, which is in the Center of the Province, has raised it of late to what it is, it being formerly but an inconsiderable Village.

Pettan.

The City of *Pettan* was formerly one of the most considerable of those Parts, having 6 Lgs in circumference, and encompassed with a good Wall of Free-stone, which is now decay'd in many places, since the Trade of this place has been destroyed by certain kind of *Tories*, which so infest the Roads thereabouts, that the Merchants durst not venture their Persons and Commodities thither. The Inhabitants live now for the most part upon weaving of silk Suffs and Calico's; but these last are very course. The Governor has his Residence in a very goodly Castle, and in the very Center of the City is one of the most sumptuous *Mosques* of all the East, the Roof being sustained by 1050 Pillars, most of Marble.

Cheytepour.

Cheytepour is a small City garrison'd only by 150 Men, for the security of the *Caravans*, 6 Lgs from *Pettan*, and 22 from *Amadabath*, situate upon the Banks of a small River. The Inhabitants are *Benjans*, who live upon weaving of Calico's, and making of Cotton-yarn.

Messana.

Messana is an open place, but maintains 200 Horse-Soldiers in an old ruin'd Castle, for the safe passage of the *Caravans*; some Calico's are made here, the Country being very fertil in Cotton.

Nassari, *Gaudii*, and *Balsara*.

The 3 small Cities of *Nassari*, *Gaudii*, and *Balsara*, are under the Jurisdiction of *Suratte*, the 1st lying 6 Lgs, the 2d 9 Lgs, and 3d 14 Lgs thence; and all three not above 2 Lgs distant from the Sea. Their Trade is in course Cottons, which are made in great quantities here; the Country thereabouts also affords great Plenty of Timber for the building both of Houses and Ships.

The Inhabitants of Guzaratta.

The Off-spring of the antient Inhabitants of this Province are still Pagans, and are call'd *Hindoy* or *Indeu*. The *Mahometan* Religion was first introduced here by *Tamerlan*, and is since increased by the great concourse of Strangers of the same Religion, this Country being inhabited by *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, and several other Nations, but you seldom meet with any *Chineses* or *Japoneses* here. As most of the *Mahometans* here profess the same Religion with the *Persians*, so their Language is as current here as the *Indosthan*: These last indeed adhere to the Opinion of *Hembili* and *Maleki*; whereas the *Persians* admit of no other Expositions of the *Alchoran*, but those of *Haly* and *Tzaterssaduck*; but they both with the same Zeal reject that of the *Turkish* Interpreter *Hanife*.

They are generally of an Olive or dusty Complexion, tho' those to the North are not quite so dark as those living more to the South. The Men are generally strong and well made, with large Faces and black Eyes; they shave their Heads and Beards, excepting only the Mustacho's, like the *Persians*; and the *Mahometans* are clad after the same way, except that they plcat their Turbants in a different Fashion; and the

1638. *Indoſthans* wear the opening of their Garments under the left Arm, whereas the *Perſians* have it under the right; they tie their Girdles before with the ends hanging down, and the laſt wind it ſeveral times round the waſte, and twiſt the ends within it; To thoſe they faſten their Daggers, which are about a foot long, broad towards the handle, but very ſharp and narrow to the Point. Some Swords there are wore here, but the Soldiers generally make uſe of Cymitars. As the *Indian* Horſes are not very valuable, and yet very ſcarce, ſo Oxen are frequently uſed inſtead of them; which are as ſwift as Horſes; I have ſeen whole ſmall bodies of theſe Troopers. Their Women are ſhort, but well ſhap'd; they wear their Hair hanging down over their Shoulders, and on their Heads a kind of a Cap, or Crepine of Lawn, interwoven with Gold, the ends of which come down quite to their Knees. The richer ſort are very ſumptuous in their Apparel, have Pendants of Pearls and Diamonds, or other precious Stones in their Ears, and very fine Necklaces of Pearls, which make the fairer ſhow upon their Necks, which are of a brown complexion: they ſometimes alſo wear Rings in their Noſtrils. Breeches are here common to both Sexes, and are generally made of *Taffata* or Calicoe, and that of ſuch a length, that they would cover all the Body, were it not for certain Strings which are ſo faſtned to them, that they can draw them together in Pleats, like Mens Boots, though above the Ham they ly cloſe to the Body without any folds. Over theſe they wear their Smocks, which, however, reach ſcarce to the Navil, and over theſe again, a Petticoat of *Taffata* or Calicoe, but ſo thin, that you may ſee through it. Their Shooes are flat ſoal'd, and narrow towards the Toe, and commonly of red *Spaniſh* Leather. Their Breaſts and Arms as far as the Elbow are bare, but covered with Bracelets; Women that value their Reputation here, never appear with their Faces uncovered; and thoſe of Quality, ſcarce ever go abroad. The Women of the *Benjans* are clad after a quite different Faſhion, for they, as they don't ſhave their Heads, ſo they don't wear their Hair very long; neither do they cover their Faces, but wear Pendants and Necklaces, eſpecially in their Ears. Black Teeth are a ſingular Ornament among them; which is the reaſon they call us *Europians*, in deriſion *Bondra*, i.e. *Apes*. They alſo wear no Breeches, but inſtead of them a piece of Silk reaching down to their Hams, over which they put their Smocks, and over them their Upper Garments, which are faſtned round the waſte with a kind of a Girdle. Some of them uſe ſmall waſte-Coats, the Sleevees of which come no further than to the Elbow, being naked from the Breaſt down to the Navil. During the Summer Seaſon their Shooes are made of wood only, faſtned with ſtraps to their Feet, but in the Winter they have Shooes of Velvet or Brocado, or gilt Leather, the Quarters of the which are very low, that they may put them off and on, with more conveniency, when they are going in or coming out of a Room, the Floor of which is covered with Tapeſtry. Children of both Sexes are kept quite naked, till they are paſs'd 5 years of Age. For the reſt, the *Benjans* live with a great deal of Circumſpection among the *Mahometans*, who treat them contemptibly, and much after the ſame manner as the *Jews* are look'd upon in thoſe Places where they are ſuffered to live. Notwithſtanding which they are more ingenious and crafty than the *Mahometans*, which is the reaſon, both the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* employ them before others as their Brookers, it being next to an impoſſibility that any Strangers ſhould be able to find out all their Impoſtures, without the Aſſiſtance of ſome of their own Gang. Their Children, eſpecially their Daughters, they marry at 7, 8, 9, or 10 Years of Age, it being very rare for them to ſtay till the 12 th. for as the *Indians* arrive ſooner to Maturity than other Nations, they are of Opinion, that if a Maid ſtays any time beyond that Age, ſhe muſt be ſubject to ſome Infirmity.

The Day for the Conſummation of the Marriage being come, the Parents of both Parties ſit round a good Fire in a ſpacious Room, the Bride and Bridegroom, being to take three turns about them, whilſt the *Braman* gives them his Benediction; If any *Benjan* Bridegroom happens to die before he has taken his 3 turns thus, the Bride may Challenge the Privilege of marrying another; the Widows of the *Benjans* being not allowed a ſecond Marriage upon any Account, tho' their Husbands ſhould chance to die before the Conſummation of the Marriage; ſo that thoſe who cannot diſpence with a ſingle Life, aſſoicate themſelves to the Women Dancers; The *Benjan* Women are not obliged to burn themſelves with their dead Husbands (as the Wives of the *Bramans* and *Rasbouts* are) unleſs they will do it voluntarily. The Men are permitted not only to marry a ſecond or third time, but may have 2 or 3 Wives at a time, provided the firſt or ſecond prove Barran; but the firſt Challenges and retains the Precedency. The Sons only inherit their Fathers Eſtates, but are to maintain the Mother, and to provide Husbands for the Siſters. 1638.

As they uſe neither Baptiſm nor Circumſion, they muſt be numbered among the *Pagans*, and though they acknowledge One Supream Being, the Creator and Preſerver of all things, they pay Worſhip to the Devil, for this reaſon, becauſe that God having conſtituted him to govern the World, he ought to be appeaſed by Offerings; The Figure under which they adore him is to be ſeen in all their *Pagods* or Temples, ſome of Gold and Silver, ſome of Ivory, Ebony, and Marble, and others of Wood or common Stone. The Head, which has four Horns, bears a triple Crown, in the ſhape of a *Tiara* or Miter; with a grim Countenance, and 2 great Teeth coming out of the Mouth, like the Tuſks of a wild Boar, and a great rough Beard all over the Chin. The Arms hang down careleſsly on both ſides, and the Breaſts are extended as low as the Navil. Under which, betwixt his Thighs you ſee another Head with 2 Horns, more deformed than the firſt, thruſting out of the Mouth a very ugly large Tongue. The Feet are like the Paws of ravenous Creatures, and behind a Cows-tail. This Statue is always fix'd upon a Stone Table, which is the Altar, where the Offerings are made to the Idol. On the right ſide of it ſtands a Ciſtern, in which thoſe that come to Sacrifice, purifie themſelves before-hand; and on the left hand a Cheſt, into which they put their Offerings, which are always made in Money. There is another Veſſel not far from the Ciſtern, out of which the *Braman* (or Prieſt) takes a certain Yellow mixture made of Water and Sandal-wood, and therewith marks the fore-heads of ſuch as have performed their Devotions. The *Bramans* ordinary Place is at the Foot of the Altar, but riſes from thence frequently to ſay his Prayers, and before he goes away, he is ſure to purifie his Hands by rubbing them over the Flame of the Lamps, which are placed before and about the Altar, and furniſh their *Pagods* with light, and conſequently are kept continually burning, being the chieſeſt, if not the only Ornaments of theſe Temples, which look more like Caves and Holes of Darkneſs than Places of Devotion; there being nothing to be ſeen on the Walls of them, but the Figures of Beaſts and Devils; Notwithſtanding which theſe poor Wretches pay their Devotions with more Reſpect and Zeal, than is obſerved in moſt Chriſtian Churches. They are like the *Mahometans*, much addicted to corporal Purifications, which they ſeldom fail to do every Morning before Sun-riſing.

The *Bramans* deduce their Original immediately from their God *Brama*, and ſay, that they are the Products of his Head, whereas the reſt came out of his Thighs, Feet and other more ignoble parts.

M. *Abraham Rogers*, who lived Ten years in the *Dutch* Service on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, ſays, that the *Bramans* acknowledge for the Supream God, one *Wiſtul*, or *Erwara*, and that out of his Navel ſprung forth a Flower, called *Tamara*, which produced *Brama*, the firſt of all Men; who had Power given him, not only to create the World, but alſo to ſettle what Order and Government he thought beſt; they further ſay, That this *Brama* being God's Vicegerent, has divided the Adminiſtration of the Univerſe among 8 Lieutenants, the Chief of whom they ſtile *Derwendre*, and ſay, he commands all the reſt of the Governours who govern 8 peculiar Diſtinct Worlds; ſuch like ours are, (becauſe they rekon 7 more beſides ours) all which they are of Opinion ſwim upon the ſurface of the Water like ſo many Eggs. They ſay further that there have been divers Worlds before that which is now in being, and others will be after it, though they tell us, that the World we live in is to continue a Million of Ages longer; ſince that in the Year 1639. there were no more than 4739 Years of the fourth Age of the World elapſed; and that the firſt Age had laſted 17290 Ages; That in the firſt Age of the World, all Men were juſt and good, to ſuch a Degree, that the Devil who was then created, had

Their Cloaths

Their Women.

The Cloathing of the *Benjan* Women.

The *Benjans* Crafty.

Their Marriage Ceremonies.

Their Religion, they adore the Devil.

Their Temples.

Their God *Brama*.

His Deputies.

* In his Treat. of Paganism.

1638. had no Power to injure them; that in the next following Age, the fourth part of Mankind became depraved, that in the third there was an equal mixture of good and bad, and that in this last Age of the World, the number of the good amount only to one fourth part of the whole. But let this suffice concerning the Original of the Theology of these *Pagans*.

The Authority of the *Bramans*.

We will only add here, That the *Bramans* have by their Austerity of Life and Abstinence, gain'd a great ascendent over the *Pagans*, who look upon their Expositions of the Mysteries of their Religion, as so many Oracles, for which reason also they generally entrust them with their Education, and over-sight over their Children. They are distinguish'd from the other *Benjans*, by a peculiar kind of Linen Coiffure, besides, that they never cut their Hair, and wear three Strings of Pack-thread next to their Skins, coming from the Shoulders cross their Breasts to the Waste; and as this is the Badge of their Order so they never lay it aside. They believe the Immortality of the Soul, and its Transmigration from the Bodies of Men into those of Beasts, before they can be capable of the Enjoyment of the Blessings of the other World, for which reason it is, that the *Benjans* will not allow the killing of any Living Creatures, even to the Insects; and they are so careful in this Point, that they will not keep any Fire or lighted Candles in the Night time, for fear the Flies should burn themselves, and when they do at other times, they make it in Pits under ground; their Charitable inclination to all living Creatures is so great, that they redeem such Birds as are catch'd by the *Mahometans*, in order to be kill'd; Nay, they have certain Hospitals appointed for the Sick and Wounded Birds.

A peculiar Office of the *Bramans* in *Malabar*.

Among the *Malabars*, these *Bramans* are in such Veneration, that they have the first Fruits of all the Birds, and by the richer sort, are invited to perform this task with very considerable Presents; nay, there is scarce any Body of note there, when he is to be absent from home for any time, but recommends his Family, but especially his Wife, to the care of a *Braman* to supply his place.

The four chief Sects of the *Benjans*.

The *Benjans* are accounted to have 83 Principal Sects among them, not to speak here of the lesser ones, which are not to be numbered; But they have 4 general Sects, in which all the rest are included; *viz.* those of *Ceuramath*, *Samarah*, *Bisnow*, and *Godghy*. Those of the first Sect, are very peculiar in the Preservation of Living Creatures, for which reason their *Bramans* have their Mouths covered with a piece of Callico, for fear any Insect should get into, and perish in their Mouths; they for the same reason sweep their Rooms continually, and will not sit down before they have look'd, for fear of sitting upon them; neither do they keep any Fire or Candles in their Houses. They are distinguish'd from the others, by a white Staff they carry in their Hands, and walk always bare-headed, and bare-footed; Their cloathing is only a piece of Callico, coming down from the Navil to the Knees, the upper part of their Bodies being covered only with a piece of Woollen-cloath. They don't believe an Infinite Being, as the rest do, but Attribute the Events of all things to chance; and know of no other good Deeds but Fasting and giving of Alms; In consequence of this Opinion, they acknowledge in the Sun, Moon, Stars, the Earth, in Creatures, nay in Trees and Metals, and all visible things, the inherent causes of their Productions; they allow 2 Suns, and as many Moons, which they say relieve one another alternatively every-Day; They know nothing of Heaven or any Mansion of the blessed, though at the same time they acknowledge the Immortality of the Soul, and its Transmigration, which they say does, after the separation from the first Body, enter into another, either of Man or Beast; according to the behaviour of the deceased in this World; they say, it always makes choice of a Female, that it may return into the World, though in another Body.

The. Cloathing of the *Ceuramath Bramans*.

Their Belief.

Temples.

Their Temples are all four Square, with flat roofs, open to the East-side, under which are the Chappels of their *Pagodes* or Idols, rais'd 10 foot from the ground in the form of a Pyramid, with Stairs leading up to them, on which you see certain Figures of Wood, Stone, or Papers, representing some Persons among them, who have rendred themselves famous by their extraordinary good Fortune. The chiefest time of their Devotion is in *August*, when they mortifie themselves, especially by abstinence, to such a degree, as would pass for fabulous, were it not, that even their Profess'd Enemies in the *Indies*, had unanimously given them that Character, that some have been known for the space of 15 or 21 Days, nay, some for a Month or 6 Weeks, not to take any other Nourishment, but some Water with the shavings of a certain bitter Wood. In this Month they have their general Assemblies in their Temples, whither they resort to hear the *Braman*, (who sits in the Center of them,) read certain Legends of the Lives of their Saints. Immediately after they come into the Temple, they put their Offerings of Money into a Copper bason, placed there for that purpose; in return of which, the *Braman* bestows upon them, the yellow Mark, either on their Fore-heads or Cloaths. Whilst they are hearkening to the *Braman*, they are entertain'd with Musick; If any aged Person dies, they burn the dead Carcass; but Children which die before they come to 3 Years of Age, are buried. Their Wives are not obliged to burn themselves with their deceased Husbands, but must vow a perpetual Widowhood; and there is none belonging to this Sect, but what is capable of being received into Priesthood; to allow which he has no more to do, than to change his Habit, vow Chastity, and follow the same austerity of Life, prescribed to their Order; Women are even not excluded from this Function, but they must be above 20 Years of Age, whereas Men may come in at 7, 8, or 9 Years of Age; Nay, if either of the married Couple Embraces Priesthood, the other is engaged to celebacy for Life. Some of them make a Vow of Chastity in Marriage, but this is not so well kept as made. This Sect is an Abomination to the other *Benjans*, to such a degree, that they will not eat, drink, or converse with them; nay, if they happen to touch them, they are obliged to a very strict penance.

The Sect of *Samarath*.

The second Sect among the *Benjans*, which consists for the most part, in Lock-Smiths, Farriers, Carpenters, Tailors, and most other sorts of handy Craftsmen; as also some Soldiers, Officers and Clarks; have scarce any thing common with the first, except that they allow not the killing or eating of any living Creature; believing for the rest, that the Universe owes its Origin to a first Cause, which also preserves it, by its certain and unchangeable Rules.

Their Belief of God.

They give the name of *Permisseer*, to this Supream ruling, and that it governs the World, by three Deputies; The first they call *Brama*, and Attribute to him the management of Souls, according to the Direction of *Permisseer*, in order to their Transmigration into the Body of Men or Beasts; The second named *Buffima*, is appointed to instruct the World in their Duty to God; and manages the Wheat, Herbs and Pulse in the Fields, and Gardens; The third call'd *Mais*, is the Chief manager of the dead, being *Permisseer*'s Secretary, who, after having taken an account of the good and bad Actions of the deceased, makes a report thereof to his Master, who according to every ones desert, sends the Soul into the Bodies of certain Beasts, where they must do more or less pennance, before they can be purified of their Sins. In this kind they look upon the Cow as one of the best, having something divine in it above all the rest.

Why these Women burn themselves with their dead Husbands.

They burn the dead Bodies of their Friends, except those of their Children under 3 Years of Age, whom they bury near some River or Brook. Not any of the *Indian* Women accompany their Husbands, with so much chearfulness in their last Journey, as those of the Sect of *Samarath*; for as they are perswaded, that such as die [illegible] their Husbands, shall live with them in the other World 7 times as long, and enjoy with him 7 times more pleasure there, they are so fond of so plentiful a Blessing, of which they commonly have so slender a share in this World, that they are ready to Sacrifice their Lives, in order to attain it.

The Sect of *Bisnow*.

The Sect of *Bisnow*, agrees with the 2 Preceeding in this point, that they don't feed upon any thing that had Life; They are also much addicted to abstinency, and keep their general Assemblies in their Temples in *August*, where they Sing and Dance to a set of Musick consisting of Drums, Pipes, and Copper basons, before their *Pagode*, call'd *Ramran*, singing Hymns in his praise. They represent him with his Wife in Statues adorn'd on their Festivals with Gold Chains, and Collars of Pearl, and precious Stones; with many Lamps,

1638. and lighted wax Candles before them. This God acts without any Deputies.

Their way of living. They feed upon nothing but Herbs, Pulse, Fresh-butter, Milk and Curds; and are great Admirers of a certain pickle made of Ginger, *Mango*'s, Citrons, Garlick and Mustard seed, and their Drink is Water; None but Women or Priests dress their Meats, and use Horse-dung mix'd with Straw, and made up into a kind of Turf, instead of Wood, for fear some small Worms, or other insects should be burnt with it. Most of this Sect are Merchants, Factors or Brokers. they have this Custom peculiar to themselves, that They will not permit their Widows to burn themselves with their deceased Husbands, but oblige them to continue Widows. Not many Years ago, the Younger Brothers among them were obliged to marry their Elder Brother's Widows, to raise up seed to him; but this is abolished now. They commonly wash themselves every Morning in some Cistern or a River, if any be near them, where they wallow and swim in it, whilst the *Braman*, who stands hard by, mutters out certain Words, and imparts to them his Benediction; and at their coming out gives themt the Mark in their Foreheads, or in some other place, for which he is paid with Wheat, Rice or Pulse.

The Sect of *Goeghy*. Those belonging to the Sect of *Goeghy*, are a kind of *Hermits*, neglecting all publick or private Affairs, and dwelling in solitary places, and ruin'd Houses or Woods, shun the Conversation of others. They worship a God, whom they call *Bruin*, and his Servant *Mecis*, but have no peculiar Temples, or any other publick Assemblies, to perform their Devotions in. As they are forbidden to have any Possessions of their own, so they have nothing but a piece of Callicoe to cover their privy parts; they never speak to any Body, or will give an answer to any; or ask for any thing, though they were in the utmost extremity, but will take what is given them; They rub their Bodies all over with Ashes, and especially their Hair, which makes them look very strangely. They are in great Veneration among all the other *Benjans*, except the Sect of *Ceuruvath*, who abhor them. They believe that their God is the Creator of all things, which he preserves by his own infinite Power, by which he is able to reduce all to nothing; That he is not to be described under any shape, being a light, which as it is the cause of the Sun, his brightness is not to be seen by our Eyes. They differ from all the other *Benjans* in this, That they don't believe the transmigration of the Souls, but that they are immediately, after they have left their Bodies, transferred to God, and united with that infinite Light. They are so strict adherers to their Rules, that they admit no *Mahometans* into their Sect, or re-admit such of their own, that have been Prisoners among the *Mahometans* and *Christians*, and have eaten meat, without a most severe penance which is, to eat for 6 Months together Cow-dung mix'd among their Victuals; Nothing can be conceived more Superstitious than the *Benjans* in general, they never stir out, before they have pay'd their Devotions; and if in going out of their Houses with any thing, which they look upon as Ominous, they retain, and undertake nothing further that Day.

Believe no Transmigration of the Souls.

The *Benjans* very Superstitious.

The *Rasboutes* are by some reckoned among the number of the *Benjans*, and allow them a place with those of the Sect of *Samarath*, as believing the Transmigration of the Souls, besides several other things, affirm'd and maintain'd by that Sect; they are further of Opinion, that the Souls of Men go most particularly into Birds; Their Widows are obliged to burn themselves, unless the contrary be provided for in the Marriage contract; for the rest they are not of that reserved Temper, as most of the *Benjans* are, who abhor the effusion of Blood, even of that of the irrational Creatures, whereas these live upon Rapine, eat meat, and addict themselves altogether to War-like Exercises; and as they are a daring Generation, so they are employed by the *Mogul* in his Armies. Some compassion they have for Birds, which they will feed and cherish. They like the other *Benjans*, marry their Children very young, which as I have mentioned before proceeds from hence, that the *Indians* of both Sexes come sooner to perfection, in this respect, than any other Nation in the World; Of which I can't forbear to give you an Instance, which though it may seem incredible, yet as I shall relate the whole upon the Credit of divers very grave Persons, and that the relation is of a late date, I think it ought not to be pass'd by in silence here.

1638. In the Reign of *Schach Choram* the present *Mogul*, a certain *Rasboute*'s Wife, living at *Agra*, was brought to Bed of a Daughter, who's Breasts in 2 Years after encreased to such a bigness, as if she had been a Nurse; The Father and Mother at the perswasion of a certain *Locksmith* their Neighbour, had a hot Iron apply'd to them, to remove the Superfluous humours; but in vain, for at 13 years of Age the Girl had a shew of what Women in our Climate seldom have, before 14 or 15 years of Age, which however vanish'd again the next Year, but her Belly increased in bigness, as if she had been with Child; This swelling abated something the next following Year; and at six years of Age she was brought to Bed of a Boy, who with the Mother was by Special Order from the *Mogul*, brought up at Court.

A very odd Story.

The Parsis. There is besides these another sort of *Pagans* in *Guzuratta*, call'd *Parsis*, descended from the *Persians* of *Fars* and *Chorasan*, who left their Native Countries in the 7th Century, to avoid the persecution of the *Mahometans*; They live for the most part along the Sea-coast, and live upon planting of Tobacco, and making *Arack* or *Aquavitæ* out of *Terry*; tho' many of them addict themselves also to trading. They believe one God, the Creator and Preserver of the Universe, who Acts by his own Power, but has committed the Administration thereof to his 7 Servants; whom they Represent thus.

Their Belief. The First named *Hamasda*, has the Government of Men.

The Second call'd *Bahman*, the surveyorship over all Beasts and living Creatures.

The Third *Ardybesh*, takes care of the Fire.

The Fourth named *Sarywar*, has the charge of Metals.

The Fifth who's name is *Espander*, takes care of the Earth, as

Amvaerdath the Sixth does of the Water.

And the Seventh call'd *Ammadath*, has the presidency over Fruits, Trees, Herbs and Pulse, yet under Gods direction, unto whom they are accountable for their Transactions.

Besides the 7 Head Servants, God, say's they, makes use of 26 others, each of which has his peculiar Function assign'd him.

The business of the First is, to take possession of the Soul immediately after its departure out of the Body, which he carries before 2 Judges, named *Meer Resiu*, and *Saros*, who taking care to have the good and evil Works put into two Scales, pronounce Sentence according to their Weight, and deliver the Soul up, either to the good Angels to be carried into Paradise, or to the evil Spirits to drag them to Hell, where they are to be tormented to the end of the World, which according to their Opinion will be renewed in 1000 Years.

The Fourth call'd *Beram*, has the Administration of all Military Affairs.

The Fifth *Carraseda*, is the Sun.

The Sixth *Anva*, the Water.

The Seventh *Ader*, manages the Fire.

The Eighth *Moho*, is the Moon.

The Ninth *Tiera*, or the Rain.

The Tenth named *Gos*, has the management of Cattle.

And the Eleventh *Farwardy*, the oversight of the Souls in Paradise.

The Twelfth call'd *Aram*, imparts Joy or Sadness to Mankind.

The Thirteenth *Goada*, is the head manager of the Winds.

Dien, The Fourteenth is he who is to instruct, and to infuse into Mankind the Law of God.

The Fifteenth *Apirsanich*, is the giver of Riches.

As *Astaet*, the Sixteenth, has the disposal of Understanding and Memory.

The Seventeenth call'd *Assamant*, is chief President over Commerce.

And *Gamigat*, the Eighteenth, has the Government of the Earth.

The Nineteenth, call'd *Marispan*, is Goodness it self.

And the Twentieth named *Amiera*, the manager of ready Money.

The One and Twentieth call'd *Hoem*, has the Management of Generation in Men, Cattle and Fruits.

The Two and Twentieth and Three and Tweentieth, call'd *Dimma* and *Berse*, are look'd upon as two *Genius*'s appointed to watch all Men; and the three remaining, *viz. Dephader*, *Dephemer*, and *Dephdin* are Gods

1638. Gods constant Attendants, who employs them in what Affairs he pleases, without distinction.

As the *Parsis* are of Opinion, that God has left the Administration of the respective Affairs, in relation to their Station, to their own Disposals, so they adore them in case of Necessity. Their Teachers are in much Veneration among them, some of which also applyed themselves to Traffick and other Employments; they have no publick Places of Devotion, but perform the same in their Houses, sitting without any motion of their Bodies. They have no peculiar days set aside for their Religious Worship, except that they observe particularly the First, and Twentieth Day of the Moon; Each of their Months consisting of 30 days, they add 5 days to the last Month, to make up the year 365 days. Their Teachers are not distinguish'd from the rest by their Habit; which they have common with the *Parsis*, and the other Inhabitants of the Country, being known only by a certain twisted Girdle of Wool or Camels Hair, which comes twice round the waste, and ty'd with two knots behind, this being the certain distinctive Badge of their Religion, and so essential to them, that he who looses it, must neither eat nor drink, nor stir from the place where he is, before he has bought another from the Priest. The Women are also allow'd to wear them after the 12th year of Age. They live very meanly in little dark Houses, poorly furnish'd, and affect much to live near one another; they have the Liberty of choosing two of the most considerable Persons of the Nation for their Judges.

Their way of Living.

Fire is so sacred a thing among them, that they would not extinguish it with Water, though the house were on Fire, looking upon it as the most lively Representative can be made of the Divine light, for which reason it is, that they will rather smother their Fire with Earth, nothing being more irksome to them, than to see their Fire extinguish'd at any time, rekindling without the help of other combustible matter. They early engage their Children in Wedlock, but the Marriage is seldom consummated, till in the 15th, or 16th years of Age, and in the mean while, they are committed to the care of their Respective Parents. As they look upon Adultery and Fornication, as the most hainous Crimes in Nature, so they allow their Widows to marry a second time.

Fire Sacred among them.

They have an odd way of Burials; For, so soon as the Patient is given up, they lay him upon a little Bed of green Turfs, where he gives up the Ghost, which is no sooner over, but 5 or 6 Grave Makers come, take him from the Bank of Turfs, put a shroud about him, and lay him upon an Iron Grate, made like a Bier, and so carry him to their burying place, a Lg without the City, which is divided by a Wall into three parts, *viz.* one for the Men, the second for the Women, and the third for the Children. Over their Graves are laid Iron Bars like Grates, upon which they leave the Corps, till the Birds have eaten all the Flesh, and the Bones drop into the Grave underneath. The Friends accompany the Corps till they come within 500 paces of the Grave, where they stay and make most doleful cries, till the Grave-Makers have laid it upon the Grate. A month or 6 weeks after the burial, they carry the Turfs upon which he dyed, as a thing polluted to the burying Place, and every month entertain the neareſt Friends with a Collation in memory of the deceased; If any one happens to touch a dead Carcass, or the Bones of a dead Beast, they are defiled, and must undergo a penance of 9 days; They reckon those damn'd, whose Bones happen to fall into the Water. They are forbidden to eat of any living Creature, yet in time of War they will make now and then bold with a Sheep, Goat, some tame Fowl or Fish, and eat it; but never kill any Camels, Elephants, Horses or Hares, and, as to the Ox and Cow, they are so far from killing them, that they have a Proverb, that they would rather feed upon the Flesh of their Fathers and Mothers, than upon an Ox or Cow. Though they are not forbidden the use of Wine and Terry, their Law enjoins them a severe penance for Drunkenness, and upon that score, the drinking of *Aqua vitæ*. They are but middle seized, but of a much clearer Complexion than the Natives of the Country, especially their Women, who in this point such exceed the *Mahometan Indosthans*. The Men have great Beards, but somewhat round; some cut their Hair, others wear it without cutting; the first leave only a lock of an inch in Compass on the Crowns of their Heads.

Their Burials

They are a very industrious and over-reaching Generation, and were it not for their avaricious temper, would be much better Natured than most of the *Mahometans* are. 1638.

They have two other sorts of *Pagans* in *Guzuratta*, viz. the *Indous* and *Jentives*; the first are descended from the Province of *Multhan*, and the Parts about *Asmeern*. They are so far from being *Benjans*, that they won't admit them to be present at their Meals, which they eat within a Ring, and they eat of all sorts of Beasts, except the Ox and Cow. They apply themselves for the most part to the Wars. The *Jentives* deduce their Origin out of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, being a sort of poor ignorant Wretches, who pin their whole Faith upon the Sleeves of their *Bramans*. Their Belief is, that originally there was but one God, but as in process of Time Men deserved well of him by their great Actions, he communicated to them some share of his Power: these are their chief Saints whom they worship in their Temples.

The *Indous* and *Jentives*.

There is another sort of People here, call'd *Theers*, being neither *Mahometans* nor *Pagans*, living without any Religion, their daily Employment being the cleansing of Wells, Sinks, Common-Shores, and the fleaing of dead Beasts, whose Flesh they eat. They are also frequently employed as Executioners, which is the reason that they are avoided by all the other *Indians*, for fear of being defiled by them, and are not permitted to live any where but in the Suburbs. As the Religion of the *Mahometan Indosthans*, some few points excepted, approaches very near to that of the *Turks*, and *Persians*, we will not inlarge here upon that Head, but will proceed to give you some account of the manner of the Life of these *Mahometan Indians*, forasmuch as the same is very different both from that of the *Turks* and *Persians*.

The *Theers*.

To begin with their Marriage-Ceremonies, they are performed thus; On the Day appointed for the Wedding, the Bridegroom mounted upon a Horse, whose Main and Crupper are adorn'd with Flowers, and a Net over his Face, rides from his House accompany'd by his Friends and Kindred, with a set of Musick before him, and certain Fellows appointed to cast Squibs and Crackers, to the Brides House, where having given her the Diversion of the Musick, and Fire-works, for half an hour, he dismounts, and sits himself down in the House upon Tapistry laid upon the Floor for that purpose; soon after the Bride with her Friends, and the *Molla* and *Kasi*, or Judge of the Place, come in; the *Molla* having read certain Passages out of the *Alchoran*, and taken the Bridegroom's Oath, that in case of Divorce he will make Provision for his Wife, he gives them his Blessing, and departs; the rest of the Company who stay behind, are entertain'd with *Bettele* and Pills of *Amphion* or *Opium*, which they use instead of Wine, and produce very near the same effect. If the Bride prove an undefiled Virgin, by the Marks upon the Sheets, the Friends assemble for 5 or 6, and sometimes 8 or 10 Days after; but if the Passage be found not so well guarded as it should be, the Bridegroom takes his leave of her, and returns her to her Friends; on the other hand, if the Bridegroom finds her so strait lac'd as that he can't force his way in 3 or 4 Days, and consequently is suspected of want of Ability, one of the neareſt Kinswomen of the Bride, sends him a Distaff with this Message, That not being made for Mans work, she had thought fit to furnish him with some Womens business. The Marriages of the *Indian Mahometans* are not so strict as those of the other *Mahometans*, who can't be divorc'd without both Parties be heard, and Sentence pronounced by a Judge; but here they may be divorced with less Ceremony, upon a bare aversion or distast, with this proviso however, that pursuant to what they promise at the Marriage the Men are obliged to provide for the Sustenance of their Wives, who, as they have no other Dowries here, but the Jewels they bring along with them, they can't reclaim any thing of that nature.

The Marriage-Ceremonies of the *Indian Mahometans*.

Their Divorces.

The Women of any Quality stir but seldom abroad, and that either in a close Coach, or *Indian* Litter, and if they happen to ride on Horse-back, their Faces are covered with a Scarf; none but the meaner sort, or common Prostitutes being to be seen on foot and bare-fac'd in the Streets; the *Indian* Women have generally a very easie deliverance, it being a great rarity to hear of a Woman that is above 2 or 3 hours in Labour.

Their Children they Educate with peculiar care in Schools, where they are taught to read and write; and such as are not able to do it, they send either into

The Education of their Children.

1638. into the Wars, or into the Service of Great Persons, where their Allowance is so slender, that they lead but an unhappy Life. It is generally observed, that the *Indian* Children have a most peculiar respect for their Parents, to such a degree, that they would starve themselves to preserve them. Most Persons of Note are very careful to build themselves Houses in very handsom Gardens, which serve them and their Families for Sepulchres. These Houses have many small Windows on all sides.

Their Burials. They use the following Ceremonies at their Burials, immediately after the Decease of the Patient, the Kindred with great Lamentations come to ask him what made him die? Whether he wanted such or such Conveniencies which they name to him; this done, whilst the Corps is washed and put into a Coffin, the Friends divert their sorrow by making good Cheer. Three or four *Mollas* remain constantly near the Body (which is wrapp'd in a Perfum'd Sheet) to pray for the Soul, till it be carried to the Burial-place; whither the Coffin with the Corps covered with Callicoe, Velvet, or some other precious Stuff, is carried by 10 or 12 Men, the *Mollas* singing all this while their Hymns, and the Kindred accompanying it to the Grave; here the Body is laid down upon the right Side, with the Face to the W. the Feet to the S. and Head to the N. the Coffin being covered with a Board for fear the Earth should defile the Corps, it is let down smoothly into the Grave, whilst the Kindred mutter out certain Prayers, and so return to the House of the deceased, where the same *Mollas* continue their Prayers for several Days after; during which time not a spark of Fire must be seen in the House.

They stile themselves *Mussulmans*, or *True Believers*, looking upon all other Religions as Hereticks and damnable; but as they have a singular aversion to Images, so they shew more hatred to the *Roman Catholicks* than *Protestants*.

Their Stature and Complexion. They are generally of a goodly Stature, without any natural defects; they have all lank black Hair, tho' those they call *Mogollies*, have a clearer Complexion than the rest. They don't admire Flaxen Hair, but hate Red Hair'd People, out of an Opinion they have that they are Leprous, a Distemper very common here, one reason of which is, that the Pox, being rarely cured here, as it ought to be, by degrees infects the Blood afresh, and turns to a Leprosie. The *Mollas* let their Beards grow, but all the rest shave their Heads as well as their Beards, leaving only a Lock on the Crown, by which they say, *Mahomet* is to pull them up to Heaven.

Their Cloathes. There is no distinction in the Dress of Men or Women; they make their Garments of Callicoe, Silk, or Brocade, according to the ability of those that wear them; they lie close to their Bodies above the Waste like ours, but grow wider and wider downwards to the Small of the Leg; whereabouts their Breeches, which reach to their Shooes, are gathered by a String into many Pleats. Their Shooes are of *Spanish Leather*, Silk, or Brocade, with very low Quarters, because they have frequent occasion to pull them off, when they go into Rooms where the Floors are covered with rich Tapistry. Their Head-dress comes nearer to that of the *Turks* than of the *Persians*, being commonly of thin Callicoe, or Silk, interwoven with Gold and Silver Thread; they lay it by when they go to Bed. They have over their Garments a kind of Cloak to defend themselves against the Injuries of the Season; Their Garments are ty'd round the Waste with a Silk Girdle wrought with Gold, and over this they have a kind of a Sash of fine Callicoe; in these Persons of Quality wear their Daggers, the Handle and Sheath of which are generally of Gold, and beset with Precious Stones.

Their Houses. Their Houses are but slightly built, the Walls being nothing but Plaister-work, made of a mixture of Free-stone powdered, some Lime, Gum and Sugar, which being very white and smooth, makes no disagreeable shew at a distance; They are also but indifferently furnished, especially the Kitchins, where, besides a few Dishes, and Stoves, you see very few other Utensils; tho' for the rest, the Houses of Persons of Quality are very large, and divided into convenient Halls, Apartments, Chambers and Closets; in the two last of which the Women take great delight to set them out with their Gold and Silver Plate.

Their visits. When they are to receive Visits, they place themselves in the Hall upon pieces of Tapistry; they Salute one another at their first coming in, with their *Salom*, and an inclination of the Head; and if the Person be of greater Quality, they put their right Hand to their Heads, to shew their readiness to submit to him: If they are of an equal Condition, no further Ceremony is observed, but a mutual inclination with their Bodies; sometimes they touch one anothers Lock, adding these words, *Grab anemcas, Be it to you according to the Prayers of the Poor.* He who receives the Visits, never stirs from his Place, the Visitors being set by his right and left Hand. Their Visits are made with a great deal of reservedness, no such thing as the least loud Discourse being to be heard, or any Gestures made with their Hands or Heads. If they whisper to any Body, they are sure to hold to their Mouth a Napkin or some such thing, for fear of offending with their breath, him to whom they speak. 1638.

Their Expence and Domestics. Their greatest Expence is in Cloathes, Eating, and Women; for as by the *Mahometan* Law they are allow'd to pursue their sensual Pleasures to the utmost, as far as may be done without detriment to their Neighbours, they indulge themselves in this point to the utmost of their Power. They keep a numerous Retinue of Servants, each of which has his own business assign'd him. Their Footmen have great Plumes of Feathers on their Heads, and 2 little Bells on their Breasts, and are so hardy, that they will travel 15 or 16 Lgs a Day without much difficulty. They have all their Board Wages, and some Vails, but both are so small, that they can scarce keep themselves from starving. The many Women the *Mahometans* marry, are very chargeable to them, together with their Eunuchs, they being very extravagant in their Cloathing, Jewels, and Furniture. The chief amends they have for this is, that each Woman endeavours by all imaginable Art to gain her Husband's Affection, and Enjoyment before the rest; there being nothing to be contrived, but what they will make use of to excite him to voluptuousness.

Handycraft Men. The poor Handy-Crafts People, are but in a very indifferent condition here; for as every piece of Work passes through several Hands, before it is finished, they can scarce get 6 Pence a Day; and the worst is, that the Children must be bound to no other Trade than that their Fathers are of: Hence it is that they are forced to live upon Bean Flour, and a little Rice boyl'd with Water in the nature of a Hasty-Pudding, into which they put a little melted Butter; and their poor Houses are suitable to their way of living.

Merchants. Merchants live here in Plenty enough, and would be sufficiently happy, were it not for the danger they lie under of being fleec'd by the covetous Governors of the Places in which they live, under some pretence or other, as soon as they begin to discover their Wealth.

Though all the *Mahometans* in the *Indies* profess the same Religion, yet are they distinguished into divers Sects, such as the *Patans*, *Moguls* and *Indosthans*, (besides several others) which, as well as their different Tempers arises chiefly from the different Disposition of those Countries from whence they came, than upon any Religious account.

Patans. Thus the *Patans*, or *Padars* are a sort of Daring, Cruel, and Barbarous Generation, who without any consideration will thrust themselves upon hazardous Enterprises.

Moguls. The *Moguls*, or *Mogollies* on the other Hand, who deduce their Origin from the *Great Tartary*, are Complaisant and Discreet, which gains them great Respect among the other *Mahometans*.

Indosthans. The *Indosthans* or *Hindusthans*, are somewhat Barbarous, and though Covetous, yet are not Crafty enough to deceive without being found out; they are the true ancient Inhabitants of *Guzuratta*, and may be easily distinguish'd from the rest by their Complexion, which is much more inclining to black than the two former.

Bloches. There is another sort of People in the Province of *Haca-Chan*, who, as they are very hardy and bold, so they are employed chiefly in the carriage of Merchandices; they are call'd *Bloches*, their chief Employment being to let out Camels, and to Conduct the *Caravans*, which they do with so much fidelity, that they would rather sacrifice themselves, than suffer any thing to be lost.

No Inns in Guzuratta. All over the *Mogul*'s Country, as well as in this Province, no such thing is to be seen as Publick Inns; except that in the Cities and some Villages are erected certain Publick Buildings out of Charity, for the convenience of Travellors; these *Caravanseras* having

1638. ving no other Accommodations but 4 bare Walls and a Covering over Head.

They Travel with Camels, Mules, Horſes, and Oxen; they make uſe alſo of a certain kind of Coaches drawn by Oxen, which will travel 10 or 12 Lgs a Day; they are covered with Velvet on the upper part, but thoſe for the Women are ſo on all ſides.

Perſons of quality travel for the moſt part upon Elephants, or are carried in *Palanquines* or Litters, carried by 2 Men upon their Shoulders with a Bar. They are very careful in breeding up their Elephants. Hawking and Hunting is their chief Sport. Their Grey-hounds are leſs than ours, but they make uſe of tame Leopards and Tygers in Hunting, which are the beſt in the World at ſurpriſing a wild Beaſt, but never purſue it.

They catch Water-Fowl by means of the Skin of a wild Duck fill'd with Hay, which being ty'd to the Decoy Duck, they ſwim upon the Water, till they get inſenſibly among the reſt without frightning of them.

Their ex- Their Bows are made of wild Oxes Horns and
ceſt in their Arrows of Cane, and they manage them with
Bow. ſo much dexterity, that they will kill Birds flying.

Their Games are Cheſs, and ſome at Cards. They are great lovers of Muſick, tho' theirs be very rough; but Judicial Aſtrology has got ſuch an aſcendant among them, that nothing of moment is to be undertaken here, without firſt conſulting thoſe who profeſs it.

Learning. They are not quite deſtitute of Books, *Ariſtotle's* Works, or at leaſt ſome of them are to be met with here, tranſlated into the *Arabian* Tongue; as likewiſe certain Treatiſes of *Avicenna*, who is in great requeſt with them, as being born at *Smarcanda*, under the Juriſdiction of *Tamerlan*. Their Writings are not deſpiſable, and have ſomething of Rhetorick in them; and their Annals are ſo well and exactly kept, as would furniſh ſufficient Matter for a good Hiſtory.

Tho' their Language divided into many Dialects, yet is the ſame to be learnt without much difficulty; Language. they write from the left hand to the right; the *Perſian* is the Court Language in *Indoſthan*, and ſome have likewiſe a taſte of the *Arabick*.

Diſeaſes. The Bloody Flux and Fevers are the moſt Current Diſeaſes in the *Indies*, againſt which they uſe ſcarce any other Remedy but Abſtinence: They don't want Phyſicians, but have no Surgeons; their Barbers let Blood, and apply Leeches.

The Cli- The Winter begins in *Guzuratta*, in *June*, and holds
mate of Gu- till *September*, but the Rains are not as at *Goa*. There
zuratta. are but two Winds which Reign on this Coaſt, *viz.* the N. and S. Winds, which blow each for 6 Months without Intermiſſion. Their greateſt heat is in *April*, *May*, and the beginning of *June*; but the ſultrineſs of the Seaſon is ſomewhat temperated by frequent Breezes of Wind, which however bring this Inconveniency along with them, that they raiſe the duſt to ſuch a degree, as robs you of the very ſight of the Sun at Noon-day.

Com- The chiefeſt Commodities of *Guzuratta*, are Calimerce. coes and Silk Stuffs, as Satins, Taffatas, *Petolas*, *Commerbands*, *Ornis* of Gold and Silver, uſed for Veils for Women, Brocados, Tapeſtry, ſtreaked Carpets, Quilts, Tents, Bedſteads, and Cabinets, Lacque, Seals, Beads, Chains, Buttons, and Rings of Ivory, Amber, Rock-Chriſtal, and Agat.

Indigo here. In a Village call'd *Chirchees*, near *Amadabat*, is the beſt *Indigo* made. The Herb is like that of a yellow Parſnip, but ſomewhat ſhorter, and more bitter; it ſprouts forth into Branches, like a Reed, and riſes ſometimes 6 or 7 foot high, its Flower is like that of a Thiſtle, and the ſeed like Fenu-greek; they ſow it in *June*, and cut it in *November* or *December*; it is ſown but once every 3 years; the firſt Year they cut off the Leaves within a foot of the Ground; and after they have clear'd them from the Stalk, dry them in the Sun, and afterwards lay them a ſoaking in a Stone Trough, which has 6 or 7 foot of Water in it, ſtirring it very frequently, till they think the Water has ſufficiently extracted all the Colour and Vertue of the Herb; then they draw the Water off into another Veſſel, which being well ſettled all Night, they take it off the next Day, and the ſettlement on the bottom is ſtrain'd through a courſe Cloth, and dry'd in the Sun. This is the beſt *Indigo*, which is adulterated by the Inhabitants, by the mixture of a certain Earth of the ſame colour, and ſome Oyl to make it ſwim upon the Water; the goodneſs of this Drug being commonly judged by its lightneſs; the Stalks left the firſt Year, produces Leaves the next, but theſe are not to be compared 1638.
in goodneſs to thoſe of the firſt, tho' they exceed thoſe of the wild *Indigo*. The ſecond Year is that which chiefly produces the Seed; the Product of the third Year is never tranſported beyond the Seas, but kept by the Country People for their own dying. The beſt *Indigo* (which they call *Anil*) is inclining to a Violet colour, and has ſomewhat of that ſmell, if burnt. They always let the Ground ly fallow after the three Years are expired, for a twelve Month.

There is alſo a great deal of Saltpeter vented at Salt-Peter.
Surrate, which is made at *Aſmer* 60 Lgs from *Agra*, out of the fatteſt Ground after it has lain fallow for a conſiderable time; they dig certains Trenches, which after they have fill'd with Salt Earth, they let in as much Water as is ſufficient to reduce it to the Conſiſtency of a Broath, and to ſoak it the better, they frequently tread it with their Feet; when they judge the Water has diſſolv'd all the Saline Subſtance that was in the Earth, they draw up the Water into another Trench, where in ſome time it thickens, when they boil it like Salt, ſcumming it continually, and afterward put it into Earthen Pots; where the Dregs being ſettled to the bottom, they take it out again, and dry it to a hard Subſtance in the Sun.

Borax, well known for its uſefulneſs in refining of Borax.
Gold and Siver, is found near a Mountain in the Province of *Purbet*, upon the Borders of *Great Tartary*, which Country produces alſo Spikenard, Quickſilver, Muſk, and Copper, and a certain Colour which dyes the moſt beautiful Brown in the World; The *Borax* grows like Coral, in the bottom of the River *Jankenckar*, which coming down from the Mountain, joins its Stream with the River *Maſeroor*, which paſſes through the ſaid Province, and furniſhes it with this Drug. The *Indoſthans* call it *Jankenckar*, from the before-mentioned River, and keep it for its preſervation in Bags made of Sheep-Skins, fill'd up with Oil.

The greateſt part of our *Aſſafœtida* is brought from Aſſafœtida.
Perſia, but that which is brought from the Province of *Utrad* in the *Indies* is preferr'd before it; there are 2 kinds of this Plant, one grows like a Shrub with ſmall Leaves like Rice, the other has Leaves as big as thoſe of Turnips; and in colour reſembling Fig-tree Leaves. It grows commonly in Sandy and Stony Ground; its Gum comes forth in the latter end of the Summer, and is gathered in *Autumn*: The *Benjans* in *Guſuratta* are ſuch admirers of its ſcent, that they uſe it in their Sawces, and rub their eating and drinking Veſſels with it.

There is abundance of *Amſion* or *Opium* brought Opium.
from *Cayro* into *Europe*; that which comes from the Province of *Gaulor* in *Indoſthan*, and is vented all over the *Indies*, is only the coagulated Juice of Poppy, which is gathered, by making an Inciſion therein when it begins to be ripe: All the Eaſtern Nations are ſo addicted to the uſe of it, that thoſe who cannot come at the Iuce, will make and uſe the Decoction of Poppy. The *Perſians* boaſt themſelves to be the firſt Inventors of its uſe. They take every Day the Quantity of the bigneſs of a ſmall Pea, made up into a Pill; not ſo much with an intention to make themſelves ſleep, as to raiſe courage in themſelves, eſpecially in the exerciſe of Veneral Acts, for which purpoſe it is chiefly uſed by the *Indians*. They uſe themſelves to it by taking a little and little by degrees, without which it is Mortal: It draws this inconvenience after it, that it will quite ſtupifie the Senſes, unleſs they continue it for ever.

Of *Lacque* we have ſaid ſomething before, and ſhall ſay more anon.

The Province of *Guſuratta* produces abundance of *Cammin*, *Ginger*, and *Mirabolans*, which they preſerve with brown Sugar; beſides which they have ſeveral Phyſical Drugs. Diamonds are likewiſe one of the chief Products of this Province, but not many; yet have they good ſtore of Pearls, Emeraulds, Gra- Their Pre-
nats, Agats, Alabaſter, Red Marble, and Jaſper cious Stones.
Stone, which are better polliſh'd here than any where elſe.

They know but of one Weight all over *Guzuratta*, Their
which is call'd *Maon*, and contains 40 *Ceers*, in the Weights
whole 30 half pound, at the rate of 16 Ounces in the and Ells.
pound; a *Ceer* containing 10 *Peyſes*, a kind of Braſs Money weighing 12 Ounces.

Their Ells are of two kinds; the leſſer amounts to no more than half a *French* Ell, and a 16th. part; and 19 of their large Ells make 13 Ells 3 quarters of the ſame Meaſure.

They

1638. They have also no more than two sorts of Money, *viz.* the *Mamoudies* and the *Ropias*; the *Mamoudies* bieng Coin'd of Silver of a base allay, go no farther than at *Suratte*, *Brodra*, *Broitschia*, *Cambaya*, and those Parts, and are worth about one Shilling *Sterling*; but the *Ropias Chagam*, which are worth about a *French* Half Crown, and made of very good Silver, pass current all over. The *Peyses* we spoke of, are their Copper Money, 26 of which make a *Mamoudy*, and 54 a *Ropia*. They count also with Almonds, 36 whereof make a *Peyse*, and with certain Shells found by the Sea-side, 80 whereof make a *Peyse*. They account *Spanish* Pieces of Eight and *Rixdollars* equivalent to 5 *Mamoudies*, because they make great advantage of them in their Mints. The *Persian* Larris, which are very good Silver, are also much esteem'd here. They have a Golden Coin call'd *Xeraphins*, worth about 13 half *Ropias*. The *Chequins*, and *Venetian Ducats* are very current here; and are reckoned to be worth 8 and a half for 9 *Ropias*, according to the rising or the falling of the Change. As there is abundance of Counterfeit Money here, and all over the *Indies*, so scarce any Summ is received, but in the Shops of the Changers, call'd *Xaraffes*, which are at the corners of every Street; these secure the receipt of the Money for a small matter, and are so expert, as that no Counterfeit Money can escape their Hands undiscovered.

Their Money.

Their way of computing Summs is by *Lacs*, one of which consists of 100000 *Ropias*; and two of these *Lacs* make a *Crou* or *Carroa*, and 10 *Carroas*, an *Areb*; a *Theil* of Silver makes 11, 12, or 13 *Ropias*. One *Massas* and a half a *Theil* of Silver; and 10 of these a *Theil* of Gold. No Coin, whether Gold, Silver, or Brass, must be exported out of the Kingdom upon pain of Death. Besides what we have said of the Products of *Guzuratta*, it is very fertile in Wheat, Rice, Pease, Beans, Barley, Millet, *Turkey* Wheat, Flax, Mustard-Seed, Oil, Butter and Cheese, the last of which is somewhat salt and dry; Their Wheat is larger than ours, they don't bake their Bread in Ovens, but upon Iron Plates, and the *Benjans* in Frying-pans.

No Oates here.

Their Beans and Pease are less, but much more delicious than ours; especially their red Ciches, wherewith in many Places they feed their Horses, Oxen and Boufflers, instead of Oats, a Grain not much used in the Eastern Parts. They sow in *May*, and their Harvest is in *September* and *November*. They cut no Grass, but consume it green.

The *Mogul* in Possession of all the Country.

As the *Mogul* is the sole Proprietor of all the Lands in his Empire, so the Peasants when Seeding-time approaches, must make their Application to the Governor of the Province, and agree with him for as much Ground as he thinks he is able to sow for that Year; for the use of which he pays a third part, and sometimes one half; which is the reason that most of the Grounds lay Fallow, there being but few who think it worth their while to manure them at so excessive a rate.

Their Gardens.

Their Gardens are well stor'd with Pot-herbs of all sorts, as Lettice, Succory, Sorrel, Parsley, Radishes, Cabbages, Cucumbers, Citruls, Garlick, Onions, Parsnips, and above all with the most delicious Melons in the World. They don't value their Flowers here so much for their scent as the Colour, the Rose only excepted, the scent of which is much admired; the Flowers call'd *Mogera* and *Scampi*, have also a very agreeable smell, notwithstanding which they are admired by the Women for their Colour, the first being a delicious white, and the latter yellow; they hold all the Year round, as does the Grass here, unless it be dry'd up by the excessive heat of the Summer Season.

Trees.

Besides their Limon, Citron, Pomegranate, and other Trees sufficiently known in *Europe*, they have those call'd *Ananas*, *Bananaes*, *Jaccas*, *Cocos*, and *Indian Fig-Trees*; they have also a kind of Vines about *Suratte*, the Grapes of which are not so big as those of *Persia*, and are sold at a dear rate. Their Forests in those parts entertain among other Creatures, a kind of wild Dogs, call'd *Jacalls*. No body dare hurt them, no more than any other Beasts that are yellow or black, under pain of death, they being reserved for the King's Sport, or the Governor's of the Province. 1638.

Tho' *Indian* Horses are in no wise comparable to those of *Persia* and *Arabia*, yet are they very careful in keeping them. They commonly feed them with those Pease they call *Ciches*, which they bruise and boil, and every Morning and Evening give them a Paste made of 2 pounds of Barley Meal, half a pound of Butter and as much Sugar.

Horses.

Their Oxen are not different from ours in Shape, except that they have a large bunch betwixt their Shouldiers; the poorer sort of *Mahometans*, eat abundance of Beef and Mutton, but the better sort feed upon Kids, either roasted with a Pudding of Rice, Almonds and Raisons in the Belly, or stew them with Butter and Pepper; they also have *Persian* Sheep with fat Tails, but they are very rare, and used seldom but at great Entertainments.

Their Oxen

They have sufficient store of Fowl, Capons, Geese, Wild-ducks, Peacocks, Teel, Partridges, Pidgeons, Sparrows; not to speak of their Faulcons, Hawks, Eagles, and other Birds of Prey.

Fowl.

They are not destitute of River Fish, such as Carps, Eels, Breams, but their Salt-fish is extraordinary good, and cheap here, because the *Mahometans* prefer Flesh before Fish, and that *Pagans* eat not of it at all; they have also Oisters, Crabs, and Prawns. It is observable that whereas in *Europe* all sorts of Shell-fish is best at the Full Moon, here they are best at the New Moon, and empty at the Full.

Flesh.

Their Vessels are generally slightly built, and their Great Guns kept above Deck; and they seldom venture any farther than to *Java* and *Sumatra*, or to *Aden* and *Mecca*, upon the *Red-Sea*; whither they go with a vast number of Pilgrims in the beginning of *March*, and return not till *September* for fear of the Tempests, which from *June* till then are very violent on that Coast, whereas otherwise this Voyage might be performed in 2 Months.

They carry to the Coast of *Aden* Calicoes, Indigo, Champhire, Tobacco, Alum, Sulphurs, Benzoin, Pepper, and other Spices, Mirobalans, and many other Preserves; in lieu of which they bring back Coral, Amber, a certain red Dye call'd *Misseir*, Coffee Berries, and Opium, but their best returns are in ready Cash. Their Coasting Vessels which go to *Cambaya*, and *Broitschia*, and sometimes to *Persia*, go away in *January* and *February*, and return in *April* or *May*, and bring along with them Brocadoes, Silk Stuffs, Velvets, Camlets, Pearls, Almonds, Raisons, Nuts and Dates, but especially Rose-water.

Trade the Red-Sea.

Their Ships that go to *Achin* in the Isle of *Sumatra*, are of 200 and 300 Tuns in burthen, carry thither the products of their Country; in lieu of which they bring back Brimstone, Benzoin, Champhire, Porcelain, Tin and Pepper; they set sail in *May*, and return in *October*.

The Voyage to Achin.

The *Malabars* also drive a great Trade at *Suratte*, *Cambaya* and *Broitschia*, they bring thither the Bark of the Cocoe-Trees, which is used for making Cordages of Ships; the Pith of the same Tree, *Areca* and *Bettele*, a kind of Wood which dyes red, call'd by them *Patang*, and *Harpus*, which they use for Calking their Ships, besides Rice and other Provisions; These they exchange for Opium, Saffron, Coral, Calicoes, and other Stuffs. They come to the Coast of *Suratte*, in *December*, and return in *April*. Formerly the *Portugueze* used to be the sole Masters of the Trade of *Guzuratta*, by means of their Forts at *Daman*, *Diu*, and *Goa*; But since the *English* and *Dutch* have made their Settlements in those Parts, they have been forc'd to confine their Trade to *Goa*, of which more in the next following Chapter.

The Trade of the Malabars.

CHAP. II.

CHAP. II.

Mr. Mandelsloe's *Travels into the* East-Indies. *&c.*

1639. MR. *Metwold*, the *English* Chief Director, having as I told you before, surrendred his Charge to Mr. *Fremling*, took leave of the Governor of *Surratte*, the 1st. of *January* 1639. who received him with extraordinary Civility, and presented him with a Garment of Brocadoe, besides many other Rarities; and having spent two Days more in taking our leaves of our Friends, we went aboard the 3d. in Company of the new President, and all the other *English* Merchants, where we feasted for three Days, and at last set sail the 5th. in the *Mary*, and came the same Night in sight of the City of *Daman*, where we met with one of our Ships that had stay'd there for a *Portugueſe* Vessel, that was to go along with us to *Goa*. The Governor of the City sent us a large Vessel with Wine, and divers Refreshments; for tho' the City was then besieged by the King of *Decam*, yet the Harbor being open, they had sufficient Supplies brought them by Sea.

The Author leaves *Surratte*.

Comes to *Daman*.

The Kingdom of *Decam* or *Cuncam*, by some call'd *Visiapour*, from its Capital City, extends all along that Coast from *Ingediva* (which is within 12 Lgs of *Goa*) to the South as far as *Siffarde*. The chief Maritime Places belonging to the King of *Decam*, are *Geytapour*, *Rasapour*, *Carapatan*, and *Dabul*; but *Visiapour* the Capital City lies 80 Lgs from *Dabul*, and 84 from *Goa*.

The Road from *Goa* to *Visiapour*.

The way from *Goa* to *Visiapour*, lies thus, no sooner have you left *Goa*, but you must cross the River *Madre de dios*, if you intend to Travel into the Kingdom of *Visiapour*; the first City you meet in your way is that of *Ditcauly*, 3 Lgs from *Goa*. From this Place you must travel 6 Lgs before you come to *Danda*, a pretty large and well-built City upon the River *Derry*, which exonerates it self into the Sea, near the Isles call'd *Islas Quemadas* by the *Portugueſe*.

Ditcauly. *Danda.*

The Mountains of *Balagatta*.

From *Danda* to the Mountains of *Balagatta* are 9 Lgs, which reach through the Kingdom of *Cuncam* as far as the Coast of *Coromandel*.

From *Amboly*, which lies at the foot of the said Mountain, to the Village of *Herenekassi*, situate upon a River of the same Name, are 11 Lgs; 2 Lgs thence you come to the Village of *Werseree*, and 3 Lgs further to that of *Outor*; 6 Lgs and a half more to that of *Berapour*; half a Lg thence to that of *Matoura*, and a Lg further to that of *Calingra*. From hence you pass through the Village of *Kangir*, to a *Hamlet* call'd *Bary*, a Name given to all Places in the *Indies* that have no peculiar Name.

Thence you go to the *Village* of *Worry*, and *Attrowad*, all which are within a Lg distant from one another; near which you see upon an Eminency a Magnificent *Pagan* Temple; and turning about 2 Lgs and a half thence to the left, you pass through the Village of *Badataly* to *Kerwes*, which is 2 Lgs thence. From *Kerwes* to *Skeokory* are 2 Lgs more, and thence to a Magnificent *Benjan Pagode* or Temple 5 Lgs; from hence at 2 Lgs distance you see to the left the strong Castle of *Mirsis*, and the City of *Rajebag*, a great Trading City, especially in Pepper, which is not above a Lg distant from the said *Pagode*.

Not above a Lg from *Rajebag* you come to a very famous Well, which directs you to the River *Cugny*, 2 Lgs thence; and after you have cross'd it, you have not above half a League to the City of *Gotteny*. After you come out of the Gate, you must leave it to the left, in order to come to the Villages of *Goeteſi* and *Omgar*, which are within 1500 Paces of that City; and half a Lg thence to the great River *Corstena*, which continues its Current through the Kingdom of *Decan*, as far as *Masulypatan*. Betwixt this River and that of *Agery*, is not above 4 Lgs, and in your way you pass through the Villages of *Lynatour*, of *Katerna*, *Tangly* and *Erury*. About 3 Lgs from this last River, you come to the City of *Atteny*, which is one of the chief Markets in those Parts; 4 Lgs thence is the Village of *Bardgie*, and 3 Lgs and a half further that of *Agger*, lying within 3 Lgs of the City of *Talsenghe*, which is as many Lgs to *Homoware*, and thence 3 more to the City of *Ticota*, 6 Lgs distant from *Visiapour*. Before you enter the City of *Visiapour*, you pass through the Suburbs call'd *Nouraspour* and *Sirrapour*, the first of which was within this two Years the Residence of their Kings; but being now destroy'd entirely, its Ruins furnish Materials towards the building of *Visiapour*.

1639. *Talsenghe.* *Ticota.* *Visiapour.*

This City is above 5 Lgs in Circumference, being encompass'd with a very high Wall of Free-stone, and a broad Ditch, and many Out-works, provided with 1000 Pieces of Iron and Brass Cannon. The Royal Palace is in the very Center of the City, having 3500 Paces in Compass, being divided from the Body of the City by 2 Walls, and as many Ditches. The City has no less than 5 Suburbs, where most of the Merchants live, and in the Suburb of *Schanpour* most of the Jewellers have their Habitations. The Inhabitants are for the most part Natives of the Kingdom of *Decam*, the rest are *Benjans*, *Moguls*, and *Jentives*. If you intend to go from *Visiapour* to *Dabul*, you must go back as far as to the City of *Atteny*, and thence 2 Lgs to the Village of *Agelle*, and so 6 Lgs and a half further to the City of *Arecq*. Thence you have 3 Lgs to the City of *Berce*, and as many more thence to the City of *Mirdsi*, or *Mirisgie*, which is large, but not very populous; its Castle, which is very strong, being very famous for a Siege it held out against the joint Forces of the *Great Mogul's* Empire. Here are also to be seen the Tombs of 2 ancient Kings, which are in great Veneration among the Inhabitants of those Parts. From this Place to a Village call'd *Epour*, are 2 Lgs, and thence 3 Lgs more to the City of *Graeen*, which is divided in two by the River *Corsena*, which is 800 Paces broad there. From the River side to the Village of *Toncq*, are reckoned 2 Lgs and a half, and thence 3 Lgs further to the City of *Asta*; a City very considerable for its Traffick.

Arecq. *Berce.* *Mirdsi.* *Graeen.* *Asta.*

Thence you go 3 Lgs further to the City of *Ballowra*, and 3 Lgs further to those of *Oeren* and *Isselampour*, which lie not above a Cannon shot from one another; leaving the latter, which is strengthened by a goodly Castle, on the left, you go on 2 Lgs further to the Village of *Tasset*, and 3 Lgs thence to that of *Cassegam*, and so 2 Lgs more to the City of *Calliar*, which is quite demolished now. Within 2 Lgs of this City you see a small Village call'd *Galoure*, from whence passing through that of *Winge*, and by the City of *Qualampour*, a Place famous for its Linen Manufactory, and to that of *Domo*, you come to the City of *Tamba*, 6 Lgs from *Galoure*, a Place both very large and populous, situate on the other side of the River, the Name whereof I was not able to learn. Its Inhabitants are *Benjans*, and *Jentives*, the first of which live by Trading, the last are Husbandmen. From this City you pass through the Villages of *Morel*, *Sappero*, *Belour*, to the Town of *Werad*, 10 Lgs from *Tamba*, and 9 Lgs from the Mountains of *Balagatta*; near which is the Village of *Patan*, famous for a certain Robber nam'd *Hiewogby*, who lived there, and when pursued, had his inaccessible retreating Places in the Mountains. From *Werad* to the Village of *Helewacko*, which lies upon a River, are 3 Lgs: This River comes as far as the City of *Chaury*, 36 Lgs distant from this Village, unto which it had given its Name. Hence to the Village of *Gattamatta* lying within the Mountains of *Balagatta*, are 3 Lgs, and 3 more to the Village of *Pory*, seated at the foot of the craggy part of the Mountain. Thence to the Village of *Camburley*, are 2 Lgs, and as many hence to that of *Chipolone*; the last of which lies upon the River *Choyhbeer*, which joining its Current with that which runs by *Helewacko* (and bears the same Name) is the ordinary Passage by Water to *Dabul*, being 16 Lgs from it.

Ballowra. *Oeren* and *Isselampour.* *Calliar.* *Qualampour.* *Domo.* *Tamba.* *Werad.*

1639. The City of *Dabul* is seated upon the River *Helemacko*, at 17 deg. 40 min. on this side of the Line, being one of the most ancient Cities of the Kingdom of *Decam*; but is now-a-days without either Gates or Walls, defended only on the River side by two Batteries. As you enter the River you see to the left hand a Wood, and near it a Castle, as also a white Tower, which serves for a *Pagode*, but is a good direction to the Pilots; its entrance being none of the best, by reason of a certain Sand-bank at the very Mouth of it, which at low Water is quite dry; the only safe way to escape it, is to keep to the South side, there at low Water you have 5 or 6 fathom Water, tho' at the very Mouth you have not above 12 or 14 foot. Within a Lg before you come to the River, is very safe riding for Ships, tho' the Road in the Bay of *Zanquizara*, 4 Lgs thence, is incomparably better. The Harbour of *Ceitapour*, the most excellent on all that Coast lies 12 Lgs thence, the Vessels being sheltred here by an adjacent Island against all Winds, it lies at 17 deg. 10 min. and 20 Lgs from *Goa*. 3 Lgs from the said Harbour lies the City of *Rasapour*, one of the best Maritime Towns of the Kingdom of *Decam*, and 19 Lgs thence is the Bay of *Wingurla*, a very convenient Haven. It is 3 Lgs from *Islas Quemadas*. Thus much of the Geographical Description of the Kingdom of *Decam*.

The City of *Dabul*.

Rasapour.

We will now come to its Inhabitants, which are either *Benjans* or *Mahometans*; the chief Trade of the City of *Dabul* is in Salt, and Pepper brought thither from *Orannbammara*; they used formerly to drive a considerable Traffick to *Persia* and the *Red Sea*, but they send but few Ships thither now.

The ordinary Custom pay'd here is 3 *l.* 10 *s. per Cent.* but the *English* pay only one Moyety of it; tho' the greatest part of the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Decam*, or *Cuncam*, are *Benjans*, yet are they not so averse to Flesh as the others in the *Indies*, for they will feed upon any Flesh except upon that of an Ox, Cow, Bouffler and Swine; for the last they have an absolute Abomination, and the Ox and Cow are in great Veneration with them. In their Life and Conversation, Marriages, Purifications, and other Ceremonies, they follow the footsteps of the other *Benjans*. Their Habitations are only Cottages of Straw, the Doors being so low, that one can't go in without stooping. Their Furniture amounts to no more than a Mat to sleep upon, and in the midst of the Hut you see a Pit in the Ground, wherein they beat the Rice. They don't differ in their Habit from the other *Benjans*, except that they wear Wooden Shooes, ty'd up over the Insteps with Leather Straps: But their Children go naked till they are 7 or 8 Years of Age. Their Arms are the same with the *Indosthans*; most of them are Goldsmiths by Trade tho' some also profess Physick and Chirurgery, they have also some Carpenters, Masons and Barbers among them. The chief Commerce of the Kingdom of *Decam*, consists in Pepper and Provisions. The first is transported thence into *Persia*, *Suratte* and *Europe*, as also abundance of Callicoe, with the Latter they furnish the Neigbouring Provinces of *Indosthan*, *Golconda*, and *Coromandel*, who fetch good quantities of Silk Stuffs thence. In the Mountains of *Balagatta* much *Lacque* is made, but does not approach in goodness to that of *Guzaratta*; at *Visapour* are abundance of Jewellers that deal in Pearls, but they are not so cheap here as in some other Places.

The *Portugueſe* have a considerable Trade in this Kingdom, its Frontiers reaching within 4 Lgs of *Goa*. There are a certain sort of People call'd *Venesars* in *Decam*, whose chief business is to buy up vast quanties of Wheat and Rice here, and to carry it in great *Caravans* of 1000 Beasts at a time, to *Indosthan*, and the other Neighbouring Countries; they carry their Families along with them, their Wives being so expert and brave in managing of the Bow, that they serve them for a Guard against the *Rasboutes* and other Robbers.

The Venesars.

Two sorts of Money are current in *Decam*, the *Larins* or *Laris*, which come from *Persia*, and the *Pagodes*; 8 of the first make a *Pagode*, which is equivalent to 10 *Laris* of *Dabul*. Their Copper Coin is called *Bisarniques*, 9 whereof go to a *Peise*, and 18 of these to a *Laris*; besides which each City, nay each Village of Note has its peculiar Coin, which together with the counterfeit Coin, breeds no small confusion.

The Money of Decam.

Their Weights are the same with those of *Guzaratta*, except that 20 *Macns* of *Suratte* make 27 in *Decan*. The ordinary *Mann* consisting of 40 *Ceeres*, and 1 *Copeyses* make 27 pounds each of which has 2 marks. They have a particular weight for Pepper call'd *Goemy*, weighing 12 *Macns*, 4 *Macns* making 100 weight, and 20 a *Candy*. The King of *Decam* or *Visapour* is a Tributary to the *Great Mogul*, tho' it be suppos'd he can raise 200000 Men; and these Kings have had considerable Wars with the *Portugueſe*, from whom they took twice the City of *Goa*, 1586. but at last finding the War destructive to their Commerce came to a Composition with them, which lasted till 1638. when the *Portugueſe* having seiz'd some of the King of *Decam*'s Ships, which contrary to their agreement were carrying Pepper to *Mecca* and *Persia*, they came again to Hostilities.

1639.

The King of *Decam*'s Strength.

The King of *Decam* is famous for his great Artillery, of which he has greater store than any of the *Indian* Princes, and among the rest one great piece of brass Cannon, the Ball whereof weigh'd 800 weight, and required 540 pound of fine Powder. The Caster of it was an *Italian*.

His Artillery.

But to return to our Voyage, early in the Morning *Jan.* 7. we came before the City *Bacim*, belonging to the *Portugueſe*, where we staid some hours in expectation of a certain Jesuit we were to carry to *Goa*, but he not coming, we continued our Course, but were scarce got a Lg before we saw a *Portugueſe* Frigot come after us, we struck our Sails till she came near us, and found her to be a Vessel that came on purpose to go along with us under *English* Colours, for fear of being interrupted by the *Dutch*; she brought us some Presents, *viz.* 3 Oxen, some Sheep, Oranges, Citrons, and Bread from the Governor.

Jan. 9. We sail'd with a North Wind by the Isles of *Bandera* and *Bambay*, which stretch'd along the Coast from *Bacim* to *Visapour*. The last has a good Road for Anchorage, and is of a pretty large extent.

Bacim.

Jan. 10. We sail'd by *Rasapour* within 2 Lgs of *Goa*, and in the Afternoon by the City of *Fingerla*, (where the *Dutch* have a Settlement) 4 Lgs from *Goa*, and in the Evening came in sight of the Isles about *Goa*, and of the 2 Castles that secure that Harbour.

Jan. 11. We came to an Anchor under the Fort *Deguard*, which lies not above a Mile from the City of *Goa*; We saw 6 Galleons and a Carrack in the Haven. Soon after came aboard us a *Portugueſe* Captain to Complement the *English* President in the Vice-Roy's Name, and immediately after the Commodore of the Galleons; the Harbour of *Goa* was then block'd up by 12 *Dutch* Ships, notwithstanding which we saw coming in a Caravan consisting of 300 small Coasting Vessels, laden with Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, Sugar, Rice, Fruits and Preserves, besides abundance of Provisions.

Come to *Goa*.

The *English* President, whose Business here was chiefly with the Overseer of the Exchequer, went to pay him a visit, his Trumpets sounding all the way as he went up the River, who received him with great Demonstrations of Friendship, because they had known one another long before; Being thence carried to his Lodgings, he desired, and had Audience given him immediately by the Vice-Royal. His Palace lying on the River side, we found divers of his Gentlemen there, to receive and Conduct us into the Hall of Audience, in the Antichamber of which, (where we saw divers good Pictures of the Princes of *Europe*) we saw his Guards standing in two Files. The Vice-Roy himself was Clad in Black, and so were all his Courtiers, and at the coming in of the President, rose out of his Chair, till the other was sate down. After some stay, the President was Reconducted to the Water-side by the same Gentlemen, that brought us thither, as we pass'd along, we were shewn 12 of the Vice-Roy's Horses, richly accoutred; and a *Biggel*, a Creature much about the Bigness and Colour of a Rene-deer, its Head like a Horse, its Main like an Ass, with Black Cloven Feet, and two Black Horns on his Head. We had scarce dined, when we were crowded with Visitants; most of the Persons of Quality among the *Portugueſe*, and the Deputies of all the Monasteries coming to Complement us, the 10 days we stay'd at *Goa*, being spent in nothing but Feasts and Visits. The most Magnificent Entertainment of all we received from a certain *Portugeſe* Lord, who was then Governour of *Mozambique*; each Course consisted no more than of 4 Dishes, but we had so many of them, and such variety of Meats, Fruits and Preserves, that I scarce ever saw the like in my Life. And to add to the rest, we were serv'd at Table by 4 very handsome *Malacca* Maids.

The *English* President visits the Vice-Roy.

They are Entertain'd at the Prosessed House of the Jesuits.

The

1639. The 16. we were invited to the Profes'd House of the *Jesuites*. It consisted of 150 Fathers, and as many Students, but the Structure which was 4 Stories high, and very spacious, cou'd have contained a much greater number; we pass'd through the Hall, where we found Tables set all along the Walls; with Trenchers, drinking Cups and Earthen pots; In the midst of the Hall we saw another square Table, intended for such of their Society, as were bound over to Penance, upon the account of some trespass or other. Towards the entry stood a Pillar, from whence issued a spout of Water, for the conveniency of washing their Hands. We were thence Conducted into a Noble Apartment richly furnish'd, and adorn'd with Tapistry, where a Table stood ready prepared for us in the midst of the Room, covered with a Noble Cloath, and Fruits and Bread, in Porcelain Dishes, which is here prefer'd before Silver. The Father Provincial having placed the *English* President on his right hand, sat down, and so did the rest of the Company, so that betwixt every 2 sat 2 Jesuits to entertain us; the Meat was likewise served up in Porcelain Vessels as well as the Disert of Tarts, Florentines, March-pains and Preserves.

After Dinner we were brought into several Chambers to take our Repose according to the Custom of the Country; after which we passed into another spacious Hall, where we had the divertisement of Dancing by certain *Indian* Children, bought and brought up in the *Roman Catholick* Religion. There were among other Shews an Entry made by 15 Persons, having in their hands some pieces of a broken Pillar, and divers Garlands of Flowers, wherewith they adorn'd the Pillar, after they had with an exact observance of the Cadence, each in their several turning put it together; and soon after we saw at the top of the Pillar come out a Tulip, which opening of it self by doors, produced the Image of the blessed Virgin, with our Saviour in her Arms, besides which the Pillar opened in several other places, and cast forth (like a Fountain) perfum'd Waters; after which the Dancers took the Pillar to pieces again, and carried it off dancing, as they had brought it in. We had another Entry of 12 young Lads, each playing upon a peculiar Instrument; some Morris-Dancers, and the Ball was concluded with another Entry of 12 Boys dress'd like Apes, who imitated those Creatures in their Leapings and Gestures to the life. They farther told us, that they used these inticements to bring over the *Pagans* and *Mahometans* to the Church, and to divert their Disciples after their Studies.

Jan. 18. We din'd with the Jesuits at their College call'd *Bon-Jesus*. The first thing we observ'd in their Halls, were the Pictures of many Princes and Persons of Quality, that had been of this Society, and the Histories of their Martyrs, among whom we found those of that Faternity that were engaged in the Gun-Powder Plot in *England*; upon which account they made to us an ample Relation of the Sufferings of their Brethren in *Japan*, and the unheard of Cruelties exercised against them, as well as the *Japonese* Christians.

Dine at another Jesuits College.

Thence they brought us into their Church, which for its greatness and sumptuousness may without all comparison challenge the Preference before any Church the Jesuits are Masters of in *Asia*. The High Altar was one of the most Magnificent that ever I beheld of that kind, but that which was dedicated to St. *Francis Xavier*, whom they stile *The Apostle of the Indies*, exceeded the other in Riches. Here we saw his Image drawn to the life upon Wood; and they were pleased to tell us, that his Body was yet to be seen in the same Church, as entire as it was the first minute after his Death; nay, further inform'd us, that the Body of this Saint being hid in the Isle of *Ceylon*, was discovered by its odoriferous scent, which was perceived many Lgs at Sea; in which the good Fathers were not a little deceived, since the scent which is smell'd at a great distance from the Island of *Ceylon*, proceeds from the vast number of Cinnamon Trees which are all over that Island; besides that, this Story does not agree with what *Maphæus*, one of their own Authors, tells us concerning this Saint, *viz.* That after having preach'd the Gospel in the *Indies*, he came to *China*, where he died immediately after his landing; and that the Master of the Vessel, having put his Body in unslack'd Lime, in order to carry his Bones away, this corroding matter did not exert its vertue upon it, but the Body remained entire, and uncorrupted, and had a very odoriferous smell; whereupon it was resolved to carry it to *Goa*, which was done accordingly.

The several cure of St. *Xavier*.

As we were going from the Church to the Refectory, they forgot not to entertain us with the Miracles of this Saint, of his raising the Dead, commanding the Sea and Winds as well as the Sun, the last of which he brought back an hour after Sun-set. We saw in the Hall here Tables for 200 Persons, but only the chiefest din'd with us, the rest waited. Our Entertainment was much the same as in the other College, but we had most excellent Canary given us, and tho' these Fathers have the Reputation of extraordinary Sobriety, yet out of Complaisance to our Company, they were not backward in making the Cup go round, when they perceiv'd we lik'd the Wine. They also carry'd us up into the Steeple, whence we had a full view of all the City, the Sea, the River, and all the circumjacent Country, as far as the Mountain. 1639.

The next Morning 2 of the Fathers came to our Lodgings to shew us the Hospital which is under the inspection of the Jesuits. It is a very large and noble Structure containing as many Chambers, Halls and Galleries, as will conveniently lodge and accommodate 1000 Sick Persons. Each Bed is mark'd with a particular Number, and such as are not taken up, distinguish'd from the rest by a certain Mark. The Kitchin and Apothecaries Shop are very well worth observation. I found the chief Distempers of the Sick here to be the Bloody Flux and Pox. They have this Custom, that as soon as any Patient is past all hopes of Recovery, he is shut up in a Private Room with a Priest, that the rest may not be disturbed by the Groans of a dying Person.

The Hospital of *Goa*.

Hence we went to the Convent of *our Lady* belonging to the *Austin-Friars*, which being built upon a rising ground, makes a most glorious shew at a distance. I delivered to them the Letters of Recommendation I had received from their Brethren at *Ispahan*, which made them treat me with more than ordinary Civilities, shewing me all the rich Copes and Vestments belonging to the Monasteries, and offering all what lay in their Power for my service; the President having by this time received 9000 *l.* due, and received a promise of the Payment of the rest to such of the *English* Merchants as were to stay behind at *Goa*, he gave a splendid Entertainment to all such as had shew'd us any Civilities; and after having taken his leave, the Governor and Commodore of the Galleons sent him a Present of Cinnamon, Canary, Sheep, Fruits, and among the rest a Bottle of Oyl, made of the Flowers of Cinnamon.

The Convent of the *Austin Friars*.

The Vice-Roys Present.

Jan. 20. We left *Goa*, and upon the River met with 100 small Vessels, which came from the Coast of *Malabar*; we were no sooner got out of the River, but we made straight to the *Portuguese* Fleet, and went aboard the Flag Galleon call'd the *Bon-Jesus*, carrying 64 Guns, and 600 Men. She was a very noble Ship, and we were entertain'd with extraordinary Civility by the Commodore, who shew'd us likewise all the other Ships. At parting we had the usual Salute from the whole *Portuguese* Fleet, as also from the Fort *de Guarda*; As soon as the President was come aboard, he return'd them 20 Guns, which the Commodore answered with as many; and so came to an Anchor in the Road, betwixt the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*.

They leave *Goa*.

But before we take our leave of *Goa*, it will not be a-miss to say something of what we found most remarkable in a Place which is the chiefest of all belonging to the *Portuguese* in the *Indies*. It lies in the Kingdom of *Decan*, or *Cuncam*, 15 deg. on this side the Line, in an Island of the same name, which is divided from the Continent only by a River. The *Portuguese* conquer'd it 1510. *Feb.* 16. but lost it again the 30th. of *May* following, and regain'd it once more the 21st. of *Novemb.* in the same Year, when they took it by Storm. It was at that time a very considerable Place of Traffick, though it has much increased both in Bulk and Trade since the *Portuguese* have been Masters of it: On the South side is the Island of *Salsette*, likewise divided from the Continent by a small River; as is the Isle of *Bardes* to the North, where there is safe Anchorage for Ships with all Winds. The Fort *de Guarde* is built at the Foot of a Rock upon which is erected a Tower in form of a Redoubt, which in the Night-time serves for a Beacon to Mariners. From the Mouth of the River to the Harbour are about 2 Lgs, but it has the same breadth all along, tho' in some Places it is so shallow, that in a dry Season there is not above 2 foot Water.

A Description of *Goa*.

1639. The Island of *Goa* is so barren that it produces nothing fit for the Sustenance of Men or Beasts, except a few Fruits in the Gardens, and a slender share of Grass for Lambs and Goats, notwithstanding which they are so plentifully provided with Provisions, from the 2 beforementioned Islands and the Continent, that in spight of the Blockade of the *Dutch*, a Hog was then sold for a Crown, 6 Sucking Pigs, 10 Pullets, or 8 wild Ducks for the same price; but Beef and Mutton is a great rarity here. There is a certain Fountain representing *Lucrece*, out of whose Wound issues forth as much fresh Water as supplies the whole City; the Ships provide themselves with fresh Water out of a Rivulet, which coming out of the Rock falls into the other River near the Castle.

Goa without Walls. The City has no other Defence but the River, having neither Gates nor Walls. The Buildings are generally very handsom, and Persons of Note shew a great deal of Magnificence here, both in their Buildings and Furnitures.

The Inhabitants. The Inhabitants are of 2 sorts; either *Castizes*, or *Mestizes*; the first are such as are born here of *Portuguese* Father and Mother; the second those who were begotten by a *Portuguese* Father and *Indian* Mother; the last are inclining to an Olive colour, and in the third Generation become as black as the Natives of the Country, which is also observable in the fourth Generation of the *Mestizes*, tho' there is not the least mixture among them. The *Portuguese* are distinguished into several Ranks, *Titulados* are those in Publick Employments, *Fidalgos da casa del Rey*, are Gentlemen in Ordinary of the King's Houshold; *Mocos Fidalgos*, are the Sons of the *Titulados*, admitted to Gentility by the King; the *Cavalleros Fidalgos*, and *Escuderos Fidalgos*, are simply Gentlemen; those call'd *Mocos da camra*, or Grooms of the King's Chamber, pass also for Gentlemen. All the rest are *Hombres Honrados*, and *Soldados*; the first of which are Merchants, and appear as great as any Gentlemen, there being scarce any thing here except Taylors and Shoemakers but what are served by Slaves. No Person of Quality ever goes on Foot here, but either on Horseback, in a Litter, or *Gondole* (Boat), one Slave among the rest constantly attending him with an *Umbrello*.

The Pride of the *Portuguese* of *Goa*. The *Portuguese* have always had the Reputation of being a very proud Nation, but those of *Goa* are so to such an excess both in their Gestures and Actions, as is scarce to be express'd; however they are very Ceremonious to one another, to such a punctilio, that if for instance in a Visit, any thing should be omitted that is judged Customary, and belonging to the Person that requires it, such a stain could not be wip'd off without a Cudgeling or blood-shed; with the first they are very liberal towards inferior Persons, if they think them to have been wanting in the respect due to those of a better Rank.

Their Winter Season. The S. W. Winds which begin to blow here towards the end of *June*, bring the Winter Season along with them, which continues for 4 Months all along that Coast, from *Din* as far as the Cape *Comory*; at which time the frequent Tempests make the Sea so turbulent, that there are but few Havens where Ships can ride with safety. This is the more to be admir'd, inasmuch as in the same Months the Coast of *Coromandel*, which extends along the same *Peninsula* on the other side, and lies under the same deg. of Elev. nay, in some Places is not above 20 Lgs distant from the Coast of *Malabar*, is bless'd with the most pleasing Season of all the Year. This is manifest to those who travel from *Cochim* by Land to St. *Thomas*, when they must cross the Mountain of *Balagatta*, which divides this Demi-Isle (as the *Apennine* does *Italy*) and no sooner come to the top of the Mountain, but they see on one side a most clear and temperate Air, and the Country on the other side covered with Waters by the continual Rains and Fogs; the Ships that go from *Ormus* to the Cape of *Rosalgate*, have made the same observation, for no sooner are they pass'd the Cape, but the fair Weather that has attended them thither, changes on a sudden into dreadful Tempests, so that it is evident there are but 2 Seasons in this Country; and the E. and W Winds rule alternatively once a Day; for the *Theremas* or Land-winds coming from the E. blow from Mid-night till Mid-day, but don't reach above 10 Lgs into the Sea, whereas the Sea-winds coming from the W. (call'd *Virasons*) blow all the rest of the day.

Diseases. This so sudden change of the Season, as well as constant variation of the Winds prove the occasion of many Distempers, especially that call'd *Mordexin*, which kills without delay, besides Fevers and Bloody Fluxes, the only Remedy against which here, is bleeding. The Plague is not so much as known in the *Indies*, but the Pox destroys a great number, and above all among the *Portuguese*; for, tho' the Country it self furnishes them with Remedies against this Distemper, yet the inclinations betwixt Men and Women to one another are so strong and violent here, that they won't afford themselves a proper time for the cure of this Disease, which is thus propagated beyond all bounds. As the Women of these Parts have an excessive inclination to white Men, and are always kept under constraint, they will venture very hard to encompass their ends; and to pursue this end, frequently make use of the Herb *Doutro*, *Doutry*, or *Datura* (as it is called by the *Indians*) to stupifie their Husbands Senses, to get an opportunity of enjoying what they so much delight in. This Herb call'd by the *Turks* and *Persians Datula*, is a kind of *Stramonea* according to *Garcias ab horto* and *Christopher d'Acosta*, being somewhat like our Bearsfoot, and growing in the *Indies* in shady places; of this they extract the Juice whilst it is green, or only take the Seed beaten to Powder, and mixt it either with Preserves, or in the Drink of whom they intend to stupifie; which it does effectually for 24 hours, after he has taken it, being deprived of all Sense or Motion, tho' with his Eyes open; unless some cold Water be apply'd to the Soles of his Feet, which recovers him as it were out of a sound sleep. 1639.

The Women. Scarce any *Portuguese* or *Mestize* Women are seen to walk in the Streets, but if they go abroad upon necessary occasions, they are carried in *Palanquins* or Litters, and so closely guarded, that it is impossible to speak to them. They appear abroad richly attired in Velvets, Silks, and Brocado's adorn'd with Jewels and Pearls, tho' at the same time they go at home in their Hair only, with nothing over them but a Callicoe Smock reaching down to the Navel, and a painted Callicoe Petticoat.

Their Fare is not much better, being Rice soak'd in Broath, Salt Fish, Mangoes, and such like Food. They have certain black Earthen drinking Vessels, call'd *Gorgolettes*, which have Pipes coming up as high as the Brim, by which they suck the Water out of the Bottles. As Chastity is a Vertue here among the Women, produced rather by Necessity than Inclination, so their Husbands are extreamly Jealous of them, notwithstanding which they will contrive all possible means to have their satisfaction in spight of the danger that attends it: This must in a great measure be attributed to their idle Life, having nothing to do to spend their time but in chewing of *Betele*, and Cloves, and Nut-megs. A remarkable instance of this affection is the Love the *Indian* Women bear to the Children begotten by an *European*, which is such, that they would rather die than part with them.

The *Portuguese* Soldiers at *Goa*. The Soldiers of *Goa* live at a very odd rate, being not listed under any certain Companies or Officers, unless in time of War, but in time of Peace are at liberty to seek their Fortune where they best can, as having no other Pay but what perhaps their former Officers allots them voluntarily towards their Subsistance, that they may keep them at hand upon all occasions. You shall see 10 or 12 of them live in a Hut, having not above 2 or 3 Suits of Clothes among them all, which they wear by turns when they go abroad a begging or seeking their Livilihood where they can best meet with it.

Their Marriages and Christenings. The *Portuguese* shew a great deal of Magnificence in their Marriages and Christenings. The Bridegroom accompany'd by all his Friends and Relations, goes to Church on Horse-back, the Bride following him in a Litter; both have two God-fathers, who presenting them to the Priest after the Benediction is given, they return in the same manner to the House, but none are permitted to enter with the young Couple except the God-fathers, who go all together into a Balcony to give the Company thanks for this Favour. Their Christenings are performed with the same Pomp, save that they carry also an Ewer with a clean Napkin, a Salt-seller, a Silver Bason surrounded with Flowers, and a Wax Candle in which is put a piece of Gold or Silver for the Priest: But the God-father and Midwife are always carried in a Litter.

Their Slaves. The *Portuguese* entertain a great number of Slaves of both Sexes, them they employ both in their Retinue and about all other Businesses; as for instance, in selling of Fruits and other things, when they will be sure to pitch upon handsom Wenches, which draw sooner the Customers to them, and consequently sell at a dearer rate; all that the Slaves get belongs to their Masters, even their Children, whom they either keep or sell like Cattle, unless the Fathers redeem them

1639. them within 8 or 10 Days after they are born. They keep them at a very easie rate, their Diet being miserable, and their Clothing only a little course Callicoe to cover their Privy Parts.

The Inhabitants of the Country.

The Inhabitants of the circumjacent Country are *Pagans*, and generally *Benjans*, who dwell in Straw Huts, with little Doors, which serve also for Windows; their whole Furniture consists in Matts made of Rushes, which serve both for Beds and Tables, a Drinking Cup and Oil Pitcher made of Fig-leaves, their daily food being Rice.

They are so Superstitious, that if after they have said their Prayers, they go abroad, and meet with a Crow, they return home, and stir no more that Day. Upon the Roads they constantly pay their Devotions to the *Pagodes*, which the *Portugueſe* connive at; their Inquisition going no farther than to Christians, or such as have been so.

Their Ceremonies and manner of living is the same with those of *Decan*. One thing is remarkable among them, that their Physicians are in so great esteem at *Goa*, that they are generally preferr'd before the *Portugueſe* themselves, and are permitted to have their Umbrellos carry'd along with them, a Privilege allow'd here to none but Persons of Quality. They will not eat with any body except of their own Sect; not even in a Journey, tho' they should be driven to the greatest extremity. There live at *Goa* many *Decanins* and *Canarins*, who keep Shops there, and exchange their Provisions and other Commodities they bring, for Porcelain, Velvet, Damask, *China* Commodities, Silks and Callicoes. They have also many Jewellers, Goldsmiths, Gravers, and other Artizans of this kind at *Goa*, who exceed all the *Europeans* in that kind.

The *Canarins* live either upon Husbandry or Fishing; some maintain themselves by managing the Coco-trees, some by washing and whitning of Callicoes. The Husbandmen furnish the City with Fowl, Milk, Fruit and Eggs. Their Wives are so hardy, that they never make use of a Mid-wife, and are no sooner delivered but they wash the Child themselves, wrap it up in a few Fig Leaves, and go about their business again as before, which makes them so strong and healthy, that they frequently live to 100 years of age. They are so excellent at swiming, that nothing is more common than to see them overturn in their little Boats, which hold no more than one Person, and to swim ashore without any harm, or loss of the Boat. They burn their Dead, but their Women are under no obligation to burn themselves with their Husbands; but only make a Vow of Widowhood.

Good Swimmers.

The Jews of *India*.

Here are two sorts of *Jews*, either born in the *Indies*, both by Father and Mothers side, or come hither from *Palestine*, the last of which commonly speak good *Spanish*; they enjoy a perfect liberty of Conscience, and have their own Synagogues.

The *Mahometans* here Trade most in Spices to the *Red-Sea*. The *Portugueſe* Traffick to *Bengala*, *Pegu*, *Malacca*, *China* and *Cambaya* in *Guzuratta*. From 7 a Clock in the Morning, till 9 (when the Heat begins to encrease) you see all Persons of Quality and Gentlemen meet in the Market-place to divert themselves, partly with hearing of News, or else to see what is to be bought and sold there; Merchants and Tradesmen have their peculiar Streets, or Stations assign'd them according to their different Professions; But their greatest Profit is in exchanging, and buying or selling of Money, especially the *Spanish Ryals*, and *Persian Laris*.

Their Money.

As to their Coin, it is of divers sorts; their smallest Money is of Tin, having a Globe on the one side, and on the other 2 Arrows croswise; 8 of these *Basoracques* make a *Ventin*, 5 whereof make a *Tanghe*; 5 *Tanghes* make a *Seraſin* of Silver, which makes 300 *Reis*, six *Tanghes* go to a *Pardai*. The *Seraſin* has on one side St. *Sebastian*, and on the other a Quiver full of Arrows. There is also a *Seraſin* of Gold coin'd formerly at *Ormus*, the Metal of which exceeds in fineness any other Coin in the *Indies*. They have also *Simeones* of 6 *Tanghes*, and *Pagodes* of 14, 15, and 16 *Tanghes*.

Customs.

Foreigners are obliged to pay 8 *per Cent.* of all Commodities imported or exported, but great Moderation is used in the Taxations; besides that, if a Merchant happen to export the same Commodities for want of Sale, they are allowed to transport them without paying any further Custom; they have also a way of entring the Commodities they buy at *Goa*, under the Sellers Name, and so it passes Custom-free.

The Vice-Roy who was there at our time, was one *D. Pedro de Silva*, who was of no great Aspect, but was for the rest served in the same State as a King. This Office is never continued above 3 Years in one Person, which is sufficient to enrich him even to a very high Degree: For he has the Management of the King's whole Revenue, who is at the Charge of keeping his Court; and in the Progress he makes once a Year for 60 or 80 Lgs round, he receives vast Presents from the Neighbouring Princes and Governors; for though he has his Council of State, and Courts of Law and Equity, yet is he the sole Judge of all Civil Causes, unless they be of very great consequence, when an Appeal lies to the King; but in Criminal Cases no appeal is admitted, if the Person be under the degree of a Gentleman; for these must be sent with the Information brought against them to *Portugal*. The Vice-Roy at his Arrival, always lands first in the Isle of *Bardes*, from whence he sends his Deputies to his Predecessor, who thereupon quits the Palace. 1639. The Vice-Roy of *Goa*.

Jan. 22. The *English* Chief Director having sent away the 2 Ships that came along with us, to *Suratte*, to carry thither the Money he had received at *Goa*, we hois'd Sail; in the Evening we saw the whole *Dutch* Fleet under Sail, whence we judged that the Admiral, whose Name was *Van Ceulen*, would have come aboard of us, as he had promised he would; but we lost sight of them by Night. They continue their Journey.

Jan. 23. In the Morning we had sight of them again, and supposed that they steer'd their Course towards *Ceylon*, to assist that King against the *Portugueſe*. About Noon we found our selves out of sight of the at Land at 13 deg. Lat. We intended to go for the Coast of *Malabar*, upon information that an *English* Ship richly laden, coming from *Bantam* was taken by these after a brave defence, in which it had blown up above 1200 of the *Moors* after they were entred the Ship; our intent was to redeem the Master and the Mate with 14 Prisoners that were taken aboard her, but coming the same night to an Anchor in the Harbor of *Cananor*, we found three *English* Ships, the *Dragon*, the *Catharine*, and the *Seymour*, Commanded by Captain *Weddel*, a very experienced Sea-Officer, who had served at the taking of *Ormus*, by whom being inform'd that most of those Prisoners were set at Liberty, we resolv'd to leave the Coast of *Malabar*.

The City of *Cananor* is inhabited by *Malabars*, a People that inhabit that Coast from the City of *Goa* as far as the Cape *Comory* or *Comorin*. But the *Portugueſe* have a good Fleet at *Cananor*. All that Tract of Land is very fertile in Spices, but especially in Pepper, which is esteem'd better even than that which is brought from *Sumatra* and *Java*. They go for the most part naked, except that they cover their Privy Parts, have holes in their Ears, and are like the *African Moors*, except that their Lips are not quite so thick. Their Hair they tie in a knot upon the Crown of their Heads, and let the Beard grow without any trimming, which makes them appear more like Monsters than Men; neither is their internal Disposition unanswerable to their external Appearance, being in effect a very uncivilized and barbarous Generation, and making, for the most part, Profession either of Piracy or Soldiery. They are rather fierce than brave, handle their Bows and Arrows, as also their Swords and Bucklers with sufficient dexterity. They have their particular King, who being of the Sect of the *Bramans*, is also their High Priest, and stiles himself *Zamorin*, (Emperor) of *Cananor*, and *Calicut*. The Malabars.

The *Nayers* are the Gentlemen of the Country, who by their Bracelets and Rings are distinguished from the *Polyas* or vulgar sort; these last being obliged to go out of their way, and pay them a peculiar respect as they pass by. I was told, That at the time of the first Settlement of the *Portugueſe* in those Parts, the *Nayers* pretended to have the same honour from the *Portugueſe*, which these (who were no less proud than the others) refusing to comply with, it was agreed the difference should be decided by a single Combat, betwixt a *Portugueſe* and a *Nayer*, in which the first having got the better, the *Nayers* ever since pay the same respect to the *Portugueſe*, as the *Polyas* do to them. They have among other Privileges this, that they may freely enter the Houses of their Comrades, and please themselves with their Wives and Daughters, the Signal being to leave their Sword and Buckler at the Door, which done, no body, not the Master of the House will enter to disturb them: But a *Nayer* will never degrade himself so far as to have any Com- The *Nayers*.

merce

1639. merce with the Wife of a *Polyas*. The *Malabars* uſe Bodkins wherewith they write upon the Bark of Co-co-Trees; their Characters being quite different from thoſe of the other *Indians*, are underſtood only by the *Bramans*. The King of *Calicut* never eats or drinks any thing but what has been preſented before to his *Pagode* or Idol; The Inheritance to the Crown does not fall to the Son, but his Siſters Son, foraſmuch as the *Bramans* here have the firſt Fruits of the Brides Virginity, the Children are ſuppoſed to be begotten by them.

As to the City of *Cochim*, notice muſt be taken, that there are two of that Name in the ſame Kingdom of *Cochim*, one whereof is inhabited by *Malabars*, and lies upon a great River; the laſt, of which we now ſpeak, lies upon the Coaſt, and is under the ſubjection of the *Portugueſe*, at 20 deg. on this ſide of the Line; having the Sea to the W. and being ſurrounded on the Land ſide with a Foreſt of certain black Trees, which the Inhabitants hollow out and make Boats of them, and will go with them as far as *Goa*. The entrance of the Harbour is Rocky, and conſtantly dangerous. The Rains of the Winter Seaſon which ſwell the Neighbouring Brooks, force ſo much Earth during that time into the Mouth of the Harbour, that it is quite ſtop'd up, and makes it quite unpaſſable till the Wind which changes with the Seaſon, carries the ſame into the Sea. The *Portugueſe* buy the Pepper here from the King at a certain rate, who is one of the moſt Potent Princes of all thoſe Parts, being able to bring into the Field 100000 Men, moſt *Nayers*; Who are obliged to appear in Arms at their own Charge.

The King of *Cochin.* His Subjects are ſomewhat more civilized than the other *Malabars*, but obſerve the ſame Rule in their Marriages concerning the *Bramans*, and conſequently in reſpect of their Succeſſion. The chief Trade of *Cochin* is in Pepper, Ginger, and Cinnamon.

Emperor of the *Malabars.* The *Malabars* had formerly but one King, till *Sarama Perymal*, who alone commanded on all that Coaſt from *Goa* to *Comori*, having embraced the *Mahometan* Religion, and reſolved to ſpend his Days near the Sepulchre of the Prophet, divided his Dominions among his neareſt Friends, under condition, that the Kings of *Cananor*, *Cochin*, and *Chaul*, ſhould pay homage to the King of *Calicut*, upon whom, for that reaſon, he beſtowed the Title of *Zamorin*, or Emperor: But all this time the King of *Cochin* is much more Potent than he.

Jan. 26. We left *Cananor*, and the next Day diſcover'd 18 Sail of Ships, which making up towards us, we began to ſuſpect for Pirates, as indeed they proved. We had juſt time enough to put our ſelves in a Poſture of Defence, when they began to come pretty near us, but did not think fit to attack us till Midnight, when the Moon ſhining very bright, they ſurrounded us on all ſides, but were ſo warmly received, that we ſunk 2, and diſabled 3 or 4 more, which made them think of retreating; We paſs'd that Night in ſight of the Fort of *Cochin*, and the 28th. ſaw no more than 14 of theſe Pirates following us at a diſtance; we continued our Courſe with a fair Gale, in ſight of the Cape of *Comorin*, to the S. E. of us, being the moſt Southern part of the *Indies*, known among the Ancients by the Name of *India*, on this ſide the *Ganges*. The next following Night the *Malabars* made a ſhew as if they intended to venture the other bruſh with us; but a Volley of Shot, tho' without Bullets, ſet them a going, ſo that we heard no more of them.

An Engagement with the *Malabar* Pirates.

Paſs in ſight of Cape *Comorin.*

The Iſle of *Ceylon.* The 29. We came within ſight of the Iſle of *Ceylon*, at the very point of which we were becalm'd for three Weeks. This Iſle extends from the S. E. to the N. E. betwixt the two Capes of *Comorin* and *Negapatan* (at 11 deg. towards the Coaſt of *Coromandel*) about 10 Lgs from the Continent, its length being 60 Lgs, and its breadth 40. its circumference 250, and according to the report of the Inhabitants, its compaſs was much larger before the violence of the Sea had carried away a large part of Land on the ſide towards *Comorin*. It is the richeſt and moſt fertile of all the *Indian* Iſlands, which I ſuppoſe to be the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, tho' I am not ignorant that ſome of our Modern Geographers make the Iſle of *Sumatra* the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, of which more hereafter.

The *Taprobane* of the Ancients.

Its Deſcription. I did not without reaſon call the Iſle of *Ceylon* the richeſt and moſt fertile of all the *Indian* Iſlands; it being unqueſtionable that it not only has great plenty of every thing the other Iſlands produce, but beſides this whole Foreſts of Orange, Limon, and Cinnamon Trees, which emit their fragrant ſmell at a great diſtance into the Sea; Beſides that there is no precious Stone but what it affords, except Diamonds; Pearls they take alſo here in abundance, but are not altogether ſo fine as thoſe of *Baharam*, in recompence for which it affords the fineſt Ivory in the World. 1639.

The firſt diſcovery of it is owing to the *Portugueſe*, 1506. when *Lawrence*, Son of *Franciſco Almacida* made a Treaty with one of the Kings of the Iſland, ſince which time they took care to fortifie themſelves in the Town of *Colombo*, at 7 deg. on this ſide of the Line, but were chaſed thence, and conſequently from the whole Iſland by the *Dutch*, 1657. The *Dutch* did not Traffick here till 1602. under the Reign of *Fimala Derma Suriada*, King of *Candy*, the moſt Potent, and in a manner, the only Sovereign Prince of the whole Iſland; who aſcended the Throne in a very extraordinary manner; For the Throne of *Candy* being become vacant by the Death of *Derma*, who from a Baſtard was advanced to that high Dignity, the *Portugueſe* took this opportunity to eſtabliſh themſelves in *Ceylon*; but *Fimala Derma Suriada*, the Son of one of the chiefeſt Men of the Kingdom, who had been Educated among the *Portugueſe*, and baptized, and by their Intereſt advanced to the Dignity of High-Conſtable, diſliking the encroachments of a Nation whom he knew would be in a little time for graſping at all, had ſo gain'd the Affection of the Soldiery, that he prevail'd with them to kill all the *Portugueſe* in the Town of *Candy*, and to declare open War againſt them, which being done, he was by the *Cingales* (Nobility) declared King. The *Portugueſe* had among them a certain Princeſs, the next Heireſs to the Crown, who was baptized and named *Catharine*; *Pedro Lopez de Souſa*, being the General of *Malacca*, for the *Portugueſe*, reſolving to enter that Kingdom with a good Army, ſtrengthning his Intereſt, brought the ſaid *D. Katharina* along with him, and having cauſed her to be declared lawful Heireſs of the Kingdom of *Candy*, made himſelf Maſter of the Capital City of the ſame Name; but being cloſely block'd up by *Fimala Derma*, who intercepted his Foragers, and cut off his Proviſions, found himſelf conſtrain'd to come to a Battle, 1590. in which he was put to the Rout, he himſelf kill'd upon the ſpot, and *D. Katharina* taken Priſoner by *Fimala*, who afterwards to ſtrengthen his Title to the Crown, married her.

First diſcovered by the *Portugueſe.*

How *Fimala Derma* aſcended the Throne of *Candy.*

A Battle betwixt the *Portugueſe* and thoſe of *Candy.*

Four Years after the *Portugueſe* made a ſecond Attempt againſt *Candy*, but not with much better ſucceſs, for tho' they were not abſolutely routed, yet were they ſo haraſſed, that they did not think fit any longer to be at open War with them. The *Dutch* at their firſt Settlement had not much better Fortune, for tho' the King received, 1604. their Admiral with a great deal of Civility, yet in the next following Year having commanded their Vice-Admiral with 50 of his Men to be put to death, the *Dutch* laid aſide their deſign of Trading there till having found an opportunity of gaining the Fort *de Punto de Gallo* from the *Portugueſe*, and fortifying the Harbour of *Negambo*, they began to eſtabliſh themſelves there, and at laſt accompliſhed it by the taking of *Colombo* from the *Portugueſe*.

A ſecond Engagement.

The *Dutch* Eſtabliſhment in *Ceylon.*

The King of *Candy* is the moſt Potent and moſt Abſolute of all the other Princes in the Iſle of *Ceylon*; He takes great delight as well in the *European* way of Building as in their Fortifications. This Kingdom is ſituated all along that River, upon which lies the City of *Vintane*, which ſerves for a Harbour to the King's Ships.

The Kingdom of *Candy.*

The Inhabitants reſemble the *Malabars*, but that they are not quite ſo black; they generally go naked to the Navel, except that ſome uſe *Portugueſe* Doublets; they alſo wear Pendants in their Ears, and Ponyards on their Sides.

Its Inhabitants.

The Women likewiſe go with their Breaſts uncovered, but for the reſt are very modeſt both in their Cloathing and Converſation; dreſſing their Heads much like the *European* Women, with their Hair laid cloſe behind, and tied in Treſſes. They appear in Gold and Silver colours, with Rings upon their Hands, Feet and Legs, beſet with Precious Stones. They live conveniently enough in their Houſes, their Wives being good Houſe-wives, and eſpecially well skill'd in Cookery; the *Cingales* or Nobility are ſo much addicted to an idle life, and effeminacy, that they are neither fit for War nor any thing elſe.

Women.

Ceylon is beyond all diſpute the moſt plentiful Iſle of all the *Indies*; Nothing is to be named either of Proviſions or Fruits, but what is very cheap here; tho' they are *Pagans* they eat of all things in general, not

Fertility.

even

1639. even excepting Pork (unless it be the Flesh of an Ox or Cow. The *Mahometans* enjoy a full Liberty among them, and the *Pagan* Inhabitants abstain from Wine as well as they.

Religion. They have a great Veneration for their *Bramans*, marry their Maids at 10 or 12 years of age, and burn their Dead. *Fimala Derma*, whom we spoke of before, had got as much Christianity as could be supposed to be got among the *Indian Portugueſe*, which he soon laid aside, so that his Successors continued in their Idolatry. Some of the Inhabitants worship the Head of an Elephant cut in Wood or Stone, who, they say, outdo Mankind in Judgment, and therefore pray for Wisdom to them. They lay up every Day a certain share of their Provisions in a Basket kept for that purpose, for their *Pagodes*, and hold it as a point of Faith, that the World will not perish, as long as their Grand Temples, which may be discovered at a great distance at Sea, betwixt *Punto de Gallo* and *Monte Calo* shall remain standing. They have another Opinion concerning a certain Mountain in this Island, named *Pico d' Adam*, where they say the first Man was created, and that the Spring on the top of the Mountain arose from the Tears *Eve* shed for *Abel*, and that the Isle of *Ceylon* was the Terrestrial Paradise. This Tincture of Christianity seems to give us sufficient hopes, that among a People docile enough in themselves, the Christian Religion might be established, if People were as forward in the work of Salvation, as to gain Riches.

Kings Tributary to the Portugueſe. There is scarce any other King in the Isle of *Ceylon*, except he of *Candy*, but what pays some small Tribute by way of acknowledgment to the *Portugueſe*, of which the King of *Matecalo* pays no more than 50 Ducats *per Annum*. *Ceylon* affords very good Pepper; but their Staple Commodity is Cinnamon. The Kingdom of *Candy* has certainly both Gold and Silver Mines, but are not cultivated, by an expreſs Inhibition from the King; Neither must their Precious Stones be sold to any but the King, but as they have such plenty of them, that they are found among the Gravel that is washed down from the adjacent Mountains, and carried along with the Currents of the Water, so it is impossible to prevent their being sold under hand to Strangers.

Gold and Silver Mines.

This Isle also furnishes sufficient store of Timber and Stone for building, of Corn, Oil and Wine, if they would take the pains to cultivate the Vines, Cotton, divers Roots for the use of Dyers, Ginger, Cardamom, Mirobalans, Corcoma, Nutmegs, and divers Medicinal Drugs; and of Rice they have such store, that they furnish the whole Coast of *Coromandel* with that Commodity. The *Dutch* buy the Cinnamon here at the rate of 128 Livres the hundred weight.

The distance and situation of the chief Maritime Places of *Ceylon*, are thus: From *Punto de Gallo* to the W. of *Alican* 9 Lgs, *Verberin* 1 Lg, *Calutre* 3 Lgs, *Colombo* 6 Lgs, *Nogombo* 5 Lgs, *Le Gilan* 5 Lgs, *Putalon* 10 Lgs, *Mannar* 18 Lgs, to the Coast of *Matecala*, on the East side of *Belingen* 4 Lgs, *Mature* 2 Lgs, *Dundule* 1 Lg, *Tammadur* 1 Lg. *Halpilana* 2 Lgs and a half, *Attalle* 3 Lgs, *Velecche* 9 Lgs, *Tansilir* 7 Lgs, *Trincoli* 12 Lgs, *Matecalo* 5 Lgs, and thence to the River *Trinquamale* 10 Lgs. From *Colombo* to *Candy*, you must go by the way of *Tranquero grande*, *i. e.* the great Fort 3 Lgs, *Maluana* 2 Lgs, *Gronably* 3 Lgs, *Settavecca* 3 Lgs, *Gronenelle* 2 Lgs, *Mumera tuate* 4 Lgs, *Duiely* 3 Lgs, *Matappety* 2 Lgs, *Alteonnar* 1 Lg, *Ganiattany* 1 Lg, *Ballene* 1 Lg, *Cady* 1 Lg. From *Matecalo* to *Candy* you go to *Aldea de Nore* 1 Lg, *Occatoty* 2 Lgs, *Viador* 2 Lgs, *Neguritti* 5 Lgs, *Nilvale* 2 Lgs, *Vegamme* 4 Lgs, *Vintane* 6 Lgs, *Vendro* 5 Lgs, *Candy* 4 Lgs.

Whilst we were becalm'd near this Isle, I had the opportunity of making an enquiry of our President and some Jesuits who were on board us, and had spent most of their Days in the *Indies*, concerning those Parts I had not seen, according to whose Relation I thought fit to insert the following account.

The Malabars. Near the Cape of *Comorin*, along the Coast of *Malabar*, for a Tract of near 140 Lgs by Sea, extend the Isles (by some accounted 1000 in number) call'd *Maldivus*, or *Maldivar* by the *Portugueſe*; having the Cape to the N. some of which, being so very low, that they are often subject to Inundations, are not inhabited, others are. The *Malabars* are of Opinion, that they were torn from the Continent by the violence of the tempestuous Waves of the Sea, which in some Places is at so slender a distance from the Continent, that a brisk active Fellow might leap over it. The Capital City which has given its Name of *Maldives* to all the Islands, is built upon 4 small Isles, being the Residence of the King, who commands over all the rest, and a Place of good Trade, tho' they produce naturally scarce any thing but Cocoes, but the Industry of the Inhabitants supplies, in some measure, the defect of Nature here, there being not any Nation in the *Indies* more ingenious in making Garments of Silk and Thread (brought thither from the Continent) than they. 1639.

The Coast of Coromandel. The Coast of *Coromandel* being the most Eastern part of the *Indies* on this side of the *Ganges*, is divided from the *Malabar* Coast by the Mountain of *Balagatta*, its extent being 100 Lgs along the Coast from the Cape *Comorin*, or rather the Point of *Negapatam*, as far as the River *Nagund*, and the Town of *Masulypatan*. As it has excellent good Harbours, and the best Roads for Anchorage in the *Indies*; so it serves for a safe retreat for such Vessels as are by the tempestuous Winter Season forced from the Coast of *Guzuratta* thither; where the Climate and Weather is very calm and benign at the same time.

The Story of St. Thomas. The *Portugueſe* are Masters of the Town of St. *Thomas* on this Coast, at 13 deg. 32 min. on this side the Line; they say, that when they first possess'd themselves of *Cochim* and *Cranganor*, the Inhabitants of this Coast, who were Christians of the *Greek* Religion, implored the Protection of the King of *Portugal* to back this Tradition, That St. *Thomas*, one of the 12 Apostles, after he had taught the Gospel in the Kingdom of *Narsinga*, Petition'd the King to give him leave to build a Chapel for the performing of Devotion, which being strongly opposed by the *Pagan* Priests, it happened that a prodigious piece of Timber being lodg'd at the very entrance of the Harbour of the City of *Meliapour*, which hindred the free passage of all Ships, a trial was made by Elephants and all other ways, even by consulting the Magicians themselves, to remove it thence, but in vain; whereupon the King issuing his Proclamation, by which he offered a considerable Reward to such as would undertake to clear the Harbour; St. *Thomas* offered his Service, reserving to himself no other Reward than the piece of Timber: The Day appointed for this purpose being come, and the Saint appearing without any Instruments to effect it, than his Girdle, which he fastened to the Beam, all there present laugh'd at his endeavours; but he no sooner began to pull, than that vast piece of Timber, which could not be moved before by the strength of so many Elephants, followed without the least difficulty, at which the King being surprised to the highest degree, permitted him to build the Chapel according to his request; which so incens'd the *Bramans*, that they set certain People to Murder him, whilst he was at his Devotions in the said Chapel.

The Indian Christians.

Maffeus says, that by special command of *John* King of *Portugal*, the Bones of this Saint were search'd for, and found on the Coast of *Coromandel*, and thence transfer'd to *Goa*, where a very fine Church was erected to his Memory. On the other hand both *Rufinus* and *Socrates* affirm, that St. *Thomas* suffered Martyrdom at *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia*, and that they used to go on Pilgrimage to his Sepulchre there. The Town of St. *Thomas*, tho' none of the biggest, yet is well built, most of the Houses being of Stone; the Church has no Steeple, it contains about 600 or 700 Inhabitants, *Portugueſe* and *Mestizes*, and some *Armenian* Merchants; the *Indians*, *Pagans*, and *Mahometans* living at a place called *Meliapour*, seated upon a Rivulet 2 Lgs to the N. of St. *Thomas*, which was formerly the Capital City of the Kingdom, but is now reduced to a very indifferent condition. *Lib. 8. Hist. Indic. Hist. Eccles.* *Meliapour.*

From *April* to *September*, whilst the S. and S. W. Winds blow upon this Coast; the Road here is very safe, but all the remaining part of the Year, small Vessels are obliged to shelter themselves within the River of *Paleacatte*, and the greater in the Harbor of *Negapatan*. There is 5 fathom Water within Cannon-shot of the Town, but makes a very ill Landing-place, by reason of the roughness of the Sea.

The *Dutch* have a considerable Traffick on this Coast, but especially at *Petlapouli*, or *Nisapatan*, and at *Paleacatte*, where they have the Fort *Gueldria*.

This whole Country was formerly divided into 3 separate Kingdoms, *i. e.* of *Coromandel*, *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*, which is now subject to one Prince, whose Residence is at *Bisnagar*, and sometimes at *Narsinga*.

The

1639.

The Kingdom of *Orixa* begins above the Town of *Masulypatan*, extending from the River of the same name to that of *Guenga*; the *Dutch* include this in the Coast of *Coromandel*. *Masulypatan* and *Golconda* are its 2 chief Cities, the first considerable for Traffick, the last for being the ordinary Residence of its Kings; it produces abundance of Salt, and some Diamonds, among which all that weigh above 5 Carrats belong to the King.

Bengala.

To the North of *Orixa* lies the Kingdom of *Bengala*, whence the Gulph known to the Ancients by the *Sinus Gangeticus*, has got its Name. Their Traffick is in Rice, Sugar, Cotton, Calicoes; but especially in Silk, which for goodness exceeds all the others in the *Indies*. Hence also are brought the finest Canes, and they have another sort of Canes, out of which they make drinking Vessels, and being lacqu'd will hold any liquid Matter, as well as Metal. Here grows a certain Herb, the Stalk of which is of the thickness of a Man's Thumb, having on the Top a large Button like a Taffel, this is spun out, and furnishes Materials for an excellent kind of Stuff, much esteem'd by the *Portugueſe*, who call this Herb *Herba de Bengala*.

The Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants are *Pagans*, leading a very barbarous Life, Thieving and Adultery being their ordinary Vices, tho' severely punish'd; they worship the *Ganges*, out of an Opinion that its Water cleanses them from all their Impurities, which is the reason, that the King of *Narsinga* sends for the Water he washes himself with, from that River.

Pegu.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* borders to the East upon *Bengala*, owing its Name to its *Metropolis*, there the King keeps his constant Residence; *Gaspar Balbi* tells us wonders of this Kingdom, which I had not the opportunity to see; and since others also have given us an account of what they have themselves observed there, I will only add, that the City is divided into 2 parts, *viz.* the New and Old City; the first of which is inhabited by Merchants, the second is properly the Residence of the King, and his Court; which is exactly four square, surrounded with a broad Moat, in which Crocodiles are kept for its better security; the Palace Royal is said to be as big as *Venice*, and separated from the City by its peculiar Fortifications, which have no more than two Gates. He keeps above 800 Elephants within the Castle, among which those for his own use, pay him reverence.

Palace-Royal.

If we may relie on *Balbi*'s Testimony, this King is next to the Emperor of *China*, the most potent upon Earth, being able to bring 1500000 Men into the Field, and 800 Elephants, who are for the most part maintain'd at the charge of his Lords. Among other Idols they have in their Temples, there is one of Massy Gold in the Chapel within the Palace, with a Crown beset with Precious Stones, on his Head, and one only of the bigness of a Plumb on his Forehead, with Pendants of an inestimable value in the Ears, a Scarf about the Waste, and cross the right Shoulder, and under the left Arm a Chain made all of Diamonds, and other Precious Stones. The same Chapel has two Silver Idols of the same shape, but 2 foot higher than the former, with Crowns beset with Gems, and a 4th. which exceeds all the rest besides, a 5th. made of a mixture of Copper and Brass, valued at a higher rate than the other four.

The King's Forces.

Idols.

Pegu affords more Elephants than all the rest of the *Indies*, they are taken by means of the Females, who intice them out of the Woods into the Stables, where they have Penns that holds but one of these Beasts, where they are kept till they are tam'd.

Their Arms.

The Arms of the *Peguans* are commonly Half-Pikes, made of Canes, short and broad Swords, and Bucklers and Helmets, made of boil'd Leather, laid double and Gum'd over with a certain Gum call'd *Achiran*, They are *Pagans*, believe one supreme God, who has a great many Vice-Gerents under him; whom they also acknowledge for Gods, and that they are the Authors of all good that happens to Mankind, as on the other hand, the Devil is the Author of all Evil, whom for that reason they worship to appease his wrath.

Religion.

The Day on which they do chiefly their Devotions, is *Monday*. They celebrate 5 Feasts in the Year, call'd by them *Sapan*. The 1st, call'd *Sapan Giacchi*, is celebrated by a Pilgrimage, by the King and whole Court 12 Lgs out of Town, with the utmost magnificence. The 2d. call'd *Sapan Carena*, is celebrated in honour of the Statues in the Royal Chapel, as is also the 3d. call'd *Sapan Giaioma Segieuon*. The 4th. call'd *Sapan Daiche*, is celebrated by the King and Court, by casting Rose Water at one another; and the 5th. call'd *Sapan Donon*, is a kind of race of Boats upon the River in the presence of the King and Queen.

1639.

When the King dies, they join 2 Boats together, and putting a Table in the middle of one, they lay the Corps upon the Table, under which they make a Fire of *Sandale* Wood, *Storax*, *Benzoin*, and other sweet scented Woods and Gums, which being sent down the Stream, the Priests attending, rejoyce and sing till the Flesh be burnt to Ashes, which they mix with Milk into a Paste, and so cast it into the Sea at the Mouth of the River; but the Bones they preserve and lay them up in a Chapel built for that purpose.

How they burn the Corps of their Kings.

Their Priests carry an empty Bottle on their Girdle, are clad in red Vestments, coming down to their Heels, with a Cloak reaching to their Hams over them, and wear a Hat to shelter themselves against the Sun-beams, their Heads being shaved. They go bare-footed, live by Alms like our Mendicant Friars, eat but once a Day, and sleep in the Forests in hanging Matts fastened to the Boughs of the Trees. They lead a very exemplary Life, and on *Monday* Morning early go about to invite the People to their Devotions; in their Sermons they exhort their Auditors to Morality; they have no aversion to those who turn Christians, but exclaim against the worshiping of the Devil, a Custom so deeply rooted among the *Peguans*, that with all their Arguments they are not able to dissuade them from it. They are in great Veneration among the most sensible Men of the Nation; their Corps are burnt like their Kings with Sweet Woods, the Ashes cast into the River, and their Bones preserved. *Pegu* has no other Corn but Rice, which it produces in such Plenty, that great part of it is sent to the Neighbouring Provinces.

Their Ecclesiasticks.

Sodomy was heretofore grown so general here, that one of the Queens of *Pegu*, to obviate this Vice, ordered a small Bell to be fastned betwixt the Skin and the Flesh by way of incision, to the Mens Yards; on the other hand the Women were to have their Virginity taken away by a certain Composition, which had the faculty of relaxing those parts, which most Women of Pleasure take so much pains to keep within the natural compass. She commanded also that all the Boys whilst young, were to be painted with a blew colour on their Posteriors, thereby to create an aversion to them; as on the other side the Women take all imaginable pains to provoke the Men to Venery, by covering their Privy Parts only with a thin Calicoe, through which upon the least motion you may see all they have. Men and Women delight in black Teeth. The King is sole Heir to all that leave no Children behind them, and even one third part of the Estates of those that have Children, belongs to him.

A peculiar Custom.

Pegu affords no other Spice but Ginger, and scarce any other Commodity is exported, except Rice and Silver, in exchange of which they bring thither Stuffs and Calicoes, Pepper, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Opium, Sandale-wood, *&c.* They will pawn their Children to borrow Money, but if the Creditor enjoys them carnally, they are free, and the Debt is paid.

The Traffick of Pegu.

Siam, One of the next considerable Kingdoms in the *Indies*, at 18 deg. on this side of the Line, borders to the N. upon *Pegu*, and *Ava*, to the W. upon *Bengala*, to the E. upon *Patana*, whence the Coast (in which I comprehend the Gulph of *Siam*) runs N. to the 13th. deg. and a half, and turning to the S. to 12 deg. extends at a greater distance from the Sea, making a Semicircle of 450 Lgs. The Country is both very woody and mountainous, except towards the Sea side, where it is very fertile; and has divers convenient Isles and Harbours, besides some Islands in the Gulphs.

Siam.

The River *Menam* may vie for largeness with any other River of the *Indies*; for tho' its breadth is not very great, its length is such, that hitherto its source has remain'd undiscover'd. It runs from N. to S. through the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Ava*, and afterwards through *Siam*, where it falls by three several Chanels into the Gulph of *Siam*. It yearly (like the *Nile*) overflows the circumjacent Country for 5 Months, which renders the Rice Fields very Fruitful. Its Eastern Chanel, which lies at 13 and a half deg. elev. is most proper for Navigation, were it not for a Shelve of a Lg in length, which lying just at the Entrance of it, holds at above 5 or 6 foot water at low Tide; But at High-water holds 15 or 16, and in *September*, *October*, and *November*, 17 or 18 foot, for which reason it is that Vessels of any burthen anchor in the Road 2 Lgs from the

The River Menam.

Overflows every year.

1639. the Shelve; but such as may venture over the Shelve with High-tide, may go freely up the River as far as the City of *Banckock*, 6 Lgs from the Sea, and thence as far as the City of *India* 24 Lgs from the Mouth of the River; except in the beforementioned Mouths, when the River is unnavigable.

This Kingdom is very populous, especially those Provinces bordering upon the Seas. The most considerable Cities are *India*, or *Odya*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Kingdom; next *Camboya*, *Campaa*, *Sincapura*, *Picelouck*, *Surkelouck*, *Capheng*, *Soucethay*, *Kephinpet*, *Conseyman*, *Pytsyay*, *Pitsedi*, *Lidure*, *Tenou*, *Mormelon*, *Martenoy*, *Lygor*, *Bordelong*, *Tanasserim*, where the *Portugueſe* drive a considerable Trade; *Banckock*, *Pipry*, *Mergy*, &c.

The City of *India*. The City of *India* is built upon an Island in the River *Menam*. It is the ordinary Residence of the Kings of *Siam*, having divers very fair Streets, with spacious Channels regularly cut; the Suburbs are on both sides of the River, which as well as the City it self, are adorn'd with many Temples and Palaces; of the first of which there are above 300 within the City, distinguished by their guilt Steeples, or rather Pyramids; and afford a glorious Prospect at a distance. The Houses here, as all over the *Indies*, are but indifferently built, and covered with Tiles. The Royal Palace, which is equal in bigness to a large City. *Ferdinando Mendez Pinto* makes the number of Inhabitants of this City amount (but with not much probability of Truth) to 400000 Families; it is look'd upon as impregnable, by reason of the overflowing of the River at six Months end.

The King of *Siam*. The King of *Siam* who takes among his other Titles, that of *Precau Salcu*, i. e. *Sacred Member of God*, has this to boast of, that next to the *Mogul*, he can deduce his Descent from more Kings than any other in the *Indies*. He is Absolute, his Privy-Counsellors, call'd *Mandorins*, being chosen and depos'd barely by his Pleasure; when he appears in Publick, it is done with so much Pomp and Magnificence, as is scarce to be imagined, which draws such a Veneration to his Person from the Common People, that even in the Streets as he passes by, they give him God-like Titles, and Worship.

His Greatness. He marries no more than one Wife at a time, but has an infinite number of Concubines; he feeds very high, but is drink is only Water, the use of Strong Liquors being severely forbidden by their Ecclesiastical Law, to Persons of Quality in *Siam*. As the Thirds of all the Estates of the Kingdom fall to his Exchequer, so his Riches must be very great, but what

Riches. makes it almost immense is, that he is the chief Merchant of the Kingdom, having his Factors in all places of Traffick, to sell Rice, Copper, Lead, Salt-Peter, *&c.* to Foreigners.

Mendez Pinto makes his yearly Revenue arise to 12 Millions of Duckats; the greatest part of which being laid up in his Treasury, must needs swell to an infinity in process of time.

Each City has its peculiar Court of Justice, from whence an Appeal lies to the chief Court in the City of *India*, consisting of a Lord-Chief-Justice, and 12 Judges; and sometimes to the Privy-Council it self, if the Parties will be at the charge of it. They have their Counsellors, Attorneys and Sollicitors, and the Causes are pleaded in the presence of both Parties. In Criminal Cases they proceed much after the *French* way; for, upon Information given, the Party accused is committed, and examined afterwards; and for want of sufficient Evidence put to the Rack, if there be very strong Circumstances; after which, the Judges either upon confession of the Fact, or sufficient Evidence, give Sentence, which is confirm'd by the King, unless he be pleased to pardon the Offender.

Their Punishments. Their Punishments are so severe, or rather cruel, that such as are used among us, are not as much as known here: For the slightest Crime deserves Banishment or Transportation; Theft is punished with the Amputation of Hands or Feet. The common way of Executing Criminals is, to cast them alive into boyling Oil. They have three sorts of Trials for want of sufficient Evidence; by Fire, Water, and Oil: In the

Trial of Fire, Water, and Oil. Water-trial, both Parties are let down to the bottom of the River, along a great Pole, and he who can stay longest under Water, obtains thereby his Justification, as does he who can hold his Hand longest in boyling Oil, in the trial of Oil: In the Fiery-trial they are to make 5 or 6 steps through a great Fire very slowly, 2 Men leaning very hard upon their Shoulders. But that which they look upon (as the most dreadful of all is) when in order to their Justification, they take a Pill of Rice only; over which the Priest has pronounced a certain Malediction; if he swallow it without spitting, he has clear'd himself to all intents and purposes, and his Friends carry him off in Triumph. 1639.

The Forces of *Siam* consist chiefly of the Militia of the Country, all his Subjects being obliged to take Arms when call'd upon, so that as occasion requires, he summons the 100th. the 50th. the 20th. the 10th. or 5th. Man; who, as well as the Noblemen with their Attendants, serve at their own Charges.

Their Arms. Their Infantry are pretty well Disciplin'd, but want the use of Fire-Arms, being provided only with Bows, Arrows, Swords, Pikes, and Bucklers. Their Horse are also but indifferently Mounted; their chief Strength consists in their Elephants, which are very well train'd to the Wars, and carry each 3 Arm'd Men. They are not destitute of Great Cannon, but have but little skill to manage them to the best advantage. They have also great numbers of Frigats and Gallies well provided with Guns, but the Gunners and Mariners are so unexpert in the Management of them, that they can't encounter any *European* Fleet with the least hopes of advantage; for which reason it is, that of late Years the *Siameſes* here have liv'd in continual Enmity with the *Portugueſe*: they have highly courted the Friendship of the *Dutch*, who were always ready to give them assistance against their Enemies. The King of *Siam* knowing that his chief Strength consists in his Elephants, keeps a greater number of them than any other *Indian* Prince; the Elephants of *Siam* being both for their Strength and Apprehension esteem'd above all the rest; they take them after the same manner as they do in *Pegu*, by sending divers Females into the Forests, who decoy them into the Stables, where they are tam'd, either by putting them into Pens exactly fitted to the bulks of their Bodies, or by tying their Legs to 3 or 4 tame Elephants.

White Elephants. It is to be observed that sometimes they meet with white Elephants in *Siam*, but they are so rare, and so much admir'd in those Parts, that in 1568. the King of *Pegu* being inform'd that the King of *Siam* had two white Elephants, he sent an Ambassador to desire he might have one of them, at what price he would be pleased to set upon him, which the King of *Siam* refusing to accept of, the King of *Pegu* entred *Siam* with a vast Army, and conquered it, making the King his Tributary, tho' with the loss of no less than 500000 Men. The *Siameſes* call the white ones the Kings of the Elephants, and attribute to them something of Divinity, for which reason also the King of *Siam*, when he meets with one, makes him to be serv'd in Vessels of Gold, allows him a good Attendance, and a Canopy to be born over his Body.

The *Siamites* Pagans. The King and his Subjects are *Pagans*, and have an infinite number of Idols of Gold, Silver, Stone, Wood, and other Materials, some 20, some 30, and 40 foot high, and among the rest one which sits, which if it stood at its full length, would be 120 foot high; their Temples have gilt Towers or Pyramids.

Their Ecclesiasticks. Their Ecclesiasticks are composed of a kind of Hierarchy, under the Direction of a High-Priest, residing in the City of *India*, were are at least 30000 Ecclesiasticks; they wear Garments of yellow Calicoe, and have their Crowns shaved. The most learned among them are chosen for Priests to preach in the Temples, and to sacrifice. They are under a Vow of Chastity upon pain of Death, but may change their Professions, and marry whenever they think fit. Each Temple has a kind of a Convent belonging to it, for the entertainment of a certain number of Priests, who attend the Service duly every Day Morning and Evening. They live for the most part upon Alms, like our Mendicant Friars. They have also a kind of Religious old Women, but these are not bound by any Vow, or peculiar Discipline.

Their Belief. They believe one Creator of the Universe, who governs the World by divers inferior Gods; they say that the Soul is immortal, and after it is purify'd by passing through several Bodies, is either condemned to eternal Torments, or enjoys Beatitude; they tell you that this has been transmitted to them by Tradition time out of mind; for the rest they hold, that good Deeds, and especially Charity, are the chief means to attain Salvation; which is the reason they extend their Charity even to Beasts, such as Birds and Fish,

which they buy to ſet them at liberty, as believing the Tranſmigration of the Soul. This is the reaſon alſo why they never condemn any other Religion, or diſpute with them; but their Eccleſiaſticks preach without interceſſion againſt that old Cuſtom of invoking the Devil, which is ſtill retain'd among the vulgar ſort. They have abundance of Lamps hanging before their Idols in time of Service, theſe they ſet out with Garlands of Flowers, and incenſe them. They have certain Days each quarter of the Moon appointed for their general Devotions, and a Lent of 3 Months. Their dead Corps they ſhave, waſh and perfume, and afterwards burn them near the Temple, where the Aſhes are buried under a Tomb or Pyramid. The Relations mourn for their Friends by ſhaving themſelves, by giving of Alms, and benevolences to the Prieſt to pray for them; at their Obſequies the Corps is attended with Muſick, and Fire-works.

Their Burials.

The *Siameſes* are ſtrong Limb'd and well proportion'd, but their Courage is not anſwerable to it, which makes them uſe their Victims with a great deal of inſolence. They are black, and very crafty in their Dealings. They are ſo much addicted to idleneſs, that they leave all Toils to their Wives and Slaves.

The *Siameſes* well Limb'd.

They wear a painted piece of Calicoe from the Navel down to the Knees; tho' the Men have alſo Shirts with Sleeves hanging to their Elbows. The Women cover their Breaſts with a piece of Calicoe faſtened about their Necks. There is ſuch little difference in the Clothing of People of Quality, and thoſe of the inferior Rank, that they are not to be diſtinguiſhed, except by their Train of Slaves.

Their Habit.

Their Houſes are built either of Timber or Canes, covered with the Leaves of the Coco-tree, and raiſed 3 or 4 foot from the ground; each Apartment has ſeveral Windows, for the more commodious paſſages of the Air; they know of no other Furniture but what is abſolutely neceſſary for their Conveniency in the Chambers, and Kitchin; they feed commonly upon Rice, Fiſh and Pulſe; their ordinary Drink is Water, but don't refuſe Strong Liquors if they are addicted to it.

Houſes.

Perſons of any Faſhion here, make no uſe of Prieſts for the Confirmation of their Marriages, which after the Parents Conſent is obtained, and the agreement made, they Conſummate upon one anothers words, as long as they like one another; and in caſe of Separation, all the Goods and Children are divided, ſhare and ſhare like betwixt them; and both Parties are at liberty to marry again. But the Concubines are ty'd to the pleaſure of their Maſters, who conſider them no otherwiſe than Slaves, their Children having but a ſlender ſhare in their Fathers Eſtates, which after their Death (eſpecially if they be Perſons of Quality) is divided into three parts; one goes to the King, the 2d. to the Prieſts, who are to bear the Funeral Charges, which are very great; and the 3d. to the Children, who have an equal Share, except that the eldeſt is allow'd ſome ſmall advantage. People of an inferior Rank, purchaſe their Wives, notwithſtanding which, both Parties are at liberty to be divorced.

Marriages.

They don't take the leaſt care for the Education of their Children till they are 6 years old, when they put them to their Eccleſiaſticks to be inſtructed in Reading and Writing, afterwards breed them either for a Trade, Traffick, or the Court. The Peaſants lead a miſerable life, by reaſon that Proviſions are ſo cheap here, that they can't gain any thing by their Labour.

Education of Children.

The chief Traffick of the City of *India* lies in Stuffs, brought thither from *Suratte* and the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, in all ſorts of *China* Commodities, precious Stones, Gold, *Benzoin*, Wax, Copper, Lead, Indigo, *Calamba*-wood, *Braſil*-wood, Cotton, and Deer-ſkins, of the laſt of which they export 50000 every year to *Japan*; and their Rice is tranſported in vaſt Quantities to all the Neigbouring Countries. The King himſelf is a Merchant here, and has his Factors at *Iega*, *Aava*, *Jangoma*, on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, and in *China* it ſelf.

The Traffick of the City of *India*.

Their Money is very good, being of three different ſorts; *viz. Ticals*, *Maſes*, and *Foungs*: 2 *Foungs* make a *Maſe*, and 4 *Maſe* a *Tical*, which is equivalent to a *French* Half-crown: 4 of theſe *Ticals* go to a *Tayl*, 20 of which make a *Catty* in Silver. Their ſmalleſt Silver Money is the *Foung*; but Proviſions being ſo very cheap here, they make uſe of certain Shells brought thither from *Manilles*, 800 or 900 of which go to a *Foung*.

Their Money.

The *Portugueſes* being ſufficiently ſenſible what prodigious advantage they were able to reap from this Kingdom, for ſupporting their Traffick to the *Moluca's*, *Philippine* Iſles, and the *Manilles*, the Viceroys of *Goa* were always very careful to cultivate a good correſpondence with the King of *Siam*, who in return granted them many Privileges, till ſuch time that the *Dutch* having got footing there, at the beginning of this Age, the *Portugueſes* were ſo alarm'd thereat, that they not only obſtructed the Trade of the *Siameſes* to St. *Thomas* and *Negapatam*, but alſo attack'd a *Dutch* Veſſel in the River *Menam*, which with ſome other Outrages, ſerved only to incenſe the King of *Siam* againſt them, who ever after encouraged the *Dutch* in their Settlement and Commerce, which is very advantageous to them in reſpect of the Iſles of *Java* and *Sumatra*. 1639.

The *Dutch* Settlement in *Siam*.

The Kingdom of *Cambodia* borders to the N. W. upon the Kingdom of *Siam*, being incloſed by the Sea on the other ſide. The Capital City, which has given it its Name, is ſeated upon a River 60 Lgs from the Sea-ſhore, which riſes out of a Lake, as do all the other Rivers of this Kingdom. That which runs by *Cambodia* overflows every Year, like the *Nile*. Its firſt Riſe is in the beginning of *June*, encreaſing by degrees to 10 or 12 Foot, and in *July* and *Auguſt* it overflows the Country to that degree, that it is quite unnavigable; for which reaſon it is that the City of *Cambodia* is built upon a riſing ground, having but one large Street. The Trade of the *Portugueſes* here conſiſts chiefly in *Malacca* Stuffs, which they exchange for *Benzoin*, *Lacque*, Wax, Rice, Braſs, Veſſels and Bars of *China* Iron.

The King of *Cambodia*.

The King of *Cambodia* is only a Vaſſal of the King of *Siam*, being not able to bring above 35000 Men into the Field. The Nobility, or Officers of the Court, are divided into 4 ſeveral Ranks; *viz.* into *Ockinas*, *Tomima's*, *Tonimnes*, and *Nampres*; the firſt of which are the only Men of Conſideration, they being admitted into the King's Preſence, and he conſers with them concerning the Management of Publick Affairs. The *Portugueſes* are ſo firmly ſettled here, that the *Dutch* have not been able to get any firm footing here. Proviſions of all ſorts, Veniſon, Beef, Pork, Goats, Hares, Kids, Cranes, Herns, and in ſhort all manner of Poultry, as likewiſe Oranges, Citrons, Mango's and Coco's, are ſold in a manner for nothing here, there being ſuch plenty here of every thing, and eſpecially of Rice, that thoſe of *Quinam* alone export yearly 2000 *Coyangs* of Rice, (5 of which make 8 Tuns) at 17 or 18 *Tayls* the *Coyang*.

That Neck of Land which extends in the Form of a Demi-Iſland, from the Kingdom of *Siam* from the S. E. to the N. W. to the *Equinoctial Line*, betwixt the Gulphs of *Bengala* and *Siam*, is call'd *Malacca* (which Name it has borrow'd from its Capital City) and contains the Kingdoms of *Jahor*, and *Patapan*. This Country was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugueſe*, 1511. who eſtabliſhed themſelves there to that degree, that no body hitherto has been able to diſlodge them. The City of *Malacca* is ſituate upon the Straight which ſeparates the Iſle of *Sumatra* from the Continent, at 2 deg. and a half on this ſide of the Line, at the foot of a Mountain, which is wholly taken up with the Town, and is about 1800 Paces in compaſs, 600 whereof extend along the Sea-Coaſt, fortified with a good Wall, as likewiſe to the River ſide, which encloſes another third part of the Town, being ſtrengthened to the Land-ſide by 4 regular Baſtions. That of St. *Domingo* on the point of the River ſide; that of St. *Jago* on the Sea-ſhore, and thoſe call'd *Madre de Dios*, and *Unze mil Vergenes*, betwixt theſe two. The *Jeſuits* College, call'd St. *Paul's*, ſtands on the top of the Hill, and upon a riſing ground in the Plain without the City, a Convent of *Jacobins*. The River runs N. W. is very broad and brackiſh at High-water, but freſh at Low-tide; there is a Bridge over it; it rains conſtantly here 2 or 3 times a Week, except in the Months of *January*, *February* and *March*; the Shore is ſo muddy that there is no landing at Low-water.

Malacca.

The 2 Iſles call'd *Ilha da Naos*, and *Ilha de Pedra*, lie not much above a Cannon-ſhot from the City, the Channel betwixt theſe 2 Iſlands affording a ſafe Harbor for the Galleons, and bigger Veſſels, as that betwixt the City and the *Ilha da Naos*, is for the Veſſels of a middle ſize, but ſmall Barks may enter the River.

In the City of *Malacca*, its Suburbs and circumjacent Towns, under the Juriſdiction of the *Portugueſe*, are computed to be about 1200 Inhabitants, and among

1639. among them not above 3000 Fighting Men; and scarce 300 *Portugueſe*, the reſt being either *Meſtizes* or *Malayans*. The *Portugueſe* are in Poſſeſſion only of the City of *Malacca* and its Suburbs, to the Town of *Noſtra Senhora de Guadalupe*, 5 Lgs thence upon the ſame River; the Territories of the King of *Johor* beginning at half a Lg thence. This City being ſo commodiouſly ſituated for the Traffick of *China*, and the *Moluques*, the *Portugueſe* had, in all probability, made this one of the chiefeſt Trading Places in the *Indies*, if the *Dutch*, who beſieged it 1606. and laid great part of it deſolate, had not prevented them, and being by their Settlements in *Ceylon* and *Java*, become Maſters of theſe Seas, quite ruin'd the Commerce of the *Portugueſe* to *China* and the *Moluques*.

Patana. The Kingdom of *Patana* is not of ſo large an extent, but much more populous than that of *Johor*; the King of *Patana*, being, according to the computation of the *Hollanders*, able to raiſe 180000 Men. The Capital City bearing the ſame Name, is ſeated upon the Sea-ſide, tho' its Harbour be above 2000 Paces thence. The Houſes are handſom enough, of Timber and Canes. The Royal Palace is fortified only with Palliſadoes; their Great Temple is of Brick. The City is able to raiſe 10000 Fighting-Men. The Inhabitants are rather inclining to a brown than Olive colour, generally well ſhap'd, and proud in their outward Deportment, but obliging enough in their Converſation with their Friends. The Natives are for the moſt part employed in Husbandry and Fiſhing, and drink nothing but Water, Wine and ſtrong Waters being an averſion to them; the only pleaſure they delight in is that of Women, ſo that each Man, beſides 4 or 5 Wives, maintains as many Concubines as he is able: as they look upon Fornication as a ſlender Treſpaſs, ſo they puniſh Adultery with the utmoſt ſeverity, tho' nothing be more common among them than this Crime. Their chief Wealth conſiſts in their Slaves, whom they feed at a ſmall charge, upon Rice and Fiſh; the Foreigners are the only People here who apply themſelves to Traffick and Navigation.

The Air of *Patana*. The Air of *Patana*, tho' exceeding hot, as lying near the *Equinoctial*, yet is not unwholſom; they have but 3 Months Winter, *viz. November*, *December*, and *January*, when it rains without intermiſſion; the reſt from *February* to *October* is their Summer. They ſow nothing but Rice, and till the Ground with Bouffiers. Fruits are here in ſuch Plenty, that every Month produces a new kind; Hens lay twice a Day, and Proviſions are here in ſuch quantities as can't be imagined, as Rice, Oxen, Goats, Deer, Geeſe, Ducks, Hens, Capons, Peacocks, Hares, and all ſorts of Veniſon. Hogs they breed none, but the Foreſts are ſo full of wild Boars, that tho' they eat them not, they kill them becauſe they are ſo pernicious to the Rice. The Tygers and great Apes, which are in the Foreſts here, do alſo conſiderable miſchief, but the wild Elephants occaſion no damage, they hunt them with tame Elephants, and whilſt they are engaged with them, find means to tie their hinder Feet together, and afterwards tame them by hunger. The King of *Patana* is a Vaſſal to the King of *Siam*.

Johor. *Johor* is the utmoſt point of the Land of Demi-Iſle, call'd by the Ancients *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, reaching to the Streights of *Sincopura*; its chief Towns are, *Linga*, *Bintam*, and *Caymon*, and its *Metropolis* is named *Batuſabar*, which is however divided into two Cities, ſituate upon the River *Johor*, 6 Lgs from the Sea; the firſt of which is call'd *Batuſabar*, the ſecond *Cottaſabrang*; one having about 1300 Paces, the other 500 in compaſs; as the Houſes are all built of Free-ſtone, along the River ſide, and raiſed on Piles 8 or 10 foot from the Ground, they make a glorious Proſpect as you come up the River; for this City contains at leaſt 4000 Inhabitants fit for Service.

The King of *Johor* is Proprietor of all the Grounds, which he beſtows on any that will deſire it to be Manured; but tho' the Grounds be extreamly fertile, ſuch is the ſlothfulneſs of the *Malayans*, that they ſeldom cultivate it. The *Malacca* or *Malayan* Language, as it is the moſt Elegant of any in the *Indies*, ſo it has gain'd as much reputation there, and is as generally uſed as the *French* in *Europe*; and having no inflections either in Nouns or Verbs, it is not very difficult to learn.

Sumatra. We will now take a ſtep from the Continent to the Iſle of *Sumatra*, 10 Lgs diſtant from the *Malacca* Shore; it extends from the 5th. deg. on this ſide to the 6th. deg. beyond the Line, containing thus 165 Lgs in length, and about 60 in breadth; ſo that thoſe who inhabit the middle of the Iſland, have the *Equinoctial* Line directly over their heads, whence it may eaſily be conjectured that the heats are exceſſive here, which together with the vaſt multitude of Lakes, makes the Air very unwholſom. This defect is recompenſed by its vaſt Riches in Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron and Braſs, (whereof they make as good Artillery here as in any part of *Europe*;) beſides Rice, Millet, and Fruits in prodigious quantities, even in the very Foreſts. Add to this its Wealth in Diamonds, and other Precious Stones, and its Products of Silk, Spices, Wax, Honey, Cotton, Camphire, Caſſia, and divers other Medicinal Drugs. Of white *Sandale* they have whole Woods, and in the Centre of the Iſle, is a burning Mountain, like that of *Veſuvius*, which they ſay is ſupply'd conſtantly by a Balſamick River. The whole Iſland is divided into 10 Kingdoms, of which thoſe of *Achim*, *Pedir*, *Pacem*, *Camparam*, *Zande* and *Mancabo*, lying on the Sea-ſide, on this ſide the Line, are only known to Foreigners; thoſe who have travell'd thither more for Profit than Curioſity, having made but little ſearch into its inland Provinces, of which the *Portugueſe* give us an account only of 2, *viz.* that of *Andragidan* and *Arunat*. The *Dutch*, have alſo diſcovered the Kingdom of *Polymbam* beyond the Line, where they have got a firm footing.

1639.

Its Riches.

It is divided into divers Kingdoms.

The Kings of *Achim* are alſo Maſters of *Pedir* and *Pacem*, which includes all the Northern Coaſt of the Iſle. Achim.

The City of *Achim* is ſeated in a ſpacious Plain, upon a broad, but ſhallow River, being ſcarce paſſable by ſmall Boats; it has neither Fortifications nor Gates; the Houſes are built upon Piles, and covered with the Leaves of Coco-trees. The Royal Palace ſtands in the Centre of the City, which being well Palliſado'd and Flank'd, commands the whole Town, and has 7 Gates.

Inhabitants. The Natives are of an Olive colour, and very flat fac'd. Their Garments are only a Calicoe or Silk Shirt, and a Turbant on their Heads of the ſame Stuff. The King is ſerved by Women and Eunuchs, and is a *Mahometan*, as well as moſt of all the reſt inhabiting near the Coaſt of *Sumatra*. They begin their *Lent* at the New Moon in the 12th. Month, which ends at the ſame time in the next. They have no Corn, but Rice in great Plenty; as alſo Beef, Bouffiers, Goats and Sheep, the laſt of which no body has the privilege to breed except the King; they abound alſo in Oranges, Limons, *Bonana*, *Tamarindes*, *Batalas*, Radiſhes, Spinage and Lettuce. Their ordinary Drink is Water, but they make a kind of *Aqua Vitæ* of Cocoes or Rice.

Religion.

The Iſle of *Sumatra* produces a peculiar Tree, called *Singadi* by the *Malayans*, and *Arbor triſte de dia* by the *Portugueſe*. It is full of branches with knots, from each knot ſprout forth 2 leaves like a Plumb-leaf, except that they ſmell like Sage, and are covered with a whitiſh down. Each of theſe leaves hath its bud, which thruſts forth ſmall heads, whereof each has 4 round leaves, each head produces 5 flowers in a cluſter, the 5th. being exactly in the middle, they are as white as Snow, of the bigneſs of an Orange-flower, and blow in the twinkling of an Eye, as ſoon as the Sun is ſet, which riſes no ſooner again the next Morning, but the flowers and ſweet ſmell which have continued all Night, drop in an inſtant. Thus the Tree continues till Sun-ſet again, when it opens and produces the flowers in the ſame manner as before, and caſts them again at the firſt appearance of that Planet, which invigorates all the other Vegetables.

The Mourning day Tree.

The Coco-trees, of which there are 4 kinds, are very common in this Iſland. The Tree which bears the Coco-Nuts grows very high, but not above a foot diameter in bulk; it has not a branch but at the top, where it ſpreads like a Date-tree, and theſe don't produce the Fruits, which grow 10 or 12 in a cluſter out of the body of the Tree; the Flower reſembles that of a Cheſnut; the Tree is of Univerſal uſe in the *Indies*. In the *Maldives* Iſlands they build whole Ships without any thing but what they are furniſhed with by the Coco-tree; the outward Rind affording them a kind of Hemp for their Cordages and Cables, and the Leaves with Materials for Sails, and the Covering of their Houſes; beſides that they uſe them for the making of Umbrellaes, Fans, Tents, Matts and Hats. The Fruit is of the bigneſs of an Oſtriches Egg, and the outward Rind which reſembles that of our Wall-nuts, when dry'd, affords that Hemp we ſpoke of before;

Cocos.

Whole Ships made of the Tree

1639. if they gather it before the Nut is come to full maturity, it affords about a quart of very pleasant Liquor, which if kept in the Shell, by degrees turns to a kind of Apple, which becomes yellow, and is of a very good taste.

Terry. Their *Terry* or Palm-wine they draw from the Tree whilst it is in Blossom, and pulling off the Flower they fasten to it an Earthen Vessel well stopp'd, into which runs a Liquor resembling in taste and colour our Whey. This when boil'd is call'd *Terry*, and set in the Sun turns to Vinegar immediately, and if distill'd makes a kind of *Aqua Vitæ*. The Pith of the Tree as it is very white, so it furnishes the *Indians* with Paper.

The second kind is call'd by the *Portuguese Arrequeiro*, from the *Areca* it produces, of which and the 2 other kinds more hereafter.

Bananas. The *Bananas* or *Indian* Fig-tree is also very common in this Isle, it may rather be call'd a Shrub than a Tree, as having no body, but grows to a Man's height. It brings forth leaves before it comes to a foot high, but these wither and fall, and others sprout forth in their stead, till such time the Plant arrives to its full growth, and the Fruit to its maturity, which is in shape and colour like our Figs, being of a yellow green, which being gathered and hung on a Nail will ripen in 4 or 5 days: in the middle of the Leaf comes a Flower of a violet colour, of the bigness of an Ostrich's Egg, whence sprouts forth a kind of a Branch not unlike a Cabbage stalk, loaden with a bunch of Figs; one stalk produces no more than one bunch (but of near 100 Figs) at a time, but being cut close to the ground another springs out and bears Fruit in a Month, and continues to do so throughout the Year. The Leaves of the Tree are 6 foot long, and 1 and a half broad, and the Fruit 7 or 8 inches long, and as big as a good Cucumber; the Figs are enclosed in Husks which are very nourishing and eaten instead of Bread.

Pepper. The Pepper of *Sumatra* is next to that of *Cochim*, the best of all the *Indies*. It is commonly planted at the Roots of Trees, or prop'd up with Canes as we do our Hops. The Leaves are not unlike those of the Orange Tree, but somewhat less, and picquant; the Fruit grows in little branches like Juniper-berries. It is green whilst upon the Tree, but grows black after it is dry'd, which is done in *December* and *January*. The white Pepper does not grow in such abundance here, and *Bengala* is the only Country that brings forth long Pepper. It is certain that there is more Pepper consumed in the *Indies* than in *Europe*, because the *Indians* put handfuls of it in all their Sauces, but not beaten or grinded.

Java. The Isle of *Java Major* (to distinguish it from the lesser, which lies hard by) is divided from *Sumatra* to the S. E. only by the narrow Streight of *Sunda*, 7 deg. beyond the Line; its length is 50 Lgs, but as to its breadth is undiscovered as yet, some will have it part of the Continent, which extends to the Streight of *Magellan*, commonly call'd *Terra Australis*. (a) *Julius Scaliger* was not in the wrong of it when he call'd it the *Epitome of the World*; it being certain that there is no Animal, Fruit, Metal, or Drug, but what is found here in greater plenty than in any part of the Universe.

Inhabitants. The Inhabitants deduce their Origin from the *Chinese*, and to speak truth, their large Fore-heads and Brows and little Eyes, resemble much that Nation. Each Town of Note in *Java* has its peculiar King, who were formerly Vassals to one, but now they are all Sovereigns independant from one another. The Kings of *Bantam* and *Palimbam* are the most Potent now; the last of which has given the Name to the Streight that divides the Isles of *Java* and *Bali*. Ten Lgs to the N. is the City of *Panarucan*, near which is a burning Mountain. The King of *Panarucan* and *Palimbam* are *Pagans*, but the King of the City of *Passuan*, 6 Lgs from *Panarucan*, is a *Mahometan*.

Jortam Ten Lgs to the W. is the City of *Jortam*, noted for its convenient Harbour upon a River, where the Ships going from the *Molutques* to *Bantam*, commonly touch to take in fresh Water and Provisions.

Upon the same River lies the City of *Gertici*.

Brandam. *Cidaye.* The City of *Sarabaia* has its proper King, under whose Jurisdiction is also the City of *Brandam*, 6 Lgs thence to the W. He keeps his Court at *Cidaye*, which is well fortified, but destitute of a safe Harbour. Ten Lgs more to the W. lies the City of *Tabanbalin*, next to *Bantam*, the most considerable of the Isle. And 5 Lgs further to the N. W. the City of *Cheribon*. *Maysadicaon* is inhabited only by Fisher-men.

Japara. Five Lgs further to the W. is the City of *Japara*, upon a Neck of Land which jets out 3 Lgs into the Sea. Twenty five Lgs hence, and 45 from *Bantam* lies *Matram*, or *Matavam*, a great City, and the Residence of a powerful King, who once pretended to the Sovereignty over all the rest of the Isle.

1639. *Matram.*

Pati. *Dauma.* Five Lgs to the W. of *Japara* lies the City of *Pati*, and 3 Lgs further that of *Dauma*, both under the Jurisdiction of the King of *Matram*, as well as that of *Tagal* in the same Bay.

Tagal.

Charabaon. The next is the fair and strong City of *Charabaon*, seated upon a River, whence you pass through the Cities of *Dormago* and *Monucaon*, and so through the Village of *Gaceen*, to the City of *Jacatra*, and thence to *Bantam*, the most considerable of the whole Isle, seated at the foot of a Mountain, about 25 Lgs from the Isle of *Sumatra*; three Rivers arise out of this Mountain, 2 whereof surround its Walls, the third passing through the middle of it. The Houses are miserably built, and the Walls very wretched as well as the Gates, tho' at every 100 paces provided with a great piece of Cannon, which are of little use in a place where the Curtains are not defensible, and have instead of Towers only Scaffolds. The whole City has only three principal Streets, which are not pav'd, but sandy; the Channels which run through them, being very stinking and foul, which sends forth a very nauseous smell all over the City. At each corner of the Streets stand Guards, as also at the Prison Gate near the Palace; and each Person of Note keeps a Guard of 10 or 12 for his own security in his House. Their Houses are mean, built upon Piles, they are commonly of Reeds and Canes, and the Partitions all of *Bambou*-Canes slit very thin. All the Foreigners here live without the City. The Merchants meet daily in one or other of the three great Market-places belonging to this City. The *Bazar* or *Exchange* is chiefly frequented by the Foreigners, who meet there at break of Day, and continue till 9 a Clock. The second Market-place faces the Grand *Mosque*, where the Women buy and sell Pepper, *Betele*, *Areca*, *Bananas*, *Melons*, Cakes, &c. and those that deal in white and yellow Sandal Wood.

Jacatra. *Bantam.*

The City of Bantam.

The Armorers who sell Arms, Guns, Pistols, Swords, &c. stand higher up to the right, and to the left the Confectioners, with their Sweet-meats: near them is the place where they sell all sorts of Beans, and next to that the Onion Market, where the Cloth-sellers and Ensurers have their Meeting: Hard by this you see the Poulterers, who deal in Geese, Kids, Pidgeons, Parrots, and all sorts of Tame Fowl. Thence you see three several ways, one leading to the *Chinese* Shops, the 2d. to the Herb-Market, the 3d. to the Shambles; among the *Chinese* to the right the Jewellers who deal in Precious Stones, have their Station, and the *Bengalians* with their Toy-shops are on the left; the Sale of all these things lasts only till 9 a Clock, when the Market for all sorts of Provisions is opened before the Royal Palace, and about Noon the *Chinese* Market begins.

Tuban. The City of *Tuban* or *Tubaon* challenges the next place after *Bantam* in the Isle of *Java*, being stronger than all the rest, and tho' not so large, yet better built than *Bantam*. Its Palace is very spacious, and remarkable for the many Apartments made here for divers sorts of Beasts that are kept here with more than ordinary care, such as Elephants, Fighting Cocks, and Parrots, the last of which are much more beautiful than are transported into *Europe*, because they are too tender to endure the fatigues of so long a Voyage. Their chief Traffick lies in Pepper, which they exchange in the Isle of *Body* for Calicoes, Cotton and Silk, and carry these Commodities to *Banda*, *Ternate*, and the *Philippine Isles*, to truck for *Cloves*, *Mace* and *Nutmegs*. The Natives live most upon Fish; they have no other Garments but a piece of Calico wrapp'd round their Loins, except that the better sort wear a kind of loose Camblet Coats reaching only to their Thighs. They are great lovers of Horses, their Saddles being made like our great Saddles. The Natives inhabiting the inland-Countries of *Java* are all *Pagans*, and believing the transmigration of the Soul, eat neither Fish nor Flesh; to the South there are a few *Mahometans* of the *Turkish Sect*. They have 2 great Fasts, the chiefest of which begins the 5th. of *August*.

The Javians. There are few among the *Javians* but what have 3 or 4, nay sometimes 10 or 12 Wives; besides their Concubines, who are obliged to wait upon the Wives, tho' their Children have the same Prerogatives as the

legitimate

1639. legitimate ones. Children go naked; the Girls having only a Plate of Silver or Gold to cover their Privities; they marry at 8, 9, or 10 Years of Age: In their Marriages they use but little Ceremonies: Certain Poles are stuck on the Wedding-day before the Houses of the Bride and Bridegroom, with Tassels of white and red Cotton; and after Dinner the Bridegroom goes on Horseback through the Town in the Evening, where the Slaves, who are part of his Dowry, come to meet him, and bring him some Presents. Women of any Fashion are kept under such restraint, that they are not permitted so much as to see their own Sons within their Chambers; neither does any Man speak or approach such a Woman when she goes abroad, but every body gives her way, even the King himself. They are known only by their Retinue, being for the rest clad after the same fashion with the rest, *viz.* in a kind of Calicoe or Silk Petticoat, reaching down from the Breast to the mid-leg; they wear neither Stockings nor Head-Ornaments, but tie their Hair upon the Crown; except it be at Weddings or any other Solemnity, when they have Coronets on their Heads, and Rings and Bracelets about their Fingers and Arms. They are so much addicted to cleanliness, that they neither do their necessities, or enjoy their Husbands without washing or bathing themselves, which is one of their chief Employments, and which they look upon as a proper means to incite their Husbands to Venery, in which they strive to outvie one another.

In their Courts of Judicature, the Plaintiff and Defendant are obliged to plead both their own Cause, their Punishment of Criminals is to tie them to a Post, and stab them with a Dagger: Foreigners have this advantage, that provided they can make their Peace with the Party complaining, they may redeem themselves from Death, except in the Case of premeditated Murther. The King's Council which consists sometimes of 500 Persons, meet at Moon-light under a great Tree, where they continue till the Moon sets. The King when present sits in the middle.

The Qualifications of the *Javans*.

The Nagiyes of *Java* are a proud, perfidious, and cruel Generation; and so stubborn, that such as know they have deserved Death will rather be kill'd than be taken. Their Hair, which is very long, is generally of a Chesnut-colour; they have great flat Faces, large Jaw-Bones, and Eye-brows, little Eyes, and thin Beards, are for the rest only middle-siz'd, but very strong Limbs. They seem not to want Courage, were they bred up to all the Advantages belonging to our Modern Arms; but they are contented with their Pike, Battle-Axe, broad Sword and a Dagger: Their Bucklers are of Wood, and sometimes of boil'd Leather: They wear also Armour, the pieces of which are join'd together with Iron Rings: Their Soldiers receive no Pay in time of Peace. They have a way of blowing small poison'd Arrows out of Trunks, by which the Wound is made incurable. But those inhabiting upon the Streight of *Sunda*, being transplanted thither from *Passuan*, and living under their own King, (who is however tributary to the King of *Bantam*) are much more honest and open-hearted.

The Grounds of *Java* are either farmed out by the King or Lords to certain Free People, or cultivated by Slaves, and produce Rice, Pepper, and Coco's. Some Slaves here take their Masters Trees, and other Commodities, at a certain Rate, which they sell to the best advantage they can: Others work abroad for their Masters Profit at a set Rate *per diem*: Others maintain themselves, and work alternatively 6 Days for their Masters, and as many for themselves. They commonly adulterate their Pepper with black Gravel, as they do with all other Commodities they sell to Strangers, they being very crafty in their Traffick; tho' very few rich Merchants venture their Persons on any long Voyage, but traffick like our *European* Merchants.

Their Slaves

Bonds, and other such like Deeds, are written upon the Barks of Trees, the Characters being engraven with a kind of Bodkin, which is either roll'd up afterwards, or laid together four square betwixt two Boards, which they have the way to tie neatly together with Pack-thread. Sometimes they use *China* Paper. They have a Language peculiar to themselves, but the *Malayan* is most in vogue here, and the *Arabian* used by the *Mahometans*. The Traffick of the *Persians* that live here, is in precious Stones, Stuffs, and Drugs, and the *Arabians* and *Benjans* exchange their Commodities chiefly for *China* Ware. Those of *Guzarat* live, for the most part upon Fishing. All these Foreigners are clad after the same Fashion in a Calicoe Garment, with a Turbant of the same Stuff. At their Arrival they purchase a Woman, who is to serve for all Uses; at their departure they dispose of her again, but must make Provisions for the Children, if they leave any behind. 1639.

The *Chinese*.

But the *Chineses* are of all Foreigners here the most industrious in their Trading, being look'd upon here no otherwise than the *Jews* in *Europe*. One of their main businesses, is, to forestall and buy up the Pepper in the Country against the coming of their *China* Fleet to *Bantam* (which consists commonly in 10 Ships of 50 Tun each) in *January*. These bring in a sort of wretched Money, call'd *Pity* by the *Javaneses*, and *Cas* in the *Malayan* Language, being a mixture of Lead and Brass; so brittle, that if they fall upon the Ground, they certainly break. They are made in the City of *Chincoa* in *China*, having each a four-square hole in the middle, thro' which they string them upon Straw; it pass'd at first for very current in *Java*; but being its baseness has been discovered, it goes at a very low rate. The *Chineses* sell their Percelain here at cheap rates, and bring also Silk, Sattin, and Damasks of their own Manufactory, which they exchange for Pepper, Lacque, Indigo, Sandal Wood, Nutmegs, Cloves, Tortoise-shells, and Ivory. They have neither Temples nor Priests at *Bantam*, but have both at *Panarucan*.

Java abounds both in wild and tame Beasts, the Forests are fill'd with Elephants, Rhinocerots, Leopards and Tygers, which make them very unsafe, and is the reason why Frankincense, Mastick, Myrrh and Benzoin (which is better here than in any other place) are not gathered in so great Quantities; the before-mentioned Beasts, as well as the Serpents, Lizards and Salamanders, making the Forests very dangerous to pass. The Hogs here are without Bristles, but their Bellies hang down to the Ground.

The Rivers are very well stor'd with Fish, there having been Oisters seen in those Parts that weighed 300 pound; which would seem incredible, if there were not to be seen to this day 2 Oister-shells in the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*'s Cabinet, which *Olearius* 1657. bought of a Sea-Captain's Wife at *Enchuysen*, and weigh'd 462 pounds. Deer, wild Goats, and Boars, are likewise here in vast plenty, but are not easily to be taken, by reason of the unpassableness of the Woods, and the unskilfulness of the *Javaneses* in the Use of Fire-Arms. The Rivers feed also abundance of Crocodiles; the *Chineses* tame, fatten, and eat them for a peculiar Dainty.

Oisters of 300 weight.

Their Civet is not so white nor well scented as that of *Guinea*. They have 2 sorts of tame Fowl, one like those of *Europe*, the other of the *Indian* Breed, which are wild and furious; some have black Flesh, but notwithstanding this is very good Food. Civet.

The *Rhinoceros* is in the same esteem with them now-a-days as the Unicorn was with the Ancients; his Flesh, Horn, Blood, and Teeth, nay, even his Dung being apply'd to Medicinal Uses. They have also Ants here of a much larger size than ours; they spoil every thing they come at. They have a certain kind of these Creatures reddish, and of the length of a Man's Finger, but these live in the Fields upon the Barks of Trees. Rhinoceros.

Among the Fruit-trees of *Java*, the *Arrequero* which bears the *Areca* is none of the worst. It is a Species of the Coco, but less in bulk, and with narrower Leaves. The Fruit resembles a Date inclosed in a Husk, which falls off when it ripens. It is without taste, but taints the Lips and Teeth of a black colour. The *Indians* after they have mix'd it with a little Lime, wrap it up in a *Betele*-Leaf, and so chew it, looking upon it as a good remedy against the Scurvy: It will cause to such as are not used to it a dizziness in the Head, but it soon passes over.

The *Manga* is a Fruit growing upon a Tree not unlike our Walnut-trees; it is something like our Peaches in bigness and colour, being of a red and green. The Shell incloses an Almond, which is of a grateful taste when roasted in the Ashes. They pickle them whilst green, and are accounted a good remedy against the Worms and Looseness. The wild ones are rank Poison, which kill without a present Antidote. Manga.

The *Ananas* grows on a Shrub with Leaves like a *Semperviuum*, is green at first, but when ripe turns to an Orange-colour; its Shape is like a Pine-apple yellow within, but they are dangerous if used in excess, tho' the taste is very pleasant: They are not much Ananas.

larger

1639. larger than a good Limon. The Stalk is like a Thistle, every one bearing but one at the very top; it is very apt to overheat, and occasions Fevers.

Samach. The Fruit call'd *Samach*, is also of the bigness of a Citron, juicy and tart, with black Kernels. The Leaves which are like to, but somewhat less than the Limon-trees, Pickled with Salt and Sugar are accounted a good remedy in Fevers and Inflammations, as we do our *Tamarinds*, which also grow in great plenty here.

The *Tabaxir*, i. e. *a white frozen Liquor*, is found in the knots of certain Canes, of the bigness of a Poplar, with streight Branches and Leaves, not unlike those of the Olive-tree, but somewhat longer. It is like Starch, and in such esteem with the *Persians* and *Arabians* for the Vertue they attribute to it in the cure of Fevers and bloody Fluxes, that they buy it at a very dear rate. These Canes are so big, that the *Indians* cleave them asunder, and make Boats of them, leaving a knot on each end.

Durions. The Isle of *Java* produces also another Fruit, call'd *Durions*, not to be met any where except here and in the *Malaccaes*. The Tree call'd *Batan*, is of the bulk of our Apple-trees, the Blossoms of a pale yellow colour, the Leaves half a Foot long, and 3 Inches broad, of a very lively green on the inside. The Fruit both for its colour, bigness, and outward division resembles our Melons, but within is divided into 4 Partitions; which being again subdivided into 2 or 3 lesser Cells contain the Fruit, which is as white and big as a Pullet's Egg, and of the most luscious taste in the World; it has a Stone as big and rough as that of a Peach. It will not keep, and therefore must be used as soon as the outward Husk opens. One thing is very observable, that if you lay but a few *Bettele* Leaves near a whole Room full of *Ditriaons*, they will all rot immediately; and if you have surfeited your self with the excessive eating of this Fruit, 2 or 3 *Bettele* Leaves apply'd to your Breast, or one of the same Leaves eaten, will give you ease, and digest them without any farther danger.

Lantor. The *Lantor* Tree, another Species of *Coco's*, has Leaves 5 or 6 Foot long, and so smooth, that the *Javaneses* use them instead of Paper.

Cubebs. Cubebs are found no where in the *Indies* but in the Isle of *Java*; it grows upon a Tree not unlike the Pepper, and in bunches. The *Javaneses* hold it in such esteem, that they will not sell it unboil'd, nor will allow as much as one Plant to be transported into other Parts.

Mangosthan. The *Mangosthan* is much of the taste of our Sloes, and grows wild in the High Ways in *Java*. And the Herb *Talasse* bearing neither Flower nor Fruit, is used green in Sauces, its Vertue being to fortifie the Stomach.

Jaca. The Fruit *Jaca* is of the bigness of a Citrul, having a rough Rind, within which are certain Nuts, the Kernels thereof being roasted are a present Remedy against a looseness. It is observable that this Fruit often changes its taste, sometimes like a Melon, sometimes like a Peach, and at other times like a sweet Limon. The Nut is as big as a Date, but is not to be used raw, because it occasions Vomiting and Griping in the Guts, but roasted it is both pleasant and good, and reckoned a good Restorative for those that love Women.

Wild Cinnamon. On the side of the Island towards the Streight of *Sunda*, you meet with abundance of wild Cinamon, but is never transported into foreign Parts.

Cacapuli. The *Cacapuli* are a kind of *Indian* Cherries, white, dark red, and of a Carnation Colour; the Trees and Fruit are like those in *Europe*.

Costus Indicus. The *Costus Indicus*, call'd *Pucho* by the *Malayans*, resembles in every respect, both in heighth and Flower, the *European* Elder-tree, wherewith the *Persians* and *Arabians* drive a considerable Trade, as they do also with the *Calamus Aromaticus*. There is a yellow and spungy Matter in its Stalk, which some Women make use of to appease the Pain of the Matrix.

Zerumbet. The *Zerumbet*, call'd *Cantor* by the *Malayans*, is like Ginger, except that it has somewhat larger Leaves; it is preserv'd or dried like Ginger, but valued above it.

Galanga. Of *Galanga* there are 2 kinds, the lesser is brought from *China*, and is preferable before that of *Java*. The Herb grows wild about 2 Foot high with a white Flower and pointed Leaves: The *Javaneses* use both the Root and Herb in their Salads; the first are knotted like Canes, and of a biting taste and good Scent.

Benzoin is a Gum of a Tree resembling the Limon-Tree; whilst they are young, the Gum is white, but when they grow old, it changes black: It is by the *Moors* call'd *Lovan Javy*, *i. e.* the Juice of *Javy*. 1639. Benzoin.

Sandal. This Isle produces abundance of red *Sandal* Trees, which are of the bigness of our Walnut-Trees; their Fruit resembling our black Cherries, but is insipid: But the white and yellow *Sandal*, which are much preferr'd before the red, grows in the Isle of *Timor* and *Solor*. Of this the *Indians* make a Decoction wherewith they rub their Bodies, looking upon it as a great Restorative.

Ginger. Ginger they have also in abundance here, which they eat either green or preserved, but never dry'd.

Anacardium. *Anacardium* is used by the *Javaneses* as an approved Remedy against the *Asthma* and Worms; they boil it in Milk, or pickle it like Olives.

Pala de cuebra. The Wood call'd *Pala de cuebra* by the *Portugueses*, of a pale yellow Colour, is used by the *Indians* in Wine or Water against Fevers and the Stings of Serpents.

Calamba. That by the *Indians* call'd *Calamba*, and by us *Lignum Aloes*, grows not only in *Java*, but also in *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Cambaya*, and other Places. It is not unlike to, but somewhat bigger than an Olive-tree; and whilst green has no Scent, but as soon as it dries its Scent is perceived: Its Goodness is known by its weight and Colour, which must be brown, from whence issues an Oil, if held to the Fire. The wild *Calamba* is used chiefly in Funerals, for the burning of the dead Corps of the *Indian* Priests.

Lacque. Abundance of *Lacque* is sold at *Bantam*, but the choicest comes from *Begu*: Here certain great winged Ants suck the Gum of the Trees, which they afterwards cast upon the Boughs, as the Bees do the Honey and Wax; these are cut off, and set in the Sun to dry till the *Lacque* falls off, which they give what Colour they please, and is used in Sealing-wax and *Lacque*-works of *China* and *Japan*.

The other Drugs of *Java*. The other Drugs of *Java* are *Pody*, which they use against Winds and Rheumes; *Flors*, a Root they dye their Calico's with; *Conjuapi*, is another Root wherewith they rub their Bodies; *Samparentam*, is another Root stronger than *Ginger*, but bitter. *Pontibu* is accounted a Sovereign Remedy against Fevers, and upon that score sold at a dear rate. *Gatogamber* is a Fruit resembling Olives, good against the Tooth-ach. *Ganti* is altogether like *Ginger*, but much dearer, they use it to rub their Bodies with; *Safam*, they call Mustard-seed. *Doringi* is given to Children as soon as born; the Root *Galam*, growing in Watery places, is a great cooler. The Fruit *Tianco* is taken at all times, whenever they find themselves indisposed; *Maidian*, *Maya* and *Corossani* are used in their Liquors, as having an intoxicating quality. *Spodium* is the Ashes of a Tree, wherewith they rub their Bodies; they do the same likewise with the Flower call'd *Sary*, and the Roots *Targary*, *Surabian*, and *Sedowaya* are appropriated to the same use. *Sambaya* is a Fruit of the bigness of an Acorn, which being accounted a most Sovereign Remedy against Poison, and especially that of venomous Beasts, is sold at a very high Price; *Jalave* is of the same use as *Sambaya*. The Herb *Paravas* is cooling, but scarce and dear. *Tomonpute* is a Root used against the inflammations of the Spleen. The *Conduri* are poisonous Berries, but are used to weigh Gold and Silver with, *&c.* The *Javanese* being exasperated by the ill usage they often received from the *Portuguese*, would not for a long time permit any Strangers to have any Settlements there; till at last the hopes of gain engaged the Kings of *Bantam* and *Jacatra*, to let the *English* and *Dutch* set up their Factories there, under certain Conditions, which being but ill observed by the *Indians*, the *Dutch* took this opportunity of fortifying their Settlements at *Jacatra*, and that with so much expedition, that the *Indians* finding themselves not in a condition to force them thence, engaged with the *English* to assist them in the expulsion of these bold Strangers; in the first Sea-engagement *Jan.* 2 1619. near *Bantam*, the *Dutch* had the worst; upon which the King of *Jacatra* in conjunction with the *English*, besieged and attack'd their Fort for six Months, till the *Dutch* Fleet being re-inforced, obliged the *English* to quit both the Siege and the Streights of *Sunda*; and landing their Men, took the City of *Jacatra* by Storm, and put all to the Sword; the next thing they had to do, was to compleat their Fortifications, which they did so effectually, that in a little time they made them very regular, with 4 Bastions of

The Dutch Establishment in Java

Free-

1639. Free-ſtone, well Trench'd, and Palliſado'd, and defended by a Proportionable number of Half-moons, Redoubts, *&c.* The King of *Matram* laid Siege to it twice ſince, *viz.* 1628. and 1629. but was forced to raiſe it as often, ſince which time the *Dutch* remain in the quiet Poſſeſſion of their Traffick here, with the *Chineſes*, *Japoneſes*, *Siameſes*, and other Neighbouring Nations, and receive 10 *per Cent* Cuſtom upon all Commodities, imported or exported, each Stranger inhabiting in the City of *Batavia* (for ſo they call'd it afterwards) being obliged to pay a certain monthly Tax, Proportionable to what profits they make, which is very great, and conſequently the Tax not in the leaſt burthenſome, for a Porter who perhaps gets 2 Ryals a day, does not pay above one and a half in the Month.

Batavia.

The City of *Batavia*, (which lies 12 Lgs to the E. of *Bantam*) being for its convenient Situation in a Bay, which is ſheltred by many Iſlands from the Violence of the Winds, one of the beſt Roads in all the *Indies*, and the chief place of Commerce belonging to the *Dutch* in thoſe parts.

The Iſle of *Madura.*

To the N. W. from *Java*, betwixt that and the Iſle *Borneo*, lies the Iſland of *Madura*, ſubject to its own Prince, whoſe Reſidence is in the City of *Aroſſabaya*. As by Reaſon of its barrenneſs, it is a place of no Trade, they live upon Pyracy, eſpecially upon the Coaſt of *Pegu*.

The Iſle of *Baly.*

The Iſle of *Baly* lying to the E. of *Java*, has not above 12 Lgs in Circuit; but to the S. jets out a Cape a great way into the Sea. Its Northern point is 8 deg. and a half beyond the Line; The King Reſides in a City bearing the ſame Name with the Iſle. The Inhabitants are *Pagans*, and ſo Superſtitious, that they Worſhip the firſt thing they meet with in the Morning, they are very Black, with curl'd Hair, but wear no Beards, no more than the reſt of the Iſlanders in theſe parts, and wear the ſame Garments, for their Women, who have an averſion to Beards, oblige them to pull out the Hair by the roots. They have each ſeveral Wives, whence this Iſle is ſo Populous, that above 600000 living Souls are accounted to be within its Compaſs, though abundance of Slaves are ſold from thence every year.

Plenty.

They live for the moſt part upon Husbandry or Weaving; becauſe they abound both in Cotten, and Rice, but allow none to be tranſported; They are alſo ſufficiently provided with Oxen, Buffles, Goats, and Hogs, and ſome Horſes, but very ſmall ones; They have whole Foreſts of Oranges, Limons, and Citron-Trees, which furniſh them with vaſt Stores of Pheaſants, Partridges, Peacocks, and Turtles; as their Marſhes do with Ducks, and other wild Fowl.

Drugs.

It produces no other Spice but *Ginger*, but they have ſeveral other Drugs; and a certain Fruit growing in a ſhell like a Cheſnut, white, and of a delicious Taſte, and is beſides this an approved remedy againſt the Scurvy.

Fiſh.

All along the Coaſt, the Seas, and the Rivers furniſh them with incredible plenty of Fiſh; which next to Rice, is their main Subſiſtence; They have but little Commerce with Strangers, except that they ſend now and then ſome of their Calicoes in ſmall Veſſels to the Iſle of *Java*. In this Road moſt Ships bound for the *Molucques*, take in freſh Water and Proviſions, which are to be bought here at a very low Rate. They have Iron, Copper, and Gold Mines, but the laſt are not cultivated, for fear the Fame of theſe Riches ſhould draw thither ſome Foreign Nation or other, that would without Queſtion reap the Fruits of their Labour. Their King whoſe title is *Quillor*, *i. e.* a Conſtable, is in great Veneration among his Subjects, and governs his Dominions, by certain Governours appointed for each Province. They perſiſt very obſtinately in Paganiſm, as alſo in that Diabolical Cuſtom, for Women to burn themſelves with their Husbands.

Borneo.

The Iſle of *Borneo* lies further to the N. than *Java*, one of the largeſt in thoſe Seas, extending 6. Degr. to the N. though its greateſt part lies on this ſide of the Equinoctial Line; ſome make it 400 Lgs. in Compaſs; but the *Dutch* with more probability aſſign it no more than 290 Lgs. in circumference. Its Chief Places are, *Borneo*, *Succidana*, *Landa*, *Sambas*, and *Benghemaſſin*.

The City of Borneo.

The City of *Borneo*, is like *Venice*, built upon divers ſmall Iſlands, interwoven with Channels, there being no Paſſage there but by Boats; According to the account the *Dutch* have given of it, it contains about 2000 Houſes. This Iſle produces the beſt Camphire, as alſo Gold and *Bezoar*, which Stone breeds in the Maw of a Sheep or Goat, within the ſubſtance of which is ſometimes found incloſed a tuft of Graſs. It is ſmooth, inclining to a greeniſh Colour, its goodneſs being to be tried by its weight. In the Country of *Pan*, near *Malacca*, is a certain ſmooth and ſlippery Stone, found in the Gall of certain Hogs, of a reddiſh colour and bitteriſh taſte; which being ſteeped only in cold Water, afford a moſt effectual remedy againſt all Poiſon and infectious Diſtempers. The Iſle of *Borneo* affords alſo Diamonds, *Sapan*-wood uſed by the Dyers, *Braſile*-wood, Wax, Pepper, Frankincenſe, Maſtick, and divers other Gums. 1639.

The Iſle is not deſtitute of good Harbours, among which that of *Borneo*, at the mouth of a very good River, is one of the largeſt and moſt Commodious. Their Cities are not very populous, and their wooden Houſes ſo ſlightly built, that they often remove them at pleaſure. They are accounted very ingenious, but will rather live upon Pyracy than Induſtry, unto which they are ſo much addicted, that their Veſſels are ſeen upon the Coaſt of *Pegu* 400 Lgs thence. They uſe Swords, Bucklers, Lances, Darts and Pikes. The King, and moſt of the Inhabitants near the Sea-ſide are *Mahometans*, but deeper in the Iſland they are *Pagans*. They are black, and well-ſet, wear Callico wrapt about their Loins, like moſt of the other *Indians*, and Turbants on their Heads.

The Iſle of *Celebes*.

The Iſle of *Celebes* lies betwixt that of *Borneo* and the *Molucques*, under the Equinoctial Line. *Mercator* would have it to be one of thoſe Iſlands, call'd *Sindas* by *Ptolemy*. Its Capital City is call'd *Macaſſar*, which lies in the moſt Southern part of the whole Iſle, 5. Deg. 17. Min. beyond the Line. The Inhabitants are ſo Induſtrious, that they leave not an inch of ground unmannor'd, and ſow with Rice, what they ſtand not in need of for their Cattle and *Coco*-trees. Tis not long ſince they have embraced Mahometiſm. They much reſemble the *Siameſes*, and thoſe of *Pegu*; eſpecially in their Faces, and carry like them a Ball of Ivory in their Prepuce, and are for the reſt of a comely Stature. The Women Dreſs their Heads like thoſe of *Malacca*, and in the Street have their Breaſts open, and wear Breaches reaching to the knees. The N. W. Winds, which blow here from *November* till *March*, make the ſhore very unſafe during that time, and the continual Rains over-flow the flat Country, which is the reaſon that moſt of their Houſes are built upon Piles 9 or 10 foot above the ground.

There are two Kings more, *viz.* one of *Tello*, and the other of *Battergoa*, in this Iſland. The Iſle of *Gilolo*, by the *Portugueſes* call'd *Bato China de Moro*, exceeds the *Celebes* in bigneſs, and produces plenty of Rice and *Sagu*, (whereof more in the Deſcription of the *Molucques*;) Tortoiſes, *&c.* The Inhabitants are very well limb'd, but Barbarous, and not many years ago were Canibals.

The Iſland of *Amboyna*, is ſo near the *Molucques*, that ſome have accounted it among their number; Its circuit is 24 Lgs. at 4 degr. beyond the Line, and 2 Lgs. from the Iſle of *Ceiram*. The Chief City has to the W. of it, a very fair Bay of 6 Lgs. where there is ſafe Anchorage, and good ſhelter for Ships againſt the Winds. This Bay enters ſo deep into the Country, and the Sea on the oppoſite ſide cuts ſo deep within the Land, that the Iſle is very near divided into two, there being only a ſmall *Iſthmus* of 120 fathom left, by which it is join'd together. The leſſer part of the Iſle, therein is the Caſtle of *Amboyna*, contains about 120 ſmall Towns, and the greater but four Towns, and about 7 Villages. The Inhabitants were heretofore Savages, and Barbarous, nay, Canibals, who apply'd themſelves to no Agriculture, which made the Country appear like a Wilderneſs; but of late Years they have apply'd themſelves to he cultivating of the Ground, which being very fertile, produces great plenty of Oranges, Limons, Cocoes, Bananas, Sugar-caues, beſides Cloves. They continue ſtill to be a ſort of Ignorant people, the only skill they ſhow, being in the Management of a Dart, which they do with ſo much dexterity, that at 60 paces diſtance, they will hit a Crown piece. They are famed for their Cakes, made of Rice, Almonds, and Sugar; which the Inhabitants of the adjacent Iſlands take againſt the bloody Flux; for their Rice-bread, made in the ſhape of our Sugar-loaves, and for their ſmall Galleys, which in ſwiftneſs exceed any in *Europe*. It was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugueſes*, in the year 1515.

The Iſle of Amboyna.

Its Inhabitants.

1639. 1515. But the *Dutch* having afterwards also got footing there, the *Portugueses* being resolved to spoil their Commerce, set upon 5 *Dutch* Vessels in the Port of *Banda*, but being repulsed with loss, revenged their disgrace upon the *Amboynese*, whom they suspected to favour the *Dutch*; whereupon, the then Admiral for the *Dutch* in those parts, *Stephen Verhagen*, landed 2 years after, *viz. Feb.* 21. 1603. landed a certain number of Soldiers near *Amboyna*, in order to attack the Castle, but whilst he was landing his Artillery, the *Portuguese* Governor, not daring to stand the shock, surrendred the place without a Cannon shot; though the Garrison consisted of 600 *Portugueses*.

The Dutch take Amboyna.

Before *Mahometism* was introduced into the Isles of *Java*, *Amboyna*, and the *Molucques*, by the *Persians*, and *Arabians* tracing hither, they were all *Pagans*; some of which continue in it still, others, though circumcised, yet persevere in their *Pagan* Superstitions. Nothing is more frequent here, than to Worship the Devil; tho' they are not able to tell you what he is, They affirm him to be an Aereal Demon; whence they give him the Name of *Lamithe*, i. e. *Air*, yet make him subordinate to another call'd *Lanthila*, as well as to him they call *Tantay*, who is a deg. lower than *Lanthila*. They give them one general Name, *viz. Tito*, i. e. *Evil* Spirits, and say that they appear to them in Human shape, when they are to pronounce their Oracles, and reveal unknown things to them. To do this 20 or 30 of them Assemble, and by the help of a small Drum, call'd *Tyfa*, some Wax-candles, and certain Conjurations, as also a Sacrifice of Meat and Drink, make them appear before them. As they are of Opinion, that what ill befals them comes from the Devil, they are very careful not to neglect his Worship; for which purposes, they have Wax-candles lighted in their Houses, where they attend the Devil with Meat and Drink.

Their Religion.

Consult the Devil.

Circumcision. Their Circumcision is also different from that of the *Jews* and *Mahometans*, for instead of cutting off the Prepuce, they only slit it, and that not till they are 12 or 13 years of Age.

Marriages. Their Marriages are soon made, and as soon dissolved; For every thing being agreed upon, they use no further Ceremonies, except that the Bridegroom's Father gives a small present to the Bride, in lieu of which her Father makes the wedding Feast; where they have their Musick and Dancing. If a Wife have a mind to part from her Husband (which they do upon very frivolous occasions) she has no more to do, than to restore the present, which done, she pours Water on her Husband's feet, to intimate, that thereby they are both cleansed from all Impurities they have contracted during their Marriage, which is thereby dissolv'd, and either party at Liberty, to provide themselves another Spouse, as soon as they please, when they are to take a solemn Oath; Water is put into a Dish, into which having cast Gold, Earth and a Leaden Bullet, they dip into it, the extreamity of a Musquet Barrel, the point of a Halbert, Sword, Knife, or some other Weapon, and so give the Dish with Water to him, who is to take the Oaths to put him in mind, that all what has been cast or dipt into the Water, will be Instrumental to his Destruction, if he forswear himself.

Oaths.

Sorcerers. They have among them a certain mischievous Gang, who under pretence of Witchcraft, do mischief to their Neighbours, either by poison or other means; they are call'd *Zippngi*, but when ever they are found out, they are sure to meet with very severe Punishment.

Their Qualities. The Natives of *Amboyna* are naturally stupid, timorous and gross; they commonly bury their Riches, for fear of being rob'd, and such is their simplicity, that they are not to be brought to any Trade; They are so far from any Knowledge, that they have not as much as any Characters among them; all they apply themselves to, is Fishing, and cultivating their Gardens, upon the Fruits of which they live very miserably, though it is observable, that they generally are strong and well proportion'd.

The *Dutch* have three Forts in this Isle, *viz.* The Fort *Cumbella*, or *Victoria*, (fortify'd with Stone Bastions) and those of *Hitten* and *Larew*.

Banda. The Isle of *Banda*, which is 3 Lgs in length, and one in breadth, lies 24 Lgs from *Amboyna*, extending from N. to S. It has some few Towns, the Chief of which is *Nera*. The Inhabitants are very zealous *Mahometans*; As they are always at War with some of their Neighbours, so they keep a constant guard along their Coasts. Their Arms are, the Cymetar, and a wooden Buckler 4 foot long; in the managing of which they are very expert, as being train'd up to it from their infancy. They make use also sometimes of Fire-arms, but what they put their chief trust in is the Lance, being 8 or 10 foot long, which they cast with such Dexterity and Strength, that they will run a Man quite through with it; of these they commonly have 2, which after they have cast, they betake themselves to their Swords; so they make use of a kind of light Gallies, having on each side just above the surface of the Water, two seats like Wings, where the Slaves are set to row. Three are allotted for each seat, every one with his Oar, which being made like a hollow wooden Shovel, they thrust it as far as they can into the Sea, and in drawing of it back, turn it about their Heads, with such a slight and swiftness, that there are but few Ships that can over-take them, with all the Sails they can make. 1639.

Their Arms.

The Natives of *Banda*, live very often to 120 years of Age. When they inter their Corps, they are carried by 12 Persons upon a Bier or Coffin, covered with Calicoe, the Men first, and the Women following it; after it is buried, they return to the House of the deceased, where they Feast together, order incense to be burnt over the Grave, for 24 hours, and set up a burning Lamp at Night, in a hut, made for that purpose. The Men lead a very idle Life, leaving all Business to the Management of the Women; who are imployed in breaking the Nutmeg-shell, and drying the Nut and Mace, the chief thing they rely upon for their Maintenance. As far as ever I could learn, this most excellent Spice, grows no where but in the Isle of *Banda*, and the six following adjacent Isles, which make up the Isle call'd *Banda* by the Inhabitants; *viz. Gunaxi*, *Nera*, and *Lantor*, (which is the best Road for Vessels) *Puloway*, *Pulorini*, and *Rossingin*.

Interment.

It is next to a Paradox to believe, that these 6 small Islands should be able to produce such Prodigious quantities of Nutmegs, as are sufficient for the whole World; unless it be considered, that besides a few *Duriaons*, *Nancan*, *Bananas*, *Oranges*, and *Coco*-Trees, the Islands are covered all over with them, like one continued Forest; the Trees of which are laden with Flowers and Fruits, which is gathered three times a year; *viz.* in *April*, *August*, and *December*; but the best is gathered in *April*. The Tree it self resembles our Peach-tree, the Leaves whereof are somewhat less, and more round. The Fruit is enclosed within a husk, as thick as that of our Walnuts, which being opened, you see a Leaf very thin upon a hard shell, which may be discovered through it; this Leaf is the Flower of Nutmeg or Mace, and to come to the Fruit you must break the shell, whilst the Nut is green; the Flower is of a Carnation Colour, which after it is parted from the shell, turns to an Orange Colour. It makes a most excellent preserve, if done with Salt and Sugar. The Inhabitants make a good Stomachick Ointment of Nutmegs or Mace Powdred, and mix't with the Oil of Roses.

Nutmeg.

Mace.

The Inhabitants don't amount to above 12000 in all, among them are not above 500 fit to bear Arms, yet are they so mutinous and stubborn, that to Bridle them, the *Dutch* have 2 Forts here, call'd the *Nassau* and the *Belgica*, where Vessels may Anchor at 9 or 10 fathom Water, within Musquet shot, and that without the least danger. The Serpents here are of such a Prodigious bigness, that in the Isle of *Nera* one was found, with 5 Hens, one Duck, and a sucking Pig in the Belly.

The Dutch Forts of Banda.

The *Molucques*, properly so call'd, are no more than five in number, to wit, The Isles of *Ternate*, *Tidar*, *Motsel*, *Machiam* and *Bachiam*, known to the Ancient *Pagans*, by the Names of *Cupe*, *Donco*, *Montil*, *Mara*, and *Seque*; and situate all together within the space of 25 Lgs. The Sun-beams are so penetrating here, that they render the ground as dry as a Sponge, which not only sucks in all the Rains that fall, but also swallows the very Torrent near their Scources. But as they are not able to penetrate through the thick Forrests, so the grounds there produces both Trees and Herbs; whence it is, that these Islands are sufficiently stored with *Bananas*, *Cocoes*, Limons, Oranges, *Sandal* and *Calamba*, besides Spices of all sorts, but they produce neither Rice nor any other Grain; The defect of which is supply'd by the Tree, call'd by the Natives *Laudan*, and *Segueiro*, by the *Portugueses*, the pith of which furnishes them with a kind of Meal for Bread, as the Leaves when come to their full growth

The Molucques.

serve

1639. ſerve them for the covering of their Houſes, and the bigger veins for Rafters, as the leſſer make good Cordage. While theſe Leaves are young, they are covered with a kind of woolly ſubſtance, which affords Materials for Stuffs. They are not unlike the *Cocoe* Leaves, the Tree which bears them being commonly 20 foot high, and the trunk a fathom in Compaſs, but being compoſed only of the Bark and Pith, is eaſily cut down, the firſt not exceeding an Inch in thickneſs; The Pith is very white, and may be eaten without any further Preparation, after the ſtrings of the wood which are mix'd with it are removed; But, if they intend to make Meal of it, they beat the Pith to powder, put it in a Searce made of the Bark of the ſame Tree, over a Tub made of its Leaves; and by pouring a ſufficient quantity of Water upon it, ſeparate the ſtrings from the mealy part, which ſettles at the bottom of the Tub, and being ſeparated from the Water, and dry'd, affords that Meal they call *Saga*. This they Bake in certain moulds of Earth, made red hot, with incredible diſpatch. This Tree, which grows alſo in *Amboyna*, and ſome other places, affords alſo a certain Liquor, call'd *Thuack*, which taſtes like Wine.

Sagu, a ſort of Meal.

A ſort of Wine.

Theſe Iſlanders, tho' they are not deſtitute of Cattel, yet live for the moſt part upon Fiſh; they have no Gold, Silver, or any other Mines, being furniſh'd with Iron from the Iſland of *Lambaco*. They are generally black, tho' the Women not ſo much as the Men, with black ſhining Hair, (occaſioned by their continual perfuming it with ſweet ſcented Oils) great Eyes and Eye-brows, and ſtrong Limbs; they ſoon become grey, yet live to a great Age, are active rather than laborious, and very ſociable in Converſation, but ſomewhat inclining to boldneſs, and inſolence, and in their Dealings cratty and deceitful. The Men wear generally Turbants like the *Turks* covered with Plumes. The King is diſtinguiſhed from his Subjects by a kind of a Mitre, being for the reſt clad in Drawers only of blue, red, green, or yellow Satin, ſome of theſe Iſlanders make uſe alſo of a kind of cloſe-body'd Coat faſtned round the Shoulders, and cut below like the Military Garments of the ancient *Romans*. The Women wear no Head-dreſſes, but lay their Hair ſmooth over their Heads, which they tie behind, and cover it with Plumes, or Flowers; their Garments are of *China* Silk Stuffs, but their chief Ornaments are their Bracelets, Rings, and Necklaces of Pearl, Diamonds, Rubies and Emeralds. The *Chineſes* were the firſt who made themſelves Maſters of theſe Iſlands, and after the *Perſians* and *Arabians*, who introduced *Mahometiſm* here.

The Inhabitants.

Their ancient Cuſtoms (tho' very barbarous) are their only Law; they allow Polygamy, yet don't puniſh Adultery; but ſtealing is a mortal Crime. At break of Day certain Perſons appointed for that purpoſe, beat the Drum about the Streets, to exhort the People to the performance of the Matrimonial Duty; they uſe generally the *Malayan* Language, tho' every one of theſe Iſlands, has its peculiar one, which ſhews them to be deſcended from divers Nations.

A peculiar piece of Policy.

Thoſe of *Java* firſt of all brought Cloves to theſe Iſlands, whence queſtionleſs the *Perſians* and *Arabians* tranſported them among the *Greeks*, and *Romans*; the *Egyptian* Kings had eſtabliſh'd the Spice-Trade in the ports of the *Red-Sea*, where after the Conqueſt of this Kingdom by the *Romans*, it continued till the diſſolution of the Empire. The *Geneneſes* monopolized this Trade for many Years at *Caffa*, till the *Turks* found means to carry the Spices by the means of their *Caravans* to the *Mediterranean Sea*; but this Commerce was much ſpoil'd by the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, who having eſtabliſh'd it at *Alexandria*, and *Cairo* by the way of the *Nile*, remain'd in Poſſeſſion of it till the *Portugueſe* found out the way by Sea round *Africa*, to the *Eaſt Indies*, and by means of their Fleets deſpoil'd the *Egyptians* of this Commerce, and continued Maſters of it till the *Dutch* diſputed the ſame with them, and at laſt got it into their Hands; it was in the Year 1511. that the *Portugueſe* firſt diſcovered the *Molucques* Iſlands, being invited thither by ſome of their Kings, who were at variance among themſelves, and had ſo much good nature as to deſire the *Portugueſe* to erect their forts there, for the better defence of their reſpective Iſlands. Pope *Alexander* VI. having divided the two *Indies* betwixt the *Caſtilians* and *Portugueſe*; the Emperor *Charles* V. pretending the *Molucques* to belong to him, (upon an erroneous Suppoſition concerning the diſtance of the two Rivers, *Ganges* and *Indus*,) ſent *Ferdinand Magellanus* the 21ſt. *September* 1519. from St. *Lucar* to take poſſeſſion of theſe Iſles in his Name. Being come to 53 deg. he paſs'd the Streight call'd ever ſince after his Name, the Streight of *Magellan*, and came up to the height of the *Molucques*; but being by contrary Winds, and the Current of the Sea forced to the *Manilles*, was there ſlain with 35 of his People. 1639.

The Cloves and Spice Trade.

The Streight of Magellan.

The Emperor ſent afterwards thither *Gonzalo Gomez de Eſpinoſa*, and *Sebaſtian del Cano*, who took the Oath of Fidelity of the Kings of *Ternate*, of *Tidor*, and of *Gilolo*; but the *Portugueſe* being ſenſible of the advantage that accrued to them in the Spice-Trade by theſe Iſlands, took the opportunity, whilſt the Emperor was embroil'd in heavy Wars in *Europe*, to interrupt the Commerce of the *Caſtilians* in thoſe Parts, which occaſioned ſeveral Treaties, *viz.* that at *Segovia* 1525. and that at *Sevil* 1526. which proving fruitleſs, the matter was at laſt brought to an iſſue at *Saragoſſa* 1529. by vertue of which Treaty the Emperor Mortgaged theſe Iſlands to the *Portugueſe* for 350000 Ducats; ever ſince which time theſe laſt remain'd ſole Maſters of the Clove Trade here, till they were interrupted by the *Dutch*.

Ternate.

The Iſle of *Ternate*, the chiefeſt and biggeſt of the *Molucques* is ſituate 48 deg. on this ſide of the Line, 28 Lgs from the Iſle of *Banda*; its compaſs is about 8 Lgs, it affords but little Proviſions, except Goats and ſome Poultry; but the Almonds here are moſt excellent, the Shell (each of which contains 3 or 4) being ſo hard that the Smiths uſe them inſtead of Coal. It produces alſo ſome Tobacco, but much inferior in goodneſs to that brought from the *Weſt Indies*.

Gamma Lamma.

The Town of *Gamma Lamma*, the Capital of the whole Iſland, conſiſts only of one Street 2500 Paces long, built along the Sea-ſide, the Houſes being all of Cane or Timber. The Road is not fit for Anchorage, the bottom being all rocky, which makes the *Dutch* Veſſels always lie at Anchor near the Village of *Telingamma*, within 2 Miles of *Malay*, betwixt the Iſlands of *Ternate* and *Tidor*.

Cloves.

The Clove Tree.

But the chief Product of theſe Iſlands is the Clove, call'd *Clavos* by the Modern *Spaniard*, by reaſon of its reſemblance to an ordinary Nail. The Tree that bears it, is by thoſe of the *Molucques* call'd *Siger*, the Leaf *Varaque*, and the Fruit it ſelf *Chanque*. The Tree reſembles the Laurel, its Leaves being however ſomewhat narrower, like thoſe of the Almond-tree; ſhooting forth its branches at the top, not unlike the Myrtle. The Fruit is white at firſt, grows green by degrees, and brown when it comes to Maturity, but does not turn black till it be dry'd in the Sun, which is done in 2 or 3 Days.

This Tree grows naturally without planting, or cultivating; bears Fruit in the 8th. Year, and laſts 100 Years. The Fruit is gathered but once every other Year, becauſe the Inhabitants break off the Buds the firſt, that they may have a more plentiful Crop the ſecond Year. The Fruit is ripe from *Auguſt* to *January*. This Tree affords no Gum, by reaſon of its exceſſive heat, the Fruit being ſo dry, that the Inhabitants, to increaſe its weight, put a Pitcher with Water within 10 foot of their Clove Bags, which is ſuck'd up within 2 or 3 Days time. The *Chineſes* do the ſame with their raw Silks. As the *Molucques* yield more Cloves than any of the other Iſlands hereabouts, this has miſled ſome to affirm, that they grow only here, it being certain they yield yearly 6000 Barrels of Cloves (550 weight to a Barrel) tho' at the ſame time the Iſles of *Ires*, *Meyeraus*, *Crudy*, *Sabuge*, *Marigoran*, *Gamoconora*, *Amboyna*, but eſpecially the Iſle of *Veranula* produce conſiderable quantities, but not ſo good as thoſe of the *Molucques*.

The Mountain of Ternate.

In the midſt of the Iſland of *Ternate* is a very high Mountain full of Palm and other Trees, which has a moſt miraculous Well on the top, which is ſo deep, that 500 fathom of Rope did not reach to the bottom, but to a very fair Spring, the Water of which no body hitherto has ventur'd to taſte, by reaſon of the ſulphurous Exhalations, which about the *Equinoxes* eſpecially iſſue from this Mountain, and ſometimes caſt red ſtones at 20 Lgs diſtance; this Mountain is covered with Wood near 2 parts of its height, but afterwards is exceſſive cold, having on the top a very cold ſpring, and a Lake of ſweet Water planted about with Trees. They know not of any certain difference of ſeaſons in theſe Iſlands, except that it generally rains more with the N. than with the S. Wind. Serpents

1639. they have of 30 foot long, but neither malicious nor venomous, living for the most part upon Fish.

This Island has also a peculiar Creature call'd by the Inhabitants *Cuſos*, which as it feeds on Fruits, so it is always seen upon the Trees, its Tail being of such strength, that it will hang by it to a branch of a Tree the better to come at the Fruit; it is in shape not unlike our Rabbets; its colour betwixt a gray and a red, with thick curling and soft Hair, round and fierce Eyes, and very small Feet. As they have scarce any Domestick Birds except the Parrots, so their Forests are full of wild ones.

Cuſos.

The *Moluccques* produce a certain Wood which burns, sparkles and flames like common Wood, but consumes not, tho' you may rub it to Powder with your Fingers. Not far from the Fort *Ternate* grows a certain Shrub call'd *Catopa* by the Inhabitants, from which falls a Leaf which by degrees turns to a Butterfly.

An incombustible Wood.

The Isle of *Tidor* is at least as large and fruitful as *Ternate*, the Inhabitants here being so industrious as to improve the Fruit of the Clove Tree by pruning and watering it, which by this means becomes both fairer and larger than the rest. Here they have also the best white Sandal-wood, and those Birds call'd *Paxaros del Cielo* by the *Spaniards*, and by us *Birds of Paradise*. After they have catch'd them, they cut off their Feet close to the Body, so that when the Flesh drys, the Skin and Feathers join insensibly together, that many have been of Opinion, that these Birds are without Feet.

Tidor.

Birds of Paradise.

The *Dutch* are Masters of *Malaya*, a well fortify'd Town in *Ternate*, as also of the Fort of *Taluco*, and that of *Maricco* in *Tidor*, of the Fort *Barneveld* in *Bachiam*, and 3 more in the Isle of *Machiam*, *viz.* at *Taſſaſo*, *Tabillola*, and *Guoſſiquia*. They have also a Stone Fort in *Motir*.

The Kingdom of *Bachiam*, which is govern'd by its own Sovereign, being so well stor'd with *Sagu*, that the Inhabitants have sufficient wherewithal to subsist without Labour, has made them so idle, and careless, that they are scarce able to raise 500 fighting Men.

Bachiam.

The Isle of *Machiam*, which is subject to the King of *Ternate*, is about 7 Lgs in Circumference; the *Dutch* made themselves Masters of it 1601. since which time they have erected three Forts; the 1st. at *Guoſſiquia*, situate upon an Eminency, and strengthened by 4 Bastions of Stone; as is also the Fort of *Taſſaſo*, built likewise upon an Ascent, at a 160 Paces from the Sea-shore; it is bigger than the first. The Fort of *Tabillola* has only 2 Bastions. Besides these 5 Islands properly call'd the *Moluccques*, there are about 72 more, subject to the King of *Ternate*; from *Mindanao* on the North side, and *Bina* and *Corea* to the South, and between the Continent of *New Guiney* to the East. The most noted are these, *Motir*, *Machiam*, *Cajoa*, *Xula*, *Burro*, *Na*, *Nolos*, *Meao*, *Tuſiare*, *Doe*, *Saquite*, *Totole*, *Baol*, *Guadupa*, *Gorontano*, *Ilibato*, *Tamſue*, *Manado*, *Dondo*, *Labague*, *Jaqui*, *Gabe*, *Tobuquo*, *Buto*, *Sanguaen*, &c. Some of which are 70 Lgs distant from *Ternate*.

Machiam

The *Philippine* Islands which lie to the North of the *Moluccques*, were discovered by *Ferdinand Magellanus*, 1520. but no establishment was made there, till 1565. when they got the Name of *Philippines* from *Philip* II. then King of *Spain*.

The Philippine Isles.

The first Settlement of the *Spaniards* was made in the Isle of *Zebue*, and about 6 Years after that in the Isle of *Luſon*, now called *Manille*, from its chief City, which is situate in an Isle made by an Arm of the Sea, at 12 deg. on this side the Line, in the most Southern part of the Isle; the whole compass of which is 350 Lgs; it is 70 Lgs from *China* to the North, and 270 Lgs to the N. E. from *Japan*; to the East it is encompass'd by the Ocean, and to the South by the great *Archipelago*, which is thereabouts divided into 5 Seas, and stor'd with a vast number of Islands. The Fertility of the Soil joyn'd to the Industry of its Inhabitants, makes this Isle abound in Corn, Rice, Fruits of all sorts, and Drugs; as likewise in Beef, Bouffles, Deer, Goats and Hogs; their Cocoe-wines they keep so long, till it becomes as strong as *Spaniſh* Wine. Their Limons, Oranges, Figs, and Pears are the best in the World; and they abound both in Domestick and wild Fowl and Birds. They have a peculiar way here of killing the Crocodiles, of which they have great numbers; he who is to engage with this Creature, Gantlets his left Arm to the Elbow, having in the same hand a Truncheon of a foot long, pik'd at both ends, with a Dagger in the other; thus armed, he goes into the Water up to the Waste, and while the Crocodile is making at him with his Jaws open, he thrusts his left Hand down his Throat, so as to keep them from shutting, and in the mean while stabs him with his Dagger in the Throat till he drops down dead. 1639.

The *Philippine* Islands produce more Tygers, Lions, Bears, and such like wild Beasts, than *Africk* it self, and abounds in *Algalias* (which are the Creatures from which they get the Musk) and Civet-Cats.

The *Chineſes* drive a vast Trade in these Islands with the *Spaniards*, the last of which buy their Calicoes, Silks, Porcelain, Gun-powder, Sulphur, Iron, Quick-silver, Copper, Meal, Nuts, &c. and carry them to the *West Indies*, where these things are sold at a very dear rate.

In the City of *Manilla* resides a *Spaniſh* Archbishop, who has three Bishops under his Jurisdiction for the Spiritual Government of the *Philippine* Islands; and such is the influence they have here over these ignorant Wretches, that they keep them in subjection without any standing Forces; the Archbishop is also Vice-Roy of these Islands, and has the Management of all Publick Affairs, in conjunction with the King's Council appointed in that City, which is very large, and its Houses built of Stone, after the Modern way. Within and about it live above 15000 *Chineſes*, and vast numbers of the same Nation resort thither every Year for the Conveniency of Traffick; so that from *December* to *April* you may see in the Harbour (which is defended by 2 Wooden Forts) near 500 *Chineſe* Vessels. This Place is also much frequented by the *Japoneſes*, but not in near so great a number as by the *Chineſes*, notwithstanding which the *Spaniards* are much more jealous of the first than of the last.

The Archbishop of *Manilla*.

The City of *Manilla*.

Japan is composed of many Islands, distinguish'd by several Arms of the Sea, extending from 31 to 39 deg. of elev. being in some places scarce 10, in others 30 Lgs in breadth. On the East side it hath *New Spain*, to the North *Tartary*. On the West *China*, and the Sea to the South, with part of the *Terra Auſtralis*. The whole Empire consists of 66 lesser Kingdoms or Provinces; 53 whereof are comprehended within the two great Kingdoms of *Meaco* and *Amagunce*; 9 others within the great Kingdom of *Ximo*, and the remaining 4 in that call'd *Xicoum*.

Japan

According to the *Japoneſes* own confession, they are to this Day uncertain whether the whole Empire be an Island, or annexed to the Continent, forasmuch as from the Province of *Quanto* to the Borders of the Province of *Tzungaa* is 27 Days Journey to the E. N. E. and then they cross an Arm of the Sea of 11 Lgs broad, which brings them into the Province of *Jeſſo*, or *Seſſo*, so encloſed by unaccessible Mountains, that no body hitherto has been able to discover the extent of them. The whole Empire of *Japan* being divided into many Provinces, the same are committed to the Government of certain Princes and Lords, who have their Secretaries assign'd them by the Emperor himself, whose business it is to have a watchful Eye over them, and to give an account of their Transactions, especially concerning their Revenues, which are very great, and according to the computation of the *Japoneſes* amount yearly to 18 Millions 400000 *Kockiens* (each of which makes 4 *French Crowns*) out of which they are oblig'd to maintain a certain number of Forces both Horse and Foot for the Emperor's Service, in proportion to their Revenues, which consist chiefly in Lordships, and Demesns. They have Mines of all sorts, &c. so that he who has 1000 *Kockiens per Annum*, is oblig'd to maintain 20 Foot and 2 Horsemen, by which means the Emperor is able to raise an Army of 368000 Foot, and 38800 Horse, besides the 100000 Foot and 20000 Horse he entertains as a standing Force, out of his own Revenue, which is so much the less to be admir'd at, that some of these Lords have such vast annual Revenues, that according to the beforementioned Proportion, they are obliged to furnish 1200 Foot and 120 Horse.

Whether it be an Isle or Continent.

The Emperor of *Japan*'s Army.

All the great Lords of *Japan* have three Names, *viz.* their proper Name, that of the Family, and a Sirname; which they commonly take from the Province, City, or Castle they govern; they have also a Custom of changing their Names thrice in their Lifetime, the first given them in their Infancy being altered at the Age of 26, and that again at 50 or 60 Years of Age.

They

1639. They have another Custom in *Japan* for the Slaves to offer themselves a voluntary Sacrifice to their Masters whenever they die, which is done by a solemn Engagement, and confirmed by a Bottle of Wine.

They die with their Masters.

As this is chiefly done by those Slaves, to put an end to the Miseries they endure in their Life time, so there have been some, who have desired from their Masters to bury them under the Foundation they were going to lay for some Considerable edifice or other. Their *Pagodes* or Temples are of wood, about 7 or 8 fathom square, and rais'd 3 or 4 foot from the ground. They have small Turrets with lights in them on all sides, and within certain Statues, unto whom they Address their Prayers. The King, and Great Lords have many fair Castles belonging to them, among which, those that are fortify'd, are Garrison'd by the Emperor; but their Cities are generally without any Fortifications, and if some few of them have any, they are only single Walls. Their Cities are built after the same manner, each Street having two Gates, which are shut up, and guarded in the Night time; They have no peculiar Revenues belonging to them, neither pay they any Impositions, except a very inconsiderable rent for their Dwellings to the Governour; for whose use they are also obliged to keep a Man at work at certain times, but this does not happen very often; The Governours having, as we told you before, certain Demesnes allotted them for their Revenues, and among others, the advantage of Fishing, especially of the Whale, of which there are yearly taken near 300 upon the Coast of *Japan*, but they are neither so big nor so fat, as those of the Northern parts.

The Japonese freed from Impolts.

Every *Japonese* of what Condition soever, is absolute Master of the Life of his Slave; They are so cruel in their Punishments, that the least trespass is punish'd with Death; Gaming for Money, and killing any Person, though in his own defence, is Capital, and so is Theft, though it were but for a Penny; and in Offences of a more heinous Nature the Fathers, Brethren and Children are put to Death for the Crime of a single Person; nay the Wives and Daughters, tho' never so Innocent are involv'd in the same misfortune, for they are made Slaves, and their whole State is confiscated. Thieves are fastened with a Rope of Straw to a Cross, and then the Executioner runs them with a Pike into the right side up to the left Shoulder, and again, from the left side up to the right Shoulder. Other Malefactors are fastned only to a Post, with their Hands stretch'd out, and held up by two Persons, and so the Executioner runs them with a Pike through the Neck into the Heart. Those Crimes which involve the whole Family into the same Punishment, are Extortion, Coining, Firing of Houses, Wilful Murther, and Ravishing of Women, and are punished, by crucifying with the Head downwards, by boiling in seething Oil or Water, tearing them to pieces by 4 Horses, *&c.* Lying is also capital here, especially if said before a Judge.

Their Punishment.

Lying capital.

Their Princes and Great Lords, if guilty of any Crimes are banish'd into the Isle of *Faitsenjima*, lying 14 Lgs from the Province of *Jedo*. It is all Rocks, without any Road or Harbour, producing nothing but Mulberry Trees, and Silk-worms, which furnish those Miserable Prisoners with Materials, for the making of Stuffs, in which they employ their Life, and are relieved from time to time with most miserable food. It is computed that the Expence the Emperour of *Japan* is at yearly in his Court, amounts to 4 Millions of *Kockiens*, and 5 Millions more for his Governours and Military Officers.

His ordinary Residence is in the Castle of *Jedo*, which is 2 Lgs in Circumference, and strenghned with a triple Wall, and as many Mounts all of free-stone; The gates whereof are covered with strong Iron Bars, and lodges built over them, which contain 300 Soldiers, for a guard of each Gate. His own Palace, with the Apartments of the Women, stands in the Center, and round about it the Houses of the Princes, and other Great Lords, all richly gilt and sumptuously furnish'd, their chief emulation being to out-view one another in this kind of Magnificence, which is among them look'd upon as the greatest mark of the respect they can pay the Emperour, who never stirs abroad, but in Company of a great number of these Lords, and their young kindred, who are the Guard of his Body, and by applying themselves, to Musick, Physick, Writing, Painting, or the Management of publick Affairs, render themselves qualified for higher employments. They are all clad in Black, and as they march along the Streets, don't so much as utter one word.

The Castle of Jedo.

1639.

As the Revenues of the Emperour of *Japan*, are so great, that the ordinary income of 2 Months is sufficient to defray his whole years expence, his Treasure must be immense, most of which consisting in Gold and Silver, is laid up in vast Chests, enclosed in several Towers, belonging to the Castle, besides what is disposed in divers parts of the Country.

The Emperour's Treasure.

Their Horse are arm'd with Corselets, Fire-locks, not much longer than our Pistols, with Pikes, Bows, Arrows and Cymetars. The Foot have only Head-pieces, 2 Cymitars each, a Musquet, Pike, a half Pike, and a broad Knife; each Company consists of 50 Soldiers, a Captain, a Lieutenant, and 10. Corporals; 5 of these Companies make a Battalion, commanded by a peculiar Officer, and 50 Companies a Brigade.

Their Arms and Soldiery

The Emperour of *Japan* has a numerous Council, though only 4 are charged with the Management of all Important Affairs, and are to attend daily at Court; some of these have 2 Millions of Crowns, others 300000 or 400000 Crowns, others 40000 or 50000 Crowns yearly Revenue; But their Expences are Proportionable to their Riches; being obliged to live at least half the year at Court in vast splendor, maintaining perhaps a retinue of 300 Persons, and above 1000 in their Families, and that in a place where Provisions are excessive dear; not to mention the vast Expences they are at in their Buildings, and the Entertainments they are obliged to give to the Emperour, whenever he is pleased to honour them with a present, perhaps of a Crane, which he has taken a hunting. As Great Persons are not to marry any Wife, but what is presented to them by the Emperour himself, so they are put to vast charges, in giving them all the Magnificent Entertainment, and all the Enjoyments they can, except their Liberty, which they must resign to their Husbands, and are not permitted to go abroad, above once a year, to visit their neerest Relations; notwithstanding the Wives of *Japan* have the Reputation of great reservedness, and being beyond all others faithful to their Husbands, of which many instances might be alledged, which for Brevities sake, we will not relate here.

The Council of State.

Their Expences.

There are however not wanting those who ascribe this reservedness, rather to the severity of their Laws, than their Inclinations, it being certain, that even the least suspicion of dishonesty after Marriage is punished here with the utmost cruelty; so that, if a Husband finds his Wife lock'd up in a Room with another Man, he may without any further enquiry kill them both. The better to allay the heat of youth, and the danger arising from thence, in respect of Adultery, they have in the Cities; nay, even in most Inns upon the Road, certain Prostitutes, who being for the most part Slaves, expose themselves to Travellors for Money; and, if a Man is to stay for any time in a place, he may hire one of these Concubines from their Masters, at a certain easie rate, and keep her for his own use.

Jealousie

As to their Devotion, it may truly be said, that they scarce have any at all; the most devout among them seldom praying in publick above once a Month, before their Idols, which stand in their Temples (of which there is a vast number all over *Japan*;) near them are their Sepulchres, covered with great Tomb-Stones 2 or 3 foot high, and those of Persons of Quality, have a little Pillar erected near them, containing their Names, and certain other Inscriptions, in the Nature of an Epitaph.

Devotion.

Their Ecclesiasticks are divided into 12 different Sects; eleven of which abstain from any that has been living, and from Women, but are permitted to use *Sodomy*; if they break their vow, they are punish'd with Death. Those of the 12th Sect, are allow'd to marry, and to feed upon all sorts of Provisions; the chief of this Sect is the Head of all their Clergy, and their Temples are endow'd with many Priviledges, and settled Revenues, whereas those of the other Sects, are maintain'd only by Alms. Some among the *Japoneses* believe the Immortality of the Soul, and the rewards and punishments of another Life for ever; But the most have so little sense of Religion, that they meet in their Temples to Drink, and commit other Debaucheries; whence it is also, that never any such thing is heard of as Controversie about Religion; tho' they are such irreconcilable Enemies to the Christians, that suffering Death not to be sufficient

Their Ecclesiasticks.

Their Opinion concerning the Soul.

1639.

Their hatred to Christians.

ent to shake their constancy, they invented a 1000 Methods, to renounce their Faith, which however at last they were not satisfy'd with, unless they could discover another Christian to release them from their Torments; which are so various as would almost fill up a whole Volume.

Their Houses are very slightly built, and seldom above one story high, because the Country is much subject to Earth-quakes, they are raised 3 or 4 foot from the Ground, and convenient enough within; being divided into certain Apartments, some of which are for the Men, the rest only for the use of the Women; where the best part of the Furniture is bestow'd; they are also very nice in their Gardens and Orchards;

Are civil.

They are very obliging in Conversation, especially in their visits, when they present their Guests with *Tobacco*, *Tsia* (a kind of *Thee*, but much better) and with Wine; of the last of which they will take sometimes a very plentiful share; but are sure never to quarrel over their Liquors; Except the Inns for conveniency of Travellers, no drinking Houses are allow'd of in *Japan*; nay, not so much as a publick Cooks-shop, it being their Custom to make their good chear (of which they are great Lovers) in their Houses, where among other things they entertain one another with their Musick, the chief of which is a kind of a Lute, with 4 Silk strings, which they strike with a Peg of Ivory. Their Wine, or rather *Hydromel* is made of Rice, Sugar and Honey, and is as strong as any Wine.

Their Marriages.

Their Marriages are contracted betwixt the Relations, the Bride and Bridegroom being not permitted to see one another, till it is to be Consummated. Those of a common rank may soon be divorced, and if they dislike the Wife, send her back to her Relations, but People of Quality notwithstanding any Disagreement, maintain them in their Houses. Their Children, they educate with all imaginable mildness, without any

Education of their Children.

beating, as well at home as at School, whither they are not sent till they be 7 or 8 years of Age; and when they come to Mans Estate, the Father assigns to his Son a certain part of the House and of his Employment; nay perhaps, the whole, reserving, only a certain allowance for his Subsistence to himself, but the Daughters have neither dowry, nor the least share in their Father's Estates. They are so nice in point of Honour, that they will rather die than recede an inch from it; and a *Japonese* will rather run the hazard of the ruin of his Family, than break his Promise to his

Are Honourable and Trusty.

Friends, which is the reason, that most of their delinquents, will rather endure the most exquisite Tortures, than discover their Accomplices.

The *Japoneses* having such vast plenty of all things, seldom traffick in any Foreign Commodities, but leave that Commerce to Strangers, especially to the *Chineses*; who bring thither the Products and Manufacturies of their Country; though ever since (by reason of the Insolence of the *Japoneses* residing in *China*) the Ancient good Correspondence betwixt those two Empires has been interrupted, the *Chineses* are forbidden by their Kings to Traffick into *Japan*, and therefore are obliged to carry on this Commerce under pretence of transporting their Commodities, to some other parts of the *Indies*; unto which they are the more encouraged by the vast hopes of gain, all Commodities either Imported or Exported out of *Japan*, passing free without paying the least Duties or Customs.

Their Language.

The whole Empire of *Japan* uses but one and the same Language, which is quite different from the *Chineses*; as well as their Characters. As they always use but few words, they write every thing with Pencils, in certain short-hand Notes, in a very little time; their accounts they keep by the means of certain small bowls, which they thread upon little sticks on a square Board. They are not destitute of Books

The *Dairo*.

nor Libraries; The *Dairo* (who formerly was the Soveraign of the Country, and still retains the Preeminence over the Clergy) keeps the publick Records and Writes the Chronicle of the Country. Neither are any other Persons, except the Gentlemen of his House, and such Lords and Ladies as are descended from his Family, allow'd to write Books, which makes them constantly apply themselves to Learning.

Their Money.

The *Japoneses* have but one kind of Measure; Their Gold is of the best kind, but their Silver none of the finest; Of Gold Coins they have three sorts, one whereof is valued at 48 *Tayls*, each of which being worth 5 Crowns Sterl. amounts to 12 Pound Sterl. The 2d sort are worth each 1 *Tayl* and a 5th part, and the 3d 1 *Tayl* and a 6th part; Their Silver Coin goes by weight, being in the form of *Lingots*, so divided, that each piece commonly amounts to 50 *Tayls*. They have also a lesser Silver Coin, made in the shape a *French* bean, which goes likewise by weight.

1639.

The product of Japan.

As the *Japoneses* don't geld any Creature, so they are well stor'd with all sorts of Cattle, as well as Fowl and small Birds; they also abound in Mineral and hot Waters. There is a certain hot Spring here, which spouts forth its Waters duely twice every 24 hours (except when the East Wind blows, when it gives Water 4 times) with such violence, that though the Water arises amidst the Stones, which are laid on the top of the hole, to the height of 20 or 24 foot, it is so hot, that no boiling Water is to be compar'd to it, burning every thing it touches at its first coming out; but being conveyed by certain Pipes into the Circumjacent Houses, it is reduced to such a Degree of heat, that it is convenient for bathing: These Mineral Waters are sufficient proofs, that *Japan* is full of good Mines of all sorts, for they have Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron and Lead of their own; as well as Cotten, Flax, Hemp, Silks, and all manner of Provisions in Plenty. Their Physicians have a singular reputation for their Ability, but Chirurgery is unknown among them as yet; They make frequent use of *China* root and *Rhubarb*, which as well as most of their other Medicines they, make up into Pills.

The *Portugueses* and *Spaniards* found it no hard matter to settle themselves in *Japan*, and their Religious Ceremonies took so well with the Inhabitants, that they were permitted to build divers Churches in the Kingdom; But the *Spaniards* not being able to contain themselves long within the bounds of Modesty, their domineering temper created such a jealousie and aversion in the *Japoneses*, that they set upon them, burnt their Ships, and 1636. totally banish'd them the Island,

The *Spaniards* banish'd *Japan*.

under pain of Death, if ever they return'd again.

The *Dutch* began to Trade thither first, 1611. Some of their Relations affirm, the City of *Meaco*, to be 21 Lgs in compass; and that the City of *Ossack* and *Bomgo*, are for their Wealth, not inferiour to any of the *Indies*.

The *Dutch* settled there.

The Air of *Japan* is very moderate and healthy, but inclining rather to cold than heat; they Sow in *May*, but don't Reap till *September*. They have neither Oil, nor Butter, and have an aversion for Milk, which they consider as part of the Blood, the Receptacle of the Souls of Beasts; they will not feed upon the Flesh of tame Beasts, but are great Lovers of all kinds of Venison and wild Fowl. Their Cedars are so big here, that they make Masts of them for their Ships; Their Complexion is inclining to Brown, and for the rest are Lusty and Strong limb'd, hardy and patient to undergo any Labour, as well as the injury of the Seasons; never changing their Cloaths, either Winter or Summer; and very moderate in their diet upon occasion.

The Climate of Japan.

The *Japoneses* are distinguish'd into 5 several Ranks, the first is that of the Princes, Lords, and the Chief Officers, both Civil and Military; the second of the Clergy, the third of the Gentlemen and Merchants, the fourth of Trades and Seamen, and the fifth of day Labourers. Once in five Years the Emperor of *Japan* has an interview with the *Dairo* at *Meaco*, which is very Remarkable for its Magnificence, and the great presents made to the said *Dairo*, an ample account of which being to be found in the *Dutch* Relation of the director of the said Company in *Japan*, we will supersede to give the particulars of it here, our intention being only at present to give the Reader a short Relation of what we have received from very good hands, leaving the rest to be compleated by those who have since had the opportunity of taking a view in Person of that Country.

After the Banishment of the *Japoneses* out of *China*, the *Chineses* to avoid the Penalties inflicted upon such as should Trade with them, made use of the Isle of *Tayovang*, whither they carried their Commodities, in order to continue their Commerce with those of *Japan*.

Form of Government.

The Isle of Tayovang.

The *Dutch* being excluded from the Commerce of *China*, follow'd their Footsteps, and 1632 settled themselves in the said Island, as the most convenient place in all the *Indies* for carrying on their Traffick both with *China* and *Japan*; there being a free Passage here all the Year, without being obliged to stay for the *Mousons*, which in most other Places last whole six Months.

1639. Months. The *Dutch*, I say, being sensible of this Conveniency, built immediately a Stone Fort of four Bastions on the Downs, within half a Lg of the great Isle of *Formosa*, which is divided from this Isle by a Chanel only; which tho' not very deep (as having not above 13 or 14 Foot Water at high Tide) yet affords a safe Harbour for Ships against any Winds. For the better defence of the entrance of this Chanel, the *Dutch* have built a strong Redoubt, call'd *Zealand*. The Island of *Formosa* it self is situate at 21 dgs on this side the Line, about 32 Lgs distant from the River of *Chincheu*, and the *Chinese* Island, call'd *Quemoy*, extending from S. W. to N. E. to 21 dgs and an half; its Compass being of 130 Lgs. It is well fill'd with Villages and Inhabitants, who are not govern'd by any single Person, but such as they chuse themselves for their Magistrates; of which more hereafter.

The Dutch settle here.

The Products of Formosa.

It has many Rivers full of the best Fish; their Forests are well stor'd with wild Fowl and Venison, and their Meadows with Cattel; besides Deer, wild Goats, Hares, Rabbets, and such like. Their Forests produce a kind of Horse with Horns like a Deer, call'd *Olavang* in their Language, the Flesh whereof is a great Dainty; as also another Creature not unlike our Bears, but of a much larger size, the Skin of which is much esteem'd in those Parts.

Their Grounds are very fertile, but lie neglected, which makes Fruit very scarce, and what they have, not very grateful to the Palate: It produces also some Ginger and Cinamon; and, as the *Chineses* relate, likewise Gold and Silver: But the *Dutch* have hitherto found none of these Mines worth their looking after. The Places in which the *Dutch* have their Settlements, and lie for the most part along the Sea-side, are, *Sinkan*, *Mandauw*, *Toulang*, *Taffacang*, *Tifulucang*, *Teosang*, *Tefirang*.

Its Inhabitants.

Its Inhabitants appear at first sight like Savages, being of a more than ordinary size, black and hairy all over their Bodies, but in their Conversation are very obliging, honest, and good natur'd. Their Women are not so strong and big, but inclining to Fatness, and yet not ill-shap'd. They wear a sort of Garment round the middle; but when they bath themselves (which they do commonly twice every day in warm Water) they as well as the Men strip themselves stark naked, and make no great account whether they are seen by one another or not. For the rest they are very constant Friends, and religiously observe the Agreements they make with Strangers, Treachery being a thing abominated among them.

Are civil and ingenious.

They neither want Ingenuity nor Memory, being very docile and apprehensive in any thing they apply themselves to. Tho' their Grounds be very fertile, and able to produce much more than they do, they are contented to live upon what small quantity of Rice is brought forth by the Industry of their Wives, who instead of Ploughs (of which they have none, no more than Creatures fit for Tillage) cultivate and dig the ground with Spades, transplant and cut the Rice; and after having dry'd as much of it every night in the Chimney-corner, as will suffice the Family the next day, beat it early in the morning in a Mortar, the Mens minds being wholly taken up with Hunting, especially till they are 40 Years of age, before which time they seldom mind any thing relating to the Grounds. They sow also three sorts of Fruit, call'd by them *Ptingh*, *Quach*, and *Taraun*, not unlike Millet, and a certain sort of Pulse resembling our *French* Bean. Some Roots they have likewise, which might serve them instead of Bread, if they were not furnish'd sufficiently in that respect with Rice. Besides this, they have Ginger, Cinamon, Sugar Canes, *Bananas*, Limons, and great store of *Areca*, not to mention several sorts of Fruits and Pulse not known in *Europe*.

Their Wine.

Instead of *Coco*-Wine, of which they are destitute, they make a certain mixture of Rice, which being soak'd in warm Water, they beat it in a Mortar till it be reduced to a Paste: This they mix with Rice-Meal, chaw'd instead of Leaven; and having put it into an earthen Vessel, fill it up with Water, which after it has fermented and stood 2 Months affords a very pleasant Liquor; which is stronger or weaker according as it is kept shorter or longer, and the older the sweeter it is, and may be kept good 30 or 35 Years.

Their Hunting.

When they go abroad a-hunting, they make use of Snares, small Pikes, Bows and Arrows: Their Nets they spread in the open Fields, or cross the High Ways, and so force the wild Beasts into them. Sometimes the Inhabitants of several Villages make a Hunting-match; and dividing themselves into divers Parties, armed with Half Pikes or Lances, send their Dogs into the Woods, by which means having forced the wild Beasts thence into the open Fields, they encompass them on all sides, sometime for a whole Lg in compass; and so with their Pikes kill all that comes within the Ring, of which few escape with Life. These Lances, or rather Darts, are of Cane 6 or 7 Foot long with several Hooks, which being once fastened in the Flesh of the Beast, are not to be pull'd out; but as the Iron is not well fasten'd to the Wood, but that with the running of the Beasts thro' the Bushes it comes off, a Cord is ty'd to both and a little Bell to the Iron; so that the Lance annoys the Beast, and the Bell discovers its passage where-ever it runs. By this means they catch vast numbers of Deer, which they truck with the *Chineses* for their Commodities, they seldom reserving any thing for their own Use but the Umbles and the Entrails, which they salt, and eat them not before they are half corrupted, as being not cleansed of the Filth before they were salted. 1639.

When one Village is to engage in a War with another, they first declare open War against one another; which being the Signal to be upon their Guard, they don't attack one another by open force, but dividing themselves into small Troops perhaps of 25 or 30 Men, lay in Ambush near the Village they intend to attack till night, when they set upon the Huts which lie dispersed in the open Country; & if perhaps they can meet with an aged Man, they kill him, cut off his Head, Hands, and Feet; nay, if they have time enough, cut the whole Body into small pieces, that every one may take home along with him a piece of it, as a Mark of his Bravery. But if the next Village happens to take the Alarum, they are glad to be contented with the Head alone, or perhaps a good Lock of the Hair, which they carry home in Triumph, as an undoubted Sign of their Victory. When they intend to do a very bold Exploit, they enter the Village by night, force open a House, kill all they meet with, and so betake themselves to their Heels, for fear of being pursued. When they engage in the open Field, their chief aim is to draw one another into an Ambush; but the Death of one Man commonly decides the Quarrel, that side which has lost him retiring immediately. *Their Wars.*

Their Arms are Pikes, but without Hooks; their Bucklers are so large, that they shelter their whole Body, but their Swords short and broad. Besides which they also make use of Knives or Bagonets, like those of the *Japoneses*, Bows and Arrows. Sometimes certain Villages enter into a Confederacy against divers other Villages, in which case they don't chuse a General or any Commander in chief, but such among them as have acquired some Reputation of Courage by having cut off some of their Enemies Heads, are follow'd by a certain number of Voluntiers, who go abroad in Parties, and surprize their Enemies. *Their Arms.*

They frequently engage in a War against the Island of *Tugin*, (call'd by the *Dutch* the Isle of the *Golden Lion*.) The Inhabitants thereof are so mistrustful, that they will not let any Foreigners or others set a Foot a-shore; not the *Chineses* themselves, who come thither to trade with them; but are forced to remain aboard their Vessels, whither these Islanders come to truck with them. If they are so happy as to carry off an Enemy's Head, or perhaps only a Lock of his Hair, or a Pike, they carry it in Triumph as a Sign of their Victory, appoint a publick Thanksgiving-Day, sing Hymns, and offer Sacrifices to their Gods. He who has done the Exploit, is look'd upon for ever after as an extraordinary Man, has a most particular Reverence paid him by all the rest; and he preserves the Head or Pike of his Enemy as a most precious Relick in his Family, which they value beyond any Gold or Silver. *The Isle of Tugin.*

No Body here claims any preference above another, than what is allow'd to Age; each Village being governed here by 12 Senators, chosen every 2 years out of the most aged Persons, who are not invested with any other Power or Authority, than that of calling together the Assembly of the whole Village in one of their Temples, and to propose to them what they think necessary to be done, making use of all their Eloquence (of which they have a sufficient share bestow'd upon them by Nature) and Arguments, to perswade the Chiefs of the Families there present to a compliance with what has been proposed to them; which they are at liberty to accept of, or reject, according as they think fit. *Their Magistracy.*

The

1639. The only Power theſe Senators are inveſted with, conſiſts in this, that they ſee the Commands of their Female Prieſts (which are look'd upon as inviolable) to be put in execution; to take care that ſatisfaction may be given to ſuch as are injur'd, not by any Corporal Puniſhments, but by enjoining them to give a piece of Cloth, Deer-skin, ſome Rice, or perhaps a Pot of ſtreng Liquor, as an Atonement, to their Adverſaries: For theſe Magiſtrates have no Power to puniſh Murther, Theft, or Adultery. In the firſt Caſe, the Matter is commonly compoſed by the Mediation of the Relations on both ſides. If any one be robb'd, he goes accompany'd by his Friends to the Houſe of him who has taken his Goods, and with their aſſiſtance forces him to make an immediate reparation; and what is agreed upon betwixt them, he carries away along with him to his own Houſe. In caſe of Adultery, the injur'd Husband goes without any farther Ceremony to the Dwelling-place of his Wife's Gallant, takes from him two or three Pigs, in ſatisfaction of the Affront put upon him, by making uſe of his Wife againſt his Conſent.

Their Quality of Condition. We told you before, that there is no difference of condition among them; which is ſo abſolutely true, that the Names of Maſters and Servants are not ſo much as known among them. All the Reſpect they pay to one another, is in regard of old Age, which is in ſo high eſteem among them, that a young Man meeting an old one, goes out of his way, and turns his back to him till he is paſs'd; nay, ſuch is the reſpect the young People pay to aged Perſons, that they will not refuſe them eaſily any thing they deſire, tho' it ſhould be to go 3 or 4 Lgs upon their buſineſs.

Their Marriages. Men are forbidden to marry till they are 20 or 21 Years of age. They don't let their Hair grow below their Ears till after 17, and, inſtead of Sciſſors or Razors, make uſe of a chopping Knife, wherewith they cut it upon a piece of Wood. The Hair of their Beards they draw out with braſs Pincers. Maids always let their Hair grow, and may marry as ſoon as they can. The Courtſhip is perform'd by the young Man's Female-Relations, whom he ſends to the young Womans Parents or Friends, to ſhew them what he intends to beſtow upon his Miſtreſs; which if it be accepted of, the Match is made, and he may conſummate the Marriage the next day, if he pleaſes. The Preſents commonly offer'd to the Bride, conſiſt in ſome Silk or Calicoe Scarfs, the Women wear round the Waſte; ſome Waſt-coats, Bracelets of Cane, 10 or 12 Rings of Deers-horn, 4 or 5 courſe Cloth-Girdles, ſome little Veſtments made of Dog's-hair, ſome *Chineſe* Garments, a bag of Dog's-hair, a kind of Head-dreſs made of Straw and Dogs-hair, and 4 or 5 pair of Stockings of Deer-skin, amounting perhaps in all to about 40 Crowns. The poorer ſort content themſelves with a Preſent of a few Bracelets, and 2 or 3 Garments, not amounting to above 3 or 4 Crowns. When the Marriage is to be conſummated, the Bridegroom gets into her Father's Houſe by ſtealth at night, without being ſeen by any body, and ſo creeps into the Bed; which he continues thus for many years after, always coming into the Houſe at night, and going thence in the morning before day-light, the Wife living all this while in her Father's Houſe till her Husband be 40 Years of age; and never ſee one another by day, unleſs ſhe happen to be at home alone, or elſe ſomewhere in the Field.

Women deſtroy the Fruit of their Womb till 35 Years of Age. The Women are obliged not to bring any Children into the World, till they are 35 or 36 Years of age, but deſtroy their Children in the Womb, by cauſing one of their Prieſteſſes to kneel upon their Bellies, till they ſqueeſe the Fruit downwards, and cauſe an abortion. As their Marriages are ſoon made, ſo they are as ſoon diſſolved; for if they grow weary of one another, they may divorce, which liberty is equally allowed to both Parties; with this difference only, that if the Husband ſends away his Wife without any cauſe, ſhe keeps the Preſents he has given her before Marriage; but if for Adultery, or any other Affront offered to him, ſhe is obliged to make Reſtitution. No Marriages are contracted among them, within the 4th degree of Conſanguinity or Affinity.

Their Houſes. Their Houſes are generally large, and better built than is ordinarily ſeen in the *Indies*, with 4 Doors, one to each quarter of the Heavens; ſome have 2 Doors on a ſide; they are commonly raiſed 5 or 6 foot from the ground, and 3 or 4 Stories high. Their Furniture conſiſts in ſome wild Boars and Deers Heads, which next to the Heads or ſome other Trophies taken from their Enemies, are their chief Ornaments; the reſt conſiſts in Deer Skins, which they uſe inſtead of Feather-beds, certain Stuffs, wherewith they cover themſelves, a Spade, Pike, Bow and Arrows; a wooden Trough inſtead of our Diſhes, one Earthen drinking Cup, and a Pot to boil their Rice in, which is their ordinary Food. 1639.

Tho' they have no certain Days appointed for Devotion, yet do they meet at ſet times to make good Cheer, eſpecially every Quarter, in their Temples, where the Women alſo appear in a very odd Dreſs (not eaſie to be deſcribed) in their beſt Apparel made of Dogs Hair; for here inſtead of Wooll they cut off the Dogs Hair once a Year, and after they have dy'd them red, make certain Stuffs of them, which they value as much as we do our Scarlet Velvets. Stuffs of Dogs Hair.

Their Funerals. Their Ceremonies uſed after the death of their Friends, are ſcarce to be parallel'd in Hiſtory; for no ſooner is any one dead, but by beat of Drum made of the Trunk of a great Tree, they give notice thereof to the Village, upon which all the People repair immediately to the Houſe of the Deceaſed, and among the reſt the Women; after they have plentifully drunk of *Arac* (which they bring along with them) fall a dancing very ſlowly upon great empty Cheſts, which makes a doleful noiſe, to expreſs their ſorrow at the Departure of their Deceaſed Friend. Eight or ten Women having thus danc'd for ſome time, with their Backs turn'd to one another, they give way for others, who continue the ſame Exerciſe, which laſts in all two hours. The next Day Preparations are made for the Funeral Rites, which are performed not by burying or burning the Corps, as other Nations do, but to dry it in the following manner; they raiſe a kind of a Scaffold of Canes of 5 or 6 foot high, whereto they faſten the Body by the Hands and Feet, and ſo dry it, by making a good Fire round about it, which laſts 9 whole Days, during which time they ſacrifice ſeveral Hogs, and Feaſt upon the Fleſh, waſhing the Body every Day. After the Expiration of the 9 Days, they place it upon another Scaffold, wrap it in a Matt and ſeveral Garments, where it remains till the 3d. Year; then they take out the Bones and bury them in the ſame Houſe in the preſence of their Friends, who make again Merry with Feaſting and Dancing.

Religion. They have not any certain Religion; for as they can neither write nor read, whatever they have of this kind, is founded meerly upon Tradition. Hence it is that they believe the Eternity of the World, and the Immortality of the Soul; which they affirm ſhall find Good or Evil in the other Life, according to their demerits in this. What is accounted amongſt us as moſt Criminal, are taken for ſlender Treſpaſſes among them, *viz.* Murther, Theft, and Adultery; and Fornication is not ſo much as look'd upon as a Sin; and if a Young Man can get a favour of his Neighbours Wife, it is look'd upon as a very ſlight Offence, becauſe they are not permitted to Marry till they are 20 or 21 Years of Age. The greateſt Crimes among them, and of which the Magiſtrates take notice are, To cover their Privy Parts at certain times of the Year, when they ſhould not; to wear at certain times Silk Garments when only Calicoe ones are allowed them; and not to deſtroy the Fruit in the Mothers Womb before ſhe arrives to the Age of 35.

Their Gods. Among ſeveral Deities they have 2 that have the preeminency above the reſt, *viz.* one *Tamigaſanbach*, and the other call'd *Sariahſingh*; the firſt, whoſe Reſidence they place in the South, is the giver of all good and profitable things to Mankind, the other unto whom they aſſign his Station in the North, they ſay deſtroys all what the former is pleaſed to beſtow on Man, for which reaſon they worſhip both, one for doing them good, the other that he may do them no harm. They have among others, 2 Gods named *Talafidao*, and *Tapuliape*, who, as they are accounted the Patrons of Warriors, are adored only by thoſe Men.

Women Prieſts. They have this peculiar, that their Religious Ceremonies are performed by Women, which they call *Inibs*; their Worſhip conſiſts in Prayers and Sacrifices of Hogs, *Areca*, Deer, and wild Boars Heads, as alſo ſome of their Liquors; after they have feaſted very well, the Prieſteſſes ariſe and muttering out certain Prayers, turn up their Eyes, and at laſt fall on the ground with dreadful Cries; ſometime after they lay immoveable like one in a Trance, for an hour, during which time, they ſay, they have an interview with their Gods. This being over, they climb up to the top of the Temple, walk from one end to the other, and after they have ſaid their Prayers again

ſtrip

1639. ſtrip themſelves ſtark naked, expoſe their Privy Parts, and waſh them in the preſence of all the ſtanders by of both Sexes; tho' but few Men aſſiſt at this kind of Devotion, and the Women have generally taken ſo much ſtrong Liquor, that they ſcarce perceive what paſſes. Theſe *Inibs* alſo pretend to foretel things to come, and to baniſh the Evil Spirits; for the reſt each Houſe has a peculiar place for the private Devotions of the Family, which are perform'd for the moſt part by the Women, who make offerings to their Gods, of what is ſpent every Day in the Houſe; as they do upon certain Altars erected for that purpoſe upon the great Roads.

China. The *Chineſe* Empire being of ſo vaſt an extent, that a moderate account of it would take up a large Volume, we will content our ſelves to give only a Scheme of it here, leaving a more ample Deſcription to thoſe, who of late Years have had the opportunity of taking a full view of it. It is certain that thi svaſt Kingdom of *China* (call'd *Cathay* by the *Tartars*, and *Chinghoa* or *Chunque*, i. e. *Middle Kingdom* by the *Chineſes*) is the utmoſt Province of all *Aſia*, to the Eaſt; having beyond it no other Borders but the Sea, for this reaſon call'd by the *Chineſes*, *Tung*, i. e. *of the Eaſt*.

Its Frontiers. To the North its Frontiers extend all along the *Great Tartary*, from which it is divided by a ridge of Mountains, and where that fails by the famous *Chineſe* Wall, which beginning upon the Confines of the Province of *Leaotung*, extends to the River *Croceus*, upon the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Tibet*, 300 *German* Lgs in length. To the Weſt it borders upon the Kingdoms of *Kiang*, *Vuſucang*, and *Bengala*; and to the S. and S. W. upon the *Conchinchine* and the Sea; comprehending in its length all the Southern Parts betwixt the 130 and 160 deg. making 1800 *Spaniſh* Lgs in length, and 3000 in compaſs.

Extent.

Provinces. It is divided into 15 great Provinces, among which, ſix, *viz.* thoſe of *Peking*, *Xantung*, *Kiangnan*, or *Nanking*, *Chekian*, *Fokien*, and *Quangtung* extend along the Sea-ſide; the other 9 being Inland Provinces; 5 of which, *viz.* thoſe of *Quangſi*, *Kiangſi*, *Huquang*, *Honan* and *Xanſi* lie to the North, as the 4 remaining, *viz.* thoſe of *Xenſi*, *Suchuen*, *Queichen* and *Juanan* lie to the Weſt. The Provinces of *Leaotung*, and *Corea*, which are on the Eaſt ſide, don't properly belong to *China*.

Cities. All which contain 145 great Cities, and 1263 others, which would paſs for conſiderable Cities elſewhere. Their Cities are for the moſt part built after the ſame Faſhion, ſquare, with 2 large Streets, dividing the whole into 4 Quarters, like a perfect Croſs, ſo that from the Centre of each place you may view the four Gates of it. They are fortified with broad Brick Walls, and flank'd with Towers after the ancient *Roman* faſhion, plaiſtered over with the ſame Earth they make their Porcelane of, which in time grows ſo hard as Stone, and preſerves the Walls againſt the Injuries of the Air, it having been computed, that ſome of them have ſtood 2000 Years, without any conſiderable change.

Their Houſes are very neatly and conveniently built, with Gardens, Orchards, Groves, Fountains, and all other Conveniencies and Ornaments, their Architecture exceeding that of the beſt Maſters of *Europe*. They are of all the Nations in the World the moſt careful in paving and keeping their High-ways, and providing all neceſſaries for the Accommodation of Travellers, throughout the whole Empire, tho' of ſo vaſt an extent, that the Inhabitants of the Province of *Quantung* lying on the Torrid Zone, are as black as the *African Moors*; whereas thoſe of the Province of *Peking*, which is moſt Northerly, are as white as the *Germans*; which difference is alſo obſervable in their Fruits, the Southern Provinces producing all ſuch Fruits as the *Indies* afford, whereas the more Northern Parts have plenty of *European* Fruits.

Climate.

Product. Beſides this, *China* abounds in Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Musk, Silk, Salt, Precious Gums and Drugs, Rice and Corn, for moſt of which they are beholding to Nature, yet muſt it be withal confeſs'd, that the Induſtry of the Inhabitants, and the eaſie Government they live under, is a vaſt addition to what they are obliged to Nature for; there being not a Fen, Marſh, nay, not a Mountain, but what is planted, cultivated, or put to ſome uſe or other; no Crime being more heinous in *China*, than Idleneſs.

Plenty of Provisions. *China* does not only produce all ſorts of living Creatures, but alſo all the Fruits and Simples we have in *Europe*, but much better, and in greater plenty; and are conſequently ſold at a very cheap rate; nay, even Spices are ſo cheap here, that you may buy 400 Nutmegs for a Crown, and 2 pound of Cloves for half a Crown, and the vaſt quantities of Silk it produces, may be gueſs'd at from what is exported thence into Foreign Countries. 1639.

Their way of Fiſhing. As the Country is full of Rivers, ſo they abound in Fiſhes, which they catch by the help of the Cormorants, of which they have vaſt numbers here; to thoſe they tie a String round their Necks above their Stomachs, ſo that after they have fill'd their Bags which hang under their Throats with Fiſh, they are forced to diſgorge what they have taken, into the Boat, unto which they are faſtned.

Of breeding of Ducks. They have alſo a peculiar way of breeding of Ducks in prodigious quantities. Of theſe they keep 3000 or 4000 in Cages of Canes ſet at the Sterns of great Boats, and let them out every Day to go aſhore and pick the Weeds from among the Rice, and towards the Evening call them to their Cages by a Whiſtle, the ſound of which infallibly brings them back to the Boat unto which they belong. Their Duck Eggs they hatch in Dung, and afterwards put the young ones under the Wings of the old Ducks in the Cages; this way of breeding makes them ſo cheap, that they ſell 5 or 6 for two pence.

The *Chineſes* are generally well ſhap'd, and of good ſize, but the Men are flat Nos'd, with large Faces, ſmall Eyes, and very little or no Beard: They neither cut their Hair nor Nails on the left hand.

Of Clothing. Their Clothing is altogether of the ſame faſhion, with this difference only, that in the Northern Province they uſe Furrs, whereas in the Southern Parts they wear commonly Silk Garments. The Women are very Magnificent in their Apparel, and wear abundance of Jewels and Pearls; they are very remarkable for their little Feet; they ſeldom appear abroad, and whenever they viſit their Relations, it is done in cloſe *Palanquins* or Litters.

Ingenuity. The *Chineſes* are ſo quick, not only in all ſorts of Manufacturies, but alſo in their way of Tradeing, that ſcarce any body is able to over-reach them. Their Money is Gold and Silver, which paſſes altogether by weight.

Provisions for the Poor. They are ſo careful in providing for the Poor, that in each City a peculiar Judge is appointed in order to provide for the relief of ſuch as are unable to provide for themſelves, and to ſet to work ſuch as are in a capacity to get their Bread.

As there are Books extant in *China* which have been printed above 700 Years ago, it is certain that they invented the Myſtery of Printing before us, which was not diſcovered in *Europe* till 1450.

Their Writing. Their Characters are rather Figures, ſignifying certain Words, than Letters, which they write from the top downwards, not with Pens, but with Pencils, and that on one ſide only their Paper, which they make of the Bark of *Bamboe* Canes, being very thin.

Schools. The King maintains at his own charge many Schools and Academies, the overſight of which is committed to certain Viſitors, who at certain times, not only examin the Profeſſors and Scholars, and expel ſuch as they find unqualified for Studies, but alſo promote ſuch as have made ſufficient Progreſs in Learning to the degree of a *Loytia*, a Dignity here like our Doctors. They are very Ceremonious and obliging in their Converſation, in which Point they are ſo nice, that the firſt Rudiments of Learning given to their youths, are certain Books of Complements treating of that ſubject. Their Entertainments are very Magnificent, in which they have this peculiar, that they ſet as many Tables, as they have Guests. Their Meats are ſerved up either in Plates or Porcelane, they have ſmall Cups, becauſe they drink often, but no Napkins, and they frequently ſend home to their Guests, what Meats are left untouch'd upon the Tables, and are eſpecially careful in Entertaining Ambaſſadors (let their errand be what it will) with more than ordinary reſpect. They allow Polygamy, but puniſh ſeverely Inceſt, which is forbidden in a direct line to Infinity, and in the Collateral line to Siſters and Nieces. The firſt however is the only lawful Wife, whoſe eldeſt Son inherits half the Eſtate of his Father, but if ſhe has no Son, or he dies before the Father, the eldeſt Son of the next Wife has the ſame pre-eminency. Adultery, though it be a Capital Crime here yet is ſeldom heard of, partly by reaſon of the great reſtraint the Women are kept under, partly becauſe the *Chineſes* are ſo wiſe, as rather to make the beſt of ſuch an accident, by an ad-

Marriages.

vantageous

1639. vantageous Agreement, than to expose themselves by publishing their own disgrace.

The Government of China.

Though the Government of *China*, be not only Monarchical, but also despotical, yet is it observed, that even in those Nations, which enjoy the greatest degree of Liberty in *Europe*, are much more burthened with Taxes than the *Chineses*; which chiefly proceeds from this Fundamental maxim imprinted in their Kings, that as War is Destructive, and the chief means to impoverish a Nation, they ought not to enter upon it in order to extend their Limits, or making any Conquests; for which reason it is, that to avoid all occasion of Contest with Foreigners, for which the *Chineses* are forbidden, not to go out of the Kingdom, without license from the Emperour, or the Governour of the Province where they dwell. The Eldst Son always succeeds the Father in the Throne, the Younger Sons having only certain appendages with the Titles of Kings allow'd them, but have not the least share in the Administration of the Government, being under the Jurisdiction, or rather inspection of the Governour of the Province, where they reside, who pays them their allowance Quarterly.

The Chief Council of State consists of 12 Councellors and a President. Besides which there are in most of the great Cities 6 Commissioners; The 1st. for the Administration of Justice; The 2d. for the Revenues; The 3d. for the Ceremonies; The 4th. for Martial Affairs; The 5th. for Surveying the publick Structures; And the 6th. for Criminal Cases. To prevent the mismanagement of the Governnors, and the corruption of Judges, and other Officers, the King sends every three years, certain Visitors into the Provinces, who after having taken an account of their Transactions, make a faithful report thereof to the King, who Changes the Officers of the Provinces every three years, with this Circumspection, that scarce ever any Officer of note is sent, but into a Province remote from the place of his Birth.

Their Prisons.

Debtors are punish'd by most cruel fustigations, which makes them rather chuse to sell themselves to their Creditors, than to undergo this kind of punishment. The Prisons, wherewith all the great Cities are provided, are very strictly kept, but at the same time want not any Conveniences, such as Courts, Gardens, Ponds, Walks, &c. for the Divertisement of the Prisoners, and Drinking-houses, and Cook-shops, for their Conveniencies.

No Sentence of Death is Executed without a Warrant from the King, and this must be done in the Presence of the Judge, who are so nice in this Point, that they allow a very considerable time betwixt the Condemnation and Execution; make divers visits to the Prisoners, and examine them, whether they have any thing to alledge in their behalf; by which delays it happens, that more Malefactors die in Prison, than are Executed. Their ordinary Punishments are hanging, impaling, and burning alive, but the last is only in case of high Treason.

Thieves they lay upon their Bellies, with their Hands tied back, and so the Executioners beat them with Canes moistned in Water, upon the Calf of their Legs, with such violence, that they frequently expire under their Hands.

Their Religion.

The *Chineses* are *Pagans*, though some Authors have taken a great deal of pains to perswade the World, that they found some remnants of Christianity among them, which they say, was introduced there by the Apostle St. *Thomas*, but these are bare Imaginations without the least appearance of Truth, it being certain that there was not the least Tract of the Ancient Christian Religion to be met with, before the *Portugueses* and *Spaniards* brought it into this Country. They acknowledge the Heaven, the Creator, and Chief Governor of the Universe, which is managed by a Vicegerent, call'd *Laocon Tzuntey*, unto whom they pay the greatest Veneration next to the Sun. The next Divinity is call'd *Cansay*, unto whom they Attribute the Government of all sublunary things; They allot to these 3 Divinities, as many Great Ministers, *viz. Tanquam* who presides over the Air, *Teiquam* whose business is to look after the Generation of Men, and all living Creatures; as well as the Products of the Earth; and *Tzuiquam* the Chief Patron of the Sea. They have also 3 famous Saints. The first call'd *Sichia*, Founder of all the Religious Orders of both Sexes, of which there are great numbers in *China*, the other 2 are Females, call'd *Quanina* and *Neoma*. 1639.

The *Chineses* are also much addicted to Incantation, and adore the Devil. They believe the Immortality of the Soul, which is Communicated to it by Heaven, and that it shall either enjoy Eternal Felicity or Torments, according to the good or bad Actions done in this World; for which reason it is, that they assign a certain place of abode, not unlike the Purgatory to the Soul after its departure from the Body, there it is purged from its Sins, and by the Incercession of its Relations and Friends, may be eased in its Sufferings; Many of them also adhere to the Opinion of the Transmigration of the Soul.

Their Religious Men.

Their Orders of Religious Men, have one General residing in the City of *Ximtien*, who has under him several Provincials, and these under them the Superiours and Guardians of their respective Monasteries. They make use of Beads, and keep to their constant Mattens and Offices, not unlike the Monks in *Europe*; The eldest Sons amongst the *Chineses*, are not permitted to enter into Religious Orders, and such as have, may quit them at pleasure, and marry, as may all the rest, who have embraced a Monastick Life.

Funeral Rites.

As to their Funeral Rites, the *Chineses* wash the dead Bodies, put them in a Coffin of Sweet-wood well closed, and so keep them upon a Table 15 days, during which time the Priests, who come there to Sing and Pray over the Dead, are Feasted with Wine and Fruit, whose Business it is to interr them after the Expiration of those 15 days, which is commonly done in the Country, near a Pine-tree, and if that be not to be found, they plant one on purpose.

Their Mourning is very close, in Course Cloath and Hats, with a Cord ty'd about their middle. Sons continue thus for two Years, and the other Relations Proportionably.

The first time the *Tartars* broke through the *Chinese* Wall, was 1206. when they made themselves Masters of all the Country, and remain'd in Possession of it till 1368. When they were not only forced from thence, but also obliged to acknowledge the Soveraignty of the Emperor of *China*.

About the year 1600. seven powerful Colonies of the *Tartars* were join'd into one Kingdom, under the Name of *Nuche*, whose King entred, 1616. *China* with a powerful Army.

Many bloody Engagements happened among the *Chineses* and *Tartars*, especially 1618, 1619, 1620, 1625, 1627. till at last 1630. the *Tartars* were once more forced to quit the Possession of *China*, and to content themselves with making Excursions as they found Opportunity.

But 1641. No less than eight Armies of Robbers appearing at once in the *Chinese* Empire, and the Grandees being divided into Factions, some of them call'd in the *Tartars* to their Aid, and at last betray'd the Capital City, and the Emperor to them, who was strangled, 1644.

After which the *Tartars* having spent some years in reducing the other Provinces, they made themselves absolute Masters of the whole Empire, by the Conquest of the City of *Quangchew*, in the Province of *Quangsi*, Nov. 24. 1650.

CHAP. III.

CHAP. III.

Mr. Mandelsloe's *Travels into the* East-Indies. *&c.*

1639.

The Voyage continued.

WE told you how we were becalm'd in the sight of the Isle of *Ceylon*, where we continued till the 20th of *Feb.* when the N. W. wind obliged us to steer our Course to the S. E. we found our selves then 2 min. beyond the Equinoctial Line. I took this Opportunity to ask the Master of the Ship, whether (according to the vulgar Opinion) I might discover both the Poles here, but he sufficiently convinced me, that the *Artick* Pole was not to be seen till about 6 deg. and the *Antartick* not till the 8 deg. of the Line, and that when you come to 8 or 10 deg. the N. W. wind reigns there constantly for 6 Months, as the S. E. does the other Months of the Year.

Divers sorts of Birds and Fish.

We saw abundance of Birds, some white like Pidgeons, others like wild Ducks; and vast Quantities of certain Birds call'd by the *Portugueſe*, *Garayos*, being Black and White, but larger than our Magpies, their Tails are divided like a pair of Taylors shears. All these live upon the flying Fish, who, to avoid the pursuit of the *Albocores*, *Bonitos*, and *Dorados*, betake themselves into the Air. The *Albocores* are White, and without scales, and so are the *Bonitos*, but the first exceed the others in bigness, and have but one Bone, from the Head to the Tail, but are no extraordinary meat. The *Dorado* is like a Salmon, but more luscious, and has smaller Scales.

A Sea Hog.

We also took a Sea-hog (so call'd from its snout, which is like that of a Pig) which if seen in great sholes near the Vessel, are look'd upon by the Sea-men as the fore-runners of a Storm.

The *Dutch* in their first Voyage into these parts, opened one of these Fish, and found a great deal of Fat, and a young Pig in the Belly of it. There is another great Fish in these Seas, call'd *Hayes* by the *Dutch*, and *Shark* by the *English*; their Teeth are very close and sharp, and as they delight in Mans Flesh, it often happens, that they snatch a limb of an unwary Seaman. Their Mouth being below their Heads, they lie upon their Backs, when they are to catch a prey. That we took, had the heart in the Head, and lived a good while after it was taken. This meat is not fit to be eaten. There are also abundance of that sort of Fish hereabouts, call'd by the *Portugueſes*, *Peſce puerco*, because they make a noise like Pigs, and are of the bigness of a Bream.

Tortoises.

Tortoises (the meat of which is as fine as Veal) are in such plenty here, that the Sea-men draw them at pleasure into the Ship with hooks.

Feb. 21st. we found our selves at 1 deg. 20 min. of the Line, with very rainy and inconstant weather, which are ordinary hereabouts.

The 23d. one of our Seamen dyed of the Pox.

The 25th. we were becalm'd; but the next following Night there arose a Tempest, which made us be continually upon our guard, for fear of the *Travado's*, or Whirlwinds, which are so sudden here, that the Seamen have scarce leisure to take in their Sails.

We could not make any observation by the Sun, till the 5th. of *March*, when we were at 8 deg. 6. min. Latitude.

And *March* 10th at 10 deg. 14 min. the wind at W.

The 12th. & 13th. it blew a great Storm, with Thunder and Lightning, but what most surprised us was, that tho' we were at 13 deg. we found not the least effects of the *Monſon*, or ordinary wind of the Season, which is commonly perceived at 8 or 9 deg. the S. wind blowing so hard, that we were in fear of being forced back to the *Indian* Coast.

It was not till *March* 15th. that we found the wind changed to the S. when putting up all our Sail, we made 2 Lgs in an hour, and took several Dolphins, that swam near our Ship.

March 20th. we were becalm'd at 16 deg. where we found the Compass decline 30 min. to the W. and so it continued till the 24. deg. But as soon as the Cape of *Good hope* is doubled, the Load-stone draws towards the Earth.

1639.

As we were floating thus up and down, the 21th of *March*, our Ship took Fire by the carelesness of the Butler, who set Fire to a Barrel of *Aqua vitæ*, as he was removing it. Our fresh Water beginning to be scarce, we made use of an Engine to draw fresh Water out of the Sea, but its taste being somewhat nauseous, it served only for the dressing of Meat.

March 22d. We made by the help of the *Monſon*-wind 2 Lgs an hour, which continued the 23th. 24th. and 25th.

March 26th, the wind held still fair, but for fear of a change and want of fresh Water, it was resolved, to direct our Course to *Maurice* Island, to take in Refreshments there. We discovered the same Night the Isle of *Dieg Rodriguez*, at 20 deg. 48. min. which lies 60 Lgs from the said Island of *Maurice*, so call'd by the *Dutch* from the Prince of *Orange*, who was *Admiral* of the United Provinces, at the time of their first Voyage to the *Indies*. Its Harbour is very large being able to contain 50 great Vessels) and Commodious, by reason of its depth, which is 100 fathom at the entrance. The high mountains, which are covered with Trees, may be seen at a great distance at Sea; The Vallies produce some Fruit, and abundance of other Trees; some of which are those that afford the best Ebony wood in the World; black, red and yellow, but the two last are in greatest esteem; and the Sea abounds in Fish; The *Dutch* in their Relations speak of a Thornback, they catch'd near this Isle, which found 2 good Meals for the whole Ship, and of Tortoises of such a bigness, that 10 Men might sit upon one shell. The Isle was quite destitute of Inhabitants at that time, but since 1640. the *Dutch* have erected a Fort therein.

Mauric Island.

The best Ebony.

A prodigious Thornback.

It abounds in Birds, but is destitute of four Legg'd Creatures; but as for Fruits and Water, it affords sufficient Refreshment to the Ships passing that way. The wind continuing fair, when we came within sight of this Island, a Council was call'd, in which it was agreed, not to lose any time by putting into the Island, but to continue our Voyage with all possible speed, to the Cape of *Good hope*, to avoid the danger of being obliged to winter in the Isle of *Madagascar*. Accordingly we lost sight of this Isle the same day, and pass'd the Tropick of Capricorn, *March* 30th. steering our Course to the W.S.W.

No 4 Legg'd Creatures.

April 1st. we found our selves at 26 deg. 3. min. and after having made 40 Lgs. were becalm'd before Night; we saw the next day divers Whales, and the weather becoming very stormy, carried us to the W. S. W. our business being to steer to the S. and consequently to the Cape of *Good hope*.

The 3d. steering our Course to the W. at 28 deg. 30 min. we made 50 Lgs.

April 5th. the Compass still varying, we took our Course still to the W. and though we had not much wind, made 73 Lgs in these 2 days.

The 6th. we were at 30 deg. Lat.

And the 8th. were becalm'd at 32. deg.

From the 9. (when we were about 300 Lgs from the Cape) to the 14th, we advanced tolerable well, but the 15th, it blew very hard, and those Birds call'd by the *Portugueſe Pintados*, which keep within 40 Lgs of the Land, and several other Birds, which came near our Ship.

Divers sorts of Birds.

The 16th. perswaded our Seamen, that we were not far from the Shoar.

The 17. we continued our Voyage with a fresh Gale, but the 18 and 19 we had scarce any Wind, though the roughness of the Sea, proved an infallible Omen of the Tempest, that overtook us the same night from the S. W. at 35. degr. Latit. As these storms are unavoidable about the *Cape of Good Hope*, we took in our Sails *April* 20th. perceiving the Wa-

1639. ter somewhat more inclining to White than before, and a great many white Seamews, call'd *Mangas de Valndo*, by the *Portugueses*, round our Ships, we concluded, that there was ground within 100 or 150 fathom; and upon trial found it at 80 fathom; we saw also the same day abundance of Black-birds, with a small spot of white only on their Breasts; these according to the Opinion of the *English* Seamen, always forebode a Tempest, which proved true, for before Night a storm arose from the W. N. W. which the 24 turn'd to the N. W. with a very rough Sea, which took our Carpenter from the Deck, but was saved by the means of a Rope. The ground which stuck to the Plummet being black at eighty fathom depth, we concluded we were not far from the *Cape d' Agulhas*, which is 60 Lgs distant from that of *Good hope*.

Cape of the Agulhas.

The 25. the Tempest encreasing at 36 deg. 20 Min. beyond the Line, we were in great danger of being lost, being forced by the Current towards the shoar, but the Tempest being somewhat allay'd, we escap'd that danger, but were soon after threatned by another, occasioned by a Lamp in the Presidents room, which had set Fire to the wainscot.

The 26. the storm continued till 2 in the Afternoon, when the *Pesce puercos* coming in great numbers about our Ships, were the fore-runners of fair weather, and the N. W. wind which ensued.

The 27. in the Morning it was calm, but in the Afternoon we made 2 Lgs an hour with a N. W. wind, taking our Course to the N. N. W. As we saw that day abundance of *Trombas*, or a kind of Canes, 3 or 4 foot long, and of the bigness of a Mans Arm, which float upon the Water, and are to be met with no where but near this Cape, we concluded, that we were not far from the *Cape of Good hope*.

Trombas.

And the 28. discovering the Coast from N. to W. some thought it had been that Cape, but finding ground at 40 fathom, and at 34 degr. 40 Min. we were soon convinced it must be the Cape *de Agulhas*.

The 29. the wind turning S. E. we steer'd our Course to the N. W. along the Coast, and the wind turning to the N. W. the following Night we could advance but little, we then found our selves at 84 deg. 27 min. and consequently 24 Lgs of the Altitude of Cape *de Agulhas*.

April 30th, the wind continued against us.

But *May* 1st. the wind turning to the N. E. by E. we sail'd along the Coast, and at last discovered the high shoar, known by the Name of *Cabo Falso*, (because it resembles a Promontory) within 7 Lgs of the *Cape of Good hope*.

Cabo falso.

The 2d. the N. E. wind continuing, we got sight of the *Cape of Good hope*, but soon after turning about to the N. W. we could not get into the Bay, so were forced to stand out at Sea steering our Course to the S.

The 3d. the wind still at N. W. brought along with it a most furious Tempest, notwithstanding which we made the best of our way to the Coast.

And *May* 4th. doubled one of the points of the *Cape of Good hope*: 10 Lgs distant from the Bay we discovered the Mountain, call'd by the *Dutch* the *Table Mountain*, from its flatness and square Figure, at 34 degr. 4 m. within 15 Lgs. of the Cape; our intention was to have got in there, but the Wind proving contrary, we kept along the Coast as well as we could.

But the 5th. at Sun-rising we were out of sight of the shoar, which made us change our Course to the N. E. so that we discovered Land again about noon, and in two hours after by passing the Isle of St. *Elizabeth*, got into the Bay by Night, where we cast Anchor at seven fathom Water.

The Cape of Good hope.

This Cape of the continent of *Africk*, extending to the S. into the Sea, at 36 degr. beyond the Line, received the name of *Cabo de bon Esperanza*, 1493. from *John* II. King of *Portugal*, when the *Portugueses* first went in quest of the passage by Sea to the *Indies*, lying as it were at a nearer distance of about 2500 Lgs betwixt *Europe*, and the most Eastern Coasts of the *Indies*, ever since which time this has been the Place, where Ships bound to those Parts, take in their refreshments, Water being very excellent here, and Cattle very cheap; their Oxen are very large with bunches on their backs, like those of the *Indies*, and their Sheep very good, with long hanging Ears, and Tails as big and weighty as a good quarter of Mutton. Neither do they want here for wild Fowl, Deer, wild Boars, Partridges, Quails, and among the rest a kind of Geese with stumps instead of wings, but their Flesh is not eatable; they have also Dogs, or rather Sea-bears, Camels, Tigres, Lyons, and Lynxes. 1639.

The *Dutch* are used to leave Letters here, under a certain Stone near the Harbour, acquainting their Country-men, that come after them, with all the remarkable Passages in their Voyages, and what Course they intend to Steer.

Their Inhabitants are very savage, ugly, and ill-shape, grease their Bodies continually with train Oil, and eat their flesh raw; nay, they seldom kill any Beast, but feed upon them, when they die of any Disease. Both Men and Women go naked, covering their privy parts only with a piece of skin, fastened round the waste with a Leathern girdle. Some wrap a Lyons skin, or Oxe Hide round their Buttocks, drawing the Tail betwixt their Legs. Some wear them over their Shoulders down to the waste only, exposing all the rest to publick view, and disfigure their Arms, Thighs and Legs, by making Characters in them by way of incision. The Women adorn their Arms and Legs, with broad rings of Iron or Brass. Those living deeper in the Country, are no less savage than the rest, with this difference only, that they live a little better, those near the Sea-side, living upon Oisters, Fish, and the Flesh of Whales, for they know not what Husbandry is, though their Grounds be very excellent. They live in the same Huts with their Cattel, and scarce ever come to the Sea-shoar, except when, upon the Arrival of Foreign Ships, they are to truck their Commodities, which are Ox-hides, Lions, Leopards, Tigers skins, and Ostrich-feathers, for Knives, Looking-glasses, Nails, Hammers, Hatches and Iron.

The Inhabitants. Their Cloathing. Know no Husbandry.

They know not what Religion is, both God and the Devil being equal to them.

Nor Religion.

May 10th. we were ready to set sail again out of the Bay, but the wind proving contrary, we did not get to Sea.

Till 12th. with a N. E. wind steering our Course to the W. but the wind varying that Day, through most of the Points of the Compass, we could not get out of sight of the Coast, and at Night were surprised by a Tempest, which continued till the 17th, with such violence, that our Ship had much ado to resist it.

Pursue their voyage.

The 18th. the sky began to clear up, and the fury of the Winds being somewhat allay'd, we found our selves at 34 degr. 40 min. elev. whence we conjectured, that the Tempest had forced us back 25 or 30 Lgs between *Cabo Falso*, and the Cape of *Good hope*.

The Night following, there arose such a dreadful Hurricane, that we gave our selves over for lost, being by the contrary winds forced into the main Sea.

The 19th. proved not much better, and the 20th we found but little Alteration, though we hoped for some Alteration, from the change of the Moon, which happened that Day, but the storm continued till the 22d. when the Rains having somewhat abated the fury of the Winds, we made use of our Sails, steering our Course to the W. as well as we could.

May 23th. we were becalm'd in sight of the Coast to N. E. of us; and finding the elev. to be 37 deg. 6. min. we supposed our selves to be in the same Altitude with the Coast, between *Cabo Falso*, and that of *Agulhas*, but another Tempest arising, the same evening from the W. N. W. we were forced to chuse the main Sea.

The 24th. the wind held still contrary, which turn'd to a Tempest at Night.

The 25th. at 36. deg. Latitud. we steer'd our Course with a W. wind to the S. W.

The 26th. the Wind blowing fresh from the N. E. We made all the Sail we could to the W. But in the Evening the wind turning to the N. W. brought along with it a most violent storm, which continued the 28th, and 29th.

So that the 30th. of *May* it was resolved, that, seeing our ship would not be in a Condition to prosecute the Voyage to *England*, without manifest danger, to put into the Isle of *Madagascar*. Pursuant to this Resolution, we tack'd about at 2 in the Afternoon, in Tempestuous weather, and a very rough Sea, which continued the next day till about noon.

Jun. 1st. we made 40 Lgs in 24 hours, with a W. wind, steering our Course to the E.

And the 2d. about 11 at Night, the wind veering about to the S. S. E. the best wind we could wish for, for the Prosecution of our Voyage to *England*, we took no measures, resolving to return to the Cape

of

1639. of *Good hope*, and to take in fresh Water at the Isle of St. *Helens*.

The 3d. we got with the same wind to 35 deg. 8 min.

Jun. 4th. The abundance of the Birds call'd *Mangas d' Valndo's*, and the *Trombas* or Canes floating upon the Sea, gave us great hopes, that we were not far from the Cape of *Good hope*.

The 6th. we were becalm'd at 43, 48, 54, and 63 fathom of Water, and in the Evening the wind was N. W. but turn'd the 7th. to the W. which by Night turn'd to a violent storm, and continued the 8th. till midnight, when coming about to the N. we took our Course to the N. W.

The 9th. the winds being much abated, we found our selves at 35 degr. 30. min. elev. but in the Afternoon we were surprised by another Tempest, which putting us in most imminent danger of running upon the Coast, the Master of the Ship, who hitherto had been the Chief Instrument of our turning this way, seeing himself now under an absolute necessity of changing his Resolution, declared that there was no other way left to save the Ship, than to endeavour to put in at *Madagascar*. Accordingly we changed our Course

The 11th. with fair weather, but about midnight were overtaken by another dreadful storm, which lasted the 12th, 13th, and 14th. It ceased the 15th, and the wind being W. N. W. we sail'd 33 Lgs in 24 hours to the N. E.

The 16th we made 44 Lgs; the 17th. 50 to the N.E. with an E. S. E. wind.

The 18th. the wind at W. S. W. we made 30 Lgs.

The 19th. 40, and the 20th. after we had sail'd 30 Lgs. we found our selves at the elev. of 31 degr. 15. min.

The 23th. at break of day we discryed an *English* Vessel bound to the *East-Indies*, Captain *Hall* Commander, burthen 500 Tun, and it being resolved, that we should make jointly all the sail we could for *Madagascar*, Capt. *Hall's* Ship being much less than ours, did lead the way with a S. E. wind.

Arrive at *Madagascar*.

The 1st of *July* he was got out of sight, and the same Evening we discovered the Coast of *Madagascar*, so that we were forced to keep continual Watch all that night, to take care that we did not come too near the Coast, which is very rocky and dangerous, especially on the Point of the Isle, or might go beyond it, it being almost impossible to make the Bay, if you pass beyond the true Altitude.

The 2d we arrived in the Bay of St. *Austin*, where there is no bottom, till within a mile of the Shore, where we cast Anchor at 25 Fathom Water. The day of our Arrival after having escaped so many dangers, was redoubled by the meeting here (besides Mr. *Hall's* Ship) an *English East-India* Man, call'd the *London*, Burthen 1400 Tun, commanded by Captain *Willis*, bound for *England*.

The 3d, the Captains of these Ships came aboard ours to consult the best Methods, to prevent the being imposed upon by the Inhabitants in the trucking of what Commodities they had for their Cattel. Accordingly these Commodities being produced by joint consent, and committed to the Management of the three Clerks of the Ships, they bought, or rather exchanged, every day 4 Oxen for 40 pair of glass Bracelets, a Sheep for two, and a Calf for three pair; and for a brass Ring of 10 or 12 Inches about, a fat Ox, worth 6 or 7 Pound in *England*.

The 4th, The President and the two Captains went up the River, to discover what Cattel was coming down towards the Bay.

The 6th, The President treated the two Captains, and all the Officers of the three Ships, aboard ours; and Capt. *Willis* did the same some days after.

The 14th, Cap. *Hall* prosecuted his Voyage to the *Indies*, as Capt. *Willis* did two days after for *England*, having supply'd us with what we stood in need of, for the prosecution of our Voyage.

The 21st, a Tent and certain Huts being set up for the President and Soldiers near the Sea-side, he took up his Lodgings there.

A certain Lord of those Parts.

About 4 Lgs from the Harbour lived a certain Lord, who had three Sons, the eldest of whom was named *Massar*. They came all three to pay us a Visit, with a Retinue of 100 Persons well arm'd with Javelins, bringing along with them near 300 Oxen, besides some Sheep, Goats, Poultry, Citrons, and Oranges, in order to exchange them for some of our Toys. After having made a little Halt, the eldest of the three Brothers presented the President with 12 Goats, and his two Wives each with a fat Capon; in return of which, the President made a Present of 3 strings of glass Coral to himself, two to each of his Brothers, and a Bracelet to each of his Wives, which they seem'd to value at a great rate. After having fix'd a great Pole in the Ground, as a Token of the Amity they intended to preserve with us, which they desired us to maintain also on our side, they sold us, or rather truck'd with us (for Money they neither know nor esteem) for 10 fat Oxen, some Sheep, Goats, and Poultrey; and among the rest we had a fat Sheep, the Tail of which weigh'd 20 or 24 pound, for 7 or 8 Grains of Coral or Agat, and a Capon for 3 or 4 Grains of counterfeit Coral.

1639.

We staid here 6 Weeks, which was spent for the most part in shooting at Buts, and fishing with Angle-Rods. We had great store of Fish, and among the rest Oisters, as large and delicious as any in *England*.

From the 5th to the 8th of *August*, we saw such prodigious multitudes of Grashoppers, as dark'ned the Skies; but one small Shower of Rain dispersed them all: The Inhabitants eat them.

The Extent of *Madagascar*.

The Isle of *Madagascar*, call'd the Island of St. *Laurence* by the *French*, lies in the torrid Zone, extending from N to S. from the 10th to the 20th dg. its length being 150, and breadth 18 Lgs, and consequently one of the greatest Islands in the World.

Its Harbours.

It has the conveniency of divers good Harbours, such as the Bay of St. *Austin*, where we lay at Anchor, St. *Jago*, *Anton Gil*, *Antipera*, St. *Juhanes*, St. *Mary's*, St. *Sebastian*, St. *Romanus* and *Mantaras*. Most of their Mountains are covered with Orange and Citron-trees, and the Rocks themselves are a pure white Marble, from whence spring the clearest Fountains in the World. They have also Ebony and Date-trees, and a certain kind not unlike the *Brasil*-wood, where-of they make their Darts and Lances. These Trees shelter vast numbers of Apes and Birds, and among the rest a kind of Poultry resembling our Turkeys, being black all over the Bodies with little white Spots. Their Heads are of a mixture of blue and red, with yellow Horns on their Foreheads; they feed by hundreds together in the Woods.

Dragons blood.

Here you meet also with that Gum, call'd *Dragans Blood*, which they draw out of the Flower of a Tree, no bigger than our common Pear-trees, but more branchy, and not so full of leaves; which are longer, but not so broad, than those of the Lawrel.

Aloes.

This Isle also produces some *Aloes*, but it is not so good as that of the Island of *Zocotora*: They have also *Cotton* and some *Indigo*, but they understand not the way of reducing it into Paste, as the *Indosthans*, and some other *Indians* do.

Fruits.

Cattel.

As they don't apply themselves to Tillage, except it be for a little Rice, Beans, Pompions, and Melons, so they abound in most excellent Pasture, and consequently in Cattel, in which their chief Riches consist. They have also Citron and Orange-trees, which bear Fruit twice a-year, Date-trees, Coco-trees, and *Bananas*; and there is scarce a House but has its own Bee-hives: For tho' they are ignorant as yet of the advantage of making Honey and Wax, they make a certain Drink of it, with the Addition of Rice, which serves them instead of Wine. It yields also Salt and Salt-peter, and near the Sea-side Amber-grease. Some will have it to be rich in gold and silver Mines; but as the Inhabitants value Tin beyond these Metals, they neglect to search after it.

Its Inhabitants.

This Isle is very well stock'd with Inhabitants, who are well shap'd, and very sizable, for the most part *Negro's*; they wear no other Garments, but a piece of printed Callico, which they wrap about their middle, in such a fashion, that one piece of it hangs down before to the Knee, the other behind to the Ham. Except the little Houses of their Princes (which are of Wood) their Huts are only made of the Branches of Trees, wherein they have no other Beds or Quilts, but some few Mats to lye upon; they use to make Fires round about them to disperse the Vapours of the Mill-dews, which are very pernicious here. Their chief Ornaments are certain strings of Glass-beads of divers Colours round the Waste, and Bracelets of the same about their Necks, Arms, and Legs. Both Sexes have holes in their Ears, in which they put large Copper or brass Rings. They have all black Hair,

1639. Hair, some very much curl'd, others not; but it is seldom very long, notwithstanding which they tye it up in several Tresses. There is no considerable difference betwixt the cloathing of the Men and Women; the last wear sometimes a sleeveless Coat, and the Calico which covers their middle Parts is somewhat larger than those of the Men.

The Women are very famous for their Fidelity to their Husbands, who put so great a value upon them, that they will scarce undertake any thing of moment without their Advice. They have 2 Wives at least, each of whom has her peculiar Hut; and tho' the Husband is very compliant with both, the elder of the two always claims the preference. They purchase their Wives from their Parents or Relations, for some Oxen, Pikes, Darts, or other Arms. Adultery and Fornication are capital; but as there is no familiarity so great, which is able to raise a jealousie in them, these things are scarce ever heard of. Some of their young Women came very frankly into our Tent, unto one of whom the President presented one of my Shirts, desiring her to wear it for my sake; she made not the least difficulty to receive it, and wore it 2 days, after which she tore it to pieces for some other use.

The Men brave. Their Men are brave and martial, and very dext'rous in the management of their Lances, Darts, and Pikes, which always lie near them, even when they are at work in the Field, they being train'd up to the use of Arms from their Infancy.

Their Arms. Persons of Note seldom stir abroad without having 25 or 30 Darts, or small Pikes carried after them, ty'd up in a bundle. Their Bows are 5 or 6 Foot long; and tho' the Strings be loose, they have a slight of shooting with great strength and activity: And as to their Javelins, they dart them with so miraculous a dexterity, that they will hit a Bird at 40 Paces distance. They are divided into several Tribes or Clans, of 100, 200, or 300 each, under his own Lord, whom they call *Tschich*; 2 of these had their Residence in a Wood not far from our Tent. Their Wars among themselves are commonly occasioned by the want of Pasturage for their Cattel: And the Prince *Massar* told us, that he had join'd with 2 neighbouring Lords, and that they intended to attack some on the other side with 500 Men, to drive them from their Pasture-Grounds, which they stood in need of for their Cattel. This Dignity is not Hereditary, but they govern whilst in the possession of it with an uncontrolable Authority.

Religion. It is not easily determined what Religion they profess; as far as I was able to learn, they believe one God, Creator of Heaven and Earth, who will reward the good, and punish bad Actions. I remember I saw one among them, whom I supposed to be their Priest, getting upon a Tree, and making his Oration to the People; but as I had not the least knowledge of their Language, I could not be satisfy'd what he said; neither what difference there was in the outward appearance of their Priests and Laicks, except that I observed some of them to carry a piece of a Cow's Tail at the end of a Cane; and I saw one, whose Nails on the 2 Fore-fingers of his right Hand were as long as the Talons of an Eagle. Each Tribe has its own Priest, who pretends also to Incantations, thereby to make the Devil dance after his Pipe.

Mozambique. The Isle of *Mozambique* is not above half a Lg from the Continent of *Africk*; and being in the possession of the *Portugueſe*, this small Island (which is not above half a Lg in compass) is so beneficial to the Governor thereof, that what with the Trade of *Madagascar*, and that of *Sofola*, he commonly amasses a Treasure of 150000 pound Sterling, during his 3 Years Government.

The discovery of this Isle by the Portugueſe. This Island was first discovered by the *Portugueſe* 1506, when a whole Boat of *Negroes* coming aboard the *Portugueſe* Vessels, they were very civilly entertain'd by the Captain, who also gave them divers little Presents. But they requited his Kindness with a Shower of Arrows as soon as they were got into their Boat, till the Captain by a Volley of small Shot and some Canon-ball made them soon give over that Sport. Another *Portugueſe* Captain, named *Rodrigo Percira*, being in the same Year driven upon that Coast by stress of Weather, sent a-shore a certain *African* Negro, who had some knowledge of their Language, to signifie to them, that he was come there to settle a good Correspondence and Commerce with them. They seem'd to approve of this Proposal; but were no sooner got at some distance from the *Portugueſe*, when they fell upon the *Moor* with an Intention to kill him; which they had certainly done, if the *Portugueſe* had not discharged their Fire-Arms among them, which obliged them to leave the Negro, and to betake themselves to their Heels, leaving several of their Companions dead upon the Spot. 1639.

Pereira sail'd thence to another Place upon the same Coast, where having surprized one of their Princes, he carried him aboard, and gave him such kind Entertainment, that in requital for his Courtesie, he proffer'd to shew him a very good Harbour. Accordingly he conducted them to a great Bay, at the entrance of which was a small but populous Island; but the Inhabitants being terrified at the sight of these Foreigners, fled into another adjacent great Island, so that the *Portugueſe* being become Masters of the small Isle without the least opposition: They sent to the Inhabitants desiring them to return to their Habitations, the occasion of their coming thither being to settle a good Correspondence with them. Upon this most of them return'd, and as a mark of their good Will presented *Pereira* with 50 Oxen and 20 Goats; but being nevertheless willing to be rid of these Strangers, they tempted the Captain with the hopes of great Riches, which they said he might meet with in the Port of *Matatana*; which was so well approved by him, that he was preparing to go thither; but one of his Ships being soon after forced upon the Coast of the Isle, he retired with the other to *Mozambique*. Another Ship of the same Fleet being driven by tempestuous Weather into the Port of *Matatana*, a Boat of the Country came immediately aboard them, in which the Captain sent the Master of the Vessel, who was well vers'd in the *African* Language. The *Moors* making more than ordinary haste to get ashore with the Master, and the *Portugueſe* conceiving some Jealousie at their Behaviour, they pursued them with 80 Men in their Chaloop, but too late, the *Negroes* having reach'd the Shore before them. However after they were landed, they got sight again of the Master, who told them, that he had been treated with much Kindness by their Prince, who was desirous to see the Captain himself, in order to enter into a stricter Correspondence with him; which the Captain not unwilling to comply with, went accordingly ashore, where he was kindly received, and magnificently treated by the Prince, according to the Fashion of that Country. But in the Evening, being ready to return aboard in the Chaloop, there arose so violent a Tempest, that he durst not venture to commit himself to the merciless Waves in so small a Boat; which continuing for 4 days successively, and there being no possibility to get aboard, his Ship's Crew imagining no otherwise than that he had been massacred by these Barbarians, thought it most advisable to save themselves, and to return to *Mozambique*, which they did accordingly. The Captain finding the Ship gone, was so discontented that he died not long after, as did 8 others of his Retinue. The rest thinking it better to run the risque of the Sea, than to perish without the least hopes of Relief a-shore, embarked in the Chaloop; and having by good Fortune met with a *Portugueſe* Vessel, commanded by *John Fonseca*, he carried them to the next *Portugueſe* Port of *Africk*.

The first time of the landing of the *Dutch* in the Isle of *Madagascar*, happen'd rather by chance than any design: For their Seamen being miserably infested with the Scurvy, so that they were no longer able to manage the Ship, they were forced to seek for refreshment in this Island; but lost 70 Men out of the four Vessels, of which their Fleet consisted, before they could get any. These Men were buried in a small Island, which to this day is called the *Dutch Church-yard*. Some will have the *Madagascarians* to be *Mahometans*, but certain it is that in their outward demeanour they don't shew the least resemblance of it. The first landing of the Dutch here.

They make their Voyage. The Winter Season being pretty well over, we began to think of our Voyage; for which purpose having bought *Aug.* 19. of Prince *Massar*, and some other Neigbouring Lords, 25 Oxen and 100 Sheep (besides 150 Oxen we had provided before) we embark'd our Baggage the 20th, and the 21st set Sail out of the Bay of St. *Austin*, with a S. W. Wind; which proving favourable all that night, we soon lost sight of the Isle of *Madagascar*.

The 22d, being rejoiced with the *Monson*, or Wind of the Season, which happen'd sooner than ordinary, we briskly pursued our Course to W. S. W.

And the 23d, the Wind blowing a brisk Gale from the E. in our Stern, we sail'd briskly a little more to the S. with an intention to avoid the *Cape of Good Hope*.

The

1639. The 24th and 25th, the Wind was not ſo brisk; but being ſeconded by a freſh Gale, the 26th we advanced bravely, and found our ſelves that day at 27 dgs, and 27 min. Latitude; and the 28th, at 28 dgs, 12 min.

The 29th, We were ſurprized by the *Travado's*, or Whirl-winds, at 31 dgs, 15 min. but they did not continue long.

The 30th. it blew a Storm, notwithſtanding which we made the beſt of our way, and the laſt of *Auguſt* found our ſelves at 33 deg. 34 min.

September 1ſt. we made 50 Lgs in 24 hours, tho' the Wind blew very hard, and the 2d. we got 30 Lgs further with a S. W. Wind.

The 3d. being becalm'd, we kill'd a Cow we had bought at *Madagaſcar*, and a Goat; in the Belly of the firſt we found 3 Calves, and in the laſt 4 young Kids, from which a Judgment may be made of the fruitfulneſs of that Country.

Septemb. 6th. we were terribly ſhaken by a moſt dreadful Tempeſt, ſo that our Ship beginning to be leaky, we were forc'd to pump without Intermiſſion; we found our ſelves at 35 deg. Latit.

The 7th. the Weather being tolerably fair, we ſteer'd our Courſe to the W. N. W. tho' the Sea continued very rough.

The 8th. and 9th. we had abundance of Rain with a S. Wind.

The 10th. we made 40 Lgs with a moderate Gale, and ſeeing many of the Birds call'd *Mangas de Valvdo*, concluded that we were not far from the *Cape d'Aculhas*.

The 11th. the Eaſt Wind hindred us from making any conſiderable Progreſs, and finding a ſandy bottom at 12 fathom of Water, we were more and more perſuaded that we were near the *Cape* of *Agulhas*.

The 12th. we were forced to make the beſt of our way, ſometimes with a N. N. W. ſometimes with a S. W. Wind, which continuing in the Afternoon, we took our Courſe to the W. N. W. and in the Evening found a yellow Sand at 190 fathom Water.

The 13th. the W. being at S. E. we continued our Courſe to the W. N. W. and finding a Whale floating upon the Water at the Latitude of 35 deg. we believ'd our ſelves to be at the Altitude of the *Cape of Good Hope*, where abundance of Whales are commonly ſeen.

Declenſion of the Load-ſtone. The 14th. at Sun-riſing, finding the Declination of the Needle 4 deg. 50 min. we concluded that we had compaſſed the *Cape of Good Hope*; the 15th. we had a fair Wind and Weather, and found the declination of the Compaſs to be 1 deg. 50 min. and preſently after the declination of it near the *Cape of Good Hope* is 4 deg. tho' otherwiſe it does not decline ſo much, and as ſoon as you have paſs'd the *Cape*, you find the Compaſs to vary to the E. becauſe the Needle draws to the Earth by reaſon of the Iron and Load-Stones that draw it, but the declination on that Coaſt never exceeds 8 deg.

The Iſle of St. *Elizabeth*. At 33 deg. 15 min. elev. lies the Iſle of St. *Elizabeth*, not above 20 Lgs on this ſide of the *Cape of Good Hope*, being not above 2 Lgs from the *African* Coaſt, on which ſide it has a very good Harbour at 16 fathom Water. The whole Coaſt is but one continued Rock, but the Country is ſo fertile in divers ſorts of the beſt Herbs, that there is ſufficient reaſon to believe that if it were cultivated it would in its Products not be behind hand with the Iſle of St. *Helens*, or any other in thoſe Parts. The worſt is that it wants freſh Water, except what is ſupply'd by the Skies when it rains; which makes this Iſle to be not much frequented, tho' they have ſuch vaſt numbers Sea-Wolves. of Sea-Wolves here, that in a few Days they may catch as many that the Fat thereof would freight a Veſſel of 600 Tun. They call thoſe Creatures Sea-Wolves, tho' both in colour and the ſhape of their Heads they rather reſemble our Bears, except that their Snout is not ſo ſharp; they have only two Paws beneath the Breaſt, by which means they draw the other part of the Body after them, and that with ſo much ſwiftneſs, that the nimbleſt Man can ſcarce overtake them. This Beaſt is very fierce, its Teeth being ſo cloſe and ſtrong, that it will bite through Badgers. the handle of a Partizan. This Iſle alſo produces a kind of *Badger*, the Fleſh whereof is very delicious.

The 16th. we made the beſt of our way with a contrary Wind at 32 deg. and the 17th. and 18th. made 64 Lgs with a N. N. W. and S. W. Wind, and came the 19th. to 29 deg. 16 min. Latit. when with a S. W. Wind we made 40 Lgs to the N. W. and in the Evening found our ſelves at 28 deg. Latit. 1639.

The 20th. we held the ſame Courſe to the N. W. and made 34 Lgs with a S. E. Wind.

The 21th. we made 28 Lgs with the ſame Wind and Courſe.

The 22d. 20 Lgs with the ſame Wind and the ſame Courſe.

The 23d. 24 Lgs with the ſame Wind, our Courſe to the W. N. W.

The 24th. 30 Lgs with the ſame Wind, our Courſe ſtill to the W. N. W.

The 25th. we were becalmed, and made but 20 Lgs with an E. S. E. Wind, and the ſame Courſe the 26th.

The 27th. purſuing the ſame Courſe, we were carried 36 Lgs by a N. E. Wind, at 21 deg. Latit.

The 28th. with the ſame Wind and Courſe we made 46 Lgs, and found our ſelves at 20 deg. Lat.

The 29th. we continued the ſame Courſe for 20 Lgs, with an E. N. E. Wind.

The 30th. we made 25 Lgs, our Courſe to the N. W. and *Octob.* 1ſt. with the ſame Courſe and a S. W. Wind ſail'd 25 Lgs, and found our ſelves at 17 deg. Latit.

The 2d. continuing the ſame Courſe, and with the ſame Wind, we got 25 Lgs. at 16 deg. 16. min. Latit.

The 3d. 28 Lgs with the ſame Wind and Courſe.

The 4th. 20 Lgs with the ſame Wind, ſteering our Courſe to the W.

The 5th. 16 Lgs in the ſame Courſe.

The 6th. a S. E. Wind carried us 15 Lgs further to the Iſle of St. *Helens*.

The Iſle of St. *Helens*. The Situation of this Iſland call'd St. *Helens* by the *Portugueſe*, (by reaſon of its firſt Diſcovery on St. *Helens* Day) is at 16 deg. 12 min. It is diſtant from the *Cape* of *Angola* 350 Lgs, from that of *Good Hope* 550, and from *Braſil* 510. it being almoſt ſurpriſing, that an Iſland of no more than 7 Lgs in compaſs ſhould be found at ſo great a diſtance from the Continent. It is ſo plentiful both of moſt excellent Fruits, and all ſorts of Creatures, that it ſurpaſſes moſt of the Provinces of *Europe*.

Some are of Opinion that there was neither of this to be ſeen when the *Portugueſe* firſt diſcovered it; and that thoſe few Trees and Cattle they brought thither, Planted firſt by the *Portugueſe*. have received ſuch vaſt improvements, from the natural good Conſtitution of the ground, that at preſent it is able to ſupply whole Fleets with ſufficient Refreſhments; Figs, Pomgranates, Citrons, Oranges, Goats, Hogs, *Barbary* Hens, Pheaſants, Partridges, Quails, Peacocks, and Pidgeons, being to be had here at all the Seaſons of the Year; not to mention the Fiſh which are found here in vaſt quantities, and Salt ſufficient for the keeping of them.

The Ground naturally produces ſo many wholſome Herbs, that the *Portugueſe* frequently leave there their ſick Men which are ſure to recover againſt their coming back again that way the next Year.

The Mountains of this Iſle are ſo high that they are diſcovered 14 Lgs off at Sea.

The *Portugueſe* thought it a piece of Prudence not to make any Eſtabliſhment upon this Iſland, conſidering that the jealouſie which its poſſeſſion might raiſe in other Nations trading into thoſe Parts, with its vaſt diſtance from the Continent, would make it very difficult to keep; whereas its being free would afford a certain retreat to all Veſſels, and thoſe Refreſhments eſpecially of freſh Water, which they alſo would be obliged to ſeek for as far as the Coaſt of *Guiney*, where they muſt be forced to ſtay for the Rains, to the great inconvenience of the Sea-men, many of whom muſt in the mean while periſh for want of it.

The Fertility of this Iſle muſt chiefly be attributed to the daily Showers of Rain that fall there; which being animated by the Sun-beams ſhining preſently after, by intervals, incredibly advances the maturity of things in a Climate like this; it has alſo three Places where Ships may provide themſelves with freſh Water, *viz.* where the 3 Rivers which have their Sources among the Mountains exonerate themſelves into the Sea; theſe produce abundance of Snakes, which are eaten by the *Dutch*, who prefer them before Eels.

Aſcenſion-Iſle. At 190 Lgs to the N. W. of the Iſle of St. *Helens* you ſee the Iſland of *Aſcenſion*, ſo call'd from its being diſcovered upon *Aſcenſion-day* by the *Portugueſe*, lying 8 deg. 30 min. S. of the Line. It is a very mountainous Iſland, affording neither freſh Water nor any other Proviſions, except Fiſh, of which there is great ſtore on that Coaſt.

Oct.

1639. *Oct.* 9th. with an eaſie S. Wind we made but 15 Lgs our Courſe to the S. W. at 16 deg. 11 min. Latit.

Being becalm'd the 10th. we got no more than 8 Lgs, keeping the ſame Courſe; the Heats were almoſt inſupportable.

The 11th we held the ſame Courſe, making 15 Lgs with an E. Wind.

The 12th. the ſame Wind continuing we made 21 Lgs to the N. N. W.

The 13th. the N. E. Wind advanced us 25 Lgs, our Courſe to the N. N. W. at 14 deg. 45 min. Latit. and the 14th. with the ſame Wind and Courſe made 22 Lgs.

The 15th. holding the ſame Courſe we made 44 Lgs, the Wind at S. E.

The 16th. we got 46 Lgs with the ſame Wind, and having the Sun in the *Zenith*, could not make any Obſervations; the Heats were very exceſſive here.

The 17th. the ſame Wind carried us 40 Lgs. forward, and the 18th. 42 Lgs to the 5th deg. the Heats were almoſt unſupportable this Day, and we ſaw Millions of Flying Fiſh, and great numbers of the Birds called *Alcatraz de Volada*.

The 19th. the Wind blowing from the S. E. we made 40 Lgs to 3 deg. 19 min. Latit. and the 20th. the ſame Wind continuing, 40 Lgs further to 1 deg. 18 min. Latit.

The ſame Wind carried us the 21th. 35 Lgs when we paſſed the *Equinoctial-Line*. At 1 deg. beyond the Line we diſcovered the *Cape de Lopez Gonſales*, upon the Coaſt of *Guiney*, which has a ſafe Harbour for Ships, which ſometimes provide themſelves with refreſhments here.

The Iſle of St. *Thomas*

The Iſle of St. *Thomas* (ſo called by the *Portugueſe*, from it's being diſcovered on St. *Thomas*'s Day) is ſituate under the Line; the Air of which is ſo unwholſome, and the Heats are ſo exceſſive, that few *Europeans* live to 50 years of Age here, tho' ſome of the Natives arrive to 100. Here is a conſtant equality of Day and Night throughout the whole Year, and it never rains except in *March* and *September*, the defect of which is ſupply'd by the Dew which falls conſtantly every Night, moiſtens the grounds, and renders them very fruitful. When it was firſt diſcovered a certain kind of a Tree was found here, the Branches whereof were exactly ſtrait; and formerly this Iſle produced ſuch vaſt quantities of Sugar, that above 40 Ship loads might be tranſported thence every Year; but a certain Worm being got among the Canes, has ever ſince made ſuch havock among them, that it ſcarce affords now loading for 6 Ships. Beſides which this Iſland produces Wheat, Wine, Millet, Rye, Barley, Melons, Cucumbers, Figs, Ginger, red Parſnips, Cabbages, Navews, Lettuce, Parſley, and all ſorts of Roots, Pulſe, and Pot-herbs, and among the reſt a certain kind of Muſhrooms, the Rind whereof is black, but the Meat white not unlike the *French Navew*, ſave that it ſhoots forth divers Branches below.

The Inhabitants look upon it as a great Dainty, and when bak'd in the Embers, eat them as we do Cheſnuts, but they have a better flavour.

The *Spaniards* have planted ſome Olive, Peach, and Almond Trees here; they thrive well enough, but bear no Fruit. This Iſle alſo affords a kind of Land Creviſſes, which live under Ground, and work like Moles; Partridges, Quails, Black-birds, Parrots, and other Birds in abundance. The Sea produces vaſt ſtore of moſt excellent Fiſh, and among the reſt Whales of a vaſt bulk. In the very Center of the Iſle is a Mountain covered on the top with a Cloud, which furniſhes Water ſufficient for the conſtant watering of the Sugar Canes, and what is moſt obſervable is, that the higher the Sun comes above the Horizon, the more Water falls from the Cloud.

The Natives are Negroes, but ſuch Foreigners as ſettle there continue their natural colour to the 3d. or 4th. Generation. They affirm that the Lice and Fleas wherewith the Negroes are much peſtered, never afflict any Strangers.

At 35 Lgs diſtance from the Iſland of St. *Thomas* to the S. you ſee another Iſland called *Rolas Ile* by the *Portugueſe*; it produces ſuch plenty of Oranges, Citrons, *Limonias*, *Ananas*, Ginger, Poultry, Hogs, and other freſh Proviſions, that it is one of the moſt convenient Places for Ships to refreſh themſelves in, its Haven being very commodious at 10 fathom Water.

The Iſle of *Caniſco* lies cloſe to the Continent, and affords nothing but freſh Water.

Octob. 22. We made 33 Lgs, the Wind S. W. and fair Weather, we found our ſelves about Noon at 1 deg. 35. min. Latit. North from the Line. 1639.

The 23d. being exceſſive hot, we got 26 Lgs with the ſame Wind at 3 deg. 1 min. Latit.

The 24th. it thundred and lightned all the Day, we made no more than 22 Lg.

The 25th. a S. E. Wind advanced us 32 Lgs, our Courſe to the N. N. W. It was very rainy, and we we were frequently troubled with thoſe *Travado's*, or Whirl-winds which are ſo frequent on the Coaſt of *Guiney*, from whence we might be 150 Lgs diſtant.

The 26th. the Wind continued the ſame, and we made 25 Lgs to the 7th. deg. Lat. We obſerved here the Heats to be more Intenſe than we had felt them on the other ſide of the *Equinoctial Line*, notwithſtanding, the Sun was 10 deg. further from our Hemiſphere; the reaſon of which I conceived to be, that the Sun-beams which had ſo lately warm'd the Septentrional Hemiſphere, had not had ſufficient time to produce the ſame effects in the Meridional.

The 27th. the Wind changing to the N. by E. we were alſo obliged to alter our Courſe, and made only 13 Lgs that Day; about Noon we found our ſelves at 7 deg. 50 min. Latit. and it was obſervable, that the further we ſteered from the Coaſt of *Guiney*, the leſs we were troubled with bad Weather, which had ſufficiently afflicted us for ſome Days paſt.

The 28th. the Wind turn'd to the N. E. which is the ordinary Wind betwixt the 10th. and 20th. deg. which afterwards changes like as it does in our Seas. We made 30 Lgs that Day, and the 29th. 31 Lgs more with the ſame Wind at 10 deg. Latit. about Noon.

The 30th. we made 28 Lgs with the ſame Wind and Courſe to 11 deg. 13 min. Latit. And the 31th. 23 Lgs with the ſame Wind, and rainy Weather.

Novemb. 1ſt. the Wind continued the ſame, and carried us 26 Lgs forward.

The 2d. we made 24 Lgs with the ſame Wind, ſteering our Courſe to the N. W.

The 3d. we continued the ſame Courſe with the ſame Wind, which brought us about Noon to 14 deg. 40 min. and conſequently near the Latitude of *Cape Verde*, being a point of Land ſtretching out into the Sea from the *African* Continent between the Rivers of *Gambea* and *Senaga*; *Ptolemy* calls it *Promontorium Arſinarium*. Cape Verde.

The Inhabitants here are *Moors*, large ſiz'd, and not ill ſhap'd, but very miſchievous and treacherous; they are *Pagans*, worſhipping the Moon and the Devil; ſome among them call themſelves *Mahometans*, but ſetting aſide Circumciſion, they have no other marks of that Religion or any other. They are embroil'd in continual Wars with their Neighbours, and very good Horſe-men; their Horſes, which are very ſwift, being brought thither from *Barbary*. Their Arms are only the Bow and Arrows, and a kind of a Lance, or Pike, which they manage with marvellous dexterity. The Privy Parts of their Enemies are the Trophies they moſt eſteem; thoſe they preſent to their Wives, who make Neck-laces of them, and wear them as the greateſt Ornament. Its Inhabitants.

They allow Polygamy, and their Wives are forced to do all the Work both at home and in the Field, whilſt the Husband in his Hut is attended by his Wives, and goes a Hunting or about ſome other ſport at his own Pleaſure. Their Women are very hardy, they are no ſooner delivered, but they waſh the Child themſelves in the Sea, or next River. Their Wives.

The Men are generally addicted to Drunkenneſs to ſuch a degree, that ſome of them will take off a whole quart of *Aqua Vitæ* at a draught. Their chief times of Merriment are at the Funerals of their Friends, or Relations, where they drink and howl by turns, and that for 4 or 5 Days together, under the ſound of the Drum and Pipe. The Men great Drunkards.

They believe the Reſurrection of the Dead, and ſay they ſhall be white like the *Europeans*. They have a conſiderable Trade with the *French*, *Spaniards*, and *Dutch*, in Oxes Hides, Bouffles, Elks, Elephants Teeth, Wax, Rice, and Ambergreece, which is to be found in its perfection here; for here one Mr. *Peter de la Bronck*, a *Dutch* Merchant bought 1606 pieces of Amber of 80 pound weight. Believe the Reſurrection of the Dead.

The diſcovery of this Coaſt is likewiſe owing to the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1417. but this firſt Voyage meeting but with very indifferent Succeſs, *Anthony Gonſales*, 1441. having diſcovered the *Cape del Cavellero*, carried off certain *Negroes*, who being ſent by the The Diſcovery of the Coaſt.

1639. the *Infanta* of *Portugal* to Pope *Martin* V. he was willing enough, under the ſpecious pretence of planting Chriſtianity in thoſe Parts, to grant him (what indeed coſt him nothing, and had no right to) all what he ſhould diſcover on the *African* Coaſt, under Condition that after his death it ſhould be annexed to the Crown of *Portugal*. The *Infante* having already diſcovered the whole Coaſt, between *Cabo de Naom*, and 100 Lgs beyond the *Cabo Verde*, happened to die 1453. But King *Alphonſo* 1457. granted all theſe Conqueſts to *D. Ferand* Duke of *Viſeo*, Heir of the *Infante*, and 1461. ordered a Fort to be built in the Iſle of *Argoin*, for the ſecurity of Commerce. It was in the ſame Year Farm'd out to one *Ferdinand Gomez*, under Condition, that he ſhould be obliged to diſcover every Year 100 Lgs at leaſt on this Coaſt; by which means the *Portugueſe* had 1479. diſcovered the Iſles of *Fernando del Po*, St. *Thomas*, *Anno Bueno*, thoſe of *del Principe*, and the Cape of St. *Katharin's*. K. *John* II. was no ſooner come to the Crown, but he ſent in 1481. *Diego d'Azambuja*, who 1482. *Jan.* 19th. made the firſt diſcovery of *Mina*, caſting Anchor near a Place call'd *Aldea de dos Partes*, then under the Command of a certain Prince named *Caramanſa*.

Mina. This Place, unto which the *Portugueſe* gave the Name of *Mina* (from the great quantity of Gold found there) is ſituate upon the Coaſt of *Guiney*, 5 deg. 40 min. S. of the *Equinoctial Line*, betwixt the 2 Kingdoms of *Aken* and *Cara*, bordering to the N. W. upon *Camana*, and to the N. E. upon *Afuto*, ſmall Countries under the Juriſdiction of thoſe of *Abarambues*; Hereabouts too, *viz.* within the compaſs of 50 Lgs, is managed the chief Gold Trade of all this Coaſt. They have built a Fort here upon an Aſcent, on a Point of Land which jets out into the Sea like a Demi-Iſle, having on one ſide, *viz.* to North, the *Æthiopian Sea*, and to the South a ſmall River. The Town which is ſituate juſt below the foot of the Fort, has about 800 Inhabitants, and its ſituation is ſuch, that 500 Men may maintain it againſt a conſiderable Force, being fenny all about, and ſo barren, that the Inhabitants are forced to be ſupply'd with Proviſions from *Camana* and *Afuta*.

Its Inhabitants. The Natives here are ingenious enough, and much more pliable than the *Negroes*, but are extreamly ignorant in matters of Religion; for they adore every thing they ſee, that is the leaſt ſurpriſing to them. At that time they offered their daily Sacrifices of Water and Meat, by their Prieſts, to a certain Tree of an extraordinary bigneſs, encloſed for that purpoſe with a high Wall; they adored the Bones of a Whale, and paid Divine Worſhip to a certain Rock, becauſe it exceeded all the reſt in height.

Are Superſtitious. They are extreamly addicted to Divination, and therefore ſet as high an eſteem upon thoſe who profeſs themſelves Sorcerers, but in effect are nothing elſe but Cheats, who improve the weakneſs of theſe ignorant Wretches to their advantage. They are the moſt Religious People in the World in the obſervance of their Oaths, it being their Opinion, that ſuch as violate them, will be ſnatch'd away by a ſudden Death; and hence it is that their Law-Suits are determined in a few hours, upon the ſolemn Affirmation or Denial of either of the Parties. All Crimes, even Capital ones may be redeemed with Money, unleſs the ſame be reiterated ſeveral times by the ſame Perſon.

Their Cloathes. They have no other Clothing but a piece of Cloth or an Apes-ſkin, wherewith they cover their Privy-Parts, all the reſt of the Body being naked. For Ornaments ſake, they wear Barcelets of Gold about their Arms and Legs, and twiſt their Hair and Beards with golden Chains; they conſtantly rub their Bodies with Oil or Fat, to make them ſhine.

Arms. Their Wars are no more than confuſed Skirmiſhes, without the leaſt Order or Diſcipline. They make uſe of Darts, and ſhort Lances, and for their Defence cover themſelves with the Skins of Tygers, Lions, or Leopards. Their *Hidalgos* or chief Men are attended by 2 Pages, when they are going to the Wars, the one carries the Buckler, the other a Stool, for his Maſter to reſt himſelf upon, as occaſion ſerves. They marry as many Wives as they are able to buy and maintain, the Purchaſe of a Wife being commonly 10 Rials, which paid, the Marriage is conſummated without any further Ceremony, except that they get heartily drunk.

The Dutch ſettlement. The *Dutch* have erected a Fort call'd *Boure*, within 4 Lgs of *Mina*, beſides which they have their Factories at *Cara*, *Coromantin*, and *Aldea del Tuerto*, whence they return vaſt Quantities of Gold yearly, having much undermined the *Portugueſe* Traffick, with the *Æthiopians*, by their mild way of dealing, and being contented with a much leſs Profit than the other. 1639.

The King of Congo. King *John* II. of *Portugal*, having refuſed the offer made him, by *Chriſtopher Colombus*, of diſcovering the *Weſt-Indies*, bent all his Thoughts upon the Conqueſts in the Eaſt; For which purpoſe he ſent *Diego Can*, and *Juan Alonſo d'Avero*, into thoſe parts.

The firſt directing his Courſe towards *Mina*, came to the Cape *de Lope Conſales* and having afterwards doubled the Cape of St. *Catharine*, entred the River *Zaire*, 7 degr. S. of the Line into the Kingdom of *Congo*.

This Kingdom extending from the Cape of St. *Catharine* to the S. of the Cape *de Ledo*, is incloſed on the W. ſide by the *Æthiopian* Sea, to the S. by the *Mountains of the Moon*, and the *Cafres*; as it is to the E. by the *Mantabas*, and Borders to the N. upon the Kingdom of *Beny*, reaching in length from 2 deg. 30 min. to the 13th degree beyond the Line, and conſequently near 160 Lgs. It is divided into ſix great Provinces, viz. *Bamba*, *Songo*, *Sunda*, *Pango*, *Batta* and *Pamba*. Its Provinces.

Bamba. The Province of *Bamba* extends along the Sea-ſhoar, betwixt the 2 Rivers of *Ambriſi* and *Coanſe*. Its chief City bearing the ſame Name with the Province, lying 20 Lgs from the Sea-ſide, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſa* and *Ambriſi*.

Songo. The Province of *Songo*, is encloſed betwixt the 2 Rivers of *Zaire* and *Loango*, reaching from the River *Ambriſi*, to the foot of the Mountains, which ſeparate it from the Kingdom of *Loango*.

Sunda. The Province of *Sunda* is only 8 Lgs in Compaſs, comprehending all the Country about the City of *Congo*, (nam'd St. *Salvador* by the *Portugueſes*) to the River *Zaire*. Its Metropolis has given its Name to the Province.

Pango. The Province of *Pango*, formerly under the Juriſdiction of its own Kings, Borders to the N. upon the Province of *Sunda*, to the S. upon that of *Batta*, to the W. it has the City of *Congo*, and on the Eaſt ſide is ſurrounded by the *Mountain of the Sun*.

Batta. The Province of *Batta* lies to the N. E. betwixt that of *Pango*, and the River *Barbella*, extending to the *Burnt Mountains*.

Pamba. The Province of *Pamba*, has for its Metropolis the City of *Congo*, which is built upon a Mountain at leaſt 50 Lgs from the Sea-ſide. Another Mountain belonging to this Province, which is above 6. Lgs in length, is ſo well ſtor'd with Villages, that its Inhabitants are computed to be near 100000 Perſons.

The Climate. *Duarte Lopez*, who lived ſeveral years in theſe parts, declares, That the Climate here is as agreeable in Winter, as it is in *Italy*, in *October*, and that the greateſt Inconveniency they are ſubject to there, are the hot Rains, which fall every day, 2 hours before, and as many hours in the Afternoon, during the Months of *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, being their Winter, which begins the 15th of *March*, and ends the 15th *September*. The Days and Nights are of a length here both Winter and Summer.

The River Zaire. The River *Zaire*, riſes out of the ſame Lake, whence the *Nile* derives its riſe, it is beyond all Queſtion the largeſt River in all *Africk*, for being join'd with the Rivers, *Vambo* and *Barbella*, as it paſſes through the Country, it is at the mouth, where it diſembogues into the Sea, at leaſt 28 Lgs broad. The River *Goanze* is the common boundary, betwixt the 2 Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola*; and the River *Lelonda* abounds in Crocodiles, and Sea-horſes.

Sea-Horſes. This Creature is of a duskiſh Colour with very little hair. Its head is without Ears, has broad Noſtrils, and in his jaw 2 Teeth, like the Tuſks of a wild Boar. Its hoof has the ſhape of a three leav'd Graſs, it neighs like an Horſe, and will run a great pace. The hot Rains which fall in the Winter Seaſon rendring the Grounds very fertile, they produce Herbs, Corn and Fruit, in incredible Quantity.

Gold Mines. The Province of *Pamba* has divers Gold-mines, as the Foreſts are full of Elephants of an extraordinary ſize, ſome of their Teeth having been found to weight 200 pound. They produce alſo a peculiar kind of Creature, call'd *Sebra*, in ſhape not unlike a Mule, but is capable of engendring; it is mark'd with 3 Liſts round the back reaching down to the Belly, of about three Fingers breadth each; one is black, the other white, and the third yellow. This Beaſt is famous for its marvellous ſwifteſt.

Their

1639. They have also a kind of Oxen call'd *Empalenges*, but somewhat less than ours. Wolves, Foxes, wild Buffers, wild Goats, Deer, and Rabbers, being never sought after here, they are seen in prodigious Quantities, the only thing they hunt after being the Civet-cat, by reason of the great Advantage it affords to the owners.

They abound also in Birds and Fowl, such as Pheasants, Partridges, Hens, Turkeys, Ducks, Geese, Turtles, Pidgeons, Hawks of all sorts, and Eagles.

Serpents they have of 15 foot long, which will swallow an entire living Creature at once, and some Amphibious Creatures, the Flesh of which is eaten by the Inhabitants, whereas some others are so Venomous, that such as are sting by them infallibly die within 24 hours.

The Mountains of *Pemba* bring forth Citrons, Oranges, Banana's, and divers other Fruits, as plentifully as in most parts of the *Indies*, and the valleys afford a kind of Wheat call'd *Lenco*, not much bigger than Mustard-seed, which making better Bread, than any common Wheat, is reserved for the use of the better sort, the poor being fed here with Bread made of Rice, and *Turkey* Wheat.

Cocoes. Of *Cocoe*-Trees they have 2 sorts, some are Date-Trees, the other produces *Cocoes*, and a certain juice which is accounted an extraordinary cleanser of the Reins, and consequently a Soveraign remedy against the Gravel.

Their Fruits, as well as Pulse and Herbs, are without comparison more excellent here, than in other Countries, their Mountains which are for the most part covered with Fruit-trees, are green all the year round, and the Rocks produce white Marble, Alabaster, Jasper, Porphyry, and sometimes Hyacinths.

The Inhabitants are Black, but the Women not so much as the Men; they have neither such thick Lips, nor are so flat nosed, as commonly the Negroes are, and their Hair curls naturally. Those of *Bamba*, are famous for their strength.

The Houses. As every Man here is his own Architect, and Physician, so their Houses are small, low, and slightly built; they cure Fevers with the Powder of Sandal-wood, the Head-ach by bleeding, and when they are to procure an Evacuation by Purging, they do it with the Bark of a certain Tree, beat to Powder.

Clothing. They generally appear bare-headed, but such as do not, wear a kind of Hats, made of the barks of Trees, or Nutshells; some have a way of fastning with pack-thread, Plumes to their Hair; and both Sexes have holes in their Ears, in which hang very weighty rings of Gold, set with Stones; About their Arms and Legs, they wear rings or rather Plates of Iron, Tin or Brass, but the better sort are clad after the *Portuguese* Fashion.

Wealth. They sleep, and eat upon Mats spread upon the Ground. Besides the vast Wealth in Gold, Silver, Copper, Crystal, Iron, and other Metals, this Country produces, a great Traffick is carry'd on here in Ivory, Civet and Slaves, whom the *Spaniards* and *Portugueses* employ in their Mines, and Sugar-mills of *Brasil*.

Money. They use certain shells, which they fish out of the Sea, near the Isle of *Londa*, instead of Money, there being a peculiar Governour appointed there for that purpose, who has the over-sight of it.

The Government of the Country. The King of *Congo*, governs with an Arbitrary and Uncontrolable Power, both the Lives and Estates of his Subjects, at his own disposal. The Provinces are under the Jurisdiction of certain Governours, among whom he of *Batta* is the Head, and constant Chief Minister of State, being of the Blood-Royal; which is the reason, he sometimes eats at the Kings Table, (a thing not allow'd even to the King's Sons) but never sits down, but stands all the time. He has alone the Privilege of having the same Pipers and Musicians the King has, and of the use of Fire-arms for his Guard, of whom he keeps a good number, to bridle the insolency of a certain People, living upon the *Nile*, call'd *Giaques*, who make frequent inroads into his Territories, of which notice is given to the Country, by the discharging of a Musquet.

The Province of *Bamba*, is however accounted the Bulwark of this Kingdom, for though the Province of *Batta*, is able to raise about 70000 Fighting Men, whereas that of *Bamba* is able to raise only 40000. yet are the first for goodness, not to be compared to the last. They use great broad Swords, like the *Swisses*, and handle them with as much activity as we do our Rapiers; They make use also of Darts and Bucklers, the last of which, are made of the Barks of Trees. 1639.

Their engagement. They have no Cavalry, their Armies which are divided into divers Brigades, consisting only of foot, who engage all at a time; The General keeps in the Center, and by the help of their Warlike Instruments, call'd *Mani*, gives the signal to the Commanders, when to attack, to retreat, to close, or to open. Their Trumpets are of Wood, and make a most dreadful noise, their Drums are made of the Barks of Trees, and covered with a skin, which they beat with great Ivory sticks.

Warlike Instrument. Besides these they have a kind of Instrument, being only an Iron plate, of a Triangular form, which they beat with ordinary sticks; they have also a way of hollowing the Elephants Teeth, and blowing them as we do our Horns. With these Instruments the Commanders in the Army, answer the Signal given them by the General.

How Christianity was introduced here. The *Portugueses* were the first who introduced the Christian Religion here, under the Reign of *John* II. their King, who, as we told you, sent *Diego Can*, and *John Alonso d' Avero* into those parts. It was about that time, that *Caramansa* King of *Congo*, sent *Casuta* his Ambassador to the King of *Portugal*, who being baptized there, was sent back with three *Portuguese* Ships, commanded by *Gonsalo de Sonsa*, but in touching at *Cabo Verde*, both dyed there of the Plague; *Ray de Sonsa* who succeeded in the Command, being forced into the Port of *Finda*, in the Province of *Songo* (where the *Dutch* have establish'd themselves since) the Governor of the Place who was Uncle to the King of *Congo*, was baptized with all his Family, whose Foot-steps soon after were follow'd the King and Queen being named *John*, and *Eleanor*.

Emanuel King of *Portugal* sent another Squadron thither, 1504. But soon after the discovery of the *Indies*, and Prospect of greater Advantages to be reap'd from thence, occasioning the Discontinuance of those Voyages to the *African* Coast, the Foundations of Religion were also neglected by the *Portugueses*, which the *Dutch* improving to their Advantage, introduced their Traffick, and with it the Protestant Religion.

We told you before that *Diego Can* discovered *Congo*, let us now see what became of his Comrade, *John Alonso d' Avero*. He about the same time made a discovery of the Kingdom of *Beny*, betwixt the *Mina* and *Congo*. Its length is 80 Lgs, and its breadth 40.

The King-dom of Beny. The City of *Hugatoo*, is at 12 Lgs distance from the Sea, and somewhat deeper into the Country, upon the River, named *Rio Formoso* by the *Portugueses*, its Capital City, bearing the same name with the Kingdom.

The King of *Beny* having soon engaged, in a Treaty with *Alonso*, was also baptized, but this Conversion being not founded upon any Real knowledge of the Principles of the Christian Religion, was of no longer continuance than the Traffick of the *Portugueses* in those Parts, which was neglected as soon as they had made a discovery of the Passage by Sea to the *Indies*.

Cabo Verde described. *Cabo Verde*, is by *Ptolemy*, call'd *Promontorium Arsinarium*, and put at 10 deg. 40 min. on this side the line, whereas by our own Observation we can positively affirm it, to be at 14 degr. 20 min. betwixt the 2 Rivers of *Zanaga* and *Gambra*, or *Gambea*, call'd by *Ptolemy*, the *Dasago* and *Stachiris*, and which according to his Opinion, are but very small ones, the Scources of which are unknown, whereas it is beyond all Question, that they rise out of 2 Lakes, one of which is by the said *Ptolemy*, call'd *Palus Chelonides*, now the Lake of *Geaga*, and the other that of *Naba*; tho' some of the Inhabitants are of Opinion, (but without any Probability of Truth) that they have their rise in the *Nile*. It is call'd *Cabo Verde*, from the many Trees and Verdure. *Ptolemy* also mentions nothing of these 2 Rivers falling into the Sea, whereas it has been found since, that the River *Gambra*, after being join'd by the Waters of divers other Rivers, in the Province of *Mandiga*, disembogues into the Ocean at 13 deg. 30 min. and that the River *Zanaga*, running directly from E. to W. falls at 15. deg. 30. min. into the River *Geny*, which has imparted its name to that Country we call *Guinea*.

Its Inhabitants. As it is certain that *Ptolemy* had no knowledge of the Inhabitants betwixt these 2 Rivers, so we must rely entirely upon the Credit of those Modern Authors, who have given us their Relations concerning them. They tell us that a certain People call'd the *Budumeys* inhabit the Eastern part of the Country, as far as to *Cabo Verde*; The *Foules* and *Berbecines*, they

place

1639. place deeper into the Country, upon the River *Zanaga* to the N. of the *Jaloses*, some of which are subject to the *Foules*, others to the *Budumeys*. It is a plain Country, producing abundance of Cattel, Wine, Cotton, Wild Fowl, Ivory, and Horses. Gold and Silver, they have none, but Iron in vast Quantities. The Air is accounted very wholesome, and the Inhabitants near *Cabo Verde*, brave and good Horse-men, they are *Pagans*. They are every famous for Administring Justice, and publick Affairs, with a great deal of equity, prudence and secrecy. Those that are admitted into their Councils or Courts of Judicature, being generally chosen by their Age and long Experience. Though they are Ignorant of what belongs to Martial discipline, such as is practised in *Europe*, yet is their manner of disposing and gathering their Forces not to be pass'd by in silence:

How they raise their Armies.

For all such as are able to bear Arms, being divided into certain Bodies or Regiments, under their respective Commanders, have also their particular Divisions or Quarters allotted them; so that in case of necessity, the Orders for their appearing togeher in a Body, being dispatch'd from one Division to the other, the whole Army is ready in a little time to be at the Rendevouz appointed, without the Trouble of any new Levies, the Sons succeeding constantly in their Fathers Places, if they happen to die, so that their number is always compleat. They are not altogether Ignorant of the Degrees of Nobility and Peasantry; For their *Grandees* they call *Thubalas*, unto whom they pay more than ordinary Reverence, their King being always chosen out of their number, but he must be 30 years of Age at least.

Not long after the discovery of the Country of the *Jaloses* by the *Portugueses*, one *Beomi* reign'd in those parts, but being got into the Throne by sinister means, and forsaken by most of his Subjects, sought for aid by *John* II. King of *Portugal*, who had him instructed to the Christian Religion, and baptized, and sent him back with a good Squadron of Ships, under the Command of *Pedro Vaz de Cogna*, who had positive Orders to erect a Fort at the entrance of the River *Zanaga*, to facilitate their penetration deeper into the Country. A Fort was built accordingly, but was by the said *Vaz*, (for what reason is unknown) demolish'd again; and being severely upbraided upon this account by King *Beomi*, he kill'd him with his own hands, and so return'd to *Portugal*, where he was never call'd to an account for this Treacherous proceeding.

The Green-Islands.

Those Islands which the *Portugueses* call *Ilhas Verdes*, and the *Dutch*, the *Salt Islands*, lie directly opposite to *Cabo Verde*, yet so, that the neareſt of them is 70 and the most remote 160 Lgs distant from the Continent, which makes me imagine, that those who would have them to be the *Gorgonides* of *Ptolemy*, are under a mistake, since it is not very probable, that he, who has left us so confused an account of the *African* Coast, should have any Knowledge of the Isles at great a distance. They are in all ten, *viz.* St. *Jago*, St. *Antonio*, *Santa Lucia*, *Sant. Vincent*, St. *Nicholas*, *Ilha blanca*, *Ilha de Mayo*, *Ilha de Sal*, *Ilha de Fogo*, and *Ilha de Boa Vista*, extending from the 15th to the 19th deg. The *Portugueses* have given them the Name of *Green-Islands*, either from the Cape, or else from a certain green-weed, call'd by them *Sargasso*, which is like our Water-Cresses; of this you see such prodigious Quantities floating upon the surface of the Sea, from the 20th to the 24th degree, that without a strong gale Ships are sometimes stop'd in their Passage. But what is most surprising is, that, the Sea having no bottom here, and this Herb being not seen in any other part of the Sea, at least not within 150 Lgs from the *African* shoar, how this verdure should come to this particular Tract. Some alledge, that this verdure is wash'd from the Rocks in the *West-Indies*, & forc'd hither by the winds, but as the N. E. Winds reigns here all the year round, there is but little probability in this Opinion. When these Islands were first discovered by the *Portugueses*, they were without Inhabitants, Desert, but now produce Rice, Millet, *Turky* Wheat, Oranges, Citrons, *Bananas*, *Ananas*, *Ignames*, *Potatoes*, Melons, Citruls, Cowcumbers, Figs and Rasins, twice a year, and the 3 Islands of *Mayo*, *de Sal*, and *Boa Vista*, have such plenty of Cattle, that the *Portugueses* send whole Ship loads of them thence to *Brasil*. The considerable Quantity of Salt these Isles produces, has made the *Dutch* give them the name of the *Salt-Islands*. The *Portugueses* have also taken care to store these Islands with all sorts of tame and wild Fowl, which are multiply'd

Sargasso.

1639. at such a rate; that they may be had almost for nothing.

Flamincos

They have a peculiar kind of a Bird here, call'd *Flamencos*, by the *Portugueses*, they are as big, and white all over their Bodies, as our Swans, but their Wings are of a high red Colour. Rabbets are here in vast numbers, and the circumjacent Sea furnishes them with incredible store of Fish; which is the reason you see here at all times a considerable number of *Portugueſe* Fisher boats, who carry what they catch to *Brasil*. These Islands lie extreamly Commodious for such Ships as Trade to the *Indies*, in as much, as going thither, they may take in refreshments at a very easie Rate in the Isle of *Mayo*, and in their return at that of St. *Anthony*, the *Portugueſe* Inhabitants being not in a Condition to prevent it.

St. Jago

The Isle of *Jago*, as it is the Chiefest, so here the Governor and Archbishop keeps their ordinary Residence; the Spiritual Jurisdiction of the last extends not only over these Islands, but also over all the *African* Coasts, as far as it is in the Possession of the *Portugueses*.

Continue our Voyage.

Nov. 4th. we continued our Voyage for 24 Lgs, with a N. E. wind, steering our Course to the N. N. W. and found our selves at 16 deg. 1 min. Latitude.

The 5th. the wind the same, we made 31 Lgs to 17 degr. 27 min.

The 6th. keeping the same Course with the same wind, 34 Lgs to the 19th degr. 10 min.

The 7th. the wind held still in the N. E. which reigns here all the year long, as far as to the Artick Tropick, we made 36 Lgs.

The 8th. the wind coming to the E. N. E. we sail'd 32 Lgs to 22 degr. 35 min. Here we were much pestered with the *Sargosso*, or green, which we mentioned before; which, upon examination, I found very like our Water Cresses, only these were of paler Green, and had a small seed, like those of Green Goosberries.

The 9th. we sail'd 33. Lgs to the N. with the same wind, at 24 deg. 32 min. Latitude.

The 10th. the same wind carried us 25 Lgs to the N. N. W. at 25 deg. 40. min. Latitude.

The 11th. the wind turning in the Morning to E. S. E. and soon after to the S. we made but 8 Lgs, and were becalm'd before Night, the wind at N. W. our Course was to the W. at 26 deg. 40 min. Latitude. We took that Day a *Haye*, as the *Dutch* call it, (a Shark) which is accounted a rarity in these Seas, tho' they are frequent in the *Indies*.

The 12th. the wind being at N. N. E. we made 11 Lgs to the N. W.

The 13th. and 14th. the wind at N. E. we steer'd our Course W. N. W. and made the first day 21, and the next 22 Lgs.

The 15th. the wind was at the N. E. which carried us 20 Lgs to the N. W. to 27 deg. 30. min. Latitude.

The 16th. and 17th. we made 32 Lgs with the same Wind and Course.

The 18th. the wind turning to the S. E. we took our Course to the N. W. and made 21 Lgs to 29 degr. 20 min. Latitude.

The 19th. the wind chopp'd about to the S. S. W. with rainy weather, we steer'd our Course to the N. E. and made 37 Lgs.

The 20th. we got with a N. W. wind 12 Lgs in the same Course, and the 21st. 22 Lgs. more.

The 22th. the wind being at W. S. W. we steer'd our Course, for 40 Lgs to the N. N. E. at 35 deg. 20 min. Latitude. The 23th. a S. W. wind carried us 34 Lgs to the E. N. E. and the 24th. 35 Lgs further. The 25th. we had a N. W. wind, so, steering our Course to the N. E. we made 33 Lgs, at 38 deg. Lat. The 26th. being becalm'd, we got but 13 Lgs, and the 27th. but 12 more, taking our Course E. N. E. at 38 deg. 48 min. Lat. The 28th. the wind turning to the S. S. E. we took our Course to the E. S. E. for 27 Lgs, and the 29th. the same wind continuing, we made 24 Lgs taking the same Course; and at noon, at 33 deg. 30. min. got sight of the Islands of *Corvo* and *Flores*, which some, but erroneously number among the Islands, called by the *Spaniards* the *Azores*, from the many Hawks found here.

The Azores or Flemming Isles.

These are generally by the *Dutch* call'd the *Flemming* Islands, because the first Inhabitants of the Isle of *Fajal* (one of the *Azores*) were Natives of the Low-Countries, who settled themselves on that little River call'd by the *Portugueses*, *Ribera dos Flamencos*, and their Posterity live to this day there, according to the Custom of their own Country. The 7 Isles known by the name of *Azores*, are *Tercera*, St. *Michael*, *Santa Maria*,

Tercera.

1639. *Sant, Georges, Gratiosa Pico*, and *Fayal*. *Tercera* being 15 or 16 Lgs in Compass is the biggest and chiefest among them, being a Congeries of Mountains, which make it almost unaccessible, there being no safe Road or Harbour here, except at the City of *Angra*, being the Metropolis of this as well as the 6 other Islands, and the ordinary Residence of the Governors of these Isles, and of the Bishops themselves. This Road is not safe at all times, tho' this Port is enclosed like a Crescent, by 2 Mountains advancing very deep into the Sea; they call these Mountains *Bresil*, and may be seen 13 or 14 Lgs off at Sea. About 3 Lgs from the City of *Angra*, is a Town call'd *Villa de Praya*, the Houses whereof are very well built, but as it is a place of no Trade, so it is not very Populous. The City of *Angra* has obtained its Name from its Situation in the form of a Crescent, this Word being used by the *Portugueses*, to express the Figure of the new Moon. It is defended by two Forts, one of which is built upon the ascent of the Mountain, the other upon one of the points of Land, which cover the Haven, and consequently for the defence of its Entrance; the opposite point, having 2 high Towers, whence by a certain Signal, they give notice to the Inhabitants, what Vessels they espy at Sea, whether they come from *Europe* or *Bresil* side. All these Isles are subject to the Crown of *Portugal* now, though the *Castilian* Governor, *Don Alvaro de Vizeros*, defended himself very bravely in the 2 Forts of the City of *Angra*, after the revolution in *Portugal*, and did not surrender the Castle upon the Mountain till *May* 6. 1642. after he was reduced to the last extremity by famine; it is almost surprising to behold, that the bare Rocks here, which are not so much as covered with Earth should produce good store of Vines, which thrive better there than in the Valleys, though it must be confess'd, that their Wine does not come near in Goodness to those of the *Maderas*, and the *Canaries*.

Tercera

Angra.

Fertility of the Soil.

These Islands produce every thing, that is either necessary or convenient for human Life (except Oil and Salt) for they have Wheat good store, Pears, Apples, Citrons, Oranges, and Peaches in great plenty, besides Cherries Plums, Walnuts, Chestnuts and Pot-herbs of all sorts. They have also Potatos, but these are more esteem'd in *Portugal*, than in the Islands, and a peculiar Shrub, which growing up to the height of 5 or 6 foot, spreads its Roots by an Infinite number of Branches, as small as the Hair of a Mans head; of a yellowish Colour; they are used chiefly for their Quilts and Beds instead of Feathers, though there is not the least question, but that if they were spun into a Thread, they would afford Materials for a very good stuff. Cattle and all sorts of tame Fowl, as well as small Birds, multiply here beyond what can be imagined, but they have neither, wild Fowl nor Venison.

How they keep their Wheat.

Their Wheat is excellent good, but will not keep unless it be put under ground; for which reason each Family has its particular Vault, the entrance whereof is no bigger, than is sufficient for one Man to enter into, thence they carry it after *Christmass* to their Houses, where they keep it in Chests of Bulrushes, the remaining part of the year without ever stirring it. The Oxen of the Isle of *Tercera*, are the bigest and fairest of all *Europe*, and very conspicuous for the excessive bigness of their Horns, they are as tame as our Dogs, and will go and come as they are bid to do. The noise which is perceived when People go over the Rocks here, sufficiently demonstrates their hollowness within; whence arise the Earthquakes, which are so frequent in this, as well as the other *Azores* Islands.

Terc. Oxen.

Subject to Earthquakes.

Thus 1614. 24th. *May*. 11 Churches and 9 Chappels, besides private Houses, were ruin'd by an Earthquake, in the City of *Angra*, and the City of *Praya* was almost laid desolate at the same time; and the whole Isle of St. *Michael* was so terribly shaken by an Earthquake, 1628. 16 *June*, that at some small distance from the shoar, the Sea opened in a place where was 150 fa. Water, and thence thrust forth a small Isle of a Lg. and a half in length, at least 60 fathom above the water. These 2 Islands have also certain hot Springs, whence at some distance from them issue Sulphurous Vapors. About 3 Lgs. from *Angra* is a Spring which turns Wood to Stone, as is evidently to be seen by a certain Tree, the Root whereof as far as it has been under Water, is absolutely petrefied, whereas the trunk and all the rest, are not in the least changed. The Isle of *Pico* has a peculiar kind of Wood, as hard as Iron, red like Scarlet, in which when cut appear certain Veins, like the Water of a Chamlet, of which

An Island started out of the Sea.

A petrefying Spring.

1639. are made very fine Cabinets, highly esteem'd in *Portugal*. Cedar is so common among them, that they don't only use it for their ordinary Houshold-stuffs, but also for Fuel; nay, they make whole Waggons and Boats of it. They have scarce any Commodities to trade with, except Provisions, which they sell to the Ships that touch there to take in refreshments, as they are going to the *East-Indies*. 1639.

The Isle of St. *Michael* (the second among the *Azores*) is about 20 Lgs long, lying 28 Lgs S. E. from that of *Tercera*. Its Capital City is call'd *Punta Delgada*; its Soil very fruitful, producing more Wheat than they are able to consume; the worst is, that they have no safe Road for Ships to ride in. St. Michael Isle.

The Isle of St. *Mary* being not above 12 Lgs in compass, lies 12 Lgs S. of that of St. *Michael's*; its Products are Provitions and Potters Earth. St. Mary.

The Isle of *Gratiosa* lies 7 or 8 Lgs N. E. from that of *Tercera*; its compass being not above 5 or 6 Lgs: It has got its Name from its Pleasantness, and vast plenty of all sorts of Fruits. Gratiosa.

The Isle of St. *George*, which is 12 Lgs long and 3 broad, lies 8 or 9 Lgs to the N. W. from that of *Tercera*: It is well stor'd with Provisions, tho' it be full of Mountains, which furnish them with vast store of Cedar, which they sell to those of *Tercera*, where it is made up into Joiners and Cabinet-makers works, and transported thence to other Places. St. George.

The Isle of *Fayal* being at least 17 or 18 Lgs in circumference, lies 7 Lgs to the S. W. off of that of St. *George*, being the best of all the *Azores*, next to those of *Tercera* and St. *Michael*: Its Capital City is call'd *Villa Desta*, inhabited chiefly by the Posterity of the *Flemmings* we had occasion to mention before; they send hence abundance of Provisions, but especially Fish, to the other Islands. Fayal Isle.

The Isle of *Pico* has got its name from the High Peak or Mountain within it, call'd *Pico*, supposed to be as high as the Peak of the great *Canary* Island, of which more anon. It lies enclosed betwixt the Isles of *Fayal*, from whence it is distant 3 Lgs to the S. E. of St. *George*, and *Tercera*; from the first of which it lies 4 Lgs to the S. W. and from the latter 12 Lgs to the W. S. W. The grounds are accounted more fertile here, than those of any of the other Isles. The Isle of *Flores*, as we told you, we got sight of 29th. of *Nov.* being 70 Lgs to the W. of *Tercera*; *Flores* is 20 Lgs in circumference, and the Isle of *Corvo*, is no more than 2 Lgs thence to the N. they are both under the *Portuguese* Jurisdiction, but their distance from the *Azores* shews them not to be of their number. As the *Azores* lie very convenient for the refreshment of the *Portuguese* Ships bound to the *East-Indies* and *Brasil*, they are very careful of their Preservation, whence it is, that they will allow no Foreigners, to view the Coast of the Isle of *Tercera* (which is the chief of all, the rest having no safe Roads, or any Forts) for fear they should by its weakness be invited to land and settle there. The Air is very clear and wholesome, but withal very sharp, so that it corrodes Iron, and consumes Stones in a few Years, which is the reason they use flint-Stones in their building, which having lain for a considerable time under Water near the Sea side, are better qualified than other Stones to resist the sharpness of the Air. The Isle of Tercera. The Air of the Azores.

But before we leave the *African* Coast, it will not be amiss to say something also of the *Canary* Islands, which lie upon that Coast, opposite to *Gibralter*.

The wholesomness of the Air, and Fertility of the soil, had got them the name of the *Insulæ Fortunatæ*, among the Ancients; tho' one of them is also call'd, *Canaria* by *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Ptolemy*, which Contradicts the Opinion of those, who affirm, That those who discovered them in the year 1342. gave them the name of *Canaries*, from the many Canes found there. They are 7 in number, *viz. Lanzarotta*, *Fortuentura*, the *Great Canary*, *Teneriffa*, *Gomera*, *Fierro* and *Palma*, extending from E. to W. in a manner in a direct Line; *Lewis* Count of *Clermont*, having 1348. got a Grant from the *Pope* of these Islands, set out a Fleet on the Coast of *Catalonia*, to endeavour the Conquest of them, which was effected accordingly, under the Protection of the King of *Arragon*, but the same being afterwards relinquish'd, by D. *Lewis de la Cerda*, the *Biscayans*, and *Andalusians*, having set out some Vessels surprised the Isle of *Lanzarotta*, whence they brought back so much wealth, that the King of *Castile* then resolved upon the Conquest of these Islands, which questioness he would have effected, had not the more pressing Wars he was engaged in with his Neighbours, diverted him from that purpose. Not The Canar. Isles. Conquered by the Count de Clermont.

1639. Not many years after, a certain *French* Gentleman, named *John de Betancourt*, having obtained a Commission from *Henry* III. then King of *Spain*, to Conquer these Islands, under Condition, that he and his Posterity should acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Castile*, he was so Fortunate, as to make himself soon Master of the 5 lesser Islands, but could not bring the 2 great ones under subjection. However the King of *Castile* as Sovereign, having sent thither a Bishop, this occasioned such a difference betwixt him, and *Betancourt*'s Nephew, who had succeeded his Uncle, that the King of *Castile*, was forced to send thither one *Pedro Barba*, who having forced the *French-men* thence, gave them as a Dowry with his Daughter, to one *Perrera*, who assuming the name of King of the *Canaries*, left no Stone unturn'd to make himself Master of them all, by the Conquest of the remaining Islands, but finding his endeavours to prove fruitless, he sold 4 of these Islands, to *Ferdinand*, Surnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Arragon*, reserving to himself only, that of *Gomera*, with the quality of an Earl. King *Ferdinand* had the good Fortune, soon to reduce the 2 Great Islands also, which ever since, as well as the rest have remain'd under the *Spanish* Jurisdiction. The *Great Canary* Isle is computed to contain above 9000 Inhabitants, here being also the Residence of the Bishop, Inquisitor, and Great Council, which manages the publick Affairs of all the other Isles. Besides, that excellent Wine so well known and esteem'd in *Europe*, it produces Wheat, Barley, Honey, Wax, and Sugar Canes, and the plenty they have of Cattle, makes them Trade much in Leather; with the *Spaniards*, *English*, *Dutch* and *Hamburgers*; the first, in their Voyages to the *West-Indies*, take most of their fresh Provisions in here. The Isle of *Teneriffe* is famous for its Mountain, call'd *El Pico de Terraira*, being accounted the highest in the World, so that it may be discovered for above 60 Lgs at Sea, and on the top a Man may see all the other *Canary Islands*; tho' some of them are 50 Lgs distant from this; But it requires 3 days time to get up, which must be either in *July* or *August*, it being covered with Snow, all the rest of the year, tho' there falls none in any of those Islands. The Isle of *Fierro* claims the next place to that of *Teneriffe*, among the *Canary Islands*; it has got its Name from the drought of the ground, which being without Water, seems to be of Iron. For, except a few Springs near Sea shoar, this whole Island is without a Rivulet, Brook, Well or Spring; Against which default Provident Nature, has bless'd this Island with a certain Tree, which has no resemblance to any other, that ever I saw, either in *Europe* or the *Indies*, and stands in the very Center of the Isle. Its leaves are very long but narrow, and never cease to be Green either in Winter or Summer; Betwixt the Branches hang certain Clouds or Vapours, which are never dispell'd, but constantly dissolv'd in a Liquid substance, which hanging to the Leaves, falls from thence as clear as Water into the Cisterns, that are made under the Tree, on purpose to receive it, and that in such great quantities, that they are never empty, and sufficient to supply both Men and Beasts. It is the Opinion of the Inhabitants, and those that have frequently sail'd in those parts, that 100 Lgs W. of the *Canaries*, there has been seen a certain Island, call'd St. *Borondon*, very pleasant and fruitful, and inhabited by Christians; but are not able to tell you how it came to be peopled, and what Language is in vogue there. Certain it is, that the *Spaniards* inhabiting the *Canaries*, have made several attempts to find it out, but whether the thick Fogs which surround it, or the Current of the Sea, which keeps Ships from the shoar, is the occasion, that it has not been discovered, certain it is, that no body hitherto has been able to give a satisfactory account of it.

By a French Gentleman.

By the Spaniards.

Teneriffe.

Fierro.

A strange Tree.

Continue their Voyage.

But to return to our Voyage. The wind turning to the S. the 29th of *Nov.* we took our Course to the N. leaving the Isle of *Flores* to the E. of us, and soon lost sight of that, as well as of the Isle of *Corvo*. The 30th. *Nov.* we made 31 Lgs to the N.E. with a S.S.VV. Wind, and at noon found our selves at 40 deg. 32 min. Lat. *Dec.* 3d. we made 34 Lgs with the same wind and Course, and *Dec.* 4th. a N. E. wind advanced us 27 Lgs to E.N.E. The 5th. the wind coming to the S. VV. we continued the same Course, and got 34 Lgs. It was this day exactly eleven Months since we had been toss'd up and down the Sea, though our Voyage had been tolerable enough, ever since our departure from *Madagascar*. The 6th. It blew a storm out of the E. but being for us, we advanced 50 Lgs. It is observable, that soon after you are past the *Azores* Islands, you may assure your self of a VV. wind, let it be what Season of the year it will, till you come to the Coast of *England*, it being very seldom known, that it turns either directly to the S. or N. though perhaps it may change a few parts in the Compass.

West wind reign from the Azores to England.

1639

The 7th. the Wind turning to the N. W. we sail'd 39 Lgs to the E. N. E. The 8th. we made 47 Lgs with a very brisk Gale from the S. W. keeping the same Course, and the 9th. with a S. S. W. Wind made 31 Lgs to N. N. E. we found our selves at 49 deg. 13 min. the Weather being very cold, and a sandy white bottom at 68 fathom, and in the Evening sounding again, found but 53 fathom, the sand not so white as in the Morning. The Wind chopping about to the N. E. in the Night, was directly in our Teeth till the 10th. about Noon, when coming to the S. W. we made 22 Lgs. The 11th. we espied at break of Day 2 *English* Ships, and in a few hours after, that Point of *Cornwel* commonly call'd the Lands End. We endeavoured to double the Point by laveering, the Wind being contrary, and with much-a-do made 16 Lgs. The 12th. the Wind being still against us, we continued laveering, and at a distance we saw another *English* Vessel, but could not come near it. The 13th. the Wind being at S.W. and S. S. W. we steer'd our Course to the E.S. E. and to E. with a point to the S. we made 64 Lgs to 49 deg. Latit. The 14th. after having changed our Course, taking to E. N. E. in order to make the Channel which divides *England* from *France*, we saw 2 *Dutch* Vessels, and a *Dunkirker*, not far from us, but the roaring of the Sea prevented our hearing one another. The 15th. we steer'd the same Course, and met with 3 *Dutch* Ships bound to *Brasil*, not far from the *Isle of Wight*, which lies at 50 deg. 26 min. Latit. and 19 deg. 4 min. Longit. The 16th. by 10 in the Morning we pass'd in sight of *Dover-Castle*, and about Noon came to an Anchor in the *Downs*, and thus compleated our Voyage in the 12th. Month after our departure from *Suratte*. We saw there near 100 Ships, riding at Anchor, in expectation of fair Weather, it being so boisterous, that for 2 Days after we could not stir out of our Ship. The *English* Admiral who was then with some Men of War in the *Downs*, invited the 19th. (when the Wind was somewhat laid) the President to Dinner, who taking me along with him, I had my share in the Entertainment, which was so Magnificent both for the Meat and great quanity of Plate, that the King's Table could scarce have been better served in *London*. As we were extreamly well pleased with our Entertainment, so it was near Night before we got into our Boat. Our Ship laid not above a Musquet Shot from the Admiral, but no sooner were we got into it, when a sudden Storm forced us to Sea, the Waves continually coming over our Boat, so that we were obliged to make the best shift we could to cast out the Water without intermission with our Hats. We then began to reflect, how that after we had surmounted so many dangers during this tedious Voyage, we should at last be Ship-wrack'd in sight of our dear Country, and in that very part, whither we were come with so much danger to seek for safety; but to be short, we were for 4 hours thus betwixt hope and despair, when at last we got sight of a small Vessel, but so miserably torn by the Tempest, that it had lost all its Anchors but one, which was not strong enough to keep it from being forc'd towards the Sea. However we betook our selves to our Oars, sitting up to the Waste in Water, and with much-a-do reach'd the Vessel, in which, in effect, we were not much safer than in our Boat, as being in danger to be stav'd against a dangerous Sand Bank that was not far off, but that the cold we had endured in the Ship, had so disinabled us in all respects, that we were not apprehensive of our condition, being in a manner half dead the next Day, when we were brought to our Vessel, where they had given us over for lost, and bewail'd our Death. *December.* 24th. another Tempest arose, which was so violent, that 24 Ships were forc'd to cut their Masts, among the number of which was also our Vessel, not so much by the Tempest, as for fear of 2 Men of War, which being forc'd from their Anchors, would else have run foul upon us. The 26th. we got at last to the so long wish'd for *English* Shore, and lay the same Night at *Canterbury*, the Cathedral of which claims the preference before any other in *England*, and is not inferior to some of the best Structures in the World. The 27th. we came to *Graves-end*, and the 28th. to *London*, being met in our way by certain Deputies of the *East-India* Company, who staid for the Presidents coming, at *Black-Wall* with 8 Coaches.

Come into the Channel.

Pass the Isle of Wight.

Come to Dover.

Are like to be cast away.

Come to Canterbury.

To London.

Decemb.

1639. *Decemb.* 30th. I view'd the *East-India* House, and took that opportunity to return thanks to the Directors for the many Civilities I had received at the Presidents hands, and they having made a splendid Entertainment for him that day, I was also invited. The 31st. of *Dec.* and 1st. of *Jan.* we were splendidly treated by some other *English* Merchants, and 2 *Jan.* by Sir *Edmund Wright* the then Lord Mayor of *London* as he was much delighted in the Relation of the many Adventures that had befallen us during our Voyage, so he would needs invite the President and me again the next day; our discourse running again upon the many dangers we had escaped: the Lord Mayor, to shew us that Sea-faring People were subject to such, and often escaped much greater danger, related to us a Story of a certain *Dutch* Seaman, who being for some Crimes condemned to death, his Punishment was changed into that of Banishment into the Isle of St *Helens*, near which they then were; which was done accordingly. This poor Wretch thinking this Solitude insupportable to him, resolved rather to hazard his Life at any rate, than to endure it, and having met with a Coffin, in which a certain Sea Officer had been interr'd the day before, he without more a-do took out the dead Corps, and having out of the upper Board of the Coffin made a kind of a Rudder, put himself into it, and so made out to Sea; as good chance would have it, the Ship unto which he had belonged, was becalm'd at a Lg and a half distance from the Shore, and the Ships Crew perceiving so odd a kind of Vessel floating on the Surface of the Water, thought it had been an Apparition, till coming nearer and nearer to the Ship, they stood amazed at this unaccountable boldness of the Man, who had ventured so far in a or 3 pieces of Boards, and that without being assured whether he should be received or not; it being put to the question, it was at last concluded he should be taken aboard, which was done accordingly, and return'd to *Holland*, where he lived afterwards in the Town of *Horn*.

1640.

A strange adventure of a Dutchman

He gave us another instance of this kind in an *English* Man, who being taken by a *French* Privateer in the Pacquet Boat going from *England* to *Dublin*, was freed from the Privateer by a sudden Storm, which parted them; but soon after also split the Pacquet Boat against a Rock on the Coast of *Scotland*, opposite to that of *Ireland*. This *Englishman* with another of the Crew happened to be cast ashore among the Rocks, where they made a-shift to erect a Hut out of some Boards belonging to their Ship; they lived upon the Sea Mews they catch'd, which they dry'd in the Sun and so eat them raw, as also upon certain Eggs they found in the Crevices of the Rocks, which kept them from starving, but their greatest want was fresh Water, of which they had none but what the Rains blessed them with. They continued in this condition 6 Weeks, at the expiration of which the *Englishman* awaking in the Morning, miss'd his Companion (whom he supposed to be fallen from the Rock through carelessness) the only comfort of his life in this Solitude, which almost put him to despair, especially when the approaching Winter made every thing appear with a more doleful Aspect than before; his Hut being covered with Snow, he made the hardest shift in the World to sustain himself, till after a miserable life of eleven Months some Seamen belonging to a *Flemish* Ship commanded by Captain *Peckman* (famous for his Art of getting the great Guns of the *Spanish Armada* forc'd upon the Coast of *Scotland* and *Ireland*, 1588, out of the Sea) and forc'd by Tempests upon that Coast, as they were looking for Eggs, discovered this poor Wretch, whom at last with much entreaty they took into their Vessel, being all black, hairy, and meager, more like a Specter than a Man, and having given him what refreshments the Ship afforded, set him ashore at Derry in *Ireland*, from whence he afterwards return'd into *England*.

Another instance of this kind in an *English* Man, who being taken by a *French* Privateer in the Pacquet Boat going from *England* to *Dublin*

A strange Resolution of 4 Christian Slaves

Another Relation he was pleased to give us of a most surprizing Resolution of 4 Seamen, who being taken by the *Algerines*, and one of them being a Carpenter, they resolv'd to make a small Boat, and venture in it in the open Sea, in order to their Deliverance; accordingly having secretly made what Preparations they could for the execution of this design, they took off five Boards from the Store-room, 2 whereof were employed for the Bottom of the Boat, 2 more for the Sides, and the 5th, for the Prow and the Poop, their Quilt serving for Tow; the Boat being well Pitch'd, and the appointed time come, they found that their Boat was so little, as not to be able to bear above 2, so that two of the Confederates were obliged to stay behind, the other two being an *Englishman* and a *Dutchman* persisting in their Resolution to go forward, let it cost what it would; accordingly having found means to provide a pair of Oars, a piece of a Sail, and a slender Portion of Bread and fresh Water, they boldly put to Sea, having neither Compass nor Astrolabe, so that being overtaken by a Storm, they were forc'd to go where the Wind would carry them, their chief business being to cast out the Water, which continually came into the Boat, and soon spoil'd what little Bread they had; which together with the want of rest, had brought them so low, that they were scarce able to stand upon their Legs; in this miserable condition Chance brought them to the Coast of *Barbary*, where lighting on some Wood that served them to refit and enlarge their Boat, which they had no sooner done, but being in manifest danger of being kill'd by the Inhabitants, were forced to chuse the Main Sea a second time, and at last after being tos'd up and down in the Sea for 10 days, were cast upon the *Spanish* Coasts near the *Cape of St. Martin*, betwixt *Alicant* and *Valentia*, where being civilly entertain'd by the Inhabitants, they after came into *Eng*

The 5th of *January* I saw the King of *England* touch many Persons that were afflicted with the Evil, and the Ceremony be-

ing over, my Lord *Strafford* did me the honour to introduce me to his Majesty to kiss his hand, and afterward to the Queen, both their Majesties at several times after being pleased to bestow some time in hearing my Relations of my Travels, especially of those into *Persia* and *Muscovy*. During my stay of 3 Months in *England*, I spent part of my time at Court, and the rest in taking a view of what was most worth observation in *London*, and the circumjacent places, such as *White-Hall*, St. *James*, *Hampton-Court*, *Westminster Hall*, and the *Abbey*, *Greenwich*, the *Tower*, *&c.* and having by this time sufficiently recovered my self of the fatigues of so tedious a Voyage, and received the Money I expected from my Native Country, I left *London March* the 20th. and taking Water for *Gravesend*, went thence to *Rochester*, and coming the 24th. to *Dover*, embark'd the 25th for *Dunkirk*, where I arrived the same Day. 1640. The Author leaves *London*.

The 26th. I continued my Journey thence to *Newport*, where I staid that Night, and came the next Day to *Bruges*, and the 29th to *Ghent*, where I staid only till the 1st. of *April*, when I prosecuted my Journey to *Brussels*, the Capital City of the Province of *Brabant*; after a stay of 2 Days at *Brussels*, I came the 5th. to *Louvain*, and travel'd the same Day 4 Lgs further, to *Mechlin*. Thence I prosecuted my Journey the 6th to *Antwerp*, where I staid 2 Days, and the 9th. and 10th. travel'd to *Breda*, where having spent the remainder of that Day, I made 5 Lgs the next to *Bois-le-duc*, or *Bolduc*.

The 12th. I set again forward for St. *Gertrudenburg*, whence I took Boat the same Day, for *Rotterdam*, where I arrived the 13th. and continued my Journey the same day for *Delft*, and so further through the *Hague*, by the way of *Leiden* to *Harlem*. This City which is the biggest next to *Amsterdam*, in the Province of *Holand*, challengeth the Glory of the Invention of the Mystery of Printing, by one of its Inhabitants named *Laurence Coster*, who in the Year 1420. first made the Characters of Beech Wood, and afterward having found out also the Ink that to this Day is used by Printers; he changed the Wooden Characters into Leaden ones, and having at last made them of Tin, he brought the whole to perfection 1440. in Memory of which the Senate of *Harlem* have caused this following Inscription to be set over the House he lived in. *Harlem.*

Memoriæ Sacrum, Typographia, Ars Artium omnium Conservatrix nunc primum inventa circa Annum MCCCCXL.

Leaving *Harlem* in the Evening I came the same Night to *Amsterdam*, of which Place having heard so much in the *Indies*, I resolved to spend some time in taking a view of it. The first thing that surprized me the next Morning, was, that vast number of People which so crouded the Streets, that a Man could not pass unmolested, but when I came to the Port, I stood amazed at the prodigious numbers of Ships which appeared at a distance no otherwise than one continued Forest, especially when I was inform'd how many Ships were abroad at that time, bound to all parts of the World, and that I saw every Day a considerable number go to their own and other adjacent Coasts. The vast Stores brought thither from all, even the most remote parts of the World, especially in the House of the *East-India Company*, made me imagine no otherwise, than that all what I had seen in my Travels through so great a part of the Globe, was all center'd in this place; there being such prodigious quantities of Spices, Silk, Porcelain here, that *China* and all the rest of the *Indies* seem'd to have exhausted their Store-houses to lay them up in this City. It was in the Year 1595. that the *Dutch*, by the encouragement of a certain Merchant, whose Name was *Cornelius Houtman*, and who had lived for a considerable time in *Portugal*, undertook the first Voyage to the *East-Indies*, along the *African* Coast; their design of finding out the Northern Passage having proved abortive; this first Voyage did not answer the expectation of the Merchants, notwithstanding which they sent 8 Ships more thither, 1598. and 1599. another Squadron, but by different People, so that for fear of the destroying this so profitable Trade, a Charter was granted to all the Persons concerned, 1602. for 20 Years, and six Chambers erected, *viz.* at *Amsterdam* consisting of 20 Directors, *Middleborough* for *Zealand* 12 Directors, at *Delft* and *Rotterdam* for the *Meuse*, at *Horn* and *Enkhuisen* for *West-Friesland*; these 4 last consisting each of 7 Directors. According to the same Charter the City of *Amsterdam* was to defray one half of all the Charges, and to send 8 Deputies to their General Meetings, that of *Zealand* one 4th. part, and to send 4 Deputies to their General Meetings; and those of the *Meuse* and *West-Friesland* one half quarter each, and to send 2 Deputies each. *Amsterdam.*

Their Original Stock did amount to 6600000 *French Livres*, which was improved to that degree, that in the Year 1613. the Persons concern'd had gain'd 260 upon the Hundred, and the next Year the Profits were more considerable. The Regularity of the Streets and Water Channels, and the neatness and splendor of the Bridges and Houses of *Amsterdam* is not to be imagined, except by those who have been Eye-witnesses of it, especially those in the New Town, many of which are rather to be called Palaces, than the Houses of Private Persons. Among the Publick Structures the old and new Churches are worth Observation, and if the Town-house be compleated, according to the Draught I saw of it, it will beyond question vie with any of the Noblest Structures in the World, and the *Exchange* of *Amsterdam* surpasses that of *London*, in the number of People that daily resort thither, as it does that of *Antwerp* in Magnificence? not to mention here the Gates of the City, and its 3 Sluices which can't be match'd in the World, the Publick School, College, Arsenal, Play-House, Anatomy-Hall, and other Publick Edifices, which deserve the Travellers peculiar Observation. But to come to a conclusion of my Voyage, after a stay of 8 Days at *Amsterdam* I took Shipping for *Hamburgh* the 23d. of *April*, where I arrived safely the 28th. and after I had rested my self there for one Day and Night, continued my Journey to *Gottorp*, which I reach'd the 1st. of *May*, and had the honour to be admitted to their Highnesses the Duke and Dutchess of *Holstein*, unto whom I gave a more account of the success of my long and toilsome Travels. CHAP.

The Earl of Carliſle's *Embaſſy from King* Charles *the* II. *to the Great Duke of* Muſcovy; *and to the Kings of* Sweden *and* Denmark, *in the Years* 1663, *and* 1664.

CHAP. IV.

A Relation of the Firſt Embaſſy into Muſcovy.

1663. KING *Charles* II. was no ſooner Reſtored to his Dominions, but moſt of the Chriſtian Princes being very deſirous of his Alliance, ſent their Ambaſſadors to *London*, to Congratulate this Prince upon his happy Reſtauration. Amongſt thoſe the preſent Czar of *Muſcovy Alexis Michaelowitz*, as he had ſhewn a ſingular abhorrency of the Murther of K. *Charles* I. by aſſiſting our preſent King with money, ſo he had ſent a ſplendid Embaſſy hither, which was received with all the moſt ſingular marks of Honour and Friendſhip; It was on account of this Embaſſy and thoſe from the two Northern Crowns, which arrived in *England* much about the ſame time, that his Majeſty of Great *Britain* reſolved to ſend *Charles* Earl of *Carliſle* his Ambaſſador to *Alexis Michaelowitz*, *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and afterwards to the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*: tho' it muſt be confeſt, that his buſineſs in the *Ruſſian* Court was not a bare Compliment only, but intended for the *Recovery of the Privileges of the* Engliſh Ruſſian *Company*, granted to them by the famous *Ruſſian* Tyrant, *Juan Baſilowitz*, by vertue of which *they uſed to Traffick at Arch-Angel without paying any Cuſtoms*, which being taken away from them by the preſent *Czar*, on occaſion of the late Rebellion," (in which they were ſuppoſed to have had their ſhare) K. *Charles* II, after the *returning of his Subjects to their Allegiance*, did expect no leſs from the *Czar*'s generoſity than the re-eſtabliſhment of thoſe Priviledges, which were the *Baſis of the ancient Friendſhip betwixt the two Crowns of* England *and* Muſcovy; in which however he found himſelf miſtaken in the end.

The Earl of Carliſle ſent Ambaſſador to Muſcovy, Sweden, and Denmark.

The Earl of *Carliſle* being a Perſon of a very Majeſtick Stature and Deportment, and of great Vivacity in all his Actions and Diſcourſe, ſcarce then exceeding the Age of 36. was a Perſon abſolutely well Qualifyed for ſo conſiderable an Employment, his Train conſiſting of 80 Perſons; among which were 10 Gentlemen, 6 Pages, 2 Trumpets, 12 Footmen; one Chaplain and a Chirurgeon, 6 Muſicians, ſeveral Interpreters and Tradeſmen that were neceſſary for ſuch a Journey. For, beſides his Liveries, which were made at *London*. Beds and Chairs, nay, all Kitchin moveables were to be provided. As to other things it being the Cuſtom for the *Czar* to furniſh all Foreign Ambaſſadors with as ſoon as they enter his Dominion; His Majeſty of Great *Britain* had alſo bin pleaſed to preſent the ſaid Earl with a Red Damask Canopy Edged with a Gold and Silver Fringe, Embroidred on the back with the Kings Arms in ſilver, and a Rich Chair of ſtate with its footſtool. Thus prepared we Embark'd in *July* 1663. but before we come to the particulars of our Voyage, it will not be beyond our Scope to give you a general ſcheme of its whole extent, which was 1800 Lgs; to wit, upon the Northern Seas betwixt *London* and *Archangel* 750. from thence to *Vologda* up the Rivers *Dwina* and *Sucagna* 250. and from *Vologda* to the City of *Muſco* 100 Lgs by Land, which in all amounts to 1100 Lgs. In our Return, from *Muſco* to *Riga* the Capital of *Livonia* 250 Lgs. moſt part by Land; from thence to *Stockholm*, the Reſidence of the *Swediſh* Kings, 100 Lgs. upon the *Baltick*; from thence 100 Lgs more by Sea to *Copenhagen* the chief City of *Denmark*; and from *Copenhagen* to *London* at leaſt 250 Lgs. Two Veſſels being appointed for our Voyage, one a Man of War of 50 Guns, the other a Merchants Ship, 32 of his Excellencies Domeſticks, of which number I was one, a great part of the Baggage, the preſent deſign'd for the great Duke, and Eight Coach Horſes were Embark't aboard the Laſt at *London*, from whence we did fall down to *Graveſend*, where whilſt we were Riding at Ancher, one of our Company had an unlucky fall, of which he however recovered ſoon after, and his Excellency for his better conveniency having taken him into his Man of War, he Married one of our Maid ſervants, whilſt we were at *Muſco*.

The Train of the Ambaſſador.

Their Voyage from London to Archangel.

1663. The 15th *July*, we ſet Sail from *Graveſend* with a favourable Gale, but ſcarce had we loſt the River *Thames*, when the wind turning violent and contrary upon us, put moſt of us who were not acquainted with the watry Element, under no ſmall conſternation.

Set ſail from Graveſend.

The 21*ſt*. We were ſomewhat refreſh'd by an agreable Calm, and had the diverſion of a great Porpoiſe, plunging and leaping about our Ship; but our joy was ſoon allay'd by a ſucceeding Storm, which blowing with great violence from the N. E. for three or four days, at laſt forced us upon the Coaſt of *Norway*. We entreated the Maſter of the Veſſel to ſhelter himſelf hereabouts, till the Wind might prove more favourable; but he alledging on his behalf theſe advanced Seaſons which would not admit of any delay, reſolved to purſue his Voyage in ſpite of the oppoſition of the Winds.

Violent Storms.

The 26*th*. The violence of the Wind was ſuch, that it blew down the Scuttle of our Main-maſt, tore our Main-ſails, and broke one of our Maſts. This was a very terrible ſpectacle to us that were unacquainted with ſuch like accidents at Sea. But our fear was not a little allay'd, when we found the Maſter turning to the Weſt, and ſtanding for *New Caſtle*, to refit his Ship, every one being overjoy'd at the hopes of finding ſome comfort aſhore, after ſuch terrible ſufferings, tho' we were forced to go above 300 Lgs. backwards. But this joy was but of ſhort continuance, for the next day about Noon we were becalm'd in ſight of the Mountains of *Cheviot* in *Scotland*, and towards Evening the Wind turning to the South, with a gentle Gale, the Maſter at the perſwaſions of the Carpenters, who promiſed to mend the Maſts, ſo as that they ſhould hold out to *Archangel*, turned his back again upon *New Caſtle*, and when we were within 6 or 7 Lgs. from the *Engliſh* Shore, diſappointed us in all our preſent hopes. The next Morning, whilſt the Carpenters were ſtill employ'd in repairing the Scuttle and Maſt; the Wind turned again to the N. E. with ſuch violence, that we expected every hour to be loſt. Some of his Excellencies Gentlemen began then to expoſtulate with the Maſter, but in vain, he perſiſting in his former reſolution, till at laſt on the 29*th*. the Bolt-ſprit being blown down, he ſaw himſelf under an unavoidable neceſſity of making what Sail he could towards *New-Caſtle*, but were by ſtreſs of Weather forced into *Burlington Bay* in *Yorkſhire*. Whilſt we were refreſhing our ſelves here, after ſuch terrible fatigues, Mr. *Watſon*, who had the chief direction of our Company, was commanded away by General *Monk*, to aſſiſt in the ſuppreſſing of a *Fanatick* revolt in the North, (he having a Command in his Majeſty's Guards) juſt as he was preparing to go aboard again.

Are forced into Burlington Bay.

The 8th *Aug*. we ſet Sail again with a favourable Wind, ſo that from the 11 to the 16 we made near 400 Lgs, leaving *Shetland* the 12. to the Leeward.

The 20 and 21 proved Fogs, but then the Weather was clear, the time betwixt Sun-ſetting and Riſing, was a continual Twy-Light.

1663. The 22d we diſcryed the Iſles of *Ruſs* and *Gromland*, covered all over with Snow, the 26 ſteering our courſe S. East, we advanced towards the *North Cape*, and keeping near the Coaſt of *Lapland*, in a few days after found our ſelves in ſight of *Lapland*.

The 2d *Sept.* we ſaw a vaſt multitude of Fiſhes, and among them a great Whale, at about two or three Leagues diſtance, about noon Sailing along with a gentle breeze, we got ſight of the Men of War, which had carried the Ambaſſador to *Archangel*, and were inform'd by them, that the *Czar* having given us over for loſt, he reſolved to begin his Journey the 8th. *Sept.* for *Vologda*. We were then 60 Leagues from that Port, and the next day were forced to come to an Anchor towards to point of *Ortogones*. Five or ſix of our Ships Crew got a Shoar to get ſome fewel, of which we ſtood in great need, brought, along with them a wooden Croſs they had cut down, and a bottle of delicious Water, they had met with at a Rock near the Sea ſhoar, of which the Maſter order'd two or three Tun to be fill'd.

The 4th. The Wind veering about, we eſcap'd narrowly being loſt among the Rocks, being forced by the Tide towards the Shoar; the Maſter ſtriving in vain to diſentangle the Ship from amongſt a whole ridge of thoſe Rocks, in the midſt of a furious Tempeſt cries, *All is loſt*; which made every body prepare to get a Shoar; But whilſt we expected every moment to be daſh'd to pieces, we with incredible Labour got clear beyond all our hopes, and doubling the Cape of *Ortogones*, reach't *Cathneſs* the ſame night, having ſail'd that day above 40 Leagues.

They come before *Archangel.* The 5th. *September* was the happy day, when we arrived before *Archangel*, but at the entrance where the *Dwina* diſembogues into the Sea, where we were again in great danger of running aground, by reaſon of the ſhallowneſs of the Sea, which is not above two or three foot deep here; ſo that we were forced to continue there till the return of the tide in the Evening, after which we arrived ſafely in three hours at *Archangel*, where we were joyfully received by our Companions.

The Ambaſſadors Voyage and Entry. The Ambaſſadors Voyage had proved much more Succeſsful than ours, for whereas we ſpent Seven Weeks, his Excellency made the whole Voyage betwixt *London* and *Archangel*, being 750 Lgs. in leſs than a Month, *viz.* from the 22d. of *July.* to the 19. *Aug.* Immediately after his arrival at the Barr of *Archangel*, having ſent word thereof to the Governor, by Mr. *Marvel* his Secretary, he was conducted to the Caſtle by ſix Gentlemen, through a Regiment of 600 Men, and the next Day ſixteen Boats, with a guard of 400 Men, under the Command of a Colonel, were ſent to bring his Excellency aſhore. The 23d. the Ambaſſador made his entry into *Archangel*; beſides the before mentioned ſixteen Boats, a very fine Barge was equipp'd, richly furniſh'd for the Ambaſſador, and ſeveral others adorn'd with Tapeſtry, came to meet and to conduct him into the Town; where he was Saluted by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Men of War, and Merchant Ships then in Harbour: At his Landing on the Wooden Bridge, he was received and Complemented by a certain Colonel, call'd *Bogdan*, who declar'd himſelf to be appointed his *Priſtaff* (ſo they call thoſe, who receive Foreign Ambaſſadors, and provide for their paſſages and other neceſſaries.) His Excellency having returned his Compliment, began to advance towards the Houſe prepar'd for his Entertainment, but to his great aſtoniſhment found the *Priſtaff* ready to take the right hand; upon which his Excellency told him, that he acknowledged to have received great Civilities hitherto, but that it was not in his Power to give that place to him, without derogating both from himſelf, and the Honour of his Majeſty of *Great Britain*, who had ſent him. *Bogdan* having no other Plea than the Governours orders, intreated his Excellency to ſtay a little, till he could ſend a meſſenger to the Governor, at whoſe return the *Priſtaff* took the left (he having continued bare headed all the while, though the Ambaſſador was covered) and ſo conducted his Excellency to his Lodgings; But before I proceed to give you a further account of our abode at *Archangel*, and our Journey to the City of *Muſco*, it will I ſuppoſe not be diſagreeable to give you a ſufficient account of this Country.

Deſcription of *Muſcovy.* *Muſcovy* is properly the name of one Province only, of which *Muſco* is the Capital City; but in general is taken for the whole *Ruſſian* Empire. This Country is part of the ancient *Sarmatia Europea*, call'd by ſome *Ruſſia* or *Roxolaria*, from whence the Inhabitants have got the name of *Ruſſians*. The *Muſcovite* Empire is without all contradiction the greateſt of all *Europe*; its whole extent both in *Aſia* and *Europe* being 30 Deg. or 600 Lgs. and its Latitude above 300 Lgs. To the North it is encompaſs'd by the Frozen Sea, beyond the *Artick* Circle, to the East by the great River *Oby*; On the South ſide it borders upon the *Crim* and *Precopian Tartars*, and on the Weſt upon *Livonia*, *Poland* and *Sweden*. It is a Champain Country, beautified with vaſt numbers of Trees, Lakes and Rivers, which render it infinitely Pleaſant. 1663.

Its Rivers. The River *Wolga*, call'd the *Rha* by ſome, and by the *Tartars*, *Edel*, is the fineſt in all *Europe*; it ariſes from the Lake *Tronoe*, in the Province of *Roſcovia*, and paſſing for ſome Lgs. farther into the Lake of *Wolga*, (from whence it has borrowed its name,) diſcharges it ſelf into the *Caſpian* Sea near *Aſtracan*, being the common boundary betwixt *Aſia* and *Europe* on that ſide. From its ſource to its mouth is a tract of 1000 Lgs. and being inlarged by moſt of the Rivers of *Muſcovy*, which fall into it, it is according to Mr. *Olearius* 4500 Geometrical Feet broad near *Nice*. The river *Boriſthenes*, the boundary betwixt *Muſcovy* and *Lithuania* takes its Source likewiſe in the Province of *Roſcovia*, and diſembogues in the *Euxin* Sea. The River *Dwina*, which in its paſſage is encreaſed by the Rivers *Conſtans*, *Jagel* and *Sucagna*, diſcharges it ſelf about 7 Lgs. from *Archangel* into the *White Sea*. There is another River of the ſame name, which riſing not many Lgs from the River *Nieper* or *Boriſthenes*, from a Lake that has given it its Name, Diſembogues into the *Baltique*, about 4 Lgs. from *Riga*. The vaſt River *Oby* takes its firſt ſpring from the Lake *Cataiſco*, and falls into the Frozen Sea; it is ſo broad at the mouth, that with a fair wind it can ſcarce be croſs'd in a Day. Beſides theſe, it has the *Muſca*, the *Occa*, and ſeveral other Rivers, which for the moſt part loſe themſelves in one or other of the great ones; Brooks, Pools and Lakes are in ſuch abundance here, that one can ſcarce Travel four or five Lgs. without meeting with ſome of them.

Climate. The Climate of *Muſcovy* is exceeding Cold, and conſequently ſubject to moſt violent and long Froſts; tho' about *Muſco* and the other Southern Provinces the Winter continues not above ſeven Months; whereas in the Northern and Eaſtern parts, eſpecially in the Province of *Petzora*, bordering upon the Frozen Sea, their Winter begins before *Auguſt*, and continues till *May*. The cold is ſo exceſſive even in the moſt Souther Provinces of *Muſcovy*, that nothing is more common than to meet with People, who have loſt their Ears, Lips, Hands or Noſes by the Froſt, and to ſee the Earth cleaved as much as in a great Drought; and to paſs over a River and Lake, which had not the leaſt appearance of Ice in it but 24 hours before. However theſe ſtrong Froſts exempt the *Muſcovites* from Epidemical Diſtempers, wherewith moſt of the hot Climates are frequently afflicted; for, though the Heats in the Summer are exceſſive here, yet are the ſame allay'd by the cool Nights; the worſt is, that the Whaſps and Flies engendred in the Pools, and Marſhes, make the Summer ſeaſon very troubleſome.

Its Product. *Muſcovy* abounds in Corn, Graſs, and all other things requiſite for the ſubſiſtence of Men and Beaſts; ſo that conſiderable quantities of the firſt, are expected from thence into *Holland*. In the Southern Provinces, their Seed time is in *April*, in the Northern parts not till *May*, notwithſtanding which their Harveſt is in *Auguſt*, the length of the Days (being eighteen Hours) and the cool dews at Night, contributing much to the growth and ſudden maturity of the Corn. Thus Beef, of which they have great plenty, is exceeding good, but there Mutton but indifferent. Of Dear, Wild Boars, Elks and Hares, they have great plenty, the laſt are Grey in the Summer, and turn White in the Winter. Of Pheaſants, Partridges, Wood-Pigeons, Geeſe, Quails, and other Pidgeons, they have ſuch ſtore that they neglect Thruſhes, Larks, Feldefairs, and ſuch like ſmall Birds, in which their Foreſts abound.

About *Archangel* you ſee certain Birds of Prey, white all over. Their Rivers, Lakes and Pools, furniſh them with incredible quantities of Fiſh; the *Wolga* affords them vaſt multitudes of Sturgeons, of whoſe eggs they make what they call *Ikari*, and the *Italians*, *Cavayar*, being a Paſt made of theſe Eggs with Salt; this they eat with Vinegar, Oil, Pepper and Onions, in the nature of a Sallad; the *Czar* Monopolizes this Commodity. Neither do they want Pulſe and Pot-herbs, but it is not many years ſince Sallads, Aſparagus, Sweet-Herbs and Flowers have been tranſplanted thither. Garlick and Onions are like their Daily Bread in Lent-times, and they abound in Melons, Cucumbers and Gourds; I have been credibly informed, that (like thoſe mentioned by *Olearius*) they move from the place where they firſt grow, dry up the graſs where they turn, and when ripe, the ſtock withers, the Velvet Down which

1663. which grows on the ridd, being afterwars prepared into a kind of Furr. Theſe Gourds are often met with neat *Samara*, betwixt the *Woga* and the *Don*. They have alſo tolerable good Apples, Plums and Cherries, but no Walnut Trees, or any other Fruit which requires a continued moderate heat for ripening. Straw-berries are here very plentiful, and a kind of Gooſe-berries, which grow cloſe upon the ground, and don't ripen till Autumn: neither do they want Mulberrries and Raſberries, and ſuch plenty of Honey, that beſides what Wax they conſume at home, above 20000 Quintals is Yearly exported. Of this Honey they make their Mead, call'd *Meoudy* by them, which is their ordinary Drink; they mix the raw Honey with warm water, which they ſtir frequently with a ſtick, and after it has ſtood twelve hours, they boil, ſcum and drain it; ſometimes they add Strawberries, Cherries, Mulberries and Rasberries; *Quaz* the ordinary drink of the common People is a kind of ſmall Mead, of no ungrateful taſte; beſides which, the better ſort make a kind of ſtrong Beer, which they preſerve in their Snow-Houſes; Hemp, Flax and Leather, they have in ſuch abundance, that great quantities of them are every Year exported by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*; Vines and Cloth they have none except what is very courſe, for the uſe of the Peaſants, the defect of which is ſufficiently ſupply'd by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who provide them with fine Cloaths, Wines and Brandies.

Their Houſes. As they have vaſt plenty of Wood, and great ſcarcity of Stone, ſo their Houſes are for the moſt part built of Wood. The greateſt miſchief is, that they are very ſubject to fire, which ſometimes conſumes whole Towns at once; but theſe damages are ſoon repaired in *Muſcovy*, where the Houſes are no more than many pieces of Firr pile'd upon one another, plaſtered up with ſome Moſs, covered with the barks of Trees, or Turf; and their furniture ſo mean, that beſides a few earthen diſhes and wooden Utenſils, they have nothing to loſe in theſe conflagrations; their windows are very ſmall, and the whole building low, thoſe of the peaſants having not above one or perhaps two rooms, where the whole Family is lodged amongſt the Cattle. The beſt conveniency in the winter, are their ſtows, but as the vulgar ſort make uſe of no Chimneys, the ſmoak paſſes out through the windows.

Their Garriſh. Their Foreſts being full of Beaſts of Prey, theſe furniſh them wherewithal to protect themſelves againſt the extremity of the winter ſeaſon. The skins of Otters, Martins, Foxes and Hares, are uſed for that purpoſe, not to mention thoſe of a higher value, ſuch as the black Foxes, Sables, Beavers, Ermines and graſs Squirrels. The skins of the white Bears are in great eſteem among the *Muſcovite* Nobility, who uſe them for an ornament of their ſledges, as they do the common Bears skins for conveniency; theſe laſt being in ſuch numbers here, that they make the High-ways very unſafe in the Winter, and ſometimes in troops fall upon a whole Village. The Wolves are no leſs troubleſome; they have alſo ſome white ones, but very rarely. There is a certain kind of a water-Rat in *Muſcovy*, the Skin of which is of ſo odoriferous a ſcent, that they lay it amongſt Cloaths.

Their way of Travelling. They travel with a great deal of conveniency in *Muſcovy*, eſpecially in the Winter, when their ſledges are drawn along with incredible ſwiftneſs in a flat Country; theſe ſledges are made of the bark of the Linden tree, fitted only for one Perſon, they line them with felt, to make them warm, and being open on the top, they cover and wrap themſelves in Furrs. The Carter manages the ſledge, who warms himſelf ſometimes by running, ſometimes by the help of his bottle of *Aquavitæ*, if they happen to overturn, the fall ſeldom proves dangerous, the ſledges being very low; though the Ladies ſledges, which are higher built are ſubject to more danger. This way of Travelling is both convenient and expeditious, becauſe a Man may travel 100 Lgs. in three Days and Nights, the eaſie motion of the ſledge rather favouring than diſturbing ones repoſe; in the Summer they travel both by Land and by Water; by Land you go either on Horſeback, or in Coaches and Waggons, the roads being very broad and well kept all over *Muſcovy*. By Water they make uſe of certain ſmall Boats, being only a trunk of a tree hollowed out; theſe being very light, they row in them, ſtanding over the Rivers and Lakes, but if they are not well trim'd, they are very apt to overturn; they alſo make certain floats of pieces of Firr join'd together, and uſe them upon the Rivers inſtead of Boats. The worſt inconveniency in their Travellings, is, that having no publick Fairs in the Country, they are obliged to carry their proviſions and other neceſſaries along with them; which is the reaſon that the Merchants trading to *Moſcow*, have their own houſes at *Vologda*, and therefore the moſt commodious way for ſtrangers is, to travel along with them; the prodigious ſwarms of Whaſps and Flies do alſo much interrupt the pleaſure, one otherwiſe might take in viewing ſo beautiful a Country: We will now proceed to give you a ſhort account of its Inhabitants. 1663.

Their Cuſtoms and Stature. The *Ruſſians* are the ſame the antients call'd *Roxalani* and deduce their Pedegree from the *Greeks* whom they pretend to imitate in many things; perhaps they may have ſo me Relation to the *Sibarites* who were accounted good Drinkers. Their Shape and Complexion approach ſomewhat to the *Germans*, and ſo do their Beards, a great Beard being conſidered here as a token of virility. Their *Boyars* (Noble men) alſo make great account of a large Belly, but they all cut their Hair cloſe to their Heads; except upon ſome extraordinary occaſions, as for inſtance, when a Perſon of note is faln into diſgrace with the *Czar*, he lets, (in imitation the of ancient *Greeks*) his Hair hang down over his ſhoulders, in token of his Affliction. Their Clergy wear always long Hair.

The *Muſcovite* Women are of a middle ſize and well featur'd, but they paint ſo much and ſo groſsly, that what other Women do for an encreaſe of their Beauty, theſe may be ſaid to uſe it as a concealment. The married Women put up their Hair under a Coiſe, but the Virgins wear them twiſted in two Treſſes upon their backs. They alſo imitate the *Greeks* in their habits, which is a Robe reaching down to the Feet, with ſtreight ſleeves of the length of the whole Robe, which they pleat together upon their Arms; theſe long ſleeves, ſerve in the Winter inſtead of Muffs, and ſometimes to hide their Cudgles, Stones and Daggers in, when they have a deſign of ſetting upon any body. They reach down to their Knuckles. Perſons of Quality have theſe Robes of Sattin, Damask or Cloth of Gold; indifferent Perſons of Cloth of a dark, Violet, Green or Red colour. The vulgar Sort wear thoſe made of a courſe home made Cloth. They are all lin'd with Furs in the Winter, according to every ones Ability, but thoſe lined with Sheep-skin, uſed by the Poor are very offenſive to the Noſtrils. Under theſe they wear *Juſte-au Corps* or a kind of cloſe Veſts reaching to the Calfs of their Legs, open before, with Gold or Silver buttons, and large Collars; and under theſe very ſtreight Breeches and Waſtcoats (call'd by them *Caftan*) which reach only to their knees, but have Collars ſomething higher than the Jeſuits Collars; and being very conſpicuous on the back of their Heads, they line them with the beſt Silks, and Embroider them with Pearls and precious Stones. The ſame they doe to their Shirts, the Neckbands, Wriſts and Breaſt of which are Embroidred with Silk, Gold or Pearls. Inſtead of Hats they make uſe of Bonnets of Cloth, with a little ſnip open before and behind, riſing up in the form of a Pyramid; Perſons of Quality wear them of Scarlet Cloth, or ſometimes of Velvet, richly embroidered on the ſides, and lined with the fineſt furs in the Winter; the Vulgar ſort are feign to be contented with a Felt or Cloth cap, lined with ordinary furrs; and theſe ſometimes miſerably patch'd on the outſide, Cloth being a dear Commodity in this Country. The *Muſcovite* Bonnets, having no brims to defend them againſt the Sun and Rains or Snow, are not near ſo convenient as thoſe uſed by the *Poles*, which having brims of paſt-board, covered on both ſides with Furs, are much more commodious, and therefore much more uſed by Foreigners in *Muſcovy*. Boots without ſtops are moſt generally worn by the *Ruſſians*, tho' the boors make uſe alſo of Shooes, made of the bark of Trees, thin wrought and twiſted like our baskets, but inſtead of Stockings they rap a piece of courſe Cloth or Furr about their Legs, and tie it with a pack thread. The main difference betwixt the Men and Womens habits is, that their Robes are ſomewhat larger, and the ſleeves hang ſo looſe to the Bodies, that they can let them hang or put them on as they pleaſe, their ſmock ſleeves are alſo near four Ells long, which are pleated cloſe together to their fingers ends. Their Bonnets are of a fantaſtical ſhape.

Habits.

Robes.

Their Language is a Dialect of the *Sclavonian* as well as the *Poliſh* tongue; for the reſt the *Muſcovite* is not unpleaſant nor very difficult to learn. Their characters they have borrowed from the *Greek*, this being the only affinity that is to be found betwixt theſe two Languages, tho, the *Muſcovites* have increaſed them to the number of forty in their Alphabet.

Language.

Their Humour and Diſpoſition. The *Muſcovites* are very Cunning and Ingenious in their dealing; and as to their conſtitution, they have this remarkable, that the moſt ſudden and violent extremities of Heat and Cold have not the leaſt ill effect upon

1663. upon them, nothing being more common here, than to ſee Children to come from their hot ſtows into the Snow, and to return without the leaſt prejudice to their health; and as beſides this, they are not much uſed to exceſs in their food, they would not be unfit for Wars; if they were brought under good Diſcipline, tho' on the other hand it muſt be confeſs'd that they are much addicted to idleneſs, that unleſs they are forced to it by abſolute neceſſity, they avoid Labour like a Plague. This leads them into another vice, which is Drunkenneſs, a thing ſo common among them, that neither Clergy nor Laity, neither Men nor Women, Young or Old, are exempt from it. The uſe of *Aquavitæ*, the Sovereign remedy againſt the extreme cold of this Climate, for the reinforcement of the Spirits, being uſed by them to ſuch an exceſs, as to turn to their deſtruction: Tobacco had not many Years ago the ſame effect upon them; for the poorer ſort uſed to ſpend all what they had in buying of it, appear'd with their Smoaky breaths before the Images of their Saints, and what was the worſt of all, frequently ſet their houſes on Fire, through their careleſneſs, which made the *Czar* prohibit the uſe of it. Notwithſtanding this it has been more uſed of late Years, than it was ſome time paſt, the Laws againſt the Importers and Sellers, being not ſo ſtrictly put in execution as formerly, and its uſe permitted to ſtrangers. The moſt ordinary concomitant vices of Drunkenneſs, being Laſciviouſneſs, and Quarrelſomneſs, theſe are very conſpicuous amongſt the *Muſcovites* of both Sexes; nothing is more common than to hear them raving in their quarrels, and upbraiding one another with Inceſt, Sodomy, and ſuch like other abominable Crimes; to be ſhort, they uſe ſo little civility among themſelves, that no wonder, if they are ſo ſparing of it to Strangers, unleſs it be upon a proſpect of gain, when they are very free with their Caps, and the vulgar ſort will beat the very ground with their Foreheads, a way of Saluting they conſtantly uſe to the Nobility and their Magiſtrates, which with the extraordinary conceit they have of the Power and Greatneſs of the *Czar*, makes them ſo ſupercilious to Strangers, that they ſcarce ever think them ſelves ſufficiently reſpected, ſo that it requires the greateſt prudence and circumſpection in the World for a foreign Miniſter to preſerve the Honour of his Maſter untainted among them.

Their manner of Living.

Tho' *Muſcovy* is one of the moſt Fertile and Plentiful Countries in the World, its Inhabitants being from their Infancy inured to a ſlaviſh hardſhip, live very meanly, no exceſs being to be ſeen here, but drinking. Perſons of Quality are furniſhed with the neceſſary ſubſiſtence for their Families, from their Farms; the common People living for the moſt part upon Peaſe, Turneps, Cabbages, Coleworts, and Cucumbers, freſh or pickled, beſides ſome Fiſh. Onions and Garlick are their daily Sallades; Fleſh is not much eaten here, the greateſt part of the Year being taken up with their Faſts, and their Butter and Cheeſe are very bad. Thoſe that can afford it, ſcarce ever ſit down or riſe up from Table without a good cup of *Aquavitæ*, into which they often put a conſiderable quantity of Pepper, to promote digeſtion. Their ordinary drink is *Mead* and *Quaz*; they have a conſtant cuſtom of ſleeping after Dinner, when the Tradeſmen ſhut up their Shops, and Perſons of Quality will ſpeak with no body, who indeed are the only perſons that uſe Beds or Quilts, the reſt contenting themſelves to lie upon benches of Firr, near the Stoves in the Winter, and in the Summer upon the ground. The Peaſants uſe thin chips of Firr inſtead of Candles, which give a good light, but are ſoon conſumed. One of the moſt commendable cuſtoms among the *Muſcovites* is, that the Women pay a great deference to their Husbands, and live extremely retired; tho' otherwiſe they are uſed with more ſeverity than is conſiſtent with good nature, the *Muſcovites* looking upon them no otherwiſe than neceſſary evils, and treating them little better than Slaves; this reſervedneſs is more ſtrictly obſerved among the Virgins of noble deſcents, who never appear unveil'd, and are frequently married before the Bridegroom has ſeen their Faces; ſo that it often happens that inſtead of a beautiful *Rachel*, he finds himſelf in the arms of a blear-ey'd *Leah*.

Their Baths.

Their Baths are cloſe places, with furnaces, which being heated exceedingly, they throw frequently water upon them, for the excitation of vapours; the benches which are round the room, are above one another, upon which they lay themſelves naked at length, and after they have ſwet ſufficiently, they are well waſhed with warm water, and rubb'd with herbs; and ſo conclude the matter with a good draught of *Aquavitæ*; this being the univerſal remedy of the *Muſcovites* for the preſervation of their Health, there is ſcarce a Town ſo inconſiderable, but what is furniſh'd with ſome of theſe Baths, both private and publick; beſides that, they uſe them by way of Purification for new married People after their firſt cohabiting together. 1663.

Their recreations and exercises.

At their Feſtivals they divert themſelves with cudgel playing and wreſtling, which they perform without quarrelling, tho they lay on one another very often in good earneſt; in the Winter they ſlide upon the Ice with Scates, made of wood, with a long piece of poliſhed Iron at the bottom, which is very ſtrait and turns up at the toes. They alſo divert themſelves by ſwinging in certain Engines, made like a double gallows, in which are faſtned four Seats at an equal diſtance, which by a continual counterpoize goes up and down, and whilſt ſome ſwing up high in the air, the others deſcend near the ground: The Women ſwing with ropes, or elſe put a plank croſs a tree or block of a tree, and ſo toſs one another up and down: Their Muſick ſeldom goes beyond a Bag-pipe, unto which they ſing ſome wretched rune or other; their Trumpets and Kettle-Drums have more noiſe than harmony in them, but their Hautboys uſed by their Infantry, make indifferent good Muſick. Their Dancing is ſo ridiculous, that even the Bears exceed them in this kind; their poſtures being altogether brutiſh, and nothing but certain laſcivious diſtortions with their Hands, Shoulders and back parts, ſo that they appear ſcarce to move one ſtep from their place. We will now proceed to their policy.

Their Policy.

The Government of *Muſcovy*, is not only Monarchical, but alſo Abſolute; the *Czar* being ſole Lord and Maſter over the Lives and Eſtates of his Subjects, ſuch as in Ancient times were the *Aſſyrian*, *Median*, and *Perſian* Monarchs, and at this day the Gran Signior in his Dominions.

The greatneſs of the *Czar*.

The *Czar* being as I told you ſole Lord of this vaſt Empire, gives what Laws he pleaſes, diſpoſes of all Governments, and other Offices, levies Taxes, and in ſhort, Acts as he thinks moſt convenient; from hence it is that he is ſtiled Great Lord, and *Czar*, *i. e.* King or Emperour, and *Velika Knez*, *i. e.* Great Duke. His arms are a double headed Eagle, with three Crowns, ſignifying that of *Muſcovy*, *Caſan* and *Aſtracan* two *Tartarian* Kingdoms. In his Eſchutcheon is alſo repreſented a Cavalier in combat with a Dragon, which is intended either for *Michael* the Archangel, or St. *George*. His revenues are proportionable to his Power; for not to mention his demeſns, which are very conſiderable, he has a vaſt income from the Licenſing of publick Houſes, and five *per Cent* for all Merchandices imported or exported, beſides the vaſt Sums he receives from his Factors, who manage the Caviar and Furr trade in his behalf. But tho his revenues be very great, the ſplendor of his Court, but more eſpecially the vaſt Armies he is forced to keep on foot, and the great Summs he beſtows upon drawing Foreigners into his Service, to match his potent Neighbours, the *Swedes*, *Poles*, and *Crim Tartars*, commonly drain his Coffers to that degree, that upon the commencement of War, he is oblig'd to have freſh recourſe to his Subjects purſes, and to make them ſenſible of the power he has over their Eſtates.

The obedience of his Subjects.

The vaſt extent of his Dominions, and the indiſputable abſoluteneſs he is poſſeſs'd of, together with the ſplendor of his Court, has made ſuch deep impreſſions upon his Subjects, that they glory in their chains, and willingly confeſs themſelves his moſt abject Slaves; to ſhew which, they would look upon it as an impardonable Crime, if a Petitioner ſhould in the *Czar's* preſence name himſelf otherwiſe than with a Diminutive, as for inſtance, *I little* Peter, *the humbleſt of all your Vaſſals, do implore*; and nothing is more common than to hear them ſay, *I have or ſhall have the honour of ſeeing the bright eyes of his Czariſh Majeſty*. This profound reverence as it is inprinted in them from their Infancy, and ſo tranſmitted from Father to Son, ſo it is maintain'd and cultivated by three general Maxims of State.

By what Maxims maintain'd.

The firſt is, that no body under pain of Death, dares to travel into Foreign Countries, unleſs the *Czar's* Factors and Ambaſſadors; for fear that having once taſted the moſt delicious Fruits of Liberty in a Foreign Country, they ſhould not reliſh Slavery after their return home. The natural genius of the *Ruſſians*, fitted as it were for ſlavery, and the vaſt extent of their Country, affords them ſufficient comfort for this reſtraint, which would ſeem inſupportable to others; beſides that it is in ſome meaſure allay'd by the Liberty they have of Converſing and Trafficking with Foreigners in their own Country, which perhaps in time may prove a means to correct in ſome meaſure their Barbarity. And this maxim is ſo ſtrictly obſerved here, that it even extends

1663. extends to all Foreigners, who either have taken ſervice under the *Czar*, or embraced the *Muſcovite* Religion, they being confin'd within the limits of *Muſcovy*. From hence it is eaſie to imagine that they are no great Sea men, few of them except ſome Fiſher-men having the liberty to ſtir beyond the Sea ſhoar.

The ſecond Maxim. The ſecond Maxim made uſe of is, that the *Czar* always Marries one of his Subjects; contrary to what is practiſed by the Princes of *Europe*, who look upon it as a debaſement of their Grandeur; but the *Czars* of *Muſcovy* have always look'd upon this as one of their chief Maxims of State, for fear, that a Foreign Princeſs ſhould introduce ſuch cuſtoms, as might in time prove deſtructive to their abſolute power. Thus the preſent *Czar* (being then but 17 Years of Age) Married 1647. on Shrove Sunday the Eldeſt Daughter of one *Ilia Danilowitz Miloſlauski*, a Perſon, who had but little to boaſt of at that time, except the Beauty of his Daughter.

The third. The third Maxim is their Ignorance, which is ſuch that all their Learning ſcarce ever extends beyond Reading and Writing. It being ſufficiently proved by experience, that Pride and Ambition are generally the attendants of knowledge; the *Czars* of *Muſcovy* have always improved the ignorance of their Subjects, to the preſervation of their blind obedience to their Sovereigns; ſo that as they quietly enjoy, and reſt ſatisfied in the Principles tranſmitted to them by their Anceſtors, they don't diſturb themſelves with ſuch Notions as they ſuppoſe to be above their reach, the greatneſs and ſhape of the Earth, the dimenſions of the Moon, and ſuch like matters are things that never puzzle their Brains; they think it ſufficient for them to know the uſe of things by experience, and to return thanks to the Great Author of them, according to their capacity. They uſe rolls of Paper, like the *Jews* formerly, inſtead of our Books; they glue the leaves together by the ends, with a certain glue they have out of *Siberia*; which they only moiſten with the ends of their Tongues, and by thus joining many leaves, make Rolls of 7 or 8 Fathoms in length.

The adminiſtration of the Government. The great Council of State of the *Muſcovite* Empire, conſiſts of thirty Noblemen or *Boyars*, theſe muſt be always reſident at *Moſcow*; next to them come the *Ockolnitz* (Privy Councellors) the *Dumeny Duorainy* (Privy Councellors of the ſecond Rank) the *Sin Boyarsky*, the Chancellors, and two Secretaries of State. The whole management of the publick Affairs is divided into ſix Claſſes or Chambers; the firſt for Foreign Affairs; the ſecond for Military; the third for the Exchequer and the *Czar*'s Treaſury; the fourth for the *Czar*'s Factors, and the Commiſſioners for Licenſing the Publick Houſes; the fifth for Civil Cauſes; the ſixth for Criminals. The *Czar* changes the Governours of his Provinces every three years, and holds commonly Council in the night. Their Law-ſuits are ſoon diſpatch'd here, ſo that the Lawyers are in as little requeſt in *Muſcovy*, as the Philoſophers.

Their puniſhments. Beſides ſeveral other Puniſhments, they have one call'd *Batteski*, not unlike that mentioned in the 25 chap. of *Deut.* they lay them flat upon the Belly, after they have ſtrip'd them to the Shift, and two Men being placed on each ſide, they give the condemned Perſon 16, 20, or 30. blows more or leſs with a Cudgel, according to the orders of the Judge; this is done for Pelfring, Rioting, or ſuch like Crimes; and after he has ſuffered Puniſhment he riſes and makes a low reverence to the Judge: This kind of Puniſhment is alſo much inflicted upon the Slaves in Noblemens Families. They alſo puniſh certain miſdemeanors by the Whip, and that by the hands of the Executioner; it is made of Elk skin, cut in ſeveral thongs, which cuts the skin ſo ſeverely, that the blood frequently follows the Firſt laſh: thoſe condemn'd to die, have commonly their Heads cut off; and confeſſions they generally extort by ſevere Strapado's. They have but one kind of Money, and that of Silver, they call it *Copeca*, 50 of which make a Crown; they are of an oval Figure, and ſo ſmall that the value of two Crowns ſcarce makes up the bulk of four pence in *French* deniers; *Muſcofke* is the fourth part of a *Copeca*, and *Polaske* the half; an *Alim* is three pence, a *Grifna* ten, and a *Rouble* a Hundred, but theſe are not to be found in one piece: It is further to be obſerved that the *Muſcovites* begin the Day with the Riſing of the Sun, and end it at Setting; and conſequently their Nights when the Sun ſets, and their end when it riſes. They alſo begin their Year the 1ſt. *Sept.* they knowing of no other Epact than from the Creation of the World, which they believe to have been in Autumn; ſo that with the *Greeks* they account 5508 Years from the Creation unto our Saviours Nativity, whereas the Weſtern Churches allow no more than 3969 years; from whence it is evident that 1663. when we first came into *Muſcovy*, their computation from the Creation was 7175. years, whereas we reckened no more than 5686. They have great proceſſions every firſt day of the Year. 1663.

Their Religion. The *Muſcovites* adhere to the Faith and Rites of the *Greek* Church, the Invocation of Saints being one of the principal Parts of their Devotion; there is no Family ſo inconſiderable, but what has the Picture of ſome Saint or other hanging againſt the Wall of the Chamber, with a ſmall Wax Candle before it, which they light as often as they perform their Devotion; their Churches are likewiſe full of theſe flat painted Images, for they will not ſuffer any emboſt; the Pictures of the Virgin *Mary*, or of their Patron, St. *Nicholas*, are frequently to be ſeen over their Church Porches, and Gates of their Cities, and even in the Market-places; and ſcarce any body paſſes by them without making ſeveral bows before them, and croſſing themſelves with three fingers on the right Hand, ſpeaking out aloud at the ſame time: *Goſpodi Pomilui*, i. e. *Lord God have Mercy on me*; the ſame veneration they pay to all Croſſes they meet in their way, this being the chief part of Devotion the Parents enjoin their Children. The firſt thing a *Muſcovite* does after he comes into a Houſe, is, to pay his reverence to the Houſe Saint; when they buy any of theſe Images, they will not own they bought them, but ſay they exchang'd them for Silver; and when they are Old, they either bury them under Ground, or throw them into the River; to be ſhort, they ſcarce ever will enter upon any buſineſs without firſt making the Sign of the Croſs. On their Sunday and Holidays they go thrice to Church, *viz.* Morning, Noon and Evening; they perform Divine Service ſtanding and uncovered, neither have their Churches any Seats. The Women, being conſider'd amongſt them as impure, commonly ſtand only in the Porch, and ſo do thoſe Men who pretend to more Devotion than the reſt. Any one that has enjoy'd his Wife muſt not enter the Church that Day, before he has waſh'd and Shifted himſelf. Preaching is a thing unknown among them; the whole ſervice is perform'd by reading of certain Pſalms, or Chapters in the Bible, ſometimes the Prieſt adds *Athanaſius* his Creed, or Sings certain Hymns, and St. *Chryſoſtom*'s homily. All this they perform ſtanding, except when they ſay the *Goſpodi*, then they beat their Foreheads to the Ground. Some will perform their ordinary Labour on Sundays: beſides which they celebrate fifteen Feſtivals, to wit, the Nativities of the Virgin Mary on the 8th of *Sept.* the Exaltation of the Croſs the 14th. the Oblation of the Virgin *Mary* 21. *Nov.* the Nativity of our Saviour the 25. *Decemb.* Epiphany 6. *Jan.* Candlemas day 2d. *Feb.* the Annunciation of the Virgin *Mary*, 25. *March.* Palm Sunday, Eaſter-day, Aſcention day, Whitſunday, the Feaſt of the Trinity next day after the Pentecoſt; All Saints day, the Sunday after Manifeſtation of the Glory of Chriſt upon the Mountain, being 6. *Aug.* and the Aſcenſion of the Virgin 15. *Aug.* Beſides their ordinary Faſt days, which are *Wednesdays*, *Fridays*, and the Eves before Holy days; they have four Lents in the Year; the longeſt being the ſame with ours of ſeven weeks. The ſecond begins the Sunday after Pentecoſt, and holds to St. *Peters* day. The third begins the 1 *Aug.* and continues till the 16. and the fourth from 12. *Nov.* till Chriſtmas day. Theſe Lents they keep with ſuch Auſterity and Strictneſs, that even the uſe of Butter, Milk and Eggs is forbid them, except in the firſt week of their great Lent, which being to them like our Carnavals, they take full Liberty to commit all manner of Debaucheries, except that they abſtain from Fleſh. During this time they commit ſuch extravagancies with Drunkenneſs and other Enormities, that it is not ſafe for any ſober Perſon to appear in the Streets at Night. to make amends for theſe Inſolencies, they live upon Puſſe and Herbs, and eſpecially upon Garlick and Onions all the time after, unleſs it be Sundays, when they Eat Fiſh, and the moſt ſtrict of them, ſcarce drinks any thing but *Quaz*. During their Lents the Husband is not to converſe with his Wife, under pain of Excommunication for a whole Year; when they make their Confeſſions, they ſtand upright before their Images; their penances which the Prieſt enjoins them before abſolution, are commonly to abſtain from *Aquavitæ*, and the pleaſures of Matrimony, to ſay the *Goſpodi* ſo many times with the uſual reverences, to ſtand in the Church porch during Divine Service, but above all to waſh themſelves frequently with the Holy Water, which being conſecrated on the Epiphany, is part of the perquiſites belonging to the Clergy. They generally communicate on Faſt-days, and at Noon ſervice, becauſe they are forbidden the uſe of all manner of Fleſh on that day.

1663. They receive it in both kinds, *viz.* with Leavened Bread, and Wine mingled with Water, which repreſent (according to the Council of *Conſtantinople*) the Waterthat came forth with the Blood from our Saviours ſide; the Children only under 7 Years of Age receiving it in one kind, becauſe before that Age they ſay, they don't commit any Mortal ſins. Some ſleep as ſoon as they have Communicated, to prevent any occaſion of ſinning.

A Prieſt that Touches a dead carcaſe, nay if he be but preſent at a Funeral he is defiled, and cannot adminiſter the Sacrament that day. *Olearius* ſays they believe Tranſubſtantiation, but there are three principal Reaſons, which perſwade me to the contrary; (1) Becauſe in their diſcourſes they declare it frequently abſurd, and ridiculous, nor ever have recourſe like the *Roman* Catholicks, to Gods Omnipotency. (2) They don't adore or pay any peculiar Reſpect to the Hoſt, which in a Religion ſo full of Superſtition as theirs, muſt certainly be ſuppoſed, if they did believe a real Tranſubſtantiation. (3) Becauſe the *Greeks* from whom they have drawn the pattern of their Religion, never received this point of Tranſubſtantiation. They have many proceſſions appointed for certain days in the year, among which, that on Palm Sunday Repreſenting our Saviours Entry into *Jeruſalem* is the moſt Celebrated of all. Neither doe they want their Saints. One *Sergè* in the Convent of *Troitza* wrought great Miracles, if you will believe them, for tho' he dyed 1563. they tell you that his whole Subſtance is not in the leaſt altered ſince his death.

The *Czar* goes twice a Year in Pilgrimage to this Monaſtery, and within a League of it alights from his Horſe and walks the reſt of the way on foot. The uſe of Fleſh is forbidden in their Convents, nor is any other Drink allowed but *Quaz*, however when the Religious can get any thing that is good without their Convents, they may Eat and Drink what they pleaſe. The *Muſcovites* are at Liberty to leave their Wives and Children, provided they go into a Convent, and nothing is more frequent than to ſend their Wives, if they be Barrent, into a Nunnery, the *Czars* having a peculiar Prerogative of ſending theirs thither, if they have none but daughters. There is another privilege belonging to the Men, to wit, that they may ſend their Wives into a Nunnery, and Marry another within ſix weeks, if they can prove Fornication upon them; for they call nothing Adultery but when a man Marries anothers Wife. Tho' they don't allow a Purgatory, yet do they aſſign two ſeparate places to the Souls, till the day of Judgment; One for the Bleſſed, where they enjoy the Company of Angels and all ſorts of pleaſures, the other for the Wicked, in a diſmal Valley, in the Company of the Devils. And as they are of Opinion that the Souls of the Wicked be call'd back and Reprieved from the very brink of Hell, their Prieſts uſe incenſes and Prayers over their Sepulchres every Morning and Evening for 40 days ſucceſſively, this being the Term appointed for their Ceremonies. Theſe Ceremonies they Repeat yearly on the Eve of the Pentecoſt; Their Hierarchy conſiſts of a Patriarch, who being choſen by the *Czar*, is the ſupream judge of all Religious Affairs, and diſpoſes of all Eccleſiaſtical matters. His Reſidence is within the Walls of the great Dukes Caſtle of *Muſcow*. The next in Rank are ſeveral Metropolitans and Biſhops: The inferiour Clergy is Compoſed of *Proto-Popes* and *Popes* or ſimple Prieſts.

Each of theſe is obliged to Marry before he can be admitted into holy Orders, but if his Wife dies, he is not to Marry a ſecond time; for ſay they, St. *Paul* will have a *Biſhop to be the Husband but of one Wife*; for which Reaſon alſo a Prieſt that is a Widower, cannot Adminiſter the Sacrament, nor Marry, having only the liberty to give his aſſiſtance at Morning and Evening Service. But if he is not pleaſed with his condition, he may lay aſide his Cap and Veſt, which he is Inveſted with at his Conſecration, and turn Lay-man; 1 Tim. 3.

The Ambaſſadors ſtay at *Archangel*.

But it is time we return to *Archangel*. This Town, (ſo call'd from St. *Michael* the *Archangel*) is ſituated on the left ſide of the River *Dwina*, as you enter it from the Sea. It was not extraordinary large at that time, but very populous, by Reaſon of the great concourſe of Foreign Merchants, that reſort hither; this being the place where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants carry their Cloth, Velvets, Damasks, Spices, Tin, Lead, Wines and ſtrong Waters, tho' the *French* and *Rheniſh* Wines are not Imported in any conſiderable quantity here, as being too weak for a *Ruſſian* ſtomach; In lieu of theſe they Export Corn, Caveares, Furrs, Hemp, Ruſſia Leather and Wax. The firſt Trade was Eſtabliſh'd here by the *Engliſh* above 100 years ſince, to wit under K. *Edward* VI. who having ſet out a Fleet for the diſcovery of ſome unknown Countries, at laſt were forced into this Port; and as a recompence of their undertaking had the privilege of Commerce without any impoſt granted them, by the then Great Duke of *Muſcovy Jean Baſilowitz*. 1663.

Immediately after our Arrival at *Archangel*, his Excellency began to make a ſtrict Enquiry into the occaſion of our delay and Mr. *Watſon*'s leaving our Company; The Maſter of our Veſſel laying hold of this opportunity of Mr. *Watſon*'s abſence, would fain have laid the fault upon him, had not both we and the Seamen ſufficiently convinced his Excellency: that, if, purſuant to Mr. *Watſon*'s and our Requeſt he had put into a Harbour of *Norway*, we might have come perhaps two or three Weeks ſooner. Whilſt the Ambaſſador ſtay'd at *Archangel*, we met with very good Entertainment there, a thing very welcome to us, after ſo hard a Voyage; For, we were furniſhed with all ſorts of Proviſions in ſuch plenty, that we were not able to conſume it. The Ambaſſadors Table was always provided after the *French* and *Engliſh* way by his own Cooks, and Bakers, but the reſt were fed after the *Muſcovite* faſhion; our drink was Beer, Mead, Aquavitæ, *Spaniſh* and ſeveral other ſorts of Wines. We imputed this good uſage in a great Meaſure, to the advantageous account given by the *Czars* Ambaſſadors in their Return home thro' *Archangel* about two Months before, of the generous reception they had met with in *London* from his *Britannick* Majeſty, which was look'd upon as a good Omen for the future, but found our ſelves not a little miſtaken in our hopes. Before his Excellency left *Archangel* three *Samojedes* were brought to him, who Entertain'd him with ſeveral things Relating to their Country, which being under the *Czar's* juriſdiction, the *Greek* Religion has been introduced here. The Samoredes.

They live under the *Frozen Zone*, near the Ancient *Scythia*, and the *Ryphæan* or *Hyperborean* Mountains, bordering upon the Province of *Petzora*. The word *Samojedes*, which implies as much as men Eaters, ſhews them to have been of the kind of the *Anthropophagi*; *Sam* ſignifying as much as ones ſelf, and *Jede* to Eat; becauſe they uſed to mix the dead Bodies of their Friends with their Veniſon. They live in perpetual darkneſs for five or ſix Months in the Year, when they ſupply the defect of Light by their Lamps, which are fed with Oil made of Fiſh. Their Huts are above half under Ground, and during the Winter they converſe by means of Trenches under Ground, and at the approach of the the Summer, creep out at the Top of their Chimney's. Their Food is Veniſon, hung and dried Fiſh, without either Salt or Bread.

Their Garments are Veſts of Rein-Deer or Buck-skins reaching down half way their Legs, they have no other opening but on the top and bottom, for they cover their heads with them as the *Capuchins* doe, tho' their Cap is made of the ſhape of the head of a Man. They have a kind of Muffs faſtned to the end of their ſleeves, ſo that they can put them on, or let them hang, as they think fit; their Boots are with the Fur on the outſide, under theſe Veſts they wear Shirts made of the Skins of young Rein-deer, which are ſofter than Linen, and under theſe they have drawers. Their Bonnets, which are commonly of Cloth, are ſo large that they hang round about their Shoulders; they are generally Lined with Fur. They are low of ſtature, with flat and broad Faces, and long Hair, not unlike the *Tartars*. In our Voyage from *Archangel* to the *Vologda* we were provided with 6 Barges or Lighters for the Train and Baggage, one of which was made uſe of as a Kitchin, another for his Excellency's Coach horſes. Beſides which the *Priſtaf* had one for his and his Wifes own uſe; we having by this time been made ſufficiently ſenſible of the Effects of this cold Climate, every one provided himſelf with Gowns lined with Furs, of Martins, Sables, Bever, Fox or Squirrel; moſt of our Gentlemen alſo bought themſelves *Poliſh* Caps, and ſome of the Caps of the *Samojedes*, with whole ſuits ready made, which ſtood them not in above Ten Shillings a piece. The Governour was ſo generous, as to preſent many of his Excellency's Domeſticks with Sheep-skins, dreſt after the *Muſcovite* faſhion, and ſome Buck-skins for quilts.

Ambaſſadors Voyage to *Vologda* upon the *Dwina* and *Suchona*.

On *Saturday* 12 *Sep.* the Ambaſſador departed from *Archangel* with his whole Train, and Arrived the next day at *Colmogro*, and the 19th. to *Arſinoa*, 250 Verſts from *Archangel*, four of which make a League. The 22 we went from *Arſinoa* to *Tagriſh*, where we Arrived the 27 being 130 long Verſts, and from thence to *Uſtiga* in five days 150 Verſts. The 3 of *October* we continued our Voyage and Arrive the 12th at *Tetma*, 250 Verſts from *Uſtiga*.

1663. *Uſtiga.* From this place we travell'd in three days to *Chuſca* 140 Verſts, and on Saturday the 17th. *Octob.* arrived at *Vologda*, 90 Verſts from *Chuſca*, ſo that we travell'd 250 Lgs. in five weeks time. During this whole Voyage which was againſt the current of the River, we made no uſe of Horſes, but only of Men, to hale our Barges, in which above 300 were employed at a time; notwithſtanding which, we were ſometimes forc'd, when the Current was too ſtrong againſt us, to employ the Men belonging to two Boats, for the drawing up of one. For the better diſpatch, the Ambaſſador deſired the *Priſtaff*, to go before us with his Bark in order to provide us freſh Watermen, and what Proviſions we might ſtand in need of; but our Boats-men were ſo indifferently skill'd, that they ran us ſeveral times a ground on the Rocks, which loſt us much time, and often put us into no ſmall conſternation: In the night time theſe Watermen would commonly make vaſt Wood Fires on the bank ſide, and lye round about them to ſleep. We were very plentifully.. provided with all manner of eatables and drink; the Bark which ſerved for our Kitchin, lay cloſe to the Ambaſſadors, from whence they carried the diſhes to his Table, the other Barge was uſed to fetch their Proviſions from thence in the ſmall Boats. Our chiefeſt diverſion during this long Voyage, was walking, the favourableneſs of the Weather, together with the pleaſantneſs of the Foreſts and green Meadows, making us forget the fatigues we underwent; ſometimes we diverted our ſelves with ſhooting of wild Ducks and Pidgeons, of which there is great plenty in *Muſcovy*. There was ſcarce any Town we paſt through which deſerved a particular deſcription; *Uſtiga* the Capital of a Province of the ſame Name, being a place built of Wood, and paved with Piles of Firr; the only thing worth our obſervation here was, that we had the liberty to come within their Churches, a thing not eaſily permitted to ſtrangers in *Muſcovy*, becauſe they look upon them as defiled, if People of another Religion come within them. Betwixt this place and *Archangel* we ſaw ſeveral Rocks of white Marble, near the River ſide, we could ſcarce paſs through a Village, but the Prieſt would come with a preſent of Fiſh, Gooſberries, Hens or Eggs, in hopes of a reward from the Ambaſſador, or at leaſt a good draught of *Aquavitæ*, a thing much covered by them. The next day after our departure from *Archangel*, the *Priſtaff* conducted his Wife, who was very handſome, and richly clad with Pearls and Jewels, into the Ambaſſadors Bark, his Excellency received her with a Salute, and beſides many other civilities, was not forgetful to entertain her with a Cup of *Aquavitæ* before Dinner; it was not long after, before ſhe left her Husband at *Uſtiga*. As we came to *Arſinoa*, being in hopes to have met with Boatsmen, which were according to the Governour of *Archangel*'s orders to be provided for us here, by the Governour of this place, the ſame was ſo far from purſuing his orders, that he flatly told us he was reſolved not to trouble himſelf about it, ſo that his Excellency was forced to hire Watermen at his own Charge, to carry us to *Tygriſh*. Near this place we ſaw a Wolf upon the bank of the River, we ſent ſome Dogs after him, but he ſoon eſcaped out of ſight.

The 26th. *Sept.* Fifteen of our Boats-men getting into a ſmall Boat, were by the Current forced againſt one of the Barks with ſuch violence, that the Boat overturn'd, ſeven of the fifteen were drowned, the reſt ſaving themſelves by ſwimming. Not long after another Boats-man fell over board into the River, and narrowly eſcap'd drowning; much about the ſame time we received the news, that *Archangel* was almoſt deſtroy'd by Fire, ſince our departure. The Governor of *Uſtiga* made us ſufficient amends for the incivilities of the Governor of *Arſinoa*, for, he ſent one of his Gentlemen to tender us all the good offices that were in his Power, and above all the reſt ſent us two very honeſt Officers, to provide us with all neceſſaries, inſtead of the *Priſtaff Bogdan* lately deceas'd; in return of his civilities, his Excellency preſented him with three dozen of Canary and *French* Wine. After a ſtay of two days here, we continued our Voyage, and becauſe theſe Barks cannot uſe their Sails betwixt *Uſtiga* and *Vologda*, upon the River *Sucagna*, (which hard by falls into the River *Dwina*) by reaſon of the many Rocks betwixt *Uſtiga* and *Tetma*, we cut our Sail-Maſts to lighten our Veſſels, for which reaſon alſo 300 Pigs of Lead, deſign'd among other things as a Preſent to the *Czar*, were left here, the Ambaſſadors Veſſel notwithſtanding it was rowed up the River by 70 Men, going the ſloweſt of all, as being more bulky and heavier freighted than the reſt; the lead was afterwards brought to us, during our ſtay at *Vologda*. By this time the Winter Seaſon beginning to come on a pace, our Furrs, Robes and *Samojeda* dreſſes began to ſtand us in good ſtead, the Froſts now encreaſing daily, ſo that at our parting from *Chuſca*, thoſe in the firſt Ship were forced to break through the Ice for 20 Lgs. to *Vologda*. Immediately after our arrival at *Tetma*, the Governour of the place, a Perſon of a goodly aſpect like a *Boyar*, and pleaſant converſation, came to wait upon the Ambaſſador in a very ſplendid Habit, offering all the good Services he was able to doe; in requital of which his Excellency ſent him a preſent of three Ells of Scarlet Cloth by Mr. *Taylor*, unto whom he preſented a pair of Sables worth four Pound, and ſhewing a particular Inclination to recreate himſelf aboard our Veſſel, Mr. *Taylor* in his Excellencies abſence laid the Plot with ſome other Gentlemen, to ſend the Governor well laden with ſtrong Liquors home to the Town; accordingly the Cup went briskly round, but the Governor, who was an old experienc'd Soldier of the Bottle, came of Victorious in this Engagement. 1663.

Vologda is the Capital City of a Province bearing the ſame Name; being a place very conſiderable for its bigneſs, and traffick as well as its ſtrength, its walls being of Stone. It is ſituate upon the right ſide of the ſame River with *Uſtiga*, *Colmogo* and *Tetma*. We were lodged in the Suburbs, near the River ſide, but the Buildings being not very large here, we were diſperſed in ſix or ſeven Houſes. At our firſt coming here, we did not intend to ſtay above a Month till the Grounds ſhould be made paſſible by the Froſt and Snow, but the weather proving very moiſt and changeable, we were detained three whole Months here, to our great diſſatisfaction, being very impatient to come to *Muſco*. The extremity of the cold obliged us to have recourſe to the *Muſcovite* Stoves, which however we uſed with more moderation, being not able to endure them ſo hot, as they doe; at firſt we were entertained with plenty enough, but as ſoon as the two new *Priſtaffs*, *Davidof*, and *Neſtrof*, arrived in the Month of *December*, every thing look'd with a quite different face. This *Neſtrof* being a Perſon ſo arrogant in his whole behaviour, that he took a pride in appearing uncivil, accoſted his Excellency at the firſt interview with this Complement; *The moſt Serene, and Puiſſant Great Lord, Czar* and *Grand Duke of*, &c. (enumerating all his Titles) *is very joyful to underſtand, that you, the Great Ambaſſador of his Majeſty of Great Britain are ſo happily arriv'd here, and has commanded that we and your excellency go together to* Muſco. By which laſt words he not only would have made his Excellency ſubject to the *Czar*'s commands, but alſo preferred himſelf and his Company before him; and he thought he had done a great piece of Courteſie to us all, when he ſaid afterwards; *We muſt go in Company together to Muſco.* No ſooner, as I told you, was he arriv'd at *Vologda*, but he fetrenched our Table to that degree, that it being one of their Lents then, we could ſcarce get Tallow or Wax Candles for our uſe, ſo that from the greateſt plenty, we were on a ſudden reduced to want even what was neceſſary for us. In the mean while we comforted our ſelves with the daily hopes of going to *Muſco*, where we expected much better Entertainment, yet did not neglect to frequent Prayers twice a day in our Chappel, and Sermon every Sunday. Our diverſions were Muſick, Dancing, and ſuch like recreations, but Hunting was the chiefeſt. His Excellency was conſtantly attended at his Table with a ſet of Violins and Trumpets, which being managed by one of the beſt Muſick-Maſters of *England*, the *Muſcovites* uſed to crowd our Houſe every day about Dinner time, to participate of this agreeable diverſion; we alſo began to be accuſtomed to the uſe of their Baths; and the 5th. of *Nov.* was celebrated amongſt us with Fire Works, a Stately Entertainment, and a Ball; this was our way of Living during our ſtay at *Vologda*. One particular obſervation I made here about the *Muſcovites*, that tho' *Tobacco* be ſeverely forbidden, they are ſo fond of it, that the Ambaſſadors Servants uſed to ſell great quantities of indifferent Tobacco at the rate of fifteen Shillings *per* Pound, which coſt them ſcarce two pence in *London*; they being ſo bewitch'd to the uſe of this Weed, that they will ſell their Shirts to purchaſe it. They uſe a Cows-horn inſtead of our Pipes, which having a whole in the middle, they put a wooden Veſſel in it, indifferently wide and deep, when they have fill'd it with *Tobacco*, they put water into the horn, through which they draw the Smoak, with ſo much eagerneſs, that they make not above two ſucks of a Pipe, which ſo Intoxicates their Brains, that you may ſee five or ſix of them drop down upon the ground, as if they were ſeized with the falling Sickneſs, but being reviv'd in half a quarter of an hour, all their diſcourſe runs upon the Praiſe of *Tobacco*. Red and Grey Cloth are

The Ambaſſadors reſidence at *Vologda*.

like.

1663. likewiſe ſold here at an exceſſive rate. About this time the Butlers Wife being brought to Bed, and both the Parents *Roman Catholicks*, who intended to bring it up in their own Religion, our Chaplain made ſome difficulty to baptize it, which however after a more mature deliberation was perform'd by him. There happened alſo a quarrel here betwixt two Gentlemen of the Ambaſſadors retinue, about precedency, as we were returning home from an Entertainment, given us by the *Priſtaf*, about two or three Miles from *Vologda*. One of them being of a long ſtanding in his Excellencies Family, and preſuming upon his Intereſt there, they fell to their Swords, but being prevented by the Ambaſſador himſelf from doing any miſchief, he uſed them both ſeverely, for having tranſgreſs'd the reſpect due to his Perſon.

The Annual Solemnity of the Fiery Furnace.

The 18th. *Decemb.* We ſaw the annual repreſentation of the fiery Furnace; the Perſons repreſenting *Shadrach*, *Meſec* and *Abednego*, run about the Streets like diſtracted Perſons, with lighted Torches in their Hands, with wooden hats on their Heads, and their Beards beſmear'd with Honey; they commit great Inſolencies to thoſe they meet, burning their hair of, Beards and Cloths; and being look'd upon as Pagans, all this while, every body gets out of their way, and they are rebaptized on the Feaſt of the Kings. Having paſs'd the Chriſtmas Holy-days here, we began to prepare for our journey to *Muſco*; the Ambaſſador ſent to *Neſtrof*, to deſire him to furniſh him and his Gentlemen with convenient Sledges, and that they might attend him quite to *Muſco*, without changing. But *Neſtrof* according to his wonted Surlineſs ſent for anſwer, that he could provide no others, but ſuch as were ordinarily uſed; upon this the Ambaſſador ſent his Secretary to him, to give him to underſtand, how unbecoming it wou'd be, that perſons of an eminent rank ſhould be treated worſe by ſo Great a Monarch as the *Czar*, than if they Travell'd at their own Charge; but all the anſwer he could get from this inſolent Perſon, was, that they might do their own Pleaſure, and that the *Czar* had honoured them ſufficiently by ſending them a Perſon of his Quality to conduct them; unto this it was replied, that, tho' his Excellency did not diſpute his Quality, yet he never thought it of ſuch rank as thereby to claim a preference for him and his Aſſociates, before him, as he had done at the firſt Viſit. But whatſoever Arguments were alledged to him, his Excellency was forc'd to provide himſelf with convenient Sledges, at his own Charge, and every one did what he could to defend himſelf againſt the rigour of the Seaſon, by lining the Sledges with Felt, ſetting up Cloth Tilts over them, and wrapping themſelves up in Coverlets, and other Cloaths well lined with Furrs.

The Ambaſſadors journey from *Vologda* to *Muſco*.

The Ambaſſador foreſeeing the inconveniences that would attend us betwixt *Vologda* and *Yeroſlaf*, where nothing but ſome ſmall Villages are to be met with, ſent his Horſes, with great part of his Baggage, attended with nine or ten Servants in ſixty Sledges, ſome time before our departure thither the 7th. *Jan.* 1664. He himſelf with a Train of 100 Perſons, following them in 40 Sledges the 15*th*. The 19*th*. we came to the River *Wolga*, which being Frozen, we paſs'd and Arrived the ſame night at *Yeroſlaf*. Parting from thence the 22*d*. we paſs'd by *Roſtof*, and the 29*th*. came to *Peroſlaf*, and the 27*th*. we came to *Troitza*, from whence after a ſtay of five days, we continued our journey to *Yaws*, a little Village about five Verſts from *Muſco*, were we arrived the 3*d*. *Feb*. from whence we were to make our Publick Entry into the City. At the firſt ſetting out of our Journey from *Vologda*, the weather was ſo very ſharp, that notwithſtanding all the precautions uſed againſt it, we were ſcarce able to endure it, but within a few days after it thawed, till we came to *Yeroſlaf*. However this continued not long; for the Winter reaſſuming its wonted Rigour, we were made very ſenſible what Climate we now lived in, which would have been inſupportable, had not the ſtrong Water bottle, and a good Kitchin, (which was always ſent ſome hours before) revived our drooping Spirits; but the greateſt inconvenience was our Lodgings, no Inns being to be ſeen in the open Country; at *Yeroſlaf* his Excellency had very good Lodging at a *Muſcovites* Houſe, lately built, and the Governour as well as an *Engliſh* Merchant Inhabiting there, entertained us very Splendidly, as the *Priſtaff Neſtrof* did twice in this Voyage; for the reſt, we were generally Lodged in Wooden Cottages, the Smoak of which, when they heated their Stoves, was ſo troubleſome to us, that we were forced to leave open our Doors and Windows. Another inconveniency we ſuffered in our Diet, for tho we wanted not Proviſions, the dreſſing, which was forc'd to be perform'd in their Furnaces, was ſo ill, that, being generally done in haſte, it was half raw when it came to the Table. Beſides this, we were bereaved of all manner of Diverſion as well as Society, every one being coop't up in his own Sledge, glad to defend himſelf againſt the extremity of the Cold, which to the *Muſcovites* ſeem'd very favourable, but to us almoſt inſupportable. The only ſauce againſt this Solitude was ſleeping, unto which being invited by the gentle motion of our Sledges, we paſt away the greateſt part of the way in ſleeping, which was the reaſon that as often as we approached to any Town or Village the Trumpets Sounded. As we had but few Towns in our way worth our deſcription, and that the *Muſcovites* are ſo jealous of allowing ſtrangers to take a view of their Fortifications, I will not detain you with an ample account of them. *Yeroſlaf* was the laſt, it is not very large, but Populous, and its ſituation, which is upon the *Wolga*, makes it remarkable for its Trade. *Peroſlaf* lies upon a very narrow River, the Channel of which is above two Fathoms deep, near it is alſo a ſmall Lake. *Troitza* is built upon the bent of a Hill; this place is chiefly Famous for its Convent, which is built of Stone, and ſurrounded with a ſtrong Wall, in an adjacent plain; it maintains 100 *Monks*. We tarried here five days, yet could not his Excellency have the liberty to ſee the Convent. We were no ſooner come to the *Yaws*, but we made all poſſible preparations for our Solemn Entry, being much tired with the ill accommodation we had in ſo little a Village. The next day being the 4th. *Febr*. *Neſtrof* came to acquaint his Excellency that the next day being appointed for his reception, deſir'd him to have every thing in readineſs by next Morning about nine a Clock, being the third hour of the day, according to the *Muſcovite* computation. Accordingly all neceſſary preparations were made, all the Gentlemen put themſelves in their beſt Equipages, and the Liveries were diſtributed to the Pages and Footmen, which were vaſtly Rich, thoſe of the firſt being covered all over with Silver, which coſt near 30 *l*. Sterling, beſides the fine Plumes they wore in their Hats; in ſhort every thing was ſuitable to the greatneſs of his Majeſty, whom his Excellency was to repreſent, in this Solemnity. The hour of nine being come, we expected with great impatience our orders to part, but contrary to our expectations ſtay'd till three a Clock, without hearing the leaſt news from Court, at which both his Excellency, and *Neſtrof* were not a little ſurpriſed, eſpecially ſince our Cooks were ſent before to *Muſco*, and we conſequently left deſtitute of Proviſions. At laſt about half an hour before Night, certain Meſſengers came with orders for our departure; the Ambaſſador was at firſt not a little ſtartled at this unuſual thing, and told *Neſtrof* in plain terms, that it was not cuſtomary for Ambaſſadors to make their publick Entry's in the night time, but at laſt, in regard of the inconveniencies we were likely to ſuffer, if we ſtay'd in thoſe Cottages, he conſented to Depart.

1664.

The Solemn Entry of the Ambaſſador into *Muſco*.

Accordingly we Marched forward in good Order for two Verſts, when being within ſight of the City, orders were ſent to *Neſtrof* from Court, that he ſhould diſpoſe of the Ambaſſador and his Train in a Neighbouring Village on the Left hand, from whence he might make his Entry the next Morning. This ſtop was not very unexpected to us, having foreſeen by their Manner of leading us thorough By-ways, that ſomething more was in the bottom of it; at which the Ambaſſador was ſo highly Exaſperated, that he reſolved and proteſted that he would not make his Entry, till ſatisfaction were given him for this affront. However we were no ſooner come to the Village aſſign'd us for our Lodging, but *Loukéan Golozof* a *Diack* (under Chancellour) came to excuſe the matter, alledging, that the Meſſengers, that were ſent in the Morning having by misfortune loſt their way, his *Czariſo* Majeſty, did not think fit, his Excellency ſhould expoſe ſo Solemn an Entry to the darkneſs of the Night, and therefore he had deferr'd him till next day? that he might give him a reception ſuitable to his Character; But the Ambaſſadours, who had bin informed before hand that they were not ready to receive him, looking upon this only as a pretence, told the *Diack*, that without any reflection upon his Perſon, that to excuſe a matter of ſuch conſequence, it would have been much more proper, to have ſent a Perſon of another rank. The only comfort we now had, was that our Cooks were returned by this time, with ſome proviſions, which ſtood us in good ſtead, after we had bin detained in a Languiſhing condition all this day. Early the next Morning his Excellency fearing, leſt the *Diack* might have diſſembled part of his Anſwer, after his return thought fit to ſend a Letter to the *Czar* containing all the Circumſtances of the whole matter, and intimating his Reſolution, not to come to *Muſco* till due reparation were made by puniſhing the Authors of this diſgrace.

The

1664.

Illustrissime atque Excellentissime Imperator.

The Ambassadors Letter to the Czar.

NOvum hoc & inusitatum ad Imperatoriam Vestram Majestatem scribendi, antequam optatissimo ejus conspectu frui liceret, consilium expressit hesternæ diei infortunium, dicam an opprobrium. Quippe post tot in itinere à Vologda moras, & tertiæ dici (quatuor tantùm ab aulâ vestrâ Imperatoriâ milliaribus expectationem, quum multo manè surrexissem & Offonarii Evan Vizy Nestrof mandatu, ante horam dici * tertiam ad iter me comparassem; ultra decimam tamen inter famosi gurgustii sordes & angustias sine cibo aut potu detentus marcebam & macerabar. Quæ quidem omnia, quamvis Serenissimi Regis mei Majestate, Imperatorio Vestro Fastigio, & nostra Dignitate indignissima, utcunque Metropolin Vestram intrandi, & ad Majestatem vestram Imperatoriam appropinquandi, & justissimas querelas nostras exponendi spe tolerabam. Tandem quum jam advesperasceret, signum proficiscendi datum. Tunc verò postquam (quod ignes fatui solent) per camporum & noctis errores me circumauxissent pronunciatur in ignobili hoc Pago ubi cum animibus incommodis & (honor sit auribus) cum vilissimis insectis conflictur pernoctandum. Accepi quidem ab Imperatoriâ vestrâ Majestate per quendam Procancellarium nuncium humanissimum, qui rem excusaret & in Angarorum & Veredariorum negligentiam culpam deriparet. Cui ego tunc quidem respondi & idem jam, ne optimo homini per viam aliquid intercideret, ad Majestatem vestram Imperatoriam perscribo, me Imperatoriæ vestræ Majestati quàm maximas gratias persolvere & nullo modo de humanitate vestrâ dubitare; sed neque hanc rem tam parvi momenti esse, ut tam facilè dilui possit & deleri; Neque ab Angaris aut Veredariis proculdubio hoc crimen profectum, sed ab aliis qui majori in ministerio eodem tamen in numero haberi mereantur; Neque tam impune serenissimi Regis mei honori, Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestati, aut nostræ Dignitati posse illudi; Serenissimum Regem meum, qui summus & præcipuus est Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestatis Amicus, ne quidem Inimicorum multò minùs Amicorum Legatos ità accipere; Et si modò aliquid hujusmodi in suo Regno evenire potuisset serenissimum Regem meum (quod sine Procancellarii ignominia dicitur) nobilissimum è Magnatibus aliquem missurum fuisse qui Rem excusaret, neque antea desiturum priusquam reorum sanguine quantacunque gratiâ aut nobilitate pollentium tam barbarum & inhumanum facinus expurgasset; Rem hanc fabulæ & ludibrio toti mundo futuram; Ne igitur quamvis Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestatis conspectu fruendi cupientissimum, & in hoc loco pessimè habitum, nullo tamen modo hinc exiturum, donec de eorum corio mihi satisfieret quicunque quantum in se erat Serenissimi Regis mei Majestatem, Imperatoriam Vestram Majestatem, & Sanctissimam Legatorum dignitatem violassent, proculcassent, profanassent. Hæc utì facta & dicta erant Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestati exposui, ut in gravissimo hoc negotio quod Imperatoriâ Vestrâ magnitudine & prudentiâ dignum est constituere possit. Interpreti meo mandavi ut responsum Vestrum Imperatorium in hâc re expectaret. De cætero Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestati summam felicitatem voveo & exopto.

* Tertia dici hora apud Muscovitas tum erat nobiscum circiter nonam: Primam enim (ut priùs affirmavi) numerant horam ab Oriente sole.

6. *Februarii Anno Dom.* 1664.

CARLISLE.

The Superscription was thus; *Magno Domino Imperatori, & Magno Duci Alexio Michaelovicio totius magnæ minoris & albæ Russiæ Autocratori, & multarum aliarum Dictionum & Regionum Orientalium Occidentalium & Septentrionalium, Hæredi earum à Patre & Avo, Domino & Monarchæ.*

Most Illustrious and most Renowned Prince and Emperour,

THis vew and unaccustomed resolution of writing to Your Imperial Majesty, before I have the most desired Honour of being admitted to Your Majesties Presence, is occasioned by a misfortune, if not an indignity, which hapned to me Yesterday. After a tedious Journey from *Vologda*, and three Days waiting at the distance only of four miles from Your Imperial Court, when I had risen very early, and according to the advertisement of *Offonarius Evanovitsius Nestrof*, had fitted my self for my Journey; nevertheless, I was constrained to languish till after Ten without any manner of refreshment, in the confinement and dirt of a smoaky Cottage. All which things, though most unworthy the Majesty of the King my Master, Your Imperial Grandeur, and my particular Character, I patiently sustained with the hope however of Entring Your Imperial City, and approaching the Presence of Your Imperial Majesty, and declaring my just complaints. At length, when Night was now at hand, notice was given for our setting forward. And after the Guides had, like *Ignes fatui*, misled me up and down the Fields in the Night, it was signified to me, That I must quarter in this pitiful Village, amidst all kind of inconveniences, and swarms of troublesome Insects. I confess I received from Your Imperial Majesty, by a certain Vice-chancellor, a very courteous Message, excusing the matter, and charging the fault upon the negligence of the Guides and Posts. I then answered him, and write the same now to Your Imperial Majesty, lest the good Man may have forgotten something by the way, That I give Your Imperial Majesty very great thanks, and no wise doubt of your Generosity; but that the thing is not of so small importance, as to be blown off so easily; That the fault proceeded not from the Posts or Messengers, but from others of greater Quality perhaps, though but of equal merit; that affronts done to the Honour of the King my Master, Your Imperial Majesty, or my self, ought not to go unpunished; That the King my Master, who is Your Imperial Majesties highest and chiefest Friend, gives not such Reception to the Ambassadors of Enemies, much less to those of Friends; And that in case any such thing should happen in his Kingdom, the King my Master would have sent some Person of the highest Nobility to excuse it (which I speak without reproach to the Vice-chancellor) and not desisted till he had expiated so barbarous and inhumane an action, with the blood of the Criminals, of whatever quality or consideration; That this proceeding would give cause of talk and laughter to the whole World; that therefore, however desirous I was of approaching of Your Imperial Majesty, and ill accommodated in this place; yet I should not stir from it till satisfaction were given me upon the Persons of those, who as much as in them lay had violated and affronted the King my Master, Your Imperial Majesty, and the sacred Character of Ambassadors. I have related these things to Your Imperial Majesty, as they were done and spoken, to the end that You may make such determination in this most weighty business as shall be suitable to Your Imperial Grandure and Prudence. I have commanded my Interpreter to wait for your Majesties answer in this Matter. And I wish and imprecate to Your Imperial Majesty all Happiness.

1664.

CARLISLE.

The Letter was no sooner sent, but *Demente Bashmacof Diack* of the *Czar*'s Cabinet, came to wait on the Ambassador, promising all the satisfaction he should desire; his Excellency consented thereupon to prepare for his Entry immediately; this was confirmed by the Messenger, who carried the Letter to *Musco*, who returning soon after, brought word, that he having deliver'd the Letter to *Almaza*, the *Diack* of the Embassy's Office, he had told him, that *Bashmacof* was dispatch'd already by his *Czarish* Majesty, to give his Excellency the desired Satisfaction; so we departed on Saturday the 6th. *Feb.* in order to make our Solemn Entry, in which it must be confess'd, that the *Czar* gave us all possible marks of his Greatness, nothing being to be seen, where ever we cast our eyes, but precious Stones, rich Furs, Cloth of Gold and Silver, Velvets, fine Horses, and most splendid Equippages; of Trumpets, Kettle-drums, and other Military Instruments there was such a number, that the like had, according to reports, not been seen before, at the Entry of any Ambassador into *Musco*. The whole train was ordered thus: In the Front were the Ambassadors Trumpeters on Horse-back, Sounding their Silver Trumpets; After these came the Gentlemen belonging to the Embassy, each in a sledge, those of the best quality being neareſt to the Ambassador; and their Sledges adorn'd with Bear-skins, part of which hung down behind: These were followed by ten of the *Pristaffs* Domesticks on Horse-back, two and two in a Rank, and after them the two *Pristaffs* went in a Sledge. My Lord Ambassador followed *Nestrof*, in a Sledge drawn by two white Horses; (a Colour much esteem'd in *Muscovy*) his Tilt was Scarlet edged with Crowns of sky colour'd Velvet, hanging down round about, and trim'd with Silver lace, with a white Bears skin hanging over the back of his Sledge. His Interpreter sat upon a plank laid for that purpose on the right side of the Sledge, with his head uncovered, and behind the Sledge stood two Pages, six Foot-men marching on each side of it bare-headed, with their Partisans, which were correspondent to their Liveries. The Lord *Morpeth*, his Excellencies eldest

1664. Son, then ſeventeen years of Age, came immediately after him in a very fine Coach, with ſix black Horſes, the Harneſſes being of Scarlet, edged with Silver Lace and Fringes, and behind the Coach ſtood two Pages. My Lord was followed by my Lady Ambaſſadreſs in a *Caſtnax* (Womens Sledge) covered on the top with Crimſon Velvet, with broad Gold and Silver Laces, and lined with blue, according to our Liveries, which were Red lined with Blue. The Sledge had a glaſs door on each ſide, beſides two ſmall glaſſes, through which the Lady might behold the Spectators, without being ſeen by any. She had one of her Gentle-women in the ſame Sledge with her, two Pages ſtanding behind upon a Plank, and three Foot-men running by. After hers came My Lord *Morpeth*'s Sledge, without any body in it, and then two Womens Sledges more, which were followed by the whole Train, making in all 200 Sledges. About two a Clock, we ſaw a great Body of *Muſcovite* Horſe drawn up in a ſpacious Plain, and among them many Archers, with their Quivers well ſtored with Arrows; and as for Trumpets, Kettle-Drums, and Haut-boys, there was ſuch a multitude of them, that they batter'd our ears for two Miles together. As we approached nearer to the City, we were met by a good Number of *Boyars*, *Stolnicks* and other Officers of the Court, who made a moſt glorious appearance in their Veſts of Gold and Silver, lined with Sables, and in their Furr Caps of black Fox, ſhaped like Muffs, ſuch as they uſe at publick Solemnities.

Their Horſes on which they were mounted, were for the moſt part adorn'd with very rich Furnitures, beſet with Pearls and Precious Stones, and Silver bridles, made like broad links of Chains, which made a very agreeable Noiſe. Their led Horſes had alſo very Rich Sadles, and were cover'd with covers of Leopard Skins, Cloth of Gold, Velvet and Scarlet. Moſt of theſe, and all the Gentlemen of the *Czar*'s Chamber, accompany'd his Excellency to the Houſe appointed for our Entertainment: At laſt the *Czar*'s Maſter of the Horſe came and Preſented two Sledges, one for the Ambaſſador, and the other for my Lord *Morpeth*, and ſeveral white Horſes for the Gentlemen; and not long after *Pronchiſſof* (a Member of the *Czar*'s Council) and *Gregory Coſmewitz*, to ſerve his Excellency as *Priſtaff*, during his ſtay in *Moſco*. *Pronchiſſof* being come within ſome ſmall diſtance of the Ambaſſadors Sledge, gave us another inſtance of the *Muſcovite* Pride; for he gave his Excellency to underſtand, that he being ſent by the *Czar* to receive him, he expected he ſhould alight firſt out of the Sledge; the Ambaſſador replied by his Interpreter, that as he repreſented his *Britannick* Maieſty, he ought to claim the precedency in all things of this nature; but this had ſo little Influence upon the ſtubborn *Priſtaff*, that he remained unmoveable, like a Statue in his Sledge, alledging, that he alſo repreſented the Perſon of his Maſter, ſo that after many conteſts, his Excellency at laſt, to prevent any further delay, condeſcended to this; that they ſhould come out of their Sledges at the ſame time; which was but indifferently obſerved on the *Priſtaff*'s ſide, who continued hanging betwixt his Servants arms, ſcarce touching the Ground with his toes, whilſt his Excellency fairly came out of his Sledge. After the mutual Salute, *Pronchiſſof* deliver'd his complement firſt, telling the Ambaſſador, that he and his Collegue *Gregory Coſmewitz* had been ſent by his *Czariſh* Majeſty, to take care that he might be provided with all neceſſaries during his ſtay at *Muſco*; not forgetting in the mean while to rehearſe all the *Czar*'s Titles at length, in a ridiculous manner. The Ambaſſador having anſwered what he thought moſt pertinent to the matter, and *Neſtrof* and *Davidof* his laſt *Priſtaffs* having taken their leaves, they retired both to their Sledges, *Pronchiſſof* in the ſame manner as he came out, to wit reſting upon his Servants. Being by this time come near to the Town, we diſpoſed our ſelves for our Entrance; the Ambaſſador was plac'd in the middle of the two *Priſtaffs*, to wit, *Pronchiſſof* on the right, and *Coſmewitz* on the left; My Lord *Morpeth* had two *Boyars*, on each ſide one, ſo that in every rank three Sledges were a breaſt, our Gentlemen that were on Horſeback, with the Chaplains, Chirurgeon, Muſick Maſter, and ſeveral *Engliſh* Merchants, and two Valet-de-Chambers made up twenty three, were divided into ſo many Ranks, having each two *Simboyars* or Gentlemen of the Court in their Company. All theſe Ceremonies, and the frequent ſtops we made, having conſumed above three hours, before we had advanced two Miles, it was after Sun Set, before we could enter the Town; this had made the Inhabitants to light ſo many Fires and Torches in the Street, that the Night appear'd as bright as the Day, and the refulgency of the Precious Stones, ſeem'd to add a new luſtre to our Entry, which was accompany'd by an incredible number of People, both in the Streets and Houſes. The *Czar*, the Great Dutcheſs, and young Princes, being willing to be Spectators of this Magnificent Solemnity, had made a chink or private place near the Gate of the brick Wall, (as they had done the day before) where a great number of Wax Tapers were ſet up on each ſide of the Gate; as we came hither we were Saluted by a whole Volley from the *Muſcovite* Trumpets, who were placed there on purpoſe to make a little ſtop, that the *Czar* might with the more leaſure take an exact view of the whole Solemnity. From hence we were conducted to the *Czar*'s Guards, who had lined the Streets, to the Houſe prepared for the Ambaſſador. 1664.

The Ambaſſadors Reſidence at *Muſco*.

Before we enter upon the particulars of what happen'd during our abode at *Muſco*, we will give you a ſhort deſcription of that City. *Muſco* like the other Towns of *Muſcovy*, has ſcarce any other but Wooden Houſes (ſome few excepted) and is paved with large pieces of Firr laid croſs the Streets. It was then at leaſt four Lgs. in circumference, its extent and form being frequently changed by the many conflagrations they are ſubject to, notwithſtanding they endeavour to prevent the ſame by the ſpaciouſneſs of their Streets, and the large intervalls to ſtop the Fury of the raging Flames. It has three Walls, one of Stone, another of Brick, and a third of Wood, which divide the four quarters of the Town; call'd by them, *Cataigorod*, *Czargorod*, *Scoradom* and *Strelitza Slaboda*. *Cataigorod* is ſeparated from the reſt by a Brick Wall, as *Czargorod* is by that of Stone; the *Strelitza Slaboda* (or Suburbs of the *Strelitzes*, the *Czar*'s Guards) are ſurrounded with wooden Fortifications. The River *Moſca* (from hence the City has borrowed its name,) is the chiefeſt that paſſes by this City; its ſcource is in the Province of *Twere*, and loſes its ſelf in the *Wolga*, where the ſame joins with the River *Occa*, near *Columna*. The two ſmall Rivers *Neglina* and *Yaguſa*, likewiſe paſs by *Moſco*, and afterwards fall into the River *Moſca*; but that which gives the greateſt luſtre to this City, is the Royal Palace, call'd *Cremelena*, and the vaſt number of Churches, with their Steeples, which being cover'd all over with Latten, make a moſt glorious ſhow at a diſtance, there being above 2000 Churches and Chappels in this City. The City of *Muſco*.

The *Czar*'s Caſtle comprehends about two Miles in Circuit. He has two Palaces, one of Stone, after the *Italian* Faſhion, the other Wood; which being the moſt healthful, the *Czar* uſes for his ordinary reſidence. The Patriarch of *Muſcovy*, and ſeveral of the chief *Boyars*, have alſo Stone Houſes within the Precinct of the Caſtle, beſides two Convents, one for Fryars, the other for Nuns, and a good number of Churches and Chappels. The Church of St. *Michael*, contains the Tombs of the *Czar*'s; the Steeple of this Church as well as of all the reſt being covered with Copper, and burniſhed by the Sun beams, carry a reſemblance of Gold at a diſtance; one of thoſe Steeples having a croſs of Maſſie Gold. We ſaw here a great Bell, caſt by a *Muſcovite* ſome years before, within which fifty Men could ſtand upright, its Diameter being three Fathoms, and nine in Circumference; a Steeple being order'd to be built in the place where it ſtands. The Caſtle is fortify'd with a triple Wall, well ſtor'd with great Canons, and ſtrengthned by a very large Ditch. It is Inhabited, beſides *Muſcovites*, by *Greeks*, *Perſians* and *Tartars*, but no *Jews*. The *Greeks* are moſt eſteemed, and the Proteſtants and *Lutherans*, have alſo the Publick exerciſe of their Religions, which is not allow'd to the *Roman Catholicks*. All the Foreign Chriſtians, but eſpecially the *Germans*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders* and *Poles* live in a *Slaboda* or Suburb, allotted them by the *Czar* for their mutual Converſation. The *Czar*'s Caſtle. The great *Muſcovite* Bell

The Houſe aſſign'd us for our abode, was one of the moſt commodious of the whole place, and not far from the Caſtle. The Chambers were arched, with Iron Window Shutters and Doors, tho' this Metal is not ſo very plentiful in *Muſcovy*; moſt of the Chambers were hung with red Stuffs or Cloth, and the Benches, which ſerved inſtead of Chairs, covered with the ſame; without any Beds, or other Accommodations, except Tables and Furnaces. It has two great Halls, in one of which was ſet up the Canopy of State, and ſerved us alſo for a Chappel, in the other ſeveral Gentlemen had their Lodgings aſſign'd them. At our firſt Arrival we were ſo reſtrained that they would not allow us to ſtir abroad, nor let any ſtrangers come to viſit us, not even the Merchants Wives to my Lady. But after the Ambaſſadors Audience, we enjoy'd ſomewhat more Freedom, having the liberty to viſit our Friends in the Suburb of the Foreign Chriſtians, tho' not without ſome of the *Czar*'s Guards; of which there were always 50 that kept Guard at the Gate, and examined The Ambaſſadors Houſe.

1664. ned every Body that came in or out. The Ambaſſadour himſelf was not allow'd to go abroad without a *Priſtaff*, and a Company of *Strelitzes*; one day the *Priſtaff* ſtaying longer away than was expected, and his Excellency intending to go abroad without him, his Foot-men were ſtop'd by the *Strelitzes* at the Gates, till the *Priſtaff* came. Neither were any of the *Boyars* permitted to Viſit his Excellency, unleſs ſent by the *Czar*; the leaſt commerce with a Foreign Ambaſſador being look'd upon with them as a capital Crime. Our chief recreations here, were Horſe matches; ſometimes we would alſo make a match at Foot-ball, we acted alſo a Play compos'd by our Muſick Maſter. Hunting and the Baths, which we uſed ſo frequently at *Vologda*, we were not ſo fond of here, except that ſome of our Family would now and then go to the *Stoves*, where they would divert themſelves, with talking rubbiſh to the Women, which they could ſee Naked, thro' a hole made in the Wall that parted the Rooms; one thing more which is very remarkable we obſerved about a Mile from *Muſco*, to wit, a ſmall Iſland Eloating in a Lake, being kept above Water by the roots of the Trees, which have taken Root in this Ground, we went to it in a Boat, and found, that we could move it like a piece of Timber Floating upon the Water. Next to our manner of living at *Muſco*, we muſt proceed to the Ceremonies and Recreations we obſerved in this Court, and in the firſt place of his Excellencies Audience the 2. *Febr.*

The Ambaſſadors Audience.

The next day after our Arrival at *Muſco*, being the 7th. of *Febr.* the two *Priſtaffs* offered Audience to his Excellency in the *Czar*'s name, on the 9th. but the next day after defer'd it till the 11th. His Exc. being in the mean while buſie to inform himſelf concerning the Ceremonies to be uſed at this Solemnity, ask'd them amongſt other things, whether he muſt be uncover'd in the *Czar*'s preſence; unto which they anſwered, that the *Czar*'s Ambaſſadors having lately appear'd bareheaded before his Majeſty of *Great Britain*, his *Czariſh* Majeſty could expect no leſs from him; unto this the Ambaſſador replied franckly, that having receiv'd particular orders from the King his Maſter to do ſo, he was oblig'd not to diſpute that point with them, but that otherwiſe it might very well be queſtioned, whether the *Czar*'s Ambaſſadors, who were profeſs'd Slaves, and ſo ſtiled in their Credentials, could repreſent the Perſon of their Prince in the ſame degree as he did. He alſo deſired Audience of the Great Dutcheſs, and the two young Princes, the eldeſt of which was not above ten Years old; but this was refuſed, it being not the cuſtom for the *Czar*'s Sons to appear in publick till they are 12 Years of Age, then they are expoſed to the publick view of the People.

The day of our Audience, which was the 11th. of *Feb.* being come, 130 of the *Czar*'s Guards, and 60 Sledges were ſent to carry the Preſents deſigned for the *Czar*; the two young Princes, *Knez Alexis*, *Alexiowitz*, and *Pheodor Alexiowitz*, beſides which there were alſo ſome Preſents from the Queen to the Great Dutcheſs, and ſome his Excellency preſented from himſelf to the *Czar*. They conſiſted in Veſſels of Gold and Silver, in Cloths, Velvets, Satins, and Damasks of ſeveral colours; beſides conſiderable quantities of Stuffs and Table-Linen, two Gold Watches, three Clocks, two pair of Piſtols, one Gun, two Carabins, ſix pieces of caſt Cannon, a great quantity of *Corniſh* Tinn, and a 100 piggs of Lead. The Plate was carried by 24 Men, the Cloth by 60, 10 Men more were employed in carrying the Velvets, Satins, and Damasks, 26 for the Stuffs and Table-Linen, and 10 more for the Guns, the Piſtols, the Watches and the Clocks; The Sledges carried the Cannon, Tin, and Lead. Two Sledges were alſo brought for the Ambaſſador and his Son, and white Horſes for the Gentlemen. We ſet out from our Houſe about Ten a Clock in the Morning in the following order, The Gentlemen of the Ambaſſadors Retinue, being joined with ſome *Engliſh* Merchants, all richly clad, with Plumes of Feathers in their Hats, appeared alſo on Horſe-back two and two in a Rank: After theſe came my Lord *Morpeth* in his Sledge betwixt the two *Priſtaffs* in their Robes; my Lord *Morpeth* was followed by two Trumpets, thoſe by ſix Pages and 12 Foot-men. His Excellency himſelf appeared that Day in Black, with a very rich Diamond Hat-band on his Hat, betwixt two of the principal *Boyars* in their Robes, each in his Sledge: In the Ambaſſadors Sledge was the Secretary and chief Interpreter, both ſtanding uncovered, the firſt carrying upon his hands the Credentials written upon Parchment, upon a piece of Damask, the Superſcription which contained all the *Czars*'s Titles, being done in Letters of Gold.

In this order we paſt along throw the Guards which had lined the ſtreets on both ſides. Near the Caſtle Gate we ſaw another Regiment of *Strelitzes*, and not long after in the out Court of the Caſtle, another Regiment drawn up in good Order, with a good number of Cannon planted on each ſide as if they were ready to diſcharge. From hence we were conducted into another Court filled alſo with Guards, but as we came to the Gate through which we were to paſs, all that were in Sledges or on Horſe-back were forced to alight, and to lay aſide their Swords, which was the reaſon the Ambaſſador and his Son had put none on that day. We had ſcarce gone a few paces, when coming to the place through which the Chriſtian Ambaſſadors are always introduced into the *Czar*'s Preſence (the Infidels being carried another way) his Excellency was Complimented by a *Boyar* in the *Czar*'s Name. From thence we paſs'd into a Stone Gallery where another *Boyar* received his Excellency with a Complement, leading into the Antichamber of the Audience Hall; here we ſaw the *Czar*'s Guard *du Corps* in moſt ſumptuous Equipages, their Velver Veſts were lined with Sables, their Caps adorned with Pearls and precious Stones, and their Hat-bands covered with Gold and Silver. At the entrance of this Audience-Hall his Excellency was again Complemented by one of the *Czar*'s Couſins; after which we opened to the right and the left, and the Ambaſſador entered firſt, after him my Lord *Morpeth*, who was followed by the Gentlemen and Pages. 1664.

It muſt needs be confeſſed, that at our firſt coming in the reſplendency of Jewels ſo dazzled our Eyes, as ſtruck us with amazement. The *Czar* being juſt oppoſite to the door, placed upon a moſt magnificent Throne, with his Scepter in his hand, and a Crown upon his head. The Throne which was raiſed 7 or 8 ſteps from the Floor was of maſſy Silver gilt and moſt artificially wrought with Pyramids and other works. His Crown (which he wore upon a Cap lined with black Sables) ſeem'd to be one entire piece of precious Stones, which run up in form of a Pyramid, with a Golden Croſs on the Spire. The Scepter was alſo beſet all over with Jewels, as was his veſt from top to bottom, at the opening before, and his Collar anſwerable to the reſt. On both ſides of his Throne ſtood four of the Talleſt Lords of the Court, each with a Battel-ax upon his Shoulder, caſting their Eyes with a profound ſubmiſſion towards the *Czar*. They were clad from top to toe with white Ermin, their Veſts, their Caps (which were ſhaped like our Muffs) nay even their Boots being covered with the ſame; they had alſo very large gold Chains hanging down from about their Necks. But the moſt glorious ſight of all was the ſplendid appearance of about 200 *Boyars* cloathed in veſts of Cloth of Gold and Silver, or Velvet ſet with precious Stones, placed upon benches covered with Tapiſtry round the Hall, and raiſed about 4 foot high from the Floors. Near to the door of the Audience Hall, attended a great Number of *Goſes*, or the *Czars* Factors, who are furniſhed with Robes upon ſuch ſolemn occaſions. The *Czar* Perſon appear'd upon this occaſion very Majeſtick, both in reſpect of the ſplendour of his Court, and his own Perſon, being well proportion'd and in the vigour of his Age, which was not 34 compleat. The only thing which anſwered not to the Magnificence of all the reſt, was the Hall of Audience, having nothing in it worth taking notice of, except its vaſtneſs, and that the Floor was covered with Tapiſtry, the walls having no other ornaments than ſome old Pictures, and the roof very indifferently Arch'd, ſupported by a Pillar that ſtood in the middle. As ſoon as his Excellency entred the Hall, he made a profound reverence to the *Czar* ſitting upon his Throne, then ſtopping at the Pillar, he made a ſecond, and as he was ready to ſpeak he made a third, when he Saluted him in theſe words: The moſt Serene, and moſt Puiſſant Prince *Charles* II. by the Grace of God King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. to You moſt High, moſt Potent, and moſt Illuſtrious Prince, Great Lord, Emperor, and Grand-Duke, *Alexis Michaelowitz*, of all the Great and Little and White *Ruſſia*, Self-up-holder of *Muſcovy*, *Kiavia*, *Volodimir*, *Novogorod*, Emperor of *Caſan*, Emperor of *Aſtracan*, Emperor of *Siberia*, Lord of *Pſcove*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, *Smolensko*, *Twerſco*, *Volinſco*, *Podolsko*, *Ughorſco*, *Permſco*, *Veatſco*, *Bolgarſco*, &c. Lord and Great Duke of *Novogorod* in the Lower Countries, of *Chernigo*, *Reſanſco*, *Polotſco*, *Reſtofsco*, *Yeroſlafsco*, *Belozarſco*, *Oudorſco*, *Obdorſco*, *Condinſco*, *Witepſco*, *Metiſclaaco*, and all the *Northern* Parts, Lord of the Country of *Twerſco*, of the *Czars* of *Cartalinſco*, and of *Gruzinſco*, and of the Country of *Cabardinſco*, of the Dukes of *Chercaſco* and *Igarſco*, Lord and Monarch of ſeveral other Dominions and Provinces, Eaſt, Weſt, and North, of which he is Heir from Father to Son, by me *Charles* Earl of *Carliſle*, Viſcount *Howard* of *Morpeth*, Baron *Dacre* of *Gillſland*

1664. *Gilleſland*, His Majeſties Lieutenant of the Counties of *Cumberland* and *Weſtmorland*, one of his Majeſties moſt Honourable Privy Council, and His Extraordinary Ambaſſador, ſends Greeting, and has commanded me to deliver theſe Letters (the Credentials which he held in his hand) to Your Imperial Majeſty. And whilſt theſe words were explained with an audible voice by the Interpreter, the Ambaſſador advanced to the Throne to preſent them, which he delivered to the Chancellor. His Excellency was no ſooner returned to his former ſtation, but the *Czar* roſe up, and all the *Boyars* following his example, their Veſts of Tiſſue made ſuch a ruſſling and a noiſe againſt one another, that we were not a little ſurprized at it. After a ſhort pauſe, the *Czar* began to enquire after his *Majeſty of Great Britains* Health, which was repeated by the Chancellor, by reaſon of the two great diſtance betwixt the *Czar* and the Ambaſſador? Who anſwered, The moſt Serene and moſt Potent Prince *Charles* II. by the Grace of God, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. was through the Mercy of the Omnipotent God, in perfect Health, the 20th of *July*, 1663. when I had the honour to kiſs his Royal Hands at my departure. Theſe words were no ſooner Interpreted to the *Czar*, but he roſe up again, and askt, *How does the deſolate Widow of that glorious Martyr*, Charles *I.* Unto which the Ambaſſador having made a ſuitable anſwer, he made the following Harangue in *Engliſh*, which was by his Interpreter tranſlated, period by period, his Excellency makes a pauſe for that reaſon at the end of every Sentence.

Illuſtriſſime atque Excellentiſſime Princeps Imperator,

The Ambaſſador's Speech to the *Czar*.

PErvenit nuper ad Sereniſſimam ſuam Majeſtatem Dominum meum Clementiſſimum perhonorifica Legatio, cujus quidem ſplendor uti magnificentia tanti Principis unde eſt profecta digniſſimus extitit, ità & argumentum Ei ad quem miſſa eſt longè erat gratiſſimum. Utpote quo, præter optatiſſimum de proſperâ valetudine Veſtrâ & rebus ſecundis nuncium, gratulatio quoque de Letiſſimo Ejus in Regna ſua Reditu, & ſumma Sereniſſimæ ſuæ Majeſtatis felicitate. Commemoratio antiquæ inter Auguſtiſſimos Utriuſque Majores amicitiæ, & perſeverantia Veſtra in eâdem colendâ atque in futurum augendâ continerentur. Itaque inæſtimabilis ille intimi animi Veſtri affectus tam luculentæ Legationis honore expreſſus & illuſtratus inſtar gemmæ clariſſimæ videbatur, cui poſtquam Natura ultimam manum impoſuit; perfectiſſima quoque artis politura acceſſit. Vel, ut de nuncio tam opportuno dicam, quod Solomon Regum prudentiſſimus de verbo commodè dicto, erat velut aurea mala cum figuris argenteis. Unum tamen eſt de quo Sereniſſima ſua Majeſtas cum Majeſtate Veſtra Imperatoria & meritiſſimò quidem conqueritur, præoccupatum ſeſe beneficio & Majeſtatem Veſtram Imperatoriam præripuiſſe ſibi, ne (quod ſemper animo deſtinaverat) Majeſtatem Veſtram Imperatoriam eâ celebritate & pompâ quæ ſummam Utriuſq; amicitiam deceret & dignitatem primus ſalutaret. Ego verò, ſi tantulum à Domini mei Sereniſſimi ſententiâ diſſentiri liceret, dum Utriuſque pares annos, communes rationes adeoque conſimilia ſtudia atque affectus conſidero, Neutri Veſtrûm priores in hoc officio partes tribuendas, ſed in excellentiſſimis Amborum mentibus eaſdem cauſas uno momento eandem utrobique Voluntatem excitaſſe crediderim. Sed & aſtrorum, quorum fulgores Majeſtatum Veſtrarum lucem optimè adumbrant, efficacitas pro variâ corporum intermediorum naturâ ſuſpenditur & retardatur: Nec amici, quorum nobiliſſimum exemplar in Majeſtatibus Veſtris reſplendet, tam commodam & opportunam rationem hactenus inire potuerunt, ut abſentes mutua mentis ſenſa condicerent, & pariter repræſentarent. Quum igitur alteri neceſſariò de tempore concedendum eſſet, Sereniſſima ſua Majeſtas minùs laborat quod eò ſe præverterit Imperatoria Veſtra Majeſtas, dummodo (quod nunquam fieri patietur) conſtantiâ etiam & ſinceritate affectûs Ipſum antecedat. Neque verò gravatur Sereniſſima ſua Majeſtas, uti ſolet inter amicos, rationem conſilii ſui reddere, & juſtiſſimis ſuis excuſationibus adverſus Majeſtatem Veſtram Imperatoriam uti, ſolam nempe negotiorum domeſticorum molem obſtare potuiſſe quo minus honorem hunc, quo dum Majeſtatem Veſtram Imperatoriam afficit Se ipſum impertit, maturiùs Majeſtati Veſtræ Imperatoriæ deferret; Et quum compluribus Principibus ſibi propioribus eodem beneficio prior eſſet obligatus, Se tamen interpoſuiſſe omnibus Majeſtatis Veſtræ Imperatoriæ remunerationem, utpote quo Neminem benevolentiâ & amore magis propinquum haberet; Se denique ab omni tam debiti officii dilatione tantùm abfuiſſe, ut occaſionem modò idoneam perſolvendi illud Majeſtati Veſtræ Imperatoriæ captaverit. Quamvis enim Sereniſſima ſua Majeſtas non ſoleat ex ſyderum motu conſilia ſua ſuſpendere, aut ex Cœlorum ordine de rerum ſuarum ſucceſſu ſuperſtitioſè hariolari, ſolet tamen ex Omnipotentis Dei nutu totus pendere & ad ejus Cœlorum ejuſdem & Regis felicitatis authoris ſignificationes actiones ſuas (ut ità dicam) modulari. Poſtquam igitur divinâ Benignitate in pleniſſimâ eorum omnium poſſeſſione Se conſtitutum vidiſſet quæcunque ſummam ornare poſſent fortunam & cumulare, hoc tandem uti auſpicatiſſimum tempus elegit quo potiſſimùm Imperatorem tam Illuſtrem, Fratrem, Amantiſſimum, & Chariſſimum Amicum ſalutaret, & Majeſtati Veſtræ Imperatoriæ eandemvel ſi fieri poſſit majorem etiam felicitatem auguraret. Quum enim in his tribus, Hoſtium Terrore, Subditorum Obſequio, & Amicorum multitudine atque conſtantiâ præcipuum Regalis Solii firmamentum & robur conſiſtat, liceat omnino affirmare Sereniſſimum Regem meum, qui in rebus adverſis admirandum undequaque virtutis & fortitudinis ſuæ ſpecimen dederit, nunc etiam è contrario ad miraculum uſque melioris fortunæ eſſe evectum. Quod enim Inimicos attinet nemo inventus eſt qui recentem Ejus felicitatem interpellare voluerit, præter infames iſtos Prædones Africanos Chriſtiani Nominis & Humani generis hoſtes, quos igitur quamvis bis mille paſſuum millibus diſtantes in illa ſua ſpelunca Algerienſi obſedit; Naves eorum partim cepit, partim depreſſit, captivos liberavit, & piratas nefarios ſuis conditionibus in poſterum aſtrinxit. Subditi autem Sui tam diu Tyrannorum & Perduellium vi & artibus decepti atque oppreſſi, poſtquam eorum ſupplicio manus commodaſſent, eò alacriores in Clementiſſimi Regis ſui fidem redierunt, & aluerunt antiquâ obedientiâ nuperæ Rebellionis maculam. Quoad Amicos denique uti cum nullo Principe Chriſtiano inimicitias exercet, ità vix Ullus eſt Eorum qui non honorificentiſſimè per Legatos Eum appellaverit, & in arctioris neceſſitudinis nexum accipi petierit, eâ ante omnia pactione interpoſitâ (quod etiam fecerunt) ut ſicubi in eorum Ditionibus deliteſcerent execrabiles illos fugitivos & parricidas dederent, qui Glorioſiſſimi Parentis Sui ſanguine manus cruentaſſent. Si verò ſuper hæc de Imperii ſui magnitudine diſſereret liceret hereditariis quæ ab Auguſtiſſimis ſuis Majoribus crevit in Europâ Regis alias etiam in Africâ, Aſia, atque Americâ Provincias Ipſe ſubjunxit, & hodierni Imperii fines protulit, ultrà quàm priorum infortuniorum rumor pervaſerit. Disjunctiſſimas illas Regiones Oceano tanquam Ponte Suo continuat, & Naves Suæ (quoties Ei videtur) ad remotiſſimos Orbis habitabilis fines mobilem Imperii ſui limitem circumferunt & tranſmittunt. Quamvis autem hæc Ditionum laxitas animi ſui magnitudini conſentanea videatur, Subditorum regimen prudentiæ & juſtitiæ Suæ proprium exiſtat, & hoſtium ſubjectio tantæ fortitudini inſuavis eſſe nequeat: Ille tamen utpote utriuſque fortunæ vicibus exercitatus, etiam victoriam faſtidire poſſet uti ſanguine commixtam, & regimen potiùs relaxare quàm humani generis libertatem nimis circumſcribere: imò quamtumvis ampla Imperii ſpatia, tamen angeſtiora ſunt capaciſſimæ mentis meditationibus quibus Deum Optimum Maximum horum omnium datorem complectitur. Nec tamen hiſce omnibus quæ per ſe præclara ſunt atque eximia victoriâ dominatu poſſeſſionibus tantùm ſibi placet quantùm amicitiarum fide atque conſtantiâ. Ipſe enim quantus eſt totus à Naturâ factus & ab Experientia educatus eſt ad amicitiam. Neque ego tam imperfectâ narratione res adeò conſpicuas & pervagatas perſtrinxiſſem, niſi hæc præſentis Suæ magnitudinis commemoratio Eum uti Amicum tantò præſtantiorem commendaret & cum gratitudinis argumento eſſet conjuncta quam erga Amicos ſuos profitetur, quorum ope res Suæ adverſæ tolerabiliores olim reddebantur, & qui nunc etiam veriſſimum ſaporem & guſtum meliori Suæ fortunæ conciliant. Et in Eorum numero quis eſt qui Majeſtati Veſtræ Imperatoriæ non dicam anteferri ſed omnino cum Ea conferri mereatur? Sive enim Principis Majeſtatem, ſive antiquitatem amicitiæ, ſive recentia beneficia æſtimemus, nulla eſt arbor quæ aut viridiorem & latiorem umbram porrexerit, aut altiores radices egerit, aut fructus uberiores & ſuaviores ediderit. Solet ſæpenumero Majeſtas ſua Sereniſſima inter Nos qui ſemper Ei proximi regiorum ſermonum oracula captamus, non ſine ſummâ ſua voluptate narrare, ut ante centum annos ex Auguſtiſſimis Suis Majoribus unus Edwardus Sextus heroico incæpto claſſem & homines emiſerit, ut in Mundi fines inquirerent, & ignotas adhuc Gentes commercio miſcerent. Hi feliciſſimo ſucceſſu Maris Septentrionalis, quod ad illa uſque tempora imperium credebatur, ſecreta & ſinus perveſtigarunt donec uti olim Iſraelitas per eremum clariſſimi ignis ità illos continuæ dieì columna per illa Oceani deſerta ad Oras Veſtras deduxiſſet. Hos demum verum magnetis uſum reperiſſe dixeris, & acus illa divina, tunc primùm quievit invento quem per tot ſæcula fruſtrà indicaverat Veſtro Septentrione. Eluctatis tandem Maris difficultates duplex adhuc reſtabat nec levius periculum, ne vel in itinere per non minora Terrarum Veſtrarum ſpatia deficerent, vel ſaltem novâ illâ Majeſtatis ad quam appropinquabant, & quam extra ſuam Regionem vix expectaverant, luce percellerentur. Attamen non ſolùm recreati ſunt (prout æquum eſt) Imperatoris qui

1664.

1664. *qui tunc temporis regnabat humanitate, sed etiam in præmium Commercii ex isto latere Vestri Orbis tunc primùm aperti ea Privilegia à munificentiâ Ejus acceperunt, ex quibus Utraque Natio non mediocria deinceps commoda & utilitates percepit. Et ab illâ origine hæreditaria & sincerissima amicitia mutuis beneficiis exculta à Patre ad Filium usque ad Majestates Vestras jam rerum potientes descendit. Circa idem tempus alios etiam* Europæ *Principes cupido incesserat scrutandi si quid adhuc in lacinioso Naturæ sinu lateret.* Lusitanus *in* Orientali Indiæ *Margaritarum & Aromatum thesauros detexit, nulla tamen aromata quæ suavitate, aut uniones qui candore exæquent, quod præsens* Lusitania *Rex apud Serenissimum Dominum meum deposuit.* Hispanus *autem* India Occidentali *Auri & Argenti fodinas occupavit. Adeóque cùm nihil dignum Regibus* Angliæ *reliquum videretur, invenerunt tamen quod Principibus nec avaris nec indigis ulteriores Imperii magis placeret Amicum. Et solet quidem affirmare Majestas sua Serenissima Illos optimam Omnium sortem traxisse, & nolle se Amicum suum centum annorum cum utriusque* Indiæ *gazâ commutatum. Rationisque loco proprium experimentum subjungi, quandoquidem cùm Subditi sui defecissent, Amici plerique (quod solet) tempori cessissent, & Cælum & Terra in ruinam suam conjurâsse viderentur, dum tantùm de felicitate sua consultarent, Imperatoria tamen vestra Majestas non solùm tunc Tyranni preces repulit, & omnibus qui vel minimum contagione istius rebellionis afflati viderentur præsidium suum negavit, sed Ipsum etiam copiis & facultatibus vestris promptè & benevolè sublevavit. Ideóque Serenissima Sua Majestas, uti libentissimè in manus Imperatorii vestri Legati pecuniæ quas Majestas Vestra Imperatoria Sibi suppeditaverat persolvit, ità semper in Regiæ mentis sacrario depositam retinebit, & ad ultimam Posteritatem transmittet gratissimam omnium beneficiorum Vestrorum memoriam. Et propter tot causas recentes & super solida ista & antiqua fundamenta, Serenissima sua Majestas in ipsissimis Majestatis Vestræ Imperatoriæ verbis, utpote quibus nulla vel per se magis efficacia vel Serenissimæ suæ Majestatis menti magis consona & conformia esse possint declarat,* Majestatem suam Serenissimam animadversô florentissimo Regnorum suorum statu, & sinceriſſimo illo amore, amicitiâ, & frequenti communicatione quæ inter Augustissimum & gloriosæ memoriæ Patrem suum *Carolum* Primum ab ipso Regni sui principio, & Patrem Vestrum Augustissimum gloriosæ etiam memoriæ *Michaelem Phederovicium* Imperatorem & Magnum totius *Russiæ* Ducem viguerunt & inviolata permanserunt, & summâ felicitate & tranquilliate quæ ab illâ causâ in Utriusque Ditiones redundarunt vehementissimè & ex animo cupere non solùm ejusdem affectûs continuationem, sed etiam propiorem, intimiorem, & firmiorem charissimum & fraternum amorem, amicitiam, & frequentem communicationem cum Imperatoriâ Vestrâ Majestate charissimo suo Fratre & amantissimo ut nihil ultrà esse possit. *Deum denique Optimum Maximum solum suum & Vestrum Regem veneratur, ut Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestati longam vitam, regimen tranquillum, perpetuas amicitias, & summum Imperatoriæ Fortunæ cumulum addere velit, & largiri ultra omnium immortalium Vestrorum Majorum felicitatem, & Thronum Vestrum Imperatorium æternâ successione augustissimæ stirpis confirmare quoad Solis & Lunæ cursus duraverint.*

Serenissima sua Majestas resalutat etiam humanissimè magnum Principem Alexium Alexiovicium *Imperii Hæredem, & magnum Principem* Theodorum Alexiovicium (* duas illas Imperatoriæ Pharetræ Sagittas, quas in quemcunque gloriosum scopum Imperatoria Vestra Majestas collineare voluerit neutrâ potuerit aberrare, quos Subditi Vestri tanquam duplex pacis suæ Pignus suspiciunt, Inimici ut ancipitem belli Terrorem reformidant) *Diu est quod Serenissima sua Majestas de præclarâ Eorum indole, & virtute tam illustri genere dignissimâ inaudiverat. Ideóque valde delectatus est dum è Legatis Vestris intelligeret, Eos erga se ità affectos hâc etiam in re Paternum exemplum tam bene imitari: Quod non solum Ipse Dominus meus Serenissimus pro summo beneficio habet, sed etiam pro thesauro ingenti successoribus suis reservabit* (Certò augurans, duos illos Aquilæ *Moscovitici* Pullos, qui hactenus ad lucidissimos Majestatis Vestræ Imperatoriæ oculos visus suos exacuunt atque illustrant, justâ etiam ætate ad Vestrum exemplum alas commoturos & ad summam evolaturos altitudinem, quò vera virtus & labor indefessus magnanimam Heroum Progeniem provehere unquam & efferre potuerint.)

* *Quæ includuntur in istâ Parenthesi, & proxime sequenti, omissa fuerunt in recitatione. Principum absentiæ causâ.*

Quod ad meipsum denique attinet, uti Serenissima sua Majestas nihil mihi potest imperare quod non novo honore me augeat, ita nullum majorem mihi honorem mandare potuit hâc ad Imperatoriam Vestram Majestatem Legatione. Quum enim ex summâ Serenissimæ suæ Majestatis & Augustissimorum Majorum suorum munificentiâ multas possessiones & hæreditarios dignitatis gradus sim adeptus (quibus alios tamen mihi exæquare potuissent) absit verbo invidia, præter Solem assiduum illum inter Imperia Vestra Legatum, nemo est qui in hoc munere jure mihi præponi possit aut anteferri. Cùm igitur particeps hactenus & testis Imperatoriæ Vestræ Majestatis gloriæ & serenitatis (quæ augeri usque & perpetuari voveo) factus fuerim, nihil ultrà est quod exoptem, nisi ut Majestas Vestra Imperatoria eodem porrò favore me velit dignari ad Serenissimæ suæ Majestatis mandata conficienda, in mutuum Utriusque Imperatoriæ Coronæ commodum & Posterorum utilitatem. Ad quam rem ut omni humillimi officii atque erga Serenissimam suam Majestatem obsequii nexu obstringor, totum animum, studium atque industriam meam, prout inceptum tam laudabile postulat, adhibebo. Neque dubito Majestatem Vestram Imperatoriam vicissim tales Viros delegaturum, qui candore, & affectu, celeritate etiam agendi ad tantum opus maturandum maximè sint idonei.

1664.

Most Excellent and most Renowned Prince and Emperour.

HIS most Serene Majesty, my most Gracious Lord and Master, hath lately received from Your Imperial Majesty a most honourable Embassage, the splendour of which as it was most worthy the magnificence of so great a Monarch from whom it proceeded, so the subject was most acceptable to Him to whom it was directed. For as much as it contained, together with the most welcome news of the health and prosperity of Your Imperial Majesty, Your joy for His happy Restauration to His Kingdoms, your memory of the ancient friendship betwixt the glorious Predecessors of both your Majesties and your own most constant resolution to continue and increase the same for the future. So that the inestimable worth of your Imperial affection being expressed and set off by the honour of so conspicuous an Embassie, seemed as a Jewel to whose value nothing could be added by Nature and Art, hath appropriated its utmost perfection. Or rather what the wisest of Princes said concerning a word fitly spoken, your seasonable Imperial Message was like apples of gold in pictures of silver. One thing onely his most Serene Majesty complains of, and not without reason, that Your Imperial Majesty hath thereby prevented Him, and whereas he had nothing earlier in his Royal intentions than to have saluted you with that solemnity which belongs to the greatness of both Your Estates and Friendship, that he must now be the last to perform it. Yet doubtless, considering the parity of Your Years, the conformity of Your Interests, and consequently the sympathy of both Your Inclinations, there was herein neither first nor last betwixt you, but in one instant the like causes must in Your Princely breasts have produced the same resolutions. But even the influence of the celestial luminaries, those truest Emblemes of Majesty, is suspended by the various disposition of inferiour bodies and friends; of whom Your Majesties are the best pattern, although they think the same things could never yet invent so punctual an happiness, as to interchange those thoughts at one and the same minute. Seing therefore the prevention must fall on one side, his most Serene Majesty is content that your Imperial Majesty hath gained the advantage of time upon Him, so that he may not come behind you as he never will in the truth and sincerity of his affections. And therefore as is usual among Friends, he hath thought fit to render you a reason of his actions, and to alledge his most just excuses, that nothing but the multiplicity of his Royal domestick affairs could have so long retarded the honour he receives and pays in sending to you: That in order to this Embassage to your Imperial Majesty he hath postponed the return to other Princes nearer to Him, though none have a situation closer to his heart than your self, and that he hath been so farr from admitting any delay herein, that he hath only watched the most proper opportunity to acquit himself of so due an Obligation. For though his most Serene Majesty consults not the starrs and the position of the heavens as oft as he would undertake any great action; yet he asks counsel of him that is the Creator of them and the first mover of his felicity. And therefore finding himself now stated by his Almighty Grace and Providence in full fruition of all the blessings that can crown a Soveraign head, he hath chosen this as the most fortunate hour to salute so great an Emperour, Friend and Brother, and to congratulate and augurate to Your Imperial Majesty a perpetuity of the same, or, if it may be, greater happiness. For if Victory over Enemies, obedience of Subjects, and multitude of Friends be, as doubtless they are, the greatest strength and ornaments of the Regal Throne, certainly his most serene Majesty having been a miracle of courage and æquanimity in his adverse fortune is at this day a greater miracle of prosperity. For as for Enemies none hath provoked or tried his power, but those infamous Pirates of *Algier*, Enemies of Christianity and mankind, whom therefore at two thousand miles distance he blocked up in their own dens, destroyed their ships, battered their forts, rescued the captives, and forced those miscreants to his own conditions. For his subjects, they have gladly assisted to the punishment of those Traytors and Tyrants, which so long oppressed and misled them, and with so much more veneration and duty to pay their homage unto their natural most Gracious Sovereign, and have with their

1664. their ancient loyalty waſhed out the ſtains of the late Rebellion. And for Friends as he hath no Chriſtian Prince at enmity with him, ſo is there ſcarce any of them but have addreſſed themſelves to him by extraordinary Embaſſages, and have upon their deſires been received into his nearer Alliance; Covenanting firſt to deliver up (as they have done) thoſe deteſtable fugitives who were imbrued in the blood of his moſt glorious Father. And if after all theſe things there were leiſure to diſcourſe of the largeneſs of his Dominions, he hath to his Hereditary Kingdoms in Europe, Himſelf added ſeveral Provinces in Aſia, Africa, and America, beyond whatever was acquired by his immortal Anceſtors. The Sea is his Bridge betwixt ſo diſtant Territories, and as oft as he pleaſes, his Navies do carry a moveable Fronties to all the habitable World: ſo that the Fame of his former affections hath not been heard ſo far as his preſent Dominions extend. But though the Extent of Empire be conſonant to the greatneſs of his mind, the Government of ſubjects natural to his Prudence and Juſtice, and Victory over Enemies muſt needs be guſtable to the height of his Courage, yet he, a Prince ſo well exerciſed in the viciſſitude of humane affairs, could even diſreliſh Victory, becauſe it taſtes of Blood, and relax his Government rather than it ſhould oppreſs the Liberty of Mankind, and looks upon whatſoever Extent of Dominion, but as a confinement of thoſe more capacious thoughts wherewith he adores the Author of all theſe mercies. Nor values he himſelf therefore ſo much upon all theſe things though in themſelves excellent and deſirable; not upon the largeneſs of his Territories, nor the Tranquility of his Kingdoms, nor the fortunateneſs of his Arms, in compariſon of the conſtancy of his Friends. He hath himſelf been faſhioned to it by experience, and is by nature all made up of friendſhip. Nor ſhould I have made this defective rehearſal of things ſo univerſally known, did not the commemoration of his preſent Greatneſs ſhew him to be the more conſiderable Friend, and imply the gratitude he profeſſes to thoſe his Friends who formerly made his adverſity more tolerable, and do now give the trueſt ſeaſon and ſweetneſs to his better fortune. And among all thoſe Friends, who can be preferred, or who indeed is comparable to Your Imperial Majeſty? For whether his moſt Serene Majeſty conſider the Greatneſs of the Prince, the ancientneſs of Alliance, or freſhneſs of Obligations, what tree is there that ſpreads a deeper root, or ſheds a greener ſhade, or bears a fruit more delicious? His moſt Serene Majeſty himſelf uſeth with much delight to diſcourſe among us who have the honour to be neareſt his Sacred Perſon, how above an hundred years ago one of his Royal Anceſtors, *Edward* the ſixth, did out of an heroical mind man out his ſhips to trace out the limits of the World, and joyn the moſt diſtant and unknown Nations by intercourſe. Theſe were they that firſt diſcovered the vaſtneſs of the Northern Ocean counted till then unnavigable, who as the Children of Iſrael with a pillar of fire by night, ſo were conducted by a pillar of continual day through that wilderneſs of waters unto this Your Empire. They may juſtly be ſaid to have invented the true uſe of the load ſtone, and that ſupernatural needle then firſt reſted, at the finding out of your northern principalities, to which it had pointed in vain for ſo many ages. Having eſcaped the hazards of the Sea, they were yet in danger twice to be loſt, firſt in the remaining Journey through ſo ſpacious Dominions, and then in the brightneſs of that Majeſty which they expected not out of their own Country. But they were not only refreſhed, as it was ſeaſonable, by the Courteſie of the then Emperor, but received moreover from his munificency, and as a reward of the Trade then firſt opened and introduced on that ſide of your World, thoſe Immunities and privileges from which thence forward both the Nations have reaped no ſmall Advantage. And ever ſince a moſt ſincere and hereditary Amity hath been tranſmitted between the Succeſſors of both Princes from Father to Son, unto your Majeſties now reigning. 'Twas much about that time that other Princes had ſent out their Navies likewiſe for new Diſcoveries. The *Portugueze* found out and conquered in the *Eaſt-Indies* the Land of pearls and ſpices, though none ſo orient or fragrant as what his preſent Majeſty of *Portugal* hath depoſited by the ſide of my moſt Serene Lord and Maſter. The *Spaniard* in the *Weſt Indies* ſeized upon the mines of Gold and Silver. So that when nothing of value ſeemed left for the Kings of *England*, they found what was more adequate to the deſires of Princes who neither needed nor covered further Empire, a Friend. And his moſt Serene Majeſty is wont to ſay that his was the beſt lot of the three, and that he would not change his Friend of an hundred years for the Treaſure of both the *Indies*. And

1664. He adds for reaſon his own Experiment, foraſmuch as when his Subjects were generally revolted, his Friends as it is uſual moſt of them failed, and when it ſeemed that Heaven and Earth had conſpired his Ruin, while they were but contriving his Happineſs, he was then not only readily aſſiſted by Your Imperial Majeſty, but the addreſſes of the Uſurpers rejected, and Your protection withdrawn from all who might ſeem any way tainted with the infection of that Diſloyalty. And therefore his Moſt Serene Majeſty, as he hath readily repayed into the hands of Your Imperial Ambaſſador, thoſe Sums with which You did then pleaſure him, ſo will he always retain depoſited in the moſt Sacred Receſs of his Royal Heart, and tranſmit to his Succeſſors the memory of all theſe Obligations. And for all theſe new cauſes, and upon thoſe good and ancient grounds, his Moſt Serene Majeſty declares in Your own Imperial Words, than which none could be either more ſignificant in themſelves, or more conſonant to his Senſe, *That his Moſt Serene Majeſty taking into conſideration the Flouriſhing Eſtate of his Kingdoms, and that Intire Brotherly Love and Amity, and frequent Correſpondency which was inviolably held, and continued from the beginning of the Reign of his Royal Father,* Charles *the Firſt, of Bleſſed Memory, with Your Imperial Father of Bleſſed Memory, the Great Lord, Emperor, and Great Duke* Michael Pheoderovitz *of all* Ruſſia *Self-upholder, and the Happineſs and Tranquility thereby accruing to both Dominions, doth moſt earneſtly and heartily deſire, not only the continuance thereof, but a nearer and dearer, and firmer affectionate Brotherly Love, and frequent Correſpondency with Your Imperial Majeſty, his Dear and Loving Brother than formerly.* For Concluſion, wiſhing and praying to the Omnipotent God, His and Your only King and Sovereign, That he will grant You length of Days, Tranquility of Reign, Perpetuity of Friendſhips, and all other Imperial Bleſſings beyond the atchievements of all Your Immortal Anceſtors, and that there may never want of Your moſt Illuſtrious Line to ſit upon Your Imperial Throne, ſo ſo long as the Sun and Moon endure.

His Moſt Serene Majeſty likewiſe returns his moſt Affectionate Salutations and Friendly Congratulations to the Great Prince *Alexis Alexiovitz*, the Heir of Your Imperial Dominions and the Great *Pheodor Alexiovitz*, [*Thoſe two Shafts of the Imperial Quiver, which at whatſoever glorious mark Your Majeſty ſhall draw them, you can miſs with neither: Thoſe two Pledges of Peace to Your Subiects and a double Terror to Your Enemies.*] His Moſt Serene Majeſty had long ſince heard of their Hopefulneſs and Virtues worthy of ſo Illuſtrious a Parentage, and therefore was highly delighted to underſtand by Your Ambaſſadors that in their Affection to him alſo, they did ſo well follow their Fathers patterns, which he therefore thankfully accepts as an Obligation on Himſelf, and a Treaſure for his Succeſſors, [*Certainly augurating that thoſe two Sons of the* Ruſſian *Eagle, as they are now ſharpning their ſighe, daily at the moſt clear Eyes of Your Imperial Majeſty, ſo will alſo in due time extend their Wings after Your Example, and ſoar to the higheſt pitch that true Virtue and indefatigable Labour can carry the magnanimous Off-ſpring of Princes.*]

And now for what concerns my ſelf, as I can receive no command from His Moſt Serene Majeſty, my Moſt Gracious Lord and Maſter, but what places a new Honour upon me, ſo muſt I acknowledge that in chuſing me for this Embaſſage, He has done me as great an Honour as he could command me. For whereas from the ſupreme munificency of Himſelf and His immortal Anceſtors, I have and Inherit ſeveral Poſſeſſions and Dignities (but of which other Men might alſo be equally capable) may it be ſpoken without Vanity, the Sun that only poſts on daily Embaſſage betwixt both Your Dominions, can juſtly diſpute the Precedence with me in this Employment. So that having been thus farr made a partaker and Witneſs of the Glory and Serenity of Your Imperial Majeſty (which may it long continue) I can have nothing further in my wiſhes, than that You will ſtill vouchſafe me the ſame Favour toward the happy expedition of His Moſt Serene Majeſty's Affairs, for the mutual Advantage of both Your Crowns, and the good of Poſterity. Unto which ends, as I am bound by all the Obligations of Duty to my Moſt Gracious Prince, Lord and Maſter, ſo ſhall I bring all the Affection, Zeal and Diligence, which may befit ſo laudable an undertaking. In order to which I doubt not but Your Imperial Majeſty likewiſe will appoint me ſuch Commiſſioners, as ſhall bring the ſame Candor and Inclination, together with that diſpatch and expedition which is neceſſary for the furthering of ſo great and good a deſign.

My

1664. My Lord Ambaſſador having finiſhed his Speech, he was told, That his *Czariſh* Majeſty would do him the Honour to let him kiſs his Hand, (a Ceremony never allowed to *Pagan* Ambaſſadors) which though his Excellency would rather have been diſpenſed with, as being below his Character at that time, yet in compliance with their Cuſtom, he advanced to the Throne, and kiſſed his hand, as did likewiſe all his Gentlemen, in good order, the *Czar*'s Right Hand that was kiſſed being all this while upheld by a *Boyar*, he holding the Scepter in his left; and the Ambaſſador being ſeated upon a Form, which his *Czariſh* Majeſty called for for that purpoſe. My Lord then took an opportunity to recommend Sir *John Hebden*, (who was come along with him from *England*, and had been an Agent for the *Czar* there) to his Majeſty. *This Gentleman*, ſaid he, as he was kiſſing the *Czar*'s Hands next after my Lord *Morpeth*, *is, I ſuppoſe well known to Your Imperial Majeſty, having done You very good Service in* England, *and therefore His Majeſty has a particular Eſteem for him, and has commanded me to recommend him to You in a moſt peculiar manner, when I ſhall have next the Honour of being admitted into Your Imperial Preſence.*

After the Gentlemen had kiſſed the *Czar*'s Hand, the before-mentioned Preſents were brought in by 130 Men, and carried cloſe by the Pillar into an adjacent Room. As they paſs'd by, My Lord Ambaſſador riſing from his Seat, ſaid to the *Czar*, *His Moſt Serene Majeſty ſends theſe Preſents as a Token of his Affection to Your Imperial Majeſty, the value of which will be conſiderably augmented by Your kind Acceptance.* When the Gun was brought in, his Excellency ſaid, *This Gun I received from His Majeſty's own Hand, being very excellent in its kind; His Father of Bleſſed and Glorious Memory uſed to Shoot in it, the Relique of this Renowned Prince he thought could not be better Dedicated than to Your Imperial Majeſty.* As the pair of Piſtols paſs'd by, he ſaid, *That pair of Piſtols were alſo delivered to me by His Majeſty's own Hands, thinking, that their oldneſs would not be leſs acceptable, when Your Imperial Majeſty was acquainted, That they were the ſame, which, after His Exile He made His Triumphant Entry with in His Metropolitan City of* London. After theſe, the Plate was brought in, and among the reſt, a great Silver Baſin Gilt, ſupported by two Men; the others came after theſe, as well thoſe intended for the *Czar* as the two Young Princes; then the Queens to the Great Dutcheſs, and at laſt the Ambaſſadors.

The Audience being ended, his Excellency was reconducted to his Houſe, and (according to Cuſtom) entertained with the *Czar*'s own Meat, of which there were above 100 Diſhes, and Wine, Brandy, and Mead, in great plenty. A certain *Boyar* was alſo ſent by the *Czar* to take care of the Ceremonies to be obſerved at this Entertainment, the chiefeſt of which was to drink Healths, which were all ſet down at length in a Paper. His Excellency was ſeated at the middle of the Table in a Chair of State, with my Lord *Morpeth* on his Right and Sir *John Hebden* on his Left ſide, both at each end of the Table; at a pretty good diſtance from the Ambaſſador, the *Muſcovites* ſat at the oppoſite ſide of the Table, which was ſquare. My Lord made uſe of a Dozen of his own Silver-Gilt Plates, at which the *Boyars* ſeem'd not very well pleaſed, but were diverted by his Excellencies Charming Converſation, and our Muſick. The firſt Health begun by the *Boyar*, who ſupplied the place of Maſter of the Ceremonies, was the *Great Duke's* Health, and then the King of *England*'s, which he drank off with extraordinary cheerfulneſs, becauſe the Ambaſſador preſented him with the Cup, which was Silver-Gilt, and ſo he went away.

The Ambaſſadors ſecond Audience.

The 13th of *Feb.* The Ambaſſador had a ſecond Audience of the *Czar*, this being the firſt Day appointed for the Conference with the *Muſcovite* Commiſſioners. We were conducted to Court in the ſame manner as before, but the Audience Room was much finer Carved and Gilt on the Roof, with good Pictures, pretty handſome Windows, and very rich Tapeſtry. The *Czar* was ſeated upon a Throne, not above two ſteps high, with the Crown on his Head, the Scepter in his Hand, and the Imperial Globe at his Right Side. This being a Private Audience, the *Czar* enquired after the Ambaſſador's Health, and told him, That he having underſtood his Majeſty's Intention out of his Letters, he had nominated Six Commiſſioners to Treat with him. After a quarter of an hours ſtay, during which the Ambaſſador ſtood very near the *Czar*, but uncovered, he went into the Apartment where the Commiſſioners expected his coming; he delivered to them two Memorials, one concerning the promiſed Satisfaction for the Affront put upon him before his Entry; the ſecond, about the reſtitution of the Privileges formerly granted to the *Engliſh* Merchants. The firſt, contains in Subſtance, 'That after the Ambaſſadors arrival at the 'Taws, within 5 Verſts of *Muſco*, notice having been gi-

The firſt Memorial delivered by the Ambaſſador.

'ven him to be ready for his Entrance by 9 a Clock the 5th 1664.
'of *Feb.* he had accordingly got himſelf and his Train
'in a readineſs againſt the appointed time, notwithſtand-
'ing which he had been detained in a Nauſeous place,
'without Meat or Drink: That when Orders were ſent
'at laſt for their departure, they were led through By-
'ways, till inſtead of Entring the City, they were Or-
'dered to Lodge in a mean Village, at three Verſts di-
'ſtance from *Muſco*: That he thereupon thought himſelf
'obliged to give an account of it to his *Czariſh* Majeſty,
'and to deſire due Satisfaction, but before he received
'anſwer to the ſaid Letter, a *Diack* being ſent by the
'*Czar* to excuſe the matter, and to promiſe Satisfaction,
'he had accordingly made his Entry the 7th of *Feb.*
'But, no due Reparation being offered hitherto for the
'ſaid Indignity, by which he had been detained a whole
'Day from Entring upon the Buſineſs he was entruſted
'with by his *Britannick* Majeſty, whoſe Honour did
'daily, and was likely to ſuffer more and more by it,
'without a Publick Satisfaction; he thought it his utmoſt
'Duty, as he was anſwerable with his Head to his Royal
'Maſter, if he ſhould paſs ſuch an Affront by in Silence,
'to deſire his *Czariſh* Majeſty to have an Authentick
'Narrative drawn of the true reaſons of the ſaid Diſ-
'order, of the Names of thoſe that were concerned
'therein, and what example of Juſtice his Majeſty had
'ſhew'd upon them, and to have the ſame delivered un-
'der the Commiſſioners Hands and Seals to him for his
'Juſtification.

The Second Memorial concerning the Privileges, con- The ſecond Memorial.
tained, 'That, whereas the Foundation of the good
'Correſpondence betwixt the Kings of *England*, and
'*Ruſſian* Emperors, was laid in the Privileges granted by
'the ſaid Emperors to the *Engliſh* Merchants, who were
'the firſt that eſtabliſh'd the Traffick at *Archangel*, to the
'great and mutual Benefit of both Subjects, but
'eſpecially of the *Muſcovites*, his Majeſty of *Great Bri-*
'tain being willing to improve the Brotherly Amity
'ſettled betwixt their Anceſtors, and conſidering that the
'before-mentioned Privileges have proved the moſt proper
'and permanent grounds of that perpetual Friendſhip,
'had commanded him to deſire the Reſtitution of the
'ſaid Privileges, as they had been enjoyed in the time of
'the Father of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, and in the Reign
'of his preſent Imperial Majeſty, before they were taken
'away by the late Rebellion.

The 17th. The Ambaſſador had a ſecond Conference with the Commiſſioners, who reading their Anſwer to him, but refuſing to give him a Copy of it, his Excellency began to ſpeak to them in pretty hard terms; at which time, it ſo happening, that a Caſement of a Window in the Room where they were fell down, and the Commiſſioners were ſo terrified thereat, that it was a long while before they could recover themſelves.

The 26th. *Pronchiſſof* brought the Ambaſſador a Copy of the Commiſſioners Anſwer, read to him the 17th. in which, as to the Reparation demanded, they (after they had extoll'd his Reception to the Skie) laid the fault of this miſhap upon the miſtake of the Meſſengers. That The *Ruſſian* Commiſſioners Anſwer to the Memorials.
after this, his *Czariſh* Majeſty not judging it convenient he ſhould make his Solemn Entry by Night, had ordered him to be Lodged near *Muſco*, that ſo he might be received with the more Splendor the next Day, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty might have the opportunity to teſtifie to all that were preſent in that City, what Amity he bore to his *Britannick* Majeſty. They further told his Excellency, That he ſtaid a great while the next Day, and that he ought to have demanded Satisfaction in that place; but that, however, the Meſſengers were chaſtiſed for their miſtake. As to the ſecond Memorial, they told the Ambaſſador, That the Privileges of the *Engliſh* at *Archangel* were taken away, becauſe they were engaged in the late Rebellion of *England*; to confirm which, they alledged, That one *Luke Nightingale* had ſecretly been ſent by King *Charles* I. to deſire the aboliſhment of theſe Privileges. They further added, That the ſaid *Nightingale* had diſcovered to ſome of the *Boyars*, a deſign theſe Merchants had laid with one *John Cartwrite*, belonging to the ſaid Company, to Rob the *Czar*'s Subjects in the *Eaſt Countries*, which deſign the ſaid *Cartwrite* had effectually put in execution not long after, and that *John Hebden* (meaning the Knight we mentioned before) had been *Cartwrite*'s Factor. Beſides this, they accuſed the Company of having neglected to furniſh the *Czar*'s Treaſury with their Commodities, and eſpecially *Tobacco*, and carried Foreigners Goods through the Counrry without paying any Cuſtoms; that this had occaſioned a general Complaint of the *Ruſſian* Merchants and Tradeſmen, that the *Engliſh* engroſs'd all the Trade, and grew vaſtly Rich, whereas the *Czars* Subjects were thereby Impoveriſh'd. They further alledged, That the Merchants unto whom thoſe Privileges were granted firſt of all being dead long

ſince

1664. since, the said Privileges were expired with them. Last of all, they began to pick a Quarrel with his Excellency concerning the Title of *Most Illustrious*, given to his *Czarish* Majesty. *Pronchissof* who had desired a *Latin* Copy of his Excellencies Speech, having pick'd out the word *Illustrissimus* to cavel upon, alledging the same to be much Inferiour to the Dignity of their *Great Monarch*, requiring his Excellency to use for the future the word *Serenissimus*, and to acquaint his *Britannick* Majesty to use the word *Serene*, instead of *most Illustrious*, in his Letters to the *Czar*. They alledged in their behalf, That all the other Princes of *Europe*, and the *Roman* Emperour himself did give his *Czarish* Majesty that Title, in confirmation of which they produced a Letter; wherein his Excellency having taken notice that the Emperour called him only *Czar*, whereas he had always Stiled him Emperour, he resolved ever after to do the same.

The Ambassadors Reply to their Answer.

The 29th. The Ambassador at another Conference made the following Reply, concerning the demanded Reparation; That considering the good order that was observed in his *Czarish* Majesty's Armies, tho' at a great distance, he could scarce conceive, that after his slow Journey from *Volegda*, and three Days stay under the Gates of *Musco*, they should not be in readiness for the Reception of the Ambassador of a Friend; and that it was more surprizing to him that his Majesty's Messengers who are used to pass through such Spacious Dominions, nay even through the *Tartarian* Desarts, should mistake their way by Day-light, within 5 Miles of the Capital City, and the *Czar*'s Residence; especially if they would consider, That certain Persons sent the same Day from the same place, to offer an Affront to Sir *John Hebden*, found the way early in the Morning without the least difficulty. He saw therefore himself under an indispensable obligation, in respect of the Honour due to his Majesty, which had thereby been exposed to the scorn of Strangers who were Eye-witness of the action, to demand due Reparation for it in his first Memorial. He told them further, That instead of the demanded Satisfaction, they had been pleased to charge him in their Answer of the 26th of *Feb.* That he had staid late, tho' several Messengers were sent to him; that perhaps these Messengers, like the former, might have lost their way; that the first Messenger he had seen that day was the *Diack* of the *Czar*'s Cabiner, who having promised him Satisfaction, he was ready in a quarter of an Hour after with his Train; and that, tho' nothing could have been more acceptable to him, than to have made his Publick Entry by Day, which if he had delayed (as he had sufficient occasion to do) till next Morning, might have succeeded according to his Wish, yet out of Complacency to his *Czarish* Majesty, he had chosen that obscurity rather than be detained longer from his Majesty's Presence. But that whereas they objected, he ought not to have ask'd Satisfaction for what had pass'd the day before in that place; he desired them to forbear these expressions, he acknowledging no other Judge in that case but the King his Master; though at the same time he was ready to confess, that if upon the word of so considerable a Person as the *Diack* of the Imperial Cabinet, he had Enter'd the City, and upon the fairest hopes given him by some of the chiefest *Boyars*, he had upon their Honour engaged into Business, and no Reparation be made, he had indeed done what he ought not, and that he positively declared that no such Satisfaction had been made hitherto. The extraordinary Honours done him by his *Czarish* Majesty at the Day of his Entry, being not to be interpreted as a Reparation for the Dishonours of the preceeding Days; and as to what they had alledged concerning the punishment of the Transgressors, he would appeal to themselves, whether, provided it was their own Case, they would look upon it as a suitable Satisfaction to the *Czar*, or a sufficient discharge for themselves; for which reasons he was obliged not to desist from his demands made in his First Memorial, of the 13th of *Feb.* Concerning the taking away of the Privileges of the *English* Merchants of *Archangel*, he told them, That whatsoever had been transacted in Publick or Private upon that account, was sufficiently known to the King of *Great Britain*, who had been very ready to interpret it to the best advantage; and though many of his Subjects, both here and in *England*, were free from the guilt of that Rebellion, and several Attestations from the Lord *Culpeper*, then his Majesty's Ambassador in this Court, of their Loyalty, and shew'd their Abhorrence of that detestable Parricide, by going into Mourning, and furnishing considerable Sums of Money, yet as all these particulars might not come to his *Czarish* Majesty's knowledge, the sending away of the *English* Merchants out of the *Muscovite* Dominions, and detaining their Effects, was lookt upon by his Majesty as an effect of the *Czar*'s Generosity, especially if what was alledged by the *Boyars*, his *Czarish* Majesty's Commissioners, concerning *Luke Nightingale*'s Negotiations, be taken in the same Sense, as had been proposed in their Reply. But that it was manifest that the said *Nightingale* did not come with any Secret Commission, his Letter being unsealed; neither was the said Letter from his Majesty, of which they might be sufficiently convinced, if they would produce it, which he desired in his Majesty's Name might be done. That what they said concerning his being always near the King's Person, was so far from being true, that his Majesty never knew, nay not so much as ever heard of him, before notice was given him of his Crimes in *Russia*, the said *Nightingale* being a Broken Merchant, a Perjured Fellow, and an Imposture. To convince them of the truth of it, he desired them to cast an Eye upon an Extract of a Letter written by King *Charles* I. of *Blessed Memory*, in Answer to the *Czar*'s Letter, dated *July* 11th, 7155, wherein he gave an account of the said *Nightingale*'s proceedings; which by reason of his succeeding Death, which followed not long after, was never sent over, but since a Copy thereof was delivered to him out of his *Britannick* Majesty's Secretary's Office. *Lastly, Whereas Your Imperial Majesty hath intimated, That one* Luke Nightingale *had presumed to Treat with Your Imperial Majesty in Our Name, and to present a Writing in Your Majesty's Office, We therefore finding Our Selves much dishonoured thereby, desire a Copy of the said Writing, that thereupon, when he shall repair into Our Jurisdictions, We may, according to Justice, proceed against him, as a Person abusing Our Name, and Treating without Our Royal Commission and Order, in prepounding Matters Repugnant to Our Royal Intentions*, 1638. He further told them, That tho' the Fellow had escaped Justice by his death, yet he desired the said Letter to be delivered into his hands, and that the *Boyars* he then Treated with might be named, that accordingly he might be able to give the better Account of it to the King. That the said *Nightingale* having been proved an Impostor, and consequently not the least account ought to be made of his words; he could not comprehend upon what account it was, the said Commissioners had mention'd Sir *John Hebden*, who had been Ten Years before disengaged from the Service of *Cartwright*, and who procured the detainure of *Nightingale* at *Musco*, till he made his escape, and afterwards died at *Riga*. He said, That however, the said *Boyars* and Commissioners had acted very prudently, in not admitting the said Sir *John Hebden* into the Conference, though required by him; they being sensible that the said Gentleman could discover the whole Truth in an instant. What they had alledged against *Cartwright*, he reply'd, If out of Revenge he had sought for Reparation abroad against his Late Majesty's Will or Knowledge, he was not to be answerable for it, at this time. But as for the Miscarriages in way of Trade charged upon the *English* Merchants, he said, It was a thing never complain'd of before; and that therefore their Allegations would have carried along with them a much greater weight, if they had named the particular Persons accused of the said Miscarriages, it being positively affirm'd by the said Merchants, That they never neglected to furnish his *Czarish* Majesty's Treasury with Cloth, Tin, Lead, Pewter, and all other Commodities of the Growth and Manufactury of *England*, at a Cheaper Rate than the *Dutch* or *Hamburgher* Merchants could, and that they have several times offered these Commodities at the same price they cost, which had been rejected, and such as had been acceped of, the Factors could scarce ever get their Monies without Bribing the *Czar*'s Officers, those that did otherwise being forced to go away without it. That concerning the complaint of their Importing *Tobacco*, the Company had taken all effectual means (each Member being under an Oath) by burning the same publickly, and otherwise to prevent it; That on the Trading of prohibited Commodities, or carrying Foreign Goods into the Country Custom-Free, they had always used all imaginable precautions, by making a strict Order, That all Transgressors should be delivered to the Emperor, and not enjoy the Protection of the Company; Nay, that to remove all occasion of jealousy, they had made a strict Order, To prohibit all Trade with the *Dutch*, *Hamburghers*, and other Foreigners. That what they alledged of the first Merchants being dead, it was always understood, That the Privileges then granted were not made to any particular or individual Persons, but to the whole Nation, and consequently to all that should succeed them in the same Quality; That it was very probable that the *Gosesy* or *Czar*'s Factors, might Petition against the Privileges of the *English* Merchants, by which they hoped to engross the whole Trade to themselves, to the great prejudice of his *Czarish* Majesty's Subjects in general, who did reap no small advantage by the *English* Trade.

1664.

That

1664. That therefore, without inſiſting further upon thoſe Matters, which might be debated in the enſuing Conferences, the whole ſtreſs of the Argument did turn upon this; that, if the Privileges were taken away upon occaſion of the Rebellion, and the impoſture of *Luke Nightingal*, the ſame being now diſcovered, and the Rebellion ceaſed, and pardoned, this was the time for reſtoring the Privileges, according to his Majeſty's deſire, when offer'd by him to acknowledge ſuch an Obligation, by renewing the ancient Orders, and making new Proviſions againſt any future Miſcarriages. That the deſire the King his Maſter had of ſeeing the ſaid Privileges reſtored, did not ſo much proceed from the great advantage his Subjects had reap'd thereby, in compariſon of thoſe of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, or from any deſire of recompence for thoſe Obligations his *Czariſh* Majeſty had received from the Crown of *England*, upon ſeveral Emergent occaſions, but as he look'd upon theſe Privileges, as the Foundation ſtone of that Amity, tranſmitted for ſo long continuance of years on both ſides from Father to Son. That his Majeſty and his Subjects did not in the leaſt doubt, but that according to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Letter, Dated 28th of *July*, 1661. where he aſſures his Majeſty of *Great Britain*: *That as ſoon as his Ambaſſadour ſhould arrive and declare to him his Commiſſion, he would be ready to the utmoſt of his Power to give Aſſent thereto*; and, upon his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Letter of the 21ſt of *July*, 1661. where he ſays, *That he earneſtly deſired only the Continuation of their ancient Friendſhip, but a more ſtrict and affectionate Amity, and to be ready upon all occaſions to the utmoſt of his Power, to anſwer the Deſires of his Majeſty, his dear and loving Brother*; he ſaid, That theſe Expreſſions did not give them room to doubt, but that theſe Privileges would have been granted, without the leaſt Contradiction; it being not to be imagined, that there could be a Continuation, and encreaſe of the ancient Friendſhip without them. And, to convince the *Boyars*, and his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Councellours, that this Requeſt was not exorbitant, he could give them an inſtance of this kind in *England* it ſelf, where ſome 100 years ago, they being beholding for their Traffic to the *Hanſeatick* Towns, who brought divers ſorts of Commodities thither in their own Ships, had ſeveral conſiderable Privileges granted them by the King's of *England*; and notwithſtanding by length of time, the tide of Trade was quite turn'd in *England*, the ſame Privileges had been ever ſince continued, and renewed after the happy Reſtauration of his Majeſty; who could not but be fruſtrated in the moſt ſenſible part of his hopes, when he ſhould underſtand, that whereas his Subjects have recovered their former Privileges in all other places, the ſame ſhould remain unaccompliſh'd amongſt his moſt ancient Allies; and, as the King's of *England* were moſt generally the freeſt in Granting, ſo they were the niceſt of their Honours, which did oblige him to deſire a definitive Anſwer, that accordingly he might make ſuitable Preparations for his Departure.

In relation to the Title of *Illuſtriſſimus*, inſtead of their pretended *Sereniſſimus*, he alledged, That the Paper being only a Tranſlation out of *Engliſh*, not delivered into the Embaſſy's Office, but only given as a piece of Curioſity to his Majeſty's Chancellour *Evan Offanaſty Pronchiſſof*, and not ſubſcribed by himſelf, and which was reſtored to him ſince the *Boyars* were ill grounded in this Point. But however a due compariſon being made according to the Grammatical Rules betwixt the words *Illuſtriſſimus* and *Sereniſſimus*, the firſt ought to Claim the precedency, *Serenus* ſignifying in its natural Signification no more than Calm, and being properly adapted to the Calmneſs of the weather; whereas *illuſtris* implys that which is reſplendent, bright and glorious by its original Light, in which Senſe it was uſed by the Poets, and attributed to the Sun the Fountain of Light. But that, ſeeing the *Ruſſians* were not as yet arriv'd to the true nicety of the *Latin* Tongue, he could not but let them know, that indeed, ſince the Declenſion of the *Latin* Tongue from its native Purity, and ſince the World had ſtood in want of words to ſupply the modern ambition of Titles; the word *Sereniſſimus* as well as ſeveral others, had been uſhered into the Titles of leſſer as well as greater Princes; but that, ſuppoſing, (but not confeſs'd) the word *Illuſtris* had by modern uſe been forc'd to give way to *Serenus*, the addition of the word Emperour, muſt make it at leaſt of the ſame value. That, ſince they had mentioned to him the Emperour of *Germany*'s Letter to the *Czar* written in *High-Dutch*, they would find that he had not made uſe of the Title of *Durchlenchtigſter*, (the ſame with *Illuſtriſſimus*) being a Title he reſerved for himſelf; whereas the *Dutch* in their Letter to his *Czariſh* Majeſty of the 16th of *Jan.* 1663. ſtiled him *Doorlenchtigſte*, the ſame in their Language with *Illuſtriſſimus*. But that, to be ſhort, his Majeſty had in his Letter to the *Czar* made uſe of this word, according to the conſtant practice of his own Court, always joyning the ſame with *moſt High and moſt Potent*, and adding after it, *Great Lord, Emperour*, the higheſt Title that ever was, or can be given to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, the King of *England* being always willing to give to each Prince his proper Title, but out of a peculiar Amity to his *Czariſh* Majeſty to pay them in ſuperfluity, which was the reaſon he had thought fit to add the word *Illuſtrious*; in which Senſe he himſelf had alſo uſed it in the *Latin* in his Speech; ſolemnly proteſting, that by the word *Illuſtriſſimus* he had not the leaſt Intention of diminiſhing his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Titles, but only to follow the footſteps of his Royal Maſter. He further added, That ſince they were entred upon the point of Titles, he muſt acquaint them, that the moſt ancient Title of *Defender of the Faith* belonging to the Kings of *England*, had been neglected by them, he deſired that in all the Letters to be ſent to the King his Maſter, for the future, the ſame might be carefully inſerted. 1664.

The 9th of *March*, an Anſwer was given in to the Ambaſſadour, by *Pronchiſſof* to his Reply. After many cavillings about Words and certain Expreſſions, which they pretended were ſpoken ſlightingly, they denied that the Privileges of the Merchants were the Foundation of the Friendſhip betwixt the two Crowns; from thence they proceeded to enumerate the Obligations of the King of *England* to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, who in his Exile had ſent him divers Letters, and aſſiſted him (as they term'd it) with Bread and Money, whereas his *Britannick* Majeſty did not as much as offer the leaſt aſſiſtance to the *Czar* againſt the *Crim Tartars* and *Poles*, as his Father had done to his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Father againſt the *Poles*; nay, that the Merchants in *England* had denied the *Czar's* Ambaſſadours Money for his Wars. They offer'd however, That his *Czariſh* Majeſty would grant the freedom of Trade to ten *Engliſh* Merchants, to be appointed by his *Britannick* Majeſty under certain Conditions, but not, till after the Wars with *Poland* and the *Crim Tartars* was ended. Then they began to Quarrel again about the Titles, but eſpecially, that the Ambaſſadour ſhould ſay, they were not well grounded, whereas at the Conference he had call'd them *Wiſe* and *Right Honourable*, from whence they would infer, that he had made a Contradiction. The anſwer of the Commiſſioners, to the Ambaſſadour's Reply.

His Excellency at the Conference of the 22d. of *March* replyed, That, they had miſ-underſtood his words, and conſequently miſtaken the Senſe; but that, for the reſt, they acted rather like Judges, than Councellours in their Cenſures, having in their laſt Anſwer, perhaps in haſte (though they were three weeks about it) left out the uſual Complement, *as we conceive*. The next thing propoſed by his Lordſhip, was a repeated Demand of the ſo often deſired Satisfaction. His Excellency being not a little diſſatisfied at the reproach of his *Czariſh* Majeſty's aſſiſtance, he told them, That the ſame had been ſufficiently acknowledged on their ſide to all the World, but, that they would do very well to remember, that as the ſtricteſt Obligations uſed to be worn out by too much handling; ſo the good Actions too often repeated by a Benefactor. What they offer'd in relation to that now, he had no Commiſſion to treat upon that Head, unleſs it were concerning the Reſtitution of the Privileges. In anſwer to this Complaint, that his Majeſty did not aſſiſt the *Czar* againſt his Enemies, he told them, That ſeeing they did weigh the Actions of Princes by Ounces, he might with the ſame reaſon tell them, that *Charles* I. of bleſſed Memory, did lend his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Father of highly glorious Memory, beſides the Forces under *Sanderſon* 40000 Rixdollars; which were repaid, and that his preſent *Czariſh* Majeſty had lent his Royal Maſter 40000 Crowns, and they were all repaid; that beſides this the preſent King of *England* had given leave to Sir *John Hebden* to levy 3000 Horſe and Foot, which might have proved an equivalent to their Bread and Money, had it taken effect, and that it did not was not his Majeſty's fault; what they alledged concerning that he had told them, *they were not well grounded*, he deſired them to uſe the ſame Expreſſions to him, as often as they ſhould have occaſion. The Ambaſſadour's Reply.

1664. Another Memorial delivered by the Ambaſſadour.

The Ambaſſadour at the ſame time delivered to them a Memorial, containing ſeveral Demands in relation to his Majeſty's Subjects living in *Muſcovy, viz.* Satisfaction to the *Engliſh* Merchants for their old, as well as new Debts, and their Houſes; that all his Majeſty's Subjects without exception might have free Liberty to return, and that all *Engliſh* Merchants, at their Requeſt ſhould have Paſſes granted them for their Wives and Families to return. Laſt of all, he deſired another private Audience of his *Czariſh* Majeſty, in hopes of having the opportunity to repreſent the reaſonableneſs of his Demands to the *Czar* in Perſon, and to meet with a more favourable Interpretation of them at his hands, than he had done with the Commiſſioners; it was a conſiderable time, before he could obtain that Favour which they at laſt agreed to, yet under condition that he ſhould not ſpeak of any Buſineſs, which his Excellency being not ſatisfied with, as not anſwering his Purpoſe, he had Liberty granted him by the *Czar*, to ſpeak to him concerning the Buſineſs in hand; it was the 22d of *April*, when being conducted about ten a Clock at Night into the *Czar*'s own Lodging Room, he had full Liberty to Diſcourſe the *Czar* till one a Clock in the Morning, and to give more weight to the Matter, after a ſhort Preamble from himſelf, he ſpoke in the King's own Perſon as followed.

Sereniſſima atque Potentiſſima Czarea Majeſtas.

QUum decem Septimanæ effluxerint ex quo Czarea Veſtra Majeſtas negotiorum meorum curam proximis ſuis Magnatibus & Conſiliariis delegavit, & tamen indies ab optato Legationis noſtræ ſucceſſu me longiùs abeſſe comperiam; coactus ſum, quod ſolent Viatores qui Fluminis rapiditatem aut flexum ſuperare nequeunt, ad ipſum fontem contendere. Quicquid per tam ampla Imperii Veſtri ſpatia, ſive poteſtatis ſive rationis, reperitur à Czareâ Veſtrâ Majeſtate tanquam unica fonte atque origine manat & derivatur. Et uti omnium Subditorum veſtrorum eſt ſeipſos ſuáſque ſententias Summæ Veſtræ Poteſtati ſubjicere, ità neque ego rectiſſimæ veſtræ Rationi meipſum & totius negotii Noſtri judicium permittere recuſem. Mihi enim videtur Deum Optimum Maximum uti olim Salomoni, *ità Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati non ſolùm divitias atque honores, ſed ſapientiam quoque & prudentiam largitum; ut neque ex Auguſtiſſimis veſtris Majoribus ullus cum Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate poſſit comparari, neque Veſtri ſimilis in poſterum aliquando poſſit exoriri. Hinc eſt quod à Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate ſecretò hodie audiri petierim, & impetraverim. Ità etiam magnus ille* Johannes Baſilii, *qui primus fundamenta jecit amicitiæ inter* Angliæ & Ruſſiæ *Coronas, & Privilegia illa mercatoribus* Anglis *conceſſit, ità Ille remotus arbitris cum Legatis Regum & Regnarum* Angliæ *agere, & familiarius colloqui ſolebat, adeóque Conſiliariis quibuſdam ſuis & Domino Cancellario fruſtrà renitentibus tam certas rerum ſuarum menſuras, inſiit ut ab illo tempore uſque ad Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis regni initia, aut ad hunc diem, nemo mutuam illam amicitiam inter Utraſque Coronas & Nationes convellere aut labefactare potuerit. Et ego qui eandem materiam & animo non minùs ſincero inter Principes, majorem etiam affectum mutuò profitentes pertracto; non dubito, quin & ipſe bono cum Deo à Clariſſima Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis oculis cum eodem optato Legationis noſtræ fructu ſim dimittendus.*

Quum enim cæteri omnes poteniſſimi Europæ *Principes nullo nuncio à Sereniſſimâ ſuâ Majeſtate accepto curaverint, ut Legationibus Extraodinariis gratulabundi Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem in Regna ſua redeuntem certatim proſequerentur: Regia ſua Majeſtas pro ſingulari ſua benevolentia, atque erga Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem affectu, ad Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem ſolam ex omnibus Principibus Chriſtianis prior literas dedit 10mo. Maji. Anno 1661. ante Legatorum veſtrorum adventum. Quibus Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem de lætiſſimo ſuo reditu certiorem fecit, & ſimul de Czareâ Veſtrâ in rebus ſuis adverſis fraternæ benevolentiæ gratias egit. Iiſdem etiam literis ſignificavit ſe* Johanni Hebden *Equiti aurato, tametſi nullas ad Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem à Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate literas, quas vocant Credentiales, pertuliſſet; ea tamen fiducia quam etiam in eodem* Hebdenio *Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem reponere credebat indulſiſſe ei petenti, ut tria millia equitum & peditum ſub Ducibus probatæ fidei & virtutis pro Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate in regnis ſuis conſcriberet. Illud inſuper addidit ſe Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis inimicis Regiorum ſuorum Miniſtrorum interventu ſignificaturum quam gratum ſibi foret, ut honeſta & firma pace cum Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate deciderent. Quòd ſi eorum pertinaciâ & culpâ minus ſuccederet, ſe effecturum ut & illis & toti terrarum Orbi innoteſceret, quantopere Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati cupiat, & rationes Veſtras ſingulari cura amplectatur. Quin & magnanimitatem Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis prædicat, qua mercatoribus* Anglis *utpote qui nuperæ rebellionis contagione affluti viderentur, præſidium ſuum negavit, & ſimul rogat ut quoniam omnes Subditi ſui jam poſtliminio in fidem ſuam Regiam redierunt, Czareæ quoque Majeſtati placeret Mercatorum Privilegia in integrum reſtituere, & voluntatem veſtram ea in re declarare. Quod ſimul ac Czarea veſtra Majeſtas declaraverit, Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem Legatum ſuum miſſurum qui Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis humanitatem & benevolentiam Regio ſuo ſenſu celebraret, & omnimoda mutui affectus officia cum Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate reciprocaret. His acceptis Czarea veſtra Majeſtas per literas reſpondit 28. Julii Anno 1661. Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati in votis & animo eſſe eandem amicitiam cum Regiâ ſuâ Majeſtate colere quæ inter Patres Veſtros beatæ memoriæ coaluerat, & quod ad illa attineret de quibus regia ſua Majeſtas ſe Legatum miſſurum confirmaverat Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem paratam iri, quantum in ſe aut quantum poſſibile eſſet de iis Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtati aſſentiri. Et poſt hæc Czarea veſtra Majeſtatis alteris literis 31 Julii Anno 1662. per Legatos veſtros Extraordinarios declaravit Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem animadverſo florentiſſimo ditionum ſuarum ſtatu, & ſinceriſſimo illo amore, amicitia, & frequenti communicatione, quæ inter auguſtiſſimos utriuſque Principis Patres inviolata permanſerunt, & ſummâ felicitate & tranquilitate quæ ab illâ origine in Utriuſque ditiones redundarunt, vehementiſſimè & ex animo cupere non ſolum ejuſdem affectus continuationem, ſed etiam propiorem, intimiorem, & firmiorem, chariſſimum, & benedictum fraternum amorem, amicitiam, & frequentem communicationem cum Regiâ ſuâ Majeſtate, chariſſimo ſuo Fratre & amantiſſimo ſupra quod antea fuerit cum ſumma promptitudine & animi alacritate ad obſecundandum omni occaſione Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis chariſſimi veſtri Fratris votis, quantum Czarea veſtra Majeſtas maximè potuerit. His luculentiſſimis & certiſſimis ex Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis parte teſtimoniis freta Regia ſua Majeſtas me ad Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem legavit, & quod ex Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis parte & ſuo mandato coram & toto mundo audiente Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati, de pari & mutuo Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis erga Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem affectu expoſui procul dubio in memoria Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtatis penitus inſedit. Czarea Veſtra Majeſtas ſtatim delegavit, qui mecum agerent, Viros ſumma nobilitate & maximo rerum uſu atque experientia pollentes, pro quo beneficio gratias quas poſſum maximas Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati perſolvo, & utinam non minores perſolvere poſſim de eorum omnium affectu erga amicitiam inter duas Coronas & celeritate in negotiis noſtris tractandis à Czarea veſtra Majeſtate eorum curæ commiſſis. Sed illi quum primo Colloquio ex Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis præſcripto Privilegiorum reſtitutionem primò propoſuerim, ſignificando ſimul poſt eorum conceſſionem me alia inſuper in mandatis habere pro ſummo Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis affectu Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtati retribuenda, reſponſum mihi reddiderunt tam ab omni ſpe noſtra abhorrens, & alienum, ut neque ſi Cœlum ipſum corruiſſet, uti feneſtræ Cubiculi ad ejus recitationem, bis ingenti cum fragore ſunt devolutæ magis prodigioſum & inexpectatum mihi accidere potuiſſet. Idem erat acſi omnem Privilegiorum ſpem præcidiſſent. Primò quidem nuperam in* Angliâ *rebellionem cauſantur. Poſtea affirmant Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem beatæ memoriæ per* Lucam *quendam* Nightingale *petiiſſe ut Privilegia illa reſcinderentur. Tum varias mercatorum* Anglorum *fraudes prætexunt. Deinde ſupplices literas Publicanorum & Mercatorum totius* Ruſſiæ. *Et Mercatores* Anglos *emortuos affirmant. Tandem ſecundo ſcripto Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtatis bella cum* Tartaro Crimæo *&* Polono *objiciunt. Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem pecunias ad Majeſtatis Veſtræ bella Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati ſuppeditar inoluiſſe. Mercatores dem* Ruſſicæ *in* Angliâ *Societatis idem Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtatis Legatis Extraordinariis denegaſſe. Et alia quædam argumenta ad numerum faciendum aſtruunt, quorum vel unum ſi prius contra Privilegia omnimodo ſtatuntum eſt ſufficere potuiſſet; ſed ne quidem omnia unam ſatis honeſtam & juſtam cauſam componere poſſint ſi modo tam acri & profundo quale eſt Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtatis judicio perpendantur. Quum igitur hoc modo proximi Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis Magnates & Conciliarii omnem in præſentia Privilegiorum ſpem præſecarent, & inſtarent ſolummodo ut alia Regiæ ſuæ Majeſtatis mandata ſecum communicare pergerem. Ego verò ſi*

1664.

1664. *si quid illi in Czareæ Vestræ Majestatis rem proponendum haberent quandoquidem hoc illis præcipuè incumbebat, commodum responsum pollicerer & de hoc solo mihi satisfieri rogarem, num si quæ ego alia in mandatis haberem digna quæ privilegiis permutari possent viderentur ipsi potestatem ea concedendi haberent, illi nullo modo aut potuerunt aut voluerunt hâc in re mihi satisfacere. Ad Czaream Vestram Majestatem provoco, quum ego plenissimas autoritatis literas quod per se sufficit à Regiâ suâ Majestate Czareæ vestræ Majestati obtulerim, & aliâ etiam autoritate à Regiâ suâ Majestate sub magno Sigillo Angliæ, ad Privilegia recuperanda essem munitus, utrum meum esset Regiæ & Fraternæ benevolentiæ arcana illis committere, qui vel nullam omnino vel tantummodo denegandi potestatem non itidem assentiendi & transigendi vim haberent. Quocirca quum negotium nostrum huc redierit, & hujusmodi responsa à proximis Czareæ vestræ Majestatis Magnatibus & Consiliariis acceperim, adeóque è nostris manibus totius rei disceptatio ad Regiam suam Majestatem & Czaream vestram Majestatem brevi sit devolvenda, liceat in quantum Serenissimum Regem & Dominum meum in hoc munere repræsento, etiam Regis sua verba hâc occasione referre & imitari, tanquam coram congredi & inenarrabiles Vestras Majestates in clarissimis alterutrius oculis splendidissimis illis veræ amicitiæ speculis simul contemplari Vobis daretur. Quantum ego quidem tenuiori nostro judicio profundissimos Regiæ suæ Majestatis sensus capere & conjecturâ assequi valeo, sic omnino esset dicturus.*

Si novum aliquid à Czareâ Vestrâ Majestate Fratre nostro amantissimo petiissem, aut ad quod Czarea Vestra Majestas se prius non obstrinxisset minori cum animi agritudine tam deliberationem Vestram tolerare & forsitan libenter sustulisse potuissem. Privilegia autem illa ultra centum annos steterunt, & duratione sua supremæ rationis, quæ primùm constituta fuerunt, soliditatem approbarunt, & rarò quidem antiquæ amicitiæ & consiliorum fundamenta sine periculo & discrimine succutere aut movere successit. Et quod ad Czareæ vestræ Majestatis obligationem attinet (ut omittam Czareæ vestræ Majestatis sub ipsa regiminis sui initia Anno 1645. per Archangeli *Præfectum ad mercatores* Anglos, *declarationem Czaream vestram Majestatem omnia sua Privilegia illis confirmare, quæ Czareus suus beatæ memoriæ Parens illis indulsisset, & non minori clementia illos amplexuram quam sub augustissimo Vestro Patre aut omnibus majoribus vestris experti fuerant) nonne Czarea vestra Majestas me redintegrationem Privilegiorum petente primis suis literis respondit Czareæ Vestræ Majestati in votis & animo esse eandem amicitiam cum Regia nostra Majestate colere, quæ inter Patres nostros beatæ memoriæ coaluerat, & quod ad illa attineret, de quibus Regia nostra Majestas se legatum missurum confirmaverat, Czaream Vestram Majestatem paratam iri quantum in se aut quantum possibile esset de iis Regiæ nostræ Majestati assentiri? Et nonne Czareæ Vestræ Majestatis Legati Extraordinarii, quum de privilegiorum restitutione ipse illos interrogassem in ea erant sententia & ità nobis dixerunt Czaream Vestram Majestatem proculdubio solenni & honorifica Legatione à Regia nostra Majestate ad Czaream Vestram Majestatem missa nostra causa mercatoribus nostris ea præstituram? Nonne etiam Czarea Vestra Majestas, per illos Legatos alteris literis à Secretiori vestro Cubiculo Czareæ Vestra manu munitis bracteata illa aureæ mentis oracula depinxit, quæ ego statim Vestri solius calami & sensus esse posse intellexi, quæque ideo tanquam adamantina cuspide Cordi nostro insculpta reservo, & Legato nostro Extraordinario mandavi, ut illa uti nostræ erga Czaream Vestram Majestatem menti maximè consona & conformia totidem verbis Czareæ Vestræ Majestati rependeret & numeraret, Czaream Vestram Majestatem animadverso florentissimo Ditionum suarum statu, &c. * Eadem amicitia eosdem tractatus proculdubio easdem utilitates includit, adeóque Czareæ Vestræ Majestatis fides prioribus illis verbis ad Privilegiorum restitutionem devincitur, nisi (quoniam illo postea limite Czarea Majestas Vestra voluntatem suam circumscribit) impossibile sit. Impossibile autem esse non potest quum Czarea Vestra Majestas tantum possit polleátque & omnimoda potestate excellat, ideoque meritissimo Autocratoris titulo insigniatur. Si quantum possibile vel quantum in Czarea Vestra Majestate est negationem significet, interpretationem istorum verborum in posterum didicero. Et quoad illa in secundis vestris literis 31. Julii Anno 1661. Quomodo ad propiorem & firmiorem amicitiam pergere possimus nisi ad priorem firmitatem & propinquitatem prius deveniamus? Si quis tamen erga nostram mutuam amicitiam male affectus, diverticulum aliquod ex modo vestro loquendi invenire posset, per quod Czaream Vestram Majestatem salvo promisso se recipere & subterfugere posse videatur; At pace Vestra dixerim Frater amantissime hujusmodi argutiæ utiles forsan & necessariæ fuerint inter Principes confines, cum quibus aperta semper bella aut pacem incertam geritis. Sed Regiæ nostræ & Czareæ vestræ Majestati utpote centum annorum amicis, & ab omni suspicionis causa alienissimis minùs honestum & decorum esset istijusmodi scobes, ut ità dicam in animabus nostris defodere, & per verborum reticula nosmet ipsos percolare. Neque illud mirum aut ab amicitiâ nostrâ absonum videatur, quod ejus vigorem & quasi fatum in privilegiorum conservatione collocaverim; ideoque Legato nostro Extraordinario mandaverim, ut ante ulteriora benevolentiæ & fraterni erga Czaream Vestrum Majestatem amoris indicia eorum petitione Vestram amicitiam prius experiatur, tametsi forsitan ad Mercatores illa potiùs pertinere videantur. Ità enim ab ipso principio privilegia illa sponte concedebantur neque gratum mihi sicuti Deo gratias, neque opus est me Majoribus nostris augustissimis minorem gerere. Quin etiam ea Privilegia nihil aliud sunt nisi constans præmium perpetui fructus & utilitatis quam Czareæ Majestates & suæ Ditiones semper perceperunt, & percipere possint ab Archangeli portu aperto & commercio invecto per Mercatores Anglos, multorum hominum navium & facultatum suarum jactura. Quamvis magni Principes etiam beneficium semel acceptum, & cujus fructus omnis cum ipso illo homine & tempore pereat in perpetuum remunerari soleant. Quod autem præcipuè me in hoc instituto nostro confirmavit, erat honoris & existimationis Vestræ (quam ego semper sanctissimam habebo) cura & reverentia, ut sicuti heroicâ quâdam magnanimitate Privilegia illa propter subditorum nostrorum rebellionem revocastis, ità etiam ea nostro rogatu & redivivâ illorum obedientiâ, renovando toti terrarum Orbi constare posset, quàm justâ proportione actiones Vestras regentis, & quantâ cum gratiâ uti magnum Principem decet collocare apud me beneficium noveritis. Istud enim ego pro beneficio habeo, quod in subditorum meorum emolumentum redundat, & si in ipso exilio nostro quid illis boni accidisset me etiam aliquâ gaudii parte tangere & afficere videbatur, fieri non potest quin post fœlicem meum reditum maximopere commoda sua procurem atque promoveam. Quorsum tot tractatus inter Principes quotidie missi in Subditorum securitatem & commodo contrahuntur? Tractatus pacis commercii auxiliorum imò nuptiarum inter Principes anne idcirco fiunt quoniam Principes illi tanquam amore capti mutuò se depereunt? an verò ad Regnorum Suorum utilitatem omnes diriguntur? Ne tamen uti ego ea pro populi nostri bono peto ità Czarea Vestra Majestas pro ditionum suarum bono abnegaret; experiamur si placet argumentorum aciem eo ordine quo temere occurrunt.*

Subditi mei rebellarunt, *At nimiæ curæ & diligentiæ esset, & Czarea Vestra Majestas negotiorum nostrorum sensum nimis extenderet, si quos ego Subditos nostros in fidem accepi, in illos Czarea Vestra Majestas pergat animadvertere; Et quum ipse Capitis loco unum deinceps cum Regnis meis corpus componam, anne quæ subditi mei peccarunt meipsum luere vultis?* Sed Anglum quendam Nightingale literas à Patre nostro beatæ memoriæ attulisse memorant, & Ejus nomine cum proximis Vestris Magnatibus de abrogandis Privilegiis egisse. *Iste* Nightingale *Proditor & Perduellis & Falsarius illâ in re erat, & novi Czaream Vestram Majestatem pro jure Genium, & uti omnes Principes suæ existimationis causâ in ejusmodi impostoris mutuò solent & debent, quoniam ipse morte pœnas evasit falsas illas, resignatas, erasas, interpolitas literas mihi traditurum. Si verò Pater meus beatæ memoriæ tunc temporis arcanâ ratione Privilegiorum abrogationem postulasset (quum è contrario optimus ille Princeps ad extremum usque spiritum pro Populo suo Deum rogaverit & ejus bono inter ultimas curas adlaboraverit, adeóque etiam literas ad Czaream Vestram Majestatem, quas inter alias suas reliquias religiosè conservo, de hac re exaraverit quibus Privilegiorum instaurationem petit, & illum* Nightingale *ut impudentissimum falsarium detestatur.) Si inquam Pater meus abrogationem, Ego verò jam instaurationem Privilegiorum efflagito.* Postea De Mercatoribus *Anglis* contra conditiones Privilegiorum agentibus multo conqueruntur. *Sed nihil probant; Legato nostro mandavi, ut contra hujusmodi facinora provideret, quorum & ipse severus vindex fuissem, utpote quæ ad existimationem nostram pertinerent.* Publicani & totius *Russiæ* mercatores supplices literas obtulisse dicuntur, quibus exponunt *Anglos* per hæc Privilegia locupletatos, se verò exhauriri & depauperari: *Quum tamen Czareæ Vestra Majestas suis literis suprà memoratis multam felicitatem, pacem &*

1664.

* Sic ut supra hic quoque literæ repetitæ fuerunt; quippe vim insignam ad convincendum habentes: quod inter cætera constat ex perpetuo insignium cum Legato agendarum hac in parte silentio.

1664. *tranquillitatem in utriuſque Imperia redundaſſe affirmet eo tempore quo* Angli *Privilegiis gaudebant, Cur non eam contra* Belgas & Cupſhinos Perſas *ſupplices literas ſcribunt? Horum enim nonnulli gaudent Privilegiis, dum* Angli *omnes illis excluduntur. Procul abſit ut ea petam cum Imperii veſtri calamitate. Gratum mihi eſſet intelligere poſt Privilegia* Anno 1649. *adempta (ſatis prolixo ad experimentum ſpatio) Populum veſtrum divitiis magis abundare. Ex Subditis autem noſtris (qui potius laudandi ſint ſi honeſtâ induſtriâ diteſcere potuiſſent) ad triginta plus minus è Societate* Ruſſicâ *intra triginta annos hoc commercium ſectando ad incitas reducti ſunt, qui tamen magnas fortunas in ditiones veſtras attulerint.* Mercatores quoque omnes quorum nomina Privilegiis inſerta mortuos aiunt, *At unus eorum adhuc in vivis eſt, quod ſatis eſt ſi illud argumentum valeret ad ea conſervanda. Ego verò intellexi Privilegia ad Succeſſores etiam extendi & Legatum juſſi recentia nomina Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati exhibere.* Sed in aliis Regionibus ubique exteri duplex pendunt Portorium. *Unde ergo ſit quòd in* Hollandiâ *Societas* Anglorum *Adventuraria nullum pendant, domum publicam habeant, & omnibus aliis vectigalibus quæ Incolæ ipſi perſolvunt, illi ſint immunes? Unde ſit quod* Hamburgi *etiam iiſdem Privilegiis utantur, in quibus locis* Angli *multò majorem mercaturam quàm in hoc Imperio faciunt? Unde quod Mercatores* Angli *non ſolùm ipſi Portorio vacent apud* Ormuſii *Portum, ſed etiam cum ipſo* Shagh Perſiæ *aliarum ibi Nationum vectigalia dividant & ex æquo partiantur? Num* Angli *etiam mercatores has omnes Regiones depauperant?* Bellum cum Polono & Tartaro. *Ne miretur Czarea Veſtra Majeſtas ſi ad hoc argumentum poſt alia illa pene ad verbum ex reſponſo ad Tyranni illius* Cromwell *veredarium deſcripta nonnihil commoveor. Nullane ergo bella fuerunt, quum illa Privilegia primò concederentur ſub Czareâ Majeſtate* Johannis Baſilii? *Nulla ſub cæteris Principibus? Si hoſtes illi non contemnendi Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati videantur, adeone inconſultum eſſet meam amicitiam retinere. Et anne ſex millia Rublarum annua (neque enim* Anglica *vectigalia poſt Privilegia abrogata majorem ſummam conficiunt) tanto Principi ad bellicos ſumptus tolerandos ſunt tam neceſſaria, ut Noſtra amicitiâ & Subditorum Noſtrorum commercio compenſari nequeat?* Ego verò Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati pecuniam non commodavi. *Spero quidem tantam argenti vim cuicunque vel maximo Principi difficillimam (liceat Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtati ſecretò illam recenſer) decies mille Podas, hoc eſt, ultra trigeſies centena millia Rublarum non ideo petitam, ut Privilegia honeſtâ aliquâ ſpecie poſſint recuſari, & impoſſibile quæſitum, ut facillima negarentur. Quò minus eſt quod poſtulatur, eo gravior eſt repulſa, & Poſteritas ad cujus tribunal maximorum Principum memoria citatur, non tam me accuſabit, qui tantum excuſaverim, quàm Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem qui tantillum negaverit. Czarea Veſtra Majeſtas reſponſum hâc de re noſtrum à Legatis ſuis procul dubio accepit.* Mercatores quoque Ruſſiæ Societatis Legatis Veſtris petentibus multò minorem ſummam ad Bellorum impenſas repræſentare noluerunt. *Omnes in Privilegiis, uno excepto, mortui, qui vivunt Privilegiis tam diu ſuſpenſis attenuati & inopes; & Legatus Veſter* Evan Zelobuſhkee *malo ad perſuadendum colore uſus eſt, quum ſe obligaverit nunquam futurum, ut in* Ruſſiâ Angli *à vectigalibus eſſent immunes. Hæc ſunt illa ut videtur argumenta, quibus (ut Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtatis verbis utar) murum illum ahenum quaſſare aggrediuntur, qui tot annos ſtetit Majorum noſtrorum prudentiâ extructus, & nunc Czarei veſtri promiſſi conſtantiæ innititur. Et anne hujuſmodi globulis illud centum annorum opus diruetur? Hoc ergo quod Czarea veſtra Majeſtatis Legatos extra maria noſtra à freto* Ore-ſundico *navi noſtrâ tranſmitti curaverim, quod in palatio nobiliſſimi cujuſdam è noſtris Magnatibus locum illis præbuerim, quod noſtris anleis, noſtris lectis diſcubuerint, & ex Regis auri & argenti vaſis quotidie comederint? Quod honore hactenus inaudito intra dulæ noſtræ portam Regio curru invehi permiſerim, Quod ipſe quoties rogarent privatò illos audierim, & quoties volebant Conſiliariorum Noſtrorum copias illis fecerim? Non pœnitet, non exprobro, parva ſunt illa præ honore quo Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem Fratrem meum amantiſſimum proſequor. ſed ſuſpicor aliquem ex illis multò majora reticuiſſe, & de tot honoris indiciis Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem plura celaſſe. Nonne ſuper hac ad Czaream veſtram Majeſtatem legavi Conſanguineum Noſtrum & (quicquid alii dixerint) à Sanctioribus noſtris Conſiliis & hoc ab ipſo reditu noſtro Carolum Comitem* Carleolenſem *Vice comitem* Howard *de* Morpeth, *Baronem* Dacre *de* Gillesland, *Statæ militiæ Præfectum, & Locum tenentem Regium in Provinciis noſtris* Cumberlandiæ & Weſtmorlandiæ, *qui etiam ſi monitore egerem Memoriæ noſtræ perpetuò ſubjiceret quicquid in rem veſtram eſſe videretur? Nonne arcana pectoris mei illi commiſi in omnibus quibus Czareæ veſtræ Majeſtati potero commodare? Et num Czarea veſtra Majeſtas per illum mihi exiguam & fortaſſis unicam rem negabit, quam à Czareâ veſtrâ Majeſtate unquam petere poſſim, Privilegia? Hoc quidem me pœniteret, utpote magis notum & pervulgatum quàm aut cum noſtrâ aut veſtrâ exiſtimatione poſſit conſiſtere; Et totus terrarum orbis multâ cum admiratione ejusmodi fruſtrationem intuebitur, quum præſertim reputaverint quot & quanta emolumenta ab auguſtiſſimis noſtris Majoribus & ſub ſuis auſpiciis ad Czaream veſtram Coronam redierint. Illi portum veſtrum inveſtigari fecerunt & totius* Europæ *mercaturam ad Archangeli funum deduxerunt. Illi in Orientali mari, quum Principes adjacentes fœdere inter ſe facto de obſtruendâ Narva convenìſſent, Claſſem hoſtilem delerunt & Captivos Præfectis veſtris tradidère. Illi pecunias ad bella veſtra mutuò dederunt & milites & Duces vobis ſuppeditarunt. Illi pacem inter Vos & Principes vicinos conciliarunt. Illi in ſummâ annonæ caritate fruges huc tranſportari ſinebant (quas* Angli *mercatores ſine ullo compendio aut lucro incolis veſtris vendiderunt) & multa alia tam pace quàm bello neceſſaria & omnibus aliis prohibita. Poſſem etiam majus adhuc hiſce omnibus beneficium commemorare uni è Czareis Veſtris Majoribus delatum, ſi adeo dictu tempeſtivum videretur. Et ego qui Legato noſtro mandavi, ut vobis declararet propoſitum mihi eſſe omnes Majores noſtros ſtudio erga Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem excedere Privilegiis prohibeor ſubditorum noſtrorum induſtriâ redemptis, cum maximis ſuis impenſis, jacturis, maximis in indagando, inſtruendo & hactenus continuando hoc commercium. Ego ipſe à reditu meo D^no^* Johanni Hebdon *ſine ullis Czareæ autoritatis literis in rem veſtram tria millia equitum peditumque conceſſi è flore militiæ Anglicanæ, quæ qualis ſit alii melius dixerunt. Et ſi Legati Veſtri Extraordinarii quicquam præter intempeſtivam illam & impoſſibilem pecuniæ molem petiiſſent, aut rerum Veſtrarum conditionem melius expoſuiſſent, Ego nullo modo Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtati defuiſſem. Tamen antequam Legatum meum mitterem quam potui rerum Veſtrarum notitiam aliunde comparavi. Comperi* Polonum *adhuc vos infeſtare; Inter Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem & Suecum pace factâ quædam tamen diſcordiæ ſemina adhuc pullulare. Alia quædam didici de quibus mecum meditando credidi propter cauſas, Majeſtati Veſtræ non ignotas, noſtram inter Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem & Illum interpoſitionem minus gratam Ei futuram: Præterquam quod & Ipſe mecum reputavi ſolum, cum nullam ad me de lætiſſimo reditu gratulatoriam Legationem adornaſſe, ut neque ego cum dignitate noſtrâ Illum ultro potuerim compellare. Inter Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem & Regem Sueciæ interventum noſtrum magis opportunum eſſe poſſe & utrobique acceptum ſperavi, ſi operæ pretium videretur latentes contentionum ſcintillas antequam flammam darent comprimere & reſtinguere. Conſideravi præterea quanta nobis copia eſſet & ſemper ſit futura Ducum & militum, navium armatarum, apparatus & inſtrumenti bellici, quantum ſemper autoritatem & influxum habiturus eſſem in pleroſque* Europæ *aut etiam extra* Europam *Principes qui Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtati nocere aut incommodare poſſent, & de hiſce omnibus mandata neceſſaria dedi Legato noſtro Extraordinario. Et proculdubio quum Ipſe à Czareâ Veſtrâ Majeſtate beneficio affectus fuerim, quum talia in literis promiſerim (quibus Ego ſanè me obligari ſentiebam) quum talem Virum ad Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem legaverim, Czarea Veſtra Majeſtas neque in rebus hujuſce nec aliis naturæ quæ mihi non potuerunt ſuccurrere me ingratum aut immemorem inveniſſet.*

1664.

Quum hæc tanquam ex ipſo Regiæ Suæ Majeſtatis ore pro noſtrâ tenuitate Czareæ Veſtræ Majeſtati repræſentaverim haud deceat ex noſtro aliquid addere aut ſubtrahere, ſed Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem ſolùmmodo rogare, ut de hiſce ſeriò & maturatè pro Summâ illâ Prudentiâ quâ Deus Czaream Veſtram Majeſtatem impertivit, Ipſe deliberare & decernere velit, & brevem expeditionem mihi indulgere, ut primâ cum anni tempeſtate, quod Regia ſua Majeſtas mihi injunxit, iter incipere poſſim.

Actum *Moſcuæ*, 22. *Aprilis* Anno Dom. 1664.

CARLISLE.

May

1664.

May it pleaſe Your moſt Potent and moſt Serene Tzarskoy *Majeſty.*

HAving continued here ten weeks ſince your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty appointed me your Boyars and Counſellors Commiſſioners, and finding my ſelf ſtill further off every day from any good Succeſs of my Negotiation, I have been forced, as thoſe who cannot get over the violence or winding of the River, to make up to the Fountain. Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty is through your ſo great Dominions the only Fountain of Power and Reaſon, and as all your Subjects ought to humble themſelves to your Power, ſo dare I ſubject my ſelf to your Reaſon. Foraſmuch as it ſeems to me that God has given, as to *Solomon*, not only Riches and Honour to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, but alſo an underſtanding heart; ſo that as there was none among your *Tzarskoy* Progenitors before, ſo neither can any ariſe after like unto you. Therefore have I deſired and obtained this private Audience from your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty. And even ſo did that firſt and great Founder of the Amity betwixt the *Engliſh* and *Ruſſian* Crowns, and of the Privileges to the *Engliſh* Nation, *Tzar Ivan Baſilovich*. So did He uſe to diſcourſe and converſe in private with the Ambaſſadors of the Kings and Queens of *England*, and by that means, notwithſtanding the ill Offices of ſome of his Counſel, and the then Lord Chancellour, he took ſuch true meaſures of his own Affairs, that ever ſince the mutual friendſhip and commerce hath continued and flouriſhed betwixt the two Crowns and Nations, till your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty now reigning. Neither do I doubt but that I, being come for the ſaid Purpoſe, with as ſincere intentions betwixt Princes mutually profeſſing much greater affection, ſhall by God's bleſſing go away hence from the clear eyes of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty with as full ſatisfaction.

For whereas all other great Princes without any notice from his Royal Majeſty, took care to follow him into his Kingdoms with Extraordinary Ambaſſages of Congratulation, the King my Maſter out of his ſingular kindneſs and affection did to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty alone, of all the Princes in Chriſtendom write firſt the tenth of *May*, 1661. before You had ſent your Ambaſſadors to inform You of His happy Reſtauration and acknowledge your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's brotherly kindneſs ſhewed to Him in His affliction. And further in the ſame Letter ſignified that, though Sir *John Hebdon* had not preſented any Letters of Credence to his Royal Majeſty from your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, yet in confidence of the Truſt your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty repoſed in him, his Royal Majeſty had upon his deſire for your Service granted the Levy of three thouſand Horſe and Foot under Officers of great Courage, Ability and Fidelity. Adding moreover, that your Enemies ſhould know by the inſtance of his Royal Majeſty's Miniſters, that they ſhould do a thing very gratetul to him in making a good and laſting Peace with your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, and if by Their default ſuch Peace were not imbraced, that they and all the World ſhould ſee the great affection He hath for the proſperity of your Affairs, which ſhould be always in his particular Care. Alſo in the ſame Letter his Royal Majeſty acknowledges your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's magnanimity in withdrawing your Protection from the *Engliſh* Merchants during the late Rebellion, and deſires that all his Royal Majeſty's good Subjects being now returned to their Allegiance, your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty would reſtore them their Houſes, Eſtates and Privileges, and that You declare the ſame; upon which your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Declaration he would ſend forthwith his Ambaſſadour to expreſs further His ſenſe of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's affection, and to make all poſſible Returns of the ſame. Hereupon your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty returned anſwer of the 28. *July* 1661. That your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty deſired to continue with his Royal Majeſty the ſame friendſhip and correſpondency, which had been betwixt both your Fathers of bleſſed Memory, and that as to what his Royal Majeſty ſaid, he would ſend his Ambaſſadour about, your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty would be ready, ſo far as is poſſible, to give Aſſent thereto. After this your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty in your Letter of the 31. *July* 1662. ſent by your late Extraordinary Ambaſſadour's writ alſo, that taking into your princely Conſideration the flouriſhing Eſtate of your *Tzarstva*, and that intire brotherly Love and Amity, and frequent correſpondency, which inviolably was held and continued betwixt both your Fathers of bleſſed Memory, and the Happineſs, Peace and Tranquility accruing thereby to both Dominions, your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty doth moſt heartily and earneſtly deſire not only the Continuation thereof, but a more nearer and dearer and firmer affectionate, bleſſed, brotherly Love and Amity, and frequent correſpondency with his Royal Majeſty, your dear and loving Brother, than formerly with all readineſs and freeneſs on all occaſions to the utmoſt of Your Power to anſwer the deſires of his Royal Majeſty, Your dear and loving Brother. Upon theſe Aſſurances on your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's part, his Royal Majeſty diſpatched me hither, where what I ſaid in the face of the whole World by his Royal Majeſty's Command in his Name, concerning the mutual and equal affection of his Royal Majeſty, is perfectly known to Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty. Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty was then pleaſed to appoint me Commiſſioners, perſons of great Nobility and Experience, for which I give Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty thanks, and wiſh I could as juſtly give You thanks alſo for their affection (all of them) to the Amity and good Correſpondence betwixt the two Crowns, and for their Expedition in the buſineſs committed to them. But when as I at my firſt Conference according to his Royal Majeſty's order, moved firſt for the Reſtitution of the Privileges, ſignifying in the ſame Writing that theſe being granted, I had other things to prefer on his Royal Majeſties part out of his affection to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, I received from my Commiſſioners ſo unexpected an Anſwer, that had Heaven faln as the Windows of the Council-Chamber broke in twice at the recital, it could ſcarce have been more ſtrange or miraculous to me. It amounted in effect to an abſolute denial of the Privileges. Firſt indeed they ſay, that they were taken away upon occaſion of the late Rebellion. But after that they affirm, that his late Royal Majeſty of ever bleſſed Memory by *Luke Nightingale*, deſired that the Privileges might be nulled, then they alledge ſeveral miſ-carriages of the *Engliſh* Merchants, after that a Petition of the *Goſes* and all the Traders in *Ruſſia*, then that the *Engliſh* Merchants are dead. In a ſecond Paper they ſpeak of Your Wars with the *Crim* and the *Pole*, that his Royal Majeſty furniſhed not your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty with Money, that the Merchants of the *Moſcovia* Company refuſed to lend Money towards your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Wars, being deſired by your Ambaſſadours. And ſeveral other Reaſons to make up the number; though any one of them would have ſerved, if it be indeed reſolved before hand not to grant the Privileges, but altogether will not compound one ſolid Argument, if weighed by ſo piercing and deep a Judgment as that of Your Majeſty. So that my Commiſſioners, wholly cutting off all Hopes of the Privileges for the preſent, inſiſted only, that I ſhould declare to them what elſe I had to offer from his Royal Majeſty. And I profering to them, that if they had any thing to as that remained on their part, and was proper for them to propound for your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Service, I ſhould give them a fitting Anſwer. And only deſiring to be reſolved by them, whether in caſe my Propoſals ſhould ſeem to them Equivalent to the Privileges they had then Power to grant them, they could not, or did not give me any ſatisfaction therein. I appeal to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, whether I having a Plenipotential Letter from his Royal Majeſty, to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty (which is in it ſelf ſufficient) and over and above that a particular Commiſſion under the Great Seal of *England* for the Recovery of the Privileges, it were fit for me further to divulge the Secrets of his Royal Majeſty's ſingular affection, and brotherly Intentions towards your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, to perſons not impowred, and fully authorized to conclude with me, or that had only a Power to deny, but none to aſſent to my Propoſals. And therefore this being the whole State of my buſineſs, and ſuch being the Anſwers which in your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Name I have received from my Commiſſioners, ſo that the matter will now ſhortly return out of our hands, to be decided betwixt his Royal Majeſty, and your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty your ſelves, I ſhall as I have the Honour to repreſent his Royal Majeſty's perſon, ſo take the Liberty to repreſent his words upon this occaſion, as if He and You could meet together, and did in Preſence contemplate both Your unſpeakable Majeſty's in that Glaſs of friendſhip the moſt clear eyes of one another. As far as my weak Judgment can wade into the depths of his Royal Majeſty's Wiſdom, Thus would He ſay.

Had I deſired any new thing of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty my dear and loving Brother, or to which your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty

1664. Majeſty had not formerly ingaged Your ſelf, I might with leſs unkindneſs have taken Your ſo long Deliberation and perhaps have digeſted the refuſal. But as for the Privileges they have continued above an hundred years, and have by that their Duration approved the ſolidity of that reaſon of State, upon which they were firſt founded, and it has been always dangerous by new Experiments to ſhake the foundation of ancient Counſels and Friendſhips. And as for your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Ingagement (to omit your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Declaration in the Year 1645. at Your firſt coming to the Crown by the Governour of *Archangel* to the Merchants at *Archangel*, that Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty confirmed to them all the Privileges granted by your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Father of bleſſed Memory, and that You would be as gracious to them as ever Your ſaid Father, or any of Your Predeceſſours) did not your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty in Your firſt Letter, upon my deſire of the Reſtitution of the Privileges anſwer me, that your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty deſired to continue with me in the ſame Friendſhip and Correſpondency that had been betwixt both our Fathers of bleſſed Memory, and that upon my Ambaſſadour's arrival and propoſition You would be ready as far is poſſible to give Aſſent thereto? Did not your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Ambaſſadours, being demanded by my ſelf concerning the Privileges, reply as their own opinion, that they queſtioned not, but your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty upon my deſire by an honourable Embaſſy, would for the love You had to me doubtleſs grant them? Did not your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty in Your Letter by them, of the 31. of *July* 1662. written from Your Privy Chamber under your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's own hand, uſe thoſe Golden words which could indeed drop from no other Pen or Senſe than that of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, and which are therefore ingraven in my Heart as with the point of a Diamond, and which being alſo ſo conſonant to mine own intire affection to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, I commanded my Ambaſſadour to return in the very ſame Terms, in my Name to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, that your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty taking into conſideration the flouriſhing Eſtate of your *Tzarsva*, &c. * Surely the ſame Correſpondency and Friendſhip includes the ſame Treaties and Agreements, and therefore ſo You obliged Your ſelf for the Privileges, unleſs (becauſe your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty indeed limits Your ſelf with that word afterwards) it be not poſſible to grant them. But that cannot be, your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty being ſo great a Prince, and having all Power, and therefore ſo properly ſtiled *Self-upholder*. If, *as far as is poſſible*, ſignifie a denial I ſhall know how to underſtand it for the future. And as to thoſe words in your *Tzarskoy* Majeſties ſecond Letter to me of the 31ſt of *July*, 1662. how can there be a nearer and firmer correſpondency betwixt Us, unleſs firſt it be as near and as firm as formerly? But ſuppoſe any perſon diſaffected to Our mutual friendſhip could pick out ſome Evaſions in Your manner of Expreſſion, to ſeem to diſingage You, yet let me tell You, dear Brother, ſuch Subtilties might perhaps be neceſſary or ſerve the turn with confining Princes, with whom You are always either at open War, or ſuſpicious Friendſhip. But it would be much below You and Me, Friends of an hundred years, free from all reaſon of jealouſie of one another, to leave ſuch Loop holes in our Souls, and to penetrate and ſqueeze our ſelves through our own Words. Neither let it ſeem ſtrange to You, or as an undervaluing of the mutual Princely Amity betwixt Us, that I ſeem to place it upon the reſtoring or not reſtoring of the Privileges, and have therefore commanded my Ambaſſador before any further overture of my good Intentions toward your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, to deſire the Grant of thoſe Privileges which belong but to my Merchants. For they were ſo from the firſt voluntary Grant, and I do not love to go leſs as (God be praiſed) I need not, than any of my Predeceſſors. And thoſe Privileges are but the Princely, conſtant reward of that perpetual and vaſt advantage, which hath and may always continue to the *Tzars* of *Ruſſia* and their whole *Tzarsva* by the *Engliſh* Merchants firſt diſcovery, and opening of the Trade at *Archangel*, with loſs of many Mens lives, Shipping and Eſtates; tho' great Princes even for an Action once well done, and whereof the Fruit dies with that time and perſon, are uſed to recompenſe to perpetuity. But my chief Motive for ſuch a preliminary Deſire was indeed your *Tzarskoy* Majeſties Honour, of which I ſhall always be moſt tender, that as your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty took away the Privileges out of Your high Generoſity and reſentment of the late Rebellion, ſo it might appear to the whole World, by Your reinſtating the *Engliſh* therein, without any farther reach of reaſon, only upon their return to their Obedience and my Deſire, how juſt and perfect You were in the proportioning of Your Actions, and how like that great Prince you are, you know to place Your Obligations upon me. For that is Amity to me which is the advantage of my Subjects, and if even in my Exile I could not but partake ſome joy in their welfare, certainly upon my happy Return I ſhall by all means ſtrive to procure and advance it. To what purpoſe are ſo many Treaties in the World betwixt Princes, but all for the conſtituting the conveniencies and profit of their Subjects? Treaties of Peace, of Trade, of Aſſiſtance, nay even of Marriage of the Princes are they, becauſe thoſe Princes fall in love with one another, or are not all directed to the ſecurity and proſperity of the People? But leſt therefore as I demand them for the benefit of mine, ſo You ſhould refuſe them for the benefit of your people, let us (if your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty pleaſe) try the Arguments againſt them of ſeveral Natures as they lie before me.

1664.

They rebelled againſt me: 'Tis true, but it would be too much care in your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, ſhould You purſue the reſentment for ever upon my Subjects after I my ſelf have forgiven them; and I being the Head, and making up henceforward but one Body with my Nations, will your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty undertake to revenge upon me the diſloyalty of my People? *But they ſay, That* Nightingale *brought a Letter from my Father, and treated with the* Boyars *for taking them away.* That *Nightingale* was a Traytor therein and an Impoſtor, and I know your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty will according to the Law of Nations, and as Princes are obliged in Honour to one another upon ſuch Impoſtures deliver me that open, falſe, counterfeit Letter. But if my Father had at that time for reaſon of State deſired the taking of them away, whereas to the contrary, He, bleſſed Prince, even to His laſt breath prayed and laboured for the good of His Subjects, and even as to this matter had prepared a Letter which I yet preſerve among His other Relicks, wherein He deſires of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, the Reſtitution of the Privileges, and diſavows *Nightingale* as an Impoſtor; but had He I ſay then deſired they might be revoked, I alſo do now deſire they may be reſtored. *The Merchants are complained of for ſeveral Miſcarriages contrary to the Condition of the Privileges.* None of thoſe miſcarriages are verified, but however, I ordered my Ambaſſador to provide againſt the poſſibility of any ſuch thing for the future, and I my ſelf ſhould alſo have been a ſevere Inſpecter of any ſuch default, as intrenching highly upon mine own Honour. *But the Goſes and all the Tradeſmen of* Ruſſia *petitioned, that the* Engliſh *were become rich by theſe Privileges, and Your* Tzarskoy *Majeſties Subjects were impoveriſhed.* How is it then that your *Tzarksoy* Majeſty ſaid in your Letter abovementioned, that much Happineſs, Peace, and Tranquility had accrued to both Dominions? Why do they not alſo againſt the Privilege, which is enjoyed by the *Dutch*? Why not againſt the *Cupſhins* of *Perſia*, for ſome of theſe in the mean time have privilege while the *Engliſh* are totally debarred it? Did the Privileges impoveriſh the Country? I ſhould be glad to hear that ſince they were taken away (which hath been time long enough to make an Experiment) the Country hath thereby grown richer. But for my Subjects, though if by honeſt Induſtry they could grow rich, they are rather to be commended: Yet to the contrary, near Thirty of them within this thirty years are undone by the Trade, having brought conſiderable Eſtates into your Dominions. *The* Engliſh *Merchants to whom the Privileges were granted are dead.* One of them is ſtill living however, which is enough to continue the Claim of the inviolable *Tzarskoy* privilege: and though all were Dead, I underſtand it to have been granted to their Succeſſors, and I have given my Ambaſſador order to Name new. *In other Countries every where ſtrangers pay double Cuſtoms*: How comes it then, that the *Engliſh* Merchants Adventurers pay no Cuſtom in *Holland*, and have beſides free Houſes given them, and freedom from Exciſe, and all other Immunities denied their own Subjects? That likewiſe they have the ſame Privileges and pay no Cuſtom at *Hamburgh*, in which places the *Engliſh* drive a much greater Trade than here? Do not the *Engliſh* Merchants not only pay no Cuſtom themſelves, but divide the Cuſtoms of all other Nations, with the *Shach* of *Perſia* at His Port of *Ormus*? Do the *Engliſh* alſo impoveriſh all thoſe Countries? *But then your* Tzarskoy *Majeſty hath War with the* Crim *and the* Pole. Your

Tzarskoy

* So the whole Letter was here repeated again as afore, foraſmuch as it carries with it ſo ſtrong a conviction as can receive no excuſe: and indeed it ſeems the Commiſſioners found it to be ſo, ſeeing they never did one word as to thoſe Letters.

1664. *Tzarskoy* Majeſty muſt pardon me if at this reaſon, and conſidering moſt of thoſe before which are in a manner word for word, what was returned by the Meſſenger of that Uſurper *Cromwel*, I find my ſelf ſomething moved. Were there therefore no Wars when the *Engliſh* Privileges were firſt granted by *Tzar Ivan Baſilovich*? Were there never in all the times they have been ſince enjoyed? If your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty hath ſuch Enemies that ſeem ſo conſiderable to you, will it hurt you to continue me your Friend? And is ſix thouſand Rubles yearly (that is Three thouſand pounds) which is the uttermoſt the *Engliſh* Cuſtoms have amounted to, ſince the caſſing of the Privileges, is it I ſay, ſo neceſſary a Summ to ſo great a Prince for the carrying on of his Wars, that the Effects of my friendſhip and the commerce of the *Engliſh* Nation cannot countervail it? *But I denied your* Tzarskoy *Majeſty the Loan of Money.* I hope ſo impoſſible a Summ to the greateſt Prince of of *Chriſtendom* to advance on the ſudden, being I may name it to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty ten thouſand *Poods* of Silver, to the value of above thirty hundred thouſand *Rubles*, was not demanded on purpoſe to have a Pretext to deny the Privileges, and by propoſing an impoſſibility to refuſe what is rational. The leſs the Courteſie is asked, the greater Diſobligation not granted, and Poſterity which ſits in Judgment upon the Memory of the greateſt Princes, will not ſo much blame Me for excuſing ſo much, as You for denying ſo little. Your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty ſurely received from your own Ambaſſadors my Anſwer to that particular. *And the Merchants of the* Muſcovia *Company refuſed a much leſs Summ to Your Ambaſſadors.* Truly the former Merchants named in the Privileges were dead all except one, theſe now living have been impoveriſhed and diſinabled by the want of the Privileges this ſeventeen years, and *Ivan Zelobuskoy* offered them but ill ſecurity for the money, an Obligation that it ſhould never be that they ſhould trade without Cuſtom.

Theſe it ſeems are the Reaſons, with which they ſtrive to ſhake (to uſe your *Tzarskoy* Majeſties own Expreſſions) that brazen Wall which hath ſtood ſo many years, built by the Wiſdom of our Anceſtors, and now leaning upon the ſtability of Your own Princely Promiſe: and ſhall ſuch Pellets be able to ruin it? Have I for this ſent mine own Ship into the Sound to fetch your Ambaſſadours? Have I lodged them in the Palace of one of my greateſt Princes, laid them in mine own Beds, mine own Hangings, and treated them continually in mine own Veſſel? Have I done them the Honour to enter in my Coach within the Gate of my Court, given them private Audience my ſelf, as oft as they deſired it, and as frequent Conferences with my Counſel as they pleaſed? I repent it not, I reproach it not, I bear more Honour to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty my loving Brother than to do ſo. But I doubt that ſome of them have not truly informed. You of all the Honour they received much more than I tell You. Have I not after this ſent Ambaſſadour to You my Couſin, and (whatſoever may have been told You to the contrary) my Privy Councellor, and that ever ſince my Return into *England*, one of the principal Noblemen of our Kingdoms deſcended of *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*, *Charles* Earl of *Carliſle*, Viſcount *Howard* de *Morpeth*, Baron *Dacre* of *Gilleſland*, Lord Lieutenant of the Counties of *Cumberland* and *Weſtmorland*, having deſtinated him not only for this Embaſſy, but to have been my perpetual Remembrancer, could I have been forgetful of any thing that tended to your Service. Have I committed to him the ſecret of my Heart in all things wherein I might pleaſure you, and ſhall your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty by him refuſe me ſo ſmall, and perhaps the only thing which ever I can have occaſion to ask of you, the Privileges? This indeed would repent me, for the World will take more notice of it than can ſtand with Mine and Your Honour, and it will be the ſubject of much Diſcourſe and Wonder, when Men ſhall conſider what Advantages this your *Tzarskoy* Crown hath received from time to time from my Predeceſſours. They diſcovered the Port, and opened you the Trade and Market of all *Europe* at *Archangel*. They fought your Enemies Ships in the *Eaſtern-Seas*, when the Princes there adjacent had Leagued together to ſhut up the *Narve*, and delivered the Priſoners to the *Ruſſian* Governours at the *Narve*. They lent Sums of Money for the Wars, they furniſhed Souldiers and Commanders to fight your Enemies, they made Peace for you with Neighbour Princes. They ſuffered the Merchants to ſupply the Countrey in the times of great Dearth with Corn, who ſold it to the Nation at the rate it coſt them: and ſeveral other things to be tranſported hither for your Accommodation in Peace or War prohibited to all other Nations. I could mention yet an higher Obligation than all theſe, upon the deſire of one of your *Tzarskoy* Anceſtors, were it ſo ſeaſonable to relate it. And I my ſelf who ordered my Ambaſſadour to tell You, that herein I deſired to exceed all my Anceſtors, yet am refuſed the Privileges, the purchaſe of my Subjects Induſtry, and their vaſt Expenſe and great Loſſes in finding out, and carrying on the Trade to this preſent. I my ſelf, at my firſt coming to the Crown, granted to Sir *John Hebden* without Credentials, three thouſand Horſe and Foot, of the flower of the *Engliſh* Forces for Your Service, which what they can do and are, let the World witneſs. And had your Ambaſſadours either Demanded any thing of me, but an unproportionable and unſeaſonable Sum of Money, or had they but acquainted me with the poſture of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty's Affairs in any meaſure, You ſhould not have found me wanting. However before I ſent my Ambaſſadour over, I did my beſt to inform my ſelf otherwiſe, I found that the *Pole* was likely ſtill to moleſt You, and that notwithſtanding the late Peace with *Sweden* ſome Points remained yet undecided. Reflecting upon which I thought, for the Reaſon Your Majeſty knows as concerning the *Pole*, that he would not think me a competent Mediator betwixt You, ſeeing beſides that, the King of *Poland* only hath not yet ſent me any Embaſſage to congratulate my happy Return. For the *Swede* I ſaw no Reaſon why mine Interpoſition betwixt your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty and Him might not be acceptable and ſeaſonable on all ſides, if your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty thought it neceſſary to quench any Sparks of Contention before they broke out further. Moreover I conſider the opportunity that I have, and ſhall always of aſſiſting You with Commanders and Souldiers, Ships, Armour, and Ammunition againſt any Enemies You might have for the future, and the Influence and Authority that I ſhould have from time to time with moſt Princes of *Europe*, or out of *Europe* that could annoy You, for the compoſing of any Differences. And upon all theſe things I had given ſuch Order, as I thought fitting, to my Ambaſſador. And doubtleſs conſidering mine own Obligations to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, and the Promiſe I had made You in mine own Letter formerly, which I took my ſelf bound to accompliſh, and the Choice of the perſon of my Ambaſſadour, You would not have found me ungrateful in any thing of this or other Nature which could not occur to me. 1664.

Having repreſented theſe words, as from his Royal Majeſty's own mouth to your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, it becomes me not to continue them with any of mine own, further than to deſire that your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty will ſeriouſly and ſpeedily, according to your great Prudence wherewith God hath inſpired You, reflect upon them, and give me a quick diſpatch one way or other, that I may not loſe the very firſt Seaſon of the Year to depart hence, as his Royal Majeſty hath given me poſitive Order.

Given at Moſco, 22. April 1664.

CARLISLE.

The Ambaſſadour's four Memorials delivered by the Ambaſſadour.

After this the Ambaſſadour delivered four Memorials, three of which were againſt *Pronchiſſof*, who had endeavoured to perſwade the *Czar*, that the King of *England*'s Affairs were but in an indifferent Condition, which his Excellency thought convenient to refute, and to convince the *Czar* of the Falſhood of this Report by his Memorial. The ſaid *Pronchiſſof* having alſo charged the Ambaſſadour to have been bribed by the Merchants in order to recover their Privileges; and refuſing

1664. refuſing to produce the Author of this Report, his Excellency complained thereof to the *Czar* in his ſecond Memorial, deſiring that Satisfaction might be given him by the ſaid *Pronchiſſof* upon that account. He had beſides told the Ambaſſadour ſeveral times to his Face, That he had neglected his Buſineſs, threatning him with the *Czar*'s Diſpleaſure, who would complain of him to the King for having tranſgreſs'd his Commiſſion. In the third Memorial his Excellency acquainted the *Czar* of all theſe things, telling him, That as the Caſe ſtood he muſt take the ſaid *Pronchiſſof* for an Enemy, and, that therefore whatever he might have done before, or ſhould do for the future, to give an ill Impreſſion of his Perſon to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, he deſired might be look'd upon as a falſehood, which he would be always ready to prove for his *Czariſh* Majeſty's Satisfaction. In the fourth Memorial, he put the *Czar* in mind, concerning the ſo long promiſed Reparation, which hitherto he had not been able to obtain from the Commiſſioners.

The *Muſcovite* Commiſſioners Anſwer.

The 24th of *March* the Commiſſioners gave in their Anſwer to the Ambaſſadour's Papers delivered the 22th of *March*; wherein they again had recourſe to their old way of cavilling at his Expreſſions, and further told him, That for the innocent Miſtake of the Meſſengers, as they call'd it, ſufficient Satisfaction had been given before; but as to his Demands, they gave only a ſatisfactory Anſwer to the Second, *viz.* That Paſſes ſhould be given to ſuch Merchants, and their Wives and Families, that had a mind to return home; tho' at the ſame time they ſaid not a word of the *Engliſh* Merchants Debts, for which they had demanded Juſtice; and to the demand, that his *Majeſty*'s Subjects might have liberty to return home when they thought fit, no Anſwer was given at all; and whatever other Favours were requeſted in the behalf of ſome particular Perſons, were either quite rejected or deferr'd.

Their Anſwer to the Ambaſſadour's Speech at his private Audience.

The 27th of *May* the *Czar*'s Commiſſioners delivered another Reply to his Excellencies Speech of the 22d of *April* (when he had a private Audience of the *Czar*) and his Memorials, unto which they gave not any Categorical Anſwer, inſiſting chiefly, as indeed they had done all along, upon the miſ-interpretation of the Ambaſſadour's Words; in ſome of which they endeavour'd to ſhew a Contradiction, in others want of Reſpect to his *Czariſh* Majeſty, eſpecially when he ſaid, That he hop'd, *ſo impoſſible a Summ to the greateſt Prince of* Chriſtendom *was not demanded on purpoſe to have a pretext to deny the Privileges*, &c. And as for the Privileges they thought fit to give no other Anſwer, than that after the time was ended, his *Czariſh* Majeſty would allow ſome Immunities to a certain number of *Engliſh* Merchants, but upon what Terms they did not think fit to declare. They ſeem'd to be extraordinary well pleas'd with the Expreſſions, in which his Excellency had mention'd the Opportunities his Royal Maſter might lay hold on, to aſſiſt the *Czar* in his Wars, and were very deſirous to know, againſt which of his Enemies he would aſſiſt him, and whether with Men and Ammunition, and with what Number and Quantity, for how long, and whether at his own Charge; unto whom his Excellency reply'd, That the Tranſactions of all thoſe Points were lett to his own Diſcretion, provided his *Czariſh* Majeſty would give ſome great Teſtimony of his Love and Friendſhip to the King his Maſter. As to the offer'd Mediation, they anſwer'd, That what had happen'd betwixt his *Czariſh* Majeſty and the King of *Sweden*, ſince the Concluſion of the Peace, they hoped might be amicably compoſed by Meſſages on both ſides. In lieu of a real Anſwer to his Memorials againſt *Pronchiſſof*, they rather excuſed than blamed him, without the leaſt mentioning any Satisfaction to be given either upon this account, or in relation of the Reparation promiſed at his Excellencies entrance into *Moſco*.

Mediation offered betwixt the *Czar* and *Poland*.

Whilſt theſe things were tranſacting, the Ambaſſadour having receiv'd new Inſtructions and Authority from *England*, to offer his Majeſty's Mediation betwixt the *Czar* and the King of *Poland*, he gave notice thereof to the Commiſſioners, offering himſelf to be ready to act in this matter according as his *Czariſh* Majeſty ſhould think it moſt expedient for his Service, provided he would on his ſide make no further Difficulties about his Former Demands. This Offer coming very ſeaſonably, they were extreamly well pleaſed with it, but did not reliſh the Condition of reſtoring the Privileges: However being very deſirous that his Excellency ſhould deliver his Propoſition in Writing at the next Conference, appointed the 1ſt of *June*; new Commiſſioners were choſen by the *Czar* for that purpoſe, in lieu of *Pronchiſſof* and his Aſſociates, who had, notwithſtanding the Ambaſſadour's juſt Complaints, been continued alſo in his place of *Priſtaf*, but was now removed from that place, and another put in his ſtead. The Ambaſſadour delivered the following Propoſition in Writing. 1664.

HIS moſt Serene Majeſty, my Maſter, deſiring to fulfil all parts of a moſt ſincere brotherly Affection towards his moſt Serene *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, according to His promiſe in his former Royal Letters, and by me his extraordinary Ambaſſadour, taking into conſideration the preſent War continued betwixt his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, and the King of *Poland*, the ſo great detriment of the Common Chriſtian Intereſt, hath therefore, although He knows that his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty doth neither want ſufficient Forces nor moſt prudent Counſels, whereby He may probably bring that War to a Concluſion, yet for the better facilitating of a firm and honourable Peace betwixt his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty and the King of *Poland*, impowred me, (If it may be acceptable and deſirable to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty) to offer his Mediation toward ſo good a Work, and hath therefore laid aſide all Reſpects to the contrary, believing that ſo laudable a Deſign will ſo much the rather find with his Majeſty of *Poland* all Effect and Acceptance. And this being but as an Earneſt of all thoſe other Counſels and good Offices, which his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty may promiſe himſelf continually from his Royal Majeſty, I do no ways doubt, but his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty will manifeſt a juſt value of his Royal Majeſty's moſt ſincere and conſtant Brotherly Affection. Unto which I ſhall always ſtrive to be in my place inſtrumental, according to my duty to his Royal Majeſty, and my great Devotion towards the Service of his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, ſo great a Prince, and ſo dear a Friend and Brother of his Royal Majeſty.

Given at Moſco, June 1. 1664.

The Commiſſioners were ſo well pleaſed with this Offer, that they deſired his Excellency to ſend an Expreſs for that purpoſe to *Poland* by the way of *Smolensko*, leaving the management of the Matter to his own Diſcretion; but as not a word was mentioned of the Privileges and other Matters required by his Excellency, he gave them to underſtand, That without theſe Grievances were redreſs'd he could not engage in a Buſineſs of this nature, his Majeſty of *Great Britain*, when he ſent him theſe Orders, taking it for granted, that theſe Matters had been ſettled before; but finding them deaf to this part, he deſir'd his Audience of Leave from the *Czar*; and having left certain Memorials with the *Boyars* of remaining Buſineſs, the Day for his Audience of Leave was appointed the 24th of *June*, when he made the following Speech to his *Czariſh* Majeſty.

Moſt Serene and moſt Potent Tzar,

THE King my Maſter hath commanded me to make haſt from hence about his other Affairs committed to me, and ſince your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty hath not been pleaſed to grant what I was ſent for, the greateſt Kindneſs You can ſhew the King my Maſter, and the greateſt Favour to my ſelf, is the allowing me this Liberty of taking my leave of your Majeſty, and permitting me to depart with ſpeed. I have nothing to deſire of your *Tzarskoy* Majeſty at parting, but that, as is due and right, there may be the ſame Liberty to all

1664. all other his Majeſties Subjects, whenſoever the reſpective time of their Obligations ſhall be expired, and that to thoſe muſt in the mean time remain, ſpeedy and equal Juſtice may be afforded, which hath not been hitherto. I return my Thanks for the plentiful Entertainment I have had in your Country. I ſhall very truly give the King an account of all the Honours and Favours I have received, and with the ſame Truth and Candor give an account of all things that have paſſed in my Negotiation, and ſhall pray to God to bleſs your Majeſty with a long and happy Government.

The *Czar* being ſeated on his Throne, deſired the Ambaſſadour to ſalute his Brother the King of *Great Britain*, and at the ſame time delivered with his own hand the Letter he ſent him; laying the fault of his Excellency's ill Succeſs in his Negotiation, upon the preſent Conjuncture; wiſhing him for the reſt a proſperous Voyage. Immediately after his Excellency was admitted to kiſs his Majeſty's hand, and ſo did all the Gentlemen of his Train, and being detained here were all Entertained with Diſhes out of the *Czar*'s Kitchen. But before we leave *Muſco*, it will perhaps not be beyond our Purpoſe to give a ſhort Account of ſome of the moſt memorable things we obſerved during our ſtay here.

The Ambaſſadour Entertained at a Feaſt by the *Czar*.

The firſt that preſents its ſelf in Order is a Feaſt made by the *Czar* the 19th of *Feb.* for the Entertainment of his Excellency and his whole Train, which laſted from two in the Afternoon till eleven at Night. He was conducted thither with a great deal of Ceremony, and coming into the ſame Hall where he had his Audience before; he found the *Czar* ſitting upon his Throne, but without his Crown, having only his Bonnet on, which however he did not think fit to move. His Excellency was ſo far from being admitted to his Table, that they plac'd him at one on his left hand, ſome ſteps lower than his own, whilſt the *Boyars* had their's on the right, and at a leſs diſtance from his Throne. His Excellency was ſeated alone on one ſide of the Table, having no other Company, but one of the *Czar*'s Councellors, and a *Stolnick* who ſate on the other ſide. At a ſmall diſtance from hence in a direct Line, my Lord *Marpeth* was ſeated at another Table, on which were alſo placed (purſuant to the *Czar's* Orders) the Gentlemen, Pages, nay the Footmen belonging to our Train. After every one had taken his place, the *Czar* laid by his Bonnet of black Furr till we went away again; we were not here a little ſurprized that we had no Napkins laid for us, eſpecially when we perceived, that the Table-cloth was ſcarce ſo wide as the Table. What diverted us a little, was the vaſt quantity of Gold and Silver Veſſels, (ſome of which were curiouſly wrought,) that were hung up for a ſhow round the great Pillar, that ſtood in the middle of the Hall. It was above half an hour, before the *Stolnicks* appear'd in their great Bonnets, and firſt ſerved the *Czar*'s Table, that of the *Boyars*, and then the Ambaſſadours and the reſt. The firſt Diſh was *Caviare*, which was followed by a Pottage, and about 500 Diſhes, (which rather look'd like Lead than Silver) well Dreſs'd with all ſorts of Fiſh, fry'd, baked and boiled; it being Lent time, all theſe made up no more than one Courſe, new ones being brought in continually inſtead of thoſe taken away. The worſt of all was, that notwithſtanding this great Variety of Meat, we had (not excepting the Ambaſſadour himſelf) but one Plate apiece allow'd us, but good ſtore of *Spaniſh* Wine, white and red Mead, *Quas* and ſtrong Waters; notwithſtanding which, we were not urged to Drink, except when the *Czar*'s Health went about; at the Entrance of the Hall attended 12 of the *Gards du Corps* with Halbeards, and on each ſide of the *Czar* two Lords with naked Swords upon their ſhoulders. Night approaching Wax Candles were ſet up round the Room; and not long after the *Czar* having ſignified to the Ambaſſadour, that he was deſirous to Diſcourſe with him, he went and ſtood on the other ſide of the Table juſt oppoſite to the *Czar*. The firſt thing his Majeſty did, was to drink a Cup of Wine to the Memory of King *Charles* I. in theſe words: *To the Memory of that glorious Martyr* Charles I. *who endured great Afflictions here, but now enjoys a greater meaſure of Glory.* After which he drank a Health to his preſent Majeſty, and each time delivered the Cup with his own Hands to the Ambaſſadour; who, after he had in his Turn began the Health of the two young Princes, this Diſcourſe began to run in with the *Poles*. By this time the Deſart coming in, which conſiſted chiefly in ſome artificial Trees, with candy'd and gilt Branches; ſome Fritters, Wafers and ſuch like Trifles made up in Paſte, the Ambaſſadour was deſired by the *Czar* to take his place again at the Table, which he did accordingly, but did not ſtay above half an hour; when riſing again, and turning towards the *Czar*, they drank to one another ſeveral times, the Gentlemen had the ſame Honour, and received the Cup from his *Czariſh* Majeſty's hands; at laſt, the *Czar* falling a bleeding at the Noſe, as he was talking with his Excellency he departed.

1664.

The 17th of *March*, being the *Czar*'s Birth-day he ſent a great Dinner, and 3 or 4 *Boyars* to celebrate the ſame with the Ambaſſadour.

The 3d of *April*, being *Palm Sunday*, we were invited to be Spectators of the great Proceſſion, which is kept every year on that Day, in remembrance of our Saviour's Entrance into *Jeruſalem*; the Seaſon for Sledges being paſs'd, the *Czar*'s Coach with a *Stolnick*, and *Gregory* the *Preſtaff* came to conduct the Ambaſſadour to the Church of *Jeruſalem*, as they call it. But as his Excellency was juſt ready to go into the Coach firſt, the *Stolnick* threw himſelf into it before him, with ſo much haſte that he could ſcarce recover himſelf from falling, which the Ambaſſadour perceiving, without more ado, turn'd back, and was juſt going up Stairs again, which the *Stolnick* perceiving, came out again, proteſting that what he had done, was by Orders from Court, and according to their Cuſtom. The Ambaſſadour reply'd, That he was ſenſible ſuch things were not practiſed in other Places, and that the *Czar*'s Ambaſſadours had met with a quite different Reception in *England*; the *Stolnick* diſpatch'd a Meſſenger immediately to the *Czar*, who being inform'd of his Excellency's reſolution, ſent Orders to the *Stolnick* to give way to him; which done, they departed immediately, but met the *Czar* already coming on Foot from the Church, ſurrounded by a great number of *Boyars* and Clergymen; leaning upon two of his Chief Councellours, with his Crown upon his Head. The Patriarch wore alſo a kind of a Diadem upon his Head, with a great golden Croſs in his hand. The inferiour Clergy appear'd in their Surplices, carrying Books, Banners, Croſſes and Images of divers ſorts upon long Staves, ſome Singing, others fuming the Spectators with Incenſe. They advanced thus upon Cloth ſpread upon the ground to a Platform, where the Patriarch preſented Palms firſt to the *Czar*, and afterwards to the reſt. Then taking off the *Czar*'s Bonnet, (which he laid upon a Silver Plate) he preſented the great Croſs to him to kiſs, which being done with a great deal of Reverence, he bleſſed with the ſaid Croſs, Firſt, thoſe preſent in the Platform, and then the reſt of the People, who caſt themſelves along upon the ground; they concluded the Ceremony in the Platform, with certain Hymns. At the ſame time the Ambaſſadreſſes, Maid, having had the Curioſity to get among the reſt into the place appointed for us to ſee the Ceremony, and having placed her ſelf not far from the Ambaſſadour (though without his knowledge) the *Czar* looking often that way, and obſerving her well Dreſs'd miſtook her for the Ambaſſadreſs, and ſent one of his *Boyars* to enquire of her Health; the Ambaſſadour not a little ſurprized at ſo unexpected a Complement, after having returned Thanks to his Majeſty, gave him notice of the miſtake, and immediately made the Maid withdraw with a good Reprimand. After the Hymns were ended, a Horſe (for want of an Aſs) was brought to the Platform with long artificial Ears, and covered all over with white Linen; and a very rich Saddle and other Covering; upon which he mounted by a Footſtool, and having placed himſelf ſidling, bleſs'd the People on all ſides, with this Croſs, the *Czar* who now had his Bonnet and Crown upon his Head, marching on Foot, and leading the diſguiſed Horſe by the Bridle. Before them was a Chariot drawn by ſix Horſes, likewiſe covered with white Linen, in which ſtood a Tree garniſhed with artificial Apples, ſix Men ſinging *Hoſannah*, being placed betwixt its Branches. About 8 days after, began the *Muſcovite Eaſter*, when 15 days together they preſent one another with Eggs, painted red of a crimſon Colour. As they meet one another they ſay, *Chriſtus wos Chreſt*, i. e. *Chriſt is riſen*, unto which the other anſwers, *Creaſtin wos Chreſt*, i. e. *he is certainly riſen*. then they Salute, and he that gives the firſt kiſs, Preſents the other with one of theſe Eggs. The *Czar* himſelf Preſents them to his Military Officers, who about that time come to kiſs his hand.

The Proceſſion of *Palm-Sunday*.

Their *Eaſter*.

1664. On the 29th of *May* we celebrated the Birthday of his Majeſty of *Great Britain*, and his Happy Reſtauration; he and the *Czar* being both born, 1630. when by a particular Favour from his *Czariſh* Majeſty, his Excellency had the Liberty to entertain the principal of the three Ambaſſadours ſent lately from this Court to *London*, the *Czar* having preſented his Excellency with a good quanty of *Spaniſh* Wine and Mead.

During our ſtay in *Muſco* there happened three Fires, the greateſt of which, though it deſtroyed ſeveral hundreds of Houſes, was ſcarce thought worth taking notice of, they having this advantage here, that as their Furniture is inconſiderable, ſo they buy Houſes ready made, and that at a cheap Rate, in the Suburbs call'd *Scoradom*; which they take to pieces, and ſet them up again where they pleaſe. Much about the ſame time a Lieutenant in the *Czar*'s Service, a *Scotchman* by Birth, ſpeaking vainly of the *Czar*'s Greatneſs in compariſon of the King of *England* in the Company of one of our Family, he Challenged the *Scotchman* and diſarmed him.

The *Czar*'s Preſents refuſed by the Ambaſſador.

About 4 days after his Excellency had his Audience of Leave, the *Czar* thought fit to ſend a Preſent of Sables to the Ambaſſadour and his Train; thoſe intended for himſelf being valued at 2000 Crowns, the Counteſſes Portion at 1400, and my Lord *Morpeth*'s at 1000, the reſt to be divided in proportion to every Mans quality and ſtation in the Family. The Ambaſſadour not thinking it convenient after ſo much neglect as had been ſhewn him in this Court, to receive any Obligations of this nature, would have prevented the ſending of them had he had timely notice of it; but *Golozof* who had the Management of them, in hopes of a conſiderable Reward from his Excellency was ſo haſty in the matter, that he had no ſooner ſent word of it by his Clerk, but he himſelf without acquainting his Excellency's *Preſtaff* with it (as he ought to have done,) came immediately after with 34 men, who carried the Preſents. The Ambaſſadour having told *Golozof* the reaſon of his refuſal, he was ſo enraged thereat, that he leap'd down Stairs, and laying his hands to his Breaſts, exclaimed againſt it, telling us, That ſuch a thing was never heard of in *Ruſſia*, and ſo remounting his Horſe, gave an account of his ill Succeſs to the *Czar*; who being exceedingly ſurprized thereat, call'd together his Counſel of State, the reſult of which was, that *Volinskoy* (one of the new Commiſſioners) ſhould be ſent to his Excellency to render the reaſon of his refuſal. He perform'd his Commiſſion with as much good Temper and Diſcretion, as could be expected, and the Ambaſſadour having given him to underſtand, that nothing elſe but the ill Succeſs of his Negotiation could have induced him, to refuſe ſo great a Favour from his *Czariſh* Majeſty's hands, and that if *Golozof* had not brought the Preſents without any previous knowledge of his *Preſtaff's*, he would have taken effectual care to have prevented the Diſhonour of ſo publick a refuſal. Theſe Arguments had ſo much effect upon *Volinskoy*, that he return'd pretty well ſatisfied to Court, and *Golozof* inſtead of the Reward he had hoped for from the Ambaſſadour, had the Mortification of being well reprimanded for his want of Conduct; ſo that we heard no further of the conſequences of this Affair, except that the *Czar* ſent back the Baſon and Ewer of ſilver, parcel gilt, two wrought ſilver Diſhes, and another ſilver Diſh, parcel gilt, which he had received from the Ambaſſadour at his firſt Audience; who received it with this Complement: *I give his* Czariſh *Majeſty thanks for this, and I receive it with as great Kindneſs, as if it had been a greater Preſent. I ſhall always keep it by me, becauſe it had the Honour to be in the Poſſeſſion of his* Czariſh *Majeſty.*

The Ambaſſadour ſets out from *Muſco* to *Riga*.

The intended mediation betwixt this Court and *Poland* being laid aſide, his Excellency was preparing for his Journey to *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, by the way of *Livonia*, for which reaſon he ſent a Meſſenger to Count *Oxenſtern*, then Governour of *Livonia*, to deſire him to give the neceſſary Orders for his being accommodated with Horſes and Waggons at his Charge.

The 24th of *June*, his Excellency attended by a Regiment of Horſe, ſet out from *Muſco*; and came the 29th to *Twere* the Capital of the Province of *Twerſco*. The 3d of *Jul.* we paſs'd through *Twerſco* to *Budeva*; the 4th to *Wiſny Volſock*, and the 7th to *Zimnogoray* and *Viday*, the 8th we travelled hard by *Rakina* and *Vena*, the 9th we arrived in a ſmall Burrough call'd *Brunitz*. The 10th we travelled 27 Verſts by water in 20 Boats upon a ſmall branch of the Lake of *Ilmin*; into which the River that paſſes by *Brunitz*, falls, and came the ſame Night within 3 Verſts of *Novogorod Veliki*; where the Ambaſſadour made his Entry the 11th, and departed from thence again the 12th. The 13th we made 67 Verſts, 37 upon the Lake *Ilmin*, and 30 upon the River *Sologna* to *Soltza*; which River exonerates it ſelf alſo into the Lake. The 14th we travelled 35 Verſts by Land, the 17th his Excellency made his Entry at *Pleſco*, and left that place the next Evening. 1664.

The 22d we found our ſelves at *Nyhuiſen* a Town on the Frontiers of *Livonia*, the 25th at *Marienburgh* and ſafely arrived the 3d of *Aug.* at *Riga*. Our Journey from *Muſco* to the Frontiers of *Livonia* being near 200 Leagues, two *Preſtaffs* were appointed to take care of our Carriages and Proviſions, one call'd *Juan Stepanovitz Telepniof* a *Stolneck* was to conduct us to *Novogorod*, and the other call'd *Simon Offonaſſewitz*, from thence to *Nyhuiſen*. The greateſt part of our Journey being made on Horſeback, (except from *Brunitz* over *Novogorod* to *Soltza* which was perform'd by water) we had 60 Sadled Horſes, beſides what belonged to the Carriages; we were alſo provided with 3 Coaches, 2 of the *Czars*, and 1 the Ambaſſadours; 200 Waggons, (but very ſmall ones) were appointed for our Baggage; which as well as our Sadled Horſes we changed four times, to wit, at *Twere*, at *Wiſny Volſock*, at *Soltza* and *Pleſco*; and, had it not been for the hardneſs and ill favour'dneſs of their Sadles, this way of travelling might have been pleaſant enough.

Our Lodgings were like a ſmall Encampment, under Tents or in the Waggons, which was the reaſon that among other things the *Czar* had provided a Tent worth 500 Crowns for the Ambaſſadours uſe, another for my Lady, and a third for my Lord *Morpeth*. Theſe were always ſent before with the Kitchen, and the greateſt part of the Baggage, and were pitch'd againſt Night in the moſt convenient place, for the Entertainment of ſo great a number of Horſes; our Victuals were commonly very ill Dreſs'd for want of Chimneys, but our Drink was the worſt, which being generally nothing but Mead and *Quas*, heated with the Carriage, was as dead as Ditch water. We were beſides this much peſtered with Flies; though the advantage of travelling under the ſhadow of the Foreſts and the fairneſs of the Seaſon, together with the Proſpect of ſeveral Lakes and Rivers made us ſome amends for theſe Inconveniences. Amongſt theſe Lakes the *Ilmin*, and the *Sweto Orzero* or *Holy Lake* are the moſt conſiderable. In the laſt is an Iſland environ'd by ſeveral leſſer ones; and a fair Convent in the midſt. The *Ilmin* is above 50 Leagues long and 30 broad, our Sails we uſed whilſt we were upon this Lake, were of Matt made of Bulruſhes. We made one more Obſervation on this Road, which is, that the Inhabitants being not ſo much accuſtomed to Strangers, as they are betwixt *Archangel* and *Muſco*, they would at the firſt ſight of any of us, run to their Cottages and ſhut the Doors againſt us.

Not long after we had left *Muſco* we had another Tryal of the *Muſcovite* Civility; for, one *Calthof*, who had been ſome time in the *Czar*'s Service, having obtained his Diſmiſſion by his Excellencies interceſſion, (his time agreed on, being expired) had put himſelf among the Gentlemen in order to his return into *England*. The *Czar* being inform'd of his Intention, ſent a Meſſenger after us out of the Town, to demand the ſaid *Calthof*, and the Ambaſſadour unwilling to oppoſe the *Czar*'s poſitive Orders, return'd the ſaid *Calthof*, not queſtioning, but that they would ſoon releaſe him again; but having underſtood at his arrival at *Twere*, that upon ſome ſham Pretence they had clap'd him in Priſon, he ſent the following Letter in *Latin*, directed to *Kiravenopoolin*, Chancellour of the Embaſſy Office.

Domine Cancellarie,

NEſcio quo fato aut conſilio factum ſit, quod impreſperæ noſtræ Legationi ultimus hic de Calthofio *cumulus acceſſerit, niſi fortaſſis decorum exiſtimetis, ut exitus introitum noſtrum referret, & poſtrema primis per omnia reſponderent. Sereniſſimus Rex meus diſertis verbis mihi mandaverat ut* Calthofium *mecum reducerem. Domini's Conſiliariis, & Tibi præſertim, Domine Cancellarie, ſæpius declaravi tempus effluxiſſe quo ſe* Calthofius *Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtati devinxiſſet, ideoque petii ut mecum poſſet reverti. Cancellarius etiam Czarei Arcani ſignificavit, nullam moram eſſe quo minus exiret. Quomodo poſtea ſucceſſerit non potes ignorare. Ecce primarius*

Scriba

1664. *Scriba in ipſo itinere accurrit, & Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtatis nomine* Calthofium *poſtulat. Ego qui optimè novi quantum reverentiæ & ſecuritatis Legatorum dignitati debeatur, ne tamen importuno loco cum Czareâ ſuâ Majeſtate altercari viderer,* Moſcuam *illum remiſi, ubi contrà quàm ſperaveram, & contra jus & æquum, falſo prætextu eum in Cuſtodiâ detineri audio. Quorſum hæc vergant neſcio, neque vos ipſi ſcitis qui facitis. Me verò interim omnium infeliciſſimum, qui pro ſummo meo Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtati inſerviendi ſtudio cum tam infauſto nuncio ſim reverſurus. Majus eſt hoc negotium quam primo ituit videtur, & in hoc* Calthofio *omnium Sacræ ſuæ Majeſtatis Subditorum hîc degentium res agitur, num pro liberis deinceps, an verò pro ſervis & captivis ſint habendi. Oro te Domine Cancellarie, pro ſolitâ tuâ humanitate, & pro muneris tui officio, ut hæc Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtati ſine hâc acerbitate (quam tamen ipſa rei natura mihi expreſſit) ſed eâdem cum efficaciâ protinus velis remonſtrare, ut Czarea ſua Majeſtas maturè de hâc re providere & conſulere queat, &* Calthofius *(quod adhuc expectlo) bonâ cum Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtatis gratiâ, me antequam limitem tranſierim, aſſequatur.*

Twere, 30. Junii Anno Dom. 1664.

CARLISLE.

My Lord Chancellor,

BY what deſtiny or deſign the unſucceſsfulneſs of my Embaſſy ſhould be accumulated with this violence to *Calthof*, I cannot imagine, unleſs You eſteem it perhaps decorous, that my Exit ſhould bear reſemblance with my Entry, and my laſt Uſage be as diſobliging as my firſt. The moſt Serene Prince my Maſter gave it me expreſly in command, that I ſhould bring *Calthof* back with me. I have often declared to the Lords of the Council, and to you my Lord Chancellor more eſpecially, that the time for which he had obliged himſelf to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty was expired, and for that reaſon I deſired his return. The Chancellor of his *Tzarskoy* Majeſties Cabinet acquainted me he might go if he pleaſed, there ſhould be no impediment. But what is happened ſince You cannot be ignorant of. When I was even in my Journey, the principal Clerk of the Ambaſſy-Office purſues me, and in his *Tzarskoy* Majeſties Name demands *Calthof*. Yet though I underſtood well the reverence and ſecurity was due to the dignity of an Ambaſſadour, nevertheleſs leſt I ſhould ſeem upon ſlight occaſions and unſeaſonably to contend with his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, I returned him to *Moſco*. Where I am ſince informed he is upon a falſe pretence detained in Cuſtody, not only contrary to my hopes and expectation, but to all Law and Equity whatſoever. How far theſe injuries may extend I know not, nor even You your ſelves that contrive them. In the mean time I am moſt unhappy, who notwithſtanding my great Zeal and Affection for the Service of his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, muſt be conſtrained to return with this unwelcome tidings. This is a greater buſineſs than it appears to be at firſt ſight, and in this *Calthof* the intereſt of all his moſt Sacred Majeſties Subjects living in this Country is at ſtake, and it is a queſtion whether for the future they be to be eſteemed Freemen or Slaves.

I conjure You, my Lord Chancellor, by Your uſual Humanity, and by the Duty of Your Place, that You repreſent theſe things to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, not with that ſharpneſs (which notwithſtanding the Nature of the buſineſs extorted from me) but with ſuch Efficacy, that his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty may apply ſome remedy in time, and that *Calthof* (which I expect) by his Majeſties moſt gracious Permiſſion, may overtake me before I am out of his Dominions.

Twere, the 30. of *June*, 1664.

CARLISLE.

This Letter had not the deſired Effect, which in a great meaſure proceeded from the wrong Interpretation of the word *qui*, which they miſtook for *quid*; the Expreſſion *quorſum hæc vergant neſcio, neque vos ipſi ſcitis qui facitis*, being interpreted by the *Muſcovite Boyars* as if thereby they were told, *They did not know what they did*; whereas the true meaning was; *I know not how far this buſineſs may extend, nor you neither who contrive it*; which made the *Czar* immediately take a Reſolution to ſend an Ambaſſadour to *England* to complain of his Excellencies Proceedings, and the Governour of *Twere* ſhut the Gates againſt us, ſo that we were forced to take up our Quarters in the Suburbs, which made us ſtay no longer than two days here; for the reſt this Town lies on the deſcent of a Hill near the River *Volga*, and another ſmall River call'd *Twere*, which has imparted its Name to the place. At *Tarſoen* we were diverted with a Bear dancing; this Bear was ſo tame, that he would ſuffer any Body to ride upon his back. Coming to *Budeva* we received the News of a moſt dreadful Fire, which happened the 29th of *June*, and conſumed one third part of the City of *Muſco*. 1664.

The 10th of *July* we were unexpectedly rejoyced with the ſight of Mr. *Watſon*; who, as we told you, having been recall'd by General *Monck* whilſt we lay in *Burlington Bay*, was come with ſome of the Ambaſſadour's Equipage from *England* to *Riga* by Sea, and ſo farther by Land to *Brunitz*, where he met us. His Excellency met with a very ſolemn and extraordinary Reception at *Novogorod*, which was however ſomewhat diſturbed by a Fall of a certain ancient Perſon, who was thrown by a Horſe and dangerouſly wounded; here it was that the *Priſtaff* which had conducted us hither, left us to the further care of *Simon Oſſo Naſſeritz* his Collegue, earneſtly recommending to him, to bring back the *Czars* Coaches and Tents, as ſoon as we were come to the Frontiers; to the great diſſatisfaction of his Excellency, who relying upon the word of *Volinskoy*, that they ſhould attend him as far as *Riga*, had made no other Proviſion for his Journey thither, which now was likely to prove very troubleſome.

The City of *Novogorod Veliki i. e.* the *Great*, was formerly one of the moſt conſiderable and beſt fortified in thoſe Parts; as the Ruins round about it ſufficiently teſtifie; and though it be now reduced into a much narrower Compaſs, it is very populous by reaſon of its Commerce; The River *Vologda* upon which it is ſituated, ariſes about a League from the Town, out of the Lake *Ilmin*. *Novogorod.*

Our Reception at *Pleſco* was not inferiour to that we had met with at *Novogorod*, the Governour of *Pleſco* having beſides his kind Entertainment taken opportunities of giving us ſome peculiar marks of his Reſpect; for a certain Gentleman, who had the Night before our Entry been ſo raſh, as to ſeize upon two Horſes belonging to the Ambaſſadours Train, he ſent him bound to his Excellency, who upon acknowledgment of his Fault was pardoned by him. The ſecond was occaſioned by a certain Rumour, that a certain Company of *Poliſh* Robbers near 500 ſtrong, under the Conduct of a one Eyed Serjeant had committed great Diſorders in the Province of *Pleſco*, and now laid in wait for us; upon which the Governour allotted us 500 Foot to conduct our Baggage; we ſtay'd for ſome time in this place, expecting the return of a Meſſenger ſent the 14th of *June* from *Muſco*, to Count *Oxenſtern* Governour of *Livonia*, who arriving at *Pleſco* the 19th of *July* brought word, that the ſaid Governour had ſent immediately two Officers to receive his Excellency on the Frontiers, and that he had received poſitive Orders from Court, to provide him with all Neceſſaries at the Kings Charge, as far as *Riga*. The Ambaſſadour had no ſooner received this obliging Anſwer, but he prepared immediately for his Departure; but finding not the leaſt effects of his Letter written in behalf of *Calthof*, he took this opportuntty to write another, wherein after he had made mention of the Courteſie ſhewn him by the two Governours of *Novogorod* and *Pleſco*, he complained of the Deſign of carrying off his Tents before his arrival at *Riga*; the Letter was written in *Latin*, and directed to the Chancellour of the Embaſſy's Office like the former. Our Entertainment at *Pleſco.*

Domine Cancellarie,

QUamvis ea ſit noſtra, & eſſe debeat de æquitate & prudentia Sereniſſimæ Czareæ ſuæ Majeſtatis opinio, ut ſi non antè, ſaltem poſt literas meas 30. *Junij* Tweræ *datas* Calthofium *dimiſſum eſſe ſperemus, quum tamen* Pleſcuam *pervenerim, & nihil adhuc de eo compertum habeam, Veredarium hunc hâc ſolâ de causâ* Moſcuam *remitto. Omnino enim, ſi non vobis (quod ſane oporteret) at mihi tanti eſt, ne Sereniſſimi Regis mei mandata, & hujuſce ſubditi ſui libertatem negligere videar. Iniquiſſimam enim eſſet, & à mutuâ inter Regiam ſuam Majeſtatem & Czaream* The Ambaſſadour's ſecond Letter to the Chancellor.

1664. *ſuam Majeſtatem benevolentiâ alieniſſimum, ut ille quem* Czareæ *ſuæ Majeſtati nullo modo obſtructum ulterius aut addictum eſſe innotuerit, tamen contra voluntatem ſuam, & noſtram interceſſionem, & veſtra promiſſa diutius detineretur. Quapropter te etiam atque etiam rogo Domine Cancellarie, ut ſi* Calthofius *adhuc vobiſcum hæreat Sereniſſimæ* Czareæ *ſuæ Majeſtati hæc exponere velis, ne in re adeo exiguâ tam magnum amicitiæ detrimentum patiatur. Me autem re magis injuriarum quam beneficiorum memorem eſſe Exiſtimetis, hâc occaſione tibi, adeóque* Czareæ *ſuæ Majeſtati ſignificandum eſſe duxi egregiam* Boyarij Knez Juan Borliſſovitz Repenini *erga me in itinere noſtro per* Novogorodam *humanitatem (quam ſemper prædicabo) & Majorem etiam ſi major eſſe poſſet* Knez Pheodor Gregorevitz Romadonoſsky *in hoc loco comitatem, qui ambo omnibus honoris & benevolentiæ indiciis me cumularunt. Neque enim ipſis imputandum eſt, ſi (quòd dicitur) Tentoria (de* Czareo *ſuo curru minus laboro) in limite* Nihuſiano *mihi auferantur, quæ* Czarea *ſua Majeſtas, ſi bene* Ockolnickey Baſilium Volinskoy *intellexi, mihi* Rigam *uſque commodavit, & propter quæ ipſe alia noſtris impenſis mihi comparare omiſi. Dona quidem à* Czarea *ſua Majeſtate mihi oblata, quoniam ita me decebat, recuſavi, non itidem uſum eorum quæ ad itineris noſtri commoditatem faciebant. Et quum ſub Pellibus noluerim, ſub Tentoriis certe pernoctare licuiſſet. Si autem ita omnino decretum eſt, non ſum adeò mollis ut per aliquot dies militari more ſub dio agere nequeam, ne à Præfecto* Succico *petere videar quæ à* Czarea *ſua Majeſtate, ſuppeditandæ eſſe credideram. Cui nihilominus de omnibus beneficiis atque honoribus mihi delatis gratias ago quàm maximas, & ea Domino meo Regi fideliſſimè recenſebo, Vale.*

Pleſcuæ, 14. Julii 1664.

CARLISLE.

My Lord Chancellour,

THough the eſteem I have and ought to have of the juſtice and prudence of his moſt Serene *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, perſwaded me that *Calthof* would be diſmiſt (if not before) at leaſt as Soon as my Letters from *Twere* on the 30. of *June* were arrived, yet being advanced as far as *Pleſco*, and having no Advertiſement thereof, I have diſpatch'd this Meſſenger again to *Muſco* for that very Affair. Which (though to you it may not appear ſo conſiderable as it ought) yet to me it is of that importance it cannot be pretermitted without neglecting the Commands of the moſt Serene King my Maſter, and the liberty of *Calthof* his Subject. And indeed it would be unjuſt and contrary to the mutual Amity betwixt the King my Maſter and his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, ſhould he who is manifeſtly now under no farther Obligation, or Engagement to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, be contrary, to his own will, my interceſſion, and Your promiſes, detained any longer. I do make it my requeſt therefore, my Lord Chancellor, that if *Calthof* be ſtill amongſt You, You would repreſent theſe things ſo effectually to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, that the Amity of our Soveraigns may receive no diminution from ſo ſmall and inconſiderable an occaſion. For my own part, leſt you ſhould think me better at remembring injuries than benefits, I have taken this occaſion to ſignifie to You, and by conſequence to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty the great civility *Boyar Knez Juan Boriſſovitz Repenini* ſhewed me in my Journey by *Novogorod* (which I ſhall always acknowledge,) and the greater (if greater can be) of *Knez Pheodor Gregorevitz Romadonofsky* in this place, both of them loading me as it were with Teſtimonies of honour and reſpect. Nor do I think it imputable to them, if the Tents (for of his *Tzarskoy* Majeſties Coach I am not ſo ſolicitous) be taken from me at the Borders at *Nyhuiſen*, though if I well underſtood *Ockolnickey Baſilius Volinskoy* his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty was pleaſed to ſpare me them as far as *Riga*, and for which reaſon I had neglected to furniſh my ſelf at my own Charges. It is true I did refuſe (as became me) his *Tzarskoy* Majeſties preſents that were ſent me, but not thoſe conveniencies that were neceſſary in my Journey. And though I did not for reaſons fore-mentioned accept of his Furrs, it might have been allowed me to have ſlept under his Tents. However, if it be peremptorily Decreed, I am not ſo ſoft and effeminate, but rather than requeſt thoſe things from the *Swediſh* Governour, that I thought were to have been ſupplyed by his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty, I can like a Soldier for ſome days take my fortune in the Fields. I do notwithſtanding return many Thanks to his *Tzarskoy* Majeſty for all the Honours and Favours, I received from him, and ſhall make a faithful Enumeration of them to the King my Maſter. 1664.

Pleſco, the 14. of *July*, 1664.

CARLISLE.

The next day after we left *Pleſco*, a Town not very large, built conveniently, ſituate upon a River ariſing out of a Lake about half a League from thence, and, by reaſon of the 500 Foot which guarded our Baggage, and a Squadron of Horſe that attended the Ambaſſadour; we arrived ſafely in two days on the Frontiers of *Livonia*, where we ſcarce had been half an hour, but two Officers deputed by the Governour of *Livonia*, and the Governour of *Nyhuiſen* in Perſon came to Complement the Ambaſſadour upon his happy Arrival, in *French*; they intimated at the ſame time, that the King and Queen Mother of *Sweden* being very deſirous to ſee his Excellency, had ordered every thing to be provided for his Paſſage from *Nyhuiſen* to *Riga*. The Ambaſſadour very obligingly reply'd, That, though nothing could be more agreeable to his Wiſh, than to enjoy the Honour of ſeeing their Majeſties, yet that he was willing to continue his Journey without loading himſelf with ſo great an Obligation. But, as we were to paſs through a deſart Country, and ſtood in great need of Proviſions, of which theſe Deputies had brought ſufficient ſtore along with them; the Ambaſſadour ſaw himſelf under an indiſpenſable neceſſity of accepting their Offer.

Some parts of *Livonia* are ſo deſolate, that in our Journey from *Nyhuiſen* to *Riga*, being a Tract of 60 Leagues, we met not with above two or three inconſiderable Towns. The Countrey is not unlike *Muſcovy* abounding in Woods and Lakes, and though it be not ſo plain, yet it produces a great quantity both of Corn and Graſs. The native Inhabitants are a barbarous and blockiſh Generation, who don't approach in ingenuity to the *Muſcovites*; for being by their frequent Wars reduced to Poverty, and an inconſiderable number, their Conquerours have left them nothing to ſubſiſt upon, but the Tilling of the ground; they are indeed *Lutherans* by name, but are ſtill ſo addicted to their ancient *Pagan* Superſtitions, that ſome will ſcarce allow them to be *Demi Chriſtians*. *Livonia.*

But to return to our Journey; it is eaſily to be imagined, that the barbarous uſage we met with among the *Muſcovites*, joyn'd to the deſire we had of ſeeing our native Countrey again, made us leave *Muſco* without the leaſt regret, which made one of our Company, as ſoon as he ſaw the Gentlemen appointed by the Governour of *Livonia* to receive us, cry out with an audible Voice, *Ay marry, theſe are Chriſtians indeed*, which being ſpoken within the hearing of 500 armed *Muſcovites*, might have proved of very ill conſequence, had they been capable of underſtanding his meaning. Dinner time approaching, the *Swediſh* Gentlemen urged the Ambaſſadour to Dine in the Caſtle of *Nyhuiſen*, which being ſtrenuouſly oppoſed by our *Priſtaff*, this *Medium* was pitch'd upon, that we ſhould paſs the Frontiers, and pitch our Tents near a Rivulet under the Caſtle of *Nyhuiſen*. Whereupon the *Swediſh* Gentlemen withdrew into the Caſtle, and the Ambaſſadour mounting on Horſe-back came thither, being accompanyed by the *Priſtaff* and the Captains of his Guards, who, according to the *Muſcovites* Cuſtom dined with his Excellency, and ſo took their leaves; this was no ſooner perceived by the *Swediſh* Gentlemen, but they ſent their Coaches to attend him to the Caſtle, where we were received under the Diſcharge of ſeveral pieces of Cannon; a way of Salutation not uſed among the *Muſcovites*.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

A Relation of the Second Embassy into Sweden.

1664. THE good Entertainment we met with at the Castle of *Nyhuisen*, gave us no small hopes of meeting with less trouble in our Voyage than we had suffer'd hitherto, which in respect of our Victuals, of which we had Plenty, and tolerably well Dress'd, proved true enough; though on the other hand, we were subject to no small inconveniencies by our manner of Travelling, being not provided with a sufficient number of Horses, and these so miserably Lean and ill accoutred, wanting for the most part Saddles, Bridles and Stirrups, that we were often put to a great nonplus, some being forced to betake themselves to the Waggons, some to Travel on foot for want of Horses, and others constrained to load them; nor were our Lodgings much better, for except the Entertainment we met with in three or four Castles (of which *Marienburgh* was one,) we were forced to look out for our Quarters in a Barn, or some Kitchen, though the Gentlemen had for the most part the Accommodations of their small Calashes they had brought along with them from *Muscovy*.

The honourable Reception his Excellency met with at *Riga*, made us some amends for the Sufferings in our Journey, but the noise of the Cannon which was Discharged at our Entry into *Riga*, being follow'd by most dreadful Thunder Claps, the Superstitious Crew interpreted them as an ill *Omen*, of which we found not the least Effects.

The Ambassadour's Residence at *Riga*.

The City of *Riga* is built upon the very Banks of the River *Dwina*, which arising in the Province of *Twer* or *Twersco*, exonerates it self about 3 or 4 Leagues from this City into the *Baltick*. Its extent is not very great, but it is compactly built with Stone and Brick Houses, surrounded with a strong Wall, large Ditches and Ramparts, especially towards *Muscovy*, it being defended on the River side with a strong Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Governours of *Livonia*. But what is most considerable in this place is their Traffick, which draws thither abundance of People by the way of the *Baltick* Sea, and the River *Dwina*; during the Winter Season they drive a great Trade with *Plesco*, *Novogorod*, and *Musco* by the help of their Sledges. They generally use the *High German* Language here, their Religion is the *Lutheran*; the Countrey on the opposite side of the River is call'd *Courland*, being subject to the Duke of that Name, who resides at a place call'd *Mitaw*, about 6 *German* Leagues from *Riga*. The very next day after our Entry Count *Oxenstern* paid a Visit to his Excellency, who returned the same to him in the Castle, giving him a thousand thanks for the care and trouble he had been at, to facilitate his Journey thither, offering to reimburse the Charges; unto which the Governour reply'd, That the same having been done by express Orders from the King, who was willing to take this opportunity of shewing his Satisfaction at his Excellency's happy Arrival, the same would be look'd upon as a Design to put any new Engagements upon his Majesty of *Great Britain*; after which his Excellency also received the Complements of the place. We were detained here 15 days by the Expectation of a Man of War, that was to carry us to *Stockholm*, and of a fair Wind; at first the double Feather beds which they use at *Riga*, as well as in *Sweden*, *Denmark* and *Germany*, stood us in good stead after the Fatigues we had endured in our Journey, but after a while, we not being accustomed to sleep betwixt two Beds of Down, found our selves much incommoded by being forced to lye thus rowled up in a heap. We were Entertain'd the first 3 days after our Arrival at the Charge of the City; and soon after the weather began to be so rainy and tempestuous, that had it not been for the Comfort we had of finding our selves amongst well civilized Company instead of the barbarous *Russians*, our time would have proved very tiresome to us.

The 10th of *August* Count *Oxenstern* gave a most splendid Entertainment to the Ambassadour, which being over we prepared to Embark on board the *Amaranthe* a Frigat carrying 40 Brass pieces; the Horses being appointed to be transported in a Chaloop hired for that Purpose. The 18th of *August* the Ambassadour left *Riga*, in order to go aboard the Frigat which lay at an Anchor a League and a half below the Town, under the Discharge of the Artillery from the Cast[le] but the Wind being very fierce and contrary, we were forced to take up our Quarters in a Countrey house not far from thence. The next morning two Boats were sent for to carry us aboard; that which the Ambassadour was in coming first, was saluted with 20 pieces of Cannon; the other, which was somewhat more loaden escaped with much ado being broken in pieces for want of slackening their Sails as they were near the Ship; we found this Man of War very neatly and well fitted for our Accommodation, and scarce a Dinner pass'd but they Discharged 40 pieces, whilst at the Ambassadours Table they were drinking the Health of their Majesty's of *England* and *Sweden*. The 22d we set Sail, but scarce had made 2 Leagues, when we were forced to come to an Anchor near the *Dunemund* Fort, where we staid two days for a fairer Wind to carry us over the sand Banks. The 25th we pass'd the mouth of the River with a fair wind; at parting our Ship saluted the Fort with 4 or 8 Guns, and the Fort return'd above 40 all loaden with Bullets; we Coasted it along the *Courland* Shoar till Night, where the Wind turning about we cast Anchor the 26th near the Isle of *Domeznes*, where there is very unsafe Anchorage by reason of the many sand Banks (near which are made great Fires every Night) which surround the Isle; we staid here till we had consumed most of our Provitions, (of which we had taken in only for 6 days) which made his Excellency retrench his own Table, so that he had but once a day, and Beer and fresh Water being become a very valuable Commodity with us, he reserved that small quantity of small Beer that was left for his own Table, and freely bestowed a considerable quantity of *Spanish* Wine among them, but this, instead of relief proved a greater Aggravation to them by its sweetness. Our Chaloop had better Luck, being returned in good time to *Riga*, and so happily escaped the Storm that befel us the 28th. The 29th, the fury of the Tempest being somewhat allay'd, we doubled the Cape of *Domeznes*, and the Wind proving favourable at Night, we pass'd within sight of the Islands of *Runen*, *Abrick* and *Oxzel*; besides several others, which lay scattered on this Coast, and make Navagation hereabouts very difficult and dangerous. The 31st, we pass'd the Rocks call'd *Sharas*, being so strait, that we could scarce pass them without great Danger of striking against them; we were forced to cast Anchor here till such time the Wind should chop about to carry us through the rest to *Stockholm*, which was 7 *German*, or 14 *French* Leagues distant from us. In the mean while, Mr. *Marvel* his Excellencies Secretary, and Mr. *Taylor* his Steward were sent in a Boat to *Stockholm*; the first to give Notice of his Arrival, the second to prepare a convenient House, and all such Necessaries as we stood much in need of.

The 1st of *September*, We pass'd for some Leagues betwixt these Rocks, which being very narrow and dangerous, divide the Sea into several Channels; but what surprised us most was, that upon some of them we saw Trees, but not the least substance from whence they could receive their Nourishment. The next morning early the *Swedish* Master of the Ceremonies came aboard us, to Complement his Excellency in the Name of the King and Queen Mother, the Ship in the mean time being in great Danger of being cast away, as she was tacking about to double a Point, her Poop striking against a Rock; which however, we escaped without any other mischief except a good Fright, and not long after came to an Anchor within a League of *Stockholm*, where his Excellency had News brought him by his Master of the Horse, of the loss of one of his Coach Horses, which they were forced to throw over board the Chaloop. The 8th of *September*, his Excellency made his Entry, which if it was not accompanyed with all the Ceremony, and shew as that at *Musco*, the Frankness, *Decorum*, and singu-

The Ambassadour's Entry into *Stockholm*.

lar

1664. lar Expressions of Civility made an ample amends for the vain Demonstrations of the Grandeur of the *Muscovites*. For no sooner was the Ambassadour and his Train entred the Boats sent him by the King, but our Frigat gave us a whole Discharge of her Cannon, and these being answered from the Shoar, as we were approaching thither, made a most surprizing noise among the Rocks, we landed near a Bridge, which being covered with Tapestry, his Excellency was there received and Complemented by one of the Senators of the Kingdom, and from thence went in the Kings Coach, to a House appointed for the Reception of Ambassidours; his Excellencies Liveries being all New, and trim'd after another Fashion than those he had used in *Muscovy*.

The Ambassadour's Residence at *Stockholm*.

Stockholm being properly the Name of an Island (signifying as much as the *Isle of the Trunck of a Tree*) on which this City was built, it has borrowed its Name from thence; the Derivation of which they relate thus: The Capital City of the Kingdom being laid in Ashes, and a new one to be built, a Trunck of a Tree was cast into the water, with a Resolution that on what *Island* soever this Tree rested, there they would build a City, which was done accordingly. The Town is very populous and close built, but scarce as big as *Roan* in *France*, including all its Suburbs. Most of their Houses are of Stone, and some Wood; they have several magnificent Structures here, among which those of General *Wrangel*, and the Lord Chancellour excell'd all the rest. Some part of the City is built like *Venice* upon Piles, at some distance from the Isle. The only remarkable thing in the Royal Palace, is the fair Prospect into the Harbour, where some of the Kings Men of War lie; but what was most surprizing to us was, that in the midst of Rocks and uninhabited Islands we should meet with so polite a Court, whereas in so plentiful and pleasant a Countrey as *Muscovy*, we found every thing savouring of Rusticity and Barbarity. The Nobility of *Sweden* are (besides their native Tongue) generally well versed in the *French*, which they also affect to imitate in their Humour and Behaviour; they are *Lutherans* as well as in *Denmark*.

His Excellency having been entertained three days at the Kings Charge, had Audience from his Majesty the third being Sunday; of which I will not pretend to describe the Ceremonies, they being the same, as are used commonly in other Courts; but as to the King's Person, who was then scarce 9 years of Age, he was very handsome, with such a Cheerfulness and Alacrity in his Looks, as drew the Eyes of all there present upon him. His Hair and Complexion was very fair, his Habit cloth of Silver, with a Cloak and Sword, and a white Plume of Feathers in his Hat. He stood before his Chair of State under a Canopy, the Regent of the Kingdom, and other great Officers of State being placed on both sides; and was after the usual Reverences Complemented by his Excellency in a short Harangue, which was afterwards translated into *Latin*.

Most Puissant and most Serene King,

The Ambassadour's Speech to the K. of *Sweden*.

THE King my Master has sent me to Your Majesty to cultivate and celebrate the Friendship already happily established betwixt Your Majesties, to congratulate in His stead and partake of Your Majesties present Felicity, wishing You the same for the future, and to assure You, that wherein the affection of the King my Master may add to all Your Blessings, He will no ways be wanting. And when His Majesty saith that He speaks not only of that present Amity of State betwixt You, He thinks Friendship but narrow which is confined in Treaties, but He understands therewith a personal and most particular affection to Your Majesty, an affection large and deep as the hearts of Princes, without condition, without reserve, upon all occasions wherein He may gratifie Your Majesty. And even the seeming lateness of these Professions is so far from any contrariety on his Majesties part, that indeed He hath herein given that precedence to this Embassy, which the end hath over the beginning, to be first in intention though last in execution; and if there be any Fault it must rest wholly upon my misfortune, coming from a Climate and People where it costs so much time to do nothing. But therefore I cannot but so much the more esteem the Honour I now have to contemplate so great a Monarch, who are in so young years so accomplished a Prince, and as he once said of that little *Hercules*,

——— ——— *Parvusque videri*
Sentirique ingens ——— ———

And in so excellent a Model represent all the Magnanimity and Grandeur of Your Royal Ancestors. I congratulate the happiness of Your Kingdom, for which it seems that God's Providence would, to be the more exemplary, alter its usual Maxim: and what he once threatned as a malediction, hath made it the greatest Blessing of Your Subjects to have a Prince in his Nonage to rule over them: And in conclusion, I profess and offer my self to Your Majesty as a most ready, willing, and (I heartily wish) as proper an Instrument in all occasions to witness and approve His Majesties most sincere and constant desires of a most perfect correspondence with Your Majesty, to Your mutual contentments and the further welfare of both Your Kingdoms. 1664.

His Excellence having delivered himself in *English* with his Hat on, his Secretary rendered what the Ambassadour had spoken in the following *Latin*.

Domine Rex,

DOminus Rex meus ad Majestatem Vestram me legavit, ut excolerem & concelebrarem amicitiam inter Majestates Vestras jam optimis auspiciis contractam, ut gratularer, & sua vice parti in rem præsentem Majestatis Vestræ felicitatem (eandem etiam in posterum augurando,) atque Majestati Vestræ confirmarem, quod si quo modo fortunis Vestris superaddere suo affectu, & contribueri possit, nulla in re Majestati Vestræ defuturam. Et quum Majestas sua hæc dicit, non tantum de præsenti publica inter Majestates Vestras & sua Regna societate loquitur, angustiorem illam amicitiam existimat quæ fœderum hactenus & tractatuum velut cancellis circumscribitur. Sed intimam quandam & singularem benevolentiam innuit, benevolentiam quantum ipsa Regum corda effutissimam & profundam, sine conditione, sine limite, quacunque in re Majestati Vestræ gratificare & commodare possit. Ne verò hoc tardius quam pro summo, quo Majestatem vestram complectitur honore profiteri videatur, hoc ipsum Majestati Vestræ honori datum est, ut quo modo finis initia antecedit, ita hæc ad Majestatem Vestram Legatio, posterior quidem Executione, sed meditamento & consilio prima existeret. Si autem alicubi hujus moræ culpa residat, sola mea fortuna argui potest, utpote qui ab illa regione & gente recens adveniam ubi ad nihil agendum non minori tempore opus erat. Sed eò jam impensius mihi gratulor dum Majestatem Vestram tandem contemplor, in tam tenerâ ætate jam consummatum Principem, de quo uti de parvo illo Hercule *meritò dici potest,*

——— ——— Parvusque videri
Sentirique ingens ———

Et in quo tanquam in perfectissimo modulo heroicam omnium Majorum Vestrorum magnanimitatem, Cæteraque Regii tam animi quàm corporis lineamenta recognoscimus & videmus. Nec possum Regni Vestri fortunas satis laudare, quibus ut magis velificetur, ipsa Divina Providentia cursum suum mutavit, & quod suo olim populo interminata est in summam subditorum vestrorum felicitatem convertit faciendo, ut Pupillus *super eos regnaret. De cætero memet ipsum offero & profiteor uti paratissimum, utinam & aptissimum instrumentum ad contestandum & approbandum omni occasione constantissimum & sincerissimum Majestatis suæ votum perfectissimæ, cum Majestate Vestra amicitiæ & societatis ad mutuum Majestatum Vestrarum gaudium & quodcunque ulterius Regnorum Vestrorum emolumentum.*

Corint Magnus de la Gardie returned an Answer in *Swedish* to this effect; That the King his Master thought himself much Honoured by so solemn an Embassy, in which his *Britannick* Majesty had done him the Honour to salute him, and Congratulate the Felicity of his Government; that, as he bore his share in the Prosperity of the King of *Great Britain*, so he should be always ready to enter into a more strict Amity with him. In the conclusion he told the Ambassadour, how great an Esteem the King his Master had for his Person. The next following day, his Excellency being introduced into the Appartment of the Queen Mother, who stood likewise before her Chair, under a Canopy with several Ladies, and Persons of Quality attending her, he addres'd himself bare headed in this manner.

Madam,

1664.

Madam,

His Speech to the Queen.

THE King my Master hath laid a peculiar Command upon me to salute and congratulate Your Majesty on His behalf, both in respect of Your Quality as so great a Queen, and of Your relation to the Government of this Kingdom with which He is at Amity, and of Your happiness of being Mother to a Prince his Friend, who makes already so great a part of the Discourse, and hopes, as He will one day of the History of Christendom. His Majesty my Master rejoyces extreamly in the happy Constitution of all Your Affairs, and under God attributes it much to Your Majesties Prudence, that in the conjuncture of so young a King, yet there is no possibility of other contention here, than that decent contest, whether You or the Kingdom have a greater share in Him. And his Majesty my Master offers himself as a third to foment so amiable a Controversie, being resolved never to hold himself in Neutrality thorough such blessed Wars of Friendship and affection, as in all other things, He saith he shall be most happy to witness the singular esteem and honour, that for all these reasons He bears to Your Majesties Person. The Queen my Sovereign Lady hath charged me with all Commands of the like Nature to express how amorous, and how great an admirer She is of Your Royal person and virtues, and most desirous of shewing by all means the great honour She retains and cherishes for Your Majesty, to whom I beg leave on my own part to present all due honour and Service.

As the principal end of this Embassy was to bring the Amity, and Alliance establish'd betwixt these two Crowns, into a more strict Union; so his Excellency employ'd most of his time in conferring with the chief Ministers concerning those Matters, which might tend to engage them into a firm League with *Denmark*, on which the Security of the three Kingdoms of *England*, *Swedland* and *Denmark* seem'd to depend at this Juncture; and as the King his Master had for that Reason deputed two Envoys extraordinary, one to this, and the other to the *Danish* Court, so he hoped he would bring this intended Alliance to a happy Conclusion; which Proposition was not ill relish'd by the *Swedish* Court, who also were very ready to gratifie his Excellency as to divers Requests, made in the behalf of some *English* Merchants and others, who desired some Favour or other; the Ambassadour had also several Conferences with the Residents of *France*, *Denmark* and *Holland* then residing at *Stockholm*.

Not long after his Arrival there, his Excellency was invited by the King and Queen Mother to a Palace near *Stockholm*, where being first received with a Collation, he Dined with the King and Queen Mother; the King began the King of *England*'s Health, but happening to drink with some eagerness, he spilt part of it upon his Cloaths which put him somewhat out of Countenance. After Dinner the Ambassadour went a hunting with the King in a fair Park, and finding him backward in shooting a fair Deer that was near him, he asked why he would not shoot; and the Ambassadour answering, said a smaller would serve his Turn, the King reply'd amorously, That he was free to kill them all, provided he left but one. After a long Chase they gave over, his Excellency having shot 2 or 3 times before the Doe would fall, which was sent immediately to his House.

Not many days after my Lord was invited to a great Ball, where there was a most glorious Appearance of all the Gallants, and Ladies of the *Swedish* Court; three days after this, he was conducted to take a View of the King's Men of War, and presented with a very fine Collation by Count *Steenbock*, the *Swedish* Admiral. The next following day he was splendidly Treated by the Lord Chancellour, at his Countrey Seat near *Stockholm*, and the next day after his Excellency gave a most sumptuous Entertainment to the Company that was there.

The 3d of *October*, his Excellency was invited to another Feast, by the *English* Merchants residing at *Stockholm*; but this was scarce over, when a fatal Quarrel betwixt two Gentlemen belonging to the Embassy, one of which was a *German* Colonel, made a great Disturbance in our Family. It seems the Colonel had borrowed some Money of the other Gentleman, to put himself into a good Equipage before he left *Muſco*, which the other having demanded again, he gave him foul Language instead of Payment, so that at last it coming to blows, the Colonel received a mortal Wound at the first Pass; his Adversary being the first who gave Notice of what exploit he had done, and his Excellency happening to be asleep he was clap'd up in Prison, but released soon after, it being proved that the Colonel was the person who gave the first Provocation, being for the rest a Person but of a very indifferent Character.

1664.

By this time Mr. *Henry Coventry* being arrived in the Quality of Envoy Extraordinary from his *Britannick* Majesty in a Man of War, which must carry the Ambassadour to *Copenhagen*, he prepared for his Departure, his Lady having had the Honour (at the Queen Mothers particular Desire) to be admitted to a private Visit, where she was saluted by the King. The Ambassadour being also presented from the King with a Medal of himself, and a Sword richly set with Diamonds, he gave a 1000 Crowns in Ducats to the Gentlemen, Pages, Musicians and other of the King and Queens Servants, who had been present at his Entertainment; the Steward of the House had 60 Ducats for his share in a Silver Purse, he that introduced him to the Ceremonies 25 in a Silver Purse; his Cup bearer and Carver, and the principal Gentlemen that attended the Ambassadress at her Table had each of them 20 Ducats in a Purse of Silver, the rest being distributed without Purses. The 11th of *Octob.* in the Evening, his Excellency had Audience of Leave of the King, unto whom he made this following Complement in *English*, which was rendred afterwards into *Latin*.

Mr. Coventry sent to Sweden.

Sir,

HIS Majesty having thus far satisfied by me the obligation due to that sincere Friendship betwixt the two Crowns, hath now commanded me hence. It was necessary He should command me, otherwise like those that observe the Stars, I might have forgot my self in admiring your Luster, so pleasant hath it been to me to see Your young Majesty sparkle among the Regents, and make up with them the proper number of the Northern Constellation. I shall confirm his Majesty in all that he hath heard hitherto of Your Majesties Greatness and Virtues, in which I assure You none doth more rejoyce and take part than his Majesty. And He hath in the mean time commanded me still to reiterate the same Professions of a cordial and universal and affection, and friendship toward Your Majesty. For mine own part I shall only desire this Character from Your Majesty, that seeing the friendship betwixt Your Majesties was so great that it could not be augmented, however I have not diminished it. In Conclusion, I render mine own thanks to Your Majesty, entring however all your Royal Favours upon His Majesties account, and shall heartily pray, that the same Amity may still last betwixt the two Crowns, the same Union may always continue in Your Majesties Counsels, that Your Majesties Felicity and Virtues may still encrease at the same Proportion, and that the Triumphs of your Peace may surmount and outlast the Trophies of all your Ancestors.

The Ambassadour's Speech to the King.

This afterwards was rendred in *Latin* as followeth,

Domine Rex,

QUum Majestas sua Dominus meus clementissimus mutuis amicitiæ inter duas Coronas Officiis hactenus per me satisfecerit, Suo jam mandato accersor. Accersi hinc & revocari opus erat, ne quod Stellarum studiosis usu venit in splendore Majestatis vestræ contemplando semper defixus hærerem, tantæ voluptatis fuit Majestatem vestram admirari, ut inter Regentes scintillet, & justum cum illis Septentrionum suorum Sydus ac numerum implere videatur. Majestati suæ de Prosperitate & Virtutibus vestris omnia fidelissimè narrabo, quo nihil optatius aut jucundius Majestati suæ potest accidere. Ego interim Majestatis suæ jussu eadem quâ prius asseveratione integerrimam & constantissimam suam amicitiam Majestati vestræ confirmo. Et quum ea sit inter Majestates Vestras mutua benevolentia ut augeri nequeat, sperabo saltem eam per me non esse imminutam. Majestati vestræ gratias de regiis suis beneficiis summas ago, quas quoniam ipse referre non possum, Regem etiam spondeo debitorem. Quod reliquum est Deum Optimum Maximum discessurus veneror, & precor ut eadem amicitia inter Majestates vestras & suas Coronas æterna permaneat, ut idem animorum & consiliorum

consensus

1664. *consensus in hoc suo Regimine perpetuetur, ut Majestatis vestræ Gloria & Virtutes paribus incrementis semper eodem modo assurgant, neque pacis vestræ Triumphi Majorum Vestrorum Trophæa excedere possint & superare.*

The Answer given to this in *Swedish* and *Latin* contained in Substance, that amongst all the Marks of Esteem his *Britannick* Majesty had given to his Majesty, he look'd upon his Choice made of the Earl of *Carlisle* for his Ambassadour, as the most particular one; whom in regard of his Prudence and Conduct he had used to unite the Interests of the two Crowns of *Sweden* and *England*, he could have wish'd to have staid longer with them; but seeing he was recall'd by his Royal Master, the King thought himself obliged to give him full assurances of his Affection towards the King of *England*, and of his Favour to the Ambassadour, unto whom he wished a happy Return into his Countrey.

This Audience was no sooner ended, but his Excellency was conducted to the Queen Mother's Apartment, of whom he took Leave in these words;

Madam,

His Speech to the Queen.

BEing now upon my Departure, I ought by commandment of His Majesty and likewise of the Queen, to represent again in the most lively and effectual Expressions, Their great Affection to Your Majesty, and what part They take in Your Majesties Interests, the same with the Interests of the King and Kingdom. But as there are no words sufficient to depaint so real an Affection, and being moreover obliged in his Majesties name to give You thanks for all the Honours which in respect to Him your Majesty hath conferred upon me, I find now a Decency even in my defects, and that my want of Language hath been but a foresight of the King my Master, and a fit Complement upon His part, seeing upon so extraordinary occasions as these, the boldest Eloquence would lose its Speech, and had I an hundred Tongues I should be struck silent. Therefore I shall only pray for Your Majesties Happiness and Prosperity, and as the greatest part thereof for the Health of the King Your Son, upon Whom all the joys and cares of Your Majesty do so worthily center. And whersoever I go, but especially to Their Majesties, I shall make report of Your Majesties unparalleled Virtues, and shall my self preserve an immortal Memory of all Your Royal Favours.

Her Majesty acknowledged her self in her Answer infinitely obliged, for the assurances of Friendship from the King and Queen of *England*, desiring his Excellency to testifie to the King his Master, with what satisfaction she received these Declarations, and how ready she was to make use of all her Power and Interest, to preserve the good Correspondency betwixt her Son, and his Majesty of *Great Britain*; she also desired to acquaint her Sister the Queen of *England*, how much she esteemed her Person and Virtues, and how sollicitous she was for her Prosperity; concluding, that she was highly satisfied with the Ambassadours Conduct, and should ever have a particular Esteem of his Person and Merits. After which his Excellency was conducted into a large Room, where he was entertained with extraordinary Splendour and Magnificence.

The Ambassadour's Voyage to *Copenhagen*.

The 13th of *October*, his Excellency left *Stockholm* with his Train, in order to Embark aboard the Man of War, which lay at Anchor about 10 Leagues from the City; being a Ship of 50 Guns call'd the *Centurion*; we Embark'd the 14th, but our Horses being judged troublesome to be transported by Sea, were sent by Land to *Copenhagen*. We were however detained 4 days longer, because his Excellencies Baggage did not arrive till some days later than was expected. The 18th we set Sail with a pretty good Wind, but it proving Foggy were constrained to come to an Anchor again till the Afternoon, when the Air clearing up, we advanced about 4 Leagues, and were forced to cast Anchor again amongst the Rocks, which was very dangerous here, and extend from *Stockholm* to the main Sea near 25 Leagues: The 19th it was so dark (though the Wind was so fair) that we durst not weigh Anchor till 9 a Clock in the Morning, when the Day clearing up a little we set Sail, but about Noon we thought we had lost our way, and consequently our selves, till at last we discovered *Lands Ort* (Lands End) which we left to the right and entred the main Sea. The 20th early in the Morning passing by *Gothland* to the left, we sail'd within sight of the Isle of *Stockholm*; the 21st, and 22d in the Evening we cast Anchor betwixt two Islands about 12 Leagues from *Copenhagen*. 1664.

During this Voyage we had very good Diversion with a couple of tame Bears, one of which was so gentle that you might play with him like a Dog, and he would wrestle with any of the Ships Crew, with a great deal of Dexterity. The other somewhat bigger than the former, could not be pleased better, than to put one's Finger into his mouth, which he would suck like a Teat; which seems to verifie what has been observed by some, to wit, That the Bears in Winter time will suck their own Paws for want of Food. Two tame Bears.

The 23d we did not Sail till Night, when by the light of the Moon we made 5 or 6 Leagues; but were forced to come to an Anchor the 24th in the Morning, and lye still all that Day and Night, by reason of the sand Shelves, Fogs and tempestuous weather.

The 25th we continued our Voyage, and about 10 a Clock in the morning arrived before *Copenhagen*, which we saluted with 12 pieces of Cannon. About half an hour before we came to an Anchor, we met a *Dutch* Man of War, which not striking her Flag, our Captain ordered 7 or 8 Cannon to be Charged with Bullets, which whilst they were doing, the *Dutch-men* took it down, and in passing by saluted us with 5 Cannon shots, which we having returned with 3, he gave us 3 more, which we answered with 1; soon after his Excellency having sent his Secretary to give notice of his Arrival, the Vice-Admiral of *Denmark* came the same Evening aboard us, to Complement his Excellency in the King's Name upon his happy Arrival; and Sir *Gilbert Talbot* his *Britannick* Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary, who was lately arrived at that Court, came along with the Vice-Admiral in a very fine Barge, to salute his Excellency. They return'd the same Evening, and the Lady Ambassadress being near her time, took this opportunity to go ashore along with them, though we were near 2 Leag. distant from the Harbour. The next day, the Vice-Admiral having sent us two Pilots to Conduct us, we were nevertheless so ill steered, that we had likely to have been lost at the very Entrance of the Harbour, had it not been for the Vice-Admirals Care, who understanding the Danger we were in by the Signal of 2 Cannons we gave to the Town, came to our assistance with some Boats, by the means of which, and a sudden Calm, which proved propitious to us, we were soon after disengaged, and came to an Anchor at seven Fathom water. However this accident, and the Arrival of the *French* Ambassadour, Mr. *de Tressan* some few days ago, who had not yet quitted the House, appointed for the Entertainment of Ambassadours, was retarded till next day. They came before *Copenhagen*.

The 27th of *October*, his Excellency's Entry was performed with a great deal of Splendour; for the contrary Winds preventing our coming up close to the Town, two Gallies and a Galliot, most magnificently equipp'd, were sent to receive the Ambassadour and his Train, aboard our Vessel, which at parting gave us 20 Guns; as we pass'd along we saw a good number of Men of War with the Flags and Streamers display'd, who saluted us with their Cannon. Within the Harbour we were met by 20 Pleasure Boats richly Equipp'd, to receive his Excellency and his Train; into the first went the Foot-men, then the Pages and Gentlemen, after them my Lord *Morpeth*, and last of all the Ambassadour in Company of the Vice-Admiral, and the Master of the Ceremonies. Thus we were conducted through the Harbour, where we Landed at a place covered with Tapstry, and his Excellency being again Complemented in his Majesty's Name, was conducted into the King's Coach, and from thence to the Palace, prepared for his Reception. The Ambassadour's Entry into *Copenhagen*.

The City of *Copenhagen* stands upon the Sea, being well fortified by Art, and strong by its Situation in a large Plain; it has a Canal deep enough to receive pretty bulky Merchant Ships, but has no Current. The Royal Palace has nothing remarkable in its Building, unless it be a high Tower erected for the use of Astronomers, unto which an easie Assent is raised without steps, so broad that a Coach may pass and turn at the top of it. In a Steeple hard by are to be seen the marks of the *Swedish* Cannon of the late Siege in *Copenhagen*, the Holes having been since gilt by the King's Order. As to the *Danish* Court, it bears as much resemblance to the *Germans*, as the *Swedish* does to the *French*; the *Danish* and *Swedish* Languages are understood easie The Ambassadour's Residence at *Copenhagen*.

enough

1664. enough by both Nations, the *French* Tongue being much uled alſo in both thoſe Courts.

His Audience. The Ambaſſadour was magnificently Entertained the firſt 3 days after his Arrival in the Town, at the King's Charge, and the third had his Audience (much with the ſame Ceremonies as at *Stockholm*) of the King, who, though above 60 years of Age, appeared very Vigorous and Majeſtick, large of Stature, in a Scarlet Coat laid all over with Gold and Silver Lace, with a Sword by his ſide, and a Plume of white Feathers in his Hat. He ſtood under a Canopy of State, with only 4 or 5 Miniſters of State ſtanding on one ſide, and about 10 or 12 of his Guards *du Corps* attending in the midſt of the Audience Hall. The Ambaſſadour made him a low ſalute as he entred, which the King returning with a ſalute, his Excellency advanced as far as to the Canopy, where as ſoon as the King put on his Hat, he likewiſe put on his, and Complemented the King with the following Speech.

Sir,

His Speech to the King. AMong ſo many Prerogatives of the higheſt Fortune, yet Princes have one diſadvantage, that They can ſeldom attain to that reality and intimacy which we may ſee among private Perſons. The equality of their Sovereign Power expoſeth them to perpetual Competitions, the Intereſt of their People obliges them to a conſtant Jealouſie, and even the Fidelity and Prudence of their Miniſters ſeems rather made to entertain them in mutual Cautele and Suſpicion, than in perfect Friendſhip. But betwixt the King my Maſter and Your Majeſty it is all otherwiſe, and You are perhaps the only two Princes in Chriſtendom, who in ſo great a nearneſs yet can never juſtle. And having betwixt You all the Endearments of which private Perſons are capable, Your Royalty only inclines and inables You to cultivate and expreſs them in a more honourable manner. What Subjects of one King could ever live ſo peaceably and kindly together as thoſe two Excellent Princes, His Majeſties Grand-Father and Your Majeſties Father, by Whom thoſe Bonds of Hoſpitality and Conſanguinity were ſo cloſely woven betwixt You, viſiting one the other in their Kingdoms as familiarly as Neighbours in the ſame City, and taking Counſel together as confidently as Brothers in the ſame Family. And ever ſince what mutual good Offices, what communication of Counſels have there been betwixt both Kings, both in adverſe and proſperous Fortune (with ſo much conſtancy eſpecially on Your part in that moſt turbulent ſtorm of the *Engliſh* Monarchy, that His Majeſty muſt keep it in a moſt grateful and eternal Memory) and ſo univerſal a ſympathy upon all occaſions, that all Antiquity would be troubled to furniſh a parallel for ſo Golden and real a Friendſhip. And as the Bonds of reciprocal Obligations, and thoſe animated Ligaments of Blood and Nature have knit both Your Majeſties in the moſt refined union, ſo as to the groſſer Intereſt of Commerce and Navigation, I may ſay without a ſimilitude, that it hath moored on both ſides, even with Anchors and Cables betwixt the People. Therefore thoſe Affairs having been regulated and conſtituted at the time time of the Extraordinary Embaſſage ſent by Your Majeſty to *England*, His Majeſty hath now ſent me to return that Honour and Obligation, and to aſſure Your Majeſty, that as He ſhall moſt faithfully obſerve that inviolable League then perfected by the prudence of Your Ambaſſadour, betwixt Your Majeſties, ſo ſhall He moſt gladly approve on all occaſions to Your Majeſty, that ancient radicated and private Affection, which hath from Your Anceſtors hitherto flouriſhed ſo happily betwixt You. His Majeſty is only troubled, that what by the compoſition of his own Affairs and what by my ſlow arrival this Office is performed later to Your Majeſty. But He hopes Your Majeſty will conſider, that however the Embaſſy was then ſent when his Letter was firſt ſubſcribed, and that to recompenſe and excuſe my neceſſary delay, He hath taken care to ſupply it in the mean time by his Extraordinary Envoy, who (I doubt not) according to his great Abilities and Affection hath already herein ſufficiently informed Your Majeſty. So that I need ſay nothing more at preſent than at the beginning, that as both Your Majeſties Soveraign Power is free from all ſhock and competition, and your Peoples mutual Intereſt diſpenſes you from all Suſpicions and Jealouſie; ſo I even out of Fidelity to the King my Maſter, beſide mine own proper inclination, find my ſelf bound to contribute all things toward the Entertainment and certainty of the moſt perfect Friendſhip betwixt Your Majeſties, and ſhall make it my buſineſs to give all the real Proofs and Teſtimonies thereof, during the time allotted me for this Employment. 1664.

This Speech was rendred into *Latin* as followeth,

Domine Rex,

INter tot ſummæ fortunæ Ornamenta hoc tamen incommodi Principibus adhæret, quòd rarò ad intimam illam & apertam animorum communicationem aſpirare poſſint, quam inter tenuioris ſortis homines ſæpius obſervamus. Regii enim illa faſtigii paritas perpetuâ ferè æmulatione concurrit, diverſæ ut plurimum Subditorum rationes ut ſtudia etiam Dominos trahunt, & ipſa miniſtrorum ſuorum prudentia & fides ad cautelam potius & ſuſpicionem quam ad amicitiæ inter Reges ſimplicitatem facere videntur. Inter Regem autem Dominum meum & Majeſtatem Veſtram res aliter omninò ſunt comparatæ, & ſoli forſitan eſtis ex Europæ *Principibus quorum neuter in tantâ vicinitate alterius luminibus obſtruat. Sed quum omnia quæ etiam privatos Conciliant benevolentiæ & charitatis irritamenta, inter Majeſtates Veſtras intercedant, ſuprema Utriuſque Poteſtas hoc tantum efficit, ut majori cum dignitate & fructu mutuam amicitiam exercere & excolere poſſitis. Si enim feliciſſimam Majeſtatis ſuæ Avi & Majeſtatis veſtræ Patris memoriam replicemus, quorum auſpiciis hoſpitalitatis & conſanguinitatis jura inter Majeſtates Veſtras propius coalnere, nullius unquam Principis Subditi tam unanimes & concordes quantum ipſi illi Reges fuerunt. Eâdem familiaritate quâ Cives in eâdem urbe in Regnis ſuis ſe mutuò inviſebant, nec minori cum fiduciâ in commune conſulebant quàm fratres in eâdem familiâ. Quæ deinceps officiorum reciprocatio, quæ communicatio conſiliorum, quæ proſperorum & adverſorum inter* Angliæ & Daniæ *Reges ſocietas permanſit? (Tali præcipuè ex Veſtrâ parte conſtantiâ in turbidiſſimâ illâ Regni* Anglicani *procellâ, ut iſtud gratiſſimâ & æternâ memoriâ Majeſtas Sua retineat) tantus denique animorum undequaque conſenſus, ut neque ex ultimâ antiquitate tam ſinceræ, conſtantis, & aureæ amicitiæ exemplum eruere poſſimus. Et uti beneficiorum mutui nexus & animata illa ſanguinis & naturæ vincula puriſſimâ unione Majeſtates Veſtras illigarunt, ita quoad Populorum communionem utramque Nationem craſſioribus navigationis & commerciorum nodis, tanquam rudentibus & anchoris obſtrictam & inter ſe contextam videmus. Quum autem publicæ illæ utriuſque Populi rationes tempore extraordinariæ à Majeſtate Veſtrâ Legationis optimè conſtitutæ fuerint, Majeſtas ſua Dominus meus clementiſſimus per me eundem Legationis honorem & officium Majeſtati Veſtræ nunc reddere & perſolvere voluit; Et Majeſtati Veſtræ me per teſtatum facere ſe non ſolum ſummâ fide perſeveraturum in ſanctiſſimo illo fœdere inter Majeſtates Veſtras Extraordinarii Veſtri Legati operâ & prudentiâ confecto, ſed etiam omni occaſione Majeſtati veſtræ approbaturum eſſe antiquum, innatum, & ſingularem illum affectum qui ab Auguſtiſſimis Utriuſque Majoribus propagatus inter Majeſtates Veſtras hactenus religioſiſſimè conſervatur. Hoc unicum Majeſtatem ſuam mœrè habet, quòd propter urgentiſſima ſua negotia & tardiorem noſtrum adventum ſerius aliquantò hoc officium reciprocare potuerit. Speret tamen Majeſtatem Veſtram reputaturam Legationem hanc jam inde miſſam, quum primum Literas mihi ad Majeſtatem Veſtram dederit, atque neceſſariam noſtram moram melius compenſare & excuſare poſſet, Se interea per Ablegatum Extraordinarium curaſſe. Neque dubito quin Dominus Ablegatus Extraordinarius pro ſuâ prudentiâ & optimo affectu Majeſtati Veſtræ hâc in re abunde ſatisfecerit. Ità ut ſupervacaneum omnino foret in præſens aliquid addere; niſi, ſicut in Principio orationis dixi, Regiam Utriuſque dignitatem hoc ipſo Majeſtates Veſtras melius conciliare, & communes Subditorum Veſtrorum rationes ab omni invidiâ eſſe ſejunctiſſimas, ità me Majeſtatis ſuæ Miniſtrum præter propriam animi noſtri propenſionem, etiam pro fide quam Majeſtati ſuæ debeo, omnia contributurum ad certitudinem, ad declarationem perfectiſſimæ ſuæ cum Majeſtate Veſtra amicitiæ, & quoad hîc manebo totam in ejus argumentis & teſtimoniis operam noſtram & tempus collocaturum.*

Upon which the *Daniſh* Chancellour in the Name of his Royal Maſter declared, what great Satisfaction he received from theſe Expreſſions of Kindneſs and Amity made to him in behalf of his dear Friend and Ally, the

1664. King of *Great Britain*, and how ready he should be not only to maintain a good Correspondency, but also to embrace all opportunities of uniting their Interests. He concluded with a Complement to the Ambassadour, that the King was extremely well pleased with his Conduct, and that he might assure himself of his Favour and Goodwill. It was observed, that both the King and his Excellency as often as his *Britannick* or *Danish* Majesty's were mentioned they pull'd off their Hats; and put them on again at the same time. After which my Lord *Morpeth* and all the Gentlemen went in order to pay their Reverence to the King, and his Excellency was conducted towards the Queen, unto whom he made this Harangue uncovered.

Madam,

His Speech to the Queen and the two Princes.

THE King my *Master* hath commanded me to wait upon Your Majesty, and in His Majesties Name to make to You all the most entire Professions of Friendship, Affection and Esteem which are due to so Great a Queen, so near a Kinswoman, and so admirably accomplished a Princess. But, seeing it is impossible to execute those Commands worthily, and to the full, unless His Majesty could not only imprint His Character upon me, but inspire me too, with his great Soul and royal Understand, I must beg Your Majesty's Pardon, if I fall short, where His Majesties Sense is so far above Expression, and Your own Perfections are so ineffable. Therefore I shall only in my ordinary and safer way, assure Your Majesty, that no Prince in Christendom doth interest Himself more in Your Majesty's Health and Prosperity than the King my Master. And no less the Queen, who as She makes His Affections the rule and model of Hers, hath yet moreover a singular Affection and Admiration of Her own for your *Majesty*, hath commanded me to express how much She regards and loves you, considering your Heroical Person, as the Example of Queens, and Glory of Women. After which, whatsoever of thoughts or words can remain to my self, wherein to testifie mine own great Veneration and Service to your Majesty, I shall consecrate to your Fame upon all occasions, but present them to your Self involved rather in a most devout and respectful silence.

From thence being introduced to the eldest Prince *Christian*, who was then not above Eighteen years of Age, he made him the following Complement with his Hat on.

Sir,

THE King my Master hath commanded me particularly to wait upon your Royal Highness: And as He professes a Signal Obligation to His Majesty your Father, that according to the old Familiarity and Kindness betwixt the two Kings of *England* and *Denmark*, He was pleased so lately to intrust so great a Pledge as your Royal Highness with Him; so He desires you to believe, That in that your too short stay with Him, He nevertheless took such true Impressions of your Royal Highnesses most Hopeful, Vertuous and Princely Disposition, that, were there not all those other Obligations of Friendship, Kindred, and Confederacy betwixt Him and the King your Father, He should for your own sake have a most Sincere and Personal Friendship, Kindness and Esteem for your Royal Highness, and accordingly wishes you all the Happiness and Health as to Himself, and offers Himself upon all occasions to manifest His Royal Inclinations, and hearty Affection towards your Royal Highness. For mine own part, I shall from this present, as I was from the first minute I had the Honour to see you, desire to be entred into the List of your Highnesses Servants.

Immediately after his Excellency being conducted into the Apartment of the second, Prince *George*, a very handsome and hopeful Prince, but scarce Fifteen years of Age, he Complemented him in the following manner,

Sir,

THE King my Master hath given me particular Order to wait upon your Highness from Him, as well out of Affection as Curiosity. For, whereas your Highness being the second Son of *Denmark*, hath thereby a very just Title to His Majesty's Affection, so he having heard so much of you, as of a most accomplished Prince in so tender an Age, was very curious to know the truth of it. I am most happy in this occasion to be able to certifie His Majesty, with how much reason Fame hath said, what she hath of you, and I assure your Highness, that His Majesty will take great Interest and Pleasure in it, and desire nothing more than to be a witness thereof Himself, by seeing you one day in his Court, as you are already in His heart. For mine own particular, I am perfectly your Highnesses most humble Servant. 1664.

The Ambassadour's Negotiation.

In order to give you the most proper Idea of Matters concerning our stay (of seven weeks) here, I will (as I did in the second Embassy) first give you an account of the Ambassadour's Negotiation, next of his Entertainment, and last of all what happened most remarkable, whilst we stay'd at the *Danish* Court.

Our Embassy happened just at that Conjuncture, where vast Preparations being made in *France*, for those great Enterprizes they undertook afterwards for the general Disturbance of *Europe*, and the *Hollanders* inclining at that time towards the Interest of *France*, were endeavouring to unite the Interest and Forces of *Denmark* with theirs; whilst his *Britannick* Majesty judged it his Interest, to enter into a more strict Union with both the Northern Crowns. Mr. *Coventry* was sent for that purpose into *Sweden*, as Sir *Gilbert* was lately arrived upon the same account at *Copenhagen*, his Excellency's principal Employment, tending towards the accomplishing of this Alliance. Most People at that time, were of Opinion, that after the Signal Obligation the *Danes* had received from the *Dutch*, by the relief of *Copenhagen*, they would scarce be prevailed upon to joyn with others against their Interest, but as the *Dutch* had since that time given no small occasion of Complaint, so, they thought themselves furnish'd with sufficient Reasons, for such a Desertion, if Matters could have been fix'd upon a right Foundation betwixt them and the *Swedes*, which was the true Reason they afterwards sided with the *Dutch*, and rendred our Negotiation unsuccessful; of which I will give you a small Prospect here.

Conditions proposed by the *Dane*.

The *Danish* Commissioners declared, that the King their Master was willing to enter into a more strict Alliance with *Sweden*, and desired that the same might be made as effectual as could be for their mutual advantage, by the interposition of his *Britannick* Majesty, provided it might be done upon these Conditions. *viz.* That the *Swedes* would recede from the Privileges they enjoyed of paying no Customs in the *Sound*; and besides that agreed, That the *Dutch* should for the future pay the said Toll at the same rate they were set at, 1642. by which means the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *England* and *Sweden*, might manage their Trade on that side with an equal advantage. They offered however, in case the *Swedes* should not think fit to accept of this Proposal, to give them a proportionable Summ of Money for the Resignation of it, or else to leave it to the King of *England*'s Judgment, what other means might be made use of to bring this Union to a happy Conclusion. They further proposed, That all the Subjects and Ships of these three Kingdoms, should have Liberty to Traffick in all their respective Ports, with the same advantage as the Inhabitants of the same Countrey, without any Restriction; and that neither of the three Kings should afford the least Pretention, to such as had been declared Traitors, or been forbidden to leave their native Countrey, by the other two, or either of them. For the Exemption of the *English* from the usual Toll in the *Sound*, they demanded (according to their Registers as they said) no less than 120000 Crowns *per annum*, and that without the least prejudice to the Soveraignty belonging to the Kings of *Denmark*, in the passage of the *Sound*. To the Proposition made in his Majesty of *Great Britain*'s Name, to turn the Trade, in Conjunction with the King of *Sweden*, from *Archangel* through the *Sound*, it was answered by the *Danish* Commissioners, that the King their Master was ready to declare himself more at large upon that Point, so soon as he could understand, upon what Terms his *Britannick* Majesty was willing to engage with the *Swedes* upon this account, and that in case their before mentioned Proposition about the *English* was accepted, they would not want any further Privilege; but if not, the Payment of the Toll in regard of them, might be adjusted by a peculiar Treaty. They declared further, That the King of *Denmark* was so far from being engaged in any particular

1664. ticular League with the *Muscovites* at that time, that there were some Differences between them concerning the Limits in *Norway*. As to the Summ of Money Demanded by the *Danes*, in case they should be obliged to set out a Fleet for the Service of the Crown of *England*; it was declared by the Commissioners, that since the King their Master intended to set out against the Spring 20 Men of War, with 1000 Cannon, and 5000 Seamen, they expected only a Subsidy of 25000 Crowns besides their own Charges. But in the conclusion they insisted positively upon this Point, that before any further steps were made in the Matter, the King of *Sweden* might be prevailed upon, to declare himself as to this Union, and that nothing should be tranlacted without the knowledge and consent of their Royal Master.

The Ambassadour's Entertainment here.

We will now proceed to say something of our Entertainment here; which was not inferiour to that we had met with at *Stockholm*; for, not to mention that after our Arrival at the Kings Charge, there were several splendid Feasts made by his Excellency, and Mr. *de Treflon* the French Ambassadour, who being lately come to this Court, in order to consummate a League then on foot betwixt the most *Christian* King and his Majesty of *Denmark*, in which the King of *England* was offered to be comprised if he pleased, this produced a more than ordinary Friendship, and uncommon Civilities betwixt these two great Personages. Mr. *de Treflon* being at *Copenhagen* before us, paid the first Visit to his Excellency, who met him at the outward Gate, next the Street, giving him the right hand in his House, the same Ceremony being observed on his side, as often as his Excellency came to visit him.

The 15. of *November*, The *French* Ambassadour parted from *Copenhagen* for *Stockholm*. The most splendid Entertainment was two days after at the Christening of a Son of his Excellency, my Lady being brought to Bed about fourteen days before. The King, and the eldest Prince stood Godfathers, and the Queen Godmother; after it was Christened, the King and the Queen with the Prince, and the two Princesses his Sisters, besides several Ladies of Quality, and the chief Persons of the Court, gave the Ambassadress a Visit to congratulate her upon her happy Delivery. From thence they were conducted into a great Room, where a most splendid Collation was prepared for them, the King standing for half an hour, whilst he continued there on one side of the Table, and beginning several Healths. The Gentlemen and Pages, that attended their Majesties, were entertained in the same Room, and the rest of the Servants in the Court below. Three days after the Royal Prince *Christian* was invited to another Feast by his Excellency, and after Dinner there was a great Ball, after which they went out several times a Hare-hunting. Amongst other things worth taking notice of, his Excellency took a view of the *Arsenal*, where we were diverted by a Coach, which moved forward by means of a Wheel-work and Rudder, guided by two people that were placed within it. In the Kings Chamber of Rarities which consisted of sixty Apartments, we saw divers very curious pieces of Mechanicks, and among the rest a small Ship ready rigged, the Masts, Ladders, Sails and Cannon being all of Ivory; we took also a view of the Royal Palace of *Fredericksburgh*, a most magnificent and exact Structure. Much about the same time, the King coming unexpectedly aboard the Men of War that brought us from *Stockholm*, and having left some Tokens of his Generosity among the Ships Crew, the Captain after his Return from the City fired his great Guns, which made such a thundering noise in the Night time, that they rung the Alarm Bell at *Copenhagen*, and the whole City was in an uproar, which was not appeased, till they discovered the true reason of their mistake. Much about the same time his Excellency received Advice from *Musco*, that *Calthof* had been forced to reingage himself into the *Czar*'s Service for two years longer, and that an Ambassadour had been sent from thence into *England*, to complain of his Conduct. But as he had from time to time sent Copies of what had passed to his *Britannick* Majesty, which he was sensible had been well approved of at Court, he made no great Account of it. Not long before our Departure we were diverted with a mock Engagement betwixt six Men, who had the management of as many portable fire Engines, with several other Men, who supplyed Engines with water, by the means of certain Pumps; they discharged the water with so much Dexterity, at about Fifteen or sixteen paces distance, upon one another, that one of the Engineers lost his Eye in the Combat. 1664.

The 1st. day of *December*, My Lord *Morpeth* with four or five Gentlemen and some Footmen, was sent for *England* by his Excellency, that he might have the advantage of seeing the most remarkable places betwixt *Denmark* and *England*, but especially *Flanders*, his Excellency himself intending to follow with his Train by Sea; but the coldness of the weather obliged him soon after to alter his Resolution, and to prepare for his Departure by Land; and accordingly he took his leave of the King of *Denmark*, the 11th of *December*.

Sir,

BEing now ready to lay off the Publick Character which his Majesty my Master had given me, I am obliged by his Commands to reiterate the Assurances of His most sincere and constant Affection to your Majesty. For the performing of which I shall not need much Oratory, both because his Majesty himself desires rather to fulfil the Friendship in Effects, than to express it in words; neither is it so pertinent to vary that in Language, which is immutable in the Intention, besides that Your Majesty is your Self already sufficiently perswaded of it. So that without affecting any Ornament, I shall only make use of that Force which the occasion naturally gives me, the words of those that are upon departing being always the most real, serious, and weighty. I say therefore, That his Majesty my Master is by Blood, by Alliance, Gratitude, Inclination, and Interest a Friend to your Majesty, and that he will not fail upon all occasions to make good all those Relations to your Majesty. And as beside all those there seems to be so near a similitude in Your Stars and Fortune, that both Your former Adversities kept time together, and had but too great an Influence on each others Affairs; so doth He gladly see and hope, and will always endeavour upon his Part, that His and Your present Prosperity may have as strong a Sympathy and Reflection. Nor will He think himself the less obliged to this, by the great Honours and Favours which Your Majesty hath for His sake shown me, who am by my Employment but his Majesty's shadow, and that too made darker by mine own Imperfections. But therefore I shall not fail to give his Majesty a most exact, and full account of all Your Majesty's affection to Him, and of all Your Royal Graces to my self. Being most obliged and most desirous to perform all Offices whereby I may encrease (as far as that which is perfect can be encreased) the good Correspondency betwixt both your Majesty's. And for mine own particular, I pay, and shall perpetually, my Thanks to your Majesty, and shall always pray for your Majesty's Health, long Life, and Prosperity, and that the Solidity and Strength of your Government may be the delight and pattern of all other Princes.

This Complement was thus expressed in *Latin* by my Lord Ambassadour's Secretary.

Domine Rex,

DEpositurus hanc Legationem Majestati Vestræ iterum sinceriſſimum & constantiſſimum Majestatis suæ Domini mei Clementiſſimi affectum in hac ultimâ salutatione confirmare debeo. Ad hoc autem faciendum non est apparatu & ornatu Oratorio opus, tum quòd Majestas sua amicitiam erga Majestatem Vestram reipsâ potius approbare, quàm verbis adumbrare cupiat, tum etiam quod immutabilem illam Regii sui animi sententiam & tenorem dicendo variare minus decorum videatur, præsertim quum Majestas Vestra jam antea de illâ re abunde sibi persuasum esse testetur. Quapropter neglectis omnibus artis pigmentis eo tantùm utar orationis auxilio, quod ipsa hujus occasionis natura suppeditat. Quæ enim in procinctu & ab abituris verba dictantur, uti simpliciſſima in se atque intentiſſima, ità majorem vim, efficaciam, & pondus apud alios habere & obtinere solent. Dico igitur Majestatem suam sanguinis nexu, fœderum societate, obligatione beneficiorum, spontaneâ animi propensione, & communibus rationibus Majestati Vestræ esse conjunctiſſimam, neque ergo commiſſuram ut in ullo hujus amicitiæ officio suæ partes desiderentur. Et quum præterea occultior quidam Utriusque Syderum consensus esse videatur tantus, ut adverse Alterius res Alterum pariter tanquam ejusdem mali contagione olim afflaverint, ità futurum speret & ipse allaborabit,

1664. *borabit, ut prospera Utriusque fortuna non minùs ad mutuum Amborum ornamentum & utilitatem redunder. Neque imminnetur hæc Majestatis suæ erga Majestatem Vestram benevolentia, quum audiverit quantos honores suâ causâ Majestas Vestra mihi exhibuerit, qui in hoc Legationis munere umbram tantùm Majestatis suæ gero, & illam quidem propter defectus nostros adhuc obscuriorem. Ide que de summo erga Majestatem suam Majestatis Vestræ affectu, deque tot honoris & benevolentiæ erga me ipsum indiciis nihil reticebo, quandoquidem officii mei esse duco & maximè cupio omnia conferre ad augendam (quantum quidem perfectissima possunt augeri) mutuam inter Majestates Vestras amicitiam. Ego autem Majestati Vest æ Serenissimæ gratias nostras & nunc ago, & in posterum semper jam acturo, & Majestati Vestræ prosperam Valetudinem, longam Vitam, perpetuam Felicitatem precor & voveo, atque præsens hæc Regiminis sui spectmina omnibus aliis Principibus exemplo & voluptati esse possit.*

The Ambassador's Audience of the King and Queen.

The *Danish* Chancellour having returned a very obliging Answer, and the Gentlemen of the Embassy being admitted to pay their Reverence to the King, his Excellency was introduced to the Queen, whom he Complemented in the following manner.

Madam,

I Could never answer it to His Majesty, should I not in best manner re-assure Your Majesty of that great Honour and Esteem He hath for You. But Your Majesty having done the King my Master that right as so easily to believe it, hath thereby acquitted me of my Commission, and your own Royal perswasion hath excused the Embassadour; yet nevertheless, I cannot omit to witness how much His Majesty rejoyces to have heard so lately, of the Health and Prosperity of Your Majesty and your whole Family, which as it is without Competition the most flourishing Family of all *Europe*, and worthy only to have sprung from such a Mother, so His Majesty wishes to all of them, as fair and suitable Fortunes, as the Greatness of their Perfections, Vertues, and Extraction doth promise and challenge. And yet, this is but one part of that Happiness, which in all other things He prays for Your Majesty, and which upon all occasions His Majesty himself will endeavour, and count Himself most happy, to promote to the uttermost. For my self, I have so much to acknowledge for all the Honours that Your Majesty hath, in respect to the King my Master, done me, that should I take the time to do it, it would frustrate my Departure, and the Frost or my Thanks would be the same thing. But I assure Your Majesty, that I carry with me an Heart most sensibly touched with Gratitude, and most humble Devotion to Your Majesty, and that I shall not fail to inform the King my Master of all those Obligations.

The Answer given in the Queen's Name was full of affectionate Expressions toward their *Britannick* Majesty's, and favourable Sentiments for the Ambassadour's Person, after which his Excellency was Conducted first to the eldest Prince *Christian* and immediately after to Prince *George*, unto whom he addressed himself in these following Speeches.

Sir,

YOur Royal Highness knows the King my Master so well, that I need no new Credentials when I renew to Your Royal Highness the assurances of his esteem and affection. But if I stood in need of Witnesses, I would use only Your own merits, it being absolutely impossible, that a Prince so clear-sighted as the King my Master, should have an indifference for a Prince of the Qualities and Birth of Your Royal Highness. Or if the Examples of others could prevail herein more with his Majesty, than His own Inclination and Judgment, He could not fail of loving and esteeming Your Royal Highness, seeing all those who have had the Honour to know you do no less. But His Majesty pretends not to imitate others, but rather to set them an Example, and excel them all in all the most Essential Proofs toward Your Royal Highness. In the mean time, He entreats Your Highness to furnish him, as He Himself will constantly search, occasions of expressing it, never finding himself more happy, than when He may in any way oblige You. For mine own part, who can never sufficiently acknowledge the Favours Your Royal Highness hath done me, I desire nothing with more Ardour and Passion than to continue in Your good Grace. And I beseech You to honour me with Your Commands, for I now divest my self of my Publick Character, to enter henceforward into the Quality of the most humble Servant of Your Royal Highness. 1664.

To which the Prince made answer himself in two or three words as he had done before. And from his Highness the Ambassadour departed towards Prince *George* with this Complement.

Sir,

I Am very happy that the last Employment of this Embassage is to salute Your Highness once more in his Majesty's Name; and I assure Your Highness, that I hold it for a Recompence too glorious, and too pleasant of all my Labours, that I am to conclude them in this manner. For in this grand Tour of the North that I here make an end of, I have indeed seen several things very remarkable, but chiefly the King your Father, a Prince of an admirable Generosity, Constancy, and Goodness, the Queen the most adorable Princess of the World, and whose unparalell'd Vertues give no less Courage to Fame, than Despair to Imitation, His Royal Highness who hath travelled through all Hearts, and without any Forces but those of his own merits, hath won himself an universal Empire over the Esteem of all *Europe*, the Princesses wonders of Nature, and Miracles of Education. But after all this I must avow, that I never yet saw a Prince so little and so great as Your Highness, or whose young mind did in his greenest years Promise and Threaten so much and so handsomely. I leave it to Your Highnesses Judgment with how much Pleasure and Contentment the King my Master will hear these News, for I assure Your Highness, that he takes, and will take more and more Interest every day in all that concerns You. And for mine own particular, I beseech Your Highness to retain me in Your Favour, and to dispose always of my Person, as consecrated to Your Highnesses Service.

His Excellency having been the same Night entertained at Court with a Ball, and the Wind being come about to the South, which had melted most of the Ice, he once more changed his Design, and prepared for his Embarkment. Of the two Princes.

Accordingly his Excellency (after he had made a Present of his Coach and Horses to the *Danish* Master of the Ceremonies) embarked the 15th of *December*, and the next day advanced 60 *German* Leagues as far as *Elsinore*; where for want of an Easterly Wind we were forced to lay at Anchor 60 days. Here we received the News of the indifferent Reception, the *Muscovy* Ambassadour had met with at the *English* Court, and as about the same time we made the first Discovery of a Comet, which then appear'd in *Europe*, some of us said jestingly, that it portended no good to the *Muscovites*. The 23d we set Sail from *Elsinore*, but were scarce come 20 Leagues when we were forced back by contrary Winds to *Elsinore*, and the 28th we were afflicted with a most violent Tempest, which drove us 2 Leagues further from *Elsinore*. The 29th the fury of the Winds being somewhat abated, his Excellency resolved to pursue his Journey by Land, with Nine of his Domesticks (of which number I was one) and to leave the rest with the Ambassadress to come by Sea. We pass'd cross the Isle of *Zealand*, and came the last day of *December* to *Corsohr*. The Ambassadour sets from Elsinore.

The 1st. of *January*, we pass'd from thence in a Galliot to the Isle of *Fuhnen*, and advancing 8 Leagues through the Island, came from thence the next day in a Fisher-boat, into *Holstein*; and so by the way of *Alderslevon* and *Flensburgh* to *Hamborough*; from hence we travell'd over *Buxtehude* to *Bremen*, and so through *Westphalia* to *Munster*, where we arrived the 11th of *January*; from *Munster*, we advanced to *Cologn* on the *Rhine*, from thence to *Malines* in *Flanders*, and farther the 22d to *Brussels*. From hence taking our way through *Alost*, *Gaunt*, *Bruges*, *Newport*, *Dunkirk* and *Graveline*, we came in 6 days to *Calais*. From *Calais* we pass'd 7 Leagues cross the Seas to *Dover*, where we took Post to *Gravesend*, and the 30th of *January* arrived safely in *London*. 1665. Comes to London.

By this time Acts of Hostilities having pass'd betwixt the *English* and *Dutch*, his Excellency thought it his safest way to take this Circumference, rather than to expose himself to the Danger of being surprized by them; which was also in some measure the Reason, he pass'd thro' The Ambassadour sets from Elsinore.

1664. thro' most of those parts Incognito; and as the weather, after we left *Copenhagen*, turned very cold, and we were forced to travel all the way from *Elsinore* to *Cologn* in Waggons uncovered, we were almost as sensible of the Rigour of the Season as if we had been in *Russia*; though we appear'd at *Hamburgh* in a very indifferent Equipage, yet the Magistrates having got notice of his Excellency's arrival, would needs Complement him, testifying their Dissatisfaction, of being deprived of the opportunity to shew their Respect and Amity with the Crown of *England*; and the Honour due to his Excellency's Character and Person. His Excellency having return'd them Thanks for their Civilities, set forward on his Journey again the next day, and passing the *Elbe* in Sledges, we arrived the same day at *Buxtehude*, a Town in the Countrey of *Bremen* under the *Swedish* Jurisdiction. Here we met with an odd Accident; for, as we were ready to go forward after Dinner, there happened a Quarrel betwixt the Ambassadour's Secretary and one of the Waggoners, who refusing to go without his Comrade, the Secretary clap'd a Pistol to his Head, to force him to go, but the same being wrested out of his hand, he had enough to do to escape the fury of these Peasants. Whilst he was gone to the Governour to complain and desire redress, we found our selves beset on all sides by the Mobb, who fell to plundering our Baggage, and committed several Outrages, which would not have ended there, had not his Excellency (who was gone before) return'd and found means by his Presence to appease the Tumult. The first News we had after our Arrival at *Bremen*, was, that my Lord *Morpeth* had been seized upon by the *Dutch* at *Wesel*, which being confirm'd to us, three days after when we came to *Munster*, where happening to lay in the same Inn where my Lord had Lodged, we had all the reason in the world to believe, That his coming had been betrayed in this Town, his Excellency thought it highly expedient to hasten his Departure, and so after a stay only of five hours continued his Journey without any Molestation or Danger, except what we might have met with in our passage betwixt *Calais* and *Dover*. At *Rochester* we were rejoyced with the good News of the happy Arrival of our Vessel, (in which was the Ambassadress) 15 days before us, and to compleat our Joy, my Lord *Morpeth* arrived also 3 days after us, he and his Train, after a short Confinement at *Wesel*, having been released by a special Command from the States General. The first thing his Excellency did after his Arrival, was to wait upon his Majesty, unto whom he gave a particular account of his Negotiation with the *Moscovite*, as well as the two other Northern Courts; at which his Majesty shew'd a more than ordinary Satisfaction, commanding his Excellency to draw up in Writing an exact Narrative of all such matters as had any relation to his Transactions in the *Czar's* Court, which he did with so much Exactness, by repeating all the passages and their Objections against them, with his Refutation, that the King was highly satisfyed with his Conduct, to the no small Confusion of the *Czar's* Ambassadour, who being sent on purpose to make his Complaints against the Ambassadour, especially of his having been wanting in the Respect due to his *Czarish* Majesty, had no other Answer, than, That, *If the Earl of Carlisle might not perhaps have been so fully informed of all the Customs in the* Czar's *Court, he had upon several occasions been so ill treated by the* Muscovites, *that his Majesty had more reason to complain than the* Czar, *of whose Affection and Good-will towards him he could scarce be perswaded, till he should see the Effects of it, by restoring the ancient Foundation of their mutual Amity*, to wit, *the Privileges of the* English *Merchants*. So that the *Russian* Ambassadour returned home, not very well satisfyed, and Sir *John Hebdon* having not long after been sent to *Mosco* in Quality of his Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary, had no better Success in his Negotiation; than his Excellency had before him, the *Muscovite* Court standing immoveable as to the Point of the Privileges. 1664.

CHAP. VI.

An Account of a Journey out of Poland *into* Muscovy, *with a Relation of the Expeditions of the* Muscovites *against the* Crim Tartars, *the Tumults and Revolutions, which were contrived and managed chiefly by the Princess* Sophia, *Sister to his present* Czarish *Majesty* Pieter Alexiowitz; *some Observations upon a Journey by Land from* Muscovy *into* China, *made by Mr.* Spatarus, *and upon the present State of* Muscovy, *by the Sieur* Newstad. *Hereunto is annexed a Letter, from a certain Gentleman of* Germany, *written from* Musco *concerning the Siege of* Asoph, *and* Kasikermeen, *and the other warlike Exploits of the* Muscovites *in that War, with some Political Remarks upon the most remarkable Passages that have happened of late in the* Muscovite *Empire. Translated from the* Low Dutch.

1689. HIS Majesty of *Poland* having honoured me with the Title and Quality of his Envoy Extraordinary to the *Czar* of *Muscovy*, I set out from *Warsaw*, the 19th of *July*, 1689. to take my way over *Smolensko*, the Road of *Kiovia* being at that time much infested by the *Tartars*. The Governour of *Smolensko*, received me with more than ordinary Demonstrations of Civility, presented me with some Refreshments, and left it to my Choice, whether I would Lodge in the City or Suburbs, I chose the last, as being the more convenient; for though *Smolensko* is surrounded only with a single Wall, yet as they look upon it, as their chief Frontier place against the *Poles*, they keep a very strict Guard here, and shut up the Gates early every Night. He would needs have me see the Land Militia of that Province, consisting of 6000 Men, perform their Exercises, who were also ranged on both sides of the Streets as I pass'd along in my Coach to the Castle. These are generally Boors who are Registred at 6 years of Age, and being divided into certain Bands, are obliged to appear upon such like Occasions, when they are furnish'd with Cloaths. They have 1689.

four

1689. four Crowns and a meaſure of Salt allow'd them yearly by the *Czar*. The *Waywode* or Governour received me upon the Stairs of the Caſtle, whence he conducted me into his Apartment, where I found the Major General *Maneſius* a *Scotchman* by Birth, who being well vers'd in all the *European* Languages, ſerved for an Interpreter; and was appointed by the Governour to be my conſtant Companion during my ſtay at *Smolensko*. After we had drunk ſeveral Cups of Brandy to the Health of the *Czar* and his *Poliſh* Majeſty, I returned to my Lodgings, where I was very glad to meet with the beforementioned Major General, who being a Perſon of extraordinary merits. I was ſurprized to find ſo polite a Man in the midſt of ſo barbarous a Nation, which made me have the Curioſity to enquire what chance had brought him into *Muſcovy*. He told me; That, having travell'd through the greateſt part of *Europe*, he came at laſt into *Poland* with an intention to return from thence into *Scotland*. But happening to fall into an Intreague with a certain Lady, the Wife of a *Lithuanian* Colonel, the frequent Viſits he made her, created ſuch a Jealouſie in the Husband, that he hired ſome of his Servants to murther him; he had the good Fortune to be timely advertiſed thereof by the Lady, and conſequently to avoid the ſnare, and meeting not long after with the Colonel, and upbraiding him with his treacherous Deſign, they came to handy Blows, and the Colonel was kill'd by him. There being no other way left then to ſave himſelf but by flight, he fell in with a party of *Muſcovites*, who were then engaged in a War againſt *Poland*; having told them who he was, they left it to his Choice, whether he would ſerve in the *Czar's* Army, or elſe be ſent into *Siberia*; as he had a great Inclination to ſee foreign Countries, he pitch'd upon the laſt, but as he was juſt upon his Departure thither, with ſeveral others, the preſent *Czar's* Father having taken a view of them, was ſo well pleaſed with his Aſpect, that he reſolved to keep him near him, and not long after gave him an Allotment of 60 Boors, each of whom is worth about 8 Crowns *per annum*. Having afterwards order'd him to marry the Widow of a certain foreign Gentleman named *Marcellus*, (who was the firſt that introduced the right management of Iron-work into *Muſcovy*, which now brings 125000 pound Sterling yearly into the *Czar's* Coffers) he ſent him his Envoy, 1672. to Pope *Clement*, to endeavour an Union betwixt the *Romiſh* and *Greek* Churches. After his Return from thence he made him Major General, and at laſt by his will made him Governour of the young *Czar Pieter*, in which Station he continued in ſpite of all the oppoſition he met with from the Princeſs *Sophia*, and Prince *Gallichin's* Party, which ſince is turned to his great advantage.

But to return to our Journey, ſcarce had the chief Miniſter of State received Information of my Arrival at *Smolensko* (the Capital City of the Province of that Name, ſurrendred to the *Muſcovites* by vertue of the Treaty made betwixt them and the *Poles*, 1686.) but Orders were ſent to the Governour, to provide me with every thing requiſite for the Proſecution of my Journey to *Muſco*. Accordingly I left *Smolensko* the 20th of *Auguſt*. under the Conduct of a *Priſtaf*, and an Officer with 6 *Strelitzes*; we paſt through a Foreſt about 20 Leagues long, where being overtaken by a moſt furious Tempeſt in the Night time, ſome of our Horſes broke looſe and got out of the Fence we had made with our Waggons; I deſired the Officer to ſend ſome of his Soldiers in queſt of them, unto which they anſwered unanimouſly, That, if they were ſure they could get 100 Ducats apiece by it, they would not go at any diſtance from the Intrenchment, becauſe ſome of their Comrades, who had done ſo ſome years before, were never heard of afterwards; however the next day, the Owners of the Horſes going a little out of the Intrenchment, gave the Signal with a certain Whiſtle to them, which brought them back to the Intrenchment. We met with no remarkable Accident during our whole Journey as far as the River *Muſco*, where we no ſooner arrived, but our *Priſtaf* being gone to give notice of it to Prince *Gallichin* chief Miniſter of State, and returning in two hours with another *Priſtaf* named *Spatarius*, I was ordered to paſs the River, and conducted to the Lodgings prepared for me in the City of *Muſco*; 6 Soldiers under the Command of an Officer, being appointed me for my Guard, who for a week together ſuffered no Stranger to come to my Lodgings. After ſome ſtay at *Muſco*, I was at laſt admitted into the Preſence of Prince *Gallichin*, whom I found in the Lord Chancellour's Office ſitting at the upper end of a long Table, with ſeveral *Boyars* on both ſides of him. Having ordered a Seat to be brought for me, he ask'd by the means of a *Latin* Interpreter what Letters I had brought along with me, upon which I delivered to him divers Letters directed to him from the great Chancellour of *Lithuania*, in which he aſſured him, That, the King having ſent me to negotiate his Affairs at the *Muſcovite* Court, had ordered me to deliver his Letters to the *Czar* in Perſon; he return'd for anſwer, that he would ſpeak concerning the matter with *Czar John*, who was then in *Muſco*, and that he did not queſtion but to procure me a ſpeedy Audience; having afterwards enquired after the great Chancellor of *Lithuania's* Health, he aroſe from his Chair, as I was taking my leave, wiſhing me all imaginable Succeſs in obtaining the Honour to *ſee the bright Eyes of their Czariſh Majeſty*. Not many days after, having deſired a private Audience from him at his own houſe, I was received with as much Ceremony and Magnificence, as could have been expected at the Court of an *Italian* Prince. Our Diſcourſe was (in *Latin*) moſt upon the publick Affairs of *Europe*, but eſpecially upon the War which was then carrying on by the Confederacy againſt *France*, and upon the ſtupendious Revolution in *England*; he ordered divers ſorts of ſtrong Waters and Wines to be preſented to me, but as he was a great hater of ſtrong Liquors himſelf, he told me franckly, That it was rather to accommodate himſelf to the Cuſtom of the Countrey, than to engage me to Drink, promiſing, That he would make uſe of all his Intereſt, to obtain an Audience for me in a few days, which queſtionleſs would have ſucceeded accordingly, had not his ſudden Diſgrace cauſed ſuch ſtrange Alterations in the State of Affairs, that there was nothing to be heard of, but Fire and Murther throughout the City of *Muſco*, and things would have had a much worſe Aſpect had not the *Czar Pieter* with an undaunted Courage ſeized upon the *Partiſans* of the Princeſs *Sophia*, which put ſome ſtop to their bloody Deſigns. Things remain'd in the ſame State thus for 5 or 6 Months, no body knowing what to think of the matter; at laſt I judged it moſt adviſeable to make my Applications to the young *Gallichin* a Favourite of *Czar Pieter*, which I did in a Letter, intimating to him the ſurprize I was in, not to have received the leaſt Anſwer to the Memorial preſented immediately after my Arrival at *Muſco*, to requeſt a ſpeedy Audience. In his Anſwer he laid the whole blame of this delay upon the unſetled Condition the Court was in at that time, aſſuring me, that the *Czar Pieter* would ſuddenly be at *Muſcow*, which proved true in Effect, for he arrived there the 1ſt of *November*. I had no ſooner been inform'd of his coming to *Muſco*, but I deſired to be admitted to give a Viſit to the young *Gallichin*, who received me very obligingly, but in a different manner from what the other had done; for our chief Converſation conſiſted in emptying many Cups of Brandy and Wine, to the King my Maſter, and the *Czar's* Health, and all I could get out of this drunken Miniſter of State, was, that within three days I ſhould be admitted to Audience, and that afterwards I ſhould be at Liberty to go when I pleaſed; but he being alſo faln ſoon after in Diſgrace with the *Czar*, I was forced to take new meaſures.

1689.

At that time one *Euritian* had the management of the Secretary's Office for foreign Affairs, who being a Creature of the juſt now mentioned *Gallichin*, and by him raiſed from a common Notary to this Dignity, was the firſt that gave us a plain Demonſtration, that he valued his Patrons fortune much beyond his Perſon. For being jealous, that I had not rather made my Application to himſelf than *Gallichin*, to obtain either an Audience or Diſmiſſion, and knowing him to be in Diſgrace now with the *Czar Pieter*, he refuſed to comply with the Orders the ſaid *Gallichin* had obtain'd for me, to leave it to my Choice, whether I would ſtay for my Audience, till *Twelfth* day, or, Purſuant to the Orders of the King my Maſter (who had ſome foreſight of theſe Diſturbances) to return to *Poland*. Not ſatisfy'd thus, he inſinuated to the *Czar Pieter*, that it would be convenient to delay my Departure for ſome time longer, till they might be convinced, whether I were not ſent by the King of *Poland* to the Princeſs *Sophia*, and her Favourite Prince *Gallichin* (which he ſaid he ſhrewdly ſuſpected by the many Viſits I had made that Miniſter, contrary to the Cuſtom of the Perſons of my Dignity and Character) to aſſure them of the Kings Protection in caſe of neceſſity. As I was not ignorant of his Proceeding, I thought it the beſt way to obtain my Diſmiſſion by his means, by a good Preſent, for which Reaſon I

gave

1689. gave him a Viſit, and as I know the Stubbornneſs of the *Muſcovites* to be ſuch as not to be bent by Civilities, but rather by Menaces, I told him briskly, That it was my Opinion that the Right of Nations had been violated in my Perſon, that, I now found to my Coſt, that the King of *Poland* had been miſ-inform'd concerning the preſent Miniſtry of *Muſcovy*, whom he look'd upon as much more polite and underſtanding in foreign Affairs, than they were formerly; that, for my own Perſon, I ſhould be willing enough to purchaſe my Diſmiſſion almoſt at any rate, but having the Honour to be ſent in a publick Capacity, by a potent King, an Alley of the *Czars*, I found my ſelf under a ſtrict Obligation to give an account of what Treatment I received, and of my being debarr'd from obeying their Orders, to leave this Court. After we had drunk round twice or thrice of the Brandy and *Spaniſh* Wine we found there, I took my leave of the Secretary of State, ordering a certain *Poliſh* Gentleman of my Retinue to offer him a 100 Ducats, under pretence that they were for his Secretary, but he bravely refuſed to accept of them. By this time the young *Gallichin* being reſtored to Favour with *Czar Pieter*, and not a little ſurprized at the refuſal of *Euritian*, ſent me word that I ſhould have the Honour to kiſs the *Czar's* hand in a few days; and in two days after two *Muſcovite* Gentlemen were ſent to my Lodging, who, after they had made firſt their uſual Bows to the Picture of the Saint that hung in one corner of the Room, and handſomely pledged the *Czar's* Health in Brandy, told me, That the *Czar* intended to ſee me before my Departure, that he would Honour me with the uſual Preſents, and re-imburſe the Charges I had been at during my ſtay at *Muſcow*; unto which I having return'd a Complement, Proviſions were ſent me out of the *Czar's* Kitchin for my Dinner, *viz.* a piece of ſmook'd Beef weighing 40 pound, divers Diſhes of Fiſh fry'd in Oil of Nuts, half a Pig, 12 Paſteys of Meat, Garlick and Saffron, not above half bak'd, and ſome Flaggons of Brandy, *Spaniſh* Wine and Metheglin; I muſt confeſs, that the beſt thing that pleaſed me in this Dinner, was the Honour, that it came from the *Czar's* Kitchin. The next day word was brought me by another Gentleman, that I ſhould be admitted to Audience the next day; but the day coming, I underſtood that the *Czar's* were going an Pilgrimage, and that therefore I muſt have Patience till their return. Finding my ſelf thus diſappointed, I made a Viſit again to young *Gallichin*, and one of his Favourites named *Harthemonerich*, asking me how I lik'd the Dinner ſent me out of the *Czar's* Kitchin, I told him frankly, That our *French* Cooks had ſo ſpoil'd my Palate, that I could ſcarce reliſh any other Victuals, but what was of their Dreſſing; they told me, that they were very deſirous to have a true Taſte of ſome Diſhes dreſs'd after the *French* way, which made me invite them to Dinner, which they accepted of, under Condition that no Body ſhould be preſent but particular Friends; they were ſo well pleaſed with the Entertainment, that they ſent ſeveral Diſhes home to their Lady's, and left nothing of the dry Sweet-meats behind them. Three days after the before-mentioned, *Harthemonerich* invited us to his Houſe to a Fiſh Dinner (their Lent being then begun) he did me the Honour to permit me to ſalute his Lady, who drunk a Cup to me, and I pledged her as freely. She was a very handſome Woman, and the only Lady at Court that ever I heard of, that did not make uſe of Paint. The young *Gallichin* not being preſent at this laſt Entertainment, he having been ſent for the ſame Morning to wait upon the *Czars*, I, after their Return from the Pilgrimage, preſs'd hard upon the ſaid Miniſter, to know the Reaſon of my not being admitted to Audience, then *Gallichin* told me freely, That, the matter having been debated in Council, it had been carried by the Majority, that no Audience ſhould be given me till *Twelfth* day, but that if I did not think fit to ſtay ſo long, I ſhould be free to depart when I pleaſed, and be provided with what was neceſſary for my Journey. I was not a little ſurprized at this ſudden Change, till the *Daniſh* Commiſſary unfolded the whole Riddle to me, *viz.* That the Family of the *Maraskins* being envious at the Honour I had ſhew'd to *Gallichin* without as much as giving them one Viſit, had in Conjunction with the Secretary of State *Euritian* procured this Alteration. As I had diſcharged the greateſt part of what I was ſent about hither, and was quite tired out with ſo troubleſome a way of living among a barbarous ſort of People without any other Society, but my *Priſtaf*, not deſiring to ſtir out of my Lodgings, by reaſon of the continual Alarms and Tumults which at that juncture diſtracted the whole City of *Muſcow*, I joyfully accepted of the laſt Propoſition, and having given notice of my Reſolution to the Miniſters of State, I left *Muſcow* the 16th of *December*, and by the help of the *Muſcovite* Slads came the 20th of the ſame Month to *Smolensko*, where being obligingly entertain'd by the Governour, I purſued my Journey under the Conduct of the ſame *Priſtaf* and Guard of *Strelitzes* that had brought me from *Muſcow*, towards *Vilna*, and from thence to *Warſaw*, where I arrived the 3d of *January*, 1690. 1689.

The *Czar Theodore Alexiowitz*, Son of *Czar Alexis* happening to die in the 22d year of his Age, left two Brothers and one Siſter behind him, *viz. John*, and his Siſter *Sophia*, being both born of the ſame Mother, and *Peter* by a ſecond Adventure, but *John* the eldeſt finding himſelf incapable of taking upon him the burthen of ſo great an Empire, *Peter*, though the younger, was proclaimed *Czar* of *Muſcovy*; but the Princeſs *Sophia* finding her ſelf thus excluded from that ſhare in the Regency, which ſhe had promiſed her ſelf under the Government of her own Brother *John*, ſo far prevail'd by her Intereſt and Intrigues, that *John* was alſo proclaim'd *Czar* of *Muſcovy* by the *Strelitzes*, who were abſolutely at her Devotion. But, as ſhe thought her ſelf not ſufficiently eſtabliſhed in her Grandeur, unleſs ſhe removed *Czar Pieter* and his Party from the Adminiſtration of the Government, ſhe openly declared againſt his being Crown'd, as a thing prejudicial to the Right of his elder Brother *John*. It was in vain for the *Boyars* to remonſtrate to her the incapacity of *Czar John*, who being infirm in body and mind, nay almoſt blind and lame, occaſioned by the many and frequent Epileptick Fits he was ſubject to, was not likely alone to bear the burthen of ſo great an Empire; it was in vain, I ſay, to remonſtrate theſe things to a perſon who intended the ſole Adminiſtration of the publick Affairs for her own ſelf, for which reaſon it was that addreſſing her ſelf to her Friends the *Strelitzes* (ſo they call the *Czars* Guard conſiſting of 18000 Men, divided into 18 Regiments) but eſpecially to the *Boyar Konvanski* Preſident of the Chamber belonging to the Souldiery, who by his Intereſt ſoon prevail'd with them, to riſe in Arms, and to demand the Princeſs *Sophia* to be made Adminiſtratrix of the Government, during the Minority of the two *Czars*; which the Court being forced to conſent to, they were in hopes that by this Condeſcenſion they had put a ſtop to any further Troubles. But the Princeſs looking upon her ſelf as not firmly Eſtabliſh'd in her Greatneſs, unleſs by the removal of ſuch of the *Boyars* as had oppoſed her Deſigns, and were Friends of *Czar Pieter*, ſhe had once more recourſe to *Konvanski*, unto whom it was propoſed, that ſuch perſons as ſhe had mark'd out for the Slaughter, ſhould be Maſſacred by the Souldiery, under pretence of having made away with *Czar Theodore* by poiſon. This Project being not carried on ſo ſecretly, but that the Court got ſome Scent of it, it was thought fit to remove from *Muſcow* to *Troitza*, a ſtrong Monaſtery about 12 *German* Leagues from that City; by this means not a few, who were intended to be ſacrificed to the Reſentment of the Princeſs, eſcaped the Danger, but the Souldiery, headed by the before-mentioned *Konvanski*, under pretence of revenging the Death of the late *Czar Theodore*, committed unheard of Cruelties upon thoſe that had the misfortune to fall into their hands; of this number was the chief Phyſician of the deceaſed *Czar* whom they cut in pieces, and the Chancellour *Urrenimick Delgeronka* with his Son and Servant, and other perſons of Note underwent the ſame fate. The Princeſs *Sophia*, who had follow'd the Court, being ſoon inform'd of what had happened at *Muſcow*, ſent her Thanks to *Konvanski* for the Zeal he had ſhewn in revenging the Death of her deceaſed Brother, upon the Authors thereof (as ſhe pretended) which ſo heightened the courage of this ambitious Man, that he began to think of nothing leſs than to put the Crown upon his own head. To accompliſh which, having brought over the whole Body of the *Strelitzes* to his Devotion, by the Liberty he allow'd them of plundering wherever they came, and having given them a very deſpicable Character of the Perſons of the two *Czars*, one for his Infirmities, the other by reaſon of his Years, he thought he could not lay a more firm Foundation to build his Greatneſs upon, than by propoſing to the Princeſs *Sophia* (from whom he ſuppoſed to have deſerved every thing) a Match betwixt the Princeſs *Catharine* her eldeſt Siſter, and his Son. But this ambitious forwardneſs proved his Deſtruction; for the

Princeſs

1689. Princeſs *Sophia* ſoon gueſſing at his Intention, and looking upon him now as a more dangerous Enemy than any of thoſe ſhe had rid her hands of ſo lately by his means, ſhe reſolved to joyn with the Court to his Deſtruction, the Prince *Baſil Baſilowitz Gallichin* her Favourite (whom we have had occaſion to mention before, and ſhall ſay more of him hereafter,) being one of the chiefeſt who urged his Death, tho' moſt of what had been tranſacted in *Muſcow* by this ambitious Man, had been done with his Approbation. It is a Cuſtom in the *Muſcovite* Court to celebrate the Names-day of the Children of the Royal Family, upon which occaſion the Prince or Princeſs, whoſe day it is, gives a ſplendid Entertainment to all the great Men of the Court, and receive their Compliments upon that account. The Court was juſt then going to celebrate the Feaſt of St. *Catharine* at *Troitza*, being the Name of the ſame Princeſs *Konvanski* had deſired in Marriage for his Son, ſo that being invited thereunto with the reſt by the Princeſs *Sophia*'s ſpecial Order, he thought himſelf now already arrived to the firſt ſtep of his Happineſs, but ſoon found the Effects to be quite different from what he had propoſed to himſelf in his vain Imaginations; for as he was upon the Road, going to *Troitza* to be preſent at the ſaid Feaſt, he was ſeized upon by 200 Horſemen ſent for that purpoſe, and carried into an adjacent Village, where by certain Judges appointed for that purpoſe, he was charged with all the Murther and Rapine, that were ſo lately committed by the *Strelitzes* in *Muſcow*, and thereupon to loſe his Head with his Son, which was put in Execution accordingly. The *Strelitzes* were Thunder-ſtruck at this News, but ſoon after their ſurprize turning into Rage, they met in a tumultuous number, and running through the Streets of *Muſcow*, cry'd out, That they had loſt their Father, but that they would revenge his Death, without Exception of Sexes or Ages, upon every body that might be in the leaſt ſuſpected to have had a hand in it; neither were they worſe than their words, for they ſeized upon the grand Magazine of Arms and Ammunition, threatening to deſtroy all that ſhould oppoſe them. The Court at *Troitza* being put under a great Conſternation, order'd the other regular Troops (who bore an implacable hatred to the *Strelitzes*) to rendevouze near *Troitza*, and as the foreign Forces are the main Bulwark of the *Czariſh* Family, theſe being ſent for, were ſo ready to obey, that they would rather leave their Wives and Families expoſed to the Fury of thoſe barbarous Wretches, than be in the leaſt wanting in their Duty; the ſequel of the Matter ſufficiently ſhew'd, That their Fears were not in the leaſt groundleſs; for no ſooner had the *Germans* left their Quarters in the Suburbs of *Kokouri* (which is allotted them to live in) but the *Strelitzes* were for revenging themſelves upon their Wives and Children, but ſome of the eldeſt among them refuſed to comply, telling them, That the *Germans* being brave Fellows, would certainly not deſiſt till they had revenged themſelves upon them to the laſt Man, if they did ſuch a barbarous thing, and that, ſuppoſing that they were able to make their Party good with them, they were at preſent without a Head, and by ſuch an Action would cut off all hopes of Pardon for ever. Thoſe Arguments were ſo prevailing with them, that they did not only leave that Suburb unmoleſted; but being in great Confuſion, and continual Broils among themſelves for want of a Head, they thought it their beſt way to ſue for Pardon, and finding the Court not averſe to it, they Sacrificed moſt of their Colonels and other Officers to the Reſentment of the *Czariſh* Family, whom they kill'd the eaſier to obtain their Pardon. Things being thus quieted at *Muſcow*, the two *Czars*, attended by the Nobility, and moſt of the foreign Officers, made their Publick Entry in that City, and being met by the *Strelitzes* without their Arms at the Gate, they proſtrated themſelves, begging Pardon for what was paſt, and promiſing new Obedience for the future. The *Czar's* having given the Signal with their hands that they were pardon'd, they aroſe from the ground and follow'd them with Tears in their Eyes to the Palace.

The ſame day Prince *Baſil Gallichin* was made Lord Chancellor, and chief Miniſter of State; he is a Perſon of extraordinary merit and underſtanding, who having a great inſight into the Affairs of *Europe* beyond the reſt of the *Muſcovites*, would fain ſettle the *Muſcovite* Court upon the ſame Foot. He underſtands the *Latin* Tongue, and takes great delight in the Converſation of Strangers, and as he is no Lover of ſtrong Liquors himſelf, ſo he very willingly diſpences with the Cuſtom of the *Muſcovites* in that Point. The firſt remarkable thing of his Miniſtry was the puniſhment of the *Strelitzes*, ſome of whom he cauſed to be executed, and condemned many others to perpetual Baniſhment; theſe were Liſted into four Regiments for that purpoſe, one of which was ſent to *Bialogorod*, a Town on the Frontiers of *Tartary*, the ſecond to *Sibirka* upon the *Wolga* near *Caſan*; and the two others to *Kourſka* and *Sneska* in the *Ukraine*. The next thing he bent his thoughts upon, was to fill up ſuch places as were become vacant of late by the Death of thoſe that were ſlain by the mutinous *Strelitzes*, with ſuch Perſons as he knew to be abſolutely link'd to his Intereſt, and at the ſame time of a Capacity to diſcharge their Truſt, without the leaſt Reſpect to their Quality; and, as moſt of theſe were places of great Dignity, and conſequently had been before in the hands of the chiefeſt *Boyars*, theſe ſeeing themſelves neglected by Prince *Gallichin*, and other Perſons of no Account as to their Birth, put over their heads, conceived an irreconcilable Hatred againſt him; notwithſtanding this he maintain'd himſelf in his high Station, and that to ſuch a Degree, that ſcarce any thing of moment was tranſacted without him. It was he that made up the Peace with the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadours at *Muſcow*, and he had his ſhare in the Peace with the *Poles* made 1686. (by Vertue of which they reſign'd the *Ukraine*, and the whole Province of *Smolensko*) and the Alliance that follow'd ſoon after with the Emperour, and the King of *Poland*, according to which the *Czars* of *Muſcovy* were to attack the *Precopenſe* and *Crim Tartars*, to prevent their Incurſions into *Hungary* and *Poland*. The *Muſcovites* were ſo fond of this Alliance, that they ſent their Ambaſſadors, to give notice of it to moſt of the Courts of *Europe*; upon which occaſion I can't forbear to mention, That *Knez Jacobendrew* which *Dolgoroka Eſpanenick*, being ſent to the Courts of *France* and *Spain*, notwithſtanding the indifferent Reception he met with in the firſt of theſe two Courts, yet was ever after much more for the *French* than the *Spaniards*, and left his Nephew among them to learn the *French* Tongue, he being the only perſon of the *Muſcovites* in my time who underſtood it, as there were no more than four *Muſcovites* throughout that vaſt Empire who could ſpeak *Latin*, for which they were obliged unto their Tutors, who were *Poles*. It was now in the Year 1687. when the *Muſcovites* began to make great Preparations to the Expedition they intended againſt the *Crim Tartars*; one of the main Difficulties they labour'd under, was, where to pitch upon a Subject to be General of that vaſt Body they intended to raiſe for that purpoſe. Prince *Gallichin* propoſed ſeveral for ſo important a Charge, but moſt of the *Boyars*, who were none of his Friends, were of opinion, That the ſame perſon, who had had the greateſt ſhare in making this Alliance, ought to perform the Conditions thereof, and to make Tryal, whether the Conqueſt of *Precop* was ſo eaſie a matter, as he had imagined it to be. He on his ſide, did all what in him lay to remove this Burthen from his ſhoulders, as being ſenſible that it was an undertaking ſubject to many hazards; conſidering eſpecially, That his Army, though very numerous, would be compoſed chiefly of an unexerciſed Rabble, gathered from among the Boors, with whom nothing of moment was to be undertaken, without running a great riſque of being worſted, and that he himſelf being not trained up to Military Exploits, if any ſiniſter Accident did happen, it would be very hard for him, whatever precautions he could make uſe of to maintain his Authority againſt thoſe, who would be ready to put the worſt Interpretation upon every thing in his abſence; he was ſenſible that, as he never had been ambitious of Military Employments, and at this juncture did not ſtand in need of the Generalſhip to maintain his Authority, this was contriv'd on purpoſe by his Enemies as a ſpecious Pretence to ſend him from Court; this obliged him, to oppoſe with his Intereſt the Honour they pretended to do him in conſtituting of him General, but the Majority prevailing, he was to his no ſmall diſſatisfaction declared *Generaliſſimo* againſt the *Tartars*.

1689.

Prince *Gallichin* being obliged to accept of this Dignity, obtained, however, That his Son might be made his Coadjutator in the Chancery, to manage that important Station in his abſence, and the other General Officers that were to ſerve under him, being appointed in their reſpective Stations, the Troops intended for this Expedition were drawing together all that Winter, in order to

be

1689. be at the general Rendevouze, by the 1st of *May*, 1688. Accordingly an Army of 300000 Foot, and 100000 Horse being brought together on the other side of the great River *Marle*, they stay'd there a few days, and thence directed their March to *Poltova*, a City belonging to the *Cosacks* under the *Muscovite* Jurisdiction. Hence they marched to *Scarfin* upon the River *Avit*, where they spent 15 days idlely, in Expectation of a certain Image of the Holy Virgin, which a certain *Muscovite* Monk had told them, had appear'd to him in the Night time, and foretold him, That unless they took her Image along with them in the Camp, they must not expect any good Succes against the *Crim Tartars*. At last, the 15th of *June* they marched on to the River *Samara*, which as well as the other above-mentioned Rivers falls into the *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*; after they had pass'd the *Boristhenes* over Bridges made for that purpose, they continued their March to the River *Samara*, keeping the *Boristhenes* to the Right, and Encamped near *Tartarska Reka*, or the *Tartarian* River; thence they march'd to the River *Musencow*, and so to *Kaminka*, *Komskiourda*, and *Keratchekerra*; where understanding to their great Astonishment, that all the Forage was burnt in the Plains by the great drought and heat of the Sun, they were forced to make a halt, and soon after to change their Resolution, and instead of attacking *Precop*, which was their chief aim, to march back to the *Boristhenes*, where by reason of the overflowing of the River, there was good store of Grass, besides, that it might cover their Retreat, if the *Tartars* should come to attack them in the Rear. Here they Encamp'd for some time, but notwithstanding the great plenty of Grass, they met with here abouts, the vast number of Horses that attended the Baggage, and the scarcity of good Provisions, the Souldiers being forced to feed upon salt stinking Fish in *August*, (during one of the Lents of the *Muscovites*) swept away a vast multitude both of Men and Beast, and rendred many more incapable for Service. I was credibly inform'd by some of the *German* Officers, that were in this condition, that there were above a Million of Horses in the Camp of the *Muscovites*, which would seem incredible to me, had I not been an Eye witness my self, that in the King of *Poland's* Camp, in the Year 1686. which consisted of no more than 24000 fighting Men, there were told above 45000 Baggage Waggons. Things being in this Condition it was thought fit only to detach 30000 Men under the Command of *Evany Romanowitz Nepleuvant* Commander in chief of the *Sirenes*, and another under the Command of *Ivan Samuelowitz Hetman* or General of the *Cosacks*, towards *Zarparogny*, to get intelligence of the *Tartars*, and to march with the gros of the Army to the River *Samara*, where the General having taken an exact view of the Ground, laid the Foundation of a Fortress, to bridle both the *Tartars* and *Cosacks*, which was brought to perfection the next year. From the River *Samara* they march'd to the River *Marle*, where they Encamp'd in Expectation of the Orders from Court, to dismiss the Army.

In the mean while, Prince *Gallichin* left no stone unturn'd to take the Disgrace of this Campaign from himself, and to lay it at the Door of *Ivan Samuelowitz Hetman*, or General of the *Cosacks*, who, tho' a Man of great Authority in the Camp, as Commanding all the *Cosacks* in the *Ukraine* under the *Czar's* Jurisdiction, yet was not able to cope with this great Minister, who being prop'd by the Favour of the Princess *Sophia*, desired an Order from Court to depose him, and to put another in his Place; no sooner had he received these Orders, but he sent a Body of *Strelitzes* (not daring to trust the *Cosacks*) to surprize him in the Night time in his Tent, which they did accordingly, and brought him ty'd Neck and Heels together to the *Chatra*, or place of Judicature, which always is near the Generals Tent, where being the next Morning examined in the Court *Martial* call'd for that purpose, he was accused by some (suborned as it was supposed) *Cosacks* of having kept a Correspondence with the *Tartar Cham*, and having given secret Orders for the burning of the Forage in the Plains, so that this poor Gentleman saw himself in an instant deprived of all his Greatness, some of his own Domesticks calling him no better than a Son of a Whore, and one of his own Colonels, nam'd *Dimitrouki* drew his Cymetar to dispatch him, but was prevented by *Gallichin*. Being remanded to Prison, a Courier was dispatched to *Romanowitz Nepleuvant*, who as we told you, was together with a Body of *Cosacks*, left on the other side of the *Boristhenes*, with Orders to secure the Son of this *Hetman* of the *Cosacks*; this *Nepleuvant*, being willing to ingratiate himself with the General, and to make the best amends he could for the late Defeat he had received from *Neuradin Sultan*, upon the very Banks of that River, was very industrious in discharging himself of this Commission; but the Son of the *Cosack* General, having got some Scent of the matter, was got safely to his own Body, so that *Nepleuvant* was forced to Address himself to the chief of the *Cosacks*, desiring them to deliver him up, pursuant to the Orders he had received from the General; the Horse were soon prevail'd upon to comply, but the Foot having surrounded his Tent, refused a great while to part with their Commander, till being at last overcome by great Promises, they also left him to the Mercy of his Enemies, who carried him away in Triumph. In the mean while, his Father having by a Court Martial been deposed and banish'd into *Siberia*, the chief of the *Cosacks* were call'd together to choose another in his place, and after some Contestations the Choice fell upon one *Mascepa*, who being then Secretary of State, had a greater share of Prudence, than experience in Martial Affairs; being for the rest a *Cosack* by Birth, who had been Page to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, and afterwards served in the Quality of an Officer in his Guards. However, this Choice being not so unanimous, but that a good number of the *Cosacks* opposed it, they rise in several places and fell a plundering the Houses of their Colonels; which obliged their new *Hetman*, or General to sollicite from Prince *Gallichin* a prompt Succour of 3000 Foot, and a 1000 Horse, which were sent to *Baturin*, the ordinary Residence of the *Cosack* General. Soon after, Orders being brought from Court for the dismissing of the Troops, *Gallichin* took care to read to the Heads of the Army, the Letters of thanks from their *Czarish* Majesty, and to distribute among them the Medals which were sent them, as Tokens of the gracious acceptance their Services had met with from the *Czars*; for, as he was sensible that nothing could contribute more to blot out the Disgrace of this Campaign, than the Good-will of those, who had been Eye witnesses of it, so he had taken effectual Care, partly by Presents, partly by Preferments he had procur'd them at Court, to bring them over to his Interest, so that upon his Arrival at *Muscow*, being back'd by the Favour of the Princess, he was received with more than ordinary Demonstrations of Joy, and continued in the Ministry with the same Authority as before. 1689.

The first thing he proposed to the Council, after his Return, was the Erecting of a Fortress on the River *Samara*, to serve for a place of Arms on that side, which being soon agreed to, the management thereof was committed to a certain *Dutch* Engineer named *Vaule*, who brought it in a Months time into a State of Defence, and was named *Novobogrodilla*, i. e. *Our Lady the Widow*. This place proved of no small consequence to the *Muscovites* in their Expedition, the next following Year, *viz.* 1689. as lying very convenient for supplying their Army, with Provisions and Ammunition on that side.

Prince *Gallichin* having found by Experience, in how many Difficulties the Expeditions against the *Crim Tartars* were involved on that side, and that the Party of *Czar Peter* had gathered considerable strength during his absence, left nothing unattempted, to discharge himself of this troublesome Office, but finding no probability to encompass his aim, he thought it more honourable to make an offer of his Service, than to expect the Resolution of the *Boyars*; which done, being resolved to repair, as much as in him lay, the miscarriages of the last Campaign, he ordered the General Rendevouze to be against the 1st of *February* on the River *Marle*, the Reasons of which was, that as he was to cross many Rivers with so vast a Body, he intended they should be met together before the Ice was thaw'd, and the Banks of the Rivers overflown by the melting of the Snow. Accordingly most of the Troops began their March in *December*, and as they arrived at the said River *Marle*, the Foot were encamp'd near a great Wood, and the Horse dispersed in the adjacent Towns and Villages on the other side of the River; the Prince himself, and the rest of the Generals being arrived there the 1st *April*, they march'd the 6th to the River *Samara*, where being joyn'd by all the Troops, and among the rest by *Mascepa* General of the *Cosacks*, they broke up the 13th, directing their March towards *Precop*. The Train of Artillery, which consisted of 700 Cannon, besides Mortars, and other heavy Carriages, hindred them from making any great Marches, so that it was some days before they came to *Karatchoka*. Here they were Alarm'd

1689. on a ſudden by an odd accident; for a good number of Horſes being put a-grazing in thoſe places where the Graſs was not long enough yet to be mow'd, about Midnight there aroſe a ſudden Alarm in the Camp, with the neighing of Horſes, and fearful Out-crys of Men, that every Body thought no otherwiſe, but that the *Tartars* were coming to attack them in their Camp, which made ſome run to their Arms, others to look out for places of ſhelter, till day light diſcovered the meaning of this Diſorder, occaſioned by a Fright that had taken the Horſes at Graſs, ſome of which (to the number of 6000) were run aſtray, and the reſt had forced themſelves in a Body through the Lines of the Camp. Some days being ſpent in looking after the loſt Horſes, moſt of which were recovered, they broke up again, and after a March of ſeveral days came to *Kairka*, upon the Banks of the River *Boriſthenes*. Here they took ſome *Tartars* Priſoners; who reported, that the *Chan* was not at *Budziack*, expecting nothing leſs than ſo formidable an Army; that indeed they had received ſome intelligence of their March, but that it was the general Opinion there, their Deſign was no more than the building of ſome new Fortreſſes near the *Boriſthenes*; and that *Galga Sultan* had ſent them abroad, to get what Intelligence they could. From *Kairka* they march'd to *Kairka Meſcheſna*, where the General ordered a great number of Palliſadoe's to be cut, four of which with a certain quantity of water were to be loaden upon each Waggon; becauſe as they removed further from that River, they were likely to meet with more ſcarcity of both; thus they continued their March towards *Precop*, and notwithſtanding this precaution were forced to make ſhift for two days without water. The 13th of *May*, ſome Horſe that were ſent abroad to be at the Campaign, brought word that the Enemy were not far off, which made the *Muſcovites* put themſelves in as good a poſture to receive them, as the time would permit; which they had ſcarce leiſure to do, before the *Tartars* fell upon the Vanguard, Commanded by *Schien*, and after ſome light Skirmiſhes breaking through the Right wing, attack'd the Left under the Command of *Scheremitaw*, with ſuch fury, that they put them to Flight at the firſt Onſet, and the Horſe likewiſe beginning to Retreat, they had certainly made themſelves Maſters of all the Baggage, had not Prince *Gallichin* ſent a ſtrong re-inforcement of his beſt Troops to the aſſiſtance of *Scheremitaw*, who then returning to the Charge, forced the *Tartars* to Retreat towards *Thorna Oliva* 5 Leagues from *Precop*; whither the whole Army of the *Muſcovites* followed them, and encamp'd there by reaſon of the conveniency of freſh water, which they ſtood much in need of; in their March they were kept in continual Alarm by a flying Body of *Tartars*, under the Command of *Galga Sultan*, who took ſeveral *Muſcovites* Priſoners, from whom they learn'd, what they were very deſirous to know, concerning the ſtrength and condition of their Army; they were conducted to the *Tartar Chan*, who having received intelligence of our March, left *Budziack*, with a Body of 4000 Horſe, and paſſing the *Boriſthenes* at *Aſſenan Kirman*, a place belonging to the *Turks*, had poſted himſelf now near the ſmall River of *Kalantzeek*, which ariſing out of the Deſarts, exonerates it ſelf into the *Black Sea*. The 16th the *Muſcovites* broke up from *Thorna Oliva* to *Zelona Dolina* a League thence, but to their great ſurprize found themſelves in ſight of a Body of about 40000 *Tartars*; it was the general Opinion, that the *Muſcovites*, who were ſo much ſuperiour in number, without any delay ſhould attack the *Tartars*, but inſtead of that they entrench'd their Foot with their *Chevaux de Friſe* and Waggons, placing their Cannon upon all the Avenues, where they were moſt expos'd to that Army; but as the *Muſcovite* Horſe could not be drawn within the Entrenchment, they were attack'd by four ſeveral Bodies of *Tartars* conſiſting each only of 1000 Horſe, who ſoon brought them into confuſion, and would perhaps have put them to the Rout, had they not had the opportunity of retreating betwixt the Baggage, where being ſheltred under their Cannon, they fired ſo briskly upon the *Tartars*, that they were forced to Retreat with the loſs of 400 of their Men, though not without a conſiderable Loſs of the *Muſcovites*, many of whom were kill'd by their own Fire. At the ſame time another Body of *Tartars* under the Command of *Naradin Sultan* attack'd the *Coſacks*, Commanded by *Eritian Ezerecunan Dominiack*, who being a better Pen man than a Souldier, did not ſo much as ſtand the firſt ſhock of the Enemy; they broke in a moment through the Entrenchment made by the Waggons, and having kill'd the Horſe, ſeized upon the Artillery, and had certainly cut all the *Coſacks* to pieces, had not the *Boyar Bonka* come timely to their Relief; however they carried off 20 pieces of Cannon. Much about the ſame time *Scheremitaw* being attack'd by another Body of *Tartars*, they penetrated as far as to the Entrenchment made by the Baggage Waggons, but were ſo gall'd there, that they thought fit to retreat without attempting any thing further; ſo that *Scheremitaw* got the chiefeſt Honour of this day, he being a brave Man, but not much beloved by Prince *Gallichin*; the *Tartars* being march'd away, though not without a good Booty, it was reſolved to follow them to the before mentioned River *Kalantzeek*, for the conveniency of freſh water, and it being found moſt expedient to expoſe the Horſe as little as could be, they were ſo ordered to march within the Entrenchment of the Waggons, which were covered on all ſides by the Foot; the whole Army conſiſting then of 200000 Men. Upon their March, they were again Alarm'd by a Body of *Tartars*, who finding the *Muſcovite* Horſe covered by the Entrenchment retreated immediately towards *Precop*, not queſtioning but that this powerful Army intended to give them a Viſit there. They encamp'd the ſame day near the River *Kalantzeek*, which they paſs'd the next day without the leaſt oppoſition from the *Tartars*; ſeveral of the *Muſcovites* got upon the adjacent Hills to take a view of the City of *Precop*, which by the Fire, which the *Tartars* had ſet to the Town of *Har*, appear'd to be all in a Flame at a diſtance. The 19th the *Muſcovite* Army advanced almoſt within Cannon-ſhot of the City of *Precop*, having the *Black Sea* on the Right, and the Deſart on the Left; they did not as yet make uſe of their Cannon from the City, the Enemy being as yet at too great a diſtance, but play'd warmly upon them from a ſtone Tower which was built upon the Sea ſhore. As there was no long ſtaying in this place for want of Proviſions, and Forage, ſo the whole Army expected every moment Orders to make themſelves ready for the general Aſſault, but were not a little ſurprized to underſtand the next day, that they muſt keep themſelves in readineſs to march back; which happened thus: Some *Nagajan*, and *Calmouc Tartars*, who were ſent abroad for Intelligence, being engaged with ſome *Precopenſe Tartars*, one of the laſt being acquainted formerly with one of the other, ask'd him, *Why they ſhould Fight thus fiercely againſt one another*, unto which the other replying, *That he believed, if the* Chan *could ſend to their General to treat with him; a Peace might ſoon be concluded betwixt them*, the *Precopenſe Tartar* anſwered, That *he was ſure in caſe their General was for Peace, their* Chan *would not be againſt it.* The *Nagajan*, having after his return into the Camp, given an account to the General, of what had paſs'd, he was ſo well pleas'd with it, that he immediately ordered a Letter to be written in the ſaid *Tartar*'s Name, containing in Subſtance; *That he having ſpoken to the General concerning a Peace, he was willing to accept of it, provided the* Chan *would ſend one to ſhew his Pretenſions.* This Letter being given to the firſt *Tartar* they could meet with, was ſoon delivered to the *Chan*, who upon the reading thereof ſent a Meſſenger to know, whether this Letter were written by the General's Order, and being anſwered it was, he ſent *Soilech Myrſa*, as an Hoſtage to the *Muſcovite* Camp, who in his ſtead ſent one *Eſmeyan* to *Precop*. The *Muſcovites* propoſed the Releaſement of all the *Czar's* Subjects, ceaſing of all Hoſtilities, and of all Incurſions under what pretence ſoever; a Relinquiſhment of the annual Tribute of 800000 Crowns the *Muſcovites* were obliged to pay them; and laſtly, That they ſhould not aſſiſt the *Grand Signior* in the preſent War, nor attack the *Poles*. The *Tartar Myrſa* being ſenſible, that the *Muſcovites* could not long ſubſiſt here upon the Sands without great Detriment, cajoled the *Muſcovites* with the hopes of a Compliance with their Demands, but return'd for an Anſwer the next day, That the *Chan* would not make any new Conditions with the *Muſcovites*, and expected that the 240000 Crowns, which were in Arrears ſhould be paid forthwith; which being not at all pleaſing to *Gallichin*, he ordered immediately to decamp, and, for fear of being attack'd in the Rear, carry'd the *Tartar* Hoſtage along with him, as far as the River *Kalantzeek*, from whence he ſent him back to *Precop*, and had his Hoſtage likewiſe reſtored by the *Tartars*; thence he continued his March in three Weeks to the River *Samara*, where having left

1689.

1689. left a flying Body of 6000 Men to cover that place, he march'd in 60 days to the River *Marle*, where having received his Orders for diſmiſſing of the Army, he put an end to this ſecond Expedition, with as little Honour as he had acquired in the firſt; notwithſtanding which, as he had ſent his Expreſſes to the *Muſcovite* and *Poliſh* Courts, in which he vaunted to have routed the *Tartars*, and forced them to retreat into *Precop*, the Princeſs *Sophia* ordered Bonfires to be made throughout the whole Empire, and ſent Letters of Thanks with Preſents of golden Medals to the Officers of the Army; but the Plots in which he ſoon after engaged againſt the *Czar Peter* were evident Demonſtrations, that he did dread the event of theſe miſcarriages, would one time or other fall upon his own Head. What I have ſaid of theſe Expeditions, I have given you upon the Credit of the publick Miniſter of *Poland*, who follow'd the Camp in theſe Expeditions; what I am to tell you for the future being ſuch Matters, of which I have been an Eye witneſs my ſelf, to get into the Knowledge of which I frequently uſed to go Incognito, to the Monaſtery of *Troitza* where the Court then reſided.

The Enemies of Prince *Gallichin*, having notwithſtanding all his Endeavours to cover his Diſgrace, found means to inveſtigate the whole Truth of the matter, had ſo powerful an Impreſſion upon the *Czar Peter* againſt him, that, after his Return, he refuſed to admit him into his Preſence; and though afterwards he obtained that Honour by the preſſing Sollicitations of the Princeſs *Sophia*, he was ſo far from being able to juſtifie his Conduct, that he was not diſmiſſed without very bitter Reproaches. Not many days after, when the *Czar's* Anger ſeem'd to be ſomewhat appeaſed, the Princeſs *Sophia* gave freſh occaſion of Jealouſie to thoſe who long ago were ſufficiently ſuſpicious of her Conduct, by propoſing to beſtow conſiderable Preſents upon ſuch Perſons as had well deſerved of late of the Government, which *Czar Peter* oppoſed, alledging, that as it was a Novelty, unknown before in the *Muſcovite* Empire, where the Preſents the *Czars* uſually made to their Subjects ſcarce ever amounted to any more than a rich Veſt, as a Token of their Favour, the ſame ought not to be introduced upon ſlight occaſions, before the Merits of theſe perſons were well examin'd. But, as the aim of the Princeſs was by this means to bring over to her Intereſt, ſuch of the *Boyars* and Officers of the Army as ſhe judged ſhe ſhould ſtand in need of, for the encompaſſing thoſe Deſigns ſhe had framed, ſhe play'd her Cards ſo well, that ſhe at laſt obtain'd his Conſent, accordingly divers Villages with 1500 Boors were beſtow'd upon Prince *Gallichin*, 300 upon each of her Generals of the Army; to the other Officers in proportion, even to the private Gentlemen, that were in the Service. Prince *Gallichin* thinking himſelf now ſuſtain'd by two ſuch Pillars as were not eaſily to be ſhaken, *viz.* the Princeſs and the Army's Favour, attempted a thing never heard of before in *Muſcovy*; for whereas it had been a conſtant fundamental Maxim among the *Muſcovites* ever ſince the *Coſacks* embrac'd the *Czar's* Protection, not to admit their General into the City of *Muſcow*. Prince *Gallichin*, under Pretence of honouring their preſent General *Maſepa* with the ſight of the *Czar's* Perſons, (but in Effect, for a quite other reaſon, as we ſhall hear anon) he prevail'd ſo far by his Authority, as to obtain leave for him to come to *Muſcow*, which he did accordingly, with at leaſt 800 of his chief Officers, whilſt the *Czar Peter* was diverting himſelf at one of his Countrey Seats call'd *Obrongensko*, upon the River *Yarus* about a League from *Muſcow*; having often, but in vain deſired leave from the *Muſcovites*, to give a Viſit to this *Coſack* General, I ventur'd at laſt to go to his Houſe Incognito, which I did ſeveral times afterwards in the Company of the *Czar's* Phyſician, a *German* by Birth, who had Buſineſs of great conſequence with this *Coſack* General, and by this means got an inſight into the Plot that was contrived by the Princeſs againſt the Life of the *Czar Peter*. The Princeſs *Sophia*, who had long ago foreſeen that the Life of the *Czar Peter*, would one time or other prove an unſurmountable Obſtacle, to that Greatneſs ſhe pretended to, began now every day more and more to repent ſhe had follow'd the Advice of Prince *Gallichin* her Favourite, who had always been againſt offering any Inſolence to his perſon. For being now ſenſible with what trouble ſhe had obtain'd from the ſaid *Czar*, Prince *Gallichin's* being admitted into his Preſence, after his Return from his ſecond Expedition, and the Reproaches he had been forced to ſuffer, (which touched her to the quick) as alſo with what Reluctancy the *Czar* had allow'd her the giving of the Preſents ſhe had beſtow'd upon the Army; theſe I ſay, were convincing Proofs to her, that ſhe was not likely to Act with the ſame abſolute Authority as before, and that by degrees as the youngeſt *Czar's* Authority and Intereſt ſhould encreaſe, hers would diminiſh, till at laſt they might find means to ſend her back into the Nunnery, where ſhe had been before. Theſe Conſiderations were ſo prevailing in a Princeſs ambitious and courageous above her Sex, and who could in no wiſe brook the Loſs of her Authority, that ſhe reſolved to maintain it at any rate, which ſhe did not queſtion to encompaſs by the aſſiſtance of her Friends, whom ſhe had link'd to her Intereſt by her Liberality and Favour; with this Reſolution, ſhe once more apply'd her ſelf to her Favourite Prince *Gallichin*, repreſenting to him the fear ſhe was in, of ſeeing not only her Authority diminiſhed every day, but that by degrees, her Enemies might attempt againſt her ſelf, at leaſt ſo far, as to ſhut her up in the Nunnery, which muſt needs draw after it the utter ruin of himſelf, his Family and his Friends. Prince *Gallichin* being ſenſible of the truth of the Matters the Princeſs propoſed to him, and though always accounted a Man of great wiſdom and underſtanding, and an Enemy to all violent Proceedings, yet could not reſiſt any longer to give his Conſent to what had been long ago propoſed to the Princeſs, which was the Death of *Czar Peter*; but as he was a perſon that always acted with a great deal of Circumſpection, he propoſed, That, before they ventured upon ſo bold a ſtroak, he would ſend his Son in the Quality of an Ambaſſadour into *Poland*, whither he ſhould carry the beſt of his Riches along with him. But the Princeſs, impatient of delays, and thinking her ſelf ſure of the Game, was ſo far from hearkening to this wholſome Counſel, that ſhe abſolutely forbid him to think any more of this Embaſſy. This done, ſhe apply'd her ſelf to one *Theodore Thekelatiraw*, Preſident of the Chamber of the *Strelitzes* a Creature of hers, who had been raiſed to this Office from a poor Clerk, and conſequently, was beholding to her for all his Fortune; this *Theodore* having underſtood the Princeſſes Intention, and promiſed the performance thereof, call'd together in the Caſtle call'd *Cremetina* the Reſidence of the *Czar* and the Patriarch, 600 of the *Strelitzes*, whom he knew to be devoted to his Service under the Command of a Colonel call'd *Bourjanow*, an intimate Friend of his, offering himſelf to Head them in their way to *Obrogensko*, a Country Seat of the *Czar Peter*, where he then was. A certain time was appointed accordingly for the Execution of this Deſign: they march'd towards the before-mentioned place, but were ſcarce got out of the Gates of *Muſcow*, when two of theſe *Strelitzes*, touch'd with remorſe to have a hand in the muthering of their Prince, found means to get away, and with all ſpeed to advertiſe the *Czar* of the Deſign laid againſt his Life, who being then in Bed cauſed his Uncles by the Mothers ſide to be awakened, who after a ſhort Deliberation, reſolved that one of them ſhould go with Prince *Boris* towards the City, to ſee whether the *Strelitzes* had ſpoke truth in what they had reported. They were not gone very far, when ſeeing *Thekelatiraw* advancing that way at the Head of his *Strelitzes*, they hid themſelves in an adjacent Wood, till they were paſt by, and then clapping Spurs to their Horſes, return'd with all poſſible ſpeed through certain by-ways to the *Czar*, who being now put beyond all doubt of the Danger threatened him, had ſcarce time enough left him, to ſave himſelf with his Mother, Wife, Siſter and ſome few of his moſt truſty Servants by flight, taking their way towards the Monaſtery of *Troitza*. *Thekelatiraw* being not long after arrived with his *Strelitzes* at the place, where they were to have Acted ſo diſmal a Tragedy, was much ſurprized to underſtand from the other *Strelitzes*, (who knew nothing of their Deſign) that the *Czar* was ſuddenly departed thence, ſo that finding there was no further Buſineſs for him to do here, he return'd full of confuſion to *Muſcow*, where the flight of the *Czar Peter* had cauſed a great Alarm, no Body knowing what to make of it, till the next Evening it began to be rumour'd about, that he had ſent a Meſſenger to the Princeſs *Sophia*, to upbraid her with her Inhumanity, but that ſhe poſitively deny'd to have the leaſt Knowledge of any ſuch thing, alledging that theſe things were inſinuated into the *Czar* by her Enemies, who would interpret the exchanging of the Guards of the *Strelitzes*, as a Deſign contrived againſt his Life; but this Pretence appear'd very weak to moſt

1689.

1689. People, who were well ſatisfied that the Guards were always exchang'd at certain hours in the day time, whereas this Body of the *Strelitzes* came in the night time to *Obrokensko*, which is not above a *German* League from *Muſcow*. However a few days after, the Riddle began to be unfolded, for no ſooner was the *Czar* arrived at *Troitza*, but he diſcovered the whole Deſign to all the World, ſummoning all the Nobility, and the ſtanding Forces of the Kingdom to join him at *Troitza*, with ſuch good Succeſs, that in a little time he ſaw a good Body of the Nobility ready to receive his Commands there; he ſent alſo his Orders to Prince *Gallichin*, to come and attend him at *Troitza*, but he, who did not care to come there, as long as he could help it, excuſed himſelf, becauſe the *Czar John* had Commanded him to ſtay near his perſon. The Princeſs in the mean while, hearing what a reſort of the Nobility there was at *Troitza*, began to be ſorely afraid of being left at laſt alſo by her Darling *Strelitzes*, for which reaſon having Summoned moſt of the inferiour Officers into the Court, juſt as the *Czar John* and ſhe were coming from Maſs, ſhe prevail'd with him to ſpeak thus to them: "I know not for what reaſon my Brother has taken "his Retreat to the Convent of *Troitza*, but am afraid "it is not without an Intention of raiſing Diſturbances "in the State; I have been credibly inform'd, That he "has required you to come thither to him, but we for- "bid politively to obey his Commands, under pain of "Death. The Princeſs back'd the *Czar John*'s Commands by hers, yet did not the *Strelitzes* think fit to comply therewith, but repaired in great numbers to *Troitza*, to aſſure *Czar Peter* of their conſtant Fidelity.

The Princeſs *Sophia* ſeeing all her Endeavours prove in vain, and that every day more and more of the Nobility came to *Troitza*, thought it her ſafeſt way to make Peace with *Czar Peter* before it was too late; which ſhe hoped to effect by the Interceſſion of two of her Aunts by the Fathers ſide, named *Anna* and *Michalewa*, and one of her Siſters named *Marfa* (*Martha*) *Alexena*; theſe, as well as ſeveral other Princeſſes of the Royal Family, had, after the Example of the Princeſs *Sophia*, quitted the Monaſtick Life and Changed it for that of the Court, which the ſaid Princeſs *Sophia* was willing enough to arrive at, as conſidering, that the ſame Arguments which could be alledged againſt their ſo doing, might be made uſe of againſt her ſelf, and that the fear of returning to a Monaſtery, would infallibly link them to her Intereſt. Beſides the beforementioned *Marfa*, there were ſeven more Siſters of the firſt Adventure, *viz. Avidota*, *Dorothea*, *Catharina*, *Sophia*, *Mary*, *Sadiaſſa* and *Theodora*, their Mother being named *Miraskelawka*, the *Czar Peter* and his only Siſter the Princeſs *Natalia* being of a ſecond Adventure, born of a Lady of the Family of the *Narakins*. The Spouſe of *Czar John* is deſcended of the Family of *Satiskow*, her name being *Martha*, and had only one Daughter. *Czar Peter*'s Wife was alſo nam'd *Martha*, who being big with Child, when the Deſign againſt the *Czar*'s Life was diſcovered, miſcarried ſome days after, but afterwards bleſſed the Empire with the Birth of a Son, and conſequently, overturn'd all the hopes of the Princeſs and her Adherents. Thus much of the Royal Family; it is time we return to our former Theme. The two Aunts and the *Czar*'s Siſter being come to *Troitza*, did make uſe of all their Rhetorick to perſwade *Czar Peter*, that his Suſpicion was ill founded, and that theſe Aſperſions had been contrived by the Enemies of the Royal Family, on purpoſe to raiſe Diviſions, and Animoſities among them, deſiring him not to harbour any ill thoughts of his Siſter, and to come forthwith to *Muſcow*. But *Czar Peter*, having given them ſufficient Demonſtrations, that they intended to have murthered his Mother, Spouſe, Uncle and himſelf, and that by ſo undeniable Circumſtances as were paſt all Contradiction, theſe poor Ladies burſt out into Tears, declaring, That they had not the leaſt ſhare in the Plot, and that they would not return to *Muſcow*, but live and die with him at *Troitza*. The Princeſs *Sophia* finding her hopes vaniſh'd into ſmoke on this ſide, thought it her beſt way to make her Applications to the Patriarch, unto whom ſhe repreſented her Innocence in Tears ſo preſſing and paſſionate, that he was willing to undertake the Reconciliation of the Royal Family. Accordingly he departed from *Muſcow* to *Troitza* the ſame day, and being arrived there, gave the *Czar Peter* to underſtand the reaſon of his coming, not forgetting any thing which he thought conducing to bring about the intended Reconciliation. But it was not long before he was extremely ſurprized to hear from *Czar Peter*'s own mouth, that their Plot was laid even againſt his Life; and the Abbot *Silveſter*, who was among the number of the Conſpirators, was to have ſucceeded him in the Patriarchical Dignities; this did ſo nettle the old Gentleman, that he thought it his ſafeſt way to ſtay at *Troitza* with the reſt, till the whole Riddle ſhould be unfolded. The Princeſs ſeeing her ſelf thus reduced to the laſt ſhift, call'd together the Heads of the Party, to conſult what was beſt to be done in this Emergency, wherein it was reſolved, That, *Thekelatiraw* ſhould ſtay in the Caſtle, the Abbot *Silveſter* ſhould ſave himſelf by flight, and that ſhe and Prince *Gallichin* ſhould go in perſon to *Troitza*, to endeavour to juſtifie themſelves before *Czar Peter*; but ſcarce had they travelled half the way thither, when by a certain Meſſenger ſent by *Czar Peter*, they were ordered to return back, he having reſolved not to admit them into his Preſence. They thought it their beſt way to obey, and were ſcarce return'd to *Muſcow*, when they found the *Strelitzes* and *German* Forces upon a ſecond Summons from the *Czar Peter*, on their March to *Troitza*. They were no ſooner arrived there, but the *Boyars* that were with the *Czar Peter*, finding themſelves now ſufficiently ſtrengthned by their arrival, made a Decree, that the Traitors concerned in this Conſpiracy ſhould be ſeized, wherever they could be met with, and ſent the Colonel *Larque* at the Head of 300 choſen Men to *Muſcow*, to put this Decree in Execution. He no ſooner arrived in that City, but directing his March ſtreight to the Royal Palace, he demanded boldly, that *Thekelatiraw* ſhould be ſurrendred into his hands; the Princeſs *Sophia* at firſt ſeem'd unreſolv'd what to do, but the Colonel perſiſting in his Demands, ſhe was forced to ſurrender the ſaid *Thekelatiraw* and his Adherents to him, who were carried in Chains to *Troitza*. Prince *Gallichin* not queſtioning, but that his turn would be the next, thought it moſt expedient at this dangerous Conjuncture, to repair in perſon to *Troitza* before he ſhould be conſtrain'd ſo to do, for which purpoſe, having taken his Son *Alexis*, his Aſſociate in the Chancellor-ſhip along with him, as alſo *Talachanaw*, Governour of the *Czars*, *Raquenske* the Lord Treaſurer, *Nepleuvan*, Wayvode of the *Syrenes*, *Eſaujaw* Commiſſary General of the laſt Camp, and one *Kaſſantan* his particular Favourite, they went to *Troitza*, where they were no ſooner come, but they found the Gates of the Convent ſhut, and a Guard ready to take them into Cuſtody, with ſtrict Orders not to let them ſtir out of their Lodgings; in the mean while, *Thekelatiraw* was no ſooner arrived at *Troitza*, but was put to the Torture, in the Preſence of the chiefeſt *Boyars* that were there with *Czar Peter*. They call this way of torturing *Kanouſe*, which when it is to be perform'd, they tie the Criminal to the back of a luſty perſon, his hands being extended above his Head, on a board fix'd there for that purpoſe; in this poſture he receives 200 or 300 Laſhes by the Executioners hands, with ſuch violence, that at every ſtroke the Skin and Fleſh is torn from the Bones. *Thekelatiraw* had not received many Laſhes, before he confeſs'd the whole truth, that his Intention had been to murther the *Czar Peter*, his Mother and all his Family, and ſoon after writ a Letter to the *Czar*, wherein having given him a Circumſtantial account of the whole Deſign, and the Names of his Accomplices, he declared, That they had forced him to enter himſelf as an Accomplice into the Deſign they had laid long before. 1689.

The *Czar Peter* being thus ſufficiently convinced of the treacherous and bloody Deſigns of his Siſter, yet was ſo far from inflicting any Puniſhment upon her, according to her deſerts, that he only obliged her to return to the Nunnery, which ſhe her ſelf had built a Mile from *Muſcow*; and at the Interceſſion of *Boris Alexiowitz Gallichin*, Nephew of Prince *Galichin*, he changed his Puniſhment, which could be no leſs than Capital, into Baniſhment into *Siberia*. This done, ſeven more that were concerned in this Conſpiracy were put to the Torture, by dropping boiling hot water upon their Heads, which being ſhaved before, put them to ſo exquiſite a Torment, that they confeſs'd the Fact, and diſcovered all their Accomplices. Prince *Gallichin* with his Wife, Son and neareſt of Kin, being, as I told you, baniſhed into *Siberia*, all his Eſtate was confiſcated to the *Czar*'s uſe; a prodigious quantity of precious Furniture, and moveables were found in his Houſe, 100000 Ducats, which were buried under ground, and 400 *Pontes* of Plate, each *Ponte* containing 40 pound weight. The *Boyar Evanty*, and *Romenawitz Nepleuvan* Wayvode of the *Syrenes* were baniſh'd

1689. baniſh'd to *Paſtozora* one of the moſt Northerly parts of the Empire, and their Eſtates confiſcated. The reſt of *Gallichin*'s Friends were either confined to their Country Houſes, or provided with ſome Governments, at a great diſtance from *Muſcow*. This done, *Thekelatiraw* had his Head cut off upon a Block by the common Executioner, and the two *Strelitzes*, who were to have murthered the *Czar*, underwent the ſame fate; the Colonel their Leader, after being ſeverely whipt, had his Tongue cut out, and was baniſh'd into *Siberia*, and five more *Strelitzes* ſuffer'd the ſame Puniſhment. The Princeſs *Sophia* who would but ill reliſh the Life of a Nun, after ſhe had been ſo long Miſtreſs of a vaſt Empire, was contriving to make her eſcape into *Poland*, but *Czar Peter* having got notice thereof, ſent her into the Convent by force, and ordered a Guard of *Strelitzes* to keep a watchful Eye over her, for fear of an eſcape. Tranquility being thus reſtored, *Czar Peter* made his Publick Entry into *Muſcow* on Horſeback, which was chiefly remarkable by the Homage, the whole Body of the *Strelitzes* (conſiſting of 1000 Men) paid him, and had lined the Streets, through which the *Czar*, his Spouſe, and Mother paſs'd in a Coach to the Palace; here being met upon the Stairs by *Czar John*, the two Brothers embraced with a great deal of Kindneſs, the *Czar Peter* deſiring the other, to continue his Friendſhip towards him, and ſo they parted to their reſpective Lodgings prepared for their Reception. This was the end of the Government of the Princeſs *Sophia*, who after having been the ſole Miſtreſs of the *Ruſſian* Empire for ſeveral years, was ſo intoxicated with Ambition, that not brooking to reſign the ſame to her Brothers, had laid this Plot, to continue Arbitrary in the Government, which drew upon her the Fortune of being forced to end her days contrary to her Inclinations, in the before mentioned Convent.

If we trace the Origin of all the Troubles that have happened of late years, or are likely to happen, the ſame may chiefly be attributed to the Intreagues and ſiniſter Deſigns of this Princeſs *Sophia*, and therefore deſerve well our particular Obſervation, from their firſt beginning. She was a perſon of a heavy and bulkey ſhape, with a large Head, her Face being full of Hair like that of a Man; her Leggs very unſhapely, and the Structure of her Body of ſo awkward a compoſure, that, what with her Age, and what with her Deformity, ſhe appear'd more like a Monſter than a Lady deſcended from the Royal Blood. But the Perfections of her underſtanding, which benign Nature had beſtow'd upon her, ſeem'd to be intended to make an amends for the Defects of her Body; being naturally ingenious, induſtrious beyond Compariſon, and very active in what ſhe undertook; her State Maxims, were the ſame, as if they had been taken out of *Machiavel* (though it is certain, that ſhe never ſaw him) eſpecially in the point of Government, for which ſhe thought nothing might be omitted, that might tend either to its Eſtabliſhment or Preſervation, as will more clearly appear out of the following Account. For in the latter end of the Reign of *Tedor*, or *Theodore* her eldeſt Brother, ſhe, being ſenſible that his weakneſs would ere long put a period to his Life, took this opportunity to leave the Nunnery, where (according to the Cuſtom of the *Muſcovite* Court) ſhe was ſhut up (for her Life) under Pretence of aſſiſting the *Czar* her Brother in his Illneſs, which ſhe did accordingly, and that with ſo much Zeal, that ſhe gain'd thereby the Favour of the *Czar*, and the Affection of many of the chief Men among the *Muſcovites*. The next thing ſhe bent her Thoughts upon, was how to ſecure her ſelf againſt any Danger, of being forced to return into the Convent; to encompaſs which, ſhe thought nothing could be more expedient, than if by pitching upon an able Miniſter of State, who ow'd his Elevation to that Dignity to her ſelf, ſhe thereby might draw the Adminiſtration of Affairs into her own hands. *Knez Baſili Baſilowitz Gallichin* who was deſcended from the moſt illuſtrious *Jagellonian* Family in *Lithuania*, was both for his noble Extraction, and great Qualification look'd upon as the moſt proper Perſon to diſcharge ſo great a Truſt, which he did with a great deal of Applauſe as long as *Czar Theodore* lived. After his Death, *Kowanski* (being encouraged underhand by the Princeſs, to rid her ſelf of ſuch as ſhe thought oppoſite to her Intereſt,) under pretence of revenging the Death of *Czar Theodore*, but in Effect to entail the Crown upon his Family, having with the aſſiſtance of the *Strelitzes*, murthered many of the *Bojars* that were in the Intereſt of *Peter* the youngeſt of the two *Czars*, this involved the State in great Troubles, which were 1689. ſomewhat appeaſed by the Death of *Kowanski*, and the Princeſs *Sophia* found means by her Intereſt with *John* the eldeſt of the two *Czars*, to obtain not only the Dignity of chief Miniſter of State, but alſo that of Lord Chancellor for *Gallichin* her Favourite, ſo that, what with the weakneſs of one of the *Czars*, and the Minority of the other, ſhe ſaw her ſelf in a manner abſolute Miſtreſs of the whole *Ruſſian* Empire. The next thing that employed her Thoughts was, how to change the unlawful commerce ſhe had hitherto carried on with *Gallichin*, into the Bonds of Matrimony. The greateſt Obſtacle was the Lady of Prince *Gallichin*, for, as he was a Man of Honour, had got a conſiderable Eſtate with her, and divers Children, he could not reſolve to part with her, barely to gratifie another, for whom he had but little Affection, except what proceeded from the bare Conſideration of Intereſt. But at length, as Ambition was his predominant Paſſion, as well as the Princeſſes, ſhe urged the Matter ſo far, that he reſolved to part with his Spouſe, whom he perſwaded to retire into a Convent. The Princeſs *Sophia* having gain'd this Point, began now to bend all her thoughts upon ways and means to ſecure the Crown to her ſelf, her future Spouſe and Family; to Effect which ſhe propoſed to Prince *Gallichin*, the murthering of both the *Czars* her Brothers; but he, who's love was not ſo violent, as to have bereaved him of his Reaſon, and conſequently the apprehenſion of the Danger, that was likely to enſue, even if they ſucceeded in it, knew ſo well how to repreſent to her the dangerous Conſequences of it, that, for that time ſhe was contented to acquieſce in his opinion, which tended towards the ſecuring to themſelves; firſt, The ſole Adminiſtration of all publick Affairs, and afterwards the Crown, by ways, which though not ſo quick, yet ſuch as appear'd much leſs hazardous in the Execution. He propoſed, That a Wife muſt be choſen for *John* the eldeſt of the two *Czars*, who being impotent, ſhe muſt be perſwaded to admit of a Gallant to ſupply the Empire with Heirs; that ſo ſoon as the eldeſt *Czar* ſhould have any Male Heirs, the Authority of *Czar Peter*, the youngeſt Brother, would ſink ſoon after to ſuch a Degree, that it would be no hard matter to force him to embrace a Monaſtick Life, or to find out ſome other means, to rid their hands of him. This done, he adviſed to advertize *Czar John* of the Infidelity of his Spouſe (which would be no hard Task for them to do) who being thereupon thruſt into a Monaſtery and her Children illegitimate, they might provide another Wife for the *Czar John*, but as they were ſure, that he was not in a Condition to beget any Children, ſo, they ſhould have the ſole Adminiſtration of Affairs during his Life, and the Crown, for want of Male Heirs of the Royal Family, would thus without Effuſion of Blood devolve to the Princeſs *Sophia*. She was well ſatisfy'd with this Propoſition, the whole Execution of which ſhe committed to his Care, little thinking that his main drift in the Matter, was to entail the Crown upon his Son by his firſt Wife, by exalting one *Silveſter* a *Poliſh* Fryar to the Dignity of a Patriarch, and procuring an Union betwixt the *Muſcovite* Church, and that of *Rome*, to obtain the Popes Intereſt to back his Deſign. The beginning of the intended Project was made with the Marriage of the eldeſt of the two *Czars*, *John*, for whom they took Care to find out a handſome young Woman, from among his Subjects (according to the Cuſtom received in *Muſcovy*) and to ſupply his impotency furniſh'd the new *Czareſs* with a luſty vigorous *Italian* Chirurgeon, who did his Buſineſs ſo well, that it was not long before ſhe proved with Child, but to the great grief of the Princeſs proved a Girl. The Adherents of the *Czar Peter* were not ſo ſtupid, as not to have ſome Scent of what was tranſacted, but wanted Power to oppoſe that of Prince *Gallichin*, back'd by the Princeſs's Authority with *Czar John*; to counter-balance in ſome meaſure this exceſſive Power, they introduced into the *Czar Peter's* Favour the young Prince *Gallichin*, a Nephew of the old *Gallichin*, but neglected by him, by reaſon of his being addicted to ſtrong Liquors, who in a little time got ſuch an Aſcendant not only over *Czar Peter*, but alſo over moſt of the *Boyars*, that they found means to ſend the old Prince *Gallichin* upon the Expedition againſt the *Crim Tartars*, and whilſt he was in Campaign the ſecond time, perſwaded *Czar Peter* to Marry, which he did accordingly, maugre all the oppoſition of the Princeſs *Sophia*; and the *Czareſs* proving ſoon after with Child, this proved ſo great an Addition to his Party, that almoſt all the young Nobility who

were

1689. were before in the Intereſt of the Princeſs *Sophia*, came over to his ſide. Prince *Gallichin* after his Return out of the Campaign, finding all his meaſures broke by ſo bold a ſtroke, as the Marriage of the youngeſt *Czar Peter*, and her being with Child, began now to repent of not having follow'd the Princeſſes Advice, and ſeeing now no other means left to encompaſs his ambitious Deſign, but conſenting to the making away of the *Czar Peter*, which miſcarrying, as we told you before, he propoſed to the Princeſs, That he would with his Family and Treaſure retire into *Poland*, where he did not queſtion, what with the King's Favour, and the *Coſacks* and *Tartars* he intended to bring over to his Party by Preſents, but he might make a powerful Irruption into *Muſcovy*, and ſo obtain by open force, what he had not been able to accompliſh by Policy. Many are of opinion, That, conſidering the great Party the Princeſs and he had in the Empire, his Deſign was not altogether without ſome probability of Succeſs, but the Princeſs who could not entertain the leaſt thought of loſing him out of her ſight, and ſtill relying upon her own ſtrength, could not be prevail'd upon to hearken to his Advice, but poſitively forbid him to ſtir, not queſtioning but to bring him off by her Authority; but theſe hopes being ſoon after vaniſh'd into Smoke, as we have told you before, *Gallichin* with an undaunted Conſtancy ſubmitted to his Sentence, which was to end his days in Baniſhment in *Siberia*.

No ſooner was *Gallichin* removed, but *Naraskin* Grandfather by the Mother's ſide to *Czar Peter*, aim'd at the chief Miniſtry, and ſuch other Dignities as were become vacant by his removal. The chief Obſtacle that ſeem'd to oppoſe his Deſign was the Nephew of the old *Gallichin*, whom as he had formerly been promoted to the *Czar Peter*'s Favour, to balance the Authority of his Uncle, ſo, now made uſe of the Interceſſion this young *Gallichin* had made to obtain his Uncles Life (which he did) as a ſpecious Pretence to inſinuate into the *Czar Peter*, that he had all along kept a ſtrict Correſpondence with his Uncle, and that therefore he was not to be rely'd upon; the *Czar* repreſented to them the improbability of what they propoſed, alledging to them the Fidelity of a perſon who had no leſs than three times ſaved his Life; but the cunning old *Naraskin* with his Sons and Daughters, throwing themſelves at the *Czar*'s Feet, with Tears in their Eyes, conjured him not to truſt himſelf into the hands of a perſon, whoſe Fidelity they had great reaſon to queſtion, which had ſuch an influence upon the *Czar*, that he reſolved to confine this young Favourite to his Country Houſe, which he no ſooner underſtood, but he went thither immediately, without ſtaying for the *Czar*'s Orders. The *Czar Peter* had ſcarce got notice of his Departure, but repenting of his former reſolution, he ſent Meſſenger after Meſſenger to know the reaſon of it; unto whom the young *Gallichin* gave for an Anſwer, That ſince his paſt Conduct had not been ſuch as to aſſure his Majeſty of his Fidelity, he would end his days at a good diſtance from Court; this Anſwer having touch'd *Czar Peter* to the quick, he ſent away two *Boyars*, to perſwade him to return to Court, and within a few days after, being impatient to ſee him, diſpatch'd two more to Command him to return, which he did immediately. *Czar Peter* received him with a thouſand Careſſes and Embraces, which ſo netled *Naraskin* and his Party, that finding they were not able to cope with him at preſent, thought it their beſt way, to ſue for his Friendſhip till a better opportunity might offer. Neither was it long before this young Favourite (who had little of the Merits of his Uncle) furniſh'd them with one, to accompliſh his ruin; for, as drinking was his moſt admired Paſt-time, ſo, he beſtow'd moſt of the places upon thoſe of the ſame Stamp, without any regard to their Capacity; and theſe being a Company of hot-headed Fellows, did not ſtick over their Caps to enter into Cabals for the Intereſt of the Princeſs *Sophia*, which no ſooner reach'd the *Czar Peter*'s Ears, but being convinced of the Incapacity of his Favourite, he beſtowed the Dignity of Chancellour upon the old *Naraskin*, and that of High-Steward upon his eldeſt Son. Young *Gallichin* being highly exaſperated at his Diſgrace, was ſo far from bridling his Paſſion, that he upbraided the *Czar* in publick with Fickleneſs, which being extremely reſented by the *Czar*, his Enemies were not idle to improve this opportunity to his Deſtruction, which follow'd ſoon after, he being condemn'd to undergo the ſame Puniſhment of ending his days in *Siberia*, with his Uncle the old *Gallichin*.

After the Baniſhment of both the *Gallichin's*, the Family of the *Naraskins* having got the whole Management of Affairs into their hands, even thoſe who not long 1689. before had conceived a ſecret Joy at the misfortune of the old *Gallichin*, began to feel the Effects of the abſence of ſo great a Man; it was he, who had at his own Charge built a very fine College of ſtone, and provided it with 20 *Greek* Profeſſors, and many good Books; it was by his Encouragement, that the Nobility ſent their Sons to the *Latin* Schools in *Poland*, or ſent for Tutors for the Education of their Children, from that Country; and afterwards ſent them into foreign Parts, to be inſtructed in Military Diſcipline, and other uſeful Sciences; it was to him Foreigners of all Religions (not excepting even the Jeſuits themſelves) were obliged, for having free Admiſſion into *Muſcovy*; and to be ſhort, it was he, who had projected no leſs than the turning the Deſarts of this Empire into habitable Places, the reclaiming a barbarous Nation from their wonted Barbarity, making brave Men of Cowards, and converting the nauſeous Huts of the *Muſcovites* into convenient Habitations, there having been above 3000 Houſes of ſtone built by his Encouragement in the City of *Muſcow*. His Palace was one of the fineſt in *Europe*, covered with Copper inſtead of Tiles, the Tapeſtry, Paintings and other Furniture of which were almoſt ineſtimable. He had alſo a Palace built for the Reception of foreign Miniſters, not inferiour in Magnificence to the other, and the Stone-bridge (the only one in all *Muſcovy*) of 12 Arches, which he built at his proper Charge over the River *Moſca*, is an everlaſting monument of his Liberality. No ſooner, I ſay, was this great Man, and his Nephew removed from the Helm, but the *Naraskins* began to receive the old *Muſcovian* Rules of Policy, to wit, to lay the Foundation of that deſpotick Government, which is exerciſed by the *Czars*, upon the ignorance of their Subjects; for which reaſon they began with the Prohibition of admitting Foreigners without peculiar leave into the Empire, and more particularly of the exerciſe of the *Roman Catholick* Religion; with ſo much Severity, that they would ſcarce allow the *Poliſh* Reſident a private Chappel for his own uſe; and poſitively denied the Requeſt he made in 1690. of a paſſage only for Father *Grimaldi* through their Country, having obliged all the Jeſuits in *Muſcow* to quit the Country, the very next day after the Baniſhment of this great Man; it was at that time the Opinion of moſt of thoſe who have any inſight into State Affairs, that had their Miniſtry continued much longer than it did, they would have endeavour'd to re-introduce as much the old Barbarity among the *Muſcovites*, as Prince *Gallichin* had taken Care to root it out. But the *Czar Peter* coming to Age of Maturity, and being ſenſible of the happy Effects of the Deſigns of that great Perſon for the Advancement of his Empire, did after the Death of his eldeſt Brother *Czar John*, ſo cloſely follow his Footſteps in the Management of all Affairs of moment, and has made ſuch conſiderable Progreſs, in reducing his Subjects to a more civilized Temper, that the Memory of this great Miniſter will remain Sacred for ever among the *Muſcovites*, who look'd upon him as the moſt accompliſh'd Perſon, their Country ever produced, before he ſullied his Honour in being engaged in the Conſpiracy againſt the Life of his Prince.

The famous *Ruſſian* Tyrant *Baſili Baſilowitz*, having after the Conqueſt of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan* join'd *Siberia* to his Dominions, and thereby diſcovered thoſe rich Furrs which were before that time unknown in *Muſcovy*, thoſe, who were baniſh'd into that Country, to hunt thoſe Creatures, at laſt opened themſelves the way, through vaſt and before impaſſable Wilderneſſes to the ſhoar of the frozen Seas. The manner of it being ſoon ſpread in *Europe*, the *Dutch* were the firſt who attempted to diſcover the *Muſcovite* Coaſt, but having miſcarried in their Deſign, the *Engliſh* had the good Luck to find out the Gulph or Bay of St. *Nicholas*. The Son and Succeſſor of the before-mentioned *Czar Baſili Baſilowitz*, being over-joy'd at this opportunity to enter into Commerce with foreign Nations, granted them many Privileges, and among the reſt an entire Exemption from all Duties and Cuſtoms. The *Dutch* looking with an envious Eye upon this advantage obtain'd by the *Engliſh*, endeavoured at divers times to obtain alſo an Eſtabliſhment there, but in vain, the firſt remaining entire Maſters of the Trade of *Archangel*, till the Death of King *Charles* I. The *Hollanders* having by that time got a powerful influence upon the *Muſcovite* Court, theſe laid hold of this opportunity, under pretence of revenge againſt a Nation who had Sacrificed their

1689. their King in so abominable a manner, to bring in the *Dutch*, which they actual did, under condition that they should pay 15 *per cent.* for all Commodities imported or exported; notwithstanding which they have made such advantage of the *Russian* Trade, that they have at present above 200 Factors at *Archangel*, who during the Winter reside for the most part at *Muscow*, in one of the Suburbs of which lives above a 1000 Merchants, *English*, *Dutch*, *Hamburghers*, *Netherlanders* and *Italians*, who exchange their Cloaths and other Manufactures and Spices for Corn, Hemp, Pitch, Wax, Iron, *&c.* Their Ships arrive commonly at *Archangel* in *July*, and depart again in *September*, those that stay beyond that time are in great Danger of being lost in the Ice; they Sail commonly from *Archangel* to *Bergen* in *Norway*, in 15 or 20 days. Formerly the *Persian* Merchants used to bring their Commodities to *Archangel*, but during the Ministry of the great *Gallichin* they had Liberty given them to carry their Goods directly to *Riga*, paying 15 *per cent.* Custom to the *Czars*, which saved them a great deal of time, for from *Riga* to *Holland* they might go and come in 4 Months time, and go from *Riga* to *Archangel* in 3 Months by way of the *Caspian* Sea. The *Dutch* obtain'd at the same time, Liberty from the said *Gallichin*, to have some Ships built by their own Carpenters, to transport their Commodities from *Archangel* to *Salamanchia* in *Persia*, which they did with a great deal of ease, till these Vessels being burnt by the *Tartars*, the succeeding Ministers would not allow the *Dutch* to build any New ones; amongst the many other Projects which that great Minister set on foot for the benefit of the Empire, and the no small encrease of the *Czar's* revenue, his setling an easie passage from *Muscovy* to *China* by Land, deserves a particular place here.

To encompass this, he made use of one *Spatarus* a *Wallachian* by Birth, who, by reason of his having discovered a secret League betwixt the King of *Poland*, and the *Hospidar* of *Wallachia* (which proved the ruin of the last) was banish'd his Country, and had his Nose slit; as he was a person of a great vivacity of Wit, and a perfect Master of the *Greek*, *Latin* and *Italian*, so he found a very good Reception at the Court of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, whither he retired after his Banishment; but at the Intercession of the King of *Poland*, being forced to leave that Court, he retired into *Muscovy*, where he was well received, and entertain'd by the old *Gallichin*; who being resolved to settle a convenient Correspondence for Commerce by Land with the *Chineses*, pitch'd upon this *Spatarus* to undertake that Task. He was 2 whole years taken up in this Journey; but being a person of more than ordinary Sagacity, he had taken so exact a view of all the places thro' which he pass'd, that after his return, he made it plain to *Gallichin*, in what manner the passage from *Muscow* to *China* might be rendred very easie and commodious. For this purpose it was resolv'd to erect certain Huts or small Cottages, from 10 Miles to 10 Miles, betwixt *Muscow* and *Tobolsko*, the Capital City of *Siberia*, and to allot certain Lands for the subsistance of the Inhabitants, and their Horses, each of which was obliged to keep 3 for the conveniency of such Merchants, or other Persons as travell'd that way, who were to pay 3 Pence for each Horse for 10 *Versts*, or Miles, amounting to above 2 *German* Leagues; Orders were also given for the erecting of certain Posts on those Roads, as well as all over *Muscovy* to distinguish the Miles, and be a direction to Travellers to those parts of the Country. Where by reason of the vast height of the Snow, Horses were of no use, he Commanded certain Huts to be erected, the Inhabitants of which were obliged to keep a certain number of Dogs, that were to supply the Defect of Horses to draw the Sleds. He was very careful to have Magazines erected at *Tobolsko*, to supply the *Caravans* with what Provisions they should stand in need of for so great a Journey, and certain large Barks were built to carry them upon the Rivers *Irtish* and *Oby* to the Lake of *Kesilbas*, at the foot of the Mountains, where further Provision was made for the prosecution of their Journey. *Spatarus* told me himself, That in his last Journey he did not spend above 5 Months, and that he perform'd it with as much ease as he could have done in some parts of *Europe*. I was very curious to have Learn'd of him, the Names of the Countries, Rivers and Mountains thro' which he pass'd, but as he was sensible how jealous the *Muscovites* are even in Matters of the least moment, so he desired to be excused upon that Point, for fear lest if it should take vent, and be interpreted to his prejudice, he might be rewarded for his Pains with a good *Bastinado*, a Chastisement the greatest *Boyars* are not exempted from, when the *Czar* is pleased to make them feel the Effects of his Indignation; he only added, That in his third Journey thither, which he was to undertake speedily, he did not question, but to find out still a shorter and easier way. The Succes *Spatarus* had met with in this Enterprize, gave no small Encouragement to several of the *European* Nations to follow his Footsteps; but the *Hollanders* considering, that, if this way was once opened to Foreigners, the *French* would have the best opportunity in the World to vent their Manufacturies, of which the *Chineses* and *Tartars* are excessive fond, at so easie a rate in these Countries, that thereby their *East India* Trade would come to an utter decay in a few years; they knew so well, how to insinuate themselves into the Ministers of the *Muscovite* Court, that succeeded *Gallichin*, that they stop'd the passage by Land into *China* to all the *Europeans*; notwithstanding the many Efforts the *French* Missionaries have made to obtain it. 1689.

An Abstract of a Letter written by a Person of Quality, a Native of Germany *residing in* Muscovy, *concerning the present State of that Kingdom.*

IN Answer to yours, in which you desired me to give you the best account I could concerning the present State of *Muscovy*, and what else I had met with worth Observation during the stay of the late *Muscovite* Embassy in *Holland*, *England* and other parts, I send you here an account of what I have been an Eye witness of in Relation to the said Embassy. But to trace the true State of this Empire, it is absolutely requisite to go back as far as the Reign of *Czar Alexis Michaelowitz*, the Father of his present *Czarish* Majesty, who coming to the Crown in the Year 1645. found the *Muscovites* so deeply involved in Ignorance, in respect especially to Military Affairs, that to remedy this Evil (which they had often experienced to their cost) he thought he could not pitch upon a better expedient, than to invite into his Service a sufficient number of foreign Officers, by whose assistance he might hope to bring his Subjects under a regular martial Descipline. The Encouragement he gave to these Officers, by prompt payment and other Privileges he bestow'd upon them, made his Design succeed so well, that if we may give credit to the *Baron* of *Mayerburgh*, who 1662. went in the Quality of Ambassadour from the present Emperour *Leopold* to the *Muscovite* Court, and who for the rest seldom flatters the *Muscovites*, there were in his time no less than 2 Lieutenant Generals, as many Major Generals, above 100 Colonels, and other Officers in proportion in the *Czar's* Service, who were very punctually paid, and much esteem'd there; it being to them the *Muscovites* were obliged, for the many brave Actions the Troops, that were under their Commands, perform'd against the *Poles* and *Swedes*; besides that these New rais'd Regiments served as a Check to the ancient Guards of the *Czar*, which consisting of 40000 Men, are Commanded by the chief of the Nobilty, and are look'd upon as the constant standing Force of the Empire. This Prince died 1676. being generally lamented by his Subjects, for his mild and generous Disposition; he was succeeded by his eldest Son, *Tedor* or *Theodore* who reigned no longer than 6 years, and bequeathed the Crown to his youngest Brother *Peter*, Born of a second Adventure. *John* the elder, born of the same Mother with himself, being by reason of his Infirmities of Body and Mind, not in a Capacity to bear the burthen of so vast an Empire. Accordingly the said *Peter Alexiowitz*, was proclaimed *Czar* of *Muscovy*, when he was scarce 11 years of Age; but the Princess *Sophia* by raising a powerful Party against him, advanced the elder Brother *John* to the Crown in conjunction with the said *Czar Peter*. Her Cabals and Intreagues with the old Prince *Gallichin*, her Lover, first to Dethrone, and afterwards to kill the said *Czar Peter*, these I say are Subjects of so ample an Extent, as to exceed the compass of a Letter, which obliges me to keep within the Bounds prescribed to my self, and to be satisfied with what relates more particularly to the *Czar Peter's* person. This Prince had from his Infancy given most manifest Demonstrations of his sublime Genius, all his thoughts being bent upon the Knowledge of Sea Affairs, and other Matters in which foreign Nations excel the *Muscovites*? Finding the *Turks* entangled in a heavy War with the Emperour, *Poles* and *Muscovites*, he look'd upon this as the most favourable opportunity in the World, to give some Proof of his warlike Inclinations against the common Enemy of Christendom; for which purpose, having concluded a Peace with the *Chineses*, and engaged in a strict Alliance with the three before-mentioned Powers, he, resolved upon the Siege of *Asoph*, a place of vast consequence to the *Muscovites*, to open their way to the *Black Sea*; he had also another insight in this Project,

viz. so

viz. to humble the Pride of the *Strelitzes*, by exposing them in those Attacks where there was most Danger, and supplying their Places with such as he knew entirely devoted to his Service. According to this Project more foreign Officers were taken into Pay (which I believe amounted in all to 8000) and it was resolved to Act with two separate Bodies, one of which was to be employed in the Siege of *Asoph*, the other against *Kasikermeen*, the better to amuse the Enemy.

The City of *Asoph* was formerly of no large Extent, the Fortifications being no more than a single wall strengthned with some Towers after the ancient way, two sides of which run parallel with the River; in the middle of that side which faces the East, was a very high and large Tower in form of a Pyramid, but flat on the top; besides which it had a large Entrenchment, in the manner of a Cittadel for the conveniency of the Garrison; this was strengthned on the East side, with divers small Demi-Bastions, and to the West with a good Bulwark, these two sides extending to the River side adjoining to the Wall. The *Turks* had of late made some additional Fortifications of Earth which enclosed the rest, defended by four Bastions and a Ditch; the two Bastions which were on the side to the S. E. opposite to the Hill which Commands the place, were near enough to second one another, but the third on the S. W. side, was quite out of reach of the second; and the fourth on the West side, at a much greater distance from the third; the Cortin betwixt these two last Bastions had about the middle an obtuse Angle, as had also the Cortin facing the East; all along the River side it was defended by strong Pallisado's, and at some distance above the City you saw two square stone Towers (one on each side of the River) provided with Cannon, and a Chain cross the River, to hinder the *Cosacks* from passing that way in their Barks in the night time. This was the Condition of *Asoph*, when it was besieged the first time by the *Muscovites*. I can't but stand amazed, when I consider, that the *Turks* whole Empire is founded upon the Conquests they have made of their Neighbours, should be so neglectful of *Asoph*, which is the Inlet into *Muscovy* on that side; whereas according to the true Maxims of their State, they ought to have fortified it in such a manner, as to take away all thoughts from the *Muscovites* for ever attempting to attack it; had they follow'd this Rule, how easie a matter would it have been for them, to make themselves Masters of that advantageous Post, where the *Wolga* approaches to the *Don*, and from thence to carry the terrour of their Arms over the greatest part of the *Muscovite* Empire. For it is to be observed, That there are two Rivers thereabouts of less note, one of which coming from the N. W. falls into the *Don*, the other from the S. W. joins its Current with that of the *Wolga*; these two Rivers are not above a League and a half asunder, though they are not as much as mark'd in our Maps, but instead of this mention a certain Canal they call *Camous*, which is not to be found thereabouts. The Ground betwixt these two Rivers being very easie to dig (a few rocky places excepted) what could have hindred them from making a Communication betwixt the two great Rivers the *Wolga* and the *Don*, by the means of a Canal; which done, a Fortress upon the Banks of the *Wolga* would have opened them the way into the Heart of *Muscovy* on one side, and by the *Caspian Sea* into *Persia*; but the small account they always made of the *Muscovites*, and their want of a sufficient force by Sea, to pursue these Designs seems to have diverted the *Turks* from ever attempting to bend their force that way, but to return to *Asoph*.

The *Turks* finding now too late, themselves in Danger to be attack'd on that side, had provided the City of *Asoph* with a Garrison of 10000 Men, and all other things necessary for a vigorous defence; the *Czar* of *Muscovy* on the other hand had assembled an Army of 100000 Foot, and 20000 Horse of his best Troops, wherewith he invested the place, and whilst they were busie in perfecting the Lines of Circumvallation, he ordered a small Fort to be erected on the South side of the River, betwixt the City, and the two before mentioned square stone Towers, which being thereby deprived of all Succours from the City, soon fell into the hands of the *Muscovites*, who strengthned that on the South side of the River with three Bastions; in the mean while they were advanced with their Trenches to the Hill which commands that place, from whence they play'd most furiously with their Cannon and Mortars, in hopes to terrifie the besieged to a Surrender; but these being all old Troops, who were resolved to defend it to the last extremity, they were forced to carry out their Trenches to the Body of the place; not without the loss of a great number of their best Men, who were slain in the Sallies the besieged made frequently and several attacks; it was a great while before the *Muscovites* could make themselves Masters of one of the Bastions, not without hopes of forcing the Enemy out of the Entrenchment they had made within; but the *Turks* having found means to chase the *Muscovites* thence, they were so discouraged thereat, that what with the advanced Season, and what with the want of Provisions and sufficient Ammunition, it was resolved in a Council of War, to change the Siege into a Blockade for this time, and to reassume it with new Vigour the next Spring. The *Strelitzes* who were the foremost in all the Attacks, suffered most upon this occasion, and it must be confess'd, that the *Czar* gave many proofs of Bravery often exposing his person to the Enemy's shot, several of his Attendance being kill'd near his side.

The Siege of *Kasikermeen* met with much better Success; this place is seated on the South side of the River *Boristhenes*, not above 2 Leagues from the *Black Sea* among the *Tartars* of *Oczacow*; its Fortifications consist of four square Forts of stone, three of which were in a parallel Line, and the 4th was built upon the very River of the *Boristhenes*, being defended as well as all the rest by divers stone Towers; but the 4th being the strongest, has two high Bastions instead of Towers, and a very deep Ditch flanking the River. Just opposite to it is the Isle of *Torna*, which resembles a *Neats-Tongue* in shape; upon this Island the *Tartars* had erected 2 Forts, at each end one; defended by 4 Bastions; that at the upper end they call'd *Monberchkermeen*, and that at the lower end *Kuftikermeen*; besides which they had built another Fort on the opposite side of the River towards the *Crim Tartary*, unto which they had given the name of *Oslonkermeen*. The *Muscovite* Army design'd for the Siege of the place consisted chiefly of *Cosacks*, inhabiting these Frontiers under the *Czar*'s Protection, and were commanded by their General, named *Scheremetoff*; the first thing they did, was the attacking of the Forts, which having been taken without much resistance, they bent their whole force against the Town, and directed their chief Attack against the Bastions; carrying on their Trenches with so much vigour and expedition, that in a very short time they made themselves Masters of them, forcing the Garrison to shelter themselves behind an old Wall where they capitulated, to march out of the place with all the marks of Honour due to Souldiers, who had behaved themselves bravely in their Station: However this Capitulation being but ill observed on the besiegers side, the *Czar* was so sensibly touch'd with these Disorders, that he sent for the General, and gave him a very severe reprimand, who being nettled at so unexpected a Reproach, beg'd leave of the *Czar* to lay down his Command, and to travel for some time into foreign Countries; which being no sooner ask'd than granted, he went into *Italy*, where having taken a view of most of the Courts there, he pass'd over into the Isle of *Maltha* where he was highly caress'd by the Knights of that Order.

The Winter now approaching, the *Czar* bent all his thoughts to repair the disgrace of the late Campaign by the Success of the next; his constant resolution being to carry *Asoph* at any rate; vast Preparations were made, not only of Bombs, Carcasses, and other great Artillery, but especially of the Gallies, *Brigantines* and other Vessels to defend the intended Succours of the *Turks* by the water side. Most of these were built at *Verokewitz* about 200 Miles from *Muscow*, except some of the Gallies of the first Rate, which by peculiar Order from his Majesty were built upon the River *Occa*, near the City of *Muscow*, and so contrived, that they might be taken to pieces, and conveyed upon Land-Carriages to *Verokewitz*, upon the River *Don*. The *Muscovites* who had been employed in the Blockade of the place, all the Winter had so strongly entrench'd themselves, upon the Hill which commands the City, that the *Tartars* had not been able to dislodge them thence, or to bring any considerable Convoy into the place; and every thing being now in readiness, it was resolved to open the Campaign early in the Spring, with the Siege of *Asoph*.

The first Effort was made with Bombs, of which so prodigious a number were thrown into the City, that it was soon reduced into a heap of Ashes and Stones; so that the Garrison, (which was by this time reduced to 2000 Men,) were forced to Shelter themselves in Holes dug under Ground for that purpose; notwithstanding which, they resolved to defend the place, till they saw what Success those Forces had, that were sent to their Relief, should meet with in this Attempt.

These

Theſe Forces were imbark'd on board 12 large Galleys, and a good number of *Saiques*: and no ſooner did they advance towards the Mouth of the *Don*, but the *Czar* having timely notice of it, commanded 7 of his largeſt Galleys, beſides many others of a leſs rank, to be brought into the *Don*, by the means of a Branch of that River which rejoyns the Grand Channel at ſome diſtance above the City. The Water being but ſhallow, this was not perfected, but with a great deal of difficulty, but the *Czar*'s Preſence having encouraged the *Muſcovites* to ſurmount all obſtacles, the Garriſon ſtood amazed to ſee Veſſels of ſuch a bulk (ſome of them being 100 foot long) appear in ſight of their City without knowing from whence they came. The next thing to be done was, to plant good ſtore of Artillery in the Iſland I had occaſion to mention before, lying near the Mouth of the River, which was done unperceived by thoſe in the Town, by reaſon of the Woods which covered the Labourers, which alſo afforded a convenient ſhelter to a good number of the leſſer Galleys and Brigantines, which the *Muſcovites* had placed on the back-ſide of the Iſland. The reſt of the *Muſcovite* Galleys, inferior in number to thoſe of the *Turks*, advanced againſt them in very good Order, and theſe encouraged by this inequality, and not dreaming of the Ambuſh that was laid for them in the Iſle, made all the Sail they could to come up with the *Muſcovites*, who pretending to be ſtartled at their number, retreated before them beyond the Iſland, and were cloſely purſu'd by the *Turks*, who thought themſelves abſolutely ſure of the Victory; but were no ſooner come within reach of the Cannon of the Iſle, when to their coſt, they found that they were not likely to have it at ſo cheap a rate as they had flattered themſelves, the Cannon making ſuch a havock among their Galleys as is almoſt inexpreſſible: During this Conſternation, the *Czar*, who was in Perſon in the Iſle, got aboard a Galley, and being follow'd by the reſt that were placed behind the Iſle, attack'd the *Turks* from behind with ſuch a fury, that they did not know which way to turn themſelves; the *Czar* in Perſon boarded the *Turkiſh* Admiral, and being ſeconded by ſeveral others, made himſelf Maſter of her, the reſt of the Enemies Fleet underwent the ſame Fate, not one Galley eſcaping the *Muſcovites* hands, but what was either taken or ſunk: This Victory was chiefly attributed to the *Czar*'s Conduct, who was the Contriver and chief Manager of the whole Action, and as he was an Eye-witneſs of the behaviour of his Subjects upon this occaſion, ſo he took immediate care to reward their Service, by diſtributing among them 50000 *Ducats*, which were found aboard the *Turkiſh* Admiral, and intended as a Reward for the Beſieged: Theſe having been Spectators of the ill ſucceſs their Fleet met with in relieving the Place, thought it now high time to provide for their own ſafety, by coming to a Capitulation, which was readily granted them upon very honourable Terms; and performed with all exactneſs imaginable.

No ſooner did the *Czar* ſee himſelf Maſter of *Aſoph*, but he diſcovered his Sentiments, of what conſequence he judged this Place to be, by the Fortifications he ordered to be made for its defence. For, he not only ordered the Body of the Place, which was almoſt ruin'd by the Cannon, to be repaired, but alſo a Foundation to be laid for a new Town, reaching as far as the Baſtions of Earth, with the obtuſe Angles we ſpoke of before; this he cauſed to be ſtrengthened with a good Counterſcarp, a Covered Way, divers Half Moons, and a ſtrong Entrenchment. But not ſatisfied thus, he commanded a Draught (which I ſaw) to be made of a Fortreſs to be built juſt oppoſite to *Aſoph* in the Marſhes, which was to be joyn'd to it by a Bridge ſupported by 30 Arches; its Fortifications conſiſting of 60 regular Baſtions, 2 of which flank'd the River, with a Half-Moon betwixt them; as the 2 Bulwarks on the North ſide were ſtrengthened by 3 Half-Moons, the ground upon which it was to ſtand, was to be raiſed to ſuch a height as to command the whole City of *Aſoph*, the ground round about being always under Water, when the Wind blows from the South, at which time there is no Communication left betwixt theſe 2 Places but by the Bridge. Theſe Fortifications would without all queſtion have been ſufficient to bridle the *Crim Tartars*, and the *Coſacks* inhabiting near the *Tanais*, had not the *Czar* had another matter, of much more conſequence, in view, which was no leſs than the eſtabliſhing a Commerce through his Country in the *Paltus Mœotis*, and thence through the Streights of *Caffa* to *Conſtantinople*, and ſo further into *Italy*; He was ſenſible that this could not be effected without making himſelf ſo formidable in the *Black-Sea*, as to be able to coap with the naval Force of the *Ottomans* there; in purſuance of this deſign three things were ſet on foot, by his Orders, which will perpetuate his Memory to Poſterity: (1.) The making of a good Harbour on that ſide. (2.) The Conjunction of the 2 Rivers, the *Wolga* and the *Don*, by means of a Canal; and (3.) the building of 80 Galleys and Frigates, beſides 150 Brigantines. This Harbour could not be erected at *Aſoph*; for, tho' the River *Don* from *Veronowitz* as far as *Aſoph*, is as paſſable for Ships as any River in the World, being without any Sands, Rocks or Shelves, and its Channel very deep, yet is its Mouth ſo choak'd up with Sands and Shelves, that at low Tide there is not above 7 foot Water, and conſequently not fit for the Paſſage of Ships of any great Bulk; which ſhews the error of moſt of thoſe Geographers, who have been ſo forward to deſcribe the Entrance of this River, as one of the ſafeſt and moſt commodious that can be. His *Czariſh Majeſty* having well weigh'd all theſe difficulties, gave ſtrict Orders to ſound the Coaſt thereabouts, and to pitch upon the moſt convenient Place for a Harbour, as near *Aſoph* as poſſibly could be done; but eſpecial command was given, to ſound near the Mouth of the River *Miens*, whereabouts the *Turks* uſed to caſt Anchor, with their great Ships bound for *Aſoph*, where at low Water there is commonly 15 or 16 foot Water. Not far thence is a Cape, whereabouts at low Tide there is 12 foot Water, the bottom being a hard Gravel, the Shoar riſing from the Sea by an eaſie aſcent; which to the Eaſt of the Cape makes a kind of a Bay, and about a Lg to the Weſt a ſmall River comes round the Cape in form of a Semicircle.

The *Czar* having taken an exact view of the Situation of this Place, gave immediate Orders for the erecting a Fortreſs with 5 Baſtions there, and the building of a City below it, leaving a conſiderable Tract of ground betwixt the City and the Bay, which lying upon a level, was to be cut for a Canal, which running parallel with the Cape, was intended for the reception of the bigger Ships; with a leſſer Canal within it for the harbouring of Veſſels of a leſſer ſize; I have ſeen the whole Draught of it, its length was 3750 foot, and the breadth about half as much. Concerning the Conjunction of the 2 Rivers, the *Wolga* and the *Don*, I have before given you ſome account of the ſituation of the ground thereabouts, and of the 2 leſſer Rivers which joyn their Waters with the 2 greater ones; all which conſidered it is more than probable that this Project will come to a good iſſue in a little time, above 20000 Men being employed to cut the Canal, by which this Conjunction is to be effected, by the means of certain Sluices, which are to raiſe the Water to ſuch a heighth as is requiſite for the Paſſage of Ships of any conſiderable bulk. For the Equipment of his Fleet he found out this expedient; as he had taken a full reſolution to root out by degrees the *Strelitzes*, the ancient Eſtabliſhed Forces of the Kingdom, in which the Nobility were generally employed as Commanders, he thought he could find them no better work, than to engage them for the future in the Sea-ſervice; to keep them from being troubleſome at home: To effect this, he recommended to all the *Boyars* and ſuch others of the Nobility as had any relation to the Court or Army, to educate their Sons in the knowledge of Maritime Affairs, as the only means to make the Empire formidable, promiſing them to furniſh them with able Officers, who ſhould inſtruct them in that noble Science; offering at the ſame time, that all Perſons of Note, and the chief Cities of the Empire, ſhould, in proportion to their abilities, contribute towards the conſtant maintaining a certain number of Men of War; which was to be the conſtant ſtanding Naval Force of the *Muſcovite* Empire.

His Majeſty having thus laid the foundation of theſe his Deſigns, ſet out in *Autumn* for *Muſcovy*, leaving a conſiderable Army near *Aſoph*, to cover the Workmen, under the Command of *Alexis Simonowitz Scheremitr*. He was received in his Capital City with all the demonſtrations of Joy and Magnificence due to a Conqueror, many Waggons laden with the Spoils of the Enemy, and a great number of Captives taken in the laſt Sea-Engagement, following his Train through the Streets; the Night was concluded with a very fine

Work, contrived by his Majesty himself, of which I my self saw him make the Draught. But notwithstanding all those Acclamations and other demonstrations of the Love the People bore to this Prince, there was a certain Party among the Nobility, fomented by the Princess *Sophia* (though enclosed in a Monastery) who not able to brook the downfal of their beloved *Strelitzes*, whom they had always look'd upon as the main Pillars to sustain their Authority, had conceived such a mortal hatred against the *Czar*, that they were resolved to take the first opportunity to send him out of the World. To effect this design, they had engaged among the rest, a Captain of the first Regiment of the *Strelitzes* into their Party, who had engaged to undertake this Task, but in the Execution of it found much more difficulty, than they had imagined. Several Projects were proposed to encompass it, and among the rest to fall upon him as he was passing through the City, which he very often did with a small Retinue, but upon second Consideration, this was thought an Enterprize of too dangerous Consequence, considering the Love the Common People bore him, who back'd by those Foreign Officers, that generally attended him, might by the assistance of the foreign Troops quartered in the Suburbs, have made the Conspirators, with their Adherents, pay dear for such an Attempt, before they could be in a condition to second one another. After various Debates, it was at last agreed, that considering the *Czar* used commonly to appear in Person whenever any Fire happens to break out in the City of *Muscow*, the best way would be to set on fire some Wooden Houses in the Night time, thereby to draw him thither, and whilst he was busie in giving the necessary Orders to, and encouraging, by his Presence, those that were employed in quenching the Fire, to stab him: The Day for the execution of this detestable Murther, was to have been the 2d. of *Feb.* 1697. which would, without question, have taken effect, had not 2 of the before mentioned Captains (who, as we told you, had undertaken this Task) touch'd with a remorse of Conscience at so foul a Fact, discovered the whole Design that very Day before it was to be executed, to the *Czar*. He happened to Dine that Day at the House of General *La Fort*; and the 2 Captains, whose Names were, *Largon Gilisarof*, and *Gregory Silexi*, had no sooner made their Discovery, but he arose with an unconcerned look from the Table, and ordering only a few Persons to follow him, went straightways to the House of one Mr. *John Zickler*, one of his Counsellors of State, and the chief Head of the Conspiracy; he left all his Retinue at the Door, and being follow'd only by 2 or 3 Gentlemen, he entred, and under pretence of having occasion for his Advice, ordered him to come out; he had no sooner done so, but was seized, as were immediately after 5 of his Accomplices, *to wit*, The *Boyar Alexis Schounin*, *Fedor Puskni*, the Son of the *Boyar Murifa Puskni*, the 2 Captains of the *Strelitzes*, and a certain *Cossack* of those inhabiting near the *Don*; it being upon the Assistance of those last, the Conspirators had chiefly rely'd, to restore the *Strelitzes* to their ancient State; and Princess *Sophia*, and Prince *Basili Gallishin* to the Chief Management of the Government; their whole design being thus miscarried, and the Criminals confronted with the 2 Captains who had made the Discovery, they ingeniously confessed their Crime, and were sentenced to death, which was executed accordingly the 5th. of *March*, 1697. in the Great Market-place before the Castle, where, after their Hands and Legs were cut off first, their Heads were severed from their Bodies, the last of which were fixed upon a Stone Statue erected for that purpose, and the Arms and Legs hung round about it; the Trunks of their Bodies were also exposed to the view and terror of the Spectators for several Days, and afterwards hung on Gibbets, erected in divers parts of the Country for that purpose. The Conspirators having among other things in their Confession, accused the deceased *Boyar John Miloslafsky*, of having been one of the Chief Managers of the Conspiracy, entred into against the *Czar*, 1687. at the time of his first Accession to the Crown, his Body (which was found very little corrupted) was disinterred and hung upon a Gibbet.

The *Czar* having granted a general Pardon to all the rest that had had a hand in this Conspiracy, began now in good earnest to prepare for his Journey into *Germany*, which he had projected sometime before, but had been pervented hitherto in his laudable design of taking a view of some of the chiefest Courts of *Europe*, by the Siege of *Asoph*, which being now brought to a happy conclusion, he resolved to bestow what time was requisite for the putting that Place into a sufficient Posture of Defence in Travelling. But as his chief aim was to make the most exact Observation that possible could be, of the Politicks made use of in those Courts to maintain their Grandeur, but especially of the Naval Strength of *England* and *Holland*; so he was sufficiently convinced that this design would meet with great obstacles, if he appear'd with that Grandeur as was befitting so great a Monarch, which made him pitch upon this Expedient, to go *incognito*, in the quality of a Private Gentleman, belonging to the Embassy, which he intended to send for that purpose. Monsr. *La Fort*, General of the *Czar*'s Armies, Coll. of his first Regiment of Guards, Lord-High Admiral of his Navy, and *Waywode* of *Novogorod*, was by his Majesty nominated his first Ambassador, with whom was rejoyn'd *Fedor Alexiowitz Gallowin*, *Waywode* of *Siberia*, and *Precofet Bogdanowitz Wochnitzi*, Lord Chancellor of the Empire. The honour his *Czarish* Majesty did to the General *La Fort*, in appointing him his first Ambassador, and the other Dignities he had conferred upon him long before, are undeniable Testimonies as well of his affection he bare to his Person, as of the *Czar*'s generous inclinations, who without the least regard to his Religion, and his being a Foreigner, had exalted him from a private Captain to these Dignities, in reward of his Services.

The second Ambassador was a Person also of extraordinary Merit, and highly esteem'd for his great undertaking in the Management of Publick Affairs, of which he had given many proofs in the several Treaties with the Court of *China*, whither he had been sent twice in the Quality of Ambassador Extraordinary, from his *Czarish* Majesty; he being the same Person, who at last had brought the Treaty of Peace (which was for a considerable time at a stand) betwixt those two Empires, to a conclusion.

The third Ambassador having likewise signalized himself in divers Treaties with the *Ottoman* Court, was in great esteem with the *Czar* before the departure of this Embassy, his Majesty pitch'd upon the most plausible expedient that could be invented to rid his hands, during his absence, of such, as he thought were inclined to Novelties: For, as for several Years before, he had at his own Charge, sent divers of the young Nobility a travelling into *Europe*, to accomplish themselves in such Sciences and other Matters, as are in vogue there; so, he at this juncture made use of the same pretence, to send away most of such, as he thought not much devoted to his Interest, for a certain time, into Foreign Parts, obliging the rest, such as he most suspected, to follow the Embassy, under the same specious pretence of accomplishing themselves abroad, and adding to the Grandeur of the Embassy.

Thus all necessary precautions being taken for the Quiet of the Empire; during the *Czar*'s absence he committed the Management of the Government to three Persons only, *to wit*, to *Soff Kerilwitz Nariskin*, his Majesty's Uncle by the Mother's side; to *Procorofskoi*, the Lord High Treasurer, a Man well advanced in Years, and highly esteem'd for his Candor, and to *Boris Alexiowitz Gallishin*, his Majesty's Favorite and Chief Minister of State; he is Nephew to *Basili Gallishin*, who was banish'd into *Siberia*, and it was to his Care the *Czar* committed his only Son, being then about nine Years of Age, a Prince, who by his early Vertues gives great hopes that he will tread the foot-steps of his Father. General *Gourdon*, a *Scotchman* by birth, and of the *Roman Catholick* Religion, was ordered to Encamp with 20000 Men of the best Troops, near *Muscow*, to bridle such of the Malecontents as might shew the least inclination to a Revolt.

Things being thus settled at home, the said Embassy set out from *Muscow* (his Majesty being with them *incognito*) for *Plescow*, with a very magnificent Train, and taking their way through *Livonia*, *Courland*, and *Samogitia*, arrived at *Koningsberg*, the Capital City of the *Ducal Prussia*, where they were received with a great deal of Splendor, in behalf of the then Elector of *Brandenburg*. Here it was that the *Czar* being advertiz'd of the Election of the Elector of *Saxony* to the Crown of *Poland*, and the disorders that were likely

likely to ariſe about that Affair, betwixt him and the Prince *de Conti*, his Competitor, who was back'd by the Authority of the *Cardinal Primate*; he ſent expreſs Orders to his Ambaſſador then reſiding in *Poland*, to joyn with the Intereſt of the Elector, and to aſſure him, that he had already given his Orders for 60000 Men to advance towards *Smolensko*, to keep the *Lithuanians* in his Intereſt; which piece of Service proved of no ſmall advantage to the Elector's Affairs, for though the *Lithuanians* were for the moſt part for the Prince of *Conti*, yet upon his arrival at *Dantzick*, they durſt not ſtir in favour of him, for fear of the *Muſcovites*.

After a ſtay of ſome Days at *Coningsberg*, they purſued their Journey to *Berlin*, the Reſidence of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, where his *Czariſh* Majeſty was ſo highly ſatisfied with the honour done to his Perſon, and the Embaſſy, and with the Politeneſs of that Court, that he declared, as ſoon as his only Son ſhould be of an age fit for travelling, he ſhould ſpend a conſiderable time there.

The States General of the *United Provinces*, had no ſooner received intelligence that the Ambaſſadors had left *Berlin*, and were advancing towards their Frontiers, but they ſent thither certain Deputies, to receive and Complement them on their behalf, with expreſs Orders to defray their Charges, as ſoon as they were entered the States Dominions; and to give the moſt evident proofs they were able, of the honour they thought done them in ſeeing ſo great a Monarch their Friend and Allie among them, a poſitive Command was ſent to all the Governors of thoſe Places through which they were to paſs, to welcome their arrival by the diſcharge of their great Cannon. After they were advanced a pretty way into the *Dutch* Territories, the *Czar* left the Embaſſy, and continued his Journey to *Amſterdam*, where he arrived in the Company of 2 or 3 Gentlemen only, without being known by any body; and having ſtay'd only one Night in a Publick Houſe of Entertainment, he went the next Day to *Sardam*, a large Village about 2 Lgs from *Amſterdam*, famous for the multitude of Ship-wrights, that are conſtantly employ'd here in building of Ships. Here the *Czar* took his Lodgings at a Private Houſe at ſome diſtance from the Village, his only Diverſion being to ſee the Ship-Carpenters work. He alſo bought a ſmall Yacht of about 25 or 30 foot long, which he uſed to take great delight to manage himſelf, and to Cruiſe up and down the River call'd the *Y*, to take a full view of that prodigious number of all ſorts of Veſſels, which are always to be ſeen in the Road of *Amſterdam*. Scarce had his *Czariſh* Majeſty liv'd thus *incognito* to his ſingular Satisfaction, when a certain Handy-crafts Man, who had lived formerly in *Muſcow*, having accidently got ſight of him, could not refrain from declaring to his Companions, what he really was, which in an inſtant drew ſuch a number of Spectators thither, that the *Czar* for the future was obliged not to appear abroad ſo frequently, to his no ſmall regret, and without Queſtion made him leave *Amſterdam* ſooner than he intended before. For no ſooner had ſome *Muſcovite* Merchants, who had lived in the City of *Muſcow*, notice of it, but they waited upon him in a Body, inviting him to honour them with his Preſence at *Amſterdam*. It was upon their intreaties, that he came ſome Days before the arrival of the Embaſſy from *Sardam* to that City, where the Magiſtrates had, in the mean while, made all poſſible preparations for their reception; a good number of Cannons were planted on the Baſtions near the *Amſter-Gate*, through which they were to enter; a good number of the Young Gentlemen of the City were mounted on Horſe-back, and a much greater number went out in Coaches, to meet their Excellencies at the place where they were to land, being not above an *Engliſh* Mile from thence.

The 3 Ambaſſadors entred the City under the diſcharge of the great Cannon, in the firſt Coach, belonging to one of the Chief Magiſtrates; in the ſecond were the Deputies of the States; and in the following a good number of Gentlemen, among whom it was ſaid, was the *Czar* in Perſon, to be a Spectator of this ſolemn Entrance. The Cavalcade marching before the Coaches, conſiſting firſt in a Body of Horſe, who led the Van, theſe were followed by the Trumpets belonging to the City, and theſe by ſome *Tartars* arm'd with Bows and Arrows, and ſome *Muſcovites* on Horſe-back; after theſe came 20 Pages magnificently clad in Scarlet Coats trim'd with broad Silver Galoons, and went on foot next before the Coach in which were the Ambaſſadors, which was attended on each ſide by 12 Guards, being all very luſty and well made Fellows, dreſs'd in Caſſocks and Cloaks of Scarlet Cloth, trim'd with Silver Buttons, and Plates of the ſame Metal on both ſides, after the *Sclavonian* Faſhion; all which, together with their Silver Hatches, and large Scymetars, (the Handles of which were alſo of Maſſy Silver) made a very glorious appearance; they being follow'd by a good number of Footmen dreſs'd alſo in Scarlet trim'd with Silver Galoons.

The General *La Fort* was that Day dreſs'd after the *French* Mode, but the other two Ambaſſadors after the Faſhion of their own Country.

Thus they march'd in good order towards the Houſe call'd *The Lord's Lodgings*, fitted up at that time on purpoſe for the reception of theſe Ambaſſadors, and taking a circumference through ſome of the beſt Streets of the City, were attended by an incredible number of Spectators, who were crouded thither from all the circumjacent parts, to partake of the diverſion of this ſolemn Entrance, and the Fire-works that were prepared for their Entertainment. This Fire-work was made upon the River *Amſtel*, and fix'd upon flat-bottom'd Boats, in which was, among other things conſpicuous, a Triumphal Arch, of the *Corinthian* Order; but as this Fire-work could not be ſeen from the Ambaſſadors Lodgings, they were conducted thence at Night to another Houſe, from whence they had a full view of it, and were entertain'd there with a moſt ſplendid Collation, which his *Czariſh* Majeſty being pleaſed to honour with his Preſence, this was the firſt time that many there preſent had an opportunity of taking a full view of him. He is very tall, and well made, of a very good Aſpect, and tho' his Eyes, which are black and lively, ſhew ſomething of fierceneſs, eſpecially when he talks with ſomething of eagerneſs, yet is his whole behaviour full of Complaiſance and very engaging, being very affable in his Converſation, and always deſirous to be entertain'd with ſomething or other, worth his Obſervation.

The Fire-works prepared for his Diverſion having had the deſired effect, (tho' not without the loſs of ſome People, who thronging over a Bridge of the *Amſtel*, were unfortunately drowned, by the breaking of one of the Iron Rails, belonging to the ſaid Bridge.) The Deputies of the States came the next Day to ſhew him the Magazines of Naval Stores of *Amſterdam*. I happened not to be preſent at that time, but have it from very good Hands, that the Lords Deputies were ſurpriſed to hear him diſcourſe ſo pertinently of thoſe Matters, of which they ſuppoſed him to have but a very ſuperficial knowledge; and to ask with ſo much exactneſs concerning thoſe that were not as yet come perfectly to his knowledge.

A few days after his *Czariſh* Majeſty made a Progreſs to *Utrecht*, where he had an interview with his *Britannick* Majeſty, and this being the firſt betwixt theſe two great Princes, they received one another with ſuch mutual demonſtrations of reſpect and eſteem, as is ſcarce to be expreſs'd.

The Ambaſſadors continued near 2 Months at *Amſterdam*, for his *Czariſh* Majeſty, being reſolved that upon this occaſion they ſhould appear at the *Hague*, with all imaginable Splendor ſuitable to his Grandeur, abundance of time was taken in preparing their Equipage, augmenting their Train, and eſpecially in providing themſelves with three magnificent Coaches; which done, they ſet out for the *Hague*, where they were received with all the Honour due to their Characters, and ſome days before their Publick Audience, were follow'd *incognito* by his *Czariſh* Majeſty, who appear'd like a Cavalier, dreſs'd in a blue Coat, a light Wig, with a white Feather in his Hat; he went in the Coach of Burgermaſter *Witſen*, who being in peculiar eſteem with this great Prince, accompany'd him thither.

This happening in the Month of *September* 1697. when there was an incredible concourſe of Perſons of all Ranks at the *Hague*, by reaſon of the Treaty of Peace then on foot at *Reſwick*, this added no ſmall luſtre to this great Embaſſy, which was one of the moſt magnificent that ever appear'd in thoſe Parts.

General *La Fort*, the firſt Ambaſſador, was that Day clad in a *Muſcovite* Robe of Cloth of Gold, lin'd with the moſt precious Sables that ever were ſeen, his Veſt being all covered with Diamonds be-

fore, and having on his Bonnet a Bunch of Diamonds of an incredible value; he harangu'd their High and Mightinesses in the *Russian* Language, as did the two other Ambassadors (who were also magnificently Apparel'd) after him; but what is most worth taking notice of is, that his *Czarish* Majesty was placed in a Private Room looking into the Hall of Audience, from whence he was an Eye-witness, not only of the Reception of his Ambassadors, but also could with ease have a full view of all the Ambassadors of the Foreign Princes, sent to the Treaty of *Reswick*, who were present at the Audience of this Embassy. He return'd the next Day streight to *Amsterdam*, and was soon after follow'd by the Ambassadors, who had no other business at the *Hague*, than to renew the Alliance made betwixt their Master and the States, it being beyond all dispute, that the only aim of this so splendid an Embassy was, to shelter the *Czar*'s Journey under this specious pretence, and the design he had of being informed of what he thought most worthy his Private Observation in those Parts, through which they were to pass. Of this he gave a manifest proof; immediately after his return from the *Hague*, when he desired the Magistrates of *Amsterdam* to provide for himself, and some few of his Retinue a Private Lodging in the most remote part of the City near the Harbour, which they did accordingly, near the Store-house belonging to the *East-India* Company, from whence he could see all what pass'd in or out of *Amsterdam* on that side. Whilst he was there he pass'd his time chiefly in attaining to a perfect knowledge of all things relating to building of Ships, and the manner of Bombarding Maritime places, from the Sea-side; unto both which he attained in a very short time, being not only very inquisitive as to all these matters, but also industrious to lay his hand to work, which he would do with an incredible dexterity, he having been seen to handle the Hammer and Ax as well as some of the best Ship-Wrights; I my self have seen two pieces of his own Handy-work, *viz.* a small Frigat about 4 foot long, with all her Tackle, and a Wind-Mill.

Scarce were the Ambassadors come back from the *Hague*, but his Majesty received advice of a smart Engagement betwixt his Army near *Asoph*, under the Command of the *Knez Schein*, and the *Crim Tartars*. These last having found means to pass secretly through the Streights of *Caffa*, and being joyn'd by the *Tartars* of *Circassia*, especially those inhabiting near the River *Cubansky*, had taken a resolution to surprise the *Muscovites*, whom they knew to be divided into several Bodies, for the better conveniency of their Quarters, and covering the Work-men near and about *Asoph*.

They marched forward with long marches under the Command of *Sultan Galga*, yet not so secretly, but that General *Schein* having got intelligence of it, had time enough to draw his Troops together, and to expect them in his Camp.

The *Tartars* finding themselves much Superior in number, made no difficulty of attacking the *Muscovites* in their advantagious Post, who sustain'd the Attack without stiring from their Camp, till seeing their first fury spent, they attack'd them so briskly, that they put them to flight, with the loss of a considerable number of *Tartars*, that were left dead upon the spot, besides those drown'd in the River of *Kalgalnick*, which falls two Lgs above *Asoph*, into that of *Circassia*, which our Geographers place on the North side of the River *Don*, and 30 Lgs from *Asoph*.

The Ambassadors celebrated this Victory with a very splendid Feast, which his Majesty was pleased likewise to honour with his Presence.

Towards the end of *Autumn* he received the News of a second Victory obtained by his Forces near the River *Boristhenes*. The *Crim Tartars*, in conjunction with those of *Budziack* and *Okzakow* had laid Siege to the Castle of *Czikermean*, situate upon the before-said River, and having made themselves Masters of the Isle of *Tomàn*, which lies just opposite to it, were advanced to the Walls of the Place, which was in danger of being lost in a few Days; but the *Muscovites* being joyn'd by a good Body of *Cosacks*, so vigorously attack'd the *Tartars*, that they were forc'd to quit the Siege, and soon after were also beaten from the Island, which his *Czarish* Majesty ordered immediately to be strengthened by erecting a regular Fort upon it. By the same Express he received advice, that the Harbour we spoke of before, about 7 Lgs from *Asoph*, was brought to perfection, and that already above 10000 *Muscovites* had settled there, no other Nation being permitted to live in that Place, unto which the *Czar* gave the Name of *Petruchina Tuba*. It was not long after that his *Czarish* Majesty received an Express, who brought the agreeable News, that all the *Circassian Tartars* had submitted voluntarily under his Protection, and that the *Crim Tartars* inhabiting near the River *Miras*, had been subdued by his Forces, who were erecting a strong Fort, at the Mouth of the said River, to secure the Road thereabouts.

The *Czar* being now desirous to take a view also of *England*, before his return into *Muscovy*, his Majesty of *Great Britain* was no sooner advertised thereof, but he sent a Squadron of Light Frigates to conduct him thither; he went accompany'd only with 12 or 15 of his Domesticks, and was received by his *Britannick* Majesty with the greatest Marks of Esteem that could be express'd; but the *Czar*, who continued in his Resolution of remaining *incognito*, was obliged to refuse those publick honours his Majesty intended for him, chusing rather to take up his Quarters in a Private House, at some distance from *London*, near the River side, where he had the conveniency of pursuing without interruption, his main design of making observations concerning the manner of building their Ships.

Before he left *England*, he was entertain'd near *Portsmouth* with a Mock Engagement at Sea, betwixt two *English* Squadrons of Ships, to his exceeding great Satisfaction; I had forgot to tell you that something of that Nature was shew'd him before near *Amsterdam*, betwixt some Yachts divided into two Squadrons, and that he was very curious in enquiring after every thing relating to each particular of a Sea-engagement.

Being upon his departure out of that Kingdom, the King presented him with a very fine Yacht, carrying 30 Guns, which the *Czar* sent straight to *Archangel*, and he returned to *Amsterdam*, where, after a small stay, he prepared for his Journey into *Muscovy*; which some at that time attributed to a commotion of the *Strelitzes*; true it is, that some of this Mutinous Gang had raised some disturbances in the circumjacent places of *Muscow*; but, as they were soon dispersed by General *Gourdon*, and the Ring-leaders punish'd with death, this had no farther ill Consequence.

When the Ambassadors took leave of the Magistrates of *Amsterdam*, these declared their readiness to give the utmost publick demonstrations they were capable of, to a Prince who had honoured their City for six Months with his Presence, but the *Czar* desired them not to disturb his design, which was to depart privately for the Imperial Court at *Vienna*.

You know, Sir, with what Lustre this Embassy was received at this Court, and what infinite respect and honour was paid to this Prince by his Imperial Majesty, and the reason of his so sudden departure. You remember that *Pristaff Bogdanowitz Wolnitzin* was left there as the *Czar*'s Plenipotentiary to assist at the Conferences which were then on foot, about the Treaty of Peace with the *Turks*. He took his way through *Poland*, and after an Interview with that King at *Limberg*, return'd into *Muscovy*, where he was received with the general Joy and Satisfaction of his Subjects.

CHAP.

CHAP VII.

A Journal of an Embaſſy from Their Majeſties Iwan *and* Peter Alexiowitz, Czars *of* Muſcovy, *&c. over Land into* China, *through the Provinces of* Uſtingha, Siberia, Dauria *and the* Great Tartary *to* Peeking, *the* Metropolis *of* China, *by* Everard Isbrand, *their Ambaſſador, in the Years* 1693, 1694. *and* 1695. *Collected by* Adam Brand, *Secretary to the ſaid Embaſſy, and Tranſlated from the* High-Dutch *Original, Printed at* Hamburgh, 1698.

1693. THE Moſt Serene and Illuſtrious Princes, *Iwan* and *Peter Alexiowitz*, Emperors of *Muſcovy*, having reſolved to ſend an Embaſſy to the Great *Amologda Chan* (or *Chineſe* Emperor) they choſe *Everard Isbrand*, a Native of *Gluckſtad* in the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, to diſcharge ſo important a Truſt.

The Embaſſy ſets out from *Muſcow*. Accordingly he ſet out from *Muſcow* the 13th. of *March*, with a Retinue of 20 Perſons, and travel'd the 14th. to *Troitza*, above 60 *Engliſh* Miles from *Muſcow*, reſembling by its bigneſs and ſtrength rather a great Caſtle than a Monaſtery.

The 16th. we continued our Journey to *Peroſlaw*, a large City ſituate on a Lake 60 Miles from *Troitza*, and famous for the many Salt Pits thereabouts. Thence we travel'd forward the 17th. to the City of *Roſtoff*, the Capital of the Province of the ſame Name, ſeated upon a Lake, whence ariſes the River *Cotorius*, which diſcharges it ſelf into the River *Wolga*. This City is dignified with the Title of an Archbiſhoprick, who reſides here in the Caſtle which is of Wood after the *Muſcovite* Faſhion.

The 18th. we went on to *Jeroſlaw*, the Capital City of the Province, unto which it has given its Name; it is one of the largeſt Cities of all the Empire, and famous for its Traffick, eſpecially in *Ruſſia* Leather, which is dreſs'd here better than in any other part of *Muſcovy*. The Province is extreamly fertile, and was as well as the Province of *Roſtoff* appropriated as an Appennage to the uſe of the Younger Branches of the Imperial Family, who enjoyed it for a conſiderable time with the Title of Princes, till that noted Tyrant *Iwan Baſilowitz* diveſted them of it, and forced them to reſt ſatisfied with a certain yearly Allowance.

We ſtay'd here the 19th. for our Baggage, but ſet forward again the 20th. and came about Mid-night to the City of *Wologda*, ſeated upon a River which has given it its Name, 180 Miles from *Jeroſlaw*. All the Country through which we paſs'd from *Muſcow* to this Place, is ſo populous, that there ſcarce paſs'd a Day, but we ſaw 14 or 15 large Villages or Towns. The River *Wologda* runs from the W. to the N. till it joins its Waters with the River *Dwina*.

The 22d. the Weather being again turn'd to Froſt, we continued to make uſe of our Sledges, and came the 23d. to *Skuskajam*, where being furniſhed with freſh Horſes, we went forward after Dinner upon the River *Sucagna*, (the ſame upon which the Merchants of *Wologda* go to *Archangel*.)

The 24th. we changed again our Horſes at *Tetma*, and came the next Night to *Uſgorndiſtno*, but meeting here with freſh Horſes again continued our Journey all Night, and the following Day being the 26th. of *March*, to the Village of *Bobroſtskajam*; we went forward the ſame Night again, after a little Refreſhment, and arrived the 27th. being the firſt *Eaſter* Holy-day, in the City of *Uſtingha*, the Capital City of the Province of the ſame Name, ſeated upon the Bank of the River *Sucagna*, being a large and populous Place, its Trade conſiſts chiefly in Furs and Skins, eſpecially in thoſe of white Foxes.

The 29th. of *March* we came to *Lolgwitzgoth* upon the River *Witlzeyda*, which joyning its Current with the *Dwina*, the *Ruſſians* travel hence in ſix Days to *Archangel*; we travelled that Day 50 Miles through a vaſt Foreſt, which is counted by the Inhabitants to be 800 Miles in length, and is inhabited by a peculiar People called the *Sirenes*, different from the *Muſcovites* both in Language and Manners, but profeſs the *Greek* Religion. We participated in thoſe Places through which we paſs'd, of the Rejoycings which are made by the *Muſcovites* during the *Eaſter* Holy-days, when they preſent one another with potch'd and boil'd Eggs, and when they meet, ſalute, and ſay theſe words, *Chriſto wos Creſt*, i. e. *Chriſt is riſen*, whereat the other anſwering, *Wois teneros Chreſt*, i. e. *he is certainly riſen*; they kiſs one another, not excepting even the Ladies. Our Journey for ſome Days after proved very troubleſome, by reaſon of the many Rivers, eſpecially the *Siaſella*, the *Chatim*, and *Naſtim Reris*, which we were forced to paſs, the Ice being ſo weak, that our Sledges often fell into the laſt of theſe Rivers. 1693.

Having recovered our ſelves a little from our paſt Fatigues, we purſued our Journey to *Sligorod* upon the River *Kama*, where we arrived the 6th. of *April*. Here the *Czar* keeps a good Garriſon, to keep in awe the *Sirenes* and *Coſaques*. Of the laſt the then Governor of the Place *Iwan Mikielowitz Lopugin*, told us, how that in 1690. 300 of them had the boldneſs to ſurprize the Town by Night, killing all they could light on, till the Governor having taken the Alarm, they were chaſed thence, but under ſhelter of the darkneſs of the Night, eſcaped with a great part of the Booty.

Our Sledges being by this time rendred uſeleſs, we were obliged to ſtay here for the melting of the Ice till the 23. of *Apr.* when Embarking upon the River *Kama*, we had a Proſpect of ſeveral Mountains on both ſides, but very few Villages. The River *Kama* running with a rapid Current from the N. E. exonerates it ſelf on the left ſide of the City of *Caſan*, into the River *Wolga*, being encreaſed by the way by ſeveral leſſer Rivers, and among the reſt by the *Wiſetzca*, which joins with it about 25 Miles from *Solokamsko*. In bigneſs it is much the ſame with the River *Weſer* in *Germany*.

The 26th. we left the River *Kama*, ſteering our Courſe to the River *Uſolsko*, whence we had ſeven Miles to *Solokamsko*, but did not arrive there till the 27th. the Stream being againſt us. This City is built in a pleaſant Plain upon the ſaid River *Uſolsko*, for the conveniency of Travellers; its Inhabitants are partly *Ruſſians*, partly *Tartars*; their Traffick conſiſts in Cattel, but eſpecially in Horſes, which are very excellent hereabouts. This Country is full of Salt Pits.

The 29th. of *April* one of our Retinue, a *Muſcovite* by Birth, being got drunk with *Aqua Vitæ*, had the misfortune to be drowned, and the 2d. of *May* the Ambaſſador, with part of his Retinue were invited by one of the *Czar*'s Factors, named *Alexi Aſtaſſi Philatiff*, to his Country Houſe 20 Miles from *Solok*, whereabouts we ſaw above 20000 Men employed in making of Salt; and the Factor ſhew'd us two Veſſels belonging to himſelf of 400 Tuns each, and Man'd with 500 Slaves a piece, who relieving one another without intermiſſion, at the Oars, perform their Voyage to *Caſan* (whither they carry Salt) in a little time.

The 3d. and 4th. it beginning to freeze again, we were obliged to ſtay here 7 Days, and being by the melting of the Snow diſappointed in our deſign of going by Land to *Wergaturia*, the firſt place upon the Frontiers of *Siberia*, we made uſe of 8 Boats, which carried us as far as *Uskogorod*, but ſcarce were we

got

1693. got within ſight of the Place when the Wind turn'd ſo violently againſt us, that it forced us back down the River *Uſolsko* into the River *Kama*. From *Solokamsko* to *Wergaturia*, is accounted 50 *German* Lgs, but from *Solokamsko* to the ſmall River *Suſowa* (which we entred the 16th.) no more than 30 Miles, and 40 more thence to *Ulko*. Our Paſſage here was not without danger, by reaſon of the overflowing of the River, however we arrived ſafely the 19th. in a ſmall City called *Nieſna Suſowa*, and the 20th. came to another ſmall Town, the Inhabitants of which live chiefly by making of Salt. The Hills and Woods which are on both ſides of this River, afford a very agreeable Proſpect, and in the laſt you find great ſtore of the *Agaricus* Tree, whoſe ſpongeous Subſtance is hence carried to *Archangel*, and ſo further into other parts of *Europe*.

The 25th. we took up our Lodgings in one of the Villages, of which there are ſeveral on both ſides of this River, and whilſt we were refreſhing our ſelves here for ſome time, took the opportunity of enquiring into the Nature and Manners of the Inhabitants of thoſe Parts. They are known by the Name of *Wogultzoi*, and ſubject to the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*. They are all *Pagans*, in Stature not unlike the *Tartars*, but differ in Language both from them and the *Muſcovites*. As to their Faith, they told us, that they believed a Creator of the Univerſe, who reſided in Heaven, and unto whom they paid a great Veneration; but notwithſtanding this, they adore the Heavens, Sun, Moon, and Water, unto which they Sacrifice Horſes, Cows, and Calves, and expoſing their Skins ſtretch'd upon a high Pole, they worſhip them, and eat the Meat afterwards. They know not any thing of Baptiſm, but name their Children after ſome of the moſt ancient Perſons in the Village. Their Dead they interr with their beſt Acoutrements, it being their Opinion, that at the time of their Reſurrection (which they believe, but after a very ſimple manner) they ſhall appear in the ſame Garb they were buried in. They obſerve no Faſts, yet do they abſtain from Fowl, but eat the Eggs as a great Dainty.

The Wogultzoi &c.

If a young Man intends to Marry, all his Courtſhip conſiſts in making the Bargain with her Father, to get her as cheap as he can, ſometimes for 40, ſometimes for 50 *Rubles*, amounting to betwixt 20 and 30 Pounds *Sterling*. The Money being paid, the Bride is carried veil'd to the Bridegrooms Bed-chamber. After they have diverted themſelves the firſt Night, their Friends and Relations come the next Day to make merry with eating, drinking and dancing all the next following Night, and ſo, after having made ſome Preſents to the new married People, they part. Their Child-bearing Women have a peculiar way of retiring into the Woods, when the time of their Delivery approaches, where they ſtay for 2 Months after, their Husbands being forbidden, under pain of death, not to come there during that time, being perſuaded that there are certain Deities reſiding in thoſe Foreſts, who as they preſerve the Women during their ſtay here; ſo they would certainly puniſh with death, ſuch Husbands, as ſhould preſume to meddle with their Wives, whilſt they are under their Protection.

We happened to be preſent at the Burial of one of their Dogs, who having been a good Hunter, they bemoaned his death with moſt dreadful out-cries, and having ſpoken much in his Praiſe, they put him into a Grave dug for that purpoſe, with a piece of Wood inſtead of a Pillow, under his Head; beſides which they erected a Hut near his Grave, to ſerve as a Monument of their gratitude for the ſervice he had done them. We were credibly informed, that it is a very ancient Cuſtom among them, to reward the paſt ſervices of all their Dogs by an honourable Burial. For the reſt, their way of living is miſerable enough, for as they don't apply themſelves to Husbandry, they get their Livelihood by Hunting the Sables and Reen-Deer, the only Commodities this Country affords.

The 26th of *May* we proſecuted our Journey, leaving 2 ſmall Rivers call'd *Silva Reka*, and *Kime*, to the right of us, and the River *Seborena Reka* to the left.

The 28th. we paſs'd in ſight of *Ulko Meſowag*, and *Sallam Reka*, to the left of us.

The 29. we ſaw *Ulkoſerebrena Reka* on the ſame ſide, and the River *Doria Reka* to the left. We ſpent near 3 Weeks upon the River *Suſowa*, its Current, which was againſt us, being very rapid by reaſon of its many windings, beſides that we were frequently ſtopt by the Cataracts, or Water-falls. Coming to *Ulko*, we could not go further up the River, ſo that being forced to ſtay 9 Days, till our Land Carriages could be got ready, we ſet out the 10th. of *June* for *Neva*. 1693.

The 12th. we paſs'd through the Town of *Aſar*, ſituate upon a River of the ſame Name, and the next Day through a Town call'd *Romaſheva* upon the River *Reſh*. As the Grounds hereabouts are very fertile in Corn, and abound in People, we could not ride a Mile without meeting with a Village, where we were provided with every thing we wanted. Here we received Intelligence that the *Calmuck Tartars* had made an inroad into the next Province, which put the Inhabitants under no ſmall Conſternation here.

The 14th. we came to *Newagorod*, a ſmall, but pleaſant Town, ſituate upon the River *Neva*, which on this ſide is the Boundary of *Siberia*. The Fortifications of this Place are but in an indifferent condition, but the Country well Peopled and Cultivated. The Fields produce Roſes, Lilies of the Valley, and many ſorts of ſweet Herbs in great quantities. Our Baggage being arrived the 16th. and having received freſh Advice that the *Calmuck Tartars* having made themſelves Maſters of a certain Frontier Place, were advancing this way, we made what haſte we could to get on board our Veſſel, and after a ſtay of 7 Days at *Newagorod*, embark'd the 21ſt. of *June*, with a Convoy of 12 *Coſſacks* belonging to the Garriſon, ſteering our Courſe for *Tobolsko*. The River *Reſh* falls 5 Miles above *Newagorod* into another River, and is thence forward call'd *Niatzar*. The firſt Town we ſaw upon this River on the 22th. is call'd *Rudna*, and not far thence is another called *Nigniske*, both ſituate in a very fertile Country.

The 23d. we paſs'd by 3 very goodly Towns call'd *Jebitzko*, *Kerginskoi*, and *Suberara*; and the 24th. the Town of *Jalen*, near which this River joyns its Current with the River *Kira*. The ſame Evening we ſaw at ſome diſtance the Town of *Kouſna Hobod* and the 25th. at Mid-night came to the City of *Tumen*, being a large and well fortify'd Place, inhabited for the moſt part by *Tartars*, who are a liberal and well civilized ſort of People, by reaſon of their conſtant converſation with Strangers, by way of Traffick. The next Town we got ſight of, was call'd *Makowa*, ſeated upon the very Confluence of the Rivers *Paſhma Reka*, and the *Tura*, which waſhes the Walls of the City of *Wergaturia*, and the 20th. reach'd *Lutzka*, ſituate at the Confluence of the 2 Rivers *Tura* and *Tobol*.

The 29th. we paſs'd by *Pikda*, *Reka*, and *Turba Reſca*, leaving the 30th. the River *Taſda* to the left of us, arrived the 1ſt. *July*, in the City of *Tobolsko*, the Capital of all *Siberia*, ſituate 3000 Miles from *Muſcow*, not far from the River *Tobol*. It is ſeated upon a large Hill, the Suburbs are inhabited by *Tartars*, and the City by *Ruſſians*, near which the River *Toriſh*, mixes its Waters with the River *Tobol*. Their chief Traffick here conſiſts in Sables, Ermins, Fox-skins, and ſuch like. *Siberia* is full of large Rivers, but the *Oby* challenges the preference before the reſt, being in ſome places half a Lg, in other places a Lg broad, and abounding in Sturgeons, *Belluia*, or *White Fiſh* and others. It has many Iſlands, but are uninhabitable by reaſon of the thick *Woods*.

The Chief Cities of *Siberia*, are: *Wergaturia*, *Japahzeen*, *Tumen*, *Tobolsko*, *Narim*, *Tomskoy*, *Koſnezi*, *Kraſnojer*, *Ker*, *Jenokinsko*, *Ilim*, *Mongaſſy*, moſt of which are very large and populous Places. The *Tartarian* Natives bordering upon *Siberia*, are the *Calmuck* and *Mongul Tartars*, beſides, the *Tungoskoy*, *Bratzkoy*, *Oſtiacky*, and *Barrabinſy*, being certain *Tartarian* Hords, differing in their Languages, and under the Juriſdiction of their own Chieftains.

The Natives of *Siberia* are for the moſt part *Pagans*, but the Cities are fill'd with *Ruſſians*; it was *Ozana John Baſilowitz*, who brought the Kingdom of *Siberia* under the *Muſcovite* Juriſdiction; after the Conqueſt of the *Tartarian* Kingdoms of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*; ſince which time they pay a yearly Tribute of 200000 Rubles, *per Annum*, in Sables, Martins, Fox-skins, *&c.* They catch the Sables in Traps, not unlike our Mice-traps, tho' they have alſo another way of hunting of Sables, by the means of Sledges drawn by Dogs, of which more anon; the *Czar* has the 20th. of all the Sables that are catch'd. We were forced to ſtay for ſome time at *Tobolsko*, to make the neceſſary Preparations, of Proviſions, Forage, and other neceſſaries to be put on Board our Veſſels, enough to ſerve for 3 Months; from hence to *Jenokinsko*, being 600 Miles through a deſolate Country.

The

The 22d. *July*, we embark'd aboard our Veſſels, under a Convoy of 20 Muſqueteers, ſteering our Courſe towards *Jenokinsko*, upon the River *Irtiſh*.

The 24th. we paſs'd by the Town of *Dernjan*, near which the River *Dernjansko* falls into the *Irtiſh* on the right hand; The Inhabitants hereabouts are call'd *Oſtiaky*, of whom more anon.

On the 28th. *July*, we came to the Town of *Samurskojam*, where we ſtay'd till the 29th. in the Morning, when embarking again, we had ſcarce made 2 Miles upon the River *Irtiſh*, but we paſs'd into another leſſer one, which being a Branch of the River *Oby*, we were forced to be towed as againſt the Streams, till the 1ſt. *Aug.* when we entred that famous River, which riſes to the S. W. among the *Calmuck Tartars*, and exonerates it ſelf into the *Tartarian Sea*; it is very boiſterous, by reaſon of the many Rocks, which makes its paſſage alſo very dangerous, they Travel by the way of the Rivers *Oby*, and *Ketto* to *Jenokinsko*.

The 6th. of *Aug.* we came to the City of *Surgut*, there being a Garriſon of *Muſcovites*, we had a new Convoy of 1600 Men alotted us as far as *Narim*. Here abouts you ſee nothing but a deſolate Country, the Inhabitants of which are Miſerable Wretches, who ſpend their Days in Sable hunting. They either ſhoot them with Arrows, or elſe they make Fire under the Trees, where they know the Sables are, ſo, that being ſuffocated by the Smoak, they die, and are catch'd. The Ermins, they catch in Traps, and Foxes with Dogs.

We re-imbark'd the 9th. and the 13th. ſaw the River *Wache* to the left of us, on the 19th. the River *Tim*, and arrived the 24th. at *Narim*, a City ſeated on the left ſide of us, upon the River *Oby*. From *Tobolsko* to *Narim*, they don't make uſe of Horſes for their Carriage in the Winter time; but inſtead of them, they put 3 or 4 Dogs before a Sledge, and manage them as we do our Horſes. When they go abroad a hunting, they put their Proviſions and Tackle, ſuch as Bows, Arrows, Darts, *&c.* in theſe Sledges, and ſo go to their Rendevouz, which being ſometimes 14 or 15 days Journey off, they don't return in three Months. The *Oſtiaky* make uſe of theſe Sledges drawn by Dogs, when they go abroad a Fiſhing. Being provided here with new Barge-men, and a Convoy of 24 *Coſacks* to Conduct us to *Jenokinsko*, we re-imbark'd the 25th. *Aug.* upon the River *Oby*, but left it the 29th. when we entred the River *Ketto*; where having the Current againſt us, we ſpent above a month, before we could reach *Mokuskoy*, whence we continued our Journey by Land to *Jenokinsko*. On both ſides of the River *Ketto*, are abundance of *Cedar*-Trees.

The 1ſt. *Sept.* we came to a ſmall Town call'd *Kerskoy*.

The 16th. it having frozen very hard, we were put under no ſmall Conſternation, for fear of periſhing in a deſolate Country, deſtitute of all manner of Subſiſtence, if it had continued, but a very welcome Thaw having ſoon freed us of this Danger, a favourable Wind carried us againſt the 28th. as far as a Monaſtery, ſeated upon the very Banks of the River, where having repoſed our ſelves for ſome few days, we kept a day of Thankſgiving.

2d. *Octo.* We ſet ſail again, the ſame Evening, and paſs'd by a ſmall Village; thereabouts we ſaw abundance of Red and Black Curran-Trees, which made us believe that the grounds hereabouts were none of the worſt.

The 7th. *Octo.* we at laſt got ſafe to the ſmall City of *Mokuskoy*, where we met with a cool Draught of good Beer. Here we alſo interr'd the Body of one of our fellow Travellers, who dyed ſome days before, being a *German* born at *Goldingen* in *Sileſia*.

After we had refreſh'd our ſelves, after our paſt Fatigues, we ſet out from hence, 10th. *Octo.* in order to purſue our Journey by Land; For 2 Days and Nights together, we ſaw nothing but moſt dreadful Foreſts, and the 12th. came to *Jenokinsko*, where we made our publick Entrance with a great deal of Magnificence.

This City, which is ſeated upon the River *Jenska*, a River very convenient, both for Navigation, and the vaſt plenty of Fiſh it affords. Betwixt this City and *Tobosko*, the *Oſtiaky* have their Habitations. Theſe People are very mean of Stature, and deformed in their Features; beſides, that both Sexes are ſubject to Diſtempers of the Eyes, which is chiefly Attributed to their want of bread, inſtead of which they eat dry'd Fiſh, wherewith the River *Oby* furniſhes them in vaſt Quantities, they ſold us abundance of them, whilſt we were yet upon that River, but refuſed our Money, begging to give them inlieu of it ſome Salt, Bread and Tobacco, which we did. Walking one Day a long the Banks of the River *Ketto*, we ſpy'd ſome of their Huts, and among the reſt, one ſomewhat bigger than the reſt, which raiſed my Curioſity to go and take a view of it, having ſoon got leave of the Owner, by means of a preſent of Bread and Salt, I entred without any further Ceremony, and found 3 Women lying upon the Ground, who at the ſight of me aroſe, and by their Geſtures ſufficiently teſtify'd their Diſpleaſure, but as I had ſecured the Owners good Will, I went forward, and took a view all over the Hut; I was afterwards told that theſe were the Wives of certain of their Chiefs or Princes, but their Equipage appear'd little ſuitable to their Quality, there being nothing worth mentioning in the Hut, except their *Sheitan* or Domeſtick Idol; which was of Wood, about a yard long, of a moſt dreadful aſpect; for its head being covered with a Tin or Iron Platte, appear'd as black as a Chimney ſtock, occaſioned by the Incenſes they offer to it, beſides, that its Garment was nothing elſe but a heap of Woollen Rags patch'd together, of all ſorts of Colours. They are very heavy and lazy Fellows, which we found by our Experience, whilſt we were upon the River *Sergutt*, which is the reaſon they never go abroad a hunting, unleſs forced thereunto by an abſolute neceſſity, and that they change their Habitations ſometimes 14 or 15 times a year, to put themſelves out of the reach of Travellors, who coming that way and oblige them to work at the Oar againſt their will.

The Ambaſſador being in good humour, ordered one of his Servants to bring forth a wooden Drummer, which being moved by Clock-work within, beat the Drum, and made ſome other motions. The *Oſtiaky*, were at firſt ſight ſo ſtartled at it, that they run away, but having recollected themſelves, turn'd back, and having taken a full view of it, proſtrated themſelves before this Wooden Drummer, in the ſame manner as they do before their *Sheitan*. A wooden Bear was alſo brought in made after the ſame Faſhion, and, beating the Drum with his Forepaws, they pay'd him the ſame Worſhip, but were moſt taken with the Drummer, which they beg'd very ſubmiſſively of the Ambaſſador, offering its weight in Mony; But the Ambaſſador did not think fit to beſtow it upon them, for fear of encouraging their Idolatry.

They have a peculiar way of Devotion; for inſtead of ſaying their Prayers, they Whiſtle, clapping their Hands together, and beating their Heads againſt the Ground, nay, proſtrating themſelves before the Idols, they make ſeveral very ridiculous Motions with their Feet. We were aſſur'd, that at certain times they meet in their Huts, where they begin to Whiſtle, and make moſt horrid outcrys by intervals, till a certain Spectre appearing, foretels them the account of future things, which done, they Worſhip the Spectre, and look upon its Predictions as infallible. They alſo pay a certain Veneration to the Bear-skin, and ſwear by it, but never except upon ſome ſolemn occaſion, curſing and ſwearing being a Vice they abhor above all things, as being of Opinion, that he who ſwears either falſly or fooliſhly ſhall not proſper all that Year. Where-ever they make any Entertainment, they ſet a ſhare of the beſt diſh before the *Sheitan*, which if they ſhould not do they believe, that the Victuals they eat, would turn to Worms in their Bowels; and if they ſhould take it away again, they believe they ſhould be puniſh'd with Lameneſs.

Their Cloathings are made of the Skins of Beaſts, with the Fur on the outſide; but in the Summer they wear only the Skins of Fiſhes. Their Huts are made of the Barks of Trees. We alſo made this farther Obſervation, That ſome have their Idols of Wood, ſome of Lead, and others of Braſs, and ſome dreſs them in Sables, others only in Rags, according to their Abilities. For the reſt, theſe *Oſtiaky* are mightily addicted to Tobacco; which they take after a peculiar manner: For having fill'd their Mouth with Water, they ſuck in the Tobacco ſmoak very greedily, and ſo ſwallow it with the Water; which is the reaſon, that at the taking of the firſt Pipe, they commonly fall down drunk, but ſoon after recover. They always take it ſtanding.

After

After a ſtay of 10 Weeks in the City of *Jenokinko* or *Jenoſſay*, we ſet forward again on our Journey.

The 21ſt. *Dec.* taking our way towards *Jokutskoy*, upon the River *Jenoka*, but afterwards leaving the ſame to the right, paſs'd with our Sledges along the River *Tungusko Reka*, or *Tonguſi*, the Boundaries of the *Tongueſes* on this ſide. After having paſs'd ſeveral Villages on both ſides of this River, we lodg'd the 30th. of *December* in the Village of *Buhutſha*, where we reſted our ſelves 24 hours, beyond it being the Great Deſart, where in 8 or 10 days Travel, you meet with not a Houſe fit for Entertainment.

The 1ſt. of *Jan.* 1693. we entred the ſaid Deſart, which proved exceſſive troubleſome to us, by reaſon of the great Foreſt, which ſpoil'd our Victuals and Drink (which was no more than fair Water) beſides, that we met with whole Mountains of Ice upon the River, through which we were forced to cut our way with Axes; However we had the good Fortune to paſs it.

And arrived the 8th. of *Jan.* at the Village of *Kaſma*, where being obliged to ſtay 13 days for freſh Horſes, we took this Opportunity, to take a view of the Habitations of the *Tongueſes*; Theſe were formerly reputed a Warlike Nation, govern'd by their own Princes, and inhabiting a very large Country, but having ſince been forced to ſubmit to the *Czar* of *Moſcovy*, they pay an Annual Tribute to him. They are, generally ſpeaking, well proportion'd and ſtrong limb'd, their Garments being nothing elſe but the skins of Beaſts, with the Furs on the outſide of divers Colours, Men and Women having not the leaſt diſtinction in their Cloaths. They have one thing peculiar to themſelves, which is, to have their Cheeks ſtitch'd (whilſt they are yet very young) with black Thread, through and through in divers Figures, ſome like Croſſes, others ſquare, or which way they like beſt, which they look upon as a Badge of Honour and Antiquity, tranſmitted to them by their Anceſtors, and retain them till their dying Day.

Their Huts are made either of the skins of Reen deer, or ſome other wild Beaſts, or of the Barks of Trees; in which miſerable Cabans they defend themſelves without any great inconveniency againſt the extremity of the Climate, being inured to cold from the firſt of their Infancy, for no ſooner are they born, but are laid in cold Water in the Summer, and in the Snow in the Winter. They are divided into three kinds or *Hords*; The firſt being call'd *Kumy Tungueſis*, who make uſe of Horſes; the ſecond *Aleany*, whoſe livelihood is hunting; the third *Sobalszy*, who have ſcarce the appearance of Men.

Their Idols are all of Wood; every one having his Domeſtick God, or Patron, one being look'd upon as the Manager of hunting, another for the catching of Sables, and another for Fiſhing, unto whom they direct their Devotions accordingly; but if theſe Idols happen to deceive them in their Expectation, they make nothing of throwing them out of Doors, till they have good ſucceſs, when they are received again, and have an offering made them of what they have catch'd. In all places, where 5 or 6 *Tongueſe* Families live together (which however is but ſeldom) they maintain by joint Conſent a certain *Shaman* or Prieſt. At their meetings, this Prieſt makes his Appearance in a habit adorn'd with the Figures of Lyons, Bears, Serpents, Adders, and ſuch like, which being made of Iron, weigh ſometimes 200 weight, whilſt he beats the Drum in a moſt doleful manner, the ſtanders by make moſt Lamentable out-crys, pretending that they ſee Apparitions under the ſhape of Ravens, and ſome other Birds, the Prieſt falling in the mean while into a Trance, is Reverenced by them as a Saint. Notwithſtanding their mean, wretched way of living, they will have ſeveral Wives, the better ſort having ſometimes 10 or 15 at a time; theſe they buy from their Parents for 10 or 15. Reen deer a piece. He that is to take a ſolemn Oath among them, is obliged to ſuck the Blood of a Dog wounded for that purpoſe with a Knife in his Fore-leg, till he dies. They neither bury nor burn their dead Corps, but hang them on Trees, where they putrifie, and Waſte at laſt. The worſt Curſe they uſe among themſelves is, to wiſh them to be forced to live among the *Ruſſians*, to till the Ground, and ſuch like.

We ſet out again from the Village of *Kaſma*, the 24th. of *Jan.* continuing our Journey for ſome time upon the River *Tonguſi*, but leaving it to the right, we paſs'd to the ſmall River *Ilim*; but theſe Rivers are well inhabited on both ſides, near the Banks.

We arrived the 25th. in the ſmall City of *Ilimskoy*, upon this River *Ilim*, being ſeated in the midſt of very high Mountains.

The 27th. we began to enter a great Foreſt, which by reaſon of the badneſs of the ways, employ'd us 3 days and nights before we could paſs it; when coming to the River of *Angara*, we paſs'd in our way by divers other Rivers of leſs note, and the 2 Iſles of *Balagansko*, and *Kamenko*, which are well peopled. It is in thoſe parts the *Boatskoy*, deſcended from the Race of the *Mongul Tartars*, have their Habitations, but are now Tributaries to the *Muſcovites*. The Country 'twixt *Jenokinsko* or *Jenoſſay*, and *Jeknitskoy* produces great Quantities of Martins and Foxes, but about *Jenoſſay* are the beſt black Foxes, the skins of which are ſold from 20 to 30 *Rubles* a piece.

We arrived the 11th. of *Feb.* in the City of *Irkutskoy*, ſeated upon the River *Angara*, where being obliged to ſtay a whole Month, we received abundance of Civilities from the Governor *Knez Jnan Petrowitz Gargaran*, and his two Sons; Here I met with a Saint of the *Mongul Tartars*, who uſed to mutter out very long Prayers, holding all the while in his Hands a long ſtring with red Coral Beads, which he told without Intermiſſion.

The Ambaſſador having the 15th. of *Feb.* diſpatch'd a Meſſenger to the City of *Naun*, on the Frontiers of *China*, to notifie our Arrival into thoſe parts, we left the City of *Irkutskoy*, the 9th. of *March*, and having ſpent the following Night in making good Cheer, with the chiefeſt of the City in an Adjacent Village, we ſet forward on our Journey the next Morning, and came the 10th. in ſight of the Lake of *Baikala*, unto which the River *Angara* owes its riſe, which was then from the City of *Irkuskoy* as far as the entrance into the Lake, quite free from Ice, and had been ſo, as they told us, all the Winter long. To it be 30 Miles from hence to the Lake, which is the utmoſt boundary of the Kingdom of *Siberia*, and is accounted four days Journey in length, but we paſs'd its breadth at this Seaſon, with Sledges in 6 hours, which is not ſo eaſily perform'd in the Summer, when the changeableneſs of the Winds renders its paſſage both tedious and dangerous.

We dined the 11th. upon the ſaid Lake, and in the Evening ſaw 6 Huts belonging to the *Brutskoy*; We found near them a dead Sheep and Goat, fix'd upon a Tree with their Heads upwards; being intended for Sacrifices made to the Heavens. Upon which occaſion I made what enquiry I could concerning their Religion, but could not get any account of it, that was ſatisfactory, except that once a year they uſed to Sacrifice in this manner, a Sheep and Goat to the Creator of the Heavens, and that they adore the Sun. They are very rich in Cattel, but eſpecially in Camels, for the Conveniency of thoſe that Travel that way to *China*. We took up our Lodgings the ſame Evening in a Convent on the other ſide of the Lake, upon the Frontiers of the Province of *Dauri*, a very large and Fertile Country.

The 12th. in the Morning we paſs'd in ſight of *Kabunia*, and *Belsko Sainko*, both ſmall Frontier Towns, pretty well fortified, to hinder the Incurſions of the *Mongul Tartars*.

The 19th. coming within ſight of *Udinskoy*, where we were received for a Mile out of Town, by the Commanding Officer there; this place, though it has not been inhabited above 6 Years, being now accounted the Chief Bulwark of the Province of *Dauria*, by reaſon eſpecially of its Caſtle, which being ſeated upon a Hill, and well fortified after the *Ruſſian* manner, has at ſeveral times repulſed the *Mongul Tartars*, who aſſaulted it. We were obliged to ſtay here 3 Weeks, to provide our ſelves with Camels and Horſes, the firſt of which we bought from 10 to 15, and the laſt at the rate of 4, 5, and 6 *Rubles* a piece; we bought alſo good ſtore of Beef, being now to Travel through the greateſt Deſart, which leads into the Country of the *Mongul Tartars*.

Accordingly we entred this Deſart the 6th. of *April*, our Caravan conſiſting of 250 Men, ſome hundreds of Camels and Horſes, and 400 Waggons, the Camels carrying about 600, and the Horſes 250 weight a piece. As the *Mongul Tartars* are frequently a broad in ſtrong Parties, we were forced to be conſtantly upon our guard, encloſing our Caravan every Night in a Circle, and placing Centinels at a convenient diſtance, to give timely the Alarum to the reſt, if occaſion required. This precaution having put them beyond a probability of doing us any miſchief, they found out another

1694. ther way to be revenged of us, by burning that ſmall Quantitiy of dry Winter graſs that was left, which for the ſpace of 3 Weeks, which we ſpent in paſſing through this Deſart, we were in great want of; ſo that we ſaw great numbers of our Cattle drop for want of fother; which was very agreeable to the *Tongueſes* (certain Hordsof which inhabit here-abouts) who look upon Horſe-fleſh as the beſt dainty in the World. Theſe *Tongueſes* are of the ſame Religion with the *Bratskoy*, they burn with the dead Corps of their Friends all their beſt moveables, and if they happen to become quite decrepit before they die, they burn them upon a high Mountain, and impale their beſt Horſe near it.

The 24th. and 25th. of *April*, we paſs'd in ſight (to the left of us) of the Lake of *Jerawena*, being 20 miles long, and 15 broad; which furniſhed us with abundance of very good Fiſh.

The 26, we came to a place call'd *Jerawena*, there we recruited our ſelves with as many Horſes as we could purchaſe for Money. The Deſarts about *Jerawena*, afford the beſt Sables, of which we bought ſome from 8 and 10, to 20, 30, and 40 *Rubles* a pair. The *Coſacks* who inhabit at *Jerawena*, make uſe of Scates, when they go out a hunting, and ſometimes don't return in 3 or 4 Months.

On the 28th. of *April*, we proſecuted our Journey through the Deſart, which had here and there ſome Woods.

The 29th. we croſs'd the River *Uda* on Horſe-back, which ariſing from a great Lake, is not above 3 fathoms broad in this place. As we loſt every Day more and more Horſes for want of fother, which had been burnt by the *Mongul Tartars*, the Ambaſſador ſent out 10 arm'd Men, in queſt of Horſes, who had the good Fortune to get a good number of freſh Horſes, which they brought to us.

The 3d. of *May*, near the Lake call'd *Schack's Oſer*, and is 4 Miles long and 2 broad, we alſo by great good Fortune met with ſome fother in this place, which made us tarry here till the 5th. when leaving the Lake to the left, we went on to another Lake, in ſight of which we paſs'd the 6th in the Morning, and the ſame Day before Night, reach'd the end of this Troubleſome Deſart, in which we had ſpent near a Month.

The firſt place we came to is call'd *Plotbus*, near a ſmall River, named *Skieta*, it contains not above 6 Families, and theſe having not been ſettled there, but within theſe few years.

From *Plotbus* we continued our Journey by Water, upon floats of Wood towards *Nertzinskoy*. About a Mile from *Plotbus*, the River *Skieta* falls into the River *Ingedia*, as the River *Oxkou* does not far from thence, and is afterwards known by the Name of *Schileka*, the Rivers *Nertza* and *Argun* afterwards joining their Waters with the ſame River, out of the laſt of which ariſes the famous River *Tamour*, which exonerates it ſelf into the Ocean.

We came at laſt the 20th. of *May*, to the City of *Nertzinskoy*, ſeated upon the River *Nertza*, where there is a Colony of 6000 *Tongueſes* ſettled, under the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*'s Juriſdiction, who have fortified this place againſt the *Mongul Tartars*. The Country hereabouts has abundance of *Lucerns* and *Sables*, which being highly valued in *China*, the *Coſacks* hereabouts are very rich, as being exempted from paying any Cuſtoms there. We ſtay'd here 2 whole Months, which we ſpent in providing with Carriages and Oxen, for our paſſage through the Deſart, trading to the Frontiers of *China*; beſides, that we had a Convoy of 50 *Coſacks* allotted us, who were to Conduct us into *China*, and come back with us as far as *Nertzinskoy*.

The 18th. of *July*, when we were juſt ready to leave this City; Letters were brought to the Ambaſſador from the Meſſenger, whom, as we told you, he had diſpatch'd from *Irkuskoy*, to the City of *Naun*, on the Frontiers of *China*, intimating, that he had not been permitted to go himſelf to *Peking*, but that the Letters he brought along with him, being ſent thither, a certain Perſon of Quality was come to *Naun* with a numerous Attendance to expect the Ambaſſadors arrival. That he had been ask'd many Queſtions by the ſaid *Chineſe* Lord, which he had anſwered as he thought it moſt Convenient.

We did not ſet out from *Nertzinskoy* till the 18th of *July* in the Afternoon, and part of our Caravan reach'd the ſame Night the River *Schileka*, where we ferried over; but as this was the general Rendevouz appointed for our meeting, we ſtay'd here 3 Days for the coming up of the reſt belonging to the Caravan, which conſiſted in all of above 400 Men. Every one having his ſhare of Biskuit, Beef and Veniſon allotted him, we left the before ſaid River *Schileka*, and Travell'd for 3 days together through a vaſt, boggy Foreſt, and 3 days more through a Deſart, and then 2 days more through another Foreſt, which brought us to the River *Samur*, which falls into the *Schileka*. We were quartered in the Night time in Tents, of which we had brought 50 along with us. Theſe ways are only paſſable for Camels, and Horſes, the Roads being very bad and boggy, till you come to the River *Argun*. 1694.

We arrived in the City of the ſame name, the 3d. of *Octo.* where we ſtaid till the 7th. to give time to the whole Caravan to paſs that River, which is at preſent famous, for being the common boundary betwixt the 2 Empires of *China* and *Muſcovy* on that ſide, as the City of *Argun* is the utmoſt Frontier place of the Province of *Dauri* as far as it is under the *Muſcovite* Juriſdiction, 'tis true, that not many years ago the Territories of the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* extended as far as the River *Yamour*, where the *Muſcovites* had erected the Fortreſs of *Albazin*, which occaſioning a War betwixt theſe 2 Nations, the *Czars* of *Muſcovy* conſidering the diſadvantage they had lay under, of making War at ſo great a diſtance, ſent *Tedor Alexiowitz* into *China*, who entred into a Treaty with them 1689. by vertue of which all the Country betwixt the Rivers of *Argun* and *Yamour*, together with the Fort of *Albazin*, was granted to the *Chineſes*.

As the *Mongul Tartars* are always roving abroad for booty, we were forced to keep a watchful Eye, where-ever we went, but as they are rank Cowards ſtood not much in fear of them. It was thought fit by the Ambaſſador to diſpatch from hence ſome *Coſacks* to the City of *Naun* upon the Frontiers of *China*, to deſire the *Chineſe* Governor to furniſh us with ſome Carriages at a place appointed for that purpoſe. The River *Denbu*, which falls into the *Argun*, is 4 days Journey at leaſt from the River *Argun*.

The 15th. of *Auguſt*, we came to the large River of *Naun*, the Banks of which being overflown by the late Rains, we could not paſs at that time with our Camels, whereas otherwiſe it is fordable in many places; however we made ſhift to tranſport our Baggage and Merchandices over floating Bridges, made of the Hides of Oxen and ſome Timber; the Horſes after they were unladen ſwiming acroſs the River.

The 23d. of *Auguſt* we came to the ſmall River *Keirar*, which exonerates its ſelf into the River *Argun* we croſs'd the ſaid River the next Day on Horſe-back, and the 26th. the *Saduma*, a ſmall but Navigable River, which falls likewiſe into the River *Argun*.

The 27th. we paſs'd in ſight of the River *Gnar*, which diſcharges it ſelf into the River *Saduma*.

The 28th. we met a *Ruſſian Caravan* conſiſting of 150 Merchants, and 300 Camels in their return from *China* into *Muſcovy*; they preſented ſome *Thee* to us, which was very welcome after we had drunk nothing but Water for ſo long a time. After we had ſtay'd together 2 Days, and entertain'd one another with what we had, we travel'd 2 Days through very fertile and pleaſant Hills and Valleys, whereabouts the River *Jall* has its Source, and by degrees becomes a large Navigable River.

On the 31ſt. of *Aug.* our Meſſenger which had been ſent from *Irkuskoy* to *Naun*, reutrn'd and brought advice, that a *Chineſe Adogeda*, (or Conductor of Ambaſſadors) was arriv'd at *Naun*, and the 1ſt. of *September* another Meſſenger came from the ſaid *Adogeda*, to Complement the Ambaſſador upon his happy arrival, and brought with him ſome *Chineſe* Carriages, and a Preſent of 10 Sheep, and ſome Rice and Oatmeal. Being ſent back immediately, we continued our Journey the 2d. when we reach'd the firſt Out-guard of the *Chineſes* conſiſting of 12 Perſons. The 3d. we came to the ſecond, and the 4th to the third; theſe Scouts being placed at a certain diſtance upon the Hills, give notice by certain Signals from Place to Place, as often as they ſee any Strangers approach that way. We travel'd for ſeveral Days through ſeveral pleaſant Woods, where we ſaw abundance of Oaks, not very high, but ſpreading their Branches in a large circumference. In the Plains we ſaw Filberd Trees, not ſo high nor thick as thoſe of *Europe*, but bore a prodigious quantity of Nuts, of a much larger ſize.

1694. The first Place we came to, was upon the utmost Confines of the Province of *Dauri*, inhabited by the *Tanguts Chinois*, who are *Pagans*, subject to the *Chineses*. The *Muscovites*, as we told you having all that part of the Province of *Dauri* which lies beyond the *Argun* deliver'd up to them, by the Treaty of 1689. They are very industrious here in cultivating the Ground, which produces Oats, Barley, and Tobacco. After we had spent 3 Days more in traveling through the Desart, we came to the Village of *Satteyat*, where being met by the *Chinese Adogeda*, who had with him an Attendance of 50 Persons, he invited us to his Tent the same Evening, where he treated us with Milk-*Thee*, and some Preserves and Sweet-Meats.

The 13th. the said *Adogeda* having invited the Ambassador with all his Retinue to Dinner, he met him at some distance from his Tent, and after a mutual Salute, conducted him thither. The Dinner was served up upon a small Table, without a Table-Cloath; the Ambassador and *Adogeda* having each his own Dish, as had every one of the rest; they were fill'd with Soop and Mutton; the second Course was Pottage with a kind of Pudding in it, long and thick, shew'd like a Gut, there being no Knives or Forks to be seen, we were hardly put to it how to manage it, till we saw the *Adogeda* and some of the rest take 2 streight Sticks of Ebony Wood or Ivory tip'd with Gold and Silver at the end, and of about a quarter of a Yard long, wherewith they took it out of the Dishes, and having bit a good Mouthfull, let it drop into the Dishes again. After Dinner 2 Silver Cups full of Brandy were brought in, one for the *Adogeda*, the other for the Ambassador, which they both took off, and the rest being also presented with Porcelain Cups fill'd with the same Liquor, they were forced to take them off to the bottom, after which we had a Dish of Sweet-meats served in Wodden Dishes.

The 14th. of *Sept.* the *Adogeda* being invited to the Ambassador's Quarters, we perceived plainly that our way of Entertainment seem'd to them as strange as theirs had done to us the Day before; after Dinner the *Adogeda* being desired by the Ambassador to provide us with the necessary Carriages and Passports, he perform'd it accordingly, giving the Ambassador for his daily Allowance 2 Sheep for his own Person, for each of his Secretaries and other Gentlemen one Sheep a-piece; for the rest of the Attendance some 2, some 3, and some 4 to a Sheep, besides *Thee* and other necessaries; so that we wanted nothing but Bread, which is a scarce Commodity as well in *China* as in some other parts of *Asia*.

The Inhabitants hereabouts, as also of the City of *Nuun* 5 Miles distant thence, are *Pagans*, and worship the Devil in the Night-time with most dreadful Outcries. Their Houses are both convenient and neat, and their Livelihood consists most in planting of Tobacco.

On the 16th. the Ambassador sent to the *Adogeda* a Present of 40 Sables, 50 Ermins, 2 fine Looking-Glasses, with some other things, but it was a great while before he could be persuaded to accept of them, it being forbidden to the *Chineses* to accept of any Presents, except they make a double return.

The 21st. the *Adogeda* sent 6 Tables with Sweet-meats, and some Bottles of *Aqua Vitæ* for a Present to the Ambassador, and invited him to Dinner against the 23d. as we did him against the 24th. Our Carriages being got ready by the 29th. we took up the 2 following Nights our Lodgings near 2 Villages where we were well accommodated. For it ought to be mentioned to the honour of the *Chineses*, that they are very nice and obliging in treating of Strangers; For all the while we pass'd through the Desarts, we were never destitute of commodious Lodgings, to every place where our Stage was appointed at Night, being brought a sufficient number of Huts, with Utensils and Servants thereunto belonging, to provide every thing that was necessary before-hand. We were sure to have fresh Horses every other Day, and we were constantly guarded all the Night-time by Persons who were provided with Bells to give the alarm if occasion should require.

Our Discourse with the *Adogeda* and his Retinue often run upon Politicks, which commonly ended with the praise of *China*, enough to stun our Ears.

The chief trouble we had was the want of Water, which was commonly muddy in the Desarts, and if we happend to light of any that was good, we provided our selves with as much as our Leather Bottles would hold.

We frequently diverted our selves with Hunting, for which I was in danger of having paid dearly; for being gone out one Morning with a particular Friend of mine, to shoot some Sheep, we miss'd our *Caravan*, and roved about the Desart 2 Days and Nights, till coming within sight of some of the *Tartarian* Huts, we durst not however approach them for fear of worse treatment, but they having espy'd us, would conduct us to their Cabins, where beyond all our hopes, they entertain'd us very obligingly, and having found means to give them to understand that we belonged to the Ambassador that was coming that way, they sent a Messenger to give him notice of our being there, and that we stay'd for his coming, which we did accordingly, till the *Caravan* pass'd by that way. 1694.

The 15th. of *Octob.* we arrived near the River *Casumur*, which falls into the River *Nuun*; where having refresh'd our selves for 24 hours, we continued our Journey, and the 19th. pass'd in sight of the Ruins of several goodly Cities, the Remnants being strange Monuments, with several Figures very different from what is to be seen of that kind in *Europe*. They told us, that those places were destroy'd by *Alexander the Great*. Hereabouts we also saw divers Stone Pillars, of a very large size, which being hung with Bells, the same made a noise when moved by the Winds. Beyond these we discovered again the Ruins of some Places, and divers Figures cut in Stone, resembling Men, Women, and several sorts of Beasts. We saw abundance of Deer and Hares, and wild Sheep in vast numbers, but these last are not easily catch'd: These Desarts have also great store of Pheasants, but as they scarce ever settle upon the Boughs of Trees, but run very swift upon the ground, it is a hard matter to shoot them, but the *Talcos* which our *Adogeda* had brought along with him, knew how to catch them, and we were much surprised at the dexterity of the *Chineses*, who would with their Arrows shoot any Bird flying. We observed that as we approach'd the *Chinese* Wall, the Country was more populous; and our last 3 Days Journey, before we got sight of it, was by a Road cut very conveniently through the Rocks, in the midst of which was a very good City call'd by the *Russians Schoma Gorod*, or *Kora Katoi*. In this place we had Hogs allow'd us instead of Sheep. The Hogs in *China* have their Bellies hanging down to the ground. These Rocks being full of Tygers, Leopards and Panthers, an Order was issued that no body should go from the *Caravan*, unless they were 3 at least in Company. Having pass'd these Rocks, we had a good Days Journey to the *Chinese* Wall, the Country being inhabited by the *Mongul Tartars*, who acknowledge the *Dalaelama* for the Head of their Religion. They have their Domestick Idols, unto whom they offer a share of their Victuals and Drink.

When they bury their Dead they put a Cock upon the Coffin. We saw a certain *Mongul* Nun frequently at her Prayers, with her Beads in her Hands, who being ask'd by the Ambassador to whom she offered her Prayers? She answered; *To the same God, who being excluded from Heaven by your God, will infallibly return and put your God out of his Place, and then you will see most prodigious Alterations upon Earth.*

It was the 27th. of *Octob.* toward Evening, when we got sight of that famous and so long wish'd for *Chinese* Wall, being 4 fathoms high, and so thick that 8 Persons may conveniently ride upon it a-breast. It is computed to be 500 *English* Miles long in a streight Line, for were you to reckon the Hills, nay, vast Mountains over which it is carried, it would amount at least to 500 more. It is all along provided with Towers which are at a Miles distance from one another; Near the first Gate we entred at, the Wall seem'd somewhat decay'd, and not above a Musquet-shot thence we pass'd through another Gate, which was fortify'd in the nature of a large Bastion. We passed 2 more, these three last enclosing as many large places surrounded with Walls, unto which these 3 Gates served for Bastions. Upon the first Wall was a *Corps de Guard*, where they always keep a Guard; and at some distance without the said Gate, we saw an Out-guard of 20 Soldiers. Scarce were we got a Mile within the Wall, but we pass'd in sight of a very strong Town call'd *Galyna*, and near it we met with the first Idols of the *Chineses*; of which there is a vast number among the *Chineses*, there being not a City nor Village but what is full of Temples dedicated to those Idols which are made either of Wood or Clay, and after gilt, but of a dreadful Aspect, especially their

God

1694. *God of War*, who holds a Scepter in his Hand, and is surrounded with Drums of divers sizes, which are beaten whilst they are at their Devotion.

The 28th. of *Octob.* we pass'd by another *Chinese* City, and arrived the same Evening in the City of *Xantuning*, where, as well as in the City through which we passed we were splendidly entertain'd by the Governors, with Feasting, Musicians, and Plays, in which the Actors shew a marvellous dexterity in *Leger-de-main* and Mimicking, and are very sumptuous in their Apparel, which they change very often.

The 29th. we came to the City of *Xangukou*, where we were again diverted with a Farce in a Play-house built there for that purpose. Here I saw in one of their Temples a Goddess of Stone 128 foot high, with 700 Hands; and I observed in their Temples (of which I used to take a view very often) that their Idols were of different Shapes and Figures, of a terrible Aspect, but very magnificently dress'd. Near this City is one of the most famous *Pagan* Temples of the Empire, built upon a Rock, and near it the Monastery of *Jugangu*.

The 30th. of *Octob.* meeting a great many Men and Women upon the Road, following an Idol, preceded by some Pipers, Drummers, and Cymbal-players, we ask'd the *Adogeda* what they meant by this, he told us, that they were going in Procession to Perform their Devotion at a neighbouring Sepulchre. We got sight the same Day of certain goodly Places call'd the *Red City*, being the Residence of the Sister of the *Bogdegan*, and famous for the Tombs of several of their Princes. We were quartered that Night in a Village, and as some extraordinary business detain'd the *Adogeda* for a little time in that place, we went forward in the Morning, but before we had travel'd 3 hours, were overtaken by his Steward, who desired us to tarry a little in the Place where we then were, his Master being upon the Road to overtake us; we spent this time in taking a view of one of their Temples, where we saw 3 of the *Adogeda*'s Servants prostrating themselves before an Idol which stood in the middle of the Temple, and afterwards to 2 more that stood on both sides of it. About Noon we reach'd the City of *Xangote*, and at Night lodg'd in a Country Town, as we did also the next. We were much surprised to see among a People that have the Reputation of being one of the most refined in the World, such gross Idolatry, there being on incredible number of Magnificent Temples where-ever you pass, dedicated to their Idols.

The 2d. of *Novemb.* we came to the City of *Tunko*, famous for its Traffick in Porcelain, and the same Night being lodg'd in the next Town to the Capital City of *Peking*, we made our Publick Entry there the 3d. of *Novemb.* about Noon, with a great deal of Magnificence, and were lodg'd in the Court, the ordinary Residence of Foreign Ambassadors.

The 12th. of *Novemb.* our *Adogeda* and his *Tawares*, or Associate, came to give notice to the Ambassador that he being to be admitted to his Publick Audience the next Day, he desired him to get his Credentials and other things in readiness, and having ask'd the Ambassador who were to carry the Presents, was answered, that it was to be done by the *Cossacks*, which he seem'd not to like very well, desiring that his People might do it, but the Ambassador refused it, telling him, that after they were brought to the Place where they were to be delivered, he would do it with his own Hands, wherewith the *Adogeda* was well satisfied, desiring only that they might be carry'd under good Coverts.—It was however the 14th. of *Novemb.* before every thing could be prepared for our Publick Audence; and then we went to Court in the following manner. (1.) preceded 15 *Cossacks* carrying the Presents, then came one of the Masters of the Jewel-Office of the *Czars* of *Muscovy*; he was followed by the Secretary of the Embassy, who carry'd the Credentials; after him came the Ambassador, having the 2 *Adogedas* on his right and left; in the Rear marched the rest of the Gentlemen belonging to the Embassy. Coming to the Castle, we were fain to alight from our Horses at the first Gate, through which we march'd on foot, being very long and Arched on the top. Hence we walk'd over a very fine Stone Bridge, 50 or 60 Paces long, having on each side a Wall not above 3 foot high, but adorn'd with a great multitude of Figures cut in Stone; having pass'd the second Gate, we were conducted through a very spacious Court, where we saw 2 large Pillars wrought very artificially with Figures, which led us into a very sumptuous Hall, where we found 2 Tables. We were intreated by the *Adogeda* to sit down upon Bolsters laid upon the ground, and soon after saw the Chief Ministers of the Empire, *viz.* the *Dorgamba*, the *Askamba*, the *Aligamba*, and the *Adogamba* enter the Hall before the *Bogdegan* (Emperor.) The Credentials being delivered to the King himself, the Presents were given to the *Adogeda*, and were laid upon the 2 Tables. Then the *Dorgamba* with the other 3 Lords, advancing towards the Ambassador, made their Complements of Congratulation upon his happy Arrival, and having enquired after their *Czarish* Majesties health, told him, that his Credentials should be translated forthwith, and an Answer given to him. About 3 hours after the Ambassador had been re-conducted to his Lodgings, one of the 2 *Adogedas* came to tell us, that the *Czar*'s Letters having been received with more than ordinary Satisfaction at Court, the King had sent him to desire him and all his Retinue to take share of what was prepared for his own Table. Neither did he forget to tell us by the bye, as we pass'd along the Streets on Horse-back, that we ought to consider this as a particular honour, it being not Customary among them to invite Foreign Ambassadors so soon after the delivery of their Credentials to the *Bogdegan*'s Table. We were no sooner entered the same Hall, where we had been before, but the Ambassador was invited to sit down, and not long after the *Bogdegan*, preceded by the 4 beforementioned Chief Ministers of State, entred the Room, and having welcomed the Ambassadors with a very obliging Salute, 4 Tables were brought in immediately after, 2 of which being covered with 40 Silver Dishes, fill'd with all sorts of Sweetmeats, were for the Ambassador, the other 2 (where there were also some Sweetmeats and boil'd Mutton) fell to our share. 1694.

We were all treated after Dinner with Milk *Thee* in wooden Dishes, which were re-delivered to the Servants with a low inclination of the Head. The Ambassador was no sooner risen from Table, but the Sweetmeats were all given to his Attendants, and the *Cossacks*.

The 16th. *Nov.* the *Dorgamba* with divers other *Chinese* Lords and the 2 *Adogedas* being come to pay a Visit to the Ambassador, they were entertain'd with very good Musick to their no small satisfaction, and before they parted, the Ambassador presented the *Dorgamba* with a large Looking-glass, and 2 lesser ones, 2 Watches, and some other things beside, some Sables, black Fox Skins, Ermins, and other *Siberian* Commodities, which were accepted of in a most obliging manner.

On the 17th. of *Nov.* being invited by 2 Heralds to the *Bogdegan*'s Table, we were conducted to the Castle by the 2 *Adogeda*'s, and so to the Hall, where we had delivered our Credentials before: The Ambassador and 14 of his Retinue, whom he had brought along with him, being presented with Chairs to sit down, it was not long after before the beforementioned Lords entering the Hall, after the first Complements, ask'd the Ambassador whether he could speak *Latin*, and being answered he could not, ask'd further, whether any of his Retinue could, and being told that there was one who had some knowledge of it, but not to perfection, they left us to return our Answer, as we supposed, to the Emperor. We pass'd here near five hours, during which time we were entertain'd with *Milk Thee*, before Orders were given to introduce us to the *Bogdegan*, and an account being taken of our Names and Quality, we were conducted by the *Adogeda* thro' 3 Gates and as many fine spacious Courts. In the midst of these 3 was a Marble Bridge, which rested upon very fine Arches, under which run a Water which being by them call'd the *Emperor's Fish-pond*, resembled a small but fair River, which surrounded the Castle. We were no sooner entered the Apartment, where we found the *Bogdegan* sitting upon his Throne, but the Ambassador was placed on one side of it by the *Adogeda*. The Room which was extraordinary high, and the Walls adorn'd with a prodigious number of Marble Statues, was full of Courtiers carrying the Emperor's Arms upon their Breasts and Backs; just opposite to this Room you might see the Imperial Temple, a very noble Structure; and in another Court on the other side of the Room, the Imperial *Seraglio*. The Ambassador being placed on the left hand of the Throne his Retinue stood on the right hand of him 4 Rods behind, and opposite to the Am- 1694.

1694. bassador the 4 Chief Ministers of State: Near the Throne attended a Guard of 40 Persons, with Half-Pikes and Battle-Axes. We had not sat long before we saw a Table brought in covered very thick with Dishes of Massy Gold, and fill'd with Sweetmeats, which being set down before the Emperor, 2 more were brought in for the 4 Lords, and after them another Table full of Sweetmeats for the Ambassador, and his Retinue had also their peculiar Tables, three belonging to a Table; the *Chineses*, of whom there were at least 100, had each their own Table served with several Dishes of Meat; but what was brought to our Table, *viz.* Sweetmeats, Grapes, Apples, Pears, Chesnuts, *China* Oranges, Citrons and other Fruits, were all served in Plate. Every one took care to observe when the Emperor began to take the first bit, when being obliged to make a profound inclination with the Head, they fall to eating themselves.

After Dinner, which lasted three hours, two very large Cups of Brandy being presented to the *Bogdegan*, he commanded the *Dorgamba* and another of the Chief Ministers of State, to conduct the Ambassador to the Throne, and being come upon the Steps, the *Dorgamba*, gave one of these two Cups to the Ambassador, desiring him to make a low Reverence with his Head, and so drink it off at a Draught, which done, some *Jesuits* appear'd in the Room, who speaking to the Ambassador in *Latin*, he answered in *Italian*, that he was not well acquainted with the *Latin* Tongue; so that one of these Fathers understanding *Italian*, ask'd, by Orders from the *Bogdegan*, several Questions, and among the rest how long he had left *Moscow*, which he having answered accordingly, he was re-conducted to his Place, and we in our turn conducted opposite to the Throne, and presented with a Golden Cup of Brandy each, which, after we had taken off with a profound Reverence, we were carried back to our respective Places; we had afterwards some *Milk Thee* given us, which we took off with the same Ceremonies as before. Then the Tables being removed, we were conducted by the *Adogeda's* into another Room because we should not see the *Bogdegan* descend from his Throne.

He is descended of the Race of the *Mongul Tartars*, of a brown Complexion, and about 50 Years of Age. After having sat here a little while, till the Sweetmeats that were left could be distributed among the Servants, we were re-conducted to our Quarters.

The 18th. of *November* the Ambassador and his whole Train were entertain'd at their Lodgings from the Emperor's Table, and the 8th. of *December* were treated again at Court.

The 11th. we were present at a great Solemnity, where the *Chinese* Lords paid their Homage to the Emperor by several times prostrating themselves bending their Knees, and knocking their Heads against the ground, and at Night were entertain'd with a Play, and some very curious Tricks of *Leger-de-main*.

The 19th. of *December* we were most magnificently treated at the *Dorgamba's* House; and the 6th. of *January* 1694. once more at the *Bogdegan's* Table, as we were likewise the 16th. and at the *Dorgamba's* House once more the 26th.

The 27th. we gave a Visit to the *Jesuits*, of whom there were 8 at that time at *Peking*, they treated us with a very fine Breakfast, and shew'd us their Church, which is a very fine Structure, and has a noble Organ.

1695. The 5th. of *February* we were again magnificently entertain'd at Court, and being told, that according to our desire, we should be dismiss'd in 12 Nights, we were sent for to Court the 16th. of *February*, in order to take our Audience of Leave, and to receive the usual Presents, which were as follows:

For the Ambassador a Horse with all the Acoutrements; a *Chinese* Cap; a Damask Brocaded Turbant, lin'd with Lamb-skins; a Scarf, a Knife, six Hankerchiefs, and two Tobacco Bags; one pair of Leather Boots, and a pair of Silk Stockings; a piece of black Satin of 10 Yards; a piece of *Sudan* of 20 Yards; 16 pieces of *Kitaiks*; 7 *San* of Silver worth about 14 Crowns. Each of the Gentlemen belonging to the Embassy had these following Presents:

A *Chinese* Cap, a *Damask Surtout* lin'd with Lamb-skin, a piece of Satin of 10 Yards; a Scarf, a Knife, two Tobacco Bags and six Hankerchiefs; a pair of Leather Boots, and a pair of Silk Stockings, quilted with Cotten; 16 pieces of *Kitaik*, one *San* and a half of Silver value three Crowns. 1695.

The *Cossacks* and inferior Servants had each for their share a piece of Satin of 10 Yards, 8 pieces of *Kitaik*, one *San* of Silver.

On the 18th. the Ambassador being invited again to Court, was told by the *Dorgamba*, that the Carriages being ready, he might, if he pleased, depart the next Morning. And in this place I am sensible I should enter upon a Description of this vast Empire, but as the same has been done at large by several other Hands, who have had the opportunity of taking a full view of this Country, we will confine our selves to the Journal of our Embassy.

We left the City of *Peking* the 19th. of *February*, towards coming home, and after five Days Journey, were conducted through a ruin'd City, where in one of their Temples I saw an Idol made of Clay, but very richly gilt, *viz.* a Woman of about 15 Yards high, with many Hands and Heads; and not far thence in a Gallery, another Figure representing a Woman lying in a rich Damask Bed, covered with rich *Chinese* Carpets, which they told us was her Daughter.

The 30th. of *May* we took up our Quarters in the Village of *Suttigar*, near the City of *Naun*, where I saw a very surprising Spectacle in my Hosts Daughter, whom I saw sprawling upon the ground, making most horrid out-crys, but having ask'd the occasion of it, was told, that she being accounted a Saint, some of the Neighbourhood had been to consult her about a Child that was ill, and when the Neighbours were all gone, I saw an Aunt of hers put a little Incense upon a few Coals, which soon brought her to her right Senses again.

The 14th. of *April* we set out from *Naun*, and passing the 23d. near a high Mountain, came the 27th. to the River *Chadma*.

The 2d. of *May*, we cross'd the River *Keilar*, where we had almost been consumed by Fire, which the *Mongul Tartars* out of revenge had set among the long and dry Grass, that remain'd after the Winter Season; we had enough to do to save our Tents and Cattle, but were afterwards put to great stress for Fodder.

The 18th. we came to the River *Margan*, where having refresh'd our selves for two Days, we cross'd the River *Gam* the 12th. with our laden Camels and Horses.

The 21st. of *May* we Ferry'd over the River *Argun*, a good Days Journey from the City of that Name.

The 2d. of *June* we arrived safely at *Nartzinskoy*, and our whole *Caravan* the 9th. following.

The 3d. of *July* we set forward again from *Nartzinskoy*, and came the 13th. to *Plothus*; the 15th. to the Lake of *Shock*, and the 19th. to the Lake of *Jerawena*.

The 22d. we forded the River *Ana*, which falls into the River *Uda*, and the 26th. the River *Hurba*, which likewise falls into the *Uda*.

The 27th. we came to *Udinsko*, where having sold our Camels and Horses to a great loss, we Embark'd on board two large Vessels the 28th. upon the River *Selinga*, and the 31st. came to the Entrance of *Baikala*, where being much pester'd with the changeableness of the Winds, but at last making the River *Angara*, arrived the 1st. of *August* at *Irtuskoy*.

The 5th. we set Sail again, and the 11th. went ashore in a Village belonging to the *Boatskoy*, on the left side of the River *Angara*; into which here abouts falls another large River.

We had not sail'd many Miles before we were forc'd to pass a dangerous Cataract call'd *Pegnay*, and soon after another call'd *Pyan*.

The 12th. we came to another call'd *Podma*; and the 13th. another, which continued for four or five Miles.

The 14th. we pass'd the Cataract call'd *Skamansko*, which is near three Miles long.

The 16th. we pass'd in sight of the River *Itim*, which falls into the River *Tunguska*, to the right hand, as the *Angara* does to the left. We pass'd the same Day over another Cataract, and leaving the River *Ketto* to the right of us the 17th. as we did the River *Kama* the 22d.

We came the 25th. to *Jenokiskoy*, or *Genassay*. Thence we continued our Journey by Land the 1st. of *September*

1695. *tember* to *Makoffsko*, where we arrived the 3d. and the 7th. set forward again for *Tobolsko*.

The 23d. we came to *Famkutskoy*, and the 26th. to the City of *Narim*, a Mile distant from the River *Oby*, where we Embark'd the 28th. but the Wind blowing very strong from the North, we advanced but very little till the 13th. of *October*, when making all the sail we could we entred the River *Irtish* the 14th. and the 15th. arrived at *Samorskojam*. Here we continued till the 14th. of *November*, by reason of the Ambassador's indisposition, and the River being frozen over by this time, we had recourse to ordinary Winter Carriages, the Sledges, which brought us the 19th. to *Demjansko*, and the 20th. to *Tobolsko*, which we left again the 17th. of *December*, and arrived the 20th. at *Tumen*. We continued our Journey the 21st. and came the 23d. to the City of *Japanskin*, and the 27th. to *Wergaturia*.

We left this place again the 28th. and the 1st. of *January* 1695. arrived in the City of *Sotokamskoy*, the 5th. at *Kaigorod*, and the 9th. at *Jam Usga*, upon the River *Sisella*. 1695.

The 10th. we pass'd through *Jata Piloldie*, and the 11th. through *Janaspas Ulspilsco*, in both which Places we Din'd.

The 12th. we came to a Place called St. *Sots Wirzogda*, where we refreshed our selves the next Day, and arrived the 14th. at *Ustingha*.

The 18th. we came to the City of *Terma*, where we stay'd till the 19th. against Night, and arrived at *Schusca Jam* the 21st. We reach'd *Jeroslaw* the 25th. and *Peroslaw* the 27th. where we stay'd till the 29th. and the 31st. of *January* came to a Village call'd *Alekeshe* upon the *River Janse*, which being but five Miles from *Moscow*, we safely arrived there the first of *February*, after a most tedious and troublesome Journey of Three Years wanting Six Weeks.

Of

Of the Ancient and Modern

RELIGION OF THE MUSCOVITES,

Done from the *French*, Printed at *Cologne*, 1698.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first Conversion of the Muscovites *to the Christian Faith.*

THE *Muscovites* are very Ambitious to trace their Conversion to the Christian Faith as far as the Times of the Apostle St. *Andrew* Brother to *Simon Peter*; who they say, came out of *Greece*, and crossing the *Black-Sea*, landed near the Mouth of the River *Boristhenes*, and coming to *Kiovia*, then a famous City in those Parts, Preached the Gospel there, and afterwards at *Novogorod Veliki*, then a Principality independant from the *Czars* of *Muscovy*, and after having converted these also to the Christian Religion, he returned to *Rome*, and thence into the *Morea*, where he suffered Martyrdom under the Reign of King *Ægo*: But as the Records of *Novogorod* know nothing of the Apostle St. *Andrew*, and attribute their Conversion to St. *Anthony*, and that it is beyond all dispute that before the Reign of the Princess *Ola*, and her Grand-son *Wolodimir*, the *Russians* were involved in the utmost darkness of *Paganism*, and used (besides those Gods, such as *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, *Mars*, &c. known among the ancient *Pagans*) adore their peculiar Idols under the Names of *Piorun*, *Stribi*, *Corsi*, and *Mocosti*; (the shape of which you may see in the annexed Cut.) Fig. 1.

These pretensions must be look'd upon no otherwise than the effects of their Ignorance; it is beyond all dispute, that in the Year 762. under the Reign of *Rurick*, the *Russians* were all *Pagans*, and that his Son *Igor* married *Ola*, a Native of *Pleskow*, by whom he had a Son named *Stoslaus*.

After the death of *Igor*, his Son being very young, *Ola* had the Management of the Regency during his Minority, and going to *Constantinople* 955. was baptized there and named *Helen*. Her Son, when come to Age of Maturity, did not think fit to follow his Mothers footsteps, persisting in his Idolatry married *Malutha*, the Daughter of a Citizen of *Novogorod*, by whom he had *Wolodimir*, who after his Father's death, having made himself Master of the Circumjacent Country, and received thereupon the Compliments of several Christian Princes by their Ambassadors, he was thereby induced, after the example of his Grand-Mother, not only to embrace, but also to establish Christianity in his Dominions: He had no sooner taken this Resolution, but he sent his Ambassadors to the two *Constantinopolitan* Emperors, *Basil* and *Constantine*, desiring their Sister the Princess *Anne* in Marriage, which being granted, he was baptized in the Presence of the two Emperors, and named *Basil*; which done, the Patriarch of *Constantinople* sent and Consecrated a Metropolitan at *Kiovia*, an Archbishop at *Novogorod*, and divers Bishops and Priests in other places; so that as the first Introduction of the Christian Religion into *Russia*, must be attributed to the Princess *Ola*, so its Establishment was perfected by *Wolodimir*, as is manifest among other things, from the words of that famous Tyrant *John*, or *Joan Basilowitz*, who Reign'd 1570, and says thus in favour to *John Rahita*, a *Polish* Divine, who was sent by the Emperor *Sigismond* with an Ambassador into *Muscovy*, *Our Subjects*, says he, *are baptized in the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, ever since our blessed Ancestor the Great* Czar Wolodimir, *being enlightned from Heaven, received the Name of* Basil *at the Sacred Fountain, so that from thence to this Day the Name of the* Russian *Religion is turn'd into that of the* Christian Faith.

This is the true Reason, why the *Muscovites*, to this Day, profess a more than ordinary esteem for the *Greek* Religion, and send every Year a Present of 500 Ducats for the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, tho' they differ in several Points from the *Greek* Religion.

The *Muscovites* have the Bible printed in the *Sclavonian* Language, which much Resembles the *German*; and Acknowledge it to be the True word of God, especially the Books of the Evangelists, which they never touch without certain marks of respect and veneration. Though they make the Holy Scripture the Rule of their Faith, yet they adhere also much to the Determinations of the 7 first general Councils, and the *Greek* Fathers, especially to the Works of *Basil the Great*, *Gregory* of *Nazianzena*, *John Chrysostome*, and *Ephrem* the *Syrian*; the following Councils they look upon as infected with Heresie, and among the Doctors of their Church, they put an extraordinary value upon the Writings of one *Nicholas Sudatwitz*, whose Memory is Celebrated twice a year. They also receive the Creed of the Apostles, that of *Nice*, and *Athanasius*, so, that when any point of Religion is to be proved by them, they first have recourse to the Scripture, next to the 7 Councils, and lastly to the before-mentioned Fathers, which is to be determin'd only by the Patriarch of *Muscovy*.

Their Priests (or *Popes*) Read in their Churches the New Testament to the People, but the Old Testament (except the Psalms of *David*) they look upon to contain many things not fit to be known by the vulgar sort. They never pretend to make any explications upon the Text of the Scripture, and consequently allow of no Preaching, it being their Opinion, that these publick and framed Orations in the Pulpit, being full of Subtilties create only Misunderstanding and Misinterpretations, and lead away the People from the true way of Morality. They believe *the Church to be an Assembly of the Faithful, whom God has promised to assist with his Grace, to attain to eternal Salvation*; and they have variety enough

nough to imagine, that without their Communion there is no such Assembly of the faithful.

They look upon the *Turks* and *Jews* as declared Enemies, which is the reason the *Ottoman* Ambassadors are not admitted to kiss the *Czar*'s hand, and the last are forbid to come into *Muscovy*; and as to the other Christians, they consider all as Hereticks, especially the *Roman Catholicks*, which is the reason, that if any Christian, of what Religion soever does embrace the *Muscovite* Religion, he must be rebaptized. The chief points in Question betwixt the *Roman Catholicks* and the *Muscovites*, are their *Fasts*, the *Celibacy* of the *Romish Priests*; the Unction of the Infants in Baptism, the Unleaven'd Bread, and their Opinion concerning the Trinity.

The *Lutheran* and *Calviniſt* Religions are tolerated among them, though they nevertheless look upon them as Hereticks, yet have they their Churches all over *Muscovy* and some Schools; which they constantly refuse to the *Roman Catholicks*; I remember that when, 1684. the present Emperor sent the Baron of *Blumenbough*, and the Baron *Siroffski*, as his Ambassadors to the *Czars Ivan*, and *Peter Alexiowitz*, to Negotiate an Alliance against the *Turks*, they carried 2 *Jesuits* along with them, and there being at that time a considerable number of *Roman Catholicks* in the *Czar*'s Service, they obtain'd leave for them to stay at *Moscow*; but durst not stay long, the aversion of the *Muscovites* against them being such, that they thought it best to retire in time.

The *Lutherans* have at present 3 Churches in the Suburbs, where the *Germans* live, one of which is of Stone, and lately built, the *Czar Peter* having granted them leave to build a Steeple, and make use of Bells, a thing never permitted before in *Muscovy*.

The *Calviniſts* have likewise a very handsome Stone Church in the same Suburb, and it is observable, that the *Czar Peter* with some of his *Boyars* sometimes come to both, a thing that appears very strange to the *Muscovites*.

The *Lutherans* have also another Church and School within 8 Lgs of *Muscow*, and so have the *Calviniſts*: They don't allow to either of them, no more than they do in their own Churches, any Crucifix or Images, unless they be painted either upon Wood or Cloth; as for the other Sects, they don't so much as number them among Christians, but punish them with Death. Of this there was an instance given in our time in one *Kuhlman*, a *Silesian* by birth, who adhering to the Phanaticism of one *Behmen*, a *German*, he came to *Leyden* to propagate his Erroneous Opinions, but being banish'd thence, came into *England*, where also not being able to stay long, he went into *Muscovy*, and getting into the acquaintance of one *Northerman* a *German* Merchant, he instill'd his Phanatical Notions so effectually into the said Merchant, that they jointly resolved to publish their Opinions; One of the Chief of which was, That *Christ Jesus our Saviour, was to return once more upon Earth, to convert all Mankind, and at last to bless them with his Kingdom. Notherman* had the vanity to carry this Treatise to one of the Chief Ministers, who forewarned him of the danger, admonishing him to desist before it was too late, but in vain, for the Merchant went to the Printer, and urging the matter very close to him, prevail'd at last to undertake it; but considering the risque he might run in so doing, he was advised to carry it to the Patriarch for his Approbation, who had no sooner perus'd it, but he caused both *Kuhlman* and *Northerman* to be burnt alive.

They put so vast a difference betwixt themselves and other Christians, that they will not so much as allow them to enter their Churches, or if it be done, they look upon it as a great favour, and the Church is defiled, which must be purify'd, and is performed with very strange Ceremonies.

There is a known Story about *Muscow*, concerning a certain Monky belonging to an *English* Ambassador, residing there, which getting into a Neighbouring Church, and having defiled the Image of St. *Nicholas*, was by a peculiar Order from the Patriarch, carry'd in shew through the Streets, and afterwards put to death.

The *Muscovites* agree in this point with the Protestants, That Christ is the only Head of the Church, and that there is no occasion for any other, which is the reason they look upon the Pope as an Usurper, and that *Basil* in his Letter to Pope *Clement* Stiles him, *Clement the Pope, Pastor and Doctor of the Roman Church*. Neither do they allow any Modern Miracles, it being their Opinion, that these are ceased since the full establishment of the Christian Religion.

Marriage is esteemed among the *Muscovites* as a very sacred thing, for which reason they don't allow any right Marriages within the 3d. or 4th. degree. Polygamy is forbidden under pain of death, the *Czar* himself being allow'd no more than one Wife at a time, tho' if she proves barren, or brings forth no Sons, he may send her into a Monastery, and marry another. Upon second Marriages they look as allowable, but not very commendable, upon which score their Priests are forbidden to marry a second time; a third Marriage is not to be undertaken, but upon very weighty considerations; and a fourth punish'd with death. Divorces are however very frequent among them, but must be obtained with the Bishop's consent. Their Priests are not only allow'd, but oblig'd to marry, and this must be none but a Widow of a good reputation; but are forbidden to marry a second time unless they will quit their Order.

The second thing which is in peculiar Veneration among the *Muscovites*, is their Sovereign, for whom they have such an entire deference, that they look upon his Pleasure as the Will of God, which without doubt has given birth to that Proverb so frequently used among them; *Godknows it and our Czar*; which is also the reason they stile the *Czar God Almighty's Chamberlain*, and that he is invested with a power from God, to execute his Will. This is so firmly engrafted into them from their first Infancy, that even Persons of the chiefest Rank in the Empire, never approach his Person, but with the same Veneration as if they pay'd their Adoration to God, and if he gives them the least mark of his displeasure, they are ready to offer their Lives for the expiation of their miscarriage.

Another thing much regarded among the *Muscovites* is the Clergy, of which they have several degrees; he that bears the first Rank is their Patriarch, who is obliged always to reside at *Muscow*. Formerly the Patriarch of *Constantinople* used to have the nomination of him, but now he is named by the Metropolitans and Bishops, with the *Czar*'s Approbation. He is the chief Person in the Empire next to the *Czar*, and determines all Ecclesiastical Affairs; he wears a kind of long black Robe, and has always a Cross carried before him; next to the Patriarch come the Metropolitans, of which there are 4 in number; The (1.) of *Novogrod*, the (2.) of *Rostoff*, the (3.) of *Casan*, and the (4) of *Sirkenski*; this last must keep his constant Residence at *Muscow*: The next in Rank are the 7 Bishops; (1.) of *Kiovia*, (2.) of *Muscow*, (3.) of *Pleskow*, (4) of *Wolodimir*, (5.) of *Toralsko* in *Siberia*, (6.) of *Casan*, (7.) of *Astracan*. Next to these come the Priests call'd by them *Popes*, who are again subdivided into *Protopopes*, Archpriests, and common *Popes*; of whom there are a vast number in *Muscow*; there being no other qualifications requisite to admit them into this Order, except reading, writing and singing. The chief Badge of Priesthood is a certain Cap or Calot, which is put upon their Heads at the time of their being Consecrated, and they are obliged to wear it as long as they continue to be Priests, and it is no small Crime for a Lay-man to touch it; notwithstanding which as most of the *Muscovite* Clergy are great Drunkards, and constant frequenters of Tipling Houses, they meet with many a hard rub, there being only this difference to be observed in this respect, that if you have occasion to beat a Clergyman, you must first civilly secure his Bonnet, and that done, drub him handsomly, and put it on again afterwards. Another Badge of their Priesthood is the stick they carry in their Hands, being for the rest clad in a wide long Robe, of black, green, blue, or red, which they like best. As they pass along the Streets, the common People ask them their blessing, which they give them with the sign of the Cross. *Muscovy* swarms with Monks, which are either *Benedictines*, or else of the Order of St. *Basil*, or St. *Nicholas*. They make three Vows, like the *Roman Catholicks*, *viz.* Of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, tho' for the rest their Rules are very different from the *Romans*, they lead generally a very austere life; The other Orders, such as the *Jesuits*, *Franciscans*, *Dominicans*, *Carmelites*, &c. are unknown in *Muscovy*. They are all clad after the same manner, not unlike our *Dominicans*; they have their Abbots and Priors, the first they call *Archimandrites*, the last *Igumenes*, who are generally very ignorant, there be-

ing

ing scarce one among ten that is able to say the *Pater-Noster*, and the *Apostles Creed*.

Their Nuns live much after the same manner as the Fryars, they are clad in long black Robes, except that Persons of Quality wear white Vests.

There are also Hermits among the *Muscovites*; who live upon what Alms Travellers are pleas'd to bestow upon them, to purchase their Prayers.

Their Bishops and Priests live upon their Tythes, and what else private Persons are pleased to bestow upon them, having no Lands or Houses allotted them for their Maintenance, as is practised among the *Roman Catholicks*. Simony is a thing so current in *Muscovy*, that it is no more frequent at *Rome*, or any other place that I know of in the World.

Their Churches are all built round and vaulted, to bear some resemblance to the Heavens; each of them has 5 Steeples, one larger and higher than the rest, the other 4 being round about it. They use neither Chairs nor Benches in their Churches, because they perform their Devotions either kneeling or prostrating upon the ground. They look upon their Churches as places so sacred, that a new married Couple are not permitted to enter there, before they have well bathed themselves. They will not admit of any Organs, or other Musical Instruments in their Churches, no more than of any Images of Wood or Stone, but only such as are painted. There are about 200 Churches in *Muscow*. Next to their Churches they are very choice of their Church-Yards, which they likewise look upon as sacred Places, and will not allow any impurities to be thrown there, or that a Dog should pass over them. They are great admirers of Bells, looking upon them as an essential part belonging to Divine Service.

The *Muscovites*, as well as the *Roman Catholicks*, excommunicate all such as are not of their Communion, every Year on the *Thursday* in the *Holy-Week*, but if any one makes a Confession of his Sins, and promises amendment, the Excommunication is taken away; their Confession is like that of the *Romans*, a recital of all their Sins. The *Muscovites* profess a Trinity, according to the Apostles Creed, and that of *Nice*, and St. *Athanasius*. They declare, That God the Creator of Heaven and Earth is the first Person, and Father of *Jesus Christ* our Saviour; That *Jesus Christ* the Second Person is really a Man, born of the Virgin *Mary*, and that he never ceases to be the essential Word of God, together with the Father and the Holy Ghost. They also acknowledge the Holy Ghost to be the Third Person of the Divinity, and to be the true God, with the Father and Son. But at the same time are involved in a gross Error concerning this Article as well as other *Greek* Churches, who affirm, that the Holy Ghost proceeds only from the Father, and not the Son. Upon this score they accuse the other Christians with having falsify'd the Words of the Council of *Nice*, by inserting the word *Filioque* after that of *à Patre*; it being, say they, impossible to assign to the Holy Ghost 2 distinct Attributes, 2 different Wills, and 2 different Principles.

There were certain *Greeks* call'd by those of the *Roman* Communion, *Uniti*, at the Council of *Florence*, held by Pope *Eugene* IV. 1439. and among the rest of the *Russian* Metropolitans, one named *Isidore*, who were at last by admirable proofs convinced of the verity of the Holy Ghost proceeding both from Father and Son, but the Decrees of this Council were not received in *Muscovy*; They are sensible of the Corruption of humane Nature by Original Sin, that naturally we are involved in darkness, and that God is not in the least the original of Sin, but an inexhaustible Spring of all that is good. Upon the Doctrine of *Free-Will* they look as a *Chimera*, after the Fall of our first Parents; and upon the *Ten Commandments*, as a thing not having the least relation to them, as being abolish'd in the *New Testament*, except these two, *Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and thy Neighbour like thy self*; the rest, as they affirm, being quite abolished by Christ's Sufferings; tho' at the same time they consider the Decalogue as a Rule by which to regulate their Manners and Actions in respect of this Life: According to the First Commandment they adore the Holy Trinity, tho' at the same time they worship the Images of their Saints, especially the Virgin *Mary*, as being the Mediatrix betwixt her Son and us; who by her Prayers protects the whole Christian World. They boast to have an Original Picture of the said Virgin, done by the Evangelist St. *Luke*, which is carefully preserved in *Muscow*, and tho' scarce any body will believe St. *Luke* was ever there, yet are they so positive in this point, that should any body publickly contradict it, he would be in danger of paying for it with his Head. They do not only pay a great Veneration, but an absolute Adoration to the Apostles, and prostrate themselves before their Reliques, as also before the Images of the Prophets, holy Fathers, Martyrs and other Saints. These Images are exchanged in the great Market-place of *Muscow*, for to say they were sold, would be an unpardonable Crime. Among all the rest of their Saints they pay a most peculiar Veneration to St. *Nicholas* of *Baris*, whom they acknowledge the Patron and Protector of *Muscovy*. In regard of the Second Commandment, they shew a great deal of Veneration for the Name of God, and never go out of their Houses without having first said their Prayers, and paid their Devotions to their Domestick Saints; nay, if a vulgar Person happens to enter the House of a Person of Quality, he first looks for the Image of the Saint, and does not pay his respect to the Master thereof, before he had address'd himself to the Saint, and after cross'd himself thrice in the Forehead, and once on the Breast, says the usual *Gospodi Romini*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us.*

The *Muscovites* also make a great account of Pilgrimages, not even excepting the *Czar* himself, who makes two every Year, one at the Feast of the *Trinity* to the Monastery of *Troitza*, about 12 *German* Lgs from *Muscow*; the second at *Michaelmass*-day to a certain Monastery dedicated to one of their Saints named *Sergius*, of whom the *Muscovites* relate strange Stories, having been first a Souldier and afterward a Hermit, who ended his days in the said Monastery, 1593. of which he was *Igumene*, or Prior.

Besides these, they have divers other Monasteries dedicated to certain Saints famous for their Miracles, whither the Common People flock at certain times, but commonly return loaden with strong Liquors, and all manner of Debaucheries.

When the *Muscovites* are at their Devotions they often knock their Foreheads against the ground; and cross themselves in the following manner. They first make the Sign of the Cross with their Fingers on the Forehead, which intimates, say they, the Ascension of Christ; next on the Heart, to signifie that the heart is the receptacle of the Word of God, then they make a Cross on the right, and next on the left Shoulder, to intimate that at the day of Judgment, those to be bless'd with eternal life shall be placed to the right, and the damned to the left. Not many years ago the Patriarch ordered that the Lay-men should cross themselves only with two fingers, whereas before that time they did it with three; in remembrance of the *Holy Trinity*; but meeting with great opposition in this point, he prevail'd with the *Czar* to send the *Arch-Patriarch* of *Constantinople*, and two other Patriarchs of the *Eastern* Churches, who approving of his Orders, the same was enacted into a Law, notwithstanding which several *Muscovites* would rather lose their Heads than comply with it, and to this day the *Muscovites* make use of three Fingers when they can do it in private, they being very superstitious, and extremely addicted to their ancient Customs; one instance of which is, that even now they have as much veneration for Serpents, as some of the *Eastern Pagans*.

The *Muscovites* take it for no crime to take a false Oath on purpose to injure your Enemy, especially if he be a *Roman Catholick*, tho' otherwise they are very cautious in taking an Oath in any of their Courts of Justice, the same tho' true, being look'd upon among them, as infamous; but if they forswear themselves they are sure to be punish'd by a severe Strapado, and sometimes with banishment into *Siberia*. Some of the richer sort among the *Muscovites*, when they are ill past hopes of recovery, make a vow of turning *Monks*, and are shaven at the same time, which they are obliged to perform if they recover, though they have Wife and Children. In respect to the Third Commandment, they indeed do observe the *Sunday*, yet so, that the richer sort spend their time in Debaucheries, after Divine Service is over, and the Poor in their Employments.

The three great Feasts of *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Whitsuntide*, are kept with a great deal of strictness among the *Muscovites*, no body daring to work on those days, they have also many other Festivals, the chiefest

chiefest of which were these following; That of the *New-Year*, which is celebrated the 1st. of *September*, according to the Old Stile, with a great deal of Solemnity, in the great Market-place before the Castle, of which Solemnity several of our Modern Voyages having given an ample account, we will not repeat here. Their Feast is on the 8th. of *Sept.* dedicated to *the Nativity of the Holy Mother of God.* The third the 14th. of *Sept.* called *the Feast of the Exaltation of the Cross.* The fourth the 21st. of *Nov.* called *the Offerings of our Lady.* The fifth. the 25th. of *Dec.* being the Feast of the *Nativity of Christ.* The sixth the Feast of the three Kings, the 6th. of *Jan.* when they celebrate the Ceremony of concecrating the Water of the River of *Muscow*, for which Ceremony we likewise refer our selves to the accounts of several Modern Voyages into those Parts. The seventh is celebrated the 2d. of *Feb.* and called *the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin Mary.* The eighth on the 25th. of *April*, being *the Annunciation of the Virgin Mary.* The 9th. is that of *Palm-Sunday*, when they celebrate with the utmost Solemnity the Entrance of our Saviour into *Jerusalem*, at which time the *Czar* makes a Calvacade upon an Ass through the City of *Muscow*, for the description of which we refer our selves likewise to several Modern Authors. The tenth Feast is their *Easter*, which is also kept with a great deal of solemnity, then the *Czar* shews himself in publick to the People, People of any Fashion carry red painted Eggs in their Pockets, for 15 days after, which they present to one another whenever they meet with a Salute, adding these words, *Christ is risen*, unto which the other replys, *He is certainly risen*; no body of what quality soever, whether Man or Woman, dares to refuse the Egg or Salute; the *Czar* himself goes on Easter-day to visit the Prisoners, and orders some Eggs and Meat to be given them. The eleventh Feast is that of the *Ascension*, and the twelfth that of our *Whitsuntide*, which they call *the Descension of the Holy Ghost.* The thirteenth is the Feast of *the Transfiguration of Christ upon the Monot Tabor*, which is celebrated the 6th. of *Aug.* and the fourteenth the Feast of *the Assumption of Mary, the blessed Mother of God*, kept the 10th. of *Aug.* These are the Holy-days the *Muscovites* are obliged to keep, but for the rest as for instance, *Midsummer*, *Michaelmass-day*, and those dedicated to the Memory of the Apostles, Martyrs and other Saints, every one is at liberty to keep them as he pleases, the Priests being only obliged to say *Mass*, and particular Service on those Days. On *Sundays* the *Muscovites* commonly go three times to Church, (1.) before Sun-rising, which they call *Safterini.* (2.) About Noon, this they call *Cleedni*; (3.) At Night this is call'd *Wedsherni*; after which the best sort seldom stir out of their Houses, by reason of the many insolencies that are committed by the drunken Rabble in the Streets.

The *Muscovites*, as I told you before, perform their Divine Service in reading certain Chapters out of the Scripture, the *Psalms* of *David*, the *Gospel*, and perhaps some *Homilies* of St. *Chrysostome*, and St. *Athenasius Creed*, without any farther Explication, Preaching being considered among them rather as a profanation of an addition to their Worship; it being their Opinion that the reading of the *New Testament* is sufficient to instruct them in their Duty; but if it were not, say they, it would be much better (pursuant to the Custom used in the ancient *Christian* Churches) to read the Sermons of the old Fathers, and not to be inveigled by the fram'd Speeches of a Clergy-man, whose chief aim is commonly to shew his vanity by cheating and maintaining Disputes in the Pulipit, contrary to the true intent and simplicity of the Christian Religion. After the reading of the *Psalms*, of the *Gospel*, and some Passages out of the Holy Fathers, they begin to say *Mass*, which is done in the following manner: The Priest attended by his Sacristan approaching the Altar, pays his Reverence to it, which done, he puts some red Wine (for the *Muscovites* use no other in their Churches) into the Chalice, which he mixes with some Water, and having broken a piece of leavened Bread, puts it into the Wine; Then he consecrates them both, by reading and saying certain forms of Prayers, which last near half an hour; after which he takes with a Spoon all at once, that Bread and Wine out of the *Chalice*, and so takes the Communion himself without any other Company, unless they should happen to bring to him at that time a sick Child, unto which he gives a morsel of the Bread steep'd in the Wine.

The chiefest Devotion of the *Muscovites* consists in their being present at these Masses, during which you see abundance of Wax Candles lighted, and the People busie in burning of Incense before, and kissing the Images. They have neither Benches, Chairs, or any Musical Instruments in their Churches; as to the first they say it would be indecent to appear before the Face of God in any other Posture, except on their Knees, and as to the last, they rather believe them to divert their Thoughts from Devotion, than to excite them to the performance of it, which is the reason alledged by them, why they were not in use among the Primitive Christians.

So much for their *Holy-days* and *Sundays*. As to what relates to the 4th. Commandment, that is but ill observed among the *Muscovites*, nothing being to be heard but broils and ill Language betwixt Father and Son, Mother and Daughter, or Brothers and Sisters in *Muscovy*. According to the fifth Commandment the *Muscovites* punish Murther with Death, but at the same time slandering and giving ill Language to one another, is so common a Vice among them, that it passes for current here, even among People of the best Quality, which is not decided by Fighting, but perhaps by the Cudgel or by the Horse-whip.

The *Muscovites* have not much more regard to the 6th. Commandment, Fornication being a common Vice here, and tho' according to their Laws, Adultery is punished as a great Crime, yet the same is frequent enough, among them, because, according to their Opinion, there is no Adultery, unless you run away with another Man's Wife, and defraud him of the use of her; In which case the Adulterer is to undergo the Bastinado, and to be banish'd afterwards into *Siberia*, and the Woman to be lock'd up in a Convent, the Husband being at liberty to marry again when he pleases.

Divorces are also also allow'd upon many other occasions. Fornication is scarce look'd upon as a Crime among them; tho' they allow no publick Brothel-houses. The worst is, that Sodomy it self is connived at, to which they are much addicted in their Drink. The *Muscovite* Women are kept under great restran'd those of Quality being not allow'd as much as to come within sight of the Men, but are obliged to pass away their time in their Chambers with their Maids in Embroidering and such other diversions, the management of the House being left wholly to the Mens disposal on Holy-days they now and then get leave to divert themselves in the Field.

As to their Marriages, their chief aim of a Father who has a Daughter to bestow, is to get her a good Dowry after the decease of her Husband. The Marriage Contract is made up betwixt the Relations, there being no time or opportunity allow'd to the young Folks to be acquainted with one anothers humour before hand, as is practised in other Countries, which is questionless one reason that the *Muscovite* Women, tho' they are kept under constant Confinement, yet often times find means to open their Prison doors, and admit others, who use them more kindly than their Husbands. Their Marriage Ceremonies being so well known now among us, from the several accounts, those that have travelled into those Parts, have given us upon that Subject; that I will not pretend to insist upon them here, but only add, that as at their Weddings they commit most excessive Debaucheries, especially in Drinking, so the Women are cunning enough to make use of this opportunity to make themselves amends for the constraint they lay under at home at other times, which is perhaps the reason, why the *Muscovites* now-a-days are not so nice in observing their ancient Customs of enquiring into the marks of Virginity; but rather look upon them as ridiculous and unpracticable.

It is now time we come to the seventh Commandment; Theft and Robbery is punished, but not with Death, by the *Muscovites*; if what is stole does not exceed the value of 2 Crowns, they lay the Criminal stretch'd upon his Belly on the Ground, and whilst one holds his Head, and another his Legs, the Executioner gives him a certain number of stroaks with 2 Wans upon his Back, and the Calfs of his Legs; which is done in Proportion of the value of the stoln Goods. If the Robbery committed be greater, and the Criminal is not in a condition to repay it, he receives the Bastinado, or rather *Strapado*, has his right Ear cut off, and is committed to Prison for 2 Years, which expired, he is set at liberty, if it be the first Offence he has committed of that Nature. In case he

be in a Capacity to restore what he has stoln, his Punishment is only one Years Imprisonment. But if he be taken a second time in the same Fact, he receives the *Strapado*, has his left Ear cut off, and is banished for his Life into *Siberia*. For the rest, deceitful dealing and over-reaching in way Trade, is rather look'd upon as an accomplishment among the *Muscovites*, than a fault which deserves the least Chastisement. In relation to the Eighth Commandment, the *Muscovites* are so much addicted to false Evidences and wrongful Accusations, that now-a-days Matters are not decided by their Oaths, which they may purchase at an easie rate; and the 9th. and 10th. Commandments are in so little regard with them, that it is their daily Practice to inveigle their Neighbours Servants, and defraud them of their Possessions by clandestine means; and this they do with so much Subtilty, that 'tis past all imagination, how a People otherwise so barbarous, should be so dexterous in these evil Practices.

Concerning their Doctrine of the Holy Trinity, they profess, That God the Father will bless us with eternal Salvation, for *Jesus Christ* his Son's sake; and that ever since the Fall of *Adam*, even the Just was delivered up into the Power of *Satan* till their Redemption was accomplished by the Resurrection of *Christ*. They believe *Jesus Christ* to be both God and Man, and the only Mediator and Foundation of our Salvation, in Conjunction with God the Father, by whom he was sent upon Earth; That he suffered death by his own Will, and by his own Power arose again and ascended into Heaven. That after his Ascension he sent his Disciples and Apostles to Preach the Gospel, and that he will appear again to judge the quick and the dead. They declare the *Holy Ghost* to be in an equal degree with the Father and the Son, in his Glory, Power, Operation, and Will, but that he proceeds only from God the Father, and not from God the Son; They believe that we are all one in *Christ*, the Faithful composing one Body by the Faith and the keeping of the Commandments of *Christ*; That we are justified and saved by his Merits, yet not without the custom of good Works, without which, they say, we cannot hope to enter Paradise, tho no body practise them less than they. In outward shew the *Muscovites* pray with a great deal of Devotion, tho' it be certain, that not one in ten can recite the Lord's Prayer, which they say was instituted for the use of Persons of Quality, and not for Mechanicks, and that it is enough for them to repeat the *Gospodi*, or *the Lord have mercy upon us*. They also pray for the dead, not that they believe a Purgatory, but that it is a means to make the Souls to attend the day of Judgment with the more tranquility.

Upon Baptism they look as a thing absolutely necessary to Salvation, which is the reason the poorer sort have their Children baptized as soon as they are born, but the richer sort are not so very forward. They always baptize their Children in the Church, unless there be some weighty reasons to the contrary. They consecrate the Water first, and chuse no more than two God-fathers for the first Child, who are obliged to stand to all the rest as long as they live; and tho' a Child be in never so much danger of dying, it can't be baptized except by the Priest, which is performed in the Name of *God the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost*; after the Father and the God-fathers have renounced the Devil and all his Works, and the Priest has exorcised the Child without the Church door; it being their constant Opinion, that the Devil is actually entred into the Child, wherefore they won't have the Church prophaned at his going out. After Baptism the Priest hangs a Cross of Gold, Silver, or Tin about the Child's Neck, which he is to wear to his dying day, and such as are found without it at the time of their Death are denied Christian Sepulture, he also assigns him a certain Saint for his Patron. Those that change their Religion, and are rebaptized, are plunged three times in the next River.

The *Muscovites* receive the Holy Sacrament with abundance of Devotion; they have two sorts of Bread which they use in their Communion, which must be unleavened, and bak'd by a Priests Widow that is past Child-bearing. One of this kind of Bread is for such as are sick, the other for those who receive the Communion at Church. The first they consecrate on *Holy Thursday* only, and is kept all the rest of the Year in a wooden Box till they want it; The other is consecrated at the Mass; they mix, as we told you before, warm Water with the Wine, *because*, says they, *Blood and Water did flow from our Saviours Side*, in this they steep the pieces of Bread, and consecrate them together, after which they believe it to be the real Body and Blood of Christ. They give both kinds at once to the Communicants, the Priest pronouncing these words: *This is the true Body and Blood of Christ, spill'd for thee and many more for the Remission of thy Sins, as often as thou receivest it, do it always in commemoration of Christ. God grant thou may'st receive it for thy Salvation.* They communicate on *Saturday*, after having prepared themselves by Fasting, and making a Confession of their Sins. Some of the *Muscovites* keep their Beds all that day, to avoid the committing of any Sins: they also give the Communion to little Babes, but only half the quantity, unless they are come to the 7th year of Age. They also give it to dying Persons after the Extreme Unction, which they use in the same sense as the *Roman Catholicks*. After the sick Person has received the Communion, they give him neither Food nor any Remedies, unless there be apparent signs of his Recovery. No body is admitted to the Holy Communion, but what has prepared himself by the Confession of all his Sins, and fasting 8 days before; during which, they ought to live upon nothing but Bread and Small-beer. The Rules to be observed in the *Muscovite* Fasts are, (1.) To abstain from Flesh and all that has any relation to it, as Eggs, Butter, Cheese, Milk, and such like. (2.) To abstain from strong Liquors. (3.) To abstain from the Pleasures of Marriage. If the *Roman Catholicks* were ty'd up to such hard meat in their Fasts, the *Muscovites* would have no occasion to ridicule them, as they do. Besides their ordinary Fast-days, they keep four great Fasts in the Year; the first is of 40 days before *Easter*, the same with the *Lent* of the *Romans*: They have also a kind of Carnaval, which lasts 8 days, and is call'd by them the *Butter-week*, because after these are expired, they are forbidden to eat either Butter, Eggs, Cheese, or Milk. The second begins 8 days after *Whitsuntide*, and ends at the Feast of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*. The third is kept in Honour of the Virgin *Mary*, and begins *August* 1. and holds till the Feast of the *Assumption of the Virgin Mary*. The fourth begins *Novemb.* 12. and continues till *Christmas*. They make this difference betwixt these Fasts, that they look upon the first as commanded by Christ, and upon the other three only as a humane Institution, to mortifie their Bodies by Abstinence. During the time of their *Butterweek*, or Carnaval, they commit almost incredible Excesses in Drinking, which draws them into all manner of Crimes; so that it is not safe for any body to pass the Streets, Murthers being so frequent at that time in the City of *Muscow*, that I have seen some hundreds lying in the place where they expose the dead Carcasses of murthered persons to publick view, that their Friends may take care for their Interments; which are perform'd here with a great deal of very odd Ceremonies, as is evident from the Accounts given us by those who have visited those parts, and therefore needless to be repeated here. As to the state of the Soul, after the same is separated from the Body, they believe, That the Death of a Christian is no more than a Distemper, which having deprived him of this Life, makes way for him to enter into an eternal Paradise without being molested by the evil Spirits dwelling in the Air; who finding the Souls of the Just as bright shining as the Sun by the good Works they have performed upon Earth, have no power to oppose her passage. They believe that this Grace is acquired to us by the Birth and Incarnation of *Jesus Christ*, even the Righteous being before that time involved in eternal misery: This they pretend to prove by St. *Paul's* words, (*Rom.* 5.) when he says, *That Jesus Christ has by his coming upon earth broken the power of death, delivered the righteous out of Hell, and carried them in triumph with him into Heaven.* Upon which Head they say, that the Souls of the Righteous do till the Day of Judgment dwell with the Angels of Peace, and those of the Unrighteous with the Angels of Darkness, the first spending their time in praying for the approach of the Day of Judgment, that they may satisfie themselves in the Contemplation of God, the others living in continual terror of their approaching Damnation: all which sufficiently shews, that they will admit of a Purgatory in the same sense as the *Roman Catholicks* do. We will conclude this Treatise with giving you the main Points in which the *Muscovites* differ

differ from the *Greek* Religion, though they boast themselves to be the true Off-spring of that Ancient Church. (1.) They don't admit the Preaching of the Gospel. (2.) They don't look upon other Christians as such, and therefore re-baptize them, if they embrace their Communion. (3.) They allow divorces upon slender Pretences. (4.) They despise a second and third Marriage, and make the fourth Criminal. (5.) They pay divine Veneration to their *Czar*. (6.) They put too great a value upon a Monastick life. (7.) They have banish'd Musick out of their Churches. (8.) They attribute a secret Vertue to their Bells, in reference to divine Service. (9.) They have too large an Opinion concerning *Free-will*. (10.) They reject the Ten Commandments. (11.) They worship the Images of the deceased Saints. (12.) They don't keep their Holy days with any real Devotion. (13.) They don't punish Adultery. (14.) They deny that the Holy Ghost proceeds at the same time, both from Father and Son. (15.) They maintain a gross Ignorance in their Religion, there being few among them, who learn to say the Lord's Prayer, and the Apostle's Creed. (16.) They pray for the Dead. (17.) In their Communion they make use of leavened Bread, and warm Wine and Water mix'd together. (18.) They give in the Holy Sacrament the Body and Blood of Christ not separately, but all at once in a Spoon. (19.) They give the same also to Infants. (20.) They lay too much stress upon the exercise of good Works. (21.) They maintain, that the Righteous, were condemn'd to Hell before the Birth of Christ. (22.) They believe that the Souls of the Righteous don't see the Face of God, before the Resurrection. (23.) They give to the Dead a certain Testimonial of their good behaviour in this World, sign'd by the Patriarch or Bishop of the place where they die, to serve them as a pass to be given to St. *Peter*.

TRAVELS

Into divers Parts of

ASIA and *EUROPE*,

Undertaken by the *French* King's Command, to discovera New way by Land into *China*; by Father *Averil*, of the Order of *Jesus*. Done out of *French*.

CHAP. VIII.

Father Averil's *Travels into* Armenia.

1685. AMONG all the Eastern Countries, which have received the Gospel, the Kingdom of *China* deserves our particular care, by reason of the great Number of *Proselytes*, who from the darkness of *Paganism*, are brought over to enjoy the Light of the Christian Religion. And as either by Age or other Infirmities, those who labour in the Vineyard of Christ in those Parts, are diminish'd in their number every Year, the vast extent of the Country, in which they have planted the Christian Faith, requires a constant aid and supply for those who are not able alone to bear the Burthen that lies so heavy upon their Shoulders. 'Tis true, no care had been wanting of late years, to supply this defect, by sending from time to time New Missionaries into those Parts, but, what with Pirates, Shipwracks, Diseases and other Inconveniencies attending such long Navigations, it having been found, that (according to the exact Computation of Father *Couplet*, who lived a Millionary 30 years in *China*) of 600 *Jesuits*, who were since the reception of the *Jesuits* in *China*, sent thither by Sea in that quality, not above 100 arriyed safely there; the best expedient, to remedy so great a loss for the future, was thought to find out a Passage by Land into *China*; As every body who had any share in the Conversion of Infidels, was very forward to Contribute what in him lay to promote so good a design, I was one of those who presented my self to Prosecute it, with all my Power, and having receiv'd Encouragement suitable to my endeavours from the Superiour Powers, I have for these 5 years last past, with a great deal of toil Travelled all over *Turky*, *Persia*, *Armenia*, the *Southern Tartary*, *Muscovy*, both *Persia*, and *Moldavia*. After I left *Paris*, I went to *Monmontre* where in Company of Father *Couplet* being got to *Lyons*, I left him there and continued my Journey to *Marseilles*, where having met with a Brother, a Priest, spurr'd on with the same design of propagating the Christian Religion in the Eastern Countries, we both embark'd in a Vessel of St. *Malo's* bound for *Civita Vecchia*, and in a few days, happily arriving there, continu'd our Journey to *Rome*. Father *Charles de Novelle*, then General of the Jesuits, was very ready to grant our request, and having admitted my Brother into the same Society, we made all the haste we could to *Leghorn*, where we embark'd in a

1685. Vessel the 13th of *Jan.* 1685. bound for the East in Company of a Man of VVar, call'd the *Thundering Jupiter*, with so fair a Gale, that the next day we lost sight of the Isles of *Capraja*, *Elba* and *Sardignia*. But this happiness did not last long, for after a calm of some days, we were 21 *Jan.* surprised by a most dreadful Tempest within sight of the Isle of *Candia*, which brought our Vessel into so deplorable a Condition, that the Sea-men being quite tired out with the continual Fatigues, began to give us all over for lost; VVe did all we could to Encourage them, not to despair, and to have recourse both to their Prayers, and usual Labours, which had such an Influence over them, that after many had made their Confession and received the Sacrament in Honour of the Blessed Virgin, they began afresh to make good the Vessel against the Violences of the VVaves, and the Violence of the VVinds abating (which was soon after silenced by a calm) we steer'd our Course towards the Isle of *Cyprus*, with such Success, that within 2 days after we discovered that Coast, and as we had agreed with the Man of VVar, before our Departure from *Leghorn*, to meet in the Road of *Lerneca*, in that Island, we came to an Anchor the 25th of *Jan.* But not meeting there with the *Thundring Jupiter* as we expected, she being the nimbler Sailer, we put into *Lerneca*, not questioning but that we should learn some News from her, ere long. *Lerneca*, (if one may guess by the spaciousness of its Ruins) was formerly of very considerable extent, but is now no more than a Village, seated about a quarter of a Mile to the S. from the Sea-shoar of the Isle of *Cyprus*, being inhabited by some Merchants, who drive a considerable Trade here. There are two Convents here, one belonging to the Fathers of the *Holy-Land*, who were *Spaniards*, and the other to the *Capuchines*, who being *French*, we were kindly Entertained by them, which made us forget part of our past hardship.

1685.

500 Jesuits lost going to *China*.

A design of finding out a way by Land into *China*.

1685. The Author sets Sail from *Leghorn* for the East.

They are surprised by a Tempest.

Come to an Anchor in Road.

Fertility of the Isle of *Cyprus*.

This Island may for Fertility and Plenty compare with any part of the VVorld, their VVines being very Excellent, and the Fruit extraordinary Delicious; Of VVild fowl they have vast store, and among the rest those call'd *Francolins*, or a certain Red-legg'd Fowl, of which they have two kinds, those that live in the high grounds being not unlike our Partridges, the second living near the Rivers, and feeding upon Fish. The only thing that seems to be wanting here for the Necessity or Conveniency of humane Life, is fresh water, of which there is no more than one Spring in the whole Island, and that near the Sea-side, notwithstanding which it has a sweet and agreeable Taste; all the rest are brackish.

Some Passengers put their Curiosity.

The Curiosity some of our Passengers had to take a view of a little Fort, very carelelly guarded by the *Turks* near the Sea-shoar, had like have cost them very dear, for one of the *Turkish* Soldiers perceiving them at a distance to enter the said Fort, call'd to his

and

1685. aid some of his Companions, and fell upon them with Cudgels, with such Violence, that had it not been for some of the *French* Consuls Servants, who by chance, but very luckily, came that way, they had been in danger of having their Brains knock'd out. Some few days after the *Thundring Jupiter* arriving, we reimbark'd, in order to steer our Course in Company of another Vessel from *Marseilles*, we met with in the Road of *Lerneca*, for *Alexandretta*. Having a fair Wind, we soon found our selves at *Nore* just against the Gulph of *Alexandretta*, near the Entrance of which is a Cape or Point of Land which jets out a great way into the Sea, call'd by the *Arabians*, *Canzir*, or the *Wild Boar*, because it resembles a Wild Boars-head. But as we were endeavouring to double the Cape, an unlucky accident befel us by the carelessness of our Pilot, who with an intention to give notice to the other Vessel, what Course they should take, bore up so near to it, that by the Current the 2 Ships ran foul upon one another, and the Rigging being entangled, we were in imminent Danger of being lost, had we not prevented it, by cutting our Masts, Yards, and Tackle; By this means having disentangled our selves, we arrived the next day safely in the Port of *Alexandretta*.

They arrived at Alexandretta

This Town, which is by the *Turks* call'd *Scanderoon*, lies in an unwholesome Air upon the Sea-shoar, by reason of a ridge of Mountains, which enclose it on the Land side, and consequently hinder the free Passage of the Air, to qualifie that which comes from the Sea, and is very thick, which causes malignant Distempers in the Summer. Notwithstanding which we were forced to continue here 3 whole Weeks, the continual Marches of the *Asiatick* Soldiers towards *Constantinople*, rendering the Roads at that time very unsafe thereabouts. The first thing we saw worth our Observation here, was one of the flying Messengers sent immediately after our arrival to *Aleppo*, to give notice of it to the Merchants in that place; which is done thus: Against the time, that the Merchants of *Aleppo* expect any Foreign Ships to come to *Scanderoon*, they send by a Servant a Pidgeon, which has Young ones, to one of their Correspondents there; who having inform'd himself of what Goods the Vessel has brought, and what else is thought necessary to be known, writes Letters of advice about it, which being fastned to the Pidgeons Neck, she is carried to the top of a Hill, whence without fail she goes to *Aleppo*. The Pidgeon we saw let go, soar'd very high, without question, to discover which way she were to fly, and within 3 hours, arriv'd at *Aleppo*, which is 30 Lgs from *Scanderoon*. But all sorts of Pidgeons are not alike useful for this purpose, there being a peculiar kind, which are train'd up for this exercise, in most Factories of the *Levant*, where they are frequently made use of for that Service. We saw at a distance the Pyramid, which not far from this place was erected in remembrance of the miraculous Deliverance of *Jonas*, who as it is supposed was thrown out upon this Shoar; but as the Vagabond *Arabians* make the Roads very unsafe hereabouts, we were contented to see it at a distance.

A Pidgeon sent with Letters to Aleppo.

The first *Thursday* in *Lent* being appointed for our Departure, we join'd with a *Caravan*, consisting of 40 Persons bound for *Aleppo*; and accordingly under the Conduct of a certain *Turk*, whose honesty we were all well satisfy'd of, made the first day only 4 Lgs to the Village of *Beilan*, and the next day cross'd the most Fertile and Pleasant plain of *Antioch*, being near 67 Lgs long, watered with many Brooks, and covered all over with Cattle, the Pasturage being so good and plentiful here, that the Cattle are brought thither from all the Circumjacent places to be fatted. We pass'd the River *Orontes*, the same day, and took up our Quarters the same Night in a Village of the *Curdes*, which as it is said, has given its Name to that Nation, who living upon Rapine and Plunder, we were forced to keep a strict Guard, for fear of a surprise. Our next days journey proved very troublesome, by reason of the raggedness of the Roads, and what increased our grief, was to behold the Ruins of so many goodly Ancient Monasteries, which were in former Ages the Receptacles of so many devout Persons; we also discovered at a distance the famous Pillar, erected in Memory of the rigorous Penance perform'd there by *Simon* the *Stylite*. We arrived in good time at *Aojar*, a large Borough, where the Conducter of our *Caravan* treated us at his own House.

Sunday the 11 of *March*, we arrived at *Aleppo*, where we were received with more than ordinary Demonstrations of joy and kindness by the *Jesuits*, and the Superior of the Missions of *Syria*, having represented unto me the great necessity of sending some Missionaries into *Curdistan*, I was prevailed upon, (notwithstanding the great desire I had, to go into *Persia*, and thence into *China*, and the great grief at the separation from my Brother; who was design'd for the same Mission, but now likely to go another way) to consent to go for some months into that Country, pursuant to which Resolution, I made every thing ready for my Departure, with a numerous *Caravan*, which was just then preparing to depart for *Betlis*, the Metropolis of *Curdistan*; among others that were going with this *Caravan*, one who professing himself a *Roman Catholick*, and a particular Friend to our Society, and being well versed in the Eastern Languages, which I then understood not, offered me all the kindness that lay in his Power, which I being willing enough to accept of, I comply'd with his rigorous Observance of the *Lent*, feeding upon nothing but Biscuit, Dates, and some dry'd Fruits, the whole journey, which is near 250 Lgs. 1685. Come to Aleppo.

We left *Aleppo* the 24th of *March*, on *Thursday* in the Evening, (because the *Turks* look upon it as Ominous to begin a journey upon a *Friday*, and pass'd that Night but very indifferently, by reason of the hurlyburley of the People that composed the *Caravan*, who were busie in setting every thing for their best Convenience, which hindred us from sleeping. But next Morning by break of day every thing being put in good Order, the whole *Caravan* consisting of 200 Persons, left the *Caravansera*, or rather *Caverns*, where we had pass'd the Night, and after we had cross'd divers Desart Plains of *Syria*, in sight of the still famous City of *Edessa* (known to the *Turks*, by the Name of *Orpha*) we came to the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, over against the little City of *Bire* where we cross'd it in a flat bottom'd Ferry boat, being in that place about 300 Paces broad. We no sooner arrived here, but I was convinced by Experience of the Truth of what one of my Acquaintance, who had Travel'd in the *East* told me, that it was more convenient to make choice of a *Turk*, than a Christian for a Conductor, the last having neither so much Honesty nor Courage to protect you against the Impositions put commonly upon Travellers. Leave Aleppo.

The *Roman Catholick Armenian*, I spoke of, gave me I say sufficient proof of this, by combining with the *Turks* belonging to the ferry Boats, (the ordinary places where Customs are paid in *Turky*) and redeeming part of his Goods at my Expence; Besides this the Desart Plains of *Mesopotamia*, which we entred into soon after we had pass'd the *Euphrates*, and the rigorous *Lent* I was obliged to observe, put me so much out of conceit with the use of a *Caravan*, that had not my Intention been fully fix'd to pursue that great Work of the Conversion of Souls, I should soon have been overwhelm'd with the toils of the Journey.

For to give you a true account of the Use of a *Caravan*, you must be on Horse back with break of day, and so Travel till Noon, or till you come to a place, where you meet with some refreshment for Men and Beasts, where perhaps you tarry 2 hours, and Feast in the mean while upon a piece of Cheese, dry'd Fruits, or take perhaps a little Coffee, this done every body gets on Horse-back again, and so on they Travel till Night, when they encamp in a kind of an enclosure or entrenchment, which being surrounded with Ropes, the Horses belonging to the *Caravan* are ty'd to it, and the Baggage being put in the middle, every body gets as near to it as he can, and there having taken his place, eats perhaps a Plate of Rice for his Supper, and so goes to sleep. But, as in those Desarts the *Caravans* are frequently exposed to the danger of being robb'd by the *Arabians*, they have certain Persons appointed, who patrol continually in the Night time, and by hollowing give notice both to the *Caravan* and the Enemy, that they are upon their Guard. After 15 days journey from *Aleppo*, we arrived at *Diarbeker*, the Capital City of *Mesopotamia*, situate in a very pleasant Plain, upon the Banks of the River *Tygris*; It is surrounded by a goodly Wall, built by one of the *Greek* Emperors, and carries on a considerable Trade in Calicoe The use of a Caravan.

1685. lico and Goats Leather, with *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Muscovy*. It was no small Comfort to me, after the Toil of my Journey, to see the People here to exceed in Affability and Courtesie most of the *Turks* in other Provinces, even their Wives being allow'd to go abroad a walking, and conversing with the Christian Women, a thing not allow'd of in any other Province of the *Ottoman* Empire. According to their wonted Civility, the Receiver of the Customs had no sooner understood that I was a *Frenchman*, and was desirous to take up my Lodgings in the Convent of the *Capuchins*, but he took care to have me conducted thither; and these good Fathers, who for these 15 Years last past have made very considerable Improvements there, by the means of their professing of Physick, received me with so much real Joy and Tenderness, as made me soon forget the Toilsomness of my last Journey. But what added most to my satisfaction, was the sight of Father *Barnaby*, a Jesuit, who being the first Person who by his Letters had instill'd into me those Sentiments I had concerning the Passage by Land into *China*, the Hopes of receiving full Instructions upon that Head from his own Mouth, could not but be infinitely acceptable to me, besides that we had formerly been very good Acquaintance, and belonged to the same College. But what with the change of our Habits, and the alteration of our Countenances after so long a Separation, we had several Meetings before we knew one another, till at last after an intentive Examination of our Features, we with an unexpressible Joy began to recal to Mind one another, and to renew our former Acquaintance. After the first Demonstrations of our mutual Satisfaction, I began to enter into the Discourse concerning his former Proposition of opening a new way by *Land* into *China*. He was so overjoy'd at the good Tidings I brought him, how his Project had been encourag'd in *France*, that upon the delivery of the Orders which I had brought along with me for that purpose, he could not refrain from Tears; and having imparted to me his whole Mind upon this Design, he soon engaged me to be his Companion in so great a Work, whatever Difficulties I might meet with in the Execution of it. But as he was at that time upon his Journey to *Aleppo*, and I was commanded to *Betlis*, we could not proceed any farther during our stay at *Diarbeker*, than to concert the best Measures for the Execution of our Design, with all possible Conveniency; and so each of us rejoining his *Caravan*, he took his way to *Aleppo*, and I, (after having pass'd the Stone Bridge over the *Tigris* a Mile from *Diarbeker*) that of *Armenia*.

The next time we had occasion to cross this River, had almost cost me my Life: For the Ferry-boat which was to carry us over, being a certain Machine composed only of many Goat-skins blown up, fasten'd, and join'd together, and the 4 sides with as many long Poles ty'd very close together, and covered afterwards with many Branches of Trees laid across. The Baggage being ferry'd over first, every one belonging to the *Caravan*, with the Bridle of his Horse (which were all unsaddled for the better conveniency of Swimming) got into the Boat as fast as they could; and as I was one of the most forward, and not forewarned of the Danger there was in pressing these Goat-skins too much, I happen'd to tread with my Foot upon one of them, which was not carefully enough covered with the Branches: But one of the Ferry-men perceiving my Error, without any more ado, threw me backwards upon the Bank of the River, where he made me tast the Effects of his Indignation.

An odd kind of Ferry-Boat.

However after we had pass'd the *Tigris*, we had another difficulty to surmount, which was another Chanel of the same River made by its overflowing its Banks, which being very broad, but fordable, I follow'd the rest on Horse-back; but was scarce come into the middle, when my Horse being none of the strongest, and not able to resist the Impetuosity of the Current, threw me into the Water, the Stream of which carrying me a good way below where the rest pass'd, I had the good Fortune to escape being trod to pieces under the Horses Feet, and by the help of some belonging to the *Caravan*, to be taken in time out of the Water. Having escap'd this Danger, we were threaten'd with another; for no sooner saw we our selves on the other side of the River, but we discovered at a distance a Body of 5000 or 6000 *Curds*, who being no less addicted to plundring and robbing than the *Arabians*, we were under an indispensible Necessity to ride as fast as we could possible for 6 hours to a certain Village for our Security, and I, all wet as I was, to follow them in a cold Season of the Year; which with the violent Shiverings, and divers Swoonings, reduced me to such a condition, that had it not been for the Charity of a Christian, at whose House I lodged the next following Night, and who omitted nothing that might recover my strength, I should not have been in a Capacity to continue my Journey the next Day, when after 2 Lgs Travel, we entred the Mountains of *Armenia*, and saw the Snow lie in some Parts as high as a Pikes length. 1685.

The Author like to be drowned.

Betwixt these Mountains is a narrow passage, thro' which we rode for a certain time, near a River that discharges it self into the Valley which divides the two Hills, where I observed a thing which appear'd to me very singular, but as the Inhabitants assur'd me, what happens every Year. This was a Bridge of Snow; for the Snow being by the Heat of the Sun dissolved in the Mountains, is carried with such Impetuosity into this River, that it makes a kind of a Mound, which stopping the Current for some time till the Water forces its Passage, makes a kind of an Arch; which being harden'd by the Frost, serves for a Bridge even to Beasts of Burthen, as long as the Cold continues. *A Bridge of Snow.*

We were for 8 Days together entangled in these Mountains, the Snow being sometimes so deep, that one or other of our Horses fell every step they took; and the Steepiness of the Rocks being such, that often we were forced to clamber up to them upon all Four, without any Path or Footstep; but at last we arrived safely at *Betlis*, the 22d of *April*, a Month after our setting out from *Aleppo*. I was very kindly received there by Father *Roche*, and spent great part of my time in learning the *Turkish* Language; but soon after received Orders to quit this Place, and to go to *Erzirum*, where there was a great Prospect of making a considerable Progress in our Mission, by the Authority of the *Bassa* of *Van*, who was very desirous to have a Jesuit to attend him as a Physician. I was very willing to submit to the Reasons alledged for this purpose; but as the *Emir*, or Chief Commander here, look'd upon us as very serviceable to himself, we had but little hopes that he would part with us so soon; and therefore saw our selves under an absolute necessity of quitting *Betlis*, without giving the least notice of it to any body: But in this we were prevented by the Christians, who having got some scent of the Matter, they made their Applications to the *Emir*, and told him so many advantageous things of us, that he sent for us, in order to engage us to stay at *Betlis*: But by the means of a Watch which I presented him with, we had the good Fortune to obtain leave to depart; and accordingly engaged with a *Caravan*, which was then ready to go from *Betlis* to *Erzirum*, with Merchandizes design'd for *Persia*. Our Journey which lasted about 8 Days, was not attended by any sinister Accident, except that 5 *Curds* at our passage over the *Euphrates*, surprized and drove away some of our Horses; and no sooner came we to *Erzirum*, but, to my great satisfaction, I met there with Father *Barnaby*, according to the Appointment he made me before in his Letter. *Arrives at Betlis.*

The City of *Erzirum*, or *Arzeron*, belonging to the *Turks*, is situate upon the Frontiers of *Persia*, in a most delightful Plain; which being 7 or 8 Lgs in compass, is inclosed by little Hills, which rising insensibly one after another, contain the Sources of three Rivers that I have seen of the 4 that the Holy Scripture assures us, to have watered the Terrestrial Paradise; which makes the Situation of this City one of the most pleasant in the World. Its bigness is near the same as that of *Marseilles*, fortify'd with a double Wall after the ancient manner, and a small Citadel, which being built upon an Ascent, commands the City. Its Suburbs are large and populous, the Air very wholesome, and they have great plenty of most excellent Water; which has invited thither many Inhabitants of all Nations, and especially *Armenians*, who retain a peculiar Respect for this City, as having been the Seat of their Kings. The Ruine of the Royal Palace, with some beautiful Remains of the Patriarchal Church, dedicated to St. *John*, being to be seen to this Day; and the good Disposition we found in the *Armenians* to quit their Schisms, was none of the least Motives, that made us conceive extraordinary hopes of this our Settlement here, which in effect proved so successful, that by the assistance of a certain Renegade (who had, notwithstanding this, retain'd *At Erzum.*

some

some favourable Inclinations for the Christian Religion, and had given great Recommendations of us to all such as he conversed withal) we were very well considered at *Erzirum*; the *Armenians* especially, to shew their Acknowledgment, ordered our Names, and the Day and Year of our Arrival to be inserted in their Publick Records; many among them renouncing their Schisms, and by their frequent coming to the Sacraments, and other Religious Exercises, giving us sufficient Proofs, that during our stay of 6 Months at *Erzirum*, our Labour had not been bestow'd in vain.

F. Barnaby goes to Irvan.

But as Father *Barnaby* and I were engaged in the great Design of propagating the Gospel among the *Tartars*, he went some time before me to *Irvan*, where his Presence was necessary for some time, for the better Establishment of a Settlement made there a few Years before by some of our Society; and to concert Measures with certain *Indian* Father (which frequently resort thither) for the more convenient Prosecution of our grand Design, whilst I pass'd some Months longer to attain to some Perfection in the *Turkish* Language.

An Earthquake at Erzirum.

At last having received positive Orders to quit *Erzirum*, the City was a few Days before my Departure surprized by a violent Earthquake about Midnight, which however continued not for above half a quarter of an Hour, but return'd tho' with much less violence for 8 Days after, much about the same Hour it began at first. The only Remedy the Inhabitants have against those Earthquakes (which are very frequent in *Armenia*, by reason of the vast number of Mountains) is, to live in Tents in the open Fields as long as these Shakings last; notwithstanding which they are surprized so on a sudden, that whole Villages with all their Inhabitants have been swallowed up by them; an Instance of which was given me in a Village not above 7 or 8 Lgs from that City.

The Earthquake being over, I made all possible speed to meet with *F. Barnaby*; but the Roads being very bad, and the desire I had to come to the Frontiers of *Persia* made me think this Journey very tedious, and had almost proved abortive by the Villainy of the *Turkish* Guards on the Frontiers, who finding by my Equipage that I was no Merchant, and consequently took me for some Person of Note under a Disguise, were resolv'd to satisfie their Avarice by squeezing a good Summ of Money out of me; which I refusing to comply with, they told me, that they would secure me, and carry me for a Spy to the *Bassa* of *Kars*, where I might perhaps pay with my Head for my Stubbornness. But as by this time I was well versed in the *Turkish* Language, and well inform'd of the Customs of these sort of People, I told them that I was not to be bugbear'd by these Menaces; and that as for the *Bassa* of *Kars* I had no great reason to fear him, because I had seen his Head some Days before carried towards *Constantinople*; which so daunted their Courage, that they let me pass with the *Caravan* the next Morning; and we soon after entred the Borders of *Persia*, extremely well satisfied with the Civilities we receiv'd from the Inhabitants there, who congratulated our happy Arrival there, and the good Fortune we had in escaping the Hands of the *Turkish Harpies*. As there is a mortal Antipathy betwixt the *Turks* and *Persians*, founded not only upon Reasons of State, but also upon the different Interpretations these two Nations have received of the *Alcheran*, and some other Religious Ceremonies (too long to be inserted here) these last were so greatly overjoy'd at the News they received from us of the Victory obtained by the Christians against the *Turks*, that they made Illuminations and Bonfires; but what comforted me most, was, that the nearer we came to *Irvan*, I saw several Crosses erected upon the Roads leading to that City, but especially at a certain large Burrough of the *Upper Armenia*, call'd *Ichiriazin*, 4 Lgs from *Irvan*. The *Turks* give it the Name of *Leckliſſe*, i. e. *Three Churches*, because it has 2 other Churches, near the great one from whence the Place takes its Name.

Ichiriazin the Primipal seat of the Armenians.

This great Church, where is the Residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, within a fair Monastery, containing about 50 or 60 Monks, is built within the Enclosure of the said Convent in a very fair Court; the Cells of the Monks, being built round about it in form of a Half Moon. It is dedicated to the *Incarnate Word*, which (according to Tradition) gave the Draught of it to St. *Gregory*, sirnam'd the *Illuminator*, who was constituted the first Patriarch of the *Armenians* by Pope *Silvester*. The other 2 which are not so magnificent, and about 800 Paces each from the former, are consecrated to 2 holy *Roman* Virgins, *Ripsima* and *Cayana*, who flying for shelter into *Armenia* during the 9th Persecution, suffered Martyrdom in the same Places where these Churches stand. The great Church has a great number of consecrated Vessels, Crosses, and Lamps, both of Gold and Silver belonging to it.

In our way from *Ichiriazin* to *Irvan*, we had a sight of the famous Mount *Ararat*, where *Noah*'s Ark is supposed to have rested after the Deluge. *Strays* makes this Mountain not to be above 50 Lgs from the *Caspian Sea*, whereas it is at least 150 Lgs; but the fabulous Relations he gives us of his Passage over this Mountain, which according to the best Account I received of it during my stay at *Irvan*, is inaccessible, gives us great reason to believe that he is frequently upon the Romantick Strain in the Relations of his Travels. Journal of his Travels.

CHAP. IX.

Father Averil's *Travels into some Parts of* Tartary.

NOtwithstanding I was, as I told you, retarded for some time in my main Design of finding out the way by Land into *China*; yet meeting happily again with F. *Barnaby* at *Irvan*, we both left no Stone unturn'd to prosecute our Design; and after diligent Examination of those several Roads which lead into *China*, we at last pitch'd upon that of *Astrachan*, as the safest and most convenient of all the rest, because we were sure to meet there with some *Caravan* or other, which go from thence 3 or 4 times a-year for *Bokara* or *Smarnand*, whither the *Muscovites* and *Toasbees* drive a considerable Trade. Accordingly having made what Preparations we thought fit, especially of such Ornaments, as belong to saying Mass, we left *Irvan* the 23d of *April*, 1686. being clad in *Georgian* Habits (which is in great Esteem among the *Persians*) in the Company of 2 *Armenian* Merchants, who were to conduct us to *Gangea*.

The Author leaves Irvan. 1686.

The Night before our Departure we felt the Effects of a violant Earthquake, about 8 in Evening; but as it lasted but a Moment, it more alarm'd than hurt us, and after having Travell'd 4 Lgs the first Days Journey, we lodged that Night at the House of an *Armenian* Catholick in a goodly Borough, where F. *Barnaby* was stung by a *Scorpion*, as he was asleep upon Carpets laid for us, according to the Custom of the *Eastern Countries*. This Accident put me into an extraordinary fright, which however soon past, when I saw my Companion squeeze the *Scorpion* it self (the most Sovereign Remedy against his own Poison) upon the affected part, which being afterwards covered with a little Treacle, he rested so quietly the remaining part of the Night, that we continued our Journey the next Morning, and without any sinister Accident entred the Province of *Gurgistan*, which being a Country very populous and pleasant, and inhabited by many Christians, we travell'd with a great deal of ease and pleasure for 4 Days successively; when we came within sight of that long Ridge of Mountains, which divide *Persia* from *Georgia*, and on this side of it, with a Lake of about 80 Lgs in circumference, which affords the largest and best Salmon Trouts in the World. In an Island of this Lake, the *Armenians* have a very convenient and pleasant Monastery, whither the *Armenian* Patriarch commonly Gurgistan.

banishes

banishes such Monks, as have been found guilty of some Enormity or other. Having travell'd for a whole day along this Lake, we entred the Mountains, which being covered with little Woods and Groves, and full of Wild fowl, our Passage over them was Pleasant enough, till coming into a Christian Village, we were Alarm'd by the Inhabitants, who advised us to make the best of our way unto an adjacent Hill they shew'd us, to avoid the falling into the hands of certain Tories, who infested these Roads for some-time; Neither was it long, before we found part of what they had told us to be nothing but Truth; for, no sooner were we got to the top of the said Hill, but we saw a good Troop of *Armenians*, some with Slings, others with Clubs, and such like Arms, to advance towards us; but finding us to look unconcern'd without the least shew of being told, that we were Missionaries going to *China*, they strove to out do one another in Civilities towards us; and inform'd us, that some *Georgian* Gentlemen having about 18 days before revolted from the *Chan* of *Tiflis*, were forced to quit their Horses, and keep in the Field, till they could make their Peace. Thus we continued our journey unmolested towards *Gangea*, where we arrived the next day in the Afternoon. The City of *Gangea* is one of the best of all *Persia*, situate in a very Pleasant plain 25 or 30 Lgs long, watered by the Conflux of a great many Rivers. As we arrived there in the very hight of the Spring, so we feasted our Eyes with that Infinite number of Groves and Trees, in the midst of which you see a multitude of Houses, which affords so delightful a Prospect at a distance, that the *Persians* have bestow'd upon it, the name of *the Garden of the Empire*. Its Market places are very spacious and magnificent, Vaulted all about, in which a Chamber is assigned for every sort of Merchandice, and this City by reason of its Advantageous situation for Trade is always crouded with Strangers. Just as we were coming into the place, we found the whole City in a hurlibury, occasioned by the reviling Expressions of a certain *Persian Mollah*, who having inveight against the *Turkish* Prophets, those of that Nation had taken up Arms, and invaded the *Mosques*, with intention to Revenge themselves upon the *Persians*, that were at their Devotions there: but the *Chan* having timely notice thereof took care to stop their fury. After a stay of 3 days at *Gangea*, we departed there with a small *Caravan* of Christian Marchants; towards *Schamachie*, crossing those most Pleasant plains which extend from one City to the other. In our first days journey we pass'd the River *Kur*, which rising in *Georgia*, and passing through several Pains, Disembogoes into the *Caspian-Sea*. The next day we were likely to have met with a stop in our intended journey, by the meeting with a *Persian Chapar* or Messenger sent by the *Chan of Schamachie*; and as these Couriers among many other Priviledges, have the liberty of taking away what Horses are necessary for him, from Travellers upon the Road, so this having surprised us in a Valley were we where baiting our Horses, he took the best of them, and went his way; but being call'd back, a piece of Money, which we slip't into his hands, made him so pliable as to restore it to us without any further trouble; Glad we had got of so well, we continue our journey without any further Obstacle to *Schemachie*, a City which might formerly challenge in rank among the best, and most populous of all *Persia*, till about 12 years ago it was almost laid desolate, by a most furious Earthquake; notwithstanding it is computed to contian as yet about 60000 Inhabitants; one half of which are *Armenians*, the rest *Persians*, *Indians*, *Muscovites*, *Georgians*, *Turks*, and *Circassians*, whom the vicinity of the *Caspian Sea*, and the goodness of the Country has drawn into those parts. It was this great Concourse of Strangers of all Nations, that made us wish heartily, that some Missionaries might be settled here, and we heard since that our Prayers proved not altogether ineffectual, a certain Father of our Society, named *F. Pothier*, being settled there by Count *Syri*, in his return from *Ispahan*. The Father *Pothier*, who was one of the most accomplished Missionaries of all the *East*, had by his exemplary Life, and charming Conversation drawn so many Disciples after him, that a certain *Mahometan* of that place, enraged at this Progress of the Gospel in opposition to his false Religion, found means in the Night time to rush into his Chamber, where he stabb'd and murthered him.

Our maine aim being at this time, the Passage by Land into *China*, we were not a little rejoiced to find our selves within three days journey of it. The *Caspian Sea*, which properly in no more than a great Salt Lake, of about 800 Lgs in Compass, made by the Conflux of above 100 great Rivers, besides an infinite number of lesser ones, which discharge their Waters into it; in return of which this Lake furnishes them with vast plenty of Fish, which in tempestuous Weather, when they commonly croud in Shoales to the mouths of the Rivers. Another Observation I had occasion to make; before we had the Opportunity to embark, was to see some Seamen fetch fresh water at 2 Lgs. distance from the shoar, which I could not Attribute to any other reason, but the discharging of so many fresh water Rivers into this Lake. But what has puzzled the Brains of the most refined Naturalists is, that, notwithstanding the continual access of the Waters of so many Rivers, this Sea is not considerably augmented, or ever transgresses as its Bounds; some have been of Opinion, that the *Black Sea* draws a considerable share of those Waters into its Bosom; but that ridge of Mountains, placed betwixt these 2 Seas by Nature, seems to separate them so far as not to admit if any probability for that Assertion. On the other hand there are 2 reasons, that rather incline me to believe, that this Lake, how far remote soever from the *Persian Gulph*, discharges a great part of its Waters there; The first is; That on the South side of the *Persian Gulph*, opposite to the Province of *Kilan* are dangerous whirlpools, the noise of which as the Water is thrown into the *Gulph* is so great, occasioned by the Rapidity of the Waters, that in calm Weather it may be heard at a great distance, and consequently, these *Abysses* are avoided by the Mariners. The second is, that by the constant Experience of those inhabiting near the *Persian Gulph*, it is confirm'd, that at the end of every autumn, they observe a vast quantity of Willow Leaves thereabouts; and it being beyond all Contradiction, that this sort of Tree is not so much as known in those Southern parts of *Persia*, whereas the Northern parts bordering upon the *Caspian Lake*, and especially the Province of *Kilan* are stor'd with them near the Sea-shoar; it is more than probable, that those Leaves are not carried by the Winds from one extremity of the Empire to the other, but rather with the Waters, that carry them along through the Subterraneous Channels and Caverns to the before mentioned *Gulph*. We embark'd upon this Lake, but slenderly equipp'd but a favourable *East* Wind, and the pleasing Season of the Year, supplying the defect in an ample measure. We set sail from the Road of *Nizzava*, (a very convenient Harbour, by reason of the great plenty of Wood and Provisions, for the refitting and refreshing of Ships) and arrived after six days sail at the Mouth of the River *Wolga*, which we discovered by the freshness of the Water, for which he that discovers it first, receives a certain reward among the *Muscovites*, as in other places the Sea-men, who first discry Land. We had no sooner entred into one of the Channels of the *Wolga*, but we struk upon a sand Bank, which not a little surprised me at first, but the same being repeated several times afterwards, I imputed it rather to the shallowness of the River, than the want of care in the Mariners; However these accidents were so troublesome to us, that we were twice as long coming from the Mouth of the River to *Astracha*, (which lies not above 12 or 13 Lgs thence) than we had been in coming from *Persia* to the River.

A Description of the Caspian Sea.

Coming to the place where the *Muscovites* keep a great Fishery (out of the Revenues belonging to the *Czar*) we had orders to stop for 2 or 3 days, till we heard further from the Governor of *Astrachan*, and in the mean while spent our time in seeing the *Muscovites* catch their Strugeons; which is done in the following manner; They have driven in one of the Channels of the *Wolga*, which affords the most Fish, long Piles of Timber from one side of the Bank to the other, leaving only on one side as much Room, as serves for the Passage of Ships; little above this first row of Piles, they make others in the form of a Triangle, into which the Fish being forced by the violence of the Stream, can't only get out; but scarce bestir themselves, by reason of the narrow Compass of these Triangular Pile-works, and the bulk of their bodies. The Fisher-men who are employed thereabouts

abouts in beating the Water to frighten the Fiſh into the Trap, viſit theſe encloſures twice a day, where they ſeldom miſs of any Fiſh, through the Ears of which they thruſt a great hook, by which having drawn them above the Water, they knock out his Brains with a Hammer, and ſo carry what Fiſh they have got to the Banks of the Fiſhery, where they are gutted, and the Eggs, (of which one Sturgeon has ſometimes 200 or 300 pound) are ſalted and made into a paſte, which being known in *Europe* by the name of *Caviar*, is uſed in many Countries as a Ragou inſtead of Butter, during *Lent* time; The body of the Fiſh is ſometimes thrown away, ſometimes ſquezed for the Oile ſake, and ſometimes pickled in order to be tranſported into Foreign Countries. We were ſufficiently diverted in this kind of fiſhing, and paſs'd our time well enough, had it not been for the Gnats, which are in prodigious quantities upon the *Wolga*, and ſting both Men and Beaſt moſt prodigiouſly; of which we felt the effects more terribly than the *Muſcovites*, as being deſtitute of thoſe little Tents, they make uſe of to wrapt themſelves in, to avoid their Stings.

Caviar, how made.

They come to *Aſtrachan* 20 Jan.

At laſt, after a Plague of 4 days the Governour of *Aſtrachan*, ſent his Deputy aboard our Veſſel with Orders to come aſhoar, in a Chaloop he brought along with him for that purpoſe, which being very light and well managed by the Rowers, we ſoon got ſight of *Aſtrachan*. This City which according to the Opinion of the beſt Modern Geographers, lies at 48 deg. of N. Lit. is ſeated in one of the Iſles of the River *Wolga* about 13 Lgs from its entrance (though *Struys* would make it 50 Lgs remote thence) being fortified with a double Wall and ſome Towers, half Muſquet ſhot from one another. It is well provided with great Cannon, and a numerous Garriſon; the ground upon which the City ſtands being very gravelly. The heats are almoſt inſupportable here in the Summer, but produce great ſtore of excellent Fruits, and among the reſt moſt delicious Melons, eſpecially thoſe Water Melons, they call *Karpous*, which cool and ſquench drowth, without the leaſt fear of ſurfeiting. They have alſo Grapes, which afford them Wine, but is ſomewhat ſowriſh, beſides which they labour under this inconvenience upon this ſcore, that no body dares to gather a Grape from his own Vines, before the Governour of the place has made choice of the beſt for the *Czar*'s uſe. It is for the moſt part inhabited by *Muſcovites*, the *Armenians* and *Nagajan Tartars*, have each of them a peculiar Suburb, where they inhabit ſeparately. That of the laſt is ſurrounded with a wooden Rampart, and commanded by its peculiar Governour, who nevertheleſs receives his Orders from the *Waywode* or Chief Governour of *Aſtrachan*. Within this part ſtands alſo a *Moſque*, but the Houſes of theſe *Tartars*, of which there may be about 1000, are for the moſt part of Bullruſhes.

The *Nagajan Tartars*.

The *Calmuc Tartars*.

Not many Years ago the *Calmuc Tartars*, uſed conſtantly every Winter to make their Incurſions under the favour of the Ice and Snow, upon thoſe *Nagajan Tartars*, but as the *Muſcovites* uſe theſe laſt rather as Confederates, than Vaſſals, they have ſo Powerfully protected them by the help of their Cannon and Fire-arms, wherewith the *Calmucs* are but little acquainted hitherto, that they have of late Years, deſiſted from theſe Hoſtilities, and ſettled a good Correſpondence with the *Muſcovites*; notwithſtanding which they retain their ancient Cuſtoms of viſiting the great Plains between *Aſtrachan* and the *Caſpian-Sea* once a Year, with a body of 100000 Men, to get ſome Proviſions for their Cattle, in the more Southern parts, and to fetch the Preſents, which the *Muſcovites* rather chooſe to give them, than to put themſelves to the Charge of maintaining an Army againſt them; beſides that they are very ſerviceable in furniſhing the *Czar* with Horſes and Men in caſe of need. I happened to be at *Aſtrachan*, when theſe Vagabonds came into the Plains, to give their annual viſit, and to demand the uſual Preſents; which the Governour of *Aſtrachan* ſent forth with to their Commander in Chief, conſiſting in ſeveral Waggons loaden with Bread, *Karpons*, *Aquavitæ*, and Tobacco. Beſides theſe, there are many *Benjans* at *Aſtrachan*, who being a Generation altogether addicted to Traffick, contribute not a little towards the flouriſhing Condition of the City of *Aſtrachan*; where they have their peculiar Quarter aſſign'd them, and the free exerciſe of their Idolatrous Religion, they being *Pagans*; for the reſt they believe the Tranſ-

The *Benjans*.

migration of the Soul, which is the reaſon they will not feed upon any living Creature, but for Cows they have ſuch a reſpect, that there is ſcarce a Family but what breeds and feeds one with the ſame care as they do their Children, and if they know one that is to be kill'd, they will redeem it by buying it of the owner. They ſeem alſo to acknowledge ſome divinity in the four Elements, for before they touch any Victuals they throw ſome ſmall part thereof ſeparately into the Fire, Air, Water, and upon Earth.

A *Bokara* Merchant gives them ſome inſight into the Paſſage to *China*.

As we lodged in the Chief *Caravanſera* of Foreigners, there we met with ſome or other of all Nations in the World; and among the reſt with a certain *Tonsbeck* Merchant of *Bokara*, who having travelled 4 times from that City to *Peking*, was able to give us ſome Light, of what we ſo earneſtly deſired to know. He poſitively aſſur'd us, that the Road from the *Tonsbecs* to *China*, was neither ſo difficult nor ſo vaſtly diſtant as many People were apt to imagine; and though they were to paſs through ſeveral Deſarts, the ſame were no more troubleſome than thoſe Travellors after meet with in *Perſia* and *Turkey*, againſt the Inconveniencies of which the *Caravans*, provide themſelves with Proviſions and other Neceſſaries; He further told us, that we ſhould meet with many Places of refreſhment, and among the reſt with ſeveral *Hordes* of *Tartars*, who not knowing the value of Money, would be ſo far from doing us any injury by plundring or otherwiſe, as is frequently done by the *Arabians* and *Curds*, that they would be glad to furniſh us with what they had. He further told us, that he could not be poſitive as to the exact diſtance between *Bokara* and *Peking*, neither as to the number of Towns and Villages, through which they paſs'd, but I am ſure, ſays he, they did not ſpend above 2 Months in their journey to the Borders of *China*, whether you take the S. E. Road, through the Cities of *Samarcand*, *Kabral*, *Kachemir* and *Barantola*, or go directly E. through the middle of the *Mogul Tartars*, who though *Pagans*, are ſubject to the *Tonsbec Tartars* that are *Mahometans*. If you take the S. E. Road, the firſt City of *China*, you meet with is that of *Soczi*, which affords the beſt Rhubarb in the World; and is a Months journey from *Peking*; If you take the Eaſtern Road, the firſt City you meet with belonging to the *Chineſes* is call'd *Kokuan*, built and fortified by them on this ſide the great Wall; and ſerves as a Bulwark againſt the *Calmuc Tartars*; thence you may travel in 15 days to *Peking*. But what the moſt care is to be taken of, added he, is, to which ever of theſe 2 Cities you come, to gain the Governour by the means of ſome Preſent, without which you will ſcarce get admittance into the Empire, though ſince the *Chineſes* have opened their Sea-ports to Strangers, they are not ſo difficult as they uſed to be formerly in this Point; This is the reaſon, that moſt Merchants to make ſecure work, engage by the way one or other of the *Taiſo's* or *Tartarian* Princes, through whoſe Territories they paſs, by the allurement of ſome inconſiderable Preſent, to ſend a kind of an Envoy or Deputy to *Peking*, under whoſe Protection, the Merchants, as well as others of their Train, paſs unmoleſted, and Trade without the leaſt Moleſtation in *China*. Thus much we learn'd from this *Tonsbec Tartar*, which agreeing in all reſpects with the other Relations we had upon that account afterwards, both at *Aſtrachan* and *Muſcow*, we could not but give Credit to it; And a certain *Muſcovite* Monk of good Repute living at *Aſtrachan*, ſhew'd us the Copy of a moſt curious Journal of 3 Merchants, which had travelled from *Aſtrachan* to *Peking*, keeping the Road over *Bocara* to *Samarcand*, in which journey they had ſpent no more than 111 days; and the Cities thro' which they paſs'd being exactly the ſame mentioned by the Merchant of *Bokara*, we were fully convinced that as to the certain diſtance from hence to *China*, we have been for along time under a groſs miſtake; And this is no more, but what has of late Years been diſcovered by a certain curious Perſon of our Society, well vers'd and very exact in Aſtromonical Obſervations, who by the poſition of the *Satellites* of *Jupiter*, perceived the error of ancient Geographers, who have placed *China* above 600 Lgs farther to the Eaſt than really it is, for, taking the firſt Meridan from the Iſle of *Fez*, they account *Peking* at 165 deg. of Longitude, whereas it ſhould have been only at 132. According to this Calculation (which is ſomewhat corrected in the Great *Planiſphere* in the *Obſervatory* of *France*, it is no very difficult task to compute the true diſtance, at

leaſt within a ſome few Miles, between *Bokara*, the Capital City of the *Tousbecs*, and *Peking* the Metropolis of the *Chineſe* Empire. For taking it for granted, as it really is, that *Bokara* lies at 93 degr. of Longitu. and *Peking* at 132. And that both (according to the general Opinion of the beſt Geographers) lie very near the 40 degr. of N. Latit. it is evident that the difference of the Longitude betwixt one and t'other, is no more than 40 degr. And ſecondly, that as you travel from one to the other, you muſt almoſt go all along in the ſame parallel. Now, ſince each degree of the *Æquator* of the Earth conſiſts of 20 Lgs, and every Lge of 3000 Geometrical paces, it muſt follow, that each degree of the 40th. parallel, containing no more than 15 Lgs, and 959 Geometrical paces, it is evident that the diſtance from *Bokara* to *Peking* in a ſtrait line, can be no more than about 613 Lgs, and to *Kokutan* the firſt City of the *Chineſes* on that ſide, no more than 463. This being Demonſtrable to every ones reaſon, it is eaſie to imagine, that the way by Land into *China* is both more ſafe and ſhort, than to go by Sea, let the Wind prove never ſo favourable; and though I am not inſenſible that unforeſeen Accidents and other Circumſtances, render the practical part much more difficult than the Speculative; yet from what Experience I have had in my Travels in the Eaſt, and what has been attempted by others, before we had ſcarce the leaſt Knowledge of this Paſſage by Land into *China*, as for inſtance by *Paul* the *Venetian* and *Benedict de Goes* a *Jeſuit*, who happily arriv'd in *China*, it may eaſily be inferr'd that at this time this Paſſage is not impracticable, eſpecially if it be conſidered, that the way from *France* to *Bokara* is known beyond all Diſpute, ſo that there remains no more than one 4th. part of the way to *Peking*. For the Voyage from *Marſeilles* to *Conſtantinople* is commonly perform'd in a month, thence to *Teflis* by the *Black-Sea*, about 8 or 10 days ſail more; and from thence to *Erzirum* no more than 7 or 8. From *Erzirum* to *Irvan* the *Caravans* go in 12 or 13 days, and thence to *Tauris* (the *Ecbatana* of the ancient *Medes*) much about the ſame time. From this City which is the ſecond in rank in the *Perſian* Empire, and famous for its Traffick all over the Eaſt, are 2 different ways to the *Tousbecs*; the firſt and ſhorteſt is through the Province of *Kilan* whither you may go in 3 weeks at moſt, and embarking upon the Southern part of the *Caſpian-Sea*, call'd the *Sea of Kilan*, you may enter the *Oraxus*, which waſhes the Walls of *Bokara*. The ſecond Road paſſes through *Iſpahan*, the Metropolis of all *Perſia*, which though the longeſt yet is the moſt Commodious, by reaſon of the many Envoys that are ſent continually from the King of *Perſia*, to the *Tartar* Princes of the *Tousbecs*, and from him again to the *Perſian* Court, to adjuſt the Differences, that ariſe frequently upon the Frontiers; by which means it is eaſie enough to ſlip into the Train of theſe Publick Miniſters, who commonly perform their journey betwixt the two Cities of *Iſpahan* and *Bokara* in 6 weeks time.

The diſtance between *Bokara* and *Peking*.

But to return to *Aſtrachan*; *F. Barnaby* and I having been made ſenſible that there was a Paſſage from *Aſtrachan* to we *China*, reſolved to take the Opportunity of the next *Caravan* of *Muſcovites*, which was preparing to go for *Samarcand*, a journey of 40 days, but as we were upon the point of leaving *Aſtrachan*, the noiſe of a War betwixt the *Tousbecs* and *Calmuc Tartars*, put a ſtop to our Departure for that time to our no ſmall grief; we were however ſome days after reviv'd with freſh hopes, by the Aſſurances of our Friends, who had received advice from *Muſcow*, that a numerous *Caravan* of *Chineſes*, being arriv'd there not long ago, were preparing to return into their own Country by the end of the Winter; As this News was confirm'd to us afterwards by ſeveral hands, all we thought we had to do for Proſecution of our intended journey, was to take the firſt Opportunity of going to *Muſcow*, in order to join the ſaid *Caravan*; which as it could not be done without a paſs from the Governour of *Aſtrachan*, we made our Applications to the *Armenians*, who came along with us out of *Perſia*. who being much eſteem'd in *Muſcovy* by reaſon of the great Traffick they drive there, ſpoke in our behalf to the Governour, and the ſooner to obtain what they deſired, told him many things to our Advantage, among the reſt concerning our extraordinary skill in Phyſick; this produced a quite contrary effect, for the Governour, who was extreamly careful of his Health, having a mind to conſult with *F. Barnaby*, (of whoſe care they had told him wonders) ſent for us to give him a viſit; We were not a little ſurpriſed at ſo unexpected a Compliment, upon divers Conſiderations, but eſpecially in reguard of what we had heard a certain Perſon ſay, who came with us in the ſame Ship to *Aſtrachan*, concerning the Cuſtom of the *Muſcovites* in drinking to a great exceſs, and looking upon it as the beſt Entertainment they can make for Strangers, to ſend them away well loaden with ſtrong Liquor; but as no excuſes would take place to avoid the viſit, we reſolv'd to go along with the Meſſenger, with a reſolution to avoid all poſſible means of committing any exceſs of this Nature. We were not a little amazed when coming into the Chamber prepared for our Audience, we ſaw a good number of Silver Flaggons and Cups ready prepar'd and fill'd with divers ſorts of ſtrong Liquors to receive us, and we began to be ſorely affraid when we ſaw the *Waywode* himſelf after the firſt Compliment, advance to give us the firſt ſalute with a good Cup; we were ſorely put to it, how to come off with decency, when a good thought delivered us from our fear; for knowing his humour, and how careful he was of his own Perſon, we were very careful to inſinuate to him, that theſe hot Liquors would infallibly prove his Deſtruction, and that they had already ſo enfeebled his entrails, that if he continued the uſe of them any longer, no Phyſick in the World would be able to reſtore him. The *Waywode* was ſo ſenſibly touch'd with theſe reaſons, that he not only deſiſted from taking any of theſe Liquors immediately, but being alſo willing to take ſome Phyſick by way of precaution, we ordered him ſome, which having a good effect, he look'd upon us as the only preſervers of his Health, and conſequently would not let us depart from *Aſtrachan*, detaining us for 2 months with ſeveral trifling excuſes, which though we were ſufficiently ſenſible of, and for that reaſon reiterated our Inſtances by our Friends, yet all proved in vain, he perſiſting in his former Courſe of rendring our Captivity tolerable, by divers excuſes, and many Civilities. At laſt finding him reſolutely bent to keep us from our intended great Work, which we valued aboye all things in the World, we took another Courſe, and knowing him to be a Perſon of no great Courage, we began to talk in another Tone, and to upbraid him with ingratitude for the many ſervices we had done him and his Family; this extorted at laſt the deſired Paſſport, which we had no ſooner obtained, but we took 2 places in a Merchants Ship, that was going to *Muſcow*; but ſcarce had we ſent our Baggage aboard, and were juſt ready to embark our ſelves, when an Officer belonging to the Governour brought us poſitive Orders to come aſhoar again, with an Expreſs command to all the Ships in port there, not to receive us aboard. It is eaſie to be imagined into what Conſternation this command put us, but knowing we muſt obey, we return'd to *Aſtrachan*, where, during this ſecond ſtay, we met with nothing but Afflictions, the dreadful Tempeſts which aroſe, and almoſt ſtifled the Inhabitants, with a thick and ſcorching duſt, the reports of the Plague, and a terrible bleeding of my Companion at the Noſe, made me almoſt loſe all hopes of ever coming to our intended journeys end. Knowing the hatred the Clergy of the *Greek* Church bore to the *Roman Catholicks*, we thought it in vain to have recourſe to their Interceſſion; yet, as we were forced to make a vertue of Neceſſity, and to leave nothing unattempted, we made our Application to the Archbiſhop or Metropolitan of *Aſtrachan*, who had ſhewn us great Civilities in the viſits we made him, and to the Superiour of the Principal Monaſtry of the Monks of the Order of St. *Baſil* at *Aſtrachan*, unto whom we had done ſome ſervice in expelling a Worm out of his Body by means of the Emetick Powder, and unburthening our ſelves to them with Tears in our Eyes, this wrought ſo good an effect upon them, that they reſolv'd to be our Mediators with the Governour; they ſo cloſely repreſented the injuſtice done to us, that being affraid of having the matter ill repreſented at Court, he recall'd his firſt Order, and commanded all the Maſters of the Veſſels to receive us, when and where we were inclin'd to go; Being willing not to looſe any time, we immediately agreed for 2 places, with the Maſter of a cloſe bark bound for *Saratof*, and the 9th of *October* was fix'd for our Departure. But within a few day before there happened ſo odd an Accident in our *Caravanſera*, of which being an Eye-

Eye-witness, I cannot pass it by in silence; For a certain *Benjan*, who bore a grudge against one of his Country Men, occasioned by an old Quarrel, taking the Opportunity whilst he was playing at Chess with another, Stabs him with his Dagger 4 or 5 times successively, till the Bowels hung out of his Wounds. This bing done in the Inn or *Caravansera*, where we lodgede, every body who were Eye-witnesses of such an unaccountable piece of Barbarous Treachery, ran towards him to sieze him, but the most forward having received three Wounds in his Reins, and laid for dead upon the Floor, the rest were glad to get out of his Room, and to cry out *Murther*; The whole City being put into an Alarum, by the account they had of so horrid a Murther, ran to assist in the apprehending of the Criminal, but in vain, for he stood his ground at the door with his Dagger, ready to receive any that should come within his reach, which so terrified the Officers of Justice, that not one of them was daring enough to approach him. But at last some Soldiers endeavouring to break in at the Windows, and to barricado the door, to prevent his escape, he retreated to the door of his own Apartment, where whilst he was putting himself in a posture of Defence to receive them; some of his Acquaintance upbraiding him with his inhumanity, told him, that he had fail'd in his attempt, and that there was some hopes of Life in those poor Victimes he had intended to Sacrifice to his Revenge; he was so enraged thereat, that foaming at his Mouth, he opened his bare Breast before all the Standers by, and clapped the point of his bloody Dagger to it, saying with a very loud Voice; *Since my ill Success has deprived me of the fairest Opportunity I ever could meet with of revenging the affront formerly put upon me, I will punish my self without giving the Trouble thereof to Justice*; Then thrusting the Dagger into the lower part of his Belly; *behold*, said he, *in what manner I ought to have deprived my Enemy of the hopes of surviving me*: But notwithstanding this desperate Wound, he was not deprived of his strength for 2 hours after; and what was most remarkable to all the rest of the Spectators as well as to my self, was that only a few drops issued from this Wound, which by its large Orfice, one would have thought should have spouted forth as a Rivulet. The Soldiers being got in by this time, endeavoured to perswade him to surrender his Arms, but he was so far from hearkning to their Advice, that when they presented their Musquets to his Breast, he call'd them *Poor spirited Fellows* and by his daring Expressions so daunted them, that supposing him to be pass'd all hopes of Life, they thought it the most Convenient way, to let his raging Fit pass over, which it did not long after, when a perfect calm succeeding the mad storm, that had siezed his heart before, and finding his strength to decay, he threw away his Dagger, and having reproach'd it, with the ill Offices it had done him, desired he might be carried in a Coach to the Governour; but before he could be brought thither, his Vital Spirits being quite dispersed, he expired in a Moment after he had left the Inn.

They leave *Astracan*.

Within 2 or 3 days after we embark'd upon the *Wolga* for *Muscow*, in hopes of meeting there with the *Chinese Caravan* we spoke of before. As the wind blew very favourably for us from the *East*, so the beginning of our Voyage was prosperous enough, but the wind chopping about near *Ischorrio*, the first Town you come at; after 60 Lgs sailing up the River from *Astracan*, we were forced to put our Boat-men ashoar, to tow the Vessel. It being not my intention to make here any Repetitious of what has been said already by other Authors, I will refer my self in this Point as to the Course of the *Wolga*, to the most exact and faithful Relation of *Olearius*, and proceed in the account of our Journey; which with the change of the Wind, begun to be very troublesome to us; For no sooner were we pass'd this little City, but approaching though slowly towards the *Artick* Pole, we began to be more and more sensible of the difference of the Climate, and being forced to lie upon the Deck of the Vessel, and very ill provided with Convenience against the cold, we were so benumb'd in our Limbs, that we could not stir hand or foot, and an Ague which sized me soon after, reduced me to such a low Condition, that I thought I should have found my burying place in that *Wolga*. After we had endured these Miseries for some time, we were overwhelmed by a more dreadful Accident within 4 or 5 days sail from the City of *Zaritza*, the second City the *Muscovites* are Masters of upon the *Wolga*, after you come from *Astracan*. For the Cook-room, which was in the middle of the Vessel, having taken Fire, the Flame spread it self all over the Ship, with such fury, that notwithstanding all endeavours to quench it, we found our selves under an absolute necessity to shift for our selves in the Long-boat, leaving what was in the Vessel to the Mercy of this Destructive Element, which we had scarce escap'd, but were threatned by a fresh danger from those *Tartars* who living in these Parts for the most part upon Rapine, we had all the reason to fear would be drawn thither by the Flame of the Vessel, which without all question they might descry at a great distance; All we had to do was, to get as close under the Thickets, as we could to defend us against the Cold, till the return of our Seamen, whom we sent to *Zaritza*, to get what Provisions and other things we stood in need of, for the Prosecution of our Journey; whilst we were thus ruminating in this solitude upon our Miseries, providence sent us a sudden Relief; for some of our Company perceiving a Vessel coming up the River, ran to the Bank side, and hailing her, the Commander sent a Boat, to know what was the matter; As good Fortune would have it this Vessel belonged to a *Muscovite* Colonel, whom we had cured of a dangerous Sickness at *Astracan*, who no sooner understood our misfortune, but he was ready to receive us into the Vessel, which we hoped would carry us to *Saratoff*; We went forward with pretty good success for 2 days, when a tempest and violent Wind arising from the N. froze up the River *Wolga*, and consequently left us in a most destitute Condition, above 40 Lgs from the place whither we were bound; what added to our Affliction was, that the cold increasing every day, and we living in perpetual danger from the Neighbouring *Tartars*, 4 or 5 days Journey distant from any City, without Provisions, or Horses to travel by Land, and my Ague had rendred me uncapable of travelling a foot: Amongst these Perplexities, which had almost deprived us of the use of our reason, *F. Barnaby*, who was a Man of a more than ordinary Courage, resolv'd to go himself on foot with some Servants to *Sararoff* to hire sleds, and to leave me and the Seamen with the Colonel to defend us, upon all occasions, against the insults of the *Tartars*; They travelled for 6 days together through very difficult and dangerous ways, having no other Sustenance than a little Bisket, and at last got quite spent to the City where they were to provide our Carriages, which they could notwithstanding all their care, not procure, till 20 days after they had left us, because the Ice not being hard enough, no Body would venture his Horses and Sleds; so that we were reduced to great extremity, for want of Bread, instead of which we were forced to live for some days upon a little Bran, and what wild Apples our Men could gather in the Forests. Whilst we were thus overwhelm'd with misery, our Convoy, which we had almost despaired of, arriv'd at length, so that having refresh'd our selves a little with such Provisions as they brought along with them, we set forward in our Sleds, but had scarce travelled 6 Lgs upon the *Wolga*, when we thought our selves entrapp'd in another Misfortune pass'd all repreive; for a Troop of 60 *Tartars*, mounted some upon Horses, some upon Dromedaries, began to approach our *Caravan* with so much fierceness, as sufficiently discovered their intention, but finding us ready to give them a welcome with our Fire-arms, they thought fit to retreat, without giving us any further trouble. This being the only accident that befel us in our Journey to *Saratoff*, which lasted 5 days, by reason of the ruggedness of the Ice, we safely arrived there, and I who had almost given my self over for lost, had the most reason to admire the Providence of God Almighty, who had once more bless'd me with the sight of my faithful Companion, who having contracted an intimate acquaintance with a certain Monk of the Order of St. *Basil*, during his stay at *Saratoff*, made me also partake of the Fruits of his Friendship, and care, which was such as restored me to my Health in 8 days, which being expired he omitted nothing which might facilitate our Passage to *Muscow*, in providing us with convenient Carriages, and honest Guides thither, being a Journey or 300 Lgs we had still to make; At last having recommended us to the care of our 2 Conductors, no otherwise than if we had

Their Vessel takes Fire, and is burnt.

Are relieved by another Vessel.

Are reduced to great misery.

Likely to be taken by the Tartars.

had been his Children, and paid one half of the Charges of the Carriages, we took our leave from this Charitable Monk, not a little diſſatisfy'd that it was not in our Power to ſhew him our real acknowledgement for all his Civilities.

They quit the Wilga.

At laſt the 10th. of *Dec.* we left *Saratoff* in Company of a good *Caravan* bound for *Muſcow*, and the Ice being very thick by this time, and the Roads ſlippery, we travelled in Sleds with conveniency enough. The Muſcovite Sleds.

These Sleds, which are uſed all over the North, are only 2 ſpars of Timber, carefully plain'd underneath, join'd with ſeveral pieces of Wood, laid a croſs, and ſurrounded on all ſides with a thick bark of a Tree, of ſuch a height as to keep out the Snow. The bottom which is very well plank'd is commonly covered with a Mat or Bears-skin, upon which you may either ſit, or lie at length according to your own conveniency, every one having his own Sled, which being of the bigneſs of a Man to lie in conveniently, you cover your ſelf over Head and Ears, or as far as you beſt like with Carpets, or Furs fitted for this purpoſe, and ſo forward you go, the Horſe which draws you being well provided with freſh Nails, and he that guides it ſitting at the feet of the Sled, which gliding inſenſibly along, over Rivers and Lakes, with a great deal of eaſe to the Horſe, you may travel thus ſometimes 15 or 20 Lgs a day, without any great inconveniency to the Beaſt. In ſuch a Machine we travell'd from *Saratoff* to *Muſcow*, the firſt 3 days through a great Deſart of 40 Lgs long, which being without Houſes or Cottages, we were forced to carry our Proviſions along with us, till we came to a Village called *Pinzer*, a few Lgs beyond this Deſart; after which we had Commodious travelling enough, the ſerene Winter days, which are natural to this Country, adding not a little to our ſatisfaction, which is the reaſon the *Muſcovite* Merchants generally chooſe this Seaſon for the Tranſportation of their Goods from one place to another, which they do at much an eaſier rate than at any other time of the year. It was well for us that our *Caravan* was ſo numerous, being in conſtant danger of the Robbers, who infeſt thoſe Roads, but as it conſiſted, for the moſt part of Merchants, who had often occaſion to ſtay in thoſe parts through which we paſs'd, we ſpent whole 5 weeks in this journey from *Saratoff* to *Muſcow*, which otherwiſe may be perform'd in 20 days. We always took care to get by Night to ſome Town or other, where we might meet with good Reception, but when we happened to be engaged in a Foreſt or Deſart, which could not be paſs'd in one Day, our Sleds were rang'd in good Order round about a large Fire, and being well cloſed up on all ſides, we ſlept as conveniently and warm, nay, rather better, than if we had been in the Country Cottages, where Men and Beaſts lie all Higgledy-piggledy together. The Country between *Saratoff* and *Muſcow* very populous.

In this manner we travell'd forward towards *Muſcow*; the Country through which we paſs'd, being then all covered with Snow, we could give no judgment of its Fertility, except what appear'd by the infinite number of Towns and Villages, which we obſerv'd in our way.

This Country as we were inform'd was not always ſo populous till ſince the laſt War, which the *Muſcovites* had with the *Poles*, they carry'd away thence an infinite number of People, unto whom Lands being aſſign'd betwixt *Muſcow* and the *Wolga*, they have made this part of the Country the moſt populous and fertile of the whole Empire. Beſides thoſe People, who were eaſily diſtinguiſh'd from the Native *Muſcovites*, many Villages and Towns were inhabited by *Tartars*, who are *Pagans*; The City of *Caſſinovogorod* through which we paſs'd, is in the Poſſeſſion of theſe *Tartars*, where they have the free exerciſe of their Idolatrous worſhip, and publick *Moſques*, in the midſt of the *Muſcovites*, who take as little care of their Converſion, as of the *Tartars* call'd *Mordevates*, who live in another Borough, and divers Villages in the very Center of *Muſcovy*. We happened to come to this Borough juſt the Evening before the Feſtival of St. *Nicholas*, which being the Head Patron of *Muſcovy*, they celebrate his Memory with as much Zeal as we do *Chriſtmas* or *Eaſter*, with this difference only, that all their Ceremonies and Devotions end in the lewdeſt Debaucheries that can be imagined, for which when we blam'd them, they gave us no other anſwer, than, that we being Strangers, they found we were ignorant, in what manner they uſed to pay their Worſhip to St. *Nicholas*. As we approached *Muſcow* we flattered our ſelves more and more with the hopes of coming nearer to the end of our grand deſign; full of theſe thoughts we came to the Metropolis of the *Ruſſian* Empire, which for its Largeneſs and Magnificence, appears the moſt beautiful Place at a diſtance, that ever I beheld in my Life. The firſt thing we did was to addreſs our ſelves to thoſe of our Society, who had been ſettled there about 2 years before, by peculiar Permiſſion from the *Czar*, for the Convenience of ſuch *Roman Catholick* Foreign Officers as Command in his Armies. They come to *Muſcow*.

Theſe Fathers received us with ſo much civility and kindneſs, as ſufficiently convinced us that thoſe united in the Spirit embrace their Brethren, without diſtinction of time or place, with the ſame Zeal and Affection. As they had given us notice by their Letters, that if we expected to ſucceed in our deſign, we muſt make our immediate Application to Prince *Gallechin*, who was then Prime Miniſter of State, we follow'd their advice, and tho' as yet in our *Georgian* habit, which we had taken to diſguiſe us, immediately went to pay him our reſpect, and to give him an accounted, what it was that had obliged us to take this diſguiſe; He being a Perſon of more than ordinary Ability and Conduct, was ſo far from being diſpleaſed thereat, that he ſhow'd a great deal of ſatisfaction to ſee us in that Condition, aſſuring us of his favour, and what ſervice he could do us to obtain our ends. But as all Strangers that come to *Muſcow*, (except thoſe of a publick Character) are obliged to undergo a very ſtrict Examination in the Chancery-Office, we were alſo ſent thither, though it was at Night, and our paſt Fatigues had ſo tired us, that we ſtood in great need of reſt. Strangers ſtrictly examined at *Muſcow*.

We were no ſooner entred the Rails of the Hall, where our Examination was to be taken, but 3 or 4 Perſons provided with Pen, Ink and Paper, asked us ſo many croſs and ridiculous Queſtions, as if they did it on purpoſe to Trap us in our own Anſwers, and to Convict us as Criminals; they fill'd ſeveral Sheets of Paper with the Anſwers we had made, which laſted till 11 a Clock at Night, when we were at laſt diſmiſſed to the Jeſuits Houſe, the Fathers whereof being much troubled for our long ſtay, received us with extraordinary Demonſtrations of kindneſs.

The next day we beſtow'd in finding out the *Chineſe* Merchants belonging to the *Caravan*, that were to return into *China*, to inquire of them concerning the Roads, the time, nature of the People through which we were to paſs, and ſome other Circumſtances relating thereunto, which might either further or hinder the ſucceſs of our Deſign; it was no eaſie task to find out thoſe pretended *Chineſes*, in a City which contains 600000 or 700000 Inhabitants, but after we met with them, we found them to be of that ſort of *Tartars*, who inhabit the moſt Eaſtern parts of that vaſt Country, known by the name of *Kitay*, which bordering to the N. W. upon *China*, has been always till now thought a particular Kingdom, whereas the *Muſcovites* properly call all that vaſt Tract of Land, betwixt the Rivers *Oby* and *Wolga*, and ſo as far as to the Borders of *China*, by the name of *Kitay*, and the People inhabiting it *Kitachi*, being a very ſpacious portion of the *Great Tartary*, divided into an infinite number of *Hordes* each under the Government of its own *Taiſo* or Prince, and to diſtinguiſh it from *China*, they imitate the *Turks* in this point, who give it the name of *Ichimma Ichim*, by uſing a Repetition of the firſt word. In like manner the *Muſcovites*, when they ſpeak of the Kingdom of *China*, give it the name of *Kitay*, *Kitay*, to diſtinguiſh it from that part of *Tartary*, which as we told you before, was called *Kitay*. As the *Muſcovites* have made conſiderable Diſcoveries in the laſt, they have alſo been very careful to build ſeveral Cities, and to provide them with Colonies for the conveniency of Trade, which has had this good effect upon many of theſe *Tartars*, that being made ſenſible of the Advantages of a convenient ſettlement before the toils of a Vagabond Life, they have by degrees apply'd themſelves to Trade. The Country of *Kitay*.

Theſe were the *Chineſe* Merchants, we were to confer withal, concerning our intended Journey into *China*, who, though *Tartars*, yet as they Traded both with the *Chineſes* and *Muſcovites*, and had been both at *Peking* and *Muſcow*, they gave us a more clear Idea of all things relating to this journey than ever we had of it before, and the ſame being in each particular confirmed to us by ſeveral *Muſcovite* Merchants, who had travelled from *Muſcow* to *Peking*, I was ſufficiently convinced that there was

no

no ſuch a difficulty in going from *France* to *China*, as ſome have imagined, by making choice of the Road from *Archangel* to *Tobolsko*, where being the general Rendevouz of all the Merchants of thoſe parts Trading to *China*, 6 months would accompliſh the whole journey; as will appear more evidently out of the following Book.

CHAP. X.

An account of ſeveral Roads into China.

THE Ancient Geographers had ſo little knowledge of that vaſt Country lying betwixt the River *Oby*, and the Famous *Chineſe* Wall, that moſt of them thought fit to paſs it by in ſilence, and others, rather than to acknowledg their ignorance in this point, have given us their own inventions for Truth. Neither have the modern Geographers been more ſucceſsful in this reſpect, than when they have fill'd up this vaſt Country with nothing but inacceſſible Foreſts and unpaſſable Deſarts. We are obliged to the *Zaporogian Coſacks*, who live beyond the *Boriſthenes*, for the diſcovery of thoſe Countries. Theſe being ſubdued by the *Muſcovites*, moſt of them took a Reſolution to ſhake off the *Muſcovite* Yoak. To effect which they advanced in great numbers towards the *Wolga*, by the way of *Caſan*, and thence to the River *Irtiſh*, at the confluence of which with the River *Tobol*, they built a City bearing the ſame name with the laſt of theſe 2 River. It was not long before they extended their Conqueſts to the River *Oby*, the adjacent Country of which they call'd *Siberia*, from the word *Sibor*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language implies as much as the *North*. But thoſe parts being deſtitute of many things requiſite, if not for the Subſiſtance, at leaſt for conveniency of humane Life, this defect together with the proſpect of conſiderable Advantages by vending their *Sable Martins*, and other Furs, induced them to ſubmit themſelves to the *Muſcovites*, againſt whom they were ſufficiently ſecured by the Mountain and Rivers that were betwixt them.

The Zaporogian Coſacks diſcover the Country beyond the Oby.

How they ſubmitted to the Muſcovites.

The *Muſcovites* were no ſooner got into the Poſſeſſion of this Country, but they improv'd it to their no ſmall Advantage, by ſending thither their *Tachatchiki* or *Sable Hunters*, the number of which they encreaſe every day by baniſhing thither their Priſoners of State, and ſuch others as have not done their Duty in the Army and other Employments. The eager deſire after gain has by degrees carried theſe *Sable Hunters*, to the River *Tamour*, in an Iſle of which the *Muſcovites* have built a Fort ſome years ago, which proved the occaſion of the preſent War betwixt them and the *Chineſes*.

How they Hunt the Sables.

Their way of hunting the *Sable Martins* is this: Certain Troops of Soldiers are ſent into thoſe parts where theſe precious Creatures are to be met with, which uſually ſtay there 7 years; Theſe are under the overſight of certain Officers, one of which Commands every week a certain number of them; they kill theſe *Sable Martins* (which are for the moſt part found in the little Iſlands) with a Croſs-bow, for fear of ſpoiling the Fur, if they ſhould make uſe of Fire-arms. As the main point in this kind of hunting is the diligence of the Soldiers, the Officers lie under a neceſſity of allowing a certain ſhare to them of the Superplus which belongs to them, out of what they are obliged to kill for the *Czar*'s uſe; whence it comes that one of theſe Officers gets commonly 4000 Crowns in 7 years, and a common Soldier perhaps 600 or 700. This Country alſo affords black Foxes, which are no where to be found but in *Siberia* and *Kitay*, and are valued at ſo high a rate, that he that will purchaſe them muſt fill the skin with as many Crown pieces as they will hold. Formerly the *Muſcovites* were contented with ordinary furs, except the *Ermins*, which were uſed only by Perſons of Quality, but ſince the diſcovery of theſe more precious Furs, they have been ſo eager in the ſearch of them, that they have left no Corner unſearch'd, and by the frequent and different excurſions, at laſt hit upon divers Roads, which led them inſenſibly to the Frontiers of *China*, of the different Roads of which we will give you an Account according to the Relations regiſtred in the Chancery of *Muſcow*.

Divers Roads leading to China.

The firſt way by Land into *China*, is through *India*, and the Country of the *Great Mogul*, but the vaſt Deſarts much frequented by Robbers make this Paſſage very dangerous; We are obliged to the *Jeſuits* for the diſcovery of this Road, and the *Tartars* of *Aſtracan*, and the *Tousbecs* have ſometimes taken that way, but not without very numerous *Caravans*. The ſecond Road, is that commonly uſed by the *Tousbec* Merchants of *Bocara*, who take their way through the Cities of *Samarkan*, *Kabul*, *Kachemire*, *Tourafan*, and ſeveral other Cities of the *Tousbecs*, and ſo to *Barantola*, the moſt conſiderable City of the *Great Tartary*, and the Reſidence of *Dalac-Lama*, of whom more anon. But the ſandy Deſarts, and the *Calmuc Tartars*, who infeſt theſe Roads, make this way very uneaſie, though the *Muſcovites* often chooſe it before that by the River *Oby*. The third is that which is moſt generally made uſe of by the *Tousbecs*, the Trading *Calmucs*, and the *Muſcovites*. They go from *Tobolsko* a long ſeveral Lakes yielding great Quantities of Salt, near the Rivers *Irtiſh* and *Kama*; upon the firſt of which they Travel by Water as far as the City of *Sinkame*, whence they purſue their way by Land through the Territories of the *Calmuc*, and *Mongul Tartars*, to *Kokutan*, which is about 8 or 10 days journey from the Famous *Chineſe* Wall, which divides the *Great Tartary* from *China*. This Road is alſo not quite free from the Robberies of the *Calmucs*, tho' the *Taiſo Ajonka*, which is the chief *Chan* of the Vagabond *Tartars* in theſe parts, will by means of a good preſent ſecure the *Caravans* from being aſſaulted by them. From *Kokutan* divers ways lead to ſeveral Gates of the *Chineſe* Wall. The fourth Road goes likewiſe over *Tobolsko*, upon the River *Oby*, and the *Szelinga*, to the City of *Szelingvi*, and thence by Land through the Country of the *Monguls* to the place where the *Chan* of *Bechroeſaim*, and the *Coutuſta Lama* reſide; from whom you may by the means of a ſmall preſent obtain Guides, Carriages, and a Convoy to *China*; From the before mentioned City of *Szelingvi* to the *Chans* Reſidence, is a journey of 8 weeks. This is the Road the *Muſcovites* have uſed of late years, ſince they have been engaged in a War with the *Chineſes*, upon the River *Tamour*. This way is counted both the ſafeſt and moſt convenient, and though the Roads are alſo ſometimes peſtred with Robbers, they don't appear in ſtrong Bodies; but care muſt be taken to provide your ſelves with Wood and Water at certain places. The fifth is that, which *Spartarius*, the *Muſcovite* Envoy took to *China*; He paſs'd through *Siberia*, to the City of *Nerozinki*, upon the River *Szilcka*, whence you go to *Dauri*, not far from the River *Najunai*, and thence to *Chiria*, that lies upon the entrance into *China*. The diſtance is the ſame from *Narezinski* to *Dauri*, and from *Dauri* to *China*. If we may rely upon this Relation, this Road is both ſafe and ſhort. From *Narezinski* to the River *Argus*, which falls into the *Tamour*, you meet frequently with the *Sable Martin Hunters*, who are well acquainted with all the Paſſages in thoſe parts. After which the Road runs through the Country of the

the *Monguls*, who ſtand much in fear of the *Muſcovites*; tho perhaps the caſe may be altered as to this point now, ſince moſt Travellers at this time take their way a little higher through *Albazin* to *China*, or ſomewhat lower over *Szelingvi*, through the Territories of the *Chan* of *Bechroeſaim*. The ſixth Road leads likewiſe through *Narezinski*, and the Country of the *Monguls*, and thence to the *Lake Dalai*; out of which ariſes the River *Argus*, which is Navigable all along, and joins its current with the *Tamour*. Near the *Argus* are Mines of Silver and Lead, and the *Taiſo* or Prince, named *Sebdenkan*, whoſe Territories border upon it, is obliged to find the *Muſcovite Caravans*, that paſs 3 times a year that way, with Convoys. From *Narezinski* to the *Lake Dalai*, is a Weeks journey, and beyond it you find a People ſubject to the *Chineſes*, who cultivate the grounds along the Lake, who will carry you in 3 weeks to the Borders of *China*, upon Waggons drawn by Oxen. After all theſe Relations it will not be amiſs to inſert here another, relating to the People inhabiting the Countries adjoining to *China*, which as I give you upon the Credit of a Perſon of an unqueſtionable Reputation, who had taken the Copy of it out of the Treaſury of *Muſcow*, and that it agrees exactly with the Annals of *China*, publiſh'd by F. *Couplet* the Jeſuit, at the end of *Confucius*'s Philoſophy, and with the report of ſuch as have Travelled moſt of thoſe Roads, ſo I thought it might not be paſs'd by in ſilence here.

Nations inhabiting near China.

The *Bogdoi*.

The firſt of all are the *Bogdoi*, known to the *Chineſes*, under the name of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, and call'd *Niuchi* or *Nuchi* by the *Monguls*. Their Country being of a large extent, they are divided into ſeveral *Hordes*, and each under its peculiar *Taiſo* or Prince. There is a certain Province in *Bogdoi*, called *Dintchari*, and *Diourski*, by the *Muſcovites*, being encloſed betwixt the *Eaſtern Sea*, and the 2 great Rivers *Ebingala* and *Tamour*. They were in Ancient times Tributaries to *China*, but little known and leſs fear'd by them, till they made an irruption into that Kingdom, and Conquered 6 Provinces; and in all probability would have ſubdued the reſt, had not the *Tonshee Tartars*, under pretence of relieving the *Chineſes*, ſettled themſelves there, and the Family of *Iuena* upon the Throne, which ſway'd the Scepter till 1368. when being expell'd by the *Chineſes*, they enthron'd the Family of *Tayminga*, which maintain'd it ſelf in the Throne till 1644. at what time the ſame *Dintchari* made another Invaſion into *China*, and made an entire Conqueſt of that vaſt Kingdom. Their Prince who was the firſt Emperor of that Nation, was named *Cunchi* of the Family of *Taiſing*, the ſame who Reigns at this time in *China*. Though out of the whole Country of the *Bogdoi*, as alſo in the Province of *Dauri*, you ſee no other houſe but of Earth, their Chief Trade conſiſts in Sables and Black Fox skins, and ſome *Ginſena* roots; being not very well ſtor'd with Cattle, and their Horſes are very ſmall, and never ſhoe'd. In their Features and Proportion of Body, they much reſemble the *Crim Tartars*, but their conſtant Correſpondence with the *Chineſes*, makes them much more civilized. As to their Religion, they either have none at all, or elſe it is unknown hitherto. They wear Croſſes, call'd *Lama*'s, and ſhew a great inclination to the Chriſtian Religion, but much averſion to the *Mahometans* and *Neſtorians*. Notwithſtanding which, ſince their Conqueſt of *China*, there are many *Mahometan* inhabitants at *Peking*, who have 7 *Moſques* there. The *Bogdoi*, both in their Language and Characters come pretty near to the Vulgar ſpeech uſed in *Perſia*; but they have above 60 Letters in their Alphabet, and write and read from the top to the bottom, like the *Chineſes*. The Rivers of *Argus*, *Tamour* and *Chingala*, produce good ſtore of Rubies and Pearls. The *Bogdoi* are not unacquainted with the uſe of Gun-powder and Guns, but as the firſt is but of little ſtrength, and the heavy Artillery too burthenſom for them in their Marches; they are not much in Vogue among them. It has been obſerved that theſe *Tartars*, who have got into the Poſſeſſion of *China*, begin already to degenerate from their former Valour. Next to the *Bogdoi*, is a vaſt extent of Land to the *Weſt*, call'd *Mongul*, beginning at the *Weſtern Sources* of the River *Tamour*, and extending to the W. to the *Calmuc Tartars*, from whom they are ſeparated by great Deſarts; To the S. E. they Border upon *Turqueſtan*, and to the E. upon *Cheta*. They live under the Juriſduction of three *Chan*'s or *Taiſo*'s, but as they are of the ſame Family, they live in unity together, and will aſſiſt one another againſt their Enemies. Their Chief *chan* bears the Title of *Tabetchinga*, whoſe Territories border upon the *Bogdoi* and *China*. As they inhabit neither Towns nor Villages, ſo they live moſt upon Rapine, and make frequent incurſions upon the Inhabitants near the Lake *Dalai*, or near the River *Szelinga*. Among the other *Taiſo*'s, that are under his Juriſdiction, is the *Chan* of *Bechroeſaim*, whoſe Territories likewiſe border upon the ſaid River. It is in the Territories of this *Chan*, that the *Contaſta Lamæ* keeps his Reſidence, who is properly the Vicar of the *Dalae Lama*, or *Lama Lamaton*, the Patriarch-general of the *Tartars*, but eſpecially of the *Monguls*, who Worſhip him like a Deity. As their grounds are watered with a great many Rivers which fall into the *Szelinga*, they are very fertile and fit for Paſturage, and conſequently rich in Cattle, which makes them live in good Correſpondency with the *Muſcovites*, by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of *Siberia*; though they are alſo Naturally of a peaceable diſpoſition, and if any quarrels ariſe among them, they are referred to the *Contaſta*, (who follows them where-ever they ramble) or to ſuch Judges as he appoints for that purpoſe. The *Monguls* bear a conſtant grudge to the *Bogdoi*, ever ſince they have made themſelves Maſters of *China*, but as they are unacquainted with the Management of Fire-arms they are not in a Condition to do them any conſiderable miſchief. There are 2 other *Chans* belonging to the *Monguls*, call'd *Ofticroikan*, and *D'Jano Garli*, who are ſcarce known but only by name. The *Calmuc Tartars* are in Poſſeſſion of all that vaſt Tract of Ground, betwixt *Mongul*, the *Wolga* and *Aſtracan*, and are divided into an infinite number of *Hordes*, each under its own *Chan*. The Chief *Chan* is called *Otchiourtican*, who deduces his origin from the Great *Tamerlen*. As he is very Potent, both the *Muſcovites* and *Tonsbers*, court his Friendſhip by certain Annual preſents; and if we may credit the common report, he lives with a great deal of Magnificence, is always clad in White, and is ſerv'd in Gold plate. A certain *French* Officer, who had the Opportunity to ſee him in his Tent, whilſt he lay encamped with 100000 Horſe, in the Plains near *Aſtracan*, confirm'd every thing relating to his Magnificence, except that he never ſaw him make uſe of either Gold or Silver plate. The *Calmucs*, as well as the *Monguls* have no fixt Habitations, much leſs any Cities, but live in the Fields under Tents made of Felts, both very Commodious and Neat; as they lead a Vagabond Life, and ſeldom reſt long in a place, ſo they are the nimbleſt in the World at Encamping.

The Calmucs.

All the Nations of the *Great Tartary*, as far as the *Indies* are *Pagans*, who acknowledge the *Dalac Lama*, or *Lama Lamaton*, the Supream head of their Religion, except thoſe of *Bokara* and *Samarkand*, who have embraced Mahometiſm. This Impoſtor has his Reſidence in the Fortreſs of *Beatalac*, near the City of *Barantola*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Tanchut*, which extends from the *Monguls*, the *Calmucs*, and *Turqueſtan*, between *China* and *Perſia*, to the *Indies*. It is paſt imagination in what manner this *Dalac Lama* is worſhipped by the *Tartars*, who ſend for his Benediction from the remoteſt parts, and when ever he makes his appearance in *China*, he is received with all imaginable reſpect, and ſent back with great Preſents. According to the Opinion of the *Tartars*, this *Dalac* never dies, but renews like the Moon. To carry on this impoſture, thoſe that are about him, as ſoon as he dies, look out immediately for another *Dalac Lama*, as like him in Perſon as can be found, who is put in his place, and the dead Body concealed; The *Dalac* is not ſuffered to be ſeen by any Body, unleſs they will proſtrate themſelves, and worſhip him like a Deity, what Mr. *Tavernier* Reports of the King of *Thibet*, was queſtionleſs grounded by miſtake upon this Cuſtom concerning the *Dalac Lama*. The *Chineſes* call the *Tartars*, *Totai*, and the *Muſcovites*, *Poles*, and *Tartars*, and themſelves *Tatar*. The Reſidence of this *Dalac Lama*, in the Kingdom of *Tanchut*, ſeems to be a convincing proof, that he is the ſame famous *Preſter John*, concerning whom we have received ſo many fabulous Stories in *Europe*; it being certain, that, whatever they have been pleaſed to tell the World of him, may more conveniently be attributed to the *Dalac Lama*, than any other Perſon yet know, and that therefore he may with much more probability of Truth be look'd for in *Aſia*, than in *Abyſſinia*, where

The Dalac Lama or Patriarch of the Tartars.

The Dalac immortal.

The Dalac Lama is the Preſter John.

where he never was. To make this the more evident, it is to be observed, that when *John* II. K. of *Portugal*, had sent *Peter de Coulan*, to make the discovery of the Passage by Sea to the *East-Indies*, he gave particular Orders to the said *Coulan*, to make an exact enquiry after the famous *Prester John*, so much talk'd of in *Europe*, without being known in what part of the World he Reigned. Pursuant to the King's Commands, *Coulan* advanced a great way into the *Indies*, where with the most Diligent enquiry he possibly could make, he could not hear one word of *Prester John*, but in his return home, coming to *Cairo*, he was told, that in *Æthiopia* beyond *Egypt*, Reign'd a certain potent Prince, a profess'd Protector of the Christians, who whenever he appeared in publick, had a Cross carryed before him; As these Characters had a very near resemblance to those of the Prince he was in search for, he thought himself sufficiently convinced of the Truth of what he so eagerly wish'd for, and believing this Monarch to be the same *Prester John*, King of the *Abyssines*, he gave an account of his discovery, by Letters to the Court of *Portugal*, who infinitely pleased, and easily perswaded of what they so much desired, received this News with great Applause. Those *Portugueses*, who in the following years sailed to *Africa*, prepossess'd with this Opinion, after their return home confirm'd, and spread the same all over *Europe*, where it was received by the vulgar, but always opposed by several learned Persons, the falshood of these Suggestions, being clearly to be disprov'd by what *Damian de Goes*, *Nicolas Godigno*, and *Balthazar Tallez*, have written of it, who having been long Resident in *Æthiopia*, had been perfectly well inform'd concerning all matters relating to that Kingdom. F. *Kircher* very learnedly observes, That the *Latin Chronology* of the *Abyssine* Kings, makes not the least mention of *Prester John*, which is questionless the reason, that such of the Ancient Authors, who have made mention of this *Prester John*, have placed him in *Asia*, though they differ much as to the particular place of his Residence, as well as in the Original of his name. A certain Modern Author would fetches the Etymology of *Prester John*, from *Preste Arkan*, i. e. *the King of the Adorers*; some have been so vain as to fetch it from the *Latin Pretiosus Johannes*; Others have gone another way to work, and tell us, that as *Cæsar* was a Title peculiar to the *Roman* Emperors, so *John* to those Princes: And that the same was bestowed upon them in Memory of the Prophet *Jonas*, unto which they had added the sirname of *Prester* or Priest, not that these Kings were real Priests, but as a pecular Mark of their Protection of the Christian Religion, as was likewise the Cross carried before them. *Scaliger* hits without all question nearest to the Mark, where he derives *Prester John*, from the *Persian* word *Prestegiani*, which signifies Apostolick; it being very probable, that the *Europeans* trading into *Persia*, and perhaps not perfectly acquainted with that Language, hearing that Prince called *Padischah Prestegiani*, might easily mistake it for *Prester John*, it sounding not unlike *Prestigiani*, the true signification of which was unknown to them. As to that part of *Asia* where this *Prester John* is to have his Residence fix'd it will upon true Examination be found, that most Authors have placed him in that vast Country, which extends it self from the *Great Mogols* Country, to the E. and N. as far as *China*.

Hist Tom. III.

St. *Anthony* makes it sufficiently evident, when he says, That the Emperor of the *Tartars* having sent his Son to Conquer the lesser *India*, which he effected, he advanced with his Victorious Armies, against the Christians then inhabiting the *Greater India*, but was over-thrown by their King, call'd commonly *Prester John*. This agrees with what *Paul* the *Venetian* says of *Prester John*, who, as he resided several years in the Court of the *Great Chan* of the *Tartars*, so he was better acquainted with that Country than any body; And if we may rely upon the Credit of those who have travell'd in those parts of late Years, the Kingdom of *Tenduc* or *Tanchut*, where he places *Prester John* is still in being, and lies betwixt the Empire of the *Great Mogul* and *China*. Neither do those who have made *Prester John* Reign in *Kitay*, differ from *Paul* the *Venetian*, it being probable, that the Ancients did not understand by *Kitay China* only, or any one peculiar Kingdom, but that vast tract of Land inhabited by the *Tartars*, between the Rivers *Oby* and *Wolga*, and *China*, in the same sense as the *Muscovites* take it to this Day. The main scruple remaining is, that the subjects of the ancient *Prester John*, are said to have been Christians, whereas the modern *Tartars*, are either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*; but this is soon answer'd, nothing being more frequent, than that in process of time, this as well as many other Countries, formerly illuminated with the Gospel, might be involved in darkness of Idolatry and Mahometism. It is beyond all dispute, that the Apostle St. *Thomas* preached the Gospel in the *Indies*, and that he died at *Meliapour*, and there are not wanting such, as maintain, that he penerated into *China* it self, but whether he did or not, it is very likely, that he might spread the Christian doctrine more to the *West*, because there is a certain Country on that side, call'd by the *Moors* in derision, *Kiafarstan*, i. e. the Country of the Infidels, the inhabitants of which retain the Name of *Christians of* St. *Thomas*, and though they are involved ingross Superstitions now, yet retain some tincture of Christianity; for they baptize their Children, paint their Churches, and in their Foreheads have three Red crosses, made with the juice of *Sanders Wood*. But, supposing the Light of the Gospel did not reach these Barbarous Countries immediately after the Birth of Christ, it was nevertheless carried in succeeding Ages, as among other Demonstrations, is evident from that most famous Monument found near the City of *Siganfu* in *China*, 1625. which is an undeniable proof of it. For it ought to be known, that about 600 Years after our Saviour's Nativity, the Priests of *Syria* did disperse themselves through all parts of *Asia*, and preached the Gospel to the very Extremities of the World.

Hayton a Christian Author, descended from the Royal Blood of the Kings of *Armenia*, positively affirms, That in the 13th Age, *Tartary* was full of Christians, *Cublai* their Emperor, having embraced the Christian Faith, and that his Brother, who was converted before him, was so Zealous for the Christian Religion, that he waged War upon that account, against the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, took *Palestine* for the Mahometans, restor'd the King of *Armenia*, who had been forced to quit his Kingdom, to the Throne, and rebuilt a great many Christian Churches, laid desolate by the Enemies of the Christian name, and this chiefly at the Intercession of the Princess his Wife, who traced her Original from one of the three Eastern Kings that came to adore Christ, when newly Born. This *Hayton* is the same Person who wrote to St. *Lewis*, when he lay in *Cyprus*, at the time of his first Expedition for the recovery of the Holy Land; St. *Anthony* (in whose History you see that Letter of the *Tartar* Prince) affirms, that St. *Lewis* sent to him in the Quality of Ambassadors, 2 Monks of the Order of St. *Dominick*, with rich presents, and among the rest a piece of the true Cross, and a very magnificent Canopy of State, upon which were embroidered in Gold, the chief Actions of the whole Life of Christ. This, I say, was done about the Year 1256. and at the beginning of the 14 Age, several *Franciscan* Fryars were sent to the *Great Chan of Tartary*, and converted a great number of Infidels in the Kingdom of *Thibet*, which is next to that of *Tanchut*. Father *Andrada* a *Portugese Jesuit* travelling into those parts, 1624. observed among the Inhabitants certain Ornaments of Christianity, though involved in their gross Superstitions; and that among the rest they retained a certain form of Confession, out of all which, I think it is apparent, that the Kingdom of *Tanchut*, having not at all times been Idolatrous as it now is, the *Dalac Lama*, whose Residence it is, may probably be the Successor of *Prester John*, who Reign'd there, when Christianity had got the upper hand there, as on the contrary, since that Religion began to be corrupted by degrees, this King changed with the times, and became the Chief of a New Religion, which at last turn'd unto Idolatry. 'Tis true, the *Dalac Lama*, is at present no Temporal Prince, as *Prester John* was, but this change might perhaps be the consequence of such Revolutions as frequently happen in great Empires; when at the same time it is evident, that he continues still the Head of the Religion of all the *Eastern* Pagans, among whom he is in great Veneration. Add to this, that he bears the name of *Lama*, which in the *Tartar* Language signifies a Cross, and the *Bogdoi Tartars*, who as we told you before Conquered

quered *China*, 1644. and acknowledge the *Dalac Lama* for their Head, wear always Crosses about them, which they call *Lama*, and preserve them with more than ordinary care.

Other Tartarian Nations

Besides these before-mentioned *Tartars*, there are others called *Ostiaki*, *Bratski*, *Jacuti* and *Tongueſi*, who inhabit about the Lakes and Rivers betwixt *Siberia* and the *Monguls*. As they have the same Language and Habit of Body with the *Calmues*, so it is probable, that they are no more than some of their Hordes, who having fixt their Habitations nearer to the Frontiers of the *Muscovites*, at last submitted under their Jurisdiction. They are generally of a swarthy Complexion, inclining to an Olive Colour, with broad flat Faces, falling in below, and high in the upper part, with short and flat Noses, little but sparkling Eyes, and little Hair about the Month; They are tall beyond the common Size, well made and strong, stern, and bold, but without savageness. Their Habits are nothing else, but Sheepskins sow'd together, in the Nature of vests close to their Bodies, having about their waste a Cord, instead of a Girdle, whereunto they fasten their Bow and Quiver, which are their constant Companions wherever they go. They shave their Heads all over, leaving on the middle of the Crown, a double lock of Hair, one of which hangs down before the other behind. On their Heads they wear no other Ornament except a round Bonnet, of the same stuff with their Habits, on the top of which is fastned a tuft of red Silk, or any other Colour; this being the mark by which each *Horde* is distinguish'd from another. Those who live in the Countries, where they catch *Martins*, make themselves Cloaths of their Skins, as also of Dogs Skins, of which they entertain vast numbers; sometimes they wear one for a Lining, and the other for the outside; in which case the *Sable Martins*, though much more precious is worn within, and the other without, for, say they, it would be unreasonable, that the Dog who finds out, and catches the *Martin*, should be placed below his vanquish'd Enemy after his Death. From what has been said it is sufficiently Demonstrable, that the *Muscovites* found it no great difficulty to open their way by Land into *China*, for after they had once penetrated into those Countries bordering upon the *Great Tartary*, and either by force or mildness, reduced under their Jurisdiction, several of their separate *Hordes*, who kept Correspondence with them, they might easily by degrees advance towards the Borders of *China*, among a People divided both in point of Government and Interest, and erect Fortresses for the Defence of their Conquests, the furthermost of which is call'd *Albaza*, not above 3 weeks journey from *Peking*, though it be 3 months Travel distant from *Muscow*. It is seated upon the very Banks of the River *Tamour*, which occasioning a difference betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Chinese*, about the privilege of Pearl-fishing, and hunting of Sables, broke out at last into a War; but the *Muscovites* weighing the disadvantage they lay under, to expose an Army to the hazard of so vast a journey for its relief, thought convenient, to accommodate the matter by an amicable Negotiation, the success of which is not known as yet. I know one main Objection against what I have said concerning the shortness and easiness of the Passage by Land into *China*, will be the long and tedious journeys (which have been of 18 months sometimes) made by the several Ambassadors sent from *Muscovy* into *China*, but this Objection is soon resolv'd if it be considered, that, as the chief Aim of the sending so many Envoys and Ambassadors into *China* has been, to observe the Advantage and Disadvantage of the Country through which they pass'd, and the course of their Rivers, with many other Circumstances, it is no wonder if those who travell'd like Adventurers, and that upon the strength of the *Czars* Purse, did sometimes spend 12, nay, 16 or 18 Months in their journey, which the Merchants more sedulous and thrifty in their Affairs, oftentimes going to *Peking*, and coming back to *Muscow*, don't take up above 4 months, of this I was fully assured about three years since, by certain Merchants, who set out from *Peking*, after they had been at Mass in the *Jesuits* house there, upon St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*'s day, and came to *Muscow*, about *All-hollandtide*, where they staid till the end of the Winter, in order to return thither with the *Caravans*, that set out duely every year from *Tobolsko* to *China*. But what contributes most to the easiness of the Passage by Land into *China*, is the convenient Carriages, used in those journeys. They commonly begin their journey from *Muscow* towards the end of *February*, the Snow being well beaten, and the Roads even, they travel in Sleds in less than 3 Weeks time to the Capital City of *Siberia*, which is 800 *Versts*, or 350 *French* Lgs. Here they expect whether it will begin to thaw, in which case, they make use of Vessels, which they meet with both on this and the other side of the River *Oby*, but if the Frost continues, they go on by Land, to the Country of the *Ostiaki*, a *Horde* of *Tartars* under the *Muscovite* Jurisdiction. Here if the Thaw does not overtake them, they send back their Carriages to *Tobolsko*, which they change for other Sleds, drawn by *Reen deer*, which are cheaper kept, and Travel with more swiftness, for which purpose they tie a great Dog behind, who scaring the Beast with barking, makes her run at full speed, so that at this rate they will Travel sometimes 40 Lgs a day. But what is most surprising is, that, whereas the Country beyond *Siberia* lies all upon a level as far as Mount *Caucasus*, the People to ease their Beasts, have a way of putting up Sails in their Sleds, which, if the Wind be favourable, carries them over the Snow and frozen Rivers. Thus they Travel over the Ice to the River *Geneſſai*, where the *Muscovites* have built a City of the same Name; there you take shipping upon the 2 Rivers *Tongueſi* and *Angara*, which arise out of the Lake of *Baikala*; and which are said to be 500 Versts long, and 40 broad, the Water of it is so clear, that notwithstanding its depth, one may discover the Colour of the Stones that lie at the bottom. The Mountains which enclose it on all sides, and are the Rendevouz of various Winds, prove sometimes such a trouble to Travellers, that they are forced to bestow 7 or 8 days in crossing it, tho' it be not above 8 Lgs in breadth. After you have pass'd the Lake, you may embark if you please, upon the River *Schelinga*, which carries you to a City of the same name, situate about 50 Lgs from the mouth of it, built there by the *Muscovites* on purpose for the conveniency of their *Caravans*; But if you intend to go by Land, you may buy of the *Monguls*, which are just by to the S. Mules, and Dromedaries, for the continuation of your journey into *China*, which you may reach in 15 days; This being the Road which most of the *Muscovite* Merchants now trading into *China* take, make it appear, that those Countries, known formerly under the Name of the *Great Tartary* only, are neither so Desart nor unpeopled as some have been apt to imagine, but that they are provided with many good Rivers, and produce abundance of precious Commodities. For, not to mention here the Rhubarb, Azure Stone, and Castors of which the *Tousbees* and *Monguls* have great plenty, the Rivers *Oby*; *Tongueſi*, and *Angara*, afford Sables and black Foxes, and the River *Tamour*, Ginseng Roots, Pearls and *Badian*, as *Argus* is enrich'd with its Silver and Lead-mines. The *Muscovites* have besides this found in those parts a kind of Ivory, which both for its whiteness, and smoothness, surpasses any that is brought from the *Indies*. This they are furnish'd with by a certain Amphibious Creature call'd *Behemoth*, found most commonly in the River *Leka*, or near the shoar of the *Tartarian* Sea. I have seen several of these at *Muscow*, which were about 10 inches long, and 2 in Diameter at the Root; besides that the Elephants teeth are not comparable to them in Beauty, they have a peculiar quality to stanch Blood, being carried about a Person subject to bleeding, which is the reason that the *Persians* and *Turks* prefer it before Gold. If we may give entire credit to a Person of an Eminent rank, accomplish'd Wit and high Reputation among the *Muscovites*, (I mean no less Person than *Mouchim Pouckhim*, then *Waywode of Smolensko*) he told us, concerning this Amphibious Creature, which is as big, and no less dangerous than a Crocodile, that at the Month of the River *Kawvina* lying as beyond the *Oby*, which after it has encreased its Waters by the River *Leka*, falls into the frozen Sea, is a certain populous and spacious Island, the Inhabitants of which were the first, who discoverd this Animal; unto which he added, That it requiring a great deal of labour and assiduity to hunt this fierce Creature, those people used to carry their whole Families along with them, to assist them; and that it often happened, when these poor Wretches had advanced a great way upon that Ice, they were surprised by a Thaw, before they could reach the shoar, and carried upon

Sailing Sleds

The Lake Baikala.

The Beemoth produces Ivory.

hug

huge pieces of Ice, that are broken off by the Thaw, whither chance carries them. He told us that it was his Opinion, that whole Families of those *Behemoth* Hunters had been carried upon those floating pieces of Ice to the most *Northern* parts of *America*, which lie very near that part of *Asia*, which jets out into the *Tartarian* Sea; and the Inhabitants of which, said he, especially near the Sea-side, have the same Physiognomy with these Islanders. This Opinion seems not to be ill grounded, considering that in the Northern parts of *America*, are several kinds of the same Creatures, which are so common in *Muscovy*, and especially Beavers, which it is probable might be transported thither in the same manner; and I my self have been a Witness of vast floating pieces of Ice, which kept whole and entire, from *Warsaw* for a great way into the *Baltick Sea*. If there were any Real affinity betwixt the Language of the Northern *Americans*, and these Islanders, as well as betwixt their Features, this Opinion might pass for more than a Conjecture. Some People, I am apt to believe, will wonder, that considering that great number of Rivers betwixt *Muscovy* and *China*, they should not find it more easie and commodious to carry their Traffick by Water. But, besides that the *Muscovites* are naturally not addicted to Maritime Affairs, there are unsurmountable Obstacles, which oppose that Passage.

How *America* was Peopled at first.

Among the many Rivers that lie beyond *Siberia*, there are 4 Principal ones, known by the Names of the *Oby*, the *Geneslai*, the *Lena*, and the *Tamour*; As to the River *Oby*, the most *Westerly* of all, it is so dangerous by reason of the vast Mountains of Ice, which lie at the mouth of it, almost all the year long, that there is scarce any passage for Ships. Thence to the *East* is the River *Geneslai*, which besides the inconveniency of the Ice it has common with the *Oby*, labours under another difficulty, which are Nine several *Cataracts*, or Water-falls, which, besides the danger, must put the Merchants to vast Charges in loading and unloading their Vessels. The River *Lena* has a more uniform Current, but instead of Ice, it is so much pestered with Rocks and Shelves at the Mouth, that it is not passable except for small Boats. The River *Tamour* the most *Easterly* of all, which Disembogues into the Sea of *Japan*, is indeed not Subject to any of those Obstacles, as the rest, yet where its Waters mix with the Seas, there grow such Prodigious Quantities of Bulrushes, and that of such a bigness, that a Man can scarce grasp them with both Arms, as to render its Entrance quite unaccountable. However, these Rivers are not quite useless to the *Muscovite* Merchants; for besides that they are much more easie to Cross when frozen, than they could Travel by Land, they are tolerably Navigable towards their sources, where they have but few Water-falls. One thing is very remarkable in these *Cataracts*, that they send forth such a fragrant scent, as if all the circumjacent Country had been over spread with the nicest Perfumes; If we may give Credit to such as have Travelled in those parts, this odoriferous scent proceeds from certain sweet-scented Flowers, which grow in great abundance upon those Rocks; that these Water-falls, the circumambient Air of which being kept in continual Agitation by the motion of the Water, disperses the sweet Exhalations of those Flowers all over the circumjacent Country. What I have hitherto imparted to the Reader, concerning the different Roads leading into *China*, and those Countries through which Travellers must pass, may, I hope, conduce something towards forming some right *Idea* of the *Great Tartary*, so little known even to this day; To discover which in a Nation so naturally inclined to jealousie, has cost us no small trouble, and had not we happened to come at a favourable juncture, when the *Muscovite* Court were just upon the point of Courting our King's Friendship, by sending a splendid Embassy thither, to engage him in the League they were then making with the Emperor and *Poland* against the *Turks*, we should perhaps not have succeeded so well in our Informations. But as this Embassy proved favourable to us upon that account, so it served the *Muscovites* for a specious Pretence to deny our Request, of going to *China* by Land. For no sooner were they informed that we were to come out of *Persia* into *Muscovy*, without any Letters of Recommendation, but they told us, that, though they were sorry to Obstruct so good a Design, as the intended Conversion of Infidels, yet that unavoidable Reasons of State obliged them, not to grant Passage through their Territories to Persons unknown to them, that it would be our best way to take the conveniency of going along with the Ambassador, they were sending into *France*, and after having represented to our King the Advantage of a free Passage for his Subjects into *China*, through their Territories (which was that they chiefly aim'd at) to return with such Passports and Recommendations from our King, as were requisite for a design of that Nature. It was in vain for us to Demonstrate the unnecessary trouble they put us to, in a matter which had not the least relation to Temporal interest, for Prince *Gallichin* in the *Czar*'s Name ordered us to depart, so that we were forced to obey; but as we had no small reason to doubt the success of the intended Embassy for *France*, we chose rather to Travel by our selves; but thought it absolutely requisite to wait upon him before we left *Muscow*; he sent us his Sleds about 10 a Clock at Night, (which time had been pitch'd upon as the most convenient to Discourse with us without giving any jealousie at Court) and entertained us very civilly for near 3 hours. Among other Discourses, he ask'd us, what Course he had best to take, to be well received in *France*; we told him franckly, that a free and generous behaviour in a Person of his Character would take better there, than all the intrigues he could invent, and that we were of Opinion, that most of the former *Muscovite* Ambassadors had miscarried for want of that Precaution. This being an advice not suitable to the Genius of a *Muscovite*, we found it had but a small with him, so that at last we took our leave, and as we were passing through the Court, we found abundance of People busie in loading Waggons with Sables and other Furs; for as ready Money is a scarce Commodity in *Muscovy*, so they take all Opportunities to bring it into the Country, this is the reason why so many Merchants, under the pretended Title of Gentlemen, are received into the Trains of such Ambassadors, as they send into Foreign Countries, there to vent their Commodities for ready Money, with the greater profit. Two days after this Interview, we left *Muscow* taking our way towards *Poland* (in hopes of meeting with better success after our next return into *Muscovy*) in the Company of a *Muscovite Boyar*, who was going to his Country Seat upon the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, and having been formerly a *Roman Catholick* himself, retained some kindness for our Religion, which made him Treat us, and a *Dominican* Fryar, who came lately from *Persia*, with Letters from that King to the Pope and Emperour with all imaginable Civility. The Letters were written in Answer to those Letters, sent by these 2 Potentates to the K. of *Persia*, to exhort him to embrace this Opportunity of regaining from the *Turks*, what they had wrested from the *Persians* some years before, but as the *Persian* King was too much addicted to his Pleasures to engage himself in the toils of War, and that the Prime Minister, for what reason, is unknown, shew'd no less aversion to it, these Answers imported no more, than that there was still a veil before his Eyes, which till it were removed, he could not have a clear insight into those Propositions that were made to him in the said Letters. We Travelled in Company with this *German Dominican* Fryar, through part of *Muscovy*, *Lithuania*, and *White Russia*, and did not part till we arrived at *Warsaw* the 12th of *March* 1686. eleven Months after F. *Barnaby* and I had left *Iverum*.

The River *Oby*.

Geneslai.

Lena.

Timour.

CHAP. XI.

Father Averil's *Travels into* Muſcovy.

UPON mature Deliberation betwixt F. *Barnaby* and I, it was thought moſt expedient, that whilſt he return'd into *France*, in order to obtain the neceſſary Paſſports and Letters of Recommendation from our King, I ſhould ſtay in *Poland*, to be the nearer to *Muſcovy*; Purſuant to which Reſolution F. *Barnaby* went to *Dantzick*, where meeting fortunately with a Ship bound for *Amſterdam*, he ſafely arrived there, and ſo proceeded further to *Paris*. The great Comfort I received during my ſtay at *Warſaw*, was the frequent Opportunity I met with of giving all imaginable encouragement to a great number of our Country-men that inhabit there, and my endeavours for the promoting of our Religion ſucceeded ſo well, that I converted a *Mahometan Tartar*, a Slave to the Prince *Tſartoreſky* to the Chriſtian Religion, and brought a ſeduced *Lutheran* into the Boſom of our holy Church. But theſe Functions of my miniſtry did not cauſe me to neglect any thing that might contribute towards the promoting that Great Deſign, which detained me in *Poland*. And as there was a neceſſity of keeping a Correſpondency with my Companion, whilſt he tarried in *France*, I implored the *Protection* of the Marquis *de Bethune*, his moſt Chriſtian Majeſty's Ambaſſador to the King of *Poland*, who had no ſooner underſtood our intention by my Letter, but he in the moſt obliging manner in the World, not only gave me full aſſurances of his good Inclinations, but alſo as a real proof of it, ſpoke to the King of *Poland* upon that Subject, who was graciouſly pleaſed to make ſuch diſcoveries to him concerning the Paſſage into *China* by Land, which we intended to take, that he adviſed me to come in Perſon to Court, there to receive from his Majeſty's own Mouth thoſe Inſtructions, which might have proved of vaſt conſequence to us, and not the *Muſcovites* by their unaccountable Obſtinacy broken all our Meaſures. No ſooner was it known in *France*, with what Zeal his *Poliſh* Majeſty eſpouſed our Deſign, and of what great advantage the nearneſs of his Territories to thoſe of *Muſcovy*, might prove towards the furthering of our Deſign; but I had poſitive orders ſent me, to implore his Majeſty's Authority to ſecond our projected journey, which was in his Power to do, by reaſon that by the late Peace concluded with the *Muſcovites* his *Poliſh* Majeſty, by vertue of a peculiar Article had reſerved to himſelf a Power of ſending at Pleaſure Religious Men to Preach the Goſpel, in thoſe parts, and that the *Czars* ſhould be obliged to grant them free Paſſage through their Territories. As I was infinitely pleaſed with theſe happy Conjunctures, which ſeem'd to conſpire towards the accompliſhment of our *Great Work*, I forthwith ſet out from *Warſaw* to *Samarow*, where the Court then was, and being ſoon after my arrival preſented to his Majeſty by the Marquis *de Bethune*, he was ſo obliging as firſt to enter upon our Deſign of going by Land into *China*, of which he made me ſuch convincing Diſcoveries, beyond what ever I heard of before, that, I can't without grief Lament the opportunity we have loſt of putting it in execution. The King had received theſe Diſcoveries from the hands of a certain *Muſcovite* Ambaſſador named, *Nicephore*, who had reſided for ſometime in the ſame Country at *Peking*; and the King had the goodneſs to Communicate the whole Secret to me, together with a Map or Book of Roads, which Monſieur d' *Abancourt* had compoſed out of the Memoirs of the ſaid Ambaſſadour. They agree to the higheſt nicety with the Relations of all the Travellers who have taken that way into *China*, both in reſpect of the Roads, and the People inhabiting thoſe Countries through which you muſt paſs; and who in my ſecond journey into *Muſcovy*, I made it my buſineſs to compare with the true Sentiments of thoſe I conſulted upon that account, I found, an exact harmony betwixt them, as to the poſition of all the Cities and Forts mentioned in the ſaid Map, which conſequently would have been very exact, had it not been for the defects in the degrees of Longitude and Latitude, in which as the *Muſcovites* are very irregular, and ſcarce will admit others to correct their Errors by their own Obſervations, ſo it will be very difficult to determine any thing certainly upon that account; And what has been alledged in the preceeding Book, concerning the Paſſage by Land into *China*, being part taken out of theſe Memoirs of the King of *Poland*, and what Information I have received ſince, being no more than a Confirmation of what I had underſtood before, it would be ſuperfluous to inſert them here, which however, I did not think fit to paſs by in ſilence, not queſtioning but that the moſt ſenſible part of Mankind would eaſily be induced to rely upon the Authority of the moſt knowing Prince, and the leaſt liable to be impoſed upon, as to this point, that now Reigns in the World. I ſoon diſpatch'd all theſe inſtructions with what other Informations I had got, to *France*, where they were ſo well received and approved of by our Superiours, that they promiſed themſelves very conſiderable Advantages from this undertaking for the encreaſe of our Religion; The Zeal his moſt Chriſtian Majeſty had ſo lately ſhew'd in promoting the Converſion of the Infidels in the Kingdom of *Siam*, not giving them the leaſt room to doubt, of his Protection in this ſo laudable a deſign. They took care to repreſent to him the vaſt Advantages that were likely to accrue from this diſcovery, which was backed by the hopes of the Converſion of no leſs than the *Great Tartary*, he no ſooner underſtood their Intentions, but readily granted all that they requeſted for the facilitating of this Important work, ordering immediately our Paſſports to be diſpatch'd; and not contented thus alſo granted us his Letters Patents, conſtituting us his Mathematicians, and honouring us with his peculiar Letters of Recommendation to the *Czars* of *Muſcovy*, whilſt F. *Barnaby* left no ſtone unturn'd in *France*, to further our deſign with all poſſible ſecurity, I received Orders from our Superiours, to ſelect ſome of our Society in *Poland*, ſuch as were fitly qualified for the facilitating the Succeſs of our Enterprize. There could not be wanting in ſo ſpacious a Kingdom ſuch as were very willing to have their ſhare in ſo great a Work, and there were a conſiderable number of *Jeſuits*, who offered themſelves to be partakers of this happineſs, out of which we pick'd out only two, whom we look'd upon as the propereſt Perſons for the promoting of our Deſign. The firſt, whoſe name was *Zapolsko*, was deſcended from one of the moſt Illuſtrious Families of *Poland*, out of the Province of *Cracow*, and had for theſe 20 Years laſt paſt ſhew'd a moſt extraordinary inclination to go a Miſſionary into *China*. Beſides that he was well verſed in the Mathematicks, Philoſophy and Divinity, which he taught with great Reputation, being Rector of the Chief Colleges in *Perſia Royal*, he underſtood ſeveral Foreign Languages, and among the reſt the *Ruſſian* perfectly well. The name of the ſecond was *Terpiloweski*, a *Lithuanian* by Birth, who had been Profeſſor of the Mathematicks at *Vilna*, and now reſolved to have his ſhare in the great Work, I was going about; for which he

he was endowed with extraordinary Qualifications, as being of a sweet Disposition, a great Master in playing upon divers sorts of Musical Instruments, and of a most surprizing Address in all kinds of handy-works, especially in engraving. As these two Fathers understood exactly well the *Sclavonian* and *Russian* Languages, as F. *Barnaby* and I did the *Turkish* and *Tartar*, we were sufficiently prepared in that respect to pass through *Siberia*, and the *Great Tartary* to *China*, without the help of an Interpreter; and as these two *Polish* Fathers on their side omitted nothing, which they judged might further our Design; so F. *Barnaby* on the other hand, who was the best judge of what was likely to be most acceptable in those Places, through which we were to pass, took care to provide Toys of all Kinds, and Remedies, to present them to the *Tartarian* Princes, through whose Countries we were to pass, besides Mathematical Instruments to observe the Longitude and Latitude of places.

F. *Barnaby* embarks at *Roan.*

Thus prepared, and back'd by the King's Recommendatory Letters, he went to *Roan*, there to embark with another young Jesuit, who had entred himself lately into that Order, for no other reason, than to make himself serviceable in the Life of a Missionary. It being *November* by this time, I resolved to leave *Warsaw*, and go to *Dantzick*, there to expect my Companion, not without hopes, that we might reach *Muscovy* before the end of the Winter. But God's Providence was pleased to check us afresh; in the full career of our hopes, the Ship in which F. *Barnaby* was embark'd being lost by Shipwrack. This was a most sensible Affliction to us, the loss of so good a Man, together with what he had brought along with him for the promoting of our Design, being irreparable, especially at a juncture, when the indifferent Reception the *Muscovite* Ambassadors had met with at the *French* Court, and the prospect of a War, which soon after ensued, betwixt *France* and *Germany*, with the last of which the *Czar* was entred into a strict League, appear'd to be so many Presages of our future ill success. Notwithstanding I say, all these Obstacles, we resolved not to give over our project, and, as at this time the Diet of *Poland*, was held at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*, whither Count *Syri*, (of whom more anon) was gone to sollicite to obtain the Embassy of *Persia*, I took a Resolution to go thither, not questioning, I having always found him very favourable to our Society, and design, but I might by his Assistance find out some way or other to accomplish our Design.

F. lost by shipwrack.

The Author leaves *Dantzick.*

Accordingly I left *Dantzick* in the beginning of *February*, and in 8 hours time over the *Huffor* Gulph, which is made there by the *Baltick Sea*, which was frozen over at that time, I arrived at *Koningsbergh*, the Capital City of the Ducal *Prussia*, 24 *German* Lgs distant from *Dantzick* by Land. Notwithstanding the trouble the loss of my Companion had put me into, I was not a little delighted with the agreeable Spectacle of so many Magnificent Sleds as were to be seen at that time upon the *Vistula*; they are Machines resembling a Triumphant Car, drawn by one Horse, with a very easie motion and incredible swiftness. Being obliged to bestow some Days in encouraging the Zeal of some *Roman Catholicks*, who have not the free exercise of our Religion here, as living under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*.

Comes to *Koningsbergh.*

I made all the haste I could to recover my lost time, and happily arrived at *Grodno* before the breaking up of the Diet. I met here with abundance of Persons of Quality, from whom I hoped for some Assistance, and among the rest with the Marquess *de Bethune*, and the Count *Syri*, unto whom I made my Applications, remonstrating to them the Difficulties we were likely to meet with in this intended Mission, which were such that I almost began to despair of obtaining a free Passage through *Siberia* from the *Muscovites*, since their Deputies, who were present at the Diet of *Poland*, had upon several occasions spoke very reflectingly concerning the ill Reception their Ambassadors had met with in *France*, and had spread a Rumor of a certain Engagement betwixt the *Chineses*, and their Forces, in which they said had been made Prisoners, two Jesuits belonging to the *Chinese* Army, all which I look'd upon as the Fore-runners of the Denial they intended to give us of passing through *Siberia*. Yet to be satisfied in the matter, and to leave no Stone unturned, I prevailed upon the Marquess *de Bethune*, to write upon that subject to Prince *Gallichin*, to sound his Inclinations, unto which he receiving no Answer, I gave the matter over for lost, in relation to our Passage through *Siberia*. There being then no other means left, than to think of another way, which might not depend on the Capricio's of the *Muscovites*, I proposed to Count *Syri*, that being pitch'd upon to go in the Quality of Ambassador of the *Republick*, to the Court of *Persia*, by the way of *Muscovy*, he might be capable of protecting us, and by the Credit he had gained in his former Embassy, among many Nations of the *East*, to secure our way as far as the *Tousbec Tartars*, being the first, belonging to the *Great Tartary*. This Count *Syri* was a Native of *Armenia*, and his Family being involved in some Troubles, he was carried very young into *Portugal*, where he was Educated among the King's Pages, till he was about 18 or 20 years of Age. Having a more than ordinary desire for travelling (a thing almost natural to those of that Country) he travelled through *France*, *Italy*, *Germany* and *Poland*, and having made himself Master of divers both *European* and *Asiatick* Languages, and among the rest of the *Turkish* and *Polish*, he was looked upon as a fit subject by his *Polish* Majesty, to accompany his Ambassador, who was then going to *Constantinople*. He managed matters so well in this Station, that after his return from thence he was sent Ambassador, first into *Muscovy* and afterwards into *Persia*, where he discharged his Trust so well, that now he was pitched upon by the Emperor, the Republick of *Poland*, and that of *Venice*, (who were engaged in a Lg against the *Turks*) to the King of *Persia*, to remonstrate to him the Advantages he might reap at this juncture, if he would break with the *Turks*. The *Eastern* Embassies have this beyond those of *Europe*, that they are not only honourable, but also profitable; for, besides that their charges are born immediately after they enter the Territories of those Princes unto whom they are sent, the Merchants trading into the *Levant*, but especially the *Muscovites* and *Armenians* are the fondest People in the World, to purchase the Protection of those Ambassadors, at a very good rate, because they enjoy the Benefit of a free Trade, without paying any Customs. For this must be acknowledged to the Vertues of Count *Syri*, that he was a Person, who equally apply'd all his Thoughts to the Advantage of the cause of his Masters, and that of Religion, of which he has given several convincing Proofs, in taking away from the Infidels several unhappy Christians, who had renounc'd their Faith, in settling Missionaries at *Schamachie*, and in now endeavouring to procure new Settlements for them throughout the whole *Persian* Empire, under the King of *Poland*'s Protection. I can't, I say, pass by in silence upon this occasion, the generosity he shew'd us at *Astrachan*, where he offered to Ransome us from the *Calmuc Tartars*, being inform'd that we had been taken by them as we were crossing the *Wolga*. All these great Qualifications being sufficient motives to engage so extraordinary a Person in our design, I told him, that if he had any Thoughts of being known to our great Monarch, this was the most favourable occasion he could meet with by affording us his Protection, and that I did not in the least question, but that such an offer would meet with a favourable acceptance from our King. After a months Consideration, he yielded my Request, and writ a Letter to Father *de la Chaise*, in which he made an offer of his Zeal and Service to our Monarch.

Take New Measures.

Count *Syri*

The Eastern Embassies very profitable

Count *Syri* writes to F. *la Chaise.*

His offer is accepted by the *French* King.

Our Superiors in *France* being over-joy'd at the News of it, obtained without much difficulty his Majesty's consent, who being satisfied in the Character they bestow'd upon the Count *Syri*, order'd his Letters of Recommendation to be expedited to the Kings of *Persia*, of the *Tousbecs* and *China*, the Contents of which being the same, and written in one Style, we will content our selves to insert only the last here.

The King's Letter to the King of *China.*

'Most high, Most excellent, Most puissant, and Most 'magnanimous Prince; Our dearly beloved good 'Friend, may God encrease your Grandeur with a 'happy end. Being assur'd that your Majesty has 'shewn a great Inclination, to have in your Dominions and near your Person, a considerable number of 'learned Men, well instructed in all the *European* 'Sciences, we did some years ago send to you six Mathematicians from among our Subjects, to shew 'your Majesty, whatever might be thought worth 'your curiosity in these Sciences, but especially in the

'Aſtronomical Obſervations, of our Academy eſta-
'bliſh'd in our Capital City of *Paris*. But experi-
'ence having convinced us, that by reaſon of the
'vaſt diſtance betwixt our Territories, the Sea
'Voyages have proved both very tedious and dange-
'rous, as being ſubject to many Siniſter Accidents, we
'have reſolv'd only out of the deſire we have to contri-
'bute to your Majeſty's Satisfaction, to ſend to you
'ſome more of the ſame Father's *Jeſuits* (who are
'our Mathematicians) with Count *Syri*, by Land,
'which being the ſhorteſt and ſafeſt way, we hope
'they may be the firſt near your Majeſty, and ſerve
'as ſo many Pledges of our Eſteem and Friendſhip,
'and that after the return of the ſaid Count *Syri*,
'we may receive the ſatisfaction of having a more
'ample Account of the admirable and moſt extraor-
'dinary Actions of your Life, whereupon we beſeech
'God, to augment the Grandeur of your Majeſty,
'with an end altogether happy. Given at *Marly*.
'*Auſt.* 7. 1688.

Your moſt dear and good Friend.

Lewis.

Whilſt theſe things were preparing in *France* for the furthering of our deſign, I received the welcome News, that F. *Beauvillier* who was to have accompany'd F. *Barnaby*, arriving ſome days too late at *Roan*, had eſcap'd the Shipwrack which loſt us our Companion, and was now coming by Land into *Poland*. This Father being thus preſerved by Providence from that danger which overwhelm'd F. *Barnaby*, I am got at Liberty to give you an account of what great things I have ſeen him do, whilſt I travelled in his Company, but as the Death of the other has put him beyond the malice of any, I am obliged to do that office to his Memory, that ſcarce ever was a Perſon ſent into the *Eaſt* better qualified for the Office of a Miſſionary. For, beſides his skill in Foreign Languages, and undaunted Courage, he had made ſome Progreſs in the Study of Phyſick, that by the Cures he perform'd in *Curdiſtan* and *Armenia*, he eſtabliſhed 2 Miſſions there among a People who are apt to meaſure eternal Bleſſings by Temporal Benefits. His Courage did appear by his Sufferings, he was ſtrip'd divers times by the *Arabians* and *Curdes*, twice impriſon'd, and often abus'd and cudgel'd for the Confeſſion of the Truth of the Goſpel.

But to return to *Grodno*, much about the ſame time that the *Poliſh* Diet of *Grodno*, was upon the point of breaking up, I received notice of F. *Beauvillier*'s Arrival in *Poland*, which made me haſten to *Warſaw*, where we both arrived much at the ſame time; and from that time forward made all the neceſſary Preparations for the Proſecution of our intended journey, with Count *Syri*, which was fix'd againſt the latter end of *Auguſt*. In the mean while the Superior of our Society in *Poland*, being encouraged by the Admonitions of thoſe of *France*, reſolved not only to add ſome other Miſſionaries to thoſe already granted for *China*, but being informed, that the Prince of *Iveria*, who had been baniſhed his Dominions for ſome time, and now was going to reaſſume the Government thereof, was very deſirous to have ſome learned *Jeſuits* with him; they readily agreed to take the Advantage of Count *Syri*'s Embaſſy to ſend ſome into thoſe parts. This Prince, whoſe name was *Archilla*, was Originally a Chriſtian of *Georgia*, but to ſecure the quiet Poſſeſſion of the Kingdoms of *Iveria* and *Mengrelia* was turn'd *Mahometan*, which made the King of *Perſia*, whoſe Tributary he was, uſe him very favourably at firſt; and though he afterwards return'd to his former Chriſtianity, he uſed him not ſo rigorouſly as he did ſome other petty Princes his Vaſſals. But being prompted at laſt by his unſatisfiable Luſt, to injoy the ſpouſe of this Unfortunate Prince, coſt it what it would, he firſt made uſe of fair means and entreaties, to obtain his end, but theſe not ſucceeding he proceeded to Threats, and at laſt to open Violence, ordring a good Body of his Troops to poſſeſs themſelves of his Dominions, which *Archilla* not being able to oppoſe, he retreated with the Princeſs, his Lady towards the uttermoſt Borders of his Kingdoms upon the *Turkiſh* Frontiers, near the *Black Sea*, in hopes of finding ſhelter among them; but theſe being brought into the King of *Perſia*'s ſide, found means to ſurpriſe him, and committed him Priſoner to a Caſtle belonging to the *Turks*; The Princeſs his Lady, being left at Liberty, and exaſperated to the higheſt degree by this violence, without loſs of time aſſembled ſome of the Neighbouring Gentlemen, her Subjects, and putting herſelf at the Head of them, attack'd the Caſtle where her Husband was kept, and in ſpite of all the oppoſition of the Soldiers, carry'd him away, and ſet him at Liberty. After ſo bold an attempt, knowing themſelves not ſafe in their Kingdoms, they took their refuge in *Muſcovy*, where they were kindly receiv'd by the *Czars*, who for three years paſt had aſſign'd them a Palace and honourable maintenance in the City of *Muſcow*. Prince *Archilla* being made ſenſible of the Advantages that accrue to the Commonwealth by a general Uniformity of Religion in the Subjects, and not queſtioning but that if he could eſtabliſh the ſame in his Dominions, which was fill'd up with Chriſtians of different Sects, he might be much better in a Condition to defend himſelf againſt his Oppreſſors, he apply'd himſelf to the Patriarch of *Muſcovy*, but with very little probability of ſucceſs, for tho' *Muſcovy* aboundsin Prieſts, their Genius does not lead them to encounter danger upon a Religious account, ſo that he ſaw himſelf obliged to try his Fortune with the *German* Jeſuits, whom he found not ſo backward as the *Muſcovites*, and divers *Poliſh* Jeſuits were willing to take this Opportunity of ſhewing their Zeal for the Religion they profeſt, and conſequently reſolved to go along with Count *Syri* into *Perſia*. We left *Warſaw* at the beginning of *September*, and advanced to the Frontiers of *Muſcovy* in *Lithuania*, where the general Rendevouz of all our Company was appointed, on a certain day; yet it ſo happened, that one of our Miſſionaries, and as ill Fortune would have it, the ſame Perſon who had all the Mathematical Inſtruments, and whatever was ſent us a ſecond time out of *France* along with him, was faln ill at *Vilna*, ſo that after we had ſtop'd ſome time in vain, it was thought Expedient, to deſire Count *Syri* to go on with his whole train to *Smolensko*, whilſt I ſhould make what haſte I could to *Vilna* to look after our Companion. Accordingly Count *Syri* continued his journey, and being extreamly well ſatisfied with the Civilities of the *Waywode* of *Smolensko*, who promiſed him to take care of us as ſoon as we ſhould come that way, he purſued his journey to *Muſcow*. When I came to *Vilna*, I found the Perſon I look'd for, already recovered and gone to *Minsko*, where I overtook him being above 30 *German* Lgs from *Vilna* in the *Black Ruſſia*; after which croſſing a huge Foreſt betwixt that place and *Cazin* the laſt City on the Frontiers of *Poland*, we entred the Borders of *Muſcovy*. In this Foreſt we obſerved moſt Prodigious quanties of Bees, which make their Hives in the hollowneſs of the Trees, and the Country People take care to ſecure them againſt the Bears, who are great Lovers of Honey, by making a fence with Spikes on the top round the Trees, or making up the holes, through which they enter the hollow Tree with Thorns, beſides which the Foreſts of *Lithuania* afford divers ſorts of Furs, not inferior to thoſe generally found in *Muſcovy*. In our paſſing through theſe Foreſts, the Peaſants related us very ſtrange things concerning the Bears, and eſpecially, that notwithſtanding the Savageneſs as has been found by experience, that they ſuckle Children, but what ſurpriſed us moſt, was what they related to us concerning their Paſſing the whole Winter in a profound ſleep, by vertue of a certain ſtupefying Herb, which they eat at the beginning of that Seaſon. They atteſted to us, that a certain Peaſant, being retired upon a Tree to ſhelter himſelf againſt the danger from a ſhe Bear, whom he ſaw coming along with her young ones, he ſaw her eat a certain Herb, and ſhe being return'd into the Foreſt, and he curious to know, what Herb it was ſhe had eaten, gathered ſome of the leaves, which he chew'd going home, which he had no ſooner done, but fell a ſleep upon a hay cock, and being miſs'd for ſeveral days, was at laſt found there, and awaked not without a great deal of difficulty. But to return to our journey; No ſooner were we arrived upon the Frontiers, but we gave notice of our arrival to the Governour of *Smolensko*, who indeed would fain have performed his promiſe made to Count *Syri*, but that an expreſs order from Court forbid him not to admit us into the *Czar*'s Territories; which put us to the greateſt nonplus that could be, not knowing which way to turn our ſelves, when by good luck a *Poliſh* Envoy, named *Laziński*, in his way to *Muſcovy* paſſing through this place, generouſly afforded us his Protection, and carried us in the quality of his Chaplains to *Muſcow*.

The Princeſs of *Iveria* releaſes her Husband.

Some Fathers Miſſionaries ſent into *Persia*.

Bears in love of honey.

Sleep-warrer-low.

They come to *Muſcow* with a Dr. Envoy.

The

The *Muſcovites* had no ſooner notice of it, but they order'd Count *Syri* to depart *Muſcow* immediately, and in a few days after our arrival there, we were commanded by a *Priſtaff* to depart the *Czar*'s Dominions without delay. Not knowing what to do in this extremity, we made our Applications to *Dominick d'Aumont* the *Poliſh* Reſident at *Muſcow*, who not daring to protect us, adviſed us to produce our King's Letter to the *Czar*, which ſucceeded ſo well, that no ſooner had Prince *Gallichin* notice of it, but he excuſed what was paſs'd and promis'd us a particular Audience; accordingly we were introduced to him by the *Poliſh* Reſident, and as he was a great admirer of Strangers, but eſpecially of the *French*, and above all of our Great Monarch, he received us with all manner of Civility, took the King's Letter with a great deal of reſpect, and promiſed us to have it interpreted, in order to give us a favourable Anſwer. I am very free to acknowledge that it was not Prince *Gallichin*'s Fault, we did not receive it accordingly, but the *Dutch*, and Envoy of *Brandenburgh*, whether upon the account that we were *French-men* or *Jeſuits*, I will not determine, had taken care to put ſo many jealouſies into the Heads of the *Boyars*, who were of the *Czar*'s Council, that they were deliberating whole fourteen days upon a matter, which had nothing further in the bottom, than the either granting or refuſing a Paſſage to a few Miſſionaries, who were to Preach the Goſpel in *China*. Whilſt we were in expectation of the iſſue of the deliberations of the Council, we ſpent much of our time in making an exact enquiring into the preſent State of Affairs in *Muſcovy*, which we will reſerve for a particular Treatiſe in due time; we will only take notice in this place, that the Envoy of *Brandenburg*, we had occaſion to mention juſt now, arrived at *Muſcow*, ſome days before us, being ſent by the Elector his Maſter to *Muſcow* under pretence of notifying his Exaltation to the Electoral dignity, but in effect to enter into an Alliance with *Muſcovy* againſt *Poland*, becauſe that King had ſhew'd ſome reſentments, concerning the affront put upon him and the Kingdom of *Poland*, by the ſecond Marriage of the Princeſs *Radzivil* (Siſter-in-Law to the Elector) with one of the Elector *Palatin*'s Sons, whereas ſhe had been promiſed to *Prince James* of *Poland*.

Prince *Gallichin* gives them Audience.

The Envoy's Name was *Richer*, a rigid *Calviniſt*, and conſequently a ſworn Enemy to the Jeſuits, and as he was careſs'd much beyond the *Poliſh* Miniſter at the *Muſcovite* Court, ſo he let ſlip no Opportunity to improve it, to our diſadvantage as will among the reſt appear out of the following account.

A certain *Roman* Catholick Gentleman, named *du Roville*, a Native of *Brabant*, falling into diſpute with a certain *German*, named *Selims*, who to marry a *Lutheran* Woman, had renounced both his Religious Order and Catholick Faith, the ſaid *German* not being able to endure the Reproaches of the other, drew his Sword; the *Brabander* endeavoured for a conſiderable time to avoid his Thruſts, and to diſarm him, but finding his endeavours in vain he took hold of a Piſtol, that happened to hang in the Room ready charged, and ſhot him through, the wounded Perſon living 2 days after, declaring that he had drawn this misfortune upon himſelf by his own Obſtinacy, the Judges delay'd to give their Judgement againſt the Criminal, till they might receive farther Information in the matter, which gave time to the *Poliſh* Reſident to intercede for this unfortunate Gentleman at Court, which had this effect, that the *Muſcovite Boyars* ſhew'd a great Inclination to ſave him, provided he would embrace the *Greek* Religion, and ſerve in their Armies. But this young Gentleman, who was not above 25 years of Age, ſlighting their offers with an Heroick conſtancy, the *Lutherans* and *Dutch*, (who had engaged the *Brandenburgh* Envoy in their Cabal) did puſh the matter ſo vigorouſly againſt him at Court, that when his Friends were moſt in hopes of a Pardon for him, Sentence of Death was pronounced againſt him, immediately after the Envoy of *Brandenburgh* had had a private Conference with Prince *Gallichin*; nay, they were ſo cruel, as not to allow Father *Beauvillier* who was his Confeſſor, to come to him. We left no Stone unturned to have his Sentence revok'd, and were in no ſmall hopes of obtaining it, when one day, to our great ſurpriſe, word was brought us, that the *Brabander* was going to the place of Execution; near the Houſe where this Misfortune had happened; at which F. *Beauvillier* running out immediately, with his Crucifix in his hand, forced himſelf thro' the crowd of People, and in ſpite of the Oppoſition of the Soldiers that attended upon that Occaſion, threw himſelf into the Sledge, in which this poor Gentleman lay, and afforded him ſuch Spiritual Comforts as he thought were moſt proper for ſo extraordinary an Occaſion. Thus being come to the place of Execution, the *Brabander* came modeſtly out of the Sledge, and after having ſpent near an hour and a half in Devout Ejaculations, he delivered his Brocado Veſt to the Executioner, and declaring that he dy'd a true Son of the Catholick Church, he ſtep'd into a ſmall Entrenchment made for that purpoſe, and laying his Body upon the Ground covered with Snow, and the Head upon the Block, received the fatal Stroak, with a marvellous Conſtancy. The Zeal F. *Beauvillier* had ſhewn for this Gentleman, whoſe Death made ſo much noiſe in *Muſcow*, acquired us no ſmall eſteem in that City; but his Adverſaries not being ſatisfied in their Revenge, unleſs they alſo put ignominy upon his Body after his Death, prevailed ſo far with Prince *Gallichin*, that he ſhould lie expoſed three days to publick view. The *Poliſh* Reſident being highly exaſperated at the malice of the Enemies of our Faith, repreſented the matter in ſo preſſing Terms to the Emperor's Miniſter, that by his Interceſſion, it was removed thence, and carried to the *Jeſuits* Houſe, where it was laid in a ſumptuous Coffin, and buried with all the Ceremonies practiſed in Catholick Cities, in the Church-yard allotted for the Burials of Foreigners. One thing happen'd upon this Occaſion, which ought not to be paſs'd by in ſilence; for as the rigour of the Seaſon is ſuch in *Muſcovy* in the Winter, that whenever they have Occaſion to dig the ground, they muſt for ſometime before heat it by a good quantity of Wood, which they burn near it; this precaution having been neglected out of forgetfulneſs, we found notwithſtanding this the Grave diggers employed at their Work with as much eaſe as if the ground had been moiſtned by the moſt favourable Summers rain.

The Tragical Hiſtory of a Gentleman of Brabant.

The Envoy of *Brandenburgh* not ſatisfied, thus, unleſs he alſo thwarted our Deſign, knew ſo well how to repreſent to the *Muſcovite* Court, the ſlight Entertainment their Ambaſſadors met with in *France*, and ſome other matters relating to the Greatneſs of our Monarch, that the jealous *Boyars* thought fit to refuſe us Paſſage, ordering us by the firſt Secretary of the Chancery to retire with the ſame *Poliſh* Envoy who had brought us along with him, out of the *Czar*'s Dominions. In this exigency we had again recourſe to Prince *Gallichin*, whom we knew to be of our ſide, he did uſe all his Intereſt to obtain what we deſired, but in vain, the *Boyars* perſiſting in their former Reſolution, though if he would have employed his Authority with the eldeſt of the 2 *Czars*, and the Princeſs *Sophia* his Siſter, (whoſe favourite he was) he might without queſtion have forced them into a Compliance, but it being not his buſineſs as the caſe then ſtood, to exaſperate the Court againſt him, he thought it his wiſeſt Courſe not to inſiſt further upon the matter, eſpecially ſince two remarkable accidents which befell him much about the ſame time, ſeem'd to forewarn him, that he ought to be very circumſpect, and conſtantly upon his guard. The firſt was done by a private Perſon, who throwing himſelf into the Sledge of this Prince as he was going along the Street, was going to Stab him with his dagger, had he not been happily prevented by the Prince's Attendants; who having ſeized him, he was ſo far from being daunted, that the only ſorrow he ſhew'd was, of having miſcarried in his deſign; *Infamous Tyrant*, ſaid he, *though I have not been ſo fortunate as to be able to deliver my Native Country from ſuch a Monſter, know that about* 300 *Citizens who groan under thy Yoak, are reſolved to take ſurer meaſures than I have done to make thee a Sacrifice to the injur'd People.*

This was follow'd by another, which ſeem'd to be the Preſage of the ruin of that Great Miniſter; for ſome days before his departure to the Army, a covered Coffin was found at his Palace Gate, with a note in it to this purpoſe: *Gallichin, unleſs this Campaign prove more fortunate than the laſt, thou*

cannot avoid this. These things, I say, proved the forerunners of his misfortune, which ensued soon after; for no sooner was he returned from the *Crim-Tartary*, but he was banished into *Siberia*, where he leads a miserable Life ever since. Thus all our hopes being vanish'd in *Muscovy*, we prepar'd for our return with the *Polish* Envoy, but the *Carnaval* of the *Muscovites* being at hand, during which all manner of excesses were committed by them, the Envoy thought it his safest way to tarry a fortnight, rather than to expose our selves to the hazard of being insulted by the way; About that time, the youngest of the 2 *Czars* being about 18 years of Age, marryed the Daughter of an Officer of the Army, which was proclaim'd by the sound of the Great Bell, which contains 20 foot Diameter, 40 in height, and a Cubit in thickness, tho' since it was first cast they have taken off above 400000 pound of Metal, to make it sound the better; They strike it with a Hammer, which is seldom done but upon very extraordinary Occasions. One thing is observable, that whereas the *Czar* always chooses one out of his Subjects for his Spouse, the Marriage is never proclaim'd till after its Consummation, for fear of putting such as perhaps have aspired to, and been disappointed in obtaining this Dignity upon some desperate attempt or other, especially by Witchcraft, in which point the *Muscovites*, are extreamly Superstitious. The falling Sickness which siezed the young Prince some few days after, was at first attributed to this, but as this distemper is Hereditary to the Family, and that it had no further ill consequences, that rumour vanish'd soon after. The *Polish* Envoy immediately after the Conclusion of the *Carnaval*, set forward on his journey for *Poland*, and we accompany'd him to the Borders of *Lithuania*, whence we proceeded to *Warsaw*, where Heaven was pleased to raise us a Patron, under whose Protection, we continued our journey to *Constantinople*.

CHAP. XII.

Father Averil's *Travels into* Moldavia.

THO' the Dangers which we were likely to Encounter in so long a Journey, when the War betwixt the Emperour and the Infidels, had made those Roads very unsafe, yet as we were resolved to pursue our Design, cost it what it would, we desired Passes from the Emperor's Envoy call'd *Jervoski*, to *Vienna*, from whence we might with ease go to *Buda*, and so further into the Grand Seignior's Dominions. But a certain reason of State having obliged him to refuse it, we made our Applications to the Great General of *Poland*, *Jablonouski*, who Entertained our Propositions with a great deal of Kindness, and promised us forthwith to dispatch two Messengers, one to the *Hospodar* of *Moldavia*, the other to the *Bassa* of *Caminiec*, in order to procure us a free Passage; which he did accordingly, and Entertained us in his own Palace at *Leopold*, till their return, when having received as favourable Answers as could be expected, the Great General thought it our best way to take the Road of *Moldavia*, for which care we had great Reason to Thank him, for no sooner were we arrived at *Jassi*, the Metropolis of *Moldavia*, but we understood that some *Armenians* who had taken their way over *Caminiec* had been strip'd by the *Tartars*. But what surpass'd all the rest of his Kindnesses, was, that he provided us with all necessary charges for our Journey, and allowed us a guard of 30 *Moldavians* to Conduct us to the *Hospodar*. Thus we cross'd part of *Podolia* and *Pokutia* to the City of *Campo Longo*, belonging to the *Moldavians*, but then in the Possession of the *Poles*, but before we reach'd the place, we were forced to pass the famous Forest of the *Bonkovines*, famous for the Signal Victory the Great General of *Poland*, obtained some years ago over the *Turks* and *Tartars*, under the Command of *Sulthan Galga*, who were threatning *Poland* with a Powerful irruption. After we got safe out of this Forest, the ways of which are very troublesome, and much infested by Robbers, we entred the Plains of *Moldavia*, which are perhaps the Pleasantest and Finest in all *Europe*, being watered by many Rivers, and among the rest by the *Moldava*, which would make this Country one of the most fertile in the World, were it not that by the continual Marches of the *Turks* through it, and the frequent Inroads of the *Tartars*, the Inhabitants are discouraged from improving their Grounds to any considerable advantage. Having taken a New Guard at *Campo Longo*, we continued our journey to *Jassi*, the Metropolis of *Moldavia*, where we were received with such Expressions of kindness by the *Hospodar* as is past Expressing. We attributed these Obligations to the recommendatory Letters of the Great General, but found in the Sequel, that there was some Mystery hidden in the bottom; the better to disguise his Design he was then upon in entring into a Lge with the Emperour; For, this *Constantine Cantemir*, *Hospodar* of *Moldavia*, having promised the King of *Poland*, during the Campaign of *Budziac*, to receive him into his Capital City, with his Army, was so far from performing it, that upon the approach of that King, he left the City with the Inhabitants and all their movables, at which the *Poles* being enraged, entred the City and laid it almost desolate. This so incensed the *Moldavians*, that they resolved to enter into a Lge with the Emperour, and to submit to his Protection upon certain Conditions; the chief of which were, that the Emperor should assist the *Hospodar* in driving the *Poles* out of *Campo Longo*; that he should procure the Liberty of the eldest Son of the *Hospodar*, who was detain'd a Hostage at *Constantinople*, that the Principality of *Moldavia* should be Hereditary to the *Hospodars* Family, and finally, that a full Liberty of Religion should be granted in this Principality. After a stay of 8 days at *Jassi* the *Hospodar*, having provided us with Pass-ports and Letters of Recommendation to the *Serasquier*, who then lay encamp'd upon the *Danube*, on the Frontiers of *Moldavia*, so that departing with the Convoy, we arrived in 4 days at *Galatz*, a small Town upon the *Danube*, whence we were conducted in a bark to the *Turkish* Camp, not above 5 hours distant from thence. We were very obligingly received by the *Turkish Serasquier* who gave us Audience in his Tent, with a great deal of Splendour, and as to our business referr'd us to his *Kiaia* or Lieutenant: who tho' an Apostate *Greek* entertain'd us very kindly, being a great Lover of the Mathematicks, and especially of Astronomy. But whilst we were Discoursing upon that Point, an unlucky Accident happened, which once more put us to no small trouble; For some Letters having been taken from a *Polander* near *Caminiec*, disguised, like a *Tartar*, which by the Crown in the Seal, they imagined to come from the King of *Poland*, and knowing us come lately from thence, they supposed we might unravel the Mystery. It was in vain for us, to tell them, that they were Letters belonging to the *French* Embassador in *Poland*, which we Demonstrated by the difference of the Coronets, and shew'd them the impossibility of ravelling the Mystery of those Cyphers in which they were writ; for they sent us to a House in a Borough near the Camp, where we were guarded by some *Janizaries*; We made our Application to the *Kiaia*, who received us with a great deal of Civility, and told us that it not being in his Power to release us without the knowledge of the *Grand Vizier*, we must stay till the return of the Express they had sent for that purpose; which was nevertheless only an excuse, for we were

The Great General of Poland's Care for us.

The Forest of the Bonkovines.

Moldava.

Come to Jassi.

Leave Moldavia, & come into the Turks Camp.

Find adventure the Turks Camp.

kept

keep ſtill under the ſame Confinement; till the Abbot *Girardin* being inform'd thereof, obtain'd orders from the *Grand Vizier* for our Releaſement. We croſs'd the *Danube*, and inſtead of going through *Romania*, we embark'd upon the ſame River for *Kili*, where we were told, we ſhould meet with a Veſſel bound for *Conſtantinople*, which proved true. We were no ſooner arrived there, but we took a place for us in the ſaid Veſſel; we weigh'd Anchor the next day, but were kept 24 hours at the mouth of the *Danube*, by contrary VVinds; during which time we were forced to be conſtantly upon our Guards, for fear of the *Coſacks*, who in ſmall Boats, covered with Leather, inſeſt thoſe parts, and attack Ships, by ſurpriſe, unleſs they are conſtantly upon their Guard. The next day a N. E. wind carried us into the *Black-Sea*, and the third day after we got ſight of the Beacon, that ſtands at the entrance of the *Boſphorus* upon the *Aſiatick* Coaſt, but were forced to keep from the ſhoar again by Night, for fear of ſtranding, the Sea being very boiſterous thereabouts, however, the next day we got ſafely into the *Canal*, where we diſcovered the Great and Famous City of *Conſtantinople*. We diſembark'd at *Galata*, where being inform'd that Monſieur *de Chateauneuf* was ſtop'd at *Gallipoli* by contrary winds, we were obliged to ſtay his coming, we having ſome Letters, concerning our paſſage into *Perſia*, to deliver to him from the Great General of *Poland*, to procure us a paſſport from the *Cumacan* of *Conſtantinople*; ſcarce had we obtain'd our wiſh, when I was unfortunately ſeized with a cruel Spitting of Blood, which being the third time in leſs than a year, the Phyſicians and our Father engaged me to return into *France* for the recovery of my Health.

Leave the Camp.

Enter the Black-Sea.

Come to Galata.

A New Accident ſtops my deſign.

Accordingly, the 23th of *Octo.* I embark'd a Board *French-Man* of War, called the *Adventurer*, which was to carry Madam *de Girardin*, after the death of the late Ambaſſadour her Husband into *France*, and at the beginning of the Night paſs'd the 7 Towers with a briſk Gale from the N. as alſo the Sea of *Marmora*, and the 24th. reach'd the Canal of *Gallipoli*. Here we ſaw the *Turkiſh* Fleet, conſiſting of 11 Great Ships only at an Anchor, which made us paſs by them without any Ceremony, (according to the Cuſtom of the *Turks*) and came ſoon after over againſt the old Caſtles, where we ſtaid that Night for a Bark, and Tartan our Ship was to Convoy into *France*. The 25th we ſet Sail again, and ſaluted the old Caſtles with 5 Cannon ſhot, which they anſwered with 9 ſharp; the ſame we did to the two new Ones, who returnd us the ſame number. I then obſerved, That theſe Caſtles were ſo far from being impregnable, as they have been reported to be, that excepting ſome Ramperts, they are without any Defence, and tho' the rebound of the Bullets of the old Caſtles reach beyond the middle of the Canal, thoſe of the new Ones can hardly reach it. We no ſooner left the Canals of which theſe Forts defend the Entrance, but we paſs'd in ſight of the Iſles *Tenedo*, and *Matelin*, and found our ſelves the next day over againſt *Schio*. Here the wind turning againſt us, and being in ſome fear of a Contagious diſtemper aboard us, we made all the Sail we could for the Port of St. *George* of *Schio*, where having drop'd our Anchor, we got ſome freſh Proviſions, and ſome of the Officers of the Ship going aſhoar a hunting, the Commiſſary was ſhot by one of our Store-keepers, who was taken and clapt in Irons; and the deceaſed buried near a little Chappel, upon the Sea-ſhoar. The wind becoming favourable, we put out to Sea again, and doubling the *Golden Cape*, came to an Anchor again, in the Iſle of *Argentiere*, to get ſome News of the *Algerine* Fleet, for which we ſtood in no ſmall fear, as being ignorant that the Peace had been concluded betwixt that Republick and *France*.

The *Dardanel* Caſtles not very Strong.

After a ſtay of 2 days here, we ſet Sail the ſecond of *November*, with a fair Wind, and near the Iſles of *Sapienza*, met the *Venetian* Fleet, taking their Courſe towards *Coron*, and having paſs'd the Gulph of *Venice*, diſcovered in the Evening the point of *Sicily*. We were alarm'd all that Night, by a certain Light which we ſuppoſed to be the Lanthorn of a great Ship, but coming over againſt the Cape of *Paſſaro*, we found them to be Beacons, the *Spaniards* keep there to warn the Inhabitants of the approach of Pirates. Not long after we deſcryed the Iſle of *Malta* 20 Lgs diſtant from *Cape Paſſaro*, and after having been toſs'd here by a Tempeſt advanced to the Iſle of *Pantelleria*, a ſmall, but Fertile Iſland belonging to the *Spaniards*, we were becalm'd for two days in ſight of this Iſland, after which a S. Wind carried us within ſight of the *Cape of Bonn*, a point of *Africk*, where thoſe of *Tunis* keep a Beacon for the ſecurity of their Ships, and to forewarn the Inhabitants of any approaching danger. To the left of this Cape you ſee upon a very high Promontory the Fort of *Gallippa*, well provided with Cannons, which whilſt we were contemplating the *S. E.* Wind encreaſing, ſoon carried us out of ſight of the Iſles of *Sembrow*, and had it continued, would have brought us upon the Coaſt of *Sardinia*, but turning about Midnight to the N. W. toſs'd us ſo violently, that we were obliged to caſt Anchor near the Port and Town of *Portofarina* on the Coaſt of *Barbary*. *Nov.* 14th. This place which is built at the foot of a high Mountain, upon a Ceninſula affords a tolerable good Harbour for Ships, which are ſheltered here againſt the N. VV. and VV. Winds. It is under the Juriſdiction of the *Tuneſes*, whoſe Capital City is not above 7 Lgs thence, there being no other way to it, but through *Goletta*, where the Ancient *Carthage* formerly ſtood, from whence you enter into a fine Lake, upon which *Tunis* is built. Being detained here by the N. VV. winds, the 15th and 16th of *November*, ſome of our Men diverted themſelves with ſhooting of Pidgeons, in a ſmall adjacent Iſland, others with fiſhing, and among the reſt took a Sea-calf, the skin of which with the head to it they brought a Board us, which was as large as that of a ſmall Ox, with thick ſmooth hair, blackiſh on the back and a white ſpot under the Flanks; there was not the leaſt appearance of a Tail, the four Extremities were limited with as many fins, which this Creature makes uſe of both in the Water, and upon the Land; Each of theſe fins was arm'd with five pretty large black Nails, the foremoſt were plainly to be ſeen, whereas the hindermoſt, which were much ſmaller, were hid under the skin. The head is like that of a Leopard, except that you can diſcover no Ears. This made me endeavour to diſcover its Organs of hearing, which I could not do, till I had laid the Head quite bare, when I perceived two ſmall hairy Conduits within 2 or 3 inches of the Eye, which abutt to 2 little holes, almoſt imperceptible, which I could not diſcover upon the skin, but by the help of a Prob. Its Tongue is very ſhort and thick, the Jaws, and Noſtrils like thoſe of a Bull, whoſe bellowing it imitates which I obſerved at a diſtance as it was ſtruggling for Life. Whilſt we were thus employed, we ſaw a Squadron of 4 ſmall Ships belonging to *Tunis*, paſs along the ſhoar towards *Porto farino*, and were informed the next day, that in one of them was *Mezzo Morto* Doge of *Algier*, who being obliged to flie that City, by reaſon of a Sedition among the People, was taken by one of theſe ſmall Barks near the Gulph of *Palma*, and now carrying to *Tunis*. The next day, 17 *Nov.* the wind turning to the S. W. we paſs'd the Iſle of *Fratelly* ſo call'd from its 2 points, which jet out into the Sea, ſteering our Courſe towards *Sardinia*, but the wind turning again towards Night to the N. VV. we made for the Cape of *Poule* near the Gulph of *Cagliari*, where we came to an Anchor that Night, and were forced to continue in the Gulph the next day to refit our Ship, which being done within ſight of the City of *Cagliari*, put us in mind of the misfortune of the Lady of the ſaid *Mezzo Morto*; For She, being the Daughter of the Preſident of *Cagliari*, was as She was going to *Spain* to be married to one of the Grandees of that Kingdom, taken by the *Algerines*, and carried to *Algier*. *Mezzo Morto* being enamour'd with this Young Slave, made his Addreſſes to her, which ſhe ſlighted with a moſt Heroical conſtancy, whilſt her Brother was gone to *Sardinia* to fetch her Ranſom; who being come back, and having paid the ranſom agreed on for his Sister, her maid and himſelf, the young Lady being ready to embark, on a ſudden changed her Reſolution as well as her Religion, and turned *Mahometan*, in order to marry the Doge *Mezzo Morto*. The 20th. we put to Sea again, in hopes of reaching the Iſles of St. *Peter*, from which we were 100 miles diſtant; But it coſt us a great deal of trouble before we could encompaſs it,

We come in ſight of Malta.

The Ancient Carthage

A Sea-Calf

The misfortune of Mezzo Morto

They meet the *Venetian* Fleet.

our Ship being miserably tost'd by the Waves; The 21th. we had the good Fortune to meet with a *Majorcan*, who proved a good prize, after which we made off to the Gulph of *Palma*, where we rid at Anchor pretty quietly all that Night, and the 22th an E. wind arising, carryed us by the three Rocks opposite to the Gulph, known by the Names of the *Cow* and the *Calf*, and made us double the Isles of St. *Peter*, of which we lost sight the following Night, and with break of day found our selves at the Entrance of *Sardinia*. The same day we pass'd the *Mouths of Bonifface*, though not without great trouble, and the wind continuing fair, we doubled the Isle of *Corsica*, and soon after discovered the Coast of *Provence*; The raging N. VV. winds having detain'd us for some few days longer at the Isle of *Yvica*, we at last arrived safely at *Thoulon* the 30th day after our departure from *Constantinople*. The Author returns to *Venice*.

FINIS.

NAVIGANTIUM
Atque ITINERANTIUM
BIBLIOTHECA.

VOL. II. LIB. II.

The Travels of Mr. Joannes Baptista Tavernier Bernier *thro'* Turky *into* Persia, *and the* East-Indies; *with what is Remarkable in Mr.* de Thevenot's *Travels into the* Levant, *and Sir* John Chardin's *into* Persia.

An Account of the Author, and his Travels.

Joannes Baptista Tavernier Bernier being train'd up in Geographical Learning, under his Father, from his Childhood, was inspired early with a Curiosity to see those Countries, which he had with so much Pleasure often beheld in the Maps; and beginning with *England*, where he arrived in the Reign of K. *James* the First, he Travelled over most of the Kingdoms of *Europe*, viz. *France*, the *Low-Countries*, *Germany*, *Switzerland*, *Poland*, *Hungary* and *Italy*, by that time he was Two and Twenty Years of Age, and learn'd the Languages that were most necessary and generally spoken. The Pleasure of seeing these Countries, increased his Desire of Travelling further; and like *Alexander*, of passing into *Asia*, that he might take a View of those Regions, which are so famous in History for the Two first Monarchies, and *Alexander*'s Conquest, that he might reach as far, in his Mind, as they had done by their Words; and with these delightful Regions, he was so much satisfied, that he made Six Voyages into them; and that he might make his Travels as beneficial to the Inquisitive as he could, he took several Ways every time, and making all necessary Observations upon all Things memorable in his Passage, communicated them to the World, with all the Exactness requisite to make them beneficial to the Learned, or Travellers; giving them a Description of all the Roads, and Conveniencies, or Inconveniencies of them.

CHAP. I.

Of his First Voyage from Constantinople *to* Ispahan, *the chief City of* Persia, *through the Northern Provinces of* Turky.

The Roads from *Paris* to *Constantinople*.

BEFORE he gives an Account of this Voyage, he relates the several Roads of travelling from *Paris* to *Constantinople*, and says, That you may go by Land or by Sea: By Land, the most convenient, and safest from the *Algerine* and *Tunisan* Pyrates, is first to go to *Venice*, and from thence to *Ancona*, where you may embark every Week, and sailing by *Ragusa*, pass to *Durazzo*, a Sea-Port of *Albania*, from whence the Way lies by Land through *Albanopoli*, *Monastrier*, *Sophia* and *Philippopoli*, if you take the Left Hand, or *Inquisser*, if you take the Right, and *Silevrea* to *Constantinople*. By Sea, he says, You may embark at *Venice*, and sailing along the Gulph, which is free from Pyrates, double the Cape of *Matapan*, the most Southern Point of all *Europe*, enter the *Archipelago*. There is another Way by *Marseilles*, or *Leghorn*, from whence several Vessels are bound for the East, but the safest Way is to go from the Latter, with the *English* or *Dutch* Fleets in the Spring, or Autumn, which parting over-against the *Morea*, and sailing either between the Island of *Elba* and *Italy*, by the Tower of *Messina*, or below *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, to the several Ports whither they are bound, will bring you to *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, or *Alexandretta*; from which it is Three Days Journey to *Aleppo*, and from one of which Three Cities you must necessarily begin your Journey for *Persia*. If you will not stay for the Fleets, you may hire a single Vessel at *Leghorn*, and sailing by *Naples* and *Messina*, pass to *Malta*, and there expect a Vessel bound for the East. The Author took this Way, and in his Passage went to *Syracuse*, where are to be seen very remarkable Footsteps of Antiquity. 'Tis like a City under Ground, and near it is a Rock, which has been made hollow by Art, at the Bottom of which, if a Man do but whisper, he is heard at the Top. 'Tis called *Dionysius*'s *Ear*, because by it he discover'd the Councils of his chief Men, whom he imprison'd in it. *Syracuse* hath nothing of the Beauty it had, when it was Mistress of *Sicily*, and waged War with *Greece*. The Soil is very fruitful. By it is a Convent of *Capuchin* Friars, who have a Walk, with certain Cells and Gardens to them, between Two great Rocks, that make it one of the most pleasing Solitudes in the World.

Syracuse described.

Having thus related the Roads from *Paris* to *Constantinople*, he comes to lay down the Road from *Constantinople* to *Ispahan*, in *Persia*, which Journey must be

The Road from *Constantinople* to *Ispahan*.

be performed either with a Caravan of Camels, or Ten or Twelve Men in Company, well mounted and arm'd. From *Constantinople* you must cross over to *Scutari*, upon the Coasts of *Asia*; and from thence, passing through the Fields finely adorn'd with Flowers in their Seasons, and fair Sepulchres, with their Pyramids dress'd up with Turbants for Men, and Head-Attire for Women, you come to *Cartali*, a Village of *Bithynia*; and the next Day to *Gebisa*, called of old *Lysia*, famous for *Hannibal*'s Tomb. From hence the Way lies through *Isnich*, anciently *Nicæa*, where is a convenient Haven, and the Country is excellent for Hunting, good Fruits and Wine, which made Sultan *Amurath* build a *Seraglio* in the highest Part of the Town. The *Jews* inhabit it chiefly, and deal in Corn and Timber. *Chibangi* is next, and has a Lake famous for large Pike, and other Fish; and then you come to *Zacarat*, a River, which falls into the *Black-Sea*; and from these, through the Marshes to *Cancoli*, *Tuskebasar*, *Carguestar*, famous for a sort of Fish called, *Bouxmaz Balouska*, i. e. *The Fish with the long Nose*; 'tis speckled like a Trout, but of a better Taste. From hence you pass over the Mountains to *Polia*, or *Polis*, which bears Plenty of Treas, tall-like Firs, and being a good mellow Soil, and full of Brooks, would be unpassable, had not the Grand Visier *Cuprigli*, at a vast Charge, paved the Roads, and built many Bridges. On these Mountains are Pigeons as big as Hens, and of an excellent Taste. From these Mountains there are above Twenty Church-yards visible, for the *Turks* bury near the High-Way, because they believe the Travellers pray for the Souls of the Deceased. Every Tomb hath a Marble-Pillar upon it, but of several Colours. Beyond these Mountains, you pass through *Cervadour*, *Cargestar*, *Caragaler*, *Cosizar*, which have all Inns for Travellers. *Tocia*, where there is a Fortress, the Residence of a *Bassha*, and very good Wine in great Plenty. 'Tis inhabited by *Christian Greeks*; *Agisensalou*, *Ozeman*, which is a little City, seated on the Foot of an Hill, where there is a strong Castle. The River *Guselarmac*, which is very broad and deep, washes the South side of the City, over which lies a Bridge of Fifteen Arches, made of Free-Stone, the fairest that ever was seen; *Azilar*, *Delekiras*, where the Ways are much infested with Robbers; *Amasia*, where to bring fresh Water into the City, they have cut a League into Rocks, as hard as Marble. The Soil is good, and bears the best Wines and Fruits in all *Natolia*, and *Turcal*. At *Tocat*, which is the next City in the Road, the Way from *Symena* to *Ispahan* meets. It is a fair Place, built upon a Rock, and well inhabited by *Turks*, who are the Governours, *Armenians*, *Greeks* and *Jews*. Here are several Mosques, and one very magnificent, lately built. The *Christians* have Twelve Churches, and here resides an Archbishop, with Seven Suffragans under him. Here are also Two Monasteries, and as many Nunneries; and all the Country, for Fourteen or Fifteen Leagues round, is inhabited with *Armenian Christians*, mix'd with some few *Greeks*: Most of them are Smiths. This is the only Place in all *Asia*, where there grows Plenty of Saffron, the best Commodity you can carry to the *East-Indies*, where 'tis worth Thirteen or Fourteen Franks a Pound, though mix'd with an equal Weight of Wax to keep it. This City, and the Lands about it, are usually the Sultanesses Joynture. It is govern'd by an *Aga*, or *Cady*, and is one of the most remarkable Thorough-fares in the *East*; for the Caravans from *Persia*, *Diarbequer*, *Bagdat*, *Constantinople*, *Synopus*, *Smyrna*, and other Places, lodge here, though, at their setting out, they pay a Quarter of a Rix-Dollar for a Camel, and half as much for an Horse. At *Tocat* also, and the Parts about, are dress'd the fine Blue Goat-Skin Leather, as the Red is at *Bagdat* and *Diarbequer*, and the Yellow at *Moussul*, anciently *Nineveh*, and the Black at *Ourfa*. From *Tocat*, as you go to *Erzerum*, where you discover a Village, so seated under an Hill, as if the Mountain lay a Top of it, you first come to *Charkliqueu*, where the *Armenians*, according to their Custom, met the *Caravans* with fresh Provisions. This Town stands in a fertile Country, and has excellent Wine. The Inhabitants are *Christians*, who are generally Tanners, who dress the Blue Leather. About 2000 Paces from this Town is a vast Rock, out of which are hewn a Chamber, with a Bed, Table and Cup-board, and a Gallery. The *Christians* here affirm, That St. *Chrysostom*, in his Exile, made this his retiring Place, and therefore the *Christian* Merchants usually stop here, to pay their Devotions to this Rock. Over the Mountains you go along to *Almous*, and crossing a large Plain, water'd with the fair River, *Toufanlatsou*, you pass over another large Mountain to a Town called *Adras*, inhabited by all *Armenians*; and from thence you go to *Aspidar* and *Isbeder*, Two small Villages in the Mountains, and so to a large Town, all the Houses and Stair-Cases of which are hewn out of the Rocks; and then to *Zacapa*, where the Passages become so narrow, that the Camels are forced to be unladen, and their Burdens carry'd on Mens Shoulders for Thirty Paces. After this you come to a little Plain, and then pass through *Kourd-Aga*, *Garmeru*, *Leukmen* and *Lourito Chaouqueu*, where liv'd an old Man of 130 Years of Age, who, when Sultan *Amurath* besieged *Bagdat*, gave his Army as many Oats as serv'd them a Day, in Recompence for which, the Sultan exempted him, and his Children, from all Taxes and Tolls for their Lives. Leaving this Place, you pass a craggy Mountain, called, *Aaggidogii*, or, *The Bitter Mountain*, where the *Caravan* being forced to travel single, because the Way is narrow, the *Carvan*-Master counts all the Camels and Horses, and exacts a certain Duty of them, which amounts to a good Sum, if the *Caravan* be numerous: With it he pays Seven or Eight *Armenians*, which guard the *Caravan* all the Way, defrays the Expences upon the Road, and has the Third part for his own Use. Having pass'd this Mountain, you come to a Plain, called, *Giogandereси*, from whence you meet only with Two or Three small Villages in the Way to *Erzerom*. Most of this Journey lies upon the Banks of *Euphrates*, where there grows *Asparagus* in such large Quantities, that you may load several Camels with it. At a League Distance from *Erzerom*, the Officer of the Custom-House, accompanied with the *Bassha*'s Lieutenant, meets the *Caravan*, and tying all the Bales and Chests with Cords, seals them, that nothing may be taken out before they come into the Town. The *Bassha*'s Lieutenant only observes, whether the Merchants be well stor'd with Wine, that he may have some for his Master, for there grows no Wine at *Erzerom*, and what he desires must not be denied him. The Officer of the Custom-House takes a particular Account of all the Merchandizes. This causes the Stay of the *Caravan* for 20 or 21 Days. *Erzerom* is a Frontier Town of *Turky*, towards *Persia*, and stands at the End of a Plain, encompassed with Mountains, and beautified with many fair Villages. The Houses are ill built without any Neatness, or Proportion. The Fortress stands upon an high Ground, with a double Wall, and has square Towers, close one to another, but a pitiful Moat. In the Fortress lie 24 Pieces of Cannon, excellent Guns, but not mounted on Carriages. They are laid here in a Readiness against a War with the *Persians*. This City like *Tocat* is a great Thorough-fare into *Turky*. Tho' it be cold here, yet Barley will grow in Forty Days, and Wheat in Sixty. The Customs here for carrying out Gold and Silver, and other Commodities, are very severe, *viz.* 24 Crowns for a Camel's Load, *i. e.* 800 Weight of Silk, an 100 Crowns for a Load of *Indian* Calicuts, and 6 *per Cent.* for all other Commodities according to their Value. From this Town they go by a Fortress called *Hassan Kala*, where you must pay half a Piaster for every loaded Horse, or Camel; and coming to a Village called *Coban Cupri*, where is a fair Bridge over Two Rivers, the *Kars* and *Binguiel*, that meet here, and fall into the *Aras*, the Road parts, one going on streight forward, called the High-Road, and the other by the *Kars*. The Former is the more direct, and short, but because the Camels and Horses pay a large Duty of Four Piasters for a loaden Camel, and Two for an Horse, and the *Aras* must be several times forded, Travellers usually chuse the Road of *Kars*, where they pay but half the Duty; but the first Four Days Journey thro' Woody Mountains, and Desart Countries, is troublesome, till you come near the City *Kars*, which stands in a very good Soil, and is very large, but thinly Peopled, because the Grand Seignior usually makes it the Rendezvous of his Army, when he intends to recruit it, or sends them to build Villages. From hence to *Erivan* is Nine Days Journey, where, indeed, are the Ruines of several Monastries, and a large City called *Anakagan*, founded by an *Armenian* King, named *Ani*, but

Isnich, or *Nicæa*.

Polia

The *Turks* Church-yards.

Blue Leather.

Tocat.

Christians.

A Frank is 2 s. Sterling.

A Town hewn out of a Rock.

St. *Chrysostom*'s Rock.

Asparagus in abundance.

Erzerom.

Barley ripe in 40 Days, and Wheat in 60.

Kars Road.

but there are no Conveniences for Travellers. On the High Road lies a great Mountain called *Mingol*, which is ſo full of Springs, that it gives a Beginning to Two large Rivers, *viz. Euphrates* and *Kars*. The *Aras*, anciently *Araxes*, riſes from other Mountains Eaſtward of *Mingol*, and after many Windings thro' the Upper *Armenia*, diſcharges it ſelf into the *Caſpian* Sea. All the Country hereabout, which is finely watered by the *Aras* and *Kars*, is inhabited by *Chriſtians* only, except ſome few *Mahometans*, who are ſo ſuperſtitious, that they will not uſe the Waters of the Rivers, but have Wells and Ciſterns of their own, becauſe the Chriſtians, as they imagine, defile them. The firſt Village upon this Road is *Comaſour*, and the next *Halicarcera*, a great Town inhabited by Chriſtians, but all the Houſes are built under Ground, like Caves. Mr. *Tavernier* arriv'd here *March* 7. 1655, when the Ways were unpaſſable for the deep Snows. Going from hence, you ford the *Aras* Three Times, becauſe it winds exceedingly, and then come to a Fortreſs built on the Top of an high Mountain, called, *Kagiſguan*, which is the laſt Place the *Turks* poſſeſs on that ſide. Here the Officers exact a Toll of Four Piaſters for a loaden Camel, and Two for an Horſe. In the Mountains which lie in the Road from hence to the Borders of *Perſia*, dwell *Armenian* Chriſtians, who have Biſhops and Prieſts, but are very poor. A Branch of the *Kars* parts *Turky* from *Perſia*, and having paſs'd that, you come to the firſt Town in *Perſia*, called, *Egmiaſim*, or, *The Toree Churches*, which are Three Monaſteries: The biggeſt of them is the Reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, and the leaſt of them is a Nunnery. The *Armenians* pay their Devotion always in their Travels to theſe Three Churches, and ſtay ſome Days to confeſs and receive Abſolution from their Patriarch. This Prelate has under him Seven Archbiſhops, who have each of them Four or Five Suffragans ſubject to them, with whom he lives in a Convent, with ſeveral Monks under their Juriſdiction. Theſe all go to Prayers every Morning, about an Hour after Day-break, and then go to Work, to dig and delve for their Living. The Revenue of the Patriarch is 600000 Crowns, which he uſually ſpends in paying the *Carage*, i. e. Annual Tribute, impoſed on them by the *Mahometan* Princes for their Liberty of Conſcience, which, if not duely paid, they, their Wives and Children will be ſold and be forced to turn *Mahometans*, which to prevent the Patriarch parts with all, and is ſometimes behind hand. The Church here is as richly adorn'd as any Church in Chriſtendom. The Quire is hung round with a *Venetian* Tiſſue of Gold: The Pavement of the Quire and Body of the Church, with the Steps to the Altar, is ſpread with rich Tapeſtry; for they put off their Shooes when they go into the Church. They do not kneel at Prayers, as we do in *Europe*, but ſtand all the while upright. They ſit at Maſs, and ſtand up while the Leſſons are reading. All the Service their Heads are covered, unleſs at the Elevation of the Hoſt, when they put off their Bonnets, and kiſs the Earth Three times. Upon the Altar ſtands a Croſs and Six Candleſticks of Gold, and upon the Steps to the Altar, Four Silver Candleſticks, Five Foot high. When they have ſung ſeveral Hymns, and read the Goſpel, they give the Book to be kiſs'd by the whole Congregation, on that ſide where Two Relicks are enchaſed. Ten Leagues from *Erivan*, Northward, appears a great Lake, where there is an Iſland, upon which is built a fair Convent. The Monks in it live a very auſtere Life, never eating Fiſh or Fleſh above Four times a Year, and ſpeaking to one another upon thoſe Four Days only; the reſt of the Year they feed only upon Herbs, gather'd out of their own Gardens, though the Iſland produceth excellent Fruits. On the ſide of this Lake, nearer *Erivan*, lies a Plain, on which are Six Monaſteries one of them entirely hewn out of a Rock; and in the Church called *Kickarti*, the *Armenians* ſay, is kept the Lance, which pierc'd our Saviour's Side. Five Leagues from *Erivan* begin the Mountains of *Ararat*, which are famous for being the reſting Place of *Noah*'s Ark. On the Plain, half a League beyond them, is a Church, built on a little Hill, by which are ſeveral Pits like Wells, into which, they report, that *Cerdo*, an *Armenian* King, threw St. *Gregory*, becauſe he would not worſhip his falſe Gods. Between this Church and *Erivan* are ſeen the Ruines of the ancient *Artaxate*, the Seat of the Kings of *Armenia*, which ſhew, that the City was large, and his Palace fair. *Erivan* lies in 64 Degrees, 20 Minutes of Longitude, and 41 Degrees, 15 Minutes Latitude: It is ſituated in a moſt plentiful Country, which produceth all Things neceſſary for Human Life, and abounds in good Wine. It raiſes the King of *Perſia* a large Revenue by the Fruits it yields, and Paſſage of the *Caravans* through it, as well as 20000 *Tomans*, which is above 60000 *l.* as a Yearly Revenue to the *Kan*, or Governour: But being on the Frontiers of Two mighty Empires, it has had the Misfortune to be taken and retaken by the *Perſians* and *Turks* ſeveral times. The Houſes and Walls are of Earth, and ſo are as ſoon rebuilt almoſt as demoliſh'd. The Suburbs are better inhabited than the City, for there live all the Merchants, Artificers, and *Armenians*, who are Chriſtians, and have Four Churches, with a Monaſtery there: and in the City lives only the *Kan*, with the Military Officers. The Governour is a Perſon of Power, and has always at hand an Army ſufficient to defend his Coaſts. The Summer is very hot, ſo that the Governour, and many Thouſands of the Inhabitants, fly to the Mountains, partly for a cooler Air, and partly for Paſture for their Cattel. If any Ambaſſador comes hither, the Governour is oblig'd to maintain him during his Stay, and convey him ſafely to the next Governour, who is to do the like, ſo that an Ambaſſador in *Perſia* travels to the Court without any Charge. This City, not being far from the Province from whence the Silks come, is a Place of great Traffick for it, and Merchants pay only ſome Duties towards the ſecuring the High-ways, called, *Raderyds*. The Governours of *Perſia*, called *Kans*, are very civil to Strangers. From *Erivan* to *Tauris* is Ten Days Journey, and *Nakſivan* ſtands almoſt in the Mid-way. For Two Days you travel over large Plains, ſown with Rice, having *Ararat* in your Proſpect, which has many Monaſteries at the Bottom, and on the Top is covered with Snow half way down. The next Day's Water grows ſcarce, till you come to the River *Arpaſon*, which muſt be forded, and then you come to an Inn, called *Kara-bagler*, which ſtands upon a Rivulet, whoſe Water being carried into Trenches, where it may ſtand, will turn into Stone in Eight or Ten Months, and of this Stone, though it be ſlight, is the Inn built. From hence to *Nakſivan* is but a ſmall Journey. This City, according to the Opinion of the *Armenians*, is the moſt ancient City of the World, for, they ſay, here liv'd *Noah*, when he came out of the Ark, and there he lies burſ'd; but his Wife's Tomb is at *Marante*, in the Road to *Tauris*. 'Tis now almoſt ruin'd, having not recovered it ſelf, ſince *Sha-Abas*, King of *Perſia*, deſtroy'd all the Country between *Erivan* and *Tauris*, to ſtarve the *Turkiſh* Armies in their Invaſions, yet it retains a *Kan*, and a ſmall Trade in Silk. Among the Ruines of *Nakſivan* is found a ſtately Moſque, built, as ſome ſay, in Memory of *Noah*'s Burying-Place, and a Tower, which is an excellent Piece of Architecture, having Four *Duomo*'s, which ſupport a kind of Pyramid, that ſeems to be fram'd of Twelve little Towers, but, towards the Middle, changes into a Spire, which ends in a Point. The Building is of Brick, but is ſo variniſh'd with Parget, wrote in Flowers, that 'tis like emboſſed Work. 'Tis thought to have been erected by *Tamerlane*, when he conquer'd *Perſia*. Between *Nakſivan* and *Zulfa*, on each ſide the Road, are Ten Convents of Chriſtian *Armenians*, but diſtant Two or Three Leagues one from another. They acknowledge the Pope, and are govern'd by certain Religious Dominicans of their own Nation, follow the Doctrines of the *Roman* Church, but ſing the Office and Maſs in the *Armenian* Tongue, that all the People may hear and underſtand them. Their Archbiſhop, when he is choſen, is ſent to *Rome* to be confirmed. The Monaſteries ſtand all by ſome Town, and one of them is ſeated at *Kiſenk*, on the Frontiers of *Curdiſtan*, or *Aſſyria*, where, the *Armenians* believe, St. *Bartholomew* and St. *Matthew* were Martyr'd, and they pretend to ſhew ſome Relicts of them at this Day. The Monks of theſe Convents are very auſtere, and eat nothing but Herbs, and though they are very poor, yet Two or Three of them entertain Strangers, that come out of *Europe*, very civilly. A League and an Half from the Chief of theſe Convents there is an high Mountain, which riſeth like the Pike of *Tenariffe*, in the Form of a Sugar-Loaf, and hath at the Bottom certain Springs,

Springs that cure the Biting of Serpents.

which cure the Biting of Serpents, and if any be brought to them, they die immediately. When the *Caravan* is ready to set out from *Nakshivan*, the *Armenians* usually go to the Convent of St. *Stephen*, which is Three Leagues, or more, distant from it. In the Way lies *Becilisa*, a great Village, where dwell the richest *Armenians*, who trade much in Silk, and have built them a very fair Church there; and having cross'd a River, which falls into the *Aras*, you ascend a little Hill, and come to a great Village, called, *Shambe*, all the Inhabitants of which, as well Men as Women, grow mad at Eighteen Years of Age, but their Madness is not mischievous. It is believ'd the Punishment of Heaven upon them, because their Forefathers persecuted St. *Bartholomew* and St. *Matthew* there. St. *Stephen*'s is a Convent, built about Thirty Years ago, upon barren Mountains, because St. *Bartholomew* and St. *Matthew* retired thither in the Time of their Persecution, and the latter raised a Well near the Place, which supplies the Monastery with Water. In it are many Relicts, said to be left there by those Apostles, *viz.* a Cross made of the Bason in which Christ wash'd his Apostles Feet, and in the Middle of it a White Stone, which, if laid upon a sick Person, will turn Black, if he be likely to die, and after his Death recover its Whiteness; a Jaw-Bone of St. *Stephen*, the Martyr, St. *Matthew*'s Skull, a Bone of the Neck and another of the Finger of St. *John Baptist*, an Hand of St. *Gregory*, the Scholar of *Dionysius*, the *Areopagite*; a little Box with many Pieces of Bones, which they count the Reliques of the 72 Disciples. The Church is built in the Form of a Cross, as all *Armenian* Churches are, and in the Middle of it riseth a fair *Duomo*, about which stand the Twelve Apostles. Both the Church and Convent are of Free-stone, and much Gold and Silver has been spent upon the Walls. From St. *Stephen*'s there lies a way by the Banks of *Aras* to *Zulpha*, where you return into the High-Road again. In the great Road from *Nakshivan*, half a League from it is a River, which is crossed at a Bridge with Twelve Arches, near which is a Meadow where is a Spring of Luke-warm Water, which being drank purges. Here a Toll-gatherer takes Ten Abassi's for every Camel's Loading, for securing the High-ways, for the Governours of every Province are to answer for every Robbery committed, which makes it safe travelling in *Persia*. From this Bridge to *Zulpha*, is but one Day's Journey. It was once a large City, but never of any great Beauty, but all the Houses and Bridge lie now in Rubbish, but the Land being fertile, some *Armenian* Families live very quietly in it. Half a League on this side *Zulpha*, there are Two Ways that lead to *Tauris*, viz. The Great Road, which the *Caravan* always takes, because the other is full of Rocks and Stones, which spoil the Camels Hoofs. In this latter, which for Variety we travelled, stands *Asstabat*, a neat City, where every House hath its Fountain. The Soil is plentiful in all Things, and especially good Wine. This is the only Country in the World which produceth the *Rems*, which is a Root growing much like our Liquorice, and famous in all the *Indies* for dying Red, and for that Reason 'tis shipped off at *Ormus*, in great Quantities, to all these Parts. The Root is full of Juice, and yields an high Tincture, so that when a Ship was cast away in the Road of *Ormus*, where the Bags of *Rems* floated, the Sea looked Red for several Days. Leaving *Asstabat*, you must pass the Mountains of the *Medes*, which are the most Fertile in all *Persia*, and bear Wheat, and other Corn and Fruits in abundance, and that of a greater Beauty and higher Taste. In the High-Road the Caravan leaves *Zulpha* on the Right-hand, because of the bad Road; and having passed a Bridge called *Sugiac*, it goes through Heaths, encompassed with Rocks and a barren Country, to *Maranie*, the Burying-place of *Noah*'s Wife. This City stands in the Midst of a fertile Plain, adorned with many well-peopled Villages for a League round it; but the Rest of the Country beyond it, is all barren, yet not altogether unprofitable, because here are bred almost all the Camels that furnish the Road, and upon that Account there dwell many Camel-Masters in these Towns. At *Maranie* you must pay Thirteen Abassi's, or Four Crowns, for every Camel's Load, for the Security of the Roads. Leaving *Maranie*, the Caravan lodges in a Bushy Plain, a League from *Sophiaria*, which is an indifferent large Place, but by reason of the great Number of Trees planted in the Streets, and round about it, 'tis more like a Wood than a City; and the next Day having crossed large and fruitful Plains, it arrives at *Tauris*. In the Mid-way between *Sophiaria* and *Tauris* lies a Hill, from whence you may see the Plains, where Sultan *Amurath* encamped with his Army of an 100000 Men, when he besieged and burnt *Tauris*, of which when the News came to *Sha-Sefi*, King of *Persia*, he turn'd the Course of all the Streams before and behind, and famish'd his whole Army for want of Water. *Tauris* lies in 83 D. 30 M. Longitude, and 40 D. 15 M. Latitude, in an open Place, where there is not a Tree to be seen, and is environ'd with Mountains on all sides, but the West. A little River of good Water runs through the midst of it, over which there is Three Bridges. It is a large well peopled City, as being the Mart for *Turky*, *Muscovy*, the *Indies* and *Persia*, and has a mighty Number of Merchants, and vast Quantities of all sorts of Merchandice in it, particularly Silks, brought out of the Province of *Guiban*, and Horses, which are handsom and cheap. Wine, *Aqua vitæ*, and all sorts of Provisions are cheap enough, and Money is more plentiful here, than in any Part of *Asia*. The Houses are built of Brick, bak'd in the Sun, not above One or Two Stories high, the Tops vaulted, and Roofs plaistered and whitned with Lime. Their *Bazars*, or Market-Houses, are always full of Goods, for there are some peculiar to the Handy-craft Trades, as Smiths, Turners and Gold-Smiths. Here are abundance of Silk-Weavers, who are neat Artists; and the *Sagrin* Skins, which are vended all over *Persia*, are dress'd here. About the Great Piazza are seen the Ruines of stately Edifices, *viz.* Four or Five Mosques of a prodigious Height and Bigness, the Palace of the *Cheek-Iman*, or the Chief-Priest, a Colledge, Castle, and an *Armenian* Church, whither, they say, St. *Helena* sent the true Cross. The *Capuchins* have a very convenient House here, built by the Favour and Liberality of *Mirza-Ibrahim*, Governour of the Province, because he had a mind to have his Two Sons instructed in Mathematicks and Philosophy, (in which he took great Delight himself) by *Gabriel de Chinon*, Head of that Order there. When the Sun sets and rises, there are a certain Company of People, who are obliged to make an hideous Noise with Drums and Trumpets, in the *Meidan*, or Great Piazza of the City. Some think, that *Tauris* was the ancient *Echatane*, the Metropolis of the Empire of the *Medes*. Upon the Road from *Tauris* to *Ispahan*, about half a League from the outmost Gardens, upon the Tops of the Mountains, there is a Bridge, built by a *Mollah*, where never any Water did, or can come. *Sha-Abas*, the first *Persian* King of that Name, coming to *Tauris*, wonder'd at such an unprofitable Work, and enquired who built it, and what was the Design? To whom the *Mollah* return'd his Answer, *Sir, I built that Bridge, that when your Majesty came to* Tauris, *you might inform your self from the Mouth of him that built it*: By which it appears, that the *Mollah* had no other Intention, than to oblige the King to speak to him. About half a League from *Tauris*, Westward, there is a River, which comes down from the Mountains, called, *Aggisori*, or, *Bitter Water*, because the Water is bad, and kills all Fish: It empties it self into the Lake *Roumi*, Thirteen or Fourteen Leagues from *Tauris*, which is of the same Quality, so that if any Fish are driven into it by any other Rivers, they presently become blind, and die in a short time. Over it there lies a fair Bridge, by which stands a Sepulchre, covered with a little *Duomo*, where the *Persians* say, that the Sister of *Iman Riza* lies interr'd, and they have it in great Veneration. In the midst of the Lake is a little Hill, in which rise several Springs, which grow wider the further they run. The Earth which they water is of different Natures, the first makes Lime, the next is an hollow spungy Stone, of no Use; but under that is a White transparent Stone, like Glass: 'Tis nothing but a Congelation of the Waters; for sometimes you shall meet with creeping Animals congealed in them; and the Governour of the Province presented *Sha-Abas*, the King, with a Piece, that had a Lizzard of a Foot long congealed in it: He gave Twenty Tomans, and was offer'd a Thousand for it. From *Tauris* to *Ispahan* the Caravan generally makes 24 Days Journey. The Two first Days you pass over dry Mountains, through narrow and rugged Ways, and then, at the Foot of the

St. Bartholomew and St. Matthew.

Rems a dying Root.

Maranie, where Noah's Wife lies buried.

A spring of warm water.

Echatane.

A Bridge over the Water-fails.

Water congealed.

the Mountains, there is a Choice of Two Roads, the one more direct, which is the ordinary Road by *Kom*, and *Kachan*, the other through *Ardevil* and *Cabin*, which are parted by a large Lake. From *Tauris* to *Ardevil* is not above Twelve Leagues. This City lies in the ſame Degrees with *Tauris*, and is famous for being the firſt Market for Silks from *Guilan*, and the Market-place, is very large and convenient. The Avenues to it are very pleaſant, being planted with Allies of large Trees, but the Streets are dirty and uneven, except that where the *Armenians* have a Church. There are many lovely Gardens, watered by divers Cuts from the River, which paſſeth through the midſt of it. They have no Vines, though their Soil be very proper for it, becauſe the *Mahometan* Superſtition will not allow any Wine to be drank here; and though the *Armenians* have Plenty of Wine, they muſt not drink it, nor have it brought publickly: But that which makes this City more frequented, is the Tomb of *Sha-Seſi*, who lies here bury'd in a very fair Moſque, for the People come from all Parts of *Perſia* to viſit this Sepulchre with Devotion. Criminals are ſafe, if they can but touch the Chains that croſs the Gate of the Moſque. Before the Moſque are Two Courts, and in the ſecond ſeveral fair Balconies, which are always full of Pilgrims or Criminals, who are confined to dwell there for their Defence. In this Moſque there is Alms given, Morning and Night, to the Poor, by the King's Order. At the End of the Body of the Moſque is a little Eight-ſquare Monument, in the midſt of which is the Tomb of *Sha-Seſi*: It is only of Wood, but curiouſly wrought and inlaid. It is not above the Height of a Man, and like a Cheſt, having Four Apples of Gold ſet at each Corner. It is covered with Crimſon Velvet, and by it are many Lamps continually burning. The Moſque is painted with Gold and Azure within, and varniſhed finely without. Round about *Ardevil* are many other Monuments well worth the ſeeing, and a Quarter of a League from the City ſtands a Moſque, in which are the Tombs of the Father and Mother of *Sha-Seſi*. From *Ardevil* you go to *Cabin* through a pleaſant Country, watered with many Rivers from the Mountains, and paſs Two or Three Towns, as *Arion*, *Taron*, and *Kalkal*, which are the only Places in *Perſia*, where there grow any Olives, or there is any Oil made. From *Kalkal* is a very bad Road, hardly paſſable, till you come up to the Mountains, and then 'tis a plain Way to *Cabin*. This City is large, but there are not above Seven or Eight Houſes well built, and they are next the King's Gardens. It is inhabited by *Mahometans* chiefly, though the beſt Half of the City be Gardens. The Soil about *Cabin* bears Piſtaches, but not ſo good nor in ſuch vaſt Quantities, as at *Malavert*, from whence they are carried into all *Perſia* and the *Indies*. This City lies Eaſtward of *Iſpahan* Twelve Leagues. The next Place you come at, after Two Days Travel, is *Denghe*, a great Village at the Foot of an Hill, where is Plenty of White Wine and Claret. The other Road through *Kan* and *Kachan*, lies on the Left ſide of a Lake, which is uſually full of large Red Ducks, which are very good Meat: And the firſt Place you aim at, after you come from *Tauris*, is *Karaſhima*, a large Town in a deep Valley, well manured. From hence you go through *Tarcomia*, and ſo over a deſart Country to *Miana*; from which, after you are parted about Two Hours, you come to a Bridge, almoſt at the Foot of a Mountain, called, *Kiplenſon*. Here you ſee Two Mountains, on the South and North, which are ſo full of Springs, that they give Birth to moſt of the Streams that water *Perſia*. Neat this Mountain there are ſeveral Villages that pay nothing to the King, becauſe they are obliged to ſend a certain Quantity of Rice and Butter to the Moſque at *Ardevil*. Theſe Villages have one great Privilege, that if a Man commits a Murther, and flies to any of them, he cannot be apprehended, nor can the King himſelf puniſh him. Leaving this Bridge, you paſs through a barren Country, where you meet with Two Inns only, till yo come to *Zangan*, a great Town, but ill built. From hence you go to an Inn, where you muſt pay a Duty to the Kan of *Sultanie*, a large City, which lies about half a Mile from the Road. It is plain from the Ruines, that here were formerly many beautiful Moſques; and, the *Armenians* ſay, that there were once near 800 Churches and Chapels. The next Town you come at, is *Iſa*, where there is excellent Wine: And from thence you travel to *Habar*, *Partin* and *Saxava*, which is a little City that ſtands in an excellent Soil for Nuts, and has ſeveral ſmall, but convenient Inns. From *Saxava* you have nothing but Inns, till you come at *Denghe*, where the Roads meet, and from whence to *Kom* is Three Days Journey, over a barren, dry and deſart Country. *Sava*, a good City in a fertile Plain, is in this Road. The greateſt Trade of this Town is in little Grey Lamb-Skins, neatly curled, of which they make Furrs. From hence to *Kom* is not above Ten Hours Journey. This is one of the greateſt Cities in *Perſia*, and ſtands in an excellent Soil, which produceth great Quantities of Rice, and other excellent Fruits, as large *Granata's*. The Walls and Houſes are of Earth. The moſt remarkable Thing in *Kom*, is a large Moſque, no leſs in Veneration with the *Perſians*, than that of *Ardevil*, becauſe of the Sepulchres of *Sha-Seſi*, and *Sha-Abas* the Second, as alſo of *Siai-Fatima*, the Grand-Daughter of *Fatima Zahra*, the Daughter of *Mahomet*. Over the great Portal of this Moſque ſtands an Inſcription in Letters of Gold, in Praiſe of *Sha-Abas* the Second. There are Four Courts before this Moſque, the firſt is a kind of a Garden, being planted with Flowers on the Sides of the Allies. In this Court are the little Chambers, where they that receive the Alms, which are daily diſtributed by the Foundation of the Moſque, come and eat their Proportion, and go their Way. Theſe Chambers are an *Aſylum* for inſolvent Debtors, who are maintained at the Charge of the Moſque. In the Third Court are the *Mollah's*, i. e. the Doctors of their Law's Lodgings. The Fourth is raiſed like a Terrace, and has a fair Fountain in the midſt of it, which is continually ſupply'd with Water by Pipes. The Front of the Moſque faces this Court. There are Three large Gates belonging to it; and the Threſhold of the middle one is cover'd with a Plate of Silver. Between theſe Three Gates, and that of the *Duomo*, ſtand ſeveral Doctors, who hold Books in their Hands, and read perpetually. The Tomb of *Sidi-Fatima* is at the farther part of the Moſque, and is encompaſſed with a Silver Grate, Sixteen Foot ſquare. Upon each ſide of the Moſque is an Hall, where the King's Alms are diſtributed to the Poor, which conſiſt of Pilaw, and other Meat well dreſs'd. The Tombs of *Sha-Abas* the Second, and *Sha-Seſi*, his Father, are alſo in this Moſque, and this laſt is cover'd with Cloth of Gold. Leaving *Kom*, you travel over Sands to *Alſchirin*, or, *Freſh-Water*, and from thence through a good Corn Country to *Cachan*, a large City, well peopled, and furniſh'd with all Things neceſſary for Human Life. The *Jews* chiefly make the Wines, for there are ſaid to be in this City 10000 Families of *Jews*, as there are 600 at *Iſpahan*. Theſe *Jews* boaſt themſelves particularly of the Tribe of *Judah*, which the other *Jews* in *Perſia* do not. In this Place are made all the beſt purfled Sattins, mix'd with Gold and Silver, which are carried out of *Perſia*; for here are very skilful Silk-Weavers. Here alſo they coin Money, and make Copper-Veſſels, which they ſell abroad. Their Market-Houſes are very fair, and well vaulted. At a little Diſtance from *Cachan*, in the Way to *Guilan*, are Plains, which for Twelve Leagues together are pure Salt. Leaving *Cachan*, you croſs the Plains and Mountains, and in the Vale meet a great Wall, made by *Sha-Abas*, to ſtop the Waters for his Occaſions, of 100 Paces long, 30 Foot thick, and 50 high, with a Sluce to keep in, and let out the Waters. And having paſs'd this, you come to *Coron*. This Village is large, and well peopled, and the Soil ſtored with Wall-nut-Trees. The Houſes are low, but built with Flint-Stones; but the Street is dirty and inconvenient. About this Village, as about ſeveral Places in *Perſia*, are a great Number of Shacales, which are a kind of Foxes, which make an ugly Noiſe in the Night, and if one of them cry, they will all anſwer, and ſet up an Howling. From this Place there is a continued Plain for Fifteen Leagues, which have, at equal Diſtances, Five Inns to *Iſpahan*.

The Road from *Tauris* by *Ardevil*.

Sha-Seſi's Tomb.

Olives and Oil.

Cabin deſcrib'd.

Denghe.

The Road by *Kan* and *Kachan*.

Privileged Places.

Sava.

Kom.

A large Moſque.

Alms daily given in a Moſque.

Sidi-Fatima's Tomb.

Jews.

Purfled Sattins.

Coron.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Road from Smyrna *to* Ispahan, *through* Natolia.

Smyrna described.

SMyrna is one of the most celebrated Cities in all the *Levant* for Trade, both by Sea and Land, for from hence all sorts of Commodities are transported out of *Asia* into *Europe*, and out of *Europe* into *Asia*. It lies in 50 D. of Longitude, and 38 D. 45 M. Latitude, at the Bottom of the Gulph of the *Archipelago*, and over-against the Island of *Schio*. It lies in that Part of *Asia*, anciently called by the *Greeks*, *Iconium*. It was one of the Seven Churches, and is at this Day a great City, but nothing so large or beautiful as it was, as may be gathered from the Ruines of a great Tract of Houses, a Castle and Amphitheater, and a great Church, which are now altogether disused. It has been often ruined, either by Earthquakes, which are frequent there, or by Wars. The *English* Merchants have digged among the Ruines of *Smyrna*, and found great store of fair Statues, which they have transported into their own Country; and there are still found some or other every Day; but if the *Turks* find them, they disfigure them. The City is well peopled, containing no less than 90000 Souls, *viz.* 60000 *Turks*, 15000 *Greeks*, 8000 *Armenians*, 7000 *Jews*, for the *European* Christians are but few. The *Turks* have Fifteen Mosques, the *Jews* Seven Synagogues, the *Armenians* One Church, the *Greeks* Two, and *Latins* Three. The *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians* and *Jews* dwell upon the Hills, and the lower part, next the Sea, is inhabited by the *European* Christians, who settle there for Trade, *English*, *French*, *Hollanders* and *Italians*. They are called *Franks*, and have every one their Consul, and the *French* Consul has Two Vice-Consuls under him at *Scalanova* and *Coio*. The Soil about *Smyrna* is very fruitful, and abounds with all Things necessary for Human Life, but more particularly in good Oil and Wine. The Sea also affords good store of Fish and Fowl cheap. About half a League from the City, Northward, are Salt-Pits, down to which there is a pleasant Walk from the City. But it has some Inconveniencies, for the Heats are very excessive in Summer, and would be insupportable, were it not for the Breezes that come off from the Sea; and there is hardly a Year but this City is infested with the Plague, yet 'tis not so violent as in *Christendom*. The *Turks* neither fear nor fly it, believing altogether in Predestination; but the malignant Fever, which succeeds it, is more to be fear'd, because more People die of it, than the Pestilence. This City is not govern'd by a *Bassa*, but a *Cadi*, who is kinder to the Christians, than in other Places, because, upon Complaint to the *Mufti*, he is in danger to be remov'd. The Customs of *Smyrna* yield a great Revenue to the Grand Seignior, though the Merchants study always to deceive the Customers, because they impose such vast Rates upon Merchandices. The principal Merchandices which are transported from *Smyrna*, are raw Silk, which the *Armenians* bring out of *Persia*; Chamlet-Yarn, and Chamlet, or Goats-Hair from *Angouri*; Cotton twisted; Skins or Cordovans of several Colours; Calicuts, white and blue; great Quantities of Wool for Matresses, Tapestries, quilted Coverlets, Soap, Rhubarb, Galls, Valanede, Scammony and Opium. The Caravans generally come hither in *February*, *June* and *October*, and return the same Months. *Ephesus* is but a Day and Half's Journey from *Smyrna*, but it is so ruined, that it deserves not the Name of a City. Its Situation, like that of *Smyrna*, was on the side of a Hill, a small River running at the Bottom. It was very large, as is discernible from the Compass of the Walls, which is seen from the Tops of Gates, which are yet standing. The Temple of *Diana* stood at the Bottom of the Hill, near one of the Gates. There remains nothing of it, but one entire Portal, and some Vaults under Ground. In the Way from *Ephesus* to *Scalanova* is a small River, at the Mouth of which the *Greeks* are always fishing for Sturgeon. Of the Spawn of this Fish they make *Caveare* and *Botargo*, and make a great Trade of it. The Rendezvous of the Caravans is near a Town, called, *Pongarbachi*, where all that intend to go with it meet the Evening before. From *Smyrna* to *Tocat* is 35 Days Journey in the Caravan. In travelling it, you pass over *Pactolus*, whose Sand shining, made it be called *Golden-Sanded*. It falls from Mount *Tmolus*, and watering the Territory of *Sardis*, mixeth with the River *Hermus*, and so falls into the *Archipelago*, thro' the Gulf of *Smyrna*: Then to *Durgout*, where all Christians, that live not in the Territories of the Grand Seignior, and pass that Way, pay a *Carage*, or Tribute, of Four or Five Crowns once a Year; but the *Franks* are free all over *Turky*, as well as here. Then you pass thro' the Ruines of the ancient *Sardis*, the capital City of *Lydia*, and Seat of King *Crœsus*. *Tamerlane* destroy'd it, because it held out a Six Years Siege against him; but there is still to be seen the Footsteps of a large Palace, Two fair Churches, and a great Number of Pillars, and Marble Cornishes. Near it stands a Village of the same Name, where stood the City which was one of the Seven Churches in the *Revelation*. From hence you go by the Walls of the ancient *Philadelphia*, now called *Allachars*, which was one of the Seven Churches of *Asia*. There is something of Beauty in its Walls, and the Ruines of the Amphitheater and Tombs testifie its Antiquity. It was of old one of the principal Cities of *Mysia*, but is subject to Earthquakes, and the Inhabitants often leave it to reside in the Country. After this, you pass over certain Mountains, where those Trees grow plentifully, which bear Galls and Valanede, which is the Shell or Rind of an Acorn, that Curriers make use of to dress their Leather, and so travel over barren Countries for several Days, till you come to *Amphiom-Carasiar*, or, the Black City of *Opium*, because there they sow great store of those Poppies, from which they draw it. It is a great, but dirty and ill built City; it was most probably the ancient *Hieropolis*, because it stands on the Bank of *Meander*. All the *Armenian* Christians, Subjects to the King of *Persia*, must also here pay *Carage*, though they have paid it at *Erzerom*, and other Places. A little beyond this Town, the People bring Fish, very cheap, Barley, and other Things, which the Caravan wants. The first are chiefly Craw-Fish and Carps, catch'd out of the River *Meander*, which are sometimes above Three Foot long. You meet with no Towns in the Road, after this, for several Days, and therefore Water would be very scarce, did not the *Turks*, out of Charity, build Cysterns, and fill them, when it rains, for the Travellers. A little City, *Boulavandi*, is seen at a Distance, where there is some Mosques, built out of the Ruines of the ancient *Greek* Churches, from which also they have taken Pillars of Marble, and other Pieces of Architecture, to adorn their Sepulchres, without any Order at all. These you often meet with upon the High-Road, but at length come to a large Village, called, *Tshacicleu*, where the Inhabitants, during the Summer, leave their Houses, and dwell in the Mountains, with their Cattle, for the cool Air. Here is very good Pasture about it. Departing hence, you travel Six Days in a barren Desart, except some small Valleys, which are fruitful, and come at length to a Plain, which is really nothing but a Lake congealed into Salt. It is Eight or Ten Leagues in Length, and One or Two in Breadth, and furnishes all *Natolia* almost with Salt; and though you buy a Waggon-Load of it for a Noble, yet it brings in to the *Bassa* of *Couchabar* 24000 Crowns a Year. The Way lies now through Desarts, till you come to a great Village, called *Tshekenagar*, which is seated in a pleasant Place, but ill built. From hence you go through Countries full of Liquorice, to a great Town, called *Beserguenlou*; and then, passing over a strong Bridge, called, *Keffre-kupri*, there stands a Village, whose Houses are all under Ground, like Fox-Holes. The next Town in the Way is *Mouchaar*, a large Village, inhabited by *Greeks*, who are constrained ever and anon to turn *Turks*. In this Country is good store of Wine, but it is scented like the

Pactolus. *Tmolus.* *Hermus.* *Sardis.* *Philadelphia.* *Galls, Valanede.* *Opium.* *Large Fish.* *Tshacicleu.* *A Plain of Salt.* *Liquorice.*

the Wine of *Anjou*. After this, you travel through a fruitful pleaſant Country, abounding with Wheat, and in the Way may obſerve little Hills of Earth, raiſed by Art. It is ſaid, they were raiſed during the Wars of the *Greeks*, to build Forts upon for Watch-Towers. In theſe Regions, where, for many Days together, are no Towns or Inhabitants found, the *Turcomans*, a People that live in Tents, like *Arabians*, are obſerved to live in great Numbers, moving often in Carts from one Place to another. The Country is plain for the moſt part, and hath good Meadows and Paſture, and by the Mountains are fat Valleys, and ſo it holds till you come to a Village, called, *Taquibac*. This is the only Place upon the Road, where a Traveller ought to ſtand upon his Guard, by reaſon of the Thieves that haunt theſe Quarters, and are great Maſters in their Trade, coming in the Night, and creeping upon their Bellies to do their Work, with ſo much Silence and Craft, as to be indiſcernible. From *Taquibac* you go to *Kerman*, which is the head City of the ancient *Caramania*. Here are bred thoſe Sheep, which bear the fineſt Wool in the World. They have this peculiar Property, that having fed upon new Graſs from *January* to *May*, their Fleece falls off of it ſelf, and leaves the Sheep quite naked; and the Wool being gathered and beaten, the Coarſe breaks, and the Fine only remains. The *Gaures*, or *Perſians*, that adore the Fire, inhabit this Province chiefly, and have the whole Trade in this Wool, of which they make Girdles, much uſed in *Perſia*, and a ſort of Serges, as fine as Silk. From *Kerman* to *Iſpahan* is 25 Days Journey on Horſe-back. The Road is very dry and ſandy, offenſive to the Eyes, and you meet with very little Water, but at the Inns, which you come to every Night, and meet with a grateful Refreſhment. *Mahomet Ali-Beg*, the Grand Maſter of the King's Houſe and Treaſury, who, from a Shepherd's Boy, was raiſed to this Dignity by the Emperor *Sha-Abas*, and was indeed the greateſt Example of Vertue and Fidelity to be found among the *Perſians*, built theſe Inns, for the Conveniency of Travellers. In the Mid-way between *Kerman* and *Iſpahan*, ſtands *Yezd*, a great Town in the midſt of the Sands, but about the Town is ſome good Ground, which produceth Melons, Grapes, Figs, and other excellent Fruits in great Plenty. There are Three Inns in this City, and ſeveral *Bazars*, or Market-Places, full of Ware-Houſes for Merchants and other Tradeſmen. Here alſo they make ſeveral ſorts of Silk, mixed with Gold and Silver, which they call *Zarcaſte*; others of Silk alone, called *Darai*: They make alſo other Stuffs of Cotton and Silk mix'd, of Cotton alone, like our Fuſtians, and Serges of a particular Wool, which is ſo fine and delicate, that 'tis much better than Silk. The Women here are the handſomeſt in *Perſia*, according to the Proverb, *That to live happy, a Man muſt have a Wife of* Yezd, *eat the Bread of* Yezdecas, *and drink the Wine of* Schiras. From this Town to *Iſpahan* there is nothing remarkable, and therefore our Author, as if he were upon the Road, diverts his Reader with ſome very uſeful Obſervations. 1. About the Caravans, and the Inns for their Reception. 2. About Camels, which are the Beaſts generally made uſe of in Travelling: And 3. About the *Perſian* Coins, and other Things neceſſary for Travellers, in theſe Countries, to know. A Caravan is a great Convoy of Merchants, which meet at certain Times and Places, to put themſelves into a Condition to defend themſelves from Thieves, which ride in Troops in ſeveral deſart Places upon the Road. Theſe Caravans conſiſt moſt commonly of Camels, becauſe they are cheapeſt, and will carry ſome as much as Three, others as much as Four or Five Horſes, but among them are frequently ſeveral Horſes and Mules, which the Merchants themſelves ride on, or carry their Wine, becauſe the Camel-Maſters will not permit you to lade their Beaſts with any ſuch Liquor, becauſe the Liquor is ſtrictly forbidden by *Mahomet*, and the Beaſt is conſecrated to him. A Caravan is like an Army, conſiſting ordinarily of 5 or 600 Camels, and near as many Horſes, and ſometimes more. This makes it the ſafeſt Way of Travelling in *Turky* and *Perſia* with the Caravan, though it goes indeed ſlower, than in leſs Company, or with a Guide alone, as ſome will do. The Journies of the Caravans are not equal, but more or leſs, according to the Convenience of Water for the Beaſts; but they always travel more by Night than Day. To travel with the Caravan, you muſt provide your ſelf with ſeveral Houſhold Goods, as Bottles of Bulgary-Leather, ſmaller for *Aqua vitæ*, and larger for your Water; as alſo, Bottles of Goats Skins, with the hairy Side turned inward, for your Wine, and Rice, and Biſket for your ſelf, as far as *Tocat*. You muſt alſo carry a Tent, with all the Appurtenances, and a Mattreſs and Cloths to cover your Horſes, eſpecially in the time of the deep Snows. The Caravans lie in ſuch Places, as they think moſt convenient, chiefly near a Water-ſide. If it lodges in the Fields, the Merchants ride before to take up a convenient Place for themſelves and Goods, and when they are unloaden, and diſpoſed of in their Places, there are a certain Sort of poor People, called *Shaoux*, who will diligently guard the Field, and take care of the Goods all Night, for a Quarter of a Piaſter. When the Time for journeying is come, theſe Men give Notice to the *Caravan-Baſhi*, or Captain of the Caravan, and he gives Order to load and ſaddle their Horſes, which is done in an Inſtant, becauſe 'tis dangerous to be left behind. But in many Places there are *Caravanſera's*, or Inns for the Caravans. They are not ſo convenient as ours, but have a Court and Building round them, like a Cloiſter. On the one ſide is an Hall for the Perſons of Note, and by it Lodgings for every Man by himſelf, and on the other ſide Stables for the Beaſts, in the Sight of the Maſters: Servants lie and dreſs their Meat in certain Niches in the Stables by their Horſes. You may have Proviſion for your ſelf and Beaſt of the Maſter of the Inn, (if you bring it not your ſelf) but you muſt provide your ſelf a Bed, and Utenſils to dreſs your Meat. In the Night the Inn-Keeper ſhuts up his Gates, and takes Charge of the Goods, being anſwerable for whatever is loſt. The Inns, though incommodious for the Rich, are convenient for the Poor, who are never denied Admittance, for no Man pays for his Chamber, nor is obliged to eat or drink more than he pleaſes, but every one may ſpend according to his Stock, and there is no Grumbling. The Camels, which are the Beaſts uſed in the Caravans, are Creatures beneficial in divers reſpects, as well as that. The Female goes with Young Eleven Months, and her Milk is a Sovereign Remedy againſt the Dropſie, drinking a Pint every Day for Three Weeks together, as ſeveral of our *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Mariners have found. As ſoon as a Camel is foaled, they fold his Legs under him, and make him lie upon them Fifteen or Twenty Days, laying a Carpet over his Back, and Stones upon the Ends of it, which lie on the Ground, that he may not riſe, and in the mean time give him Milk to drink, and that but ſeldom, that he may be uſed to drink little. Thus they uſe him to lie down ſo obediently, that 'tis a Wonder to ſee how they will come to their Maſters, to take up and lay down their Burdens all kneeling round him. When their Burdens are off they turn them on the Commons to eat Furze and Thiſtles, and they will return above half an Hour before Night, and then they give them ſome little Balls of Barley-Meal, kneaded. When a Camel is in the Heat of Generation, he neither eats nor drinks for Forty Days together, but then he is ſo furious that 'tis dangerous to come near him, leſt he bites you for where-ever he bites, he carries away a Piece of Fleſh. Although a Camel be of a large Bulk, he is a very little Eater, and will endure Drought with mighty Patience, for they will ordinarily live without Drink Eight or Nine Days. There are Two ſorts of Camels, one for hot Countries, and the other for cold. The firſt cannot travel if the Ground be dirty or ſlippery, for their Bellies burſt, and their hinder Quarters will rive from their Body. They are ſmall, and though they will carry not above 5 or 600 Weight, yet they are kept for little, and will endure Thirſt a long time. They are called together and driven by Singing and Piping, and the louder the Camel-driver ſings or pipes, the falter they will go, and when he gives over his Muſick, they will ſtand ſtill. They are tender, and muſt be gently uſed, and not put upon long Journies. The Camels of the cold Country are large and ſtrong, able to carry a Burden of 1500 Pound Weight each, but in ſticky and ſlippery Roads, they are in danger of riving; and therefore in bad Roads, they either ſpread Carpets for them, or ſtay till they are dry. As to the Coins of *Perſia*, you muſt take Notice, that the *Perſians* have no coin'd Gold, but Medals,

The *Turcomans*.

Crafty Thieves.

Kerman.

Fine Wool.

The *Gaures*.

Mahomet Ali-Beg's Charity.

Yezd.

Handſome Women.

The Caravans.

Wine not to be carried on Camels.

Goods to be carried by the Caravan.

The *Shaoux*.

Caravanſera's, or Inns.

Camels.

Their Milk.

Their Kneeling.

Camels faſt Forty Days.

Sorts of Camels.

Some driven by Muſick.

The Coins of *Perſia*.

dals, which are thrown among the People, when a new King ascends the Throne: They are of an uncertain Value, and taken only upon Agreement. The *Persian* Silver is good, whether it be in Bars, Plate, or Money; but it must be coin'd under a great Penalty. They have Four sorts of Silver Coins, *viz.* The *Abassi*, in Value 1 *s.* 4 *d.* $\frac{1}{5}$ Sterling, the *Mamoudi* is half an *Abassi-Shaet*, half a *Mamoudi*, and the *Bisti*, of which they have few, is 6 *d.* $\frac{74}{100}$ Sterling. Their Copper Coins are the Single *Casbeke*, in Value 1 *d.* $\frac{3}{4}$ and the Double *Casbeke* 3 *d.* Their great Coins have Number 1. Number 2. set on them. These have the Names of the Twelve Prophets of *Mahomet*'s Law written on the one Side, and in the Middle this Inscription, *La Illah allah Mahomet, resoul Allah, Ali Veli Allah*; and on the Back-side, *The Conqueror of the World*, Abas II. *gives us Permission to coin this Money in the City of* Cashan. Numb. 1. makes Five *Abassis*, and Numb. 2. Two and an half. The other Coins have no Inscriptions, but the Name of the King reigning, when they were coin'd, and the Name of the City where, and the Year of the *Hegyra* of *Mahomet*. In Traffick they commonly reckon by *Larins*, an *Indian* Money, *Or*'s and *Tomans*, Eight *Larins* making an *Or*, which is in Value 6 *s.* 11 *d.* $\frac{1}{2}$ Sterling, and a *Toman* 3 *l.* 9 *s.* 0. As for Pieces of Gold, the Merchants carry none into *Persia*, but *Alman* Ducats, Ducats of the Seventeen Provinces, or of *Venice*, and they are bound to carry them into the *Mint*, before they go further into the Kingdom; but if they can conceal them, and sell them to particular Persons, they may make more of them, because they rise much when the Caravans set out for the *Indies*, or *Mecca*. Concerning the Corn of *Persia* in general, there is great Difference between that which is produc'd naturally, and that which is raised by Art, by the Help of Water forced into Channels. The former is sound, and will keep well, and therefore much valued, but this last is cheap, and of little Esteem, because it will not keep above a Year, but it will breed a Vermin that eats it; and though it be ground to prevent this Inconvenience, yet it will not remedy it; for there breeds a Worm in the Flour, which makes it so bitter, that 'tis impossible to eat it. Further, 'tis observable, that in most of the Towns of *Persia*, there are a great many ruined and decay'd Houses, and the Reason is, that the *Persians* and *Turks* have that bad Humour, that they will not repair old Buildings, but had rather build new ones; and upon this Account it is, that few Children care to dwell in the Houses where their Parents liv'd, but immediately upon their Decease are covetous to build Houses for themselves.

Their Value and Names.

Of the Corn.

CHAP. III.

Mr. Tavernier's *Second Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan, *through the Southern Provinces of* Turky, *and through the Desarts.*

Malta.

THIS Author embark'd at *Marseilles*, in an *Holland* Vessel, and sail'd to *Malta*, where there are abundance of Quails, and passing thro' *Larneca*, a good Road in the Island of Cyprus, to an Anchor in the Road of *Alexandretta*, or *Scanderoon*, about a Quarter of a League from Land. When the People here discover a Vessel, of which they have before had Advice out of *Christendom*, the Vice-Consul of that Nation fails not immediately to give the Consul at *Aleppo* Advice of it, by sending a Pigeon, with a Note ty'd under the Wings, which will carry it in Four or Five Hours, though it be Two or Three Days Journey on Horse-back; and the Pigeon being taught, it never fails, unless it be very dark, in which Case they usually send Two, for fear of Mistake. *Alexandretta* is a confused Heap of paltry Houses, inhabited by the *Greeks*, who keep little Ale-Houses for the Mariners and the meaner sort of People, for the Merchants lodge in the Vice-Consul's House, that belong to their Nation, till they can furnish out to *Aleppo*, which is but Three little Days Journey. The Air is so bad, especially in Summer, that all that do not die, are afflicted with dangerous Distempers, and therefore, when the great Heats begin, the most part of the Inhabitants retire to a Village, called *Belan*, situate upon the Neighbouring Mountain, where is excellent Water, and good Fruits, as also do the Citizens of *Aleppo* in time of Pestilence, though the People here are all for the most part with a Fever, which makes their Eyes look yellow and hollow as long as they live. About half a League from *Alexandretta* is a Tower, built among the Marshes, for the Defence of the High-Way, where are to be seen the Arms of *Godfrey* of *Bullioign*. No Stranger may go from *Alexandretta* to *Aleppo* on Foot, but must hire an Horse, at Six Piasters, thither, and back again as much. This Order was obtain'd by the Merchants, to hinder the poor Mariners Trade. From *Alexandretta* you go first to *Belan*, a Mountain where there is such a wide Gap to the North-East, that when that Wind blows hard, no Ships can ride safely in the Road of *Alexandretta*, but are forced, when it rises, to get out to Sea, for fear of being cast away. Descending from the Mountain, you discover *Antioch*, a City built upon an Hill. The Road once lay through this City, but because the *Janizaries* there exacted a Piaster of all Travellers, it became disused, as also hath the Haven by being stopped up with the Sands. About half Way to *Aleppo*, you meet with a long Causey, with several Bridges, raised in Six Months by the Grand Visier, in the Reign of *Achmet*, for the more easie Carriage of his Ammunition and Provision to the Siege of *Bagdat* and *Balsora*, who had so often revolted from the Grand Seignior. At the End of this Causey lies the Lake of *Antioch*, which is made by the Confluence of divers Rivers into it. This Lake affords a great Revenue, by the Multitude of Eels, which are here taken before *Lent*, and sent to *Malta*, *Sicily*, and several Parts of *Italy*. On the Plain of *Antioch*, which adjoins to this Lake, grow many Olive-Trees, which produce that great Trade of Soap, which is made at *Aleppo*, and sent into *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldæa*, *Persia* and *Arabia Deserta*, and Sallet-Oil, wherewith the *Arabians*, anoint themselves, according to their old Custom, and praise God, the Giver of it. At the End of this Plain, you lie at a poor Village, called *Shaquemon*, where the Horses are terribly tormented with a great sort of Flies, insomuch, that it were impossible to travel that Way, were it not for the Fields of *Tarel*, through which if you ride, the Flies cannot hurt them. In the Road from hence, you travel among Stones, and you see nothing, but the Ruines of ancient Monasteries, some of them built of Free-Stone. One of them is said to be the Monastery of St. *Simeon*, the *Stylite*, and there are some Remains of his famous Pillar; and the *Franks*, when they travel to *Aleppo*, usually go out of their Way to see that Place, and so go to *Angare* to Dinner, where you are handsomly entertain'd, as at other Stages, for your Piaster. From hence you travel to *Aleppo* in Three Hours. Here at the Quassary Strangers are entertain'd well for Half a Crown a Day, and their Servants for a Quarter as much. *Aleppo* is one of the most famous Cities in all *Turky*, not only for the Bigness and Beauty of it, the Goodness of the Air, and Plenty of all Things, but for the great Trade which is driven there by all Nations of the World. It lies in the 71 D. 41 M. of Longitude, and 36 D. 15 M. Latitude. It is thought to be the ancient *Berœa*. The *Arabians* gave it the Name of *Aleb*, when they took it, in the Fifteenth Year of the *Hegyra* of *Mahomet*, *A. C.* 637. in the Reign of *Heraclius*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. The City is built upon Four Hills, and the Castle upon the highest, that stands in the Middle of it, which is large, but not strong. The City is about Three Miles in Circuit, is wall'd about with Free-Stone. It hath Ten Gates, but no Moat, or Draw-

Pigeons carry Letters.

Alexandretta described.

Godfrey of Bullioign's Arms.

Sandy.

Lake of Antioch.

Olives.

The Trade.

Monasteries

Aleppo, a stately City.

Draw-Bridge. Under one of the Gates is a Place, which the *Turks* have in great Veneration, becauſe they hold, that *Eliſha* the Prophet liv'd there ſometime, and they burn Lamps there continually. There runs a Rivulet by the City, which ſerves to water their Gardens, where grows abundance of Fruit, and particularly Piſtaches, much bigger and better taſted, than thoſe from *Cabin*; but the City is ſupply'd with Water from Two Fountains at ſome Diſtance from the City. The Houſes, neither publick nor private, are handſome, but are well adorn'd within with Marble of ſeveral Colours, Fret-work Cielings, and Golden Inſcriptions. Within the City are 26 Moſques, Six or Seven of which are very magnificent, with ſtately *Duomo*'s, and Three of them are cover'd with Lead. The chiefeſt and largeſt of them is thought to be a Chriſtian Church, built by St. *Helena*, as was that Moſque which ſtands in the Suburbs. There are Three Colleges in *Aleppo*, but very few Students, though there are Learned Men, who have Salaries to teach Grammar, Philoſophy, and the Grounds of their Religion. The Streets of this City are paved, except their *Bazars*, where the Merchants and Crafts-men have their Shops. The chiefeſt Artiſts, and moſt numerous, are Silk and Chamlet-Weavers. The Weights commonly uſed at *Aleppo*, are the *Rottle* and the *Oque*; the *Rottle* containing 600 Drachms, or 5 Pound Weight, and the *Oque* 400 Drachms, or 3 Pound Weight; and the ſame Weights are uſed at *Damaſcus*. The Money current there, is the *Piaſtre* of *Reals*, which is worth 80 *Aſpres*, in Value a Noble Sterling; the *Boquell*, which is worth 70 *Piaſtres*, or 5 *s.* 10 *d.* and the *Schied*, which is 5 *Aſpres*, or 5 *d.* In the City and Suburbs there are about Forty Inns, and Fifty publick Baths, both for Men and Women, by their Turns. Bathing is the Womens chief Paſtime, and they'll ſave all the Week to carry a Collation thither to make merry with. The Suburbs are well peopled, becauſe almoſt all the Chriſtians have their Houſes and Churches there. They are of Four ſorts, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Jacobites*, or *Syrians*, and *Maronites*. The *Greeks*, who are about 15 or 16000 in Number, have an Archbiſhop here, and a Church, dedicated to St. *George*. The *Armenians* are not above 12000, but have a Biſhop and Church, dedicated to the *Virgin*. The *Jacobites* are but 10000, and have their Biſhop and Church. The *Maronites* are about 1200, and depend upon the Pope, and their Church is conſecrated to St. *Elias*. The Roman Catholicks have Three Churches, ſerved by *Capuchins*, *Carmelites* and *Jeſuites*, and they reckon, that in the City and Suburbs are 25000 Souls. There is a vaſt Trade at *Aleppo* for Silks, Chamlets, Nut-Galls, Valenede, Soap, and ſeveral other Commodities, which bring thither Merchants from all Parts of the World, *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Perſians*, *Indians*, *Engliſh*, *Italians*, *French*, *Hollanders*, and others, every Nation having its Conſul, to carry on their Intereſts, and maintain their Privileges. The Profeſſion of a Phyſician is of no Value at *Aleppo*, for the *Turks* there will not give above 20 *Sous* (or Pence) for the Cure of any Diſeaſe; and, which is worſt of all, if the Patient be not cured, or dies, the Phyſician is blamed, or puniſhed. Sometimes they'll hang ſuch an one about with little Bells, and carry him through the City to expoſe him, that none may employ him. The City is govern'd by a *Baſha*, who commands all the Country from *Alexandretta* to *Euphrates*, and has a Guard of 300 Men. He was ſome Years ago made a Viſier. There is alſo an *Aga*, or Captain of the Cavalry, who commands 400 Men, and has Power as well without as within the City. There is alſo an *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, who has Charge of the Gates of the City, and to him the Keys are carry'd every Night. There is alſo a Commander of the Caſtle, ſent immediately from *Conſtantinople*, who has 200 Muſketeers under him, and has Charge of the Cannon, which are about Thirty Pieces, Eight great, and the reſt ſmall. There is alſo an *Aga*, or Captain of the City, who commands 300 *Harquebuſſes*, beſides a *Sou-Baſha*, who is a kind of Provoſt of the Merchants, and Captain of the Watch. He goes the Rounds every Night, with the Officers, through the City and Suburbs, and puts in Execution the Sentences of the *Baſha* upon Criminals. In Civil Matters the *Cadi* ſits ſole Judge. He makes and diſſolves all Contracts of Marriage, confirms all Acts of Purchaſe and Sales, creates Maſters of every Trade, who are to ſee there be no Deception in the Work. The Grand Signior's Duties are received by a *Teſterdar*, or Treaſurer-General, who has under him ſeveral Receivers in divers Places. In Matters of Religion the *Mufti* is the Chief: He interprets the Law as well in Relation to the Ceremonies, as Eccleſiaſtical Differences. Among them there is a *Chick*, or Doctor, appointed to inſtruct thoſe that are newly converted to *Mahometaniſm*, and teach them the Maxims and Cuſtoms of their Religion. Not far from *Aleppo* is an Houſe inhabited by the *Dervices*, which are a Religious Order among the *Turks*. It was anciently a Convent of the Monks of St. *Baſil*. It is in good Repair, the Walls of the Chambers, Halls and Galleries being all Marble. Some of theſe Men will turn round Two Hours together with all their Might, till they dazzle the Eyes of the Beholders, thinking this Piece of Folly a great Accompliſhment. Near this College is the Fiſh-Well, which is incloſed in a Court with Walls, and wharfed with Marble. It is a Pleaſure to ſee the Multitudes of great Fiſh playing in the clear Water, but the *Turks* will permit none to touch them, ſaying, that if any eat of them, they fall ſick. From *Aleppo* to *Iſpahan* there are Five principal Roads. 1. On the Left Hand, toward the Summer-Eaſt, through *Diarbeck* and *Tauris*. 2. Directly Eaſt, thro' *Meſopotamia*, by *Mouſſul* and *Amadan*. 3. On the Right Hand, toward the Winter-Eaſt, through *Bagdat* and *Kengavar*. 4. A little more to the South, croſſing a little Deſart, through *Anna*, *Bagdat* and *Balſara*. 5. Through the great Deſart, which is travell'd but once a Year to buy Camels. Theſe added to the Two Roads before deſcrib'd, make Seven Roads. For the Road by the great Deſart the Caravans never ſet out, till the Rains are fallen, that they may not want Water, and that is in *December*. When you have gone Two or Three Leagues from *Aleppo*, you enter the Deſart, where you meet with nothing but Tents, inſtead of Houſes, and large Plains of Sand, hardly paſſable, till the Rains have knit them together. They ſtretch out to the Winter-Eaſt all along the *Euphrates* to *Balſara*, and the Shore of the Gulf of *Perſia*, and upon the South to the Chain of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Petræa* and *Arabia Fœlix*. For the firſt Fifteen Days Travel, you meet with Water but once in Two Days, and ſometimes but once in Three; but afterward you ſhall find ſome few Houſes and Water oftner. In theſe Journies you meet ſometimes with the *Emirs*, or *Arabian* Princes, who will ſtop your Caravan, and not let it go any further, till the Sum he pleaſeth to require be paid him. In theſe Deſarts are many Hares and Partridges, but ſometimes you will find no Water for Nine or Ten Days together, in which Time, though the Camels will ſhift well enough, yet the Men are hard put to it for Drink. In the midſt of them ſtands a large Palace, built of burnt Brick, and Three Courts belonging to it, in every one of which are fair Buildings, with Two Stories of Arches, one upon another; but no Body lives in it; and the *Arabians*, who are very ignorant of Antiquity, can give no Account of the Building nor Inhabitants. Before it is a Lake with a Channel, brick'd at the Bottom. From this Palace, after Five Days Journey, you come to a pitiful Town, called *Cuca*, but now *Meched-Ali*, becauſe there *Ali*, *Mahomet*'s Son-in-Law, lies buried in a plain Moſque, and about his Tomb there are Lamps and Tapers burning continually. The *Perſians* have a great Veneration for this Prophet; but becauſe they muſt paſs through *Bagdat*, where the *Turk* makes every Pilgrim pay Eight Piaſters to go in Pilgrimage to this Moſque, the Kings of *Perſia* forbid their Subjects to viſit his Tomb, as ſcorning their Subjects ſhould be tributary to the *Turks*. From hence in Eight or Ten Days you may get to *Balſara*, and ſo to paſs theſe Deſarts it takes up 65 Days, or thereabouts. At *Balſara* there are ſeen ſuch prodigious Numbers of Locuſts flying in the Air, that they appear like a Cloud, and darken the Sun. The Winds, when they are on the Wing, carry them into the Deſart, where they periſh; and had not Providence appointed this Way to be rid of them, there could nothing live for them upon the Earth, in ſome Parts of *Chaldæa*. From *Balſara* you paſs the *Perſian* Bay to *Bander-rie*, in *Perſia*, in 48 Hours, if you have a good Wind. This Town is nothing but Five or Six little Fiſhers Huts, made of Hurdles, ſet one againſt ano-

Eliſha's Gate. *Moſques.* *Colleges.* *Streets.* *Crafts-men.* *Baths.* *Chriſtians.* *The Trade.* *Baſha.* *Command-er of the Caſtle.* *Sou-Baſha.* *Cadi.* *Teſterdar.* *The Mufti.* *Chick.* *Dervices.* *Several Roads from Aleppo to Iſpahan.* *The Road by the great Deſart.* *The Arabian Emirs.* *An empty Palace.* *Ali's Tomb.* *Balſara.* *Locuſts.*

another, and cover'd over, where the People live with their Families. From hence to *Cazerom* is Six Days Journey, through a Mountainous Country, full of Wood, and in some Places pleasant enough, being upon the Banks of little Rivulets, and through verdant Groves, stored with Turtles, which are good Food for Travellers. From *Cazerom* to *Schiras* is Five Days Journey, through very craggy Mountains, which had been unpassable, had not *Ali-Couli Kan*, Governour of *Schiras*, made Ways where there was none, and join'd Mountains together by Bridges, at great Charge, for the Publick. In the midst of these Mountains lies a plain, about Twenty Leagues in Circuit, which is inhabited by *Jews* only, who are Silk-Weavers. The *Chaldeans* come in Summer to these Mountains, for cool Air, and Pasture for their Cattle. From *Schiras* you pass a Country, part Mountains, and part Plains, and in Three Days come to the Mountain of *Mayen*, and, after Two Days more, enter the Country of *Cusestar*, where the King of *Persia* keeps his Race-Horses, and the next Day you arrive at *Tesdecan*, where is made the best Bread in *Persia*: The excellent Corn, of which it is made, grows in the Valley adjoining. From *Tesdecan*, in Three Days, you get to *Ispahan*.

CHAP. IV.

Mr. Tavernier's *Third Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan, *through* Mesopotamia *and* Assyria.

1643. MR. *Tavernier* relates, That in this Voyage he left *Paris*, Dec. 6. 1643. and went to *Leghorn*, where finding the *Dutch* Fleet ready to sail for the *Levant*, he embark'd in a Man of War Ship, and sailing thro' the Chanel of *Messina*, and by the *Morea*, arriv'd at *Alexandretta*; and from thence, on Horseback, went to *Aleppo*, according to the usual Manner, and then proceeded on his Journey, *March* 6. in the Company of Two *Capucin* Friars, Father *Raphael*, and Father *Ives*, and *Dominico de Sancta* a *Venetian*. From *Aleppo* you come to *Bir* in Four Days, through a well wooded and manured Country. In the Way there is a Cave, where the *Bedouins*, or Feeders of Cattle, thereabouts often retire, because they live like the *Arabs*, either in Rocks, or poor Huts. It is so large, as to contain 300 Horse; and there are in it several Niches, like little Chambers. The *Bedouins* will rob and disturb the Travellers, if their Goods are not defended. You cross the *Euphrates* in large Ferry Boats to *Bir*, and there pay a Duty of Two Piasters for every Horse's and Mule's Load of Goods, and half a Piaster for every Beast's Load of Provisions. *Bir* is a large City, built like an Amphitheatre, upon the Brow of a very craggy Mountain. It has Two Castles, one by the River under the Hill, which secures the River, and another in the highest part of the Town, where the Governour resides, who is an *Aga*, and has under him 200 *Janizaries*, and 400 *Spahi's*. It affords extraordinary Plenty of all Things, excellent Bread, good Wine, and great store of the best sort of Fish.

From *Bir* you go through part of *Mesopotamia*, which lies between *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, called at present *Diarbeck* to *Searmiy*, a good Town, where is an Inn and Baths round it. About Two Musket-shot from thence is a Mountain alone by it self, on the Top of which stands a Fortress, with a Garrison of 200 *Spahi's*, to oppose the *Arabs*, who sometimes cross *Euphrates*, and make Incursions on that Side. Proceeding on your Journey, you come to *Ourfa*, where the Merchants pay another Toll for their Goods. *Ourfa* is the capital City of *Mesopotamia*, built in the same Place (as they say) where *Abraham* dwelt, and where the ancient City of *Edessa* stood. They shew a Castle, where, they say, King *Abgarus* liv'd, when he sent to Christ; and the *Armenians* hold, that they began to be Christians in his Reign, and were baptized by an Apostle, whom Christ sent to them after his Resurrection. The *Armenians* have Two Churches here; the biggest stands at a small Distance from the City; and a Monastery, enclosed with fair Walls, by it. It was built by St. *Eporem*, who lies buried there; the other stands in the highest part of the Town, in the middle of the Church-yard. They say, that St. *Alexis* liv'd Sixteen Years a private Life under the Portal of it. The City is seated in a good Soil, which produceth good Wine, and affords very pleasant Gardens, water'd by Chanels, brought thither by Art. The Walls of the City are of Free-Stone, with Battlements and Towers, but within, the Houses are small, ill built, and so ruinous, that in some Places it looks more like a Desart than a Metropolis. The City is 1643. govern'd by a *Bassa*, who has under him 150 *Janizaries*, and 600 *Spahi's*, to prevent the Incursions of the *Arabians*, especially in Harvest-time. Here are dress'd great Quantities of *Cordovan* Skins, of a yellow Colour, because the Water of this Place gives them a particular Beauty.

From *Ourfa* you pass to *Dadacardin*. The Way is so rocky, that 'tis dangerous to ride, and there is nothing memorable, but several Caverns and Grott's in the Rocks, where the People liv'd that fed their Flocks, and a City quite deserted by the Inhabitants; not far from which is a Place full of Tombs of Stone, and in the midst of them stands a Cross, with *Armenian* Characters. *Dadacardin* seems to have been a great Town, but 'tis all ruined, and has nothing worthy of Notice, but a long Stone-Bridge, well built. The People of the Country adjoining have no Houses, but dwell in the Hollows of Rocks, yet they sell Hens, Butter, Cheese, and other Provisions to the Travellers, very cheap. The next Town in the Road is *Cara*, built on an Hill. Here the Christians have a pitiful Church, where they make shift to say Divine Service, but dare not make it decent or convenient, because the *Turks*, in foul Weather, break into it, and take away all they find, and burn what they cannot carry away. In the Town is a Pond, wharfed with the Stones taken from the Christian Churches and Tombs. The Country is a large Plain, Twenty Leagues in Length, and might well be manured, to the great enriching of the Inhabitants, were it not subject to the Tyranny of the *Turks*, and Incursions of the *Arabs*, which discourage all Industry. From hence you travel to *Cousasar*, where formerly were Three Monasteries, a Quarter of a League one from another; but Two of them are ruin'd by the *Turks*, all but the Steeples of the Churches, and the 3d, which was the fairest, is made a Mosque. Here you must pay the Customs of *Diarbequir*, which is distant 2 Days Journey, amounting to 2 Piasters and a Quarter for every Load of Merchandice. It is a large Village, inhabited by *Armenian* Christians and *Nestorians*. The former perform Divine Service in their own Language, and the latter in the *Chaldee*. *Mardin* is about Two Leagues from this Town. It is a little City, seated on a Mountain, on the higher part of which stands a Castle, accounted impregnable, which commands it, and is in the Hands of a *Bassa*, which has under him 200 *Spahi's*, and 400 *Janizaries*. The Christians here have a Bishop.

Karasara, a great Town, comes next in our Way. It was formerly, no doubt, inhabited by Christians, because there are still the Ruines of Seven or Eight Churches, of which the Steeples are not much the worse. They stand at a good Distance one from another, and upon every Door of one of them is a Cross. The next Day you come to *Nesbin*, anciently *Nisibis*. The Road from *Cousasar* hither is a large Plain, where no Herb grows but Pimpernel, the Roots of which are some a Foot and half diameter, and the Fields by it are full of yellow, red, and blue Flowers, Tulips, Emonies and Daffadils.

In

1643. In general, *Mesopotamia* is a very barren Country, and capable of Improvement by Art in a few Places only. *Nisibin* is but a Shadow of the ancient *Nisibis*, being only a large Village. It is inhabited by *Armenians* and *Nestorians*, who have a Bishop and several Priests. Here is also a Toll of Two Piasters and an half to be paid for every Horse and Mule's Load; and you must furnish your self with Provisions till you come to *Moussul*, which is Five Days Journey over uninhabited Deserts, where we saw nothing, but the Ruines of a Bridge and Castle. *Moussul* makes a great Show without, because the Walls are all Free-Stone, but within 'tis almost all ruined, except Two blind Market-places, and a little Castle on the *Tigris*, where the *Basha* lives; yet here is a considerable Resort of Merchants from *Arabia* and *Curdistan* to buy Galls, which grow here in great Plenty. There are in it Four sorts of Christians, *viz.* *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Nestorians* and *Maronites*. It is govern'd by a *Baska*, who has under him, part *Janizaries* and part *Spahi's*, about 3000 Men.

Moussul.

Cross the *Tigris*, which hath a swift Stream and whitish Water, whereas *Euphrates* runs slow and is reddish, you come to the ancient City *Nineve*, which is now an Heap of Rubbish only, for a League along the River, full of Vaults and Caverns. Half a League from *Tigris* stands a little Hill, encompassed with Houses, on the Top whereof is built a Mosque, in the Place where, they say, *Jonas* is buried. The *Turks* have a mighty Veneration for it, and cover it with a *Persian* Carpet of Silk and Silver, and at the Four Corners are great Copper Candlesticks with Wax Tapers, and several Lamps. No Christians are suffered to enter it, but privately for their Money, and then they must put off their Shooes. Two *Dervises* sit always in it reading the *Alcoran*.

Nineve.

Jonas's Burying-place.

Having passed over the *Tigris*, you cross the ancient *Assyria*, now called *Curdistan*, at first through a plain Country, by the Side of a little River, and over the River *Borbus*, which has no Bridge, and is passed with Difficulty by the Caravan, being a rapid and large Stream, but full of Fish, and particularly excellent Trouts; but afterward the Road is very bad for 2 or 3 Days, till you come to a large Stone-Bridge over the River *Zarbe*. They report, that this Bridge was built by *Alexander* the Great, in his March against *Darius*.

Assyria, or Curdistan.

From this Bridge you go on to a Town, called *Sherazoul*, where resides a *Basha*, who must be brib'd with a small Present to let the Caravan pass. Here the Way lies over dry Mountains a while, till you come into the pleasant Plains of *Arbela*, where *Alexander* defeated *Darius*. It is watered with several Rivulets, full of Fruit-Trees, and about Fifteen Leagues in Extent. On a little Hill by it, which is cover'd with the fairest Oaks that ever were seen, are the Ruines of a Castle, where, they say, *Darius* staid, while his Captains fought with *Alexander*. It seems to have been a sumptuous Building. Three Leagues from hence appear the Ruines of another Castle, where *Darius* is said to have secur'd his Wives and Concubines when the Battle was lost. The City of *Sherazoul* is cut out of a steep Rock for a Quarter of a League together, so that you must go up 10 or 15 Steps to every House. They have no Doors to their Houses, but a thin round Stone, like a Mill-Stone, which they rowl away when they go in or out, the Walls of their Houses being so cut, as to receive it like a Case. Here are certain Springs, which have a purgative Quality, and taste like a Mineral.

1643. Sherazoul. Arbela. The Heads. Purging Springs.

Departing hence, we cross'd the Fens and hot Waters, which part the Empires, and so entred into *Persia*, where we found an high Mountain, hardly superable by the Caravan. It was cover'd with Oaks, that bear the Nut-galls and Acorns of which the People thereabouts make Bread, and have none else. From this Mountain you descend into a fertile Plain, over which it is Two Days Journey to a good big Town, where there is a Fortress, and the Governour of the Province has a Lieutenant there, who has about 2000 Men under his Command. It is called *Sneirne*; and from thence over Plains full of Lilies, not white, but of a bright blue Colour, an Infusion of whose Roots, drunk Fifteen Days together, is a most Sovereign Remedy against the Pox, you come to *Amadan* in Three Days. This City is one of the largest and most considerable in all *Persia*: It stands at the Foot of a Mountain, where rise a great Number of Springs, which water all the Country, and make it abound so with Corn and Rice, that it furnisheth the greatest part of the Neighbouring Provinces with them. From hence it is but a small Day's Journey to *Ispahan*.

Amadan.

The End of the Third Voyage.

CHAP. V.

Mr. Tavernier's *Fourth Voyage into* Asia, *viz.* *from* Paris *to* Ormus.

1651. MR. *Tavernier* leaving *Paris* June 18. 1651, arriv'd at *Marseilles* July 16. and setting Sail *August* 26. with a favourable North-West Wind, arriv'd at *Malta* upon the Day of the Nativity of the *Virgin*, (viz. *Sept.* 8.) which is a great Day with the *Maltese*, being a publick Thanksgiving to God, because the *Turks* raised the Siege of their Island that Day. This Festival is performed with great Solemnity, and Devotion, a Procession of the Knights, Ringing of Bells, and Discharging their Cannon, all the Country-men and Citizens being in Arms. In this Island is an Arsenal, where are kept Arms for 20000 Men in good Order, and well look'd after, and an Infirmery, where all the Sick, as well Poor as Rich, are serv'd in Plate.

Malta. The Arsenal and Infirmery.

Departing from *Malta* Sept. 20. he and his Company sail'd by the *Morea*, and saw the City of *Coron*, where there is a great Trade for Sallet-Oil, and on the 25th descry'd *Cyprus*. From the 27th they perceiv'd the Sea to be covered all over with Pumice Stones, which happen'd from an Earthquake, which had swallow'd up the Isle of *Santorini* a little before, and was the Death of above 750 Islanders, that were either bury'd in the Ruines, or died of Fear; and those that surviv'd it became as black as Charcoal, and the Vapours that ascended out of the Abyss, sully'd all the Silver as far as *Constantinople*, and the Noise of the Earth-quake was heard as far as *Smyrna*.

On *Octob.* 1. they came to an Anchor before *Salines*, a Port of *Cyprus*. This Island is one of the most considerable in the *Mediterranean* Sea, lying more East than any of the rest, and bearing the Title of a Kingdom, as being 500 Miles in Compass. It is of a triangular Form, and has several Capes, or Promontories, *viz.* St. *Epiphanio* on the West, Cape *De Gats* on the South, Cape *Diegrega* on the North-East, Cape *Cormacoiti* on the North, and Cape St. *Andrew* on the East. The principal Roads are *Salines*, or *Larneza*, *Papios*, *Cerine*, or *Cerigni*; for the Haven of *Famagosta* will receive only small Vessels. The *Basha's*, who are sent Governours of the Island from *Constantinople*, land at *Cerines*, where all the Barks and Galleots, which come from *Caramania* and *Payasses*, lie, and reside at *Nicosia*, a City almost in the middle of the Island, formerly a very large one, but now of less Compass, yet the Walls are well terrass'd, and in a good Posture of Defence. The City was once adorn'd with many fair Palaces by the *Venetians*, which made it no uncomely City; but the *Turks* pull them down every Day, out of Hopes of finding Treasure hidden in them, and sell the Stones to build new Houses. The Cathedral of *Santa Sophia*, a noble Structure, is made a Mosque, as is also the Monastery belonging to the *Augustine Friars*. The *Greeks* have Four Churches, and the *Franks* Two, *viz.* The *French Missionary Capuchins*, one dedicated to St. *James*, and

1651. Cyprus described. The chief Port. The great Houses pull'd down.

1651. the *Italian Miſſionary Soccolanus*, another conſecrated to the *Holy Rood*. The *Armenians* have another, which was formerly a Monaſtery of the *Carthuſians*. All theſe Chriſtians pay a *Carage* to the Grand Seignior, as ſoon as they are Eighteen Years of Age, the pooreſt Six Piaſters, and the Rich 100. or 150, which Tax is ſo heavy to them, becauſe Money is ſcarce in the Iſland, that many of them turn *Mahometans*, to avoid the Payment. This City is ſeated in a temperate Air and fertile Soil, abounding with Water. It was anciently Nine Miles round, but is now but Three. It was one of the moſt ſtately and exact Fortreſſes in the World, before *Selim* the Second beſieged it. *Famagoſta* is a Sea-Town, and the chief Bulwark of the Iſland. It is kept in good Repair, and the Caſtle is in Form of a Cittadel. The *Turks* have converted all the Chriſtian Churches into Moſques, and will not ſuffer a Chriſtian to dwell in it; but though they are allow'd to come in the Day-time and open their Shops and ſell, yet at Night, when they have ſhut them up, they muſt go to their Houſes in the Neighbouring Villages. It is govern'd by a Bey, who has no Dependance on the Governour of the Iſland, but is obliged to maintain a Galley for the Defence of the Coaſt. *Cerines* is another little City, but without any Walls to defend it, but only it has a little Fortreſs by the Sea, with a Garriſon in it. Here is an handſome Monaſtery of *Greeks*, built ſo near the Sea, that they can fiſh out of ſome of the Windows of the Cells. The Fields about it bear Cotton, which is the chief Revenue of the Monaſtery. The other Forts that defend the Iſland are, *Salines*, *Limiſſo* and *Paphos*. The Inhabitants in the Villages are for the moſt part *Greeks*, clad after the *Italian* Manner, but retaining their ancient Cuſtoms as much as poſſible. The Trade of the Iſland lies in Cotton-Wool, which is the beſt of all the Eaſt; and ſome Silk, which is neither good, nor plentiful. It is fertile enough, if it had Inhabitants to till it: Bread, Wine, Cheeſe and Milk are very cheap; and Oil is produced in a ſufficient Quantity for their own Uſe. The Countries between *Nicoſia* and *Famagoſta*, *Paphos* and *Limiſſo* produce Cotton. The chief Place for their Silk is *Cythrea*, a large Town, watered with a large River, which runs from the Mountains of *Venice*, and turns ſeveral Mills. At *Piſcopi* the *Venetians* made Sugar, but ſince the *Turks* took the Iſland, one of the *Baſha's*, who was Governour, burnt up all the Sugar-Canes in the Country. Towards the Sea-Shore, near *Limiſſo*, is one of the faireſt Gardens in *Cyprus*, a magnificent Houſe, a Grove of Orange-Trees, all raiſed by a rich *Venetian*, who had an Eſtate thereabout. Near the Mountains of the *Holy Croſs*, in the Months of *September* and *October*, the Country People take a vaſt Number of Birds as big as Larks, and pickling them up in Barrels with Vinegar and Salt, ſend above a Thouſand Barrels in a Year of them to *Venice*, where they account them ſo great Dainties, that they will have no Feaſts in Carnaval Times without great Diſhes of them. This Trade furniſheth the poor People with a little Money, who elſe would hardly ſee any. In the Kingdom of *Cyprus* are one Arch biſhop, *viz.* that of *Nicoſia*, to whoſe Juriſdiction belong the Cities and Territories of *Famagoſta* and *Nicoſia*. His Palace ſtands about a League from *Nicoſia*, where his Revenues lie; and Three Suffragans, *viz.* The Biſhops of *Paphos*, *Carnezia*, and *Cerines*. The *Greeks* obſerve their ancient Cuſtoms and Ceremonies, and their Maſſes are very long. On Sundays and Holidays they riſe by 1 or 2 a Clock to ſay Mattins, but the young Women dare not go for fear of the *Turks*. There are 7 or 8 Villages of *Maronites*, who came from Mount *Libanus*, who ſpeak *Arabick* at Home, but *Greek* among the Iſlanders. They follow the *Romiſh* Religion, and have Churches of their own. The Air of it is not good, but ſubject to Locuſts, which ſome Years deſtroy all their Fruit and Corn. They hover in the Air, during the Heats, and darken it like a Cloud, but when the North-Wind blows, it carries them into the Sea. The *Venetians* fetch Three ſorts of Painting Earths out of this Iſland, and there is another that affords Allum.

Famagoſta. *The Bey.* *Cerines.* *Cotton.* *The Product.* *Sugar-Canes burnt* *Birds.* *The Eccleſiaſtical Conſtitution.* *Maronites.* *Painting Earths.*

From *Cyprus* he ſet Sail *Octob.* 3. and arriv'd in the Road of *Alexandretta* Octob. 4. in the Evening, from whence he went to *Aleppo*, and ſtaying there till *December* 13. he, with others, travell'd the former Roads to *Mouſſul*, or *Nineveh*, where they arriv'd *Febr.* 2. and as ſoon as they could have the Kilets, or Boats, ready, went upon the *Tigris* in Nine Days to *Bagdat*, or *Babylon*. In this Paſſage the moſt remarkable Things are, the Hot-Baths within a Musket-ſhot of the Banks of that River, which are continually throng'd with ſick People, who come thither for their Recovery, eſpecially Lepers; an huge Dam, where the Boat falls of a ſudden above 120 Foot, and yet is kept above Water by the Bottles, but the Goods are unloaden, and the Water-men are forced to tie themſelves and their Oars to a Perch. The *Arabs* are all along upon the Sherk, and though they bring Milk-Meats and Butter to ſell the Paſſengers, yet, if they find them aſleep, or can overpower them, they rob and kill them. Several Rivers run into the *Tigris* in this Way, as the *Zab* and the *Altum-ſou*, i. e. *The River of Gold*, whoſe Water has an excellent Taſte. It is uſual for the Paſſengers to lie upon the Banks of the River in their Way; but then they muſt make great Fires, and ſhoot off Muskets often in the Night, to ſcare the Lions, if they lodge near the Woods.

1651. *Bagdat.*

Being arriv'd at *Bagdat*, which, though it be not the ancient *Babylon*, nor ſtands in the ſame Place, yet bears the Name, all Merchants pay Cuſtoms for their Goods. This City is ſeated upon the River *Tigris*, [illegible] on the Coaſt of *Perſia*, and parted from *Meſopotamia* by the ſame River. It lies in 33 D. 15 M. of Elevation, and the Chronicles of the *Arabians* ſay, that one of their Califfs, named *Almanſour*, built it in the 145th Year of the *Hegyra* of *Mahomet*, A. C. 762. They call it *Darat-ſani*, i. e. *The Houſe of Peace*. It is about Three Miles in Compaſs. The Walls are of Brick, and terraſs'd in ſome Places with large Towers, like Baſtions. On all theſe Towers are mounted Sixty Pieces of Cannon, but the biggeſt carry not above 5 or 6 Pound Ball. The Moat is wide, and about 5 or 6 Fathom deep. It has but Four Gates. The Caſtle is in the City, near the North Gate, called *Elmaazan*. It has but a ſingle Wall, a narrow Moat, and the Cannon, which are about 150, are without Carriages. The Garriſon conſiſts of 300 *Janizaries*, commanded by an *Aga*, and the City is commanded by a *Baſſa*, who is generally a *Vizier*, who has 6 or 700 Horſe ready for Service. There is alſo an *Aga* that commands 3 or 400 *Spahi's*, and another ſort of Cavalry, called *Giroguelcer*, i. e. *Men of Courage*, which are commanded by Two *Aga's*, and uſually are about 3000 in the City and Towns adjoining. The Keys of the City Gates are put into the Cuſtody of another *Aga*, who has under him 200 *Janizaries*. There are alſo 600 Footmen, who have their *Aga*, and 60 Cannoneers. As to the Civil Government, 'tis managed by a *Cadi* and *Terterdar* only, who receives the Revenues of the Grand Seignior. The City is ill built, and hath nothing of Beauty in it, but the *Bazars*, or Market-places, which are all Arch'd. In it there are Five Moſques, adorned with *Duomo's*, and varniſh'd Tiles of divers Colours. The City is full of Trade, but not ſo full as it was, when the King of *Perſia* had it, becauſe when the *Turk* took it, he kill'd moſt of the richeſt Merchants, yet 'tis mighty full of People, becauſe many viſit it out of Devotion to their Prophet *Haly*, who liv'd here, as they ſay; and there is a continual Paſſage through it to *Mecha* by the Pilgrims. Here are Two ſorts of *Mahometans*: 1. *Refedi's*, or Hereticks. 2. *Obſervers of the Law*. The *Refedi's* will not drink with a *Chriſtian* or *Jew*, and hardly with a *Mahometan* of another Sect. The chiefeſt of the City are of this Sect. As to their Funerals, when the Husband dies, the Wife plucks off all her Head gear, and lets her Hair fall about her Ears, and then beſmears her Face with the Soot of a Kettle, and friſks and leaps about ridiculouſly. All the Kindred, Friends and Neighbours meet at the Houſe of the Deceaſed, to ſtay for the Funeral, and the Women yell like mad People, beating on Drums. When the Corps is carried to the Grave, an abundance of poor People go before, ſinging moſt diſmal Dirges. The Women muſt not be at the Interment, for they are not allow'd to go abroad, but upon *Thurſdays*, when they go to the Sepulchres to pray for the Dead. If they go abroad upon other Occaſions, as to viſit their Kindred, &c. 'tis by their Husbands Leave, and then they are wrapt up ſo, as none can know them. All, but ſuch as are very poor, will go on Horſe-back, or ſtay at Home all their Lives. They are very richly habited, wearing Jewels not only on their Wriſts and Necks, but Ears and Faces. There are

Bagdat. *The Gover-nour.* *Many Sects.* *Refedi's.* *Their Fu-nerals.*

1651. The Christians. The Funerals.

are Three sorts of Christians, *Nestorians*, who have a Church, the *Armenians* and *Jacobites*, who have none, but go to the *Capuchins* to confess. If a Christian dies, all the rest come to his Burial, and returning home, have a Supper prepar'd for them, and next Day they return to the Grave, and pray for the Deceased, and the Third Day is a Dinner for all Comers. They repeat the same Ceremonies on the 7th, 15th, 30th and 40th Days, whereby the Poor are much impoverish'd, insomuch, that they sell their Children to the *Turks* to pay their Debts. There are also several *Jews* in *Bagdat*, but more come to visit *Ezekiel*'s Tomb, which is a Day and a Half's Journey from the City. In the midst of a wide Plain, almost in the midst between *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, appears a vast Heap of Earth and Bricks, about Twenty Fathoms high. It is called *Nemrod*, and the Vulgar believe it to be the Remains of the Tower of *Babel*; but the *Arabians* say more probably, 'twas built by one of their Princes to set a Beacon on, to call his Subjects in, in Time of War.

Jews.

Bal sara.

From *Bagdat*, March 15. we sail'd to *Balsara*, which is Ten Days Voyage. At the Parting of the *Tigris*, which is but a little Way from *Bagdat*, there is the Foundation of a City, which may seem to have been a large League in Compass. There are some of the Walls yet standing, upon which Six Coaches may go abreast. They are made of burnt Brick, Ten Foot square, and Three thick: The Chronicles of the Country say, here stood the ancient *Babylon*.

Old Babylon.

As you go further down the River, in the Arm that runs by the Coast of *Chaldea*, you meet these Towns, *Amurat*, where there is a Fort of Brick, bak'd in the Sun, *Mansoury*, *Magar*, *Gazer* and *Gorno*, where *Euphrates* and *Tigris* meet. Here are Three Castles to be seen, one upon the Point, which is strongest, and is under the Command of the Prince of *Balsara*; the second is on the *Chaldean*, and the third on the *Arabian* side. All the Country between these Two Cities, which is 160 Leagues, being watered by Dikes, is one of the best for Meadows and Pasture in the Possession of the Grand Seignior, feeding a great Number of Mares and Buffalo's, which yield abundance of Milk, of which such Quantities of Butter are made, as to sell it all along the *Persian* Gulf, on both Sides. The People pay a Tribute to the Grand Seignior, for every Buffalo a Piaster and half, for every Mare Two, and for every Sheep Ten Sous, which, if duely paid, would raise a great Sum; but they are cunning to evade it.

Pasture.

Gorno.

At *Gorno* an Account is taken of all Goods, but the Customs are not taken till you come to *Balsara*. This City stands upon the Side of *Arabia Deserta*, Two Leagues from the Ruines of the City, formerly called *Beredon*, which seems to have been a large City; but now the *Arabians* fetch away the Bricks, and sell them at *Balsara*. It is half a League from *Euphrates*, but the Inhabitants have cut a Chanel up to it, which will bear Vessels of 150 Tun. The Sea is above Fifteen Leagues from it, but the Tide comes up the Chanel. The Country is low, and would be often in danger of drowning, were it not for a strong Dam of Free-Stone, which runs along the Sea-Shore, and breaks the most boisterous Waves. It belonged to the *Arabians*, who had no Commerce with any Nations of *Europe*, till the *Turks* took it; for they eat their own Dates and Fish, and wanted no Foreign Goods. The *Turks* held it not long, but being continually molested by the *Arabians*, *Aiud-Bassa* sold it for 40000 Piasters to an *Arabian* Prince, who took upon him the Name of *Efrasias-Bassa*, whose Posterity hold it to this Day. This Prince holds Correspondence with many Nations, so that whencesoever you come, you are welcome here. There is so much Liberty, and so good Order in this City, that you may walk all Night in the Streets without Molestation. The *Hollanders* bring their Spices hither, and the *English* Pepper and some Cloves; the *Indians* Caliculs, Indico's, and all sorts of Merchandises; and the *Arabians* bring Camels, which invites Merchants from all Parts of the World to it. The Customs of *Balsara* are not above 4 *per Cent.* because the Prince or Customers favour the Merchants, who are oblig'd to pay 5 *per Cent.* The Prince of *Balsara* is so good an Husband, that he lays up 3000000 of Livres a Year. His chiefest Revenue is in Four Things: 1. In Money; for he obliges all Merchants to coin their Reals into Larins, by which he gets 8 *per Cent.* 2. In Horses, which are well shap'd, and fit for Travel, and therefore purchased by the Merchants of him at any Rate. 3. In Camels: And 4. In Date-Trees, for which every one pays Three Quarters of a Larin for each Tree, and his Country is cover'd with these Trees for Thirty Leagues together. The Civil Government is ordered by a *Cadi*, who administers Justice, and is establish'd by the Prince. There are Three sorts of Christians, *Jacobites*, *Nestorians*, and Christians of St. *John*, or *Sabeans*. There is also an House of *Italian Carmelites*. The Christians of St. *John*, or *Sabeans*, are very numerous at *Balsara*, and the Villages round about; their Bishops say, they are above 25000 Families. They anciently lived by the River *Jordan*, where *John* baptized, but since *Mahomet* conquer'd *Palestine*, they have been persecuted, and obliged to flie, first into *Mesopotamia* and *Chaldea*, where they were for some time under the Patriarch of *Babylon*, but separating from him, about 160 Years ago, they remov'd into *Persia* and *Arabia*, and settled in and about *Balsara*. They always inhabit near a River, in which they always baptize. Every Year they celebrate a Feast 4 or 5 Days, during which Time they go in Troops to their Bishops to be baptized, according to the Baptism of St. *John*: But this is done only on *Sundays*, yea, though a Child be in danger of Death. They say, that they have receiv'd their Faith, Books and Traditions from *John the Baptist*. When they baptize their Children in their Infancy, they carry them first to Church, where the Bishop prays over them, and then to the River, with a Train of Men and Women, who all go into the Water up to the Knees, and when the Bishop has read certain Prayers, the God-fathers plunge them all over in the Water Thrice, and the Bishop sprinkles them Three Times, *In the Name of the Lord, First and Last of the World, and of Paradise, the High Creator of all Things*; after which, they go all to the Parents House to feast. They have no Knowledge of the Trinity, only they say, that Christ is the Spirit and Word of the Eternal Father. They believe the Angel *Gabriel* to be the Son of God, begotten upon Light, but will not own the Eternal Generation of Christ, as God; yet they confess that he became Man, to free us from the Punishment of Sin, and that he was conceiv'd in the Womb of a Virgin, without the Knowledge of a Man, by means of the Water of a certain Fountain which she drank of. They believe, that he was crucified by the *Jews*, and that he rose the Third Day, and that his Soul ascending up into Heaven, his Body remained on the Earth: But, like the *Mahometans*, they corrupt their Faith, by saying, that Christ vanish'd, when the *Jews* came to take him, and so he deluded their Cruelty with a Shadow. In their *Eucharist* they make use of Meal or Flour, kneaded up with Wine and Oil, and Wine made of Grapes, steeped in Water and prest; for they say, That the Body of Christ being composed of Flesh and Blood, the Flour and Wine do perfectly represent them. They add Oil, to signifie the Benefit we receive by the Sacrament, and to put us in mind of our Love and Charity to God and our Neighbour. The Words of their Consecration are nothing but certain long Prayers, made to praise and thank God, at the same time blessing the Bread and Wine, never mentioning his Body and Blood, which, they say, is not necessary, because God knows their Intentions. After all the Ceremonies are ended, the Priest takes the Bread, and, having eaten some of it, distributes the rest to the People. When any of their Bishops die, they choose his Son, or, if he have none, his next Kinsman, who is most capable, and best instructed in their Religion, to succeed him; and when he is elected, they consecrate him with Prayer and Fasting, as they also do such as are ordained Priests. The Bishops also and Priests fast themselves Six Days. Both Bishops and Priests marry, and have Two Wives, as well as the rest of the People, but their Wives must be Virgins; for all that are admitted to any Ecclesiastical Function, must be of the Race of Bishops or Priests. All their Bishops and Priests wear their Hair long, and a little Needle-work Cross. Their Marriages are celebrated with much Care and Devotion. The Bishop first enquires of the Bride whether she be a Virgin, and if she affirms it, makes her swear to the Truth of it; but, lest there should be any Deception, he sends his Wife, with some other skilful Women, to make an Inspection, and if they find her a Virgin, they make Oath of it; and the Bishop, carrying the Bridegroom and Bride down

1651.

The *Sabeans*, or Christians of St. *John*.

Their Habitation and Feasts.

Their Form of Baptism.

Their Opinion of Christ.

The Sacrament, how administred.

The Election and Consecration of their Bishops.

Their Marriages.

to

1651. to the River, re-baptizeth them, reading certain Prayers all the while these Things are doing; and causing them to return to the House where the Bride lives, he sets them together under a Canopy, makes them to put their Shoulders and Heads together Three times, while he reads Prayers; and then he tells them from his Book of Divination, what Day will be most fortunate to consummate the Marriage, and departs. If the Maid be not found a Virgin, the Bishop will not proceed to marry her; but if the Man still resolves to marry the Woman, he must go to a Priest to do it: But there he will meet with some Difficulty to obtain it; for the Priest, knowing it a Sin to marry a Woman that is not a Virgin, will not do it, unless through Constraint, or to avoid further Inconveniencies; for sometimes in Spite they will turn *Mahometans*, unless they be married. They believe the World to be created by the Angel *Gabriel*, assisted with many Thousand Dæmons, and that he taught *Adam* Husbandry, and all other Sciences. In Reference to another World, and the Life to come, they believe there is no other, but that where Angels and Devils, the Souls of good and bad Men reside: That in that World there are Cities, Houses and Churches; and that the evil Spirits have also their Churches, where they pray, singing and rejoycing with Instruments, and feasting, as in this World: That when any lies at the Point of Death, 360 Dæmons come and carry his Soul to a Place full of Serpents, Dogs, Lions, Tigers and Devils, who, if it be a Soul of a wicked Man, tear it in Pieces: but if it be the Soul of a just Man, it creeps under the Bellies of those Creatures, into the Presence of God, who sits in his Seat of Majesty to judge the World: That there are Angels also that weigh the Souls of Men in a Balance, and, being thought worthy, they are admitted into Glory: That the Angels and Devils are Male and Female, and beget Children. As to the Saints, they hold, That Christ left Twelve Apostles to preach to all Nations; That the Virgin *Mary* is not dead, but lives in a Place unknown; That, next to her, St. *John* is the chiefest Saint in Heaven, and next to them *Zacharias* and *Elizabeth*, of whom they recount several Miracles and Apocryphal Tales; That *John* died a natural Death, but desired his Disciples to crucifie him after his Death, that he might be like Christ; That he was buried in a Chrystal Tomb, which stood in an House near *Jordan*: They highly honour the Cross, and sign themselves with it, but are very careful, lest the *Turks* should observe them, and therefore, during their Ceremony of adorning the Cross, they set a Watch at their Church-Doors, for fear the *Turks* should come in, and lay some unjust Fine upon them. Their chief Festivals are Three: The one in Winter, at *New-Year's* Tide, which lasts Three Days, in Memory of our First Parents, and the Creation of the World. The other in the Month of *August*, that also lasts Three Days, which is call'd, *The Feast of St.* John. The Third lasts Five Days, and is in *June*, in Memory of Christ's Baptism by *John*, in which Time they all are re-baptized once a Day. They observe *Sunday*, doing no Work upon that Day. They neither fast, nor do any Penance. They have no Canonical Books, but many that treat of Witchcraft, in which they believe their Priests to be so great Artists, that the Devils are at their Beck. They hold all Women to be unclean, and that it is not available to them to come to Church. The Ceremony of killing the Hen and Sheep are of great Account among them, and must be perform'd by a Priest, born of a Virgin, at the Time of her Marriage. He puts off his Vestments, and cloaths himself with Linen, and plunging the Fowl into Water, to make it clean, kills it, and while it is bleeding, he repeats these Words, with his Eyes lifted up to Heaven, as if he were in an Extasie, *In the Name of God, may this Flesh be profitable to all that eat it*; and thus they think Fowls and Beasts are consecrated for their Eating. They eat of nothing dress'd by the *Turks*, and if a *Turk* ask them for Drink, they'll break the Cup he drinks in, as soon as he has done; and, to make the *Turks* more hateful, they picture *Mahomet* like a great Giant, shut up in Prison in Hell, with Four more of his Parents; and, they say, that all the *Turks* are carried into the same Place, full of wild Beasts, there to be devour'd. They pretend all to Salvation; for they say, that the Angel *Gabriel*, when he had framed the World by God's Command, thus discoursed him, *Lord God, I have built the World, as thou didst command me, but now it grieves me, that there will come into it a prodigious Number of* Jews, Turks, Idolaters, *and other Infidels, Enemies of thy Name, who will be unworthy to eat and enjoy the Fruits of Our Labours.* To whom God reply'd, *Never grieve, my Son, there shall live in the World, which thou hast built, certain Christians of St.* John, *who shall be my Friends, and shall be all saved.* Upon which the Angel, admiring how that could be, said, *What, will there not be several Sinners among those Christians, and by Consequence will they not be your Enemies?* To whom God reply'd, *That at the Day of Judgment the Good shall pray for the Wicked, and by that means they shall be all forgiven, and obtain Salvation.*

Their Belief concerning another Life.

Their Judgment about the Saints.

Their chief Festivals.

Certain Ceremonies used by them.

Their Hatred to the *Turks*.

1651.

Their Assurance of Salvation how Grounded.

From *Balsara* you go by Sea to *Bander-Congo*. The River of *Balsara* is very dangerous, by reason of the Sands, which lie up and down the *Persian* Gulf, and are prejudicial to Sailing. On both Sides the Gulf dwell a sort of poor People, that follow no other Trade but Fishing, and when they bring any Fish to your Vessel, are content with such coarse Rice, as we feed Hens and Pigs withal, for it. There are many Isles in the *Persian* Gulph, but the chiefest of all is the Isle of *Baharen*, where they fish for Pearls. This Fishing is perform'd by Divers, who being carried down to the Bottom of the Sea, in Five Fathom Water, by the Weight of a Stone fix'd to their Toes, they pick up all the *Nacres* they see, as fast as they can, and put them into a Basket they carry down with them on purpose, and then rise up again to take Breath, and refresh themselves, by taking a Pipe of Tobacco. Those who are in the Boat pull up the Basket. The Divers work but from Eight to Eleven, and from One to Three. They fish for Pearls from the End of *June* to the End of *September*. The largest Pearls are to be given to the King of *Persia*, as his Tribute, and each Bark pays the Governour of *Baharen* Fifteen Abassi's yearly.

Bander-Congo.

Pearl-Fishing at *Baharen*.

From *Bander-Congo*, where there is a *Portuguese* Factory, which receives one Half of the Customs, by Agreement with the King of *Persia*; you pass to *Bander-Abassi*, which is on the opposite Shore to the Island of *Ormus*, at Two Leagues Distance. The safest Way to sail in these Seas, is, to take a Pilot at *Bander-Congo*, or *Ormus*, who, by continual Fishing and Sounding, are skilled in those dangerous Roads. In this Passage is an Island, called *Keckmishe*, which is near Three Leagues about, and Six from *Ormus*. It exceeds in Fertility all the Islands of the East, bearing plenty of Wheat and Barley, with which it furnishes *Ormus*, which could hardly subsist without it. In it is a Spring of good Water, which the *Persians* defend with a Fort. Nearer *Ormus* is another Island, called *Lareza*: It is larger than *Ormus*, and the Soil is sandy. It is well inhabited, and has great store of Stags and Hinds. In this Voyage, in the Months of *June* and *July*, there is such a Malignity in certain South-Winds, that then blow, that if a Man breath in them, he cries out, *He burns, and immediately falls down dead*: And this is the Reason, that in these Months few travel this Way.

Bander-Abassi.

Keckmishe, an Isle.

Lareza.

Dangerous South-Winds.

From *Bander-Abassi* the Passage to *Ormus* is short and easie. *Ormus* lies in the 27th D. of Northern Latitude, and from *Balsara* 180 Leagues. This Island is wholly barren, being all Sand and Rock, so that it bears not one Pile of Grass, nor has one Drop of fresh Water, but what falls from the Sky, and is preserved in Cisterns; yet, in the Time of the *Portuguese*, it had a very populous and rich Town, where all the Trade of the *Indies* was managed; but at present there are no Marks of it, and there is nothing inhabited but the Fort. They catch excellent Oisters about this Island; they are as small as *English* Oisters, but so hard, that 'tis not possible to open them with a Knife, nor is it very easie to break them with an Hammer. The Sand of *Ormus* is reputed very excellent for the Dusting of Writings, and for that End a great deal of it is transported into *Christendom*.

Ormus.

Oisters.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Mr. Tavernier's *Fifth Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan.

1657. MR. *Tavernier* departed from *Paris* in the Year 1657, and imbarking at *Marseilles*, sail'd to *Leghorn*, and from thence to *Smyrna*, where he was forced to stay some time for the Caravans, in order to his going into *Persia*. The slow Motions of the Caravans, in the mean time, wore out the Patience of the Travellers; and Two *French* Men, named *Noret* and *Hautin*, getting an Acquaintance with a *Spahi*, a Runagado of *Marseilles*, who promised to carry them through *Mesopotamia* to *Ispahan*, so that they should be there before the Caravan set out, they harkened to his Proposals, and set themselves upon the Road with him. Being arriv'd at *Ourfa*, the *Spahi* goes to the *Bassha*, and informs him, that he had conducted thither Two *Franks*, who could be no other but Spies, whereupon the *Bassha* seized upon them and their Goods, and, among the rest, he finger'd 700 Piasters, of which the *Spahi*, no doubt, had his Share. This may be an Instruction to Travellers to have a care how, and with what Company, they travel in *Turky*, and to shew them, that the speediest Way is not the safest.

The Danger of travelling with Strangers in *Turky*.

From *Smyrna* he travelled to *Taurin*, in the Road before describ'd, and from thence to *Tocat*, where, in regard the Heat was so extream, he left the common Road toward the North, and took the Way through the Mountains, where there is always a fresh Breeze, and various shady Lanes. In many of the Mountains he met with Snow, and an abundance of excellent Sorrel, but that which was most extraordinary, was that upon the Tops of some of those Mountains, there were several sorts of Shells, as if it had been on the Sea-Shore. 1657.

Snow in Summer.

Sea-shells on the Mountains.

From *Erzerom* he went to *Kars*, and from *Kars* to *Erivan*, where the Kan being retired into the Mountains, to avoid the Heat, he found him in a fair Vale, where Winter and Summer are lodg'd together, for there was at his Arrival a great Quantity of Snow, but when it began to melt, there appear'd very beautiful Flowers. Being past *Erivan*, you may safely leave the Caravan, because in *Persia* the Roads are very secure.

From *Erivan* we went to *Ispahan*, in which Road there is little worthy of Observation.

CHAP. VII.

Mr. Tavernier's *Sixth and Last Voyage from* Paris *to* Ispahan; *with a Descript. of certain other less remarkable Roads thither.*

1663. MR. *Tavernier* setting out from *Paris* in 1663, rode with Six Servants, of several Professions, to *Marseilles*. In his Way he bought a Steel Mirrour, round and hollow, about Two Foot and a half Diameter, which would immediately melt an Half-Crown, by the Heat of the Sun-Beams, and if you set a Candle by it in the Night, you might read 200 Paces from it by the Light of its Reflection.

An excellent Mirrour.

1664. From *Marseilles* he sailed, *Jan.* 10. 1664, to *Agaie*, a Port of *Italy*, Two Leagues from *Frejus*. Here is a Garden, the Alleys of which are curiously distinguish'd with Rows of Citron and Orange-Trees, which look as green in the Depth of Winter, as in the midst of Summer, and has many other Rarities.

A fine Garden.

From hence he went by *Villa Franca* to *Monaco*, one of the most considerable Forts in *Italy*, where by the Princess he was shew'd many Rarities of Painting, Clock-work, and Gold-Smiths Work, and, above all, Two Pieces of Chrystal, about the Bigness of Two Fists each, in one of which was above a Glass-full of Water, and in the other a good Quantity of Moss, which were inclos'd in them at their first Congelation.

Two rare Chrystals.

From *Monaco* he sailed to *Savona*, and from thence on Horse-back to *Genoa*, which is but Nine Miles, and a most pleasant Journey, having on the one side most magnificent Buildings and pleasant Gardens all the Way, and on the other a calm Shore.

From *Genoa* he went to *Leghorn*, and waiting on the Grand Duke, saw a Mute with him, who understood him as perfectly by Signs, as if he had his Speech and Hearing.

A strange Mute.

From *Leghorn*, *March* 26. 1664, he departed in a *Dutch* Vessel, called *The Justice*, and passing, *April* 5. by Cape *Passaro* in *Sicily*, saw Mount *Gibello* covered with Snow, as also he did, on the Ninth, the Mountains on the Coasts of *Greece*, as he passed by the Mouth of the *Venetian* Gulph.

On the 19th he sail'd by the Cape *Matapan*, and on the 24th a North-West Wind blew his Ship into the Port of *Smyrna*. At *Smyrna* he tarried Fourteen Days, and in that Time there happened such terrible Earthquakes, as had almost shak'd him out of his Bed.

Great Earthquakes.

From *Smyrna* he went, with a large Caravan of 600 Camels, and near as many Horses, to *Erivan*, and so to *Taurin* in the ordinary Road. At *Erivan* one of his Servants, a Watch-maker, died, and was buried in the Church-yard of the *Armenians*, who, not knowing he was a Protestant, allow'd it, which otherwise they would not have done. His Chamber was sealed up by the Civil Judge as soon as he heard of his Death, that his Goods might be preserv'd for his Kindred, if they came to demand them, which exact Justice is very observable. 1664.

From *Taurin* he went on a Visit over the *Aras*, and then through a Country all planted with white Mulberry-Trees, where the Inhabitants are all Silk-Weavers, to *Shamaqui*, which hath nothing remarkable, but the Kan's Castle, lately built; and that soon after, with the whole Town, was demolish'd by a terrible Earthquake: But the direct Road from *Taurin*, is to *Cashan*, and so to *Ispahan*, in which, tho' it be several Days Journey, yet there is nothing remarkable.

Shamaqui.

Besides the former Roads, which Mr. *Tavernier* travelled himself into *Persia*, he gives us an Account of Two other Roads to *Taurin*, which he pass'd in his Travels homeward; the one through the North part of *Turky*, by *Diarbequir* and *Van*; and the other through the South-parts, by *Anna*, and the small Desart leading to *Bagdat*. In describing the first, he begins at *Bir*, where it joyns with one of the former Roads, and says, from thence you go by the River *Euphrates* to *Cacheme*, and from thence to *Milesara*, where you pay the Customs of *Ourfa*, when you do not go through the City, *viz.* Four Piasters for every Horse-Load.

A Road through the North parts of *Turky*.

From this Place you go to the River *Arzlan-chaye*, or, *The Lyon-River*, from its fierce Stream. It runs into *Euphrates*, and by it you pass in a Road cut thro' a Rock through *Bogazi*, *Deguir-man Bogazi*, and *Mirzatapa*, to *Diarbequir*, which the *Turks* call *Car-ema*. This City stands on the Right-side of the River *Tigris*, and is encompassed with a double Wall, the outmost of which is strengthen'd with 62 Towers, which, the Inhabitants say, were built in Honour of the 62 Disciples of Jesus Christ. This City is very well peopled, and 'tis thought there are about 20000 Christians in it, of which Two Thirds are *Armenians*, and the rest *Nestorians*, with some few *Jacobites* and *Capuchins*, who having no House of their own, lodge

Diarbequir describ'd.

1664. lodge in an Inn. The City has Three Gates, 2 or 3 fair Piazza's, a magnificent Mosque, which was once a Christian Church, and very decent Charnel Houses, where the *Mollah*'s, *Dervices*, *Booksellers*, and all that are concern'd about the Law do live.

Red Marroquins. The making of red Marroquins employs a Fourth part of the Inhabitants. The Soil is very good, and yields according to Expectation. Here is excellent Bread, good Wine, and as good Provision to be had as in any Part of *Persia*. The *Bassha*, who is one of the *Viziers* of the Empire, has a strong Cavalry of 20000 Horse to defend the Country from the Incursions of the *Curds* and *Arabs*, who much infest it, and are all Horse-men.

At *Diarbequir* you must ford the *Tigris*, and so pass to *Shaye-batman*, where you pay a Piaster for every Horse-Load; and from thence to *Chikaran*, *Azou*, where the Toll-Gatherers take Four Piasters for every Horse-Load, *Ziarat*, where also a Duty of Two Piasters is paid for every Horse-Load, and *Zerche* to *Cechakan*, where the Way lies over the Mountains, which are full of Torrents, to *Betlis*, where you pay

Betlis described. Five Piasters for every Horse-Load. This City stands between Two high Mountains, equally distant the one from the other, and is built like a Sugar-Loaf, and the Ascent to it is so steep on every side, that there is no getting up to it, but by turning and winding about the Mountain. On the Top of all is a Castle well built, and a Draw-Bridge before the

The *Bey*. Gate. It is govern'd by a Prince called a *Bey*, who is not Tributary, as others are, either to the Grand Seignior, or *Persian*, but it is the Interest of those Two great Potentates to hold a fair Correspondence with him, because he can easily stop up the Passage from *Tauris* to *Aleppo*, the Streights of the Mountains being so narrow, that Ten Men may defend them against a Thousand, and is able to bring above 25000 Horse into the Field, and has besides a considerable Body of Foot, composed of the Shepherds of the Country, who are to be ready at his Call.

Taduan. From this City you go to *Taduan*, where is a good Port, shelter'd by Nature from all Winds, and able to contain 20 or 30 large Barks.

Van. From hence the Merchants usually convey their Goods by Water to *Van*, which is but 24 Hours Sail, when the Winds serve, whereas by Land 'tis Eight Days Journey through these Towns, *Karmousse*, *Kellat*, *Algiaoux*, where a Piaster is required for every Load; *Spanktrere*, *Souer*, *Argiche*, *Quiarakierpou*, *Perkeri*, *Zuarzazin*, *Sousarat* and *Devan*, where you must pay Two Piasters, unless you will pay it at *Van*, with a greater Duty of Two Tomans, and Four Abassi's, which is here also required for every Horse-Load.

Van described. *Van* is a great City that stands upon the side of a wide Lake of the same Name, to which belongs a strong Fortress, seated on the top of an high Mountain adjoining. There is but one sort of Fish in the Lake, a little bigger than a Pilchard, which being brought into it by a great River *Bendmahi*, which descends from the Mountains of *Armenia*, when the Snows melt, in vast Numbers; The People catch them at their Return in wide mouth'd Baskets, and transporting them pickled into *Persia* and *Armenia*, where at their Feasts they are used for a relishing Bit, raise thereby a great Revenue. The People of *Van*

The Fishery of *Van*. tell this strange Story of their Fishery, that it being common to all, the *Bassha* farm'd it for his own private Profit to a Merchant, and the River that Year brought Serpents for Fish, and so the Fishing has always continu'd common. In this Lake are Two principal Islands, on which are Three Convents of *Armenian* Monks, who live very austerely.

Darcheck. From *Van* you travel to *Darcheck*, and from thence

Nuchar. to *Nuchar*, which stands in the Territories of the *Bey* of *Curdistan*. These *Beys*, who are a kind of Lords upon the Frontiers of *Turky* and *Persia*, being secured by the Mountains, value neither of the Emperors. The *Curds* in general are a brutish sort of

The *Curds*. People, and though they call themselves *Mahometans*, they have very few *Mollah*'s to instruct and teach them. They have a particular Veneration for a black Grey-hound, so that if any one be seen to kill one of them, he will be immediately knock'd on the Head: Nor will they suffer any Person to cut an Onion, but he that useth it, must squeeze it between

Onions. Two Stones. At *Nuchar* there is a Toll to be paid of Sixteen Abassi's for every Horse-Load, besides a Present from the Captain of the *Caravan* of Seven or Eight Tomans to the *Bey*, otherwise he will be sure to way-lay it in some fit Place, and plunder it. 1664.

Cuticlar. From hence to *Cuticlar* is a long Journey through the Mountains, through bad Ways, and over divers Torrents; from whence through *Kalvat*, *Kogia* and *Darkavin*, the Road lies to *Soliman-Sera*, and so to *Kours*, where there resides a *Bey*, who is tributary to the King of *Persia*. To him the Caravan pays Nine Abassi's for every Horse-Load, besides a Present of Marmelade, Treacle or Sugar-Loaves, for he will not take Money. The Wine here is sweet and tart.

Devogli. The next Place in the Road is *Devogli*, between which and *Checheme* lies a Plain, and in it a Rock, in which are several Dens, once certainly the Habitations of such as fed Cattel in those Plains. Under the Rock, which is hollow, appears a Fountain of clear cold Water, wherein there are great store of Fish.

Davasshiler. From hence you travel to *Davasshiler*, and then to *Marand*, where you must pay Sixteen Abassi's for a Camel's Load, and Eight for an Horse's, and so thro' *Sefian* to *Tauris*, in which Places Bread is sometimes so scarce, that it can't be obtain'd for Money. There is another Road from *Aleppo* to *Tauris*, which leaves the common Road at *Biror-Beri*, and so leads you through *Ourfa* and *Diarbequir* to *Gezire*, a little City *Gezire*. in *Mesopotamia*, built upon an Island in the River *Tigris*, where that River is to be cross'd upon a Bridge of Boats. In this City the Merchants meet to buy Galls, Nuts and Tabaco, which grow all along this Country; the Oaks that bear Galls and Acrons on *Galls*. the Hills, and the Tabaco on the Plains, as far *Tabaco*. as *Tauris*.

Amadie. From hence you go to *Amadie*, which is a good Market for Tabaco and Gall-nuts, which the *Assyrians* bring from all Parts. It is seated upon an high Mountain, but has no Water in it, but what is fetch'd from 3 or 4 large Springs in the middle of it. It is of an indifferent Bigness, and has a Piazza in the middle of it full of Merchants Shops. It is under the Command of a *Bey*, who can raise 8 or 10000 Horse, and more Foot than any of his Neighbours, because his Country is more populous.

From this Place, through *Giousmark* and *Alback*, you pass to *Salmastre*, another pleasant City upon the *Salmastre*. Frontiers of the *Assyriani* and *Medes*, and the first in the Dominions of the *Persians*. The Kan is so glad when the Caravan comes that Way, that he presents the Captain with the Garment of Honour, or Calaat, Bonnet and Girdle, which is the greatest Favour that can be done to Strangers.

From hence you arrive at *Tauris* in Four Days, and so the whole Journey thither from *Aleppo* is 32 Days. The other Road through the South Parts of *Turky* lies through *Kengavar*, *Bagdat* and *Anna*, where *Kengavar*. you enter into the *Little Desart*, which is so called with relation to the great Desart of *Arabia Felix*, which is much larger. Mr. *Tavernier* travelled this Road from *Ispahan*, and so gives us the Way from thence to *Aleppo*, *viz.* First to *Consar*, then to *Comba*, *Oranguie*, *Nahouand* and *Kengavar* in Order, which will take up 14 or 15 Days with the Caravan, though not above 5 or 6 on Horse-back. The Country through which you travel all this Stage is very fertile in Corn and Rice, and produces excellent Fruits *Corn, Rice*. and good Wine, especially above *Kengavar*, which is a large Town, and well peopled.

From hence you pass on to *Sahana* and *Polisha*, between which Places you leave a very high Mountain, as steep and streight up as a Wall, and as high as you can see, you may observe the Figures of Men, *Images graven on a Mountain*. clad like Priests, with Surplices, and Censors in their Hands, graven on it; but none of the Natives can tell you what is the Meaning of these Draughts. At the Foot of it is a River, and a Stone-Bridge over it, called the *Royal Bridge*.

From hence you go to *Maidachc*, a little City, but a most pleasant Mansion for its Situation, the Streams that water it, good Fruits that grow there, and excellent Wine which it affords. The *Persians* believ'd, that *Alexander*, when he return'd from *Babylon*, died here, though others have written, that he died at *Babylon*. You pass after this *Erounabad*, *Conaguy*, *Casliciren-Tengui-Conaguy*, *Cafared*, *Charaban* and *Bourous*, to *Bagdat*, which is all the Way a Country full of Dates, where the People live in little Huts, made of the Branches of Palm-Trees.

From *Bagdat* to *Anna* you ride Four Days through *Bagdat*. a desart Country, though it lies between Two Rivers.

Anna

1664. *Anna* is a City of an indifferent Bigness, that belongs to an *Arabian* Emir. It is about half a Lg. round, and the Lands adjoining are well manured, being full of Gardens and Country-houses. The Situation of it is much like *Paris*, being built on both sides the River *Euphrates*, in the midst of which is an Island where stands a fair Mosque.

Anna describ'd.

From hence you go to *Mached-raba*, over the Desart, which you must travel with a Guide, who must take special Care so to order his Stages, as to come every Morning to the Wells by break of Day, for fear of meeting the *Arabs*, that come to fetch Water about Sun-rising, for they are apt to be injurious to Travellers. You come to *Mached-raba* in 5 Days, which is a kind of a Fortress upon the Point of an Hill, at whose Bottom rises a Fountain like a large Vase. It is encompassed with high Walls, defended by certain Towers, in which are little Huts, where the Inhabitants keep their Cattel, of which they have great store, but more Horses than Cows. 1664. Horses and Mares.

Mached-raba.

The next Town is *Taiba*, a fortified Place in a level Country, and looks like an high Bank of Earth, and Brick baked in the Sun. Near the Gate rises a Spring, which supplies a large Pond, and upon the Account of this Plenty of Water, it is, that this Road is so much frequented. *Aleppo* is but 3 Days Journey from this Place, but it is the most dangerous Part of all the Road for Robbers, because it is inhabited by *Bedouins*, or *Arabian* Shepherds, who make it their Business only to plunder and steal. This Journey may be ridden in 30 Days. *Taiba.* *Bedouins.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of several other Roads into Persia, *and the* Indies, *necessary to be known by Merchants and Traders.*

THERE are still remaining Two other Roads from *Constantinople* to *Ispahan*, which tho' not so commonly used, yet, perhaps, might prove more convenient for Travellers, with a little Hazard, than any of the others, and they are by the *Euxine*, or Black-Sea. The 1st is by Land, and that may be either on the sides of *Europe* or *Asia*; but because these are much the furthest, and none can be supposed to travel these Roads, but upon some other particular Considerations, especially upon the *European* Coast, it will be sufficient briefly to name the Places with their Distances, and so pass to the Way by Sea, which is much the shortest Cut into *Persia*, for the whole Voyage may be made in 3 Weeks, all by Sea, till within 60 Leagues.

The Roads by the Black-Sea.

Road by Land.

The principal Cities upon the Black-Sea, in the Road to *Persia*, on the *European* Coasts, and their Distances, are these: From *Constantinople* you go to *Varna*, which is 50 *German* Lgs. or 200 Miles; then to *Balshike*, 36 Miles; thence to *Bangali*, 70 Miles; from whence to *Constance*, 60 Miles; and thence to *Queli*, 25 Miles. Near this City the great Arm of the *Danow* throws it self into the Black-Sea; and here is the grand Fishery for Sturgeon.

Fishery for Sturgeon.

From *Queli* to *Aquerman* is 50 Miles. This City belongs to the *Kan* of the Lesser *Tartary*, and from it to *Kefet*, or *Kaffa*, is 350 Miles. Here are many *Christians*, both *Armenians* and *Greeks*, who all above 15 Years of Age pay a Tribute of a Piaster and half to the G. Seignior, as Lord of the City, though the *Kan* of the Lesser *Tartary*'s Jurisdiction reaches to the very Walls of *Kaffa*. *Kaffa.*

Azac.

From hence you go to *Azac*, which is 70 Miles. This is the last City in *Europe* belonging to the G. Seignior, and by it runs a great River of the same Name, the other side being in the Territories of the Great Duke of *Muscovy*. Down this River come the *Cossacks*, which do the *Turks* so much Mischief; for they come sometimes in 3 or 4 score Barks, which carry some 150, and others 100 Men, and ravage the Coasts about *Constantinople*, and all along *Asia*, as far as *Trebisond*. This Coast is 861 Miles in Length, and meets with the other Road by Land at *Teflis*, the capital City of *Georgia*; for the Road from *Constantinople* on the *Asiatick* Coast lies thus, *viz.* To *Neapoli* 250 Miles. Here lie the most of the G. Seignior's Vessels and Gallies. From hence you go to *Sinabe*, which is 250 Miles, then to *Ouma* 240 Miles, *Krason* 150, *Trebisond* 80, *Rice* 100, and *Guni* 100, from whence the Road lies to *Teflis*, and so to *Erivan*, which is 47 Miles from it, and is the ordinary Road to *Ispahan*. *Cossacks.* *Teflis.*

The Passage from *Constantinople* to *Ispahan* by the Black-Sea is so very dangerous, that 'tis altogether unknown almost, and scarce any dare undertake it, tho' known to be much the shortest Way. The Dangers consist in the Nature of the Sea it self, which is very tempestuous, and has very few, or no Ports to defend the Vessels, and from the Inhabitants of the Coasts, which are naturally barbarous and wicked, without any Religion, and under no Government: Upon which Accounts, it being neither safe by Sea nor Land to travel that Way, few, or none did ever attempt it. But many unfortunate Accidents meeting in the Person of Sir *John Chardin*, who was travelling into *Persia*, he was forced to take this Way, and from him we have a full Relation of the Ports and Roads, that are to be pass'd, with the Countries adjoining, from *Constantinople* to *Ispahan*, which must needs be acceptable to the Curious, because so few have written any thing of these Places. The Way by Sea, and the Dangers of it.

Sir John Chardin's *Travels into* Persia.

1671. SIR *John Chardin*, a *French* Man, left *Paris* Aug. 17. 1671, with an Intention to go to the *East Indies*, and travelling by way of *Milan*, *Venice* and *Florence*, arriv'd at *Legborn* in the End of *October*, and embarking in a Ship, under a *Holland* Convoy, arrived at *Smyrna* March 2. 1672, and 12 Days after at *Constantinople*. He tarried in this City 4 Months, and in the mean time there happening a Quarrel between the G. Visier and *French* Ambassador, which caused a Report, that the G. Visier intended to arrest the Ambassador, and all the *French* Nation, he was afraid, that his Goods, which were very rich, and a considerable Quantity, would be seiz'd, and so sought all Means to get out of *Constantinople*, and proceed on his Journey to *Persia*.

The Occasion of his Travels by the Black-Sea.

1672.

The Caravans in those hot Months did not travel, but the Port being about to send a new Commander, with some Soldiers and Money, as they do yearly, to the Fort of *Azac*, which stands upon the Lake *Maeotis*, he obtain'd Passage in a *Turkish Saick* belonging to that Fleet, and embark'd, *July* 27. at a Port in the *Thracian Bosphorus*. This Chanel, which is about 15 Miles in Length, and about 2 in Breadth, in most Parts, but in others less, so called, because an Ox may swim over it, is certainly one of the loveliest Parts of the World; for the Shores are rising, and covered over with Houses of Pleasure, Woods, Gardens, Parks, delightful Prospects and Wilderness, watered with Thousands of Springs and Fountains; the Passage through it in fair Weather is exceeding diverting, by reason of the great Number of Barks which are continually sailing to and fro, and the Prospect of *Constantinople* from the top of it, which is about 2 Miles distant, is the most Charming that ever Eyes beheld. There are 4 Castles 1672. The *Thracian Bosphorus.* Why so called, and the Pleasantness of it.

1672. Castles standing by it, all well fortified with great Guns, 2 of them 8 Miles from the Black-Sea, and 2 at the Mouth of the Channel, which is the most dangerous Place for Shipwrecks in all the *Euxine* Sea.

Caffa in the *Taurica Chersonesus* described. On the 3d of *Aug.* in the Morning, he arrived at *Caffa*, a Port in the *Tauric Chersonese*, or *Peninsula*, so called, because it was first inhabited by the *Scythians* of Mount *Taurus*. It is 250 Lgs. in Circuit, *i. e.* 35 from N. to S. and 55 from E. to W. which is the Breadth. The *Isthmus*, that joins it to the Continent, is not above a Lg. in breadth. It is inhabited by *Tartars*, which dwell in Cities and Towns, whereas their Neighbours the *Nogays* and *Hordes* dwell in Tents, as the rest do on the Continent. *Caffa* is a great Town built at the Bottom of a little Hill, upon the Sea-shore, and encompassed with strong Walls, that advance a little into the Sea. It hath 2 Castles, the One, which stands on a rising Ground on the South-side, is large, and commands all the Parts thereabouts, and is the Residence of a Basha; the other is not so big, but is well stored with Guns. They reckon about 4000 Houses in it, of which 3200 are *Mahometans*, *Turks* and *Tartars*, and the rest *Christians*, *Greeks* and *Armenians*: The Houses are small and built of Earth, as are also their Bazars, Mosques and Baths. The Soil about it is dry and sandy, bearing little Fruit, and the Water is bad, but the Air is very pure and wholesome. All Provisions are very cheap and good, Mutton being not above a Farthing a Pound, and other Things proportionable. The Road of *Caffa* is shelter'd from the Winds, except on the N. and S. E. sides, and the Ships lie close to the Shore safely in 10 or 12 Fathom Water.

Nogays and *Hordes*.

The People.

The Trade. There is a great Trade driven here in Salt-fish and Caveare, which being taken out of the Lake *Maotis*, which is 26 Miles distant from it, in great Quantities, are transported into *Europe*, and as far as the *Indies*. They also export Corn, Butter and Salt, with which they furnish *Constantinople*, and several other Places, for the *Caffa* Butter is the best in all *Turky*.

Donslow or *Salusi*. From *Caffa* he went in a Ship bound for *Colchis*, Aug. 30. and the next Day arrived at *Donslow*, or the Salt-pits, 50 Miles from *Caffa*, on the Shore. Here are great Marshes of Salt, which is made by letting in the Sea-water, and suffering it to congeal by the Sun. The People say, That 200 Vessels are laden here with Salt Yearly, paying only 3 *s.* a Day to those that load it. About a Mile from the Shore is an Habitation of the *Tartars*, where there is not above 10 or 12 Houses with a little Mosque, and round about it a great Number of Tents, with several Wagons close covered, which serve them instead of Houses. The Tents for themselves are very handsome, being made with Poles, and covered with large light Furs, well-stretched upon them; their inside is hanged with Tapestry, and the Floor is laid with the same. Every Family hath 2 other Tents belonging to them, covered with a great Sarplar of Wool, one for their Servants, and Kitchin, in which is a Pit 5 Foot deep, to make a Fire in to dress their Meat, and the other for their Horses and Cattle. They store up their Corn and Forage in Magazines under Ground, which they cover so exactly, that none can find them but themselves. They can remove their Tents with a small Trouble, and in a very little Time, and carry them away in Carts, drawn by Oxen and Horses, of which they breed a great Number. They profess the *Mahometan* Religion, but mix with it strange, superstitious and ridiculous Opinions of Fortune-telling and Divination. From *Donslow* he sailed all along in the Channel to *Cape Cuodos*, which *Ptolemy* calls *Circondama*, where the Coasts that bound the Lake *Maotis*, which are very high Lands, are seen at about 30 Miles distance.

Tartars Towns, and Way of Living.

Their Religion.

Cape *Cuodos*.

From the Channel of the Lake *Maotis*, to *Mingrelia*, is reckon'd 600 Miles along the Coasts, which consists of pleasant Woods, inhabited by a sort of *Tartars*, called *Circassians*, and by the *Turks*, *Cherks*, but so thinly, that the Country looks like a Desart. The Ancients called them *Zygeans*, or Mountaineers, and *Pomponius Mela*, *Sargacians*. They are neither Subjects nor Tributary to the Port, because their Country producing nothing valuable, the *Turks* think it not worth the Toil of conquering it. The Vessels that come from *Constantinople* to *Mingrelia* trade with this People, but with their Arms in their Hands, and by Hostages, for they are Infidelity and Perfidiousness it self, and will never fail to steal where they find an Opportunity. The Trade with them is managed by exchange, the *Cherks* bringing down Slaves of all Sexes and Ages, Honey, Wax, Leather, Jackals, Zandava,

The *Circassians*.

The Way of trading with them.

and other Beasts Skins, for such Commodities as they want. 1672.

Circassia described. *Circassia* is a pleasant Country, and the Soil is very fruitful, bringing forth great Plenty of all sorts of Fruit without Trouble, as Cherries, Apples, Pears, Wall-nuts; but their chiefest Wealth consists in Cattel, as well-shaped Horses, which are so swift and good, that they will tire the wild Beasts, and catch them in plain Course; Goats, Deer and Sheep, whose Wool is as fine as that of *Spain*, which the *Muscovites* fetch to make Felts. They sow no Grain but Millet for their own Bread, and Barley for their Horses; and their Women till and manure their Ground. Their Drink is Water and Boza, which is a Liquor made of Millet, as intoxicating as Wine: They live in Wooden Huts, and go almost naked. Every one is a sworn Enemy to those that live in the Provinces round about him. Their Beds are made of Sheep-Skins sowed together, and stuffed with Millet-Leaves, beaten in the Threshing as small as Oat-Chaff. They were formerly Christians, but now have no Religion; no not so much as the Light of Nature among them, save what they place in the Observing certain superstitious Ceremonies, borrow'd from the *Christians* and *Mahometans*.

Millet, Barley.

Their Religion.

The *Abca's* border upon the *Cherks*, possessing about an 100 Miles upon the Sea-Coasts, between *Mingrelia* and *Circassia*. They are not so savage as the *Cherks*, but are as much inclined to Thieving and Robbery; but the Merchants trade with them with the like Caution, and after the same Manner.

The *Abca's*.

Isgaour, a Port. *Sept.* 10. he arrived at *Isgaour*, a Port in *Mingrelia*, where all the Vessels that trade thither lie. It is a desart Place, without any Habitations, only the Traders that come thither build themselves Huts and Booths of Boughs for the Time of their abode, which is usually as long as they find themselves safe from the *Abca's*.

Colchis, or *Mingrelia* described. *Colchis* or *Mingrelia* is situated at the End of the Black-Sea: It is bounded on the E. by the little Kingdom of *Imeretta*, on the S. by the Black-Sea, on the W. by the *Abca's*, and on the N. by Mount *Caucasus*. The *Carax* and *Phasis*, 2 famous Rivers in the ancient Histories, now called *Coddours* and *Rione*, part it, the first from the *Abca's*, and the other from *Imeretta*. The Length of it is about 110 Miles, and the Breadth 60. It was once fortified against the *Abca's*, by a Wall of 60 Miles in length, which is long since demolished, and become a thick Forest.

Black Circassians.

The Inhabitants of *Caucasus*, that border upon *Colchis*, are the *Alanes*, *Suanes*, *Gigues*, *Caracioles*, or *Cara-Cherks*, i. e. Black *Circassians*, so called by the *Turks*, not from their Complexion, for they are the fairest People in the World, but from their Country, because it is always darken'd with Fogs and Clouds. They were also anciently Christians, but now profess no Religion, but live by Robbery and Rapine, having nothing that can entitle them to Humanity but Speech. They are very tall and portly, and their very Looks and Speech shew their Savage Dispositions, being the most resolute Assassins, and daring Robbers in the World.

The ancient *Colchis*.

The ancient Kingdom of *Colchis* was much larger than *Mingrelia* now is, extending it self to the Lake *Maotis*, on the one side, and *Iberia* on the other. The Country it self is uneven, full of Hills and Mountains, Valleys and Plains. It is almost covered with Woods, except the manured Lands, which are but few, and those preserved by grubbing up the Roots, that are continually spreading into them. The Air is temperate, as to Heat and Cold, but very unwholsome, by reason of the continual Wet, which being heat with the Sun, breeds Pestilences, and several other Distempers. It abounds with Waters, which descend from Mount *Caucasus*, and fall into the Black-Sea. The principal Rivers are the *Coddours*, of old called *Carax*; the *Soom* called by *Arrian Tersson*, and by *Ptolemy*, *Thassaris*; the *Langur*, of old *Astelphus*; the *Cobi* called by *Arrian*, *Cobo*; the *Cianisgari*, called anciently, *Cianeus*; the *Tacheur* called by *Arrian*, *Sigenus*, and the *Sthenisscari*, i. e. River-horse, called therefore by the *Greeks*, *Hippus*: and the *Abascia*, called by *Arrian*, *Cavius*, and *Ptolemy*, *Canitus*, which two last mix with the *Phasis* about 20 Miles from the Sea. The Soil is very bad, and produceth little Corn, or Pulse, and the Fruits are almost wild, without taste, and unwholsome, unless it be their Vines, which thrive well there, and produce most excellent Wine. The Earth is so moist in Seed-time, that when they sow their Wheat and Barley, they never plow it at all, but sprinkle it upon the

The Rivers no. Note.

The Soil.

1672. the Earth; for they say, that should they plough it, the Land would be so soft, that all their Corn would fall. They plough their Lands for their other Corn with Plough shares of Wood, which make as good Furrows as Iron, because their Land is very moist and tender. Their most common Grain is *Gomm*, which is as small as Coriander Seed, and resembles Millet. Of this they make a Paste, which they use for Bread, and prefer it before Wheat; which is not to be wonder'd at, for it is very acceptable to the Palate, and agreeable to the Health, being cooling and laxative. They have also great Plenty of Millet, some Rice, with Wheat and Barley, but very scarce. The People of Quality eat Wheaten Bread as a Rarity, but the meaner sort never taste of it. The ordinary Food of the Country is Beef and Pig, of which last they have great Plenty, and the best in the World. They have also Goats Flesh, but 'tis lean, and not well tasted. Their wild Fowl is very good, but scarce. Their Venison is the wild Boar, Hart, Stag, Fallow-Deer and Hare, all which are excellent Food. They have Partridges, Pheasants and Quails in abundance, with some River-Fowl and wild Pidgeons, which are good Meat, and as big as a cram'd Chicken. Their Nobility spend their whole Time in the Field, using Lanner-Hawks, Gos-Hawks, Hobbies, and others for their Sports, to catch Water-Fowl and Pheasants; but their most delightful Pastime is the Flight of the Falcon at the Heron, which they catch only for the Tuft upon his Crown, to put upon their Bonnets; for they let him go again, when they have cut it off, that it may grow up anew.

Mount *Caucasus* produceth great Numbers of wild Beasts, as Tigers, Leopards, Lions, Wolves and Jacals, which 2 last make great Havock among their Cattel and Horses, and often disturb their Houses with their dreadful Howlings. They have great Numbers of Horses, and those very good ones, which every Man almost keeps in great store, because their Keeping stands them in little or nothing, for they neither shooe them, nor feed them with Corn. They have no Cities nor Towns, except 2 by the Sea-side; but their Houses are scatter'd so thick up and down the Country, that you can hardly travel a Mile, but you meet with 3 or 4. There are 9 or 10 Castles in the Country, of which the chiefest is called *Rus*, and it is the Court of the Prince. Their Houses are all built with Timber, which is plentiful, and the poorer sort never raise above one Story, nor the Rich above 2. The lower Rooms are always furnish'd with Beds and Couches to lie down on and sit upon, because of the Moisture of the Earth, but are inconvenient, because they have no Windows nor Chimneys. They have but one Room for their whole Family, and so lie all together. The Men are well shap'd, and Women handsome, commanding Love by their charming Features and Graces. They all paint their Eye-brows, and if not handsome, all their Faces abominably. They dress themselves with all the Curiosity they can, their Habit being like the *Persians*, and their Head Attire like the *European* Women, even to the Curling of their Hair. They are witty and civil, but otherwise haughty, deceitful, cruel and impudent. The Men have also as many mischievous Qualities, and there is no Wickedness to which they are not addicted; but that which they most practise and delight in is Theft. This they make their Employment, Pastime and Glory. They justifie it lawful to have many Wives, because, they say, they bring us many Children, which we can sell for ready Money, or exchange for necessary Conveniences; yet, when they have not wherewithal to maintain them, they hold it a piece of Charity to murther Infants newly born, as also they do such as are sick, and past Recovery, because, they say, they free them from a deal of Misery.

The Gentleman's Power. The Gentlemen of this Country have full Power over the Lives and Estates of their Tenants, to sell and dispose of their Wives and Children as they think fit, and every Country-man is bound to furnish his Lord with as much Corn, Wine, Cattel, and other Provisions as he can. The Lords decide the Quarrels of their Vassals; but if they themselves are at Variance, they decide it by Arms, which makes them go all armed with a Lance, Bow and Sword. Their Habit is peculiar; they wear very little Beard, and cover their Heads with a thin Felt Cap in Summer, and a furr'd Bonnet in Winter: Over their Bodies they wear little Shirts, which fall to their Knees, and tuck into a strait Pair of Breeches; but they never have above one Shirt, and one Pair of Breeches, which last them a Year, and in all that Time never wash them above thrice, only once or twice a Week they shake it over a Fire for the Vermin to drop off, with which they are much haunted. The whole Family, without Distinction, eat all together, both Males and Females: The King with all his Train, to his very Grooms, and the Queen with her Maids and Servants. They dine in the open Courts in fair Weather, and if it be cold, they make a rousing Fire, for Wood costs them nothing. Upon Working-Days the Servants have nothing but Gomm, and the Master's Pulse, dried Fish or Flesh; but on Holidays, when they make Entertainment, they kill an Hog, Ox, or Cow, if they have no Venison. They are very great Drinkers, both Men and Women, and at their Feasts provoke their Friends, as much as they can, to Drinking. They drink their Wine pure, and beginning with Pints, proceed to much greater Quantities. Their Discourse at their merry Meetings, is with the Men about their Wars and Robberies, and among their Women obscene Tales of their Loves.

Mingrelia is but thinly peopled, by reason of their Wars, and the vast Numbers sold to the *Persians* and *Turks* by the Nobility. All Trade in it is driven by way of Barter, for they have no set Price of Money among them; the current Money are Piasters, *Dutch* Crowns, and Abassi's, which are made in *Georgia*, and stamp'd with the *Persian* Stamp. The Revenues of the Prince of *Mingrelia* amount at most to no more than 20000 Crowns, which arises from the Customs of Goods exported out of, and imported into his Country, the Slaves he sells, Impositions and Fines, and this he lays up all, for his Slaves serve him for nothing, and his Crown-Lands furnish his Court with more Provision than he can spend. He is not able to raise above 4000 Men fit to bear Arms, and those are all Cavalry for the most part, for he has not above 300 Foot to join with them. His Court, upon solemn Festivals, consists of 200 Gentlemen, but upon other Days of not above 120.

The Religion of the *Colchians* was formerly the same with the *Greeks*, being converted, as the Ecclesiastical Historians say, in *Constantine*'s Time, by a Slave: But the *Mingrelians* say St. *Andrew* preach'd among them, in the Place call'd *Nigivitas*, where now stands a Church, whither the *Catholicos*, or chief Bishop goes once in his Life-time to make the Oil, called *Myrone* by the *Greeks*; but now the *Mingrelians* are fallen into a profound Abyss of Ignorance and Darkness, and have not the least Idæa of Faith and Religion, but look upon Life Eternal, the Day of Judgment, and the Resurrection, as meer Fables, devised by Men: Nor do their Clergy perform any Ecclesiastical Duties, for there is hardly one of them that can either write or read. They have utterly lost the true Knowledge of their Service of God; but the Priests make a publick Profession of foretelling Things to come, and make the People believe, that their Books do show them the Success of future Events.

The *Catholicos* of *Mingrelia* is Head of all the Clergy of that Country, as also of *Abca*, *Guriel*, Mount *Caucasus* and *Imeretta*; but the Prince appoints or deposeth him as he pleaseth. His Revenue is very great, for he has 400 Vassals under him, who furnish his House with all Things necessary for Human Life, and many Superfluities. He sells their Children to the *Turks*; and when he visits the Dioceses under his Jurisdiction, 'tis not to reform the Clergy, nor instruct the People, but to spoil them of their Goods, and rake together great Sums. He will not consecrate a Bishop for less than 600 Crowns, nor say a Mass for the Dead under 800, nor any other Mass under 100. The Sanctity of this Prelate consists in a continual Abstinence from Flesh and Wine in *Lent*, and in long Prayers Day and Night; but he is so ignorant, that he can hardly read his Breviary and Missal. He has 6 Bishops under him, who take no Care of the Souls of their People, nor ever visit their Churches and Dioceses. They suffer the Priests to live in all manner of Errors, and the People to prostitute themselves to the grossest Vices; they understand not the Form of Baptism, let Polygamy be practised, and permit the Mothers to bury their new-born Children alive. All their Business is in Feasting and Banqueting, where they are drunk almost every Day. They are rich, and go very sumptuously apparell'd, oppressing their Vassals, and selling their Wives and Children to maintain their Luxury. They abstain from Flesh, as

1672. the *Greek* Biſhops do, and place the whole Chriſtian Religion in the Practice of Faſting, and think not themſelves obliged to do any other Duty. Their Cathedral is pretty neatly kept, and well adorned with Images, which they deck with Gold and Jewels, believing, that in ſo doing they ſatisfie God's Juſtice, and atone for their Sins. They are cloathed in Scarlet and Velvet, as the *Seculars* are, and differ from them only in this, that they wear their Beards long, and their Bonnets black, round and high.

Their Faſting.

Monks of S. *Baſil.* There are alſo in *Mingrelia* certain Monks, of the Order of St. *Baſil*, who wear the ſame Habit, and live after the ſame manner of the *Greek* Monks, wearing black Bonnets, eating no Fleſh, and ſuffering their Hair to grow; but they mind nothing of Religion, but to obſerve their Faſts exactly. They have alſo Nuns of the ſame Order, who obſerve their Faſting Days, and wear a black Veil, but they have no Nunneries, nor are under any Vows or Subordination, but quit their Habit and Temperance, when they pleaſe.

Nuns.

Their Prieſts The Prieſts of *Mingrelia* are very numerous, but a ſort of miſerable Creatures. They till their own Ground, and the Lands of their Lords, being no leſs Slaves than the *Seculars*; nor have they any Reſpect ſhewn them, but when they bleſs their Food at Meals, or ſay Maſs. Their Pariſh Churches have no Bells, but they call the People together by knocking with a great Stick upon a Board, and they are kept as naſty as Stables, the Images being foul and broken, and cover'd with Duſt. The Worſhip which they pay to their Images is Idolatrous, for they adore them not with a relative Adoration, but pay their Devotion to the Material Subſtance. They worſhip ſuch moſt as are fineſt adorn'd, or fam'd for their Cruelty, and if they ſwear by any of theſe, they will never break the Oath. St. *Gioba* is one of their moſt formidable Images, and him they will not approach nearer than they can juſt ſee him, but pray to him, and leave their Preſent at that Diſtance; for they report, that he kills all that approach him very near. The Chriſtian Saints they have no Value for, unleſs it be St. *George*, whom they account their chiefeſt Saint, as do alſo the *Georgians*, *Muſcovites* and *Greeks*. Their Maſs is after the *Greek* Manner, and the Prieſts celebrate it without any other Sacerdotal Habit, but their Surplices: Their Cup or Chalice is a Goblet of Wood, and the Cover is of the ſame Matter; and their Pattin is a Wooden Diſh. In *Lent* they never ſay Maſs, but on *Saturdays* and *Sundays*, for they hold, that the Communion ſpoils their Faſting. They conſecrate unleavened or leavened Bread, without any Difference, and never mix Water with the Wine, unleſs it be very ſtrong. They laugh at Tranſubſtantiation, and ſay, How can Chriſt get into a Loaf? For what Reaſon ſhould he leave Heaven to come down to the Earth? They anoint the Foreheads of their Children with the Oil called *Myrone*, as ſoon as they are born; but baptize them not till a long time after, and then they waſh them all over with Water; but none will baptize their Children, till he is able to make a Feaſt for the Prieſt, God-fathers and Gueſts, and that is the Reaſon many of their Children die unbaptized. They do not believe, that Ordination imprints a Character not to be defaced, and therefore they ordain anew ſuch Prieſts as have been degraded. Their Marriages are a Contract by way of Bargain and Sale, for the Parents of the Maid agree upon the Price with the Perſon that deſires her in Marriage; the Price of a divorced Woman is the leaſt, of a Widow ſomething more, but of a Maid moſt. When the Bargain is made, the young Man may company with the Damſel till the Money is paid, and 'tis no Scandal if ſhe be with Child. If any one has married a barren Woman, or of an ill Diſpoſition, they hold it not only lawful, but requiſite to divorce her, as a Match not made by God, who only does Good. There is none that underſtands the Bible, or reads it, but the Women will repeat ſeveral Stories of the Goſpel, which they have by Tradition, or have read. They obſerve the ſame Faſts almoſt as the *Greeks*, for they keep the 4 great *Lents*, viz. The firſt before *Eaſter*, which is 48 Days; that before *Chriſtmas*, which is 40 Days; St. *Peter*'s Faſt, which is near a Month; and the laſt, which the Eaſtern Chriſtians obſerve in Honour of the Virgin *Mary*, which continues 15 Days. They make the Sign of the Croſs when they drink Wine and eat Pork, but not as any Mark of Chriſtianity. Their Prayers are all addreſs'd to their Idols for temporal Benefits, *viz.* Their own Proſperity, or Ruine of their Enemies. They offer Sacrifices like the *Jews* and *Gentiles*. They never make Holiday upon *Sundays*, or abſtain from Works, but at the Feſtivals of *Chriſtmas* and *Eaſter*, which they celebrate only in eating and drinking to Exceſs in their Houſes. Their greateſt Feſtivals are when an Idol is carried through their Country, when they put on their beſt Cloaths, make a great Feaſt, and get ready a Preſent for the Idol. Their Mourning for the Dead is altogether barbarous, and like that of People in Deſpair, the Women rend their Cloaths, tear their Hair and Fleſh, beat their Breaſts, cry, yell, and gnaſh with their Teeth, like People mad or poſſeſſed; the Men alſo tear their Cloaths, thump their Breaſts, and ſhave their Heads and Beards, and this Mourning continues 40 Days, but in this Fury only the firſt 10. On the 40th Day the Corps is buried, and then they make a Feaſt for all the Friends, Relations, Neighbours, and all that come to bewail the Deceaſed; and the Biſhop that ſays Maſs, takes for his Right the deceaſed Perſon's Horſe, Cloaths, Weapons and Plate, if he have any, ſo that theſe Mournings undo many Families, and yet they are all obliged to theſe Solemnities.

Image-worſhip.

S. *Gioba.*

S. *George.*

Their Sacrament.

Tranſubſtantiation laugh'd at.

Ordination.

Marriage and Divorce

Four Lents.

Mourning for the Dead.

Their Neighbour Nations live and act after the ſame Faſhion almoſt in all Reſpects, only they that live nearer *Perſia* and *Turky* are more civil in their Manners, and more honeſt and juſt in their Inclinations, whereas thoſe that border upon the *Tartars* and *Scythians* are more barbarous, having no Idea, or outward Form of Religion, and obſerving no Laws. On the Confines of *Mingrelia*, lie the Principality of *Guriel*, and Kingdom of *Imeretta*.

The Country of *Guriel* is very ſmall, bordering upon *Imeretta* on the N. Mount *Caucaſus* on the E. *Mingrelia* on the W. and the Black-Sea on the S. It lies all along by the Sea-ſhore from the River *Phaſis* to the Caſtle *Gonie*, which is held by the *Turks*. The Inhabitants are of the ſame Nature and Manners as the *Mingrelians*, and have the ſame Inclinations to Lewdneſs, Robbery and Murther.

Guriel deſcribed.

The Kingdom of *Imeretta* it ſomething bigger than the Country of *Guriel*, and is the *Iberia* of the Ancients. It is encompaſſed with Mount *Caucaſus*, *Colchis*, the Black-Sea, the Principality of *Guriel*, and part of *Georgia*. It is 26 Miles in Length, and 60 Miles broad. The Country is full of Woods and Mountains, like *Mingrelia*, but the Valleys are more lovely, and Plains more delicious, producing Corn, Pulſe, Cattel, and Herbs of all ſorts. There are ſome Iron Mines. They have alſo ſome Money current among them, which is coined in their Kingdom, and ſeveral Towns; but their Manners and Cuſtoms differ little from the *Mingrelians*. The King has 3 good Caſtles, one called *Scander*, ſeated on the ſide of a Valley, and 2 in Mount *Caucaſus*, called *Regia* and *Scorgia*, being both almoſt inacceſſible, as being built in Places that Nature it ſelf has ingeniouſly fortified; the River *Phaſis* running between them. The Fortreſs of *Cotatis* was once in this Prince's Juriſdiction, but the *Turks* are now Maſters of it.

Imeretta deſcribed.

Imeretta, &c. tributary to the *Turks*.

The Kingdom of *Imeretta* govern'd the *Abca*'s, *Mingrelians*, and People of *Guriel*, after they had all freed themſelves from the Power of the Emperors, firſt of *Conſtantinople* and thereof *Trebiſond*: But in the laſt Age, ſetting up for themſelves, and revolting from one another, they maintained continual Wars among themſelves, till calling in the Aſſiſtance of the *Turks*, they were all made tributary to them. The King of *Imeretta* pays 80 Boys and Girls, from 10 to 20 Years of Age. The Prince of *Guriel* pays 46 Children of both Sexes; and the Prince of *Mingrelia* 60000 Ells of Linen-Cloth, made in that Country. The *Abca*'s ſeldom paid any thing at firſt, and now pay nothing. The King of *Imeretta* and Prince of *Guriel* ſend their Tribute to the Baſſa of *Akalzike*, but a *Chiaux* gathers it at *Mingrelia*.

Anarghia deſcribed.

Leaving *Iſgaour*, Octob. 4. he paſſed by the Mouth of the River *Aſtolphus*, called *Langur* by the *Mingrelians*, one of the biggeſt Rivers in *Mingrelia*, and on the 5th came to *Anarghia*, a Village 2 Miles from the Sea, conſiſting of 200 Houſes, but ſo far diſtant the one from the other, that 'tis 2 Miles from the firſt to the laſt. Hither the *Turks* come to buy Slaves, and have Barks ready to carry them away. It is thought, that the fair and large City, call'd *Heraclea*, ſtood in the ſame Place. At this Town there is Plenty of Proviſions, and that very cheap, *viz.* Wild Pigeons, Fowl, Porkers and Goats in abundance, and Wine is plentiful.

From

1672.

From *Anarghia* he sail'd up the River *Astolphus*, and went to a Place called *Sapias*, which is the Name of 2 little Churches, of which the one is a Parish-Church of *Mingrelia*, and the other belongs to the *Theatins*, a sort of Friars, who first came into *Mingrelia* in 1627, and were admitted there as Physicians, and have built themselves several Apartments and Lodgings about it, after the Manner of the Country. They have some Slaves, and 2 Families of Country People their Tenants. They have good Employment as Physicians, but none will embrace their Religion, their very Slaves refusing to communicate in their Services; so that they would have long since left the Country, had it not been for the Honour of the *Roman* Church and their own Order.

Sapias, where are *Theatine* Friars.

Mourning for the Dead.

After a Month's Stay with the Monks, it not being safe to travel, because of the Troubles in the Country, he return'd again to *Anarghia*, and having hired a *Turkish* Feluke, for *Gonie*, Novemb. 10. stay'd till the 27th to take in Loading and Passengers. While he staid here he was invited to 2 Christ'nings, and Curiosity obliged him to be present at them. The Manner was this: The Priest being sent for about 10 a Clock in the Morning, sat himself down in the Buttery, and fell to reading a Book half torn, about the Bigness of a New Testament, in *Octavo*. He read very fast, and with a low Voice, in such a careless Manner, as if he regarded not what he did, no more than the rest did what he said, for the Father, God-father and Child, which was about 5 Years old, went to and again all the time. When the Priest had read an Hour, there was a Bucket of warm Water got ready, into which when the Priest had poured about a Spoonful of Oil of Wall-nuts, he bid the God-father undress the Child; which done, he set him upon his Feet in the Water, and washed his Body all over well, and then the Priest gave him a small Quantity of *Myrone*, or Oil of Unction, with which he anointed the Top of his Head, Ears, Forehead, Nose, Cheeks, Chin, Shoulders, Elbows, Back, Belly, Knees and Feet, the Priest still reading, till the God-father dress'd the Child, and then the Father bringing in Wine, Bread and Pork, they all sat down to eat and drink, and were all drunk before they parted. Their Mass they perform with the same Irreverence and Carelessness.

Two Christenings, how celebrated.

Departing from *Anarghia* in fair and clear Weather, he discover'd the high Lands of *Trebisond* on the one side, and of the *Abca*'s on the other, and came to the River *Kelmhel*, which though not so broad nor rapid as *Langur*, yet 'tis deeper.

On the 30th he came to the River *Phasis*, which, taking its Rise in Mount *Caucasus*, runs at first in a narrow Channel, though swiftly, about *Cotatis*, and sometimes so low, that 'tis easily fordable; but where it discharges it self into the Sea, which is about 90 Miles from *Cotatis*, the Channel is a Mile and half broad, and 60 Fathom deep, being augmented in that Course by divers Streams. The Water is muddy and thick, but very good to drink. There are several Islands at the Mouth of it, which, being covered with thick Woods, make a delightful Prospect. *Arrian* says, That upon one of these Islands stood the Temple of *Rhea*, but there are no Remainders of it now, though there are some Historians who say, it was standing in the Time of the *Grecian* Empire, and was, in *Zeno*'s Reign, dedicated to the Worship of Christ. On this River, and the Black-Sea about it, are Plenty of Pheasants, or *Phasiani*, so called from the River *Phasis*. All the Coasts of this River are a low sandy Soil, cover'd with Woods so thick, that one can hardly see 6 Paces up the Land.

The River *Phasis*.

Pheasants, so called from this River.

On the 30th he arriv'd at *Gonie*, which is about 30 Miles from *Phasis*, the Sea-Coasts being exceeding high Land and Rocks, some being Woody, and others naked. *Gonie* is a large Castle, in the Territories of the Prince of *Guriel*, built 4 square, of hard and rough Stones of a very large Size. It hath no Trenches, but Walls only, and 2 great Guns. In it are about 30 small poor Houses, made of Boards, and without is a small Village of about as many more, all inhabited by Mariners, and other booriish People. There is a Custom-house here, which is very rude, and imperious, and severe to the People of the Country, but extravagant to the *Europeans*, not regarding any Man's Person, nor any Recommendations from the Port, but searching all Things strictly, and exacting what they please.

Gonie described.

From *Gonie* he went to the Castle of *Akalzike*. The Way lies over Mount *Caucasus*, which is one of the highest Mountains, and one of the most difficult to pass over in the World. The Top is always cover'd with Snow, over which the Natives pass in a kind of Sandals, made flat like a Racket, to keep them from sinking. It is usual for the Guides here to make long Prayers to their Images to keep the Winds from rising, for if the Wind be high, it buries all the Travellers in Snow. This Mountain, though not inhabited for some Lgs. together in many Places, yet is fruitful to the very Top, yielding Honey, Wheat, Gom, Wine, Fruits, Hogs, and large Cattel. The Vines are so luxuriant, that they run up to the very Tops of their highest Trees, so that the People cannot gather them. The Country People dwell in Wooden Huts, of which every Family has 4 or 5. The Women grind their Corn as they want it, and bake their Bread on Stones, or upon the Hearth, and yet the Crust is very white, and the Bread good. These Inhabitants are for the most part Christians, after the *Georgian* Ceremonies; they are fresh complexion'd, and their Women are handsome. At the Bottom of the Hill is a very fair Valley, rich and fertile, being water'd by the River *Kur*, which has many Villages, and in them the Ruines of several Castles and Churches, which, the People say, were destroy'd by the *Turks*.

Mount *Caucasus*.

Vines.

Akalzike is a Fortress built upon Mount *Caucasus*, fortified with double Walls, and flanqued with Towers built with Battlements, after the ancient Manner, and defended with a few great Guns. Upon little Hillocks about it stands a large Town of 400 Houses, which have nothing of Antiquity, but 2 *Armenian* Churches. It is peopled with *Turks*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Greeks* and *Jews*, who have their Churches and Synagogues. The River *Kur*, anciently called *Cyrus* and *Corus*, which rises in the Mount *Caucasus*, runs by it. A Bassha lodges in the Fortress, and his Soldiers are quarter'd in the adjacent Villages. It was built by the *Georgians*, from whom the *Turks* took it.

The Castle of *Akalzike* described.

Kur, or *Cyrus*, a River.

From *Akalzike* he went to *Gory*, and passed by *Usker*, where the *Turks* have a Castle, built on a Rock, with a Garrison and Custom-house, under the Command of a *Sanziac*, and 2 Lgs. farther, you cross over the Mountains which part *Persia* and *Turky*, from whence you see several Villages, in which are the Ruines of many Castles, Fortresses and Churches, the Footsteps of the Grandure of the *Georgians*, before the *Turkish* and *Persian* Wars with them. At the Foot of the Mountain lies a Town and Fortress, both called *Surham*. It stands on a very lovely Plain, full of Censes, Villages, Hillocks, Houses of Pleasure and little Castles belonging to the *Georgian* Lords, and has a Fortress containing a Garrison of 100 Men. All the Country is very well tilled, and mighty pleasant and delightful, as far as *Gory*, saving that on the Right Hand lies a great City almost in Ruines, as not containing above 500 Houses inhabited, whereas formerly, by Report, it had 12000.

Gory.

Surham.

Gory is a small City, seated on a Plain, between 2 Mountains, upon the Bank of the River *Kur*, and by it is a Castle on an Hill, garrison'd by native *Persians*. The Houses and Market-places are all built with Earth, but the people are all very rich and wealthy, and it is stored with all Necessaries for Human Life at a cheap Rate.

Gory described.

From *Gory* he departed *Decemb.* 16. and travelling upon the Banks of the River *Kur*, through pleasant Plains, with great Numbers of Villages on all Hands, he passed through *Calicala*, a City almost totally ruined, and came on the 17th to *Teflis*, the Capital City of that part of *Georgia*, lying in the Province of *Cartpueli*.

The Country of *Georgia*, which is under the Jurisdiction of the *Persians*, borders at this Day to the E. upon *Circassia* and *Muscovy*, to the W. upon *Armenia* the Lesser, and to the N. upon the Black-Sea, and the Kingdom of *Imeretta*. It is extended from *Taurus* and *Erzerom* to *Tanais*, and was anciently called *Albania*. It is a Country very Woody and Mountainous, unless in the Middle, where 'tis more even and level. The River *Kur* runs through the Midst of it, and empties it self into the *Caspian* Sea. The *Grecians* are thought by some to have called it *Georgia*, from *Georgos*, Husbandmen; but others will have the Name deriv'd from St. *George* the Patron Saint of all the Christians of the *Greek* Church. The Temper of the Air is very kindly in *Georgia*, being very dry, cold in the Winter, and hot in the Summer. The fair Weather does not begin till *May*, but then it lasts till the End of *Novemb.* The Soil being well watered, produces all sorts of Grain, Herbs and Fruits in abundance, so that a Man may

Georgia described.

The Name.

Air.

Soil.

1672. may live there deliciously and cheap. Cattel are there very plentiful and good, as well the larger as lesser sort; their Fowl is incomparable, especially their wild Fowl; their Boars Flesh is as plentiful and good as any in *Celchis*; and, indeed, the common People live upon nothing else almost but young Pigs, which are excellent Meat, and never offend the Stomach. The *Caspian* Sea, which is next to *Georgia*, and the *Kur*, that runs quite through it, supplies it with all sorts of salt and fresh Fish. There is no Country that drinks more and better Wine, and they transport great Quantities of it into *Media*, *Armenia* and *Ispahan*, for the King's Table. They have great Quantities of Silk, but know not how to wear it, and therefore they carry it into *Turky* to *Erzerom*, and the Parts adjoining, and drive a great Trade with it. The Complexion of the *Georgians* is most beautiful, you can hardly see an ill favour'd Person among them; and the Women are so enamouring, that 'tis hardly possible to look upon them, and not be in Love with them. They are tall, clear limb'd, plump and full, but not over fat, and extreamly slender in the Waste: But this Beauty they spoil with painting and dressing with sumptuous Habits and Jewels. The *Georgians* are naturally very witty, and would be as learned Men and great Artists as any are in the World, if they had the Improvement of Arts and Sciences; but having a mean Education and bad Examples, they are drowned in Vice, are Cheats and Knaves, perfidious, treacherous, ungrateful and proud. They are irreconcilable in their Enmities, for though they are not easily provoked, yet they preserve their Hatred inviolable. Drunkenness and Luxury are such common Vices among them, that they are not scandalous in *Georgia*. The Church-Men will be as drunk as others, and they keep Female Slaves in their Houses, which they use for their Concubines, at which no body is offended, because 'tis so commonly practised, that Custom makes it thought lawful, yea, and they say, he that is not drunk at their great Festivals of *Easter* and *Christmas* cannot be a good Christian, and deserves to be excommunicated. The *Georgians* are very great Usurers, and will lend no Money without a Pawn. The lowest Interest they take is 2 *per Cent* for a Month. The Women are as vicious and wicked as the Men, and contribute more than they to that general Debauchery, which overflows the Country. In their common Conversation they are civil and courteous, grave and moderate. Their Habit is much like the *Polonian*, and their Bonnets like theirs, their Vests are open before down the Breast, and fastened with Buttons and Loops; their Hose and Shooes are like the *Persians*, and their Womens Cloathing is wholly like the *Persians*. The Houses of their Grandees, and all their publick Edifices, are built according to the *Persian* Model, and they imitate the *Persians* in their Sitting at Table, in their Beds, and Manner of Diet. The Nobility exercise an absolute Tyranny over the People, their Vassals, making them labour as long as they please for them, without Food or Wages, challenging a Right over their Estates, Liberty and Lives, and selling their Children, or making them their own Slaves. They were converted to Christianity by an *Iberian* Woman, in the 4th Age, but have nothing left of Christianity, but the Name; for they do not observe the least Precept of *Jesus-Christ*; they place all their Religion in Fasting, and making long Prayers. There are several Bishops in *Georgia*, with a Patriarch, whom they call *Catholicos*, and an Arch-bishop, whose Sees, as often as they are vacant, are disposed of by the Prince, though he be a *Mahometan*, and he generally gives them to his Relations, and the present Patriarch is his Brother. The Churches in *Georgia*, especially in their Cities, are kept something more cleanly than in *Mingrelia*, but in the Villages they are full as nasty. The *Georgians*, and their Neighbours build their Churches upon high Mountains, in remote and inaccessible Places, and bow to them at great distances, but scarce go into them once in 10 Years, leaving them to the Injuries of the Weather, and for the Birds to build their Nests in. They can give no other Reason for all this, but that *it is a Custom*; though, we may suppose, 'tis rather to avoid repairing and adorning them. *Georgia* was made tributary to the *Persians* by *Ishmael* the Great, and though it has several times revolted, yet still continues in Subjection to them.

Cattel. Fowl. Fish. Wine. Silk. The People. Their Wit. Their Drunkenness. Whoring. The Conversation and Habit. The Power of the Nobility. Their Religion. Their Churches.

The City of *Tefflis*, the Capital City of *East Georgia*, is one of the fairest Cities in all the King of *Persia*'s Dominions, though not so big as some. It is seated on the Bottom of a Mountain, and on the Eastern side of it runs the River *Kur*, which rising in the Mountains of *Georgia*, joins it self to *Araxes*. The most part of the Houses built by the Rivers side, stand upon a Rock, and the whole City is encompassed with strong and beautiful Walls, except on the Side next the River, and is defended by a Fortress on the South side, wherein are none but Native *Persians*. This Fortress is a Sanctuary for all manner of Criminals. *Tefflis* has in it 14 Churches, which is very much in a Country where there is so little Devotion. Six of them are appropriated to the *Georgian* Service, and maintain'd by them, and the other 8 belong to the *Armenians*. The Cathedral, called *Sion*, is built all of hewn Stone, and stands on the Bank of the River. It is an ancient Building in good repair, composed of 4 Bodies, and has a great *Duomo* in the middle. The great Altar stands in the middle of the Church, and the inside is full of Paintings, after the *Greek* Manner. The *Armenians* have also several Monasteries here, and in one of them they say, they have S. *George*'s Skull. There is not any Mosque in *Tefflis*, though it be under a *Mahometan* Prince, and though the *Persians* have attempted to build one several times, they could never accomplish their Design; for the People mutiny'd, and beat down their Work; which Action, though very affronting to the *Persian* Religion, yet the Emperor of *Persia* is afraid to come to any Extremities with them, lest they should revolt to their Neighbours the *Turks*, and so *Tefflis* and all *Georgia* enjoy their Liberty to retain almost all the exterior Marks of their Religion; for on the Top of all the Steeples of their Churches stands a Cross, and in them they have Bells, which they often ring. Every Day they sell Pork openly as well as other Victuals, and Wine at the Corners of the Streets, which angers the *Persians* to see, but they cannot help it. Some few Years since they built a Mosque in the Fortress, and the *Georgians* could not prevent it: But when the Priest, after their Custom, came up to the Top, to make Profession of his Faith, and call the *Mahometans* to Prayers, the People so ply'd him with Vollies of Stones, that he was forced to flie down in all Haste, and never dare appear there any more. The publick Buildings, *viz.* Their Market-places, Inns and Magazines are well built of Stone, and kept in good Repair. The Prince's Palace is a noble and beautiful Building, being adorned with Halls and Rooms of State, Gardens, Aviaries and spacious Courts, to which the Vice-Roy of *Caket*'s Palace is not much inferior. The Out-parts of the City are adorn'd with several Houses of Pleasure, and many beautiful Gardens, of which the Prince's is the biggest; but the Trees are such only as serve for Shadow and Coolness.

Tefflis described. The Churches. Monasteries. Pork and Wine sold. The publick Buildings.

The *Capuchins*, who were sent into *Georgia* about the Year 1657. by the Pope, have an Habitation in this City, as also at *Gory*, where they are highly esteem'd as Physicians, which is the Title they give themselves, but they make very little Progress in the Conversion of the *Georgians*; for, beside that that People is very ignorant, and take little Care to instruct themselves, it is so rivetted into their Heads, that Fasting, as they observe it, is the Essential Part of the Christian Religion, that they do not believe the *Capuchins* to be Christians, though they fast as they do, because they are informed, they do it not in *Europe*.

The *Capuchins*.

The City of *Tefflis* is very well peopled, and there are as many Strangers resort thither as to any Place in the World, for there is a great Trade driven there, and the Court is very numerous and magnificent, beseeming the Capital City of a Province. The *Georgians* do not call it *Tefflis*, but *Cala*, i. e. *The Fortress*, which is a Name they give to all Habitations encompassed with Walls, and some Geographers call it, *Tebele-Cala*, or, *The hot City*, either by reason of the hot Baths, or because the Air there is not so cold and boisterous as in other Parts of *Georgia*.

The Trade.

On the 28th he departed from *Tefflis*, and passing through *Sogan-lou*, or the Place of Onions, standing upon the River *Kur*, *Cupri-Kent*, or the Village of the Bridge, because there is a very fair Bridge over the River *Tabadi*, in the Arches of which are made little Chambers and Portico's, with every one a Chimney, on purpose to lodge Strangers, and in the middle ones Belconies, to take the cool Air in the Summer with great Delight; *Melick-Kent*, or, the Royal Village, came to *Dely-Jan*, a Village of 300 Houses, seated upon the River *Acalstapha*, which runs at the Foot of an high and dreadful Mountain, part of Mount *Taurus*.

Dely-Jan.

Here.

1673. Here is Plenty of Water, and the Ground is very fertile, and a great many Villages to be seen on every side, some of which stood so high upon the Points of the Rocks, that they were almost indiscernible. They are inhabited by *Georgian* and *Armenian* Christians, but not intermix'd, because they have such an inveterate Enmity one against another that they cannot live together in the same Villages. The most part of the Houses of these Villages are no better than Caverns, or hollow Places made in the Earth; the rest are built with Timber, and covered with Turf. These sort of Buildings are very convenient, being cool in Summer, and warm in Winter. The Borough of *Dely-Jan*, and all the Country round about for 6 Lgs. is govern'd by its own natural Princes, from Father to Son, and holds of *Persia*, as *Georgia* does. It is called the Country of *Cesac*, the People being stout and fierce, descended from the *Cosaques*, who inhabit the Mountains on the N. E. of the *Caspian* Sea, and is at present under a Prince call'd *Kamshi-Can*: He lodg'd at *Kara-Phisbisha*, a large Borough, seated at the Bottom of the Mountains, which separates *Georgia* from *Armenia*. It stands on the Banks of the River *Zengui*, and passing *Bichni*, where there is an *Armenian* Monastery, arrived at *Erivan*, Jan. 7.

The Houses in the Earth.

Erivan is a great City, but ill favour'd and dirty. The Vineyards and Gardens make the greatest part of it, there being no Ornamental Buildings in it. It is situated on a Plain, encompassed with Mountains on every side, between 2 Rivers, the *Zengui*, and *Queurk-boulack*. The Fortress it self may pass for a small City, containing 800 Houses, inhabited by *Persians* only; for though the *Armenians* have Shops there to work and trade in, in the Day-time, yet they return to their Houses in the Evening. It is surrounded with 3 Walls of Earth, and Brick made of Clay, with Battlements, and flank'd with Towers, and strengthen'd with Ramparts, according to the Custom of the Ancients, and in it is constantly maintained a Garrison of 2000 Men. The Governour of the Province's Palace is within this Castle, and is a very spacious and delightful Place in Summer. The City stands about a Cannon-shot from the Fortress, but the Space between is filled up with Houses and Market-places, which are such pitiful Structures, that they may be remov'd in one Day. There are several Churches in this City, of which the Episcopal See, called *Iram-ye-rizt*, and *Catwiks* are the chief, the rest are small, sunk deep in the Earth. Near the Episcopal See is an old Tower, built of Free-Stone, of Antique Work, with several Inscriptions, but none can read them; nor is it known when, by whom, or for what Use it was built. At a little Distance from it is the *Grand Meydan*, or, Great Market-place, 400 Paces square, where they use all Exercises, both for Horse and Foot, as Carousels, Racings, Wrestling, and Managing of Horses for War. There are many Baths and fair Inns in it. The Air is good, but a little thick and cold, for their Winter lasts long, and they have Snow sometimes in *April*. The Country is very delightful and fruitful, and produces Fruits in great Plenty, especially Wine, which is there good and cheap.

Erivan described.

The Fortress.

The Churches.

Baths. Air.

The *Armenians* have a Tradition, that *Noah* planted his Vine-yard near *Erivan*, and some pretend to shew the Place, about a small Lg. from the City. The River and Lake, which is 25 Lgs. in Compass, furnish the City with excellent Fish of 9 Sorts, of which the Trouts and Carps are famous all over the East. In the midst of the Lake is a small Island, where stands a Monastery, whose Prior is an Archbishop, and takes upon him the Title of Patriarch, refusing to acknowledge the Grand Patriarch. The *Armenians* hold this City to be the most ancient inhabited Place in the World; for they affirm, that *Noah* and all his Family dwelt there, both before the Deluge, and after he came out of the Ark, and that the Earthly Paradise was there: But all this is a Story without Foundation, reported by Persons equally ignorant and vain-glorious.

Noah's Vine-yard.

Paradise.

Two Lgs. from *Erivan* stands the famous Monastery of the *Three Churches*, the Sanctuary of the *Armenian* Christians. The *Armenians* call it *Ecs-miazin*, which Name also the principal Church bears. 'Tis a substantial, but dark Structure, all built of large Free-Stone. The Monks shew several Reliques preserv'd in it, as, a Finger of St. *Peter*, and a of St. *John Baptist*'s, a Rib of St. *James*, Bishop of *Jerusalem*, and an Arm of St. *Gregory*, &c. but they must be very credulous and superstitious that can believe them such. The 2 other Churches that stand near this, are St. *Cai-*

Ecs-miazin, or the *Three Churches*.

ane and St. *Repsima*, the Names of 2 *Roman* Virgins, who fled into *Armenia*, as they say, in the 9th Persecution, and suffered Martyrdom in the same Places where those Churches stand. 1673.

Within the Territory of *Erivan*, which reaches about 20 Lgs. round it, there are 23 Convents for Men, and 5 for Women, which are so poor, that being continually employ'd in getting a Livelihood, they never perform holy Duties, but upon Holidays. They hold the Opinions of the *Monophysites*, but in other Points are very ignorant. Two Lgs. from *Erivan*, Eastward, is to be seen the famous Mountain where *Noah*'s Ark is said to have rested. The *Armenians* hold, that the Ark is still upon the Top of the Mount, called *Mim*, but that no Man can ascend to it. The Governour of *Erivan* is a *Begler-beg*, i. e. a Lord of Lords, and has also the Title of *Serdar*, or General of the Army. His Revenue is 32000 Tomans, which is above 112000*l.* Sterling a Year, besides Fines, Presents, and indirect Ways of enriching himself, which amount to 50000 Pounds more.

Convents of Friars and Nuns.

The Governour of it.

While he staid at *Erivan*, he saw a Wedding of the Governour's Steward's Brother. Matrimony in *Persia* is very expensive, so that only Men of Estates will venture upon it, lest it prove their Ruine. The meaner sort content themselves with a Concubine or Slave. The *Mahometans* that follow the Tenets of *Haly*, take their Wives after 3 Manners, *viz.* By way of Purchase, Hire, or Marriage. All these Ways their Religion allows, and their Civil Law acknowledges the Children born in any of them Legitimate. The Wives, who are Slaves, are called *Canize*: Of these the Law allows a Man as many as he can maintain, and takes no Cognizance how they are used. He is Master of their Chastity, yea, of their Lives, and 'tis their Honour to serve their Master as their Wives. The hir'd Wives are call'd *Mouta*: Of these also a Man may take as many as he pleaseth, and as long as he pleaseth for the Price agreed on, and at the End of the Term they may part with them, or renew the Bargain. A handsome young Maid at *Ispahan* may be hired for 35*l.* a Year, besides Cloaths, Diet and Lodging. If any break off before the End of the Term, he must pay the whole Sum contracted for, and the Woman, after Dismission, must tarry 40 Days before she lets her self to another. These Days they call, *The Days of Purification*. The espoused Wives are called *Nekaa*, and of these the *Mahometan* Religion allows a Man to marry 4; but they never marry above one, to avoid Expence and Disorder, for every one will command, and their mutual Jealousie causes a perpetual Confusion; wherefore, if they cannot content themselves with one Woman, they use their Slaves. In *Persia* they usually marry by Proxy, because the Man never sees his Wife, till after he has consummated the Marriage, which sometimes he does not till several Days after his Wife has been at Home. One would think, that this Way of Marrying should produce very unfortunate Matches, but it doth not, for Marriages are not more happy in any Country than this. If either of the Parties dislike one another, and resolve to unmarry themselves, the *Mahometan* Religion permits a Divorce, and they may separate either before a Judge, or a Church-man, giving each other a *Talaac*, or, *Bill of Divorce*, and then the Parties are at Liberty to marry again where they please themselves. Upon this Dissolution of their Marriage, if the Man has sued the Divorce, he is obliged to return the Woman her Dowry; but if the Woman sought it, she loseth her Portion; but if the Persons repent the Act, they may renew the Marriage again 3 times: Yet, the *Persians* rarely make use of this Licence to part with their Wives, only some Citizens and Tradesmen make their Advantage of it. Persons of Quality count it so dishonourable, that they'll rather die, than divorce their Wives, and the meanest sort cannot part with the Portion, and so if they desire a Divorce, which is rare, they effect it by ill-using their Wives, to force them to sue a Divorce, and sacrifice all to their Liberty.

Marriage in *Persia*, and Three sorts of Wives.

Hired Wives.

Marriage by Proxy.

Divorce.

The *Armenian* Patriarch lives in this City, and has an Episcopal Palace. He, with all the rest of his Clergy, is much addicted to Simony, as are also all the Eastern Sects. Their chief Gain lies in selling the Oil called *Myrone*, at a dear Rate, which, they teach the People to believe, is a Remedy, that Physically cures all the Distempers of the Soul, and confers the Grace of Regeneration and Remission of Sins, saying, That in Baptism 'tis the Oil, not the Water, which is the Matter prescribed. The Patriarch consecrates this Oil,

The *Armenian* Patriarch.

1673. Oil, and sells it to the Bishops and Priests, who get great Sums by it.

April the 8th he parted from *Erivan*, and travelling through a Country something Hilly, but full of Villages, came first to *Daivin*, and then to *Kainer*, leaving the Mountain of *Noah* on the Right Hand.

On the 10th he went on the same Road, which led him through a fertile and fair Country, and leaving *Sederet*, a great Town, and the Capital of the Province of *Armenia*, called *Charour*, where the Sultan resides, came through *Nouratchin*, and over the River *Harpasony*, to *Nacchivan*, which is thought to be the ancient *Artaxate*. It is now little else but a Heap of Ruines, not containing above 2000 Houses which are inhabited, and those in the Heart of the City, with Inns, Baths, and other publick Houses, where they sell Tobacco and Coffee, whereas formerly, the *Persian* History assures us, that it contain'd 40000. Five Lgs. to the N. lies a great City, call'd *Abrener*, i. e. *The Fertile Field*, and 7 others near to it, all whose Inhabitants are Papists, and their Bishops and Curates Dominicans, who perform their Church-Service in the *Armenian* Language. These Towns were brought into Subjection to the Pope by an *Italian* Dominican of *Bologna*. Twenty Villages more acknowledged the same Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction, but are return'd to their first Religion, and their Obedience to the *Armenian* Patriarch; and 'tis not likely that the rest can hold out long, for the Governours of the Province use them violently, and lay heavy Impositions upon them, for withdrawing from their Jurisdiction.

Nacchivan describ'd. *Papists.*

From *Nacchivan* he passed to Old *Julpha*, through a dry Stony Country, where there is nothing to be seen but Hills of Stones. It is a ruin'd City, and thought by some Authors to be the ancient *Ariammene*. It is said to have contain'd 4000 Houses, though the Ruines do not show above half so much. At present there is nothing but Holes and Caverns in the Mountains, fitter for Beasts, than Men to dwell in. This City was ruin'd by *Abas* the Great, for the same Reasons as *Nacchivan*, *viz.* To hinder the Invasions of the *Turks* for want of Provisions. By *Julpha* runs the River *Araxes*, which separates *Armenia* from *Media*. It rises in the Mountain where *Noah*'s Ark is said to have rested, from which, perhaps, it takes its Name, and empties it self into the *Caspian* Sea. It is very large, and of so rapid a Course, especially when it is swell'd by the Thaws of the Snows that come down from the Mountains, that no Bridges can stand upon it, nor Dams resist its Force, and the Noise of the Waters astonishes the Ears of the Beholders.

Old Julpha. *Araxes.*

Media, which formerly ruled all *Asia* with an Imperial Dominion, at present makes but one Part of a Province, though the largest in the *Persian* Empire, called *Azerbeyan*, or *Asapaican*. It borders on the E. upon the *Caspian* Sea and *Hyrcania*, on the S. upon *Parthia*, on the W. upon *Araxes* and the Upper *Armenia*, of which *Assyria* is a Part, and on the N. on *Dagestan*, which is that Mountainous Country, that borders upon the *Cosaque Muscovites*, and part of Mount *Taurus*. The *Persians* affirm, that the Name *Azerbeyan* implies, *The Country of Fire*, by reason of the famous Temple of Fire which was there erected, where was kept that Fire, which the Fire-Worshippers hold to be a God. *Nimrod* is said first to have brought in this Worship, and there is a certain Sect, called *Guebres*, which still maintain it.

Media. *Fire-Worshipers.*

From *Julpha* he travelled through a Country full of little Hills, leaving a spacious Plain upon the Left Hand, where many bloody Battles between the *Turks* and *Persians* were fought, and particularly that between *Selim*, the Son of *Solyman* the Great, and *Ismael* the Great, to *Alacou*, and from thence, through a more even Country, to *Marant*, a good fair Town, consisting of about 2500 Houses, and which has so many Gardens, as take up as much Ground as the Houses. It is seated at the Bottom of a Mountain, at the End of a Plain, water'd with the little River *Zelou-lou*, from which the People have drawn several Cuts into their Grounds and Gardens. In the Places adjoining grow Plenty of Fruits, the best in all *Media*; but that which is most peculiar to these Parts, is this, that here they gather Cocheneel, though in no great Quantities, nor for any longer Time than only 8 Days in Summer, when the Sun is in *Leo*; for before that Time, the People say, it doth not come to Maturity; and after the Worm, from which they draw the Cocheneel, makes an Hole in the Leaf in which it grows, it is lost. The *Persians* call Cocheneel *Querm*, which signifies *a Worm*, because it is extracted out of Worms. The *Armenians* have a Tradition, that *Noah* lies buried here.

Alacou. *Marant.* *Cochineel.*

1673.

From thence he travelled, among the Mountains, to *Sophian*, a little Village full of Rivulets and Gardens, and fruitful to a Wonder, and so he went to *Tauris*, which is 53 *Persian* Leagues from *Erivan*.

This City is very large and potent, being the 2d in *Persia* in Dignity, Grandure, Riches, Trade, and Number of Inhabitants. It is neither Wall'd nor Fortified, and the little River *Spingtcha* runs a-cross it, which sometimes carries away the Houses on the Side of it, and makes dreadful Havock. On the N. side runs the River *Agi*, or the Salt River, whose Water is made salt by the little Rivulets, which passing thro' the salt Marshes, fall into it, and so can nourish no Fish. It is divided into 9 Wards, and has 15000 Houses, and as many Shops in their Market-places, among which are 300 Inns, and some so large, as to lodge 300 People, and many Cabarets for Coffee, Tobacco, and strong Liquors. There are 350 Mosques; 3 Hospitals, which relieve the Poor with Victuals twice a Day; a fair Hermitage, call'd *Hali's Eye*. The Inhabitants may be truely computed to be 550000. This City is full of Strangers, which come hither to trade from all Parts of *Asia*, because it is full of all sorts of Merchandices, and abounds with Artists in Cotton, Silk and Gold. The fairest Turbans in *Persia* are here made; and, 'tis said, there are 6000 Bails of Silk consum'd in this Manufacture. The Air of *Tauris* is good, healthy and dry, but the Cold continues long, because it is exposed to the North, and the Snow lies 9 Months in the Year upon the Mountains, the Winds blow every Day Morning and Evening, and Rains often fall. It abounds with all Things necessary for Human Support, as, Corn, Fish from the *Caspian* Sea, Venison, and other wild Beasts. Bread may be bought there for 3 Pound a Penny, and Flesh at 3 Half-pence a Pound. There are said to grow no less than 60 sorts of Grapes in and about *Tauris*. Near it is a Quarry of white Marble, a Mine of Gold, and another of Salt. There are several Mineral Waters, all sulphurous, of which some are cold, and others boiling hot. Most of our Geographers of best Note, as, *Ortelius*, *Ananias*, *Molets*, &c. are of Opinion, that this City is the ancient and celebrated *Ecbatana*, so frequently mention'd in Holy Writ, and in the ancient History of *Asia*, but there are no Remainders of the magnificent Palace of *Ecbatan*, where the Monarchs of *Asia* kept their Courts in Summer, nor of *Daniel*'s.

Querm, which signifies *a Worm*, because it is extracted out of Worms. The *Armenians* have a Tradition, that *Noah* lies buried here.

Tauris describ'd. The Houses and Mosques. The Air. Grapes of Tauris.

From *Tauris* he travelled first to *Vaspinge*, a great Borough, surrounded with Gardens, and Groves of Poplars and Tylets, and watered with several Brooks, which make it very pleasant; then to *Agi-agach*, by which are the Plains which afford the best Pastures in all *Media*, and, perhaps, in the whole World, where the choicest Horses in the whole Province are put to Grass from *April* to *June*, to purge, refresh, fatten and strengthen them. These Plains are the *Hippoporion* of the Ancients, of which they write and say, that the Kings of *Media* kept there a Breed of 50000 Horses.

Vaspinge. *Agiagach, or Asperchon.*

The Road from hence leads by several Circles of large hewn Stones, which the *Persians* affirm to be the Places where the *Caous*, or Giants, when they made Wars in *Media*, held their Councils, it being a Custom among these People, that every Officer that came to the Council brought with him a Stone, to serve him instead of a Chair, and so carries you over Hills and Dales, all fruitful and delightful, to Admiration, thro' *Turiman*, so called, because that in the Fields about it there is a great Number of Shepherds with their Flocks that are called by that Name, to *Pervare*, an handsome large Village at the Bottom of an Hill, and upon the Banks of a little River.

The Giants Stones.

From thence he proceeded in his Journey, and crossing the River *Miana* several times, by reason of its Windings, passed through the Town of the same Name adjoining, both so called, because they part *Media* from *Parthia*, and ascended a Ridge of Mountains, which are a Branch of Mount *Taurus*, at the Top of which stands a Castle, call'd the *Virgin's Castle*, because *Artaxerxes* is said to have built it on purpose to imprison a Princess of the Blood. As soon as you have passed these Mountains, and the River *Kesil-heuse*, which is at the Foot of them, you perceive a Change of the Air; for whereas *Media* is moist and cloudy, subject to high Winds and much Rain, the *Parthian* Air is dry to the highest Degree, without Clouds or Rain,

Miana, a River. The Virgin's Castle.

Rain for 6 Months often, and the Soil sandy, so that nothing will thrive without good Husbandry and Pains.

Parthia. *Parthia*, which was so long the Seat of the Empire of *Asia*, is now a large Province of the *Persian* Monarchy. It is the proper Demeans of the King, and therefore has no Governour, as the rest of the Provinces. It is extended 200 Lgs. in Length, and 150 in Breadth, being bounded by the Province of *Corassan* on the E. by *Fars*, which is properly *Persia*, on the S. by *Azarbeyan* or *Media* on the W. and *Guilan* or *Mezanderaan*, which compose the Province of *Hyrcania*, on the N. The Air is dry, and though the Mountains produce nothing but Thistles and Briers, yet the Plains are fruitful and pleasant, where there is Water. This Province has above 40 Cities, which is much in *Persia*, because it is not peopled according to its Extent. The *Parthians* took their Original from the *Scythians*, who were the *Lesser Tartars*, who now inhabit the North of *Persia*, called *Tuzbecs*, and formerly *Bactrians*. The first Village you come at is *Zerigan*, which is fam'd for its Antiquity, being founded, according to the *Persian* Records, in the Reign of *Ardechir-babezon*, several Ages before *Christ*, and then passing over delightful Plains, you come to *Sultany*.

The Original of the Parthians.

Sultany described. This City is seated at the Foot of a Mountain. It seems afar off a very neat well built Place, but does not appear so when you are within it; yet, some of the publ. Buildings are very remarkable, both for the Structure and Architecture. It contains about 3000 Houses, and besides, there are very vast Ruines, which make it probable, that it was once the largest City of the Kingdom, as their Histories relate. Provision is very plentiful and cheap there, and the Air wholsome, tho' very changeable, the Mornings, Evenings and Nights being very cold, and Days hot. It is said to be the most ancient City in *Parthia*. The Predecessors of *Ismael Sophi*, and the last *Armenian* Kings, resided there, and then, 'tis said, that it contain'd 400 Christian Churches; but being demolish'd by *Tamerlain*, and several other *Turkish* and *Tartarian* Princes, the Christians have deserted it.

From hence he travelled through a lovely Country, and passing through several Villages, surrounded with Meadows, and Groves of Willow and Poplar, he came

Ebber, or, Barontha. to *Ebber*, a small City for the Buildings, for it contains not above 2500 Houses, but taking up a large Extent of Ground, because they have so many large Gardens. A small River runs through the midst of it. It is thought to be called anciently *Barontha*. The Situation is delightful, the Air wholsome, and Soil plentiful. It is govern'd by a *Darogue*, or Mayor; and the *Mirtsheccar-Bashi* has his *Tahvil*, or Salary, charg'd upon the Revenue of this City. The *Persian* Geographers assert, that this City was built by *Rei-Cosrou*; and that *Darab-Reihoni*, or *Darius*, began to build the Castle; and that *Skender-Roumi*, i. e. *Alexander* the Great, finish'd it. At *Ebber* they begin to speak the *Persian* Language, which is spoken all the Way to the *Indies*, more or less pure, as the People are more or less distant from *Schiras*, where it is spoken in the greatest Perfection.

Cubin described. From *Ebber* he travelled to *Persac*, leaving *Cubin*, 5 Lgs. on the Left Hand. This great City is seated in a delightful Plain, 3 Lgs. from Mount *Alou-vent*, one of the highest and most famous Mountains in *Persia*. It is 6 Miles in Circumference, containing 12000 Houses, and 100000 Inhabitants, of which there are 40 Families of *Christians*, and 100 *Jews*, but all very poor. It was formerly Walled, but they are now all fallen down. The chiefest Ornament and Grace of

The King's Palace. *Cubin*, is the King's Palace, and the great Number of the Seats of the *Persian* Grandees, who attend upon the Court, which has its continual Residence there. There are but few Mosques in *Cubin*; but the Royal Mosque, called *Mosshid-Scha*, is one of the largest and

Water. faires in all *Persia*. This City has no Plenty of Water, but the City is supplied by Subterraneal Channels, called *Kerises*. The Air is thick, and not very healthful, and the Soil dry and sandy, yet it abounds with Meat, and all manner of Provisions, which are brought thither from the Countries adjoining, which having many well water'd Plains, feed a world of Cattel, and produce prodigious Quantities of Corn. The faires

Grapes. Grape in *Persia*, called *Shaboni*, or the Royal Grape, being of a Gold Colour, and transparent, of which the strongest and most luscious Wine in the World is made, grows here. The Air is very hot in Summer all the Day long, but the Nights are so cold, that if a Man expose himself never so little to the Air, after he is undress'd, he is sure to fall sick. Some of our *European* Geographers affirm it to have been the City, which the *Greeks* called *Ragea*, or *Reges*, after *Europa* and *Arsacia*, and now *Cubin*, from a King of that Name. It is govern'd by a *Darogue*, or Mayor, chosen every Year, whose Office is worth to him 600 Tomans, or 2000 Pounds.

Rages of old

Having passed *Cubin*, he came to *Kaiare*, and having lodg'd there, travelled the next Night (for that's the general Way of Travelling all over the East, to avoid the Heat of the Sun, which would melt both Man and Beast in the Day-time) by *Segs-abad*, which signifies, *The Habitation of Dogs*, to *Sava*, a great City, seated in a sandy and barren Plain. It is 2 Miles in Circuit, and Walled round, but so thinly inhabited, that, unless it be in the midst of it, it runs to Ruine for want of Inhabitants. The Historics of *Persia* unanimously consent, that the whole Plain of *Sava* was formerly a Salt-Marsh, or Lake; but how it was dried is not certainly known: Some fabulously report, that *Haly*, *Mahomet*'s Son-in-Law, drain'd it by a Miracle; and to preserve the Memory of it, the People built this City in the midst of it.

Sava described.

Just over-against *Sava*, Eastward, at 4 Lgs. Distance, stands a Place of Pilgrimage, the most famous for the Devotion of the *Persians*. They call it *Ech-muail*, that is to say, *Samuel*; for they believe, that that Prophet was there interr'd, and over his Tomb is built a most sumptuous *Mausoleum*, in the midst of a magnificent Mosque. Over-against it is still to be seen some Remnants of the City of *Rey*, which is reported to have been once the biggest City of *Asia*, next to *Babylon*. The *Persian* Histories relate, that it was divided into 96 Quarters, every one of which had 46 Streets, and every Street 400 Houses, and 10 Mosques; that there were in it 6400 Colleges, 16600 Baths, 15000 Towers of Mosques, 12000 Mills, 1700 Channels, and 13000 Inns, and People almost numberless. The Chronicle of the *Magi* make *Chus*, the Grand-child of *Noah*, to be Founder of it; and *Ptolemy* calls it *Raquaia*; but the vulgar Opinion is, that it was founded by *Hoüsheing Pischdadi*, or the Chief Justitiary, and enlarged by *Marroutsher*, his Successor. It was destroy'd by the *Mahometans*, who being divided into 2 Sects, *viz.* Of *Shia* and *Sunnis*, made War one upon the other for 60 Years together. The Sect of *Sunnis* called in the Assistance of the *Tartars*, and, by their Help, bore down the Sect of *Shia*. In these Wars the *Tartars*, by their frequent Incursions, destroy'd the potent *Rey*, and reduced it to nothing before the 60oth Year of their *Hegyra*. The Soil about it is fertile and pleasant, and produceth Plenty of Fruits; but the Air is unhealthy, making the Skin swarthy, and breeding Agues.

Ech-muail.

By whom founded and enlarg'd

The Soil and Air.

Departing from hence, he passed by an Hill, called *Coub-Telism*, which has this remarkable and peculiar to it; That as you approach nearer and nearer to it, it shews a different Form, and varies both in its Bigness and Figure; that the Top or Point of it is always in Sight, and you would think, that it turned that Side, which Way soever you stood to look upon it, which ariseth from the Variety of the *Optick Medium*, through which 'tis beheld. It consists of a black Earth, that crumbles like the burning Mountains; but it is not known to have vomited Fire. The People of the Country say, that they that ascend that Mountain never come back again.

Coub-Telism, a Mountain.

Having passed it, he came to *Com*, a large City, seated in a Plain, by a River side. It contains 15000 Houses, as the People say, and is surrounded with a Moat and Wall, flank'd with Towers, but half ruin'd. In the River are 2 fair Keys, and at the East of the City a fine Bridge. It contains many large and beautiful Market-places, both for Wholesale and Retail: Though it be a City of no great Trade, yet they export large Quantities of Fruit, dried and raw, and particularly Pomegranates, Sope, Sword-Blades, and Earthen-Ware, both white and varnish'd, which hath this peculiar Property, that it cools the Water in Summer both wonderfully and suddenly, by reason of its continual Transpiration. It contains a great Number of fair Inns, Mausoleums and Mosques, wherein the Grand-Children and Descendants of *Ali*, which are the *Persian* Saints, called *Iman-Zadæ*, Sons of the Apostles, lie interr'd. One of these Mosques is the most celebrated in the East. It has 4 Courts, of which the first is planted with Trees and Flowers, like a Garden, with Terrasses on each side; the second is not so beautiful as this, but the 3d is nothing inferior to it,

Com described.

Earthen-Ware.

A famous Mosque.

being surrounded with Apartments 2 Stories high, and having a Terrass, Portico and Canal. In the 4th are the Chambers and Lodgings for the Priests, Governours and Students, that live upon the Revenues of the sacred Place. Fronting these Courts stands the Body of the Structure, consisting of 3 great Chapels upon a Line. To the Middlemost belongs a Portal, 18 Foot high, of white Marble. The Top is a large Half-Duomo, overlaid without with large square *China* Tiles, painted with *Moresco* Work, and embellish'd within with Gold and Azure. The Folding-Doors are plated with Silver, gilt with Vermillion. In it The Tombs. stands the Tomb of *Fatima* in the midst, which is overlaid also with *China* Tiles, painted *A-la-moresco*, and over-spread with Cloth of Gold, which hangs down on both sides. It is enclosed with a Grate of massie Silver, 10 Foot high, distant half a Foot from the Tomb, and at each Corner are Apples of fine Gold. In the 2 Chapels on each side stand the Tombs of the 2 last Kings of *Persia*, viz. *Abas* and *Sophi*, both very magnificent; but on that of *Abas* are written in large Characters of Gold 7 Elegies upon *Mahomet* and *Haly*, made by the Learned *Hasan-Caza*. They are a rare Piece of Eloquence, and in them may be seen not only the Genius of *Persian* Poetry, but the Transports of Other sumptuous Buildings. the *Mahometan* Devotion. The City contains several other beautiful and sumptuous Edifices, and would be a very pleasant Place, were it not for the Heat, which is excessive, there being no Place in all *Persia* where the Sun scorches more violently, yet is the Air wholesom, and Soil fruitful, especially in Pistachio's. The People are very courteous and civil. The River that passeth by it is but a small Current in Summer, but being swell'd with the Snow-waters that fall from the Mountains, it overflows great part of the City.

From *Com* he travelled 4 Lgs. over very fertile Plains, stored with plenty of Villages, to *Cassem-abad*, a Town consisting of about 300 Houses, belonging to the Queen-Mother, as her Dowry, from whence he passed over a dry sandy Plain, without Villages or Water, to *Abistirin*, or, Sweet Water, because there is a Fountain of fair Water, and went to *Cashan*.

Cashan described. This City is seated in a large Plain, near an high Mountain, 1 Lg. in Length, and a Quarter of a Lg. in Breadth, running out from E. to W. in Form of an Half-Moon. There is no River near the City, but it is supplied with Water by Canals, deep Springs and Cisterns. It is encompassed with a double Wall, flank'd with round Towers, after the old Fashion, and hath 5 Gates. The City and Suburbs, which are the most beautiful, contain 6500 Houses, as the People say, 40 Mosques, 3 Colleges, and about 200 Sepulchres of the Descendants of *Ali*. The principal Mosque stands right against the Market-place, and has a Tower, like a Steeple, of Free-Stone. The Houses are built of Earth and Brick, but are none of them remarkable. The Bazars and Baths are well built and kept, and The Bazars and Baths. the Royal Inn is the fairest in all *Persia*. The Wealth and Trade of *Cashan* consists of the Manufactury of all sorts, Stuffs, and Tissues of Gold and Silver, plain and flower'd, Sattin and Velvet; and there is no City in *Persia* that makes more. *Cashan* stands in a good Air, yet so violently hot, that 'tis ready to stifle you The Air. in Summer, which is occasion'd by the Reflection of a Mountain, that stands on the S. of it; but the greatest Inconvenience that attends this City, is the great Number of Scorpions which infest it, and the Parts adjoining, when the Sun is in *Scorpio*, and therefore there is no body but has by him several Sovereign Remedies against the Sting of this Creature. Cattel and wild Fowl are not plentiful there, but it abounds in Corn and Fruits. They furnish *Ispahan* with Fruits, especially Melons and Water-Melons, all the Season. Several *European* Authors think this City to be *Ambrodux* or *Ctesiphon* of the Ancients. It is said to be founded by a Virgin, who therefore laid the first Stone of it when the Sun enter'd *Virgo*, and nam'd it *Cashan* from her Grand-father. It is governed by a *Darogue*, or Mayor, who holds his Place 2 Years.

From *Cashan* he passed over a Mountain, and then descended into a deep Valley, very narrow, and about a Lg. in length, which is so well stor'd with Houses, Vineyards and Gardens, so close one to another, that they all seem but one Village. Several delightful and clear Streams preserve the Summer so wonderfully cool here, that the Roses were not blown, nor Corn or Fruit ripe, when the Harvest was gotten in at *Cashan*. Several Modern Authors assert, that *Darius* was murthered by *Bessus* in this Valley, and that not improbably, because History says, *Bessus* fled to *Bactriana*, and *Nibarzanes*, his Comrade, to *Hyrcania*, and here the Road begins to these 2 Provinces, and so by *Moutshaçour*, a large Village of 500 Houses, to *Ispahan*, which is so thick encompassed with Villages, that you would think you are in the Suburbs 2 Hours before you come at it.

There are 2 other Roads, which it is necessary for Travellers and Merchants not to be ignorant of, which I shall briefly describe, *viz.* From *Warsaw* to *Ispahan*, The Road from Warsaw to Ispahan. and from *Ispahan* to *Mosco*.

Warsaw, which is seated upon the Left Hand of the *Vistula*, is the Ordinary Residence of the King of *Poland*. Beginning your Travels here to *Ispahan*, you must go to *Lublin*, which is 6 Days Journey, and in 5 more you may get to *Iluove*, where the Customers open all the Bales of the Merchants Goods, and exact 5 by the Hundred.

From *Iluove* you go *Jassovicer* in 12 Days. This is the last City of *Poland* next *Moldavia*. Here, if you sell any Goods, you must pay 5 *per Cent.*

From thence you go to *Yasshe* in 8 Days. This is the Capital City of *Moldavia*, and the Residence of the *Vayvod*, which the G. Seignior sends to govern that Country. Here all Bales of Merchandices are also opened, and there is a Roll of all that the Merchant is to pay, which amounts to 5 *per Cent.*

From *Yasshe* the Way lies through *Ourshaye*, to which you come in 3 Days. This is the last City in *Moldavia*.

From hence to *Akerman* you go in 4 Days, and the Customs amount to 4 *per Cent.* but they take the Merchant's Account.

From *Akerman* you go to *Ozou*, where they take 2 *per Cent.* and so to *Precop*, where they pay 2 and an half *per Cent.* but they trust to the Merchant's Word at both Places.

From *Precop* the Road lies to *Kaffa*, where also the Custom is 3 *per Cent.* And the Journey from *Warsaw* to *Kaffa* is 51 Days by the Waggon, which is the usual Way of Carriage in that Country, and the Customs in all come to 18 and an half *per Cent.* to which you must add the Carriage and Passage by Sea to *Trebisond*, where Trebisond. you pay 3 Piasters for every Mule's, and 4 for every Camel's Load. To avoid something of this Charge, the *Armenians* ship their Goods usually at another Port, called *Onnie*, which is a very good Port, and where they never pay above a Piaster and half for a Camel's Load.

There is another Road from *Warsaw* to *Trebisond*, shorter by 3 Days Journey, *viz.* From *Warsaw* to *Yasshe*, in the former Road, and from thence by *Galis*, a City of *Moldavia*, *Megin* and *Mangalia*, the best Port in the Black-Sea to the W. to *Trebisond*, from whence to *Erzerom* is 5 Days Journey, from which to *Ispahan* you go the usual Road.

The other Road from *Ispahan* to *Mosco* lies thus. You The Road from Ispahan to Mosco. must travel the usual Road before mention'd, to *Shamaquai*, and from thence to *Derbent*, which the *Turks* call *Demir-Capi*. This is the last City in the *Persian* Jurisdiction, by which the River *Shameurkan* runs.

From *Derbent* you may travel to *Terarck* in 8 Days, where hiring Barks with 12 Oars, you may be at *Astracan*, by the Help of a little Sail, which they put up, if the Wind serves, in 4 or 5 Hours, but if you row only, it will take up 9. When you embark upon the *Caspian* Sea, you must provide your self Water for the first 3 Days, because the Water on the Coast is bitter for that Time, but afterwards 'tis very good. At *Astracan* the Merchants are all searched by the Customers, and they take 5 *per Cent.*

From *Astracan* to *Mosco* you take Shipping in great Barks, that make use both of Oars and Sails, rowing against the Tide, and weigh all you carry aboard, for which you must pay 14 Caya, and 3 Abassi's and an half for every Pound.

From *Astracan* you sail to *Courinya*, and so in Order by *Sariza*, *Sarataf*, *Samarar*, *Senuriskat*, *Coulombe*, *Casan*, *Sabouk-sha*, *Godamijan*, *Triguina*, *Mouron* and *Casin*, to *Mosco*, which they count 2950 *Shagarons*, or 590 *Italian* Miles. At *Sarataf* you may go ashore, and so go by Land to *Mosco*, in Waggons, when the Snow is gone, and on Sledges while it lies, and then the Way lies thro' *Inseras*, *Tymack*, *Canquerma* and *Volodimer*, a City bigger than *Constantinople*, to *Mosco*, which Journey may be finish'd in 35 Days; but this Way is never used, but upon Necessity, when the River is frozen, because in the Passage from *Sarataf* to *Inserat*, which is 10 Days Journey, there is nothing to be had for Man or Horse. At *Mosco* the Customs are the same as at *Astracan*, viz. 5 *per Cent.* and all the *Asians*, viz. *Turks*, *Persians*, *Armenians*, and others, lodge in a sort of Inns; but the *Europeans* lie in a Place by themselves all together.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Perſia *Deſcrib'd*, &c.

MR. *Tavernier* having given us an Account of the Roads to *Iſpahan*, the Metropolis of *Perſia*, comes to deſcribe that vaſt Empire, and that City, and ſays, that,

Perſia deſcribed.

Perſia, according to the preſent State of it, is bounded on the N. with the *Caſpian* Sea, on the S. with the Ocean, on the E. with the Territories of the Great Mogul, and on the W. with the Territories of the G. Seignior, and contains in it only *Perſia* properly ſo called, but a great part of the ancient *Aſſyria*, *Armenia* the Greater, *Parthia*, *Media*, and the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus*, as far as the Kingdom of *Scindi*. The chief Parts of it are, 1. The Greater *Armenia*, which lies between the 2 Rivers *Araxes* and *Cyrus*, now called *Iran*, or *Caran-bag*. This Country is one of the moſt beautiful and richeſt Pieces of Land in all *Perſia*, and has theſe principal Cities, *Erivan*, *Nachſivan*, *Zulpha*, and *Van*. 2. *Diarbeck*, or *Meſopotamia*, between *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; the chief Cities whereof are, *Bir*, *Car-emir*, or *Diarbequir*, *Ourfa*, *Mouſul*, *Gazire*, *Merdin*, &c. 3. *Curdiſtan*, or *Aſſyria*, lying on the E. ſide of the River *Tigris*, from the Lake *Van* to the City of *Bagdat*. The chief Cities are, *Nineve*, *Sheriſoul*, *Amadie*, *Snerne*, *Beelis* and *Salmaſtre*. 4. *Hierack-Arabi*, or the Country of *Babylon*, or *Chaldea*, of which the chief Cities are, *Felougia* upon *Euphrates*, *Bagdat* upon *Tigris*, *Merſhed-Ali*, *Gourno* and *Balſara*; and in the Country of *Bourous*, *Sharaban*, *Eronnabat*, &c. 5. *Hierak-Agemi*, or the ancient *Parthia*, the principal Cities whereof are, *Iſpahan*, *Touſhercan*, *Hamadan*, *Caſhan*, *Kan* and *Casbin*, and, perhaps, *Yesd*. 6. *Shirvan*, which lies along the *Caſpian* Sea, where ſtand the Cities of *Derbent*, or *Demir-Capi*, *Baku* and *Shamaki*, and the Province of *Edzerbaſjan*, which has theſe Cities, *Tauris*, *Ardevil* and *Sultany*. Theſe 2 Provinces are the ancient *Media*, within a very little. 7. *Keilan* and *Mazandran*, formerly *Hyrcania*, wherein are the Cities and Towns of *Firuzouk*, *Sukar-Abad* and *Mionikielle*, at the Entrance of the Mountains, *Giru*, *Talara-peſti* and *Saru*, in the Plains; *Ferh-abad*, *Ciarman* and *Gſeref*, toward the Sea. 8. *Eſtarabad*, or *Margiana*, which extends it ſelf to the River *Ruth-khane-kurkan*, which the Ancients call *Oxus*; the chief Cities whereof are *Eſtarabad*, *Amul* and *Damkam*. 9. The Province of the *Usbecke-Tartars*, comprehending all the ancient *Sogdiana* and *Bactriana*: The chief Cities of it are *Balk*, *Samarcand* and *Boccara*. 10. *Coraſian*, formerly *Aria*, and ſome part of *Bactriana*, of which theſe are the principal Cities, *Eri*, *Meſhed*, *Niſabar*, *Thun*, &c. 11. *Sableſtand*, of old *Peloponneſus*, whoſe chief Cities are *Beksabat*, *Asbe*, *Buſt*, *Sarents*, *Candabar*, with the Territories belonging to it, *Duki* and *Alunkan*, which ſtand upon the Frontiers of the Great Mogul's Dominions. 12. *Sigiſtan*, anciently *Drangiana*, which has theſe great Cities, *Siſtan*, *Shalatz* and *Kets*. 13. *Arachoſia*, which has no conſiderable Cities. 14. *Makran*, bordering upon the Sea of *Mogoſtan*, formerly *Gedroſia*, which has theſe conſiderable Cities, *Makran*, *Firtik*, *Chalak*, and the Port of *Guadel* towards *Guzarat*. 15. *Kerman*, of old *Caramania*, which reaches as far as the Gulf of *Ormus*, and has theſe Cities, *Kerman*, *Bermazir*, the Port of *Kuheſtek*, and the Cape of *Faſques*. 16. *Farſiſtan*, the chief Cities of which are *Schiras*, *Caſaron*, *Benarou*, *Firus-abat*, *Darab-guier*, &c. to which *Laraſtan*, of which *Lars* the head City, is now added ſince the Conqueſt of it by *Sha-Abas*, and the Kingdom of *Ormus*. 17. *Curſiſtan*, anciently *Suſiana*, where *Euphrates* and *Tigris* joining together ſeparate from *Chaldea*: The principal Cities of it are *Suſter*, of old *Suſa*, the Metropolis of the Empire in King *Ahaſuerus*'s Days, *Ahawas*, *Scabar*, *Rambormus*, &c.

It contains the old Armenia, Meſopotamia, Aſſyria, Chaldea, Parthia, Media, Hyrcania, Margiana, Sogdiana, Bactriana, Peloponneſus, Gedroſia, Caramania.

The chief Ports in the *Perſian* Gulph are *Bander*, *Abaſi* and *Bander-Congo*.

The Air.

The Air in *Perſia* varies according to the Situation of it.

The Country of *Edzerbaijan* is very cold, but very healthy.

The Air of *Mazandran* and *Guilan*, are very unwholeſome, becauſe the Country is fenny, and the Water bad; ſo that the People look upon the Perſon that the King ſends to govern them, either to have been a Robber, or a Murtherer.

At *Iſpahan*, which ſtands almoſt in the Middle of *Perſia*, they have 6 Months of hot, and as many of cold Weather, when the Snows ſometimes are ſo deep, that they are unpaſſable, yet they look upon them as Omens of Plenty when deepeſt. They have little Rain but in *April*. In the Southern Provinces the Heats are ſo exceſſive, that they kill abundance of *Europeans*, eſpecially if they drink much.

Rivers.

Perſia abounds with ſmall Rivers and Brooks, but has not one Navigable River but the *Araxes*, which carries only ſome flat-bottom'd Boats, and being water'd by Cuts drawn out of theſe, it is made very fruitful, but they are by that means made very low and ſhallow.

Soil.

The whole Country is very mountainous, and the Mountains for the moſt part are very dry and barren, but yield them Salt and Stone. They have no Trees almoſt but what grow in their Gardens. In ſome of their Plains the Sand is nothing but Salt, but not ſo ſavoury as ours in the North. They have Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron and Steel, but their Gold and Silver coſts ſo much to dig and purifie, that 'tis not worth the Charge. Their Steel is very fine, but as brittle as Glaſs. The *Perſians* maintain but a ſmall Trade in Silk and wrought Carpets, and therefore Money is ſcarce among them.

Flowers and Fruits.

The Flowers of *Perſia* are not comparable to ours in *Europe*, neither for Variety nor Beauty. The Chief are Lilies and Roſes, of which they make great Quantities of diſtilled Waters, which they ſend into all the Eaſtern Parts of *Aſia*, but their Fruits are far better, and of as many ſorts as ours. Their Melons are moſt excellent and plentiful, and ſo wholſome, that there is no danger of eating them to exceſs. Their Peaches are very large, and Apricots very delicious; but their Apples, Pears, Oranges, Granates, Prunes, Cherries, Apricots, Quinces, Cheſtnuts, Medlars, and other ſorts of Fruits, are not generally ſo well taſted as in *Europe*. They have Almonds alſo and Figs, but few Small-nuts and Wall-nuts. All their Oil comes out of the 2 Provinces of *Mazandran* and *Guilan*.

Grapes of 9 or 10 ſorts.

Their Grapes are of 9 or 10 ſorts; but their Wines are generally made of the white Grapes, and if they will have them red, colour them with their black Grapes ſteep'd in them; for the Wine made of their black Grapes will not keep, except thoſe about *Schiras*, where their red Wine is very good, and pleaſant to the Stomach; but the Wine of *Yesd* is the moſt delicious of all the *Perſian* Wines, and cheapeſt.

Dates.

Their Dates, if eaten during the Heats, make the Body to break out in Botches and Boils. They have a Tree, called the *Kerzerhe*, i. e. The Aſſes Gall, becauſe it is bitter. It is ſaid, that that part of the Root of this Tree that ſpreads toward the E. is Poiſon, and that which ſpreads towards the S. is an Antidote againſt it, and that the Wood of this Plant makes excellent Coal for Gun-powder.

Herbs and Roots.

All Herbs and Roots are very good in *Perſia*, but eſpecially their *Roman* Lettice. They have no Pulſe, nor can Peaſe be made to grow among them. The *Carmelites* carry'd over thither Aſparagus, Artichoaks and Succory, which were never ſeen there before, and they thrive well.

Beaſts.

The Beaſts for Service in *Perſia* are, Horſes, Mules, Aſſes, Oxen and Camels. Their Horſes, which the *Perſians* uſe commonly for travelling, are but ſmall, but ſtrong and light, and will travel great Journies without tiring. They have 2 ſorts of Aſſes, *viz.* Some bred in the Country for Burdens; others a ſort of *Arabian* Aſſes, that are ſwift and very handſome, excelling in Price the common ſort of Horſes. Some Parts of *Perſia* are troubled with wild Beaſts, as, Lions, Bears and Leopards; but they do no great Miſchief. They have alſo wild Boars, Aſſes, Harts and Goats, which they take great Delight in hunting; and for this Sport they uſually make uſe of Dogs, but if their Game outrun them, they let fly one of their Hawks, who preſently ſeizes the Head of the Beaſt, and while he is continually picking and diſturbing him, the Dogs are preſently at his Heels, and ſo he is taken. They have alſo a certain Beaſt, call'd an *Ounce*, which has a ſpotted Skin,

Skin, like a Tiger, but will be, nevertheless, very gentle and tame. This an Horse-man will carry behind him, and when he sees a wild Goat, he sets down the Ounce, which is so nimble, that in 3 Leaps he will be upon the Back of the wild Goat, though he be himself a very swift Creature, and strangles him with his sharp Teeth. They have also Porcupines, that sometimes kill Men. Camels. The Camels of *Persia* are large and strong, and will carry twice the Weight that others do. They make fine Socks and Girdles of their Hair, which are sometimes sold for 2 Tomans apiece, especially when they are white, because white Camels are rare. Their Oxen have a great sharp pointed Bunch on their Back, near the Neck, and some have it bigger than others. The Country People make use of them to carry their Loads and ride on.

Fish. Fish is also plentiful among them. In the River *Aras* there is abundance of Carps, Trouts and Pikes, but in all the other Rivers of *Persia* there is but one sort of Fish, which is a kind of Barbel: Where the white White Mulberries. Mulberries grow by the River side, so soon as they begin to bear Fruit, the Crabs, as big as the Palm of a Man's Hand, come out of the River, after Sun-set, and climb the Trees to eat the Fruit, and then by Break of Day return into the River again. They are delicate Food, far beyond a Craw-Fish, but are an hot provocative Diet. During the Frost they bring from the *Caspian* Sea great Store of Salmon, or Salmon-Salmon. Trouts, 4 or 5 Foot long. The Province of *Media* is Sturgeon. well stor'd with Sturgeon from the Mouth of the River *Araxes*. In the same Sea there is a certain Fish like a Carp, which they salt and dry like our Herrings. Salt Fish is brought from the *Persian* Gulph, and transported over the whole Kingdom.

Birds and Fowls. Their Fowls are much the same with ours in *Europe*, only they have no Quails. Their Pigeons are wild, except some few which they keep tame for Decoys, and because the Christians are not allow'd to keep them, they will sometimes turn *Mahometans* to have that Privilege. There are above 3000 Pigeon-Houses in *Ispahan*, and most of them belong to the King, who draws a greater Revenue from the Dung than the Pigeons. Powltry is very plentiful in *Persia*. The *Armenians* have learned the way to fat Capons from the *Europeans*. They have all sorts of Water-Fowl, and upon the Frontiers of *Media* and *Armenia*, about the Time the Corn begins to appear, there come great Numbers of Birds, like to our Ouzels, which devour the Locusts, with which, at that Time, the Ground is covered, though the *Armenians* attribute the Destruction of them more to their Processions and Holy Water, Processions. which they use at that Time 3 Days together. The Country has many Birds of Prey, as Falcons, Sparrow-Hawks, Lanerets, &c. which they teach to fly at the wild Boar, Ass and Goat; and others at Cranes, Herons, wild Geese and Partridges, and the *Persian* King, who delights much in this sort of Hunting, keeps above 800 of them.

In regard there is little Stone or Wood in *Persia*, all the Cities, except some Houses, are generally built Their Houses how built. with Earth, but so wrought, that it may be cut like Turf, and between every Layer of Earth 3 Foot thick, 2 or 3 Rows of Brick baked in the Sun, and over them pounded Straw, to keep them from cracking with the Sun. The Buildings which are made of Brick bak'd in the Sun, are very handsome; for, after the Wall is raised, the Mason plaisters it over with Morter, and then washeth it over with Lime, mix'd with *Muscovy* Green and certain Gum, to make it more glutinous, and then rubbing it over with a coarse Brush, it becomes damask'd and silver'd, and looks like Marble. But the poorer sort are contented with bare Walls, or some coarse Plaistering, that costs little. The Form of their Houses. Their Houses consist of a large Portico in the middle, and Chambers round it. All their Rooms are arch'd, and the Tops of their Houses terrassed. Within, their Rooms are curiously painted with Birds and Flowers. Their Glass is of various Colours, not only because it is beautiful to the Eye, but because it cannot be so easily peer'd through. The Door and Wainscotting is of *Tebinar* Wood, which is very noble and neat. In the Fore-part of their Dwellings they display rich Carpets, Matresses, Cushions and Coverlets, and all the richest Furniture they have. The *Haram*, or Womens Apartment, is very meanly adorn'd, because they are never visited by any Man, but their Husbands. Their Chimneys are very narrow, because they burn all their Wood upright, to avoid the Smoak, and they make but small Fires, because Wood is scarce. They have no Beds, but in Winter sleep upon a Plank, covered with a Carpet, and in Summer in the open Air. Their Houses have no Ornament in the Front, unless it be in some that are lately built.

Ispahan, or, as the *Persians* call it, *Spahan*, and *Sphaon*, lies in the Province of *Yerach*, which was once a Part of *Parthia*, and is the Capital City of all *Persia*. It is a very large Place, and the King's Court usually resides at it. It was formerly 2 contiguous Towns, nam'd *Haider* and *Neamed-Olahi*, till *Sha-Abas* having conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus*, and observing their Situation to be convenient for his Design to enlarge his Dominions E. and W. enlarged them, and resided there. It is seated in a vast Plain, 15 or 20 Lgs. in Extent. About 2 Lgs. from *Ispahan*, Southward, is a very high Mountain, where are the Remains of a Castle, in which *Darius* kept himself when his Army fought *Alexander*, and in it is a Grotto, where dwells a *Dervis* usually. The Number of People in it is not great, because every Family has an House and Garden to themselves, which being full of Trees, the City appears like a Wood, scarce any thing being visible at the Approach, but the Towers of the Mosques. The Walls are of Earth, with some pitiful Towers in them, and the Moat is always dry. It has 10 Gates made of Planks, rudely joined together, and covered with Iron Plates. The Streets are The Streets. narrow and uneven, and in many Places so dark, by reason of the Arches that go from one House to another, that such as pass them are forced to feel their Way for 200 Paces together. At every Door there are Troughs to receive the Filth and Ordure of the Family, which the Country-men every Morning come for to dung their Ground; and 'tis observable, that they are more covetous to have the Dung of the *Armenians*, *Franks* and *Jews*, that drink Wine, than the *Persians*, that drink none. The Streets are not pav'd, and so are dusty in Summer, and miry in Winter up to the Mid-legs, for which Reason it is, that the *Persians* always ride through the Dirt, with several Footmen, which they call *Chatres*, attending them, which they account a Piece of Grandure. The Fortress of The Fort. *Ispahan* is not considerable, being without any Defence, unless of some sorry Towers made of Earth. The Great *Meidan*, or Market-place, built by *Sha-* The Meidan. *Abas*, is above 700 Paces long, and between 2 and 300 broad. It has Buildings on all the 4 Sides, and the Fronts are all portico'd and terrass'd. The lower parts are Shops for Brokers, Sadlers, Booksellers, Pedlars, &c. and the Chambers are inhabited by the most infamous *Curtisans* of the City. In the midst of it stands a Mast of a Ship, or May-Pole, where the People exercise Shooting at Birds; but if the King comes, they set up a Golden Cup for him to strike down with his Arrow, upon his Horse running full Speed, and turning back upon him to shoot. *Sha-Sefi* in 5 Courses struck down Shooting. 3 Cups. The End of the *Meidan* next the Palace is always kept clean, and without Shops, because the King comes often abroad in the Evening to see the Lions, Bulls, Bears, Rams, Cocks, and other Creatures fight, the Sport of breaking the Egg, and the *Maid-Marrians* tumbling Tricks and antick Postures. The Market-places are very secure and safe for Goods, tho' but slightly lock'd, being guarded both within and without all Night. The King's Palace here has no- The King's Palace. thing of Beauty, either in the Building or Gardens, being nothing but pitiful low Galleries, except the 4 Rooms, which they call *Divans*. The most remarkable Things here are, the Gate of *Ali*, whose Threshold is a Step of a round Stone, to which the *Persians* shew great Respect, for no Body dares tread upon it, and many in Devotion kiss it, and the Gate is always guarded by great Numbers of *Sofi*'s. All Malefactors that can make their escape into a Court beyond this A Sanctuary. Gate, as also into the King's Stables or Kitchin, are in a safe Sanctuary. By the Palace stands the most celebrated Mosque in the City, called the *King's Mosque*, The King's Mosque. because it was founded by *Sha-Abas* the First. Before this Mosque is a Parvis, or Walk, which in the midst of it has a Bason of Water like a *Polygone*, over which is a Porch painted and varnish'd with blue, yellow, and many other Colours, in great Flowers: At the End of it are 2 Gates, plated over with Silver, and emboss'd with Curiosities here and there; through which you pass into a large Court pav'd with great smooth Stones, and before you stands the Mosque with 5 Gates, which have each of them their Porches. The middle Porch is large and spacious, with a vast round *Dome* very well built, painted and varnish'd. The

Ispahan described.

Its Situation

Walls

Walls of the Mosque are of white Marble for a Fathom high; but the rest, like the *Dome*, is painted and varnish'd with divers Colours. The Pavement is large, and made of very smooth Stones, and under the *Dome* is covered all over with lovely Carpets, and the outside of the *Dome* is faced with green Bricks varnish'd.

No Christians to go into the Mosque.

No Christians are permitted to enter into it, and if any one be seen or known to be there, they will cudgel him out like a Dog, but yet many get in in disguise. Some of the finest Things in *Ispahan* are the Street of *Tchebarbag*, the Bridge of *Aliverdy-Can*, and the Garden of *Hezar-Dgerib*.

The Street of *Tchebarbag*.

The Street of *Tchebarbag*, which signifies 4 Gardens, is near an 100 Paces broad, and near 2 *Italian* Miles in length. At the Entry of it is a Pavilion 2 Stories high, adorn'd with many Balconies and painted Windows. It is bounded on both sides with the Walls of Gardens, and little Houses at certain distances, which have all Pavilions and Doors into the Gardens. About 12 Steps from the Garden-Walls are rows of lovely Plumb-Trees on both sides, between which is a Canal of Water continually running. About the middle of this Street the River *Senderou* crosses, and over it is

The Bridge of *Aliverdy-kan*.

built a fine Bridge of pretty singular Structure. It is built of good Brick, with Edges of Free-stones, and supported with a great many little and low Stone-Arches. It is about 300 Paces long and 20 broad, but in the middle where Carts and Horses go, it is not above 4 Fathom abroad, neither is it higher in the Middle, than 'tis at both Ends. On each side it hath a Gallery covered with a Platform very commodious

The Garden of *Hezar-Dgerib*.

for Passengers. At the End of the Street is the famous Garden *Hezar-Dgerib*, which hath 6 Stories of Terrasses, the Earth of which is supported by Stone-Walls, and every Stone is a Fathom, one above another. There are a great many Alleys, which reach from one end to the other very streight and even, but at the Ends you must ascend at every Story 6 or 8 Steps. The chief Walk or Alley is very broad, and that which renders it altogether charming is a Stone-Canal in the middle of it, which receives the Water of the Canal that runs down the Street *Tchebarbag*, but is much more beautiful than that of the Street, because at every 2 Fathoms distance there are Pipes which spurt up Water very high. At each side of the Garden is a large *Divan*, built of Brick, and open on all hands, with a Fountain in the middle, and from every Story of the Terrasses there is a Sheet of Water that falls into a Bason underneath, from whence it runs into the Canal. These Things render the Garden a charming Place to the *Levantines*, whose greatest Delight is in enjoying the Cool; and this, indeed, is all that renders it admirable, for it has no such lovely Grass-plats and Borders of Flowers as are seen in our Gardens in *Europe*, nor close Walks of Honey-suckles and Jasmin, which would be mighty pleasant in those hot Countries; but 'tis furnish'd with abundance of Fruit-Trees and Planes, and 2 or 3 sorts of Flowers, which flourishing long, are a very pleasant Sight.

There are no Burying-places in *Ispahan*, but they are all without the City, as they are all over the *Levant*; *Zulpha*, or as others call it, *Giolpha*, is as it were the Suburbs to *Ispahan*, though it has been so increased for some Years, that it may pass for a large City, being a Lg. and a half long, and near half as much broad. The Inhabitants are a Colony of *Armenians* brought out of *Zulfa* in *Armenia* by *Sha-Abas*, and settled there. They were all at first poor labouring Men, but being employ'd by *Sha-Abas* to trade with his Silk into *Europe*, they soon became so exquisite in Trade, that several of them have left Estates of 2000 *Tomans*, and some of 20000. They have this Advantage above all the Christians in the East, that they enjoy Lands and Privileges, the King not permitting the least Injustice to be done them, nor that any *Mahometan* should live among them, which is the Cause of their daily Increase, by the coming of *Jacobites*, *Cophthites* and *Nestorians* to them. They are allowed to wear as rich Cloaths as the *Persians*, and to use Bridles of Gold and Silver, but the King names their Governour, whom they call *Kelonter*, who judges all their Differences, and taxes them to make up the Sum, which they are to pay the King Yearly. They have 15 or 16 Churches, Chapels and Nunneries, and so obstinately fixed to their Religion, that they will hear of no other, unless it be for Gain, and there they always play the Hypocrites. There are about 10 or 12000 *Banyans* in *Ispahan*, who are known by their yellow Complexions, or rather by a yellow Mark made with Saffron upon the Top of their Foreheads. They are all Bankers, and very knowing in Money, which they almost engross; here the rich Men put it into their Hands for Improvement, for none can get a considerable Sum but from them, and for it they will exact a severe Interest, *viz.* 18 *per Cent.* though *Mahomet*'s Law forbids Usury, and if it be known that they take it, the whole Sum will be confiscated.

Zulpha described.

The Riches and Privileges of the *Armenians*.

The *Banyans* and their Usury.

CHAP. X.

Of the Religion of the Persians *and* Armenians.

The Difference between them and the *Turks*.

THE Religion of the *Persians* is in Substance the same with that of the *Turks*, though no Nations of the World hate one another so much upon the Account of Religion; but the Difference doth not consist in the various Expositions of the *Alcoran*, but in the several Opinions which they hold concerning the first Successors of *Mahomet*. Those who are of the *Turkish* Belief maintain, that *Abou-beker* was the immediate Successor of *Mahomet*, as his Vicar or Vicegerent, and to him *Omar*, and to *Omar Osman*, and to *Osman Mortuz-Ali*, Nephew and Son-in-Law to *Mahomet*, by Marriage of his Daughter. *Osman* was Secretary to *Mahomet*, and was a Person of great Courage, as well as the other 3, who were valiant Soldiers and great Captains, and extended their Conquests more by Force of Arms, than Reason; and from thence it comes, that the *Sunni's* will not allow of Disputes, but propo-

The Sects of *Mahometans*.

gate and maintain their Religion altogether by Force: But the *Persians* affirm, that *Abou-beker*, *Omar* and *Osman*, are but so many Usurpers of the Succession of *Mahomet*, which belongs to *Haly*, his Nephew and Son-in-Law, only.

The *Persians* call themselves *Schiai*, because they think it enough to observe the Commands of their Law; and the *Turks*, *Sunni*, because, besides Matters of Obligation, they follow Councils of Devotion. These 2 Sects over-run the 3 principal Kingdoms of *India*, viz. *Mogul*, *Golconda* and *Visapour*; the King and Lords of the first and last being *Sunni's*, but their Subjects are most of them Idolaters. There are some *Schiai's* in the Courts of both Kings, because the Officers of the Armies are for the most part *Persians*, tho' in outward Shew they may, perhaps, follow the Religion of the Prince they serve; but the King of *Golconda* is a zealous *Schias*. The Months are the same with the *Persians* as with the *Turks*, save that the *Persians*, who know the Speculation of the Stars, and make Astronomical Calculations, regulate their Time according to the Course of the Moon; but the *Turks* begin their Account from its first Appearance to them, and so reckon one Day later than the other.

Their Months.

In *Persia* they call to Prayers but 3 Times a Day, *viz.* As soon as it is light, at Noon, and at Sun setting, and the same they do on *Fridays*; and this Call is not made from the Tops of the Steeples, as the *Turks* is, because from thence they might see the Women in the Houses, but from the Terrasses. The *Turks* and *Persians* make their Absolutions both alike, but in saying their Prayers they have this Difference, that the *Sunni's* hold their Hands one over another upon their Stomach, but the *Schiai's* observe no such Posture, but in time of Prayer lay down a grey Stone before them, which they always carry about them, and every time they prostrate themselves on the Ground, lay their Forehead on that Stone, which is made of the Earth of *Kerbela*, the Place where *Hussein*, the 2d Son of *Ali*, was killed by *Yezed Caliph* of *Bagdat*.

Their Times for Prayer.

The

Their Festivals.

1. That of *Hocen* and *Hussein*, and the Manner of celebrating it.

The Grand Festival of the *Persians* is the famous Feast of *Hocen* and *Hussein*, called *Aaschour*. Eight Days before this Feast begins, all are sad and melancholy, and either are cloathed with Black, or wear a black Turbant or Girdle; some of the more zealous sort black their Bodies and their Faces, and go naked up and down the Streets, with only a Covering over their Privities. They carry a Flint in each Hand, and knock them one against another, and wreathing their Bodies, and making a Thousand antick Faces, cry out, *Hussein Hocen*, *Hocen Hussein*, which they speak with so much Labour, till they foam again at the Mouth. In the Evening the devout People take them into their Houses, and feed them well. During these Days, as soon as Sun is set, they set up Pulpits for certain Preachers, who prepare the People that flock to hear them, for the Devotion of the Feast; no Man shav'd, baths, or companies with his Wife. The Manner of Celebration is this: So soon as the King is seated upon his Throne, which is placed in the midst of the *Dela*, with all his Nobility standing about him, the Great Provost mounted upon a fine Horse, and attended by certain young Lords, advancing with 3 Companies into the Great Piazza at *Ispahan*, every Company having the Thill of a Waggon carried before them, and upon every Thill, which was painted with a Grotesco of Gold and Silver, is a Bier 3 or 4 Foot high, covered with Sattin. When they come before the King, all the Company falls a running and dancing about with the Bier, and every one flings up his short Cassock, Girdle and Bonnet, and put their Fingers to their Mouth to whistle as loud as they can, while the naked People with the Flint-Stones in their Hands, run, knocking them together, and crying out, *Hussein Hocen*, *Hocen Hussein*, till they foam at the Mouth again, wreathing their Bodies, and making antick Faces, as before. After these 3 Companies come 2 more, with a little Bier upon their Thill, and in each Bier a little Child, which lies as if it were dead. They that accompany these 2 Biers, weep and sigh most sadly. These 2 Infants represent the Death of the Children of *Hussein*, as the former did *Hussein*'s Death. At this Solemnity the *Curtisans* weep sore, because they think their Sins are forgiven; and it is usual for the Companies to fight, accounting it a great Honour to shew their Courage in the King's Presence, and further believing, that if any one be killed upon that Occasion, he shall be Sainted, as, indeed, every one gives something toward his Interment. Upon the same side of the Room where the King stands, is a little Scaffold set up, covered with Tapestry, 5 Foot lower than the King's, and in the middle of it an Elbow-Chair, covered with black Velvet, where sits a *Mollah*, with 6 others standing round about him. The *Mollah* makes a Discourse upon the Death of *Hussein* and *Hocen*, about half an Hour long, and then the King gives him a *Calaat*, or Habit of Honour, as he does also to the others, but not so rich. When they have all put on their Habits, the same *Mollah* returns to his Chair, and makes a Prayer for the Health of the King, and the Prosperity of his Kingdom. These Ceremonies last till Noon, and then the King returns to his Palace, but the People carry the Biers up and down the City, and where-ever the Companies meet one another, they fall together by the Ears, and with great Clubs knock one another down.

2. The Feast of the Camel.

Some time after this Feast the *Persians* celebrate another Festival, which they call *Bairam*, or, *The Feast of the Camel*, in Remembrance of *Abraham*'s Sacrifice of his Son *Ishmael* (for they affirm, that *Ishmael* was to have been sacrificed, and not *Isaac*; and that it was a Camel, and not a Ram, which God sent to reprieve him.) They have a great Reverence for this Festival, and chuse out for this Ceremony one of the fairest Camels they can meet withal, and adorn and dress him up with several Plates of counterfeit Gold and Silver, and then leading it to a Place without the City, before a Mosque, the *Doroga*, or Provost (in the Absence of the King, who formerly did it, when he was there) after several *Mollah*'s have pray'd for half an Hour, darts a Javelin at the Camel, and then the Company having Ropes tied to the Ground, throw the Camel to the Ground, and cut off his Head and Neck together, and then divide the rest of his Body into 11 Parts more, to the end that all the 12 Companies of the City may have every one their Share. Every Company carry their Share to the Master of the Company's House, who is generally the ancientest among them. This Part is salted up, and kept till the next Feast, and the Piece which they brought the Year before, and is kept till then, is boil'd with Rice, and is the Foundation of the Feast for the chief of the Company, who take it for an Honour to eat of it. For the rest they boil Rice with Mutton and Hens, in their own Houses, and give Alms bountifully to the Poor; and in other Towns they kill an Ox, instead of a Camel, and the *Dervices* and the People come and take every one a Piece, which they boil and eat with a great deal of Devotion.

3. The Feast called *Sorten*, i. e. *Head-Body*.

Forty Days after their Feast of *Aaschour*, viz. on the 20th Day of their Month *Sefer*, they have another Feast, which they call *Sorten*, i. e. *Head-Body*, because (as they affirm) the Head of *Hussein* being cut off, was of it self joined to his Body 40 Days after. They make great Rejoycing upon this Day, giving Alms generously, and many will not shave their Heads from the Feast of *Aaschour* till this Day.

4. *Aly*'s Death.

The Death of *Aly* is celebrated on the 21st of the Month *Ramazan*, much after the Manner of *Hussein*'s Sons; only it lasts but one Day. They go in Procession through the Town, carrying Standards, Lead-Horses, cover'd with Trophies of Arms, and a Coffin, cover'd with black Velvet, with a Turban upon it, and having said some Prayers, they return home, and so the Feast is ended. On this Day also they burn the Figure of *Ebco-Mouldgom-Mourat*, *Aly*'s Servant, who stabb'd him, as *Aly* was at his Prayers in his Mosque. There are some other Feasts which the *Persians* celebrate, as the Great *Bairam*, *Quamquadir*, the *Neurouz*, or New-Year, with some others of less Note.

Liberty of Conscience given in *Persia*.

Besides the *Mahometan* Religion, there are several others used, and observ'd partly by the *Persians* themselves, and partly by Strangers, to whom the *Persians* give a full Liberty of Conscience. Some Attempts have been formerly made to force the *Jews* and *Gaurs*, or *Guebres*, to turn *Mahometans*, but proving ineffectual, they are now left to practise their own Religion.

The *Guebres* or *Gaurs*.

The *Gaurs*, or *Guebres*, are natural *Persians*, the Descendants of the ancient *Persians*, that ador'd the Fire. They dwell in many Places of *Persia*, but chiefly about *Kerman*, where there are now above 10000. They worship, as the chief Prophet, *Ebrahim-zer-Ateucht*, who, they say, was sent by God to govern Men, and reign in their Hearts; and though *Neubrout* and his Successor sought to destroy him in his Mother's Belly, and after he was born endeavour'd to kill him with the Sword and burn him; yet, not being able to do it, he was accepted by the latter to be sent from God, and the People taking some of the Fire, had it in great Veneration, and still kept it in Honour to their Prophet, who when he had liv'd some Years among his Worshippers, was taken up into Paradise, both Soul and Body together. They hold, that this their Prophet *Ebrahim* shall send his 3 Children, *Ouchider*, *Ouchiderma* and *Sonniet-hotius* into the World, who by their eloquent Preaching and Miracles, shall convince all the World of the Truth of their Father's Doctrine, and cause them to receive it as a Law, and after that there shall be an universal Resurrection, when all the Souls, either in Paradise or Hell, shall return to take Possession of their Bodies; and the World being made level, and fit to inhabit, every one shall have their Apartments, answerable to the Degree and Quantity of the Good which they did in their Life-time; but their chief Delight shall be to behold and praise God, and *Ebrahim*, their Prophet; for they hold, that before the Resurrection none behold the Face of God, no not the Angels themselves. They also say, that God will have Pity upon the Damned, and that they also shall go into Paradise, as having suffered enough for their Sins.

Their Opinions.

They do not worship Fire.

Ebrahim being taken up into Paradise (as they say) sent them 7 Books of Laws from God, to instruct them in the Way of their Salvation, 7 Books of Interpretation of all the Dreams that can be dreamed, and 7 Books of the Secrets of Physick, containing all the Means for the long Preservation of Health. Both the last *Alexander* the Great carry'd away, as they hold, and the other 7 he caused to be burnt, and for this Action God punish'd him with the Disease of which he died. Some of their Doctors and Priests, who fled into the Mountains to save their Lives, after his Death met together, and composed one Book by the Strength of their Memories, which, though it is written in a Language their Priests hardly understand, yet having other Books to explain it, 'tis the only Rule of their Worship and Manners.

Their Laws and Books.

Their Out by Fire.

They never circumcise their Children, but soon after their Birth dip them in Water; wherein certain

Baptism.

Flowers

Flowers have been boil'd, and in the mean while the Priest, who is present, makes certain Prayers. If the Child dies without this Washing, they do not believe, but that it goes to Paradise; but they believe, that the Parents shall give an Account of the Neglect to God, because that Washing encreases his Favour and Merit in the Sight of God.

Marriage and Divorce. Their Law allows them 5 Wives, if they can maintain them, and permits not Divorce, but in case of an evident Adultery, or turning *Mahometans*, and if the Wife repents within a Year, and confesseth her Fault to a Priest, he will enjoyn her 3 Years Penance, and then he re-marries them.

The Way of Marrying. When any are married, the Priest asks them, in the Presence of many Witnesses, whether they both consent, and consecrating a little Water, by saying a few Prayers over it, he washeth both their Foreheads therewith, and then pronounceth them Man and Wife. None are allow'd to marry within the 3d Degree, and though they may have 5 Wives, yet one hath the Pre-eminence, and with her the Husband is oblig'd to lie at least 2 Nights in the Week, *viz. Friday* and *Saturday*. As soon as either Women or Maids perceive the Custom of Nature upon them, they presently leave their Houses, and stay alone in the Fields in little Huts made of Hurdles, and when they are free, they send an Offering according to their Quality, as a Kid, Hen or Pigeon, and then going to the Bath, invite their Friends to a small Collation at home.

Wine and Swine Flesh. They drink Wine, both Men and Women, and eat Swines Flesh, if it be of their own Breeding, for they keep them from Ordure and Nastiness, and will not eat them if they are found to have devoured any thing of that Nature. They neither pair their Nails, nor cut their Hair. They abstain from Meat, Fish, Butter and Eggs 5 Days in a Year, and fast other 3 wholly till the Evening.

Their Holidays. They keep 30 Holidays strictly in Memory of 30 Saints, no Man daring to work on those Days; but the Birth-day of their Prophet is celebrated with an extraordinary Pomp, and large Alms are then given. One Day in the Year all the Women in the Cities and Villages meet together to kill all the Frogs they can find in the Fields, according to a Command of their Prophet, who was one Day much annoy'd with them. Their Priests have several Books full of Pictures, representing the Punishments of Mens several Sins in Hell, especially of Sodomy, which they abominate.

Confession to a Priest. When they are sick they send for their Priests, and make a kind of Confession of Sin to them, and the Priest enjoyns them to give Alms, and do other good Works, to obtain Pardon of their Sins. They neither burn nor bury their Dead, but carry them out of the City, and tying them to a Stake, fall to their Prayers, till the Crows come to pick out his Eyes, which is not long, because they are used to it. If the Crow chances to pull out the Right Eye of the Deceased first, they believe the Person to be happy, and for Joy give large Alms, and make a Feast in the Fields, and put him into the White Pit; but if the Crow fixes upon the Left Eye, they take it for an ill Omen, return home sad, without speaking to one another, give no Alms, nor eat nor drink, and he is put into the Black Pit, as being miserable.

They do not worship Fire. They will not be thought to give Honour to Fire, under the Title of Adoration, for they detest the Name of Idolaters, and say, that they acknowledge but one God only, Creator of Heaven and Earth, whom they only adore. As for the Fire, they preserve it and reverence it in Remembrance of the Miracle by which their Prophet was deliver'd from the Flames. They will not shew it any Man, because, they say, that shewing it to the Kan of *Kerman* at his Desire, when he saw that it did not excel a Chamber or Kitchin Fire in Brightness, he fell a swearing, and spitting upon it, whereupon the sacred Fire flew away, in the Shape of a Pigeon, and could hardly be recall'd with Prayers and Alms, and for this Reason they are shie of shewing it again.

Their Oaths by Fire. When they put any Persons to their Oaths, they swear them before this Fire, which they take as a Witness to them, and the Priests threaten such as swear, that the sacred Fire will leave them, if they swear falsly.

Their Language differs from the modern *Persians*, both in Character, and Manner of Writing. They love to feast, and eat and drink well, being lavish of their Wine and Strong-Water. They never eat Hares, because they have Monthly Purgations like Women, and for the same Reason they never eat Mulberries, believing, that they partake of the Nature of Women and Hares.

Their Purgations and Penance. They purifie themselves from any Nastiness, or superstitious Defilement, with Ox or Cow-Piss, and of it they make a Compound Water, in which they infuse Willow-Bark and certain Herbs. This Water they cause them to drink, who have committed any Sin, after they have been at Confession for it, and so they are absolved; but if the Sin be a crying Sin, the Party must stay 10 Days in the *Cazi*'s House, and eat and drink nothing but what he gives him, walk up and down his House naked, with a Dog tied to his Toe, and the Water must be pour'd 7 times upon his Head.

Another strange Custom they have, that when a Party is at the Point of Death, they set a little Dog upon his Breast, and putting the Dog's Mouth to his, cause him to bark twice in that Posture, that the Soul of the Deceased may enter into the Dog, who, they say, will deliver it into the Hands of the Angel that is to receive it, and upon this Account when any Dog dies, they pray for him to God, as if he could have Benefit by their Prayers.

They pray for Dogs.

Among the Beasts the *Gaurs* mightily respect some, and abhor others. Those which they love and admire, are the Cow, for her Milk and purifying Urine; the Ox, because he plows the Ground that produceth their Food, and the Dog, for the Reasons above-mentioned. The Creatures which they hate, are Adders, Serpents, Lizzards, Toads, Frogs, Crey-fish, Rats, Mice, but chiefly Cats, because, they say, they are the Resemblance of the Devil, who gives them so much Strength, that a Man can hardly kill them, and so they will rather endure the Inconveniences of Mice and Rats, than have any Cats in their Houses; and for the other Animals, if they are sick, they hire poor People to find them out and kill them, and they account it a good Work, because they believe, that the Devils make use of them to torment the Damned, and in destroying them, they mitigate their Pains.

Beasts hated by them.

The Religion of the *Armenians*. As for the Religion of the *Armenians* it may be said, that Fastings are the chief Part of what they profess at present, or at least they make it the most considerable and visible Point of their Religion.

When an *Armenian* confesseth that he hath robb'd, committed Murther, or such like Crimes, the Confessor tells him, God is merciful; but if he accuse himself of eating Butter upon a Day of Fasting, as a *Friday*, or Abstinence, he will enjoyn him a Penance for that Sin, as to fast several Months, to refrain 6 Months from his Wife, or other Austerities.

Their Fasting-Days. They eat no Flesh, Eggs or Fish, nor Milk, Oil or Butter on *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, but they eat Flesh on *Saturdays*, as all other Oriental Christians do.

Since the *Armenians* traded into *Europe*, and began to be Travellers, their Churches are better set out than they were before; they spare no Cost to adorn the Quire and Altar, you tread upon rich Carpets, and for the building and embellishing them they provide the best Materials, and employ the best Work-men. They never have above one Altar in a Church, upon which they set the Consecrated Bread and Wine.

Their Mass, how celebrated. When Mass is celebrated, they light an abundance of Wax Tapers at the Reading of the Gospel, and when it is done the Ecclesiasticks and Laity sing indifferent harmoniously. When the Sacrament is administred either by the Archbishop or Priest, he sets the Bread upon the Chalice, and having lifted it up before the People, they presently prostrate themselves upon the Ground, beat their Breasts, and kiss the Earth, while the Minister pronounceth these Words, *This is the Lord, who gave his Body and Blood for you:* Then he turns to the Altar, and eats the Bread dipped in the Wine (for they never drink the Wine, but only dip the Bread in it.)

The Bread is dipped in the Wine. When he has received, he turns once more to the People with the Bread and Chalice in his Hand, and then as many as will receive, come, one after another, to the Bottom of the Quire, and receive the Bread dipped in the Wine in the Chalice. The Bread is without Leaven, flat and round, and is consecrated the Day before by the Priest, whose Office it is. They never put Water into their Communion Wine, affirming, that Water is for Baptism, and that Christ, when he instituted the Holy Supper, drank it pure, without any Mixture of Water. At the Distribution of the Bread the Priest repeats these Words several times, *I confess and believe, that this is the Body and Blood of the Son of God, who takes away the Sins of the World, who is not only ours, but the Salvation of all Mankind.* That which

The Sacrament given to Children.

which is moſt wonderful is this, that they give the Communion to Children of 2 or 3 Months old, who are brought in their Mothers Arms, and often put it out of their Mouths again. They never adminiſter the Sacrament in *Lent*, for they never ſay Maſs, but upon *Sunday*-Noon, which they call Low-Maſs, for the Prieſt reads only the Goſpel and Creed aloud, and that with a Curtain drawn before the Altar, that he cannot be ſeen by the People. Sometimes upon *Thurſday* in Paſſion Week they ſay Low-Maſs about Noon, and then they confeſs and adminiſter the Sacrament, but generally they ſtay till *Sunday*, and then the Communicants, after they have received, are permitted to eat Fiſh, Eggs, Butter and Oil, or any thing elſe, beſides Fleſh, which is not lawful to be eaten, till after Maſs on *Eaſter-Day*, on which alſo the Beaſts muſt be killed, and not on *Eaſter-Eve*. After the ſame Manner they obſerve the Feaſts of *Chriſtmas*, *Aſcenſion*, *Annunciation*, and St. *George*'s Day, eating neither Fleſh, Fiſh, Eggs, Butter nor Oil for 8 Days. Before the laſt of them, they ſtretch out their Devotion to the uttermoſt, faſting ſome 3, and others 5 Days, one after another.

Their Feſtivals, how obſerved.

When a Father deſigns his Son for the Prieſthood, he carries him to a Prieſt, who puts his Cope about his Shoulders, and then his Parents take him home again with them to educate him. This Ceremony is repeated 7 times, and at the 4th time (if he be not deſigned for a Monk) he is married (for their Prieſts marry once, but if that Wife die, and they marry again, they muſt give over ſaying of Maſs) and when he comes to the Age of 18 Years, when he is capable of ſaying Maſs, he is inveſted by the Archbiſhop, or Biſhop, with all the Habits that Prieſts wear, and then goes into the Church, where he remains a whole Year, being employ'd all that Time in the Service of God. When a Prieſt or Monk intends to ſay Maſs, he muſt remain 5 Days before in the Church, without either going to Bed, or touching any thing with his Hands, but the Spoon he eats with, not daring to ſpit, or blow his Noſe, and after he has ſaid Maſs, a Prieſt muſt ſtay 5 Days more before he returns home to eat or drink, or lie with his Wife, and muſt eat nothing but Eggs without Butter, and Rice boil'd with Water and Salt. Their Auſterities are ſuch, that many of their Biſhops never eat Fleſh or Fiſh above 4 times a Year, and their Archbiſhops live only on Pulſe. They have 6 Months and 3 Days wherein they keep *Lent*, or ſome particular Faſts, and all that Time, both Clergy and Laity, feed only upon Bread, and ſome Herbs that grow in their Gardens. The poor labouring People feed upon Pulſe, boil'd in Salt and Water; and though they lie a dying, they muſt not eat Fleſh, Butter or Oil, upon thoſe Days on which it is forbidden them. They may only eat Wall-nuts, Small-nuts, Almonds, or Piſtachioes, which afford no Oil, pounded and mix'd with their Herbs or Rice.

Marriage of Prieſts.

The Abſtinence of their Biſhops.

Their Baptiſm.

They baptize their Children on *Sundays* only, unleſs in Caſes of Neceſſity, when they think a Child will not live; and when they are baptized, the Miniſter plunges them naked into the Water, and having tied a Cord of white Cotton and red Silk twiſted together, which, they ſay, repreſents the Blood and Water that flow'd out of Chriſt's Side, when it was pierced by the Spear, he anoints the Child in ſeveral Parts of the Body, and making a Croſs in every Place, ſays, *I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghoſt.* The Oil is made of many ſorts of fragrant Flowers, Aromatical Drugs by the Patriarch, upon the Feaſt of our Lady, in *Sept.* when they keep a ſhort *Lent* of 8 Days, and by him 'tis ſent to all the Convents in *Aſia*, *Europe* and *Africa*, becauſe none can be baptized without it. The Miniſter that baptizeth names the Child, and generally gives it the Name of the Saint, whoſe Memory is celebrated on that *Sunday*, or the next Holiday, if none fall upon the *Sunday*, and ſo they have no affected Names among them. After the Child is baptized, there is a Feaſt made for the Kindred and Friends of the Child, and the Miniſter that baptizeth him, with all the Monks of the Pariſh; but to avoid this Charge, which was wont to undo many, they baptize their Children on the Week-Days, without Ceremony, pretending they are ſick.

The Oil uſed in Baptiſm.

Baptiſm in a River.

If the Women lie-in within 2 Months of *Chriſtmas*, or leſs, they defer the Baptiſm till that Feaſt, if the Child be healthy, and then procuring Boats, which they ſpread with Carpets, and in one of them ſet up an Altar, they carry it to a River or Pond, all the Clergy in the Neighbouring Towns and Villages attending the Baptiſm in their Habits, with the Croſs and Banner, and there dip it 3 times in the Water, anointing it every time with Oil, uſing the ſame Form as before. This Ceremony is performed with ſo much Magnificence, that they will invite the King of *Perſia* to it, and treat him with all his Nobility, which coſts them at leaſt 4 or 5000 Crowns. At the ſame time they baptize the Croſs, in Commemeration of the Baptiſm of our Lord, plunging it 3 times into the Water, after certain Prayers, and every time dropping, ſome of the Holy Oil upon it.

Baptiſm of the Croſs.

They marry their Children very young, and that by the Agreement and Conſent of their Mothers, before the Fathers know any thing of it, yet they muſt have their Approbation before the Marriage is conſummated. Sometimes the Mothers will promiſe their Children as ſoon as they are born; yea, ſometimes 2 Women that are Friends, being both with Child together, will make a Match between their 2 Children before they are born, if the one be a Boy, and the other a Girl, and as ſoon as they are born the Contract is made, but the uſual Method is, to betroth or affiance their Children at 2 or 3 Years old, and marry them at 8. The Parties ſeldom ſee one another till they marry. The Manner of their Affiancing or Betrothing is this: Upon the Approbation of the Father of what is done by the Mothers of both Parties, the Mother of the Boy, with 2 other old Women and a Prieſt, come to the Houſe where the Mother of the Girl lives, and preſent her with a Ring from him, whom they intend to betroth to her. The Boy appears afterward, and the Prieſt reads ſomething out of the Goſpel, as a Bleſſing upon both Parties, and then the Father of the Girl pays him a Sum of Money according to his Quality. When theſe Things are done, they treat the Company with Drink, and ſo this Ceremony concludes.

Their Marriages of Children.

Their betrothing.

After this Contract, though it be 20 Years often before they are married, the Boy is bound every Year upon *Eaſter-Day* to ſend his Miſtreſs a new Habit, with all the Trimming belonging to it, according to her Quality.

When they are married, the Father and Mother of the Boy, 3 Days before, ſend Proviſion for a Feaſt to the Houſe of the Father and Mother of the Girl, where the Kindred of both Parties meet at the Nuptials, and are entertain'd, but the Men by themſelves, and the Women by themſelves. The Night before the Marriage, the Bridegroom ſends the Bride an Habit, and ſoon after comes himſelf to ſee what the Mother of the Bride has provided for him. On the Day of Marriage the Bridegroom and Bride are ſet upon 2 Horſes, ſumptuouſly harneſs'd, with Bridles and Saddles of Gold and Silver, if the Perſons be rich, and if poor, they borrow them of the Rich. The Bridegroom rides before, covered with a Veil of Carnation Tiffany, or Gold and Silver Net-work, which reaches down to his Stomach, and the Bride follows with a white Veil, which covers her all but her Eyes, and both holding a long Girdle at each End. Two Men go on each Side of each Horſe, to hold them on, and if they be Children more. A great Train of Youth, who are the Kindred and Acquaintance of both Parties, follow them, ſome on Horſe-back, and the other on Foot, with Tapers in their Hands, as if they were going in a Proceſſion, and ſo with Drums and Trumpets, Haut-boys, and other Inſtruments of the Country, attend them to the Church-Door, where alighting, they go up to the Altar, holding the Girdle in their Hands ſtill, and when they come there, they meet, and lay Forehead to Forehead. Then comes the Archbiſhop, or Biſhop (for Prieſts rarely celebrate this Office) and turning his Back to the Altar, lays his Book upon their Heads, and there lets it lie, tho' a very heavy *Folio*, till he has read the Form of Matrimony, which is much like the *Roman* Form. Having receiv'd the Matrimonial Benediction, they hear Maſs, and then return to the Bride's Habitation, in the ſame Order as they came, to their Feaſting, at which the Women drink more than the Men. At Night the Man goes to Bed firſt, the Woman pulling off the Man's Breeches, though ſhe doth not lay aſide her Veil till the Candle be put out, and then ſhe always riſeth again before Day, ſo that ſome *Armenians* have not ſeen their Wives Faces, nor heard them ſpeak of 10 Years, for the Women never eat with their Husbands.

The Ceremonies of Marriage and Bedding.

As ſoon as any Perſon dies, the *Mordichou*, or the Perſon that waſhes the Dead, runs immediately to the Church, to fetch a Pot of Holy Water, which he preſently pours into a Veſſel full of Water, and then puts in

Of their Burials.

in the dead Corps. Whatever the deceaſed Perſon has about him, though it be a rich Jewel, belongs to this Officer, for the Eaſtern People lie in their Breeches, Shirt and Waſtcoat, becauſe they never uſe any Bed-cloaths. So ſoon as the Corps is waſh'd, they dreſs it with a clean white Shirt, a Pair of Breeches, Waſtcoat and Bonnet, all new, and ſew it up in a Linen Sack, and then the Prieſts come and carry it to Church, the Kindred and Friends of the Deceaſed attending it. Being come to the Church, they ſet the Corps before the Altar, where the Prieſt ſays certain Prayers over it, and then ſetting up certain Tapers round about it, They leave it ſo all Night. The next Day a Biſhop or Prieſt ſays Maſs, and then carrying it by the Biſhop's Door, who there makes a Prayer for the Soul of the Deceaſed, they bring it to the Church-yard to be interred, the Prieſts ſinging Dirges till the Body is let down into the Grave. When the Corps is laid into the Ground, the Biſhop takes 3 Handfuls of Earth, and throwing them one after another upon it, pronounces theſe Words, *From Earth thou camest, to Earth thou muſt return, and ſtay there till our Lord comes*, and then they fill up the Grave. Such of the Friends and Relations as will go back to the Houſe, find a Collation ready for them, and if they are Perſons of Ability, they allow Dinners and Suppers for 7 Days after to certain Prieſts and poor People, believing no Soul departed can be ſaved, unleſs the Survivers are at that Expence.

Waſhing the Corps.

The Interment.

If a Slave dies before he is made free, his Maſter writes a Note, and puts it into his Sack when he is brought into the Church, to this Purpoſe, *Let him not grieve, I make him free, and give him his Liberty*; for they believe, that his Soul would ſuffer Reproach and Tribulation in the other World for being a Slave. If an *Armenian* makes away himſelf, they never carry the Body out of the Door of the Houſe, but make an Hole in the Wall, where they can moſt conveniently, and carry him to his Grave without any Ceremony.

The Burial of Slaves, and ſuch as kill themſelves.

The Night before the Feaſt of the *Holy Croſs*, Men, Women and Children go to the Church-yard to weep over the Graves of the Dead, but they forget not to carry good ſtore of Meat and Wine to feaſt with, when that doleful Work is ended. The poorer ſort do the ſame the Night before the Feaſt of St. *George*.

Though ſome *Armenians* embrace *Mahometaniſm* for Worldly Intereſt, yet they are generally the moſt obſtinate and firm Perſons in the World to their Principles; and it is their Cuſtom, that when any one of them apoſtatizes, and deſires again to return to the Church, he cannot have Abſolution, but at the ſame City or Village, where he firſt forſook or abjured his Religion. They have many freſh and undoubted Inſtances, both of Men and Children, who having turned *Turks*, have not only, with the greateſt Boldneſs, declared themſelves ſorry for their Apoſtacy, curſing *Mahomet* and his Law in the Face of the *Cadi* and *Mufti* himſelf, but have endur'd the greateſt Torments with unſpeakable Courage and Conſtancy.

The *Armenians* firm to their Religion.

The *Armenians* are all *Eutychians*, believing but one Nature in Jeſus Chriſt, though they condemn the groſſer part of *Eutyches*'s Hereſie, for they do not hold, that the Humane Nature was ſwallow'd up in the Divine, as the firſt *Eutychians* did, nor do they believe the Confuſion of Natures in Jeſus Chriſt, as *Eutyches* himſelf aſſerted, but they will have the Divine and Humane Nature to be united in his ſacred Perſon, as the Soul and Body are in Man, and ſo make but One Perſon; and upon that Account they condemn the Council of *Chalcedon*. They acknowledge not the Pope to be ſuperior to their Patriarch, but only Patriarch of *Rome*. They are great Enemies to all that hold the *Roman* Faith, ſo that ſome of them ſtick not to ſay, that 'tis better to be a *Turk* than a *Papiſt*.

They hold *Eutyches*'s Doctrine.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Kings of Perſia, *their Power and Government.*

Aidar, a famous Cheik, honour'd by *Tamerlane*.

AFTER *Tamerlane* had extended his Conqueſts over *Aſia*, and defeated *Bajazet*'s Army, he came into *Perſia*, where at that Time liv'd a Cheik, named *Aidar*, a Perſon in high Reputation for Holineſs and Knowledge of their Law among the People. He ſhew'd great Reſpect to *Tamerlane*, he did many eminent Kindneſſes for all the Officers of his Army, for which *Tamerlane*, who was a grateful generous Prince, vouchſafed him a Viſit, and preſented him with a great Number of Captives, which he had brought along with him out of *Turky*. The Cheik planted one part of theſe Slaves about *Ardevil*, and ſettled the other about his Perſon, and pretending himſelf of the direct Line of *Mahomet*, he took upon him the Name of a *Caliph*, and encreaſing in Power, he laid a Foundation for the Greatneſs of his Family, which his Son ſo much improv'd after his Death, by obliging the People, that finding themſelves ſtrong enough, they rebell'd againſt *Alamout*, their King, and after many Skirmiſhes, defeated him in a Battel near *Taurus*; and he being ſlain by the Hands of *Iſhmael-Sophi*, the Cheik's 3d Son, was ſucceeded by him: He was the firſt King of the Race that embraced the *Alcoran* according to the Interpretation of *Aly*, *Mahomet*'s Son-in-Law.

Iſhmael-Sophi.

Sha-Tammas.

Sha-Iſhmael

Mahomet-Coda-bende.

To *Iſhmael Sophi* ſucceeded *Sha-Tammas*, his Son; and to him *Sha-Iſhmael*, whom the Nobility depos'd in a ſhort Time, for his Cruelties, and ſet up in his Room *Mahomet-Coda-bende*, his Brother. He was no fit Prince for ſo great a Government, either in Peace or War, and therefore has nothing remarkable ſaid of him, but that he was the Father of *Sha-Abas* I. who for his Valour and Conduct was ſurnam'd *the Great*. He was a Perſon of Wit and Policy, as well as Courage, and recover'd not only ſeveral Provinces Weſtward to his Empire, but conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Lar*, *Ormus* and *Candahar*. He was a paſſionate Lover of Honour, and to that End ſought all manner of Ways to furniſh his Empire with Wealth and good Government. He would not ſuffer an *Indian* or a *Banyan* to trade in his Dominions (though afterwards they crept in in the Reigns of *Sha-Sefi* II. and *Sha-Abas* II. who came young to the Throne) becauſe they are worſe Uſurers than the *Jews*, and it ſeldom happens, but where-ever they are, they get all the Money of the Nation into their Hands, which they take up at 9 or 10 in the Hundred, and let it at 2 and an half *per Cent.* by the Month, and ſo keep the Money-Trade in the Hands of his own Subjects the *Armenians* of *Zulpha*. And as he ſought the Advantage of his own Subjects, ſo he was cautious that no Money ſhould be carried out of his Kingdom, and therefore obſerving, that by the Pilgrimages of his Subjects to *Mecca* an abundance of Ducats were ſpent in Preſents and Charges, he went himſelf in a Pilgrimage to the Tomb of *Iman-rez*, at *Meſhed*, and at his Return gave out ſtrange Miracles about it, to divert his Subjects from going to *Mecca*. He was ſo great a Lover of Juſtice, as finding a Cook and Baker to falſifie in their Weights, he cauſed the Cook to be roaſted alive, and the Baker to be put to Death in a red hot Oven, and had likely to have cauſed the Bellies of the Governour of the City of *Iſpahan*, and ſome other Officers, whoſe Buſineſs it was to prevent it, to be ripped up for eating it.

Sha-Abas had many Sons, but none liv'd to Man's Eſtate, but *Sophi Mirza*, a Prince of great Wit, and dexterous at his Arms, and much beloved of the People, which made his Father jealous of him, that he ſought his Throne, yet diſſembled his Suſpicion, becauſe he was his only Son; he concealed his Paſſion, till *Sophi Mirza* having a Son by a Slave, which pleaſed him, as he grew up, he firſt put out his Eyes, and then reſolv'd upon his Death, and to that End commanded a Lord to go and fetch him his Head: The Lord being amaz'd, refuſed to obey his Command, and was baniſh'd the Court; and the King the next Day gave the ſame Order to another, who immediately put it in Execution, and brought him his Son's Head in a Golden Charger. The Sight of ſo ſad an Object brought the King to himſelf, and upbraiding the Lord with Villainy, he baniſh'd him his Preſence for ever, and ſequeſtred his Eſtate, allowing him only a *Ma-*

Slays his Son.

moudi, i. e. about 7 *d.* a Day; but the other Lord, who had so generously refused to aid him in so bloody an Act, he recalled from his Exile, and gave him one of the best Governments of the Empire. *Sha-Abas* bred up his little Grandson in the *Haram* of the Women, in Ignorance and Stupidity, for he often gave him a Dose of Opium to make him dull and unapprehensive; so that when he came to the Throne, after his Grandfather's Death, the Physicians advised him to drink Wine, to restore his natural Heat, and renew his Vigour. *Sha-Abas* reign'd 40 Years, and died in the End of the Year 1628. but before his Decease gave Command, that he should be buried in some Place unknown to all the World, and that they should set his Grandchild upon his Throne, giving him the Name of *Sha-Sefi*.

Sha-Sefi I.

The General of the Horse, and the chief Captain of the *Harquebusses*, with whom he had left his Commands, immediately upon his Death rode to *Ispahan*, and taking him from his Mother, acknowledg'd him for their Sovereign, and putting on him the Royal Robes and Scimetar, set him upon the Throne, where all the Lords came and did him Homage, and the next Day he was acknowledged by the Acclamations of all the People. *Sha-Sefi* was many Years a Novice in the Art of Government, but Time opening his Eyes, he cut off the Heads of *Ali-Kouli-Kan*, and his 3 Sons, and 7 other principal Lords at Court, and by little and little took the Government into his own Hands, farming it to a Visier, who pay'd him a Rent yearly. His Reign was violent, and he was guilty of excessive Drinking, in which, though he kill'd his Queen, and for that Reason not only desisted for a time from it, but forbad that no Man should drink any Wine in all his Territories, and that his Governours should break all the Wine Vessels, where-ever they found them, and spill the Wine; yet this Order was not kept above a Year, but falling to his wonted Excesses, he died of a Surfeit, when he had reign'd 14 Years.

His Excessive Drinking.

Sha-Abas II. succeeded him, and entred upon the Throne at *Casbin*, in the Year 1642, and made his Entrance into *Ispahan* in great Magnificence the next Year. In the Year 1643, came the Prince of *Usbeckes* in Person, to desire Aid of *Sha-Abas* against his Children, who had caused his Subjects to rebel against him, and depose him. *Sha-Abas* was very young, yet being resolv'd to show, that he looked upon himself as a potent King in the peaceable Possession of his own Dominions, he went to meet him, and generously lent him an Assistance of 15000 Horse, 8000 Foot, and 60000 Tomans, for which the *Tartar* gave him in Exchange one of his Provinces, bordering upon *Persia*, which yielded him a very good Revenue by the Cattel, which the Inhabitants breed in great Numbers. While he reigned, the Governour of *Schiras* made him a Present of a wild Ass, whose Skin was as red as Scarlet, having an Horn growing out of his Forehead, about a Foot long. This King reigned about 24 Years, and died at *Tebron* of an Inflammation in his Throat, which was caused by excessive Drinking, and was buried by his own Order at *Kour*. The Christians who had the Happiness to live under him, lament his Decease to this Day in private, not only as a King, but as a Parent, for his Justice and Goodness would never suffer any Violence to be offer'd them, or that they should be disturb'd for their Religion, which they had free Liberty to exercise during his Reign, though the cruel *Mahometans* were often attempting to molest them, and the *Persians* never speak of him but with all the *Encomiums* of a magnanimous Prince, whose Courage and Conduct had in a great measure restor'd their Country to its ancient Splendor, and would have certainly perfected that Work, had he lived longer. Strangers also will ever bewail his Loss, as one who invited them by his Affability and Courtesie to his Court and Country, and encouraged them by buying their Merchandices, and paying well for them.

Sha-Abas II.

A strange Ass.

Sha-Sefi II. succeeded him, yet not without a miraculous Providence; for his Father dying without a Will, and making no Appointment of a Successor by Word of Mouth, the Great Officers, supposing that *Sha-Sefi* was either dead, or rendred unfit for Government by his Father's Severity, chose his younger Brother *Hamzeh-Mirzah*; but an Eunuch, named *Aga-Mabarek*, Tutor to *Hamzeh-Mirzah*, knowing the Falshood of their Reasons for chusing his Pupil, and charging them with the highest Injustice and Treason, in laying aside the elder Brother, whose Right it was, perswaded them to Elect him, and rather than they should persist in their Choice, threatned to strangle his younger Brother, and force them to it, which so astonish'd them, that they changed their Minds, and made him King. Some time after his coming to the Throne, he fell dangerously sick, not having ever enjoy'd perfect Health. Now the Custom of those Countries is, in such Cases, for the Lords of the Court, and Governours of the Provinces to give a Sum of Gold, and putting it into a Gold Bason, set with precious Stones, shake it 3 times over the King's Head, reciting these Words, *Patsha Bashena Olson*, i. e. *This Money is sacrificed for the Health of the King's Head.* If the King recovers, all that Money is given to the Poor, and the King and his *Haram* add very liberally to it; but if he dies, 'tis all put into the Treasury, and the Poor have nothing. *Aug.* 20. 1667, was the critical Day of his Distemper, and every one fearing he would die, the Grandees of the City went all to the Mosque called *Babaron*, to pray for his Health, and gave near 1000 Tomans to the Poor, and the next Day commanded the *Armenians* also to pray for the Recovery of the King, who also thereupon sent their *Kelonter* with 50 Tomans in Gold, to shake over the King's Head, with these Words, *Berai te Sadduke*, i. e. *Destin'd for Alms*, and then went both Clergy and Laity to their Prayers. It pleased God, that he passed the Danger in a few Days; but remaining still in a languishing Condition, it remain'd, that the Physicians should restore him to a perfect Health. The chief Physician, in the Name and by the Advice of the rest, tried all the Secrets of his Heart, but all in vain, and the Astrologers, who were much depended on, despair'd of his Recovery. The Queen-Mother quarrelled with the chief Physician, and accused him of Treason or Ignorance, because he could not cure her Son. These Things were a great Affliction to him, and brought him almost to his Wits End, whereupon he bethought himself of a peculiar Invention, and by a far fetch'd Piece of Wit, lays the Fault upon the Stars, and the King's Astrologers, saying, That the Cause why the King lay in a languishing Condition, and could not recover his Health, was, that his Astrologers had failed to observe the happy Hour or Aspect at the Coronation, which was confirm'd not only by the Physician's Friends, but the *Mirza Maugum*, one of the Astrologers, who bore a secret Grudge against the Prince of the Astrologers, whose Business it was to find out the happy Conjunction for the Coronation of the Prince. This Contrivance found Credit first with the Queen-Mother and the Women and Eunuchs about the King, who was easily influenced with their Fancies, to which he had ever been accustom'd. The Astrologer used some Arguments to vindicate his Care and Judgment, but not prevailing, was forced to submit, for fear of running into further Danger, and so there was nothing to be done, but to repair the pretended Defect, seek out proper Remedies for the Mistake.

His Sickness and Recovery.

The Physicians thereupon consulting the Astrologers, and using many serious Consultations among themselves, agree upon the happy Hour, which was to be attended with many fortunate Events, which was, according to our Account, on *Tuesday*, the 20th of *March*, 1668, about 9 in the Morning, and accordingly all the former Ceremonies were again repeated, as if he had been a new Person, and because his former Name was thought to carry something unfortunate in it, he assumed the new Name of *Solyman*. Upon this new Face of Things, which History can hardly parallel, the King fansied he grew better, and whether it were that Imagination helped his Physick, certain it is, that the Medicines which the King took had a much better Effect, and the King recover'd a greater Measure of Health, whereupon the Physicians were in great Repute, and the Astrologers all put out of Favour, except 2 or 3 of the most skilful.

Sha-Sefi crowned a second time, and called *Solyman*.

In this King's Reign Scarcity, War and Epidemick Distempers afflicted the most part of the Provinces of the Empire. The Dearth at *Ispahan* was so great, that the Poor cried out against the excessive Price of Things, which daily encreased, not so much from the Scarcity, as the Falshood and Corruption of the Officers, who were to set Prices upon Provisions, and are called *Mochteseck*: These Men being brib'd by the Sellers, set what Prices upon their Goods they pleased. But the King being affected with the Cries of the People, committed the Affair to *Ali-Kouli-Kan*, the General of all his Forces: He soon redressed this Grievance, for he reduced the Price to one 5th less only than it had been all

Famine, War, &c. afflict *Persia*.

all along before, cauſed a Merchant to be drubb'd for offering him a Bribe, and ordering the Provinces to bring their Corn to *Iſpahan*, ſoon reduced Plenty to it.

Toward the latter End of this King's Reign, a People that inhabit the North of *Perſia*, poſſeſſing all the Country between the *Caſpian* Sea and the *Indies*, under ſeveral petty *Sultans* or Princes, abſolute in themſelves, entred the Province of *Coraſon*, or *Bactriana*, and *Margiana*, burning and ſpoiling all before them. The *Perſians* made Oppoſition, and putting them to Flight, kill'd 12 or 18000, and took the reſt Priſoners.

A great Earthquake

About the ſame Time there happened a dreadful Earthquake, which overturn'd the greateſt part of the City *Schivan*, and ruined 4 Villages near adjoining, overwhelming above 30000 in the Fall, as alſo *Shamaki*, in the Southern *Media*, by which above 20000 *Perſians* were loſt.

A Comet.

There appear'd alſo a great and remarkable Comet in *Perſia*, which had been ſeen almoſt over all the Earth. The Aſtrologers called it, *Niazouke*, or the *Little Lance*, becauſe it reſembled that Figure, and ſaid in their *Takuims*, or Almanacks, that it ſignified Wars, Murthers, Seditions, Conflagrations, dangerous Diſeaſes, and Overturning of Kingdoms and States, with all manner of Calamities; but they fixed all theſe dreadful Effects upon the *Sunni's*, or *Cafers*, i. e. Idolaters, among whom they reckon the Chriſtians; but they felt ſome of them in *Perſia*.

The *Perſian* Government; their King is abſolute.

The Government of *Perſia* is purely Deſpotick and Tyrannical, for the King has the ſole Power of Life and Death, independant upon his Subjects, and without any Tryals or Proceedings, nor are the chief Lords of their Kingdom exempted from it. When any King dies, and leaves many Males behind him, the eldeſt aſcends the Throne, and the Eyes of all the reſt are put out, and they are confined to the *Haram*, or Womens Apartment; and if there be the leaſt Suſpicion of any Contrivance againſt the King, they are put to Death forthwith, without any further Examination. He obſerves no Rules or Forms of Juſtice, nor ties himſelf to any Laws or Cuſtoms. He judges of Lives and Fortunes as ſeems beſt to him, and uſeth not the common Puniſhments of his Country, but ſuch as his Fancy ſuggeſts. He meddles in Religion, and they do not begin the *Ramadan*, or any other Feſtival, till they have his Leave, and ſometimes he keeps them back a few Days, though the Moon when they are to be celebrated hath been ſeen. His Subjects never look upon him without Fear and Trembling, and they have ſuch a Reſpect for him, and pay ſuch a blind Obedience to all his Orders, how unjuſt ſoever they be, that they follow them, though againſt all Laws both of God and Man; and if they ſwear by the King's Head, it is accounted a more inviolable Oath, than if they had ſworn by all that is ſacred in Heaven or Earth. Sometimes the King of *Perſia* takes away the Wife of one of his Lords, and gives him a new one out of his *Seraglio*; and ſometimes he will reſtore him his Wife again, and take back his Woman. He is ſo extreamly jealous of his Wives, that if a Man looks upon them, he is put to Death without Remiſſion. When he takes them with him into the Country, there are Eunuchs that with Cudgels keep all out of the Way, while they are in *Iſpahan*, and when they are out of the Town, there is a *Courouk*, i. e. a Prohibition that no Man ſtir that Way.

An Oath by the King's Head.

The Audiences of Ambaſſadors.

In the Audiences which the King gives to Ambaſſadors, both Chriſtians and others, there is high Drinking and nothing elſe, for all Affairs are managed by the Miniſters of State; and if any refuſe to drink, they are diſmiſſed with a kind of Diſtaſte.

The King of *Perſia* is very rich in Gold, Plate and precious Stones, and all ſorts of Arms, for they keep Work-men always at Work to make them, and never ſell any. Beſides, in the *Neurouz*, or Spring, all the Kans and Great Lords preſent him with Things moſt valuable, and the Eſtates of all ſuch as are put to Death are confiſcated to the Crown, which much encreaſe the King's Treaſure. All the Silks of *Perſia* belong to him, and upon that Account all that trade in them pay him a certain Rent, as alſo do the other Companies. He hath many Lands, which he farms out to the Country-men, who plow and ſow them, and pay the King half the Profit, though in ſome Places they pay him a Fifth part only; but one Thing is remarkable of theſe Lands, that the *Moulah's*, or Prieſts, will never ſay Prayers upon the Lands that belong to the King, becauſe they ſay, that they are *Hberam*, i. e. Excommunicated, for the King never bought them, but took them by Force from the poor People, and enjoys them only by Uſurpation.

His Revenues.

The State of *Perſia* is divided, like moſt of the *European* States, into 3 Bodies: 1. The Military, or Sword-men, which comprehends the Nobility, King's Houſhold, Kans and Soldiery. 2. The Civil, or Gown-men, which comprehends all thoſe that belong to the Law and Courts of Juſtice, which alſo includes the Eccleſiaſtical Orders. 3. The Body of Merchants, Handicrafts-men, Husbandmen and Labourers.

The Three States.

The Chief Officers of the King's Court or Houſhold, are theſe:

The *Eatmud-Doulet*, who is the firſt Perſon in the Kingdom, next the King, is the Prime Miniſter: All the Affairs of the Kingdom paſs through his Hands, and in the King's Minority he rules all; but becauſe the King's Conſent muſt be had to all his Orders, the Eunuchs and Sultaneſſes cauſe him much Trouble, by obtaining contrary Orders from the King in the Night. This Officer anſwers the Grand Viſier in *Turky*.

Officers of State.

The *Nazar* has the Charge of the King's Goods, of his Breeds of Horſes, Houſhold-ſtuff, Cloaths and Plate, much like the Grand Maſter of the King's Houſe in *France*.

The *Mehter*, who is the firſt Gentleman of the King's Bed-Chamber, is always a White Eunuch. His Office is to attend the King with a Bag hanging by his Side full of Handkerchiefs, which he preſents to the King as often as he demands any. He is always near the King's Perſon, and has his Lodgings in the King's Palace. He has generally the King's Ear, and can ſerve or miſchieve whom he pleaſes.

The *Mir-Akhar-Baſhi*, or Maſter of the Horſe, has the Charge of the King's Stables, which, as well as the Gate of *Ali-Capri*, are a Place of Refuge, and whoever can eſcape thither, though guilty of Murther or Debt, is ſafe. Under him are divers Officers and Querries.

The *Mir-Shikar-Baſhi*, or the Grand Maſter of the Hunt, who is employ'd as the Grand Falconer, and has the immediate Care of the managed Hawks and Birds of Prey. He commands the *Seguan-Baſhi*, who has the Charge of the Dogs, Lions, Leopards, Panthers, and other Beaſts of Chaſe, with a Thouſand other Under-Officers.

The *Vakanviez*, or Chief Secretary of State, which is an Office always conferr'd upon ſome ſpecial Favourite. He reads all Petitions and Papers preſented to the King.

The *Kaſnadar-Baſhi*, or High-Treaſurer, who keeps all the Money that is in the King's Coffers.

The *Iſik-Agan-Baſhi*, the Grand Maſter of the Houſhold, who has divers Officers under him, and the Steward over-rules them all.

The *Mehmender-Baſhi*, or Maſter of the Ceremonies.

The *Hakim-Baſhi*, or Chief Phyſician, by whoſe Allowance all the Phyſicians of the Kingdom are licenſed.

The *Divan-Bequi*, or Chief-Juſtice, who judges in all Civil and Criminal Cauſes, and keeps his Court either in *Ali-Capi*, or in the King's Houſe, where the King himſelf ſits and judgeth when he pleaſeth. To this Judge, as the ſupream Officer in the King's Courts, do all Criminals bring their Appeals, and he makes out Proceſs againſt the Kans, and other Grandees of *Perſia*, who are in Diſgrace. He is generally very rich by reaſon of the great Preſents given him to quaſh Appeals and Indictments, that they come not to the King.

The *Deroga*, who is like the Lieutenant-Criminal in *France*: Recourſe is had to him in all Robberies, Quarrels and Aſſaults, or Batteries and Murthers, and he can do the Perſons wronged Juſtice. He alſo has Power to ſuppreſs all Houſes of Debauchery, and puniſh all Perſons he finds in them by Baſtinado or Fine, though he uſeth the latter moſt.

The *Aatas*, or Conſtable, is an Officer, who acts under the *Deroga*. His Buſineſs is to go the Rounds in the Streets of the great Cities and Towns in the Night-time, with his Watch-men, to prevent Diſorders, and ſtop thoſe he finds abroad; and in caſe they cannot give a good Account of their being out of their Houſes at unſeaſonable Hours, he can commit them to Priſon, and puniſh them. He is put in by the *Deroga*, and is as it were his Man, but he has a Priſon for himſelf in every City or Town.

The *Chirakgi-Baſhi*, who has Charge of the King's Wine, which is chiefly that of *Schiras*, for he ſeldom drinks any other.

The *Meſheal-Baſhi*, who is the chief Torch-Bearer, and furniſheth the Court with Candles, which are made of Wax only. He has all the Fines of ſuch as play at Cards or Dice, which is forbidden by *Mahomet*'s Law, and to that End, as he has divers Officers under him to ſearch out ſuch Perſons as uſe thoſe Games, ſo he has Power to break open any Houſe, where he ſuſpects any ſuch Perſons are if the Maſter be not of great Quality.

The *Kara-Setaſhe* is the King's Chirurgeon or Barber, who lets him Blood, and ſhaves his Head. He cannot part with his Place to another.

The *Melikultuguear*, who has the Charge of the Stuffs for the King's Houſhold, and puts them out to Taylors. He takes an Account of the Shreds and old Habits, which ſerve to make Cloaths for the Soldiers, deducting for them out of their Pay.

The *Mir-ahe*, or Prince of the Seals, who has the Care and Profit of the Seals. This is one of the beſt Employments in the Kingdom. He has the Sale of the Canal-Water to the Country-men, who buy it of him at a dear Rate.

The *Tuſkemal-Baſhi*, or Clerk of the Kitchin, who orders what ſhall be ſerved up to the King's Table, and when it is clear'd, he ſticks his Knife in the beſt Diſh, and orders it to be ſent home to his own Houſe.

The *Schatcers*, or the King's Foot-men, are the loweſt Officers of the King, but one of the hardeſt to be obtain'd, for to be admitted into this Place one muſt have great Credit, and be an extraordinary Foot-man, and give this Proof of it, He muſt run 12 Times from *Hali-Capi* to the Hills, which is a large *Freneh* League and half, in one Day, and ſo run near 100 *Italian* Miles, drinking nothing all Day, but a little Sharbet. Some of theſe *Schatcers* will travel 30 Lgs. in a Day, with 140 Pound Weight on his Shoulders.

There are many other Officers of leſs Note in the King's Court, which are ſo numerous, as well as conſiderable, that it is needleſs to rehearſe them, and moſt of them have their Diet in the King's Houſe, or have an Allowance for Diet from thence.

The Chief of the Military Officers are as followeth:

The Military Officers.

The *Sepeh-Salar*, or the Generaliſſimo of the King of *Perſia*'s Armies, who is never conſtituted but in time of War, and when that ends, his Office ceaſeth. His Place in Council is next to the *Eatmud-Doulet*. But there are other ſtanding Military Officers, whoſe Places are perpetual, for the King of *Perſia* keeps a ſtanding Army in 3 Bodies, which are called *Corſchi's*, *Goulams* and *Tufenkgis*, and every one has a General and other Officers.

The *Corſchi-Baſhi* is the General of the *Corſchi's*, who are an hardy warlike People inhabiting *Perſia*, but deſcended of the *Turks*, and live in Tents, like the *Turcomans*. They ſend their Youth early to the King's Service, and maintain them 2 or 3 Years, till they are taken into the King's Pay, which is from 10 and 12 to 15 Tomans a Year. They are all Horſe-men, well paid and look'd to, and are many times advanc'd to the ſupreme Dignities of the Kingdom. They are able to ſend 50000 Men into the Field, and the King has 22000 of them always in Pay, all good Soldiers, that do Wonders in a Battel. *Sha-Abas* I. did what he could to aboliſh this *Militia*, becauſe he ſaid, None but they could make any conſiderable Oppoſition to the Royal Power, and to that End he gave away ſome of their Privileges to the *Goulams*, but they again recover'd them. The General ought always to be one of their own Body, and the King cannot put any other over them. His Pay is 150 Tomans a Year. Under him are other Officers, as,

The *Mim-Baſhi*, who commands 1000 Men, and his Pay is 62 Tomans a Year.

The *Yux-Baſhi*, who commands 100 Men, and his Pay is 30 Tomans yearly.

The *Om-Baſhi*, who commands but 10 Men, and his Pay is 15 Tomans a Year.

The Pay of every Horſe-man is from 9 to 15 Tomans; beſides, at the General Muſter which the King makes every Year, he gives them uſually a Third part more than their uſual Pay, though he makes ſome Variations according to Favour or Merit. When the King has reſolv'd to put a Great Man to Death, he commits the Execution uſually to a *Corſchi*. Theſe Men have vaſt Numbers of Cattel.

The *Gouler-Agaſi* is the General of the *Goulams*, or which is the 2d Body of the King's *Militia*. They are Slaves, or the Sons of Slaves of all Nations, but chiefly are *Runagado Georgians*. They are about 18000, all Horſe-men, and they do the King very good Service. Their Pay is from 5 to 8 Tomans a Year. The *Corſchi's* are very good Husbands, and if they have a Piaſter to ſpare, will buy a Sheep with it; but the *Goulams*, as ſoon as they have received their Pay, fall a drinking and ſwaggering, and ſpend all. This Body hath this peculiar to them, that they never revolt, for being all Slaves, and of different Nations, they have no Ties of Kindred. The *Goulams* have no other Arms generally, but a Bow and Arrows, with a Skain, though ſome wear Coats of Male and Head-pieces, others Umbraces and Battel-Axes. They never entrench in the Field, but after their Officers have taken up the beſt Places, the reſt ſet up their Tents as near their General's Pavilion as they can.

The *Tufenkgilar-Agaſi* is the General of the *Tufenkgis*, who makes the 3d Body of the *Militia*. This part of the Soldiery was lately inſtituted, and is made up of Plough-men and *Runagado Armenians*, who have been brought up to Labour. They are Foot-men, and their Arms are the Scimitar and Musket. When they march, they have an Horſe or a Mule allow'd them to every 4 or 5 to carry their Luggage and Proviſions. Their Pay is not above 4 or 5 Tomans a Year. Their Officers have more or leſs according to their Quality and Command. They are of no great Reputation, and being numerous might do good Service, but the King never uſeth them, but in Caſes of Neceſſity. They dwell in Tents upon the Mountains in Summer, and remove into the hot Countries in the Winter. They are all well train'd and diſciplin'd by the Governour of their Province, who ſees them muſter and exerciſe their Shooting, and never fails to reward the moſt diligent and expert. They are always ready provided for any Command given for War, having every one his new Suit, and his Musket and Scimitar well ordered in his Cheſt.

The *Eſhek-Agaſi*, or Captain of the Guards, who is the Chief of the *Caſhek's*, or King's Guards, who carry a Musket with a wide Bore. They were lately inſtituted by the *Eatmud-Doulet*, that he might deſtroy the *Divan-begui*, whom he pretended to ſtir up Sedition among the People. This Officer has about 2000 Men under him, of which he ſets a certain Number every Night round about the Palace. He ſtands with a Battoon in his Hand, while the King ſits in Council, and falls on his Face when the King calls him to give him any Command.

The *Topigi-Baſhi*, who is the Maſter of the Ordnance, and Chief of the Sea-Affairs. His Buſineſs is but ſmall, for the *Perſians* have only a few pitiful Guns in their Frontier Towns, and a few large Barks in the *Perſian* Gulf and *Caſpian* Sea, which they maintain there to prevent the Robberies of the *Usbeck Tartars* and *Kalmuches*. Theſe latter are a ſtrong People, but the moſt deform'd under Heaven. Their Faces are ſo flat and broad, that there is the Breadth of 5 Fingers between their Eyes, which are very ſmall, and their Noſe ſo flat, that there is nothing to be ſeen but 2 little Holes, inſtead of Noſtrils. Their Knees and Feet run inward. When they go to War, they carry their Wives and Daughters with them, who fight as valiantly as the Men. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows and Skains, with a Wooden Mace at the Pummel of their Saddles, their Horſes being the beſt in *Aſia*. Their Captain is of ſome ancient Family among them, who is ſignal for Valour. The Duke of *Muſcovy* courts their Friendſhip with Preſents. Their Religion is particular to themſelves, and they hate the *Mahometans*.

The *Kans*, or Governours, are generally choſen out of the Bodies of the *Corſchi's* and *Goulams*, who are handſome Men, and much more valiant than the natural *Perſians*, whoſe Complexion is bad, and Shape ill, as is evident from the *Gaurs*, who are the original Inhabitants of the Country; for the reſt are mixed with *Georgian* Blood. The Governours of Provinces are as great as petty Kings, and are as much fear'd and reſpected by the People. They are ſeldom depoſed, unleſs upon the repeated Complaints of exceſſive Tyranny. Some of theſe Governments are worth 7 or 8000 Tomans, but their *Neurouz*, or New-Year's-Gift, which they are bound to preſent the King with Yearly, much leſſens it. Under theſe *Kans* are Governours of a leſſer Quality, put in by the King, and can be removed only by him, but the *Kan* may correct them for leſs Abuſes, and for greater, his Complaint to the King ſoon procures a Redreſs.

Their Prayers.

The

The *Kelonter* is another Officer, put in by the King in all Places, where there is a *Kan*, or Governour. He is exactly the ſame with the Tribunes of the People among the *Romans*. It is his Buſineſs to defend the People againſt the Tyranny of the Governours, and to take up their little Differences. He has conſiderable Incomes, for they who have any Buſineſs with the Governour, make him Preſents uſually to ſtand their Friend, for he bears commonly a great Sway with the *Kan*.

The *Aſeghs*, or King's Lieutenants, are the laſt ſort of Provincial Governours: Theſe are ſubſtituted by the King in Places, where he had *Kans* in former Times; and ought to have them ſtill, but that he would ſave the Charge; for, the *Kans*, and their Officers, who are like a King's Court, devour all the Profits of the Provinces, except a Preſent yearly given to the King. By this large Catalogue of Officers in the King of *Perſia*'s Court, as well in his Houſhold as Army, it is plain, that his Court is the moſt Magnificent and Glorious in all *Aſia*, and the moſt Civil and Polite in all the *Eaſt*.

§. *The Second of the Three Eſtates of* Perſia *comprehends the Gown-men, ſuch as are their Eccleſiaſticks, or Doctors of their Law, Officers of Juſtice, and thoſe of the Chambers of Accounts. The Metropolitan or Supream of the Eccleſiaſticks, is*

The *Sedre*, or Chief-Prieſt, who is the Prime Miniſter in Spiritual Affairs, as the *Eatmud-Doulet* is in Temporals, to whom alſo he gives place both in Council and in all Publick Ceremonies; but ſince in *Perſia* Eccleſiaſtical Dignities are no bar to Civil Employments, the *Sedre* is many times made *Eatmud-Doulet*. The Dignity of *Sedre* is not limited to one ſingle Perſon, but is often divided between two, becauſe there are two ſorts of Legacies, the one from the Kings of *Perſia*, the other from private Perſons; and for the greater Care of both theſe there are ſometimes created 2 *Sedres*.

The one is called *Sedre-Kas*, i. e. a peculiar *Sedre*, who manages all the Revenues of the Royal Foundations, and diſtributes them to the *Moullahs*, and Students, according to their Merit. The other is called *Sedre El-man-kouſat*, who has the Management of all the Private Foundations. The *Sedre*, whether the Office be in one, or divided, hath two under him, who decide all Points of Religion, make all Contracts, Teſtaments, and Publick Deeds; they alſo judge of Divorces, and of all Civil Debates and Proceſſes. The one of theſe is entitled, *The Skeik-el-ſolom*, and the other, *The Cadi*. Theſe 2 Dignities are in the King's Nomination, and in all the principal Cities of the Kingdom there are 2 of theſe Eccleſiaſtical Judges for all Matters that concern the Law.

There is a *Pickuomaz*, i. e. a Director of the Prayers in every Moſque, who is always there before the Prayers begin, and teaches the People to pray by imitating, or following him: He ſtands foremoſt, that all may ſee him, and beginning the Prayers firſt, makes the reſt ſay after him: He is the ſame with the *Iman* in *Turky*.

The *Moullahs* are the Doctors of the Law, as the *Hodgia*'s are in *Turkey*: They receive large Salaries out of the Legacies given to the Moſques, for reading and interpreting the Law, or *Alcoran*, to the People every *Friday*, and teaching the Sciences to all Comers. As a Mark of Sanctity, they wear a great white Turbant, with a ſingle Camblet-habit of the ſame Colour; their Gate is grave, and Diſcourſe very ſerious, yet mingled with Hypocriſie. When they light into any conſiderable Company, they preſently riſe and exhort them to go to Prayers, which they perform after this Manner: They firſt waſh their Heads, Hands and Feet, and ſpreading a Felt or Mat upon the Ground, lay a flat Stone at the one end of it, about the Bigneſs of the Palm of a Man's Hand, and kneel at the other. They always turn their Faces to *Mecca* in their Prayers, and to that End have a kind of Mariner's Compaſs to direct them punctually where it ſtands: Their Prayers ſeem to be accompanied with a great deal of Zeal; and while they are at their Devotions, they often kiſs the Stone which lies at the further end of the Mat, or Felt, and is brought from *Mecca*, as a more holy Piece of Earth than the common Ground, for that Purpoſe; for, by their Law they are often to kiſs the Ground in their Prayers: Though they are ſeemingly very zealous, yet they take great Notice, whether the Company be attentive, or no.

Their Prayers.

The *Montevil*, which is an Officer belonging to every Moſque, looks after the Repairs of the Building, and the Proviſion of what belongs to the Moſque; and,

The *Mouazen* cries Morning and Evening from the Top of a Tower, *That there is but One God, and that Mahomet is his Prophet.*

The *Perſians* have divers Colleges, called by them *Medreſe*, where there are a great Number of Scholars bred up at a little Charge, out of the Legacies left to the Foundations. They are allow'd a Chamber, but muſt find themſelves Furniture. They have no certain Maſters, but they go for their Inſtructions ſometimes to one, and ſometimes to another, and ſeldomeſt to the Principal of the College, called *Monderes*, becauſe he is generally an unlearn'd Man; for there are ſeveral Perſons in every good City, who are forward to teach the Sciences to get themſelves Honour, and to that End give Men Money to trumpet about their Name, to get them Followers. Their Manner of Inſtruction is thus: The Student firſt reads 2 or 3 Lines, and then the Doctor expounds it; then another reads 2 or 3 more, and ſo on. Every one riſes up out of Reſpect after he has done reading, and ſtands till the Doctor bids him ſit down again. One Doctor teaches all manner of Sciences at the ſame time; for he is not thought Learned among them that cannot talk of All. And certainly, had the *Perſians* the Advantages of Books, they'd prove Men of great Underſtanding, for with thoſe little Helps they have, they will give a good Account of their own Divinity, Logick, Phyſick and Mathematicks. Their Books for the moſt part are a *Perſian* Author *Kolgia Neſer*; ſome of the beſt Pieces of *Ariſtotle*, *Ptolemy*'s *Almageſt*, ſome Treatiſes of *Euclid*, ſome Fragments of *Archimedes*, the Opticks of *Ebne*, *Heiſler*, and ſome other good Books: They have a great Inclination to Poetry, which they grace with lofty Compariſons, and caſt into Rhyme as we do. Their Phyſick-Books are *Galen*, *Averroes* and *Hermes Triſmegiſtus*, whom they call *Galenous Aboualt*, or great Father, and *Ormous*. Their moſt conſiderable Hiſtorian is *Ronze-Elſapha*, who hath written a Chronology of the World from the Creation of it to his Time, but it hath little Truth in it. Their Books though dear, are very common; for every Tradeſman buys them, being very ambitious to learn the Sciences themſelves, and to encourage their Children to do ſo; for they ſend them to School betimes, or if they are Perſons of Quality, have Tutors for them at Home, who keep them cloſe to their Books till they are 18 Years of Age, never ſuffering them to ſtir out of Doors, unleſs it be to go a Hunting, or Shooting now and then; and of this they find this good Effect, that their Children are Diſcreet, Civil and Modeſt, ſo that you ſhall never hear an ill Word come out of their Mouths.

Their Colleges.

Their Way of Inſtruction.

Their Books.

The Education of their Children.

In their Chambers of Accounts there are alſo many Officers, who receive all the Books, Regiſters, and other Papers which concern the King's Revenue, and convey them to *Iſpahan*, where they are regiſter'd in the Chamber of Accounts there, called *Defter Kroon*. As to the Fee-Lands, called *Moulkerbar*, which belong to particular Perſons, but owe to the King certain Annual Rent; the Governours of the Provinces exact them with a ſevere Extortion.

The *Miſtempti* and *Memaleck*, are the Officers that value the Rents of all Lands in Demeſn, which is one of the principal Charges of the *Defter-Kroon*. They alſo take Cognizance of all the King's Farms, Quit-Rents, Proviſions and Expences of Receivers and Collectors. There is alſo *Miſtempti* to value Legacies.

The *Nazar* controuls the *Miſtempti* and the *Memaleck*, and his Hand is required to all Papers of Diſpatch.

The *Deroga*, or Provoſt of the *Defter Kroon*, is to proſecute and puniſh all that are guilty of falſe Receits or Exactions. Into this Office are delivered all the Grants and Aſſignations of the Wages of the King's Officers, and every Man comes and receives his own, or ſends for it to thoſe Places, upon which the Money is aſſign'd; but in all thoſe Places they muſt not go to the Country-men, for this would ſo terrifie them, that they would run away and pay nothing; but there is in every Village or Borough a *Reis*, or Chief of the Place, to whom the Officers apply themſelves for their Money: But ſince there is much Trouble in thus getting their Pay, the Soldiers will loſe a Share for ready Money, and the *Defter Kroon* and his Officers are greatly enrich'd.

The

The greateſt part of the Land in *Perſia* belongs to the King, and is only farm'd by private Perſons. The reſt of the Lands are meaſured, and pay ſo much a Meaſure. The King has alſo Toll and Cuſtom for all Merchandices, which amounts to a vaſt Sum, for the Port of *Bander-Abaſſi* alone brings him, one Year with another, near 20000 Tomans.

§. *The Third Eſtate of* Perſia *comprehends their Tradeſmen, Merchants and Artiſts, with their Trades, Manufactures and Commodities.*

The Trade of *Perſia.* The Commerce of *Perſia*, as in all other Kingdoms, conſiſts in the Trade of the Country and Foreign Traffick. The Trade of the Country is in the Hands of the *Perſians* and *Jews*, and the Foreign Traffick in the Hands of the *Armenians* only, who are as it were the King's and Noblemens Factors to ſell their Silks. As for their Handicraft Trades, they have great Variety, as Carpenters, Joyners, Shooe-makers, Cutlers, Weavers, Maſons, Smiths, and many others. Theſe Artiſts uſe their Feet in Working as much as their Hands, for their Feet ſerve them for a Loom, an Hold-faſt, and ſeveral other Inſtruments.

The Tax on all Tradeſmen. Moſt of the Corporations of Tradeſmen pay the King a certain Sum of Money, which is raiſed upon all the Artiſts of the ſeveral Trades, by an Aſſeſſment according to their Incomes; but the Joyners and Maſons are free, but they are obliged to do the King's Work *gratis*, or pay a Fine to be excuſed, which is the Reaſon that the *Marmor-Baſhi*, who is their Chief, if the King wants 20, ſummons 40, and excuſes them that will give moſt.

Their Carpenters. Their Carpenters and Joyners are but mean Artiſts, having no other Tools than a Hatchet, Saw and Chizzel, and one ſort of Plane, lately brought among them by a *French* Man. And, indeed the Scarcity of Wood that is among them does not allow them Materials to work upon, their whole Buſineſs being to make only Doors and Frames for Windows, which they do very neatly; for they have neither Tables, nor Bedſteds, nor Chairs. Their Joyners have no *Lathe* or Frame for Turning, but a Boy with a Thong

Joyners. makes the Wood to turn upon a Spindle, till the

Their Glew. Joyner faſhions it: But they have an excellent Glew, made of a Root, called *Scherifchoun*, which they grind like Corn betwixt 2 Stones, till it becomes like Sawduſt, and this they ſteep in Water, and uſe it for Glewing.

Writing. Their nobleſt Art is Writing, for they are wholly ignorant of Printing, and all their Books are written. An *Armenian* not long ſince ſet up a Printing-Preſs at *Iſpahan*, and going about to print the Bible, there was ſuch a Clamour among thoſe People who got their whole Living by Writing, that they ſhould be undone, that he was forced to break his Preſs, to avoid the ill Conſequences of the Invention. The

Their ſeveral Hands. *Perſians* uſe 3 ſorts of Hands, *viz. Neſtalick*, or the Set-Hand. 2. *Shakeſte*, or *Divanni*, Court-Hand. 3. *Neskre*, or the Running-Hand, which is much like the *Arabick*. They write with ſmall *Indian* Reeds, and ſay, that to write well a Man ought to lean ſo lightly upon his Pen, that a Fly may beat it out of his Hand. They turn the Paper about with one Hand, while they write with the other, that their Daſhes may be large and free. Their Paper is made of Cotton-Fuſtian ſleek'd. It is brown and weak, for the leaſt Folding tears it. Their Ink is made of Galls and Charcoal, pounded together with Soot.

Their Books. Their Books are written in the *Arabian* Language, which they call *Teſchiſh*, or the Eloquent or Learned Language, for the *Perſian* Language is in little Uſe among them, the Court ſpeaking the *Turkiſh* Language chiefly; and though the Gentry and common People uſe ſomething of it, yet 'tis either mix'd with ſo much *Arabick*, or Gibbriſh, that it hardly deſerves that Name; yet, in the Courts of the Great Mogul, and

The *Perſian* Language. of the Kings of *Golconda* and *Viſapour*, the *Perſian* Language is in ſo great Uſe, that a Nobleman in thoſe Courts would take it for an Affront to be ſpoken to in the Language of *India*.

As for their Painters, they only paint in Miniature, and though they can draw Birds and Flowers indifferently well, yet they know not what belongs to Figures or Stories. They have a moſt excellent Varniſh

Their Varniſh. made of *Sandarack* and *Linſeed* Oil, which they mix together and reduce to the Conſiſtency of an Ointment, and when they uſe it they diſſolve it in the Oil of *Naphta*, or Spirit of Wine many times rectified.

They make Soap of Greaſe or Taſſow, which cauſes it to ſmell ill, and with ſweating to breed Lice: Their Raſors are very thick and heavy: They whiten Tin, Braſs and Copper with *Sal-Armoniack* purified, and reduced to a white Powder, which mingling with melted Tin, they rub it upon the Veſſel with Cotton all over: This they will do ſo nimbly, that in half an Hour's time they will do 5 or 6 Skillets, and at a little Charge. Soap.

They have many Phyſicians, and ſome of them very skilful: They only preſcribe, and give it to the Nurſe, or other Women who attend the Sick, whom they viſit, and they go to the Druggiſts, and buy the Medicines, and make them up. They uſe cold Seeds, peel'd and put in Water, for a Fever, and *China* infuſed in Brandy 15 Days in the Sun-ſhine for ſeveral Diſtempers, enjoyning the Patient at the ſame time not to ſtir abroad, and to abſtain from Wine and Women; but this Medicine they do not uſe in Summer-time. They let Blood very dextrouſly, only by tying a Ligature of Leather, and without rubbing or veining the Place, prick the Vein with a Lance very skilfully, making a large Orifice, and taking away much Blood, if let alone. Phyſicians.

The *Perſians* are moſt excellent Artiſts for Manufactures of Gold, Silk and Silver, of which their rich Carpets and Tiſſues are made; nor do their Silver and Gold Manufactures ever grow Black, or loſe their Luſtre by long wearing and lying by. They make an Abundance of Silk-ſtuffs of all ſorts, and ſuch large Quantities of Taffata's, that they care not for the Stuffs brought out of the *Indies*, though they be much finer. They make much Linen Cloth of all Colours, upon which they faſten Flowers with Gum-water, and ſome Figures, though their Law forbids it. They are excellent Artiſts at Damasking with Vitriol, or engraving Swords, Knives, and other Inſtruments Damask-wiſe: But this they can perform upon the Steel of *Golconda* only, and not upon their own or ours, and therefore they are under a Miſtake, who think our Scimitars and Cutlaſſes are made of Steel of *Damaſcus*. Carpets and Tiſſues. Linen Cloth.

They are great Proficients at making of Bows and Arrows, and ſuch other Weapons as are uſed in their Country. In making of Bridles and Saddles they far exceed us, eſpecially in their Sewing, which they do ſo neatly, and with ſo much Art, with a kind of black Stitch, that it looks like Embroidery. There are an infinite Number that get their Living by dreſſing Seol-Skins and Goat-Skins, the firſt to make Boots for the Gentry and better ſorts of Merchants, and the latter for the poor People. Bows and Arrows.

There is a ſort of Earthen-Ware made at *Kerman*, which is very fine, and being broken, looks as white within as without, but it will not endure Heat ſo well as *Porcellane*, which has this peculiar Quality, that if you pour never ſo hot Liquor into it, neither the Foot, nor Brim's Top will be the warmer. There is an abundance of poor People that get their Living by mending of Glaſs Tobacco-Pipes, by joyning the broken Parts together with a certain Glew, made of Lime and the White of an Egg, and faſtning them with a kind of Lattin-Wire. The Trade for Velvets, Tiſſues and Taffata's, which formerly were tranſported out of *Perſia* into *Europe* in vaſt Quantities, is now much abated, becauſe now they are made in *Europe* better and cheaper. Earthen-Ware.

There is a vaſt Quantity of flat Silks tranſported out of *Perſia* into *Turky*, *Muſcovy* and *Poland*, which the Women uſe in Embroidery of their Veils, Handkerchiefs, and other Linen, becauſe they are lively. Conſiderable Quantities of Silk are tranſported out of *Guilan*; and Seol-Skins and Goat-Skins, which are dreſt in *Perſia*, are tranſported by the *Hollanders* into *India* and *Japan*, and by others into *Muſcovy* and *Poland*. Flat Silks.

The *Perſians* have alſo a great Vent for the famous Root *Ronas*, Fruits pickled in Vinegar, and ſweet Waters, into *India*. Great ſtore of Candied Quinces, and Boxes of Marmalade, made at *Balſora*, are from thence carried into *India*, where they are bought up by the *Mahometans* and *Portugueſes*; for the *Banyans* will eat none, for fear of eating Flies. Plenty alſo of dry'd Fruits are brought out of *Media*, and carried to *Tocat*, *Diarbequir*, *Nineveh* and *Bagdat*, and among the reſt, a ſort of ſmall Apricots, very pleaſing to the Taſte, which being boil'd in Water, makes a pleaſing Syrup, and are the only Diet for the Sick in thoſe Parts. There are alſo a great many painted Calicuts made in *Perſia*, but being coarſe, are only bought and made uſe of by the Poor; ſo that there is very little of it car- Ronas, &c. Dry'd Fruits. Painted Calicuts.

Camels. carried any further than *Turky*. The *Persians* make a great deal of Money of their Cattel; for first, they sell great Numbers of Camels into *Armenia* and *Natolia*, though the *Persian* Governours are unwilling to part with them, and so do in some measure hinder the Trade; for the *Turks* esteem the *Persian* Camels very highly, as being stronger than their own. They also sell great store of Horses and Mules, but their Trade is not so considerable as the former, because they send them only into *India*.

Horses and Mules.

The Provinces of *Media* and the Higher *Armenia* breed prodigious Numbers of Sheep, which the Foreign Merchants come as far as *Tauris* and *Hamadan* to buy, and drive them as far as *Constantinople* and *Adrianople*; and the greatest part of the Mutton, which is spent in *Natolia* and *Romania*, comes out of *Persia*, which enriches that Country much with ready Money. Formerly the Jewellers brought some *Turquoises* of the Old Rock out of *Persia*, but for these 15 Years last past there have been none found, and those of the New Rock are of little Value, because they lose their Colour in a little time, and turn Green.

Sheep.

Turquoises.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Justice and Policy of the Persians; *wherein their Money, Weights and Measures are considered.*

The Justice of the Persians. THE Justice of the *Persians* is very exact and very speedy: Suits are determined upon the Place, without any need of Advocates and Proctors, not but that the Officers of Justice are easie to be corrupted; but in their unjust Exactions, which they carry as secret as possibly they can, they are sooner satisfied than the *Turks*, and if their Injustice be discover'd, upon Complaint to the King, they are punish'd without Mercy. The *Kans* are to do Justice in their Provinces, as representing the King's Person, but lest they should wrong and oppress the People, the King places a *Kelonter*, who is only responsible to the King in every City, and his Business is to defend the People from the Injustice and Oppression of the Governours. In every City the King has a *Divan-Begui*, and the *Kan* places a *Deroga* under him, who appoints an *Aataï*, or Captain of the Watch, who goes about the Streets a Nights to hinder Disorders, and carries every one to Prison that he finds abroad at unseasonable Hours, unless he can give a very good Account of himself.

The *Kelonter's* Office.

Murther how punish'd. Murther is always severely punish'd, and no Money will save the Criminal, for when the Murtherer is taken and brought before the *Divan-Begui*, he delivers him to the Parents, or Kindered of the Person slain, who carry him directly to the Place of Execution, and without Compassion torture him to Death: Nor will the King upon the Importunities of the Kindred of the Murthered deny Justice for Favour or Affection to any Man, unless they will be bought off with Money, which, though sometimes offered, is very rarely accepted. Nor are the *Persians* more severe in the Punishments of Murther, than Debauchery. The King being inform'd, That a Woman had prostituted her own Daughter, commanded the Mother to be thrown Headlong from a Tower, and the Daughter to be thrown to his Dogs, which he keeps on purpose for such Chastisements.

Debauchery how punished.

The High-ways well kept. Above all Things, there is extraordinary Care taken for the Security of the High-ways; and for that Purpose, there are certain Guards, called *Radars*, set at convenient Distances all over *Persia*, who are ready to pursue upon the least Noise of a Robbery, and who examine all Men whence they come, and whither they are going; and if any Man answers not, as he ought, or is found to trip in his Account, they carry him before the next Governour. If any Person commits a Robbery, there needs no more than to send to the Places where the *Radars* have their Station, to know what is become of the Person, and they'll find him out, for all Places are so guarded, that it is impossible for him to escape. If any one endeavours to travel through the Mountains, or unfrequented Roads, the *Radars* seize him upon Suspicion for not taking the direct Road. When any one is convicted of Theft, he is immediately condemn'd, for there is found no Mercy in *Persia*. The Punishments inflicted upon such Felons, are of divers kinds; sometimes they are tied to a Camel's Tail by the Feet, and their Bellies are ript open; sometimes they are buried alive all but their Heads, and starved to Death, in which Torment they will desire the Passengers to cut off their Heads, though it be a Kindness forbidden by the Law; but the most cruel Punishment of all is, when they set a Thief on Horse-back, with his extended Legs fasten'd to a long Stick behind, then larding him with lighted Candles, they suffer the Candles to burn into his very Bowels. As for those that steal in Cities, they tie them by the Heels to the Tail of a Camel, and rip up their Bellies, and while the Beast drags the poor Creature along the Streets, one goes before him, crying, *The King thus punishes this Man for such a Crime*; and if he be not dead by that time he is dragg'd through the City, they hang him upon the next Tree. The *Radars* have but little Wages for securing the Ways, and therefore they'll use great Rhetorick with the Travellers, to get something of them for their Labour and Care. If a Merchant be robbed, the Governour of the Province must make good whatever he has lost, according as he can make it out by his Oath, or Book. The most unjust Thing that Travellers meet withal in *Persia*, which is rather an Abuse than a Thing allow'd, is from the King's *Shappars*, or Posts, who carry the King's Dispatches to the Governours of Provinces. When they are sent any whither, the King's Esquire is to find them an Horse and a Man to run to the End of the Stage, and bring him back again, but if the Courier's Horse be tired, or not so good as another's, he has a Power to dismount any Horse-man he meets upon the Road, and he must not resist him. This Privilege they often abuse, by changing Horses without just Cause, or making Travellers pay them Money to save their Horses.

Theft how punished.

In Cities.

The *Radars* beg.

In the Distributions of Inheritances in *Persia*, the Sons have 2 Parts, and the Daughters one; so if there be but one Son and one Daughter, the Son has 2 Parts and the Daughter one; and if there be 2 Sons and one Daughter, the Sons have each 2 fifth Parts and the Daughter one, and so in other Cases: But as to the Right of Inheritance, they have a very unjust Law devised for the Propagation of the Faith of *Mahomet*, and that is this: If a *Christian* turns *Mahometan*, when any of his Kindred dies, all the Estate of the Deceased belongs to him, and his Children shall be excluded, tho' he be no nearer than to the 5th Generation: The Author of this Law gave it out, that he was commanded it by *Dgiafer*, one of the 12 *Imams*, who affirm'd, that it was revealed to him from God; but the Christians have found out a Knack to evade this Law, by making a pretended Sale of their Goods to trusty Persons, and then disposing of them by Will, which the *Mahometan* Judges for a little Money will confirm, and so their Estates remain in their Families.

Inheritances how divided.

They have a singular Way of binding Criminals, by putting a forked Piece of Timber before their Throat, and the 2 Pronks of the Fork going on each side of the Neck, and the Hand of the Prisoner being shut into an hollow Place at the End. Their ordinary Rack to extort a Confession of Robberies, and other Crimes, is for Men to pinch off the Flesh with hot Pinchers, and to give them Blows on their Feet with a Cudgel; for Women, they put a Rat into their Drawers, which being next their Flesh, torments them grievously. The usual Punishments which they inflict upon Malefactors, which they would not put to Death, is to pluck out their Eyes, or else to pierce the Nerves of their Ankles, and hanging them up by their Feet, give them a certain Number of Blows with a Cudgel, and sometimes cut the Nerves short off, but such as they put to Death, they do to them as is above-men-

Their Way of binding Criminals.

Their Juſtice in Selling.

mentioned. The *Perſian* Government, in relation to Proviſion, is the beſt in the World; for there is a *Mechteſek*, who ſets a Rate upon all ſorts of Proviſions every firſt Day in the Week, and if any Seller be diſcover'd to ſell by falſe Weights or Meaſures, they are led about the Streets with a *Taklekolas*, or a Bonnet like a Bee-hive upon their Heads, and a Bell about their Necks to expoſe them firſt to the Laughter of the People, and then they are fined, and receive ſo many Drubs upon the Soles of their Feet. This is done to ſecure the poor labouring Tradeſmen from being injured and wronged, and there is ſo good Order preſerved, that you may ſend the leaſt Child to Market.

The moſt current Monies of *Perſia*, are,

The moſt current Coins.

Abaſſi's,	which are worth	18 *Sous*, 6 *Deniers*,
Mahmoudi's,		8 *Sols*,
Schai's,		4 *Sols* and half,
Cabeghi's,		2 *Deniers* and half,

Or in *Engliſh*,

l.	*s.*	*d.*	*q.*
0	1	4	2½.
0	0	8	0½.
0	0	4	0
0	0	1	

The Abaſſi's are the beſt Money in the World, they are the fineſt Silver, and the Officers of the Mint dare not coin them, till they have refin'd the Silver appointed for the making of them. The Piaſter weighs 13 Schai's, and the Toman 50 Piaſters. The *Man* of *Iſpahan* is a Weight of 12 Pounds. In Geometry the *Perſians* make uſe of a certain Meaſure, which they call the *Parſange*, or *Paraſang*, which is as much as 3 Miles, or a *French* League, their Mile contains 1000 Cubits, and the Cubit 24 Fingers, and the Finger 6 Barley-corns laid ſide-ways by one another, 6 Barley-corns ſo laid make an Inch.

The Paſs.

Jang.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Manners, Cuſtoms and Habits of the Perſians.

THE Manners and Cuſtoms of the *Perſians* are correſpondent to their Religion. They never bear the Names of their Predeceſſors, but, like the *Jews*, for Diſtinction ſake, ſay, *Such an One, the Son of ſuch an One.* When they circumciſe a Child, and give him a Name, they write 3 or 4 Names in a Paper like Lots, which are drawn by a Child, and which of them is drawn, that's the Name of the Child. The Women that are barren ſwallow that which is cut from the Child at its Birth, believing, that it will make them conceive. They are very inquiſitive about the Time to come, and conſult Aſtrologers like Oracles for that Purpoſe. The King has always 2 or 3 with him to tell him the good and bad Hours; for he will undertake nothing, till firſt he be inform'd by them of the lucky Minute of ſome favourable Conſtellation, when he is to ſet about it, for if the King has bad Succeſs in any Affair, wherein he hath not conſulted the Aſtrologers, all attribute the Cauſe of it to the Negligence of the Prince, who omitted to enquire for an happy Minute. This ſuperſtitious Opinion has made Aſtrologers as neceſſary at the *Perſian* Court, as other Officers, and coſt the King large Sums to maintain 'em; for if the King have Senſe enough not to give Credit to all their Raveries, yet he muſt ſeem to rely much upon them, becauſe under the Pretence of a good or bad Minute, he orders all Affairs as he pleaſes, and no body murmurs at it, no not ſo much as Strangers, to whom if they complain of a Denial of their Deſires, he returns an Anſwer, That it is the ſuperior Power of the Stars that oblig'd him to act ſo or ſo.

Their Names, how given.

A Medicine againſt Barrenneſs.

Aſtrology much uſed.

The general Study of it.

From this Humour at Court it is, that there is a general Inclination of all ſorts of People to Aſtrology; not only the Learned and Men of Letters ſolicitouſly apply themſelves to it, but even the common People and Soldiers tamper with it. If a Man can but read, he fails not daily to obſerve the Diſpoſition of the Planets, their Aſpects, and their Conjunction and Oppoſition, that he may be thought to be ſome body. In Converſation all their Diſcourſe is about the Spheres, Apogees, Perigees, Excentricks, Epicycles, and ſuch Names, by which they ſeek to diſtinguiſh themſelves from the Vulgar.

Their Almanack.

There is an Almanack ſold every Year in *Perſia*, which is called the *Tacuim*, containing the Longitudes and Latitudes of the Planets, their Conjunctions and Oppoſitions, with ſuch like. It is alſo full of Predictions about War, Sickneſſes and Famine, and fixeth the proper Seaſons to put on new Cloaths, let Blood, purge and travel, with many ſuch like Inſtructions. They give great Credit to this *Tacuim*, and they that can get one, govern themſelves in all Things according to the Rules that are ſet down in it; and ſuch as have not that, go to know the Succeſs of their Affairs to a Doctor of the Law, and deſire him to open the *Alcoran*, and tell them the Iſſue of their Buſineſs. Thereupon the Doctor muttering ſome ſtrange Words, opens the Book, and if he meets with affirmative Commands, he declares the Undertaking ſhall proſper, if negative, he diſſwades from the Enterprize. They uſe alſo a certain ſort of Divination called *Rambe*, by Even or Odd, caſting Dice, or opening a Book called *Faal*, to prognoſticate good or bad Fortune, by Numbers Even or Odd. They alſo interpret Dreams, and uſe many other ſuch like Tricks, but principally about the Court, where there are Flocks of idle People continually.

Divinations by the *Alcoran*.

The *Perſians* are mightily addicted to ill Language, and foul-mouth'd Reproaches, ſo that when they fall out, inſtead of fighting with their Fiſts, they fight with their Tongues, and curſe one another, but they never blaſpheme God, or ſwear, or wiſh themſelves at the Devil, becauſe they ſay, *He is a Fool that gives himſelf up to the Devil.* Their Oaths of Affirmation are, *Sera-a-zire-ſha*, i. e. By the King's beloved Head, or, *Ervat Pigumbir*, i. e. By the Spirit of the Prophet. In their evil Wiſhes, they'll ſometimes ſay, Let thy Soul have no more Reſt in Paradiſe, than a *French* Man's Hat has in this World.

The *Perſians* are naturally Diſſemblers and Flatterers, and they make it their Study to acquire Eſteem and Applauſe. They love to give and receive Preſents, and eſpecially to preſent their King. Their Luxury and Expence is exceſſive, and though it be againſt *Mahomet's* Law to uſe Gold or Silver-Plate, unleſs in Commerce or Money, none but the Poor obſerve it.

Their Luxury.

The *Perſians* are very much accuſtom'd to mutual Viſits at their ſolemn Feſtivals, and the more noble ſtay at home, to expect the Viſits of their Inferiors, who ſtay in the Great Hall, till they come out of their *Harams*. When the Noble-man comes to them, he ſalutes the Company, by laying his Hand upon his Stomach, and bowing. After ſome Compliments, he gets on Horſe-back, and being attended with all his Viſitants, goes to the King's Court, to expect ſome Kindneſs by Virtue of their Favour. The King uſually ſends them to the Governours of Provinces with an Hawk, or *Calaat*, giving Order that the ſaid Governours ſhould remember the Serjeant-Porter. The Kan, to whom the *Calaat* is ſent, hearing of its Coming, meets it with all his principal Officers, and chief Inhabitants of the City, with Drums, Trumpets, and all ſorts of Muſick, and as ſoon as he perceives the Meſſenger, makes a low Obeyſance and a Prayer for the King, giving God Thanks, that he is in his Mind, and having put it on, returns to the City with all his Retinue, and makes a great Feaſt at his Houſe for the Company, ſhewing them the *Calaat*, who, by way of Compliment, cry, *Moubrek Baſhet*, i. e. May it be bleſſed and prove a good Omen.

Their Viſits.

The Manner of their Viſits.

The *Perſians* are not much addicted to Gaming, not only becauſe their Law forbids it, but becauſe the *Meſhaldar-Baſhi* puniſhes all Gameſters; but the richer ſort laugh at them, and regard them not. Among the *Perſian* Games there is one which they call *Gengeſte*, which is upon the Cards. They have 8 Suits of Cards

Their Averſion to gaming.

Their Games.

Cards. They also play at Chess, and Ticktack, which are most in use with them. The Shop-keepers also play in the Streets with little Bowls like our Marbles with which Children play. But they have no Bowling-Greens nor Tennis-Courts, nor do they know what those Sports mean. Neither the *Persians*, nor any of the Eastern People use walking as we do, but are amazed to see us do it so long together. They always sit upon a Carpet in their Gardens for Air, or Pleasure, and if they rise, 'tis to gather some Fruit from the Trees, not caring to eat what another has handled. Their Men never dance, but their Curtisans at their Feasts dance open-faced, and shew a 1000 Postures to divert the Company. Their Jugglers are every jot as good as ours, and their Rope-Dancers surpass them.

Walking asham'd.

Dancing.

The *Persians* are as superstitious as the *Turks*, and wash their Heads, Mouths and Foreheads always before they go to Prayers. Their Law also appoints another Washing, which is to go to their Baths after they have been with their Wives; and some are so superstitious as to go to them every Day; but these common Baths are very dangerous, for many have gotten the foul Disease by going into them.

Their Washings.

Their Barbers, who are very neat, and surpass ours for lightness of Hand, for one can hardly feel their Razors, have also a Knife to pare the Nails of the Hands and Feet, which they do very dextrously. Their Lawyers cut their Beards with Scissors, but do not leave them so long as the *Turks* do by much, but the Courtiers and Soldiers shave off all, except what grows upon the upper Lip, for they hold long Mustaches to be a great Ornament to the Face.

The *Persians* are extreamly vain, and much given to Luxury, which puts them to vast Expences, not only in Apparel and Furniture, but in Servants, of whom they keep great Numbers, and at their Tables, which they fill with a great many Dishes. In their Travels they carry a world of Baggage, because they will have as great Conveniencies as if they were at Home, and their Tents are very magnificent. Persons of Quality lead a very idle Life in *Persia*; in the Morning they go to Court, and return home at Noon, where they spend the rest of their Day in smoaking Tobacco; and, if they visit any of their Friends, that is the greatest part of their Conversation. Their Pipes are Glass, and they smoke through a Vessel of Water, and these they carry with them in their Visits. They will not eat any thing that a Christian hath but touched, thinking it to be polluted; and therefore will not suffer them, to touch any Flesh, or any other Thing sold for Food in their Markets, till they have bought. If a Christian drink in their Pot they break it immediately. They will not suffer any Christian to enter into their Coffee-houses or Bagnio's, because they account them *Medgu*, i. e. impure. If a Fire break out in any of their Houses, they will not put it out, only save what Goods they can, but let it burn down as many Houses as it can, till others, who are not of their Law, put it out.

Their Luxurie in Apparel.

The Nobility are very idle.

Their Aversion to Christians.

The Habit of the *Persians* is a Robe or Vest, which they call a *Kaba*, that comes down a little below their Knees. It is made commonly of fine Cotton Cloth, dyed red, yellow, green, or any other Colour they fancy, and so sleek'd, that it seems to be Sattin. It is quilted with Cotton for Winter, but made thinner for Summer. These Linens would be very cheap, but the Persons of Quality change their Robes every Day. Their Sleeves are long, close to their Arms, and reach as far as their Wrists. It is fitted to their Bodies as far as the Waste, but then 'tis wide and loose. Over this they wear a noble Girdle of Silk, adorn'd at the Ends with Flowers of Gold, over which they wear another Girdle of fine *Kerman* Wool. The richer sort are so vain, as to wear 3 Girdles, 2 Silken ones, and a 3d of *Kerman* Wool, which is tied uppermost. Under their Robe or Vest they wear a short Wastcoat of flower'd Fustian, quilted, and set thick with Oylet-holes, which comes down to the middle of the Thigh. They call it an *Acarlick*. Their Shirts are for the most part of Calico (for they have no Linen in *Persia*, nor in the *Indies*) and sometimes of Silk of divers Colours; they have no Necks, but only an Hem like Womens-Smocks. Their Breeches, or Drawers, come down to their Ancles, without any Codpieces. Their *Sefir*, or Bonnet, which we call a Turban, is made of a fine Piece of Silk, mingled with Gold, being in Form much like our large Pumpions, and the Tops of them are a little flat, and the Ends of the Silk being garnish'd with Gold and Silver, make a kind of Posie. These Bonnets are for the most part very heavy, especially the Noblemens, which are nothing but Gold and Silver, the meanest of which are worth 200 Crowns; but there are some worth 4 or 500, which are worn by the greatest Lords. There is scarce any Officer of Quality that doth not wear a rich Jewel in his Bonnet. The more inferior *Persians* cover their Heads with a little *Calot*, or Stuff, over which they wreath a Turban of white Cloth, and over that a Turban streak'd with several Colours, which hath so many Casts round as makes it look very big. The *Moullah's* always wear their Turbans white. The meanest sort of People wear long and sharp pointed Caps of white Felt, with a little Slit before and behind, like *English* Caps, and sometimes they put a sorry Turban about it. Within they wear nothing but Caps lined with Lamb-skin. The Courtiers and Soldiers wear their Daggers upon their Stomachs, stuck in their Girdles; the meanest Soldier inlays the Handle and Sheath of his Dagger, and the Grandees have them all beset with Pearl. In *Sha-Abas*'s Dagger was a Diamond, and some other Stones, valued at above 20000*l*. Over their Vest they wear a Justacor, fasten'd at the Top with a Button, and most usually they have 9 tufted Buttons before, set by 3 and 3, at an equal Distance, for Ornament. This Garment is made of Cloth or Tissue, which in Summer time wants Sleeves and Fur, but in Winter is lined with Martins, or a grey Lamb-skin, which comes from *Koraſan*. All these several Garments are of several Colours. Besides all these, in Winter they wear a long Cloak down to their Heels, with Sleeves of the same Length, lined with rich Fur. The Persons of Quality, and some of the meaner sort, make no more of Gold and Silver, than we do of Druggets; for a Man that has but 7 or 8 Tomans (or 30*l*.) a Year shall spend 5 in Cloaths, which Excess in Habit is so imitated by all, that a Man can hardly tell the Servant from the Master: And hence it is a Proverb among the *Persians*, *Carbebe Leban*, i. e. *Fine Cloaths make a Man esteem'd at Court*; but in the Reigns of *Sha-Abas* the First and Second, this Disorder was not allow'd, but Men were obliged to go clad according to their Condition, and drubb'd if they exceeded it. Because it is very cold in *Persia*, they make use of 3 sorts of Fur, Lamb or Cats-Skin, and Fox-Skin for the meaner sort, and Martins for the Grandees at Court and Persons of Quality. Their Shooes are much like Womens Slippers, the Heel is about 2 Inches high, and no thicker than Womens Shooes, they are peak'd, and made commonly of Chagrine of a green Colour, or Carnation. They wear them so short, that all the Heels hangs over almost. Their Stockings are made of Cloth, very wide, and all alike big; they reach up to the Knee, but are tied below it; and that they may not be worn out by their Slippers, they sew a Piece of Leather to the Heel.

Three Girdles.

Their Turbans.

Jewels in their Bonnets.

Their Daggers inlaid, or set with Pearls.

Their Cloaks.

Their Vanity of Cloathing.

Their Furs.

Their Shooes.

The Women in *Persia* are very richly habited, but their Garments are all of a Piece, though little different in Shape from the Mens, open before, and comes no lower down than the Calf of their Legs. Their Girdle is not tied fast, but hangs carelesly, their Sleeves also are close to their Arms, and reach to their Wrists. Upon their Heads they wear a little Bonnet, raised like a little Spire, adorn'd with precious Stones according to their Quality, and from it falls down a Veil behind, which is very graceful. They wear Breeches like Men, and their Shooes are almost like theirs. They gather their Hair into a Tress, and sometimes add false Hair to it to make a long Lock, which they put in a Velvet or Sattin Case, embroidered, which hangs down behind to the Waste. They put Rings through their Noses, which they pierce with Needles, and though within Doors they have their Face and Breast uncover'd, yet when they go abroad in the Streets, all, both Rich and Poor, are cover'd with a great Veil, or Sheet of very fine white Cloth, of which one

Their Neatness in their Cloaths.

The Womens Habit.

Their Hair.

Their Veils

one half like a Forehead-Cloth, comes down to the Eyes, and going over the Head, reaches down to their Heels, and the other half muffles up their Face below the Eyes, and being fastned with a Pin to the Left side of the Head, falls down to their Toes, covering their Hands, with which they hold the Cloth by the 2 Sides, so that they are covered all over, except their Eyes. When they travel it is commonly upon Camels, on which they are placed in *Caschares*, which are a sort of cover'd Panniers, which they put on each side of the Camel, that they may not be seen; for, indeed, the *Persian* Women are seen by no Man, but their own Husbands. They are very idle in their Houses, not concerning themselves with any sort of Housewifry. Indeed, every thing is at the Husband's Disposal, so that the Women are rather Slaves than Wives. They spend their Time in taking Tobacco after several Fashions.

Women not seen by Men, but their Husbands.

When they go to the Baths, happy is she that has the finest Cloaths, and bringeth the best Collection. They that have Slaves cause them to rub their Arms, Legs and Thighs till they fall asleep, having no other Divertisement in their voluptuous Prison. The higher a Man is in Dignity, the more he glories in having a great Number of Wives and Slaves, and his absolute Power keeps them in Order, either willingly, or by Constraint. Within Doors the Women, as well as the Men, sit as our Taylors do in *Europe*: They lie also as do all the Eastern People, upon a Quilt on the Ground, without Sheets. They have always on a Smock and a Pair of Drawers, and many times also an *Acardicke*, or Waistcoat. They cover themselves with a quilted Coverlet, set with Oylet-holes, and over it a Cloth painted with Flowers and other Fancies.

Their Bathing.

Their Lying.

The Nobility keep 2 sorts of Eunuchs to guard their Sultanesses, or Wives, *viz.* The White, who never come near the Women, but guard the Doors of the *Haram*, the Black, who are flat nosed, and frightful to look upon; these attend only upon the Women, and if there be a Necessity of the Womens going abroad at any time, they go behind and before with Battons in their Hands, to drive the People out of the Way.

Their Eunuchs.

When they wear Mourning for any Relation deceased, it consists in a Girdle, the 2 Ends whereof hang down to their Stomach, where they cross them. The Women mourn a long time for the Dead, as they do also in *Turky*, and all over the *Levant*; for during several Months, when any Woman comes to see them, they renew their Lamentations, weeping with a loud Voice, and sighing, but in such a Tone, as one would think they were singing; and every time they go to the Grave of the Party deceased, though it be more than a Year after, they renew their Cries, as if he were but just dead; but the Men, when any of their Relations die, they rend their *Caba* before, as a Sign of Grief, and for 7 Days together give Alms to the Poor, as do also the Women.

Their Mourning.

The *Persians* divide the Natural Day into 4 Parts, *viz.* 1. From Sun-rising to Noon. 2. From Noon to Sun set. 3. From Sun-set to Mid-night: And, 4. From Mid-night to Sun-rise. At Mid-night, Morning and Sun-set they make a most hideous Din in every great City with Kettle-Drums, Haut-boys, Lattin-Basons, and other Instruments, upon which there are some Men hired to play for a Quarter of an Hour together in some Place, where they may be heard all over the City; and in the Cities where the Governours reside they have Cornets, above 7 Foot long, with deep Mouths, which may be heard half a Lg. These Instruments are employ'd always at their great Solemnities, as also when the King creates any new Officer or Governour; and they have also a Privilege to play at any House where they understand there is a Male Child born; but the Nobility value it not, though the meaner sort dare not refuse it.

Their reckoning of Time.

Their great Cornets.

The *Mahometans* in the Computation of Time make use of Lunar Months, which they thus call, 1. *Moubarren*, 2. *Cepher*, 3. *Rebia-el-Avel*, 4. *Akner*, 5. *Gamadil-Avel*, 6. *Gamadil-Akner*, 7. *Regeb*, 8. *Shaabon*, 9. *Ramezan*, 10. *Shaval*, 11. *Zikade*, 12. *Zilhagge*, and every Month begins from the first Appearance of the Crescent; but in their Astronomical Accounts, and the Calculation of the Long. and Lat. of the Planets for composing their Almanacks, they make use of Solar Months, thus nam'd, *Azar* 31 Days, *Onzon* 30, *Ajar* 31, *Harizon* 30, *Tamouse* 31, *Ab* 31, *Eclout* 30, *Techrion-el-Avel* 30, *Techrion-el-ilanis* 30, *Kanon-el-Avel* 31, *Kanon-Elsani-Shaabas* 28 or 29, answering to our *February*, and so this Account accords exactly with the *Julian* or *Roman* Account. The Day of the *Vernal Æquinox* is the first Day of the Year, which they call *Neozooze*, and is one of their principal Festivals; for on that Day all their Grandees appear at Court, and present the King according to their Quality; and if they can meet with nothing rare they do it in Ducats of Gold; and some present him with 10000. They also give God thanks for preserving them to see the New Year, and securing the Fruits of the Earth from bad Seasons, for the Corn is well come up by this time. Upon this First Day of the Year if a *Persian* has not where-with-all to buy him a new Habit, he will Mortgage his own Body to have one, so proud and luxurious is the Nation from the Highest to the Lowest.

Their Months, Lunar.

Solar.

Their New-Year's-Gift to the King.

The *Persians* desire not Delicacies, or Dainties, both the Nobler and Meaner sort being very temperate in Diet, in regard that Wood is so dear about *Ispahan*. They never eat boiled Meat above once a Day, and as for their Dinner, which they call *Shate*, it consists of Bread, Cheese-curds, Milk, burnt Wine, Melons, and other Fruits in season, to which the Rich add wet and dry Sweet-meats. At Night their usual Food is *Pilaw* and Roast-meat. They buy their Provisions from Hand to Mouth, especially the *Mahometans*, which is a double Charge; but the *Armenians* live thriftily, and buy at once a good Quantity of Provisions, which will serve them for a time. Mutton, Kid, Pullets and Pigeons are the usual Diet of the *Persians*, for they very rarely eat any Beef. The King and great Lords will sometimes eat a Piece of an Hare, when they have been a Hunting; but when they have kill'd a wild Boar, they send it always to some Christian, in Expectation to be presented for the Honour done him. They have no Diversity of Victuals, or Made-Dishes in *Persia*, their Diet being more to satisfie their Hunger than please a nice Palate. They understand not how to roast Meat, and therefore seldom do it, and if they do, it is by Bits. They usually bake their Meats in an Oven, and this is the Roast-meat, sold in certain Shops at *Ispahan* in what Quantity one pleases to buy; and there are other Cooks that sell boil'd Meat or Rice. Their Sauces are only certain Fruits pickled up with Vinegar. They have 2 sorts of Broth, the one call'd *Schilao*, and the other *Cangi*, the first is made of Rice boil'd in Water with Salt till it is pretty thick; and the other is made of Rice boil'd in Water, but strain'd out and thicken'd with Flour, and the Yolks of 2 Eggs, and sweeten'd with Sugar: This last is a pleasant Food, easie of digestion, and very nourishing: It is given much to the Sick, who scarcely are allowed any other Food.

Their Diet.

The sorts of Food.

They line no part Meat.

Their Broths.

The *Persians* are immoderate in the excessive Eating of Fruit, some eat 4 Mans of Melons at a time (a Man is 12 Pound) and many die of it. Their Bread is very white, for they have Wheat enough to furnish the whole Kingdom. They bake every Day, and making up their Bread in thin Cakes, strow them with *Sesamum*, or Poppy-seed. They bake their Bread in Ovens made in the Ground, and at *Ispahan* in an Earthen Pot.

Their eating of Fruit.

Their Bread.

The *Armenians* make a sort of Bread as thin as Paper, and bake it upon a thin Iron Plate, made of red Copper tinn'd within side, for by the Law of *Mahomet* they may not make use of Silver, but the King useth Gold Plate. To eat their Broths they use Wooden Spoons, but take up their Rice with their Fingers, because that is thick. They make great use of Earthen-Ware, which is very pretty, because of the pretty Varnish they put upon it. It is made in *Kerman*, and the *Dutch* learn'd their Art of making Earthen-Ware from thence.

Earthen Ware.

At their Debauches the first Thing they set upon the Table is a Pipe, Tobacco, and a Dish of Coffee. They smoak all Day long, which they are enabled to do, because they draw the Smoak through a long Glass-Bottle of Water. They sing very little in their Cups, but make themselves merry by reciting a vast Number of wicked Verses with a great deal of Gravity. Many of them will confess, that their taking of much Tobacco is hurtful, but they plead, *'Tis the Custom*. Some of them also take Opium, which is made of Poppy-Juice, made into Pills. They take no more than the Head of a Pin at first, but encreasing their Doses by Degrees, come at length to take the Quantity of half a Wall-nut; and when they are come so that Pitch they dare not give over, because they endanger their Lives, unless they fall to drinking of Wine.

Taking Tobacco.

Opium us'd.

Wine. In their Youth theſe *Theriaks*, or *Takers of Opium*, appear with pale, penſive and dejected Countenances, and the Uſe of their Speech is almoſt loſt, and they are ſhort lived, ſeldom arriving at 40, and if they do, they complain heavily of Pains. They that have a Mind to kill themſelves, ſwallow a large Piece, and drink Vinegar after it to prevent any Relief by any Counterpoiſon. They have another ſort of Drink with which they make themſelves very merry, which they call *Kokemaar*, made of Poppy-Seed boiled; they take it in Broth, and it is ſo intoxicating, that it cauſes them that take it to ſhow many antick Tricks and Poſtures, which cauſes a great Diverſion. There are Houſes called *Kokemaar-Koone*, where this Liquor is ſold, and many go to ſee the ridiculous Actions of ſuch as drink it with Pleaſure. They uſe not Butter of Cows-Milk alone, becauſe it is not good, but mingle with it Butter of Ewes-Milk, which is much better.

An intoxicating Liquor.

Their Butter.

The *Perſians* by their Law are prohibited to drink Wine, as well as the *Turks*, but they are not ſo ſcrupulous as to that Point: They drink it without any Mixture, according to the Cuſtom of the *Levantines*, who never drink Water with it, but have Pots of Water ſtanding by them, of which now and then they take a large Draught. The *Perſians* alſo make great uſe of Ice in their drinking, but never uſe Snow.

They drink Wine.

The Way of ordering their Feaſts is after this manner: The Gueſts come according to Invitation in the Morning to the Houſe, and ſpend the whole Day in taking Tobacco, and telling Stories. Between whiles they have Sweet-meats, Coffee and Fruits ſet before them. In the Evening the *Sofra* is ſpread, and the Table ſerv'd with boil'd and roaſt; and if the Perſon that treats be of any Quality, he has a Governour of the Feaſt, who ſits upon his Heels with a Ladle and Wooden Spoon in his Hand, and puts the Rice and Meat upon little Plates, which the Servants preſent by equal Portions to every one of the Gueſts, and then they fall to taking up the Rice by Handfuls, and Meat with their Fingers; ſometimes they mingle curdled Milk with their Rice and Meat, and then they make up all into a Lump, as big as a Tennis-Ball, and put it into their Mouths at once, which is the Reaſon they have ſoon dined; and if there be more Gueſts than their Table will hold, he that has dined gives his Place to another, and ſo their Meals are ſoon finiſh'd, though many be preſent. They drink no more at their Meals than juſt ſerves to quench their Thirſt and drive down their Meat. When all is done, they bring a Baſon with an Ewre full of hot Water to waſh their Hands and Faces, and then after ſome few Compliments, the Gueſts return home, their Servants bringing them their Shooes to get a ſmall Piece of Silver.

Their Way of ordering their Feaſts.

Their Manner of eating.

Their drinking at Meals.

The *Armenians* treat after the ſame Manner, only they begin their Feaſts with a Cup of Strong-water, and ſome Sweet-meats, and give every one of the Gueſts a Couple of hard Eggs, and after they have taken away they fall to drinking to Exceſs; he that gives the Entertainment never thinking he has done well till his Gueſts are not able to go out of the Room, but tumble up and down in it, and then he thinks he has not ſpent his Money in vain.

The *Armenians* drink to Excels.

In fine; The *Perſians* are very gentile, and at their Entertainments freely receive and welcome all Comers, wondering at the *Franks* for the Shutting the Doors at their Meals.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Diſeaſes in Perſia, *with their Cures; as alſo of their Death and Burial.*

THE *Perſian* Children are ſeldom ſick of the Small-Pox, but in lieu of that they are very ſubject to ſcald Pates till 10 or 12 Years old, which, 'tis probable, proceeds from their ſhaving their Heads ſo young, and ſo often, *viz.* at 5 or 6 Months old, and 2 or 3 times a Week. They would be troubled with the Pox more, were it not for the Drineſs of their Air, and their ſo often Bathing, by which they ſweat out the Venom, for they never lie with the ſame Woman twice without Bathing. The *Perſians* are never troubled with the Gout or Gravel, but the *Armenians* are much troubled with the latter, eſpecially ſuch as in their Youth have allow'd themſelves to drink more Wine than Water. In the Cholick the uſual Medicine is Horſe-fleſh, and many have eaten it with Succeſs.

Scald-Pates.

Pox.

Cholick.

Generally the *Perſians*, eſpecially the richer ſort, who have wherewithal to live handſomely, are much leſs ſubject to Sickneſs than the People of *Europe*, which ſome impute to the *China* Drink which they uſe in the Spring every Year, boiling an Ounce in 3 Pints of Water, and continuing the Doſe 10 or 12 Days together, all which Time they uſe a very moderate Diet, and eat no Fruit for a Month after. This Drink cauſes them to ſweat mightily, and the Sweat being wiped off, dyes their Linen; nay, the Effluvium's dye the very Walls of their Chamber of a yellow Colour. For a Dyſentery they take ſowre curdled Milk, with boiled Rice and a little Rhubarb. Their uſual Diet in Sickneſs is Rice boil'd in Hen-Broth, or a little Water; and they account a moderate Diet, as indeed it is, a great Thing in all Diſeaſes, and while any one is ſick, he is never ſuffer'd to change his Linen.

Dyſentery.

When any Perſon lies dangerouſly ill, 'tis the Cuſtom among the *Perſians* to light many Fires upon the Terraſs of the Houſe, to give the People Notice to pray for him. As ſoon as the Breath is out of his Body, the whole Houſe rings with Cries and Lamentations, eſpecially of the Women, who tear their Hair, and ſhew ſuch antick Poſtures, that one would think them poſſeſs'd. In the midſt of their Tears they make long Repetitions of the worthy Actions of the Deceaſed, and every Foot they ſet up a Yelling. Then they go to advertiſe the *Cadi*, that ſuch an one is dead, who anſwers, *Sorcheamet Salamet-Baſhet*, May your Head be in Safety, and then ſeals a Licence to the *Mourdercheur* to take the Body and waſh it in an Houſe that is built for that Purpoſe near a running Water.

Their Grief for the Dead.

When this is done, a great Number of *Moullahs*, with their long Staves, which are the Enſigns of the Moſque, go down to the Houſe, where they tear their Throats with crying, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Alla*, repeating nothing elſe. When the Body is carried out to Burial, it is the Cuſtom, that every one that meets the Bier, offer their Shoulders to help to carry, while the other eaſe themſelves, and for that the Kindred of the Deceaſed make ſome Acknowledgement. If it be a Perſon of Quality, all his Horſes are bridled and ſadled, and others perhaps borrow'd, to attend the Corps, one carrying his Turban, another his Scimitar, another his Bow, another his Arrows, and another his Buckler, and whatever elſe is of any uſe to ſet forth his Quality and Courage.

The *Moullahs* Mourning.

Their Burials.

The biggeſt Church-yard in *Iſpahan* is *Calreſton*, but there is not one handſome Tomb in it. The *Armenians* lay a great Stone over their Graves, and the Rich ſet up an Arch with 4 Pillars, under which they eat and drink in the Shade, when they viſit the Tombs of their Anceſtors. Their Graves are 6 Foot deep, and 6 Foot long, and 2 Foot wide, and in them they lay their Bodies with their Faces towards *Mecca*, and ſet up 2 Tiles on each ſide his Head, to keep the Earth from falling upon it. If he be a rich Man, or have been a ſtout Soldier, they bury him with his Turban, Scimitar, Bow and Arrows, and ſet Victuals by him in a Place made up on purpoſe for it, with Bricks, while the reſt is filled up with Earth. After the Interment the *Moullahs* only return to the Houſe of the Deceaſed, where they have Meat ſet before them, and are paid for their Singing and Bawling, and they that have bawl'd the loudeſt, get the moſt Money, which makes them ſtretch their Throats with all the Force they have. A while after the Kin-

Their Monuments and Graves.

The *Moullahs* paid.

dred of the Heir come to visit him, and discourse him upon the Contempt of the World, telling him, that it is but as a Caravan, which sometimes arrives sooner, and sometimes later at its Journey's End. Eight Days after the Heir returns their Visits. Their Grandees generally in their Wills order, that their Bodies shall be either carried to *Mecca* or *Mosbed*. The *Persians*, as well as the *Turks*, believe, that as soon as the Grave is fill'd up, the 2 Angels *Noguir* and *Manguer* revive the Dead, as far as his Waste, ask him the Reason of his Faith, and how he said his Prayers, and according to his Merits they use him well or ill.

The Grandees buried at *Mecca*, or *Mshed*.

The State of the Souls before the Resurrection they hold to be this: Their Torment consists in a Grief for not having arriv'd to those Perfections and Sciences to which they might have attained, and consequently for not having arriv'd at that Perfection which God requires of them. Others hold, That the Souls of the Miserable are tormented with Dreams and Visions; but that the Souls of the Happy always enjoy the Sight of pleasant Objects, till the *Saheb-el-Zaman*, or Master of Time shall come to confirm the Law of *Mahomet*, who shall kill *Dedgar*, i. e. *Antichrist*, with his own Hand, at which Time all then alive shall die in an Instant, and then shall happen the General Resurrection, which they call *Moavedet-bechre*: Then shall the same Bodies and Souls unite to appear at the Day of Judgment before the Great Judge of the World: To go thither they must pass over a Bridge call'd *Pol-serat*, which is sharper than the Edge of a Rasor, but all the *Mussulmen* shall pass over it without any Danger, with the Swiftness of a Bird, but Misbelievers as soon as they set their Feet upon it shall fall into a Torrent of Fire, among a Thousand Devils, armed with Cramp-Irons, Pincers and Tenter-hooks. The Porter of Paradise, whom they call *Rursuen*, shall open them the Gate: There they shall sit upon the Banks of the great *Kausier*, which is a Fountain, where their Prophet shall give them of the Water to drink out of a Ladle, and that afterward they shall have a great Number of Women created on purpose for them, with all sorts of most delicious Food, but that this Place of Recreation shall not be defiled with any Excrements by their Eating and Drinking, but that all their Evacuations shall be in a perfum'd Sweat, and so they always remain in an happy Condition: But others that are more refined, and do not believe material Enjoyments, affirm, That the Happiness of Paradise consists in the perfect Knowledge of the Sciences, and that their Senses shall have a Satisfaction according to their Quality.

The Happiness of Paradise.

Their Opinions about the State of the Dead and Resurrection.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Roads from Ispahan *into the* Indies.

§. 1. *To* Ormus *and* Bender-Congo, *and so by Sea to* Surat.

FROM *Ispahan* you travel first to a Place where the *Radars* keep Guard, half a Lg. from a Town called *Ispshanecke*, which you pass through to *Mahiar*, but the Land all along is barren and without Wood, till you come within a Lg. of a great City, called *Comsse*, where there are several Inns, and tho' they are built of Earth, yet they are pretty neat. About 2 Miles from this City stands a neat Mosque, with a Pond full of Fish by it; but the *Moullah's* will not let you catch them, because they say of it, they belong to the Prophet to whom the Mosque is dedicated, but Travellers for the Coolness of the Air chuse to lodge by it.

Comsse.

From hence, through a well till'd Plain, abounding with store of Grain, you come to an Inn, called *Makfonbegui*, and from thence, over a barren Country, to *Tesdecas*, a little City built upon a Rock, having but one Street, but the Houses are 3 or 4 Stories high. This City is in such Danger of falling from the Rock, that the Inhabitants are building them another City at the Foot of it. The Land about the City bears the best Corn in *Persia*, and the Inhabitants make most excellent Bread of it, mingling a few Pease with the Corn.

Tesdecas.

The best Bread of *Persia*.

Passing by a neat House, with fine Gardens, you travel over a ruggy craggy Mountain, called *Kotel-Irmel-tebekeni*, i. e. *The Hill that pulls off the Horses Shooes*, and going by a Castle, called *Gombesiala*, you arrive at a Village, call'd *Debigherdou*. Here the Weather is sometimes very cold, and the Country is covered with Snow, so that it is bad travelling. The Inhabitants of this Town, and the next that you come at, which is called *Asepos*, are *Circassians*, transplated hither out of *Georgia* by *Sha-Abas*, who took that Country, and gave them good Lands here to cultivate. They make Wine here, but their Grapes come from *Mazain*, and have Fish, because of the many Rivulets hereabout.

Debigherdou.

Ongdioun.

In the Way onward you come to *Ongdioun*, which is a large Village by a River, over which there lies a Stone-Bridge of 7 Arches, and so passing over a craggy dirty Mountain, you arrive at *Iman-shade*, so called from one of their Prophets, who lies buried there. This Country abounds with Butter, Almond-Trees, and Alder-Trees, which give it a pleasant Verdure. The Prophet lies in a Mosque, which has a Portico 6 Arches in Length at the Entrance, and a *Dome* rough-casted in the middle. The Town has many Gardens, watered by a lovely Brook that runs by it. Beyond this Town lies the River *Bendimir*, which is the 2d *Araxes* of Q. *Curtius*, *Diod. Siculus* and *Strabo*, and when you have gotten over it by 2 Stone-Bridges, you come to *Abgbern*, which signifies, *Hot Waters*, because the Waters are something hot here, yet they have Plenty of Fish in them.

Iman-shade.

Abgbern.

Leaving this Town, you travel over a fair Causey, about 2 Fathom broad, and 2000 Paces long, all well pav'd, with Arches in several Places, and in the middle a Bridge about 100 Paces in Length. This Causey is called *Pouligar*, and at the End of it stands an Inn built very commodiously, and adorn'd with many Pieces of Marble with Inscriptions, but unfrequented, because it is so infested with Gnats.

Pouligar.

Two Lgs. farther is the City of *Schiras*. This is the neareſt Way by 2 Days Journey from *Ispahan* to *Schiras*, but the Mountains are unpassable in Winter, and therefore you must take the Left-Hand Road, Eastward, with a Guide, if you travel in that Season, and pass the great Road, over several well water'd Plains and Mountains, to *Tche-elminar* thither. At the Point of the Mountain, upon the Right-hand of the Road, at about a Lg. Distance from this Place, are to be seen 12 Pillars still standing, the Form a kind of a Square, and opposite to them a great many Niches in the Spaces of the Mountain, which certainly were the Places where the ancient *Persians* set their Idols. At *Tche-elminar* are to be seen a great many old Columns, some standing, and others lying upon the Ground, and some ill shap'd Statues, with little 4 square dark Rooms, which, to any one that has consider'd the Pagods of *India*, seem to prove, that that Place was only a Temple formerly dedicated to Idolatrous Worship, the dark Rooms being the Chambers where the Priests, and where the Rice and Fruits, which are the feigned Nourishment of the Idols, are the better secured from the Gnats and Flies.

Tche-elminar. Some Ruines here.

From thence to *Schiras* is an hard Day's Journey, especially when the Snow melts, for then the Road is like a Sea. The City of *Schiras*, which many will have to be the ancient *Cyropolis*, the Metropolis of the Province of *Persia*, lies in 78 D. 15 M. Long. and 29 D. 36 M. Lat. It is seated in a Plain, about 4 Lgs. in Extent from N. to S. and about 5 Lgs. from E. to W. Upon the S. E. is a Lake of salt Water 4 Lgs. in Compass. The Soil about it is very good and fruitful, and is famous for the best Wines in *Persia*. The City it self has nothing handsome in it, for it looks more like a ruined Town than a City. It has no Walls, but a bad Ditch, and the Houses are built of Earth dried in the Sun, and whitned over with Lime, so that when they are well moisten'd with Rain they often

Schiras described.

The Soil.

often fall down of themselves, only the College which *Iman-Kouli-Kan* built, and some of the Mosques are of Brick, and the best of those Mosques, which is called *Sha-shiraque*, is kept in something better Repair than ordinary out of a particular Devotion; but there is nothing worth taking Notice of in it. On the N. E. stands an high Mountain, which is covered with several sorts of Fruit-Trees, of which there are some Orange, Limons and Cypresses, and at the Foot of it a Stone-Bridge, from whence there is a Street, which goes in a strait Line quite through the City. This Street is Wall'd on both sides, and at certain Spaces, are several great Gates, which have neat little Houses built upon them, from which is a pleasant Prospect into the Gardens, planted with Rows of Cypresses. The Streets of *Schiras* are somewhat narrow, but there be some fair ones, having in the midst of them lovely Canals and Basons of Water very pleasant. There are a great many fair cover'd *Bazars*, with great Shops, well furnish'd with all sorts of *Indian* and *Turkish* Commodities, and every Commodity has its particular *Bazar*. In the College there are Professors, who have Salaries for teaching Theology, Philosophy and Medicine, and 'tis said, it has sometimes 500 Students in it. There are in this City 3 or 4 Glass-Houses, where they make great and small Bottles, to transport the Sweet-Waters made in the City in, as also several other Vessels to put their pickled Fruits in, which they send in great Quantities into *India*, *Sumatra*, *Batavia*, and other Places. They make their Glass of a white Stone, almost as hard as Marble, which they fetch from an Hill 4 Days Journey from *Schiras*, and 'tis as clear and delicate as any Glass in the World. It is wonderful how they blow their great Bottles, called *Caraba*, which are a Finger thick, and hold near 30 Quarts of Wine. They have no Manufacture at *Schiras*, but a few coarse painted Cloths, and used only by the meaner sort. On the N. W. side is the King's Garden, called *Bay-sha*, which is indeed well planted with Fruit-Trees, Roses and Jasmins; but for want of Order it looks like a Wilderness. From this Garden to the Hills is a Vineyard belonging to several Persons, 2 Lgs. long, and one broad, which is watered with the River *Bendemir*, which is sometimes dry in Summer, because it never rains there but in the Spring and Autumn. The Wines made here are the best in all *Persia*, but they make no great Quantities of them, because they dry and pickle good part of their Grapes. 'Tis an excellent Stomach Wine, but very strong, so that, without spoiling the Taste of it, it will carry 2 Thirds of Water. They sell their Wine by Weight, and not by Measure, and putting it in Chests, send a great deal yearly to *Ispahan* and the *Indies*.

The College.

The Mountain by it.

The *Bazars*.

Glass-houses.

Large Glass Bottles.

A large Vineyard.

The People of *Schiras* are very witty, and most of the best Poets in *Persia* were born here. In an ancient Mosque here lies *Scheich-sadi*, one of the best of their Poets, whom they honour as a Saint. The Soil about this City is very good, and produces Plenty of all Things. They have all the Fruits that we have, and Oranges and Limons in abundance. They have vast Quantities of Roses, from which they draw such Plenty of Rose-Water, that they furnish all the *Indies* with it. They have a great deal of Corn, but give much to their Horses to be eaten in the Blade, because they say, that for want of Water it would never come to Maturity. There is a great deal of Opium made at *Schiras*, for round about the Town are large Fields sown with white Poppies. They have also store of Capers, which they send into all Parts.

The People.

Their Fruits.

Opium made here.

In former Times *Schiras* was governed by a *Kan*, who was the first in all *Persia*, and his Government reach'd as far as *Lar*, *Bendir*, and the Isle of *Ormus*. *Iman-Kouli-Kan*, who was so great a Benefactor to this City, by cutting a Road through the Mountains to it, and building the biggest Street of it, was *Kan* of this City, and lived as magnificently in all respects, as the King himself, insomuch, that *Sha-Abas* the Great commanded him to spend a *Mahmoudi* less a Day, that there might be some Difference in their Expences; but *Sha-Sefi*, his Grandson, did not treat him so kindly, but fearing his Power might endanger his Crown, put him and his whole Family to Death; and though he still continued the Governour a while, yet at length he put in a Visier to farm it, and the King receives of him 1000 Tomans. On the S. W. a good Lg. from the City, upon a little Hill, divided from the great Mountain, are 3 Gates to be seen, and one is fallen, which seems to be the Remainders of an Idolatrous Temple; and about 2 Musket-shot from thence is a large Pond full of Fish, where the ancient Idolaters wash'd themselves before they entered into the Temple, to say their Prayers and make their Offerings; some high Trees grow by this Pond-side, which shade the Habitation of a *Dervis*.

A Visier governs it.

An Idol-Temple.

Near a Lg. from the City is a Lake of Salt-water about 10 Lgs. in Compass, which is filled by several Springs that fall from the Mountains; here the People make a great Quantity of Salt. Not far from hence are 2 remarkable Wells, the one upon the Top of a Mountain, and the other upon the Descent cut out of the Rock, which is so deep that one may say a *Pater-Noster* before a Stone, that is cast into it, can reach the Bottom. It is dry, and the Mouth is a Square of 2 Fathom in Length and one in Breadth. It is said, that heretofore they threw Adulterous Women into this Well.

Salt made.

About half a Lg. on the North-side of the City, upon the Brow of an high Mountain, stands a little Mosque like an Hermitage, and about 15 Foot below is a fair Spring the best thereabouts. Near to it is a little Place encompassed with Pales with 4 Pillars, that uphold a Cieling. Here a *Dervis* sits and entertains all that come to visit him with Tobacco, according to the Custom of the Country. Here is the best Prospect in all *Syria*, for one way you may see all the Plain of *Schiras*, and all the City from one end to the other, with all the Gardens; but that which is most admired and visited is a large Cypress-Tree, which 4 Men can hardly fathom, and proportionably high: It is look'd upon as the fairest Tree in all *Persia*.

A *Dervis* that treats all Comers.

A large Cypress-Tree.

Two Lgs. on the S.W. at the Foot of a great Mountain, stands an Hermitage, called, *Pir Boumo*, in which 3 or 4 *Dervises* live. 'Tis a pleasant Place, as all the *Dervises* pick out the pleasantest Places to pitch their Tents in. Here they sit smoaking their Pipes with that Gravity, that if the King should come by, they would not stir to give him Reverence.

The Humour of the *Dervises*.

Leaving *Schiras* you pass through a fertile Country, by an Inn called *Badaadgi*, where the Water being bad, because 'tis lukewarm, few Travellers stay, but go on to another well-built Inn called *Mouzafferi*, where grow *Saligots*, or Water-Nuts, as large and good as those in *Dauphiny*; but the Country breeds only Goats and Sheep.

Saligots or Water-Nuts.

The Way from hence to an Inn called *Paira*, which stands by a River, is very stony, yet cover'd with Bitter-Almond and Turpentine-Trees.

Turpentine and Bitter-Almond-Trees.

From hence you must travel through a Valley, where there are many Villages, till you come to an Inn of an Octogonal Form, called *Kaffer*. Here the cold Weather ceases; but being a Country much cooler than *Gamron* and *Lar*, the *Arabian* Shepherds with their Wives and Children on Camels, and their Flocks of Sheep and Goats, come hither in the Heat of Summer for Coolness, and feed them about *Caubouzer*, till Winter draws nigh, and then they return back again to the hot Countries.

The *Arabian* Shepherds.

From *Kaffer*, if you would see one of the richest Parts of *Persia*, and some Antiquities, you must leave the Caravan-Road, and take the Left-hand Way by a River, which leads you over a Rock, where there are many Caverns, some of which are so large, that they will contain 2 or 3000 Men, and brings you to a Plain 4 or 5 Lgs. in Circuit, called *Dadivan*, which is planted with Citron-Trees, Granates, and Oranges, some of which are so large, that 2 Men can hardly fathom them round; which being passed, you arrive at an Inn called *Mousbek*, after which, within 3 quarters of a Lg. there are 2 Roads that lead to *Lar*, the one for Camels, which is through the Desart, and is the longest by 3 Days Journey. In this you meet only with Herdsmens Tents, and a sort of large Partridges, with Legs and Feet like Wild-Ducks. The other for Horses over the Mountain, and City by it, called *Farron*. The Mountain is very steep and dangerous, but the Town is pleasant, being full of Gardens of Palm-Trees, which grow so thick, that they look like a Forest. *Tamaricks* grow also plentifully about this Place. Upon the Mountains is a Bridge of one Arch, built by *Iman-Kouli-Kan*, for the Conveniency of Travellers, which is a Piece of Architecture never to be admired. Over these you go to an Inn called *Shakal*, which is inhabited by 9 or 10 *Radars*, who guard the Road, and treat you with Kid or Partridge, which are very plentiful in the Mountains.

Dadivan.

Large Partridges.

A Bridge on the Mountains.

From hence you travel over the Mountain of *Husben*, and meet with an Inn called *Mouzere*, which stands in a Grove, and has a good Spring by it, but because

Dehidombe. because there is no Food to be had at it, you must go on to *Dehidombe*, a Village surrounded with Palm-Trees. Leaving this Place you go through a Plain, and come to *Banarou*. The Frontier Town of the Province of *Fars*, and bordering upon the Province of *Lar*, and then over the Plains and Mountains to *Bibri*, where is

A fair Inn. one of the loveliest Inns in all *Persia* for the Solidity of the Fabrick, Neatness of the Portal, Largeness of the Court, Spaciousness of the Rooms, and Loveliness of the Gardens, which are well planted with Tulips, Roses, and abundance of Flowers of divers kinds, and kept in very good Order. It was built by *Aivaz-Kan*, the Governour of *Lar*, which Town is but little more than a Day's Journey farther.

Lar described. *Lar* is the chief Town of the Province of the same Name, which formerly bore the Title of a Kingdom. It was formerly the Residence of the King of that Country, when the *Guebres* were Masters of it. The Great *Sha-Abas* took it from them, and now a *Kan* resides there, which commands the whole Province, which is called *Ghermes*, and reaches to the very Gates of *Gamron*. The Town is but small, hath no Walls, and but a sorry Ditch, but beyond it are some Houses pretty well built, which make a kind of Suburbs to it, and among these the Ditch-House is one. The

Things most remarkable Things best worth seeing are the *Kan*'s House, Market-place, Bazars and Castle. The *Kan*'s House hath high Walls, and a cover'd *Divan* to take the fresh Air in, a Porch with 7 Fronts jetting out, and a large Gate, over which there is also a cover'd *Divan*. The Market-place is very pretty, being a Square, with Arches all round, and Terrasses on the Top, with Rails and Ballisters. The Bazars are very fair and large, well cover'd and pav'd with broad smooth Free-Stone, and one of them is cover'd in the middle with a large handsome Dome, which hath many well

The Jews in it. furnish'd Shops. The *Jews*, who are very numerous in this Town, have a Quarter to themselves near the Hill, on which the Castle stands, which is built all of Stone. They are famous for a Silk Manufacture, and especially for making Silk-Girdles. The Walls of it seem to be good, and have Towers at some little Intervals. This Castle commands all round about it, and is strong, considering the Country. It was built

Tamarisks. by the *Guebres*. All the Country is full of Tamarisks, which are very large, and more numerous than in any Place else. The whole Country is very hot, and has no Water, but Rain-Water, which they preserve in Cisterns. The Mountains are full of Orange-Trees. The Inhabitants of the City, as also of the Province, are accounted the best Musketeers in *Persia*, and the best at the making Barrels of Muskets, all but the Breech, which they cannot order so well as we. They

Muskets and Gun-powder. make very good Gun-powder, and the Governour has in his Palace a Magazine of Bows and Arrows, Bucklers and Muskets enough to arm 1500 Men. Their Drink is very bad, for they have only Cistern-Water, which is very unwholesome by standing, for it breeds Worms, and though you filter it through a Cloth, will be very foul. It is good to quench a red hot Iron in the Water before you drink it, lest you swallow any

Worms Seed in the Body. Seed of Worms, or small ones, which have been known to breed in some Men to an Ell long and more in divers Parts of the Body.

From *Lar* you travel through a Stony Country, except near the Inn *Teberkah*, where there is Corn-Land, and some Palm-Trees, to another little Inn, called *Shemzengi*, which is low built, like a Cross, with 4 Doors to receive the cool Wind every way, as all the Inns are between this and *Bender*.

Carmout. From hence, through barren Plains, and over most fearful Rocks, you go to *Carmout*, a great Village well stor'd with Palm-Trees.

From this Place to the new Inn, called *Tenguidalen*, the Way is bad, full of great Stones and filthy Puddles; but after you pass an uninhabited Country to a good Village, called *Caucrestan*, where there is Plenty of

The best Water-Melons. Barley. This Place is famous for Water-Melons as big as Pumpkins, the best in all *Persia*. The Meat is very red, and as sweet as Sugar, which is a great Refreshment to Travellers. The Road after this is very sandy, not possible to be travelled without a Guide, till you come to a Bridge near the Inn *Guitchi*, which is one of the most pleasant Countries in all *Persia*, being a continued Grove.

A League and half from *Guitchi* you meet with 2 Roads one upon the Left-hand, which seems most beaten, and the other upon the Right, which is the best; but being the one among the Sand, and the other among the Rocks, you must have a Guide to conduct you to *Bander-Abassi*.

Bander-Abassi described. This Town, so called, because the Great *Sha-Abas* brought it into Reputation, is at present a Place reasonably well built, and stored with large Ware-Houses, over which are the Lodgings of the Merchants. The Situation of it is very advantageous for Trafick. It is governed by a *Kan* and a *Shah-Bender*, or Customer, who gathers the Customs, which are worth much to the King of *Persia*, though one half of them of right belong to the *English*, by Virtue of an Agreement which they made with that Prince, when they assisted him in taking *Ormus*; but they receive not the 4th part, because the *Persians* put them off with as little as they can. There is not much worth observing in the Town, for there is but one publick Gate, a Bazar and a small Fort to the Sea-side, with 2 Cannons only,

The *English* and *Dutch* Houses. though there be 6 Port-holes. The *English* and *Dutch* have each of them their Houses by the Sea-side, with the Flag of their Nations upon the Terrass of their Houses.

While the *Portuguese* kept *Ormus*, though they liv'd in that City, all the Trade was at *Bander-Abassi*, as being the most secure Landing-place upon the Coast. It has lately been Wall'd in, because while it was open the Custom-house was robb'd in the Night. To this Place come all the Ships that bring Commodities from *India* for *Persia*, *Turky*, *India*, or any other Part of *Asia*, or *Europe*. And, indeed, it would be much more frequented by the Merchants from all Regions and Countries, but that the Air is so unwholesome and hot, that

It is unhealthy. no Strangers can live there with Probability of Health, unless it be in the Months of *December*, *January*, *February* and *March*, and though the Natives may, with some Safety, venture to the End of *April*, then they retire to the Mountains 2 or 3 Days Journey off for 5 or 6 Months, where they eat what they have gained before. They that will venture to stay during the hot Weather get a malignant Fever, which is hardly cured, and if they do escape, they have the Yellow Jaundice ever after. When the *March* Wind

A stifling *March*-Wind. changes, and blows W. S. W. in a short time it grows so hot and stifling, that it takes away a Man's Breath, and sometimes it burns like Lightning. The *Arabians* call it *El-Samiel*, i. e. The Poisonous Wind, and the *Persians*, *Bade Sambour*, The Suffocating Wind.

As the Air of *Bander-Abassi*, or *Gamron*, is so bad and dangerous, so the Soil is worth nothing, for 'tis nothing but Sand, and the Water is not good, and therefore some fetch their Water 3 Lgs. from a Fountain, called *Issin*. Formerly there was no Herb to be seen, but now by watering the Ground, Lettice, Radishes and Onions begin to grow.

The People are swarthy, and wear nothing about them, but one single Shirt. Their usual Diet is Dates and Fish, and they feed their Cattle with the Guts and Heads of the one boiled, and Stones of the other, when they come home from browsing the barren Bushes.

The Fish in the Sea at *Ormus*. The Sea of *Bander* produces good Soles, Smelts and Pilchards. They have excellent Oisters, but the People eat none, and so they must catch them that will have them. Upon Land they have Wine from *Schiras* and *Yesd*, and their ordinary Diet is Mutton, Pigeons and Partridge. There are 2 Fortresses on the E. and W. Ends, and the Town daily encreases with Trade and Inhabitants, which may be wonder'd at, because *Bander-Congo* is near, and has a good Air and excellent Water; but the Reason is, because the Passage to *Congo* for Ships is dangerous, and there is not Water for a Vessel of above 25 Tun, and the Way from *Lar* to *Congo* is bad; but at *Bander-Abassi* both are good, and there are good Inns.

The Island of *Ormus*. Two Lgs. to the Southward from the Main Land is the so fam'd Island of *Ormus*, lying in the 92 D. 42 M. of Long. and 25 D. 30 M. Lat. It lies at the Mouth of the *Persian* Gulf, which reaches from thence to *Bacsora*, which is 180 Lgs. It is all cover'd with a white Sand, so that neither Tree nor Herb grows in it. It was long held by the *Portuguese*, but was taken from them by the Great *Sha-Abas*, by the Help of the *English*, in 1622.

Ormus a Kingdom, and Populous under the *Portugueses*. Before the *Portugueses* came to *Ormus*, it was the Habitation of a King, who also governed *Lar*, but the City was ill built; and when they became Masters of it, they made it very magnificent, according to the Humour of their Nation, for the Bars of their Windows and Doors were all gilt, the Fortress in very good Repair, and they had a stately Church, dedicated to the Virgin.

Virgin. It was very populous and exceeding rich, for all the Trade of the *Indies* was managed there; but now the *Persians* have it, there is no Marks of all this, but the Fort, which is in very good Repair.

Upon this Island grows a *Banian* Tree, being the only Tree that grows upon the Isle. It is so called, because the *Banians* commonly make Pagods under them. The *Portuguese* called it the *Tree of Roots*, because Roots come out of every Branch, and fastning to the Ground, grow up again as other Trees, insomuch, that one of these Trees may make a whole Forest.

Bander-Abassi described.

The Way to the Indies.

At *Bander-Abassi* you embark to the *East-Indies*, either in *Dutch*, *Armenian* or *Mooriſh* Ships, and usually in the Voyage come to Anchor in the Road of *Bander-Congo*, which is 30 Leagues from *Comeron* or *Bander-Abassi*.

Bander-Congo described.

Bander-Congo is a little Town in the Kingdom of *Persia*, lying in 27 D. 15 M. Northern Lat. It is sheltered from the N. Winds by a blackish Rock, and has a little Castle, defended by 3 Pieces of Cannon. It has a safe Road for Ships, though they be often tost'd by high Winds. The Territory of the Town is of small Extent, but produces good Fruits, as Figs, Grapes, good Quinces, Pears, Oranges, Limons, very large Pomegranates, Melons, Water-Melons, and plenty of good Turnips, as also Palm-Trees, Mango-Trees, and the *Arbor de Reyzes*, (as the *Portuguese* call it) *i. e.* The Tree of Roots. They have also *Schiras* Wine, but dear, and good Brandy of Dates. Near the Town are Sulphur-Hills, of which the Ships take great Quantities in Cakes of 2 or 3 Pound apiece, and transport them to the *Indies*. It is very hot in this Town, and the Air is good, but the Water brackish. It depends upon the *Kan* of *Lar*, and is governed in his Absence by the *Shah-Bender*, or King of the Port, who receives the Customs, which of late are much encreased, by reason of the Exactions and Extortions of the Governour of *Bender-Abassi*, for most of the Goods of *Persia*, either exported to, or imported from the *Indies*, are loaded or unloaded here. The *Portuguese* have half the Profits of the Customs, and therefore the King of *Portugal* keeps an Agent always there, who has the *Portuguese* Colours upon the Top of his House.

The Fruits.

Its Growth in Trade.

The Island, in the Persian Gulf.

From *Congo* you sail by several small Islands, *viz.* *Queschimo*, which is the largest, but low Land. It has a Fort, and affords a great Conveniency to the Ships that pass by, *viz.* Good fresh Water. *Nabgion*, or *Pitombo*, which is a little low Desart Island: *Tonbo*, another little flat Island, abounding with Antilopes and Conies, but not inhabited. Here are also 15 or 20 Wells of good Water. *Angom*, over-against which is a Port of *Arabia Felix*, call'd *Julfar*, which is a good Harbour, where many *Indian* Barks carrying Money come to buy Dates and Pearls, which are fish'd all along that Coast from *Mascat* to *Bahrem*. It has a good Castle, and from thence to the Cape of *Mosandon* is all Mountainous, but there are many good Ports, convenient for the Wintering of Ships, between them, though not set down in the Maps.

Julfar.

Angom is a little low Island to the S. of *Queschimo*. No body lives in it, but 2 or 3 Fisher-men, who keep Goats to sell to the Ships that come to take up Water there; the Isles of *Selame*, which are 4 Rocks over-against Cape *Mosandon*, and nourish only wild Goats; *Larreca*, where there is a small Fort, which the *Dutch* began to build, under Pretence of settling a Factory there, but the *Persians*, fearing another Design, drove them out, and finishing it, keep a small Garrison in it. They say, there is in this Island a fair Salt-pit, dug under Ground in Form of an Hill, so spacious, as to hold 1000 Men easily. Hereabouts sometimes rise from the Sea Spouts in divers Forms and Figures, which are very dangerous to Sailors, for if they come upon a Ship, they intangle the Masts, so that sometimes they will lift it up, if it be small, and then letting it fall down again, sink it to the Bottom, and if it lift not up the Ship, they at least split all the Sails, or empty all their Water into it, which sinks it to right. The humane Means against these Spouts is to furle the Sails, and shoot a Cross-Bar-Shot at the Pipe, to cut it in Two, and this has been found successful in the *Mediterranean* Sea.

Angom.

Selame.

Larreca.

A Salt-pit.

Spouts.

Means to be used against them.

Having past'd these Islands, you sail by a very good Port of *Arabia Felix*, called *Lima*, where several Ships may Winter secure from all Winds, and there is good Water, and soon make a low Point of Land belonging to *Persia*, called *Nzaly*, and so sail by a very high square white Rock, call'd *Bombareca*, to Cape *Fasques*, anciently called *Carpella*, which lies in 25 D. of Northern Lat. Here, at about a Mile up-land, is a sorry Fort, with about 40 Houses, inhabited by a sort of very poor People, who live on Barley, and drink nothing but brackish Water. They have 2 sorts of Barks, or *Taranquins*, wherein they carry Wood to sell at *Mascat*. It is under the Governour of *Comeron*, who sends whom he pleases to command it. Here it is the safest Course to put to Sea, lest by keeping on the Coast of *Persia* you fall into the Hands of the *Zinganes*, a sort of *Indian* Pirates, who rob most part of the Barks that come in, or go out of the *Sindy*.

Lima.

Nzaly.

Cape *Jasques*, c. *Jasques*.

The *Zinganes*.

These Thieves have a pretty odd Way of taking Prizes. When they see any Merchant's Bark coming, they get to the Windward of him, and being come up pretty near, before they lay him on Board, they throw in a great many Pots full of Lime, reduc'd into very small Powder, which the Wind driving against the Men on Board, blinds them so, that they are unable to make any Defence, and in the mean-time they leap into the Bark, and kill all, till they are wholly Masters of the Vessel, and are sure of the Prize. What Prisoners they take, they cut the Tendon above their Heels, to disable them from running away; and carrying them to their Habitations, set them to keep their Flocks, without any Hopes of ever being deliver'd from their Bondage, which is worse than Death it self. Being in open Sea with a tolerable Wind you may in 8 or 10 Days make the Cape and Isle of *Diu*, which is near the main Land of the Country of *Cambaya*, in the *Indies*.

Their Way of Piracy.

Cape and Isle of *Diu*.

In this Passage you may catch *Dorado*'s, or Dolphins, some of which are a Fathom and half long: They are good Meat, and of easie Digestion; the Flesh is firm and delicate, and they feed on the small flying Fish; and you also meet with those Birds, which the *Portuguese* call *Rabo de Junco*, or Rush-Tails. They are a kind of Sea-Mews, only bigger, and have a Tail of a Piece, and pointed like a Rush, from whence they take their Name. Near the Coasts of *Diu* there appear in the Water a great many little yellow Snakes, about a Foot long, and as big as one's little Finger, which is a good Sign you are near those Coasts, for on the other Coasts of *India* the Snakes are large. Just upon the Shore there riseth, especially against a Storm, a kind of Excrement of the Sea, called *Camasse*, or, *Pitta Manna* by the *Italians*. It is like a frothy Flesh, that if a Man touches it, it sticks to him like Glew, and puts him to an hot stinging Pain. The *Malabar Corsairs* and *Zinganes* have their Rendezvous about *Diu*. The Island was anciently called *Alambater*, and lies in 20 D. 40 M. Lat. and 21 D. Long. The *Portuguese* are Masters of it, and have a Town and Fort so well defended with 2 large Ditches, fill'd with the Sea-Water, and Stone-Bastions, mounted with many great Guns, that 'tis thought impregnable. All the Trade of the *Indies* was heretofore managed here and at *Chaoul*, another Port belonging to the *Portuguese*; but now the *Dutch* have wholly removed it to *Surat*, where 'tis at present, and thither if you intend to sail, you coast and first make the Land of *Bassarin*, which lies in 19 D. Northern Latitude.

Yellow Snakes.

Sea Excrements.

The *Portuguese* are Masters of it.

Bassarin.

This Town is held by the *Portuguese*, and is situate near very high Mountains, and so passing by the Town of *Daman*, which belongs to the *Portuguese*, and being made very strong, has a very good Fort in it, you come to the Bar of *Surat*, where the Custom-house Officer comes immediately on Board to take in all the Passengers and their Goods, and carry them up the River to the Custom-house to be search'd.

Daman.

§. *But the most usual Road from* Ispahan *into the* Indies, *is to* Candabar, *which the Merchants chuse, because it affords them plenty of Water. It lies thus:*

From *Ispahan* to *Sakunegi* 7 *Agats* (an *Agat* is a large Provence League;) and from thence to *Mouchena de Rhadar* 10; from thence to *Nanni* 8; from thence to *Danaraquie* 15; from thence to *Basabad* 15; from thence to *Aliger* 9; from thence to *Biabanais* 5; from thence to *Caseui* 5; from thence to *Samagi* 10; from thence to *Sadarou* 15; from thence to *Chechme-cha* 8; from thence to *Karte* 14; from thence to *Tabas* 4; from thence to *Espaque* 7; from thence to *Teoque* 7; from thence to *Talkzau* 6; from thence to *Cors* 10; from thence to *Tesaitan* 9; from thence to *Berjan* 7; from thence to *Moti* 7; from thence to *Sarbicha* 5; from thence to *Mont* 7; from thence to *Daurat* 12; from

The Road thro' Candahar into the *Indies*.

from thence to *Checchmeband* 6; from thence to *Zela* 10; from thence to *Tura* 10; from thence to *Tecaurmazetan* 6; from thence to *Siabe* 6; from thence to *Bacon* 4; from thence to *Dilaram* 6; from thence to *Chaquilan* 4; from thence to *Dexkak* 4; from thence to *Grichs* 12; from thence to *Rauckienogous* 19; from thence to *Candabar* 12. All this Road the Men ride upon Horses, and the Goods are carried on Camels.

Candabar described.

Candabar is one of the chief Cities of the conquer'd Provinces of *Persia*, having been often the Occasion of War between the Kings of *Persia* and *India*. At length *Sha-Abas* became Master of it, the Prince of it chusing rather to put himself under the Protection of the King of *Persia*, than of the Great *Mogul*; but upon this Condition, that the Governour should always be of his Race; and therefore *Alimerdan Kan* was the Son of the last Prince of *Candabar*. This Prince left behind him such a vast Treasury, that all his Plate was of Gold; and he had so much Gold in his Coffers, that when he went to the Great *Mogul*, he would not accept of any Thing for his Maintenance, but was contented with one of the highest Dignities of the Empire, which he enjoy'd till Death. The Grand *Sha-Abas* left the peaceable Possession of *Candabar* to *Sha-Sefi* his Grand-child, but in his Time *Alimerdan Kan* deliver'd it up to the Great *Mogul*. *Sha-Abas* II. retook it in 1650, and *Sha-Jehan* sent to drive him out with an Army of 300000 Men, but he came off with bad Success, having lost almost all his Army, and the same Fortune had Sultan *Sugab* the next Year. *Aureng-zeb* was after all sent by his Sister, who then ruled all under her Father's Favour, and was loved to Incest, and was likely to have recovered it; but being told by his Captains, that his Sister would have the Honour of the Conquest after all his Hazard and Pains, flagged in his Courage; and having the Pretence of a Rainy Season, he raised the Siege, and so left it in the Hands of the King of *Persia*.

Taken by *Sha-Abas*.

Deliver'd up to the Great Mogul.

The Conclusion.

By this Description of *Persia*, the Reader may perceive, that travels into *Persia*, are necessary more for Merchants than Scholars or Artists, unless a vain Curiosity will lead a Man so far to see the Footsteps of Antiquity there, which are so far worn out by reason of many Wars, and the Neglect of a barbarous People, that unless he carry a great Deal of Fancy, and a large Stock of Credulity, he will find his Labour lost; for there remains nothing of all the ancient Buildings, or Men, but some improbable Traditions, and they reach as far as *Noah*. There is no probability here, that any Man can improve his Knowledge, since here Books are rare and few, and learned Men very scarce; or his Experience in any of the Noble Arts, Painting, Graving, Goldsmiths Work or Turning, since here they are very little known. *Persia*, indeed, was once famous for their Gold and Silver Tissues, Coverlets, Carpets and Embroideries; but now the *Europeans* so much out-do them, that the *Persians* admire their Work above their own; and good Profit is made by carrying the Tapestry Carpets, Silver and Gold Stuffs made in *Europe* into *Persia*; because the King and Nobility buy them up immediately. Profit may be made in these Travels by Merchants, who trade this Way to the *Indies*, but little can be learned by the Ingenious in these Parts, especially such as carry any Stock of Knowledge from Home.

Mr. *Ta-*

Mr. *Tavernier*'s TRAVELS into *India*:

CONTAINING

An Account of the Roads from *Candahar* and *Surat* to *Agra*, and from *Agra* to *Dehly* and *Gehanabat*, where the Great *Mogul* reſides at preſent.

AS ALSO,

How to Travel to the Court of the King of *Golconda*; and to the King of *Viſapour*; and to many other Places in the *Indies*.

CHAP. I.

The Road from Surat *to* Agra.

The Roads out of *Perſia* into *India*.

THough the *Indies* ſtretch themſelves upon the Coaſts of *Perſia* for the Space of above 400 Leagues together, from the Ocean to Mount *Caucaſus*, or *Taurus*, yet there are not ſo many Ways to go into the *Indies*, out of *Perſia*, as there are of travelling into *Perſia* out of *Turky*, by reaſon, that between *Perſia* and the *Indies* are nothing but vaſt Sands and Deſarts, where there is no Water to be found; ſo that you have but 2 Roads to chuſe in going from *Iſpahan* to *Agra*, the one by Land through *Candahar*, and the other partly by Land and partly by Sea, taking Ship at *Bander-Abaſſi*, or *Ormus*. Both theſe I have deſcribed, as far as the Limits of *Perſia* reach, and ſhall only add concerning this Latter, That ſailing is not ſafe at all times upon the *Indian*, as it is upon the *European* Coaſts. You muſt obſerve the proper Seaſons, which being paſt there is no venturing. The Months of *November*, *December*, *January*, *February* and *March* are the only time in the Year to embark for *Surat*, to *Ormus*; but from *Surat* you muſt not ſtir after the End of *February*, for then the Weſtern Winds, that bring Rain along with them into *India*, begin to blow; but during thoſe 4 Months there blows a N. E. Wind, which carries the Ships from *Surat* to *Ormus* in 15 or 20 Days; and this Wind veering a little to the North ſerves alſo for thoſe that are bound for *Surat*; but it takes them up 30 or 35 Days, for which they are made amends in *March*, and the Beginning of *April*, for then the Weſtern Winds blowing full in their Stern carries them thither in 14 or 15 Days.

Seaſons of Sailing, or Monſons.

The Port of *Surat*.

The Veſſels that ſail to *Surat*, which is the only Port in the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, paſs within Sight of *Diu*, and the Point of St. *John*, and come to an Anchor in the Road of *Couali*, which is 4 Lgs. from the Town and 2 from the Mouth of the River, called the Bar of *Surat*; for the great Veſſels cannot get into the River of *Surat*, till they have unladen, by reaſon of the Sands that choak it up; and the Wares ſo unladen, are carried to the Town, either by Wagons or Boats; yet, becauſe the Cuſtoms were often ſtollen, when the Ships unladed, generally at *Couali*, therefore there is now a Prohibition, that none ſhall come to Anchor there, but the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who, indeed, land many Goods Cuſtom free, yet 'tis made up by the Veſſels that come to the *Bar* from *Perſia*, *Arabia Felix*, and all Parts of the *Indies*. When your Commodities are unladen at *Surat*, you muſt carry them to the Cuſtom-houſe adjoining to the Fort, where the Merchants pay for all ſorts of Wares from 4 to 5 *per Cent.* unleſs it be the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who, indeed, pay leſs, but are forced to make it up in Preſents to the Court and Deputations; and leaſt any valuable Goods ſhould be conceal'd, they ſearch every Perſon in the Ship exactly. Gold and Silver pays but 2 in the Hundred, and when it is brought into the Cuſtom-houſe, the Maſter of the Mint comes and takes it and coins it into the Money of the Country, which though it be to the Loſs of the Merchant, yet can't be avoided as to the Silver, but the Merchants have ſo many Ways to hide their Gold, that it ſeldom comes to the Knowledge of the Cuſtomers. If they bring any Money ready coin'd out of other Countries, as Piaſters, or Abaſſi's out of *Perſia*, they are melted down and refined to make Roupies, becauſe the Silver-Money of the Great *Mogul* is finer than any others. The *Indian* Money is the Silver Roupie, the half, quarter, 18th and 16th part. The Roupie is as big as an Abaſſi of *Perſia*, but much thicker; it paſſes commonly for 30 *French* Sols, or 2 *s.* 3 *d.* Sterling. This Money is coined every Year, and the new ones during the Year they are coined in, are valued a Pecha more than thoſe of the foregoing Year, becauſe the Coiners pretend that the Silver wears daily. They have alſo another Silver Coin, called Mahmoudi, which is worth about 10 Sols and an half, or 8 *d.* Sterling; but it goes no where but in *Surat*, and the Province of *Guzarat*. Abaſſi's, brought out of *Perſia*, go alſo in the *Indies*, but for leſs than in their own Country, *viz.* at 19 Pecha's, or 16 *French* Sols, which is 1 *s.* 2 *d.* The Pecha (of which they have Halfs, Double and Four-fold) is a Piece of Copper-Money as big and thick as a Roupie, but in Value about half a Sous, or ſomething leſs than an Half-penny *Engliſh*. A Roupie is worth more or leſs of theſe Pecha's, according as you are nearer or farther from the Copper-Mines. At *Agra* and *Gehanabat* they are worth 55 or 56 Pecha's, and at *Surat* ſometimes but 46, and ſometimes 50, becauſe it is at a Diſtance from the Copper-Mines.

The Cuſtoms at *Surat*.

The Money of *India*, Name and Value.

Inſtead of ſmall Money they uſe certain Shells, which they call *Cori*, brought from the *Maldives*, of which they give 50, or more, for a Pecha, or if near the Sea-ſhore where they are brought in, 60.

In the Province of *Guzarat*, the chief Cities whereof are, *Surat*, *Cambaya*, *Boudra* and *Amadabat*. Mahmoudi's, Half-Mahmoudi's and Almonds are accounted a current Money. A Mahmoudi is about 9 Sous, 3 Deniers, or 8 *d. Engliſh* in Value. The Almonds, which they call *Baden*, are brought from *Ormus* and grow in the Deſarts of the Kingdom of *Lar*; they give 68 Almonds for a Pecha, and 20 Pecha's for a Mahmoudi. There is no Fear that the Children ſhould crack theſe Almonds, and ſo deſtroy their Money, for they are as bitter as Colloquintida. Some Years the Almond-Trees do not bear, and then their Price is much raiſed, for then you will not have above 40 or 44 for a Pecha. The Roupie of Gold is valued in the Country at 14 Roupies of Silver, and the Half and Quarter-Roupies proportionably. Great Sums of Money are reckoned by Leks, Crouls, or Courous, Padans and Nils. 100000 Roupies make a Lek, 100000 Leks a Courou, 100000 Courous a Padan, 100000 Padans a Nil. If you bring Gold into the *Indies* in Ingots, or *European* Ducats, you ſhall always have 7 and an half

Shell-Money.

Great Sums.

Profit, if you can escape paying the Customs, but if you pay them, your Gain is lost.

Surat described. The City of *Surat* lies in 21 D. and a few M. of Northern Lat. and is watered by the River *Tapty*. It is inhabited by 3 Orders of Men, as they distinguish themselves, *viz. Moors*, under which Name they comprehend all *Mahometans*, though they differ in their Opinions, being some *Sunni*'s, and others *Chiai*'s, viz. *Moguls*, *Persians*, *Arabians* and *Turks*. 2. Heathens, who adore Idols, of whom there are several sorts. 3. *Persies*, who are also called *Gaurs*, or *Atech-pereſt*, i. e. *Adorers of the Fire*, which was the Worship of the ancient *Persians*. These Men retreated into the *Indies* when *Califf-Omar* reduced the Kingdom of *Persia* under the Power of the *Mahometans*. Among these, indeed, there are some *Franks*, and other Christians; but as they are not accounted among the Inhabitants, because their Number is inconsiderable in Comparison of the other Parts. There are some Men in *Surat* vastly rich: One *Vargivora*, a *Banian*, was reckoned worth at least 8 Millions. The City is but of an indifferent Bigness, and 'tis hard to know the Number of the Inhabitants, because the Seasons render it unequal: There are a great many all the Year round, but in the Time of the *Monson*, i. e. The Seasons for Sailing, *viz.* in *January*, *February* and *March*, it is so full of People, that Lodgings can hardly be had either in the City or Suburbs. The Generality of the Houses are built of Reeds, plaister'd over with Cow-dung, to make them private, for in all *Surat* there is not above 9 or 10 good Houses, of which the *Cha-bender*, or Chief of the Merchants, has 2 or 3, the *English* and *Dutch* also have some of them, and the rest belong to the *Mahometan* Merchants; but the *Franks* are only allow'd to hire Houses, lest if they should have any of their own, they should make it a Fortress. The *Capuchin* Friars have built them a very convenient Convent, according to the Model of the Houses in *Europe*, and a fair Church by it, but they purchased the Ground in the Name of one *Chelebi*, a *Maronite* Merchant of *Aleppo*. The Walls of the Town were formerly of Earth, and that very ruinous, but of late they have built them of Brick, a Fathom and half thick, and fortified them better, to secure it from the Irruptions of a Neighbouring *Raja*. The Castle is built upon the side of the River, at the S. End of the Town, and is so placed, that you must pass by it at your entring into the Town, whether you go by Land or Water. It is a Fort of a reasonable Bigness, square, and flank'd at each Corner with a large Tower. The Ditches on 3 sides are filled with Sea-Water, and the 4th is wash'd by the River. There are several Pieces of Cannon, but because there are no Platforms on the Wall, they are planted upon Wooden Scaffolds. The Governour of it can only command his Soldiers within the Fort, for he has no Power in the City, which has a distinct Governour, who receives the King's Customs, and his other Revenues in his Province, but he lays them in the Castle till they are sent for by express Orders to the Court.

Very rich Men at *Surat*.

The Houses.

Capuchin Friars.

The Castle.

The Streets. The Streets of *Surat* are large and even, but not pav'd, and there is no considerable publick Building in it.

Food. The *Christians* and *Mahometans* there commonly eat Cow-Beef, not only because 'tis better, but more plentiful than Ox-Beef, their Oxen being almost all employ'd in Plowing and carrying Burdens. They have also pretty good Mutton, and good store of Pullets, Chickens, Pigeons, Pigs, and all sorts of wild Fowl.

Oils. They use 2 sorts of Oil with their Food, *viz.* of *Crocus Sylvestris*, or Wild Saffron, and *Sesamum*. This last is most common, but the first much the best.

Grapes. They eat Grapes from the Beginning of *February* to the End of *April*, but they have no good Taste, and the Wine made of them is sowre.

A black Sugar. They have several sorts of Strong-waters, which they draw from *Jagery* and the Bark of the Tree *Balorel*, steep'd in Water, 2 sorts of Palm-Trees, the one called *Cadgiour*, and the other the *Coco* Tree, Rice and Dates, but they are none of them so good as Brandy. Their Vinegar is made of *Jagery* and decay'd Raisins, and to their best they put in a little *Tari*, which is the Juice of the Palm-Trees above-mentioned.

Their Merchandize. At *Surat* are sold all sorts of Stuffs and Cotton-Cloths that are made in the *Indies*, all the Commodities also of *Europe* and *China*, as Porcellane, Cabinets and Chests, adorn'd with Torquoises, Agats, Cornelians, Ivory, and other sorts of Embellishments. Here are also sold Diamonds, Rubies, Pearls, and all other precious Stones, which are found in the East, as also Musk, Amber, Myrrh, Incense, Manna, Sal-Armoniack, Lac, Quicksilver, Indico, the Root *Renas* for dying Red, all sorts of Spices, Fruits and Drugs, which are produced in the *Indies* and the *Levant*, and are bought up by Foreign Merchants to transport into all Parts of the World.

The Officers there. There are several great Officers at *Surat*, *viz.* a *Mufti*, who inspects and rules all Matters of Religion among the *Mahometans*; and a *Cadi* to judge of all Civil Matters; a *Vaca Nevis*, or Secretary of State, who keeps a Register of all that happens in his Province, and gives the Great *Mogul* Notice of all Things that happen of Importance. Two Governours, or *Nabad*, who command the one the City, and the other the Castle, and have no Dependance one upon another, nor will they encroach upon one another's Offices, or Duties. The Governour of the Town judges in Civil Matters, and commonly renders speedy Justice; but he meddles not with Criminal Causes, for they belong to an Officer appointed on Purpose, called *Cotoual*, who is much the same with *Souſsbaſſa* in *Turky*, and *Deroga* in *Persia*. He orders Criminals to be punish'd in his Presence, by whipping or cudgelling, and this he doth either in his own House, or in the Street, near the Place where the Fact was done. When he goes abroad, he rides on Horse-back, and has several Officers who attend him, carrying Battoons, Whips, Lances, *&c.* before him. But neither of these 2 Judges can put any Man to Death. The King reserves that Power to himself; and therefore, when any Man deserves Death, a Courier is dispatched to know his Pleasure, and they fail not to put his Orders in Execution, so soon as the Courier is returned. The *Cotoual* goes his Rounds in the Night to prevent all Disorders, and if he finds any Man abroad at unseasonable Times, he commits him to Prison, and rarely dismisses them without being bastinado'd or whipt. This Officer is to answer for all the Robberies committed in the Town, but by their Cunning they usually evade it. When any one is robb'd this Officer apprehends all the People of the House, both Young and Old, where the Robbery hath been committed, and causes them to be beaten severely. They are stretched out upon the Belly, and 2 Men lash the Patient with long Whips, till he has receiv'd 2 or 300 Lashes, and be all in a Gore Blood. If at first he confess not the Theft, they whip him the next Day, and so for several Days more, till he confesseth all, or the Thing stolen be recover'd again; but he never searches the Houses or Goods of Robbers.

The *Cotoual*.

Capital Crimes how punished.

Robbers how dealt with.

There is also a *Fourſdar*, or Provost, who is bound to secure the Country round about the Town, and to answer for all the Robberies committed there.

The Burying-places. The Burying-places of *Surat* are without the Town, about 3 or 400 Paces from the *Baroche* Gate. The Catholicks have theirs apart, and so have the *English* and *Dutch*, as well as some religious *Indians*. The *English* and *Dutch* adorn their Graves with Pyramids of Brick, whitened over with Lime. The religious *Gentiles* make their Tombs square, and of Plaister, cover'd some with a Dome, and others with a Pyramid a little more than 3 Foot high. The *Banians* burn their dead Bodies by the River side, and leave the Ashes there to be wash'd away by it, because they account it sacred. They believe, that it contributes much to the Soul of the Deceased, to burn his Body immediately after his Death, because they say, his Soul suffers after the Separation from the Body, unless it be burnt; but they burn not the Bodies of Children under 2 Years old, because they hold them innocent, nor of the *Vartia's* or *Jogues*, who are a kind of *Dervices*, because they follow the Rite of *Madeo*, who is one of their great Saints, and ordered their Bodies to be interr'd.

Bodies burnt.

Curiosities about *Surat*. The Things most observable about *Surat* are, a large Well, built by a *Banian*, with divers thin Arches over it, to which they go down by certain Stairs. On the Outside is a Figure of a red Face, but the Features are not discernible. The *Gentiles* say, 'tis the Pagod of *Madeo*, and pay a great Devotion to it. Towards *Daman-Gate* begins the loveliest Walk in all the Country, and by it is a great Reservatory of Water, called the *Tanquie*. It hath 6 Angles, and every one of them 100 Paces long, and it is at least a Musket-shot in Diameter. The Bottom is paved with large Free-stone, and there are Steps all round in Form of an Amphitheatre from the Brim to the Bottom of lovely Free-stone, brought from *Cambaya*. It was made at the Charges of a rich *Banian*, named *Copy*, to catch the Rain-Water to supply the Town, and is certainly

a

a Work worthy of a King, being equal to the best of the *Roman* Aquæducts made for publick Use. About a Quarter of a Lg. from the Reservatory is the *Princess's Garden*, so call'd, because it belongs to the Great Mogul's Sister. It is a large Plat of Trees of several kinds, as Manguiers, Palms, Mirobalans, Wars, Maisa-Trees, and many other Plants and Shrubs, some of them rare, set in a direct Line, and it is cut into many long and very fair Walks. In the midst is a Building with 4 Fronts, having each of them a *Divan*, and a square Bason full of Water before it, from whence run several little Brooks through the chief Walks, which make it fine and delightful, but short of the Princes Gardens in *Europe*.

The Princess's Garden.

About 150 Paces from the Garden is a War, or Ber-Tree, which the *Portuguese* call, *The Tree of Roots*. It is very large and high, being round, and 80 Paces in Diameter. The Branches which have taken Root are so skilfully cut, that one may walk every where under it. The *Indians* account it sacred, and the *Banians* have planted Banners on the Top and higher Branches of it. By it is a Pagod dedicated to an Idol, called *Mameva*, which is thought to be *Eve*.

A War-Tree.

The Soil about *Surat* is brown, and so rich, that they never dung it, but sow their Corn after the Rains in *September*, and reap it in *February*. It bears also Sugar-Canes, Rice, Manguiers, Palm-Trees, and many other sorts of Trees, which yield great Profit. They water their Gardens, but the great Dews yield sufficient Moisture for their Corn-Lands. The River *Tapty* is always brackish at *Surat*, so that they use it only for washing their Bodies, which they do every Morning, as do also the other *Indians*.

The Soil about Surat.

In travelling up and down *India* there are divers sorts of Carriages, both for Merchandice and Travellers, and when you leave *Surat* you must make use of one, or both these. For Goods they make use of Oxen, Camels or Waggons. Upon their Oxen they will lay 300 or 305 Pound Weight; and 'tis no wonderful Thing to see 10 or 12000 Oxen at a Time laden with Rice, Corn and Salt, carrying the Rice to the Place where Corn grows, and Corn where the Rice is, and Salt to the Places where there are none. These numerous Caravans are very inconvenient to Travellers, because when they meet with them, they are forced to stay 2 or 3 Days, till they pass by. This is the most speedy Carriage for Merchants Goods, and they commonly make use of it when they are in haste to ship them off at *Surat*. They that drive these Oxen follow no other Calling, nor have any Houses, but carry their Wives and Children along with them. Some of them have 100 Oxen of their own, and they have a Captain of the Caravan, who wears a Chain of Pearls about his Neck, and takes as much State upon him as a Prince. All that follow this Trade of Carrying are divided into 4 Tribes, called *Manari's*, and consist each of them of 100000 Souls; they live always in Tents, and are maintained by transporting of Merchandice from Country to Country; the first of them carries nothing but Corn, the 2d Rice, the 3d Pulse, and the 4th Salt, and they are distinguish'd by certain Marks made by the Priests in the Face of every one of 3 of the Tribes by a different colour'd Gum, and some Grains of the Thing they carry pourtray'd in it; the 4th carries a Bag of Salt about their Necks of 8 or 10 Pounds, and with it they thump their Breasts every Morning before they say their Prayers in Token of Repentance. They love their Oxen and Cattel as tenderly as Children, especially if they have none. Their Women wear only a Piece of Calicut, painted or white, 5 or 6 times double from their Waste downward, and upwards they cut their Bodies into several Forms of Flowers, which they paint in various Colours with Grapes. They have Priests that go along with them, who every Morning set up an Image of a Serpent in Wreaths upon a Pole 6 or 7 Foot high, and when every one has paid his Adoration to it, the Women going 3 times about it, they load it upon an Ox appointed on purpose for carrying it, and accompany the Caravan. They use Camels sometimes, but very rarely, they being particularly appointed to carry the Luggage of great Personages.

Their Carriages and Way of travelling.

Oxen.

Ox-Drivers.

Their Tribes.

Their Carriage.

Their Priests.

Camels.

The Caravan or Waggon seldom exceeds 200, and is most commonly not above 100. Every Waggon is drawn by 10 or 12 Oxen, and attended by 4 Soldiers, which the Person that owes the Merchandice is obliged to pay. Two of them march on each side of the Waggon, over which there are 2 Ropes, thrown acress, the Ends whereof they hold in their Hands, that if the Waggon leans too much to either Side in the bad Way, the contrary Side may keep it from overturning, by pulling the Ropes with all their Strength.

Waggons.

The Manner of Travelling in *India* is upon Oxen, instead of Horses, so that if any Merchant carries an Horse out of *Persia*, 'tis only for Show, or to walk in his Hand, or to sell to some *Indian* Prince. Some of these Oxen will pace as easie as our ambling Nags. They manage them as Horses, but instead of a Bit, they have a Rope drawn through the mussely part of the Nose: Only in riding them you must take care that the Horns be not above a Foot long, for if they be longer, when the Flies begin to sting, he will chase and toss back his Horns, and sometimes strick them into the Stomach of his Rider. They never Shooe them, but in rough Places, where the Stones and Heat are apt to waste and chop the Hoof. They use also little Coaches for Travel, which will hold 2 Persons, but generally they ride but one in them, when they carry their necessary Cloak-bags and Provisions, for which there is a proper Place under the Coach. They are drawn by 2 Oxen, and some of them are so strong, that they will travel upon the Trot 12 or 15 Lgs. a Day for 60 Days together. When they have got half their Day's Journey they give them 2 or 3 Balls, as big as one of our Two-penny Loaves, of Wheat-Flour, kneaded up with Butter and black Sugar. The Hire of one of these Coaches is a Roupie a Day, or a little more, for from *Surat* to *Agra* is 40 Days Journey, and you pay for the whole not above 45 Roupies. They who have more to spend may make use of a Palanquin for their Ease, wherein they travel very commodiously. 'Tis a little sort of Coach, 6 or 7 Foot long, and 3 broad, with Ballisters round about it. It has a kind of Tilt over it of Satin, or Cloth of Gold, and when the Sun lies upon either side, there is a Slave that goes by the side to pull down the Covering, and another carries a Target of Oziers, cover'd with some genteel Stuff, to keep the Traveller from the Heat of the Sun. Three Men for the most part apply themselves to each of the Ends to carry the Palanquin upon their Shoulders, and they go swifter than our Sedan-Men, and with more Ease, because they practise it from their Youth. You give to every one 4 Roupies a Month, but if the Journey exceeds above 60 Days Labour, they'll have 5. Whether it be in a Coach or a Palanquin, he that will travel honourably in the *Indies* must take along with him 20 or 30 arm'd Men, some with Bows and Arrows, others with Muskets, who have every one the same Rate as those that carry the Palanquin. Sometimes, for more Magnificence, they carry a Banner, as the *English* and *Hollanders* do for the Honour of their Companies. These Soldiers watch and keep Centinel for your Defence, and are mighty careful to give Content, that they may deserve the Good-Word of the Chief of the Town where you take them, for he is responsible for their Fidelity, and has 2 Roupies apiece of them for his Recommendation.

Oxen to ride on.

Coaches drawn by Oxen.

The Fare for them.

Palanquins.

The Pay for Carriage.

In the Villages where a *Mahometan* commands, you may have Mutton, Pullets or Pigeons, but where there are only *Banians*, there is nothing to be had but Flour, Rice, Herbs and Milk-Meats.

Provision.

In the *Indies*, where the Heats are very excessive, 'tis more commodious to travel by Night than Day, and therefore when you come into any fortified Towns, you must be gone before Sun-set, if you intend to travel the Night following, for the Gates being shut the Commander of the Place is to answer for all the Robberies committed within his Jurisdiction, and will suffer none to go out, telling them 'tis the King's Order, to which he must be obedient. The Measure of Distances in *India* is by *Costes*, which is a Lg. and *Gos*, which is 4 of our common Leagues.

In travelling from *Surat* to *Agra*, there are 2 Roads, one through *Brampour* and *Seronge*, and the other through *Amadapat*. In the first of these you go from *Surat* to *Barnoly*, a great Borough Town, where you ford a great River. This first Day's Journey lies through a Country something Woody, yet having many Fields of Rice and Wheat.

One Road from Surat to Agra.

From *Barnoly* you travel altogether through Woods to *Babor*, a large Village upon a Lake, about a Lg. in Compass. Three quarters of a Lg. before you come at this Town you must ford a small River, but with great Difficulty, because it is full of Rocks and Stones, which are ready to overturn the Coach.

Barnoly to Babor.

Kerkoa. From *Babor* the next Stage is through a Woody Country to an Inn, called *Kerkoa*, or *De La-Begum*, becauſe it was built by the Charity of *Begum-Saheb*, the Daughter of *Sha-Jehan*, for the Eaſe of Travellers, who before were forced to travel to *Navapoura*, which, beſides that it was too great a Journey, being upon the Frontiers of thoſe *Raja's*, who often revolt from their Obedience to the Great Mogul, the Caravans were generally abuſed. This Inn, or *Caravan-ſera*, is large and very commodious. In the Road from hence to *Navapoura* you ford 2 Rivers.

Navapoura. *Navapoura* is a great Town, full of Weavers, but Rice is the greateſt Commodity there; for not only the River that runs through the Country makes it very fruitful in that Grain, which requires Moiſture, but the Rice that grows there has a peculiar Excellency, for which it is much eſteem'd. It is, indeed, leſs by half than the Grain of the common Rice, but when it is boil'd no Snow is whiter, and it ſmells like Musk. This Property makes the *Indian* Grandees ſo fond of it, that they will eat no other, and when they would make an acceptable Preſent to any one in *Perſia*, they ſend them a Sack of this Rice.

Belt Rice.

From *Navapoura* you paſs through *Naſarbar*, *Dolmedan* and *Senquera*, to *Tollener*. Here you paſs the River which runs to *Barock*, where it grows very large, and empties it ſelf into the Gulf of *Cambaya*.

Tollener. From *Tollener* your Way lies by *Choupre*, *Senquelis* and *Nabir*, to *Badelpoura*. Here the loaded Waggons pay the Duties of *Brampour*, but the Waggons that carry nothing but Paſſengers pay nothing; and when this is done, you go on to *Brampour*, which is a great City, but very much ruined, and moſt of the Houſes are thatch'd with Straw. In the midſt of it is the Caſtle, where the Governour lies. The Government of this Province is a very conſiderable Command, and is only conferr'd upon the King's Son, or Uncle, but ſince they have underſtood the Strength of the Province of *Bengal*, which was formerly a Kingdom, that Province is thought the moſt conſiderable in all the Mogul's Country at this Day.

Brampour described.

Calicuts. There is a great Trade in this City, as well as in the Province adjoining, in Calicuts, of which there are prodigious Quantities made here, very clear and white, which are tranſported into *Perſia*, *Turky*, *Muſcovy*, *Poland*, *Arabia*, *Grand Cairo*, and other Places. Some of them are painted with Flowers of various Colours, and the Women make Veils and Scarfs of them, and of ſome Coverlets of Beds and Handkerchiefs. They make another ſort of Linen, which they never dye, and hath a Stripe or two of Gold or Silver quite through the Piece, and at each End from the Breadth of one Inch to 12 or 15, they fix a Tiſſue of Gold, Silver and Silk, intermix'd with Flowers: Both ſides are alike. Some of theſe Linens are made on purpoſe for Saſhes, and are called *Ornis*, and contains from 15 to 20 Ells. Some are of 2 Ells only, and ſerve the Ladies of Quality for Veils and Scarfs. and vaſt Quantities of theſe Goods are vended into *Perſia* and *Turky*. They make alſo other ſorts of Cotton-Linen at *Brampour*, becauſe there is no Province in all the *Indies*, which has greater Quantities of Cotton.

Linen called Ornis.

Cotton-Linen.

Leaving this City, there is a River, which, when ſhallow, is forded, and if ſwell'd by the Rains, there are always Boats attending to carry over Travellers, and then you come to *Piombeſera*, which is an Incloſure of Walls and Hedges, within which are 50 or 60 Huts covered with Straw, where dwell certain Men and Women that ſell Flour, Rice, Butter and Herbs, and make it their Buſineſs to bake Bread and boil Rice to ſell to the Travellers; and theſe Perſons cleanſe the Hut they take up and put into it a Bedſtead, with Girths to lay a Mattreſs or Quilt upon, which the Travellers uſually carry along with them. This is ſignified by the Word *Sera*, which is added to ſuch Places. If any Traveller have a mind to a Fowl, or piece of Mutton, any *Mahometan* in the Place will go to the City and buy it for him.

Piombeſera.

Andy. From hence you go forward through *Pander*, *Balkiſera*, *Nevilkiſera*, *Conſemba*, *Chenipore*, *Charava*, and *Bichola* to *Andy*, where you paſs a River, that falls into the *Ganges*, between *Banaras* and *Patna*, and ſo take the Way by *Onjuena*, *Tiquery*, *Tool-meden*, *Nova-ſera*, *Ichavour*, *Signor*, *Chekaipour*, *Douray*, *Aſer-kair*, *Telar*, and *Sankaira* to *Seronge*.

Seronge described. This City is large, and the moſt part of the Inhabitants are *Banian* Merchants and Handicraft-Tradesmen, from Father to Son; and for that reaſon there are in this City ſeveral Houſes of Stone and Brick. Here is alſo a great Trade for all ſorts of painted Calicuts called Chites, of which the Cloathing of all the meaner Sort of People in *Perſia* and *Turky* is made; and the ſame are uſed in other Countries for Coverlets for Beds, and Table Napkins. The ſame ſort of Calicuts are made in other Countries, but the Colours are neither ſo lively, nor laſting, but wear out with often waſhing; whereas thoſe made at *Seronge* grow the fairer, the more you waſh them. This ariſeth from a peculiar Virtue of the Water of the River, that runs by the City, when the Rains fall, for the Workmen having made ſuch Prints upon their Cottons, as the Foreign Merchants give them in ſeveral Patterns, dip them in the River often, and that ſo fixeth the Colours, that they will always hold. There is alſo made at *Seronge* a ſort of Calicut ſo fine, that when a Man puts it on, his Skin ſhall appear as plainly thro' it as if he were naked; but the Merchants are not permitted to tranſport it, for the Governour is obliged to ſend it all to the Great *Mogul's* Seraglio, and the principal Lords of the Court, to make the Sultaneſſes and Noblemens Wives Shifts and Garments for the hot Weather, and the King and the Lords take great Pleaſure to behold them in thoſe Shifts, and ſee them dance with nothing elſe upon their Bodies.

Chites.

A Water that fixes Colours.

Superfine Calicuts.

From *Seronge* you go to *Madalki-ſera*, and paſſing through *Paulki-ſera*, *Kaſariki-ſera*, and *Chaldolki-ſera* you come to *Callaba*.

This is a great Town, which was the Reſidence of a *Raja* formerly, who paid a Tribute to the Mogul, but the laſt Emperor *Aureng Zeb*, when he came to the Crown, not only cut off his Head, but the Heads of many of his Subjects, which he cauſed to be ſet up in ſo many Holes dug in the Ground round about the 2 Towers, which ſtand upon the High-way near the Town.

Callaba described.

From hence the Way lies to *Akmate*, and from thence to *Collaſar*, whoſe Inhabitants are all Idolaters. Without the Town all along the High-way there grew a vaſt Number of great Trees, which they call *Mangues*, and in many Places near the Trees are many Pagods, with every one an Idol at the Door. They belong'd to the *Banians*.

Collaſar.

Departing from this Town, you travel through *Sanſell* and *Dongry* to *Gate*. This is a ſtrait Paſſage of a Quarter of a Lg. long, between the Mountains, and is unavoidable by all that come from the South, as *Surat*, *Goa*, *Viſapour*, *Golconda*, *Maſlipatan*, and other Places, to *Agra*, for there is no other Road but this. At the Entry of it are the Ruins of 2 or 3 Caſtles, and the Paſſage is ſo narrow, that 2 Waggons can hardly go a-breaſt. Formerly there was a Gate at each End of the *Streights*, and at the End next *Agra* there are 5 or 6 Shops of *Banians*, that ſell Flour, Butter, Rice, Herbs and Pulſe. Not far from hence is a Magazine of Rice and Corn, kept by Serpents 13 or 14 Foot long, and of a proportionable Bigneſs. The People hereabouts get their Living by the Paſſengers, from whom they extort as much as they can for ſhowing them the Way, there being none but they that know it, becauſe is lies through intricate Rocks, till they come at the River, which being forded, the Road leads to *Nader*, which is a great City upon the Deſcent of a Mountain, upon whoſe Top there is a Fortreſs, and all the Mountain is encompaſſed with Walls. The greateſt part of the Houſes, as in all other Cities of *India*, are thatch'd with Straw one Story high, but the rich Mens Houſes are 2 Stories, and terraſs'd. Round about the City are ſeveral Ponds to be ſeen, which were formerly encompaſſed with hewn Stone, but now are decay'd for want of looking after; but there are ſtill very fair Monuments about them. The River, which you paſs before you come at this City, encompaſſes the Mountain like a Peninſula, and after a long winding Courſe, falls into *Ganges*. At *Nadar* are made a great Number of quilted Coverlets, ſome white, others embroider'd with Flowers of Gold, Silk and Sattin.

Gate.

Serpents to guard a Magazine.

Nader described.

Large Ponds.

From *Nader* you go to *Barqui-ſera*, and ſo by *Trie*, to *Gonalcor*. This is a great City, but ill built, as all the other *Indian* Cities are. It is built at the ſide of a Mountain, that lies on the W. ſide of it, and at the Top is encompaſſed with Walls and a Tower. In the Incloſure are ſeveral Ponds, made by the Rains, with which they water their Grounds, ſown with Rice, and ſo raiſe Corn enough to maintain their Garriſon, and upon that Account 'tis eſteem'd the beſt in the *Indies*. Upon the Deſcent of this Hill, which looks

Gonalcor.

looks towards the North-East, *Cha-Jehan* built an Houſe of Pleaſure, from whence there is a delightful Proſpect over all the City. It is ſo contriv'd, that it may ſerve for a Garriſon. Beneath the Houſe are to be ſeen ſeveral Idols cut out of the Rock, repreſenting the Shapes of their Gods, and one of them is of an extraordinary Height. The *Mahometan* Princes make this Fortreſs of *Goualcor* a Priſon for their Great Princes and Noblemen that offend them. *Cha-Jehan*, who came to the Crown by foul Play, impriſon'd all the Princes and Lords, whom he ſuſpected to be Male-contents, in this Caſtle, but ſuffered them all to enjoy their Eſtates; but *Aureng-Zeb* his Son takes contrary Meaſures, for when he impriſons any great Lords, he orders them to be poiſon'd within 10 or 12 Days, that ſo he may be rid of his Enemies, and yet not be thought a cruel Prince for his bloody Executions.

The Fortreſs.

Morat Bakſh's Death and Monuments.

Thus he ſerved his own Brother *Morat Bakche*, whom he had engaged to join with him in a Rebellion againſt his Father; but having made him Governour of *Guzarat*, he took upon him the Name of a King, whereupon he ſeized him, and ſending him to this Fortreſs, he died there. They have made him a moſt magnificent Monument in the City in a Moſque, built on purpoſe, with a great Piazza, ſurrounded with Vaults and Shops over them, where they keep their Markets, and a Foundation for the Poor, to whom they give Alms every Day, to pray for the Founder, according to the Cuſtom of the *Indians*.

The Road.

Leaving *Goualcor*, you ford a River called *Lantke*, and come to *Paterkiſera*, where paſſing over a Bridge, conſiſting of 6 wide Arches, and which carries you over the River *Quarinado*, you arrive at *Quaraquiſera*, and ſo to *Dolpoura*, where there is a River called *Chammel-nadi*, to which there belongs a Ferry-boat. The River falls into the *Gemena*, between *Agra* and *Halabas*.

From hence you paſs to *Minaſqui-ſera*, where there is a River called *Jagounagi*, but you do not paſs it, till you come 8 Lgs. farther, and then there is a very long Bridge built with Stone, called *Jaoulcapoul*. Not far from this Bridge they view the Merchants Goods, that when they come to *Agra*, they may not be cheated of their Duties, and more particularly obſerve, whether there be any Flasks of Wine among the Casks of pickled Fruits. From this Bridge you come to *Agra*, which from *Surat* is 339 Lgs, *viz.* From *Surat* to *Brampour* an 132 Lgs. from thence to *Seronge* an 101 Lgs. and from thence to *Agra* 106 Lgs. In theſe 2 laſt Stages the Country is full of Fields of Corn and Rice, being a lovely Champain, where you meet with very little Wood, and the Villages as thick, that you may reſt when you pleaſe.

The diſtance from *Surat* to *Agra*.

The other Road from *Surat* to *Agra*.

The other Road from *Surat* to *Agra*, through *Amadapat*, lies firſt through a Country full of Corn, Rice, Millet and Sugar-Canes, where having ferried over the River, which runs to *Cambaya*, and falls into the Gulf, you come to *Bareche*, which is a great City, and has a Fortreſs belonging to it, but there is no uſe made of it at preſent.

Baroch deſcribed.

This City is made very famous for Trade upon the Account of the River, which has a peculiar Quality to whiten their Cottons, and which are therefore brought from all Parts of the *Mogul*'s Territories thither for that End; beſides, here are made a great Quantity of *Baffa's*, or long and large Pieces of Cotton, very fair and cloſe woven: The Price of them is from 4 to 100 Roupies. You muſt pay Cuſtoms at *Baroche* for all Goods carried in and out. The *Engliſh* Preſident has a very fair Houſe in this City.

Mountebanks ſtrange Tricks.

In this City are a ſort of Mountebanks, who do ſtrange Tricks, *viz.* They will heat a Chain red hot, and wind it about their naked Bodies ſeveral times, and though they make as if they felt a great deal of Pain, yet, in Truth, they receive no Harm at all: But what is moſt miraculous, they will thruſt a dry Stick into the Ground, and in leſs than half an Hour's time, make it a Tree 4 or 5 Foot high bearing Leaves and Flowers as in the Spring-time. An *Engliſh* Miniſter ſeeing this Witchcraft, declared it unlawful to be a Spectator of ſuch Deluſions, and proteſted he would not give the Communion to any that ſhould hereafter do it. Theſe Mountebanks wander up and down the Country to ſhew theſe Tricks, with their Wives and Children, and get a Livelihood by it.

Thoſe who are curious to ſee *Cambaya*, leave the direct Road which goes to *Broudra*, and paſs through that City, which is not above 4 or 5 Lgs. out of the Way, and is the ſafer Road.

Cambaya is a great City at the Bottom of the Gulf of the ſame Name on the South of it. It lies in the Province of *Guzarat*, and though it be not ſo populous as *Surat*, 'tis as big again. It hath very fair Brick-Walls about it, 4 Fathom high, and Towers ſtanding at certain Diſtances. The Streets of it are large, and have all Gates at each End, which are ſhut every Night. The Houſes are very high, and built of Bricks dried in the Sun, and were once furniſhed very richly after the *Portugueſe* Manner, but now many of them fall to decay. Here it is, that they ſhape thoſe fair Agats that come from *India*, into Cups, Hafts of Knives, Beads, and other ſorts of Workmanſhip. Theſe Agats are fetched out of the Quarries by a Village called *Nimodra*, 4 Lgs. from *Cambaya*, in Pieces as big as a Man's Fiſt. The Shops here are ſtored with Aromatick Perfumes, Spices, Silken and other Stuffs. Moſt part of the Inhabitants are *Banians* and *Raſpouts*. The Caſtle where the Governour reſides is large, but not beautiful. There are ſo many Monkies in the Town, that ſometimes the Houſes are covered over with them, and they often do Miſchief in the Streets, by throwing down ſuch Things as they find upon the Roofs. The Out-parts of the Town are beautified with a great many fair publick Gardens. Here is a Marble Sepulchre, raiſed by a King of *Guzarat*, in Honour of a Governour of this City, but it is decayed. It contains 3 Courts, and in one of them are ſeveral Porphyry Pillars. Anciently there was in this City an Hoſpital for ſick Beaſts, but there are only Ruines of it now. The Suburbs are almoſt as big as the Town, and in them they make Indico of the ſame Nature as that of *Sarqueſſe*. It was famous for Traffick when the *Portugueſe* flouriſhed in *India*, but now the Trade is almoſt loſt, becauſe the Sea that once came up ſo cloſe to the Town, that little Veſſels could Anchor by it, is now become half a Lg. diſtant from it, and near the Coaſts is ſo ſhallow, that great Ships can come no nearer than 3 or 4 Lgs. There are great Numbers of Peacocks in the *Indies*, eſpecially in the Territories of *Baroche*, *Cambaya* and *Broudra*, and in the Day-time they walk about the Fields, but in the Night rooſt upon the Trees. The Fleſh of the young ones is white and well-taſted. In thoſe Parts where the *Mahometans* govern, you may catch them without Danger, but in thoſe Territories where there are idolatrous *Rajah*'s Maſters, it is very dangerous to kill them, or any other Bird, or Animal, for the *Banians* count it Sacrilege, and will ſeverely puniſh any they can ſeize. They whipt a *Perſian* Merchant to Death, and took all his Money to the Value of 300000 Roupies for ſhooting a Peacock.

Cambaya deſcrib'd.

Streets and Houſes.

Agats.

The Caſtle.

A Marble Sepulchre.

Indico.

Peacocks.

From *Cambaya* you go through a little Village, where there is a Pagod, where the *Indian Curtiſans* make their Offerings, and among divers naked Images, there is one that reſembles *Apollo*, with his privy Parts uncovered. The young Girls, who are train'd up to this wicked Art by the old *Curtiſans*, when they are 11 or 12 Years old, ſurrender themſelves up to this Idol, believing that it will bring them good Fortune: And about 6 Lgs. further you come to *Chidaba*, which is one of the faireſt Houſes of the Great Mogul, being in a wide Incloſure, wherein he has vaſt Gardens and large Ponds, with all the Pleaſures and Curioſities whereof the Genius of the *Indians* is capable; and from this Palace you travel to *Amadabad*, to which City you come from *Broudra* by *Neriade*.

A Pagod for the *Curtiſans*.

Amadabad, which is probably the *Amadariſtis* of *Arrian*, is 82 Lgs. from *Surat*, and lies in 23 D. and ſome M. of Northern Lat. It is built in a lovely Plain, watered by a little River, called *Sabremetty*, which is not very deep, but ſwells prodigiouſly by the Rains. Without the Town are many large Gardens, encloſed with Brick-Walls, and every one of them have a kind of Pavilion at the Entry. By them there is a Refervatory of Water, which has in the midſt of it a lovely Garden, 80 Paces ſquare, into which one enters over a Bridge 400 Paces long, and at the End of the Garden are pretty convenient Lodgings. By theſe you ſee many Houſes, which make a kind of large Village, and a great many Tombs indifferently well built. From hence you paſs through a Street, which leads you into the Town. The Town is encloſed with Stone and Brick-Walls, which at certain Diſtances are flank'd with great round Towers and Battlements all over. It hath 12 Gates, and is about a Lg. and half in Length, if you take in the Suburbs. All the Streets are wide, and the *Meidan* is 400 Paces in Breadth, and 700 in Length, with Trees planted

Amadabad deſcribed.

Gardens.

Walls.

Meidan.

planted on all sides. The Gate of the Castle is on the W. side, and there are 6 or 7 Pieces of Cannon mounted. In the Market-place are the Tribunals for the *Cotoreal*, or Criminal Judge, and in the midst is a very high Tree, which has a Ball fix'd on the Top of it, for those to hit, who exercise themselves there to shoot with Bows and Arrows. This Castle is Wall'd about with good Walls of Free-stone, and is as spacious as a little Town. Near the *Meidan* is a large Palace belonging to the King, which hath over the Gate a large Balcony for the Musicians, who play there every 6 Hours. The Apartments are adorn'd with Gold Paintings. The *English* Factory is in the Middle of the Town. It is well seated, and hath very fair Courts. Their Ware-houses are commonly full of Cloths of *Labors* and *Dehly*, with which they drive a great Trade; but the Trade of the City is in Silk-Stuffs, Hangings of Gold, Silver and Silk, but with Woollen Grounds, Salt-Petre, Ginger, candied and and raw, Lac, Cummin, Opium, Tamarins, Mirobalans and flat Indico. There are many Mosques great and small in it, but that which is called *Juma-mesgid*, or *Friday*'s Mosque, because all the devout People of the Town flock together on that Day, is the chiefest and fairest. It hath a large square Cloister, 2 fine Gates with high Steeples, from whence the *Muezims*, or Beadles of the Mosque, call the People to Prayers. It hath several Domes, and 2 Minarets, and 'tis pav'd with Marble, so that all together 'tis a pleasant Sight. It is inhabited by many Heathens, as well as *Mahometans*, who have their Pagods, or Idol-Temples there. The Pagod of *Santidas* was the Chief, before *Aureng-Zeb* converted it into a Mosque. It hath 3 Courts pav'd with Marble, and encompassed with Galleries, and into the 3d none must enter, till they have pull'd off their Shooes. The Inside is adorned with *Mosaick* Work, and Agats of divers Colours. In it are several Sepulchres of the ancient Idolatrous Kings of *Mosaick* Work, which look like little Chappels; but the Tomb of *Chaalem*, whom the *Indians* report to have been a Magician, but the *Mahometans* believe him to have been a great Saint, is most honoured, being daily visited by a great many out of Devotion.

The Castle and King's Palace.

The Great Mosque.

Santidas, a Pagod made a Mosque.

The *Banians* have a great Veneration for Apes, and there are some that breed them up in their Pagods to worship, and if any one kills any of them, complain of it as a great Injustice. There are 3 or 4 Hospitals for Cows, Oxen, Camels, Apes and Birds, and other sick and maimed Beasts, where they are look'd after, and well fed. They buy them from *Christians* and *Moors*, to deliver them, as they say, from the Cruelty of Infidels, and if they are incurable, they keep them there as long as they live, but if they recover, they sell them to *Gentiles*, and none else. This is also very remarkable, that every *Tuesday* and *Friday* all the Apes in the Country adjoining come into the City, and lie upon the Tops of the Houses during the excessive Heats. Upon these Days the People never fail to set ready in their Terrasses Rice, Millet, Sugar-Canes, and such like Things; for if they do not find Provisions, they'll break the Tiles, and do a great deal of Mischief. About *Amadabad* are a great many Forests, where they catch Panthers, which they tame, and send to the King for his Hunting.

Apes worshipped.

An Hospital for Beasts.

From hence you go to *Panser*, and so by *Masana* to *Chitpour*, a very good Town, so called from a sort of painted Calicuts, called *Chites*, made and sold here. They have an Art here of taming Lions, by tying them in a large Plain, and making them a Sport to the People. Hereabouts it is common to meet the Companies of *Faquirs*, or *Mahometan Dervises*. They have a Superior, and some Assistants, who have some Cloaths better than the rest, *viz.* Some Ells of Calicut about their Middles, to cover their privy Parts, and a Tyger's Skin about their Shoulders; but the rest have only a Cord for their Girdle, and a little Bit of Calicut fastned to it to cover their Privities. Their Hair is tied about their Head like a Turbant, and they are arm'd with Bows, Arrows, Muskets, Half-pikes, &c. When they travel they carry their Luggage, which is some Houshold-stuff and a pretty many *Arabian* and *Persian* Books, on Oxen. When they come to any Place, the Superior sends some of his Crew a-begging into the Towns and Villages, and what Alms they get is presently distributed equally among them, every one of them taking care to boil his own Rice, and what is over and above they give to the Poor in the Evening, for they reserve nothing till next Day.

Chitpour described. *Faquirs*. Their Begging.

From *Chitpour* you pass through *Balampour*, and so through *Dantivar* to *Bargant*. This Town is in the Territories of a *Raja*, to whom you must pay some Duties, and all the Way through these Countries is dangerous to be travelled, because the *Raja* lives altogether upon Robberies; and therefore unless you hire many People for a Guard, you will go near to have your Throat cut, for there is no likelihood of escaping these Free-booters.

Bargant described.

From thence the Way lies through *Bimal* and *Modra* to *Chalaour*, an ancient Town upon a Mountain, encompassed with Walls, and very difficult to come to. There is a Lake upon the Top of the Mountain, and another below, and between them lies the Road to the Town.

Chalaour.

From *Chalaour* you pass on to *Cantap*, *Sestana*, *Palavaseny*, and *Pipas* to *Dantivar*; from whence to *Mirda* is 3 Days Journey, being a mountainous Country that belongs to *Raja's*, or Petty-Princes, who pay Tribute to the Great *Mogul*, but in Recompence of it the Great *Mogul* gives them Commands in his Army, which affords them much more Gain.

Mirda is a great City, but ill built. This City having offended the King's Sister *Begum*, the Wife of *Cha-Est-Kan*, in not waiting on her, and making her a Present in her Journey through that Place, when she went to marry her Daughter to Sultan *Sujah*, she let loose 20 Elephants, who tore down their Trees, and did them damage.

Mirda.

From *Mirda* the Road lies through *Borondo*, *Cetchiel*, *Bander-Sonnery*, *Ladonia*, *Chasou*, *Nouali* and *Hindoo* to *Baniana*. These 2 last Towns are famous for Indico-Plate, which is round, and being the best of all the Indico's, is double the Price.

Hindoo. *Baniana*.

Vettapour, a Town famous for weaving Woollen Hangings, is the next Town; and from thence you go directly to *Agra*, to which from *Surat* is 415 Lgs. and 33 Days Journey, if they could be equally divided, but because you stay in some Places, it usually takes up 35 or 40 Days.

Vettapour.

CHAP. II.

The Road from Candabar *to* Agra.

The Distances of the Roads.

FROM *Candabar* there are 2 Ways to *Agra*, either through *Caboul* or *Multan*. The latter is the shorter by 10 Days Journey, but the Caravan never goes that Way, because it lies almost all through the Desarts, where there is no Water to be met with for 3 or 4 Days together, so that their most ordinary and beaten Road is through *Caboul*. Now from *Candabar* to *Caboul* is 24 Days Journey, and from thence to *Labor* 22, from *Labor* to *Dehly*, or *Gehanabat*, 18, and from thence to *Agra* 6, which, with the 60 Days Journey from *Ispahan* to *Farat*, and 20 from *Farat* to *Candabar*, makes in all from *Ispahan* to *Agra* 150 Days Journey; but the Merchants that are in haste ride 3 or 4 in a Company upon Horses, and finish it in 60, or 65 Days at most.

Multan described.

Multan lies in 29 D. 40 M. Northern Lat. and is the Capital Town of the Province of the same Name, though some Geographers place it in the Province of *Sinde*. It hath many Towns in Dependance upon it, as *Cozdar*, or *Cordar*, *Candavil*, *Sandur*, and others. In this City is made a vast Quantity of Linen-Calicuts, for which heretofore there was a very great Trade, because, it not being far from the River *Indus*, they could easily transport them to *Tatta*, where the Merchants of several Countries bought them up; but because of late the Chanel of the River is spoil'd in some Places,

Places, and the mouth is quite ſtopt up with Sands, they are forced to ſend all their Goods to *Agra*, and ſo to *Surat*, which ſo inhances the Price by the Carriage, that the Merchants do not care to deal in them, by which Means the Trade is much leſſen'd there, and the Workmen have deſerted the City, ſo that the King's Revenues are much leſſen'd in thoſe Provinces: Yet there is ſmall Trade for Sugar, Opium, Brimſtone, Galls, and Camels, which are tranſported into *Perſia*, *Gazna*, *Candabar*, and the *Indies*, by *Labors*. It furniſhes *Indoſtan* with the fineſt Bows that are to be ſeen in it; and here are bred the great Numbers of Dancers of both Sexes, that ſpread themſelves all over *Perſia*. The Commander and Officers of this Town are *Mahometans*, and conſequently it may be ſuppoſed, that the moſt part of the Inhabitants are of the ſame Religion, yet there are a great many *Banians*, who come to trade, and exerciſe their Arts and Broakage and Uſury, in which they much out-do the *Jews*; for they are ſo watchful and cunning, that no Opportunity of Gain ſlips them, and they have ſo wound themſelves into all Buſineſs, that hardly any Body can be without them. They take Commiſſions of all kinds, and though it be known that they make a Profit of every Thing, yet the Merchants chuſe to make uſe of them rather, than do their Buſineſs themſelves, for they will buy cheaper and better than any Man can for himſelf. They are of a pleaſing Humour, and refuſe no Service, whether honourable or baſe, and are always ready to ſatisfie thoſe that employ them, and therefore every one has his *Banian* in the *Indies*; and ſome Perſons of Quality entruſt them with all they have, though they are not ignorant of their Hypocriſie and Avarice. The richeſt Merchants of the *Indies* are of this Claſs, or Tribe. They are commonly very jealous of their Wives, who are fairer than the Men, though of a brown Complexion, and love to paint. They have a particular Law among them, which permits them to eat Fowl upon certain Days of the Year, and to have one Wife among 2 or 3 Brothers, and the Eldeſt of them is accounted the Father of the Children begotten among them.

From *Candabar* you travel to *Chariſafar*, and then through *Zelate*, *Betazy*, *Mezour*, and *Carabat* to *Chakonicouze*, which is a Frontier Town of the *Indies*, and the Country about it is under the Command of ſeveral Princes, that acknowledge the *Perſian* Emperor. From this City to *Caboul* is 40 Lgs. and in the whole Journey there are but 3 pitiful Villages, where you can rarely get Bread and Barley for your Horſes, and therefore you muſt carry Proviſion for your ſelf. In the Months of *July* and *Auguſt* there blows an hot Wind in theſe Parts that takes away a Man's Breath, and kills him upon the Place. It is the ſame with that which blows about *Babylon* and *Mouſſul*, at certain Seaſons.

In this Road dwell a certain People called *Augans*, towards the Mountains of *Balch*, they are a ſturdy ſort of People, and great Robbers in the Night-time. Theſe People, as the reſt of the *Indians*, have a Cuſtom to cleanſe and ſcrape their Tongues every Morning with a crooked Piece of a Root, which cauſes them to avoid a great Quantity of Flegm and Rheum, but not to vomit, as it doth the other *Indians*; nevertheleſs, when they come to eat, as ſoon as they have ſwallowed 2 or 3 Bits, their Lungs begin to ſwell, and they are conſtrain'd to go forth and vomit, after which they return again to their Victuals with a very good Appetite; ſhould they not do ſo, they would not live above 30 Years, and beſides, would be troubled with the Dropſie.

Caboul is a large City, the Metropolis of the Province of *Abouliſtan*, or *Caboul*, and hath 2 Caſtles well fortified; and becauſe ſeveral Kings have held their Courts there, and many Princes ſucceſſively have had it for their Portion, there are a great many Palaces in it: It lies in 33 D. of N. Lat. The Mountains about it produce Plenty of *Mirobalans*, which from thence the Eaſtern People call *Cabuly*, ſeveral ſorts of Drugs, and ſome Spices, which with the Iron-Mines in them yield a great Profit to the Inhabitants. In this Town they maintain a great Trade with *Tartary*, the Country of the *Usbecks*, and the *Indies*. The *Usbecks* alone ſell yearly in this Town above 60000 Horſes; and the *Perſians* bring hither great Numbers of Sheep and other Cattel, by which means they are much enriched. Wine is to be had, and Proviſions are cheap, though the Country about it is but cold and barren, unleſs in ſome Places which are ſhelter'd by the Mountains, being render'd little the more fruitful by the 2 Rivers that water it, and have their Source in the Mountains. From this Province, eſpecially, come the large Canes, of which they make Halbards and Lances, and they have many Grounds planted with them. The Inhabitants of the City and Province are moſt of them Heathens, and therefore in all Towns and Villages are many Pagods. They reckon the Months by the Moons, and with great Devotion celebrate the Feaſt called *Houly*, which laſts 2 Days, at the Full-Moon in *February*. At this Feaſt they are all cloathed in a dark Red, and after they have pray'd in the Temple, and made their Oblations, they ſpend the reſt of the Time in Dancing by Companies in the Streets, to the Sound of Trumpets, viſiting their Friends, and eating together every Tribe by it ſelf. The Great *Mogul*'s Revenue from this Country is 4 or 5 Millions yearly.

From *Caboul* the Road lies through *Bariabe*, *Nimela*, *Alibona*, *Taki*, *Kiemri*, *Chaour* and *Nouvchaar* to *Atek*, a City ſituate upon a Point of Land, where 2 Rivers meet together. 'Tis one of the beſt and ſtrongeſt Garriſons the Great *Mogul* has, and no Stranger is permitted to enter into it without a Paſs port from the King.

From hence you paſs to *Calapane*, and ſo to *Roupate*, *Toulapeca*, *Keraly*, *Zerabad* and *Imiabad*, to *Labors*. This City is the Metropolis of a Kingdom, built upon the River *Ravy*, which is one of the 5 Rivers, which deſcending from the Mountains, fwell the River *Indus*, and give the Name of *Peniab*, or 5 Rivers, to all the Region they run through. It lies in 31 D. 50 M. Lat. The River having a very flat Channel is fallen off from the Town above a League, and being ſubject to overflow, does a great deal of Miſchief in the Country. The City is large, and extends it ſelf above a Lg. in length. It was a very pretty Place when the Kings kept their Courts there, having many Moſques, publick Baths, Caravanſera's, Squares, Tanquies, Palaces and Gardens; but all theſe with the greateſt part of the Houſes are fallen to ruine, by reaſon of the exceſſive Rains, which have waſhed down a great Number of them. The Caſtle remains ſtill, for it is ſtrongly built. It hath 12 Gates, 3 towards the City, and 9 towards the Country, and the Palace, which is within it, hath not yet loſt its Beauty. There are a great many Pictures upon the Walls, repreſenting the Actions of the Great *Mogul* and his Forefathers, all pompouſly painted; and on one Gate is the Picture of the Crucifix, and on another the Virgin *Mary*, not out of any Kindneſs to the Chriſtian Religion, but to flatter the *Portugueſe*. The Inhabitants are moſt of them Gentiles, and ſo there are many Pagods in the Town, of which ſome are adorn'd well, and all are raiſed 7 or 8 Steps from the Ground.

The Province about it is one of the largeſt and moſt plentiful in the *Indies*, the Rivers that run through it rendring it moſt fertile, in Rice, Corn and Fruits: The Wine alſo is pretty good, and the Sugars the beſt of all *Indoſtan*. All ſorts of painted Cloaths, and other *Indian* Manufactures are wrought here; and it is ſaid, that this Province yields the *Mogul* a Revenue of 37 Millions yearly, which is a Sign of its great Trade and Fruitfulneſs. From *Labors* to *Agra* there is one continued Walk of Trees, called *Acly*-Trees, which have long and thick Branches, which cover the whole Way, though theſe Cities be 150 Lgs. diſtant one from the other. It was planted by King *Gehanguir*, but is not kept up.

At *Tanaſſar*, a Town in this Province, is a Convent of Gentiles, who are called *Nartia's*. They have a General, Provincial, and other Superiors, and ſay, that 'tis above 2000 Years ſince they were founded; they vow Obedience, Chaſtity and Poverty; they obey the leaſt Signal of their Superiors, and will not look a Maid or Woman in the Face. They live on Alms, which is begged for them every Day at the Houſes of the Gentiles of their Tribes, and will leave nothing till the Morrow. They make but one Meal a Day, and that is about Noon; and though they are never ſo thirſty or hungry, muſt not eat or drink till the ſame time next Day. They wear nothing on their Bodies, but a Cloth to cover their Privy-parts, which they bring up over their Heads like a Woman's Quoif. The main Point of their Inſtitution, is not to do to others what they would not have others to do to them; and they obſerve it even to the Beaſts, which they will never kill. If any Body beat them, they do not reſiſt; and if they are reviled, they make no Anſwer.

Cotton, Opium, Camels.

Bows.

Banians neceſſary.

Their Begging.

Bath.

The Road.

A Killing Wind.

The Augans.

The Vomiting.

Caboul deſcribed.

A Trade for Horſes, Sheep, &c.

Large Canes.

The Feaſt Houly.

The Road.

Atek.

The Road.

Labors deſcribed.

Almoſt ruin'd by Floods.

Beſt Sugar.

A Convent of Nartia's.

Their Abſtinence.

Their Religion and Devotion.

swer. They employ themselves wholly in Prayers and Reading, but conclude the Day with the Sun-set, for they never light a Candle. If any break their Orders, he is severely punished; and if they break their Vow of Chastity, they are expelled. They have above 10000 Monastries in the *Indies*. Some of them think it sufficient to worship God in Spirit, and have no Idols nor Pagods: There are also Religious Nuns of the same Order, who live very exemplarily.

Nuns.

The Road.

From *Lahors* the Way lies by *Menar-kan*, *Faty-abad*, *Sera-dakan*, *Sera-balour*, *Sera-dourai*, *Serinde*, *Sera-Mogoul*, *Sera-Chabas*, *Dirauril*, *Sera-Crindal*, and *Guienaour* to *Debly*, or *Gehanabad*.

Debly, or *Gehanabad*, described.

This City is a large Place, and stands near the River *Gemna*, which runs on both sides of it, and after it has passed *Agra* and *Kadione*, empties it self into the *Ganges*. It is divided into 3 Parts, or Towns: The first is almost entirely destroyed. The *Indians* say, 'tis very ancient, and that it was the Capital City of the States of the King *Porcy*, who opposed *Alexander* the Great. The *Indians* say, it had 52 Gates, and there are still remaining a large Stone-bridge, and a Way with lovely Trees, leading to the 2d Town by the Sepulchre of *Cha-Humayen*. The 2d Town was at the Conquest of it, beautified with many stately Sepulchres of the *Patan* Kings, and other Monuments, which rendred it a very lovely Place; but *Cha-Jehan*, the Father of *Aureng-Zeb*, the present King, demolished it, and left nothing but a Pyramid or Obelisk of Stone, which by its unknown Characters shews a great Antiquity. The 3d Town is joined to the Ruines of the 2d, and was built by *Cha-Jehan* out of the Ruines of it, and from him it had its Name of *Gehan-Abad*. This City lies in an open Champain, upon the Bank of the River *Gemna*, and is encompassed with a single Wall. All the Houses of particular Men consist of great Inclosures, in the Midst of which is a Place for Lodgings. The greatest part of the Lords have their Houses without the City, for the Conveniency of Water, for the King chuseth to keep his Court here rather than at *Agra*, for the Conveniency of Water. As you enter into *Gehanabad* from *Debly*, you come into a long and broad Street, which has Vaults on each side, where the Merchants keep their Shops. This Street ends in the great Piazza where the King's Palace stands: There is another Street which leads up to the King's Palace, where the Merchants live who keep no Shops. The Fortress of it is half a Lg. in Circuit, and has good Walls, with round Towers in them, and Ditches about them full of Water. The King's Palace, where are all the Ensigns of Royalty, is in this Fort. There is a Place by the Water-side for the fighting of Elephants, and other Exercises; and nearer the Town is a large Square, where the Markets are kept, the Puppet-players, Jugglers and Astrologers shew their Tricks, and the *Raja's*, who are in the King's Pay, keep guard, encamp, and perform their Exercises. The King's Palace is encompassed with Walls of fair, red, cut Stone, with Battlements. The Gate and first Court have nothing of Magnificence, for the great Lords may enter into it with their Elephants. Out of this Court you go through a long and large Passage, with fair Portico's on both sides, into a great Court, where the *Omra's*, *i. e.* the great Lords of the Kingdom keep guard in Person, having their Lodgings round about the Court, and their Horses tied at the Doors. From this 2d Court you pass into a 3d, through a great Portal, where on the one side is the King's Wardrobe, out of which he bestows the *Calaat*, or whole Habit of a Man, which he gives to any Stranger or Subject in Honour to them; the Place where the Drums, Trumpets and Hautboys are laid, which are sounded when the King goes upon the Judgment-Seat; and right forward is the *Divan*, where the King gives Audience and Sentence. In the middle of the Hall is the Throne where the King sits, erected upon a kind of a Theatre. It has a little Bed with 4 Columns, a Canopy, Back-piece, Bolster and Counterpoint, all embroider'd with Diamonds, and cover'd with a Cloth of Gold, when the King sits on it. Below the Throne is a Place 24 Foot square, encompassed with Balusters sometimes of Silver, and at other times Gold-Plates. At the 4 Corners of it sit the 4 Secretaries of State, who are the only Advocates in all Causes. Many Lords stand by the Balustrade, and some of the greatest, with his Children, stand by the Throne. While the King is on his Throne, none may stir out of the Palace, nor any that have Business come nearer than the Channel in the middle of the Court, till they are called, no not Ambassadors themselves. From the *Divan* the King passes over a Terrass, where the River is to be seen, into the *Haram*. Upon the Left-hand of the Court stands a little Mosque, neatly built, having a *Cupulo* cover'd with Lead perfectly gilt. Hither the King goes every Day to hear Prayers, except *Fridays*, when he goes to the Great Mosque, which is a very fair one, and raised above the Houses of the City. On the Right-side of the Court are the King's Stables, which are full of stately Horses, the worst of which stands the King in 3000 Crowns, and some cost 10000. On the River the King has several small Brigantines to take his Pleasure in.

The Streets.

The Fortress.

The King's Palace described.

The Court.

The Divan.

The Throne.

Four Secretaries.

A little Mosque.

From *Debly* you travel to *Badelpoura*, and so by *Pelvel-ki-sera* and *Cotki-sera*, to *Chike-sera*, where is one of the greatest Pagods of the *Indians*, together with an Hospital for Apes, as well for those that are bred thereabouts, as for those that come from the Neighbouring Parts, which the *Banians* are very careful to feed. The Pagod is called *Matura*. It was formerly in greater Veneration than now it is; and the Reason is this, because the River washing the Walls thereof, was convenient for the Washings of the *Banians*, before they went to their Devotions; but since the River has left it above a Lg. many have deserted, but still it wants not some Resort of the *Indians*, who always bring with them some Food for the Apes.

The Road.

Chike-sera described.

Between this Place and *Goodkisera* is but 5 Lgs. and you come to *Agra*. This City lies in 27 D. 31 M. of Lat. and in a Sandy Soil, which causes extream Heat. It is the biggest City in *India*, and was formerly the Residence of their Kings, till *Cha-Jehan* bearing the great Heats uneasily, sought a more temperate Air, and so removed to *Gehanabad*. The Houses of great Persons are fair and well built, but the Houses of the Meaner sort are as plain as in other Cities of *India*, being low and thatch'd. It is not very populous, unless it be when the Court is there, but at that time it is throng'd, the King being attended with an Army for his Guards, and a great Number of *Raja's*, *Omra's*, *Mansepdars*, and other Nobles, with their Retinues, besides Merchants and Tradesmen that follow the Court for Trade. The People are most of them *Mahometans*, and these have all the Power in their Hands, though there are a considerable Number of *Christians*, some few *Heathens* and *Persies*. The *Dutch* have a Factory here, but the *English* have left theirs, because it did not turn to Account.

Agra described.

Christians.

The most remarkable Things in *Agra*, are the King's Palace, and some Monuments near and about the City. The King's Palace is in the Castle, which is begirt with a Wall of Stone and Brick, terrassed in several Places, which is 20 Cubits high. Between the Castle and the River is a large Place left on purpose for the Fighting of Elephants, for the King's Diversion. It is near the Water to allay the Fury of the conquering Elephant, who presently returns to himself, if he be but 2 or 3 Foot deep in the Water. Before the Palace is a wide Piazza: It contains 3 Courts, adorn'd with Porches and Galleries, that are painted and gilt; nay, some Things are cover'd with Plates of Gold. Under the Galleries of the first Court are the Lodgings for the King's Guards; in the 2d are the Officers Lodgings; and in the 3d, the stately Apartments of the King and his Ladies. Out of these, the King goes commonly to a lovely *Divan*, which looks to the River, to please himself in seeing Elephants fight, his Troops exercise and play upon the Water, or in the open Place. By this Palace stand 25 or 30 very large ones in a direct Line, which belong to the Princes and other great Lords of the Court, and all together afford a most delightful Prospect to those who are on the other side of the River.

The King's Palace.

The Court.

A Divan.

Besides, these Palaces the Beauty of *Agra* consists in the *Caravansera's*, which are above 60 in Number, and some of them have 6 large Courts with their Portico's, which lead to very commodious Apartments, where the Merchants, Strangers have their Lodgings. There are above 800 Baths in the Town, and a great Number of Mosques, of which some are Sanctuaries. There are many magnificent and stately Monuments in and about *Agra*, for several Great Men, and especially the rich Eunuchs belonging to the King's *Haram*, are ambitious to build their own in their Life-time, and to erect Monuments to the Memories of their Forefathers, and this the Great Mogul encourages them in, that he may keep his Money in his Kingdom, and divert them from going to *Mecca*, whi-

Caravanseras.

800 Baths.

Eminent Monuments.

whither their blind Devotions often leads them to ſpend it. The 2 moſt eminent Monuments are, that which King *Gehanguir* cauſed to be built for *Ecbar*, his Father, upon an Eminence in the Town. It ſurpaſſes in Magnificence all thoſe of the G. Seignior's; but the faireſt of all is that which *Sha-Jehan* erected in Honour of one of his Wives, called *Tadge-Mehal*, whom he tenderly lov'd, and whoſe Death had almoſt coſt him his Life. It was built by all the moſt able Architects of the *Indies*, whom the King called together in a Council to contrive it, and having ſettled Salaries upon them, order'd them to ſpare no Coſt to make it the fineſt *Mauſolæum* in the World, if they could. The *Indians* ſay, 'twas 20 Years in building, that 20000 Men were always employ'd about it, and 'twas finiſh'd at length to Satisfaction. It ſtands on the Eaſt ſide of the City, by the River ſide. It is a kind of a Garden, with Compartments like our Garden-Plots, but the Walks, inſtead of Gravel, are black and white Marble. You enter into it through a large Portal, and on the Left-hand is a fair Gallery, which looks toward *Mecca*, and in which are 3 or 4 Niches, wherein the *Mufti* comes at certain Hours to pray. About the middle of the Garden are 3 great Platforms, one raiſed above another, with 4 Towers at the Corners of each. On the Top is a *Cupolo*, cover'd within and without with black Marble. Under it is an empty Tomb (for the Sultaneſs is buried under the loweſt Platform) adorn'd with Tapeſtries, Candles, and other Ornaments, where there are always *Moullahs* attending to pray. The Sepulchres of the Eunuchs have only one Platform, with 4 little Chambers at the 4 Corners.

Tadge-Mehal, the fineſt in the World, deſcribed.

The Apparel of the *Indians*.

The *Indians* are pretty uniform in their Apparel, only the *Mahometans*, or *Moors*, diſtinguiſh themſelves by a particular ſort of Coif, or Head-Attire, but in all Things elſe they are cloathed as the reſt. Their Breeches are commonly of Cotton-Cloth, and ſometimes of Silk, and come down to their Legs or Ankles. Their Shirts hang over their Breeches, as the Faſhion is all over the *Levant*, and open before. In cold Weather they wear over their Shirts an *Arcalick*, or Juſtico, of painted Stuff, quilted with Cotton, and pink'd, and over that a *Caba* of white Cotton Cloth, for Lightneſs and Neatneſs; but if it be hot they lay aſide their *Arcalick*. They uſe but one Girdle, and that is of white Cloth. None uſe the lovely Girdles of *Perſia*, but the moſt wealthy, and Perſons of Quality. In cold Weather they wear a Veſt, called *Cadeby*, lined with Sables. At all Times when they go abroad they wear a *Chal*, which is like a Scarf of ſeveral Colours. Their Turban is commonly little, and the *Mahometans* were it always white. The Rich have them of ſo fine Cloth, that 25 or 30 Ells of it put into a Turban will not weigh 4 Ounces. They are made at *Bengal*, and are dear. They wear their Hair for Ornament, contrary to the *Mahometans*, who all ſhave their Heads. They uſe no Stockings, but put their Shooes on their naked Feet, which are of *Maroquin* or Turky-Leather, like Slippers; only the *Banians* wear Heels to their Shooes, that they may ſtir more freely in their Buſineſs. The rich *Banians* cover theirs with Velvet, embroider'd with Silk-Flowers, but the Poor are ſatisfied with red Leather.

Hair worn.

The *Mogul* Women are cloathed almoſt like the Men, but the Sleeves of their Smocks reach no lower than the Elbow, that they may have room to adorn their Arms with Carkanets and Bracelets of Gold, Silver and Ivory, or ſet with precious Stones, as they do alſo the Small of their Legs. The Smocks of the *Indian* Idolatrous Women reach down only to the Middle, as does the Waſtcoat of Sattin, or Cloth, which they wear over it, becauſe from the Waſte downward they wrap themſelves up in a Piece of Cloth, or Stuff, that covers them to the Feet like a Petticoat. For Shooes they have high Pattins. They wear little flat Rings of Gold or Silver in their Ears, with Engravings upon them, and adorn their Noſes with Rings put through their Noſtrils. They wear Rings alſo on their Fingers for Ornaments, and have generally one with a Looking-Glaſs ſet in it an Inch diameter, to ſee themſelves. If the *Indian* Women are Idolaters they go bare-fac'd, if *Mahometans* they are veil'd. In ſome Countries of the *Indies* both Men and Women go naked to the Waſte, and cover only themſelves from thence to the Knees.

Womens Cloaths.

Ear and Noſe Rings.

At *Agra* they are curious in breeding up Beaſts to fight for Pleaſure, *viz.* He-goats, Weathers, Rams, Cocks, Quails, Stags and Antilopes, for ſuch as cannot reach Lions and Elephants, are dextrous Fowlers and Hunters.

Beaſts bred for fight.

Pictures alſo in this City are drawn with Art, but being for the moſt part laſcivious, are rarely bought up by *Europeans*.

They have a Way in this Town of working in Gold, upon Agat, Chryſtal, and other brittle Matters, which our Goldſmiths and Lapidaries have not.

CHAP. III.

The Road from Agra *to* Patna *and* Daca, *Cities in the Province of* Bengal.

The Road.

LEaving *Agra* in your Journey to *Bengal*, you come firſt to *Beruzabad*, then to *Serail Morlieles*, and ſo through *Serail Eſtanja*, *Serail-Haimal*, and *Serail Sekandera*, to *Sanqual*. A Lg. from hence you paſs over the River *Sangeur*, upon a Stone-Bridge, where thoſe that are paſſing from *Bengal*-ward to *Surat*, may leave the Road to *Agra*, and ferrying over *Gemma*, ſhorten their Journey 10 Days, but ſince ſome of that Way is very ſtony, Travellers generally chooſe to go the Way by *Agra*.

From this Bridge you go on by the Inn *Cheyourabad*, and the Towns *Serail Chajeada*, and *Serail Atakan* to *Aureng-abad*.

Aureng-abad deſcribed.

This is a great Town, the Capital of a Province, but it has no Walls, the Governour, who is commonly a Prince, has his Reſidence there; and *Aureng-Zeb* commanded there, as he did at *Candich*, in the Reign of his Father: His firſt Wife (whom he loved dearly) died in this Town, and as a Monument to her, he erected a lovely Moſque, covered with a Dome, and beautified with 4 Minarets, or Steeples. It is built of white poliſh'd Stone, which looks almoſt like Marble. It has ſeveral pretty Moſques, Inns and Baths. The Buildings are for the moſt part of Free-ſtone, and pretty high; before the Doors grow a great many Trees in the Streets; and the Gardens are well cultivated and pleaſant, affording the Refreſhment of Fruits, Grapes and Graſs-plats. They have Sheep without Horns, that are ſo ſtrong, that being bridled and ſaddled, they'll carry Children of 10 Years of Age, where-ever they pleaſe. It is a good trading Town, and well peopled, with excellent Ground about it. It took its Name, by which it is now called, from the preſent King *Aureng-Zeb*, who overcame Sultan *Sujah* his Brother, who was Governour of all the Province of *Bengala*, in that Place.

Moſques, Streets and Gardens.

Sheep ridden.

From hence you paſs to *Alinchan*, and 2 Lgs. farther croſs the River *Ganges*, which, though famous in Hiſtory, is ſo ſmall from *March* to *June*, or *July*, when the Rains fall, that it will not bear a Boat. The Water being drank, cauſeth the Gripes; and therefore the *Hollanders*, that live upon the Banks of it, never drink of it till they have boiled it; but the Natives are ſo accuſtomed to it, that the King and Court drink no other, becauſe they account it lighter than any other Water. The Heathen *Indians* account the Water of this River to be Sacred, and have many Pagods by it the faireſt in the *Indies*; ſo that it may be ſaid, that here Idolatry is moſt triumphant. The 2 chief Pagods are at the Towns of *Jaganat* and *Benarou*. Nothing can be more magnificent than they are, by reaſon of the great Quantity of Gold and many Jewels, with which they are adorned. In theſe Pagods they keep their Feſtivals many Days together, and Millions of People repair thither from all Parts of the *Indies*, where they carry their Idols in triumph, and act all manner

Ganges deſcribed.

Its Water Sacred.

of Superſtitions by the Encouragement of the *Bramins* who are numerous thereabouts, and find much Profit by it. The *Ganges* is full of pleaſant Iſlands, covered with lovely *Indian* Trees, ſo that it is moſt delicious ſailing upon it. In theſe Iſlands, and ſome other Places of *Bengal*, is a Bird called *Meina*, whoſe Colour is like a Blackbird, but as big as a Raven. It will learn to ſpeak like a Starling, and imitates the Neighing of an Horſe exactly. This River having received an infinite Number of Brooks and Rivers from the N. E. and W. into it, diſcharges it ſelf by ſeveral Mouths into the Gulf of *Bengal*, which is 800 Miles over, and reaches from the 8 D. of Lat. to the 22th.

The Iſlands in it.

Meina, a talking Bird.

Having paſſed *Ganges*, you arrive at *Halabas*, a great City, built upon the Point of Land, where *Ganges* and *Gemma* meet.

Halabas deſcribed.

It is the chief Town of a Province which bears the ſame Name. It was for a long time one of the Bulwarks of the Kingdom of the *Patans*, and is the ſame Town which *Pliny* calls *Chryſobacra*. It was ſubdued to the Kingdom of the *Mogul* by King *Ecbar*, who built a ſtrong Citadel in it begirt with 3 Walls, of which the outmoſt is of very hard red Stone. It is adorned with a very ancient Obelisk, above 60 Foot high, that has many Inſcriptions, but the Letters are not legible. The King has a fair Palace here, and under it are certain arched Places, where the Pagods of *Adam* and *Eve* are kept, whoſe Religion they pretend to follow. Hither at certain times come an incredible Number of Pilgrims from all Parts of the *Indies* to viſit thoſe Pagods, becauſe they ſay *Adam* and *Eve* were created here; but before they approach the Place (which they eſteem holy) they all waſh themſelves in the *Ganges*. The Province of *Halabas* pays the *Mogul* yearly 14 Millions. At *Halabas* there are uſually Troops of *Faquirs*, who call themſelves a Religious Order among the *Indians*, and many of them practiſe the Life of Penitents, forbearing to eat many Days, ſtanding conſtantly upon a Stone for ſeveral Weeks, or Months, holding their Arms a-croſs over their Heads as long as they live, and burying themſelves in a Pit for a certain Time, but others wander up and down the Countries like Gypſies, committing Robberies, and all ſorts of Rogueries. Some of them will threaten to kill themſelves, (and ſome have done it) unleſs the *Banians* will give them what they demand, and ſo obtain conſiderable Sums of them, for the *Banians* abhor Murder, and will give any thing to prevent it. The Penitents are extreamly honoured by the Gentiles, and the Rich think that they draw down Bleſſings upon themſelves when they give to them.

An Obelisk.

Faquirs.

The Road.

From *Halabas* you paſs over a River, where ſtands a *Deroga* on each ſide, to take Notice of what Goods are tranſported (there being due for every Waggon-Load 4 Roupies, and every Coach one) and ſtop all that paſs without a Paſs-port, and then go through *Yakedel-ſera*, *Sadeu-ſerail* and *Bouraki-ſera*, to *Benarau*.

Benarau deſcribed.

This is a large City, and handſomely built, the moſt of the Houſes being of Brick or Stone, and higher than in any other *Indian* City, but the Streets are narrow. There are many Inns in the Town, and among the reſt one very large and handſomely built. In the midſt of the Court are 2 Galleries, where are to be ſold Calicuts, Silks, and other Merchandice, and under them are Cellars, where the Workmen live. All the Goods are ſtamp'd with the King's Seal before they are expoſed to Sale. The *Ganges* runs by the Walls on the S. ſide, and in it is one of the principal Pagods of the Idolaters. About 500 Paces from the City, Northward, there is a Moſque, where are many *Mahometan* Sepulchres, encloſed with a Wall'd Garden, but there are Holes through the Walls half a Foot ſquare, for Travellers to look into them. The moſt conſiderable is ſaid to be that of one of the Kings of *Boutan*. It is a 4 ſquare Pedeſtal, 40 Paces wide, and in the midſt of it a Pyramid, 32 or 35 Foot high, with a great Bowl at the Top. All the Fronts are full of Figures of Animals cut in Stone: It was once very high, but within 50 Years it is ſunk above 30 Foot into the Earth.

A Pagod-Moſque.

The Road.

From *Banarou* you paſs on to *Baterpour*, and ſo by *Satragur-ſera* to *Maniarkr-ſera*. In the Road from thence you foard 2 Rivers, called *Carnaſar-ſou* and *Saode-ſou*, and come to *Gourmabad*, which ſtands upon the River *Goudera-ſou*, which you croſs over a Stone-Bridge to *Sanſeron*. This City ſtands at the Foot of certain Mountains, near which is a great Lake, and in the middle of it a ſmall Iſland, with a fair Moſque built upon it, wherein is the Sepulchre of a *Nabad*, or Favourite, called *Selim-Kan*, who built it for himſelf when he was Governour of the Province. There is a fair Free-Stone Bridge to croſs over into the Iſland, and on the ſide of the Lake is a great Garden, in the middle of which is a fair Sepulchre of the ſaid Governour's Son, who ſucceeded his Father in the Government of that Province.

Sanſeron deſcribed.

Leaving *Sanſeron*, you ferry over the River *Sonſou*, which deſcends from the Northern Mountains. Here all Merchandice pays a certain Toll, and ſo you go to *Daoud-Nagarſera*, and ſo by *Halva-ſera*, and *Agaſera*, to *Patna*. This is one of the biggeſt Cities of *India*, being 2 Lgs. long, and ſtanding on the Banks of *Ganges*, Weſtward, but the Houſes are no better than in the greateſt part of the other Cities, being cover'd with *Bambou*, or Straw. The *Dutch* Company have an Houſe there, becauſe of their Trade in Salt-Peter, which they buy up here, and refine at *Choupar*, a great Town upon the *Ganges*, 10 Lgs. diſtant from *Patna*. The People of this Town having a *Mimbachi*, or Colonel of 1000 Foot, ſlain for Sodomy by his Boy, whom he had forced, juſtified the Fact againſt the Governour, ſo that he durſt not puniſh him for the Murther, but diſmiſſed him after 6 Months Impriſonment.

The Road.

Patna deſcribed.

Sodomy.

From *Patna* you ſail down the River to *Daca*, paſſing by ſeveral Towns, where you may lodge a-nights, viz. *Sera-Beconcour*, which is beyond the River *Pomponſou*, which comes from the S. falls into the *Ganges*, *Sera-Enjah*, between which and the City *Monger* 4 Rivers, *viz.* The *Kaoa*, *Chanan*, *Erguga* and *Aquera*, fall into the *Ganges* on both ſides.

The Road.

Leaving *Monger* you ſail by the Mouth of the *Ganges*, a large River, and arrive at *Zangira*, beyond which the *Ronova*, *Tae* and *Chanan* empty themſelves into the *Ganges*, and after you arrive at *Baquelpour*, and paſſing by the River *Kasare*, you come to *Pongangel*, which lies at the Foot of certain Mountains, which come down to the *Ganges*. Beyond this Place you meet the River *Mart-Nardi*, and by it ſail to *Rage-Mehale*, a City upon the Right-hand of *Ganges*. If you go by Land to it, the High-way is pav'd with Brick for a Lg. or 2 to the Town. Formerly the Governours of *Bengal* reſided here, partly becauſe 'twas a Place of great Trade, and partly becauſe 'tis an excellent Country for Hunting; but the River having left the City above half a Lg. as well as to keep the King of *Aracan* in awe, and ſuppreſs the *Portugueſe Banditi*, who have retired to the Mouths of *Ganges*, and do make Excurſions as far as *Daca* it ſelf, the Governour and Merchants are remov'd to *Daca*, which at preſent is a large City and full of Trade.

Ganges.

Rage-Mehal deſcribed.

The Road.

From this Town in Sailing, you come firſt to *Denapour*, then to *Toutipour*, where there are abundance of Crocodiles in the River, as alſo at *Aceras*, which is in the Way. The vulgar Report is, that a Musket-ſhot will not pierce the Skins of the Crocodiles, but upon Trial it is found falſe: Then you ſail to *Douloudia*, and paſſing the Mouth of the River *Chativor*, you come to *Dampour*, and ſo to *Jatrapour*, near which the *Ganges* divides it ſelf into 3 Arms, and then by *Bagamara* and *Kaſiasa*, having paſs'd the Mouth of the River *Laquia*, 2 Lgs. before you arrive at *Daca*.

Crocodiles.

This Town runs altogether in Length, becauſe every one ſtrives to have his Dwelling by the ſide of *Ganges*. 'Tis 2 Lgs. long, but the Houſes are but ſorry Huts, made of *Bambou's*, and daub'd over with Earth. The Governour's Palace is a Place encloſed with high Walls, in the midſt of which is a pitiful Houſe built of Wood. He generally lodges in Tents, which he cauſes to be ſet up in a great Court of that Incloſure. The *Hollanders* have here a very fair Houſe, which they have built for the Safety of their Goods, and the *Engliſh* have another, but not ſo handſome. The Church of the *Auguſtin Friars* is all of Brick, and is a very comely Pile.

Daca deſcribed.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the ſeveral Roads from Surat *to* Golconda, *and ſo to* Maſlipatan, Gandicot *and* Golconda.

The Road.

THERE are ſeveral Roads from *Surat* to *Golconda*, as by Sea by *Goa* and *Viſapour*, and by *Agra*. Theſe 2 Roads by Land meet at *Dultabat*, and therefore I will ſpeak firſt of the Road from *Surat*, as the moſt common, and then of that by *Goa* and *Viſapour*.

From *Surat* you travel by *Cambari*, *Barnoli*, *Beara*, *Navoupour*, where grows the beſt Rice in the World, which ſmells like Musk, *Rinkula*, *Pipelnar*, *Nimpour*, *Patane*, *Seccura*, *Bequela* and *Diſcon* to *Dultabat*. This Town is one of the beſt Fortreſſes in the Kingdoms of the Great Mogul, being ſeated upon a Mountain every Way ſteep, the only Way being ſo narrow, that but one Horſe or one Camel can go at a Time. The Town ſtands at the Foot of the Mountain, very well Wall'd with a natural ſmooth Rock, and has Battlements and Towers mounted with Cannon, but it is the Citadel on the Top of the Hill that is accounted the main Strength of it, for in it are a great many excellent Pieces of Cannon, and the Cannoneers are generally *Engliſh* or *Hollanders*.

Dultabat deſcribed.

The Road.

From *Duitabat* you go to *Aurenabat*, before deſcrib'd, and ſo through *Pipoli*, *Aubar*, *Guiſemner*, *Aſti*, *Sarver* and *Leſona*, to *Nadour*. Here you croſs a River which runs into the *Ganges*, and muſt pay for every Waggon-Load of Goods 4 Roupies, and have a Paſs from the Governour.

Nadour.

From *Nadour* you travel to *Patouta*, and ſo by *Kakeri*, *Satapour*, *Satanaga*, *Satanagar*, where you begin to enter upon the Territories of the King of *Golconda*, *Melvari*, *Garballi*, and ſo to *Golconda*.

The Road from Goa.

The other Road through *Goa* and *Viſapour* to *Golconda* lies thus: You may go from *Surat* to *Goa* partly by Land, and partly by Sea; but the Road being very bad by Land, generally Travellers go by Sea, and hiring an *Almadier*, which is a Bark with Oars, ſail by the Shore to *Goa*, and ſo they paſs by theſe Towns, convenient to lodge in, or Victual at, *viz. Daman*, *Baſſain*, *Chaoul*, *Daboul*, *Rejapour* and *Mingrela*, to *Goa*. From *Surat* to *Goa* is 240 Lgs. The great Danger in this Coaſting Voyage is of falling into the Hands of the *Malabars*, or *Indian* Pirates, who are violent *Mahometans*, and very cruel to the Chriſtians, whom they put to barbarous Tortures, if they take them, to make them ſeek their Ranſom the ſooner. Theſe *Malabars* ſometimes carry 200, and ſometimes 250 Men, and ſail together in Squadrons of 10 or 15 Barks to attack a great Ship, for they care not a Ruſh for the great Guns. They come aboard on a ſudden, and caſt ſuch a Quantity of Pots of artificial Fire upon the Decks, that if there be not a ſpeedy Remedy apply'd, they'll preſently do a world of Miſchief. Generally our Sea-men, knowing the Cuſtom of theſe Pirates, when they come within Sight ſhut up the Scuttles, and fill the Deck with Water, to hinder the Fire-pots from doing Execution.

The Malabar Pirates.

Goa deſcribed.

Goa lies in 15 D. 32 M. Lat. in an Iſland 6 or 7 Lgs. about, upon the River *Mandoua*, 10 Lgs. from the Mouth of the River. This Iſland abounds in Corn and Rice, and bears ſeveral ſorts of Fruit, as Manga's, Anana's, *Adam's* Figs, and Coco's, but all of them are inferior to a Pippin. The Port of *Goa* is very commodious. The City is very large, and the Walls are of good Stone. The Houſes for the moſt part are very magnificently built, eſpecially the Vice-Roy's Palace, but being cloſely inviron'd with Hills, the Air is made unwholeſom, and ſo exceſſively hot, that the Inhabitants are not ſo many as otherwiſe they would be. Beef and Pork are the ordinary Diet, and they have ſtore of Poultry and Pigeons, but Fiſh is ſcarce, though they are near the Sea. They have abundance of all ſorts of Sweet-meats, and feed upon them very much, and plenty of good Water.

The Port.

Unwholeſome Air.

The Proviſion.

Before the *Dutch* brought down the Power of the *Portugueſe* in *India*, there was nothing to be ſeen at *Goa* but Magnificence and Riches; they made vaſt Profits without any Loſs, and every Man was a Trader, except the Governour; but now the *Dutch* having got the Trade every where out of their Hands, though they are ſtill Maſters of *Goa*, they have loſt their Mines of Silver and Gold, and are fallen from their former Splendour. The Natives of the Country, whom they call *Canarins* or Blacks, are not permitted to bear any Offices among the *Portugueſe*, but only in reference to the Law, *viz.* as Advocates, Sollicitors, or Scriveners, and they keep them very much under. If one of them happen to ſtrike a white Man, or *European*, there is no Pardon for him, but his Hand muſt be cut off. The *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe* make uſe of them to tranſact their Buſineſs, and receive their Money, and many of them by that Means are grown very rich, and have many Slaves to attend them in good Habits, but they all, both Maſters and Servants, go Bare-foot; for the *Portugueſe*, though they have been offered great Sums to ſuffer them to wear Hoſe and Shooes, yet will not allow them. They are very couragious, and good Soldiers, and quick and apprehenſive at learning of Sciences, but they are Idolaters, and worſhip ſeveral ſorts of Idols, which they ſay are the Reſemblance of ſeveral that have done good Works, to whom they give Honour by adorning their Pourtraitures. There are ſome of thoſe Idolaters that worſhip Apes, and have built Pagods to theſe Beaſts.

The *Portugueſe* command it.

The Servitude of the *Indians*.

Idols how worſhipped.

In the Iſland of *Salſete*, there was a Pagod whom the Idolaters kept in a Cheſt the Bones and Nails of an Ape, that had been ſerviceable to their Anceſtors, by bringing Intelligence when any Prince, their Enemy, ſought their Ruine. The *Indians* came in Proceſſion from ſeveral Places to this Pagod, and made Offerings to it; and when the Clergy of *Goa* took away the Tomb, they offered a great Sum of Money for their Reliques, but the Clergy not thinking ſuch groſs Idolatry ſufferable, cauſed it to be thrown into the Depth of the Sea.

The River of *Mandoua* alſo is had in as great Veneration by the *Bramins*, and the other Gentiles, as *Ganges*, and at certain Times and upon certain Feſtivals they flock thither from ſeveral Parts to perform their Purifications. The Town hath good Walls with Towers and great Guns, and the Iſle is Wall'd round with Gates toward the Land, to hinder the Slaves from running away. The *Portugueſe* have a Vice-Roy reſiding here, with an Arch-biſhop, Inquiſitor-General, and an abundance of Clergy-men, as *Dominicans*, *Auſtin-Friars*, *Franciſcans*, *Bare-foot Carmelites*, *Jeſuits* and *Capuchins*. The *Carmelites* are ſeated in a fine Air and healthy Ground. The *Jeſuits* have a ſtately College, which being dedicated to St. *Paul*, gives them the Name of *Pauliſts*, with a Seminary, Profeſſor's Houſe, Noviciate, and an Houſe called, *The Good Jeſus*, where they paint admirably. There are alſo many fair Churches and beautiful Palaces. In this City lies buried Mr. *Alberquerque*, who conquer'd it for the *Portugueſe*, and S. *Francis Xaverius*, the famous *Indian* Miſſionary. The Hoſpital of *Goa* was formerly the moſt famous in all *India*, both in regard that the Revenues were very great, and the ſick Perſons were very carefully look'd after, but ſince the Change of Goverment, there is but very bad Accommodations, and ſeveral *Europeans*, who have been put in, have never come out, but in their Coffins; but of late they have found out a Way to ſave ſome by frequent Blood-letting, ſpare Diet, and drinking Cow-piſs.

Mandoua.

Popiſh Monks and Friars.

Alberquerque. *Xaverius*.

From *Goa* you go to *Bicholi*, which is upon the Main-Land, and ſo to *Viſapour*.

This City is the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the ſame Name, whoſe King is the moſt potent of all the Kings of *Decan*, and is therefore called King of *Decan*, having the 2 *Naiques* of *Madura*, whoſe Territories reach to Cape *Comori*, and of *Tanjaher*, who has ſeveral Towns on the Coaſts of *Coromandel* tributary to him. It is a great ſcambling City, above 5 Lgs. in Circumference, fortified with a double Wall, a great many Cannons mounted, and a flat bottom'd Ditch. The King's Palace is a vaſt one, but ill built, and the

Viſapour deſcribed.

The King's Palace. Access to it is very dangerous, in regard there are an abundance of Crocadiles in the Ditch with which it is encompassed, but in the City it self there is nothing remarkable, as to the publick Edifices or Trade, tho' in the Suburbs, which are large, there are many Gold Smiths and Jewellers. The King of *Visapour* hath 3 good Ports in his Dominions, *Rajapour*, *Dabouls* The Ports. and *Carapatan*. This last is the best, having 14 or 15 Fathom Water near the Land, and upon the Top of the Mountain adjoining a Fort with a Spring of Water in it. It lies about 5 Days Journey to the N. of *Goa*. The Kings of *Visapour* and *Golconda* were formerly tributary to the Great Mogul, but now they are absolute of themselves. The present King of *Visapour* is The present King. only the adopted Child of the former King, who died without Children. He succeeded in his Minority under the Regency of the Queen, but being disturb'd by the Revolt of *Raja Sevagi*, the Son of the late King's Captain of his Guards, he was forced to come to a Composition with him to establish himself, and so lost all the Coasts of *Malabar*. The great Market, where the King of *Visapour* sells his Pepper, is at *Rabaque*.

Mingrela described. In the Territories of *Visapour* is *Mingrela*, a large Town, extended half a Lg. in Length upon the Sea-Coast. It is one of the best Roads in all *India*, where all the Vessels that come from *Batavia*, *Japan*, *Bengal*, *Zeilon*, and those that are bound for *Surat*, *Ormus*, the *Red-Sea*, *Balsara*, &c. both coming and going come to Anchor, and take in Provisions, because there is both excellent Water and Rice. This Town is also Of Cardamums. very famous for Cardamums, which the Eastern People esteem the best of all Spices, but not being to be had in any other Country, is very scarce and dear. There is also made great store of coarse Calicuts, that are spent in the Country, and great Quantities of coarse Matting, which serves for packing up of Goods. The Dutch Factory. *Hollanders* have a Factory for Trade and Provisions here to Victual their Ships when they block up *Goa*, which is 8 Months in the Year.

Golconda described. From *Visapour* you pass to *Golconda*, which is 400 Lgs. cross the Promontory. The most powerful of the Kings of *Decan*, next to the King of *Visapour*, is the King of *Golconda*. His Kingdom is bounded on the E. by the Sea of *Bengal*, on the W. by the Mountains of *Orixa*, on the S. by *Bisnagar* and *Narsingue*, which belongs to the King of *Visapour*, and on the W. by the Empire of the Great Mogul. This whole Kingdom, take it in general, is a good Country, abounding in Corn, Rice, Cattel, Sheep, Poultry, and other Necessaries for Human Life; and because there are a great many Lakes, there are also many Fish, and among others a sort of Smelt, which has but one Bone in the middle, which is most delicious Food. The Lakes, being caused by Nature, and lying in Places somewhat raised, contribute much to the Fertility of the Country, because, after the Rainy Seasons, they let them down by Sluces into the adjacent Fields.

The City continued. The Capital City of this Kingdom is *Bagnagar*; the *Persians* call it *Aider-abad*, but the most common Name is *Golconda*. It is about 14 or 15 Lgs. from *Visapour*, situated in 17 D. 10 M. Lat. in a very long Plain, hem'd in with little Hills at some Distance from it. The Air is very wholesom, and a great River washes the Walls of it on the S. W. side, which near to *Masliparan* falls into the Gulf of *Bengal*. The City is well built and full of Windows: In entring into Suburbs. it, you must first pass through a large Suburb, but the Houses are only built of Earth, and thatched with Straw, so low and ill-contrived, that they can be reckoned little better than Huts. It is at least a Lg. in length, and in it dwell all the Merchants, Brokers, Handicrafts-men, and all the meaner Sort of People. These Men are allowed to go into the City from 10 or 11 in the Morning, till 4 or 5 in the Afternoon to trade with the Foreign Merchants, and then they return to their Houses. In these Suburbs are 2 or 3 fair Mosques, which serve for Inns for Travellers, and several Pagods in the Neighbourhood. The Way to the Fortress of *Golconda* lies through these Suburbs. Out of them you go into the City over a beautiful Stone-Bridge, and enter into a large Street that leads to the King's Palace. On the Right-hand are some Houses of the Lords of the Court, and 4 or 5 Inns 2 Stories high, with fair Halls and large Chambers to lett in the fresh Air. At the End of this Street is a large Piazza, on which the Palace fronts, and in the Middle of the Building is a Balcony, wherein the King sits, when he pleaseth to give Audience to the People. The Gate of this Palace stands not upon the Piazza, but upon another near adjoining. Through it you enter into a large Court surrounded with Portico's, under which lie the King's Guards. Out of this Court you pass into another built after the same Manner, and surrounded with several Apartments with terrassed Roofs, on which are very fair Gardens, and Trees in them, Gardens on the Roofs. of a great Bigness. The whole Palace is 380 Paces in length, and ends in a very lofty Pavilion. The Walls are built of great Stones, and have at certain Distances half Towers. It is very pleasant within, and the Water rises up to the highest Apartments. No Man enters into the Palace, but by an express Order from the King, who grants it very seldom, so that no Body almost comes near it. At the End of the Palace is a Building called, *The Four Towers*, which is the most The Four Towers. lovely Outside of any thing in the Town, being adorned with Roses and Festons pretty well cut. In each Tower is 4 Galleries, which serve to make the Water mount into a Reservatory on the Top, from whence it is conveyed into the highest Apartments of the King's Palace through Pipes. There are several *Meidans* in the Town, but the fairest is that before the King's Palace. It hath 2 *Divans*, which serve for the *Cotoual*, who has his Prisons under them. The Palace is on the N. of it, and there is a Portico over-against it, where the Musicians play several times a Day, while the King is in Town. In the Middle of it, and in Sight of the Palace is a Space for the Fighting of Elephants.

The City for the most part is inhabited by Persons The People. of Quality, Officers of the King's House, Officers of Justice and of the Army; and their Houses are pretty enough. Upon 3 Sides of the City stands a very fair Mosque, wherein are the Tombs of the Kings of *Golconda*; and about 4 a Clock in the Afternoon there is a Dole of Bread and Pilau given to all the Poor that come. Upon Festival-Days all the Tombs are hung with rich Tapestry, and then they are a most glorious Sight.

Fair Gardens. There are many fair Gardens in the Town, and near it, but their Beauty consists not in Flowers, or Water-works, but in long Walks, lovely Fruit-Trees, and several fair large Basons of Water. The Government of this City is this: When a Stranger comes to the Gates, a Soldier searches him, whether he has any Salt or Tobacco about him, that the King may not be defrauded of the Duties for them, and then sends to the *Deroga* about his Admission, which causes a Delay of a Day or 2 sometimes. When the King The Court. sits to do Justice, all that have Business stand below, just against the Balcony, but the People are kept back with a Row of Poles, about the Height of an Half-Pike. Every *Monday* the Nobility mount the Guard, and continue 8 Days: Some of them have 5 or 6000 Men under their Command, with 10 or 12 Elephants, and 30 or 40 Camels. The Soldiers have no Cloaths but 3 or 4 Ells of Calicut, with which they cover their Bodies half way behind and before. They wear their Hair long, and tie it in a Knot on the Crown as the Women do. They wear broad Swords like the *Switzers*, as well for a Thrust as a Blow, and hang them in a Girdle. Their Musket-Barrels are neater and better than ours, because their Iron is better. Their Cavalry carry Bows and Arrows, a Buckler and Cavalry. a Battel-ax, an Head-piece and a Jacket of Mail, which hangs down from their Head-piece over their Shoulders. There are 20000 Common Women allowed by Women allowed. the *Deroga* to profess Lewdness. They pay no Tax, but being a Means of spending much *Tari*, which is a sweet Drink on which the King lays a great Impost, they are encouraged in their Practices. They are to dance every *Friday* before the King's Balcony, if the King be present; if not, an Eunuch dismisses them. They stand well dressed at their Doors in the Day-time, and set up a Candle or Lamp for a Signal in the Night to draw in Men, who are not minded, if they turn in to them. The common People give their Wives great Liberty, being obliged by Promise at their Marriage to let them walk in the Streets, visit their Neighbours and drink *Tari*, a Liquor which the *Indians* very much love.

Theft punished. When any one is found Guilty of Theft, he is punished by cutting off both his Hands, which is a Punishment used almost all over the *Indies*. The Tradesmen of the Town, and Husband-men that cultivate the Lands are Natives, but the Trade is chiefly maintained by the *English* and *Dutch* Factories, who buy up for the Companies Chites, and other Cloaths, which they vend in other Parts of the *Indies*. They bring

bring also from *Maslipatan* upon Oxen, Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, Silver, Copper, Tin, Lead, and other Goods, which they know to be most marketable.

The People. All Men and Women at *Golconda* are very well proportioned, and of comely Statures, and fair enough in their Countenances, but the Country People are swarthy.

The Coins. The most current Monies of this Kingdom are the Pagods, Roupies, and Pecha's of *Mogul*. The Pagods are Pieces of Gold, of which there are 2 sorts, the Old and New, the Old are worth 5 Roupies, and the New not above 4. The Roupies and Pecha's are also worth more at *Golconda* than in *Mogulistan*.

Diamonds. The greatest Plenty of Diamonds is in this Kingdom, and therefore it may be called the Country of Diamonds.

The Castle. The Castle of *Golconda* is 2 Lgs. from the City; it is of a large Compass, and the Walls of it are built of Stones 3 Foot in length, and as much in breadth, and it is surrounded with deep Ditches, divided into Tanquies, which are filled with fair and good Water. All the Strength it has consists in 5 round Towers, which have a great many Cannon mounted upon them for their Defence. It has several Gates, but 2 only are opened, and those are guarded by *Indians*. No Stranger may go into it without a Permission from the Governour, unless he be acquainted with some Officer of the Court. The King has a large Palace in it, and well situated for a good Air and lovely Prospect, and most part of the Lords have Houses near it. There are several Bazars in it, where all Things necessary for Life may be had.

The King's Palace.

The King. The King of *Golconda*, who now reigns, is a *Shias* by Religion, and bears the Name of *Abdoul-Coutou-Sha*. He was the Son of a *Bramen* Lady, and succeeded his Father, though not the eldest Son, because he was more loved by the Queen, who caused his Brother to be imprison'd, and at length poison'd. He keeps 500000 Soldiers in Pay, yet is tributary to the Great Mogul. He hath only 3 Daughters, the eldest of which is married to one of the Kinsmen of the Grand Cheik of *Mecca*, the 2d to Sultan *Mahomet*, eldest Son of *Aureng-Zeb*, and the 3d to *Mirza-Abdeul-Cosing*, the King's Coulin, who has Male Children by her.

The King's Revenues. The King of *Golconda* has vast Revenues, for he is Proprietor of all the Lands of his Kingdom, which he rents out to those that offer most, except such as he gives to his Favourites for a certain Time. The Customs of Merchants Goods that pass through his Country, and of the Ports of *Maslipatan* and *Madesspatan* yield him much, and there is hardly any sort of Provisions in his Kingdom from which he hath not some considerable Dues.

The Diamond Mines. The Diamond Mines raise him a great Revenue, and all they that he allows to dig in them. Those that are towards *Maslipatan* pay him a Pagod every Hour they work there, whether they find any Diamonds or not; but his chief Mines are in divers Places of *Carnates*, towards *Visapour*, where he has 6000 Men continually at Work, who daily find near 3 Pound Weight, and no Body digs there but for the King. This Prince wears upon the Crown of his Head a Jewel almost a Foot long, which is said to be of inestimable Value:

Jewel on the Crown. It is a Rose of great Diamonds, 3 or 4 Inches diameter, in the Top of which there is a little Crown, and out of it issues a Branch, fashioned like that of a Palm-tree, but it is round, and the Palm-branch, which is crooked at the Top, is a good Inch in diameter, and about half a Foot long; it is made up of Sprigs, which are (as it were) the Leaves of it, and each of them have at the End a lovely long Pearl, shap'd like a Pear: At the Foot of this Rose there are 2 Bands of Gold, in the Fashion of Table-Bracelets, in which are inchased large Diamonds, set round with Rubies, which, with great Pearls that hang dangling on all sides, make an exceeding rare Show, and these Bands have Clasps of Diamonds to fasten the Jewels to the Head.

His Riches in precious Stones. Besides this Jewel, he hath other considerable Pieces, and such Numbers of precious Stones, that if there were Merchants who could give him the Worth of them, he would have prodigious Sums of Money, and be the richest King of the *Indies*.

The Omra's. The *Omra's* are the Great Lords of the Kingdom, who are *Persians*, and all rich, for they have not only great Pay of the King yearly, but large Gifts of Lands and Villages from him, besides the Advantages by the Soldiery, for they do not list half the Number they have Pay to maintain.

Their Equipage. They generally make a very handsome Figure, for when they go through the Town, an Elephant or two goes before them, on which 3 Men carrying Banners are mounted; 50 or 60 Troopers, well mounted and accoutred, follow them; and after these Trumpeters and others playing on Fifes on Horse-back: After these comes the *Omra* on Horse-back, with 30 or 40 Foot-men about him, and his Palanquin carried by 4 Men, with other Porters for Change, and all this Pomp is brought up with a Camel or 2, with Men beating on Timbrels on their Backs. Sometimes the *Omra* will take his Palanquin, and then his Horse is led.

The Palanquins. The Palanquins are sometimes covered with Silver, and the *Bamboue's* are tipt with Silver at both Ends. They lie at Ease in them, smoaking Tobacco, or chewing Betle and Areca, according to the Custom of the *Indians*, who hold them to be excellent for the Stomach, and the Sweetness of the Breath. The lesser *Omra's* have not so great an Equipage, but all have a Train proportionable to their Revenue.

The Winter. The Winter in *Golconda* begins in *June*, with Rains and some Thunder, and great Winds, and lasts to the End of *Oct.* in which Time the Air is cold only in the Night and Morning, the Days are as warm as 'tis in *May* in *France*; but the Rains cause prodigious Floods, which beat down the Houses, and destroy many People. The hot Season begins in *February*. The Rains make the Land very fertile. They have abundance of Fruits and Vines, and 2 Crops of Rice and other Grains every Year. The Wines they make are usually White.

From *Golconda* there are 2 Roads to *Maslipatan*, the one more direct, which the Merchants usually take, and the other by the Diamond Mines, called *Coulour*, or *Gani*, which those Merchants generally take, whose Curiosity or Business leads them thither, though it be the farthest Way by 12 Lgs. In the more direct Road you meet with not above 4 Towns, besides 15 or 16 Villages, *viz. Elmas-Kepentch*, *Panguel*, *Sarchel* and *Penguet-coepoui*. You pass also several Rivers, the most considerable of which are *Kachma* and *Mouchy*. All the Country as you travel this Way is always green and pleasant to the Eye, though the Road be bad; and there grow all kinds of Trees that are in the *Indies*, even *Cassia* Trees, though they be scarce in other Countries. This Way you come to *Maslipatan* in 10 Days.

The other Way by the Diamond Mines lies first to *Tenara*, where the King has a stately Palace, consisting of 4 large Piles of Stone-Building, to every one of which belongs a large Garden: One of them standing upon the Left-hand, along the High-way, is much more beautiful than the other 3. It is built of Free-Stone, 2 Stories high, and has in it several fair Galleries, Halls, Parlours and Lodging-Rooms, which are the Royal Apartments. Before this Building is a large square Piazza, and in the other 3 Fronts is a great Portal, with a fair large Platform, raised 4 or 5 Foot high, and well arch'd, where Travellers of Quality are lodg'd; and over each Portal is a strong Baluster, and a little Chamber for the Ladies. One of

The Queens Lodging. these Buildings belongs entirely to the Queen, and though no Body may lodge in it in the Queen's Absence, yet any one may see it, and walk in the Garden, which is a lovely Place, and well stor'd with Water. The whole Piazza is encompassed with several Chambers for the Lodging of poor Travellers, who every Day towards Evening have an Alms bestow'd upon them of Rice and Pulse ready boil'd, and for this there are unalienable Rents settled; but for the Idolaters, who will eat nothing that is poudred by other Hands, they give them Flour to make Bread, and a little Butter to dip it in, when it is bak'd like a broad thin Cake.

From *Tenara* the Road lies through *Jatenagar*, *Patengi*, *Penguel*, *Nagelpar* and *Lakabaron*, to *Coulour*, or *Gani*. This last part of the Way is very Rocky, and among these Rocks, where there is any good Earth, you find the *Cassia* Trees, that bear the best and most laxative *Cassia* of any in the *Indies*. By *Coulour* runs a River, which falls into the Gulf of *Bengal*, near *Maslipatan*.

From hence the Road lies through *Kah-Kaly*, *Bezouar*, where you pass the River of *Coulour*, *Vochir-Nillimor*, where you must cross a great River upon a Float-boat of Timber, and so by *Nilmol* to *Maslipatan*.

This is a great City on the Coast of *Coromandel*, lying in 16 D. and half Northern Lat. It stands upon the Gulf of *Bengala*, E. S. E. from *Golconda*, and though it be but small, yet it is well peopled. The Streets are narrow, and it is intolerably hot there from

Air.

March

Houses. *March* till *July*. The Houses are built of Wood, and all separated one from another, and the Water is brackish, because the Tides come up to it. There is great Trading in *Chites*, because, besides those that are made there, a great many are brought from St. *Thomas*, which are much finer and better Colours than The Port. those of the other Parts of *India*. The Coast is excellent, and the Road for Ships is the best in all the Gulf of *Bengal*, and therefore Ships come thither from all Nations, and go from thence to *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Aracan*, *Bengal*, *Cochinchina*, *Mecca* and *Ormus*, and for the Islands of *Madagascar*, *Sumatra*, and the *Manille's*. This Country of *Maslipatan*, as all the rest of the Coasts, is so full of Idolaters, and their Pagods are so full of the lascivious Figures of Monsters, that one cannot Pagods dewith lascivious Pictures. go into them without Horror. It is exceeding fruitful, and Provisions are very cheap there: A Sheep is bought for 12 Pence, a Partridge for an Half-penny, and a Fowl for Two-pence, and 'tis the same almost every where upon the Coasts of *Coromandel*.

The Road. From *Maslipatan* to *Gandicot* the Way lies thus: You pass *Nilmol*, *Wochir* and *Paremet*, 3 small Villages, and the last of them a very pitiful one, to *Bezouare*, a great Town, where all the Inhabitants, except the Governour, and some of his Domesticks, are Idolaters. In this Town is a very large Pagod without Walls, consisting of 52 Pillars 20 Foot high, which uphold a flat Roof of Free-Stone; they are adorn'd with several emboss'd Figures of ugly Devils, and several sorts of Creatures, some with 4 Horns, others with many Legs and Tails, others lolling out their Tongues, and others in several other ridiculous Postures, and between the Pillars stand the Statues of their Gods upon Pedestals. The Pagod is built in the middle of a Court encompassed with Walls, and adorn'd within and without with the same Figures as the Pagod, and a Gallery upheld with 60 Pillars runs round the Wall. You enter into this Court through a Portal, with 2 Niches, one above another, upheld with Pillars, which have certain *Indian* Characters upon them, but the Priests themselves hardly know the Meaning. By this Town is another Pagod, built upon an Hill, to which there is an Ascent of 193 Steps, every one a Foot high. It is 4 square, with a *Cupolo* at the Top, adorn'd with the like Figures as that at *Bezouare*. In the middle of it is an Idol sitting cross-legg'd, after Idol. Form described. the Manner of the Country, and in that Posture is about 4 Foot high. Upon the Head is a triple Crown, from which 4 Horns extend themselves, and it has the Face of a Man, turn'd toward the East. The Pilgrims that come out of Devotion to these Pagods, when they enter clasp their Hands together, and raise them up to their Foreheads, and then advancing to the Idol, cry out, *Ram, Ram*, i. e. *God, God*: Then having anointed it with Oil, or besmear'd the Face with Paintings, they ring a little Bell, that hangs upon the Idol, after which they make their Offerings of Their Offerings. Sugar, Oil, and other Eatables, the richer sort adding Pieces of Silver. These Offerings, though the People are made to believe the Idol takes them, yet maintain the Priests, with their Wives and Children, except that they relieve the poor Pilgrims with them. There is a great Feast made in this Pagod in *October* for 3 Days together, at which Time there is a great Concourse of People from all Parts.

A Cow at Bezouare. Leaving *Bezouare*, you cross the River that runs to *Gani*, and 3 Lgs. farther come to a Pagod, built upon a large Platform, with an Ascent of 15 or 20 Steps. In it is the Figure of a Cow, of black Marble, and several other deform'd Idols 4 or 5 Foot high, some with many Heads, and others with many Hands and Legs, and the most ugly are most ador'd, and receive most Offerings.

Kab-Kabi. The next Town in the Road is *Kab-Kabi*, near to which is a small Pagod, wherein are 5 or 6 Idols well made, and having passed that, you come to *Condevir*, a great City, closed in with strong Walls, with a Ditch and a Moat, pav'd at the Bottom with Free-Stone. Eastward it stretches out to a Mountain, about a Lg. in Compass, and surrounded with Walls, with Half-Moons. Within them are 3 Fortresses.

Adanquige. From hence you travel to *Capenour*, and so to *Adanquige*, a very fair Town, where there is a very large Pagod, with abundance of Chambers for the Priests, and several Idols, but they are fallen to Decay, yet are superstitiously ador'd by the People. You go on to *Nosdrepar*, and so over a large River, which is dry in Summer, to *Condicour*, *Dakije*, *Nelour*, where there are many Pagods, and so crossing a River to *Ganderon*, *Sereple*, *Ponter* and *Senepgond*, to *Palicate*, to which the Way lies for a Lg. through the Sea. It is a Fort that Palicate Fort. belongs to the *Dutch* that live upon the Coast of *Coromandel*, and within it are usually 200 Soldiers. It is the chief Factory that they have in the *Indies*, where lives the Superintendent of all the rest which are in the Territories of the King of *Golconda*. The Trade managed there by the *Dutch* is in Cotton-Cloth, of which they have large Ware-houses full. Here also The Dutch Factory. they refine their Salt-Peter, which they bring from *Bengal*, and make the Gun-powder with which they furnish their other Factories.

The Fort of *Palicate*, called *Gueldria*, is at a good The Fort. Distance from the Town, that it may not be annoy'd by Shot from thence. The Bastions are well stored with good Guns, and the Sea comes up to the Walls of it. The Governour has 50 Crowns a Month for his Pay, and as many for his Table and Cloaths. The current Money here are Roupies and Pagods, which Money. last are 4 times the Value of the former, Fanons, which are half Gold and half Silver, with the same Stamp as the Pagods, but the 7th part of a Roupie in Value, and Gazars, which are Pieces of Copper as big as a Fanon, but 40 of them are but the Worth of it. The *Dutch* coin this Money. The Water of this Town is fetch'd out of Holes dug in the Sand, when the Sea is quite out, and it is fresh.

From hence you go to *Madrespatan*, or Fort St. *George*, Fort St. George. which belongs to the *English*, (here is a Convent of *Capuchins*) and so to *Meliapour*, or St. *Thomas*'s Town, where, they say, St. *Thomas* was Martyr'd, and the *Austin Friars* there pretend to have the Iron-Lance which kill'd him, (the *Jesuits* also have a Church there:) *Serravaron*, and then to *Oudicot*. The Way between these Towns is through a flat Sandy Country, and on both sides of it are Copses of *Bambous* very high and thick, which breed prodigious Numbers of Apes. Those of one side are inveterate Enemies to those of Apes Enemies to one another. the other, and 'tis very good Sport to the Travellers to set some Baskets of Rice between them, with Cudgels by them, to make them fight for it, and batter one another with the Cudgels.

The Road holds the same to *Naraverou* and *Gazell*. Hereabout there are Gates, and strong Guards at them at every 2 or 3 Lgs. who examine all Passengers whence they come, and whither they go, so that Men may travel there with their Money in their Hands.

The next Place you arrive at is *Courva*, a celebrated Pagod, where there is little to be had for Man or Beast; but the Country about it being full of Elephants, the King's Officers come hither often to take them. The Way of hunting them is thus: They cut The Way of Hunting and taking Elephants. out several Alleys or Walks in the Woods where they are, and having digged them full of Pits, which they cover with Hurdles and Earth, force them by Hollowing, beating Drums, and pursuing them with Pikes, with Wild-fire tied to the Ends, into those Walks, where being tumbled into the Holes, the Hunters bind their Feet and Trunk with Ropes and Chains, and so take them: Yet some will escape the Snare, and are ever after so mistrustful, that with a Bow they will examine every Step they take, whether there is not an Hole in the Way, and 'tis almost impossible to take them again. Such as they How to tame them. catch they couple to 2 tame ones on each side, and set 6 Men about them with lighted Torches, at the End of an Half-pike, to talk to them, and give them Meat, which is brown Sugar, boil'd Rice and Hay. If the wild Elephant will not eat, the Men order the tame ones to bear him with their Trunks, and so constrain him to learn Obedience. After an Elephant is tamed, he never meddles with the Female, yet is sometimes taken with a lustful Rage, which never ends but with some Mischief, as the Death of his Rider, or some body else. Though the Elephant's Skin be very hard while he is alive, 'tis like melted Glew when he is dead.

There are Elephants in several Parts of the *Indies*, Places where Elephants are found. as in the Islands *Ceylon* and *Sumatra*, the Kingdoms of *Cochin*, *Siam* and *Boutam*, on the Frontiers near the *Great Tartary*; but they are said to be in the greatest Numbers on the Coast of *Melinda*, Eastward of *Africa*, where the Blacks of the Country hunt them to eat the Flesh, but are obliged to give the Lord of the Place the Teeth, insomuch, that there are several Parks empal'd with Elephants Teeth a Lg. round. 'Tis observable of the Female Elephant, when she grows hot, that she makes her self a great Bed of Herbs and Weeds 4 or 5 Foot high from the Ground, on which, con-

contrary to the Custom of all other Creatures, she lies upon her Back, in Expectation of the Male, whom she calls to her by a peculiar Cry, and thus they take the Males in *Ceylon* by a tame Female. This is also peculiar to the Elephants in *Ceylon*, which though the smallest are the most couragious, yet only the first Elephant which the Female produces has any Tusks: and 'tis also observable, that the Ivory which comes from *Achen*, when it is wrought, never grows yellow, as that does that comes out of the Continent and *East Indies*, which makes it more esteem'd than any other. It is hard to find how long an Elephant will live, nor can the Keepers and Governours of them tell you more, than that such an Elephant was their Great Grandfathers, and so that it may be conjectured, that they have liv'd 120 or 130 Years. The Great *Mogul* keeps 500 Elephants for his Houshold, to carry his Women, their Tents and Luggage, and about 80 or 90 for his Wars; and to the chief of them he allows 500 Roupies a Month, but to the rest from 50 to 20. The chief have Men to attend them and fan them, and they are maintain'd out of it.

Their Teeth and Bell Ivory.

The Life of Elephants how long.

From *Conrva* you pass through *Rogia-peta*, a large Town, and *Ondecour*, to *Outemela*, where there is one of the greatest Pagods in *India*. It is built of large Free-stone, and has 3 Towers, where there are several deform'd Figures of embossed Work. It is encompassed with many little Chambers for the Priests Lodgings. Hard by it is a wide Lake, upon the Banks of which are built several Pagods 8 or 10 Foot square, and in every one of them an Idol representing some Devil, with a *Bramin*, who takes care that no Stranger, that is not of their Superstition, shall come to wash in, or take any Water out of the Lake; but if any Stranger desires Water, they give it him in an Earthen-pot, but if it touch the Stranger's Vessel, they break it, and say, if a Stranger should wash in it, it must be drain'd. They are very charitable, and will give any thing they have to eat or drink to Persons in Necessity. There are several Women among them, who having made a Vow to do Acts of Charity for 7 or 8 Years, more or less, sit upon the Road continually for that End with Fire, Tobacco, Rice boil'd with *Quiken*, a sort of Grain like Hemp-seed, or Beans, and to every Traveller they give some of their Beans, Rice-Water, an handful of Rice, Tobacco, if they have none, and Fire. Other Women live continually on the High-ways and Fields, having made a Vow to eat nothing, but what they find undigested in the Dung of Oxen, Cows or Horses, which they feed with an hard sort of crooked Pease, and these feed the Cattel with Grass all Day.

Outemela described.

Their Charity.

A strange Vow.

From *Outemela* you travel through *Goulupale* and *Gogeron*, to *Gandicot*. This Place is one of the strongest Cities in the Kingdom of *Carnatica*, being situate upon the Top of an high Mountain or Rock, to which there is but one Ascent, not above 25 or 30 Foot broad at most, and in some Places not above 7 or 8 Foot wide at most. On the Right-hand of it there is a most hideous Precipice, and at the Bottom of it runs a vast River. Upon the Top of the Mountain is a small Plain, but a Quarter of a Lg. broad, and about half a Lg. long: This is sow'd with Rice and Millet, and watered with many little Springs. The City stands on the S. side of this Plain, and is so encompassed with Precipices, at the Bottom of which run 2 Rivers, that it has but one Gate to the Plain-side, and that too fortified with 2 good Walls of Free-stone. Here is a Pagod, which is said to be the fairest in all *India*, wherein are several Idols, some of Gold, others of Silver, and 6 very large ones of Brass, of which 3 sat upon their Heels, and 3 stood, yet were 10 Foot high apiece. These Statues, when the *Nabab* of the King of *Golconda* took the Cities from its own *Raja*, he took out of the Pagod to make him some Cannon, but with all the Art the Artificer had, who was a *French* Man, he could not melt them, and so he was forced to leave his Work unfinished. It is a Custom in this City never to put any Man in Prison, but as soon as the Offender is taken, he is examined, and Sentence is pronounced upon him according to his Crime, which is immediately executed, and if he be innocent, he is as soon acquitted. The Punishment is usually inflicted at the Discretion of the *Nabab*, or Governour. One that had broken into an House, and had kill'd the Mother, and 3 Children, was condemned upon the Spot to have his Hands and Feet cut off, and to be cast into the High-way, there to end his Days in Misery. Another who had robbed upon the High-way had his Belly ripped up, and was ordered to be cast upon the Dunghil.

Gandicot described.

A very fair Pagod.

No Man imprison'd for any Crime.

In these Parts of *India* they have a very quick Way of sending Letters by Foot-posts, which are more speedy than Horse-men, and the Reason is, because at the End of every 2 Lg. there are little Huts, where there are Men always ready to run as soon as any Letters come. The High-ways are planted with Trees like Walks, and where there are no Trees, there are Heaps of Stones white wash'd, that these Posts may not miss their Way in dark and rainy Nights.

Foot-post very quick.

From *Gandicot* to *Golconda* the Way lies first to *Colepale*, and then to *Coteeri*. Here you must ferry over a River. The Boats are like Wicker-Flaskets, covered on the Out-side with Ox-hides, and fill'd with Faggots in the In-side, over which they spread some old Tapestry, to secure the Goods from Wet. Horses and Oxen they swim over, and Coaches and Waggons they carry between 2 Boats. Their Oars are broad Pieces of Wood like Shovels.

Boats and Oars.

Being past the River, you must go to *Morimal*, *Santisela* and *Gonmeda*, and so to *Kaman*, a Frontier Town of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, till the Conquest of *Carnatica* by *Mirgimola*; and from thence you travel to *Emilapata*. Between these 2 last Places pass the Pilgrims, who go from *Brampour* to visit the Great *Ram*, i. e. Their Chief God, which stands in the Kingdom of *Carnatica*. They go 4000 Persons, Men and Women, in a Company, and in Palleki's, cover'd with Velvet or Sattin, purfled with Gold, and hung with Gold and Silver-Fringe, they carry their Idols. On each side of every Palleki went a Man with a large Fan, made of Ostriches and Peacocks Feathers of various Colours, and the Handle overlaid with Gold and Silver, with which they keep the Flies from the Idol's Face; and on the same side there goes one with a Fan like a Target, which is adorn'd with Feathers as the former, but has little Bells of Gold and Silver round about the Edges: This is to keep off the Sun from the Idol; and sometimes they shake it, to please the Idol, as they imagine, with the Sound of the Bells. This Multitude of Pilgrims, 'tis said, being on their Way, were so stopt by sudden Rains, that they were reduced to great Streights for Food, especially for their Children, which caused great Lamentations among them. In this Extremity the Chief of their Priests sat down in the midst of them, and covering himself with a Sheet, called such as desired Victuals to him, and asked them what they would have, and for how many; and when they had answered him, he gave them with a great Ladle what they wanted from under the Sheet, and so the whole Multitude of 4000 Souls was fully satisfied.

A Pilgrimage.

A Magical Wonder.

The next Town in the Road is *Doupar* and then *Tripante*, where there is a great Pagod upon an Hill, to which there is a circular Ascent of Free-stone every Way, the least Stone being 10 Foot long and 3 broad. In the Pagod are the Figures of several Dæmons, and among others there is a Statue of *Venus* standing upright, with several lascivious Figures about her, all cut out of one Piece of Marble, but the Graving is very ordinary.

Tripante.

The Statue of *Venus*.

From *Tripante* you travel to *Mamli*, then to *Macheli*, after which you pass over a River in Boats like Panniers, where you must give the Water-men such Money as will please them, or they will not carry you over, nor Goods. They generally burn all the Money they take to try it, and if it turns black in the least, will refuse it; and then you arrive at *Dabirpinta*, and so by *Halcora*, and *Pondera* to *Atenara*, which is an House of Pleasure, built by the King's Mother, with a large Piazza, and many Chambers for Strangers. In the Kingdoms of *Carnatica*, *Golconda* and *Visapour*, there are no Physicians, but such as attend Kings and Princes, and therefore the common People, after the Rains are fallen, go out every Morning into the Fields to gather Herbs proper for such Diseases as are common in their Families; and in great Towns such as have some common Receipts, sit in certain known Places of it to give them to such as enquire after them, but *gratis*.

Physicians.

From *Atenara* you come to *Golconda*. Here, besides what has been before observed in the Description of this City, the Way of Washing the Kings and Great Mens Elephants is not to be passed over. The Elephants go up to the Belly in the Water, and lying down upon one side, throw the Water several times with their Trunks upon that side that lies out of the Water, and when he has soaked himself sufficiently, the

Washing Elephants.

the Master comes with a kind of Pumice-stone, and rubbing the Elephant's Skin, cleanseth it from all the Filth that clings to it; and when he has cleansed that side well, he commands the Elephant to turn the other, which the Beast immediately does, contrary to the vulgar Opinion, that an Elephant, if he lies down can't rise again. When both Sides are well washed, he comes out of the River, and stays awhile upright upon the Bank-side to dry himself: Then the Master with some red, or yellow Colour, streaks the Beast on the Forehead, and about the Eyes, upon the Breast, and all behind, rubbing him with Oil of Coco's to strengthen his Nerves; and sometimes, when all this is done, fastens a gilt Plate upon their Foreheads.

The Road from *Golconda* by *Amadabat* to *Surat* is above described.

CHAP. V.

Of the Empire and Kings of Indostan, *called, The Great* Moguls, *with their Court and Wars.*

The Bounds of Indostan.

THE potent Empire of the *Moguls* contains the greatest Part of *Indostan*, and extends from the Mountains on this side the River *Indus*, to the Mountains on the other side of *Ganges*, bordering Eastward upon the Kingdoms of *Arakan*, *Tipra* and *Asia*; Westward on *Persia* and the *Usbeck* Tartars; Southward on the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Visapour*; and Northward on the Mountains of *Caucasus*. They are called *Moguls* from their white Complexion, because they are Whites, whereas the Natives are Brown, or Olive Colour.

The Emperors.

Tamerleng, i. e. The Lame Prince, as he is commonly called, *Tamerlane*, the Extent and Renown of whose Conquests from *China* to *Poland* has exceeded all the Actions of the greatest Captains of former Ages, laid the Foundation of it, though it was not fully conquer'd, but by his Successors. *Miram-Cha*, his Son, succeeded him, and left his Throne to his Son *Sultan Mahomet*, who again left it to *Sultan Abousaid-Mirza*. *Hameth Sheike*, his Son, succeeded him, and left it to *Sultan Babur*, i. e. The Valiant Prince, who was the first *Mogul* that was of greatest Power in *India*. He died in 1532, and left his Kingdom to his Son *Hamajon*, i. e. The Happy, who held it till the Year 1552. *Abdul Feta Gelal Eddin Mahomet*, his Son, succeeded him. He was commonly called *Akabar*, i. e. The Great, and reigned 54 Years, and died in 1605. *Sultan Selim* assum'd the Throne after his Father *Akabar*, and took the Name of *Jehan-guir Patsha*, i. e. The Victorious Emperor of the World. He reigned very peaceably during the Space of 23 Years, equally belov'd both by his Subjects and Neighbours. He had 4 Sons, the eldest of which was named, *Sultan-Kosrou*, the 2d *Sultan Courom*, the 3d *Sultan Perviz*, and the 4th *Cha-Daniel*. The 2 first of these being married, and having several Children of some Age, were weary of the long Life and Reign of their Father, and not waiting the Course of Nature, ambitiously sought to possess themselves of his Throne. *Sultan Kosrou*, his eldest Son, raised a powerful Army near *Labor*, and thought to have surpriz'd his Father, and seiz'd his Empire by Force; but the King having timely Notice of it, raising a considerable Army, resolv'd to chastise his Insolence, and meeting him, defeats him, and takes him Prisoner, with many of the considerable Nobility that adhered to his Party. His natural Affection to him would not suffer him to put him to Death, but putting out his Eyes, kept him near his Person, intending to prefer his eldest Son *Boulaki* to the Crown. But *Sultan Courom*, his 2d Son, believing it his Right to be preferr'd before his Nephew, resolved to settle himself in the Throne before his Father's Death, but concealing his Design, carried himself with great Submission to his Father, that he might more effectually bring it about; and to that End he perswaded his Father to let him carry his elder Brother, the blind Prince, into *Decan* with him, pretending, that it would be better to remove so afflicting an Object out of his Sight, and that his Brother would live more comfortably in such a Retirement. The King, not perceiving his Intention, granted it, and *Sultan-Courom* having him in his Power, made him away with all imaginable Secresie, and taking upon him the Name of *Cha-Jehan*, i. e. King of the World, raised an Army to uphold his Title, and dethrone his Father. The King being incensed for the Death of his Son, as well as at the Attempt against his Person, sent a considerable Army to chastise him. The rebellious Prince finding himself too weak to oppose his Father's Force, left *Decan*, and fled into *Bengal*, to raise a larger Army to give the King Battle. The King pursued him in Person, and the Prince having accomplish'd his Design, march'd to meet him in the Kingdom of *Labor*; but *Jehan-guir* being old, and wearied with the Troubles that his Sons had put him to, died by the Way, leaving *Cha-Jehan* at Liberty to pursue his own Designs, yet recommending his Grand-child *Boulaki* to *Asouf-Kan*, his Generalissimo, and Prime Minister of State, and making all the Officers of his Army to acknowledge him for King. The News of the King's Death being known at Court, caused a general Lamentation, and presently all the Grandees of the Kingdom agreeing to execute the King's Will, acknowledged *Sultan Boulaki* for Emperor; but *Asouf-Kan*, who had married his eldest Daughter to *Cha-Jehan*, by whom she had 4 Princes, and 2 Princesses, took himself obliged through natural Affection to raise *Cha-Jehan* to the Throne, and having a great Interest both in the Army and Empire, he soon brought over to *Cha-Jehan*'s Interest the greatest part of the Commanders and Lords of the Court, and caused him by a Stratagem to be declared King. The young Prince *Boulaki* hearing this, and perceiving himself to be deserted of all, thought of nothing, but to save himself by Flight, and wandred a long time in *India* like a *Faquir*; but at length retiring into *Persia*, he was magnificently received by *Sha-Sefi*, who allow'd him a Pension fit for so great a Prince. *Cha-Jehan* having thus usurped the Crown, the better to secure himself, and stifle all Factions that might arise upon the Account of the lawful Prince, put to Death by Degrees all that had shewn any Kindness to his Nephew, so that the first part of his Reign was remarkable for many Acts of Cruelty, but the remaining part, which was above 40 Years, was very mild and peaceable, not so much a King over his Subjects, as a Father over his Family and Children, for there was such Strictness in the Civil Government, and particularly for the Security of the High-ways, that there was not any Occasion to put any Man to Death for Robbery. But though his Kingdom was at Ease, his Family was not, for he was much perplex'd and troubled with his 4 Sons, *Darab-Cha*, *Sultan Sujah*, *Aureng-Zeb* and *Marad-Bakeke*, all of them of several Dispositions; *Dara-Cha* was witty, brave, genteel and liberal, but mighty opinionated of his own Judgment, and very passionate. He courted the Favour of the Heathens, Christians, and Tributary *Raja's*. *Sultan Sujah* was much of the same Disposition, but more close and settled, and had better Conduct and Dexterity. He cast himself into the Religion of the *Persians*, to oblige the Great Officers of the *Mogul*'s Court to be of his Party, being most of them *Persians*. *Aureng-Zeb* appear'd serious and melancholy, but was really judicious, reserv'd and crafty; he pretended to renounce the World, and, like a *Faquir* or *Dervice*, spend his Days in Prayer and Devotion, not regarding a Crown; yet he failed not to make a Party at Court, but with such Secresie, as it was not discernible. *Marad-Bakeke*, the youngest, was the least dexterous and judicious, giving himself up to Mirth and Pastime, to drink, hunt and shoot; but he was very brave and couragious, and had certainly outdone all the rest, if his Conduct had been equal to his Boldness. The 2 Sisters, *Sahab-Begum* and *Rauchenaru-Begum*, were not less concern'd in these Things. *Sahab-Begum* was witty, and managed all under her Father, whose Humour she pleased even

Jehan-guir's Sons rebel against him.

Sultan Courom's Cruelty.

Cha-Jehan.

His Cruelty at first.

His Children, and their Character.

His Two Daughters.

even to Inceſt, and was wholly in the Intereſts of her Brother *Dara*, but *Rauchenara-Begum*, tho' ſhe had no great Share in publick Affairs, yet wanting not Wit, and addicting her ſelf wholly to *Aureng-Zeb*, was a Spy upon what was done in the Palace, and adverti-ſed her Brother of it, hoping to riſe with him to the Throne, becauſe he had promiſed her Marriage. Theſe Princes being all of Age, all married and having Children, pretended to the Crown, and ſo were Enemies one to the other. The King was ſenſible of all theſe Things, and fearing Danger to his own Perſon, conſulted with himſelf what was fitteſt for him to do. To ſhut them up in *Goualeor*, which is a Fortreſs where the Princes were ordinarily kept cloſe, becauſe it is ſituated upon an inacceſſible Rock, he found impracticable, becauſe they were already too potent ſo to be managed. If he removed them from Court, he thought himſelf obliged to give them ſome Government fit for their Birth, and there he feared they would become independent Kings; yet obſerving their Enmity one to another, he choſe rather to run the Hazard of ſuch an ill Event, than have them cut one anothers Throats before his Eyes, and ſo he reſolved to ſend them away: To Sultan *Sujah*, his 2d Son, he gave the Kingdom of *Bengal*; to *Aureng-Zeb*, *Decan*; and to *Morad-Bakcke*, *Guzurate*. Theſe 3 went away contented with their Governments, and there acted as Sovereigns, keeping back all the Revenues, and maintaining great Armies under a Pretence of bridling their Subjects and Neighbours. As to *Dara-Cha*, the eldeſt Son, to whom he gave *Multan* and *Cabal*, and deſign'd for the Crown, he kept him at his own Court, and tho' he ſhew'd him a particular Obſervance and Affection, yet he had ſome Diſtruſt of him, and kept a Correſpondence with *Aureng-Zeb*, whom he knew fit for Government; and had therefore employ'd him in his Wars againſt the King of *Golconda*, ſending him a great Army under the Command of *Emir-Jemla*, who had put him upon it to gain the Mines of Precious Stones there. *Dara-Cha* oppoſed this Expedition exceedingly, as knowing it would add great Strength to *Aureng-Zeb*; but not being able to break his Father's Reſolution, he yielded to it, upon Condition, That the *Emir* ſhould leave his Family at Court to be Pledges of his Fidelity, and that *Aureng-Zeb* ſhould keep in *Doulet-Abed*.

Affairs ſtanding in this Poſture, *Cha-Jehan* fell dangerouſly ill upon this Occaſion: In his declining Years he fancied a young Lady of an extraordinary Beauty, not above 13 Years of Age, and becauſe the Strength of Nature would not permit him to ſatisfie his Paſſion, he took certain Provocatives, which were ſo hot, that they brought him into a Diſtemper, that almoſt killed him. This obliged him to ſhut himſelf up in his *Haram* with his Women for 2 or 3 Months, during which Time he diſregarding the ancient Cuſtom, that the King ſhould ſhew himſelf to the People 3 times a Week, or at moſt in 15 Days, appear'd ſo very rarely to the People, and that at a great Diſtance too, that it was generally believed he was dead, and that *Dara-Cha* concealed his Death to gain Time to provide for himſelf, and ſecure the Empire. This News alarm'd and troubled all *Indoſtan*. Mighty Armies were levied in *Dehly* and *Agra*, the chief Cities of the Empire. Sultan *Sujah* did the ſame in *Bengal*, *Aureng-Zeb* in *Decan*, and *Morad-Bakcke* in *Guzarate*, all 4 aſſembling to themſelves their Allies and Friends. Sultan *Sujah*, who had gathered great Treaſures in *Bengal*, by ruining ſome of the *Raja*'s in thoſe Parts, and extorting great Sums from others, took the Field firſt with a puiſſant Army, and not doubting but that all the *Perſian Omrahs* would join with him, becauſe he had declared for their Sect, boldly marched towards *Agra*, giving it out, that *Cha-Jehan* was dead, being poiſon'd by *Dara-Cha*, and that he reſolved to revenge the Death of his Father, and reign in his Stead. *Cha-Jehan* by the Perſwaſion of *Dara-Cha* wrote to him, to forbid his Advance, and aſſure him, that his Sickneſs was not dangerous, but that he was much better; but he ſtill proceeded, ſaying, He was ſure *Cha-Jehan* was dead, and if not, he was deſirous to kiſs his Feet.

Aureng-Zeb alſo ſoon after takes the Field in *Decan*, and making a great Noiſe, prepares to march to *Agra*; and though he received a Prohibition to the ſame Effect as *Sujah* had, yet he ſtill held to his Deſign, giving the ſame Anſwer; but finding his Treaſure low, and his Soldiers few, he writes to his Brother *Morad-Bakcke*, 'That he had ever been his true Friend, and 'having made Profeſſion of a *Faquire*, he could lay no 'Claim to a Crown, no more than his Brothers *Dara* 'and *Sujah*, who had made themſelves uncapable, by 'being the one a *Kafer*, or Idolater, and the other a '*Rafezy*, or Heretick; and ſo there was none but he 'that could reaſonably pretend to the Succeſſion; and 'if he would come and join with him, he would put 'his Army into his Hands, and aſſiſt him with his 'Counſel and Friends to gain it: And as a Pledge of 'his Friendſhip he ſent him 100000 Roupies, adviſing 'him with all poſſible Speed to ſeize on the Caſtle of '*Surat*, where he knew all the Treaſure of the Land 'was. *Morad-Bakcke* received both the Preſent and Propoſals with Joy, and ſending 3000 Men under the Conduct of *Ghah-Abas*, a valiant Eunuch, to beſiege *Surat*, haſted himſelf with the reſt of his Army to *Aureng-Zeb*, who renew'd his Proteſtations to him, and gave him the Title of a King. Thus he encreaſed his Forces to a formidable Army, and that he might not want Money, he (after he was diſappointed of the Treaſure of *Surat*, either becauſe it was convey'd away by the Governour, or 'twas only a common Fame) contriv'd to get all the Riches of *Emir-Jemla*, who had amaſſed a very great Treaſure to himſelf by the Adminiſtration of Affairs in the Kingdom of *Golconda*, where he was General of that King's Forces, farm'd his Diamond-Mines, and drove a great Trade at Sea. He knew that this Great Man dare not join with him openly, becauſe *Dara-Cha* retained his Wife and Children at Court, as Pledges of his Fidelity, wherefore he perſwades him to counterfeit a Quarrel, and go into Priſon, as if he was under his Diſpleaſure, and then to lend him all his Treaſure, which he might do without Suſpicion. *Emir* conſented to it, either out of Friendſhip or Fear, and all his Forces joining with *Aureng-Zeb*, through large Promiſes, every thing ſucceeded according to his Will; and *Morad-Bakcke*, ſuppoſing all this done for him, cauſed himſelf to be declared King of all his Fathers Dominions, coin'd Money, and ſitting upon his Throne, created Governours of all Cities.

Morad-Bakcke joins with him.

He gets *Emir-Jemla*'s Treaſure.

Morad-Bakcke declares himſelf King.

The Union of theſe Brothers, and their Armies, cauſed great Noiſe at Court, and created many Thoughts in *Dara-Cha*'s Mind, but more particularly diſturbed *Cha-Jehan*, who knew the ſubtle Parts and great Conduct of *Aureng-Zeb*, and Courage of *Morad-Bakcke*; but Sultan *Sujah*, who was more powerful, and was already advanced into the Kingdom of *Labor*, called for his more ſpeedy Care, and therefore he ſent his eldeſt Son *Soliman Chekouh*, with a puiſſant Army, againſt him. *Soliman Cockouh* was about 25 Years of Age, a Prince of a very proper Body and good Parts and Conduct, generous, liberal, and univerſally beloved, eſpecially of *Cha-Jehan*, who therefore ſends with him an ancient *Raja*, called *Jeſſeigne*, with ſecret Orders to prevent a Battle, if poſſible; but the young Prince being full of Heat and Courage, was deſirous to ſignalize himſelf by ſome great Action; and Sultan *Sujah*, fearing leſt *Aureng-Zeb*, gaining a Battle, ſhould make himſelf Maſter of *Agra* and *Dehli*, the 2 Capital Towns of the Empire, was ſo furiouſly bent upon fighting, that the *Raja* could not prevent it. The firſt Onſet was very ſharp and reſolute on both Sides, but at length *Soliman* ſo urged *Sujah*, that he made him flee, and had the Raja ſeconded him, 'tis thought *Sujah*'s Army had been utterly ruin'd, and himſelf taken, but the *Raja Jeſſeigne*, obeying *Cha-Jehan*'s Order, gave *Sujah* Time to retreat, ſo that he ſaved moſt of his Army, and *Soliman* only got the Field and ſome Cannon.

Soliman Chekouh ſent againſt Sultan *Sujah*.

Fights him, and puts him to Flight.

In the mean time, *Aureng-Zeb* and *Morad-Bakcke* kept on their March, and approached *Agra* with great Reſolution, to make themſelves Maſters of it. They paſſed the River of *Brampour*, and the difficult Paſſages over the Mountains, before it was known at *Agra*, and as ſoon as the News of it came thither, it cauſed no ſmall Conſternation; and *Dara* hearing it, ſent ſome Troops under the Command of 2 of his choiceſt Captains, *Kaſem-Kan* and *Jeſſomſeigne*, to diſpute their Paſſage over the River *Eugenes*, which was at that Time fordable, becauſe of the great Heats. *Aureng-Zeb* ſeeing this Oppoſition, play'd his Cannon upon them, partly to amuſe them, and partly to keep them from paſſing the River themſelves, while he refreſh'd his Army 2 or 3 Days after their tedious March, and then appointing his Cannon to play more furiouſly from an advantageous Ground, he ordered his Army to paſs the River. *Kaſem-Kan* and the *Raja* did all they could to hinder their Paſſage, which cauſed a ſharp Diſpute, but at length *Aureng-Zeb*'s Men

Aureng-Zeb's March to *Agra*.

forced their Way, with the Loss of all the *Ragipous*, *i. e.* the *Raja's* Soldiers.

Dara-Cha's Army, and his Fight with *Aureng-Zeb.*

In the mean time, *Dara-Cha* had gathered together a gallant Army, *viz.* 100000 Horse, 20000 Foot, and 4000 Pieces of Cannon, big enough to cut in Pieces 2 or 3 such as *Aureng-Zeb's* was, *viz.* 30 or 40000 Men, tired and harassed, and a small Number of Cannon; but *Dara* was not beloved by the *Omrah's*, who were his Captains, nor Soldiers, and therefore he was advised both by his Father and others to delay the Fight till his Son *Soliman Chekouh* came up with his victorious Soldiers, and more faithful Leaders; but *Dara-Cha* would hearken to no Propositions, being almost sure of a Victory over his Brother's weak and tired Army, and desirous to have all the Glory of it, and so resolved to give Battle presently, and go against *Aureng-Zeb* in Person. The 2 Armies met at *Samonguer*, now called *Fatehabad*, i. e. The Place of Victory, and being drawn up in Order of Battle, *Dara-Cha*, who was mounted upon a proud Elephant of *Ceilon*, commanded to make an Onset on all sides, and himself undauntedly encouraging his Men, and bravely fighting before them, puts *Aureng-Zeb's* Men to flight, and notwithstanding their General did all he could to recall them, saying, *Delirane Kodahe*; Courage, my old Friends, God is with us; he could hardly effect it, till he had given Order, that his Elephant's Legs should be chain'd, to shew his Resolution never to flie, and then they promised to live and die with him. *Dara* in the mean advanced towards *Aureng-Zeb* to encounter him, which he looked upon as the most probable Way to gain Victory, as, indeed, it was; and had he kept to his Resolutions, he must have ruined him: But hearing that *Resinseigne-Routle* with his *Ragipous* were in great Danger, he diverted his Course to relieve them, and resolved to rush thro' all to *Morad-Bakcke*, which had he done, he had repaired his Fault, in leaving *Aureng-Zeb*; but *Calil-Ullah-Kan*, who had treacherously all the while kept back his Men, which were 30000, accosts him thus: *God save your Majesty, You have exposed your Person long enough; Come down from your Elephant, the Victory is yours.* The good Prince not perceiving the Treachery, dismounted his Elephant, and took his Horse. The Army, who were animated all along by *Dara's* Presence, immediately missed him from his Elephant, and supposing he was killed, were struck with such a Terror, that every one thought of nothing, but to save himself, and escape *Aureng-Zeb's* Hands, and thereupon disband and flie. *Aureng-Zeb* encouraged by this wonderful Success, employs all his Art and Dexterity to improve it for his own Advantage. *Calil-Ullah-Kan*, who came over to him with all the Troops he could be Master of, he received with infinite Acknowledgments, and a Thousand fair Promises, yet not in his own Name, but carried him to *Morad-Bakcke*, whom he treated as King, and extolled his Valour, as the only Cause of the Victory; nevertheless, he did not omit with his Uncle *Chah-Hest-Kan*, who came over at the same time, to advance his own Affairs, and secure himself the Favour of the *Omrah's*. *Dara*, after this Battle, fled to *Agra*, and was afraid to see his Father, whose Advice he had despised; but the good old Man, tho' he bad him never see his Face again, if he were overcome, yet sent an Eunuch to him to comfort him, and bid him not despair, since there was so good an Army with his Son *Soliman Chekouh*, but retire to *Debli* to recruit. *Aureng-Zeb* was aware, that his Hopes wholly lay in this Army, and therefore contrived either to take it from him, or make it useless; and to that End, wrote Letters upon Letters to *Raja Jesseigne*, and *Delil-Kan*, the chief Heads of his Army, *That* Dara *had lost the Battle, and his Army had abandoned him, and submitted to him; and tho' he was fled to* Debli, *he could not escape his Hands, Orders being given every where to secure him; That they should take heed what they did, and if they followed his Fortune, and served* Soliman Chekouh, *they should be his Friends.* These Letters stagger'd the Fidelity of *Jesseigne* and *Delil-Kan*; and tho' they durst not attempt to serve *Soliman*, yet he perceived them not to be trusted; and so for his Security, was forced to flie with some of his faithful Friends to the Mountains of *Serenaguer*; and the *Raja* to shew his Barbarity, sent some of his Men underhand to fall upon his Baggage, and to take among other Things an Elephant laden with Roupies, which caused many of his Men to desert him, and return to that *Raja*, and incited the Country People to pillage and kill his Men, yet he made a Shift to get to the Mountains with his Wife and Children, and was civilly received by the *Raja* of *Serenaguer*. Three or 4 Days after the Battle of *Samonguer*, the victorious *Aureng-Zeb* and his Brother *Morad Bakcke* came to *Agra*, and sent an Eunuch, his greatest Confident, to the Castle to *Cha-Jehan* his Father, to salute him with fair Protestations of Affection, and Submission, and assure him, That he was sorry Things had gone so far, but that he was obliged to it to curb *Dara's* Ambition; that he rejoyced to hear that he began to be better, and was come thither to receive his Commands. *Cha-Jehan* was not wanting to express to the Eunuch great Satisfaction in *Aureng-Zeb's* Proceedings, and accepting his Submissions with joy, assured him, that as he had always had a particular Affection for him, so he desired now to see him and embrace him, and that he had Matters of Importance to advise with him about. *Aureng-Zeb*, who was a Crafts-Master at Dissimulation, was not to be outdone in that Art, and therefore, though he gave it out that he would go and see his Father, yet 'twas plain by his Delays he never designed it; but on the contrary, after he had consulted the *Omrahs*, and disposed all Things for Success, sends his eldest Son, Sultan *Mahmoud*, to the Castle, under Pretence of visiting *Cha-Jehan* in his Name, who falling on the Guards that were at the Gates, drove them before him, and got Possession of the Walls, and demanding the Keys of the Castle, at length obtained them, and carried them to his Father. *Aureng-Zeb* thereupon made his Eunuch *Ethar-Kan* Governour of the Fortress, who presently shut up *Cha-Jehan*, together with *Begum-Saheb*, his Sister, and all his Women, causing divers Gates to be wall'd up, that they might not go out of their Apartments, or write, or see any Man. *Aureng-Zeb* having thus assured himself of *Cha-Jehan*, and all his *Omrahs*, took what Sums of Money he pleased out of the Treasury, and leaving *Cha-Hest-Kan*, his Uncle, Governour of the Town, went away with *Morad-Bakcke* to pursue *Dara*.

He puts to flight *Aureng-Zeb's* Army.

His Letters to *Raja Jesseigne* and *Delil-Kan.*

Conquered by Treachery.

Aureng-Zeb improves the Victory.

Raja Jesseigne's Treachery.

The Day that the Army was to march out of *Agra*, the particular Friends of *Morad-Bakcke*, and especially his Eunuch *Cha-Abas-Kan*, who knew that Excess of Civility and Respect is a Sign of Imposture, advised him, That since he was King, and every Body treated him with the Title of Majesty, not excepting *Aureng-Zeb* himself, that he should send him with his Army to pursue *Dara*, and stay himself with some Troops about *Agra* and *Debli*. And, indeed, *Morad-Bakcke* himself began to see his Error in having trusted *Aureng-Zeb* so much, and therefore sending to his Brother for half the Treasure he had seized, desired to return to *Guzurate*. But *Aureng-Zeb* for Answer assured him, that he had no other Design than to advance him to the Throne, and to that End desired to confer with him. *Morad-Bakcke* finding himself pretty well recover'd of the Wounds received at the Battle of *Samonguer*, goes to visit his Brother, who kindly welcomed him, extolled his Courage, and told him, he deserved one of the best Empires in the World, and so charm'd him with this sweet Language, that *Morad-Bakcke*, entirely confided in his Oaths and Promises, and so they marched together to *Debli*. When they were come to *Maturas*, 3 or 4 Days Journey from *Agra*, *Aureng-Zeb* invites *Morad-Bakcke* to a Feast, and was so importunate, that notwithstanding he used all the Excuses he could, he would accept of no Denial, till he had promised him to come. His Friends, smelling out the Plot, endeavoured to perswade him to beware, assuring him, that *Aureng-Zeb* had ill Designs, and that some Mischief was upon the Anvil; but *Morad-Bakcke's* Ears were deaf to all Advice, and so he went to Supper with him. As soon as he was come, *Aureng-Zeb*, who had contrived all Matters with *Mirzah*, and 3 or 4 more of his intimate Captains, and expected him, received him with Embraces and redoubled Courtship and Submission, treating him with the Titles of King and Majesty. The Table being served in, they Sup, and discourse of various Things, as was usual with them; and after all was removed, there was brought in an huge Bottle of excellent *Cirras* Wine, and some other of *Caboul* Wine, for a Debauch. *Aureng-Zeb*, like a strict *Mahometan*, invites him to drink freely, and departs; and *Morad-Bakcke*, loving a Glass of Wine, drank to Excess, and being drunk, fell asleep, which was the Thing wish'd for, and immediately his Servants were commanded away, under a Pretence of giving him no Disturbance, and his Zabre and Poniard were taken away. Not long after came in *Aureng-Zeb*, and waking him with a Kick,

Kick, said, *What a Shame is it for such a King as you are to be drunk? What will be said both of you and me? Take this Drunkard, and tie him Hand and Foot, and throw him into that Room to sleep out his Wine.* This was no sooner spoke but it was executed by 5 or 6 Persons provided on purpose, notwithstanding his Outcry and Appeal. Some of the Men that heard it, mutiny'd, but were calm'd by *Allah-Couli*, one of the chief Captains, who was before gain'd to his Side, and to prevent any further Commotions in the Army, Gifts were carried about all Night, and every Man's Pay advanced: and so all was quieted by the next Morning. *Morad-Bakske* was the next Night shut up in a little close House, and carried on an Elephant to the Castle of *Slimager* at *Dehli*, and from thence to the Castle of *Gonaleor*.

Aureng-Zeb receives the whole Army of *Morad-Bakske* into his Service, and went after *Dara-Cha*, who was got into *Lahor*, and intended to fortifie it, and draw his Friends thither to him; but *Aureng-Zeb* followed him so fast, that he could do little there, but was forced to take the Road to *Multan*, and so came to *Tatanaker*, where having put in a gallant Eunuch for Governour, and a good Garrison of *Patans* and *Sayeds*, and for Cannoneers a good Number of *Franks*, he hasted to *Amadavat*, where he was entertained by *Cha-Navaze-Kan*, the Father-in-Law of *Aureng-Zeb*, very friendly, either through Fear or Design, but his Friends supposing the latter, warned him not to trust him. *Aureng-Zeb* was disturbed when he heard, that *Dara-Cha* was in *Amadabat*; but because Sultan *Sujah*'s Army had passed the *Ganges*, and was coming towards him, he was forced to let *Dara-Cha* rest at *Amadabat*, and put a Stop to Sultan *Sujah*'s Progress. Sultan *Sujah* was encamped at a little Village, called *Cadjoue*, and had seiz'd of a large *Talab*, or Reservatory of Water. *Aureng-Zeb* was no sooner arrived, but, being impatient to end the War, he fell upon *Sujah* with an Effort unimaginable. *Emir-Jemla* now, not fearing *Dara*, because his Family was in Safety, came hither to assist him, and did it with all his Force, Courage and Dexterity. Sultan *Sujah* had so well fortified himself, and placed his Artillery so advantageously, that it was not possible for *Aureng-Zeb* to force him; yea, he was so vigorously repulsed, that he was forced to retreat. At the same time *Raja Jessomseigne* falls upon his Rear, so that he was reduced to very great Extremity, his Army being put into great Disorder, and himself forced to lead his Elephant, because the Driver was shot. Here it was that Fortune seem'd to abandon *Aureng-Zeb*, and 'twas almost impossible to escape; but a stronger Fate attended him, and he must still be victorious, and be King of the *Indies*, which thus came to pass: One of *Sujah*'s Captains, named *Allah-Verdi-Kan*, who (as some say) had been gain'd to *Aureng-Zeb*'s Party, seeing his Army in Disorder, ran to Sultan *Sujah*, and told him, as *Calil-Ullah-Kan* did *Dara*, *That he was Victor, and besought him to come down from his Elephant, and expose himself no longer to Danger. Sujah*, not considering the Counsel, comes down from his Elephant, and his Army, supposing him either slain or taken, was striken with Terror and fled, the Sultan himself in the Confusion hardly escaping. *Jessomseigne*, seeing the Mishap, contented himself with what Spoil he had gotten, and marching streight to *Agra*, fled into his own Country.

The News at *Agra* was, that *Aureng-Zeb* was defeated; and had *Jessomseigne* acted vigorously and threatned boldly, he might have easily freed *Cha-Jehan* from his Imprisonment, but his Fears paul'd both his Wit and Courage, and all his Thoughts were to secure himself: Yet *Aureng-Zeb* was not without some Jealousie of such an Attempt, and therefore stopping Pursuit, he hasted to *Agra*, where he staid a good while with his whole Army. While he abode here he received Intelligence, that Sultan *Sujah* had lost but few of his Men in the late Rout, and that having gather'd them together, and having gotten more Forces out of the Countries of the *Raja's* thereabouts, he had fortified himself in *Elabas*, an important and famous Passage of *Ganges*, which, with its Fortress, is the first Inlet into *Bengal*, whereupon he sent Sultan *Mahmoud*, his eldest Son, and *Emir-Jemla*, with a puissant Army, against him. Sultan *Sujah* fear'd nothing more than to have to do with *Emir-Jemla*, and had no sooner received the News, but apprehending that the *Emir* would pass the *Ganges* higher or lower, he left *Elabas*, and going down to *Benares* and *Patna*, he took himself to *Mogiere*, a small Town on the *Ganges*, but the Key of *Bengal*; but when he heard here, that the *Emir* and Sultan *Mahmoud* was coming against him with all the Flower of the Army of *Aureng-Zeb*, he left *Mogiere*, and fortified *Rage-Mehalle*, and staid there for the Coming of the *Emir*, who so battered his Fortifications with his Cannon, that he was forced to leave it; and Winter coming on, the *Emir* was confined for 4 Months there, while *Sujah* provided himself.

In the Current of these Affairs, Sultan *Mahmoud* being grown fierce and aspiring, claimed the Command of the Army absolutely, and that *Emir-Jemla* should follow his Orders; speaking insolently, as if his Father were beholding to him for the Crown, and threatning *Emir-Jemla*. These Things displeased his Father, and fearing lest he should order the *Emir* to seize his Person, he fled to Sultan *Sujah*, to whom he made Promises of Fidelity; but he not daring to trust him, because of *Aureng-Zeb*'s and *Emir-Jemla*'s Snares, *Mahmoud* was disgusted, and returned to the *Emir*, who had promised to make his Peace with his Father; but *Aureng-Zeb*, who was jealous of him, and wanted a specious Pretence to put him in a Place of Surety, would not let this Opportunity pass, and therefore sending him a severe Letter to come to *Dehli*, ordered him to be surprized by the Way, and carried into the Castle of *Gonaleor*, where 'tis thought he will remain for his Life.

Aureng-Zeb having kept himself about *Agra*, going to and fro hitherto, at length, after he had sent *Morad-Bakske* to *Gonaleor* to his Son, he removed to *Dehli*, and there took upon him publickly to act the King, and order all Affairs of the Kingdom, contriving how to catch *Dara-Cha*, and establish himself firmly, which he happen'd to do on this Occasion: *Jessomseigne* being retired into his own Country, raised a strong Army, and wrote to *Dara*, who by this time had muster'd together many of his Friends to meet him at *Agra*, where he need not doubt of further Assistance. *Dara-Cha* liking the Proposal, and not doubting of Success so long as *Jessomseigne* was with him, immediately left *Amadavat*, and marched with all Speed to *Asmire*, which is within 7 or 8 Days Journey of *Agra*; but before they could get together, *Raja Jessomseigne* interposed, and representing the Danger of the Action to *Jessomseigne*, by telling him, 'twas fully to espouse *Dara*'s Party, who was in Extremity, and fall under the Displeasure of *Aureng-Zeb*, to the Ruine of himself and his Family, so wrought upon that *Raja*, that he returned into his own Country, and left *Dara* to shift for himself with *Aureng-Zeb*'s Army, which in the mean time was come in Sight of him. *Dara* being left in this Strait, that he was neither able to fight *Aureng-Zeb*'s Force, nor yet safely retreat, resolved rather to fight, than expose his Men by Flight. The Fight began the next Morning, and though his Cannon were well placed, yet they did no Execution, because they were charged without Bullets. The Battle lasted not long, but *Dara* was forced to flie with his Wife and Family, and leave his Army to shift for it self. He made a Shift to get as far as *Amadabat*, and hoped there to refresh himself, and repair his Misfortunes; but the Governour in his Absence having received menacing Letters from *Aureng-Zeb*, denied him Entrance, so that he was forced to flie through Sundy Desarts in the hottest Season, where no Water was to be found, to *Raja Katche*. He lost in this Journey many of his Camels and Oxen, and some of his Women, besides many of his Retinue, partly by the Tediousness and Length of it, and partly by the *Koulli*, who robb'd and plunder'd them in the March, and happy had it been for him that he had met with the like Fate; for though this *Raja* gave him a very good Reception, and promised to assist him with all his Forces, provided he would give his Daughter in Marriage to his Son; yet being tampered with by *Raja Jessegne* soon after, his Kindness so visibly cool'd, that *Dara* found 'twas no longer safe to trust his Person there, and so fled to *Tatabakar*: But Misfortune still pursued him, for finding this Place besieged, and ready to be taken by *Mirbaba*, one of *Aureng-Zeb*'s Generals, he thought it in vain to try to raise the Siege by his small Forces, though the Besieged bravely attempted to get him in, and put forth extraordinary Strength to further his Designs, which possibly might have succeeded, if he had dared to try; he bethought himself of a safe Retreat with a *Patan* Prince, *Gian-Kan*, whose Life he had twice saved, when his Father had ordered him to be cast to the Elephants for rebelling, and so he resolved to go to him, hoping to get such Assistance from him, as might en-

enable him to raiſe the Siege of *Tatabakar*, where his Treaſure was, by which he might get more Friends and Help. His Grand-Child *Sepe-Chekoub*, with his Wife and Children, beſought him not to venture himſelf in the Hands of the *Patan*, but rather endeavour to gain *Caboul*, where he might hope for more Friends and good Help from *Mohabet-Kan*, the Governour of it, who was both powerful and valiant, and had been preferr'd to that Station by himſelf; but *Dara-Cha* rejected this Council, and would try *Gion-Kan*'s Kindneſs, which proved indeed fatal; for tho' this Robber receiv'd him civilly at firſt, becauſe he thought he had numerous Troops following him, yet when he found his Retinue not above 300, he fell upon *Dara-Cha* and *Sepe-Chekoub*, ſeized upon their Money and Jewels, and having killed thoſe that ſtood up in their Defence, tied them on an Elephant, with an Executioner behind them, to cut off their Heads at the leaſt Sign, if they ſhould rebel, and ſent them to *Mirbaba*, who lay with his Army before *Tatabakar*, and by him he was ſent in the ſame Poſture to *Dehli* to *Aureng-Zeb*. When he was at the Gates of *Dehli*, it was deliberated by *Aureng-Zeb*, whether he ſhould be ſent immediately to *Goualeor*, or being carried through the City, to ſatisfie all the People that it was he, be put to Death to ſtop all Commotions, the latter was agreed upon and reſolved, becauſe *Aureng-Zeb* had been informed, that the People much pity'd *Dara*'s Condition, and curſed the *Patan* Prince for betraying him; and ſo his Execution was committed to a Slave, called *Nazer*, who had been ill treated by *Dara*, and being accompanied with 4 or 5 more Parricides, cut off his Head in Revenge. His Head was carried into the Fortreſs to *Aureng-Zeb*, who commanded it to be waſhed and put in a Diſh, that he might ſee that 'twas his; and when he was ſatisfied, he ſaid, *Ah Bed-Bakt!* i. e. *Ah! Unfortunate Man!* and then had it be taken away, and buried in the Sepulchre of *Houmayon*. After this, *Sepe-Chekoub* was ſent to *Goualeor*, *Dara*'s Daughter was brought to the *Seraglio*, but after was ſent to *Cha-Jehan* and *Begum-Saheb*. *Dara*'s Wife, foreſeeing the Calamities coming upon her Family, had poiſon'd herſelf at *Labor*. *Gion-Kan* was ſent for to Court, and rewarded for his Treachery, but was killed in the Woods as he went home.

Gion-Kan betrays him to Aureng-Zeb.

There now remained none of the Family of *Dara-Cha* alive, or to be fear'd, but *Soliman-Chekoub*, who remained in *Serenaguer*, and could not be taken from thence, if the *Raja* continued his Protector; but by the Art of *Raja Jeſſeigne*, who was ſent to win him either by Promiſes or Threats, his Faith was ſhaken, and he agreed to reſign him: But *Soliman-Chekoub* being advertiſed of it, fled through the Deſarts towards *Tibet*, but being purſued by the *Raja*'s Son, was taken and carried to *Dehli*, where *Aureng-Zeb* cauſed him to be brought before him in the Preſence of all the Grandees at Court, who beheld him with Tears, and then ſent him to *Goualeor*, where he was ſoon after diſpatched, with *Sepe Chekoub*, by drinking the *Pouſt*, i. e. a Potion made of Poppies, ſqueez'd and infus'd in Water, which being drunk, emaciates and makes Men die inſenſibly, by taking away their Strength and Underſtanding.

Soliman-Chekoub betrayed to Aureng-Zeb.

Morad-Bakeke put to Death.

Morad-Bakeke's Death was more violent, becauſe the People were inclined to him, and much extolled his Valour and Courage; and therefore the Children of a certain rich *Sayed*, whom *Morad-Bakeke* had cauſed to be put to Death, to get his Eſtate, when he firſt made Preparations for War, were encouraged to appear in a full Aſſembly, and demand Juſtice for the Blood of their Father. None of the *Omrahs* durſt contradict it, becauſe he was a *Sayed*, i. e. One of *Mahomet*'s Kindred, and becauſe they knew *Aureng-Zeb*'s Deſign, and ſo his Head was granted to them without any further Proceſs, and was immediately cut off in *Goualeor*.

And now there remained no other Thorn in *Aureng-Zeb*'s Foot, but Sultan *Sujah*, who kept himſelf in *Bengal*, and held out a long time againſt the Forces of *Emir-Jemla*, but at laſt ſeeing it impoſſible to hold out any longer, he fled with his Son Sultan *Banque* to the King of *Aracan* or *Moy*, who, tho' an Idolater, gave him a kind Reception, and promiſed him at the Seaſon to lend him a Ship to carry him to *Mecca*; but being either taken with *Emir-Jemla*'s large Promiſes of great Sums, if he would deliver him up to him, or offended at his Denial of his Daughter to be given in Marriage to his Son, he became unkind, and denied him a Veſſel; ſo that he was forced to provide for his Safety by flight into *Pegu*; but being purſued, his Son Sultan *Banque* with his Mother, 2 little Brothers and his Siſters were taken, and he with one Woman, an Eunuch and 2 other Perſons eſcaped to the Mountains, where, 'tis probable, he was ſtarved, or torn in pieces by the Lions and Tigers, which abound there, for he has never been heard of ſince; and ſo *Aureng-Zeb* after 5 or 6 Years War, *viz.* from 1655, to 1661, was left in quiet Poſſeſſion of the Throne. Some Days before his enthronizing, he ſent to his Father to ſend him ſome of his Jewels, to the End he might appear before his People with the ſame Magnificence, as his Predeceſſors had done; but *Cha Jehan* taking this Requeſt of his Sons as an Affront put upon him in Priſon, fell mad, and in the Exceſs of his Vexation, would have beat all his Jewels to Powder, had not *Begum-Saheb* prevailed with him to ſave them, more for her ſelf than *Aureng-Zeb*, whom ſhe mortally hated; ſo that *Aureng-Zeb* was forced to aſcend the Throne with but One Jewel on his Bonnet. The Throne, which he was to ſit on, was ready prepared by *Cha-Jehan*, who finiſhed it juſt before his Impriſonment: It was begun by *Tamerlane*, and being compleated, was the richeſt and moſt magnificent One that ever was ſeen; but in his Aſcent to it, he met with ſome Difficulty; for the Grand *Cadi* of the Empire, and Chief of the Law, whoſe Office it is to proclaim the new King, told him, *That the Law of* Mahomet, *as well as that of Nature, equally forbad him to declare him King while his Father lived, who had beſides made his Way to it by putting his elder Brother to Death, whoſe Right it was after the Death of* Cha-Jehan *their Father.* This ſtout Reſiſtance of the *Cadi* perplexed *Aureng-Zeb*, but calling together the Doctors of the Law, he told them, His Father was through Age and Infirmity unfit to govern, and that *Dara-Cha* was put to Death becauſe he was a Breaker of their Law, and favoured Infidels, and therefore the Empire belonged to him, from which ſince the *Cadi* obſtinately refuſed to inaugurate him, he ought to be removed as a Diſturber of the publick Peace, and another choſen for the Honour of the Law: The Council either convinced or terrified, yielded, and a Perſon elected, proclaimed him King, *Octob.* 20. 1660. It was made in the Moſque, and then *Aureng-Zeb* ſeated himſelf upon the Throne, and received the Homage of all the Grandees of the Kingdom.

Aureng-Zeb proclaimed King.

When *Aureng-Zeb* had thus gotten Poſſeſſion of the Throne, he would not eat any Wheaten-Bread, nor Meat, nor Fiſh; but fed upon Barley-Bread, Herbs and Sweet-Meats, and lay on the Ground on a Tyger's Skin, as a kind of Penance which he impoſed upon himſelf for ſo many Crimes committed in the obtaining it, and held in this Reſolution ſo long, that he much impaired his Health by it.

When *Aureng-Zeb* was thus ſettled in the Empire, ſeveral Ambaſſadors came to *Jehanabat* to congratulate him on the Behalfs of the Kings their Maſters, as from the 2 *Kans* of the *Usbec Tartars*, the Son of *Mecca*, the Prince of *Balſora*, and the Kings of *Arabia Felix* and *Æthiopia*, preſenting him with the Rarities of their Countries. He, though he was not pleaſed with ſome of them, yet received them kindly, and diſmiſs'd them well ſatisfied. The *Hollanders* alſo ſent M. *Adrican*, Chief of their Factory in *Surat*, who was kindly received, and diſpatched firſt, though 'tis a Piece of State in the *Indies* to keep Ambaſſadors a good while at Court, and *Aureng-Zeb*, affecting to appear a zealous *Mahometan*, deſpiſes the *Franks*, or Chriſtians.

Ambaſſadors from the Kings of Arabia, the Great Mogul.

Before all theſe Ambaſſadors were departed from *Dehli*, *Aureng-Zeb* fell exceeding ſick with a violent Fever, which diſordered his Underſtanding, and ſo affected his Tongue, that he could hardly ſpeak, ſo that the Phyſicians for a time deſpaired of his Recovery, and it was bruited abroad, that he was dead, but that his Siſter *Rachemera-Begum* conceal'd his Death out of Deſign. Sultan *Mazum* made his Intereſt with the *Omrahs*, and 'twas thought that *Jeſſomſeigne* and *Mohabet-Kan* would releaſe *Cha-Jehan*; and 'tis certain, *Rachemera-Begum*, and *Teday-Kan*, the Great Maſter of the Artillery, with many *Omrahs*, declared for the young Prince Sultan *Ekbar*, the 3d Son of *Aureng-Zeb*, tho' not above 7 or 8 Years old. But tho' *Aureng-Zeb* was very ſick, yet he ordered all Things, and particularly ſecured that his Father *Cha-Jehan* ſhould be kept ſafe, and to prevent all falſe Reports of his Death, and ſuch Tumults as might proceed from it, he cauſed himſelf on the 5th Day, in the Height of Sick-

Aureng-Zeb falls ſick.

Sultan Sujah flying thro' the Deſarts is ſtarved.

Aureng-Zeb shews himself to his Subjects.

Sickness, to be carried in a full Assembly of the *Omrahs*, and so he did on several other Days, till he recovered. Soon after his Recovery, he sought to marry Sultan *Eckbar*, his 3d Son, to *Dara*'s Daughter; but not only *Cha-Jehan* and *Begum* rejected the Proposition, but the young Princess protested she would kill her self an Hundred times over, rather than marry the Son of him that had murdered her Father.

About the same time one of *Aureng-Zeb*'s considerable *Omrahs* addressed himself to him, desiring him to avoid the Variety of perplexing Affairs, which took up his Mind too much, and would alter his Temper, and incommode his Health: But he replied, *That the same Providence that raised him to the Crown, engaged him to procure the Good and Safety, Tranquility and Happiness of his Subjects, so far as it may be obtained by Justice and Power; Kings cease to be Kings, when they do not govern their Kingdom themselves; and then advised him to take Care of the faithful Discharge of his Place, and not meddle again so far as he had done.*

A Eunuch in Love with a Maid.

Not long after this happen'd an Accident that made a great Noise at *Dehli*, and especially in the *Seraglio*. *Dilar-Kan*, one of the Chief of the Eunuchs of the *Seraglio*, fell in Love with a beautiful Woman, a Scrivener's Sister, that was an Heathen, and growing very familiar, the Scrivener's Neighbours rally'd him for it, who thereupon threatned, that if they continued their Commerce he would kill them; but they not regarding his Words, he not long after found them in Bed together, and stabb'd the Eunuch out-right, leaving his Sister for dead. The whole *Seraglio*, both Men and Women, made a League to revenge his Death; but *Aureng-Zeb* prevented them, by accepting it, that he should turn *Mahometan*: Yet 'tis thought he cannot pass the Power of the Eunuchs, who are more vicious for being gelt, and insolent, though sometimes they shew admirable Fidelity. *Aureng-Zeb* also conceived some Displeasure against *Raebenara-Begum*, who was suspected of an unlawful Conversation with 2 young Men in the *Seraglio*, but having no full Proofs, he passed it by without any great Resentment.

Ambassadors from divers Places.

Some Months after this there arrived several Ambassadors at *Dehli*, *viz.* from the *Xeriff* of *Mecca*, King of *Hyeman* and Prince of *Balsora*, who brought a great Present of *Arabian* Horses; but these were not much regarded, because 'twas thought they came under that Pretence to merchandize without paying any Customs or Impost; but the Ambassie from the King of *Æthiopia*, a Christian King, was more respected, for *Aureng-Zeb* not only presented them richly with Roupies and Vests for themselves, as also a rich one, 2 great Silver and gilt Trumpets, Two Silver Tymbals, a Poynard covered with Jewels, and 20000 *Franks* in Gold and Silver Roupies for their Master; but sent for them twice to inform himself of the State and Government of their Country, and principally to learn something about the Source of the *Nile*, which they call *Ababile*, of which they gave so clear an Account, that none could doubt of their Knowledge of it, *viz.* That it had its Origin in the Country of *Agaus*, and rose in 2 large bubbling Springs near one another, which formed a small Lake of 30 or 40 Paces long; that coming out of this Lake it made a considerable River, and being further encreased by several small Rivers falling into it, it circled about, and made as it were a large Isle, till it tumbled down some steep Rocks into another large Lake, in which are divers fruitful Islands, store of Crocodils, and an abundance of Sea-Calves, which have no other Vent for their Excrements, but their Mouths; and that this Lake is in the Country of *Dambra*, 3 small Days Journey from *Gondar*, the Metropolis of *Æthiopia*, and 4 or 5 from the Source of it. From this Lake it breaks out very large, because augmented with many Rivers and Torrents falling into it, and so runs through *Sonnar*, the Capital City of the King of *Tunis*, or *Barbary*, a Tributary Prince to the King of *Æthiopia*, and so making *Cataracts*, passeth into *Ægypt* through the Plains of *Mesor*. The Cause of its Inundation is the Rainy Season, which regularly begins in the *Indies* about *July*, and filling the last Lake, causeth the Overflowing of the *Nile*, which by Computation agrees to the Time. He also enquired after the State of *Mahometanism* in their Country, and finding it to encrease, gave them an *Alcoran*, and 8 others Books, the best reputed of in the *Mahometan* Religion, with 2000 Roupies for their Interest with the King of *Æthiopia* to rebuild an old Mosque, which was built for the Tomb of a great *Dervis*, who had propagated *Mahometanism* in *Æthiopia*.

Of the Source of Nile.

The Cause of its Inundation.

Very strange Things for the Ambassadors of a Christian King to do; but the Truth is, Christianity in *Æthiopia* is a very odd Thing, and favours much of *Mahometanism*.

Christianity in Æthiopia, what.

While these Ambassadors remain'd in *Dehli*, *Aureng-Zeb* called together a Council of the greatest and most learned Men of his Court, to chuse a new Master for his 3d Son Sultan *Eckbar*, whom he designed for his Successor; and here he shew'd a mighty Passion for the good Education of Princes, and that Kings, who surmount others in Greatness, should also exceed them in Vertue and Knowledge, because it is to be imputed to the Want of this Education, that the Kingdoms of *Asia* are so unpeopled and miserable, the Kings being brought up usually among Women and Eunuchs, of whom they learn nothing but Luxury and Vice, and so when they come to reign know no Way to rule but by Cruelty, which he lamented in himself, and was resolved to prevent it in his Son. How much he regreted the want of Learning in himself may appear from this remarkable Story. *Mullah-Sale*, his Tutor, hearing of the great Fortune of *Aureng-Zeb*'s Conduct, came in haste to Court, swell'd with the Hopes of being presently advanced to no less than the Dignity of an *Omrah*. He made his Court, and had the Interest of *Raebenara-Begum*, the King's Sister, but the King would not for 3 Months regard him; but at length, being tired with his Attendance, he took him apart with 5 or 6 of his most learned *Omrahs*, and thus spoke to him, *What would you have of me, Doctor? Can you reasonably expect that I should make you one of my chief* Omrahs? *Had you instructed me as you ought, nothing had been more just; for a Child well educated owes as much to his Master as Father: But you have taught me only a little false Geography,* (viz. *That* Frangestan *(i. e.* Europe*) is but a little Isle, possessed by a few petty Kings like our* Raja's, *and that* Indostan *was far above them altogether) and the* Arabian *Tongue, to read and write, as if it were an Accomplishment to a King to be a Grammarian, neglecting the Instructions about the Religions, Governments, Customs and Interests of other Nations, the Duty of Princes to Subjects, and Subjects to Princes, with other most important Points; so that I lost my Time only with you, and learnt nothing profitable. Go Home therefore and retire to the Village from whence you came, and let no Body know who you are, or what's become of you*; and so he departed.

Aureng-Zeb loves Learning.

Other most memorable Actions which *Aureng-Zeb* did in the Time of Peace, may be reduced to 5 or 6 Particulars, which follow:

His Treatment of his Father.

1. How he used his Father *Cha-Jehan*, whom he still kept in Prison, and had him kept with all imaginable Care and Caution. He treated him with the Respect of a Father, and some of the Honour of a King; for he left him in his old Apartments with his Daughter *Begum-Saheb*, his other Women, Singers, Dancers, Cooks, and others, and suffered him to want nothing convenient for his Greatness and Power, but a Power to govern. He allow'd also certain *Mullahs* to go to him, and read the *Alcoran* to him (for he was grown very devout.) He ordered also, that when he thought fit, he might have some of his finest Horses brought before him, and likewise tame Gazels (which are a kind of Goat) to fight one with another to divert him, as also divers sorts of Birds of Prey, and several other Animals, to divert him: He also sent him many Letters, full of Respect and Submission, consulting him as an Oracle, and expressing a Thousand Cares for him, and now and then sending him some pretty Present; by all which Things he conquer'd the Obstinacy of *Cha-Jehan*'s Temper, which he retain'd a long time even in Prison, and gain'd so much upon him, that he often wrote to *Aureng-Zeb* about the Government and State of Affairs, and of his own Accord sent him some of those Jewels, which he threatned to break in Pieces with Hammers, if ever he ask'd for any of them again. He likewise consented, that the Daughter of *Dara*, which he had so peremptorily denied, should be delivered to him, and granted him at length that Pardon and Benediction which he had so long sued for in vain, being contented with his own Confinement and Son's Greatness.

Cha-Jehan reconciled to *Aureng-Zeb*.

Of *Emir-Jemla*.

2. How he dealt with *Emir-Jemla*. This Great Man, after he had dispatched the Affairs of *Bengal* with Sultan *Sujah*, like a great Captain and dexterous Politician, pursuing him to the Sea-side, and making him flie to escape his Hands, sent an Eunuch to *Aureng-Zeb*, desiring Leave that he might settle his Wife and Children in *Bengal*, and spend the Remainder of his

his Days in Quiet. *Aureng-Zeb*, knowing in how great Credit and Reputation the *Emir* was, both in *Bengal* and in the Army, and being ſenſible of his ambitious Deſign, if not of aſpiring to the Crown, yet of ſecuring *Bengal* at leaſt to himſelf and Son, which is one of the beſt Kingdoms of *Indoſtan*, and upon theſe Accounts it was almoſt as unſafe to deny him, as grant him, contrived this Way of managing him. He maketh the *Emir* a *Mir-Ul-Omrah*, which is in that Empire the greateſt Degree of Honour that a Favourite can be raiſed to, and his Son *Mahmet Emir-Kan* the Great *Backſi*, i. e. Great Maſter of the Horſe, both which Offices oblige the Poſſeſſors of them to be always at Court, and attend, unleſs upon very extraordinary Occaſions, the Perſon of the King. The *Emir* ſoon perceived, that the Emperor had skillfully put off his Stroïk, and being loth to give him Offence, he reſolved to reſt content with theſe Teſtimonies of his Friendſhip, with the Government of *Bengal*; only at the ſame time to be upon his Guard, that ſince he could not outwit *Aureng-Zeb*, the King ſhould not over-reach him. Thus Things remained for a whole Year, till the King conſidering, that ſo great a Captain could not lie ſtill, propoſed to him to make War upon that rich and potent *Raja* of *Acham*, whoſe Territories are upon the North of *Dake*, upon the Gulf of *Bengal*. The *Emir*, who had deſigned the ſame Thing, thinking that he might thereby make his Honour immortal, and hoping to carry his Arms as far as the Kingdom of *China*, declared himſelf ready for the Enterprize; and embarking at *Dake* with a puiſſant Army, arrived at a Caſtle called *Azo*, which the *Raja* of *Acham* had taken from the Kingdom of *Bengal*, and unjuſtly detained many Years, and took it in 15 Days by Force. Then he marched to *Chamdara*, which is the Inlet into the *Raja*'s Kingdom, where the *Raja* received him with an Army, which joined Battle with the *Emir*'s immediately, but was worſted, and the *Raja* himſelf was forced to flie to *Guerguon*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom. The *Emir* and his Men pillaged *Chamdara*, but purſued the *Raja* with ſuch Expedition, that he had no Time to fortifie himſelf in it, and ſo was forced to leave it, and retire into the Mountains of the Kingdom of *Laſſa*. *Guerguon* thereupon became a Spoil to the *Emir* and his Men, and they found great Riches in it; but the Rains coming on ſooner than uſual, by which the Country was overflow'd, his Army was reduced to ſo great Straits for Lodging and Proviſion, that he was forced to give over his Deſign, and go home again the ſame Way he came, and that with ſo much Difficulty, that had not his Patience and Conduct been incomparable, he had periſh'd himſelf and his Army; but, notwithſtanding all theſe Difficulties, he made a Shift to come back again with great Honour and vaſt Riches. The next Year he reſolv'd to purſue his Undertaking; but he was no ſooner arrived there, but Fluxes began to rage in his Army: Neither had he a Body of Steel more than the reſt, for he fell ſick and died, which not only put an End to the Apprehenſions of *Aureng-Zeb*, who was hardly accounted King of *Bengal* ſo long as he lived, but eaſed him of all his Jealouſies, which he thus expreſſed to his Son, *Mahmet Emir-Kan, you have loſt your Father, and I the greateſt and moſt dangerous Friend I had:* Yet he comforted him with the Aſſurances of his Favour, and left him Heir of all the Eſtate of his Father, although the Cuſtom of the Country empower'd him to ſeize on all.

He prefers him and his Son.

He is ſent againſt the King of Acham.

He wanquiſhes the Raja.

He dies.

3. Concerning *Cha-Heſt-Kan*, whom *Aureng-Zeb* made firſt Governour of *Agra*, when he went to the Battle of *Cadjoue*, then General of his Army in *Decan*, and laſt of all Governour of *Bengal*, and *Mir-Ul-Omrah* after *Emir-Jemla*'s Death. He was Uncle to *Aureng-Zeb*, and one that had much contributed to his Happineſs by his eloquent and skilful Pen, as well as by his Intrigues and Counſels, and in his Government atchieved a great Thing, for which he will be ever renowned, and ſo much the more, becauſe *Emir-Jemla*, whether out of Policy, or any other Cauſe, never dare attempt it. It was this: In the Kingdom of *Rakan*, or *Moy*, there had been for many Years a great Number of Chriſtian Slaves, *Portugueſes*, *Franguis*, and other Runagadoes from *Goa*, *Ceilan*, *Cochin*, *Malague*, and other Places, who had abandoned their Monaſteries, Men twice or thrice married, Murtherers, and led a moſt deteſtable Life, butchering and poiſoning one another, and aſſaſſinating their own Prieſts, who were not much better than themſelves. Their ordinary Trade was Robbery and Piracy. The King of *Rakan* made them a Guard for his Frontiers, and giving them Lands, allowed them Liberty to live as they pleaſed in a Port Town, called *Chategan*: They had ſome ſmall light Gallies with which they coaſted about that Sea, and entring into *Ganges* and other Rivers, took whole Towns of the poor *Gentiles* Captives, and depopulated many Iſles, ſelling ſome of the People for Slaves to the *Portugueſe* at eaſie Rates, and keeping others for their own Service, in Rowing and other Drudgery. Theſe were the Pirates for whoſe ſake *Cha-Jehan* demoliſh'd the Jeſuits Churches at *Agra* and *Labor*, becauſe he was very angry with the Chriſtians of *Ogouli*, that they connived at theſe Pirates, and by their Means filled their Houſes with Slaves of his Subjects; for, after he had with many fair Words, and Menaces drawn from them, as much Money as he could, he waſted and utterly ruin'd them, carrying them Captives to *Agra*, where he put their handſome Women into the *Seraglio*, given their old Women to their *Omrahs* and others, cauſing their young Lads to be circumciſed and made Pages, and the Men of Age Slaves, and all to renounce their Faith; being either terrified by Threatnings, that they ſhould be trampled upon by the Elephants, or invited to it by large Promiſes. Theſe are the ſame Pirates, who ſometime before the Deſtruction of *Ogouli*, offered the Vice-Roy of *Goa* to betray the whole Kingdom of *Rakan* to the *Portugueſe*, but he refuſed it, leſt a certain *Baſilian Conſalve*, who was Head of them, and was become ſo conſiderable, that he married one of the King's Daughters, ſhould have the Honour of that piece of Service. Theſe were the Pirates that took the Iſle of *Sondiva* much about the ſame Time, which lies at the Mouth of the *Ganges*, where an *Auguſtine* Fryar acted the King over them for many Years. Theſe Robbers took Sultan *Sujah* at *Dake*, and carrying him to the Galeaſſes at *Rakan*, open'd his Coffers and plunder'd him of his Jewels, which they ſold privately to the *Hollanders*, under the Name of ſoft Diamonds at cheap Rates. Laſtly, Theſe Pirates were a great Charge to the *Mogul* in *Bengal*, obliging him to keep a ſtrong Militia, and a Fleet of Galeaſſes to prevent their Ravaging, and all with little Succeſs, becauſe they were more skilful at their Weapon, and dextrous at Piloting their Galeaſſes than his own Men, ſo that they did much Miſchief to his Subjects. *Cha-Heſt-Kan* caſt his Eyes upon theſe Pirates, as ſoon as he came into *Bengal*, and took up a Reſolution to deliver the Country from this Plague of People, that had ſo long waſted it, deſigning to attack the King of *Rakan* afterward, according to the Order of *Aureng-Zeb*, to puniſh him for his cruel Uſage of Sultan *Sujah* and his Family. To effect this Deſign of his, he found it neceſſary to engage the *Hollanders* in it, becauſe it was impoſſible either to carry ſufficient Forces by Land, and tranſport them by Sea out of *Bengal* to *Rakan*; and upon that Account he ſent a kind of an Ambaſſador to treat with the General of *Batavia*, upon certain Conditions, jointly to ſubdue the whole Kingdom of *Rakan*, as *Cha-Abbas* did *Ormus* by the Help of the *Engliſh*. The General finding the Thing poſſible, and that it would not only weaken the *Portugueſe*, but turn to the Advantage of his Company, diſpatched away 2 Men of War to *Bengal*, to aſſiſt *Chab-Heſt-Kan* in tranſporting his Forces in ſpight of the Pirates, but in the mean time he had equipped a great Number of Galeaſſes, and other Veſſels, to tranſport his Army, and threatned them with Deſolation, unleſs they would abandon the Service of the King of *Rakan*, and aſſiſt *Aureng-Zeb* in taking his Kingdom, which if they would do, he would procure them very good Conditions, and diſtribute among them as much Land in *Bengal* as they deſired, and give them double Pay. It happen'd about the ſame Time that theſe Pirates had aſſaſſinated one of the chief Officers of the King of *Rajan*, and fearing to be puniſh'd for his Crimes, they eagerly embraced theſe Promiſes, and ſhipped themſelves, their Wives, Children, and every Thing that they had valuable, in 40 or 50 of their Galleaſſes, and ſailed over to *Bengal* to *Cha-Heſt-Kan*, who received them with open Arms, courted them exceedingly, and gave them very conſiderable Pay, and without letting them cool, he made them, jointly with his whole Army, to attack and take the Iſle of *Sondiva*, which was fallen into the Hands of the King of *Rakan*, and thence to paſs with all his Horſe and Foot to *Chatigan*, which having alſo poſſeſſed himſelf of, he diſmiſſed the *Holland* Veſſels, with a Compliment and ſome Preſents, with which they were hardly pleaſed, and having

He is ſent againſt the King of Acham.

He wanquiſhes the Raja.

He dies.

He reſtores Chatigan to the Mogul.

He diſmiſſes the Hollanders.

He reſtores Chatigan.

He drives the Country of Robbers and Pirates who did much Miſchief.

ving now little need of the Pirates Help, he treats them as they deserve, like Rogues and Traitors, leaving them without Pay for whole Months together, and looking upon them as vile Creatures, not to be trusted or employed. What his Success against the King of *Rakan* will be Time must shew.

Of Sultan *Mahmoud* and Sultan *Mazum*.

4. An Account of the 2 Sons of *Aureng-Zeb*, Sultan *Mahmoud* and Sultan *Mazum*. The former of these, who is the eldest Son, is kept in the Castle of *Goualcor*; but (if the common Report be true) without making him take the *Pousk*, which is the ordinary Drink of such as are put into that Place. As to the other, tho' he has been always a Pattern of Reservedness and Moderation, yet no Man knows what Causes of Jealousie he hath given his Father, or whether he hath a Mind to make an authentick Proof of his Obedience and Courage, which last may be probable from these Actions towards him. One Day he commanded him in a full Assembly of his *Omrahs*, and without much Unconcern, to go and kill a Lion, which was come down from the Mountains, and had made great Havock and Waste in the Country, and that without ordering him the usual strong Nets made for that Purpose, saying, When he was Prince he minded not those Formalities. It was the good Fortune of Sultan *Mazum* to prosper in the Attempt, and to kill the Lion, with the Loss only of 2 or 3 Men, and some Horses which were wounded. *Aureng-Zeb* was so delighted with this Testimony of his Son's Courage, that he hath often expressed great Affection to him, and hath given him the Government of *Decan*, though with so little a Revenue and Power, as that he has no Cause to fear him.

The last Lion a Lion.

Of *Mohabet-kan*.

5. Touching the Governour of *Caboul*, *Mohabet-Kan*, who was so firm a Friend to *Cha-Jehan*, even in his Adversity. *Aureng-Zeb* was loth to lose so brave a Captain, and therefore pardon'd him; and though he took from him the Government of *Caboul*, yet he made him Governour of *Guzurat*, in the Place of *Jessomseigne*, whom he sent to the Wars in *Decan*. It was supposed, that the great Presents he made to *Rauchenara-Begum*, and a good Number of exellent *Persian* Horses which he presented to *Aureng-Zeb*, with 15000 or 16000 Roupies in Gold, contributed much towards his Peace.

How he rewarded such as had served him faithfully.

6. As to such Persons as had faithfully serv'd *Aureng-Zeb* in obtaining the Throne, he has raised them all almost to Places of Trust. *Cha-Hest-Kan* he made first Governour of *Decan*, and then of *Bengal*; *Mir-Kan* he made Governour of *Caboul*; *Kalil-Ullah-Kan* of *Lahor*; *Mirbaba* of *Elabas*; and *Lasker-Kan* of *Patna*. The Son of that *Allah-Verdi-Kan*, the Betrayer of Sultan *Sujah*, he appointed Governour of *Scimdy*; and *Fazel Kan*, who had considerably served him, both by his Counsels and Dexterity, he raised to the Dignity of *Kane-Saman*, i. e. Great Steward of his Royal Household, and *Danech-Mend-Kan* Governour of *Debli*, with this particular Favour and Privilege, that since he is perpetually employ'd in his Studies and Foreign Affairs, he dispenseth with him for not coming twice a Day (after the ancient Custom) to wait on the King in the Assembly, so as not to retrench any thing of his Pension for his Absence, as he doth other *Omrahs*, if they fail. To *Dianet-Kan* he has given the Government of *Kitcib-mer*, or *Cassimere*, the Earthly Paradise of the *Indies*, which was once a Kingdom by it self, and had Kings so powerful, that they subdued the Country as far as *China*. 'Tis true, *Aureng-Zeb* dismissed *Nejabat-Kan*, who acted very well for him in the 2 Battles of *Samonguer* and *Cadjeue*, but 'twas because he reproached the King with his own good Services. *Jessomseigne* he made Governour of *Decan*, after *Cha-Hest-Kan*, but after recalled him from thence, because he was thought to have held Correspondence with that stout and bold Heathen *Seva-Gi* in his Robbing the Town of *Surat*, from whence he brought Millions of Gold, Silver, Pearls and Silken-Stuffs, fine Linen, and other rich Merchandize, and used great Cruelty in cutting off the Legs and Hands of the Inhabitants to make them confess where their Treasure was. The Boldness of a *Jew* upon this Occasion was very remarkable. He had brought some Rubies of very great Value from *Constantinople* to sell them to *Aureng-Zeb*, and falling into the Hands of *Seva-Gi*, he was brought thrice upon his Knees, and the Knife held up to cut his Throat, to oblige him to confess where his Jewels were, but he in all this Danger held so stoutly to his Principle of Avarice, that he saved both his Jewels and his Life. As for *Jessegne*,

A Jew's Courage.

King *Aureng-Zeb* made him content to go General of his Army into *Decan*, sending Sultan *Mazum* with him without any Power. He presently besieged the principal Fortress of *Seva-Gi*, and being well experienced in Matters of Negotiation and Treaty, he so ordered the Business, that *Seva-Gi* surrender'd it before it came to Extremity, and joyn'd with *Aureng-Zeb*'s Party against *Visapour*, whereupon *Aureng-Zeb* declared him a *Raja*, took him into his Protection, and gave the Pension of a very considerable *Omrah* to his Son. Some time after, *Aureng-Zeb* designing to make War upon *Persia*, invited him to *Debli*, and by his Commendations of him for his Generosity, Ability and Conduct, so prevailed with him, that upon the Faith of *Jessegne* he went to him; but the Wife of *Cha-Hest-Kan* importuning *Aureng-Zeb* to arrest him, because he had murthered her Son, wounded her Husband and sack'd *Surat*, made his Abode unsafe for himself and uneasie to the King, whereupon the King, pretending to apprehend him, so contrived the Matter, that he made his Escape by the Assistance of *Raja Jessegne*'s Son; yet *Aureng-Zeb* pretended to be angry with the *Raja* and his Son, whereupon he fled to his own Lands to possess himself of them, and guard them, and died at *Brampour*; but after his Death the King was so far from expressing any Resentment to his Son, that he sent to condole with him for the Death of his Father, and continued his Pension.

Jessegne's Actions.

Seva-Gi invited to *Debli*.

7. Concerning the Death of *Cha-Jehan*, who ended his Days in Prison in the Fortress of *Agra*, in the the Year 1666. *Aureng-Zeb* was exceedingly affected with it, and discovered all the Marks of Grief that a Son can express for the Loss of a Father. At the very Hour that he received the News he went towards *Agra*, where *Begum-Saheb* had caused the Mosque and a certain Place where he was at first to stop, before he entred the Fortress, to be hung with richly embroidered Tapestries, and at his entring in at the *Seraglio*, she presented him with a large Golden-Bason, wherein were all her own and her Father's Jewels; and in fine, received him with that Magnificence, and entertain'd him with that Dexterity and Craft, that she obtained his Pardon, gained his Favour, and grew very confident with him.

Cha-Jehan's Death.

Of the Extent of the *Mogul*'s Empire.

The Empire of the Great *Mogul* is of a very large Extent, yet doth not include all *Indostan*, but there are several Governments, and those not inconsiderable, who keep themselves, though with some Difficulty, out of his Hands. The greatest of them are in *Decan*, and can hardly be understood, but by relating the State of Things a little higher. All that great Peninsula of *Indostan*, crossing it from the Bay of *Cambaya* to that of *Bengal*, near *Jaganrate*, and from thence to Cape *Comory*, was, scarce 200 Years since, entirely (except some of the Mountainous Countries) under the Dominion of one only Prince, who was a very great and potent Monarch; but now it is divided among many different Sovereigns, and those of different Religions. The Cause of this Division was, that King *Ramras*, who was the last that possessed this mighty State entirely, and did imprudently raise 3 Slaves, or *Gurgs*, which he had about him, too high, by making them Governours of Countries; the 1st of those, of which the *Mogul* is Master in *Decan* at present, the 2d of the Lands, now comprehended under the Kingdom of *Visapour*, and the 3d of the Countries now under the King of *Golconda*. These 3 being grown rich and powerful agreed upon a Revolt, and having killed King *Ramras*, possessed themselves of their Governments severally, and assumed the Title of *Cha*, or King. The Heirs of King *Ramras* not finding themselves strong enough to recover their Right from them, kept themselves in *Karnatek*, now called *Bisnaguer*, where they are *Raja's* to this very Day, and several other *Raja's*, *Naiques*, and other petty Kings, seized upon other Parts of his Kingdom. The Posterity of the Slaves defended themselves very well against the Power of the *Moguls*, so long as they held together, and assisted one another against him; but when they divided, and thought to defend their Countries apart, the *Mogul* improved their Disunion to his own Advantage; and about 35 or 40 Years since seized the Country of *Nejam Cha*, the 5th or 6th of the Family of the 1st Slave, and made him Prisoner in *Daulet-Abed*, the Capital City of his Kingdom, where he died; but the Kings of *Golconda* and *Visapour* still maintain their Ground against him, and keep their Kingdoms independant from him.

The Division of *Decan* into Three Kingdoms.

The

The Kingdom of *Visapour*.

The Kingdom of *Visapour* is continually in Wars with the *Mogul*, but being assisted by the King of *Golconda* with Money underhand, and with many Forces from the petty *Raja's* round about it, who join with it for their own Defence, and the Country being not only difficult of Access for an Army, but destitute of Water and Forage, tho' the *Mogul* hath an Army continually against it, they suffer little Harm. The King of *Golconda* is the more secure, while the *Mogul* is busied against *Visapour*, tho' he keeps an Army always upon his Frontiers, to shew him that he is ready to defend him, and so he continues an absolute Prince. On the Frontiers of *Persia* there are also several petty Sovereigns, who are independent upon him, and pay him no Subjection, no more than they do the King of *Persia*. Such are the *Balouches* and *Augans*, and other Mountaineers, who, when the *Mogul* sent his Army to besiege *Candahar*, so stopt the Waters, that they could not march forward till he had made them some Presents. Such are also the *Patans*, a *Mahometan* People, very Fierce and Warlike, who being seated in the Mountains, despise the *Indians*, *Heathens*, and chiefly the *Moguls*; and tho' they are of small Strength of themselves, yet upon the Account of their Situation, they are very absolute and independent. There are also more than 100 *Raja's*, or considerable Heathen Sovereigns, dispersed thro' the whole Empire, among whom there are about 15 or 16 very rich and puissant, *viz.* *Rana*, who was formerly the Emperor of the *Raja's*, and is said to be descended of King *Porus*; *Jessoigne* and *Jessomseigne*, who are so great and Powerful, that if they should combine together, they would hold the *Mogul* Tack, being each of them able in a very short time to raise and bring into the Field 25000 Horse, better Troops than the *Mogul's*. These Chavaliers are called *Ragipouts*, or the Children of the *Raja's*. They are Sword-men from Father to Son, for the *Raja's* allot them Lands on Condition to be always ready to appear on Horse-back whenever they command. They will endure much Hardship, and want nothing to make them good Soldiers, but good Discipline and Order.

The *Balouches*, *Augans*, and *Patans* independent People.

Rana's very potent.

The *Mogul's* Religion and Court.

The present *Mogul* is a *Mahometan*, not of the Sect of the *Chiais*, the Followers of *Haly*, as the *Persians* are, who make up the greatest part of his Court, but a Follower of *Osman*, as the *Turks* are. He is a Stranger, being of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who headed those *Moguls*, who in 1401. over-run and conquer'd *India*; so that he is in a Country full of Enemies, because for one *Mogul* or *Mahometan*, there is 100 Gentiles or Heathens, which obligeth him to entertain purely for his Defence, as well against these Domestick Enemies, as against the *Persians* and *Usbecks* his Neighbours, very great Armies, both in time of Peace and War, as well about his Person as in the Field, which much exhaust his Treasure, by the vast Charge he is at to maintain them.

The *Raja's* employed in his Army.

The chief *Raja's* employ'd by him are *Jessoigne* and *Jessomseigne*, with some others, to whom he allows very great Pensions, to have them always ready with a certain Number of *Ragipouts*. These *Raja's* are obliged, like the *Omrah's*, to keep Guard about him, but without the Fortress in their Tents, and he useth them to keep the other *Raja's* in Order, as well as to oppose the *Persians*, *Patans*, and Governours of Provinces, when they rise against them. The *Mogul* also entertains some Strangers for the same Reasons.

His Militia of Strangers.

Besides these he hath Militia, both Cavalry and Infantry made up of Strangers only. The chief Officers of the Cavalry are the *Omrahs*, who are but Adventurers and Strangers of all sorts of Nations, which draw one another to this Court for Preferments, Men of mean Descent, some of them Slaves, and most of them without Instruction, whom the *Mogul* raises and degrades as he pleaseth, and if they hold their Places for Life, he seizes upon their Estates, when they die, allowing their Widows and Children only some small Pension.

The Commands of the *Omrahs*.

Among these *Omrahs* some are *Hazary*, i. e. Lords of 1000, other *Dou-Hazary*, i. e. Lords of 2000, others *Penge*, *Hecht* and *Deh-Hazary*, i. e. Lords of 5, 7, or 10000. The Command of *Devaz-Deh-Hazary*, i. e. 12000, is thought so considerable, that the King's Son has accepted this Honour. Their Pay is more or less in Proportion to the Numbers of Horses, not Horsemen, who in those hot Countries are hardly thought compleat without their Led-Horse. The Number of Horse-men under those *Omrahs* is not according to their Names, but as the King limits them, which is many times not a Quarter of what their Names import.

Their Pay.

Their Pay is sometimes by Lands appointed them for that End, and sometimes out of the King's Treasure, and is generally very considerable; but they are most of them poor and in Debt, not from their ill Husbandry, but by the Presents they are forced Yearly to make to their King. The Number of these *Omrahs* is very great; for besides those that are always in the Field, there are seldom less than 23 or 30 about the King at his Court. These are called the Pillars of the Empire, who are entrusted with the Governments and principal Offices both of the Court and Army, and keep up the Grandeur of the Court, never going abroad but richly deck'd, sometimes riding on Elephants, and sometimes on Horse-back, and sometimes they are carry'd in a *Palely*, or Chair, being attended with a good Number of Horse-men and many Foot-men, who march before to make way, drive away the Flies, wing off the Dust with Peacocks Tails, and carry Water for drink, or their Books of Accounts. All the *Omrahs* about Court are obliged to go and salute the King twice a Day, *viz.* about 10 or 11 a Clock in the Morning, when he renders Justice, and at Six at Night, to keep Guard once a Week in the Castle for 24 Hours, and to follow the King on Horse-back whithersoever he marcheth in any Weather, none being exempted, unless upon the Account of Sickness, or Age, or some special Business.

Their Grandeur.

The *Mansebdars* are the next Officers at Court to the *Omrahs*, and very little inferior to them. They acknowledge none for their Head but the King, and are obliged to almost all the Services of the *Omrahs* about him. They have certain Horses under their Command, but no Horse-men, and their Pay is from 6 or 700 Roupies a Month. Their Number is not fix'd, but much exceeds the *Omrahs*, there being usually about the Court 2 or 300, besides what are in the Provinces and Armies.

The *Mansebdars* Office.

Rouzindars are also a sort of Chavaliers, but have their Pay by the Day, which is indeed sometimes greater than the *Mansebdars*, but not so honourable; but then they are obliged to take the Tapestry, and other Houshold-Stuff that have been used in the King's Palace for it, at a Price not very reasonable. Their Number is very great, for they execute all the meaner Offices at Court, of Clerks, Under-Clerks, Signet-men, &c.

Rouzindars.

Simple Chavaliers are such as are under the *Omrahs*, and the most considerable of them, are such as have 2 Horses, mark'd on the Legs with the Marks of the *Omrah*. Their Pay is not fixed, but depends upon the Generosity of the *Omrahs*, but the Pay which the *Mogul* allows is 25 *Roupies* a Month. The Pay of the Foot is the least, and their Musketeers are pitiful Men, and cannot discharge their Musket, unless upon a Prop, and then they are afraid of singeing their Beards, burning their Eyes, or that some *Dgen*, or evil Spirit should burst their Barrels. They have from 10 to 20 Roupies a Month, but the *English* and *Dutch*, who are better Gunners, have more. Their Artillery is of 2 Sorts: 1. The great and heavy of cast Brass, which is carried to all the Places where the King intends to reside any time. 2. The light, which consists of 50 or 60 Field-Pieces, all of Brass, mounted on a fine Chariot well painted, with a small Coffer behind and before for the Powder, drawn with 2 very fair Horses, and driven by a Coachman like a *Calache*, and adorn'd with little red Streamers. Some of this light Artillery is also mounted upon Camels, who carry a Man behind it to discharge it. This light Artillery is inseparable from the Person of the King, and marches before as soon as the King comes out of his Tent in the Morning to meet him at the Rendezvous, where they always give a Volley upon the King's Arrival. The Militia of the Field hath the same Officers and Artillery, as that about the King, only their Numbers are greater; for the Army which the *Mogul* is constrained to maintain perpetually in *Decan*, to bridle the potent King of *Golconda*, and to make War upon the King of *Visapour* and the *Raja's* that assist him, must consist of 25 or 30000 Horse. The Kingdom of *Cabout* has for its Guard ordinarily against the *Persians*, *Augans*, *Balouches*, and other Mountainers, 15000, and the Kingdom of *Kackmire* above 4000, and the Kingdom of *Bengal* many more, besides those that are maintain'd in War, and are kept up by the Governours for their Defence; so that all the Forces maintain'd by the *Mogul* about his Person, and in the Field, amount to 200000, and better, and all those are certainly paid every Month.

Chavaliers.

The Foot.

The Artillery.

Some on Camels.

The great Armies the *Mogul* is forced to maintain.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Commodities, which are brought as well out of the Dominions of the Great Mogul, *as out of the Kingdoms of* Golconda, Visapour *and other Parts of* India.

Silk of Bengal.

KAsembasar, a Village in the Kingdom of *Bengal*, sends abroad every Year 22000 Bales of Silk, every Bale being 100 Weight, which are bought up either by the *Dutch*, or Merchants of *Tartary* and *Moguliſtan*, to make up their Carpets, some all Silk, and others mix'd with Silver and Gold, which being for the most part made in the Province of *Guzurat*, are sold either at *Amadabat* or *Surat*. The Worsted-Carpets are made at *Vettapour*, 12 Lgs. from *Agra*; Sattins, some plain, other streaked with Gold; Taffata's of the same Fashion; Patoles, a very thin Silk-Suff, painted with all sorts of Flowers. The Raw-Silk of *Kasembasar* is yellowish as that of *Sicily* and *Persia* is, but they can whiten it with a Ley made of the Ashes of a Tree called *Adam*'s Fig-Tree, that it shall be like that of *Palestine*.

Worsted Carpets.

Calicuts, and painted.

In the Kingdom of *Golconda* are made the painted Calicuts, called *Chites* by the Merchants, but *Calmender* by the Natives; because they are painted with a Pencil. There are Chites made in *Moguliston*, but they are all printed, and nothing so fine or beautiful as the former: These serve for Coverlets of Beds, Table-Cloaths, Pillowbeers, Handkerchiefs, but especially for Wastcoats, both for Men and Women. The finest Calicut-Chites made at *Brampour*, are used all over *Asia*, for *Ormis*, or Womens Vails. The Basta's, or Calicuts painted Red, Blue and Black, are carried White to *Agra* and *Amadabas* to be dyed; some they dye like water'd Chamlets, which encreaseth their Price. The White Calicuts are woven in several Places of *Bengal* and *Moguliston*, and are carried to *Renoxsary* and *Baroche* to be whitened, because of the large Meadows and Plenty of Lemmons that grow thereabout, for they are never so White as they should be till they are dipt in Lemmon-Water. They are of 2 sorts, wide and narrow, but of various Lengths. Some Calicuts are made so fine, you can hardly feel them in your Hand, and the Thread when spun is scarce discernible. Cotton twisted and untwisted comes from the Provinces of *Brampour* and *Guzurat*; but the latter is seldom transported, unless it be to *Ormus*, *Balsara*, or the *Philippine* Isles.

The finest.

Cotton.

Indigo comes from several Parts of the *Mogul*'s Country, but differs in Quality. The best comes from the Territories of *Biana*, *Indoua* and *Corsa*, a Day or two's Journey from *Agra*. That which is made flat of this sort comes from *Sarqueste*, a Day's Journey from *Surat*. The Indigo which is made in *Golconda* is inferior in Goodness, as also that which is made up at *Baroche* and *Agra*, though this last is most sought for, because it is made up in half Balls. The worst sort is that made at *Bengal*, *Brampour* and *Amadabat*. It is made of an Herb much like our Hemp, which is sown every Year after the Rains. They cut it 3 times a Year, but the 1st Cutting makes the best Indigo, and 2d better than the 3d. 'Tis known by the Briskness of the Colour. When they have cut it, they cast it into Pits half full of Water, which they raise to the Brim with the Herb put into it, and then pound it about, till it becomes as thick as Mud. Then they let it settle for some Days, and afterwards drain the Water out of it, which done, they take it up in Baskets, and making it up flat at the Bottom and sharp at the Top, like an Egg, set in the Sun to dry.

Salt-Peter.

Great Store of Salt-Peter comes from *Agra* to *Patna*, but that which is refined is 3 times the Value of that which is not.

Cardamum.

Cardamum, which is the most excellent of all Spices, grows in the Territories of *Visapour*, and because there is no great Store of it where it grows, it is only made use of in *Asia*, at the Tables of the greatest Princes.

Ginger.

Ginger grows in the Dominions of the Great *Mogul*, and is brought in great Quantities from *Amadabat*, where it grows more than in any other Part of *Asia*; and 'tis hardly to be imagined how much is transported candied into Foreign Parts.

Pepper.

Pepper is of 2 sorts, the Small and the Great. The Small comes from *Bantam Asken*, and some other Parts of the East: It is seldom or never carried out of *Asia*, where it is spent in great Quantities, especially among the *Mahometans*, for there is double the Grains of this small Pepper in one Pound to what is in the Great, and besides, 'tis not so hot in the Mouth. The great Pepper comes from the Coasts of *Malabar*, and some from *Visapour*.

Nutmegs.

Nutmegs come from the *Moluccа* Illands, as also from the Illands of *Banda*, but the biggest grow in the Island of *Damme*: 'Tis observable of the Nutmeg-Tree 'tis never planted, but when the Nutmegs are ripe several Birds come from the Illands toward the South, and devour them whole, but are forced to throw them up again before they be digested, the Nutmeg then besmeared with a viscous Matter, falling to the Ground, takes Root and produces a Tree, which would never thrive if planted.

Cloves.

Cloves grow at *Amboyna*, *Ellias*, *Seram* and *Bouro*.

Cinnamon.

Cinnamon comes at present from the Island of *Ceilon*: The Tree that bears it is very like the Willow, and has 3 Barks. The 2 uppermost may be taken off, and is the best Cinnamon. The 3d must not be meddled with, because then the Tree will die, and therefore great Art must be used to take off the 2 uppermost, lest the 3d be hurt with the Knife. The *Hollanders* are at a great Charge in *Ceilon*, to gather their Cinnamon, because the King sends his Forces upon them, when they are gathering, to surprize them, and take it from them, so that they are forced to have a Guard upon their Work-men of 7 or 800 Men; and this makes Cinnamon dearer, and so much the more, because the *Dutch* have spoiled the Trade for it from the Countries of the *Raja's* about *Cochin*.

Cinnamon of Ceilon.

Drugs.

The Drugs brought to *Surat* from all Parts of the *Indies* are, Salt Armoniack, Borax, Gum-Lac, Gum-Lac wash'd, Gum Lac in Sticks of Wax, Saffron, Cummin white and black, Arlet, Frankincense, Myrrh, Gilet and Bolti, Cassia, Sugar candy, Asutinat, Anise-Seed gross and small, Oupelote, Cointre, Auzerout, Aloes Succotrine, Lignum Aloes, some in great other in large Pieces, Liquorice, Vez-Cabouli. Out of Gum-Lac the Natives extract that lively Scarlet Colour, with which they paint their Calicuts, and for that End 'tis carried into *Persia*. That which remains after the Colour is drawn out is only fit to make Seal-ing-Wax of, and the Women of *Surat* get their Livings by cleansing and colouring it for that Use.

Sealing-Wax.

Sugar.

Powder'd Sugar is brought in great Quantities from the Kingdom of *Bengal*, and there is a great Trade for it at *Ougeli*, *Patna*, *Daca*, and other Places. The People of *Bengal* say, that there is no Poison more dangerous than Sugar kept 30 Year. Loaf-Sugar is made at *Amadabat*, where they have the perfect Art of refining it.

Opium.

Opium comes from *Brampour*, where Tobacco also grows in such Quantities, that the Inhabitants, having no Vent for it, let it rot upon the Ground.

Diamonds.

Diamonds, which is the most precious of all Stones, are found partly in Mines, partly in Rivers.

Diamond-Mines at Raolconda.

At *Raolconda*, a Town 5 Lgs. distant from *Golconda*, and 8 or 9 from *Visapour*, in the Province of *Camatica*, is a Diamond-Mine discovered not above 200 Years ago. In it are found the cleanest Stones, with the whitest Water; but being forced to fetch them out of the Rocks with a great Iron-Leaver, and many Blows, they often flaw the Diamonds, and make them look like Chrystal, and this is the Reason there are so many soft Stones found in this Mine, though they make a great Shew. If a Stone be clean, they give it only a Turn or two upon the Wheel, that it may lose as little as possible of the Weight; but if it have any Flaws, Points, or black Specks, they cut it into Fossets and work the Flaw into a Ridge to hide it. The Trade at the Mines is free and just, and transacted without any Talking on either side, the Buyer and Seller expressing themselves by taking each other by the Hands,

Soft and flawed Stones.

and ſo in the ſame Place where there are many People, a Parcel of Goods ſhall be ſold 7 or 8 times, and no Man know it.

Coulour. At *Gani* or *Coulour*, 7 Days Journey from *Golconda*, Eaſtward, is another Diamond-Mine. It lies between the Town and a Mountain, and the nearer they dig to the Mountain, the larger Stones they find, but there is none at the Top. This Mine was found not above 100 Years ago by a Country-man, who digging his Ground to ſow Millet, found a large Diamond of 25 Carats Weight. Upon this the rich Men in the Town fell to digging in the Place, and found, as they do ſtill, bigger Stones than in any other Mine, *viz.* Some above 40 Carats, and one of 900, which *Margimola* preſented to *Aureng-Zeb*; but the Miſchief of theſe Stones is, they partake of the Quality of the Soil, and are few of them clean, but ſome are black, others red, and others green and yellow.

The biggeſt Stones.

Soumelpour. Near *Soumelpour* in the Kingdom of *Bengal*, is a River called *Gouel*, where there are Diamonds found, mix'd with the Sand. The Way from *Agra* to this Town lies through *Halabas*, *Banarous* and *Saſeron*, from whence you paſs by the Fortreſs of *Rodas*, which is one of the ſtrongeſt Places of all *Aſia*, being ſeated upon a Mountain fortified with 6 Baſtions, 27 Pieces of Cannon, and 3 Moats full of Water, in which are good Fiſh, to *Soumelpour*, which is a great Town, but the Houſes are built of Earth, covered with Branches of Coco-Trees. The Road from the Fort lies through dangerous Woods, becauſe much peſter'd with Robbers. The *Raja* in whoſe Juriſdiction it is lives half a Lg. from the Town, in Tents, ſet upon a fair riſing Ground, at the Foot whereof runs the River *Gouel*, where Diamonds are found. This River deſcends from the Southern Mountains, and being filled with the great Rains, brings down in *December* vaſt Quantities of Sand, which the People in great Multitudes ſearch for 50 Lgs. together, and find all thoſe Points, which are called Natural Points, in it, but ſeldom find any large Stone.

The Way to it from Agra.

Gouel, a River.

Borneo, an Iſland. In the Iſland of *Borneo*, which is the largeſt Iſland in the World, there is another River, called *Succadan*, in the Sand whereof they find Diamonds, as hard as any in the other Mines; but the Queen of the Iſland will permit none to be carried out of it, ſo that all that come from thence are convey'd out by Stealth. In this Iſland it is remarkable, that the Queen, and not the King, has the Sovereign Command, as have alſo the inferior Women the Rule over the Men; for the People are ſo curious always to have a lawful Heir upon the Throne, that the Husband not being certain, that the Children he has by his Wife are his own, but the Wife being always certain, that the Children ſhe bears are her's, they rather chuſe to be governed by a Woman, to whom they give the Title of Queen, her Husband being only her Subject, and having no Power, but what ſhe permits him. At the Mine of *Raolconda*, they weigh by *Mangelins*, which are each a Carat and 3 Quarters, and pay in new Pagods, as they do alſo at *Coulour*. At the Mine of *Soumelpour* in *Bengal* they weigh by *Rab's*, which are each 7 Eighths of a Carat, and pay in Roupies. The Roads to the Mines, though ſome fabulous Relations have made them very dangerous, full of Tigers, Lions and cruel People, are not only free from all wild Beaſts, but the People are very loving and courteous. The Price of Diamonds is thus to be known: If it be a thick Stone, well ſquar'd, and have all its Corners, and the Water be white and lively, without Specks or Flaw, ſuch a Stone is worth 150 Livers, or 10*l.* 15*s.* Sterling; and of the ſame Value it is if cut in Facets, which they call a Roſe-Diamond, if it be a fair Breadth, and of the ſame Perfection; and as a Stone weighs more Carats, it riſeth in Price. Imperfect Diamonds are not above half the Value as perfect.

The Queen rules.

A Carat is 4 Grains Troy.

The Way of Trading at the Diamond-Mines

The biggeſt Diamonds in the World. The 2 biggeſt Diamonds in the World, for cut Stones, belong, the one to the *Mogul*, which weighs 279, and and 9 16th Carats, and the other to the Duke of *Tuſcany*, which weigh 139 Carats, both clean and well-ſhaped. The Miners call a Diamond *Iri*, and the *Turks*, *Perſians*, and *Arabians*, Almas.

Coloured Stones where found. There are but 2 Places in all the Eaſt, where coloured Stones are found, and they are in the Kingdom of *Pegu*, and Iſland of *Ceilon*. The 1ſt is a Mountain 12 Days Journey, or thereabouts, from *Sireri*, towards the N. E. It is called *Capelan*: In this Mine are found great Quantities of Rubies, and *Eſpinels*, or Mothers of Rubies, yellow Topazes, blue and white Saphires, Jacinths, Amethyſts, and other Stones of different Colours. Among theſe Stones which are hard, other Stones are found of different Colours, but being ſoft they are of no Eſteem. All theſe ſort of Stones the Natives call Rubies, and they are the only Commodity of the Country, which makes it very poor. From *Ava*, which is the chief Port of *Pegu*, you muſt go by Water to *Sireri*, becauſe the Roads by Land are almoſt unpaſſable, by reaſon of the Lions, Tigers and Elephants, which abound in the adjoining Woods. The King of *Pegu* keeps all the choice Stones for himſelf and Subjects, and ſuffers few of them more than 3 Carats Weight, and clean, to be exported. Rubies are ſold by *Rab's*, and the Payment is made for them in Pagods: A Ruby of above 6 *Rab's* Weight is almoſt invaluable. There are ſome Rubies, but moſt of them are *Ballas* Rubies, and abundance of Baſtard Rubies, Saphires, and Topazes found in the Mountains that run along from *Pegu* to the Kingdom of *Cambaya*.

Rubies, how ſold, and at what Value.

The other Place, where Rubies are found, is a River in the Iſland of *Ceilon*, which deſcends from certain high Mountains in the Middle of the Iſland: It ſwells very high when the Rains fall, and when it becomes low again, the People make it their Buſineſs to ſearch among the Sands for Rubies, Saphires and Topazes. All the Stones that are found in this River are generally fairer and clearer than thoſe in *Pegu*. In *Hungary* is a Mine of Opals, a Stone no where found in the whole World, but there. Turquoiſes are of 2 Sorts, *viz.* the Old Rock and the New, and are only found in *Perſia*: The Old Rock lies near a great Town called *Micabourg*, and is reſerved only for the King's Uſe, to adorn Hilts of Swords, Knives and Daggers, inſtead of enamelling. The New Rock is of a pale blue, inclining to white and little eſteem'd.

Opals where found.

Turquoiſes.

Emeralds. Emeralds, though ſaid to be Oriental, are not found in any Part of the Eaſtern Continent, but are brought from *Peru* to the *Philippine* Iſlands, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. The Fiſhery for Pearls is in divers Places, as in the *Perſian* Gulf, round about the Iſland of *Bakren*, it belongs to the King of *Perſia*, who has a Fort there, and in it a Garriſon of 300 Men. Every one that fiſhes here pays to the King 5 Abaſſi's, whether he gets any thing or no, and the Merchants pay at a certain Rate for every 1000 of Oiſters.

Pearl-Fiſhing in the Perſian Gulf.

There is a Pearl-Fiſhery likewiſe upon the Coaſts of *Arabia Felix*, right againſt *Bakren*, near the City of *Catifa*, which, together with all the Country, is under the Juriſdiction of an *Arabian* Prince. The Pearls that are taken here, are ſold to the *Indians*, who will give a good Price for all, as well the uneven as round ones. Over all *Aſia* they chuſe ſuch as are of a yellowiſh Water, inclining to white, before the pure white, becauſe they ſay, they will never change Colour, as the white will, both by Time and conſtant Wearing. There is a wondrous Pearl in the Poſſeſſion of *Iman-beſt*, Prince of *Maſcate*, which is the beſt in the World, not ſo much for its Bigneſs, for it weighs not above 12 Carats and one 16th, nor for its perfect Roundneſs, but for its tranſparent Clearneſs, for you may ſee almoſt through it. The Great *Mogul*, by a *Banian*, offered 40000 Crowns for it, but it would not be accepted. There is another Fiſhery for Pearls in the Sea, that waſhes the Walls of *Manar*, in the Iſland of *Ceilon*: For their Roundneſs and Water, they are the Faireſt that are found, but rarely weigh above 3 or 4 Carats. There are excellent Pearls of a very good Water, and large, found on the Coaſt of *Japan*, but are rarely fiſhed for, becauſe Jewels are of no Eſteem among the Inhabitants. In the *Weſt-Indies* are divers Places for Pearl-fiſhing, *viz.* All along the Iſland of *Cubagna*, but the Pearls are ſmall, ſeldom weighing above 5 Carats: In the Iſland of *Margerita*, a Lg. from *Cubagna*, but a larger Iſland, the Pearls are not found here ſo plentifully, but are of an excellent Water, and very big, ſome weighing 55 Carats: *Camogete*, near the Continent, *Rio de la Hachia*, and *S. Martha*, produce weighty Pearls, but ill-ſhaped, and inclining to a Lead-colour. *Scotch* Pearl and *Bavarian*, tho' a Neck-Lace of them is of Value, yet they are not to be compared with the Eaſtern or Weſt *Indian* Pearl. Theſe ſorts of Pearl do all grow in an Oiſter, like Eggs in the Belly of a Pullet, and there are many in ſome, but none in many. They fiſh in the Eaſtern Seas twice a Year, the 1ſt time in *March* and *April*, and the 2d time in *Aug.* and *Sept.* and the Fairs are kept in *June* and *Nov.* Before they fiſh in any Place, they try beforehand, whether it will turn to any Account, by ſending 7 or 8 Barks, which are

The biggeſt Pearl in the World.

Pearl is bred in Oiſters.

to

to bring them each 1000 of Oisters, which they open, and if the Oisters *per* 1000 yield 5 Fano's, or above, as some will yield 7, then they know the Fishing will turn to an Account. They fish in 12 Fathom Water, and 5 or 6 Lgs. off at Sea: They are guarded with some small Men of War to defend them from the *Malabars*, to which every Diver pays 8 Piasters for their Attendance. The more Rain falls, the more profitable the Fishery happens to be.

Coral-fishing, where. Coral, though of little Esteem in *Europe*, yet is much valued in the other 3 Parts of the World. There are 3 Places where they fish for it upon the Coasts of *Sardinia*, viz. *Anguerrel*, *Boza*, and the Island of St. *Peter*. On the Coasts of *France* also they fish for it, near the Bastion of *France* and *Tabarque*, and on the Coast of *Sicily*, near *Trepano*; but the Coral is small and ill colour'd. Near *Cape de Quiers*, on the Coast of *Catalonia*, the Coral is large, and of an excellent Colour, but the Branches are short. At *Majorca* and *Corsica* there is a Fishery for it. These Places are all in the *Mediterranean* Sea, for there is none at all in the main Ocean. Some think that Coral is soft in the Sea, but 'tis really hard, though 'tis true, that in certain Months in the Year, there is a Milky Substance which issues from it, and if it falls upon any thing produces Coral, and there are certain Worms in the Seas that eat it. They fish for Coral from the Beginning of *April* to the End of *July*, but never above 40 Miles from Land, and that in such swift Barks, that no Gallies can overtake them, for the Pirates lay wait for them. In *Japan* they value nothing so much as a good Grain of Coral, wherewith they pull the String that shuts their Purses, and in this they seek to excel one another; so that a Piece of Coral as big as an Egg, fair and clean without any Flaw, will produce as much as a Man can in reason ask for it. The *Portuguese* have sold such Pieces for 20000 Crowns. All over *Asia*, and especially in the Northern Parts of the *Mogul*'s Dominions, and all along the Mountains, as you go to the Kingdom of *Assen* and *Boutan*, the meaner sort of People wear it for Bracelets and Neck-Laces.

Time to fish for it.

Amber. Yellow Amber is only found upon the Coast of *Prussia*, in the *Baltick* Sea, for the Sea throws it upon the Sand, when certain Winds blow. The Elector of *Brandenburg* farms it out for 20, and sometimes for 22000 Crowns a Year, and the Farmers keep a continual Guard on both Sides of the Sea, that it be not stole. It is nothing else but a certain Congelation made in the Sea like Gum; for sometimes Flies and Gnats are congealed in it. In *China* 'tis a Custom for the great Lords at their Feasts, for Grandeur and Magnificence, to set 3 or 4 several sorts of perfuming Pots on the Table, and to throw into every one of them a vast Quantity of Amber, and the bigger the Pieces, the more Magnificent is the Entertainment accounted. This Waste of Amber makes it the best Commodity that can be carried into *China*, but the *Hollanders* have engrossed it.

Amber-grease. As for Amber-grease, there is no Man in the World knows what it is, or where, or how it is produced. It is most probable that it must be in the Eastern Sea, tho' some has been found on the Coasts of *England*, and other Nations of *Europe*; the greatest Quantity of it is found upon the Coast of *Melinda*, at the Mouth of the River *Rio-de-Sena*. A *Portugal* sailing from *Goa* to the *Manilles*, after he had passed the Streights of *Malacca*, found a Piece of 33 Pound Weight, and a *Middleburgher* a Piece of 42 Pound upon the Coast of the Island of S. *Maurice*.

Musk, what it is, and whence it comes. The best Sort and greatest Quantity of Musk comes from the Kingdom of *Boutan*, and from thence it is brought to *Patna*, the chief City of *Bengal*, where the Natives truck it away with the Merchants for Coral, yellow Amber, and other Commodities, rather than Gold or Silver. It grows in a Bladder on the Belly of a certain Creature, between the Genitals and Navel, which the People, who sell it, cut off after it is killed. It looks like clotted Blood when 'tis new cut off: None of these Creatures have above one Bladder, which is not bigger than an Hen's Egg, and will not yield above half an Ounce of Musk, and sometimes 3 or 4 will not yield an Ounce. The Scent of the Beast is so strong, that it makes one's Head ach to come near it: The Creatures must certainly be very numerous, considering the great Quantity of Musk that is to be sold.

Bezoar, what it is. Bezoar comes from a Province of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, toward the North-East: It is found in the Paunch of a wild Goat, which browzes upon a certain Shrub, and having eaten the Buds, or Tops of the Boughs, the Bezoar engenders of them in the Maw of the Goat, and is of divers Shapes, according to the Form of the Bud. The Natives by feeling on the Belly of the Goat, know how many Stones he has within him. The Excellency of the Bezoar is in the Bigness, although the Small has the same Virtue with the Larger, for if 5 or 6 Stones weigh an Ounce, they are worth no more than 15 or 18 Franks, but if one Stone weighs an Ounce, 'tis worth 100 Franks, and one of 4 Ounces and half was sold for 200 Livres. In what Part of the Body the Bezoar is bred, none can tell. As well in the East as West there are great Quantities of Bezoar that breed in Cows, and of a great Bigness, *viz.* 17 or 18 Ounces, but they are little esteem'd, 6 Grains of the former working more powerfully than 30 of this. The Bezoar which breeds in Apes is so strong, that 2 Grains will work as powerfully as 6 Grains of Goats Bezoar, but it is very scarce, as being only found in the Apes of the Island of *Macassar*: The Scarcity as well as Strength makes it dear, so that a Piece as big as a Nut is worth 100 Crowns.

Bezoar in Cows and Apes.

The Porcupine-Stone. The Porcupine-Stone, which is bred in the Head of that Creature, is more precious than Bezoar against Poison. If it be steep'd in Water a Quarter of an Hour, it makes the Water as bitter as possible. There is another Stone taken out of the Belly of the same Creature, as good as the other, but being steep'd in Water, it loseth nothing of its Weight or Bulk, as the other does.

The Serpent-Stone. The Serpent-Stone, which is about the Bigness of a Double, is almost Oval, thick in the Middle and thin about the Sides; the *Indians* say, 'tis bred in the Head of certain Serpents, but 'tis more probable, 'tis a Composition of certain Drugs, because they are to be had of the *Bramines* only; but however it be, it is of excellent Virtue to drive away Venom from such as are bitten by venomous Beasts, for being laid to the Wound, 'twill not come off till it has drawn out all the Poison, and being steep'd in Womens or Cows Milk it recovers its former Virtue, making the Milk like Corruption. There is another Stone, called the Serpent-Stone, with the Hood, because that kind of Serpent has an Hood hanging down behind the Head, in which this Stone is found: It is many times as big as a Pullet's Egg, but is not found in any less than 2 Foot long. This Stone being rubb'd against another Stone, yields a Slime, which being drank in Water by the Person that is poison'd, powerfully expels the Venom. These Serpents are found only on the Coasts of *Melinda*, but the Stones are bought of the *Portuguese* Mariners and Soldiers that come from *Mozambique*.

Gold in *Japan* and *China*. Gold is found in the greatest Quantities in the Islands of *Japan*, which lie Eastward of *China*, tho' some think 'tis brought from *Formosa* thither. The *Chineses* also exchange a sort of Gold produced in their Country for Silver, Weight for Weight, because they having no Silver-Mines, prefer it before Gold; but it is the coarsest of all the Gold in *Asia*. In the Island of *Celebes*, or *Maccassar*, there is found Gold among the Sand of their Rivers; and in *Achen*, or *Sumatra*, after the Rainy Season, when the Torrents are wasted, they find Flints wash'd down from the Mountains with Veins of Gold in them, and the Inhabitants of the West side of the same Isle bring the *Dutch*, when they lade their Pepper, great store of Gold, but as bad, if not worse, than their *China* Gold. Towards *Thibet*, which is the ancient *Caucasus*, in the Territories of a *Raja*, beyond the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, there are 3 Mountains close one by another, one of which produces excellent Gold, the other Granats, and the 3d *Lapis Lazuli*. There is also Gold which comes from *Tipra*, but is as coarse as the *Chinese* Gold, and these are all the Places in *Asia* that yield Gold. In *Africa* Gold is more plentiful than in *Asia*. Out of the Empire of *Monomotapa*, which extends it self as far as *Prester John*'s Country, comes the finest and purest Gold of all *Africa*, where they dig it with Ease out of the Earth, not being constrained to dig above 2 or 3 Foot deep; and in some Places, not inhabited for want of Water, the People find Lumps of Gold upon the Surface of the Earth, of an Ounce Weight, or more. The King of the *Abyssins* sent the *Mogul* a natural Tree, all of Gold, 2 Foot 4 Inches high, and 6 Inches about in the Stock, with 10 or 12 Branches, some half a Foot long and an Inch about, and some smaller. In some Branches appeared Bunches like Buds, and the

Rock-Crystal, Granats, Lapis Lazuli.

Fine Gold plentiful in *Africa*.

Roots were thick and ſhort. The Province where the River *Sene* has its Head, called *Monkaran*, has a King of its own, and is very healthy. There the People find great ſtore of Duſt-Gold in the Rivers that fall into the *Sene*, but is much coarſer than the other. The *Cafres* alſo of the other Provinces bring great ſtore of Gold yearly to *Sofala* and *Chepon-Goura*, which are under the *Portugueſe*, to buy ſuch Commodities as they want, when the Ships come. Some Years there are *Cafres* that come from the Cape of *Good Hope* to *Sofala*, which is 4 Months Travel, and bring very fine Gold in Pieces, like that of *Monomotapa*, which they ſay they find in the Mountains, by digging 10 or 12 Foot deep. They alſo bring great Quantities of Elephants Teeth, for they abound ſo with Elephants, that the Palizadoes of their Fortreſſes and Pales of their Parks are all made of Elephants Teeth. Their uſual Diet is Elephants Fleſh. In the Kingdom of *Beroe* grows a Root of a yellow Colour, very bitter, and about an Inch thick, which cures all ſorts of Fevers by Vomiting. Elephants Teeth.

There are no Silver-Mines in *Aſia*, unleſs it be in *Japan*; but a few Years ſince there have been diſcovered plentiful Mines of Tin at *Delegora*, *Sangora*, *Bordelen* and *Bata*, which have ſpoil'd the Trade of the *Engliſh* thither for that Commodity. Tin found in *Aſia*.

CHAP. VII.

Of the ſeveral Religions practiſed in the East-Indies, *and Things relating to them.*

Chriſtianity in the *Indies*

CHriſtianity for many Ages had been the Religion of the *Indians*, ſaving that there ſtill remain'd a conſiderable Body of the People, who ſtuck to their old Idolatry; for it could not be ſuppoſed, that ſuch vaſt Tracts of Land, under divers Kings, and lying in Places almoſt inacceſſible, could all be converted to Chriſtianity. *Mahometaniſm* had over-ſpread the greateſt part of *Aſia*, before it reach'd the *Indies*; and tho' it was uncertain who was the true Follower of *Mahomet*, *Ali*, or *Oſman*, yet ſo ſucceſsful was that falſe Religion, as to engage the *Perſians* to be Followers of the one, *viz.* *Ali*, calling themſelves *Chiais*, and the *Turks* of the other, *viz.* *Oſman*, calling themſelves *Sunni's* or *Oſmanlys*. When it firſt appeared in the *Indies*, there was ſuch an Exceſs of Pride and Vice, and ſo great a Want of Piety and Devotion among the Chriſtians, that 'twas equal almoſt to them what Religion they embraced, who practiſed none; and the Idolaters were an effeminate People, able to make no Reſiſtance; ſo that it was eaſie for the *Mahometans* to ſubdue both the one and the other by Force of Arms, and as eaſie to wean or fright them from their Religion, which they did ſo advantageouſly, that many, as well Chriſtians as Idolaters, embraced *Mahometaniſm*, and there appears no Footſteps of Chriſtianity, but *Mahometaniſm* and Idolatry muſt be reckoned all the Religions of the *Indies*. The Great *Mogul*, with his Court, follow the Sect of the *Sunni's*, the King of *Golconda* that of the *Chiais*.

Mahometaniſm, overſpreads the *Indies*.

In the King of *Viſapour's* Territories, the *Sunni's* and *Chiais* are mingled together, which may be ſaid alſo of the Court of the Great *Mogul*, becauſe of the great Numbers of *Perſians* that flock thither to ſerve in his Armies; but becauſe *Aureng-Zeb* teſtifies, above all things, an extraordinary Devotion for the Sect of the *Sunni's*, of which he is ſo zealous an Obſerver, that he ſurpaſſes all his Predeceſſors in outward Profeſſion, which was the Cloak under which he uſurped the Crown; for when the took Poſſeſſion of the Throne he gave it out, That he did it only out of a Deſign to cauſe the Law of *Mahomet* to be more ſtrictly obſerved, which had been very much neglected in the Reign of *Cha-Jehan*, his Father, and *Jehan-guir*, his Grandfather; and to ſhew himſelf the more zealous for the Law, he turn'd *Faquir*, or *Dervis*, i. e. poor Voluntier, and under that falſe Pretence to Piety he cunningly made way to the Empire; they are contented to conceal their Belief, and ſubmit to his Orders, as if they were of his Religion; for as he will not permit them to keep holy the Day conſecrated to the Memory of *Hoſen* and *Heuſſin*, the 2 Sons of *Hali*, who were put to Death by the *Sunni's*, ſo to pleaſe him they are willing enough to conform. *Routcoub-Cha*, the preſent King of *Golconda*, is very zealous in maintaining the Law of the *Chiais*, becauſe the Grandees of his Court are almoſt all *Perſians*.

The greateſt Zealots of *Mahometaniſm* among the *Indians* are the *Faquirs*, of which they reckon that there are 800000, which is a prodigious Number; they are all of them Vagabonds and lazy Drones, that dazzle the Eyes of the People with a falſe Zeal, and make them believe that whatever comes out of their Mouths is an Oracle. There are ſeveral ſorts of *Mahometan Faquirs*: One ſort go almoſt naked, like the idolatrous *Faquirs*, having no certain Abode, but giving themſelves up to all manner of Uncleanneſs. There is another ſort, whoſe Garments are made up of Patches of all Colours, and reach half way their Leg; they go in Troops, and have a Superior of their Gang, whoſe Garment is generally poorer, and more patch'd than all the Reſt, and draws after him a great Chain tied to his Leg, 2 Ells long; and when he ſays his Prayers, he doth it with a loud Voice, and rattling his Chain, putting on ſuch an affected Gravity all the while, as draws the Veneration of the People, and in the mean time the People prepare a Dinner for him and his Company. In the Place where he makes his Stand, his Diſciples ſpread Carpets for him to ſit down on to give Audience, and then go up and down the Country publiſhing the Vertues of their Maſter, what Favours he receives from God, who imparts his greateſt Secrets to him, and gives him Power to relieve Perſons in Affliction by his Counſel. The People who give Credit to him, and believe him to be an holy Man, come to conſult him with profound Devotion, and ſitting down by him propound their Queſtions, which he anſwers, as he pretends, by a Prophetick Spirit; and chiefly he boaſts to teach barren Women to have Children, and to be beloved of whom they pleaſe. He calls his Diſciples together (which are ſometimes 200) with an Horn or Drum, and in his Travels they fix a Standard where he repoſes. The 3d ſort of *Faquirs* are thoſe that being born of poor Parents, and deſirous to underſtand their Law, and become *Moullahs*, or Doctors of it, retire to the Moſques, where they live on the Alms given them, and employ all their Time in reading the *Alcoran*, which they get by heart; and if they can but acquire beſides the Knowledge of ſome natural Things, and an exemplary Life, they come to be Chief of the Moſques, and obtain the Dignity of *Moullahs*, and Judges of the Law. Theſe *Faquirs* not only have Wives, but out of their Zeal to imitate *Mahomet*, have 3 or 4, thinking they do God great Service in begetting many Children to be Followers of their Law.

The *Mahometan Faquirs*, of 3 ſorts.

The Idolaters among the *Indians* are ſo numerous, that they are reckoned 5 or 6 to one *Mahometan*, which might make it miraculous that they ſubmit to the *Mahometan* Princes, were it not that they are at ſuch Enmity among themſelves, their Superſtition having introduced ſuch a Diverſity of Opinions and Cuſtoms, that they can never agree one with another. An Idolater will not eat Bread nor drink Water in the Houſe of any one that is not of his Caſte, tho' it be more noble and ſuperior to his own, unleſs it be with the *Bramins*, whoſe Houſes are open to all the World. Idolaters.

A Caſte among theſe Idolaters is much the ſame thing as a Tribe among the *Jews*; and tho' it be vulgarly believed, that there are 72 Caſtes, and ſome ſay 84, yet there are but 4 principal ones, from whom the reſt take their Original. Their Caſts or Tribes.

The firſt Caſte is that of the *Bramins*, who are the Succeſſors of the ancient *Brachmans*, or *Indian* Philoſophers, that ſtudied Aſtrology. They have ſtill ſome of their Books, which are very ancient, and in reading of which they ſpend all their Time, and are ſo ver- 1. The *Bramins*.

verſed in their Obſervations, that in foretelling the Eccliplſes of the Sun and Moon they will never fail a Minute. To preſerve this Knowledge they have a kind of Univerſity at *Benarez*, where their Doctors expound their Law, and they perform all their Exerciſes in Aſtrology; but becauſe they are too numerous to ſtudy all there, many are very ignorant and ſuperſtitious, and the moſt refined Wits among them are the greateſt Sorcerers.

2. *Raſpouts.* The 2d Caſte is the *Raſpouts*, or *Catry's*, *viz.* Warriors and Warlike People. Theſe are the only Idolatrous *Indians* that have any Courage to ſignalize themſelves in War. All the *Raja's* are of this Caſte. They are ſtill petty Kings, but 'twas their own Differences among themſelves that made them Tributary to the *Mogul*; but becauſe moſt of them are continually in his Service, they are ſufficiently recompenſed by the great Salaries they receive for the Tribute they pay. Theſe *Raja's* and the *Raſpouts* their Subjects, are the chiefeſt Supports of the *Mogul's* Dominions, and 'twas 2 of the greateſt of them, *Jeſeigne* add *Jeſſomſeigne*, that raiſed up *Aureng-Zeb* to his Throne; but the *Raſpouts* only at this Time are the Warriors, and that Horſe-men only, for the *Katri's* are degenerated into Merchants.

3. The *Banians*, or Bankers. The 3d Caſte are the *Banians*, or *Ouens*. They wholly addict themſelves to Trade, and are ſome of them *Sheraffs*, or Bankers, and others Broakers, who are employ'd between Merchant and Merchant for Buying and Selling. They are ſo ſubtle and nimble in Trade, that a *Jew* may be Apprentice to them. They accuſtom their Children betimes to flee Idleneſs, and ſo early teach them Arithmetick, that they will in their Age caſt up the moſt difficult Account without Pen or Counters. They live with their Fathers to be inſtructed in Trade, and do nothing but what they ſhew them. If any Man flie at them in the Heat of his Paſſion, they'll hear him patiently, without making any Reply, and parting coldly with him, not ſee him again for 3 or 4 Days, till they think his Paſſion is over. They never eat any thing that has Life, and will rather die themſelves, than kill the leaſt Animal or Vermin that crawls. They never fight nor go to War, nay, they will not ſo much as eat or drink in the Houſe of a *Raſpout*, becauſe they kill the Victuals they eat, all but Cows, which they never touch.

4. The *Charadis*, or true Soldiers. The 4th Caſte are the *Charado's*, or *Soudras*, who go to War, as well as the *Raſpouts*, but with this Difference, that the *Raſpouts* ſerve on Horſe-back, and the *Charado's* on Foot. Both of them account it an Honour to die in Battle, and moſt infamous to retreat in Fight, inſomuch, that a Wife, tho' ſhe loves her Husband never ſo well, will not receive him into her Houſe, who has this Mark of Cowardize upon him, till he has regained his Reputation.

5. The *Pauzecour*, or Handicrafts. The reſt of the Natives, which are not reckoned in the Number of theſe Caſtes, are called *Pauzecour*, and are ſuch as employ themſelves in Handicraft Trades. Theſe, in Imitation of the former, have ranged themſelves into ſeveral Bodies, like Caſtes or Tribes, and bring up their Children, and marry them only to their own Tribe. Thus the *Colis*, or Cotton-Dreſſers, are one Tride, the Bow-Makers and Fletchers another, and ſo of moſt Trades. Among all theſe Caſtes, the moſt mean and contemptible are the *Piriaves*, who are employ'd in taking off and carrying away the Skins of ſlain Beaſts, and ſome of them are Curriers; the *Alacor*, whoſe Employment is to clean Houſes, for which every Family pays them ſomething once a Month; for if a Perſon of Quality have never ſo many Servants, not one of them will ſweep a Room, but attend upon his own Office only, but the Slaves are to do any thing. Theſe Men make uſe of Aſſes to carry the Filth of the Houſes into the Fields, and therefore no *Indian* will touch that Animal. Theſe Men will eat all ſorts of Meat, prohibited or not prohibited, and will feed on the Leaving of all the other Caſtes.

Baragny, a Caſte of Gentiles. There is a Caſte of Gentiles in *India*, called *Baragny*, who damn the Yellow Colour, and put White on their Foreheads, contrary to the Cuſtoms of the other Caſtes, who have Red put there by the *Bramins*, to whom they preſent Rice and Cows, and when 'tis done they bowe their Heads thrice, and as many times lift up their join'd Hands to their Foreheads. All the Caſtes or Tribes, go to their Devotions at the ſame time, but adore what Idol they pleaſe, and if it be not in the Temple they go to, they carry it. They have an Order of Subordination among themſelves; the *Bramins* are firſt, the *Raſpouts* next, and then the *Courmi* and *Bamans*, and theſe Places they willingly yield to each other.

The Learning of the *Bramins*. The *Bramins* are the Doctors and Prieſts of the Law and apply themſelves chiefly to Theology and Philoſophy, but they underſtand alſo Aſtrology, Arithmetick and Phyſick, and ſometimes practiſe this laſt, but then they muſt pay a Tribute to their Caſte for a Licenſe. All the Gentiles reſpect them, and believe them in all Things, becauſe they have been told, that God ſent the 4 *Bets*, which are the Books of their Religion to them, of which they are the Keepers. Concerning their Adoration of Images, they ſay, *That they worſhip them not, but their Attention is always fix'd upon God; That they honour them only, becauſe they put them in mind of the Saint they repreſent; That the Ignorant believe, that many great Men (under whoſe Shape God hath made himſelf known) are Gods, but that for their part they believe no ſuch thing; and that if God hath pleaſed to act ſo, that it was only to facilitate the Salvation of Men, and to condeſcend to the Capacity and Humour of every Nation.*

Their Doctrine about the Adoration of Images.

The Idolatrous Kings of *Aſia*. The chief of the Idolatrous Kings of *Aſia* are, the King of *Aracan*, Kings of *Pegu*, *Siam* and *Cochin-China*. The King of *China*, ſince the *Tartars* have ſeized his Dominions, is neither *Mahometan* nor Idolater, but part of both. In the Iſlands, the Kings of *Japan*, *Ceilon*, and the petty Kings of the *Malucca's*, are Idolaters, as are alſo all the *Raja's*, as well in the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, as in the Neibouring Kingdom of *Viſapour* and *Golconda*, and the People in all thoſe 3 Kingdoms, as alſo in the Iſlands of *Achan*, *Java* and *Macaſſar*, tho' their Kings are *Mahometans*, are all themſelves Idolaters. One of the Kings of *Ceilon*, about 50 Years ago, became a Chriſtian, and was baptized by the Name of *John*; but as ſoon as it was known that he had embraced the Chriſtian Faith, the Princes and Prieſts of the Country ſet up another King in his Room.

The King of *Ceilon* depoſed for turning Chriſtian.

Tho' the Idolatrous *Indians* attribute to the Creatures, as Cows, Apes, and ſeveral Monſters, thoſe Divine Honours, which are only due to God, yet they acknowledge only one Infinite God, Almighty and only Wiſe, the Creator of Heaven and Earth, who fills all Things with his Preſence, whom they call *Permeſſar*, and repreſent by an Oval Figure, as the moſt Perfect. They have a Deity called *Ram*, to whom they give a wonderful Veneration, becauſe of the Miracles which they believe he wrought while he was upon Earth. They relate of this *Ram*, That he was the Son of *Deſeret*, a potent *Raja*, and the moſt Vertuous of all his Children, and therefore deſigned to be his Succeſſor, but his Mother being dead, his Father was prevailed with by a 2d Wife to baniſh him, his Wife and Brother *Lakeman*, that her Son might be his Succeſſor. Being thus driven from home, as they paſſed through a Wood, *Ram* purſuing a Bird, ſtray'd from them, and *Sita* his Wife ſent *Lakman* to find him; while *Sita* was thus left alone, *Rhevari*, another of their Idolatrous Gods, appears to *Sita* in the Form of a *Faquir*, or poor Man, and ſeizing on her, carried her away. *Ram* being return'd, and miſſing *Sita* his Wife, fell into a Swoon, but being recovered by his Brother, they went to ſearch for her, and not finding her, employed all Creatures to diſcover her, and *Harman* the Monkey found her out in *Rhevari's* Court in great Affliction, and gave an Account of it to *Ram*, who raiſing Forces, ravaged his Kingdom, took his Wife, and made *Rhevari* flie to the Mountains, where he ſpent his Days like a poor *Faquir*, in unſpeakable Sorrow, and wandering up and down poor, ſtript of all, and quite naked. From hence they deduce the Original of the *Faquirs*, for he found enough to follow him in a Courſe of Life, that gives them ſo much Liberty, and being honoured as Saints, they were zealous of ſuch a Life. Theſe *Faquirs* wander generally in Troops, every one having a Superior, as the *Mahometans* have, and becauſe they go quite naked Winter and Summer, and lie upon the hard Ground; when it is cold, the young *Faquirs*, and others moſt devout, go every Afternoon to ſeek for the Dung of Cows and other Creatures, to make them Fires, becauſe they fear that in burning Wood, they ſhall kill any living Animal, which is wont to breed there: Of this Dung they make large Fires, according to their Company, and all the *Faquirs* ſit round it, and when they grow ſleepy, they lay themſelves down upon the Aſhes ſpread abroad. As for the *Faquirs* that

Ram, an *Indian* God.

The Original of the Heathen *Faquirs*.

Their Fires of Cow-dung.

that do Penance, they alſo kindle a Fire on each ſide of them, becauſe otherwiſe they were not able to endure the Cold. The rich Idolaters count themſelves happy, and their Houſes to be filled with the Benedictions of Heaven, when they have any of theſe Religious *Faquirs* for their Gueſts; and they honour 'em the more, by how much they are the more Auſtere. The Crews of *Faquirs* many times join together to go in Pilgrimage to the principal Pagods, and publick Waſhings, upon certain Days in the Year in the River *Ganges*. Some of the moſt auſtere *Faquirs* live in little pitiful Huts, near the Pagods, where once in 24 Hours they have ſomething beſtowed upon them to eat for God's Sake. They generally build their Pagods under a certain Tree, called *a War*, or near it, which they have in great Veneration; the *Franks* call it the *Banian* Tree, and the *Portugueſe*, *Arbor de Rizes*, the Tree with Roots.

Their Penance.

Their Penance conſiſts in ſtrange and unnatural Poſtures of the Body, and long Faſts. Some carry their Arms a-croſs continually above their Heads, inſomuch, that they can't bring them down again; others will not ſuffer themſelves to ſleep for ſeveral Years together, and others faſt 8 or 10 Days ſucceſſively, with many other Hardſhips very grievous to Fleſh and Blood; and tho' they are ſtark naked, and Women commonly approach them, yea, will touch and kiſs their Privy-Parts, yet there appears no Carnal Motions, but rather they ſeem to be in an Extaſie.

The Doctrine of the *Bramins*.

The Doctrines which the *Bramins* teach, and are moſt firmly believed by theſe Idolaters, are, That every Man may be ſaved in his Religion and Sect, provided he exactly follow the Way which God hath ſet before him, and that he will be damned if he take another Courſe. They make no doubt but that their Religion is the very ſame which was eſtabliſhed by *Adam*, and preſerved by *Noah*: They believe an Heaven and Hell, but affirm, that none ſhall enter into either before the Day of Judgment. They ſay alſo, that no Body ought to find Fault with them for the Honour they ſhew to the Cow, for they prefer her before all other Animals, only becauſe ſhe furniſhes them with more Food by the Means of her Milk, than all the Reſt put together, and ſhe brings forth the Ox, which is ſo uſeful to the World, for he makes it ſubſiſt by his Labour, and feeds Men by his Pains.

The Honour they give the Cow.

Their Tranſmigration.

'Tis an Article of the Idolaters Faith, That the Souls of Men departing out of the Body, are immediately preſented to God, who according to the Lives they have led in the World, orders them another Body to inhabit; ſo that one and the ſame Perſon is born ſeveral times into the World, and muſt make many Tranſmigrations, but how many, they do not determine, according to the Doctrine of *Pythagoras*. The Souls of the wicked and vicious Perſons they hold, That God diſpoſeth into contemptible Beaſts, ſuch as Aſſes, Dogs, Cats, and the like: to do Penance for their Crimes in thoſe infamous Priſons; but they believe, that thoſe Souls that enter into Cows are happy, preſuming, that there is a Divinity in thoſe Creatures, for if a Man die with a Cow's Tail in his Hand, they ſay, 'tis enough to render him happy in another World; and if any Men in their Life-time are famous for their vertuous Deeds, they hold, that their Souls paſs into the Bodies of ſome potent *Raja's*, where they enjoy the Pleaſures of this Life, as the Reward of their good Works. Theſe Opinions of the Tranſmigrations of Souls make them cautious of killing any Creature whatſoever. for fear they ſhould be guilty of the Death of ſome of their Kindred or Friends, who are doing Penance in thoſe Bodies, and for this Reaſon ſome of them will never kindle a Fire, or light a Candle, for fear ſome Gnat or Butter-fly ſhould burn it ſelf thereat, and the Soul of ſome Man be diſlodged from the Body allotted it. In proſpect of ſaving living Creatures, they often ſollicit the *Mogul* Governours to forbid Fiſhing upon certain Feſtivals, and to procure a Prohibition, will give them Preſents; but above all, they labour moſt to hinder the killing of Cows, but can never attain it, becauſe the *Mahometans* will eat Fleſh, and that of the Cow is the beſt in the *Indies*. 'Tis alſo from this Opinion, that the *Faquirs* put them to ſuch horrible Penance, and that ſuch as are not able to endure ſuch Torments in this World, labour to ſupply the Defect by good Works as long as they live, and when they die, charge their Heirs in their Wills to give Alms to the *Bramins*, to the End that by the Power of their Prayers, their God may aſſign them the Body of ſome Noble Perſonage after their Death; and to facilitate this honourable Tranſmigration, ſuch as are Rich burn the Body of their Relations with Sandal-Wood and Lignum-Aloes mixed with the common Wood, hoping that by this Means their Souls will paſs into ſome great Lord in another Country. There are ſome alſo of them ſuch Fools, as to bury much Treaſure in their Life-time, eſpecially the rich Men in the Kingdom of *Aſen*, to the End, that if they ſhould be condemned to the Body of ſome poor miſerable Perſon, they might have wherewithal to ſupply their Neceſſities. Theſe are great Errors in theſe poor Idolaters, but it is impoſſible to convince them of 'em, becauſe they are ſo much wedded to their old Forms and Cuſtoms, that they will hear no Reaſon.

The Reaſon why they will kill no Creature.

The Reaſon of their ſtrange Penance and good Works.

The *Indian* Idolaters have a great Number of Temples, ſmall and great, which they call Pagods, where they pray to their Gods and make their Offerings; but the poor People, that live in Woods and Mountains, remote from Towns, are contented only with ſome Stone, on which they make a rude kind of Noiſe, and paint with a Vermilion Colour, which ſerves for the whole Neighbourhood to worſhip. The 4 moſt celebrated Pagods, are *Jagrenate*, *Banarous*, *Matura* and *Tripeti*. *Jagranate* is one of the Mouths of the *Ganges*, where is built the great Pagod, where the *Arch-Bramin*, or Chief-Prieſt, hath his Reſidence. The Idol which is worſhipped here is called *Reſora*. His Image is very magnificent, having 2 Diamonds for his Eyes, and another hanging about his Neck, the leaſt of which weigh about 40 Carats. About his Arms are hung Bracelets of Pearls, and ſometimes Rubies. It ſtands upon an Altar in the innermoſt part of the Pagod. The Revenues of this Pagod are ſufficient to feed 15 or 20000, and ſuch Numbers are often ſeen there, becauſe 'tis the greateſt Place of Devotion in all *India*, it be ſcituated upon the *Ganges*, whoſe Water theſe Idolaters believe to have a particular Quality to cleanſe them from their Sins. That which makes it ſo rich (for it maintains above 20000 Cows) is the vaſt Alms which is beſtowed by all that reſort thither, not as they will, but as the Chief-Prieſt taxes them, who has an Information of their Ability. Thus he collects vaſt Sums, of which he makes little or no Uſe himſelf, but gives them to feed the Poor and repair the Pagod. To the Pilgrims he gives Milk, Wheat, Butter and Rice daily, but to the Poor he gives it ready dreſſed. They boil the Rice in Earthen-Veſſels, and give a Pot to a certain Number, which a *Bramin* carrying to them, lets it fall before them, and it will break into as many Parts as the Company is. The Idol is covered with a great Mantle of Tiſſue of Gold or Silver, according to the Solemnity, that hangs down upon the Altar, and covers all but his Hands and Feet. At the Right Hand of this Idol ſits his Siſter *Sotora*, and on his Left ſtands his Brother *Bethadar*, both well clad, and before him ſtands *Remiri*, his Wife, all of maſſie Gold. On each ſide of this Pagod ſtands another much leſs, where the chief *Bramin*, and the other *Bramins* who officiate in the great Pagod reſide, and where the Pilgrims make their leſſer Offerings, which they have vow'd in Sickneſs, or for Succeſs in any Buſineſs. All the *Bramins* go with their Heads bare, and for the moſt part ſhaved, having no Cloaths but one Piece of Calicut, with one Half whereof they cover their Bodies, and the other part ſerves them inſtead of a Scarf. Near the Pagod is a Tomb of the Prophet *Cabir*, to whom they give great Veneration, and the Idols in it are encompaſſed with great Iron Bars, that none may touch them, but the *Bramins* appointed by the chief *Bramin*.

Next to that of *Jagrenate* is the famous Pagod at *Banarous*, a City ſeated alſo upon the *Ganges*. From the Gate of this Pagod to the River is a Deſcent all of Stone, and by it Lodgings, and other Rooms to dreſs Victuals for the *Bramins*, for they ſuffer none to touch their Victuals but themſelves, leſt it be defiled. Here the *Bramins* drive a great Trade in Bottling *Ganges* Water, which being ſeal'd by the Chief-Prieſt, they carry it up and down the Country to ſell, or preſent it to the Rich, who think it cleanſeth them of all their Sins, and drink it at their great Feaſts. The Body of this Pagod is made like a Croſs, as the other Pagods are, in the midſt is a Cupulo, raiſed very high like a Pyramid, and at the End of the 4 Parts a Tower, to which there is an Aſcent on the Out-ſide, and on the Sides ſeveral Niches and Balconies to take the Air, and round them are many leud Figures. Under the Duomo, in the middle of the Pagod, ſtands an Altar 8 Foot

Foot long, and 6 Foot broad, and 2 Steps before it, which is sometimes covered with rich Tapestry, and sometimes with Silk, Cloth of Gold or Silver, according to the Solemnity of the Feast. The Idols stand upon the Altar. The chief Image, which is made in Honour of *Banima-Dou*, a great and holy Person among them, whose Name they have often in their Mouths, is placed upright, 5 or 6 Foot high, but nothing is visible but his Head and Neck, all the rest being cover'd with a Robe that reaches to the Bottom of the Altar, His Neck is set out with some rich Chain, either of Gold, Rubies, Pearl or Emeralds. Upon the Right side of the Altar stands a *Chimera*, part Elephant, part Horse and part Mule, of massie Gold, called *Garou*, which they say is a Resemblance of the Beast on which he travell'd while he was upon Earth, to see whether the People did their Duty, and did no Wrong one to another. Upon the Left Hand of this Altar is another little Altar, where stands an Idol of black Marble, sitting cross Legg'd, about 2 Foot high. 'Tis called *Morli-Ram*, and was the Brother of him that stands upon the great Altar. This Idol alone stands stark naked. Under the Portal of this Pagod sits one of the principal *Bramins*, who marks all that have washed in the *Ganges* with a Yellow Colour between the Eyes, upon the Arms and Stomach, to shew that they are perfectly purified.

Near to this Pagod upon the Summer West stands a kind of College, built by *Raja Jesseigne* for the Education of the Youth of the better sort, under several *Bramins* their Masters. The *Raja's* send the young Princes their Children to be educated there. In it is a Pagod dedicated to a Goddess, called *Ram-Ram*, Sister of *Morli-Ram*. Upon her Right Hand she has a Child made like a *Cupid*, which they call the God *La-Kemin*, and in her Left Arm a little Girl, which they term the Goddess *Sita*. The Women, both Married and Maids, call this Goddess their Patroness, and flock thither mightily to invoke her. The Way of Worshipping it, is to fall on the Ground, and laying their Hands upon their Heads, prostrate themselves 3 times to it, and when this is done, they present the Idol with great store of Rice-Meal, Butter, Oil and Milk-Meats. The Goddess *Ram-Ram* has 2 Diamonds for her Eyes, a Collar of Pearl about her Neck, and a Canopy over her Head, supported with 4 Pillars. Over-against this College stands another Pagod, where the Idol *Richourdû* and his Brother *Guipaidû*, which stand upon 2 distinct Altars, are worshipped.

Eight Days Journey from *Banarous*, Northward, is a Mountainous Country, which opens it self sometimes into large Plains, very fertile in Corn, Rice, Wheat and Pulse, but it abounds so much with Elephants, that they ruin the People and destroy their Harvest, yea, the Caravans can hardly keep them by great Fires, Hollowing and Shooting of Guns from taking away their Provisions. In this Place is a Pagod well built and very ancient, adorned with many Figures of Maids and Women both within and without. In the middle of it upon an Altar stands an Idol of massie Gold, representing a Maid standing upright, 5 Foot high, called *Ram-Marion*. Upon her Right Hand stands a Child about 2 Foot high in massie Silver, whom in 2 or 3 Years time she instructed so in her Belief, that her Company was desired by all the *Rija's* in the Country, so that they stole her from her, but was never after seen. On her Left Hand stands another Idol of an old Man, who was her Servant. The Women come hither once a Year in Devotion in great Numbers, and the Men but few and rarely, upon the 1st of *Nov.* and for 15 Days fast and wash themselves 3 times a Day, taking every Hair from all Parts of their Bodies with a certain Earth, and then upon the Full of the Moon the Pagod is opened, and all present their Devotions.

The Pagod of *Matura* is most considerable next to those of *Ingrenate* and *Banarous*. It stands about 18 Lgs. from *Agra*, in the Way to *Debli*, and is one of the most sumptuous, lofty and magnificent Edifices in all *India*. It was formerly resorted to by the greatest Number of Pilgrims, but the People have left all their Reverence for it, because the River *Gemena*, that formerly ran by it, is receded from its old Course, and gone a Lg. further. It is built in a Valley, but being very high, is visible 5 or 6 Lgs. before you come at it. The Stones are of a red Colour, and make very fair Pillars. The Platform is 8 square, and paved with Free-Stone, being adorn'd on the Out-side round about with Figures of all sorts of Creatures, especially Apes. There are 2 Ascents to it 15 or 16 Steps high, at the Portal and Chancel. In the midst is a great Duomo, and 2 smaller of each side, which are full of Niches, where stand the Figures of Demons, some with 4 Arms or Legs, others with Mens Heads on Beasts Bodies. In it is a great Altar covered with Tissue of Gold and Silver, upon which stands the great Idol *Ram*. His Head is of black Marble, and seen only, and his Eyes are made of 2 Rubies. All the Body is covered with a Robe of Purple Velvet. They say of this God, that he was produced out of the Light, and tho' they assign him a Father and Mother, yet 'tis for Form's sake only, seeing he was not born, and therefore they render him Divine Honours, and salute their Friends in his Name, saying, *Ram, Ram*. Their Adoration of him consists in joining their Hands, as if they pray'd, letting them fall very low, and then lifting them up again gently to their Mouths, and lastly, raising them over their Heads. They call *Chita* the Wife of *Ram*, and seeing what Respect the *Portuguese* gave the Image of the Virgin, they take it for a Representation of their *Chita*, and going to *Bassaim*, a Town belonging to the *Portuguese*, worship it by saluting it, pulling off their Shoes, making many Reverences, putting Oil into the Lamp that hangs before the Image, and casting some Money into the Box, if they are able. They would have also anointed it, and offered a Sacrifice of Fruits to it, but the *Portuguese* would not suffer them.

The 4th famous Pagod is at *Tripeti*, in the Province of *Carnatica*, toward the Coast of *Coromandel* and Cape *Comori*. It has a great Number of Lodgings for *Bramins* in it, so that it seems like a Town. It has several Ponds about it, but the *Bramins* will allow none to take any Water out of them, but what they give them. All the *Indian* Idolaters, both on this side and beyond *Ganges*, go at least once in their Lives in Pilgrimage to one of these Pagods, but usually to *Ingrenate*, as being the Chief, and the *Bramins* and rich People oftner, some every 4 Years, others every 6 or 8 Years. They put the Idols of their Pagods upon *Pallekies*, covered with Tissues, and so go in Procession. They go whole Towns together, the Rich in *Pallekies*, or Chariots, and the Poor on Foot, or upon Oxen, the Wife carrying the Child, and the Man the Kitchin Implements, the poor being supplied by the Rich, who are very liberal upon this Occasion. The *Bramins* distribute Flabels to the most considerable of the Company, made with Tissue, adorn'd with Peacocks Feathers, to gather more Wind, and sometimes with Bells, to make a little Tingling. Six of these Flabels are employ'd together to keep the Flies from their God, and the better sort of People take the Office by Turns, that the Honour of waiting upon their God may be more equally divided.

The Idolaters have many other odd superstitious Customs. Before an Eclipse of the Sun, which the *Bramins* exactly foretell, all the People, both Men, Women and Children, wash themselves in the River *Ganges*, and all that time labour Day and Night in providing all sorts of Rice, Milk-Meats and Sweet-Meats. At the Time of the Eclipse the *Bramins*, who have every one their Magick-Book, find out the good Hour, and cry aloud to the People to feed the Fish, and then they cast all they have provided into the River to the Fish and Crocodiles, and then they all go in to wash and rub themselves till the Eclipse is over, while there is an horrible Din of Drums, Bells and sounding Mettal struck one against another. At the Time also of the Eclipse's appearing, the Idolaters break all the Earthen Pots and Dishes in their Houses, which make an hideous Noise together. While they are washing there is nothing to be seen in the River for some Lgs. together, but Heads. The *Bramins* stay ashore to receive the richer sort, who give them most to dry their Bodies, and seat them down in a Chair, where they have provided Rice, Pulse, Meal, Butter, Sugar and Wood.

When the Moon is at the Full in *March*, they keep a solemn Festival for their Idol, which is the Form of a Serpent, 9 Days; not only Men, but Beasts keeping Holy-day, which they adorn by making Circles of Vermilion about their Eyes, colouring their Horns also with the same, and hanging them with Leaves of guilded Tin. Every Morning they worship the Idol and the Maids dance about it for an Hour together to the Noise of a Flute and Drums, and then they eat, drink and are merry till the Evening, when they worship and dance about their Idol again. The Idolaters never

never drink any ſtrong Drink at other Times, but at this Feſtival they drink Palm-Wine, and ſtrong Water made of it. When a Chief *Bramin* dies, their Great Men voluntarily die with him, that they may be ready to ſerve him in another World.

Tho' theſe Idolaters know not the true God, yet they underſtand Morality by the Light of Nature. When they are married they are ſeldom falſe to their Wives; Adultery is very rare among them, and Sodomy never heard of, for they marry their Children between 7 and 8 Years old to prevent thoſe Vices. Their Marriages are performed with much Ceremony, and if the Perſon be rich or noble, with much Pomp and Expence (the Bridegroom riding on an Elephant, the Bride in a Chariot, and the Company on Elephants, or prancing Horſes) *viz.* Preſents, Feaſtings and Fire-Works, and, which is moſt expenſive, the Water of *Ganges*. The Chief of the *Bramins* preſent celebrate the Solemnity after this Manner: He firſt lays the Head of the Bride to the Bridegroom, and pronouncing ſeveral Words, ſprinkles their Heads and Bodies all the while with Water. Then they bring him upon Plates, or Fig Leaves, ſeveral ſorts of Meats, Cakeuts and Stuffs, and then the *Bramin* asks the Bridegroom, Whether ſo long as God ſhall make him able, he will let his Wife ſhare with him; and whether he will endeavour to maintain her by his Labour? And if he ſays, *Yes*, they all ſet themſelves down to the Feaſt prepared for them, every one eating by himſelf.

On the 8th of *April*, the Idolaters make a Feaſt at *Malle*, a City of *Bengal*, at which, according to a particular Cuſtom they all go out of the City, and faſten Iron Hooks to the Bows of ſeveral Trees, on which many poor People hang themſelves by their Fleſh, till with the Weight of their Bodies they fall off. 'Tis wonderful to ſee, that the Fleſh never bleeds, nor hangs on the Hooks, and in 2 Days is cured by a Plaiſter the *Bramins* give them. Others will lie on Beds of Nails, whoſe Points enter a good way into the Fleſh, while their Friends preſent them with Money and Linen, but they will make no Advantage of ſuch Gifts, but diſtribute them the Poor. This Feaſt and Penance, they ſay, they celebrate in Memory of the firſt Man, whom they call *Adam*, as we do.

The Cuſtom of burning the Dead is very ancient among theſe Gentiles, which Ceremony they moſt commonly perform by the Banks of a River, where they waſh the Dead, which they account the laſt Purgation from their Sins. Sometimes they will carry the ſick Perſon, Death approaching, to the Bank of ſome River or Pond, and putting his Feet into the Water, dip him more and more as Nature fails, till at length they hold him expiring up to the Chin in the River, and then they reckon the Body and Soul of ſuch a Perſon is cleanſed fully from all Defilement. After the Perſon is dead, they plunge him over Head and Ears in the River, and then pitch upon ſome Place for his Burning, which is uſually near a Pagod. The Wood is generally provided by ſuch as make it their Buſineſs upon that Occaſion, and are at an Agreement for their Pains. When an Idolater is to be burnt, all thoſe of his Caſte, or Tribe, aſſemble together at the Houſe of the Deceaſed, and laying the Body upon a Bier, covered with clean fine Linen, according to his Quality and Eſtate, they follow the Bier to the Place where the dead Man is to be burnt. As they go along they ſing certain Prayers to God, pronouncing ſeveral times the Words, *Ram, Ram*, while another going before, ſounds a Bell, to advertiſe the Living to pray for the Dead. The Body being brought to the Place of Burning, they waſh it all over in a River or Pond juſt by, and then burn it. According to the Quality of the Deceaſed they alſo mingle with the ordinary Wood, Sandal Wood and other ſweet Woods. With the Bodies of the deceaſed Husbands, they count it a meritorious Thing for the Wife alſo to burn her ſelf, and the *Bramins* make them believe, that in dying after that manner, ſhe ſhall revive again with him in another World, with more Honour and Advantages than they enjoy'd before: nay, the Prieſts tell them, That while they are in the midſt of the Flames, before they expire, their God *Ram* will appear to them, and reveal wonderful Viſions to them, and that after their Souls have tranſmigrated into various Bodies, they ſhall at length obtain an high Degree of Honour to Eternity. But all this prevails not ſo much with the Women, as the ill Treatment of Widows after their Husband's Deceaſe; for ſo ſoon as the Man is dead, the Wife retires to bewail her Husband, and ſome Days after they ſhave off her Hair, and having laid aſide all the Ornaments of her Apparel, ſhe takes off from her Arms and Legs the Bracelets which her Husband put on when he eſpouſed her, in Token of her Submiſſion and of her being chain'd to him, and all the reſt of her Life ſhe lives ſlighted and deſpiſed, and in a worſe Condition than a Slave in the very Houſe whereof ſhe was Miſtreſs before. This unfortunate Condition cauſes them to hate Life, ſo that they chuſe rather to die with their deceaſed Husbands, than to live in the Scorn and Contempt of the World: However, no Woman can burn her ſelf with the Body of her Husband, till ſhe have the Leave of the *Mahometan* Governour, who abhorring the execrable Cuſtom of Self Murther, is very ſhy to permit it them, unleſs finding that no Perſwaſions will conquer the Woman's Reſolutions, he does it ſometimes in a Paſſion, ſaying, *The Devil take thee and all thy Relations.* But none but Widows that have no Children lie under the Reproach, which will force them upon a violent Death; for Widows that have Children are by no means permitted to burn themſelves, but commanded to live for the Education of their Children; and as for thoſe Women who have no Children, and are not permitted to burn themſelves, they ſpend the reſt of their Lives in doing Penance and performing Works of Charity. Some make it their Buſineſs to ſit upon the Road, boiling certain Pulſe in Water, and give the Liquor to Travellers to drink; others ſit with Fire always ready for them to light their Tobacco; others make Vows to eat nothing, but the undigeſted Grains which they find in Cow-Dung.

When any Woman has got Leave to die with her Husband, the Muſick ſtrikes up, and ſhe goes with Drums beating and Flutes playing before her to the Houſe of the Deceaſed, where all the Kindred and Friends of the Widow that is to die come to her, and congratulate her for the Happineſs ſhe is to enjoy in another World, and for the Honour the Caſte ſhe is of receives by her generous Reſolution. When the Day for her Burning is come, ſhe dreſſes herſelf as fine, as if ſhe were going to be married, and ſhe is conducted in Triumph to the Place of Execution with Muſick, as before, the Women that follow her ſinging Songs in her Honour. The *Bramins* that accompany her, exhort her to give publick Teſtimonies of her Courage and Conſtancy, and ſome think, they give her a certain Beverage to take away the Apprehenſions of Death, for 'tis the *Bramins* Intereſt to make them hold to their Reſolutions, for their Bracelets about their Legs and Arms, and the Pendants in their Ears, which are uſually Gold or Silver, are theirs, for none may touch the Aſhes but the *Bramins*, and they ſearch them for ſuch Booty.

In *Guzurat*, as far as *Agra* and *Delli*, they ſet up a little Hut made of Reeds, or ſmall Wood, about 12 Foot ſquare, upon the Bank of ſome River or Pond, and placing the Woman in the middle of it, with her Back to a Standard, to which the *Bramin* ties her about the Middle, that ſhe may not eſcape, when ſhe feels the Heat of the Fire, with her Husband's Head in her Lap, the *Bramins*, with her Kindred and Relations, ſet the Pile on Fire, and caſt Oils upon it to encreaſe the Flame, and deliver her the ſooner out of her Pain. All along the Coaſts of *Coromandel*, when a Woman is to be burnt with her Husband, they make a great Hole in the Ground 9 or 10 Foot deep, and 20 or 30 Foot ſquare, into which they throw a great Quantity of Wood and Drugs, which will burn moſt fiercely. When the Fire is kindled, they ſet the Body of the Man upon the Brink of the Pit, and then preſently up comes the Woman, dancing and chewing Beetle, and accompanied with her Friends, with Drums beating and Flutes ſounding. Then the Woman takes Three Turns round the Hole, and every time ſhe has gone round ſhe kiſſes her Friends and Kindred. After the 3d time the *Bramins* caſt the Carcaſe of her Husband into the Flame, and then the Woman ſtanding with her Back to the Fire, is puſh'd in by the *Bramins* alſo, and tumbles backward. Then her Kindred and Friends caſt Oil and other combuſtible Drugs upon the Fire, to make it burn more vehemently, that the Body may the ſooner be conſumed. Sometimes the Women Slaves, out of Tenderneſs and Kindneſs to their Miſtreſs, will burn themſelves with her to attend her into another World.

This

This barbarous Custom, tho' not so much used as formerly, hath yet several Instances of it, tho' the *Mahometans* do all they can to hinder it. It is true, that the Sight of the Pile is so affrighting, that some Women will run away, and endeavour to escape; but for the most part 'tis too late, the *Bramins* that are there usually with long Poles, if they cannot perswade them, will thrust them into the Fire by Force. Some indeed have escap'd by Chance, but then they are forced to flie to the *Mahometans*, *Gadous*, or *Portugueses*, for none of the Gentiles will receive them, or live with them, because they repute them infamous for committing such a Fault, and bringing Disgrace upon their Religion. In some Places where Wood is scarce, they do no more than broil, as it were, the Bodies of the Dead, and the Wife that dies with him, and then from an high Bank cast them into the River to be devoured by the Crocodiles and Fish; but in most Parts of the Coasts of *Coromandel* the Women are not burnt with their deceased Husbands, but are buried alive with them in Holes, which the *Bramins* make a Foot deeper than the Tallness of the Man and Woman. Usually they chuse a Sandy Place, so that when the Woman to and Man are let down together, all the Company with Baskets of Sand fill up the Hole about half a Foot higher than the Surface of the Earth, and then they jump and dance upon it, till they believe the Woman to be stifled. Some Idolaters about the same Coast, when their Friends are upon the Point of Death, carry them to the fattest Cow they can find, and laying the sick Party behind the Cow, provoke her to piss. If she pisses, and it lights upon the Face of the sick Party, all the Company are over-joy'd, saying, His Soul is happy; but if none fall on him, they burn him with Sadness. If a Cow be sick, the Owner must be careful to lead her to a Pond or River, for if she die in his House, the *Bramins* will fine him, and enjoin him a severe Penance. Many other Superstitions they have, almost too numerous to be counted.

Women buried with their Husbands.

The Peoples Practice at an Eclipse.

When there is an Eccliplse to be, they stand Men and Women in the Rivers up to the Waste in the Water, having their Privities only covered with a thin Cloth or Scarf, looking up to the Skies to discover the first Appearance of it; and as soon as they discern it, raise a great Cry, and plunge themselves all over in the Water many times one after another, and standing up with Hands and Eyes lifted up to Heaven, pray with great Devotion, and throw up the Water with their Hands towards Heaven, bowing down their Heads very low, and so continue till the Eccliplse is over, and then withdraw, casting some Pieces of Silver a good way off into the Water, and giving Alms to the *Bramins*, or Men of the Law. Most of them at their coming out of the Water have new Cloaths laid ready to put on, most of the Devouter of them leaving their old Cloaths for the *Bramins*.

The Great *Mogul*, tho' he be a *Mahometan* himself, suffers these Heathens to go on in their Superstitions, not only because he thinks it not safe to cross them, in the Exercise of their old Customs, but because they present him upon these Occasions, by the Hands of the *Bramins*, as their Commissioners, with a *Leck*, or 100000 Roupies, which are worth about 500000 Crowns, for which he usually gives them nothing, but a few Vests and an old Elephant. The Reasons which they alledge for these Ceremonies are these, That in their 4 *Beths*, or Books of their Law, given them by God thro' the Hands of a *Bramin*, they are taught, That a certain *Deuta*, which is a kind of Corporeal Divinity, black, malign and mischievous, seizeth on the Sun, and blackens it like Ink, and so darkens it; that tho' the Sun be also one of the most benefícent and perfect Divinities, 'tis at that Time in very great Pain and terrible Anguish, and 'tis a general Duty to endeavour to deliver him, which cannot be effected but by the Force of Prayers, Washings and Alms, and these Actions are of so great Merit at this time, that an Alms now given is worth 100 at another time.

The *Mogul* reverences the Heathens, and why.

The Cause of an Eclipse.

In the Town of *Jagenate* there is celebrated a Feast to the Deity of the same Name 8 or 9 Days, at which there are said to be sometimes 150000 Persons. At this Feast they make a stately Engine of Wood, painted with Monsters, Apes and Devils, moving on 14 or 16 Wheels, and drawn by 50 or 60 Persons, and on it they set the Idol of *Jagenate*, richly dress'd and adorn'd, and so transport him from Place to Place. Some of these, Pilgrims throw themselves under the Wheels as it moves, and are bruised to Death, being

A Procession at *Jagenate*.

made to believe, that it is a meritorious Action, for which *Jagenate* will receive them as his Children, and cause them to be born again in a State of Felicity and Glory. The *Bramins* also taking a young Maid and very beautiful, put her into *Jagenate's* Temple, for his Bride, telling her, that *Jagenate* will come and embrace her, and tell her what Processions, Feasts Alms and Prayers he demands of them, and whether the ensuing Year will be fruitful. The Priests act this Comedy, and deflowring her, instruct her in the Answers, and setting her upon the Engine, cause her to deliver what they please to the People. Before the Chariot and also in the Temple, certain publick Women dance in several indecent Postures.

The Marriage of a God.

Among the vast Number of *Faquirs*, *Dervices*, or Religious Heathens above-mention'd, there are abundance of them that have Convents, in which there are Superiors, and wherein they make Vows of Chastity, Poverty and Obedience, going stark naked, their Hair hanging down to the middle of their Legs, and Nails above an Inch long, and lying Nights and Days upon Ashes under the large Trees by their *Talabs*, or Ponds sides, or in the Galleries of their Idol Temples. Some of them go long Pilgrimages, not only altogether naked, but loaden with such huge Chains as they put about the Legs of Elephants. Others, who are believed to be true Saints, illuminated and perfect *Faquirs*, entirely united to God, have altogether abandon'd the World, and sequester'd themselves into some narrow Corner or Garden, like *Eremites*, and never come into the Town. If you carry them Meat, they receive it, if not, 'tis belived, they live by the sole Favour of God, in Fasting, Prayers and profound Meditations. They sink themseves into deep Raptures, and give out, that they behold God himself like a bright and inestimable Light with unexpressible Joy and Satisfaction, and some of them will affirm, that they can go into these Raptures when they please. Others there are that are almost perpetually travelling up and down, taking Care for nothing, and deriding all. These brag of great Secrets and seem to be endow'd with a strange Power, for they can make Gold, divine what one thinketh, make the Branch of a Tree blossom and bear Fruit in less than an Hour, hatch Eggs, and bring forth Birds, which shall fly about the Room, in less than a Quarter of an Hour, restore one to perfect Health immediately by a Dose of Mercury prepared after their Manner, or at least seem to do all these Things to the People. But lastly, there are others, whose Life and Devotion is very meek and well polished, and who go bare-foot and bare-headed, and cover their Bodies with a white Sheet. They are very neat and clean, and commonly go 2 and 2 with great Modesty. They go freely into any Houses of the Gentiles, and are welcomed there as a great Blessing to the House. They have certain Books of their Law and Sciences, written in the *Hanscrit*, i. e. the Learned Language of the ancient *Bramins*, which they say were sent by the Immovable and Immutable God: They call them by the Name of *Beths*, and they say, there are 4, *viz.* the 1st *Athenhabed*, the 2d *Zager-bed*, the 3d *Rek-bed*, and the 4th *Sama-bed*. By these Books they are taught the *Metempsychosis* of *Pythagoras*, and commanded not to kill or eat any Animal, especially Cows and Peacocks. They are obliged to say their Prayers 3 times a Day, in the Morning, at Noon and Night, with their Face turn'd toward the East, as also to wash their whole Body as often, or to be sure before they eat, and they believe it more holy to wash in running Water, than in a standing Pond, and tho' they are in great Danger of Death by their Washing in Winter in the cold Countries, yet they will not forbear it. They pretend not their Law to be universal, but that God made it only for them, and therefore they could not receive a Stranger into it. They do not assert the Christian Religion to be false, but say, It may be good for us, and that God may have appointed several different Ways to Heaven; but they will not allow that our Religion is the general Religion of the whole Earth, and that their own is a Fable and a pure Device. Their Books also teach, That God having resolved to create the World, would not execute the Decree immediately, but first made 3 perfect Beings, the 1st *Brachma*, i. e. Penetrating into all Things; the 2d *Beschen*, i. e. Existing in all Things; and the 3d *Mehab-den*, i. e. Great Lord; and that by *Brahma* he created the World, by *Beschen* he preserveth it, and by *Mehab-den* he will destroy it, and that it was *Brahma* who by the

The Books of their Law, and their Doctrine.

Their Opinion of Christian.

Three Deities.

Command of God did publish the 4 *Beths* of their Law, and therefore in some of their Pagods he is represented with 4 Heads. They also hold, that *Beschen*, the 2d of these Beings, hath been incarnate 9 times, the first in a Lion, the 2d in a Swine, the 3d in a Tortoise, the 4th in a Serpent, the 5th in a *Bramin* She-Dwarf, the 6th in a Monster Man-Lion, the 7th in a Dragon, the 8th in a Man; for they hold, that the World being enslaved under the Power of Giants, one of which flew in the Air, and obscured the Sun, this 2d Being became incarnate, and was born of a Virgin at Midnight, the Angels singing in the Air, the Heavens pouring down Showers of Flowers all Night; that this God incarnate first of all kill'd the Giant that darken'd the Sun, who by his Fall made the Earth to quake, and by his Weight sunk as low as Hell; that he was wounded in his Side in the Conflict, and fell, but by his Fall put his Enemies to Flight; and that after, he had raised himself again, and redeemed the World, and ascended into Heaven; that his 9th Appearance shall be in an Ape, and the 10th in a great Cavalier. They say also, That the 3d Being hath manifested himself to the World in the Form of Fire, and marry'd a King's Daughter. The *European* Missionaries in the *Indies* will have these Things to favour of Christianity, and will have it, that these Gentiles do hold a Trinity, and that there are Three Persons in One Godhead; for tho' indeed some of their *Pendets*, or Doctors say, they are Creatures, yet the most knowing assert, that these 3 Beings are indeed nothing but One, and the same God considered 3 Ways, *viz.* as he is the Producer, Conservator and Destroyer of all Things.

The 2 d Deity becomes incarnate.

A Trinity own'd by them.

Concerning their Studies and Sciences this is observable. The Town of *Benares* which is seated upon the *Ganges*, in a very fine and rich Country and pleasant Place, is as it were the *Athens* of the *Indies*, where all the *Bramins* and Religious, who addict themselves to Study, come together, and the Gentry are educated. They have no Colleges, but the Masters are dispers'd up and down in their Houses and Gardens. Of the Masters some have 2, and others more Scholars, and the most eminent 14 or 15, but never more. Here they spend 10 or 12 Years, for they go on lazily and slowly, according as the Heat and Diet of the Country inclines them. Their first Study is of the *Hanserit*, i. e. the Divine and Holy Language, which they believe to be the Tongue in which God gave them the 4 *Beths*, or sacred Books, and certainly 'tis very ancient, because they have none that can understand it, but their *Pendets*, and 'tis very different from the common *Indian*. Father *Kircher* hath published the Alphabet of it (which he had from Father *Roa*, a *German* Jesuit, and Missionary into the *Indies*) in his *China Illustrata*. After they have learn'd the *Hanserit*, they apply themselves to read the *Purane*, which is the Interpretation and Sum of their *Beths*, which are very large; which done, they proceed to Philosophy, in which they have 6 famous Sects, which pretend to excel each other much in the Soundness of their Doctrines conform to their *Beths*. There is a 7th Sect, called *Baute*, but is so infamous, that few join to it in Comparison of the rest, yet are divided into 12 Sects. They speak of the Principles of Things very differently. Some hold, that all is composed of little, solid, indivisible Bodies, something like *Democritus* and *Epicurus*; others say, that Matter and Form is the Origin of the Universe, others make the 4 Elements, others nothing, others Light and Darkness, the first Principles, and all agree that they are eternal. As to Physick, they have some little Books, which are rather Collections of Receipts than any thing else, and their chief one is in Verse. Their Practise is grounded on these Rules, That in a Fever there needs little Nourishment; That Abstinence is a main Remedy in Sickness; That Flesh-Broth is hurtful to a sick Person; That no Blood is to be let but in great and evident Necessity, as in Inflammations of the Chest, Liver or Kidneys, and these Rules are very successful. When they let Blood, they do it 18 or 20 Ounces, which chouks the Disease in the Beginning. They know nothing of Anatomy, because they never open any Body of Man or Beast; yet they say, there are 5000 Veins in Man's Body, as if they had counted them. They have their Astronomical Tables, by which they find out Ecclipses, and come pretty near, tho' they are not so exact as our *European* Astronomers. They believe, that the Ecclipses of the Sun and Moon proceeds from the *Rali*, a mischievous *Deuta*, who seizeth on them, and blackens them. They hold, that the Moon is 50000 Lgs. above the Sun, is lucid of herself, and disposeth a certain vital Water from our Brain into all our Members: They hold, that the Sun and Moon and all the Stars are *Deuta's*, *i. e.* Numens, Demons or Spirits, and that 'tis Night when the Sun goes behind the *Sumeire*, or imaginary Mountain, which they place in the midst of the Earth, and make it many Thousand Lengues high. Their Geography is very erroneous; they believe the Earth to be flat and triangular, having 7 Stories, all differing from each other in Beauty and Perfection, and 'tis all sustain'd upon the Heads of Elephants, which when they stir causeth an Earthquake.

Their Studies and Sciences.

1. Of the Hanserit or Holy Tongue.

2. The Purane.

Their Natural Philosophy.

Their Physical Learning.

Concerning the Worship of their Idols, the more Learned and Refined give this Account, That they have indeed in their Pagods store of Images, of *Brahma*, *Mebaden*, &c. who are the chiefest and most perfect *Deuta's*, as also many others of less Perfection, to whom they pay great Honour, by prostrating themselves before them, and presenting them with Flavers, Oils, Rice, Saffron, and many other Things with great Ceremony, but they do not believe those Statues to be the Beings themselves, but only their Images and Representations, and that they give them no Honour, but upon the Account of what they represent. They are in the Temples, because 'tis necessary for Praying to have something before their Eyes to fix their Mind upon; and when they pray, 'tis not the Statue they pray to, but he that is represented by it; for the rest they acknowledge, that 'tis God that is absolute, and the only Omnipotent Lord and Master. They will not say, that the World is eternal, but they make it so old, 'tis hardly to be distinguish'd from it, for they say, it has continued 4 *Dgugue's*, every *Dgugues* containing 100 *Leeques*, i. e. 100 times 100000 Years. Concerning the Nature of their *Deuta's* they say, that there are 3 sorts of them, Good, Evil and Indifferent; that they were *Biapek*, as God and the Soul is, incorruptible, depending neither on Time nor Place, Portions of the Deity, and a certain kind of Divinities severed and dispersed over the World. Concerning the Seeds of Plants and Animals, they hold, that they are not formed a-new, but were contrived in the first Production of the World, and dispersed abroad every-where, and mixed in all Things; that they are not only potentially, but actually the entire Plants and Animals, tho' so small, that their Parts can't be distinguish'd, but when being put into a convenient Womb they are there nourished, extend themselves and increase into a Plant or Animal, able at length to subsist by it self. Lastly, The great Mystery of all, is this, That God, or that Sovereign Being, which they call *Acnar* (or Immutable) hath produced, or drawn out of his own Substance not only all sorts, both of Men and Animals, but whatever is Material and Corporeal in the Universe, and that this Production was not made by way of an efficient Cause, but as a Spider draws his Web out of his own Bowels; and so Creation is nothing but an Extraction and Extension, which God maketh of his own Substance, and Destruction is a Reprizal or Taking back of it, so that there is nothing real or effective in the World; and the Multiplicity and Diversity of Things which appear to us, are nothing but one and the same Thing, God himself. These are very extravagant and odd Doctrines, but if you enquire the Reason, they can give you none, but will put you off with some pretty Simile to explain it, which will please tho' not satisfie; and they take it for Demonstration, and will never be convinced.

How Blood-letting.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Fruits, Beasts, Birds, and other Things remarkable in Moguliſtan.

THE great Extent of the vaſt Empire of the *Mogul*, as well as the various Temperature, and Productions of the Soil and Climate, makes as much difference between one Province and another, as if they were ſeveral Kingdoms, and therefore there can be no way to give an exact Account of all Things remarkable, but conſidering the ſeveral Provinces diſtinctly, and what is peculiarly obſervable in them.

Kachemire. We will begin with the Kingdom of *Kachemire*, commonly called, The Paradice of *Indoſtan*, a Country, tho' mountainous, yet ſo fruitful, that you would take it for an ever-green Garden, being full of Trees, and Paſtures, with all ſorts of Cattle, as Cows, Sheep, Goats, Horſes, Partridges, Hares, Gazels, and the Musk-Animals. There are abundance of Bees, but no Serpents, Tigers, Bears or Lions. The Fields produce Rice, Corn, Pulſe of divers ſorts, Hemp and Saffron, being interlaced with Ditches, Lakes and Rivulets, to advance their Plenty: Up and down every where alſo are ſeen ſome of our *European* Plants, Flowers, and all ſorts of Plants, as Apples, Pears, Prunes, Apricots, Nuts and Vines, and their Gardens are full of Melons, Water-Melons, Skirrets, Beets, Radiſhes, and all ſorts of our Pot-herbs, and ſome that we have not, but their Fruits are not ſo many, nor ſo good as ours.

No Serpents, &c. in it.

The People are very induſtrious as well as intelligent, and make Pallekies, Trunks, Bedſteds, Standiſhes, Boxes and Spoons, with many other Pieces of handſome Workmanſhip, ſending them all over the reſt of the *Indies*, and to ſome of theſe they give ſuch a Varniſh with counterfeit Veins and Gold ſtreaks, that nothing is finer. They make alſo a kind of Stuff an Ell and half long, and about an Ell broad, called *Chales*, and embroidered at each end for about a Foot, ſo ſoft and fine, as is not imitable, tho' 'tis attempted at *Patna*, *Agra* and *Lahor*. The *Moguls* and *Indians*, both Men and Women, wear of them in Winter upon their Heads, and bring them over their Shoulders like a Mantle. They are made of their own Wool, which is finer than *Spaniſh*, or of the Hair taken from the Breaſt of a wild Goat in great *Tibet*, called *Touz*; ſome of theſe are ſold for an 150 Roupies to the Great *Omrahs*.

Chales, a Stuff.

The People. The People are of a fair Complexion, and eſpecially the Women are very beautiful, and of as fair Faces as in *Europe*. Between *Bember* and *Kachemire* are ſome Mountains that ſeem to part 2 Worlds rather than 2 Provinces, for on the one ſide it was ſcorching and hot, as in the *Torrid-Zone*, and full of *Indian* Plants proper to it; on the other ſide it was a temperate, gentle and freſh Air, and the Soil produced Hyſſop, Thyme, Marjoram and Roſemary, Oaks, Elms, Pines and Plane-Trees. Between theſe Rocks are admirable Caskata's of Water, and among others one not to be paralell'd, which running in a Channel between the Trees on a ſudden precipitates it ſelf into the Bottom of a ſteep Rock, with a Noiſe able to make one Deaf, like a Cataract. In the Month of *May* here is a Fountain, that for 15 Days regularly flows and ſtops thrice a Day, *viz.* at Break of Day, Noon and Night, its flowing fills a Square of 10 or 12 Foot broad, and as many deep, and then it ſlacks by degrees, till about the End of the Month, and then quite ſtops for the reſt of the Year. By it the Gentiles have a Temple of the Idol *Brare*, and from thence the Fountain is called, *Send-Brari*, i. e. The Water of *Brare*, and hither many Pilgrims come to bathe and ſanctifie themſelves. In the Royal Garden at *Achiavel*, in this Province, is a Pond, where there are Fiſhes that will come when they are called, and when you caſt Bread to them, the biggeſt of which have alſo Rings in their Noſes, with Inſcriptions in them.

Admirable Caskata's of Water.

Brare, an Idol.

Miracles pretended. At *Baramoulay* is a Moſque, in which is a Tomb of one of their *Pires*, or Saints, where 'tis ſaid the Sick are cured every Day which flock thither, and 11 *Moullahs* with one Finger each lift a huge Stone, which the ſtrongeſt Man can hardly raiſe eaſily; but theſe Things are miraculous only to the Credulous and Careleſs; but the bubbling Fountain, which riſes gently and with ſome little Force, making ſome ſmall Bubbles, and bringing up Sand with it, which goes away with it again, and the Water becomes ſtill, and ſo remains a while without Bubbles, and then riſes again, is certain. In the Mountains near this Fountain is a Lake that hath Ice in Summer, and looks like an Icey Sea; and a little further is a Place where making a great Noiſe will preſently cauſe a Shower of Rain. Among theſe Mountains is a People which eat no Fleſh, counting it unclean, yet they have no Religion.

Ice in Summer.

The City of *Azmer* is famous for the Tomb of *Cogea Mondy*, who was in great Reputation for his Sanctity, and therefore they come from all Places in Pilgrimage to it. It is a fair Building, with 3 Courts paved with Marble, and hath in it a Reſervatory of Water walled about; and in the Province adjoining there is a Beaſt, like a Fox in the Snout, but no bigger than a Hare, of the Colour of a Stag, and Teeth like a Dog, it yields moſt excellent Musk, for at the Belly is a Bladder, full of Matter like corrupt Blood, which is the Musk. They cut off the Bladder for it, but the Beaſt never lives long after it. There are alſo Pullets, whoſe Skins are all over black, as are alſo their Bones, but their Fleſh is very white, and their Feathers of another Colour. The Women in this Country are marriageable at 8 or 9 Years old, and bear Children at 10; the Children go naked only with a Bit of Cloth to cover their Privities. The People are rude and uncivil, and the Men great Clowns and impudent. When they quarrel they make a great Brawling, but never come to Blows. There are venomous Scorpions in this Country, and the People have ſeveral Remedies to cure the Stinging, but the beſt of all is Fire, for by applying a burning Coal to it, they draw the Venom out, and perfectly cure it. The Ways of this Country being very Stony, they Shoe the Oxen, and Bridle and Saddle them like Horſes, and if they be but a little ſpurr'd, they go as faſt as a good Horſe. With them alſo they draw their Carts and Coaches, for white Oxen are extraordinary dear. The chief Trade of this Province is Salt-Petre, for the Soil being black affords it plentifully, when 'tis made they carry it to *Surat*, to ſell it to the *Europeans*, and others, who buy it to ballaſt their Ships, and ſell elſewhere.

The Musk Creature.

Women marry at 8 or 9 Years old.

Oxen uſed for Horſes.

In the Province of *Sinde*, which was anciently the Kingdom of *Diul*, the Inhabitants are wonderful ingenious in all kinds of Arts, and make abundance of Curioſities, for which they have a great Trade. The fineſt Pallanquins in *India* are made at *Tatta* in this Province, and there is nothing neater and more convenient than the Chariots made here; but their Waggon-Wheels are one Piece of ſolid Timber like a Mill-Stone.

Sinde.

The Province of *Multan* yields Plenty of Cotton, Sugar, Opium, Brimſtone, Galls, ſtore of Camels, which are tranſported into *Perſia*, and other Parts of the *Indies*. It furniſhes alſo all *India* with the fineſt Bows that are to be ſeen in it, and nimbleſt Dancers. The chief Town of it of the ſame Name is the Rendezvous of the *Banians*, becauſe of the great Trade managed there, which cannot be carried on without them; for tho' 'tis known that they make their Profit of every thing, yet moſt Merchants chuſe rather to uſe them, than do their Buſineſs themſelves, becauſe they will buy their Goods much cheaper, and they refuſe no Service, be it never ſo baſe or vile.

Multan.

The Country of *Candahar* produces abundantly all ſorts of Proviſions that are neceſſary for Human Life, unleſs it be on the ſide next *Perſia*, where it is barren. The Inhabitants are great Lovers of Wine, tho' they are prohibited to drink it, and if any be found drunk, or doing any ſcandalous Action in Drinking, they are ſet upon an Aſs, with their Face to the Tail, and led about

Candahar.

A Puniſhment of Drunkenneſs.

about the Town, attended by the Officers of the *Cotoual*, who beat a little Drum, and all the Children follow him, hooping and Hallowing. There are many *Perſians* in this Province, but they are poor, and employ'd by the *Mahometans* in the meaneſt Offices. The King of *Perſia* will not allow the Gentiles Wives to burn themſelves in that Part of his Dominions. In the Mountains of *Cabouliſtan* grow Mirobalans, and many other ſorts of Drugs. The Country alſo is full of Aromatick Trees, which turn to good Account to the Inhabitants, as do alſo the Mines of a certain Iron fit for all Uſes. Out of this Province come thoſe large Canes of which are made Halbards and Lances, for they have many Grounds planted with them. They reckon their Months by Moons, and with great Devotion celebrate a Feaſt called *Houli*, which laſts 2 Days, firſt in praying and making their Oblations, and then in dancing by Companies in the Streets to the Sound of Trumpets, making Bonfires, and deſtroying the Figure of a Giant. Their Charity conſiſts chiefly in digging Wells and building little Houſes on the Roads for Travellers, and by them is a Place for ſuch as are heavy loaden to put off and take up their Burthens without any body's Help. This Country ſupplies the whole *Indies* with Phyſicians, which are all *Banians*, and ſome of them very skilful in Medicines, and among other Remedies make great Uſe of Burning.

In the City of *Lahors* the Great *Mogul* has a Palace, on one Gate of which is a Crucifix, and on another the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*. Some have thought them Marks of Chriſtianity, which was anciently profeſſed in thoſe Countries, but it is really nothing but a Piece of Flattery and Hypocriſie of King *Jehan-Guir*, to oblige the *Portugueſe* to be his Friends. There are many Gentiles in this City, who have ſeveral Pagods, all raiſed 7 or 8 Steps from the Ground, and ſome of them are well adorn'd. This is one of the largeſt and moſt fruitful Provinces in the *Indies*, the 5 Rivers, which make up the River *Indus*, from whence the *Moguls* call it *Pangeab*, making it very fruitful, for it yields all Proviſions neceſſary for Life, as Rice, Corn, and ſeveral ſorts of Fruits. The Wines made here are pretty good, and in the Towns are not only all ſorts of painted Cloaths wrought, but all the other Manufactures uſually made in the *Indies*.

In the Provinces of *Atioud*, or *Hioud*, and *Varad* or *Varal*, there are many *Raja's*, that own not the Authority of the *Mogul*. At *Nagarcut* in this Province is the Paged of the Idol *Matta*, to which the Gentiles that come to pay their Devotion to her, are ſaid to ſacrifice always ſome part of their own Bodies. At *Calsmas*, where the Gentiles have alſo another famous Pagod, there is a Spring of very cold Water, which iſſues out of a Rock, that continually belches out Flames, and the *Bramins* make great Advantage by the People who come to ſee the Miracle.

In the Province of *Oxiaſſer* is the famous Temple of *Jagannate*, where one of the *Fagnirs* undertook to meaſure the whole Kingdom of the *Mogul* with his own Body, and being about to perform it, was loaded with Charity, and had much Reſpect given him. The People of this Country, as well *Mahometans* as *Gentiles*, are extraordinary voluptuous, have a captious and ſubtle Wit, and are much addicted to Stealing. The Women are very bold and laſcivious, and uſe all Arts to corrupt and debauch young Men, eſpecially Strangers, whom they eaſily trapan, becauſe they are handſom and well dreſs'd. In this Province are above 20000 Chriſtians, who lived in great Uniformity under the *Pagan* Kings, but the *Mogul* becoming Maſter of it, and bringing in *Mahometaniſm*, a general Diſorder and Corruption of Manners invaded them. The Country is full of Towns, and the People live in much Eaſe, becauſe it it is very fruitful, producing Corn, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, Long-Pepper, Cotton and Silk, with ſeveral other Commodities, as alſo Fruits, eſpecially Ananas, as big as Melons, and pleaſant to the Taſte, having ſomething of the Flavour of the Apricock. In this Province the *Mogul* hath a Caſtle, whither he ſends ſuch Traitors as are condemned to perpetual Impriſonment, and to that end 'tis always ſtraitly guarded.

In the Province of *Malva* are the Territories of *Raja Ranes*, who deduces his Pedigree from King *Porus*, tho' he is now Tributary to the *Mogul*. *Ratiſpore* is the Capital City of it, and a Place of great Trade. It ſtands upon a Mountain, and hath a Caſtle belonging to it, to which the Grand Seignior ſends ſuch Traitors as are condemned to die. They are kept Priſoners for ſome time, and always ſome body is preſent with them, and the Day that they are to die they make them drink a great Quantity of Milk, and then throw them down from the Top of the Caſtle, upon the declining ſide of the Hill, which is full of ſharp pointed craggy Stones, that tear the Bodies of the Wretches to Pieces before they can reach the Bottom of the Precipice.

At *Chitor*, once a famous Town, but now almoſt ruin'd, are the Remainders of 100 Temples, or Pagods, and many antick Statues to be ſeen. In this Country are 2 kinds of Bats, one like ours in *Europe*, but the other is much differing. It is 8 Inches long, and the Body is covered with yellowiſh Hair, the Body round, and as big as a Duck's, the Head and Eyes like a Cat's, a ſharp Snout like a Rat, prickt black Ears without Hair, no Tail, 2 Teats as big as the End of one's little Finger under the Wings, 4 Legs, Wings almoſt a Foot long, and 7 or 8 Inches broad, of a black Skin, like wet Parchment, the 2 Fore-Legs end in 5 Fingers like a Man's Hand, black and without Hair, but it has Claws inſtead of Nails, with which it hangs upon the Branches of the Trees. They fly high, and are ſaid to be good Meat.

The Province of *Candich* is the moſt plentiful for Cotton of any part of *Indoſtan*, and of it the People make abundance of Cloth. They paint ſome, but the white are moſt valued for the lovely Mixture of Gold and Silver that is in them, for the Rich make their Veils, Scarfs, Hankerchiefs and Coverings of them, but they are dear. Here is alſo Plenty of Rice and Indigo growing. In the Country of *Balagate* are a great many Warrs, Manguiers, Mahova, Quieſau, Caboul, and other ſorts of rare Trees. Here are vaſt Numbers of Antelopes, Hares and Partridges, and towards the Mountains are Merons, or wild Cows. Towards *Naopoura* grows the beſt Rice in all the *Indies*, for it has an odoriferous Taſte, which that of other Countries has not. Cotton abounds here alſo, and in many Places they have Sugar-Canes, with Mills and Furnaces to make the Sugar. The Ways here are always ſafely guarded. The Pagods of *Elora* in this Province are ſo numerous, and ſo full of Pillars and Pilaſters, and have ſo many Thouſand Figures, all cut out of the natural Rock, that they may be ſaid to be Works ſurpaſſing Human Force.

In the Province of *Daitabad* are bred the moſt active Tumblers in the World, who do all the Tricks of ours in *Europe*, and many more. They are as ſupple as an Eel, and will turn their whole Body into a Bowl, which others may roul about with their Hands, but the moſt active are Girls.

In the Province of *Coitanagar*, which is diverſify'd by Hills and Plains, the Hills afford Iron, of which at the Town of *Indelvai* chiefly, the People make a great many Swords, Daggers and Lances, which are vended all over the *Indies*. All the Plains are good Ground, ſome ſow'd with Rice, and the reſt planted with Cotton-Trees, Tamarins, Warrs, Cadjours, Manguiers, Quieſau, and others, and all water'd with ſeveral Rivers, which turn and wind every way, with fair Tanquies, out of which they draw the Water with Oxen; but thoſe Parts are much troubled with Thunderings, Lightnings, Whirl-Winds, Rains, and Hailſtones as big as Pullets Eggs.

In the Province of *Telenga*, as there are many Gentiles, ſo there are none more ſuperſtitious than they. They have abundance of Pagods, with Figures of Monſters, which can excite nothing but Horror inſtead of Devotion, unleſs in ſuch deluded Souls. They uſe frequent Waſhings: Both Men, Women and Children, as ſoon as they are out of their Beds in a Morning go to the River to waſh, and the Rich have Water brought them, and ſo again as often as they eat. Women who have loſt their Husbands, are conducted to the River by their Friends, that comfort them, to waſh, and ſo are Women as ſoon as they are brought to Bed, for in no Country are Women ſo eaſily delivered as here. They will eat nothing but what is dreſs'd by themſelves, or their own Caſte, and buy all their Food of the *Banians*. They drink nothing but Water, wherein they put Tea or Coffee, nor uſe any Diſhes but Leaves of Trees, for fear any Perſon of another Religion ſhould have eaten out of it. They eat no Fleſh, except Pork on a certain Day of the Year, and that very privately; but the *Rajpoutes* eat any Fiſh or Fleſh, except the Cow. They uſe Faſting very much. Their ordinary Faſt is 24 Hours, and there are a great many that will faſt, eſpecially

cially Women, 6 or 7 Days, and ſome will faſt a Month, eating no more than an handful of Rice a Day, and others will eat nothing at all, only drink Water, in which the Root of Criata has been boil'd, which is good againſt many Diſtempers, and ſtrengthens the Stomach. When the Faſt is at an End, the *Bramin* goes with a Drum to the Houſe of the Penitent, and gives him or her Leave to eat.

Baglana. Laſtly, In the Province of *Baglana*, as all the People on the Sea-Coaſt are much given to Sea-faring, ſo the Gentiles offer many Sacrifices to the Sea, eſpecially when any of their Kindred or Relations are abroad upon a Voyage. *Sacrifices to the Sea.* The Manner of Sacrificing is thus: They make a Veſſel of Straw about 3 Foot long, and cover it with a Veil, and carrying it down to the Shore with a Basket or two of Meat and Fruits, throw it into the Sea, and having made ſome Prayers, leave the Basket on the Shore, that the Poor and others may come and eat it. At the End alſo of *September*, when the Sea, after the tempeſtuous Seaſon from *May*, becomes again navigable, they offer another Sacrifice, but with no great Ceremonies, for they only throw Coco's into the Sea, and every one throws one, the Boys plunging themſelves into the Sea to catch them, and ſhewing many Tricks in the Water, which are very pleaſant to behold. In this Province the *Indians* marry their Children very young, and make them cohabit ſooner than in any other Part of the *Indies*; they marry them at 4, 5 and 6 Years old, and ſuffer them to bed together when the Boy is 10, and Girl 8, but they leave bearing by 30, and grow extreamly full of Wrinckles, and therefore in ſome Parts of the *Indies* they do not marry till 14 Years of Age. The Women are very fruitful, becauſe they live very frugally, as well as their Husbands, and their Children are brought up very eaſily: They go naked till they are about 7 Years old, and when they are about 2 or 3 Months old, they let them crawl about till they are able to go, and when they are dirty they waſh them, and ſo they come to go as ſtrait as ours, without the Torture of Swaddling-Bands or Clouts. *Early Marriages.*

CHAP. IX.

Of ſeveral ſmall Kingdoms in the Indies, *which do not depend upon the* Mogul.

Bengal. *Rice.* *Sugar.* *Preſerved and candied Fruit.* *Pulſe.* *Flesh.* *Christians.* *Cotton and Silks.* *Salt-Petre.* *Air not healthy.*

Bengal is one of the moſt fruitful Countries of the World, ſuperior to *Egypt* it ſelf. It bears Rice in ſuch Abundance, that it not only furniſhes its Neighbours; but very remote Countries, as *Ceilon*, and the *Maldives*. It abounds ſo in Sugar, that it furniſhes the Kingdom of *Golconda* and *Karnates* with it, as alſo *Arabia*, and *Meſopotamia*, by the Way of *Moka* and *Baſſora*, and *Perſia* it ſelf by *Bander-Abaſſi*. The *Portugueſe* make excellent Comfits here, with which they drive a great Trade, and the People preſerve and candy Pome-Citrons, a Root long like Sarſaperilla, very delicate, Amba's, Anana's, Mirobalans, Lemmons and Ginger, which are many of them ſent to us in *Europe*. It is true, it breeds not much Corn, becauſe the People feed ſo much upon Rice, but it produces ſufficient for their Uſe, and to accommodate the Ships of *Europe* with excellent Biſcuits very cheap. Three or Four ſorts of Puiſe, which, together with Rice and Butter, are the uſual Food of the poor People, are there to be had for nothing almoſt. For a Roupy, which is about Half a Crown, you may buy 20 good Pullets and more, and Geeſe and Ducks in Proportion. Kids and Sheep are very plentiful, and there is ſuch ſtore of Pork, that the *Portugueſe* live on nothing elſe almoſt, and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* victual their Ships with it. There is alſo Plenty of all ſorts of Fiſh, both in the freſh and ſalt Water, and want of nothing. For this Reaſon it is, together with the Liberty that all Men enjoy for the Exerciſe of their Religion there, that all the Chriſtians are fled hither from all Parts taken by the *Dutch*, ſo that in *Ogouli*, 'tis ſaid, there are 8 or 9000 Chriſtians, and in other Parts of the Kingdom above 25000 more. It is the general Magazine for Cotton-Cloths and Silks, not only for *Indoſtan*, but all the Neighbouring Kingdoms, and *Europe* it ſelf. The *Hollanders* tranſport vaſt Quantities of both, ſome fine and others coarſe, both died and white, into *Japan*, *Europe*, and other Places, beſides what the *Portugueſe*, *Engliſh* and *Indian* Merchants ſell elſewhere. 'Tis true, the Silks are not ſo fine as thoſe of *Perſia*, *Syria*, *Said* and *Bantu*, but then they are cheaper, and very good of their Price. Salt-Petre is found in ſuch Quantities in this Country, that the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* load whole Ships full to carry it into many Places of the *Indies* and into *Europe*. From *Bengal* alſo there comes good Lacca, Opium, Wax, Civet and Long-Pepper, and even their Butter is tranſported into other Places. The Air indeed is not healthy, eſpecially near the Sea, for Strangers, ſo that the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* many of them die at their firſt coming there, but now by reſtraining their Intemperances, and uſing a little *Bardeaux* Wine, *Canary*, or *Chirras*, they preſerve a tolerable Health among them. The whole Country is well water'd by Channels cut out of the River *Ganges*, which contributes as much to their Traffick as Plenty. It is well peopled, and has abundance of Villages full of Gentiles, and the Fields produce, beſides Sugar, Rice, Corn and Pulſe above-mention'd, Sezamum for Oil, ſmall Mulberry-Trees to feed Silk-Worms, Anana's, and other Fruit-bearing Trees. *Mulberries.* In the *Ganges* alſo are many fruitful Iſles, covered with continual Verdure, but towards the Mouth ſome of them are abandon'd, becauſe they were much infeſted by the *Corſairs* and the *Franks* of *Racan*, ſo that they have no other Inhabitants but Tigers, Gazels, Hogs and Poultry. Nature in this Country produceth Miracles to us far diſtant. It is not uncommon in Rainy Seaſons to ſee Rainbows of the Moon in the Night, when the Moon is at the Full; and in ſome calm Seaſons the Buſhes will be covered ſo thick with little ſhining Flies, that they ſeem all on a Fire, and there ariſe friglitful Flames in great Globes, which the Ignorant look upon as Devils. *Rainbows of the Moon.*

Boutan. The Kingdom of *Boutan* is of a large Extent, and 'tis hard to come to a perfect Knowledge of it, the Merchants that trade from thence into the *Indies* being able to give but a very imperfect Account of it. *The Road from Patna into it.* The Caravan is 3 Months travelling from *Patna* into it, ſetting out in the End of *Dec.* and in 8 Days arriving at *Gorrochepour*, which is the laſt Town in the Great *Mogul*'s Dominions, and there is a ſevere Cuſtom of 25 *per Cent.* impoſed upon all Merchandize, but the Merchants uſually bargaining with the Cuſtomers before they proceed farther, bring it down to 7 or 8. In the Way from *Gorrochepour* for 8 or 9 Days Journey the Caravan ſuffers very much Hardſhip, for the Country is nothing but Foreſts full of wild Elephants, ſo that the Merchants inſtead of taking their Reſt, are forced to watch, keep Fires, and ſhoot off their Muskets all the Night long; for the Elephants, who make no Noiſe in treading, will otherwiſe come upon them unawares; not that they will do any Miſchief to the Men, but will plunder the Caravan of their Victuals. *Elephants.*

The Kings of Nepal. Five or 6 Lgs. beyond *Gorrochepour* you enter into the Territories of the *Raja* of *Nupal*, which extend to the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Boutan*. He is a Tributary to the Great *Mogul*, and is to pay him every Year an Elephant for his Homage. The Metropolis, where he reſides, is of the ſame Name, but there is little either of Trade or Money in his Country, becauſe it is all Woods and Foreſts.

Having paſſed his Territories, you come to certain Mountains, which are upon the Confines of *Boutan*. All this Way you may travel in Palleki's, but generally the Travellers ride upon Oxen, Camels or Horſes, bred up in the Country, which, tho' very ſmall and dear, yet are ſtrong, and will travel 20 Lgs. an end without Baiting; and, indeed, you can uſe no other

other ſort of Carriage croſs theſe Mountains, becauſe of the Narrowneſs and Ruggedneſs of the Paſſes. When the Caravan arrives at the Foot of theſe Mountains, called *Naugrocot*, abundance of People come from all Parts of them, but the greateſt Part of them are Women and Maids, who agree with the Merchants to carry them, their Goods and Proviſions over the Mountains, which is 8 Days Journey. Theſe Women carry upon each Shoulder a Woollen Roll, to which is faſten'd a large Cuſhion, that hangs down upon their Backs, upon which the Man whom they carry ſits. There are 3 Women to carry one Man, relieving one another by turns, and for their Luggage and Proviſion they lay them upon Goats, that will carry 150 Pound Weight apiece. Thoſe that will ride, are forced many times to have their Horſes hoiſed up with Cords. The Women that carry the Men get for their 8 Days travel 2 Roupies apiece, and as much for every Burden which the Goats carry, and for every Horſe which they lead. Having paſſed over theſe Mountains, you may go the reſt of the Journey to *Boutan* upon Oxen, Camels, Horſes, or Palleki's, as you pleaſe. The Country is good, abounding in Rice, Corn, Pulſe, and ſtore of Wine. All the People, both Men and Women, are clad in the Summer with a large Piece of Fuſtian, or Hempen Cloth, and in the Winter with a thick Cloth, almoſt like Felt. Both Men and Women wear upon their Heads a kind of Bonnet, much like drinking Cans, which they adorn with Boars Teeth, and with round and ſquare Pieces of Tortoiſe-ſhell. The Richer ſort mix with them Coral and Amber-Beads, of which their Women do make themſelves Neck-laces. The Men, as well as the Women wear Bracelets upon their Left Hands only from the Wriſt to the Elbow. The Women wear them ſtrait and the Men looſe. About their Necks they wear a Silver Twiſt, at the End whereof hangs a Bead of yellow Amber, or Coral, or a Boar's Tooth, which dangle upon their Breaſt. Upon their Left Sides their Girdles are button'd with Beads of the ſame. Tho' they be Idolaters, yet they feed upon all ſorts of Food, except the Fleſh of the Cow, which they adore as the common Nurſes of all Men. They are great Lovers of Strong-water. They obſerve alſo ſome Ceremonies of the *Chineſes*, burning Amber at the End of their Feaſts, tho' they do not worſhip Fire as the *Chineſes* do. Upon theſe Accounts Amber and Coral are good Commodities at *Boutan*. A Piece of yellow Amber as big as a Nut, bright and clean, is worth 45 Roupies, and a Piece of 9 Ounces 250 or 300 Roupies. Coral rough, or wrought into Beads, yields a proportionable Advantage, but they had rather have it rough, to ſhape it into what Figure they pleaſe themſelves. The Women and Maids are generally the Artiſts among them as to thoſe Toys. The moſt excellent Rhubarb comes from this Country of *Boutan*. It is a Root which they cut in pieces, and ſtringing them by 10 or 12 together, hang them up a drying; being dryed, the Merchants muſt carry it very carefully, for if it takes wet, 'tis utterly ſpoiled, and they had need to carry it the moſt ſpeedy Way, for it is apt to corrupt, or if not, 'twill by time eat out its own Heart. This Kingdom alſo produces ſome Musk, and Plenty of Furs. They have good ſtore of Martins in their Country, which yield a very rich Fur, but not having the Skill that the *Muſcovites* have to take 'em, they loſe the Profit of that Commodity, which the *Muſcovites* have; for, no ſooner does that Creature peep out of his Hole, but the *Muſcovites*, who lie upon the Watch, have them preſently, ſhooting them either in the Noſe or Eyes; for ſhould they hit them in the Body, the Blood would quite ſpoil the Skin. From hence alſo is brought the Seed which is accounted ſo good againſt Worms, called therefore Worm-Seed. 'Tis the Seed of a certain Herb that grows in their Fields, but muſt not be gather'd till the Plant is dead, which is the Reaſon that the Wind ſcatters the greateſt part of it before it can be gathered, which makes it ſcarce. When they gather the Seed, they take 2 little Hampers, and as they go along the Fields, they move them backward and forward, as if they were moving the Herb, and ſo bowing it at the Top, the Seed falls into the Hampers.

The King and all his People are Idolaters, and worſhip Monſters, as the other Heathen *Indians*. There is no King in the World more fear'd and reſpected by his Subjects, than the King of *Boutan*, being in a manner ador'd by them. When he ſits to do Juſtice, or give Audience, all that appear in his Preſence hold their Hands cloſe together above their Fore-heads, and at a Diſtance from the Throne proſtrate themſelves upon the Ground, not daring to lift up their Heads. In this humble Poſture they preſent all their Petitions to the King, and when they retire they go backwards, till they are quite out of Sight. 'Tis affirm'd for a certain Truth, that when the King does the Deeds of Nature, ſuch as are about him preſerve it, and dry and powder it, like Sneezing-Powder, and ſell it to the rich Merchants and Farmers, who buy it as a great Rarity, and at their Feaſts ſtrew it upon their Meat. This King has conſtantly about him 7 or 8000 Men for his Guard; their Weapons for the moſt part are Bows and Arrows, but ſome of them carry Battle-Axes and Bucklers. They have had the Uſe of Muskets and Cannon a long time: Their Gun-Powder is long, but of an extraordinary Force. Some of their Cannons have Letters and Figures upon them, by which it appears that ſome of them are above 500 Years old. No Man may ſtir out of the Kingdom without the Governour's Leave, nor is any allow'd to carry a Musket along with him, unleſs their next Kindred will undertake for them that they ſhall bring them back. Their Guns are poliſhed within as ſmooth as a Looking-Glaſs, and garniſhed without with embоſſed Wires, and Flowers of Gold and Silver inlaid, and carry large Bullets. There are always 50 Elephants and 25 Camels, with each a Piece of Artillery mounted upon his Back, which carry half a Pound Ball. Behind it ſits a Cannoneer to manage and level it as he pleaſes.

The Natives of *Boutan* are ſtrong and well proportion'd, but their Noſes are ſomewhat flat. The Women are bigger and more vigorous than the Men, but are more troubled with Swellings in the Throat than the Men are, for few of them eſcape that Diſeaſe. They know not what War is, having no Enemy to fear, but the *Mogul*, and from him they are fenced with high, ſteep, craggy and ſnowy Mountains, which he never thought it worth his Trouble to paſs. Northward there are nothing but vaſt Foreſts and Snows. E. and W. no Water but what is bitter, and as for the *Raja's* near them, they are Princes of ſmall Force. They have a Silver-Mine in the Kingdom of *Boutan*, for their King coins much Silver in Pieces of the Value of a Roupy; but they have little Gold, and what they have is by the Merchants brought them out of the Eaſtern Countries.

The Kingdom of *Tipra* lies on the N. W. of the Kingdom of *Arakan*, 12 Days Journey from *Daca*. It is about 15 Days Journey croſs it. They ride upon Oxen and Horſes, which are very low, but very hardy. The King and Nobility ride in Palleki's, or upon Elephants of War. The People are as ſubject to Wens on their Throats, as thoſe of *Boutan*, inſomuch that ſome of their Women have them hanging down to their Nipples, which proceeds from the Badneſs of the Waters. There is nothing in *Tipra* which is fit for Strangers. There is a Mine of Gold, but the Metal is very coarſe, and there is a ſort of coarſe Silk, which is all the Revenue the King has, for he exacts no Subſidies of his Subjects, but only that they who are not of the prime Nobility ſhould work 6 Days in a Year in his Mine or Silk-Works. He ſends his Gold and Silk into *China*, and for them they bring him back Silver, which he coins into Pieces of the Value of 10 Sous, and others of 22 Sous. In the Language of his Country he is called *Dieu-Aragari*, which is ſtamp'd upon one ſide of the Money, and on the other *Chaterman: Roy de Tipoura*. He alſo makes thin Pieces of Gold, like the Aſpers of *Turky*, of which he has 2 ſorts, 4 of the one making a Crown, and 12 of the other.

The Kingdom of *Aſem* is one of the beſt Countries in all *Aſia*, for it produces all Things neceſſary for Human Subſiſtance, without any Need of Foreign Supply. There are in it Mines of Gold, Silver, Steel, Lead, Iron, and great ſtore of Silk, but coarſe. There is a ſort of Silk found under the Trees, which is ſpun by a Creature like to our Silk-Worms, but rounder, and which lives all the Year long under the Trees. The Stuffs that are made of this Silk gliſter very much, but they fret preſently. This Country alſo produceth great ſtore of Gum-Lac, of which there is 2 ſorts, one grows under the Trees, of a red Colour, with which they paint their Linen and Stuffs, and when they have drawn out the red Juice, the remaining Subſtance ſerves to varniſh Cabinets and make Wax, being the beſt Lac in *Aſia* for thoſe Uſes. As for

Gold. for the Gold they never ſuffer it to be tranſported out of the Kingdom, nor do they make any Money of it, but preſerve it in Ingots, which paſs in Trade among the Inhabitants, but the Silver the King coins into Money of 3 Drachms, 4 Grains Weight, which makes 25 Sous. Tho' their Country be very plentiful in all Things, yet there is no Fleſh that they eſteem ſo much as Dogs Fleſh, which is the greateſt Delicacy at their Feaſts, and is ſold every Month in every City of the Kingdom upon their Market-Days. They have alſo great ſtore of Vines and very good Grapes, but they never make any Wine, but dry the Grapes to make *Aqua vitæ*. They have no Salt, but what is artificial, which is made 2 Ways. 1. They raiſe great Heaps of that green Stuff that ſwims on the Top of ſtanding Waters, which the Ducks and Frogs eat. This they dry and burn, and the Aſhes thereof being boil'd in a Cloth in Water, become very good Salt; but the moſt uſual Way is to take the Leaves of *Adam's* Fig-Tree, which being dry'd and burnt, the Aſhes thereof make a Salt ſo tart, that it is impoſſible to eat it, till the Saltneſs be taken away, which they do by putting the Aſhes into the Water, and ſtirring them up and down 10 or 12 Days together, and then they ſtrain the Subſtance through a Cloth, and boil it, for as the Water boils away, the Bottom thickens, and when the Water is all boil'd away, they find at the Bottom a very good and white Salt. Of the Aſhes of theſe Fig-Leaves they alſo make a Ley, with which they waſh their Silks, which makes them as white as Snow, but they have not Leaves enough to whiten half the Silk that grows in the Country.

Grapes.

Salt made of Herbs.

Ley to whiten Silk.

In the City of *Kenneroofe* the King of *Aſem* keeps his Court. This King requires no Subſidies of his People, for all the Mines in the Kingdom are his own, and for the Eaſe of his Subjects he has none but Slaves that work in them, ſo that all the Natives of *Aſem* live at their Eaſe, and every one has his Houſe by himſelf, and in the midſt of his Ground a Fountain encompaſſed with Trees, and moſt commonly every one an Elephant to carry their Wives, for they have 4 Wives, and when they marry them, they ſay to them, *I take thee to ſerve me in ſuch a Thing*; and to another, *I take thee to do ſuch a Buſineſs*; ſo that every one of the Wives knowing what ſhe has to do in the Houſe, there is no Difference among them. The Men and Women are generally well complexion'd, only thoſe that live more Southerly are ſwarthy and ſubject to Wens in their Throats, nor are they ſo well featur'd, and the Women are ſomething flat noſed. In the Southern Parts the People go ſtark naked, only covering their private Parts, with a Bonnet upon their Heads like a Blue-Cap, hung about with Swines Teeth. They make large Holes in their Ears, that you may thruſt your Thumb in, and hang in them Pieces of Gold and Silver. Bracelets alſo of Tortoiſe-Shells and Sea-Shells as long as an Egg, which they ſaw into Circles, are in great Eſteem among the meaner ſort, as Bracelets of Coral and yellow Amber are among the Richer. When they bury a Man, all his Friends and Relations muſt come to the Burial, and when they lay the Body in the Ground, they all take off their Bracelets from their Arms and Legs and bury them with the Corps. In the City of *Azoo* are the Tombs of the Kings of *Aſem*, and of all the Royal Family, for tho' they are Idolaters they never burn their dead Bodies, but bury them. They believe, that the Dead do all go into another World, and that they that have liv'd well in this have Plenty of all Things, but they who have been ill Livers ſuffer the Want of all Things, being in a more eſpecial manner afflicted with Hunger and Drought, and that therefore 'tis good to bury ſomething with them to ſerve them in their Neceſſity. For this Reaſon their Kings build themſelves in their Life-times Chappels in the great Pagod to be buried in, wherein they ſtore up great Sums of Gold and Silver, and other Movables of Value. Beſides, when they bury any of their Kings, they bury with him likewiſe whatever he eſteem'd moſt precious in his Life-time, whether it be an Idol of Gold or Silver, or whatever elſe, that being needful in this, is alſo neceſſary in the Life to come. But that which favours moſt of Barbariſm is this, that when any King dies, all his beſt beloved Wives and the principal Officers of his Houſe poiſon themſelves to be buried with him, and to wait upon him in the other World; as alſo, they bury one Elephant, 12 Camels, 6 Horſes, and a good Number of Hounds, believing, that all thoſe Creatures riſe again to ſerve their King. 'Tis thought, theſe were the People that firſt invented Guns and Powder, and that the Invention ſpreading it ſelf firſt into *Pegu*, and then into *China*, where it became known in the World, the *Chineſe* were thought to be the Inventors of them. Their Powder is very ſmall, and round like ours in *Europe*, and very ſtrong.

Many Wives.

The People

Ornaments.

Their Burials.

Their Kings Tombs.

His Attendance into the other World.

Guns invented.

This Kingdom enjoy'd a profound Peace for 500 Years, till *Margimola*, General of *Aureng-Zeb's* Armies, knowing that when his Maſter was ſettled on his Throne in Peace, he ſhould be in no Requeſt, undertook to conquer it for his Maſter. The greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Siam* lies between the Gulf of *Siam* and the Gulf of *Bengal*, bordering upon *Pegu* toward the N. and the *Peninſula of Malucca* towards the S. The ſhorteſt and neareſt Way for the *Europeans* to go to this Kingdom, is to go firſt to *Ijpahan*, the chief City of *Perſia*, and then by *Ormus*, *Surat* and *Golconda*, to *Maſulipatan*, there to embark for *Denouſerin*, which is one of the Ports belonging to the Kingdom of *Siam*, from whence to *Siam*, the Capital City of the Kingdom, is 25 Days Journey, part by Water and part by Land, which you may travel either by Waggon or Elephants. Both Ways are very dangerous, for by Land you muſt be always upon your Guard, for fear of Tygers and Lions; and by Water, by reaſon of the many Falls of the River, they are forced to hoiſe up their Boats with Engines. All the Country of *Siam* is very plentiful in Rice and Fruits, the Chiefeſt of which are Mango's, Durions and Manguſtans. The Foreſts are full of Harts, Elephants, Rhinoſeros's, and Apes, in which alſo there grow large Bambous in great abundance: Under the Knots of theſe Bambous are Emmets Neſts as big as a Man's Head, where every Emmet has an Apartment by himſelf, but there is but one Hole into the Neſt. They make their Neſts in theſe Canes to preſerve themſelves from the Rains, which continue there 4 or 5 Months together. In the Night-time the Serpents are very buſie: There are ſome 2 Foot long, with 2 Heads, but one of them has no Motion. There is another Creature in *Siam* like our Salamander, with a forked Tail and very venomous.

The King of Siam.

The neareſt way thither.

Dangerous Ways.

Emmets Neſts.

Serpents.

The Rivers of this Kingdom are very large, and that which runs by *Siam* is of a proportionable Bigneſs. The Water is very wholeſome, but is very full of Crocodiles of a monſtrous Bigneſs, that devour Men if they be not mighty careful of themſelves. Theſe Rivers overflow their Banks, while the Sun is in the Southern Tropick, which makes the Fields to be very fertile as far as they flow; and 'tis obſerved, that the Rice grows either higher or lower, as the Flouds do more or leſs increaſe.

Great Crocodiles.

Siam the Capital City of the Kingdom, and Reſidence of the King, is Walled round, and is about 3 Lgs. in Compaſs: It is ſituate in a kind of Iſland, the River running quite round it, and might eaſily be brought into every Street of the Town, if the King would lay out as much Money upon ſo good a Work as he ſpends in Temples and Idols. The *Siameſe* have 33 Letters in their Alphabet, but they write from the Left Hand to the Right, as we do, contrary to the Cuſtom of *Japan*, *China*, *Cochin-China* and *Tunquin*, who write from the Right to the Left. All the Natives of the Kingdom are Slaves, either to the King or great Lords. The Women as well as the Men do cut their Hair, and neither of them are very Rich in their Habits. Among their Complements, the chiefeſt is never to go before a Perſon whom they reſpect, unleſs they firſt ask Leave, which they do by lifting up of both their Hands. Thoſe that are rich have ſeveral Wives. The King of *Siam* hath ſeveral ſorts of Coin, as one in Gold, which weighs 18 Grains more than an half Piſtole, and much of the ſame Goodneſs: Another of Silver of the Bigneſs of a large Hazle Nut, flatted on the 4 Sides like a Semi-Circle, 3 Sides whereof are open like an Horſe-Shooe, and upon 2 Sides are certain of their own Letters. There is no Money in the Eaſt ſo ſtrangely coined as this: It weighs 3 Drachms and an half, and 25 Grains, and is as good Silver as ours. A 3d ſort of Money is Copper; of theſe Pieces they give 200 for one Piece of Silver: The ſmalleſt Money they make uſe of, is, certain Shells, which they gather up upon the Sea-ſhore, about the *Maldives*.

The City of Siam.

Native Slaves.

The C

The King of *Siam* is one of the richeſt Monarchs in the Eaſt, and ſtyles himſelf *King of Heaven and Earth*, tho' he be Tributary to the King of *China*. He ſeldom ſhews himſelf to any of his Subjects, and never gives Audience to any but the principal Favourites of

King of Siam.

of his Court, truſting the Management of his Affairs to his Miniſters of State, who make very bad uſe ſometimes of their Authority. He never ſhews himſelf in publick above twice a Year, and then it is with extraordinary Magnificence; the 1ſt is, when he goes to a certain Pagod within the City, which is gilded all over, both within and without; in it are 3 Idols between 6 and 7 Foot high, all of Maſſie Gold, which he believes that he renders Propitious to him by the great Store of Alms, which he diſtributes among the Poor, and the Preſents which he makes to the Prieſts. Then he goes attended by all his Court, clad with the richeſt Ornaments he hath. One part of his Magnificence conſiſts in his Train of 200 Elephants, among which there is one White, which he ſo highly eſteems, that he ſtyles himſelf King of the White Elephant. The ad time that the King ſhews himſelf, is when he goes to another Pagod 5 or 6 Lgs. above the Town, and up the River, but none muſt enter into it, but the King and his Prieſts. The People as ſoon as they ſee the Door open'd, muſt preſently fall upon their Faces to the Earth. Then the King appears upon the River with 200 Gallies of a prodigious Length, 400 Rowers belonging to every one of the Gallies, moſt of them being gilded and carved very richly. Now becauſe this Appearance is in *Nov.* when the Waters begin to abate, the Prieſts make the People believe, that the King by his Prayers and Offerings ſtops the Courſe of the Water, and cutting the Waters with his Sabre or Skain, cauſes it to retire into the Sea. Theſe 2 Pagods, to which the King goes publickly, are adorn'd with ſeveral tall Pyramids well gilded: In that Pagod in the Town to which the King goes once a Year, there is 4000 Idols, and that which is ſome Lgs. off is adorn'd with Pyramids all round it, ſo beautiful, that they make the Induſtry of the Nation admirable. The King alſo goes, but *incognito*, to another Pagod in an Iſland where the *Dutch* have a Factory. At the Entry of it is an Idol ſitting croſs-Legg'd, with one Hand upon his Knee, and the other Arm a kimbo. It is above 60 Foot high, and round about this Idol are 300 others of ſeveral Sorts and Seizes, all of them gilt. And indeed there are almoſt innumerable Pagods in the Country, becauſe every rich *Siameſe* cauſes one to be built in Memory of himſelf. Theſe Pagods have Stiples and Bells, and the Walls within are painted and guilded, but the Windows are ſo narrow, that they give a very dim Light.

Idols.

The King's Elephants.

Pagods very numerous

When the King comes abroad, all the Doors and Windows of the Houſes muſt be ſhut, and all the People proſtrate themſelves upon the Ground, not daring to lift up their Eyes; and becauſe no Perſon is to be in an higher Place than the King, they that are within Doors are bound to keep their loweſt Rooms. When he cuts his Hair, one of his Wives performs that Office, for he will not ſuffer a Barber to come near him. This Prince hath a paſſionate Love for Elephants, which he looks upon as the Ornament of his Kingdom. If any of them fall ſick, the Lords of the Court are careful to recover it, and if it die, they bury it with the ſame Ceremonies and Pomp, as one of the Nobles of the Kingdom, *viz.* They burn it to Aſhes with ſweet Woods in a *Mauſoleum*, or Tomb made of Reeds, and the Aſhes they preſerve in Gold and Silver Urns. As for Offenders, they never burn them, but bury them.

His Love of Elephants.

The Prieſts and Bonzes

The Prieſts of this Kingdom, called *Bonzes*, are thought to be above 200, and are highly reverenced, as well at Court, as by the People. The King himſelf hath ſuch a high Value for ſome of them, as to humble himſelf before them, which extraordinary Reſpect makes them ſo proud, that ſome of them have aſpired to the Throne; but when the King diſcovers any ſuch Ambition in them he puts them to Death, as he did one lately.

Their Cloathing.

Theſe *Bonzes* are cloathed in Yellow, with a little Red Cloth about their Waſte like a Girdle. Outwardly they are very modeſt, and are never ſeen to be angry. About 4 in the Morning, upon the Tolling of their Bells, they riſe to Prayers, which they repeat again towards the Evening. Upon certain Days in the Year they retire from all Converſe with Men, ſome of them live by Alms, others have Houſes with good Revenues. While they wear the Habit of *Bonzes* they muſt not marry, but if they will, they muſt lay that aſide. They are generally very ignorant, not knowing what they believe, yet they hold the Tranſmigration of Souls into ſeveral Bodies. They are forbid to kill any Creature, but they will eat what others kill, or is found dead, without any Scruple. They ſay, that the God of the Chriſtians and theirs were Brothers, but theirs was the eldeſt. If you ask them where their God is, they ſay, that he is vaniſh'd away, and they know not where he is.

Their Diverſion.

Their Dotrines.

The chief Strength of the Kingdom is their Infantry, which is pretty Good, their Soldiers being uſed to Hardſhip by going quite naked, except their Privities; yet their Skins are ſo cut and carved into the Figures of Beaſts and Flowers, into which they have put ſuch Colours as they pleaſe, that will never come out, that at a Diſtance you would think that they are clad in ſome flower'd Sattin or other. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, Pike and Musket, and an *Azagaya*, or Staff, 5 or 6 Foot long, with a long Iron-Spike at the End, which they very dexterouſly dart at the Enemy.

Their Infantry.

The Kingdom of *Macaſſar*, otherwiſe called the Iſle of *Celebes*, begins at the 1 5 D. of Southern Latitude. The Heats are very exceſſive all Day, but the Nights are temperate enough. The Soil is very fertile, but the People have not the Art of Building. The Capital City bears the ſame Name with the Iſle, and lies by Sea. The Port is free, and the Veſſels that bring great Quantities of Goods from the adjacent Iſlands pay no Cuſtom. The Iſlanders have a Cuſtom to poiſon their Arrows with the Juice of a certain Tree in the Iſland of *Borneo*, and they will temper it ſo, as to work ſlow or ſwift, as they pleaſe, and they can make it ſo ſtrong, as that no Art can ſave the Perſon or Beaſt wounded with them, unleſs by a Remedy, which their King only knows, and keeps as a great Secret.

The King of *Macaſſar*

Poiſon

The King of *Macaſſar* is a *Mahometan*, but it muſt be imputed to the Fault of the Jeſuits; for the King being willing to leave his Idolatry, and not knowing well which part to take, being ſollicited by the *Jeſuits* and *Mahometans* at the ſame time to come over to their Religion, commanded the *Mahometans* to ſend for 2 or 3 of their moſt able *Moullahs*, or Doctors of their Law, from *Mecca*, and ordered the *Jeſuits* to ſend him as many of the moſt learned among them, that he might be inſtructed in both Religions, which they both promiſed to do. The *Mahometans* were more diligent than the *Chriſtians*, for in 8 Months they got 2 learned *Moullahs* from *Mecca*, and the King ſeeing the Jeſuits ſent no Body to him, embraced the *Mahometan* Law, and ſo he continues a *Mahometan*, and now will not ſuffer his Subjects to embrace Chriſtianity. Indeed, in the Year 1656. the Chriſtians obtained a Permiſſion of him to build a fair Church in *Macaſſar*, but in the next Year he cauſed it to be pull'd down, with another belonging to the *Portugueſe*; yet the Secular Prieſts kept up their Pariſh-Church, till the *Dutch*, being angry with the *Portugueſe* Jeſuits in *China*, for defeating their Embaſſie to that Emperor, made War upon *Macaſſar*, to hinder their Trade there, and forced the King to expel all the *Portugueſe* out of the Iſle, ſo that now the whole Kingdom are *Mahometans* or Idolaters.

The King of *Macaſſar*

The Kingdom of *Tunquin* is bounded on the E. by *Canton*, a Province of *China*, on the W. by the Kingdom of *Brama*, on the N. by *Junnan* and *Quanſi*, 2 other Provinces of *China*, and on the S. by *Cochinchina*. The Air is mild and temperate, tho' it lies in the *Torrid Zone*, and the Ground ſo fertile, that there is a continual Spring. Froſt and Snow are never ſeen there, and the Gout, Stone and Peſtilence are Strangers in it. The N. and S. Wind, which continually blow, and divide the Year between them equally, ſo moderate the Heats, that they are not troubleſome; yet once in 7 Years they have hideous and terrible Tempeſts, which make ſtrange Deſolations, pulling up Trees, and blowing down Houſes. Theſe Exhalations are thought by their Aſtrologers to proceed from the Mines in *Japan*.

The King of *Tunquin*

Air.

Tempeſts.

The whole Kingdom is divided into ſeveral Provinces, which together contains, as 'tis ſaid, above 20000 Cities and Towns, tho' many Families, with their Cattel, live always upon the Water in Boats, after the Manner of the *Cochin-Chineſe*. The Country is for the moſt part level, ſave that in the N. there are ſome Hills. It is watered with ſeveral Rivers, ſome of which will carry Veſſels of a good Burthen, and ſo are commodious for Trade. In all the Country grows neither Corn nor Vines, becauſe they never have any Rain but in *June* and *July*, but Rice is produced in vaſt Quantities, which ſupplies the People both with Meat and Drink. They have alſo good *Aqua vitæ*, or

The Cities and Towns.

Rice.

or Strong-Waters. Their Fruits are excellent, but all different from ours. Their Palms bear bigger Nuts than in any Part of *Asia*. They are as bigg as a Man's Hand, and shaped like a Coco, the Pulp is as white as Snow, and tastes like our Almonds, and every one of them yields a considerable Quantity of Liquor, very pleasing and refreshing to the Palate. The Gogovier, which resembles our Lawrel, is of 2 sorts, the one bears a Plumb, green without and red within, but the other a yellowish Fruit, which is in much more Esteem. The Papager bears a Fruit like a small Melon, whose Taste is very delicious. The Arager, which grows upright and tall like the Mast of a Ship, bears Branches only at the Top, and the Fruit is like a Nutmeg. They bruise it with Betle and Chalk, to chew to make their Teeth white, Lips vermilion and Breath sweet. They have Figs of 2 sorts, the one like ours, the other like those called *Adam's* Figs, as long as a Man's Finger. They have a Tree like our Willow, called the Powder-Tree, because of the Wood burnt into Charcoal they make Gun-Powder. The Jambager grows very high, and bears a Fruit resembling a Citrul-Cucumber, which has a Pulp like a Granate, and is very pleasant in their hot Seasons. Their High ways are planted with Warr-Trees, which are a great Convenience for Travellers, for some of them are so big, that 2 or 3000 Men may shelter themselves under them, some of their Branches being 300 Paces long, and supported at every 12 Foot with certain Under-Branches, which having taken Root, uphold them like a Pillar. The Nuts of them, which are no larger than a Wall-nut, have a Kernel like Millet, which serves only for Food for the Rere-Mice, which make their Nests there. They have Bodies as big as a Pullet, and the *Portuguese* prefer them before it. They have a certain sort of Birds-Nests, as big as a Swallow's, which they dissolve in Water for Sawces to all their Delicacies. They give a Flavour above all the Spices of the *East-Indies* put together. They are found only in the 4 Islands belonging to *Cochin-china*. The *Tunquinese* also catch abundance of Tortoises in the Sea adjoining, which they not only count excellent Food, and think they cannot treat their Friends as they ought to do without them, but pickle them up, and send them abroad, which causes a Trade among them.

Tunquin affords great store of Anana's and Orang-Trees, which are of 2 sorts, the one no bigger than Apricocks, the other bigger than *Portugal* Oranges, both well tasted alike, and plentiful for 6 Months. Their Citrons, which are both green and yellow, are too tart to be eaten, but the Juice is made use of to cleanse Copper, Tin and Iron for Guilding, as also to scour Silks, whiten Linen, and take out Spots. In *Moguliſtan* they will make their Calicuts so white with the Juice of these Citrons, as to dazzle your Eyes. Great Quantities of Silk are made in this Country, of which both Rich and Poor make their Garments, and the *Hollanders* transport many into *China*. They have but one sweet smelling Flower, called the *Bague*, which grows like a Nosegay. They have great store of Sugar, and eat very much after their Meals for Digestion, but they eat it out of the Cane, not having a true Art to refine it.

Thro' the whole Kingdom there are neither Lions, Asses, nor Sheep, but their Forests are full of Tigers, Harts and Apes, and their Fields of Oxen, Cows and Hogs. Hens, Ducks and Turtles, which are the general Provisions of their Feasts, are numberless. Their Horses are well shap'd, and the King always keeps 5 or 600 of them in his Stables. Their Elephants are of a prodigious Bigness, there are none so tall and nimble as they in all *Asia*: The King keeps 5 or 600 of them for his Service in his Palace and Wars. They have no Cats, but their Dogs destroy their Rats and Mice, which are very large and mischievous. They have very few Birds, but such Multitudes of Gnats, that they are very troublesome at Nights, as well by their Noise as Stinging. They drive them away with the Smoke of Rice-Chaff. But the greatest Inconvenience of the Country are the white Emmets, whose biting raises Blisters on the Skin, for their Teeth are so sharp that they'll gnaw a Post in two in a little time, and eat thro' a Bale of Silk in 24 Hours, as if it were cut in two.

They have no Mines of Gold or Silver in *Tunquin*, neither do they coin any Money. The chief Commodities of this Country are, besides the Silk above-mention'd, Lignum Aloes, of which there is some worth 1000 Crowns the Pound, being oily and good. All the *Mahometans* use it to perfume their Beards and Rooms at Visits; and therefore the *Portuguese* of *Goa* sent, as a rare Present to the Emperor of *Japan*, a Piece of Lignum Aloes 6 Foot long and round, worth 54000 Livres. The *Tunquineses* are very faithful and frank in their Dealing, very unlike their Neighbours the *Chinese*, who will cheat you if they can; and if they are at any time over reached, will pay in light Money, for they are blunt and plain. Having no Money they make use in Trade of Ingots of Gold, and Bars of Silver, which they have from *China* and *Japan* for their Silks. They are worth from 300 to 600 Livres, and therefore in small Payments they either cut them in Pieces, or pay in *Spanish* Reals.

The Forces of this King for War are prodigious, his usual Army is 12000 Horse, 2000 Elephants, as well to carry the King's and Nobility's Tents and Baggage, as for the Service of the Wars; 300000 Foot, and 300 Gallies, and sometimes it amounts to 500000 Men. The Condition of the Soldiery is very toilsome and laborious, they are always upon the Guard, or attending their Captains in looking after the King's Elephants, and so breeding them that they may not be afraid of Fire; or in building Places of Shelter for the King's Gallies in Winter; yet their Wages are so small, that they can't maintain their Wives and Families, but their Wives are forced to follow some Trade to support them. Their Companies consist of 100, or 130 Men, and all the Soldiers are obliged to keep all their Arms very neat and bright.

The People of *Tunquin* are naturally mild and peaceable, submitting easily to Reason, and condemning the Transports of Choler. They esteem the Manufactures of other Countries more than their own, yet love to live at Home to honour the Memories of their Ancestors. Their Speech is soft and pleasing, they have good Memories, and are fluid in their Discourse. They have good Poets among them, and their People generally love Learning. Both Men and Women are well proportion'd, but of an Olive Complexion, and therefore much admire the Whiteness of the *Europeans*. Their Hair is black, and they wear it very long, but well combed, and tied upon the Crown of their Heads, or about their Necks to keep it from fluttering in their Faces. The blackest Teeth and longest Nails they accounted fairest: Their Habit is grave and modest, being a long Robe for both Sexes, girt about with a Silken Girdle, mixed with Gold and Silver. The Soldiers wear an upper Garment which reaches no farther than their Knees, and Breeches that go down to the Mid-Leg, but have neither Hose nor Shoocs. The vulgar People, except in the City, where the King's Court is, work 3 Months at the King's Palace, and 2 Months for the *Mandarins*, or great Lords: The rest of the Year is left to themselves to work for themselves and Families: One Day in the Year they are also obliged to lop Trees to feed the Elephants.

Their Rivers are free from Crocodiles and other dangerous Animals, which haunt the Waters of the *Nile* and *Ganges*, but yet once a Year they overflow their Banks after the Rains, with that terrible Violence, that they carry away whole Towns and Villages along with them.

The *Tunquineses* cannot marry without the Consent of their Parents, or if they be dead, the Permission of their nearest Kindred, and the Allowance of the Governour of the Place, where the Marriage is made, for which the Man must pay a certain Sum limited by Law. The People are very industrious here, and all the Money the Maids get before Marriage, is to buy them 2 or 3 handsome Garments, a Neck-lace of Coral, or yellow Amber, and Beads to garnish their Locks, and for their Portions. There is no Wedding without a great Feast, the poorer Sort for 3 Days at least, if they are able, and others for 9. The Law of the Land permits the Man to divorce his Wife when he pleases, which they many times do for slight Causes; but the Woman has not the same Privilege, and if she desire it, obtains it with Difficulty, but the Man is bound to restore the Woman what she brought with her, and keep the Children begotten between them; but now Divorces are not half so frequent as formerly. Adulteresses are punished here very severely, the Offender being cast to an Elephant bred up for that Purpose, who throws them up into the Air, and then tramples them under Feet till they are dead.

Fidelity in Traffick.

The King's Army.

The Soldiers Labours.

Their Manners.

Their Speech

Black Teeth.

Great Flood

Their Marriages.

Divorce

Adulteresses punish'd

Of all the Eastern People the *Tunquineses* are most sociable, and most frequently visit one another. Generally they make their Visits about Noon, with a Train suitable to their Condition. The Princes and *Mandarins* ride on Elephants, or are carried in Pallekies, and their Train is 50 or 60 Persons. The ordinary Gentry and Officers of Court ride on Horseback, and are not allow'd above 7 or 8 Servants to attend them. They chew Betle continually where it is to be had, and at their Visits always present their Friends with some at taking Leave, and the richer the Box is the greater is the Present esteem'd.

Their Visits.

Chewing Betle.

Among the *Tunquineses* it is a great Dishonour to have the Head bare, for they shave all Criminals; and if any Person be found without Hair, they apprehend him, and carry him to the Governour, who causes him to be nail'd to a Cross immediately. They sit cross-legg'd, as the rest of the *Asiaticks*, but instead of Carpets they use Matts, made of Reeds, as fine as Threads, and as soft as Velvet, which they lay upon Beds, and not on the Ground, as the *Persians* and other *Indians* do.

They are not curious in their Diet, but very neat in dressing it. The common People are contented with Rice boil'd in Water, dry'd Fish and salt Eggs, (for they eat Flesh only at their Festivals) but the Great Lords are serv'd every Day with Flesh and Fish, but they know not how to bake any thing. All their Meat is cut in little Pieces, and serv'd up in little lacker'd Plates, less than our Trenchers. They use no Napkins or Table-Cloths, Knives, Forks or Spoons, but only 2 Sticks to take up their Meat, for they never touch it with their Hands. They wash their Hands, Mouths and Faces before they sit down to Meat, but never after their Meals. They are usually silent at Table, but if they have a mind to discourse, the eldest begins first, for they much honour the Aged. When they would know whether any Person has eaten sufficiently, they ask him, whether he has eaten his Rice, meaning thereby the whole Repast, as the Scripture does by Bread. They never ask any Man how he does, but how he eat his Dinner; for the more a Man eats, the better they suppose him to be in Health.

Their Diet.

Their Manner of Eating.

Their Salutation.

They take much Delight in Comedies, which are usually acted upon the New Moon, and last all Night. They set up their Theatres in great Halls, and adorn their Stages with beautiful Machines and Scenes. They have seldom more Actors than 8, either Men or Women, and they are very magnificently clad. They act their Parts perfectly well, and observe an exact Time in their Dancing. Their ordinary Pastimes, especially for the Lords and *Mandarins*, are Fishing and Hunting. In the former they take the greater Pleasure, because their Rivers are full of Fish; but they never follow their Sports but upon certain Days, when they may be spared from their Business.

Their Comedies.

The *Tunquineses* are Lovers of Learning, and apply themselves to their Studies with Diligence. Their Learning consists in the Knowledge of the Laws of their Country, Mathematicks and Astronomy. They are Admirers of Poetry and Musick, and are accounted the greatest Artists in them of all the People of the East. To acquire Nobility by Learning they study hard for 8 Years in the Office of a Notary Proctor, or Advocate, and if upon a strict Examination they are found to understand their Office so well, as to answer all Questions about it, their Names are presented to the King, who grants them a Title of the *Synde*. Having arrived at this Degree, they are order'd to study Musick, Astrology, Poetry and Mathematicks 5 Years, and if upon a second Examination they answer all Questions put to them in those Sciences, they are raised to the Dignity of a *Doucan*. After this they must spend 4 Years more to write and read the *Chinese* Character to such a Number of Words (for to know or write it fully is almost impossible, 'tis so copious) and understand the Laws and Customs of the *Chinese*, and after a strict Examination by all the *Mandarins* of Learning and *Tansi's* or Noblemen, for 8 Days, if they answer well, they arrive at the Degree of a *Tansi*, and are received into the Rank of the Nobility, and the King gives them certain Towns to take the Rents, but to some more and others less, according to their Merit, or the Prince's Favour, and the King gives them a Vest of Sattin. Then they go to visit their Towns given them by the King, where they are received in a guilded *Branquar* with Musick, and they stay 3 Months for their Recreation, and then they return to Court to instruct themselves in the Affairs of the Kingdom and Palace, and arrive at the Dignity of a *Mandarin*. In the mean time, their Names being written upon large Tables, are set upon the Gate of the Kings Palace 8 Days, that all the People may know who are received into the Rank of the Nobility.

Their Learning.

Nobility acquired by Learning.

The Physicians of *Tunquin* study Books but little, but spend their Youth in searching into the Vertues of Roots and Simples, and how to apply them to every Distemper, which they judge of by the Beating of the Pulse and its Diversity of Measure, as by the Pulse of the Right-Hand they guess at the Condition of the Lungs, and by that of the Arm of the Distemper of the Stomach and Kidneys; by the Pulse of the Left-Hand they judge of the Condition of the Heart, and by that of the Arm of the State of the Liver, and by the Pulse of the Temples, both Right and Left, they give a more exquisite Judgment of the Kidneys. They carefully count how many times the Pulse of a sick Person beats in the Space of one Breathing, and according to these several Pulses they will tell you which Part of the Body is particularly distemper'd, whether the Heart, Liver or Lungs, or whether it proceed from any outward Cause. They generally give Decoctions of Herbs and Roots, with a little Ginger. They use *China* Ink to stop a Dysentery and for the Cure of Wounds, and give the Powder of Crabs in Dysenteries and Fevers in Water, sometimes in *Aqua vitæ*. They prescribe Tea, which comes to them from *China* and *Japan*, as an excellent Remedy against the Head-Ach and Gravel, and with a little Ginger for the Griping of the Guts. That is accounted the best Tea which colours the Water greenest, for that which colours it red is little accounted of. Against the Afflictions which proceed from the bad Airs and cold Winds they use a Counter-poison, mix'd with *Aqua vitæ*, in which also they dip a Cloth, and rub the Patient well. But in this they boil a little Ginger, and for a more speedy Cure they sweat the Patient in a Cloud of Frankincense. They never use Blood-letting, and in the Purple-Fever they use Fire, and sometimes pricking every Spot. The Spot being burnt will give a Whiff like a Squib, which is an infallible Sign that the Venom is gone out of the Body; but the Physician must take care it doth not enter his own, for then Death certainly follows. If the Spot be prick'd to let out the Pestilential Blood, they burn it and then rub it with Ginger, nor permitting the Patient to take Air in 20 Days, or eat any Flesh or Butter. These Remedies are effectual to a Wonder, and cure in a short time.

The Physicians and their Art.

Their Medicines.

Their Sweats.

Bleeding.

Their Sickness.

The Kingdom of *Tunquin* was anciently a part of *China*, but has been for 600 Years governed by its own Kings. The first that assumed the Title of King was a Robber, named *Din*, who heading a great Number of Male-Contents, gain'd several bloody Battles over the *Chinese*, and seiz'd the Province for his Kingdom. The People did not permit him to reign long in Peace, but rising against him, slew him, and tho' he left 2 Sons, yet they reigned but a few Years successively, and died without Issue. The Kingdom after their Death was miserably distracted with Civil Wars, till the *Chinese* being called in to assist the weaker Party, brought Things to a Settlement, and a *Mandarin* of the Family of *Lelequel* was advanced to the Throne. He being a valiant and prudent Prince, restored Peace and Order to the Kingdom, and after he was establish'd built an admirable Palace of Marble of divers Colours, and very large. He left one Daughter to succeed him, and she, to secure herself, married a powerful *Mandarin* of the House of *Tran*; but she being deposed and slain by her rebellious Subjects, the *Chinese* again seized the Government, and held it 20 Years. They set Governours over every Province, and laid heavy Tribute upon the People; so that being weary of the Oppression, they joined under a valiant Captain of the House of *Le*, and vanquished the *Chinese* in 3 Battles, seated him on the Throne, and in his Family the Government continued above 80 Years. The last of this Race having given an Affront to a great Lord of the House of *Marr*, which had formerly enjoy'd the Scepter, he being assisted by a great Number of Male-Contents, fought to regain the Kingdom, and in one bloody Battle became Master of it; but he enjoy'd it not above 2 Years, being deposed by one of the Family of *Trin*, who refusing to ascend the Throne, restored it to the Family of *Le*, yet reserving to himself and Family the whole Command of the Army and Disposal of all the Revenues of the State.

The King's Kingdom.

An admirable Palace.

Chinese Governours.

State, and all publick Affairs, ſo that the King, whom they call *Boua*, has the Name, Title and State, but the General, whom they call *Choua*, has the Power. The King hears Cauſes almoſt every Day, but makes no publick Edict which is of any Effect, till it is ſign'd by the *Choua*. He lives ſhut up in his Palace, and ſtirs not out but upon certain Days. He has generally 2000 Soldiers for his Guard, and keeps ſometimes 20000 quarter'd upon his Frontiers, eſpecially towards *Cochin-China*, and with them 50 Elephants. Upon the Rivers alſo of the Kingdom where any Enemy can damage him, he keeps uſually 100 great Gallies, with a vaſt Company of ſmall Galliots. The eldeſt Children here do not always ſucceed their Father in the Throne, but by the Influence of the *Choua* and Counceſſors his Creatures, he is obliged to name which of his Sons he will have to reign after him, if he has many, and him they promiſe to eſtabliſh, ſhutting up all the reſt in the Palace, as in a Priſon, and not ſuffering them to meddle with Affairs of State, yet 4 times a Year they are allow'd to go out under an Officer appointed by the *Choua*, and have Liberty to ſtay 6 Days. On the firſt they are to viſit the Temples and Prieſts, and give them large Alms; the next 2 Day's they hunt, and the 3 laſt fiſh.

Their King called *Boua*.

His Gallies.

Their Succeſſion to the Throne.

The Kingdom of *Tunquin* is divided into Eight large Provinces, every one of which has its Governour and Magiſtrates, but there lies an Appeal from their Sentence to the King, his 32 Counſellors and 100 Aſſiſtants. Their Nobility attain that Degree by Merit only, *viz.* By their Valour in the Wars and Learning, and as theſe latter go thro' a long Courſe of Studies and ſtrict Examinations, as is above ſhewn, ſo the former are inſtructed in Warlike Exerciſes betimes, *viz.* To handle their Swords, to aim with their Bows, to fire a Musket, to ride the great Horſe, to ſhoot running, to manage their *Zagays*, which are long Staves cheek'd with Iron like a Half-Pcke, and make all ſorts of artificial Fire-Works, which they uſe againſt Elephants in War; for tho' ſome Elephants may be taught not to regard them, tho' they go off under their Noſes or Bellies, yet one in 10 cannot be brought to it, ſo that, unleſs the Governours take great Care, inſtead of running upon the Enemy, they'll turn upon their Friends, and put a whole Army into a diſmal Confuſion, if not deſtroy it, as they did *Aureng-Zeb*'s at the Siege of *Daman*.

The Provinces and Governours.

Elephants hated by Fire-works.

The Kingdom of *Tunquin* paid a Tribute to the *Chineſe* till the Year 1667. when the *Tartars* invaded their Country, and then they concluded a Peace with them, that they ſhould ſend every Year an Ambaſſador to *Pequin*, to do Homage to the Emperor of *China*.

They obſerve an exact Order in adminiſtring Juſtice and regulating Affairs all over the Kingdom. They are very exact in puniſhing Murther, and none can eſcape, but ſuch as have killed one that has no Relations to revenge his Death; for the King can pardon no Man for this Crime, and all the Favour he can ſhew, is to leave him to the Kindred of the Slain. They have great Care for the publick Good, to repair Bridges and High-Ways, and every Quarter of a Lg. there is Water and Fire provided for Travellers that want them. Tho' the King has not much Power in his Kingdom, yet he is highly honoured by his Subjects, and keeps a very ſplendid Court. The 1ſt and 15th Day of every Month all the *Mandarins*, except the General, who is allowed to ſend his Deputy, come in their *Chineſe* Habits to kiſs the King's Hand, as the inferior *Mandarins*, who are Governours of Provinces, Juſticiaries and Military Officers do the *Choua's* on the 1ſt Day of the Year. All that deſire to ſee the King are obliged to put on Violet Robes, both themſelves and their Servants, and if they beg any Favour muſt carry a Preſent. On the 1ſt Day of the New Year the King diſtributes ſeveral Largeſſes and Gifts to his Courtiers, and the Children of ſuch as have done him any important Services, which are Panes of Gold, worth 600 Livres each, and Bars of Silver of 46 Livres value each. He alſo releaſes all Priſoners, both Criminal and Debtors, provided their Crimes do not deſerve Death, and the Debts do not exceed 2 Bars of Silver. The 3 laſt Days of the Year the 4 *Mandarins*, who are the chief Councellors of State, take Oaths of all the Lords and Officers of the Court, and their Wives, to be faithful to the King, and diſcover any Treaſon againſt his Perſon and Government; and the Governours of Cities and Countries the ſame to the Lords, Gentlemen, Citizens and Inhabitants of their Juriſdictions; and every one that diſcovers any Treaſon, never fails of a Reward according to his Quality, and mean People are ennobled and gratified with a Reward of 50 Panes of Gold, and 500 Bars of Silver, which amounts to 53000 Livres, but they eſteem Nobility above Money.

Their Juſtice.

The King much reſpected.

His Gifts on New-Year's Day.

Oath of Allegiance.

They have a Muſter of the Youth every Year, and all ſuch as are found not to be either of the Nobility, or not to have learnt a Trade, are immediately enrolled for the King's Service, to be of his Guards, or defend his Frontiers: Some will endeavour to get off by Money, but if they be diſcovered, both Officers and Soldiers are puniſhed without Redemption; for they hang a little Bell about their Necks, and fetter their Arms, and ſo ſend them to the General, who preſently orders their Heads to be ſtricken off, or upon Interceſſion of Friends, that they ſhall be hang'd, becauſe they are very averſe to Blood-ſhed, and believe that Death moſt honourable that is free from it.

The Youth muſtered.

When the King goes at any time out of his Palace to take his Pleaſure, he is ſeated upon a moſt magnificent Palanquin, carried by 8 Men, where he is ſeen by all the People, the Lords and Officers of the Court attending on Foot, if he goes no further than the City, but if he goes into the Country, he rides on an Elephant, and the Lords attend him on Horſe-back. When the Queen-Mother, or his 1ſt Wife go abroad, they are likewiſe carried upon a cloſe Palanquin, with Lattice-Windows, that they may ſee and not be ſeen, and the Maids of Honour follow it on Foot.

How the King goes abroad.

The *Mandarins* and great Princes ſolemnize their Birth-days every Year with great Feaſtings, Paſtimes, Comedies and Fire-works, and at the ſame time give large Alms, eſpecially to poor Widows and Priſoners.

Their Birth-days kept.

When the King dies and leaves ſeveral Sons, he is ſet up, whom the King has appointed his Succeſſor; and on the 3d Day after his Deceaſe, the General with all the Military *Mandarins*, Lords of the Council, and Governours of Provinces repair to the Prince's Apartment, where they preſent him with a *Chineſe* Habit, and mounting him upon an Elephant, bring him into one of the great Courts of the Palace, which is cover'd with Cloth of Gold and Silver, as a Tent, and place him upon a magnificent Throne, where being ſeated, all the *Mandarins* proſtrate themſelves to him upon the Earth, with their Heads downward, in which Poſture having lain ſometime they riſe, and cloſing their Hands together, with their Arms and Eyes lifted up towards Heaven, they ſwear to be faithful to him till Death. The new King to requite this Loyalty orders 4 Panes of Gold and 6 Bars of Silver to be given to every one; but to the Conſtable or General he gives 2 Panes of Gold, and 40 Bars of Silver, and to the Preſident of the Council half as much: After theſe Preſents are given, ſeveral Pieces of Artillery are fired about the Palace, with ſome Volleys of Small-ſhot by the Soldiers then in Arms, which are 30000 Horſe and Foot. Then the King ſet upon a magnificent Palanquin carried by 8 Military *Mandarins*, and 8 of the Council, the Conſtable and Chief of the Council riding before upon lovely Horſes, is carried to the Apartments of the deceaſ'd King, where the Lords are retired, the Princeſſes, Ladies of the Court, and chief Wives of the *Mandarins* come to kiſs the King's Hand, and congratulate his Advancement to the Throne, which done, the Lords return to a noble Feaſt, prepared for them after the Manner of the Country. Colts Fleſh and Dogs are in moſt Eſteem with them, and the Birds-Neſts, which gives their Meat a Taſte of almoſt all ſorts of Spices, is their chief Sauſe. The Feſtival is concluded with Comedies and Fire-Works, which laſt all Night. The next Day the 30000 Soldiers are drawn up in the Field, and the King appearing on his War-Elephant in the midſt of his Troops, takes an Oath of Fidelity of all the Officers, and then beſtows his Gifts upon them, *viz.* To every Colonel 2 Panes of Gold and 40 Bars of Silver, to every Captain half as much, and to every Soldier a Month's Pay, which being receiv'd, the whole Army diſcharges 3 Vollies, and then they retreat to their Huts, where they have a Feaſt prepared, as the King has alſo in a Wooden Palace, erected for the ſame Purpoſe, and ſo they ſpend the Night in Feaſting, Dancing and letting off Fire-Works. This Ceremony being ended, they ſet on Fire the Palace and Huts, and the King returning to his Palace, beſtows his Liberality on the Comedians and Dancers. Then he gives Acceſs to all his People by their Commiſſioners, *viz.* To the Merchants and Tradeſmen of *Checo* who aſſure him, that their City acknowledge him

His Gifts to the Soldiers.

The Feaſt upon that Occaſion.

Gifts to the ſoldiery.

him for their King, and will be faithful to him unto Death, and he gives 50 Panes of Gold and 300 Bars of Silver to the Merchants, and 20 Panes of Gold and 100 Bars of Silver to the Tradesmen, and then to the Commonalty of the whole Kingdom, whom he discharges from Taxes a whole Year, if they have never taken up Arms against their King, and but 6 Months if they have.

The Gifts to the People.

All Prisoners for Debt, after he has compounded with the Creditor for half, he frees by paying the rest. 'Tis said, that the King upon this Occation sends above 100000 Beasts to the Temples of the false Gods to be sacrificed for him, besides the Value of a Million of Panes of Gold in Tissues and Silks to adorn the Idols, Orange-coloured Calicuts for the *Bonzes*, and Blue Calicuts for the Poor that are kept in the Pagods, as Hospitals. Sometime after these Ceremonies are over, the King at the New of the Moon goes to give his Deities Thanks for his coming to the Crown, and remains for a Week with the *Bonzes*, living in common with them, visiting the Hospitals to see how the Poor, and especially the Aged, are used, and to them he gives new Alms, and orders the Building of a new Pagod in some fair Situation, which he dedicates to some Idol. The second Quarter of the Moon is spent in seeing the Galleys row one against another, the King and Court having Houses built on the Plains by the River for that Purpose, which Diversion being over, the Captains come ashore to kiss the King's Hand, and they that have behaved themselves most stoutly and nimbly carry the Marks of his Bounty, and he gives all the Soldiers 2 Months Pay extraordinary; during 7 Days there are such vast Numbers of Fire-Works thrown about, that you would think the Air and Water all on Fire. Then the King returns to his Palace, and spends the other Half of the Month with his Princesses, diverting himself and his Ladies with Fire-Works, Comedies and Mummeries.

Prisoners for Debt released.

The King's Devotion.

Gifts to the Soldiers on [illegible]

When the King of *Tunquin* dies, he is presently embalmed and laid in State 65 Days, all which time his Table is served as if he were alive, and when the Meat is taken from before the Body, half is given to the *Bonzes*, and the other half to the Poor. So soon as the King hath breathed out his last Gasp, the Constable gives Notice to the Governours of Provinces, and orders them how long they shall mourn. The Military *Mandarins* mourn generally 3 Years, the King's Houshold 9 Months, the Nobility 6, and meaner sort 3, and all the 3 Years there is a Cessation from all Divertisements, except those that are used at the King's Elevation to the Throne. All the Meats that are serv'd up to the new King are varnish'd with Black, and his Hair is cut off, and his Head covered with a Straw-Bonnet, as are also the Heads of all his Princes and Counsellors of State; nor do they leave this Habit, till the deceased King's Body is put into the Galley to be carried to the Interment, and the 3 Bells which hang in one of the Towers of the Palace never cease Tolling all that time. The 3d Day after his Decease, all the *Mandarins* repair to Court to testifie their Sorrow for the deceased King; and 10 Days after, all the People are allow'd to see the Body lie in State, till it be put into the Galley. During the 65 Days which the King's Body lies in State, the Constable prepares for the Funeral, which is thus performed. The King and all the the Court march on Foot to the Gallies, which they make 17 Days March, tho' 'tis not really above 2 Days Journey, and all the Way is spread with Velvet-colour'd Calicuts, which is the King's Colour. The Order of their March is thus: First go the 2 Ushers of the King's Bed-Chamber with Maces of Arms, the Head of them being full of Fire-Works: They proclaim the Name of the deceased King. Next go 12 Officers of the Gallies, drawing a Tomb, whereon the King's Name is written. Then proceed 12 Elephants, of which 4 carry the King's Standards, Four 6 arm'd Men apiece in Turrets, and 4 were those the King rode on in his Wars. After these rides the Master of the Horse, with 2 Pages after him on Horse-back. Then are led 12 Horses richly harnessed with Bits, Bridles and Saddles. After follows the *Mausoleum*, or Herse, drawn by 8 Stags, train'd up for that Service, every one of them being led by a Captain of his Guard. Then goes the new King, with his Brothers, if he have any, and the Princes of the Blood, all clad in white Sattin, which is their Mourning-Colour. They are attended with Musicians, which play upon Hautboys and other Instruments. After them go 6 Princesses in white Sattin, carrying Meat and Drink for the deceased King. These are attended by as many Ladies of Honour in Purple Garments. Then go 8 Princes of the Royal Blood in Purple Garments, with Straw-Hats. Next proceed 4 Governours of the chief Provinces of the Kingdom, carrying on their Shoulders certain Bags full of Gold and Perfumes, hung on Sticks, which are Presents made by their Provinces to be buried with their King for his Use in the other World. Then follow 2 Chariots, drawn by 8 Horses apiece, led by a Groom each, in which are 2 Coffers, full of Panes of Gold, Bars of Silver, rich Tissues, and other Riches, to be buried with the King's Body for his Use in the other Life: Lastly come a great Croud of the King's Officers and Nobility, some on Foot, others on Horse-back, according to their Offices and Qualities. When the deceased King's Body is put into the Galley, the new King and the Company return home, and the Calicut being taken up, is given to the *Bonzes*. The Galley wherein the King's Body is, is committed to 6 of the chief Eunuchs, who are sworn never to reveal the Place where the King is buried. It is attended with 3 other Gallies, one carries the Lords and another the Ladies who are to be buried alive with the King, to attend him into the other World, and the 3d carries the Treasure that is to be buried with the King for his Use. The King is buried in inaccessible Mountains and Deserts.

The King's Death.

The Mourning [illegible]

The Funeral Pomp and Order.

Music.

As for the ordinary Funerals of the *Tunquinese*, they are more or less pompous, according to the Quality of the Person deceased. At their Interments they use great store of artificial Fire-Works, which they use also in their Times of Joy, as well as Grief. They also set upon the Tomb good store of Victuals and Sweet-Meats, believing that the Dead are the better for them, and the Priests, who nurse them up in the Error, dispose of them before the next Morning. The *Dutch* Soldiers at *Batavia* robbed the Priests of these Dainties several times, but at length paid dear for their Liquorishness, for the Priests finding no Redress by complaining to the Governour, poison'd the Meat and Drink, and so destroy'd many of them.

The Religion of the *Tunquinese* is divided into 3 Sects. The 1st is derived from an ancient Philosopher, called *Confutius*, whose Memory is famous over all *China*, and the Neighbouring Countries. Their Doctrine is, That Man is compos'd of 2 Parts, one fine and subtile, and the other material and gross. When a Man dies, the subtile Part vanishes into the Air, and the gross returns to Earth: They use Sacrifices, and worship the 7 Planets: The chief Idols are *Rauma*, *Betolo*, *Ramonu* and *Brama*; the Women chiefly worship the Goddess *Sarabanti*, and the King, *Mandarins*, and Learned Men adore the Heavens. The 2d Sect was founded by one *Chacalous*, an Hermite, and most of the Common People are of this Sect: He taught his Followers the Transmigration of Souls, and enjoin'd them Commandments, *viz.* That they should not Kill. 2. That they should not Steal. 3. That they should not defile their Bodies. 4. That they should not Lye. 5. That they should not be unfaithful to their Words. 6. That they should restrain their inordinate Desires. 7. That they should do an Injury to no Man. 8. That they should not be great Talkers. 9. That they should not give way to their Anger. 10. That they should labour to their utmost to get Knowledge. As for them that design to lead a Religious Life, they must renounce the Delights of this Life, be charitable to the Poor, overcome their Passions, and give themselves up to Meditation. He taught also, That after this Life there were 10 distinct Places of Joy and Torment, and that the Contemners of his Law should feel Torments proportionable to their Offences without any End. That if they endeavour'd to fulfil his Law, and fail'd in any Point, they should wander in divers Bodies for 3000 Years, before they entred into Happiness, but such as had perfectly obey'd his Law should be rewarded without suffering any Change of Body. He says of himself, That he was born 10 times before he could come to Bliss, because in his Youth he, for want of Knowledge, had sinned. This Impostor's Opinions are spread all over the Kingdom of *Siam*, several Provinces of *Japan*, and all *Tunquin*, where he died. The 3d Sect is that of *Lantsiu*, a great Magician. He gave out, that his Mother carried him in her Womb 70 Years, without losing her Virginity, that by this Miracle he might gain Credit to his Impostures. He taught most of *Chacabaut*'s Doctrin; and to gain the

the People's Hearts, enjoin'd the Grandees to build Hospitals in all Cities where there was none before, and to look after the Sick in them.

Their Houshold Gods.

The *Tunquineſe* adore 3 Things in their Houſes, *viz.* The Hearth of their Chimneys, made of 3 Stones. 2. The Idol *Tieuſa*, who is the Patroneſs of all Handicrafts-men, and to her they ſacrifice when they put a Child to any Trade, that ſhe may infuſe an Aptneſs to learn into it. 3. The Idol *Buabin*, to which they pray and ſacrifice when they build an Houſe, that he may not ſuffer any Misfortune to befal the Houſe they are going to build; but they ſend for the *Bonzes* and *Says* to offer it, for whom they make great Preparations.

Their Gods.

There are ſome among them that adore the Heavens, others the Moon, and others the Stars. Some adore the Earth in 5 Parts, and that in 5 ſeveral Colours, *viz.* The Northern in Black, the Southern in Red, the Eaſt in Green, Weſt in White, and Middle in Yellow; and others ſacrifice to Trees, Elephants, Horſes, Cows, and almoſt all other ſorts of Animals.

Sacrifice to the Souls of the Dead.

They that ſtudy the *Chineſe* Characters ſacrifice every 5 Months to the Souls of the Dead, that were never buried, believing that their Underſtandings ſhall be more enlightned to apprehend Things.

At the Beginning of every Year they have a great Solemnity in Honour of the Dead, who were in their Lives renouned for their noble Actions and Valour, reckoning Rebels among them. They ſet up ſeveral Altars, ſome for Sacrifices, others for the Names of the Perſons they deſign to honour, and the King, Princes and *Mandarins* are preſent at them, and make 3 profound Reverences to the Altars, when the Sacrifices are finiſh'd; but the King ſhoots 5 times againſt the Altars where the Rebels Names are: Then the great Guns are let off, and the Soldiers give Vollies of Small-Shot to put the Souls to Flight; the Altars and Papers made uſe of at the Sacrifices are burnt, and the *Bonzes* and *Says* go to eat the Meat made uſe of at the Sacrifice.

Their chief Holy-days.

The 1ſt and 15th Days of every Month are more eſpecially Holy-days for the Worſhip of their Gods, and the *Bonzes* and *Says* redouble their Prayers, and repeat a kind of Charm 6 times. The People on theſe Days bring Meat and Drink to the Sepulchres of their Kindred to ſacrifice for the Good of their Souls to eat. The *Bonzes*, when they have paid their Worſhip, fall to, and what they can't eat give the Poor. For this Greedineſs the King and *Mandarins* make no Account of the *Bonzes* and *Says*, tho' they lead auſtere Lives, and ſo they are in no Credit, only with the common People.

Their Pagods and Revenues.

In *Tunquin* the great Cities have ſeveral Pagods, and every Village and Town almoſt has one. Every Pagod has at leaſt 2 *Bonzes* and 2 *Says*; but ſome maintain 40 *Bonzes*, and as many *Says*, who live in common under a Superior, and keep to the Doctrine of *Chacabout*, and a Goat is the Idol which they adore. They wear about their Necks a Neck-lace of 100 great Beads made of Wood. They beg for their Living with great Modeſty and Humility, taking no more than is needful, and if they have any thing to ſpare, they give it to the poor Widows and Orphans that cannot get their Living.

Their Priests marry.

Their Orders permit them to marry, but then they muſt leave their Monaſtery. They aſſiſt at the Funerals of Great Men, where they make a kind of Orizon, ſounding their Trumpets and Cornets, while the Bells in their Pagods go at the ſame time.

Wizards honoured.

They have a great Veneration for 2 Magicians and one Witch: The firſt Magician is called

Viz. Tay-ſan

Tay-bou, who pretends to know the Events of all Things to come; ſo that when any is about to marry their Children, build an Houſe, buy Land, or undertake any Buſineſs of Conſequence, they conſult him, who inſpecting his Book, makes them believe what he pleaſes. The other is *Thay Pou-Thou*, to whom they have Recourſe in their Sickneſs. When he is conſulted, after ſeveral Apiſh Tricks, which he acts before the ſick Perſon to amuſe him, he ſometimes affirms, that the Diſtemper comes from the Devil, and then he himſelf and the ſick Perſon, and his Friends that brought him, do Homage to the Devil; but if he do not recover, all the Friends and Kindred of the ſick Party, with as many Soldiers as they can get, ſurround the ſick Perſon's Houſe and ſhoot off their Muskets 3 times, to drive the Devil away. If the ſick Party be a Waterman, or other Perſons belonging to the Water, then he tells them, 'tis the God of the Waters that is the Cauſe of the Diſtemper, and then he orders him to ſpread Carpets, and furniſh Tables in Huts with all ſorts of Meat, down to the next River, to invite him home to his Habitation. If theſe Things fail, he ſends him to *Tay-bou*, the chief Magician, to enquire if the Souls of the Dead have cauſed the Diſtemper, and he anſwers, Yea, then the Magician employs his Tricks to get the miſchievous Soul into a Bottle, where he keeps it till the Party is cured. The Magicineſs is called *Bacoti*. She keeps a great Correſpondence with the Devil, and to oblige him, offers her own Daughter, if ſhe has one, as ſoon as ſhe is born. Mothers that have loſt their Children, and are deſirous to know the Condition of their Souls, conſult her, go to her, and ſhe by beating of a Drum, pretends to ſummon the Soul to her, and cauſe it to tell her the Condition of it. She generally tells them, that the Soul is happy, and bids 'em be of good Cheer.

They have innumerable Superſtitions, but the moſt remarkable are theſe: The more ſtudious People learn to foretel Things to come, by looking in a Mirrour; others ſprinkle the Aſhes of their dead Anceſtors with *Aqua vitæ*, and beg of them Health, Honour and Riches; others upon their New-Year's-Day make divers Figures upon the Steps and Threſholds of their Doors, to drive away Evil Spirits; others in Travelling, if they ſneeze but once, return back, and if they ſneeze twice, purſue their Journey without fear of Danger. Some, if at going out of their Houſes they meet a Woman, retire again for 2 or 3 Hours, but if a Man, 'tis a good Omen. The firſt Fruit which they gather in the Beginning of the Year is the Araguer, and they poiſon one and give it to a Child, believing, that by taking away the Child's Life they ſhall thrive the better all the Year after. When the Moon is eccliplſed, they ſay, a certain Dragon endeavours to devour her, and therefore to aſſiſt the Moon, and put the Dragon to Flight, they diſcharge their Muskets, ring their Bells, beat up their Drums, and make an hideous Noiſe, till the Eccliplſe be over, and then they think they have reſcued the Moon, and rejoyce as much as if they had obtained a great Victory over their Enemies. They divide the natural Day into 12 Hours, and give them the Name of ſome Beaſt, as a Tiger, Lion, Bear, Horſe, &c. and ſo the Months and Days have their particular Names. When a Child is born, preſently the Father and Kindred go to ſee the Name of the Beaſt by which the Hour is call'd when the Child was born, believing that Animal will prove fatal to it. The preſent King of *Tunquin* was born in the Hour of the Horſe, and he would never give Audience nor ſtir out at that Hour, for fear ſome Miſchief ſhould befal him at that Time; and the ſame Prince having a Child that died in the 5th Month, which is called by the Name of the Horſe, would not ſuffer him to be buried, but cauſed him to be burnt, and ſcattered his Aſhes in the Air.

Unlucky Hours and Days.

THE

THE TRAVELS OF Monsieur *THEVENOT* into the *Levant*

Faithfully ABRIDG'D:

WITH

What is further taken Notice of by *Du Mont*, or *Le Brun*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Way to Constantinople, *and the Description of the City.*

MOnsieur *Thevenot*, a *French* Gentleman of a good Family, having accomplished his Studies in the College of *Navarre*, in the University of *Paris*, and furnish'd himself with all other Breeding usual in *France*, resolved to compleat himself by Travels. He visited *England*, *Holland*, *Germany* and *Italy*, and tho' he kept Memoirs of all Things remarkable in those Countries, yet he thought them not useful to the Publick, because there are so many Relations of them made by others. He staid at *Rome* sometime by reason of the Death of Pope *Innocent* X. being desirous to see the Ceremonies of a new Election, and so left not that City till *Alexander* VII. was seated in the Papal Chair. The Manner of Electing a new Pope is this: As soon as the Pope is dead, and his Body is carried into St. *Peter's* Church, where it is laid in the Chappel of the *Holy Trinity*, exposed to the View of all Comers for 3 Days, the Body being shut up within the Grates, but his Feet, covered with Slippers of Crimson-Velvet coming thro', that all that pass by may kiss them, which they do with a great deal of Devotion. Orders are given for every thing to be got ready that is necessary for the Conclave, and the Chambers are fitted up for the Cardinals, and in that time all are allow'd to see the Place. When the Cardinals are once entred the Conclave, they have no Liberty of going out again, till they have made Choice of a new Pope; nor is it lawful so much as to open the Doors of it, unless it be to admit the Foreign Cardinals, or let out the Sick. Before they proceed to the Election, every Cardinal is obliged to take an Oath before a Crucifix, to this Effect, *Testor Christum Dominum, qui me Judicaturus est, eligere quem secundum Deum Judico eligere debeam, & quod idem in Accessu præstabo*, i. e. *I swear by the Lord Jesus Christ, who is to be my Judge, that I will chuse him, whom I think in my Conscience I ought to chuse; and this I will do when it comes to my Turn to Vote.* The Election is usually managed and performed one of these 3 Ways, as they speak at *Rome*. 1. By Inspiration, when the whole Conclave vote unanimously for one Person, which they think could not be done by so many Persons, unless by the Direction of the Holy Ghost. 2. By Com-promisal, when the Election is left by the Conclave to certain Select Persons. 3. By Suffrage, which is by counting the Votes, which is now the only Way of Electing a Pope; and he that is thus chosen, as they call him, Head of the Church must have at least 2 Thirds of the Votes of the Conclave, and he that is thus elected is accounted and obey'd as Pope.

As soon as this Ceremony was over he left *Rome*, and on *June* 2. he embark'd at *Civita-Vecchia*, and came to an Anchor before the Port of *Messina* in *Sicily* in 7 Days. This Town lies opposite to *Rhegio* in *Italy*, from which it is distant about 60 Miles. It was built by the *Messinians* of *Peloponnesus*, and from them took its Name, being anciently called *Zande*. It is a safe Harbour made so by Nature, and round it are several fair Palaces built very uniform, which yields a pleasant Prospect. The Mole, which shuts in the Port, has a Tower by it to secure the Entry, and another in the midst of it. This Town is but a melancholy Place, tho' the Streets are fair and large. Over the Door of the Cathedral Church is written, *Gran-Mercy a Messine*, in Memory of the Surrender of that City to the *French*, when they took *Sicily*. Before it is a great Piazza, with a Theatre in the middle of it, where the Victory of *Lepanto* is represented in Brass, and a Brasen Statue of *Don John* of *Austria* stands by it. The Novitiate of the Jesuits stands upon an Hill that over-looks the Town. There are 18 strong Castles in it, but 4 of them only are in the Hands of the *Spaniards*. The *Messineses* have the rest. The Town is very rich, by reason of the great Trade in Silk driven there. There are no Inns for Strangers, so that they are obliged to lodge in a wretched Tavern by the Harbour. All Things are cheap, the Wines strong, but bad. It is an Archiepiscopal See. The *Streight* is made dangerous by *Scilla* and *Charybdis*, tho' anciently they were much more so than now, because Navigation is much improved. *Scilla* is a Rock near the Castle *Scylio*, on the *Italian* Shore. *Charybdis* is the Meeting of 2 contrary Eddies, which by beating and clashing one against another, make a Noise like the Barking of Dogs, and by causing Vessels to turn round about, suck them down to the Bottom without Remedy; nor is the Harbour it self safe from it, for the Currents will sometimes carry the Ships out into it, and therefore the *Messineses* have always a great many Pilots in a Readiness to assist Vessels in Danger.

Sicily is of a Triangular Form, each Angle making a Cape, which are now called *Difaro*, anciently *Pelorus*, *Passaro*, *ol. Pachinus*, & *Bocbo*, *ol. Lilibæum*. It is but 3 Miles distant from *Italy*, being separated from it by a dangerous Streight, called, *The Phare of* Messina. 'Tis the most considerable Island of the *Mediterranean* Sea, both for Bigness (being 700 Miles in Compass) and Fruitfulness. It produces Plenty of Corn excellent Wines, Olives, and many other Necessaries of Life, insomuch, as that it was called one of the Granaries of *Rome*. It contains a great many fair rich Towns, but it is much annoy'd by Mount *Gibello*, *ol. Ætna*, which continually casts forth abundance of

of Flames, and covers the Land about it with Ashes for a great Way. It is also much infested with Earthquakes. It has been under the Dominion of many Nations, *viz. Greeks, Carthaginians* and *French*, but now is subject to the King of *Spain*, who has always a Vice-Roy there, that has his Residence half a Year at at *Palermo*, and the rest at *Messina*. From all these Nations the *Sicilians* have derived some Vice, which makes them very ill-natur'd. They are revengeful, haughty and jealous, especially of the *French*, whom judging by their vindictive Temper, they suspect not to have forgotten the *Sicilian Vespers*, and for that Reason always wear their Daggers by their Side even in their Shops and Work-Houses. They are of a subtle and malicious Wit.

Agousta. From *Messina* he sailed to *Agousta*, which is but an ordinary Town with one Street, but the Country about it produces excellent Wine, which has a strong Flavour of Violets: Then coasting along by *Syracuse*, *Syracuse.* now corruptly called *Saragousa*, formerly the Metropolis of *Sicily*, and Native Place of *Archimedes*, the Muscadine. Country about which produces excellent Muscadine, he made the Isle of *Malta*, anciently called *Melita*, from the Plenty of Honey (called *Meli* in *Greek*) which it yielded. It lies in 38 D. of Northern Lat. and 34 D. of Long. being about 20 Miles long, 12 broad, and 60 round. It was at first governed by its own King, *Malta described.* called *Barus*, but after fell into the Hands of the *Carthaginians, Romans, Saracens* and *Spaniards*, by whom under *Charles V.* it was given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, whom *Solyman the Magnificent* had 8 Years before expell'd from their Seat there, from whence they have bore the Name of the Knights of *Malta*. The Isle is low, and the Soil a soft Chalky Rock, yet it produces The Fruits. very good Fruits, as Figs, Melons, which grow so easily, that they require no Care, but to preserve them; Grapes good to eat, but not for Wine; Cotton, but little or no Corn, for that is brought from *Sicily* thither. The Air is so hot, that there is no walking in the Sun; and the Nights are as intolerable, if not thro' the Heats, yet thro' the Stinging of Muskettoes; yet 'tis so wholsome for old Men, that they can hardly die. They drink their Wine with Ice. Head-Aches and sore Eyes, caused by the Whiteness of the Earth, are there common and dangerous. There are No venomous Creatures. no venomous Beasts in the Isle, nor can any live in it, which the People attribute to St. *Paul*'s Benediction, and they give the Earth of the *Grott*, where he lived, for an Antidote against Poison, with greater Success than *Terra Sigillata*. The Island is populous: The People are of a brown Complexion and revengeful. The Women are beautiful, pretty and familiar, for tho' they hide their own Faces with their Mantle, they see every Body's else. They speak *Arabick*, but *Italian* The Ports. is common. Here are several Ports and Creeks, but the chief Havens are the Great Port, and that called *Marsamouchet*. In the Great Port are all the Gallies of the Order laid up, and all the Vessels that are to make any Stay at *Malta*, either to load, careen, or refit, put in there, it being shut with an Iron Chain: The Port of *Marsamouchet* is for Ships to perform their Quarantine in, before they have Access to the Town, and for such as by reason of foul Weather can't get into the Great Port, as also for the *Corsairs*, who come only for a little time, and so will not go into the Great Port, because 'tis hard to get out again from thence. *Malta* taken by the Turks. As soon as the King of *Spain* had given the Island of *Malta* to the Knights of St. *John*, Sultan *Solyman* resolving to extirpate them, who had given him so much Trouble, sent a powerful Army to take it. The *Turks* landing near the Mount *Pelegrino*, attack'd the Castle of St. *Erme*, kill'd all that defended it, and took it. Then they turned against the Isle *de Sangle*, but were assaulted so furiously by the Castle of St. *Angelo*, who firing their Cannon, which they had laid level with the Water, upon them, sunk their Boats and drown'd their Men, which being repeated several times, the *Turks* despairing of Success, and finding Recruits come to them out of *Europe*, drew off, and left the Isle in the End of *September*, 1565. After the *Turks* were gone, the Monks resolved to build a new Town, where the Great Master with all the Order might conveniently dwell. They pitched upon the Tongue of Land where the Castle of St. *Erme* stands, from whence the *Turks* had so furiously driven them. The Great Master Valetta built. Friar *John la Valette* laid the first Stone of it, *March* 28. 1566. and from himself called it *Valetta*; and it has been so fortified since, that few Places can match it. The Entry into the Port is defended by the Castle of St. *Erme*, the *Baraque*, which has 9 Pieces of Cannon, and the Bastion of *Italy*, and on the other side by the Castle of St. *Angelo*, and a Tower, which has 2 or 3 Pieces of Cannon. The Town is no less strong by Land than towards the Sea, being begirt with good Walls, built upon very high Rocks, with several Bastions and other Pieces of Fortification, which are no less goodly than good. The *Baraque* is very delightful, being covered with lovely Orange and Lemmon-Trees planted in Rows, and having a great many Fountains, where the Water-works playing very high, give a mighty Diversion. The *Baraque.*

From the Port you go up an Hill to the Town, which is but small, but very pretty. It hath but 2 Gates, one leading into the Port, the other into the Country. There are several Churches in it, but that of St. *John* is the Chief. On one side of it is a lovely Piazza, and at each Angle a Fountain. It is a large Building, and pretty high, paved with lovely Marble, and adorn'd above with many Colours taken from Infidels. In this Church they pretend to have many fine Reliques, *viz.* St. *John Baptist*'s Right-Hand, and many others. The Town described.

There are several lovely Buildings in the Town, and among others the stately Palace of the Great Master, in which is a Magazine of Arms for 35 or 40000 Men, kept very clean and in great Order, and among them the Arms of such great Masters as have been wounded in any Action, are to be seen with the Marks upon them. This Palace looks into a large Square, in the middle of which is a lovely Fountain, which throws up Water in great Quantities, and very high, and supplies the whole Town with it. The Palaces of the Conservatory and Treasury are fair Buildings, and so are the Inns. The Hospital is very well built, and the Hall for the sick Knights is hung with Tapestry, where they are attended by Knights, and serv'd in Plate. Poor Travellers find Entertainment here, till they can get Passage to the Place they are bound, and then they are furnished with Provision, and their Charges are born thro' their Voyage. The Jesuits have a very well built House and a College there, and even the meanest Houses make a good Show, being built of a large square white Stone, which retains its Colour long and seems new: They are all flat Roof'd. The Streets of the Town are incommodious, because one goes always up Hill and down Hill, but they are wide and straight. The fairest reacheth from the Castle of St. *Erme* to the *Royal Gate*, which is almost a Mile long, and in it they make the Horses and Asses run the *Pallio* upon their Days of Rejoycing. The Country about it is full of Gardens and very agreeable Places of Pleasure. About 12 Miles into it the Grand Master hath a Palace, built in Form of a Castle, and very uniform, the Halls of which are adorn'd with excellent Paintings, and it has very neat Gardens full of Orange, Citron and Olive-Trees, with several lovely Fountains. At a little Distance from the House is a Grove stock'd with Game for the Diversion of the Great Master. The Palace of the Great Master and Magazine. The Hospital of the Knights of St. *John*. The Streets of *Malta*.

Five Miles from *Malta* is the Isle of *Gozo*, which is 30 Miles in Circuit, 12 in Length, and 6 in Breadth. It is a very wholsome Air, and tho' it be mountainous, is almost all cultivated, for the Inhabitants delight more in tilling the Land for Corn, than any other sort of Husbandry, tho' it has many Places well water'd, and so fit for Gardening and Pasture. On our *Lady-day, Sept.* 8. the Knights keep a Rejoycing Yearly for the *Turks* raising the Siege of *Bourg*, with Mals, Shooting, Feasting, Races of the *Pallio*, and many other Rejoycings. The Isle of *Gozo*.

Leaving *Malta*, *Thursday, Nov.* 1655. he sail'd by the Isle of *Sapienza*, and having weather'd the Cape *Matapan*, came to an Anchor in the Bay of St. *Nicholas*, in the Isle of *Cerigo*. Cape *Matapan* is a Promontory of the *Morea*, formerly called *Tenarus*, where *Arion* carried by a Dolphin was put a-shore. This Country is inhabited by the *Meinotes*, a People who liv'd in the Mountains without Law or Government, and are subject to those who have most Power in the Country, sometimes the *Venetians*, and sometimes the *Turks*. All their Business is to rob Travellers. Cape *Matapan*.

Cerigo was anciently called *Porphyris*, because of the great Quantity of *Porphyrian* Marble found there, and *Cythera. Venus*, who is fabled to have been born of the Froth of the Sea, first dwelt here, and had a Temple near the Sea-side, the Ruins of which are still shewn. It is the first Island in the *Archipelago*, or *Ægean* Sea, 60 Miles in Compass, and 5 from the The Isle of *Cerigo*.

main

main Land. The *Venetians* are Masters of it, and keep a good Garrison there, because 'tis a Pass of great Importance.

From *Cerigo*, where the Ship paid the Consul a Piastre for Anchorage, he sail'd to *Zia*, leaving many inconsiderable Islands on the Right Hand, as *Melo*, *Antimelo*, &c. This Isle was anciently called *Ceos*, or *Cea*, it is shaped like an Horse-Shoe, and 50 Miles in Circumference. The Soil is pretty good, producing Corn, Wine, Grass, and a great many other good Things, and the Harbour is full of Fish. The Inhabitants pay a Tribute to the *Turks* of 3400 Piastres, and to the *Venetians* 2600, besides the Extortions and Robberies they meet with, which so impoverish them, that they are forced to leave their Habitations. They are good People, and deserve to be pitied, because of the Miseries they suffer both from *Christians* and *Turks*. The chief Town of the same Name is 5 Miles from the Port, it is a large Place, containing 700 Houses, but there is not above 400 of them inhabited, the rest being forsaken since the War of *Candia*. The Houses are built of Stone and Earth, rank'd on the side of an Hill like the Benches of an Amphitheatre. The Castle is ruinous, but strong, so that 60 *Turks* with 2 Muskets only held it out against the whole *Venetian* Army, under General *Morosini*, till Want of Water forced them to yield.

From *Zia* he sailed to *Andra*, anciently called *Andros*, 60 Miles from it, and 80 in Circuit. It is reckon'd the most fertile Island of the *Archipelago*. It produceth almost all Things, and Silk most especially, for which they have a great Trade, and make a mighty Gain of it, and Backs. The Port is pretty good, and the Town adjoining to it hath about 200 Houses. In the whole Island are about 60 Villages, of which the most considerable are *Arni* and *Apsalacos*, inhabited by the *Arnauts* or *Albanians*, who are about 1200 Souls, and all of the *Greek* Church, and differ in Language and Customs, yet all without any Discipline. Near these Villages is a large Monastery of 100 Monks, called *Tagia*, who have a neat small Church, which they supply, but they are very ignorant, and 6 lesser ones. There is a great Number of *Greek* Churches in the Isle, which are under the Government and Discipline of a *Greek* Bishop. The *Latins* also have a Bishop there, and 6 Churches, of which the Cathedral is dedicated to St. *Andrew*. The *Capuchins* preach in them, and teach a School, to which the *Greeks* send their Children as far as *Athens*. The *Turks* dispose of the Temporal Affairs of this Isle, and are but uneasie Neighbours to the Christians. The Jesuits have a Church called St. *Veneranda*, and an House near the Valley *Monites*, with a Garden full of Fruit-Trees of all sorts, which yield them considerable Profit. The Houses in this Isle are ill built, and both the Air and Water Bad. The Inhabitants are civil; their Women are chaste, and speak well, but their Apparel is unbecoming. The Inhabitants of the Towns love good Cheer and Diversions, and care not much to labour, but the Peasants are very industrious. Their Food is Goats Flesh for tho' in their Woods there is good Venison and wild Fowl, yet they have neither Huntsmen nor Fowling-Pieces to catch them. The Sea affords them no Fish. They have neither Physician nor Chirurgeon, but when they are sick, betake themselves to the Mercy of God.

From *Andra* he sail'd by the *Negropont*, *Sciro*, *Ipsicera*, *Chio* and *Tenedo*, to *Troy*, where there are still remarkable Ruins of that ancient and famous City, and that of great Extent, viz. An Harbour, Pieces of large Pillars, and the Remains of a great Temple; but the Learned say, that they are only the Ruins of some Buildings erected there by the *Romans*, long after the Destruction of *Troy*. From hence he passed the Mouths and entred the Channel of *Hellespont*, where the *Turks* first passed over into *Europe*, and sailing betwixt the Castles of the *Dardanels*, came to an Anchor. The *Dardinels* are 2 Castles, built on each side the Channel of the *Hellespont* by *Mahomet* II. the Son of *Amurath* II. The one stands in *Europe* in *Romania*, in the very Place where *Sestos* formerly stood. This Castle is Triangular, and besides 2 Bastions, hath 3 Towers covered with Lead, and 20 large Guns, which carry Stone-Bullets of 60 Pound Weight. The other is in *Anatolia* in *Asia*, in a Plain, where anciently *Abidos* stood. These 2 Forts are the Keys of *Constantinople*, tho at 2 to Miles Distance, for they can hinder any Ship, Friend or Foe to pass them without Leave, unless they will run the Hazzard of being sunk. All Ships that come from *Constantinople* are searched here for Counterband Goods and fugitive Slaves. These Places are famous for the Love of *Hero* and *Leander*, and *Xerxes*'s Bridge into *Europe*, which was made hereabouts. From *Andra* to this Castle is 280 Miles.

From thence he sail'd to *Gallipoli*, which is reckoned 35 Miles. This Town was built by *Callias*, Prince of the *Athenians*, from whom it was called *Calliopolis*, and now is corrupted into *Gallipolis*. This Place is but thin peopled: The *Greeks* that dwell in it sell *Raki*, or Brandy, for the most part, and their Houses have Doors not above a Foot high, to keep out the *Turks*, who will ride in else when they are drunk, and turn all Things upside down. It has a Tower and Arsenal, where are laid up several Gallies.

Departing thence he passed the Isle of *Marmora*, which gives Name to the Sea, that was formerly called the *Propontis*, and sailing along by the *Seraglio* and *Constantinople*, came to an Anchor at *Galata*, where is the Harbour of that City. The Sea of *Marmora*, or the *Propontis*, which is about 120 *German* Lgs. in Compass, lies between the 38 and 41 D. of Northern Lat. and the 55 and 58 D. of Long. which makes the Clime so temperate, that it has neither the Inconveniences of sharp Cold, nor burning Heats, which is the Reason that both sides of it has been so well adorn'd with famous Cities: For on the *Asian* side stood *Chizico*, a Town anciently famous not only for being built by the *Argonauts* 500 Years before *Rome*, but for its lofty Towers, magnificent Buildings, large Arsenals and Magazines, fine Amphitheatre and convenient Port, though nothing now remains of all these Things but frightful Ruins, which are the Habitations of Owls.

2. *Nice*, called by the *Turks Isnich*, famous for the 1st General Council. It is almost square, and stands at the Extremity of a Bay in a fine Plain. On the N.E. is a Ridge of Hills, which abound with Wood, Vines, Fruits and Fountains. It is encompassed with Walls full of round Turrets, and had a Covert-Way that ran by them, but 'tis now ruined. The City is pretty large, the Streets neat, and has at least 10000 Inhabitants, as well *Greeks* as *Jews* and *Turks*, who trade in Corn, Fruit, Cotton, fine Cloth, &c. to *Constantinople*. There are here many Remains of Pagan and Christian Antiquities, but are so defaced by the *Turks*, that nothing admirable is to be discerned.

3. *Montagna*, or *Nicopolis*. It stands on a Bay anciently called *Cianus Sinus*, from the City of *Cium*, which once stood there. This Town is small, but by means of the Bay drives a great Trade to *Constantinople*, for its Nearness to *Bursa* brings all the Traffick of *Bithynia* to it. The Inhabitants, are about 5 or 6000 *Greeks*, *Turks* and *Jews*, and are all Merchants, and live of their Trade in Fruits, which they send to *Constantinople*.

4. *Nicomedia*, which, next to *Constantinople*, has the pleasantest Situation of any City in the World. It stands at the Bottom of a Bay, and runs up the side of an Hill, which is stored with many Fountains, Fruit-Trees, Vineyards and Corn. Their Garden-Fruits are extraordinary, and their Melons are thought by some to equal those of *Cachan* in *Persia* for Goodness, which are reckoned the best in the World. Here are abundance of Remains of Antiquity, enough to satisfie the Curiosity of Travellers. It was built by the Nymph *Olbia*, but has its Name from *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, who enlarged it. It is famous for the Death of *Hannibal* and *Constantine* the Great, and its early Conversion to Christianity and the many Martyrs who seal'd the Faith with their Death. It is called *Ismit* by the *Turks*, and is a large and populous City, having about 30000 Inhabitants, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Jews* and *Turks*, who most of them live by trading in Silks, Cotton-Wools, Linnen-Cloths, Fruits, Earthen and Glass-Wares, and several other Commodities, which make it a City of great Traffick. There are a great many *Greek* Churches and fair Mosques, with several Inns and neat *Bazaars*, or Market-Places, in this Town. Most of the Ships and Vessels which belong to *Constantinople* are built here, but they are sorry Artists at it. On the right side of the Bay of *Nicomedia* is a Fountain of Mineral Water, which the *Turks* and *Greeks* say, cures all Distempers, and therefore flock to it mightily.

5. *Chalcedon*. This Town was once famous for the Temples of *Venus* and *Apollo*. Many Christian Churches, and among them one dedicated to St. *Euphemia*, where

where the 4th General Council ſate, and in part of which, as it ſtill remains, the *Greeks* have their Religious Worſhip, and ſtrong Fortifications, and other fine Buildings, is now reduced to a Village of 1000 or 1200 Houſes, and thoſe all ruinous. This City gives Name to the Streights adjoining, which are called, *Fretum Chalcedonicum*, *Boſphorus Chalcedonius*, as well as *Boſphorus Thracius*, and near it is a Light-Houſe and a Pleaſure-Houſe belonging to the Grand Seignior, called *Finari Kioske*, which Sultan *Soliman* II. built for his Retirement with the Ladies of the *Seraglio*. On the *Thracian* ſide ſtands *Rodoſto*, or *Radiſto*, a Town pretty well ſituated at the Extremity of a Bay, which accommodating it with an Haven, fills it with Inhabitants, who drive a Trade all over *Thrace*, the *Propontis* and *Black Sea*. In it are 3 or 4 large Moſques, and ſome ſmall ones, ſome Chriſtian Churches belonging to the *Greeks*, and 2 *Jewiſh* Synagogues. The Town lies along the Sea-Shore, where the Trade is, and toward the Land are many Gardens, but the Fruit is not very good, becauſe the Gardiners of *Turkey* are unskilful in their Art.

Rodoſto.

2. *Perinthus*, or *Heraclea*, which once gave Law to *Byzantium*, but now is ſubject to it. This Town hath 2 good Havens belonging to it, but one of them is ſo dammed up with the Rubbiſh and Filth of the City, that it ſerves only for Barks and Saicks. The Amphitheatre of *Heraclea* was one of the 7 Wonders of the World, but now there are only ſome ſhatter'd Ruins of it. There are alſo ſeen many Pedeſtals with *Greek* Inſcriptions to *Severus*, *Trajan*, and others, who had done any ſignal Services for the City, but the Statues which once ſtood upon them are thrown down and demoliſhed. The Town at preſent is but thinly inhabited, and drives but a ſmall Trade, tho' they have great Quantities of Cotton, Olives, Fruits, both green and dry, Skins and Wool. The Cathedral is one of the fineſt in all *Greece*, having a handſome Roof, and being very neat in the In-ſide, and better contrived than the Patriarchal Church of *Conſtantinople*. There are 5 or 6 Churches beſides, but none of them in ſo good a Condition as the former, and 2 of them are wholly diſuſed. But tho' the Buildings and Trade of this City daily decay, and Time may blot it out of the World, yet the Sufferings of many Chriſtian Martyrs in it will keep up its Memory as long as the World endures.

Perinthus.

In the *Propontis* are ſeveral Iſlands, *viz.* *Marmora*, which gives Name to the whole Sea, and is about 10 Lgs. in Compaſs. The chief Towns in it are *Galioni* and *Craſtia*. The *Caloyers*, or *Greek* Monks, have ſeveral Convents or Hermitages in it. They are very auſtere in their Way of Living. 2. *Avoſit*, whoſe chief Town is of the ſame Name. It hath 2 other Villages, called *Aloni* and *Arabi Kieny*, becauſe 'tis inhabited by *Arabians* only. 3. *Conradi*, which has a Town of the ſame Name: And, 4. *Gadoro*, which has only ſome Houſes and Cloiſters for Monks. Theſe 4 Iſlands go all by the Name of the firſt, and lie on a Cluſter abounding with Cattel, Corn, Wine, Fruits, Cotton, &c. Their Fiſhery is alſo good, but they regard it only for their own Uſe, becauſe *Conſtantinople* is ſupplied nearer hand. Nearer to *Conſtantinople* lies another Knot of Iſlands, called by the *Turks*, *Papas Adaſſi*, by the *Greeks* *Papa Douiſſi*, or the Iſlands of the Monks; and by the *Europeans*, *The Pope's Iſles*. Were *Conſtantinople* in the Hands of the Chriſtians, they would be a perfect Paradiſe, and every one would have his Houſe of Pleaſure there, but being ſubject to the Ravages of the *Turks*, who often go thither to be drunk, and in their Heat ruffle their Gardens and Vineyards, they lie uncultivate, and only a few *Caloyers* manure a little Bit of Land by their Monaſteries for Herbs and Roots for their own Uſe. Theſe *Caloyers* are Monks of St. *Baſil*, who retain the ancient Way of Living and Habit, without any Alteration. They lead a very retired and poor Life, and never eat any Fleſh. They obſerve 4 *Lents* in the Year, beſides ſeveral other Faſts, and ſome among them are ſo abſtinent, as that they are ſatisfied with eating a little Bread and Pulſe dreſſed with Salt and Water once a a Day, and others by Cuſtom have brought themſelves to eat once in 2 or 3 Days, during their *Lents*; and 'tis ſaid, ſome will eat but 7 times in the 7 Weeks of their longeſt *Lent*, tho' this ſeems improbable, but theſe are only the moſt devout, which are but few. The reſt order Matters ſo cunningly, that they obſerve nothing leſs than Faſting, for tho' indeed they eat no Butter, Fiſh, Eggs, nor Oil, and drink no Wine, yet they uſe other Things luxuriouſly, as Oiſters, Caviar and Shell-Fiſh for Fiſh; Almonds, Piſtachio's and Nuts for Butter; *Aqua vitæ*, Coffee and Sherbet for Wine, &c.

The Caloyers.

Their Faſts.

Conſtantinople is the beſt ſituated City in the World. It lies in *Europe* upon a Point of the Main Land, jetting out towards the *Boſphorus* of *Thrace*, from whence 'tis but half an Hour's Paſſage into *Aſia*. On the Right Hand is the *White-Sea*, or *Propontis*, by which there is an eaſie Paſſage into *Aſia*, *Egypt* and *Africa*, whereby it is ſupplied with all the Commodities of thoſe Places. On the Left Hand it hath the *Black* or *Euxine* Sea, and *Palus Mæotis*, by which it is furniſhed with all the Commodities of the North; inſomuch, that there is nothing that can be neceſſary, uſeful and pleaſant which is not brought plentifully to *Conſtantinople*, the Winds always ſerving to bring in Commodities from one of thoſe Parts. The Port is by Nature the loveliſt in the World, being 6 Miles in Compaſs, and a Mile over, and ſo deep in all Places, that a Ship may lay her Head aſhore without Danger. It was anciently called *Byzantium*, and was built by *Pauſanias*, King of *Sparta*. The Emperor *Severus* demoliſh'd it, to puniſh the Rebellion of the Inhabitants, and *Conſtantine the Great* rebuilt it, calling it *New Rome* firſt, and then *Conſtantinople*, and being dedicated to the Virgin ſometimes bears the Name of *Parthenopolis*, the *Turks* call it *Iſtambol*. After the Diviſion of the Empire, it was the Seat of the Eaſtern Emperors, from whom in 1209. it was taken by the *Venetians* and *French*, but recovered by the *Palæologi* 50 Years after, and fell into the Hands of the *Turks* on *Whitſunday*, 1453. who have kept it ever ſince. The Air in Summer would be very hot and incommodious, were it not cool'd by a Breeze, which comes every Afternoon from the Mouth of the Port, yet is very healthful, ſo that no Diſeaſes are known here, but the Plague, which makes a great Havock every Year. It is very ſubject to Earthquakes, ſo that ſometimes 2 happen in a Day. The Figure of it is Triangular, one Side lying toward the *Propontis*, the other on the Port, and the 3d toward the Land. It is all encompaſſed with good Walls, and to the Land-ſide they are double, being built in ſome Places of Free-Stone, and in others of Free-Stone and Brick. It hath 22 Gates, 6 toward the Land, 11 along the Port, and 5 on the Streight of the *Propontis*, which have all Landing Places and Stairs, and is about 12 Miles in Compaſs.

Conſtantinople deſcribed.

The Port.

Its Names.

The Air.

Walls.

Gates.

The Caſtle of the 7 Towers.

The Caſtle of the 7 Towers joins the double Walls on the Continent ſide to thoſe that lie upon the *Propontis*. It was anciently one of the City, called, *The Gilded Gate*, from the gilt Ornaments of it, and had 4 Turrets; but *Mahomet* II. becoming Maſter of *Conſtantinople*, added 3 new ones, and made it a Caſtle ſtrong enough to keep the Treaſures of the Empire, and for that Purpoſe it ſerv'd a long time; but at preſent it is only uſed as an honourable Priſon, where the G. Seignior ſhuts up ſuch Perſons of Quality and Slaves of Note as have incurred his Diſpleaſure. If any Chriſtians be confined in it, their Prieſts are allowed to come and ſay Maſs to them in a little Chappel, and if they are Knights of *Malta*, or other Perſons of Quality, they are allowed to go out, if an Ambaſſador, or other Perſon of Note will be engaged for their Return. Sultan *Oſman* and *Haſſein Baſha* were ſtrangled in this Caſtle. Without the Walls, hard by one of theſe Caſtles, are 2 large Statues of white Marble in Baſſe-Relief; the one ſeems to be *Endimion*, and *Diana* coming down to ſee him, and the other the 9 Muſes, with the Horſe *Pegaſus*. They are done by a good Hand, but inferior to ſome Pieces in *Europe*. In going by Sea from this Caſtle to the *Seraglio*, there is a ſquare Tower ſtanding in the Sea, at about 200 Paces from the City Walls, where, they ſay, *Juſtinian* impriſoned *Belizarius*, his famous General, out of meer Jealouſie, and having ſtript him of all forced him to beg his Subſiſtence of charitable Paſſengers. Not far from this Tower is a Fountain, to which the *Greeks* always pay a great Veneration, and upon the Day of Chriſt's Tranſfiguration carry their Sick to it, to whom they give ſome of the Waters, and cover their Bodies a while with the Sand; and they ſay, wonderful Cures had been thus done by it. The *Greeks* have abundance of theſe miraculous Fountains, which they ſuperſtitiouſly honour, and the Prieſts encourage them in it for their own Gain. Near this Fountain ſtands the *Kioske*, or Pleaſure-Houſe of the *Boſtangi Baſha*, or Overſeer of the Gardens. It is a Tent covered over,

A Tower in the Sea.

A Fountain honoured.

just without the Walls of the *Seraglio*, and overlooks the *Propontis* and *Bosphorus Thracius*, but he being in the 4th Post of the Empire, has no Time almost to take the Air. Beyond this *Kioske* are a great many Cannon planted between Wind and Water, to hinder the Entrance into the *Seraglio* or Port, if any should attempt it by Force. These Pieces are always charged, but never discharged, unless it be upon the 1st or 2d Day of the Month *Bairam*, to give the *Mussulmen* Notice of that solemn Feast, or upon the Account of publick Rejoycings as the Taking of a City or Province. In the middle of these Pieces of Cannon is one of the 4 Posterns of the *Seraglio*, called *Bostan Capi*, or the Gate of the Gardens. It is fortified with 2 large Turrets, and guarded by 2 Companies of *Bostangi's*, or Gardiners, who keep all from entring at this Gate, but the Sultans and Officers of the *Seraglio*. After you have passed the Cannon and doubled the Cape, where you pass a Fountain, from which most of the Ships take in their fresh Water, you come to 2 *Kiosks*, built by Sultan *Soliman* to view the going out and coming in of the Men of War, and divert himself with his Women, of which he had Plenty. Both of them are well adorn'd and furnished with guilded Cupalo's, Alaves, Sophas, Quilts, Cushions, Carpets, and all other Things fit for so great a Prince, but nothing can be imagined more noble than one of them. At these Pleasure-Houses always attend some small Galleys and Caicks ready to attend the G. Seignior and his Train whenever he pleases to divert himself. These Galleys and Barks are very neatly guilded and painted all over, the Oars and Grappling-Irons not excepted. These are all the remarkable Things without the Walls, both of the City and *Seraglio*. We must now go into the City to find more.

It stands upon 7 little Hills, as old *Rome* did, and the Houses are so disposed, that one takes not away the Sight from the other. The Streets are narrow for the most part, but there are several goodly Buildings in them. There are many stately Mosques in it, of which the most magnificent is that of *Santa Sophia*, which was anciently a Christian Church, built by the Emperor *Justin*, enlarged, enriched and adorned by *Justinian*, and dedicated to the Wisdom of God, *Hagia Sophia*. The *Turks* have changed it into a Mosque, but retain the Name. This Fabrick is 114 Paces in Length, 80 in Breadth, and as many in Height, square without, but round within. The Mosque is very spacious, hath a Dome in the middle, in the Form of a squatted Globe, which is a singular kind of Architecture. It is paved with fine Marble, and Matted, that the Cold may not hurt such as come to worship without Slippers, and squat down in their Service. There is a Tomb, which, the *Turks* say, is *Constantine's*, and a Stone on which, they believe, the Virgin wash'd our Lord's Linen, and they bear a great Reverence to it. The Church was painted after the *Mosaical* Way, with Circles and Images of Christ, the Holy Ghost, the Virgin, and other Saints, which yet appear, tho' the *Turks* have endeavoured to deface them, for they suffer no Images. Within are 2 Galleries, one over another, that go round the Church, and are supported by 62 Pillars, which, 'tis supposed, were for the Women, when it was a Church. On the Out-side of the Church are 4 Steeples, very high and slender, on which are several Balconies, from whence the *Muezins* call to Prayers. It's big enough to hold 5000 People, which Number usually meet in it at their *Bairam* or Passover. In a little Street on the Back of this Church are 2 large thick Pillars, where, they say, Justice was wont to be administred, and by them an old Tower, where the G. Seignior's Beasts are kept, *viz.* Lions, Wolves, Foxes, Leopards, a spotted Lynx, the Skin of a Giraff, and other rare Creatures.

Besides this Mosque, there are 7 others, called Royal ones, of which the Chief is called *Solimania*, because it was built by Sultan *Soliman*, whose Coffin remains in it, adorned with Carpets, a Turban set with Heron-Tops and precious Stones, and Lamps burning. Several *Alcorans* are chain'd to it, that the People may read them, and pray for the Defunct's Soul, and some are hired to do it, for the G. Seigniors take care to leave a Fund for continual Prayers to be said for them after their Death. Near this there is another, where lies the Body of a Sultan, whom *Soliman* loved extreamly, as also of Sultana *Selim*, his 2d Son. This Mosque hath a most lovely Cloister, with Bagnio's and Fountains. The New Mosque, built by Sultan *Achmet*, is one of the fairest and most magnificent in *Constantinople*. The Entry into it is through a large Court. It is a great Mosque, hath a stately Dome, and is full of Lamps, and many Curiosities in Glass-Balls. The fairest of all the rest are the Mosque of Sultan *Mehemmet*, Sultan *Selim*, and that which is called *Chahzadeh Mesdgidi*, i. e. The King's Son's Mosque, being built by one of *Soliman's* Sons, and *Bajazet's*. All these Mosques have Hospitals and Schools, where a great many poor Scholars are maintain'd and educated. Most of the ancient Statues, Obelisks and Pillars, set up by *Constantine* and his Successors, are entirely ruined, yet the large *Hippodrome*, called by the *Turks*, *Atmeidan*, where they exercised their Horses in Racing, is still to be seen. It is a large Square, 550 Paces long, and 150 broad. In the midst of it is an Obelisk pretty entire, mark'd with Hierogliphick Letters, and at a little Distance from it a pretty high Pillar, made of large Stones, laid one upon another without Cement, and towards the End of it is a Pillar made of 3 Brazen Serpents twisted together, and the Heads make the Capital. It was said to be the *Talisman* or Spell, raised by *Leo Isauricus* the Emperor against Serpents, so that none would come near, till *Mahomet* II. when he took *Constantinople*, beat off the under Jaw of one of them with his *Zagaye*, and now they do more Hurt, because it is standing. The Occasion of erecting it is as fabulous as the Vertue, and so the Relation may be spared.

The *Grand Beziстan*, or *Exchange*, is a noble Building and a glorious Sight. 'Tis a great round Hall, built all of Free-Stone, and surrounded with a thick Wall, by which are Shops full of the richest Commodities. It hath several Gates, which are shut fast a Nights, and because no Body lies in it, it is guarded with several Watchmen, till it is opened again. Each Body of Merchants or Tradesmen have an Apartment by themselves, and no Man may sell the same Commodities in another Place. All Manner of Goods are here sold.

There is also another *Beziстan*, but neither so large nor so well stocked with Goods. There are also several *Bazaars*, or publick Markets, in one of which, called the *Aurec Bazaar*, or Womens Market, is a Pillar of an extraordinary Height, called, *The Historical Column*, because from the Top to the Bottom, which is 147 Foot, are represented in *Basse-Relieve*, several Expeditions, Battles, and other remarkable Events, during the Empire of *Arcadius*. 'Tis all of Marble, but much defaced, and the Houses stand so near to it, that one can't have room to find out the Figures of it. There are Stairs in it to ascend up to the Top, but the *Turks* will suffer no Man to go up them. In the Quarter of the *Janizaries*, near the Baths of *Ibrahim Bassha*, in the Court of a private Man's House, stands the Column of the Emperor *Marcian*. It is all of spotted Marble about 15 Foot high, and its Capital of the *Corinthian* Order. On the Top is a Square hollow Stone, adorned with 4 Eagles at each Corner. It is reasonable to think his Heart was put in this Stone, and his Body is buried under the Column. Ex. *le Brun*. The other is called, *The Burnt Pillar*, because it has been lately burnt by a Fire that happen'd near it, which has so shatter'd it, that they have been forced to keep it tight with Iron Bars. It is 8 Paces of *Porphyrian* Marble, so neatly join'd, that they seemed but one Stone, till the Fire damaged it, but now they are all seen.

The G. Seignior's *Seraglio's* are also remarkable Buildings. They are the Palaces where the *Ottoman* Princes ordinarily keep their Courts. The Word is taken from *Serrai*, which signifies a Noble House. There are 2 *Seraglio's* belonging to the G. Seignior, *viz.* The Old, and the New, which being much the more noble Building, tho' nothing so magnificent as the Palace of so great a Prince ought to be, is called, *The Grand Seraglio*. It is of a Triangular Form, 2 Sides whereof are encompassed by the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the other divides it from the Town. It stands in the Place of the ancient *Byzantium*. It is 3 Miles in Compass, and is enclosed within a very strong Wall, upon which are divers Watch-Towers, on which the *Agliam-Oglams* watch Night and Day. It hath many Gates both to the Sea and Land-side, but the chiefest is toward the City, and that is used daily, but the rest are never opened, but upon some special Occasion, those to the Sea-ward, when the King or some chief Officer of the *Seraglio* open them for Pleasure, and those to the Land-ward, when the King orders some

Great

Great Man to be put to Death, or upon some other great Design. The chief Gate above mention'd is guarded Day and Night by the Companies of *Capoochees*, or Porters, under the Command of the *Capoochee-Bashaa's*, or Captains of the Porters. A Company of *Janizaries* watch without the Palace, who are to give Notice of any Accident without. And by the Sea-side the *Agliam Oglams* watch in Towers upon the Wall, and if any Shipping attempt any Mischief, they have Ordnance ready charged, and the Gunners lying close by them. In this *Seraglio* are many stately Rooms, suited to the Seasons of the Year, the greatest part whereof are built upon plain Ground, and some upon the Hills and Sea-side, which are called *Kiosks*, or Banqueting Houses. Among these is the Chamber where the Grand Seignior gives Audience to Ambassadors, Basha's, &c. This Room stands in a Court adorn'd with many very delicate Fountains, and is furnished with rich Carpets and Crimson-Velvet, embroidered with Pearls, and the Walls covered with fine white Stones, and by it is a small Room covered with Silver Plate, larch'd with Gold. To these Lodgings of the King belong fair Gardens, with all sorts of Flowers and Fruits, pleasant Walks and Marble Fountains. There are also Lodgings for the Women like a Nunnery, wherein the Queen, the other *Sultana's*, and all the King's Women-Slaves do dwell, in which are Bed-Chambers, Dining-Rooms, Bagnio's, and all other Buildings necessary for the Service of the Women. There are also divers Rooms for the principal and inferior Officers, all well furnished, among which are the *Hazineh*, or King's private Treasury and Wardrobe, both strong Buildings with Iron Doors, which are kept continually shut, and the former is seal'd with the King's Seal. In the *Seraglio* are also Rooms for Prayer, Baths, Schools, Butteries, Kitchins, Distilling Rooms, Places to swim in, run Horses, Wrestling and Shooting at Buts, and all other Conveniences for a Prince's Palace.

The chief Gate.

The several Rooms.

Gardens.

The first Court of the Seraglio

At the Entrance into the *Seraglio* is a very large and stately Gate, where there is a Guard always standing of 50 *Capigies*, which leads into a very spacious Court, of near a Quarter of a Mile square, but it is not paved. The *Basha's* and other Great Men may ride into it, and near the Gate is a Shelter for Men and Horses. On the Right side of it is an Hospital for all that fall sick in the *Seraglio*, and an Eunuch, called *Hasteler-Agasi*, looks after them. On the Left side is a Place where they keep their Timber and Carts, to be ready for the Service of the Palace, and over it an Hall, where are hang'd Weapons of Antiquity, as Cimitars, Javelins, Bows, Head pieces, Gantlets, &c. which are lent to the Soldiers, when the G. Seignior, or chief Visier makes any solemn Entry into *Constantinople*.

Having passed thro' this great Court, you come to another Gate, less than the former, but more neat and costly, in which there is also a stately Porch, and a Guard of *Capoochees*. This leads into another Court less than the former, but far more beautiful and pleasant, by reason of the delicate Fountains and Walks, Rows of Cypresses and Gras Plats rail'd in, where the Gazels, or Row-Deer feed, and bring forth Young. It is near 300 Paces square, and the Walks are paved. In this Court all must walk on Foot, except the G. Seignior. On both sides of this Gate is an open Gallery, where the *Chiaushes*, or Pursuivants, the *Janizaries*, or Foot-Guards, and *Spahi's*, or Horse-Guards, do stand in their Ranks, very well apparell'd, when any Ambassadors enter, or on other solemn Occasions. In this Court are 7 Kitchins, with their Offices and Larders, for the King, Queen, *Sultana's*, and other Officers of the Court. On the Left side is the King's little Stable for about 35 Horses for his Majesty's Use, and over it Rooms for their Furnitures, which is very rich, set with Jewels, to the Admiration of all Beholders. Next the Stable are Rooms for the Officers of the *Divan*, or Court of Justice, and by them the Chamber, where the *Divan* sits, and a little behind that is the Gate that leads to the Womens Lodgings. At the End of this Court is the King's Gate, which leads to the King's Lodgings, and may not be entred by any, but such Gentlemen as attend him, and others that serve him, without Leave from the King himself. This Gate is kept by the *Capee-Aga*, or chief Chamberlain, and a Company of white Eunuchs. The Court is paved with fine Marble, wrought with *Mosaick* Work, and adorn'd with curious Fountains, and a Lake where the G. Seignior has a Boat to swim in for his Recreation. In the Buildings, which are sumptuous, are a Chamber of Audience, a Row of Summer-Rooms standing on a little Hill, and looking toward the Sea, a large Hall standing on Pillars, and opening towards the East, and by it the King's Bed-Chamber, whose Walls are covered with Stones of the finest *China* Metal, and the Floors with very costly *Persian* Carpets of Silk and Gold. The Posts of the Bedsted are Silver, the Canopy, Bolsters, Mattresses and Pallets all of Cloth of Gold. Behind the Hall is a Place to shoot in, where are laid up many Bows and Arrows.

The second Court.

The third Court.

The *Divan* sits 4 Days in a Week, *viz. Saturday*, *Sunday*, *Monday* and *Tuesday*, upon which Days the *Visier-Azem*, or chief Visier, who is the supream Judge, and represents the G. Seignior, with all the rest of the Visiers, the 2 *Cadileschers*, or Judges of the Armies in *Greece* and *Natolia*; the 3 *Defterdars*, or Treasurers; the *Reiskitaub*, or Chancellor; the *Nesbaungee*, or Keeper of the Mark, with their Secretaries and Clerks; the *Chiaush-Basha* and his Officers are to be at the *Divan* by Break of Day: All Causes are determined by the *Visier-Azem*, if he pleases, for the *Basha's* do not speak, but only hearken and attend till he refers any thing to their Judgment, as he often doth for Expedition, reserving the Causes of the greatest Consequence, and Importance to himself, as doth also the *Caimekam*, or his Deputy in his Absence. The Petitioners speak for themselves, or desire the Help of a *Chiaush*, for they have no Pleaders, or Attorneys: When the chief Visier hath heard their Suits, he taketh Council with the *Basha's*, and then resolves and determines them, as he will himself. This he doth usually after Dinner, and then he repairs on *Sundays* and *Tuesdays* to the Chamber of Audience, to give an Account to the King of what Business he has dispatched. Sometimes the G. Seignior will come privately to a little Window, which is covered with a Lattice, and looks into the *Divan*, to hear the Causes, and this forceth the chief Visier to act circumspectly and justly in managing Affairs, while he sits in the *Divan*, tho' at other times his Hands are open to Bribery, and he will carry Business as he pleaseth, but all Things are dispatched without Delays.

The *Divan* and its Judges.

How Judgments are given.

When an Ambassador from any great Prince is to kiss the G. Seignior's Hand, the Grand Visier calls a great *Divan* of all the Grandees of the Port, and all the *Chiaushes*, *Mustafarraka's*, *Spahi's* and *Janizaries* are ordered by their Captains to apparel themselves in the best Manner they are able, and stand in their Places in the 2d Court. When the *Divan* is set in their Order, the chief Visier sends a *Chiaush-Basha* with many of his *Chiaushes* on Horse back, to conduct the Ambassador to the *Divan*, where he is placed Face to Face, close to the Visier, who having complimented him a while, entertains him at Dinner, and then conveys him to a Room by the King's Gate with his Attendants, till the King is ready to receive him. In the mean time the Ambassador's Present is carried about the 2d Court, in the Sight of all People, and then is brought to the King, and the Grand Visier sends the Ambassador several Vests appointed by *Canon* for himself and his Gentlemen, to put on for that Ceremony. The Vests for the Ambassador are of Cloth of Gold of *Bursia*, but for the rest, are of little or no Value, yet the Ambassador must make a Present to the G. Seignior of more than the Worth of them. Then is the Ambassador conducted by the Master of the Ceremonies to kiss the King's Hand (which is, indeed, but his Hanging-sleeve) which done, the *Druggaman*, or Interpreter, declares the Ambassador's Commission; to which the King makes no Answer (for he disdains to speak to a Christian) but speaking to the chief Visier, refers all Proceedings to his Discretion, and so the Ambassador departeth, bowing his Head to the King, but pulls not off his Hat at all. Other Ambassadors of Petty Princes, or States, tho' they have Vests given them also by the G. Seignior, yet come not to the *Divan*, but go privately with their Presents to the King. All Ambassadors are maintain'd by the G. Seignior, except those from the States of *Venice*, during their abode at the Port, but 'tis hard to get his Allowance thro' the Baseness of the Officers.

How Ambassadors are received

Vests given them.

All Persons that live in the *Seraglio*, are the G. Seignior's Slaves, as are all that are subject to his Empire; for they all acknowledge, that whatever that they enjoy proceeds from his Good will, and that their Estates and Lives are absolutely at his Disposal.

The Inhabitants of the *Seraglio*.

1. Women.

There are in the King's Court about 1200 Women old and young. The King's Concubines, who are kept up for their Beauties, are all young Virgins, ſtollen from Foreign Nations, who being inſtructed in good Behaviour, Dancing, Muſick, Singing and curious Sowing, are given to the G. Seignior as Preſents of great Value by the *Tartars*, *Baſha's*, and other Great Men, and ſo their Number is uncertain. Theſe Virgins immediately upon their coming into the *Seraglio*, are made *Turks* by uſing this Ceremony: They are to hold up their Finger and ſay theſe Words, *Law illa-wheh illaw Allawh, Mahammed reſoul Allawh*, i. e. *There is no God but God alone, and* Mahomet *is the Meſſenger of God*; and then being examined by an old Woman, called *Kabiyah Cadun*, i. e. The Mother of the Maids, they are placed in a Room with their Equals in Age and Diſpoſition. All the Women live like Nuns, but have large Rooms to dwell in. Their Beds are coarſe and hard, made of Flocks, and by every 10 Virgin lies an old Woman, and there are Lamps always burning by them. By their Rooms they have Baths and Fountains for their Uſe, and above their Bed-Chambers Places to ſit and ſew in. They feed in Companies, and are waited upon by other Women, wanting nothing that is neceſſary for them. There are alſo Schools for ſuch as will learn to read or ſpeak the *Turkiſh* Tongue, ſew, or play, and ſome Hours are allow'd them for Walking and Recreations. The King never ſees theſe Virgins, unleſs when they are firſt preſented to him, or when he deſires to have one of them for his Bedfellow, and divert himſelf with Muſick, or ſome other Paſtime. When the King deſires a freſh Mate, he gives Notice to the *Kabiyah Cadun*, who, like an old Baud, picks out the faireſt and moſt pleaſing, and having placed them in 2 Rows in a Room, brings in the King, who walking 4 or 5 times in the midſt of them, views them all well, and as he goes out, throws his Handkerchief into the Virgin's Hand, which he chuſeth to lie with. This Choice is accounted a great Favour, and the *Cadun* uſes all the Art ſhe can to prepare her for it, by attiring, painting and perfuming her, and at Night ſhe is brought to ſleep with the G. Seignior in certain Chambers ſet apart for that Buſineſs in the Womens Lodgings. By the Bed they have great Wax-Tapers burning all Night, and *Mooriſh* Women ſitting by them. In the Morning when the King riſeth, he changeth all his Apparel, and leaves them to her he lay with and the Money in the Pockets, and then departs to his own Lodgings, from whence he ſends her immediately a Preſent of Jewels, Money and Veſts of greater or leſs Value, according to the Satisfaction he received from her that Night. If any of them conceive by him, and bring him forth his firſt begotten Child, ſhe is called, *Sultana* Queen, and if it be a Son, ſhe is confirm'd and eſtabliſh'd Queen by great Feaſts and Solemnities, and forthwith hath an Apartment, Servants, and a large Revenue appointed her, and all Perſons in the *Seraglio* muſt pay her the Reſpect of a Queen. The other Women that bear him Children are called *Sultana's*, but not Queens, yet live in Rooms apart, are well ſerved and attended, and have no Want either of Money or Apparel, according to their Degree. But if it happens that the firſt begotten Son of the Queen, Heir to the Empire, dies, and another of the *Sultana's* have a Son to ſucceed the deceaſed Heir, the former is deprived of her Revenue and Royalty, and remains a *Sultana*, and the latter is made Queen, and ſo the Title runs from one *Sultana* to another by Virtue of the Son's Succeſſion.

How made *Mahometans*.

Their Beds.

How the King uſeth them.

His Preſent to them.

How any is made Queen.

The G. Seignior not married.

In Times paſt the G. Seignior was married to the Queen, but now ſhe paſſeth without celebrating any Nuptial Rites; yet the Mother of the Heir enjoys all the Prerogatives of a Queen, and has a Guard of 30 or 40 black Eunuchs, under the Command of the *Kuzlar-Aga*, their Maſter, to be employ'd on her Occaſions. Theſe *Sultana's* never go out of the *Seraglio*, but in the King's Company, and are never ſeen by any but ſuch as attend them, which are black Eunuchs, which have all cut off clear to the Belly, that there may be no Danger from them.

The King's Daughters, Siſters and Aunts have their Lodgings alſo in the ſame *Seraglio*, and being Royally ſerv'd, and ſumptuouſly apparell'd, live by themſelves in continual Pleaſures, until ſuch time as, at their Requeſt, the King ſhall be pleaſed to give them in Marriage, and then they come forth, and carry each of them a Cheſt along with them, which the G. Seignior gives them full of rich Apparel, Jewels and Money, to the Value of 30000 *l.* Sterling, beſides what they have hid for themſelves before, which amounts ſometimes to a great deal, and if the G. Seignior be diſpoſed to deal Royally with them, they are ſuffer'd to carry with them 20 Women-Slaves, and as many Eunuchs, and he continues their Allowance of 1000 or 1500 Aſpers a Day, which they had in the *Seraglio*, to them, and furniſhes their Houſes; and if her Husband have not an Houſe fit for her, the King will give her one of his own. Now for the Husband's Part, he is to make her a Bill of Dowry of at leaſt 100000 Checquins of Money, beſides, Veſts, Jewels, Brooches, and other Ornaments, which amount to a great Sum. Being thus married, they do not at all converſe with Men more than they did before, except their own Husbands, but only with Women, viſiting their old Acquaintance in the *Seraglio*, yet not without the G. Seignior's Leave. The *Sultana's* thus married are for the moſt part their Husbands Maſters, inſulting over them, and commanding them as they pleaſe, wearing an *Hanjar*, or Dagger, in token of their Power over them, and ſometime they will put them away and take others, and ſuch a Divorce commonly proves the Death of the Husband, whom the King leaves to their Will.

The other Women either grow old in the *Seraglio*, and ſo are made Miſtreſſes of the young ones, or are ſent forth into the old *Seraglio*, which they count their beſt Fortune, becauſe from thence they may be married, with the Conſent of the Miſtreſs, and carry away the Riches they have gotten, which is very conſiderable, partly by their ſaving out of the King's Allowance, and by the Preſents made them by the King upon their *Byram*, and by the *Baſha's* Wives. Hither alſo, after the King's Death, are all the *Sultana's* ſent, except the *Sultana* Queen, and if they are wealthy, they marry to Men of reaſonable Quality, yet with the good Will of the Miſtreſs, and Conſent of the G. Seignior. The Women of the *Seraglio* are puniſhed for their Faults very ſeverely, and extreamly beaten by their Overſeers, and if they prove diſobedient and incorrigible, they are by the King's Order ſent into the old *Seraglio*, and the beſt part of what they have, taken from them; but if they are found guilty of Witchcraft, Whoredom, or any ſuch notorious Crime, they are bound Hand and Foot, and being put into a Sack, are in the Night caſt into the Sea. The *Seraglio* may be rightly termed the Seminary or Nurſery of the beſt Subjects, for in it all have their Education, who afterwards become the principal Officers and ſubordinate Rulers of the State and Affairs of the Empire, and theſe are they which are called the *Agliam-Oglans*, i. e. Unexpert and untutored Youths. There are ordinarily about 6 or 700 of them, from 12 to 25 or 30 Years of Age at moſt, being all of them Chriſtians Children, gather'd up every 3 Years in the *Morea* and throughout all the Parts of *Albania*. They are taken from ſuch Families as are ſuppoſed to be the beſt Spirit and moſt warlike Diſpoſition, and as ſoon as they are brought into the *Seraglio*, they are circumciſed and made *Turks*. They are at firſt put to very baſe and ſlaviſh Employments, as to ſerve in the Stables, Kitchins and Gardens, for Digging and Cleaving Wood, and are made to row in *Caicks*, or Barges, and to lead the Greyhounds a-courſing, or whatever elſe they are commanded to do by the *Oda-Baſha's*, or Captains. They are allow'd from 2 to 5 Aſpers a Day, but afterward ſuch as have a Deſire to learn, are taught to read and write, and generally all of them are taught to wreſtle, leap, run, throw the Iron-Weight, ſhoot the Bow, diſcharge a Piece, and all other Exerciſes beſitting a *Turkiſh* Soldier. The G. Seignior makes uſe of them when he intends a Journey to any Place for pitching his Tents, removing or carrying his Cheſts and Baskets, and ſuch like Services, for which Employments the King never takes with him leſs than 300 of them. The *Baſtangee-Baſha* always takes with him good ſtore of them, when by his Majeſty's Order he is to put ſome Great Man to Death, which is commonly done by the Hands of 4 or 5 of theſe *Agliam-Oglans*. They are capable of being made Stewards to the *Baſtangee-Baſha*, and may riſe to that great Office it ſelf, which is an eminent Place, for he hath the Keeping of all the G. Seignior's Gardens, Houſes and Steers, the King's *Kaike*, and wears a Turbant in the *Seraglio*, and if he be in the King's Favour, he is preferr'd to higher Dignities, *viz.* to be *Captain-Baſha*, *Baſha* of *Cairo*, *Damaſcus*, *Aleppo*, &c. and ſometimes he comes to be *Viſier-Azem*.

The Marriage of the King's Siſters, &c.

The Uſe of the old *Seraglio*.

Their Puniſhment.

There

The *Itchoglans*, their Education.

There are other Youths educated in the *Seraglio*, called *Itchoglans*, but in far better Fashion than the former. They are brought up in Learning, in the Knowledge of the Law and Military Exercises for the King's and Country's Service, and to perform those Things, which belong to the Government of the whole Empire. By the ancient Institution they should be always made of Christian Runagado's and Captives of the most civil and noblest that can be found; but the *Capee-Aga*, or chief Chamberlain, brings in some natural born *Turks* of the best Aspects, and who promise a great deal of Worth, with the King's Consent. The Number of them is uncertain, but 'tis said, they are commonly about 100. As soon as they come into the *Seraglio* they are exceedingly well tutor'd, and daily taught, as well good Fashion as comely Behaviour, and the Rites and Ceremonies of the *Mahometan* Law, and whatsoever may tend to the enriching of their Minds, and for this Purpose there are 4 *Oda's*, or Schools, being so many Degrees, the one higher than the other. In the first, called the *Chaukou-Oda*, they all come but Children, and there learn Silence, the Postures of holding down their Heads and looking downwards, with their Hands before them join'd a-cross, which all betoken singular Reverence, and are used by such as are before the King: Then they learn to write and read, read and practise the *Turkish* Tongue, and are taught their Prayers by Heart in the *Arabian* Tongue, and that they may learn these Things well, they are look'd to to Admiration. In this School they stay about 5 or 6 Years, and such as are dull stay much longer. In the 2d School, called *Quilar-Oda*, they are taught by more learned and sufficient Tutors the *Persian*, *Arabian* and *Tartarian* Tongues, and to that End take great Pains in reading divers Authors in those Languages. Here they begin to wrestle, shoot the Bow, throw the Iron-Mace, toss the Pike, run and handle their Weapons, &c. and in these Exercises in several Orders and Places they spend certain Hours daily, and are severely punished if they are found negligent in the leastwise. In this *Oda* they also spend 4 or 5 Years, and being become strong Men fit for any thing, they are removed to the 3d, where forgetting nothing they have already learned, they are taught further to ride, and how to behave themselves in the Wars. Moreover, every one of them learns a Trade necessary for the Service of the King's Person, as to Shave, make a Turbant, fold up Apparel handsomly, pair Nails, attend at the Bath, keep Hawks, to be Sewers, Querries of the Stables, Target-Bearers, wait at Table, &c. While they are in these 3 Schools they are but meanly apparell'd, having yearly 2 Cloth-Vests, somewhat fine, but their Linen is coarse. In this *Oda* their Punishments are severe, for their Masters will give them 100 Blows upon the Soles of their Feet or Buttocks, insomuch, that they are oftentimes left for dead. In this School none is suffered to be familiar with any but themselves, so that none may speak with them, but by Leave from the *Capee-Aga*, and that in the Presence of an Eunuch. When they go also to the Bath, or any other Business, they have Eunuchs attending them, to keep them from any Lewdness, and for the same Reason they have Eunuchs lying by them always in their Bed-Chambers. Here also, before they are raised to the 4th *Oda*, the Eunuchs use all Arts to try whether they are firm to *Turcism*, and have no Inclination to Christianity, and being thus proved, they are preferr'd to the 4th *Oda*, called, *Haz-Oda*, or, *The Prince's Chamber*. Now all Punishments cease, and they may freely converse with all the Great Men of the *Seraglio*, and being cleanly and neat in their Apparel, the G. Seignior takes them along with him when he goes abroad upon Pleasure, if none of his Women be with him. Out of the young Men thus perfected and compleated the King chuseth his *Aga's* and *Basha's*, viz. the *Selibter-Aga*, the King's Sword-Bearer; the *Chiahadar-Aga*, he which carries his Yagmoorlick; *Rechiubter-Aga*, Yeoman of the Stirrup; *Mataragee-Aga*, he which brings him Water to wash his Hands and Face; *Talbenter-Aga*, he that brings his Turbant; *Kembasir-Aga*, he that looketh to his Apparel and the Washing of his Linen; the *Chestangir-Basha*, the chief Sewer; the *Doganjee-Basha*, the chief Falconer; the *Zagargee-Basha*, the chief Huntsman; the *Turnackgee-Basha*, he that pairs the King's Nails; the *Hamaumgee-Bashi*, the chief Accomptant; and the *Teskeregee-Basha*, his Majesty's Secretary. All these are created out of the Eldest of the *Itchoglans* of the 4 *Oda*. They are always in the King's Presence, holding their Heads down, and Hands a-cross, never speaking; but whatever the King commands, are wonderful ready to obey. They wait at the King's Table, and he is well pleased with their Service and Company. He will ride with them and play at the *Jeerit*, and other Sports when he is well disposed. He often gives them Presents of Vests, Swords and Bows, and sometimes ready Money; yea, he entrusts them with the Dispatch of Embassies, and tho' they must not go themselves, yet finding out what Presents the Prince, to whom the Embassie is to be sent, uses to give to Ambassadors, they sell it to a *Chiaush*. And this he doth to enrich them, against the time he shall send them out of the *Seraglio*, to be Generals at Sea, or *Basha's* of some great City, as *Babylon*, *Aleppo*, &c. or *Beglerbegs* of *Graecia*, *Natolia*, &c. When any is thus sent out, the Next in standing succeeds, unless his ill Behaviour has made him uncapable, and so all live in Hopes of Greatness and Riches. Before their Departure they stay a-while till their Beards are grown (for they are always shaved in the *Seraglio*) and then they receive their Presents of the *Sultana's* and *Basha's*, and when their Beards are grown, they pay their Visits to all the Great Men of the Court.

The King's familiarity with them.

Their Schools in 4 Degrees.

1. *Oda*, or School, and what is taught in it.

2. *Oda*, and what is taught in it.

3. *Oda*, and what is taught there.

In the *Seraglio* there are also other Ministers for necessary Services, as also Buffoons, Tumblers, Musicians, Wrestlers and Mutes. These last are in great Request, because the G. Seignior thinks it below his Greatness to speak to any about him familiarly, and therefore he makes himself merry with these Mutes, who, tho' being deaf and dumb, will reason and discourse of any thing by Nods and Signs, as others By-words, nay, many of them can write very sensibly and well, which is admirable.

Other Officers of the *Seraglio*.

There are also White Eunuchs, who attend the King and his Gate. The chief of them is the *Capee-Aga*, or Chamberlain, who is in greatest Authority with the G. Seignior; for he alone is allow'd to speak to him, and present all Petitions, Messages and Writings, and accompanies the King wherever he goes. His Salary is 8 *Sultana's* a Day, *i.e.* 3 *l.* Sterling, besides Presents from all that have any Business with the King. 2. The *Hazinehdar-Basha*, or the Inward Treasurer, who keeps an Account of all the Treasure brought into this Inward Treasury, which is only the Wealth of ancient Kings, and the Revenue of *Egypt*, and the adjacent Provinces, and takes it out upon occasion: He hath the Custody of all the King's Jewels, which he wears, or are presented him, and keeps a Registry of them, when received and when given away. He succeeds the *Capee-Aga*, when he dies. 3. The *Keelergee-Basha*, i.e. Master of the Wardrobe, into which are brought all the Presents of Cloth of Gold, Plate, Silks, Woollen Cloths, Furs of all sorts, Swords, Brooches, Raw-Silk, Carpets, and whatever else serves for his Majesty's Use, of which he keeps particular Inventories, as well as to what is received as given: This Eunuch has many Servants under him, and his Salary is 1000 Aspres a Day, *viz.* 50 *s.* Sterling: He is much in Favour with the King, and is to succeed to *Hazinehdar-Basha*. 4. The *Serai Agasee*, i.e. The Keeper of the *Seraglio*. He sees that all Things be prepared for the Service of the Palace, and that the Rooms be kept well, and that all the Officers do their Duty: He is allowed to ride up and down the *Seraglio*, in the Courts, Gardens, and by the Sea-side, as the 3 former are: His Pension is 800 Aspres, or 40 *s.* a Day, besides Vests and Furs, he succeeds the *Keelergee-Basha*. The 3 last may not speak to the King, unless it be in answer to any thing he asks them. The Number of these Eunuchs is about 200, and they are all not only gelt, but have their Yards cut off when they are very young, and that with their own Consent, which is obtain'd by assuring them what Great Men they will be, for otherwise they would be in Danger of Death (as the Workmen in that Business affirm.) They are brought up with the *Itchoglans*, and are taken from the 4th *Oda* to serve the G. Seignior, who employs them in the Government of his other *Seraglio's*, and his Seminaries of Youth at *Constantinople*, *Adrianople*, and other Places, makes them *Basha's* of *Cairo*, *Aleppo*, and other Cities, and sometimes Visiers of the Bench. They are also trusted by the *Capee-Aga* to keep the King's Curiosities and valuable Rarities, as great Pieces of Ambergreese, Musk, Balsom, Cups of Agat, &c. for tho' they are not of great Courage, yet they are counted of great Judgment and Fidelity. The Black Eunuchs and Black

White Eunuchs.

Inward Treasurer.

The Keeper of the *Seraglio*.

The Black Eunuchs.

Black *Moor* Wenches ſerve the *Sultana's* and the reſt of the Queen's Women. Theſe Eunuchs, while they are Boys, are taught as the White ones are, and after are ſet to ſerve and wait at the *Sultana's* Gate, under the Command of the *Kuſtar-Aga*. They are allow'd a Penſion of 50 or 60 Aſpers a Day, and 2 Veſts, with Linen and other Neceſſaries, yearly, beſides Preſents given them by ſuch Women as come to the King's Women. They are never ſent abroad in any Employment, but ſerve for ever in the *Seraglio*. They are called by the Names of Flowers, as Roſe, Narciſſus, *&c.* Their Buſineſs is to carry Meſſages and Notes from the *Sultana's* to the *Capee-Aga*, to be delivered to the King, and attend upon the Women in Sickneſs and Health.

Their Names and Office.

The King's Sons by the Queen are brought up by themſelves, by choice Nurſes, which are found out of the *Seraglio*, and if he has Sons by other *Sultana's*, they are brought up alſo by themſelves, but may play with them till they are 6 or 7 Years old. They live with the Women 9 or 10 Years, and about 14 are circumciſed with great Pomp, as Weddings are kept among Chriſtians. The Sons from 5 to 10 Years of Age are taught to write and read by an *Hojah*, or School maſter, who for that End is admitted into the Womens Apartment for certain Hours, but ſees them not, unleſs 2 or 3 old ugly black *Mooriſh* Women; but Daughters are little regarded. When the *Shawzawdeh*, or King's Son, who is Heir to the Crown, is circumciſed, he is ſometimes ſent abroad with a ſuitable Equipage, and under the Care of his principal and truſty Eunuchs, to be Governour of *Magneſia*, and the Provinces about it, but as Deputy to his Father. The Eunuch is bound to give continual Adviſe to the G. Seignior of his Son's Deportment, ſo that if he tranſgreſſeth the Limits of his Commiſſion in the leaſt, he quickly falls into Diſgrace, and into a Suſpicion of Rebellion.

Circumciſion, how celebrated.

The Victuals in the *Seraglio* is dreſt by ſuch of the *Agliam-Oglans* as are brought up to Cookery, called *Aſkees*, or Cooks. They wear white Caps for Diſtinction, and are about 200 from the higheſt to the meaneſt Officers of the Kitchin. They begin their Buſineſs early in the Morning, for the G. Seignior riſing betimes, they muſt have always ſomething ready for his Breakfaſt. He dines at 10 a Clock in the Forenoon, and ſups about 6 in the Evening, both in Summer and Winter. He ſits down with his Legs a-croſs, according to the *Turkiſh* Faſhion, and has a rich Napkin laid before him. He carves for himſelf, but uſeth neither Knife nor Fork, for his Meat is ſo tender and delicately dreſt, that he eaſily pulls it in Pieces with his Fingers. He hath 2 Wooden Spoons, the one to eat his Pottage with, and the other to ſup the Syrups with, which he uſeth to quench his Thirſt. He uſeth no Salt nor Antipaſt. He taſteth of all the Diſhes one by one, and cloſeth up his Stomach with a *Beciat*, or Tart, and when he has dined or ſupp'd waſheth his Hands in a Golden Baſon, ſet with precious Stones. His uſual Diet is Pigeons, Geeſe, Lamb, Hens, Chickens, Mutton; and ſometimes wild Fowl, and uſually as much boil'd as roaſted of all of them, with Broths, Preſerves and Syrups in Porcelane Diſhes, and ſome Tarts and Pyes. When he has done eating, he concludes with a Draught of Sherbet, and ſeldom drinks more than once at a Meal. He ſeldom or never ſpeaks at Table, but to favour ſome *Aga*, to whom he ſpeaks a Word or two, and throws him a Loaf as a Mark of it. The King's Diſhes are all Gold or yellow Porcelane, ſcarce to be had for Money, in which he eats chiefly in their *Ramazan*, or *Lent*, which laſteth a whole Moon, and only by Night, as all the *Turks* do; but they make no Difference of Meats, excepting Swines Fleſh and Things ſtrangled, which are forbidden by their Law at all Times. The King ſeldom eats Fiſh, unleſs when he is by the Sea-ſide with his Women, where he ſees it taken. The Meat which is left at the G. Seignior's Table, is carried to the *Aga's* that wait; and after Dinner the King diverts himſelf with the Mutes and Buffoons. The *Capee-Aga* hath a Table by himſelf, dreſt in his own Kitchin, and with him the *Haznebdar-Baſha*, *Sarii Agaſee*, the King's Phyſicians do eat, and what he leaves ſerves all the White Eunuchs. The Youths in the *Oda's* have 2 Loaves a-piece and boil'd Mutton, with Pottage made of Rice, Butter and Honey allow'd them daily.

The Victuals how provided.

The Queen and *Sultana's* are at the ſame time ſerved by the Black Eunuchs, but in Copper-Diſhes, unleſs the King be with them. They drink their Sherbet with Snow, which coſts dear to bring it from the Hills, and keep it under Ground. They eat no Cheeſe, but *Parmeſan*, ſent by the *Bailo*, or Reſidentiary of *Venice*. All theſe Things are done in ſuch Order, that all is finiſhed in leſs than 2 Hours time. The G. Seignior's, *Sultana's* and *Baſha's* Bread is made of Wheat, brought from *Burſia*, and ground there, and is very white and ſavoury; the reſt of the Bread for the *Seraglio* is made of Corn brought out of *Velo* in *Græcia*. There is vaſt Quantities of Bread ſpent in the *Seraglio*, becauſe every one has a large Allowance made by the chief Viſier. The Rice, Lentiles, and other Pulſe, is brought twice a Year out of *Ægypt* in Galleons. There is a vaſt Quantity of Sugar ſpent in Sherbets and Boclava's, but they eat little Spice, but Pepper. This is brought out of *Ægypt*, with a great Quantity of Conſerves, Dates, Prunes, pickled Meats and dry'd Plumbs, tho' 400 *Halvagi's* are continually at Work to preſerve others. The Honey uſed at the King's Table comes from *Cio*, but the reſt comes from *Walachia*, *Tranſilvania* and *Moldavia* in great Earthen Jars. The Oil is brought from *Modon* and *Coron*, in *Greece*, and is much uſed in Meats and Lamps; but the King eats only what comes from *Candy* and *Zante*, which is the deareſt and beſt. Their Butter comes by Shipping out of the *Black Sea* from *Bogdiana* and *Caffa* in Ox and Buffalo's Hides. They eat very little or no freſh Butter, nor eat much Milk, unleſs it be *Yoghurd*, i. e. Sower, or clouted Cream. In the *Seraglio* are ſpent in dry'd Beef of Cows of *Boſturnia*, killed when they are great with Calf, becauſe they ſay their Fleſh is more tender and ſavory, 400 yearly; and the daily Proviſion is 200 Sheep, 100 Lambs and Kids in their Seaſon, 10 Calves, 50 Geeſe, 100 Hens, 100 Chickens and 200 Pigeons. In the *Seraglio* there is little Fiſh eaten, tho' the Sea yields plenty, and therefore the Chriſtians buy it cheap. The *Seraglio* is plentifully ſerved with Fruit from the King's Gardens, and Preſents ſent to the King from all Parts; ſo that they ſell a great deal, and the Money is given to the King for Pocket-Money.

The Bread uſed in the *Seraglio*.

Honey.

Oil.

Butter.

Beef.

Fruit.

The Furniture of the King's Kitchins are of Braſs, but ſo well kept and ſo large, that they are as brave a Sight as can be ſeen. The G. Seignior's Cloaths differ little in Faſhion from other Mens; only in Length and Richneſs. His Turbant is like the *Baſha's*, only he wears Plumes and Brooches, which they do not. He ſleeps upon Mattreſſes of Velvet and Cloth of Gold covered in Summer with Sheets embroider'd with Silk, and in Winter with Luſerns, or Sables. When he lies alone in his own Lodgings, he is watched by the Pages of his Chamber, 2 at a Time, and 2 old Women wait on him with burning Torches to light him, if he pleaſes to ſay over his Beads, which they pray by at the Hours of Prayer in the Night, *viz.* at Midnight, and 2 Hours before Day. The Women's Habit is much like the Men's, for they wear *Chaelſhirs*, or Breeches, and Buskins, and ſleep in them; but they have thin ones for the Summer and thick for the Winter.

The G. Seignior's Cloaths.

The ſeveral Stipends of the Officers of the *Seraglio* are paid by the *Defterdar*, out of the outward Treaſury, who ſends them their Veſts againſt the *Cernival*, and if he fails at the Times appointed, upon any Complaint he will be utterly ruined, or at leaſt diſplaced. If any of the *Itcheglans* or *Agliam-Oglans* die, his Chamber fellows are his Heirs, and ſo it is with the young Women, that never lay with the the King; but if an Eunuch, who are generally very rich, dies, all comes to the G. Seignior himſelf, except he be out of the *Seraglio*, for then the King has only 2 Thirds, and the reſt he may diſpoſe of by Will, if the King will conſent to it; but to ſecure his Parts, there is an Officer, called the *Beytel-Mawlgee*, who, as ſoon as any one dies, enquires after their Eſtates, and certifies the *Defterdar* of it, that he may ſeize it for the King; yet the *Beytel Mawlgee*, for his own private Gain, doth often conceal a great part of the Eſtate of the Deceaſed to divide it privately beween the Kindred and himſelf. If any falls ſick in the *Seraglio*, they are immediately carried in a Cart, covered with Cloth, and drawn with Hands from their Chamber to the *Lazaretta*, or Hoſpital belonging to the Palace, where they are kept ſo cloſe, that none can ſpeak with them without great Difficulty, but the Phyſician and Apothecary, and being recovered, they are carried back in the ſame Manner to their Chambers.

The Women.

The Inhabitants of the *Seraglio*.

The G. Seignior is at vaſt Expences in Gifts to the *Sultana* Queen, chief Viſiers, *Serdars*, or Generals, and Captains

Swines Fleſh and Things ſtrangled not eaten.

The Queen and *Sultana's*, how ſerved.

The G. Seignior's Way of Eating.

tains of his Forces by Sea and Land, *Defterdars* and others, in Veſts, Bows, Swords, Plumes, &c. and he allows the Queen and *Viſier-Azem* in the Wars to be very generous, according to their Grandure. He may go out of the *Seraglio* when he pleaſeth, either by Water or Land. When he goes abroad by Water he is carried in his *Kaik*, or Barge, cover'd with Crimſon-Velvet, richly embroider'd, under which he ſits, his *Aga's* ſtanding all about him, and is row'd by the *Agliam-Oglans*, the *Baſtangee-Baſha* ſteering. When he goes forth by Land, he always rides on Horſe-back, and commonly goes out at the great Gate of the Palace. When he goes to the Moſque on *Fridays*, he is accompanied thro' the City by all the *Baſha's* and Grandees of the Port, beſides a large Retinue of Servants, who go by his Stirrup. The People in his Way follow him with repeated Acclamations of Happineſs, which he returns by a Nod, and ſuch as are wronged preſent to him their *Arzes*, or Petitions, which orders to be received, and being read at his Return, he gives Command for the Redreſs, to make good the Title he gives himſelf, that he is *Awlem Penawh*, i. e. *The Refuge of the World*. The G. Seignior at *Conſtantinople*, by the Sea-ſide, hath a large Stable of 1000 Horſes, for the Uſe of his Houſhold, of which the *Imrahor-Baſha*, or Maſter of the Horſe, hath Charge, and leſſer Stables at his Houſes of Pleaſure in the Country, of 10 Horſes each. He hath alſo Stables in *Burſia*, *Adrianople*, and divers other Places for Stallions, which furniſh him with very ſtately Colts, beſides ſuch as are daily ſent him from *Cairo*, *Damaſcus*, *Bagdat*, and other Places, by the *Baſha's*. For his meaner Servants he hath Horſes from *Walachia*, and for his Baggage 5000 Mules to carry Pavillions, Cheſts, Water, and other Neceſſaries for Travel, of which alſo the *Viſier-Azem* makes uſe when he goes General in any Expedition.

Upon the firſt Day of their *Biram*, or *Carnival*, the King ſhews himſelf publickly, to let all the great Men and better ſort of his Servants kiſs his Veſt, and then he is richly clad with all his beſt Jewels, and ſits down on a *Perſian* Carpet, where his *Taht*, or Throne is ſet, the chief *Viſier* telling him the Names of the Persons, that he may take Notice of them, and chiefly he reſpects the *Mufti*, *Cadeleſchers*, and other Doctors of the Law of the higheſt Degree. The Ceremony being ended, he goeth to the Moſque of *Santa Sophia*, the Company attending him, and hears the *Mamaz*, or Divine Service, and a Sermon, which being ended, tho' he retires to his own Lodgings, and dines alone, as upon other Days, yet he orders a ſumptuous Banquet in the *Divan* for the *Baſha's* and Grandees, and a great Dinner in the Court-yard for the reſt of the Company, and after Dinner ſends them a *Biram-Lick*, i. e. a New-Year's-Gift, to all according to their Qualities. During the 3 Days of the *Biram* he cauſes Shews of Fire-Works to be made all Night, and a Drum to be beaten all the while, the King with his *Sultana's*, as well out as in the *Seraglio*, diverting themſelves with them, with other Sports and Tricks, which the King tolerates all the time. But as the G. Seignior gives, ſo alſo he receives Preſents at the ſame time from the *Baſha's* and Great Perſons, who ſtrive to exceed one another in the Value of their Gifts, that they may gain Favour. The *Biram* is celebrated alſo in all the G. Seignior's Dominions at the ſame time, as well as at *Conſtantinople*, the Streets being ſet out with pretty *Deviſes* and *Salunjacks*, or Swings very artificially made to ſolace both Old and Young: But in this Fit of *Turkiſh* Mirth 'tis dangerous for *Jews* or *Chriſtians* to ſtir out, for the *Turks*, putting off all their wonted Sobriety, are very inſolent, and will do them a Miſchief, if they will not give them what Money they demand.

Beſides the *Seraglio* we have been all along deſcribing, there is another in *Conſtantinople*, commonly termed, *The Old Seraglio*, ſo called becauſe it was the firſt built by *Mahomet* II. when he took *Conſtantinople*, to be his own Palace. It is a large Place about 3 Quarters of a Mile in Compaſs, and ſeated in the nobleſt Part of the City. It is environ'd with an high Wall, and the Buildings are fair. It hath but one Gate belonging to it, and that is of Iron, which is kept by a Guard of White Eunuchs. The Inhabitants of it are all Women and Eunuchs. The Women are only ſuch as have been put out of the King's *Seraglio*, *viz.* the *Sultana's* of the deceaſed G. Seigniors, ſuch as are fallen into Diſgrace with the King for their ill Conditions, or rude Behaviour, or ſuch as are infirm, and defective in ſomething that ſhould fit them for the King's Bed. They are governed by an old Woman, called *Kahiya-Cadum*, i. e. *The Woman-Overſeer*, who is to take care that they have all Things neceſſary for them, according to the Cuſtom of the Houſe. The *Sultana's* have Lodgings apart, and are reaſonably well ſerv'd, tho' far ſhort of what they had in the King's *Seraglio*. If they are rich when ſent thither, they make it known, and that procures them a good Husband and Joynture. The King will ſometimes go thither to viſit his Grandmother, Siſter, or other Relations, or when he is melancholy.

The Gover-nour of it.

There are other *Seraglio's* in *Conſtantinople*, which belong to private Perſons, but built with an ugly Appearance for fear of giving Jealouſie to the G. Seignior, tho' within the Walls, which are high, there are lovely Apartments, adorned with Gold and Azure, and the Floors cover'd with fine Carpets, the Walls faced with fine Tyles like *China*. In the Halls and Chambers they have a Riſing about a Foot higher than the Floor, which they call a *Divan*, covered with richer Carpets than the reſt of the Room, and embroidered Cuſhions ſet againſt the Wall. Here they reſt, receive Viſits, and ſpend moſt of the Day.

The *Seraglio's* of private Perſons.

There are alſo many great Buildings in the City, like the Monaſteries of the Monks, which they call *Hans*, with Galleries and Chambers, where Merchants have Lodgings and Ware-Houſes at eaſie Rates, *viz.* one or two Aſpers a Day. They bring in a great Revenue to the Owners. They are built of Free-Stone round a Court, which has generally a Fountain in it. The Walls are ſtrong, and wondrous well barr'd to ſecure the Goods. The faireſt of them in *Conſtantinople* is the *La Valide*, built by the G. Seignior's Mother. The Houſes of *Conſtantinople* are all of Wood, very ordinarily built, and very ſubject to Fires from their taking much Tobacco. The Streets are crooked and narrow, up and down Hill. The *Caravanſera's* are built as the *Hans*, but are uſed only to lodge poor Travellers and the Servants of the Caravan, who have Rooms there for little or nothing.

The *Hans*.

Galata is the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, parted by the Port only, over which there are *Caiks*, or ſmall Boats, and *Hermes*, or Wherries, to carry you at all times for a ſmall Matter. You may go by Land, but it is a little about, and you paſs by the *Acmeidan*, or Field where the *Turks* exerciſe their Archery, and go in Proceſſion to make Prayers to God for the Succeſs of their Arms, and whatever they want. Then you go to *Caſſumpaſha*, a great Village, where is the Arſenal for building Galleys, Maones and Ships: It has 120 Docks, and a Magazine of Arms for 60000 Men, but it is inacceſſible to Chriſtians. In it are, beſides the *Capoudan-Baſha's*, or Admiral's Lodgings, a ſpacious *Bagnio* for the G. Seignior's Slaves, who are many Thouſands, and live very miſerably. This Town is parted from *Galata* only by the Burying-Places.

Galata.

Galata deſcribed.

Galata is a pretty large Place, the Houſes are good and well built. Many *Greeks* live there, and the *Franks*, who cohabit with them, have 5 Monaſteries and as many Churches. It has a large Tower in it, and by the Sea-ſide the fineſt Fiſh-Market in the World, where is great Plenty of all ſorts of Fiſh to be had cheap. The *Greeks* keep many Taverns, which draw the *Turks* from *Conſtantinople* thither, who are very inſolent in their Drink, and dangerous then to be met with.

Pera.

Beyond *Galata* lies *Pera*, a large Borough, which is ſeparated only by Burying-Places. In this Town dwell the Ambaſſadors from Chriſtian Princes, for only the Emperor's, King of *Poland's*, and the Republick of *Ragouſa* may reſide at *Conſtantinople*. The Houſes are high and handſome, being inhabited only by *Greeks* of Quality. Over-againſt the *Seraglio*, on the Right ſide, ſtands the *Topkana*, i. e. the Place where all the Guns and Artillery are caſt, and it gives the Name to all the Quarter. The Houſes of theſe 3 Places ſtand ſome higher and ſome lower, like an Amphitheatre, and are a pleaſant Proſpect in the Port or Sea.

The *Topkana*.

Scudaret.

In *Aſia*, a-croſs the Sea, which is about a Mile over, you come to *Scudaret*, paſſing by *Leander's* Tower. It is a large Town, and there the G. Seignior has a ſtately *Seraglio* and lovely Gardens. A little lower lies *Chalcedon*, once a City famous for the 4th General Council, but now is a pitiful Village. *The Prince's Iſle*, which is 4 Hours Sail from *Conſtantinople*, and contains 2 little Towns of *Greeks*, is excellent Air, and the Channel of the *Black-Sea*, called the *Thracian Boſphorus*, is a rare Place to take the Air upon, being

Leander's Tower.

Chalcedon.

Turkiſh Proceſſion.

12 Miles long, affording a delightful Prospect of stately Houses and lovely Gardens. This Channel affords plenty of Fish, especially Sword-Fish and Dolphins. Six Miles from *Constantinople* are 2 Forts, built to hinder the Inroads of the *Cossacks*, who would otherwise seek their Booty in that City. At the Mouth of the *Bosphorus* is a Rock, about 50 Paces from the Land, where stands a Pillar of White Marble, called *Pompey's* Pillar, because raised by him (as 'tis said) in Memory of his Victory over *Mithridates*. Over-against this Rock in *Europe* is a Village by the Sea-side, called *Fanare*, where is a Tower, with a Light on it always for the Convenience of Vessels to keep them from the Rocks, on which they are in Danger from frequent Tempests and Currents, caused by the *Danube*, *Boristhenes*, *Tanais*, and other Rivers, to suffer Shipwracks, and from thence the Sea is called *Mauro-Eustra*, i. e. *The Black Sea*; and by the *Greeks*, the *Euxine*, or *Axene* Sea, *i. e. Inhospitable*. Near the Channel of the *Black Sea* there are a great many *Siacalles*, or wild Dogs, something like Foxes, but supposed to be engendered on Wolves and Dogs. They howl dreadfully in the Evenings and Nights, especially in cold and bad Weather. They are very mischievous, and as fierce as Wolves. The Land on *Europe* side is a fine Country, full of Gardens and good Pasture, and Villages inhabited by *Greeks*. A little further are the fine Aquæducts that supply *Constantinople* with Water

Pompey's Pillar.

CHAP. II.

Of the Shape, Strength, Cloathing, Customs and Manners of the Turks.

The Turks Shape and Habit.

THE *Turks* are commonly well shap'd, and have none crooked or cripple among them, but are robust and strong for the most part. Their Habit is very fit to make them seem proper, and to cover all Defects; for next their Skin they wear a Pair of Drawers, and over them a Shirt and Doliman, reaching down to their Heels, like a close body'd Caffock, made of Sattin, Taffata, or other neat Stuff, which is quilted in Winter, and this they gird about with a Sash, or Leathern Belt, adorned with Gold or Silver-Buckles. At their Girdles they commonly wear 2 Daggers, or *Cangiars*, their Handles and Sheaths being garnished with Gold and Silver, and sometimes precious Stones, and their Pouch for Tobacco. Over the Doliman they wear a *Foregi*, or Night-Gown, which in Winter-time they line with rich Furs, if they are able. Their Stockins are of Cloth, and the Feet are Socks of red and yellow Leather sew'd to them. Their Shoes, which they call *Paloutches*, are of the same Colour, like our Slippers. Their Heads are covered with a Crimson-Velvet Cap, without Brims, about which they wreath a white or red Turbant, which is a Scarf of Linen or Silk-Stuff, many Ells long, and by the Fashion of it the Quality of the Man is known.

The Attire of the Ladies of *Constantinople* hath a particular Air of Grandure and Magnificence in it, and far surpasses the Dresses of the other Women of that Country. Their *Turpan*, or Head-Dress, is made up of many Handkerchiefs of various Colours, all wrought with Gold and Silver, beset with all manner of precious Stones, and adorn'd with divers sorts of Flowers. They can put it on or off without undoing it, and usually wear it several Days, and then put it into another Fashion, but it is often so heavy, that it is a Burthen to them. They wear outward a white Gown, edged at the Bottom with Gold-Laces and Fringes, and lined with Furs in Winter, as the Mens. The Ladies of the *Seraglio* wear sometimes on their Heads a *Calpak*, or Fur-Cap, others a round *Platine*, as the *Jewish* Women, with a Feather on each side, and Plumes at their Ears. The *Janizaries* wear upon some special Occasions a *Sorcola*, or Cap of Ceremony, which hangs down behind, and has a Pipe of gilt Leather before, half a Foot long, and reaches to the middle of their Foreheads, otherwise they wear a Turbant of white, red, or other Silk, as the other *Turks* do. They shave their Heads, and say the Devil nestles in long Hair, but they suffer their Beards and Mustacho's to grow, and have a great Esteem for a Man with a lovely Beard, and account it a great Affront to take a Man by the Beard. They swear by the Beard or Head of their Father, G. Seignior, or the like. They salute one another by laying their Hands upon their Breasts, and bowing a little, say, *Sela meon Aleicom*, i. e. *Peace be with you*, and the Person saluted returns the like Answer, which was the ancient Way of Salutation, as appears by Scripture, and is very grave. The Left-Hand is the most honourable with the *Turks*, because 'tis the Sword side, so that the *Christians* and *Turks*, tho' neither will give the upper Hand one to another, agree well in walking together, thro' Difference of Opinion. The *Turks* make a great Use of Bathing, both for keeping their Bodies neat and clean, and for their Health's sake, and in every Town they have many fair Bagnio's, the least Village not wanting one. They are all made of the same Fashion, differing only in Bigness and Ornaments. All that go into them shave off all the Hair of their Body, and go in naked, all but their Privities, which are covered with a Napkin. A Servant also embraces them behind and before to supple their Bones, before they go in. Such as cannot shave themselves, fetch off the Hair with the Powder of a certain Mineral, call'd *Rusma*, which being mingled with Lime, and hot Water, and laid upon any Place, will fetch off the Hair in half a Quarter of an Hour's time. In *Mecca* they use Orpiment for the same End. Having bathed, a Servant with Soap and Cloths cleanses the Body from all Filth, and then they are dry'd with warm Cloths, and so dress. The Price of the Bagnio is 2 Aspers for the Master, and as many to the Man, if he will be well served. The poorest Person that is, Man or Woman, goes to the Bath at least once a Week. The Women go in by themselves, and are served by Women only. It is a capital Crime for a Man to go into the Bath where the Women are, and a Bastinado to shew one's Privy Parts, or see another's. Great Persons have them in their Houses for themselves and Wives.

The *Turks* have no sumptuous Feasts, but are contented with a small Matter. They cook their Meat themselves, for they have no Sauces, but what are made at first Sight, as Oil, Pepper, &c. Their usual Food is Pilau, which is Rice boil'd with a Pullet, a Piece of Mutton, Beef, or the like, and for want of Meat, with Butter. Their Bread is light, but coarse like our Biscuit, and flat. They spread a Carpet of *Turky* Leather on the Ground, called a *Serrir*, and squatting down upon the Ground like Taylors, eat it with Wooden Spoons, and instead of Napkins they use a long blue Cloth cast round about the Table. They say, *Bismillah*, i. e. *In the Name of God*, before they eat, as we do *Benedicite*. They pull their Meat in Pieces (for they use no Knives) and then every one takes his Share. They seldom drink at their Meals, but having eaten, rise and fill their Bellies with Water, and then say, *Handillah*, i. e. *God be praised*. Having finish'd their Meals, they wash their Hands. They drink Water usually, because Wine seems to be forbidden by the *Alcoran*; but the Good-Fellows say, 'tis a Council, not a Precept, and so drink it plentifully; but few do it in publick, except the *Janizaries*, or some Desperadoes. They never mingle Water with their Wine, and laugh at the Christians for so doing. It is plentiful at *Constantinople*, and all over the *Archipelago*. The poorer sort for Cheapness drink a Liquor made of Barley and Millet, somewhat like our Beer, but not so pleasant. This Drink will make them drunk. They also drink Coffee all Hours of the Day. They make it of a Berry parch'd and pill'd. This Liquor they hold to be good to cure the Head-Ach, and keep down Vapours from the Head, it comforts the Stomach and helps Digestion; nay, they say 'tis

good

good against all Maladies. To mix any thing with it makes it less wholsome and useful. All, Rich and Poor, drink at least 2 or 3 Dishes a Day in *Turky*. At the Coffee-Houses the Master hath Musick to divert his Customers, and draw others in. They have also Sherbet, which is a very good Drink, made in *Egypt*, of Sugar, Lemmon-Juice, Musk, Ambergrease and Rose-Water. At their great Treats they give Coffee, Sherbet and Perfume for their Beards. They spread Quilts on the Ground for their Bedding, and every one lies on his own, and the Masters lay them on their *Divans*. Their Recreations are either to sleep, smoak a Pipe of Tobacco, or play on the *Tambour*, which is a kind of Lute, and tho' it be no pleasant Musick, they'll play all Day on it, but Schollars read or write. They laugh at the *Franks* for walking backward and forward. They entertain their Company with Discourse, or a Game at Chess, Draughts, Tables, or such like Plays; but they never play for Money, or any thing of Value, because they account it sinful, and yet will spend whole Afternoons at their Games; but their most usual Game is *Mancala*, at which they play with Shells in Boxes, like our Tables. The Recreations of Soldiers are their Military Exercises, *viz.* Shooting at Marks or Butts with Bows and Arrows, darting the *Zagaye*, shooting with an Harquebuse running. The other *Turks* make a great Diversion of Poppet Shews, which, tho' perform'd a different Way from ours, yet are more pleasing, their Songs are pretty, but very obscure, and so are many of their Postures.

Sherbet.

Beds.

Musick.

Plays and Games.

Military Exercises.

CHAP. III.

Of the Learning and Religion of the Turks.

The Turkish Language and Learning.

THE *Turkish* Language is a Primitive and Original Tongue, and tho' not very copious, yet 'tis grave and pleasant, and with a little Supply from the *Arabians* and *Persians*, is rich and large enough. The *Turks* are not much addicted to Sciences, yet have Doctors of their Law, who explain it in all the Senses that can be given it. Some affect Astrology and Poetry, in which they have pretty Conceits, but they generally use the *Persian* Languge, and the Tone they sing in is agreeable enough thro' Custom.

Their Musick and Divination.

Their Musick is a little Lute with 3 Strings, and the Flute. Many among them pretend to Fortune-telling, and have good Luck at it. They divine by the *Alcoran*, and 4 Arrows, which they call doing the Book, and naming 2 of the Arrows *Christians*, and the other 2 *Turks*, make them fight by reading the *Alcoran*; if the *Christians* overcome, they look upon the Action, whether in War or Peace, which they are to undertake, to be unlucky, and so will not enterprize any thing. They will never go out to War, but they will make this Experiment. They also divine with Beans, by taking out an uncertain Number, and then counting them, consult the Book to see what the Number signifies; and by a Piece of Timber almost square, which they call *Kiipi*, which having Letters written on each side, he that seeks his Fortune, takes it, and rolling it 3 times, puts the Letters together, and then consults the *Fal*, or Fortune-Book, what the 3 Letters signifie. They have few or no Physicians, being very healthy, because of their frequent Bathings and Temperance. When they are sick, they make use of their common Receipts, and if they fail, consult the *Jews*, or some Runagado Christians, who learn their Skill at the Cost of many. When they have the Head-Ach, they scarifie, lance or sear the Place, and that cures them. In the other Distempers they also use Burning, and endure a live Match applied to the Place with Patience. Doubtless, Physicians might do them more Service, and help them at an easier Rate, but they are such bad Pay-masters of Men for their Skill, and besides, if a Physician should be unsuccessful, and a Patient die under his Hands, they will accuse him of killing him, which is a Discouragement to the Art among them.

Their Physicians and Medicines.

Their Religion.

The Religion of the *Turks* is full of Fopperies and Absurdities, of which it would be no hard Matter to convince them, but that *Mahomet*, to prevent any better Information, hath commanded, that whosoever contradicteth it should be put to Death. *Mahomet* was an *Arab*, and illiterate, a Driver of Camels, and a Man of no good Morals; but striking in with a *Greek* Monk, who had forsaken his Monastery, and had some Smattering of Learning: He was by him enabled to lay the Foundation of that great and damnable Sect, which hath hitherto infected so great a Part of the World. He made use of the Old and New Testament in composing the *Alcoran*, that he might draw both *Jews* and *Christians* to submit to it, tho' both are confusedly applied; but the *Turks* hold, that it was written in Heaven by God himself, and brought Chapter by Chapter to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. No Christian may touch it, and the *Turks* by reading it merit Paradice. It is written in pure *Arabick*, and the *Turks* believe it cannot be turn'd into any other Language, and for that Reason they count the *Persians* Hereticks, because they have translated it into their Tongue. The Book contains all their Laws, both Canon and Civil, but is full of *Rabbinical* Fables.

Mahomet an Impostor.

The Alcoran.

The Doctrines of the Alcoran.

According to this Book the *Turks* believe in and worship God, the Eternal and Almighty Creator of Heaven and Earth; but they will not acknowledge a Trinity, nor allow any Images in his Worship, either painted or graven. They have a peculiar Fondness for Predestination which they extend even to the most indifferent Actions. They are firmly perswaded, that under the Reign of every Emperor the State will infallibly and perpetually have either a disastrous or happy Fate. That Death is fatal, both in War and Peace, and therefore as they willingly take up Arms, believing that if they are killed by their Enemies, they should some way or other have died at home, so they take no care to keep themselves from the Plagues, or other infectious Diseases, and are offended at Christians for it. They believe, that Jesus Christ was conceived by the *Rauah*, i. e. The Breath or Spirit of God, in the Womb of the Virgin; but they deny him to be the Son of God, who is One, and hath no Companion; That he was a great Prophet, and wrought many Miracles among the *Jews*, and foretold the Coming of *Mahomet*, under the Name of the Comforter, but they deny that he was crucified; That Jesus Christ shall come to judge the World, and shall reign 40 Years in *Damascus*, marry and have Children, at which time *Antichrist* shall arise, and deceive many, setting a Mark on their Foreheads; but Christ shall destroy him, and then shall ascend up into Heaven, and then the Day of Judgment shall come. In short, they give great Honour to Jesus Christ and the Virgin *Mary*, and if they hear any Man speak ill of them, they will chastise him as severely as if he spake against *Mahomet*; for they believe that the Gospel was sent to Jesus, as the Law was to *Moses*, and the Psalms to *David*. They believe all the Prophets, and that Paradice shall be filled with the Just, and Hell by the Wicked. They say moreover, That the Power of God is such, that at the Creation of the World he prefix'd and appointed a set Time for every Man's End, that the Wit or Device of Mortals cannot divert nor prevent, which makes them not only very resolute and courageous in the Wars, and upon all other Occasions, but they laugh at and scorn all Means to drive away Diseases and prevent Death, as if they opposed God's Will in so doing. They deny a Purgatory, but hold, that there is a Place called *Araf*, between Paradice and Hell, where they shall be that have done neither Good nor Evil. In Paradice *Mahomet* promises the Blessed delicious Gardens, full of pleasant Fruits and Fountains, Rivers of Waters, Milk, Wine and Honey, Scarlet and Green Cloathing, and lovely Virgins, with Skins as white as a new-laid Egg, and black Eyes, always young and Virgins; That God shall appear to them every Week on *Friday*: That those that are in Hell shall drink scalding hot Water, and eat of the Fruit of the Tree *Zacum*; That if they have

Their Honour to Christ and the Virgin.

Faith, after all their Sins shall be consumed and wash'd in the Water *Solzabeul*, they shall be admitted into Paradice, where they shall receive and enjoy as much Happiness, as those that entred at first; but such as have no Faith, and are meer Atheists, shall burn everlastingly in Hell-Fire.

They pray for the Dead, as the Papists do, and invocate their Saints to recommend them to God. They acknowledge Guardian Angels, not only to every *Musfulman*, but to every Affair and Member, and attribute all that befals any Body to them, because they wait upon them in all Places, but when they go to do their Needs, and then they leave them at the Door. They also believe, that when a Man is buried, his Soul returns to his Body, and 2 Angels, called *Munker* and *Gemerair*, come to him, and if he has lived ill, they bring him an ugly Creature, that represents his Sins and bad Deeds, to torment him till the Day of Judgment; but if he hath lived well, they bring him a lovely Creature, which represents his good Actions, and which gives him a great deal of Content, and stays with him till the Day of Judgment.

They believe, that not only the good *Musselmans*, but some Beasts and Fowls shall enter into Paradice, *viz.* The Prophet *Saleh*'s Camel, which he raised to Life in *Persia*; *Abraham*'s Ram, *Moses*'s Cow, whose Ashes are mingled with the Water of Purification, *Salomon*'s Ant, the Queen of *Sheva*'s Parrot, which brought her the first News of *Salomon*; *Ezra*'s Ass, which, they say, was raised to Life many Years after it had been dead, to prove a Resurrection; *Jonah*'s Whale; the little Dogg *Catmer*, who attended the 4 Sleepers, who slept 372 Years; and *Mahomet*'s Camel, that carried him from *Mecca* to *Medina* to his Friends House by a certain Instinct.

They circumcise their Children, as the *Jews* do, but not at 8 Days, but 11 or 12 Years old, that they may make a Profession of their own Faith in these Words, *La illah illallah Mahomet rasoul allah*, i. e. *There is no God but God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet.* The *Turks*, as well as *Jews*, make great Rejoycings at the Circumcision of their Children; for upon the Day fix'd for the Ceremony the Child is set on Horse-back, and carried about the Town with Timbrels and Musick, and being circumcised in his Father's House, he makes a Feast for all his Relations and Friends, at which they are merry, dance and sing, and the next Day the Guests make Presents to the Child according to their Quality. When a Christian turns *Turk*, he is circumcised after the Manner aforesaid; but if a *Jew* turns, his former Circumcision is sufficient, and he only is obliged to make the aforementioned Profession, for which the *Turks* have such a Reverence, that if any *Jews* or *Christians* pronounce them inconsiderately, they must turn *Turk*, or be burnt. This Circumcision, called by the *Turks Sebounnet*, is only a Mark of their Obedience to *Mahomet*'s Example and unwritten Command, for there is no Mention of it in the *Alcoran*, but they take it to be such a Token of Disobedience to their Law not to be circumcised, that such as are uncircumcised, whether Children or Christians, are not allow'd to be present at their publick Prayers, and tho' there be no Persons to keep such out of their Mosques, yet if any are so bold (as some have been) and are taken, they are burnt alive, or impaled. Upon some special Occasions some are admitted to circumcise at 7 or 8 Years old; but in case of Poverty it is more usual to stay till 14 or 15, till either the Parents of the Person to be circumcised, or the Person himself is able to defray the Charges of it; or if neither are able, they wait till some rich Person is circumcised, that they may shelter themselves from the Charge by his Purse. Men of Estates at the Circumcision of their Children make many Presents to the Youths that are circumcised with them, and give liberal Alms to their poor Neighbours, that by their Prayers the Grace of God may descend upon the new *Musselman*, and their whole Family. When any poor Runagado Christian is circumcised, 2 Basons are carried after him to gather the Alms, which the Spectators freely give them, tho' they have a common Proverb among them, *That he that has been a bad* Christian, *will never make a good* Turk. The Time and Place for Circumcision is not fix'd, for it may be done by a Priest or Chirurgeon, either at the Bath or Parents House. They name their Children as soon as they are born, and do not stay till they are circumcised, by putting some Grains of Salt into their Mouths, and so lifting them on high, as dedicating them to God, say, *God grant*, N. N. *that God's holy Name may be as savoury in thy Mouth, as this Salt is, and that he may preserve you from being too much in Love with the World.* As to those that die young, before they are circumcised, they belive that those are saved by the Circumcision of their Father.

The *Turks* receive the Ten Commandments of *Moses*'s Law, and cause them punctually to be observed by all, and to them *Mahomet* has added 5, *viz.* 1. To believe One Only God, and worship him as such. 2. To fast the *Ramadan*. 3. To pray at the Hours appointed. 4. To give the Poor yearly the 40th part of their Substance: And, 5. To go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* once in their Lives.

The 1st of these they observe very punctually, shewing great Reverence to God and his Name, which they never pronounce, nor hear pronounced, but with great Reverence, and will not set about any Action, but they first say, *In the Name of God*; yea they swear much by God, when they would be believed.

The 2d Commandment is to keep *Lent*, or *Ramadan*, in Fasting, whereby the Flesh is mortified, Concupiscence subdued, and the Soul purified. This Fast lasts a Month, and is kept in the Month called *Ramadan*, because (as they say) the *Alcoran* came down from Heaven in that Month. This *Lent* begins as soon as such People as are set on Hills and high Places on Purpose, can discover the New Moon, and the first Messenger of it, if a credible Person, hath a Reward given him for publishing it, and then the *Ramadan* is appointed all over the Town by publick Proclamation. The Manner of keeping it is thus: It is said in the *Alcoran*, That they may eat and drink all Night long, till they can discern a white Thread from a black by the Morning-Light, but after that it is unlawful for them to eat, drink or smoak Tobacco, yea, to touch their Wives; and thus their Nights are turn'd into Days, their Minerets being all hung with Candles, and their Coffee-Houses are full all Night. In Summer-time this Fast is very troublesome, for tho' they are burnt up with Heat they may not drink. Every one is obliged to keep this *Lent*, and some are so strict as to keep it in their Travels, and in the Army, tho' they may defer it to a more fit Opportunity. There are many that do not keep it, but they must eat and drink privately, for if it be known, they will be at least Bastinado'd. The Punishment of drinking Wine in *Lent* is to have melted Lead pour'd down their Throats, and it hath been executed, tho' rarely. None may marry in *Lent*. When the *Ramadan* is ended, the *Biram*, or *Easter*, begins with the next New Moon, which is publish'd by firing of Guns and publick Bonfires and Rejoycings. At this Feast the Houses and Shops are adorn'd with fine Hangings, Tapestries and Sopha's, the Streets are full of Swings, adorn'd with Festoons, in which they sit down, and are toss'd in the Air, while Musick, both of Instruments and Voices, hired by the Masters of the Swings, pleases their Ears. They have many other Diversions, as Mills, Fire-Works, &c. which they get ready some Days before the *Biram*. Many Women, who never stir abroad the rest of the Year, have Liberty to walk about these 3 Days; but it is dangerous for the *Franks* to appear, because the *Turks*, being got drunk, will stab them with their *Cangiar*, or to be sure make them pay dear for their Passage, by exacting Money from them. One Thing very commendable is done at this time, which is, That they pardon all their Enemies, and are reconciled to them; for they have made a bad *Easter*, if they keep Malice in their Hearts against any Body; and for this Reason, when they meet any of their Acquaintance in the Streets they kiss one another, wishing a good *Easter* and mutual Happiness one to another. This they call the Great *Biram*, to distinguish it from the Little *Biram*, which they keep 70 Days after. Their other Festivals are the Night between the 11th and 12th of the Moon called *Rebiul Ewell*, wherein *Mahomet* was born; as also the Night between the 26th and 27th of the Moon *Rebiul Ahhir*, when they believe that *Mahomet* ascended up into Heaven upon the *Alboraob*, as he tells them in his *Alcoran*; and on *Thursday*, the 4th of the Moon *Regeb*, they have Prayers in their Mosques till Midnight, and then return home and feast. On all these Festivals the Steeples of the Mosques are deck'd with Lamps in several Figures, which make a very pretty Sight.

The

The 3d Command of the *Turks* is, To pray at the Hours appointed; but because they always wash before they go to Prayers, 'tis necessary to speak of their Ablutions. They are of 2 kinds, one is called *Gousl*, which is a general Washing of the whole Body, and this they are obliged to use after they have lain with their Wives, or after Nocturnal Pollutions, or when any Urine, or any other unclean Thing, hath fallen upon them. The other is called *Abdest*, which is performed by turning their Face to *Meccha*, and washing the Hands, Nose and Mouth 3 times. This they use after their Needs, or when they have handled any thing that is unclean, and for both these they have Baths and Fountains near all their Mosques. If any one happens to break Wind upwards or downwards, or any Blood or Filth issue from their Body, if they vomit, fall into a Passion, faint, are drunk, laugh at Prayers, embrace a Woman, or touch any naked Part of her, sleep at Prayers, touch a Dog, or any unclean Beast, all these Accidents make void the *Abdest*, that it must be renew'd before they go to Prayers. The Places of Prayer are their Mosques, which on the Outsides are like our Churches. They have by them Towers or Minerets, which have a Balcony round them, from whence the *Muezin* call them to Prayers. In the Inside there is nothing written, but the Name of God. When they pray they turn toward the South, because *Meccha* lies on that side. They have a Pulpit for the *Imam* to preach in, and the whole Mosque is covered with Matts for the Ease of the People's Kneeling, and Carpets for the better sort. Their Prayers are in an unknown Tongue. They have Prayers 5 times a Day, *viz.* at Break of Day, at Noon, between 3 and 4 a Clock in the Afternoon, and at Sun-setting, and an Hour in the Evening. On *Fridays* they have Prayers at 9 a Clock besides, and in the *Ramadan*, or *Lent*, at Midnight, and all are present at them, and then they may go to work, or open Shops, but most of them rest and make merry, or visit their Friends. When the Hour of Prayer is come, the *Muezin*, going up to the Minaret, sings and cries these Words with all his Force, putting his Fingers in his Ears, *Allah Ekber*, &c. i. e. *God is great, God is great, God is great; shew there is but One God, and that* Mahomet *is his Prophet; Come and present your selves to the Mercy of God, and ask Forgiveness of your Sins; God is great*, &c. and this he does toward the 4 Corners of the World, beginning at the S. and ending at the W. While he is crying, every one goes to the *Abdest*, and then goes to the Mosque, or if they cannot go, say their Prayers at home. They leave their Shoes at the Door of the Mosque, or carry them in their Hands with them. When they are entred they bowe to the *Keble*, i. e. a Nich in the Southern Wall, and then go to their Seats, and wait till the *Imam*, or Prelate, begin Prayers, and then join with him. In praying the Men lift up their Hands to their Shoulders, and then lay them upon their Navels, and the Women lift up their Hands but half way, and clap them on their Breasts. When Prayers are ended, they bowe both to the Right and Left side, as to the 2 Angels, *Kerim*, *Ki-atib*. When they are at Prayers they are so affectionate, that they will turn neither this nor that way. They never talk in their Mosques, but carry themselves always with great Reverence. They are but few who go not every Day to Prayers at Noon, Afternoon and Night, for if they observe not these 3 Hours they are punish'd severely, and this they must do in Travelling. All their Prayers do not last above Half an Hour at most, and seldom above a Quarter. They are commonly of a very ordinary Composure, especially in the lesser Mosques, and upon ordinary Days; but during the *Ramadan*, and upon high Days they are something better. The *Mahometans*, during the time of their Prayers, observe a grave Silence and a modest Deportment, kneeling till the Prayers begin, and then joining with the *Iman* in repeating the Prayers softly after him, and imitating his Gestures with Kneeling and Prostrations, which are more or less, according to the Hours, for in the Morning and Afternoon they use but 6, but at Noon, Night and Evening 8. When these are finished, some Choristers get up into the Galleries, and sing in Parts a sort of an Anthem of an indifferent good Air. On *Mondays*, *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, a Preacher mounts the Pulpit, to explain some Point or other of the *Alcoran*, which he understands and expounds as he thinks fit. Any one may be present at these Sermons, as well as those made in the Market-place. They conclude all with some Prayers for the Sultan and the Success of his Armies; to which all the People say, *Amen*.

The 4th Command is Charity, to give the 40th part of their Goods to their Kindred, if they have any, and if not, to their poor Neighbours, and for want of them, to the first they meet. This Command is well observed by them, so that Beggars in *Turky* are rare. And, indeed, they perform great Acts of Charity in Founding Hospitals, building Bridges, and Inns for the Caravans, bringing Water into the High ways, setting Slaves at Liberty; and they that have not Ability to do these Things, mend the High-ways, fill the Cisterns with Water, and shew Travellers the Foards; and if they be offered Money, they refuse it, for they say, they do it for God's Sake, and not for Money. Their Charity also extends to Birds and Beasts, for some will buy Birds in the Market to let them fly, and they believe, that the Souls of those Birds will one Day testifie their Kindness to God. Others will leave considerable Means to maintain so many Dogs and Cats. To this Command of Charity may be reduced that of forgiving Enemies, not of their State and Religion (for those their Law obliges them to hate) but their particular and private Enemies. And indeed they observe this Law so well, that there are few Enmities among the *Turks*; for if there happen any Quarrel, they are obliged to use their utmost Endeavour to pacifie it, and commonly they do not desist till it is adjusted; and that the Reconciliation may be firm, the Persons at Difference are obliged before they pray to God on *Friday*, which is the Weekly Sabboth, to protest, as in the Presence of God, that they freely pardon their Enemies, or else they are taught, that their Prayers will not be heard. If the Persons at Variance will no be reconciled, they part them by Force, and carry them before the *Cadi*, or some other Judge, who will give them 2 or 300 Drubs on the Bottom of their Feet, and make them pay 2 or 3000 Aspers. The Severity of these Punishments generally keep the *Turks* so much within the Bounds of their Duty, that they seldom quarrel, or injure one another; yea, they do not suffer themselves to be transported with Passion, or swear.

The 5th Commandment of the *Turks* is to go to *Meccha*, which is the worst obey'd of any of them, because several for want of Money, and others by their Affairs are hindered from going so tedious a Pilgrimage; yet many go thither yearly, and such are reverenced ever after under the Name of *Hagoes*, or Pilgrims, and others get ready to do it.

Next to these Commandments they have several Prohibitions, which they cannot break without Sin, as, 1. To make, or have any Figures of Man, Woman or Beast; and this they observe so strictly, that they are angry at the Sight of any; and tho' they are great Lovers of Watches and Clocks, yet if they have any Figure on them, they will not accept of them, tho' given. 2. To lend Money upon Usury, and they are careful to abstain from it, but they will make Bargains that differs little from it. 3. To forbear unclean Meats, as Hogs, and such Creatures as the *Jews* accounted unclean; and this they strictly keep, and some will rather starve than eat of them. 4. Not to drink Wine, but this, they say, was only a Council of *Mahomet*, and so they often drink it, and are drunk; yet if any Wine be spilt on their Cloaths, the greatest Drunkard will labour to get out the Stain, and the most scrupulous will wear them no more, lest they be found guilty of Sin.

The *Turks* have their Clergy, as all Religions have, to resolve their Doubts, and celebrate Divine Service. They continually study the *Alcoran*, and are most of them knowing Men. The chief Ecclesiastick is the *Mufti*, whom they reverence as much as the *Romanists* do the Pope. He is chosen by the G. Seignior, and is always a Learned Man in their Way, *i. e.* much versed in the *Alcoran*, for he resolves all Matters of Conscience, and gives his Decisions in little Writs, called *Fetua*, to which even the King himself must stand but by adding these Words, *God is the best Judge, he shews that he pretends not to Infallibility*. He is married, and had in so great Veneration, that the G. Seignior rises to meet him and salute him, when he comes to Court. 'Tis unlawful by their Law to put the *Mufti* to Death, yet some Emperors have done it. There is but one *Mufti*, and his Residence is ordinarily at *Constantinople*, where finding Business enough, the *Cadilesquers*, *Moullah's* or *Cadi's*, or Justices and Naibs perform his Office in other Places. The *Sultan* con-

consults with the *Mufti* about State-Affairs, as when he designs to put any Prime Minister to Death, disgrace the Prime *Visier* or *Bassha*, or undertake any other Business of Importance, because 'tis a Notion among the People, that there is more Equity in a wise and pious Person's Judgment, than in the absolute Power of a Prince, tho' as it is now used, 'tis meer Formality, for the *Mufti* must comply with the Will of his Prince. Every *Mufti* must have been a *Cadileſquer* first, and have discharged that Office well before he is raised to that Dignity. He has no Power over the *Imans*, or Priests, because the *Turks* have no Hierarchy. Those who officiate in their Mosques, and read Prayers there daily, are the *Danischmend*, or as the *Franks* call them, *Talismans*, and the *Iman* is the Chief of them. The *Muezims*, or Church-Clerks, call them to Prayers from the Minerets of the Mosques, and the *Hodgia's* are old Men of Integrity, very knowing in the *Alcoran* and Civil Affairs. These are consulted in Affairs of Importance, and sometimes preach on certain Festivals. They have several sorts of Monks, of which the *Dervices* are the chief. They live in common, and have their Superior, as Popish Monks have. They go very mean in their Apparel, and wear on their Heads a Cap of white Felt, like our Night-Caps. Every *Tuesday* and *Friday* they make a Dance in the Middle of an Hall, rail'd in square, where are 2 Pulpits, the one for the Superior, and the other for the Vicar. At the other End of the Hall is a Scaffold, where several *Dervices* are placed to play on the Flutes or Drums. When they have sung some Prayers the Superior makes a Sermon upon some Words of the *Alcoran* in *Turkish*, which are read to him by the Vicar in *Arabick*. When the Sermon is ended, the Superior with the Vicar, come down from the Pulpit, and having, with the rest of the *Dervices*, taken 2 Turns about the Hall, all the Instruments play in Consort, and then begins the Dance. They pass before the Superior, and salute him humbly, and then making a Leap, fall a-turning upon their Left Foot as a Wind-Mill, driven by the strongest Wind, and tho' they stretch out their Arms, and sometimes shut their Eyes, they never touch one another, but keep time to the Musick, and never make the least false Step. The Author of this Dance was one *Hazreti Mewlana*, a *Dervice*, who is reckoned a Saint among them, but all their *Dervices* and *Santo's* are Hypocrites.

Turkish Monks, and their Cells.

The *Turkish* Marriages. The Marriage of the *Turks* is of 3 sorts, and so they have as many sorts of Wives. 1. Lawful Wives, and these they take after this Manner: The Man that desires to be married agrees with the Parents or nearest Relations of the Maid about the Dowry they will give their Daughter or Kinswoman befor a *Cadi*, who writes it down. This done, he gets an *Iman* to bless his Marriage, and then the Bridegroom on the Marriage-day leads the Bride to his House, her Baggage being carried on Horses or Camels before them, and there they feast and are merry, the Men and Women by themselves, and commonly they have Musick and Poppet-Shows, as also the Women called *Tchinghene*, to shew Tricks for the Diversion of the Company. These Wives the *Turks* may divorce when they please, by going before the *Cadi*, and saying, *Alei talac be talati*, i. e. *I part with her for 3 times*: But if a Man put away his Wife wrongfully, he must give her her Dowry, but if he does it upon just Grounds, or she forsakes him, he gives her nothing. When a Woman is thus divorced, she may not marry another Man till 4 Months be past, that she may know whether she be with Child, for if she be, the Husband that divorced her must keep it, and if she be not, sometime such Matches are made up in that time. A Man that hath divorced his Wife cannot marry her again, till she hath been first married to another Man, and then he may take her back. When they are thus married, if the Husband happen to die, the Wife takes her Dowry, and no more, and if the Wife dies, and leaves Children, they may constrain their Father to give them their Mother's Dowry. Of these Wives the *Turks* can have but One, tho' some have said 4. 2. They may also have Wives of *Kebin*, which they take with less Ceremony than the former; for they only go to the *Cadi*, and tell him, that they take such an one to be their Wife, promising to give her so much if they divorce her. This the *Cadi* writes down, and gives the Man a Copy, and he may keep her or divorce her as he pleases, performing his Promise, and maintaining the Children he hath by her. The *Turks* may have 7 of these Wives, nay, as many as they can keep, but to save Charges, few of them will have more than 1 or 2. 3. Their other Wives are *Haylaykes*, i. e. Women-Slaves, and of these every Man may have as many as he pleaseth, and the Children begotten of them are held as legitimate as those of the former Wives, and have as much Title to the Inheritance of what their Father leaves behind him, if by his Will he infranchizeth them, otherwise they remain Slaves to the eldest by the lawful Wife; but if a *Turk* takes a Slave for his Bed, he may not sell her again if she have Children, but she is become a Member of his Family; but if she proves barren, she may be sold as often as her Master will. The *Turks* may buy all sorts of Slaves of every Religion and Nation, but *Christians* and *Jews* may not buy a *Turk*. At *Constantinople* is a Market for Slaves in a Place near the *Bezistan* every *Wednesday*, and every one may buy freely for their several Uses, their Lust not excepted. These Slaves are bought and sold like Horses, view'd, review'd, and felt all over their Bodies, and their Mouths look'd into, being also examined of their Country and Age. A beautiful Virgin at these Markets is held at an high Rate, but the Seller is answerable for her Virginity, for if she prove otherwise, he must restore the Money she was sold for, and bear a sharp Fine for his Fraud.

Slaves sold.

Divorces how used among them.

Polygamy allowed in *Turkey*.

The Slaves of the *Turks* are not so miserable as they are commonly supposed. They are frequently the Under-Masters of Families, for if they light of a good Master, or are endued with any Talent, their Masters will love them, and will seldom hinder them from going to Church to pay their Devotion: They are very frequently also in Favour with their Mistresses, who thro' a tender Compassion, natural to their Sex, do give them Presents. Their Masters, indeed, are obliged by their Law to exhort them 3 times a Day to embrace the *Alcoran*, but they seldom force them to renounce their Faith. These Things have made some Slaves to refuse their Liberty, and being made free to return again to their Servitude. Ex. *Le Brun.*

Turkish Slaves very well treated.

The *Turkish* Women are commonly beautiful, streight and well-shaped, for they never go abroad without their Veil to cover their Faces. They paint their Eye-brows with *Sarmee*, which gives them a blackish Colour, and their Nails with *El-hanna*, which is a Reddish brown. They are very cleanly and neat, for going to the Bath twice a Week they have neither Hair nor Dirt upon their Bodies. Their Cloathing and Shooes are much like the Mens, but their Head-Attire is different, for they make a very long Tress of their Hair, which hangs down to the Small of their Back, and if they want Hair, they use an artificial Tress, or a Case of Sattin. In the House they cover their Heads with a Cap of Red Cloth, like our Night-Caps, but with 4 Horns or Points on the Tops, to the Middle of which they stitch a Round of Pearls, and tie it below with a Handkerchief of fine Stuff wrought with Flowers of Gold and Silk, but when they go abroad, they change it for one made of gilt Paste-board, and muffle up their Head so in a Linen-Cloth, that nothing but their Eyes is uncovered, yea, their Smocks Sleeves cover their Hands, because 'tis a Thing of ill Repute so much as to shew any Part of their Bodies; yet in a Corner of the Streets, they'll venture to uncover their Face to a Friend, or a young Man they like, tho' if they be discovered, they are bastinado'd. The *Turkish* Women are very haughty, and extreamly lazy, and tho' they do nothing but sit on their *Divans* embroidering an Handkerchief, yet they must go fine and have their Slaves, tho' their Husbands be never so poor. This Idleness makes them vicious, and seek only ways of having their Pleasure, of which the Husbands are so jealous, that they will not suffer them to shew themselves to Men, and if they do, they are sure to receive the Bastinado on their Buttocks. Upon these Accounts no Women are suffered to go to the Mosques, Markets, or appear in their Husbands Shops.

The *Turkish* Women.

Women Habits.

Their Gait and Jesture.

The Wives have not the Privilege of Divorcing their Husbands, as their Husbands have of them, unless they deny their Wives the Things which they are obliged to furnish them withall, as Bread, Pilcou, Coffee, and the Use of the Bed once in 8 Days, and Money to go to the Bagnio twice a Week; for, if they fail in these Things, they may go to the *Cadi* and demand a Divorce, which if the *Cadi* upon going to the House, finds true, he grants her Suit; as also if she complains, that he hath offered to use her contrary

Women cannot divorce their Husbands but in some Cases.

to

to the Course of Nature, which she expresses by turning up the Soal of her Slipper, without saying a Word.

When any one is sick, the *Imans* go and pray with him, and if he dies in *Turky*, all the Neighbours know it by the Howling of the Women, who cry out, as if they were in Despair. The Friends and Neighbours go immediately to condole with them, weeping and mourning in a doleful Tone, but yet as if they were singing, they rehearse the Praises of the Dead, *viz.* The Wife will say of her dead Husband; *He loved me so well, he gave me Plenty of every Thing; I stood in need of*, &c. and all present join with her, repeating her Words and imitating her Gestures. This lasts several Days, as often as any new Visits are made, nay, sometimes these cries are renewed at the Year's End. After these Lamentations comes the Burial, for which the Relations wash the Body and shave off all the Hair, and then they burn Incense about it to scare away evil Spirits and Devils; and then praying God to be merciful to him, they wrap him up in a Sheet, and put him into a Coffin and Beer, like ours, but with his Face downward, and cover'd with a Pall, which is Red; if the Person dead be a Soldier, Green; if a *Scheriff*, *i. e.* one of *Mahomet*'s Relations, Black, with a Turban; which is Red if he be a *Janizary*; Red and White if a *Spahi*; Green if a *Scheriff*; and White if any other Man. As he is carried to the Burying-place, which is with his Head foremost, the Priests go before, saying certain Prayers, and often calling upon the Name of God: After the Corps which is carried by 4 Bearers on 2 Sticks, follow the Relations and Friends, the Women come last howling like Mad-folks: Being come to the Burying-place, they take the Body out of the Coffin, and bury it in the Earth, and leaving the Women to mourn, depart. When the Grave is filled up, the poorer Sort erect a Stone over the Head of the Deceased, for the Angel that examines them, to sit on; but the richer Sort have Tombs of Marble, and both with a Turban of Stone like that of the Deceased. Their Burying-places are always without their Towns, that the Air may not be infected by the corrupt Vapours of the Graves, and this was the Custom of the Ancients. The *Turks* Burying-places are commonly by the High-way-sides, that Travellers may pray for them, and always distinct from the Christians. After the Dead is interred, the Relations and Friends for several Days come and pray upon the Grave, that God would deliver the Soul of the Deceased from the Torture of the Black Angels, exhorting him not to be afraid. The Women also do the same with so much Passion, that one would think them mad. Many on *Friday* bring Victuals and Drink to the Graves, and leave it there for all Travellers, that they may pray for the dead Person, for whose Sake 'tis given them.

In fine, Tho' in Christendom the *Turks* are accounted Barbarous, yet, in Truth, they are good People, and love honest Men, whether *Turks*, *Jews*, or *Christians*. They do not think it lawful to cheat or rob a *Christian* more than a *Turk*, but carefully observe that excellent Command of Nature; *To do to others, only what we are willing others should do to us.* They are, indeed, guilty of great Extortion from the *Franks*, but it is thro' the Instigation of the *Jews* and *Christians*, who envy one another, and seek each others Ruine.

The *Turks* good and honest People.

Usury is esteem'd a very great Sin by the *Turks*, and is very little practised. They are very devout and charitable, very zealous for their Religion, which they seek to propagate all over the World; and whenever they love a *Christian*, they pray him to turn *Turk*.

Usury.

They are ever Loyal to their Prince, whom they highly reverence and blindly obey, and are never known to betray him, but willingly die for him, whenever he commands it: They never quarrel or fight among themselves, and know not what Duels are, which may be said to proceed from *Mahomet*'s wise Policy, who has forbad them Wine, and Gaming for Money; and the good *Turks* so religiously observe these Laws, that they will not drink a Drop of Wine, and always play for Diversion. They are very temperate, and never commit any Excess in Quantity or Quality of Victuals, so that it may be truly said of them, *They eat to live, and not live to eat*: Yet are they not without their Vices, for they are so proud, that they think themselves above all other Nations, and that the World was made for them. They despise the *Jews* and *Christians*, whom they call Dogs very much, and the Rabble think they do a good Act in flouting and jeering them. Some of them are so superstitious, that if at their first going out in a Morning they meet a *Christian* or *Jew*, they return home again, *God preserve us from the Devil.*

Their Loyalty.

Their Vices.

The *Turks* love not Sciences, and think it enough to learn to read and write. They often study the *Alcoran*, which comprehends all their Law, both Canon and Civil, and some apply themselves to Astrology and other Sciences. They are very amorous, but their Love is brutish, for they are the greatest Sodomites, and boast of this infamous Vice. They are very covetous, so that Money will do any thing among them, both at Court and in the Country. They are very friendly and civil, if they can gain by it; but common People are purchased at a cheaper Rate, for let them have but Drink enough, and they'll do any thing for you.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Government of the Turks.

THE *Turks* are subject to one Prince, called by them, *The Sultan*, and by other Nations, *The Grand Seignior*, or Emperor of the *Turks*. He comes to the Empire by Inheritance, and is always of the *Ottoman* Family, for which the *Turks* have so great a Veneration, that they will not submit to any other. When the G. Seignior dies, his Son succeeds him, or if he have none, his Brother, who pitches upon a Day when he will go by Water to the Mosque of *Esoup*, where being seated upon a Tribunal of Marble, raised upon Marble Pillars, the *Mufti* says some Prayers, girds him with a Sword, and then he makes his Entry into *Constantinople* with a Cavalcade to the *Seraglio*, and this Ceremony serves instead of a Coronation. The Emperor is no sooner settled on the Throne, but he takes care to secure to himself the Possession of it, by first shutting up all his Brothers so close, that none can tell where they are, and if he has Children, putting them to Death by strangling them, making a Scruple of Conscience to shed the Royal Blood. The chief Reason of this Fratricide is to secure the Militia to himself, for so long as he has a Brother alive, they are ever threatning him with a Revolt, unless he will augment their Pay as they please. When the G. Seignior is settled on his Throne, he minds nothing but his Pleasures, being attended with a great many Buffoons, *viz.* Mutes and others, who study nothing but to invent some new Pranks to divert him, and his *Bassa's* send him plenty of the finest Women to gratifie his Lusts. His Power is absolutely and entirely Despotick, and his Will is the only Law, by which he rules. He is not curb'd by any written Law or Custom, so that the Oppressed have not so much as a Right to complain. He may take away any Man's Estate, prefer the meanest Person to the highest Dignities, and send for the Heads of whom he has a mind, without Trial or Justice, and none has Right to enquire the Cause of either. This unlimited Power of their Sultan is founded on the *Mahometan* Religion, which enjoins a blind Obedience to all his Commands under Pain of Damnation, but the *Turks* are freed in a great measure from the Effects of it, by his retiring so much from Civil Affairs to his Pleasures; for as to all publick Business he refers that to his Ministers, who have the whole Management of his Affairs, yet are obliged on certain Days every Week to give him a summary Account of them. When the G. Seignior is weary of staying in the *Seraglio*, he will go abroad to take the Air, either by

The Turkish Emperor of the Ottoman Race.

He strangles his Brethren if he have Children.

The G. Seignior going abroad for Pleasure.

by Water or Land. When he goes by Water he has little Attendance. His Galliot comes to the *Kioske* of the *Seraglio*, and from thence he goes to *Scudaret*, or the *Black-Sea*, to take the Air, being row'd by 2 *Baſtangi-Baſha's*, and 24 others, being their Favourites, on each ſide. When he goes by Land it is either in Pomp, as he does thro' *Conſtantinople* to the Moſque; but then he has ſo many Petitions put up to him againſt the ill Management of his Miniſters, that they hinder it all they can; but he will often go abroad *Incognito* in Diſguiſe, to ſee if his Orders be punctually obſerv'd, and the Chriſtians are glad of it, for by this means they are free from Affronts. Sultan *Amurath* went often out thus in Diſguiſe, and one Day cauſed a Butcher's Head to be cut off, for ſelling Meat above the Price fix'd, and 2 Men more to be beheaded at another time, for ſmoaking Tobacco, which he had ſtrictly forbidden, becauſe by taking it in their Beds ſeveral great Fires had been kindled in *Conſtantinople*, which had burnt down great part of the City.

Their Order.

Miniſters of State.

1. The Gr. Vſier.

The chief Miniſter of State is the *Grand Viſier*, who is called *King* by the *Turks*. He it is that receives Ambaſſadors, hears their Propoſals, and gives them an Anſwer, the 2 Audiences which the G. Seignior allows them being only for Ceremony at their firſt Coming and Departure. He takes care to pay the Army, decides Law-Suits, condemns Criminals, and manages the Government, having in his Cuſtody the Imperial Seal, and diſcharges the Office of the G. Seignior. This is a very heavy Charge, and requires a great deal of Sagacity and Prudence, and yet for all that few can hold it above 6 Months before they are ſtrangled, they create themſelves ſo many Enemies, and they that do eſcape muſt by their Gifts make great Friends at Court, and have the Protection of the Mother of the G. Seignior, the moſt beloved *Sultana's* and others.

2. Viſiers of the Bench.

Next to this Great Officer are the 6 *Viſiers*, called, *Viſiers of the Bench*, who are properly the chief Counſellors of State, but intermeddle not with the Government, being only conſulted upon the Points of Law by the G. Seignior.

3. The Cadileſquers.

The other chief Charges are the *Cadileſquers*, or Judges of the Army, which are as it were Chief-Juſtices, or Sovereign Judges, both of Civil and Military Affairs. They have under them *Cadies*, or inferior Judges, being Bailiffs or Provoſts, before whom ordinary Cauſes are tried, Marriages made, Liberties given to Slaves, and the Writings called *Heudgets*, or Decrees, are ordered.

4. Cadies.

5. The Caimacan.

The *Caimacan* is the Captain and Governour of *Conſtantinople*, Lieutenant of the Grand Viſier, but has no Authority but in his Abſence, and then he performs all the Offices of that important Charge.

6. Baſha of the Sea.

The *Baſha* of the Sea is the Admiral of the Naval Forces of the G. Seignior; and the *Beys* are the Governours of the Maritime Provinces, and are obliged to keep the G. Seignior's Galleys in good Order.

7. The Beys.

8. The Aga of the Janizaries.

The *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, who is the Colonel-General of that formidable Body of the Soldiers, called *Janizaries*, is a conſiderable Station. He is allow'd to come into the G. Seignior's Preſence with his Arms at abſolute Liberty, and with a confident Deportment, whereas all the other Grandees of the Port appear with their Arms croſs their Bodies, in token of profound Submiſſion.

The *Baſha's* are a kind of Vice-Roys in the Provinces; their Office is to adminiſter Juſtice exactly, and to keep the People in Subjection to their Government. They are obliged to pay a Tribute of Money and Slaves yearly to the G. Seignior, beſides the *Carache*, and other Impoſts. But they generally abuſe their Authority, and are more arbitrary than the G. Seignior himſelf, their Aim being to raiſe a Fortune ſpeedily by their Spoils and Oppreſſions. The Sultan is forced to diſſemble his Knowledge of theſe Diſorders, for want of Power to ſuppreſs them, who have the Soldiery more at their Service than he.

9. The Five chief Baſha's.

The 5 chief *Baſha's* are thoſe of *Babylon*, *Cairo*, *Buda*, *Natolia* and *Romania*, who have a Privilege of having Horſe-Tails carried before them.

10. Beglerbeys.

The *Beglerbeys* are next to theſe, and are as it were ſo many Sovereigns in the General Government of the Empire, which the G. Seignior gives them to command. Under the greateſt of theſe are ſeveral *Sangiac-Beys*, who govern ſmall Provinces.

11. Sangiac-Beys.

The *Spahi's* are a Body of about 15000 Men, maintained out of the Revenues of the G. Seignior's Mannors, or *Timars*. They paſs for the Nobility or Gentry of the Country, and ſtand much upon their Honour. The *Zaims* differ not much from them.

12. Chiaux-Baſha.

The *Chiaux-Baſha* is the Chief of the Purſuivants, or Meſſengers, who carry the Prince's Commands to all Places, are ſent of Ambaſſadors, and have the Cuſtody of all Priſoners of Quality.

The Government of Cities is managed by 5 kinds of Officers; the *Baſha*, who judges Criminal Cauſes; the *Sub-Baſha*, who is his Deputy; the *Vaivod*, who regulates Affairs in the City, walks the Rounds twice a Week, examines Weights and Meaſures, ſuppreſſes unclean tippling Houſes, puniſhes Drunkards, and all ſuch as commit any Diſorders, ſeverely; the *Cadi*, who is the Judge of all Civil Suits, and the Receiver of the Cuſtoms, and not only receives the publick Duties, but takes Cognizance of all fraudulent Practices relating to Pecuniary Duties, and judges as he ſees fit. Theſe Officers make it their Buſineſs to ruine and diſcredit one another.

They have no written Laws, but what are contained in the *Alcoran*, which they hold to be the Rule of Faith, and Standard of Juſtice, and every thing that it forbids is eſteemed unlawful and puniſhable. Nevertheleſs, the *Baſha's* and *Cadies* judge as they pleaſe, for the Book is ſhort, has but few Laws and Moral Precepts, and thoſe it has are ſo ambiguouſly expreſs'd and deliver'd in ſo looſe a Manner, that thoſe greedy Officers cannot deſire a more favourable Opportunity to ſatisfie their Avarice, for they judge without Appeal, and cauſe their Sentence to be executed upon the Spot. 'Tis true, ſome injured Perſons have appeal'd to the *Divan*; but 'tis ſo hard, as well as chargeable to carry a Cauſe thither, that few will attempt it.

The Divan, and the Juſtice adminiſtred there.

The *Divan* is the great Council and Aſſembly of the Nation, where all Affairs of State are debated, all Suits are ſupreamly decided, for any Body may be heard there, of what Country, Quality or Religion ſoever he be, and the pooreſt Man has Liberty to ask Juſtice of the G. Seignior in Perſon, and deliver him his Petition, which as ſoon as he has read he gives Sentence according to Equity. If it be for Debt, the Viſier upon Supplication ſends a *Chiaux* to fetch the Debtor into Court, and the Creditor bringing his Witneſſes, the Priſoner is condemned to die, and the Sentence is immediately put in Execution; for all Things are diſpatched with ſo much Expedition that a Matter no ſooner comes to an Hearing, but it is preſently conſulted, judged and determined. No Trial, unleſs in a difficult Caſe, will laſt above 4 or 5 Hours without Sentence given one Way or other, ſo that no Man is weary'd and ruin'd by Lawyers and Delays, as in other Places: Nor is there any Fear that wrong Juſtice will be adminiſtred, becauſe at the End of the Hall where they ſit, is a Window cover'd with black Crape, where the G. Seignior hears and ſees when he pleaſeth, without being diſcerned, and the Judges, fearing he may be there, dare not adminiſter partial Juſtice, for if he finds it out, it would immediately coſt them their Lives.

It's ſpeedy as well as impartial.

The Treaſury is opened upon all *Divan* Days, but firſt the *Chiaux-Baſha* looks whether the Seal be whole, and then takes it off, and when they have taken out or put in what they pleaſe, he ſeals it again with the Grand Viſier's Seal.

Officers give an Account of their Charge to the G. Seignior.

While the *Divan* is ſitting, the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, the *Spahilar-Agaſi*, the *Cadileſquers*, the Officers of the *Divan* and the *Viſiers*, being introduced by the *Capidgi-Baſha* and *Chiaux-Baſha*, are brought before the G. Seignior, to give an Account of their ſeveral Charges, and what they have done, and none of them can promiſe themſelves to bring back his Head again, becauſe the G. Seignior for a ſmall Offence will cauſe them to be ſtrangled on the Spot. In all Things the *Turks* are great Lovers and Obſervers of Order. They take a ſpecial care of Proviſions, that all Things be had in Plenty and at reaſonable Rates, and he that has taken Pains to bring Fruit to the Market firſt has no Advantage, but to take his Money firſt; for he muſt not exact a great Price, or ſell dearer, unleſs he has a mind to be ſoundly drubb'd, baſtinado'd and fined. They have Officers to examine every Man's Weights and Meaſures, who daily go their Rounds, and if they find any Man's Weights too light, or that he ſells his Goods too dear, they fail not to order him ſo many Blows with a Cudgel on the Soles of his Feet, and make him pay a Fine; ſo that moſt Sellers are ſo afraid of offending, that they'll give you ſomething above Weight, and they dare not cheat the leaſt Child.

Proviſions reaſonable.

Weights & Meaſures.

Every

Quarrels prevented.

Every one is obliged to hinder any Quarrels or Disorders that happen in the Streets; for there is a Law, that if a dead Man be found before any Man's Door, he must pay for his Blood 500 Piastres, or 45000 Aspers; so that every Man is obliged to see, that no Noise be made before his Door, and hinder all ill Effects of it: If he who committed the Fact be taken, and convicted of it, he is discharged of the Sum, and the Murtherer is punish'd, unless the Relations of the Deceased will hearken to an Accommodation, for then the Murtherer is allow'd to ransome himself, which is usually done by paying 3 or 400 Crowns. Duelling is never heard of among the *Turks*, which must be ascribed to the Precautions of their Prophet, who by forbidding Wine and Gaming for Money, has cut off the Causes of it, Drunkenness and unlawful Gain. To prevent any Accidents in the Night-time, all Persons whatsoever are prohibited to go abroad after the Evening is shut up, except in the *Ramadan*, or *Lent*; and if the Under-Basha, who is Captain of the Watch, and walks his Rounds all Night, as our Constables do, meets any Man, he is carried before the *Cadi*, who examines him, and if he cannot give a good Reason for his being out late, he is fined and bastinado'd, and if he be dismissed without Fining, 'tis a Disgrace to him.

Not to be abroad in the Night.

Money of the Turks.

The Money current at *Constantinople*, is, the *Mangour*, which is half a Quadrin, which is a Copper-Money, and 6 of them make an Aspre, which is a little Piece of Silver, stamp'd with the G. Seignior's Name, and worth 8 Deniers, or 3 *q.* Sterling. The *Isolette* is worth 55 Aspres. The *Aslani*, or *German* Rix-Dollar, so called because it is stamp'd with a Lion, in *Turkish Aslan*, is worth 80 Aspers, and the Piastre, or *Picade*, 90. The *Turkish Chequin* is worth 2 Aspres, and the *Venetian* 12. The Aspres are many of them Counterfeit.

Their Weights.

Their Weights are the *Quirat*, which is 4 Grains, and 16 of them make a Drachm; the *Medical* is a Drachm and an half, 12 Drachms make an Ounce; the *Rotte* is 12 Ounces; the *Oque* is 3 *Rottes*, or 400 Drachms; and the *Cantar* is 150 *Rottes*.

Their Punishments for Offenders.

The *Turks* use several sorts of Punishments for Offenders; those for smaller Faults are Blows upon the Soals of their Feet, or Buttocks, with a small Stick or Switch. The Feet of the Sufferer are so held up by 2 Men in a *Falacca*, or Wooden Instrument, that they cannot stir them, and then 2 more with Switches lay on Blows upon them, as upon a Smith's Anvil, till he that is to see to the Execution say there is enough. Such as have received many Blows (as sometimes they inflict 3 or 400) are not able to go for 3 or 4 Months after, but they'll bear 30 without any great trouble. Masters may give no other Correction to their Servants and Slaves than this, and they are usually so severe, that for fear of Punishment, they are wonderfully well served: You may see their Servants stand before them a whole Day together like Statues, with their Hands upon their Bellies, expecting their Master's Command, which at the least Wink of an Eye is readily obeyed. School-Masters do not whip their Scholars as we do in Christendom, but chastise them on the Soals of their Feet. When they chastise any Person on the Buttocks, the Party is laid on his Belly, and the Blows are laid on over his Drawers: Sometimes they give 5 or 600 Blows, but that's the highest, and if any Man hath been thus handled, a great deal of mortified and swollen Flesh must be cut off with a Razor from his Buttocks, to prevent a Gangrene, and he must keep his Bed 5 or 6 Months before he is able to go about his Business.

The Correction of Servants.

Women are only chastised this Way, when they deserve it: Such as deserve Death for their Crimes are punished with Strangling, Hanging, Drowning, Beheading, Burning, Empaling, or Throwing upon Spikes of Iron. When any Man is to be hang'd, which is done for Robbery or Murder, they will make a Christian to be the Executioner, if they can light of any. In Beheading, which is done for Rebellion or Sedition, they are so dextrous, that they never miss cutting them off at one Blow. The *Gauche*, or throwing upon Spikes or Hooks, which is performed by letting the Malefactor fall upon them, and hang there several Days, till he expire with Hunger, Thirst and Pain, is accounted so cruel a Death, that the *Turks* very seldom practise it. The *Turks* that turn *Christians*, are burnt alive with a Bag of Powder hang'd about their Necks, and a Pitch'd Cap upon their Heads; but *Christians* that do or say any thing against the Law of *Mahomet*, or are taken with a *Turkish* Woman, or go into a Mosque, are empaled, unless they will turn *Turks*; for they are so zealous for their Religion, that a *Christian* may redeem his Life by turning *Turk*, whatever Crime he has been guilty of; but in these, as well as many other Cases, if he will not turn *Turk*, he is put to Death; but a *Turk* has no Way to save his Life.

Women how chastised.

Capital Punishments.

Punishments for *Christians*.

CHAP. V.

Of the Grand Seignior's Forces by Land and Sea.

The G. Seignior's Dominions and Armies.

THE Grand Seignior's Arms have gotten him that vast Power, and large Dominions he holds, but by their Means took from his Neighbours, for he always maintains a Standing Army, both in War and Peace, to defend himself and surprize others: His whole Army, which consists of Horse and Foot, are punctually paid once in 2 Months. The Infantry are of several Orders, as *Capigi's*, or Porters, who keep the Gates of the *Seraglio*, and stand round the G. Seignior when he gives Audience to Ambassadors: They are in all 3000, and have a Captain, called the *Capigi-Bassa*: They execute Death upon such as are fallen into the Sultan's Displeasure: They wear a Cap with a Cone half a Foot long. *Solaques*, which are the G. Seignior's Life-guard, and attend him when he goes abroad in the City: They wear a *Doliman* with Hanging-Sleeves, and a Cap stuck with Feathers in Form of a Crest, their Bow always hangs on their Arm, and their Quiver is always full of Arrows ready to draw, if need requires; but the Chief of their Infantry are the *Janizaries*, who are either Children taken for Tribute, and educated in the *Oda's* of the *Seraglio*, or Runagado *Christians*, and some few *Turks*: This Order was instituted by *Ottoman* the First, Emperor of the *Turks*. They call one another Brothers, and will not endure the Meanest of their Body to suffer the least Injury, and none but their Officers dare lift up an Hand against them upon Pain of Death: They can beat any Man, and no Body dare touch them; but no Love or Money can save the Life of him that has beaten a *Janizary*; and upon this Account Ambassadors take them into their Retinue, and Travellers hire them for their Guides: They are distinguish'd from other *Turks* by their Caps, called *Tarcola's*, which being made like the Sleeves of a *Casaque*, hang down behind, and have a Cone on the Forehead half a Foot long, gilt with Silver, and embroidered. Their Pay is from 2 to 6 Aspres a Day, and a Piece of Cloth every Year. The *Janizaries* of the Port are 12000 in Number, and live in 2 Inns or Colleges, containing 160 Chambers, in every one of which are 30, 40 or 50 Soldiers. Every Chamber has 3 Officers, *viz.* The *Chobargi*, or Captain; *Oda-Bassa*, the Chief; and the *Vikil Hardge*, i. e. the Steward. Over these is the *Kiaya-Bey*, or Lieutenant-General of the *Janizaries*; and over all the *Aga*, or General, who is always a *Muteferaca*, or Person of Quality. He has not Power to punish any Soldiers by himself, but upon Complaint he delivers him to the *Oda-Bassa* to be punish'd, which can be done only in the Night, for Soldiers can neither be beaten or put to Death in Publick. They are beaten on the Soals of the Feet for ordinary Crimes, and if they deserve Death, they are strangled, and thrown into the Sea in a Sack, a Cannon being discharged for every one that suffers. The other lower Orders of Infantry are, *Azapes*, or Pioneers; *Dgebegi's*, or Curassiers; *Topidgi's*, or Gunners; and others.

The *Janizaries*, and by whom instituted.

Their Pay, Number and Lodgings.

Their Punishment.

The

The G. Seignior's Cavalry.

The G. Seignior's Cavalry are the *Chiaux*; their Employment is very honourable, for they execute most of the Commands of the G. Seignior and his *Basha's*, and are sent on Ambassies to Foreign Princes: Their Caps are a Foot in Diametre, and are long and flat above: The G. Seignior and his *Basha's* wear them.

The *Muteferaca's*

The *Muteferaca's* are all Persons of Quality, and their Captain is the G. Seignior himself, and therefore they never go out to War, but when the G. Seignior goes in Person.

The *Spahi's* of 2 sorts.

The *Spahi's* are the ordinary Troopers, or Light-Horse, and are of 2 Sorts. Some receive their Pay every 2 Months, which is from 15 to 40 Aspres. They are divided into 6 Regiments, and have each a several Commander, called *Buluk-Agasi*, and different Colours. The others have, instead of Pay, a *Timar*, or Pension, from the Conquer'd Territories, where they reside usually, and obey the *Sangiac-Bey*, or Lord of the Mannor, that rules that Quarter. They are very numerous, being dispersed all over the Empire, and being required by the G. Seignior, bring him many Horse to his Wars. The G. Seignior is Heir to all in his Pay, if they die without Children, but he takes but 2 Thirds if any leave Daughters.

A great Army soon raised by the G. Seignior.

Things being thus ordered, it is easie for the G. Seignior to raise an Army of 2 or 300000 Men in a very little time, by sending his Orders to the *Basha's* and *Sangiacs* only, who come in with their Servants, Soldiers of their Governments, and *Timar-Spahi's* instantly. Nor is he at more Charge in War than Peace, for all maintain themselves and Servants; and so good Order is kept in their Camps, that where-ever they are, they are made a Market, because they exactly pay for all they have; nay, Merchants travel securely by or thro' them, without Fear of being plunder'd. All their Soldiers are both strong and courageous. They live on a small Matter, and are so hardy, as never to be wearied with Travel. They ever fight like Lions, chusing rather to be cut in Pieces than retreat, unless the Enemy exceed them much in Number. That which makes them so courageous is the Confidence they have in Destiny, believing, that they can't die before their Time is come tho' 100000 Men seeks their Lives, and if they die in the Field, they should also have died at Home, which makes them fearless of all Diseases and Dangers of Death. They are also so zealous for their Religion, that they will chearfully die in fighting against the Enemies of their Law, believing, that they die Martyrs, and shall after Death enjoy the Delights that *Mahomet* hath promised them.

Their Courage caused by their Religion.

Their Obedience to their Commanders.

Moreover, they will blindly obey the Order of their Commanders, running into the greatest Dangers of War as chearfully as to a Feast; and besides, they are well arm'd with a good Musket and a handsome Sword, with other suitable Habits and Accoutrements, insomuch, that it is not to be thought strange, if they are very strong by Land, and bring almost every Thing to pass that they undertake. But tho' the *Turks* are very strong by Land, and succeed well in their Wars there, yet they are neither fortunate nor stout by Sea, and always worsted, unless they be Six to One; and the Reason is, because they have neither good Ships nor good Men. They are very unskilful in Building their Ships, and when they have done, they not only want good Sea-Officers to manage them, but Soldiers to man them; for even those *Janizaries*, who know not what it is to give Ground on Shore, always go to Sea against their Wills, and if they can get off for Money, never fail to do it; and no Wonder, if their Navy can never be victorious, when all Things are so unfit for Battle. And hence it is that the *Venetians* gain great Advantages over them, and particularly in 1656. gave them such a signal Defeat at the *Dardanelles*, where they lost 27 Ships, 37 Galleys, and 8 Maones, that all the *Turks* were put into Consternation by so great an Overthrow, and imagined themselves to be Slaves to the *Venetians*, who, had they pursued their Victory, would certainly have driven the *Turks* out of *Constantinople*, and, perhaps, out of *Europe*; for the G. Seignior was preparing to flee into *Asia*, and the *Turks*, believing that God had decreed that Time for their Expulsion out of *Europe*, as one of their *Imans* had foretold, would easily have departed; but the *Venetians*, neglecting the Advantage, suffered the *Turks* to resume their Courage, and thereupon they grew more terrible to the Christians, whom they could not see without Regret, and threatned them with Destruction at their *Biram*.

The Venetians defeat the Turkish Fleet.

But as the *Janizaries*, when obedient to the G. Seignior, render him one of the formidablest Princes upon Earth, so they strangely limit his Power when they lose that Respect to him, and revolt, which they pretty often do; and then, slighting all Commands, they follow the Dictates of their own furious Passions, and run down all that comes in their Way, for they have strangled several G. Seigniors, and among others Sultan *Osman*, because they smelt out his Resolution of dissolving their Body, as the only Curb to his unlimited Power, and set up his Uncle *Mustapha* in his Place; and in the next Succession Sultan *Ibrahim*, his Brother, and Father of *Mahomet*, who now reigns in the Year 1655. And this present Prince they reduced to such Streights, that he was forced to grant them all that they demanded, and put many of the chief Officers of the Court to Death to appease them; but whoever they attempt against, yet they always so respect the Royal Blood, and have so great a Veneration for the Race of their first *Ottoman*, that they never so much as dream of altering the Succession from that Family.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Christians *and* Jews *that are subject to the Grand Seignior.*

The *Greeks* in Turky.

THE Subjects of the G. Seignior who are not *Mussulmans*, are either *Christians* or *Jews*. The *Greeks* are the chief of the *Christians*. They wear the same Habit with the *Turks*, save that they may not wear Green on any part of their Bodies, without Danger of being soundly bastinado'd and fined, nor a * Turban all White, lest they be forced to turn *Turks*, or die for it; but all other Colours they may wear, tho' it be better not to use all Red or Yellow, for fear of offending the Soldiery. The *Papa's*, or *Greek* Priests, are always clad in Black, but their Cap has a List of White. They wear long Hair, and so do their Monks.

* Mr. *Le Brun* says, 'Tis a Mistake, that *Christians* may not wear White or Green Turbans among the *Turks*; for, he adds, That he himself wore a White One at *Ephesus* and *Constantinople*, and was never so much as called in Question; and he knew others wear Green Ones; but he confesseth, 'tis the safest Way not to meddle with them, to prevent the Trouble that may happen on that Score.

The Greek Priests are their Orders.

As for their Religion, they differ from the Church of *Rome* in these Points: 1. They maintain that the Holy Ghost proceeds only from the Father, and not from the Son, but at most by the Son; yet they believe him to be God, and the Spirit of the Son. 2. They deny the Pope to be Head of the Church, and have 4 Patriarchs of equal Authority, to whom they submit in their several Jurisdictions, *viz. Constantinople*, *Antioch*, *Alexandria* and *Jerusalem*; but they are all raised by Bribery to their Dignities by the G. Seignior, and confirmed by the G. Visiers and Basha's of those Countries, as the G. Seignior's Deputies, from whom they receive a *Caftan*, or Vest, at their Confirmation. They have several Archbishops and Bishops under them; but they must first have been *Caloyers*, or Monks, and observe their Rule during their Lives. The Priests are regular, who are not married, and Seculars who marry. 3. They admit of no

Their Monks in Orders.

no Purgatory, but hold a 3d Place, where the Bleſſed remain in Expectation of the Day of Judgment, before which Time, tho' they believe not the Saints to be admitted into Paradiſe, yet they pray to them to intercede for them. 4. They uſe Leavened Bread in the Sacrament, ſuch as they commonly eat, and communicate in both kinds, as well Laymen as Prieſts, and Women and Children as Men, and condemn the *Latins* for debarring the Laity of the Cup. 5. They have 4 *Lents*, but the firſt, which begins 6 Weeks before *Eaſter*, and laſts till that Feaſt, they keep moſt ſtrictly, calling it the Great and Holy Faſt; for they eat nothing that hath Blood, nor Oil, but only Herbs and Shell Fiſh, as the Cuttle-Fiſh and Oiſters. In the other 3 *Lents*, one of which is kept in Honour of the Bleſſed Virgin, and the other of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, they may eat Fiſh and Oil.

The *Armenians* keep their *Lent* ſtricter than the *Greeks*, for they eat no kind of Fiſh nor Oil, nor drink any Wine, but live only on Bread, Water, Herbs and Roots. Their Churches are like ours, ſave that the high Altar is divided from the reſt of the Church by a Wooden Partition with 3 Doors, which make a kind of *Sanctum Sanctorum*. They have no Images, but Pictures only. They never kneel in their Churches, no not ſo much as at the *Elevation of the Hoſt*, but lean upon Crutches, of which they have plenty for that end. No Man can be admitted into Prieſts Orders till he is full 30 Years old. Prieſts are allow'd to marry but once in their Life-time, and that to a Virgin, who is alſo under an Obligation not to marry, if her Husband dies.

Their Maſs is much the ſame in Subſtance with the *Latins*, ſave that it is much longer, for it takes them 5 Hours in a Day to read it over only, which occaſions ſo many of the Clergy to omit it, that there is ſcarce any Place where it is regularly read, unleſs it be in Mount *Athos* and *Neomagni*, a City of the Iſland of *Scio*, and in ſome few well regulated Monaſteries. Their whole Liturgy is contain'd in 7 Books. 1. *Triodion*, which contains the Office for Faſt-Days. 2. *Euchologion*, which is a General Office for all Days, and all Occaſions. 3. *Paraclitiske*, which contains all the Hymns compoſed in Honour of the Virgin *Mary*. 4. *Pentecaſterion*, which is the Service of the Church from *Eaſter* to *Whitſuntide*. 5. *Menæon*, an Office belonging to each Month. 6. *Horologion*, the Service for all the Canonical Hours for every Day. 7. *Antoicion*, which comprehends all that uſeth to be read in the ordinary Service of every Month throughout the whole Year. This Part of their Liturgy, they ſay, every Prieſt ought to have, and it ought to lie in every Church; but as to the reſt the Length of them is ſo tedious, and the Price ſo great, that moſt of the Biſhops, Prieſts, yea, even their *Caloyers*, never trouble themſelves with it.

Their *Caloyers*, or Monks, lead a very auſtere and exemplary Life. They make 3 Vows: 1. Of renouncing the World. 2. Abſtaining from Fleſh: And, 3. From Marriage; which they very ſtrictly obſerve, eſpecially in the larger Monaſteries of Mount *Athos*, *Neomagni*, Mount *Sinai*, St. *Saba* and St. *Michael* of *Jeruſalem*, which are beſt governed. Their Food is the Product of the Earth, and Fiſh, except on Faſt-Days, when they will not eat any thing that hath Life. Some of them, who are called *Aſcetai*, live only on the Fruits of the Earth, and to that End leave their Cloiſter to live on the Mountains, and never return but on great Feſtivals, to aſſiſt at the publick Service. All their Monks are divided into 3 Orders, *viz.* St. *Baſil*, *Elias*, and St. *Marcellus*; and in all of them they have 3 ſorts of Monks, Superiors or Elders, called *Egoumenoi*, the Profeſſed and other Fathers, and the Novices, with the Lay-Brethren; but the Superiors, tho' had in great Veneration, have little Authority, except in oppoſing ſome trivial Penances; for they are afraid leſt by Severity the Monks ſhould turn *Turks*, as they have had many Inſtances, and therefore their Monaſtick Diſcipline is almoſt loſt; yet they ſtill retain the Prerogative of ſtripping ſuch Monks of their Habit who have been guilty of ſome notorious Crimes, and will not ſubmit to their Rules. The Profeſſed alſo take the ſame Liberty alſo to lay down their Habits when they pleaſe, yet not without ſome Scandal to the others, and rendring themſelves contemptible; however, upon their Repentance, and undergoing ſome ſlight Penance, they are re-admitted. Theſe profeſs'd Monks, ſo long as they are in the Convent, take care of the Fruit, Corn, Sheep, and other Things that belong to the Cloiſter. The Novices and Lay-Brethren work in the Fields, and tho' they return never ſo weary from their Labours in the Evening, yet they muſt attend at a long Prayer, and make many Genuflexions, which they call *Netaniai*, before they eat their Supper, or go to their Reſt. Over all theſe Monks are placed Provincials, or *Viſitors*; but inſtead of reforming the Abuſes of the Monaſteries, which ſhould be their Buſineſs, they only gather up the Money which the Patriarch exacts of them. And, indeed, theſe *Viſitors* come ſo often, that they are miſerably poor, and are thereby made very ignorant and illiterate, becauſe the Time they ought ſpend in their Studies, they are forced to employ in labouring for a Subſtenance. But, notwithſtanding this general Poverty of the Monks, ſome few Monaſteries are ſo well endow'd, and their Monks are ſo rich, as to be able to raiſe great Sums of 50 or 60000 Crowns to purchaſe the Patriarchate; yea, ſometimes before the preſent Poſſeſſor is dead, for the G. Seignior never refuſeth Money. Their Secular Prieſts, called by them, *Coſmicoi Ieres*, are thus made: Firſt they take the Tonſure upon them, *i. e.* are ſhaven on their Crowns the Breadth of one's Hand, and are thus taken into the Service of the Church. Then after ſome Months they are created *Anagnoſta's*, or Readers, becauſe 'tis their Buſineſs to read the Mattins, Pſalms, and ſome other Things, which the Clerks uſe to ſing. When they have ſerved the Church ſome Months in this Office, the Biſhop confers upon them Deacons Orders, and a Power of waiting at the Altar and chanting the Epiſtle. When they are Deacons, if they have a mind to marry, they are allow'd it, provided they give Notice to the Biſhop of the Woman and her Abode, that he may enquire after her; for if ſhe be not chaſte, wiſe and handſome ſhe is not a fit Wife for a Prieſt, nor will the Biſhop ſuffer their Marriage. And, indeed, the *Greeks* are ſo ambitious to beſtow their Daughters on the Prieſts, that if it be known that a Prieſt deſires to marry, all are forward to ſeek out the greateſt Beauty for him, as if they were to conſecrate it to God, and to court ſuch Women they are diſpenced with in their Service, and upon their Return into it are made Prieſts.

The Under Miniſters of the *Greek* Church are, 1. *Seruophylaces*, or Sextons, who look after the conſecrated Plate, and other Utenſils of the Church. 2. The *Colonarchai*, who inform the Singers what Tunes to ſing. 3. The *Tyrroroi*, or Porters, who open and ſhut the Church-Doors. 4. The *Candilaphthi*, who take care of the Tapers.

The Service of the *Greek* Church is ſaid ſeveral times a Day. In the Monaſteries they riſe at Midnight to perform a particular Form of Devotion, called, *Meſonuction*, and to prepare them for ſome great Feſtival; they turn it into an *Holonuction*, or an All-night's Service. After this they celebrate a Service at Break of Day, called *Oortos*; another at the firſt Hour, called *Protiora*; and ſo again at the 2d Hour, called *Tritiora*; and at 9 a Clock in the Morning, called *Ekteora*: Then follows the *Ennati*, the Liturgy and the Euchariſt at 3 a Clock in the Afternoon, and *Eſperines*, or Evening-Service; after which they uſe ſome ſlight Exerciſe till they go to Supper, and when that's done, they return again to Church, to perform the Service called *Apodipho*, or, The Service of the Night, which in the *Romiſh* Church is called the *Complines*.

The Miniſters of Churches follow the Example of the Monks as near as poſſible, ſo that in all Churches, be they rich or poor, there is every Day performed the *Hagia Koinonia*, or Celebration of the Euchariſt, and ſome Churches more than once, but at different Altars. None of theſe Ceremonies or Uſages are performed in Conformity to the Church of *Rome*, for they abominate both them and all their Cuſtoms, and if a *Latin* Prieſt ſhould ſay Maſs at any of their Altars, they would waſh them, as polluted. At the Cloſe of every *Thurſday* they excommunicate the Pope and all the *Latin* Biſhops, and damn them as ſo many Hereticks and Schiſmaticks. They have ſo great a Number of Holidays, that there is no Day in the Year but is conſecrated to ſome Saint; but thoſe they have in greateſt Veneration are, beſides the Feaſts of Chriſt and his Apoſtles, the Invention and Exaltation of the Holy Croſs in *Sept.* the Feaſt of St. *Demetrius* in *Octob.* St. *John Chryſoſtom* and the Virgin's Entrance into the Temple in *Nov.* St. *Nicholas*, St. *Spiridion* and St. *Ignatius* in *Decemb.* the Feaſt of St. *Baſil*, St. *Anthony*, St. *Athanaſius*, St. *Cyril*, St. *Gregory Nazianzen* and

Christ's Baptism in *Jan.* St. *Simeon*'s Meeting with Jesus and St. *Blasius* in *Febr.* the 40 Martyrs in *March*; St. *George* in *April*; St. *Athanasius*, *Constantine* the Great and *Helena*, and the Invention of St. *John Baptist*'s Head in *May*; St. *Marinus*, *Elias* the Prophet, St. *Parasaua* and St. *Pantaleon* in *July*; Christ's Transfiguration, the Death of the Virgin *Mary*, and the Beheading of St. *John Baptist* in *August*. On these Days they read in the Church the Life and Actions of these Saints in the vulgar Tongue, out of their *Synaxarion*, or Martyrology, and conclude the Service with the Distribution of the *Eucharist*; and generally the People who come to hear, bring an Offering of Bread, Wine, Oil, Tapers, and the like, for the Use of the Priests, and give liberally to the Poor, even beyond their Abilities. They celebrate *Easter*, which they call, Πάχα ανεστασίμον, *i. e.* the Passover of the Resurrection with great Demonstrations of Joy. By the Laws of their Church, they are obliged to confess themselves 4 times a Year, but not so particularly as the Church of *Rome* requires, and after they have done some Penance, or promised, they are absolved in Form of a Prayer: Let thy Sins be forgiven. They look upon Baptism indispensibly necessary for Salvation, and tho' they baptize not till 8 Days are past after the Birth, unless in case of Necessity; yet when a Child is in Danger, they allow *Laicks* of both Sexes to baptize, because they dare not hope well for Children who die unbaptized. They rebaptize Hereticks and Apostates, when they repent and desire to come into their Church. Among the former, they reckon the Papists. They have a great Aversion to Images in *Basse-Relief*, and say, the Papists imitate the Heathens in the Use of them, but the Pictures of Christ and the Saints they account Holy, and pay a Reverence to them, and to that End set them up in their Churches on their Festivals.

Christians once try'd for eating Things strangled.

They condemn all the Western Christians for eating Things strangled, and count them Hereticks for so doing. They follow the Doctrines of the Ancient Fathers, and the Canons even of the first General Councils, very exactly, and think all others of no Force. The *Turks* make them pay very severe Capitations for their Religion sake, and which is worst to them, take their Children from them often by Force, to educate them in the *Mahometan* Faith, and make them *Ichoglans*. Tho' they have many Churches, yet they are obliged to take great Care to keep them in repair, lest they have no Churches at all, for the *Turks* very rarely will suffer them to rebuild them, if they fall, but they are allow'd to repair them. In their Churches they have a Candlestick which holds Three Candles, by which they say, is represented the Holy Trinity; and another Two, which signifie the 2 Natures in Christ. Their Sacerdotal Vestments have also the like Mysteries. In giving the Blessing, they make the Sign of the Cross from the Right to the Left, contrary to the *Latins*.

Maids shew not themselves before they are married, no not so much as to their Relations, and therefore go not to Church for fear of being seen. They are married by a Priest, and give a Ring like the *Latins*, but take Godfathers and Godmothers, which they do not. The Bride and Bridegroom being come before the *Papa's*, or Priest, he says some Prayers over them, while the Godfathers and Godmothers hold a Garland of Flowers, mix'd with *Orpine*, over their Heads, and a Pall over it. The Father and Mother of the Bride give her; and when Prayers are done, the Bride and Bridegroom drink to one another, and the Glass being given to the Priest, he merrily drinks it off, and then breaking the Glass, says, *So may this Bridegroom break the Virginity of the Bride.* Their other Rites are like the Papists. Their Marriages.

Their Way of ordinary Living is much like the *Turks*, only they are more wicked, for they are covetous, perfidious, treacherous, *Sodomites*, revengeful to the highest Degree, very superstitious, and great Hypocrites, for which Qualities they are so much despised by the *Turks*, that they do not value them, tho' they turn *Mahometans*. They are greater Enemies to the Papists than the *Turks* are, and none would hinder them from being Masters of *Turky* more than they, if Providence should favour them to recover *Europe*. Their Women are beautiful, and a little too fat, and very proud. Their Way of Living.

The *Jews* in *Turky* use the same Habits with the *Turks*, but may not wear Green, a White Turban, and Red Vests, and so are obliged to wear their Mestes, Pabouches and Caps, which are shaped like an Hat, of Violet Colour only. Their Religion is contain'd in the Old Testament and *Talmud*. As to their Manners, they are great Cheats in all Places, and their only Contrivances are to vex both *Christians* and *Turks* with their Taxes and Tricks, which is the Reason they are hated and despised in all Places. All the *Jews* and Male *Christians*, which are subject to the G. Seignior, pay the *Karadge* Yearly, which is a Tribute of 4 Piastres and an half, beginning to pay it about 9 Years old, but the *Christian* Priests and Monks are exempted from it, and so are the *Jewish Rabbi's*; the Women also pay nothing: This Tax brings in a great Revenue to the G. Seignior, and no Body can avoid it by frequently changing their Habitation, for at whatever Place they come in their Travels, their *Karadge* is demanded, and if they have paid it in any other Place, they must shew their Acquittance, and if they can't produce one, they must pay it, and take a Note or Acquittance to serve them in other Places; but such as are not subjected to the G. Seignior, do not pay this Tribute, and to shew that, they wear an Hat, and have a Certificate of their Abode from a Consul. The Jews.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Author's Voyage from Constantinople *to* Alexandria, *and* Grand Cairo, *in* Ægypt.

Bursa described.

MR. *Thevenot* left *Constantinople* Aug. 30. 1656. and sail'd in a Caique to *Montagna*, from whence he rode to *Bursa*, which was called by the Ancients *Prusea*, the Metropolis of the ancient Kingdom of *Bithynia*, and was the Capital City of the *Turkish* Empire in the Reign of *Orcan*, the Son of *Osman*, the first Sultan who took it in the 726th Year of the *Hegyra*, and in the Year of our Lord 1325. but it was taken from *Bajazet* by *Tamerlane*. It is about 10 Miles distant from Mount *Olympus*. It is pleasantly situated, and Water is so plentiful, that besides what they have in all their Dwellings, they have Fountains in their Houses of Office for their Ablutions. They have some Waters that run thro' the Town so hot, as to boil an Egg, of which they have made several Bagnio's, which serve for the Cure of many Distempers, and People come above 100 Miles to wash in them. There are many fair Houses in the Town, and above 200 Mosques; many *Hans*, very magnificently built and constantly inhabited, because the Caravans from several Places pass thro' this Town; but the most remarkable Buildings of this City are the Sepulchres of the first *Turkish* Emperors and their Sultana's, in so many Chappels built Dome-wise. Among them is said to be a *French* Sultana, who being taken Captive, and presented to the G. Seignior, so much ravished his Affections, that he enjoy'd her, but permitted her to exercise her Religion to her Death. The *Christians* after her Death desired to have the Care of her Burial, but it was not granted them, and so she lies in a little Chappel, arch'd and inclosed with Walls among the rest. This Town is about half a *French* Lg. in Length, not entirely wall'd, and has a Castle standing in the middle on a little Hill, which has a Bastion that renders it impregnable; but the Water that supplies it runs through the Town, and so may

Hot Waters.

The Sepulchres of the first Turkish Emperors.

may be cut off. No Christian is allow'd to go into it, lest they should endeavour to regain it, because it was taken from them, and that by stopping the Water. Within this Castle was formerly the *Seraglio* of the first Sultans of the *Ottoman* Family, but it is now demolished. It is said to be built by an Emperor's Daughter, who was cured of a Leprosie by washing in the hot Waters of this Town, being taught the Experiment by a measly Hog, who washing in it was cured. Close by the Town is an Hill, where a *Turkish Hermite* lives in a Chappel, which is enclosed with good Walls and Iron Gates. In it are the Tombs of one *Roland*, or *Orland*, and his Son, with his Sword and Mace lying on a Table just by, who valiantly defended this Castle against the *Saracens* in the Life of the Foundress and slew many of them.

A Leprosie cured.

From *Bursa* he went to *Smyrna* with the Caravan, and because nothing is to be met withal upon this Road, but Water, Travellers must carry all their Provisions and Household-stuff along with them, or want both. The Way lies thro' *Tablitalie*, *Loubat*, *Soufurluc*, *Dgelembe*, *Palamout* and *Manasia* to *Smyrna*. This Town is a noted Place in *Ionia*, built at first by *Tantalus*, named so from an *Amazon*, who took it, and when it was demolished by an Earthquake, rebuilt by *Mark Antony* nearer the Sea, to make the Harbour more commodious. It brags that it was the Native Place of *Homer*. The *Turks* call it *Ismyr*. It is a large Town, and well inhabited, both by *Turks* and *Christians*, but is neither pleasant nor strong. It is commanded by a Castle, at the Bottom of which in the Way to the *Greek* Church, called *Santa Veneranda*, is a great Amphitheatre, where St. *Polycarp*, St. *John*'s Schollar and Bishop of *Smyrna*, suffered Martyrdom. Near it are the Ruines of St. *John*'s Cathedral Church, which had several large Chappels, and in one is still a Tomb, which, the People say, is St. *Polycarp*'s; but it seems rather to be some *Turk*'s. The Port is but small, but the Road is spacious and safe, and has a Castle lately built, to hinder what Ships they please from coming in, or going out. By the Road stands the Custom-House, and the Houses of the Consuls and Merchants *Franks*, who have for the most part a back Door towards the Sea. In it is a *Cadi* to administer Justice.

Smyrna described.

St. *Polycarp*'s Martyrdom and Tomb.

Besides *Turks*, there live in it *Christians* of all Countries, *Greeks*, *Armenians* and *Latins*. The *Greeks* have 2 Churches, *viz.* St. *Veneranda*, where their Archbishop officiates, and St. *George*, which belongs to their Monks. The *Armenians* also have 2 Churches, and the *Latins* as many, one of them belonging to the *Capuchins*, which is over-against the *French* Consul's House, and the other to the *Jesuits*, which has a lovely House adjoining to it. The Country about it is plain and fertile in Olive-Trees, and full of Gardens. All Things there are in abundance, and their Wine is most excellent. It is very much subject to Earthquakes, which happen every Year, and often ruine the Town; but 'tis soon rebuilt again, because of the Convenience of its Situation. The Air in Summer-time would be very hot, were it not for the low Wind, or North Breeze, as they call it, which blows regularly every Day, and much qualifies the Air. About *Smyrna* are found that remarkable Animal, called a *Cameleon*, of which tho' many Things that are related are fabulous, yet these are found true by Mr. *Brun*, who kept 4 of them 6 Months on purpose to know the Nature of them. They live upon the Air, and never eat nor drink; yet do catch and swallow Flies. They often change Colour, sometimes 3 or 4 times in the Space of half an Hour. The Colours which they usually change themselves into are a fine Green, mix'd with yellow Spots, and sometimes brown Spots, a brown Colour, like Moles, and their ordinary Colour, which is like a Mouse-grey; but they never assume a Red, nor many other Colours. What the Naturalists say of them, That they assume the Colour of all Things on which they lie, he could not find true, yet once his best *Cameleon* being laid on a white Night-Gown, appear'd so very white, that he could hardly discern it. It is a small Animal, has no Intrails, but the Belly is full of small Eggs. Their Tongue is as long as their Body, and at the End of it is a viscous Humour, which takes the Flies. Their Eyes are as black as Jet, and, what is most peculiar to them, they can turn their Eyes 2 several Ways, and with the one look up, and with the other down at the same time. Their Skin is thin and transparent, but they are short lived, not living above 5 or 6 Months.

Christians, and their Churches.

The *Cameleon*.

Ephesus lies not above 14 or 15 Lgs. from *Smyrna*. In the Way is a Village called *Sedequi*, about 3 Lgs. from *Smyrna*, situated in a very pleasant Country, for which Reason the *European* Consuls of *Smyrna* have their Country-Houses there, and do frequently retire thither to divert themselves with Hunting. The rest of the Way from *Sedequi* to *Ephesus* is over a very pleasant and large Plain. *Ephesus*, once a noted City, is now nothing but a confused Heap of Rubbish, Pieces of Marble, demolish'd Walls, broken Columns and Chapters. That Part which is at present inhabited, is bounded on the East with a large Plain, which reaches as far as the *Archipelago*, and on the Sides with high Hills. The most remarkable Things in it are, 1. The old Church of St. *John* the Evangelist. It had anciently 4 Gates, but 2 of them are wall'd up. You enter into the Church by a Descent of 16 Stairs, at the Bottom of which is a Fountain. Within it are 4 Pillars of Porphiry, spotted with Black and Red, 12 Foot and half in Circumference, and 36 Foot high, being one entire Piece of Stone, which bears up the Roof. There are also 2 other Pillars of *Samian* Stone, and round about the Church on the Outside is a Gallery having 4 Pillars a breast, and 6 in Length, set off in the middle with an *Octagon* Fountain, each of whose Sides are 10 Foot long, and one Foot thick. The Church hath 2 Domes, and is covered with Lead. The *Turks* having converted it into a Mosque, have added a Mineret, and adorn'd it after their Fashion; but the greatest Rarities of it, when it was a Church, were carried to *Constantinople* to Sultan *Soliman*, to adorn the Mosque he had erected there. 2. The Castle stands on an Hill just by it, and has a very ancient Tower still standing, on the Top of which is a very curious Piece of Sculpture, or *Basse-Relieve*, which, as some say, represents the History of the famous *Roman*, *Marcus Curius*; but others say, the Destruction of *Troy*: The Truth is, none dare come near enough to take an exact View of it, and so they only guess at it. In passing it you may discern 3 Pieces of Marble, one represents a *Bauhmal*, the 2d a Man fallen dead from his Horse, and a Person in a Senator's Habit standing by seems to lament the Accident, and the 3d is the Figure of a dead Body laid out ready for Interment. 3. Two Aquæducts. 4. A large Inclosure, where anciently stood the Temple of *Diana*, but there is nothing remarkable of it, but one large Gate, much ruined and defaced. Within it on the North side is engraven on a Stone a Man on Horse-back, with a Dog by him, and a Serpent twisted round a Tree. On the South-side are 2 Inscriptions, the one within, in these Words, *ACCENSO. RENSI ET ASIÆ*: And the other, *M. P. VEDI NICERH. VEDIAE. PAVILLIMX. M. HIÆ VXORIS EI.* But the Learned cannot tell what they mean. On the Front of the Gate are these Words graven, *UNIOR CANTUSIUM*; but they are so mingled, that their Meaning is not to be guess'd at. 5. Two Amphitheatres, where Prizes used to be anciently fought, but nothing now remains of them, but part of the Walls of one of them, built after the Antique Manner of large Free-Stones. Hard by these Amphitheatres is a large Square, where are a great many Pieces of broken Columns, Chapters, Frizes and Pedestalls, of a wonderful Bigness. Upon some of them are Arches of a prodigious Bigness, and in the Body of one of the Columns are a Pair of Stairs, which lead a great way under Ground. Among the Ruines are met some Remains of the ancient Baths. 6. The *Grotto*, called, *The Cave of the 7 Sleepers*, who flying into that Place to avoid the Persecution in the Reign of *Decius* the Emperor, 250 Years after Christ, fell into so found a Sleep, that they did not awake again till the Reign of *Theodosius* II. who was a zealous Protector of the Christians, and supposed they had slept but one Night, tho' it was near 200 Years. 7. A Tomb, or Monument, on which are several *Greek* Characters, and 4 little Children in *Basse-Relieve*, with several Marble Statues buried under Ground, yet so carelessly, that the Feet of some of them appear'd above.

A Journey from *Smyrna* to *Ephesus*, out of M. *Corn. Le Brun.*

Ephesus described.

Things most remarkable

About a small Hour's Journey from *Ephesus* are to be seen the Fonts, where, they say, St. *John* the Evangelist baptized the Christians. 'Tis a grey Jasper-Stone, 16 Foot in Diameter, but a little mangled by Travellers, who usually carry away a Piece of it. The *Greeks* have many like them. About half a Lg. further, upon the Top of an Hill, is a Fabrick, said to be the Place where St. *Paul* was imprison'd. There

The Fonts where St. *John* baptized.

are 4 Rooms curiously wrought in Marble still ſtanding. From this Caſtle is a pleaſant Proſpect over the Plains and Meadows, where the River *Meander* makes ſo many Windings and Turnings, as raviſhes the Spectator with Wonder and Delight at once. The Water of it is very pleaſant, and the Current is ſo ſtill, that one can hardly diſcern which way the Stream runs, unleſs it be at the Mouths where it empties it ſelf into the Sea.

Not far from *Epheſus* lies an Iſland, called *Scala Nova*, but by the *Turks*, *Cous-Adaſi*, or the Iſland of Birds. Here are the richeſt *Muſcadine* Wines made of all the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*. *Brun.*

The Iſland of *Chio* deſcribed.

From *Smyrna* he went for a Diverſion to ſee the Wonders of *Chio*, ſo much talk'd of throughout all *Aſia*. The Iſland which may be called the Paradice of *Greece*, is govern'd by *Chriſtians*, tho' under the Authority of the *Turks*, who command in ſmall Matters. They chuſe themſelves COSS, one half *Greeks*, and the other half *Latins*, who during the Time of their Continuance, take Care of all Affairs. The People obtain'd theſe Privileges by ſubmitting voluntarily to *Mahomet* II. when he conquer'd *Greece*, and the *Turks* ſuffer them to enjoy them without controul. Up and down the Country are ſeveral Churches belonging either to the Popiſh Biſhops or Monks, but the *Greeks* have many more in ſeveral Places of it, the *Latin* Churches being reckon'd but 301, but the *Greeks* 500: They are all very well ſerved, and Divine Service is perform'd with as many Ceremonies, as if it were in the Heart of Chriſtendom, for the *Turks* moleſt them not, but they have a free Exerciſe of their Religion, inſomuch that on *Corpus Chriſti*-Day the holy Sacrament is carried about the Streets, under a Canopy, without any Fear, or Indignity offered by the *Turks*, tho' nothing is more odious to them than that Ceremony.

The Puniſhment of Murther.

When any Man is found killed in this Iſland, whether *Chriſtian* or *Turk*, the Author of the Murther is diligently ſought for, but if he be not found, the Town muſt pay the Price of his Blood, at the Rate of 12000 Aſpres, which is aſſeſſed upon every Houſe by the COSS, but if the Murtherer be found, his Blood pays for all, and no Money is paid. The *Cadi* and *Turkiſh* Officers make Advantage of theſe Fines. In the Iſland are 22 Villages that have Maſtick-Trees, which are in all an 100000. They are Lentisks, crooked like Vines, and creeping on the Ground. They prick theſe Trees in the Months of *Auguſt* and *September*, and the Maſtick, which is their Gum, ſweating out by the Holes made in the Bark, runs down the Tree and falls upon the Ground, where it congeals into flat Pieces, which they gather ſometime after, and lay it in the Sun to dry, and then range and ſhake them in a Sieve to ſeparate the Duſt from them, which ſo ſticks to the Faces of thoſe that do it, that it cannot be got off but by rubbing their Faces with Oil. Theſe Villages produce above 1000 Cheſts of Maſtick, of which they pay to the G. Seignior Yearly 300 Cheſts, or 300 Weight, containing 90 Oques apiece, every Village being aſſeſſed according to their Quantity of Trees, and the reſt they are obliged to ſell at a certain Rate, to the Farmer of the Cuſtoms.

Maſtick-Trees.

The beſt Maſtick, and Uſe of it.

This Maſtick is by *Dioſcorides* allow'd to be the beſt in the World, tho' it grows alſo in other Places. 'Tis a white Gum uſed in the Compoſitions of Ointments, and the *Greeks* uſe to chew it much, becauſe it makes them ſpit, whitens their Teeth, and ſweetneth their Breath. They put it alſo in their Bread, to make it more delicate.

The Maſtick Towns in *Chio*.

The Chiefeſt of theſe Maſtick-Towns is *Callimacha*, which hath 2 Gates, which ſtand open always, 6 *Greek* Churches, and a Nunnery. It is well peopled, and round it are ſaid to be 30 *Greek* Churches.

Niamoni, a famous Convent.

Some Miles from this Town lies *Niamoni*, i. e. the Old Virgin, where is a Convent of *Caloyers* or *Greek* Monks: It ſtands among Woods and Rocks, being built by *Conſtantine Monomachus*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, in 1050. The Church is adorn'd with a great many Pieces of Marble and Porphyry, and among others with 32 Marble Pillars. The Dome is full of Pictures of *Moſaick* Work, and the Church is kept in good repair. The Convent is very ſpacious, and built in the Form of a Caſtle; no Woman may enter into it. There are commonly 200 Monks in it, under the Government of an Abbot, and it muſt never exceed that Number. When any Places are vacant, ſuch as will ſupply them, and become *Caloyers*, muſt pay 100 Piaſtres, and carry what Eſtate they have into the Convent, which they enjoy for Life, and then leave it to the Convent, unleſs they have a Kinſman who will become a Monk, and then he may give one 3d to him, on Condition that at his Death it go the Convent: The Convent gives to the Monks every Day black Bread, Wine, but not good, and rotten Cheeſe, and if they will have any thing elſe, they muſt provide it as well as they can; and ſome live well on their own Eſtates, and keep an Horſe to take their Pleaſure, the reſt muſt make a Shift with their Commons, yet on *Feſtivals* and *Sundays* they eat altogether in their Hall, or Refectory. This Convent pays the G. Seignior 500 Piaſtres a Year, for their Yearly Revenue is above 60000 Piaſtres, and in their Treaſury they have above a Million of Gold, for two 3ds of the Iſland belong to them. The Monks that die among them are laid in the Church of St. *Luke*, juſt without the Convent. They have 2 Bells, and there are little ones in every Village, but the *Turks* allow them no where but here.

The chief Town of this Iſle is of the ſame Name: It hath good Houſes, and the Streets are wide enough for Coaches: It is not large, but well peopled, and moſt part of the Inhabitants are *Chriſtians*, either *Greeks* or *Latins*, who have each of them a Biſhop, and ſeveral Churches, but the *Greeks* have moſt by far. They have alſo many Convents of Nuns, but not ſo ſtrictly ſhut up, but that Men may come at them, and they will be kind to them, ſometimes beyond the Bounds of Chriſtian Charity. They may leave their Convent when they pleaſe, and their Buſineſs while they are in it, is to embroider in Gold, Silver and Silk upon Handkerchiefs, Purſes, &c. and they are very skilful in it. The *Latins* have 5 Churches in the Town, the 1ſt is the Biſhop's, which is fair and large, but built ſince the *Turks* have been Maſters of *Chio*, according to an Agreement made between the *French* King and the G. Seignior. To this Church belongs a Burying-place, where all the *French* that die in this City are interred, which was given to it by Mr. *John Dupuis* of *Marſeilles*, the *French* Conſul there. The *Capuchins* alſo have a large and ſpacious Church, which ſtands over againſt their Convent, which is neatly built, and has a large Garden, but it wants Water. They are forced to keep their Gate continually ſhut, becauſe of the *Turks*, who if they get in ſpoil their Gardens, and commit many other Inſolences. They teach Humanity and Chriſtianity to all Children that are ſent to them. The Jeſuits alſo have a Church and College, and are of 3 Congregations. The *Jacobins* and *Cordeliers* alſo have fair Churches. The *Turks* have their Moſques, and *Jews* their Synagogues. The Town is but ſmall, and not ſtrong, but hath 8 Gates, and a pretty good Caſtle to defend it. The *Turks* live in it, and are generally about 800 Men. No *Chriſtian* may lodge in it; but the *Jews* for their Security pay a certain Sum yearly to dwell in it, for they would find but bad Entertainment among the *Chriſtians*. It was built by the *Genoeſe*, when they were Maſters of the Iſle, and commands the Port. Four Miles from the City near to the Sea-ſide, is to be ſeen a Vaſt Stone, which was cut out of ſome Rock: it is almoſt round, but the upper part is flat, and ſomewhat hollow. On the upper part are Places like Seats cut in the Stone, of which there is one higher than the reſt, like a School-maſter's Chair, whereas Tradition reports, was *Homer*'s School, where he taught his Schollars. M. *du Mont* ſays, He ſaw nothing but a ſquare Altar cut out of a Rock, with the Figures of an Ox, Wolf, Sheep and Rabbit in *Baſſe-Reliefe*, and thinks, that in all Probability there were no Schools there, but that it was a Place where Sacrifices were offered to the God *Pan*, or ſome other Rural Diety. The Iſle of *Chio* is 80 Miles in Circuit, and very populous, containing, beſides the chief Town *Chio* already deſcribed, 60 Towns and Villages, inhabited for the moſt part by Chriſtians.

The Town of *Chio*.

The Capuchins Convent and Church.

The Caſtle.

The chief Villages are, *Cordomolo*, which contains about 500 Inhabitants: The Country about it is very fertile and well watered; yielding yearly 160 or 170 Tun of Wine. Some Years ago ſeveral Pieces of Gold, Silver and Copper-Money of the Emperor *Conſtantine* were found there. Five Miles from it is a lovely Valley, Half a Mile long, where is a Spring of Water, to which there is a Deſcent by 25 lovely Marble Steps. At the End of it was a Temple of fine Aſh-coloured Marble, but it is pull'd down, and the Stones broken only to get the Iron and Lead that joined them together.

Cardomolo.

Be-

Vichi. Beyond it is *Vichi*, a Village inhabited by 300 Souls, having a Church dedicated to the Virgin.

Cambia. Beyond it is *Cambia*, which has 100 Inhabitants, and lies among Rocks, Hills and Woods of wild Pine-Trees, which they fell for Timber to build their Galleys. Among the Mountains are several Churches. Below this Village is a Valley, where stands a little Castle, built upon a Rock, which is almost inaccessible.

St. Elias's Mount. Over-against this Castle is the Mount of St. *Elias*, which is the highest Place of all the Island, and is seen from *Tenedo*, which is above 100 Miles distant. It has a Church dedicated to that Saint built on it, but is usually cover'd with Mists and Snow. In the middle of this Mountain is a large Spring, which Waters the Fields about it, and makes them very fertile in all sorts of Fruit.

Spartonda. In a Wood hard by lies *Spartonda*, a Village inhabited by about 50 Shepherds, but very pleasant, affording plenty of good Water and Fruits. Between *Calandre* and *Coronia* there is a Bath of Sulphur by the Sea-side, under extraordinary big Oaks. It is called, *Hagisma*, *i. e.* The Holy Water, because the Water being drank, cures many Diseases, but by the violent Operation it has killed many.

St. Helena. Three Miles from the Sea, at the further End of the Island, is a Town called St. *Helena*, built on a Rock, containing 200 Inhabitants, 2 Churches and a Chappel. The Inhabitants of this Place firmly believe, that if a dead Body does not corrupt in 40 Days; it turns *Zorzolacas*, or a *Nomolacas*, *i. e.* an Hobgoblin. The Chappel is highly esteem'd by the Villages round about.

Volissa. From hence one goes to *Volissa*, which is a great Village with about 300 Houses, and 1500 Inhabitants. It is seated on an Hill, and has a Castle built by *Belisarius*, the Emperor of *Constantinople*'s General, who was forced ashore there by a Storm. The Country about it is very pleasant, spacious and fruitful, and the Inhabitants raise 5000 Weight of Silk yearly, with which they pay their Tribute. They are vicious, and 'tis thought they lie under a Curse of being always destitute of Bread.

Varvarisso. Near this Place is *Varvarisso*, where there is a a Church dedicated to St. *Marcella*, to whom they keep a solemn Feast, called *Panagirie*, and the Priests sing Praises to her all Night long.

Firta. Three Miles from this Village is the Monastery dedicated to St. *John*, and by it a Village, called *Firta*, near which is a great Village, where there is a running Water, that drives 8 Miles, which serve the Villages about, for the Peasants have Hand-Mills, and their Wives grind their Corn.

Sieronda. From hence you go to *Sieronda*, which is an ancient spacious Tower, inhabited by 50 Shepherds, who have a Church in it.

Lecilimiona. A little farther is *Lecilimiona*, a Village of 150 Inhabitants, and a Church. There begin the Mastick-Trees.

Elata. Two Miles from thence is *Elata*, whose Inhabitants are addicted to the Taming of Partridges.

Armolia. At *Armolia*, which is a little further, is made all the Earthen-Ware used in the Isle. It lies in a Plain full of Mastick-Trees, and contains 500 Inhabitants, and several Churches. Over-against this Village stands a Castle, called *Apollieno*, very strong to resist the *Corsaires*. It was built in 1440. by *Nicholas Justiniani*, and

Musta. has a Church in the midst of it. The Village *Musta* exceeds all the rest in Strength and good Building, and contains 300 Inhabitants and several Churches. By it are 2 Harbours, named *Ayadinamy* and *San Nichita*,

Pergi. but this last is neerest *Pergi*, a great Village with a Tower, containing 2000 Inhabitants, and 30 Churches. The rest of the Villages have the like Number of People and Churches, and in many of them are Castles

Many Towers round the Isle. and Towers, built to defend their Towns and Mastick-Trees from the Ravages of the *Turks* of *Natolia*, who crossing the Sea in Boats, or Galleys, come and carry away both the People and their Goods, for which Reason they have built Towers all round the Island, at 4 Miles Distance one from another. The Island is very subject to Earthquakes, yet would be very fertile, were it not so Stony, and had more Water, for it rains so little there, that every Spring both the *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Latins* and *Jews* are forced to make Processions to obtain Rain. But, notwithstanding the Hilliness and Driness of the Island, it has all Things necessary and good in sufficient Quantities. It yields Corn and plenty of good Wine, but being thick, some do not like it, because, they say, they must both eat and drink it. All Things are cheap there, and excellent Partridges may be had for little or nothing, for they keep them tame like Turtles, and have Keepers, who drive them out in the Morning, and whistle them in at Night, which they always obey. The Inhabitants of this Island are the only People, who have preserved their Liberty under the *Turks*, living as they think fit, and exercising their Religion with all imaginable Freedom, only paying them a Tribute. They are generally Christians, many of them are Papists, and the rest of them of the *Greek* Church. They are apparell'd after the Fashion of the *Genouese*, and have much of their Humour. They are so ugly as would scare a Man, tho' their Persons are proper, and well shaped. They are very proud, yet their Gentlewomen go to Market to buy Provisions, and carry them openly in the Streets. They love the *Spaniards* better than the *French*, but had rather be under the Government of *Turks* than *Christians*.

Tame Partridges. *People free.* *Ugly.*

The *Chiots* make much Damask, Sattins, Taffata's, Fustians, and other Silk-Stuffs, and drive a Trade in many Places with their Saiques, *viz.* to *Grand Cairo*, and the Maritime Cities of *Barbary* and *Natolia*. Such as are not obliged to work or follow Business, sit whole Days under the Trees talking together. Learning is of no Vogue in this Country, but profound Ignorance reigns among them, yet they have naturally a sharp Wit, so that to avoid their Cheats in Dealing a Man had need of all his Eyes about him. They are much given to Pleasures, and love excessive Drinking. The Women are very beautiful and well shaped, their Faces are as white as the Jasmin, they wear on their Head, and are very charming, but their Breasts are scorched with the Sun, which is much to be wonder'd at, because they take as little care of their Faces as Breasts. They are always very neat in their Dress, wearing on their Heads very white Linen. They have a very brisk and merry Wit, which renders them the most talking Women in the World, but are extreamly vain in their Apparel, wearing the finest Stuffs they can get; but whereas they used formerly to load themselves with Rings and Jewels, especially upon the Vigil of St. *John*'s Day, they now are forbidden it under the Pain of Excommunication by the Pope, because the *Captain-Basha*, seeing this Finery, imposed a Tax of 50000 Piastres upon them, and made them pay it, so that they wear no Gold, Silver nor Jewels about them.

Their Trade. *Their Ignorance.* *Their Women.*

The *Chiots*; both Men and Women, are much given to Dancing, and on *Sundays* and *Holidays* they dance all Night promiscuously, both in the Cities and Villages, and a Stranger is allowed to put in with them. They are not at all jealous, but their Women and Maids are allow'd to stand at their Doors to see and talk with such Men as pass by; and they will be as merry and familiar with Strangers, as if they had been acquainted with them all their Days.

Their Dancing.

Another Isle of the *Archipelago*, bordering upon *Asia*, is *Patino*, or *Patmora*, anciently called *Pathmos*. It is but 18 Miles in Compass, and has but one well built Town in it, with a Castle in the middle of it, called, *The Monastery of St.* John, where 200 *Greek* Monks live. St. *John the Evangelist*, being baniss'd into this Isle, where he is said to have wrote his Revelations, They carefully keep in their Church a Body shut up in a Case, which, they say, is the Body of St. *John*, and shew a Grotto, where, they say, St. *John* wrote the *Apocalypse*. There are about 3000 Souls in the Isle, who have much ado to live, the Isle being very dry and rocky. No *Turks* live in the Island, but they are all *Christians* that live there; but they pay Tribute to the G. Seignior. The *Corsairs* put into this Island to Careen, and take fresh Water.

The Isle of Patmora, or Pathmos. *St. John's Body and Grotto.*

The Isle of *Nixia*, anciently *Naxos*, is 120 Miles in Compass. It was subject to the *Sanudi* and *Somarigi*, *Venetian* Dukes, till the *Turks* took it under the Emperor *Selymus*, yet there are still in it several Noble Families descended of the said Dukes. The Land is fruitful in all Things, but especially the Valley of *Darmilla*, which has 18 Villages: They feed many Cows, Sheep and Goats, and their Country yields many Vines, of which they make great Store of Wine and Cheese, which they send to *Alexandria*, *Smyrna* and *Chio*. Near the Town, by the Sea, are Salt-pits and a Pond, which they Farm out to Fisher-men. In the Marshes of the Valley of *Plicori*, they catch great Store of Eels. Their Woods are full of Rocks and solitary Dens, where there lie large Stags. The Peasants catch Partridges by stalking with an Ass, train'd

The Isle of Naxos. *Salt-Pits.*

up

The Monasteries. up to it, and they have Plenty. There are many Monasteries in this Isle, and one of them which is built in Form of a Tower, is very ancient. There is also another called *Fanaromeni*, dedicated to the Virgin, which has 70 Rooms, and a small Church, but the Monks are extreamly ignorant, and by their Viciousness one would judge they served, *The Unknown God.* By the Sea-side, over-against the Island of *Nicaria*, is to be seen upon a very steep and rugged Mountain some Ruines of the Castle of *Apollo*, and 'tis a Wonder how Stones could be gotten up so high to build it. By it are 4 little Towns well inhabited. On the Hills hereabout many Goats feed upon an Herb, called *Ledum*, which leaves a kind of viscous Dew upon their Beards, that turns into a kind of Gum of a very good Smell, called *Ladanum*, or *Laudanum*, and is gathered by cutting off their Beards. As you go to the Town, there is a Castle upon a very high Hill, which commands the Villages of *Darmilla*. Near the Town, upon the Rock *Strongyle*, is the Palace of the God *Bacchus*, built of very white Marble, but the *Turks* and others carry it away daily for their private Uses. *Bacchus* may well have a Palace at *Naxos*, where they are so great Drunkards. The Tower and Ducal Palace are still in being in the Town. There are Two Archbishops in it, a *Latin* and a *Greek*. The Cathedral Church of the *Latin* Archbishop dedicated to the Assumption of our Lady, is very handsome, and very well served by 6 Canons and 7 Priests, but their Revenue is inconsiderable, for the Archbishop has no more than 20 Piastres of yearly Rent. He hath a Seat in the Country with a Church, at a Place called *San Mamma*; the Church is paved and lined with Marble, but not kept in good Repair. In the Castle the Jesuits have a sorry House, and the *Greeks* a Chappel, that belonged formerly to the Dukes. Without the Town are *Recollets* and *Capuchins*, who make many Proselites to the *Roman* Faith. The Inhabitants have such great Feuds among them, that they will not speak to one another as long as they live; but the Women are more obstinate than the Men, and are great Meddlers in other People's Business. The Women wear so many Coats one over another, that they are hardly able to go, and their Shooes are so strait, that they can hardly get their Feet in, but they are pretty honest and chaste. From the Sale of their Wine, Cheese and Silk they raise their Tribute.

Laudanum, how made.

Bacchus's Palace.

Jesuits and Monks.

The Isle of *Paros*. About 6 Miles from *Nixia* is the Isle of *Paro*, anciently called *Paros*, which hath 3 Castles, several Villages, and a good Harbour for all sorts of Vessels, fair Churches, and many *Greek* Priests and Monks. The Antiquities of this Isle, consisting in Statues, Marble-Chests, &c. were carried away by an *English* Gentleman, who took all he could find here, as well as at *Delos*, now called *Sedrille*, where was plenty of them; but now there remains but one of a Woman so large, that it cannot be stirr'd. This Isle was famous for the Oracle of *Apollo* heretofore, but now it is the Resort of the *Corsairs*.

The Isle of *Delos*.

Myconc. The Island of *Mycone*, anciently *Myconus*, was once a well peopled Isle, but now is almost forsaken, because of the rigorous Persecution of the *Turks*. It is about 3 Miles round.

Tenes. Over-against this Island is the Isle of *Tine*, formerly *Tenes*. It belongs to the *Venetians*, is well peopled, and hath a very strong Castle built upon a Rock, and the Houses stand one above another. It is 40 Miles in Circuit, and yields plenty of Provisions and Silk, but 'tis so over-stock'd with People, that many are obliged to go out of it, and dwell at *Smyrna* and *Chio*. There is a *Latin* Bishop in it, and the Women are handsome and courteous enough.

Nio, or *Nixia*. By *Nio*, called of old *Oliarus*, which was not long since inhabited by the *Albanians*, a barbarous and warlike People, who used to go all Night arm'd by the Sea-side, and is a fruitful Country in all Things, especially Woods of Oaks, and other Trees, which they cut down and sell to other Places, you sail to *Santorini*, formerly called *Therasia*, which is 30 Miles about, and 60 from *Candy*, from which it may be seen. There are several Castles in this Isle, *viz.* 1. That of St. *Nicholas*, the Houses of which are built upon a black Rock, that is frightful. A *Greek* Bishop has his Residence there, and about 500 Souls about him; but they live most of them in Caves made in Pumice Stone, and 'tis pleasant to see them come out of the Ground like Conies, while others are plowing over their Heads. 2. *Scaro*, built on a frightful Mountain, so steep, that those who go up to it must climb with their Hands and Feet. It contains 150 Houses, and the *Greeks* have a Church there, in which are 2 Images of massie Silver, one of our Lady, and the other of St. *Michael*. It formerly belonged to the *Latins*, who have still a Bishop there. 3. *Pirgo*, near which is a Chappel of our Lady; with many large Caves, where about 200 People live. Between these Castles lies an Hill, from whence one may see the whole Island, which is planted with Vines, but has no Trees, but Fig-Trees and white Mulberries. They make more Wine than they spend, which their Neighbours fetch from them to carry to *Chio*, *Smyrna*, and other Places. They make all sorts of Stuffs, and by the Sale of them they raise Money to pay their Tribute. In this Place are 1000 Souls, almost all *Greeks*, and the *Cadi* resides here. Their Houses are well built, all white, and wall'd in, so that they look like a Tower. At *Scaro* there is an House of the Nuns of St. *Dominick*, but their Lodgings are ill and Air bad: Their Church is kept in good Order, and served by a Chaplain. On St. *Stephen*'s Hill, between *Pirgo* and *Nebrio* lived a Woman, that in ancient times gave Victuals to all the People for a whole Year that a Plague and Famine lasted, and there are still remaining several Statues of her. 4. *Crotiri*, inhabited by 150 Souls, and about it there are 7 Villages, but ill peopled. The Inhabitants of the Isle live very meanly: Their Bread, called *Schises*, which is made of Wheat and Barly, is as black as Pitch, and so harsh, that one can hardly swallow it; for they bake it but twice a Year, because they have no Wood, but what they buy by the Pound from *Nio*. They have no Fish nor Flesh, but feed only on Beans, Pease, Eggs and Biscuit. They have little or no Fruit, but Grapes, which are plentiful. They know not what Physicians, Chirurgeons and Apothecaries, and Men of that Profession are. They are stout, and can defend themselves from their Enemies with Stones. The People live a beastly Life, doing nothing but eat, drink, sleep, and play at Cards.

Their Product and Manufacture.

Nuns of *Dominick*.

Santorini, or *Therasia*, and its Castles.

The Isle of *Thera*. The Isle looks like Hell, being on the Shores all black and scorched by an Eruption of Flames, which happen'd about 60 Years ago. About the Year 1638, there was another Eruption of Fire in the Port, which with an incredible Noise, heard 200 Miles, cast vast Numbers of Pumice-stones out of the Sea, like Bullets, and so infected the Air, that many on the Isle died, and several lost their Sight, but recovered it some Days after; and all Silver turned Red, even in Mens Chests and Pockets, but in a few Days came to it self. *Seneca* says, this Island stands upon Mines of Sulphur from whence these Fires proceeded. It is said, that *Alexander* sounded the Sea in this Place, but could find no Bottom, yet a Ship may come to an Anchor at *Tiresia*, a little Isle by it.

The Isle of *Policandre*. The Isle of *Policandre* is 8 Miles in Compass, and a pleasant Place: There is but one Village of 100 Houses, and 300 Souls in it: It has 3 well built Churches, and 2 Monasteries, one of Men and another of Women. The Convent of Monks is well situated, and dedicated to the blessed Virgin. It has a little Garden, and a Fountain of excellent Water in it. The Nuns observe no Rule, but live as Nature teacheth them; their Church is dedicated to St. *John*, and a Monk says Mass in it on all *Sundays* and Holy-days. The Castle stands upon a very high Hill, but all the Houses are ruinous, except a Chappel dedicated to St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel. From it one may see all the Isles of the *Archipelago*. The Inhabitants of this Isle are honest, civil and courteous People, especially the Women, that are very handsome. They have good Bread, Fowl, Sheep, and other Things necessary, but no Wine; so that what they drink comes from *Santorini*, which is but 30 Miles distant. They have no Trades among them, because their Port, which is indifferent good, is infested by the *Mainots* and *Corsairs*, who lodge in a Church by the Sea-side.

The Isle of *Milo*. The Island of *Milo*, which is so called from *Mylos*, a Mill, because they have many Wind-mills in it, and it affords Mill-stones, is 36 Miles about. It is fruitful in all Things, and exports Yearly to *Candy*, *Venice*, and other Places, between 3 and 400 Tun of Wine. They have a Mine of Brimstone, and another of Pumice-stones, which they Farm to one of the Inhabitants for 1500 Piastres Yearly. Three Miles from the Town are certain hot Baths of Sulphur, where diseased People from several Places wash and recover their Health. The Port is 6 Miles long, 3 over, and has a good

good Depth of Water, and 2 Miles from it in a Grotto is a Fountain of Luke-warm Water, which gives so much Heat, that an artificial Bath cannot make one sweat more. In this Isle is a Town where 2500 Souls live, and an old Castle inhabited by 500 more. They have a *Latin* and *Greek* Bishop. The *Latin* Cathedral is without the Town, dedicated to St. *Peter*, but without Ornaments, and the Bishop celebrates in a Chappel that joins to a *Greek* Church. He has many Tithes, of which he gives to the *Greek* Bishop one Third part. He has many well built Churches in good Repair under him, and many Priests to officiate in them. Most of the Inhabitants are *Greeks*, who live much at their Ease, and are civil, but very wicked and perfidious. Their Women go in a very ugly Dress, speak very ill, and cannot pronounce the Letter *L*. They are very charitable and kind to Strangers. They have all Necessaries for Life, but no Physicians or Chirurgeons. There are no *Turks* in the Isle, but it is governed by 4 Deputies of the Town.

The Inhabitants.

Half a Mile from *Milo* is the Isle called *Chimolo*, or *Argentava*, which hath a good Harbour, and a Village containing about 200 Souls, which was burnt by the *Corsairs* in 1638. These poor People live in great Misery.

The Island Chimolo, or Argentava.

The Isle of *Sifano*, or *Sifanto*, anciently *Sifanus*, is 36 Miles in Circuit, and has a Castle upon a Hill, with double Walls, inhabited by 3000 Souls, and there are no other Houses in all the Island, unless it be some Country-Houses of private Men. The Harbour is not good. There is upon it a *Latin* Bishop, and a good *Greek* Vicar, but the Bishop's Chappel is little and very poor. There is also a Monastery of *Greeks* built upon an Hill. The Isle produces not Provisions for above 2 Months in the Year, and for the rest of the Year the People fetch it in Barks from other Places. They are very great Rogues, but their Women are very honest, and go with their Faces cover'd. There are no Trades, but Weavers, Shoe-makers, Joiners, and the like.

The Isle of Thermia.

The Isle of *Thermia*, so called from the *Thermæ*, or hot Springs in it, which give great Relief to sick Persons, is 36 Miles in Circuit. The Town contains about 300 Houses, inhabited by about 2000 Souls. The *Greeks* have 15 Churches in it, and a Bishop, who resides 6 Months here, and as many at *Zia*. There is also a Castle and a pretty Village, called *Mesi*. The Isle is almost all plain, has few Trees, yet is fruitful and abundant in all Things. The Inhabitants are honest People, and trade in Stuffs, Thread and other Commodities, raising thereby Money to pay their Tribute. The *Venetian* Coin goes only in this Isle, as it doth in all the others, except *Naxia*, *Andro* and *Scyra*, where *Turkish* Money goes. Their Women are vertuous, handsome, and wear a neat Dress. The People live pretty well there, and a *Cadi* commands, with 4 Procurators, chosen out of the Citizens of the Town.

The People and Trade.

The Isle of *Ajora* is an Isle 18 Miles about, and depends on the Isle of *Scyra*, who keep some Shepherds there to feed their Sheep. There are 4 Churches in it, but Divine Service is perform'd in them at *Easter* only, when the Shepherds communicate. The *Corsairs* hinder its being cultivated, because they take away the Oxen, and sometimes the Sheep.

The Isle of Ajora.

The Isle of *Scyra*, which in the vulgar *Greek* signifies *Signora*, or Mistress, is so called, because it stands in the midst of the other Isles, and by its Height commands them all. It is 36 Miles in Compass, and having a dry Soil, but few Trees, abounds with Plenty of Provisions, as Flesh, Fish and Venison. The Water is good. They have no Villages of Note, but only some scattering Houses in the Country. The People are much addicted to Devotion, and especially the Women, who are very silly. There is much Hatred and Envy always among them, by reason of the Oppression they suffer from the *Turks*, and the common Poverty. They are almost all *Latins*, and have several Churches. The Cathedral stands in the Top of the Town, and is dedicated to St. *George*, and served by several Priests, who have a Bishop for their Superior, who lives on his Revenue and Tithes. The *Capuchins* are diligent in Preaching, Catechizing, and hearing Confessions, by which they do much Good.

The Isle of Scyra.

The People devout.

The Isles of Samos and Icaria.

From *Chio* he sail'd into *Ægypt*, and in his Passage being left before the Isle of *Samos*, he took a View of it. It is a very barren Country, tho' famous for having been the Native-place of *Pythagoras*, *Polycrates* and *Sibyl*. It is 80 Miles in Circuit. Over-against *Samos*, and pretty near it, is the Isle of *Nicaria*, anciently called *Icaria* from *Icarus*, the Son of *Dædalus*. It is of a long Figure, and the Land is very dry and full of Rocks, in which are the Houses of the Inhabitants, who are in all about 3000 Souls, very poor and ill clad. They are much addicted to Swimming and Fishing up Sponges and Wrecks, and the richest Men, or *Papa's* in the Isle, give their Daughters to the best Swimmer, which is tried before the Damsel and her Father. He that can tarry longest under Water wins the Maid in Marriage. They pay the Grand Seignior's Tribute in Sponges. They have Vineyards among the Rocks here and there, and they make of the Grapes a sort of White Wine, as clear as Water, which passes away by Urine as soon as it is drunk. The Wine, as also Wax and Honey, they trade with to *Chio*. The Women are Mistresses there, and as soon as the Husband is arrived from any Place, the Wife goes to the Sea side and takes the Oars, and carries them home, after which the Husband can dispose of nothing without her Leave. The Inhabitants are well shaped and strong. The Emperors of *Constantinople* banish'd Persons of Quality that had offended to this Isle.

Swimming much used.

Women rule their Husbands.

Leaving *Samos*, he came to the Isle of *Stanchio*, otherwise called *Isola Longa*, 90 Miles distant from it. It was anciently called *Cos*, is 70 Miles in Circuit, and very fruitful, especially in good Wine. On the Port by the Sea-side is a pretty good Castle, where the *Turks* keep Garrison. The Town lies behind it, where there is a prodigious Tree of that vast extent, as to cover 2000 Men easily, for the Branches being supported with many Stones and Wooden Pillars: there are several Barbers Shops, Coffee-houses, and such like Places, besides Benches to sit on under it. It was anciently famous for the Temple of *Æsculapius*, and the Births of *Hippocrates* the Prince of Physicians, and *Apelles* the Prince of Painters. The Knights of *Malta* held it, when they were Masters of *Rhodes*, and there are still many of the Monuments remaining in it. Strangers are here more regarded by the Women, than is grateful to them.

The Isle of Stanchio, or Cos.

From hence he sailed to the Castle of *Bodrou*, which lies over-against *Stanchio* at 12 Miles distance. There is a good Port, but so shut up with Dirt that great Ships can't get into it. You enter this Castle through 7 Gates, over which are several Coats of Arms, which belonged to the Knights of *Rhodes*, that commanded there, for in some of them are Crosses of *Malta*. There is above 300 of these Escocheons. Beyond the 6th Gate is a Platform, where there are 6 Cannons that play towards the Sea. The last Gate is made of Iron, and there stands a Guard of 15 or 20 Men continually. The Castle is strong, and the Walls high, both built of a sort of Stone, which great Guns cannot hurt. The Sea beats upon one side of it, which has Port-holes, with great Guns mounted, which can easily hinder Ships from approaching it. It is also very strong towards the Land, the Walls being so sound as if they were lately built. No Horse can approach it, and yet it may be easily taken, by cutting off the Water that is brought to it by an Aqueduct. The Houses in it are ruinous, and there are many Pieces of Pillars found among them. The Country about it is fruitful in Grapes, Figs, and such like Fruits.

The Castle of Bodrou.

Its Strength.

From *Bodrou* he sailed to *Rhodes*, which is 100 Miles from *Stanchio*. The Isle of *Rhodes* hath *Lycia* on the North, being parted from it by the Sea, which is 20 Miles broad, the Isle of *Cyprus* on the East, *Candy* on the West, and *Ægypt* on the South. It is 100 Miles in Circuit, lying in a temperate Climate. The Soil is fruitful, and hath several Villages in it well inhabited, besides a small City which is strong. This Island has been under the *Greeks*, *Saracens*, who lost it to the Knights Hospitallers of *Jerusalem*, in 1309, who held it 200 Years, and now is in the Hands of the *Turks*, who under *Solyman* II. took it in 1522. by Composition, and that more thro' the Treachery of *Andrea d'Amaral*, Chancellor of the Order (who being angry that he was not chosen Great Master at the last Election, inform'd the *Turks* of their Weakness, by a Letter shot to them on an Arrow) than by Force, tho' his Army consisted of 200000 Men. The Town hath 2 Harbours, of which the Great Port, being square and spacious enough, is not very safe, when the Wind blows from the E. N. E. or S. E. On the Right-Hand at the Entry of this Port is a new Tower, built by the *Turks*, in a Place where the old Tower of St. *Nicholas* stood.

The Isle of Rhodes.

How taken by the Turks.

The Town and Ports.

ſtood. It is well furniſhed with Cannon, hath a Baſtion behind, and Curtine reaching to the Walls of the Town. Over-againſt this Tower ſtands the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, but ſomewhat ruinous. This Caſtle and Tower were built in the Place where ſtood the Feet of the great *Coloſſus*, one of the 7 Wonders of the World, between the Legs of which a Ship under Sail might paſs. It repreſented the Sun, and was caſt by *Chares* the *Lyndian*. It was 70 Cubits high, ſtrided 50 Fathom, and carried a Light-Houſe in one Hand. It was overthrown by an Earthquake, and being broke to Pieces by the *Saracens*, was ſold to a *Jew*, who loaded 900 Camels with the Metal, and carried it to *Alexandria* in the Year 954. and 1461 Years after it was made. The Port of the Galleys, which is covered by the Caſtle of St. *Erme*, is a good Harbour, and able to contain many Galleys, but the Mouth of it is ſo narrow, that one Galley only can enter at a time. It looks to the E. N. E. and is every Night ſhut with a Chain. A little up-land above the Port is a Burying-place, and in it 15 or 20 Domes of Free-Stone well built, and ſupported moſt of them by 4 Arches. Theſe are the Sepulchres of the *Beys*, or other Perſons of Quality in *Rhodes*, who have been killed in the Wars. On the ſide of this Port is a Piazza with ſome Trees and a Fountain in it, and at the Bottom of it the Arſenal, where the Galleys and Saiques are built. The Town is ſmall, but ſtrong, having high and well built Walls, planted with Faulcons on the Top, and below there are Port-holes for great Cannon. It hath 3 Gates, one to the Sea, where Corn is ſold, and 2 to the Land-ſide. Over the Water-Gate is ſet up the Dragon's Head, which is 33 Foot long, waſted all the Country round, and was ſlain by *Deodate de Gozon*, one of the Knights of St. *John*. The Streets of the Town are pretty broad, all paved with little Stones, and for the moſt part covered with Pent-houſes on each ſide. There are ſeveral fair Buildings in it. St. *John*'s Church is ſtill ſtanding, but is turned into a Moſque. Over the great Gate in a Nich, which hath a round Cover, are the Figures of our Saviour and the Bleſſed Virgin, and St. *John* holding the Croſs, cut in *Baſſe-Reliefe*. No Chriſtian is now ſuffered to go into it. The Street of the Knights lay juſt as you come out of the Church, as the Arms upon the Houſes ſhew; but now *Rhodes* is inhabited only by *Turks* and *Jews*, for tho' the *Chriſtians* are permitted to keep Shops in Town in the Day-time, yet in the Night they muſt retire to the Villages in the Country about it. *Lindo*, the Country of *Chares*, who made the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, is a little Rock at a Point of the Iſle of *Rhodes*, 60 Miles from the Town. It has a ſmall Town on it, with a very good Fort.

The *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*.

Du Mont makes it probable, that the Story of the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes* is a Fable, *p.* 156 to 159.

The Burying-places of the *Beys*.

The Gates.

Du Mont alſo calls this Story to be falſe.

St. John's Church.

The Inhabitants.

From *Rhodes* he ſailed to *Ægypt*; but croſs Winds bringing the Ship to *Cyprus*, he put in there. *Cyprus* is an Iſland as big as *Rhodes*. The Air is ſo ſweet, clear and temperate, that the Weather is perpetually fair. It produces great abundance of Sugar, Cotton, and delicious Wines. 'Tis the beſt Country in the World for Hunting, and Proviſions are ſo cheap, that the greateſt Epicure in the World can't ſpend 40 Piaſtres a Year in Eating and Drinking. The Town is neither neat nor large; inhabited by *Turks* and *Chriſtians*, as all other Places under the G. Seignior's Dominions are. Here he ſaw a Man that had 4 Arms, 2 on each ſide, but only the under ones were uſeful.

The ſtate of *Cyprus* when.

As ſoon as the Wind favour'd, he left this Iſle, and came to an Anchor in the Port of *Alexandria*, *Monday* the 1ſt of *Jan.* 1657. ſtaying ſome time there, he ſaw all Things remarkable in that City, and gives us this Account. *Alexandria*, called by the *Turks*, *Skeuderia*, which was heretofore a lovely, rich and famous Place, is at preſent ſo ruined, that little elſe is to be ſeen in it but ſhatter'd Houſes, and heaps of Stones and Rubbiſh. It is inhabited, as all the reſt of *Ægypt*, by *Turks*, *Moors*, *Arabs*, *Greeks* and *Jews*. The *Arabs* are generally Free-booters, infeſting the Road, and rifling the Paſſengers without Mercy; yet ſome there are that are more civil, and live in Cities; but all pretend to be Magicians. They have ſeveral Ways of Divination: Some pretend to Inſpiration, others to Viſions, and others divine by throwing Beans in a Bag, and then telling of them. The moſt Skilful are the Viſionary Tribe; and our Merchants have had ſuch Proofs of their Skill, as may ſeem wonderful. The *Arabians* were formerly very Learned in Medicines, and our *European* Surgeons have found very uſeful Secrets in their Books; but now they apply themſelves wholly to Divination, which they account the moſt ſublime Science. They have no Religion, and Robbery is their only Trade, but they kill none but *Turks*, and them only, when they are at War with the G. Seignior. They are divided into 2 Tribes, who are commanded by their particular Captains, who are ſubject to a Prince called the *Sheick* of *Kebir*. They encamp in the Deſarts, and when the Graſs is conſumed in one Place, remove to another. They are lean and black, and their Aſpect is grim and terrible; their Cloathing is the Skins of Beaſts, and they feed on Milk, Butter, Honey, and a little Camels Fleſh, which they uſe moſt in their Expeditions, and laying it under them on their Horſes Backs, till it grows hot and tender, ſo eat it. They have the beſt Horſes in the World, which tho' they always ride a Gallop, yet will never tire from Morning to Night. They are very ſwift, and they feed them as they do themſelves. They value a good Horſe above all Things, and are careful to keep up a good Breed, and therefore keep the Pedigree of their Horſes in Writing. The G. Seignior pays a kind of Tribute to them, which if he does not pay without Delay, they burn and pillage his Countries. The *Turks* of *Ægypt* are ſo ſuperſtitious, that if in the Morning they meet a *Chriſtian* firſt, they go home and waſh themſelves, and will not come out all Day, leſt ſome Misfortune befal them. They hate all Chriſtians, and caſt a Thouſand Indignities on the *Franks*, which are almoſt intolerable. The Men are black, but the Women are not in the leaſt tann'd, becauſe they are careful to keep themſelves from the Reach of the Sun. One Thing is ſaid of them, That they have Schools where the Maids learn to give and receive the Pleaſures of Love with more than ordinary Delight, ſome Women acting the Part of Men, to make their Schollars exerciſe the moſt laſcivious Poſtures. *Du Mont*.

The *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Venetians*, who come there for Trade, and are generally Factors, are lodged in ſeveral *Fondicks*, or Inns, each of them by themſelves, for which they pay no Rent, but the G. Seignior allows Money Yearly to keep them in Repair. Theſe *Fondicks* are lock'd up every Night, and the Keys carried to the *Aga* of the Caſtle, who ſends them again every Morning, and ſo they are alſo on every *Friday* during the Noon-Prayer, becauſe they have a Propheſie, that the *Franks* ſhall become Maſters of them on a *Friday*, in the time of the Noon-Prayers.

Inns.

Hardly any thing of the ancient *Alexandria* is now ſtanding, but the Walls, and ſome Buildings about the *French Fondick*, which is almoſt ruined; all the reſt is built by the *Turks*, and the Houſes are low, and ill contriv'd. There are 3 Ports belonging to it. 1. The Old Harbour, which is pretty large, but the Entry into it being difficult, few Veſſels put into it. It hath 2 Caſtles on each ſide of it to defend it, and both well keept. The other 2 Ports are higher up, and are parted one from another by a little Iſland, anciently called, *The Pharos*, which is join'd to the Land by a Stone-Bridge of ſeveral Arches. This Iſle runs a great way in *Meo*, and has a great Tower in the midſt of it, called *Farillon*, where the G. Seignior keeps his Powder, Artillery, and a Garriſon of 300 Soldiers, and tho' it be a Building neat enough, yet 'tis not comparable to the *Pharos*, which was anciently one of the Wonders of the World, that ſtood in the ſame Place. It is commanded by a *Mutefericca*, but it has no Water in it, but what is brought to it on Camels from the *Nile*. The firſt of theſe 2 Ports divided by the *Pharos* is the Harbour of the Galleys, ſo called, becauſe having no Depth of Water, it ſerves only for Galleys and ſmall Veſſels. 2. The Great Port, or New Harbour, the Mouth of which is defended by the *Farillon* on the one ſide, and a little Caſtle on the other, which are ſufficient to guard it, but lying open to N. E. and N. Winds, it is not ſo ſafe as the former.

Old Harbour.

Pharos.

Farillon.

The Water.

The Great Port.

The Cuſtom Houſe of *Alexandria* is upon the ſide of this Port, and is farm'd out to a *Turk*, who is therefore called *Multezin*, or the Farmer, who pays the G. Seignior for it 300 Purſes a Year, which make 227272 Piaſtres and 80 Maidens; but he diſcharges the Office by a *Jew*, called *Maalem*, to whom he gives a Purſe for his Pains. The *Jew* employs many other *Jews* under him, and ſo the Cuſtom-Houſe is never open on *Saturdays*, which is the *Jews* Sabboth, and yet no Veſſel muſt unload, unleſs the Cuſtom-Houſe be open. The Officers are exact in ſearching all Perſons that arrive in their Port for Silver and Gold, becauſe they

The Cuſtom Houſe.

pay

pay a conſiderable Import, called the Gold Duty. There is another Cuſtom-Houſe, called, *The Old Cuſtom-Houſe*, near the Water-Gate. It is now 80 Paces from the Sea, tho' heretofore the Water waſh'd the Walls of it. Some *Janizaries* ſtand ſtill at the Door of it, and exact ſomething of all Goods, that they may not loſe their Rights.

Two little Mounts. There are alſo 2 little Mounts made of Ruines, on the Top of one of which is a ſquare Tower, where a Man always ſtands Centinel, and puts out a Flag as ſoon as he ſees any Ship, and every Veſſel pays ſomething to this Guard.

The Gover. *Alexandria* depends on the *Beglerbeg*, or *Baſha* of *Ægypt*, who has his Reſidence at *Cairo*, but has no *Aga* for his Deputy there. There is alſo a Great *Cadi*, or *Moullah*, who has many other *Cadies* under him, and 2 *Sous Baſha's*, one for the Sea, and the other for the Town. The *Aga's* of the Caſtles alſo are under the *Baſha* of *Ægypt*, who puts them in or out as he pleaſeth.

The Walls. The Walls of the Town, tho' much ruin'd, yet ſhew much Magnificence. They have good falſe Brays, and are flank'd with great ſquare Towers, at 200 Paces Diſtance one from another, and a little one between, and under them Caſemates, which ſerve for Galleries and Walks. The Towers, which are all built after a different Model have each of them a large Hall, and ſeveral Chambers, and are large enough to hold 200 Men apiece, and in them are ſeveral Ciſterns, or Wells. The Walls are 20 Foot thick throughout, and every where have Port-holes in them. There are 6 Gates, but 3 of them are ſhut up. About 300 Paces from the Town is a fine Piece of Antiquity, called *Pompey's* Pillar. It ſtands on a riſing Ground and Pedeſtal 7 or 8 Foot high, which reſts upon a ſquare Baſis of big Stones, about 20 Foot broad, and 2 Foot high. The Body of the Pillar is one entire Piece of Gamet, 18 Canes or 90 Foot high, and 6 Fathoms or 38 Foot round, with a lovely Capital on the top. It is ſaid, that *Cæſar* erected this Pillar in Memory of the Victory obtain'd over *Pompey*, and 'tis thought, that it muſt be caſt or made of a certain Cement, compoſed of Sand and calcined Stone, upon the Place, becauſe 'tis almoſt impoſſible to carry or erect ſuch an high Bulk. At ſome Paces Diſtance was *Cæſar's* Palace, but all ruin'd, except ſome Pillars of Porphyry, and ſpotted green Marble, and the Frontiſpiece, which are lovely Pieces. About 80 Paces from this Pillar there is a *Khalis*, or Canal of the *Nile*, dug by the ancient *Ægyptians*, to bring Water from the River into *Alexandria*, which is underneath one entire Ciſtern, and ſupplies every Houſe with Water all the Year, which they fetch up by *Pouſeragues*, or Wheels, into the private Ciſterns. They fill their great Ciſtern in *Auguſt* and *September*, but the Water is unwholſome for their Drink till ſome Months after. Beſides this Inconvenience, the Air of *Alexandria* is ſo bad, during the Months of *July*, *Auguſt*, *September* and *October*, that many who lie upon the Ground at that time fall into Quartane Agues, which hold them ſeveral Years, but they that lodge in the Ships, eſcape the ill Effects of it, and the Heat is ſo violent, that it makes all the Inhabitants tawny. On the ſides of the *Khalis* are Gardens full of Lemmon and Orange-Trees, *Gaſſian* or *Corrob* Trees, and the like, moſt of them bearing Fruits fit only for Sauces and Conſerves. The Fields about *Alexandria* are full of Palm-Trees and Caper-Shrubs. By the Gate of *Roſſetto* are many lovely Pillars of *Porphyrian* Marble. In the Church of St. *Catherine* is a Stone, on which, 'tis ſaid, that holy Virgin's Head was cut off, which is hollow, and ſtain'd within with Blood. In the Church of St. *Mark*, held by the *Cophti*, is a Pulpit, wherein St. *Mark* uſed to preach, and a Picture of St. *Michael*, ſaid to be drawn by St. *Luke*. St. *Mark* was the firſt Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and ſuffered Martyrdom in the Year 64. His Body was kept in this Church, till the *Venetian* Merchants carried it to *Venice*. In the Way from *Roſſetto* are many fair *Porphyrian* Pillars, and 2 lovely Obelisks of Garnet, or, The Baick-Stone, with Hieroglyphick Figures on them, as on thoſe at *Rome*. Near theſe Pillars is the Palace of *Cleopatra*, which is utterly defaced, yet the Ruines prove it to have been a noble Structure. Among the Ruines of the Town are ſome very curious Stones found, like little Medals, and are Agats, Garnets, Emeralds, and the like, engraved with an Head, or Images, which ſerv'd of old for *Taliſmans*, or Charms, and that ſo curiouſly, that ſuch cannot be made now-a-days, and tho' ſome of them are ſo ſmall, that one has much ado to finger them, yet they are graven to Perfection, which ſhew'd the Excellency of the Artiſt. About 1000 Paces from the Gate *Del-Pepe*, are Grotto's cut in a Rock, wherein are Sepulchres 4 Story high, and in them dead Mens Bones as freſh and hard, as if they had died the Day before; but ſuch as have been caſt out of the Grotto, and lie in the Air, are rotten, and will break like dead Elder, tho' they are moiſt.

Grotto's and Sepulchres.

From *Alexandria* he went to *Roſſetto*, which is 60 Miles from it. The Way is Sandy, but defended by the Caſtle of *Bouquier*, and you croſs a Lake in a Ferry-Boat, which is called *Madie*, near it. *Roſſetto*, anciently called *Canopus*, lies upon a Branch of the *Nile*, which falls into the Sea 5 Miles below the Town, next to *Cairo*. It is reckon'd one of the neateſt Towns in *Ægypt*, not for its lovely Piazza's only, but the fair *Hans* it contains, and yet they are daily building more, becauſe 'tis a Town of great Traffick, and very pleaſant, being encompaſſed with lovely Gardens. The Houſes are high, Victuals plentiful, eſpecially Water-Fowls; but yet it labours with this Inconvenience, that in the Months of *July* and *Auguſt* the Sea ſo mixes with the *Nile*, that they have no Water to drink, but what they catch in their Ciſterns. Saiques can come up to the Town, but no great Ships, yet they maintain a great Trade to the *Archipelago*. It is carefully kept by a *Sous-Caſha* from the Diſorders that may happen, and 60 Men go up and down the Town continually in the Night to catch the *Arabs*, who ſwim over the *Nile* to rob it.

Roſſetto or *Canopus* deſcribed. Hans. Houſes. Trade.

From hence he departed to *Cairo*. He took a Saique, and ſailing up the *Nile*, came to an Anchor at *Boulac*, which is the Port of that Town, and has many Gardens and Country-Houſes about it. It is about as big as the *Hague* in *Holland*. Here Travellers pay a Piaſtre to ſome *Jews*, according to Cuſtom, and uſually take Aſſes to ride to *Cairo*, which is about half a Lg. from it. The Country all along the ſides of the *Nile* is exellently good, ſo that *Ægypt* may be ſaid to be an Earthly Paradiſee, but inhabited by Devils, the Inhabitants being vicious Robbers, and ſo cruel, as to kill a Man for a Penny.

Boulac.

Cairo, the Capital and Metropolitan City of *Ægypt*, before it fell under the *Turkiſh* Dominion, was in the latter Times govern'd by *Mamalukes*, who were *Circaſſian* Slaves, bought by the Merchants, and being train'd up in all Military Exerciſes, were afterwards raiſed according to their Merit (the Cowards and Unhandy being left behind) and the braveſt of them were made Sultans; and as none was received to be a *Mamaluke*, who was not a Chriſtian by Extraction, ſo none could be Sultans that were not *Mamalukes*. Theſe Men were driven out of *Ægypt* by Sultan *Selim*, who, conquering that Country, cauſed *Thomambey* to be hang'd at one of the Gates of *Cairo*, called *Babzuaila*, and cut off all the *Mamalukes* in the Year 1517. from which time the *Turks* have been Maſters of it. The City ſtands ill, lying at the Foot of an Hill, on which the Caſtle is built, and which intercepts the Wind and Air ſo, that it makes it ſtifling hot, and ſubject to many Diſeaſes, and tho' it has no Water for the greateſt part of the Year, but what is brought from *Boulac* in Borachio's upon Camels, or from their ſtinking Ciſterns and Pools for Nearneſs, yet it is full of People. It lies in the Form of a Creſcent, but is narrow, and is little more than 3 *French* Lgs. in Compaſs. It is not ſo big as *Paris*, but more populous, for tho' the Women and Children, according to the *Turkiſh* Cuſtom, never ſtir out, yet the Streets are always full of People, eſpecially on the Market-Days, when 'tis hard to crowd thro' them; and when the Plague ſweeps away 200000 it is not perceived. The Inhabitants, as almoſt in all Parts of *Ægypt*, conſiſt of *Turks*, *Moors*, which are very black, *Jews* and *Chriſtians*. There are very few *Europeans*, and thoſe are *French*, who have a *COSS*. The *Cophti*, who are properly the Chriſtians of *Ægypt*, have 2 Churches, the one dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, which ſtands in the *Haver Zueile-ſtreet*, and the other to St. *Barbus*, and is in the *Greek-ſtreet*. They had many more Churches and Monaſteries anciently in *Cairo*, and a Biſhop, but they are demoliſh'd.

Cairo deſcribed. The *Mamalukes* deſtroyed. Bad Air and Water.

It is encompaſſed round with very fair and thick Walls, built of good Stone, which is yet ſo white, that they would be taken for new, did not the Cracks prove them ancient, and having handſome Battlements at leſs than 100 Paces Diſtance, lovely Towers able to contain many People, and tho' they were built

Walls.

high, yet in many Places the Ruines cover them. It has 7 Gates, and in the Circumference of the Ramparts 8 large Moſques, about which are very ſtately Houſes. In many Places are great Church-yards full of Sepulchres, adorned with fair Stones, that yield a pleaſant Proſpect, and would ſerve for building a Town. There are 23000 Precincts in *Cairo*, which have in each of them ſeveral Streets, and at leaſt one Moſque, and in ſome of them more; but as all the Streets are ſhort and narrow, except thoſe of the *Bazar* and *Khalis*, ſo a good many of the Moſques are little Holes, or Chappels, not 10 Paces ſquare, but ſome of them are very fair and magnificent Buildings, adorn'd with lovely Frontiſpieces and Gates, and very high Minerets, of which the greateſt is *Dgemiel Azem*. This is looked upon at preſent as the Cathedral, or Mother-Church, and the 4 *Mufti's*, or *Mahometan* Prieſts, have their Reſidence there. It is had in ſo great Reverence, that it ſerves as an *Aſylum*, or Sanctuary for Criminals, and it maintains 800 *Mahometans* out of its Revenue.

The Streets and Moſques

The Houſes. The Houſes of *Cairo* are built of Stone, ſeveral Stories high, with flat and terraſs Roofs, where they take the Air when the Sun is down, and ſome lie upon them all the Summer. The Inſides of them, eſpecially the Houſes of Perſons of Quality, are nothing but Gold and Azure, tho' they make no Shew without: Their Halls have generally a ſpacious Cupulo, or Lanthorn, to let in the freſh Air.

The Caſtle. The Caſtle of *Cairo* is one of the fineſt Things in *Egypt*: It ſtands upon the Hill without the Town. It is founded on a Rock, and encompaſſed with very high and thick Walls, flank'd with ſtrong Towers, and is 2 Miles round. The Aſcent up to it is by a Pair of Stairs cut out of the Rock, ſo eaſie to mount, that Horſes and Camels may go up them with their Loads. Before the Caſtle is a large Square, called the *Romeſle*, by which ſtands the Moſque, called *Sultan Haſan*, from the Builder of it in the Time of the *Mamalukes*. It is all of Free-Stone, extraordinarily well built, and prodigiouſly high. *Thomambey*, the laſt King of the *Mamalukes*, fled to this Moſque, leaving the Caſtle to Sultan *Selim*, who fired ſeveral Guns at it, and the Holes of the Bullets are ſtill ſeen. The greateſt part of the Caſtle is ruined, yet ſeveral Vaules and Buildings are ſtill remaining, but the moſt curious of them is *Joſeph*'s Well, which is certainly a Wonder. This Pit is divided into 2 Stories. The firſt is almoſt ſquare, and the Deſcent hardly to be perceived, for the Convenience of the Oxen, who go down to labour, and from thence you go down 220 Stairs to the Bottom of the firſt Story. The 2d is narrower than the former, but deeper, and both are cut out of the hard Rock with Stairs, ſo that one may go down to the Bottom. Water is drawn out of the Bottom of them by Wheels, hung round with Buckets, turn'd with Oxen, and proceeds from a Spring, which is the only one in *Ægypt*. *Joſeph*'s Hall is to be ſeen in the Caſtle, but much ruin'd, yet it hath 30 great lovely Pillars of the Baick-Stone, and a good deal of Gold and Azure on the Ceiling ſtill to be ſeen. Near it is the Hall of *Joſeph*'s Steward, which is more curious than his Maſter's, but the 10 or 12 Pillars that remain are like his. It is to be obſerv'd, that all the fine ancient Things in *Ægypt* are ſtill attributed to *Joſeph*, and the ugly to *Pharaoh*. In the Caſtle alſo is an old Hall, well built and gilt, and painted in the Ceiling with *Moſaick* Work, where the Veſt of *Mahomet*, that is yearly ſent to *Meccha*, is embroidered. There you have many high Terraſſes, from whence you may ſee all the City of New and Old *Cairo*, *Boulac*, and a great way into the Deſarts. *Joſeph*'s Dungeon, where, 'tis ſaid, he was caſt when he interpreted the King's Butler and Baker's Dreams, ſtill remains. It is a naſty Place, and the Priſoners, who are uſually *Chriſtians* or *Jews*, are uſed cruelly, being put in the Stocks, and chain'd to the Wall. In Truth 'tis an Hell upon Earth. An *Aga* of the *Janizaries* lives in it, and commands it. The *Baſha's* Apartment and *Seraglio*, which is very near, joins to the Caſtle, as the *Kiaya's* does alſo, from both which you may ſee the Old and New *Cairo*, *Boulac*, and the Deſarts.

Sultan Haſan's Moſque.

Joſeph's Well.

Joſeph's Hall.

Joſeph's Dungeon.

The Hall of the *Divan*. The Hall of the Great *Divan* is in the *Baſha's* Apartment, but the Ceiling is too low for the Length. Againſt the Wall of this Hall hangs 10 Bucklers, a Finger's Breadth thick, pierced thro' with one Spear, thrown by Sultan *Amurath*, and kept as a Proof of his Strength. In this Apartment alſo is a large Court, called *Cara Meidan*, at the End of which are the *Baſha's* Stables, to which the Water of the *Nile* is convey'd from *Boulac* by an Aqueduct. This Caſtle may paſs for a large Town, and is one of the fineſt in World for its Strength, ſtately Buildings, and a good Proſpect and Air, and appears a Work worthy the Labour of the *Pharaoh's* and *Ptolomy's*, who built it. The Fountain of Lovers is in the City. It is a great Oval Trough or Baſon, made of one entire Piece of black Marble, 6 Foot long, and 3 Foot high, and all round it are Figures of Men and Hieroglyphicks rarely well cut: The People ſay, that Sacrifices were offered of old to it. Not far from thence is the *Calaat el Kabb* i. e. The Caſtle of Turpitude, which ſeems to have been formerly a large and neat Palace, but now 'tis fallen to Decay, and there remains nothing obſervable, but ſeveral large Pillars. Sultan *Selim* when he became Maſter of *Cairo* is ſaid to have lodg'd in it. By it is the Garden of Lovers, and they ſay, that 'twas with the Urine of this Gardiner's Wife that *Seſoſtris* waſh'd his Eyes to recover his Sight, according to the Direction of the Oracle, when his own Wife's and many others fail'd, and therefore he married her, and put them to Death.

The Fountain of Lovers.

The Gardiner's Trouble.

There are many lovely Moſques and ſtately Palaces in *Cairo*. The *Beys* Houſes have brave Apartments, large Halls, paved with Marble, and adorn'd with Water-Works and Ceilings ſet off with Gold and Azure, but the Frotiſpieces are ugly. Their Locks and Keys are all of Wood, and may be eaſily open'd without a Key. The *Bazar-ſtreet* is very long and broad, and on *Thurſdays* and *Mondays*, the Market-Days, are mightily throng'd. Here are all ſorts of Goods to be ſold. In the *Han Kalil*, or Little *Han*, which is a ſhort broad Street at the End of the *Bazar*, are Shops full of rich Goods; and in the Great *Han*, which has a large Piazza and high Buildings, are white Slaves of all Sexes and Ages ſold, and in another *Han* near it black ones of all ſorts.

The Markets, &c.

The Hoſpital and Moſque of mad People is nigh the Han *Kalil*. They are led in Chains to the Moſque at Prayer-time. Sick People are alſo well entertained in it, and well look'd after.

The Hoſpital of mad People and Sick.

The Turky-work Carpets made at *Cairo*, and that by the Help of little Boys, who are marvellouſly dexterous at that Work, is a great Curiority to ſee, and the Hatching of Chickens in Ovens, made ſo temperately warm, as to imitate the natural Heat of the Hen, is a Wonder, and yet is done for 4 Months together at *Cairo*, and ſome Hundred Thouſands of Chickens are ſo hatch'd, and ſold commonly by the Buſhel to any one that will buy them. They put about 8000 Eggs into an Oven, and in 22 Days the Chickens are produced. The Great Duke of *Florence* ſent for one of the Men that drove this Trade in *Ægypt* into his Country, and he did the ſame there, and it may be done by the ſame Art in any Place.

When the *Hazna*, or G. Seignior's Revenue, which amounts to 600000 *Venetian* Chequins, or 1500000 Piaſtres, is brought down from the Caſtle of *Cairo* in *June*, it is carried under the Guard of a *Sangiack-Bey*, with a mighty Train, *viz.* all his Servants well mounted, the *Seraf-Baſha*, and his Son, each with a *Caftan* given them by the *Baſha*, 8 Clerks, and other Officers of the Cuſtom-Houſe, all the *Chiaux's* with their great Turbants, then more of the *Sangiack's* Servants, and behind them 30 Mules loaden with the Treaſure, attended with ſeveral *Janizaries* on Foot, and above 2000 more following them 2 by 2, having Muskets on their Shoulders, and Sabres by their Sides; and laſt of all the *Sangiack-Bey*, and ſo they go thro' the *Bab Naſra*, or Gate of Victory, to *Conſtantinople* in admirable Order, without the leaſt Noiſe, all well arm'd, which is a pleaſant Sight.

The Caſtle in carrying the Grand Seignior's Treaſure.

Other Things remarkable in *Cairo* are, 1. The great Number of blind People, and ſuch as have ſore Eyes, which amount to one Quarter of the City at leaſt. Infants from the Womb are afflicted with them. The Natural and Philoſophical Reaſon which the Natives give for it is this, That the ſubtle Particles of the Lime, with which the Houſes are built, being carried about by the Wind in a ſmall Powder, ſtick ſo cloſe to the Eyes, that they not only cauſed Pain, but inſenſibly mixing with the Blood, made the Diſtemper Hereditary to Infants; and, indeed, Experience will ſoon convince any Man of the Truth of it, who continues any conſiderable time in the Streets when the Wind blows, for they will find their Eyes very ſore upon it.

Many People in *Cairo*.

Their *Devoto's*, or Saints.

2. A sort of *Devoto's*, who by the *Ægyptians* are looked upon as Saints. They are sometimes all naked, or have only a Coverlet cast loosely round their Bodies. They look upon Strangers as Infidels, with a scornful angry Look. The *Ægyptians* have so great a Veneration for these holy Men, that they press in Throngs to kiss the Robes that is round about them.

Women with Nose-Rings.

3. Women, who wear as an Ornament a large Ring run thro' their Nostrils, as Women among us wear them in their Ears, but not of Gold, as our Womens are, but of Brass, or some other base Metal.

The *Jews* and *Arabians* Habits.

4. The Habits of the *Arabians* and *Jews*. The *Arabians* wear a Vail of black Silk, strip'd with Gold Thread, about their Heads, and the End hangs down upon their Breasts. It is commonly set off with Tufts of the same. The Women wear a sort of Sugar-Loaf Hats, about which they wind a Piece of black or brown Stuff, strip'd with Gold and Silver. Their other Habit is like the *Turks*, save that their Vest is button'd before with a Row of great and small Buttons mix'd. The *Jews* Turbant is mix'd with blue Stripes, and their Habit is all of a Velvet Colour, to distinguish them from the *Turks*, and their Women wear on their Heads a very long black Cap, about which they wind a white or brown Handkerchief, strip'd with Gold and Silver.

The antick Tricks of Apes.

5. The antick Tricks of Apes, which are met commonly in the Streets of *Cairo*. They are train'd up by the *Moors* to all sorts of Merriments to divert the Caravans, and will shew many pleasant Tricks. The *Moors* also bring Parrots.

The *Turks Carnaval*.

6. The *Turks Carnaval*, which is on *July* 12, and begins their *Ramadan*. It is celebrated in the Night, and they call it, *The Night of Power*, because they believe that the *Alcoran* descended from Heaven that Night. The Manner of celebrating it is thus: So soon as the Night Lamps are lighted up in all the Streets, and more especially in the *Bazar*, they hang up Iron-Hoops and Baskets upon Ropes full of Candles, because the Procession is to pass thro' it. The Minerets also of the Mosques are all deck'd with Lamps. About Evening shut all the *Santo's*, *Chiaux*, and such as are concerned in the Cavalcade, meet at the *Cadelesquer's* House, who telling them, That the Moon hath been seen, and that the *Ramadan* begins that Night, the Solemnity commences within an Hour or 2. First go a great many *Santo's* on Foot, arm'd with Clubs, and Torches in their Hands, accompanied with many People, who carrying Links, march up and down dancing, singing, roaring and making a Noise. In the midst of them rides a *Scheikh* of great Reputation upon a Mule, and as he passes the People shout and make great Acclamations. After him come several Men mounted on Camels, playing on Timbrels, Drums, and other Instruments, which make a sad Noise. Then follow Men in Masquerade, who carry Links, Hoops full of Fiery Launces, and discharge many Squibs and Serpents. After them come the Officers of the *Bey*, with their *Harquebusses*, and the *Chiaux*, all on Horse-back. Next go several *Janizaries*, with their Muskets and Cimiters, and after them the *Sous-Basha*, *Muhtesib*, and many publick Magistrates well attended by *Janizaries* and Link-Men, and the whole is concluded by a great many *Santo's*, who sing some joyful Songs for the Coming of the *Ramadan*. The Shops and Coffee-Houses are kept open, and full of Lamps, and tho' the whole is performed by a Company of Rogues got together, yet 'tis a pleasant Sight.

The Caravan to *Meccha*.

7. The Caravan, which goes every Year to *Meccha* and *Medina*, which brings such a mighty Concourse of People to *Cairo*, from all Parts, that the Streets are hardly passable. When the Time is come, that the Caravan sets out for *Meccha*, the Presents are brought in great Pomp from the Castle, where they are wrought in the old Hall, thro' the City to the House of the *Emir-Adge*, i. e. the Captain of the Caravan of the Pilgrims. The Presents are Ornaments for the adorning the *Kiabe*, or Mosque of *Meccha*, and are made up of 4 long Pieces of Crimson Velvet, embroidered all over with *Arabick* Letters of Gold, as long, broad, and thick as one's Finger; a large and long Door-piece of Velvet embroidered in the same Manner; a great Pavilion of Crimson all embroidered with Golden Letters, carried on a Camel; and a lesser Pavilion carried by a Man; 8 Pieces of Searge, and a Man's Burden of Ropes. All these Things were carried by the Families of the *Beys*, *Chiaux's*, *Azapes* and *Janizaries*, the *Emir-Adge* having a *Caftan* given him by the *Basha*, as had the other *Beys* and Officers, who were to attend them. The Presents are called by the *Franks*, *Mahomet's* Vest, and the Procession is attended with Banners, Santo's, Drums and Timbrels. The People press and croud mightily to touch the Presents, which they do with much Respect and Devotion, and those that can't come near, undo their Turban to throw one End upon them, for if they touch them with any thing they can kiss, they are satisfied. This Solemnity was celebrated, *July* 21. 1657. Two Days after the *Emir-Adge* went out of the Town, and encamped abroad to prepare for his Journey to *Meccha*. He had in his Cavalcade, which was much like the former, 6 Field-pieces for his Expedition, several Camels and Horses laden with his Provisions, and Servants, with their Children. These marched first, and after them the *Beys*, *Emir-Adge* and *Santo's*, clad in divers Fashions, and making many odd Mouths and Faces. At length comes the blessed Camel, bearing the Pavilion, wherein all the Presents are laid, and another following empty, to relieve him when he is weary. This Caravan was very numerous, many *Ægyptians* and *Turks* from *Greece*, coming to *Cairo* to perform this Journey. 'Tis said, it consisted of 100000 Persons, and 8000 Camels, 4 *Beys*, 1 *Janizar-Agasi*, 1 *Bistangi-Basha*, and several other mighty Lords. There are 3 other Caravans that yearly travel to *Meccha*, *viz.* That of *Damascus* from the *Syrians*; that of *Magrebins*, comprehending all such as go from *Barbary*, *Fez* and *Morocco*, who meet at *Cairo*, but go a Day after the Caravan of *Cairo*; and that of *Persia*, to which the *Indians* and the Great *Mogul's* Subjects join themselves. It takes up about 6 Weeks, or 45 Days to bring the Caravan to *Meccha*, and they are forced generally to travel by Night to avoid the Heat. The Stages, which are about 40, are usually at Places where there is plenty of Water to refresh the Beasts.

Meccha described.

Meccha is had in so great Veneration by all the *Mussulmans*, or *Mahometans*, not only because *Mahomet* was born there, but for his Temple, called *Kiaabe*, *i. e.* The House of God, which stands there, that they think none worthy to come there but themselves, and therefore they suffer none but themselves to come near it within some Days Journey, and if a Christian should be apprehended within the Compass which they call the Holy Land, he would be burned without Mercy. *Meccha* is an ancient Town, situated among the Mountains of *Arabia*, a Day's Journey from the *Red-Sea*, and built all of Stone. The *Kiaabe* is in the middle of the Town, and is surrounded with a Wall to keep People from approaching it, there being a void Space between the Temple and the Wall. It is about 15 Foot in Length, 12 in Breadth, and 5 Fathom high. The Threshold of the Door is as high above Ground as a Man can reach, and the Floor is even with it. The Door is a Fathom and half high, and a Fathom wide, of beaten Silver, and opens with 2 Leaves. Men go up to it by a Ladder. The House has a flat Roof, covered with a Dome, supported by Three Pillars of Aloes-Wood, as big as a Man's Body, and 3 Fathom and half long, of one entire Piece. It is hung with red and white Stuff, and by the Door is the black Stone, called *Hidgiar Asuad*, which is had in so great Veneration. There is a Court about the House, called by the *Turks*, *Haram*, encompassed with Walls, with 3 Rows of Pillars in the Inside. The 4 Sects of *Mahometanism*, called *Hanifi*, *Chafii*, *Maliki* and *Hambeli*, have each their Places of Prayers, in which they always turn their Faces to the Temple. The House is girt about with 2 Belts of Gold, one below and another above, and has a Spout of Gold to carry off the Rain-Water. In it is a Fountain of pretty good Water, and at the Door lies a black Stone, as big as a Man's Head, which, they say, came from Heaven, and was at first white, but thro' the Sins of Men it became black. He that kisseth at the time when they give one another the *Salam*, after the Prayer of *Kouschlouk* on *Friday*, that falls within the 3 Days they sojourn there, is held to be a Saint, and every one strives to kiss his Feet, so that he is frequently stifled upon the Spot. They never go into this sacred Place but 4 times a Year, and one of them is in the *Ramadan*, when they wash it with Rose-Water; but a Person of Quality for 100 Chequins may go into it at any time. This House is covered all round on the Outside with Stuffs, which the G. Seignior and other *Mahometan* Princes offer to it yearly, and the old ones belong to the

G. Seignior, when the Little *Biram* falls on a *Friday*, who gives Pieces of them to new Moſques; but on other Years the *Scheriff* of *Meccha* takes off the Gold, and cutting them in Pieces, ſells them for Relicts at the Rate of ſeveral Chequins. He has other Devices to ſqueeze Money out of the Pilgrims, out of ſome religious Pretences. When the Pilgrims are met at *Meccha*, there is a great Fair kept for all ſorts of Commodities brought from the *Indies*. The Caves in the Mountains are the Shops of the Merchants. The Reaſons of this Pilgrimage are divers; ſome go out of Devotion and Obedience to the Law; others to trade, and ſell or buy Commodities; others to atone for ſome great Crime, for if a Man be guilty of never ſo great Crimes, if he can eſcape and go this Journey, he is reckoned an honeſt Man. All perform it with a great deal of ſeeming Devotion, ſinging ſome Verſes of the *Alcoran*, and beſtowing ſome Charity all the Way. Two Days before they arrive at *Meccha*, they ſtrip themſelves at *Rabacke*, and ſo remain ſtark naked 8 Days, all but their Privities and Necks, which are covered with Napkins, and wear Sandals, that they may not touch ſo holy Ground. In this time they may not be ſhaven, buy nor ſell any thing, kill any thing, quarrel with a Servant, or ſpeak an unſeemly Word: If any offend in theſe Things, they muſt give conſiderable Alms. When the 8 Days are over, ſick Perſons do not ſtrip, but only give Alms. When they come to *Meccha*, they ſtay but 3 Days there, and in that time viſit the Holy Places. On one of them every one goes round the *Kiaabe*, ſaying certain Prayers. An *Iman* goes before them to ſhew them what to ſay and do. Firſt they walk ſoftly, muttering their Prayers, then they run, skip and ſhrug their Shoulders ſeveral ways, and then fall to their gentle Pace again, and from that go again to their Running. After 3 Days they go to *Minnet* upon the Little *Biram*, and every one ſacrifices Sheep, according to their Abilities, giving a good part of them to the Poor, and that Day they put on their Cloaths, ſhave themſelves, and appear as they were before the 8 Days. Then they go to Mount *Arafat*, to throw Stones at the Devil, who tempted *Abraham*, when he went to ſacrifice his Son *Iſmael* (for they will not allow that *Iſaac* was the Perſon to be ſacrificed.) Here a *Skeikh* preaches to the whole Multitude from the top of a Rock. When theſe Ceremonies are over, the Sultan *Scheriff* having ſaid ſome Prayers, diſmiſſes the People with his Benediction, to which the People ſay, *Amen*, and then depart; and the next Night after the Pilgrims are gone, ſo much Rain falls, that one would think it were a Deluge, which makes a Torrent that waſhes away the Blood of the Sacrifices, and carries along with it all the Bones that remain'd in the Plain, and tho' the *Biram* fall 10 Days ſooner every Year than formerly, yet the Rain always falls the ſame Night the Pilgrims depart. The Infidels are perſwaded, that God ſends it to ſhew their Sacrifice is acceptable to him; but whatever be the Will of God, 'tis wonderful,

From *Meccha* they go to *Medina*, which is 10 Days Journey from it in the Road to *Damaſcus*, to viſit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, which is placed in a Corner of a Moſque in the middle of the Town, encompaſſed on all ſides with great Iron-Grates, becauſe the *Turks* tell a Story, That a Chriſtians, under the Habit of *Dervices*, deſigned to ſteal it; which we may ſuppoſe is as ridiculous a Story, as 'tis to the *Turks*, That the Temple in which *Mahomet*'s Shrine is, is faced with Loadſtone, which by its Vertue holds it up in the Air, becauſe 'tis made of Iron. The Sepulchre is in a little Tower, covered with a *Turbe*, or Dome, and round it is a little Gallery, of which the Outſide Wall has ſeveral Windows with Silver-Grates, and the Inſide Wall is adorn'd with a great Number of precious Stones at that Place, which anſwers to the Head of the Tomb, of inеſtimable Value, given by the *Mahometan* Kings in ſo many Ages. Among others there is a Diamond half a Finger long, and 2 Fingers broad, and over it another ſent by Sultan *Oſman*, equal to that which the *Turkiſh* Emperors wear on their Fingers. Lower is an Half-Moon of Gold, ſet with Diamonds of great Worth. The Pilgrims ſee not *Mahomet*'s Tomb, but content themſelves to ſee the Tower where it ſtands, but Strangers, when the Multitudes are gone, may have Liberty to ſee and undeceive themſelves, that it does not, nor never did hang in the Air. The *Turbe*, or Tower is hang'd all round with red and white Damask, which cover all the Wall, but at the Place where the Diamonds are. All round the Hangings are written, *La Illah*, &c. *God is God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet*. Theſe Hangings are renew'd every 7 Years, and ſooner if there happen a new Emperor. The Doors of the Gallery are of Silver. Many Pilgrims do not viſit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, becauſe he never commanded it, but only adviſed, that if they did, they ſhould ſay a *Fatha*, or Prayer for his Soul.

When the Caravan is about to return from *Meccha*, an *Aga* goes from *Cairo* to guard the freſh Proviſions, which the People ſend their Friends and Relations in the Caravan, which delivering ſafely, he is well rewarded for it. At their Return there is a great Mixture of Joy and Sorrow, the People kiſſing their Relations that are come home ſafe, or lamenting ſuch as have died in the Journey, which are uſually many, for they meet often with ſuch hot Winds, as ſtifle their Breath, and kill them immediately, and in this Journey died always 6000, and thoſe who return alive are ſo alter'd, that they can hardly be known, and yet many, both Men, Women and Children, make it yearly. The Pilgrims are called *Adgi*, and are much reſpected as long as they live. The Goods of all the People that die in this Journey fall to the *Emir-Adge*, who is abſolute Maſter of this Multitude, and adminiſters Juſtice to them.

8. The Cutting or Opening of the *Khalis*, which at *Cairo* is perform'd with great Ceremony and Rojoycings. The *Khalis* is a low Street, which goes quite thro' the City of *Cairo*, beginning at the *Nile*, towards Old *Cairo*, and ending in the Fields, towards St. *Michael*'s. When the River *Nile* begins to ſwell, they caſt up a Bank of Earth at the End of the Street, which is near the River, to keep the Water from running into the *Khalis*, and when it is high enough, they cut thro' the Bank of Earth, and give the Water Paſſage into the *Khalis* thro' the Town. This is performed by the *Baſha*, or *Sous-Baſha*, with great Ceremony, in *Auguſt*, being attended by his Guards, and 2 Men mounted on Camels, beating upon Timbrels, marches along the *Khalis* on Horſe-back, and being come to the End of it, alight, and having with an Hammer given the firſt Blow to the breaking of the Bank, he takes Horſe again, and rides back, leaving ſeveral *Moors* to break it down, who do it ſo leaſurely, that he is gone near an Hour before the Water comes. In his Return he receives a Due of ſome Piaſtres of the *COSS* of the *Franks*. After him come a Rabble, ſinging and peltring one another with Cudgels. Then comes the Water, which a Company of Roguiſh *Moors* and Boys accompany, keep Pace with, ſome ſwimming, and others throwing one another into it, and ſhewing a Thouſand fooliſh Tricks. The *Khalis* was filled 15 Foot high, and all the time it was running there came Boats full of merry Sparks, ſinging and playing upon Inſtruments, as they paſs along. This Mirth is to teſtifie their Joy for the Fruitfulneſs that the *Nile* brings along with it. When the *Khalis* ceaſeth to run, which is in *October*, when the *Nile* decreaſeth, they take no more Water out of it, and when it has done running, there is a moſt noiſome Smell comes from it, which ariſeth not only from the Corruption of the Water when it ſtands, but from the Filth of the City caſt into it. The Infection is ſo great, that it tarniſhes all Silver, and ſpoils the Pictures near it, and tho' the *Sous-Baſha* might remedy this Inconvenience by draining the Water out, yet he will not, becauſe he ſells it to the Gardiners to water their Grounds; yet they take care it be levelled and dry by *May*, becauſe otherwiſe the Houſes would be laid under Water.

The Cutting of the Khalis.

9. The *Eſine*, which is a publick Rejoycing for a Victory obtained by the *Turks* over their Enemies. It is proclaim'd 7 Days before the chief Crier in a *Caſtan* advertiſes the Beys and Conſuls of it. It begins at Evening-Prayer, and in the Morning the Guns fire from the Caſtle, and ſo continue every Morning as long as the *Eſine* laſts. As ſoon as it is begun every Man provides Lamps and Stuffs to hang before their Doors, ſo that the Streets are full of Lamp-Lights, and hung with lovely Hangings of Cloth of Gold, Tapeſtry, and other rich Stuffs, to which the Beys add Shews of all ſorts of Arms and Armour at their Gates. The Figures of Chriſtian *Franks* ſet up among theſe Shews are to the *Turks* a pleaſant Diverſion. The Conſuls of *Europe* muſt join in this Solemnity, tho' it be for a Victory over their Country, elſe they will have an Avarice laid upon them. They uſually expoſe, beſides Lamps and Tapeſtry, ſeveral excellent Pictures of

The Eſine, or Day of Rejoycing for a Victory.

of the beſt Faces, which the *Turks* look on with Admiration, thinking it impoſſible that there ſhould be any ſuch Beauties in the World, and all that come to ſee them they muſt treat with Coffee and Tobacco, and if Perſons of Quality with Serbet and Sweet-Meats, ſo that theſe Solemnities are expenſive to the Conſuls.

Old *Cairo*. Old *Cairo*, though it be ſeparated from the New *Cairo* by ſeveral Meadows and Paſtures, yet by ſome is reckoned as the Suburbs of it, and ſo may well enough be join'd with it in the Deſcription. It is a ruinous Town, but has in it ſome good Houſes, and is pretty well inhabited. The Places moſt remarkable in it are, The Church of *Abouſargis*, i. e. Father *Sergius*, becauſe it is dedicated to St. *Sergius*. Under it is a Chappel, which was formerly a meer Grotto, where 'tis believed the Virgin ſtaid a pretty while with her Son *Jeſus*, when ſhe fled from *Herod*'s Anger. The Monks celebrate Maſs in it. This Church is held by the *Cophti*. The Monaſtery of St. *George*, which has a Church belonging to it, where, the *Greeks* ſay, is an Arm of that Saint preſerved, and a Pillar, to which they chain mad Men for a Cure. This Monaſtery is inhabited by *Greek* Nuns, who allow the *Franks* for a Chequin each to bury their Dead in their Churchyard. This Building is ancient, well made, and exceeding high, ſo that from the Top is a far diſtant Proſpect. 3. *Joſeph*'s Granaries, which, they ſay, he built and filled with Corn againſt the Famine, which was to happen after 7 Years Plenty. They are very ſpacious Halls, and at preſent there is Corn kept in them. 4. The Ruines of an ancient Palace, which they ſay was the Reſidence of the Kings of *Ægypt*; but it is more probable 'tis the *Faſtade*. It ſeems to have been a very ſtately Building. 5. The Aquæduct, which carries Water from the *Nile* to the Caſtle. 'Tis ſupported with 350 Arches, which ſeem narrow, becauſe they are very high. The Water is raiſed by 8 *Saki*'s, turned by Oxen, which diſcharge the Water into a Baſon, from whence it runs thro' a little Conduit-pipe into the Aquæduct.

Joſeph's Granaries.

The Aquæduct.

CHAP. VIII.

The Author's Travels into other Parts of Ægypt, *and what he obſerv'd moſt remarkable.*

FROM *Cairo* Mr. *Thevenot* went firſt to ſee thoſe magnificent Works of the ancient Kings of *Ægypt*, which as they have been reckon'd among the 7 Wonders of the World, ſo ſome of them have out-brav'd the Injuries of Time hitherto, *viz.* the Pyramids. They are 3 Lgs. diſtant from *Cairo*. They are called by the *Turks*, *Pharaon Daglary*; and by the *Arabs*, *Dgebel Pharaon*, i. e. *Pharaoh*'s Hills. There are but 3 that are conſiderable, and they are ſeen from *Cairo*, and a great way beyond it; the reſt are not worth a Man's Notice, tho' there are many more. The biggeſt of theſe Pyramids is always open, and being of the Matter and Form of the reſt, a Deſcription of that will be ſufficient. There is an Aſcent both within and without to the Top of it, and 'tis ſo tireſome to go up both Ways, that few have Strength enough to do it. The outward Aſcent is the moſt eaſie and uſual, and yet 'tis convenient to take a Guide, who hath been upon it, otherwiſe you may miſtake the Way, and come to ſuch Places, where you can neither go up nor down, without Danger of tumbling headlong. The eaſieſt Place of Aſcent in this large Pyramid is at the Angle, which looks betwixt the E. and N. It has 280 great Stone-Steps about 2 Foot and half or 3 Foot high, and the Height of the Pyramid is 520 Foot, and 616 broad, upon a Baſis 682 Foot ſquare, and 704 broad. About half way up is a ſquare Room, where, if you be weary, you may reſt, and refreſh your ſelf with a Bottle, if you pleaſe, and is common. On the Top is a fair Platform, from whence you have a pleaſant Proſpect: It is framed of 12 lovely large Stones, 16 * Foot and 2 Thirds ſquare, tho' from the Bottom it ſeems a ſharp Point. The N. ſide of the Pyramid is much ruin'd, being expoſed to the Wind of that Quarter. The Door of the Pyramid, by which you go into it, is at the 16th Step, and you muſt go upon an Hill of Sand to go in at it, and often it is filled up with Sand, that it muſt be removed before any one can enter. The Lintel over the Door is a Stone 11 Foot long, and 8 Foot thick. The Entry is ſquare, and all along of a like Dimenſion, being 3 Foot 3 Inches both wide and high. The Paſſage goes ſloping down 76 Foot, and then you find an Aſcent of the ſame Wideneſs. About 111 Foot up in this Aſcent is 2 Paſſages, one leads to a Room, and the other to an Hall 32 Foot in Length, 19 wide, and 16 broad, and having a flat Roof of 9 Stones. At the End of the Hall is an empty Tomb, that ſounds like a Bell, 3 Foot 4 Inches high, 3 Foot 1 Inch wide, and 7 Foot 2 Inches long. It is like Porphyry well poliſh'd, and very beautiful. It is thought to have been built for that *Pharaoh* that was drown'd in the *Red-Sea*, when he purſued the *Iſraelites*. At the Right-Hand of the firſt Paſſage is a Well 123 Foot deep, but ſuch as have deſcended into it found nothing but Sand and a Multitude of Bats, which are ready to eat a Man up. The 2d Pyramid is ſhut up, and has no Steps without. It ſeems at a Diſtance to be higher than the firſt, but 'tis becauſe 'tis built on higher Ground, for coming near it, it appears otherwiſe; yet 'tis 631 Foot ſquare at the Baſis. The 3d is but little and inconſiderable. It is probable, that at firſt it was faced with the ſame Stone, of which *Pharaoh*'s Tomb is made, but they are tumbled down, and lie at the Foot of it. *Pliny* ſays, That the biggeſt of theſe Pyramids was 20 Years in building by 370000 Men, and that 1800 Talents were ſpent in that Time in Turnips and Onions. They are built of prodigious great Stones, and were raiſed by the *Ægyptian* Kings to be buried in.

The Pyramids of *Ægypt*.

The biggeſt examined.

The outward Aſcent.

The Height and Breadth.

* *Du Mont* ſays 24.

The Fees, or Way of Repaying for a Victory.

The Entry into it.

Pharaoh's Tomb.

Near theſe Pyramids are ſome Grotto's, or Caves, which have formerly, which have formerly ſerved for Places to bury the Dead in. They are cut in the Inſide of a Rock, without any Order, but are all ſquare, and even within. The Walls of ſome of them are full of Hieroglyphick Figures cut in the Rock, ſome ſmall, but others as big as the Life, and one had 16 Men and Women holding Hand and Hand.

Caves for Burying, or Catacombs.

At ſome Diſtance, toward the E. from the biggeſt Pyramid is the *Sphinx*, ſo famous among the Ancients. It is the Buſt of a Body cut out of the natural Rock, from which it was never ſeparated. It repreſents the Face and Breaſt of a Woman, but is prodigiouſly high, *viz.* 26 Foot in Height, and 15 from the Ear to the Chin. The People ſay, That a King of *Ægypt* cauſed this Image to be made in Memory of a *Corinthian* Woman, named *Rhodope*, whom he loved; and *Pliny* ſays, 'Twas *Amaſis* Tomb. Authors report, That this *Sphinx*, as ſoon as the Sun was up, gave Reſponſes to any thing it was conſulted about, and ſuch as go into the Pyramids ſay, That the Prieſts conveyed themſelves into it by the Well found in the Pyramid, but without any Probability, as by Search is found; for neither is there any Paſſage diſcernible in the Well, nor is the Image hollow, or has any Holes at the Mouth, Ears, Eyes or Noſe. The Conjecture therefore of an *Arabian* Author ſeems reaſonablels, who tells us, That to expreſs the Fertility occaſion'd by the Overflowing of the *Nile* the *Ægyptians* built this great Statue. Before each of the Pyramids are the Marks of certain ſquare Buildings, which to ſome ſeem to have been ſo many Temples, and ſo much the rather becauſe of this *Sphinx*, which was placed there to ſhew the Myſteriouſneſs of Theology, but they are rather the Ruines of leſſer Pyramids, which were ſet about theſe great Ones, according to the Cuſtom.

The *Sphinx*.

Ruines of Buildings.

Having viewed the Pyramids, he went to the Village of the *Mummies*, or embalm'd Bodies, called, *Sacara*, which is 3 good Lgs. from the Pyramids. A little

The *Mummies*, or embalm'd Bodies.

little Distance from the Town is the Church-yard, or Plain, where the *Mummy* Pits, or Caves for Sepulture were. They were heretofore full of the Bodies of the ancient *Ægyptians*, so skilfully embalm'd, that they were preserved entire, perhaps, for above 4000 Years, with their Epitaphs, Coffins, and curious and magnificent Dresses. *Du Mont.* The Coffins were enrich'd with Hieroglyphicks, and the Figure of the Deceased in *Relievo*, and sometimes there were Idols, and Jewels laid up in them. Some of them are made of Wood, and chiefly of a kind of Sycamore which is in *Egypt*, called, *Pharaoh*'s Fig-Tree, because it doth not rot so soon as other Wood. Others are made of several Pieces of Cloth pasted together, which are as strong as the Wooden ones, and others are made of Stone, with the Face of the Person within cut in Bosse and Hieroglyphicks all along the Length of it. The Caves of the *Mummies*. Caves are built with Care of the Stone, or cut into the Rock it self. They are divided into several Apartments, Roof'd like great Halls, and with so many Windings, which go from one to another, that they resemble true Labyrinths. According to the Report of the ancient *Ægyptians*, there was such a great Number of these subterraneous Apartments, that they extended some Miles in length, so that those Sandy Plains of *Egypt* are all hollow underneath, and divided into numberless Apartments, and Places for dead Corps. The *Mummies* hard to find. 'Tis now very hard to find any of these Mummies fresh and entire, not only because the Curiosity of the *Franks* has almost exhausted them, but chiefly because the *Moors*, who are Masters of the *Mummies* understand the Worth of them so well, that they reserve all the fresh Pits to themselves, that they may sell the *Mummies*, Medals and Idols to the *Franks*, who now make a Trade of them at *Cairo*. Mr. *Thevenot* had the good Fortune in his Travels to find one Body entire, and saw several Coffins and Idols, which he knew to be genuine, of which he gives us this Description, that we may guess at the rest of them. As to the *Mummy*, or embalm'd Body, he says, it lay in this Manner: *A Mummy described.* The Face was covered, as commonly all the rest are, with a kind of Head-piece of Cloth fitted with Plaister, on which the Countenance of the Person is represented in Gold. If you take it off, you will find nothing of the Face remaining, but it is reduced to Ashes. Some of the Heads of *Mummies* may be kept entire, but they are covered with Fillets of Cloth neatly fitted, which shew only the Shape of the Face. The rest of the Body was swaddled with little Bands of Cloth, very neatly made, but wrapt about with so many Casts and Turnings, that there could be no less than 1000 Ells in it. The Way of doing it is so curious, as none can imitate it. Along the Breast and Belly was a Band of Cloth 3 Fingers broad, and a Foot and half long. It was fasten'd to the other Bands, and upon it were drawn several Hieroglyphicks, done in Gold. *The Embalming.* The Balm, which is now quite lost among them, is black, and shines like Pitch, but has a more pleasant Smell. Upon one of the Coffins was represented in Figures the Manner of Embalming the Bodies. There is a long Table, shaped like a Lion, on the Back of which the Body that is to be embalmed is laid at Length, and hard by there is a Man with a Knife in his Hand opening the Body. The Man hath a Vizard-Mask on, shaped like the Beak of a Sparrow-Hawk, as was the Custom for Embalmers, that they might not breathe in the Corruption which evaporated out of the dead Bodies many times. On the Table also stood 4 Vessels without Handles, wherein the necessary Drugs are kept, both for Embalming, as Balm, Cedria, &c. and for wrapping up and Incrustation of the Body, as Bitumen, and other Things. On the Inside of this Coffin was the Figure of a naked Maid, with her Arms stretch'd out. In the Coffin he hop'd to have found some Idols, or in the Belly, but upon Search he was disappointed; yet he saw several that had been taken out of such Coffins, which he thus describes. *The Idols.* These Idols are of several sorts, and in many Postures, they are made some of Copper, others of several sorts of Stone and Earth. These Idols cannot be counterfeit, because the People have not the Art to do it; and besides, they are sold so cheap, that the Materials are worth more.

Le Bruyn ex Milton. Among these Sepulchres or Caves are found some Places like great Chambers, full of Earthen-Pots, with Covers to every one of them, in which they preserved embalm'd Birds of all sorts, but there was no more but one Bird to a Pot. *Embalm'd Birds.* There are also some empty Hen-Eggs found among them. Some of these Caves have such a Stink as is not sufferable, and such Vapours issue out of them, as puts out all Lights. Such as go down into them out of Curiosity are let down by Cords, fasten'd under their Arm-Pits, as into a deep Well, and with Candles and Flambeau's they search into the Caverns. The *Moors* will often deceive Travellers, by letting them down into Pits which have been already open'd, and where the *Mummies* are batter'd and broken; for Travellers will often take a Limb, as an Hand, Head, &c. or a Coffin-Lid, or Inscription, to carry away with them. There are also Stone-Tables of a large Sieze often found in opening the Ground, which are engrav'd with Cyphers and Ænigmatick Figures, which represent Chymistry, and other Sciences of the ancient *Ægyptians*, as also other extraordinary Characters, which are not Hieroglyphical. *Stone Tables.*

Not far from these *Mummies*, in the Entrance of the Plain towards the *Nile*, are some Remains of a large Town, which was *Memphis*, whose Inhabitants were buried there, for the Ancients never buried their Dead in Towns for fear of infesting the Air, tho' Christians mind it not. *Memphis.*

Beyond *Memphis* there are several Pyramids in the Plain for several Miles together: Three of them are of an extraordinary Sieze, and so little endamaged, as if Time had Respect to their Preservation. The most remarkable of these is the Pyramid of *Rhodope*, so called commonly, but from a Mistake, because *Pliny* says, the Pyramid built by that Courtizan with the Money she gain'd by prostituting her Body was small, tho' very fine. The Stones are put together without Order, which shews it was not finish'd, and it has 143 Steps of large Stone on the Outside, and in the Inside it has 3 Halls in several Places, but no Tombs in them. The Platform is 642 Foot square, but not even, so that it is on the E. side 316 Foot, and on the W. 327 Foot high. The lesser Pyramids in this Plain Time has quite defaced them, for they are at present only Heaps of Sand, which have nothing more, but the Form of what they were formerly, being covered with Heaps of Sand. There is also a great square Pile of large Free-stone, which the *Arabians* call *Mazenbet Faraoun*, on which they say, the *Pharaohs*, Kings of *Ægypt*, mounted, when they would give some new Law to their Subjects.

Having seen all these Things, he returned to *Cairo*, and remaining there, had the Pleasure of the *Franks* to go to *Matharee*, a Place about a large Lg. distant from the City, where they enjoy delicious Shades, and Water in the Gardens there, for it is full of Orange and Lemmon-Trees, which so overshadow the Walks with their thick Boughs, that the Sun cannot pass at all through them. Among the Trees is an old Sycamore, or Fig-Tree of *Pharaoh*, which Yearly bears Fruit; and they say, that our Lady passing by it with her Son *Jesus*, and being pursued by *Herod*'s Men, it open'd and receiv'd the blessed Virgin with her Child into it, till the Men were past, and then it open'd again, and so continued always till the Year, 1656, when a Piece which was separated from the Trunk broke off. In this Garden is an Hall, almost square, but small, built over the *Grotto*, where the Virgin is said to have resided with our Lord in his Flight into *Ægypt*. *The Place where the V. Mary lived.* As you enter into the Hall, there is on the Left-Hand a Bason, which by the Turning of a Wheel in the Court adjoining, is filled with Water from a Spring, as are also all the Channels in the Garden. In the Bason the V. *Mary* is said to have washed her Linnen, and in the mean while set our Saviour in a little Window hollowed in the Wall, where the Monks sometimes say Mass. In this Hall the V. *Mary* is said to have dwelt with her Son *Jesus*, while she was in * *Ægypt*; but the Story savours too much of Legend, to deserve Credit. Near the Garden is a lovely great Obelisk, like to that which stands at *Alexandria*, which makes some Conjecture, that heretofore there has been a Town in that Place, for 'tis not likely that such a Piece would have been erected in the open Fields, and besides there are found some Ruines about it. *An Obelisk.*

Upon the River *Nile*, which runs from *Cairo* to the Sea, are some considerable Towns, besides many Villages, which standing on both sides, opposite one to another, make a pleasant Prospect. *Towns on the Banks of the Nile.*

1. *Mansoura*, which is pretty large, and is situated on the East of the *Nile*.

2. *Se-*

2. *Semenut*, which is indifferently large, lies on the West. This Town is built in the Form of a Triangle on the River-side, and all the Vessels that are bound for *Cairo* are obliged to stop here to pay a certain Duty.

L. Bruyn.

3. *Mitgannir*, which is also a pretty large Town on the E. side of the River, and has a fair *Bazar*, or Market-place, and several fine Houses. Over-against this Town there is a great Borough, called *Siefe*.

Damietta is next the Sea, and is a considerable Port. All the Way by the *Nile* between these 2 Cities there is an incredible Number of Dove-Houses, built of Earth, with a pick'd Roof, and the Inside is furnish'd with a sort of Pots, in which the Pigeons build their Nests, and producing plenty, they are very cheap thereabouts. *Damietta* is a well built Town, long, but handsome, but the Streets are dirty; yet 'tis very populous, and one of the principal Cities in *Egypt*. It was anciently called *Pelusium*, and lies upon a Branch of the River *Nile*, which discharges it self into the Sea 2 Miles below it. All Persons that arrive at the Port are strictly search'd at the Custom-House, and pay the usual Custom, which is about 2 *s.* 6 *d.* a Man. There is nothing remarkable in this Town, but some Mosques with fine Towers. Without the City are to be seen the Ruines of an high Tower, which formerly serv'd as a Light-House for the Ships, and hard by it on the same side is a round Tower. The *Nile*, which runs close to the Town, and *Dead Sea*, which is not far off, affords such plenty of Fish, that it is hard to get them off, and the Country round the Town abounds with such good Pastures, which feed great Numbers of Cattle, that Provision of all sorts is brought in great Plenty to *Damietta*, where it is sold at reasonable Rates; but whatever is brought from Foreign Parts, as Wood, Raisins, and many other Things, and especially Wine from *Cyprus*, is very dear.

Damietta described.

The Steeples with Two Towers.

Birds about the Nile.

About the *Nile* are to be seen many extraordinary Birds, as Eagles, large and fine White Birds, which are sometimes on the Land, and sometimes in the Water, as also a sort of Lapwings, which are white about the Neck, grayish on the Back, and black every-where else; and there are others that always keep in the Waters. About 2 *Italian* Miles Eastward from *Damietta* is the *Mare Morto*, or the Dead Sea, which bears the Name, because it is on all sides surrounded with the Land, and has no manner of Outlet.

A delicious Wood described.

In the Way to the Sea from *Damietta* there is a Wood so fertile, delightful and pleasant, that the whole World cannot shew a finer. In it grow a great many large Orange and Citron-Trees, as also several sorts of Fig-Trees, and among the rest one called, *Adam*'s Fig-Tree, whose Fruit is very large and long, but the Leaves are about a Fathom long, and about 2 Spans broad. There is also another sort of Fig-Tree, whose Leaves are round and very thick; the Figs hang like Branches of Grapes, and are as sweet as Sugar. There is also a 3d sort with a large Trunk and small Leaves. Sugar-Canes grow likewise there, and a great many Cassia-Trees. There are likewise many Pomegranate-Trees; but the Palm-Trees are the most numerous and remarkable. There are also many Trees of a lesser sort, as Cherry-Trees, Plumb-Trees and Apricot-Trees, which being confusedly mix'd one with another, make a very pleasant Prospect to the Eye. All the Wood is run into several Parterres, or Walks, like those in Gardens, proportionably to the Share which each particular Man has therein, and each of these Plats is surrounded and separated from the rest by Trenches.

Mare Morto.

As to the *Dead Sea*, it is very full of Fish, especially Cods and Eels. The Fowls in those Parts are as good as the Fish, and among others there are Pelicans, which swim by the Water-side, like Geese, and other kinds of River-Fowl in so great Numbers, that one cannot count them. In the Winter-time also they take a great many Fowls, which they call, *The Fullers of Damietta*, which are of a very fine Colour, for their Necks and Breasts are very like Peacocks, and they are at least as big as a Pheasant.

The Trade of Damietta.

The principal Traffick of *Damietta* consists in Rice, which grows thereabouts in great Abundance, and is carried into all *Turkey*. They deal also in Coffee, Linen-Cloth, and several fine Stuffs, which are made there. The City is govern'd by an *Agi*, sent thither by the *Bassa* of *Cairo*. In *Damietta* liv'd in 1611. a Druggist, then about 60 Years old, who was born in a Vault, which is a Burying-place still to his Family, after his Mother was dead and interr'd in it.

The Deserts of St. *Macharius* are the most remarkable Places in *Ægypt*, not yet observ'd, and well worth the Observation of Travellers, for there are 4 Monasteries in it. The Way to them from *Cairo* is by Water to *Terrana*, taking a *Janizary* and a Monk or two that belong to the Monasteries along with you, who will convey you both cheap and safe. From *Terrana* it is a Day's Journey by Land to the first of these Monasteries, called St. *Macharius*'s. The Building is ancient, and the Walls are high, but much decay'd.

The Deserts of St. Macharius, and the Monasteries in it.

Within the Precinct of this Monastery there is a kind of big square Tower, into which you enter by a Draw-Bridge, and wherein there is a Church, where lie the Bodies of St. *Macharius*, and several other Saints, and besides there are 5 or 6 Altar-Tables of lovely Marble, a Wall, and all other Things for the Service of the Church. Here also they keep whatever they have of Value in the Monastery, and Provisions, but especially their Books, which they so esteem, that no Monk dares to sell or put out of the Way any of them, upon Pain of Anathema; for when the Monks find themselves abused or pursued by the *Arabs*, they betake themselves to this kind of Strong-hold, and pull up the Bridge to secure themselves. The other 3 Monasteries have the like Towers for the same Purpose. This is the biggest of the 4, but the most ruinous, and especially the Church, which seems once to have been fair. There is no Garden belonging to it, and their Water is brackish. Three or Four Hours Journey beyond this Monastery lies another, called,

St. Macharius.

The Books how valued.

2. *Ambabicheye*. In the Way to it you meet with several little Risings, which, the Monks say, were made by the Angels for a Path to lead the *Hermites* to it on *Sundays* and *Holidays* to hear Mass, for these religious Men being scatter'd up and down the Deserts, could hardly find the Way to the Monasteries without such Directions. By the Way also you see many old Walls, which are the Ruines of several Monasteries, or little Houses, built by Seculars, who retired into the Deserts for a religious Life, to celebrate Divine Service on *Sundays* and *Holidays* in. These Monasteries had an Abbot, with a certain Number of residing Monks, who when they had a Mind to lead a more austere Life, and were found by their Superior to be sufficiently qualified for it, were suffer'd by him to leave the Convent, and go live solitarily in the Mountain, where they built little Hermitages, and spent their Lives in great Austerities, Silence and continual Meditation. Among these old Buildings you see the Ruines of an old Monastery, built in Honour of St. *John the Little*, and is called, *Johanna el Kasir*, where there is still a Dome, and by it a fair Tree, called by the Monks thereabout, *Cadgeret el Taa*, i. e. *The Tree of Obedience*, into which they say a dry Rod, which was water'd by that good *Hermite*, at the Command of his Superior, was changed, as a Monument of the Merit of his Obedience. This Monastery of *Ambabicheye* is the pleasantest of all the 4, for it has a fair Church, a lovely Garden, and good Water, with a large Tower in it. There were formerly a great many holy Bodies therein, but on *Palm-Sunday*, 1656. they were burnt by a Spark of a Taper left burning in it, yet the Monks have got others instead of them, which they make the Credulous believe are the same.

2. Ambabicheye.

The Monastery of St. John the Little, and the Tree of Obedience.

3. The Monastery of *Syrians* is a Quarter of a Lg. distant from the former. It is but small, but very pleasant, has good Water, and is kept in Order the best of all. In it are 2 fair Churches, the one for the *Syrians*, and the other for the *Cophti*, which has many Reliques, and particularly the Staff of St. *Ephrem*, who coming to visit a Monk, set his Staff at the Door, and it took Root, and became a Tree, and is now the only one of the kind in *Ægypt*. From this Monastery in the Way to the 4th, you pass by the dry Sea, which (the Monks say) was dry'd up at the Prayers of the *Hermites*, whom the Pyrates of the Sea much infested. It is called, *Bahr el Malame*, i. e. *Mare Concilii*, The Sea of Railing. In it are found a great many Petrifactions of Wood, and some Bones converted into Stones, which are pretty curious. Going forward on the W. side of the Sea, you come to the Mountain of Eagles Stones, called, *Dgebel el Masque*, where digging in the Earth, especially in the time of Heat and Dearth, they find a sort of Stones of different Bignesses, which, the Monks say, have many Vertues, and particularly defend from venomous Creatures. They are cal-

3. The Syrians.

St. Ephrem's Tree, and the Dry Sea.

Eagles Stones. called Eagles Stones, becauſe the Eagles, which dwell and breed much thereabouts, carry them to their Neſts, to preſerve their young ones from Serpents. From this Mountain you go, making a Triangle, to the 4th Monaſtery in one Day, called,

4. Our Lady's. 4. *Dir el Saydet*, or, The Monaſtery of our Lady. It is ſpacious, but a little ruinous. It hath a fair Church and Garden, but the Water is brackiſh; yet there are more Monks in this Monaſtery than in all the other 3, becauſe the Revenue of it is greater, and they have ſome Reliques alſo. Two Lgs. from this Mo-

The Lake of Natron. naſtery is the Lake of *Natron*, called, *Berquet el Natroun*. It looks like a large Pond frozen over, and the Ice covered with a little Snow. It is divided into 2 Parts, ſupply'd by 2 Springs, and ſtanding at leaſt Knee deep with Water, which immediately as ſoon as it comes out of the Earth congeals and makes as it were great Pieces of Ice, for 6 or 7 Fingers thick:

Natron, what it is. There is a red Salt on the Top, then a black Natron, which the *Ægyptians* uſe for Lee, and laſt of all is the true Natron, which is much like the firſt Salt, but more ſolid. A great many Camels come every Year to be loaded with this Natron. From this Lake, about *Whitſunday*, there is a ſort of Salt made, in form of a

Pyramidal Salt. Pyramid, which they call *Pyramidal Salt*, and the *Arabians*, *Melh el Meſtaoun*. Theſe are all the Places remarkable, or at leaſt which Travellers generally take Notice of. All that is farther obſervable Mr. *Thevenot* reduceth to 2 Heads: 1. The particular Nature of the *Nile*, which produceth all the Fruitfulneſs of *Ægypt*, with the Senſitive Creatures nouriſh'd in it, and through the whole Country. 2. The ſeveral Sorts of Inhabitants, with their Manners and Cuſtoms.

The *Nile* deſcrib'd. As to the *Nile*, it is a River that hath not its Equal in the World, whether you conſider the Source, or its Effects. It hath its Original from 2 Springs in the Mountains of the Moon, 12 Degrees Southern Latitude, where the Snow of theſe Mountains melting, make ſeveral Rivulets, which form 2 great Lakes, one towards the E. and the other toward the W. diſtant from each other about 80 Miles. The Waters of theſe Lakes having made each of them a diſtinct Channel, are join'd together in *Æthiopia*, at about 2 D. of Northern Lat. where they make but one River, which running thro' a vaſt Tract of Ground, *viz.* beyond the 11 D. parts again, and makes the

The Iſland of *Meroe*. Iſland of *Meroe*, which reaches almoſt to the 17 D. of Northern Lat. where theſe 2 Branches again unite in one River, which after many Turnings and Windings comes to a great Mountain, acroſs which it runs with a violent Torrent, and afterwards falls down with a furious Caſcade into *Ægypt*, thro' which having paſſed it divides again about *Memphis*, where it forms an Iſland, after which joining again, it divides a little below *Memphis*, and makes 2 Rivers, one of which running Weſtward is called, *Agathodæmon*, and the other which runs Eaſtward is called, *The River of Bubaſtis*.

The Iſle *Delta*. The Land which lies between theſe 2 Rivers and the Sea having the Form of the *Greek* Letter Δ. *Delta*, bears that Name, and is called the *Delta* of *Ægypt*. Theſe 2 large Arms of the *Nile* are parted into ſeveral other leſſer Streams, ſo that at laſt it throws it ſelf into the *Mediterranean* at 9 Mouths, about 31 D. of Northern Lat. Indeed, the Ancients mention but 7 Mouths, and *Ptolomy* aſſigns their ſeveral Names, but it might be becauſe 2 of them were bank'd up with Sand, as ſometimes more of them are. The 2 biggeſt are at *Roſetto* and *Damietta*, and Ships of great Burden may ride in them, but the reſt are ſmall Rivulets.

The Flood of the *Nile*. As to the Swelling of the River, and the great Plenty of Waters which it affords from *Mid-May* to the End of *October*, in which time it overflows the whole Country of *Ægypt*, it is certain that the melted Snows and great Rains, which fall for 5 Months together in *Æthiopia*, *viz.* from the Beginning of *April* to the End of *Auguſt*, is the Cauſe of it: for it firſt flows in *Æthiopia*, and then afterwards falls into *Ægypt* with that Plenty, that what was at firſt but a large River becomes, by overflowing its Banks, a little Sea, or large Lake, and ſo continues till fair Weather returns in *Æthiopia* at the Beginning of *October*, when it begins to abate, and diſcharges it ſelf into the Sea time enough for their Sowing. By this Flood of *Nile*,

The wonderful Effects of it. God's Providence ſeems to do Wonders for *Ægypt*; for whereas there falls little or no Rain in that Country, and the Soil is naturally ſandy and barren, the River not only plentifully waters the Ground, but brings ſuch a rich Mud along with it, as meliorates the Ground, and makes it very fruitful, which that it may more certainly effect, the N. E. Winds riſe about the Beginning of *June*, and continuing for 4 Months, keep back the Water, and hinder them from running off too faſt into the Sea, and ſo cauſe by their Stop that rich Sediment to ſettle upon the Land.

The Cataracts of Nile. The *Nile*, when it is come again within its own Banks, is not much broader than the *Seine* in its wideſt Places, and it is not very rapid, unleſs it be at its *Cataracts*, where it falls from ſo great an Height, that the Noiſe of it is heard at a very great Diſtance. The Water, by which all *Ægypt* is ſupplied, as is before obſerv'd, is very thick and muddy, but they have an Art to clarifie it; for in that Country they make uſe of great Veſſels of white Earths, holding about 4 Buckets full of Water. When they are full of Water, they rub the Inſide of the Veſſels with 3 or 4 Almonds, until they be diſſolved, and in the Space of a Quarter of an Hour the Water becomes very clear, and for that End, ſuch as bring Water to the Houſes have a Paſte of Almonds to rub the Veſſels with: The Water is very wholſome to drink af-

The Water wholſome. ter it is thus purged, ſo that it never does any Man harm, tho' he drinks never ſo much, becauſe running ſo long a Courſe, and through ſo hot a Country, as *Æthiopia* is, the Sun corrects and cleanſeth it from all Crudities; and, indeed, one ſweats it out almoſt as ſoon as one drinks it. 'Tis all the Drink almoſt that they have in *Ægypt*, and therefore moſt of the Cities, Towns and Villages are built by the River's ſide, but the Houſes of the Latter are built of Earth. This River abounds not much in Fiſh, there is but one ſort of Fiſh taken out of the *Nile*, ſold at *Cairo*, which is called *Variole*, and that is not very common; but there are vaſt Numbers of Crocodiles in it, which, perhaps, is the Cauſe of their Scarcity of Fiſh. The Croco-

Crocodile deſcribed. diles are an amphibious Animal, and live as well by Land as Water. They have an Head flat above and below, darkiſh big Eyes, and a ſharp long Snout, full of ſharp Teeth, but no Tongue. The Body is large, and all of a Bigneſs; the Back is covered with high Scales, like the Heads of broad Nails, and of a greeniſh Colour, and ſo hard that an Halbert can't pierce them. The Tail is long, and covered with the ſame Scales as their Body; their Belly is white, and pretty tender; they have 4 ſhort thick Legs, with 5 Claws on their Fore-Feet, and 4 on their Hand; they grow as long as they live, and ſome of them come to be above 24 Foot long. In eating they move the upper Jaw only, contrary to all other Creatures, except the Hippopotamus; they are very ſtrong, and ſo long liv'd, that after they are flea'd, and the Throat cut and Belly ripp'd open, they catch hold of any thing with their Mouths, and never part with it again. The Fleſh of a Crocodile is not poiſonous, The Fleſh eaten. but inſipid. The Barbarians will eat it heartily, and make a Feaſt of it. They are great Lovers of Man's Fleſh, and therefore are very terrible all along the *Nile*, not only to little Boys, who come to the River-ſide to do their Needs, and are catch'd by theſe cunning Creatures, who will hide themſelves on purpoſe in the Sand, but alſo to Men, whom in the Night they will ſurprize in their Boats, by riſing upright in the Water, and putting their Snouts into the Boat to lay hold on them. If they can pull them into the Water they ſoon maſter them, and therefore no body will willingly venture to ſwim in the *Nile*. It is an erronious Fable, that the Crocodiles weep, for 'tis a Thing altogether unknown in the Country. To catch them the *Ægyptians* make many Pits by the River-ſide, covering them with little Sticks, into which falling, they can't get out again, but are taken, after they have faſted ſeveral Days. They never come into the *Khalis*, becauſe they are too narrow.

The Hippopotamus deſcribed. There are alſo Hippopotamus's, or Sea-Horſes in this River. They are of a tawney Colour, and their Hinder-parts are much like to a Buffler, but its Legs are ſhorter and bigger. They are, at their full Bigneſs, as large as a Camel, have a Muzzle like an Ox, a great Head like an Horſe, but ſmall Eyes, a very thick Neck, a little Ear, wide and open Noſtrils, thick large Feet, and almoſt round, with 4 Toes on each like a Crocodile, a little Tail like an Elephant, and little or no Hair on their Skin. In the lower Jaw they have 4 great Teeth, half a Foot long, 2 of which are crooked, as big as the Horns of an Ox, ſtanding on each ſide of the Jaw, the other 2 are as big, but ſtrait. It feeds by Land.

In

The Air. It is a Fable which is reported by some Writers, That there is no Rain in *Ægypt*, for it rains much at *Alexandria* and *Rosetto*, but less at *Cairo*, and further up the Country, and with the Rain sometimes there is Thunder. In *December* the Air is also something cold, but never so sharp as to need a Fire. In other Seasons it is extream hot, and especially in Summer.

Fowling in *Ægypt*. From *January* till *March* they catch Snipes in *Ægypt*; in *May* Yellow-Birds, or Nitrials, which are nothing but a Lump of Fat, and wild Turtles, which are very good; but the House-Pigeons are good for nothing. In *September* also the Yellow-Birds and Turtles come again, and at the same time Larks, which last till the Year's End.

Trees and Herbs. The Country produces a great deal of Corn and Herbs of all Sorts, but no Fruits or Wine, for the Grapes which grow there are red, and of a large Size, but have a thick Skin, and yield little or no Juice. Many fair Trees grow there not found in *Europe*, *viz.* Palm-Trees, *Pharaoh*'s Fig-Tree, which are the true Sycamores; they bear Figs that stick to the Stock, which are not good, yet the *Moors* eat them; Cassia-Trees, which are very lovely, bearing always Blossoms and Fruits together; the Blossoms are yellow and well scented, and may be smelt at a great Distance.

Besides other Birds which are found about the Banks of the *Nile*, and those above-mentioned, there are a great many Ostriches, which keep in the Deserts and Wildernesses, whose Feathers are sent to *Constantinople*, and other Places, to make Fans, and other Knick-knacks for the Women, who are very skilful in making such Things. 'Tis common also for the *Franks* to carry the Eggs of these Birds home with them, as Rarities.

Ostriches.

Their Eggs.

The Inhabitants of *Ægypt*. The People of *Ægypt* (generally speaking) are all swarthy, exceeding wicked, great Rogues, Cowardly, Lazy, Hypocrites, Buggerers, Robbers, Treacherous, so very greedy of Money, that they will kill a Man for a *Maidin*, or 3 Half-pence. They are of 2 sorts, *Mussulmans*, who are *Moors*, and *Cophti* who are *Christians*; but besides these there are *Christians* Strangers, both *Franks* and *Greeks*, *Turks* and *Jews*. The *Moors* are vicious in the highest Degree, and no Wickedness comes amiss to them. They are Cowards and are very loth to fight, but when they fall out, they huff and scold and make a Noise, as if they would cut one another's Throats; yet they will refer their Controversies to the next Man they meet, who makes them presently Friends again, at which all the Spectators say the *Fatha*, and all is ended. The *Turks* use them like Dogs, and yet they dare not resist. They Till all the Land, yet they are neither allow'd good Bread, nor sufficient of it to fill their Bellies. They are of so ill a Nature, that they will neither be subject nor labour, except they are well cudgell'd, and then they'll be both loving and diligent. They are great Eaters of Melons and Water-Melons, and the like, of which they have Plenty, and many which we have not, and that very cheap. They are apparell'd like the *Turks*, when they are able, but most of them are half naked, and many of them have no more but a blue Shirt upon their Bodies. They are a very ignorant sort of People, and yet have some Secrets among them very surprizing, which some count Magical. They'll take up Vipers without Hurt and bring whole Sacks full of them into the City to sell to the Apothecaries. A *Moorish* Woman, by pulling Worms out of Childrens Ears stops their Crying. They speak the *Arabick* Language, which is a Dialect of the *Hebrew*, and very copious. It is difficult to be pronounced, because it has so many Gutturals, and the *Turks* make themselves merry with an *Arabian* to hear him talk, tho' their *Alcoran* and all their Prayers are in that Language, and they have a Proverb, *That the* Turkish *Language serves in this World, the* Arabick *shall be spoken in Paradise, and the* Persian *in Hell*; for though it is a fine Tongue, the *Turks*, hating *Persians*, revile all that belong to them.

Moors.

Their Labour.

Their Apparel.

Their Language.

Their Religion. The *Moors* are *Mahometans*, but have Superstitions which the *Turks* have not, for they circumcise their Daughters, by cutting off a little Bit of the Nymph; but this Circumcision is performed by Women. They have many *Santo's*, besides the Dancing *Dervices*, spoken of in my Description of *Constantinople*. The Dancers are pleasant, but they have one sort very horrible. They wear Felt-Caps, as they do, but say their Prayers oftner than the tother *Mussulmans*, and upon *Tuesdays* and *Thursdays*, at 11 a Clock at Night, when meeting at their Mosque at the Call of the *Muezim*, they continue singing some Verses out of the *Alcoran*, and saying certain Prayers till Day. They say their Prayers so loud, and use such Gestures in them, that one would think them possess'd. They also play on Drums and other Instruments when they sing. In their Processions some of these Men foam at the Mouth like mad Men and with shut Eyes pronounce the Word *Hou*, having a Man on each side to support them for fear of falling, and they that can hold the longest in this Extasie are accounted the greatest Saints. Other *Santo's* there are that go stark naked both Winter and Summer, and suffer their Hair to grow to its full Length for Mortification. These are very highly honour'd, and if they go into the Houses of any of their chief Persons to Dinner, they are allow'd to sit down and dine, and so they go away, and they think that House blessed. They are lascivious Fellows, and that for both Sexes. Many Women who could not be got with Child have kiss'd their *Priapus* with great Veneration and have procured a great Belly by it. One of these *Santo's* hung a large Stone upon his Glans; and another, who was called the *Scorik* of the Serpents, eat Serpents; another had a Turbant as broad as a Mill-Stone, and weigh'd above 50 Pound Weight. It was made up of Patches of Cloth of different Colours. He went very softly, and every one that passed him kissed his Hand. The *Turks* have no great Veneration for them, being nothing so superstitious as the *Arabs*, and one of the *Bassa's* formerly sent as many of them as he could find to the Galleys.

1. Naked.

2. Dead. They have also dead *Santo's*, whose Memory they much reverence. Some of them are interr'd upon High-Ways and Bridges, and when the *Moors* find any of these Sepulchres, they ask Leave of the inclosed *Santo* to pass them. The most ador'd *Santo* among them is *Sadi Ahmet el Bedoui*, who is interr'd at *Meintaganir*, in the Island or *Delta* of *Ægypt*, by the Channel of *Rosetto*. Here is a Fair yearly held, because the People come from all Parts of *Ægypt* at that Time to pray at his Grave. They say, that he always delivers 3 Slaves from *Malta* at that time, and 3 *Moors* never fail to be there to assert that the Night before they were freed from Slavery there, tho' 'tis a foul Lye. They relate many Vertues of this *Santo*, as, That he never knew a Woman, but lay with his own She-Ass. That being denied a Privilege by the *Bassa*, which he had before enjoy'd he by moving his Cap on one side caused his Castle to lean on one side ready to fall, which affrighting the *Bassa*, he granted him his Privilege, and he by putting his Cap to rights by little and little set the Castle upright again. The Pilgrims of *Mecca* passing by this Place, leave the Caravan to adore the Saint. From this Fair the *Moors* go to visit other Saints for a Month together.

Their greatest *Santo*.

His Vertues.

The *Cophti* are Christians, but *Jacobites*, who follow the Heresie of *Eutyches* and *Dioscorus*; yet some few are Orthodox, and they are called *Melchites*. They have a Patriarch at *Alexandria*, who has not only a large Diocess himself, but chuses the Patriarch of the *Abyssins* in *Ethiopia*. They are very ignorant and unpolish'd inso much, that 'tis hard for them to find a Man of Learning enough to be their Patriarch, and when they have, 'tis as hard to find Money enough to give the *Bassa* to settle him. They have many Apocriphal Relations of *Christ*, as, That during his Minority the Angels brought him Victuals down from Heaven and that he spent his Time in making little Birds of Clay which breathing upon, he threw up into the Air, and they flew away; That at the Lord's Supper, which *Christ* celebrated just before his Passover, they had a roasted Cock, and that when *Judas* rose up to betray his Master, *Christ* ordered the Cock to follow him, and brought him Word, that *Judas* had sold him, and therefore he was admitted into Paradise. They say Mass in the *Coptick* and *Arabick* Tongues, and when they sing the Passion, and when they come to the Place where *Judas* is said to betray him, all the People cry, *Arsat*, i. e. *Horned Beast*, or *Cuckold*, reviling *Judas* to avenge our Lord; and when they hear, that St. *Peter* cut off the Ear of the High Priest's Servant, all the People again cry, *Asia Boutrous*, i. e. *Well fare you for that, Peter*; as if that would encourage him by their Applause. These *Cophti* serve for Clerks to the *Divan* of the Beys and Villages.

2. The *Cophti*.

Their Legends of *Christ*.

Their Service.

Their several sorts of *Santo's*.

1. Living praying.

3. The *Franks*.

The *Franks* live in several Parts of *Ægypt*, have Consuls at *Cairo*, and Vice-Consuls in *Rosette* and *Alexandria*, and sometimes at *Damietta*. The *French*, *English*, *Dutch* and *Venetians* have each their Consuls; but all other Nations of *Europe* trade in *Turkey*, under the Protection of the *French* Consul. These Consuls have a yearly Pension of 200 Piastres from the G. Seignior, except the *Venetian*, who has not much above 60, yet is obliged to present every new *Basha* with 2000, whereas the rest are excused for about half as much, for which they receive some Presents in Vests, and have the Favour of an Audience. Heretofore the Consuls had the Honour of Beys, but now they are of little Esteem, and much abused by the *Turks* and *Jews*, who bearing a great Sway in *Ægypt*, because they farm the Customs, and are the only *Serafs*, or Bankers, squeeze many *Avenies*, or Fines, from them by false Accusations, and various Pretences, as walking in the Streets at unseasonable Hours, blaspheming *Mahomet* or his Law, lying with a *Turkish* Woman, &c. all which must be compounded for large Sums, or the Person wronged must suffer cruel Imprisonment.

Their Consuls.

4. The *Greeks*.

The *Greeks* are numerous in *Ægypt*, and have a Patriarch, who resides at *Cairo*, but bears the Title of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, as well as the Primate of the *Cophti*. Besides what is remark'd before about the *Greeks* in the *Turkish* Dominions, which differ little from these in *Egypt*; he gives us only an Account here how the Patriarch celebrated the Sacrament at *Cairo* on *Holy Thursday*. He was cloathed in the same Vestments as other Patriarchs are, only he had a Stole over them, which they have not. This was given him by some Pope. Over the Stole he wears the *Pallium*; but it is bigger and longer than that of the *Latin* Archbishops. On his Head he had a *Tiara* set thick with Pearls and Jewels; but it has not 3 Crowns, nor is so rich as the Pope's. It was given them by the Duke of *Muscovy*, for whom they always pray. The Patriarch celebrates the Mass, as all other *Greek* Priests do, only the *Epistle* and *Gospel*, with some Prayers, which he reads in *Greek* are after read in *Arabick*. As to the Communion, when the Patriarch has consecrated some Pieces of Bread, and then the Wine in a very great Chalice, because of the great Number of Communicants, he crumbles some Pieces of the consecrated Bread into it; then having publickly asked Forgiveness of all that are present, he receives the Element of Bread, and taking the Cup, says some Prayers: and then repeating the *Gloria Patri*, at the Recital of each Person, drinks a little of the Wine. After this he gives the Bread to the Priests that are present, who take it with one Hand, and hold the other under it to catch any Crumb that may fall in the eating, and then going up to the Altar, ask Forgiveness of all present, and then communicate of the Wine, as the Patriarch did. The People communicate without the Chancel from the Hands of the Priest, who gives them the Bread in a gilt Silver-Spoon, crumbled into the Wine. The People receive with little Reverence. Mass being over, the Patriarch went to the Body of the Church, to a Place rail'd and raised 3 Foot high, where stood a Chair for himself and 6 others, on each side of it, where 12 Priests in their Copes sat down by him. These represented the 12 Apostles, and the Patriarch, girding himself with a Towel after he had put off his Patriarchal Vestments, imitates our Lord's Action in washing his Disciples Feet, the last of them seeming unwilling, as St. *Peter* was, that his Master should do that Office for him. During this Ceremony the Church is filled with such loud Groans of the People, as would fill the stronger Hearts with Grief. When the Patriarch had put on his Habits again, he was almost stifled with the People, crouding upon him to dip their Handkerchiefs in the Foot-Laver, which was by that means made dry in an Instant. Then the Patriarch reads and expounds the Gospel in *Greek*.

The Patriarch of *Alexandria*'s Way of celebrating the Sacrament.

The Manner of his receiving the Elements, and giving to the Priests and People.

Washing of Feet.

5. The *Jews*.

The *Jews* are very powerful in *Ægypt*, and govern almost all the Affairs of the Kingdom, having all the Money in their Hands. They live in a Quarter by themselves at *Cairo*, which contains many Streets, but they are short, narrow and nasty. In other Things they differ nothing from the *Jews* in the other Dominions of the G. Seignior.

6. The *Turks* govern it by a *Basha*.

The *Turks* have the supream Government of *Ægypt*, which is administred by a *Basha*, sent thither by the G. Seignior. It is the 2d Basha-ship in Place, but first in Profit in all the *Turkish* Empire; for at his Entrance he has 100000 Piastres given him, and 7 Purses a Month as long as he continues, besides casual Profits. Indeed, the *Basha* buys this Government, paying for it 2 or 300000 Piastres, and must pay yearly 5 *Harna's*, each *Harna* consisting of 1200 Purses, which are valued each at 909000 Piastres and 30 Maidins, and must now and then pay 2 or 300000 Piastres for Continuance, and yet by squeezing the People, he makes himself a vast Gainer. Every *Basha* brings his *Charavalla* to collect all the Customs of *Ægypt*, and *Seraf* to manage his Money, from *Constantinople* with him. The *Cadelesquer* at *Cairo* is of as great Power as the *Mufti* at *Constantinople*, and is put in only by the G. Seignior.

Cadelesquer.

In *Ægypt* are 25 *Sangiack-Beys*, who take care of the Country to defend it from the *Arabs*, and above 40 *Charkish-Beys*, who guard the City. These *Beys* purchase their Places at the rate of 100000 Piastres, and have a Purse a Month allow'd them. These *Beys* are Lords of the Country, and are very powerful, for they can some of them command 10000 *Arabs* at an Hour's Warning. There also are at *Cairo* 2 Custom-Houses, a *Sous-Basha*, who is Major or Provost, and hath 3 Officers under him, *viz.* the *Aser-Basha*, who is a *Chorbagi*; the *Devedar*, who is his Lieutenant; and the *Oda-Basha*. There is 2 *Sous-Basha* also at *Boulou*, and another at Old *Cairo*.

Beys and their Officers.

There is 12000 *Janizaries* in *Ægypt*, of which 7000 are at *Cairo*, and 35000 others in the Country. The Officers of the *Janizaries* are the *Aga*, or General, the *Kiaya*, or Lieutenant; the *Basch Chaousch*; the *Chorbadgi*, or Captain of a Company; and the *Oda-Basha*, who is the Chief of a Division. No *Moors* are made *Janizaries*, that they may be always kept under; nevertheless, the Strength of *Ægypt* consists chiefly in the *Arabs* of the Country, who will get together several Thousands in a Body in the Twinkling of an Eye.

The *Janizaries* and their Officers.

The usual Punishments in *Ægypt* are, 1. Beheading, which they perform so dexterously with their Sabres, by drawing them their whole Length, that they never fail at the first Blow to sever the Head from the Body, and yet they seem not to strike with their whole Force neither. This is usually inflicted upon Robbers, or such as the *Sous-Basha* suspects to be such, and them he will command his Officers to execute immediately, by making them kneel down only.

Their manner of Execution.

2. Impaling, which is done in this manner: The Executioner lays the Malefactor upon his Belly, and his Hands being ty'd behind him they rip up his Fundament with a Razor, and thrust into his Body a very long Stake, as big as a Man's Arm, taper and greasie, driving it, till it comes out at his Breast, Neck or Head, which kills them immediately; but in others they drive it not so far, and then they will talk, smoak Tobacco, and live 2 or 3 Days upon the Pale after it is erected. This Punishment is inflicted upon such as are great Cheats and Robbers. The *Arabs*, who suffer this Punishment, and are carried to it on Camels, with Candles put into the Flesh of their Arms, will go chearfully to it, and glory that they deserve it, saying, That had they not been brave Men they had not been so put to Death. This is a common Punishment in *Ægypt*, but is rarely practised in *Turky*; and even in *Ægypt* none but the Natives are so executed, for the *Turks* are strangled in Prison.

The Use of Camels.

The ordinary Inconveniences or Distempers common in *Ægypt*, and especially about *Cairo* are these, 1. Excessive Heat, which is so intolerable, that one can neither do any thing by Day, nor sleep by Night, for your Sheets are as hot as if they had been warm'd with a Pan, and your Drink is Blood-warm; putting it into a Pot of white Earth, or setting it in a Window where comes a Breeze of Wind, will cool it a little, but not much.

The Inconveniences of *Ægypt*.

2. The Musketto's, or little Flies, who are continually buzzing about Men in Swarms, and stinging them much. A Cloth hung about your Bed will prevent something of the Trouble from them, but not altogether, for where-ever you go in, some will follow you.

3. A Pain in the Stomach, with Fevers and Bloody-Fluxes, caused by going naked breasted, because 'tis pleasant by reason of the Heat, yet chills the Bowels, and produces those Inconveniences.

4. The Swelling of the *Scrotum*, which will sometimes be as big as one's Head. 'Tis cured by an Incision made into it, to let out the Water got into it.

5. Sore

5. Sore Eyes, caused by the Burning of the Sun, and a little Salt Dust blown into their Eyes by the Wind. Most Men have sore Eyes, and some lose them, but 'tis partly thro' Negligence or Ignorance, for it has been found, that frequent washing the Eyes does prevent them.

6. Pains of the Legs are also very bad in *Cairo*, and many have their Legs swollen to a prodigious Bigness.

7. A kind of Inflammation, or Wild-fire, which happens about the Time that the *Nile* begins to rise, and runs over the whole Body, and exceedingly torments People by the Pricking and Stinging; and when you drink to ease and refresh your self, you feel such Prickings and Stingings, as if an Hundred Needles were stuck into you. This Distemper they call, *Des Arelles*. All these, and other accidental Diseases, which often happen in *Ægypt*, are more dangerous during,

8. The *Hamsbin*, which is a bad Wind that blows for 50 Days together, and begins about the 7th of *April*. This Wind brings a great deal of Sand into the Town, so that it gets into the Chambers, let the Windows be never so close shut, and when you go to Bed you find your Sheets full of it; yea, it will get into the Trunks, tho' they be never so close shut. These Winds are so hot, that they will stop the Breath, and kill many People in the Caravans.

9. The Plague, which happens generally once in 7 Years, in which Time it takes its Circuit about the *Turkish* Empire. It sweeps away commonly 100000 Souls; but when the Drop or Dew falls about the 14th of *June*, it ceases to be mortal, as all other Diseases do.

The Medicines used by the *Moors*.

The *Moors* make no great do in providing Medicines, when they are sick, and never think of sending for a Doctor, not only because it would cost them Money, but because they count it a Sin to use a Physician, when they should leave themselves only to Almighty God; yet they make use of some plain Receipts, *viz.* For a Bruise they apply Gun powder, covered with Cotton, and it is sufficient. When they are stung with a Scorpion they eat a Radish, and imagine they are in no Danger by it. They let Blood in the Forehead to make Men more watchful, and cure sore Eyes, and ease them of Pains of the Head, &c.

The Money and Weights of *Ægypt*.

In *Ægypt* they reckon Money by Purses. A Purse consists of 25000 Maidins, which make 157 Piastres Ryal, and 19 Maidins, or 833 Boquels, and 10 Maidins. The *Turkish* Chequin, which they call *Scheriff*, is worth 70 Maidins, and the *Venetian* 75. The Piastres are worth 33 Maidins, and the Boquels 30. The Maidin is a thin Piece of Silver, about the Bigness of a *French* double, and is worth 2 Aspers and half, which is something more than 3 Half-pence *English*. In a Maidin are 8 Forles or Bulbes, which are Pieces of Copper as big as *French* Doubles, but thicker, and are in Value something less than a Farthing. There are Half Forles also.

The Weights of *Cairo*.

The Weights of *Cairo* are the same as those of *Constantinople*, viz.

The *Quintal*,	Which contains	150 *Rottes*.
The *Rotte*,		12 *Ounces*.
The *Ounce*,		12 *Drachms*.
The *Drachm*,		16 *Quirats*.
The *Quirat*,		3 *Grains*.
The *Medical*,		1 *Drachm and Half*.
The *Oque*,		400 *Drachms*, or 3 *Rottes*.

While Mr. *Thevenot* remain'd in *Ægypt*, there came an Ambassador from *Æthiopia* to *Cairo*, as he was in his Voyage to the G. Seignior at *Constantinople*. His Name was *Michael*, a Native of *Tripolis*, in *Syria*: He spoke *Italian*, which gave him the Advantage of his Conversation. Of him he received an Account of *Æthiopia*, which he gives us in this Manner:

A Relation of *Æthiopia*.

Æthiopia, or the Country of the *Abyssins*, called in *Arabick*, *Abesch*, is a great Empire, being above 7 Months Travel in Circuit. On the E. side it is bordered by the *Red-Sea* and *Zanguebar*, on the S. with *Seila*, *Avousa*, *Naria*, &c. On the W. by the *Negros* and *Nubia*, and on the N. with the Country of *Nubia* and *Bugia*, because to come from *Æthiopia* to *Ægypt* one must cross *Nubia* down the *Nile*.

The present King.

The present King and all his Subjects are of the *Cophtish* Religion, and none can live in this Country who is not, or pretend at least to be of it; for he is a profess'd Enemy of all *Franks* in general, and more especially of the Papists, whom he accuses of being Hereticks, and, imagining that they assisted his Enemies, prosecutes them severely, promising a Bag of Gold-Dust to all the Governours round his Dominions that will send him the Heads of any Religious *Franks*, as several have done, and received their Reward.

The Religion of the *Æthiopians*.

The Faith of the *Abyssins* is this: They believe but One Nature in *Jesus Christ*. They circumcise, as the *Jews* do, at 8 Days old, and of late baptize a Fortnight after; but this last Custom was introduced by the Jesuits in the Reign of the present King's Father, who was a good Catholick, and encouraged those Religious Men; for before they baptized none till they were 30 or 40 Years of Age. They say Mass, as the *Cophti* do, but their Church-Books are in the *Æthiopick* Language. Their Patriarch depends on the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, who after any is dead, sends them another, chosen out of the fittest of his Clergy; but after he is sent he is obliged to give no Account of his Charge to him. The Ambassador said, Most of the People of the Country are Catholicks in their Hearts, tho' they profess openly another Doctrine.

The Kings that are tributary to the King of *Æthiopia*.

There are 4 Kings that pay Tribute to the King of *Æthiopia*, *viz.* The King of *Sennar*, who sends his Tribute in Horses. His Country is very hot. The King of *Naria*, who pays his Tribute in Gold. The King of *Bugia*, and the King of *Dangala*.

Naria is a good Country, and from thence is brought the Gold which passes on the Coasts of *Soffola* and *Guinea*. The Mines are not deep, as in other Places. In this Country are those Beasts from whence the Civet is taken, and are called Civet-Cats. It is a Beast almost as big as a Dog, having a sharp Snout, small Eyes, little Ears and Mustachio's like a Cat. The Shin of it is all spotted black and white, with some yellowish Specks, and hath a long bushy Tail almost like a Fox. It is a very wild Creature, and the Bite is dangerous. The Civet lies in a kind of Cod of Flesh, which being opened is shap'd like a split Gizzard. The Males have it between their Stones and Yard, and the Female betwixt their Fundament and Privities. It is a kind of Excrement or Sweat, and in several Cats it is of divers Colours, as whitish, grayish, or yellowish, but by little and little it turns to a very brown Colour. The People take them in Snares, but the *Jews* keep them tame, and twice a Week empty the Cod, by scraping it with an Iron Spatula; but they will never let any of the *Frank* Merchants see them do it, because they will never sell any pure Civet, but always mingle it both bad and good together, and add some Oil, or other Ingredient, to increase the Weight. They hold the Beasts themselves so very dear, *viz.* 100 Chequins apiece, that none will venture to buy them. They are kept in Wooden-Cages, and fed with Mutton and Beef, cut into small Pieces.

Civet-Cats.

Civet what.

None sold pure.

Dangala, and the King of it.

Dangala is the Capital City of *Nubia*, and the King of it is King of the *Berberins*, who are a kind of Blacks of the *Mahometan* Religion, and come in Crouds to *Cairo* to get Services. They are something silly, and serve for a small Matter, *viz.* 2 Maidins a Day, or a Maidin and their Diet, and you may make them do whatever you please. They wear a blue Shirt, plat all their Hair in Tresses, and rub it over with a certain Oil, to keep it from being Lousie. When they fall out, they go before a *Skeick* of their own Nation, who makes them Friends, and if he sees Cause, adjudges them to pay a Fine, with which they feast and are merry together. When a *Frank* has got a Crocodile for the Skin, they'll beg it to eat, and dress it with a pretty good Sauce. When they have scraped together 10 or 12 Piastres, they'll return home with it to their own Country, as sufficient Wealth, and go in Companies, that they may not be robbed by the *Arabs*. The King of *Dangala* pays his Tribute to the King of *Æthiopia* in Cloth.

The Provinces of *Æthiopia*.

The Provinces of *Æthiopia* are *Gouyan*, where the King has a Vice-Roy, *Beghander*. *Dambia*, *Amara*, which is a large Province full of Mountains, and good Castles, *Damoud*, *Tegre* and *Barnegas*: Besides, there are several Provinces govern'd by Princes, who are Vassals to the King of *Æthiopia*. In short, the Kingdom of *Æthiopia* comprehends 24 *Tambours*, or Vice-Roys. The Capital City is called *Gonthar*, and is in the Province of *Dambia*. *Æthiopia* is as cold as *Aleppo*, or *Damascus*, only the Countries by the *Red-Sea* and *Sennar* are hot. The King of *Æthiopia* has above 100 Wives, and keeps no Eunuchs to look after them, because they look upon it a Sin to geld a Man,

The King of *Æthiopia*.

and ſo the Women have as much Liberty there, as in Chriſtendom. He is a King very eaſie of Acceſs, and the pooreſt Man may come to ſpeak to him when he pleaſes. He keeps all his Children on a Mountain, called *Ouohhni*, in the Province of *Oinadaga*, 2 Days Journey diſtant from *Gonthar*. There is a Place like a Ciſtern on the Top of the Mountain, into which they are let down every Night, and taken up in the Day-time, and ſuffered to play and walk about. When the King dies they chuſe out one of the wittieſt of them to ſucceed, without any Regard to a Birth-Right; and when he comes to have Children, he ſends his Brothers Priſoners to ſome Place, and places his own Children at *Ouohhni*. The Place where the Kings are buried is called *Ayeſus*. 'Tis a kind of Grotto, where the Aged are laid on one ſide, and the Young on the other. In the Time of the Jeſuits there was a Church of the ſame Name in that Place, and there is ſtill an excellent Library, where all ſorts of Books in all kinds of Languages in great plenty may be ſeen by ſuch as have the Curioſity. This is probably the old *Æthiopian* Library.

The Product of *Æthiopia*.

Æthiopia is a good and fertile Country, producing Wheat, Barley, &c. Their greateſt Deſarts are not above 3 or 4 Days Journey, and yet the King, when he makes any Progreſs, lodges always in Tents. The Houſes of the greateſt Lords are mean, in Compariſon of the Houſes in *Europe*, and the reſt are only of Mud. They have all Trades, but Watch-makers. They have no Camels, but Mules, Aſſes, Oxen and Horſes.

Their Food and Drink.

The common People eat raw Fleſh, and drink Wine made of Millet and *Saraſin* Wheat; but the King's Meat is dreſt, and he drinks Wine of Grapes. They are cloathed after the Faſhion of the *Franks*, and wear Cloth, Velvet, and other Stuffs, imported to them by the *Red-Sea*. They have Harquebuſſes from the *Turks*, and other People, but there are not above 3 or 400 that uſe them in their Armies. In trading they uſe no coin'd Money, but Pieces of 15 or 20 Pieces of Cloth of Gold, which they weigh, and ſquare Pieces of Salt like Soap, made at *Arho* by the *Red-Sea*, paſſes for Money.

Their Money.

Among them is the Nation of the *Gauls*, whom they call *Chava*. They are a vagabond People, like the *Arabs*, and are in continual Wars with the *Æthiopians*, but fight only with Targets and Lances. They ſpeak almoſt all the Languages of *Æthiopia*.

This Ambaſſador ſaid, That the Head of the *Nile* is a Well that ſprings out of the Ground in a large Plain, where there are many Trees growing. The Fountain is called *Ouembromma*, and is in the Province of *Ago*. It is a delightful Place, and caſts up the Water high in ſeveral Places. It is 12 Days Journey from *Gonthar*, and running Northward paſſes 7 Cataracts, and croſſing *Ægypt* falls into the *Mediterranean* Sea. The Cauſe why the *Nile* flows ſo regularly in *Ægypt*, is becauſe 'tis Summer in *Ægypt* when 'tis Winter in *Æthiopia*, and Rains and Snows falling for 3 Months ſwell the River. There are no Mountains near the Spring-Head. The *Jews* Mountains are 3 Weeks Journey from it, and yet they are the neareſt. Their Names are *Semani* and *Salleme*, and they were inhabited by the *Jews*; but having grown powerful under one *Gidhon*, their Captain, the King of *Æthiopia*, grew jealous of them, and marching againſt them with an Army, ſubdued them, and diſpoſſeſſing them of their Poſt, placed *Chriſtians* in their Habitations, who dwell there, though their is always Snow upon them.

The Nile.

The Jews Mountains.

CHAP. IX.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels from* Cairo *into the Deſarts of* Arabia, *and to the* Red-Sea.

MR. *Thevenot* having a Deſign to ſee the *Red-Sea* and Deſarts, departed *Jan.* 17. 1658. to *Suez*, and having made *Haly*, the *Bey* of *Suez* his Friend, by a Preſent of Sweet-meats at *Cairo*, he was aſſured of his Protection, and admitted to go with the Caravan, which was carrying Timber to build a Ship for the G. Seignior on the *Red-Sea*. In his Way to *Suez*, he firſt encamped at the *Birque*, which is ſpacious, and always has Water in it. There are ſome Perſons who pay the G. Seignior a certain Rent yearly, for a Liberty to catch Wild-Ducks and Fiſh in it. Juſt before his Departure from the *Birque*, there fell ſo great a Tempeſt (for there are dangerous Tempeſts in theſe Deſarts, as well as by Sea) that they thought that all their Tents would have been carried away with the Winds, which drove before them ſuch Clouds of Sand, that there is great Danger of being buried in it. At ſuch times none can ſtir abroad, becauſe their Eyes and Mouth will be filled with Sand. All are forced to lie under their Tents, and a good Tent at that time is a great Advantage. As ſoon as the Tempeſt was over (which laſted about 4 Hours) the Timbrels or Kettle-Drums (which are uſed to chear up the Camels in their travelling, for they delight much in that Noiſe and Singing) beat up for the March of the Caravan; and ſo leaving the *Birque*, they paſſed by a Sepulchre of a *Kiaya*, who was killed there, fighting in the Defence of the Caravan, againſt the *Arabs*, who ſet upon it. There is a Ciſtern of Free-ſtone, which is filled by Rain-water, an Hour's Journey from it, and another fair Well, but the Water is not good; and ſo they came to *Suez*. Ever ſince the fore-mention'd *Kiaya* was ſlain, the Veſſels of the *Red-Sea* are obliged to pay 5000 Piaſtres at *Suez*, to maintain 100 Soldiers, half to abide in the Caſtle of *Suez*, to guard the Country about it, and the other half to wait upon the Caravans, and defend them under a *Kiaya*, who is the Lieutenant-Governour of *Suez*.

The *Birque*.

A Tempeſt in the Deſarts.

Drums to chear the Camels.

Suez.

From *Suez* he went to ſee Mount *Sinai*, which is called by the *Arabians*, *Dgebel Mouſa*, or *Moſes*'s Mountains. It is in *Arabia the Stony*, but becauſe thoſe Deſarts are peſter'd with *Arabs*, therefore he put himſelf under the Guard of 2 *Arab Skeiks*, who having a Command among them, will upon the Payment of ſome *Coffairs*, to be given to the *Arabs* in the Way, ſecure Men from all Robberies, and other Injuries from them. The *Skeiks* are maintain'd, and you muſt pay them both for their Time and Camels, that they carry themſelves and Proviſions on, and ride on. They uſe 2 ſorts of Camels, *viz.* Dromedaries and Camels, for they are ſo like, that they may be both ranked under one Kind. The Camels have one Bunch of Fleſh upon their Backs, are great and high, go conſtantly one Pace, which is faſt, but hard, and travel with their Loads of 7 or 800 Weight, 30 good Lgs. a Day. The Dromedaries have 2 Bunches of Fleſh on their Back, which are ſhap'd naturally like a Saddle, but are leſs, ſmaller and lighter than Camels, and are only for carrying Men. They have a good ſoft Trot, and will travel with Eaſe 40 Lgs. a Day; but it requires ſome Skill to ſit them well, and therefore ſome tie themſelves on, that they may not fall. In all Things elſe the Camels and Dromedaries agree. They have both a ſhort Ear and Tail, a cloven Foot, as ſoft as a Sponge, a long Neck, and Hair alike; both kneel when they are loaded and unloaded, and riſe as they are bid; their Food is the ſame, and both endure thirſt well, continuing upon Occaſions 5 Days without Drink; yet Camels will abſtain longer than Dromedaries.

Camels and Dromedaries.

Leaving *Suez*, *Jan.* 26. the Caravan went on thro' the Deſarts at a great Rate. In the Way they met with ſeveral Waters, called *Ain el Mouſe*, *i. e.* The Wells of *Moſes*, where they filled their Borrachio's with Water. They frequently ſaw the *Arabs*, but having 2 *Skeiks* with them, they dare not hurt them, but either civilly deſired a little Bread and Tobacco, and if they were eating, would eat with the *Skeiks*, and ſo departed, and if none came, the *Skeiks* would hallow to call ſome of them when they went to Meat. Paſſing by ſome Hills he ſaw a great many Antelopes, but nothing elſe, tho' there be abundance of wild Beaſts

Moſes's Wells.

Mount *Sinai*.

Antelopes.

Beasts in those Deserts, as Wolves, Bears, wild Boars, Foxes, Hares, Chacales and Estridges. The Chacales are engender'd of a Dog-Wolf and Bitch-Fox, or a Dog-Fox and Bitch-Wolf. Estridges are some of them of a prodigious Bigness. They have a Neck, Head and Bunch on the Back like Camels, with which they agree in so many Things, that the *Turks* call them, *Deve Cousch*, *i. e.* Bird-Camels. They go in the Fields always in even Numbers, as 2 and 2, 4 and 4, *&c.* They always beget a Male and a Female, and run swifter than an Horse, but tire sooner. While they run they throw back the Stones they meet with upon their Pursuers with such Force, that if they hit a Man, they'll do him much Hurt. The *Arabs* catch them by pursuing on Horseback gently at first, and as they tire they ride faster; when they see the Fowl almost spent they put on full speed, and taking it, kill it, which they do by making a Hole in the Throat of it. Under the Hole they tie it strait, and then 3 or 4 of them take hold of it, and tossing it from side to side a good while, untie the Throat, and let out a great deal of a sort of Stuff like Butter, called *Mantegue*, into which all the Flesh by the Motion is turned. They say, this *Mantegue* is very delicious Food, but is apt to cause a Laxity.

Chacales. Estridges. Way of hunting them. Mantegue, or Butter.

Then he travell'd among the Hills, and came to a Place, called *Corondel*, thought to be the ancient *Shur*, where the Children of *Israel* landed when they came thro' the *Red-Sea* out of *Ægypt*. Here are a great many fair Trees, and a Cistern to preserve the Rain-Water that falls from the Mountains. A little Distance from hence are hot Waters in a Grot, which the *Arabs* call, *Haman el Pharaon*, i. e. *Pharaoh*'s Bath. They say, that whatever is put into these Baths, one part is lost, which the Devil takes for his Share; as also, that the Sea is always tempestuous where *Pharaoh* and the *Ægyptians* were drown'd.

Corondel or Shur. Pharaoh's bath.

From hence he came in 3 Days to *Tor*, having met with nothing but Palms, and a Well of very bad Water in the Way. *Tor* is no considerable Place, but has a good Harbour for Ships and Galleys. The Port is guarded by a little square Castle, which has 2 Guns at the Gate, and an *Aga* is Governour of it, who has only *Turks* under him. Near to it is a Convent of *Greeks*, dedicated to St. *Catherine* and the Angel that appeared to *Moses* in the Bush. This Monastery is fair and spacious, and supplied with plenty of Fish from the *Red Sea*. It holds 30 Monks, who gather Stone Mushrooms, small Stone Shrubs and Branches of Rock, which they call White Coral, with many sorts of Shells, very pretty to make artificial Works of them, and sell them to Travellers. In the *Red-Sea* also is taken a Fish called a *Seaman*, about certain little Isles not far from *Tor*, which has 2 Hands like the Hands of a Man, saving that the Fingers are join'd together with a Skin, like the Foot of a Duck. It is a strong Fish, and those that kill them stick them with a Harping-Iron, as a Whale. The Skin of it is like that of a wild Goat, or Chamois, and is used for Bucklers, which are Musket-Proof. At *Tor* you pay a Duty of 4 Piastres.

Tor. St. Catherine's Convent. The Seaman, a Fish.

From *Tor* he went *Jan. Ult.* to see Mount *Sinai*, with a Monk to shew it them. By the Way he saw the Garden of the Monks of *Tor*, which contains the Place, in Scripture called *Elim*, where, when the *Israelites* journied that Way, were only 70 Palm-Trees, and 12 Wells of bitter Water, which *Moses* made sweet by casting a Piece of Wood into them. These Wells are still in being, and near one another, being most of them within the Reach of the Garden, and the rest of them are hard by. They are still bitter and hot, and one of them is called *Hamon Mousa*, i. e. *Moses*'s Bath. The 70 old Palm-Trees are long since gone, but there are many more in their Room, and the Monks have a Rent for them.

Elim. Moses's bath.

Then he travell'd over a Plain, which in H. Scripture is called, *The Desart of Sin*, where the *Israelites* longing after the Onions of *Ægypt*, God sent them *Manna*. In this Plain grow the *Acacia*-Trees, from which the *Arabs* gather the Gum so named, and sell it at *Tor*. The Acacia-Trees in *France* yield no Gum, and the Acacia sold in the Shops is the inspissated Juice of wild Plumb-Trees, brought out of *Germany*. These Trees are neither bigger nor higher than ordinary Willows, but the Leaves are very thin and prickly. They yield their Gum without pricking. Coming into the Mountains, they found many Cottages of *Arabs*, which were well filled with little Children and Women. Their Provision was chiefly Milk. Having got over the Hills, he came to a Place called *Rephidim*, where there were a few little Houses pretty well built, inhabited at present by the *Arabs*. A little further were several Gardens belonging to the Monks, very well Wall'd round, and full of all sorts of Fruit Trees, and Vines too, very well kept. Then he found the Rock, out of which *Moses* brought Water, when he had smitten it twice with his Rod. It is a Stone of a prodigious Height and Thickness, and on 2 sides of it are Holes, where 'tis easie to perceive that Water hath run, tho' there be none at present. This Rock in Scripture is called, *The Rock of Strife*. The same Day he came to the Monastery of the 40 Martyrs. *Greek* Monks inhabit it. 'Tis a neat Building, hath a fair Church, and a lovely large Garden belonging to it, in which are Apple-Trees, Pear-Trees, Walnut-Trees, Orange-Trees, Lemmon-Trees, and all other Trees which are found in this Country; and, indeed, all the good Fruit eat at *Cairo* comes from Mount *Sinai*. Besides that, there are fine Vine-yards and very good Water there. The Gardens are dress't and kept by some *Arabs*, who willingly serve the Monks.

Rephidim. The Rock of Strife.

From this Place he went up to the Mountain of St. *Katherine*, which lies just before it. It costs 3 Hours to ascend it, being full of sharp cutting Stones, and many steep and slippery Places to be climb'd, which hinder People from going fast. There are many Stones found in this Hill, on which Trees are naturally represented, and being broken retain the same Figure within. Some of these Stones are prodigiously big. About the middle of the Mountain is a lovely Spring of clear Water, with a great Bason in the Rock; but it is for the most part frozen hard, for the Snow always lies in many Places of it. It is called the Mountain of St. *Katherine*, because that H. Virgin beheaded in *Alexandria*, is storied to have been buried there by Angels, and lay there 40 Years, till she was removed into a Monastery adjoining, dedicated to her by the Monks, to one of whom it was reveal'd, that her Body was there interr'd. He lodged at the Monastery of the 40 Martyrs that Night, and on the next Day went to see the Mountain of *Moses*, which is not so high, nor so hard to ascend as the former, but there is much Snow upon it, and several Cisterns. On the Top of it are 2 Churches, one for the *Greeks* and another for the *Latins*, dedicated to our Lord's Ascension. Near this latter is a little Mosque, and by the side of it a little Cave, where *Moses* is said to have fasted 40 Days, when he received from God the Ten Commandments, written upon 2 Tables. On the side of the *Latin* Church is the Grot, where, 'tis said, *Moses* hid himself, when having desired to see God's Face, the Lord told him, *That he could not see his Face and live*; and that when He passed by he should see his Back-parts. From this Mount you may easily see down into the Convent of St. *Katherine*, which is at the Foot of the Mount. There you see a fair large Church, covered with Lead, where, they say, the Body of St. *Katherine* is in Pieces, and before the Door of it is a beautiful Mosque, within the Precinct of the Monastery. Coming down again, he found by the Way a great Stone, to which, the *Greeks* say, the Prophet *Elias* came when he fled from *Jezebel*. A little lower is the Print of a Camel's Foot, made on a Rock as exactly as if it were done upon the Sand. The *Moors* and *Arabs* say, 'tis the Print of the Foot of *Mahomet*'s Camel, and they kiss it with great Devotion; but 'tis probable the *Greeks* made it to oblige them to reverence those Places. Up and down the Mount are several little Chappels, dedicated to several Saints, as St. *Elias*, where there is an Hole behind the Altar, in which *Elias* is said to have hid himself from the Persecution of *Jezebel* all the while he staid in the Mount; the Blessed Virgin, St. *John*, St. *Ann*, St. *Pantaleon*, the Baptism of *Jesus Christ*, and St. *Anthony*; and to every one of them belongs a little House and a Garden full of Fruits and good Water. These Places were inhabited by *Hermites* in so great a Number, that 'tis said, that in the Mountain of *Moses* there were in ancient times above 14000 *Hermites*. Afterwards the *Greeks* had Monks in all these Cells, but at present there are none, because the *Arabs* so tormented them. From these he went down to the great Monastery at the Foot of the Mountain, called St. *Katherine*'s, by the Steps which reached from the said Monastery up to the Top of the Mount, and were in Number 14000; but at present some of them are broken. Those that remain are well made, and easie

Rephidim. St. Katherine's Mount and Monastery. Strange Stones. The Mountain of Moses. Elias's Stone. Several Chappels. St. Katherine's Monastery.

easie to go up and down. In the Way he passed by a fair Portico's, where, the *Greeks* say, the Pilgrims paid a certain Duty heretofore. The Monastery is at the Bottom of the Mountain, and is built of good Free-Stone, with very high smooth Walls. On the East side is a Window, where by letting down a Basket they took up the Pilgrims, and dispensed Victuals to the *Arabs*. 'Tis now shut up, and no Monks inhabit in it, and the Reason is this: The *Greeks* were in Possession of this Monastery 1000 Years, *viz.* from the Days of *Justinian*, who gave it them. *Mahomet* was their Camel-Driver, and being weary with fetching in their Provision one Day, fell asleep before their Gate, and while he lay asleep an Eagle came and hover'd a long time over his Head, which the Porter of the Monastery observing, ran with Amazement to the Abbot, and acquainted him with it. The Abbot went immediately, and seeing it, after he had consider'd it, ask'd *Mahomet*, as soon as he awoke, Whether, when he was a Great and Mighty Lord, he would be kind to them? *Mahomet* reply'd, He neither was, nor like to be such: But the Abbot still desiring his Answer, he said, He need not doubt but he would do them all the Good he could. The Abbot desired him to give it them under his Hand, but *Mahomet* not being able to write, he wetted his Hand all over with Ink, and making the Impression of it upon a clean Sheet of Paper, gave it them, as a Confirmation of his Promise. *Mahomet* sometime after arriving at the Grandeur presaged by the Eagle, and remembring his Promise, confirmed them in their Monastery and the Lands belonging to it; yet on this Condition, that they should give Victuals to all the *Arabs* of the Neighbourhood. This Condition proved so burthensome to the Monks (for the *Arabs* would come 400 in a Day, and sometimes robb'd them of their Corn, when it was brought in) that they forsook the Convent, Wall'd up the Gates, and fled to the Monastery of *Tor*. To this Monastery belong'd a Bishop, who presided over all the Convents and Chappels thereabouts as far as *Tor*, and did not depend on the Patriarch. He resided at *Cairo*.

Mahomet a Servant to it.

Mahomet's Grandeur foretold and effected.

Going round the Monastery, he saw at some Distance Mount *Horeb*, on which *Moses* fed *Jethro's* Flocks when he saw the burning Bush, and near to that are the Mountains upon which *Aaron* pray'd for the People. They are all but little ones. There is a fair Garden adjoining to the Monastery, and within the Walls of it a lovely Chappel, dedicated to the Holy Virgin. About half a Quarter of a Lg. from this Garden is the Place where (the *Greeks* say) the Golden-Calf was molten, and there is the Head of a Calf cut by them to the Life, as a Monument of it. Near this Place is a great Stone, with some Characters not legible. The *Greeks* say, 'twas there *Jeremiah* hid the Vessels of Gold and Silver, and other costly Furniture of the Temple of *Salomon*, when the *Jews* were carried captive to *Babylon*.

Mount *Horeb*.

The Golden Calf calf.

Having seen these Things, he return'd to the Monastery of the 40 Martyrs, where having staid a little to see the Churches of the 12 Apostles, St. *Cosme* and St. *Damian*, and the Place where the Earth swallow'd up *Corah*, *Dathan* and *Abiram*, with their Families, because they mutiny'd against *Moses*, he hasted to *Suez*, where he and his Company hop'd to refresh themselves. In the Way, which is very pleasant and even, they overtook a Caravan of *Arabs*, with whom he not only diverted himself in having the Stories of their Lives, but learned much of their Customs, which he imparts to us in this Manner.

Corah, *Dathan* and *Abiram* swallow'd up.

The *Arabians* and their Country descri-bed.

The *Arabs* are of the Race of *Ismael*, and his 12 Sons are the Patriarchs of the Tribes of the *Arabs*, as *Jacob's* were of the Tribes of *Israel*. Some of them dwell in Towns, and others in Deserts, which the Ancients called the *Scenitæ*, or Dwellers in Tents, and Moderns the *Bedouins*. These, who are very numerous, live a most wretched Life, but think themselves most happy. They rob the Caravans when they can, stripping the Travellers, unless they make Resistance, but do them no other Hurt; but when they catch any *Turks* they seldom spare their Lives, especially if of late they have abused any of their Country-men in their Towns. Their Cloathing is a long blue Shirt, sew'd up to the Bottom on both sides like a Woman's Smock, and a long Piece of white Serge over it, which they bring over their Shoulders and under their Arm-pits several times. Some of them have Drawers, and a kind of Furr'd Vest, or a great many Sheep-Skins sew'd together, the Wool of which they turn inward in cold, and outward in hot Weather. Several wear a kind of *Pabouches*, or Slippers. The Women are very ill cloathed. All cover their Faces with a Linen-Cloth, which has Holes for their Eyes, and wear great Rings of Lattin in their Ears. Most of 'em have Flocks of Camels, Sheep and Goats, which they feed here and there as they find Grass, and there they pitch their ugly Tents of Goats Hair, in which their Women and Children live. When it is eaten up, they pack up Bag and Baggage, and loading their Camels with all they have, House, Goods, Wives and Children, they seek more Pasture elsewhere. They live on Camels and Goats Milk, and Camels Flesh, with Water for their Drink. They eat also a sort of Cakes or Buns, but their Mafrouca is their most delicious Fare. It is made of Flour, knead up into a Paste with Water, Butter and Honey, and bak'd in the Embers, which breaking into Pieces, they eat with great Delight.

Their Cloathing.

Their Habitations.

Their Food.

Mafrouca.

Their Governments.

Their Deserts are divided into Tribes, and their Tribes into Families. Each Tribe hath a *Scheik el Kebir*, or Great *Scheik*, who presides over all the other *Scheiks*, or Captains of every Family, who administer Justice to them, and may punish either with Fine or Death, as their Crimes deserve. The Office of *Scheik* is Hereditary, descending from Father to Son, and if the *Scheik* of a Family dies without Children, all the Family assembles and chuse the most vertuous Man among them, and then entreat the Great *Scheik* to approve their Election. The same Method is observ'd in chusing the *Scheik el Kebir* by the whole Tribe, if they die Childless. The *Bassha's* generally give the Great *Scheiks* some Pay to keep their Tribes at Peace with them, and the Caravans allow them a yearly Sum for a quiet Passage; yet to the other *Scheiks* they give Provisions, Money, Vests, and Cloth for Shirts in certain Proportions; and these Blades think themselves in their Tents happier than Kings. Sultan *Amurath* would have confined them to live in Towns, but they would not hear of it. They keep constantly Spies to observe if there be any Plots against them, that they may either defend themselves, or flee, which is their most certain Security; for no Enemy can pursue them, but they will be oppressed with 3 irresistible Enemies, Hunger, Thirst and Barrenness, besides great Danger of Tempests, which will overwhelm them with Sand.

Scheik.

A Tribute paid to them.

The Arms of the *Arabs* are Lances, Sabres or Swords, and long Daggers. Fire-Arms they have none, and indeed they are afraid of them. They have Bucklers made of the *Seaman's* Skin. They have pretty Horses, and tho' they are small, yet they are so swift, that they seem to fly, and are almost indefatigable. They will stand still where-ever they leave them. They feed them, as they do themselves, with Camels Milk and Flesh dry'd in the Sun, Butter and Wheat, which make them very strong; but because Camels are swifter, they all keep a Camel (which they feed as they do their Horses) to save their Lives in time of Danger.

The Arms of the *Arabs*.

Their War.

The different Tribes are many times at War one with another, and the *Scheik el Kebir* marches at the Head of them. When one of them kills another in time of Peace, the Friends of the Deceased carry the Malefactor before the *Scheik el Kebir*, who either condemns him to Death, or lays such a Fine on him as they desire; but generally they revenge his Death, and they'll keep it in mind 100 Years, till they have done it.

Their Marriages.

If an *Arab* marry a Maid, he kills a Camel or 2, and makes a Feast according to his Ability, giving the Maid so much; but if afterwards any Relation of the Maid's dislike the Marriage, and pay back the Husband what he has expended, he will break the Marriage, tho' the Maid be deflower'd.

Their Religion.

Tho' they are all *Mussulmans*, yet they make no other Prayers but the *Bismillah*, i. e. *In the Name of God*. They have a wonderful Art at Stealing and doing Mischief, notwithstanding all Care used to prevent it. One of them stole the *Bassha's* Signet at *Suez*, when he was using it; another of them got into his Kitchin, and carried away every thing; and a 3d got to his Bed-side, and had not a little Child that lay with him cry'd out, and waken'd him, he had killed him, who thereupon apprehended the Rogue, and impaled him.

Pa-

The Red-Sea described.

Its Name.

Their Habitations.

Their Food.

Their Manners.

Their Government.

Fishes and Fish in it.

Suez described.

Being arrived at *Suez*, he ſtaid a while for a Caravan, and ſpent his Time in conſidering the *Red-Sea*. Authors ſay, that it had its Name from the Red Sand, which cauſes the Water to look Red; but 'tis no ſuch Thing, for 'tis no Redder than other Seas, neither in the Water nor Sand: But being called, *Mare Erythræum*, from an ancient King called *Erythra*, Writers, ignorant of the Derivation of the Name, render'd it by *Red*, as, ἐρυθρὸς, *Erythræus* ſignifies in *Greek*. The Scripture gives it a more proper Name, calling it *Jam Suph*, i. e. *The Sea of Ruſhes*, of which the Banks are ſtill full. The *Arabians* call it, *Buhr el Calzem*, i. e. *The Sea of Cluſma*, from a Town ſo called ſtanding on the Northern Point of that Sea. 'Tis but narrow, *viz.* not above 8 or 9 Miles over in many Places, and being full of Rocks, many Ships are loſt in it, but ebbs and flows like the Ocean. It was formerly a Sea of great Trade, before the Paſſage of the *Cape of Good Hope* to the *Eaſt-Indies* was diſcover'd by the *Portugueſe*, for then all the Drugs, Spices, precious Stones, Pearls, and many other Commodities, came either by *Aleppo* or the *Red-Sea* to *Alexandria*, from whence it was convey'd into all Parts of *Europe*. There are very good Oiſters and other Shell-Fiſh taken in this Sea, as alſo the *Seaman*, *Chagrin*, which is like a Sea-Dog, and ſeveral other extraordinary Fiſh.

At the Beginning of this Sea (which is ſo famous for the Paſſage of the *Iſraelites* thro' it) ſtands *Suez*, anciently called *Arſinoe*, from the Siſter of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, who built it. It is a little Town of about 200 Houſes, hath a pretty Harbour, but the Water is ſo ſhallow, that Ships cannot put into it, nor Galleys, till they are half unloaded, but the Road is ſafe. The Galleys are ſmall, and carry no Guns, but a *Fanfera* to ſalute the Ports. Cloſe by the Harbour is a Baraque, rail'd with a great Wooden Palizado, where are 9 Culverins, and 13 Pieces of Cannon, but theſe laſt are not mounted. There is a little *Greek* Church in the Town, but it is in bad Order. The Houſes are pretty well built, and the Market-place is indifferent good. It is full of People, when any Ship arrives, or the Galleys are in the Harbour; but at other Times it is very deſolate, becauſe there is no good Water within leſs than 2 Lgs. of it.

He departed from *Suez* with a Caravan of 200 Camels, which the *Emir-Alge* had provided to carry the Coffee brought in by the Galleys to *Cairo*. The Caravan was guarded by *Arabs*. In his Way he ſaw the Caſtle *Adgegoud*, and one Day they had ſo hot a Wind, that they were forced to turn their Backs upon it to take Breath. It heat their Water ſo extreamly hot, that they could not drink it. This Wind infected the Camels ſo much, that they could not feed, and filled the Mens Mouths with Sand, ſo that had it continued the whole Day (as it continued about half of it) one half of the Caravan had periſhed; for the ſame ſort of Wind killed 2000 of the Caravan that was going to *Mecca* in one Night. All the Way is ſtrew'd with Camels Bones, which are of uſe to the Caravan; for the Drivers anoint the Feet of their Camels, which are cut or gall'd, with the Marrow they take out of them. Such as travel to Mount *Sinai* ought to make Proviſions at *Cairo* of all they ſtand in need of; for one Camel will carry all, otherwiſe they will be troubled with Lack of Meat and bad Water; for the Water on the Mountain is ſo cold, that it begets a Rheum ready to choak one.

Adgeroud, a Caſtle.

A deadly Wind.

CHAP. X.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels to* Jeruſalem, *and ſeveral other Parts of* Judæa, *from* Cairo *in* Ægypt.

Apart of the Way of Carriage.

Their Manner of Marriage.

Bad Water at Salahia.

Catie.

Salt made of Rain-Water.

THERE being little to recommend the Land of *Judea* to the Curioſity of a Traveller, but the Birth, Life and Death of our Bleſſed Saviour *Jeſus Chriſt*, acted upon the Stage, Mr. *Thevenot*, having reſolved to viſit that Country, ſtaid till *Lent*, when the Church there celebrates the Memory of his dolorous Paſſion, at which time there is a Caravan goes yearly to *Jeruſalem* from *Cairo*. They have a peculiar Way of Carriage in this Caravan from others, which is more commodious and eaſie, and that is by *Counes*, which are a kind of Hampers like Cradles, carried upon Camels, one on each ſide, and have a Back, Head and Sides, like the great Chairs uſed by ſick People. A Man rides very eaſily in them, and by a Covering over them, is defended both from Rain and Sun. The Fare of them, and the Dues paid by the Way is 18 Piaſtres for each *Coune* but the Church-men have ſome Favour, and may go for 16 Piaſtres. The Travellers muſt carry their own Proviſions, and Conveniences for dreſſing it and carrying Water. The Caravan in which he was conſiſted of 520 Camels, beſides ſeveral Horſes, Mules and Aſſes. The firſt Stage of the Caravan it at a little Town called *Hanque*, where Travellers uſually meet it, and ſo it goes on to *Balbeys* and *Corede*, and ſo to *Salahia*, where are very pleaſant Woods of Tamariſks. The Caravan lies not in theſe Towns, but lodges in the Fields under their Tents like a Camp and are guarded by certain Muſqueteers to keep it from Robbing.

In the Way from hence you paſs over a fair Bridge, laid over a part of the *Sirbonite* Lake, and you go to *Catie*, where are 2 Wells of Water, one of which is not pleaſant for drinking for its Sweetneſs, and the other, which is 2 Miles from the Town, is good Water, but it muſt ſtand a little. Here are ſold a Fiſh as long as one's Arm, as big as a Carp, and of as good a Reliſh, for a Maidin, or 5 Farthings apiece. At this Town the Caravan is preſs'd for the G. Seignior's Service, which cauſes a Delay of a Day, or more ſometimes.

Leaving *Catie*, they paſſed by a ſhallow and narrow, but long Pit, full of very white Salt, made by the Rain-Water falling upon a brackiſh Sand, and congeal'd by the Sun, as is done at *Alexandria*, and came to *Birlah*, from whence departing, they came to a Well of freſh Water, lately made by a *Sangiack* of *Ægypt* for all Travellers; but all the Way is full of quick Sands. About a Day's Journey from thence is another Well, covered with a Dome and ſupported by 4 Walls of Free-Stone, built ſquare, and the Ciſtern is alſo Free-Stone. It was built by an *Aga*, who left a Fund to maintain ſo many *Arabs*, who are daily to bring ſeveral Camels Load of Water to it. It is called, *Sibil el bar Acat*, i. e. *The Place where all may Water for God's Sake.*

Birlah.

Having paſſed this Well, they came to *Riche*, a Village not far diſtant from the Sea. It hath a Caſtle well built of little Rock Stones, as all the Houſes are. The *Cachef* of it, as alſo that of *Zaka* is ſubject to the *Cachef* of *Catie*. They have ſo many ancient lovely Marble Pillars at *Riche*, that the Coffee-Houſes and Wells are made up of them, and all their Burying-places are full.

Riche.

From *Riche* they went to *Zaka*, which is in the Deſart, and without any Habitation, but has 3 Wells of bad Water, yet the *Corſairs* uſe it. Going on they met with 3 Marble Pillars, 2 ſtanding, and 1 lying along, and a little further a Well of good Water, where there are *Saki's*. There begins a very pleaſant Country, and ſome Corn-Land, and ſo came to *Cauniones*, under the Guard of 8 *Turks*, who went with them from *Riche* to ſecure the Caravan againſt the *Arabs*. Here are alſo ſo many Marble Pillars, that their Coffee-Houſes ſtand upon them, abundance of Trees, and a great deal of good Meadow-Ground. As well the Inhabitants of the Place as the Cattle are extreamly fat. Here is alſo a large Caſtle, with a large open Place in it. The *Turks* inhabit it, and have a *Saki* of very good Water within it, and the *Moors* and *Fela's* live without. It is commanded by a *Muſeferaca*, who depends on the *Baſha* of *Cairo*, who pays him, but has but a few Soldiers under him, and thoſe paid by the *Cachef* of *Catie*. *Cauniones* is the laſt Town of *Ægypt*, and from thence to *Gaza* is not half a Day's Journey thro' a fruitful Country, abounding with

Zaka.

Cauniones.

The Caſtle.

with all Fruit-Trees, Meadows and Cattle, and several Sibils, or Wells.

Gaza described. The City of *Gaza* is about 2 Miles from the Sea, and was anciently very famous, as may be guess'd by the Ruines, *viz.* Many Marble Pillars and Tombs. It was one of the 5 Lordships of the *Philistines*, to whom *Sampson* did so much Hurt, and carry'd their Gates away, leaving them upon an Hill a Mile from it. The Castle is near the Town, and tho' small, is kept in good Order. Hard by the Castle is the *Seraglio* for the *Basha's* Wives, and above it some Ruines of an old Wall of a *Roman* Castle, made of so compact a Matter, that it cannot be broken with an Hammer. The Town is very small, but hath a good *Bezisten*, and a pretty large *Greek* Church, the Roof of which is supported with 2 great Pillars of Marble, with Cornishes of the *Corinthian* Order. The *Armenians* also have a Church there. There is an Heap of Earth near the Castle, which the People say, was the *Philistines*, which *Sampson* pulled down upon himself and the Company within it; but there are no good Signs of it. Without the Town are several good Mosques, faced with Marble, which seem to have belonged formerly to the City. From *Cairo* to this Place you can light of no Wine or Brandy, but here you find pretty good of both sorts.

The Churches.

From *Gaza* to *Rama* is 2 Days Journey thro' a lovely Plain, full of Corn, Trees and Flowers, which yield a pleasant Smell. The Villages by the Way are but sorry, but there are several Wells and Sibils, and 2 good Bridges.

Rama described. *Rama*, by the *Arabians* called *Ramala*, was anciently a City, but it's now an open Borough, and is subject to the *Basha* of *Gaza*; however, 'tis pretty large, and yields a good Prospect on the Outside. In it is the House of *Nicomedes*, which affords a Convent, a Church, and Lodgings to the *Franks*, who come hither on Pilgrimage. The Doors of all the Houses in the Town are not above 3 Foot high, to keep the *Arabs* from riding in on Horse-back. Here is a Church with a very high Steeple (which yet the People say, was as high again as it is at present) dedicated to the 40 Martyrs, who suffer'd in *Armenia*, and another to St. *George*. Heretofore was a stately large Convent here, and the Cloister seems to be pretty entire, but Christians are not permitted to enter into it. All round about the Town are a great many Wells, which served, as they say, to keep Wheat and Oats in. Some of them are very deep. Hard by the Town is a fine Cistern made with a great deal of Art upon 2 Rows of Piazza's. It was built doubtless to supply it with Water, but is not now used. Here dwell several *French* and *Dutch* Merchants, who trade in Oil, Soap Cotton, Threads and Cloth. Some Years the S. E. Wind coming from the Wilderness a-cross *Jordan*, causes a violent Heat for several Days, and brings such a prodigious Number of Locusts along with it, as cover the whole Face of the Earth, and devour all the Grass and Herbs. Most Birds eat them, and, as if Providence had put an Instinct into them to destroy them, they make a great Slaughter, more than they can eat. These Creatures lay their Eggs in Holes of the Ground a Foot deep 80 in a Bunch, which they hatch in 15 or 16 Days, and then come out in such Numbers, as would affright one. They come not to fly in less than 3 Weeks, and they will be as big as Grass-hoppers. The Sports used about this Town by the *Basha*, are hunting the wild Boar, and *Jackals*, or wild Dogs, which last they catch with a Leopard train'd up for that Purpose. The Women of this Town, according to the Custom of the *Turks*, go on certain Days in Companies out of the Town to the Tombs of their Relations, to mourn over them, and setting themselves upon their Sepulchres, make a very great Lamentation.

A fine Cistern. Locusts. Sports used.

Lydda. *Lydda*, mention'd *Acts* 9. is about 3 Miles from this Town. In the Apostles Time, when St. *Peter* cured *Æneas*, there was a flourishing Church of Christians, and it was reckon'd one of the 3 Governments in *Judæa*, 1 *Macch.* 11. 34. but 'tis at present only a small Village, seated in a Woody Country very pleasantly. There are some Remains of a Church dedicated to St. *George*, which appear'd pretty neat, in which the Christians have a small Place for their Devotions.

From *Rama* he went thro' the Mountains which are covered with thick Woods but the Road is bad, to *Jerusalem*, which by the *Turks* is called *Coudscherif*. On the Road you see at a Distance several Villages, and other Things remarkable, as *Dgib*, or the Town of *Samuel*, where, they say, that Prophet is interr'd, and the *Jews* still visit it out of Devotion. It stands upon an high Hill, and in it is a Mosque covered with a Dome, an old ruined Castle, called *Soud*, and the Natives say, that the *Maccabees* dwelt there; *Sabiea*, fruitful Places for Vines.

Dgib, or Samuel's Town.

You enter *Jerusalem* by this Road, at the *Damascus* Gate; but all *Franks* must not enter the Town before the Religious have obtain'd a Permission for them from the *Basha*, or Governour, lest they have an *Avanie* put upon them, who usually sends a Servant or two with the *Trucheman* of the Convent to search their Baggage, to see if they have no Arms, and other Things prohibited in it. After Admission, they are carried to the Convent of S. *Saviour*, where they are received with great Civilities, and all Signs of an hearty Welcome, washing their Feet and kissing them, and lodging them in convenient Apartments. One of the Monks is to take care of the Pilgrims, and conduct them to the Places to be visited. They shew them the Judgment-Gate, thro' which our Saviour passed, bearing his Cross to Mount *Calvary*; the House of *Veronica*, who wiped our Lord's Face, besmear'd with Sweat and Spittle, with her Veil, as he passed by loaden with his Cross, and for that charitable Office received his Image upon it; the House of the rich Glutton, and the Place where our Saviour said to the Women of *Jerusalem*, *Weep not for Me, but for your selves and your Children*; the Place where *Simon* the *Cyrenean* relieved our Saviour from bearing the Cross; a large Arch, where *Pilate* set our Lord, when he said, *Behold the Man*. In it are 2 Windows, separated only by a Pillar of Marble, under which is written, *Tolle, Tolle, Crucifige eum*; *Herod's* Palace, where our Lord was cloathed with a white Robe in Derision, and sent back to *Pilate*; *Pilate's* Palace, where the *Basha* lives; but the Stairs of it, which, 'tis said, our Saviour went up and down, are at *Rome*, being sent thither by St. *Helen*: They are called, *Scala Sancta*. The *Basha's* Kitchin is the Place where *Pilate* wash'd his Hands. From a Window in this Kitchin you have a Prospect of *Solomon's* Temple. The Coal-hole to this Kitchin is thought to be the Prison into which our Lord was put; *The Place of Flagellation*, which was once a Chappel so called because our Lord was scourged there; but the *Turks* make it now a Stable. Here begins the Dolorous Way, which reaches from *Pilate's* House to *Calvary* about a Mile in Length; St *Stephen's* Gate, anciently call'd, *Porta Gregis*, or the Sheeps Gate, where the Virgin at her Ascension (as they tell you) let fall her Girdle to St. *Thomas*; the Church of St. *Sepulchre*. All *Franks* pay 24 Piastres, and Monks but 12 at their first Entrance into it; but after they have been once in, they may go in again as often as it is open'd, giving only a Maidin to the *Turks* that open the Door. Before it is an open Place, pav'd with large Free-Stones, which the *Jews* dare not tread upon. It has a large Steeple, which stands on the Left Corner of the Front of the Church. It has 3 Stories of Windows, and heretofore had 18 Bells in it. It is above 70 Paces high. The Door is stately and magnificent, having over it many Figures in *Basse-Releife*, representing several Histories. It is always shut, and seal'd with the the *Basha's* Seal, unless it be open'd to some Pilgrims or Religious Persons. This Church is very spacious, and the Body is round, requiring no Light but from the Dome on the Top, which is covered with Lead, and Wainscotted with Cedar, which rots not. Under the Door is the Sepulchre, and as you go into it there is a Marble Bench for the Monks, who assist at the Celebration of the Mass of the Holy Sepulchre, to sit on. The Church is 120 Foot long, and 168 broad. The *Latins* are in Possession of half of it at least, but the Quire is in the Power of the *Greeks*. The Building in general is of *Gothick* Work, but the Chapters of the Pillars seem to be *Corinthian*, tho' the Proportions are not duely observed. The Quire is encompassed with 32 great Pillars, and shut in with Walls. Behind the Pillars all round the Church the *Orientai* Christians have made their Lodgings. These Pillars bear up a second Story in Form of a Gallery, that ranges about the Church, which was formerly in the Possession of the *Latins* altogether, but now the *Armenians* have obtained a good Part of it, and have separated it by Partitions. All the Roof is done in *Masaick* Work, but most of it defaced. Over the high Altar stands the Image of *Jesus Christ* on a great Cross, and above it are the Figures of several Angels sound-

Jerusalem described. *The Chappels about the Church.* *The Pillar of Flagellation.* *The Inscription of Christ's Cross.* *X. P. Sign. Christi.* *The Tombs of Baldwin's Children.*

ing

ing their Trumpets, done in the same sort of Work, but much damaged and defaced. Before the Altar hangs a large Basse-Branch Candlestick, and round about it several Chrystal Lamps. The Quire hath 3 Doors, *viz.* One over-against the Entry into the Holy Sepulchre, and 2 other on each side toward the high Altar. Round the Church are many Chappels: 1. The Chappel of the Angel which told the 3 *Maries*, That our Lord was risen. It is about 14 Spans in Length, 6 in Breadth, and 9 Foot high. In it is a little Altar, and 3 little Windows for Light. It was built for Ornament too. 2. The Chappel of the Sepulchre, the Door of which is 3 Foot high, and 2 Foot wide. All enter into it bare footed, and it is so little, that it will not hold above 3 kneeling. On the Right-Hand as you enter is the Place where the Body of our Lord was laid upon a Table. There are 44 Lamps in it, sent by the Emperors, the Kings of *France* and *Spain*, and the whole Place is faced within and without with white Marble, and encompassed on the Outside with 10 lovely Pillars of the same Stone. 3. The Chappel of the Apparition, where the *Latin* Monks do commonly celebrate Service. It is so called, because 'tis said, that our Lord appear'd to his Mother soon after his Resurrection there. It is a large Place, paved with Marble, Jasper and Porphyry, adorn'd with Tapistry, and furnished with Desks and Pulpits. In it are 3 Altars, and behind one of them lies a large Piece of the Pillar of Flagellation, so called becaufe our Saviour was tied to it, when he was scourged in *Pilate*'s House. It is kept in a Window made in the Wall, but so defended with an Iron-Grate, that 'tis easie to be seen, but none can touch it. There was also a Piece of the true Cross kept a long time, but the *Armenians* have stollen it away. The Lodgings of the Monks is just behind this Chappel, and above it in a Gallery are little Chambers for the Pilgrims. Before the Door of this Chappel are found 2 round Marble-Stones set in the Pavement, which are set the one in the Place where our Lord stood when he appear'd to *Mary Magdalene*, and said to her, *Noli me tangere*, Touch me not; and so is the Stone called: The other shews the Place where *Mary* stood. Over them both are Silver-Lamps burning. 4. The Chappel our Lord's Prison, which was formerly a Dungeon, where our Saviour was put, while they set up the Cross on Mount *Calvary*. It belongs to the *Greeks*. 5. The Chappel of St. *Longinus*, who was the Soldier who pierced our Saviour's Side with the Spear, but after mourned there for his Sin. 6. The Chappel of parting the Garments, because 'tis built on the Place where the Soldiers cast Lots upon our Saviour's Garments, and divided them amongst them. It belongs to the *Armenians*. 7. The Chappel of the Inscription of the Cross, because they say the Inscription of our Lord's Cross was long kept there, till it was removed to *Rome*, where it now is in the Church of the Holy Cross *in Atrio Sellerians*. This Chappel belongs to the *Abyssins*. 8. The Chappel of Invention of the Holy Cross. It was anciently a Ditch at the Foot of Mount *Calvary*, called by the Prophet *Jeremiah*, Chap. 31. *The Valley of the dead Bodies*, because here the Bodies of such as had been executed were cast, with the Instruments of their Sufferings. It belongs to the *Latins* and *Greeks*, and therefore has 2 Altars in it, and every Altar has a Dozen of Lamps belonging to them. In this Place one may easily see the Cleft of the Rock that parted when our Saviour gave up the Ghost. 9. The Chappel of St. *Helen*, which is spacious, has a Dome supported with 4 Pillars of white Marble, which being kept always wet with the Dampness of the Place, the Christians of the Country say, they weep for the Death of our Lord. In this Chappel are 2 Altars, which have many Lamps continually burning before them, and a Marble-Chair of an ancient Form, and engrav'd, wherein, 'tis said, the Holy Empress sat, while they search-ed for the Cross of our Lord below. This Chappel belongs to the *Armeniani*. Crossing the Church you come to an Altar raised in Memory of the penitent Thief, near which is, 10. The Chappel of Exprobration, or Mockery, in which there is an Altar supported by 2 Pillars and under it the Pillar of Exprobration, which is of grayish Marble, and is about 2 Foot long. It may be seen through an Iron-Grate that shuts it in. It is so called, because after the Soldiers had buffeted our Lord, they made him sit down in *Pilate*'s Hall upon the Pillar, and crown'd him with Thorns, and mock'd him, saying, *Hail King of the Jews*. This Chappel belongs to the *Abyssins*, and has 5 Lamps in it.

Going from hence, you by 18 Steps ascend Mount *Calvary*, where stands, 11. A very neat Chappel, with 2 or 3 Altars, before the first of which is an Hole, in which the Cross of *Jesus Christ* was fixed. The Hole is about 2 Foot deep, and half a Foot Diameter, dug in the Rock. It is laid round with a Silver Plate, on which are described in *Basse-Relieve* all the Parts of the Passion. On the Right-Hand is shewn the Place where stood the Cross of the penitent Thief, and on the Left the Place where stood the other Thief's. Hard by it is a round Stone to denote the Place where the Virgin *Mary* was, when *Christ* was nail'd to the Cross. This Chappel is called, *The Chappel of Crucifixion*. It is 18 Paces long, and 16 broad, and has a square Pillar in the middle that bears up the Roof, which parts it between the *Greeks* and *Latins*. The Pavement, as well as the rest of the Chappel, is very fine, being the neatest *Mosaick* Work. 12. The Chappel of the Virgin *Mary* and St. *John*, who discoursed together there when *Christ* was crucified. It belongs to the *Latins*, and the Entrance into it is on the Outside of the Church. 13. *Adam*'s Chappel, because (they say) that in that Place there was found the Skull of the first Man, from whence it was that *Calvary* was called, *The Place of a Skull*. 14. The Chappel of our Lady of Pity, because 'tis built in the Place where the B. Virgin took our Lord in her Arms, when he was let down from the Cross. It is in the Possession of the *Georgians*, who keep a Lamp always burning in it. In this Chappel are the Tombs of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign* and his Brother *Baldwin*, Kings of *Jerusalem*. They have each an Epitaph written in *Gothick* Characters:

The Chappels about the Church.

The Pillar of the Exprobation.

The Pillar of Flagellation.

The Inscription of Christ's Cross.

The Tombs of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, and his Brother *Baldwin*.

HIC IACET INCLITVS DVX
CODE FRIDVS DE BVLLON QVI
TOTAM ISTAM TERRAM AQVI
SIVIT CVLTVI XPIANO CVI⁹
ANICDA REGNET CVM XPO.
AMEN —

X. P. Sign. Christi.

Rex Baldewinus, Judas alter Machabæus,
Spes Patriæ, vigor Ecclesiæ, virtus utriusque,
Quem formidabant, cui dona tributa ferebant,
Cedar & Ægyptus, Dan, ac homicida Damascus,
Proh dolor! in modico clauditur hoc Tumulo.

The Tombs of *Baldwin*'s Children.

At the Bottom of the same Chappel on the Right-Hand is a Tomb of curious *Porphyrian* Marble about 3 Foot high, which, they say, is the Tomb of the High Priest *Melchisedeck*. As you go out of that Chappel, you see on the Right-Hand before the Church-Door, along the Wall, 4 fair Sepulchres of white Marble, which are the Children of King *Baldwin*. On one of them is an Epitaph fairly cut, but of such Characters and Abbreviations, as may be pleasing to the Curious.

Stone of Unction.

Near to this Tomb is the Stone of Unction, upon which *Joseph* of *Arimathea* anointed the Body of our Lord after it was taken down from the Cross, it is almost 7 Foot broad, and is now covered over with grayish Marble, because the Pilgrims broke off Pieces from it; it is adorned with a chequer'd Border of little white and red Marble Stones; and that no body should tread upon it, it is inclosed within an Iron-Grate. There are 8 Lamps burning over this Stone, which are maintained by all the 8 Nations that belong to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, *viz. Latins*, *Greeks*, *Abyssins*, *Cophti*, *Armenians*, *Nestorians*, and *Jacobites*; but the Stone belongs to the *Latins*. A little farther, near the *Armenians* Stairs is a round white Marble Stone even with the Pavement, where, they say, the Blessed Virgin and our Saviour's Relations sat when he was embalm'd. Going up the Stair-Case, which has 37 Steps, you enter into the Church of the *Armenians*, where you find 49 Lamps and 2 Candlesticks of 6 Branches apiece; and at the side of the Quire is a Chappel, which has 43 Lamps and a Candlestick of 8 Branches within it. Being come down from thence, you find the Chappel of the *Abyssins*, and then of the *Jacobites*, which hath its Entry at the Back of the Holy Sepulchre, in which are 35 Lamps, and at the End thereof there is a Grot, in which there are the 2 Sepulchres of *Nicodemus* and *Joseph* of *Arimathea* cut in the Depth of the Rock; for this good Man having laid our Lord's Body in the Sepulchre, which he had prepared for himself, caused another to be made for his own Body, as judging himself unworthy to be laid where his Lord had been. Before each of these Sepulchres stands a Lamp. From these Tombs you go up a few Steps into the Lodgings of the *Greeks*; and thus you have seen all Things remarkable in the Church. It belonged formerly to the *Latins* wholly, but now the other Christians for Money have obtain'd their Shares in it; so that there are belonging to this Church and always resident to officiate there 9 *Latin* Priests, who have the greatest Authority, 7 *Greek*, 5 *Armenians*, and 1 *Cophtish*. It is very pleasant to see this Church upon Festival Days, when the whole Church shines with an infinite Number of Lamps, but then 'tis so crowded, that one can hardly do his Duty with any Satisfaction.

Nicodemus and *Joseph* of *Arimathea*'s Sepulchre.

The *Greeks*, *Armenians* and *Cophti* have a particular Ceremony, which they use upon *Holy Saturday*, and that is by Prayers and Processions to bring down Holy Fire from Heaven, at which they light all the Candles and Lamps that belong to the Holy Places. It is done with many ridiculous Ceremonies, and tho' even the Archbishops and Patriarchs countenance them with a formal Procession in their Pontificals, yet 'tis all meer Juggle, and the Fire which they pretend comes down from Heaven, is probably striken out of a Flint by the Priests privately; and this the *Turks* have found out, and would have punished them for it; but the Patriarch representing it to them, that he could not pay them so much Money as he did, if they took from him the Profit of the Holy Fire, they are suffered to carry on that Cheat.

The Holy Fire.

The Description of the City of *Jerusalem*.

Other Things remarkable in *Jerusalem* are: 1. The 6 Gates, *viz.* *The Sheeps Gate*, but called now by the Christians, St. *Stephen*'s Gate, because St. *Stephen* was stoned without the City near this Gate. *Herod*'s Gate, called also, The Gate of *Jeremiah* and *Ephraim*, retains this Name either because it was built by this King, or stood near his Palace. The Valley of *Jehosaphat* ends at this Gate. The Gate of *Damascus*, because it opens into the Road to that City. The Gate of *Hebron*, or of *Joppa* and *Bethlehem*, because the Road to those Cities lies through it. The Gate of *David*, or Mount *Sion*, because it is the Way to that Mount. *The Dung-Gate*, because through it the Filth of the City they carried out. Our Lord was carried out at this Gate. This is said to be the ancienter Gate, and *David*'s and *Herod*'s next; the others are more modern. There is a 7th Gate, called, *Porta Aurea*, or, The Golden-Gate, from the Gilding that is about it, and renders it more observable than all the rest; but it has been brick'd up a long time, because the *Turks* have a Propheſie, that the Christians shall recover *Jerusalem* through that Gate, which to prevent, the *Turks* keep it brick'd up, as they also shut up all the Gates of the City, to avoid the Force of a Propheſie, on *Friday* till Noon, which says, That the Christians shall become Masters of *Jerusalem* on a *Friday* before Noon. It was through this Gate that our Saviour entred *Jerusalem*, when he rode on the Ass.

Porta Aurea, or the Golden Gate.

The Walls.

The Walls of the City are pretty handsome, and built with Free-Stone, having at convenient Distances several square Towers with Port-holes. These Walls are about 12 Foot high, and 3 Foot thick. The Emperor *Solyman* in 1559. finish'd the Rampart, which was begun by his Father *Selim*, when he took it from the Sultans of *Ægypt* in 1517. Mount *Sion* is upon the same Level with the City, and is part of it inclosed, but the highest part lies without the City. The Circumference of the City is about a Lg. the Houses stand close, and it is pretty populous, but all the Streets are narrow and crooked.

The Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants are partly *Mahometans*, and partly Natives of the Country, and *Jews*, but the first are most numerous. The *Jews* often come to settle here in their old Age, that they may be buried in the Valley of *Jehoshaphat*, and so be ready to appear at the Universal judgment first, which they believe will be in that Vale.

The Temple of *Solomon*.

The Building, which they call, The Temple of *Solomon*, is now a Mosque, which they say is built upon the Foundation of the old Temple, and the Inside is of the same Form, but in a much narrower Compass. No *Jews* or *Christians* are permitted so much as to look into the Court before it.

A Description of the Monastery of S. *Saviour*, and the Way of the Monks living in it.

The Monastery of St. *Saviour*, which is obliged to take Care of Strangers, and if any commit an Error, is fined for them, is situated between the Gate of *Bethlehem* and that of *Damascus*. The Monks are usually between 30 and 40, and have a Guardian over them. He is generally an *Italian* or *Spaniard*, and has as great an Authority as a Bishop, wearing on great Festivals a Mitre and Crosier, as one. Next to him is the Father Sollicitor, whose Business it is to maintain Correspondence with all the States of Christendom, and write Letters to them, and receive Letters from them. He likewise is to manage their Money. He ought to be a *Spaniard* born. The next Person in Authority is the Father-Vicar, who ought to be a *French* Man, and the other Monks are part *Italians*, part *Spaniards*, some *French* and a few *Germans*. The Monks are absolutely under the Command of the Guardian, who disposeth them either in this Monastery, or others in any Part of the Holy Land, as he pleaseth. Their Way of Living is very frugal, and eat little Meat thro' the whole Year, by reason of the many Fasts they are obliged to keep. They have little Fish, by reason of their Distance from *Joppa*. All Travellers which come from *Europe*, of whatsoever Religion they be, take up their Quarters with these Monks, but more through Custom than Obligation, as the *Greeks* and *Armenians* usually do with theirs. They give a civil Reception to all they entertain, though, by reason of the *Turkish* Exactions from them, they are not very rich. The Charges of the Pilgrims who visit the Holy Land are these:

The Charges of Travellers in the H. Land.

Upon your Arrival at *Joppa*, the neareſt Port in the Holy Land, you pay the *Aga*, or Governour 14 Crowns, half of which he gives to the *Drogemans*, or Guides of the Monastery, to find you an Horse, and conduct you to *Jerusalem*.

When you come to *Jerusalem* you must pay 2 Crowns and half for going through the Gate, Half a Crown to the Officer, 2 Crowns and half to the chief *Drogeman* of the Monastery, and one Crown to the 2d *Drogeman*.

The first time you go into the Church of the Holy Sepulchre you must give 15 Crowns, and afterwards every time the Door is opened for you 2 Crowns and half, and 30 Sols to a *Turk* that lives hard by, and 15 Sols to the Porter.

For visiting the Holy Places, which are out of *Jerusalem*, with what is given to the *Drogeman*, will amount to about 3 Crowns. For visiting the Sepulchre of *David* the *Turks* will have 2 Crowns and half, and the Charges of going to *Bethlehem* with a *Drogeman* amounts to 4 Crowns, but if you will visit some extraordinary Places, it will cost you a great deal more, for there are no Prizes fixed.

For making the *Jerusalem* Mark on the Arm, there is commonly given to the Maker of it a Chequin of Gold, which is 2 Crowns and half, but the *Turks* will have more of such as they see fond of it.

At the Passover each Pilgrim, who is then at *Jerusalem*, is obliged to give 10 Crowns for going to *Jordan* to the *Basha*, who sends some of his Men for a Convoy to you, but at any other Time it will cost you 100 Crowns.

When

When you depart from *Jeruſalem*, you muſt make a Preſent to the Convent for your kind Entertainment; but this is left to your Generoſity. The *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants give generally 50 Crowns a Man; but to any particular Monk, yea, to him that ſhews you all the Places, or to any with whom you have a particular Friendſhip, you muſt give nothing; and for this the Convent gives you a Certificate of your having viſited the Holy Places.

Rarities purchaſed in the H. Land.

The greateſt Rarities which the Pilgrims purchaſe about *Jeruſalem*, are Roſes and Shell'd Olives of *Jericho*. The Roſes are a curious Plant, and have this Thing peculiar to them, that when they are put into Water by Night or Day, they will blow a-freſh, but being taken out they cloſe again inſenſibly. Of the Olives the Skin is green, but when that is taken off, the Fruit is nothing but Wood, which being crack'd, has a Kernel within it, as big as that of a Pine-Apple, or Piſtacho. It is ſoft, and of a Cheſnut Colour, but has no Taſte.

The Burying Place of the Kings of *Jeruſalem*.

From *Jeruſalem* he travell'd to *Bethany*, and firſt view'd the Burying-places of the ancient Kings of *Jeruſalem*, which are juſt without the City. They are like a fair Palace for the Dead. You enter firſt into a large Court made in the Rock, which ſerves for a Wall to it, and on the Left-Hand there is a Gallery cut out of the Rock with ſeveral Pillars, well beautified with many Figures cut out in the Stone. Then you paſs through a Door into a fair Room, where there are ſeveral fair Tombs cut out of the Rock. Near this Rock is a Cave, where the Prophet *Jeremiah* is ſaid to have compoſed his Lamentations.

Bethany.

From theſe he paſſed on his Way to *Bethany*. In the Way he ſaw the Place where *Judas* hang'd himſelf, after he had betray'd his Maſter, and a little further that where *Jeſus Chriſt* curſed the Fig-Tree. Drawing near to *Bethany*, he ſaw the Houſe of *Simon the Leper*, where *Mary Magdalene* pour'd the Box of precious Ointment on our Saviour's Head. *Mark* 14. 3. At *Bethany*, which is not above 3 *Italian* Miles from *Jeruſalem*, he ſaw upon a little riſing Ground the Ruines of the Houſe or Caſtle of *Lazarus*, and at the Foot of the Hill his Sepulchre, where *Jeſus Chriſt* raiſed him to Life, after he had been dead 4 Days. 'Tis a little Grot, with a Table, whereon the Body of *Lazarus* was laid, and on which all the Prieſts that come to *Jeruſalem* are privileged to ſay Maſs. The Borough of *Bethany* conſiſts only of a few ſmall Houſes and Huts, inhabited by *Arabs*, who are Husband-Men. Some Olive-Trees grow about this Town that bear good Fruit, and a little out of it are the Foundations of the Houſe of *Mary* and *Martha*, the Siſters of *Lazarus*, and hard by the Well where *Martha* ſaid unto *Jeſus Chriſt*, *Lord, if thou hadſt been here my Brother had not died.*

Lazarus's Houſe and Sepulchre.

Jericho.

From *Bethany* he travell'd to *Jericho* all along the Mountains, through a very Stony Road. *Jericho* is about a Quarter of a Lg. from *Bethany*. It was formerly a famous City, but at preſent conſiſts only of 30 or 40 Brick-Houſes, inhabited by *Arabs*. Near to theſe Dwellings he ſaw the Houſe of *Zacheus*. In the Plains of *Jericho* grow the famous Roſes before-mention'd, as alſo in the Deſarts of Mount *Sinai*.

Jordan.

From hence he departed to the River *Jordan*, which is a River not above half as wide as the *Seine* at *Paris*, but is deep, very rapid, and the Water very thick, but the People ſay, 'twill not corrupt. It has its Sourſe from 2 Springs near Mount *Libanus*, called *Jor* and *Dan*, from whence it takes its Name, and running from E. to S. paſſeth through the Sea of *Tiberias*, and loſeth it ſelf in the naſty Lake *Aſphaltites*. It is full of Fiſh, and on both ſides beſet with thick and pleaſant Woods, which ſound with the wrabbling Notes of Thouſands of Nightingales. Here all perform their Devotions, and the *Armenians*, *Greeks* and *Cophti*, the Men naked, and the Women in their Smocks, waſh'd themſelves and their Linen in it, having ſome Water pour'd on their Heads in Memory of our Lord's Baptiſm, and when they go away they carry along with them Jars and Bottles of Water, and Sticks to keep as Relicts.

The Dead Sea.

The *Dead Sea*, into which *Jordan* empties it ſelf, is the Place where *Sodom* and *Gomorrha*, with the other Cities, which were deſtroyed by Fire from Heaven, ſtood. The Water is very clear, but very ſalt, and in ſome Places they find congeal'd Salt, as tranſparent as Chryſtal. They that go into it cannot ſink, tho' they neither move Hand nor Foot. There are no Fiſh in this Sea, by reaſon of the Saltneſs of it; for if any are carry'd into it by the Violence of *Jordan*, they die immediately. It is 100 Miles in Length, and 25 over. The Land within 3 Lgs. round is white, and mingled with Salt and Aſhes, that it is not capable of Tillage. 'Tis ſaid, that there are Apple-Trees growing on the ſide of this Sea which bear a fair Fruit, but within-they are full of Aſhes. There are many Camel-Loads of Bitumen got daily out of this Lake. About a Lg. from the Town of *Jericho* is the *Mount of Faſting*, where our Lord, after he came out of *Jordan*, paſſed 40 Days and 40 Nights in a Grot faſting, being all the time tempted of the Devil. It is ſmooth in ſome Places like Marble, and hard to aſcend. On the Top of it the Devil ſhew'd our Saviour all the Kingdoms of the World; and formerly a Monaſtery ſtood there. At a little Diſtance from the Hill is *Elias*'s Well, which being naturally bitter, *Eliſha* ſweetned it by caſting Salt into it.

The Apples of Sodom.

Eliſha's Well.

Having ſurvey'd theſe Things with much Patience, he return'd to *Jeruſalem*, where having tarry'd a few Days, he went to *Bethlehem*; and that he might ſee every Thing, he took the Way of the Wilderneſs. Next to *Jeruſalem* is *David's*, or rather *Solomon's* Fiſh-Pond, becauſe it was made by one of thoſe Kings for their Diverſion. It is 150 Paces long and 60 broad, but at preſent it has no Water. Juſt by it is the Place where *Solomon* was Crown'd, A little further in the Valley is the Monaſtery of the *Georgians*, which is painted all over after the *Greek* Faſhion. Near the high Altar is an Hole covered with Silver, in which hangs 10 Lamps always burning. The Natives ſay, that there ſtood the Cypreſs, of which the Croſs of *Jeſus* was made, and the *Greeks* have a Church dedicated to it, which is very neat, and not far from it. They have a little Croſs made of the ſame Wood. At a little Diſtance from the Road, upon a very high Hill, is the Place where the *Maccabees* lie buried, and the Ruines of their Houſe. *Simon* built their Monuments very magnificent, as you find 1 *Macch.* 13. 25, 26, *&c.* and there are ſtill 7 Arches remaining under which the Bodies were laid.

A *Georgian* Monaſtery.

The *Maccabees* Tombs.

The firſt Village you meet with is St. *John*'s, where that holy Man was born, and in the Place, which is ſaid to be the Cave of his Birth, was once a Church built, dedicated to him, and belonging to the *Franciſcans*. There is a little Dome belonging to it. The Village is inhabited by *Arabs*. The Country hereabouts is very Stony. Going on, you come to a Place, where the Virgin *Mary* went to viſit her Couſin *Elizabeth*. There are ſtill ſeen the Remains of a large Edifice, ſuppoſed to be the Ruines of a Church built here by *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine*, in Memory of her.

Then having paſſed by a very fine Well, which falls from the Neighbouring Hills, he came to *Modin*, which is ſituated on a very high Hill. It was anciently a very conſiderable Place, but is now a ſmall Village, as are almoſt all the Places mention'd in Holy Writ. Then he came to the Wilderneſs of St. *John Baptiſt*, where they ſhew you a Cave whether *Elizabeth* carried her Son to protect him from the Fury of *Herod*, a Story not mentioned in Scripture. Above the Cave are the Remains of a large Building, ſuppoſed to be a Monaſtery. A little further is a Plain, where *David* ſlew *Goliath*, and near it at the Foot of a Mountain a Fountain, where *Philip* baptized the Eunuch to Queen *Candace*. The Monks ſay, this was the Valley of *Eſchol*, and 'twas near this Fountain the *Iſraelitiſh* Spies cut the wonderful Cluſter of Grapes, which they carried between 2 of them. After this you paſs by the Place where, 'tis ſaid, the 50 Pillars, which are to be ſeen in the Church at *Bethlehem*, were cut out of the Rock with Hammer and Chizzel. Next you arrive at a Borough called *Bertieta*, near which is the Plain of *Sennacharib*, ſo called, becauſe his Army was there deſtroy'd by an Angel in one Night, as *Iſaias* relates, *Chap.* 37. 36. and then you arrive at *Bethlehem*.

Modin.

The Valley of *Eſchol.*

Bethlehem deſcribed.

This Place is famous in Scripture for *David*'s and our Saviour's Births there. 'Tis at preſent a pretty big Village, and the Inhabitants get their Livelihood by making Chaplets and Croſſes, *&c.* There is a fair Convent in it, inhabited by *Latin* Friars. It has 2 large Courts, and in the ſecond are 3 Ciſterns, and a Place vaulted over, whoſe Arch is ſupported by 6 Pillars of Garnet, where St. *Jerom* read and taught the Holy Scriptures; but the *Turks* have made it a Stable. On the Left-hand of a 3d ſmall Court, which

A Convent.

has a small Door 3 Foot high, and 2 Foot wide, you go to the Cloister, where are the Lodgings of the Monks. It has also a very strong Door for the same Reason as the former, *viz.* To keep out the *Arabs*. In the same Court is the Church dedicated to St. *Catherine*, which is in the Possession of the *Greeks*. Here are to be seen the 50 Pillars above-mention'd. Under this Pillar they shew the Place where *Jesus* was born, and where the Virgin *Mary* laid him in the Manger, and where the Wise Men (which, they say, were 3 Kings) worshipped him, while the Virgin *Mary* sat upon a Stone that lies hard by. The Cave is cut out of the solid Rock, and is large enough to walk handsomely in. There is also to be seen St. *Joseph*'s Altar, and the Sepulchre of the Innocents, who lie there buried with their Mothers, who were slain with them, in hiding themselves with them. Here is also the Oratory of St. *Jerom*, where he translated the Bible out of *Greek* into *Latin*, and by it a Chappel, wherein stands his Tomb and 2 Altars, the one on his Tomb, and the other on that of St. *Paula* and her Daughter *Eustochium*. St. *Jerom* made the Epitaph on *Paula*'s Tomb in these Terms:

The Church.

St. *Jerom*'s Epitaph on *Paula* and *Eustochium*.

Obiit hic Paula *ex nobilissimis Romanorum Corneliis & Gracchis orta, cum Viginti annos vixisset in Cœnobiis a se institutis, cui tale Epitaphium posuit Hieronymus*

Scipio quem genuit, Paulæ *fudere Parentes*
Gracchorum Soboles, Agamemnonis inclita Proles.
Hoc jacet in tumulo, Paulam dixere priores.
Eustochii Genetrix, Romani prima Senatus.
Pauperiem Christi, & Bethleemiti rura secuta.

The Great Church, which was built by St. *Helena*, is a beautiful and spacious Building. It is in the Possession of the *Greeks*; but they wronged the *Latins* of it, by giving the *Turks* Money. It has an high Roof of Cedar-Wood extraordinary well wrought and Leaded over, with many fair Windows, that make it very light. The Body is supported on both sides with 2 Rows of high and great Marble-Pillars, on every one of which is the Picture of a Saint, and over them all the Wall is painted with lovely *Mosaick* Work of Green upon a Ground of fine Gold. Formerly the Inside was lined with beautiful Marble, but the *Turks* have taken it away to adorn their Mosques. The *Greeks* have a very fine Font in it. The Quire is very large, and inclosed by a Wall. The *Armenians* have almost a 3d part of the Church, which they separate from the rest by Rails. At the farthest End of the Quire almost stands the high Altar, and on each side of it 2 Chappels, which make a kind of Cross. On the Right side of the Altar is a Pair of Stairs, which lead up to a Tower, which was once the Steeple to the Church, but now is the Lodgings of the *Greeks*. There are several Pillars in the Quire, which make up those in the Body 50. Under the great Altar of this Church also there is a little Church, or Chappel, where the *Greeks* pretend that our Saviour was born, and there are 2 Figures of a Woman on her Knees, and a little Boy lying by her, which is said to be the Virgin *Mary* and her Son *Jesus*. In this Chappel are always about 30 Lamps burning. In a Chappel 3 Steps lower is the Place where, they say, the Manger stood, where our Lord was laid, but the Manger it self is at *Rome* in the Church of *Santa Maria Majora*. But whether these be the real Places may be a Dispute with such as have their Minds clear'd from the Fumes of Superstition and Covetousness, which are very predominant in such as shew and view these Curiosities. But what is most certain, is the Marks which all the Christian Pilgrims have made upon their Arms by the *Latins* at *Bethlehem*. They have several Marks made in Wooden Molds, of which the Persons who desire them make Choice of such an one, as he pleases. Then they fill it with Coal-Dust, and applying it to the Arm, leave the Mark of it there. Then stretching out the Skin, they prick it exactly in the Lines with 2 Needles fasten'd in the End of a Cane, which they dip as they are doing it in Ink mingled with Ox-Gall. This they repeat 2 or 3 times before 'tis finished, which makes it very painful, and all the Arm will swell 3 times as big as ordinary, and cause a slight Fever; but all is over in 3 or 4 Days, and when the Crust is off, the Mark appears as lively, as if it were painted, and will continue fresh as long as a Man lives. Such as have these Marks upon their Breasts, as some will, undergo much greater Pain, and run a greater Hazard.

The Great Church de-scribed.

Little Church un-der it.

The Jerusalem Marks and the Way of making them.

When he had taken a View of *Bethlehem*, he went to the Holy Places which are about it, *viz.* *Boticilla*, a Town where none but *Greeks* do or can live; for, they say, if a *Turk* offer to live in it, they die within 8 Days. 2. The Church of St. *George*, which is a *Lg.* distant from it, where there is a great Iron-Ring fasten'd to a Chain, thro' which the People, both *Moors* and *Christians*, pass, when they are troubled with any Infirmity, and (as they say) they are immediately cured. 3. The Seal'd Fountain, made by *Solomon*, as is supposed, and mentioned in Holy Scripture, *Cant.* 4. 12. It is in an Hole under Ground, thro' which you must be let down with a lighted Candle, where you find 3 Reservatories of Water very large and deep. They are filled with a Spring, which comes cross the Rocks from the adjoining Mountains. From this Fountain the Water is convey'd by a Aqueduct to *Jerusalem*, but the *Arabs* have broken it down to get the Water. 4. Near to this Place is a pretty Castle, built about 50 Years since for taking the *Caffares*, or Customary Tribute of the Caravans of *Hebron*. A little further are the 3 Fish-Ponds of *Solomon*, which are cut out of the Rock, and lie one a little lower than the other to receive the Current, which proceeds from the highest. *Solomon*'s Concubines lived near them, and in the Valley not far from them is the Garden of *Solomon*, called *Hortus Conclusus*, because 'tis shut in on both sides with 2 high Hills, that serve it for a Wall. 5. The Mountain *Engedi*, where *David* cut off *Saul*'s Skirt, and about half a Lg. from it is a Castle upon an high Hill, called *Bethulia*, which the *Franks* maintain'd 40 Years after they had lost the City of *Jerusalem*. 6. The Well, where the Virgin desiring to drink, when she fled from the Persecution of *Herod*, and the People of the Country refusing to draw Water for her, it swell'd of it self up to the Mouth. 7. The Place where the Shepherds watched over their Flocks, when the Angels brought them the glad Tidings of *Christ*'s Birth. There are the Ruines of an old Church, built by St. *Helen* in that Place. All the Inhabitants thereabouts are Shepherds to this Day, because it is a fertile Country.

Boticilla. St. George's Church. The seal'd Fountain. A Castle. Solomon's Fish-Ponds. Engedi. Bethulia. The Virgin's Well.

Returning to *Jerusalem* a different Way from that he came, he saw *David*'s Well, of which *David* desir'd to drink, but when certain of his Men had fetch'd Water for him with Hazard of their Lives, he would not drink of it. It is a large Well, and hath 3 Mouths. It is now at some Distance from the Town; but 'tis said in Scripture to be at the Gate, which shews, that it was of much greater Extent than now it is. About a Quarter of a Lg. further is *Rachel*'s Sepulchre, mentioned *Gen.* 35. 19, 20. 'Tis cut out of a Rock cover'd with a Dome, supported with 4 square Pillars. Northward of this Tomb is a Piece of Ground, called, *The Pease-Field*, because there are little Stones like Pease, which, they say, were made upon this Occasion: The Virgin *Mary* going one Day from *Bethlehem* to *Jerusalem*, saw an Husbandman sowing, and she asking him what he sow'd, he reply'd, Stones; which rustick Reply, by God's Judgment, cost him dear, for the Pease which he was sowing produced nothing but Stones, and ever since the Field has yielded nothing else.

David's Well. Rachel's Sepulchre. The Pease-Field.

The next Thing remarkable is *Jacob*'s Tower, said to be built by him, when he return'd out of *Mesopotamia*, where he dwelt 23 Years, because the Plains were convenient for his Flocks. Here *Rachel* died. There are nothing now remaining of it but the Ruins. Round about this Tower are the Foundations of some ancient Houses, which, the Natives say, are the Ruins of the City *Rama*.

Jacob's Tower.

About half way between *Bethlehem* and *Jerusalem* the *Greeks* have a Monastery, dedicated to the Prophet *Elijah*, whom they pretend to have been born there, and they shew you a Stone with the Print of a Man's Body on it, which, they say, is the Form of the Prophet's Body, who lay on it when he fled from *Jezebel*. From hence there is a neat Prospect both toward *Jerusalem* and *Bethlehem*. Near this Monastery is the Place where, they pretend, the Prophet *Habakkak* was, when the Angel took him up, and carried him with Provision to *Daniel* in the Lions Den at *Babylon*. There are some Remains of an House here, and the *Latins* say, they are Parts of that Prophet's House. A little further on the Road is a Well, where they say, that the 3 Wise Men of the East rested themselves when

The Greek Monastery of Elijah. Habakkuk.

when they return'd from *Herod*, and the Star appear'd to them afresh. They shew also hard by, the Place where anciently stood the Turpentine-Tree, which, they say, stoop'd to the Virgin *Mary*, when going to *Jerusalem* to present her Son in the Temple, she sat down under it. A Quarter of a Lg. further is the House of *Simeon the Just*, who held our Saviour in his Arms when he was presented in the Temple. Part of it is still standing. Going on you come to a Village, called, *The Village of the Evil Council*, because there *Caiaphas* is said to have given that ill Advice, That 'twas expedient that *Christ* should be put to Death. Drawing near to *Jerusalem* is a Pond, said to be the Bath of *Bathsheba*. It is of the same Form as *Solomon*'s Fish-Pond. It was 308 Foot long, 244 broad, and the Depth is 88 Paces. It is at the Foot Mount *Sion*, where *David*'s House formerly stood, so that he might easily from it see *Bathsheba* washing her self. Just by this Bath is the Valley of Giants, who lived to the Time of *David*.

The House of Simeon the Just.

The Valley of Giants.

Being at *Jerusalem*, he at Leisure saw several other remarkable Things in and about the City, *viz.* The Grot where the 8 Apostles hid themselves, when our Saviour was taken, where are some Pictures of those Apostles still to be seen; then the Place where the *Greek* Strangers are interr'd, and the Place where the *Jews* hid the Fire of the Altar by *Jeremy*'s special Order, when they were carried Captives to *Babylon* by *Nebuchadnezzar*. When *Nehemiah* return'd from Captivity with his Brethren he sought for it, but could find nothing but an unctious Clay, which laying upon the Altar, it took Fire and was consumed. Close by this Pit there is a Mosque, with a Reservatory of Water.

The Pool of Siloam.

Then he went to the Pool of *Siloam*, whither our Lord sent the blind Man to wash, after he had anointed his Eyes with Clay and Spittle, which restor'd his Sight to him. Then he came to the Place where the Prophet *Isaiah* was sawn alive in two by the Middle with a Wooden-Saw, by the Command of King *Manasses*; and after that the Virgin's Fountain; where, 'tis said, she wash'd our Saviour's Clouts. You go down to it by 30 Steps, and they say, that such as are sick of Fevers by bathing in it and drinking the Waters are perfectly cured. It comes from the Pool of *Siloah*. Not far from thence is the Mount of *Scandal*, where the Concubines of *Solomon* made him commit Idolatry in Sacrificing to the Idols of *Moloch* and *Chemosh*. Another time he went to *Bethphage*, where he saw the Place where the Ass stood when our Saviour sent for him to ride into *Jerusalem* on *Palm-Sunday*; as also the Grot where St. *Peter* wept bitterly for his Sins in denying his Lord, after the Cock crow'd, together with the Place where the *Jews* endeavoured to take away the Body of the Virgin from the Apostles, as they were going to bury her, but were immediately punished for it.

The Mount of Scandal.

Mount Sion.

Then he went to Mount *Sion*, about 5 or 600 Paces distant from the City, where he eat his last Supper with his Disciples, wash'd their Feet, and instituted the Holy Sacrament, appear'd to his Disciples 8 Days after his Resurrection the Doors being shut, and said, *Peace be unto you*, and the Holy Ghost descended on the Virgin and 12 Apostles at *Pentecost*. In this Place are the Sepulchres of *David* and *Solomon*. About 100 Years since this Mountain was within the Town, and possess'd by the *Latin* Monks of the Order of St. *Francis*; but since Sultan *Solyman* rebuilt the Walls of it, 'tis excluded the Town, and the Monks dispossessed of it. The *Turks* have built a Mosque upon it, into which no *Christians* are suffer'd to enter, close by which is shewn the Place where the Virgin *Mary* died, and on the Left-Hand toward the City the Place where St. *John* said Mass. About 150 Paces from the Mount toward the City is a Church, held by the *Armenians*, which is built in the Place where *Caiaphas*'s House stood, and upon the Altar lies the Stone, which shut the Door of our Saviour's Monument, which is 7 Foot long, 3 Foot broad, and as many thick, and on the Right-Hand is the Prison where *Caiaphas* put our Lord, while he consulted with the Priests and Elders what to do with him. As you go out of the Church, on the Left-Hand in a low Court there is an Orange-Tree, which stands in the Place where *Peter* warm'd himself when he denied his Lord and Master thrice, and 7 or 8 Steps from it a Pillar, where the Cock roosted when he crow'd.

Caiaphas's House.

The House of Annas.

Going into the City by the Gate of *Sion*, you come to the House of *Annas* the High Priest, which is now an *Armenian* Church, who have another dedicated to St. *James the Less*, built by St. *Helena*, in the Place where he was beheaded by *Herod Agrippa*. All the Light which this Church has is let in by a Dome on the Top, which has only a Grate of Iron to keep Things out. Over-against this Church is the House of St. *Thomas* the Apostle. No *Turk* dare enter into it, because (they say) that all that go into it die there. Then he went into the House of St. *Mark*, where the Apostles and Disciples met together to pray St. *Peter* out of Prison. The *Syrians* have a Church there, built by St. *Helena*. Then he was led to the House of *Zebedee*, the Father of *James* and *John* the Evangelist, which was the Place of their Nativity, and is now made a Church by the *Greeks*. From hence he went to see 2 Churches of the *Abyssins*, and then a Chappel with a Dome to it, under which *Mary* the *Egyptian* did Penance, when she could not get into the Holy Sepulchre. This Chappel is the Place where the Holy Virgin and *John* the Evangelist were when our Lord was crucified. Then he went through the Ruins of a great Pile of Building, where heretofore the Knights of St. *John* of *Jerusalem* lived, and having view'd the Prison where *Herod* had put St. *Peter*, when the Angel delivered him, he return'd to the Convent.

St. Mark's House.

The House of Zebedee.

Having staid a few Days with the Monks, he resolved to leave *Jerusalem*, and so giving them not only Thanks, but a Reward for their many Civilities and Entertainment, he departed with their Blessings toward *Emmaus*. He went thro' the Gate of *Bethlehem*, and in the Way was shewn the Place where our Lord met the 2 Disciples going to *Emaus*, which, they say, were *Cleophas* and St. *Luke*, as also a Well, where they drank together, and coming to the Castle of *Emaus*, the Place where they knew our Saviour by breaking of Bread; but the Castle is little else but Ruines. Here he and his Company hired Horses and a *Drogeman* for 14 Piastres apiece to conduct him to *Jaffa*, and from thence by Water to pass to *Acre*, and so to *Nazareth*. The Road is bad to *Rama* a good Way, but then good. It is 8 Lgs. from *Jerusalem*.

Emmaus.

After a short Stay here he departed to *Jaffa*, which is but 4 Lgs. further. *Jaffa*, anciently call'd *Joppa*, was of old a considerable City, but hath nothing of its former Splendor now remaining. It is built upon the Top of a Rock by the Sea-shore, and the Port, which with some old Towers is all that is remarkable in it, is at the Bottom of the Hill, though there are great Remains of Buildings. The House where all Pilgrims lodge is on the Sea-shore, and in the Possession of the Monks, who make Advantage of them, by letting them have Horses, a *Drogeman* and a Passport to *Jerusalem*, and no Man must stir without these. The Tax is 14 Crowns a Man. The House is said to be that which of old was the Dwelling of *Simon* the Tanner, where St. *Peter* lodged when he raised *Tabitha* from the Dead, and from whence *Cornelius* fetched him to preach the Gospel to himself and Friends. It was here that *Jonas* took Ship to flie from the Presence of the Lord, when he commanded to go and preach Repentance to the *Ninivites*. This Place is also noted among the Heathens for the fabulous Story of *Andromeda*, who was hereabouts tied to a Rock to be devoured by the Sea-Monsters, but *Perseus* falling in Love for her Beauty, delivered her, by killing the Monster. Into this Port came the Cedars which *Solomon* caused to be cut in Mount *Libanus* to build the Temple of *Jerusalem*. It was also in the same Place that *Mary Magdalene* and her Sister *Martha*, with their Brother *Lazarus*, were by the *Jews* put on board an old shatter'd Vessel without Rudder, Sails, or Oars, and left to the Mercy of the Seas and Winds. The Town is but thinly inhabited, and the Port serves only for small Vessels, because it is so shallow.

Jaffa, or Joppa.

Simon the Tanner's House.

Acts 9. 11.

The Story of Andromeda.

From *Jaffa*, after some Days, he took Ship for *Acre*. By the Way he had a Sight of *Antipatris*, *Cesarea*, *Tortosa*, called by the *Franks*, *Castel Pelegrino*, and Mount *Carmel*, which runs out a great way into the Sea. Here he was taken by a *Corsair* of *Malta*, and being stripp'd of every thing valuable, was set ashore in a very bad Equipage at *Acre*. On the side of Mount *Carmel* near the Sea is seated a famous Monastery, inhabited by the *Carmelite* Monks. There are but 3 Monks belonging to it, it is so small. They observe a very severe Rule; for besides that they are removed from all Worldly Conversation, they go bare-footed, and may neither eat Flesh nor drink Wine, and if they need either, must go to some other Place.

Mount Carmel described.

The Monastery of Mount Carmel described.

Place. Nor will they ſuffer Pilgrims to eat Fleſh in their Convents, but allow them to drink Wine. They are poor, and could not ſubſiſt, did not the *French* Merchants of *Acre* give them ſome conſiderable Alms. The Chriſtians had a better Convent upon the Top of it, before they loſt the *Holy Land*, but being driven out of it, are forced to content themſelves with this. Here they ſhew a Grot, where the Prophet *Eliſha* dwelt, and 2 Fountains, which, they ſay, he made to ſpring out of the Earth, both very good Water. Not far from them are ſtately Ruines of a Monaſtery of St. *Bernard*, who was ſent by St. *Albert*, Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, to gather together the *Hermites*, who lived diſtinctly in the Mountain, and bring them under ſome Rule. A little lower alſo they ſhew a Grot, where the Prophet *Elias* lived and inſtructed the Faithful. It is fine cut out of the Rock, and the *Turks* have a ſmall Moſque near it. On the Mountains are found petrified Melons and other Fruits, as Olives, Grapes, *&c.* yea, and Oiſters. The Fruits retain the ſame Shapes, both within and without, as the true ones. This Mountain, and all the Country about it, are commanded by a Prince, named the *Emir-Tharabec*, who pays yearly to the G. Seignior a Tribute of 12 Horſes.

Acre. *Acre* is a Town of *Paleſtine*, lying on the Sea, anciently called *Acco*, and after *Ptolemais*. It was long held by the Knights of *Malta*, and has been a very large and ſtrong Place, as appears by the Ruines, but at preſent 'tis almoſt wholly ruin'd, and the Harbour of it, though very great, is near filled with Rubbiſh, becauſe the Sea has ſwallowed up a great part of the Town. It depends on the *Baſha* of *Sephet*. Hiſtory mentions, that heretofore there were as many Churches in this Town, as there are Days in the Year, and at preſent there appear the Ruines of about 30. There are ſtately Remains of one, which they ſay belonged to the Knights of *Malta*, who had a Treaſure there marked with a Piece of Marble, which they fetched away not many Years ſince in a Ship that came purpoſely for it, though under a Pretence of buying Goods. The Palace of the Great Maſter is to be ſeen there ſtill, but very ruinous; but the Back-Gate towards the Sea, by which the Knights abandon'd the Town, and went a Shipboard, when they could no longer defend it, is ſtanding ſtill. There is alſo ſtill remaining a fair Stair-Caſe, and ſome Buildings made by the *Emir Far-Eddin*, with ſeveral other very lovely Ruines. There is alſo a ſquare Tower in *Acre*, which ſerves for a Caſtle, with an Houſe cloſe by it, which the *Baſha* uſeth for his *Seraglio*, when he is in the Town, which is not often, becauſe 'tis but little inhabited, having not above 50 Huts, rather than Houſes. The *Europeans*, which are moſt *French*, live in an *Han*, which is a large round Building of 2 Stories, divided into ſeveral Apartments, whereof the lower Story ſerves for Magazines, or Ware-Houſes to lay their Merchandizes in, and the upper is for Lodgings.

The Knights of *Malta*.

Many Churches.

The Palace of the Knights of *Malta*.

A Tower.

Han.

From *Acre* he departed to *Nazareth*. In the Way he paſſed through ſuch rich Grounds, that the Graſs was up to the Horſe's Belly, being little travelled, becauſe of the *Arabs*, who infeſt the Ways. *Nazareth* is an ancient Town, ſtanding upon a little Height at the End of a large Plain, called *Eſdraelon*. St. *Matthew* and *Luke* call it a City, and doubtleſs then it was a large and ſtrong Place, but now 'tis a mean Village, conſiſting only of ſome Peaſants Houſes. The Inhabitants are moſt of them *Arabians* and *Turks*, but among them are a few *Greeks* and *Maronites*. According to the ancient Deſcription of it, it was a very fertile and pleaſant Country, which by reaſon of the Temperature of its Air, produced many Herbs and Flowers, but at preſent there is none of them to be found about it. The *Jews* have a Synagogue here, and the Monks of the *Holy Land* have a Monaſtery almoſt new built, being given by *Emir Farr-Edden*, and commodious enough for the Number, which is not above 20. Within the Compaſs of the Monaſtery is the Cave of the Annunciation, where the Angel told *Mary* of the Incarnation of our Lord, by her Conception, and over it is built a ſmall Church. There are 2 lovely Pillars of grayiſh Stone in it, which is believed St. *Helena* placed there, one where the Angel ſtood when he delivered, the other where the Virgin ſtood when ſhe received the Meſſage. One of them has 2 Foot broke off from the Bottom, ſo that it remains hanging to the Roof by its Chapiter. The

Nazareth deſcribed.

The Inhabitants.

A Synagogue of the *Jews*.

Cave is 15 Foot long, and 6 broad, and is well adorn'd and lined with carved Work, and by it is a Place, which, they tell you, was the Virgin's Chamber. The Place where St. *Joſeph* dwelt is ſhewn, and his Shop is cut out of the Rock. There are alſo many Holy Places, as they are accounted, about *Nazareth*, which the Pilgrims viſit with a blind Devotion, *viz.* a great Hill, called the *Precipice*, 3 Quarters of a Lg. diſtant from *Nazareth*. It is very rough and craggy, and is ſaid to be the Place from whence the *Jews* would have thrown down our Saviour headlong, *Luke* 4. 21. but he making himſelf inviſible, made his Eſcape from them; but the Monks ſay, he retreated into the Cave within it. From the Top of this Hill you have a fine Proſpect over the Plain of *Eſdraelon*, which is judged to be 6 Lgs. long, and 4 broad, and on the one ſide of it lies *Nain*, where lived the Widow, whoſe Son our Lord raiſed from the Dead, and which lies at the Foot of the Hill *Hermon*, mentioned in the *Pſalms*. On the other ſide of the Plain lies the Borough of *Endor*, where *Jael*, the Wife of *Heber*, who killed *Siſera*, lived, and near which runs the River *Kiſon*, in the Valley. Betwixt the Precipice and *Nazareth* there are ſome Ruines of a Nunnery, where was a Church dedicated to our Lady of Fear, becauſe they tell you, that there the Virgin, fearing the *Jews* would precipitate her Son, fell down, and left the Impreſſion of her Knees, which is indeed well marked, in the Rock. The Monks ſay, they ſaw'd off the Piece of Rock in which it is, but they were not able to carry it away. Upon a little Hill 600 Paces diſtant from it, they ſhew a great Stone, called our Lord's Table, becauſe, as Tradition goes among them, our Lord and his Diſciples often eat upon it. Cloſe by it is a Fountain, called St. *Peter's* Well, becauſe our Lord returning back to the Town with his Apoſtles, and St. *Peter* being a-dry, our Saviour made that Well to ſpring out of the Ground.

Joſeph's Houſe and Shop.

Nain.

Hermon.

Our Lord's Table.

Having viſited the Places near the Town, he gratified his Curioſity in ſeeing the Country a-round, and obſerved many Things worthy of Notice, *viz.* The Fountain where 'tis ſaid the Virgin *Mary* uſed to draw Water, which has ſome Steps down to it. 2. *Jonas*'s Tomb, whoſe Foot alſo is found 4 times upon the Rock. Above the Cave wherein he lies the *Turks* have built a Moſque, and have ſo great a Veneration for it, becauſe 'tis in the Place of that Prophet's Repoſe, that they will not ſuffer a Chriſtian to come nigh it.

Jonas's Tomb.

Paſſing over the Plains of *Galilee*, he came to *Cana*, which by the Ruines ſeems to have been a large Place, but now has only a few ſmall Houſes. On the Hill there is Church, where, they ſay, the Wedding was kept, at which our Lord turned the Water into Wine, and there is a Fountain juſt by from which the Servants filled it. St. *Helena* built the Church, and a little Convent to it; but the *Moors* have now got them for a Moſque.

Having ſeen theſe Things he travelled a pretty while in the Plain of the *Ears of Corn*, becauſe 'tis ſaid, that there our Lord's Diſciples on the Sabbath-Day pluck'd the Ears of Corn, when they were an hungry, and rubb'd them in their Hands. There is a Turpentine-Tree ſtanding in the very Place. The Plain is 2 Lgs. long, and pretty wide, and has ſome Villages in it.

Coming to a riſing Ground, he ſaw *Bethulia*, at the Siege of which *Judeth* cut off *Holofernes*'s Head, *Judeth* 13. 9. and the Top of Mount *Libanus* all white with Snow. Then he came to the Plain of *Nepthali*, in the midſt of which is the Mount of the *Beatitudes*, ſo called, becauſe our Saviour delivered from that his Sermon, which begins with the 8 Beatitudes. From the Top of this Mountain there is a moſt pleaſant Proſpect of the Sea of *Galilee*, beyond which appears the Hills of *Arabia Deſerta*, and *Jordan* emptying it ſelf into the Sea lies on the Left-Hand. About half a Lg. further is the Place where our Lord fed 5000 Men with 5 Loaves and 2 Fiſhes, *Matt.* 14. 19. and yet 12 Baskets of Fragments remained. There is a Stone on which, they ſay, our Lord bleſſed the Bread and Fiſhes.

Cana.

Bethulia.

From hence paſſing through the Borough *Maven*, he came to *Tiberias*, which being repaired by *Herod*, was called ſo in Honour to *Tiberius*. It ſtands in a very pleaſant Soil, near the Sea of *Galilee*, and has been a large Town, as the Ruines ſhew, which are above a Lg. in Compaſs; but now 'tis but ſmall, and

Tiberias.

the

the Houſes are mean. It has 2 Gates, but one of them is always ſhut. The Remains of Antiquity are St. *Peter*'s Church, which ſtands ſtill entire, being built, as they ſay, by the Empreſs *Helena* in the very Place where Chriſt ſaid to St. *Peter*, *Tu es Petrus & ſuper hanc Petram ædificabo Eccleſiam meam.* It is ſmall, being 25 Paces long, and 15 broad. There are alſo the Ruines of a great Building, which has been a Caſtle, and ſeems to have been a ſtrong Place. The Walls of it having been ruined, a *Jewiſh* Widow repaired them, that the *Jews* might live quietly in it, but about 30 Years ſince the Extortion and Tyranny of the *Turks* forced them to abandon it, ſo that there is not a *Jew* found there. Within the Precincts of the Town, among the Ruines, grow abundance of Palm-Trees, as alſo between the Walls and Sea-ſide.

Le Bruyn ſays, 21 Foot long, and 9 broad.

The Sea of *Galilee*, called alſo the Sea of *Gennezareth* and *Tiberias*, lies near the Town. The Water is ſweet, and very good to drink, and has plenty of Fiſh in it. Formerly there were many Chriſtian Fiſhermen, who got their Living by it; but the Tyranny of the *Turks* has obliged them to leave it. It is about 12 Miles long, and 5 over. It was on this Sea that *Peter* and *Andrew*, *James* and *John* were fiſhing when Chriſt called them to make them Fiſhers of Men; that Chriſt walked on the Water, when *Peter* asked Leave to come to Him, and for fear of ſinking, cry'd out, *Lord, ſave me.*

The Sea of *Galilee.*

From *Tiberias* he went to a Village called *Sabbato*, and ſo to the Caſtle of *Eunegiar*, where there is an Han for Travellers and Merchants, and here they ſay, *Joſeph* was ſold by his Brethren to the *Iſmaelite* Merchants. They ſhew you the Pit or Well where he was put ſtill. The Caſtle is commanded by a *Sous-Baſha*, and all Travellers muſt pay him a Coffair of a Piaſtre, half for himſelf, and half for the *Arabs*. Then paſſing the Valley of *Iſralon*, over the Brook *Sihon*, he came to the Mount *Tabor*, which is about 12 Miles from the Sea of *Galilee*, called by the *Arabs Gebeltour*. It is very high, cragged and ſteep, almoſt like a Sugar-Loaf, yet ſo eaſie of Aſcent, that one may go up on Horſe-back. On the Top of it is a Grot, which ſeems to be part of an old ruined Building. It is caſed with great Stones, and has ſeveral ſmall Arches, and in the Bottom of it is an Heap of Stones, which ſerves inſtead of an Altar. It is believed, that our Lord was transfigured there, and that the Chapel was erected in Memory of it, and that with wonderful Labour, becauſe the Stones could not be dug out of the Mountain, which is not ſtony; but covered with Wood. The Arches are ſuppoſed to ſtand in the Places where our Lord, *Moſes* and *Elias* ſtood.

Joſeph ſold.

Mount *Tabor.*

Chriſt's Tranſiguration.

At his Return into *Nazareth* he ſaw the Synagogue where our Saviour taught the *Jews* when they went to precipitate him. One may travel from *Jeruſalem* by Land to *Nazareth*, and ſee many Curioſities; but becauſe the *Arabs* exact ſo unreaſonable *Coffairs*, or Taxes, few do; yet ſome that do not value the Charge may deſire to know it, and ſo he ſets it down.

From *Jeruſalem* the Way lies to *Elbir*, a curious Village ſtanding on a riſing Ground, but thinly inhabited. There has been a fair Church, but 'tis now much decay'd. The Walls are yet ſtanding, and are made of great Flints. Here, they ſay, *Mary* having long ſought for her Son among her Kindred in vain, reſolved to return again to *Jeruſalem*, when ſhe found him among the Doctors, hearing them and asking them Queſtions, which he did to their Admiration.

Elbir.

Then you go to *Naplouſe*, or *Sichem*, over Hills and Dales, but very fruitful, and in many Places bearing Olive-Trees. This Town ſtands partly on the ſide and partly on the Bottom of an Hill. The Soil is very fertile, and abounds with Olives. *Jacob* and his Family moſt frequently lived near it. The Gardens are full of Orange and Citron-Trees, water'd by a River and ſundry Brooks. About half a Mile from the Town is the Well where the *Samaritan* Woman met our Saviour, as the Chriſtians thereabout ſay. 'Tis covered with large Stones, leſt the *Turks* ſhould fill it up. 'Tis 16 Fathom deep; and by it is the Portion of Land which *Jacob* gave to his Son *Joſeph*. It is a very pleaſant Place, and his Sepulchre is in it. Mount *Gerizim* is on the Right Hand as you go to the Well. There is a Chapel at the Foot of the Mountain, where the *Samaritans* worſhipped. On the S. ſide of the Town is another Hill, called *Elmaida*, where they ſhew a Stone on which are the Marks of *Chriſt*'s Hands and Feet, and they ſay it had formerly the Mark of his whole Body. From hence you have a full Proſpect of the Town. To the W. ſtands a Moſque, which was formerly a Church, and is built in the Place where *Jacob*'s Houſe ſtood. On the other ſide there is a ruinated Church, dedicated to St. *John the Baptiſt*. In this Town Travellers pay a Coffair.

Naplouſe, or *Sichem.*

Mount *Gerizim.*

About half a Lg. out of the Road ſtands the Town of *Sebaſte*, upon a fair Hill. The Walls are ruined, and ſo is the Church; but the Marble Pillars, fine Altar and *Moſaick* Paintings ſhew that it has been a ſtately Building. It is divided between the *Mahometans* and *Chriſtians*. The *Mahometans* Part is paved with Marble, and has a Chapel under it, where lie buried *Eliſha* and *Abdias*, and *John the Baptiſt* in the midſt of them. The 3 Tombs are incloſed with a Wall, and are ſeen only thro' ſome Holes by Lamp-lights. The People ſay, *John the Baptiſt* was beheaded in the ſame Place; but others ſay, 'twas at *Macherus*, a Caſtle of *Herod*'s.

Sebaſte, or *Samaria.*

Eliae, Abdias and St. *John the Baptiſt*'s Tombs.

From *Sebaſte*, which was anciently called *Samaria*, he went to *Genny*, the Place where our Saviour heal'd the 10 Leapers. There is a Moſque there, which was a Chriſtian Church, a large Han to lodge in, which ſerves alſo for a Fort, and a *Bazar* for Proviſions. The Soil hereabouts is good, and produceth plenty of Palm-Trees and Fig-Trees. Here is a large Caffair to be paid.

Next Day he entred into a large Plain, called *Eſdrellon*, *Eſdrellon*, which is about 4 Lgs. in Length. In the middle of this Plain is the Brook *Kiſon*, where *Jabin*, King of *Canaan*, and *Siſera*, his Lieutenant, were ſlain by *Deborah* and *Barak*, and ſo you come to *Nazareth*.

Eſdrellon, a Plain.

From *Nazareth*, if you have a mind to ſee *Damaſcus*, the Way lies thus: You come firſt to a Caſtle called *Aain Ettudgiar*, where you may lie. It is about 3 Lgs. from *Nazareth*. Then you go to *Menia*, a Town upon the ſide of the Sea of *Tiberias*; and as you paſs on, you may ſee at a Diſtance *Sephet*, the Town where Queen *Eſther* was born, becauſe it ſtands on an Hill, and croſs *Jacob*'s Bridge, where that Patriarch met his Brother *Eſau*, as he was returning with his Family and Cattle from *Laban* his Father-in-Law. This Bridge has 3 Arches, thro' which the *Jordan* runs. When you have paſſed this Bridge you are out of *Galilee*, and pay a great Coffair. Then you come to *Conceitra*, a little Village where there is a large Han, which has 3 Culverines like a Fort, a *Bazar* and Coffee-Houſe, and here alſo you muſt pay a Coffair. The Way here is bad to *Saxa*, where is a pretty Han, having a Moſque in the middle, and a Fountain by the ſide of it. Near it is a Caſtle, by which runs a River, which divides it ſelf into 34 Branches, and over it 3 Bridges, at which you pay a Coffair. Then you paſs a Village, called *Caucab*, i. e. *Star*, which is the Place where Chriſt appear'd to St. *Paul* in his Journey to *Damaſcus*, and then you come to that City.

Aain Ettudgiar.

Conceitra.

Saxa.

Damaſcus has 8 Gates, *viz.* *Eaſt Gate*, *South Gate*, *Weſt Gate*, *Saphies Gate*, *North Gate*, *Paradiſe-Gate*, *Gate of Peace*, and St. *Thomas*'s *Gate*, becauſe near it ſtands an old Church dedicated to that Apoſtle. The Compaſs of the City is not much above a Lg. and half; but the Suburbs are as big again as the Town. The Walls are double, well built, and very high, having fair Battlements, flank'd at ſeveral Diſtances with good Towers, for the moſt part round, but ſome few are ſquare. The inner Walls are about 4 Fathom, and the outward 3 Fathom and half high; the Space between them, which is about 5 Foot, is filled up with Earth. Before theſe Walls is a Ditch about 5 Fathom broad, and 2 Fathom and half deep. The moſt remarkable Places and Things worth the Obſervation of Travellers are:

Damaſcus deſcribed.

the Walls.

1. The *Bezeſtein*, which is very beautiful, and hath 3 Gates.

The *Bezeſtein.*

2. The Caſtle built of Stones of a Diamond-Cut, where is a Court of Guard with ſeveral Arms hanging upon the Wall, and 2 Pieces of Ordnance, each 16 Spans long; the *Mint*, where the *Jews* work, a Dome of no great Workmanſhip, but very large, *viz.* above 3 Fathom round; a large arch'd Hall, through which you go into the *Divan*, where the Council is held, painted with Gold and Azure after the *Moſaick* Way, and in it are 3 Baſins of excellent Water. The Ditches without the Caſtle are half a Pike's

The Caſtle.

Pike's Depth, and 20 Paces over, and tho' there uſually runs only a ſmall Current of Water through them to water the Gardens, which are full of Orange, Lemmon, Pomegranate, and ſeveral other Trees, on the Town-ſide; yet there is a Branch of a River which runs through the Caſtle, with which they can fill the Ditches upon any Occaſion. On the Outſide of the Walls of this Caſtle hang 2 Chains of Stone, one of which contains 16 Links, and the other 14, cut one within another by matchleſs Art, each Link being about 2 Fathom long, and one and half wide, and both of them were cut out of one entire Stone. Near the Caſtle is a fair Moſque, about 20 Paces ſquare, painted all over with *Moſaick* Work in Gold and Azure, in the middle of which is the Sepulchre of *Melec Daer*, Sultan of *Egypt*.

Stone-Chains.

The House of the *Teſterdar*.

3. The Houſe of the *Teſterder*, in which is a little Marble-Moſque of moſt lovely Architecture. There are alſo ſeveral lovely Rooms in it of the ſame Faſhion, at each Window of which you have a little Fountain of very clear Water, brought thither in Pipes. In this Houſe there is a Door and ſeveral Windows with Copper Lattices, which look into the great Moſque, and from thence a Chriſtian, to whom 'tis Death to enter, may ſee it without Moleſtation. It is 300 Paces long, and 60 wide. The Court is paved with lovely Stones ſhining like Looking-Glaſſes, and round it are ſeveral Pillars of Marble, Jaſper and Porphyry incomparably well wrought, which ſupport an Arch painted with ſeveral Pieces in *Moſaick* Work. The Porch, which faces the Court, has 12 large Copper-Doors, emboſſed with Figures, and ſeveral Pillars of Porphyry with gilt Capitals. The Walls are painted with lovely Figures in Gold and Azure. The *Turks* have ſo great a Veneration for this Moſque, that they always pull off their Shooes when they paſs through the Court; and certainly 'tis one of the moſt lovely Moſques in all the *Turkiſh* Empire. 'Twas heretofore a Chriſtian Church, built by the Emperor *Haraclius* in Honour of St. *Zacharias*, the Father of St. *John Baptiſt*; and they ſay, here he lies buried.

The Great Moſque.

Zacharias's Church.

4. The Fountain where St. *Paul* recovered his Sight, and was baptized by *Ananias*. By it is the Houſe of *Judas*, with whom St. *Paul* ſojourned when he was inſtructed by *Ananias* in the Chriſtian Religion and baptized; and there you may ſee the Chamber where that Saint faſted and pray'd, being blind for 3 Days and 3 Nights.

St. Paul's Fountain.

5. *Ananias*'s Houſe, which is now inhabited by an *Arabian Sheick*, who for a few Aſpers will give an Admittance to Travellers. Under Ground 14 Stairs is a Moſque now, which was anciently the Chamber where *Ananias* lodged, when God commanded him to go to *Saul*. 'Twas heretofore a Church, and was well ſeil'd and pav'd with *Moſaick* Work, of which there are ſtill ſome Remains in the Pavements, and in it they ſhew you *Ananias*'s Tomb, which the *Turks* much reſpect.

Ananias's House.

6. The Eaſt Gate, called alſo St. *Paul*'s Gate, at which begins the Street called *Streight*, mentioned in the *Acts*. It is ſo called, becauſe in former Times there was a great Church, built in Honour of St. *Paul* ſtanding near it; but the *Turks* have made it an Han: The Steeple remains ſtill, and is very ancient Work. Near this Gate alſo is the Place where that Apoſtle was let down by the Walls in a Basket, to avoid the Hands of the perſecuting *Jews*. A few Paces from the Gate is a ſquare Tower in the City-Walls, in which are 2 Free-ſtones, on which are 2 *Flower de Luces* very well cut, and on the 3d an Inſcription in the *Lingua Franca*, but the Characters are not legible. On 2 other Stones at the ſide of each *Flower de Luce*, there are 2 Lions cut, and near each of them a great Thiſtle. Some think, that theſe Figures are a Mark that the *French* built the Tower; but 'tis more probable, that the *Turks* brought them from ſome Place in thoſe Parts once poſſeſſed by the *French* to build it.

St. Paul's Gate.

Some Flowers de Luces on the Gate.

7. Not far off is the Burying-place of the Chriſtians, and by it that of the *Jews*; for every Religion has a Burial-place by it ſelf in the Fields. Over-againſt the Weſt Gate is the Sepulchre of St. *George* the Porter, who was beheaded upon Pretence that he was a Chriſtian, and had ſaved St. *Paul* out of their Hands. His Tomb ſtands in the middle of a kind of Court. It is built with Free-Stone, and covered with a little Pavilion in form of a Pyramid. The Chriſtians of the Country reckon him a Saint, have commonly a Lamp burning at his Tomb, and pay a great deal of Devotion to it, which even the *Turks* imitate, becauſe they, as well as the Chriſtians, affirm, that Miracles are daily wrought there, and that ſeveral ſick *Turks* having ſpent the Night there, have return'd in the Morning in perfect Health. On this Saint's Day Men, Women and Children, as well *Turks* as *Chriſtians*, repair to that Tomb. In the Court on the Left Hand there is a Burying-place for ſuch Chriſtians as die for the Faith of Chriſt, and when any Chriſtian departs, his Body is firſt brought to that Place, where after the Office for the Dead is repeated, it is carried to the Place appointed for the Burial.

St. George's Tomb and Festival.

8. In the *Streights-ſtreet* is a large fair *Bazar*, covered with an high ridged Timber-Roof, and full of Shops on both Sides, where they ſell nothing but Stuffs, as they do alſo in another *Bazar* hard by. The greateſt *Bazar*, called *Sinanie*, built by a *Baſha* of *Damaſcus*, called *Sinan*, is the largeſt of all. Here they ſell Wooden Boxes.

The Bazar of Stuff.

9. The *Green Moſque*, ſo called, becauſe it hath a Steeple faced with green glazed Bricks, which renders it very reſplendent, and is covered on the Top with the ſame Stuff. It has a large Court paved with lovely Stones, with a Fountain of Water in the middle. At the End of the Court is a Portico ſupported by 8 Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order, which uphold ſo many little Domes, all leaded over. It was built in that Place, becauſe, they ſay, *Mahomet* came ſo far, and no farther, becauſe he ſaid the Town was too delicious, and it is covered with Green, becauſe they hold that to be that Prophet's Colour.

The Green Moſque.

10. The Moſque of *Haſan*, who being *Baſha* of that City, left Money to build that Moſque, and the Tomb in it. The Tomb is a fair Building, made in Faſhion of a Dome, ſeveral Fathom high, and covered with Lead. The Moſque ſtands at the End of a Court, and you enter into it by a Portico ſupported by 6 Pillars, and covered with one very large Dome, and 2 little ones on each ſide.

The Moſque of Haſan.

11. The *Baſha*'s *Seraglio*, which ſeems very pretty. Over the Gate is a Pavilion in form of a Pyramid, but it is only of Earth not faced.

The Baſha's Seraglio.

12. The Caſtle, 2 ſides of which ſerve for Walls to the Town. It is a large, ſquare, well-built Fabrick of Free-Stone, Table-Cut; the Walls of it are very high, and at certain Diſtances are large high ſquare Towers, built as the reſt, but very near one another. On the Wall is a very large Stone-Chain hanged up very high. There are ſome Cannon planted at the Gate to defend the Entry.

The Caſtle.

13. Two Moſques in which are the Sepulchres of ſome Kings of *Damaſcus*, having been formerly Chriſtian Churches. There is no ſeeing into one of them, but there is a Proſpect into the other thro' lovely Grates of well poliſh'd Steel. It is compleatly round, and covered with a lovely Dome of Free-Stone, in which are ſeveral round Windows. It is faced in the Inſide with Marble of various Colours 3 Fathom high from the Pavement, and from thence to the Windows there are ſeveral fair Paints of Churches and Trees after the *Moſaick* Way. In the middle of it are 2 Tombs 4 or 5 Foot high, upon a Pavement raiſed above a Foot high from the Floor. They are made of Cedar, well wrought, and contain the Bodies of 2 Kings, and one of them was King *Daer*, who becoming a *Turk* of a *Chriſtian* perſecuted the *Chriſtians* ſeverely. The *Turks* ſay, no Candle or Lamp will burn near his Tomb. Near them are ſeveral *Alcorans* chain'd on Desks to read for the Souls of thoſe Kings, according to the Cuſtom of the *Mahometan* Princes and Great Lords, who commonly at their Deaths leave great Eſtates for performing ſuch Prayers.

Two Moſques.

14. The Great Moſque. The Doors are of Braſs, 4 Fathom high, and well wrought with odd Figures. It is about 18 Fathom wide, and has 2 Ranges of large thick Pillars of gray Marble of the *Corinthian* Order, which divide it into 3 Iſles, 18 of a Row. The Pavement is of lovely Stones, which ſhine like Looking-Glaſs. It is covered with a ſharp ridged Wooden-Roof, and has a large Dome in the middle, which on the N. ſide has little arch'd Windows, and is faced above them with green Stone, which make a lovely Show. On each ſide of it is a ſquare Steeple with Windows like our Churches (for it was one). And one of the Steeples is called, *The Meſſias's Steeple*, becauſe the *Turks* hold, that *Jeſus* ſhall return into the World by that Steeple. There are many Lamps con-

The Great Moſque.

The Meſſias's Steeple.

continually burning in it, and in the *Keblay* is an Hole grated over with gilt Bars of Iron, where they say, the Head of St. *Zachary* is kept. On the W. side are 3 Brazen-Gates embellish'd with several Works, and before this Gate is a Portico divided into 2 Alleys by 8 great Pillars, leading into a Court which is very large, and paved with great shining Marble-Stones. Towards the End of the Court is a little Chapel covered with a Dome, which, they say, was the Font. On the S. E. and N. Sides there are also fine Brazen-Gates, and on the 2 last Courts.

St. Thomas's Church.

15. The Church of St. *Thomas*, which stands by the Gate denominated from it. This Church is always shut up, because 'tis all ruinous in the Inside, and looks like a Garden, being uncovered and full of Herbs: Yet there are a Portal and 3 Ceintures supported by 3 Pillars of Marble, chamfered.

The Mosque of Serapis.

16. The Mosque which, they say, was the Temple of *Serapis*. The *Turks* pretend, that the Body of St. *Simion Stylites* lies buried there, being brought thither from *Antioch*, and they keep his Tomb enclosed with Iron-Grates ever since a *Venetian* endeavoured to steal it away. They have a great Veneration for this Mosque, and say, no *Muezim* can call to Prayers there; for when he begins to cry, his Voice fails him.

The Spittle of Lepers.

17. *The Spittle of Lepers*, which, the People say, was built by *Naaman* the *Syrian*, Lieutenant of the King of *Damascus*, for *Gahazi*, the Servant of *Elisha*, of which we have the History in the Second Book of *Kings*.

There are 3 Rivers that run thro' *Damascus* and meet at the End of the Town, and many lovely Fountains, and one of them is covered with a flat Dome. It is a round Basin 2 Fathom in Diameter, and in the middle of it is a Pipe, that throws up a great deal of Water a-time, and very high.

The Cave of the 7 Sleepers.

Half a Lg. from *Damascus* is a rough and barren Hill, but natural Rock, where some *Dervices* live in little Hermitages. They shew you the Cave where the 7 Sleepers hid themselves when they were persecuted by *Darius*, who would have made them renounce the Christian Faith, and are said to have slept till the Time of *Theodosius* the Younger. There is also an House where a *Skeick* dwells, by which is a Grot hollow'd in a Rock, where they say that *Elias* dwelt when the Ravens fed him, and in an Hole hard by the 40 Martyrs are buried, who were put to Death by the King or Basha of *Damascus* for leaving some Excrements in a Mosque, tho' it was done by a *Jewish* Child; these 40 Christians taking it upon themselves to deliver the rest, who suffer'd much for it in Prison. From the Top of this Hill you have a full Prospect of *Damascus*, which stands in a spacious Plain, surrounded on all sides with Hills, but at a great Distance, which is filled up with pleasant Gardens and Pastures.

The Situation of Damascus.

Three Lgs. further, towards the Way of *Baal Bel*, is the Place where, they say, that *Cain* slew his Brother, and where also they sacrificed. At a Village called *Jobar*, half a Lg. from the City, the *Jews* have a Synagogue, at the End of which is a Grot, where *Elijah* hid himself from the Persecution of *Jezebel*; and a Lg. further is the Place where the Patriarch *Abraham* gave Battel to the 5 Kings, who carried away his Nephew *Lot*, and overcame them. The *Turks* call *Damascus Cham*: 'Tis encompassed almost round with 2 Walls and little Ditches. The Houses are built of Brick and Earth, and shew ugly, but are beautiful within, having Fountains generally. The Mosques, Bagnio's and Coffee-Houses are very fair, and well built. On the other side of *Damascus* is a Mosque, which has formerly been a Church dedicated to St. *Nicholas*, and was a very spacious and large one, having a fine Court and Cloister, the Arches of which were supported by large Marble Pillars. Since it has been changed into a Mosque they have demolished these, and have brought the River *Banias* into it, and planted many Trees, which makes the River and Mosque very pleasant. Some *Dervices* dwell hard by it, who are well lodged, and have good Gardens by the River-side. A little further is the Green of *Damascus*, which is a large Grass-plat, which they call a *Meidan*, and is encompassed on all Hands with Gardens, the River *Banias* running through them. About the middle of it is a Pillar in the Ground about 4 Foot high, which, as they say, shews the Place where God made the First Man. On one of the sides of this Field is the *Moristan*, or Hospital, for Pilgrims. It is a great Cloister covered with little Domes, and has many Chambers for receiving Pilgrims, of whatever Religion they be, who are maintained there during their Stay. It has a Mosque and fair Gardens belonging to it. It was built by *Solyman* II. who took *Rhodes*. It has a Cloister belonging to it for poor Schollars, and a Stable for Pilgrims Horses. At *Damascus* is a great House, where they make the Bisket for *Mecha*, which the G. Seignior gives to the poor Pilgrims at his own Charge, *viz.* 200 Camels Load, and as much Water. There is a Stone in *Damascus* of which they have this Opinion, that when it is covered with Water it shall be taken from the *Turks*, but it has proved false lately. There is a *Bazar* in this Town, called, *The Bazar of Horse-Saddles*, because that's the only Commodity sold there.

Bisket for Mecha.

Monks, &c. at Damascus.

At *Damascus* are *Capuchins* and *Monks* of the *Holy Land*, whose Houses are near to one another in the Quarter of the *Maronites*, and just over-against the Church where they say Mass. There are also *Jesuits*, but they live in the Quarter of the *Greeks*, and celebrate Divine Service in their own House. There are moreover 3 or 4000 *Capicoules*, or *Janizaries* here, as there are at *Constantinople* 12000, and at *Bagdat*, *Cairo* and *Buda* 6000 each, and in other Places as many more, as make up 50000, which are yet but part of 300000 which the G. Seignior keeps in constant Pay. In *Damascus* they'll suffer none to ride with both his Legs on one side of the Horse, but they will stone him till he alters his Posture, because they say, the Giants *Gog* and *Magog*, who were Rebels against God, rode so. When they white their Walls with Lime, they mix Hemp with it, to make it stick, because their Walls are of Earth. On the Top of their Tombs they leave a Column of Earth over the dead Body, on which the Women go every Week to pour Water to cool the Dead, and for the same Reason they stick a large Bunch of Box at the End of the Grave. The Women also that have lost their Husbands go to their Graves to consult them, and complain to them, and the next Night they never miss of an Answer according to their Desires.

Gog and Magog.

Their Mourning.

The Mourning of the Women of *Damascus*, yea, even of the Christians, at the Death of any of their Relations, is very ridiculous. They make a great deal of Noise, some singing, others crying and knocking their Breasts with their Hands joined together, sometimes casting themselves into a Ring, and snapping their Fingers like Castanets against one another's Noses, keeping Time to the Songs they sung, as if they rejoyced, while others howl'd and cry'd like mad Women.

Yogourt much drank.

At *Damascus*, and all over *Turky* they do not thresh their Corn, but cut the Straw in pieces with Iron-Pinsons fasten'd on Wood-Rowlers, which they draw over the Corn with an Horse; the Corn by cutting slips thro' the Teeth whole, and then they separate it from the Straw and Chaff, by throwing it up into the Air. The cut Straw and Chaff they give their Horses with Barley twice a Day, and that's all they have. They drink much *Yogourt*, or Butter-milk, which they separate partly from the Butter, or make of Milk, by putting Rennet into it, and sometimes of Water, by mixing a kind of Curd which comes from the *Yogourt* with it.

The Wines of *Damascus* are treacherous and strong, and *Smirnium Creticum* grows commonly on the Tops of their Houses.

Tyre.

From *Acre* Travellers go usually by Sea to see several Places, as, 1. To *Sour*, or *Tyre*, and in the Way by the Shore you see a Well 8 Foot square, and 15 in Diametre. You may reach the Water with your Hand, but the Bottom cannot be fathomed. It is taken to be the Well of Living Waters, mentioned in the *Canticles*, c. 4. 15. and the Water is so good, that the Neighbouring Villages fetch a great deal from it. As you pass by a Tower near the Sea, the *Aga* will make you pay a *Caffar*, or Tribute of 4 Crowns, tho' the Merchants say, 'tis not due. The Town of *Sour*, anciently called *Tyre*, has nothing remarkable but Ruines, tho' once a famous City. There are several Pillars whole, and an infinite Number broken. The Mariners rub their Backs usually against one which stands near a little House or Chapel of the *Greeks*, because they say it cures all Pains in the Back and Reins. The most considerable Thing among the Ruines are the Remains of a Temple, which is almost entire on one side, with a fair Stair-Case not much defaced. Before it lies a Pillar composed of 3 others of an extraordinary Bigness, and very odd Form.

A Pillar that cures all Pains in the Back.

The Town contains not above 12 or 15 very mean Houſes, inhabited by *Turks* and *Arabians*, for there are no Chriſtians. It was once the chief City of *Phœnicia*, being very ſtrong, and much celebrated for Trade, by which it grew very rich, *Iſa.* 23. 12. In *Solomon*'s Days the *Tyrians* fetched the Cedars from *Lebanon* to build his Temple, and aſſiſted that King to build him a Fleet at *Ezion-Geber* to fetch Gold from *Ophir*. St. *Paul* was here, and tarried 7 Days in his Paſſage to *Jeruſalem*, but the Diſciples diſſwaded him from going, *Acts* 21. 4. Many from this City followed our Saviour to hear him, *Mark* 3. 8. *Luke* 6. 17. and here he cured the *Canaanitiſh* Woman's Daughter, *Matt.* 15. 21. 28. *Mark* 7. 24.

1 Kings 5. 2...

Saide, or Sidon.

From *Sour* you have but a Day's Journey to *Saide*, or *Sidon*; but there is a Tower upon the Road where a *Caffair* muſt be paid. *Soide* is a pretty Town, and one of the beſt Towns of the Coaſt, having a great many Gardens full of Oranges. They ſhew a Tomb without the Town in one of the Gardens, which, they ſay, is *Zebulan*'s, one of the 12 Patriarchs. It is pretty well inhabited, is about a Mile in Circumference, and the W. ſide borders upon the *Mediterranean* Sea, where there is a ſmall Fort to defend it.

Moſques.

There are ſeveral ancient Moſques, which were doubtleſs Chriſtian Churches formerly, and contribute much to it's Beauty.

Bazar.

The *Bazar* is pretty regular, and well ſtored with Goods; and there are many commodious *Hans* for Merchants and their Goods. The Scripture ſhews it was once a conſiderable City, by calling it *Sidon the Great*, Joſ. 11. 8.

Hans.

Gie.

From *Saide* you ſail to a little Village, called *Gie*, which is the Place, as they ſay, where the Whale caſt out *Jonas*, after he had been 3 Days in her Belly.

Baruth.

Here you pay a *Caffair*, and then paſs to *Baruth*, where you pay another. The Soil about *Baruth* is pleaſant and good, bearing abundance of white Mulberries for the Silk-Worms. Near it are the *Caſtrewan* Hills, where a *Maronite* Prince has the Sovereign Command. About half a Lg. from *Baruth* is an Hole, which was heretofore the Den of an huge Dragon; and 200 Paces further is a *Greek* Church dedicated to St. *George*, who is ſaid to have killed the ſaid Dragon in their Plain, when he was about to have devoured the King of *Baruth*'s Daughter.

St. George's Church.

Travelling on to *Tripoli*, you paſs *Baruth-Bridge* of 6 Arches, where a *Caffair* muſt be paid; and a little further over another Bridge, which lies upon a River, called in *Arabick*, *Naor el Kelb*, i. e. The Dogs-River, becauſe on a Rock is carved a great Dog, chain'd, which, they ſay, would bark by Enchantments; and a little above it is this Inſcription, *IMP. CÆS. M. AURELIUS ANTONINUS PIUS FÆLIX AUGUSTUS PART. MARI BRITANNIUS*, and ſo you travel to *Abrahim*, and to *Tripoli*, which is a very pretty Town, with a neat Caſtle, at the Foot of which a little River runs. Several Gardens of Orange-Trees and white Mulberry-Trees encompaſs the Town, which is a Mile from the Sea. By the Shore are ſeveral Cannons planted in Towers to defend the Coaſt.

Tripoli.

St. Marina's Penance.

Here it was that St. *Marina* being accuſed of Incontinence, did Penance in Man's Apparel.

Mount Libanus.

Mount *Libanus* is about half a Day's Journey from hence, and you lodge at a Viliage called *Cannobin*, which is juſt by it. The Patriarch of *Libanus* dwells in it, and there is beſides a Church and a Monaſtery. There is but 23 Cedars in the Mount, which is inhabited by *Maronite* Chriſtians.

If you have a mind to go to *Aleppo* from *Tripoli*, you muſt take the following Road: You come firſt to the *French* Caſtle, which ſtands on an high Hill, and was built in the Time of *Godfrey* of *Bulloin*.

From hence you go to *Ama*, which was heretofore a large Town, but at preſent is half ruined; yet there are ſtill ſome lovely Moſques and Houſes built of black and white Stone intermingled. At the End of the Town is a Caſtle upon an Hill almoſt ruin'd, but what remains ſhews it was once ſtrong and beautiful. There is an Oratory on the S. ſide of it, where the *Turks* ſay their Prayers. There are ſeveral Grots and Magazines in it, which ſerved to hold their Proviſion and Ammunition. The River *Aſſi*, or *Orontes*, runs by the Walls of this Caſtle, and fills the Ditches, that are cut in the Rock, very deep, and ſo paſſes through the whole Town, where it turns 18 Wheels to raiſe the Water into the Gardens. Near the River ſtands a Moſque, before the Door of which is a lovely Pillar of Marble, erected with Figures of Birds, Men, and other Animals upon it in *Demi-Releiſe*. To it belongs a very pleaſant Garden.

Ama.

Ama Caſtle.

Orontes.

From *Ama* you go to *Marra*, where there is nothing remarkable but a large Han, cover'd over with Lead, which will hold 800 Men with their Horſes. In the middle of it is a lovely Fountain and Well 42 Fathom deep, with a Moſque. It was built about 120 Years ago by *Mourah Chelebs*, Great *Teſterdan*, when he went a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*. There is another old ruin'd Han, about 50 Paces diſtant from it, having a Door of black Stone 7 Spans long, and 4 and half broad, and one thick, all one Piece. On it are 2 Croſſes like thoſe of *Malta*. The Town is commanded by a *Sangiac*, tho' it be a ſorry one.

Marra.

From hence you go to *Aleppo*. But the Caravan goes a different Way for Largeneſs of Roads and Conveniency of Water; and ſo you go to *Tortoſa*, which is a ruinated Town, yet has a fine Caſtle, and the Remains of a Church of an extraordinary Bigneſs, and adorn'd with a pretty Number of Pillars in 2 Rows, which ſupport the Roof, which is very high. Going from hence you meet with a Caſtle in the Water a pretty Diſtance from the Shore, which doubtleſs belonged once to the Town. Then you go to *Caffaar Bajan*, which is a Brook of good ſweet Water, and ſo by *Jebelyn* to *Baloye* and *Badana*, where you paſs over a Mountain, and come to *Iſſer-Sioor*, where there is a very fair Han lately built. Before this Town runs the famous River *Orontes*, which has a Bridge of 9 Arches lying over it; and ſo you come to *Aleppo*. Thoſe who have never ſeen *Damaſcus* may take that in their Way, and then the Way lies thus: In 3 Days you arrive at *Damaſcus*, and from thence you go to *Cotaipha*, and one half of the Way is over pleaſant and fruitful Plains abounding with Fruit-Trees, Olives and Vines. They are water'd by 7 Rivers, and ſeveral Brooks, and you ſee many Villages, the People ſay, 350. There is the lovelieſt Han that is to be ſeen in the whole Country. It has a Foutain in the middle, which feeds a large Pond; 1000 Men may commodiouſly lodge in it, and be ſupplied with all Neceſſaries. It has a large Court, and at the Gates are 3 Culverines planted to defend the Paſſage. There is a *Caffair* to be paid here. It was built about 80 Years ſince by *Sinan Baſha*, the Grand Viſier.

Tortoſa.

Iſſer-Sioor.

Cota...

The Han.

From *Cotaipha* you travel to *Nebk*, and in the Way ſee an old Caſtle, called *Hanel Arous*, or, The Bride's Han. It ſtands on a barren Soil, environ'd by Mountains. *Nebk* ſtands on an Hill, at the Bottom of which are the Gardens full of Fruit-Trees, and watered by a little River, which has a Bridge of 4 Arches over it. Your Way then lies to *Cara*, which contains 2 Hans, and a *Greek* Church dedicated to St. *George*; and ſo you go by *Coſſeitel* and *Aſſia*, to *Hems*. This is a pretty Town, indifferently big, wall'd with black and white Stones, half a Pike high, and fortified with 26 round Towers, and begirt with Ditches formerly, which are now filled up with Ruines. It hath 6 Gates, and 5 Churches. The firſt is very great, and ſupported by 34 Marble-Pillars, being for the moſt part Jaſpers. It is 70 Paces long, and 18 broad. On the S. ſide in a little Chapel is a Stone-Cheſt 5 Spans in Length, and 3 in Breadth, wherein both the *Moors* and *Chriſtians* ſay, that *John Baptiſt*'s Head is contain'd, and upon that Account make great Eſteem of it, and keep a Lamp commonly burning before it; and in the Walls are many Pieces of Marble with *Greek* Characters, and very artificially engraven with Roſes and other Figures. St. *Helen* built this Church, and the Chriſtians held it a long time, till about 160 Years ſince, when it was uſurped by the *Turks*, and ſerves now for the chief Moſque. Chriſtians are permitted to go into it, and beſide it is a Pond, which the *Turks* make uſe of for their Ablutions. St. *George*'s Church is alſo held by the *Moors*; but the Chriſtians may pay their Devotions in it, allowing for half the Oil conſumed in the Lamps: The 3d is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and ſtill enjoy'd by the Chriſtians of the Country. The 4th, called, *Arbaine Chouade*, i. e. 40 Martyrs, is a very neat Church, and held by the *Greeks*; it has 4 Marble Pillars, and one of Porphyry in faſhion of a Screw. The fifth Church is called St. *Merlian*, or St. *Julian*, and the Natives ſay, his Body lies buried there in a Sepulchre of moſt excellent Marble, ſtanding behind the Altar, made like a Coffin, and having 12 Croſſes round it in *Demy-Releiſe*. By the *Jews* Gate, called *Bab Jeoundy*, is a pretty big Pyramid, in which the Natives believe that

Nebk.

Hems.

Aarc... Chriſtians there.

St. John Baptiſt's Head.

St. George's Church and others.

Julius Cæsar's Pyramid. that *Julius Cæsar* was buried. On the Hill is a Castle, held anciently by the Christians, but now all in Ruins. The Han for the Travellers is 15 Paces without the Walls of the Town.

From *Hems* you pass by an Oratory, built by the *Franks*, but now inhabited by a *Skeick*, and over a Bridge, called, *Degoser Rustan*, i. e. *Rustan's* Bridge, which has 10 Arches, and come to *Ana*. The Natives say, that in this Country dwelt *Job* and his Family; but half of it is not cultivated. *Job's Country.*

From *Ana* you go to *Scasicon Han*, which is a very old one, and so by *Marra*, to *Han Serrajb*. Upon this Road you see some ruinous Villages of which the most entire is *Han Marey*, which is built in form of a Castle. By it stands 5 great Sepulchres in one of which a *Basha* is interr'd, having his Turbant cut in Marble in one End of his Tomb. From this *Han* you have a Day's Journey to *Han Touman*, which within 40 Years has been repair'd by a *Basha* of *Aleppo*, called *H. Souf-Basha*, who put into it 50 Soldiers and 10 Culverines to keep it from the *Arabs*, who formerly committed great Robberies thereabouts. The River *Singa* runs hard by, and turns 2 Miles. From *Touman* to *Aleppo* is not above 4 Hours Travel. From *Aleppo* 'tis 6 Days Journey to *Tadmor*, all thro' the Deserts, in which you encounter great Dangers from the *Arabians*, so that few have ventured upon it, which makes a Relation of it more desirable, and this you have from Dr. *Hallifax's* Pen, in this Manner. *Han Marey.* *Singa*, a River.

A Description of *Tadmor.* This City is mention'd in H. Scripture, 1 *Kings* 9. 18. About a Mile from the Town is a Castle, which is so situate, as to command the Passes into the Hills and City. It is so old a Building, that it retains no Footsteps of exquisite Workmanship or Ingenuity, and the Access to it is so difficult, that 'tis not worth the Pains to go to it. On the Top of the Hill is a prodigious deep Well, and from thence we have a fair Prospect of *Tadmor*, and all the Country round about. *Tadmor* is enclosed on 3 Sides with long Ridges of Mountains, and to the S. stretches a vast Plain beyond the Reach of the Eye, in which you see a large Valley of Salt, where *David* smote the *Syrians*, and slew 18000 Men, 2 *Sam.* 8. 13. The Air is good, but the Soil is so barren, that there is no green Thing to be seen, but some few Palm-Trees in the Gardens, from whence the City is called *Tadmor* in *Hebrew*, which signifies a Palm-Tree; and in *Latin*, *Palmira*; and the Country, *Syna Palmyrena*. The City appears by the Ruines to have been of large Extent, but there are no Footsteps of the Walls, nor any Marks of the Figure of it. The present Inhabitants are poor miserable People, about 30 or 40 Families, who dwell in little Huts of Dirt within the Walls of a spacious Court, which inclosed a magnificent Heathen Temple. They are govern'd by a *Skeick*, and the Building seems to have been the Temple of *Jupiter Belus*. The Court is 220. Yards square, encompassed with an high and stately Wall, built of large and square Stones, adorn'd with Pilasters and Cornishes, but demolished by the *Turks*. The Gate hath something of Statelines still remaining, having 2 Stones which support the Sides still entire, 35 Foot high, artificially carved with Vines and and Clusters of Grapes; but the Gate is wall'd up to a narrow Door, over which is an Inscription in *Greek* and *Latin*, but not to be understood. The Court seems to have had a Piazza quite round it, and there are the Remains of 2 Rows of very noble Pillars 37 Foot high, with their Capitals of most exquisite Work, as were also the Cornishes between. The Temple in the middle seems to have extended 33 Yeards in Length, and 13 or 14 in Breadth, and by the Remains of it, it seems to have been one of the most glorious Structures in the World; for it has Vines and Grapes cut most natural, Eagles, Angels or Cupids very exact. The Windows are narrower at the Bottom than the Top, and all adorn'd with excellent Carvings. The *Turks* have converted part of it into a Mosque, and added some Ornaments of their own sorts, but the N. End, which is shut out, is of much greater Beauty and Artifice of curious Fret-works and Carvings. The Inhabitants. The Temple of *Jupiter Belus.*

Going from hence, your Eyes are accosted with an amazing Sight of Multitudes of Marble-Pillars standing scatter'd up and down for above a Mile together. Advancing toward the N. you have a very tall and stately Obelisk or Pillar, consisting of 7 large Stones, besides its Capital, which is wreathed Work about it, and Carvings extraordinary fine. The Height of it is 50 Foot, and the Circumference about the Pedistal 12 Foot and half. On each Hand of you stand 2 other Pillars at a Quarter of a Mile Distance, which seem to answer one another, as if there had been a whole Row of them. Upon these Pillars, and others, you find many Inscriptions, but 'tis lost Labour to endeavour to spell out of the Meaning. But in general, we may be satisfied from them, that the People were a free State under the *Parthians* and *Romans*, till *Aurelian* demolish'd it, and carried *Zenobia*, the Wife of *Odenatus*, Captive to *Rome*. From this Pillar you come to a magnificent Entrance, which leads you into a noble Piazza, of more than half a Mile long, and 40 broad, enclosed with 2 Rows of stately Marble Pillars 26 Foot high, and 8 or 9 about. There are 129 remaining, and 'tis probable there were 560 at first. On all the Pillars almost there are Inscriptions, both in *Greek* and the Native Language, but not instructive to us. At the upper End of this Piazza the Pillars stand closer than they do on each side, and there are the Ruins of a Building of better Marble, and more exquisite Work than the rest, which seems to have been a Banqueting-House. Here are some *Latin* Inscriptions, but so imperfect, as little can be made of them. On the W. side of the Piazza are the Openings of 2 Gates into the Palace, which were doubtless most glorious. Each Gate had 4 Pillars, but there are but 2 remaining. They are of Porphyry, being 30 Foot in Length, and 9 in Circumference. The Palace it self is so entirely ruin'd, that no Judgment can be made of its ancient Splendor, either for Figure or Workmanship. Some Pieces of Walls and Pillars, some plain, and others wrought and channell'd, are still remaining, and upon them several Inscriptions. On the E. side of the Piazza is a Wood of Marble Pillars, some perfect, others wanting their Capitals, and all so confused, that none can tell what to make of them. At a little Distance from them stands the Ruines of a small Temple, which seems to have been of curious Workmanship; but the Roof is wholly gone, and the Walls much defaced. But as great a Curiosity as any were their Sepulchres, being square Towers 4 or 5 Stories high, standing on both sides of an hollow Way, and stretching out in Length the space of a Mile. They are all of the same Form, but of different Splendor and Greatness, according to the Circumstances of the Founders: Some of Marble, with Statues, and others of common Stone, but Marble within. Many have Inscriptions, but not legible, unless in 2 or 3, which only discover the Names of the Interr'd. A tall Obelisk. Many Inscriptions on the Pillars. A noble Piazza. A Banqueting-House. The Sepulchres.

CHAP. XI.

Mr. Thevenot's *Travels from* Alexandria *in* Ægypt *to* Leghorn, *and so Home.*

MR. *Thevenot* having travell'd thro' most Parts of the *Holy Land*, turn'd his Mind Homeward, and taking Ship at *Acre*, sail'd to *Damietta* in *Ægypt*, and finding Passage at *Alexandria* for his Design, he took Ship at *Bouquer*, and having made the Cape of *Rasazarra* in *Barbary*, came to *Lampedosa* and *Pantalaria*, 2 Islands which lie between *Tripoli* and *Malta*. *Lampedosa* is a little Isle or Rock of small Circumference, about 100 Miles distant from *Malta*. It produceth nothing, and is inhabited only by Conies; but because there is good Water, and safe Harbour, Ships often put into it. In this Isle there is *Lampedosa* and *Pantalaria*.

A Chapel in it. a little Chapel, wherein is an Image of the bleſſed Virgin, which is much reverenced by both the Chriſtians and Infidels, which put aſhore there, and every Veſſel always leaves ſome Preſent in it, and if any takes away any Gun, Oil, &c. which has been offered, he muſt leave Money for it, which the Galleys of *Malta* come once a Year and take away to carry to our Lady of *Trapano* in *Sicily*. It is ſaid, that of 6 Chriſtian Ships that came into this Port to Water, and departed with a fair Gale, one of them which ſet Sail with the reſt could not get out, at which the Maſter wondered, but uſing Patience, waited for another Wind, which having gain'd, he attempted to get out again, but could not; whereupon ſearching his Ship, he found that one of his Soldiers had ſtollen ſomething, which when he had cauſed to be carried back again, he ſet Sail, and got eaſily out of the Harbour. Many Miracles are here wrought by the Interceſſion of the Bleſſed Virgin, which are not ſo much as doubted of either by *Chriſtians* or *Turks*.

Miracles wrought here.

Pantalaria. *Pantalaria* is a little Iſland about 12 or 14 Miles in Circuit, and diſtant from *Malta* 130. It is fruitful in Wine, Fruits and Cotton. It is ſubject to the King of *Spain*, who keeps a Governour there that reſides in the Caſtle, which is ſo ſtrong, that 20 Galleys could not take it.

Having paſſed theſe Iſles, he ſail'd by Cape *Bona*, and the Caſtle of *Galippa*. It is very hard to double this Cape, by reaſon of the Currents and high Seas, ſo that ſometimes they are 3 Weeks a-doing it, and 8 or 10 Days is uſual.

The Iſle of *Zimbre*. Having doubled the Cape, he ſail'd between the Iſle of *Zimbre* and the Rock, which lies between that Iſland and the Main-Land, about the Mid-way. *Zimbre* is inhabited, has convenient Anchorage by it, and good Water in it; and ſo entred the Road of *Goletta*. The Ship came to an Anchor near a Point of Land, where the Sepulchre of *Dido* is, and a *Marabout*, or *Skeick*, is interr'd there. *Goletta* is no more than 2 Caſtles, whereof the one was built by the Emperor *Charles* V. and the other by *Ahmet Dey*, who perceiving that the Galleys of *Malta* came and took Ships in the Road, without any Damage from the Guns of the Caſtle, built this laſt, which is very low, and has the Guns ſo platted, that it can play them even with the Water. This Caſtle is round on the Side next the Sea, and the other is almoſt ſquare. Between theſe 2 Caſtles are 3 Pillars of *Don Philippo*, the *Bey*, and *Schelebi*, the Son of *Hiſouf-Dey*.

Goletta.

Tunis. From *Goletta* he went to *Tunis* in a Boat by the Canal, or Lake, which in the Beginning is narrow, but after grows very wide. On the Way he ſaw an Hill to the Left-Hand near the Sea-ſide, where there are ſeveral natural Baths of Water almoſt boiling hot. Here is a Bagnio built, called *Hamarmulfe*. A little further is an Hill, called *Zagouam*, which has a Town of *Tagarins*, or *Andalaous*, called by the ſame Name. When the Chriſtians poſſeſſed that Country there were Aqueducts that brought Water from thence to the City of *Carthage*, but at preſent there are nothing but ſome Arches and Fountains remaining. As he came near to *Tunis* he ſaw a great many Olive-Trees, and abundance of other Trees, which ſhew it to be a good Country. By Land it is 18 Miles from *Goletta* to *Tunis*, which is capable of being made a good Port; but then it would not be ſo ſafe and ſecure. The Town is a Mile from the Place where you land.

Zagouam.

Magerda.

The Country-Houſes about *Tunis*. The Country about *Tunis* is full of Country-Houſes. In all of them there are ſeveral fair Apartments, with lovely Gardens full of Orange and ſeveral other ſorts of Fruit-Trees, with lovely Fountains, planted in as good Order as in Chriſtendom, with many neat Beds, and Borders of Flowers at the Ends of the Walks, made by the Chriſtian Slaves. Theſe Houſes are called *Bardes*, from the *Moreſco* Word, *Berd*, which ſignifies, *Cold*, becauſe there is a freſh cooling Breeze about them. From theſe Plains the Water is brought for 4 or 5 Miles by 2 Aqueducts into the City.

The *Cantre*. Being at *Tunis*, he went to ſee the *Cantre*, which belongs to *Schelebi*. The Way is over large Fields, planted with Olive-Trees, ſome Steps diſtant one from another, and in ſo good Order, that they look like Walks, which would be very pleaſant, but that the Ways are very dirty. The *Cantre* is a Bridge, which *Hiſouf-Dey* built over the River *Magerda*, which is neither broad nor rapid, but deſerves the Name of a fair River. It runs by the Houſe of *Schelebi*, and the Bridge is ſo built as to make a very pleaſant Caſcade at every Arch. Upon the River are ſeveral Iron Mills, for grinding Corn, and fulling Caps, called *Fez-Caps*, and made at *Zogouaro* by the *Tagarins*. All that work in theſe Mills are the Slaves of *Schelebi*. At the End of the Bridge is the Houſe of *Schelebi*, built in form of a Caſtle. It hath one very large Court, and ſeveral ſmall ones; the Rooms are beautified with Gold, Azure and Plaiſtering, with Fountains, every where all pav'd with Marble; ſo that they are the moſt magnificent in thoſe Parts.

About 3 Lgs. from *Cantre* is a Place called *Tabourbe*, where there are ſome ancient Ruines, and chiefly an ancient Temple. There is alſo a little Iſland in the Kingdom of *Tunis*, called *Tarbarque*, within a Musket-Shot of the Main-Land, but 3 Days Journey from *Tunis*. This Iſland belongs to the *Genoeſe*, who have a very good Fort in it, and drive a great Trade there in ſeveral Things, but eſpecially in Barbel. At *Suze* alſo, which is a Day's Journey from *Tunis*, there are many Antiquities more than in any Place of the Kingdom, eſpecially relating to St. *Auguſtine*.

Tabourbe.

Tarbarque, an Iſle.

Tunis is a Capital City of the Kingdom of the ſame Name in *Africk*. It lies in a Plain, is pretty large, and the Houſes are indifferently well built. They make, indeed, little or no Show on the Outſide, but are all Marble, Gold and Azure within. The City is all paved, yet ſo dirty after Rain, that one can hardly go in the Streets. The Suburbs are as large as the City, and well paved. There is a Caſtle within the Town upon a riſing Ground, which commands it, and makes a very pretty Show. There are ſome Guns before the Gate, and the Front of it looks well. Over-againſt the Gate is a Burying-place. Not far from the Caſtle is a *Bazar* for Drapers, which is a long broad Street full of Shops on both ſides; but none but Drapers keep Shop there; for there are ſeveral other *Bazars* for other Commodities. There are 13 Baths in *Tunis*, where all the Slaves lodge, except ſuch as are kept in their Maſter's Houſes. They are in all 10 or 12000, and moſt of them Chriſtians by Profeſſion, and they carry every one a great Ring of Iron at their Feet; but the Knights of *Malta* have an huge Iron-Chain of 20 Pound Weight added to the Ring, which is very troubleſome to the poor Slaves. In theſe Baths is a great Hall, where they are all ſhut up a-Nights, and lodge miſerably hard, either on the bare Ground, or in Huts of Wood. In the Day-time they are uſed in all manner of Labours in Building, or other Works. Even the Knights of *Malta*, who are of noble Families, are forced to ſerve Labourers, to carry Sand and Stones, and they are the more ſevere upon them, to oblige them to redeem themſelves the ſooner, and at the higher Rates. Such as have any Art or Trade to bring in Money may have their Liberty to exerciſe them, provided they either pay their Maſters a certain Salary daily, or let them have a Share in their Gains. Many of them keep Taverns (for none but Slaves will condeſcend to it) and live well. All their Wine is white, and they mingle Lime with it to intoxicate. They ſell their Wine cheap, and generally treat ſuch as buy it of them with Variety of Meat and Sallads into the Bargain. They reſtrain the Rudeneſs of the *Turks* by beating them, and if they refuſe to pay their Reckoning, will take their Turbants. The Slaves that cannot work muſt never ſtir out of the Bath without Leave from the Keeper, who ſends a Man with them, but they muſt pay him 3 *d.* for his Pains.

Tunis is governed by a *Dey* ſince the *Moors* turn'd out the *Turkiſh Baſha*, who is almoſt abſolute, and obeys the G. Seignior no further than he thinks fit; nay, ſometimes puts to Death thoſe whom the G. Seignior ſends, if the Buſineſs they come about diſpleaſes him. He coins Money, which conſiſts in little ſquare Pieces of Silver of the Value of Maidins, and adminiſters the Government in all Things. Indeed, the G. Seignior has a *Baſha* there and a *Bey*, but the former is ſo much a Slave, that he cannot ſtir out of his Houſe without Leave from the *Dey*, and that under the *Dey's* Guards, to whom he muſt give above 100 Piaſtres. The *Bey's* Buſineſs is to go into the Country and gather the *Caradge*, and other the Grand Seignior's Dues, for which he has a Part himſelf, and pays a Part to the *Dey*, the reſt he pays into the *Baſha*, who ſends it to *Conſtantinople*. When a *Dey* dies, his Children conceal his Death, till they have choſen ſome other, who is commonly their Father's *Kiaya*, or ſome other Friend of theirs, with whom they may make a good Bargain for themſelves, and then they tell the People, who, according to Cuſtom,

Tunis deſcribed.

The City.

The Baths and Slaves in them.

The Government of *Tunis*.

A *Baſha*.

A *Bey*.

The Succeſſion of the *Deys*.

Custom, come every Morning to wish the *Dey* a good Day, that their Father declared to them such an one to be his Successor, and then his Friends join with him, and the *Imam* going up to the Top of the *Minaret* of the Mosque in the Castle, publishes the Death of the *Dey*. When it is known that the *Dey* is dead, a Man speeds through the City on Horse-back, crying, *God save* Dey *such an one*, and all shut up Shop, and stand to their Arms, until the Forts be put into the Hands of the Officers of the new *Dey*, for fear any other should usurp the *Deyship*. When the *Dey* is fully settled, all the Cadies, and others who need his Favour, bring him Presents, but in the Night, and in great Dishes covered with Fruit or Meat, under which they lay Purses, more or less, as they think fit, and so he receives perhaps the first Night above 200 Purses in Presents. If these Presents were carried in the Day-time he would refuse them with great Passion, that it may not be thought, that he would be guilty of Bribery. The *Dey* keeps no great Court, nor carries it out with any great Majesty, but shews himself familiar with every Body. The *Dey* cannot obtain that his Son shall succeed him after his Death, because the People fear that young Men will be debauch'd and insupportable to them; so that if a *Dey* would settle his Son in his Power, he must do it in his Life-time, which is hardly possible. At *Tunis* they have an *Aga* of the Customs, who has a vast Revenue, and is a Man of great Authority.

The Proclamation of him, and his Prefects.

His Court.

The *Aga* of the Customs.

Their Apparel.

The *Moors* of *Barbary* are not apparell'd like the *Turks*; for instead of a *Deliman* and a Vest they wear a *Gillet*, or Wastcoat, and over it a Justicore, which reaches down to the Knee, girt about with a large Girdle, and on their Heads they wear a Fez-Cap, shap'd like a Bell, and a thick Turbant round it. All are thus apparell'd, except some Officers, *viz.* the 6 *Chiaux*'s of Justice, who wear a sharp-pointed Cap, with a Turbant about it, and a kind of hanging Sleeve, that is interlaced with it behind their Back. The *Oda Bashaw*'s go much after the same manner, save that their hanging Sleeves end in a kind of Pair of Horns. They have no *Janizaries*, but the Soldiers in Pay are generally Renegado's. *Italian* is commonly spoke at *Tunis*, and *French* is well understood.

Particular Garbs.

The Punishment of Offenders.

The Punishment inflicted on Men for their Crimes at *Tunis* differ according to the Quality of the Criminals, as well as the Offences themselves. When a *Turk* in Pay deserves Death, he is never executed publickly, but in some Chamber. They set him down in a Chair, and 2 Christian Slaves pulling at each End of a Cord, which is about his Neck, quickly strangle him. The *Turks*, or *Moors* of mean Condition are hang'd upon the Outside of the Walls, the Halter by which they are strangled being put thro' an Hole of it, and the Malefactor being push'd down. Maids and Women which deserve Death are choak'd in the *Ooze* by the Sea-side, their Heads being put into it, and a Man setting his Feet upon their Necks. They have very cruel Punishments for such Renegado's as turn Christians again. They wrap them up in a pitched Cloath, put a Cap of the same upon their Heads, and then make a Fire round them; or otherwise they put them to a crueller Death, by walling up their whole Body, that nothing but their Heads are left out, which they smear over with Honey, and leave them so exposed for 3 Days and as many Nights to the Discretion of the Flies, which sting them to Death in less time. The Slaves are punished with Bastinado's, or they cut off their Ears or Noses, according to the Quality of their Offences. If a Slave kill his Master, or any other *Turk*, they break his Legs and Arms, then tie him to an Horse's Tail, and after they have dragg'd him about the Town, strangle him, and give him to the *Franks* to be buried; but most commonly the Boys take him from the Executioner (for there are no ruder Boys in the World) and drag him about as long as they please, sometimes roast his Body, and then throw him into the Town-Ditch.

1. Of Men.

2. Of Women.

3. Apostates

4. Slaves.

The *English* dwell by themselves, and have a Burying-place of their own, and lately the *Franks* have built them an *Oquelle* for that End.

The *English*.

From *Tunis* he went on Horse-back to see *Carthage*, which is about 3 Lgs. from *Tunis*. It is now nothing but Ruines, yet there are visible the Remains of stately Aqueducts, which convey'd the Water from *Zagouan* to *Carthage*, great Cisterns made of Marble and other Stones; but the People are daily almost carrying them away to build Houses at *Tunis*, and in the Country between.

Carthage.

Here he took Ship and sailing between *Sardinia* and *Corsica*, came to the Isle of *Elba*. This Island is divided between the *Spaniards* and the Duke of *Tuscany*. It hath 2 Ports; the one, which is called *Porto Ferraro*, belongs to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*; and the other, which is called *Porto Longone*, belongs to the *Spaniards*. The *French* took it in 1646. but lost it again 4 Years after.

The Isle of *Elba*.

Then he sail'd by a little Isle, called *Caprara*. This Island belongs to the *Genoese*, is not above 10 Miles in Circumference, but bears good Wine plentifully. On the S. side of it there is a little Tower, and a Castle on the N. side, which has 50 Soldiers in Garrison, and about 100 Inhabitants, who are so much given to Shooting (there being store of Game upon the Island) that for 5 or 6 Pound of Powder they'll give you a Barrel of Wine, and Thanks to boot. Here, and before the Island of *Gorgona*, they fish for Anchovies, and in the Season for this Fishing there are so many Boats come, that about *May* there are above 500 Men lodged in the Castle.

The Isle of *Caprara*.

The Isle of *Gorgona*.

From hence he sail'd, and was in his Way attack'd by a *Spanish Corsair*, and 2 other Vessels, over which having attain'd a signal Victory, his Ship arriv'd safe, and with Joy, at *Leghorn*, a Port in the Dominion of the Great Duke of *Tuscany*.

A N

AN Historical Account OF THE Island of *CEILON* in the *EAST-INDIES*:

Written by *Robert Knox*, a Captive there near Twenty Years.

IMPROVED

With all necessary Additions taken out of the History of Capt. *John Ribeyro*, a *Portuguese*, who has also written about the said Island.

Ceilon inaccessible by *Europeans.*

THE Island of *Ceilon* being inhabited for the greatest part by *Barbarians*, which will not allow any Trade or Commerce with any *European* Nation, and inaccessible by any Travellers, it will be convenient to relate the Occasion how the Author of this History happen'd to go into this Island, and what Opportunities he had of being fully acquainted with the People, their Laws and Customs, that so we may the better depend upon the Account, and value it as it deserves, for the Rarity, as well as the Truth of it, and both these the Author gives us a brief Relation of in this Manner.

1657. The Occasion of the Author's going to *Ceilon.*

In the Year 1657. the *Ann* Frigat of *London*, Capt. *Robert Knox* Commander, on the 21st Day of *January* set Sail out of the *Downs*, in the Service of the Honourable the *East-India* Company of *England*, bound for Fort St. *George*, on the Coast of *Cormandel*, to trade for one Year from Port to Port in *India*, which having performed, as he was lading his Goods to return for *England*, being in the Road of *Matlipatan*, on the 19th of *November*, 1659. there happen'd such a mighty Storm, that in it several Ships were cast away, and he was forced to cut his Main-Mast by the Board, which so disabled the Ship, that he could not proceed in his Voyage; whereupon *Coriar*, in the Island of *Ceilon* being a very commodious Bay, fit for her present Distress, *Thomas Chambers*, Esq; (since Sir *Thomas*) the Agent at Fort St. *George*, order'd, that the Ship should take in some Cloth and *Indian* Merchants belonging to *Porta Nov*, who might trade there, till she lay to set her Mast, and repair the other Damages sustain'd by the Storm. At her first coming thither, after the *Indian* Merchants were set on Shore, the Captain and his Men were very jealous of the People of the Place, by reason the *English* never had any Commerce or Dealing with them; but after they had been there 20 Days, and going ashore, and returning again at Pleasure, without any Molestation, they began to lay aside all suspicious Thoughts of the People that dwelt thereabouts, who had kindly entertain'd them for their Monies.

Sir *Thomas Chambers* Agent at Fort St. *George.*

King of *Ceilon*'s Messenger to Capt. *Knox.*

By this time the King of the Country had Notice of their Arrival, and not being acquainted with their Intents, he sent down a *Dissauva*, or General, with an Army to them, who immediately sent a Messenger on purpose to the Captain on Board to desire him to come ashore to him, pretending a Letter from the King. The Captain saluted the Message with Firing of Guns, and ordering his Son *Robert Knox* and Mr. *John Loveland*, Merchant of the Ship, to go ashore and wait on him. When they were come before him, he demanded, *Who they were, and how long they should stay?* They told him, *They were* English *Men, and not to stay above 20 or 30 Days, and desired Permission to trade in his Majesty's Port.* His Answer was, *That the King was glad to hear that the* English *were come into his Country, and had commanded him to assist them, as they should desire, and had sent a Letter to be delivered to none but the Captain himself.* They were then 12 Miles from the Sea-side, and therefore reply'd, *That the Captain could not leave his Ship to come so far, but if he pleased to go down to the Sea-side, the Captain would wait on him to receive the Letter:* Whereupon the *Dessauva* desired them to stay that Day, and on the Morrow he would go down with them, which, rather than displease him in so small a Matter, they consented to. In the Evening the *Dissauva* sent a Present to the Captain of Cattle, Fruits, *&c.* which being carried all Night by the Messengers, was delivered to him in the Morning, who told him withal, That his Men were coming down with the *Dissauva*, and desired his Company on Shore against his coming, having a Letter from the King to deliver into his own Hand. The Captain mistrusting nothing, came ashore with his Boat, and sitting down under a Tamarind-Tree, waited for the *Dissauva*. In the mean time the Native Soldiers privately surrounded him, and the 7 Men he had with him, and seizing them, carried them to meet the *Dissauva*, bearing the Captain in an Hammock on their Shoulders.

A Present sent to him.

Capt. Knox taken Prisoner.

The next Day the Long-Boats Crew, not knowing what had happen'd, came ashore to cut down a Tree to make Cheeks for the Main-Mast, and were made Prisoners after the same Manner, tho' with more Violence, because they were more rough with them, and made Resistance; yet they were not brought to the Captain and his Company, but quarter'd in another House in the same Town.

The *Dissauva* having thus gotten 2 Boats and 18 Men, his next Care was to gain the Ship; and to that End, telling the Captain, That he and his Men were only detain'd, because the King intended to send Letters with a Present to the *English* Nation by him, desired him to send some Men on Board his Ship to order her Stay, and because the Ship was in danger of being fired by the *Dutch*, if she stay'd long in the Bay, to bring her up the River. The Captain did not approve of the Advice, but dare not own his Dislike, and so sent his Son with the Order, but with a solemn Conjuration to return again, which he accordingly did, bringing a Letter from the Company in the Ship, *That they would not obey the Captain, nor any other, in this Matter, but were resolv'd to stand on their own Defence.* This Letter satisfied the *Dissauva*, who thereupon gave the Captain Leave to write for what he would have brought him from the Ship, pretending that he had not the King's Order to release them, tho' it would suddenly come.

Mr. *Knox* obtains a Bible miraculously.

The Captain seeing he was held in Suspence, and the Season of the Year spending for the Ship to proceed on her Voyage to some Place, sent Order to Mr. *John Burford*, the chief Mate, to take Charge of the Ship, and set Sail to *Porta Nova*, from whence they came, and there to follow the Agent's Order.

He Zeal to buy it.

And now began that long and sad Captivity they all along fear'd. The Ship being gone, the *Dissauva* was called up to the King, and they were kept under Guards a while, till a special Order came from the King to part them, and put them one in a Town for the

the Conveniency of their Maintenance, which the King ordered to be at the Charge of the Country.

Capt. *Knox* and his Son placed at *Bender Coos-wat*, where he died.

On *Sept.* 16. 1660. the Captain and his Son were placed in a Town, called *Bender Coos-wat* in the Country of *Hotcurly*, distant from the City of *Candi* Northward 30 Miles, and from the rest of the *English* a full Day's Journey. Here they had their Provisions brought them twice a Day without Money, so much as they could eat, and as good as the Country yielded. The Situation of the Place was very pleasant and commodious; but that Year that Part of the Land was very sickly by Agues and Fevers, of which many died. The Captain and his Son after some time were visited with the common Distemper, and the Captain being also loaded with Grief for his deplorable Condition, languish'd more than 3 Months, and then died, *Feb.* 9. 1660.

Captain *Knox*'s Burial, and his Son's Trouble about it.

Robert Knox, his Son, being now left desolate, sick and in Captivity, having none to comfort him but God, who is the Father of the Fatherless, and hears the Groans of such as are in Captivity, began alone to enter upon a long Scene of Misery and Calamity, oppressed with Weakness of Body and Grief of Soul for the Loss of his Father, and his remediless Trouble that he was like to endure. And the first Instance of it was in the Burial of his Father; for he sent his black Boy to the People of the Town to desire their Assistance, because he understood not their Language; but they sent him only a Rope to drag him by the Neck into the Woods, and told him, *That they would afford him no other Help, unless he would pay for it.* This barbarous Answer encreased his Trouble for his Father's Death, that now he was likely to lie unburied, and be made a Prey to the wild Beasts in the Woods, for the Ground was very hard, and they had not Tools to dig with, and so 'twas impossible for them to bury him; but having a small Matter of Money left him, *viz.* a Pagoda and a Gold Ring, he hired a Man, and so buried him in as decent a Manner as their Condition would permit.

His dead Father being thus removed out of his Sight, but his Ague continuing, he was reduced very low, partly by Sorrow, and partly by his Disease. All the Comfort he had was to go into the Woods and Fields with a Book (*viz.* either *The Practice of Piety*, or Mr. *Roger*'s *Seven Treatises*, which were the only 2 Books he had) and meditate and read, and sometimes pray, in which his Anguish made him often insert *Elijah*'s Petition, *That he might die*, because his Life was a Burthen to him. God, tho' he was pleased to prolong his Life, yet he found a Way to lighten his Grief by removing his Ague, and granting him a Desire, which above all things was acceptable to him. He had read his 2 Books over so often, that he had them both almost by Heart, and tho' they were both pious and good Writings, yet he long'd for the Truth from the Original Fountain, and thought it his greatest Unhappiness that he had not a Bible, and did believe he should never see one again: But, contrary to his Expectation, God brought him one after this Manner. As he was fishing one Day with his black Boy to catch some Fish to relieve his Hunger, an old Man passed by them, and asked his Boy, whether his Master could read, and when the Boy had answer'd, *Yes*, he told him, *That he had gotten a Book from the* Portuguese *when the left* Columbo, *and if his Master pleased he would sell it him.* The Boy told his Master, who bad him go and see what Book it was. The Boy having served the *English* some time, knew the Book, and as soon as he had got it into his Hand, came running to him, calling out before he came at him, *'Tis the Bible.* The Words startled him, and he flung down his Angle to meet him, and finding it true, was mighty rejoyced to see it, but yet was afraid he should not have enough to purchase it, tho' he was resolv'd to part with all the Money he had (which was but one *Pagoda*) to buy it; but his black Boy perswading him to slight it, and leave it to him to buy it, he at length obtain'd it for a knit Cap.

Mr. *Knox* obtains a Bible miraculously.

His Zeal to buy it.

This Accident he could not but look upon as a great Miracle, that God should bestow upon him such an extraordinary Blessing, and bring him a Bible in his own Native Language in such a remote Part of the World, where his Name was not known, and where it was never heard of that an *English* Man had ever been before. The Enjoyment of this Mercy was a great Comfort to him in his Captivity, and though he wanted no bodily Convenience that the Country did afford (for the King immediately after his Father's Death had sent an expres Order to the People of the Town that they should be kind to him, and give him good Victuals; and after he had been some time in the Country, and understood the Languge, he got him good Conveniencies, as an House and Gardens, and falling to Husbandry, God so prosper'd him, that he had Plenty not only for himself, but to lend others, which being, according to the Custom of the Country, at 50 *per Cent.* a Year, much enrich'd him; He had also Goats, which serv'd him for Mutton, and Hogs and Hens. Notwithstanding this Plenty, I say (for he lived as finely as any of their Noblemen) he could not so far forget his Native Country, as to be contented to dwell in a strange Land, where there was to him a Famine of God's Word and Sacraments, the Want of which made all other Things to be of little Value to him; and therefore as he made it his daily and fervent Prayer to God in his good time to restore him to both, so at length he, with one *Stephen Rutland*, who had lived with him 2 Years before, resolv'd to make their Escape, and about the Year 1673. meditated all secret Ways to compass it. They had before taken up a Way of Peddling about the Country, and buying Tobacco, Pepper, Garlick, Combs, and all sorts of Iron-Ware, carried them into those Parts of the Country, where they wanted them: And now to promote their Design, as they went with their Commodities from Place to Place, they discoursed with the Country-People (for they could now speak their Language well) concerning the Ways and Inhabitants; wherre the Isle was thinnest and fullest Inhabited; where and how the Watches lay from one Country to another; and what Commodities were proper for them to carry into all Parts, pretending that they would furnish themselves with such Wares as the respective Places wanted. None doubted but that they did upon the Account of Trade, because Mr. *Knox* was so well seated, and could not be supposed to leave such an Estate, and run away. By Enquiry they found, that the easiest and most probable Way to make an Escape was by travelling Northward, because that part of the Land was least inhabited; and so furnishing themselves with such Wares as were vendible in those Parts, they set forth, and steer'd their Course towards the N. Parts of the Isle, knowing very little of the Ways, which were generally intricate and perplex'd, because they have no publick Roads, but a Multitude of little Paths from one Town to another, and those often changing; and for white Men to enquire about the Ways was very dangerous, because the People would presently suspect their Design.

His Prosperity in his Captivity.

His Desire of the Gospel and Sacraments and Love to his Country.

His Trading, and for what End.

His Traffick Northward.

At this time they travell'd from *Candi Uda* as far as the County of *Neurecalava*, which is in the furthest Parts of the King's Dominions, and about 3 Days Journey from their Dwelling. They were very thankful to Providence that they had passed all Difficulties so far; but yet durst not go any further, because they had no Wares left to traffick with, and it being the first time they had been absent so long from Home, they fear'd the Towns-men would come after them to seek for them, and so they return'd Home, and went 8 or 10 times with their Wares into those Parts, till they became well acquainted both with the People and the Paths.

In these Parts Mr. *Knox* met his black Boy, whom he had turn'd away divers Years before. He had now got a Wife and Children, and was very poor; but being acquainted with those Quarters, he not only took Directions of him, but agreed with him for a good Reward to conduct him and his Companion to the *Dutch*. He gladly undertook it, and a Time was appointed between them; but Mr. *Knox* being disabled by a grievous Pain, which seiz'd him on his Right-side, and held him 5 Days, that he could not travel, this Appointment proved in vain; for tho' he went as soon as he was well, his Guide was gone into another Country about his Business, and they durst not at that time venture to run away without him.

Mr. *Knox* meets his Black.

These Attempts took up 8 or 9 Years, various Accidents hindring their Designs, but most commonly the dry Weather, because they fear'd in the Woods they should be starv'd with Thirst, all the Country being in such a Condition almost 4 or 5 Years together for lack of Rain.

Drought frequent in *Ceilon*.

On *Sept.* 22. 1679. they set forth again, furnish'd with Knives and small Axes for their Defence (because they could carry them privately) and several sorts of Wares to sell, as formerly, and all necessary Provisions, the Moon being 27 Days old, that they might have Light to run away by, to try what Success

Mr. *Knox* and his Friend attempt an Escape.

ceſs God Almighty would now give them in ſeeking their Liberty. Their firſt Stage was to *Anarodgburro*, In the Way to which lay a Wilderneſs, called *Parroah Mocolane*, full of wild Elephants, Tigers and Bears; and becauſe 'tis the utmoſt Confines of the King's Dominions, there is always a Watch kept.

Their Fears and Way of Flight.

In the midſt of their Way they heard, that the Governour's Officers of theſe Parts were out to gather up the King's Revenues and Duties, to ſend them up to the City; which put them into no ſmall Fear, leſt finding them, they ſhould ſend them back again; whereupon they withdrew to the Weſtern Parts of *Eepoulpot*, and ſat down to Knitting till they heard that the Officers were gone. As ſoon as they were departed they went onwards of their Journey, having gotten a good Parcel of Cotton-Yarn to knit Caps with, and having kept their Wares, as they pretended, to exchange for dried Fleſh, which was ſold only in thoſe lower Parts. Their Way lay neceſſarily thro' the Governour's Yard at *Collinila*, who dwells there on purpoſe to examine all that go and come. This greatly diſtreſſed them, becauſe he would eaſily ſuſpect that they were out of their Bounds, being Captives; however, they went reſolutely to his Houſe, and meeting him, preſented him with a ſmall Parcel of Tobacco and Betel, and ſhewing him their Wares, told him, That they came there to get dry'd Fleſh to carry back with them. The Governour did not ſuſpect them, but told them, He was ſorry they came in ſo dry a Time, when no Deer could be catched; but if ſome Rain fell he would ſoon ſupply them. This Anſwer pleaſed them, and they ſeem'd contented to ſtay, and accordingly abiding with him 2 or 3 Days, and no Rain falling, they preſented the Governour with 5 or 6 Charges of Gun-powder, which is a Rarity among them, and leaving a Bundle at his Houſe, they deſired him to ſhoot them ſome Deer, while they made a Step to *Anarodgburro*. Here alſo they were put into a great Fright, by the coming of certain Soldiers from the King to the Governour to give him Orders to ſet a ſecure Guard at the Watches, that no ſuſpicious Perſons might paſs, which tho' it was intended only to prevent the Flight of the Relations of certain Nobles whom the King had clapp'd up, yet they fear'd they might wonder to ſee white Men here, and ſo ſend them back again: But God ſo order'd it, that they were very kind to them, and left them to their Buſineſs, and ſo they got ſafe to *Anarodgburro*. Their Pretence was for dry'd Fleſh, tho' they knew there was none to be had; but their real Buſineſs was to ſearch the Way down to the *Dutch*, which they ſtaid 3 Days to do: But finding that in the Road to *Jafnapatan*, which is one of the *Dutch* Ports, there was a Watch which could hardly be paſſed, and other Inconveniences not ſurmountable, they reſolved to go back, and take the River *Malwatoyah*, which they had before judged would be a probable Guide to lead them to the Sea; and that they might not be purſued, left *Anarodgburro* juſt at Night (when the People never travel for fear of wild Beaſts) on *Sunday*, *Octob.* 12. being ſtored with all Things needful for their Journey, *viz.* Ten Days Proviſion, a Baſin to boil their Proviſion in, 2 Calabaſhes to fetch Water in, and 2 great Tallipat-Leaves for Tents, with Jaggory, Sweet-meets, Tobacco, Betel, Tinder-Boxes, and a Deer-Skin for Shooes, to keep their Feet from Thorns, becauſe to them they chiefly truſted. Being come to the River, they ſtruck into the Woods, and kept by the ſide of it, yet not going on the Sand, leſt their Footſteps ſhould be diſcern'd, unleſs forced, and then going backwards.

Their Fear of Anarodgburro.

They follow the River and the Sand of the Woods.

Being gotten a good way into the Wood, it began to rain, wherefore they erected their Tents, made a Fire, and refreſh'd themſelves againſt the Riſing of the Moon, which was then 18 Days old, and having tied Deers-Skin about their Feet, and eaſed themſeves of their Wares, they proceeded in their Journey. When they had travell'd 3 or 4 Hours with Difficulty, becauſe the Moon gave but little Light among the thick Trees, they found an Elephant in their Way before them, and becauſe they could not ſcare him away, they were forced to ſtay till Morning, and ſo they kindled a Fire, and took a Pipe of Tobacco. By the Light they could not diſcern that ever any Body had been there, nothing being to be ſeen but Woods, and ſo they were in great Hopes, that they were paſt all Danger, being beyond all Inhabitants; but they were miſtaken, for the River winding Northward, brought them into the midſt of a Parcel of Towns, called *Tiſſea Wava*, where being in danger of being ſeen, they were under a mighty Terrour (for had the People found them, they would have beat them, and ſent them up to the King) and to avoid it, they crept into an hollow Tree, and ſat there in Mud and Wet till it began to grow dark, and then betaking themſelves to their Legs, travell'd till the Darkneſs of the Night ſtopt them. They heard Voices behind them, and fear'd that 'twas ſome Body in Purſuit of them; but at length diſcerning 'twas only an Hollowing to keep the wild Beaſts out of the Corn, they pitched their Tents by the River, and having boiled Rice and roaſted Meat for their Suppers, and ſatisfied their Hunger, they commended themſelves to God's Keeping, and laid them down to ſleep.

Many Difficulties they encounter.

Their great Fears.

The next Morning, to prevent the worſt, they got up early, and haſten'd on their Journey, and tho' they now were got out of all Danger of the tame *Chingulays*, they were in great Danger of the wild ones, of whom thoſe Woods were full; and though they ſaw their Tents, yet they were all gone ſince the Rains had fallen from the River into the Wood, and ſo God kept them from that Danger; for had they met the wild Men they had been ſhot.

They are in great Danger of the wild Chingulays.

Thus they travell'd from Morning to Night ſeveral Days thro' Buſhes and Thorns, which made their Arms and Shoulders, which were naked, all of a Gore-Blood. They often met with Bears, Hogs, Deer, and wild Buffaloes; but they all run away as ſoon as they ſaw them. The River was exceeding full of Allegators. In the Evenings they uſed to pitch their Tents, and make great Fires both before and behind them, to affright the wild Beaſts, and tho' they heard the Voices of all ſorts, they ſaw none.

On *Thurſday* at Noon they croſs'd the River *Coronda Oyah*, which parts the Country of the *Malabars* from the King's, and on *Friday* about 9 or 10 in the Morning came among the Inhabitants, of whom they were as much afraid as of the *Chingulays* before; for tho' the *Wanniounay*, or Prince of this People, payeth Tribute to the *Dutch* out of Fear, yet he is better affected to the King of *Candi*, and if he had took them, would have ſent them up to their old Maſter; but not knowing any Way to eſcape, they kept on their Journey by the River-ſide by Day, becauſe the Woods were not to be travell'd by Night for Thorns and wild Beaſts, who came down then to the River to drink. In all the *Malabars* Country they met with only 2 *Bramins*, who treated them civilly, and for their Money one of them conducted them till they came into the Territories of the *Dutch*, and out of all Danger from the King of *Candi*, which did not a little rejoyce them; but yet they were in no ſmall Trouble how to find the Way out of the Woods, till a *Malabar* for the Lucre of a Knife conducted them to a *Dutch* Town, where they found Guides to direct them from Town to Town, till they came to the Fort, called *Arrepa*, where they arriv'd *Saturday*, *Octob.* 18. 1679. and there thankfully ador'd God's wonderful Providence in thus compleating their Deliverance from a long Capivity of 19 Years and 6 Months.

They enter the Country of the Malabars.

Their Acceptable Dutch Entertainment.

The *Hollanders* much wonder'd at their Arrival, it being ſo ſtrange that any ſhould eſcape from *Candi*, and entertain'd them kindly that Night, and the next Morning, being *Sunday*, ſent a Corporal with them to *Manaar* to the Governour there; but he being abſent, they were brought to the Captain of the Caſtle, who received them with a great deal of Kindneſs, and ſet them down at his Table, tho' they were in ſuch an Habit, as they ſeem'd not fit to eat with their Servants or Slaves. After Dinner the Captain enquired of them concerning the Affairs of the King of *Candi* and his Country, and the Condition of ſome *Dutch* Ambaſſadors detain'd there. To all which they gave him ſatisfactory Anſwers.

Their Eſcape wonder'd at by the *Dutch*.

Their Entertainment among the *Dutch*.

The News of their Arrival being ſpread in the Town, the People went flocking to ſee them, as a ſtrange and wonderful Sight, and ſome to enquire about their Husbands, Sons and Relations, which were Priſoners in *Candi*. The *Engliſh* alſo in the Caſtle entertain'd them nobly with Rack and Tobacco. Ten Days after their arrival at *Manaar*, the chief Governour arriv'd, who carried them the next Day to *Columbo* with him, where they were joyfully welcom'd by all the *Engliſh* out of their long Captivity, and the next Day were called before the Governour, whoſe Name was *Ricklof Van Gons*, the General of *Batavia*'s Son. He alſo welcom'd them from their Captivity, and enquired of them many Things concerning

cerning the King of *Candi* and his Country; what Parts of the Land they had lived in, and how they eſcaped, and what was their Intereſt? And when they anſwered, *To have Paſſage at Fort St. George to their own Nation*, thereupon the Governour gave them Money, and order'd them to be cloathed, and carried them along with him to *Batavia*, where he arrived *Jan.* 5. 1679. Here they alſo met with kind Entertainment, and were again cloathed. The ſame Queſtions alſo were put to them about *Ceilon*, and Paſſage was offer'd them with the General's Son: but there happening to come 2 *Engliſh* Merchants thither from *Bantam*, the General permitted them to go along with them, where being arrived, the *Engliſh* Agent kindly entertain'd them, and not being willing they ſhould return again to the *Dutch* for their Paſſage, ſince God had brought them to their own Nation, he order'd their Paſſage in the good Ship *Cæſar*, lying then in the Road bound for *England*, their long wiſh'd-for Port, where they arrived ſafely *Sept.* 1680.

Their Return Home, and Mr. Knox made Captain.

Mr. *Knox* being thus return'd Home by God's miraculous Providence, was not long after employ'd again in the Service of the *Eaſt-India* Company, being made Captain of the *Tarquin* Merchant; and being ſollicited by his Friends, and eſpecially the ingenious Mr. *Robert Hooke*, F. R. S. to give an Account of the Country where he was ſo long a Captive, he, tho' unwillingly, wrote the Hiſtory following.

CHAP. I.

A general Deſcription of the Iſland, with the Cities and Towns of greateſt Note in it.

Mr. Knox refers us to the Sea-Charts for its Situation, as needleſs to be let down.

THE Iſland of *Ceilon*, known to the ancient *Romans* and *Greeks* by the Name of *Taprobana*, and to the Authors of the middle Age, *viz. Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Coſmas Monachus*, and all other Eaſtern Writers by the Name of *Serindib*, or *Serindiul*, is extended from the 6th D. of Northern Lat. to the 10th, being in Length from *Point de Galle* to the Point *Das Pedras* 62 Lgs. and in Breadth from *Chilauw* to *Taiquinimal* 47 Lgs. and in Circumference 190 Lgs.] *Ex F. Rib.*

The Portugueſe inhabit the Coaſts, and invade the reſt of the Iſle.

The Sea-Coaſts round about the Iſland were formerly under the Power and Government of the *Portugueſe*, and ſo held for many Years, in which time many of the Natives became Chriſtians, and learned the Language of the *Portugueſe*, which to this Day is much ſpoken in the Country, and the King himſelf underſtands it, and talks it very well. The *Portugueſe* often make Invaſions thro' the whole Iſland, even as far as *Candi*, the Metropolis of it, which they burnt more than once with the Palace and Temples, and at length became ſo formidable, that the King himſelf was forced to pay them 3 Elephants a Year for Tribute. But the middle of the Iſland, *viz. Candi Uda*, ſtanding upon the Mountains, and ſo being well fortified by Nature, could never be brought into Subjection by them, but has always been in Subjection to their own Kings. *Conſtantine Sa*, General of the *Portugal* Army in *Ceilon*, was very ſucceſsful againſt this preſent King, and run quite thro' the Iſland into the Royal City it ſelf, which he burnt, and all the Temples in it. The King, affrighted with this Succeſs, ſent a Letter to him, ſignifying, *That he was willing to become his Tributary*; but he proudly return'd him Anſwer, *That that ſhould not ſerve his Turn, for he ſhould not only be Tributary, but a Slave to his Maſter the King of* Portugal. This haughty Return ſtirr'd the King's Choler, and he preſently ſaid, *That he would fight to the laſt Drop of his Blood before he would ſtoop to that*; and thereupon firſt bringing over ſome Commanders, who were natural *Chingulays*, by Promiſes of great Rewards, he came to a Battle with the *Portugueſe*, and gave them ſuch a total Overthrow, that the General ſlew himſelf, and all the reſt were killed in the Purſuit, ſo that not one eſcaped, as the Report of the Country goes.

Conſtantine Sa's Succeſs.

His total Overthrow.

Lewis Tiſſera General for the Portugueſe.

After him *Lewis Tiſſera* was the General of the *Portugueſe*. He bragg'd of great Things he would do, and ſwore, That he would make the King eat *Coracan Tallipa*, which is a kind of Haſty-Pudding, made of Water and the *Coracan* Flour, which is reckon'd the worſt Fare in the Iſle; but Fortune did not anſwer his Boaſts with a ſuitable Succeſs, for the King took him Priſoner, and put him in Chains in the common Goal, where he made him eat of the ſame Fare he had threatned to give the King.

Simon Carce.

Their next General was *Simon Carce*, a natural *Chingulays*, but baptized. He is ſaid to have been a great Commander, but very cruel; and tho' he was ſucceſsful, yet he knew not how to uſe Succeſs humanly; for he made the *Chingulays*, when he had taken them, to pound their own Children in the Mortars where they beat their Corn.

Gaſpar Figari.

To him ſucceeded *Gaſpar Figari*, who had a *Portugueſe* Father and a *Chingulays* Mother. He was the laſt General they had in this Country, and a brave Soldier, but degenerated not from his Predeceſſors in Cruelty; for he would hang up the Natives, which he took in the Wars, by the Heels, and ſplit them down the Middle. He carried an Ax, wrapt in a white Cloth, into the Field with him, to execute any that he ſuſpected to be falſe to him, or had deſerted, and leſſer Malefactors he puniſh'd only by cutting off their Right-Hands, ſeveral of whom this Author ſaw while he was in that Country. This *Gaſpar* came up one Day to fight againſt the King, who was on his March towards him with the ſame Reſolution, and fell upon his Camp early in the Morning, and gave him one of the greateſt Routs he ever had, the King himſelf very narrowly eſcaping; for had it not been for a *Dutch* Company, which he had a little before entertain'd for his Guards, which after his own Army was fled, turn'd Head, and ſtopt the *Portugueſe* in their Purſuit, he had been ſeiz'd; but in the mean while he got to the Top of the Hills, and was there ſafe.

The King of Ceilon routed.

After this Defeat the King deſpair'd of keeping his Kingdom out of the Hands of the *Portugueſe* without ſome greater Aſſiſtance from the *Dutch*, with whom in the Year 1640. or thereabouts, he had contracted a Friendſhip, and obtain'd from them ſome ſmall Aids, by complaining of the Unjuſtice of the *Portugueſe*, to whom tho' he conſtantly paid the yearly Tribute of 2 Elephants, according to the League he had made with them, yet they at every Turn were troubling his Land with frequent Invaſions and Inſults. The *Dutch* readily granted his Deſires, and offered him what Help he demanded, which was inconſiderable, till upon this Occaſion being more earneſtly ſollicited for an Army, they ſent him 6 Ships well ſtored with Men, Artillery and Ammunition, under the Command of General *Gerald Halſot*, who landed in the Iſle *Sept. ult.* 1655.]

K. of Ceilon enters a League with the Dutch.

The Dutch ſend 6 Ships to his Aid.

Being arriv'd, he conſulted with the Ambaſſadors of the King of *Candi* about their Affairs, and it being agreed, that it was neceſſary for the *Hollanders* to make themſelves Maſters of *Caliture*, they cloſely beſieg'd it, and took it by Capitulation within 14 Days, *viz.* On *Octob.* 14. From this Place the *Dutch* marched towards *Columbo* to beſiege it, and were met *Octob.* 18. by *Gaſpar Figari*, who having often beaten the *Chingulays*, thought his Army invincible, and therefore threatned the *Dutch*, that he would ſerve them as he had done the *Chingulays*. The *Hollanders* told him, That they would make him know, he had other manner of Men and better Soldiers to deal with, and ſo came to a Battle with him. They had before contrived a Stratagem, which he was not aware of, placing ſome Field-Pieces in the Reer of their Army, and after a ſmall Skirmiſh retreated, as if they had been worſted, on purpoſe to draw the Enemy upon the Mouths of their Guns. The *Portugueſe* were eager in their Purſuit; but being come within Shot, the *Dutch* open'd on the ſudden to the Right and Left, and firing their Guns, utterly routed them, and drove

The Dutch fight Figari.

them into *Columbo*. The King's Army after this Defeat join'd with the *Dutch* to carry on the Siege of that important City, and the King himself being present, it was agreed between him and the *Dutch*, That their Enemies the *Portugueſe* being expell'd from thence, it ſhould be delivered by the *Dutch* into the King's Hand, and ſo he join'd with them in the Siege; and 'tis generally reported, that without his Help it could not have been taken. This City held out till *May*, and was reduced to very great Straits for Proviſion before it would ſurrender; for Women eat their own Children through the greatneſs of the Famine, which at length obliged them to yield it up to the *Dutch* upon the 10th of the ſame Month. The King, as ſoon as Things were ſettled, waited a while expecting when the *Dutch* would come and according to their Articles put him in Poſſeſſion of it; but inſtead of that (whether upon any Provocation or no is uncertain) they fell upon the King's Army by Surprize, and took Bag and Baggage from him, and ſo ſettled themſelves immediately in all the Territories, Cities and Provinces adjoining to the Sea, which once belonged to the *Portugueſe*. This perfidious and unjuſt Act provoked the King in ſo high a manner, that he maintains a conſtant Hoſtility againſt them, and forbids his People upon Pain of Death to hold any Commerce with them; ſo that the *Dutch* have enough to do to maintain thoſe Places which they have; for oftentimes the King falls upon them by Surprize, and does them great Damage, ſometimes giving no Quarter, but cutting off the Heads of whomſoever he catches, which are brought up, and hung upon Trees near the City; ſometimes he brings up his Priſoners alive, and keeps them by the High-ways ſide, a Spectacle to the People in Memory of his Victories over them. Not long ſince he took *Bibligom* Caſtle, in the County of *Habberagon*, and demoliſhed the Fort to the Ground, carrying up the Guns to the King's Palace, where they, among others, ſtand mounted on very brave Carriages before his Gate.

Columbo to be deliver'd to the King of *Ceilon*.

The *Dutch* ſettle themſelves in *Ceilon*.

K. of *Ceilon* troubleſom to the *Dutch*.

The *Dutch* being unable to deal with him by the Sword, becauſe they are unacquainted with the Woods, and the manner of Fighting uſed by the *Chingulays*, do endeavour for Peace with him all they can, diſpatching divers Ambaſſadors to him, and ſending great Preſents, honouring him with high Titles, and ſubſcribing themſelves his Subjects and Servants, aſſuring him, that the Forts they build are out of Loyalty to him, and to ſecure his Majeſty's Country from Foreign Enemies. By this means they ſometimes obtain a Permiſſion to keep what they have gotten from him, and ſometimes nothing will prevail with him, he neither regarding their Ambaſſadors, whom he generally keeps Priſoners, nor receiving their Preſents; but taking his Opportunities to ſet on them on a ſudden with his Forces; ſo that the *Dutch* hold their Poſſeſſions there with great Difficulty and Hazard.

The Territories of the *Dutch* in *Ceilon*.

The chief Places which at preſent are under the *Hollanders* are, on the N. Part *Jafnipatan*, on the E. *Trinkimaly* and *Batticalow*, on the S. the City of *Point de Galle*, and on the W. *Columbo*, where the chief Governour hath his Reſidence, *Negumba* and *Colpentine*, beſides other ſmaller Forts and Fortifications, with conſiderable Territories. All theſe Parts of the Iſland are governed by the Cuſtoms and Laws of the *Dutch*, and cannot come properly under any further Conſideration in the Deſcription of this Iſland, which is now only to be view'd ſo far as is in the Poſſeſſion of the Natives, being the Inland Parts of it, now under the Government of the King of *Candi Uda*.

The Diviſion of the Iſland

In this Part of the Iſland are ſeveral large Parts or Diviſions, which we may call Provinces, and not fewer leſſer Shares, called Counties. On the N. ſide lies the Province of *Naurecaleva*, conſiſting of 5 Counties; that of *Hotcourly*, containing 7 Parts. On the E. *Mautaly*, having 3 Counties, beſides *Tennanquod*, *Bintana*, *Vellas* and *Paunoa*, ſingle Counties. *Ouvah* contains 3 Counties, where dwell 32 of the King's Captains with their Soldiers. In the Midland are *Wallaponahoi*, *Poncipot*, *Goddaponahoi*, *Cotemul*, *Horſpot*, *Tunponahoy*, *Oudanour* and *Tottanour*, in which ſtands the Royal City *Candi*. The 2 laſt Counties are the Chief in the Land, very fruitful and populous, inhabited by the principal Men among them; inſomuch, that they ſay, *If they want a King, any Man in them is fit for it*. On the W. lie *Audipollat*, *Dolasbaug*, *Hotteracourly*, which contains 4 Counties; *Portalcon*, *Tuncourly*, containing 3 Counties. Moſt of them lie upon the Hills, called from thence *Condelda*, and the reſt are in the Hands of the *Dutch*. They are divided from each other by great Woods, which none may fell, becauſe they are preſerved for Fortifications. In moſt of them there are Watches kept conſtantly, and in Times of of War in all.

The chief Counties.

Their Land is full of Hills, but exceeding well water'd by divers Rivers of pure and clear Water, which run thro' it, and are very ſerviceable for the Production of Rice, which is their chief Suſtenance. The Rivers *Mavelagonga*, which riſes in the Mountain, called *Adam's Peak*, and runs thro' the whole Land Northward, and that of *Cotemul* are the chief, both of them large and deep, but not navigable, becauſe they are full of Rocks, as are alſo the other Rivers of the Country. There are no Bridges over them, partly becauſe the rapid Streams make it difficult to build any, and becauſe the King will not permit it, leſt his Country be eaſie to travel. They have Plenty of Fiſh, and ſo much the more, becauſe they know not how to catch them.

The chief Rivers of the Iſland.

The whole Iſland is generally covered with Woods, except the Province of *Ouvah*, and the Counties of *Oudipallet* and *Dolasbaug*, which are naturally pretty clear of them. It is moſt populous about the Middle, leſt near the Sea. The Northern Parts are ſomething ſickly by reaſon of the bad Water, but the reſt are very healthful. On the S. ſide of *Candi Uda* is the Hill *Hamalell*, called by the *Portugueſe*, *Adam's Peak*, the higheſt in the Iſland. 'Tis ſharp like a Sugar-Loaf, and on the Top of it is a flat Stone, which hath on it the Print of a Man's Foot, 2 Foot long. The People count it meritorious to worſhip this Impreſſion, and for that End do all go at the Beginning of their Year in *March* thither.

The Iſland very woody.

The Print of a Man's Foot worſhipped.

The Kingdom of *Candi Uda* is ſtrongly fortified by Nature, being encompaſſed with high Hills, which are covered with Woods and great Rocks. There are only ſome narrow Paths over them, which have Gates of Thorns ſet at the Bottom of the Hills and Tops. At the Gates ſtand a Watch to examine all that come and go, that no Slaves nor Priſoners may eſcape. They have no Weapons, but they ſtop People by charging them in the King's Name, which none dare diſobey, becauſe they are moſt ſeverely puniſhed. In Times of War Soldiers are ſet at theſe Gates. The one Part of the Iſle differs much becauſe of the Seaſons from the other; for, when the Weſterly Winds blow, it rains on that Side of the Iſland, and then they ſow their Ground, and at the ſame time the E. Side is fair and dry, and they gather in their Harveſt; and ſo it is on the contrary, when the Eaſt Winds blow, they ſow in the Eaſtern Parts, and 'tis Harveſt in the Weſt. This Weather parts about the Middle of the Iſle at the Mountain called *Cauragashing*. It rains much more on the Hills than Valleys. The N. End is much ſubject to Drought, ſo that ſometimes they do not plow or ſow for 6 Years together; but their is Rain in other Parts of the Iſland, from whence the Northern have their Food.

The Reaſon of the Parts of the Iſle.

Demoliſh'd Cities, and what are now ſtanding, &c.

In ſeveral Places of this Iſland, the People ſay, there were Cities formerly, and tho' they retain the Names, few or no Buildings are to be ſeen. The moſt eminent Cities now ſtanding, where the King hath Palaces and Goods are theſe few:

1. *Candi*, called by the Natives, *Hingodagul-neur*, and *Mauneur*. It ſtands in the Midſt of the Iſland, bravely ſituated for all Conveniences, and excellently water'd. It has no artificial Strength, but is environ'd with Hills, and the Paths to it are fenced with Thorn-Gates and Watches. It is Triangular, and the King's Palace is on the E. Side of it; but he has left it about 40 Years ſince, and never reſided there. The *Portugueſe* have often burnt it, and now it is in great Decay.

1. *Candi*.

2. *Neliemby-neur*, lying in *Oudipollat*, about 12 Miles diſtant from *Candi* on the South. Here is the King's Court.

2. *Neliemby-neur*.

3. *Allout-neur*, ſituate in the Country of *Bintan*, N of *Candi*. Here the King was born, and keeps great ſtore of Corn and Salt, &c. againſt a Time of War. It is water'd with the great River, and has Woods full of Deer, but is ſubject to Drought and Sickneſs. It is much inhabited by the wild People.

3. *Allout-neur*.

4. *Badoula*, in the Province of *Ouvah*, 2 Days Journey from *Candi* on the E. The Country about it is well water'd, and fit for Grazing, being low and ſmooth; yet the Cattle of it will live in no other Country.

4. *Badoula*.

5. *Dee-*

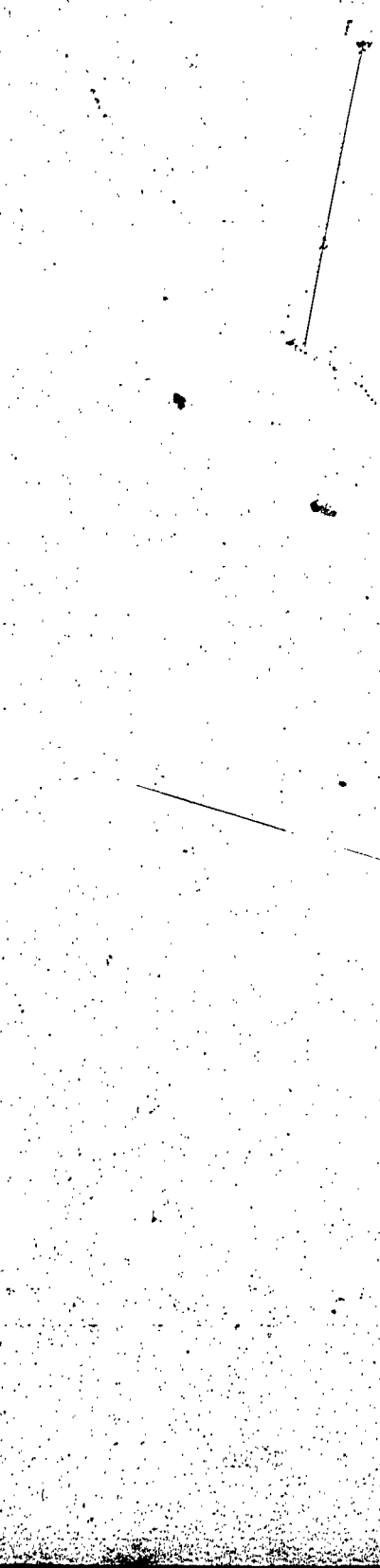


Fig: 1.
Manner of treading out Rice
Vol: 2.
Fig: 2.
The Talipot Leafe with ye manner of sheltring themselves from Rain.
Fig: 3
Execution of An Elephant
A Wanderow Fig: 4.
A Rillow.
Fig: 5.
Their Fishing
Fig: 6.
One Impaled on a Stake.
Fig: 7
A Vadda or Wild man
Their Eateing & Drinking
Fig: 8.
Manner of Extorting their
Fig: 9.

Degligy-neur. 5. *Degligy-neur*, in the Country of *Hevahatt*. Here has been the King's Reſidence ever ſince the Rebellion in 1664. when he was routed from *Nellemby*. It is ſituate in a barren Country; but the King chuſeth it for his own Safety; for it is ſo fenced with ſteep Cliffs, Rocks and Woods, that a few Men can defend againſt a great Army.

A Port. There is a Port in the Country of *Portaloon*, which lies on the W. ſide of the Iſle, by which part of the Iſle is ſupplied with Fiſh and Salt, and maintains a Trade with the *Dutch*; but the E. is ſupplied by the beating of the Sea, which the Sun converts into Salt, and that in ſuch abundance, that they have as much as they pleaſe to fetch, and Salt is the principal Thing [illegible].

Their Towns. As to their Towns, the beſt belong to their Idols, and in them ſtand their *Dewalls*, or Temples. They have no Streets in them; but every Man lives alone by himſelf in his own Plantation, which uſually has an Hedge and Ditch about it to keep out Cattle. Their Towns always ſtand at ſome Diſtance from the High-way; for they care not to ſee any, but ſuch as have Buſineſs with them. Some of them have above 100 Houſes in them, and ſome not above 8 or 10. Many of their Towns and Cities lie deſolate, becauſe they will forſake them if many are ſick in them, and 2 or 3 die together, becauſe they think it happens from the Hand of the Devil, whom they think to avoid by leaving it.

CHAP. II.

Of their Corn, Fruits and Plants.

Their different ſorts of Corn, as, 1. Rice. THeir Corn is the Staff of their Country, and of it they have divers ſorts, all different from ours in *Europe*. The choiceſt and beſt is Rice, of which they have 5 kinds according to their ſeveral Seaſons of Ripening, tho' in Taſte they diſagree little one from another. One kind requires 7 Months from its ſowing before it comes to Maturity, called *Mauvi*; another 6, called *Hauteal*; another 5, called *Honorowall*; another 4, called *Henit*; and the laſt 3, called *Aulfaricol*. The Price of them all is much the ſame; but the ſooneſt ripe is the moſt ſavoury, tho' it yields the leaſt Encreaſe, and the lateſt the moſt fruitful. It all grows in Water, and they ſow of each ſort of Rice as they know their Water will hold, which they have convey'd from their Rivers and Ponds into their Lands by certain Canals. Where they have no Springs nor Rivers to furniſh them with Water, as it is in the Northern Parts, they ſupply this Defect by ſaving Rain-Water in a certain large Pond, made in the Form of an Half-Moon. Every Town has one or more of theſe, which they let out by little and little upon their Lands. There are Aligators in theſe Ponds, of which the People are afraid, tho' they do no Harm to Men. In this Country they ſow the early ripe Rice uſually for fear their Water ſhould fail. When the Ponds are dry, they tread the Mud with Buffalo's, and ſow it with Rice, caſting Water with Scoops often on it. There is another ſort of Rice, which will ripen tho' it grows not in Water; and this is uſed where they cannot get their Water to overflow it; but 'tis not ſo good.

Ponds for preſerving Rain Water.

The Husbandry of Rice-Ground. The Manner of preparing of their Ground for their Rice is after this manner: They plough their Land, which indeed is all Mud, by reaſon of the Waters ſtanding continually almoſt upon it, with a crooked Piece of Wood a little bigger than a Man's Arm, and very light, that it may be eaſily managed in their ſhort and muddy Lands. They plough with Buffalo's, and do it only to potch it, becauſe the more muddy the Land is, the better. After they have ploughed their Land once, they make up their Banks to keep in their Water, and lay them very ſmooth on the Top for Foot-Paths; which being done, they lay their Land under Water a while, and then ploughing is again, they ſow their Seed, which is in the mean time thus prepar'd: They lay their Corn aſoak in Water a whole Night, and the next Day taking it out, lay it on an Heap for 5 or 6 Days, till it grows, and then wetting it again, let it lie till it has Blades and Roots, which will be in 8 Days, or thereabouts. Then they ſow it with very great Exactneſs, ſtrewing it with their Hands as we ſtrew Salt upon Meat. After it is ſown they let it ſtand without Water, till it is grown 3 or 4 Inches above Ground, and then overflow it again, and ſo it remains till it is about a Span high, when the Women come and weed it, and pulling it up where it grows too thick, tranſplant it to thoſe Places where it wants, and from this time it ſtands on the Waters till it is ripe. They reap after our *Engliſh* Manner, and the whole Town all begin at one Man's Field, and ſo go on to the reſt, every Man finding them all Victuals while their Corn is reaping. The Women gather up the Corn after the Reapers, and carry it all together. They uſe not Threſhing, but tread out their Corn with Cattle, which is an eaſier and quicker Way; for they'll tread out 40 or 50 Buſhels in a Day with 6 Beaſts. They make a Pit on Purpoſe with certain Magical Ceremonies, and lay their Corn in it. This is the Womens Work, and they receive a certain Fee for it and Weeding, called *Warapol*. They unſhale their Rice after it is threſh'd by beating it in a Mortar or on the Ground; but there is a ſort that muſt be firſt boil'd in the Husk, or it will break to Pieces, and this is the wholſomeſt. And ſo much of their Rice Corn.

Banks about their Land.

The Preparation of their Seed.

Weeding it.

Treading it out with Beaſts.

See Fig. 1.

Beſides Rice, they have ſeveral other ſorts of Corn, which, tho' inferior to it, ſerve the People for Food, when that can't be had; as, 2. *Caracan*, which is a ſmall Seed like Muſtard-Seed. They beat it in a Mortar, and ſo make it into Cakes, which they bake on the Coals. It will gripe ſuch as are not uſed to it. It is alſo of ſeveral ſorts, and grows both in Hills and Valleys, and yields great Encreaſe. 3. *Tanna*, which is much eaten in the Northern Parts, *viz.* in *Candi Uda*, but little ſown, becauſe it yields the greateſt Encreaſe of any Seed in the World, every Ear containing Thouſands of Grains, ſo that no Man ſows above a Pottle. The Women crop it with their Hands when it is ripe, and parching it in a Pan to unhusk it, when beaten in a Mortar, boil it like Rice. It is a dry Food, but very wholſome. 4. *Moung*, a Corn ſomething like Vetches, growing in a Cod. 5. *Omb*, a ſmall Seed, which is boil'd and eaten as Rice; but has this ſtrange Effect, that being eaten when it is new, it will make them that eat it drunk, ſick and ſpue, but not ſo when it is old. 6. *Minere*, a ſmall Seed. 7. *Boumas*, called alſo *Garavances*. 8. *Tolla*, a Seed uſed to make Oil, with which they anoint themſelves, and ſometimes they parch it and eat it with Jagory, a kind of brown Sugar. And ſo much of their Corn.

2. Caracan.

3. Tanna.

4. Moung.

5. Omb.

6. Minere.

7. Boumas.

8. Tolla.

Varieties of Fruit, but not nouriſhed. They have great Plenty and Variety of Fruits, and might have more, but are not careful to nouriſh them, becauſe whereſoever there is any Fruit better than ordinary, the King's Officers, called *Ponudecarſo*, tie a String about it, and then no Man under pain of great Puniſhment, if not Death, may touch them. The Owner is never paid for it, and 'tis well if the Owner himſelf be not forced to carry them to the King, tho' it be never ſo far; ſo that they little regard any ſorts of Fruit, unleſs it be to ſpare their Rice.

The Fruits uſed by them are, 1. Betel-Nuts. The Fruits moſt in uſe amongſt them are, 1. *Betel-Nuts*, which grow only in the S. and W. Sides of the Iſle. They are found only in their Towns. The Trees are tall, and not much bigger than the Calf of a Man's Leg. The Nuts grow in Bunches at the Top, and the Trees will yield ſome 500, others 1000, and others 1500, and every Nut is ordinarily 2 Foot long, and a Foot and half in breadth. The Leaves are 5 or 6 Foot long, and falling off with the Skin, upon which they grow, are of great Uſe to the Country-People, who uſe them for Baſins to eat their Rice in, and when they take a Journey to tie up their Proviſions, becauſe there are no Inns in their Country.

Money is ſcarce among them, but by means of theſe Nuts, which is a great Commodity to carry to the Coaſts of *Cormandel*, they furniſh themſelves with all they want. They uſually ſold 20000 for a Dollar, but now that Trade is forbidden.

2 *Jackes.* 2. *Jackes*, which the Inhabitants call *Polos*, when they are young; *Coſe*, when they are not full ripe; and *Warracha*, or *Vellos*, when they are ripe. Theſe are a great Help to the People, and a great part of their Food, when they have not plenty of Rice. They grow upon a large Tree, and are as big as a Peck-Loaf, the Outſide is prickly like a Hedge-Hog, and of greeniſh Colour. They cut them in Pieces, and boil them. Their Taſte is much like Cabbage, and one of them will ſuffice 6 or 7 Men. They have Kernels in them as big as Cheſnuts, and much like them in Taſte and Colour. Theſe they take out, and roaſt them by the Fire, or bag them up for Proviſions in their Journeys. One *Jack* yields 3 Pints or 2 Quarts of them. When they are cut, there comes out of them a white thick Subſtance like Tar, which ſticks like Birdlime, and the Boys uſe it to catch Birds; but being mix'd with Rice-Flour, it will eat like Eggs.

Their Kernels.

3. *Jombo*, which taſtes much like an Apple, full of Juice, and pleaſant to the Palate, and not unwholſome to the Body. 'Tis delicately painted with White and Red.

3. *Jombo.*

4. Several Fruits in their Woods, which grow wild; as, *Murros*, round like a Cherry, and as big, ſweet to the Palate; *Dongs*, which is like a black Cherry; *Ambelo's*, like Barberries; *Carolla Cabella*, *Cabella-pooke* and *Polla's*, which are like our Plumbs, and well taſted; *Paragidde*, like our Pears; *Coker-nuts*, *Plantins* and *Banana's* of divers Sorts, Taſtes and Names; ſweet and ſowre Oranges; *Limes*, but no Lemmons like ours; *Pautaurings*, in Taſte like a Lemmon, but bigger than a Man's Fiſts put together; Right *Citrons*; *Mangoes* of ſeveral ſorts, a Fruit which the King much delighted in, and had them brought from all Parts to him; *Pine-Apples*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Water-Melons*, *Pomegranates*, *Grapes*, both black and white; *Mirabelins*, *Codjeu's*, and ſeveral others.

4. Wild-Fruits.

Other Trees there are, which tho' they bear no eatable Fruit, yet they are very remarkable, and of great Uſe and Benefit to the Inhabitants, and they are:

Trees that bear no Fruit, but uſeful, as,

1. The *Tallipot-Tree.* It is as big and tall as a Ship's Maſt, and very ſtrait, bearing only Leaves, which are of great Uſe to the People, being ſo large as to cover 15 or 20 Men, and keep them dry from Rains. They fold up like a Lady's Fan, and being dried they are very ſtrong, limber and light. They cut them in Pieces for uſe, and carry them always almoſt in their Hands to skreen them from the Heat of the Sun, ſecure them from the Buſhes as they paſs thro' the Woods, and keep them dry from the Rains in that wet Country. Soldiers all carry them, not only for the Uſes aboveſaid, but to make them Tents to lie under in the Night. Its Leaves grow on the Top, and it bears no kind of Fruit till the laſt Year of its Life, and then 'tis of no uſe, but for Seed, and the Bloſſoms are ſo ſtrong, that if any of them chance to ſtand near an Houſe, they cut it down to avoid the unpleaſant Smell, and then the Pith of it is very good to eat; for being beat in a Mortar to Flour, it taſtes like white Bread, and they make uſe of it inſtead of Corn before their Harveſt is ripe, if they want.

Tallipot-Tree.

Soldiers Tents.

See *FIG.* 2.

2. The *Kettule-Tree*, which grows up ſtrait, but is not ſo tall or big as a Coker-nut-Tree. It yields a Liquor which they call *Tellegie*, and is rarely ſweet and pleaſing to the Palate, and as wholſome to the Body, but no ſtronger than Water. An ordinary Tree will yield ſeveral Gallons a Day, and they boil it up, and make a kind of brown Sugar called *Faggory*; and if they will uſe their Skill they can make it as white as our ſecond beſt Sugar, and for any Uſe 'tis little inferior to it. It bears a Leaf like to that of the Betel-Tree, faſtned to a Skin, which is hard and ſtubborn like a Piece of Board, and full of Stings as ſtrong as Wyre, of which they make Ropes. As long as the Tree is growing the Leaves ſhed; but when the Tree is come to its full Growth they remain many Years upon the Tree before they fall, but when they fall there is no new ones come again; but it buds for ſeveral Years, and then dieth. The Wood of it is not not above 3 Inches thick, mighty ſtrong, and hard to cut, but very apt to ſplit from the Top to the Bottom, becauſe it is full of Pith.

The Kettule-Tree.

Faggory.

'Tis very heavy, ſo that they make Peſtles with it to beat their Rice. The Buds are excellent in Taſte, reſembling Almonds.

3. The Cinnamon-Tree, called in their Language, *Corundah Gouhah*. It grows moſt on the W. Side of the great River *Mavela-gonga*, and is as plentiful in the Woods wild, as Hazels are in *England*. The Trees are not large, but yet of a competent Bigneſs, and the Cinnamon is the Bark or Rind. When it is on the Tree it looks whitiſh, and being pull'd or ſcrap'd from the Tree, they dry it in the Sun. They take it uſually from the ſmaller Trees, tho' the Bark of the greater is as ſweet to the Smell, and ſtrong to the Taſte. The Cinnamon-Tree does not grow generally in all Parts of the Iſle, but chiefly between *Grudumale* and *Tenevare*; nor is it of an equal Goodneſs in that Extent, but the beſt grows between *Ceſta-Vaca* and *Columbo*, and that it may be the beſt, the Tree ought neither to be too young nor too old, and that it be only the middle Bark. *Rib.* p. 11. The Wood is ſoft and white like Fir, and has no Scent. The People never ſpare the Trees, but cut them down for common Uſe, as other Trees. The Leaf is much like that of Lawrel, both in Colour and Thickneſs, ſave that this laſt hath but one main Rib running thro' the middle of it, and that hath 3. The young Leaevs are red like Scarlet, and being bruiſed, ſmell more like Cloves than Cinnamon. The Fruit is ripe in *September*, and is like an Acorn. It has no Smell like the Bark, but being boil'd, makes an Ointment hard and white like Tallow, and ſmells well. They uſe it to cure Aches and Pains, and burn it in their Lamps, for none uſe Candles but the King.

3. The Cinnamon Tree.

Cinnamon.

The Tree deſcribed.

Lamps.

There are alſo many other ſorts of Trees both in their Woods and Gardens, ſome of which bear Berries, which they make Oil of, and others are remarkable for their Strangeneſs, or other Uſes, the chief of which follow.

Strange Trees.

1. The *Orula*, which is as big as an Apple-Tree, and bears a Berry ſomewhat like an Olive. They uſe it in Phyſick for Purges, and being bruiſed and ſteeped in Water, it dyes a very good Black. If any ruſty Iron be laid in it a whole Night, it will become bright, and the Water be as black as Ink, ſo that Men may write with it. They grow but in ſome Parts of the Land, and are not ſo plentiful as Cinnamon. The Berries are ſold by the Drugſters in their Shops in the City.

The Orula.

Ink.

2. *Dounekaia Gouhah*, a Shrub which bears Leaves 2 Fingers wide, but 6 or 8 Foot long, full of Thorns on both Sides, and a Streak of Thorns running down the middle. They ſplit them to weave Matts withal. The Bud which it bears is a Span long like a Sugar-Loaf, covered with Leaves like a Cabbage, but of a lovely yellow Colour, and very ſweet. The Flowers are like a Plume of Feathers, white and ſmall. The Roots they ſplit into Thongs, and then make them into Ropes.

The Dounekaia.

Ropes.

3. The *Capita Gauhah*, a Shrub never bigger than a Man's Arm. The Wood, Rind and Leaves have a Phyſical Smell, and are ſometimes uſed in Medicines. The Leaf is of a brightiſh Green Colour, round like the Palm of a Man's Hand, and rough; but no ſort of Cattel will eat it, no not the Goats that will ſometimes brouze upon rank Poiſon. Theſe Trees grow plentifully in all Countries, but *Ouvah*, and this is ſuppoſed to be the Cauſe that the *Ouvah* Cattel die when they are brought out of it into any other Country, the Smell of the Tree being accounted venomous. To ſweep their Houſes with a Broom made of this Tree keeps them from Fleas. 'Tis excellent Firing, and will burn when it is green. The Goldſmiths uſe no Coal but what is made of this Wood.

The Capita Gauhah.

To cure Fleas.

4. *Rattans*, which are very plentiful, and run like Honey-ſuckles upon the Ground or Trees, and will grow near 20 Fathom long. The Fruit is covered with a Shell or Skin full of Prickles and Thorns, which falls off when it grows ripe. 'Tis like Bunches of Grapes, but every particular Berry is covered with a Husk like a Gooſberry, but ſoft, yellow, and ſcaly like a Fiſh, yet pretty to behold. The Husk being taken off, there grows a Plumb of a whitiſh Colour within, which hath a Stone covered with Meat. The People make a ſowre Pottage of them to quench their Thirſt.

Rattans, and the Fruit.

The uſe of the Fruit.

5. Canes grow juſt like *Rattans*, and bear a Fruit like them, only the Canes are ſomething larger.

Canes.

6. The

The Betel-tree.

6. The *Betel-Tree*, whose Fruit is so much loved and eaten in those Parts, grows like Ivy, twining about Trees or Poles, which they stick in the Ground for it to run upon, and as the Betel grows the Poles grow. The Form of the Leaf is longish, of a bright Green, and very smooth, like a Pepper-Leaf. It bears a Fruit just like long Pepper, but it is not good for Seed, for it falls off and rots upon the Ground; but if they desire to propagate it, they set the Sprigs.

The *Bogahah-Tree.*

7. The *Bogahah-Tree*, or as we may call it, *The God-Tree.* It is much esteem'd and set by, not for its Use or Benefit, but its Holiness. They are very great and spreading, and their Leaves shake like an Asp continually. They grow in all Parts of the Land, because it is held meritorious to plant them. They have a great Veneration for these Trees, and worship them upon a Tradition, That the *Buddow*, a great God among them, when he was upon Earth did use to sit under these Trees; and for that Reason they set up Lamps and Images under them, pave them like a Key, and sweep under them often to keep them clean; and there is a Stone-Table placed under some of them to lay their Sacrifices on. They plant them in Towns and Highways to serve for Shade for Travellers, and also in the Places where the dead Bodies of their Friends have been burnt, as a Memorial of them. It is an Opinion among them, that such as plant these Trees die within a short time after, and go to Heaven, and therefore their oldest Men, who in the Course of Nature are nearest Death, do it, the younger sort desiring to live a little longer in this World before they go to Heaven.

The Planting them.

CHAP. III.

Of their Roots, Plants, Herbs and Flowers.

Roots of divers sorts.

THIS Island produceth great Variety of Roots, useful partly for Food, and partly for Medicine. Such as are commonly used for their Sustenance, called by one common Name, *Alloes*, and by the *Portugueſe* and us, *Inyames*, are of divers sorts, most of them plentiful Bearers, of which some they plant, and others grow wild, being as good as the former, only they are more scarce, and grow deeper. It would be to little purpose to name them all, and therefore it shall suffice to speak a little of them in general. They serve both for Food and Sauce, or for a Relish for their Rice; but they make many a Meal of them alone to lengthen out their Rice, or for want of it; for they cannot want these, if they will be but at the Pains to set them; or, if not, they are bought very cheap. There are 2 sorts of these Alloes; some require Trees or Sticks to run upon, and others require neither. The former sort will run to the Tops of very great Trees, and bear Blossoms and Flowers, but of no Use. The Leaves die every Year, but the Roots thrive, and will grow to a great Bigness, becoming as big as a Man's Waste, something roundish, but in divers odd Shapes. Those that do not run up on Trees are also of sundry sorts, bearing a long Stalk and a broad Leaf: Some of these Roots are also roundish, but others grow out like a Man's Finger, which they call *Angul-Alloes*, i. e. Finger-Roots, and of these some are white and others red. Those that grow in the Woods run deeper into the Earth, and climb the Trees, bearing a Blossom like Hops, and growing to the Bigness of a Man's Arm.

Alloes of two sorts.

Angul-Alloes.

They have also excellent Herbs, and that of several sorts, which they boil and eat with Butter: Some of them are 6 Months growing to Maturity, and rise with a Stalk as big as a Man can reach, and being boil'd, they are almost as good as Asparagus. Some of these have Stalks as red as Blood, and some green, and others have green Leaves, and Stalks very white. They have also divers other sorts of Fruit which they dress and eat with their Rice, and taste very savoury, which they call, *Carowela*, *Wattocul*, *Morongo*, *Cacorehouns*, &c. which are like nothing of that Nature in *England*. Our *English* Herbs and Plants grow very well in their Country, and they have Plenty of them, as, Coleworts, Carrots, Radishes, Fennel, Balsam, Spear-mint, Mustard, &c. all which, except the 2 last, have been transplanted from other Countries hither, and by such Experiments it appears, that other *European* Plants would grow there. They have Fern, *Indian* Corn, several sorts of Beans, as good as any in *England*, right Cucumbers, Calabasses, and several sorts of Pumpkins. The *Dutch* on their Part of this Island have in their Gardens Lettice, Rosemary, Sage, and all other Herbs and Sallетings which grow in their own and other Countries of *Europe*.

Herbs of several sorts.

Carowela, Wattocul, &c.

European Plants will grow here.

Medicinal Herbs are here also found in great plenty, their Woods being their Apothecaries Shops, from whence they fetch Herbs, Leaves and Rinds of Trees, with which they make all their Medicines and Plaisters, and with them sometimes they do notable Cures, of which it may not be amiss to give an Instance or two, because they look miraculous, if compared with our tedious way of curing Distempers. A *Chingulays*, who profess'd the Art of Physick in this Island, would undertake to cure a broken Leg or Arm by the Application of some Herbs, which he gather'd out of the Woods, with that speed, that the broken Bone, after it was set, should knit in the time one might boil a Pot of Rice and 3 *Carrees*, i. e. in the Space of 2 Hours, and accordingly did do it. They will also cure an Impostume in the Throat, by chewing the Rind of a Tree called *Amaranga*, in one Day and Night's time, and swallowing the Spittle, after it is prepared by them. The Author was cured in that Space.

Medicinal Herbs.

Some notable Cures.

There is also great Plenty of Flowers, and many Varieties, all growing wild, because they never plant any. There are Roses, red and white, as sweet-smelling as ours; as also several other sorts of sweet Flowers, which the young Men and Women tie up in their Hairs to perfume them. There are 2 or 3 sorts, which for their Rarity and Use deserve a more particular mention; And the 1st of them is a Flower call'd *Sindric-mal*, of which some are of a *Murry* Colour, and some white: The Nature of it is to open about 4 a Clock in the Evening, and so continue all Night, until the Morning, when it closeth it self up till 4 a Clock again. Some of the Inhabitants transplant them out of the Woods into their Garden, to serve them instead of a Clock, when it is so cloudy that they cannot see the Sun. 2. *Pichamauls*, they bear a white Flower like our ordinary Jasmine, but very well scented. The King hath a Parcel of them brought to him every Morning, wrapp'd up in a white Cloth, hanging upon a Staff, and carried by certain Persons, whose Office it is between them. All People that meet these Flowers, out of Respect to the King, for whose Use they are, must turn out of the Way. These Officers hold Land of the King for this Service, and therefore must always have Plenty of them, and to that End plant them in their own, or any Man's Ground where they delight, which is more-especially by Rivers. 3. *Hopp-mauls*, which are Flowers growing upon great Trees, which bear nothing else; they are extraordinarily sweet-scented, and therefore the young People use it chiefly as a Flower of the greatest Beauty and Vertue in their Isle.

Variety of Flowers.

Sindric-mal.

Used instead of a Clock.

Pichamauls.

Hopp-mauls.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of their tame and wild Beaſts, and Inſects.

Several ſorts of Beaſts.

THIS Iſland hath alſo ſome Varieties of living Creatures, *viz.* Beaſts, Inſects, Birds, Fiſh, Serpents *&c.* ſome uſeful, others noxious. We ſhall begin with the Beaſts, of which they have Cows, Buffalo's, Hogs, Goats, Deer, Hares, Dogs, Jackols, Apes, Tygers Bears, Elephants, and other wild Beaſts; but Lions, Wolves, Horſes, Aſſes and Sheep they have none. Their Woods produce great abundance of Deer, from the Largeneſs of a Cow or Buffalo, to the Smallneſs of an Hare. They have a Beaſt called a *Gauvera*, which much reſembles a Bull; his Back ſtands up with a ſharp Ridge, and his Legs are white half way. But the Creature that this Country is famous for above any in *India*, is the Elephant; and therefore I ſhall be more particular in the Relation about it. 1. As to their Manner of taking them; And, 2. Their ſeveral Properties and Qualities.

The *Gauvera*.

The Elephant.

Elephants eaſily catch'd, and how.

This Beaſt, tho' he be ſo big and wiſe, yet he is eaſily catch'd, which is done for 2 Reaſons, either for Pleaſure, as their King does, or for Gain, as the *Portugueſe* formerly did, to ſell them to the *Moors*, and *Mahometans*. When the King commands to catch Elephants, after they have found ſuch as have Teeth, which are but few, and thoſe Males only, they drive ſome She-Elephants into the Woods, which they bring for that Purpoſe; which, when the Males have got a Sight of, they will never leave, but follow them whereſoever they go. Theſe She-Elephants are ſo uſed to it, that they will do whatever their Keeper bids them by Word or Beck, and ſo they lead them thro' the Tows and Countries to the Gates of the King's Palace, where they are either ſnared, or put into a Pound fitted for them, that the King may ſee them, and his Pleaſure be known concerning them, to keep them, or let them go. But the *Portugueſe*, who caught them for Gain, had another way of taking them. They had a very large and ſtrong tame Elephant, called *Ortela*, whom they kept for this Purpoſe, and when they had Notice where the Elephants were, which the Peaſants would not fail to give them, becauſe as they go in Herds, with one great one at the Head of them, ſo they do a great deal of Damage to the Corn by eating it and treading it down with their broad Feet; and they often beat down their Coker-nut-Trees to brouze on, and ſometimes their Houſes; they go out with *Ortela*, and ſome Females with them, which they leave in the Towns near, and ſend him with his 2 Guides into the Woods. As ſoon as the Leader of the Herd ſees him, he will come at him to fight him with all his Force. *Ortela*, with his Guides, advances forward careleſly, and when he comes near him, he claſps him ſo faſt about his Neck with his Trunk, that he cannot ſtir, and holds him till his Guides have fetter'd him before to *Ortela*, and behind. Then they fetch the She-Elephants from the Town, and chain one to him in *Ortela*'s Place, and make the other go by him, and in 3 Days he will grow tame, by keeping him awake. Thus they have catched 30 in a Year, which they ſell according to their Stature, at 1000 *Pardaons* a Cubit, and ſo the leaſt will fetch 8000 or 9000, and the biggeſt 15000, ſomething being given for the good Shapes and Marks.] *Ex J. Rib.*

The *Portugueſe* Way of taking them.

The Elephants Wiſdom and other Properties.

The Wiſdom of this Beaſt is equal to his Bulk, for he will do any thing his Keeper bids him, which is poſſible for a Beaſt not having Hands to do. The *Chingulays* report, that they bear the greateſt Love to their Young of all irrational Creatures; for the She's are tender equally of others young ones, as of their own; ſo that where there are many ſhe Elephants together, the young ones go and ſuck of any, as well as of their own Dams, and if a young one be in Diſtreſs, and cry out, they will all run to help it; and if they be going over a River, as here be ſome pretty broad, and the Streams run very ſwift, they will all with their Trunks aſſiſt to convey the young ones over. They take great Delight to lie and tumble in the Water, and will ſwim excellently well. Their Teeth never ſhed. The tame ones never breed, but when they have a mind to have any young ones of the She's they tie their 2 fore Feet together, and ſend them into the Woods, where they meet with the wild ones, by which they conceive, and go one Year with Young. It is their conſtant Practice to throw down Trees with their Heads, when they are too high for them. The wild ones will run much faſter than a Man, but the tame ones not. The People ſtand much in fear of them, and are often killed by them. They do them alſo great Hurt in their Plantations, when they get into them, by eating and trampling on their Corn and Fruits; ſo that in Towns near to thoſe Woods, where there are plenty of them, they are forced to keep Watch all Night, and when they come affright them with light Torches and Hollowing, by which if they can't be driven out, they make uſe of their Bows to ſhoot them, but not unleſs there be any Trees to ſhelter them; for the Elephant will run upon them and kill them, if they be not very cautious.

Elephants do much hurt.

There be alſo Bears and Tigers in their Woods, but they are not ſo fierce as to aſſault People; but Travellers are in more Danger of Elephants, than any other Beaſts.

Bears & Tygers not in danger of

The King makes uſe of them for Executioners of Malefactors; for they will run their Teeth thro' the Body, and tear it Limb from Limb. They have ſharp Irons with Sockets, with 3 Edges, which they put upon their Teeth at ſuch Times; for the tame Elephants have the Ends of their Teeth cut to make them grow the better, and they will grow again. At ſome times of the Year the Males are mad; ſo that none can rule them. Many times they will run away with their Keepers in their Rage, and throwing them from their Backs, kill them; but commonly they have Notice of it by an Oil running out of their Cheeks, and then they chain them by the Legs faſt to great Trees. The Females are never ſubject to this Malady. The Keepers of the King's Elephants make Sport with them thus. They command them to ſuck up Water firſt, and holding it in their Trunk till they have a Sign, they will ſpout it out a whole Pailful at a time ſo violently at the Perſon mark'd out, that he can hardly ſtand againſt it. [Some Authors have written, that they never lie down; but it is an old Error, they lie all Night, and will couch down whenever they are commanded. In their Journeys, indeed, they never lie down, unleſs they be very weary and tir'd; and then if they lie down, they never riſe again, but die, which has been the Occaſion of the Miſtake, that they never lie down but when they are ready to die.] *Ex J. Rib.*

Elephants uſed for executing Malefactors.

A Trick done by Elephants.

Their Lying down.

They have divers ſorts of Ants worthy of Remark, beſides the ſmall red and black ones, like ours in *England*, viz. 1. *Dimbio's*, which are great red Ants, and make their Neſts upon the Boughs of great Trees, with Leaves wrapt together in Cluſters as big as a Man's Head, in which they lay their Eggs and breed. They often make many Neſts upon a Tree, and where they do ſo none dare venture upon them for the Fruits, for fear of being ſtung.

Ants of divers ſorts.

1. The *Dimbio's*.

2. The *Coura-atch*, a great black Ant. They make deep Holes in the Ground, ſomething like Coney-burrows, but leſs and ſtrait down, where they live, and in ſome Places of the Country there are ſo many, that they Cattle are apt to break their Legs in them.

2. The *Coura-atch*.

3. The *Coddia*, a bright black Ant, which dwells always in the Ground, but in the Day-time are very buſie in going backwards and forwards, like People in trading Cities. They bite deſparately, as bad as if a Man was burnt with a Coal of Fire; but they are of a noble Nature, for they will not begin, and you may ſtand by them, if you do not tread upon them, nor diſturb them. The *Chingulays* fable, That this Power to ſting was given them, becauſe they dared to ask a Wife of the *Noya*, a venomous and noble kind of Snake, which if they had obtained, they ſhould have ſtung as bad as he: But I rather ſuppoſe that they reſpect the Moral, and not the Relation in this, as their other Fables.

3. The *Coddia*.

4. The

4. The *Vaco's*, an Ant of a middle Size, whoſe Hinder-part is white, and Head red. The whole Land ſwarms with them. They eat and devour all that they can come at, except Iron and Stone; as, beſides Food, Cloth, Wood, and the Thatch of Houſes; ſo that People cannot ſet any thing in their Houſes upon the Ground for them. They creep upon the Walls of their Houſes, and always build an Arch over themſelves, how high ſoever they go, eating all things in their Way. They mightily annoy the *Chingulays*, inſomuch, that they are forced to watch every thing they value. In Places where there are no Houſes they raiſe themſelves great Hills like Buts, from 4 to 6 Foot high, which are ſo hard and ſtrong, that they can hardly be dug down with Pick-axes. The *Chingulays* call them, *Humboſſes*. In them are hollow Vaults and Arches, in which they dwell and breed, and their Neſts are like Honey-Combs, full of Eggs and young ones. They are built of pure fine Clay, which the People uſe to make their Earthen-Gods of. Theſe ſort of Creatures when they come to Maturity have Wings, and all that are ripe in an Evening flie up into the Air in ſuch Numbers, as to darken the Sky, as high as they can, and then fall down dead. Such Birds as are not at Rooſt will flie up among them, and make a good Supper of them. Their Poultrey always live on them, and delight to eat them above Rice or any thing, and by ſcraping eaſily find them.

Bees of 3 Sorts.

Bees are the moſt profitable Inſect they have, and are of 3 ſorts. 1. *Meemaſſes*, which are like our *Engliſh* Bee; they build in hollow Trees and the Holes which the *Vaco's* have made. The People drive them out of their Holes by blowing into them, and ſo take their Combs out with their Arms; for they value not their Stinging. 2. *Bamburo's*, larger and of a brighter Colour than our *Engliſh* Bee. Their Honey is thin, and they make their Combs openly upon the Boughs of Trees. In time of Year whole Towns will go into the Woods and gather their Honey, and come home laden with it for their Uſe. 3. The *Connameia*, or blind Bee. They are ſmall like a Fly, and black; their Honey is like Tar, and little regarded, unleſs by the Boys, who ſometimes cut Holes in the Trees, and take it out. When the People find a Swarm of Bees hanging on a Tree, they will hold Torches under them till they make them drop, and taking them, they will boil them and eat them, and ſay they are excellent Food.

Bees eaten.

Leeches.

There is a ſort of Leeches of the Nature of ours, but of a dark reddiſh Colour like the Rind of Bacon, and about 2 or 3 Inches in Length, as big as a Gooſe Quill. In dry Weather they don't appear, but after Rains the Graſs and Woods are full of them. The Legs of Travellers are never free from them, becauſe they go bare-footed, according to the Cuſtom of the Country, and when they have ſuck'd their Bellies full they drop off. 'Tis in vain to pull them off, they crawl on ſo faſt, and are troubleſome; but they bear with them, becauſe they are wholſome. And tho' they are ſo numerous in ſome Countries, there are none in others, nor was it ever known that there was any. They have alſo Water-Leeches like ours.

Monkeys of divers ſorts.

Monkeys abound in their Woods, and are of divers ſorts, ſome as large as our *Engliſh* Spaniels, of a dark gray Colour, and black Faces, but great white Beards from Ear to Ear, like an old Man; others are of the ſame Bigneſs, but Milk-white, both in Body, Face and Beard, but not ſo plentiful as the former. Theſe ſorts do very little Miſchief, keeping in the Woods, and eating only the Leaves and Buds of the Trees, but when they are catched they will eat any thing. Theſe they call in their Language, *Wanderows*. There is another ſort of Apes, which are very numerous, and do much Miſchief in their Corn, which grows near their Woods; for they come in great Multitudes, and tho' they keep Guard, and do all they can to ſcare them, they will get their Bellies and Hands full too, being in ſo many Places together. They have no Beards, but white Faces, and long Hair on the Top of their Heads, that parts like a Man's. They are ſo impudent, as to go into their Gardens, and eat their Fruit. They call theſe, *Rillows*, and account the Fleſh of both ſorts good to eat. There are alſo ſeveral ſorts of Squirrels, which they catch for Food.

1. *Wanderows.*

See *FIG.* 4.

Their Devices for catching theſe wild Beaſts are very ingenious, and therefore I ſhall take notice of ſome of the chief of them. For catching Deer, and ſome other wild Beaſts, they uſe this Contrivance. In a dark Night, when there are driſſling Rains, they have a Basket made of Canes in the Faſhion of a Tunnel, on the Top of which they ſet a Potſhard with a flaming Fire in it, and a Man with 3 or 4 ſmall Bells in his Hands goes into it, and making a jingling with them, that their Treadings may not be heard, he goes into the Woods, and behind him certain Men with Bows and Arrows, who are ſhelter'd from the Sight of the Beaſts by the Basket. Theſe Men go to the Pond Sides, where they know the Beaſts are, and as ſoon as they ſee them, the Beaſts will ſtand ſtill to ſee the ſtrange Sight, and ſuffer them to come as near them as they deſire. They by long Experience, know all the Beaſts by their Eyes, and ſo they ſhoot what ſort they pleaſe; but the wild Hog runs away. Their Arrows are about a Yard long, and the Blades at leaſt a Foot. They will alſo obſerve the Haunt of a Deer, and by placing a Spear ſometimes in it, kill them. If a Tiger kills any of their Cows, they will take notice of the Place thro' which he came, and ſet a Croſs-Bow, ſo that at his next coming it ſhall diſcharge it ſelf upon him. The wild Hog is hardeſt to be taken of any wild Beaſt, and they account it one great Piece of Valour, next to that of fighting their Enemies and hunting the Elephant, to catch Hogs; but they have ſome artificial Ways of taking him; as, 1. By making a Pit, and fixing ſharp Stakes at the Bottom of it, and then covering it lightly with Earth, plant it with Potatoes, and other Roots, which the Hogs love; and when they come to eat them, tho' ſeveral Months after, they break thro' by their Weight, and ſo are taken. 2. They will alſo ſet a falling Trap of exceeding Weight, and plant under it the ſame ſort of Roots, which when the Hog comes to eat, and tread under it, it falls upon them, and they are taken. Sometimes Men are taken in them, and killed. They are alſo very ingenious at catching Birds and Vermin with the like Traps and Gins, which they make of green Sticks and Withs with their Knives only.

Devices to catch wild Beaſts.

The wild Hog not to be taken, thus.

The Way to catch wild Hogs.

CHAP. V.

Of their Birds, Fiſh, Serpents and Commodities.

Divers kinds of Birds.

ANother Sort of living Creatures which this Land produceth is Birds, which are of divers Kinds, *viz.* Crows, Sparrows, Tom-titts, Snipes and Wood-Pigeons, like ours in *England*; but they appear not in ſuch Flocks as ours, unleſs they be Crows and Pigeons. There are alſo Birds like Woodcocks, and Partridges, but they are ſcarce. They have alſo many wild Peacocks and ſmall green Parrots, but not very good to talk. The Bird called *Mal-conda* will ſpeak excellently well with Teaching. It is black, with yellow Gills about the Bigneſs of a Black-Bird. There is alſo another ſort much of the ſame Bigneſs, named *Can-conda*, yellow like Gold, and very beautiful to the Eye, which alſo might be taught to ſpeak. Here are alſo other ſmall Birds not much bigger than a Sparrow, very lovely to behold, ſome being as white as Snow, having a Tail a Foot long, and their Heads as black as Jet, with a Tuft of Feathers ſtanding upright thereon; others are reddiſh like a ripe Orange, with a Tuft of black Feathers on their Head; the one is the Cock, and the other the Hen. They have alſo a Bird which they call, *Carlo*, which never lights on the Ground, but always ſits upon high Trees. He is as big as a Swan, black and very ſhort Legg'd, his Head monſtrous, and Bill very long, a little round like an Hawk. He hath white Spots on each Side of his

The *Mal-conda*.

The *Carlo*.

his Head like Ears, and on the Top of his Head a white Creſt, like a Cock's Comb. They generally keep 4 or 5 together, and are continually hopping from Bough to Bough. They are ſeldom ſilent, but make continually a roaring Noiſe, ſomething like the Quacking of a Duck, which may be heard a Mile. The *Chingulays* ſay, they cry for Rain, that they may drink. The Bodies of theſe Fowls are good to eat.

Their Water-Fowl. They have ſeveral ſorts of Water-Fowl, ſome reſembling our Ducks, but Coal black, which live altogether upon Fiſh. They will remain a wonderful while under Water, and riſe at a great Diſtance; others like Swans, but much larger, which remain about the Ponds and Rivers to catch Fiſh; but the People do not eat them. Nature has endued them with ſuch Craft, that no Allegators can catch them, tho' there be many in their Waters. The Dogs will catch their Peacocks in Rainy Weather, becauſe when their Feathers are wet they cannot flie. The King keeps many Birds tame, as Geeſe, Ducks, Turkeys and Pigeons, but never kills any to eat. None may keep tame Birds but himſelf. He delights not ſo much in Turkeys, becauſe their Heads change Colour.

Store of Fiſh. They have great ſtore of good Fiſh; for not only their Rivers and Ponds, but every Ditch is full of them. They catch them to eat with their Rice, and in Summer time, when their Ponds are near dry, they take abundance of them in Wicker-Baskets like a Tunnel, which by jobbing down in the Mud, incloſeth them; and when the Fiſher perceives them to be in it, by beating againſt the Side, he takes them out, and ſticks them by their Gills upon a Cleft *Rattan*. The great River *Mavela-ganga* is exceeding full of them, and ſome are as big as Salmons. In dry Weather they have a Way of taking them, by ſtretching a With hung full of Boughs over the River, and by drawing it after them, drive them into Pots, which they place between the Rocks, for they have no Nets, nor any other Way of taking them. At a Paſſage near *Candi* the King cauſed great Quantities of Fiſh to be nouriſhed for his Pleaſure, which, tho' now neglected, ſtill keep thereabouts in Expectation, and 'tis common for Paſſengers and others to feed them with Rice, they are ſo tame. In other Rivers alſo the King has Fiſh kept for his Pleaſure, but he never kills any for his Table. The People are much pleaſed with theſe tame Fiſh.

Their Way to catch Fiſh in a River. See *FIG.* 5.

Tame Fiſh.

Sorts of Serpents. The Species of Serpents which are found in this Conntry are: 1. The *Pimberah*, whoſe Body is as big as a Man's Middle, and of a proportionable Length. He is not ſwift, but catches Deer and other Beaſts, on which he preys, by Subtilty, lying in their Paths, and holding them by a Peg, which grows on his Tail. He is ſo greedy, that he will ſwallow a Roe-buck whole, Horns and all; ſo that it happens ſometimes that the Horns run thro' his Belly, and kill him. A Stag being catched by one of theſe Serpents, was at the ſame time ſhot by an *Indian*, at which he gave ſuch a ſtrong Jerk, that he pull'd off the Serpent's Head, while his Tail was twiſted about a Tree to hold him.

1. The *Pimberah*.

A ſtrange Accident.

2. The *Polonga*. 2. The *Polonga*, the moſt venomous Snake, that kills Cattle: They are of 2 ſorts, one Green, and the other a reddiſh Gray, full of white Rings on his Sides, and about 5 or 6 Foot long.

3. The *Noya*. 3. The *Noya*, a poiſonous Snake, about 4 Foot long, and of a grayiſh Colour. He will ſtand with half his Body upright 2 or 3 Hours together, and ſpread his Head wide open like a Pair of Spectacles. The *Indians* call it, *Noy-Rogerati*, *i. e.* The King's Snake, becauſe, as they ſay, 'twill do no Harm. They think, that if they kill one of them, all the other Serpents of the ſame kind will revenge his Death upon the Family of the Murtherer, and devour his Wife, Brethren and Children; and therefore when any of theſe Serpents have bitten a Man, or done them any Damage, they enchant him, and making him to come before them, give him a ſharp Reproof, and then they fancy he will never hurt them more. *J. Rib. p.* 154. But the *Polonga* and *Noya* never meet, but they fall a-fighting, till they kill one another, and the Conqueror eats the Body of him that is vanquiſh'd. The Reaſon of this fatal Enmity between theſe 2 Serpents is, as the *Chingulays* fable, becauſe in a great Scarcity of Water the *Polonga* killed a Child in a Bowl, where the *Noya* had uſed to drink, and never hurt it, tho' it ſtruck him, becauſe he received this Benefit by it; but the *Polonga* being led to it by the *Noya*, bit the Child, becauſe it ſtruck him, and it died, which the *Noya* revenged by killing the *Polongo*, and devour'd him; and ever ſince this Enmity has continued between theſe Serpents, and the *Chingulays*, when they ſee 2 Men irreconcilable, they ſay, they are like the *Noya* and *Polonga*.

A Fable about the *Noya* and *Polonga*.

4. The *Carowalla*, a poiſonous Serpent, about 2 Foot long, which lurks in the Holes and Thatch of Houſes. The Cats will kill them, and eat them. 4. The *Carowalla*.

5. There are other ſorts of Snakes called *Gerende*, whereof there are many, and thoſe not venomous. The former ſorts are few, in Compariſon of theſe who do little Miſchief, but in deſtroying Eggs, young Birds, young Hares and Rabbits, of which laſt there are very few or none wild, becauſe of theſe and other Vermin, as, Polecats, Ferrets and Weaſels. 5. The *Gerende*.

6. *Hickanella*, which is much like a Lizzard, venomous, but ſeldom bites, unleſs he be provok'd. They lie in the Thatch of Houſes. 6. The *Hickanella*.

7. *Talagoya*, a kind of Lizzard alſo, which is found in their Woods; it is of about a Foot long, and a browniſh Colour. Several Perſons that have eat of them ſay, there is no Veniſon that has a better Taſte. 7. The *Talagoya*.

[*Ribeyro* gives us an Account of ſome other ſorts of Serpents, very venomous, of which one, that is about 2 Handfuls long, and of a brown Colour, eſpecially under the Belly, is ſo poiſonous, that if he bites any one, the Perſon falls into a deep Sleep, and unleſs he be immediately help'd, he will die in leſs than 6 Hours: Another ſort makes all thoſe whom he bites mad, and they certainly die within 24 Hours. But the moſt terrible of them all is one, whoſe Poiſon is ſo penetrating and violent, that the Perſon who is bitten bleeds at all his Pores, and is irrecoverable; but of theſe he gives us no Names. He tells us alſo of another ſort, which he heard of, but never ſaw, becauſe 'tis very rare, which gets upon Trees, and when he ſees a Cow, Stag, or Deer, Elephant, or other Animal paſs under him, he darts upon them, and immediately the Fleſh of the Beaſt breaks in Pieces, and putrifies, thro' the Violence of the Poiſon, and the Beaſt never ſtirs after; but nothing appears outwardly, for the Skin is as whole as when the Beaſt was alive, as ſome curious Perſons have found by ſearching them. This Serpent is no bigger than a Viol-String, and not above a Foot long: But he does not deliver this for certain, and ſeems to account it fabulous and incredible.] Some ſorts of poiſonous Snakes without Names.

There are alſo a ſort of Water-Snakes, called *Duberria*, but harmleſs. Allegators, which are very numerous, may be reduced to this ſort of Creatures, of which ſomething is before ſaid. Cattle are often bitten by ſome of theſe Snakes, and as often found dead, but not eaten. When the People are bitten by them, they are cured by Charms or Medicines applied in time. Water-Snakes.

There is a Spider called *Democulo*, very long, black and hairy, ſpeckled and gliſtering. Its Body is as big as a Man's Fiſt, with Feet proportionable. They are very poiſonous, and keep in hollow Trees and Holes. Men bitten with them do not die, but the Pain will ſometimes put them out of their Senſes. Here is alſo a Creature, called *Kobbera-guion*, reſembling an Allegator. The biggeſt of them are 5 or 6 Foot long, ſpeckled black and white. He lives moſt upon the Land, but will take the Water, and dive under it, hath a long blue fork'd Tongue, like a Sting, which he puts forth when he is angry, and hiſſeth and gaſpeth, but doth neither bite nor ſting, tho' the Appearance of him would ſcare thoſe that know not what he is. He is not afraid of People, but will lie gaping and hiſſing in the Way, and will ſcarce ſtir out of it. He will eat Carrion with the Dogs and Jackols, and will not be driven away by them; but if they bark or ſnap at him, he will ſo laſh them with his Tail, which is about an Ell long, like a Whip, that they will run away howling. This Creature is is not eatable. But there is another Creature, much like this, but leſs, called the *Tollaguion*, which is eaten, and reckon'd excellent Meat. The *Chingulays* ſay, 'tis the beſt ſort of Fleſh, and that for this Reaſon: If you eat other Fleſh at the ſame time that you eat of this, and have Occaſion to vomit, you will never vomit out this, tho' you vomit out all the other. This Creature eats no Carrion, but only Leaves and Herbs. It is of a blackiſh Colour, and lives in hollow Trees and Holes in the *Humboſſes*: It may be ſuppoſed the ſame with the *Guiana* in the *Weſt-Indies*. This Country alſo hath its Vermin, as, Rats, Mice, &c. A great Spider. The *Kobbera-guion*. The *Tollaguion*. Rats and Mice.

They

Musk-Rats. They have alſo Musk-Rats, ſo called, becauſe they ſmell ſtrong like Musk; but the Inhabitants do not eat them, as they do all other ſort of Rats.

Precious Stones and Minerals. Many Commodities there are which are the Growth and Product of this Country, as Precious Stones, Minerals, and other valuable Things, of which we ſhall give a brief Account. They have ſeveral ſorts of precious Stones, but none is allow'd to have any, but the King, and he having enough, a Stake is ſet upon the Places where they are found to keep all Perſons from meddling with them, upon Pain of being impaled. [The Stone which is moſt valued among them, is that which is called, *The Cat's Eye*, which is not known to us in *Europe*. They never poliſh it, but only waſh it clean, and it will caſt forth all the lively and brisk Colours which Light can produce, altho' according to the different Poſition of the Eye it ſhews one Colour more than the other, as Cats Eyes do, from whence it takes its Name, tho' theſe Stones much excel them in Variety. They gather theſe Stones out of certain Rivers. Rubies are the precious Stones which are eſteem'd in this Country next to Cats Eyes, and they have the fineſt in the World, and the Saphirs and Topazes are in the next Place. The *Moors* much eſteem the Topazes of *Ceilon*, becauſe they are of a prodigious Bigneſs. They have many other pretty ſorts of Stones, ſome as big as Cherry-Stones, and others as Buttons, and tranſparent, as, *Jacinths*, *Verli's*, *Taripoi's*, and ſeveral others, which they value no more than we do Sand or Flint-Stones.] *Ex J. Rib.*

Cats Eyes.

Rubies.

Jacinths.

Chryſtal. In their Mountains they find ſtore of Chryſtal, white, red and green. They have alſo Iron in great Plenty, of which they can make Steel. Salt-Petre they can alſo make, and Brimſtone is found here; but the King will not have it diſcover'd. Ebony grows here in great abundance, with choice of tall and large Timber. They have alſo Cardamums, Jaggory, Rack, Oil, Black-lead, Turmerick, Salt, Rice, Betel-nuts, Musk, Wax and Pepper, which laſt grows here very well in great Plenty, and if they had Vent for it might be much encreaſed.

Pepper.

The peculiar Commodities of this Iſland is Cinnamon. Wild Cattle and Honey are found in great plenty in their Woods, which any one might have, if they would take Pains to get them; as alſo, Elephants Teeth and Cotton, of which they have ſuch Plenty growing in their own Grounds, as were ſufficient to make them good and ſtrong Cloth for their own Uſe, and ſell it to the Up-lands, where it is ſcarce. Cotton.

All theſe Things the Land naturally yields, and might do it in greater Quantities, if the People were laborious and induſtrious; but the *Chingulays* abhor Work, and will do juſt no more than Neceſſity forces them to, partly out of a natural Love to Lazineſs, and partly becauſe as their Eſtates encreaſe, ſo do their Taxes; for if they are known to have any thing, the Government ſeizes it; nor have they any Encouragement for their Induſtry by Traffick and Commerce. Their Lazineſs.

[Beſides theſe Riches on the Land, there are alſo great Riches gotten by the Pearl-Fiſhing, which is every Year uſed on the Coaſts of this Iſland, from the 11th of *March* to the 20th of *April* by the *Moor*, *Gentile*, and *Chriſtian* Merchants, who ſend 3 or 4000 Ships for this Purpoſe. The Manner of Fiſhing is thus. The whole Company furniſh out 6 Barks, with one Maſter, 10 or 12 Mariners, and 8 or 9 Divers. Theſe Veſſels go into ſuch Places as have not above 5 or 6 Fathom Water, and parting about a Lg. aſunder, take 1000 Oiſters apiece, and having examined them, judge where are the beſt Pearls and beſt Fiſhing by the Largeneſs of them, becauſe they are ſome Years better than others. When they have pitched upon the Place, they agree with the King to let them fiſh, and he gives them ordinarily 4 Men of War to defend them from the Piracies of the *Malabars*, and then the 6 Veſſels go to Fiſhing 4 Hours a Day, when the Sea is calm. The Merchants in the mean time hold a great Fair, and ſell all manner of Goods to the People, and dividing their Pearls at the End of *April*, go Home enrich'd. Here are alſo found upon this Coaſt large Pieces of Amber of a great Bigneſs, which the Fiſhers take from their Coral, caſt upon the Shore by the Waves of the Sea in great Quantities. Their Coral is black, which in many Places is more eſteem'd than the Red.] *Ex J. Rib.* The Pearl-Fiſhing on the Coaſts of *Ceilon*. The Manner of it. Ambar. Black Coral.

CHAP. VI.

Of the King's Perſon, Power and Government.

HAving treated of the Country as to its Product and Wealth, we will now come to the Inhabitants, and becauſe Civil Government is the moſt conſiderable Thing in a Nation, and the King is the principal Inhabitant, it will be propereſt to deſcribe their King and his Government, before we proceed to the other People. Anciently this Country conſiſted of 9 Kingdoms. *Ribeyro* gives us the Names diſtinctly, *viz. Cotta*; *Dina-Vaca*, or *Duas-Cartas*, which in the Times of the *Portugueſe* was ſwallow'd up in the former; *Uva*; *Candi*; *Ceita-Vaca*; *Sepe-Corlas*; *Chelaon*, or *Negombo*; *Jafnapatan* (but this is not under the King, but the *Dutch*) the Nation of the *Bedas*; or *Vaddahs*, who have a Queen of their own; all which had their ſeveral Kings; but now by the Viciſſitude of Time and Things, they are all reduced under one King, who is an abſolute Tyrant, and rules the moſt Arbitrarily of any King in the World. He governs himſelf and all others according to his own Humour, and as the Capricio takes him, and therefore we muſt expect no ſtanding Forms or Laws here, but conſider the Kingly Power, as ſettled in a ſingle Perſon, and managed as he pleaſes, which being in the Hands of *Radga Singa*, which ſignifies, *A Lion King*, we will conſider him firſt in his Perſonal, and then in his Political Capacity.

Nine Kingdoms in *Ceilon*.

Their preſent King's Name and Character.

In his Perſonal Capacity we will ſpeak ſomething of his Birth and Parentage, his Perſon, Relations and Eſtate; his Manners, Pleaſures, Recreations and Religion. As to his Birth and Parentage, he was not of the Royal Blood by a direct Line, but the former King leaving his Queen a Widow with 2 young Princes, ſhe marry'd to the Chief Prieſt, called in their Language, *Tirinanxy*. Her Name was *Donna Catharina*, becauſe being converted to Chriſtianity by the *Portugueſe*, ſhe receeived that Name in her Baptiſm. She had the preſent King by this *Tirinanxy*, who ruled during the Minority of the young Princes, and being old, when they came of Age, divided the Country between his own Son and the 2 rightful Heirs; but ſo contriv'd it, that *Candi Uda*, which is the beſt part of the Land, ſhould fall to his own Son. All theſe 3 Kings in the Beginning of their Reign join'd againſt the *Portugueſe*, but ſoon after fell out among themſelves, and this King in the End prevailed, and got all the Country. *Donna Polla Rodgerah*, King of *Mautoly*, being overthrown, fled to *Columba*, and put himſelf under the Protection of the *Portugueſe*, who ſent him to *Goa*, where he died. The other, named *Comaure-Singa*, King of *Ouvah*, died in *Candi*.

His Parentage.

His 2 Brothers.

As to the Perſon of the preſent King, he is not tall, but very well ſet, ſomewhat of the blackeſt Complexion, with great rowling Eyes, always moving, a brisk bold Look, a great ſwelling Belly, and very lively in his Actions and Behaviour, little Hair on his Head, and that gray, but a large comely Beard with Whiskers, and in the whole a very comely Man. He bears his Years well, for being between 70 and 80 Years old, he appears youthful both in his Countenance and Actions. His Apparel is not according to his own Country Faſhion, but after his own Invention, which makes it very wonderful among them. He wears a Cap like a Jeſuit's, with 4 Corners, and 2 Teer high, with a Feather ſtanding upright before. His Doublet has the Sleeves of one Colour, and Body of another. He wears long Breeches to his Ancles, and Shoes and Stockings; but he does not keep to one Gard, but changes the Faſhion as he pleaſes. He wears a Band hanging down his Back like

His Perſon.

His Apparel.

like the *Portugueſe*. When he comes abroad, he wears his Sword always with a Soulder-Belt; it has a Gold Hilt and Scabboard. He has alſo uſually in his Hand a Cane painted with divers Colours, having a Golden Head, and ſet with precious Stones towards the Bottom. His right and lawful Queen is a *Malabar*, brought from the Coaſt, but lives not with him. She wants not the Maintenance and Attendance of a Queen, but ſeems confined to the King's Palace at *Candi*. He has had by her a young Prince and a Daughter.

His Court at *Digligy-neur*.

He keeps his Court at *Digligy-neur*, whether he fled in the Rebellion againſt him. His Palace ſtands upon a great Hill, and is wall'd about with a Clay Wall, and thatch'd to keep it from the violent Rains. Within the Wall 'tis full of Houſes, moſt of which are low and thatch'd, but ſome are 2 Stories high, and tyled very handſomely, with open Galleries for Air, rayl'd about with turn'd Baniſters, one Ebony, and one painted, but not much Proſpect, ſtanding between 2 Hills; for the King dwells not here for Pleaſure, but Security. His Palace hath many large and ſtately 2 Leaved Gates, excellently well carved, with the Poſts and all the Iron-Work rarely engraven. The Windows are inlaid with Silver-Plates and Ebony, and on the Top ſtand Flowers made of Earth. The Contrivance of his Palace is much like *Woodſtock-Bower*, with many Turnings and Doors, at which ſtand Watches, who dare not ſtir from them without ſpecial Order, and ſo no Man hardly knows where he is. He has ſtrong Guards Night and Day about his Court, kept by his Grandees in Perſon, who every one have Soldiers under them, and muſt not ſtir from the Places appointed them, nor converſe with one another. At the End of every Watch Multitudes of Drums and Trumpets ſound to keep his Guards waking, and for the Honour of his Majeſty. He has alſo Elephants to keep with his Guards, that if there ſhould be any Tumult, they might trample them down. He puts moſt Confidence in a Band of *Negro's*, or *Cofferies*, who therefore watch at his Chamber-Door, and about his Perſon. At uncertain Times he ſends out Spies by Night to ſee how well his Watches are kept, and what paſſes, and of theſe he has ſo many every where, that there is nothing almoſt ſaid or done, but he knows it. Moſt of his Attendants are Boys and young Men of good Parentage, and well favour'd, which by his Order his *Diſſawa's* pick up in the Country, and ſend to the Court. They go bare-headed, and wear long Hair hanging down their Backs, and are uſed only for Attendance; for Sodomy is not heard of among them. He chuſes to have his Meat dreſſed by Women, and therefore has many handſome young Women to furniſh his Kitchin: He matters not whether they be married or not. He once ſent for all the *Portugueſe* Women, which were young and white, and what he liked he kept, and ſome of them are there to this Day; others that he did not like he ſent home, and ſuch as incurr'd his Diſpleaſure, he caſt into the River, or impriſon'd. He keeps not many Concubines within his Palace, beſides thoſe of his Kitchin, which are ſaid to be ſuch. Some he has dwelling in the Towns near, and therefore no Stranger is allow'd to go into them; but Slaves that flie to them are free from their Maſters Service, but ſtill remain Slaves to them. Sometimes he walks about his Palace, where there are certain Pediſtals of Stone, whiten'd with Lime, and laid in Oil, upon which he ſtands when he comes forth, and looks above all his People. When he goes out, which is never far, he orders his Guards, which are many Thouſands, with a *Dutch* and *Portugal* Captain, with their Flags and Soldiers, Drummers, Trumpeters, Pipers and Singers; as alſo, his Elephants, Horſes and Falconers, with their Falcons, to attend him at his Palace-Gate, and commonly all this Throng ſhall attend 3 or 4 times before he will go out, and when he does come, he does it ſo much of a ſudden, that they are forced to hurry much to get in Order. Sometimes he comes upon an Horſe, or Elephent, but ſeldom; for uſually he is brought in a Palleaquin. He ſeldom goes any further than a Banqueting-Houſe, which he has built by a Pond-ſide for his Pleaſure, about a Musket-ſhot from his Palace. He receives Ambaſſadors with great Honour and Shew, ſending his Great Men with large Trains of Soldiers to meet them. The Graſs is pared away, and the Ways made broad for them for many Miles, and Drums and Trumpets, Pipes and Flags go before them. Victuals and all ſorts of Varieties are provided for them, and carried to them as long as they ſtay in the Country. Their Goods and Baggage are all carried by Men provided by the King, who alſo prepares them an Houſe, hung on the Top and Sides with Callico. They are kept under a Guard, and great Commanders with their Soldiers are appointed to watch them, which is accounted for a great Honour; but they dare not ſuffer any to come to the Speech of them, becauſe the King loves to have frequent Conference with them, and to ſee them brought before him in great Pomp and State, that the Ambaſſadors may take Notice of the Greatneſs of his Majeſty, and ſometimes he gives them Men and handſome young Maids for their Servants, being very familiar with them, and admitting them to his Sports and Paſtimes, not caring to part with them.

His Temperance in Diet.

He is temperate both in his Diet and Luſt, tho' he has all ſorts of Varieties which his Country affords brought to his Table; yet his chief Fare is Herbs and ripe pleaſant Fruits, and this but once a Day. Whatever is brought for him to eat or drink is covered with a white Cloth, and whoever brings it hath a Muffler tied about his Mouth, that he may not breathe upon the King's Meat, as hath alſo the Carver, who is always a Nobleman. He ſits alone at Table, and eats upon a Plantane-Leaf laid in a Golden-Baſin. And the ſame Abſtinence he uſeth about his Women, which he doth with ſuch Secrecy, as that 'tis not known. He allows no Whoredom or Adultery in his Court, and if his Nobles are found guilty of either, he not only executes them, but ſeverely puniſhes the Women. Rebellion doth not more diſpleaſe him in his Nobility than Whoredom, nay, all that are admitted to wait on him are not permitted to enjoy the Company of their Wives, no more than other Women. Indeed, he once himſelf got a Child of his own Daughter, which might argue an unbridled Luſt in him; but this ſort of Inceſt is allow'd Kings for Royal Iſſue, but puniſh'd ſeverely in all others. His Pride and Affectation of Honour is unmeaſurable. When any of his People come to addreſs him, they fall flat down on their Faces to the Ground 3 ſeveral times, and then they ſit with their Legs under them upon their Knees as long as they are in his Preſence, and when he bids them depart they go backward till they are out of his Sight; but of the Chriſtians he requires no more than to kneel before him with their Hats off: Nay, he takes on him all the Ceremonies and Solemnities of Honour which they ſhew to their Gods, making this Account, That as he is now their King, ſo hereafter he ſhall be one of their Gods. Formerly out of Haughtineſs of Spirit, he was ſeen very ſeldom by the People, but now he comes forth daily, and loves to be flatter'd with great and windy Titles, ſuch as *Maubawall*, Great Sir; *Hondrewne Boudouind*, Let your Majeſty be a God, and the like; but ſince the Rebellion he is afraid to aſſume the Title of a God, leſt the Power that he abuſed and wickedly aſſumed ſhould again ſet the Hearts of his People againſt him, and quite overthrow him; yet he retains a mighty Haughtineſs of Spirit, as I ſhall ſhew in 2 or 3 Inſtances.

Inſtance of his great Spirit.

In the Year 1675. this King grew very jealous of one of his greateſt and moſt valiant Commanders, who had great Succeſs againſt the *Dutch*, took ſeveral of their Forts, and killed many of them, beſides what he made Captives, and leaſt he ſhould grow ambitious of his Throne, reſolved to take off his Head: The General had ſome private Intelligence of the King's Deſign, and being then in his Camp fighting againſt the *Dutch*, revolted to them, and got to *Columba* with his Wife and Goods. His Departure was a mighty Loſs to the King, but out of the Height of his Stomach he ſeem'd to bear it without any Regard, or Concern, as if it were beneath the Quality of ſo great a Monarch to be moved with ſuch a Trifle, and ſending another General into his Place, never after took any Notice of him; and as for his Houſe and Eſtate, which he left behind him, he let it lie and rot, ſcorning to take any Notice of him or his.

His Contempt of Wealth.

Another Inſtance of his great Spirit is this: On *New-Years-Day* all his Subjects high and low did uſe to bring him at the Beginning of his Reign, and ſome Years after, certain Preſents, or rather Taxes, according to their Abilities, and he was wont then to take them, but now he ſo abounds with all Things, and his Treaſury is ſo full, becauſe he is continually putting in, and ſeldom taking out, that he ſcorns now

to

to receive theſe his due Revenues, leſt his People ſhould think he did it out of Neceſſity or Want. Nevertheleſs his Great Men ſtill at the New Year bring their Preſents, and wait Day after Day for the King's coming forth, hoping that he will accept them, but of many Years he will not be courted to receive them, his Mind being ſo haughty, that he ſcorns to value any thing in this World.

And ſo again; When Tidings are ſometimes brought him, that the *Dutch* have made an Invaſion into his Country, tho' he can eaſily expel them, yet he will not ſeem to take Notice of it. The *Dutch* are ſenſible of his Pride, and his Love of Flattery, and many times make a good Advantage of it, by telling him, they are his Subjects, and built Forts for his Defence, and what Damage they do his Country, is thro' Neceſſity to get Proviſion; but ſometimes this will do no good, for he will fall upon them, and do them much Damage. He expects ſo much Veneration, that whatſoever Things are carried to him, which are known by the white Cloth they are wrapt in, all Perſons that meet them muſt turn out off the Way, not excepting his foul Cloaths, which are carried on an Hand lifted up in a painted Cloth, to be waſhed almoſt daily.

The *Dutch* uſe his Pride for their Advantage.

His Craft and Wiſdom

He is Crafty, Cautious, and a great Diſſembler, nor doth he want Wiſdom. He is not paſſionate in his Anger, but will conceal his Reſentments with much Evenneſs. He is not haſty, or raſh in any Buſineſs, but doth all Things with Deliberation, tho' but with little Advice, for he ſcorns to take Council of any Body. He accounts it Wit and Policy to lye and diſſemble, that his Intents and Purpoſes may the better be conceal'd; but he abhorreth and puniſheth all that lye to him. *Dutch* Runnagates, tho' he receives them, yet he values them not; for he ſays, They are Rogues that are guilty of Murther or Theft, or they would not leave their own Nation.

His Cruelty.

He ſeems to be naturally cruel, for he ſheds a great deal of Blood, and gives no Reaſon for it; nor is he content to take away Mens Lives, but he puts them to long and lingring Torments; for when he is diſpleaſed with any, he will command to cut and pull away their Fleſh with Pincers, and burn them with hot Irons to confeſs their Complices, which, to rid themſelves of the Torments, they will readily do, and accuſe many that they never knew nor ſaw. Then he will order their Hands to be tied about their Necks, that they may eat their own Fleſh, and ſo lead them thro' the City to Execution, the Dogs, who are uſed to it, following them to devour their Fleſh. At the Place of Execution, which is always in the greateſt High-way, that all may ſee, and ſtand in awe; there are always ſome ſticking upon Poles, others hanging up in Quarters upon Trees, beſides what lies on the Ground, killed by Elephants, or otherwiſe. He hath a great many Priſoners, whom he keepeth in Chains ſome in Goal, others in the Cuſtody of great Men, and for what, and how long no Man dare enquire. Some are allow'd Food, others not, and if they do any Work to relieve their Want, if he knows it, he will not permit them, becauſe, as he ſays, he puts them there to torment and puniſh them, and not to work, and be well maintain'd; yet this is conniv'd at, and there are Shops by the Priſons to ſell their Wares. When the Streets by the Palace are to be ſwept, the Priſoners in their Chains are let out to do it. When they have been long in Priſon, at his Pleaſure, without any Examination, they are led to Execution; nor is his Anger appeaſed by the Death of the Malefactor, but he oftentimes puniſheth all his Generation, ſometimes killing them altogether, and ſometimes giving them all away for Slaves; and thus he uſually deals with thoſe whoſe Children are his Attendants; for after they have been at Court a while, and know his Cuſtoms and Manners, he cuts off their Heads, and puts them in their Bellies, no Man knowing for what Crime. When they are killed, they are all called Rebels and Traitors, and their Fathers Houſes, Lands and Eſtate ſeiz'd on for the King's Uſe, which are ſometimes redeem'd by giving Fees to the Courtiers; but often the whole Family and Generation periſh. This makes all the Youth, which the *Diſſawa's* ſend to Court, go with heavy Hearts, as knowing the fatal End that the King's honourable Service will bring them and their Families to; howbeit, there is no Remedy, they muſt go, tho' 'tis like an Ox to the Slaughter; and when they are gone, they muſt never viſit their Friends, nor do their Friends care to own them (tho' they are all allow'd to viſit them, except Women kind) becauſe they ſhall be ruin'd with their Fall, and ſo think it their Safety not to be known.

See FIG. 6.

The Priſoners work, and ſweep the Streets.

His Puniſhment of whole Families.

As to his Pleaſures, and Diverſions, they are alſo of ſeveral ſorts, ſometimes he will ride, or be carried to his Banqueting-houſe, which is about a Musket-ſhot from his Palace. It ſtands on an Hill, and by it is made a little Plain with infinite Labour, but not above a Bow-ſhot ſquare, and in a Valley by running a Bank croſs, he hath made a fine Pond, which is exceeding full of Fiſh. At this Place he hath ſeveral Houſes built very handſome, born up with carved Pillars, and rayled like Balconies; ſome ſtand high upon a Wall for him to ſit in, and ſee Sport with his Elephants and other Beaſts, and for Proſpect: Others ſtand over his Pond, where he ſits and feeds his Fiſh with boiled Rice, Fruits and Sweet-meats, which are ſo tame, as that they will come and eat in his Hand, but he will not ſuffer any of them to be catched. In the Pond his Elephants alſo waſh, and on the Plain he will ſometimes command his Grooms to get up and ride in his Preſence, for which he will give them 5 or 10 Shillings a Man, and ſometimes a Piece of Cloth. When he goes forth, his Horſes are always brought forth ready ſaddled, but he himſelf mounts them very ſeldom. His Horſes are uſually Preſents ſent him by the *Dutch*, but ſome are taken in War. He has about 12 or 14, of which ſome are *Perſian* Horſes.

His Diverſions of ſeveral ſorts.

To ſee his Elephants, and feed his Fiſh.

His other Paſtimes are (for he minds nothing elſe) theſe. He cauſeth Elephants to be brought out of the Woods to him, and catched in his Preſence. Alſo, when he comes out of his Court, he delights to look on his Hawks, altho' he never uſeth them for Game; and ſometimes on his Dogs, tame Deer and Tygers, and ſtrange kinds of Birds and Beaſts, of which he hath a great many. Alſo he will try his Guns, which are excellently true, and rarely inlay'd with Silver, Gold and Ivory, by ſhooting at Marks with them. He hath 8 or 9 ſmall Iron Cannon, which he took from the *Dutch*. Theſe he hath mounted on Field-Carriages, all rarely carved and inlay'd with Silver, Braſs, and coloured Stones, and painted with Images and Flowers. The Guns do really diſgrace the Carriages, for which he has many Braſs ones far more worthy, tho' not ſo much regarded, but 'tis thought he beſtows ſo much on theſe, becauſe they are Memorials of his Victories. They are uſed on Feſtival-Days.

Catching Elephants.

Seeing his Birds.

Trying his Guns.

In his Palace he paſſeth away his Time by looking on certain Toys and Fancies that he hath, and upon his Arms and Guns, calling in ſome or other of his Great Men to ſee them alſo; and he will ask them, whether they have a Gun that will ſhoot further than that he ſhews them, and how much Steel will make ſuch a Knife, as he holds in his Hand.

Viewing Toys.

He takes great Delight in Swimming, which he doth excellently well; and when he is pleaſed to divert himſelf that Way, the Cuſtom is, that when he goes into the Water, all his Attendants that can ſwim, muſt go in likewiſe.

Swimming.

His Religion is not great, nor indeed can much be expected from him in ſo barbarous a Country. The Religion of his Country he has but little Eſteem for, as perceiving that there is a greater God, than thoſe which they, thro' long Cuſtom, have and do worſhip; and therefore when an Impoſtor, a Baſtard *Moor* by Nation, but born in that Land, came and publickly ſet up a new *Nameleſs God*, as he ſtyled him, and ſaid, That he was ſent to deſtroy the Temples of their Gods, the King oppoſed it not for a good while, as waiting to ſee which of theſe Gods would prevail; but when he ſaw that he aim'd to make himſelf King he allow'd him no longer.

His Religion.

The Chriſtian Religion he doth not in the leaſt perſecute, but rather, as it ſeems to me, eſteems and honours it, as this Paſſage will plainly prove. When his Siſter died, for whom he had a very great Affection, there was a very grievous Mourning and Lamentation made for her throughout the whole Nation, all Mirth and Feaſting laid aſide, and all poſſible Signs of Sorrow expreſſed, and in all Probability it was as much as their Lives were worth who ſhould do any thing at this time that might look like Joy. This was about *Chriſtmas*, yet the *Dutch* adventured to keep that Feſtival with the uſual Solemnity and Feaſting. The News of it was carried to the King, and every one reckon'd that it would go hard with the *Dutch* for doing of this; but becauſe it was done

His Eſteem of Chriſtianity.

upon a Feſtival according to their Religion, the King paſſed it by, and took no Notice of it, which was a Sign he had a Reſpect to their Religion; and the like Value he expreſſes by the kind Treatment he gives the Profeſſion of it, as will be ſeen afterwards.

His Tyrannical Government.

His Government is Tyrannical and Arbitrary in the higheſt Degree, for he rules according to his own Will and Pleaſure, and his own Head is his only Councellor. The Land is all at his Diſpoſal, and all his People from the higheſt to the loweſt are Slaves, or very like Slaves, being in Body and Goods wholly at his Command. The Country he farms out, not for Money, but Service, and inſtead of Rent ſome are to ſerve the King in his Wars, ſome in their Trades, and ſome are to ſerve him as Labourers, and others as Farmers, to furniſh his Houſe with the Fruits of the Ground, and ſo all Things are done for the King without Coſt, and yet every Man paid for his Pains, becauſe they have Land for it. Such as have not water'd Land to bear Rice are free from Payment of Taxes, only ſometimes upon extraordinary Occaſions, they muſt give an Hen, or a Mat, or ſome ſuch Thing, to the King's Uſe, becauſe they uſe the Wood and Water of his Country; but if any find the Duty to be too heavy or too much for them, they may leave their Houſe and Land, and ſo be free from the King's Service, as there is a Multitude that do, and thereby live more happily without than they did with the King's Land.

The King's Towns and their Privileges.

Many Towns are in the King's Hands, and the Inhabitants are to till and manure a Quantity of Land according to their Ability for the King's Uſe, and lay up the Corn for him. Theſe Towns the King often beſtows upon his Nobles for their Encouragement and Maintenance, with all the Fruits and Benefits accruing to the King from them. In each of theſe Towns there is a *Smith* to make and mend the Tools of them, to whom the King has granted it, and a Potter to fit them with Earthen-Ware, and a Waſher to waſh their Cloaths, and other Artificers to ſupply their Wants. And each of theſe hath a Piece of Land for this Service; but what they do for other People they are paid for.

His Vigilancy againſt Plots, and Ways to prevent them.

His great Endeavours are to ſecure himſelf from Plots and Conſpiracies of his People, who being ſorely weary of his Tyrannical Government, often do plot to take him off; and to this End, he is very vigilant in the Night, and keeps himſelf and all about him from ſleeping by Drums and Trumpets, which ſound every Watch. In the Night he does moſt of his State-Buſineſs, as calling Ambaſſadors before him, and reading their Letters; diſplacing Courtiers, and promoting others, and giving Sentence to execute thoſe that he would have out of his Way; and this is done ſo ſuddenly, that many Noblemen are laid hold on, and carried away, before they knew that they were out of Favour.

He makes his Country as intricate and difficult to travel as may be; he forbids them to fell any Woods, eſpecially ſuch as part one Country from another; nor allows any Bridges to be made over the Rivers, nor Paths to be made wider, that he may keep the People from uniting or joining in any Deſign againſt him; and for the ſame Reaſon, he employs his People in vaſt Works, which will require many Years to finiſh, and according to the Quantity of the Work, he will appoint one or more Counties to come in, and the Governour of thoſe Counties he appoints to be Overſeers of the Work, and in this Caſe the Soldiers muſt lay aſide their Swords, and bend their Bones to labour. Theſe Works are digging down Hills, or filling up Valleys. Thus to enlarge his Court, which ſtands between 2 Hills, upon as bad a Spot of Ground as any in his Kingdom, and to bring Water into his Palace, and divers Ponds ſmall and great about it, he was forced to ſplit a great Mountain in twain to let the Water thro' it, and after to make a Bank croſs a Valley above a Cable's Length. The Water was brought 4 or 5 Miles in a Ditch, and the Ground all Hills and Valleys; ſo that they were forced to turn and wind as the Water would run, and ſometimes ſoften Rocks with Fires to break thro' them, which they could eaſily do with Mony. The Water which he brought thus to his Palace was the main Thing which nouriſh'd the Country from whence it came for the producing of Rice, and for want of it they could hardly till their Land. The People being in Extremity, repreſented their Caſe to the King. That the Country was deſtroy'd, and they diſabled from performing their Duties and Service to the King, as well as from relieving their own Wants; but the King took it ill, that they ſhould grudge him Water, and they were forced to deſiſt from their Petition. In like manner, after the Rebellion, when the People, that lived at a great Diſtance from *Degligy*, whether he fled in the Rebellion, ſaw that he deſign'd to ſettle there, it being very troubleſome for them to carry their Rents and Taxes ſo far, they all met together, and ſent an Addreſs with great Submiſſion to him, to this Effect: *That his Majeſty would not leave them deſtitute of his Preſence, which was to them as the Sun; That he would not abſent himſelf from them to dwell in a Mountain in a deſolate Country, but ſeeing there was no farther Danger, and all the Rebels deſtroy'd, that he would return to his old Palace again, vowing all Fidelity to him.* The King did not like the Meſſage, but was afraid to ſhew his Diſpleaſure, becauſe there were ſo great a Multitude, and therefore plaid the Politician, and ſaid to them: *That he thank'd them for their Love and Affection towards him; and that he was deſirous to dwell among them in ſuch a Part of the Country which he named, and had them all go to Work to build him a Palace there.* The People departed with Satisfaction, and fell to Work might and main in fetching Timber, hewing Stones, and building, and ſo continued at it near 2 Years, till they were almoſt kill'd with Labour, and began to grumble at the Toil. At length the King ſeeing the People quiet, order'd them to leave off, and ſo it lies now unfiniſh'd, and the Timber provided rots upon the Ground, and the Building runs to Ruine. Thus he keeps his People in Servitude and Toil for his own Security, in building and pulling down, bringing in Water, and making huge Pounds and Houſes for Elephants, without any Reaſon or Neceſſity.

An Addreſs to him.

The People build him a Palace in vain.

He ſtands upon no Villany to eſtabliſh himſelf, and ſtrike Terror into his People, as may appear for his cutting off his only Son, a young Man of about 15 Years of Age upon this Occaſion. After the Rebellion the Kingdom being ſettled in the King's Hands again, and knowing that the Hearts of the People, who were generally diſaffected to him, ſtood ſtrongly inclined towards the Prince, he fear'd his own Safety as the Prince grew into more Years; and to prevent the worſt, poiſon'd him: For about a Year after the Rebellion his Son was ſick, and the King took his Opportunity to diſpatch him, by pretending to ſend him Phyſick to cure him. The People hearing of the Death of the Prince, according to the Cuſtom of the Country when any of the Royal Blood is deceaſed, came all in general towards the City where he was, with black, or very dirty Cloaths, which is their Way of Mourning, the Men bare-headed, and the Women with their Hair looſe and hanging about their Shoulders, to mourn and lament for his Death. The King hearing it, ſent them Word, Since 'twas not his Son's Fortune to live and reign after him, it would be in vain to mourn, and a great Hindrance to the Country; and ſo telling them, he accepted their Good-will as much as if they had mourn'd, ſent them home, and burnt his Son's Body without any Solemnity or Ceremony: Yet the Death of an old Sifter that he had, who carried away the Prince in the Rebellion, cauſed no ſmall Lamentation. All the Countries came up to mourn, and gave all Signs of extraordinary Sorrow both in Habit and Countenance, and the King himſelf was ſeen to weep bitterly. The white Men came alſo, which the King took well. The King and all the Country went in Mourning for more than a Year, and her Body was burnt with all the Honour and State imaginable; yet for all this Reſpect which he bare her, he never viſited her in her Sickneſs, and 'tis now reported for certain, that there is not one of his Generation left.

He poiſon'd his only Son.

The Mourning for the Prince.

The Mourning for his Sifter.

The vaſt Labour about his Palace.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of the King's Revenues, Treasures, Officers, Governours of Provinces, and Strength in War.

Rents brought to the King 3 times a Year.

THree times a Year they bring their Rents to the King, 1. At the New-Year, called, *Ourida Cotamaul*, 2. The First-fruits, *Alleusal Cotamaul*, and 3. A certain Sacrifice in *November* to their God, called, *Ilmay Cotamaul*; but besides these, whatever is wanting in the King's House at any other time, they must upon the King's Order bring it. These Rents are but little Money, but Corn, Rice, or what grows upon their Ground. Their New-Year's-Gift is the more solemn, and magnificent, which is always upon the 27, 28, or 29th of *March*. On this Day the King washes his Head with great Ceremony, and the Palace is adorn'd with Triumphal Arches and Poles, on the Top of which are Flags flying, and all about are painted Cloths, and Fruits hanged in great Order and Exactness. In other Places also are single Poles with long Penons of divers Colours, and a Bell at each end of them, and they then say, *The Palace is adorn'd above Heaven.* All the Army is summoned to stand and wait at the Palace for the greater State, and the Great Men, Nobles, and Governours of Countries make their Appearance before him with their New-Year's Gifts. *Dackini*, or New-Year's-Gifts, which are due and accustom'd Presents, for Persons in their Places and Officers to give. There is a certain Rate for every one, and at this time they bring them in a white Cloth, and lay them at the King's Feet in most humble manner. These Presents are Gold, Jewels, Plate, Arms, Knives, Cloth, and some Money, and if they can procure any Rarity, which they think will be acceptable to the King, they bring that. These New-Year's-Gifts he hath thought scorn to receive these many Years, and bids them carry them back again, which, after many times presenting, they do. The Tradesmen also bring a Present at a certain Rate, but they are not accepted; but the Rents and Taxes which the People bring, as Wine, Oil, Corn, Honey, Wax, Cloth, Iron, Elephants Teeth, Tobacco and Money, are at length received, tho' for State he will make them wait sometimes divers Months before he will accept them. The Duties brought at the 2 other times are after the same manner.

Other Duties to the King.

The King hath other Revenues, as, 1. When any Man dies that hath a Stock of Cattle, there must be paid a Bull and a Cow, with a Calf, and a Male and Female Buffalo; which Tax they call *Murral*, and there are Officers appointed to carry them away. At Harvest yearly there is a certain Rate of Corn to be paid to the King by every Man, according to the Land he holds. Formerly the King agreed upon a Payment of a Sum of Money, that their Lands should be clear from this Tax for their Lives, but of late there is no mention of any such Discharge, so that in time all Houses and Land will again be liable to it, which will much advance the King's Revenue. Soldiers Lands, who are killed in the Wars, are free from this Tax, else not. Farmers in general, besides these Rents, pay a Duty in Money. When Land is sold, the Duties accustom'd to be paid to the King must not be diminished, and no Land is or can be free from such Duties, but such as is dedicated to a Priest, as a Deed of Charity in God's Name; for, 'tis thought Sacriligeous to take any thing from one that belongs to the Temple.

No Tax paid for Lands belonging to a Temple.

Formerly the King had a considerable Benefit by 2 Ports, *viz.* *Cotiar* and *Portalone*, but the *Dutch* have now deprived him of both. The King hath several Treasure-Houses in Cities and Towns, kept under strong Guards of Soldiers, which are well stored with all Things that the Land affords, as Precious Stones, some Money, Cloth, Elephants-Teeth, Wax, good store of Arms, as Guns, Bows, Pikes, Halberds, Swords, Ammunition, store of Knives, Tallipot-Leaves, and Mats of all sorts. He hath some Hundreds of Elephants kept tame, and can command all in his Country. In fine, The Land is all his, and every Man's Estate is at his Disposal, but he values Toys most, as spotted Elephants, good Arms, &c.

His Magazines.

His greatest and highest Officers are *Adigars*, which are 2 Chief Justices, to whom is made the Supreme Appeal from the Governours of the several Cities and Counties, if Matters be not decided by them according to the Peoples Minds. The *Adigars* have Officers and Sergeants belonging to them, which carry Staves in their Hands like Bandies, the crooked end uppermost, which signifieth as much as the *Adigars* Hand and Seal. These instruct the *Adigar*, if he be ignorant of his Office, as do also the inferior Officers the Superior in other Courts.

Adigars, or Chief Justices.

Next to these are the *Dissawa's*, who are Governours of the Provinces, and greater Counties of the Land. They have all a certain Number of Soldiers under them, and are to take Care that good Orders be kept in the Countries over which they are placed, and that the King's accustom'd Duty be brought to Court in due Season. They have Power to decide Controversies, and to punish contentious and disorderly Persons, which they do usually by Fining, because they have the Advantage of it, and may imprison, but can put none to Death, because the Sentence of Death is only given by the King's Mouth. They are also sent upon Expeditions with their Soldiers, and give Attendance and wait at Court in their Stations. This Office is appointed by the King not for Life, but during Pleasure, and when they are dead, or removed, oftentimes their Places are vacant some Months, and sometimes Years, and then the *Adigar* rules and governs those Countries, and for his Pains receives all the Profits of the Place. The Persons raised to these Places by the King are always Men of good Rank, and genteel Extraction, solid and discreet, tho' not of Ability to discharge the same. At their Promotion he gives them a Sword with the Hilt inlay'd handsomely with Silver and Brass, and a Scabboard covered with Silver, a Knife and an Halberd, and a Town, or Towns for their Maintenance, as Testimonies of his Love and Favour to them, and they receive the same Rents and Profits, which were usually given to the King, and besides out of all the other Free-Towns in their Jurisdiction, there is a small Due paid to the Governour, besides the King's Tax. When any new Governour is made, the whole Country must come to appear before him at Court, and every one must bring his Present with him, which is expected also at other times: Even private Soldiers, when they first come to their Post, must appear before their Commander, and if they have nothing else, present him with 40 Leaves of Green *Betel*, and 'tis accounted a great Favour, that he will receive them. These Governours are never permitted to return Home again after they are admitted to Court, nor to enjoy their Wives, but they are to stand Day and Night in their Stations to guard the King, where he appoints them, and because upon that Account they can't oversee their several Charges in Person; therefore they have several Officers under them; as, 1. The *Courlividani*, who for governing under the *Dissawa* has a due Revenue, but less than the Governour. His Business is to wrack and extort all he can for his Master, which in all Differences and Quarrels he doth, without any Respect to Equity from both Parties, and carries it to the Governour. Indeed, if the People like not his Sentence, they may remove their Cause to the Governour himself, who having an equal Regard to his own Interest, little helps the Matter. These Carriages make them hated by the People for their rigorous Government; but the more the People hate them, the more the King loves them, because he cares not that the People should affect the Great Men.

Dissawa's or Generals.

The King only condemns to Death.

The King's Gifts to them at their Promotion.

Officers under the *Dissawa's*, viz. The *Courlividani*.

Next to this Officer, is the *Cangcomna*, or Overseer, who is to overlook all Things under the *Courlividani*. But besides him there is a *Courti-Achila*, like our Constable, who is to put the Governour's Orders in Execution, to dispatch any thing away that the Land affords for the King's Use, and to send Persons to Court that are summon'd; and in the Discharge of this his Office he may call in the Assistance of any Man.

Cangcomna and *Courti-Achila*.

The

Liannah. The next Officer under the Governour is the *Liannah*, the Writer, who reads Letters brought, and takes Accounts of all Buſineſs, and what is ſent away to Court. He is alſo to keep Regiſters, write Letters, and take Notice of Things that happen.

Undia. Monnannah. Next to him is the *Undia*, or Collector of the King's Moneys; and after him the *Monnannah*, i. e. The Meaſurer, whoſe Place it is to go and meaſure the Corn that grows upon the King's Land, or whatever Corn elſe belongeth to him. The Power of theſe Officers extends not to a whole County, or Province, but to ſuch a convenient Part as they can manage themſelves, and others of the ſame Nature are allotted other Diviſions like our Hundreds.

Places of exempt Juriſdiction. Theſe Officers exerciſe their Authority over their whole Diviſion, excepting ſome certain Towns, which are of exempted Juriſdiction, *viz.* 1. Towns that belong to their Idol-Temples and Prieſts. 2. Towns given by the King to his Noblemen and Servants; for they to whom they are given and do belong, put in their own Officers of the like Power.

There are alſo other Officers, who upon the Death of any Head of a Family fetch away the King's *Murrals*, or *Herriots*, and take certain Meaſures of Corn from every Man's Crop, which I have ſpoken of before. Theſe inferior Officers generally get their Places by Bribery, and their Children after their Death pretend a Right to them, and uſually are preferr'd by greazing the Governour. None of them have their Places longer than the Governour pleaſeth, and he pretty often removes them upon the Complaints of the People, or upon Pretence of Neglects, unleſs they give him Money to continue.

Country-Courts. For the hearing Complaints, and doing Juſtice among Neighbours here are Country-Courts, conſiſting of theſe Officers and the head Men of the Places or Towns where the Courts are kept, and theſe are called *Gom-Sabbi*, *i. e.* Town-Conſultations. But if any do not like their Determination, they may appeal either to the head Governour at Court, or the *Adigars* of the Kingdom, or the King himſelf, but they ſeldom do; for to go to the Governour is chargeable, for he muſt have a new Fee. The *Adigars* do

Bribery uſed. all by Bribery; for 'tis a common Proverb among them concerning theſe Judges, *He that has Money to ſee them ſhall carry his Cauſe, be it right or wrong.* Some have adventured to complain of Injuſtice done them to the King, and ſometimes he will order ſome of his great Ones to do them Right; but for the moſt part he bids them wait until he can hear their Cauſe, which is ſo long uſually, that the Remedy is worſe than the Diſeaſe; but ſometimes he will put them in Chains for troubling him, and, perhaps, they may be in that Condition many Years.

When the King's Officers go into the Country about the King's Buſineſs, they are attended both before and behind with a Number of Soldiers, more out of State, than for any Danger. Victuals is prepared for them and their Captains by the Country ready dreſs'd againſt they come, but not for their Soldiers.

Titles for Grandees. The greateſt Title given the Grandees in the City is, *Ouſſary*, Worſhipful; but when they are abroad from the King, Men call them, *Sibatta* and *Diſſondrew*, *i. e.* Your Honour and Excellency. When the Great Men walk abroad, their Manner is in State to lean upon ſome Man or Boy, and the *Adigar*, beſides this State, has a Man going before him with a great Whip, like a Coach-Whip, laſhing it, to give No-

King's Cruelty to his Nobles. tice that he is coming. But all theſe Honours have ſuch a bitter Alloy, as makes them not at all deſirable, and that is, they are ſo obnoxious to the King's Diſpleaſure, which is ſo cuſtomary, that it is no Diſgrace for a Nobleman to have been in Chains, or in the common Goal; nay, the Great Men are as ready to lay hold one upon another at the King's Command, as he is to command them, as being glad to have the Honour of the King's Executioners, and hoping to have the Place and Office of the Executed; and when any are thus diſpatched, he ſeizes upon his Family, and by Tortures makes them confeſs where the Eſtate lies, and gives them a Monthly Allowance out of the ſame. All the Males that are near a-kin, as Sons or Brothers, he either impriſons them, or cuts them off, fearing that they ſhould plot Revenge againſt him. The Wife and Women-Kindred are

His Mercy to their Kindred. now nothing at all in Eſteem for their Honours; yet ſometimes he will take the Sons or Brothers of ſuch, whom he has thus executed for Traitors, out of Priſon, and prefer them to honourable Employments. It is reported, that 'tis the King's uſual Practice to raiſe them to the greateſt Honours, whom he deſigns to ruine; but thoſe whom he loves, and intends to have longer Service of, he does not ſo load them with Dignity; and tho' the Grandees ſee this daily before their Eyes, yet their Hearts are ſo haughty and ambitious, that all their Deſires and Endeavours are to get to the higheſt Degrees of Honour, tho' it be but one Remove from Death and Deſtruction; yea, and the Womens Ambition is ſo great alſo, that they will put their Husbands on to ſeek for Preferment, that they may have Reſpect, and be reputed great Ladies.

The King's Military Strength. As for the King's Military Affairs, his Strength conſiſts in the natural Situation of his Country, his Watches, and in the Craft more than the Cunning of his Soldiers. He hath no Artificial Forts or Caſtles, but Nature hath ſupplied the Want of them; for the whole Country of *Candi-Uda*, and eſpecially *Digligy-neur*, his preſent Palace, ſtands upon ſuch high Hills, ſo difficult to paſs, that 'tis all one impregnable Caſtle.

Thorn-Gates, how made. There are conſtant Watches kept in all Parts of the Country in convenient Places, and Thorn-Gates at all Times; but in Times of Danger there are ſo many, that 'tis impoſſible to paſs them unobſerv'd. Theſe Thorn-Gates are made of the Thorn-Trees which have ſharp Prickles on all Sides like Iron-Nails, and being woven and platted together, they faſten them upon 3 Spars, and ſo make them in the Faſhion of a Door, which they hang up in a Door-Caſe like a Gallows, 10 or 12 Foot high (that they may ride thro' upon Elephants) like a Shop-Window, and ſo they can lift it up, and clap it down as they have Occaſion, and tie it with a Rope to a Croſs-Bar. In all the Roads and Paſſages from the City, where the King inhabits, the Watches are kept very ſtrict, and none

Their Paſſports. can paſs without a Paſſport firſt had from Court. It is a Print of a Seal on Clay, and differs according to the Profeſſions of the Men that have them; for a Soldier has the Print of a Man with a Pike on his Shoulder; a Labourer a Man with 2 Bags at each End of a Pole, which is the Manner they commonly carry their Loads; and a white Man, a Man with a Sword by his Side, and his Hat on his Head; and ſo many Men as there be in the Company, ſo many Prints there muſt be in the Clay; but there is not half the Examination of thoſe that go into the City, as of thoſe that go out.

Officers of their Army. In their Soldiery there are, beſides the *Diſſawa's*, who are the Generals, ſpoken of before, other Great Captains, as thoſe which they call *More-Ralls*, i. e. Scribes, becauſe they keep the Rolls or Regiſters of their ſeveral Companies, each containing 970 Men, who are under their Command, and of theſe there are 4 principal. Beſides theſe, there are other ſmaller Commanders over the Soldiers, who have their Places from the King, and are not under the Command of the former Great Ones. All theſe, both Commanders and common Soldiers, muſt wait at the Court; but with this Difference, the Great Men muſt do it continually, each one having his particular Watch appointed by the King; but the private Soldiers take their Turns of Watching, and carry their Proviſions with them upon their Backs. They are not liſted (for Liſting is uſed only upon extraordinary Occaſions) but are Soldiers by Succeſſion from their

Soldiers by Tenure of their Lands. Fathers, becauſe they hold certain Lands for that Service, which is inſtead of their Wages or Pay; and if they neglect their Duty, they forfeit their Inheritance; but if any deſire to be releaſed or diſcharged, they may do it by parting with their Land, which the Commander has the Profits of ſo long as it lies void; but he ſoon diſpoſeth of it to another, who muſt give him a Bribe at his Entrance, and afterwards renew it once in 2 or 3 Years, or he ſhall not enjoy it. The Soldiers of *Candi-Uda* are ſo diſperſed all over the Land, to prevent Conſpiracies, that they ſcarcely know one another; for the King is ſo jealous, that he will ſcarcely ſuffer the Neighbours and Towns-men of one Place to be many together in Company.

The Way of ſending up on an Expedition. When the King ſends any of theſe Commanders with their Armies upon any Expedition, ſometimes he ſends them his Orders by a Meſſenger, and ſometimes he will call them into his Preſence, and give them Orders with his own Mouth, but nothing in Writing. When he ſends ſeveral of them together upon any Deſign, he makes no Generaliſſimo over all the reſt, but

but every one of them retains an absolute Authority over his own Men, and disposeth them according to his own Pleasure, which sometimes causeth such a Disagreement, as that it frustrates their Designs; yet the King is not much concern'd at it, because he doth not like that his Commanders should be very intimate, lest they should conspire against him; yet he will not allow them to disagree at such an high rate, as to be known and observed.

News sent to the King.

When there are any Tidings to be sent to the King, they dispatch a Message severally, and inform what they can one against another, thinking thereby to obtain the most Favour and Good-will from the King, and by this means there can nothing be done or said, but the King has Notice of it. Being sent out after this manner, they dare not return, tho' the Business they were sent about be finish'd, till the King send a special Order to recall them. In their Expeditions, which are common against the *Dutch*, it goes very hard with the common Soldiers, who carry their Victuals and Pots to dress it upon their Backs, besides their Arms, as Swords, Pikes, Bows and Arrows, and very good Guns. As for their Tents (for they lie always in the Fields) they make them of *Tallipot* Leaves, which being very light, they carry along with them. These they lay upon Sticks on the Top, like the Roof of an House, to shoot off the Rains, and their Tents they make stronger or slighter, according to the Time of their Stay. Having spent the Provisions that they carried out with them, they go home to fetch more, and so after a Month or two a great part of their Army is absent.

Their Tents.

Watches most strict in War.

When the Army is sent out, the Watches beyond are all secured, to prevent any Intelligence to be given to the Enemy. The Soldiers never know the Design they are sent upon, till they come there; for none can know the King's Meaning or Intentions by his Actions, because he sometimes sends them to a Place till further Order, and when they have lain there a while, he recalls them. After this manner he often catches the *Hollanders* before they are aware, and doth them great Damage. He cares not that his Great Men should be daring and valiant, and if there be any better than the rest, he cuts them off, lest they should do him any Mischief.

Their crafty Stratagems.

In their Wars there is little Valour used, tho' they do accomplish many notable Exploits; for all they do is by crafty Stratagems. They will never meet their Enemies in the Field to repulse them by Battle, or Force of Arms, nor give them any Opposition at their first coming out to invade the King's Coasts, because they know that at first they are wary and vigilant, and well provided with all Necessaries; but their usual Practice is to way-lay them, and stop up the Way before them, there being convenient Places in all their Roads made for that Purpose, and the Woods being left to shelter them from the Sight of their Enemies: Here they lie lurking, and planting their Guns between the Rocks and Trees, do great Damage to their Enemies before they are awares. Nor can they rush in upon them, being so well guarded with Bushes and Rocks, thro' which before the Enemies can get they are fled and gone, carrying their great Guns upon their Shoulders into the Woods, where it is impossible to find them, till they meet them again after the same Manner. They also cast in the Way of their Enemies, as they march, great bushy Trees, which they have prepared on purpose in their Woods, and let fall among them many Shot and Arrows. They are very circumspect to keep their Designs from their Enemies Knowledge, that they may take them upon Surprize and unprovided.

Their Improvements in Warlike Arts.

By their long Wars with the *Portuguese* first, and since with the *Hollanders*, they are much improved in the Art of War, many of their Commanders being such Men, as formerly served the *Portuguese* against them, by which means they are come to know the Discipline of the Christian Armies, insomuch, that they have given the *Dutch* many Overthrows, and have taken Forts from them, which they had up in their Country. Formerly the King used to gratifie them with a Reward who did bring him the Head of an Enemy, but now that Fashion is almost out of Use. They order their Battles very securely; for if they be not almost sure to conquer, they will not run the Hazard of fighting. If his Men do not successfully accomplish the Design he sends them about, he'll certainly set them about a lusty Piece of Drudgery to be revenged on them, and for not using their Weapons well he will exercise them stoutly with Houghs and Pick-axes about his Palace, making them bring their Victuals with them, and when they have done with their Provisions) for they can't bring enough for above a Month (they must go home and fetch more; but this they can't do without giving the Governour or Overseer a Fee, and without his Leave they can't go, not only because of the Punishment, but because the Watches in the Road from the King's City will stop and seize them.

CHAP. VIII.

A Relation of a Rebellion against the King.

A Conspiracy to kill their King, and set up his Son.

IN the Year 1664, the People of this Land having been long and sore oppressed by this King's unreasonable and cruel Government, had contrived a Plot against him, which was to assault his Court in the Night, and slaying him, make the Prince his Son their King, who was then 12 or 15 Years of Age, and was with his Mother the Queen at *Candi*, but the King held his Court at *Nillemby* about 14 Miles distant from it. The Time appointed to put this their Design in execution, was the 20th of *Dec.* about 12 at Night, when having gotten a select Company of about 200 Men (for they needed not many, because they had so many Confederates in the Court) they march'd into the City, and hasten'd down to the Court, where they killed such Great Men as were upon the Watch, as were not of their Confederacy, but some escaped their Hands, and got to the King, whose Apartments were only walled about with a Clay-Wall. These People feared to assault him, tho' thus poorly defended, and so lay still till the Morning, at which time the King fearing to stay in his Palace, found a Way to flee and escape to the Mountains with a small Guard, or Retinue of 50 Persons. The Ways were so bad and difficult, that he could not ride, tho' he had Horses with him, and they were forced to drive an Elephant before him to make Way for him, and his Followers thro' the Woods. The Rebels pursued him, but were afraid to approach him within Gun-shot, for they knew he had excellent Fowling-pieces with him to discharge upon them, and so he got safe to a Mountain, called, *Gauluda*, about 15 Miles from *Nillemby*. Hither many of the People that inhabited near, resorted to him; but had the Rebels been resolute, as they were much the greater Party, so this Hill would not have secured him, but they might easily have driven him from thence, because there were many Ways by which they might have ascended; but as he was afraid to venture into any Place where he might be stopt in, tho' never so strong, so they were not daring enough to pursue their Design, when they had an Advantage; and therefore contenting themselves, that they had driven away their old King, they marched away to the City of *Candi*, and proclaim'd the Prince, King; telling us *English*, who were there, That what they had done, they had not attempted rashly, but upon good Consideration, and with good Advice; the King having by his evil Government occasion'd it, because he went about to destroy both them and their Country, *viz.* by keeping Ambassadors, disannulling of Trade, detaining of all People that came upon his Land, and killing his Subjects and their Children, and not suffering them to enjoy nor see their Wives, all which Things were contrary to Reason, and as they were inform'd, to the Government of other Countries.

The King flies to the Mountains.

The Prince proclaimed King.

The Prince being young and tender, and having never been out of the Palace, nor ever seen any but those that attended on his Person, as it seem'd afterwards,

wards, was ſcared to ſee ſo many Men coming and bowing down unto him, telling him, That he was King, and that his Father was fled into the Mountains; neither did he ſay or act any thing, as not owning the Buſineſs, or not knowing what to do or ſay. This much diſcouraged the Rebels to ſee they had no more Thanks for their Pains, and ſo all Things continued till the 25th Day of *December*, at which Time they intended to march, and fall upon the old King. But in the mean time the King's Siſter fled away with the Prince from the Court into the Country near the King, which ſo amazed the Rebels, that the Money, Cloth and Plunder which they had taken, and intended to give the Strangers to gain their Aſſiſtance, they threw away and fled. Others of the Company fell upon their Conſorts, thinking to prove their Loyalty by killing their fellow Rebels, and ſo the People were all in Arms one againſt another.

The Prince did not accept their Election of him.

The Prince being carried away to the King, the Rebels diſperſe.

By this time a Great Man had drawn out his Men, and declared for the King, and hearing that the Rebellion was broken, went forth to catch the Rebels that were ſcatter'd abroad, and killed all of them that he could find, and ſo all Things return'd back to the King without his Care or Help, while he lay ſtill in the Mountain. The King hearing of theſe Tranſactions in 8 or 10 Days time, commanded that no more ſhould be killed, but all that were taken ſhould be impriſon'd until they were examined, which he did not do ſo much to ſave any innocent Perſons from Violence, as that he might have an Opportunity to torment the Rebels, and make them confeſs their Complices; for he ſpared not any that were ſuſpected to be guilty. Some lie to this Day chain'd in Priſons, their Eſtates being ſequeſtred, and they begging for their Living.

The Rebels taken and impriſon'd.

The King ſent an Arch-Rebel to the *Dutch* to be puniſh'd.

One of the moſt noted Rebels, named *Ambom*, *Wellaraul*, he ſent to *Columba* to the *Dutch*, ſuppoſing that they would invent new Tortures for him, which he knew not of; but they inſtead of executing of him, cut off his Chains, and kindly entertain'd him; and there he is ſtill reſerved for ſome Deſigns they may have againſt the Country. The King, tho' he was ſenſible, that 'twas his rigorous Government that had occaſion'd this Rebellion, yet amended not in the leaſt, but, like *Reboboam*, added more to the People's Yoak, and being ſafely reinſtated in his Kingdom, he poiſon'd his Son, becauſe his Life had given ſome Encouragement to the Rebellion; and, which ſhew'd his horrible Cruelty and Ingratitude, he put thoſe to Death who went along with him when he fled, a very bad Reward of their Loyalty, which he could not doubt of from ſo much Experience.

This Rebellion was foreſhew'd by a Comet, which appear'd juſt at the ſame time, ſo very exactly, both as to the Riſe, Progreſs and Event of it, that we may not omit ſo great and apparent a Wonder. It appear'd at firſt before the Rebellion broke out with a fearful Blaze, the Tail ſtanding away towards the Weſtward, exactly pointing out the Side of the Country from whence the Rebellion ſprung. Juſt when the Rebellion broke out, the Star was right over their Heads, as it were, pointing out the Rebels, and when they were in actual Rebellion, the Tail of the Star was turned the contrary Way, and ſtood away Eaſtward, and by Degrees in a little time diminiſh'd and vaniſh'd quite away, ſhewing the ſhort Continuance of what had been hatch'd by ſo much Diſcontent and Fury. This portentous Star was ſo remarkable, and obſerved by ſo many, yea, and by the King himſelf, that when another appear'd in the Year 1666. in *February*, with a Stream toward the Weſt, the Head being under the Horizon, both King and People were much daunted at the Sight of it, as fearing another Rebellion, and the King ſent Men unto the higheſt Mountains in the Land, to look if they could perceive the Head of it, but they could not; for it kept under the Horizon. This was viſible about one Month, and then was ſo diminiſh'd, that it could not be ſeen. But nothing remarkable enſued to this Country upon it.

A Comet foreſhewing this Rebellion.

Another Comet.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Inhabitants, their different Ranks and Qualities.

Malabars pay Tribute.

BEſides the *Dutch*, who poſſeſs about a 4th part of this Iſland, there are *Malabars*, a free People, which pay a Duty to the King for the Land they enjoy, as the King's natural Subjects do; there are alſo *Moors*, who are like Strangers, and hold no Land, but live by carrying Goods to the Sea-Ports, which are all now in the Hands of the *Hollanders*. The Sea-Ports are inhabited by a mix'd People, *viz.* *Malabars* and *Moors*, and ſome Blacks, who profeſs themſelves to be *Roman* Catholicks, and wear Croſſes and uſe Beads. Some of theſe are under the *Hollanders*, and pay Tribute to them.

The *Chingulays* the natural Inhabitants of this Iſle.

The natural and proper People of this Iſland are a ſort of Men, called *Chingulays*. Whence they derive themſelves it is uncertain; they know not their own Original, and the Tradition of the *Portugueſe*, That they are a Colony of *Chineſes*, whom the King of *China* ſent away with his Son, whom for his rigorous Diſpoſition the People obtain'd that he might be baniſh'd, that he might not ſucceed him, and he fix'd by chance upon this Iſland, is altogether improbable, becauſe this People and the *Chineſes* have no Agreement or Similitude in Features, Language or Diet. It is moſt probable, that they came from the *Malabars*, their Country lying next, tho' they do reſemble them little or nothing. The *Europeans* are more like theſe People, than any other Nation.

Wild *Chingulays*, called *Vaddahs*.

Of theſe Natives there are 2 Sorts, wild and tame. The wild live in the Woods, as the wild Beaſts do, and the Land of *Bintan*, which is very woody, is full of them, as it is alſo of Deer. They are called *Vaddahs*, and ſpeak the *Chingulays* Language, but dwell near no other Inhabitants. They kill Deer, and drying the Fleſh over the Fire, ſell it to the People of the Country, who come to them to buy it. They never till any Ground for Corn, and live only upon Fleſh. They are very expert Bow-men, and carry a little Ax, which they ſtick in by their Sickles, to cut Honey out of hollow Trees. Some few of them have Commerce with the Inhabitants near the Woods. They have no Towns nor Houſes, and only live by the Waters under a Tree, with ſome Boughs cut and laid round about them, to give Notice when any wild Beaſts come near, which they know by their tramp- See FIG. ling upon them.

Some of them ſubject to the King.

Some of the tamer ſort of theſe are in a kind of of Subjection to the King, and when they are found, tho' it be done with a great deal of ſearching in the Woods, they will acknowledge his Officers, and bring them Elephants Teeth, Honey, Wax and Deers Fleſh; but the Officers are obliged to give them near the Value in Arrows, Cloth, and other Goods they want, fearing leſt otherwiſe they ſhould appear no more. It is reported, that the wilder ſort of them, when they want Arrows, will carry their Load of Fleſh in the Night, and hang it up in a Smith's Shop, with a Leaf hung by it in the Form they would have their Arrows made, which if the Smith do make according to their Pattern, they will requite him, and bring him more Fleſh, but if he doth not make them, they will do him ſome Miſchief at one time or another in the Night by ſhooting; but if he makes the Arrows, he leaves them in the ſame Place he found the Fleſh hanging.

The Robberies of the Carriers.

Formerly in this King's Reign theſe wild Men lay in wait to catch the Carriers that went down with Oxen to carry Betel-nuts to the Sea-Ports, and bring up Cloth, and they took from them ſuch Goods as they had Occaſion for; which the King hearing of, gave Order to take them dead or alive; and they knowing there would be no Pardon, would not be taken alive, but being carried dead to the King, he hung up the Heads of the 2 chiefeſt of them on Trees by the City, and ever ſince they have not preſumed to diſturb the Country, nor the King them, becauſe he only deſired they ſhould be quiet, and not be againſt him.

They are sick with the People.

him. About *Hourly*, the remotest of the King's Dominions, there are many of them that are pretty tame, and come and buy and sell among the People. The King once having an Occasion of an hasty Expedition against the *Dutch*, the Governour there summon'd them all in to go with him, and they obey'd him, and did as good Service with their Bows and Arrows as any of the rest; but returning home again, they removed farther into the Woods, and would be seen no more, for fear of being press'd again to serve the King. They never cut their Hair, but tie it up on a Bunch upon their Crowns. The Cloth they use is so narrow, as not to cover their Buttocks.

A Comet foreliewing this Revolution.

Their Religion and Sacrifice.

They have a Religion, as well as the tame; but these build Temples, but the other offer Sacrifice under Trees, and while it is offering dance round it, both Men and Women. They have Bounds in the Woods among themselves, and one Company of them is not to shoot, nor gather Honey nor Fruit beyond those Bounds. Near the Borders of one of these Parties stood a Jacke-Tree. A *Vaddah* being gathering Fruit from this Tree, another of the Division saw him, and told him, he had nothing to do to gather Jackes from that Tree, because it belong'd to his Party. They fell from Words to Blows, and one of them shot the other; at which more of both Sides met, and skirmishing with one another, left 20 or 30 dead upon the Spot. They are so curious in their Arrows, that no Smith can please them.

Another Comet.

They presented the King.

The King once having received a great Present from them, gave them some of his best Arrow-Blades, but they did not please them; for they went all of them to a Rock by a River, and ground them into a clear different Shape, which the other *Chingulays* do not use. They have a peculiar Way by themselves of preserving Flesh; for they cut an hollow Tree, and put Honey into it, and then fill it up with Flesh, and stop it up with Clay, which they preserve for a time of Want. For Portions with their Daughters they give hunting Dogs. They are said to be very courteous, so that some of the tame *Chingulays* being in Discontent, will leave their Houses and Friends, and go and live amongst them, and are civilly entertain'd by them. The tamer sort of them, as has been said, will sometimes appear and maintain a kind of Trade with the tame Inhabitants; but the wilder, called *Rambab Vaddahs*, never shew themselves.

They are very civil.

The tame *Chingulays* described.

The tame or civiliz'd Inhabitants of this Isle, are a People proper and well favour'd, beyond all People that I have seen in *India*, wearing Cloth about their Loins, and a Doublet after the *English* Fashion, with little Skirts button'd at the Wrists, and gather'd on the Shoulders like a Shirt; on their Heads a red *Tunis* Cap, or if they have none, another Cap with Flaps, according to the Fashion of their Country, with a handsome short Hanger by their Side, and a Knife sticking in their Bosom on the Right side. They are very active and nimble of Body, and very ingenious; for, except Iron-Work, they make all other Things that they have need of themselves; insomuch, that they build their own Houses. They are crafty, and so treacherous, that they are not to be trusted upon any Protestations. Their Manner of Speaking is very smooth and courteous, insomuch, that they who are unacquainted with their Dispositions and Manners may easily be deceived by them; for they make no Conscience of Lying, nor is it accounted any Shame or Disgrace to be catch'd in a Lye, 'tis so customary. They are very vigilant and wakeful, satisfied with a very little Sleep; very hardy both for Diet and Weather; very proud and self-conceited.

Not to be trusted.

Live no Shame.

The Bramins are the Carry, &c.

They take something after the *Bramins*, with whom they scruple not to marry and eat, in both which otherwise they are very shy and cautious; for there being many Ranks or Castes among them, they will not match with any inferior to themselves, nor eat Meat dress'd in any House, but in those only that are of a good Caste, or Race among themselves, and that which any one hath left, none but those that are near a-kin will eat. They are not very malicious one towards another, and their Anger doth not last long, and there is seldom or never any Blood shed among them in their Quarrels. 'Tis not customary among them to strike another, and 'tis very rare that they give a Blow so much as to their Slaves, who are allow'd to talk and discourse familiarly with their Masters. They are very near and covetous, and will pinch their own Bellies for Profit; very few Spendthrifts or bad Husbands are to be met with among them.

They do rarely strike any body.

The Robberies of the Carriers.

The Inhabitants of the Mountains and Lowlands differ. The Lowlanders are all kind, pitiful, helpful, honest and plain, very compassionate to Strangers; but the Mountainers are ill-natur'd, false and unkind, tho' outwardly fair, and seemingly courteous, and of a more complaisant Carriage, Speech and Behaviour than the Lowlanders.

Stealing abhorred most by them.

Of all Vices they hate and abhor Stealing, and there are very few Robberies committed among them. They do much extol and commend Chastity, Temperance and Truth, both in Words and Actions, and confess, 'tis their Weakness not to practise them, acknowledging, that the contrary Vices are abominable both in the Sight of God and Man. They do love and delight in those Men that are most devout and precise in their Manners. They will believe a Christian's Word in bearing Witness sooner than their own People, because they think that they make more Conscience of their Words.

Christians believed.

They are very superstitious in making Observations upon Ominous Accidents. Sneezing they reckon to import Evil, and if they chance to sneeze when they are going about any Business, they stop. None may sneeze, cough or spit in the King's Presence, as being Omens of ill or rude Boding. There is a little Creature like a Lizzard, which they esteem a Prophet, and if he cries, they cease their Work, supposing that he tells them that a bad Planet rules that Moment. They take great Notice who they meet withal in a Morning first; a white Man or a great-bellied Woman they reckon fortunate; but decrepit or deformed People they esteem unfortunate. When they travel a great many of them, they go all one after another singly, because their Paths are so narrow, but talk all the Way of the same Matter, and carry their Provisions for their whole Journey.

Good and bad Omens.

A general Character of them.

In short; In Carriage and Behaviour they are grave and stately, like the *Portuguese*, in their Understandings quick and apprehensive, in Designs subtle and crafty, in Discourse courteous, but full of Flatteries, naturally inclined to Temperance both in Meat and Drink, but not to Chastity, near and provident in their Families, commending good Husbandry, not passionate in their Dispositions, nor hard to be reconciled again when angry; in their Promises very unfaithful, approving Lying in themselves, but misliking it in others, delighting in Sloath, not labouring but in Cases of Necessity, neat in Apparel, nice in Eating, not given to much Sleep.

Womens Habits and Ornaments.

As for the Women, their Habit is a Waste-coat of Callico covering their Bodies, flourish'd with Blue and Red, their Cloth hanging longer or shorter below their Knees according to their Qualities; a Piece of Silk flung over their Heads; Jewels in their Ears, and Ornaments about their Necks, Arms and Middles. They are in their Gate and Behaviour very high, and stately in their Carriage, like the *Portuguese*, but will admit the meanest Persons to their Speech. They are very thrifty, and 'tis a Disgrace to them to be prodigal, and their Pride and Glory to be accounted near and saving; for to praise themselves they will sometimes say, *That Scraps and Parings will serve them, but the best is for their Husbands.* The Men are not jealous of their Wives, for the greatest Ladies in the Land will frequently talk with what Men they please, even in their Husbands Presence, and altho' they be so stately, they will lay their Hand to any Houshold Work, tho' they have Slaves and Servants enough to do it.

Their Respect to their Husbands.

The several Degrees among them.

There are sundry Castes, or Degrees of Quality among them, which are not according to their Riches, or Places of Honour about the King, but according to their Descent and Blood; and whatsoever this Honour is, be it higher or lower, they hold that it remains from Generation to Generation. They abhor to eat, drink or intermarry with any of an inferior Quality to themselves. The Signs of higher or meaner Ranks are wearing Doublets, or going bare-back'd without them; the Length of their Cloth below their Knees; their sitting on Stools, or Blocks, or Mats spread on the Ground, and in Caps.

They will not marry beneath their Degrees.

They are specially careful in their Marriages, not to match with any inferior Caste, but always in their own Rank, and Riches cannot prevail with them so to stain the Honour of their Family; and if any Woman be so deluded, as to marry beneath herself, if she appear among her Friends, *viz.* her Father, Brothers, and all her near Relations declare themselves her Enemies, and they'll certainly kill her to wipe off the Dishonour; yet it is not accounted a Shame or

Disgrace for a Man of the highest Degree to lie with a Woman of the lowest Degree, if he doth not eat or drink with her, nor take her to him for a Wife; but if he should, the Magistrate fines him or imprisons him, or both, and he being excluded from his Family, is accounted of the same Rank with his Wife. If he lies with a married Woman, the Husband, if he catch them, may kill both of them, if he pleases, and so by marrying one into another the Descent and Dignity of Families is preserved for ever.

Their several Degrees are, *Hondrews.*

The particular Ranks and Degrees among them are these:

1. *Hondrews*, who are their chief Noblemen, so called from *Hondrewnd*, Majesty. Out of these alone the King chuseth his Great Officers at Court, and Governours in the Country; Riches here make none honourable, nor are valued, for many of the Lower sort exceed these *Hondrews* in Estate. They are distinguish'd from others by their Names, and wearing of their Cloth, which the Men wear half-way down their Legs, and the Women to their Heels; one End of it the Women fling over their Shoulders, and with the very Tip cover their Breasts, whereas the other sort of Women must go naked from the Waste upwards, and their Cloaths hang down not much below their Knees, except it be cold, for then both Women and Men may throw their Cloaths over their Backs, but then they do excuse it to the *Hondrews*, when they meet them, saying, *Excuse me, it is for Warmth.* They are distinguish'd also by their own Country Caps, which are in the Fashion of Mitres, with 2 Flaps tied up over the Tops of the Crowns, and all of a Colour, either white or blue, but the Caps and Flaps of Persons of inferior Quality are of different Colours, and the Flaps always red. There are 2 sorts of *Hondrews*, the one being inferior to the other in relation to Marriage, but not in other Things. The greatest part of the Inhabitants of the Land are of this Degree. All Christians are accounted equal with the *Hondrews*, whether they be white or black, but with them 'tis an Abatement to the Honour of the Whites, that they eat Beef and do not wash their Hands after they have been at Stool, which 2 Things with this People are reckon'd an Abomination. Among the Noblemen may be reckon'd an Honour, which the King confers like unto Knighthood. It ceaseth in the Person's Death, and is not Hereditary. The King confers it by putting about their Heads a Piece of Silk or Ribband, embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and bestowing the Titles of *Mandiamca* upon them. There are never but few of these in the Realm.

Distinguish'd by their Names and Cloaths.

Hondrews of 2 sorts.

Knighthood.

Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, Carpenters and Painters.

2. Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, Carpenters and Painters are all of one Degree and Quality, and are next to the *Hondrews*; but they will not eat with them; yet they wear the same Apparel, and are privileged to sit on Stools, which none of the inferior Ranks may do. The Artificers were anciently accounted almost equal to the inferior *Hondrews*, and they would eat with them, but were degraded upon this Occasion. Some *Hondrews* went to a Smith's Shop to have their Tools mended, and when it came to be Dinner-time, the Smith leaves his Work and goes to Dinner, and clapping the Door after him, leaves them in his Shop to wait. The *Hondrews* took it for a great Affront, and caused a Decree to be made, that for ever after all the People of that Rank should be deprived of the Honour of having *Hondrews* eat in their Houses, and this Decree has been inviolably observed ever since. Nevertheless, the Smiths which live in the King's Towns take much upon them, because every one of them has a Parcel of Towns belonging to them, whom none but they are to work for, and if any other Smith does their Work, he is punish'd. These Smiths are to mend every Man's Tools for a certain Rate of Corn to be paid to him in Harvest, according to ancient Custom, and if they have any new Tools made, they must pay for them, yea, and court him too; for in order to have it done, they must come in humble Manner with a Present of Rice, Hens, or other Provision, or a Bottle of Rack, to desire him to appoint his Time when they shall come to have their Work done, which when he has set, they come upon the Day with Iron and Coals. The Smith sits very gravely on his Stool before the Anvil, and they must blow the Bellows, and work it themselves with the great Hammer; he only fashions it with the little Hammer: If it be to be filed, he makes them grind it first, and then he finisheth it. All this State, forsooth, he takes upon him, because the People are compell'd to go to him, and none else.

degraded from eating with *Hondrews.*

The Smith's Stateliness.

3. All that are of any Craft or Profession are accounted of an inferior Degree; as, *Courattə's*, i. e. Catchers or Keepers of Elephants, who are reckon'd equal with Smiths, tho' they neither eat nor marry together. They may wear such Apparel as the *Hondrews*, and sit on Stools, but the *Hondrews* will not eat with them. No Artificer ever changes his Trade from Generation to Generation, but the Son is the same with his Father, and the Daughter marries only to those of the same Craft, and her Portion is some Tools of use to the Trade, and over and above what her Father pleaseth. Barbers, both Men and Women, wear Doublets, but may not sit on Stools, nor will any eat with them. Potters are more inferior. These Men may not wear Doublets, nor wear their Cloth much below their Knee, nor sit on Stools, neither will any eat with them; but they have this Privilege at an *Hondrew's* House, to take his Pot with a Pipe to it, and pour the Water into their Mouths themselves, which none of the inferior Degrees are admitted to, for they must hold their Hands to their Mouths and gape, and the *Hondrews* themselves will pour the Water in. The Potters were denied this Honour, till they agreed together to make no Pots with Spouts for any but themselves, and when the *Hondrews* that wanted could get none, they condescended to grant them this Honour. *Ruddaughs*, Washers, who are many. They wash for all Degrees as low as a Potter, but not lower. They carry a Cloth both Men and Women on their Shoulders. They scald their Linnen with the Steem of a Kettle of Ley, and then wash them clean in a River, slapping them against a Rock, which, as they manage it, doth not tear them. *Hungrams*, or Jaggory-makers. None will eat them, but it is lawful to buy and eat the Jaggory they make, but nothing else. *Poddahs*, Husbandmen and Soldiers, inferior to all afore-named. They take their Profession from their Predecessors. Weavers, who not only weave Cloth, but are Astrologers, and tell the People the good Days and Seasons. At the Birth of a Child they write an Account of the Day, Time and Planet it was born in and under, and these they keep with great Care all their Lives, by which they know their Age, and the Success or Evil which shall befal them. They also beat Drums, and play on Pipes, and dance in the Temples of their Gods and at their Sacrifices, and carry away such Victuals as is offer'd to their Idols, which is accounted a very mean Office. They will eat dead Cows. Basket-makers, called by them, *Kiddea's*, who make Fans to fan Corn, Cane-Baskets, Lace. Bedsteds, and Stools; *Kinnerahs*, or Mat-makers. These Men may not wear any thing on their Heads: The Women of none of these sorts ever do. None of these may presume to be called by the same Names of the *Hondrews*, nor pretend to be of an higher Quality where they are not known, which, indeed, they are never known to do. All Outlandish People are esteem'd above all these inferior Ranks. The *Hondrews* Names end ever in *Oppow*, and others in *Adgah.*

Craftsmen and Artificers.

Barbers.

Potters.

Washers and their Way.

Husbandmen, Soldiers, Weavers.

Foreigners how esteemed.

4. Slaves make another Rank. Their Masters allow them Land and Cattle for their Maintenance, which many of them do so well improve, that, except in Dignity, they are not far behind their Masters, only they are not permitted to have Slaves. Their Masters will not take away what they have got by their Industry, but are pleased with it, as being Persons in whom they may repose Trust; and when they do buy or get any new Slaves, they presently provide them a Wife, and put them to keep House and settle, that they may not think of running away. Slaves born of *Hondrew* Parents retain their Honour.

Slaves and their Wealth.

5. The lowest and basest of the People are Beggars, made so for their Transgressions by former Kings. The Cause was thus. Their Ancestors were *Dəddah Vaddahs*, *i. e.* Hunters, who were to furnish the King's Table with Venison; but instead of Venison they brought him Man's Flesh, which the King well liking, commanded them to bring him more of the same sort; but it being discover'd by the King's Barber, the King was so inraged, that he thought Death too good for them, and to punish their Persons not a sufficient Recompence for the Injury done him; whereupon he establish'd a Decree, that all the Tribe should be expell'd from dwelling among the Inhabitants of the Land, and not be admitted to use any Means or Calling to provide themselves Sustenance.

Beggars.

How man and wife.

How vile and odious.

nance, but that they should beg from Door to Door through the Kingdom for ever, and be looked upon as the most base and odious of all People. Hence it is, that they are obliged to give such Titles to all People, as are due to Kings and Princes only. They are not permitted to fetch Water out of the Wells as other People are, but fetch it from Holes and Rivers. None will touch them least they be defiled. They go begging in whole Troops, both Men, Women and Children, carrying whatever they have in Baskets, hanging at each end of a Pole on their Shoulders: The Women carry nothing, but where they come to beg, dance and shew Tricks, while the Men beat Drums: They'll twirle a Brass Basin on the Top of one their Fingers strangely, and toss 9 Balls up into the Air at once, and catch them all as they come down, and so toss them up again: They'll put several Beads of divers Colours, and of one Size into their Mouths, and takes them out all of a Colour by themselves; and by these pleasing Tricks, with their fawning Titles and Importunities they get an Alms from every one they come nigh, and so live as well or better than any People in the Land without Care or Labour. They build themselves Hovels in remote Places, and High-ways under Trees: Yet one Office is required of them by the King, which is to make Ropes of the Hides of such Cows as die of themselves, to catch and tie the Elephants with, and by this means they get all the Flesh of the dead Cows that die in the Land from the Weavers, who before used to cut them in Pieces, and eat them; but now if any of these *Roudeahs* or Beggars see them, they beat them off with their Poles, on which they carry their Baskets, saying, *If they hack their Hides, they cannot perform the King's Service*, and the Weavers being afraid to touch them, haste away. These Men being so vile, lie with their Daughters or Mothers, as if there were no Consanguinity among them. Many times the King, when he cuts of some Noblemen, against whom he is much incensed, will order their Wives and Daughters to be carried to a River-side, and delivered to these Beggars, which is esteem'd by all a worse Punishment than Death, and to avoid it they'll often drown themselves by leaping into the River. Some of these Beggars, who dwell in remote Parts distant from any Towns, keep Cattle, and sell them to the *Chingulays*; also shoot Deer, and sell them in the Woods where they fall, for if they touch them none will buy them. This People, knowing that a Barber was the Occasion of all this their Misery, will not eat what is dresst in a Barber's House to this Day, in Revenge of his Fact.

Their Houses and Duty to the King.

Their Trades.

Their Incest.

Their Hatred to Barbers.

CHAP. X.

Of their Religion, Gods, Temples, Priests, Worship, Festivals, Doctrines and Practices.

Devils as well as Gods, worshipped by them.

THE Religion of the Country is Idolatry, and they have many both Gods and Devils, which they worship under their particular Names. They acknowledge one to be Supreme, whom they call, *Osse Pelle Maupt Dio*, i. e. the Creator of Heaven and Earth, whom they hold to rule and govern the same still, and send forth other Deities to see his Will executed in the World: And these they account petty and inferior Gods, holding them to be the Souls of good Men, who formerly lived here upon Earth. The Devils, which are the Souls of evil Men, they believe to inflict Sickness and Misery upon them.

Their God *Buddou*.

They have another God to whom the Salvation of Souls belongs, whom they call *Buddou*, and him they believe to have been once upon the Earth. and when he was here, did usually sit under a large shady Tree, called *Bogahah*, which ever since they have accounted Holy, and therefore celebrate their Worship with great Solemnity under it. He ascended from the Earth from the Top of their highest Mountain, called, *Pico Adam*, where they say is the Impression of his Foot. [Concerning the God *Buddou*, which the *Chingulays* have in so great Veneration, *Ribeyro* gives us this further Account; That they worship him under the Figure of a Man of a Giant-like Stature, being above 32 Foot high; and hold, That he lived many Years in their Isle, living a most holy and mortified Life: By their Computation of Time, since he lived among them, it appears, that it was about the 40th Year after Christ, and so it might very well be the Apostle St. *Thomas*; for, 'tis a constant Tradition in all the Eastern Parts, that that Apostle preach'd the Gospel to all those People. The *Chingulays* say, that he was not born among them, and that he left their Country, and died upon the Continent; which agrees very well with the common Opinion of the *Indian* Christians, and particularly with those of the Coasts of *Cormandel*, who are called the Christians of St. *Thomas*, p. 113.]

The Sun and Moon.

The Sun and Moon they seem to be of Opinion, that they are Gods, as the Names they give them may prove for the Sun; which, in their Language, is *Irri*, they call *Irridio*, i. e. the God-Sun; and the Moon whose Name is *Handa*, *Handadio*, i. e. the God-Moon; but to the Stars they give no such Titles.

Their Temples.

Their *Pagoda's*, or Temples of their Gods, are innumerable, many of them of exquisite Work, built of hewn Stone, and engraven with Images and Figures, but by whom is not known, but certainly by more ingenious Artists than is now among them. The *Portugueze* have defaced some of them, and none of them have Skill enough to repair them. They are of different Fashions, the ancient ones are of rare Work, but the latter built are made only of Clay and Sticks, and no Windows. Such as belong to the *Buddou* are in the Form of a Pigeon-House, 4 square, one Story high, and some 2, in which are Idols, as well above as below. They are some tyled, and some some thatch'd.

Their Idols are monstrous.

The Idols and Images are very monstrous to behold, some of Silver, others of Brass and other Mettals, as also painted Sticks and Targets, and strange kind of Arms, as Bills, Arrows, Spears and Swords; but there are no Arms in the *Buddou's* Temples; because he is for Peace, and therefore there are in his Temples only Images of Men cross-legg'd, with yellow Goats on like the *Gouni* Priests, their Hair frisled, and their Hands before them like Women. These Images, they say, they do not own to be Gods themselves, but only Figures representing their Gods to their Memories, and as such, they give to them Honour and Worship. Women having their natural Infirmities upon them may not come near the Temples of their Gods, nor Men, who have been in the Houses where such Women are.

Their Opinion of their Images.

Church-lands many.

Unto each of these *Pagoda's* belong great Revenues of Lands, given them by former Kings, who have thereby much impair'd the Revenues of the Crown, there being rather more Towns belonging to the Church than to the King. These Estates are to prepare daily Victuals and Sacrifices to be set before the Idols. These Temples have all sorts of Officers belonging to them, as the Palace hath; and for State tame Elephants, as the King has. Most of these *Pagoda's* are dedicated to those Gods, to whom belong the Government of all Things appertaining to this Life.

Private Chapels.

Besides these publick Temples, many People do build in their Yards private Chapels, like Closets, sometimes not above 2 Foot square, and set upon a Pillar 3 or 4 Foot from the Ground, in which they put an Image of the *Buddou*, that he may be near them to testifie their Love and Service to him, which they do by lighting up Candles and Lamps in his House, and laying Flowers every Morning before him; and at sometimes they boil Victuals and lay it before him, thinking the more they thus honour him here, the more shall be their Reward hereafter. All Blessings and good Success, they say, come from the Hands of God, but Sickness and Diseases proceed from the Devil;

not that of himself he hath such an absolute Power; but as Servants have Power, License and Authority from their Masters, so they from God.

Their Priests of 3 Sorts, viz. 1. Tirinanxies.

Their Priests are of 3 Sorts, as their Temples are. The first and highest Order of Priests are the *Tirinanxies*, who are the Priests of the God *Buddou*, and their Temples are styled, *Vehars*. [From these *Tirinanxies Ribeyro* makes this Observation, and says, That whosoever considers the Discipline and Order of the *Chirgulays* in Religious Matters, must think, that formerly they have had some Knowledge of the Christian Religion; for about the Time of *Justinian* there were some Churches in *Ceilon* for the Christian Merchants that came thither out of *Persia*; and 'tis probable, that the first Plantation of the Gospel not being sufficiently settled, they fell into their ancient Heathen Worship, but preserved some Footsteps of the Ecclesiastical Government among them; for they have a Supream Bishop, who with his *Gonnies*, or *Changatars*, takes Cognizance of all Religious Matters, whom they call the *Terumvansse*. He is generally a Person very Reverend for his Age and Holiness of Life. He has for the Mark of his Dignity a Golden Ribband and Ivory Scepter: He never goes out, but he is accompanied with a great Number of *Gonnies*, or *Chingatars*, and enjoys considerable Revenues. The whole Island is divided into 4 Dioceses, and each of them has its Bishop, who is subject to the *Terumvansse*, and governs all the *Gonnies* in his Province. The first has his Residence near *Sofragan*, and has a famous Temple consecrated to *Haleiperumal*. The 2d dwells near *Calane*, by the Temple of *Biwxara Perumal*. The 3d resides at *Catagerama*, where is the Temple of the great Idol *Caude Suami*; and the 4th lives by the Temple of *Altener*. These Temples have all Officers and Trades belonging to them which are necessary for the Service done in them, and *Gonnies* appertaining to them. *p.* 116, 117.

Concerning their *Gonnies* he also adds, That the *Gonnies* are in the highest Esteem, and till the Reign of this King were not thought punishable, insomuch, that they joined themselves will all Conspirators against their Prince, and changing their Consciences according to their Humour and Interest, led away the People into their Sentiments, and become formidable; but this King broke thro' this bad Custom, and put many of them to Death. Altho' they are well endow'd, yet they have much of the People's Charity, and especially of such as are dying; for when any one is dangerously ill, they send for a Priest, whom they bring under an Umbrella, and treat him as well as they can, and he stays with them till the sick Man is dead, or out of Danger, reciting the Song called *Bonna*, with the Paraphrase, and preaching to his Friends and Assistants after a most pathetick Manner. They are perswaded, that the Prayer that *Gonni* makes has an Effect proportionable to what they give him, and so they present him largely, and conduct him home with the same Ceremony they brought him. *Ll. p.* 117.—120.]

They have a Religious House at *Digligy*, where they dwell and assemble to consult about their Affairs, which is called, *Vihar*. They admit none to their Order, but Persons of the most noble Birth, and that have Learning, and are well bred, and of those they admit many; but there is not above 3 or 4 that arrive at the high Degree of a *Tirinanx*, which are chosen out of all the rest, and made so by the King. These *Tirinanxies* only live in the *Vihar*, and enjoy great Revenues, and are the Superiors of all the Priests. Many of these *Vihars* are endow'd, and have Farms belonging to them, and these *Tirinanxies* are Landlords, to whom the Tenants at certain Times pay their Rents. These Farmers live the easiest of any People in the Land, for they have nothing to do, but to bring in those set Dues at certain Times and depart, and to keep in Repair certain little *Vehars* in the Country; so that the rest of the *Chirgulays* envy them, and say of them, *Tho' they live easie in this World, they shall not escape unpunish'd in the Life to come, for enjoying the* Buddou's *Land, and doing him so little Service.*

Their Revenues.

The *Gonni*, their Honour, and the Respect paid them.

All the rest of the same Order are called *Gonni*. Their Habit is the same to all of them, *viz.* a Yellow Coat, gathered together about their Wastes, and coming over their Left Shoulder, is girt about with a Belt of fine Packthread. Their Heads are shaved, and they go bare-headed, and carry in their Hands a round Fan, with a Wooden-Handle, which is to keep the Sun from their Hands. They enjoy great Honours and Privileges. They pay no Taxes to the Kings for their own Lands, and the People, whenever they meet them, bowe down to them, as their Gods, but they bowe to none. They are allow'd to carry the broad End of the Tallipot-Leaf foremost over their Heads, which none but the King dôes, and whereseever they go they have a white Cloth, and a Mat laid upon a Stool for them to sit upon, which is an Honour used to the King only. They are to do no manner of Work, nor may they marry, or touch a Woman, nor eat above one Meal a Day, unless it be of Fruit and Rice with Water, which they may eat Morning and Evening, nor may they drink Wine. They may eat any lawful Flesh, when it is dresst for them, but must have no hand in the Death of it, nor so much as consent to it. They may lay down their Order, if they please, by pulling off their Coat, and flinging it into a River, and washing themselves Head and Body, and then they become as other Lay-men, and this they sometimes do that they may marry. When any Man is minded to provide for his Soul, they bring one of the Priests under a Cloth, held up by 4 Men, unto his House, with Drums and Pipes, and great Solemnity, which can only be done to the King besides. While he is there he sings *Bonna* to him, which is some Religious Service out of a Book, made of Tallipot-Leaves, and he tarries a Day or 2 with him, and they give him great Entertainment and Gifts, according as they are able, which they carry for him home, and conduct him back with the like Solemnities. Some of these Priests were beheaded, and cast into the River afterwards by the King, because they had cast off their Habits, and putting on Swords, had join'd in the Rebellion; but the People were amazed, that the King durst do so to such holy and reverend Persons, who had never been so served by any of the former Kings, and were reputed and called the Sons of *Buddou*.

Not to marry.

Their Office to the sick.

Some of them beheaded for Rebellion.

The 2d Sort of Priests are those called *Koppuhs*, who belong to the Temples of the other Gods, called *Dewalls*. These are not distinguished by any Habit from the rest of the People, no not in their Worship, only they wear clean Cloaths, and wash themselves before they go to their Service. They are taken from among the *Hondrews*, and only enjoy a Piece of Land belonging to the *Dewall*, where they officiate, and this is all the Benefit they have, unless they steal any thing dedicated to the Gods. They follow Husbandry and other Employments, as other Men do; but when the Times of Worship are, which is Morning and Evening, oftner or seldomer, as the Revenues of the Temple hold out; they present the boil'd Rice, and other Victuals, which are brought to the Temples, before the Idol, and when they have stood there a while, they bring them out again, and then the Drummers, Pipers and other Officers that belong to the Temples, eat it. These Gods never have any Flesh offer'd in Sacrifice to them, but any thing else.

2. Koppuhs.

Follow Husbandry.

The 3d Sort of Priests are the *Jaddeses*, Priests of the Spirits called *Deyantaus*. Their Temples are called *Covels*, and have no Revenues belonging to them, but a Man piously disposed builds a small Temple at his own Charge, and becomes Priest thereof. On the Walls of it they paint the Images of fierce Men, with Bills, Swords, Arrows and Shields. These Temples are seldom called God's *House*, but *Jacco's*, i. e. the Devil's. Upon some extraordinary Festivals to *Jacco*, the *Jaddese* shaves off all his Beard. When they are sick, they send for the *Jaddese* to their House, and give him a red Cock to dedicate to the Devil, which he does by holding it in his Hand, and an Arrow with it, and telling the God, *That if he restore the Party to his Health, that Cock shall be sacrificed in his Covel*; and then they let it go among the rest of the Poultrey a Year or two, and then if they do not carry it, the Priest will come for it, with many others also dedicated, pretending that he must make a Sacrifice to the God, but he will often sell them.

3. Jaddeses.

The Devil's House.

The Devil cries out among them.

When they enquire any thing of their Gods, the Priests takes up some of the Arms, or other Instruments of the Gods, which are in the Temple, upon their Shoulders, and then either feigns himself to be mad, or really is so, which the People call *Pissowetitch*, and then think the Spirit of the Gods is in him, and as they speak to him, as if he were God, so whatever he pronounceth they look upon as spoken by God himself.

Their Oracles.

Wed-

Their Worship.

Wednesdays and *Saturdays* are the Days when People come and address themselves to the Gods; that is, either pray for Health, or for their Help in some weighty Matters, as in Wars, or swear in any Matter in Dispute; but their chief Business with their Gods is for Recovery of Health, and they hold, that the God or Devil that made them sick hath Power only to restore them; and therefore when they are sick, they first use Means to know which God or Devil hath been the Cause or Author of it; and this they easily find out, by hanging a Pair of Sizzars upon a Bow-string, and repeating the Names of their Gods; for they say, the Sizzars will shake when that God is mentioned, and when he is thus found out, they offer their Oblations and Sacrifices chiefly to him.

To the Planets.

There are 9 Deities, called *Gerehah*, which are the Planets (reckoning in probably the Dragon's Head and Tail) from which they hold that their Fortunes proceed, and if they be ill affected towards any Party, neither God nor Devil can revoke it. When they worship these *Gerehah*, they make Images of Clay according to the Number of the Disaffected, which they pretend to know by certain Magical Tricks, and paint them with divers Colours and monstrous Shapes, something like a Man, but with Tusks like a Boar, and Horns like a Bull. Before them the sick Party sits, and they set Victuals before them. These Ceremonies are always perform'd in the Night with Drums, Pipes and Dancing, till near Day, and then they cast the Images into the High-ways to be trampled under Foot, and the Victuals is given to the Attendants, and despicable People, that wait on Purpose. When they worship those, whom they call Devils, whom they hold to be Spirits of dead Men, they build a new House in their Yard like a Barn, and cover it with Leaves, and adorn it with Branches and Flowers. Into it they bring some of the Weapons or Instruments, which are in the Temples, and lay them on Stools at one End of the House, which is hang'd with Cloth for that Purpose, and before them set Victuals on other Stools, and all the time of this Sacrifice there is Drumming, Piping, Singing and Dancing, which being ended, they give the Victuals to those that drum and pipe, with other Beggars and Vagabonds; for they look upon them not as dedicated, but polluted Meats, and should they eat of them, they think it would be a Reproach to them and their Generation. These Spirits are Local, and those in one County are not known in another, but each County hath Spirits and Devils peculiar to them, under whose Subjection they own themselves to be, and they stand in greater awe of them, than those whom they own and call Gods. They say, that their Country is full of them, and should they not adore them, they would destroy them, and therefore own that the Christians have a Prerogative above them, that they are not subject to the Infernal Spirits; for, indeed, Men and Women are strangely possess'd by them, running mad into the Woods, screeking and roaring, but doing no Mischief; some are taken Speechless, shaking, quaking and dancing, and will tread upon the Fire, and not be hurt. Thus they continue sometimes 2 or 3 Days, and sometimes as many Months. The Friends of the Possessed will go to the Devil, and promise him a Reward, if he will cure them, and sometimes they are so cured, and sometimes they die. The People impute this Madness to some Breach of Promise made to the Devil, or for eating some Fruits or Betel-Leaves dedicated to him, which they do either to prevent its being stollen or begg'd. The Devil doth often cry with an audible Voice, as I have heard my self, very shirl, and 'tis observed, that either just before, or soon after, the King cuts off People. The very Dogs tremble and shake when they hear it, and it passeth from Place to Place faster than any Bird can flie. It is heard only in *Candi-Uda*, and not in the Low-Countries. The *Chingulays* make it cease by cursing it, saying, *Geremoi Goulammah*, i. e. *Beef-eating Slave, be gone, be damned, and the like Raillery, which they speak aloud in Passion and Threatning.*

Christians Prerogative.

Their Possessions by the Devil.

To Devils.

Their monstrous Images of them.

The Devil cries out among them.

When smaller Devils fail them, they repair to the great Devil, and preparing an Offering of Victuals ready dress't, of which on Dish is always a red Cock, they carry it into a remote Place in the Woods, and there devout it to the Honour of the great Devil, before whom Men in horrible Disguise like Devils, with Bells about their Legs, and Doublets of a strange Fashion, do sing and dance, calling him to come and eat it, and the sick Man is present all the while.

Means offered to them are feasted.

Besides their daily Worship and occasional Devotion, they have solemn and annual Festivals, of which some belong to the Gods that govern the Earth, and all Things that concern this Life; and others belong to *Buddou*, who takes care of the Soul and future Well-being of Men. The Festivals of the former are:

Their Festivals.

1. The *Perahar*, which is a solemn Feast and general Meeting to honour these Gods, and procure their Aid and Assistance upon the *New Moon* in *June* and *July*. At this Feast some go to one *Pagoda*, or Temple, and some to another. The greatest Solemnity is performed at the City of *Candi*, after this manner: The Priest brings out a painted Stick, hung about with Strings of Flowers, and wrapt up in branch'd Silk, some part covered and some not, before which the People bowe and worship, and every one presents an Offering according to his free Will. The Priest having received these Offerings, takes his painted Stick on his Shoulder, having a Cloth tied about his Mouth, to keep his Breath from defiling this pure Piece of Wood, and getting upon an Elephant cover'd with white Cloth, rides upon it with all the Triumph that King and Kingdom can afford thro' all the Streets of the City. Before him go 40 or 50 Elephants, hung with Bells on each Side, which tingle as they go. Next follow Men dress't up like Giants, dancing along in Memory of a Tradition, that there were such huge Men that carried vast Burdens, and pull'd up Trees by the Roots. After them go a Multitude of Drummers, Trumpeters and Pipers, which make such a great Noise, that nothing else can be heard. Then follow Men daneing, and such Women-Washers and Potters, as are used in the Service of the Temple, each Trade by themselves, 3 in a Row holding Hands, and Drummers, Pipers and Dancers going between each Company. After these comes the Elephant carrying the Priest with the painted Stick on his Shoulder, who represents *Allout-neur Dio*, i. e. The God and Maker of Heaven and Earth, and behind him sits another Priest holding an Umbrella over his Head to keep off the Sun and Rain. Within a Yard behind him on each Hand follow 2 other Elephants, mounted by 2 other Priests, behind whom also sit 2 other Priests holding Umbrella's over their Heads, as the former. One of these represents *Cotterogom Dio*, and the other *Potting Dio*. These 3 Gods thus riding together are accounted the greatest of all others, and have each a several *Pagoda*, or Temple. After these come Cook-Women, dress't as fine as they can make themselves, with Whisks in their Hands to scare away Flies; and next to the Gods and their Attendants go some Thousands of Ladies and Gentlewomen of the highest Rank, array'd in the bravest Manner that their Ability will afford, going Hand in Hand 3 in a Row. All the Beauties also in the Isle attend this Procession of their Gods, the Streets are made clean, and Poles set up, stuck with Flags and Penons, and hung with Branches of Coker-nut-Trees, like Fringes, and Lamps burning on both sides of them Night and Day. Last of all come the Commanders sent from the King to see these Ceremonies decently performed, with their Soldiers after them, and in this manner they ride about the City once by Day, and once by Night, from the New Moon to the Full. Formerly the King used to ride in Person, with all his Train before him, in this Solemnity; but now he delights not in these Shows. Before these Processions the Gods are set in the Temple-Doors a good while, that the People may worship them, and bring them Offerings, during which Time there are Dancers shewing many pretty Tricks before them, to see which, and to shew their Bravery, causes a greater Resort thither, than their Zeal and Devotion. Two Days before the Full Moon each of these Gods hath a Pallenquin carried after them to add unto their Honour, in which are several Pieces of superstitious Reliques, and a Silver-Pot, which they fill with Water from a River just at the Full Moon, and carrying it to the Temple, keep it till the next Year, and then throw it out, and so the Ceremony is ended for this Year. In the Year 1664. the King would not permit this Procession, and the Rebellion happen'd, so that he has never hinder'd it since.

1. *Perahar.*

A great Procession on it.

The God represented.

Three chief Gods.

Women at this Procession.

The King delights not in it.

Relicts, and a Silver-Pot.

2. At this Time also they have a Superstition, too foolish to be particularly related, consisting in Dancing, Singing and Juggling, which they celebrate lest the Eyes of the People, or Power of the *Facca's*, or Infernal Spirits, might any ways prove prejudicial or noisome to the aforesaid Gods in their Progress abroad.

2. Foolish Superstition.

At

At this Festival no Drum is allow'd to be beaten at any private Sacrifices.

3. *Cartik Powjah.* 3. At the Full of the Moon in *November* in the Night they have another great solemn Feast, called *Cartha Powjah*, which is kept by lighting up Lamps round about the Temple, and erecting the longest Poles they can get in the Woods at the Doors in the Temple and King's Palace, on which they fix Lamps one above another up to the very Top, which they call *Tor-nes*. The Country in general bring the Oil for these Lamps, and the King is much pleased with this Feast, because he has more Honour by it than the Gods, his Palace being adorn'd with these Poles more than the Temples. This Feast lasts but one Night.

4. The Festival to *Buddou.* The Festival and Service, which they celebrate in Honour of the *Buddou*, who it is, they say, must save their Souls, is performed thus: They make small Images of Silver, Brass, Clay and Stone, which they do honour with Sacrifices and all outward Reverence. Where there are any hollow Rocks and Caves they set up these Images in Memory of him, and such as are devoutly bent do carry Victuals to them at New and Full Moons. His great Festival is in the Month of *March*, at *New-Year's-Tide*, and 'tis celebrated only on a Mountain, or under a Tree; and to one of these they all go with their Wives and Children, being both esteem'd equal for Dignity or Merit. The Mountain is at the S. End of the Country, called by the Natives, *Hammalella*, but by the Christians, *Adam's Peak*. 'Tis the highest in the whole Island, and they say, *Buddou* ascended into Heaven from that Mountain, leaving there a Mark of his Foot. To this Footstep they give Worship, light up Lamps, and after offer Sacrifices, laying them upon it, as upon an Altar. The Benefit of these Sacrifices has been given to the *Moor* Pilgrims by former Kings, and they come from the other Coast in great Numbers to receive them. The Tree is at the N. End of the King's Dominions at *Anarodgburro*. This Tree, they say, came flying over from the other Coast, and planted it self, and under it the *Buddou-God* used much to sit when he was upon Earth. 'Tis now become a Place of solemn Worship, and the Performance of it is reckon'd very meritorious. Ninety Kings, as they report, have reign'd successfully since, and 'tis plain by the Ruines, that they spared for no Labour or Costs to build Temples and high Monuments for this God in that Place; and for it they have merited to be happy Spirits. They whose Ability or Necessity will not permit them to go to these Places, may go to some private *Vehars* nearer. For this God they have the highest Respect and Devotion, as appears from this Instance. The greatest Ladies will send their Maids finely dress't in their stead, and the more inferior Ladies and Gentlewomen (tho' of good Quality) will go in Person out of Devotion to beg for *Buddou* towards his Sacrifice, and the People will give them very libraly, but only of 3 Things, Oil for his Lamps, Rice for his Sacrifice, and Money or Cotton-Yarn for his Use. They carry his Image on the Palms of their Hands, covered with a Piece of white Cloth, and some poor Men will thus beg for themselves, and so find great Relief; for the People bowe down to the Image, and reverence it much. They give Corn, Money or Cotton-Yarn, and the Beggar, when he has received it, pronounceth a Blessing upon the Giver, saying, *Let the Blessing of the Gods and the* Buddou *go along with you; let your Corn ripen, your Cattle encrease, and let your Life be long.* Some being devoutly disposed, will have the Image of this God made at their own Charge, and will bountifully reward the Founder; but before the Eyes are made they count it no God, but when the Eyes are made, the Artificer has a good Quantity given him, besides the Reward agreed on, and carrying it home with Honour, it is dedicated by Solemnities and Sacrifices, and then carried with State into its Shrine, which is a little House before prepared for it. Sometimes a Man will order a Smith to make this Idol, and then go with it to well disposed People to contribute toward the Smith's Wages, and they will give freely to such a Piece of Devotion, as they esteem it. Under the *Bogahah* Tree, which is sacred to this God, they perform Sacrifices, and celebrate Meetings. About this Tree, at about 10 or 12 Foot Distance, and at the Edge of the Platform, they usually build Booths and Tents, some slightly of Leaves, and others substantial of hewn Timber, and Clay-Walls. The whole Town joins, and each Man builds his own Apartment, and the Tree is enclosed round, unless at one Gap, covered with a Portal, which is left to go thro' to the Tree. These Buildings are for the Entertainment of Women, who take great Delight to go and see these Ceremonies, clad in their best and richest Apparel. They spend their Time in seeing the Dancers and Jugglers do their Tricks, who will by their Importunities get Money of them, or a Ring from their Fingers, or the like; in eating Betel nuts, talking with their Consorts, and shewing their fine Cloaths. These Solemnities are always in the Night, and the Booths are all set round with Lamps, but continue 3 or 4 Nights, until the Full Moon, when they always conclude.

Their Devotion to this God. Beggars in his Name. A Form of Blessing. Images of *Buddou.* Women pleased with these Ceremonies.

They are few or none zealous in their Worship, or that esteem their Gods, till they come to be sick, or very aged. None is debarr'd from seeing the Ceremonies of their Worship; and if any laugh at their Ignorance and Folly, they will acknowledge it, and laugh at their own Superstitions, but withal tell you, that they are constrain'd to do what they do to keep themselves safe from the Malice and Mischief that the evil Spirits would otherwise do them, with which, they say, their Country swarms. Their Religion.

In their Sickness they go to the House of their Gods with an Offering, which they present to him, intreating them to restore their Health, and promising them upon their Recovery far greater Gifts, as Land, a Slave, Money, &c. and if the God fails them, they will give him a Curse, saying, *He doth but cheat and deceive them.* If their *Gerahah*, or Fortune, be bad, they'll say, *What can God do against it?* And sometimes they'll speak very slighting of their Gods, saying, *Give them no Sacrifice, stop in their Mouths, what Gods are they?* And the King esteems them far less, giving no manner of Countenance to their Worship or Worshippers; so that as he does not in the least molest or disturb the Christians in their Religion, and the People esteem it better than their own, so in all Probability they would be easily converted to it, or any other Religion, as may appear from this Story. Their Offerings in their Sickness. The King esteems of the Idol-Gods.

There was one among them lately that pretended himself to be a Prophet, sent to them from a Nameless God to heal the Sick and do Miracles, and presently he was had in high Veneration. He gave it out, that he was ordered by the same God to pull down the *Dewals*, or Temples, of the former Gods, and made a good Progress in it, without any Lett or Impediment from the King or People, who stand in fear of all that are called Gods, and being surprized that he had no Name, began to admire him, and great Troops of them came daily to worship him and sacrifice to him. This Impostor seeing this strong Inclination to him, thought it easie for him to change his Priesthood for a Kingdom; but while he was but designing it, the King sent for one of his Priests to Court, and putting a Ring into an Ivory Box, sent 3 of his Grandees to demand of him what was in it; but the Priest evading the Question, by saying, *He came not to divine, but to heal the Diseases, and help the Infirmities of the People*, the King commanded him to be put in the Stocks, and set under a Tree, to be wet with the Rain, and dry again with the Sun, which was accordingly done. The Chief Priest, who was the first Inventor of this New God, fearing the like Fate, pack'd up the Plunder which he had gotten out of the Pagod's Temples with Haste, and stealing one of the King's Elephants, carried it to *Columba*. Here he declared himself to be the King of *Mautoly*, elder Brother to the present King, for fear of whom he fled. This being noised abroad, that he was Prince, the People flock'd faster to him than before, which made him change his Heart and Behaviour from a Priest to a King. The *Dutch* seeing this, began to be in a Doubt what this would grow to, and to prevent the worst, set a Watch over him, which he not liking, fled into the King's Country again, with all his Followers, and settled in the same Place he was in before. The King hearing of his Arrival, sent 5 of his greatest Commanders with their Soldiers to catch him, which they did, and laid him and his Followers in Chains. The King commanded him to be kept in a certain *Pagoda* of the *Chinguleys* till the Matter was examin'd, and summon'd the Chief of the Church-men, called *Gemi-nancies*, to appear before him, which they thought was to see him have a Legal Trial: But in the mean time the King order'd that he should be quarter'd, and his Parts hang'd up in the Places which he appointed, which was done. The People in general A false Prophet. The Impostor taken and quarter'd.

general much lamented him, tho' not able to help him, and to this Day adore the Name and Memorial of the *Nameleſs God*.

Their Belief. The People do firmly believe the Reſurrection of the Body, and the Immortality of Souls, and a future State, and upon that Account worſhip their Anceſtors. They do believe, that their Gods were the Spirits of dead Men; and that thoſe that are good Men, tho' they be poor and mean in this World, yet they ſhall be high and eminent in the other World; but the Wicked ſhall be turn'd into Beaſts; and that diſobedient Children ſhall be like a certain Spider among them, who from an Egg which grows under her Belly breeds her Young, which eat her up, ſo their Children ſhall devour them. They hold, that every Man's good or bad Fortune is predetermined by God before he is born. They reckon the chief Points of Goodneſs to conſiſt in giving to the Prieſts, in offering Sacrifices, in not ſhedding the Blood of any Creature, and in abſtaining from eating any Fleſh at all, for they account Herbs and Plants more innocent Food; in ſweeping under the *Bogahah*, or God-Tree, and keeping it clean; as alſo, to be juſt and ſober, chaſte and true, and to be endow'd with other Vertues, as we eſteem it.

The Charity in the Eaſt. They give to the Poor out of a Principle of Charity, which they extend to Foreigners, as well as to their own Country-men, and out of every Meaſure of Rice they uſe in their Families they take out an Handful, as much as they can graſp, to diſtribute to ſuch Poor as they pleaſe, or come to their Doors, and particulary the *Mooriſh* Beggars, who are *Mahometans* by Religion. Theſe have a Temple at *Candi*, to which, by the Grant of a former King, every Free-holder in the Land are obliged to give a *Ponnam*, and theſe *Moors* go to every Houſe in the Land to receive it, and if the Houſe be ſhut, they have Power to break it open, and take out Goods to the Value of it. They beg confidently, ſaying, *They come to fulfil the People's Charity*, and they relieve them liberally. *Dolubaug*, one County in the Land, pay no Duty to the *Moors* Temple, becauſe they beat them from their Doors when they came firſt to demand it; nor do they pay *Marral* or *Herriots* to the King, as other Countries do. Theſe *Moor* Pilgrims have many Pieces of Land given them by charitable Perſons, where they build Houſes and live, and their Heirs enjoy it. They lay Flowers out of Religion before their Images Morning and Evening in the little Chapels built for them in their Yards. They carry Beads in their Hands on Strings, and ſay ſo many Prayers as they go, which Cuſtom they learned of the *Portugueſe*. They love a Man that makes Conſcience of his Ways, and for that Reaſon reſpect the Chriſtians more than others, becauſe they think that they are juſt, and will not lye.

A Duty to the *Moors*.

The *Moors* Devotion.

CHAP. XI.

Of their Houſes, Diet, Houſewifry, Salutation and Apparel.

Their Houſes. THEIR Houſes are ſmall, low, thatch'd Cottages, built with Sticks, and dawb'd very ſmooth with Clay; for they are not allow'd to build their Houſes above one Story high, or tyle them, or whiten the Walls with Lime; but there is a Clay as white as Lime, and that they uſe ſometimes. Every Man builds his own Houſe, except ſome few Noblemen, who uſe Carpenters. They have their Timber in the Woods for cutting, and what ſhould be nail'd they tie with Rattans, and other Strings, which grow in the Woods in abundance. Their Country being Warm, many of them do not dawb their Walls, but wreath in Boughs of Trees inſtead of Walls. The pooreſt Sort have not above one Room in their Houſes, and few above 2, but Noblemen; nor will the King allow them to build better. They are not nice or curious in their Houſes. They have no Chimneys, but make their Fires in one Corner, ſo that the Roof is black'd with Smoak. The Great Men have handſome and commodious Houſes. They have commonly 2 Buildings one againſt another, join'd on each ſide with a Wall, which makes a ſquare Court-yard in the middle. By the Walls of their Houſes are Banks of Clay to ſit on, which they often dawb with ſoft Cow-Dung to make them ſmooth and clean. Their Slaves and Servants, with their Wives and Children dwell without in other Houſes. Their Furniture is ſmall, *viz.* a few Earthen-Pots hung up in Cane-Slings in the middle of their Houſes, a Braſs Baſin or two to eat in, and a Stool or two without Backs, for none but the King may ſit in a Stool with a Back; ſome Baskets to put Corn in; ſome Mats to ſpread upon the Ground to ſleep on, for they have no other Bedding for themſelves or Friends; ſome Ebony Peſtles, about 4 Foot long, to beat Rice out of the Husk, and a Wooden Mortar to beat it in afterwards to make it white, and an *Hirimony*, or Grater, to grate their Coker-nuts with, and a flat Stone to grind their Pepper and Turmerick on. They have alſo in their Houſes Axes, Bills, Houghs, Atches, Chizels, and other Tools for their Uſe. They have no Tables, for they eat on the Ground.

Great Mens Houſes.

Their Furniture.

Their Diet. Their Diet and ordinary Fare is but mean; if they have Rice and Salt in their Houſes, they reckon they want nothing; for with a few green Leaves, and the Juice of a Lemmon, with Pepper and Salt, they will make an hearty Meal. Beef may not be eaten, 'tis abominable. Fleſh and Fiſh they have but little, and had rather ſell that for Money, than eat it themſelves, but only Strangers will buy it; and they, indeed, eat the Fat of the Land, for even the greateſt of them count it a Credit to fare hard, and ſuffer Hunger, which, they ſay, *Soldiers ought to be able to endure*. Their great Ones have 5 or 6 ſorts of Food at a Meal, but not above one or two of them of Fleſh or Fiſh, of which they make a great deal of Portage, after the Faſhion of the *Portugueſe*. Their main Subſiſtance is Rice, and the other Things are to give it a Reliſh. If the People were not diſcouraged from rearing and breeding up of Cattle, Proviſions might be far more plentiful; but as Jackals kill their Hens, and Tigers their Cattle, ſo the King endeavours to keep them poor and in Want, and from them that have Hens his Officers take them for the King's Uſe for little or nothing, and none is ſuffer'd to keep Hogs or Goats, but the King, except Strangers.

Great Mens Fare.

In dreſſing their Victuals they are very cleanly and handy, and, as they dreſs it, their Fare is very ſavoury and good to thoſe that are uſed to it. They ſit upon a Mat on the Ground and eat, but he that they honour and reſpect ſits on a Stool, and his Victuals is ſet on another before him. Their common Drink is only Water, and if they drink Rack, 'tis before they eat, that it may work the better upon their Bodies. When they drink, they touch not the Pot with their Mouths, but hold it at a Diſtance, and pour it in by a Spout. They eat their Rice out of *China* Diſhes, or Braſs Baſins, and they that have neither of them on Leaves. The *Carrees*, or other ſorts of Food, which they eat with their Rice, is kept in the Pans it is dreſt in, and their Wives ſerve them with it, when they call for it; for it is their Duty to wait on and ſerve their Husbands while they eat, and when they have done, then to take and eat what is left upon their Trenchers. While they are eating, they neither uſe nor delight to talk to one another. They always waſh their Mouths before and after they have eaten; but 'tis accounted an Affront for others to pour Water on their Hands, for ſo they do to ſuch as they think not worthy to handle their Water-Pot. When they waſh, they pour Water with one Hand upon the other. They are very cleanly, and often waſh their Bodies and Heads, and when they have been at Stool they waſh.

Their Houſewifry.

Their Way of Drinking.

Their Cleanlineſs.

See *FIG.* 8.

Their Cookery. As to their Cookery. If People be in the Room talking, and the Women is ready to put the Rice into the Pot, ſhe bids them all be abſent, till ſhe has put it in, and then they may proceed with their Diſcourſe; for if they talk while 'tis putting in, 'twill not ſwell. At the time of Year, when there is plenty

of

of Lemmons. they ſqueeze the Juice into an Earthen-Pot, and boil it till it become thick and black like Tar. They call it *Annego*, and uſe it for Sauce, a little at a time; 'twill keep a great while. They have ſeveral ſorts of Sweet-Meats. One they call *Caown*, which is made of Rice, Flour and Jaggory, like a Fritter, and fry'd in a Frying-Pan with Coker-nut Oil and Butter. When the *Dutch* came to *Columba* firſt, the King ſent them a Royal Treat of them, and the *Dutch* ſo admired them, that they ask'd, whether they did not grow upon Trees, ſuppoſing it paſt the Art of Man to make ſuch Dainties. *Ozzula's*, another ſort of Sweet-Meats made of parch'd Rice, Jaggory, Pepper, Cardamum, and a little Cinnamon, rowl'd up hard in Balls. Theſe they carry in their Travels in Bags to eat in Afternoons: *Alloways*, made after the former manner, but in the Faſhion of a Lozenge; they are good for Faintings, and to reliſh their Water with: *Tack Pettyes*, made of Rice, Flour, and the Meat of the Coker-nut and Jaggory. They are made up into ſmall Lumps, and being put on a Leaf, they are laid on a Cloth over a Pot of boiling Water, whoſe Steam boils it like a Pudding. They taſte like white Bread, Almonds and Sugar. *Pitu*, which is made of the *Ceracan* Flour, mingled with Water, which by rowling and ſtirring it makes it crumble into Corns like Gun-powder. Of this they lay ſo much upon a Cloth tied over the Mouth of a Pot of boiling Water, as they can conveniently cover with another Pot, and ſo the Steam coming thro' the Cloth, boils it, that it will be much like unto a Pudding. This they eat as they do their Rice.

Their Sweet-Meats, as *Caown*.

Ozzula's.

Alloways.

Tack Pettyes.

Pitu.

Women's Houſewifry.

The Womens Houſewifry is to beat Rice out of the Husk, which they do with an Ebony Peſtle, laid upon the Ground, toſſing the Peſtle every Stroak out of one Hand into the other, and at the ſame time keeping Stroak with their Feet, as if they were dancing, to keep up the Corn together into one Heap. This being done, they beat it again in a Wooden-Mortar to whiten it, and tho' it being an hard Work, it belongs only to the Women, as it doth alſo to fetch both Wood and Water. Wood they fetch on their Heads, and Water in an Earthen-Pot on their Hips. They have alſo a ſmall Bill to cut Herbs and Pumpkins, which they do by laying it down on the Ground with the Edge upward, and ſhearing them upon it.

Entertainments.

When one comes to another's Houſe, and is ſet down, the Entertainment is green Leaves, which they call *Bullat*, which they eat raw with Lime and Betel-nuts and Tobacco, and being ſet a while, the Man of the Houſe muſt ask the Stranger, *What he comes for?* which if he does not ſoon, the Stranger will take Exceptions at it, and not think himſelf welcome. Neither do they ever go to viſit one another, unleſs it be to beg or to borrow, and if Kindred that are nearly related come together, they have no loving or private Conference one with the other, but ſit like Strangers very ſolid and grave; and if they ſtay above one Night, which is the common Cuſtom, they do help and aſſiſt the Man of the Houſe in any Work or Service he hath to do. When any Friends go to another's Houſe they never go empty handed, but carry Proviſions and Sweet-Meats with them to their Friend, who makes them a Feaſt according to his Ability, but they never eat of thoſe Things themſelves brought. But there is very little Feaſting among them, unleſs it be at a Wedding.

Viſits.

Salutations. 1. Of Men.

When they meet one another their Manner of Saſutation or Obeiſance is to hold forth their 2 Hands, the Palms upwards, and bowe their Bodies, but the Superior to the Inferior, holds forth but one Hand, and if the other be much beneath him, he only nods his Head.

The Women ſalute by holding up both their Hands edge-ways to their Foreheads. The general Compliment one to another at their firſt meeting, is to ſay, *Ay*, which ſignifies, *How do you?* And the other anſwers, *Handoi*, that is, *well*. 2. Of Women.

The Habit of the Men, when they appear abroad, is after this ſort: The Nobles wear Doublets of white or blue Callico, and about their Middle a Cloth, a white one next their Skin, and a blue one, or of ſome other Colour painted over the white, a blue or red Shaſh girt about their Loins, and a Knife with a carved Handle wrought or inlaid, ſticking in their Boſom, and a compleat ſhort Hanger carved with Braſs and Silver by their Sides, the Scabboard for the moſt part cover'd with Silver bravely engraven; a painted Cane, and ſometimes a Tuck in it, in their Hands, and a Boy always bare-headed, with long Hair hanging down his Back waiting upon them, ever holding a ſmall Bag in his Hand, which is inſtead of a Pocket, wherein is Betel-Leaves and Nuts, which they conſtantly keep chewing in their Mouths, with Lime kept in a Silver-Box rarely engraven, which commonly they hold in their Hands, in Shape like a Silver Watch. The Great Ones alſo generally and ſpruce young Men do wear their Hair long, and hanging down behind. Anciently they generally bored Holes in their Ears, and hung Weights in them to make them grow long, like the *Malabars*; but this King not boring his, that Faſhion is almoſt left off. The Men for Ornament do wear Braſs, Copper, or Silver Rings on their Fingers, and ſome of the Greateſt, Gold; but none may wear any Silk. Their Habit and Apparel, &c. Of Men. Long Hair. Ornaments of Men.

But the Women in their Apparel do far ſurpaſs the Men, becauſe they are moſt curious in making their Wives fine. The Mens Pride conſiſts in their Attendance, having Men bearing Arms before and behind them. In their Houſes the Women do not much regard what Dreſs they go in, but put on ſuch Cloaths as are moſt convenient to do their Work in; but when they go abroad they make themſelves fine. They wear a ſhort Frock, with Sleeves of fine white Callico, wrought with blue and red Thread with Flowers and Branches to cover their Bodies; on their Arms Silver Bracelets, and their Fingers and Toes full of Silver Rings. About their Necks Necklaces of Beads or Silver, curiouſly wrought and engraven, gilded with Gold, and hanging down as low as their Breaſts. In their Ears hang Ornaments made of Silver, ſet with Stones neatly engraven and gilded. Their Ears they bore when they are young, and rowling up Coker-nut Leaves, put them into the Holes to ſtretch them, by which means they grow wide like Circles, and they account them a great Ornament; but they are really a Deformity. Their other Ornaments and Apparel ſhew very comely on them. They oil their Hair with Coker-nut Oil to make it ſmooth, and comb all behind, tying it up in a great Puff, with a Knot hanging half way down their Backs. Their Hands are bare, but they carry a Scarf of ſtriped or branch'd Silk, or ſuch as they can get, caſting it careleſly on their Head and Shoulders. About their Waſtes they have one or two Silver Girdles, made with Wyre and Silver-Plate, handſomely engraven, hanging down on each Side, one croſſing the other, and as they walk chew Betel; yet, for all this Bravery, they have neither Shoe nor Stocking, that being a Royal Dreſs only for the King. It is no Diſgrace among them, becauſe common, to borrow Apparel and Jewels when they go abroad, and therefore they'll tell it in the Company they meet. 2. Women. Their Ornaments. Their Hair ordered. No Shoes nor Stockings.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of their Lodging, Bedding, Whoredom, Marriages and Children.

Their Lodgings and Bedding.

IN their Bed-Chambers they are very curious. If their House have but one Room (as it often is) the Men sleep together at one End of the Room, and the Women at the other. They have Bedsteds laced with Canes or Rattans, but no Testars nor Curtains to them, because the King allows not of them, neither have they, or care they for more than one Bedsted, which is only for the Master of the House to sit or sleep on, and to it belong 2 Mats, and a Straw Pillow. The Women, with the Children, always lies on the Ground on Mats by the Fire-side. For a Pillow she lays a Block, or such like Thing under her Mat, but the Children have no Pillows at all, and for their Covering and other Bedding they use the Cloth which they wear in the Day; but always at their Feet they will have a Fire burning all Night, which makes more Work for the Women, who fetch all the Wood for it on their Heads; for it is accounted a Disgrace for a Man to meddle with those Affairs that properly belong to the Woman. The younger Children, who go naked by Day, creep in under a Corner of their Mother's Cloaths; and if they feel themselves cold in the Night, they rise and blow the Fire with their Mouths, having no Bellows in the Country, and so sit and warm themselves thereby. They are so little given to Sleep, that they will rise many times in the Night to eat Betel and take Tobacco, which when they have done, they lie down and sing Songs till they fall asleep again. At their first going to Bed 'tis very seldom that they do pray to God, nor do they ever teach their Children to do it; but sometimes they will say, *Aub Dio*, which is, *God help or keep me.* But, instead of Prayers, they teach and bid their Children sing Songs when they go to Bed; for they are good Poets, and make pretty Songs, which they sing very sweetly, for they have all good Voices.

A Fire all Night.

Not given to Sleep.

Children of Age lodge abroad.

Where their Houses consist but of one Room, the Children that are of any Years always go and sleep in other Houses among their Neighbours, which please them better than their own; for so they come to meet with Bedfellows; nor doth it displease the Parents if young Men of as good Quality as themselves become acquainted with their Daughters; but they rather like well of it, knowing that their Daughters by this means can command the young Men to assist and help them in any Work or Business that they have Occasion to use them in, and they look upon it as so far from Disgrace, that they will among their Consorts brag of it, that they have the young Men thus at their Command.

Their Whoredom.

This Familiarity so kindles Lust, that all the Youth in the Country is bred up to Whoredom. Indeed, there are no publick Whores allow'd by Authority. In the City some that have follow'd that Trade have oftentimes, by the King's Order, been severely punish'd by whipping, and having their Ears and Hair cut off, but in private few or none can exempt themselves; and for their being with Child, which most of them do not desire, they can very exquisitely prevent it: For (as *Taxeira*, says, *l.* 1. *c.* 33.) there is an Herb that grows in this Isle, which bears an Ear like Barley, but something blacker and more bearded, which being laid upon the Belly of a Woman great with Child, it will make her immediately miscarry, and if it lies long, it will consume the Child in the Womb, and make an incurable Flux of Blood. *Ex Rib.* p. 13, 14. Indeed, the publick Trade would be bad, and hardly maintain them, that exercised it, because the private one is so great; and tho' I think they be all Whores, yet they abhor the Name of *Vesou*, i. e. a Whore; nor will they in their Anger reproach one another with it, unless they are known to lie with a Man of an inferior Quality to themselves, and the Woman reckons herself as much obliged to the Man for his Company, as he does to the Woman for hers. In these Matters the Women are very expert (it being their continual Practice) to keep their Design from the Husband's Knowledge, tho' by his own Experience he cannot be ignorant of the Womens Devices: And, unless he catch them in the Act, he will not trouble himself to prove himself a Cuckold, it being a Thing not much regarded among them to be such. It is a Law here, that if a Man catch another in Bed with his Wife, be it who it will, he may kill both him and her, if he pleases, which hath put the Women upon many crafty Tricks to save themselves and Paramours, when they have been in Danger of being taken by their Husbands, as to throw Ashes in their Husbands Eyes, make Holes in the Thatch of their Houses to let them thro', and the like Artifices; but to avoid these Dangers, as they generally make Appointments with their Gallants in the Woods, when they go to fetch their Firing, so that they may compass their Design, they'll quarrel with their Husbands, and in Discontent go out of their own Houses to their Friends, where they may have an Enjoyment of their Friend longer and without Fear, and the Men to shew their Kindness are very ready to entertain them, and give them what they delight in. In some Cases the Men will permit their Wives and Daughters to lie with other Men, and that is when intimate Friends or Great Men lodge at their Houses. They will commonly send their Wives or Daughters to bear them Company in their Chamber: Nor do they reckon their Wives to be Whores for lying with them that are as good or better than themselves. They do not matter or regard whether at their Marriage their Wives are Maids or not; and for a small Matter the Mother will bring her Daughter, being a Maiden, unto those that do desire her; but 'tis so much abhorr'd for Women of the higher Castes or Descent to admit Men of the low Caste to have any thing to do with them, that, I think, they will never do it. But enough of their Ribaldry.

Open Whoredom punish'd.

What they account Whoredom.

The Punishment of Adultry.

The Womens Contrivances to enjoy their Gallants.

In their more honest Practices of Marriage, which makes the Bed lawful, there are many Ceremonies used among them. The Men never woo a Wife; for the Parents commonly make the Match, and in their Choice regard more the Quality and Descent than the Beauty, and if they agree, all is done. The Match being thus made, the Man carries or sends to the Woman her Wedding-Cloaths, which is a Cloth containing 6 or 7 Yards in Length, and a Linen Waste-coat wrought with Blue and Red. If the Man be so poor that he cannot buy a Cloth, it is the Custom to borrow one. If the Man with his Friends goes to carry it himself, they sleep together that Night to get Acquaintance one with another, and then they appoint a Day when he is to come and fetch her home, which is the Marriage-Day. When that Day is come he goes with his Friends to her House in the Evening, and brings Provisions and Sweet-Meats with him according to his Ability toward the Charges of the Wedding, which is never more than 2 Meals, of which the Supper is one. Then the Bride and Bridegroom eat together in one Dish, which is to intimate that they are both of one Rank and Quality, and sometimes they tie their Thumbs together, but not always, and that Night they go to sleep together. The next Day after Dinner he takes his Bride and departs home with her, putting her before him, and he following her, with some of her Friends to conduct her, for 'tis the constant Custom and Fashion of this Country for the Husband to follow his Wife, and they give this Reason for it, That a Man once going first lost his Wife. When they are come to the Bridgroom's House he makes them a Feast as he is able. Some few Days after her Friends usually come to see her, bringing her a Present of Provisions with them. And sometimes they use this Ceremony in their Marriages: The Man is to stand with one End of the Woman's Cloth about his Loins, and she with the other, and then they pour Water on both their Heads, wetting all their Bodies, which being done, they are firmly married to live together as long as they can agree. The elder sort of People usually woo and conclude their Marriages as

Their Marriages how made and celebrated.

Eating in one Dish, and tie their Thumbs together.

Marriages of little force among them.

they are in Bed together, for having loſt their Maiden-heads, they care not much with what Man they ſleep, and at the Day appointed the Man gives the Woman her Cloaths, and ſo takes her home; but all their Marriages are of very little Force, for if they diſagree or miſſike one another, they part without Diſgrace; and tho' the Man might keep his Wife as long as he pleaſed, yet they both uſually part at Pleaſure. They do uſually give, according to their Abilities, a Portion of Cattle, Slaves and Money with their Daughters, but if they part this Portion muſt be return'd, and the Woman is fit for another Man, being never the worſe for wearing in their Account. Both Men and Women do commonly marry 4 or 5 times before they can ſettle to their Content, and if they have Children when they part the Cuſtom is, that the Man takes the Males, and the Woman the Females; but this Controverſie is not often, becauſe the Women are generally Childleſs. Every Man, even the Greateſt, has but one Wife; [but a Woman has often 2 Huſbands, or more, it being common for all the Brothers of a Family to keep Houſe with one Wife, and the Children to acknowledge and call all of them Fathers. *Ex J. Rib.*]

Their Way of parting.

Women unclean in their Hours.

So long as a Woman have their Infirmities or Fluors upon them, they are accounted unclean, and her Houſe is thought to be polluted, ſo that none will come near it, and ſhe will give Notice to them, that they ſhould not; but when they ceaſe, and ſhe hath waſh'd her Head and Body, ſhe is purified again. It is lawful for no Woman, no not Great Mens Wives to ſit on a Stool in the Preſence of a Man. Men uſually charge one another in the King's Name to do this or that, but a Woman dare not do it upon Penalty of having her Tongue cut out. Men are puniſhed for their Faults by being impriſoned and put in Chains, or ſtanding with a Weight on their Backs till they pay their Fine; but the Puniſhment for Women is only to ſtand with a Basket of Sand on their Heads ſo long as the Puniſher thinks fit. Puniſhment by Stripes is never uſed to Men or Women, unleſs commanded by the King. Lands of Inheritance belonging to Women are exempted from paying *Herriots* to the King, nor do Women pay any Cuſtom for any thing they carry to the Sea-Ports, which Privilege is alſo allow'd to ſuch Wares as are carried on Female Cattle, as Cows or Buffalo's.

Women Puniſhment.

They have no Midwives, but the Neighbouring Women do that Office, and as ſoon as the Child is born, the Father, or ſome Friend, goes to an Aſtrologer to enquire, whether the Child be born in a proſperous Planet, and in a good or evil Hour, and if it be found to born in an evil, they preſently deſtroy it, becauſe they ſay, *They will not bring up a Devil in their Houſes*; for they believe, that a Child born in an ill Hour will prove a Plague and Vexation to his Parents by his Diſobedience and Untowardlineſs; but they will often give ſuch a Child to one of the ſame Degree with themſelves, who will take it and bring it up by Hand; for they ſay, *That the Child will be unhappy to the Parents, but none elſe.* But they ſeldom ſerve their firſt-born Children thus, becauſe they love and make much of them; but when they come to have many, they make it a Pretence to kill them, that they were born under an unlucky Planet. And 'tis reckon'd no Fault, nor have they any Law to reſtrain it. In their Infancy they have Names to diſtinguiſh them, but when they come to Years, they change them into Titles according to the Town where they were born, or dwell; for they count it a Diſgrace to have Names, and ſay, *'Tis like Dogs.* They have alſo Names, which like Coats of Arms, belong to their Families, and by theſe they are called: For they are very ambitious of Titles, and have Plenty in their Language.

Killing of Children.

CHAP. XIII.

Of their Employments, and Recreations.

No Traffick with the *Dutch.*

THey have little or no Merchandize, or Commerce with Foreign Nations, becauſe the King will not permit any Traffick with the *Hollanders*, tho' they have often ſought it, and he did allow it with the *Portugueſe*, when they were at Peace with him. They have a ſmall Traffick among themſelves, from one part of the Iſle to another, becauſe, tho' the whole Iſland bears all Things neceſſary for their Support and Maintenance; yet, becauſe one Part of the Iſle will not bear what others yield plentifully, they are forced to traffick and exchange one with another.

Husbandry their greateſt Employment.

But Husbandry is the great Employment of the Country, and 'tis no Diſgrace for their greateſt Men to be thus buſied upon their own Land; but to work for Hire is accounted a great Shame, and few or none will do it; but carrying Burthens is ſo Slave-like a Work, that all that call themſelves Gentlemen, get others to bear and carry them for them. They geld not their Cattel till they are 2 or 3 Years old, and then nipping the Cods together with 2 Sticks tied together at one end, they beat the Teſticles with Mallets all to pieces, and then rubbing over their Cods with freſh Butter and Soot, turn them looſe, but do not ſuffer them to lie down all that Day, and they generally do very well.

They make their Glew by mixing Curd of Milk with their Lime, which is as ſoft as Butter; and if it be not for preſent Uſe, they rowl up the Curds in Balls, which becoming hard, they ſcrape it with a Knife, and temper it with Lime when they have Occaſion to uſe it. Their Manufactures are but few, ſome Callicoes, not ſo fine as good ſtrong Cloth, for their own Uſe. All manner of Iron-Tools for Smiths, Carpenters and Husband-men: All Sorts of Earthen-Ware to boil, ſtew, fry and fetch Water in: Goldſmiths Work, Painters Work, making Steel and good Guns, and the like. But their Art of ordering the Iron, Stones, and making Iron is moſt worthy our Conſideration. Firſt they take Iron-Stones, of which their Country affords plenty, and which lie not above 5 or 6 Foot deep in the Ground, and laying them on Heaps, burn them with Wood, which makes them ſofter and fitter for the Furnace, which they have ready made of a kind of white Clay. Into it they firſt put a Quantity of Charcoal, and laying theſe Stones on them, put more Charcoal on the Top, which they blow with a ſort of Bellows made of 2 hollow Trees, cover'd with a Deer's Skin, and managed by treading on them. When the Stones have burnt a while, they will melt, and the Droſs that is in them runs out at the Bottom, where there is a ſlanting Hole made for the ſame Purpoſe, ſo big as that a Lump of Iron may paſs thro', but the Iron remains behind, which when it is purified, as they think, enough, ſo that there comes no more Droſs away, they drive this Lump of Iron thro' the ſame ſloping Hole. Then they give it a Chop with an Ax half thro', and ſo fling it into Water. They thus chop it, that the Buyer may be ſatisfied that it is good Iron when they ſee it. They make Butter by boiling the Milk, and then turning it to a Curd, let it ſtand all Night. In the Morning they ſkin off the Cream, and drill it in an Earthen-Veſſel with a Stick, having a Croſs at the Bottom of it ſomething like our Chacolate Sticks. When the Butter is come, they put it into a Pan and fry it to get out the Butter-milk, and then put into a Pot for Uſe.

Their way of making Glew.

Their way of making Iron.

Making Butter.

There are no Markets in the Iſland, but have only ſome few Shops in the Cities, which ſell Cloth, Rice, Salt, Tobacco, Limes, Drugs, Fruits, Swords, Steel, Braſs and Copper. As to the Prices of Commodities, they are ſold at this Rate: Rice in the City, where it is deareſt, is no leſs than 6 Quarts for 4 Pence Half-penny *Engliſh*, or a ſmall *Tango*; 6 Hens the ſame, and a Pig the like. A fat Hog 3 *s.* and 6 *d.* or 4 *s.* but there are none ſo big as ours. A fat Goat 2 *s.* and 6 *d.* Betel-nuts 4000 for 9 *d.* a current Price when there is Trade.

No Markets.

The Price of Goods.

As

Their Measure. 1. Of Extent. 2. Of Capacity.

As to their Measures, a *Rian* is a Cubit, which is with them from the Bone on the Inside of the Elbow to the Top of the 4th Finger. A *Wadde Rion* is the Carpenter's Rule, which is as much as will reach from one Elbow to the other, the Thumbs touching one another at the Tops, and so stretching out both the Elbows. Their Corn-Measures are the least a *Potta*, which contains as much Grain as a Man can hold heap'd up in his whole Hand, Palm and Fingers and all. Four *Potta's* make a *Bondet Nellia*, which is the King's Measure, according to the Statute. This Measure is allow'd by the King to a Man for his ordinary Provision for a Day, but *English* Men are allow'd 2. Four of these make a *Courney*, an handsome turn'd Measure, but some are made of Canes like a Basket. Ten of these make a *Pale*, which is usually sold for a *Laree*, or the 5th part of a Piece of Eight, an usual Price in *Candi-Udi*; but in Harvest-time they sell 2 *Pales* for a *Laree*. Four of these make an *Ommonna*, by which they usually count their Corn, as we do by Quarters.

Their Weights.

Their Weights are the least a *Collonda*, 6 of which weigh just a Piece of Eight: but they have Half *Collonda's* and Quarters. The Goldsmiths, when they weigh Things lighter than a *Collonda*, they weigh them with a kind of red Berries, which grow in the Woods just like Beads, of which 20 make a *Collonda*, and 20 *Collonda's* make a *Pallum*. Here is no Punishment for such as make less Weights and Measures; for they are more circumspect that their Measures be not too big than too little; for Money being scarce, Corn passeth instead of Money, and every Man metes by his own Measure, which therefore he makes as large as he can or dares, that so when he receives his Debt of Corn, he may get as much as he can. These Measures being an Injury to the poorer sort of People, who are usually the Debtors, the *Adigar's* Officers go about the Towns to examine the Measures by the Statute, and where they find great ones they cut them in Pieces, and hang them up in the Streets to terrifie others, and sometimes fine those who have them.

Too small are seal'd here.

Their great Measures broken.

Their Coin of 3 sorts.

There are but 3 sorts of Coin in this King's Dominions: One is *Tangom Massa*, first coined by the *Portuguese* with this King's Arms on the one Side, and the Image of a Friar on the other, the Value is 9 *d.* The *Poddi Tangom*, which is half as much. There is another sort, which all the People may and do coin by the King's Permition; 'tis in Shape like a Fish-Hook, and pure Silver, finer than Pieces of Eight, for if they suspect the Goodness of it, their Custom is to heat it red hot in the Fire, and put it into Water, and if it be not pure white it is not current Money. The 3d sort of Money is the King's proper Coin, and 'tis Death to counterfeit it, it's called a *Penuam*, and is as small as a Spangle, 75 of them make a Piece of Eight, or *Spanish* Dollar. But all sorts of Money is very scarce, and they frequently buy and sell by exchanging Commodities.

Their Sports are few.

They have but very few Sports or Pastimes, because they do not much delight in such Diversions; only on their *New Year* they will sport and be merry one with another. Their chief Play is to bowl Coker-nuts one against the other to see which is hardest. After this time none will work till their Astrologers tell them 'tis a good Hour to handle their Tools, and then both Men and Women begin their proper Works, the Man with his Bill, Ax and Hough, and the Woman with her Broom, Pestle and Fan to clean her Corn. There

A sporting Sacrifice.

is another Sport which they much delighted in generally, because 'twas, as they said, a Sacrifice to *Potsing-Dio*, one of their Gods, and the Benefit was to free their Country from Grief and Diseases; but for the Beastliness of it they never celebrated it near a Town, nor in the Presence of Women. The Manner of the Game is this: They have 2 crooked Sticks like Elbows, which are hook'd one into the other, and with Ropes fix'd to them some pull on the one side, and some on the other, till one of them break, at which the contrary Party rejoyces, as having won, and to express his Joy, dances and sings, uttering sordid and beastly Expressions, which he answers by suitable Postures of Body, not fit to be mentioned, and he is most commended who is most lewd. This Solemnity was much used, and the King himself frequented it, but now he has forbidden it under a Penalty of forfeiting of Money, and so the Practice of it is quite left off. The People of *Gompala* endeavour'd once to revive it, and began it again, but the King hearing of it, sent a Nobleman to take a Fine of them for it. The Nobleman knew they would not come to pay a Fine, and therefore pitching his Tent by a Pond side, call'd them to assist him to catch Fish for the King, which they all were ready to do, because they hoped for the Refuse; when they were come with their Tools and Instruments for that Purpose, he charged them all in the King's Name, according to their Country Fashion, *viz.* by pulling off his Cap, and falling down upon the Ground 3 times, that they should not depart till they had paid such a Sum of Money for reviving the Play the King had forbid; and so they were forced to do it, and it was carried into the King's Exchequer.

The King forbids it.

A Fine paid for reviving it.

When they would be merry, particularly at their great Festivals, at the New-Moons of *June* and *July*, they have People that shew pretty Tricks and Feats of Activity before them; such as these: A Man sets a Pole 7 or 8 Foot long upon his Breast, and a Boy gets to the Top of his Pole, and leans with his Belly upon the End of it, and thus the Man danceth with the Pole on his Breast, and the Boy on it. A Woman takes 2 naked Swords, under each Arm one, and holds another in her Mouth, then she fetcheth a Run, and turns clear over, and never toucheth the Ground, till she lights on her Feet again, holding all her Swords fast. And thus they divert themselves. At their Leisure they will meet at certain Places built for Strangers and way-faring Men to lodge in, called *Ambiombs*, where they sit chewing Betel-nuts and looking one upon another very gravely and solidly, discourse concerning the Affairs at Court between the King and the Great Men; what Employments the Citizens follow, about Cattel and Husbandry, and if they meet Outlandish Men, they enquire about the Laws and Government of their Country, whether it be like theirs, and what Taxes they are bound to pay, and what Duties to perform to their King: And this is their greatest Recreation. Drunkenness they abhor, and so there are but few that use it. Tobacco they account a Vice, but 'tis used both by Men and Women, tho' more is eaten than taken in Pipes.

Their Tricks at their Festivals.

The way of spending their idle Time.

Drunkenness hated.

Their greatest Delight, which they are most fond of, is in Betel-Leaves, and their Mouths are never free from it, but when they are eating; for the last Thing they do when they are going to Bed is to fill their Mouth with it, which they keep there till they wake, and then they spit it out, and take in more. The Reasons why they eat it, as they say, are, 1. Because 'tis wholsome. 2. To keep their Gums sound, and their Mouths perfumed; for being chew'd it casts a brave Scent: And, 3. To make their Teeth black, because they abhor white Teeth, saying, *They are like a Dog's.*

Betel eaten, and why.

[Strengthening the Stomach, and procuring Health and long Life. *Ed.*]

The Gentlewomen and Ladies have no other Pastime but to sit and chew Betel, swallowing the Spittle, and spitting out the rest, and when their Friends come 'tis as good Entertainment with them to chew Betel, as 'tis with us to drink Wine. Their Way of eating Betel is this: They carry about them a small Box full of wet Lime, and as often as they are minded to eat Betel, they take as much of the Lime as they please, and spread it upon a Leaf of Betel, and then taking some Slices of the Nut, wrap them up in the Leaf, and so eat them, rubbing their Teeth with it now and then to make them look black, but sometimes they will put all of them into their Mouths by themselves, tho' they chew them all together, and never eat them assunder. When they want Lime in a Journey, or otherwise, they have a Way to make it of certain Shells, which they pick up in their Fresh-Water Rivers, and wrapping them, with a little Charcoal in a Wisp of Rice-Straw, bound about with green Withs, by which swinging them over their Heads half an Hour, they fire the Coal, and burn the Shells into very good Lime, which they put in their Boxes for their Use. Lime made of white Stone, which they burn in a Kiln, they do indifferently use to eat with their Leaves, as well as this made of Shells. But they wet both with Water when they put it into their Boxes.

The Way of eating Betel.

Their Way to make Lime.

CHAP. XIV.

Of their Laws, and Language.

The King's Will is their Law.

THey have no Laws but their King's Will, ſo that whatever he commands is immutably to be obſerved. But they have certain ancient Uſages and Cuſtoms which prevail generally among them, and are obſerved as Laws, and being pleaded in their Courts and before their Governours, are uſually allow'd. The moſt conſiderable are theſe: Their Lands are Hereditary, and deſcend from Parents to Children; but the eldeſt Son by Privilege of Birth-Right does not poſſeſs and enjoy all the Land, but the Father, if he pleaſes, may divide it among the Children: Yet if it happens that the eldeſt Son does enjoy all the Land, he is without Diſpute to maintain his Mother and her Children until they come to Years of Ability to provide for themſelves. They have a Cuſtom in the County of *Ouvah*, which is a great Breeder of Cattel, and hath but little Wood, ſo that they have not ſufficient to make Hedges, that when they ſow their Corn, they drive their Cattel from thence, and watch them all Day, that they do not break into the Corn, and at Night they tie them up, that they may not break into the Corn; for if one Neighbour's Cattel eat another's Corn, he muſt pay the Damage. Thoſe that are lazy and loth to plow, or that are poor and want Corn to ſow, the Cuſtom is to let out their Lands to others to till at *Ande*, i. e. at Halfs; but when the Fees and accuſtom'd Dues are taken out by the Husband-man that tills it, the Owner of the Land receives not much above a 3d part; for the Husband-man is allow'd theſe Payments beſides his Half, *viz.* *Cautomaun*, which is as much Corn as they can pull off from the whole Heap of trodden Corn by drawing a Bundle of Buſhes over it. *2dly*, *Warracool*, that is a Conſideration for the Expences they are at in tilling and ſowing, for which there is a Rate according to the Bigneſs of the Field ſet. *3dly*, *Warrapoll*, that is, the Corn that is left at the Bottom of the Heap, when they have done Fanning, which is the Woman's Fee for Weeding the Corn, and pulling it up where it is too thick, and planting it where 'tis too thin, *&c.* *4thly*, *Bollerud*, which is the Chaff and Sweepings of the Pit, which ſometimes comes to a conſiderable Value, according to the Quantity of the Corn that is trodden out. *5thly*, *Pelderah*, which is a Piece of Corn, that they leave before the Watch-Houſe, which is ſet up in their Corn Grounds to ſhelter thoſe that watch and guard their Corn from wild Beaſts, which is the Fee for Watching. *6thly*, *Ockyaul*, which is an Offering to their Gods, and is ſometimes carried away by their Prieſts, and ſometimes they beſtow it upon the Beggars, and ſometimes they will take it up, and hang it in their Houſe, and at convenient Times ſacrifice it themſelves. It is one of their Meaſures, which is about Half a Peck. All theſe Deductions much leſſen the Owner's Half, which generally is, as ſoon as Harveſt is over, divided in the Field to his Creditors; for ſuch Owners for ſome Months before Harveſt are fain to go a borrowing Corn to ſuſtain himſelf and Family, for which he pays, when his Corn is ripe, at the Rate of 50 *per Cent.* for Uſe, *i.e.* a Buſhel and half for a Buſhel.

Their Cuſtoms.

Mother to be maintain'd.

Having their Lands, and the Fees allow'd for Tillage.

This Way of lending Corn is a Means of maintaining many Strangers and others, for thus they may live competently well of a ſmall Stock of Corn; but Corn thus lent is ſomewhat difficult to get again; for the Debtor being poor, all his Creditors will come into the Field when the Corn is ſharing (for that is the Place of Payment) and as ſoon as it is divided, each one will ſcramble to get what he can, and having taken Poſſeſſion of it, the Creditor carrieth it home, be it far or near.

Lending Corn a good Trade.

If a Debt remains unpaid 2 Years it becomes double, but from thence forward, be it never ſo long, no more Uſe is to be paid by the Law of the Land, which Act was eſtabliſhed by this King in favour of the Poor, there having being ſome whole Families made Slaves for a Buſhel of Corn; but yet it is lawful for the Creditor, if he has not his Due of Corn, to lay Hands of any of the Debtor's Goods; or, if the Sum be conſiderable, on his Cattel, or Children, having firſt taken out a Licenſe from the Magiſtrate ſo to do; or, if he have none of thoſe, upon himſelf, or his Wife, if ſhe came with him to fetch the Debt; but if ſhe did not, ſhe is free from this Violence. If a Woman go away from her Husband, no Man may marry her, until he firſt be married. Money being lent upon Uſe, becomes double in one Year's time; but if the Creditor let his Money lie in the Debtor's Hands never ſo long after the Expiration of the Year, no more than double is to be paid, as it is in lending Corn. If a Bond-Woman has Children by a Free-Man, the Children are Slaves to her Maſter, but if a Bond-Man has Children by a Free-Woman, the Children are free; for the Children are always as the Mother is, whether bond or free. No Man may cut down a Coker-nut-Tree. If a Man in a Bargain or Promiſe gives a Stone in the King's Name, it is as firm as Hand and Seal, and if he after this go back of his Word, 'twill bear an Action. If any Man be taken ſtealing, he muſt reſtore Sevenfold, or be made a Slave, if he be not able to pay. It is uſual and cuſtomary for a Man in Neceſſity to ſell or pawn his Children, or himſelf. No Man building an Houſe either in his own or another Man's Ground, if he be afterwards minded to leave his Land where his Houſe ſtood, may pull it down again, but muſt let it ſtand for the Benefit of whoſoever comes after him.

No more than double Uſe to be paid.

A Woman not to marry that leaves her Husband.

A firm Bargain.

For deciding of Matters in Controverſie, eſpecially ſuch as are obtruſe and intricate, the Parties do both ſwear before their Gods, ſometimes in their Temples, and ſometimes upon more extraordinary Occaſions in hot Oil, which being unuſual Cuſtoms, I ſhall explain them both. The former of theſe I ſhall ſhew you the Manner of in this Inſtance.

Their Swearing to decide Controverſies. 1. In their Temples.

A Slave was accuſed by a Merchant for robbing his Houſe, whereupon the Slave to clear himſelf deſired he might ſwear: So the Merchant and the Slave went both into the Temple to ſwear. The Merchant ſwore poſitively that the Slave had robb'd his Houſe, and the Slave ſwore as fully that he had not, and neither of them having any Witneſſes, God, who knew all Things, was deſired to ſhew a Judgment upon him that was forſworn, and ſo they both departed to their Houſes, waiting to ſee upon whom the Judgment would fall. In the mean time, the Slave privately ſets the Merchant's Houſe on Fire, and it was burnt down to the Ground. This ſuppoſed Divine Judgment made it evident, that the Merchant, upon whom it fell, was forſworn, and the Slave immediately demanded Satisfaction of him for laying Theft falſly to his Charge. The Merchant could not well tell how to evade it, but yet would not give him any; and ſo the Slave was to get what Satisfaction he could, when Opportunity offered. His Maſter bad him ſeize upon the Merchant himſelf, or any Perſon relating to him, and bring them to his Houſe, and there detain them. Within a ſhort time after the Slave ſeeing a Kinſman of the Merchant's paſs by, attempts to ſeize him; but he, rather than be taken, draws his Knife, and ſtabs the Slave on the Shoulder, and ſo made his Eſcape. In fine, the Merchant was forced to bribe the Great Man to ſave himſelf from further Damage, and ſit down contented with the Loſs of his Goods and Houſe, tho' the Slave was a Man of a very bad Reputation, and had committed divers Robberies, and was known often to ſell ſtollen Goods.

A Merchant's Houſe burnt.

The other Way of ending Debates, is by ſwearing in hot Oil, which is only uſed in Matters of great Importance; as, when Law-Suits happen about their Lands, or when there is no Witneſs. When they are to ſwear after this Manner, each Party muſt have a Licenſe from the Governour for it, with his Hand to it. Then they go and waſh their Heads and Bodies, which is a Religious Ceremony, and that Night they are both confin'd to an Houſe, with a Guard ſet upon them, and a Cloth tied over each of their Right-Hands, and ſeal'd, leſt they ſhould make uſe of any Charm to harden their Fingers. The next Morning they are both brought out, and then

2. In hot Oil.

then they put on clean Cloaths, and purifie themselves, reckoning they are come into the Presence of God. Then they tie to their Wrists the Leaf wherein the Governour's License is, and repair to some *Bygahah*, or God-Tree, and all the Officers of the County assemble, with a vast Number of People besides. Coker-nuts are brought, and Oil is extracted from them in the Sight of the People, that all may see that there is no Deceit. Also they have a Pan of Cow-Dung and Water boiling close by, and when they have made the Oil to boil, that all may see they are throughly hot, they take a young Leaf of the Coker-nut-Tree, and dip it into the Oil first, and then into the Cow-Dung, which presently shews it, for it sings and frizzles up and roars, as if you pour'd Water into boiling Oil. When all are satisfied that both are sufficiently hot, the 2 Men come and stand on each side of the boiling Oil, and say, *The God of Heaven and Earth is Witness, that I did not do this that I am accused of*: Or, *The Four sorts of Gods be Witness, that this Land in Controversie is mine*; and the other swears the quite contrary. But the Accuser always swears first, and the Accused relates his own Innocence, or his Right and Title. Then the Cloths in which their Hands were bound up are taken off, and immediately, upon using the former Words, both of them dip 2 Fingers into the hot Oil first 3 times, and then as many times into the Cow-Dung, and then both their Hands are tied up again in the Cloth, and they are kept both of them Prisoners till the next Day, when their Hands are look'd upon, and their Fingers Ends are rubb'd with a Cloth, to see if the Skin will come off, and if it comes off of either of their Fingers, he is look'd upon to be forsworn, and the Perjury is punish'd by a great Forfeiture to the King, and an equal Satisfaction to the Adversary. It is certain, that the Fingers of some that have been thus sworn have remained whole from any Scald after the Use of the hot Oil, but whether it be by their Innocence or Art that this comes to pass is hard to judge, though they judge 'tis always the first, because so much Care is taken to prevent the last.

Oil extracted.

The Oath.

The Effect.

The Penalty of breaking the Laws or Customs of this Land is at the Pleasure of the Judge, either by Amercements, Imprisonments, or both. When a Person is amerced, this is the Custom of taking their Fines from him. The Officers, wheresoever they meet the Man, stop him in the Place, and taking away his Sword and Knife, make him pull off his Cap and Doublet, and so he sits, with his Keepers by him, till he pays his Fine; and if he delays to pay it, they clap a great Stone upon his Back, in which Condition he must remain till he pays it; and if he still denies Payment long, they load with more Stones, until his Compliance prevents further Pains. Another way they have to exact the said Fines laid upon Men. They take some Branches of Thorns, and draw them between the Man's naked Legs, till he pays; but if he still obstinately refuses, they clap him up in Chains.

The Way of exacting their Fine.

See FIG. 9.

They have a very odd Usage among them to recover their Debts. They will go sometimes to the House of the Debtor with the Leaves of *Neimgala*, a certain Plant, which is rank Poison, and threaten him, that they will eat that Poison and destroy themselves, unless he will pay them what he owes. The Debtor is much afraid of this, and rather than the Creditor shall thus kill himself, will sell a Child sometimes to pay the Debt; not that the Debtor is tender of the Life of the Creditor, but out of Care of himself; for if he dies of the Poison, the other, for whose Sake the Man poison'd himself, must pay a Ransom for his Life. And the same Way they will sometimes revenge themselves of those with whom they have a Contest, for they will jump down some steep Place, or hang, or make away with themselves, that so they may bring some great Trouble upon their Adversary.

A Way to recover their Debts.

Their Language is peculiar to this Island, and not spoken by any other *Indian* Nation, but themselves. Some few Words are common to the *Chingulays* and *Malabars*, which they may have borrow'd one of another by Intercourse and Commerce; but the Words are so few, that a *Malabar* cannot understand the Discourse of a *Chingulays*, nor on the contrary. Their Language is copious, smooth, elegant and Court-like, according to the Nature of the People, who are full of Words, Titles and Compliments.

Their Language described.

Compliments much used.

They have 12 or more Titles, which they give to Women, and near as many to Men, according to their Titles and Qualities. Our Language cannot express them. They use them according as they have Business with Men; for if they seek any Favour or Kindness, they bestow the best sort of Titles on them. Their ordinary Plow-men and Husband men do speak elegantly, and are full of Compliments; so that there is no Difference between the Ability and Speech of a Country-man and a Courtier. When any of them hath any Favour to beg of a Nobleman, or any Business with him, he doth not abruptly speak his Errand at first, but brings it in with a long Harangue of his Worth, good Disposition or Abilities, which is a very handsome and taking Way. They bring up their Children to speak after this manner, and use them to go on Errands to Great Men, and they are able to tell their Tale very well.

They are bold in Speech, without a sheepish Shamefacedness, and yet have no more Confidence than what is very becoming. The King now they call by a Name which signifies something higher than a Man, and next to God; but before the War they styled him *Dionanxi*, one higher than a God, and he took the Title then, but since he has forbidden it. When they speak of themselves to the King, they say not, I did so or so, but *Baulagot*, i. e. the Limb of a Dog did so, and when of their Children, they call them *Puppies*, which shews the Height of the King, and Slavery of the People under him.

They speak boldly.

They have certain Words of Formality and Civility, which they use upon Occasion. When they go to another Man's House, he asks them out of Civility, *What they come for?* And they answer, *Nicamava, They came for nothing*, though they do come for something, and for this they tell this Fable: A certain God came down upon the Earth one Day, and summon'd all Creatures to come before him, promising them to give them whatever they demanded. Some desired Strength or Legs, and others Wings, &c. and they were bestow'd on them. Then came the white Men, and the God asked them, What they came for? And they said, They desired Beauty, Valour and Riches, and it was granted them. At last came the *Chingulays*, and the God required of them, What they came for? They answer'd, *Nicamava*, i. e. *They come for nothing*. Then replied he again, *Do you come for nothing? Then go away with nothing*; and so they for their Compliment fared worse than the rest. When one profers a Gift to another, altho' it be a Thing he is willing to have, and would be glad to receive, he will say, *Eeppa queinda? No, I thank you*; *How can I be so chargeable to you?* And yet while the Words are in his Mouth he will reach forth his Hand to receive it. But they are not free or forward to requite them from whom they have received a Gift, or a good Turn, unless it be with windy Words and Protestations; for they are ready to receive, and backward to give; yet will they not plainly deny any one that comes to them to beg or borrow, but excuse themselves, by saying, *They have it not, or 'tis lent already*, altho' it be in the House.

Their Words of Civility.

Not free to lend.

They usually swear by their Mother, Children or Eyes oftner than by their Gods, but their Protestations or Promises, be they never so deep or serious, yet are not to be regarded, as proceeding from Custom, and not Truth.

Their common Oaths.

Their Railery is in such Terms as these: *Tomotamoy, Go lie with your Mother*, to a Brother; and, *Go lie with your Father*, to a Daughter; and they will commend their Children when they can use their Tongues nimbly in their own Defence by scolding, and say, *Herri Oppana, Well said, valiantly spoken!* If any thing be stole out of their Grounds and Plantations, they will rail bitterly tho' they cannot tell at whom, and say, *This was done by some Low-Caste begotten Rogue*; or, *She was a Whore to some inferior Rank that dress'd it.* The worst Words that they use to Whites or Christians, is to call them *Beef-eating Slaves*. The Grammar of their Language is not, perhaps, possible to be given, and therefore I will conclude with some of their Proverbs, which shew the Wisdom of a Nation as much as any thing, and because they are many, I shall pick the best.

Their railing Language.

Miris dilah, &c. *I have given Pepper, and gotten Ginger*, to signifie a bad Exchange.

Datta Herrula, &c. *Pick your Teeth to fill your Belly*, spoken of a Niggard.

Some of their Proverbs.

De-

Degery illand, &c. *If I come to beg Butter-Milk, why ſhould I hide my Pan*; to ſhew, that a Man ſhould not be aſhamed of the Buſineſs he comes about.

Hingonna, &c. *A Beggar and a Trader can't be loſt*; becauſe they are never out of their Way.

Atting Mitting, &c. *To lend to another makes him become an Enemy*; becauſe he that borrows, hates to be asked for his Debt.

Iſſara Otting, &c. *Firſt look into the Hand, then open the Mouth*; ſpoken of a Judge, who muſt have a Bribe, before he will paſs Sentence.

No Body can reproach the King and the Beggar; becauſe the Former is above the Slander of the People, and the Latter can have nothing bad enough ſaid on him.

Like the Noia *and* Polonga, *i. e. irreconcilable Enemies.*

He that hath Money to give to his Judge, needs not fear his Cauſe, be it right or wrong; to ſhew the Corruption of Great Men, and their Greedineſs of Bribes.

If Fortune be bad, what can God do againſt it; holding that none of the Gods have Power to reverſe the ill Fate of a bad Planet.

CHAP. XV.

Of their Learning, Aſtronomy, and Magick.

Little Learning among them.

THeir Learning is only to Read and Write, and 'tis no Diſgrace to do neither of them. They have no Schools to be inſtructed at in any of theſe or other Arts. Their Books concern only their Religion and Phyſick, and their chief Arts are Aſtronomy and Magick. Their Books are written in a Language differing from the vulgar Tongue, which is to them as *Latin* to us. They learn to write on Sand ſpread thin on the Ground, and make the Letters with their Fingers. When their Hand is brought into Uſe, they then write on a Tallipot-Leaf with an Iron Bodkin, and when they have written on it, the roll it up as Parchment. If they write a Book, they cut the Tallipot-Leaves into Pieces of what Size and Shape they pleaſe, but not above 3 Fingers broad. When they are written thro', they ſtring them upon a Thread, which goes thro' every Leaf, and faſten them to Boards of each ſide inſtead of Covers. When the Readers read them, they lift every Leaf up, and lay them down upon the contrary Side, removing them as Papers on a File. The Prieſts called *Gonnies*, who are Men of Leiſure, write many Books about the Ceremonies of their Religion, and will ſometimes carry them to Great Men for a Preſent, and expect a Reward. The King when he ſends any Warrants to his Officers, folds them in a Way proper to himſelf, which none dare imitate. They write Records upon the Tallipot-Leaf to be preſerved; but upon any ordinary Buſineſs, as Letters, *&c.* they uſe another Leaf, called *Taulcole*, which will bear a better Impreſſion, but it is ſtubborn and harder, and will not fold.

A Book how made.

Their Records.

Aſtronomy, and the Profeſſors of it.

Aſtronomy is beſt underſtood and practiſed by the Prieſts of the higheſt Order, of whom the preſent King's Father was one; but the common ſort of Aſtronomers are the Weavers. Theſe can certainly foretell the Eccliſpes of the Sun and Moon, make *Almanacks* for a Month, which they write upon a Tallipot-Leaf, a little above a Foot long, and 2 Fingers broad. In them are told the Age of the Moon, and the good Seaſons and Times to begin to plow, ſow, or go a Journey, or take any Work in Hand, and on that preciſe Time they'll certainly begin, tho' they do not go on till ſome Days after, nay, ſometimes a Month after. Theſe Aſtronomers alſo tell them when the old Year ends to a Minute, at which Time they ceaſe from all Works, except the King's, which may never be omitted. They acquaint them alſo with the good Hour of the New Year, when they are to begin to work, and then every Man begins to do ſomewhat of the Employment which they intend to follow the enſuing Year, and direct them when to waſh their Hands, which is aſſigned to every one according to the Times of their Nativities, which Ceremony they obſerve very religiouſly.

Their *Almanacks*.

Their Knowledge of the Planets.

Theſe Aſtronomers, or rather Aſtrologers, are skilful in the Stars and Planets, which they reckon to be 9, adding, as is ſuppoſed, the Dragon's Head and Tail, and by them they pretend to foretell all Things concerning the Health or Recovery of the Sick, and the Fate of Children, about whom the Parents do conſult them immediately after their Nativity, and accordingly ſave or deſtroy them, according to the fortunate or unfortunate Hour they ſay, that they are born in. When a Perſon is ſick, his Nativity is carried to theſe Men, who upon the Peruſal tell him his Fate. They alſo tell the fit Times for Journeys, and are conſulted about Marriages.

The Epocha of their Years.

They reckon their Time from one *Sacca warſi*, an ancient King. They call their Year *Ouredah*, and begin it from the 28th of *March*, and ſometimes upon the 27th, and ſometimes, but very ſeldom, on the 29th. It conſiſts of 365 Days, and the Reaſon of the Change of Day in the Beginning, is to equal our Leap-Year. They divide it into 12 Months, which they divide into Weeks, which conſiſt each of them 7 Days, thus called, *Fridah*, *Sandudah*, *Ongborudah*, *Bodadah*, *Braſpatindah*, *Secouradah* and *Henouradah*. Of theſe they count the firſt a good and fortunate Day to do or undertake any thing, and it falls upon our *Sunday*. On their *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* they open their Temples, and perform their Ceremonies. Their Day, which they call *Dauſack*, they divide into 30 *Pays*, or Parts, and begin it from Sun-riſing, and their Night alſo into as many, and begin at Sun-ſetting. Their 15th *Pay* is our 12 a Clock at Noon. They have a Flower by which they judge of the Time, which conſtantly blows open 7 *Pays* before Night. They have no Clocks, Hour-Glaſſes, or Sun-Dials, but judge of the Time by Gueſs. The King, indeed, has a kind of Inſtrument to meaſure Time, *viz.* a Copper-Diſh, holding about a Pint, with a little Hole at the Bottom, which being ſet empty upon the Water, the Water leaks it in at the Hole, till it is full and ſinks, and this they count one *Pay*, and he keeps a Man to tend upon it continually. The People will uſe this Pan upon ſome Occaſions, as to know exactly the lucky Seaſon to ſow their Corn.

Their Days.

No Dials or Clocks.

Their Practice of Magick.

They practiſe Magick, of which take theſe 2 remarkable Inſtances. The Country of *Neurecalava* formerly brought forth great Plenty of Corn, by reaſon of its large Waterings. The Kingdom of *Cournegal* in *Hautcourley* was brought to great Want by a Dearth; whereupon the King ſends to the People of *Neurecalava* to bring a Supply of Corn to his Country, which they did in great Store, and making Holes in their Sacks for Expedition, let it run out at every Man's Door, which exceedingly pleaſed the King, who to requite them, asked them, What they moſt needed in their Country? They anſwer'd, That they wanted nothing, but Turmerick and Pepper. The King, to gratifie them, ſent them as big a Quantity of both as his Country would afford; but when the People of *Neurecalava* came to meaſure it out every Man his Portion, they found the Dividend ſo ſmall, that they reſolved to grind it, as they uſed to do for their Victuals, and caſt it into the River, that every Man might take up his Diſh thus ſeaſon'd. The King hearing of this Action, was offended at them, as contemning his Gift, but conceal'd his Diſpleaſure, till having been in their Country, and being told, that the Cauſe of the Fruitfulneſs of it was from the Water of the River, pent up in a very vaſt Pond, which thro' Trenches they convey'd into their Corn Grounds, he went home, and by the Help of his Magicians, he broke down the vaſt Dam, made with Stones and Earth caſt up by vaſt Labour and Art, that kept in the Water, and ſo deſtroying the Pond, their Country for want of of Water became as ordinary Land as the reſt, having nothing but the Rains to water their Grounds.

A Country made barren by Magick.

So

Thieves discovered by a Charm.

So also when a Robbery is committed, to find out the Thief they charm a Coker-nut, which is done by certain Words, which any one may utter, and thrusting a Stick into it, set it at the Door or Hole where the Thief went out, and it will lead him who holds it by the Stick the Way the Thief went, and bring him to the House or Place where the Thief is, if they continue charming it all the Way, and throw Betel-Flowers upon it, and run upon his Feet; but this is not enough to find the Thief guilty, unless the Charmer will swear point-blank, that he is the Thief, as sometimes he will do upon the Goodness of his Charm, and then the supposed Thief must swear, or be condemned. Oftentimes Men of Courage and Mettal will get Clubs, and beat away the Charmer and all his Company, and then all is at an End; or if the Thief has the Wit to lay his Tail in the Way, the Coker-nut, when it comes at it, will stop, and run round about it, but will go no further. I doubting of the Truth hereof, took the Stick once and held it my self, when they were charming thus, but it would not move with me, tho' they used all their Art to provoke it; but when another took it, it went forward, and he assured me it guided his Hand.

Ancient Writings not known.

Here are some ancient Writings engraven upon Rocks in divers Parts of *Candi-Uda*, and in the Northern Parts. The Letters for some Yards together are cut so large and deep, that they may last to the World's End, but neither *Malabars*, *Chingulays* or *Moors* can read them, or make any thing of them. They are probably in Memory of something, but what the Learned must conjecture.

CHAP. XVI.

Of their Sickness, Death and Burial.

They live to a great Age.

THey live to a great Age very often; to 80, [and some to 120, *Rib.*] The King's Sister was near 100, for they are healthy, and of a sound Constitution. The Diseases that this Land is subject to are Agues and Fevers, and sometimes to Bloody-Fluxes.

[There is a Distemper which they call *Bere bere*, which is a sort of Cramp, so violent, that such as are taken with it fall down upon the Ground immediately, and if the Part affected were cut in Pieces they would not feel it. *Rib.*]

Their Distemper.

The Small-Pox sometimes happens among them, and because they cannot free themselves from it by all their Charms and Enchantments, which are often successful in other Distempers, they confess, like the Magicians of *Egypt*, that the Finger of God is in it. [Of all Distempers they fear this the most, and to avoid the Infection the Father will leave his Child, and Wife her Husband, and therefore if any be sick of it, they remove them out of their Houses, and will not come near them, only they give them as much Food as they think convenient, and leave him to shift for himself, whence it is that such as have this Distemper for the most part die. *Rib.* p. 150.] They are subject to Aches and Pains in their Bodies, for which they have excellent Ointments and Oils, which they make and keep ready by them to cure them.

They have no professed Physicians, but all of them in general have some Skill that way, and are both Physicians and Chyrurgeons to themselves. They

The Medicines they use how made.

make their Medicines of the Barks of Trees, and the Leaves found in their Woods. With these they

A Purge.

purge and vomit themselves, and will do notable Cures upon green Wounds and sore Eyes.

For a Purge they use the Juice of a Tree called *Dallugauhah*, which is white and thick like Milk, but accounted rank Poison, tho' the Goats will greedily brouse upon this Tree without Harm. In it they soak some whole Corns of Pepper a whole Night, and then having wash'd them clean, boil them in fair Water, with a sowre Fruit called *Goraca*. This Water they drink, and it purgeth well.

A Vomit.

For a Vomit they use a Lump of Salt, which has been first steep'd in the Milk, or Juice, that issues from the Stalk of a Plant called *Warracole*, which runs out plentifully as soon as it is broken off. This Salt, which is not dissolved by lying in the Milk, they wash clean after it comes out, and boiling a little Rice and Water together, put this Salt to it, and

A strong Purge.

drink it. They have a stronger Purge, made with a Berry called *Tawpolls*, which is a little long greenish Berry, and rank Poison. They boil it with Goraca and Pepper in Water, and drink a little of it.

For Sores.

For healing and drawing of Sores they have a Leaf called *Mockinacola*. It is very like our Ground-Ivy in the Leaf, and running on the Ground, only 'tis of a brighter Green. They only take it, and clap it on the Sore.

For an Impostume in the Throat.

For an Impostume in the Throat they take the Rind of the Tree *Amaranga*, and bruising it, rub it with green Turmerick, and wrap it up in a Plantine Leaf, and bury it in hot Ashes an Hour or two, till the Fire hath qualified it. Then the Patient takes it and keeps chewing it a Day or two, swallowing the Spittle, and it will effect a Cure in 24 Hours.

For a sore Eye.

For a Sore or Hurt in the Eye they take the Juice of these 2 Herbs, *Oulcaude-cole* and *Goderacole*, and having mingled them with Woman's Milk, drop them into the Eye, and find it an excellent Remedy. It

For the Itch.

is a speedy Cure for the Itch to anoint the Party affected with it, with Coker-nut Oil, in which the Fruit of a Tree called *Codouro Giddi*, which is in Fashion like a Muscle, but bigger, hath been fry'd in Slices.

The ordinary Caudle for Women in Child bed is *Goraca* boiled in Water with Pepper and Ginger, and while they are in this Condition they use nothing else. This *Goraca* is a Fruit round like an Apple, mark'd with divers Creases along the Sides, at which it will

Garaca described.

part. When it is ripe 'tis red like Blood, both within and without, but sowre, and the chief Use of them is to boil them with other Things to make them taste sowre, which 2 or 3 Cloves of them will do to a large Vessel of any liquid Thing.

Antidotes against Poison.

As there are in this Country very many poisonous Herbs and Creatures, so the People have excellent Skill in applying effectual Antidotes for them. They are often stung with Serpents, upon which sudden Death doth follow, without speedy Help; but if the Bite be taken in time, they can certainly cure themselves, and make nothing of it, and this they can do both by Herbs and Charms. The Knowledge of these Herbs they have learned from the *Mounggoutia*, a kind of Ferret, which fights with the *Noya* whenever it meets with it. If he chanceth to be bitten by the Serpent, which is very venomous, he runs to a certain Herb, and eating it, is cured, and then goes back and fights again. The *Chingulays*, when they see these Creatures fighting, observe the Herbs he eats, and so have gotten Medicines against such Venom.

Their Skill in Charms, and the Effects of them.

They are so skilful in Charms, as that they can either cure the Stings of Serpents, or prevent them by them. The *Noya's* they can charm so, as to handle them, take them up in their Hands, put them into Baskets, yea, kiss them without Harm; as also Tygers, that they shall not hurt their Cattel, with other wild and venomous Creatures; but the *Pelongs* will not hear a Charm.

For inward Diseases they have little Help, but apply themselves to their Gods by Prayers and Supplications, or rather to the Devil, as being God's Instrument, sent to punish and afflict whom he pleaseth.

They are loth to die.

These People are very loth to die, and as much afraid of the Devil in their Sickness, whom at such Times they chiefly invoke. When any is dead, none will come near the House for many Days, lest they should be defiled. The better Sort burn the Dead, lest Worms and Maggots should eat them; but the poorer Sort make an Hole in the Woods (for they have no Burying-places) and wrapping the dead Body up in a Mat, carry it upon a Pole on their Shoul-

Shoulders, and bury it without any Ceremony, laying it on the Back, with the Head to the West, and Feet to the East, as we do.

Praying for the Dead.

Some Days after his Decease, if his Friends wish well to his Soul, they send for a Priest to the House, who spends a whole Night in praying and singing for the Saving of that Soul. The Priest must be well entertain'd and rewarded, because, he tells them, the same Bounty and Liberality that they shew to him shall the Soul of their departed Friend have in the other World; and so they give him freely such Things as they have, which he out of his good Nature never refuses, be they never so mean, and so with Drums and Trumpets sounding, he is conducted home.

Mourning for the Dead.

Their Manner of Mourning for the Dead is thus: All the Women present loose their Hair, and let it hang down, and clasping their Hands together behind their Heads, make an hideous Noise, crying and roaring as loud as they can, praising and extolling the Vertues of the Deceased, tho' he had none, and lamenting their Condition, that they must live without him, and thus they do for 3 or 4 Mornings and Evenings together; the Men in the mean time standing still and sighing. But all this Mourning of the Women is not out of Affection, but Fashion; for they are of very couragious and strong Spirits, and lay nothing much to their Hearts, and as soon as their Husbands are dead, all their Care is to get others as soon as they can, which is never very long.

The Manner of burning the Dead.

The Manner of burning the Dead, which are Persons of the greatest Quality, is performed with much Ceremony. When they are dead they lay them out, and put a Cloth upon their privy Members. Then they wash the Body, by pouring half a Dozen Pitchers of Water upon it; which done, they cover it with a Linen-Cloth, and so carry it forth to Burning; but if it be kept sometime before it be burnt, then they cut down a Tree, and hollow it like an Hog's-Trough, and having embowell'd and embalm'd the Body, put it into it, and fill it up with Pepper, and so it lies in the House till the King gives his Command to burn it; for if the Person be a Courtier, they dare not burn him till they have the King's Order, which comes not sometimes of a great while, and sometimes not at all; and therefore in such Cases, that the Body may not take up House-room, nor annoy them, they dig an Hole in the Floor of their Houses, and put it in, with the hollow Tree and all, and so cover it; and if afterwards the King commands to burn the Body, they take it up again in Obedience to the King, and burn it, otherwise there it lies. The Way of Burning is this: If the Body be not put into a Trough, or hollow Tree, it is laid upon one of his Bedsteds, which is reckon'd a great Honour among them, but if it be put in a Trough, then that Ceremony is not used. This Bedsted or Trough, with the Body in it, or upon it, they fasten with Poles, and carry it upon Men's Shoulders to the Place of Burning, which is some eminent Place in the Fields, or High-ways, or where else they please, that the Blaze may be seen a great way. There they lay it upon a Pile of Wood 2 or 3 Foot high, and then heap up more Wood upon the Corps. Over all they have a kind of Canopy built, if it be a Person of very high Quality, cover'd a top, and hung about with painted Cloth, and Bunches of Coker-nuts, and green Boughs, and so Fire is put to it. After all is burnt, they sweep the Ashes together into an Heap like a Sugar-Loaf, and hedge the Place round to keep wild Beasts from treading them about, and sow Herbs there; but if they be Noblemen of a more inferior Quality, there is only a Bower erected over them, adorn'd with Plantine Trees, and green Boughs and Bunches, as before: But if any die of the Small-Pox, be his Degree what it will, he must be buried upon Thorns, without any further Ceremony.

The Person dare not burn him till they have the King's Order.

The Manner of Burning.

The Ashes secured.

AN

An HISTORICAL

ACCOUNT

OF THE

Kingdom of SIAM:

Extracted out of

The *Voyages* of *Six Jesuits*, sent into the *Indies* by the *French* King, 1685.

AND THE

RELATION of M. *De la Loubere*, the *French* King's Envoy Extraordinary to the K. of *Siam*, 1687, 1688.

Its Geographical Description.

SIAM, which is a Kingdom lying in that Part of the *Indies*, which was anciently called, *India extra Gangem*; or, *The Indies beyond Ganges*; tho' it is placed in our Modern Maps in the 145 D. of Longitude; yet by the Observation of 2 Lunar Ecclipses it is found to be situate in the 121 Degrees. It extends Northward to the 22d D. of Lat. or thereabouts, from the Point of *Malaca*, which lyeth in the 4th Degree: So that the Extent of it from S. to N. is 340 Lgs. and from E. to W. about 180 in the widest Place. It is bounded from the E. to the N. by high Mountains, which part it from the Kingdom of *Laos*, and on the N. and W. by others, which divide it from the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Ava*. The *Indian* Sea on the E. and *Chinese* on the W. seem to make it a Peninsula. Between the 2 Ridges of Mountains, which are inhabited by a few poor, savage, but free and harmless People, lies a great Valley, which in some Places is between 80 and 100 Lgs. in Breadth, and water'd from S. to N. by a large River, which the *Siamese* call *Menam*, or, *Mother-Water*, which being encreased by the Brooks and Rivers, which descend on every Side from the Mountains, discharges it self into the Gulph of *Siam* at 3 Mouths, of which the Eastern is most commodious for Navigation.

The chief Cities of it, and Rivers.

The Country being so hot, that it is inhabited near Rivers only, or large Channels cut for that Purpose from them, our Description of it shall follow their Courses, and begin with the chiefest, and almost the

The Menam.

only River of Note, *The Menam*, on the Banks of which, at about 7 Miles Distance from the Sea, is

Bancock.

seated the City of *Bancock*, called by the *Siamese*, *Fan*. This City is famous for the large Gardens which belong to it, and are extended for 4 Lgs. towards the

City.

City of *Siam*. These Gardens supply the Citizens with such a Nourishment as they love best, viz. great plenty and abundance of Fruit. A little higher, after it has water'd several other Places of Note, as, *Me-Tac*, *Tian-Tong*, *Campeng-pet*, or *Campeng-simple*, and *Lancoceuan*, it incloses the Capital City of the Kingdom, which the *Portuguese* have named *Siam*; but the Natives are altogether unacquainted with that Name, and call it, *Crung si ayu, thaya*; and their Histories, *Crung thoeppa ppra ma ha na kon*. This City is placed in the Middle of several Islands, which render the Situation thereof very singular, and the Island whereon it stands is at present all enclosed within the Walls of it, and very spacious; but scarce the 6th part of it is inhabited, and that to the S. E. only. The rest lies desart, where the Temples only stand. The Streets thereof are large and strait, and in some Places planted with Trees, and paved with Bricks laid edge-wise. The Houses are low, and built with Wood, especially such as belong to the Natives, who upon that Account are very much exposed to the Inconveniences of excessive Heats. Most of the Streets are water'd with strait Canals, over which are many small Bridges of Hurdles or Brick, something like *Venice*, but very high and ugly. The King's Palace stands to the N. on a Canal, which embraces the City, and by turning to the E. there is a Cawsey, by which alone, as by an Isthmus, People may go out of the City without crossing the Water. The Suburbs are inhabited by Strangers, which do considerably encrease the Number of the People.

The King's Palace.

Further upward, but at a little Distance Eastward from the River, which thereabout forms divers *Meanders*, stands the City of *Louvo*. Here the King of *Siam* spends the greatest part of the Year, that he may more fully enjoy his Pleasure in Hunting.

Louvo.

Pitsanoulok, which the *Portuguese* do corruptly call *Porselouc*, is the next considerable City on the River's Banks. It has formerly had Hereditary Lords, like the City of *Me-Tac*, and Justice is still administred in the Palace of the ancient Princes. It is a City of great Commerce, and fortified with 14 Bastions.

Pitsanoulok.

About 5 or 6 Miles higher standeth the City of *Menang-fang*, or as some term it, *Menang-fan*, that is, *The City of the Tooth*, because there is kept a Tooth, which is pretended to be a Relict of *Sommona-Codom*, to whose Memory the *Siamese* do erect all their Temples, and to which not only this superstitious People, but also the Inhabitants of *Pegu* and *Laos* pay a mighty Adoration; so that it is continually full of Pilgrims, which flock thither for that End. The like Superstition prevails at a Town called *Prabat*, about 5 or 6 Lgs. to the E. N. E. of the City of *Louvo*. Here there is the Print of a Man's Foot, cut by an ill Graver upon the a Rock. This Impression is 14 or 15 Inches deep, and 5 or 6 times as long as an ordinary Man's Foot, and proportionably as broad. The *Siamese* adore it, and are perswaded that the Elephants, and other wild Beasts of their Woods, do worship it, when no Man is there. The King of *Siam* himself goes once a Year with great Pomp and Ceremony to pay his Devotion to it. They report, that 'twas the Foot of *Sommona-Codom*, who crushed the Rock down from a Mountain to a Plain; but since this Tradition doth not appear to be above 90 Years standing, 'tis probable, that the *Siamese* are but Imitators of the People of *Ceilon*, who pay the like Honours to an Ape's Tooth, and the Print of a Foot on *Adam's Peak*.

Menang-fang.

Pilgrimage to a Tooth.

Prabat.

A Mark of a Foot ador'd.

The *Tenasserim*.

The next River of Note is that which the *Europeans* call *Tenasserim*, from a City of the same Name seated on its Banks, about 15 Lgs. from the Sea. This River discharges it self by 3 Mouths into the Gulph of *Bengal*, and forms an Island, on the N. W. Point of which lies the City of *Merguy*, which has the best Port in all *India*. These Cities, like all the rest in the Kingdom of *Siam*, are only a great Number of *Cabbins*, frequently encompassed with an Inclosure of Wood, and sometimes of Stone, or Brick, but very rarely with the former; yet to express their Pride, they give them great Names, as, *Tian-Tong*, i. e. *A City of true Gold*; *Lacencevan*, i. e. *The Mountain of Heaven*, and the like. In these their Cities their Houses are commonly of Wood, and raised up some Distance from the Ground upon Pillars, because of the frequent and long Inundations of their Rivers, which for 6 Months of the Year, or more, overflow all the Country.

Merguy.

The Country of *Siam* lying almost wholly untill'd, and being cover'd for the most part with Woods, we must expect more from Nature than Art among such Barbarians, and therefore it will be proper to give an Account of the natural Product, before we give a Relation of their Husbandry and artificial Improvements, which are not unworthy of our Observation.

The Trees.

Siam produceth divers Sorts of Trees, some of which are barren, others fruitful, and both made very useful by the Inhabitants. One of their most eminent Trees is a kind of Reed, called by the *Indians*, *Mambou*; by the *Portugueſe*, *Bambou*; and by the *Siamese*, *Maipai*. The *Indians* apply it to many Uses, and *Elian* mentions it as their most ancient Nourishment; but the *Siamese* use it little at present, and that only by putting it into some of their Dishes, when it is tender, or pickling it in Vinegar, as we do Cucumbers and Samphire to preserve it. This Tree resembles the Poplar in Straitness and Tallness, but its Leaves are few, pale and longish. It is hollow, and grows in Shoots like Reeds, and at every Knot has Thorny Branches. These Trees grow very close together, so that nothing is more difficult to pass than a Forest of *Bambou's*, and so much the more, because they are very hard to cut, tho' they are easie to cleave, and therefore the *Siamese* fire them by Friction, *i. e.* rubbing a sharp Piece upon them as a Saw.

The Fame Tree.

The Copan.

The *Siamese* also report, that they have a Tree, which they call *Copai*, and the *Portugueſe*, *Arvore de Reis*, the Wood of which hath this Property, that being laid in any Person's Bed, it drives away the Gnats by the Smell. From the Branches of this Tree proceed several Fibres, which touching the Ground, take Root, and become so many new Trunks, by which means it will spread over a considerable Breadth of Ground, and form a kind of Labarinth; but these Trees are not so common in *Siam*, as in the other Parts of the *Indies*.

Trees for several Uses.

The *Siamese* have other Trees more useful in great Plenty. From one Sort of them they gather Cotton, which may be spun for Cloathing, and another Sort yields them *Capoc*, which is a kind of Cotton, but so short, that it serves as Down for Beds. From certain Trees they extract several Oils, which they mix in their Cements to make them more binding, and a Wall plaister'd with them is whiter, and bears as good a Polish as Marble; and a Basin made of one of these Cements preserves Water better than glaz'd Earth. A kind of Trees very common in their Woods sends forth that Gum, which composes the Body of that excellent Varnish, which we see on several Works of *Japan* and *China*. The *Portugueſe* call this Gum *Cheyram*.

Paper how made.

The *Siamese* make Paper of the Bark of a Tree, called *Tom-coi*, which they pound for that End, as we do old Rags, but these Papers have not the Evenness, Substance and Whiteness that ours in *Europe* have. They write on them with *China* Ink. They very often black them, and then they write on them with a kind of white Earth like our *Crayons*.

Their Books.

Their Books are one large long Leaf, written from the Top to the Bottom, and folded up in Pleats like a Fan. The *Talapoins* write their Prayers upon the Leaves of a Tree like our Palm, which they call *Tan*, with a *Styletto*, or Pin.

Trees for Timber and Building.

The *Siamese* have also Timber proper for the Building of Ships, and furnishing them with Masts. The Wood of the Tree, which the *Europeans* call *Wood-Mary*, is excellent to make the Ribs of Ships, because it will not cleave, though never so many Wedges be put into it. They have other Woods useful for building Houses, and Wainscotting, of which there is one resembling Fir for Lightness and Colour, which will take the Carver's Chizzel any Way. The *Brow*, or green Bark of the Coco-Tree make the Cordage for their Ships. But above all, the *Siamese* have Trees so high and strait, that one of them is sufficient to make a Boat, or *Balon*, as the *Portugueſe* call it, between 16 and 20 Fathom long, only by hollowing it with Fire. They have *Cinnamon-Trees*, inferior indeed to those of the Island of *Ceilon*, but better than any other. They have also the *Sapan*, and other Woods proper for Dying. The Wood *Aquila*, or Aloes, grows also among them, and tho', indeed, it be not so good as the *Calamba* of *Cachin-china*, yet it is better than the *Aquila* of other Countries. 'Tis, indeed, hard to find, because 'tis only certain rotten Places in Trees of a certain Kind, and every Tree of that Species has them not, and those that have, have it not in the same Place, yet it is pretty plentiful.

Cinnamon.

Aloes.

The Fruit-Trees of *Siam* are of several Sorts. The Melons of *Siam* are not true Melons, but the Fruit of a Tree. The Figs, which the *Siamese* call, *Clouey-ngouan-tchang*, i. e. Elephants Trunks, are of the Size and Shape of a Sausage. The Skin of them, which grows Yellow, and spotted with Black when it is ripe, is easily separated from its soft and clammy Pulp, which makes them resemble our Figs, but it has no Vacuity in the Middle, nor Kernels, as ours have. Its Taste is strong, and hath something of Sweetness and Sharpness in it, but is nothing so good as ours.

Fruits.

The *Banana's*, which they call *Clouey-ngaa-tchang*, or Elephant's-Tooth, is almost the same thing with the Fig, save that it is greener and longer, hath flat Sides, which are join'd in a Point at both Ends. These Fruits hang like Nose-gays, or rather Bunches of Grapes upon the Tops of the Trunks of the Trees that bear them. They are not so delicate raw, but being soften'd in the Fire, they acquire the Taste of our Pepins, when they are ripe.

Banana's.

The *Goyave*, which the *Siamese* call *Louc-kiac*, is about the Size of a middling Apple. Its Skin is of a grayish Green, like that of some Pears, and contains a Pulp like a Citron, but not so white. Its Taste at first is like that of a Strawberry, but leaves a Bitterness behind it.

Goyave.

The *Jacks*, in *Siamese*, *Ca-nown*, are of the Shape of a large Melon. Under a grayish Skin, fashion'd like Chagrin, they have a very great Number of Kernels or Stones, near as big as a Pigeon's Egg, which being boil'd or broil'd, resemble our Chesnuts in Consistence, but are more delicate in the Taste. They are included in a Pulp, which is yellow, juicy, clammy and glutinous, of a sweet Taste and Smell, but it can only be suck'd out.

Jacks.

They have a Fruit called *Mouſſida*, which is like our Plumbs, but have the Pulp and Taste of a Medlar, but with bigger and flatter Stones.

Mouſſida.

Their *Mancous* is of the Size and Shape of an *Ox-Heart*, the Skin thin, and the Fruit soft, because the Substance is only a kind of white Cream of an agreeable Taste.

Mancous.

The *Durion*, in *Siamese*, *Tourrion*, is of the Size of our Melons, and hath a prickly Coat like our Chesnuts. It includes several Stones as big as Eggs, in which is contain'd all that is eatable. The fewer the Stones are, the more pleasant the Fruit; but there are never less than 3.

Durion.

The *Mango*, in *Siamese*, *Ma-mouan*, hath a Flavour much like the Peach or Apricock, but in the End is stronger, and less agreeable. They are of the Bigness of a Child's Hand, flat and oval, and pointed at both Ends like our Almonds; the Skin is yellow Flesh like our Peach, but must be suck'd from the Stone. The *Mangouſtan* is said to excel the *Mango*.

Mango.

Mangouſtan.

The *Siamese* have some sharp Fruits, which quench the Thirst, and are upon that Account very agreeable; they are as small as Plumbs, and have a Stone included within a white Pulp, which easily melts in the Mouth.

The *Tamarind-Tree* hath a very large Leaf, resembling that of Pimpernel, the Fruit is sharp, and is enclosed in a Shell like an Almond, and in some 'tis included in a Cod.

Tamarind.

Sugar-Canes.

Siam also abounds with Sugar-Canes, and wants not Pepper-Trees, because the King of *Siam* hath lately caused 100000 of them to be planted in his Country. 'Tis a Plant which is supported like the Vine, and the Pepper hangs upon it on little Bunches like Currants.

The Pepper-Tree.

The

Anana's. The *Anana*, in *Siamese*, *Saparot*, hath a white Meat, and a Taste like our Peaches: 'Tis like a Pine-Apple, and yellow when it is ripe: The Plant which produceth it bears it upon the Top of the Stalk, which is 3 Foot high. Every Plant bears but one, and no more than one; but sometimes from the Body of this Fruit, and from the Sides, there grows like Wens one or two other little *Anana's*.

The Coco. The *Coco*, in *Siamese*, *Ma-praou*, is a kind of Filbert but much bigger. In the Wood of the Coco-Tree is a very pleasant Liquor, of which 'tis so full, that it spurts out a great Way when 'tis pierced; but it congeals as the Fruit ripens. The Bark is an Inch thick, and full of Fibres, of which Cords are made. The Fruit has a good Taste.

Ginseng. But of all the Plants of the *East* the *Ginseng* is the most esteem'd; the best grows in *China*, but *Siam* doth not want it. It is of a yellow Colour, and the Flesh or Pulp of it is smooth, having little Threads like Hair. The Root grows in the shady Valleys, and some of them are found in the Shape of a Man. The *Chinese* Physicians, who make most Use of it, affirm, that it is a Sovereign Remedy for cleansing the Blood, and recruiting the Strength that hath been weaken'd by long Sickness; That he that has this Root in his Mouth will hold out at Labour as long again as he that hath it not. For preparing of it they put Water into a Cup, and having made it boil well, they throw into it the *Ginseng* cut into small Bits, and covering it up close, let it stand and infuse, till the Water becomes Lukewarm, and then they drink it in a Morning fasting, and it worketh great Effects in the former Respects, but is never to be taken in Distempers caused by any internal Heat, nor for Coughs, or spitting of Blood. Corpulent and white People may take more than meagre and swarthy; but none takes more than the Weight of a Shilling.

The Mines of Gold. But the greatest Riches of *Siam* lies in the Bowels of the Earth, there being no Country in greater Reputation for Mines than this. The great Quantity of Gold which appears in their Temples, where are not only innumerable Idols, made of this rich Mettal, but the Wainscot and Roofs are adorn'd with it, shew that they have had large Mines, from whence it was extracted, tho' the King that now reigns hath not been able to find any, tho' he employ'd several *Europeans* to search them out. They, after much Pains, found some mean Copper-Mines, mix'd with small Quantities of Gold and Silver, which yielding little or no Gold, the King caused some Gold to be added to it, which has made a valuable Mettal, called *Tambac*. As for Tin and Lead the *Siamese* have long since discovered very plentiful Mines, from which they have gotten a considerable Revenue; for tho' tis soft and badly purified, as the common Tea-Boxes which are brought from that Country do prove, yet 'tis sold throughout all *India*. To render it harder and whiter, they mix it with a Mineral called *Cadmia*, but this makes it more brittle. This white Tin they call *Tutinaque*. *Tin, Lead.*

Loadstone, Agates, Saphires. Near the City *Louvo* there is a Mountain of Loadstone, and there are curious Agates and Saphires found in several of the Mountains dispersed up and down the Kingdom. Some private Persons lately have discovered some Diamonds, and gave them to the King's Officers, but not meeting with a suitable Encouragement and Recompence, they retir'd to *Pegu*. Near the City of *Campeng-pet* there are famous Mines of excellent Steel, of which the Inhabitants do forge Arms after their Fashion, as Sabres, Poniards and Knives, which last, called *Pen*, are not reckon'd Arms, tho' they may be used for such, the Blades of them being 4 Fingers broad, and a Foot long. They have Iron-Mines, but they are bad Forge-men, and so make little Advantage of them, for their Anchors for their Galleys are of Wood, and they have neither Pins, nor Needles, nor Nails, nor Chizzels, nor Saws. Their Padlocks they have from *Japan*, and other Instruments they use not. Mr. *Vincent*, a *French* Physician, who arriving at *Siam*, was detained by the King of that Country to inspect the Work in his Mines, because he understood Mathematicks and Chymistry, discovered many rich Mines in a little time, *viz.* a Mine of very good Steel on the Top of a Mountain, another of Chrystal, and others of Antimony, Emeralds, white Marble, and one of Gold, which, so far as he could judge without Trial, was very rich, but he would not shew it to the Natives. *Chrystals, Antimony, Emeralds, Marble, and Gold.*

Besides these inanimate Productions, *Siam* affords abundance of Animals of all Sorts, both by Land and Water, in the Air and Earth. The Mountains and Forests of *Siam* are stored with Plenty of wild Beasts, as Elephants, Rhinoceros's, Tygers, Deer, and many other Kinds: Nor do they want tame Beasts as Oxen, Cows, Buffalo's, Goats, Sheep, Horses, Hogs, and the like. Of all the wild Beasts they value the Elephant the most, because he is so serviceable to them. Deer, which to a People greedy or covetous of Dainties would be highest prized for his delicious Flesh, is valued here only for the poor Plunder of his Skin, because they eat little Flesh. *Of their Beasts, their Use and Kinds.*

These People have naturally so great an Esteem for Elephants, that they are perswaded, that an Animal so noble, so strong, and so docile, can be animated only with an illustrious Soul, which has formerly been in the Body of some Prince, or some Great Person; for they say, an Elephant is sensible of Grandeur, he loves a great House, many Grooms to attend him, and some Females for his Mistresses, and without this State he will afflict himself, as not sufficiently regarded, and if he has committed a Fault, the most heavy Punishment that can be inflicted on him, is to deprive him of his State and Attendance. Some of these Elephants they keep partly for State, and partly for Service, both in War and Peace, to ride on and oppose their Enemies. The King of *Siam* hath many Hundreds in divers Cities of his Kingdom, which are chiefly kept for War, tho' they are used upon other Occasions. The best and chiefest of these, are those called *Elephants of Name*, because the King gives them honourable Names, as Marks of his Favour, as he doth to his Great Men. These are of very stately and magnificent Bodies, have Teeth usually of an extraordinary Length and Beauty, which reach above 4 Foot out of the Mouth of some of them, and at certain Distances are adorn'd with Rings of Silver, Gold and Copper. But of all Elephants the white one is highest esteem'd, not only for the Rarity, but Dignity, for they say, *He is the King of the Elephants*. They are not quite white, but of a kind of Flesh Colour, called *Peuak*. The King of *Siam* keeps one of these always in his Palace, which is said to be near 300 Years old, and is attended by divers *Mandarins*. Next to the white Elephant the black is in greatest Esteem, because they are likewise very rare, and they dye some of this Colour, when they are not naturally black enough. *Elephants of Name.* *The White Elephants.*

Horses they have, but not in very great Numbers, and those not so serviceable as they might be, because they know not well how to manage them. *Horses.*

Goats and Sheep here are very scarce, small and not over good; they are to be bought only of the *Moors*, who, because they eat them themselves, part with them unwillingly, and at dear Rates. The King of *Siam* has some nourish'd for himself. *Goats and Sheep.*

The Ox and Buffalo they use for the Tilling of their Land, and sell the Cows, but more to breed on for the Plough than to eat, for they are all but bad Meat.

Swines Flesh is eat only when it is young, for tho' their Pigs are small, and so fat usually, that they are distasteful, yet the Flesh of them is the wholsomest that can be eaten in most of the Countries of the *Torrid Zone*, and is given to sick Persons. The Pigs are excellent also at Sea, when they eat Bisket.

Their Sheep do frequently taste of the Wool, because they eat it one from another, as Poultrey eat their Feathers.

All sorts of Volatiles do multiply extreamly at *Siam*, for the very Heat of the Climate will almost hatch their Eggs alone; yet 'twill appear, perhaps, something strange and singular to us (altho' it be common to *Brasil*, and, perhaps, all other hot Countries) that almost all their Birds are beautiful to the Eyes, but very unpleasant to the Ear. There are several Sorts that imitate the Voice, and all have some Cry, but no wrabbling Note or sweet Singing. Peacocks and Pigeons are wild, and all Partridges are gray. They have great Plenty of Francolins and excellent Snipes. Their Turtle-Doves have fine Variegated Feathers, which, as also their Parrots, and divers other small Birds, are very good to eat. They have many of the Birds which we have in *Europe*, as Sparrows, Crows and Vultures. The Sparrows do boldly enter into their Chambers, and there pick up the little Insects, with which they swarm. Crows and Vultures are very plentiful, and very familiar, because no Person frights them, and the People feed them out of Charity, for they give them their Children which die *Of their Birds.* *No singing Birds.* *Peacocks and Pigeons.* *Vultures, Crows and Sparrows.*

Ducks.

before 3 or 4 Years old; but they have no Nightingales or Canary-Birds. Ducks are found here plentifully; so that Ducks are worth but a Crown a Dozen.

Wild Fowl.

Wild-Fowl is secure among the *Siamese*, for they neither love to kill them themselves, nor hinder their Liberty. They hate the Dogs that take them, and the Height of their Herbage and the Thickness of their Woods do render the Chace difficult; yet the *Moors* do exceedingly divert themselves in the Flight of Falcons, which come to them from *Persia*.

Wild Birds.

In fine, All the wild Birds have most lovely Feathers, and that of various Colours, as Red, Yellow, Blue and Green, and that in great Numbers; for the *Siamese* believing the Transmigration of Souls into other Bodies, kill no Animals, for fear, as they say, of driving out from thence the Souls of their Relations, which may very well be lodged there.

But of all the Birds that delight the Sight, nothing can be pleasanter than the vast Number of *Criel-Herons*, which swarm upon Trees, and at a Distance one would take them for their Blossoms; for the *Criel-Heron* is a Fowl shaped like a common Heron, but much less; it is of a neat Proportion of Body, and hath Feathers as white as Snow; it hath Tops or Tufts upon the Head, Back and Belly, in which its chief Beauty consists, and which render it extraordinary pretty: The White of these Birds mingled with the Green of the Trees, on which they set in Flocks, makes the most lovely Landship imaginable. They have 2 sorts of Hens, some of them are like ours in *Europe*, others have the Skin and Comb black, but the Flesh and Bones white, and when these black Hens are boiled, it is impossible to distinguish them from the white Ones, either by the Taste or Colour, although some People fancy the Black to be generally the best.

Tho' the long Inundations in *Siam* fatten the Land, and destroy many Insects, yet they leave no small Numbers, which mightily incommode the Inhabitants, Nature instructing all the Animals of that Country to avoid the Approaches of the Water; for not only those Birds, which perch not on the Trees in other Countries, as Patridges and Pigeons perch here, but Pismires doubly prudent, do here make their Nests, and provide their Magazines in Trees. The white Ants among other Ravages, which they make, do pierce Books thro' and thro', so that the Lovers of Books to preserve them, are forced to varnish their Covers and Edges with a little *Cheyram*, to secure 'em from their biting: And the Books themselves are made more agreeable, and not a-whit less useful, for it hinders them not from opening, and not being mingled with any thing that colours it, it hath the same Lustre as the Glasses wherewith we cover Pictures in Miniature.

Maringouins.

The *Maringouins*, or Mosketo's are of the same Nature with our Gnats, but as they are more numerous, so the Heat of the Climate gives them so much Strength, that they will sting thro' Peoples Cloaths, and leave the Mark a long time behind them. The *Siamese*, tho' they go naked, feel not the Inconvenience of them that Strangers do, because they are very dextrous at killing them, where-ever they feel them.

The *Millepede*, or Palmer-worm, is known at *Siam*, as well as in the *American* Islands: This Insect is so called, because it hath a great Number of Feet all along its Body, all very short in Proportion to its Length, which is about 5 or 6 Inches: What it has most singular is, that besides the Scales, which resemble Rings, which cover its Body, and which insert themselves one into another in its Motions, it pinches equally with its Head and Tail; but its Sting, tho' it is painful, is not mortal: The *Siamese* say, that this Insect has 2 Heads at each End of its Body, and that it guides it self 6 Months in the Year with the one, and six Months with the other.

They have a Lizzard, which they call *Tocquay*, of which they relate this wonderful Story: They imagine, that this Animal feeling his Liver grow too big, makes a Cry, for which he has gotten the Name of a *Tocquay*, and this he doth to call another Insect to his Succour; and that this other Insect entering into his Body at his Mouth, eats the Overplus of his Liver, and after this repast, returns out of the *Tocquay*'s Body by the same Way he entred in.

Fire-flies.

The *Fire-flies* is an admirable Insect: Their Wings are bright and shining like Fire, and they have Four Wings like Locusts, of which Two only are seen when they are at Repose, the other Two they spread out only when they are flying: They are very numerous, and the Trees by the River-sides are covered over with them; and tho' in the Day-time their Light appears little, yet in the Night, when it is most pleasant sailing in those hot Rivers, they are a most delicious and admirable Sight; for then the Branches of the Trees being covered with them, look as if they were set thick with innumerable Lights, which the Reflexion of the Water, especially if it be calm and smooth, infinitely multiplieth. These are some of the most remarkable Insects of *Siam*: There are innumerable others, which if exactly described would take up Volumes, but they are as if they were not, because no Man among them is inquisitive enough to search into their Natures, and so 'tis not possible for Strangers to get so much as their Names; yet this must not be forgotten, that as there are not fewer in the River and Gulph than on the Land, so those in the River are very dangerous, which is the Reason that the rich Men do bathe themselves only in Houses of *Bambou*.

By the Water-side also there are great Numbers of Monkeys and Sapajou's, which clamber up the Trees, and go together in Troops, and tho' we cannot properly reckon them Insects, yet they are as useless a Vermin. And thus having finished the Relation of Animals, 'twill be proper to proceed to the Productions of Art by Husbandry, Gardening, and other Tillage.

The Land it self is very capable of Improvement, and very fertile to encourage Husbandry, for 'tis very difficult to find a Stone in it, and it seems to be nothing else but a clayish Earth or Mud, which the Rain-Waters have wash'd from the Mountains, or frequent Inundations of the Rivers have lodg'd upon it. These Inundations fatten the Soil so extreamly, destroy Insects, and preserve the Country so much from Drought, and other Inconveniences, which produce Famine and Scarceness in the other Parts of the *Indies*, that this Kingdom becomes thereby the Nourisher of many others.

Rice is the principal Harvest of the *Siamese*, and their best Nourishment, for it refresheth and fattens. To produce it they plow their Land with Oxen or Buffalo's, which they guide with a Rope put thro' an Hole made in the Cartilage that parts their Nostrils, and fasten'd to the Plough-Beam. Their Plough is plain and without Wheels, consisting of a long Beam, a crooked Piece for the Handle, and a short Piece fasten'd underneath with Leather-Thongs, which bears the Share. They do not give many Forms to their Land, but till them and sow them when the Rains have sufficiently softened them, and gather in their Harvest when the Waters are retired, and sometime when they are remaining on the Ground, by Boats; for the Land which is overflow'd is good for Rice, and 'tis said, the Ear of it always stands above the Water; so that if the Water encreases a Foot in 24 Hours, the Rice will grow as much, which seems incredible. Rice is also sown in divers other Cantons of the Kingdom, where the Rivers do not overflow, and this is more substantial, better relish'd, and will keep longer than the other; but this they are forced to transplant into a water'd Land to yield a Crop, and to that End they that live in these Countries have their high Cisterns, or large Ditches of Rain-Water in the Fields. They tread their Rice from its Husks by large Beasts, and when it is trodden out they let it fall from a very high Place, that the Wind may carry away the Chaff, and because the Rice hath naturally an hard Skin like Spelt, they bruise it in a great Wooden Mortar, or Hand-Mill, to make it fit to eat.

On some of the Lands, which are high enough to avoid the Inundation, there grows Wheat, which they water either with Watering-Pots, or by overflowing it, as they do their Rice, but either upon the Account of the Care or Expence, or because the Rice sufficeth better for common Use, there is little sown, but what may supply the King's Table, and that more out of Curiosity than real Gusto, for it makes there a dry Bread not so good as Rice. They sow also a sort of Pease, but different from ours.

Thir Land would bear a Crops a Year, as well as other Parts of *India*, but that the Inundations oblige them to take but one.

The *Siamese* are not less addicted to the Manuring of Gardens, than the Plowing of arable Land, in which they raise Herbs, Pulse and Roots, but all for the most part different from ours. Of their Roots the Potato is in greatest Esteem. It is of the Form and Size almost of

of a Parſnep, and the Inſide thereof is ſometimes white, ſometimes red, and ſometimes purple, and being roaſted in the Aſhes, they eat like Cheſnuts. They are often eaten inſtead of Bread. They have large Muſhrooms, but few of them, and thoſe ill taſted. They have plenty of Cucumbers, which they eat raw, as moſt of the Eaſtern People do, and doubtleſs they muſt be wholſomer than ours, becauſe they do not harden them with Vinegar. They account them a kind of Water-Melons. Their Chibbolds, Garlick and Raddiſhes have a ſweeter Taſte than ours, becauſe their Rankneſs is taken away by the great Heat. Their Citrons, which they call *Macreus*, are ſmall, full of Juice, and very ſowre, but the Skin is very ſmooth. The Lemmons which their Gardens produce are all ſowre, and none ſweet; but on the contrary, their Oranges and Pomegranates are all ſweet, except we will take the *Pampelnouſes*, as the *Siameſe* themſelves do, and call them *Soum-o*, for Oranges, becauſe they have the ſame Taſte and Shape, tho' they are as big as Melons, and have not much Juice. Among the ſweet Oranges, the beſt have the Peel very green and rough; they call them *Soum-keou*, i.e. Chryſtal-Oranges; not that they are tranſparent, but that they are of high Value, as Chryſtal is with them. They give of theſe to their Sick, and ſell them very dear, when the Seaſon is paſt.

But the Tree which they chiefly nouriſh is the *Arequier*, or *Areca-Tree*, which, as all the Trees which are called *Palmites*, hath no Branches, but great, long and broad Leaves on the Top only, like a Palm-Tree. They bear a Fruit which the *Indians* call *Areca*, but the *Siameſe*, *Plou*, which is a kind of great Acron, yet without the Wooden Cup, in which our Acron grows. When this Fruit is tender it has a grayiſh Subſtance in the midſt as ſoft as Pap, but as it ripens it grows yellower and harder. Its Taſte is always bitter and ſavoury. The *Siameſe* cut it into 4 Parts with a Knife, and chew a Piece of it with a Leaf reſembling Ivy, called by the *Europeans*, *Betel*, but by the *Siameſe*, *Mak*, in which they wrap it up with a ſmall Quantity of Lime, made of Cockle Shells, and artificially redded, and ſo put it into their Mouths. This they continually chew. The *Areca*, when it is tender, will wholly conſume in the Mouth, but the dry always leaves ſome Remains. The Effect of this Betel, as the *Indians* certainly believe, is to carry from the Gums whatever may prejudice them, and to ſtrengthen the Stomach, either by ſwallowing the Juice, or by diſcharging all ſuperfluous Moiſture by Spitting, and this may be ſome Reaſon why the *Siameſe* never have a ſtinking Breath. Beſides theſe Effects, the *Areca* and *Betel* ſet a Vermilian Tincture on the Lips, which as it is pleaſing to them, ſo to take away the ill Effect, which is, that it blackens the Teeth, and makes them a bad Sight, they make their Teeth quite black with the Juice of Coco-Root. Theſe Garden-Fruits, with ſuch other as are produced naturally in their Woods, ſupply the *Siameſe* continually with Food moſt grateful to them; for they eſteem Fruit better than all other Things, and will eat it always, if they can have it.

As to the Original of the *Siameſe*, it is very difficult to judge, whether they are only a ſingle People, directly deſcending from the firſt Inhabitants of *Siam*, or whether in Proceſs of Time ſome other Nation has not ſettled there, notwithſtanding the firſt Inhabitants. The Hiſtory of the *Siameſe* is ſo full of Fables, that nothing of Truth can be gathered from it. It is moſt probable from the Nature of the Language, and the Situation of the Country, which lies ſo extreamly low, and ſubject to many Inconveniences, that ſcarce any People could chuſe it for an Habitation, but it was peopled by little and little from the adjacent Nations, viz. *China*, *Tonquin*, *Cochin-China*, and other States of the *Eaſt*; for their vulgar Language is very like theirs in the Simplicity of it, and they are near of the ſame Genius, Shape, and Figure of Face and Complexion. Nevertheleſs, it is certain that the *Siameſe* Blood is very much mix'd with that of Foreigners, who have either fled thither for Safety out of many other Parts of *India* from the Wars that were common among them, or went thither upon the Account of Trade from *Japan*, and other Parts of *Aſia*. The *Siameſe* themſelves ſay, that in *Siam* there are 40 different Nations, which affected Number, tho' it favours much of *Indian* Vanity; yet amounts at leaſt to thus much, that they look upon themſelves to be a Collection of various People from divers Parts of *India*, and other Parts of the World, and then no Wonder if we meet with little elſe but Barbarity from the Dregs of ſo many People, as we ſhall obſerve in the general and particular Survey of their Manners and Cuſtoms.

They have accuſtomed themſelves from their Infancy almoſt to an entire Nakedneſs: They go with their Feet and Head bear, and for Decency only gird their Reins and Thighs down to their Knees with a Piece of painted Cloth, about a Ells and an Half long, which the *Portugueſe* call a *Pagne*; but the better Sort have it ſometimes of Silk, either plain, or embroider'd with a Border of Gold and Silver, but theſe are preſented them by the King.

1. A *Pagne*.

The *Mandarins*, or Great Officers, wear, beſides the *Pagne*, a Muſlin-Shirt, which is as their Veſt, and when they meet with a *Mandarin* of greater Dignity, they pluck it off, and wrap it about their Middle to expreſs their Readineſs to ſerve him. Theſe Shirts have no Neck-band, but are open before upon the Stomachs; the Sleeves hang down almoſt to their Wriſts, being about a Foot wide, and without any Pleats either above or below; but the Body is ſo ſtrait, that it cannot ſlide over the *Pagne*, but ſits in Wrinkles above it.

3. A Mantle or Scarf.

In Winter they put over their Shoulders a Breadth of Stuff, or painted Cloth, either like a Mantle, or a Scarf, winding the Ends of it very neatly about their Arms. But the King of *Siam*, wears a Veſt of ſome excellent Sattin, brocaded with ſtrait Sleeves, that reach down to his Wriſt, and as we cloath our ſelves againſt the Cold under our Waſte-coats, ſo he puts this Veſt under the Shirt before deſcrib'd, and adorns it with Lace or *European* Point. No *Siameſe* may wear this ſort of Veſt, unleſs the King himſelf preſents them with it, as he ſometimes does his moſt conſiderable Officers.

4. A red Muſlin-Veſt.

Tis a general Cuſtom at *Siam*, that the King and all his Retinue in War or Hunting are cloathed in Red, and upon this Account the King gives all his Soldiers, when they go to War, a Veſt of red Muſlin. This Garment reaches to the Knees, and has 8 or 10 Buttons before; the Sleves are wide, but without Ornament, and reach no further than the Elbow: They put it on under their Arms. This Garment they wear alſo upon any Days of Ceremony, as the Entry of an Ambaſſador, or the like.

5. A white Cap.

The King of *Siam* and his Officers uſe a white, long and painted Cap, which is a kind of Coif of Ceremony. The King's is adorn'd with a Circle or Crown of precious Stones, and the Officers with divers Circles of Gold, Silver and Vermilion-Gilt, to diſtinguiſh their Dignity, and ſometimes they wear them without any Ornament. The Officers wear them only before the King, or on their Tribunals, or at ſome Ceremony. They are tied under the Chin, and ſo cannot be pull'd off to ſalute any Perſon.

6. Slippers.

The *Moors* have introduced among them the Uſe of *Babouches*, or Slippers, but they never wear them before the King, or any Superior, out of Reverence, nor in their own or others Houſes, becauſe they will not dirty them.

7. Hats.

They eſteem of Hats for Travelling, and by the King's Order they are made of all Colours, and in the Shape of his Bonnet; but few Perſons wear them, becauſe few People cover their Heads againſt the Heat of the Sun, unleſs it be on the River, where the Reflexion is moſt troubleſome, and then they do it uſually with a Linen-Cloth.

Womens Cloathing.

The Difference of the Womens Habit from the Mens is, that they faſtening their *Pagne* lengthwiſe round about their Bodies, let it fall down broadwiſe half way their Legs, ſomething like a ſtrait Petticoat, whereas the Men pull up one of the Ends between their Legs, and putting it in at the Girdle, form a kind of Breeches.

1. A *Pagne*.

8. Scarf.

The Women have no Muſlin-Shifts, but go all naked to the Waſte, only the richer Sort do conſtantly wear a Scarf, which they do ſometimes wrap about their Arms at both Ends; but the beſt way of wearing them is to put them ſingle over their Boſom before, and let the Ends hang down flying behind. The Women of Quality do greatly eſteem the black *Pagnes*, and their Scarf is frequently of plain white Muſlin.

Their Modeſty.

The Men and Women of this Country, notwithſtanding they go ſo much naked, are very modeſt, and will not endure that thoſe Parts that ought to be covered ſhould be ſeen. Upon this Account they complain'd of certain *French* Men, for going naked into the River; and as they never uncover them for Chaſtiſement, but beat ſuch as deſerve Puniſhment with Clubs, that they may be felt thro' their Cloths,

ſo

so they will not lie down, nor wash without their *Pagne*, tho' the Women, as well as Men, do often bathe themselves, and many of them swim excellently well. Nor is the Modesty of their Eyes greater than that of their Ears; for as they will not permit those immodest Porcelane Figures and Paintings, which come from *China*; so their Laws prohibit all impure and bawdy Songs, and they are so strict Observers of them, that they will not bear with them.

Rings. They wear Rings on their 3 last Fingers on each Hand, and 'tis their Fashion to put on as many as they can possibly keep on.

Pendants. The Women and Children of both Sexes wear Pendants of Gold, Silver, or Vermilion-Gilt, in the Shape of a Pear, and the Children of good Families, till they are 6 or 7 Years old, wear Bracelets of the same Matter on their Arms or Legs indifferently, but not after.

Their Character and Mien. The *Siamese* are rather small than great, and their Bodies are very well proportion'd, which may be attributed to their not Swaddling their Infants, because Nature is impatient of the Government or Contradiction of Art. 'Tis true, that the Breasts of the Women do not uphold themselves, but fall down to to their Navel; but their Bodies are very well proportion'd, and their Husbands are not offended with their hanging Breasts thro' Custom.

Their Face. The Shape of their Faces, as well of Men as Women, is longish, broad, and high at the Cheek-Bones, and their Foreheads contract and terminate almost as much in a Point as their Chin.

Eyes. Their Eyes are small, and slit a little upwards; they are not very brisk, but the White is generally yellowish. Their Jaws are hollowish, because of the Highness of their Cheek-Bones; their Mouth large, their Lips thick and pale, and their Teeth black; their Complexion is coarse, mix'd with Brown and Red.

The Women use no Paint or Patches, but the Great Men blue their lower Parts more or less according to their Dignity, a Lord on his Legs only, but the King up to the Pit of his Stomach.

Large Ears. Their Noses are short, and round at the End, and their Ears are bigger than ours, and the larger they are the more they esteem them, according to the Fancy of all the Eastern People, who will some of them pull down their Ears to their Shoulders.

Their Hair is black, thick and lank, and both Sexes wear it so short, that all round the Head it reaches only to the Top of the Ears, being shaved close all underneath, according to the Fashion used among them, and most pleasing to them. The Women raise it a little before, and some especially, the *Pequins*, let it grow behind, that they may braid it. The Young and Unmarried cut it very close on the Crown of the Head, and then pull off a small Circle of Hair about the Thickness of 2 Crown Pieces, and let the Hair underneath grow down to their Shoulders.

Perfumes. They perfume themselves in several Places of their Body. On their Lips they put a sort of perfum'd Pomatum, which makes them appear much paler than they naturally are.

Their Bathing. They bathe themselves 3 or 4 times a Day, and are so neat, as not to make any Visits of Consequence without Bathing, and in this Case they make a white Spot on the Top of their Breasts with a Piece of Chalk, to shew that they came from the Bath. They bathe themselves either by going into the Water, or having Water poured on their Bodies with Ladles. It needs not be warm'd, no not in Winter, because 'tis always naturally hot. They black their Teeth, wash their Hair with Water and sweet Oils, but use no Powder; they comb themselves and pluck their Beard, tho' they have naturally little; but they cut not their

Long Nails. Nails, being satisfied to keep them neat; yea, they count long Nails a Beauty, as appears from the Usage of certain professed Dancers, who put on very long Copper-Nails for Ornament, though they appear like Harpyes.

The Houses of the *Siamese*. As the *Siamese* are plain in their Habits, so also in their Houses, Furniture and Food, rich in Poverty, because they are contented with a little. Their Houses are small, but encompassed with Ground of a pretty large Breadth. The Floors, Walls and Roofs of them are made of Hurdles of cleft *Bambou*. They are set upon Piles of the same Wood as big as one's Leg, 13 Foot above Ground to avoid the Inundations of their Rivers, which sometimes rise so high. They ascend up to them by Ladders made of *Bambou*, which are fasten'd to them as the Ladder to a Wind-Mill.

Stables. Their Stables also are raised as high as their Houses, and their Cattel go up on Hurdles of *Bambou* to them. They set their Houses alone for Privacy, because all Things done in their Families would be discernible thro' their thin Walls. Their Hearth or Chimney is a Basket full of Earth, supported with 3 Legs; but they always make their Fires in their Courts, and not in their Houses.

No Inns. There no Inns in *Siam*, nor in any State of *Asia*; but in *Turkey*, *Persia* and *Mogul* there are *Caravansera's*, *i. e.* Publick Buildings without Furniture for Travellers, in which the Caravans shelter themselves, and where every one eats and lies according to the Provisions and Conveniences he brings with him; and such a Building there is in the Road from *Siam* to *Louvo*, where the King sometimes refreshes himself in his Travels.

Brick Houses. At *Bancoc*, *Siam* and *Louvo* some *Europeans*, *Chinese* and *Moors* have built Houses of Brick, and the King of *Siam* has attempted to do the like for Ambassadors; but they are not finish'd. Their Great Officers at Court have Timber-Houses, which are said to be great Armories, but only the Master of the House, his principal Wife and their Children are lodged in it. All his other Wives, with their Children, and the Slaves with their Families, have their several Apartments within the same Inclosure of *Bambou*.

The King's Palace. All their Houses are but one Story high, no not so much as their King's Palace excepted, and this is an Argument that they count this sort of Building most commodious both for Room, and for their slight Materials.

Pagods, Idol-Temple. The Palaces of *Siam* and *Louvo*, and several Pagods and Temples are built with Brick, but the Palaces are but one Story, and the Pagods are not raised proportionable to their Bigness. They are of the Shape of our Chapels, but without Ceilings, the Spars which bear up the Tiles being varnished with Red, interspersed with some Streaks of Gold. The King's Palace is still of Wood, and this proves Brick-Building but a late Invention introduced by some *Europeans*. They have no outward Ornament for their Palaces or Temples, but in the Roofs, which they cover with ordinary Tin, which they call *Cabin*, and with Tiles varnish'd with Yellow, as it is in the King of *China*'s Palace; but tho' there appears little or no Gilding in the King of *Siam*'s Palace, they call it, *Praffat-Tang*, i. e. The Golden Palace, according to their Custom of giving pompous Names to every thing they value. Their Stairs are mean, and Gates low.

The Dignity of the Houses. That which among them makes the real Dignity of their Houses is, that tho' there is no more than one Story, yet they are not level neither in the Foundation nor Roof; for in the Palace the King and Ladies Apartment is higher than all the rest, and the nearer any Apartment is to his, the higher 'tis in respect of another, which is further distant; so that tho' they all stand in one Line and join to one another, yet they ascend from one to another by Steps, and this causes an Inequality in the Roofs, which are all high ridg'd, but seem to cover one another; and this Inequality with them denotes Grandeur, and this is the Reason that as in the King's Palace there are ordinarily 7 Roofs proceeding one from another; so the Great Officers have 3. The Pagods usually have an high Roof, under which the Idol stands, and 2 other lower for the People, tho' they will enter any where when 'tis open.

Pyramids by the Pagods. The principal Ornament of the Pagods is several Pyramids of Lime and Brick, some as high as our ordinary Steeples, and the lowest not exceeding 2 Fathoms, with a Tin Spire small and sharp-pointed.

The King's Palace at *Siam* is not to be enter'd further than the Hall, and so can't be describ'd: That at *Louvo* is plaister'd with a Cement very white, smooth and shining; the Hall is encompassed with a Ditch, furnished with Water-Works; the Garden is not very spacious or magnificent, but being planted with Flowers and several sorts of Palmites, is very delightful for its Coolness and Simplicity.

The King's Palaces in the Woods. The King of *Siam* also following his Hunting for several Days, hath in the Woods some Palaces of *Bambou*, or rather some fix'd Tents, which only need Furnishing to receive him. They are red on the Outside, and are only a little Domitory, where the King and his Wives have each a little Cell.

The Furniture of the Houses in the *Siam*. The Furniture of their Houses is neat, plain, and only necessary. For their Buildings (for every one builds his own House, and causes it to be removed at Plea-

Pleasure, which they can do in a short time by the Help of their Slaves) they have certain Utensils, which are more properly for Carpenters than House-keepers, as a great Cleaver, which they use for an Ax, a Chizzel, Saw, Plane, Wimble and Spade. For their eating of their common Meals they have Tables like a Drum-Head, with a Border, but without Feet. They use neither Table-Cloaths nor Napkins; but the varnished Wood of their Tables being easily cleansed with hot Water, they make a Shift very well without any Linen. They have no Occasion for Knives, Forks or Spoons, because their Meat is served up to the Table in Morsels ready cut. Their Seats are Bulrush-Mats finer or coarser. Only those have Carpets to whom the Prince has given them. Their Vessels they use are either Porcelane or Potters-Clay, and sometimes of Copper. Their common Vessels are, *Tad*, a Copper-Dish to serve up their Fish in; *Tchain*, a Porcelane-Bowl to put Rice in; *Mecaou*, a Skillet to boil their Rice in; *Touae*, a Ladle for the Pot; *Toboi-tong-kin-nam*, a Copper-Ladle to drink in; but many bore a Cup of Coco on both Sides, and thrusting a Stick thro' it to serve for an Handle, use it for that Purpose.

Chewing *Areca* and *Betel*.

For the Chewing of their *Areca* and *Betel*, which is their continual Exercise, they have every one a little Knife to cut them, a little Cup of red Calx for their Lime, and a Purse for their *Areca* and *Betel*; but in their Houses they have a Box without a Lid; *Caton*, a Spitting-Pot; for they spit much by reason of their Betel.

For their Lodging the Generality have no other Bed but a Mat of Bulrushes, but the richer Sort have every one their Bed and Chamber apart; for 'tis only the meaner Sort that lie in the same Bed with their Wives. Their Bed is made of *Capoc* instead of Feathers, which is a kind of Cotton-Wool; it is not quilted. Under them they lay a Sheet, but have nothing upon them but a Coverlet. At their Heads they have a longish Pillow, and if they lie together, every one has his own Pillow. Before their Sleeping-Room they hang a Curtain to prevent being seen, because that they have no Doors to their Chambers. These are the chief Utensils of their Houses, unless it be some few for more particular Uses, all mean of Wood or Earth, and if they have any Gold or Silver, 'tis very little, and proceeds only from the Liberty of their Prince, and is given as a Badge of some Office.

The King's Furniture.

The King's Furniture is almost the same with his Subjects, but only richer and more precious than that of private Persons. The Halls of his Palaces at *Siam* are all Wainscotted, and varnished with Red, and the Floors covered with Carpets. The Hall and Council-Chamber at *Louvo* are also adorn'd with Looking-Glasses, and in the latter is a *Sopha*, like a Bedsted with its Posts, Bottom and Rods of Gold. The Bottom is covered with a Carpet, on which the King sits, and leans on Cushions piled one upon another. In the Hall stands a Wooden Chair of State gilded, in which the King shews himself to Ambassadors at private Audiences. At the King's Table there is always used great store of Plate, especially Basins, round and deep with Feet and Covers, in which the Boxes of Rice are served up; for they use not any flat Plate in this, nor other Princes Courts of *India*.

Their Food, Rice and Fish.

Their Food is neither dainty nor sumptuous. As we eat less in Summer than in Winter, so they eat less than we, because of their continual Summer. Their common Food is Rice and Fish. The Sea affords them very delicate small Oisters, excellent small Turtles, Lobsters of all Sizes, and other admirable Fish unknown to us. Their Rivers also yield Fish plentifully, principally very good and curious Eels, but they little esteem fresh Fish, and chuse it rather dry, and ill seasoned (for their Salt is bad, and they are but bad Managers of it) nay, even stinking Fish displeaseth them not, no more than rotten Eggs, Rats, Lizzards, and most Insects, Nature doubtless framing their Appetites to Things which they find most ease of Digestion.

Rotten Eggs, &c.

A *Siamese* will make a very good Meal of a Pound of Rice a Day, and a little dry or salt Fish, which both are not above the Value of an Half-penny. Their *Arak*, or Rice-Brandy, costs not above 3 Pence a Pint, and then no Wonder if they take little Care for Subsistance, and spend their Evenings in Mirth and Singing in their Houses. Their Sauces are plain, a little Water with some Spices, Garlick, Chibbolds and sweet Herbs, as Balm, &c. They highly prize a liquid Sauce like Mustard, which is Cray-Fish corrupted. They have no other Oil but what is extracted from the Coco-nut, which tho' always a little bitter, yet is good when it is fresh drawn, but soon becomes strong and not eatable, but by Custom. The Female Buffalo's affords them good Milk, which yields them more Cream than the Milk of our Cows: but they can make no Butter or Cheese of it, by reason of the Heat of the Clime. They dress or set out their Fish after several Manners for their Tables, by slicing, mincing or cutting them into Figures and Shapes of Animals; but they rarely eat the Flesh of any Beast or Bird, tho' offer'd them, and if they do, they chuse rather the Guts, and Intestines, which are loathsome to us. In their Markets or *Bazars* they sell Insects broil'd or roasted, and they have no other Roast-Meat; but Strangers are allow'd to kill and eat any of their Beasts and Birds, and they themselves will give the Flesh of their Pigs, which is very fat and wholsome, to sick Persons.

Their Oil.

No Flesh.

Insects roasted.

But, notwithstanding this Sobriety, the *Siamese* do not live long, and are as subject to Diseases as others are. The most dangerous and frequent are Fluxes and Dissenteries, which prove most fatal to the *Europeans*, because they cannot live sober enough. They are sometimes afflicted with burning Fevers, which affect the Brain, and cause Defluxions on the Stomach; but Inflammations are rare, and the ordinary Fevers kill none. Agues are never heard of, but Coughs, Quinancies, and all sorts of Defluxions and Rhumatisms are common, by reason of the Moisture of the Air, which is inclined to Rain so great a part of the Year. They have many Cankers, Abcesses and Fistula's. *Erisipela* is so frequent, that scarce one in 20 but is infected with it, and some have 2 Thirds of their Body cover'd with it.

The Diseases that reign at *Siam*.

The Small-Pox.

But the real Plague of the Country is the Small-Pox, which makes such Destruction among them often, that they inter the Bodies without burning them, and tho' they desire to perform this Ceremony to them, yet they dare not do, till they have lain in the Earth 3 Years or more, because they say that if they do it sooner, the Contagion will spread afresh, and then they burn them.

The Fruits.

In *Siam* there are no good Grapes; the Vines planted at the *Louvo* in the King's Gardens produce no Fruit but what is bitter and small, so that their ordinary Drink there is Water, which they love to drink perfumed, whereas to our Palate Water which has no Smell is best; and since they cannot draw it from the Springs, it is wholsome only when it has stood a settling more or fewer Days, according as the Inundation is higher or lower, or wholly run out, for being filled with Mud by the Floud, they are made more corrosive, and do cause Dissenteries and Lasks, till they have stood 3 Weeks or a Month to settle. The King of *Siam* has all the Water that he drinks from a great Cistern made in the Fields, which is kept by a continual Guard, and is nothing but a Collection of Rain-Water, which is more wholsome than the River.

Tea used by them, and how made.

For Pleasure and Conversation the Citizens of *Siam* drink Tea, but it is almost unknown in all other Parts of the Kingdom; but there it is counted a necessary Civility to present it to all that visit them. They call it *Tcha*, as the *Chinese* do. They make it of the clearest Cistern-Water; for they hold, that the finest Tea in the World becomes bad in Water that is not excellent. They put no Sugar in their Dishes, by reason that they have none refined, but what is candy'd, and that melts too slowly, and therefore they take a little in their Mouths, and champ it while they are drinking the Tea. When they would have no more Tea, they turn the Cup down upon the Saucer, because 'tis uncivil among them to refuse any thing, and if they leave the Cup standing, they will fill it again.

Wine drank by them.

But they do not so absolutely confine themselves to these Water-Drinks, but they will freely drink Wine when they can get it, altho' whatever fuddles them is strictly prohibited by their Law, and the *English* and *Dutch* do sometimes bring it them from *Schiras* in *Persia*, and from *Europe*.

Tari and *Neri*.

They have also 2 other Liquors, which they frequently drink, called *Tari* and *Neri*, which they extract from 2 sorts of Trees, called *Palmites*, by making an Incision in the Bark of the Trees, near the Top of the Trunk, and applying a Bottle to it close luted. The *Tari* is drawn from the Coco-Tree, and the

the *Neri* from the Arec-Tree. But because in hot Countries the continual Dissipation of the Spirits makes Men desire what encreases them, therefore the *Siamese* passionately esteem *Aqua vitæ*, and the strongest more than others. They make it with Rice, and frequently rack it with Wine.

Aqua vitæ.

The *English* inhabiting at *Siam* use a Drink called *Punch*, which they make of Brandy, mix'd with a double Quantity of Limonade, and put into it some grated Nutmeg, and toasted Sea-Bisket. The *Indians* count this a delicious Liquor, and the *French* call it, *Bonne Ponche*.

Laſtly, The *Moors* of *Siam* drink Coffee, which comes to them from *Arabia*, and the *Portuguese* Chocolate, which is brought them from the *West-Indies*.

Coffee and Chocolate.

For Carriage and State they make use of Beasts, Sedans and Balons, *i. e.* Boats. The Beasts appropriated to this Service are the Ox and Buffalo; but chiefly the Elephant, which is the sole Domestick Animal. They have no Asses nor Mules, and the Horses they buy at *Batavia* are resty and ungovernable, because they have no Skill to manage them, and so are of little Use. The King sometimes will ride on Horse-back, but he does not love it; but it seems mean, and of little Defence to him.

Their Carriage and Equipage.

The Elephant appears to him much more noble and magnificent in Peace, because of his great Bulk and slow Motion, and much more proper for War, because, as they say, this Animal knows how to defend his Master, and if he falls, to set him up upon his Back again with his Trunk, and to throw his Enemy on the Ground, and he keeps an Elephant always on the Guard in his Palace, that is to say, harness'd, and ready to mount.

Elephants

The way of Riding Elephants in Times of Peace is thus: They that guide them themselves do sear themselves upon his Neck, as upon an Horse, but without any kind of Saddle, and with a Punch of Iron or Silver prick him on the Head, exactly in the middle of his Forehead, or on either Side, telling him whither he must go, and where he must stop; but if one will not take the Pains to guide him, he places himself on his Back in a Chair, instead of a Saddle, and a Servant, or he that takes care of the Elephant, gets up on his Neck, and guides him. The Seat which the King of *Siam* rides in upon his Elephants is all open before, and without an Imperial, and at the Sides and behind do rise up to the Top of his Shoulders 3 great *Foliages* or Feathers gilt, and bent outwards at the Point, and when he stops, a Foot-man at 10 or 12 Paces Distance shelters him from the Sun with an high Umbrella like a Pike.

The way of Riding them.

Chairs and Sedans.

Their Chairs or Sedans are not like ours, but have square and flat Seats, sometimes only with a small Ballister half a Foot high, and sometimes with a Back and Arms like our Chairs of State. They fix them on Biers, and 4 or 8 Men, according to the Dignity of the Person who is carried in them (for that is always measured by Number) do carry them on their naked Shoulders, one or two to each Staff, and others relieve them. The *Siamese* always sit cross-legg'd in them. At present 3 or 4 Lords only are permitted to use these Sedans.

Boats used by all.

But because in this Country they go more by Water than by Land, by reason of the Annual Inundations of the Country, the Boat or Balon is the most universal Carriage, and none can be without one. In the Balons of ordinary Service, there are but a few Pagayers, or Rowers, and there is in the middle a Cabin of *Bamboo*, or other Wood, without Painting, or Varnish, in which a whole Family may be held, and sometimes this Cabin has a lower Pent-house before, under which the Slaves are, and many of the *Siamese* have no other Habitation. In the *Balons* of Ceremony, or in those of the King of *Siam*'s Body, which the *Portuguese* call, *Balons of State*, there is in the Middle but one Seat, which takes up almost the whole Breadth of the *Balon*, and wherein there is only one Person and his Arms, *viz.* the Sabre and Lance. If he be an ordinary *Mandarin*, he has only a single Umbrella like ours to shelter him; but if he be one more considerable, his Seat is higher, and he is cover'd with a *Coup*, i. e. an Arbor open behind and before made of *Bamboo's* woven into one another, and varnish'd with Black or Red. The King's *Balons* are very fine, the *Imperials* and *Pagayes*, or Oars, are all over gilded, and supported with Columns, and adorn'd with several Pieces of Sculpture in Pyramids, and some have Shades against the Sun; and when the King's Person is in them, there are 4 Officers to command the Equipage, 2 before and 2 behind.

Balons of State.

Besides these Carriages, which are more common, they have another, called a *Palanquin* (which is a kind of Bed, that hangs almost to the Ground from a Bar, which Men carry on their Shoulders.) This is permitted to sick Persons, and some diseased old Men, for it is a Carriage, wherein they can only lie along; but the Use of it is allow'd to all *Europeans*; as is also that of Umbrella's, tho' the King of *Siam* grants them not to all his Subjects: Those which are like ours, and have but one Round, are least honourable, and most of the *Mandarins*. The *Talapoins* have Umbrella's in the Form of a Screen, made of the Talapot-Leaf, which they carry before them; and from this 'tis probable, that they have the Name of *Talapoins* given them by Foreigners; for their *Siamese* Name is *Tchaoucou*. To the Superiors of the *Talapoins*, call'd *Sancrats*, the King gives a sort of Umbrella's, call'd *Clot*, which have only one Round indeed, but from it do hang 2 or 3 painted Cloths, like so many Hangings, one lower than another. Those that have more Rounds above the Handle, as if they were several Umbrella's set one upon another, are for the King alone.

Palanquin.

Umbrellas by whom used.

The *Siamese* have several sort of Diversions, which they use to recreate themselves withal, and which are chiefly invented, and encouraged to please the King. The Principal of them is the Elephant-hunting, which is perform'd after this Manner: When the King has a Mind to divert himself with this Sport, he orders 40 or 50000 Men to make an Inclosure of the Woods, where the Elephants are, with great Stakes the Day before; and when that is done, they keep 2 Rows of Fires all round the Wood without the Fence all Night, now and then firing some Field-pieces, that by the Noise and Fires the Elephants might be affrighted into the Woods, and so not attempt an Escape. When the King with his Company is come, they make a Ring of above 100 Elephants of War posted round about the Park, to hinder the wild ones from breaking through the Palisadoes; and then send some of the strongest of the tame Elephants within the Precincts of the Park, every one of them carrying 2 Men with great Ropes, and running Nooses, the Ends of which are made fast to the Elephants they rode on. These make up to the Elephant they have a mind to catch, who finding himself pursued, offers immediately at the Barrier to make his Escape; but all the Way being block'd up with the Elephants of War, they are forced back within the Inclosure again, and while they run to and fro with that Space, the Huntsmen, who are mounted on the tame Elephants, will throw their Nooses so exactly upon the Places where the Beasts are to set their Feet, that they never fail catching of them. And thus they will take 14 or more in an Hour. When they are thus taken, they tie on each side the wild Elephant a tame one, and leaving them with him a Fortnight, he will become perfectly tame. This Hunting the King counts an excellent Sport.

Elephant-Hunting.

There is another Way of taking of Elephants, which is better contrived for the Pleasure of the many, after this Manner: They make a very large and broad Trench, by raising 2 Terrasses of Earth perpendicular on both sides, and on them they place a Multitude of Spectators. In the Bottom of the Trench between these Terrasses there is placed a double Row of Trunks of Trees 10 Foot high, big enough to resist the Attacks of an Elephant, and far enough asunder for a Man to pass between them, but not an Elephant. Between these 2 Rows of Trunks they set a tame She-Elephant, which having been before led thro' the Woods, easily enticeth a wild Male Elephant to her by her Cries. When the wild Elephant is thus entrapp'd, that he cannot return into the Woods again, certain Men, who being appointed for that Purpose, are cover'd with Leaves, do with incredible Dexterity and Swiftness cast certain Nooses on his Feet, and by them tie him to the Trunks. Then they cause another tame Elephant to enter into the Trench, and fastening the tame Elephants on each side the wild one, lead him into a Pent-house near adjoining, and tie him to a Pivot 24 Hours, where having remain'd, they send more Elephants to keep him Company, and comfort him, and then in 8 Days he will submit to his Slavery.

Another Way.

Another Diversion used in the Court of *Siam* is by the Fighting of Elephants, which are prepared for War, as it were, to fit them to engage the Enemies

Elephant-Fighting.

Ele-

Elephants. On the Day of Battel, just before the 2 Combatants are to enter the Lists, they sound their Trumpets after a very harsh and inarticulate Manner, which makes the Elephants which are to fight roar hideously. They are tied by the hind Feet with great Ropes, held by several Men, that they may be drawn off in case the Shock proves too hard. When they come to fight, they approach so near, that their Teeth cross one another, and then they'll encounter one another so fiercely sometimes, that breaking one another's Teeth by their Efforts, the Splinters of them will fly about. They usually set a Man upon each of them to animate them to Battle, and when they have encountred one another 5 or 6 times, they bring in the Females, who part them. At the Great *Mogul's* Palace the Elephants that fight are permitted to approach nearer, so that they endeavour to beat off each other's Rider, and frequently they knock him down and kill him; but at *Siam* they neither expose the Life of Man nor Beast by way of Sport or Exercise.

Besides this Pastime of Elephants fighting one with another, they have another Fight between certain Elephants and a Tyger. It is usual to match 3 Elephants with one Tyger, and that of the largest Size. It is evident that they intend to please themselves more in the Death of the Tyger in this Sport, than in the Fight between them; for as they cover the Elephant's Breast and part of his Trunk with a kind of large Breast-plate, so before they let slip the Tyger, that is to fight, they hold him tied by 2 Ropes, till the first Elephant gives him 2 or 3 Blows with his Trunk, to damp his Courage and abate his Strength, and many times this Stroke is so rude and severe, that it lays the Tyger for dead; and tho' the Fury of the Beast is such, that he will make many brisk Efforts to revenge himself, as soon as he recovers, yet the 3 Elephants do usually maul him so by Turns, by striking him with their Teeth, and tossing him up a great Height into the Air, that he seldom escapes with Life, and the Spectators have the Pleasure to see him dead.

Besides these Sports, the *Siamese* are much delighted with Cock-Fighting. Of these Birds the most couragious are not always the biggest, but those which are naturally the best arm'd, *i. e.* those that have the best Spurs are supposed to have the best Hearts to use them. If in the Combat a Cock falls, they give him Drink, because they have found by Experience, that it is for the most part only the Effect of Thirst. These Battles seldom end but with the Death of one of the Cocks, which because the *Talapoins* look'd upon as a Piece of Cruelty, and gave their Judgment, *That the Owners of the Cocks should for their Punishment be bastinado'd in the other World with Bars of Iron*, the King of *Siam* forbad these sort of Duels.

Another sort of Diversion is their Stage-Plays, which have been brought to them from *China*, and are of 3 Sorts, *viz.* the *Cone*, *Lacone* and *Rabam*. The *Cone* is a Figure Dance to the Sound of the Violin, or some other Instrument. The Dancers are mask'd and arm'd, and represent rather a Combat than a Dance, and tho' every one runs into high Motions and various antick and extravagant Postures, yet they cease not continually to intermix some Words.

The Show which they call *Lacone*, is a Poem intermix'd with Epick and Dramatick, and lasts 3 Days from 8 in the Morning till 7 at Night. They are Histories in Verse, serious, and sung by several Actors by Turns. One sings the Historian's Part, and the rest the several Parts of the Persons represented; but they are all Men that sing, and no Women.

The *Rabam* is a double Dance of Men and Women, who have all very long false Nails of Copper. They sing some Words in their Dancing, which they perform without any Tiring, because it is a simple March without any high Motions, and only with a great many slow Contorsions of the Body and Arms. The Habit of the Actors is almost like that of the *Carthusian* Monks, being clasped on the Sides with 3 or 4 Buckles, with great square Placards before and behind, on which are painted Dragons, and a Girdle 3 Fingers broad, with little Squares of Tortoise-shell, or Horn, or some sort of Wood, and in the *Rabam* and *Cone* they have high gilded Paper-Bonnets like a *Cone*, adorn'd with counterfeit Stones and Pendants of gilded Wood. The Theatre hath a Cloth at the Bottom, but nothing on the Sides like our Mountebanks Stages.

The *Cone* and *Rabam* are always used at Funerals, and sometimes on other Occasions, and the *Lacone* serves principally to solemnize the Dedication of a Temple, when a new Statue of their Deity *Sommona-Colam* is placed therein.

Tumblers. The *Siamese* Tumblers are an admirable and delightful Spectacle. They will mount to the Top of high *Bambou's* planted in the Ground at one End like Masts, and about 80 or 100 Foot high, and stand on the Top of them with one Foot, and holding the other in the Air for an Hour together or more; then placing their Head where their Foot had stood, they will raise their Feet upright, and stand upon their Head. At length having hung by the Chin, that rests only on the Top of the *Bambou's*, their Hands and the rest of their Body hanging in the Air, they come down a long Ladder standing upright, turning their Body about every Step with incredible Agility. Others of them will place upon a kind of Litter or portable Couch 7 or 8 Daggers, with the Points upwards, and sit down, or lie along upon them without hurting their Body, which is stark naked; and sometimes they will cause a very heavy Man to stand upright upon their Bellies, and yet none of the Points which touch'd their naked Skin will pierce them. One of these sorts of Tumblers so exceedingly pleased the King of *Siam* with his strange Feats and Activity, that he made him a Great Lord, and lodg'd him in his Palace. A Tumbler made a Lord.

The *Siamese* have many other pretty Diversions, which would hardly be thought such, if we should give too large a Relation of them, as Puppet-Shews, which differ not much from ours; Dancing of Serpents, which they have tamed and instructed for that Purpose, and which will move themselves at the Sound of an Instrument, as if they would dance; but this passes for Magick, because they who train them to it do it by some Mysterious Words; curious Fire-Works, and magnificent Illuminations, when the Waters begin to fall; for then the whole River is cover'd with Lanthorns of different Sizes, and variously painted, which make a very pleasing Sight; and the like they do for their Harvest on the first Days of their Year, Flying of Paper-Kites with Fire at the Tail, which appears like a Planet, every Night for the 2 Winter Months; Wrestling and Boxing; And Lastly, their Matches of *Balons* in rowing one against the other upon the River, which they do with such Shouts and Acclamations and Betting, that it is exceeding diverting.

Gaming. Besides these Things, the *Siamese* love Gaming exceedingly, and will often ruine themselves, and loose their own and Childrens Liberty. The Play which they love best is *Tick-Tack*, which they call *Saca*, tho' they play also at Chests, and other hazardous Sports.

Smoaking Tobacco. The Smoaking of Tobacco (for they take no Snush) is also one of their greatest Pleasures, and even the most considerable Women are entirely addicted to it. They have their Tobacco from *Manille*, *China* and *Siam*, and though it be very strong, they smoak it without weakening it. These are the Variety of Pleasures which the *Siamese* follow. We will now come to Things more serious.

Of their Marriage. Before Marriage it is the Custom of the Country not to permit the Virgins to converse with young Men, and if by Stealth they get into their Company, as sometimes they will, their Mothers will certainly chastize them for it. The Virgins are marriageable at 12 Years old, and sometimes sooner, and seldom bear Children after 40, and therefore the Custom is to marry both the Boys and Girls very young, unless they resolve against it, as some of them do. When a Marriage is design'd, the Parents of the young Man send some aged Women of good Reputation to desire the Maid of her Parents. If the Parents of the Virgin harken to the Proposal, they give a favourable Answer, but will not resolve upon any thing till they know their Daughter's Mind, and have consulted the Southsayers upon these 2 Points; 1. Whether the Family of the young Man be rich, because every one here studiously conceals his Wealth from the Oppression of the Magistrate, and Covetousness of the Prince. And, 2. Whether the Marriage will continue till Death without Divorce. A favourable Answer to these Questions causes the Marriage to be concluded, and the young Man goes to visit the Virgin 3 times, and carries her some Presents of Betel and Fruits. At the 3d Visit the Relations on both Sides meet, and the Virgin's Portion is paid to the Bridegroom before them Their Way of making Marriages.

them, who is allow'd from that time to consummate the Marriage when he pleaseth. Upon this Occasion it is usual for the Uncles of the new married Couple to present them with some Gifts. The *Talapoins* are not suffered to be present at this Meeting, nor is any Religious Ceremony used at it; but some Days after they go to the House of the married Couple, and sprinkling some holy Water on them, repeat some Prayers in the *Baly* Tongue. The Wedding is usually attended with Feasting and Dancing, but not by the Bridegroom or Bride, or any of the Guests, but Dancers are hired for that Purpose, and the Bride is deck'd with a fine *Pagne*, better Pendants, and more and better Rings on her Fingers than ordinary. The Feast is kept at the House of the Bride's Relations, where the Bridegroom has before-hand provided an Hall and Apartment for that End. Here they usually stay a few Months after their Marriage, and then go and settle where they please to build themselves an House. The greatest Portion at *Siam* is 100 *Cah's*, which do make 15000 Livres, and the Bridegroom's Estate usually equals the Bride's Portion.

Gifts to the Married.

A Virgin's Portion.

Polygamy.

The *Siamese* think it best to have but one Wife, tho' the Rich are allow'd to have more, not for Lust, but State; but where there are several Wives, there is always one Chief, which they call, *The Great Wife*; the rest are called lesser Wives, and are usually Slaves, which are subject to the chief one; and their Children call the Father, *Po Tchgou*, i. e. Father-Lord, whereas the chief Wife's Children call him only *Po*, *i. e.* Father. Marriage is prohibited in the first Degrees of Consanguinity among them, but a Man may marry his Cousin-German; and as to Degrees of Alliance, a Man may marry 2 Sisters, either together, or successively; but the King of *Siam* takes himself obliged by none of these Rules, because he thinks he cannot find a Wife fit for him out of his own Family, and therefore he will marry sometimes his own Sister, and sometimes his own Daughter. The Children of the Great Wife always succeed to the Inheritance by equal Portions, which consists chiefly in Movables, because the King reserves the Property of the Lands to himself, that if he sells any, he will resume them again at Pleasure, tho' 'tis contrary to the Law of the Country; but the little Wives and their Children may be sold by the Heir, and can have no Share of the Father's Goods, but what he has either given them in his Life-time, or the Heir will bestow on them. The Daughters of the little Wives are usually sold for little Wives to any that will purchase them, which make very odd Alliances. The Families are almost all happy at *Siam*, for the Husbands love their Wives and Children exceedingly, and are as greatly beloved of them, tho' they do nothing toward the Support and Maintenance of their Families, but are maintain'd by their Wives and Children, either in the King's Service, which they are obliged to perform 6 Months every Year, and sometimes are detained 2 or 3 Years, or else in Laziness and Ease, because being return'd home, they have no particular Employment to follow. The Women plow the Land, and sell and buy in the Cities, and chearfully maintain their Husbands in Ease and Plenty. But if the Husband and Wife cannot support one another, the usual Remedy is Divorce, of which tho' the Husband is absolute Master, yet he will never refuse it to his Wife, if she desires it, and then he restores her her Portion, and the Children are divided, the odd ones to the Wife, and even to the Husband, and after this Divorce they may both marry as they please, and sell their Children. But this Practice is used only by the Populace; for the Rich, who have several Wives, keep them all, whether they love them or not. The Husband hath an absolute despotical Power in his Family, and can sell all his Wives and Children, except his chief Wife, whom he can only divorce; and Widows have the same Power over their Children, yet with this Restriction, that they cannot sell the Children of the even Number, without the Consent of the Husband's Relations; but none can kill his Children or Wives, because at *Siam* Murther is prohibited in general. In fine; With the *Siamese* Love is looked upon as Marriage, and Incontinency as Divorce, and they are so proud as not to marry any Foreigners, and therefore they marry with the *Peguins*, who being Strangers themselves at *Siam*, do more value Foreigners, and commonly marry with them.

Married Persons keep Holy.

Divorce in use.

Husbands can sell their Wives and Children.

They Children of the *Siamese* are very docible and sweet temper'd, provided they be not discountenanc'd, and their Parents having a marvellous Influence upon them by their despotick Power, which they the more severely exercise, because they must answer to their Prince for their Faults, can easily form in them a due Love and Respect to themselves, and Civility to others, especially to Strangers, which the *Indian* Princes, upon the Account of Traffick, so strictly require, that he severely punishes the least Breach of it. They are accustom'd always to an extream Modesty, as necessary for Trade, and much more for the King's Service, which they are to attend 6 Months yearly. Silence is not greater among the *Carthusians*, than in the King's Palace, nor will the Lords dispense with it. They never affect to be wiser than others, yea, even in the Affairs of their own Country. They are drolling and facetious among themselves, but never with Strangers, because it is often nice to them. They are extreamly complaisant to Women, and as they call them by the most agreeable Things in Nature, as, *Young Diamond*, *Young Gold*, *Young Chrystal*, *Young Flower*; so they will by no means discover that they think any Woman old. In their Salutations they call every Man, *Thaou*, or Lord, and enquire of their Health, *Tgiou de?* How do you? Their Posture of sitting is cross-legg'd, and so they are so well accustom'd to it, that on a Seat they will place themselves no other wise, and if any Person comes before them to whom they owe Respect, they do not rise, but bowe themselves as they sit cross-legg'd. The Slaves and Servants before their Masters, and common People before their Lords fall on their Knees, and so keep themselves with their Body seated on their Heels, their Head a little inclined, and their Hands joined at the Top of their Forehead. A *Siamese* in passing by a Person to whom he owes Respect, stoops with joined Hands more or less elevated, and salutes no otherwise.

The Breading of the *Siamese*, to which they educate their Children.

The Silence

They never affect

They are complaisant to Women, and call them by the most agreeable Things in Nature, as, *Young Diamond*, *Young Gold*, *Young Chrystal*, *Young Flower*; so they will by no means discover that they think any Woman old.

In their Visits, if a Person be much inferior, he prostrates himself and remains on his Knees, and never speaks first: If an Equal, the Master of the House meets him at the Hall-Door to receive him, and at his Departure accompanies him thither, and no farther, and walks upright or stooping, according to the Degrees of Respect due to the Visiter; but all observe to place the Visiter uppermost. They treat one another with Fruits and Preserves, and sometimes with Rice and Fish, and usually the Master of the House presents the Visiter with Areca, Betel and Tea. The highest Places is so far the most honourable, according to them, that none will dare to go up in a Chamber while a Superior is below, and therefore they build their Houses but one Story high, because the Bottom would be useless to them; and tho' their Houses be built on Piles, yet none will make use of the Under-part to be under the Feet of another. At *Siam* the Right-Hand is more honourable than the Left, and the Floor of the Chamber than the Sides, of which that where the Door is, is least honourable; and so if a *Siamese* receives an important Visit, he places the Visiter alone in the Floor of the Chamber, and seats himself with his Back toward the Door, or toward one of the Sides of the Chamber. These, with many other Ceremonies, are in use at *Siam*, which tho' they may seem to us troublesome, yet are not so to them, because they are so much accustom'd to them.

Their Houses built on Piles.

Other particular and remarkable Customs among them are: When a Superior would testifie a great Consideration for an Inferior, he affects publickly not to meet him, to spare his Submissions: Affability to Inferiors, Easiness of Access, and going before them, are look'd upon as Signs of Weakness with them, as they are in the other Parts of the *Indies*. They avoid not Belching, nor turn away their Face, nor hold any thing before their Mouths, no more than the *Spaniards*. 'Tis no Incivility with them to wipe off the Sweat from their Forehead with their Fingers, and then shake them against the Ground; for they have no Handkerchiefs. They spit neither on their Mats nor Carpets, but in Spitting-pots. In the King's Palace they neither cough, nor spit, nor wipe their Nose. They refuse nothing that is offered them, nor dare say, they have enough. The Head, which being the highest Part of the Body, is most respected. It is the greatest Affront that can be offer'd a *Siamese* to touch his Head, Hair or Bonnet, or so stroke it. Their most humble Posture is that which they use to their King, to be prostrate on their Knees and Elbows, with their Hands joined on the Top of their Fore-head, and their Body seated on their Heels, and upon the same Account it is not only more honourable to be

Particular Marks of Respect.

Prostration used to the King.

fear-

seated on an high Seat, than a low one, but to be standing than sitting. To lay a Thing upon one's Head, which is given or received, is at *Siam* a very great Mark of Respect, as it is in *Spain*, and many other Countries. If you put forth your Hand to a *Siamese*, he will put both his Hands under your's, as it were to put himself entirely into your Power, for it is an Incivility with them to give only one Hand; as also not to take what they present you with, with both Hands, or what they receive from you.

Their Education. When their Children are become 7 or 8 Years old, they put them into a Convent of *Talapoins*, and cause them to assume their Habit, where they are taught principally to read, write, and cast Account, to fit them for Merchandize and Traffick, and upon the Account of their Religion the *Bali* Tongue, Morality, and the Fables of their *Sommona-Codom*; but no History, Law, or Sciences.

Their Language. The *Siamese* and *Bali* Tongues have, like our Languages in *Europe*, an Alphabet of few Letters, of which are composed Syllables and Words. It consists, as the *Chinese* chiefly does, of almost all Monosyllables, which are much varied by their several Dispositions and Accents; for this is observable, that whereas in cold Countries, where the Imagination is heavy and dull, every thing is called by its own Name, and they abound as much or more in Words than Things; it is not so in hot Countries, few Words do there suffice to express much, by reason that the Briskness of the Imagination employs them in an Hundred different Ways, all Figurative. They write the *Siamese* and *Bali* Languages from the Left Hand to the Right, after the same Manner as we do our Tongues in *Europe*, and therein much differ from all the rest of the *Asiaticks*, who have ever wrote from the Right to the Left, and the *Chinese* write downward.

Their Writing. Their Arithmetick. After Reading and Writing, they proceed to Arithmetick, which, like ours, hath 10 Characters, to which they give the same Powers as we do in the Disposition and Places of Unites, Tens, Hundreds, Thousands, &c. and the *Indian* Merchants are generally so expert Accountants, that they will presently resolve the most difficult Questions of Arithmetick; but they have no Use of Algebra. Other Studies to which the *Europeans* apply themselves in our Universities are almost absolutely unknown to them, and it may be doubted whether they are fit for them; for tho' their Imagination be quick and spritely, it soon flags with the least Application, and they fall into an invincible Laziness, which is the Reason that tho' they are great Lovers of Chymistry and Astronomy, they have arriv'd at no Perfection in them. They are naturally pretty good Poets, and their Poetry, like ours, consists in a Number of Syllables and Rhime; but their way of Thinking is so different from ours, that their Poems cannot be translated. They are no Orators, but all their Books are either Narrations of a plain Style, or some Sentences of a broken Style, full of Idea's: And their Pleadings are void of Rhetorick, containing bare Matters of Fact, with the Reasons of them. When they preach, they read the *Bali* Text of their Books, and translate it or expound it in the vulgar Language, without any Action. They know how to speak to a Business with a great deal of Insinuation; but their Compliments, tho' very good, are all after one Model, and in the same Ceremonies they always speak almost the same Things. They are absolutely ignorant of all Parts of Philosophy, except some Principles of Morality, and those intermix'd with Truth and Falshood. They have not any sort of Theology.

Their Poetry. Ordinary Writers. Their Preaching. Their Manner of Respect.

Their Laws. They learn the Laws of their Country only in Employments, and then only so much of them as belongs to their Office, of which a Copy is put into their Hands when they enter upon it.

Their Physick. The Art of Medicine merits no Name among the *Siamese*, for all the King's principal Physicians are *Chinese*, tho' he has also some *Siamese* and *Peguins*. They trouble not themselves to have any Principle of Physick, nor regard any particular Symptoms of Diseases, but have only a Number of Receipts, which have been handed down to them from their Ancestors, and in which they never alter any thing, and yet they fail not to cure a great many, because thro' their natural Temperance they are obnoxious to little Distempers usually; but if any miscarry under their Hands, they impute it to some Inchantment. They have some Purgatives, which are used among us, and others peculiar to them, but observe no Time for Purging, nor know what the Crisis is. They highly applaud Sudoricks, and understand the Benefit of Sweating in many Distempers. Their Sick eat only boiled Rice made extreamly liquid, and when their Stomach will bear any solid Meats, they give them Pigs Flesh, which is preferable to all other. They know nothing of Chyrurgery, and so stand in need of the *Europeans*, not only for Trapans, and other more difficult Operations of Chyrurgery, but for simple Blood-letting. They are totally ignorant of Anatomy, and so understand not the Circulation of the Blood, nor any of those new Things which we know about the Structure of the Body of Animals. They are not skilful in Chymistry, altho' they passionately affect it, and will boast of strange Secrets they have discover'd in it. The Father of the present K. of *Siam* spent 2 Millions in a vain Search for the Philosoper's Stone, and some pretend to have found out a Remedy to keep them from Mortality. Their quick and clear Imagination might fit them better for Mathematicks than any other Studies, but they cannot follow a long Thread of Ratiocinations, of which they can't discern the End or Profit, and therefore they know nothing of Geometry or Mathematicks, and no more of Astronomy than is necessary to assist them in Divination, making Horoscopes, and composing their Almanacks. They have had their Calendar twice reformed by able Astronomers, who have taken 2 Arbitrary Epocha's remarkable for some rare Conjunction of the Planets. The most ancient refer to the 545th Year before the Birth of *Jesus Christ*, and the *Siamese* do vulgarly report, that it commences from the Death of *Sommona-Codom*, tho' they have no Relations to prove it, and the latter from the Year of Grace 638. These Astronomers having established certain Numbers upon these Observations, have composed a Table to find out the Place of the Planets for the following Year, almost like that by which we find the Epact of every Year by adding 11 to the Epact of the foregoing. They know only 3 Seasons; the Winter, called, *Nanaou*, i. e. The Beginning of Cold; the little Summer, styled, *Naron*, i. e. The Beginning of Heat; and the great Summer, called, *Naron-jai*, or, The Beginning of great Heat, which strips the Trees of their Leaves, as the Cold doth ours. They have 2 Years together consisting of 12 Months, and a 3d of 13. They have no Word for a Week, but like us call the 7 Days by the Names of the Planets, and their Days correspond with ours, only begin 6 Hours sooner. They begin their Year on the first Day of the Moon in *November* or *December*, according to certain Rules, and do not number them, but count them by the Names of a Sexagenary Cycle, *i. e.* a Revolution of 60 Years, for which they have particular Names, as we have for the Week. Their Months consist vulgarly of 30 Days, but they give no Names to them, reckoning them in order only. The first Month, 2d Month, &c. The 2 first Months, which answer almost to our *December* and *January*, make their whole Winter, the 3 next their little Summer, and 7 others their great Summer. But their greatest Winter is at least as hot as our greatest Summer. Their Winter is dry, and Summer rainy, the Sun by a marvellous Providence drawing the Clouds after it, and the Wind perpetually blowing from one of the Poles, when the Sun is toward the other, and these Things make their Torrid Zone habitable, which otherwise could not be endured.

Chymistry. Mathematicks. Geometry. Astronomy. Their Epocha's. Their Year. Their Cycle of 60 Years.

Their System of the World. They understand nothing of the System of the World, but believe, as all the *East* do, that the Eclipses are caused by some Dragon which devours the Sun and Moon, and they make a great Noise with Fire-Shovels and Kettles, to scare and drive away this pernicious Animal, and deliver those beautiful Planets. They believe the Earth 4 square, and of vast Extent, on which the Arch of Heaven rests at the Extremity, and so all Men are covered with it, as our Plants are with a Glass-Bell. They assert, that the Earth is divided into 4 habitable Parts, so separated one from another by the Sea, that they are like 4 different Worlds. In the middle of them they suppose a Pyramidal Mountain, whose Top touches the Stars, and round about which the Sun, Moon and Stars do incessantly turn, which makes Day and Night.

The Art of Prophesying. The *Siamese* are of Opinion, that there is an Art of Prophesying, and are so superstitious, that neither Prince nor People will undertake any Affair or Expedition, till their Diviners, who are *Brames* or *Peguins*, have fixed an Hour prosperously to set upon it, and they have an Almanack made Annually by a *Brame* Astrologer, that tells them the lucky or unlucky Days

for most of the Things they use to do, and they never stir from Home, or return so long as this prohibits. They take the Howlings of wild Beasts and the Cries of Stags and Apes for ill Omens. A Serpent that crosses the Way, a Thunder-Bolt that falls on an House, any thing that falls as it were of it self, and without any apparent Cause, are Subjects of Dread to the *Siamese*, and the Reasons of laying aside the most important Matters. Many other Superstitions they have, but so fooliſh, that this Taste may satisfie the intelligent Reader.

Musick. Musick is not better understood at *Siam* than Geometry and Astronomy. They make Airs by Fancy, but know not how to prick them by Notes: They have neither Cadence nor Quaver, yet will sing without Words. They understand not the Diversity of Parts in Composition, but sing all Unisons. Their Instruments are ill chose; they have ugly little Violins, Hautboys, 2 Sorts of Drums, the one of which they beat with Leaden-Balls, and the other with the Fists, and the *Pateong*. With all these Instruments, to which sometimes they add the Voice, they make but a confused Noise, yet, as fantastical and odd as it is, it hath nothing unpleasant, especially on the River.

Exercises of Body are of as little Esteem with them, as those of the Mind. They have nothing of the Art of Riding the Great Horse, Arms they want, except their Princes give them some. They muster only by Order of their Prince, and can't in War fire a Musket standing, nor march, because they are so used to keep their Hams bended, that they cannot stand on their Feet with a good Grace, for which Reason they never walk abroad, nor use Running, but Rowing is their only Exercise, and with this they begin when they are Children of 4 or 5 Years old, and are so accustomed to it, that they will row 3 Days and 3 Nights almost without resting.

Their Trades and Arts. They have no Company of Trades, nor any Encouragements for Arts, partly because they are sluggish, but chiefly because they fear that their 6 Months Service should be made a Slavery for Life, if they should be expert at any, wherefore they do a little of all Trades, and desire no more. The Arts which they practise, but with little Skill, are those of Joyners, Carvers, Brick-makers and Masons. They can cast Mettals, and form them in Molds into Plates, with which they cover their Images, Hilts of Sabres, *&c.* but they cannot polish, nor set precious Stones. They are excellent Gilders, and can beat Gold finely. They use only cast Iron, and know not the Art of Tanning or Tawing Leather, and so their Horses are neither shod, nor have Saddles or Stirrups. They can make at *Siam* at little coarse Cotton-Cloth, which they paint ill, but can make no Stuffs nor Silks, nor Tapestry. They understand Embroidery, and their Designs are pleasing; they can paint in Oils, but badly, for their Fancy runs above Nature, and they love Extravagancies in Painting, as to give Men impossible Proportions, and represent Trees, Birds, Flowers and other Animals, that never were. The most general Professions among the *Siamese* are Fishing for the common People, and merchandize for all such as have wherewithal to follow it, the King himself not excepted; but the Foreign Trade being reserved to the King only, their Home Trade is so inconsiderable, that none can get Estates by it. In their Credits a 3d Person writes the Obligation, and this sufficeth in Justice to secure their Debts; they have no Seal, but only make a single Cross, which few are so wicked as to disown. They trade little with Immovables, because no Person thinks it safe to purchase Land, which being wholly in the King's Power, he takes away, or gives as he pleaseth. Their small Trades are almost all of little Consequence, and their Fidelity is so great, that in their Markets the Buyer neither counts what he purchases by tale, nor the Seller the Money he receives, and they are scandalized by the *French* Mens Caution in buying the least things. Their Markets are in the Evening from 5 to 8 or 9 a Clock.

Their Measures. In measuring their salable Goods they use not the Ell, by reason that they buy Muslins, and other Linens, all in whole Pieces. When they buy Cloth by Retale, they measure it by the *Ken*, i. e. the Elbow or Cubit, upon their Arms. Nevertheless, they use the Fathom in Buildings, surveying Land, and measuring the Roads thro' the whole Kingdoms, which every Mile are mark'd by a Post. The Coco serves as a Measure for Grains and Liquors, and because they are unequal, they measure them by little Shells, called *Coris*, which serve for small Money at *Siam*, and are almost of an equal Capacity. To measure Corn they have a kind of Bushel, called *Sat*, made of interlaced *Bambou*, and to measure Liquors, they have a Pitcher, called *Canan*, and by them they make their Markets; but for want of Policy and a Standard, by which Measures are legally regulated, the Buyer is forced to accept them according to his own Models and Measures.

Their Weights and Monies. Their Weights are usually Pieces of their Money, which are the most nice and true of any thing weigh'd, tho' frequently false and light, and therefore the same Name, *Ding*, signifies Weight and Money both. Their Silver-Coins are of the Figure of a little Cylinder or Rowl, very short, and bow'd so in the Middle, that both the Ends touch. Their Stamps are unknown to us. Their *Tical*, which weighs no more than Half a Crown of our Money, is worth 3 *s.* and 3 Half-pence. They have no Gold nor Copper-Money. Gold is a Merchandize among them, and 12 times the Value of Silver, the Purity being supposed equal in both Mettals: They cut it into ill shap'd Pieces, and with them pay for their Commodities, and for that Purpose they always carry a Pair of Gold Scales and a Touch-Stone in their Hands. The base Coin is nothing but little Shells, called *Coris* at *Siam*, fish'd up in abundance at the *Maldives* Islands, and sometimes in the *Philippines*. They are current thro' all *India*, and on most of the Coasts of *Africk*: 800 of them are hardly worth a Penny.

The Manners of the Siamese. As to good Manners, it may be affirmed, that the *Siamese* are good Men. Vices are detestable among them, and every one that is a little above the Refuse of the People is so far from making himself drunk, that he accounts it a Shame to drink Arak. Adultery is rare at *Siam*, not only because the Husband has Power to kill or sell his Wife, if he convicts her of such Infidelity, but because they are employ'd in Labour, and not corrupted with the Luxury of Meat, Cloaths, Gaming or Shows. The Wives of the People managing the Trade, do enjoy a perfect Liberty, and those of the Nobles are very reserv'd, and stir not abroad, but upon some Family-Visit, or to go to the Pagods, and are yet so far from accounting this an uneasie Constraint, that they glory in it, and would think themselves contemned by their Husbands to allow them more. The Women in general chuse rather to be killed by their Husbands, than fall into the Power of their Enemies in time of War. The *Siamese* Lords are not more jealous of their Wives than Daughters, and if any one commits a Fault, they sell her to a certain Man, who has a Privilege to prostitute her for Money, in Consideration of a Tribute he pays the King. 'Tis said, he has above 600 of both at a time. Disrespect to Superiors is very rare at *Siam*. Lying is punish'd very severely both by the King and all Superiors. The Union of Families is such, that should a Child act in any thing against his Parents, he would be abhorred as a Monster. Begging is shameful, not only to the Beggar, but all his Family, which, according to their Custom, are to maintain all Relations out of Charity, who cannot maintain themselves out of their Estate or Labour; so that none beg but the Aged and Impotent, and such as are friendless. Robbing is much more ignominious than Begging, both to the Robber himself and his Relations, who dare not concern themselves with the nearest Friend, if he be accused of Theft; nevertheless, the *Siamese* do seldom refuse to steal whatever they meet withal, and some have so great a Love to Theft, that they withdraw themselves into the Woods from the Government to rob Passengers, but kill none. Fidelity in all sorts of Traffick is exceeding great at *Siam*, but Usury is without Bounds, tho' their Moral Law prohibits it. Avarice is their essential Vice, tho' they heap up Riches not to use them, but bury them. They make no Wills, nor publick Contracts, and as they have no Notaries, so they can have no Suits of Law. The *Siamese* have a natural Aversion to Blood, yet out of Hatred or Revenge will sometimes assassinate or poison, and often accuse before their Judges, who living on their Profession, are ready to gratifie their Spight. They are courteous, polite, fearful and careless. They will contain their Anger long, but if it breaks out 'tis boundless. They are stiff to their Customs out of Laziness and Respect to their Ancestors, who have transmitted them to them. They have no Curiosity, nor admire any thing. They are proud to the Meek, and humble to them that treat them with Rigor. When they promise one another a perpetual

Women kept for the King. Lying punish'd. Begging. Their Nunnery and Order. Robbing. Honesty in Traffick. Courtesie.

Amity,

Friendship.

Amity, they do it by drinking the same Cup of *Aqua vita* together, and when they swear more solemnly, they taste the Blood one of another; yet after all these Ceremonies, they'll prove sometimes perfidious. They act only by Necessity, and do not, like us, place Merit in Action, because it seems irrational to them, that Labour and Pains should be the Fruit and Reward of Vertue. But this is sufficient to be said of the *Siamese* in general.

The Condition of the *Siamese*.

Concerning the particular Conditions of the *Siamese*, and their Manners relating to them, it may be said, that at *Siam* all Persons are either Free-men or Slaves. Now one may be born, or become a Slave. One becomes a Slave either for Debt, or being taken Captive in War, or by having been confiscated by Justice.

Slaves.

When one is made a Slave for Debt, he recovers his Liberty by making Satisfaction, but his Children born during his Slavery remain Slaves. One is born a Slave, when he is born of his Mother who is a Slave, tho' his Father be a Free-man; for he can claim but his even Ones, tho' he had the Consent of the Master of the Mother-Slave; if not, all the Children belong to the Mother; and if the Father be a Slave, his Share belongs to his Master. The Master has Power over the Slaves in all Things, but to take away their Life, yet is not Slavery accounted so vile by the *Siamese*, but they dread Beggary more than Slavery, as being more painful and ignominious; for tho' they express a great deal of Charity for Beasts, yet they will show very little to Men. They employ their Slaves in cultivating their Lands and Gardens, and other domestick Services, yet allow them so much Time to work for themselves, as to gain a Livelihood for their Families, paying a small Tribute from 4 to 8 *Ticals*.

Free-men.

All the rest are Free-men, and among them there is no Difference: for their Nobility is nothing else, but the actual Possession of Offices, which make the Families that enjoy them illustrious so long as they hold them, but as soon as they have lost them, they have nothing that distinguishes them from the common People, for it is common to see the Son of a Lord and Grandson at the *Pagay*, or Oar. The Distinction of the *Talapoins*, or Priests, from the People is less, for they are continually passing from one of these States to the other; so that the Inhabitants of the whole Kingdom are divided into King, Officers, Priests, and Commonalty, or the People.

Of the *Siamese* People.

The People of *Siam* are all Soldiers, called *Tahan*, and do allow annually 6 Months Service to their Prince, and accordingly are all register'd in the Muster-Roll of their Militia. It belongs to the Prince to arm and give them Elephants or Horses, if he will have them to serve in that Post, but it belongs to them to cloath and maintain themselves. When he is at War with any of his Neighbours, he sends not all his Subjects into the Field, but employs as many as he pleases in Arms, and the rest he puts them upon such other Services as he thinks fit; and that no Man may escape this personal Service, all the People are exactly numbred, and divided into Men on the Right Hand, and Men on the Left, who are again subdivided into Bands, each of which hath their *Nai*, or Captian, whose Office it is to furnish as many Men out of his Band either for War, or the King's 6 Months Service, as are required. The Children are of the same Band with their Parents, and if the Parents are of different Bands, then the odd ones belong to the Mother's Band, and even ones to the Father, unless the Mother's Captain hath not given Consent to the Marriage, and then all the Children belong to the Mother's Band. And tho' Women and *Talapoins* are exempted from all Service, yet they are both inroll'd; the latter because they may return to a Secular Condition, and then they come under the Command of their natural Captain; and the former, because their Children are all, or the greatest part, of their Band. Tis the Privilege of a *Nai*, or Captain, to lend his Soldier before another, and pay his Debts, thereby to make him his Slave, if he be insolvent; and since the King gives every Officer a *Balon*, he has a certain Number of *Pagayeurs*, or Rowers, allotted him, whom he brands on the Inside of the Wrist with an hot Iron, and Anchor over it, and then these Rowers, called *Bao's*, owe their 6 Months Service to him. Now, the more numerous any Band is, the more powerful and honourable is the Captain esteem'd, and according to a greater or lesser Number he is called by one of these 7 Titles, *Oc-ya*, *Pa-ya*, *Oc-pra*, *Oc-Louang*, *Oc-Counc*, *Oc-Meuning* and *Oc-Pan*.

Their Number and Order.

Women and Priests exempted from the King's Service.

The Authority of the Kings of *Siam* is Absolute and Despotical, and his Greatness consists in this, That he can exercise a Power over all, even his own Brethren, whom it is customary for the King to maim in their Body, take away or weaken their Sight by Fire, render them impotent by dislocating their Members, or sottish by Drinks, that they make them incapable of Reigning, and so secure themselves and their Children against their Enterprizes. This sort of Government, tho' it seems most Regal and Monarchical, yet is really very defective as to the true Ends and Benefits of Governing, for it is terrible and burdensome to the Subject, and noxious to the Prince. As to the People, the Yoke is less heavy on the meaner Subjects than the Nobles; Ambition leads to Slavery and Liberty, and Enjoyments of Life are for vulgar Conditions. The more one is unknown to the Prince, and the further from him, the greater Ease he enjoys; and for this Reason it is, that the Imployments of the Provinces in such Kingdoms are considered as a Recompence of the Services done in the Palace. The Ministry is always tempestuous, not only thro' the Inconstancy of the Prince, but because all Ways are open to the Prince for Complaints against his Ministers, which easily overturn the best establish'd Favours. Nevertheless, the King of *Siam* has that Regard for his People, as not to augment his Taxes on tilled Lands, and to lay no Impositions on Corn or Fish, that what is necessary for Life should not be dear. But those Kings, which are so absolutely Masters of the Fortune and Life of their Subjects, are so much the more wavering on their Thrones. They find little or no Fidelity in any Persons, no not so much as in their Domesticks. The People, which have no true Property, and can hardly call any thing their own that is above Ground, look upon themselves to have no Obligation to their Prince or Country, and so care not to do any thing for the Defence of either, so great Defects have absolute Kingdoms.

The Government.

The Inconveniences of it.

Corn and Fish not taxed.

The King of *Siam*, who reigns at present, is without Contradiction the greatest Prince that ever govern'd that State. He is somewhat under the middle Stature, but strait, and well shap'd: He hath an engaging Air, and a sweet and obliging Carriage, especially to Strangers. He is active and brisk, an Enemy to Idleness and Laziness, which is generally so delightful to the Princes of the *East*, and which they look upon as the greatest Prerogative of a Crown; but this Prince is always either in the Woods hunting Elephants, or in his Palace minding the Affairs of his Kingdom. He is no Lover of War, because it ruins his People, whom he most tenderly loves; but if his Subjects revolt, or Neighbouring Princes affront him, no King takes a more conspicuous Revenge, or appears more passionate for Glory.

The present King of *Siam*.

By the Sharpness of his Wit he hath discover'd the Erroniousness of the Religion of his Ancestors, and does not believe a God, that regards not what passes in the World, nor a Thousand other Superstitions taught by the *Talapoins*; but he believes a God who is Eternal, whose Providence continually governs the World, and disposes of all Things; and prays to him with the most profound Reverence Morning and Evening daily; but reigns after the Manner of his Ancestors.

The King of *Siam*'s Faith.

The King of *Siam*'s Palaces have 3 Inclosures, which at *Siam* are so far distant the one from the other, that the Space between them appears like vast Courts. Within the innermost are the King's Apartment, a Court and Garden, called *Vang*, and the whole Palace is called *Praffat*. At *Louvo*, besides an excellent Situation in general, there is nothing remarkable, but the Roof of the King's Apartment, which shines like Gold, for the Tiles are every one varnish'd with Yellow, and cost about 10 Groats apiece. All these Palaces have their Officers within, who always lodge in the Palace, and their Offices are always exercised in it, and their Officers without, who have no Function within the Palace, and yet do nothing without, but for the Service of the Palace. The *Siamese* never pass by the Palace, unless the Stream forces them down, and then the King's Servants pelt them with Showers of Peafe; nor enter, or go out of the *Vang* without prostrating themselves.

His Palace, and the Officers of it.

The *Oc-ya Vang* commands in the *Vang*, takes care of the Reparations of the Palace, the Order to be observed in it, and of the Expence which is made for the Maintenance of the King, his Wives, Eunuchs, and such as dwell with him in the *Vang*.

The

The Gates of the Palace are always shut, and behind each ſtands a Porter, who when any one knocks advertiſeth the Officer of the Incloſure of it, who views the Perſon, and ſmells his Breath, that none arm'd or drunk may enter into it. Between the a firſt Incloſures, and under a Pent-houſe is a ſmall Number of Soldiers unarm'd and ſtooping, called *Kenbai*, or the Painted Arms. They are commanded by an Officer called *Oneavae*, and are the King's Executioners, watch the King's Perſon, and row the King's *Balon*. Theſe are his only Foot-Guard; their Office is Hereditary, and their Number muſt not exceed 600; but on Days of Ceremony, as the Audience of Ambaſſadors, &c. he cauſes his own and Lords Slaves to be arm'd out of his Magazines, and the *Meuing Tchion* is the Captain of them.

His Horſe-Guard is compoſed of Men from *Laos* and *Meen*, 2 Neighbouring Countries, and is as numerous as he pleaſes: An Officer called *Oc Coune-Ran-Patchi* commands this Guard on the Right-Hand, and another called *Oc-Coune-Petratcha* commands it on the Left Hand; but the Guard of *Laos* have an Officer of their own, called *Oc-ya-Lao*, and the *Meens* have their Captain, called *Oc-ya-Meen*. Beſides this, the King of *Siam* has a Foreign Horſe-Guard conſiſting of 60 *Moors*, Natives of the *Mogul's* Country, eſteem'd Cowards; 20 *Chineſe Tartars*, arm'd with Bows and Arrows, and formidable for their Courage; 50 *Reggiouts*, true *Indians*, famous for their Courage. Theſe do not keep Guard in the Palace, but only attend the King upon Notice when he goes out. The King furniſhes this Guard with Arms, and pays them 540 Livres every Man, and gives them a red Stuff-Veſt each every Year. In the firſt Incloſure are likewiſe Stables for ſuch Elephants and Horſes as the King eſteems moſt of, called Elephants and Horſes by *Name*; for the King gives Names of Honour to all Officers and Beaſts he likes. The chief Querry, who takes care of the King's Horſes for their Maintenance and Riding, is called *Oc-Louang Tokumpori*. He has a Privilege of ſpeaking to the King, which neither his *Belat*, or Lieutenant, called *Oc-Meuing Si Sing Toup Patchat*, nor any other inferior Officer has. The Elephants of *Name* are treated with more or leſs Dignity, according as their *Name* is more or leſs honourable; but every one of them have ſeveral Men at his Service, and never ſtir out without Trappings. What Elephants of *Name* cannot be kept within the Compaſs of the Palace have Stables cloſe by.

The Care of the King's *Balons* and of his Gallies belongs to an Officer called *Calla-hom*, who preſides over the Arſenal, which is over-againſt the Palace, the River running between, locks up the Barges in Trenches encloſed with Wood, and appoints Watches every Night to keep them, eſpecially the *Balons* of Ceremony, which are moſt curiouſly and finely adorn'd. In the *Vang* in the Hall of Audience, where the King ſhews himſelf only at a Window, attend 44 young Men, the oldeſt of which hardly exceeds 25 Years, called *Mabaslek* or Pages. They are divided into 4 Bands, and proſtrate themſelves in the Hall, 2 on the King's Right Hand, and as many on his Left. The King gives them every one a Name and a Sabre, and they carry his Orders to the Pages without, called *Calaang*, who are very numerous, and are to carry his Commiſſions both Ordinary and Extraordinary into the Provinces: Beſides, theſe Pages ſerve him with Betel, take care of his Arms, keep his Books, and when he pleaſes read them to him. They are commanded by 4 Officers, called *Oc-meuing*, or *Pra-Meuing*. They are in great Eſteem, becauſe they ſo nearly approach their Prince, but not all in the ſame Degree. There is alſo another Officer in the Palace, who alone has the Privilege of not proſtrating himſelf before the King his Maſter, which renders his Office very honourable. He always has his Eyes fix'd upon his Prince to receive his Orders, which he underſtands by certain Signs, and which he ſignifies by Signs to the Officers which are without the Hall.

There are other Officers, who have Charge of the Wardrobe, and the moſt conſiderable of them is he that toucheth the King's Bonnet, altho' he be not permitted to put it upon the King's Head. He is a Prince of the Royal Blood of *Cambaya*, becauſe the King of *Siam* boaſts of his Deſcent from that Royal Race, not being able to vaunt of a Lineal Succeſſion to the Kings his Predeceſſors. The Title of this Maſter of the Wardrobe is *Oc-ya out haya tenne*. Under him another Officer, called *Oc-ya Rajia Vonſa*, has the Charge of the Cloaths. As to the King of *Siam's* own Chamber, the true Officers thereof are Women, and 'tis they only that have a Privilege of entring therein. They make the King's Bed, and dreſs his Meat: They cloath him, and wait on him at Table; but none but himſelf touches his Head when he is attired, or puts any thing over his Head.

The Purveyors carry the Proviſions to the Eunuchs, and they give them to the Women, and ſhe which cooks them uſes Salt and Spices only by Weight, thereby never to put in more or leſs, which ſeems to be a Rule preſcrib'd by the Phyſicians to the King, by reaſon of his unhealthy Diſpoſition, and not an ancient Cuſtom of the Palace. The Women never go out, but with the King, nor the Eunuchs, without expreſs Order. 'Tis reported, that he has 8 or 10 Eunuchs only, as well White as Black. The late Queen was both his Wife and Siſter, and was called *Nang Achamahiſy*; but the King's Name is carefully and ſuperſtitiouſly conceal'd, for fear any Inchantments ſhould be made on it, tho' others ſay; The King has no Name till after his Death, and then his Succeſſor names him. The Queen rules all the reſt of the King's Wives, which are 8 or 10, as their Sovereign, judges and puniſheth them, which ſhe doth ſometimes ſo ſeverely, that if the King loves any of the Ladies more than the reſt, he removes her from under her Uſage. The Queen hath her Elephants, Balons and Officers to take care of her and accompany her, when ſhe goes abroad, but none but her Women and Eunuchs ſee her; for if ſhe goes on an Elephant or in a *Balon*, ſhe rides in a Chair with Curtains about her, thro' which ſhe can ſee what ſhe pleaſes, but cannot be ſeen of any, and Reſpect commands, that if they cannot avoid her, they ſhould turn their Back to her by proſtrating themſelves when ſhe paſſes along. Beſides, ſhe has her Magazines, Ships and Treaſures, and exerciſes Commerce, which is ſo unalienable a Privilege, that the King's Daughter ſtood for it with her Father.

In this Kingdom Daughters never ſucceed to the Crown; they are hardly look'd upon as free, but the Queen's eldeſt Son is always Heir by Law: Nevertheleſs, by the Favour of the King, and thro' the natural Reſpect that this People have for Age, an elder Son, though of the Concubines, is often preferred.

The common Uſage of the Court of *Siam* is to hold a Council twice every Day, about 10 in the Morning, and 10 at Night. In the King of *Siam's* Council Civil Cauſes and Affairs of State are decided after this Manner: When any Cauſe is brought before him, he commits it to a certain Councellor to hear and examine it, and paſs a Conſultative Sentence upon it, and hitherto the King's Preſence is not neceſſary; but when this is done, the King is to paſs a definite Sentence upon it, and to that End a Report is read to him concerning the former Conſult, and reſuming all the Advices, he confutes thoſe which he approves not, and then decides: But if the Affair ſeems to him to merit a more mature Deliberation, he makes no Deciſion, but propounding his Difficulties to ſuch of his Council as are of a different Opinion, and cauſing them to make a Report of their new Conſultation in a full Council before him, he conſummates his Determination; yet ſometimes in Affairs of great Importance he will conſult the principal *Sanera's*, or Superiors of the *Talapoins*, tho' he is not obliged to ask, or follow any other Advice than his own. He often puniſhes ill, and rewards good Advice, which being ſo eſteem'd according to his own Senſe, his Miniſters ſet themſelves more to divine his Sentiments than declare their own, tho' they often miſtake, becauſe he ſtudies to conceal his Opinion from them. The Affair which he conſults them about is not always real, but feigned to exerciſe their Judgments. He has alſo a Cuſtom to examine his Officers about the *Pra-Fem-Ra*, i. e. The Book of all their Duty, and if they do not anſwer exactly, chaſtize them with the Baſtinado.

'Tis an ancient Law of the State, eſtabliſh'd for the Safety of the King, that the Courtiers ſhall not viſit him without his Leave, and always ſpeak aloud at their Meetings, except at Weddings and Funerals. The Trade of an Informer, ſo odious to free-born Men in all Places, is commanded to all Perſons at *Siam* under Pain of Death for the leaſt Things, ſo that ſcarce any thing is known by 2, but the King hears of it by the one, for fear the other ſhould pre-

vent

vent him, and few can offend in any thing without being punish'd with Rigor; for he puts to Death whom he pleaseth without any Formality of Justice, and that in his own Presence; sometimes the Accuser with the Criminal, and Innocent with the Calumniator. He makes use of Variety of Punishments; sometimes he exposes the Offenders to the Tygers, sometimes to an enraged Bull, and sometimes to the Elephants, either to be trampled under Foot, and slain, or to be toss'd without killing; for they say, that Elephants are so docible, that they will do either as they are order'd. But his ordinary Chastizements are such as have some Relation to the Nature of the Crimes committed. As for Example; Extortion and Robbery, by swallowing Silver or Gold melted, Lying, or betraying Secrets, by sewing up the Mouth; Concealing what ought to be discover'd, by slitting up the Mouth; Neglects in the Execution of Orders, by pricking the Head with a Sabre to punish the Memory. The Punishment of the Sword is exercised not only by cutting off the Head, but cutting a Man in two. The Cudgel sometimes extends to Death, but when it doth not, 'tis very rigorous, and causes Loss of all Knowledge. If a Prince be to be put to Death, they will not shed the Royal Blood, but starve or stifle him.

Besides these Capital Punishments, they have some infamous, as to expose a Man in Publick loaded with Irons, and with his Neck in a kind of Ladder or Pillory, called *Cangue*, or, *Ka*; in the Stocks, or with Manacles. Sometimes they bury the Criminal up to the Shoulders, and for the greater Infamy give him Cuffs or Blows upon the Head, or cause Women to stroke him on the Head, which is esteem'd one of the greatest Affronts. But this is particular among them, that the most infamous Punishment is reproachful no longer than it lasts, and he that is so punish'd to Day, the Prince will take into the most important Office to Morrow. Yea, they'll boast of the Punishments inflicted by the King, as Badges of his Paternal Care and Goodness to them, and he will accept of Compliments and Presents from such as have suffer'd the Bastinado. At *Siam* the Father sometimes shares in the Punishment of his Son, as answering for the Education he has given him; and a superior Officer is punish'd for the Offences of an inferior, because he ought to watch over him, and having Power to correct him, is answerable for his Carriage. Lastly, The Appearance of Guilt renders an Action criminal at *Siam*, and to be accused is enough to make a Man culpable.

At the Court of *Siam* Ambassadors have not the Honour given them which has been thought their Due by all Nations, because they are not look'd upon to represent their Masters, but to be their Messengers, and therefore they give all their Respects to the Letters of Credence, of which they are Bearers. The King sends no Person to reside at any Foreign Court, but to dispatch a Business and return. He never sends more or less than 3 Ambassadors together, of whom the first is called *Kroja Tout*, i.e. The Royal Messenger, and the other 2 called *Oubha Tout*, and *Tri Tout*, are in all Things govern'd by him. When any Ambassador has his Audience of Leave, the King of *Siam* gives him a *Receipis* of his Letter, and if he returns an Answer, he sends an Ambassador on Purpose. A Foreign Ambassador which arrives at *Siam* is stopp'd at the Entrance of the Kingdom, until the King has Intelligence of it. Every Foreign Ambassador is lodg'd and maintain'd by the King of *Siam*, and during his Stay may exercise Merchandize, but cannot treat of any Affair till he has deliver'd his Letters of Credence, and imparted his Original Instructions. No Ambassador can go into the Metropolis, till he is to have Audience, nor stay after his Audience of Leave. All publick Audiences are in the Metropolis, and that with great Ceremony, *viz.* All the Guards in Arms, and the Elephants and Horses in their best Harness. In all Audiences the King speaks first, and having propounded some Questions almost always the same, he orders the Ambassador to answer them to the *Barcalon*. Harangues please him not at all, but he thinks the longer an Ambassador speaks, the less he honours him. After the King has spoken to an Ambassador, he gives him Arak, Betel and a Vest, and sometimes a Sabre and Gold-Chain, all which he immediately puts on. If they receive any Presents in Embassies, they give open Demonstrations of Respect immediately; if it be a Garment, by putting it on; if an Horse, by building a Stable for it, &c. that they may seem to honour the Prince that sends them, tho' indeed they are really pleased with nothing, but the Profit. All the Oriental Princes esteem it a great Honour to receive Embassies, but to send as few as they can, because they look upon them as a kind of Homage, and they retain Foreign Ministers with them as long as they can, to prolong the Honour they receive by it. The Ambassadors of *Siam* are accountable, because they are entrusted with Goods to trade with, and they can seldom discharge themselves so well, as to escape the Bastinado. Thus far of the Court and Officers belonging to it.

The Officers of the Kingdom of *Siam* are called by one general Name, *Mandarins*, which Word also extends to the Children of principal Officers, as Persons of Quality. The King of *Siam* makes no considerable *Mandarin*, but he gives him a new Name, as a Mark of Honour. It is either purposely invented, or has been formerly born by Princes of the Blood Royal, or other Persons of great Dignity. The Law of this State is, That all Offices shall be Hereditary, but none are permitted to sell them; yet very few Families can hold them long, because the least Fault in the Patent, or the capricious Humour of the Prince, or the Dotage of the Inheritor, is enough to deprive any one, and when it happens, 'tis always without Recompence. No Officer at *Siam* has any Salary, but their principal Gain consists in Extortion, Pillaging and Bribes. The King, indeed, lodgeth them, and gives them some Boxes of Gold and Silver for Betel, some Arms, Elephants, Horses, Buffalo's and Slaves, also a Balon and some arable Lands, but they are but lent, for they are to return with the Office, and to obtain them the King makes a Pretence to be Heir to the Officers.

All Officers take an Oath of Fidelity to their Prince, who will not dispence with it to any Persons that are in his Service. It consists in swallowing the Water over which the *Talapoins* have pronounced some Imprications against him that is to drink it, in case he departs from his Allegiance.

The Publick Laws of *Siam* are written in 3 Volumes: The first, called *Pra Tam Ra*, contains the Names, Functions and Prerogatives of all the Offices: The 2d, entituled, *Pra Tam Nen*, is a Collection of the Constitutions of ancient Kings: And the 3d, styled, *Pra Kopia Cammanot*, is a Collection of the Constitutions of this King's Father. A Translation of these Laws would have been useful and pleasant, but it is impossible to be attain'd. There is no Chancellor at *Siam*, but every Officer that has Power to give Sentences or Orders in Writing, which they call *Tara*, has a Seal, which the King gives him, and the King has a Royal Seal, which he gives to no Person whatsoever, and which he uses in all Writings, which proceed from him. The Figure on them is not hollow, but *in Relievo*. The Seal is rubb'd over with a kind of red Ink, and imprinted on the Paper by some inferior Officer, but taken off by him to whom it belongs.

The Kingdom of *Siam* is divided into the Upper and Lower. The Upper lies towards the N. and hath 7 Provinces, which bear the Names of their chief Cities, *Porsleuc*, *Sanqueleuc*, *Lacontai*, *Campeng-pet*, *Cocontephna*, *Pechebonne* and *Pitchai*. The Lower contains the Southern Part of the Kingdom, which has these Provinces, *Jor*, *Patana*, *Ligor*, *Tenasserim*, *Coussebonne*, *Petelong* or *Bordelong*, and *Tenai*. Of these the Province of *Jor* renders Obedience to its own Governour, whom the *Portuguese* call King, because he is in no Subjection to the King of *Siam*, nor is likely to obey him, unless the Kingdom of *Siam* should extend it self to the whole *Peninsula extra Gangem*.

The People of *Patana* are governed by a Woman, whom they elect out of the same Family, and always old, that she may not marry, and in her Name the most trusty Persons rule. The *Portuguese* call her Queen, and tho' she sends to the King of *Siam* every 3 Years 2 small Trees, one of Gold and the other of Silver, either for Tribute, or in Consideration of Trade, yet she owes him no Assistance in his War, nor is his Vassal.

All the rest of the Provinces contain in each of them several Jurisdictions, which have all their President or Governour, with several Under-Officers for Judicature. The Governour is called *Tchaou-Meuang*, i.e. the Lord of the Province. He has a deliberate Voice, whereas all his inferior Officers have but a Consultative. He rules

How the King punishes, by Death, and the Jesuits Ways.

To infamous.

Punishments at some ages in Favour.

Ambassadors, and their Audience.

Their Opinion of Embassies.

The Officers of the Kingdom. 1. Mandarins.

An Oath of Fidelity.

Laws.

Siam divided into Upper and Lower.

A Woman Governour.

Governours of Provinces. 1. The Tchaou-Meuang, and his Revenues.

rules the whole Jurisdiction, and commands the Garrisons, unless the Prince hath otherwise disposed of them by express Order. The Legal Rights of this *Tchaou-Meuang*, besides the Presents which come to him from the King, are these that follow: 1. A Share with the King in the Rents of the arable Lands, called, *Naa*, Fields, *viz.* A Quarter of a *Tical* for 40 Fathom, or 200 Foot square. 2. The Profit of all Confiscations, of all the Penalties of the Exchequer, and 10 *per Cent.* of all the Fines to the Party. Confiscation. Confiscations are fixed by Law according to the Cases, and extend sometimes to the Estate only in whole, or part, and sometimes to the Person condemned also, and his Children. 3. Officers to execute the King's Orders, who accompany him every where, and row his *Balon*. They are called *Kenlai*, or, *Painted Arms*, because they pink and mangle their Arms, and lay Gun-Powder on the Wounds, which paints them with a faded Blue. 4. To take Customs of Merchant-Ships in Maritime Governments, but they are inconsiderable. 5. To levy Taxes, as Sovereign, on the Frontiers. 6. To exercise Commerce every where under the Name of their Secretary, or other of their Domestick Servants. 7. In Places where there are Fish-Ponds to take the best of the Fish when the Pond is emptied, but for their own Use only, and not to sell. But the Kings of *Siam* have ruin'd and destroy'd the most potent *Tchaou-Meuang* as much as they can, and have substituted in their Places some Triennial Governours by Commission, whom they term *Pouran*. They *Pouran.* have the same Honours and Authority as the *Tchaou-Meuang*, but not the same Profits, for they have no more Profits than what the King assigns them at naming them. Sometimes this *Pouran* is made to supply the Place of the *Tchaou-Meuang*, when he is obliged to absent himself from his Government, and in that Case he is to take one Moiety of his Profits, and leave him the other.

Officers of Justice. The ordinary Officers of the Tribunals of Judicature, which are subject to these Governours are, 1. The *Oc ya Tchaou-Meuang*: 2. *Oc-pra Belat*: 3. *Oc-pra Fockebateſt*, a kind of Attorney-General. His Office is to be a strict Spy upon the Governour, and he is nominated to that Trust by the King, but he usually conspires with the other Officers to pillage the People. 4. *Oc-pra Peun*, the Captain of the Garrison under the Governour, but he has no Authority but in the Field. 5. *Oc-pra Maha-Tai*, i. e. The Chief of the People, who levies Soldiers, or rather demands them of the *Nai*, sends Provisions to the Army, sees that the Rolls of the People be well made, and in general executes all the Governours which concern the People. 6. The *Oc-pra Sassedi*, who makes and keeps the Rolls of the People. 'Tis a corrupt Office, because every one seeks to have his Name left out of the Rolls for Money, and the *Nai* favours them. 7. *Oc-Louang-Meuang*, who is Mayor of the City. He is to take care of the Government and Watch. 8. *Oc-Louang-Vang*, the Master of the Governour's Palace. He causes it to be repair'd, commands his Guards above the Captain, and orders all the Governour's Charge. 2. *Oc-Louang-Peng*, the Keeper of the Books of their Laws and Customs, according to which they judge. He pronounces Sentences, and reads the Articles of Law, which serves for the Judgment of the Process. 10. *Oc-Louang-Clang*, Keeper of the King's Magazine. He receives the King's Revenues, and sells to the People the King's Commodities, whose Trade he has appropriated to himself. 11. *Oc-Louang-Couca*, who has the Inspection over Foreigners. He protects them, or accuses them to the Governour. 12. Certain Officers in every superior Tribunal to send to the inferior Justices when the *Tchaou-Meuang* or *Pouran* are dead, till the King fills the Place, and they are as many as the inferior Justices. 13. *Oc-Louang*, or *Oc-Counne-Coeng*, the Provost. He is always arm'd with a Sabre, and has *Painted Arms*, like Archers. 14. *Oc-Counne Pa-ya Bat*, the Keeper of the Goal or Prisons.

The Prisons of Siam. *Nai-Gouz*, the true Goaler. Nothing is more cruel than the Prisons of *Siam*, which are Cages of *Bambou*, exposed to all the Injuries of the Air. 15. *Oc-Counne-Narin* commands them that have care of the Elephants, which the King has in every Province almost, because it is difficult to lodge and feed a great Number of Elephants together. 16. *Oc Caunne-Nai-Rang*, the the Purveyor of the Elephants. Lastly, In every Tribunal there is an Officer to read the *Tara*, or King's Orders to the Governour, and an House in some eminent Place to keep them in, as there is in the King's Palace at *Siam* for all Letters he receives from other Kings.

These are the Officers within, and besides them there are other Officers without for the Service of the Province, all depending on the Governour, who tho' they have the like Titles with the Officers within, are inferior to them. All these Officers within have every one their *Balat*, or Lieutenant; *Somien*, their Register, and Hall of Audience in their Houses.

Their Forms of Pleading. 'Tis a general Rule among them, that all Processes should be in Writing, and that they plead not without giving Caution. In managing a Process the *Plaintiff* goes to his principal *Nai*, who is to be his Councellor, and presents him a Petition, which he gives to the Governour, who is to examine it nicely, and if he finds it unjust, not only to reject it, but chastize the Party who presented it, that none may dare to begin any Process rashly, but if he finds it just, then he admits it, and refers it to one of the Councellors, ordinarily to him that presents it, especially if he be the *Nai* of both Parties, putting his Seal to it, and counting the Lines, that nothing be alter'd in it. The Councellor gives it to his Deputy and Clerk, who first make the Report of it at his own House in his Hall of Audience, and then the Clerk presentd by his Master reads it in the Governour's Hall at the Assembly of all the Councellors, but in the Absence of the Governour, who appears not at whatever serves only to prepare the Cause. Here the Parties are called in under a Pretence of reconciling them, which not succeeding (because 'tis for Fashions sake only) the Court orders that the Witnesses be examined before the same Clerk, unless he be declared suspected, and then in such another Court the Clerk reads the Process and Depositions of the Witnesses, and so proceeds to take the Opinions of the Officers, beginning at the last, and writes them down. The Process being thus prepared, the Council appears before the Governour, and his Clerk reads it and the Opinions upon it. The Governour resumes them all, and such Opinions as seem to him not just, he requires the Reasons of, and then pronounces in general such of the Parties condemn'd by Law; whereupon the *Oc-Louang Peng* reads with a loud Voice the Article of Law which respects the Suit, and then the Governour passes Sentence upon the Parties, and it is set down in Writing; but if it be contrary to all Appearance of Justice, it belongs to the *Fockebat*, or the King's Attorney-General, to advertise the Court of it, but not to oppose it. Every Suit ought to end in 3 Days, but some last 3 Years. The Parties may each plead before the Clerk, either himself, or by his Advocate, who must be at least his Cousin German, or he will be punish'd, and the Clerk writes down what they say.

Witnesses examined.

How Sentence is pass'd.

Extraordinary Proofs. 1. By Fire. When ordinary Proofs fail, they have Recourse to several Superstitions used among them for that Purpose, *viz.* By Water, Fire and Vomits. The Proof by Fire is thus: Both Parties with their naked Feet walk upon a Pile of Coles 5 Fathoms long, and one broad, and 2 Men generally walk by the Side of him that passeth over the Fire, and lean with Force upon his Soulders, to hinder him from getting too quick over them. He that has not the Soles of his Feet burnt in this Trial gains his Suit. Sometimes this Proof is perform'd by thrusting their Hands into boiling Oil or Tin, and tho' both of them have been found to fail in a Thousand Instances, yet the *Siamese* cannot be perswaded to change their Form.

2. Water. The Proof by Water is this: The 2 Parties plunge themselves into the Water at the same time, and he that remains longest under Water is thought to have a good Cause.

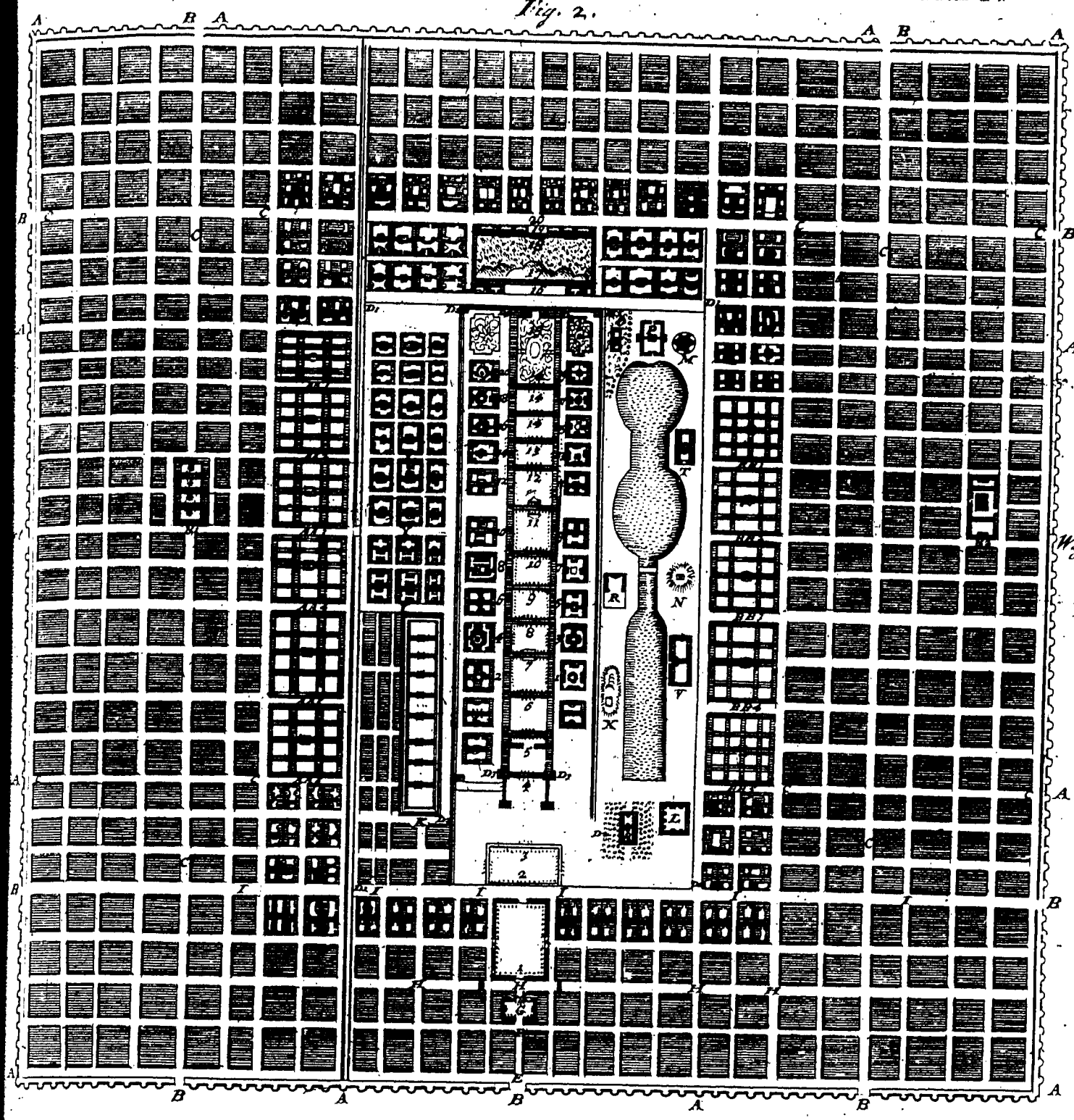
3. Vomiting. The Proof by Vomiting is this: Both Parties swallow certain Pills prepared by the *Talapoins*, and accompanied with Imprecations: He that can keep them in his Stomach without casting them up is said to have a good Cause.

5. Delivering both Parties to the Tygers, &c. These Proofs are made use of before the Judges and all the People, and if both Parties escape either equally well or ill, the King will deliver them to the Tygers, and he whom they spare is judg'd innocent, and if they devour both they are both esteem'd guilty. Appeals are allow'd in all Cases, but they encrease the Charges. None but the King, and he to whom the King grants a Power can pass Sentence of Death, and therefore all Criminals are kept in Prison till the Arrival of the King's Commissioners, whom he sends into the Provinces for that Purpose.

The

THE PLANE OF THE CITY OF PEKIM Y METROPOLIS OF CHINA

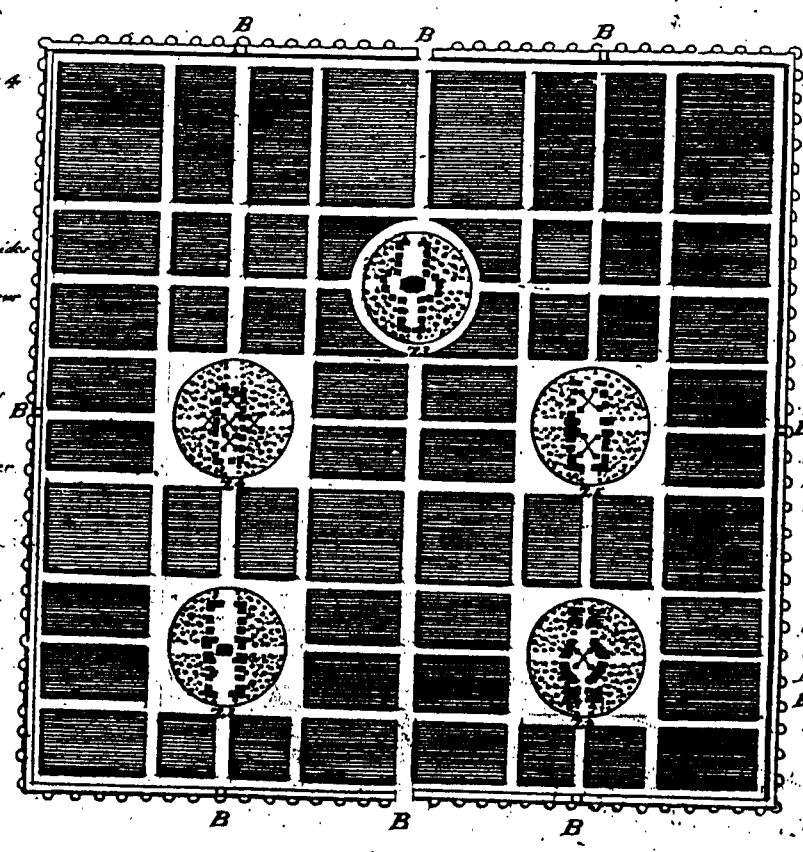
Fig. 2.



A Scale of 10 Chinese furlongs wch amount to 2730 Geometrical Paces one Chinese furlong making 273 Geometrical Paces

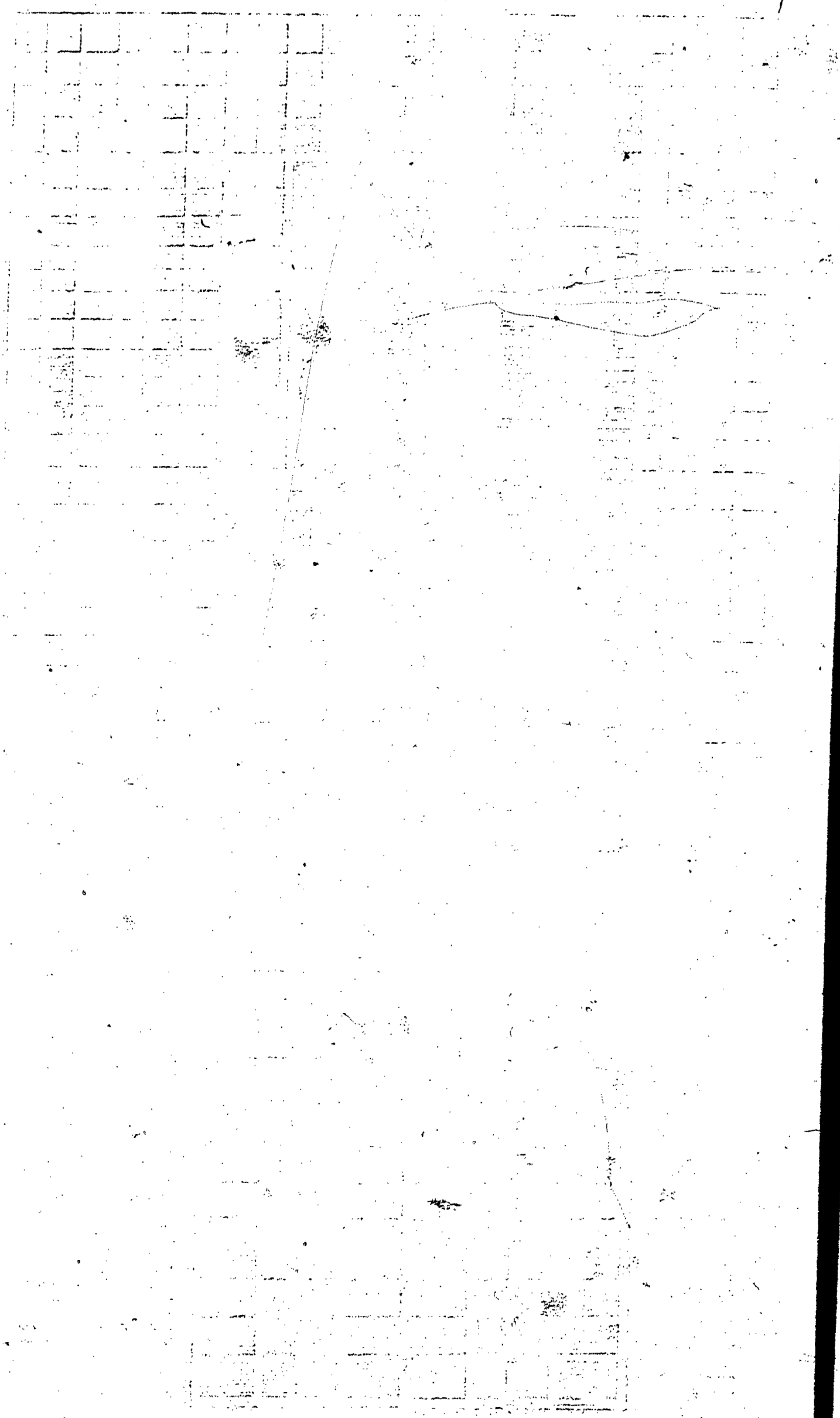
EXPLANATION of the Plane of the City of PEKIM

The Walls of the antient City of Pekim near 4 leagues in Circuite
The 9 Gates of the same Wall
The Streets of the City
The first Enclosure of the Palace two leagues in Circuite
The second Enclosure
The third Enclosure where the Emperour resides
The south and principle Gate of the City
The first street wch you pass through upon your entrance into the City
A Palace encompassed with a Marble Balustrade
The second street wch two Triumphal Arches
The first Apertim.t
The street of perpetual repose
Apertim.t wch is the first within the outer Enclosure of the Pallace
Called the Portal of the beginning
The second Enclosure
Called the supream Portal
Called the supream Imperial Hall
Called the Hall thrice exalted
Called the Supream Hall in the Middle
The Hall of Soveraigne Concord where the Emperour sitts in Council wch his Colaos
The Portal of Heaven
The Mansion of Heaven in wch and ye two at the Emperour lodges himself
The Beautifull House
The House which receives Heaven
Courts and Gardens
The last of the Inner Enclosure



South

16 16 The Highraisd Portal on the south side with a place to manage Horses
17 17 The Park and artificial Mountains
18 18 Consisting of three Houses
19 19 The Portal on the north side
20 20 The Enclosure called ye Portal of repose
123 Are 20 particular places belonging to the 20 Emperour for several uses
K The first Palace between the two Enclosures
L The second Pallace
M 3 Pallace upon the Lake
N 4 Palace upon a Mountain
O 5 Palace near the Lake
P 6 Palace near the Lake
BQ 7 Palace
R 8 Palace of the Fortress
S 1 Temple of ye 4 within ye Palace
T 2 Temple
V 3 Temple
X 4 Temple
Y 24 Places for the Mandarins
Z 5 Temples in ye new City mark 12345
& 1 Temple in the Old City
& 2 Temple in the Old City
AA The 6 Tribunals markd 123456 wch AA
BB The 5 Tribunals of ye military Mandarins



Robbery how punished.

The usual Punishment of Robbery is to pay double or trible Damages, which are divided equally to the Judge and Party; and this Punishment the *Siamese* extend to the unjust Possessors of real Estates: But if, by the King's Permission, a Judge can put a Robber to Death, he can then at Discretion either inflict Death, and fine him as before, but he can't do both.

The King Supream Judge at *Siam*.

In the Metropolis of *Siam* there is no other *Tchaou-Meuang* but the King, and therefore the Functions of Governour and Judge are divided into 2 Offices, and the other Functions of the lesser Offices are given to the Officers of State, but with greater Authority and more pompous Titles. The President of the Tribunal of the City of *Siam*, to whom all the Appleas of the Kingdom do go, they call *Yumrat*. He generally bears the Title of *Oc-ya*, and his Tribunal is in the King's Palace, but he follows not the King when he removes from the Metropolis, but administers Justice in a Tower near the Palace. To him alone belongs the Determinative Voice; but there lies an Appeal from him to the King, if any one will bear the Expence. In which Case the Process is referr'd to, and examined by the King's Council, who prepare it for his Hearing, as the Council of the *Tchaou-Meuang* does. When the King comes to pass Sentence, he resumes the Opinions and Debates of his Council, examines those which seem to him unjust, and then pronounces a definitive Sentence. The Governour of the City of *Siam* is called *Pra-sedet*, who also bears the Title of *Oc-ya*. His Office is to visit and compliment Ambassadors, and manage other publick Matters in the King's Absence, for the Word signifies, *The King is gone*.

The State-Officers.

Among the State-Officers these are the Chief: 1. The *Tchaery*, who has the Distribution of all the inferior Policy of the Kingdom. To him are brought all the Affairs of Provinces. All the Governours do immediately render to him an Account, and do immediately receive Orders from him. He is President of the Council of State.

2. The *Calla-hom*, who has the Appointment of War. He has the Care of the Fortifications, Arms and Ammunitions. He issues out all the Orders that concern the Army, and is naturally General of it, tho' the King may name whom he pleaseth.

3. The *Oc-pra Pipitcharatcha*, corruptly called *Petratcha*, commands all the Elephants and Horses. This is one of the greatest Employments of the Kingdom, because the Elephants are esteem'd the King of *Siam*'s principal Forces. Some there are that say,

The Number of the Elephants of War.

that this Prince maintains 10000 Elephants. 'Tis certain the Number is very great, tho' not exactly known, and 'tis said, that 3 Men at least are required for the Service of every Elephant, who have Officers to command them, and are all subject to this Great Officer. This Office is generally managed by some Person allied to the Crown, and the present *Oc-pra Pipitcharatcha* is a Man in mighty Reputation with his Prince for his Courage, and with the People for his Success and Moderation.

The *Siamese* no Warrior.

But, notwithstanding such seeming Preparations for War, the *Siamese* are wholly ignorant of all Military Arts and Discipline, and so utterly void of Courage, that a naked Sword is sufficient to put an Hundred of them to Flight; for the Opinion of the *Metempsichosis* inspiring them with an Horror of Blood, deprives them likewise of a Spirit of War. They busie themselves only thro' the whole *Indies* in their Wars

Their Way of making Wars.

in making Slaves, for if an Enemy invade any of them in one Place, they'll enter their Enemies Country in another, and both Parties will carry whole Villages Captives. If their Armies meet, they never shoot one at another, but above each other, that their Arrows falling like a Shower upon their Heads, may make them flie, which they seldom fail to do; for as their King orders them not to kill, so they are as afraid they should be killed, and so flie into the Woods for Safety. 'Tis true, they'll rally again soon, but will never stand to a Fight, unless forced to it by their Officers, who on Purpose stand behind to kill all

Wars usual.

that shall dare to flie. But tho' the *Siamese* are such bad Warriors, yet they do not cease to make Wars frequently with their Neighbours, who are neither more potent, nor valiant. They have little Artillery, no Horses, but their Armies consist of Elephants and Infantry, naked and ill arm'd after the Manner

Their Order of Battle.

of the Country. Their Order of Battle and Encampment is thus: They range themselves into 3 Lines, each of which is composed of 3 great square Battalions: The King or General stands in the middle Battalion, which he composes of the best Troops for the Security of his Person, and every Captain keeps himself in the middle of the Battalion he commands. In every Battalion are 16 Male Elephants placed in the Rear. They begin their Fights with their Artillery, and if that ends it not, proceed to their Arrows and small Shot, but never come to a close Fight, or attack one another with Vigor. They rely much upon their Elephants in their Combats, tho' for want of Bridles they can never be securely governed, and frequently return upon their Masters when they are wounded. They never venture upon Sieges, because they dare not attack any Place which is never so little fortified, but by Treachery or Famine. The King of *Siam* has 5 or 6 small Ships, which in time of Peace, he uses for Merchandize but in time of War he arms as Privateers, but never intends to kill any Body, but only take some Reprizals from his Neighbours that have injured him, as he imagines.

Elephants not under Command.

Besides the Officers for his Stores, Ammunition and Elephants for War, the King of *Siam* has another Great Officer of State, called, 4. The *Pra-Clang*, or, as the *Portuguese* corruptly term him, The *Barcalon*, who has the Appointment of the Commerce, as well within the Kingdom as without. He is the King of *Siam*'s Superintendent of his Magazines, or if you will, his chief Factor. He is the Minister of Foreign Affairs, which relate all almost to Commerce, and to him it is that all the Foreigners at *Siam*, who have come thither for Trade, address themselves in their Affairs. He receives the Revenues of the Cities.

The *Pra-Clang*, or *Barcalon*.

The King of *Siam*'s Revenues.

The King of *Siam*'s Revenues are these: (1.) For every 40 Fathom square of cultivated Land a *Mayon*, or Quarter of a *Tical* by the Year. This Rent is divided with the *Tchaou-Meuang*, where there is one, and is never well paid to the King on the Frontiers. (2.) For Boats, or *Balons*, a *Tical* for every Fathom in Length, and 6 *Ticals* for every *Balon* 6 Cubits broad. This Duty is levied like a kind of Custom at certain Places upon the River, as well upon Foreigners as Natives. (3.) Customs on all Goods imported or exported, besides something for the Body of the Ship according to its Bigness. (4.) For every Furnance where Arak or Rice-Brandy is made 2 *Ticals per Annum*, and one for every one that sells it by Wholesale or Retale. (5.) For every Durion-Tree, whether it bear or not, half a *Tical* a Year. (6.) For every Betel-Tree a *Tical per Annum*. (7.) For every Arak-Tree 6 Nuts. (8.) A Tribute of all Schools of Recreation and the *Oc-ya Meen*; as also for all Coco-Trees half a *Tical*, and for all Orange-Trees, Mango-Trees, Mangoustainers and Pimantiers, a *Tical per Annum*. (9.) The King's Gardens and Demesn Lands tilled by his Slaves, and the 6 Months Service of his Subjects. The Fruits of these Lands are gather'd and kept for Maintenance of his House, Elephants, Slaves, Horses, and other Cattle, and the Overplus he sells. (10.) The Presents which he receives and Legacies bequeathed to him by Officers at their Death, or which he takes from their Succession, and the extraordinary Duties he exacts of his Subjects for maintaining Ambassadors and building Forts. (11.) Confiscations and Fines laid upon Offenders by the Courts of Justice. (12.) Six Months Service, which as it is sometimes converted into a Payment of Rice, Sapan-Wood, *Lignum Aloes*, Salt-Petre, Elephants, Beasts Skins, Ivory, and other Commodities, so it is sometimes paid in ready Money, and upon this Account the Rich are exempted. Their Service is valued at 2 *Ticals* a Month. (13.) His other Revenues arise from Commerce and Merchandize, which he now useth with his Subjects and Foreigners, and that not only by Wholesale, but Retale, for which he hath Shops in the *Bazars*, or Markets, and thus he sells Cotton-Cloth. All the *Calin*, or Tin, dug in the Nation, except at *Jonsalam* on the Gulph of *Bangal*; all the Ivory which his Subjects find or get, Salt-Petre, Lead and Sapan, Arak, Powder, Sulphur and Arms, Skins of Beasts, which his Subjects sell to him, because by a Treaty of Peace he is obliged to sell them again to the *Hollanders*.

The rest of the Commerce of *Siam* in Rice, Fish, Salt, brown Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Ambergrease, Wax, Varnish, Edible Bird-Nests made of Sea-Froth, Gum, Gut, Incense, Oil, Coco's, Cotton, Cinnamon, Nericiphar, Cassia, Dates, and several other Things, is permitted to all, only the *Oc-pra Tainam*, who receives the Revenue of the Rivers, hinders those Ways of

Their Care to preserve Fish.

Fishing, which destroy too much Fish at once. The Revenue of the King of *Siam* is reputed every way to be 2 Millions, and 'tis reported that the present King has doubled it to what it formerly was.

Of the *Talapoins*. Their Original.

Concerning the *Talapoins*, who are the last Degree of Men among the *Siamese*, in my Method, their Original, as also that of their Brethren, the *Bramins*, *Jogues* and *Bonzees*, is so obscure in Antiquity, that it is difficult, in my Opinion, ever to discover it. The *Indians* themselves believe these kind of Men and their Doctrine as ancient as the World, but they name not their Founder, but think that all the Men were of this Profession, whose Statues are now, or formerly have been worshipped in their Temples. They live

Convents.

in Covents, which consist of many little Cells, ranged within an Inclosure of *Bambou*, which take up a very large square Piece of Ground, like the Tents of an Army incamped. In the Middle of the Ground, as

Their Temples.

the Place most honourable, stands a Temple, which they call *Pihan*; but the *Portuguese*, a *Pagode*, from the *Persian* Word *Poutgheda*, i. e. a Temple of Idols, and so it signifies equally an Idol and a Temple. The Cells are little single Houses erected on Piles, and the Superiors is built after the same Manner, but a little

Pyramids about them.

larger and higher than the rest. Certain Pyramids stand near, and quite round the Temple, which are all inclosed within 4 Walls; between which and the Cells there lies a great void Piece of Ground, which is as it were the Court of the Convent. Sometimes these Walls are bare, and sometimes there are cover'd Galleries made by them like Cloisters, along which on a Counter-Wall Breast-high are placed a great Number of gilded Idols.

Talapoinesses.

In some of these Convents there are *Talapoinesses*, or Women, who in most Things observe the Rules of the *Talapoins*, and live in little Cells by themselves among the *Talapoins*. They are all aged Women, and upon that Account are thought to need no Guard for their Chastity.

The *Nens*.

The *Nens*, who are Children placed in the Convents to be educated by the *Talapoins*, are dispersed 2 or 3 to a Cell. Some grow old in this Condition, and the eldest of them is called a *Taten*. To him it belongs to pluck up the Weeds which grow in the Convent, which the *Talapoins* themselves cannot do, as they believe, without Sin. The *Nens* are taught in a School of *Bambou's*, and there is an Hall for the People to carry their Alms to, and for the ordinary Meetings of the *Talapoins*.

Superiors of their Convents, call'd *Sancrats*.

Every Convent is under a Superior, called *Tchaou-Vat*, i. e. Lord or Master of the Convent. Some of these are of greater Dignity than others, called *Sancrats*, and of these the *Sancrat* of the Convent of the Palace is most honourable of all, yet no Superior has a Jurisdiction or Authority over another. Only the *Sancrats* can make *Talapoins*, as Bishops do Priests, and therefore some have compared them to Christian Bishops, and think that Christianity was planted in this Country, and so much the more because the Convents in which they preside have Stones set about them, bearing a Resemblance of a Mitre upon a Pedistal at a Distance. The King of *Siam* gives to the principal *Sancrats* a Name, Umbrella and Sedan, and some Men to carry it; but they never make use of this Equipage, but to wait on the King, and no *Talapoins* ever carry the Sedan. The *Sancrat* of the Palace is new called *Pra-Viriat*.

The Profession of the *Talapoins*, and their Business.

The Profession of the *Talapoins* is to keep themselves from the Sins of the People, to live on Alms, and lead a penitent Life for the Sins of the Givers of them. They eat in common, and are very hospitable to Strangers, and even to Christians, for which End they have every one a Bed in their Cells for the Lodging of Strangers. They are obliged to keep a perpetual Cælibacy, and are exempted from the 6 Months Service to the King. Some of them live in Woods, and are more strict than such as live in the Cities, tho' the King keeps them strictly to their Rules, and especially Cælibacy, lest all his Subjects should embrace that Order. They may be reduced to Seculars for want of Learning, as several Thousands lately were. They educate the Youth, as is above-mentioned, and explain their Doctrine out of the *Baly* Books.

Their constant Preaching.

They preach every next Day after the New and Full Moon, and the People are ever very constant in the Temples. From the time the Rains have fill'd the River, till the Inundation begins to sink, they preach every Day from 6 in the Morning till Dinner, and from one in the Afternoon till 5 in the Evening. The Preacher sits cross-legg'd in an high Chair of State, and several *Talapoins* relieve one another in this Office. The People approve their Doctrine in these Words, *Sa, cou si*, i. e. *It is so, Sir*; and then give them Alms so freely, that such as preach much easily become rich. Now also is the time of their Fasting, and as they are always very sober, so they report that some have fasted above 100 Days.

Their Fasting.

After Rice-Harvest 'tis a Custom for 3 Weeks to watch by Nights in the middle of the Fields under small Huts of Branches of Leaves ranged square, and because they make no Fires to scare away the wild Beasts, the People look upon it as a Miracle that they are not devoured, and think that the very Beasts respect them for their Holiness, which is the Reason that the *Talapoins* of the Woods dwell so securely. They go with naked Feet and bare-headed, like the rest of the People, and about their Thighs wear a *Pagne*, like the Seculars, but of Yellow Linen, which is the Colour of their Kings; but they have no Muslin-Shirt or Vest. Their Habit is of 4 Pieces: 1. The *Angsa*, or Shoulder-Belt, of Yellow. It crosses their Body from the Left Shoulder to the Right Hip, on which it buttons. 2. The *Paschivon*, or Cloth of several Pieces, because it ought to be patched in several Places. 'Tis a kind of Scapulary that covers the Belt, and reaches to the Ground behind and before. 3. The *Pa-Pac*. It is like an Hood, and descends to the Navel before, and as far behind. It is sometimes red, and worn by the *Sancrats* and most ancient *Talapoins*. 4. The *Rappaud*, which is a Scarf of yellow Cloth, girt about the Middle to keep the 2 last in a Posture. When they go a begging, they carry an Iron Basin to receive the Alms given them, put in a Linen Bag, which hangs on the Left Side by 2 Ends of a Rope like a Belt over the Right Shoulder. They shave all their Head, Beard and Eye-brows with Razors of Copper, and defend themselves from the Sun with a little Umbrella made of a Talapot-Leaf. The Superiors shave the young ones and themselves, because none can touch them without Disrespect. They shave themselves on the New and Full Moons, and on those Days both themselves and the People fast, *i. e.* eat nothing from Noon, and the People bring their Alms into their Convents, which consist of Money, Fruits, Pagnes, or live Cattel: They will not eat dead ones, tho' they let them die in their Convents of themselves before they eat them.

Their Watching.

Their Pagne.

Their Habit.

Their Shaving.

Besides these Festival Days common to all the Temples, every Temple has a particular one to receive the Alms, as if it were the Feast of its Dedication. What the People give to their Idols, they present it to the *Talapoins* to offer it, who in a little time take it away, and convert it to their own Use. They never offer bloody Sacrifices, because they are prohibited from killing any thing.

Their Festivals.

On the Full Moon of the 5th Month the *Talapoins* wash their Idol with perfumed Water all but the Head, which they omit out of Respect. Then the *Sancrats* and *Talapoins* are wash'd in the Presence of the People, and in particular Families the Children wash the Parents, without any Regard of Sex, for the Son and Daughter equally wash their Father and Mother, Grandfather and Grandmother.

Their Washings.

After Washing, which is done by Break of Day, they go with the Superior to the Temple to Prayers for 2 Hours, which they sing or repeat out of the *Baly* Books. In these their Morning-Prayers, which the People never miss, they call to mind 3 Things: God, and the Law he hath left them to observe: Their Parents, and the Benefits received from them: Their Priests, and the Reverence they owe them. The *Talapoins* sit cross-legg'd at Prayers. In entring in, or going out of their Temples they all prostrate themselves 3 times before the Statue. In going from Prayers the *Talapoins* go into the City to beg Alms for an Hour, having first saluted their Superior by prostrating themselves to the Ground with their Forehead, and putting one of his Feet on their Head. To crave Alms, they stand at their Gates, saying nothing, and if they receive nothing in as little time as an Ox is drinking, they pass on, and 'tis seldom that the People send them away without giving them something. At their Return from begging, they go to Breakfast, and go to their Studies till Dinner. After Dinner they read a Lecture to the little *Talapoins*, and sleep, and at the Declining of the Day sweep the Temple, sing for 2 Hours as in the Morning, and then lie down. They eat not in the Evening, or if they do, 'tis Fruit only. The Convents have some Gardens and tilled Lands, and

Their Prayers and Singing.

Their Way of Spending the Day.

and Slaves to plow them. The *Talapoins* also have each of them a Servant or two, called *Tapacaon*, who are really Seculars, tho' cloathed like *Talapoins*, only their Habit is white. They have a Care of the Gardens and Lands belonging to the Convent, and act for the *Talapoins* what they cannot do, as they think, without Sin, as receive Money given them, &c.

Their Servants.

When the Superior dies, whether he be a *Sancrat* or not, the Convent elects either the eldest, or most learned in his Stead. If any one would make himself a *Talapoin*, he agrees with some Superior to receive him into his Convent, and if the Superior be not a *Sancrat* to give him the Habit, he goes to a *Sancrat* to demand it, who appoints him the Hour within a few Days, and that in the Afternoon. Whoever opposeth him sins, and the Parents are always glad to see their Children embrace it. When he is to be admitted, his Parents and Friends accompany him to this Ceremony with Musick and Dancing. The Men of his Retinue go into the Temple where the *Sancrat* is, but the Women, Musicians and Dancers enter not. The *Sancrat* gives him the Habit with his own Hands, and he cloaths himself with it, letting the Secular Habit fall underneath, when he has put on the other, and in the mean time the *Sancrat* pronounces several *Baly* Words. When the Ceremony is ended, the new *Talapoin* goes to the Convent, where he must remain, and his Parents and Friends accompany him thither, and from that time he must not hear Musick, nor see Dances. Some Days after the Parents give an Entertainment to the Convent, and exhibit a great many Shows before the Temple, which the *Talapoins* are prohibited to see.

The Election of a Superior, and making a *Talapoin*.

The Habit of the *Talapoinesses*.

The *Talapoineſſes*, who call themselves *Nang Tchii*, are clad in White, like the Servants of the Convent, and are not esteem'd altogether Religious. A simple Superior may give them their Habit, as well as to the *Nens*, and tho' they ought not to have any Carnal Commerce with Men, yet they are not burnt, as the *Talapoins* are, who are surprized in a Fault with Women, but are deliver'd to their Parents to be bastinado'd, because neither *Talapoins* nor *Talapoineſſes* may strike any Person.

The Doctrine of the *Talapoins*.

All the *Indies* are full of *Talapoins*, tho' they have not every where the same Name, nor live after the same Manner; for some marry, others observe a strict Cælibacy; some eat Meat, others none; some kill Animals, others not. Their Doctrine is not the same, tho' the *Metempſychoſis* be always the Foundation, and their Worship varies, tho' it always refers to the Dead. They all believe whole Nature animated, and that not only Men and Beasts, but the Heavens and Earth, yea, Cities and Houses live. They hold, That the Soul is in the Body, and rules it, but seem not to think, that it is Physically united to the Body, or loves to be in the Body, but suffers Penance in it.

The Soul's Felicity and Hell.

The supream Felicity of the Soul is, in their Opinion, not to be obliged to animate any Body, but to remain eternally in Repose, and the true Hell of the Soul is the perpetual Necessity of animating Bodies, and passing from one to another by continual Transmigrations.

The Figure of the World, according to their Doctrine, is eternal; but since the World, we see, is ever decaying, they say, there will spring up other Beings of the same kind, another Heaven and Earth.

The Nature of the Soul.

They generally acknowledge, that the Soul is immortal and imperishable, but material, made of such a Matter, as is free from Touch and Sight; and hold, that after their Departure out of this Life they are punished and recompenced with Punishment or Pleasure proportion'd in Greatness or Duration to their good or evil Works, until they re-enter into Human Bodies, wherein they must enjoy a Life more or less happy, according to the Good or Evil they have done in a former Life; for 'tis their settled Judgment, That no Person suffers any Misfortune, if he has been always innocent, nor can be always happy, if he has at any time done Ill, nor does enjoy any Prosperity which he has not merited by some good Action.

Nine Places of Happiness and Misery.

They reckon several Places out of the World where the Souls are punish'd or rewarded, *viz.* 9 happy Places over our Head, and 9 unhappy Places under our Feet; and the higher a Place is, the happier; and the lower, the more unhappy; so that the Happy reach above the Stars far, and the Unhappy a great way beneath the Earth; but they do not believe, that the Souls in departing out of the Body do pass immediately into those Places, but arrive there after divers Deaths and Regenerations. They hold, That the Souls of the Deceased stand in need of the Things of this Life, and therefore tho' they do not burn any Movables, Slaves, Cattel or Wives with the Deceased, as the *Indians* formerly are reported to have done, by *Strabo* and others, yet they delineate all those Things in Paper cut, and oftentimes painted or gilded, and burning it with the Dead, they believe that it is converted in the other Life into those Things it represents, and so the Deceased are plentifully supplied with all Necessaries at an easie Rate to them.

Their Opinion about the Dead, and their Funerals.

They think, that the Dead have a Power of tormenting and succouring the Living, and from hence proceed their Care and Magnificence in Funerals (in which alone they are magnificent) and their Prayers to the Dead, especially the *Boni* or *Mali Genii*. The Honour paid to the Dead at their Funerals is thus shewn: So soon as any Man is dead, his Body is shut up in a Wooden Coffin varnish'd or gilded, and sometimes in a Leaden one, and so long as the Body is kept in the House, either to expect the Head of the Family, or prepare the Funeral Solemnities, it is set upon an high Bedsted with Feet, they burn Perfumes and Tapers by the Coffin, and every Night the *Talapoins* come and sing in the *Baly* Language some Songs about Death and the Road to Heaven, which they pretend they teach to the Soul of the Deceased, standing by the Walls of the Chamber where the Body lies. The Relations entertain them, and give them Money.

Place of burning the Bodies.

Mean while the Family chuseth a Place in the Fields near some Temple where to burn the Body, and having made a square Inclosure of *Bambou*, they erect a Funeral Pile in the middle, made of sweet Woods, as white and yellow Sanders and Lignum Aloes, according to the Wealth of the Deceased. When the Corps is carried to the Pile (which is always done in a Morning) the Parents and Relations carry it out with the Sound of a great many Instruments. The Body marches first, then the Family of the Deceased all in White, their Heads covered with a white Vail, and lamenting exceedingly, and then the rest of the Friends and Relations. For Burning they take out the Body out of the Coffin, and laying it on the Pile, leave it, and the *Talapoins* of the next Convent sing over it a Quarter of an Hour, and then retire to appear no more. Then begin the Shows of the *Cone* and *Rabam*, which last all the Day upon different Theatres, yet not upon any Religious Account, but to render the Funeral more magnificent. About Noon a *Tapacaon*, or Servant of the *Talapoins*, sets fire on the Pile, unless it be a Prince of the Blood, or the King's Favourite, for then the King does it himself. The Fire burns 2 Hours, and the Body is generally reputed consumed, yet 'tis little more than roasted, and so 'tis put again confusedly into the Coffin, and laid under one of the Pyramids which stand about their Temples. They'll sometimes bury precious Stones and other Riches with the Body, because thereby they put them into a Place which Religion renders inviolable: For to steal any thing from thence is Death, and generally one of the worse, as the Execution of 5 Persons found guilty of that Sacrilege may testifie, who were roasted alive by a gentle Fire. The Family of the Deceased entertains the Train of Attendants, and for 3 Days give Alms, *viz.* On the Day the Body is burnt to the *Talapoins* who have sung over the Body; the next Day to the whole Convent, and the 3d Day to the Temple. The *Talapoins* are buried after a more magnificent Manner, especially if of any Note among them. Their Coffin is of some Aromatick Wood. Round about their Funeral Pile are 4 Pillars of gilt Wood, which carry up an high Pyramid of several Stories, which make a kind of burning Chapel. By them stood several pretty high and square Towers, made of Wood, and cover'd with Pasteboard, rudely painted with many Paper Figures. The Inclosure also had several other Towers at competent Distances, and at each Corner one as high as the Pyramid in the middle. These were full of Fire-Works, and Fuzes came flying out of them. Many *Talapoins* attend these Funerals, who look with a grave and a modest Countenance, now and then singing, and sometimes keeping profound Silence, and infinite Numbers of People follow. The Poor inter their Parents without burning them, but if it be possible they will have the *Talapoins*, who will not stir without a Gratuity. They that have not sufficient to pay the *Talapoins*, think they do Honour enough to their dead Parents to expose them in the Fields on some eminent Place on a Scaf-

Shows.

Burials under the Pyramids.

Scaffold, where the Vultures and Crows devour them.

What Persons are not allow'd to be burnt.

They never burn Malefactors put to Death by Law, nor Infants dead born, nor Women that die in Child-bed, nor such as drown themselves, or have died by any uncommon Accident, because they reckon, that such Misfortunes never happen to innocent Persons.

The *Siamese* have no forced Mourning, but sorrow only according to their Affliction, and therefore 'tis more common for the Parents to mourn for their Children, than Children for their Parents.

The *Siamese* do not invoke their dead Parents, but they believe themselves frequently tormented by their Apparitions, and then they carry *Viands* to their Tombs, which the Beasts do eat, and give Alms to the *Talapoins*, because they think, that Charity is a Ransom for the Sins of the Dead, as well as of the Living; but they almost upon all Occasions offer their Prayers to the good *Genii*, which in their Opinion are only the Souls of such as have been more or less vertuous in this Life; but continuing good after this Life, do Good to Men, and utter their Imprecations against the bad *Genii*, which are the Souls of wicked Men, who have either been put to Death by Justice, or died by some Misfortunes, for which they have been judged unworthy of Funeral Honours, and continuing wicked, do all the Hurt they can to Men, and every thing else.

Prayers to the good *Genii*.

The Morals of the *Talapoins*.

To these Speculative Doctrines of the *Talapoins* must be added their Morals, that we may have a compleat System of their Divinity. They are reduced to 5 Negative Precepts, which are the same in all the Cantons of the *Indies*. They are these:

Not to kill.

I. *Kill nothing*; By which they are not only forbidden to kill either Men or Animals, but further to destroy Plants or their Seeds, which are but the Plant it self in a Cover; nay, not to break the Branch of a Tree, because they believe that it offends the Soul of the Tree, nor destroy any thing in Nature, because they think that all Things are animated, and so to destroy them is forceably to dispossess a Soul. Upon these Accounts they eat nothing but ripe Fruits, and dead Carcasses, and declare a mighty Abhorrence of Blood; so that they will make no Incision in any Creature, whereby the Blood is let out, as if the Soul were principally in the Blood; yet they think it not a Sin to kill in War, because they shoot not directly at their Enemies; nor to kill themselves, because they believe themselves Masters of their own Lives, and it is a Sacrifice advantageous to the Soul, which being then under some Discontent and Fears, they translate to a greater Degree of Vertue and Felicity.

Not to steal, or commit any Impurity.

II. *Steal nothing*.

III. *Commit not any Impurity*. This Command, which prohibits all manner of Uncleanness, extends not only to Adultery, but to all carnal Commerce of a Man with a Woman, and to Marriage it self, which they account a State of Sin, and hold that Celibacy is the only State of Perfection.

Not to lye, or drink Wine.

IV. *Lye not, nor deceive any Man*.

V. *Drink no Wine, or any intoxicating Liquor*. This Precept they extend so far, as not only to forbid Wine to be drunk to Excess, but so much as to taste it, whatsoever Need they may be in, or whatsoever Occasion may press them, and they are extreamly offended when they see Christian Priests drink of it.

To adore God, &c.

VI. *Adore God, his Word, and those that imitate his Vertues*. In Obedience to this Precept they give mighty Adoration to the Images of their Gods, and upbraid the Papists with carrying about their Images, as being very unreverent. They have so great Respect to their Scriptures, that they will not trust them in the Hands of Christians, nor explain their Laws to them, lest they should expose them to their Derision, and the Sin of it be imputed to them. And because they look upon the *Talapoins*, who are their Priests, Monks and Doctors, to be true Followers of God, and that real Vertue is only made for them; whence it is that they allow them in an intolerable Pride, seating them above the Seculars, not suffering them to have any Commerce with Seculars, nor salute them, no not so much as the King himself.

To fast on Holy-days. Not to labour on Holy-days.

VII. *To fast on Holy-days*.

VIII. *Not to labour on those Days*.

These are the Duties which the Priests explain to the People and instruct them in their Sermons, and were they duely observed, their Actions would be very commendable, but they have some Maxims among them which quite spoil their Practice, *viz.* That Vertue is made only for *Talapoins*; That their Law is impracticable, or at least very hard to be kept as it ought to be; That the Trade of Seculars is to sin, and that of *Talapoins* not to sin, but to exercise Repentance for those that desire: And thus they put off Vertue from themselves to others, and hope to be saved by others Merits; for tho' they do not acknowledge an Heaven and Hell, nor any God a Creator, yet they own a supream Felicity, as a Recompence of good Works, and the utmost Degree of Misery, as the Punishment of the Guilty, but 'tis after this odd Manner: They say, That if by several Transmigrations, and by a great Number of good Works in all the Lives, a Soul acquires so much Merit, that there is not in any World any mortal Condition that is worthy of it; such a Soul is exempted from every Transmigration, and neither revives nor dies any more, but enjoys an eternal Inactivity and Impassibility, *i. e.* become a God: This is their supream Felicity; and on the contrary their supream Infelicity is the eternal Transmigration of Souls for their Sins, for which they continually pass from one Body to another. Now tho' they say, that several have attained to the supream Felicity, yet they honour only one alone, whom they esteem to have surpassed all the rest in Vertue, called *Sommona-Codom*, and he is the only God they now adore. The History of him is very strange and fabulous. It is supposed that he was born God by his own Vertue, and that immediately after his Birth, without any Help of a Master to instruct him, he acquir'd, by a meer Glance of his Mind, a perfect Knowledge of all Things relating to Heaven, Earth, Paradice, Hell, and the most impenetrable Secrets of Nature; That at the same time he remembred all that ever he had done in the different Lives he had led; That having given to his Body an entire Agility, he easily transported himself from one Place to another to preach Vertue to all Nations; and that he might allure others to the Belief and Practice of his Doctrine, he became an Example of all Goodness, and devoted himself to Fasting, Prayer, and all the Exercises of a perfect Life. He bestow'd all his Estate in Alms, and his Charity not being satisfied, he gave away his Wife to a poor Man that begg'd of him. He was so much dead to the World and his own Passions in the highest Degree, that without being mov'd he suffer'd a *Bezamen*, who had a mind to try his Patience, and carry away his Son and his Daughter, and torment them before his Face. The Doctrines which he taught the People he left written in Books, that Posterity might be the better for them. These Doctrines are above related under the Title of the Opinions of the *Talapoins*, who are the Priests and Monks professing them, and teaching them. When he had run over the World, declaring to Mankind what is Good and Evil, and teaching them the true Religion, which he had written, that he might leave it to Posterity, and gained several Disciples, who in the Condition of Priests were to make a particular Profession of imitating him in wearing an Habit like his, and observing the Rules that he gave them, he attain'd to the 80d Year of his Age, he knowing that his Departure out of this World drew near, foretold it to his Disciples, and shortly after, as he was one Day eating of Pig's Flesh, he was taken with a violent Cholick, which killed him. His Soul ascended into the Eighth Heaven, which is properly Paradice, where he enjoys that State of Repose, which they call their *Nirvupan*, and can no more be subject to Miseries or Pains, and can never be born again. His Body was burnt, and his Bones, as they say, have been preserved to this Present, whereof one part are kept in the Kingdom of *Pegu*, and the other in *Siam*. They attribute a wonderful Vertue to these Bones, and affirm, that they shine with a Divine Splendor. Before his Death he ordered some Temples and Statues to be erected and consecrated to him, and order'd that after his Death his Picture should be drawn, for fear Men might by little and little suffer his Person to wear out of their Remembrance, and at long-run forget him wholly, and requir'd that the same Honours should be render'd unto him in that Image which were due to his Divinity. He left also the Print of his Foot in 3 different Places in the Kingdom of *Siam*, the Kingdom of *Pegu*, and Island of *Ceilon*, to which the People go on Pilgrimage from all Parts, and yearly honour these Prints with singular Devotion.

Their supream Felicity, or Heaven.

Their supream Infelicity, or Hell.

Sommona-Codom, the God of the *Siamese*, his Character.

His great Charity.

His Doctrines and Preaching.

He foretold his own Death.

His Relicques.

The Mark of his Foot worshipp'd.

With this Account of *Sommona-Codom* and his Doctrine, which is more fully set down in his Books, there is also a Relation of *Thevetat*, his Brother, *viz.*

The Story of *Thevetat* his Opposition to *Sommona-Codom*.

viz. That he was always born with *Sommona-Codom* in the same kind as he was, but inferior in Dignity, because *Sommona-Codom* was ever the Prince of the Animals, whose Shape he took, but *Thevetat* aspiring to Divinity, ambitiously would never submit to his Brother, but endeavoured by continual Practices to disturb his Reign, and omitted nothing that he might deprive him of his Empire, for he killed him when both of them were Apes, and when they were born Men, and *Thevetat* aspired to Divinity, and taught the World Vertue, he found a Way, being a Person of much Wit and Address, to make a new Sect, wherein he engaged several Kings and many People, who embraced his Doctrine, and imitated his Example; and this was the Original of a Schism, which divided the World into 2 Parts, and gave Beginning to 2 Religions, whereas before that all Mankind had but one.

The Original of Schisms in Religion.

Moreover, *Thevetat* being supported by so many Princes, who espoused his Quarrel, employ'd open Force and Treason to ruin his elder Brother. He invented the most heinous Calumnies to blacken his Reputation; and to confirm his Followers in the Faith which he taught them, he had the Boldness to contend with his Brother who should work the greatest Miracles, tho' he was always overcome, but yet he would never harken to *Sommona-Codom*, nor learn of him; and therefore tho' in his new Doctrine which he published he foisted in a great many Things which he had taken out of his Brother's Religion, and so made their Laws very like in several Points, yet not knowing from his Brother what was done in Hell and Paradice, nor the Doctrine of Transmigration of Souls, nor the Changes that had been and were in all Ages, he left nothing about them in his Books; and not being God, and by Consequence not having either the same Agility or Activity of Body, nor the other Perfections of Divinity, tho' he excell'd in several Sciences, as Mathematicks and Geometry, yet he made his Law far less severe than that of *Sommona-Codom*; for it allows Men a great Liberty of killing and eating Animals, tho' the Use of them be really sinful and criminal.

The Law of *Thevetat*, and the Defects of it.

From the Doctrine of *Thevetat*, as out of a Sourse of Schism, the *Talapoins* hold, 7 other Sects are sprung, which have a great deal of Affinity one with another, which they apply to the Separations of the *Dutch*, *English*, and other People, from the Church of *Rome*.

After all the Outrages that *Thevetat* had done to his Brother, without any Respect to the Nature or Divinity, the *Siamese* Scriptures say, 'twas but just that he should be punish'd, and accordingly 'tis said, That *Sommona-Codom*, after he became God, saw his wicked Brother in the deepest Place of Hell, whereby the most terrible Punishment he expiated all the Sins he had committed, and especially the Injuries he had done his Brother. The Punishment *Thevetat* suffer'd was this: He was fasten'd to a Cross with great Nails, which piercing his Hands and Feet, put him to extream Pain; that on his Head he had a Crown of Thorns, and his Body was full of Wounds, and to compleat his Misery, the infernal Places burnt him without consuming of him. *Sommona-Codom* being moved with Compassion at these so sad Sufferings, forgot the Wrongs his Brother had done him, and propounded to deliver him from all his Torments, if he would adore these 3 Words, *viz. Ppy-thang*, which signifies God; *Thamang*, which signifies the Word of God; and *Sankghang*, i. e. The Imitator of God. *Thevetat* consented to adore the 2 first, but denied to adore the 3d, because he said, It signifies a *Priest*, and Priests were sinful Men that deserved no Respect, and for this Pride he still suffers, and must still suffer for many Ages. This latter Story, which is as firmly believed by them as the former of the *Sommona-Codom*, is that which keeps them from embracing the Christian Religion; for finding so great a Similitude between the Sufferings of *J. Christ* and their *Thevetat*, and seeing the Image of our crucified Saviour adored by the Papists, which so plainly represents his Punishment, they are perswaded that the Christians are the Disciples of *Thevetat*, tho' under a different Name, and therefore being afraid of falling into Hell with *Thevetat*, if they should follow his Doctrine, they will not endure to hear any Propositions that are made to them of embracing Christianity; but if any one undertakes to explain to them the Articles of our Faith, they take him up short, and say, they do not need our Instructions, and that they know already better than we do what we have to tell them: So that it is a Thing next to impossible almost to convert them, who are thus prejudiced by a fatal Anticipation against our Saviour by a Romantick Story.

Thevetat's Punishment.

The Cause of the *Siamese* Neglect of the Christian Religion.

Some indeed think, *Sommona-Codom* was not the Author of their Laws, but the Re-establisher of them, and that the Story of him was invented to be the Idea of a Man, whom Vertue had render'd happy, and on the contrary, the Character of *Thevetat* is to give us an opposite Idea of a Man, whom his Wickedness has subjected to great Torments. Others think, that the Gospel has been heretofore preached in this Nation, because there is so great a Similitude in many things in their Doctrines to the Christian, but in Progress of Time hath been so alter'd and corrupted by the Priests: But these Conjectures are but probable at most, not certain. Practice makes it appear, that *Sommona-Codom* is their God, and their crafty *Talapoins* have so contrived their Preachings and Sermons, that they will not in all Likelihood admit any other.

Some Opinions about *Sommona-Codom*.

Thevetat punished in Hell.

THE

THE MEMOIRS and OBSERVATIONS,

Topographical, Natural, Civil and Eccleſiaſtical:

MADE

By *Lewis Le Comte*, Jeſuit, and Confeſſor to the Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*, in his Journey through the Empire of *China*; and Publiſh'd in ſeveral LETTERS, to Perſons of the beſt Quality in *France*:

ABRIDGED,

Together, with what is farther Obſervable in Father *Gabriel Magaillan*'s Hiſtory of *China*.

LETTER I.

To the Lord Pontchartrain, *Secretary of State to the* French *King*; *containing an Account of his Voyage from* France *to* Pekin; *and in it he gives a general Deſcription of* China.

Le Comte's Voyage to Siam.

THE Project of ſending Miſſionaries skill'd in the Mathematicks into the fartheſt Parts of the World, having been found advantagious to Religion, the *French* King in the Year 1685. ſent 6 of his Subjects, Jeſuits, to *China*, with the Character of his Majeſty's Mathematicians, that by teaching thoſe Sciences, they might take an Opportunity to promote the Goſpel. *Lewis Le Comte* was one of them, and with them ſet Sail in the ſame Ship, which carried Monſieur *Chaumont*, his Majeſty's Ambaſſador Extraordinary to the Court of *Siam*. Their Voyage was fortunate to *Siam*, but they arriv'd in a Seaſon unfit for Navigation farther, and ſo were detain'd there 12 Months. Father *Le Comte* in this time got Monſieur *Conſtance* to place him in a Convent of *Talapoins*, who are their Prieſts, that by converſing with them, and conforming to their Garb and Auſterity of Life, he might prevail with them to acknowledge *Chriſt*, which if he could do, he knew 'twould be an effectual Means to convert the whole Nation. This Method was very ſucceſsful at *Madura*, and he hoped for the like Effect at *Siam*, but the Conſpiracy of the *Malai's* and *Macaſſars*, which happened at that Time, created ſo great a Diſturbance, that that good Deſign proved unſucceſsful, and ſo he, with his Brethren, ſet Sail on *June* 17, 1687. for *Nimpo*, a conſiderable City and Haven in *Chikiam*, a Province of *China*.

And from Siam to China.

While he ſojourn'd at *Siam*, he had an Opportunity of obſerving ſeveral particular Animals, which are ſeldom or never ſeen in *Europe*, viz. Tygers, which much differ from thoſe in other Countries as to their Colour, which is a reddiſh Fallow, interlaced with large black Streaks; and Bigneſs, which is ſometimes equal to that of Horſes. They are called *Royal Tygers*. There are alſo others, which they call *Water Tygers*, and do exactly reſemble a Cat. They live upon Fiſh, and therefore are chiefly found in Woods by River ſides. There are likewiſe to be ſeen your Rhimocero's, one of the oddeſt Creatures in the World. It is ſomething like a wild Boar, but a little bigger, the Feet thicker, and Body more clouterly ſhaped. Its Hide is cover'd all over with thick large Scales of a blackiſh Colour, and extraordinary Hardneſs, divided into little Squares like Buttons, and riſing a Quarter of an Inch above the Skin like a Crocodile's. Its Legs ſeem thruſt into a Boot, and the Head wrapp'd up in an Hood, being thick and groſs. Its Mouth is wide, and Muzzle long, arm'd with a long thick Horn, which makes him terrible to Tygers, Buffalo's and Elephants. His Tongue is cover'd with ſuch a rough Membrance, that looks like a File, and flea's off the Skin where it licks. It will eat Thorns with Delight, and tho' they ſometimes fetch Blood, yet that makes the Taſte more pleaſant, as Salt and Pepper doth Meats to us.

They were on Board a ſmall *Chineſe* Veſſel, called a *Somme* by the *Portugueſe*, which having no Shelter againſt the extream Heat, and wanting Room for them, did much incommode them; yet this was nothing ſo great a Trouble as the Idol by which they were placed, black with the Smoak of a Lamp continually burning in its Honour, and worſhipp'd every Day with a Diabolical Superſtition. They attempted, by the Help of their Interpreter, to convince them of the Abſurdity of their Worſhip, but as all Sea-men are generally obſtinate, ſo theirs took great Offence at what they ſaid againſt their Idol, and prepared a Proceſſion to appeaſe the Idol, which they conceived to be angry at their Treatment in the late Diſpute, for there is no Nation more ſuperſtitious than the *Chineſe*, who worſhip the very Compaſs they ſteer by, cenſing it continually with Perfumes, and often offering it Meat as a Sacrifice. Twice a Day they throw regularly little Pieces of gilt Paper in the Likeneſs of Money into the Sea, to keep it at their Devotion by that Salary; but if it ſlights this Kindneſs, and grows troubleſome, they think it to be agitated by ſome Dæmon, and burn Feathers to drive it away with its noiſome Smoak and Scent.

A Chineſe Idol.

The Compaſs worſhipped.

Being come in Sight of *Emoui*, an Iſland of *China*, famous for its commodious Harbour, whither abundance of Ships of all Nations reſort, the ſudden Veering of the Wind, follow'd by a Calm and black Clouds, made the Pilots fear the Approach of a *Typhon*, which blows ſo furiouſly, and beſets a Ship on all Sides ſo with the Waves, that unleſs the Captain be very skilful, the Crew numerous, and the Veſſel ſtout, their

The Iſle Emoui.

A Typhon deſcribed.

their Ruine is unavoidable, but they all vaniſh'd into a favourable Gale, which ſoon brought them in Sight of as terrible Danger from an infinite Number of Rocks and deſart Iſlands, thro' which they were to paſs; but having ſteer'd ſometime among them, and paſs'd thro' a pretty wide Bay, in which the *Chineſe* obſerve an exact Silence, for fear of diſturbing a Neighbouring Dragon (as they ſay) they at length came to an Anchor near the City of *Nimpo*, after 36 Days Voyage.

China hard to be enter'd.

China is a very ceremonious Country, and all Strangers muſt exerciſe their Patience in getting Admiſſion, the *Mandarin* of the Cuſtoms not only examining their Goods, and the Occaſion of their Coming, but being obliged to certifie all to the Governours and Vice-Roy of the Province, before they can allow them to land and converſe freely with the Natives.

Of the Names of *China*.

Of the Names of *China*, F. *Gab. Magaillan* gives us this Account, which may be uſeful to the underſtanding ancient Writers. It is a Cuſtom in *China*, that when a new Family aſcends the Imperial Throne, the Sovereign gives a new Name to his Dominions. Thus under the Reign of the preceding Family it was called, *Tae min que*, i. e. A Kingdom of great Brightneſs; but the *Tartars* that rule it at preſent call it, *Tai cim que*, i. e. A Kingdom of great Purity. In their Books they retain the ancient Names of *Hia que*, *Xam que*, *Chem que*, *Han que*, &c. given to it by ſeveral ancient Families. In their Books and Petitions to the King at preſent they call it, *Xam que*, i. e. An High and Sovereign Kingdom; but the Learned Men in their Books and Writings call it, *Chum que*, The Kingdom of the Center, becauſe they imagine *China* to be in the middle of the World, and this is the moſt common Name. When they ſpeak Hyperbolically, they call it, *Tien Hia*, or the Kingdom that contains all that is under Heaven. The Weſtern *Tartars* call *China*, *Hara Kitai*, or, The Black Barbarians, as alſo do the *Muſcovites*. The Kingdoms of *Chahamalaha*, or *Samahan*, *Tumeh*, or *Tibet*; and *Uſangue* call it, *Catai*; and the Merchants of the *India*, *Cataio*. The Eaſtern *Tartars* formerly gave it the Name of *Nica-Corum*, but now they are Maſters of it, they name it, *Tulimpa-Corum*, or, The Kingdom of the Middle. The People of *Canara*, *Bangala*, and the Countries adjoining it, call it *Chin*, and from them the *Portugueſe* have coined the common Name, *China*. Out of F. *Magaillan*.

China deſcribed.

China, called by the Inhabitants, *Tchoum-coove*, i. e. The middle Kingdom, becauſe they anciently thought themſelves ſeated in the midſt of the World. It is divided into 15 large Provinces, *Quamtum*, *Fokien*, *Chekiam*, *Nankim*, *Xantum* and *Pekin*, which lie along the Eaſtern Ocean from S. to N. as *Xanſi*, *Xenſi*, *Suchuen*, *Yunnan* and *Quamſi* do from N. to S. on the Weſtern Side. *Queycheu*, *Kianſi*, *Huquam* and *Honan*, are encompaſſed by the other 11, and the whole Empire is divided from the Iſlands of *Japan* and *Formoſa* by a Channel, and from *Tartary* by a very long Wall. Geographers have miſtaken in placing the whole Province of *Leaotum* within the Wall, whereas it is undoubtedly without it, tho' a part of the *Chineſe* Dominions, and in fixing the whole Empire 500 Lgs. more Eaſtward than it is. From the City of *Canton*, which lies a little above the 23d Degree, to *Pekin*, which lies in the 40th Degree, are 17 Degrees, which with 20 Lgs. more from *Pekin* to the utmoſt Bounds, make 450 common Lgs. which is the full Length of the Country. The Extent of it from E. to W. is little leſs, ſo that now the whole Kingdom of *China*, which is almoſt of a Circular Figure, is very near 1400 Lgs. in Circumference. The Iſlands of *Formoſa*, *Haynan*, and others of leſs Note (which are large enough to make a conſiderable Kingdom) belong to that Empire, and *Corea*, *Tunkim* and *Siam* depend ſo far on *China*, as that they pay Tribute to that Crown, and their Kings at their Admiſſion are confirm'd by the Emperor of it, but they are ſeparate Kingdoms from it, and differ from it much in the Product and Fertility of the Soil, Beauty and Number of Cities, the Wit, Politeneſs, Number and Manner of the Inhabitants. This the *Chineſe* are ſo ſenſible of, that they call all others Barbarous, and will not match with any other of the *Indian* Nations, leſt they ſhould debaſe their noble Blood.

The true Poſition of it.

Formoſa. *Haynan*.

Kingdoms dependant on *China*.

Tartars deſcribed.

To *China* alſo belongs a great part of *Tartary*, which much encreaſeth its Power; for the *Tartars* are valiant, and Men of Senſe, and tho' their Country be very Woody, and full of Sandy Deſarts, yet it produceth great Variety of Simples, which are uſeful in Phyſick; fine Horſes and Zibelmes, Foxes and Tygers, which yield fine Furs, Commodities which *China* cannot be without; but tho' the *Chineſe* reap ſo great Profit by it, it cannot be imagined what a great Vexation 'tis to them to be mixed with that Nation. This Union has made one Empire of a prodigious Extent, for tho' all *Tartary* does not belong to *China*, yet moſt of it is Tributary to it, and together make up an Empire of 900 Lgs. in Length, as it was fix'd by the Peace between *Ruſſia* and *China*, but the Breadth is uncertain, not being decided by that Treaty. The Occaſion of the Union was this: A petty King of the Eaſtern *Tartary*, whoſe Subjects were called *Mouantcheou*, had ſettled a Trade near the *Long* Wall, and having been knaviſhly dealt with by ſome *Chineſe* Merchants, complain'd of them at *Pekin*, but not receiving Satisfaction as he intended, reſolved to right himſelf, and entred the Province of *Leaotum* with a numerous Army. The Emperor preſently ſent ſome part of his Forces to oppoſe them, and the War continued ſometime with equal Advantage, but one *L. F.* a *Chineſe*, taking the Opportunity of the Abſence of the King's Forces, raiſed a Rebellion in the Provinces moſt remote from Court, and drew over great Numbers of Male-contents to him, who made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt Cities, and drove all before them. The Emperor remain'd at *Pekin*, and had a Garriſon of 70000 about him, but when the Rebel approached it, his Emiſſaries had ſo gain'd upon them, that they open'd the City-Gates to the Traitor. The unfortunate Monarch finding himſelf thus betray'd, would have marched againſt them with 600 Men of his Guards, but they alſo baſely abandoning him, he fled into a Garden with his Daughter, where fearing leſt he ſhould fall into his Enemies Hands, he ſtabb'd the Princeſs, and hang'd himſelf. The Emperor being dead, all bow'd to the Uſurper, except *Ouſanguey*, who was ſent by the King againſt the *Tartars*. He would not acknowledge him, but reſolving to pull down his Tyranny, made a Peace with the *Tartars*, and by their Aſſiſtance routed the Rebel, who found ſuch a Retirement, that all the Art of Man could never find him out. The *Tartars* having thus got Poſſeſſion of *Pekin*, were too cunning not to improve ſo fair an Opportunity, and ſo made themſelves abſolute Maſters of it, under whoſe Command it remains to this Day.

The *Tartars* and *Chineſe* united, and the Occaſion of it.

A Rebellion.

The Emperor hangs himſelf.

Tartars ſubdue *China*.

Father *Le Comte* and his Brethren lay at *Nimpo*, expecting Orders from the Vice-Roy for their Landing and the Progreſs of their Miſſion, but inſtead of that received Intelligence, That the Vice-Roy was offended that they were ſuffer'd to land, and was reſolved to ſend them back to the *Indies*, and to that End obtain'd a Decree from Court, that they ſhould be baniſh'd. To prevent the Effect of this Order they had no other Way, but to write to the Fathers *Intorcetta*, *Fontenay* and *Verbieſt* to contribute their Endeavours for their Safety and Deliverance. Father *Intorcetta* by publick Prayers begg'd God's Protection of them, and Father *Verbieſt* having by a Letter directed to a Friend at Court, which was then in *Tartary*, but contriv'd to fall into the Emperor's Hands, inform'd him of their Arrival, and as ſoon as he return'd to *Pekin*, repreſenting them as his Brethren, who by their Skill in Mathematicks might be uſeful to his Majeſty. The Emperor hearing that, anſwer'd, If it was ſo, he ſaw no Cauſe why he ſhould expel them out of his Dominions, and calling his Council, decreed, that they ſhould be honourably ſent for to Court. This Order being ſent to the Vice-Roy of *Hamcheu*, it happen'd by a ſpecial Providence, that he who endeavoured to turn them ſhamefully out of *China*, was obliged to convey them to Court, and becauſe he fear'd he ſhould be inform'd againſt, he preſented them with 10 Piſtoles, and honour'd their Paſſage with more Ceremony and Conveniency than otherwiſe they could have expected.

Le Comte and his Brethren ſent for to Court.

They left *Nimpo* on *Nov.* 27. and arrived at *Pekin* the 8th of *February* following; but they reſted ſo often, that they ſpent above 6 Weeks in their Journey. At their firſt Arrival they were ſaluted with the afflicting News of Father *Verbieſt*'s Death, their greateſt Friend.

LET-

LETTER II.

Written to her Highneſs the Dutcheſs of Nemours, *and contains what he obſerv'd at the Emperor's Court.*

The Mourning of the Emperor and Court of *China*.

ON their Arrival at *Pekin* they found the Court in Mourning for the Empreſs Dowager. The Courts of Juſtice were ſhut up, and the Emperor gave no Audience for 27 Days, during which Time the Laws oblige him to cloſe Mourning. The Vice-Roy who conducted them, delivered them into the Hands of the *Mandarins*, according to the Cuſtom, who, as ſoon as the Mourning was ended, carried them before the Emperor, when their Attendance was requir'd. They were carried in Chairs to the Gate of the Palace, and from thence went on Foot thro' 8 Courts of a prodigious Length, built round with Lodgings of different Architecture, but all very ordinary, except thoſe large ſquare Buildings over the Arches, thro' which they paſſed from one Court to another; for they were very ſtately, and built of fair white Marble, but worn rough with Age. Thro' one of theſe Courts ran a ſmall Rivulet, over which were laid ſeveral little Bridges of the ſame Marble, but whiter, and of better Workmanſhip. There are no other Pieces of curious Architecture, yet the prodigious Quantity of Buildings, and the infinite Number of adjoining Courts and Gardens, which are all regularly diſpoſed, render it in the whole a Place really great, and worthy of the Monarch that inhabits it.

A Deſcription of the Emperor's Palace.

The Emperor's Throne see FIG. 1.

The moſt ſurprizing Sight, and which ſeems ſingular in its kind, is the Emperor's Throne, which is thus faſhioned: In the midſt of one of the great Courts ſtands a ſquare *Baſis*, or ſolid Building of an extraordinary Bigneſs, whoſe Top is adorned with Baluſtrade, much after our Faſhion: This ſupports another like unto it, but in the Form of a Taper, over which are placed 3 more, growing leſs and leſs as they encreaſe in Height. Upon the uppermoſt is built a large Hall, whoſe Roof being cover'd with gilt Tiles, is ſupported by 4 Walls, and as many Rows of varniſh'd Pillars, between which is ſeated the Throne. Theſe vaſt Baſes, with their Baluſtrades, made and diſpoſed like an Amphitheatre, dazzle the Eyes of the Beholder, when the Sun reflex its Beams upon them, with the Luſtre of the Gold and Varniſh, and being placed in the midſt of a Court ſurrounded with 4 Rows of Building, yield a moſt beautiful Proſpect.

The Emperor's Apartment.

The Emperor's Apartment is alſo noble. The Entrance, indeed, is not very ſplendid, but the Anti-Chamber is adorn'd with Sculptures, Gildings and Marbles, whoſe Neatneſs and Workmanſhip are more valuable than the Richneſs of the Stuff. In the Preſence-Chamber (which in that time of Mourning was diſrob'd of all its Ornaments) there was nothing remarkable but the Perſon of the Emperor, who ſat after the *Tartars* Cuſtom, on a Table, or *Sopha*, raiſed 3 Foot from the Ground, and covered with a fine plain white Carpet, which took up the whole Breadth of the Room. There lay by him ſome Books, Ink and Pencils: He was cloathed with a black Sattin Veſt, furr'd with a Sable, and a Row of young Eunuchs, plainly habited and unarm'd, ſtood on each Side of him cloſe legg'd, and with their Arms hanging down their Sides, which is here look'd upon as the moſt reſpectful Poſture. His Perſon was ſomething above the middle Stature, more corpulent than we *Europeans* reckon handſome, yet ſomewhat more ſlender than the *Chineſe* wiſh to be: He was full viſaged, diſfigured with the Small-Pox, had a broad Forehead, little Eyes, and a ſmall Noſe, his Mouth was well made, and the lower part of his Face very agreeable: But tho' he bears no great Majeſty in his Looks, yet his Face expreſſes abundance of good Nature, and his Ways and Actions beſpeak him to be a Prince truly Great; for he is not only an Admirer and Encourager of the Mathematicks, and other Learning (with whoſe Profeſſors he will ſometimes confer for divers Hours) but he is a Favourer of the Chriſtian Religion, to which he has granted a Toleration, and has ſo good an Opinion of it, thro' the Inſtruction of Father *Verbieſt*, whom he kept above 3 Months near his Perſon, *That he owns the Belief of a God, and has declared, That all the Religions of his Empire are vain and ſuperſtitious in his Opinion; That Idols were nothing, and that he foreſaw, that one Day Chriſtianity would be built on their Ruins.* And, as a farther Teſtimony of his Favour to Chriſtianity and the Profeſſion of it, when Father *Verbieſt* died, he was ſenſibly affected with Grief at the News, and ordered his Funeral to be put off till the Court was out of cloſe Mourning, and then he ſent 2 Lords of the higheſt Quality to pay the uſual Devoirs on his Behalf to the dead Body, who kneel'd before the Coffin, and bowing themſelves ſeveral times, remain'd a long time with their Faces to the Ground, and wept and groan'd heavily, and having perform'd theſe Ceremonies, read an Encomium of him, which the Emperor himſelf had compoſed, declaring of him, *That during all the time he took care of the Mathematicks, his Predictions never fail'd, but always agreed with the Motions of the Heavens; That he ever approved himſelf exact, diligent, faithful, unalterable and conſtant in his Labour till he had finiſh'd his Work.* He ſent him his own Phyſician in his Sickneſs, and was much grieved at his Death, giving 200 Crowns in Gold and ſome Pieces of Silk toward the Charges of his Funeral, which was celebrated with great Ceremony, as well by the *Mandarins* as *Chriſtians*, *March* 11, 1686. Some Days after the Interment the Court of Rites, with the Emperor's Conſent, order'd, that 700 Crowns in Gold ſhould be laid out on a Tomb for him, and the Emperor's Encomium ſhould be engraven on a Marble-Stone, as a Memorial of his Piety and Worth.

The Emperor's Perſon deſcribed.

His Favour to Chriſtianity.

His Reſpect to F. Verbieſt at his Death.

LETTER III.

Written to the Cardinal of Furſtenburgh, *and contains an Account of the Houſes and Buildings of* China.

THIS Cardinal being deſirous to know the Eſtate of *China*, *viz.* The Number and Bigneſs of the Cities, the Multitude of the Inhabitants, the Beauty of its Publick Buildings, and Figure of its Palaces, being a Perſon much delighted in Architecture, Father *Le Comte* having in 5 Years run over all *China*, ſends him this Deſcription of it.

Pekin deſcribed. See FIG. 2.

Pekin, i. e. The North Court, is the chief City of *China*, and the uſual Seat of the Emperors. It is ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Nankin*, i. e. The South Court, another very conſiderable City, once the Reſidence of the Emperors, and the moſt commodious Reſidence for them in all his Empire; but the continual Incurſions of the *Tartars* grew ſo troubleſome to them, that they were forced to remove more Northernly, and *Pekin* was thought the fitteſt Place for them. It is ſituate in 40 D. of Northern Latitude in a very fertile Plain, not far from the long Wall. It lies near the Sea on the E. and has a large Canal on the S. which promotes its Communication with ſeveral

several fine Provinces, from which it receives most of its Provision. This City was formerly of an exact square Form, and 4 Lgs. round; but the *Tartars*, which have settled there, have obliged the *Chinese* to live without the Walls, where they have built a new Town, which taking a greater Compass in Length than Breadth, doth with the old one make an irregular Figure; and so *Pekin* is as it were 2 Cities, one of *Tartars*, and the other *Chinese*. They are almost equal in Bigness, but the last is more populous. Both together are 6 Lgs. in Circuit. The *Chinese* dwell very close together; 20 or more of them will lie in as little Room as 10 *Europeans*. The Streets are throng'd with People to Admiration, insomuch, that Persons of Quality have always an Horse-man going before to make Way. Even the widest Streets are not free from Confusion; so that at the Sight of so many Horses, Mules, Camels, Waggons, and Rings of 100 or 200 People, who gather here and there round about the Fortune-tellers, one would imagine, that some unusual Business had drawn all the Country together to *Pekin*, and that our most populous Cities are but Wildernesses to it, especially if we consider, that whereas among us there generally appear more Women than Men, here you shall rarely see a Woman. But these following Reflections will prove to us, that the Number of Inhabitants in a Place is not to be guess'd at, by the Crouds that are seen in it, and particularly at *Pekin*.

Tartars at *Pekin*.

The Populousness, and Causes of it.

First, Because from all the Neighbouring Towns Multitudes of Peasants daily flock to *Pekin* with several useful and necessary Commodities, which, for want of a River, are brought up by Land. This fills the City with Multitudes of Carters, Waggons, Camels, and other Beasts of Burthen; so that Morning and Night, when the Gates are open'd and shut, there are such Throngs of People going in and out, that one must wait a long time for a Passage. Now few or none of these are Citizens.

Secondly, Most Artificers work in their Customers Houses; not only Taylors and Shooe-makers make Cloaths and Shooes at every Man's House or Lodgings, but even their Smiths carry with them their Anvil, Furnace, and other Impliments for their ordinary Use; so that they are continually about looking for Business, which much encrease the Throngs.

Artificers work in Mens houses

Thirdly, All Persons, especially those of any Note, never go abroad but on Horseback, or in Chairs, with a numerous Train.

Fourthly, When a *Mandarin* goes abroad any where, all his inferior Officers follow him in all their Formalities, which form a kind of Procession. The Lords at Court and Princes of the Blood never are without a great Guard of Horse, and being obliged to go almost every Day to Court, that very Equipage is sufficiently troublesome to the City.

These Things shew the Reason why *Pekin* must needs seem much more populous than it is; yet we may allow still the Number of Inhabitants to be at least 2 Millions.

The Streets and Shops.

Almost all the Streets are built in a direct Line, the greatest being about 120 Foot broad, and a Lg. in Length. The Shops where they sell Silk and China generally take up the whole Street, and are a very agreeable Prospect, which is much encreased by the painted and sometimes gilt Boards, which every Shop-keeper sets before his House, containing the Names of the several Commodities he sells. These being placed at almost equal Distances make a pretty odd Shew.

The Houses.

The Houses are not proportionable, being neither well built nor high enough, and the Streets are always pester'd with Mud and Dust, which make the Winter and Summer equally troublesome to all that walk abroad; for the Dirt spoils their Silken Boots, and the Dust their Cloaths, and therefore Horses and Chairs are so much in Request.

A Town in the Emperor's Palace.

Of all the Buildings in this mighty City, there is scarce any remarkable, but the Emperor's Palace, which includes not only the Emperor's House and Gardens, but also a little Town inhabited by the Court-Officers, and a great Number of Artificers, who are employ'd and kept by the Emperor, for none but the Eunuchs lie in the inner Palace. The outward Town is defended by a very good Wall without, and divided from the Emperor's House by one of less Strength. All the Houses are low and ill contriv'd, far worse than those in the *Tartars* City; so that the Quality of the Inhabitants, and the Conveniency of being near the Court, are the only Things that it is commendable for. The inner Palace is made up of 9 vast Courts built in one Line, besides those on the Wings, where are the Kitchin, Stable, and other Offices. The Arches thro' which you go from one to another are Marble, and over every one of them stands a large square *Gothick* Building. The Roof looks oddly, but is handsome; for the Ends of the Joices are continued beyond the Wall in manner of a Cornish, which at a Distance looks very neat. The Sides of every Court are closed by lesser Apartments and Galleries. But when you come to the Emperor's Lodgings, there indeed the Portico's supported by stately Pillars, the white Marble Steps by which you ascend to the inward Halls, the gilt Roofs, the carv'd Work, Varnish, Gilding and Painting they are adorn'd with, the Floors made of Marble or Porcelane, but chiefly the great Number of different Pieces of Architecture, of which they consist, dazzle the Beholder's Eyes, and truly look great, becoming the Majesty of so great a Monarch; yet to any skilful Person in Architecture, there appears great Defects in the *Chinese* Artists, for the Apartments are ill contriv'd, the Ornaments are irregular, and in the Whole there wants that Uniformity, in which consists the Beauty and Conveniency of our Palaces, and which can render Buildings pleasing to the Eye of the Judicious.

The Emperor's Lodgings.

The Guards placed in the Gates and Avenues of the Palace have no Arms but their Scymeters, and are not numerous, tho' they appear so, by reason of the Multitudes of Lords and Mandarins constntly attending at the Times of Audience.

The Emperor's Guards.

The Number of the Emperor's Wives and Concubines is never known, it being very great, and never fix'd. They are never seen by any Man but himself, and none dare hardly enquire about them. They are all Maidens of Quality, which the *Mandarins*, or Governours of Provinces, chuse out and send up to the Palace, where they are kept from all Correspondency even with their Fathers. Most of them are never taken Notice of by the Emperor, and of those that gain his Favour, 3 are singled out to bear the Name of Queen, who are placed in an higher Degree of Honour than the rest, having each of them their Lodgings, their Courts, Ladies of Honour, and other Female Attendants. Nothing is wanting that may give them Content. Their Furniture, Cloaths and Retinue is rich and magnificent, but no ~~Business of Consequence comes to their Knowledge~~, nor are they allow'd to assist the State with their Counsels. For the *Chinese* say, that Heaven has endued Women with good Nature, Modesty and Innocence, that they may look after their Families, and take Care of the Education of Children, but Men only have a Strength of Body and Mind to rule the World, and therefore, by way of Jest, they call *Europe*, *The Lady's Kingdom*, because there the Scepter often falls into the Hands of Women.

Wives and Concubines.

Three Queens.

The Noblemens Houses in *Pekin* deserve not the Name of Palaces, for they are but one Story high, as all the rest are; and tho' they contain Multitudes of Lodgings, yet are without Beauty and Magnificence. Not but that the *Chinese* love to appear great, and spend high, but that the Emperor will not endure any thing that may seem to emulate his Grandure.

Noblemens Houses.

Their Courts of Justice are built no better than common Houses: The Courts, indeed, are large, the Gates lofty, and embellish'd with Ornaments of Architecture something tolerable; but the inward Rooms and Offices shew neither State nor Cleanliness.

Courts of Justice.

Their Idol Temples, which both Prince and People, equally superstitious, have raised at great Expence, and beautified with great Numbers of Statues, appear more sumptuous; for their Roofs are cover'd with Tiles, varnish'd with Yellow and Green, the Sides are adorn'd with curious Figures, and at the Corners Dragons are drawn shooting out themselves. The Emperor has built several within the outward Bounds of his Palace, and 2 of them are very magnificent; but no Christian may enter them.

Idol Temples.

The Imperial Observatory.

The Imperial Observatory has something admirable in it, tho' it comes not up to the *Encomium* given it by a Mathematician, *That there is nothing in Europe to be compared to it*. The Description of it is as follows: You first come into a pretty large Court, where the Lodgings of such as look after the Observatory are upon the Right Hand. As you come in, you meet with a very narrow Stair-Case, by which you ascend to the Top of a square Tower, which is contiguous to the Wall of *Pekin* in the Inside, but is

The old One.

raiſed 10 or 12 Foot higher. Upon this Platform had the *Chineſe* Aſtronomers placed their Inſtruments, *viz.* a Cœleſtial Globe of about 3 Foot Diameter, almoſt oval, but divided with little Exactneſs, and the whole Work very coarſe, and other Inſtruments like our Aſtronomical Rings. In a lower Room near this Place was ſet a Gnomon. The Paſſage thro' which the *Ray* entred was about 8 Foot from the Ground, fix'd Horizontally, and made by Two Copper-Plates, which moving to and fro, made the Orifice larger or ſmaller. Under it lies a Table covered with Braſs, in the midſt of which lengthways they have ſtruck a Meridian Line 15 Foot long, divided by other croſs Lines, which are neither exact nor fine. They have cut little Holes out into the Sides, wherein they put Water to keep it exactly Horizontal. A tolerable Contrivance for the *Chineſe*, which might be ſerviceable to a careful Aſtronomer. But Father *Verbieſt*, who was employ'd to ſurvey them, judged them very uſeleſs, and perſwaded the Emperor to pull them down, and put up new ones of his own contriving, which are large, well caſt, and very well diſpoſed to the Uſe they are deſign'd for, and were but the Niceneſs of the Diviſions anſwerable to that of the Work, and the Teleſcopes faſten'd according to the new Method, nothing could have been brought in Competition with them; however, they are worth a Deſcription, which accept in this Order.

The new One.

See FIG. III

I. Sphæra Armillaris Zodiacalis *of Six Foot Diameter.*

This Inſtrument is ſupported by 4 Dragons, whoſe Bodies, faſten'd to the Ends of 2 Brazen Beams, bear the whole Weight of the Sphere. They have long Hair on their Heads, a fuzzy Beard, flaming Eyes, ſharp Teeth, and a Mouth open, breathing whole Streams of Flame. Four Lions of the ſame Metal ſtand under the End of the aforeſaid Beams. The Circles are divided both in their exterior and interior Surface by croſs Lines into 360 Degrees each, and each Degree into 60 Minutes, and each Minute into Portions of 10 Seconds by ſmall Pins.

II. Sphæra Æquinoctialis *of Six Foot Diameter.*

This Sphere is ſupported by a Dragon, who ſtanding on a Pedeſtal, bears it on his Back bow'd. It is ſupported by 2 Brazen Beams, as the former is. The Deſign is noble, and well perform'd.

III. Horizon Azimuthale, *Six Foot in Diameter.*

This Inſtrument, which is uſeful for the taking of Azimuths, is compoſed of a large Circle. Horizontally placed. The double Index, which ſerves for a Diameter, runs over all the Limb, and carries with it a Rectangle Triangle, the upper Angle of which is faſten'd to a Beam raiſed perpendicular from the Center of the Horizon. Four folded Dragons make the inferior Limb of the Circle faſt, and 2 other winging about 2 ſmall Columns keep the Triangle ſteady.

IV. *A Large Quadrant, whoſe Radius is Six Foot.*

The Limb is divided into Portions of 10 Seconds each: The Lead which ſhews its Vertical Situation weighs a Pound, and is hung from the Center by a very fine Braſs Wyre. The Index moves eaſily round the Limb. The ſeveral Plates are faſten'd to a Dragon folded in ſeveral Rings, leſt they ſhould ſtart out of their due Poſition. The whole Body of the Quadrant hangs in the Air, and a fix'd Axis runs thro' its Center to turn it to all Parts of the Heaven; and leſt its Weight ſhould cauſe it to ſhiver, and looſe its Vertical Poſition, it is ſupported by a Beam on each Side faſten'd to the Axis. The whole Work is ſubſtantial and well contriv'd.

V. *A Sextant, whoſe Radius is about Eight Foot.*

This repreſents the 6th part of a great Circle, born by a Beam, the Baſis of which is concave, faſten'd with Dragons, and croſs'd in the Middle with Brazen Pillars, on one End of which is an Engine with Wheels to move the Inſtrument. On this Engine reſts the Middle of a ſmall Brazen Beam, which repreſents the Radius of a Sextant, and is faſten'd to it. Its upper Part is terminated by a big Cylinder, which is the Center on which the Index turns, and the lower is extended 2 Foot beyond the Limb, that it may be graſp'd by the Pully that raiſes it. Theſe large and heavy Machines are of greater Ornament than Uſe.

VI. *A Cœleſtial Globe of Six Foot Diameter.*

This is the faireſt of all the Inſtruments, being of Braſs, and exactly round and ſmooth. The Stars are well made, truly placed, and all the Circles are of a proportionable Breadth and Thickneſs. It is ſo well hung, that the leaſt Touch moves it, and the leaſt Child may elevate it to any Degree. On its large hollow Baſis ſtand 4 Dragons, which ſupport a noble Horizon, commendable for its Breadth, Ornaments, and Neatneſs of the Work. The Meridian, in which the Pole is fix'd, moves with the whole Globe to give it its required Elevation.

Moſt of theſe Machines being above 10 Foot from the Ground have, for the Aſtronomers greater Convenience, Marble Steps round them, cut Amphitheatre wiſe; but tho' theſe Inſtruments are ſo very fine, the *Chineſe* could never have been brought to make uſe of them and leave their old ones, without a ſpecial Order from the Emperor; for they are more fond of the moſt defective Pieces of Antiquity, than of the moſt perfect modern Invention, clear contrary to us, who love nothing almoſt but what is new: And this may be the Reaſon why the *Chineſe*, tho' they have for above 4000 Years kept cloſe to their Aſtronomical Obſervations, yet they have in ſo long a Time made no great Improvements. For tho' 5 Mathematicians ſpend every Night on the Tower in watching what paſſes in the Heavens, every one gazing ſeveral Ways, that nothing that happens in the 4 Corners of the World may eſcape their Obſervation; they take Notice of the Winds, Rain, Air, Eclipſes, Conjunctions of the Planets, Fires, Meteors, and whatever elſe is unuſual, of which they give an Account every Morning to the Surveyor of the Mathematicks, that they may regiſter it, yet they were ſo unskilful when the Popiſh Miſſionaries entred their Country, that they were not able, without their Help, to compoſe an exact Calendar, and their Tables for Eccliples were ſo very uncorrect, that they could hardly gueſs at the Time they ſhould happen, and when it falls out, they are ſo far from knowing the true Cauſe of it, that they fancy a prodigious Dragon in Heaven, who is a profeſs'd Enemy to the Sun and Moon, and ready at all Times to devour them. And for this Reaſon, as ſoon as they perceive an Eclipſe, they make a terrible Rattling with Drums and Braſs-Kettles, till the Monſter, frightned at the Noiſe, let go his Prey. Many Perſons of Quality, by reading the Miſſionaries Books, underſtand better, but the Superſtition is kept up among the People and Mandarins, who pray for the Sun's Deliverance, while the People endeavour to reſcue it.

The *Chineſe* Lovers of Antiquity.

Their Opinion about Eclipſes.

The noble Gates and ſtately Walls of *Pekin*, which are ſuch indeed as become an Imperial City, muſt not be paſs'd over in Silence. The Gates are not embelliſh'd with Statues, or other Carvings, as moſt of the publick Buildings in *China* are, but all their Beauty conſiſts in a prodigious Height, which at a Diſtance makes the fineſt Show in the World. They conſiſt in 2 large ſquare Buildings, built ſeparately, but join'd together by 2 very tall and very thick Walls; ſo that they form a Square capacious enough to hold 500 Men in Battel. The firſt Building, which is like a Fortreſs, looks toward the Road, and the other commands the City. Here they conſtantly keep a Guard, and a ſmall Magazine to ſupply them with Stores, in caſe of Neceſſity. The Walls are anſwerable to the Gates, ſo tall, that they hide the whole City, and ſo thick, that Centinels on Horſeback are placed upon them. They are defended with ſquare Towers, placed at a Bow-Shot Diſtance from one another. The Ditch is dry, but very broad and deep: All regular, and as well kept, as if they were in continual Apprehenſion of a Siege.

The Gates and Walls of *Pekin*.

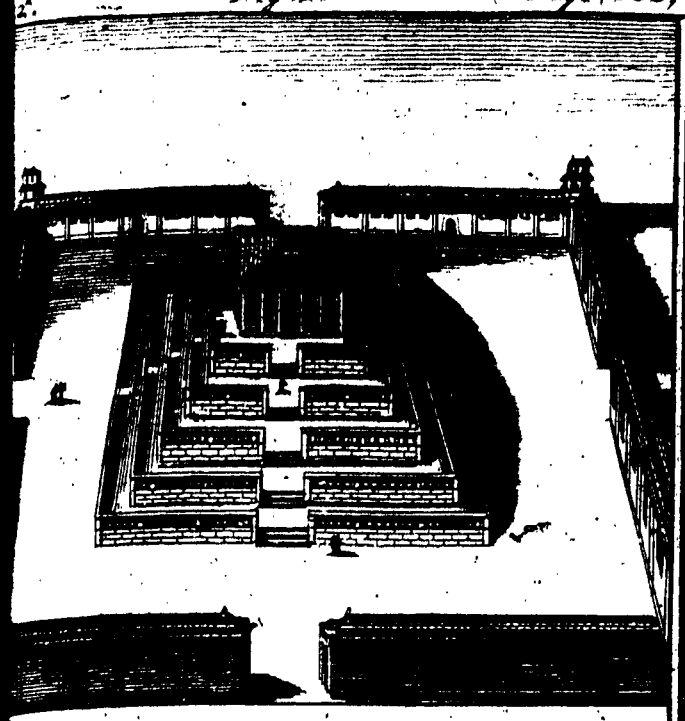
The Walls.

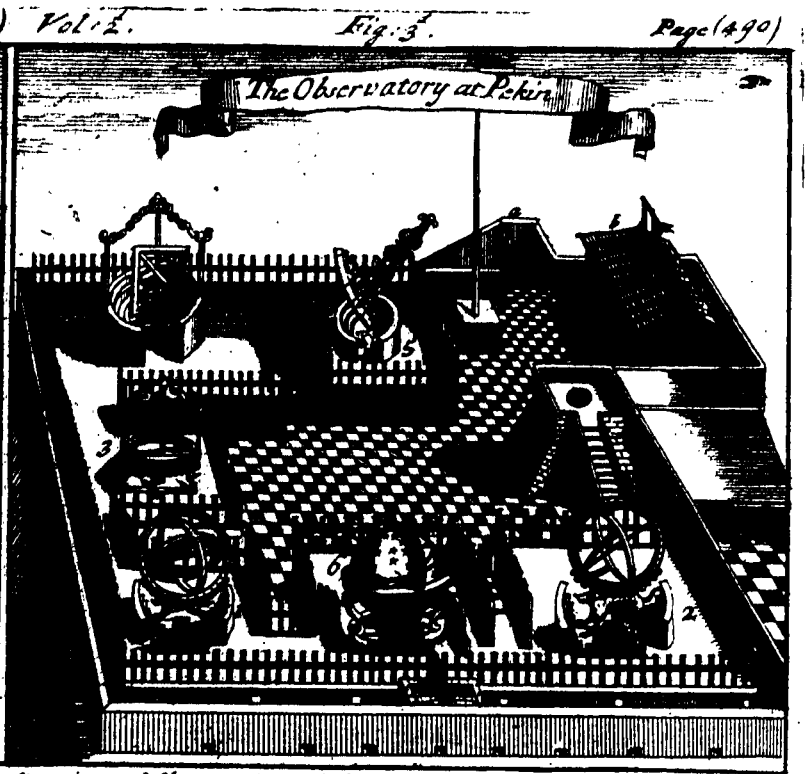
All the other Cities and Towns in *China* are of 2 Kinds, *viz.* Cities of War, which are ſolely deſign'd for the Defence of the Country; And, *2dly*, Towns of Traffick. The fortify'd Towns are made ſtronger than the other only by their Situation, which is almoſt inacceſſible, but the Frontier-Towns near *Tartary* are ſo well fortify'd, that it is almoſt impoſſible to force them. Their uſual Fortifications are

The fortified Towns.

a

Fig. 2. Page (488) Vol. 2. Fig. 3. Page (490)





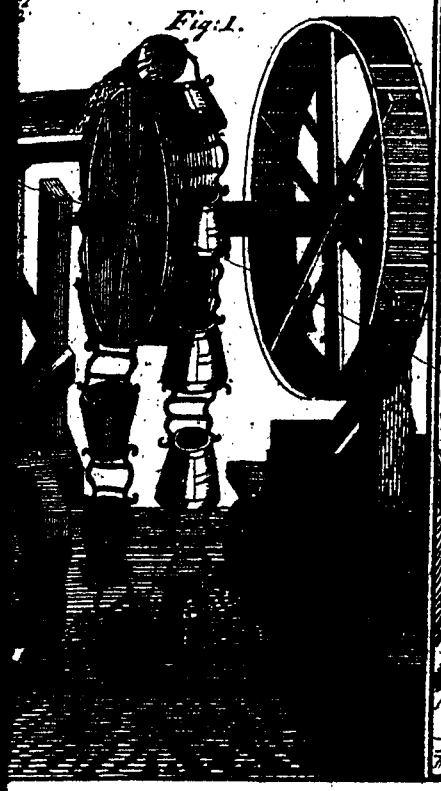
...rone of the Emperour of China, Scituated in ye Middle of the Court of his Pallace, and raised upon five bases of White Marble.

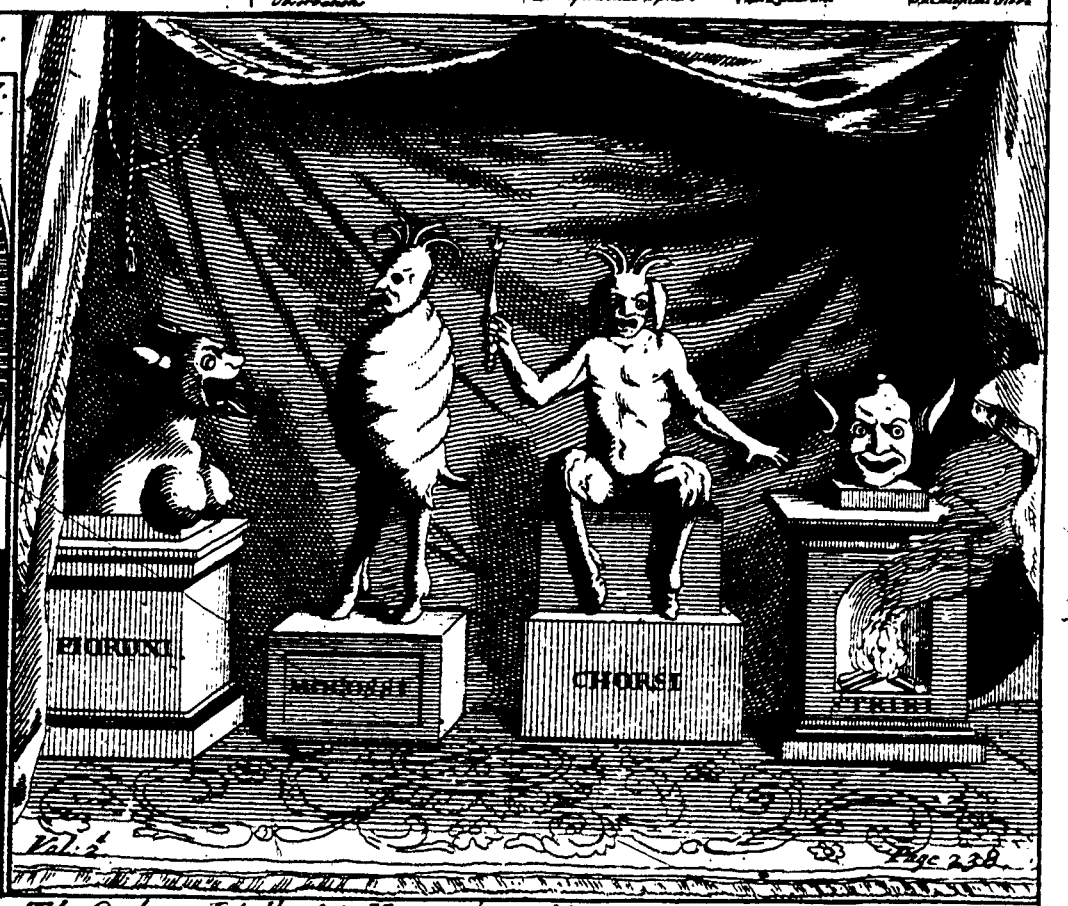
1. Steps going up to the Observatory. 2. A building where for the use of the Observators. | 1. 2. Zodiacal Sphere. 2. 3. Terrestrial Sphere. | 3. An Azimuthal horizon. 4. An Equinoctial. | 5. An Equinoctial. 6. A Celestiall Globe.

...gine to raise water with a chain of Buckets. ...t of Kircher's MUNDUS SUBTERRANEUS.

...es Travells Page. 547.

Fig. 1.





Vol. 2. Page 238.

The Gods or Idolls of the Muscovites, this Belongs to the Antient Religion of the Muscovites.

Fig. 4. p. (500)

...n-Chu A Tree in China

Vol. 2. Fig. 5. A List of all the Words that form the Chinese Tongue. Page (502.)

ca	cai	cam	can	cao	co	cou	coue coum	cha	chay	cham	chan	chao	ché
chin	chéou	chï	chiao	chim	chin	cho	choa	chou	chouon	chouê	choui	choun	choun
ſa	ſam	ſen	ſéou	ſi	ſo	ſoe	ſoi	ſou	ſouen	ſoum	guei	haï	ham
han	hao	he	hem	hen	heou	hi	hia	hiai	hiam	hiao	hie	hien	hieou
him	hin	hio	hiu	hiué	hieuren	hioum	hiun	ho	hao	hoai	hoam	hoan	hoé
hoei	hoen	hou	houm	houon	y	ya	yai	yam	ïao	ïe	ïem	ïeou	in
in	ïo	ſu	ïué	ïuen	ïum	ïun	ke	kem	ken	keou	ki	kia	kiao
kié	kien	kïeou	kim	kin	kio	kiu	kiuè	kieuen	kioum	kiuin	la	laï	lam
lan	lao	le	leam	leao	lem	leou	ſh	li	hié	lien	lieou	lim	lin
lio	liu	lo	lou	louï	loum	louan	louon	lun	ma	maï	mam	man	mao
mau	me	mem	men	meou	mi	miao	mié	mien	mim	min	mo	mou	mouen
moui	moum	mouon	na	naï	nam	nan	nao	nem	ngaï	ngan	ngao	nguè	nguén
ngeou	ngo	ni	niam	niaw	niao	ni	nien	nieou	mio	nim	niu	no	nou
noui	noum	nouon	nun	o, ou	pa	paï	pam	pan	pao	pe	péou	pi	piao
pié	pien	pim	pin	po	poi	pou	pouen	poum	ponon	qua	quouè	quoui	quoum
quouei	quouen	qouo	qouon	ſa	ſaï	ſam	ſan	ſao	ſé	ſem	ſen	ſeou	ſi
ſiam	ſiao	ſié	ſien	ſiéou	ſim	ſin	ſio	ſiou	ſiuè	ſiuen	ſiun	ſo	ſou
ſu	ſoui	ſu	ſoum	ſun	ſouon	ta	taï	tam	tan	tao	te	tem	teou
ti	tiao	tie	tiem	tieou	tim	to	tou	touï	toum	tun	touon	tſa	tſai
tſam	tſan	tſao	tſé	tſem	tſéou	tſa	tſim	tſio	tſié	tſien	tſieou	tſim	tſin
tſio	tſin	tſiué	ſtiuen	tſoum	tſiou	tſo	tſou	tſu	tſui	ſoum	tſun	tſuon	tcha
tchaï	tcham	tchan	tchao	tché	tchen	tcheou	tchi	tchim	tchin	tcho	tchoen	tchoun	tchu
tchoua	tchouen	tchoué	tchoum	tchun	iia	va	vai	vam	van	ven	ve	vi	—
von	vou	voim	3aß.										
		oum											

The Chinese Lovers of Antiquity. Their Opinion about Eccliples. The Gates and Walls of Pekin. The Wall. The fortified Towns.

a go
larg
tho'
are
The Great Wall. alm
Wa
Wa
Occ
Wi
wit
the
2 o
Def
of I
Wa
and
the
Foo
wit
Ago
pero
the
hav
whi
they
Their Fortresses. and
abo
able
vast
The Trading Towns. B
to h
enou
Gov
nera
160
300
wor
rest
Tra
The Villages T
the
and
Wa
Cou
Day
fron
kep
The Largeness of the Cities 1. Nankin. T
than
be c
Kia
of
Wo
ther
Wh
habi
tile
men
Sple
Its Streets. Stre
Hou
Tho
rich,
Wa
dom
foun
darin
selve
Printing. seve
thei
poli
the
Emp
the
nav
broa
serva
some
new
Visi
calle
The Temple of Gratitude. City
ago
Basis
polis
100
a Ga
with
pain

a good Bulwark, ſome Towers, Brick-Walls, and a large deep Ditch, fill'd with running Water, which tho' not comparable to ours in *Europe*, where Guns are uſed, yet one prodigious Work they have, which almoſt ſurmounts all ours, and that is the *Great Wall*, which themſelves ſtile, *Van Licham*, *Chim*, The Wall 10000 *Stadium's* long, reaching from the Eaſtern Ocean to the Province of *Xanſi*. If we reckon all its Windings, 'tis 500 Lgs. in Length. It is fortified with Towers like a City, and in the Places where the Paſſes may be more eaſily forced, there are raiſed 2 or 3 Bulwarks one behind another for their mutual Defence, which are ſo well ſtor'd with great Numbers of Forces, that the *Chineſe* need fear no Attempts that Way. The Wall is carried over the higheſt Hills, and ſo is ſometimes tall, and at other times low, as the Ground allows. It is not above 4, or at moſt 5 Foot thick. It is almoſt all built with Brick, bound with ſuch ſtrong Mortar, that tho' it has laſted ſeveral Ages, 'tis ſcarce the worſe. It was raiſed by the Emperor *Chihohamti*, about 1800 Years ago, to prevent the Inrodes of the *Tartars*, tho' it ſeems Madneſs to have carry'd it up to the Tops of ſome Mountains, which the *Tartars* could never aſcend, and to which they could never carry Materials but with vaſt Coſt and Hazard. The Number of their Fortreſſes is above 1000 of the firſt Rate; the other are leſs remarkable, but all very well Garriſon'd, which ſhews what vaſt Armies there are always kept on Foot.

The Great Wall.

Their Fortreſſes.

But *China* in her Military Capacity is far inferior to herſelf in her Trading Capacity; we can never enough admire the Numbers, Greatneſs, Beauty and Government of her Trading Towns. They are generally divided into 3 Claſſes, the firſt contains about 160, the ſecond 270, and the third near 1200, beſides 300 Wall'd Towns, which they leave out, as not worth obſerving, tho' they come little ſhort of the reſt in the Number of Inhabitants, or Greatneſs of Trade.

The Trading Towns.

The Villages are almoſt numberleſs, eſpecially in the Southern Provinces. In the Provinces of *Xanſi* and *Xenſi* they are for the moſt part ſurrounded with Walls, and good Ditches with Iron-Gates, which the Country People ſhut at Night, and guard in the Day-time to protect themſelves from Thieves, and from Inſults of Soldiers, who are not always to be kept within Bounds by their Officers.

The Villages.

The Largeneſs of theſe Cities is not leſs amazing than their Number. *Pekin*, abovemention'd, is not to be compared with *Nankim*, or, as it is now called, *Kiamnim*, a Town formerly encloſed within 3 Walls, of which the outermoſt was 16 Lgs. round. Some Works of it are ſtill to be ſeen, which one would rather think to be the Bounds of a Province than a City. When the Emperors kept their Courts there, the Inhabitants were numberleſs; its Situation, Haven, fertile Soil and Canals much conducing to the Improvement of Trade. It has loſt much of its former Splendor, yet is more populous than *Pekin*. The Streets are not very broad, but very well paved; the Houſes are not very broad, but very well paved. The Houſes are low, but cleanly, and Shops very rich, being filled with Stuffs, Silks, and other coſtly Wares. In a Word, 'tis in the Center of the Kingdom, and all the Curioſities of the Empire are found here. The moſt famous Doctors and Mandarins, who are out of Buſineſs, uſually ſettle themſelves here, becauſe they have the Conveniency of ſeveral excellent Libraries. Their Printing is fairer, their Artificers better Workmen, their Tongue more polite, and Accents ſmoother. It is beſt fitted for the Imperial Seat, tho' Reaſons of State keep the Emperor nearer the Borders: For, 1. It is ſituate upon the River *Kiam*, which is largeſt, deepeſt and moſt navigable of the whole Empire, being near half a Lg. broad by the City-ſide. 2. There was a Royal Obſervatory on the Top of a Mountain, but now only ſome old Buildings remain, and a large ſquare Hall, newly built in Memory of the Emperor *Camby's* kind Viſit to that City. 3. A large Tower, commonly called the *China-Tower*. 4. An Houſe without the City, called, *The Temple of Gratitude*, built 300 Years ago by the Emperor *Yonlo*. It is raiſed upon a maſſie Baſis of Brick, and encompaſſed with a Rail of unpoliſh'd Marble. You aſcend to the loweſt Hall by 10 or 12 Steps round it. The Front is adorn'd with a Gallery and ſome Pillars. The Roofs are cover'd with green, varniſh'd, ſhining Tiles, and the Ceiling painted in ſeveral Pieces differently wrought, which

The Largeneſs of the Cities i. Nankim.

Its Streets.

Printing.

The Temple of Gratitude.

with the *Chineſe* is no ſmall Ornament. It has no Light, but what comes in at the Doors, which are 3, and thoſe very large ones. It is of an Octangular Figure, about 40 Foot broad, ſo that each Side is 15 Foot wide. There is a Wall built round it of the ſame Form at 2 Fathom and half Diſtance, which ſupporting a Penthouſe, which comes from the Tower, makes a pretty kind of Gallery. This Tower is 9 Stories high, each Story being adorn'd with a Corniſh 3 Foot wide at the Bottom of the Windows, and diſtinguiſhed by little Penthouſes, as the former, but every Story narrower as the Tower riſes higher. The Wall at the Bottom is at leaſt 12 Foot thick, and above 8 and an half at the Top, caſed with *China* Ware, tho' of the coarſer ſort. The Stair-caſe is narrow, and troubleſome to aſcend, becauſe the Steps are very high. Each Story hath a Room floor'd with Timber, and the Ceiling is beautified with Paintings. The Walls of the upper Room have ſeveral ſmall Niches in them, full of carved Idols, which make a pretty kind of Checker. The whole Work is gilt, and looks like carved Stone or Marble, but 'tis thought to be Brick only. The whole Building from the Bottom of the Baſis to the Top of the Cupolo is 200 Foot at leaſt. The Cupolo is a great Ornament to the Building, being like a thick Maſt, about which runs a Spiral Line of Iron at ſome Diſtance from it, and on the Top of it is placed a very large Golden-Ball. The *Chineſe* call it, *The Porcelane Tower*; but the *Europeans*, *The Brick Tower*. Whatever 'tis made of, it is the nobleſt Structure of all the *Eaſt*, and from it you have a Proſpect of the whole City, and eſpecially of the Mountain, where the Obſervatory ſtands, which lies a good Lg. N. E. E. from it.

Nankim is alſo famous for the Bigneſs of its Bells, whoſe Weight has born down the Steeple where they hung. There are but 3 in the City, but a 4th lies beyond the River *Kiam*. They were caſt in the 9th Reign preceding the preſent, and have each a particular Name. One they call *Tchoui*, i. e. *The Hanger*; another *Che*, i. e. *The Eater*; a 3d *Choui*, or *So*, i. e. *The Sleeper*; and the 4th *Si*, i. e. *The Flier*. There is no great Difference in their Bigneſs, and their Figure is almoſt a Cylinder. One of them being meaſured, was found 11 Foot high, beſides the Ear by which it hangs, which is 2 Foot, 7 Foot Diameter, and 22 Foot in Circumference. The Brim is 6 Inches and half thick, but growing thinner and thinner to the Top, where it is but 2 Inches thick, if we compute it at 4 Inches throughout, the Bell will weigh about 50000 Pound, a cubical Foot of Braſs weighing 648 Pound; and ſo this Bell is twice as heavy as that at *Erfort*, which F. *Kircher* affirms to be the biggeſt in the World: And yet theſe Bells are not comparable to thoſe at *Pekin*, which can ſhew 7 Bells, caſt in the Reign of the Emperor *Yonlo*, near 300 Years ago, weighing 120000 Pound each. They are 11 Foot wide, 40 round, and 12 high, beſides the Ear, which is at leaſt 3 Foot high. But as much as their Bells exceed ours in Bigneſs, ours are better than theirs in Sound, for they make a dull obſcure Noiſe, their Clappers being made of Wood. In all their Cities they have Bells of equal Bigneſs almoſt, with which they diſtinguiſh the 5 Watches of the Night, which they reekon from 7 or 8 a Clock in the Evening, and manage them like repeating Clocks. The Metropolis of moſt Provinces, tho' not equal to theſe 2, yet is ſo big, that each were fit to be the Chief of an Empire.

Great Bells, and their Names.

The Bells of Pekin the bigger.

Sigan, the Capital City of *Xenſi*, is 3 Leagues round, the Walls which encloſe it making an exact Square, its Ditches, which are part dry, are very fine, its Wall are thick and tall, as well as the Towers that defend them, its Bulwarks broad, and Gates ſtately, like thoſe of *Pekin*. The City is divided into 2 Parts by an Earthen Wall, which are inhabited the one by the *Tartars*, and the other *Chineſe*. Both Parts maintain a Garriſon, but the *Tartars* are ſtrongeſt. Here is an old Palace, the Reſidence of the ancient Kings of the Country, who were powerful not only in the vaſt Extent of their Dominions, but Courage and Bravery of their Subjects; for among all the *Chineſe* there is no People better proportion'd, more ſtrong, ſtout and laborious, than thoſe of theſe Parts. Their Houſes are low and ill built, their Furniture is not ſo neat as in the Southern Parts, their Varniſh not ſo ſmooth, their China not ſo plentiful, nor their Workmen ſo ingenious.

Sigan deſcribed.

A Palace.

Hamcheu. *Hamcheu*, the chief City of the Province of *Chekiam*, is also one of the richest and greatest Cities of the Empire. It is 4 Lgs. round, the Streets are full of People, the Suburbs very large, and Canals crowded with an infinite Number of Boats, being as populous as the greatest Cities of *Europe*. The Garrison consists of 10000 Men, of which 3000 only are *Chinese*. The Water of their Canals is not clear, nor are their Streets broad, but their Shops are neat, and their Merchants are reputed rich. Eastward from the City runs a River half a Lg. broad, but a little higher 'tis an useless Torrent. Westward lies a Lake close to it about 2 Lgs. round. The Water is clear, but shallow, yet deep enough to carry some large flat-bottom'd Boats, in which the young People take their Pleasure on it. In the Middle stands an Island, where they usually land, having built there a Temple and some Houses for Diversion.

Sucheu. Not far from *Hamcheu* stands *Sucheu*, a City of equal Bigness and Extent (for this is the Wonder of *China*, that having view'd one of their Cities, you think you could hardly find another like it, but you are hardly out of Sight of one, but you come to another.) The Inhabitants say, 'tis 4 Lgs. in Compass. It is the usual Residence of the Vice-Roy, and has as great a Trade as any City in the Empire. One, who has Patience to stand but a few Minutes by the Water-side, and view the Throngs of People that come to cheapen Commodities, and pay their Customs, would imagine it to be a Fair, to which the whole Empire was crowding, and yet it is not so populous as the Cities above-mention'd.

Not far from *Sucheu* you meet with other Cities at small Distances from each other; some a Lg. and half, and some 2 Lgs. round. When you come to the River *Kiam*, you meet with *Chinkiam*, a Town built on its Banks. One of its Suburbs, which lies on the N. W. is a large *German* Mile in Compass. This Place is so populous, that 'tis hard to crowd through it.

Chinkiam.

Qua-cheeu. Over-against it, and on the other Side of the River, stands *Qua-cheeu*, another great Trading Town; and a little beyond lies *Yamcheu*, one of the most remarkable Cities of the whole Empire, which the *Chinese* say, contains 2 Millions of Inhabitants. Most of the Cities of the first Rank are of equal Bigness and Extent; the rest are as big as *Lyons* or *Bourdeaux*. Of the 260 of the second Rank 200 are like *Orleance*; and among the 1200 of the third Rate there are 5 or 600 as considerable as *Rochel* and *Angolesme*, besides an innumerable Quantity of great and populous Villages.

Yamcheu.

[Among the Cities and Towns of *China*, there are some seated in the Provinces of *Yun Nan*, *Quei Cheum*, *Quam Si* and *Su Cheum*, which pay no Tribute to the Emperor, nor yield him any Obedience, but are govern'd by particular and absolute Princes. They are environ'd with high Mountains and steep Rocks, within which are Fields and Plains of several Days Journey, full of Cities, Villages and Towns. The *Chinese* call these Lords, *Tu Su*, or *Tu Quon*, i. e. *Mandarins* of the Country, because, as they think, there is no Emperor in the World but theirs, so there is no Princes or Lords but what he makes. These People speak the same Language with the *Chinese*, but have another peculiar to themselves. Their Manners and Customs differ from the *Chinese*, but their Complexion and Shape of their Bodies is altogether like theirs. They excel the *Chinese* as much in Courage as if they were another Nation, as they have found by several Trials; so that they are forced to let them enjoy their Liberty, and consent to a free Traffick and Commerce with them.] *Out of F.* Magellan.

The Ports and Havens. To the Towns we may add the several Ports and Havens, which do not a little contribute to the Encrease of its Wealth. The *Chinese* Emperors prohibited all Foreigners to enter them, but now the *Tartars*, who are more fond of Money than ancient Customs, have granted a free Access to all Nations.

1. *Macao.* Their first Haven Southwards is *Macao*, famous for the great Traffick formerly maintain'd there by the *Portuguese*, before the *Dutch* expell'd them out of the greatest part of the *Indies*. They have still a Fortress in it, but the Garrison is small, so that they are forced to maintain their Post by a blind Obsequeousness to the *Chinese*. The Town is small, unwall'd, and built on a narrow uneven Soil, on the Point of a small Island, which commands a good Road, where the Ships being shelter'd, with divers other small Islands, which lie to Windward, are secured from Storms. The Haven is narrow, but safe and commodious. All the Customs belong to the Emperor; and tho' the *Portuguese* maintain a sort of Government among themselves, yet they obey the *Mandarins* in all Things relating to the *Chinese*.

2. A River. The 2d Haven of this Coast is form'd by a pretty wide River, up the which great Vessels can go, as far as *Canton*. This Port is convenient for Foreigners, because the City supplies them well with Merchandize and Provisions, but the *Mandarins* will not let them approach the Walls, or let their Merchants deal with them, because they sell them all *European* Goods by their Factors.

3. *Emoui.* In the Province of *Fokien* is another celebrated Haven, called *Emoui* from the Island that forms it. The biggest Ships ride here secure, and may come as near the Shore as they will. The late great Improvement of Trade in this City has made it very populous, and the Emperor keeps a Garrison of 6 or 7000 Men there, under a *Chinese* Commander.

4. *Nimpo.* In the more Easterly Part of *China* is *Nimpo*. The Entrance into it is difficult, and impassable to great Vessels, the Bar at highest Tides not being above 15 Foot under Water. This Place has a great Trade to *Japan*, it being but 2 Days Passage to *Nangazaki*, whither they carry Silks, Sugar, Drugs and Wine, which they exchange for Gold, Silver and Brass. *Nimpo* is a City of the first Class, tho' much damaged by the late Wars; yet the Walls are in a good Condition, the City and Suburbs well inhabited, and the Garrison is pretty numerous. The Town is still full of a kind of Monuments, called by the *Chinese*, *Paifam* or *Pailou*, and by us Triumphal Arches, which are frequent in *China*. They consist in 3 great Arches a-breast, built with long Marble-Stones. The middle one is highest. The 4 Columns that support them are sometimes round, but oftner square. They have no Capitals, but the Trunk is fasten'd into the Architrave. The Frize is too high in Proportion to the rest. They are adorn'd with beautiful Figures, and emboss'd Salptures, with Knots wrought loose one within another, with Flowers curiously carved, and Birds flying, as it were, from the Stone, which are Master-pieces. The best sort are thus made, the rest are more ordinary, and some not worth seeing.

Triumphal Arches.

The Haven of *Nankim*, once famous, is now so wholly disused, that it cannot be reckon'd among them of Note.

5. *Nankin.* This is in general what may be said of the Ports, Fortresses and Cities of *China*, the Number of which is so great, that a Traveller can scarce distinguish them, and therefore the *Chinese* have ever thought no Nation in the World to be compared to them; but since they have been told, that the West hath also Cities and Kingdoms which in several Things exceed theirs, they are much humbled and vex'd to have their Universal Monarchy question'd.

There are besides 205 Royal Hosteries, or Places of Entertainment, called *Ye*, and 103 Courts of Guard, or Royal Hosteries of the 2d Rank, which they call *Cham chin*.

That all these Cities, Towns, Villages, Forts, Havens and Hosteries may be known, and made more useful, the *Chinese* have caused to be printed a publick Itinerary, which contains all the Roads and Passages, both by Water and Land, from *Pekin* to the utmost Parts of the Empire. In this Book all the Royal High-ways are divided into 1145 Days Journey, every one of which have a certain Place where the *Mandarins* are entertain'd and lodg'd at their own Expences, when they go to their several Employments. Here there are Officers kept continually, who having Notice by a Courier sent on purpose, that they are coming, cleanse the Palace, and prepare Diet, Porters, Horses, Chairs, Litters and Barges, if they go by Water, for them. In these Hosteries also are entertain'd all *Chinese* and Strangers, to whom the Emperor allows that Favour, according to their Quality.

LET-

LETTER IV.

Written to the Count de Crecy, *and gives an Account of the Clime, Soil, Canals, Rivers and Fruits of* China.

IN this Letter F. *Le Comte*, who had often raiſed the Admiration of the *Chineſe*, by deſcribing to them the Politeneſs, Beauty and Magnificence of *Europe*, endeavours to make known *China* to that *European*, who is beſt able to judge of its true Grandeur, and to give a juſt Idea of that Country, he has pitched upon the following Particulars, which will afford as much Pleaſure as Profit in reading them.

The Soil. *China* being of a large Extent, the Soil differs according to its Situation, as it lies more or leſs Southward; yet the leaſt of the 15 Provinces is ſo populous and fertile, that in *Europe* it would make a conſiderable State. The Land is divided into Hills and Plains. The latter they have levell'd like Gardens, that by letting the Water thro' them, they may meliorate and improve them. The ſame Courſe they take in tilling and manuring the Hills; for they cut them out like a Pair of Stairs from the Top to the Bottom, that the Rain-Water may ſpread equally, and not waſh down the Ground with its Seeds; and ſo making them, as it were, artificial Plains, have rendred the Soil as fruitful as that of the beſt cultivated Valleys; for their Mountains are not ſtony, as ours are, but the Mould is light, porous and eaſily cut, and ſo deep, that in moſt Provinces you may dig 3 or 400 Foot before you come at the Rock. This much contributes to the Goodneſs of it, becauſe the continual Tranſpiration of Salt-Spirits is ever renewing it, and ſo endues the Soil with a perpetual Fertility: Yet the Provinces of *Xenſi*, *Honan*, *Quamtum* and *Fokien* are more barren than the reſt, tho' their Mountains are not wholly uſeleſs, bearing all ſorts of Trees, which grow tall and ſtreight, and are fit for all kinds of Building, eſpecially Shipping. The Emperor reſerves ſome for his private Uſe, *viz.* for Pillars for Temples, and other Publick Buildings, and the Inhabitants trade much in them; for having cut off the Boughs, they tie 80 or 100 of them together, and making Floats of them of near a Mile long, drag them along the Rivers and Canals, till they have ſold them all. Theſe Timber-Merchants build little convenient Houſes upon them for themſelves and Families, in which they lie during the whole Voyage, which is ſometimes 3 or 4 Months.

Their Husbandry.

Infertility.

Their Trade in Timber.

Nankin.

Mines in their Mountains. They have other Mountains, which produce Iron, Tin, Braſs, Mercury, Gold and Silver. The Silver-Mines are little uſed, partly becauſe they have Plenty of that Mettle, and partly becauſe 'tis dangerous, as well as laborious, to dig it. As for the Gold, the Torrents waſh ſo great a Quantity of it into the Plains, that many People, who have no other Occupation, ſpend all their Time in ſeeking it among the Sand and Dirt, and much enrich themſelves by it; for they find it ſo pure, that it needs no Refining, as it doth in *Peru*.

Miraculous Mountains. Some of their Mountains (as the *Chineſe* pretend, who are credulous to Exceſs) have wonderful Properties; ſome are cover'd with Clouds, others are always ſerene, and others produce only wholſome Herbs; for no poiſonous Herb will grow upon them. They ſay, that in the Province of *Xenſi* is an Hill ſhap'd like a Cock, and crows ſo loud ſometimes, as to be heard 5 Lgs. and that another in *Fokien* moves to and fro againſt a Storm, as a Tree agitated by the Wind. The Tops of others are continually cover'd with Froſts. There is one in the Province of *Kiamci*, called, *The Dragon-Tyger*, becauſe the *Bonzes* ſay, that the upper part is ſhap'd like a Dragon, and aſſaults the lower, that is like a Tyger; and another in *Fokien* repreſents their Idol *Foe*, and is ſo hugely big, that its Eyes are ſeveral Miles broad, and its Noſe many Lgs. in Length. A Mountain in *Xenſi* breaths out Fire and Flames, raiſes Winds and Storms at the Sound of a Drum; and one in the Province of *Huquam* has this ſtrange Property, That it makes Thieves ſo giddy, that when they have ſtollen, they cannot carry off their Booty. Many ſuch Fables they have, which may paſs for Wonders, but their practical Superſtitions have worſe Effects. They believe, that in the Mountains live a ſort of Men, which they call, *The Immortal Race*, believing really that they never die, and being infatuated with this Opinion, ſome of them wander among the Rocks, and then loſe themſelves in Queſt of Immortality. There are ſeveral famous Grotto's, where ſome *Bonzes* lead a very auſtere Life, but moſt of them are odious to the Nobles and People for their execrable Vices. Their moſt famous Temples are built on Mountains, and Pilgrims repair thither 200 Lgs. round in ſo great Numbers, that the Roads are crowded with them. The Women being glad of this Opportunity of going abroad, pretend much Zeal for this ſort of Devotion; but their Husbands having found it prejudicial to their Vertue, force it often into a narrower Compaſs, and confine them to their Homes.

Strange Inhabitants in the Mountains.

The Fertility of the Plains. Having ſurvey'd the Mountains, let us take a View of the Plains; and it muſt be confeſs'd, that no Art can equal their natural Beauty. They are all tilled, and have neither Hedge nor Ditch, nor ſcarce a Tree, for they are afraid to loſe an Inch of Ground. In moſt Provinces they have an Harveſt twice a Year, and between thoſe 2 Seaſons they ſow Herbs and Pulſe. All the Northern and Weſtern Provinces, as *Pekin*, *Xanſi*, *Xenſi* and *Suchuen*, bear Wheat, Barley, ſeveral kinds of Millet and Tobacco, with black and yellow Peaſe, with which they feed their Horſes, as we do with Oats. The Southern Parts, eſpecially *Huquam*, *Nankin* and *Chekiam*, are fruitful in Rice, being low Watery Countries. The Husbandmen at firſt ſow it diſorderly like other Corn, and when 'tis grown 2 Foot high, they pull it up by the Roots, and tranſplant it in a ſtrait Line, in ſmall Parcels like little Sheaves, chequerwiſe, that the Ears may ſupport each other, and more eaſily reſiſt the Wind, ſo that they look like ſpacious Gardens.

Wheat, Barley, &c.

Rice how managed.

The Fruits. The Soil bears all ſorts of Fruits, as Pears, Apples, Apricots, Peaches, Figs, Grapes, of all kinds, eſpecially excellent Muſcadine, Pomegranates, Wall-nuts, Cheſnuts, and generally all we have in *Europe*. Their Olives are not near ſo good as ours, becauſe they are Strangers to the Art of Grafting. They preſs no Oil out of them, becauſe they either know not the Art, or the Fruit is not fit for it. They have 3 ſorts of Melons, which are all excellent. The firſt are ſmall, yellow within, and of a ſweet Sugar-Taſte, which they eat with the Rind, as we do an Apple. Others are very big and long, and the Inſide of ſome is white, and of others red: Tho' they are full of cooling Juice, they never prove offenſive, and may be eaten during the greateſt Heats of Summer without Fear of Surfeiting. Theſe are called *Water-Melons*. The 3d ſort are like our ordinary Melons.

Their Melons of 3 ſorts.

Their moſt delicate Fruits. They have ſome Fruits, which are not known to us in *Europe*. The moſt delicate of them are: 1. The *Leechi*, which grows in the Province of *Quamtum*. It is as big as a Nut, and the Stone is long and large, and the Meat on it is ſoft and wateriſh, but of a delicious Taſte, far beyond any of our Fruits: It is encloſed in a rough Rind, and the whole is ſhap'd like an Egg. It is unwholſome to eat a Quantity, and of ſo hot a Nature, as to cauſe a Man's whole Body to break out in Pimples. They dry it with the Rind, and uſe it in their Tea inſtead of Sugar, to which it gives a little ſharp Taſte, and more agreeable.

1. The *Leechi*.

2. *Louyen*, or *Dragon's-Eye*, a ſmall Fruit, which grows in the ſame Province, and in that of *Fokien*. The Tree that bears it is as large as a Wall-nut-Tree. The Fruit is exactly round, and the outward Rind both ſmooth and gray, but as it ripens it grows yellowiſh. The Meat is white, of a ſharp Taſte, and very full of Juice, fitter for a Deſſert, than to ſatisfie an hungry Stomach. It is very cool and inoffenſive.

2. *Louyen*, or *Lungyen*.

3. The

3. The *Seze*, another Fruit peculiar to *China*, grows almoſt in all Parts of it, and is of ſeveral kinds. Thoſe in the Southern Provinces taſte much like Sugar, and melt in one's Mouth; but in *Xanſi* and *Xenſi* they are firmer and bigger, and may be eaſier preſerved. The Rind of the former is clear, ſmooth, tranſparent, and of a red Colour, eſpecially when the Fruit is ripe. Some are in Shape like an Egg, but uſually bigger: The Seeds are black and flat, and the Meat very Watery, and almoſt liquid, which they ſuck out at one of the Ends. When they are dry'd like our Figs, they grow mealy, but in time there comes a kind of a Sugar-Cruſt upon them, from which they receive a moſt delicious Flavour. Thoſe in *Xanſi* afford a Meat like our Apples, but of a different Colour. They gather them early, either to ripen on the Straw, or dip in ſcalding Water, to free them from an ill Taſte, which they have at firſt Gathering. They have Anana's, Coco's and Goyaves, but they are beholding to the *Indies* for them, and therefore I refer the Deſcription to thoſe Countries.

3 The Size, F. Magell. calls Suſa.

4. *China* Oranges. One ſort of them has been tranſported into *Portugal*, and thrives there well, which is the common Sort, ſo plentiful with us; but there are ſeveral other Sorts in *China*. The moſt valued, which is ſent for Preſents into the *Indies*, is no bigger than a Billiard-Ball. The Rind is of a reddiſh yellow Colour, fine, clear and very ſmooth. Thoſe of *Quamtum* are very agreeable to our Palate and Conſtitution. They are commonly given to ſick People, being firſt ſoften'd by the Fire, and then fill'd with Sugar, which incorporating with the Juice, makes a Syrup moſt wholſome for the Lungs.

4. China Oranges.

5. Lemmons Citrons and Pampelimouſes (as the *Indians* call them) are common here, and not much regarded; but there is a Species of Lemmon-Trees, which they nurſe up with a great deal of Care. The Fruit is no bigger than a Wall-nut, perfectly round, green and ſharp, excellent in all kinds of Ragouſts; and theſe Shrubs they often plant in Boxes, to adorn their Courts and Halls therewith. But of all the Trees of *China* the moſt admirable is,

5. Lemmons.

6. The Tallow-Tree. It is about the Height of our Cherry-Trees, the Branches are crooked, and Leaves ſhaped like an Heart, of a lively brisk Red, its Bark ſmooth, and Trunk ſhort, and the Head round and very thick. The Fruit is encloſed in a Rind divided into 3 Segments, which open when it is ripe, and diſcover 3 white Kernels, of the Bigneſs of a ſmall Nut. This Mixture of White and Red makes a pleaſant Shew. The Kernels have all the Qualities of Tallow, its Smell, Colour and Conſiſtency. They make Candles of it, by mixing it with a little Oil to make it more pliable; but not knowing the Art of purifying it, and making Cotton Wick, the Smell is noiſome, and the Light but dim.

6. The Tallow-Tree.

Candles made of the Fruit.

7. The Pepper-Tree alſo is remarkable in *China*. 'Tis like our Wall-nut-Trees, and the Berry is as big as a Pea, of a grayiſh Colour, with red Streaks. 'Tis ſo ſtrong and offenſive to the Head, that they are forced to gather it by Intervals. When it is ripe, it opens and diſcovers a little Stone, as black as Jet, which they caſt away, becauſe 'tis too hot and ſtrong; the reſt they uſe, and tho' 'tis not ſo agreeable as our Pepper, yet 'tis well enough in Sauces.

7. The Pepper-Tree.

Roots and Pulſe.

No Place in the World produces more Roots and Pulſe than *China*. They are almoſt the only Food of the Inhabitants, and therefore they take great Pains to have them good. They have many Sorts which we have not, as well as thoſe we have. What is moſt rare of this kind, is,

1. Onions.

1. A kind of Onions, which do not ſeed like ours, but towards the latter end of the Seaſon their Leaves bear ſome ſmall Filaments, in the Midſt of which is a white Onion like that in the Ground. This does in time produce its Leaves, and thoſe a like Head, and ſo on, only they grow leſs, and ſhorter as they are further from the Ground.

2. *Perſi*. 2. The Herb called *Perſi*. It is a kind of a Lanifer. It grows under Water, and the Root is faſten'd to a white Matter covered with a red Skin, that divides it into ſeveral Heads, which, when freſh, taſte like a ſmall Nut. It is ſaid to have this Property, that it ſoftens Braſs, and renders it eatable, being put into the Mouth with a Piece of the Plant.

[All manner of Game is there plentiful in the 3 Winter-Months, and among the reſt there is wild Bears of 3 Sorts, which the *Chineſe* call *Gin-Hium*, or Men-Bears; *Qeu-Hium*, or Dog Bears; *Chieu-Hium*, or Pig-Bears, becauſe of their ſeveral Reſemblances, eſpecially in the Head and Paws. The Paws of Bears well boil'd are highly eſteem'd in the *Chineſe* Banquets, and their Fat mix'd with Honey is a great Entertainment for *Tartars*. There are vaſt Numbers of other ſorts of Creatures, as Deer of ſeveral kinds, wild Boars, Ellands, Hares, Conies, wild Cats, Rats, Geeſe, Ducks, all manner of Wood-Fowl, Partridges and Quails of divers Sorts. Tame Cattel they alſo have, as Horſes, Cows, Hogs, Dogs, Mules and Goats. But the moſt admirable of their Creatures is a ſmall Animal no bigger than a Flea, which by a peculiar natural Art makes a ſort of Wax, the whiteſt and cleareſt that ever was ſeen. They are produced of Eggs, which being laid in the Sun produce them. They are no ſooner hatch'd, but by a peculiar Inſtinct run up the Body of certain Trees, which they bite, pierce and penetrate to the very Pith, which, by a peculiar Property that God has given them, they prepare, purifie and turn to Wax as white as Snow. Afterwards they thruſt it thro' the Holes they made, and when it is congeal'd into Drops, the Owners of the Trees gather it, and make it into Cakes of Wax, and ſell it all over the Kingdom.] F. *Magell.*

The Waters of *China* are almoſt as beneficial and uſeful as the Soil. They may be conſider'd, 1. as Canals; 2. as Rivers. The Canals are of great Uſe to water the Country, and further Trade. They add alſo much Beauty to it. They are generally of a clear, deep and running Water, that glides ſo ſoftly, that it can ſcarcely be perceived. There is one uſually in every Province, which is to it inſtead of a Road, and runs between 2 Banks built of coarſe Marble. Over them they have the Conveniency of a great many Bridges, for the Communication of the oppoſite Shore. Some are of 3, others of 5 and 7 Arches, the middle one being always extraordinary high, that the Boats may paſs thro' with their Maſts erect. [One of theſe Bridges, which lies over the River *Cieu li ho'*, or, *The River of Glaſs*, ſo called, becauſe it is clear, quiet and navigable, deſerves a particular Deſcription, being the faireſt in *China*, and, perhaps, in the whole World, for Excellency of Workmanſhip and Materials. It is all of white Marble, very fine and well wrought. On the Sides ſtand 140 Pillars to ſupport it, at a Pace and half Diſtance the one from the other, the Spaces between them being fill'd up with ſquare Panes of Marble, carved with ſeveral Sorts of Flowers, Fruitages, Birds and Creatures. At the Entrance of the Bridge Eaſtward there are 2 fair Pedeſtals raiſed high, and covered with Tables of Marble, upon which are 2 Lions of an extraordinary Size, carv'd with young Lions upon their Back, Sides, Breaſts, and between their Legs, in ſeveral Poſtures, with a ſurprizing Beauty and Delicacy. At the W. End are alſo 2 Pedeſtals, with 2 Elephants, carved with as much Art as the Lions. It has 24 Arches, and has been built above 2000 Years. F. *Magell.*] This great Canal runs out into ſmaller Ones on each ſide, which are again ſubdivided into ſmall Rivulets, that end at ſome great Town or Village. Sometimes they diſcharge themſelves into ſome Lake or great Pond, which waters all the adjacent Country; ſo that theſe clear and plentiful Streams, adorn'd with ſo many Bridges, confined with ſuch neat and convenient Banks, equally divided into ſuch vaſt Plains, and covered with a numberleſs Multitude of Boats and Barges, and crown'd (as I may ſay) with a prodigious Number of Towns and Cities, whoſe Ditches it fills and Streets it forms, do at once make the Country the moſt beautiful and fruitful in the World. And this is the more to be wonder'd at, becauſe they are all certainly the Effects of Art and Induſtry, as their Straitneſs, equal Diſtribution, and Floud-gates made to let the Rivers in and out, do prove.

The Product of the Waters, and the Uſe.

Bridges.

Canals.

All made by Art.

Among the Canals in the Southern Provinces, one above the reſt, is called the Great Canal, becauſe it goes through the whole Country to *Canton*, which is ſituate in the moſt Northern Parts of the Empire. It was dug by an infinite Number of Workmen about 400 Years ago, at the vaſt Charge of the *Tartarian* Emperor, who ſettling his Reſidence at *Pekin*, could find out no other Way to ſupply the City with Plenty of Proviſions, Spices, and other neceſſary Merchandize. It is in Length 3500 *Chineſe* Furlongs, or 245 *Portugal* Leagues. To make it deep, it is furniſh'd with 72 Sluices, that have every one Gates made of large

The Great Canal.

large Pieces of Timber, which are ſhut in the Night, and open in the Day. Moſt of them are eaſily paſſed, but the reſt are ſhot by main Force, as at the Water-falls.

Water-falls.

To paſs from one Canal to another, of which ſome are higher and others lower, according to the Ground, they make uſe of Water-falls inſtead of Sluices, up which they cauſe the Barks to aſcend, by the Help of a great Company of Men, maintain'd near them on purpoſe, who raiſe them by little and little by mere Force of Arms. Where the Waters of 2 Canals have no Communication, they paſs from one to another by a double Glacis, or ſloping Bank, upon which they hoiſe their Boats. In the grand Canal, becauſe of the Emperor's Barks, which are too large to be raiſed by the Arm, there are no ſuch Sluices. Theſe Water-Paſſages, as they call them, are neceſſary for the Tranſportaion of Grain and Stuffs, which they fetch from the Southern Provinces to *Pekin*; and the *Chineſe* ſay, that there are above 1000 Barks, from 80 to 100 Tun, that make a Voyage once a Year, all of them freighted for the Emperor, beſides thoſe of particular Perſons, which are almoſt infinite.

Tranſportation of Stuffs and Grain.

The *Chineſe* have not only made Channels for Traffick, but they dig alſo many others for to catch Rain-Water, wherewith they water their Fields in time of Drought, eſpecially in the Northern Provinces, by drawing it into ſmall Ditches, which they have made a-croſs their Fields. If by Chance they meet with a Spring, 'tis worth Obſervation to ſee how they will husband it. They ſuſtain it by Banks in the higheſt Places; they turn it into an Hundred different Ways, that all the Country may reap the Benefit of it, inſomuch, that a ſmall Rivulet thus managed ſhall make a whole Province fertile.

A Spring how managed.

2. The Rivers of *China* are no leſs conſiderable than the Canals. There are 2 which are moſt famous: 1. The *Kiam*, or *Tyamee*, which they tranſlate, *The Son of the Sea*. This River riſes in the Province of *Yunnan*, croſſes the Provinces of *Sucſuen*, *Huquam* and *Nankim*, and having watered 4 Kingdoms in its Current of 400 Lgs. falls into the E. Sea, over-againſt the Iſle *Cummim*, which was made by the Sand and Mud brought down by this River. The *Chineſe* have a Proverb among them that ſays, *The Sea hath no Bounds, and* Kiam *no Bottom*, which may expreſs its great Depth, but not the Truth. About *Nankim* it is half a Lg. wide. Its Courſe is exceeding rapid and dangerous, ſo that it is grown infamous for Shipwracks. It forms a great many Iſles, all of them beneficial to the Province, by reaſon of the Multitude of Bulruſhes, 10 or 12 Foot high, that it produceth, ſerving for Fuel for all the Cities thereabouts; for they have ſcarce Wood enough for Buildings and Ships. They yield a great Revenue, and the Emperor draws a conſiderable Duty from them. But the Torrents from the Mountains many times ſo ſwell the River, as to carry away the Iſles, or leſſen them by half, and ſometimes form new ones; ſo that the *Mandarins* get them to be meaſured every 3 Years, to augment or diminiſh their Impoſts and Duties, according to the Condition they find them in.

The Rivers of *China*.

1. *Kiam*.

Bulruſhes made Firing.

2. The *Hoambo*, i. e. The Yellow River, becauſe in great Rains it has that Colour. It ariſes out of the Mountains of the Province of *Sucheen*, and running thro' a Part of *Tartary* along the Great Wall, re-enters *China*, between the Provinces of *Xanſi* and *Xenſi*, and waters the Province of *Honan*, and when it has croſs'd a Part of the Province of *Nankim*, and flow'd above 600 Lgs. into the Land, empties it ſelf into the Eaſt Sea, near the Mouth of the *Kiam*. This River has formerly cauſed great Deſolation in *China*, ſo that in many Places they are forced to keep up the Waters with long and ſtrong Banks, which yet do not free them from Fears of an Inundation; for in the Province of *Honan*, the Ground lying very low, they ſurround the greateſt part of their Cities about a Mile from the Walls with a Turrace caſed with Turf, to prevent being ſurpriz'd with Accidents, in caſe the Bank ſhould break. There are ſeveral other Rivers in *China* commodious for Trade, but being leſs famous, and having nothing uncommon, he paſſes them by.

The *Hoambo*.

As for their Fountains, 'twere to be wiſh'd that they were more and better; for the Nature of the Ground hath every where made their Water ſalt and brackiſh; ſo that the People are forced to mix the Leaves of Tea (a Tree which grows plentifully among them) to purge them from their noxious Quality, and make them wholſome and pleaſant. There are in *China* ſeveral Fountains, which ebb and flow as regularly as the Sea doth.

The Fountains.

They have great Lakes and Ponds in almoſt all their Provinces, ſome proceeding from the Torrents that deſcend from the Mountains, and render the Country barren, ſandy, and full of Flints; but others from Springs, which abound in Fiſh, and yield a conſiderable Revenue to the Emperor by the Salt they afford. In *Xanſi* there is one, which has an Iſland in the midſt, where the People divert themſelves in the Summer during the exceſſive Heat, by caſting Water up into the Air to make an artificial Rain. Here they find a Cruſt of a certain Salt, white and well ſcented, ſufficient to furniſh the whole Province, but 'tis not ſo good as Sea-Salt, tho' they uſe it to ſeaſon their Meat with.

Lakes and Ponds.

Salt.

In the Province of *Fokien* is one (as the People ſay, but he dare not warrant it for a certain Truth) whoſe Water is green, and turns Iron into Copper; and in the Room of a Palace, which ſtands on the Bank of another, they hearing the Ringing of Bells, every time the Heaven threatens a Storm. There are Waters in the Province of *Quamtum* that change Colour every Year. In Summer and Winter they are very clear, in Autumn they turn blue, and that ſo fine, that the People make uſe of it to dye Stuffs. In the ſame Place is a Mountain full of Caverns, whoſe very Aſpect is terrible. In it is found a Lake of that Nature, that if one throw a Stone into it, he may hear a Noiſe like Thunder, and ſometime after ariſeth a Miſt, which immediately diſſolves into Water.

Strange Effects of Water.

In the Province of *Yunnan* there is a Lake, which the *Chineſe* would make you believe, came all on a ſudden by an Earthquake, that ſwallow'd up all the Country, with its Inhabitants, except one Child, which was born up by a Piece of Wood. In the Iſle of *Haynan* is a ſort of Water that purifies Fiſh, preſerving their intire natural Figure.

A ſtrange Lake.

Theſe Rivers and Lakes produce all the ſorts of Fiſh which we have in *Europe*, and ſome that we have not, of which the moſt remarkable follow, *viz.* The Gold and Silver Fiſh, which are found in divers Provinces, and are a great Beauty and Ornament to the Courts and Gardens of Great Perſons. They are commonly of a Finger's Length, and of a proportionable Thickneſs. The Male is of a moſt delicate Red from the Head to the Middle, the reſt to the End of the Tail is gilded with ſuch a glittering Gold, that our Gildings will not come near it. The Female is white, its Tail and one part of its Body is perfectly waſh'd over with Silver. The Tail is faſhion'd like a Noſegay, thick and long, which gives a particular Grace to this Animal. They are extraordinary tender, and will not endure the leaſt Injuries of the Sun or Air. If they are touch'd with the Hand, they die ſoon after, or are ſhrivell'd up. Any great Noiſe, as of a Cannon or Thunder, too ſtrong a Smell, too violent a Motion, kills them. They live almoſt upon nothing. The inſenſible Worms that are bred in the Water, or thoſe ſmall Earthly Particles which are mix'd with it, ſuffice to keep them. A Wafer ſteep'd makes a kind of a Pap, of which they are extreamly greedy, and is very ſuitable to their natural Delicacy and Tenderneſs. In hot Countries they multiply very much, provided Care be taken to ſecure their Eggs, which ſwim on the Water, and are apt to be devour'd by bigger Fiſh, and to place them in a Vaſe expoſed to the Sun to preſerve them, till the Heat hatcheth them. The Fiſh come out of the Egg of a black Colour, which ſome of them always keep; but others are changed into Red, White, Gold and Silver, according to their different Kinds. The Gold and Silver begin at the Tail, and ſpread themſelves more or leſs according to their particular Diſpoſitions, and make them Wonders of Nature.

Strange Fiſh.

The Gold and Silver Fiſh.

Their Tenderneſs.

LET-

LETTER V.

Written to the Marqueſs de Torſi, *Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, giving a particular Character of the* Chineſe *Nation; their Antiquity, Nobility, Manners, and their good and bad Qualities.*

BY the Command of this Stateſman, whoſe Place engaged him upon an Inquiry after Foreign Affairs, *Le Comte* ſends this Account of the Manners and Genius of the *Chineſe*. The Original of the *Chineſe* is ſo ancient, that it is ſcarce diſcoverable. They compute 40000 Years ſince the Foundation of their Empire vulgarly, but the Account given by the Learned and Judicious Men among them comes ſo well confirm'd, ſo evidently proved, and eſtabliſh'd by ſo conſtant a Tradition, that one cannot queſtion it, without paſſing for ridiculous. According to their Reckoning, *China* hath had her Kings above 4000 Years, who have continued to this preſent Time without Interruption; but this long Succeſſion hath not remain'd in one Family all that while, but there have been 22 different Families, which have produced 236 Emperors. It ſeems probable, that the Children or Grand-children of *Noah* diſperſt themſelves into *Aſia*, and at length penetrated as far as thoſe Parts of *China*, which are called at this Day *Xanſi* and *Xenſi*. They lived at firſt in Families, and their Kings were Fathers, to whom a long Continuance of Years, abundance of Flocks, and other Country paſtoral Riches added ſome Authority. *Tobi* was the firſt that laid the Foundation of the Monarchy. His Wiſdom, Diſcretion, good Morals, Power and Reputation, which his great Age had acquired him, made them give ear to him, as to an Oracle. He regulated all Private, as well as Politick and Religious Matters, inſomuch, that his State was in a very flouriſhing Condition in a ſhort time. His Subjects poſſeſs'd the Province of *Honan* at firſt, and ſome Years after all the Lands and Territories that are extended as far as the South Sea.

The Antiquity of the *Chineſe*.

Their Original and firſt Kings.

Tobi.

The Wiſdom of the *Chineſe*.

They ever valued themſelves above other Men, and obſerving the Neighbouring Kingdoms to be barbarous, and inferior to them in point of Wiſdom, laid down this Maxim of State among themſelves, *To have Commerce with Foreigners and Strangers, but juſt ſo much as ſhould be neceſſary to receive their Homage.* Neither did they ſeek after Sovereignty out of a Spirit of Ambition, but that they might preſcribe to other People the Laws and Conſtitutions of perfect Government. This grave Policy acquir'd the *Chineſe* ſo great a Reputation throughout all *India*, *Tartary* and *Perſia*, that they were look'd upon as the Oracles of the World; inſomuch, that when *Xaverius* brought the Chriſtian Faith among them, they objected againſt his Doctrine, *That* China, *a Nation ſo wiſe and intelligent, had not embraced it.* But this Piece of Policy, by which, as a politick Maxim, they at firſt diſtinguiſh'd themſelves from others, degenerated in time ſo into Pride, that for a long time they look'd upon themſelves as a choſen elect People, produced by Heaven, and placed in the Center of the Univerſe, to give Laws to it; the only People able to inſtruct, civilize and govern Nations. They fancy'd other Men as Dwarfs and pitiful Monſters, the Droſs and Off-ſcouring of Nature, and themſelves only to be endued with a rational Form and Size (as their ancient Maps ſhew:) But of late perceiving the People of *Europe* to be inſtructed in all ſorts of Sciences, and that their Workmanſhip in Stuffs, Clocks, Watches, Mathematical-Inſtruments, and ſuch like Curioſities, is admirable, they will now allow, that they were miſtaken in ſaying, Nature hath beſtow'd Eyes upon none but the *Chineſe*; and they now find, that if the *Europeans* do not ſee ſo clearly as they, yet they have at leaſt one Eye apiece.

The Pride of the *Chineſe*.

The Excellencies of the *Chineſe*.

But, abating for this Pride, we muſt own, that the *Chineſe* Nation hath been endued with rare Qualities. They ſhew'd a great deal of Policy in managing the Affairs of the World, and great Senſe and Regularity in their Buſineſs, much Zeal for the publick Good, and true and juſt Idea's of Government, with a Genius mean, indeed, as to ſpeculative Sciences, but right and ſure in Morality, which they have preſerved very conformable to Reaſon: The People principally apply'd themſelves to the Education of Children in their Families: They eſteem'd Husbandry above all other Things: They were laborious to Exceſs, loving and underſtanding Commerce and Trading perfectly well: Their Judges and Governours of their Cities affected an outſide Gravity, Sobriety at their Tables, Moderation in Houſe-keeping, and Equity in all their Judgments, which gain'd them Love and Admiration from all the People in general. The Emperor placed his Happineſs in nothing more than procuring the Proſperity of his Subjects, and look'd upon himſelf not ſo much the King of a mighty State, as the Father of a numerous Family. But now their Civil Wars, and Mixture with the *Tartars* has broken this goodly Order. Avarice, Ambition and Pleaſure go a great way in all their Tranſactions: They cozen and cheat in Traffick: Injuſtice reigns in Judicatures; their Princes and Courtiers are full of Intrigues: Yet their Perſons of Quality take ſo many Meaſures to conceal Vice, and they are ſo cautious in their outward Behaviour, that if a Stranger be not careful to be inſtructed in Affairs to the Bottom, he imagines that every thing is perfectly well regulated.

The Corruptions brought in by the Tartars.

In theſe Things the *Chineſe* reſemble the *Europeans*, but in other Reſpects they are wholly unlike. Their Countenance, Air, Language, Diſpoſition, Civilities, Manners and Behaviour, are not only different from ours, but from all other Nations in the World. They have not the ſame Idea's of Beauty which we have. They love a Man that is big, tall and groſs, with a broad Forehead, little and flat Eyes, a ſhort Noſe, great Ears, a Mouth of a middle Size, a long Beard, and black Hair. The curious Feature, lively Aſpect and ſtately Gate and Deportment, which is ſo much eſteem'd in *Europe*, do not at all pleaſe them; but he is an handſome Man that fills an Ellbow-Chair, and by his Size and Bulk can look big.

Their Differences from Europeans.

They are naturally of as fair a Complexion as we, eſpecially towards the N. but wearing on their Heads only a little Bonnet, very improper to defend them againſt the Sun, and travelling very much, they are as tawny as the *Portugueſe* in the *Indies*. The People alſo of *Quamtum* and *Yunnan*, by reaſon of the exceſſive Heat, and working half naked, are of a dun Complexion.

Their Complexion.

But tho' the Men take no Care of themſelves, the Women do not imitate them, but uſe their utmoſt Endeavours to preſerve their Beauty. 'Tis not certain that they uſe Painting, but they rub their Faces every Morning with a ſort of white Meal, which rather ſpoils than mends their Complexion. They have all of them little Eyes and ſhort Noſes. In other Things they equal the Women of *Europe*, but in their natural Modeſty they excel them. They cover their Necks with a little Collar of white Sattin faſten'd to their Veſts; their Hands are always hid in long Sleeves; they tread ſoftly, caſting their Eyes toward the Ground, and holding their Head on one Side. A Man that looks on them would imagine them to be a Company of profeſs'd Nuns, only taken up with the Service of God. Yet they are not free from the Vanity of their Sex. The more they are confined, the leſs they love Solitude. They dreſs themſelves as gorgeouſly, as if they were to be ſeen in Publick, tho', perhaps, none comes near them, but their Domeſticks. Their Head-Dreſs conſiſts in ſeveral Locks of Hair buckled up, interlaced with Flowers of Gold and Silver, which ſeems to make an odd Figure to us, yet ſavours more of Neatneſs and Sim-

The Women's Beauty and Habit.

Simplicity, than the extravagant Burthen of Head-Cloaths, which our Women in *Europe* wear. The Women wear, as the Men do, a long Sattin or Cloth of Gold Veſt, red, blue or green, according to their particular Fancy; the elder Sort cloath themſelves in Black or Purple, and wear over all a kind of Surtout, the Sleeves of which are ſo long as to trail on the Ground, unleſs held up. But that which diſtinguiſhes 'em from all other Women is the Littleneſs of their Feet, which they affect to that degree, as to be juſtly accuſed of Folly, if Cuſtom did not a little bear them out. So ſoon as ever the Girls are born, the Nurſes take Care to tie their Feet extream hard, that they may not grow, and Nature ſtrangely buckles to the Torment. Their Shooes are of Sattin, embroider'd with Gold, Silver and Silk, very neat, and they ſtrive to ſhew them as they walk, which they would do almoſt always, were they ſuffer'd to go abroad. Some have thought it an Invention to keep the Women within Doors, but the *Chineſe* are ignorant of any ſuch Reaſon.

Their ſmall Feet, and how made.

The Mens Habits are much different from the Womens. They ſhave their Heads all over, but behind, where they let as much Hair grow, as will make a long Treſs. They wear on their Head a Bonnet or Cap, which Civility forbids them to pull off. Their Bonnet differs according to the Seaſons of the Year. That which they uſe in Summer is in the Form of a Coule, wide below, and terminating in a Point. It is lin'd within with a pretty Sattin, and the Top is covered with a very fine Matt, which is much eſteemed in that Country. They add alſo a great Flake of red Silk, which hanging irregularly, gives a particular pleaſing Grace as the Head moves. In Riding they wear a ſort of long Hair, dy'd of a brisk ſhining Red, which Rain will not deface. It grows white upon the Legs of Cows in the Province of *Suchuen*, and receiving this Tincture, is dearer than the fineſt Silk. In Winter they wear a Pluſh-Cap, border'd with a Sable Fox-Skin. The reſt is of a curious Sattin, Black or Purple, cover'd with a great Flake of red Silk like the Summer-Cap. They are very handſome, and are ſold ſometimes for 8 or 10 Crowns, but have this Inconvenience, that they are ſo ſhallow, as not to cover the Ears.

The Mens Habits.

Their Caps for Summer.

Riding.

Winter.

The *Mandarins* in their Formalities wear on the Top of their Bonnet a Diamond, or ſome other precious Stone, ill cut, but ſet in a Button of Gold curiouſly wrought: Others have an huge Tuft of Stuff, Agate, Chryſtal, or ſuch other Matter. Their Habit is long, and convenient enough for Students, but cumberſome for Men on Horſe-back. It conſiſts of a Veſt which reaches to the Ground, the Skirts of which being folded before, is faſten'd on the Left Side with 4 or 5 Gold or Silver Buttons. The Sleeves are wide towards the Shoulder, and grow ſtraiter and ſtraiter to the Wriſts, and cover the whole Hand, ſo that nothing is ſeen but the Fingers Ends. They keep their Veſt cloſe to them by a broad Silken Saſh, whoſe Ends reach down to the Knees. The *Tartars* ſtick an Handkerchief to it on both Sides, with a Sheath for a Knife and Fork, a Tooth-Picker, Purſe, and other pretty Impliments. In Summer their Neck appears bare, and is no good Sight; but in Winter they cover it with a Collar of Sattin faſten'd to the Veſt, or with a Tippet of Sable, or Fox-Skin about 3 or 4 Fingers broad, faſten'd before with a Button, which is very decent, and becomes Horſe men wonderfully. Beſides the Veſt, they wear a kind of Surtout, with ſhort wide Sleeves like Barriſters Gowns. The Students wear them very long, but Gentlemen, and eſpecially the *Tartars*, will have them ſhort, reaching no farther than their Pocket-Holes. Their Under Garment in Summer is only a ſingle Pair of Drawers of white Taffata, under a very broad and ſhort Shirt of the ſame Stuff; but in Winter their Shirt is made of Linnen, and under it they wear Breeches of coarſe Sattin quilted with Cotton, or raw Silk, which is warmer. They wear Boots always, and when any Perſon viſits them, if they have not their Boots on, they will make them wait till they go fetch them. This Mode is pardonable in Winter, becauſe their Boots being of Silk, and Boot-Hoſe of pink'd Stuff, quilted an Inch thick with Cotton, do defend their Legs well from the Cold; but in Summer, when the Heat is exceſſive, no Body living, but the *Chineſe*, to keep up their Air of Gravity, would endure to be wrapt up at that rate, and indeed their Workmen find them ſo inconvenient, that they rarely uſe them. Their Boots are not like ours, for they have neither Heel nor Top. When they ride any long Journey, they are made of firm old Leather, or thick black pink'd Cotton; but in the City they uſually wear them of Sattin, with a coarſe Border of Pluſh or Velvet on the Knee. The People in Publick, and Perſons of Quality within Doors, are ſhod with Pattins inſtead of Shooes. They are made of black Linnen, or ſome very pretty Silk. They ſtick cloſe to the Feet by a Border that covers the Heel, without tying.

The Mandarins Habit.

Their Veſts.

Sashes.

Surtout.

Under-Garments.

Their breeches.

Boots.

Pattins.

Their Doctors, and other Learned Men, let their Nails grow very long, inſomuch, that in ſome of them they almoſt equal their Fingers in Length. This they uſe not only for an Ornament, but as a Diſtinction, that it may be known, that they are wholly withdrawn from Mechanick Arts, and are addicted to Sciences.

Their long Nails.

In ſhort, ſince they affect a ſtarch'd Gravity, and imagine, that a Beard much contributes to the gaining Reſpect, they ſuffer their Beards to grow, and cultivate them much; but Nature having been very ſparing to them in this Point, they envy the *Europeans* for it.

Their Beards

Of theſe Cuſtoms the *Chineſe* are ſo fond, that rather than change their Habit, they renew'd a cruel War with the *Tartars*, and the greateſt part of them choſe rather to loſe their Heads, than their Hair. A Conſtancy admirable in any People, and muſt be imputed to the good Government of the *Chineſe*, that they have kept the ſame Faſhion for above 2000 Years.

The Modes of *Europe* do not appear handſome to them. The Periwig they call a phantaſtical Head-dreſs, proper only upon the Stage for a Man that would repreſent the Devil in Man's Shape. They will not be perſwaded that long Shanks, cover'd only with Stockings drawn ſtrait and narrow Breeches look handſome, becauſe they are accuſtom'd to an Air of Gravity, that gives them other Conceptions, and tho' we ſhew them, that this Dreſs makes our Shapes fine, Gate eaſie, and Carriage quick and diſengaged, yet it will by no means go down with them. Perſons of Quality obſerve all the Formalities and Decencies ſuitable to their State, and never appear uncovered in Publick, how great ſoever the Heat be; but in private and among their Friends they uſe a Freedom which is commendable; for they ever and anon quit their Bonnet, Surtout, Veſt and Shirt, and keep nothing on but a ſingle Pair of Drawers of tranſparent Linnen, or white Taffata, which is the more ſurprizing becauſe they condemn all Nakedneſs ſo much as in Pictures, and ſure 'tis worſe in themſelves. The Vulgar tranſgreſs all Bounds of Modeſty in this Reſpect, eſpecially in the Southern Provinces, where the Water-men and other Handicraftſmen are impudent to the higheſt Degree, for they go along the Streets in ſingle Drawers, without Cap, Stockings or Shirt, which makes them much tann'd, and ſwarthy. In the Northern Provinces they are a little more reſerved, becauſe the Cold, in ſpight of their Teeth makes them modeſt.

Their Judgment of Periwigs.

Their Dreſs in private.

The Immodeſty of the Vulgar.

The moſt obſervable Manufactures in *China* are produced from Silk, which in this Country is without Queſtion the fineſt in the World: They make of it in many Provinces, but the beſt and faireſt is to be found in *Chekiam*, becauſe the Soil is very proper for Mulberry-Trees, and becauſe the Air is endued with a Degree of Heat and Moiſture moſt conformable to the Worms that make it. Every Body deals in it, and the Traffick of it is ſo very great, that this Province alone is able to ſupply all *China*, and the greateſt part of *Europe*. But the fineſt and faireſt Silks are wrought in the Provinces of *Nankim*, the Rendezvous of almoſt all the good Workmen. It is there that the Emperor furniſheth himſelf with the Silks ſpent in his Palace, and with thoſe he preſents the Lords of his Court. The Silks of *Quamsiu* are notwithſtanding valued above all among Strangers, and ſo are more ſaleable than thoſe of the other Provinces of *China*. Their Silks have ſome Reſemblance to ours, yet the Workmanſhip hath ſomething in it that makes a Difference. They have Pluſh, Velvet, Tiſſue of Gold, Sattin, Taffata, Crapes, and ſeveral other Stuffs, for which we have no Names in *Europe*; but their moſt uſual Stuffs are:

Their Manufactures.

Their beſt Silks.

1. *Touanze*, a ſort of Sattin, ſtronger, but not ſo gloſſie as ours; ſometimes ſmooth, and ſometimes diſtinguiſh'd by Flowers, Birds, Trees, Houſes, and ſhady Groves. Their Figures are not raiſed upon

Touanze.

Their Figures.

the Ground by a Mixture of raw Silk, as our Workmen do in *Europe*, but all their Silk is twisted, and the Figures are distinguish'd only by the Difference of Colours. When they mix Silver and Gold with it, it much resembles our Brocades; but their Gold and Silver is wrought after a particular Manner, not drawn fine and twisted with the Thread, as ours is, but laid on Paper, which they cut in little Scrowls, and wrap with the Silk. There is a great deal of Art in thus managing it, but it will not last long, for Water, nay, Moistness will tarnish it quickly; yet when they come out of the Workman's Hand they shew very finely, and one would take them for valuable Pieces. Sometimes they put in only little Scrowls of gilded Paper, without rolling them upon Thread; but then the Figures, tho' finely turn'd, will not last so long, and so the Silk is of lower Price. Of all the Figures they thus draw, the Dragon is the most ordinary. There be 2 Sorts of them, one with 5 Claws, called *Lom*, which is used upon such Stuffs only as are design'd for the Emperor, because 'tis his Arms, which *Tohi*, the Founder of the Empire, first took for himself, above 4000 Years ago. The other with 4 Claws, named *Mam*, which the Emperor *Vouvam*, who reign'd 2832 Years ago, ordain'd that every Body might bear, and since that Time the Use of it is grown common.

Gold and Silver.

Dragons.

Cha.

Another kind of Stuff which the *Chinese* use in Summer, is called, 2. *Cha*, which is not so close, nor has so good a Gloss as our Taffata, but is much more substantial. Several People desire to have it smooth and even, but most wear it powder'd with great Flowers, pierced thro', and cut like *English* Lace. This Taffata makes Garments for the Summer very convenient and neat, so that Persons of Quality use it, and is not dear; for you may buy a whole Piece, enough to make a long Vest and Surtout, for 2 Guinea's.

Taffata, called *Tchetauze*.

A Third sort is, 3. A sort of Taffata, that serves for Drawers, Shirts and Linings, called *Tchecouze*. It is close, and so pliable, that fold or double it as you will, you can hardly make a Wrinkle in it. It is sold by Weight, and tho' it be often wash'd, will lose little of its Lustre.

Besides the former sort of Silk, *China* hath another, which is found in the Province of *Quamtum*. The Worms which make it are wild, and the People seek it in the Woods. This Silk is of a gray Colour, and hath no Gloss; so that such as are not acquainted with it, take the Stuffs made of it to be red Linnen, or a coarse Drugget, yet they infinitely value it, and will give more for them than for Sattins. They call them *Kien-Tcheou*, and say, they last long, do not fret, wash often, and no Spots will spoil them.

Kien-Tcheou

Wool is very common and cheap in the Provinces of *Xensi*, *Xansi* and *Suchven*, where they feed abundance of Flocks, yet they make no Cloth of it. They esteem our *English* Cloths highly, but because they are sold much dearer than the finest Silks, they buy but little of it. The *Mandarins* make themselves studying Gowns for the Winter of a kind of coarse Russet, for want of better Cloth. Their Druggets, Serges and Tammies are as good as any. They are commonly wrought by the *Bonze's* Wives, who much use them, and a great Trade is driven with them all over the Empire.

Their Linnen.

Copou.

Cotton-Linnen is very common, and they use for their long Vests in Summer Nettle-Linnen; but the Linnen most valued by them is called *Copou*. It is found no where else, and is made of a Plant called *Co*, found in the Province of *Fokien*. It is a kind of creeping Shrub, whose Leaves are bigger than those of Ivy, round and smooth within, but white, Cottony and Downy on the Outside. When it is dry they make Sheaves of it, and having steep'd it in Water like Hemp or Flax, they peel off the first Bark, and of the second make this Linnen, by drawing it into fine Threads. It is transparent and pretty fine, but so cool and light, that one would think he had nothing on his Back. All Persons of Quality make long Vests of it during the excessive Heats, with a Surtout of *Cha*. In the Spring and Autumn they put on *Kien-Tcheou*, and *Touanze* in Winter, *i. e.* coarse Sattin, or flower'd Silk. Grave Persons desire to have it plain, others wear it flower'd; but no Body, except the *Mandarins* in their Assemblies, or upon certain solemn Visits, use Silk flower'd with Gold and Silver

The common People habit themselves usually in coarse Linnen dy'd blue or black, and in the cold Weather quilt it with Cotton, or line it with Sheeps-Skin; but Great Persons line their Vest and Surtouts with the noble Skins of Sable or Ermin, Fox and Lamb, as also Plush and Petit-gris. Ermin is rare in *China*, and therefore they only border their Vests and Sleeves with it. Sable is common, and all the chief *Mandarins* wear it. One Skin of a Foot long, and 5 or 6 Inches broad, costs 10 Crowns. Some of the finest for a compleat Habit will cost 5 or 6000 Livres, but one may have a pretty handsome one for 200 Pistoles. Fox-Skins are much used, but those who would be most magnificent take nothing but the Belly of this Animal, where the Hair is long, fine and soft. A Vest and Surtout lined with these will cost 5 or 6000 Livres. They have also several other Sorts of Furs from *Tartary*, of which the *Mandarins* make use to sit on the Ground at the Time of their Audience, and to lay on their Beds under the Quilt to take away the Dampness and Cold. There is another particular Spieces of Fur, called *Ta-chu*, that is perfectly handsome and fine, the Hair long, soft and thick, a whitish Gray mix'd with Black, and striped with black and yellow Lists. They make great Winter-Gowns of them to wear in the City, and tho' when they have them on they look like Bears, yet they think themselves to be very genteel, and to make a graceful Figure. Lamb-Skins are the most common Furs; they are white, downy, and very warm, genteel, and convenient for Winter. Yet are all these Furs easily spoil'd in hot and moist Countries, if great Care be not taken of them; for a Worm breeds in them, and the Hair falls off. To prevent this the *Chinese*, when the Summer approaches, expose them to the Air in fair and dry Weather, beat out the Dust, and then include them in huge Earthen-Pots with Peppar and other Drugs to preserve them.

The Habit of the Vulgar.

Ermin.

Sable.

Fox-Skin.

Other Furs.

Ta-chu.

Lamb-Skins

Besides their usual Garments, they have 2 Sorts more worth our Knowledge. 1. Their Riding Habit, which is made of a coarse Taffata, crusted over with a condensed Oil, which being well dryed, makes the Stuff green, transparent and extraordinary genteel. Of this they make their Bonnets, Vests and Surtouts, and it will keep out the Rain some time, but it will yield at last unless it be a choice one. 2. Their Mourning Habit. Their Bonnets, Vests, Surtouts, Stockings and Boots are all made of white Linnen, and from the Prince to the meanest Mechanick, none dare wear any other Colour. In close Mourning, the Bonnet is of a Red clear Canvas Cloth, and the Vest is kept close with a Girdle of the same. They affect at first a careless Behaviour, and Grief and Sorrow seems every where painted on their outward Man, but all being nothing but Ceremony and Affectation. They easily put on their own Face again, and laugh and cry all in a Wind. The Popish Missionaries wore a Student's Habit, till the *Tartars* forced them with the *Chinese* to conform to their Fashion.

Their Riding Habit.

Their Mourning Habit.

LET-

LETTER VI.

Written to the Dutcheſs of Bouillon, *concerning the Oeconomy and Magnificence of the* Chineſe.

FAther *Le Comte* being deſired by this Perſon of Quality to give her an Account of the Gallantry and Magnificence of the *Chineſe*, ſends her the following Relation of it.

The Chineſe Architecture and Furniture.

'The *Chineſe* come far ſhort of the *Europeans* in the Magnificence of their Houſes; for their Architecture is neither beautiful, nor their Apartments ſpacious, and tho' theſe 2 Things might be ſomething helped by good Furniture and Ornaments, yet that alſo is neglected for theſe 2 Reaſons chiefly. 1. Becauſe all the Palaces of the *Mandarins* belong to the Emperor, and are furniſh'd either by the People or the *Mandarins* themſelves, who are careful to be at as little Charge as they can about them. The *Mandarins*, becauſe their Places are uncertain, and the People, becauſe they have little to ſpare beyond Neceſſaries. 2. Becauſe the Cuſtom of the Country allows not to receive Viſits in any inner Rooms, but only in the *Divan*, which is contrived for that Ceremony. It is a kind of a Banqueting-houſe all open, that hath no Ornaments, but only one ſingle Row of Columns of painted, or varniſh'd Wood, which uphold the Beams and Timber, which bear up the Tyles, and appear naked without any Ceiling to cover them. They have neither Looking glaſſes, Tapeſtry-hangings, nor wrought Chairs. Gildings are not in Faſhion, ſave in the Apartments of the Emperor, or the Princes of the Blood. Their Beds, which among them are one of their principal Ornaments, never come in Sight, and 'twould be a groſs Incivility to carry a Stranger into a Bed-Chamber, even when you ſhew him your Houſe; ſo that all their Magnificence may be reduced to Cabinets, Tables, varniſh'd Skreens, ſome Pictures, and divers Pieces of white Sattin, upon which there is written in a large Character ſome Sentences of Morality, which are hung up and down their Chambers, with ſome Veſſels of Porcelane. Theſe Ornaments, when well managed, are very fine and beautiful.

Their Varniſh how uſed, and what it is.

Varniſh is common all over *China*. It takes all Colours. They mix Flowers of Gold and Silver with it. They paint Men, Mountains, Palaces, Huntings, Birds, Combats, and ſeveral Figures, that make a Baſs-Releif in the Work, and render it extreamly delightful. This Varniſh not only puts a Luſtre and Brightneſs upon the Wood, but preſerves it from Worms. No Moiſture will penetrate it, nor any Scent faſten to it. It is not a Compoſition, as ſome have thought, but a Gum that diſtils from a Tree like Roſin. It reſembles Pitch or Tar, and muſt be mix'd with Oil to make it uſeful; but has no Smell. On Tables and ordinary Chairs they only lay on 2 or 3 Layers of Varniſh, which makes it ſo tranſparent, that all the Veins of the Wood are diſcernible; but if you would hide the Wood wholly, you muſt do it over ſeveral times, till it be nothing but Ice. When the Work is dry, they paint upon it many Figures in Gold, Silver, or any other Colour, and then give it a ſlight Touch of Varniſh to give them a Luſtre and preſerve them. There are very pretty curious Cabinets at *Tankin* thus made; but what is brought to us from *Japan* are no way inferior to the beſt *China* Work.

Porcelane or Earthen Ware of Clays of 3 Colours.

Porcelane is the ordinary Furniture and Ornament of every Houſe. Their Tables, Side-Boards, nay, Kitchin is cumbred with it; for they eat and drink out of it, as the moſt ordinary Veſſels. They have huge Flower-Pots of it, and their Architects ſometimes cover Roofs, and face Marble Buildiugs with it. That which is moſt in Requeſt is of 3 different Colours: 1. Yellow, which tho' the Earth be very fine, appears more coarſe than the other, becauſe that Colour will not admit ſo fine Poliſhing. The Emperor uſes no other in his Palace, and will allow no Body to have any of it; ſo that we may ſay, that the Emperor has the worſt ſort of Porcelane, which as none may have, ſo none need covet. 2. Gray, which has abundance of irregular Lines in it, that croſs one another, as if the Veſſel were ſtriped, or wrought with *Moſaick* Work; then they add a Stration of Varniſh to cover the Inequalities, and by a gentle Fire 'tis made even, and poliſhed as before. Theſe ſort of Veſſels have a particular Beauty, and would be much valued by the Curious. 3. White, with divers Figures of Flowers, Trees and Birds, which they paint in Blue. This is the commoneſt of all, and every Body uſes it, and this is the Sort that is ſent into *Europe*. Of this Sort ſome is but indifferent, and not much better than our Earthen-Ware. Fancy goes a great way in the Value of them; but it is granted on all Hands, that theſe Things muſt concur to make the Work compleat, the Fineneſs and Politeneſs of the Matter, the Painting and Deſign of the Figures, and Faſhion of the Works. The Fineneſs is diſcover'd by the Tranſparency, which is diſcernible chiefly about the Brims, that are thinneſt, and by joining together again, if it be broke, becauſe that is a certain Sign of the Hardneſs, and conſequently of the Fineneſs of the Matter. The Whiteneſs is often confounded with the Varniſh, but as the Skilful may diſcern them aſunder, by carrying them into the Air when they are new, ſo Age will in Time make a plain Diſtinction; for the Varniſh will tarniſh at the long-run, and the Whiteneſs become more apparent. The Smoothneſs and Fineneſs of it conſiſts in 2 Things, the Brightneſs of the Varniſh, and Evenneſs of the Matter. The Varniſh muſt not be too thick, becauſe then there will be a Cruſt upon it, and 'twill ſhine too much. The Matter is perfectly even, when it has not the leaſt Lump, nor any Grain riſing, or Depreſſion to be ſeen, tho' few Veſſels are without ſome of theſe Defects.

1. Yellow.

2. Gray.

3. White.

The Goodneſs of it in what it conſiſts.

Whiteneſs.

The Fineneſs.

The Painting is one of the greateſt Beauties of the Porcelane, and the Colours they commonly uſe are Red and Blue. The Red is ſeldom lively enough, tho' they have lovely Reds, becauſe the Roughneſs of the Matter ſucks in the ſubtle Parts of the Colour, and ſo they uſe Blue moſt, which they have moſt excellent, tho' it is very difficult to hit upon the exact Temperature, that it be neither to pale, deep, intenſe, or too bright. Their Deſigns in Painting are but mean. Their Flowers are pretty well, but their Figures of Men are monſtrous, which tho' Strangers contemn, yet they are more pleaſing to them than the moſt regular Deſigns. They turn their Veſſels very well, of what Size ſoever they be. Their Figures are bold, and well proportion'd. Our skilfulleſt Artiſts cannot out-do them. They ſet a great Value upon all ancient Veſſels, as well as we, but for different Reaſons: We value them becauſe they are fairer, they meerly for their Antiquity. Not but there are very fine ones made at this Day, but the *European* Merchants having no Skill themſelves, and not trading with the Work-men, accept any thing that the *Chineſe* expoſe to Sale, and vend them in the *Indies*. Beſides, no Body takes care to furniſh them with Examples of Draughts, or beſpeak particular Works before-hand. Another Thing which makes the curious Porcelane ſo rare is this: The Emperor has conſtituted in the Province where the Manufacture chiefly, is a particular *Mandarin*, whoſe Care it is to make choice of the faireſt Veſſels for the Court. He buys them at a very reaſonable Rate, which cauſes the Work-men not to do their Beſt; but were there any that would reward them well, we ſhould have as curious Pieces as any Antiquity affords.

Colours.

Ancient Veſſels valued in *China*.

The beſt Porcelane where made.

The beſt Porcelane is made in the Province of *Quamſi*. The Clay is found in one Place, and the Water in another, becauſe 'tis cleaner, clearer, and being impregnated with Salts, is more proper to purifie and refine the Clay, and unite its Parts. The common Opinion, that the Clay is a Compoſition, and that 2 or 300 Years are requiſite to prepare it for the Porcelane, is a Miſtake; for if it were ſo, it would neither be ſo common nor cheap. It is a ſtiff Clay, or rather a kind of ſoft white Stone, that is found in the Quarries of that Province. They firſt waſh it, and purge it from any different Earth, and then bray it to a ſmall Powder, which they continue

The Matter what and how order'd

pounding a long time, becauſe they imagine it makes the Matter more white and tranſparent. Of the Powder they make a Paſte, which they knead and beat a long time likewiſe, that it may become ſofter, and the Water may be incorporated with it. When the Earth is well moulded, they form it with the Wheel into what Figure they pleaſe. As ſoon as their Work pleaſes them, they expoſe it to the Sun Morning and Evening, but take it away again when the Sun grows hot, for fear of warping it: So they dry the Veſſels by Degrees, and paint them, when they judge the Ground proper to receive; and becauſe the Veſſels and Colours have not a ſufficient Luſtre, they make a very fine Ley of the ſame Porcelane, wherewith they waſh the whole Work, to give it a particular Whiteneſs and Luſtre. After all theſe Preparations they put the Veſſels into a Furnace, and bake them with a conſtant, but gentle Fire, which may not break them; and for fear the exterior Air ſhould damage them, they do not draw them out a long while after, when they have acquired a due Conſiſtence, and have been gradually cool'd.

Pictures an Ornament, but not good.

Pictures are another ſort of Ornaments uſed by the *Chineſe* in their Apartments, but they do not excel in this Art, becauſe they are not curious in Perſpective, tho' they apply themſelves diligently to Painting, and take great Delight in it. There are a great Number of Painters among them, of which ſome paint Ceilings only, repreſenting upon the Chamber-Walls an Order of Architecture, without Symmetry, by Bands or Fillets continued all along round at the Bottom and Top of the Wall, and above the Capital of the Column, which contains only ſingle Columns, placed at equal Diſtances, without any Ornament of Architecture. Others only whiten the Chamber, or glew Paper upon it. They hang the Pictures of their Anceſtors up and down their Houſes, with ſome Maps and Pieces of white Sattin, on which are painted Flowers, Fowls, Mountains and Palaces.

Sentences of Morality.

Upon ſome others they write in Capital Letters Sentences of Morality, which explain the Maxims and Rules of perfect Government: Some Chairs, varniſhed Tables, ſome Cabinets, Flower-Pots and Lanthorns of Silk, well order'd, and placed in due Proportion, make a pretty handſome Apartment.

Their Beds.

Their Beds are very fine, tho' few are admitted to ſee them. In Summer they have Taffata Curtains, powder'd with Flowers, Trees and Birds in Gold and Silk Embroidery. This ſort of Work comes from the Province of *Nankim*, and is the fineſt of all the *Chineſe* Furniture. Others have Curtains of the fineſt *Gaze*, which is no Security againſt the Weather, becauſe of its Thinneſs, and only ſerves to defend them againſt the Gnats and Flies, which are intolerable in the Night. In the Winter they uſe coarſe Sattin, wrought with Dragons and other Flowers, according to their Fancies, and the Courterpane is much the ſame. They uſe no Feather-Beds, but thick Cotton Quilts. Their Bedſtead is ordinarily of Joiners Work, beautified with Figures, and ſome of them are very fine and exquiſite. In ſhort, this People keep themſelves within the Bounds of Neceſſity and Convenience, and are little ſolicitous to appear magnificent; for their Houſes are neat and decent, not fine.

Curtains.

Their Gardens not for Ornament or Pleaſure.

In their Gardens they are ſtill more negligent than Houſes, and their Fancies in that Reſpect much differ from ours; for, except in Places ſet apart for the Burial of their Families, they think it Madneſs to leave any Place untill'd, and make it into Alleys and Walks, Beds for Flowers, and Groves of unprofitable Trees. The Laws command, for the common Good, that all Lands be ſown, and they are ſo wedded to their private Intereſt, that they think it Folly to prefer Pleaſure before Profit. And, indeed, the Flowers of the Country are not worth their Care, being none curious; and tho' many of the Flowers which we have in *Europe* are found there, they are ſo ill cultivated, that you can hardly know them again. Nevertheleſs, there are ſome Trees, which, if well order'd, would afford a great Ornament to their Gardens; for, inſtead of Fruit, they are almoſt all the Year long laden with Flowers of a florid Carnation; the Leaves are ſmall, like thoſe of the Elm, the Trunk irregular, the Branches crooked, and Bark ſmooth. If Alleys were made of them, and ſome Orange-Trees mix'd therewith, which might eaſily be done, it would be the moſt pleaſant Thing in the World; but the *Chineſe* are no Walkers, and therefore to them Alleys are uſeleſs. Another Tree very fit for Gardens is that which they call the *Outom-chu*, reſembling the Sycamore, the Leaves are in Diameter between 8 and 9 Inches, faſten'd to a Stalk a Foot long; it is extreamly tufted, and laden with Cluſters of Flowers ſo very thick, that the Sun cannot pierce it with his Rays. The Fruit is very ſmall, tho' the Tree be very large, and is produced after this Manner: About *Auguſt* there ſprings out of the Top of the Branches little Bunches of Leaves different from the other, being whiter and ſofter, tho' as broad. They are inſtead of Flowers, and upon the Borders of each of theſe Leaves grow 3 or 4 ſmall Grains or Kernels, as big as Peaſe, that incloſe a white Subſtance, of a very pleaſant Taſte, like that of an Hazle-nut, not ripe. The Tree and Fruit being both extraordinary, it will be convenient to give you the Figure.

The Outom-chu.

The Fruit of it.

See Fig. 15.

Grotto's and artificial Rocks.

But tho' the *Chineſe* are at little Pains for Ornaments in their Gardens, yet they delight in them, and are at ſome Coſt about them; for they make Grotto's, and raiſe a kind of artificial Rocks in them to imitate Nature, and if beſides theſe they can bring but ſo much Water into their Gardens as to irrigate their Cabbages and liguminous Plants, they are contented. The Emperor has Fountains in his Gardens like ours in *Europe*, but private Perſons ſatisfie themſelves with Ponds and Wells.

Their Magnificence in Publick.

But tho' the *Chineſe* neglect Ornaments in their Houſes and Gardens, according as the Government orders them, yet no People affect to appear magnificent in Publick more than they, and their Laws not only approve of it, but contribute to it upon ſome Occaſions. When Perſons of Quality receive Viſits, or make any, when they go along the Streets, or are upon a Journey, but eſpecially at ſuch time as they are to appear before the Emperor, or make their Addreſs to the Vice-Roys, they are always accompanied with a Train, and Air of Grandeur that fills one with Aſtoniſhment. The *Mandarins* richly habited are carried in a Sedan, gilded and open, born upon the Shoulders of 8 or 16 Perſons, accompanied with all the Officers of their Tribunal, who ſurround them with Umbrella's and other Marks of their Dignity. Some walk before them, 2 and 2 bearing Chains, Faſces, Eſcocheons of varniſhed Wood, upon which you may read in large Gold Characters all the Titles of Honour annexed to their Places of Truſt, together with a Brazen-Baſon, upon which they beat a certain Number of Strokes, according to the Rank they bear in the Province. They continually ſpeak aloud and threaten the People to make Way. Other Officers follow in the ſame Order, and ſometimes 4 or 5 Gentlemen on Horſe-back bring up the Rear. Some *Mandarins* never appear in Publick without a Train of 3 or 4 Score Domeſticks. Such as belong to the Army ride, and if they be of any Note, they appear always at the Head of 25 or 30 Cavaliers. The Princes of the Blood at *Pekin* have always 4 Officers going before them, and then follow themſelves in the midſt of a Throng, that attends them without Order. Their Attendants are not cloathed in Liveries, but are habited according to the Quality of their Maſters, in black Sattin, or painted Linnen. Their Horſes are neither fine, nor well managed, but their Trappings and Harneſs are very magnificent, the Bits, Saddles and Stirrups are gilded, or elſe of Silver. Their Bridles are not made of Leather, but of coarſe pinked Sattin twiſted 3 Fingers broad. Under the Horſe's Neck at the Beginning of the Breaſt-plate hang 2 great Taſſels of curious red Horſe-Hair, which are faſten'd to 2 huge Buttons of Braſs gilded, or waſhed with Silver hung on Rings of the ſame Mettal. This ſhews fine in a Cavalcade, but on a Journey, or in a Race, 'tis cumberſome. Perſons of meaner Quality go always on Horſe-back along the Streets, or in a cloſe Sedan, followed with ſeveral Foot-men. The *Tartarian* Ladies do often make uſe of Calaſhes with 2 Wheels, but they have not the Uſe of the Coach. But the Magnificence of the *Chineſe Mandarins* ſhews it ſelf chiefly in their Journeys by Water, the prodigious Bigneſs of their Barges, almoſt equal to their Ships, the Finery, Carving, Painting, and Gilding of their Apartments, the great Number of Officers and Seamen that ſerve on Board, the different Badges of their Dignities every where diſplay'd, their Arms, Flags, Streamers, and the like, make a glorious Show, and out-do the *Europeans*, who never appear worſe than in their Travels.

Of the Mandarins.

Soldiers.

The Princes of the Blood.

Perſons of inferior Quality.

The Tartarian Ladies.

The Mandarins on the Water.

Their

e very
om-chu, The Ou-
Diame-
a Font
lusters
pierce
l, tho' The Fruit
er this
of the
diffe-
ho' as
on the
small
close a
ke-that
ir be-
o give See Fig.

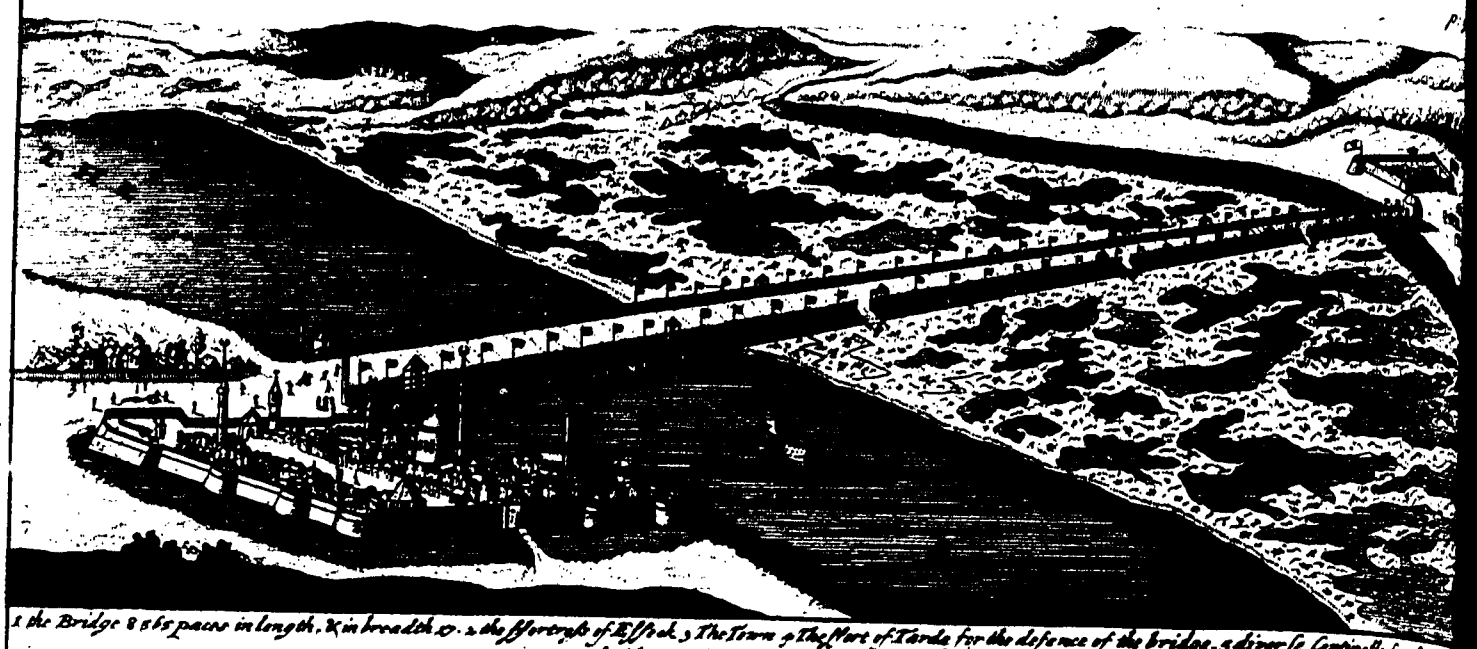
Orna-
them,
make Orotoria
them and
bring
irigate
e con-
Gar-
satisfie

their Their Magnificence in Publics
nment
gnifi-
ys not
some
Visits,
or are
they
r Ad-
anied
with
d are Of the Mandarins.
n the
h all
them
nity.
ains,
which
Titles
gether
ertain
bear
d and
ficers
Gen-
Man-
of 3
Army Soldiers.
ways
of the The Princes of the Blood
efore
of a
At-
bited
black
ither
and
and
idles
attin
k at
ssels
huge
hung
in a
ber-
orse- Persons of inferior Quality.
wed
o of- The *Tartarian* Ladies.
they
ence The *Mandarians* on the Water.
heir
heir
Car-
the
e on
very
and
Euro-
vels.

heir

A TRUE DRAUGHT OF THE FAMOUS BRIDGE & FORTRESS OF ESSECK VPON THE RIVER DRAUE ON THE BORDERS OF SCLAVONIA & LOWER

Fig: 1.



1 the Bridge 8565 paces in length, & in breadth 17. 2 the Fortress of Essock 3 The Town 4 The Fort of Tarda for the defence of the bridge. 5 diverse Continells for Guarding bridge. 6 staires to goe on the Morass. 7 the Great Morass.

Fig: 2.

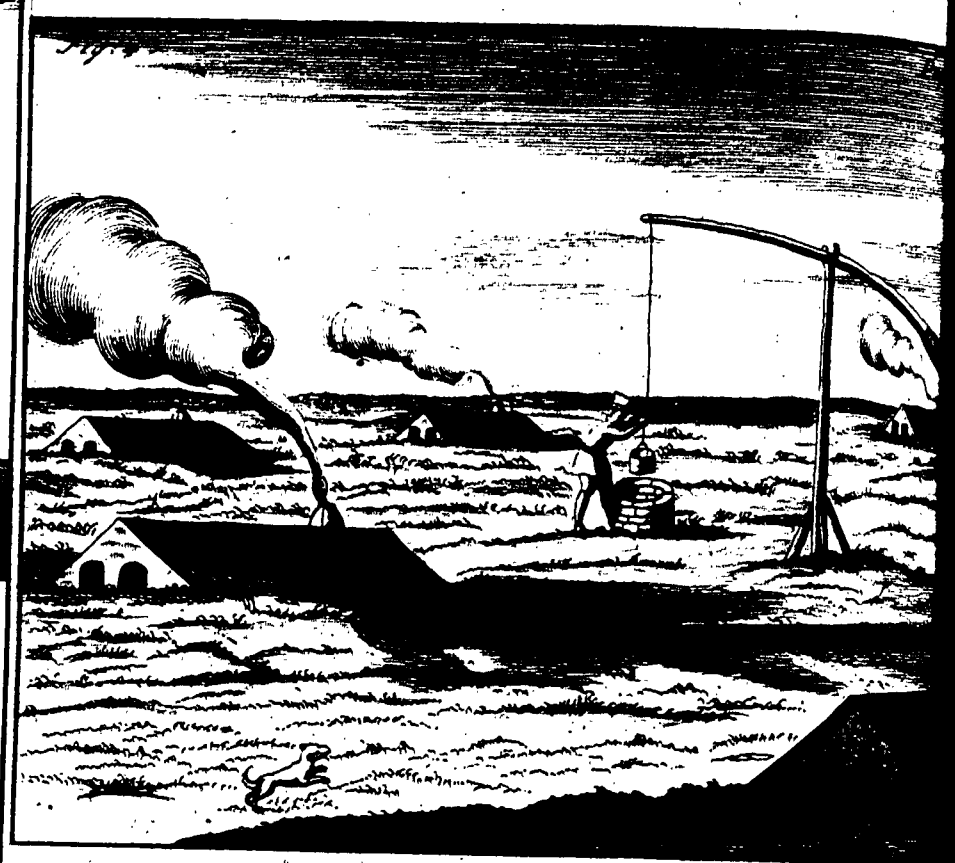


Fig: 3.

Fig: 5.

Their Feasts, and their pompous Celebration of them.

Their ſolemn Feaſts alſo they celebrate with great Pomp and Charges. The firſt 3 Days in the Year are ſpent in Rejoicing thro' the whole Empire. They array themſelves moſt magnificently, viſit one another and ſend Preſents to all their Friends, and all that they have any Reſpect for. Gaming, Feaſting and Comedies take up every Body's Time, and 10 or 12 Days before there is great Robbing to furniſh themſelves with Money for theſe Diverſions. Their greateſt Feſtival is on the 15th Day of the ſame Month, and is called, *The Feaſt of Lanthorns*, becauſe they hang them up in the Streets and in their Houſes in great Numbers, perhaps, near 200 Millions: A Cuſtom, tho' fooliſh, yet is become the Delight not only of the People, but Perſons of Quality.

They ſet up their Day-Lanthorns of all Prices, ſome of them coſt 2000 Crowns, and ſome of the Nobility retrench every Year ſomething from their Tables to appear magnificent in Lanthorns. The Materials of them are not dear, but the Gilding, Sculpture, Painting, Silk and Varniſh, with the Bigneſs is; for there are ſome of them to be ſeen upward of 27 Foot Diameter, inſomuch, that you may eat, lie, receive Viſits, act Comedies, and dance Balls in a Lanthorn. A Bonfire would be little enough to enlighten them, but becauſe that would be in convenient, they they ſet up a great Number of Lamps, or Wax-Candles in them, which make a pretty Show at a Diſtance. There are alſo repreſented divers Shows to gratifie the Vulgar, in which certain Perſons, concealed by the Help of ſeveral little Machines, make Puppets to play, of the Bigneſs of Men and Women, the Actions of which are ſo natural, that even thoſe who are acquainted with the Trick, are apt to be miſtaken. The middle ſized Lanthorns are moſt numerous, which alſo are magnificent. They are compoſed of 6 Panes, 4 Foot high and a Foot and half broad, and make an Hexagon. They are made of varniſhed Wood, adorned with ſome Gildings, and are hanged in the Inſide with fine tranſparent Silk, painted with Flowers, Trees, Rocks, and ſometimes the Figures of Men. The Painting is curious, and Colours lively, and when the Candles are lighted, the Splendor renders the Works altogether agreeable. They are cloſed a-top by 6 carved Figures, which make the Crown of it. There is hung round about broad Strings of Sattin of all Colours, like Ribbands, with divers other Silken-Ornaments, which fall upon the Angles without hiding any thing of the Light, or Picture. This Feaſt of Lanthorns is alſo celebrated with Bonfires, kindled in all Quarters of the City, and Fire-Works, the fineſt in the World, repreſenting the Figures of Trees, with their Leaves and Fruit ſo lively, that one would imagine them natural, when they are flying in the Air in the midſt of the Flames. Beſides, every Body lets off Squibs and Crackers. The Original of this Feaſt is very obſcure. The Vulgar aſcribe it to an Accident that happened to a famous *Mandarin*, which was this: His Daughter walking upon the Banks of a River, fell into it, and was drown'd. The afflicted Father, with his Family, ran to the Place, and the better to find her, cauſed a great Company of Lanthorns to be lighted. All the Inhabitants of the Place throng'd after him with Torches, and tho' they ſought all the Night in vain, yet it much pleaſed the *Mandarin* to ſee the Readineſs of the People to aſſiſt and condole with him. The next Year the People went again with their Lanthorns, and made Fires on the Shore, and ſo by Degrees it became an Annual Cuſtom. But this ſeems improbable to ſome, that ſo ſmall a Loſs ſhould have ſuch a mighty Influence upon the whole Empire. Some *Chineſe* Doctors pretend the Original of it to be from this Story: *China*, they ſay, was govern'd 3583 Years ago by an Emperor named *Ki*, the laſt of the firſt Race. He was endued with all the Qualities that could conſtitute an Hero, but the Love of Women, and his other Debaucheries, made him a Monſter. Among many other Extravagancies which he was guilty of, they ſay, he exhauſted all his Treaſures in building a Tower of precious Stones in Memory of one of his Concubines, and fill'd a Pool with Wine for himſelf and 3000 young Men to bathe in after a laſcivious Manner. The Wiſeſt of his Court obſerving theſe Diſorders, offer'd him ſome Advice, according to the Cuſtom, but he put them to Death. At length he committed a Fact, that conſummated the Deſtruction of himſelf and Family. One Day, in the Heat of his Debaucheries, he complain'd to the Queen he dotted on, that Life was too ſhort, and ſaid to her, 'I ſhould be content to make you eternally happy; but in a few Years, nay, perhaps, in a few Days Death will put an End to our Pleaſures. 'True, my Lord, ſaid this fooliſh Princeſs, you cannot make your Life eternal, but you may forget the Brevity of it, and live as tho' you ſhould never die. 'Tis theſe Changes of Day and Night that are always reminding us of our Mortality: Build you up a new Heaven, ever ſerene, ever enlighten'd, and always favourable to your Deſires: Erect a great and magnificent Palace, ſhut it up on all Hands from the Light of the Sun, and hang up all round it magnificent Lanthorns, whoſe conſtant Splendor may be preferable to the Sun. 'We will both of us go into this new World, and being all Things to each other, forget the Viciſſitudes of Days and Nights. The Emperor, either to deceive himſelf or pleaſe his Queen, built this inchanted Caſtle, and there immured her and himſelf. When he had ſpent ſeveral Months immerſed in Delights, the People, not able to endure ſuch Exceſſes, obliged one of the wiſeſt Kings of the Empire to declare againſt him. As ſoon as the Emperor heard of this Conſpiracy, he appear'd at the Head of an Army to puniſh this Rebel, but being abandon'd by his People, he was forced to betake himſelf to Flight, and wander'd for 3 Years from Province to Province till he died. In the mean time, the People deſtroy'd his Palace, and to preſerve the Memory of ſo unworthy an Action to Poſterity, they hung up Lanthorns in every Part of the City. This Cuſtom became Anniverſary, and ever ſince has been the moſt conſiderable Feſtival of the Empire. It is ſolemnized at *Hamcheu* with more Solemnity than any where elſe. 'Tis ſaid, that the Illuminations are ſo ſplendid there, that an Emperor, not daring to leave his Court openly, committed himſelf, Queen, and ſeveral Princes of his Family, to a Magician, who carried them in a Cloud, and gave them the Sight of it in a Trice, no Body knowing it; but however that be, certain it is, that they take huge Delight in publick Illuminations, and one of their Kings, who for his good Qualities was become their Darling, to demonſtrate his reciprocal Affection to them, invented ſuch like Feaſts. Once a Year for 8 Nights together he open'd his Palace, which was illuminated with abundance of Lanthorns and Fire-Works. He appear'd in Perſon without any Guards, and would not ſuffer them to diſtinguiſh him from others, to the End that every one might enjoy the Liberty of ſpeaking, playing and hearing divers Conſorts of Muſick there perform'd. This Action hath render'd this Prince renown'd in the *Chineſe* Hiſtory, and might be a truer Cauſe of the Feaſt of Lanthorns than any of the 2 former.

Small Lanthorns.

Middle ſized Lanthorns.

Bonfires and fine Fire-Works.

Several Opinions of the Original of the Feaſt of Lanthorns.

But the greateſt Piece of *Chineſe* Magnificence is ſhewn at the Publick Appearances of the Emperor. He never ſhews himſelf openly, but, like a Deity, he is environ'd with all the Splendor that may attract the Reſpect and Veneration of the People. Anciently they rarely ſhew'd themſelves; but the *Tartars*, who reign at preſent, are much more popular. The preſent Emperor, tho' he obſerves a *Medium* to ſatisfie both the *Tartars* and *Chineſe*, and appears not ſo frequently as his Predeceſſor, yet he never marches but in the Head or Midſt of an Army; for he is accompanied with all the Lords of his Court. There is nothing but Silks, Gildings and precious Stones: Every thing is ſplendid and pompous. Their Arms, Horſes Harneſs, Umbrella's, Streamers, and a Thouſand other Badges of Royal Dignity, every where ſparkle at that Time: Yet there is nothing more regular than this Croud; every one knows his reſpective Rank, and the Head of that Man, or at leaſt his Fortune lies at Stake, who ſhall preſume indiſcreetly to diſturb the Order of his March.

The Publick Appearance of the Emperor.

When he takes his Progreſs to viſit the Provinces of the Empire, he commonly rides Poſt, attended with ſome few Guards, and ſome truſty Officers; but in all the Cities upon the Road, and in all the difficult Paſſages, there are ſo many Troops drawn up in Battalia, that he ſeems to ride thro' an Army. He goes into *Tartary* ſometimes to divert himſelf with Hunting, but is always accompanied with ſuch Numbers of People, as if he went to conquer a new Empire, *viz.* no leſs than 40000 Men, who endure a great deal of Hardſhip, whether the Weather be hot or cold, becauſe they encamp in a very inconvenient Manner, and loſe more Horſes than in a pitched Battle;

His Viſiting the Provinces, or Hunting.

tle; but he counts the Deſtruction of 10000 Horſes nothing on theſe Occaſions. At theſe Times he is addreſs'd by 30 or 40 petty *Tartarian* Kings, who come to pay him Tribute. Some of them bear the Name of *Chams*, or Emperors, but are all of them, juſt as the *Mandarins* of the firſt Order, his Penſioners. He gives them his Daughters in Marriage, and to make them ſure to his Intereſt, he declares himſelf their Protector againſt the Weſtern *Tartars*, who often annoy them, and ſometimes bring Forces great enough to attack *China* it ſelf. When theſe petty Sovereigns appear in the Emperor's Camp, the Court is wonderful ſumptuous, that theſe Barbarians may be poſſeſs'd with ſome Idea of the Greatneſs and Power of *China*. The Train, Habit and Tents of the *Maddarins* are rich and glorious to Exceſs.

Petty Kings.

But the moſt pompous March of the Emperor is when he goes to the Temple to offer Sacrifices to Heaven, which having ſomething odd in it, deſerves to be particularly ſet down. This magnificent Ceremony begins with 24 Trumpets, adorned with Golden Coronets, with 24 Drums, ranked each of them into 2 Files, 24 Men armed with Truncheons varniſhed and gilt, 6 or 8 Foot long, follow them in the ſame Order and Rank. After them march 100 Soldiers, bearing noble Halbards, armed with a Semi-circle of Iron in Form of a Creſcent, followed with 100 Serjeants and Maces, and 2 Officers, whoſe Pikes are painted with red Varniſh in different Places with Flowers and Golden Figures. Next after this firſt File are born 400 Lanthorns curiouſly wrought; 400 Flambeau's of gilded Wood, that flame like our Torches; 200 Lances, charged with huge Tufts of Silk; 24 Banners, whereon are painted the Signs of the *Zodiack*, and 56 others, that repreſent the Coeleſtial Conſtellations. There are alſo to be ſeen 200 Fans with Figures of Dragons and other Animals; 24 Umbrella's ſtill more magnificent, and a Livery-Cubbard born by the Officers of the Palace, whoſe Utenſils are of Gold. All theſe go before the Emperor, who at length appears on Horſe-back, glorioufly attired, whoſe Harneſs is cover'd with Gold and precious Stones, with 100 Life-Guards-Men and Pages of Honour, who bear up before him an Umbrella that ſhades him and his Horſe, and dazles the Sight with all the Ornaments, that Man can poſſibly invent to enrich it. The Emperor is follow'd by all the Princes of the Blood, by the *Mandarins* of the firſt Order and Vice-Roys, with the principal Lords of the Court in all their Formalities. Immediately after comes 500 young Gentlemen of Quality, which may be called, *The Band of Gentlemen-Penſioners*, attended by 1000 Foot-men, array'd in Carnation Silk, border'd with Flowers, ſtitch'd with little Stars in Gold and Silver. This is properly the King's Houſhold. After this Retinue march 36 Men, who bear an open Sedan, that reſembles a Triumphant Chariot; 120 Bearers ſupport another cloſe one, ſo big, that one would take it for an entire Apartment. Afterwards there appear 4 Chariots, 2 drawn by Elephants, and the other by Horſes. Each Sedan or Chariot are guarded with a Company of 50 Men. The Drivers are richly apparell'd, and the Elephants, as well as the Horſes, are cover'd with embroider'd Houſings. Then 2000 *Mandarin* Officers, and 2000 Officers of the Army, all moſt richly cloathed, marching in Order, and according to their Cuſtom, with a Gravity that commands Reſpect, bring up the Rear of this ſtately Show. The Emperor is at little Charges for all this Pomp, but whenever he pleaſes to go to offer Sacrifice they are all in a Readineſs to attend him.

A Triumphal Chariot.

His going to the Temple.

The Emperor's Attire.

But yet the Emperor of *China* never appears greater, than when he gives Audience to Foreign Ambaſſadors: The prodigious Number of Troops at that Time in Arms, the incredible Number of *Mandarins* in their Formalities, diſtinguiſh'd according to their Ranks and Qualities, placed in Order, without Confuſion, without Noiſe, without Diſturbance, in ſuch Order as they would appear in the Temples of their Gods. The Miniſters of State, the Chief-Juſtices of all the Sovereign Courts, the petty Kings, the Princes of the Blood, the Heirs of the Crown, more humble before this Prince, than they are exalted before the People; the Emperor himſelf ſeated on a Throne, who beholds proſtrate at his Feet all this Croud of Adorers. All this bears an Air of Sovereignty and Grandeur in it, that is to be found no where but in *China*, becauſe Chriſtian Humility forbids all *European* Kings ſo much as to deſire it; wherefore tho' the *Chineſe* ſurpaſs us in *Europe* in common and publick Actions, yet we excel them in Domeſtick: Our Apartments are incomparably richer, the Retinue of our Nobles more decently cloathed, tho' not ſo numerous, their Equipage more commodious, their Tables better ſerved, and Expences more conſtant and regular.

The Emperor's Appearance at Audience.

LETTER VII.

Written to the Archbiſhop of Rheims, *Firſt Peer of* France; *Of the Language, Characters, Books, and Morality of the* Chineſe.

LE *Comte*, knowing that a Diſcourſe about Learning would be moſt ſuitable to a Learned Perſon, if not to inſtruct, yet to inform his Curioſity, ſends this Account of the Language, Characters, Books and Morality of the *Chineſe* to this Great Prelate. And becauſe their chief Learning lies in their Writing and Language, he begins with that, and ſays:

Their Writing and Language.

The *Chineſe* Language hath no Analogy with any of thoſe that are in Vogue in the World, no Affinity with them, either in the Sound and Pronunciation of the Words, or in diſpoſing and ranging the Conceptions. Every thing is myſterious in it, and, which is wonderful, all the Words of it may be learn'd in 2 Hours, altho' it requires ſeveral Years Study to ſpeak it well. One may be able to read all their Books, and underſtand them perfectly, and yet if another read them, he ſhall not apprehend what they mean. A Doctor may compoſe a Book with all the Elaborateneſs poſſible, and this very ſame Doctor not know enough of it to explain himſelf in ordinary Converſation. A Mute inſtructed in the Characters, may with his Fingers, without Writing, ſpeak as faſt as his Auditors can conveniently hear him. In fine, the ſelf ſame Words do ſignifie different Things, and if 2 Perſons pronounce them, it may be a Compliment in the Mouth of the one, and foul Language in the Mouth of the other. The Language contains no more than 330 Words, or thereabouts, all of one Syllable, or at leaſt ſeeming to be ſo, by reaſon of their quick Pronunciation. To the Curious it will be a Satisfaction to ſee a whole Language contain'd in one ſingle Page, and therefore he gives us a particular Enumeration of them Alphabetically. Theſe few Words could not be ſufficient to expreſs a Man's ſelf aptly upon all Subjects, to ſupply Words for Arts and Sciences, and to maintain Eloquence in Diſcourſe or Writing, if they had not an Art to multiply the Senſe without multiplying the Words. This Art conſiſts chiefly in the Accents they give them; for the ſame Word, pronounced with a ſtronger or weaker Inflexion of the Voice, hath divers Significations; ſo that the *Chineſe* Language, when it is ſpoken exactly, is a kind of Muſick, and contains a real Harmony, which compoſeth the Eſſence and particular Character of it.

A Table of all their Words.

See Fig. V.

They give 5 Tones to each Word, according to the Senſe one means to give it, the firſt is an uniform Pronunciation, like the firſt Note of our Muſick; the 2d raiſeth the Voice notably higher; the 3d is very acute;

Every Word hath 5 Tones.

acute; the 4th deſcends on a ſudden to a grave Tone, and the 5th paſſes to a more deep Note, like hollowing or framing a kind of Baſe; and thus by a different Pronunciation they make of 333 Words 1665; beſides, they uſually pronounce each Word ſmoothly or aſperately, and ſo encreaſe their Language almoſt half. Sometimes they join the Monoſyllables together, as we put our Letters together, and ſo compoſe different Words; nay, ſometimes a whole Phraſe, according as it follows or goes before, hath a quite different Senſe; and ſo it plainly appears, that this Tongue, which is ſo poor and ſeemingly barren, is made rich and copious in furniſhing us with Variety of Words. All theſe Things render their Language exceeding difficult to Strangers, ſo that they had better drudge in the Mines, than apply themſelves to learn it.

Their particular Characters.

Beſides the Words, the Tongue hath particular Characters, that diſtinguiſh it from all others. They do not ſpeak as they write, and the moſt quaint Diſcourſe is barbarous, harſh and unpleaſant, when printed. If you would write well, you muſt uſe more proper Terms, more noble Expreſſions, more particular Turns, than do occur in common Diſcourſe, and which are only proper for Writing, the Style of which is more different from the common Elocution, than our moſt obſcure *Latin* Poets are from the ſmoothneſt and moſt moral Proſe.

Their Eloquence.

Further, their Eloquence does not conſiſt in a certain Diſpoſition of Periods, ſuch as Orators affect, ſtuffed with Words inſtead of Matter, but their Eloquence conſiſts in their lively Expreſſions, noble Metaphors, bold but neat Compariſons, and abundance of Sentences and Paſſages taken from the Ancients, which amongſt them are of great Moment. They deliver a great many Things in a few Words, their Style is cloſe and myſterious, obſcure and not continued, ſeldom uſing any Particles, that illuſterate and connect a Diſcourſe. They ſeem to ſpeak ſometimes, as if they would not be underſtood, and at other Times they expect you ſhould underſtand many Things, which they never mention, ſo much Senſe and Thought do they include in a few Words. The Sound of their Words is pretty pleaſant to the Ears, eſpecially in the Province of *Nankim*, where the Accent is more correct, than in any other Part, for there many pronounce the different Tones ſo fine and delicately, that a Stranger hath much ado to perceive it. They never uſe *R*, which much mollifies their Language; yet moſt of the *Chineſe*, who pretend to ſpeak very correctly, drawl their Words ſo intolerably, that they ſound very unmuſically, and appear like Sentences. They have a Termination, which we expreſs commonly by a double *ll*, and in their Language often occurs, which ſound ſo uncouth and unnatural, that that is enough to ſpoil it alone, and yet the *Chineſe* think theſe Gutturals a Grace to their Tongue, and that 'twould degenerate into an effeminate Softeneſs without them. They want many Sounds, which we expreſs by our Letters, *A*, *B*, *D*, *O*, *R*, *X*, *Z*; nor are they able to pronounce them exactly. All this muſt be underſtood of the *Mandarin* Language, that is currant all over the Empire, and is unuſually underſtood; for the common People about *Fokien* have a particular Language, which has no Affinity with it.

The fineſt Pronunciation.

The Character of the *Chineſe*.

The *Chineſe* Character is as ſingular as their Tongue. They have no Alphabet as we have, that contains the Elements and Principles of Words; nay, they cannot imagine how we are able with ſo ſmall a Number of Figures, each of which ſignifies nothing to expreſs all our Conceptions, and write ſuch an infinite Number of Books, as to ſtock whole Libraries; and tho' this Cuſtom has obtain'd among ſo many Nations, it is a Myſtery to them, and thought impoſſible. Inſtead of Characters at the Beginning of their Monarchy, they uſed Hieroglyphicks, and painted rather than wrote, endeavouring to expreſs the Idea's of Things by the natural Images of them. As for Example; To write a Bird, they painted its Figure; to ſignifie a Foreſt, they repreſented a great Company of Trees; a Circle ſignified the Sun, and a Creſcent the Moon. This ſort of Writing was not only imperfect, but very inconvenient; for, beſides that their Thoughts were expreſs'd by Halves, and it was utterly impoſſible to avoid Miſtakes, they needed whole Volumes to expreſs a few Things, becauſe their Painting took up abundance of Room. Theſe Things induced the *Chineſe* to change their way of Writing, by little and little, and compoſe more ſimple Figures tho' leſs natural; they likewiſe invented many Characters to expreſs ſome Things that Painting could not, as the Voice, Smell, Senſes, Conceptions, Paſſions, and 1000 other Things, that have neither Body nor Figure: Of ſimple Draughts they after made compound ones, and ſo multiplied their Characters in *infinitum*, becauſe they deſtined one or more of them to each particular Word. This Abundance of Letters is the Cauſe of the *Chineſe* Ignorance, becauſe they muſt ſpend all their Days in ſtudying to read only, and can have no Leiſure to regard the Sciences: And, indeed, they eſteem it ſufficient Learning if they can but read; their moſt Learned Doctors by their indefatigable Study not being able to underſtand them all, which are commonly reckon'd 24000, of which he muſt be a very Learned Man that can read 15 or 20. Among theſe Characters there are ſome of divers Sorts. The firſt are almoſt out of Uſe, and are now preſerved out of Veneration to Antiquity. The ſecond Sort is not ſo ancient by far, and takes place only in Publick Inſcriptions. When there is Occaſion for them they conſult Books, and by the Help of a Dictionary it is eaſie to decypher them. The third Sort is much more regular and fair, and ſerve for Impreſſions and ordinary Writing; but the Strokes or Draughts of them being very exact and curious, there needs a conſiderable Time to write them, and for that Reaſon they have contrived a 4th kind of Writing, the Strokes whereof being more join'd, and leſs diſtinguiſh'd one from another, facilitate their writing faſter, and for that Reaſon they are called, *Valuable Letters*. Theſe 3 laſt Characters reſemble one another, and anſwer our Capital Letters both in Printing, and Writing. Inſtead of a Pen they uſe a Pencil which they hold directly up, as if the Paper were to be prick'd. The *Chineſe* always write from the Top to the Bottom, and begin their firſt Letters where ours end, and to read their Books you muſt begin at the laſt Leaf. Their Paper being thin, and almoſt tranſparent, they double it, that the Letters may not run one into another, when they write on the Back-ſide; but they double their Leaves ſo even, that one can hardly perceive it. Every Body among them is ambitious to write fair, and before one may ſtand candidate for the firſt Degree of Learning, he muſt give a Specimen of his Ability to write well. A Letter ill cut in a Compoſition Work, or Petition, is a conſiderable Fault, and becauſe one Stroke often alters the whole Senſe, there needs no more to make one upon Examination to loſe the Degree of Doctor, and ſo ruine his Fortune; ſo that all the *Mandarins* write fair, and the Emperor himſelf excels in that, as in all other Things.

Hieroglyphicks.

Their Characters invented.

Reading their greateſt Learning

Their ſeveral Characters.

Their Writing.

Their Paper

Printing, which is an Art yet in its Infancy in *Europe*, has been uſed in *China* to all Antiquity, but it is different from ours; for they find it more eaſie and leſs chargeable, by reaſon of the prodigious Number of their Characters, to engrave them upon Wooden-Boards after this Manner: When any one intends to print a Book, he gets it written over fairly by a Maſter-Scribe, and then the Engraver glews each Leaf upon an even ſmooth Table, and with his Graving-Tool draws the Characters ſo exactly, that they have a perfect Reſemblance with the Original; ſo that the Impreſſion is good or bad, according to the Care or Negligence of the Scribe; for the Skill of the Engraver is ſo great, and they are ſo exact in their Work, that if the Leaf be exactly written, 'tis rare that the Engraver will commit any Fault, and when he has done, one cannot diſtinguiſh the Print from the Writing, if the Ink and Paper be the ſame. It muſt be confeſs'd, that this ſort of Printing is ſomewhat incommodious, becauſe there muſt be as many Boards as Leaves, ſo that an indifferent big Chamber will hardly hold all the Tables that are uſed in the Impreſſion of a large Volume; but then when the Engraving is finiſh'd, one is not obliged at the ſame time to draw off all the Copies, but may print them as he can put them off; and if there be Occaſion afterward for any more Impreſſions, the Wooden-Plates are eaſily run over.

Printing ancient in *China*, and how perform'd.

The Paper of *China* is ſo fine, that ſome imagine it to be made of Silk or Cotton, but by Experience neither of them will make a fit Paſte, ſuch as is requiſite for Leaves. All the Paper of *China* is made of the Bark or inward Rind of the *Bambou*, which is a Tree more even, thicker, ſtraiter and ſtronger, than our Elder. They throw away the firſt Rind, as too hard; the undermoſt being whiter and ſofter, they

Their Paper how made.

they pound in fair Water, and ſo compoſe the Matter for the Paper, which they take up with Frames or Moulds, as long and broad as they think fit, as we do here. They'll make ſome Leaves 10 or 12 Foot long, and their Paper is as white, and much more even and ſmooth than ours. They waſh it over with Allom, which does not only hinder it from Sinking, but renders it alſo ſo ſhining, that it appears as waſh'd over with Silver, or impregnated with Varniſh. It is extream ſmooth under the Pen, and eſpecially under the Pencil, which requires an even Ground. But for all this, the *China* Paper is not laſting: It is ſubject to fret; any Moiſture or Duſt ſticks to it, and being made of the Bark of a Tree, infallibly breeds Worms, if Care be not taken to beat the Books now and then, and expoſe them to the Sun; ſo that the *Chineſe* cannot preſerve ancient *MSS.* as we do in *Europe*, but are continually renewing their Libraries, which are therefore only ancient, becauſe they contain Authentick Copies of ancient Originals.

The *Chineſe* Ink.

Their Ink is moſt excellent, but that of *Nankim* is moſt valued. They make it up into Sticks ſo curiouſly, and ſo ſweet ſcented, that one would be tempted to keep ſome of them, tho' they ſhould be of no Uſe at all. The Sticks are ſolid, and reſemble our Mineral Colours, but much lighter. They make them into all Figures, but moſt uſually 4 ſquare, yet not ſo broad as long, and half an Inch thick. Some of them are gilded with Figures of Dragons, Birds and Flowers, and ſo neatly wrought in Moulds, contrived on purpoſe, that nothing finer can be made on Metal.

How 'tis made.

When one has a mind to write, they infuſe one End of the Stick in Water, which they rub gently upon a ſmooth Piece of Marble, and in a Moment, according as they rub, there is produced a Liquor more or leſs black, wherein they dip the Point of the Pencil they write with, and altho' by reaſon of the Fineneſs of the Paper it ſinks, yet it never extends farther than the Pencil; ſo that the Letters are exactly terminated, how groſs ſoever the Strokes be.

The Excellency of it.

It is admirable good for deſigning, and admits of all the Diminutions one can give it. Many Things cannot be drawn to the Life without it. It is made of Lamp Black, drawn from divers Matters, but the beſt is made of Hogs-Greaſe. They mix a ſort of Oil with it to make it ſweeter, and pleaſant Odors to ſuppreſs the Scent of the Greaſe and Oil. When they have brought it to a Conſiſtence, they make of the Paſte little Lozenges, which they caſt in a Mould. It is heavy at firſt, but being dry'd, loſes almoſt half its Weight; a Pound will not weigh above 8 or 10 Ounces.

Their Binding of Books

The Binding of Books in *China* is alſo very pretty and curious, tho' it falls ſhort of ours. They neither gild, nor colour them on the Edges. The ordinary Books are cover'd with a gray Paſteboard, handſome enough. They bind others according as they pleaſe, in fine Sattin, or a kind of flower'd Taffata, made for that Purpoſe, and very cheap. They cover their fineſt Books with rich Silk, flower'd with Gold and Silver. The Form of Binding is always the ſame, and differs only in the Matter, which is more or leſs rich. But the Subject of their Books is more noble.

Their Books the Firſt.

The firſt Hiſtory that was in the World, was without all Controverſie, the Book of *Geneſis*, but it muſt be granted, that of all Books which have reach'd our Knowledge, the Books of *China* were the firſt that have been publiſhed. The *Chineſe* call them by way of Excellency, *The Five Volumes*, and they hold the Doctrine contained in them moſt Sacred. It is about 4300 Years ſince the Emperor *Hoamti* having invented their Characters, compoſed Treatiſes of Aſtronomy, Arithmetick and Medicine.

A Collection of their Laws.

Near 300 Years after they made a Collection of all their Ordinances, and wrote the Hiſtory of King *Tao*, a Prince commendable for his Piety, Prudence, and the mighty Care he took to ſettle a good Form of Government in the State. *Chun* and *Iſu*, his Succeſſors, were no leſs famous; for they conſtituted ſuch Ceremonies as were neceſſary to be uſed in ſacrificing to the Supreme God of Heaven, and the inferior Spirits that preſide over Rivers and Mountains: They divided the Empire into Provinces, and fixed their different Situations according to the Conſtellations of the Heavens.

Taxes appointed.

They appointed ſuch Taxes as the State Affairs required of the People to pay, and made many wholſome and proper Rules to regulate Mens Manners, and eſtabliſh the Kingdom in Order and Peace. All theſe Things were written, and Poſterity have as much Reverence to them, as if they had been delivered by an Oracle. But ſince nothing can be made perfect at firſt by Man, ſome Things will eſcape the Notice of the firſt Law-givers, whereupon the Emperors, who reign'd 1776 Years before our Saviour, upon mature Deliberation, and by the prudent Advice and Councel of their Miniſters, found it needful to make ſome Additions of new Laws.

They report of *Caotſon*, a Prince whoſe natural Endowments were much enobled by his Piety and Zeal for Religion, ſaw in a Dream the Figure of a Man coming from Heaven, and being awaked, he retain'd ſuch a lively Impreſs upon his Mind, that 'twas not a meer Fiction, that he cauſed Search to be made for ſuch a Perſon, as his Image repreſented, and after long Search found him among the Maſons. As ſoon as this Man applied himſelf to the Government, he ſeem'd to act by a Divine Inſpiration, and made many excellent Regulations, which render'd the former Conſtitutions much more perfect, which yet were again augmented in the following Reigns.

The Five Books of their Laws, and their Names.

Theſe the *Chineſe* collected altogether, and made up 5 Books of them. The 1ſt of them they call *Chukim*, which contains Politick Conſtitutions, and is of as great Authority among them, as *Moſes* and the Prophets are among the *Jews*, as to what concerns the Worſhip of God, and Form of Religion. The 2d Book much reverenced by the *Chineſe* for its Antiquity, is called *Chikim*, and is a long Series and Continuation of Odes and Poems, compoſed under the Reign of the 3d Race. In it are deſcribed the Manners and Cuſtoms of the Petty Kings of *China*, who governed the Provinces under the Emperor.

Confucius commends them.

Confucius mentions them with much Reſpect, which makes us ſuppoſe they have by length of Time been much corrupted, ſince they now contain in them Things very Ridiculous, not to ſay Impious. The 3d Book, called *Ukim*, is made up only of certain Poems made by *Tohi*, Founder of the Monarchy. They are ſo very obſcure and intricate, that notwithſtanding all their Pains to put a good Conſtruction on them, they confeſs them not to be intelligible. Yet their Obſcurities hath given Occaſion to many Superſtitions. The *Bonzes* make them ſay what they pleaſe, and ſo render them an inexhauſtible Fountain of Fables and Chymera's which they make uſe of to cauſe the People to pin their Faith upon their Sleeves.

Some collected by him.

The 4th Book, named *Tchum-Siou*, contains the Hiſtory of ſeveral Princes, their Vertues, Vices, and Maxims of Government, that have been collected into one Body by *Confucius*, commented upon by his Diſciples. The 5th Book treats of Cuſtoms and Ceremonies, their Temples, and Sacred Veſſels, the Duties of Children to their Parents, and Wives to their Husbands: Rules of real Friendſhip, Civilities at Feaſts, Hoſpitality, Muſick and War; of Funeral Honours, and a Thouſand other Things, that regarded Society. The 5 Books are very ancient, and all the others that have any Authority in the Empire, are nothing but Copies or Interpretations of them.

Confucius comments on them.

Among abundance of Authors, who have beſtow'd their Pains that way, none was ſo eminent and conſpicuous as *Confucius*, whoſe Comments on theſe ancient Laws, contain'd in 4 Books, are had in great Eſteem, and are look'd upon as the Rule of perfect Government; for there he treats of the great Art of Reigning, of Mediocrity, Vertues and Vices; of the Nature of Things, and of common Duties; but the laſt Tome is ſuppoſed to be written by *Mencius*, his Scholar, whoſe Life was indeed leſs regular than his Maſter's, but his Style is more eloquent and pleaſant.

Other Books.

Beſides theſe 9 Books there are ſome others much in Vogue, as the Univerſal Hiſtory of the Empire, Books about the Education of Children, of Obedience and Loyalty, aſcrib'd to *Confucius*; Diſcourſes of Medicine, Husbandry, Plants, of the Military Art, of the Liberal and Mechanick Arts, of particular Hiſtories, Aſtronomy, Philoſophy, and ſeveral other Parts of Mathematicks. They have their Romances, Comedies, and what is to be rank'd with them; abundance of Treatiſes compoſed by the *Bonzes* concerning the Worſhip of their Gods, which they alter, diminiſh or encreaſe, according as they find neceſſary to inveagle the People.

Their Libraries deſtroy'd.

Of all theſe Books they had compiled very numerous Libraries of above 40000 Volumes at vaſt Pains and Charge, but they were almoſt all deſtroy'd by the Tyrannical Order of one Emperor, called *Chihoamti*. He lived about 300 Years after the Death of *Confucius*, and about 200 Years before the Birth of

our

our Saviour. He was more famous than all his Predeceſſors for his Valour and Military Science, and more eſpecially for building the prodigious Wall to ſecure his Territories from the Irruptions of the *Tartars*. This Prince reſolved to extinguiſh all Sciences, by putting the Doctors of them to Death, and burning all their Books, except ſuch as treated of Agriculture, Medicine and Sorcery. This Conflagration had turn'd the moſt polite and accompliſh'd State in the World into Barbariſm and Ignorance, had not the Love of Sciences revived after the Tyrant's Death, and the ſucceeding Emperor order'd the old Men, who, according to Cuſtom, had in their Youth learn'd almoſt all theſe Books by Heart, to write them faithfully over. Some Copies they found in Tombs, others in the Holes of Walls, which the more Zealous had conceal'd in the late Perſecution; but they had ſuffer'd much Damage by Moiſture and Worms, but yet very ſerviceable to help the Memories of the Aged, and trim up an Edition, which for all their Care and Induſtry, could not eſcape many Defects and Breaks, which are, indeed, made up, but by ſeveral Pieces, which were not in the Originals. The *Chineſe* themſelves own this, but they are ſo ſuperſtitious in preſerving what was handed down to them from Antiquity, that they pay it a Reverence even to the Fault.

The Books reſtored.

Confucius being the chief Philoſopher and Interpreter of the Law of the *Chineſe*, it would be a great Defect in the *Chineſe* Hiſtory, if I ſhould not give a large Account of him. He is the moſt pure Sourſe of their Doctrine and Law-giver, and tho' he was never their King, yet during his Life he govern'd a great part of *China*, and ſince his Death he hath had a greater Share in the Government by his Maxims of State and fair Examples, than any other. His Life is written by many, and what is commonly believ'd is as follows.

Confucius.

His Birth.

Confucius, whom the *Chineſe* call *Coum-tſe*, was born in the Province of *Quamtum*, in the 37th Year of the Reign of the Emperor *Kim*, 483 Years before *Chriſt*'s Incarnation. His Father died before he was born, and therefore he was called *Tſe*, a Child of Sorrow. He was deſcended from *Tiny*, the 27th Emperor of the 2d Race, an Illuſtrious Family, which by his Life he much enobled; for *China* at this Day acknowledges no true Nobility but in this Family, from which the Sovereigns own they have received their Laws, and the People their Happineſs.

His Childhood.

He did not proceed in the ordinary Degrees of his Childhood; he ſeem'd rational a great deal ſooner than other Men; he took no Delight in any Childiſh Sports or Toys, but had a grave and ſerious Deportment, and ſhew'd an unbyaſs'd and exemplary Piety in his earlieſt Years. He honour'd his Relations, and in all Things endeavour'd to imitate his Grandfather, who was then in *China* admired for his exemplary Sanctity. He never did eat any thing, but he firſt proſtrated himſelf, and offer'd it to the Supream Lord of Heaven.

His Education.

After his Grandfather's Death, he became a Scholar to *Tcem-ſe*, a famous Doctor of thoſe Times, and under ſo great a Maſter he grew a great Proficient in the Knowledge of Antiquity by that Time he was 16 Years of Age. When he was a little more advanced in Years, he made a Collection of the moſt excellent Maxims of the Ancients, which he intended to follow and inſtil into the People. Every Province was at that Time a diſtinct Kingdom, and had a Prince of their own, who, tho' ſubject to the Emperor, govern'd by particular Laws, levy'd Taxes, diſpoſed of all Places of Truſt, and made Peace or War as they pleaſed. Theſe Kings had Differences among themſelves, and the Emperor ſtood in fear of them, becauſe he had not Strength enough to keep them in Subjection.

His Preachings.

Confucius ſeeing this, and being perſwaded that the People could never be happy, ſo long as Intereſt, Ambition and falſe Policy reign'd in theſe Courts, reſolv'd to preach up a ſevere Morality, teach Men to contemn Riches and Worldly Pleaſures, and eſteem Temperance, Juſtice, and other Vertues; inſpire them with Grandeur and Magnanimity, and a Sincerity incapable of the leaſt Diſguiſe: In fine, inſtruct them in a Way of Life, that ſhould oppoſe the Paſſions, and improve Reaſon and Vertue. His Words he ſeconded with ſuch an Example, as produced very conſiderable Fruits of his Labour; for Kings were govern'd by his Councels, and the People reverenced him as a Saint. All commended him and admired him that would not imitate him. Being choſen to a great Office in the Kingdom of *Lou*, in leſs than 3 Months time he brought the People into ſuch exact Order and Obſervance of Laws, that the Neighbouring Princes began to grow fearful and jealous of the Event, as knowing that that Kingdom muſt flouriſh and grow more powerful than others, which was ſo well governed.

His Example.

The King of *Tci* was moſt fearful of the Event, and to put a Stop to his Proceedings, he, by the Advice of his Miniſters, choſe out a great Company of young Maids, handſome, and well inſtructed in the Arts of Pleaſing, whom, under Pretence of an Embaſſie, he preſented to the King of *Lou* and his Courtiers. This Contrivance took the deſired Effect, for as it was joyfully accepted, ſo they thought of nothing but diverting themſelves with theſe Strangers. *Confucius* endeavour'd all he could to reclaim them, and bring them to themſelves, but all in vain; the Severity of the Philoſophy muſt give place to the Irregularities of the Courtiers; ſo that this good Man thought it did not ſtand with his Reputation to remain any longer in a Place, where Reaſon and Vertue was deſpiſed, and reſigning his Office, departed, and ſought other Kingdoms more inclinable to follow his Maxims; but he met with great Obſtacles, and ran from Province to Province almoſt without reaping any Advantage; for Politicians dreaded him, and the Miniſters of Princes diſcouraged him; ſo that being forſaken by the World, he was often reduced to great Want, and in Danger of being ſtarv'd and loſing his Life by the Conſpiracies of wicked Men. Nevertheleſs, all theſe Diſgraces did not move him, and he would often ſay, *The Cauſe he defended could produce no ill Effects, no Man could hurt him*; and ſo would never be weary of inſtructiong thoſe that loved Vertue. Many Diſciples put themſelves under his Tuition, of whom he employ'd ſome to write a fair Hand, others to argue exactly, and deliver themſelves elegantly in Publick, and others to frame to themſelves an Idea of a good Government: But thoſe he loved moſt he counſelled to govern themſelves well, improve their Minds by Mediration, and purifie their Hearts by Vertue, telling them, *That Human Nature came from Heaven pure and perfect, but is corrupted by Ignorance, Paſſion and ill Example. To reſtore it we muſt reduce it to its Original, and become obedient to Reaſon, which will inſtruct us to think well, ſpeak diſcreetly, and act holily, obey Heaven, love our Neighbour as our ſelves, and deny Subjection to the Conduct of the Senſes.* Six Hundred of his Diſciples he ſent into different Parts of the Empire to reform the Manners of the People; and, not ſatisfied to benefit his own Country, he often reſolved to paſs the Seas, and preach his Doctrine in all Parts of the Earth. There is hardly any thing that can be added to his Zeal, or the Purity of his Morality. He ſpeaks ſometimes like a Doctor of the Goſpel, and not like a Philoſopher; and that which renders his Doctrine truly admirable, was, that his Actions never bely'd his Maxims; for he was eminent for his Gravity and Mildneſs in the Uſe of the World, his rigorous Abſtinence, his Contempt of Riches, his Watchfulneſs over his Actions, and his Humility and Modeſty, which would make us to think him inſpired by God for the Reformation of the World. The *Chineſe* report, that he often ſaid, *It is in the Weſt where the true Saint is found*; and this Sentence made ſuch Impreſſion on the Minds of his Diſciples, that the Emperor *Mimti*, 65 Years after our Saviour's Birth, ſtirr'd up to it by the Image of a Man, which appear'd to him in a Dream coming from the Weſt, ſent Ambaſſadors that Way, with ſtrict Order to hold on their Journey till they found him; and had the *Mandarins* follow'd his Orders, they had met St. *Thomas*, who at that Time preach'd the Goſpel in the *Indies*; but, fearing the Dangers of the Sea, they ſtopt at the firſt Iſland, where they found the Idol *Foe* worſhipp'd, who had corrupted all the *Indies* with his Doctrine. Here they learn'd the Superſtitions of the Country, and at their Return propagated Atheiſm and Idolatry in all the Empire.

His Doctrine oppoſed, and rendred ineffectual a while.

His Patience.

His Scholars.

The Excellency of his Doctrines.

The Idol *Foe*.

Confucius lived privately 3 Years, and ſpent the latter End of his Days in Sorrow, in ſeeing the Wickedneſs that reign'd among the People, and his Doctrine and Maxims diſregarded.

His Death. Being weary of Life, because he could do no Good, he at length fell into a Lethargy, which held him 7 Days, and then he gave up the Ghost in the Embraces of his Disciples. He was lamented by the whole Empire, and from his Death to this Day is honour'd as a Saint. Kings have built Palaces to him, whither the Learned go to pay him Honours. There are many Places to be seen where these Titles of Honour are given him, and are written in large Characters; *To the Great Master*; *To the Head Doctor*; *To the Saint*; *To him that taught Emperors and Kings*: But the *Chinese* never Deify'd him, tho' they have done it to many *Mandarins* much inferior to him, as if Heaven that sent him to reform Manners would not allow, that even after his Death he should be an Occasion of corrupting them. He was no handsome Man, for he had a Wen on his Forehead that disfigured him; otherwise his Stature was comely and proportionable, his Behaviour grave, his Voice strong; so that being joined with a zealous Warmth, it could not but affect. But his Doctrines give us the best Portraiture of his Soul, which he delivered in certain Maxims, a Specimen of which here follows. It would need an entire Volume to relate them all, but a few may be as profitable as grateful.

His Character.

MAXIM I.

Beauty is not to be desired by a wise Man.

What Beauty is best. *Confucius* going to visit a King of a Province, found him with a Favourite, who was very beautiful. The King seeing him, said, smiling, *Confucius, if I could, I would give thee all the Beauty of this young Man. Confucius* replied, 'That's not the Thing I wish. 'The Beauty of Man does no Good to the Publick. 'I desire a just Symmetry in all the Members of the 'Empire, which makes the Beauty of Government, 'and keeps the State from Deformity.

MAXIM II.

A Man must keep within Bounds, if he would be happy.

Moderation the truest Vertue. *Confucius*, when he heard that his Mother was dead, went into his Country to pay his Duty to her, and wept and fasted 3 Days for her. A Philosopher observing it, reproved him, and said, *I have fasted 7 Days upon the Death of my Relation; but you, who are the Grandson of a Saint, and whom all admire, have satisfied your self with 3 Days Abstinence. Confucius* answered, 'Ceremonies were enjoin'd by the Ancients 'to restrain the Indiscreet, and stir up the Backward. 'We must obey Laws, if we will not do amiss. It 'is in this Golden Mean that Wisdom consists. If 'you will never go astray, remember that Vertue is 'not an Excess, and that Perfection hath its Limits.

MAXIM III.

A Man ought to change often, if he would be constant in Wisdom.

Change with the time necessary. A Person of Quality said one Day to *Confucius*, *Your Grandfather was civil and obliging to Great Persons, and yet his Doctrine, tho' holy, never got Footing, and how can you expect yours should be follow'd, when you are grave, rough, and sometimes haughty? Confucius* replied, 'My 'Grandfather lived in a Time, when Princes were 'polite, and loved Order, and if one would gain upon them, he ought to be polite and regular; but at 'this Day Men value Courage and Haughtiness, and 'a Man must comply with the World, if he would 'win it. A wise Man would cease to be so, should 'he act as the wise Men of former Times did.

MAXIM IV.

The Nobility are not always the greatest Men in the Kingdom.

Nobility are only the best and wisest Men. *Confucius* coming to the Court of one of the Kings of *China*, was kindly receiv'd, and allow'd an Apartment in his Palace. The King coming to visit him, said, *You come into my State to do me some good, probably. Confucius* replied, 'My Intents to present you with 'wise Men to fill the principal Places of your State. *With all my Heart*, said the Prince; *Pray who are they?* 'My Lord, said he, *Li-in*, an Husbandman's Son, is 'a Person whom you may trust. The King fell a Laughing, and said, *I have not Employments enough for my Lords; And would you have me take a Labourer into my Service?* The Philosopher replied, 'The Court sup- 'plies you with evil Ministers; suffer a Country 'Village to present you with a wise Man. You say 'you have not Employments for your Lords. If 'Vertue were rewarded, as it ought, you would find 'in your Court more Places than Officers, and, perhaps, would be glad to call for Labourers to supply them. When the Nobility do not furnish the 'State with Great Men, the People must, and of them 'must be composed the Body of the Nobility.

MAXIM V.

A small Fault often denotes great Qualities.

Small Faults to be excused by. He one Day advised the King of *Ouei* to make a *Mandarin* his General, but the King refused, saying, *When he was* Mandarin *he took a Couple of Eggs from a Country Fellow, and he that has once abused his Authority ought not to command again. Confucius* reply'd, 'Such Sentiments of Equity are laudable in a King, 'but is not the *Mandarin*'s Moderation to be admir'd, 'that he took but 2 Eggs? Such a small Fault shews 'great Qualities in him. Does a Carpenter reject a 'good Beam, that is able to support the Building, be- 'cause there is a Flaw in it? I would not advise your 'Majesty, for the Loss of 2 Eggs, to turn off a Cap- 'tain, who may conquer 2 Kingdoms.

MAXIM VI.

A wise Prince will be no great Speaker, nor deliver his Opinion first.

Princes must be advised. The same King one Day held a Council in the Presence of *Confucius*, where having spoken to his Ministers of some Affairs with a Shew of Wit, they applauded him, and allow'd him to be in the Right, and so all was done. The King ask'd *Confucius, How he liked their Proceedings?* He said, 'He saw no 'Deliberation. You spoke, and they told your Opi- 'nion, but not their own. When the Assembly 'broke up, I expected the Beginning of the Council. Some Days after the same King asked his Opinion of the present Government: He said, 'No Body speaks 'ill of it. *That's my Desire*, replied the King. 'But 'that you ought not to desire, said *Confucius*; 'Persons must not be flatter'd. A Man is bound to 'discover to his Prince the Defects of the Mind, 'with the same Freedom as he does his Disease to a 'Physician.

MAXIM VII.

The wise Man goes forward apace, because the right Way is always the shortest. On the contrary, the crafty Politician arrives late at his End, because he walks in By-ways and crooked Paths.

Vertue to be preferr'd before Policy. The King of *Ouei* confess'd to *Confucius*, *That there was nothing so fine as Wisdom, but it was so difficult to acquire, that is discouraged the best Minds: He had endeavoured after it in vain, and would trouble himself no longer about it. A small Parcel of Policy would supply the Defects of it in Governing. Confucius* reply'd, 'The 'Way to Wisdom is not so difficult as Men imagine. 'It grows plainer and plainer as Men go on; but 'artificial and knavish Policy perplexes the Spirits, 'and runs Men into a dangerous Maze. As for my 'part, I am perswaded, that in Government solid and 'constant Vertue goes farther than the most subtle 'Policy.

MAXIM VIII.

Those who desire the most perfect State do not always search the Perfection of the State, but the Sweetness. Would you be fix'd in the World? Fix this in your Mind, That to take up a new Course of Life is nothing else, but to pass from one Trouble to another.

Our own State is best. A Prince being wrought upon by the Wise of *Confucius*, went to find him out, and told him, *That he resolv'd to abandon all Things to become one of his Disciples; for I am born to a Thousand Sorrows in the Station I am in, but your Life seems to me full of Sweetness and De-*

Delight. Confucius answer'd, 'Since 'tis Sweetness 'you look for in my State, I will not advise you to 'enter upon it. A Man often meets with Trouble 'the more he avoids it. Heaven, which hath in-'spired me with the Love of Privacy, hath sent you 'into the World to rule. Be a King, and seek not 'after Peace too much, but rather if you have no 'mind to lose your State, behave your self gallantly 'against your Enemies, but fight more couragiously 'against your Passions, and the Love of an easie and 'sweet Life, that you destroy not your self.

MAXIM IX.

Those who are diligent, and would do all, put off many Things to the next Day.

To omit some things is the way to do most

Confucius's Son said one Day to him, *I carefully apply my self to all sorts of Studies, whereby I am become a good Scholar, but make but small Progress.* His wise Father said to him, 'Omit something, and you'll 'make great Progress. Men that go long Journeys 'never run. In all Things you must go orderly, and 'consult your Abilities, or your Labour will be use-'less. The Saints first apply themselves to easie 'Things, and then proceeding to more difficult, by 'little and little become perfect. They who, like 'you, would do all in one Day, do nothing all their 'Life, but they who apply themselves to one Thing 'only, find at length that they have done all.

MAXIM X.

One ought not to wonder, that the wise Man walks slower in the Ways of Vertue, than the ill Man does in that of Vice. Passion hurries, but Wisdom guides.

Vertue easi-ed.

One of *Confucius*'s Friends complain'd of his small Proficiency in Vertue, and said, *I have labour'd these several Years to imitate the primitive Saints, and yet am imperfect. Had I applied my self to Wickedness, I might have arrived at the Height of Impiety in a short time. Why is it not as easie to attain to a Perfection in Vertue as Vice? Confucius* said, 'Tis no Wonder: Vertue is on 'high, and it requires Pains and Time to ascend; but 'Vice is in the lowest Place, and a Minute sufficeth 'to fall from the highest Precipice. One, indeed, is 'sooner determined to Evil than Good; but since 'he always repents of it, 'tis a certain Sign, that there 'is less Trouble to do well, than to persevere in Evil.

MAXIM XI.

True Nobility doth not consist in Blood, but Merit. We are truly high and great, when Vertue prevents our grovelling with the rest of Mankind.

Greatness is to be above Reproach.

Confucius seeing a Man carry a Fish, sigh'd, and being ask'd the Reason, said, 'This Fish hath lost its 'Life by complying with the enticing Pleasures of a 'deceitful Bait, but is excusable, because it wanted 'Reason; but are Men excusable to lose Vertue, 'which is more precious than Life, and be catch'd 'by the Baits of Worldly good Things and Vani-'ties? If we knew our Wants, we should take ano-'ther Course. True Riches is to contemn every 'thing. He is truly great and raised above others, 'whom Calumny and Reproaches cannot reach.

MAXIM XII.

In the State wherein we are, Perseverance in Well-doing consists not so much in not falling, as in rising again as often as we fall.

Best Men fall often.

Some *Mandarins*, whom *Confucius* instructed, said to him, *You are happy, because you are arrived at the highest Degree of Vertue, and have left Sin long since. As for us, we labour hard to be good Men, but commit Faults every Day. Confucius* replied, 'Though every 'Fault be blame-worthy, yet you are not so unhappy 'as you imagine, by committing many. Our Life is 'a long Journey, the Way is difficult, and our Rea-'son clouded by Passions affords but little Light to 'guide us: And who can avoid stumbling in the 'Dark? A Fall retards our Journey, but doth not put 'it off; when we get up, we may go on. It would 'be an Unhappiness to us to fall but once, like the 'Wicked, who are stopt by the first Precipice. Ho-'nest Men and good, that continue their Walking, 'fall often.

MAXIM XIII.

No Man knows half his own Faults, and yet he would be ashamed to appear to others what he appears to himself.

Mens Failings not to be known.

One complain'd, *That Nature had bestow'd Eyes upon Men to see Bodies, but none to see Minds, so that Vertue and Vice are confounded in the World. Confucius* answered, 'You would be in a bad Case if it were 'otherwise, because we could not secure our Failings 'and Weaknesses; for I'll maintain, that the Philo-'sopher would suffer more by appearing weak, than 'the wicked Man doth by appearing vicious.

MAXIM XIV.

None to boast.

Never speak either Good or Bad of your self to others: Not Good, because Men will not believe you: Not Evil, because they know more already than you would have them.

When to confess ones Faults.

This he spoke one Day to his Disciples, who took a Pride now and then to blame themselves, and added, 'For a Man to confess his Faults when he is 'reproved for them, is Modesty; To lay them open 'to his Friend, is Ingenuity and Confidence; To 'reprove himself for them, is Humility; But to 'preach them to every Body, is, if one have not a 'great Care, a Piece of Pride.

By these Precepts of *Confucius*'s Philosophy we may see, that Reason belongs to all Times and Places. *Seneca* hath spoken nothing better; and had we a perfect Collection of this Philosopher's Maxims, nothing would be wanting to give him a Place among the greatest Sages of Antiquity.

LETTER VIII.

Written to the Lord Philipeaux, *Secretary of State to the* French *King*; *Of the Wit and Temper of the* Chinese.

All would be thought wise.

OF all the People in the habitable World, there is none, but what stand upon their Wit and Ingenuity, and oftentimes the most Barbarous prefer themselves, before the most Polite and Accomplished. The Inhabitants of the *Cape of Good Hope*, who scarce deserve to be ranked amongst Men, look upon the *Europeans* as Slaves, and *Hollanders* as stuped Fellows, not versed in the Method of Government. The People of *Siam* do usually say, That Heaven hath given the *French* Bravery and Science of War, the *English* the Art of Navigation, the *Hollanders* a Knack in Trading, to the *Chinese* the Wisdom, but Wit only to the People of *Siam*. But above all, the *Chinese*, who term all the People of the *East* blind, reserve to themselves the Preheminence, and believe themselves to be, without all Dispute, the most intelligent Nation in the World. And, indeed, without Question they are an ingenious People, but no Body hath been truly acquainted with their Character. They have Libraries, Universities, great Numbers of Doctors and Observatories; and tho' for these 4000 Years they have allowed Recompences to learned and expert Men, yet they have not had one single Man of great Atchievements in Speculative Science, enjoy-

The *Chinese* think themselves wisest.

ing the Reputation of Knowing Men, becauſe they ſee none but ſuch as are more ignorant than themſelves. They have not that Spirit of Penetration and Exactneſs, which is neceſſary to thoſe who addict themſelves to the Search of Natnre; nor have they that Logick, which is ſo much improved in *Europe*. Geometry, which is brought to ſo high a Degree of Perfection in *France*, and may paſs for the Maſterpiece of human Underſtanding, hath never yet got Admittance in their Academies; and therefore in theſe Matters they will ſo far make their Pride ſtoop, as to confeſs the *Europeans* to be their Maſters. It is true, they have a kind of Philoſophy, and they lay down certain Principles for the Explaining the Compoſition of Bodies, their Properties and Effects: Neither are they altogether ignorant in Anatomy, for they grant a Circulation of the Blood and Humours, but all their Notions are ſo generally confuſed, and moſt an end ſo falſe, that 'tis not worth our while to ſpeak particularly of them.

Their Ignorance in Sciences.

Their Philoſophy.

Anatomy.

Arithmetick. Their Arithmetick is more perfect, altho' they do not make uſe of the Cypher, as we do. They uſe an Inſtrument of Board, a Foot and half long, croſs which they ſcore 10 or 12 little parallel Lines ſtrung with ſeveral moveable Buttons, with which they reckon, as we do with Counters, but with ſuch Dexterity and Eaſineſs, that they will keep Pace with a Man, let him read a Book of Accounts never ſo faſt, and when they have perform'd the Operation, they have a certain Way to prove it.

Their Geometry and Muſick. Their Geometry is very ſuperficial. It is reſtrain'd to a very few Propoſitions, and to ſome Problems of Algebra, which they reſolve without Elements, or Principles, and that only by Induction. They pretend to be Inventors of Muſick, and to have brought it to its Perfection, but that which they practiſe at this Day is ſo imperfect, as not to deſerve the Name of Muſick.

Their Aſtronomy. They addict themſelves much to Aſtronomy, and that Science is beholding to them for abundance of Obſervations, which, tho' only related in general in their Hiſtory, yet is not unprofitable to Poſterity; for they have above 400 Obſervations, as well of Eccliypſes, and Comets, as Conjunctions, that make good their Chronology, and might help to perfect ours. Their Tables are, indeed, imperfect, but are very ſervicable to regulate Time; yet after a certain Revolution of Years they were forced to amend them, becauſe they did not exactly agree with the Heavens, till in the Beginning of this Century, they got ſome Knowledge of our Aſtronomy.

Aſtrology. In Aſtrology they are much greater Proficients, becauſe for the ſucceeding in that Art, little more is required, than to lie handſomely and confidently, in which none may pretend to out-do the *Chineſe*. They have among them many cheating Mountebanks by Profeſſion, who promiſe by their pretended Knowledge of the Stars to diſcover the Philoſopher's Stone, and give Immortality. They mark in the Almanack every Year the good and bad Days for Building, Marriages, undertaking Journeys and Voyages, and other Actions of the like Nature, the Succeſs of which depends more upon the Wiſdom and Deſcretion of Men, than the Influence of the Heavens.

Medicine. Medicine hath not been quite neglected among them, but for want of Natural Philoſophy, and Anatomy, they have made no great Progreſs in it; but we muſt not deny, that they have acquired ſuch a Skill in *Pulſes*, as has made them famous in the World. The Emperor *Hoamti* compoſed a Treatiſe about them 4392 Years ago, and ever ſince the Phyſicians of *China* look upon that Science as the Foundation of Medicine; for they affirm, that their never happens any extraordinary Change in the Conſtitution, but it alters the Blood, and cauſes a different Impreſſion upon the Veſſels; and they pretend, by long Experience, to have diſtinguiſhed all the Differences of Pulſes, and to be able to know all the Diſtempers that are incident to the Body by them. They hold the Patient's Hand a Quarter of an Hour at leaſt, ſometimes the Right, and ſometimes the Left, and ſometimes both. They lay all their 4 Fingers along the Artery, and when they have ſtrongly and uniformly preſſed the Patient's Wriſt, they raiſe their Fingers by degrees, till the Blood recovers its Courſe, then they preſs the Arm again, and hold it a conſiderable Time, and a while after riſe and fall, pinch ſoftly and hard, ſometimes ſlower and faſter, till ſuch time as the Artery anſwers the Touch, and ſo the Strength, Weakneſs, Diſorder, or other Symptoms of the Pulſe be manifeſt. After all this, as if they were inſpired, they play the Prophet, ſaying, *You were never troubled with the Head-Ach, but with an Heavineſs, that hath made you drowſie: You have loſt your Appetite, but will recover it in 3 Days: This Evening, about Sun-ſet, your Head will be freer*, &c. When they are expert in their Art, they will prognoſticate pretty exactly, but as for others, they are commonly falſe Prophets, unleſs they can make uſe of other Arts; for they try all Means imaginable, to get themſelves ſecretly inſtructed concerning the Patient's Condition, before they viſit him; nay, they are ſo cunning (to get themſelves Reputation) as to feign a kind of Diſtemper, which ſometimes they themſelves procure afterward; as a certain Perſon found, who ſent for a Surgeon to Cure him of a Wound: He told him, the Malady was cauſed by a ſmall Worm, that was inſinuated into the Fleſh, which would produce a Gangreen, if not fetched out, and he would do it, if he would give him a conſiderable Sum of Money. The ſick Perſon agreed to it, and the Surgeon put a Worm in the Plaiſter, which he pulled out with Triumph, and tho' he diſcovered the Cheat he loſt his Money.

Their Skill in Pulſes, and their way of handling them.

Their Judgment by the Pulſe.

They prepare their own Medicines, which ordinarily conſiſts of Pills, which according as they are prepared, procure Sweats, purge the Blood and Humours, fortifie the Stomach, ſuppreſs Vapours, or are reſtringent, diſpoſe to Evacuation, but ſeldom work by Stool. They do not let Blood, or know the Uſe of the Glyſter. They apply Cupping-glaſſes not only upon the *Scapulæ*, but upon the Belly to aſſwage the Pains of the Cholick. They are almoſt all perſwaded, that moſt Diſeaſes are cauſed by corrupted Wind, ſlipt into the Muſcles, and diſturbing all the Parts of the Body. The moſt ſure Way to diſſipate it, is (as they hold) to apply red hot Needles, or Buttons of Fire. This Cauterizing they uſe upon the ſlighteſt Occaſions, and every Day almoſt make a great many miſerable Perſons: Yet there are a great many Maladies, which are not curable but by this Means.

Their Medicines.

Their Way to cure the Cholick.

The People of the Country, and eſpecially the Slaves, are much troubled with a violent Chloick, called *Mordechim*, by the *Portugueſe*, occaſion'd by Indigeſtion, and accompanied with Vomiting. The Gripes produceth ſuch Anguiſh, as diſtracts their Minds; and the only Remedy is this: They lightly apply an Iron-Peal, red hot, to the Soles of their Feet, if the Patient feel it, he his cured, but if at the firſt Operation he appears inſenſible, they preſs it on ſtill, till it burns to the Bone, unleſs he complain, and then they ceaſe, and the Diſeaſe leaves them; but if the Fire be not felt, they deſpair of healing, and in a ſhort time the Patient dies.

Cordials their Simples. Among the *Chineſe* Remedies, Cordials are in greateſt Eſteem: They have many very natural ones made of Herbs, Leaves and Roots (for their Simples are very numerous) and all of them have ſovereign and experienced Vertues. Two of their Simples deſerve particular Obſervation, *viz.* 1ſt, Their *Thee*, or as it is called in the *Mandarin* Language, *Tcha*. There are divers Opinions about it: Some aſcribe to it marvellous Qualities, *viz.* That it cures the Gout, Sciatica, Stone, and preſerves againſt all theſe Diſtempers: That it is good for the Gravel, Crudities, Head-Ach, Virtigo, and all Indigeſtions, which becauſe the *Tartars* are ſubject to, they find the Emperor of *China* with all the Horſes that ſerve to remount his Cavalry, that they may have plenty of it. Others hold theſe Vertues to be meer Fancy and Whim of the *Europeans*, who always love Novelties, and admire what they do not underſtand; for they pretend to have experienced many miſchievous Effects of it, *viz.* That it hinders and diſturbs Digeſtion, fills with Crudities, dries, makes lean and obſtructs, and if there be any good Qualities in its Leaves, moſt other Leaves would produce the ſame, eſpecially if mix'd with hot Water, which alone is a good Medicine againſt many Diſtempers. Nevertheleſs 'tis certain, that *Thee* is of a corroſive Nature, and being boil'd with hard Meats, makes them tender; and conſequently is proper for Digeſtion, and reſiſts Obſtructions, conſumes ſuperfluous Humours, puts in Motion thoſe that ſtagnate and corrupt, and evacuates others that cauſe the Gout and Sciatica, tho' it muſt not be ſuppoſed to produce theſe Effects in all Tempers. It is of ſeveral ſorts: That which grows in the Province of *Xenſi* is coarſe, harſh and unpleaſant. The *Tartars* drink

Thee, its Uſe and Vertues.

Several ſorts of *Thee*.

drink of it, becauſe eating raw Fleſh, they need a ſtronger *Menſtruum* than the *Chineſe*. This ſort is very cheap, not above 3 Pence a Pound. In the ſame Province are found 2 other kinds of it; one like Moſs, the other with long thick Leaves, but theſe are not much uſed. That which is commonly drank in *China* has no particular Name, becauſe it is gather'd any where in different Provinces. It is good, the Infuſion reddiſh, and the Taſte faint and ſomewhat bitter. The People uſe it at all Hours of the Day, and drink little elſe. Perſons of Quality uſe 2 other kinds that are in Requeſt: 1. *Thee Soumlo*, from the Place where it grows: The Leaves are longiſh, the Infuſion clear and green, and the Taſte pleaſant, but if good has no Smell at all. They commonly preſent it at Viſits, but it is very corroſive. Too great Uſe of it would ſpoil the Stomach. 2. *Thee Voui*; the Leaves are little, and incline to Black; but tinge the Water with a yellow Colour. The Taſte is delicious, and it agrees with the weakeſt Stomachs. They give it ſick People, and ſuch as take care of their Health drink nothing elſe. That *Thee* may prove excellent, it ought to be gather'd early, when the Leaves are ſmall, tender and juicy. They commonly gather it in *March* or *April*, and dry it on Copper-Plates over a Fire, till it rolls up, as we have it. The *Chineſe* are ſuch Cheats, as that they mingle other Leaves with it to ſwell the Bulk, ſo that it is rare to meet with any unmix'd. It commonly grows in Valleys and at the Foot of Mountains; the choiceſt grows in ſtony Soils. It flouriſhes moſt by being expoſed to the South. Being ſown, 'twill bear in 3 Years. Its Root reſembles that of a Peach-Tree, and its Flowers are like the white wild Roſe. The Trees grow of all Sizes from 2 Foot to 100. They bear 3 ſorts of Fruit, one ſort like little ſlimy Peaſe, green without, and full of yellow Grains within. The other Fruits are as big as Beans, but of different Figures; ſome round, containing one Pea; others long, containing 2; and others triangular, bearing 3, very like thoſe that bear the Tallow-Grain, ſo famous in *China*. Some of theſe Trees Fruits have no Bud, which they call Females; others have, and may be ſown to produce Trees, but the *Chineſe* uſually graft them.

Another Simple, more ſcarce and valued, is called *Gen-Sem*, or the Man-Plant, becauſe it reſembles a Man. The Learned among them give it abundance of Names in their Writings, which ſhew how much they value it, as, *The Spiritous Simple*, *The pure Spirit of the Earth*, *The Fat of the Sea*, *The Panacea*, *The Remedy that diſpenſes Immortality*, and ſeveral other Names of like Nature: It is a Root as thick as half the little Finger, and as long again: It is divided into 2 Branches, and much reſembles a Man, with his 2 Legs: It is of a yellowiſh Colour, and being kept long, it grows wrinkled, and dry'd like Wood: The Leaves are ſmall, and terminate in a Point, the Branches are black, the Flower violet, and the Stalk hairy. They ſay, it produces but one Stem, which has 3 Branches, each of which bears Leaves by Fours and Fives. It grows in the Shade in a moiſty Soil, and comes not to Perfection in many Years. It is commonly found under a Tree called *Kia-cha*, little differing from the Sycamore. It is fetch'd from ſeveral Places, but that which is now commonly uſed comes *Leaotum*, a Province depending on *China*, but ſituate in the Eaſtern *Tartary*. It is the moſt incomparable Cordial, according to the *Chineſe*, in the World. The Taſte is ſweet and delightful, tho' ſomething bitter. Its Vertues are marvellous; it purifies the Blood, fortifies the Stomach, adds Motion to a languid Pulſe, excites natural Heat, and augments radical Moiſture. The *Chineſe* Phyſicians have whole Volumes of its different Uſes, but they particularly uſe it in Diſtempers attended with Faintneſs and Swooning, when it proceeds from Accident or old Age. They likewiſe make Broaths of it, Electuaries, Lozenges and Syrups, which are excellent Remedies for all Diſtempers. The Phyſicians do not employ Apothecaries to compound their Medicines, but do it themſelves in their Patient's Chamber, if it may conveniently be, otherwiſe in their own Houſes, and wonder at our Phyſicians, that they leave their Medicines at an Apothecary's Mercy to mar it, or make it as he pleaſeth. Yet in *China* they are guilty of a greater Fault, in admitting every Body to practiſe Phyſick, as other Mechanick Arts, without Examination; or taking any Degrees; ſo that many pitiful Fellows, who know not where to put their Heads, having, perhaps, ſtudied a Phyſick Book 2 or 3 Months, ſet up for Doctors *cum Privilegio*, at the Expence of their Patients Lives.

The *Chineſe* are much greater Proficients in Arts than Sciences, for tho' they have not brought them to that great Perfection as in *Europe*, yet they know what's neceſſary for the common Uſe of Life, Neatneſs, Commerce, and even to well regulated Magnificence, which would have proceeded farther, had not the Government ſet Bounds to their Expences, and ſo put a Stop to them. Their Workmen are extraordinary induſtrious, and tho' they are not ſo good at Invention themſelves, yet they readily comprehend others, and imitate them tolerably well. There is made in ſeveral Places of the Empire Glaſs, Watches, Piſtols, Bombs, and many other Pieces of Work that they may thank us for; but they have had Time out of Mind Gun-Powder, Printing, and the Uſe of the Compaſs, new Arts in *Europe*, for which, perhaps, we are beholding to them. They divide the Compaſs into 24 Parts only, and did always believe, that the Needle ſhew'd exactly the true Place of the Pole, till the *Europeans* proved to them ſome Variation and Declenſion. The Loadſtone is found almoſt in every Province of their Country, and ſome is brought to them form *Japan*. They uſe it chiefly in Phyſick, and 'tis bought by Weight, the beſt not above 8 or 10 Pence an Ounce. A Loadſtone of 10 or 11 Pound Weight, Guard and all, will raiſe 14 or 15. In *China* they are more dexterous at cutting them than in *Europe*, becauſe they have a better Engine for that uſe.

Navigation is another Point, which ſhews the Addreſs of the *Chineſe*. It is moſt certain, that from all Antiquity they had always ſtout Ships. Some pretend, that a long time before the Birth of our Saviour they had ſailed over all the Seas of *India*, and diſcovered the *Cape of Good Hope*, which tho' uncertain, yet we have Reaſon to believe, that ſo early they underſtood much more of it than the *Greeks* and *Romans*, for tho' they have not perfected the Art of Navigation, yet at this Day they ſail more ſecurely, than the *Portugueſe*. Their Veſſels are like ours of all Rates, but not ſo fine; they are flat-bottom'd, the Fore-caſtle is cut ſhort without a Stem, and the Stem open in the Middle to the End, that the Rudder, which they ſhut up, as in a Chamber, may be defended on each ſide from the Waves. Their Rudder is much longer than ours, and is ſtrongly tied to the Stern-Poſt by 2 Cables that paſs under the whole Length of the Veſſel to the fore Part. Two other Cables hold it up and facilitate the hoiſing of it, or lowering of it, as Occaſion ſerves. The Bar is as long as is neceſſary for the Guiding of it. The Seamen alſo at the Helm are aſſiſted by Ropes faſtened to the Larboard, and Starboard, and rolled upon the End of the Bar which they hold in their Hands, and faſten and ſlacken, as they ſee Occaſion to thruſt or ſtop the Helm. The Mizen-Maſt is quite toward the fore Part, and the Main-Maſt ſtands near the Place, where ſtands our Mizen. A Cord, which goes from the Starboard to the Larboard, ſerves them for a Stay and Shrouds. The Boltſprit, which is very weak, is at the Larboard. Their Round-Tops are very ſhort, but their Main-Maſt is prodigious high and thick, and ſtrongly ſeized by 2 ſide Beams, that ſtrengthen it wonderfully. Their low Sails are of very thick Matt, trimm'd with Laths, and long Poles at 2 Foot diſtance, to ſtrengthen them, and faſten'd to the whole Length of the Maſts by ſeveral little Loops. They are not faſten'd in the Middle, but have Three Quarters of their Breadth looſe, that they may be accommodated to the Winds, and readily tack about as Occaſion ſerves. They do not uſe melted Pitch and Tar for their *Okam* to Calk with, but a Compoſition of Lime and Oil, or rather a particular Gum with Flax of raſped *Bambou*: This Matter is not ſo apt to fire, and 'tis ſo good *Okam*, that their Ships ſeldom or never leak. Neither do they ever uſe the Pump; a Well or two ſerves to keep the Keel dry. In their largeſt Veſſels their Anchors are of Iron, but in their middle ſort of an hard, heavy Wood, ſtrengthen'd at the Ends; but theſe latter are not ſufficient, for a Spring-Tide, or a freſh Gale runs them a Drift, and they often run the Riſque of being caſt away. Their Cables are of Flax of Coco, Canvas or Rotin, a long Cane. The *Chineſe* have in their Veſſels a Captain, as we have, but his Buſineſs is to keep the Crew in Awe, and victual them. The Pilot marks out the Rhumb,

1. *Thee Soumlo.*
2. *Thee Voui.*
When to be gather'd.
The Fruit of the *Thee*-Tree.
Gen-Sem, or Man-Plant.
It grows under the *Kia-cha* Tree.
Its Vertues.
Their Skill in Arts.
The Uſe of the Compaſs.
Navigation.
Their Ships deſcribed.
Their *Okam*.
Their Cables.

Rhumb, and places the Compaſs. When they ſee no Land, thoſe at the Helm ſteer as they pleaſe, but when they enter a Port, the Mariners are ſo vigilant and careful of their Duty, as not to expect to be commanded. But tho' the *Chineſe* come ſhort of the *Europeans* in Sailing on the Sea, yet they excel us in Sailing upon Rivers and Channels. There they will manage huge Barks, as big as our Ships. They have great Numbers in the Southern Provinces, and keep 9999 equipp'd for the Emperor's Service. [It may ſeem ſtrange, that one more ſhould not be added to make up 10000, but ſince that Number is expreſſed by ſuch Letters only as are neither great nor magnificent, either in Writing, or Pronunciations, they think it not Majeſtick enough to denote the Number of the Emperor's Barks, and ſo keep to a Number, which in their Opinion ſounds great and pompous, as their adored *Nine* has. Some of theſe Barks, called *So-Chuen*, are employed to carry the *Mandarins* to their ſeveral Governments, and bring them back upon their Returns, and therefore are lofty and well painted. Others, which are called *Leam-Chuen*, are to carry Proviſions out of the Provinces to the Court. A 3d ſort, called *Lumy-Chuen*, are to bring the Emperor's Habits, his Pieces of Silk and Taffata to the Court. *F. Magellan.*] They are all flat-bottom'd, and the Body of them is alike broad from Prow to Poop. Upon the Deck they build little Cabbins 7 or 8 Foot high, which they paint within and without, and make very handſome, ſo that the longeſt Voyages ſeem pleaſant in them. They be uſually under Sail, or tugg'd with Ropes, but upon great Rivers, or for croſſing Lakes, they make uſe of Oars. They have a Knack to ſail upon rapid Torrents, which is wonderful and incredible. They in a manner force Nature, and make a Voyage without any Dread, which other People dare not ſo much as look upon without Horror. In ſome of the Rivers the Cataracts are continual, broken by a Thouſand Points of Rocks, that ſcarce have Breadth enough for the Paſſage of a Bark; there is nothing but Turnings and Windings, Caſcades and contrary Currents, that daſh one againſt another, and hurry a Boat like an Arrow out of a Bow: You are always within 2 Foot of Shelves, and if you avoid one, you fall upon another, and from that to a 3d; yet the Pilot, by a Skill not to be admired ſufficiently, eſcapes Shipwrack every Moment. There is none in the World capable of undertaking ſuch Voyages, but the *Chineſe*, who are not diſcouraged by the Shipwracks that happen almoſt every Day. Their Barks are made of a very thin light Timber, which makes them more apt to take all Impreſſions one has a mind to give them. They divide them into 5 or 6 Apartments, ſo that if they touch upon a Point of a Rock, which makes a Breach in their Veſſel, only one part of the Boat is fill'd, and the others are dry, and defend them till they can mend the Hole in the other. To moderete the Rapidity of the Motion, in Places where the Water is not too deep, they thruſt a long Pole to the Bottom, which by continual rubbing ſlackens the Motion of the Bark ſo much, that when the Torrent is even and uniform, you float as ſlowly as upon the calmeſt Channel, but when it winds in and out, they have Recourſe to a double Rudder, made in the Faſhion of an Oar, 40 or 50 Foot long, which the Mariners manage with ſuch Skill and Dexterity to drive it on, or turn it right as they would have it, to fall juſt into the Stream, to ſhun one Rock without daſhing upon another, to cut a Current, or purſue the Fall of the Water without running headlong into it; ſo that if they chance to be caſt away at any time, it is not for want of Skill or Care, but Strength.

Their Barks.

Their Art in ſailing in rapid Torrents.

The Matter and Form of their Barks.

In Fiſhing, beſides the ordinary Inſtruments, as Lines, Nets, and the like, which we uſe in *Europe*, they have 2 Ways of catching Fiſh, which are very ſingular and odd. 1. By Night when the Moon ſhines: They have 2 very long and ſtrait Boats, upon which they nail from one End to the other a Board about 2 Foot broad, varniſh'd, very ſmooth and ſhining. It inclines outward, and toucheth the Surface of the Water. They turn it to the Moon-ſhine, that by its Light it may encreaſe its Brightneſs. The Fiſh playing, and miſtaking the Colour of the Plank for that of the Water, jerk out that Way, and tumble before they are aware, either upon the Plank or upon the Boat; ſo that the Fiſher-men, almoſt without taking any Pains, fill a ſmall Bark with Fiſh in a little time.

Their Way of Fiſhing.

2. The other way of Fiſhing is more pleaſant. They breed in divers Provinces Cormorants, which they order and manage as we do Dogs or Hawks for Game. One Fiſher-man will eaſily look after 100 of them. He keeps them perch'd upon the Sides of his Boat, till he come to the Place of Fiſhing, and then, according to his Order, each takes his Flight the Way that is aſſigned it, dividing to themſelves all the River or Lake. They ſeek up and down; they dive, and come and go upon the Water 100 times, till they have found their Prey, which they immediately ſeize and carry to their Maſter. When the Fiſh is too big, they'll help one another, one taking the Head, and another the Tail, to bring it to the Boat. The Men hold out long Oars to them for them to perch on, and when they have deliver'd their Prey, they go and ſeek for more. When they are weary they let them reſt a while, but give them nothing to eat till they have done Fiſhing, leſt having filled their Bellies, they ſhould leave their Work, and to that End they tie their Throats with a ſmall Cord, that they may not ſwallow the little Fiſhes.

Fiſhing with Cormorants, and how managed.

Their Manufacture and Architecture.

Their Manufactures of Silk are neat and ſerviceable, their *China* Ware inimitable, their Varniſh on their Tables, Skreens and Cabinets is admirable; their Architecture, tho' we imagine our ſelves to have arrived at a greater Perfection in the kind, yet is not to be contemned. They have ſome Pieces of Sculpture perfectly well wrought; and the publick Buildings, as Gates of their great Cities, Towers, Bridges, have ſomething in them great and beautiful. In fine, the *Chineſe*, in reſpect of Arts, are dexterous, laborious and curious to find out the Invention and Contrivances of other Nations, and apt to imitate them, and what is peculiar to them, they perform that with few Tools, that ours do with many.

The Ingenuity of the *Chineſe* in Trade.

Their Ingenuity appears many ways: There is no Nation under the Sun more fit for Commerce and Traffick, nor underſtand them better. One can hardly believe what Tricks and Craft they will uſe to inſinuate into Mens Favour, and how wiſely they'll manage a fair Opportunity, and improve an advantagious Overture. Their Deſire of Gaining torments them continually, and makes them diſcover a Thouſand Ways of Gaining, that would not naturally come into their Heads. Every thing ſerves their Turn, becauſe they know how ſome Way or other to improve it. They'll undertake the moſt difficult Voyages for the leaſt Hopes of Gain, which makes them ſo full of Motion, both by Sea and Land, to carry on Trade and Commerce, which is the Soul of the whole People, and the *Primum Mobile* of all their Actions. If Honeſty did accompany their Diligence, they would be able and compleat Merchants; but it is a natural Quality to them to cheat and cozen where they can, and when they have done they'll boaſt of it, if ſucceſsful; but if they are diſappointed, they'll call it their Weakneſs, not Fault. They falſifie all Things they vend, if it be capable of it, and particularly they'll counterfeit Gammons of Bacon ſo exactly, that if you be not very careful, you will buy Wood inſtead of Fleſh. A Stranger will be always cheated if he buys alone, and if he employs a *Chineſe*, he will be in Danger of a Conſpiracy between the Buyer and Seller to chouſe him. When one lends them, he muſt have Sureties, for their Word is not to be truſted to. Some of them have been obſerv'd to borrow ſmall Sums at vaſt Intereſt, and pay them punctually, till they have got the Reputation of honeſt Men, and Credit enough to borrow very large ones, and then they have diſappeared for ever. When they would obtain a Favour, they'll make way for themſelves whole Years before by Preſents to all the Houſhold of the Perſon of whom they ſeek it, and when they have ſo order'd it, that it will ſeem ungrateful to deny them, then they ſhew their Deſign, and get themſelves well paid for their Toys. This Subtilty is more extraordinary in Thieves and Robbers, who will break thro' the thickeſt Walls, burn Gates without any Flames, by a certain Engine, and penetrate into the moſt private Receſſes without being perceived; ſo that when People awake in a Morning, they are amazed to find their Beds without Curtains and Coverlets, their Chambers unfurniſh'd, their Tables, Cabinets, Coffers and Plate gone, without any Footſteps of Thieves, except an Hole in the Wall or Gate. If theſe Men are taken arm'd, they ſuffer Death, but if they are found with no Weapons to kill or wound any Man, they

Their Cheating.

Their Theft.

How puniſhed.

ant. Fishing with Common Nets, and how managed.
ich
for
oo
s of
and
ght
all
ney
nes,
edi-
the
ing
to
em
er'd
ney
em
ing
ork,
a
tle

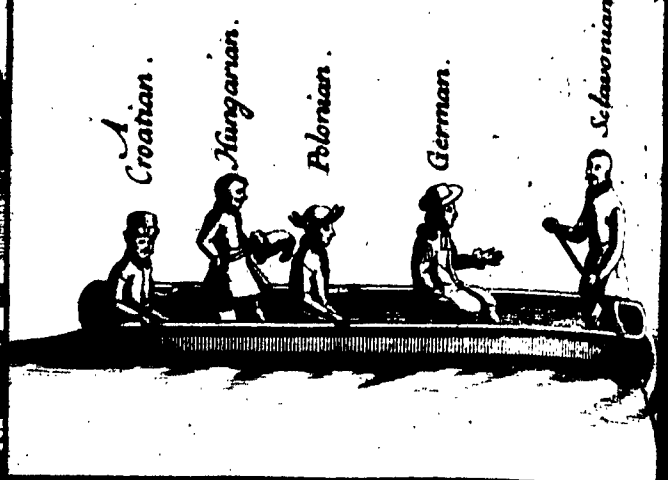
ice- Their Manufacture and Architecture.
on
ble;
to
t is
ilp-
ild-
ges,
ine,
ori-
tri-
em,
ith

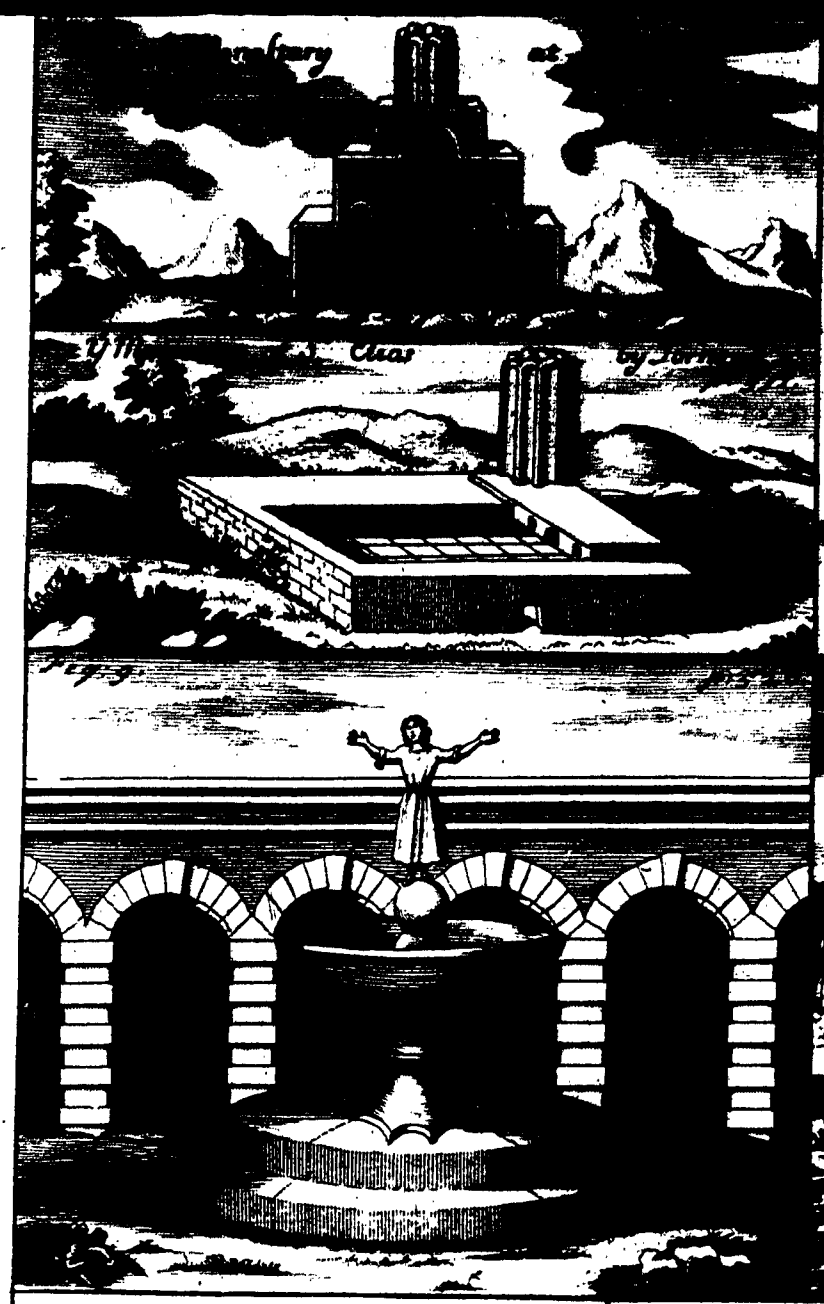
e is The Ingenuity of the Chinese in Trade.
and
dly
nate
fair
are.
lly,
ain-
ds.
ow
un-
pes
oth
ce,
the
did
and
to Their
nen Cheating.
but
eſs,
f it
feit
not
ſh.
ne,
of
uſe
ies,
em
In-
got
gh
dif-
Fa-
ars
ſon
er'd
nen
aid
ary Their
the
by
ate
pen
ind
eir
Cof-
res,
len How they are made.
lan,
hey

A Boate cut out of one tree much used in Hungaria Carniola. Sclavonia &c. ordinarily about 18 foot long two and an halfe broad on and halfe deepe

Fig: 8.

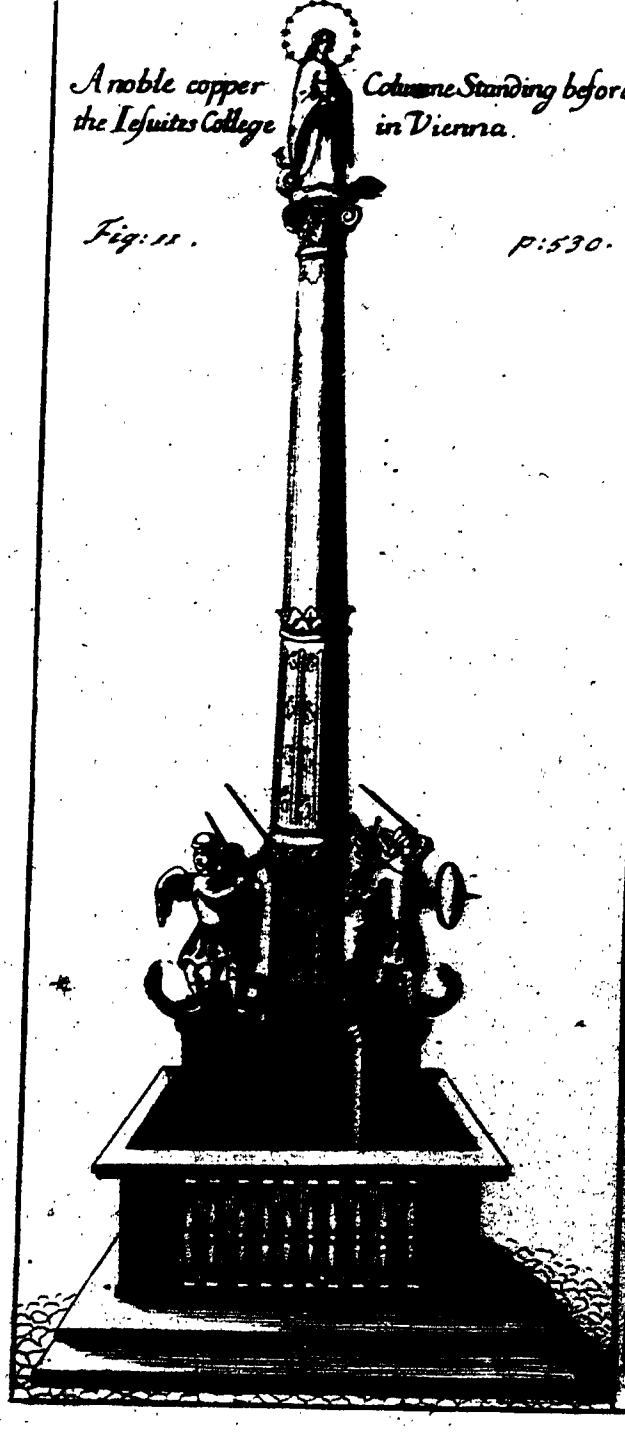
p: 5





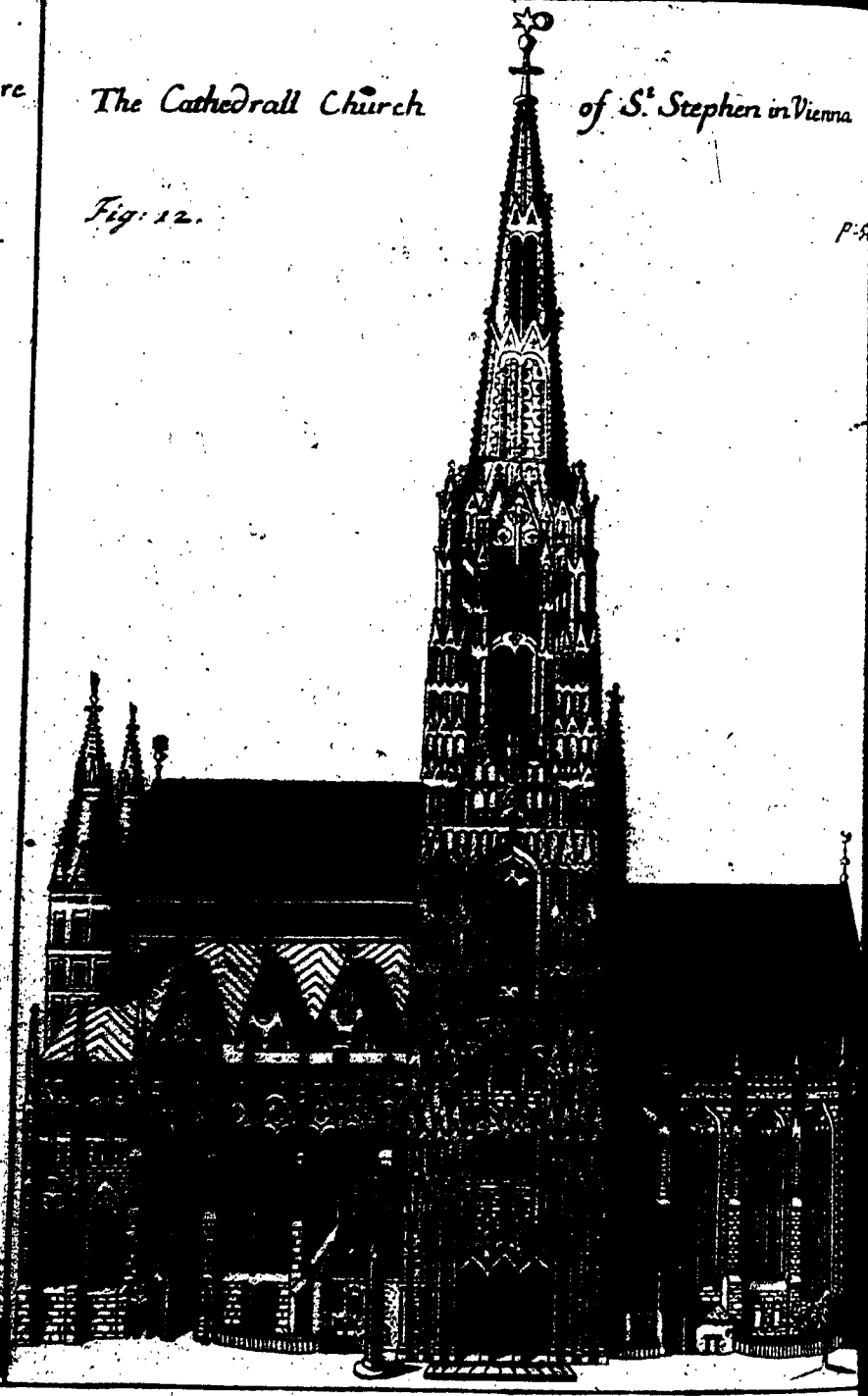
A noble copper Columne Standing before the Iesuites College in Vienna.

Fig: 11. p: 530.



The Cathedrall Church of S.t Stephen in Vienna

Fig: 12. p: 5



they are punished with some Bodily Torture, according to the Nature of the Crime; but if they have taken nothing, the Judges satisfie themselves with giving them 30 or 40 Blows with a Cudgel. They say, these Felons have a Drug, the Fumes of which casts into a deep Sleep, and so gives them an Opportunity to do that Business; and Travellers use a Basin of Water, as an effectual Remedy against the Power of it, which they set in their Chambers in the Inns where they lodge. Not but that you may meet with some *Chinese*, who are honest fair dealing Men, but they are very rare, so that a true Character of the *Chinese* must not be taken from them.

Their Politicks.

But as they have a Genius for Commerce, so also for Affairs of State; their Wit has been a long time engaged in Politicks, and negociating of Affairs, not with Foreigners, with whom they are forbidden Correspondence, as Barbarians, but among themselves, with the Princes and Grandees of the Realm. They continually apply themselves to know the Gusto, Inclinations, Humours and Designs one of another. They keep a fair Correspondence with every Body, and observe a *Decorum* to their Enemies. Duelling is forbidden, and therefore they have many Shifts and Contrivances to ruin one another privately; and to that end will not only dissemble, but seem patient even to Insensibleness, till they can meet with a favourable Opportunity to strike home; and yet they are as cautious of entertaining too close Friendship, lest it should engage them upon any unlucky Adventure, and for that Reason will often huff their best Friends.

Duelling forbidden.

The Lords of the Court, the Vice-Roys of Provinces, and Generals of Armies are in perpetual Motion to preserve or acquire the principal Places of the State, which Business they carry on with Money, Favour and Intrigue; and since the Law gives nothing to the Solicitation, Ambition or Riches of private Persons, but solely to Merit, the most subtle seem always most moderate, whilst in the mean time by an Hundred hidden Springs they endeavour to get the Choice and Esteem of the Emperor. In fine, had the *Chinese* accustom'd themselves to enter into Treaties with their more potent Neighbours, as the Nations in *Europe* do, 'tis probable that that Policy and Negociation would have proved more powerful to have kept them out of the Hands of the *Tartars*, than their prodigious Wall, and so they had preserv'd themselves from that Barbarity, which makes their Character no better at present, and far short of what anciently they deserv'd.

Their Ambition.

LETTER IX.

Written to the Cardinal d'Estrees; *Of the Policy, and Government of the* Chinese.

FAther *Le Comte* having singled out the most exact Politician in the *French* Court, gives him this Account of the Government of it, saying:

Among the Models and Plans of Government which the Ancients have fram'd, none is so perfect and exact as the *Chinese* Monarchy, which the ancient Lawgivers fram'd at first very little different from what it now is, after 4000 Years. They never heard of the Name of a Republick, till the *Dutch* brought them News of it, and they still wonder how a State can regularly be governed without a King. They look upon a Republick to be a Monster with many Heads, form'd by the Ambition and Headiness of Men in the Times of publick Confusion. Nor is their Aversion greater to a Commonwealth than to Tyranny and Oppression, which, they say, proceeds not so much from the Absoluteness of his Power, as the Prince's Wildness.

Their Government form'd perfectly.

Their Laws allow their Emperor an unbounded Authority, but laying upon him a necessary Obligation to use his Power with Moderation and Discretion, have provided sufficiently for the Preservation of the *Chinese* Monarchy. The People respect their Prince with so high a Veneration, as almost to adore him. They stile him, *The Son of Heaven*, and, *The only Master of the World*. His Commands are indisputable, and his Words Oracles; yea, every thing that comes from him is sacred. He is seldom seen, and never spoken to, but on the Knees. The Grandees of the Court, Princes of the Blood, yea, his own Brothers bowe down to the Ground to him, not only in his Presence, but before his Throne; and there are certain Days in every Week when the Nobility meet together in one of the Courts of the Palace to acknowledge his Authority by the most submissive Adoration. When he is ill, especially dangerously, the Palace is full of *Mandarins* of every Order, who both in Habit and Gesture express their Grief, and beg his Recovery of Heaven. Rain, Snow, Cold, and any Inconveniences, cannot keep them from doing this Duty; and so long as he is ill, all behave themselves so, as if they fear'd nothing but the Loss of him. Interest is no small Reason for this Respect, for as soon as he is proclaim'd, all the Authority of the Empire is in his Hands: For,

Their Emperor's Power.

The Honour paid him.

1. All Places in the Empire are disposed of by him, and he gives them to whom he pleases. None are sold, but Merit, *i.e.* Honesty, Learning, long Experience, but especially a grave and sober Behaviour, are the only Things can lay Claim to his Favour. If any Person manages them ill, he dismisses or changes them without more ado. A Peccadillo will serve to do it sometimes, *viz.* Too light a Garb, an underhand Bribe, or minding their Pleasures too much, as many Instances daily prove.

2. Nor has he greater Power over their Offices than Lives. No Vice-Roy or Parliament, or any other Sovereign Court throughout the whole Empire can execute any Criminal without express Order from the Court. They are arraign'd and try'd up and down in the several Provinces, but the Sentence is always presented to the Emperor, who either confirms or rejects it as he pleaseth. Most an end, indeed, he agrees to it, but he very often cuts off part of the Sentence, and makes it less rigorous.

He only passes Sentence of Death.

3. Altho' every Man be perfect Master of his Estate, and enjoys his Lands without Molestation, nevertheless, the Emperor can lay what Taxes he thinks fit upon his Subjects to supply the pressing Wants, and relieve the Necessities of the State, but he rarely makes use of it to go beyond the ordinary Taxes. They have likewise a Custom every Year to exempt one or two Provinces from bearing their Proportion in the Tax, especially if they have suffer'd thro' Sickness, or their Lands by unseasonable Weather have not produced their usual Encrease. It is true, that the Laws allow the Emperor such considerable Revenues, that were not the *Chinese* very industrious, and their Lands fruitful, they must be miserably poor, as the other *Indian* Kingdoms are. By this Income he is able at an Hour's Warning to raise a potent and numerous Army to keep his People in Obedience. It is very difficult to reckon what the Revenues of the Empire amount to, because vast Sums are paid in Goods as well as Money; but the nearest Conjecture that can be given of them is, that they altogether amount to 21600000 *l.* at least.

He rates Men's Estates as he pleaseth.

The Emperor's Revenue.

4. The Emperor has the sole Right of making Peace and War. He may make Treaties on what Condition he pleaseth, provided they be not dishonourable to the Kingdom. As for the Judgments which he himself passeth, they are irrevocable, and to have them executed he need only to send them to his Sovereign Courts and Vice-Roys, who dare not in the least delay to register and publish them; whereas the Sentences pronounced by the Parliaments and Vice-Roys, are no way obligatory, till they are confirmed and approved by the Emperor.

He makes Peace and War only.

5. He may make choice of his Successor, not only from the Royal Family, but from among his other Subjects. This ancient Right hath heretofore been put in Practice with great Impartiality and Wisdom; for

He appoints his Successor.

for ſome of their Emperors finding none of their Family, tho' numerous, able to ſupport the Weight of a Crown, have choſen for their Succeſſors Perſons mean as their Birth and Fortunes, but eminent for their Vertue, and admirable for their Underſtanding, ſaying, *That they thus acted not only for the Good of their Kingdom, but for the Honour and Credit of their own Children, for whom it is more glorious to live privately, than to ſit upon the Throne, expoſed to the Cenſure and oftentimes to the Curſes of all the People.* But ſuch Examples are rare, and the Emperors of late for many Ages have bounded their Choice within their Families, but have not always choſen the Eldeſt Son. He who now reigns with ſo much Wiſdom, was a younger Brother, and ſees his elder Brother as dutiful and free from Ambition as the meaneſt of his Subjects, for the great Number of Princes of the Blood, which creates Fears and Jealouſies in *Europe*, in *China* breeds no Confuſion nor Diſorder, by reaſon of the exceſſive Authority of the Emperor. Further, when the Emperor has made choice of his Succeſſor, and publickly declared him, he may afterward exclude him and renew his Choice, if there be good Reaſon for his ſo doing, and the Sovereign Courts of *Pekin* conſent to it.

Not the eldeſt Son.

He honours or diſgraces the Dead.

6. The Grave puts no End to his Power over his Subjects, but he exerciſes his Authority over the Dead, for he either diſgraces, or honours them, as much as if they were alive, when he has a Mind to reward or puniſh them or their Families. He makes them Dukes and Counts after their Deceaſe; nay, as they ſay, he can make them naked Spirits, or as we ſay, Canonize them. Sometimes he builds them Temples, and if their Miniſtry hath been very beneficial, and Vertues eminent, he commands the People to honour them as Gods. This Authority ſeems to be an Abuſe of Religion, but then the Emperor ſeems to make Reparation for it, when he looks upon himſelf as the Chief Prieſt and principal Servant of Religion, becauſe there are ſome Ceremonies and principal Sacrifices which he alone is thought worthy to offer up to the Creator of Heaven.

He may change the Character of their Letters.

7. The Emperor hath Power to change the Figure and Character of their Letters, and aboliſh any Characters already received, and to form any new ones. He may alſo change the Names of Provinces, Cities and Families. He may likewiſe forbid the Uſe of any Expreſſions and Words generally received, and introduce obſolete Ways of Speaking, in Diſcourſe and Writing. One would think, this illimited Power in the Emperor ſhould occaſion unfortunate Events in the Government, as indeed it hath, but the Laws have made ſuch wiſe Proviſions againſt them, that a Prince muſt be very inſenſible of his Reputation, as well as Intereſt, that ſhall long continue in ſuch Abuſes of his Authority. For,

The Father of his People.

1. The old Law-givers have made this a ſtanding Maxim of Government, That Kings are properly the Fathers of the People, and not Maſters placed on the Throne to be ſerved by Slaves; and this Maxim is deeply impreſs'd upon the Minds of his People, being always inculcated into them by their Teachers and Philoſophers; ſo that the Emperor is obliged to ſhew himſelf pleaſed moſt with this Title, and if he neglects this Maxim, tho' he may be an able Warrior or Politician, he ſhall have no Eſteem from his People.

The *Mandarins* to adviſe him.

2. Every *Mandarin* may tell the Emperor of his Faults, provided he do it with due Submiſſion and Reſpect, and if he does not thereupon amend his Conduct, he is to be put in mind of them again and again, how much he deviates from the ancient Laws and the good Examples of his Predeceſſors; and tho', indeed, many who have attempted ſo good a Work have ſuffer'd much, being turn'd out of their Buſineſs and all Favour with the Emperor, yet their Hiſtories ſhew, that no Means has been found ſo effectual to oblige their Emperors to return to their Duty as this:

His Actions are remarked.

3. If a Prince has any Regard for his Reputation, the Manner of writing their Hiſtories is alone ſufficient to keep them within Bounds. A certain Number of their moſt learned and impartial Men are choſen for this Affair, who remark with all the Exactneſs poſſible not only the Prince's Actions, but Words, and that each of them by themſelves, without communicating one with another. As Things fall out they ſet them down in a looſe Paper, and put them thro' a Chink into an Office erected on purpoſe. In theſe Papers the Emperor's Vertues and Vices are ſet down with equal Impartiality and Liberty. And that neither Hopes nor Fears may byaſs them, the Office is never open'd in the Prince's Life, nor while any of his Family ſit on the Throne. When the Crown goes to another Line, which often happens, all theſe Memoirs are gathered together, and compared, and out of them ſuch an Hiſtory is compoſed, as ſhall render him an Example to Poſterity, if he has acted wiſely, or a common *Odium* that he has neglected his own Duty, or the Peoples Good; ſo that if a Prince be deſirous of Honour, he will be circumſpect how he behaves himſelf. Nor is Intereſt a leſs Motive than Reputation to the Emperor to be guided by the ancient Cuſtoms, and adhere to the Laws; for they are framed ſo much for his Advantage, that he cannot violate them without ſome Prejudice to his Authority, nor alter them without bringing his Kingdom into Confuſion; for ſuch is the Temper of the *Chineſe*, that when their Emperor is full of Violence and Paſſion, and negligent of his Charge, the ſame perverſe Spirit poſſeſſes his Subjects. Every *Mandarin* thinks himſelf Sovereign of his Province or City: The chief Miniſters ſell Places to thoſe that are unfit: The Vice-Roys become ſo many little Tyrants: The Governours obſerve no Rules of Juſtice, and the People by this means being oppreſſed are raſily ſtirr'd up to Sedition. Rogues multiply, and commit Inſolencies in Companies, waiting for an Opportunity to break the Peace. Such Beginnings have occaſion'd fatal Conſequences, and put *China* under the Command of new Maſters; ſo that the ſureſt way to eſtabliſh himſelf on his Throne, is, that the Emperor give an exact Regard and entire Obedience to their Laws.

'Tis his Intereſt to obſerve the Laws.

The ordinary Form of Government which the Law preſcribes is this: The Emperor hath 2 Sovereign Councils, the one is called, *The Extraordinary Council*, and is made up of the Princes of the Blood only: The other is called, *The Council in Ordinary*, and has beſides the Princes ſeveral Miniſters of State, named *Colaos*, admitted to it. Theſe examine all Affairs of State, and make a Report of them to the Emperor, from whom they have their final Determination.

The chief Form of Government.

The *Colaos*.

At *Pekin* there are 6 Sovereign Courts, whoſe Authority extends all over *China*, each of them having different Matters aſſign'd to them. The Names are theſe: 1. *Lipou*, which preſides over the *Mandarins*, and gives or takes away their Offices. 2. *Houpou*, which looks after the Treaſury, and takes care of raiſing the Taxes. 3. *Lipou*, which is to look after the ancient Cuſtoms, to take care of Religion, Sciences, Arts, and Foreign Affairs. 4. The *Pimpou* has Charge of the Soldiery and its Officers. 5. The *Himpou* takes Cognizance of all Criminals. 6. The *Compou* looks after the Publick Buildings, and all the Emperor's Houſes and Palaces. Each of theſe Courts are divided into ſeveral Offices, and ſome into 15. The principal Office is managed by the Preſident, and 2 Aſſiſtants, who inſpect all Things that belong to that Court. The reſt are Under-Offices, and conſiſt of a Preſident and ſeveral Chancellors, who are ſubject to the Preſident of the principal Office, from whom there is no Appeal. But leſt ſuch conſiderable Bodies ſhould weaken the Emperor's Authority, or enterprize any thing againſt the State, therefore Care is taken, that tho' each Court has its particular Charge, yet no conſiderable Thing can be brought to Perfection but by the joint Concurrence of all; ſo that ſcarce any thing of Moment to the State can be tranſacted without the Inſpection of moſt of the *Mandarins*. Beſides, the Emperor places an Officer in each of theſe Courts, who is to have an Eye to all their Proceedings. He either privately adverti'ſes the Court, or elſe openly accuſes the *Mandarins* of the Faults they have committed in their private Capacities, as well as in their Offices. He obſerves their Actions, Behaviour and Words, ſo that nothing eſcapes their Notice, and the Princes of the Blood ſtand in awe of them. They are called *Colo*, and ſo immovably fix'd in their Places, that neither Hopes of getting a better, or loſing it, can tempt them to be partial.

The Six Sovereign Courts.

The Preſident and Aſſiſtants.

The *Colo* Office.

The Provinces are under the Inſpection of 2 Sorts of Vice-Roys; one has only the Government of one Province, as *Pekin*, &c. The other, who is called *Tſounto*, preſides over more; ſometimes 2 or 3, ſometimes 4. Each of theſe Great Officers have their Rights ſo well ſettled and adjuſted, that they never claſh and contend with each other in their Adminiſtrations. Theſe all of them have many Courts in their

The Vice-Roys.

their ſeveral Lordſhips, like thoſe of *Pekin*, but ſubordinate to them; ſo that from theſe they appeal to them. There are ſeveral other inferior Officers for preparing or finiſhing Buſineſs, according to the Extent of their Commiſſions.

Governours of Towns.

There are 3 ſorts of Towns, which have each their particular Governours, and a great Number of *Mandarins* that adminiſter Juſtice, and of theſe the 3d ſort are ſubordinate to the 2d, and the 2d to the 1ſt, who are ſubject to the Juriſdiction of the General-Officers of the Capital Cities, as all the Judges are to the Vice-Roys, in whom reſides the Imperial Authority. They from time to time convene the Principal *Mandarins*, of their Province and having examined them about the good or bad Qualities of the Governours, Lieutenants, and other Officers, ſend private Diſpatches to Court to inform the Emperor, who misbehave themſelves, and thereupon they are either deprived of their Offices, or ſummoned to juſtifie themſelves.

The Great *Mandarins*.

On the other ſide, the Vice-Roy's Power is counterpoiſed by the Great *Mandarins*, who are about him, and may accuſe him when they pleaſe for the publick Good. Further, the People, when miſuſed or preſs'd, may petition the Emperor in Perſon againſt him; but becauſe private Perſons find it difficult to bring their Complaints to Court, and reach their Prince's Ear, the Emperor formerly diperſed up and down ſecret Spies, Perſons of known Wiſdom and Reputation, to inform themſelves how the *Mandarins* behav'd themſelves in the Execution of their Offices, and take them up by his Commiſſion. This kept the Judges mightily to their Duties, till the *Tartars* became Maſters of *China*, who laid theſe Officers aſide, becauſe they took Bribes, and enrich'd themſelves by the Guilty to conceal their Crimes, and by the Innocent, whom they threatned to accuſe as Criminals. Nevertheleſs, that ſuch good Means of keeping the Magiſtrates in awe might not quite be loſt, the Emperor himſelf, out of a tender Love to his Subjects, thinks it his Duty to viſit every Province in Perſon, and hear the Complaints of his People, which he performs with ſo much Diligence, as to be a Terror to the *Mandarins*, and the Delight of his People. Another Means to oblige the Vice-Roys and Governours to take a ſtrict Care of their Charge is this: Every Governour is obliged from time to time, with all Humility and Sincerity, to own and acknowledge the ſecret, or publick Faults, which he has committed in his Adminiſtration, and ſend them up to Court in Writing. 'Tis, indeed, difficult to bring a Man to accuſe himſelf, eſpecially knowing, that he ſhall be puniſh'd, tho' mildly, by the Emperor; but it being very hazardous to diſſemble their Crimes, leſt the Emperor ſhould be advertiſed of them by the Inſpector, their beſt Way is to confeſs their Faults ſincerely, and purchaſe Pardon with Money, which in *China* hath a Vertue to blot out all Crimes; but the Fear even of this Puniſhment makes them exceeding cautious and wary, and ſometimes even vertuous beyond their Inclinations.

The Emperor viſits the Provinces.

Officers muſt confeſs their Faults.

Magiſtrates may puniſh without Trial.

In puniſhing of Criminals, the Law gives theſe Directions following: Where-ever the Magiſtrate ſees a Fault, there is no need of ſending a Warrant to bring the Offender before him, and hear the Accuſation or Plea of the Criminal, but he has Power to puniſh it on the Spot, whether it be in the Street, High-way, or a private Houſe. He may take up a Gameſter, Rook or Debauchee, and without any Formality order any of his Followers to give him 20 or 30 Stripes, and ſo proceed on his Journey without Concern; but the Perſon wrong'd may, notwithſtanding this Puniſhment, accuſe the Criminal in a ſuperior Court, and have him farther puniſh'd. A Plantiff in common Caſes may bring his Action in an higher Magiſtrate's Court, before it has been pleaded in his own Town or Province; and the inferior Magiſtrates may not take Cognizance of it, unleſs it be deputed to him, as it often is. When a Cauſe is of great Conſequence, there lies an Appeal from the Vice-Roy to one of the Supreme Courts at *Pekin*, where the Cauſe being examined by ſome Under-Officers, is reported to the Preſident, who having adviſed with his Aſſiſtants gives Sentence, which the *Calaos* carries to the Emperor. Sometimes the Emperor deſires better Information, and ſometimes gives Sentence immediately, which being, in his Name, tranſmitted to the ſupreme Court, the Vice-Roys are order'd to put it in Execution. A Sentence pronounced in this manner is irrevocable, and is therefore called, *The Holy Commandment*, becauſe 'tis ſuppoſed to be without Defect or Partiality. Indeed, it is almoſt an unconceivable Thing, that one Prince ſhould be able to examine the Affairs of ſo vaſt an Empire as *China* is; but beſides he ſpends no Time in Wars and Negociations, the Laws are ſo plain, and all Affairs are ſo well digeſted, that he can with half an Eye ſee to which Party the Sentence ought to encline.

Appeals.

The chief Rules of Government.

There are 3 Things, which conduce exceedingly to the Publick, and are, as it were, the Soul of the Government of *China*: 1. The Moral Principles which are inſtill'd into the People. 2. The Political Rules, which are ſet up in every thing. 3. The Maxims of good Policy, which are, or ought to be every where obſerv'd. The firſt moral Principles reſpects private Families, and enjoins Children ſuch a Love, Obedience and Reſpect for their Parents, that neither the Severity of their Uſage, nor Impertinency of their Age, nor Meanneſs of their Rank, when Children have met with Preferment, can ever efface it. There is no Point of Obedience which Parents cannot command, or Children can refuſe. They are obliged to comfort them when alive, and continually to bewail them when dead. They proſtrate themſelves a Thouſand times before their dead Bodies, and offer them Proviſions, as if they were alive. They bury them with Pomp and Expence almoſt extravagant, and pay conſtantly at their Tombs a Tribute of Tears. They keep their Pictures in their Houſes with all imaginable Care, and honour them with Offerings. The Kings themſelves are not excuſed from this Duty, and the preſent Emperor has made himſelf eminent for his Devotion at the Tomb of *Tchoumtchin*. The ordinary Time of Mourning is 3 Years, and in that Term the Mourner may not exerciſe any publick Office; ſo that the *Mandarins* and Miniſters of State are forced to quit their Places, and ſpend their Time in Grief. And as Parents are honour'd after their Death as Gods, ſo while alive they are obey'd in their Families like Princes. A Father is an abſolute Maſter not only of his Eſtate, but Concubines and Children, ſo that he can diſpoſe of them as he pleaſes: He may ſell them to Strangers. If a Father accuſes a Son of any Crime, there needs no Proof; he muſt be puniſh'd even with Death, if the Crime deſerves it, and the Father hold to his Accuſation. 'Tis in vain to urge to them, that Parents may have Antipathies againſt their Children; for they anſwer, The Love of Children is ſo deeply printed on the Hearts of Parents, that no Antipathy or Diſlike can raſe it out, unleſs they be provok'd and inflam'd by the Stubbornneſs and Diſorders of Children. If a Son mock his Parents, or lay violent Hands on them, the whole Empire is alarm'd. The Emperor himſelf judges the Criminal; the *Mandarins* of the Town are turn'd out, the Neighbours are reprimanded for not curbing the Iniquity of this Diabolical Temper in the Beginning, and the Criminal is chopt into a Thouſand Pieces, and burnt. His Houſe is laid even with the Ground, and all that ſtood near it, as Monuments of ſo horrible a Wickedneſs. The Emperors themſelves cannot reject the Authority of their Parents, without being in Danger to ſuffer for it. One of the Emperors baniſh'd his Mother for managing a private Intreague with one of the Lords of the Court; and becauſe he knew the Action was obnoxious to the Reproof of his Princes and Mandarins, he forbad them all, under Pain of Death, to admoniſh him of it. They were ſilent for a long time, hoping he would condemn himſelf for his Conduct, but ſeeing he did not, they reſolv'd to appear in it. Three ſucceſſively undertook it, and were put to Death with greater Tortures the latter than the former; but at length their Heroick Conſtancy ſo gain'd upon him, that he repented that he, who was the Father of his Country, had ſo barbarouſly put to Death his Children, and being troubled for the Miſuſage of his Mother, recall'd her home, and reſtored her to her former Dignity, being the more honour'd of his Subjects for honouring her.

Obedience to Parents.

Time of Mourning.

Diſobedience of Parents how puniſh'd.

Reprove ſin the Emperor.

The 2d moral Principle which obtains among them, is, To honour the *Mandarins* as the Emperor himſelf, whoſe Perſon the *Mandarins* repreſent. To uphold this Reſpect, the *Mandarins* never appear in Publick without a Retinue and a Shew of Grandeur which commands Reverence. They are carried in a magnificent Chair open, and all the Officers of the Court go before them, and round about them are carried all their Marks and Badges of their Dignity. The People, where-ever they come, open to the Right and Left to let them paſs. When they adminiſter

To honour the *Mandarins*.

niſter Juſtice in their Palaces, no Body ſpeaks to them but on their Knees, be they of what Quality they will; and ſince they can command any Man to be whipp'd, no one comes near them but with Trembling. When any *Mandarin* journeys, all the Inhabitants of the Town croud to meet him, and conduct him thro' their Territories. When he leaves his Office, if he has managed it to Satisfaction, all the Inhabitants go into the High-ways by which he muſt go at his Departure, and place themſelves here and there for 14 or 15 Miles together, with Tables ſpread with Satin Table-Cloths, and cover'd with Sweet-Meats, Tea, and other Liquors. Every one conſtrains him to ſtay with them and eat and drink ſomething, and when he leaves them, they take ſomething from him as a Memorial; ſome get his Boots, others his Cap, and others his great Coat, but they give him another of the ſame ſort; and ſo it happens that he has 30 ſeveral ones before he can get away. All the while the People follow him with Applauſes and Acclamations, calling him the Benefactor, Preſerver and Father of his People, and at laſt part with him with Tears. But if the People are not pleaſed with his Adminiſtration, they are not obliged to ſhew him this Reſpect, but they diſmiſs him with much Indifference. This extraordinary Reſpect ſhew'd to Parents and Governours is the beſt Means of preſerving Quiet in Families, and Peace in Publick.

That all be Brothers and Civil.

The 3d Rule of Morality eſtabliſhed among them is: That all People do obſerve the ſtricteſt Rules of Modeſty and Civility, and that all their Behaviour have a Mixture of Sweetneſs and Courteſie in it. This (they ſay) is it which differs a Man from a Beaſt, and a *Chineſe* from other Men, and that the Diſturbances of Nations are owing to the Neglect of ſuch good Breeding; for Rudeneſs begets a rough Temper ever diſpoſed to Quarrels, but Civility diſpoſes to Friendſhip and bearing Injuries. The *Chineſe* are exact Practiſers of it. Tradeſmen, Seamen, Servants and Country-Men treat one another with ſuch Kindneſs and Civility, as if they were the greateſt Friends. The State accounting this Behaviour conducive to publick Quiet, have appointed Forms of Salutations, Viſiting, making Entertainments, and writing Letters. The uſual Form of Salutation is to lay your Hand a-croſs your Breaſt, and bowe your Head a little, but when you would ſhew a greater Reſpect, you muſt join your Hands together, and carry them almoſt to the Ground, bowing your whole Body. If a Perſon of eminent Quality paſs by one, or is entertained in your Houſe, you muſt bend one Knee, and ſo remain till he takes you up, which he never fails to do immediately. When a *Mandarin* appears in Publick, 'tis Saucineſs to ſalute him, unleſs you have Occaſion to ſpeak to him; but you muſt ſtep aſide, and holding down your Eyes, and your Arms a-croſs, ſo remain till he paſſes by.

Forms of Salutations, &c. ordered by Law.

Their Manner of Viſiting.

Familiar Acquaintance viſit without any Ceremony, but others have ſet Forms of Viſiting. The Viſiter ſends his Servant before with a Piece of Red Paper, on which is written his own, and the Perſon's Name whom he viſits, with ſome Titles of Reſpect to him, according to his Quality. When this Meſſage is receiv'd, the Viſiter comes in, and meets with a Reception according to his Dignity and Merit; ſometimes in the Hall, ſometimes at the Door, ſometimes in the Court-yard, and ſometimes in the Street: When they come in View, they make a low Bowe to each other, and compliment one another in Form: At every Gate they bowe, and ſeek to put each other firſt, but the Strangers ſuffers himſelf to be perſwaded. When they come into the Room where they are to ſtay, they fall to the Ceremonies of Bowing, Kneeling, giving the Right Hand, ſaluting the Chairs, and contending for the firſt Place. Theſe Compliments laſt a Quarter of an Hour, but without Confuſion, becauſe every one knows what they are to do. They always ſit oppoſite one to another, ſtrait up, their Eyes caſt downward, their Hands ſtretch'd on their Knees, and their Feet even with a ſquare and compoſed Behaviour: They have little Diſcourſe at their Viſits, and ſometimes none; ſo that it may be ſaid, they come to pay their Reſpects: Their Speech is very ſubmiſſive and humble: During the Viſit, the Tea goes round 2 or 3 times, and you muſt uſe a Ceremony when you take it, drink it, and return the Diſh to the Servant. When you depart, you repeat the Ceremonies uſed at coming in. Strangers make great Blunders at their Viſits; and Ambaſſadors have

Their Manner of Sitting.

40 Days to learn them, and a Maſter of the Ceremonies to teach them. Their Feaſts are ceremonious beyond Expreſſion. They have an Officer that beats Time, that the Gueſts may all together in Concord take and eat their Meat. Every Gueſt has a Table to himſelf, without Cloth, Napkin, Knife or Spoon; for all Things are cut ready to their Hands, and they feed themſelves with 2 little Inſtruments, like our Forks. They begin their Feaſts with a Cup of Wine, which is given to every Gueſt, and drank by them at one and the ſame time; but if you hold the Cup to your Mouth, they regard not whether you drink or no. After the Cup comes a *Ragoos*, or Diſh of haſh'd Meat. The Gueſts obſerve the Actions of the Maſter of the Feaſt, and as he manages his Wooden Inſtruments (which he does 20 Ways) ſo do they, and ſo eat and end together. After this comes the Wine again, and then another Meſs, and ſo they bring on 20 ſeveral Meſſes, and Wine between every one with the ſame Ceremonies. The laſt Meſs is Rice, Bread, or Broaths, made of Fleſh or Fiſh, and the Gueſts eat more freely of this, becauſe no Drink comes after it. Their Cups are little, and Wine ſmall. They ſit at the Table ſerious, grave and ſilent 3 or 4 Hours together, and when they have done eating, the Maſter of the Houſe gives a Sign to riſe, and then they withdraw themſelves into the Hall or Garden to divert themſelves a Quarter of an Hour, and then come again to the Table, which they find ſet out with all ſorts of Sweet-Meats and dry'd Fruits to eat with their Tea. Theſe Cuſtoms are ſo troubleſome, and yet muſt be ſo exactly obſerv'd, that they keep the Gueſts from eating, ſo that they long to go home to dine, and yet they muſt ſtay to ſee the Comedy, which is tedious, dull and noiſie, but you muſt not laugh at it, but admire the Politeneſs of their Ceremonies, as it is called, inſtituted by the Diſcretion of the Ancients, and kept up by the Wiſdom of the Moderns. The Letters which they write to one another are as remarkable for their Civilities and Ceremonies, which are as many and myſterious as the others. There are ſo many Formalities to be obſerved about the Bigneſs of the Characters, Diſtance between the Lines, the innumerable Titles of Honour to be given to Perſons of Quality, the Shape of the Paper, the Number of red, white and blue Covers, and the like, that there is ſcarce any one Secretary enough to ſend one of their Letters as it ought to be. Theſe and a Thouſand other Ceremonies muſt be obſerved, unleſs you will be accounted a Clown; and tho' they ſeem to favour more of Affectation than Politeneſs, yet it cannot be denied, that theſe Cuſtoms inſpire them with a Sweetneſs of Temper, and Love of Order. And theſe Principles work their Effect the better.

Their Feaſts full of Ceremony.

Their Cuſtomes.

Strangers not admitted into the Government.

The Way of writing Letters.

2. Becauſe they are ſeconded with a wiſe and well underſtood Policy, the principal Maxims of which are: 1. Never to put any one into an Office in his own Province, becauſe a *Mandarin* of ordinary Parentage is uſually deſpiſed by thoſe that know his Family; or if of a good Family, the Number of his Kindred and Friends might encourage him to raiſe a Rebellion, or at leaſt make it difficult for him to execute Juſtice with Univerſal Impartiality. 2. To retain at Court the *Mandarins* Children, under a Pretence, indeed, of educating them well, but in reality to keep them as Pledges of their Father's Loyalty. 3. When any one goes to Law, he muſt uſe a Commiſſary of the Emperor's Appointment, unleſs the Office or Quality of the Criminal gives him Liberty to refuſe it. If the Emperor diſlikes the firſt Sentence, he may commiſſion new Judges to examine the Cauſe, till the Sentence be agreeable to his Mind; ſo that it is not in the Power of Money or Artifice to ſave a Man. 4. Never to ſell a Place, but beſtow it always upon Merit, *i. e.* To Men well skill'd in the Laws and Cuſtoms of their Country, and that lead good Lives. To this End Informations are exhibited of the Life and Manners of the Candidate, and he is ſo many times examined, that it is impoſſible an *Ignoramus* can be preferr'd. When they reſolve to bring up a Child to Learning, they put him to a Maſter to learn to read and write. When he has made ſome Progreſs in theſe Things, he is preſented to a *Mandarin* of the lower Order to be examined. If he writes a good Hand, he is admitted to the Knowledge of Books, and endeavours to attain a Degree, of which there are 3 ſorts, which anſwer to our Batchelor, Maſter of Arts and Doctor. Batchelors are created by certain *Mandarins*, aſſiſted by a Commiſſary from Court; Maſters by the chief *Man-*

Their Vexations by Policy.

Their Education in Learning.

Their Degrees and Way of Commencing.

Mandarins of the Province, and Doctors at *Pekin* only. Their Examination is severe, and their Studies are to say by heart their Staple-Books, make Comments on their Laws, imitate the Compositions, Eloquence and Knowledge of their ancient Doctors, and Politeness of their modern Ones. If any who is fit, want Money to commence Doctor, it is bestow'd on him *gratis*, that Poverty may not deprive the State of the Service of such Men as may be beneficial to it. The Commissary may not see or speak to the Person he is to examine before he examine him. Their Ability to compose and invent, is tried by being shut up into a Room without Books, where they may have no Correspondence. The Emperor himself engages in creating Doctors, and is fear'd for his Exactness and rigorous Justice more than any of the other Posers. To such as excel in Learning he gives Garlands of Flowers, and other Badges of Honour, and chuses some of them Members of his Royal Academy, from which they never remove but into great Posts. But, lest Promotion should make them negligent, they still undergo divers Examinations, where if they are found so, they are severely reproved; but if they continue to improve their Studies, they are rewarded suitably. This Principle contributes much to the publick Good, by keeping the Youth from Idleness and ill Courses, and forming and polishing their Wits. All Offices by this Means are filled with able Men: No Fees are paid for the Administration of Justice, for the Judge has his Office for nothing, and a sufficient Salary to maintain his Post. 5. Never to suffer Strangers to have any Share in the Ministration, because they say, a Mixture of Natives and Foreigners would bring them into Contempt, and occasion nought but Corruption and Disorder. They fancy, that Strangers, tho' never so well form'd and instructed, are but like adopted Sons, who never have that implicit Obedience and tender Affection to their Country as Children by Nature. 6. With them Nobility is never Hereditary, nor is there any Distinction between the Qualities of People, except what is made by their Offices; so that the whole Kingdom, except the Family of *Confucius*, is divided into Magistracy and Commonalty. All their Lands, even those that belong to their Idol-Temples, are held by Socage Tenure, and are obliged to acknowledge the Imperial Power by paying Taxes and Contributions. When a Vice Roy or Governour of a Province dies, his Children, as well as others, have their Fortunes to make, for his Name gives them no Quality, unless their Ingenuity procure it. The State has many Advantages by this Maxim. Trading is in a most flourishing Condition, and is not likely to be ruin'd by the Laziness of the Nobility. The Emperor's Revenues are encreased, because no Estates are Tax-free: Families are kept from seeking Popularity, and all Men are kept in Subjection; for Hereditary Nobles are like petty Kings, and will scarcely obey. 7. To keep up in Peace, as well as War, great Armies, which command Credit and Respect from Neighbours, and are ready to stifle all Commotions at Home. Anciently they kept a Guard of a Million of Men to secure their great Wall, and an equal Number to garrison their Frontiers and great Towns; but now they keep Garrisons only in their most important Towns, and have a standing Force of 15 or 20000 Men in every Province, under the Command of private Officers. They have Soldiers to secure their Islands, especially *Haynan* and *Formosa*. The Horse-Guards at *Pekin* are above 160000; so that the Emperor in perfect Peace has no less than 500000 Men always in Pay, all arm'd, according to the Custom of the Country, with Scymeters and Darts. Their Infantry is small, and poorly arm'd. Their Soldiers are very graceful and pretty, and well disciplin'd. They make an handsome Figure in their Musters, but are soft, lazy and effeminate. Their own Emperor gives them this Character, They are good Soldiers when opposed to bad ones, but bad when opposed to good ones. 8. Concerning Rewards and Punishments: Great Men, who have faithfully serv'd their Country, never lose their Reward, but 'tis usually in Titles of Honour, which are very acceptable to Subjects, and no Charge to the Prince. They consist in the several Ranks of *Mandarins*, and give Power to take place in Assemblies, Visits and Councils, and after Death they entitle to lofty Monuments, built at the publick Charge, and Elegies made by the Emperor himself: But the highest Honour is to make them Saints, build them Temples, and offer them Sacrifices, as the Gods of the Country. They reward also vertuous Actions in private Men, which have brought no publick Advantage to the State, erecting Temples to Maids for having kept their Chastity inviolable, Trophies with honourable Inscriptions to mere Vertue and Merit.

Their Punishments are severe, as their Rewards are liberal. Their usual Punishment is Bastinado on the Back, and 'tis accounted a Fatherly Correction to receive but 40 or 50 Blows. This Punishment is not very scandalous, and *Mandarins*, as well as others, are subject to it; and the Criminal that has suffer'd it, must, if able, fall on his Knees before the Judge, and bowe 3 times to the Ground, and give him hearty Thanks for taking Care of his Education: Yet this Punishment is violent, and often Persons die of it; but there are Ways of escaping it, which are either by bribing the Executioners, who, for Money, notwithstanding all the *Mandarins* Care, will make it light, and almost nothing; or by substituting a Person in their stead, for in all their Courts there are Men to be hired, who will take the Place of the Criminal, and receive his Punishment for Money; for it is a Trade in *China* with many who are maintain'd by it. The second sort of Punishment is the *Carcan*, which differs from the former in this only, that 'tis inflicted at the City-Gate, and is thereby rendred so infamous, that he that has undergone this Bastinado, can never recover his Reputation. They have several Ways of inflicting Death. Mean and ignoble Persons have their Heads cut off in Disgrace; and on the contrary, Persons of Quality are strangled; but if their Crime be notorious, they are punish'd like mean Persons, their Heads being cut off, and hang'd on a Tree in the High-way. Rebels and Traitors are cut into 10000 Pieces, as they call it; for after the Executioner has cut off the Skin round their Foreheads, which he tears by Force, till it hangs over his Eyes, that they may not see the Torments they are to endure; he cuts their Body in what Places he pleaseth, and then leaves them to the Tyranny of their Enemies and Insults of the Mob. Criminals are often whipt to Death, and, which is the cruellest Death of all, they are tortured till they die. 9. They think it good Policy not to suffer a Woman to trade, but confine them always within Doors to be continually employ'd in the Education of their Children. They neither buy nor sell, and are as seldom seen abroad as if they were Nuns. Princesses never succeed to the Crown, nor have the Regency in the Princes Minority; and 'tis reckon'd mean and ignoble for the Emperor to consult them; in which the *Chinese* seem defective, for Wit and Foresight are common to both Sexes, and 'tis unjust to deny the Emperor the Benefit of it where ever he finds it. 10. To encourage Trade as much as is possible thro' the whole Empire, and this the very Princes and Mandarins practise, by putting their Money into trusty Traders Hands. To encrease Commerce, the *Chinese* not only admit Strangers into their Port (tho' this has been done only of late) but spread themselves all over the *Indies*, and carry Silk, Porcelane, Physical Drugs, Sugar, Japan'd Works, and Wine. They go to *Batavia*, *Siam*, *Achem*, *Malacca*, and especially *Japan* and *Manilla*, from whence they bring Silver, which is brought from *Mexico* to the *Philippines* by the *Pacifick Sea*, and carry it to *Canton*, from whence 'tis dispersed all over the Empire: But their greatest Trade lies among themselves from Province to Province, which like so many Kingdoms communicate to each other their Riches; *Huquam* sends Rice; *Canton* Sugar; *Chequam* good Silk; *Nanquim* neat and handsome Pieces of Workmanship; *Xanfi* and *Xenfi* are rich in Iron, Horses, Mules, Camels and Furs; *Fokien* Tea, and so of the rest. This mutual Commerce unites the People, and fills their Towns with Plenty. These are not all the *Chinese* Maxims, but the most essential.

Good Order in inferior Governments is as useful a Part of Policy as any whatever, and all these are settled in *China*. Among Persons of Quality there never happens any Dispute about taking place, because every one exactly knows what is due to his own and others Quality. Every thing that belongs to the Princes and Mandarins is fully stated, their Pensions, Houses, Number of Servants, the Shapes and Bigness of their Sedans; so that when they come into Publick, their Quality is presently known, and the Respect due to them paid without Trouble. When the *Chinese* govern'd the Empire, all private Men wore their Marks

Their Faith full of Ceremony.

Strangers not admitted into the Government.

Nobility not Hereditary, and the Reason assign'd for it.

Standing Armies.

Rewards and Punishments always given.

Their Punishments. 1. Bastinado.

2. The *Carcan*.

Capital Punishments.

Women not to trade.

To encourage Trade.

Trade among themselves.

The good Order of the *Chinese*.

of Distinction, and there was no Learned Man, but his Degree and Rank might be known by the Fashion and Colour of his Garb. Their Towns have a determinate Figure, and they ought to be square, and their Gates set to the 4 Quarters. The Houses have Through-Lights, and are accounted ill built, if their Doors do not lie exactly parallel with one of the Sides of the Town. Towns of several Orders have a different Bigness. The chief Towns are 9 or 12 Miles round. others are 6, and others less. The Streets are strait, laid out by a Line, large and well paved, yet inconvenient, because all Persons of Note either ride on Horseback or in a Chair. Their Houses are very low, that none may overlook each others Yards and Gardens. The whole Town is divided into 4 Parts, and those into small Divisions of 10 Houses, over which presides an Officer, who takes Notice what Contentions happen, what Strangers come in or go out, and what other extraordinary Things happen in his little Ward, and informs the *Mandarin*. In case of an Alarm, the Neighbourhood is obliged to lend an assisting Hand, because they are to make good all Robberies. Lastly, In every Family every Father is answerable for the Disorders of his Children and Servants. The Gates of the Cities are shut up and watch'd every Night. In the Day-time there are Guards to examine all that come in, and if he be a Stranger (for they know their own Country-men by their Mein, Habit and Tones) they take him up, and carry him to the *Mandarin*. In certain Places they tie Chains cross their Streets, and Guards go on the Patrole, and the Horse go their Rounds upon the Fortification, and then Woe be to him that is found from home. Meetings, Masquerades and Balls are only for Thieves and Mob, say the *Chinese*; all orderly People ought to be at home, providing for their Families, or taking their Rest. Gaming is forbidden both the Gentry and Commonalty, and yet they'll sometimes play away their Estates, Wives and Children at Cards; but this Disorder came in with the *Tartars*, and is concealed.

the Bigness of their Towns.

City Gates shut up and guarded.

Gaming disallow'd.

As to their Marriages; such as are inclin'd to take a Wife, do not, as we do, follow their own Fancies in chusing her. They never see the Woman that they are to marry, but take her upon the Word of their Parents, or of certain old Women, who are Inspectors between them, and being generally in Fee with the Woman's Friends, seldom give a true Character of her. The Men usually buy their Wives, as they do other Merchandizes, giving more or less according to their good or bad Properties. When the Parties are agreed about the Price, and the Money paid down, then Preparations are made on both Sides for the Nuptial Solemnities. The Bride is carry'd in a sumptuous Chair, with Hautboys, Pipes and Drums going before, and her Parents and other near Relations following it. Her Portion, which she carries with her, is her Cloaths, and a few Goods which her Father presents her with. The Bridegroom stands at his Door richly attired waiting for her, and having open'd the Sedan, wherein she is shut up close, conducts her into a Chamber, where she, with the Women invited, spend the Day in Feasting, as he doth with the Men his Friends and Acquaintance. This being the first time of the Bride and Bridegroom's Meeting, proves often a Day of Sorrow to themselves, tho' of Mirth to their Friends; for one or both often dislike their Bargain, and sometimes the Man will chuse rather to lose his Money than take his Wife. When they are join'd, the Husband may not divorce his Wife, but for Adultery, and some other Occasions, which seldom fall out, and then they sell them, and buy another. Persons of Quality rarely do it, but the common People do it frequently. If a Man sell his Wife without a just Cause, both the Buyer and Seller are punish'd; yet the Husband is not obliged to take her again. They are allow'd but one Wife, but may have as many Concubines as they please, and all the Children have an equal Claim to the Estate, because they are reckon'd the Wife's Children, and call her Mother, being the sole Mistress of the House, and the Concubines her Servants. They own, that 'tis a Sign of Chastity in the *Europeans* to have but one Wife, tho' they admire they have no Concubines; and if any say, Many Women must needs raise Quarrels in a Family, they say, Nothing is without some Inconvenience, and one Woman may be as troublesome as many. They best Way they own is, to have no Wife at all. The *Chinese* generally are very jealous, and will not suffer their Wives to speak in private with their own Brethren; yet some are so complaisant to their Wives, as to suffer them freely to commit Adultery, and some Women make it a Condition of Marriage; but such Families are abhorr'd by the *Chinese*, and their Children, tho' never so deserving, can never obtain an honourable Office.

Their Marriages.

Divorce for Adultery only.

Of all Civil Institutions, nothing troubles the *Chinese* so much, as the Ordering their Time and Holy-days. There are above 100 Persons in the Emperor's Service on purpose to regulate the Kalendar, which they make new every Year, and send it with a great deal of Ceremony to the Vice-Roys of every Province. They make the Year to consist sometimes of 12, and sometimes of 13 Months, according to the Moon's Course, and it ought to agree with the Sun's. In these Almanacks the Equinoxes, Solstices, the Ecclipses of the Sun and Moon, their Entrance into the Signs, the Courses of the Planets, with their Oppositions, Conjunctions and Propinquity to any Star is described, and, indeed, every thing is calculated which is curious in Astronomy. They add divers Points of Judicial Astrology, which Ignorance and Superstition hath invented, about happy, or unhappy Days, and Times proper for Buildings, Marriage, and undertaking Journeys, which much take with the People; but the Emperor and Men of Sense are wiser than to mind such Trifles. Altho' there be no publick Clocks in *China*, as we have in *Europe*, yet the Day is divided by them into 24 Parts, which have all their particular Names, and begin at Midnight. Anciently they divided their Day into 12 Parts, each of which they subdivided into 8, which made the Natural Day to consist of 96 Parts, which were all exactly distinguish'd in their Calculations; but their Sun-dyals (which are ancient) were divided into 4 general Parts, which were each subdivided into 24 little ones, which being all put together, divided the whole Circle into 100 Parts. This Way of Dyalling is irregular, and of little use. Since they have receiv'd a new Kalendar from the Jesuits, they reckon their Time almost as we do, save that they divide the whole Natural Day into 12 Hours, putting two of our Hours into one. As for the People, they are not curious herein: They think it sufficient to know the Rising and Setting of the Sun, and Noon: In the Night they make use of Bells and Drums, which by their Sound distinguish the Night into 5 Watches: [For in all the Cities and Towns of the Empire, there are 2 Towers, in the one of which is a Bell, and the other a Drum, which serve to tell the Watches thus: At every Watch a Watch-man strikes several Strokes upon the Bell, and the Drum answers him; and so they continue all the first Watch, giving single Strokes, and resting a while. At the 2d Watch the Drum and Bell are struck again a while; and then they continue all that Watch, giving double Strokes, and in the following Watches 3, 4 or 5 Strokes, as the Watch is, and so they know the Hour of the Night at any time; for the Bell and Drum are so large, loud and clear, that they are easily heard all over the City. *F. Magellan.*]

Ordering of their Time.

Their Day

Their 24 Dyals.

Their current Coin is very odd: They have round Copper Pieces, with an Hole in the Middle, full of Characters: The Mettal is neither pure, nor well hammer'd; they are thick, but easily broken; 10 of these make a Penny, and 10 Pence make the 10th part of the *Chinese* Crown, called *Leam*; but by the *Portuguese*, *Tael*. Their Crown amounts to 6 *s.* 2 *d.* 2 *q.* and $\frac{22}{71}$ of a Farthing. This Crown-piece is not coin'd with any Stamp or Image. Their Silver Money is irregular Pieces of Silver, which they take by Weight, and if they distrust the Goodness, they may cut it asunder. They know the Goodness of Silver 3 Ways, by the Colour, by several little Holes made in it by the Melting-pot, and by divers little Circles made by the Air in cooling after it has been melted: If the Colour be white, the Holes small and deep, the Circles many, close and fine, then the Silver is pure, but the more it differs from these Qualities, so much the more Alloy it has. Gold never passes in *China* for Money, no more than Jewels do: They buy it as they do other Merchandize, and the *Europeans* make a good Market of it there, by selling it for a 3d part more than it cost them.

Their current Coin.

The Marks to know good silver.

The *Chinese* sell almost all Things by Weight, and to that End use, among several sorts of Scales, a small portable Ballance, kept in a varnish'd Case, which is very light and useful. It is something like the *Roman* Ballance, consisting of a Dish, an Arm and a Weight.

Their Weights.

It

It will weigh very nicely and exactly, for the Thousandth part of a Crown will ſenſibly turn the Scale. The *Chineſe* divide their Pound Weight as we do, into 16 Ounces, and each Ounce into 10 Parts, called *Tsien*; each of theſe into 10 Penny-weights, and each of theſe again into 10 Grains. They have many other Diviſions which our Language has no Name for.

Their Meaſures. As to the common Meaſures in uſe in this Empire, different Provinces have different ſorts. The Meaſures which they uſe in the Mathematical Courts are the exacteſt. The *Chineſe* Foot is little different from ours, ſave that ours is a little longer.

Their Care of the High-ways. The Civil Government of *China* takes Notice of the High-ways, that they be handſome and eaſily paſſible. The Paſſages for their Water are in ſeveral Places warfed with Stone-Walls for the Convenience of Travelling, and over them there are a great Number of Bridges, which unite the Towns and Fields together. Canals alſo are cut for the Water to paſs thro' all the Towns of the Southern Provinces, to make their Ditches the more ſecure, and the Towns more pleaſant. In marſhy Grounds they throw up prodigious long Banks, which keep the Roads very good in theſe Parts. They'll ſtick at no Charge to make their Ways good; they'll make a Paſſage thro' Mountains, if they are in their Way. The Road from *Sigan* to *Hamcheu* is one of the ſtrongeſt Pieces of Work in the World; for on the Side of the Mountains, which are perpendicular, they have made a kind of a Balcony without Rails, which reaches thro' ſeveral of them, to travel on. Theſe ſort of Roads are hazardous, and terrifie Strangers; but the People are venterous, and the Mules will go on them without Fear. Their Roads are 80 Foot broad, and the Soil is light and ſoon dry, when it ceaſes raining. In ſome Provinces they have on both Sides Cauſeways for Foot Paſſengers, ſupported with Trees, and ſometimes terraſs'd with Walls of 8 or 10 Foot high, to keep Paſſengers out of the Fields. They all terminate at ſome great Town. At about a Mile and half Diſtance from each other, there are ſet up ſeveral Wooden Machines, like Triumphal Arches, about 30 Foot high, upon which in a large Frize is wrote in Characters, which may be read at almoſt half a Quarter of a Mile's Diſtance, how far it is from the Town you left to the Town you are going, and ſo you have no need of a Guide in *China*. Near theſe Piles are fix'd little Towers of Earth, where the Emperor's Standard is ſet, and the Country Militia lodged. Theſe Soldiers in time of Rebellion are to ſuppreſs Tumults, and in Peace to carry Expreſſes and Letters to the Emperor, aſſiſt Travellers, in caſe of an Alarm, and ſtop High-way-men and Robbers. Every Man that goes arm'd is obliged to give an Account to theſe Men whence he came, whither he is going, and upon what Buſineſs, and ſhew his Paſs. By theſe Means the Roads are pretty free from Rogues. Their Poſts are as well regulated as ours in *Europe*. They are maintain'd at the ſole Charge of the Emperor, becauſe they are to carry Diſpatches from Court to the Vice-Roys, who ſend them forthwith by other Couriers to the Governours of the Towns of the firſt Rank, who tranſmit them to the 2d, and they to the 3d; but the Poſt-Master for a little Money will ſend private Letters by them. 'Tis the *Mandarins* Care to ſee the Roads be good, and that they may not neglect them, the Emperor often gives out a Report, that he intends to viſit this or that Province, and then knowing, that not their Fortunes only, but their Lives are in Danger, if they are found bad, they ſpare no Coſts or Pains to repair. In *Xanſi* a Governour hang'd himſelf, becauſe he deſpair'd of getting the Roads in Repair time enough for the King's Coming; but all this Care can't prevent one Inconvenience in their Roads, which is, that the Soil being light, and Travellers almoſt innumerable, the Duſt is ſo great, that they are unpaſſible when there is Heat and Wind.

The *Mandarins* to repair the Roads.

Of all the wholeſome Inſtitutions of *China*, the Method of Levying the Emperor's Revenue contributes as much as any thing to the publick Peace. They are not troubled with Swarms of Officers and Commiſſioners. All Mens Eſtates are meaſured, and all Families are regiſter'd. Whatſoever the Emperor is to have by Exciſe on Goods, or Tax on Perſons, is publickly known, and every Body is to bring what's due to him to the *Mandarins* of the Towns of the 3d Rank; and if any neglect to bring his Dues, he is to ſuffer Impriſonment, and undergo the Baſtinado, till he has made Satisfaction. The *Mandarins* of the lower Rank give an Account to the General-Officer of the Province, who accounts with the Court at *Pekin*, which looks after the Exchequer. A great part of the Revenue is diſburs'd up and down the Province in Penſions, Salaries, Soldiers Pay, publick Buildings, and what is over plus is carry'd to *Pekin* to maintain the Emperor's Court, and other Expences of that Town, where the Emperor keeps in Pay above 160000 Regular Troops, to whom, as well as to the *Mandarins*, is given out every Day Meat, Fiſh, Rice, Peaſe and Straw according to every one's Rank, beſides their conſtant Pay. All this Expence the Revenues of the Southern Provinces alone would anſwer, but they are ſo jealous leſt at any time the Revenue ſhould come ſhort, that they keep Magazines of Rice at *Pekin* ſufficient for 3 Years, which tho' it taſte not ſo well, yet is as wholſome.

The Way of Levying the Emperor's Revenue.

This numerous Army of the *Chineſe* Emperor would (one would think) awe all *Aſia*, but there natural Effeminacy, and continual Idleneſs is ſuch, that makes them not valued. The Weſtern *Tartars* ſay in Deriſion, *That the Neighing of a* Tartary *Horſe will rout all the* Chineſe *Cavalry*; yet all poſſible Care is taken to have good Soldiers, for none is admitted into the Guards as an Officer, till they have made Trial of their Stoutneſs, Skill and Dexterity in Military Affairs. Theſe Officers exerciſe their Troops, form them into Squadrons, march them, teach them to divide their Files, to go thro' narrow Paſſes, ſhew them to give the Onſet and Rally, manage their Bow, and handle their Scymetar, and yet they are ſoon broke and put into Diſorder, becauſe they have no Principles of Honour and Bravery inſtill'd into them from their Childhood; but being educated behind the Counter, or at the Bar, liſt themſelves into the Soldiery to live at Eaſe, as hoping there will be no Occaſion of fighting. This Piece of *Chineſe* Policy prevents, indeed, Domeſtick Feuds, but expoſes them to Foreign Enemies.

The *Chineſe* Army.

LETTER X.

Written to the Cardinal de Bouillon; *Concerning the Ancient and Modern Religion of* China.

Lewis Le Comte, thinking it moſt proper to write of Religion to a Perſon eminent in the Church, ſends him this Account of the ancient and modern Religion of *China*. He ſays, that Religion has always had a great Share in eſtabliſhing the greateſt Kingdoms, which could never ſupport themſelves, were not the People's Minds united by the Outward Worſhip of a Deity. *China* has been happier in this Foundation, than any other Nation under the Sun, for it drew in the chief Maxims of Religion from the Fountain Head. The Children of *Noah*, who in the Time of the Deluge were Witneſſes of the Omnipotency of their Creator, were ſettled all over the Eaſtern Parts of *Aſia*, and in all Probability founded this Empire, and tranſmitted the Knowledge of God to the People of it, as may be collected from their Hiſtories; for *Tohi*, their firſt Emperor, carefully bred up 7 Sorts of Creatures for Sacrifice to the Supreme Spirit of Heaven, and Earth. *Hoamti*, the 3d Emperor, built a Temple to the Sovereign Lord of Heaven, the firſt that was conſecreated to Him, tho' not ſo magnificent as the *Jewiſh*. *Tchoen-hio*, their 5th Emperor, inſtituted Prieſts, or Eccleſiaſtical *Mandarins*, in ſeveral Provinces, to preſide over the Sacrifice. He gave them a ſtrict Command to take care that Divine Service were performed with all Humility and Reſpect, and that all Religious Ceremonies be ſtrictly obſerved. *Tibo*, his Succeſſor, took as much Care of Religion as his Predeceſſors had done, and 'tis probable that Religion was preſerved pure during the Reign of 80 Em-

Religion eſtabliſh'd in *China* by the Children of *Noah*.

Continued by many Emperors successively for many Ages pure.

Emperors, becauſe the moſt Learned among the *Chineſe* maintain, that before the Superſtitions introduced with the God *Foe* into *China*, there were no Idols or Statues ſeen, but the Obſervation of the Emperor *Yao*'s Maxims were recommended to the Princes, of which the moſt eſſential and principal was concerning the Worſhip of the Sovereign Lord of the World. *Vow-van* did, according to the ancient Cuſtom, offer Sacrifices, and under the Reigns of *Tchim Van* and his Son, Peace, Honeſty and Juſtice reigned in *China*, and ſo Things continued for 300 Years after, to the Times of the Emperor *Teou-vam*, who reigned 800 Years before *Chriſt*: So that they preſerved the Knowledge of the true God for near 2000 Years. And they did honour their Maker in ſuch a Manner, as may ſerve for an Example and Inſtruction to Chriſtians themſelves; for they had all along a ſtrict Care to breed up Beaſts for Sacrifices, and to maintain Prieſts to offer them up. The internal Service of the Mind was preſcribed, and they tied themſelves to a nice Obſervation of the ſmalleſt Ceremonies for the Edification of the People. The Empreſſes bred ſilk Worms and with their own Hands wrought Coverings for their Altars, and Habits for their Prieſts. The Emperors themſelves till'd the Grounds which produced the Corn and Wine deſtined for ſacred Uſes. The Prieſts would not offer Sacrifices before the People, unleſs they were fitted for it by 3 or 7 Days Abſtinence from Conjugal Enjoyments. They had their Solemn Faſts and Days of Prayer in Publick. When the Empire laboured under any Publick Calamity either by Barrenneſs, Flouds, Earthquakes, or Foreign Wars; and becauſe the Emperors ſuppoſe that all ſuch publick Calamities are occaſioned thro' their ill Government, they enquire of their Subjects what Faults they have committed, that they may amend them from the Example of one of their Princes, who in the time of Scarcity for 7 Years, obtain'd Plenty by thus humbling himſelf, and offering himſelf to Death, to propitiate the Divine Wrath, and reſtore them to their former Plenty. But tho' the Knowledge of the true God laſted many Ages, even after *Confucius*'s Death, who much improved it, yet it was not always ſupported with the ſame Purity. Their Minds were ſometimes poſſeſſed by Idolatry, and their Manners became ſo corrupt, that the true Faith being but a Cauſe of greater Ill, was by little and little taken away from them by the juſt Judgment of God. Theſe Corruptions and Superſtitions had a double Original. *Li Laokun* gave Riſe to many of them. He was a Philoſopher, who lived before *Confucius*. His Followers ſay, That his Mother bare him 80 Years in her Flanks, and that he came out of her Side a little before her Death. He became famous in a ſhort Time for his pernicious Doctrines; for he taught, That God was Corporeal, and that he governed other Deities, as a King governs his Subjects. He pretended to be an Inventor of Chymeſtry, and fancied, that he had found out a Drink that would make one Immortal; to obtain which, his Followers, both Men and Women, fell to ſtudy Magick, and at length it became the uſual Practice of every Body to avoid Death. The Profeſſors of this Study are called *Heavenly Doctors*; they live together in Societies, and erect Temples to *Laokun* their Maſter, whom both King and People honour with Divine Worſhip. Theſe Doctors in time became dreadful and admired for their Covenants with the Devil, and their Magical Wonders, and there is ſcarce any Body who does not give Credit to their Maxims, and hopes to eſcape Death by their Means. One of theſe Doctors was in ſuch Reputation with the Emperor, that he gave him the Title of *Chamti*, i.e. the Supreme Emperor; a Name only given God before; but their Authors ſay, This Impiety provoked God ſo, that he puniſhed his Wickedneſs by rooting out his Family, and bringing *China* under the Power of the Weſtern *Tartars*. *Laokun* wrote ſome uſeful Books; *Of Vertue*; *Of the Good of avoiding Honour*; *Of the Contempt of Riches*; *Of Retirement from the World to know our ſelves*. We often repeated the following Sentence, which he ſaid, was the Foundation of true Wiſdom; *Eternal Reaſon produced One, One produced 2, 2 produced 3, and 3 produced all things*, which ſeems to intimate his Knowledge of a Trinity, but theſe Things do not make amends for his Errors.

A 2d Sect ſprang up about 32 Years after *Chriſt*'s Death, and introduced the Adoration of the Idol *Fo*, or *Foe*, which, like a poiſonous Infection, ſpread it ſelf thro' all the Provinces and Towns of the Empire, and fill'd the Empire with Idolatry, Atheiſm, Superſtition and Fables, as the Tranſmigation of Souls, and almoſt all ſorts of Errors. No Body can well tell where this *Foe* was born; the moſt probable Account is, That he was a King's Son, born above 1000 Years before *Chriſt*. He was at firſt called *Che-Kia*, but took the Name of *Foe* about 30 Years of Age. His Mother brought him into the World thro' her Side, and died in Child-birth. He ſtood as ſoon as he was born, and pointing to Heaven and Earth ſaid, *I am the only Perſon in Heaven and Earth, that deſerves to be honoured.* He married at 17 Years old, and had a Son, but left him and all the World to retire with 3 or 4 *Indian* Philoſophers into Solitude, and teach them. He was fill'd with the Divinity at 30, and had an univerſal Knowledge of all Things. He began with a vaſt Number of Miracles to gain the People's Admiration, and was worſhipp'd as a God. The Number of his Diſciples became very great, and by their Means all the *Indies* is poiſon'd with his Doctrine. They are called *Talapoins* at *Siam*, *Lama's*, or *Lama-ſem*, by the *Tartars*, *Bonze's* by the *Japaners*, and *Hocham* by the *Chineſe*. He died in the 79th Year of his Age, and at his Death declared to them, That all he had ſaid to them was Ænigmatical, and that the only Principle of all Things from whence they came, and to which they muſt return, is *Nothing*. Theſe laſt Words produced a Sect of Atheiſts among them, but the reſt kept cloſe to his Original Errors, and fancying that their Maſter was tranſmigrated into ſeveral Creatures, as the Ape, Elephant, Dragon, &c. worſhip them with him; and the *Chineſe*, who are of all Nations the moſt ſuperſtitious, multiply the Number of theſe Idols much: Yet it often happens, that if the People do not obtain what they deſire after long worſhipping them, they'll turn them off, and treat them after the moſt reproachful Manner in Words and Deeds, plucking them down, and dragging them in the Streets thro' the Dirt and Mud. A Man, who had long pray'd to an Idol for the Recovery of his only Daughter, and was by the *Bonze*'s promiſed a Recovery; yet failing of his Expectation (for ſhe died) obtain'd of the Vice-Roy of the Province a formal Sentence againſt it, *viz.* That the Idol ſhould be ſent into perpetual Baniſhment, as uſeleſs to the Kingdom, his Temple ſhould be pull'd down, and the *Bonzes* ſeverely chaſtiſed, who repreſented him, and the Sentence was executed; yet theſe Things will not undeceive the blind *Chineſe*.

The *Bonze's*, whoſe Intereſt it is, find out Arts to keep up the Reputation of their Gods, and eſpecially of their Idol *Foe*, by teaching the People theſe Principles of Morality: They ſay, That Good and Evil are not ſo confuſed in the other World as in this, but there are Rewards for the Good, and Puniſhments for the Bad; and to that End different Places are ſet apart for the Souls of Men according to their Merit: That the God *Foe* is the Saviour of the World, born to teach the Way of Salvation, and make Expiation for all our Sins. He has left them 10 Commandments, *viz.* 1. Not to kill any living Creature. 2. Not to take another's Goods. 3. Not to give one's ſelf to Impurity. 4. Not to lye. 5. To drink no Wine, &c. Beſides theſe, they recommend to the People the Practice of ſeveral Works of Mercy, *viz.* To nouriſh and entertain the *Bonze's*; To build them Monaſteries and Temples, that their Prayers and Penances may exempt them from the Puniſhment due to their Sins; to burn Paper waſh'd and gilt with Silver, and Habits made of Stuff and Silk; for they ſhall be turn'd into real Gold and Silver, and into true and ſubſtantial Garments, which ſhall be faithfully given to their Fathers; and if you neglect theſe Commands, you ſhall be cruelly tormented after Death, and expoſed to ſeveral *Metampſycoſes*, or Tranſmigrations into Rats, Horſes, Mules, and other Creatures. Other Arts they have to delude the People, and beguile them of their Money or Goods. Sometimes they'll pretend, the Souls of their dear Friends are in their Ducks, Geeſe or Cattle, and having obtain'd them to ſecure the Souls of their Friends, feaſt on them. Sometimes they pretend to ſignal Acts of Penance, which the People eſteem them mightily for, and will ſhew them much Pity and Compaſſion. They'll drag after them long Chains of Iron, faſten'd to their Neck or Legs; others will beat their Heads with large Bricks, till the Blood trinkle down, to expiate for their Faults; others will ſhut themſelves up in a Sedan full of Nails, with the Points inward; and thus going from Houſe to Houſe,

House, they beg Alms, and the People greedily relieve them, and buy the Nails at 6 *d.* apiece; others get Money out of the People by Magical Arts, ſecret Theſts, horrible Murthers, and a Thouſand other deteſtable Actions, for which, if they can but eſcape the Juſtice of Men (which in *China* ſpares no ſuch Offenders) they fear not God. The generality of the People are prejudiced in Favour of them, but the wiſer ſort are always upon their Guard againſt them, and the Magiſtrates watch them; for ſometimes they will ſacrifice Mens Lives to their Superſtition, which, if diſcover'd, they are puniſh'd ſeverely for.

Their wicked Actions.

Since the *Tartars* have been Emperors of *China*, the *Lamas*, another ſort of *Bonze's*, have been eſtabliſh'd there. Their Habit is different from thoſe of *China*, both in Shape and Colour, but their Religion is the ſame; for they worſhip the God *Foe*, and they differ only in a few ſuperſtitious Practices. At *Pekin* they are Chaplains to the *Tartar* Nobility, but in *Tartary* they are worſhipped as Gods; for they ſet up a *Lamas* in the Temple, and ſay, that the God *Foe* appears in a ſenſible Figure, and never dies; for if the *Lamas* who repreſents him dies, they put another in his Room of the ſame Stature, and as near as can be of the ſame Features, that the People may be the better deceived by it. An infinite Number of *Lamas* ſerve him with an ineffable Veneration, and ſtrive to imprint the ſame upon all Mens Minds, and the People are too often bubbled with ſuch Impoſtors.

The Lamas of China.

In *China* there are but a few *Mahometans*, who have lived there 600 Years in ſeveral Province, and are never diſturb'd, becauſe they never diſturb any Body upon the Account of Religion, being content to enjoy it themſelves, or propogate it among their Kindred by Marriages.

The Mahometans in China.

There is a 3d Sect, which is called, *The Religion of the Learned*: Their Doctrines are ſo obſcure, that the very Profeſſors of it ſcarce underſtand what they teach. The Original of it began about 1400, when the Emperor being willing to ſtir up in his Subjects a Love of Learning, which the Civil Wars, Magick and Idolatry had almoſt baniſh'd out of the Empire, made choice of 82 of their moſt ingenious Doctors to compile a Syſtem agreeable to the Sentiments of the ancient Writers, which might ſerve as a Direction for the Learned hereafter. The *Mandarins*, who were commiſſion'd to this Work, ſet themſelves diligently about it, but being prejudiced with their Idolatrous Opinions, have not follow'd the true Senſe of the Ancients, but have diſtorted their Words and Sayings to their falſe Notions. They ſpeak of God as nothing different from Nature, and ſay, He is a moſt pure and perfect Principle, the Source of all Things, the Eſſence of all Beings, and He that conſtitutes the formal Difference of Things. They allow a licentious Freedom from the Worſhip of God. They tolerate the *Mahometans* willingly, becauſe, like them, they adore the Maſter and King of Heaven, but perſecute all other Sects with great Violence, having at Court taken up a Reſolution utterly to aboliſh them throughout the Empire; but finding many Learned Men Diſſenters from them, and the People ſo prejudiced in favour of Idols, that they could not work their intended Reformation without Inſurrections and Diſturbances, they were forced to lay aſide their Reſolutions, contenting themſelves to denounce all other Sects, Hereticks at *Pekin*. Theſe new Books being honour'd with the Emperor's Approbation, are greedily received by every Body. Some like them, becauſe they deſtroy all ſorts of Religion, and theſe are moſt numerous; others approve them, becauſe they contain ſo little of Religion; for, indeed, tho' they ſeem to honour God with their Lips, yet their Hearts are far from Him: And ſo this People, once ſo wiſe and full of the Knowledge of Religion, are fallen into Superſtition, Magick, Paganiſm, and, Laſtly, Atheiſm it ſelf.

Their Principles.

The Books compoſed by them.

The Emperor, who is a wiſe and politick Prince, manages himſelf prudently as to theſe Sects of Religion. He always keeps in with the People, being ſenſible that their Love is the main Support of his Throne, and is ſo far from provoking them, that he makes himſelf very popular, yet not to ſuch a Degree as to bring upon him the Hatred of the *Mandarins*, and therefore he permits, or rather tolerates Superſtition. He pays a great deal of Reſpect to ſeveral *Bonze's* of the firſt Rank, who have behaved themſelves well in any of the Provinces, or at Court; yea, he forces his Temper ſo far, as to let ſome of them live in his Palace, becauſe his Mother had ſettled them there; but he is no Slave to their Opinions, he perfectly underſtands the Folly of them, and will upon Occaſion laugh at their Principles. When his Mother died, ſeveral Maids of Honour to the Empreſs came and fell at his Feet, deſiring him to ſuffer them to follow her into the other World, where their Services might be uſeful to her; but he anſwer'd, *I have taken Care for that already, you need not trouble your ſelves about it*: But, for fear their cruel Zeal ſhould prompt them to lay violent Hands on themſelves, he commanded that their Hair ſhould be immediately cut off, and they ſhould be confin'd, for they fancy themſelves uſeleſs to ſerve Perſons of Quality in the other World, when they are ſhaved. He honours *Confucius* as the firſt and wiſeſt Philopher in the World. In ſeveral Things he follows Cuſtom, when he judges it for his Intereſt. At certain Times of the Year he offers Sacrifices, but he ſays, 'tis only in Honour of the *Cham-ti*, and that he adores none but the Supreme Lord of the Univerſe. He believes in One God, but State Reaſons and the Gratifications of his Paſſions keep him from ſubmitting to the ſtrict Rules of the Goſpel, tho' he declares, that were he convinced of the Truth of it, he would not ſtick one Minute to be of it; which God, in whoſe Hands are the Hearts of Princes, effect by his Grace and miraculous Power, as a Means to convert the Empire to the Goſpel.

The Emperor's Behaviour towards the different Sects of Religion.

He honours *Confucius*.

The Subſtance of Three Letters; Concerning the Eſtabliſhment and Progreſs of the Chriſtian Religion in China.

The Emperor of China's Objection againſt Chriſtianity.

Lewis Le Comte having in the Beginning of the firſt of theſe Letters propounded an Objection againſt the Chriſtian Religion made by the Emperor of *China*, to this Effect, *If the Knowledge of* Jeſus Chriſt *is abſolutely neceſſary for Salvation, and God deſires that all Men ſhould be ſaved thro' Him, how comes it to paſs, that for theſe* 1600 *Years we in* China *knew nothing of it? Is* China *ſo inconſiderable, as not to be thought on, while ſo many barbarous Nations have been enlightened?* endeavours to anſwer it by giving a probable Account, that *China* was not forgotten in the Commiſſion given to the Apoſtles to inſtruct all Nations; and ſays, There is no doubt but that St. *Thomas* preached the true Faith in the *Indies*, and 'tis as certain that the *Indians* than had great Dealings with the *Chineſe*, to whom almoſt all *India* was Tributary. It is therefore very probable, that this Apoſtle did not neglect *China*, which then out-ſhined all thoſe Eaſtern Parts of the World, as much as *Italy* did the Weſtern, when the *Roman* Empire was in the moſt flouriſhing Condition, and ſo he either travelled there himſelf, or at leaſt ſent ſome of his Followers. This is made almoſt certain by the Hiſtories of thoſe Parts: For the *Chineſe* Hiſtory it ſelf ſays, *That about thoſe Times a Man came into* China, *and preached Heavenly Doctrines. He was not an ordinary Man, for his Life, Miracles and Vertues made him admired by all the World.* Further, in an ancient Breviary of the Church of *Malabar*, written in *Chaldee*, theſe Words are found in the Office for St. *Thomas*'s Day, *It was by St.* Thomas's *Means that the* Chineſe *and* Æthiopeans *were converted, and came to the Knowledge of the Truth.* And in another Place, *It was by St.* Thomas, *i. e. by his Preaching, that the Kingdom of Heaven went into the Empire of* China. We can't tell what Converſions he made in *China*, but ſince Chriſtianity was preached there, 'tis certain, that nothing but their own Fault could keep it out. Nor was this the only Time when *Chriſt* viſited them, for a Catholick Partriarch of *Judea* ſent Miſſionaries thither, who preached there with good Succeſs, as appears by an ancient Marble Monument found in the Province of *Xenſi*, near *Sigan*, in 1625, wherein it was atteſted, 'That in the Reign of *Taiſoam*, a wiſe and honoured Prince, *Olopuen*, a Man of *Judea*, came into *China* in the Year of our Lord 636. 'and taught the Way of Salvation, and his Doctrine be-

St. Thomas preach'd in India.

Prov'd from their Hiſtory.

The Goſpel Preach'd in China, A. C. 636.

'being allowed and approved, a Church was built, 'and 21 Persons nominated to take Charge of the 'Cure. *Kao*, his Son, succeeded him, and endeavour-'ed to make that Religion flourish, which his Father 'had receiv'd; but the *Bonze's*, alarm'd at the Progress 'which Christianity had made, used all Means to stop 'its Course. The Persecution was great, but our 'Lord raised up 2 Persons of extraordinary Zeal to 'defend the Faith, who did it with such Vigour, that 'in a little time it recovered its former Lustre, and so 'continu'd for some Successions of Emperors, till it had 'flourished 186 Years, and, perhaps, longer; for we 'have no Account of its Failure, but it was quite 'extinct, and the Memory if it lost when the Jesuits 'came thither.

Xaverius's Preaching in China.

In the Year 1542. *Xaverius* went into *China*, in hopes to bring that Kingdom over to the Faith of *Jesus Christ*. He made his first Essays in the *Indies*, and contrived to perfect his Design in *China*; but God who had a mind to reward his Zeal, Labours and Charity with that Glory he had procured for so many Nations, deferr'd that Mercy for a time. He died in the Isle of *Sanchou*, or *Saniciam*, as we call it, and was buried there; but before he died he settled upon a solid Foundation all the Missions into the *Indies*, and encouraged his Brethren to enterprize the Conversion of *China*. His Zeal pass'd into the Minds and Hearts of the Fathers *Rogers*, *Pacco* and *Ricci*, *Italian* Jesuits, who resolved to spend their Pains, and if it were necessary, their Blood, in this great Work. The Difficulties which the Devil raised did not discourage them. They entred one after another into the Southern Provinces. The Novelty of their Doctrine procured them Auditors, who for the Holiness of their Lives could not but have a favourable Opinion of them; so that they heard them with Pleasure and Admiration.

F. Ricci preaches in China.

Father *Ricci* was most eminent for his Zeal and Understanding: He spoke their Language fluently, and was thoroughly instructed in their Laws and Religion, which being join'd with a sweet Temper and complaisant Behaviour, soon got him the Repute of a Great Man. He spent many Years in fruitless Labour, through the Policy of Satan, the Superstition of the People, Jealousie of the *Bonze's*, and ill Humour of the *Mandarins*; but, not being discouraged for want of Success, he had at length the Comfort of seeing the Gospel flourish. He made many mighty Conversions in the Provinces. The *Mandarins* embraced our most holy Faith, and the Emperor *Vanlo* entertain'd him with Kindness and Respect, which gain'd him the Good-will of all the Lords at Court; so that he bought him an House at *Pekin*, and laid a Foundation for the Establishment of Christianity: For Religion being known by this Means, came into Esteem, and was boldly preached by the new Missionaries. The Court and all the Provinces sounded with the adorable Name of the true God, and the *Mandarins* preach'd the Gospel with great Zeal and Understanding, by which Means the Affairs of Religion were much promoted.

Some Bonze's and Mandarins oppose Christianity.

But these Successes were much interrupted by a Conspiracy of some *Bonze's* and *Mandarins*, who seeking the Destruction of F. *Ricci* and the Jesuits, in the same Undertaking, stirr'd up a Persecution against them, under a Pretence that they were Spies, who, under a Shew of preaching the Gospel, secretly design'd to seize upon *China*, by the Assistance of the *Japonneses*, *Hollanders*, and *Christians* of the Country. This ridiculous Story, which carried some Shew of Truth, easily gain'd Credit with the *Chinese*, who are very suspicious and fearful of Commotions, and was the Cause of a sharp Persecution, in which the weak Christians apostatized, and F. *Martiner* was imprison'd and bastinado'd till he died. Had this Accusation of the Christians come to the Emperor's Ears, it had been the utter Overthrow of their Religion, but by the Means of a *Mandarin*, F. *Ricci*'s special Friend, the Persecution was stopt, and Peace restored to the Gospel.

F. Ricci's Death.

F. *Ricci* survived this Tempest but a little, tho' he had the Satisfaction to die in the midst of a plentiful Harvest, and was only troubled that the Labourers were so few, to whom he recommended the Care of encouraging all such as should come thither to preach the Gospel, with the most tender Friendship and inflam'd Charity. The Churches of *China* were shaken by his Fall; for tho' the Emperor for some Years after continued his Favour to the Christians, yet in 1615. there arose the cruellest Tempest that they had ever suffer'd. It was occasion'd by one of the chief *Mandarins* of *Nankim*, called *Chinkio*. They chiefly set upon the Pastors, but spared not the Flock, some of whom they cruelly beat, others they banish'd, and imprison'd almost all. It lasted near 6 Years, till, by God's Judgment, the Accuser himself was deprived both of his Offices and Life, and so the Christians obtain'd some Respite and were much multiply'd. About this Time (which was in 1631.) certain Dominicans join'd with the Jesuits in converting *China*, and labour'd with a great deal of Zeal and Success.

A severe Persecution of the Christians.

At the same time F. *Adam Schaal*, a *German*, appear'd at Court, and contributed much to the Rise of Christianity. He was perfectly well skill'd in the Mathematicks, and made use of his Knowledge to obtain the Emperor's Kindness, which he had so fully acquired, that he thought he should be able alone to establish Christianity solidly. He began to make use of his Interest with good Success, when an Insurrection, by over-turning the Government, blasted all his Hopes. *China* presently changed its Aspect, and from the most flourishing Empire, became a Stage of most bloody Wars, Murthers and Barbarities. The Emperor being surprized at *Pekin*, strangled himself for fear of falling into the Hands of the Rebels, who immediately placed their Leader on the Throne. The Princes of the Blood in other Places proclaim'd themselves Emperors. In this Confusion the *Tartars* were called in, and by their Valour and Conduct made themselves Masters of *China*, and in few Years obliged all the Provinces to submit to them. By this Change the Case of Religion was thought desperate, but God inspired the new Prince with a greater Affection to Christianity than could have been reasonably hoped for. He took away the Government of the Mathematicks from the *Mahometans*, who had held it 300 Years, and gave it to F. *Adam*, allowing him an immediate Access to his Majesty in all Things that concerned the Missionaries. This signal Favour raised the Courage of the Christians, and encouraged the Heathen to close with the Truth. Many Persons of Quality at *Pekin* desired Baptism, and great Numbers in the Provinces follow'd their Example; so that the Harvest was greater than the Labourers could gather. Many Persons signalized their hearty Zeal and doubled their Diligence in this Juncture to disperse the Gospel, of whom F. *Faber* was in the foremost Rank. He was a *French* Man, and founded the Mission of *Hanchum*, a great Town in *Xensi*. He was invited thither by a *Mandarin*, and found a small Number of Christians there, which as he was laborious to encrease, so God put an Opportunity into his Hands to do it. One of the great Boroughs of that Province was over-run with such Multitudes of Locusts, as eat up all the Leaves of the Trees, and gnaw'd the Grass to the Roots. The Inhabitants used all Means to remove them, but finding none effectual, apply'd themselves to F. *Faber*, who was then in great Repute. The Father took Occasion from hence to preach the Gospel to them, and promised, that if they would submit to it, they should not only be delivered from this present Plague, but obtain innumerable Blessings, and at length Life everlasting. They embraced it willingly on these Conditions, and the Father, to make good his Word, march'd into the High-ways in his Stole and Surplice, and sprinkled up and down holy Water, which Actions being accompanied with Prayers and a lively Faith, God heard his Voice, and the next Day all the Insects disappear'd. The People being thus delivered, neglected their Promise, and were immediately punish'd with the same Plague, which grew worse than before; whereupon they accused one another of want of Faith, and ran in Crouds to the Father's House, confessing their Fault, and promising, that if he would pardon them, and deliver them this second time from that Affliction, they would all acknowledge his God, who alone can do such Miracles. The Father, to encrease their Faith, made them beg a long while; but at length, inspired as before, he sent up his Prayers, and sprinkled his holy Water, and the next Day there was not a Locust to be found in their Fields: Then the whole Borough believed, and were form'd into a Church by his Instruction, which, tho' abandon'd a while, remains one of the devoutest Places in *China*.

F. Adam Schaal's Interest at Court.

A strange Revolution in China.

The Chief Nobility baptized.

F. Faber's Miracle and Success.

F. Faber converted a whole Town.

While the Christian Religion flourished thus in the Provinces, it spread no less at *Pekin*: The Emperor himself did not seem averse to it. He came to the Christian Assemblies, and adored God with them in a

The Gospel flourishes at Pekin.

a devout Manner, but yet would never fully embrace Chriſtianity, becauſe he imagined the Laws too difficult to be practiſed by Men. He bore a great Reſpect for F. *Adam*, and always called him Father. He put much Confidence in him, made him many Viſits, and gave him Leave to build Churches at *Pekin*; nay, granted him whatever could contribute to the Eſtabliſhment of the Faith; ſo that Chriſtianity had made a mighty Progreſs, if he had not died at a Time when it needed his Protection moſt: But, after his Death, the 4 *Mandarins*, who had the Regency of the new Emperor in his Minority, order'd this Father, with 3 of his Companions, to be put in Priſon, burnt their Books, Beads and Medals, and whatever carry'd a Face of Religion: Neverleſs, the Churches were ſpared (except ſuch as were built in the Maritime Provinces, which were commanded with the Towns to be deſtroy'd, becauſe they were an Harbour for a famous Pyrate in carrying on a War againſt the Emperor) and the Flock had more mild Uſage. Thoſe famous Confeſſors were brought before all the Seats of Judgment in *China*, and Father *Adam*, who a little before had been the Oracle of the Court, was firſt condemned to be ſtrangled, and then to be hack'd in 10000 Pieces; but God ſeem'd to ſpeak ſo loud in favour of his Innocency, by a terrible Earthquake, a Fire that conſumed a great part of the Court, and divers other Prodigies, that they ſet him at Liberty, and permitted him to go to his Houſe, where he ſoon after died. The other Miſſionaries remain'd in Baniſhment at *Canton*, *viz.* 3 Dominicans, 1 Franciſcan, and 21 Jeſuits; yet 4 Jeſuits were kept ſtill at Court, and God made uſe of them to ſettle Chriſtianity again in its former Splendor; for firſt to revenge the Innocency of His Servants, He removed the *Mandarins*, who were their greateſt Enemies. *Sony*, the firſt *Mandarin* in the Regency, died within a Month or two: *Soucama*, the 2d, was indicted and ſentenced to a cruel Death, his Goods confiſcated, 6 of his Children beheaded, and the other cut in Pieces, the Puniſhment his Father deſigned for F. *Adam*: *Yam-quam-ſian*, who was the chief Inſtrument of the Perſecution, fared no better; for being made Preſident of the Mathematicks, F. *Verbieſt* accuſed of Ignorance in that Art, and made it ſo plainly appear to the Emperor and Judges, that he loſt his Charge, and was condemn'd to Death, but the Emperor reſpited the Execution, by reaſon of his Age, till God ſmote him with an horrible Ulcer, of which he died.

A Perſecution of the Church.

F. *Adam* ſchaal's Death.

Perſecutors puniſhed.

After his Death F. *Verbieſt* had the Care of the Mathematicks committed to him, and by his Intereſt the Chriſtians were recalled to their Churches, but forbidden to build new ones, or to labour after further Converſions. The Memory of F. *Adam* was mightily reſpected at Court, his Anceſtors made noble and conſiderable Sums, appointed by the Emperor to build him a *Mauſoleum*.

F. *Verbieſt's* Intereſt at Court.

This Peace being ſettled in the Church, the Miſſionaries ſet themſelves to recover the Loſs Hell had made. Several Friars began to preach, and new Converſions were made daily, notwithſtanding the Prohibition; and though the Emperor was inform'd of it, yet he being ſatisfied that the Miſſionaries were good Men, and practiſed what they taught, that they were his Friends, and Enemies to all Rebellions againſt him, he was not pleaſed to take Notice of them. But that which was a particular Obligation to the Emperor was F. *Verbieſt's* Service in *Ouſanguei's* Rebellion, who taught his Workmen to caſt ſuch light, but ſtrong Cannon, as were portable in the worſt Ways, and were a Means to kill and defeat the Arch-Rebel and his Accomplices. After this Victory the Emperor's Favour appear'd ſo plain to the Chriſtians, that the Heathens themſelves invited them to convert them. They ſent to F. *Verbieſt* for Paſtors from every Place; *Tartary*, the Kingdom of *Corea*, the Provinces of *China* preſs him to ſuccour them: A precious Opportunity to have carry'd on the Work of God proſperouſly; but it was retarded by the Differences between the ſacred Congregations, who claim'd it as their Privilege to ſend Vicars Apoſtolical into the Eaſt, and the King of *Portugal*, who pretended it to be his Right to name all the Biſhops there. This Contention ſtopt the Zeal of the Miſſionaries a while, but at length the ſacred Congregation ſent over the Biſhop of *Eleliopolis*, with ſome *French* Eccleſiaſticks, who immediately upon their Arrival put a new Life into the Miſſionaries there, who acknowledged his Authority, and took an Oath to him. This was Matter of great Joy to the Biſhop, and now all Things were made ready to till the Lord's Vineyard; but God Almighty was ſatisfied with his good Intentions, and took him to himſelf a few Months after his Arrival, to the great Grief and Surprize of the Faithful. This Loſs was no ſooner heard at *Rome*, but the ſacred Congregation ſent 2 other Biſhops to ſupply his Place, under the Title of Vicars Apoſtolical. The firſt was M. *d'Argolis*, an *Italian*, of the Order of St. *Francis*, a Perſon noted for his excellent Vertues and Knowledge. This wiſe Prelate being arrived in *China*, very much contributed to the Comfort of the Faithful, and Converſion of the Heathen by his ſweet Temper. He viſited the Provinces under his Care, conſecrated Prieſts, confirm'd and taught the People, and united all Mens Affections in Chriſt. The 2d was M. *de Baſilee*, a *Chineſe*, educated by ſome *Franciſcans*, but taking on him the Order of St. *Dominick*, when he was only a Miſſionary, he had an ardent Zeal for the Converſion of his Country, and during the Perſecution of F. *Adam* he was the main Support of the Chriſtian Religion in all the Provinces, which he travell'd thro' and ſtrengthen'd in the Faith. When he was conſecrated Biſhop, he perform'd all his Duties perfectly well, and the Holy See ſo far approved of his Conduct, as to allow him to chuſe his Succeſſor. He named F. *de Laniſſa*, his Vicar-General, and ſoon after fell ſick at *Nankim*, and died full of happy Viſions of his approaching Happineſs. He was the firſt Prieſt, firſt Monk, and firſt Biſhop that ever *China* gave to Chriſtianity, and his Memory ought ever to be reſpected for his Labour and Merits for Religion. Beſides this, the Pope honour'd Mr. *Maigrot* and Mr. *Pin*, 2 Doctors of the *Sorbon*, with the Titles of Vicars Apoſtolical, and they are diligent and zealous to follow the Intentions of the Holy See, but the Want of Miſſionaries kept the Converſion of *China* uncompleat. To ſupply this Defect ſome zealous Perſons have endeavoured to ſettle ſome Miſſions in *China*, but could never compaſs their Deſigns. *Lewis* the Great, being zealous for the Eſtabliſhing of the Goſpel, ſent 6 Jeſuits into *China* (of whom F. *Le Comte* was one) who found the Harveſt plentiful, but almoſt deſtitute of Workmen; yet have done this Good, that they have removed all the former Lets and Impediments which aroſe from the Differences between the Pope and King of *Portugal*, and by their Example have encouraged other Miſſionaries to follow them, and endeavour the compleat Converſion of *China*, whoſe Labours God Almighty bleſs.

Mr. *Maigrot* and Mr. *Pin* Vicars Apoſtolical in *China*.

In the 2d Letter to F. *de la Chaize*, Confeſſor to the *French* King, *Lewis Le Comte* gives an Account of the Succeſs and Labours of the *French* King's Miſſionaries, and ſays, That 2 of them, F. *Garbillon* and F. *Bouvet*, were detain'd at Court, where F. *Garbillon* was employ'd with Prince *Soſan* to make a Peace between the *Muſcovites* and *Tartars*, and managed Matters there with ſuch Prudence, as a Peace was concluded with Satisfaction to both Sides by his Means only, as the Prince told the Emperor. This Character ſtirr'd up the Prince's Curioſity to be acquainted with him; and finding him a very ſenſible Perſon, capable and ſincere, he kept him near his Perſon at the Palace in the Campaign, and in his Progreſs in *Tartary*; yea, he pitch'd upon him for his Tutor in Mathematicks and Philoſophy, together with F. *Bouvet*, whom he likewiſe much eſteem'd; for he has ſuch a Paſſion for Sciences, that he beſtows 2 or 3 Hours every Day upon theſe Studies, and has made ſuch a Progreſs in them, that he hath compoſed a Book of Geometry himſelf, and is able to inſtruct the young Princes his Sons in the moſt difficult Propoſitions of *Euclid*.

F. *Garbillon's* Service at Court.

The Emperor's Love of Sciences.

While theſe 2 Fathers remain'd at Court, where they got ſo much Credit, as to be the Supports of Religion, the reſt were not unſerviceable in the Provinces: F. *Fontency* went to *Nankim*, F. *Viſdelou* took care of the Churches of *Xanſi*, and F. *Le Comte* had the Province of F. *Faber* appointed him at *Xenſi*. How each of them managed their Provinces is not likely to be particularly known to the reſt, and therefore *Le Comte* gives only an Account of his own Labours and the Succeſs of them. He ſays, That the Chriſtians of his Province, tho' they had been deſerted many Years, preſerved much of their firſt Fervency, and to improve them farther, he reduced his Buſineſs to 3 Heads. The firſt was to cheriſh and keep up their Piety by preaching of the Word of God; but above all by particular Exhortations, which are abundantly more profitable and edifying than any thing that is ſpoken in Publick, where the Diſcourſe is often not underſtood, either thro' the Stupidity of the People, or the Preacher's ill Utterance and Pronunciation. But becauſe he could not make ſuch frequent Viſits as were neceſſary, he gave them Godly Books, with which the Miſſionaries have furniſh'd the *Chineſe* upon all Subjects of Divinity. The 2d Method he took to encreaſe the fervent Zeal of the Chriſtians, was Prayer, to which he aſſembled them twice a Day in Publick. They ſung in 2 Choirs with ſuch marvellous Devotion, as that they might be Examples to the *European* Chriſtians. They don't underſtand ſinging by Notes, but have Tunes of their own Compoſure no ways unpleaſant. They are of a Temper that needs ſomething to heighten their Devotion; ſumptuous Ornaments, Singing, Muſical Inſtruments and Ceremonies are taking with them, and thoſe he took Care to procure them, and by theſe Means brought them to a great Conformity to the Goſpel Precepts. They made their Confeſſion every Fortnight, and that with Tears, and in the Evening ſubmitted to ſevere Penance in the Veſtry. They received the Holy Sacrament with a profound Veneration, proſtrating themſelves with Lamentation before the ſacred Myſteries. The ſame Reſpect they paid to Images, Reliques, Medals, Holy Water, and whatever elſe bears the Character of Religion. They ſhew a great Honour to the Virgin *Mary*, whom they call *Chin-Mou*, i. e. The holy Mother, and the Women dedicate all their Churches to her (for they never enter into the Mens Churches, nor the Men into theirs.) But the paſſionate Love they bear to Jeſus Chriſt makes them really devout, and walk worthy of the Profeſſion they have embraced. They continually repeat theſe Words, *Jeſus, the Maſter of Heaven, who ſhed his Blood for us, Jeſus, who died for us, ſave us*: For as it is the Myſtery we moſt carefully inſtruct them in, ſo it is that which they moſt ſtedfaſtly believe. Our Images did at firſt give them Offence, but now they are accuſtom'd to them, that ceaſeth. The Croſs is carry'd publickly in the Streets in Proceſſion, 'tis planted on the Tops of Churches, and painted on the Doors of their Houſes, and on *Good-Friday* the Ceremony of adoring it is no where perform'd with more Adoration than

F. *Le Comte's* Province, and his Succeſs in it.

Private Exhortations.

Godly Books.

Prayers.

Singing.

Confeſſion.

The Holy Sacrament.

Love of Chriſt.

Images.

The Croſs.

His Aſſiſtance to ſubdue the Rebels.

The Biſhop of *Heliopolis* ſent into *China*.

M. *d'Argolis's* Service to the Church, as alſo M. *de Baſilee's*.

The Women how instructed.

than in *China*. The Instructions of the *Chinese* Women is much more troublesome than that of Men. They are never visited but in the time of Sickness, nor do they ever visit the Missionaries. They are only to be spoken with in their Churches, in which they meet but once a Fortnight, and may not meet oftener by the Laws of their Country, for fear of Scandal. They almost all confess then, and will receive Instructions with all Humility. They blindly pin their Faith on the Confessor's Sleeve, and tho' it be difficult to bring them off from their ordinary Peccadillo's, yet they do not find it hard to bewail them. They have no notorious Sins almost, and could they be brought to keep Peace in their Domestick Affairs, their Lives would be wonderful innocent. They always apply themselves to Lutiness or Prayer, seeking all Opportunities for the Education of their Children, or for their own Improvement, very scrupulous and nice in the Observation of every Christian Duty, Charity, frequent in Mortifications, and particularly zealous for the Conversion of Idolaters.

The Instruction of Youth.

The Instruction of the Youth is not less troublesome. The most safe and effectual Way of training them up to Religion is under a Christian School-Master, to whom even the Idolaters will send their Children for Cheapness or Nearness, and if there were a good Number of Christian School-Masters that should teach *gratis* in their Cities, it would be the best Means to propagate Religion, and preserve good Manners; but the Missionaries are so far from being able to do this, that they are harn put to it to subsist themselves. They have infinite Toil and Hardship in travelling from Place to Place, and exercising their Ministry to Hearers almost indefatigable; but their Reward is in Heaven only, they meet not with Necessaries on Earth in most Places.

The Conversion of Idolaters, a good Method propounded.

As to the Conversion of Idolaters, they meet with great Difficulties in it. Persons of Quality, and such as would be thought wise, object against the Mysteries of our Faith, the Trinity and Incarnation. A God that could die seems to them, as it did to the *Grecks*, *Foolishness*; but the Existence of God, eternal, supreme, and infinitely just and powerful goes easily down with them; and therefore to convince them, he proposed to them to believe only what Reason, free from Passion, dictates, *viz.* That there is a God, who being infinitely holy, enjoins us to love Vertue, and shun Vice, to obey Princes, to respect our Relations, and love our Neighbours as our selves; That good Men, who are often miserable in this World, enjoy a certain Reward in the next; but on the contrary, wicked Men, who live in sinful Pleasures, are rigorously punished after Death; That Hope and Fear, indeed, are usually the first Motives of Obedience, but nothing but an inflam'd Love of God can make us perfect. These Lessons he bad them practise with a Spirit of Love and Meekness, and worship devoutly the God they acknowledged, begging of Him to reveal those sublime Truths to them, which seem'd above Reason. The most part of the Gentiles, being accustom'd blindly to pursue their Passions, found some Difficulty to embrace this new sort of Life; but those that did submit to it in good Earnest were in a few Days disposed to believe the greatest Mysteries of the Gospel; so true is it that Faith is the Gift of God, and they that seek obtain; for after these Things perform'd, God did pretty often concur miraculously in the Conversion of such as used it; for Christ in a Vision appear'd to some, and strangely influenced the Souls of others to believe and obey. The other Gentiles had several Rubs in their Ways, which kept them from embracing the Gospel heartily; such as these:

The Success of it.

Impediments of Conversion.

1. Restitution of ill gotten Goods.

1. Restitution of ill getten Goods. The Mandarins and Merchants have enrich'd themselves purely by Cozenage and Cheating. The Merchants always sell their Wares at the highest Rate, and never utter good Wares till they are rid of their bad; and tho' their Laws tolerate these Dealings, yet Religion will not allow it. When a Man, who has thus enrich'd himself, comes to the Knowledge of God, he must restore his ill Gains. This they will hardly be brought to do, and when they are press'd to it, will reply; *That they do not cheat by selling dear, for as the Buyer would have their Goods for as little as he can, so may they sell them for as much: 'Tis the Fruit of Industry, and such Profits can be no Violence. When they put off bad Wares, 'tis the Buyer abuses himself, not they, for he sees what he buys.* But supposing that their Goods be ill gotten, they say, How can they in Conscience reduce their Children to Beggary to restore them. Thus they oppose the Truth, and harden themselves in their Practices against it, so hard is it, as our Lord long ago said, for a rich Man to enter into the Kingdom of God. The *Mandarins* also have scarce any Fund to maintain themselves and Families but Injustice; for the Ministers of State and chief Presidents of *Pekin* do under-hand exact great Sums of the Vice-Roys, who to make it good have Recourse to the *Mandarins* of Provinces, and they to reimburse themselves lay a Tax upon their Under-Officers. This Ministry of Injustice gives a mortal Blow to our most holy Faith, and hinders the Establishment of it upon a solid Foundation, because a Christian *Mandarin* ceases to be a Christian if he pillages and robs, and if he doth not, he cannot continue a *Mandarin*: However, we have seen in *China*, as in the primitive Church, some Examples of this Christian Generosity, that counts the Goods of the World as nothing in Hopes that the Kingdom of Heaven will one Day be their Inheritance.

Multitude of Wives.

The 2d Obstacle in the Way of converting the *Chinese* proceeds from the Multitude of Wives, which the Laws of their Country permits them, especially Persons of Quality, who may have as many Concubines as they can keep; for the *Mandarins* by their Condition being debarr'd of all ordinary Divertisements, as Gaming, Hunting, Visits and publick Meetings, are forced to spend all their Leisure Time with their Women, of which they make a *Seraglio*. Now to part with these, as the Christian Laws obliges them, and confine themselves to one Wife, deprives them of all Thoughts of Conversion as soon as it is mention'd, as many Instances have prov'd. The Conversion of Women who are thus engaged is more difficult: They are bought for that purpose, and if they forsake their Master, they may be punish'd as their Slaves, and none dare harbour them; and so if a Wife turn Christian, her Husband that remains an Idolater will sell her to another for a Concubine, so that 'tis almost impossible for them to be Christians. The Missionaries are at their Wits End what Course to take, and can find no other but Prayer to God, who desires the Salvation of all Men, to find out some Way to release them from these Difficulties, and bring them into the true Way of Salvation. God has been pleased to do many Miracles in Cases less necessary, and they hoped He would shew His Power in their Deliverance. But, notwithstanding these great Obstacles to the Conversion of the *Chinese*, God's Blessing, with the Missionaries Diligence, hath gain'd some Ground upon the Idolaters, and there are in *China* above 200 Churches and private Chappels dedicated to the true God, and govern'd by the Ministers of Christ. *Pekin*, *Nankim* and *Macao* have each their particular Bishops, made by the King of *Portugal*; other Provinces are under the Jurisdiction of 3 Apostolick Vicars, F. *de Leonissa*, an *Italian* Franciscan, and Mr. *Maigrot* and Mr. *Pin*, *Frenchmen*, Doctors of the *Sorbon*. There are also 4 of the Seminary of Foreign Missions at *Paris*, 4 Dominicans, 12 or 15 Franciscans, and 3 or 4 of the Order of St. *Augustine*, all *Spaniards*. The Jesuits who founded the Mission are about 40, besides those that are lately come over with the F. F. *Grimolds* and *Spinola*, too few for so great an Empire, unless God would pour out upon them the first Spirit of the Gospel, which in one Apostle was sufficient to convert whole Empires. Not but that the present Missionaries have laboured with Success, for in 5 or 6 Years they have converted above 50000 Idolaters, besides several Thousands of Children, which they baptize in the Streets of *Pekin*. If the Emperor could be prevail'd upon to come over to Christ's Doctrine, he would be accompany'd with the Change of the whole Nation; but for that, if they wait some Ages, their Patience will be sufficiently recompenced whenever it happens. There are scarce any Princes or Ministers of State, and but few *Mandarins* converted; *Not many rich, not many noble are called.* The common People make up the greatest Number of Believers, and the Poor are Jesus's Portion. The main Body of Christians is in the Province of *Nankim*, and more especially in the Territory of *Cham-Hai*; but the Faith is more lively in the Provinces of *Quantum*, *Pekin*, *Xanfi* and *Xensi*. There are as many *Tartars* as *Chinese* Christians, and tho' these latter are more easily converted, yet the former are most couragious in Temptations when converted; they hardly bowe to the Yoke of Christ, but will carry it thro' the sorest Persecutions. Women being rarely seen, are but ignorant, yet innocent and devout. The Churches generally are without Beauty and Ornament, as is usual and necessary in Times of Persecution; yet the Missionaries have raised some tolerable Structures. The Church of *Pekin* is well built, with a neat Stone Frontispiece. Those in *Kiamchen*, *Cham-Hai* and *Foshen*, as also those at *Canton* and some other Places, are as fine as our ordinary Churches in *Europe*; but the Church of *Hamchen* was so very pretty and neat, as deserv'd Admiration, being all over adorn'd with Gildings, Paintings, and curious Pictures, but it now lies in Ashes, and tho' they cannot hope again to be able to raise such another Structure, yet they both hope and pray, that God will rear himself living Temples in the Conversion of new Believers.

Women hardest to be convers. ed.

Two Hundred Churches in *China*.

The Success of the Jesuits Labour.

The Provinces where Christians flourish most.

Their best Churches.

Hitherto the Missionaries have preached the Gospel at their own Perils, the State conniving at it at best, and often persecuting them; but it hath pleased Heaven at length to sweeten their Labours with a late Establishment of the Christian Church upon a solid Foundation: For the Emperor hath at last granted an entire Liberty of Conscience to his Subjects, by allowing in a publick Edict the Christian Faith thro' his whole Empire; the Occasion and Series of it is as follows: F. *Alcala*, a *Spanish* Dominican, and a zealous Missionary in *China*, purchased an House at *Lanki*, a Village of *Chekiam*, and tho' this Settlement was contrary to an Edict made by the *Mandarin* of the Place in 1669, yet he met with no Opposition init, till the Governour, nettled with some indiscreet Words of his Servants, resolved to proceed according to Law against him for preaching a strange Doctrine, and settling in the Empire. The Missionary alledged the Emperor's Favour to some of his Brethren, and that by a publick Edict he had granted them Power to settle where they pleased in his Kingdom, and 'twas for one of them he had bought this House, and lodged only in it till he came. However, this *Mandarin* associating another with him prohibited all Exercise of the Christian Religion in his Government, and treated it in such a despightful Manner, that F. *Intorcetta*, a Missionary of the same Province, thought himself obliged not to dissemble the Affront, and therefore accused him of condemning by his private Authority what the Emperor seemed to allow of to the Governour of the Capital City, desiring him to oblige this Under-Officer to retract his Order. This Letter the Governour dispatched to the *Mandarin*, who so highly resented it, that

Christianity allow'd in *China*, and how effected.

A Quarrel between F. *Alcala* and a Mandarin.

F. *Intorcetta* accuses him to a superior Governour.

that he resolved utterly to destroy the Christian Religion, procuring the Vice-Roy and other *Mandarins* to join with him. The Storm fell upon F. *Intorcetta*; and he was commanded forthwith to avoid the Country, to burn all the Books of his Religion, with the Tables of Printing that hung in his House. F. *Intorcetta* was not at all surprized at the Order, but reply'd, *That he being settled there by the Emperor's express Order, to continue there all his Days, he look'd upon the Vice-Roy's Order to disturb his Tranquility injurious to the Emperor.* The Vice-Roy, surprized at this Answer, durst attempt nothing against his Person, but ordered his inferior *Mandarins* to summon him before their Tribunals, and perplex him without giving him a Moment's Respite. F. *Intorcetta* was sick, and might have deny'd to appear, but being glad of an Occasion to confess Christ, he got himself carried before the Judges, where he was treated civilly, but against the Vice-Roy's, Orders. F. *Intorcetta* seeing the Storm approaching, wrote to the Missionaries at Court to put a Stop to it. The Emperor was in *Tartary* a Hunting, and F. *Gerbillon* was with him. The Letters were carry'd to him, but the Father not judging it convenient to speak of it to the Emperor, procured Prince *Sofan* to write to the Vice-Roy to desire him to stop his Proceedings, as displeasing to the Emperor: But the Vice-Roy, blinded with passion, had no Regard to his Letters, but seiz'd upon several Churches, and bestowed them on the Pagan Priests. He threatned the Father with his Indignation, if he did not abandon his Flock; he caused several Christians to be apprehended, punishing some, and imprisoning others. A Physician who had signaliz'd his Zeal to Religion by going from Door to Door to animate the Christians to Sufferings, tasted deeply of his Anger, being cruelly beat before him; but he endured it with such Patience and Courage, as ravished Admiration from the Beholders, and converted 3 Persons of Quality to the Faith.

The Vice-Roy was much provoked at these Things, but was curb'd from shewing his Resentments by 2 Letters delivered to him from Prince *Sofan*, who in one reproached him for making no Account of his Recommendation, and advised him to deliver the other to F. *Intorcetta*, and so well satisfie him, as that he might testifie the same to him, for which he would give him Thanks in another Letter; but if he did not do it, he would send to him no more. This made the Vice-Roy repent of his former Proceedings, but not thinking it honourable to retreat, much less to sue to the Missionary for his Friendship, whom he had just now treated with so much Disdain, yet fearing Prince *Sofan's* Anger, who was the most powerful Minister at Court, he resolved to stand to what he had done against Christians, and to send his Officers to *Pekin* to purge and clear himself to the Prince. In the *Interim*, F. *Intorcetta* having a secret *Item* of the Letter, the Vice-Roy had received, intimated to the Fathers at Court the small Effect they had produced, who considering the Danger the Church was in, resolved, with Prince *Sofan's* Approbation, to represent their Cause to the Emperor himself, and accordingly came to the Palace, *Dec.* 21. 1691. The Emperor sent some Eunuchs his Confidents, to know what their Business was: The Fathers presently declared to them, 'That they came to remonstrate against the Severity of the Vice-Roy of *Hamchen* 'against both Missionaries and Priests under his Government, 'which they would not have done, would Patience have pacified his Spirit, but since the Mischief encreased daily and 'was remediless, they came to prostrate themselves at the 'Emperor's Feet, as the *Asylum* of oppressed Innocence, humbly beseeching him to grant their Brethren that happy Peace 'in the Provinces, which they enjoy'd under his Protection 'at *Pekin*. The Emperor hearing their Desires had a mind to try their Constancy, and so return'd them no favourable Answer, but they never ceasing to represent their Unhappiness which his Indifference might bring on them, sent an Officer to acquaint them, 'That he did not allow of the Vice-Roy 'of *Hamchen*'s Proceedings, and that he was willing to put an 'End to the present Persecution by a secret Order sent to 'him to make Satisfaction for Mischiefs past, and to secure 'themselves for the future, they should present a Petition, and 'obtain from the Tribunes a favourable Degree for the Mis'sionaries. The Fathers made their humble Acknowledgment to the Emperor, and return'd full of Hopes of happy Success; but fearing to commit their Cause to the *Lipou*, who always declared against the Christian Religion, and knowing that if the Christian Religion were once establish'd by a publick Edict, nothing could disturb it, they chose rather to offer their Petition to the Emperor himself, who was well affected to the Christians for the good Services done by the Missionaries. They offered it first to the Emperor privately, but he finding it not fit to make an Impression upon the Spirit of the *Chinese*, drew up another himself in the *Tartarian* Language, with Liberty given them to alter, or add to it, and this on *Candlemas* Day they delivered to him publickly with the usual Ceremonies, and is to this Effect: 'That on the '9th Month of the Moon having been acquainted by F. *Intor'cetta*, that the Vice-Roy of *Eamchen* had strictly charged the 'Mandarins of his Province to pull down the Temples of the 'Christians, to burn their Printing-Tables, and had declared 'their Doctrine false, and not to be tolerated in the Empire, 'they were seized with Horror and Grief, but knowing his 'Majesty the common Father of the Afflicted, they could not 'forbear to declare their Grief to him; That his Majesty, be'ing a Lover of Truth, had given many Testimonies of his 'Affections to the *European* Missionaries, which to require 'they had perform'd many acceptable Services to his Majesty, 'and maintained a constant Loyalty to him, which are the 'undoubted Proof of the true Religion; That since his Ma'jesty vouchsafed to employ them, and put such Confidence 'in them, they humbly implored, that he would take their 'Cause in Hand, and if his Majesty, after full Information 'of their Carriage, does really find that they are innocent, 'he would let all the Empire understand by a publick Edict, 'what Judgment he has formed to himself of their Morals 'and Doctrine, which they would expect with Fear and en'tire Submission. In the 30th Year of the Reign of *Chambi*, the 10th Day of the 12th Month of the Moon.

The Emperor received this Petition very graciously, and sent it on the 18th Day of the same to the Court of *Rites*, with an Order to examine it, and make a Report of it as soon as they could. There happen'd to be a Vacation of the Courts of Judicature at that time, so that the *Lipou* did not return their Answer till the 18th Day of the first Month, and then it was contrary to the Emperor's Intentions, *viz.* 'That they 'were to stick close to such former Edicts of the Parliaments 'and their Courts, as prohibited upon grievous Penalties the 'natural Subjects of *China*, to entertain the new Doctrine of 'the *Europeans*; yet that the Church of *Hamchen* should be 'preserved, and the *Mandarins* of that Province should not 'confound the Christian Religion with the seditious Sects of '*China*. The Emperor was troubled at this Decree, and threw it aside some Days in his Closet, to see whether the *Mandarins* of the *Lipou* would revoke it, but finding them obstinate, he was afraid to provoke such turbulent Spirits, and so resolved to sign it, tho' against his Will. This Action threw the Fathers into great Consternation and Grief, which they expressed in the most passionate Terms to the Emperor's Officer; one *Chao*, a Gentleman of his Bed-Chamber, not omitting to upbraid the Emperor with deserting them, who had been so serviceable to him. This the Gentleman, who was not a little affected himself at their Tears, represented so fully to the Emperor, that he said, *Let them know I love them, and will not forsake them.*

While the Missionaries were thus involved in Trouble, the Vice-Roy of *Hamchen* triumphed in his Success, and cast about him to lay new Measures for their Ruin. He dispersed the Copies of the Decree up and down the Provinces, with severer Orders than ever against the Christians, and at last petitioned the Emperor to extirpate them; but this Request came too late: Prince *Sofan* being prevail'd upon by the Earnest Solicitations of the Fathers, became a zealous Advocate to the Emperor for the Christians, and having set before him the Zeal and Devotion of the Fathers to his Service, and shewed, that they have made no Account of their Lives to accomplish his Pleasure, and that their Doctrine was not more wholsome in it self than beneficial to the Government, he obtained of the Emperor to write a Letter to the *Calaos*, their Assessors, and all the *Tartarian Mandarins* of *Lipou*, to this Effect: 'That whereas the *Europeans* in his Court had for a 'long time been Directors of the Mathematicks, and in the 'Civil Wars had cast him some Cannon, which did him ef'fectual Service against the Rebels, and besides, their Law 'is not seditious, it seemed good to him to consider their 'Merit and Toil, and permit their Religion, allowing all 'Persons that will to go into their Churches, and make 'publick Profession of their Worship, and therefore it is his 'Will and Pleasure, that all and several the Edicts that hither'to have been published against it, by and with the Advice 'and Council of our Tribunals, shall at present be torn and 'burnt, ordering the Ministers of State, and *Tartarian Man'darins* of the Sovereign Court of Rites to examine the 'Matter, and return him their Advice with speed. This Letter was delivered to the Court in the Presence of Prince *Sofan*, who was a *Calao* of it, as was agreed on between him and the Emperor, and tho' he was no Christian, he spake so fully and pathetically for them, both as Men and Professors of Religion, how great Services they had done for the Empire, which 'twould be Ingratitude not to require by giving Permission to their Religion at least, which is so pure and holy, and so much beyond that which is practised by the *Lamas* of *Tartary*, and *Bonze's* of *China*, yea, the *Mahometans* themselves, which yet are tolerated: 'It is not (says he) the Reli'gion which commands Children to honour and obey their 'Parents, Subjects to be faithful to their Governours, Ser'vants exactly to fulfil the Wills of their Masters, which 'forbids to steal, cozen, kill, nay, not to covet any thing 'that is your Neighbour's; which abhors Perjury, Calumny, 'Lying and Falsehood; that inspires Men with Modesty, 'Simplicity, Uprightness and Temperance, that forbids e'very Vice, and commands and counsels every Vertue, and 'can you boggle to approve so holy and rational a Religion? The Emperor being informed of their Debates, convoked all the *Tartarian* and *Chinese* Ministers of State to him, were the former Debates being resumed, they at length came to this Resolution, That a Law should be enacted in Favour of the Christians, which was drawn up in form of a Petition, and presented to the Emperor in the Sense following, *viz.* 'Ilcon'pansi, Subject to your Majesty, President to the Sovereign Tri'bunal of Rites, and Chief of several other Orders, with his 'Assessors, presents to your Majesty this humble Petition: 'We have seriously examined what any ways relates to the 'Europeans, whom the Fame of your singular Prudence has 'attracted to pass the vast Ocean hither. Since they have li'ved among us they have merited our Esteem by their signal 'Services in Foreign and Civil Wars, by their composing curi'ous Books, and their sincere Affection to the Common'wealth, in which they have lived peaceably without exciting 'Commotions, or fomenting Differences, their Doctrine ha-

The Petition sent by the Emperor to the *Lipou*, and their Answer to it.

The Emperor troubled at it.

His Promise not to desert the Christians.

Prince *Sofan* perswades the Emperor to put out an Edict for the Christians.

Prince *Sofan* pleads for the Christians to the *Lipou*.

The Law made in behalf of the Christians.

Women hardest to be converted.

Two Hundred Churches in *China*.

The Success of the Jesuits Labour.

The Provinces where Christianity flourishes most.

Their best Churches.

Christianity allow'd in *China*, and how effected.

A Quarrel between the *Alcaio* and a *Mandarin*.

F. *Intorcetta* accused him to the Superior General.

The Christians Petition to the Emperor.

The Emperor's Answer.

Their Petition to the *Lipou*, framed by the Emperor.

'having no Affinity with those Sects, that molest the Empire. Wherefore as we do neither hinder the *Lamas* of *Tartary*, nor *Bonze's* of *China* to have Temples, or offer Incense to their Pagods, much less can we with any Reason restrain the *Europeans* from having their respective Churches to preach their Religion publickly. We therefore judge it meet and expedient, that all the Temples dedicated to the Lord of Heaven, in what Place soever they be, ought to be preserved, and that all Persons, who would honour this God may enter into them, and worship Him according to the Manner of the Christians, and that none for the Time to come presume to oppose it. Done in the 30th Year of the Reign of *Cham-hi*, the 3d Day of the 2d Month of the Moon. Signed by the President, Assessors, *Calaos*, and their General Officers and *Mandarins*.

The Law ratified and published by the Emperor.

The Emperor received this Decree with inexpressible Joy, and ratifying it forthwith, dispatched a Copy of it to the Fathers, sealed with the Seal of the Empire, to be kept for ever in the Archives of their House, and sometime after caused it to be published thro' the whole Empire, and the Supreme Tribunal of Rites sent it to the principal Officers, commanding them to receive it with profound Respect, and execute it punctually.

So soon as F. *Intorcetta* heard of what had passed at *Pekin*, he departed for the Court, to give the Emperor Thanks in his own and his Brethrens Name. The Emperor received him with great Affection, and caused him to be conducted back by F. *Thomas*, *Mandarin* of the Mathematicks, who was received at *Hamcheu* with joyful Acclamations, and finding the Christian Church ruin'd in a publick Conflagration, F. *Thomas* desired the Vice-Roy to build him a new one, giving him to understand, that the Emperor expected it from him. This *Mandarin* was intolerably vexed at the ill Success of his Enterprize, but was quite beside himself to think, that he must now settle him, that he sought all Means to banish; yet, like a wise Man, he dissembled the Matter, and to comply with the Time, allowed the Missionary one of the finest Houses in the City, till he could rebuild the ancient College. Nor did the Christian at *Hamcheu* triumph only at this new Edict for Liberty of Conscience, but all the Churches of the Empire; and at *Macoa* they kept a solemn Holy-day, which they celebrated with as much Devotion as Mirth; for, indeed, it is no less than a great Miracle, which God has wrought in the midst of the Earth, to settle the true Religion in a Nation so much every way averse to it. Since the Publication of this famous Edict the *Chinese* run in Crouds to be baptized, the *Mandarins* build Churches, a Prince of the Blood hath embrac'd the Faith, and the Emperor has erected a Church in his Palace, and allows the Ministers of the Gospel near his Person, and it may be a Means to compleat their Work in his Conversion.

The Thankfulness and Joy of the Christians for this Edict.

The good Effects of it.

While F. *Le Comte* remained in *China*, he had Occasion to pass to the Coast of *Coromandel*, where, and in his Passage, he made Observations upon the most remarkable Things. At *Borneo*, one of the Isles of *Synda*, is found in the Woods a sort of Beast, called, *The Savage-Man*, whose Shape, Stature, Countenance, Arms, Legs, and other Members of his Body are so like ours, that could he speak, he might deserve the Name of a Man, as well as many Barbarians in *Africk*. He is endued with extraordinary Strength, walks upon 2 Legs, and is so swift of Foot, that 'tis hard to out-run him. People of Quality course him, as we do Stags; and this sort of Hunting the King delights in: His Skin is all hairy, his Eyes are sunk into his Head, he has a stern Countenance, and a tann'd Face. His other Lineaments are pretty proportionable, but harsh and thickned by the Sun. This Account proceeds from the Inhabitants of the Isle, but wants further Confirmation. In the Straits of *Molacca*, he saw an Ape, that might almost render the former Story credible: It walk'd upon the Hind-Feet and used the Fore-Feet as Arms: Its Visage was near as well favoured as the Peoples about the *Cape of Good Hope*. Its Body was covered with white, black, or gray Wool: It cries exactly like a Child, and will express its Passions as lively as a dumb Man. They embrace and kiss such Persons as they love. They make a Noise with their Feet as Children do for Joy, or Anger. They are 4 Foot high, but extreamly nimble, and will vault upon the Tackling of a Ship like Rope-Dancers. They'll hang by one Arm, and than on a sudden turn round a Rope like a Wheel: They'll run full speed upon a Rope, and with equal Swiftness run back again: There is no Posture but they'll imitate: They'll bend like a Bow, rowl like a Bowl, hang by their Hands, Teeth, Feet, &c. as their Fancy prompts them, and which is most strange, leap from Rope to Rope, at 30, nay, 50 Foot Distance. He also saw Camelions, which are a sort of Lizzard, 8 or 10 Inches in Length. They do not live upon the Air alone, as some Naturalists have asserted, for they eat, and that very greedily: 'Tis true, being of a moist and cold Temper, they'll fast many Days, but at last they'll dwindle away and die. Their Eyes, Feet, Head and Belly are exceeding big. It is slow in its Motions; and had not Nature endued it with a Tongue of a particular Frame to catch Flies, and other small Animals, it must starve: The Tongue is round and thick at least a Foot long, and it darts it out with a marvellous Slight. It is so viscous that whatever it touches, it holds: Its Body is covered with a very fine Skin which is of a changeable Colour, according to the Passions that agitate it. In Joy it is of an Emerald Green mixt with Orange, etch'd with little gray and black Strokes, Choler makes it duskish and lived, Fear pale, and of a faded Yellow. Sometimes these Colours and many more are mixed together, so that Nature affords not a finer Variety of shadowing, nor the finest Pictures more sweet Drawing.

A strange Beast, call'd, *The Savage-Man*.

Strange Apes.

Camelions.

They eat.

Of many Colours, and why.

At *Pontichery* he saw an Animal, called, *Chieri-Marron*, which takes after the Dog, Wolf and Fox almost equally: It is of an indifferent bigness, the Hair gray and reddish; it hath short taper'd Ears, a sharp Snout, long Legs and Tail, a slender well-shaped Body. It cries just like an Infant, and is so voracious, that if it be pinched with Hunger, it will break into Houses in the Night, and fall upon People. Another sort he saw, called, *The Mangoure*, which is like our Wezel, save that the Body is longer and bigger, Legs shorter, Snout slenderer, and Eye quicker and wilder: It is very familiar, and will fawn and play with a Man like a Dog, but snarls and is very furious when it eats: It loves Hen-eggs, and has pretty Tricks to crack them: It hunts Rats, Mice and Serpents, which it seizes so cunningly on the Head, that it receives no Hurt from them. Camelions at the Sight of them, are seized with such a mortal Fear, that they become as flat as a Flounder, whereas at the Sight of a Cat, or Dog, they'll swell and be enraged. *India* hath abundance of Serpents of all Sizes; some have such Variety of Colours, that nothing can be more delightful to the Eye; others are of a Triangular Form; others have no Tail, but have 2 Heads at each End, and while the one hath the Use of its Organs, the other seems dead, and this each hath 6 Months in its turn. There are Flies of such a lively Yellow, so polish'd and shining, that no Gilding can come near it: Some are so light, that the Air seems set on fire with them in the Night, and being light on Trees, they look like Fireworks. The white Pismires are very famous as much for their mischievous, as natural Properties. They are exceeding small and white, and multiply in *Infinitum*. If they get into an House, nothing but the black Pismires can drive them out. They have such sharp Teeth, or rather Saliva, that they'll pierce thro' the greatest Bails of Silk, Cloth, Stuffs and Wool, yea, eat Cabinets and Cubboards, and spoil Copper and Silver. In *Siam* Grashoppers are the Fruit of a Tree, which produces a kind of green Filiments, which in time are metamorphiz'd into Grashoppers. There are Fish, whose Blood is as hot as a Man's, and others breathe in the Air like Terrestrial Animals, flie like Birds, croak like Toads, and bark like Dogs: Some have Heads like Men, which are called, *Mermaids*, others are poisonous, and if they strike their Fins into the Fisher-men, infallibly lame them.

The Chieri-Marron.

The Mangoure.

Serpents.

Flies.

White Pismires.

Grashoppers.

Strange Fish.

Other Wonders of the Sea might be mentioned, but since there is scarce any thing that comes out of it so valuable as Pearl, he gives such a Description of the Birth, Nature and Fishing of it, as may be depended upon, and is as follows:

All Men almost know that Pearl is engendred in a sort of Oister, found in the *Indies*, between Cape *Comerin*, and the Channel *de la Croux*; from whence it takes the Name of the Fishery. This sort of Fishing is very chargeable, and therefore, before they engage in it, they make a Trial of what Profit they may hope for by taking some of the Oisters up first, which if they prove fair and big, and in good Numbers, they begin about the 15th of *March*. When the Day is come, the whole Fleet, which consists sometimes of 800, and sometimes 3000 Barks, puts out to Sea as far as 7, 8, or 10 Fathom Water, to the Place, where they judge is most copious Fishing. The Crew of each Bark is usually 50 or 60 Mariners, of which 20 are Divers, and the rest their Assistants. Having cast Anchor, the Divers go to work; every one of them fastens under his Belly a good big Stone of 6 Inches Diameter, and a Foot long, cut Arch-wise, to apply it close to his Body, and another to his Feet, to carry him thro' the Waves: With him he carries a Fork of Iron to pull the Oisters from the Rocks, and a Net like a Sack to put the Oisters in: Being at the Bottom, they hastily snatch up the Oisters (for they can't stay above half an Hour at most, and few so long) and when they have filled their Sacks, are drawn up by a Rope. At what Depth soever they go, 'tis as light in the Water, as upon Land, and they sometimes see monstrous Fish, which have devoured some of them. Some will bring up 500 Oisters at a Pull, but others not above 50, or 100. Some of the Divers, when they are come up, will rest themselves, but others do not require it, being accustomed to it. The Oisters, when unloaded, are cast into Pits of Sand dug on purpose, and there lie till the Rain, Wind, or Sun forces them to open of themselves, which soon kills them, and the Meat growing dry, the Pearls come out easily: The Oisters are outwardly like others, but within more like Silver, and more glistering; the largest are as big as a Man's Hand, and very delicate Meat. The Pearls lie scattered here and there in the whole Substance of the Oister, some bigger and some less. The Oister is often set thick with them, but there are in one Oister seldom more than 2 of any tolerable Bigness. They are naturally white, more or less according to the Quality of the Mother. The yellow, and black are rare, and of no Value. The Pearl is of several Forms, pointed like a Pear, oval, round, full of Angles, Barroque, *i. e.* flat on one Side and round on the other, and generally of all sorts of Figures. The best Pearl is found here, for it is always white, and will never turn yellow or pale, as other Pearl will. The Gain of this Fishing is thus distributed: Every Diver pays 6 Crowns to the *Dutch*. One Day in 8 is for the Skipper, a 3d part of what is taken besides, is for the Assistants, and the Diver has all the rest. The People of the Coast, called, *Paravas*, have the Privilege of the Fishing for their Money, tho' the *Dutch* will sometimes rob them of all. It continues 3 whole Months.

Pearl-Fishing.

The Beginning of it.

The Divers Art.

Their Danger.

The Pearl how taken out.

The Quantity of Pearl in an Oister.

THE

r the

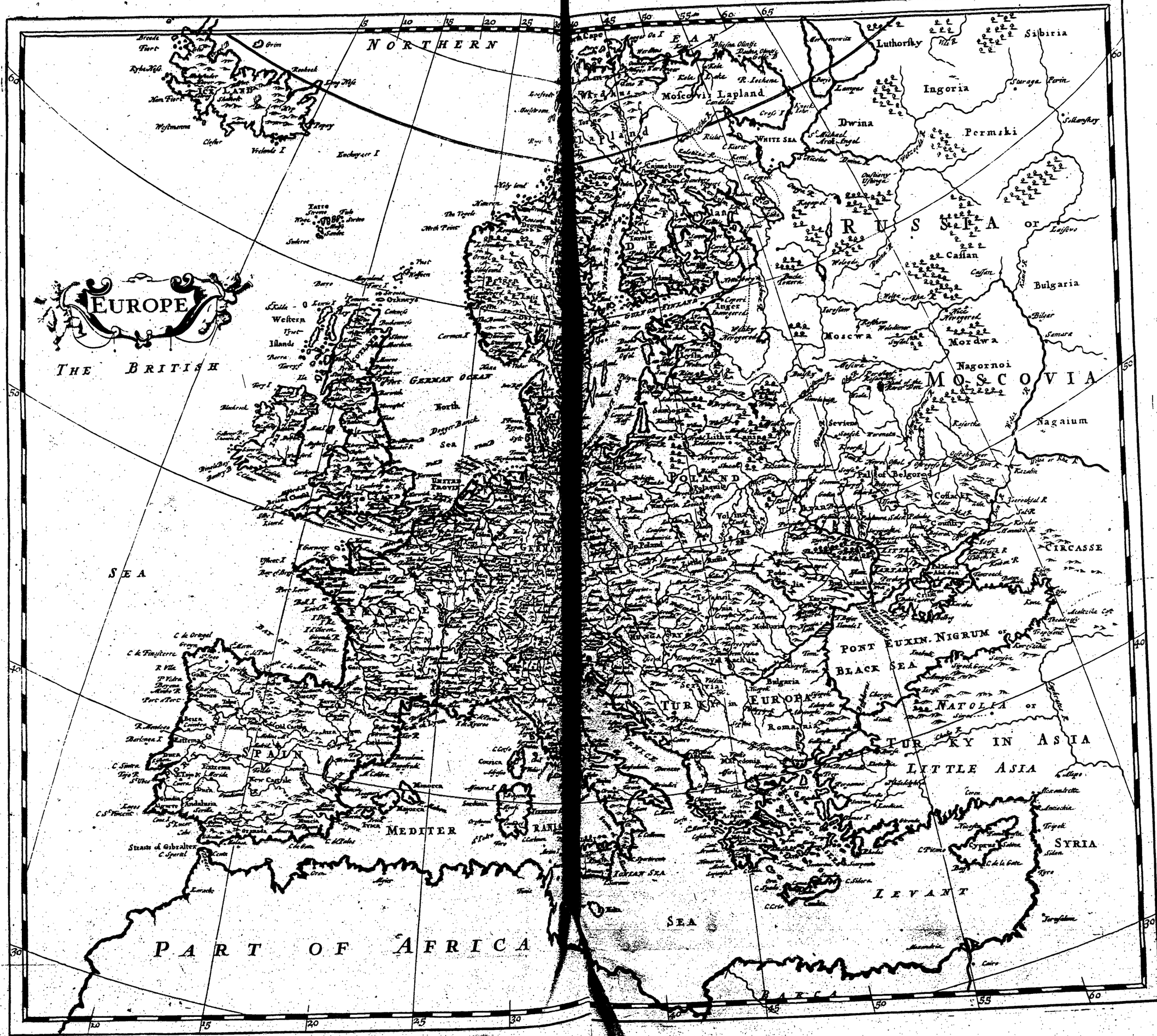
ren, The *Chiri-*
lly : *Marron*.
sh ;
and
ant,
, it
ple.
our The *Man-*
ter, *gouro*.
very
but
ggs,
Mice
that
t of
ome
Dog,
Ser- Serpents.
hat
of a
ls at
the
urn.
shi- Flies.
ght,
and
hite White Pi-
, as mites.
nite,
ning
such
the
abi-
Siam
kind Grasshop-
into pers.
an's,
flie Strange Fish
ave
poi-
, in-

ince
: as
and
:
t of Pearl-
the Fishing.
e of
and
l of
ters
am-
Day The Begin-
ning of it.
oo,
, 8,
nost
o or
heir The Divers
rk ; Art.
one
, to
rry
ron
s to
tch
oft,
are
'tis Their Dan-
see ger.
ome
50,
rest
l to
and The Pearl
Sun how taken
em, out.
ly:
like
as a
cat-
ter,
nick The Quan-
2 of tity of Pearl
or in an Oister
ow,
eral
Bar-
ge-
ere,
, as
ed:
8 is
the
the
ing
all.

I E

he Rivers
ran and
Vaag.

The *Danube*


EUROPE
THE BRITISH
SEA
NORTHERN
PART OF AFRICA
GERMAN OCEAN
North Dogger Banck Sea
FRANCE
SPAIN
MEDITER
RANIA
Western Islands
Straits of Gibraltar
Moscovia Lapland
Lapland
Luthorsky
Sibiria
Ingoria
Dwina
Permski
WHITE SEA
RUSSIA or
Cassan
Bulgaria
Moscwa
Mordwa
Nagornoi
MOSCOVIA
Nagaium
POLAND
Pal of Belgorod
Cossacks
Country
CIRCASSE
PONT EUXIN. NIGRUM or
BLACK SEA
TURKY in EUROPA
Bulgaria
Romania
NATOLIA or
TURKY IN ASIA
LITTLE ASIA
SYRIA
LEVANT
SEA
BARCA

times these Colours and many more are mixed together, so It continues 3 whole Months.

THE

Navigantium atq; Itinerantium Bibliotheca.

VOL. II. LIB. III.

Dr. *Edward Brown's* TRAVELS INTO Divers Parts of Europe;

VIZ.

Hungaria, Bulgaria, Macedonia, Theſſaly, Auſtria, Styria, Carinthia, Carniola, and *Friuli*; through a great part of *Germany,* and the *Low Countries*; through *Marca Treviſana,* and *Lombardy,* on both ſides the *Po.* With Obſervations on the *Mines, Baths,* and *Mineral Waters,* in all thoſe Parts, *&c.*

A General Deſcription of HUNGARY.

HAving elſewhere given a particular Account of the Excellency of *Hungary,* in reſpect of its Mines, Baths, and Mineral Waters, I will only add in this place, that beſides theſe Advantages, it may boaſt of another; which is of its Rivers, in which perhaps it excels any other Country in *Europe.*

The River *Tiſſe.* On the East-ſide it has that Noble River *Tibiſcus,* or the *Theyſſe,* ariſing at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountain, in the Country of *Maromorus,* and being increas'd by the Waters of the River *Mariſcus,* or *Mariſa,* and of ſeveral others, joins its Current with the *Danube* between *Waradin,* St. *Peter,* and *Belgrade.* This River carries vaſt Quantities of Stone Salt, from the Salt Mines of *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania,* and ſo by the *Danube* to all places as far as *Presburgh;* (it being not permitted to be carried higher, leſt it ſhould obſtruct the Sale of the *Auſtrian* Salt.) a conſiderable quantity of the ſaid Salt being carried down the *Danube,* and ſo by the River *Morava* into *Servia,* and other adjacent Countries.

The River *Rab.* On the Weſt-ſide is the River *Rab* (*Arabo*) which has its riſe in *Styria,* and being in its paſſage augmented by the Waters of the *Lauffnitz, Pinca, Ganez,* and other Rivers, falls into the *Danube* near *Raab* or *Javarinum.* The late Defeat of the Turks at St. *Gothard,* near this River, has rendred its Name famous to Poſterity.

The River *Drave.* Upon the South-ſide are the two conſiderable Rivers, the *Dravus* or *Drave,* and the *Savus* or *Save.* The firſt has its Source in the Country of *Saltzburgh,* (part of the ancient *Noricum*) and after a Courſe of 300 Miles through *Carinthia* and *Hungary,* exonerates it ſelf into the *Danube,* near *Erdod,* or *Teutoburgum.* At its entrance into *Hungary,* it is joyn'd by the long River *Mur*; but a great way before that, even near its Source, is a conſiderable River.

The River *Save.* The *Save,* the ſecond Noble River on that ſide, has its firſt Spring in *Carinthia,* and being augmented by the acceſſion of many other Rivers, after a Courſe of 300 Miles, joyns with the *Danube* near *Belgrade.* It is a very goodly Stream even at *Crainburgh* (*Carnodunum*), a goodly Town, not far diſtant from the Head-Spring; which is ſo conſiderably enlarged afterwards, that it contains divers remarkable Iſlands, as that of *Metubaris,* on the Weſt-ſide of *Sirmium,* and that of *Seſſeck* (*Segeſtica*), near *Zagabia,* on which anciently was built a ſtrong Fortreſs, unto which the *Romans* uſed to carry their Proviſions, and other Neceſſaries from *Aquileia,* and ſo by Land to *Neuportus,* for the uſe of their Forces in theſe Provinces. Into the fertile Plains betwixt theſe two Rivers, *viz.* the *Drave* and the *Save, Solyman the Magnificent* retired from before *Vienna,* and ſo further to *Belgrade.*

On the North-ſide of *Hungary* are the Rivers ariſing from the *Carpathian* Hills, which are the Boundaries betwixt that Kingdom and *Poland*; *viz.* The River *Gran,* which falls into the *Danube* over-againſt *Gran,* or *Strigonium*; the River *Vagus,* or *Waag,* which joyns with the *Danube* near *Comorrah*; it is generally conceiv'd to equal the *Po* in *Italy*; this I am ſure of, that at *Frieſtadt* (above 50 Miles before it runs into the *Danube*) it is already a conſiderable Stream, and has a long Bridge over it; and another very near to its Source, at *Trenſchin*, a handſome Town, famous for 32 Springs of Hot and Mineral Waters. The Rivers *Gran* and *Waag.*

Beſides theſe, that great and noted River the *Danube,* The *Danube.* paſſes quite through *Hungary,* not any one Province having ſo large a ſhare of this River, as that Kingdom: For taking this River *Danube* from the City of *Ulm,* in *Suabia* (where it begins to be navigable) it paſſes by *Ingolſtadt, Ratisbon, Straubing, Paſſau, Lintz,* and *Vienna,* unto *Presburgh*; from whence it continues its Courſe for at leaſt 300 Miles through *Hungary,* before it comes to *Belgrade.* Not to mention here its ſmoother paſſage along the Shores of *Servia, Bulgaria, Wallachia,* and *Moldavia,* and its diviſion into many Mouths, by which after it has receiv'd into its Channel above 60 great Rivers, and by a modeſt Computation, kept its Courſe for 1500 Miles, it exonerates into the *Euxine,* or *Black Sea*; thence it is viſible, that in reſpect of its different parts, it might well be mention'd by a double Name by the Geographers, *viz.* by that of *Danubius,* and *Iſter. Strabo* aſcribes that Name unto it below its Cataract, or Water-fall, near *Axiopolis,* in the inferiour *Meſia,* or *Bulgaria*; whereas *Appian,* and moſt modern Authors, begin it at its Confluence with the *Save,* near *Belgrade.*

Besides these large Rivers, it has divers others, *Fluvii non ignobiles*, as *Pliny* stiles them, *viz.* The *Sarvizza*, or *Orpanus*, arising near *Esperies* (*Vesprinium*), and passing by *Stulweissenburgh* (*Alba Regalis*), falls into the *Danube*. The River *Walpo*, or *Vulpanus*, which has its rise near a Town of the same Name; we pass'd over it by *Walcovar*, and the River *Bosneth*, or *Bacunthus*, which exonerates it self into the *Save* not far from old *Sirmium*. Most of these great Rivers are covered with long Bridges. The Bridge of Boats over the *Danube*, betwixt *Strigonium* and *Barchan*, is the first upon this River after you come from *Vienna*. I saw also the Ruines of a Stone-bridge, upon the Shore of St. *Andrew's* Island, by *Virovichitz*; but the *Turks* now-a-days neglect those Bridges, instead of which they make use of Bridges of Boats, which they find more useful, and contrive so conveniently, that they may with ease open a passage for Vessels that come that way.

Bridges over the Rivers of *Hungary*.

Such a Bridge of Boats is betwixt *Buda* and *Pest*, over the *Danube*, being above half a Mile long; and if *Sigismund* had lived to effect his Design of building a Stone-Bridge in that place, no Bridge in *Europe* could, in all probability, have compared with it.

Bridge of Boats at *Buda*.

Calocza, formerly an Arch-Bishop's See, has also a Bridge; and near *Wiskovar* is another over the River *Walpo*. But the Bridge of *Esseck* (anciently *Musa*), built partly over the *Drave*, and partly over the low marshy Grounds and Fens, justly challenges the precedency before all the rest: It is five Miles long, with Towers upon it at each quarter of a Mile, being handsomely railed on both sides, and sustain'd by large Piles of Wood, nine or ten in a rank for each Arch. Count *Nicholas Serini* burnt that part of it which was built over the *Drave*, in the last *Turkish* War, instead of which the *Turks* have laid a Bridge of Boats a little below the other; which I pass'd 1669. Here it was the unfortunate *Hungarian* K. *Lewis* engaged with the *Turks* under *Soliman*, which cost him his Life. In ancient times there were likewise many Bridges over that part of the *Danube*, known generally by the Name of *Ister*. *Darius* King of *Persia* made a Bridge of Boats over that Mouth of the *Ister* call'd *Ostium Sacrum*: And according to *Nicephorus*, *Constantine* built a Stone-Bridge over it; but that admirable Bridge built by the Emperor *Adrian* (if we may give Credit to *Dion* the Historian) surpass'd all the rest: Some of its Ruines are to this Day to be seen near *Severin*, about 20 *Hungarian* Leagues from *Belgrade*. It consisted of 20 Piles of square Stone of 100 Foot high, besides the Foundation of 60 Foot broad, the distance betwixt each of them being 170 Foot; and joyn'd by Arches with this Inscription:

The Bridge of *Esseck*.

Fig. I

The Bridge of *Adrian*.

PROVIDENTIA AUG.
VERE PONTIFICIS VIRTUS ROMANA
QUID NON DOMAT? SUB JUGUM ECCE?
RAPITUR ET DANUBIUS.

And for an everlasting Memorial, many Coins were stamp'd in Silver with this Inscription, *DANUVIUS*.

Not any River, that I know of, has such large and well-peopled Islands as the *Danube*; as the Isle of St. *Andrew's*, betwixt *Vicegrad* and *Vacia*: Another lies a little below *Buda*, against the West-side of which stands *Adom*, 40 Miles long, and containing many Villages; another opposite to *Mohatz*, and another at the Confluence of the *Drave* and the *Danube*, and another new one near *Belgrade*, where 40 Years ago there were not the least Footsteps of an Island to be seen: And if the River *Leyta* be the Boundary of *Austria*, the Isle of *Schutz* (*Insula Cituorum*), excels all the others, being well-peopled, and full of good Villages, besides divers considerable Towns, such as *Comorah*, *Semarien*, &c. Another thing is observable in the *Danube*, that no River whatever, at such a distance from its Mouth, can boast of such considerable Naval Engagements as this; the Emperor keeping his Gallies at *Vienna*, *Presburgh*, and *Comorah*; as the *Turks* do theirs at *Strigenium*, *Buda*, *Belgrade*, &c.

Isles of the *Danube*.

It seems not a little surprising, when we read, That *Mahomet* at the Siege of *Belgrade*, appear'd upon the *Danube* with 200 Gallies, and other arm'd Vessels, which were so smartly engag'd by the Christian Fleet, that besides what was taken, the *Turks* were forc'd to set their own Vessels on fire, to prevent their falling into the hands of the Enemy.

Turk's History.

The Christians had a Fleet of 24 Gallies, and 80 other arm'd Vessels, besides Tenders and Ships of Burthen, at the Siege of *Buda*: And when *Solyman the Magnificent* lay before *Vienna*, the Imperial Admiral, *Wolfgang Hodder*, did a signal Piece of Service with his Vessels; for coming out of *Presburgh*, he sunk the *Turkish* Vessels, which carried the heavy Cannon, intended for the Battering of the Walls.

Hungary is also furnish'd with divers considerable Lakes, as the Lake *Balaton*, or *Platsee*, as they call it (the *Volcæa* of the Ancients) extending a great length betwixt *Esperies* and the River *Drave*, being guarded with several Forts, which have proved of great use against the Incursions of the *Turks*.

The Lakes of *Hungary*.

The *Newsidler* Sea, being seven *German* Leagues long, and three broad, having borrow'd its Name from the adjacent Town of *Newsidel*, a handsome place, situate upon a Hill, with a small square Castle. This is the same mentioned by *Pliny*, under the Name of *Peiso*; and the modern *Hungarians* call it *Terseu*, lying just half way betwixt *Vienna* and *Sabaric*.

The Vastness of *Hungary*.

The vast Plain of *Pampus*, in *Paraguay*, in *America*, is famous for its extent, being 2000 Miles long; I remember that famous Sea-Captain, Mr. *Narborough* told me, That there is all low Land from the *Plate* River, to the middle of the Streights of *Magellan*. The great Plains of *Muscovy* and *Poland*, are also famous throughout *Europe*; however, these are intermix'd with Trees, and sometimes whole Woods, whereas the Plains of *Hungary* are clear and open; and if compared with our *English* Plains, as of *Salisbury*, *Lincoln*, and *Newmarket*, exceed them as far as a full-grown Man does a Child; such are the Plains of *Austria* from *Vienne* to Mount *Simmaren*, upon the Frontiers of *Styria*. I my self travell'd from *Vienna* to *Belgrade*, through one continued Plain, for 400 Miles, without any Eminencies, except one inconsiderable Wood near *Bacne* and *Shilberg*, beyond *Datis*: And this Plain taken from its first beginning, *viz.* at Mount *Kalenburgh* (*Cetius*), two *German* Leagues Eastward from *Vienna*, and so beyond *Belgrade*, along the North-side of the *Danube*, or the very Frontiers of *Wallachia*, exceeds by much that renown'd Passage from *Lahor* to *Agra*, in the *Indies*. 'Tis true, *Upper Hungary* has good store of Woods and Hills, yet are these intermingled with large Plains. The plainness of *Hungary* proves a considerable Conveniency for Travellers, who travel in open Chariots, carrying two Men besides the Charioteer, drawn by two or three, and sometimes four Horses a-breast.

Hungary has more large Cities upon the *Danube*, than any other Province; for among the ten considerable Cities which are seated from *Ulm* unto *Belgrade*, four, and those very large ones, belong to *Hungary*, viz. *Presburgh*, *Strigonium* or *Gran*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*; unto which if you add *Pest*, it makes up the fifth.

Plenty of Fish.

These Rivers and Lakes of this Country, furnish them with vast Quantities of Fish: The River *Theysse* is so famous for its plenty of Fish, that they have a common Saying, *That one part in three consists of Fish*. And the *Budziack* which falls into the *Theysse* near *Tokay*, is so full of Fish, that the Country People say, *It smells of Fish*; being to be understood of the dry Summer Season, when its Waters are very low; tho' (as I was credibly inform'd by a certain Officer) it is 30 Fathoms broad, and 8 deep; but being of this Figure V, he told me, it could not be well fish'd with Nets. The *Danube* also affords a plentiful share of Fishes, as *Trouts*, *Perches*, *Carps*, the largest and finest I ever met with; and besides many others, a certain Fish call'd *Coppen*, or *Capito*; a *Biscurne*, a kind of *Lamprey*, a *Grundel*, or spotted kind of *Cobites*, with six Beards, two short, and four longer; another Fish exceeding in bigness a Pike, call'd *Schyden*, the *Silurus Gesnier*, and at certain Seasons great numbers of *Husones*, call'd by them *Hausins*, which are sometimes twenty Foot long, a delicious Fish not unlike a *Sturgeon*. There are set Fishing-places, and peculiar Store-Houses for that use upon this River, the highest thereof is above *Comorrah*, in the Isle of *Schutz*; but the greatest plenty of Fish is near *Kilia* in *Wallachia*, where they take and salt many sorts of Fish coming out of the *Euxine* Sea, and send them into the adjacent Countries.

These Rivers afford also great plenty of Water-Fowl in the Winter, and among the rest *Pelicans*, but I never saw any Swans upon the *Danube*.

Fertility of *Hungary*.

The Land here affords the same plenty of Provisions of all sorts, but especially of Bread and Wine, their Bread being as good as any in *Europe*, made light by kneading for a considerable time; and that so cheap, that you may buy as much here for Two-pence, as we generally do for Twelve-pence in *England*; the same being to be observed in the *Turkish* Dominions in these parts.

Wines.

Their Grapes are both large, and of a luscious Flavour, among which those of *Virovichitz*, near *Vacia*, excel the rest; their Vines are very noble, witness those of *Tockay*, which are in great request; and the pleasant and rich Wines of *Sirmia*, in the Southern Parts of *Hungary*; the Vines of this Province having been planted first by the Emperor *Probus*, near Mount *Almus*, or *Argentaro*. At *Vienna* are no less than thirty sorts of Wines to be sold. Neither

ther are the *Hungarians* neglectful in improving their Grounds by Husbandry. I remember that in *February* I saw every Night great Fires in the Country, occasion'd by the burning of the Stubble and old Grass, which rendred the Ground more fertile against the next Season. Instead of our Barns, or Hay, and Corn-stacks, they use deep and spacious Caves under Ground, whither they retire also with their Families, in case of a sudden Inroad from the *Turks* or *Tartars*.

Venison. They have vast plenty of Hares and Deer, as also of all sorts of Poultry, Partridges, Pheasants, &c. vast store of Sheep, having in some places long spiral Horns, and long curled Wool; of Oxen such prodigious numbers, that according to Computation they send to *Germany*, *Italy*, and other parts, above 100000 yearly. They have also good store of Bouffles, which are very useful to them; especially in ploughing some stiff Grounds. Neither do they want Horses, some of which are pretty large, but generally small, tho' exceeding swift; I saw above 1000 of them belonging to the Village of *Lower Sene*, or *Senia*, near *Comorrah*.

Cattle.

Language. Their Language is peculiar to themselves; I heard a Minister praying and preaching in a Church at *Bitchka*, and tho' he that was with me, was very well vers'd in the *Sclavonian*, *German*, *Turkish*, Vulgar *Greek* and *Italian*, yet could he not find the least affinity in it, with any of these before-mention'd Languages. The same we observed in the *Albanian* Language, in the Northern part of *Epirus*, and West of *Macedonia*, where indeed the *Sclavonian* is used by some, but their own Language in common Conversation among themselves, could not be understood by the best Linguists, both *Christians* and *Turks*, that travell'd along with us. Thus, in some parts of *Hungary*, the *Sclavonian* is much in use; I remember that at *Freistadt* (call'd *Colgotz* by the *Hungarians*) I heard them preach in *Sclavonian* in the Church of the Town, but the *Franciscans* preach'd in *Hungarian*. This remoteness of their Language from others, makes them much addicted to foreign Languages, especially the *Latin*, which most of the Gentry and Soldiery speak fluently enough, and there is scarce a Coachman, or Foot-man, but what understands as much of it as will serve him to be understood; this makes the *Latin* Tongue very useful through all *Hungary* and *Transilvania*; but beyond *Belgrade* the *Sclavonian* is the universal Language; it being certain that you may travel with the *German* and *Sclavonian* from *Hamburgh* to the Frontiers of *Tartary* and *Constantinople* it self; the *Sclavonian* being generally spoken in *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Romania*, and part of *Macedonia*, besides in many other parts; so that a Man may make shift to pass with this Language from the *Adriatick* Shore in *Dalmatia*, unto the *Tartarian Ocean*. It

Learning. is scarce to be suppos'd, that in a Country so near unto, and so much exposed to the Violences of a barbarous Neighbour, I mean the *Turks*, there should be any Seminaries of Learning, there being no University in those parts beyond *Vienna*; and tho' of old they have had many learned Men, yet had these their Education in Foreign Parts, as had of old St. *Jerom*, and St. *Martin*; and those Persons of Quality in *Hungary*, who intend to breed up their Children to Learning, send them now-a-days to *Vienna*, *Breslau*, *Prague*, and some other Universities in *Germany*. At present there is a *Gymnasium*, or small University at *Schemnitz*. The *Hungarians* boast however of their once so famous Library of *Buda*, founded by their King *Matthias Corvinus*, the Son of *Hunniades*, about 200 Years ago, consisting of several Thousands of Books, and among them many *Greek* and *Latin* MSS. not to be purchased; part of it was carried off into *Turkey*, after *Solyman* had surprized that City, and the choicest thereof procured afterwards for the Imperial Library at *Vienna*, when *Cuspinianus* was Keeper thereof; many of these Books being mark'd with the Arms of *Corvinus*, *viz. a Crow bearing a Golden Ring in his Beak*; these, with the succeeding Additions of *Busbequius*, *Wolfgangus*, *Lazius*, *Fugger*, &c. together with the choicest Manuscripts brought thither by *Petrus Lambecius*, the present Library-Keeper, from the *Ambrasian Library* near *Inspruck*, are part of the 80000 Volumes mentioned in the Imperial Library; of which I had the Favour not only to see the rarest Manuscripts, and other Rarities, but also to have divers of the best Books to my Lodgings; and at my coming away, the said learned Person presented me with a Catalogue of some hundreds of *Alchymical* Manuscripts, with an Offer to have any of them brought to *England*, or to be transcribed at *Vienna*. There were lately about 400 Books (the Remnants of the *Corvinian* Library) left at *Buda*, but carelessly kept by the *Turks*, and were consumed in the late Fire that happen'd there 1669.

The Hungarian Crown. The *Hungarians* have a most profound Veneration for their Crown, which, they tell you, was sent to their King *Stephen* by Pope *Benedict* VIII. being admonish'd by an *Angelical Apparition* to send it to *Stephen*, and not to *Miscu* the then King of *Poland*, his Competitor: Hence it is, that they have always been so careful to preserve it, as thinking the Fate of the Kingdom to depend on the Possession or Fate of it; formerly it was kept in the Castle of *Vicegrad*, but at present in that of *Presburgh*. This Crown has also a most peculiar Figure, being a very low Crown, with a Cross upon it, enclosed with four turnings up like Leaves, one whereof is as large as two of the others. As it is a hard matter to get sight of the Original, so I was fain to be contented with the sight of the Model thereof, in the Treasury of the present Emperor *Leopold*, exactly made after the Fashion of the *Hungarian* Crown of Gold, and beset richly with precious Stones, perhaps richer than the Original.

Tho' the *Hungarians* want neither Inclination nor Abilities to Learning, yet have they generally been most addicted to Martial Exploits, even to the Clergy, witness that unfortunate Battle of their King *Lewis* near *Mohatz*, in which six Bishops were slain with the King.

Some are of Opinion, that the famous Poet *Ovid* being recall'd from his Banishment at *Tomos*, near the *Euxine* Sea, died at *Sabaria* in *Hungary*, in his return home; where they say, his Tomb was found, with this Epitaph made by himself:

Hic situs est vates quem Divi Cæsaris ira,
Augusti *Patria* cedere jussit humo.
Sæpe miser voluit patriis succumbere terris,
Sed frustra, hunc illi fata dedere locum.

Vide Fig. 3.

In *Hungary* I also first observed the *Pyrrhical Saltation*, or Warlike Way of Dancing, which the *Heydukes* perform by dancing with naked Swords in their hands, advancing, brandishing, and clashing the same, turning, winding, elevating, and depressing their Bodies with singular Activity, singing at the same time to their Measures, after the manner of the *Greeks*.

Are a Warlike Nation. The great Deeds of *Attila*, King of this Country, and his numerous Armies, together with that memorable Battle fought against the *Roman* General *Ætius* (who was a *Mysian* or *Servian* by Birth), in which 200000 were slain, is sufficiently famous in ancient Histories; and how far they extended afterwards their Conquests over their Neighbours, is testified by the Banners carried at the Coronation of their Kings, *viz.* that of *Hungary*, *Dalmatia*, *Croatia*, *Sclavonia*, *Galitia*, *Russia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Polonia*, and *Ludomiria*; and it must be confess'd to the everlasting Honour of the *Hungarians*, that of all other Nations, they have put the longest stop to the Victorious Arms of the *Turks*; and had it not been for their intestine Divisions, which the *Turks* have known to improve to their advantage, it is more than probable the *Ottomans* would never have been able to penetrate so deep into this Country as they have done; notwithstanding which, a very considerable part thereof remains to this Day under the Emperor's Jurisdiction as King of *Hungary*, *viz.* Almost all *Upper Hungary*, from *Presburgh* unto *Tockay* and *Zatmar*; and in the *Lower Hungary*, there are still in the possession of the Christians (besides divers other places of note), the three strong Bulwarks of Christendom, *viz. Raab*, *Comerrah*, and *Leopoldstadt*, of which I took a full view, the last being erected since the loss of *Newhausel*, and fortified after the same manner. It is seated on the West-side of the River *Waag* opposite to *Freistadt*; its Fortifications, which were begun 1665, consist of six regular *Bastions* and *Ravelins*, and were not quite finished 1669.

See Fortifications.

These Quarters are famous in ancient Histories for the Presence, Birth, Death, and great Actions, of many *Roman* Emperors; not to speak here of *Trajan*, *Caracalla*, *Galienus*, *Constantius*, and others; the Emperors *Aurelianus*, *Probus*, *Gratianus*, and *Maximianus*, had *Sirmium* for their Birth-places; and *Claudius Gothicus* dy'd in or near it.

Jovianus, and *Valentinianus*, were *Pannonians* by Birth, and *Ingenuus*, Governour of *Pannonia*, was saluted Emperor by the *Mœsian* Legions, as was *Vetranio* in the same Country. When *Photinus* was Bishop of *Sirmium*, a General Council was held in that place.

The *Roman* Armies being so frequent in this Country, no doubt but they brought abundance of their Copper, Silver, and Gold Coin hither, of which I obtained a good number at *Petronel*, or old *Carnuntum* in *Pannonia*, and with many more at *Sene*, or *Senia*, near the *Danube*. An *Armenian* Merchant with whom I lodged at *Belgrade*, furnish'd me with a good quantity of *Roman* Coins at my return, which he had got at old *Buda*, or *Sicambria*, at old *Sirmium*, in the Country now call'd *Schremnia*, and at *Mursa*, or *Essek*.

Near *Deva*, *Lysimachus* King of *Macedon* and *Thrace*, is suppos'd to have kept his Court, near which that unparallell'd Mass of ancient Golden Coins was found, under the Ruines of an ancient Castle: For a strong Current of Water having been forced that way by long continued Rains, which washed away the Rubbish that had covered those Golden Medals; and the glance of this costly Metal having drawn thither many of the neighbouring Peasants, they discovered these Medals, weighing two and three Crowns a piece, having on one side the Image of *Lysimachus*, and on the other side a *Victory*; under these Medals they also found a Golden Serpent, which General *Castalde* sent unto *Ferdinand*, who had also 1000 of these Medals, besides 300 *Castalde* had for his share; of which there were taken up, (after the Peasants had taken up before a vast quantity) to the value of 10000 *l.* So that there was scarce a Man found hereabouts but what had some of them, so infinite was the Sum: This Castle was supposed to have been sometimes the Residence of King *Lysimachus*, and this Coin remained here from that time; it being a received Custom among the Ancients, for such as buried their Treasure, to place Serpents there, in token of a faithful Keeper. Among other Medals, there were also found two Medals of Gold, one of *Ninus*, the other of *Semiramis*, which were presented to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth.

See Monsieur du Fresne.

As I pass'd through the old *Roman* Towns, the Inhabitants brought me divers sorts of old Coins, which they term *Heathen-Money*; and in *Bosnia* and *Servia*, the *Armenians* drive a great Trade with them, and send them by the way of *Ragusa* into *Italy*. Among other Coins I found one of Copper pretty frequent here, but not easily found in other parts. It was a Coin of the Emperor *Julius Philippus*, having on one side, the Head of *Philippus*, with this Inscription; IMP. C. M. JUL. PHILIPPUS. AUG. and on the reverse a Woman between a Lion and a Bull, with this Inscription; P. M. S. COL. VIM. AN. VII. which may be: *Provinciæ Mœsiæ Superioris Colonia Viminacium Annona Septimo data*; *Viminacium* being a *Roman* Colony in *Mœsia Superiour* (now *Servia*) supposed to be *Singidunum* or *Semderin* upon the *Danube*. At the Mouth of the River *Morava* or *Marosh*. The Lion and Bull seem to declare the fitness of the Soil for Agriculture, and the Warlick Temper of the People, and by these two Animals sitting peaceably together, the Prudence of *Philippus*. *Annona Septima*, questionless intimated the seventh distribution of Corn by *Philippus*, the conducting of which was committed to the *Legio* XVI. *Frumentaria*.

In Figure II. you see the Habit of an *Hungarian*, which for its Conveniency, especially in Warlike Exercises on Horse-back, is made use of by a King of the neighbouring Nations, as the *Croatians*, *Sclavonians*, and the *Turks* themselves, living near the Frontiers tho' otherwise very nice in this point.

The *Hungarians* delight generally in Blue, Yellow, Green, and Purple Cloth, Black being a Colour rarely to be met with here, the Priests themselves being clad in long Purple Garments. Two sorts of Weapons are most common among the *Hungarians*, viz. a kind of Iron Mace, call'd *Catshan* by them, with a round Iron Head, with Furrows in it, and spaces cut away to render it the more light, as you see it in the preceeding Figure; the other they call *Balta*, being a kind of a Hatchet, with a Head somewhat like a Hammer, but broader, and at the end makes the shape of the Letter *Delta*, as you see it here.

A Journey from Vienna *in* Austria *to* Larissa, *in* Thessaly.

HAving past'd the Winter at *Vienna*, I took a view of the Copper, Gold and Silver Mines of *Hungary*, and not long after made a second *Tour* into *Italy*, passing thro' *Austria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola* and *Friuli* to *Venice*, and after my return to *Vienna*, met with a fair opportunity to see the *Grand Seignior*'s Court, which then, and a considerable time before, resided at the ancient and famous City of *Larissa* in *Thessaly*. As I don't pretend to give you the Names of all places thro' which I past'd, so on the other hand you will find mentioned some which are not to be found in Maps, at least not in any that ever I met with. Between *Vienna* and *Presburgh*, the first place worth my peculiar Observation, was the Town of *Petronel* and *Haymburg* Hill and Castle: The first is supposed to be the old *Carnuntum*, one of the strong holds of the ancient *Pannonians*, who 170 Years before our Saviour's Birth bravely repulsed the *Romans* here, but were forc'd to submit to the Power of *Augustus*, who made it a *Roman* Colony, and the Station of the *Legio* XIV. *Gemina*, and of the *Classis Istrica*: and by degrees arrived to that Pitch of Greatness, that it became the Capital City of all *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending all that Tract on the South Bank of the River *Danube*, wherein now are *Haymburgh*, *Dutch Altenburgh* and *Petronelli*: Here I met with variety of Medals, Inscriptions, and the Ruins of a most noble Aqueduct, and the remnants of a stately Fabrick, which I thought might have belong'd to a Temple of *Janus*, but is generally suppos'd to have been a Triumphal Arch, erected in memory of a Victory obtain'd by *Tiberius*, in the ninth Year of our Saviour, over the *Pannonians* and *Dalmatians*. (a) *Petrus Lambecius*, has, besides other Antiquities of this place, given a draught of the one side thereof, and of the back part I took a draught my self, as it is express'd in the next following Cut. In this place it was that the Emperor *Antoninus Philosophus*, when engaged in a War with the *Marcomanni* or *Moravians*, resided for three Years and dy'd at *Vienna* (or *Vindobona*:) And here *Severus* was elected Emperor by the *German* Legions. But this great City was laid desolate by *Attila* the *Hunn*, there being nothing remaining now where the old *Carnuntum* stood, but some ruinous Foundations of the Houses and Streets, scarce discoverable by the Eye.

Petronel.

(a) In the second part of his description of the Imperial Library.

Of *Roman* Coins, there have been, and still are, found such quantities, that even the Peasants bring them to sale, of whom I bought a good number; and I remember, that Mr. *Donallan* an *Irish* Gentleman, my fellow Traveller, as we were viewing the Ruins of the ancient Foundations, struck by chance a Silver Chain, with his Foot out of the Earth.

Presburgh, *Posonium* and *Pisonium*, is pleasantly seated on the North side of the *Danube*, 10 *German* Leagues to the East of *Vienna*, now the Capital City of *Hungary*, under the Emperor's jurisdiction, and since the surprising of *Buda* by the *Turks*, the place of Convention of the Estates of that Kingdom, and since the loss of *Gran* (*Strigonium*) the Metropolitan City. Its Castle, is very noble and stately built of white Stone, on the top of a Hill, where is now kept the so much esteem'd *Hungarian* Crown; the Garden of the Arch-bishop is exceeding fair, the *Walks*, *Grotto's*, *Labyrinths*, and *Fishponds*, very noble, and the Figure of *Jeronymo*, well worth the Observation of a Traveller. In the Cathedral Church is interr'd the Body of St. *Johannes Eleemosynarius*, Bishop of *Alexandria*. Part of this Church is in the possession of the *Jesuits*, the *Lutherans* have likewise a handsome Church here.

Presburgh.

Raab or *Javrinum*, a strong Frontier City, is seated at the Confluence of the Rivers, *Raab*, the *Rabnits*, and the *Danube*. It has two Bridges, one laid over a double Ditch, leading towards *Austria*, and the other towards *Stulweissenburg* or (*Alba Regalis*.) Its Fortification consists of seven Bastions and four Cavaliers or Mounts. (1) The Castle *Bastion*, upon which stands the Governour's Palace. (2) The *Water Bastion*, on the side of the *Danube*. (3) The *Bastion of the Holy Hill*. (4) The *Middle Bastion*, to the East on the Land side. (5) The *New Bastion*. (6) The *Imperial Bastion*; and the (7) The *Hungarian Bastion*, facing the River *Raab*. Here the *Turkish* Governour was kill'd when the Christians surpriz'd this City. It lies in an open and plain Country, there being no Eminency near it, except a small Hill, which is undermin'd, ready to be blown up in case of an approach of an Enemy, for which reason also a spy Tower is built at some distance, to give timely notice in case of need of an approaching Enemy. *Sinan Bassa* the *Turkish* General, under the Reign of *Achmet* III. after having lost a vast number of Men before this place, and 12000 in an assault, took it by composition, by the Treachery of Count *Hardeck* the Governour, who paid for it with his Head. But in a few Years after was recover'd by the Christians, who surpriz'd it in the Night time, under the Conduct of Count *Swartzenburgh*, and Count *Palfi*, who put all the *Turks* to the Sword. At *Raab* and *Comorrah*, we were shown divers sorts of Warlike Instruments, viz. a *Morning-Star*, as they call it, being a Club set round with Spikes; us'd in the Defence of Breaches, and in assaulting of Towns: *Earthen-Pots*, fill'd with stinking and combustible Materials, to throw in among the Enemy: A *Lehn Brader*, or Plank, set with Hooks, to be fix'd to the out-side of the Works, cover'd slightly with Earth; A *Mess Kugel*, or kind of

Raab.

Hand

Hand-Granadoe: *A Spaniſh Ritter* or *Cheval de Friſe*, to be faſtned in the Earth, to keep off the Horſe, being provided with long Iron Spikes on all ſides. At this place the *Turkiſh Chiauſes* or Meſſengers muſt ſtay to receive their Diſpatches, the Court of *Vienna* being much peſter'd with them before that Order, being ſent continually with ſome inſignificant Meſſage or other from the Governours of the *Turkiſh* Frontier Places, for the preſents ſake, which they expect at their departure.

Comorrah. *Comorrah* or *Gomorrah*, *Crumenum* or *Comaronium*, is a large and ſtrongly fortify'd place, ſeated at the East end of the Iſle of *Schuez*, looking over the *Danube* and *Waag*. The ſtrongeſt Fort is call'd the *Tortoiſe* from its Figure. After *Sinan Baſſa* had, as we told you, made himſelf Maſter of *Raab*, he was alſo trying his Fortune againſt this Town; but being repulſed with great ſlaughter in all his Attacks, he was for trying the fidelity of the Governour, the *Baron Brown*, unto whom he ſent 5 *Turks*, under a pretence of a Parley, with very advantageous Offers; but this brave Man, tho' ſorely wounded, having firſt given them the hearing, cauſed four of them to have their Heads cut off, which he put upon long Pikes upon the Bulwarks, and ſent back the fifth with this Meſſage; That he was miſtaken in his Perſon, if he judged of him by the Treachery of Count *Hardeck*; and that he might reſt aſſur'd, he would live and die in the defence of the place committed to his Charge by the Emperour. In the innermoſt Caſtle of *Comorrah*, I ſaw three very ancient Tombs, brought thither formerly from *Senia*, a place of antiquity, not far off, two whereof having Inſcriptions not to be met with in [a] *Gruter*, I thought fit to inſert here.

(a) In his Inſcriptions.

On one of them:

MEMORIAE JULIAE EMERITAE QUAE VIXIT AN ℔ VALERIA MASCLENIA FILIAE PIISSIMAE.

And on the Cover
D. M.

The Inſcription of another was this:
MUAL VALERIANI LEG IIII F L VIXIT AN XLII ET MUALUL PIOE Q PUBL. FIL VIXIT AN VIII SIM CONDITIS ULPIA PARATIANE MARITO ET ULPIA VALERIA FILIA H. REDESTS.

D. M.

And on the Cover this following:

ITAAMTPIETTTXEIMETATIATPOC

The third Tomb, was of the ſame Figure, but without any Inſcription.

Of ſome other places, thro' which I paſs'd alſo the Year before, I ſhall ſpeak only *en paſſant* here.

Newhawſel. *Newhawſel*, call'd *Vywar* by the *Hungarians*, is ſituate by the River *Nitra*, not far from *Nitria*, a ſtrong place, taken by Count *Zoucbes*, in the late Wars. *Newhawſel* is a regular Fortification of ſix Baſtions, in the form of a Star. After Count *Forchatz*, the Governour thereof, had raſhly engaged with the *Turks* at *Barcban*, theſe laid ſiege to this place, and after a ſtout defence (being repulſed in ſix Storms) made themſelves Maſters of it by Capitulation; tho' it is generally believ'd, That if the Viſier had not ſpent his Time and Men in this Siege, he might have put moſt of the Emperor's hereditary Countries into a great Conſternation, whereas the Emperours Auxiliaries being join'd by that time, the *Turks* receiv'd a ſignal Diſgrace near St. *Goddard*, the loſs of which Battle procur'd a ſpeedy Peace. The *Turkiſh Baſſa* lives now in the Palace, formerly belonging to the Arch-biſhops of *Presburgh*.

Sene or *Senia*, a place of antiquity, but now only a Village; is remarkable for nothing but its Antiquities, which we found there now and then. Here, by the Favour of the *Byra*, or Judge of the place, I got a *Roman* or *Heathen* Key, as they call it, and ſeveral ſorts of Coins, ſome of Gold, and ſome *Intaglia's*, whereof I preſented ſome to *Petrus Lambecius*. The Inhabitants will have its name to have been anciently *Apollonium*, but without any good ground. In our way betwixt *Raab* and *Datis*, we paſs'd in ſight of *Martinbergh*, a ſtrong and handſome Town, ſeated upon a Hill. *Datis Tata* or *Theodata*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles from *Comorrah*, has ſcarce any thing remarkable, except its Caſtle, and ſome natural Baths near it. But to return into the Road; we were row'd from *Comorrah* in a Saick of 24 Oars, the *Hungarians* rowing on one, and the *Germans* on the other ſide; thus paſſing by *Sene*, *Neſmil*, and *Rodwan*, we came to *Motch*, the frontier place, where we were to ſtay for the *Turkiſh* Convoy, which being ready in the Morning, their Officers went aſhoar firſt, and next our *Veyda* or *Voyvod*, with the Interpreter, and chiefeſt of the Company, with a ſlow pace, and at meeting, ſaluted one another by ſhaking of Hands together; then delivering our Boat to the *Turks*, they faſtned it to their Saick, and ſent one into ours to ſteer it. At parting they ſaluted the Chriſtians with one Gun, and ſo with 18 Oars row'd down the *Danube*, we carrying the *Eagle* in our Flag, and they, the *Double Sword*, *Star* and *Half-Moon*. The *Turkiſh Saick*, having brought us to *Gran*, ſet our Boat aſhoar, and ſo left us; the Governour took no notice of us; but being reprimanded upon that account by an *Aga*, who came from *Newhawſel* with four Troops of Horſe, we were ſoon diſpatch'd.

Gran. The City of *Gran*, *Strigonium*, or *Oſtrogon*, is ſituate on the S. ſide of the *Danube*, near its Confluence with the River *Gran*; it is divided into the upper and lower Town, each of which has its peculiar Walls, that of the Lower Town, commanding the *Danube*. The Hill of St. *Thomas*, which overlooks the place, is alſo fortified with a Wall. Here are natural Baths of a moderate heat. This was the Metropolitan City of *Hungary*, which gave birth to St. *Stephen*, their firſt Chriſtian King, and King *Stephen* IIId, lies entomb'd here. This place has endur'd many remarkable Sieges, having been often taken and retaken: It yielded in 1683, to the Duke of *Lorrain*. Oppoſite to it is *Barcban*, being join'd to it by a Bridge of Boats.

Vicegrade. From hence we paſs'd to *Vicegrade* or *Vizzegrade*, having two Caſtles, the upper Caſtle being ſeated upon a high Rock, where formerly the Crown of *Hungary* was kept. The lower Caſtle has been a fair Structure. Here are alſo to be ſeen the Ruins of an ancient Fabrick of Arches of ſquare Stone. This place, after it had been a conſiderable time in the Hands of the *Turks*, was ſurrender'd to the Duke of *Lorrain* in 1684. Juſt oppoſite to *Vicegrade* lies *Maroz*, where there is a goodly Church, the Chriſtians living pretty well at eaſe here, under the *Turks*, becauſe of its voluntary Surrender to them. Below this place we ſaw the large Iſland of St. *Andrew* in the *Danube*, and ſome ruins of Stone upon the Shoar of the Iſle, which the *Turks* told us were the Remnants of a Stone-Bridge.

Vacia. Below this, paſſing by *Virchiviz*, famous for its large and noble Grapes, we came to *Vacia*, formerly an Epiſcopal See, which has now two *Moſques* and one Chriſtian Church. It was taken by the *Turks* 1541. and regain'd by the Duke of *Lorrain* 1684, after a ſignal overthrow given the *Turks* near that place, but being not tenible by reaſon of ſome adjacent Hills, was quitted the ſame Year in Autumn.

Buda. Here, having changed again our Convoy, we came to *Buda*, formerly the Capital City and ordinary Reſidence of the *Hungarian* Kings, and at preſent of a *Turkiſh Vizier*, who has divers *Baſhas* under his juriſdiction. This City is of a large Circumference, pleaſantly ſeated upon the *Danube*, divided into the *Upper* and *Lower-Town*; wherein are to be ſeen the Remnants of divers magnificent Structures, built by the ancient *Hungarian* Kings, and eſpecially *Matthias Corvinus*, in whoſe Palace the *Vizier* now reſides. This had anciently three moſt admirable Statues of Braſs, of *Hercules*, *Apollo* and *Diana*, at its Entrance, which were by *Solyman* caſt into great Guns; the whole Palace in all other Reſpects not approaching to its ancient Glory; however here are divers handſome *Moſques* and *Caravanſera's*. On the top of St. *Gerard's* Hill is a Fort, which overlooks the Town and Country. But what *Buda* has moſt to boaſt of now-a-days, are its natural Baths, eſteemed the nobleſt in all *Europe*, both for the largeneſs of its Springs, and the Magnificence of its Buildings; for as negligent as the *Turks* are in their private Houſes, ſo ſumptuous are they in their Publick Structures, as their *Caravanſera's*, *Moſques*, *Bridges*, but eſpecially their *Baths*, bathing being in great requeſt among the *Turks*. There are here in all 8 Baths, of which I took a view during my ſtay in this City, *viz.* Three towards the E. and S. E. part of the City, in the way to *Conſtantinople*, and five towards the Weſt end of the Town, in the way to *Old Offen* and *Gran*. The (1) is a large open Bath, at the Foot of a Rocky Hill call'd *Purgatory*. The (2) has a *Cupulo* on the top, ſtands near the ſame Hill, but more into the Town. The (3) they call the *Bath of the Green Pillars* (tho' now they are red) over againſt a

The Baths of Buda.

Caravanſera.

Caravanſera: The Spring is very hot, yet uſeful without the addition of cold Water; it contains a petrefying Juice, which is to be diſcover'd on the ſides of the Bath, and its Spouts, where it leaves a Gummy Stone behind it; and the Vapours of the Bath coagulated on the *Cupolo*, the Irons reaching from one Column to another, and on the Capitals of the Pillars, form long Stones like Icicles, which you ſee hanging to all theſe places. The Bath is of a Circular Figure, ſet about with large Pillars ſupporting the Cupulo, which has divers Openings, for the free paſſage of the Exhalations, notwithſtanding which, the Bath continues always as hot as a Stove. The Water is let out every Night after the Women have done bathing. The Baths on the Weſt end are (1) *Tactelli*, *i. e.* the *Table Bath*, being but ſmall, the Water whitiſh, and of a ſulphurous ſmell, they both drink of, and bath in it; what is drunk, is receiv'd from a Spout conveyed into the Bath; I gave a piece of five *Sols* to a *Turk*, who holding it under the Spout, to let the Water fall upon it, and rubbing it in the mean time with his Fingers, did gild it for me in half a Minute. The (2) is *Barat Degrimeni* or the *Bath of the Powder Mill*, ariſing in an open Pond near the High-way, and its Water being mix'd with thoſe of the Pond, makes one part of it of a whitiſh Colour, and clear in another, as likewiſe cold and hot in ſeveral parts; being conveyed croſs the High-way into a Powder-Mill, it becomes uſeful in making of Gun-powder, whence it got its name. The (3) is *Cuzzoculege*, the *Little Bath*, or the *Bath of the Saint*, being kept by *Turkiſh* Monks. The Water near the Spring-head is ſo hot, as not to be fit for uſe, but being conveyed thro' one Bath into another, becomes tolerable. The Water differs neither in Smell, Taſt nor Colour from common Water, being without the leaſt Sediment, except that the Sides of the Bathing-Room are cover'd with a green ſpongy Subſtance. The (4) is call'd *Caplia*, a noble Structure, of an Octogonal Figure, with a very handſome Bath in the middle, ſurrounded with a Trench of Water to bath the Feet in: On each ſide it has a Niche, wherein is a Fountain. In the Anti-Chamber, where the Cloaths are left, is alſo a fair Fountain, with a Stone Baſon; the Water of this Bath is alſo very hot, and not without a petrefying Juice. The (5th) is the Bath of *Vekibey*, the nobleſt of all the reſt, having a ſpacious Anti-Chamber; the Bathing room is alſo very capacious, high arch'd, and advanc'd with one great *Cupolo* in the Middle, juſt over the great round Bath, beſides four leſſer ones at the four Corners, over as many private Bathing Rooms, where the *Turks* take off the Hair of their Bodies with *Pſilothrum*, mix'd with Soap, except their Beards. The middle *Cupolo* is ſupported by 12 Pillars, betwixt eight whereof are Fountains of hot Water, and between the reſt, places to ſit down, where the Barbers and Bath Men attend. In each of theſe places are two Stone Ciſterns, one for cold and the other for hot Water, to be mix'd as every one thinks fit, the Water being not to be us'd without the addition of cold Water: For the reſt, it has a ſtrong ſulphurous ſmell, and contains a petrefying Juice. The Mornings are appointed for the Men to bath in, and the Afternoons for the Women.

How they bath at *Buda*.

If you have a mind to bath, you are brought into the Anti-Chamber of the Bath, where being furniſh'd with a Cloth and Apron by thoſe that attend, you lay by your Cloaths, and ſo enter the *Great Bath*, where ſitting down on the ſide or between the Pillars near a Fountain, you are well rubb'd, with your Hands and Arms ſtretch'd out, by the Barber, after which you bath. If you pleaſe, or the Cuſtom of your Country requires it, you may have your Head ſhav'd, and your Beard alſo, except the upper Lip; next the Barber rubs your Breaſt, Back, Arms and Legs with a Hair Cloth, either ſitting or lying upon your Belly, then having waſhed your Head with Soap, and thrown cold Water upon you all over the Body, you walk in the Steem of the Bath for ſome time. This

Buda.

City is generally call'd *Offen* by the *Germans*; ſome trace the Original of this City, as far as to a Brother of the famous *Attila*, call'd *Buda*. And to confeſs the truth, the ſituation of this place upon the Banks of the *Danube*, where it gathers its Water in one entire Channel, and that upon an eaſie aſcent of riſing Hills, from whence there is a proſpect out of many of the Creeks croſs the *Danube*, into a beautiful Country, and of the City of *Peſt*; ſo excellent a ſituation, I ſay, added to the advantage of its Hot Springs, might well invite the Conquering *Huns*, to prefer this place, for the building of a City, before all their other Conquered Countries. The City of *Buda* was the ordinary Reſidence of the *Hungarian* Kings, till it was conquer'd by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, 13th *Auguſt*, 1541. There is another place call'd old *Offen*, ſuppoſed to be that ancient *Sicambria*, where the *Sicambrian* Souldiers had their quarters in the time of the *Romans*. Here ſome Antiquities and Inſcriptions have been diſcover'd formerly.

Upon the Eaſt ſide of the *Danube*, directly oppoſite to *Buda* ſtands *Peſt*, in a Plain, of a Quadrangular Figure. *Peſt*. This City imparts its Name to the whole County, or *Comitatus Peſthienſis* (*Hungary* being divided into Counties like *England*) and is join'd to *Buda* by a Bridge of Boats above half a Mile in length.

Habit of the Turkiſh Women.

I was ſomething ſurpriz'd at firſt, when I ſaw the *Turkiſh* Women wear long Breeches, reaching almoſt down to their Feet. Over theſe they wear their Smocks, and over theſe a kind of a long Garment; their Head-dreſs covers their Faces, except the Eyes, almoſt like our Penitents. Whilſt we ſtaid at *Buda*, we took a view of one of the *Turkiſh* Convents, where we were entertain'd in a large Room, not unlike a Chapel, with Melons, and ſome other Fruit, by the Monks. The Superiour call'd *Julpapa*, *i. e.* Father *of the Roſe*, having a Girdle about his middle, emboſſed before with a white Stone call'd *Galactites* or *Milk-Stone*, bigger than the Palm of a Hand. They have a ſuperſtitious opinion, that *Mahomet* turn'd a whole River of *Arabia* into a kind of Stone. From the Houſe where we lodged, we had a fair proſpect of the *Danube*, and were often viſited by divers *Chiauſes* (*Turkiſh* Meſſengers.) The Maſter of the Houſe being a *Raſcian*, was thought to hold a ſecret Correſpondence with a *Franciſcan* Fryar of *Peſt*, and with ſome other Perſons of note at *Comorrah*, *Raab*, and *Vienna*; we were alſo very civilly entertain'd by *Mortizan Ephendi*, who had been in the Quality of Envoy Extraordinary at the Court of *Vienna*, and would needs have me ſit upon a Stool, brought in for that purpoſe, being ſenſible that their way of ſitting croſs-legg'd would not be very agreeable to me; among divers other queſtions, he asked me, what was the King of *Poland*'s Name, and when I told him it was *Michael Wiſnowitski*, he reply'd, *Michael* is a good Name, it is the Name of the greateſt Saint in Heaven, except *Mary*.

They leave Buda.

From *Buda* we travelled by Land to the Eaſt, and paſſing by *Ham Zabbi Palanka* and by *Erzin* came to *Adom*, call'd *Tzan Kurteran*, i. e. *Anima liberata*, by the *Turks*; which Name was given it by *Solyman* the Magnificent, becauſe here he made the firſt halt with his Army, after his retreat from *Vienna*; hence we came to *Pentele* or *Pentelen Palanka*, which ſome are of opinion to be the old *Potentiana*, where the *Huns* were overthrown by *Macrinus* and *Tetricus*, the two *Roman* Generals. Some will have this to have hapned near *Adom*. From hence we went on to *Fedwar* in ſight of *Colocza*, ſeated on the other ſide of the *Danube* in the Road to *Temeſwar*, and ſo further by *Pax*; or *Paxi*, to *Tona*, the old *Altinum* or *Altinium*, *Tona*. near which the *Huns* fought a ſecond Battle, and routed the *Romans* with the loſs of 40000 Men on their ſide. It is inhabited by *Hungarians* and *Raſcians*, who are often at variance together. Thence we came to *Zeni Palanke*, where we paſs'd the River *Savizza* (or the *Urpanus*) which ariſes near *Eſperies*, and paſſing by *Stulweiſſenburgh* (*Alba Regalis*) joins its Current below it with the *Danube*. From thence, by *Setzwar* to *Boroſeck*, and ſo to *Setz*, a large Town, near which we ſaw the ruins of an old Caſtle upon a Hill encloſed with Paliſadoes. Here is a new *Caravanſera*. Hence we went on to *Mohatz*, but before we came to this place, paſſing by a ſmall Bridge over the Brook *Curaſſe*, we took a view of the place where the unfortunate *Hungarian*, King *Lewis*, after the loſs of the Battle near *Mohatz*, fought 29 *Octo.* 1526. was *Mohatz.* plunged in the Flight with his Horſe in the Mud, and miſerably periſhed. His Body being diſcover'd by *Cotriſcus*, who was near him when he was drowned, to the *Hungarians*, it was taken up and buried at *Alba Regalis*, the place of Sepulture of the *Hungarian* Kings. Near this place we met with a *Caravan* of 200 Perſons under a Guard of *Janizaries*, and frequently upon the Road we ſaw numerous droves of Oxen driving towards *Vienna*, belonging to the Eaſtern Company there, who as they have the *Monopoly* of Oxen in that City, ſo they have liberty to buy them in the *Grand Seignior*'s Dominions. The ſame Day we ſaw the City of *Five Churches* (*Quinque Eccleſiæ*) *Zigeth.* and *Zigeth*, to the right of us. This laſt is a very ſtrong place, ſituate at the ſide of a Fen, in which there is an Iſle and beyond it a Caſtle. This place is famous for the unparallell'd Reſiſtance made here by Count *Serini*, againſt the *Turks*; for, after having been forc'd out of the Town, he retir'd into the Iſle, and from thence to the Caſtle, where after having repulſed the *Turks* in ſeveral aſſaults, he ſallied out with 24 Men (all that were left) and were all ſlain by the *Turks*.

From

From hence we pass'd on by *Barinowar Darda*, or *Draza*, to *Esseck*, or *Ossek*, supposed to be the old *Mursa*, or at least very near it. Its Situation is very low, the Streets being paved with Timber-Trees laid Cross-wise; upon one side of the Gate, you see some Remnants of an old *Roman* Inscription, *M. ÆLIAN*, &c. and on the other side a Maid's Head cut in Stone. Here you see also an uncommon Dial, brought hither from *Serinwar*; and the largest Piece of Ordnance that ever I saw in those Parts, not lying upon Carriages, but upon Bodies of Trees. But what surpasses all the rest, is the famous Bridge of *Esseck*, built of Wood, partly over the River *Drave*, partly over the adjacent Marshes; being five Miles long, and railed in on both sides, and defended by certain Towers at every quarter of a Mile's distance. But of this elsewhere. It being the greatest Passage from *Servia*, and other of the Grand Seignior's Dominions into *Hungary*.

Habit of the Turkish Women.

The Bridge of *Essick*.

Count *Nicholas Serini*, to hinder the Supplies from coming to the Grand Vizier's Army, burn'd that part of the Bridge which was laid over the River *Drave* (which was Rebuilt since), and in his return also set fire to *Five Churches*, which lies to the West of *Esseck*.

From hence we travell'd to *Valcowar*, where there is a goodly Bridge of *Wood* over the *Walpo* (*Valpanus*), a River affording great plenty of Fish, upon which to the West stands also the Town of *Walpo*; then by *Sotzin Palanko*, and *Towarnick*, or *Tabornick*, to *Netrcovitza*, a large Town near a Lake, and so to *Simonovitz*, leaving to the right of us (at a good distance) the so famous ancient *Sirmium*, a place scarce worth taking notice of now, except for its Antiquity, of which something before. The Country hereabouts is call'd *Schremnia*; but that part extending nearer to the *Drave*, *Bossga*.

* *Vide* Fig. 4. Habitations under ground

* In this Country many Families, nay the Inhabitants of whole Villages, have their Habitations under Ground, like the *Troglodytes*, and the subterraneous Nations about *Ægypt*. We saw some Wells near them where they draw their Water like our Brewers, they no sooner got sight of us, but retired to their Caves, their Dogs by their Barking having given them timely notice of our approach. We alighted to take a View of the Houses of these poor Christians, which we found tolerably well contrived within, divided by Partitions with wooden Chimnies, and a Window at one end a little above Ground: All things were neatly kept, tho' but poorly, after the fashion of those Parts. Their Speech we found to be a Dialect of the *Sclavonian*.

We continued our Journey between the *Danube* and the *Save*; we came to *Zemlin* upon the *Danube*, and from its Castle had a fair prospect of *Belgrade*; whither we pass'd from hence by Water.

Belgrade.

Belgrade, *Taurunum*, *Alba Græca*, or *Greek-Weissenburgh*, or *Nandor Alba*, as it is call'd by the *Hungarians*, is a large, strong, populous, and trading City in *Servia*, or *Mœsia* Superiour, seated at the very Confluence of the River *Save*, and the *Danube*, the first being to the West, and the other to the North.

Turbidus & vivens flavescit Iser arena.

The *Danube* is very broad here, and its Current so rapid, that it seems to cut off that of the *Save*, as the *Rhesne* doth the *Seine*, near *Lyons* in *France*. The Water of the *Danube* seems more yellow and troubled, and that of the *Save* greenish and clear. At the very Mouth of the *Save* is an Isle, made there of the setling of the Sands of both Streams, about 35 Years ago, which is now full of Wood.

As we entred *Belgrade*, I pass'd by the Water Castle, and afterwards by the Upper Castle, both large, and strengthned with divers Towers. The chiefest Trading Streets are covered over Head, to keep off the Sun and Rain. The Shops are no bigger than Taylors Shopboards, and very low, the Shop-People setting upon them as our Taylors do, and selling their Wares to the Chapmen, who remain without, and seldom enter the Shop. There are besides these at *Belgrade*, two large *Bezastens*, or Places where the best Commodities are sold, they are built cross-wise like the old Cathedrals, with Walks within, like to those of the Old Exchange above Stairs. They have also two Exchanges built of Stone, with two Rows of Pillars over one another, but were almost fill'd up with Merchandises.

The Grand Vizier had lately built a stately *Caravansera*, at his own Cost, with a Fountain in the Court, and just by a Mosque with a Fountain before it; this being the first I ever saw with-inside. He had also built a College for young Students, one of which I saw in a green Garment, with a Four-corner'd Turbant on his Head: I observed also great Numbers of Sepulchres near *Belgrade*. We lodged at an *Armenian* Merchants House, where we were well accommodated, and our Master conducted us to several other *Armenians*, who had very fair Houses, and entertain'd us with *Coffee*, *Sherbet*, and very good Wines of the neighbouring Country. There are few Trading People, in those Places where the *Armenians* don't live; they have a Church at *Belgrade*, and seem to be more fair-dealing than the *Greeks* and *Jews*.

Belgrade is a place of great Trade; its Situation at the Conflux of the *Danube* and *Save*, and the River *Theysse* falling into the *Danube* near it, as the River *Drave* does not far from it, and the *Morava*, or *Marsh*, not far below it: All this, I say, together with the advantage of a very fruitful adjacent Country, through which the *Danube* passes towards the *Euxine* Sea, is sufficient to make *Belgrade* one of the most flourishing Cities in *Europe*, were it in the hands of a People that knew how to improve all these advantages. This City was formerly the main Bulwark of *Hungary*, which has several times stemm'd the Current of the *Turkish* Victories, witness the Disgrace received here by *Mahomet the Great*; but was at last taken by *Solyman the Magnificent*, 1521.

They leave Belgrade.

After we had left *Belgrade*, we continued our Journey through *Servia*, and passing by a very high Hill call'd *Havilleck* to the West of us (where we saw the Ruines of an old Monastery), we came to *Hissirgick* near the *Danube*, tho' our Maps place it at a good distance from it. Here we bid Adieu to the *Danube*, at a place where it had run already from *Ulm* in *Suabia*, where it begins to be navigable about 900 Miles, besides what is to be accounted for from its first Source thither, and has several hundreds of Miles to run, before it discharges it self into the *Euxine* Sea.

The next place we came to was *Collar*, not far from *Semandria*, an old *Roman* Colony, but now an inconsiderable place. From hence to *Hassan Bassa Palanka*, about 40 *English* Miles from *Belgrade*, where we found a Lion worrying a Wolf in Stone, a very ancient Piece.

* *Vide* Fig. 5. Habit of the Bulgarian Women.

* Coming afterwards to *Baditzna*, we saw several *Bulgarian* Women, whose Dress seem'd to us very odd: For they wear a kind of Canopy upon their Heads, set about as well as their Foreheads, with all sorts of Foreign Money; we also bestow'd some Pieces upon them, as an addition to their Ornaments.

Much in the same manner have I seen some *Grecian* Women attired, their Foreheads being cover'd richly with Duckats of Gold, and Pearl; but their Head-Dress was not raised so high.

We pass'd forward for *Jagodna* pleasantly seated in a most delightful Country; and in a few Hours after we had left it, turning off to the South, we saw to the right of us, on the side of a Hill, the Tomb of a *Turkish* Saint, about four Yards long, and a square covered place near it; our *Chiaus* having performed his Devotion here, we went forward through great Woods by *Cisslick*, where there is a *Caravansera*, but we thought it more safe for us to refresh our selves, and our Horses, at an adjacent Farm-House, belonging to a Merchant of *Belgrade*. Hence we travell'd all Night to the *Morava*, or *Moschius* (the *Marsh*), the chief River of this Country, arising in the Mountains in two Streams, the one call'd *Morava di Bulgaria*; the other, *Morava di Servia*; and uniting afterwards in one Channel, falls into the *Danube* at *Zendecir*, or *Singidunum*, opposite to the *Rascian* Shore. We happening to pass this River in a place where it was very broad, deep, and rapid, the *Chiaus* betook himself to his Prayers; and after the danger was over, it put me in mind of the rapid River *Varus*, on the Confines of *Provence* and *Italy*, which when I pass'd on Horseback, two Men were forc'd to go on the lower side of me, to keep my Horse from being carried downwards by the violence of the Current. By this River the Commodities of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, are carried into the *Danube*, and from thence to other places; as on the other hand, Salt, and divers other Commodities of the product of *Austria* and *Hungary*, are brought up against the Current of the same River.

Near this River *Hunniades* surprized the *Turkish* Camp by Moon-light, with 10000 Horse, with the Slaughter of 30000 Men, and 4000 taken Prisoners.

At last we came to *Hali Jahisar*, or *Cruschovatz*, a place of note in *Bulgaria*, having a handsome Church, with two fair Towers. From hence we continued our Journey for a whole Day through Hills and Forests, and came at Night to *Procupie*, supposed by some to be the old *Villa Procopiana*; the *Turks* call it *Urchup*. We lodged here this Night at a Merchant's House of *Ragusa*, where we met with very good Accommodation. Here we met with a *Roman Catholick* Monk, who spoke *Latin* (a rarity in those parts) and one of their Physicians, whose Knowledge went no further than the Composition of some ordinary Simples; his way was to offer his Service to the People every Morning in the Market-place.

Cruschovatz.

From

Leſcen. From hence we travell'd to *Leſcen*, or *Leſcovia*, a Town ſeated upon the River *Lyperitza*, which may well be call'd the *Maander of Maſia*, having ſo many various Windings betwixt the Hills, that in leſs than twelve Hours time we paſs'd it ninety times. This put me in mind of the *Italian* River *Tare*, which I paſs'd forty times betwixt *Parma* and *Fornove*. I found nothing worth taking notice of here, except an ancient large Tower, but without any Inſcription. We were alſo much diverted with the great Concourſe of People, which was met together on account of a great Fair, kept in an Encloſure near the place.

Part of Mount Hæmus. We continued our Journey the next Day over the Mountain *Cliſſura* (one of the Branches of Mount *Hæmus*) where our Eyes were ſurprized with the brightneſs of the Rocks, which conſiſting of *Muſcovia* Glaſs, made a pleaſing glittering ſhow; like that mentioned by * *Olearius*, of *Lapis Specularis*, betwixt *Permeras* and *Schamachia*, which ſhined like Diamonds. We deſcended through a narrow rocky way, by the ſtrong Caſtle of *Kowowotz*, or *Golobotz*, which brought us to *Urania*, a ſtrong Paſs with a Caſtle at the foot of the Mount *Cliſſura*, commanding that paſſage.

Travels into Perſia.

The whole Ridge of Hills, which extends betwixt *Servia* and *Macedonia*, is a part of Mount *Hæmus*, which under divers Names reach from the *Adriatick* to the *Euxine* Sea; and viſiting of ſeveral paſſages which *Philip* King of *Macedon* took care to ſhut up, to ſecure himſelf againſt the neighbouring Nations; ſome affirm, That from the middle Peaks of Mount *Hæmus*, there is a Proſpect both to the *Adriatick* and *Euxine* Seas. But King *Philip*, who made trial of it, found himſelf diſappointed in his Expectations, and ſo was I; for being upon one of thoſe high Mountains, but ſomewhat nearer to the *Adriatick* Sea, I found that the Mountains of *Albania* cut off the Proſpect on that ſide.

From hence we went forward to *Comonavo*, where there is ſtill a *Greek* Monaſtery on the ſide of the Hills, and ſo to *Kaplanlih* or *Tygres* Town; then to *Kuprulih*, or *Bridge-Town*, having a good Bridge over a conſiderable River call'd *Pſinia*. It was caſually ſet on fire before we left it, and a great part of it burn'd.

From hence we travell'd by the way of *Isbar* to *Pyrlipe*, firſt paſſing the high and craggy Mountains of *Pyrlipe* in *Macedonia*, which gliſter like the *Cliſſura*, and probably contains beſides the *Muſcovia* Glaſs, ſome Minerals. There we ſaw maſſy Stones lie upon maſſy Stones, without the leaſt Earth about them; and upon a high Ridge or Rock, many Steeples high, a very ſtrong Caſtle, belonging formerly to *Marco Crellowitz*, a famous Man in thoſe parts.

After this, paſſing through a plain Country, we came to a large pleaſant and well-peopled Town of *Macedonia* call'd *Monaſter*, or *Turki*, where great Preparations were making for the Reception of the *Sultana*, who was to lie in here; where I afterwards heard, ſhe was delivered of a Daughter, who lived not long.

Monaſter.

From hence we went on to *Filurina* and *Eccliſſo Verboni*, where are plentiful Springs of Mineral Waters: But as we were deſcending the Hill which leads to the Town, we had ſight of that noted Mount *Olympus*, tho' Seventy Miles off; and to the left of us, of the two Lakes of *Petriski* and *Uſtrova*, one whereof, as they ſay, was made by the removing of great Stones out of the ſide of the Hills, whereby vent being given to the ſubterraneous Waters, they broke out into the adjacent Plains. Coming to *Foribugia*, we quitted again the Plains, and paſs'd over high Rocks to *Sariggiole*, built partly upon a Hill, partly in the Plain; the firſt being inhabited by Chriſtians, and this lower part by *Turks*: Upon one of the adjacent Rocks ſtands a Caſtle. Not far from this place we went through a Paſſage cut through the Rocks, like a Gate, through which alſo paſſes a Rivulet; this Paſs commanding the Acceſs of this Country, which put me in mind of the Paſſage of *La Chiuſa*, in the *Julian Alps*, betwixt *Venſone* and *Ponteva*, which is ſhut up by the *Venetians* every Night. We paſs'd alſo by a Hill of a fine Red Earth, whereof they make Veſſels much eſteem'd in thoſe Parts; we proceeded over very dangerous Rocks, in narrow hanging ways, with dreadful Precipices on one ſide, where the Carkaſſes of Horſes, which were tumbled down, gave us ſufficient warning to be upon our guard. Afterwards we ſaw the Mount *Olympus* to our left, till we come to *Aleſſone*, or *Aleſſon*, a place of note, where the *Greeks* have a Monaſtery, belonging to thoſe of the Order of St. *Baſil*; the Building whereof was a quite different kind from that we had ſeen before.

Sariggiole.

From hence paſſing a River, we entred a pleaſant Plain of five Miles long, with divers Towns in it; and afterwards over a Hill, a Branch of the Mount *Olympus*, on the top whereof we ſaw an Old Man beating the Drum, to give notice, that the Paſſages on both ſides were free from Robbers. We deſcried from thence into the Plains of *Theſſaly*; and turning to the left, paſs'd over the River *Pharibus*, which comes from under a Rocky Mountain, not in ſmall Springs, but in one continued Channel, and taking its Courſe through the Vineyards and Corn-fields to *Tornovo*, runs into *Ariſſa*, of which we ſhall ſay more anon.

In our return we left the Road about *Kaplanlih*, taking that of *Skopia* (the *Scupi* of *Ptolemy*) call'd *Uſcopia* by the *Turks*, being a large and trading City. It is ſeated on the Frontiers of *Maſia* and *Macedonia*, at the foot of Mount *Orbelus*, upon the Rivers *Vardar* or *Axius*; in a pleaſant fertile Country intermix'd with Hills and Plains. It was formerly an Arch-Biſhop's See: Above 700 Tanners live here, who make moſt excellent Leather. There are divers handſome Sepulchral Monuments, and fair Houſes here, as that of the *Cadih*, and of the *Emir*, or one of *Mahomet's* Kindred, whoſe Father was in great Veneration in theſe parts. In the Court-Yard of the Houſe of *Emir*, you ſee a Fountain built like an old Caſtle with Towers, out of the tops whereof ſprings the Water. The Floor in their beſt Houſes are generally covered with Carpets, and the Roofs divided into Triangles, and divers other Shops, well painted, and richly gilt, but without any Figures of Animals or Vegetables. The *Bezaſtan*, or chief Market-place here, is covered with Lead, and the trading Streets with Wood; it contains a ſo a conſiderable number of *Turkiſh* Moſques. The moſt ſplendid of all ſtands upon a Hill, having a ſpacious Portico, ſuſtain'd by four Marble Pillars; near it is an Arch, with a Brook running under it, which ſeems to be an ancient Piece; as alſo a large Stone (being part of a Pillar with this Inſcription, *S H A N C.* Not far without the City you ſee a moſt Noble Aqueduct of Stone, from one Hill to another, over the interjacent Valley: It has about 200 Arches, and is a Noble Piece of Antiquity.

Skopia.

The Country hereabouts has been the Field of Great Actions in the *Roman* times; here * *Regillianus* did ſuch mighty Feats, that he deſerved a Triumph. Hereabouts ſtood alſo *Parœcopolis*, and *Ulpianum*. This City drives a conſiderable Trade with *Belgrade* and *Salonichi*, (*Theſſalonica.*)

* See Trebellius Pollio.

The *Sanziack* of *Servia* is under the Juriſdiction of the *Beglerbeg* of *Rumelia*, or *Greece*; as our Geographers generally mention this place as a very conſiderable one, ſo I thought fit to give a more particular Account of it.

From hence we went on to *Catſharich*, a Fortreſs commanding the paſſage of the Hills, and travelling on reach'd the Plains of *Coſſova* in *Bulgaria*, known for the Great Actions perform'd here; tho' not much exceeding *Lincoln Heath*. Some take it to be the *Campus Merulæ*. Here it was that *Lazarus* Deſpot of *Servia*, at the Head of 500000 Men (the greateſt Chriſtian Army that ever was brought into the Field) was worſted by *Amurath*, and he ſlain in the Field; nor was he ſurviv'd long by *Amurath*, who viewing the dead Bodies, was ſtabb'd by *Michael Cobilowitz*, a Chriſtian Soldier, left for dead in the Field; whence this part, to this Day, is call'd, *The Field of the Sepulchre*, where a Monument is erected to the Memory of *Amurath*.

In theſe Plains alſo *Hunniades* engaged three Days ſucceſſively againſt *Mahomet*, but being very unequal in Forces, was put to the Rout at laſt.

We travell'd on to *Preſtina*, a goodly Town; but the Plague being there, we took a Gypſie for our Guide, who conducted us through a fruitful Country, but very ill peopled, and were much refreſhed with the fair Carnations that grew by the way. On the right hand we ſaw a Bath, which we found arched within; the Water had a red Sediment, and a petrefying Juice, as might be ſeen by the grey Stone it had produc'd. It is not above two Leagues from *Bellachorque*, or *Curſumde*, which has a Convent with an old Church near it, with two handſome Towers.

From hence paſſing over the Hill *Jeſnebaz*, we came to *Eſhelleck*, betwixt the two Channels of the River *Marſh*, and thence by a Caſtle upon a Hill, near which is a Convent famous in thoſe parts for the Sepulchres of *Kenez Lazarus*, and of St. *Romanus*, whoſe Bodies were interred here. But it is time to return to *Ariſſa*.

A Deſcription of Ariſſa, *and* Theſſaly.

Larissa. *LARISSA*, the Capital City of *Theſſaly*, ſeated by the River *Peneus* (the moſt conſiderable of this Country) has to the North the famous Mount *Olympus*, and to the South part of the Plains of *Theſſaly*, being inhabited by *Chriſtians*, *Turks*, and *Jews*, the firſt of which have divers Churches

Churches here; it has also divers fair *Mosques* and *Turkish Moschees*. Fig 6. Its Situation is very pleasant, on a rising Ground, on the upper part whereof stands the Grand Seignior's Palace, having large jetting Windows on all four sides, to give the freer passage to the Air; here the Grand Seignior had kept his Court for several Years, to be nearer to *Candia*, and for the Conveniency of Hunting and Hawking; he staid there for some Months after we came away, and then removed to *Salonichi*, and afterwards to *Belgrade*. It is now an Arch-Bishop's See, having divers Suffragan Bishops under it. We went into the Cathedral of *St. Achilleus*, where we saw the Reverend Father *Dionysius* (who was then Arch-Bishop), standing in his Throne in his Episcopal Habit, and his Crosier in his hand. The Summer being very hot 1669, the Grand Seignior retreated for two Months to the Mount *Olympus*, to enjoy the fresh Air, whence he had a prospect of part of the *Ægean* Sea: This Removal proved destructive to a great many People, who being obliged to attend the Court, and over-heated by the ascending of so high a Mountain, were so struck with the sudden alteration of the cold Air, that they dy'd soon after, especially such as had, in their Heat and Thirst, drunk of a certain Spring of a whitish colour, who were immediately seized with a coldness at their Stomachs, and died in three or four Days after. Of Horses and Camels there also died a great number, and the Sultan himself was ill for several Days; he kill'd one of his best Horses there, by forcing him up a cragged Peak call'd *Pythagon*, or *Kissagon*, where scarce any Body durst follow him; and had he not been with-held by the Prayers of his best Friends, he would have leap'd over a Fissure or Cleft in the Rocks.

Mount Olympus.

The ancient *Greeks* (the best Romancers in the World, especially when they speak of their own Country), will have *Olympus* to reach beyond the Clouds, and therefore have assign'd *Jupiter*, and the Gods, their Residence thereabout: I am sure I saw Clouds above it; and to me, some parts of the *Alps* appear'd much higher; and in *September* there appear'd no Snow upon the *Olympus*, whereas the highest Peaks of the *Alps*, *Pyrenean*, and *Carpathian* Mountains, besides several others in *Europe*, are never without it; upon which *Olympus* also had a considerable share upon the first Rain that fell hereabouts; it being well known, that when it Rains in the Valleys, it Snows upon those and all other high Mountains.

I saw, as I told you, the *Olympus* at 70 Miles distance, and it consists not of one high rising Peak, as some describe it, but is a long Ridge of Mountains, extending a great way in length: Its extent from East to West makes the Inhabitants at the foot of the North and South sides as sensible of the difference of the Air, as if they lived in a very different Climate; which makes good the Words of *Lucan*:

Nec metuens imi Boream *habitator* Olympi,
Lucentem totis ignarat noctibus Arcton.

Paulus Æmylius, the *Roman* Consul, surprized King *Perseus*, by marching about this Hill along the Sea-side. At the Siege of *Larissa*, by *Antiochus*, *Appius Claudius* by making Fires on divers places of *Olympus*, so terrify'd the King, that he left the place, and the Consul *Martius* found means to bring his whole Army over this great Mountain. See Liv. l. 5. & 7.

Larissa has been frequently visited by divers famous Princes; King *Philip* of *Macedon*, the last of that Name, kept his Residence here for a considerable time. Whether *Xerxes* honour'd this place with his Presence, when his Army march'd through *Thessaly* towards *Thermopylæ*, the Histories of those times don't mention; but certain it is, that *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander* the Great, having form'd his Design against *Greece*, took the City of *Larissa* upon the River *Peneus*, and afterwards made good use of the *Thessalian* Horse against the *Greeks*. Before the Battle of *Pharsalia*, *Scipio* was quarter'd here with a Legion; and this was the first place of the retreat of *Pompey*, after his Overthrow; according to *Lucan*: Polyæn. See Cæsar's Com.

Vidit prima fuæ sortis Larissa *ruinæ*
Nobile, nec vilium fatis caput.

And going down the River, went out to Sea in a Boat, and was taken in by a great Ship ready to set Sail.

The River *Peneus* arises from Mount *Pindus*, which running by *Larissa*, and being augmented in her passage by divers other Rivers of *Thessaly*, exonerates it self into the *Sinus Thermaicus*, a Gulf of *Salonichi*, passing by the famous Vally of *Tempe*, and running between Mount *Olympus* and *Ossa*, into the Sea. Over this River, which (according to the Description of *Homer*) has a very clear Stream and Bottom, is a handsome Stone-Bridge, supported by nine Arches, with holes or passages in the solid parts betwixt the Arches, to afford a passage to the Water, when the Water rises high by the Floods. The City being then crowded with People, by reason of the Grand Seignior's Residence here, many of the *Turks* had set up their Tents in the lower Grounds near the River; they coming not within a Yard of the Ground, and so afford a free passage to the Air.

The nearest Port of Note unto *Larissa*, is that of *Volo* (the old *Pagasa*), in the *Sinus Pagasicus*, or Gulf of *Armiro*; not far from whence stood the ancient *Argos Pelasgicum*, from whence the *Argonauts* set sail for *Colchos*; by this way the Grand Seignior receives his Intelligence from *Candia*, and his *Asiatick* and *African* Dominions. Near the Promontory *Sepias* (not far from hence) *Xerxes* lost 500 Ships, by a Tempest from the East. Argos Pelasgicum.

As the Grand Seignior went often abroad a Shooting and Hawking, attended by a great number of his Huntsmen, Faulconers, and others, and went often to the great Mosque, so I had often the opportunity of seeing him; among the rest I took once a full view of him, as he was coming out of the Palace to go to the said Mosque: Before the Palace I saw several very fine Horses richly accoutred, which were rode by some of his Attendants in the Court-Yard, till he looking out of the Window, made a Sign to let them know which he would make use of; he no sooner appear'd without, but he was receiv'd with great Acclamations, and very low Reverences, both near and at a distance; the Streets were made clean, and a Janizary placed at every corner, to remove any thing which might be in the way. The Chiauses lead the Van on Horseback, these were follow'd by 24 Persons of Quality on Foot; on each side of his Horse walk'd two Janizaries, with large spreading white Feathers of a Fathom high, fastned to their Caps; and these shaking as they walk'd along, were high enough both for Shade and Fan his Face. After him follow'd many very fine lead Horses, and divers Persons carrying Cushions and Pillows to the Mosque. The Grand Seignior.

The Grand Seignior was then scarce 30 Years of Age, well proportion'd, but somewhat short-neck'd, inclining to fatness, of a sallow Complexion. For the rest, he is of a strong Constitution, delights in hard Riding; his Countenance is somewhat stern, yet would he invite with a kind Look People to approach him. I heard of no Physician of note he had about him; but the Grand Vizier had taken several Christian Surgeons along with him to *Candia*.

The Caimachan, or Deputy Vizier, had the chief management of Affairs of State, in the absence of *Acimet* the Prime Vizier. I went with *Osman*, *Chiaus*, to see his Palace, which was a fine Structure; where I heard ten Men playing all at once in a high Room, upon large Wind-Instruments, which they do at certain Hours every Day, making a very loud, yet not unpleasant Noise.

The Sultana was at the same time at *Larissa*, by Birth a *Candiot*, and much belov'd by the Grand Seignior; she was but low of Stature, and somewhat mark'd with the Small-Pox; being then big with Child, great Preparations were made for her Delivery at *Monaster*, a pleasant Town in *Macedonia*, the Roads being then a plaining, and the Hills laying level, with broad Bridges over the Rivers, for her more convenient passage thither. The Grand Seignior's Son, who was with her there, was then six Years of Age.

I heard at divers times the *Turks* sing their usual Songs, and among the rest, one concerning that famous *Jewish* Impostor, *Sabata Sevi*, whom *Cussum Bassa* forced to turn *Turk*. This *Cussum Bassa* is a Man of great Reputation at the *Ottoman* Court, and much valued for his Skill in Physick (a thing not much known in *Turkey*). He was formerly Vizier of *Buda*, and is now Vizier of *Erzrum*, upon the Frontiers of *Georgia* and *Persia*, and married to one of the Grand Seignior's Sisters. Of *Padre Ottomanno*, a *Dominican* Friar, whom I had seen at *Turin*, and who was thought to be the Grand Seignior's Brother, I could learn nothing here.

The Wintering of that vast Army of *Xerxes* under *Mardonius*, is an undeniable Testimony of the Fertility of *Thessaly*, which continues to this Day; for notwithstanding the vast Concourse of People, occasioned by the Sultan's Residence here, every thing was so cheap, that one might Dine at a Victualling-House, with roasted and boil'd, and Sherbet, for Six-pence a Head; and an Officer arm'd with a Club, with 24 of his Followers, kept the Streets so quiet, that not the least Disturbance was to be heard of there in the Night-time. Fruitfulness of Thessaly

The hot Weather which happen'd in *September* 1669, occasioned frequent Fevers and Agues in those parts, as about the same time other parts of *Europe* were much infected with Quartan Agues. It being then their Vintage, I tasted of their Must, or new Wine; and I observed that some of the zealous *Turks*, who would not drink Wine, yet would take a plentiful Draught of this with a great deal of eagerness. During the hot Season, we us'd frequently to visit the Barber, who perform'd his Business very well, and would trim every Man according to his Country Fashion. The *Greeks* always leave a bare place of the bigness of a Crown-piece, on the top of their Heads, round which they let grow the Hair to the breadth of two Inches, and shave all the rest of their Head.

The *Croatian* shaves his Head on one side, and on the other lets his Hair grow as long as it will.

The *Hungarian* keeps only a Fore-top, all the rest being shaved all over the Head.

The *Polanders* don't shave their Heads, but keep their Hair cut so as it comes down to the middle of the Forehead, and the middle of the Ears.

The *Turk* shaves his whole Head, leaving only a Lock upon his Crown.

The *Franks* wear their Hair long, without shaving their Heads, but to give no offence to the *Turks*, generally turn up their Hair under their Caps; but the *Greek* Priests keep and wear their Hair long.

The Party to be shaved sits low, so that the Barber, who lays on much Soap, takes of much Hair at once, and finishes the whole Business in a few Strokes. A Vessel of Water, with a Cock, hangs commonly over the Head of those that are to be shaved, so that the Barber lets out the Water upon them as he pleases. I saw accidentally in one of the Barbers Shops of *Larissa*, an ancient Noble Monument, or Tomb-stone, of a Jasper-green Colour, through the top-stone of which the Barber had caused a hole to be made to serve him for a Cistern.

In the Market-place sit certain Money-changers, who exchanged our Duckats, and Rix-Dolars, into Medines, Aspers, and five Sols Pieces, of which great plenty is to be found in those parts. All the Trading Streets were covered with Wood; their Shops were generally small, but well enough provided, the Shopkeeper sitting like a Taylor, and selling his Wares to the Buyers, who commonly remain standing in the Street: Such Commodities as are not to be had in the Shops, are cry'd about the Streets by a Man on Horseback, who at the same time tells the People what Price they are to be sold at.

I had been much pleased with the sight of divers Stables of Christian Princes, as that of the *French* King's, the Vice-Roys of *Naples*, the Electors of *Saxony* at *Dresden*, and that of Count *Wallenstein*'s at *Prague*; but for Horses, I must confess none of these can compare to those I saw at *Larissa*, being chosen from among the best of the *Turkish* Empire, so richly equipp'd with most stately Saddles and Bridles set with precious Stones, and so tractable, that I could not but be surprized thereat. I saw among the rest some *Tartarian* Horses, valued chiefly for their hardiness and swiftness, being for the rest unsightly.

The Turkish Horses.

Some of the best *Greek* Merchants are well versed in the *Italian* Tongue, which is preferr'd here before either *Latin* or *French*. The *Jews* of *Macedonia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, commonly speak *Spanish*; and those of *Hungary High-Dutch*.

At our being there the Season was so dry, that even the greatest Rivers are very low, and the small ones quite dry, except one. I took notice of about seven Miles on this side *Tornovo*, which did flow plentifully with one continued Channel from under the Rocks. This general Drought however of the Country, put me in mind of the Deluge which happen'd in the time of *Deucalion* King of *Thessaly* (as sometimes we are apt to remember things by contrary's), when by the stopping of the Current of the River *Peneus* (into which most of the others run), the whole Country of *Thessaly*, which is plain, and enclos'd on all sides by Hills, was laid under Water for a whole Winter: I know some who are of Opinion, that whole *Thessaly* was, in most ancient times under Water, till the Mountains *Ossa* and *Olympus* being torn asunder by a violent Earthquake, the River *Peneus* forced its passage that way, by *Tempe*, into the Sea.

The Deluge of Deucalion.

I remember, that as we were travelling in *Macedonia*, our Chiaus told me, that within a few Days I should see *French-men* in those parts; meaning the *Thessalians*, the Country People wearing narrow brim'd Hats, like the *French* Hats lately in fashion.

The *Thessalians* had always the Reputation of being Warlike, and are accounted so to this Day, among the *Turks*; this Country having been very famous in ancient times, not only for the Battles fought in the Plains of *Thessaly*, but also for its having produced many great and worthy Persons; and *Hippocrates*, the Father of Physicians, lived and practised here, and died about *Larissa*, being buried betwixt that place and *Gyrton*.

The *Thessalians* are generally well made, very black Hair and Eyes, with a fresh sanguine Complexion; and their Women are much celebrated, among Strangers, for their Beauty; the *Macedonians*, who inhabit a Hilly Country, being of a much tougher Complexion; and the *Moreans*, or ancient *Peloponnesians*, who live more to the South, inclining unto a Swarthiness.

The Country abounds in Horses, and have the largest Buffles in all *Greece*, except those of *Santa Maura* in *Epirus*. They have also plenty of fine yellow and black Tortoises, which are good Meat; but the *Turks* use to laugh at the Christians, for eating them, when they had such plenty of Mutton, and all sorts of Fowl. This Country also produces very large and most delicious Figs, and the best tasted Water-Melons that ever I met with; as likewise Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, and Vines, which grow low here like those of *Montpellier*, and tho' not supported bear large Branches, and Grapes as big as our Damascens, and of a most luscious taste. The Wine of the Country is rich, but has a Resinous tang.

This Country of Turky.

Its Fruit &c.

The Tobacco they plant, they esteem beyond what is brought from other parts, being stronger and more pungent. Their Fields are cover'd with *Sesamum*, and Cotton-Trees, tho' but low, make a glorious show; as also with Almond and Olive-Trees; the *Greeks* pickle their Olives ripe, whereas ours are all green. The Gourds in the Hedges, with their large yellow Flowers, and the divers sorts of green Thorns, and *Sempervirent* Oaks, make the ways exceeding pleasant. The *Ilex Coccifera*, and *Chermes Berry*, or the Excretion serving for dying and making the Confection of *Alchermes*, is very plentiful in this Country. The high Hills produce *Asclepias*, and *Helleborus*; and the stony Plains *Carduus Globosus*, *Cystus*, Lavender, Sweet Marjoram, Rosemary, and other sweet-scented Plants. The *Platanus*, or Plain-Tree, grows very fair and lofty in *Macedonia*.

They use a great deal of Garlick in their Dishes, and their Onions exceed ours, not only very far in bigness, but also in taste; being sharp, and pleasantly pungent upon the Tongue, without any offensive Smell; they agreed very well with my Stomach, tho' I never us'd to eat Onions before. They are used here at most Collations; the *Turkish Chiaus*, who had travell'd almost through all the *Turkish* Dominions, told me, that the Onions of *Egypt* only, exceeded those of *Thessaly* in goodness; which was the first time I really understood that passage in the Scripture, of the *Israelites* longing after the Onions of *Egypt*. They have also a Fruit call'd *Patlejan*, or *Melanzan* (*mala insana*) between a Melon and a Cucumber, out of which they take the Seed, and after having fill'd the Concavities with the Meat of Sausages, they pare and boil them, which makes a very good Dish.

The Foreign Ministers which attended the Grand Seignior's Court at *Larissa*, were the Imperial Resident, and the Ambassadors of *Ragusa* and *Wallachia*; those Ambassadors that reside at *Constantinople* chiefly on account of Trade, being not obliged to follow the Court. The Imperial Resident having got leave of the Sultan (by reason of the great Concourse of People at *Larissa*) to chuse which of the neighbouring Towns he pleased for his Residence, he pitch'd upon *Tornovo*, a large and pleasant City of *Thessaly*, twenty Miles to the Westward of *Larissa* near the Hills, where most of the Inhabitants are Christians, they having eighteen *Greek* Churches here, whereas the *Turks* had no more than three Mosques. The chief Churches I took notice of were, the Cathedral of St. *Stephen*, the Church of St. *Demetrius*, of *Cosmus*, and *Damianus*, of the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin, of St. *Elias* (with a Monastery adjoining to it, the Habit of the Monks being represented in the next Draught) of St. *Anastasius*, of the Twelve Apostles, of St. *Nicholas* (with a Convent also) and of St. *Anthony* the Hermite. The Bishop hereof is a Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Larissa*.

Foreign Ministers at Larissa.

* Before I travell'd into these Parts, I could never conceive that the *Eastern Countries* contained such vast numbers of *Greek* Christians as are to be found in *Grecia*, and the *Greek* Islands; in the *Turkish* Parts of *Dalmatia* and *Croatia*, in *Rascia*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Thrace*, *Sagora*, *Bulgaria*, *Persia*, *Bessarabia*, *Cossackia*, *Podolia*, *Moldavia*, and *Wallachia*; besides the vast Dominions under the Jurisdiction of the Czar of *Muscovy*: Which put me in mind of what a certain learned Author says upon that Head, *viz.* *That if a true Computation were made of the* Greek *Christians in* Europe, *they would far exceed those of the* Roman *Religion.*

* *Vide* Sig. Brerewood's Enquiries.

The

The Font or Basin in the *Greek* Churches is generally made of plain Stone, and plac'd immediately upon the Floor of the Church, which seems to be done for conveniencies sake, they being not contented with sprinkling of Water upon the Child's Head; but the Priest, having first bless'd the Water, and dipp'd the Crucifix into it three times, takes the naked Child by one Arm, and putting it into the Font up to the Waist, with the other Hand laves the Water thrice over his Head; which that it has been the ancient Custom among them, may easily be gather'd from what is related of the Emperor *Constantine* VI, *Constantinus Sextus, dictus Copronymus, quod Infans dum baptizaretur aquam sacram ventris solutione maculasset*; The dipping of the naked Body in Water being apt to move it. Some of their Children I saw baptiz'd before the Navel string was fain off.

The Fields round this place were full of Vines, Sesamum and Cotton Trees. The Emperor's Resident, named *Signore di Casa nova* lived here in great splendour, with a retinue of 30 Persons, some Christians and some *Turks*, and has two *Janizaries* attending at his Gate. He was a *Milanese* by birth, much addicted to Study, civil and courteous, but reserved. The Ambassadour of *Ragusa* had made a choice of the same Town for his Residence; but they never visited one another, by reason that the *Ragusan* being here in the quality of an Ambassadour, would not give the precedency to the other, who had only the Character of a Resident; which sometimes gave occasion of Laughter to the *Germans*; who look upon the *Ragusans* no otherwise than Vassals. And here I must not pass by in silence the many Civilities I received of a certain *Greek* Merchant of *Tornovo*, named *Demetrius*, who entertain'd us with a great deal of freedom at his House, at divers times, and brought his two Daughters to bid us welcom; whom we saluted after the Custom of our own Country. They were well attired after the *Greek* fashion, with their Hair braided and hanging down their Back; their Shooes and Slippers painted, and (which something surprized us) their Nails colour'd with red, by a certain Tincture drawn with Water and Wine, out of the Leaves of a certain Plant call'd *Cnà* or *Alcanna*, brought out of *Arabia* and *Ægypt* and much used in *Turky*, where some colour the Mains and Tails of Horses with it. The *Gracians* of *Scio*, who wear Gloves (also are rarely here) do also with this Tincture colour their Gloves upon those parts that touch their Nails. It must be confess'd, that the *Gracian* Countries bear now-a-days a quite different Face from what they have been in ancient times; the many Incursions of barbarous Nations, and the late Conquest by the *Turks*, having laid desolate many great and once famous Cities, and exchanged the Names of the rest, not leaving even the ancient Names of the Rivers, which generally are beyond the fate of Towns. Thus the Rivers of *Macedonia*, the *Axius*, *Erigonus* and *Aliacmon*, which I pass'd, have now Names, which have not the least affinity to those of former Ages. The famous River *Peneus* has under-gone the same fate as well as *Apidanus*, *Enipeus*, and others that join their Waters with it. *Larissa* is call'd *Jeni-Sahar* by the *Turks*; and *Thessaly*, *Comenolitari*.

Hands and Feet of a reddish Colour, with *Cnà*, and some of the Women colour the Extremities of their Hair also.

We were in no small danger of being robb'd as we travell'd from *Belgrade* into *Servia* by three Horse-men, who coming up with us discharg'd their Pistols; had it not been for our *Chiaus*, who knowing them to be *Spahies*, shew'd them his Feather, bidding me to discharge at the same time my Pistol, to let them know that we were not unprovided, whereupon they left us.

Caravansera's, or publick Inns, built by Benefactors for the lodging of Travellers upon the Road, we seldom made use of, the Rooms being very spacious; we were but a few in company, and not fitted for places where we must provide every thing our self; and therefore private Houses were much more convenient for us; besides, that the situation of those *Caravansera's* is often time such, as not to be secure against the Insults of Robbers, which are too frequent in those parts, tho' punish'd with the greatest severity; for which reason in most dangerous Passages Drummers are appointed, who by the beating of the Drum give notice to Travellers, that the Roads are safe.

Way of Accommodation in Travelling.

However in the main, we had sufficient good Accommodation for Travelling, for from *Comorrah* our Boat was towed by a *Saick* of 24 Oars, till we came to the *Turkish* Frontier Town, where meeting with the *Turkish* Convoy, our Boat was fasten'd to their *Saick* with 18 Oars, till we came to *Buda*, from whence we were carried in open Chariots, with two, three or four Horses a-breast, and that very swiftly, thro' a very pleasant Country, to *Belgrade*; here we were mounted on good sure footed Horses, which would carry one safely twenty Miles in a Stage. They are very free, tender mouth'd and tractable; which made the Owners not well pleased with our Spurs, seldom used by the *Turks*. They have generally a lighter and lesser Shooe than our Horses. Most of these Countries abound in good Horses, which are very fleet; but they never dock them, looking upon a long Tail as a great ornament in a Horse, which they will handsomly make up.

The *Bassa* of *Temeswar* presented *Ragotzi* with a Horse, which he slighting, cut off the Horses Ears, Main and Tail, and so sent him back again; which the *Bassa* took for such an affront, that he did not desist till he brought about the ruin of *Ragotzi*.

They dont feed them out of high Mangers or Racks; but lay their Hay before them almost even with the Ground.

In the *Caravansera's* they tie the Horses to Rings, fastned to the side of a long place, a little elevated, upon which the Travellers sleep as they can, their Hay being laid somewhat lower at the Feet, whereon the Horses feed.

They plough generally with Oxen and Buffelo's, and have great variety of Ploughs and Carts, some whereof I saw in *Macedonia* to have Wheels of solid Wood, in the whole piece, perhaps the better to undo and resist the rough and ragged ways of a rocky Country. We observed among the People in general, that they will be much oblig'd with a small Present, such as Knives, Scissors and other Toys; nay, we gave sometimes a Glove to one and the fellow to another, which they took very kindly. Thus the *Bulgarian* Women would be well pleased with a small piece of Silver Foreign Coin, and put it as an ornament to their Head-dress, tho' they had others of much more value there before.

Danger from Wolves and Dogs.

In our Journey about the Mountains of *Servia*, we were in great danger from Wolves, especially in the Woods, where they would come very near us in the Night time, so that we were forc'd to keep close together, and keep our Fire-Arms in readiness: Neither were the Dogs less troublesome; for no sooner came we near a Town or left it, but they would either meet or follow us at a considerable distance, and with barking and biting our Horses Legs, be very offensive to us. I remember that at my coming to *Comorrah*, which happened to be about midnight, we were so closely pursued by the Dogs, which were shut out of Doors on purpose, that we were forc'd to look for shelter in the Guard House.

The fear the poor Christians live in in these parts, cannot but move us greatly to compassion, where we saw them retreat to the Woods, at the first sight of us, to avoid us, which made us many times ride after them, to undeceive them.

Miserable condition of the Captives.

But the miserable condition of the Slaves and Captives is almost beyond expressing, especially if you consider the variety of their hard fate, and the odd Chances that reduce them into this miserable state; some by Treachery, some by chance of War, others being stole

Some Occurrences and Observations in this Journey.

IT seems to be one of the greatest Delights that attends travelling, to behold a different face of things in Habits, Diet, Manners, Customs and Language: Of this we had our full share after we had travelled a Days Journey beyond *Raab* and *Comorrah*; for before we reach'd *Buda*, we enter'd upon so different a course of life, especially as to Habit and Manners (which with some small alteration, continues to the utmost part of *Asia*, viz. *China*) that we thought our selves in a manner in a new World. Tho' we were provided with good Passes, and had taken all other imaginable Care for our security, yet we were not without fear from the *Hussars*, who knowing all the By-ways, commonly rob all they meet with as far as the Bridge of *Esseck*; neither were we in less fear of the *Gypsies*, who are noted here for their Robberies; tho' they live in the Towns of *Hungaria*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia* (and some also in *Thessaly*) by labour and handy-craft Trades. They are generally supposed to have their original from the Frontiers of *Wallachia*. They have a way of colouring their

Danger from Robbers.

by the *Tartars*; among all which, those who belong to the *Grand Seignior* seems to be in the worst condition, as being past all hopes of being redeem'd or exchanged. Of these I met with one at *Egribugia* in *Macedonia*, who, tho' he had a Tole-Table place at the Post-House, yet was quite dejected upon that account. In *Thessaly* I met with an *Hungarian*, who being taken at the Battle of *Barcian*, first served a *Turk*, and afterwards was sold to a *Jew*, with whom he endur'd great hardship; but being at last sold to an *Armenian*, he behaved himself so well, that his Master gave him his Freedom, and coming to *Larissa*, was entertain'd in the Imperial Resident's Service. He was a very worthy Person, who had retain'd his Christianity among all these Changes of Fortune. He spoke *Hungarian*, *Sclavonian*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, and *Latin*, and notwithstanding his slavish Condition, had been so curious as to take the draught of many Monasteries, Abby's, Mosques, and other considerable Buildings in *Armenia*, *Persia* and *Turky*, which he shew'd me. The *Turks* make their peculiar Observation upon the Captives of several Nations; Thus they say, a *Russian* makes the best Galley Slave, a *Georgian* a good Courtier, and an *Albanian* a good Counsellor, &c. I remember that the first time I went to have a sight of the *Grand Seignior*, *Osman Chiaus* kept backwards; having ask'd him the Reason, he answer'd, *I take no great pleasure in coming too near him* As the *Turks* are commonly buried near the High-ways, Tombs and Sepulchres are met with every where here, but are not very splendid, consisting only of a Stone at the Head, and another at the Foot, some of which are two, three or four Yards high; some have a Turbant cut upon the Stone at the Head, some also set up two Pillars of Stone, and sometimes raise the Sepulchres after the *European* fashion, placing two Pillars upon them, one at the Head and the other at the Feet. Of these I saw several at *Scopia*; but their best way is to erect a Pavillion, supported by four Pillars.

Turk's Sepulchres.

As we travelled thro' *Servia*, I saw to the South of *Jagodna*, on the side of a Hill, a *Turkish* Tomb of four Yards long, which the *Chiaus* told me was the Tomb of one of their Saints. As I could scarce conceive that the length of a Man should extend to that height, so it put me in mind of what I once heard Mr. *Wood* say upon this account, *viz.* That he had seen divers Graves in the Southern parts of *America* of four Yards in length, and having never met with an *American* that came near that height, he had the curiosity to have one of the Sepulchres opened from one end to the other, wherein he found a Man and a Woman so plac'd, that the Womans Head lay at the Man's Feet, and consequently requir'd a Grave of four Yards long. I thought I might without the least hazard relate this upon the Credit of a Person, who has given sufficient Proofs of his Ingenuity to the World, by his accurate Maps of the Streights of *Magellan*, its Islands, and the Coast from the *Plate River* to *Baldivia* in the South Sea. In our Travels in these parts, we met after with *Turkish* Fairs, which are kept in some large Ground, enclosed and divided into Streets, where you may furnish your self with all manner of things, not to be seen in the Western Parts, and have Musick enough at a cheap rate, which, tho' none of the best, yet serves to pass away the time pleasantly enough. We had the good Fortune in all this Journey to light upon more than one place infected with the Plagues, *viz.* at *Prestina*, in the Plains of *Cossova*, which made us make what hast we could thence to a *Gypsies* House, among the Hills, where we met with a good accommodation. The *Turks* were very well pleased to see me take out my Pocket-Book, to write down such Observations as I had opportunity to make, and were much taken with my writing so quick, with a Pen made of a Goose Quill, whereas theirs are made of a Reed, wherewith they will write very well upon smooth Paper.

Defects of our Maps.

I would often, as occasion serv'd, look into such Maps as I had brought along with me; whereat the *Chiaus* smiling said, There is but little dependance to be had on Maps, for they don't mention many great Towns, and those they do often not rightly plac'd. We *Chiauses* added he, who spend our Days in travelling, take notice of all places, and know their *Turkish* names, are the best Map makers; and I must confess, that in several Particulars I was convinced, he spoke nothing but the truth; For I found the Maps of *Hungary* not exact, and those of *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia*, and *Thessaly*, very imperfect: In *Upper Hungaria* many Towns were omitted, and as many ill placed; in the *Lower* also not a few. The *Danube* seems to take too great a Circumference to the S. W. before the *Theysse* falls into it: In *Servia* I found *Hissargick* placed a good way from the *Danube*, which runs just by it. *Procupia* or *Urchoop*, and *Lescou* or *Leskovia*, considerable Towns (the last upon the River *Lipenizza*) I found quite left out, as likewise *Kaplanly* or *Tygrest Town*; in *Macedonia*, *Kuprusly* or *Bridge-Town*, *Uranla*, *Pyrlipe*, *Comenava*, *Ecciffo Verbeni*, as also the Lake of *Petsiski*; and the Towns of *Ostrova*, *Egribugia*, *Sariggiole*, and *Sarvizza*, and the River *Injecora* near it; thus I found neither *Alessio* nor *Ternova*, tho' one of the most considerable Cities in *Thessaly*; and to confess the truth, he that travels into *Macedonia*, will never be able to square the true situations of Towns and Rivers to their Positions and Descriptions in Maps, not excepting those that have been very lately published of *Greece*. It was one of my chiefest Pleasures in this Journey to converse with *Chiauses*, who have (if they are come to any age) seen much of the Conversation of the World in their Travels, and consequently are good Company, and can give a good account of things. *Osman Chiaus*, who was our Conductor, and then of about 50 Years of age, spoke three Languages, *viz.* The *Turkish*, *Sclavonian*, and *Italian*, a brave honest Fellow, who had travelled thro' the greatest part of the Grand Seignior's Dominions, and proving old had seated himself at *Buda* as a *Chiaus* to the Vizier: he took a very obliging fare-well of me at *Buda*, conducting me without the Gates, with many a Dios and hearty Wishes of a happy return into my own native Country; and I must speak well in honour of the *Turks*, that in all my Journey, I met with very civil usage from them; I never came into a Room where the *Turks* were sitting, but they would give the first Salute and desiring me to sit down, offer some Coffee or Tobacco, except that now and then the Boys, and some few of the scum of the People would call us Haired Infidels; The worst Language I ever receiv'd was from a *Jew* at *Larisse*, whom I had employ'd to buy some things, but had it not been for the Grand Seignior's Residence in that City, some of the *Turks* that were present, would have taught him better manners. I found the *Turks* much addicted to taking of *Tobacco* in those parts; they carried it in little Bags by their sides, and us'd to take it in Pipes of an Ell long, made of Reed, with an Earthen Bowl at the end, laying one end on the Ground and the other in their Mouths. I was not much us'd to Tobacco, yet out of complaisance, I would now and then take a Pipe with them after their manner, which by reason of the length of the Pipe, I found cool, and less disturbing. I was also much taken with the neatness and cleanliness of the *Turks*, and with their washing of their Feet, Hands and Faces; I used to be mightily pleas'd to see our *Chiaus*, at the sight of a Spring or clear Water, alight and wash himself. He was very curious in winding up his Turbant every Morning, and combing of his Beard; nay, they are so nice, that they carry a Pitcher with Water, with them to the House of Office; when they make Water, they rest upon one Knee, stretching out the other Leg.

Some good qualities of the Turks.

Justice is a Vertue much encourag'd in *Turkey*; of this we had an Instance in our return at *Egribugia* in *Macedonia*; for coming to *Sariggiole*, we met by the way with a *Turkish Aga*, who having a numerous attendance, had taken up all the Horses at *Egribugia*, so that not being likely to be supplied, we resolved to continue our Journey upon the same Horses to another Stage, finding our Horses strong, and capable enough to travel thro' the Plains we were to pass: But we were scarce got without *Egribugia*, when we were stopt and carry'd by the Post-Master of the place, before the Cadish or Judge. He alledg'd against us, that he being the *Grand Seignior's* Servant, who had given him a certain Allowance for every Horse he provided, we were injurious to him in passing thro' the Town without taking Horses from him; for which he desir'd reparation. We found the *Cadish* sitting upon a Carpet in a ruminating posture, leaning his Elbow upon four or five Folio Books; he commanded his Servants to give us each a Dish of Coffee, and asking what we had to say in our defence, the *Chiaus* urged, that we were going upon very urgent Business, had the *Chaimacham's* Letters, and were employ'd from the *Grand Seignior* to the Emperor of *Germany*; and that he was the *Chiaus* to the Vizier of *Buda*, whither he was to conduct us. Upon mature deliberation the Cadish said, *The Chiaus must not be stopp'd in his Journey, nor the Post-Master uncensider'd*, and so calling for the Post-Master's Book, took his Pen, and set down a *Sultanine* to be allowed him in his Accounts to the *Tefterdar* or Treasurer, and so wish'd us a good Journey.

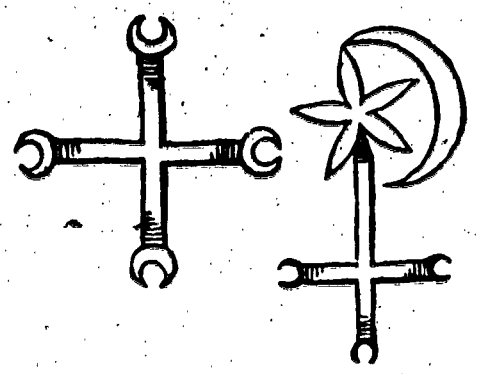
An instance of Turkish Justice.

The *Turks*, as it seems, make use of a maxime contrary to that of *Augustus*, who thought fit to put some limit unto the *Roman* Empire, whereas their chief aim is to enlarge their Dominions by new Conquests; unto which their

their hardy Education, ſober courſe of life, and unlimited obedience to their Prince, ſeems to encourage them: Certain it is, that their aim is beyond *Hungary*; and I have heard ſome *Turks* of note often ſay, we muſt try our Fortunes again before *Vienna*; where the Star and Half-Moon remain to this Day, upon the Steeple of the Cathedral Church of St. *Stephen*, above the Croſs; and I could not without a great deal of grief, take notice of a particular Croſs (not known to our Heralds) lunated after this manner, to be ſeen in many frontier places, whereby the Inhabitants, as they teſtify their Chriſtianity by the Croſs, ſo they acknowledge the *Turkiſh* Soveraignty by the Half-Moons.

It ſome good qualities of the Turks.

See the Original, p. 54.



The firſt is the Croſs ſet over the Churches in the Country, which pay contribution to the *Turks* in *Hungary*.
The ſecond is the Star and Half-Moon, upon the Steeple of St. *Stephens* Church at *Vienna*.

A Journey from Comorrah *or* Gomorrah, *to the* Mine-Towns *in* Hungary, *and from thence to* Vienna.

HAving ſatisfy'd my curioſity at and about *Comorrah*, I purſued my former reſolution of taking a Journey to the Copper, Silver, and Gold Mines of *Hungary*; and being unwilling to take ſo long a Journey as to *Presburg* again, to bring me into the ordinary Road, towards them, I pitch'd upon a nearer, tho' not much frequented Paſſage; taking therefore my way along the North ſhoar of the Iſle of *Scutz*, till I came to the Confluence of the River *Waag* and *Danube*, I paſs'd over to *Guta*, a Fortification rais'd ſince the late War in a marſhy Ground, between a branch of the *Danube*, the *Waag*, and the *Swartz*, within a Mile of *Newhauſel*, which we plainly ſaw from the Steeple of the Church of *Guta*. It had then a Fort of 130 Men, commanded by an experienc'd and brave Officer, call'd Mr. *Matthias Fruhwurdt*. Their boats in which they will paſs the greateſt Rivers, are only one piece of Wood hollowed out.

From hence we went on by way of *Forchutz* to *Schella*, where is another Fort to hinder the incurſions of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, and about half a Mile from this place is a certain concavity in the Earth, which burns like *Solfaterra* near *Naples*; and ſo forwards to *Schinta*, a large Fort, which commands the River and the adjacent Country. It conſiſts of four Baſtions, and has a Tower in the middle. At the Gate hangs a great Rib, a Thigh-bone and a Tooth, which, they ſay, belonged to a Gyant, but I judge them to be of an Elephant. We came afterwards to *Leopoldſtadt*, a regular Fortification of ſix Baſtions, where the young Count *de Zonches* then commanded. Not far from hence, paſſing the Rivers, we came to *Frieſtadt*, a handſome large Town, but lately ruined by the *Turks*. I took a draught here of the Caſtle and Palace belonging to Count *Forchutz*, which was a goodly Structure.

The *Lutheran* School had been lately ruined by the *Turks*. They pay a yearly Tribute of four pence a Head, whether of Men, Women, Children, Sheep, Oxen or Horſes: They are much inured to hardſhip, and their Women rarely marry above once. Bathing and Sweating naked in Stoves, with their Feet in warm Water, is much uſed here, as alſo Cupping and Scarifications. There were only 12 Friars left in the Convent of the *Franciſcans*, the *Roman* Chriſtians having ſcarce any other Prieſts but Monks hereabouts. About 14 *Engliſh* Miles from hence is *Bance*, which has 15 Baths in a low Ground near the River, three of which are ſpoil'd by the *Waag*, which has there tranſgreſs'd its ordinary bounds. About 20 Years ago there were likewiſe hot Baths on the other ſide of the River, but theſe are likewiſe ſwallowed up by the overflowing of the River. The Water of theſe Baths caſts out a white ſediment, and tinges Copper and Silver in an inſtant as black as Ink. Not far off is a Quarry of Stone and divers Chalk Veins, which being of all ſorts of Colours except Green, and curiouſly mix'd or marbled, was very pleaſing to the Eye.

Hot Baths near *Bance*.

It being the 18th of *March*, the cold weather hinder'd us from bathing in ſo open a place, tho' we ſaw divers Women and Children in them, and then our Charioteer bathed himſelf in one of them at mid-night.

March the 21ſt, ſome Muſqueteers having been ſent us by Count *Zouches* for our Guard, we continued our Journey, and paſſing by *Ripnich*, a Caſtle at *Docatzi*, belonging to Baron *Berrini*, came the ſame Night to *Topolchan*, a Town upon the River *Nitra*, great part whereof had been conſumed by fire in the laſt Wars. At *Bellitz* (a Mile hence) are likewiſe hot Baths. We paſs'd the next Day by *Cleſch*, and thro' a great Wood by *Hochwiſe*, inhabited by *Germans*, and came to *Sernowitz*, ſituate upon the River *Gran*, having a Caſtle built upon a Rock. It is tributary to the *Turks*.

March the 25th, we paſs'd the River *Gran* in the Morning, and travelling among the Hills, came to *Hodritz*, by which runs a rapid Stream, of great uſe to move the Engines employed in the pounding, waſhing and melting of Silver Ore.

Hence we travell'd over a Mountain call'd *Hell*, and ſo to *Schemnitz*, which claims the precedency for Higneſs before all the other Mine-Towns in *Hungary*, and where a great quantity of Silver Ore is digged every Day. It is a well built Town, moſt of the Inhabitants being Lutherans, who have three very handſome Churches here. It has alſo three Caſtles. (1) The *Old Caſtle* in the Town, where there is all ſorts of Wind-Muſick at ſix in the Morning, at twelve at Noon, and at ſix at Night. (2) The *New-Caſtle*, built by a Lady, in a place where the Gibbet formerly ſtood. (3) On a high Peak, where a continual Guard is kept, to diſcover the approach of an Enemy, in which caſe the ſignal is given by the diſcharge of a Culverin. The Country being very hilly, the Streets muſt needs be very uneven. Hereabouts are very good Mines, among which theſe are the moſt remarkable: The *Windſchacht-Mine*, the *Trinity*, that of St. *Benedict*, St. *John*, St. *Matthias*, and another call'd the *Three Kings*; but the *Windſchacht* and the *Trinity* are the beſt and moſt wrought. The *Trinity-Mine* is at leaſt 70 Fathoms deep, built and kept open with under-work, at a vaſt expence, the greateſt part of it being in an earthy Soil. The Ore is very rich, and generally blue, cover'd with a white Clay, which gives the Streams where they work it a milky Tincture, and is that ſubſtance (as I ſuppoſe) commonly known by the name of *Lac Lunæ*, or the Milk of the Silver. Some of theſe Veins run to the North, and other rich Veins to the N. E. If two Veins happen to croſs one another, they count it lucky; ſo that the Veins of Ore keep not the ſame point even in the ſame Mine; but as they have no certain way to know where they are, or which way they run, ſo they muſt proceed by gueſs, and perſevere in their labour, till they light upon the Veins. They don't make uſe of the *Virgula divina*, or forked Hazel-ſtick to direct them (as they do in the Silver Mine at *Priburgh* in *Miſnia*) but dig on, according as they judge it moſt likely to ſucceed. They ſhew'd me one place, where they had digged ſix Years together, when afterwards they found the Vein of Ore but two Fathom diſtant from the place where they firſt began; and they ſhew'd me another place, where they digg'd 12 Years before they found the Vein, which prov'd ſo rich, that in a ſhort time they were very well paid their Charges. I went ſo far into this Mine, that I paſs'd quite under a Hill, and came out on the other ſide.

Hungarian Mines.

Trinity-Mine.

I deſcended alſo into the *Windſchacht-Mine* as far as the Water would permit me, by 300 large Steps or Stairs of a Ladder; deep in the Earth I ſaw a large Wheel of 36 Foot Diameter, turn'd by the fall of ſubterraneous Waters; by the help of this Wheel, divers Engines are moved, which pump out the Water from the bottom of the Mine up to the Concavity, where this Wheel is fix'd. The Water which turns the Wheel, does not fall lower into the Mine, but is convey'd thro' a *Cuniculus*, or a ſubterraneous Paſſage made for that Purpoſe, together with the Water pumped from the deepeſt part of the Mine, to the Foot of a Hill, where it exonerates it ſelf into the Valley. Beſides this Wheel, there is another above ground, which lies Horizontally, turned by twelve Horſes, which alſo ſerves to pump part of the Water out

The *Windſchacht-Mine*.

of

of this Mine. I was told, that no less than 200 Men were employed in all the works belonging to this Mine. I found some places of this Mine very cold, and others so hot, that I was forc'd to open my Cloaths, which were only Linen before: It being always hot where they work, they work eight hours naked, if they can hold it so long, and then rest eight hours. They shew'd me a place, where six or seven Persons were stifled by a damp; to prevent which for the future, they have placed a Tube there, the like they have over all Doors and Passages where they intend to dig for a great space, and have no passage thro', whereby they let in, or let out the Air, or carried about according as the Miners under ground ought to be ventilated. The blackish Ore is generally the richest, much of it is mix'd with a shining yellow Marchasite, which if not in too great a quantity, is very welcome, because it renders the Ore fluid, and easy to be melted; but if this is found in too great a proportion, they are of opinion that it preys upon the Silver in the Mine, and in the Furnace over-volatilizing it, and whilst it is a melting carries it upwards with the Smoak; for which reason they call it the Robber. There is also frequently found a red Substance growing to the Ore, call'd Cinnabar of Silver, which grinded with Oil, makes a Vermilion equal to, if not surpassing the common Cinnabar made by sublimation.

Marchasite.

Cinnabar.

These Mines also produce *Crystals*, *Amethists*, and *Ametrists like* mixtures, sometimes in the clefts of the Rocks, sometimes near or join'd to the Ore; as also a natural crystallized Vitriol, particularly in a Mine in *Pesold's Hill*. There is also great variety in the Silver Ore, in respect of its richness, or proportion of the Silver: A hundred weight of some Ore yields not above half an Ounce of Silver, sometimes two Ounces, three, four, five, even unto twenty Ounces; what is richer is very rare, tho' some have been found to hold half Silver, and I my self have seen some so rich as to be cut with a Knife.

Great difference in the Silver Ore.

To discover the richness of the Ore, a certain Officer is appointed, whom they call the *Probierer* (Essay-Master) which he does in this manner. They bring to him a Specimen of each sort of Ore digg'd out of the Mine, of all which sorts he takes an equal quantity, and (the Ore being first dry'd, burn'd and pounded,) adds to all an equal proportion of Lead, melts and purifies them, and then by exact Scales, takes notice of the proportion between the Ore contained in it, of which he gives an exact account to the Work-men employ'd in the great melting Furnaces; who, according to his report, add or diminish the quantities of those substances, which are to be mix'd with the Ores, to melt them in the melting Furnaces; as for instance, to a *Centen*, or 10000 Pound weight of Silver Ore; a hundred pounds weight or a *Centen* of which contains two Ounces and a half of Silver, they add forty *Centen* of *Leich* (which is Ore pounded and washed) 200 *Centens* of Iron-Stone, which is not Iron Ore, but a Stone found in those Hills of a liver Colour (perhaps the *Lapis Hæmatites*) a certain quantity of *Kis* (a sort of *Pyrites*) in proportion as there is a greater or less quantity of Marchasite mix'd with the Ore, and of the *Slecken* as much as they think fit. This last is nothing else but the Scum taken off from the top of the Pan, into which the Metals run, and is a substance made out of the former mentioned, by fusion.

How it is melted.

Whatsoever is melted in the melting Furnace, is let out thro' a hole at the bottom thereof into the Pan, fastned in the Earth before it; and thus expos'd, it acquires, as it cools, a hard Scum, Dross or Cake, which being continually taken away, the remaining Metal becomes purer; unto this they add Lead, which carries all the Silver down to the bottom, and after some time the melted Metal is taken out, and afterwards melted again in the driving Furnace, where the Lead, or what else remain'd mix'd with the Silver, is driven off by the blowing of two great Bellows; and runs over from the melted Silver in form of *Litharge of Silver*; but that which comes last, being longest in the Fire, turns red, and is call'd *Litharge of Gold*, tho' both be driven from the same Metal.

Litharge.

Most of the *Schemnitz* Silver-Ore, contains some Gold: This they separate after the Silver is melted, by granulating it, and afterwards dissolving it in *Aqua fortis* made out of a peculiar Vitriol, prepared at *Chremnitz*, whereby the Gold is left at the bottom, and is melted afterwards, and the *Aqua fortis* being separated from the Silver by distillation, serves again for the same use. But it is time to recoil, for fear of entangling my self too far in a Business, the accurate Description of which would require entire large Volumes, as well as those of *Misnia*, so exactly described by (a) *Agricola*. *Lemnius* in his works of his Minerals, are also worth reading, and *Lazarus Ercker* has given a very nice account of the principal Ores and other Mineral Bodies. But after all, it must be confess'd, that there are few places in the World to be compared with this, where Art and Nature strive to shew their utmost force, to procure riches.

How they separate the Gold from the Silver.

(a) *De re Metallica & Fossilibus*

The Emperor *Rudolphus* being a great Encourager of Mines, they work to this Day much after the same manner, except that many of their Engines and Instruments are much improv'd since. It seems to be somewhat odd, yet is nevertheless very true, that in a place where every Week a vast quantity of Silver is digg'd up, and carried away by Cart-Loads, I could not meet with one pure Silver Piece. This happen'd to me at *Schemnitz*; for being desirous to see what alteration divers of those Mineral Waters in that Country would make upon Metals, I would fain have had a piece of pure Silver, which, however the whole Town was not able to furnish me withal; the current Money of the Country being all mix'd with Copper, so that I was forced to borrow some Silver Crosses and Medals, to try the intended experiment.

Near unto *Schemnitz* (where old *Schemnitz* stood) I saw a high perpendicular Rock, part of which from the top to the bottom is of a shining Blue Colour, with some Green and Yellow spots, which appear'd so beautiful to the Eye, as if it had been one entire Mass of *Lapis Lazuli*, finely polish'd: I was not a little surpriz'd at the sight thereof, and should have been more, had I not heard before a certain *Spaniard* tell me, who had lived a considerable time in the *West-Indies*; That there is a Rock like this near the Silver Mines of *Peru*.

At *Glass-Hitten* (about seven *English* Miles from *Schemnitz*) there was formerly a rich Gold-Mine, but is lost ever since the inroad made by the *Transylvanian* Prince *Bethlem Gabor* into those parts, when the Inhabitants flying away, the Entrance was stopp'd up, and has not been known since. The Owner thereof has however thought fit to leave some Directions and certain Marks behind him, whereby in time the same might be discover'd again; with the Figures of his Instruments upon the Barks of the Trees; which Instruments having already been found by digging, thus much is intimated, That where they find a Stone on which a Face is carved, they are near the Entrance of this rich Gold-Mine; and to open the passage into it, they are only to remove a certain part of the Rock thereabouts, which was made use of by the Owner, to stop up the Entrance into the Mine.

A rich Gold Mine lost.

Glass-Hitten, is also a place very well known and much frequented by reason of its natural Hot Baths, of which five are conveniently built with handsome Steps into them, and cover'd with fair and lofty Roofs. The Springs are very transparent, having a red and green Sediment; the Wood and Seats under Water, being cover'd with a stony Substance, and Silver is gilt by being left in them. But that call'd the *Sweating-Bath* excels the rest, its Spring being drain'd thro' a Hill before they issue forth into the Bath; at one end of which is a Cave, into which you ascend by several Steps, which being heated by the *Thermæ*, like a Stove, by choosing your Seat either higher or lower, you may enjoy either a more remiss or intense degree of Sweating at pleasure. The sides of this Stove as well as those of the Bath, by the continual exhalations of the hot Springs, are cover'd with a red, white and green Substance.

The Baths of Glass-Hitten.

Whilst I was bathing my self in the largest of these Baths, a certain Fellow who was shewing divers active tricks to the Men and Women that were then in the Bath, gave me a satisfactory Account concerning several questions I ask'd him about the natural Vitriol, which he told me was to be found in divers Mines hereabouts, crystalliz'd in Lumps, and fit for use; but especially in a certain Mine near *Schemnitz*, now given over by reason of the Earths falling in, in several places. About two or three Days after he came to me at *Schemnitz*, and having brought along with him, Lamps, and Mine-mens Habits for me and two more, we went together into the Mine, where he shew'd me the Vitriol shooting upon the Stones and Earth, nay, upon the Floor and sides of the Passages, in the same manner as it does in the Pans, and about the Sticks, not hanging from the top like to Ice-icles, as I have seen it in several places before.

Natural Vitriol in a Mine.

Glass-Hitten belongs to the Earl of *Lippey*, of whose Family was the famous *Polycarpus Precopius Becanus*, who being sent by the Arch-bishop of *Presburgh*, to investigate the Curiosities of these Countries, died before his Observations came to light.

Eisenbach, not above four *English* Miles from hence, and about six from *Schemnitz*, has also hot Baths, with a red

Eisenbach.

red Sediment, and containing a considerable quantity of petrefying Juice, as may be seen by the Timber on the sides of the Bath, some of the lowermost of which, near the Water, were quite turn'd into Stone; it bears the Spout thro' which the Spring was convey'd into the Bath, being under Water, tho' of Wood, yet not in the least changed, the reason of which must be ascrib'd to the volatile particles of these Waters, which are carried immediately upwards with their exhalations. I remember that in the Bath of the Green Pillars at *Buda*, these Vapours condensed by the high *Cupola* built over it, and on the Irons extended from one Column to another, and on the Capitals of the Pillars were formed into long Stones like Ice-icles, hanging in all those places, such as I have observed in subterraneous Grotto's, and especially in *England* in *Wookey-hole* in *Somersetshire*, and *Peters-hole* in *Derby-shire*. This is evident from the Sulphurous Parts contained in these Waters, which however are not discoverable, if you either boil or evaporate the Bath-Water, as being carried away together with the Steam, and nothing is more common than to see the Sulphur of the hot Water stick on many places over the Bath. I perfectly remember, that leaning one Day over the Ballisters of the Lower Bath at *Baden*, I found my Buttons, which were of Plate, tinged by the sulphureous Particles, of a fair Gold Colour, tho' at a good distance from the Water. This Accident did tempt me to the trial of another Experiment *viz.* I took care to hang some Money at one or two Foot distance, which was colour'd likewise in less than a Minute, which made me conclude, that its petrefying quality consisted chiefly in its volatile Particles. I brought away with me several pieces of this petrefied Water of five or six Inches diameter.

But to return to *Eisenbach*; It has in all three Baths, two of which are conveniently built, the third made by the Water let out of the former, is call'd the *Snake-Bath*, from the number of Snakes coming into it immediately after it is fill'd with these Waters.

March the 30th, I set out from *Schemnitz*, and taking my way from *Glasi-Hitten* and *Apfelsdorff* (where the Arch-bishop of *Presburgh* has a Palace) I afterwards pass'd the River *Gran*, and travelling among the Mountains, I saw certain Entrenchments cast up from one ridge of the Mountains to the other, to defend themselves against any sudden Incursions; then following the Traces of the same yellow Silver, which owes its Colour to the Ore which it washes above, we came to *Chremnitz*, standing very high, especially the Church of St. *John*, at some distance from it, which is reckon'd to stand upon the highest Ground in *Hungary*. The Town is but small, but the Suburbs of a pretty large compass. As the Mine here is the oldest so it is the richest in Gold of all the seven in these parts, which are, *Schemnitz*, *Chremnitz*, *Newsol*, *Koningsbergh*, *Bochuntz*, *Liberen* and *Tiin*.

Chremnitz.

The Mines of *Chremnitz.*

The Gold Mine of *Chremnitz* has been work'd in near 1000 Years, being nine or ten *English* Miles in length. It has one *Cuniculus* or Horizontal Passage, call'd the *Erbstall* of 800 Fathoms in length, its depth being at least 170 Fathoms; into which they do not descend by Ladders, but are let down in certain Seats of Leather, broad and conveniently contriv'd, fastned to the end of a Cable, by the gentle turning of a Wheel, to which the other end of the Cable is fastned. This Mine has six perpendicular Schachts, Shafts or Pits, (1) That of *Rudolphus*, (2) of Queen *Anne*, (3) *Ferdinand*, (4) *Matthias*, (5) the *Windschacht*, and (6) *Leopold*. I went into the Mine by the first, 108 Fathom deep, and after many Hours stay there, was drawn out again by *Leopold's* Schacht or Pit, in a streight Line above 150 Fathoms, a height surpassing that of the Pyramids by a third part. It was kept up on all sides with fair Trees, laid upon one another from the bottom to the top, in the same manner as all the other Mines are here, that have no Rock on all sides. Most of the Veins run to the North and East, and they work towards one, two or three, as they call it in the Miners Language, who direct themselves under-ground by a kind of Compass, not of 32 Points (as is used at Sea) but by one distinguish'd into 24, which they divide into twice twelve as we do our Days.

The Gold Ore is sometimes white, some of it black, some red and some yellow, but the white with black spots is accounted the best, as likewise the Ore next to the black Veins. As this Ore is not rich enough to be made trial of in small parcels, to investigate the proportion of the Gold it contains, so they take another way for the proof thereof; by pounding a considerable quantity, and washing it in a small River running by the Town; which being branch'd out into divers artificial Channels, runs over the Ore continually, and thus washing away the Earthy part from the Metalline, becomes thereby tinged below the Town (after its passage over so much Ore) with a dark yellow Colour, the same with the Earth over which it runs. This is manifest at *Christmass*, *Easter*, and *Whitsuntide*, on each of which Feasts, the Miners ceasing from their ordinary works in the Mines for two Days together, the River flows as clear below as it does above the Town. There have been pieces of pure Gold found in this Mine, of which I have seen some in the Emperors, and Elector of *Saxony's* Repositories, one of the breadth of the Palm of my Hand, others somewhat less; but these are rarities. The Yellow Earth of the Grounds about *Chremnitz*, but especially of the Hills to the Town are not without Gold, which is the reason that a great part of one of those Hills is quite digg'd away, the Earth having been wash'd and managed in the same manner, as the pounded Ore, not without good profit. *Matthias Dollinger*, the Surveyor of the Mine at *Chremnitz* (who entertain'd me very obligingly) has of late found out a certain Engine to pound the Ore much finer than it was before, by which means they now obtain a considerable quantity of Gold out of that Ore, which otherwise would have yielded none.

There are certain Passages in this Mine, cut thro' the Rock, which being long disused, the sides which were formerly spacious enough to carry the Ore thro', being now so near one another, that we were scarce able to pass.

How they carry the Ore from one Passage to another, or to the Pit.

Their way of conveying the Ore from place to place, or to the bottom of the Pit (from whence it is drawn up) is performed by a certain Chest they call the Dog; It is higher behind than before, and runs upon four Wheels, having a Tongue of Iron at the bottom, which being fitted into a Channel of Wood, cut in the middle of the bottom of each Passage, cannot deviate thence, so that a little Boy runs with 300 or 400 pounds weight of Ore in the Chariot before him, without any light, thro' those dark Passages, with great swiftness, and coming out, turns out the Ore upon the Ground, and so back again thro' the same way he came.

How they carry the Ore from the Mines.

They make use of another Engine or Chest, altogether like this, except that instead of an Iron Tongue, it has four Rowlers, besides the four Wheels; with this they carry the Ore from the Mouth of the Mine, or down the Hills to the *Buchwerke* (as they call it) where it is pounded and washed. The way being laid all along with Fir-Trees, and so contriv'd, that the Rowlers must needs rowl upon the Fir-Trees, without being able to over-turn or run out of the Way, so as to be managed by a Child, and sometimes a Dog, there passing scarce a Week but that betwixt 300 and 400 of the Chariots, containing each 400 weight of Ore, are carried down thus to every *Buchwerke*. There were then in this Mine two very pernicious Damps, besides others that were less dangerous: One was in a *Schacht*, *Shaft*, Pit or *Puteus*, the other in a *Stall* as they call it, or Passage, or *Cuniculus*; no Lamp would burn in them for any time, and so long as they did, the Miners would venture to stay there, but as soon as they went out they were drawn up again; they find these Vapours more pestiferous, where the Water is very high; but that in the *Cuniculus* they were in good hopes to correct by perflation, and digging another passage into it. They told me that at one time they lost 28 Men in four several Passages, *viz.* seven in each *Cuniculus*; At the first sinking of *Leopold's Schacht* or Pit, they were extreamly troubled with pernicious Damps, which they qualify'd in this manner: They fix'd a Tube reaching from the top to the bottom of the Pit, but this not answering altogether their Expectations, they were oblig'd to have recourse to another Invention, *viz.* by stopping the Pit by means of a broad flat Board, which covered all the sides of it, except where the Tube was, and so forc'd out all the Air in the Pit thro' the Tube, which they were forc'd often to repeat till they made divers other Passages into it, whereby the Air is render'd wholsome enough; for as I was drawn up thro' it, I found not the least difficulty in breathing.

Altermans Fore-stall or *Cuniculus*, 500 Fathoms long, was, by the carelessness of a Boy, wiping the Snuff of his Lamp upon the Wood, burn'd 1642. and 50 Men smothered in it; they were all afterwards taken up, except one, whose whole Body seem'd to be consum'd by the corrosiveness of the Waters of the Mine; there remaining nothing but his Cloaths.

Vitriol in this Mine.

This Mine also contains red, white, blue and green Vitriol and Vitriolate Waters. There is also in this Mine a certain Substance adhering to the Gold Ore, and consisting of small pointed parts like Needles, of a purple Colour, and shining, the Mother of it being yellow like Brimstone, they give it the Name of *Antimony* of Gold.

Divers

Divers sorts of Crystals are also found here, and among them some yellow ones.

A Vitriol Mine.

Near the Gold-Mine in the same Hills, is a Vitriol Mine at least 80 Fathoms deep; containing a red, and sometimes greenish Ore or Earth. This they infuse in Water for three Days, and then pouring it off, boil it for seven Days successively in Leaden Cauldrons till it is coagulated to a white thick Substance, which being reduc'd to a Calx in a Furnace, they keep for the making of *Aqua Fortis*, or the *separating Water* used at *Schemnitz*. Where they pound the Gold Ore, a Foundation of Wood is laid at least three Yards deep, upon which they spread the Ore. Over this are 24 Beams covered at the bottom with Iron, for the better grinding of the Ore, which is always covered with Water, and the Work continued Day and Night without intermission, they making use of Firr, or some other resinous Wood, instead of Candles.

How they wash and pound the Gold Ore.

This Grinding, as I told you, is perform'd by the 24 Beams, moved by 4 Wheels, *viz.* 6 Beams by each Wheel; the latter, which runs from the pounded one, being let into little Pots or Cisterns, perhaps 7 or 8 one after another, and at last into a very large one, of perhaps half an Acre of Ground; which after it is well settled, is let out.

The pounded Gold Ore they call *Slich*, among which they account that the richest, which is neareſt to the Beams, where it is first pounded: Then they take the *Slich* washed so long, as perhaps in a Hundred Pound Weight there may be half an Ounce, or perhaps an Ounce of Gold and Silver, two thirds whereof are generally Gold, (the *Chremnitz* Ore being rarely without some mixture of Silver; as the best of the *Schemnitz* Silver Ore contains, for the most part, an eighth part in proportion of the Silver;) to this *Slich* they add Lime-stone, and slacken and melt them together in the Melting-Furnace. This Melting produces that they call *Lech*, which *Lech* being burn'd with Charcoal to render it more porous, is then call'd *Roſt*.

How they melt it.

This *Roſt* they mix with Sand, and melt it again in the Melting-Furnace, then let it out into the Pan, and proceed as in the melting of Silver.

Another way of washing and separating the Gold Ore.

Among divers other ways they have to separate the Gold from the pounded Ore, they have one perform'd by the means of Lead; *viz.* The pounded Ore being well wash'd, they lay it in Powder upon Cloths, so that by the easie descending of the Water over it, and their continual stirring it, the earthy parts are wash'd away, the heavier and metalline remaining on the Cloth.

In the same manner they proceed with Sheep-skins and Wool, being placed where the Rivulets come either from the Works, or the Hills. The Cloths in which the Ore is thus setled, they wash in several Tubs, and the Water, after it setling poured off from its Sediment; this Sediment being again washed divers times, and stirr'd up in several Vessels; they at last sprinkle Quicksilver upon it, and knead it well together for two Hours; then washing it again in a wooden Vessel (after they have first separated good part of it, which the Quicksilver touches not, by striking the Vessel against their Legs) they reduce the mixture of Gold and Quicksilver into an *Amalgama*. After this, having separated again the Quicksilver, by straining it through a coarse Cloth first, and afterwards through a fine. They put the remaining Mass upon a perforated Plate, which they set over a deep Pan placed in the Earth, in the bottom of which is a good quantity of Quicksilver; over this Pan and Plate they lute a Cover, and making a Charcoal Fire upon it, force the Quicksilver, as yet remaining with the Gold, downwards to the rest in the bottom of the Pan, and afterwards taking out the Gold, purifie it once more in the Fire.

Having pass'd several Days at *Chremnitz*, I travell'd forward to *Newsol*; and as I pass'd over the Hills on the East-side of *Chremnitz*, upon the top of one of them, I saw a vast Stone, or Rock alone, near the high Road; these Hills being for the most part cover'd with Wood, which are of great Service to the Gold Mine.

Quicksilver Mines.

Passing on further, we came in sight of the Village of *Lila*, near which are the Quicksilver Hills. From hence we came to the River *Gran*, upon which *Newsol* stands, which has a handsome wooden Bridge over the River, and a handsome Row of Piles cross the River to stop the Wood, which about ten Miles higher is thrown into the River, and without any further labour, by the force of the Current, carried down to *Newsol*, for the burning, melting, casting, and hammering the Copper, in that Copper-Mine.

Newsol.

Newsol is a goodly Town, having a spacious Piazza, at the upper end of which stands a fair Tower. The Church, which stands within the Castle, is covered with Copper, and within it are many carved Figures of Wood and Stone Relicks; which this [illegible] yet are preserved by the *Lutherans*, who are in possession of this Church: the same being to be observed in most other ancient *Lutheran* Churches.

The Copper Mines.

All about this Town are the richest Copper-Mines in all *Hungary*; but the Copper is so strongly united to the Stone, as the Copper Ore of this Mine is burnt and melted fourteen times, before it produces Copper fit for use. The first melting is performed with certain Stone they call *Flus-stein*, and its own Dross, and with *Kis*, or a sort of *Pyrites*. Then it is carried to the *Roſt-hearth*, as they term it, being [illegible] or Heaps of Billets, upon which it is laid, [illegible] being set a-fire underneath, the Ore is burnt in [illegible] call'd *Roſt*; which being repeated thus seven or eight times, it is then melted again in the Melting-Furnace, and so two Furnaces more at *Mismills*, and twice more at the Hammer.

Note the Copper is separated from the Ore.

This *Kis* is brought hither from *Pesina*, which melted is used in the melting of Silver.

Mismills.

At *Mismills*, not far from hence, they have a way of getting a certain Quantity of Silver out of the Copper, by adding Lead to it whilst it is a melting, after which they take out the melted Metals together in Spoons or Iron Dishes. After it is cold, they give it a quick Fire again as it lies upon cross Bars, until the Silver and Lead melts and falls through. The Copper after by many reiterated Meltings it is made fit for use, is cut in pieces by very large pointed Hammers, moved by Mills, and afterwards formed into Plates, with other flat and round Hammers.

The Surveyor of the Works of *Newsol*, did not only entertain me with a Present of Wine and Fowls, but also gave me a Letter to the Governour of the Copper-Mine of *Herrn-grundt*.

Herrn-grundt.

This is a small Town seated very high betwixt two Hills, about an *Hungarian* Mile from *Newsol*; he found the high Lands thereabouts all covered with Snow, whereas in the Valleys betwixt this place and *Newsol* we met with none: We felt the Air very piercing at the entrance of this Mine, being only in our Miners Habits, which consists only of a Linen Coat and Drawers, a stiff round Cap, like the Crown of a Hat, a Leather Apron turn'd behind, and two pieces of Leather fastned to the Knees, to defend them against striking upon the Rocks, or the fall of any Earth upon them. But within the Mine it was warm enough.

I pass'd into this Mine through a *Cuniculus* call'd *Tachstoln*, and visited most of the remarkable places in it; you descend into it by certain Trees set upright, with deep Notches cut into them, to rest the Foot upon. As this Mine lies very high in the Hill, so they are not troubled with Water, but often with Dust, and sometimes with very pernicious Damps: In one place they shew'd me how they had remedy'd a very pestiferous Damp, by blowing a vast Pair of Bellows for several Days together: But what is most observable, is, that those Damps are not only to be found in those parts of the Mines where it is full of Earth and Clay, but also where it is rocky; I saw one place where there had been a very bad Damp, surrounded on all sides with so hard a Rock, that they had been forced to open their way with Gunpowder ram'd into long Holes, and so blown up; for it is to be known, that a great part of this Mine is within the Rock, where consequently they need no Timber to keep it up, as they are forced to do in those passages, that have either Earth on both sides, or Rock on one, and Earth on the other side. The passages of this Mine are neither horizontal, nor near to a perpendicular, but moderately inclining up and down, having many large Cavities within. In one place where we descended, we found the passage stopp'd by some Earth lately fall'n in; but one of our Guides finding the Earth yet loose, without more adoe digged his way through, and notwithstanding the Earth fell continually upon him got through, tho' a great heap of Earth tumbled after him, which they soon carried off with their Engines call'd *Dogs*, and so clear'd the passage.

This Mine has very large Veins, such as they call *Cumulace*, and the Ore is very rich, a hundred Pound Weight of Ore yielding commonly twenty Pounds of Copper, sometimes thirty, forty, fifty, and even to sixty in the Hundred; but a great part of it is firmly united to the Rock; nay, in many places the Rock and Ore are one continued Stone, with this difference only, that one part of it will yield Copper, the other none; which is distinguish'd only by the Colour, and that at first sight, the Copper Ore being for the most part either yellow or black, the yellow being pure Copper Ore; whereas the black contains also a proportion of Silver.

This Mineral produces white, green, and blue Vitriol, and a red clear transparent; as also a green Sediment of a [illegible] green [illegible]

green Water, call'd *Berg-Grün*, us'd by Painters. Here are also found Stones of a beautiful green and blue Colour, and one sort upon which *Turcoises* have been found, and therefore call'd the *Mother of Turcois*.

But above all the rest, there are two Springs of *Vitriolate Water* here (call'd the new and the old *Ziment*) which turn Iron into Copper, and consequently deserve our peculiar Observation. These Springs lie very deep in the Mine, and commonly the Iron laid in it, is turn'd into good Copper in fourteen Days time; with this further advantage, that the worst useless Iron is turn'd into the purest Copper, much exceeding in goodness that of the Ore, which must run through many Fires before it is rendred useful, whereas this made by the Vitriolate Springs, is very malleable, and easily melted; for I my self have melted it, without the addition of any other Substance: I took a good quantity of this Copper out of the old *Ziment*, and among the rest a piece of Copper of the figure of a Heart, which had been laid in it eleven or twelve Days before, having the same figure, but as perfectly Iron then, as it is Copper at this Day. Some will not allow this to be a Transmutation of one Metal into another, but that this Water being saturated with the *Vitriolum Veneris*, and meeting with a Body so apt to receive it, as the *Mars*, or Iron, it deposes *Venus*, who immediately insinuating her self into *Mars*, precipitates his Substance, and in lieu thereof substitutes her own Body. But this Opinion is sufficiently contradicted by Experience: For tho' in the changing of Iron into Copper, many parts are separated, and lie at the bottom of the *Ziment*, yet the same melted produces no Iron, but an excellent Copper, as I found it by my own Experience. I have since seen such a kind of Transmutation attempted by Art, and not without good success.

After having taken a full view of the Mine, I was reconducted to the Surveyor's House, who entertain'd me very handsomely, presented me with a Chain of Copper transmuted in those Springs; and among other Curiosities shew'd me an exact Map of this Mine, with most curious Delineations of all its Passages, with a Scale to measure the Distances of the Places in the Mine; which for its extent, number of People, and admirable order, might well be compared to a considerable subterraneous City. I saw him take some Copper Ore, which being well heated and cast into common Water, made it like the Natural Baths which arise near these Hills.

At parting we drank out of a Cup made of this transmuted Iron, gilt over, having a rich piece of Silver Ore fastned in the middle of it, with this Inscription engraven on the outside: ☉

Eisen ware ich, Kupfer bin ich
Silberg trag ich, Goldt bedeckt mich. i. e.

Copper I am, but Iron was of old;
Silver I carry, cover'd am with Gold.

The yearly Profit arising to the Emperor from his Mines, is computed at 120000 *l.* Sterling. But if more of those Vitriol Springs should be discovered (as some have already been at *Zolnock*, and other places near the *Carpathian* Hills) the same wou'd be considerably increased. But if the like Springs saturated with the Vitriol of Silver, should be discovered near the Silver Mines, and the same by a skilful Artist improved to the best advantage, the Profit likely to arise from such a Transmutation would amount to an immense Sum.

From *Herrn-grundt* we travell'd to *Stubn*, about twenty *English* Miles from *Newsol*, and fourteen from *Chremnitz*. Here we saw, near a Brook, several hot Baths, highly esteem'd, and much frequented; the Water is very transparent, of a sulphurous Smell, with a green Sediment; it colours the Wood over it green and black, but does not change the colour of Metals so soon as most others; I left Money in it a whole Night, which I found but faintly coloured.

There are Seven Baths here:

(1.) The Noble-man's Bath. (2.) The Gentleman's. (3.) The Country-man's. (4.) The Country-woman's. (5.) The Beggar's Bath. (6.) For such as are infected with the *French* Disease. (7.) The Gypsies Bath.

They are much of the same degree of heat as the King's Bath in *England*, in a fine Plain surrounded with Mountains, those to the East being the same, which on the other side are so rich in Metals.

From *Stubn* we went on to *Boinitz*, crossing the River *Nitras*, and leaving *Privitz*, a large Town, to the left of us. At *Boinitz* are also five natural Baths, of a very gentle heat, covered all of them under one large Roof. Into the Nobleman's Bath you descend on all sides by strong Stairs, the other four being of Wood, but handsomely built.

From hence we continued our Journey to *Wisslenitz*, 14 *English* Miles, and the next Day to *Trenschin*, which they count four *Hungarian*, or 28 *English* Miles, which took us up a whole long Days Journey.

Trenschin is a very handsome City upon the River *Wag*, having a goodly wooden Bridge over that River, and a fair Piazza. The Jesuits Church is a goodly Structure, and the Castle (belonging to Count *Fellenjoy*), seated very high; about a Mile from the City are two choice Baths, and the Country hereabouts affords divers good Springs of Mineral Waters. Here it was that we met with Count *Rothall*, who being then on his way to *Eperies* in Upper *Hungary*, to treat in the Quality of the Emperor's Commissioner, with those of *Abesi* Prince of *Transylvania*: I engaged some of his Attendants to make an enquiry into the Salt Mines there, of which they afterwards gave me the following Account. About two *Eng.* Miles from the said City of *Eperies*, is a famous Salt Mine 180 Fathoms deep; for the most part in an earthy, and not a rocky Ground. Salt Mine near *Eperies*.

The Miners descend it first by Ropes, and afterwards by Ladders. The Salt Veins are so large, that entire pieces have been found of 10000 Pound Weight, which they commonly here cut into long square Pieces of two Foot in length, and one in thickness; which afterwards is grounded betwixt two Stones.

Tho' the Mine be cold and moist, yet is the Salt not easily dissolved: Notwithstanding which great part of the Water of the Mines is so much impregnated with Salt, that when boil'd, it affords a bluish Salt, which the Country People give to their Cattle.

The Colour of the Stone Salt of this Mine is somewhat inclining to a grey; but when grounded to Powder is very white, and consists of pointed Parts, or Fossets. Another sort of Salt there is also, which consists of Squares and Tables; and they have a third sort with long Shoots. There is also some difference in the Colour of the Salt of this Mine, some of which is grossly mix'd with the Earth participating much of its Colour; and even that which is as pure as Crystal, does as often receive divers Tinctures: I saw once in the middle of a Crystal Salt, with long Shoots a delicate blue. And at the Count of *Rothal*'s a large Piece of a transparent yellow; some Pieces are so clear and so hard, that they carve them into divers Shapes and Figures like Crystal. Of all these sorts I brought some Pieces along with me to *England*.

But it is time to take our Farewel of the Mines, and to return to our Journey; which we continued near to the River *Wag*, to *Novo Mesto*; and the next Day to *Tirnaw*, seated in a Plain. The following Day we reach'd the *Danube*, and took up our Quarters that Night at *Presburgh*, (of which we have spoken before.) Here passing the *Danube* in two Ferry-Boats, we travell'd by *Hainburg* Tower, by *Haimberg* Hill, by the Town of *Haimberg*, by *Regelsbrun*, *Vscher*, and *Sweenet*, to *Vienna*.

We observed in those Countries in Upper *Hungary* thro' which we pass'd, things to have a quite different Face from that of *Austria*, and from what in all likelyhood they have been formerly; most of them having been subject to the Ravages of the *Turks* and *Tartars* in the last War, and some of them being forced even now to pay a yearly Tribute to the *Turks*. The Inhabitants thereof live so meanly, that they scarce afford themselves necessary Furniture for their Houses. Even in those Countries under the Emperor's Jurisdiction, many of the Inhabitants, being either *Lutherans* or *Calvinists*, and in constant fear from the *Roman* Clergy, are but little satisfied in their Condition.

Formerly almost all the Mine-Towns were inhabited by *Lutherans*, but now the Officers are all *Roman Catholicks*. And at *Schemnitz*, one of the *Lutheran* Churches was taken from them. And we were inform'd, that Count *Palfi* had enjoyn'd all his *Lutheran* Tenants, at and about *Boinitz*, either to change their Religion, or to quit their Houses and Lands.

You meet also in divers places of *Hungary* with *Anabaptists*; and near the Frontiers of *Transylvania*, with *Unitarians*. Even the *Roman Catholick Hungarians* are not a little jealous of the *Germans*, and the Court of *Vienna*; because they think them preferr'd before them, and that their Privileges are not well maintain'd.

A Journey from Vienna to Styria, Carinthia, Carniola, Friuli, into the strange Lake of Zirchnitz, to the Quick-silver Mines at Idria, and to other remarkable Places in the Alps.

HAving during my stay at *Vienna* taken a view of divers places about that City, *Newgebau*, *Calenberg*, *Closter*, *Newbough*, *Itzing*, *Baden*, *Laxamburg*, *Newsidler-See*, with others; and made a Journey to *Venice* on Horseback, for the better conveniency of staying at a place, or going out of the Road at pleasure.

Baden. The first place of Note we saw was *Baden*, four *German* Leagues from *Vienna*, a walled Town, seated near a Branch of Mount *Cetius*, the common Boundary of *Noricum* and *Pannonia*. Near the City passes a River call'd *Swechet*, which about a *German* League from *Vienna* falls into the *Danube*. It has three Churches, that of the *Austin* Friars, of *our Lady*, and St. *Stephen*. But what makes this place most remarkable, are its nine Baths, two whereof are within the Town, five without the Wall, and two beyond the before-mentioned Rivulet.

Its Baths. The *Duke's Bath* being the chiefest and largest, is 20 Foot square, in the middle of a House of the same Figure built over it: The Vapours pass through a wooden Tunnel at the top; but the Water is carried in at one corner of the Bath, near the bottom, by wooden Pipes, under the Town-Wall from the Spring-head, which rises not far thence to the Westward.

The Springs of all the other Baths are conveyed unto them through holes of the Plancher, they being on all sides cover'd with Wainscot of Firr. The Water is generally transparent, inclining something to a blue, and makes the Skin appear pale, like the Smoak of Brimstone; It turns Metals black in a few Minutes, except Gold (the Colour of which it heightens), but the Coin of the Country (which is a mixture of Copper and Silver), it turns in an instant from a white, into a dark yellow, which however soon after turns black. The Water gives a delicious green Colour to the Plants it washes, and sometimes leaves a Scum upon them, of a Purple mix'd with white. Near the Spring-head it has a great resemblance to the Sulphur River betwixt *Tivoli* and *Rome*, but its Scent is not so nauseous, nor does it incrustate its Banks. This Spring-head is worth the Observation of a curious Traveller, in regard it rises under a Rocky Hill, into which is cut an arched passage of forty Yards length, through which I pass'd, and found it as hot as a Stove, occasioned by the hot Spring-Water running under it, (like that of *Tritola* and *Baja*) the greatest part of this Cave being incrustated on the tops with a white Substance, which towards the entrance becomes harder and strong. I had some of the Pipes which conveys the Bath-Water opened; and from the upper part of these Pipes took off a good quantity of Powder-like Flower of Brimstone sublimated; whereas nothing like it was heard in the lowermost parts of the same Pipes. I dropp'd *Oleum Sulphuris per Campanam*, into this Water, which it received without the least agitation: But the *Oleum Tartari per deliquium* dropp'd into it, caused an ebullition, as in the making of *Tartar Vitriolate*.

The (2d) Bath within the Wall is call'd, *Our Lady's Bath*, being about 12 Foot broad, and 24 in length, and one end of it under a Church of the same name. This seems to be more impregnated with Sulphur than the rest, and is more blue, leaving a yellow Flower upon the Boards, as the rest do a white.

The (3d) is the *New Bath*, without the Gate.

The (4th) the *Jews Bath*, having a Partition in the middle, to separate the Men from the Women.

The (5th) St. *John's Bath*, of a Triangular Figure.

The (6th) the *Beggars Bath*; so shallow, that they are forced to be drawn in it.

The (7th) is the *Bath of the Holy Cross*, about two Fathoms square, intended for the Clergy.

The (8th) St. *Peter's Bath*, being greener than the rest.

The (9th) is the *Sower Bath*, set about with Stone Balasters, with a fair *Cupolo* and Lanthorn on the top. The Water of it is very transparent, and will colour Money black without touching it; but if once cold, will not change the colour of Metals altho' they be boil'd in it. The hottest of these Baths have not the Heat of the Queen's Bath in *England*. They use no Guides here, but direct themselves with a short turn'd Staff.

A Captain in the Emperor's Service presented me with a *Gempskugel*; which is said to be an Excrescency upon the Liver of a *Rupicapra*, or wild Goat, in the Mountains of *Tyrol*, unto which they attribute a signal Vertue in the Diseases of the Liver, malignant Fevers, and the Plague it self. The Soldiers of these parts make great account of it, as being possess'd with an Opinion, that it renders them invulnerable for two Hours after they have taken it.

From hence I travell'd on to *Newstadt*, one of the most considerable Cities of *Austria*: It is of a square Figure, having a Piazza in the middle, two sides whereof are arched; it has four Gates, three whereof are to be seen from the Piazza. St. *James's* Church has two Steeples in the Front. The Emperor has a large square Castle here, having a Tower on each Corner, which as well as the greatest part of the Town, is to be seen at a great distance, its Situation being in a low marshy Ground encompass'd with a Ditch and a double Wall. Here Count *Peter Serini*, and *Frangipani*, the Heads of the late Rebellion in *Hungary*, were beheaded. *Newstadt.*

From hence we went on through the Plains towards Mount *Simeren* (part of Mount *Cetius*), upon the top whereof you see a great heap of Stones, which make the Boundary betwixt *Austria* and *Styria*; the ascent of it is very rocky, and so steep, that 24 Horses, or Oxen, are scarce able to draw up a Coach.

In our way we pass'd by *Newkirckel*, where is a Chapel with a little red Pinnacle, built, as they say, by an *English* King; and lodged that Night at *Schorwien*, or *Schadwien*, a strong Town, situate upon the passage leading up to the Rocks betwixt the Hills; the Houses on the sides of the Rocks being inaccessible but from the top. This Town having the Mountain on both sides, and being shut up with a Gate at each end, is therefore by some stiled *Claustra Austriæ*; and a small Brook coming down from the Hills, passes under the Wall of it. From hence we travell'd to *Mehrzuschlag*, where they beat out Iron into Bars: From thence passing by a swift Rivulet call'd *Mur*, to *Keimburg*, and by a Castle belonging to the Family of *Stubnberg*, one of the most ancient in *Germany*, came to *Prug*, or *Muripens*, a well built Town, with a fair Piazza, seated upon the River *Mur*, or *Muer*, a swift large River, but not navigable. There is another Town of the same Name upon the River *Leyta*, call'd *Prug* upon the *Leyta* for distinction's sake. *Schadwien.* *Prug.*

We went on from hence to *Luheim*, where the Staple of Iron is; and thence to *Kriselfeldt* and *Judenburg*, along the River *Mur*. The next Day to *Hundtesmark* and *Neymark*, and so to *Freisach*, supposed by some to have been *Virunum*, and by others *Vaccorum*, in sight of *Altenhofn*, the Castle of *Irrowitz*, and the Castle of *Torrenburg*, which belongs to the Arch-Bishop of *Salzburg*.

From hence we travell'd to St. *Veit*, or St. *Faitls*, (*Vitopolis*), formerly the Capital City of *Carinthia*, seated at the Confluence of the two Rivers *Glen* and *Wunich*, encompass'd with a Wall; it has six Churches, and a handsome Piazza, in which stands a Noble Fountain, the Bason being of white Marble cut out of one Stone, five Fathom in Circumference, which was brought hither from *Saal*, or *Zolfeldt*, a place near it, abounding with *Roman* Antiquities.

In sight of this City are four considerable Hills, *viz.* that of St. *Veit*, St. *Ulrick*, St. *Laurence*, and St. *Helena*, with a Chapel upon each of them, to all which, upon a certain Day in the Year, the Inhabitants for thirty *English* Miles about, come on Pilgrimage on foot. We had here the Diversion of a *Latin* Comedy at the *Franciscans* Convent; it being then in *May*, we found the higher Hills covered with Snow, whereas the lower were very green, and full of Fir and Larch-Trees. Many of the Inhabitants here are troubled with hard Tumors in their Throats, some as big as their Heads (*Strumatici*), which they are fain to cover in cold Weather, when they are much discolour'd. There is an Hospital without the City for those, as well as some others that are Blind, Dumb, and Changelings. We observed however, that the better sort of People, who use a good Diet, were seldom troubled with this Distemper; tho' else their Throats have exceeded in bigness those I saw before in the *Alpine* Parts of *Savoy*.

From hence we continued our Journey to *Saal*, or *Solic*, an ancient *Roman* Colony, mentioned in the Map of *Wolfgangus Lazius*, by the Name of *Colonia Soluensis*, with a Field near it call'd *Ager Soluensis*, or *Zolfelds*; a place noted for *Roman* Antiquities, many of which have been carried away into other parts. Here I saw that so much celebrated Piece of Antiquity of the King's Chairs; being of Stone, set together in the form of two Elbow-Chairs, turn'd back to back. Upon three of the Stones are Inscriptions, which appear to be much more ancient than the *Solic.*

Fabrick

Fabrick of the Chair. At the installing of the Duke of *Carinthia* (whether a King or Emperor) either he or his Representatives sits in that part of the Chair which faces the East, a Peasant sitting at the same time in the other part to the West. Among other Ceremonies, the Peasant rising up, presents the Duke with a fat and lean Ox; The Duke being obliged to return the fat one and keep the lean one, receives afterwards a gentle box on the Ear, from the same Peasant, the instalment is thus concluded. The Church of *Saai* having had the good Fortune to escape the fury of the Barbarous Nations, is very ancient; and on the Walls has many old *Roman* Antiquities of *Basso relievo*, taken first out of *Zolfelde*. Among many others I took particular notice of these following. *A Chariot drawn by two Horses. A Chariot with a Man in it. A Woolf licking of Fruit fall'n from a Tree.* Hector *drawn behind* Achilles *his Chariot about* Troy. *Four very fair Heads unto the middle. Two Wolves, each holding a Horn and a Cup between them, out of which shoots a Vine, with Leaves and Grapes*, this is over the Porch; within the Porch is a *Cupid holding of a bunch of Grapes*; Romulus *and* Remus *sucking of a Woolf*. Two Figures over the Crucifix by St. *Christopher*, with some others, all which, as I told you, were brought hither from *Zolfelde*, where I also saw many Inscriptions; one upon a Stone on the South side of the Church was this:

Roman Antiquities.

HERCVLI. E
EPONAE. AVG.
PROSALVTE. IMP.
CAES. M. AVR.
ANTONINI. PII FE.
LICIS. INVICTI.

As also divers *Roman* Coins of Copper and Silver found in these parts. I brought away a Golden Medal of *Trajan*.

We went from thence to *Clagenfurt* (the ancient *Claudia*) now the Capital City of *Carinthia*, being a handsome four square Town, fortify'd with a strong Wall, and a broad Rampart, having a Bastion, and one in the middle of each Courtain. Its Streets are very regular; and the *Piazza* in the middle, being adorned with a Marble Column, and a Statue of the Virgin *Mary* upon it, as also with a Statue of the Emperor, and, what exceeds all the rest, with a most noble Fountain in the Center, over which is a Dragon of a prodigious size, made out of one Stone, *Hercules* with his Club standing before it: This was likewise brought from *Zolfelde*. These Mountainous parts afford three noble massy Fountains, *viz.* those two of St. *Veit* and *Clagenfurt*, and that of *Salzburg* of white Marble. *Clagenfurt* being at that time full of Souldiers, we were very civilly entertain'd by divers of the Officers, but more especially by Count *Lesley*, their Commander in chief, who carried me in his Barge thro' an artificial streight Channel into the *Werd Sea*, or Lake of *Clagenfurt*, to a Country Seat call'd *Loretto*, most pleasantly seated; having a Chapel belonging to it, built in imitation of that of *Loretto* in *Italy*, which I found exactly conformable to the Original.

Clagenfurt.

Fish.

From *Clagenfurt*, we turned to the South, and after 6 or 7 *English* Miles, pass'd the River *Dravus* over two wooden Bridges, with an a Island in the middle; and within two Hours after entring among the Hills at a place call'd *Hammer* (where the Iron is beat out) continued my Journey towards the high and great Mountain of *Luibel*. Soon after we saw our selves arriv'd by the oddest Desert of Rocks that can well be imagined, with a great *Cascata* or Water-fall, which having worn out the Rocks underneath, appears at first sight to be artificial. The ascent is very surprising, being enclosed with Walls, turning backwards and forwards, to the very Pinnacle of this great Mountain *Luibel*, part of the *Carnick Alpes*, dividing *Carinthia* and *Carniola*. Coming up as high as the steep Rocks and Peaks would let us, we were amaz'd to see our Guide lead us side-ways thro' a made way into a passage cut quite thro' the Mountain, like the famous *Grotto* of *Pausilipo* by *Naples*. It has a Roof of Wood work in the middle, which is continued into the *Carniolian* side. The Roof of this Passage is very high, its length 156 Yards, and four Yards in breadth, affording daily Passages for Country Carriages and Carts. Having never heard or read of this surprising Passage, I at first imagined it to be some old *Roman* Work, till I was credibly informed, that it was much later, there being formerly no passage into *Carniola* this way, but by going about a great way by *Villach*. In ascending this high Mountain, being infested with much Rain, and a fierce Storm, till we came to the highest part of it, I had the opportunity to see the Clouds descend, and after it was past, to ascend again so high, as to get over part of the Mountain, and a Stream of them pass'd thro' the Rocky Passage out of *Carniola* to the *Carinthian* side, directly contrary to our way, who came out of *Carinthia* into *Carniola*. As we reached this *Grotto* by a continual ascent, so no sooner were we got thro' it, but we descended by degrees, first to St. *Anna*, two *English* Miles downward, next to *Newstattel*, six or seven Miles lower, and so descending still till we came to *Crainburg* (the old *Carnodunum*) a goodly Town, seated upon the River *Save*, from whence thro' a very pleasant Plain four *German* Leagues long, we came to *Labach* (*Lubiana*) the Capital City of *Carniola*, thro' which runs the River of the same Name, which afterwards exonerates it self into the *Save*. This is a very handsom City, its Castle, which is situate upon a Hill, overlooking two large Valleys to the N. and S. but being commanded by another Hill, that lies near it, its Fortifications are neglected of late Years. Mr. *Tosh* a *Scotch* Apothecary in this City, shew'd me divers curious Minerals of those parts.

Mount Luibel.

A Passage through the Mountain.

Labach.

Labach is supposed to be the ancient *Nauportus*, so famous for the landing of the *Argonauts*, who setting out from *Argos Pelasgicum* in *Thessaly*, sail'd to *Colchos*, on the East side of the *Euxine Sea*; but being pursued by the Vessels of the King of *Colchos*, steer'd their Courses Northward to the Mouth of the *Danube*, and passing up that River, till they came to the Confluence of that River with the *Save*, they went up the River *Save*, and so the River *Labach*, till they landed at this place call'd anciently *Nauportus*, from whence they return'd by the way of the *Adriatick-Sea* into *Greece*. So that in my Travels I had been near the place of their setting out in *Thessaly*, and at their landing place in *Carniola*.

From *Labach* we travelled towards the *Zirchnitzer-See*, or that famous and most surprising Lake of *Zirchnitz*, having the Marshes on our right, and the Hills on our left Hand, till we came to *Brunnitze*, and then passing over them, we reach'd *Zirchnitz*, a Town scarce containing 300 Houses, but which has given its Name to that stupendious adjacent Lake: Here having receiv'd the necessary Directions and Accommodations at the Hands of the Judge of the place, for viewing of the Lakes, we went to *Seedorff*, a Village about half a Mile nearer the Lake, and thence to *Niderdorff*, where we took Boat, and spent sometime in taking an exact view of the Lake.

The Lake of Zirchnitz.

This Lake is about nine or ten *English* Miles long and half as broad, enclosed with Hills at some distance, and to the South side with the *Birnbaumer* Forest, of a great extent, and well stor'd with Deers, Wild-Boars, Foxes Wolves and Bears.

What makes this Lake most remarkable, or rather surprising is, that every Year in some part of the Month of *June*, the Water thereof descends thro' certain holes at the bottom, under ground; and in the Month of *September*, returns by the same ways, with a speedy ascent, rising up to the height of a Pike, and so covering the Ground again. Whilst the Water remains under ground, the Earth produces very speedily good store of Grass, yielding Food for Cattle in the Winter, and during that time, you may see the Hares, Deer, and other Wild-Beasts resort thither from the adjacent Forrests, of which great numbers are then taken by the Country People. The Lake affords vast plenty of Fish, tho' the Lake as well as part of the adjacent Country being a Lordship belonging to the Prince of *Eckenberg*, the Country are not allow'd the liberty of Fishing, except upon the going down of the Water, when they take vast numbers of them, by intercepting their passage as they are going along with the Water under ground. As far as I was able to learn, this Lake brings not up any unknown Fish at the return of the Waters, but only such as went down, and are found in most other Lakes, such as Carp, Tench, Eels, the which having spawn'd before they go down, the Fry has about three Months growth when they are brought up again.

The Water in this Lake is of a very different depth, being in some places not above four foot, and not far thence perhaps 20 Yards, so that the Ground being as it were divided into small Hills and Valleys, the Fishermen have given peculiar Names to seven of them, which in the *Sclavonian* (the Country Language), are, *Vodanas*, *Resbetu*, *Sitarza*, *Ribishkiama*, *Nakuishu*, *Levishe*, *Kottel*. I my self pass'd over five of the aforementioned Valleys, and saw a remarkable Stone call'd the *Fishers Stone*, because by its appearance, they guess when the Water will begin to retreat under ground; as also by a peculiar Hill, which being higher than the rest, becomes a pleasant Island at the return of the Water. Upon the most

exact enquiry I could make, I could not find that this Lake had fail'd one Year to descend and ascend again; or how long it was since this property had first been observed, so that it seems more than probable, that this Lake does not owe its rise to any Earth-quake, but has been the same from all Antiquity, and if my Conjecture fails me not, is the *Lugea Palus* of *Strabo*, who notwithstanding this, as well as all the other ancient Geographers, make not the least mention of this surprising Quality.

Rivers near this Lake.

The nearest part of the Sea unto this Lake, is the *Sinus Terg stinus*, and *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Gulph of *Triste*, and the Gulph of *Quevero*; at within a few Miles distance, divers considerable Rivers have their Scources, as the *Labach*, the *Corcoras* or *Gurk*, the *Colapis* or *Culp*, which falls into the *Savus*, and the *Vijao* or *amnis frigidus*, which runs into *Lisenso* by *Goritia*, besides divers others.

I observed the Ground about this Lake very hollow, and full of Caverns; the like I took notice of in divers other parts of *Carniola*, not unlike unto *Elden* Hole in *Darbyshire*, and if we may give credit to what several of the best Persons at *Zirchnitz* assur'd us, the Prince of *Eckenberg* had the Curiosity to go into one of those Caverns, and came out again upon the side of a Hill.

A natural subterraneous Passage.

Being upon my departure, I was in some doubt, whether I should go unto *Triste* (*Tergestum*) a Sea Port in the *Adriatick-Sea*, belonging to the Emperor, and thence by Ship to *Venice*; but having a great Curiosity to see the famous Quick-Silver Mine at *Idria* in the Country of *Goritia*, I went from *Zirchnitz* to *Loveeq*, and passing thro' the Mountainous parts of that Country, came to *Idria*, enclosed with Hills on all sides, a River of the same Name running just by it; which is stiled by *Leandro Alberti*, *superbissimo fiumed' Idria*, tho' it was very small and shallow then, and after great Rains, scarce has Water enough to carry down the Fir-Trees, and other Wood made use of in the Mines, for building and fuel, which being cast into the Water, above this place, are stopp'd by some Piles set cross the River, as we observed in the River *Gran* near *Newsol*.

The River *Idria*.

The Quick-Silver Mines at *Idria*.

The only thing that makes this Town worth taking notice of, are the adjacent Quick-Silver Mines; the entrance into which being somewhat low in the Town it self, this makes them somewhat subject to Water floods, to empty which, they are provided with excellent Engines, and other Devices; the deepest part of the Mine from its entrance, is betwixt 120 and 130 Fathoms.

Two sorts of Quick Silver.

This Mine affords two sorts of Quick-Silver; one call'd the Virgin Quick-silver, the other the plain Quick-silver. They call Virgin Quick-Silver that, which discovers it self without the assistance of Fire, and is either found in the Earth or Ore naturally as it is, or falls in small drops, or sometimes streams out in a considerable quantity down into the Mine. Thus seven Years before they had such a Stream coming from the Earth, which at first was as small as a common Thread, and afterwards as big as a good Pack-Thread, but did not continue for above two or three Days. They also reckon that sort of Quick-Silver, Virgin Mercury, which is separated by Water in a Sieve first, and afterwards in a long Trough with small holes at one end, without the help of any Fire.

Plain Quick-silver is call'd that, which being not at first perceivable to the Eye, is forced by Fire either out of the Ore or native Cinnabar of Mercury, which they dig out of this Mine. The Ore is of a dark brown Colour mix'd with red, but the best is a hard Stone, which before they put into the Fire, is first grosly powder'd and work'd by the Sieve, to separate the Virgin Quick-Silver if any be found in it. The Quick-Silver Ore of this Mine is the richest of all that ever I saw, for it generally contains half Quick-silver, and in two parts of Ore one part of Quick-silver, and sometimes in three parts of Ore two parts of Quick-Silver. I descended this Mine by the Pit of St. *Agatha*, by Ladders, and came up again by that of St. *Barbara*; an ascent of 639 Staves or 89 Fathoms. I saw the Laboratory, where the Quick-silver is separated by the force of Fire, 16000 Retorts of Iron, each of which costs a Crown at the Iron Furnaces in *Carinthia*. They employ at once 800 Retorts, with as many Recipients, for the drawing over the Quick-Silver in 16 Furnaces, 50 Retorts in each, *viz.* 25 on a side, 12 above and 13 below of each side.

The Laboratory for the separation of Quick-Silver.

June the 12th, 1669. When I was there I saw them carry away into foreign Parts 40 Saumes of Quick-silver, each Saume containing 315 pound weight, to the value of 4000 Ducats; it is carried upon Horses Backs, two small Barrels upon each Horse.

In the Castle I saw 3000 Saumes of Quick-silver at once, all made up in double Leather, and in another House, as much of the best Ore as could be separated in two Years time, unless they should have more than ordinary plenty of Wood coming down by the Rains; tho' by reason of the high Hills about them, it snows oftner here than it Rains.

The Town and Castle of *Idria*.

It is a Custom for all the Strangers who come into the Castle of *Idria*, to have their Names set down in a Register-Book kept for that purpose, with the Names of their Native Country. In the large Catalogue thereof, we met but with few *English* Mens Names, and of late Years only with Mr. *Evelyn* and Mr. *Pope*'s Names, with their Companies, who after their return, had their Observations inserted in the Philosophical Transactions. As the better sort of the Inhabitants of this Town generally speak five Languages, *viz.* the *Friulian*, *Sclavonian*, *German*, *Latin* and *Italian* (besides that some also speak *French*) so it is very fit for the reception of Strangers.

Goritia.

From *Idria* we pass'd the *Swartzenberg* or Black-Mountain, and descending 10 Miles thro' a stony Country, came to *Adelshini*, and so to *Goritia* (the old *Noreja*) the chief City of the Country of *Goritia*, pleasantly seated, over-looking a fair Plain to the South. The Imperial Governour resides in the Castle, having a Guard to attend his Person. As we were travelling in the Night time, we had sometimes about us a great number of large Gloe-worms, which put in Papers, gave a dim light, and in some places in the Plains the Air was full of flaming Flies. There is abundance of that neat kind of Acer, whereof Violins and other Musical Instruments are made, as well in those parts as in *Carinthia*, and the Arch-bishoprick of *Saltbury* or *Saltzburg*, where they make Trenchers and Tables of it, and sell them at a cheap rate; I brought some of the fair broad Leaves from thence.

Leaving *Goritia*, I pass'd the River *Soncius* or *Lisenzo*, which rising near the Hills, exonerates it self into the *Adriatick* Sea, famous for the death of *Odoacer*, who was slain near it in a Battle by *Theoderick* King of the *Goths*, and the Inroad of the *Turks* made hereabouts, 1477, under the Reign of *Mahomet* the *Great*; after which, travelling thro' the Meadows, we came unto the strong City of *Palma Nova*, built since by the *Venetians* to prevent the like Incursions. All this long Circuit till within a Mile of *Palma Nova*, we travelled thro' the Emperor's Dominions, which are much larger than generally apprehended, and as I have sooner or later seen the greatest part of them, I can't but think him a great and powerful Prince, he being in possession of all *Austria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, part of *Croatia*, *Istria* and *Friuli*, part of *Alsatia*, *Tyrol*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, part of *Lusatia*, and a considerable part of *Hungary*.

Palma Nova.

Palma Nova in *Friuli*, is the largest regular Fortification I ever met with in my Travels, having nine Bastions, bearing the Names of as many noble *Venetians*; on each Courtain there are two Cavalliers, the Rampart is much higher than the Wall, and the Ditch 30 Paces broad and 12 deep; being kept dry to render the Town more healthful, but may be fill'd in case of necessity. It has three Gates; viz. *Porta Maritima*, *Porta di Cividal*, and *Porta di Udine*. The three Bastions *Foscarini*, *Savorgnan*, and *Grimani*, lies betwixt the *Porta Maritima* and the *Porta di Udine*; those three call'd *Barbara*, *Dona* and *Monte*, betwixt the *Porta di Udine* and *Porta di Cividal*, as those of *Garzoni*, *Contarini* and *Villa Chiara* are betwixt the *Porta di Cividal* and the *Porta Maritima*. Each of these Gates were then covering with a very fair Half Moon. In the middle of the City is a Sexangular *Piazza*, from whence there is a fair prospect to the three Gates, and six Streets quite thro' the Town. In the Center of it is fix'd a Strandard over a Triple Well, the Front of the Cathedral facing the *Piazza*, which is also beautify'd with divers Statues: and a finely gilt Obelisk. There is in the middle of the Bridge an artificial Draw-Bridge, so contriv'd, that upon the approach of any Force, the Sentinel by touching only an Iron, can draw it up.

I have in my Travels made observation of divers kind of well-contriv'd Draw-bridges, amongst all which none pleased me better than those of *Amsterdam*, which part in the middle, so that the Mast-head or Break-water of the Ship bearing against it, opens it, and affords a free passage to the Vessel without any other help. The *Venetians* have made a Channel from *Palma Nova* to the Sea, capable of Vessels of good burthen. This Fortification which was begun by the *Venetians* 1594, is esteem'd here one of the choicest in *Europe*, having been contriv'd by the advice of all the best Engineers.

From

From *Palma Nova* I continued my Journey to *Maran* St. *Vito*, a *Venetian* Port in *Friuli*, where taking a *Feluca* we sail'd along the shoar of *Friuli* or *Patria*, and passing by *Porto di Tajamento* came to *Caborle*, in which Isle there is a Church dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, seated upon the very brink of the Sea-shoar, yet said, never to be overflown by the Sea.

The Author arrives at Venice.

Hence passing by *Livenza* (where the Sea formerly came up as high as *Opitergium*) and afterwards by *Porto di Piave*, I entred *Venice* by the *Porto de Castelli*, and passing by the *Carthusians* landed at the *Piazza* of St. *Mark*, I found this great City in extream combustion, by reason of the dangerous condition of *Candia*, which was soon after surrender'd to the *Turks*. The Season proved here so violent hot at that time, that some of our *English* Sea Captains told me they had seldom felt it so hot betwixt the *Tropicks*.

Lands Pass.

As I had formerly taken a view of *Rome*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Padoa*, and several others of the Chief Cities of *Italy*, I spent but a short time at *Venice* in reviewing what I thought worth taking notice of, and so prepared for my return to *Vienna*. Accordingly taking Boat at *Venice*, I landed at *Mestre*, a pretty little Town, and extreamly conveniently situated and accommodated for such as intend to travel into *Germany* by the way of *Tyrol* or into *Austria*, thro' *Friuli*. From hence travelling for 10 Miles thro' very delightful Plains, I came to *Treviso* (*Tarvisium*) which imparts its name to the Circumjacent Country, call'd *La Marca Trevigiana*; the whole City being for the rest adorned with fair Houses, noble Churches, and many Towers and Fountains. The River *Sile* which runs thro' it, exonerates its self into the Sea betwixt *Mestre* and *Murano*. This City abounds in good Vines and Fruit, and was a chief Seat of the *Lombards*, till after having run various Fortunes, it was united to the State of *Venice*, 1388. It boasts of an early Conversion to the Christian Faith by *Prosdocimus* a Follower of St. *Peter*.

Treviso

Eight Miles from hence stood the ancient City of *Altinum*, founded by *Antenor* and destroyed by *Attila* King of the *Huns*.

From *Treviso* I travell'd to *Lovadina*, crossing the great River *Piave*, *Plavis* or *Anassus*, which arising among the Mountains, passes by the City of *Belluna* and *Feltre*, thence further to *Concian* or *Coniglian*, and so to *Sacille* or *Sacillum*, formerly a Bishops See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileja*, a very pleasant place, seated upon the River *Livenza* or *Liquentia*, which after it has pass'd by *Motta*, falls into the Gulph of *Venice*.

The River Livenza.

From hence travelling with the Assistance of a Guide thro' the Plains, I came to *Spilembergo*, where I was forc'd to take another Guide to conduct me cross the swift River *Tajamento* or *Tiliaventum*, the greatest River in *Friuli*, having its rise in the *Julian Alps*, and from thence running thro' a plain Country (which it often overflows) falls into the *Adriatick* Sea.

Palma Nova.

Not far from *Spilimbergo*, I cross'd a most remarkable artificial Channel, call'd *La Brentella*, being 16 Miles in length, and made by the *Venetians*, for the more convenient conveyance of the Wood from the Mountains to their Glass-Houses at *Muran*. Both the sides and bottom are lined with a good Stone, the bottom being round.

Then I pass'd in sight of St. *Daniel*, seated upon a Hill near *Hospitaletto* and so to *Vensone*, situate at the Entrance of the Hills, formerly the utmost Frontier Town of the *Venetians*; thence by the way of *Rejuta* to *La Chiusa*, remarkable for the streight Passage of the *Alps*, being guarded and shut up by the *Venetians* every Night.

From this place I went on to *Ponteba* or *Ponte Fella*, upon the River *Fella*, the most nice Boundary betwixt the *Venetian* and Emperours Dominions on this side, that can be seen; the *Italians* subject to the *Venetians* living on one side of the Bridge, and the *Germans* under the Imperial Jurisdiction on the other side; each of them following in their manner of Living, Furniture and Cloathing, their own Country Fashion; The Bridge it self is half *Italian*, half *German*, that on the *Venetian* side being of Stone, as the other part is made of great Trees, laid over after the *German* way of making Bridges.

After I had been entertain'd with many strange Stories by the Inhabitants concerning the Snow and its Effects in those Mountains, I travell'd on by *Tervis* and *Tirl*, unto *Villach* or *Villack*, a goodly City, and one of the best of *Carinthia*. I took a view of the natural Baths, which were not above an *English* Mile from it at the Foot of a Hill, being two clear Sulphurous Baths, of a gentle heat, and having an acid pleasant taste. The bottom was not plancher'd, but hath its natural Spring and Settlement; they are pretty large, with Stairs to descend into them, and little wooden Rooms to bath in, with Shirts and Drawers as in *Austria*.

The Bath of Villach.

Near this place is the Lake call'd the *Offiacker See* from *Offiack*, a Town seated on the side of it, being one of the most considerable Lakes in *Carinthia*, which has also divers others, as the *White Lak*, the *Millstatter*, the *Werd* and *Forchten* Lake. The first of these does not only produce great quantities of Fish, but also great plenty of *Offiacker* Nuts, of which the Country People make Bread; which upon strict examination, I found to be no other than very large Seeds of *Tribulus Aquaticus*, or Water *Gallthorps*.

From *Villach* I soon came to the *Werd See*, or the Lake of *Clagenfurte*, and travelling along it on my right-Hand till I came to *Clagenfurte*, went on thence to St. *Veit*, where meeting with Mr. *Donellan*, he gave me (pursuant to my former Desire) an Account of the great Lead-Mines of *Bleyberg* in Upper *Carinthia*, which have been work'd 1100 Years. The *Cuniculus* of this Mine call'd *Federnus Stollen*, is 110 Fathoms deep in the Earth, surrounded with high Hills, the melted Snow whereof rowling down into the Spring, does often considerable damages.

The Lead-Mines of Bleyberg.

Among divers other Natural Curiosities, he presented me with a rich, large, fair piece of Natural *Cinabar*, found in the *Crewalds* or Forrest of Ore, two *German* Leagues from St. *Veit*, in the Lordship of *Costerwitz*, where great quantities have been found in it some Years ago, especially in a Brook running from the Hill, but is rarely to be found now, except they dig for it.

From St. *Veit* I travell'd by *Friesach* (which formerly had a Gold Mine) and thence by *Newmark*, *Hundtsmark*, *Peltsolz*, *Knittelfeldt*, *Luilm*, *Pug*, *Keimberg*, *Mehrz-u-Schlag*, *Schidtwin*, *Newkircke*, *Newstadt*, *Solinaw*, *Traskirckel*, and *Newdorff* to *Wien*.

I made this Journey from *Venice* to *Vienna*, of about 350 *Italian* Miles alone upon one Horse, and notwithstanding I travell'd thro' four divers Nations, speaking as many different Languages, I met not with the least disturbance or hindrance upon the Road, but generally met with tolerable good accommodation at a cheap rate, the People of these parts being plain and honest, handy and very serviceable to the Emperor. I met with no *Jews* in this Journey (a thing otherwise very common in *Germany*) because they were prohibited in *Styria* and banish'd *Carinthia*, tho' at the same time they were tolerated in *Austria*.

The Observations of the Author.

The Description of *Vienna* being reserved for another time, when I shall describe my Journey from the *Low-Countries* to *Vienna*, and thence thro' *Moravia*, *Bohemia*, *Misnia* and *Saxony* to *Hamburg*; I thought fit to be satisfy'd at this time with giving some account of places less known in *Pannonia*, *Dacia*, *Mœsia*, *Graecia*, *Noricum*, and *Illyricum*, of which I have chiefly treated in this Work.

In my Travels thro' *Hungary* and some other Provinces under the Imperial Jurisdiction, I observed divers Errors committed by the continent Geographers. *Belgrade* is commonly placed in *Hungary*, whereas in a strict sense it lies beyond it in *Servia* or *Mœsia* Superiour. It may be perhaps allow'd that St. *Jerome* was a *Pannonian*, but that (strictly taken) makes him no *Hungarian*; for he being born in *Stridon*, now conceived to be *Stredon* or *Streyna*, seated on the West side of the River *Mur*, before it joins with the *Drave*, he was a Native of *Styria*.

Pliny makes the course of the *Save* One hundred and fifty Miles, which if taken from the Sea course is scarce the one half of it.

Strabo affirms, that the River *Save* falls into the *Drave*, whereas the *Save* which falls into the *Danube* at *Belgrade*, is at least a hundred Miles from it.

Vicinus Nauporto fluvius est Corcora, qui merces accipit, hic in Savum influit, Savus in Dravum. Lib. 7.

The distance *Strabo* makes betwixt *Aquileja* and *Nauportus* or *Labach* of fifty Miles, tho' somewhat short, yet may be reconciled; but the distance betwixt *Tergestum* or *Trieste* and the *Danube*, which he makes of One thousand two hundred Furlongs, or One hundred and fifty Miles, is far short, even unto the nearest part of the *Danube*, which can be no less than Two hundred and fifty Miles. But as the Ancients were much mistaken in the true Course of the *Danube*, one branch of which they conceive to have fall'n into the Adriatick Sea, this Mistake admits of a favourable Construction.

I making this Journey in the hottest Season of the Year, the heat was exceeding troublesome in the Plains of *Friuli* and *Austria*, whereas I found it sufficiently moderate at the same time in the *Alps*, where the Country was pleasant and green, whilst all the Grass was burnt up in *Austria* by the Sun, tho' *Austria* lay more Northern than either

either *Styria* or *Carinthia*, nothing being more commonly observed in Travelling than the Temperature of the Air, as to Heat and Cold, to be sometimes more different in one Mile, than in ten Degrees of Latitude. Nothing more common than to be ready to frieze on the top of a high Mountain, and in an Hour's time after to be scorch'd by the heat of the Sun-beams in the Valley: It is that makes Travellers complain of the Cold of the Hills, even in that hot Country of *Arabia*; and those that have made far distant Voyages, are sufficiently convinced with what ease some have pass'd the Seas, whilst others have been expos'd to great Hardships, by the Inclemency of the Climate, tho' under the same Degree of Latitude.

An Account of several Travels through a great Part of Germany: (1.) *From* Norwich *to* Cologne. (2.) *From* Cologne *to* Vienna. *And* (3) *From* Vienna *to* Hamburgh. (4) *From* Cologne *to* London. *Treating also of the Mines, Baths, and other Curiosities of those Parts Illustrated with Sculptures By* Edward Brown, *Fellow of the* London College of Physicians, *and of the* Royal Society.

Travels from Norwich *to* Cologne. *By Dr.* Brown.

I Went in the Year 1668, from *Norwich* to *Yarmouth*, a Sea-Port in the County of *Norfolk*, at the entrance of the River *Hierus*, or *Yare*: Where being furnish'd with Letters of Recommendation by Sir *James Johnson* to *Amsterdam*, *Francfort*, *Venice*, and *Vienna*, I embark'd the 14th of *August* in *Yarmouth* Road aboard the *Angel* Ketch, Burthen 55 Tuns; and set sail for *Rotterdam*, steering our Course E. and by S. and E. S. E. It was not long before we discovered *Goree* Steeple, and immediately after the *Briel*, situate at the entrance of the River *Mosa*, or the *Maese*; which having its rise in the Mountains of *Vauge*, or *Vaugesus*, passes by *Verdun*, *Dinant*, *Namur*, *Liege*, *Maestricht*, *Ruremond*, *Venlo*, and several other places, and here exonerates it self into the Ocean.

In our passage up the River we saw many goodly Villages, the most noted of which were *Maeseland-Sluice*, *Schiedam*, and *Delfts-Heaven*; and came ashore about Six in the Evening at *Rotterdam*.

Here I had sight of two of the largest Men of War belonging to *Holland*, *viz.* the *Crane*, and the *Wassenaer*; the last of which was built in lieu of that, in which Admiral *Opdam* was blown up, as he was engaged against his Royal Highness the Duke of *York*.

A Description of *Rotterdam*

The Points of the Keys of this City are very fair, and the Channels, which extend into the very Centre of it, so large and deep, as to be capable of receiving Ships of great Burthen. It is very populous, the Houses well built, and the Streets very clean. The Organs of the great Church, the Tower, and the Monument of Mons. *De Wit*, the Statue of *Erasmus* upon the Bridge, and some other Curiosities, are worth the Observation of a Traveller. It being then Fair-time, we saw some Drolls acted, and some Rarities, *viz.* Lions, Leopards, and among the rest a Woman of seven Foot high.

Of *Delft*.

From *Rotterdam* we pass'd forward to *Delft*, passing by the Powder-House (a goodly Structure at some distance from the City). The Piazza of *Delft* is very large, the Town-House fronting it at one, and the new Church with its high Steeple at the other end. This Church is famous for the Tomb of *William* of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, together with his Wife and Son, Prince *Maurice*, whose Statue is in Armour, with his Dog lying at his Feet, with four Obelisks supported by ten Marble Pillars: It stands in the middle of the Isle.

The old Church contains the Tomb of the famous *Van Tromp* carved on the Walls, his Effigies lying upon a Cannon, surrounded with Arms and Trophies.

In another Church we were shewn the Monument of Admiral *Hein*, who took the *Spanish* Plate Fleet: And in a large House, in a Wall, the Marks of some of the Bullets, by which Prince *William* was murthered, 1584.

The *Hague*.

The *Hague* is celebrated for being the ancient Residence of the Counts of *Holland*, and now of the States General; it is about three *English* Miles from *Delft*. It has a very fair Piazza, many well built Houses; and the Pall-mall, the Wood, and the Park, are very beautiful places; but what surpasses all, is the Way from hence to *Scheveling*, which is paved with Brick for three Miles, with several Rows of Trees on both sides, as far as to the Steeple of *Scheveling*.

The City of *Leyden* (nine Miles distant from the *Hague*), may for its neatness compare with any in *Europe*, its Streets being beautified with goodly Houses, and large Channels on both sides: Its Fortifications are after the modern way. One of the chiefest Antiquities of *Leyden*, is what they call the *Hengist Castle*, or the *Berg*), from its Founder *Hengist* the *Saxon*. On the top, into which we went by very handsome Stairs, we saw a very fair Arbour, a Labyrinth and Well, and at the bottom is a very good House of Entertainment. But what surpasses this, are the Ruines of an ancient Fortress not far from this City, at the Village call'd *Catwick*, upon the Sea, known by the Name of *Arx Britannica*; which being built by *Caligula*, and afterwards ruin'd by the *Normans*, was overwhelm'd by the Sea at last; yet not so, but that at certain times, when the Sea is very low, its Ruines have been plainly discovered, and some Antiquities been found, with this Inscription: *Ex. Ger. Inf. ex Germania Inferiori*. The Stadt-house has a very fair Front towards the Street. In the Anatomy-Hall you see many Skeletons, of a Whale, a Horse, Deer, Cow, Cat, and Fox, and two Legs of an Elephant, besides those of Men and Women, some Muscles preserved, and one entire Body with the Skin and Flesh.

Leyden.

The Physick-Garden is none of the largest, but well stor'd with Plants of all sorts. Near it stands the College where the Publick Lectures are kept every Day, and under it is the Printing-House of the University.

In the Stadt-house, in the Apartment of the Burgermasters, I saw a most curious Piece done by *Lucas van Leyden*, representing the Day of Judgment. Near the same place is also shewn the Table of that famous Taylor, *John* of *Leyden*, upon which he used to work, before he took upon him the Trade of a Reformer, and came to be King of the *Anabaptists* in *Germany*.

Haerlem.

From *Leyden* I travell'd to *Harlem*, seven *Dutch* Leagues (or twenty one *English* Miles) thence. Its Situation is very pleasant, among Groves of Trees. The great Church surpasses for its bigness all others in *Holland*, and is full of remarkable Inscriptions. The Pictures of all the Earls of *Holland*, in the Prince's House, are very good Pieces; and in the Summer-House of the Garden is that of *Laurence Coster*, a Citizen of this place, whom they make the first Inventer of Printing; whereas others ascribe the same to a certain *German*, named *John Gottenberg*. In the other Rooms you see several excellent Pieces of Paintings of *Heemskerk* and *Golzius*; but those of *Cornelius* of *Harlem* exceed the rest, especially his History of *Herod*'s killing the Children; his Feast of the Gods, in which *Vulcan*'s Foot is esteemed most; and his Collation of a Nun and a Monk.

On

On the other side you see a Picture of a Ship with Saws, in Memory of the glorious Action done by those of this Town, who under the Reign of *Frederick Barbarossa*, fighting against the *Saracens*, took *Damiata*, entring the Port by means of Saws fastned to the Keels of their Ships, which cut the Chains of the Harbour.

Here is also an Hospital for 60 Aged Persons, and another for the Sick, both very handsome and cleanly kept. Here I observed the first time their way of Whipping Malefactors with Rods: They tie their Hands stretch'd upward as high as they can, to a Post erected upon a Scaffold, with an Iron Round their Waste, and so give them as many Stripes as are allotted them by their Judges.

The Lake near *Harlem*, call'd the *Harlem Meere*, is above twenty Miles long.

A Description of *Amsterdam*.

The next place to *Harlem* is the City of *Amsterdam*, famous throughout the World for its Riches, Trade, Shipping, fair Streets, and magnificent Buildings. Its Situation is upon the River *Ye*, being formerly the Seat only of a few Fisher-men; but being favour'd in time with the Title of a City, by the Earls of *Holland*, was strengthned with a Wall 1470, against those of *Utrecht*; and many Years after, by the Emperor *Maximilian*, honour'd with the Imperial Crown over their Arms, which are three Crosses on a Pale. It is almost incredible how this City is increased of late Years, being now encompass'd with a new Wall, and large Ditch, after the Modern way of Fortifications. The new Streets especially are very spacious, and watered with large Channels. The River *Amstel* (from whence it has borrow'd its Name) also passes through it, being let in under a very handsome Bridge of eleven Arches, and twenty six Paces broad, which makes part of the Wall. This whole vast Body is built upon Piles of Timber driven into the Earth close to one another, the Foundation of the Tower over-against St. *Catherine*'s Church, being said to consist of 6334 great Trees; and I my self was an Eye-witness of the vast number of Trees I saw them drive into the Foundations, where the *East-India* House was to be enlarged; and at another place, where they were laying the Foundation of a *Lutheran* Church.

Its Fortifications.

Town-house.

The noblest Structure of all this Country, and one of the finest in *Europe*, is their Stadt-house, built of Free-stone, 110 Paces in Front (in which it exceeds St. *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*), and 81 Paces deep. At its very entrance, on the right Hand, you see the Hall where Malefactors receive their Sentence; the Marble Statues here hanging down their Heads, as if grieved at what was pronounced. All the Floors are covered with Marble, and the Roofs finely carved, painted, and gilt; *Atlas* bearing a Globe upon his Shoulders, stands on the top of it. The Globe is of Copper of ten Foot Diameter, and exceeds, as far as ever I heard, or saw, any Ball or Globe of this nature. That of St. *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*, and that of *Florence*, being less; and such as I have seen upon any of the *Turkish* Mosques, don't come near this in bigness; nay, the largest of those three famous Balls at *Moscow*, are, according to the Report of those that have seen it, inferiour to this. But for the better Account of this great Structure, I will refer my self to a Treatise in Folio, with Figures, giving a particular Description of all its Curiosities.

Exchange.

The Exchange of *Amsterdam* is very fair, exceeding large, and frequented by an incredible number of People. Most of their Churches are goodly Edifices. The Partition with Ballisters of Brass in the new Church are truly noble; and the Carvings of the Pulpit exceed the rest.

The Tombs of *Van Huise* and *Heemskerk*, in the old Church, are very well worth a curious Traveller's Observation: The last of these two has rendred himself famous by his successful Expeditions in the *East-Indies*, after their first Settlement there, by the way of the Cape of *Good Hope*, after they had found the *North Passage* by *Nova Zembla* impracticable.

Their House of Correction is also worth observation; having at its Entrance two Lions bridled with this Inscription:

Virtutis est domare quæ cuncti pavent.

A proper Emblem for the purpose it was intended, *viz.* to bridle the Insolencies of such as are riotous in the Streets, or commit Disorders, and the Extravagancies of the Sons of Citizens, who are past the Government of their Masters and Parents. They are employed in gaining their Bread by rasping *Brasil* Wood; and if they refuse to perform their Task, and become incorrigible by Blows, they (as we were told) put them in a large Cistern, with a Pump by them, and so letting in the Water upon them, force them to work bravely for their Life.

Publick Structures.

Their *Spin-huis* is intended for the Correction of young Women, such as live loosely, or are taken in the Streets, and other suspicious Places: Sometimes the Citizens send their Daughters hither for Chastisement, and these have Chambers allotted them; I saw above 100 Women in one large Room, some of which were very well dress'd.

In the Hospital for Children are 600 Orphans, well educated and look'd after.

The *Dolhuis* is like our *Bedlam*, intended for Delirious Persons.

The *Gast-huis*, an Hospital for the Sick; as the *Mannen-house* is an Hospital for Old Men.

They have besides this, a laudable Custom throughout all *Holland*; which is, that upon the Appointment of any Meeting at a Tavern, or any other occation, certain Forfeitures are put into a Box kept in all Publick Houses, for the use of the Poor, which is the Reason that scarce ever any Beggars are seen in the Streets.

East-India-House.

Their *East-India*-House contains an incredible Store of Spices, and other *Indian* Commodities.

Their Admiralty-House, where they keep their Stores for Shipping, is surrounded with Water for its greater security, and near it lie 72 Men of War. On the top of this House (as most of note of this City), is a Cistern for the Reception of Rain-Water, to supply the defect of Spring-Water, which is very scarce here.

At the entrance of the Gate, we saw the entire Body of a Man preserved from Corruption, enclosed to the Waste in a Canoe, made of Fish-skin, so closely sewed together, that no Water could get in.

The chiefest Streets of *Amsterdam* are, the *Harlem-Street*, the *Cingel*, *Princes Graft*, *Kaisers Graft*, and *Heeren Graft*, as also the *New Island*. Among other Rarities I saw here a Globe, the Workmanship of *Vinghoones*, betwixt six and seven Foot Diameter; it was all of Copper, and very well painted, with all the new Discoveries made 1641, at 42 Degr. S. Lat. and 170 Longit. those towards the N. W. of *Japan*, about *Nova Zembla*, the *Tartarian* Sea, beyond the Streights of *Vogats*, viz. *New Holland*, *West Friesland*, &c. Tho' most of those Discoveries are contradicted by *Martiniere*, who made a Voyage into those Parts 1653, from *Copenhagen*, especially as to the true Position of *Zembla*, its consistency to the Continent, the length of the Streights of *Vogats* (which they make ten, but be 35 *Dutch* Leagues), and a passage through it into the *Tartarian* Ocean.

I had the Curiosity to take a Prospect of the City from the Steeple of the Church, which by reason of the uneveness of the Houses, did not appear altogether so beautiful as those of *Italy*, which are flat on the top. Every Day at Eleven a Clock in the Forenoon, there is very good Musick at the Stadt house, being the Gift of the Earl of *Leicester*. The Chimes, of which there is a Sett in most Steeples here, make also a very agreeable Harmony.

Among other Persons of Note, I got into the Acquaintance of Dr. *Ruish*, who shew'd me many Curiosities in Anatomy; such as the Skeletons of Children, and Fœtus's of all Ages very neatly done; the Lymphatick Vessels preserved, with all the Valves; all the Vessels of the Liver separated from the fleshy part; many Muscles dissected, and whole Bodies kept entire, without the least signs of Corruption.

Dr. *Swammerdam* shew'd me several of his Experiments, according to his Treatise *De Respiratione*, with a Collection of many Insects. *Glauber*, the noted Chymist, gave me a sight of his Laboratory. And *Blasius*, famous for his Observations upon *Vslingius*, gave me many Marks of his Civility.

Jews of *Amsterdam*.

It is to be observed, that the Jews live at *Amsterdam* in more Splendor than in any other part of the World, being provided with magnificent Houses, and a very fair Synagogue, and have among them Persons of Learning, and endowed with other good Qualifications; some of them having lived under the Notion of Christians in other places. There was one *Juda Lee*, who had a Model of the Temple of *Solomon*, the Fort of the Temple, the Tabernacle, and many other Curiosities of that nature.

I also saw the Ceremony of the Circumcision of a *Jewish* Child; they thrust a Probe betwixt the *Glans* and *Præputium*, and dilating it so, that both the inward and outward Skin be drawn forward, by a certain Instrument they hold the Skin close to the Instrument; the remaining Skin being put back immediately, the Blood stopp'd, and the Plaister apply'd: All there present singing all the while, that the Cries of the Infant may be the less heard.

I pass'd

I pass'd from *Amsterdam* to *Utrecht* in seven Hours, in one of their *Token Schuyts*, or large Boats, drawn by Horses, through the artificial Channels which are made for this purpose in most of the Provinces, as well of *Holland* as of the *Low Countries*.

Utrecht. *Utrecht*, (anciently *Antonina*, and afterwards *Ultrajectum*), the Capital City of the Province of the same Name, is very large, and handsomely built. It has been an Episcopal See for near these thousand Years: Its first Bishop was *Willebald*, an *English-man*; whose Successors grew so potent in process of time, that they waged War against the Earls of *Holland*. It was made an University 1636. The great Church has three Steeples one above the other, from whence I took a full view of the circumjacent Country, which is very plain, and so populous, that there are no less than 51 walled Towns, to any of which you may go in a Day's Journey thence. Here is also an *English* Church, in the middle of which is a Pillar, the Foundation of which was laid upon Bulls Hides, 1099, with the Picture of a Bull with this Inscription:

Accipe Posteritas quod per tua secula narres,
Taurinis cutibus fundo solidata columna est.

The Library belonging to this Church, has divers old Manuscripts, and among the rest, a Bible in six Volumes, painted and gilded after a very ancient way. The two *German* Idols, bestowed upon this place by the Emperor *Henry* IV. are worth taking notice of for their Antiquity's sake: As also a Horn said to be made of a Tooth. I saw also three Sea-Unicorns Horns (being an Animal in the Northern Seas), one of which being tipp'd with Silver, serv'd for a Drinking-Cup. They were about five Foot long; tho' the King of *Denmark* has two that were taken near *Nova Zembla*, that have ten Foot in length: This King's Father had so many of them, that he bestowed above 100 of them for the making of a magnificent Throne. I my self have seen some fifteen Foot long, and a Walking-Staff, a Scepter, Scabbard for a Sword, and other Curiosities made of the Teeth of this Animal; but could never be convinced of its Effects against Poyson, or any contagious Distemper, tho' I have given it frequently, and in very great quantities.

Here I had also the Honour to see Dr. *Cyprianus ab Oesterga*, Dr. *Regius*, *Voetius*, the only Member left alive of the Synod of *Dort*; but unfortunately miss'd the sight of the famous *Anna Maria Skurman*, she being gone into the Country, yet had the good Fortune to see her Picture, drawn by her own Hand, with this Inscription:

Cernitis hic picti nostros in Imagine vultus,
Si negat ars formam gratia vestra dabit.

In the Painters Hall of this City are very good Pieces of Painting, many Heads done by *Van Colen* and *Tuart*; some Landskips of *Softleven*, and very good *Turkish* Habits, by *Vander Meer*.

The Market-place, or Piazza, is a very fair one, into which abutt some long Streets; but the Pall-mall without the Town, with five Rows of very tall and fair Trees on each side, surpasses for pleasantness all the rest.

I travell'd from *Utrecht*, in two Hours, to *Vianen*, and crossing the River *Leck* to *Vianen*, where there is nothing remarkable, besides the House and Gardens of Count *Brederode*, accounted the Noblest Family in *Holland*, as that of *Wassenger* is the most ancient, and that of *Egmont* the richest. A certain Mount belonging to this Garden, makes part of the Rampart of the place. The Statues of the Twelve *Cæsars*, of *Alistede*, with some Pyramids, Partitions, and Paintings, are Ornaments to a Travellers Curiosity.

Hence I pass'd by Boat through the Country of *Arkel*, and came the same Night to *Gorcum*, a City situate near the three Rivers, the *Linge*, the *Waal*, and the *Maese*: It has a pretty handsome Market-place, and a Church with a very high Steeple. The Fortifications are of Earth, and over the Water-Gate you see this Inscription:

Civitas in quâ maximè Cives legitimè parent, & in pace beata, & bello invicta. 1642.

Which Inscription seem'd to have been fulfill'd 1672, when the powerful Army of *Lewis* XIV. King of *France*, who conquered thirty Cities in one Campaign, did not extend their Conquests beyond this place.

Worcum. From *Gorcum* I went to *Worcum*, on the other side of the River, and so by the Castle of *Loevestein*, famous for the Imprisonment of *Barneveit*; which since that time has given that Name to the whole Party, which is generally call'd in *Holland* the *Loevestein* Faction.

Passing further up the *Maese*, we came the next Day to *Hertogen Bosche*, having left *Prove* on the left, and *Heusden* on the right hand. This City call'd by some *Sylva Ducis*, *Boisleduc*, and *Buldue*, is a well fortified City, situate upon the River *Dessa*, or *Dese*, which joins its Waters two Leagues below this place with the *Maese*, being one of the chiefest Frontiers belonging to the United Provinces on that side, and strong both by Art and Nature. Its Avenues are only Causeways made through the Marshes, with various turnings, commanded by six small Forts; besides which, the Town is both commanded and defended by a Citadel, consisting of five regular Bastions, each Curtain being 84 Paces long, the Faces of each Bastion 63, and the Flank or Neck 24. The Market-place here is triangular.

In the Cathedral (which is dedicated to St. *John*) are many of the painted Arms of the Knights of the Golden Fleece, and on the upper Stalls an Inscription containing a short Account of the first Institution of this Order, by *Philip* Sir-named the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, *Lorrain*, and *Brabant*. It was made an Episcopal See 1559, and taken by the *Dutch* from the *Spaniards* 1628.

From hence we pursued our Journey through a plain and sandy Country to *Breda*, a City situated upon the River *Merck*. It is very well fortified, with a large Ditch round the Counterscarp, and a Ravelin betwixt each Bastion, joined to the Rampart with-inside of the Ditch; besides a good number of Half-moons and Horn-works, and a Parapet strengthned with a double Row of Elms. This place belongs to the Prince of *Orange*: The *Spaniards* took it in the beginning of the Low Country Wars; but the *Dutch* not long after surprized it, by putting 80 armed Men in a Boat covered with Turf, who thus entred the Castle.

It was retaken by the *Spaniards*, 1625; and afterwards regained again by *Frederick Henry* Prince of *Orange*. It has a very fair Church, in which are many goodly Tombs; and among the rest those of *Engelbert* Count of *Nassaw*, with his Family; of the Heer *Van Horn*, and his three Wives; and of *Henry* Earl of *Nassaw*, who being the Founder of the Castle of *Breda*, his Armour is supported by four Warriours upon their Knees. The Gardens, Gallery, Walks, and Dials belonging to this Castle, are worth a Traveller's Observation.

From *Breda* we travell'd by Land to St. *Gertruydenberg*, the utmost Frontier Place of the *Dutch* on the North-side of *Brabant*. It is of no great extent, but abounds in Fish, which are catch'd in a kind of a Lake call'd the *Heart*, made so by the falling into it of the *Maese*, and divers other Rivers. You see here a very fair Church, and the Ruines of a large Steeple.

We pass'd hence over a large Water, which had overflow'd the circumjacent Country, and drown'd 22 Parishes, and passing by the ancient Tower call'd *Marvey* House, came to *Dort*, or *Dordracum*. This City, which is seated in the Waves of those great Lakes made by the *Maese* and the *Waal*, is reckoned the chief Town of *South Holland*, as having the Privilege of the Mint, and the Staple for *Rhenish* Wine, and *English* Cloth, who have two Churches here, as the *French* have one. The great Church has a Steeple of 312 Steps high: I took a View of the Apartment where the Synod of *Dort* had been held 1011; which was a very fair one, and had an extraordinary agreeable Prospect into the Country. The large round-bellied Vessels which stand betwixt this City and *Cologne*, intermix'd with long *Liege*-Boats, afford an odd Spectacle to Strangers.

I embark'd in a Vessel bound for the Isle of *Walcheren*, and sailing by most of the Island of *Zealand*, and in sight of the Towns of *Williamstadt*, *Zirickzee*, *Tergoes*, &c. we came ashore at *Ter-Vere*, where there is a convenient Harbour. It has a fair long Market-place. The *Scotch* have had a Factory here for above 200 Years; over-against it you see a Steeple, the remainder of a goodly Town, which has been swallow'd up by the Sea.

From hence to *Middleburg* the way is paved with a kind of small hard Brick; the same being to be observed in many places also in *Holland*.

The City of *Middleburg* is seated in the very Centre of the Isle of *Walachria*, being very well built, spacious and populous, being the 4th Chamber, or Port, of the *East-India* Company; *Amsterdam* being in the first rank, *Rotterdam* the second, and *Flushing* the third. There is a broad Water within the compass of the Town, from whence is cut a Channel, which carries Vessels to the Sea. It is very well fortified, and beautified with many fair Churches, and other Publick and Private Structures. The new Church is of an Octogonal Figure, with a Cupolo, the Steeple of the old Church is famous for its height, the Town-House considerable for its old Statues, and the

Piazza

Piazza of a circular Figure. The Country round about it being cover'd with fruitful Gardens and Orchards. The *Zealanders* are generally great Lovers of the Family of *Orange*. Hence I went to *Flushingen*, a strong and good Sea-port Town, strengthen'd with Stone Walls towards the Sea, and Mud-works to the Land-side. This being one of the first places the *Netherlands* took from the *Spaniards* 1572, the same was together with *Rammaken* and the *Briel*, made a Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth*, 1585, and restored again to the United Provinces 1616, by King *James* the I. The Mouth of the Harbour is surrounded with Piles and Posts driven into the Ground, and these again are secur'd by Rushes, Flags and Reeds, staked down, intermix'd with Osiers and Hurdles, to break the force of the Water. The Stadt-House is a goodly Structure, standing in the Market-place, and affords a fair prospect into the Front, which is adorned with three rows of Pillars, one above the other; the lower-most Row being of the *Dorick*, the second of the *Ionick*, and the uppermost of the *Corinthian* Order, on the top of which is a Gallery, from thence you may discover Ships at a great distance at Sea. We saw here many Ships, and among them some Men of War of a considerable bigness. The Women in the Isle of *Walcheren* are clad for the most part in red Cloth, and wear Straw-Hats. If a Man happen to die here, a great bundle is laid at the Door, if a Child a little one, if a Male, it is put on the right side, if a Female on the left. When a Woman is deliver'd, they give notice of what Sex the Child is of to the Neighbourhood, by tying a piece of Lawne to the Rapper of the Door, made up into the shape of a Puppet, and representing the Sex of the new-born Child.

Of Flushingen.

I returned to *Middleburgh* by Land, where I embark'd again, and passing down the River by the Fort *Rammaken*, entered the River *Schelde*, and sailing up, pass'd the Fort *Frederick Henrick*, and so to the Fort *Lillo*, where we were forc'd to stay till our Ship was searched. Just opposite to the last of these two Forts, on the other side of the River is the Fort call'd *Liefgens hoek*, and on the other side another call'd *de la Croix*, the last belonging to the *Hollanders*; The *Spanish* Forts to defend those Frontiers are, The *Philip*, the *Pearl*, and the *Mary*.

The River *Scaldis* or *Schelde*, mentioned by *Cæsar*, has its rise in the Country of *Vermandois*, and passing by *Cambras*, *Valenciennes*, *Tornay*, *Dornick*, *Oudenard*, *Ghent*, *Rupelmond* and *Antwerp*, divides it self afterwards into two Channels, whereof the Southern is call'd the *Hont* (*Dog*), the other taking its course from *Bergen-op-Zoom*, exonerates its self into the Sea, betwixt the Isles of *Zealand*.

The River Schelde.

The next Day we continued our Voyage upon the *Schelde*, and arrived safely at *Antwerp*. This City is of a large extent; its Walls, which are very broad, with divers rows of Trees upon them, being faced with Brick and Free-stones, after the modern way, tho' the Bastions are none of the largest, but the Ditch is very broad and deep. The Cittadel is accounted one of the best Fortifications of five Bastions, in those parts, being very well lin'd with Brick and Stones, and commanding the City, the River and the adjacent Country. There is also another Fort near the *Schelde*. The Exchange of *Antwerp* is supported by 36 Pillars, each being carved a different way. It stands in the middle of four Streets, which lead unto it, from four different sides. The *Meer* the most remarkable Street of the City, has the Water running under it, and here the Coaches meet to take the *Tour-à-la-mode*; at one end of it you see a large Brass Crucifix, placed upon a Pedestal of Marble. The *Jesuits* Church here, exceeds for magnificence any that ever I met with out of *Italy*. The Front is a noble piece of Architecture, having the Statue of *Ignatius Loyola* on the top. The Roof is for the most part painted by *Rubens* and *Van Dyke*; the Carving is most excellent, and the Flower Work done by *Segers* a *Jesuit*. It has a very handsome Library, kept in four Chambers, the Founder of which was *Godfrid Houtappel*, whose Tomb, with his Wife and Children, is to be seen in a Chapel on the South side of the Church. The *Carmelite* Church is famous for the large Statue of Silver of the Virgin *Mary*. The Church *of our blessed Lady* is the biggest, and the Steeple the noblest and one of the best built in the World, being 459 Foot high. This Church abounds also in many curious pieces of Paintings, and among the rest, there is one highly esteem'd, done by *Quintin*, who being at first a Smith, made that curious Iron Work of the Wall before the West Door; but afterwards, to gain his Mistress, turned Painter, and became famous in this Art. His Head you see cut in Stone near the Church Door, with this Inscription:

The City of Antwerp.

Connubialis amor de Mulcibre fecit Apellem.

I took also a view of the Abby of St. *Michael*, seated upon the River *Schelde*; among other Rarities I saw here a Glass, which represented the Pictures of our Saviour and the Virgin *Mary*, collected from the putting together of divers other Heads: One being represented from a certain Picture, which contained no less than 13 Faces, and the other from one of 12. That of the Virgin *Mary* had this Inscription:

Diva nites variis expressa Maria Figuris.

In this Abby, which contains 63 Monks, I saw also the Tomb of a Countess of *Brabant*, who was drowned, and her Statue. Near the Wharf-gate, you see the Church of St. *Walburgis*, an *English* Saint. The Town-house of *Antwerp* is a goodly Structure, that belonging formerly to the Eastern Merchants very magnificent and large, but run to ruin of late; here were preserved several sorts of Musical Instruments, not known, much less understood now-a-days. The *Hessen* House has been none of the worst in former time. The Water which they make use of in Brewing, is conveyed hither from *Hercteal*, at least 30 Miles, by means of a peculiar Channel. This City produces also many great Collections of Pictures, and some of the best Miniature, done by *Gonsol*; of that kind I saw one curious piece, done by 35 several Masters.

I went from *Antwerp* to *Brussels* by Water, but was fain to change Boat five times, by reason of the many Locks and Sluces, the Country about *Brussels* being 200 Foot higher than about *Antw*... There is a place call'd *Fontaine*, about five Miles from *Brussels*, where three Rivers cross one another, and one of them is carried over a Bridge. The Market place of *Brussels* is an oblong square, having the Town-house at one end, and opposite to it the Royal Palace, near which the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horne* were beheaded. On the top of the Town-house you see the Statue of St. *Michael*, the Patron of this City, in Brass. In the Church of the *Carmelites*, the Altar is a very noble piece, and near unto the Church stands a Statue of a pissing Boy, which serves instead of a continual Conduit. We also took a view of the Armory, which was well furnish'd formerly, but has now only some few Remains, such as the Armour of *Charles* V. of the Duke *d' Alva*, of the Cardinal *Infanta*, and some few others, and divers Bucklers curiously wrought; the Sword of *Charles* V. wherewith he us'd to make the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*; and some Banners taken at the Battel of *Pavia* from *Francis*. Before the Court of the Palace stand five Brass Statues, and on one of the Towers, a Bird pierc'd with an Arrow, in memory of the Shot which the *Infanta Isabella* made, when with an Arrow she kill'd a Bird. The Park has very pleasant Walks, set with Trees, and intermingled with Grotto's, Fountains and Water-works; one piece comes near to *Frascati*, imitating the sound of all musical Instruments, by a kind of perpetual motion. But what is most surprising in this Park is the Echo, which makes ten or twelve distinct Replies. The Church of St. *Gudula* claims the preference for bigness; and two Chapels here are worth the Travellers Observation; in one of which is presented the Host, which bled when stabb'd by the *Jews*. The *Dominican* Church is famous chiefly for the Monuments of the Duke and Dutchess of *Cleve*, in *Corinthian* Brass. The *Begennes*, or Pious Maids (a kind of Nuns) of which there are near 800 at *Brussels*, have also a very fair Church, which is milk-white, and lately built: The *English* have also a Nunnery here. There were at that time above 360 Houses shut up, infected with the Plague, and marked with this Token,

Brussels.

The Armory.

The Park.

†
IHS

which made me hasten away, so that after I had dined at the Fish-Tavern (noted for its many Pictures) I returned to *Antwerp*, and travelling, the 4th *October*, thro' an open Country, I took up my quarters that Night at *Molin bruste*, and entring the Country of *Liege* the 5th, arriv'd the 6th at *Maestricht*, a strong City, situated upon the *Maes*, four Leagues below *Liege*. It is chiefly considerable for its Out-works, the Wall it self being old. To remedy the inconveniency arising to the Town from an adjacent Hill on the S. E. side, they have made a Horn-work within a Musket-shot of it, and a high Bastion answering to it, covers the Town. Under this

Maestricht.

Hill is one of the best Quarries of Stone in the World. On the other side of the *Mass* is a Suburb call'd the *Wicke*, rather stronger than *Maestricht*, unto which it is join'd by a Bridge of nine Arches. The Country on that side is flat: The Houses of *Maestricht* are none of the handsomest; yet is the Town-house a goodly Structure, standing in one of the Piazzas; in another Piazza stands the Great Church. This Town was taken by the *Spaniards* 1632. *October* the 7th, I pass'd thro' *Gallop*, and came the same Night to *Aken*, *Aix la Chapelle*, or *Aquisgranum*, famous chiefly for its hot Baths, of which more hereafter. From hence I pursued my Journey towards *Juliers*, but being late we pass'd by it, leaving it to the right. Not far from this City runs a shallow but swift River, call'd the *Roer*, at the Confluence of which with the *Mass* is *Roermonde*, the Capital City of the *Spanish Gelderlands*, seated upon a rising Ground. From *Juliers* I travell'd to *Cologne*, where I arriv'd the 10th of *October* 1668.

A Journey from *Cologne* to *Vienna*.

A Description of the City of Cologne.

Cologne, *Cöllen*, or *Colonia Agrippina*, anciently the Chief Seat of the *Ubii*, who first of all inhabited the Country of *Bergues*, were infested by the *Germans*, and imploring the Protection of the *Romans*, were by them placed on the other side of the *Rhine*, and settled in this place by *Agrippa* Lord Lieutenant of *Gallia*, and was afterwards named *Colonia Agrippina*, in honour of *Agrippina*, Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*, whose Birth-place it was. It may for its extent vie, with any City of *Germany*, and is fortified to the Land-side with two high Walls and two deep Trenches, and beautified with several rows of pleasant Trees, and secur'd on the side of the *Rhine* by a Wall of Stone; but its greatest strength consists in some Out-works, Half-moons and Ravelins. The chief Streets are broad, and pav'd with broad Stones. *Maternus*, who was present at the Conquest of *Arles*, was their Bishop at least 1350 Years since. Great part of the Town is taken up with Churches and Monasteries, most of which are very well endowed, there being to most of the Houses of the Canons and Prebends, large Gardens and Vineyards. The Church of St. *Kunibald* lies on the North side of the Town, but the Convent of the *Dominicans*, is a very fair modern Structure. The *Jesuits* Church is full of rich Ornaments; and that dedicated to St *Gereon* (who was martyred thereabouts in the time of *Maximianus*) contains above 1000 Saints Heads and has another Church near the Quire. In the Convent of the *Carmelites*, the Treaty of Peace, 1673, was held, which took no effect: In the Church of St. *Ursula* you see her Tomb, and those of 11000 Virgins slain by the *Huns*. The Tomb of *Ursula* has this Inscription:

S. pudicam Sanctæ Ursulæ indicio Columbæ detectum.

Upon many of these Tombs were old Crosses and Lamps. The Church is also full of the Bones and Heads of Martyrs. The Cathedral of St. *Peter* is a large Structure, but remains unfinished. Within the Body of the Church are four rows of Pillars, and the Quire is very high and handsomly built; behind it are supposed to be the Tombs of the three Wise Men of the East, or the Kings of *Arabia*, commonly call'd the three Kings of *Cologne*; *Melchior*, who as they say offer'd Gold, *Gaspar*, Frankincense, and *Balthasar* Myrrhe. They relate that their Bodies were first translated to *Constantinople*, by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine* the *Great*; from thence to *Milan* by *Eustorgius* their Bishop, whence they were remov'd above 500 years ago, viz. 1164 to *Cologne*, by *Reinold*, Bishop of this Diocese. All the Canons of this Church must be Noblemen. Upon one of the Ruins in the Street you see a Tomb made of one Stone, of which kind many more are to be met with in other places of this City. Of these I saw a great number at *Arles* in *Provence*. The Town House is a goodly Structure; on the Front of which is a Man in *Basso relievo*, engag'd with a Lion, who, as they relate, was a Burger-master of that City, who having exasperated the Clergy against him, upon some Difference, they sent in a Lion upon him, whom he slew upon the spot. The Elector of *Cologne*, who is also their Archbishop, has two Palaces here, but by mutual agreement, is not to stay above three Days at a time here. It is a free imperial City, notwithstanding which, it does homage to the Elector in these following Words: *We the free Citizens of Cologne, promise to be faithful and favourable to the Arch-bishop, as long as he preserves our Rights and Honour, and the ancient Privileges of Us, our Wives, and Children, and of our City of Cologne.* The Inhabitants are generally *Roman Catholicks*, and the City, by reason of the vast number of Convents, Churches, and Reliques, is titled the *Rome of Germany*. However the *Lutherans* have a Church within the Precinct of the Walls, and the *Calvinists* another at *Mulheim* about two Miles below it on the other side of the *Rhine*. Just opposite to *Cologne* is the Village of the *Deutz*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. They speak but a kind of odd *High-Dutch*, but to recompence this, the *Latin* and *French* are much in use here: It was made an University 1388, and has four very good Hospitals, one for young and old Persons that are infirm, and another for the Sick. After we left *Cologne*, we were drawn up the *Rhine* by Horses, and lodged the same Night at a small Village, near which *Julius Cæsar* made his Bridge over the *Rhine*. We came the next Day to *Bona*, the ordinary residence of the Elector of *Cologne*. It was formerly call'd *Castra Bonnensia*, as being the Station of the sixth Legion in Winter, in the time of *Tacitus*. The Archbishop's Palace is a noble Edifice, having a Chamber a good way into the *Rhine*. We took our Quarters this Night at the Foot of one of the seven Hills, near the *Rhine*, most of which have old ruined Castles upon them. On the 15th we pass'd by a very pleasant Island, with a Convent in it, we saw also the Convent at *Remagen*, built upon a Rock, and fortify'd with divers round Towers, and came the 16th in the Morning to *Andernach* or *Antenacum*, one of the *Roman* Fortresses upon the *Rhine*. These are some that affirm that this was the Birth-place of *Caligula*, and that *Valentinian* was buried near it. There are divers Mineral Springs hereabouts. The City is only fortified with an old Wall: The Water passage being grown tedious to by this time, we hired a Coach to *Coblentz*, and passing thro' a very agreeable Country, planted with Wallnut Trees, and in sight of two of the Elector of *Treves*'s Country Houses, we cross'd the River *Mosselle*, over a very fine Bridge, sustain'd by thirteen Arches, built 1344, by Archbishop *Baldwin*. We went immediately to the Convent of the *Dominicans*, very agreeably seated upon the very Banks of the *Rhine*; the Prior of which being in our Company, he would needs keep us with him all Night, and entertain'd us with a handsome Supper, and excellent *Mosselle* Wine.

Coblentz or *Confluentia*, from its situation at the Confluence of the *Rhine* and *Mosselle*, which make two sides of it, the third being a goodly Fortification, after the modern way, from one River to the other, which makes it of a triangular Figure. It has an old Wall within the near Works, and is under the Jurisdiction of the Elector and Archbishop of *Treves*, as is likewise in the Castle of *Hermanstein* (*Hermanni sterna*) by some call'd *Ehrenbreitstein*, built just over against it on the other side of the *Rhine*, being join'd to *Coblentz* by a long Bridge. At the Foot of a Rock just underneath this Castle, you see a very noble Palace belonging to the Elector, having two very large Wings, and a Fort with five Pavillions, facing the *Rhine*. Not far from *Coblentz*, the *Carthusians* have a Convent pleasantly seated upon a Hill.

October the 17th, we continued our Voyage upon the *Rhine* to *Boppart*, a wall'd Town upon the Western Bank, an ancient Fortress of the *Romans*, known by the Name of *Bodobriga*.

The 18th, we dined at St. *Goar*, a place situate upon the River, under the Jurisdiction of the *Landgrave* of *Hesse*, who has a Castle here. On the out-side of the Wall of the Town is fastned a collar of Brass, given as they say, by *Charles* V. It is the Custom that such Strangers as come ashoar here, must put their Knees into this collar, when they are ask'd, *Whether they will be sprinkled with Water, or Drink, or Wine?* If they are for the Wine, they must give an Entertainment of Wine to the Company. The Queen of *Sweden* passing by that way not many Years before that, had presented them with a great Silver Cup, which they commonly drink out of. We took up our Quarters that Night at *Wesel*, seated betwixt the River and a high Hill. In the Market-place they shew the print of St. *Hubert*'s Horse's Foot in Free-Stone.

The 19, we pursued our Voyage to *Bacharach* (*Bacchi aræ*) famous for its excellent Wines; under the Elector *Palatin*'s Jurisdiction.

Hence we pass'd by a very old Castle, situate upon a Rock in the middle of the *Rhine*, call'd *Pfaltz*, because hither formerly the Princesses *Palatines* were sent to be brought

brought to bed. The next Day we pass'd along with a rapid Stream, which is very dangerous thereabouts, by reason of the many Rocks that lie under water; and a little above it we had a full sight of a round Tower, on a Rock in the *Rhine*, commonly call'd *Mouse-Tower*, built by *Hatto*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, who, as they relate, having at a time of general scarcity, invited a great number of Poor, to present them with some Corn, but instead of relieving them, set fire to the Barn in which they were enclosed, and whilst they made lamentable Cries, he said, *Hear how the Mice crap.* Soon after, being persecuted with Rats and Mice to that degree, that he was not able to abide in his Palace, he built this round Tower in the *Rhine*, to avoid them, but being also prosecuted thither by the Mice, he miserably ended his Days there.

The Mouse-Tower.

Not far above it, upon the Western Bank, you see the Town of *Bing* or *Bingium*, an ancient *Roman* Fortress upon the *Rhine*, at the Conflux of that River and the *Nævus* or *Naw*, over the last of which is a very goodly Stone Bridge. It belongs to the Elector of *Mayence*. From *Bing* we set forward for *Mayence*, and in our way at *Rudesheim* in the *Rhine* (so famous for the excellency of the Wine) we were shew'd a Boy, whose Hair was as thick and woolly as any of the *African* Moors, but of a whitish Colour; I took some of the Hair along with me.

Mentz, or *Mayence*, *Moguntia*, by the *Latins*, is situate just below the Confluence of the two Rivers, the *Main*, and *Rhine*, over against it; extending in length towards the River, and well stor'd with goodly Monasteries, Churches, and publick Buildings; but the Streets are narrow, and the private Houses built after an antick Fashion; the Country round it is extreamly fertile. It was made an Univerlity 1486. or according to others, 1461. *Mayence* also claims the invention of Printing, but may rather be said to have brought it to perfection. This place is famous for the defeat of the *Roman* Legions, under *Varus*, by the *Germans*, which happened near it. *Gustave Adolph*, the victorious King of *Sweden*, made his publick Entry here, 1631. in great magnificence, and laid two Bridges, one over the *Main*, the other over the *Rhine*, the first of which is taken away since, but the other remains in the same station. The Elector of *Mayence* is the first in rank of the *Electoral College*, which has his place at the Emperor's right Hand, in all publick Assemblies.

The Elector's Territories.

But his Territories are not suitable to his Dignity here, far less than those of *Cologne* and *Treves*, besides, that they lie scattering in the *Palatinate* and *Franconia*. However his seizing the City of *Erfurdt* has been no small addition to his Power; where he has built a Citadel on St. *Peters-hill*, being an in-let into *Touringia*.

The City of Frankfort.

From *Mayence* we continued our Voyage up the *Maine* to *Franckfort*, an imperial City, call'd *Trajectum ad Mœnum*, because the *Franks* used to pass and repass here, whilst they made War upon the *Gauls*, and to distinguish it from *Frankfurt* upon the *Oder*, an University belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburgh*. The City is very large, divided into two separate Bodies by the River, the lesser of which is call'd *Saxon-House*, join'd to the other by a fair Stone-Bridge, supported by 12 or 13 Arches. The advantage of the River *Main*, which passes by *Bamberg*, *Schweinfurt*, *Wurtzburg*, and other places, and is join'd by the River *Tauber*, and others of less note; together with its running into the *Rhine*, renders this City very commodious for Traffick, as may be seen at the time of the two great Marts kept there every year, in *March* and *September*, when there is an incredible concourse of People of all Nations, who buy and sell their commodities, but especially Horses and Books, tho' at other times the Book-sellers have but little business here. But what makes this City most famous is the Election of the Emperor, which by the *Golden Bull* is instituted to be made here. For the rest, it is well fortify'd, and inhabited for the most part by *Lutherans*.

In *Saxon-house* is a Palace, belonging to the Knights of the *Teutonick Order*, which is a Sanctuary for Debtors and Criminals, yet only for fourteen Days. Abundance of *Jews* live in, and frequent this place, they are distinguish'd from the Christians by their Habits, which is a Ruff for the old ones, and a Bonnet for the younger sort, and a peculiar Head-dress for their Women.

The Collegiate Church, dedicated to St. *Bartholomew*, is built of a old Stone, has a very high Steeple, and is very large; but what makes it most considerable is, that many Emperors have been crown'd here. The whole City is beautified with several fine Fountains, and many good Houses.

We continued our Journey by Land from *Franckfort* thro' the *Bergstraet*, and passing by *Darmstadt* (belonging to the House of *Hesse Darmstadt*) travelled thro' a very fruitful Country, full of Wall-nut Trees, Vines, Corn, and Tobacco in some places. Coming to *Heidelberg*, we pass'd the River *Neccar* or *Necarus*, arising in the *Sylva Martiana* or *Black Forest*, and continuing its Current thro' the Duke of *Wittenberg*, joins its Waters with the *Rhine* at *Manheim*. It passes by *Sultz*, *Tubingen*, *Stutgard*, *Hailbrun*, *Heidelberg*, and divers other goodly Cities.

A description of Heidelberg.

As for the City of *Heidelberg* (commonly the residence of the Elector *Palatines*) its situation is betwixt a River and a ridge of Hills, extending from East to West, which makes it unfit for a regular Fortification. It was made an University, 1346; It was taken by the *Spaniards* 1620. when the famous Library that was preserved there in the Great Church, was carried to *Rome*, and added to the *Vatican* Library, where I saw it 1664 on one side of the Gallery, opposite to that of the Duke of *Urbin*'s. This Church as well as that of St. *Peter*, contains many beautiful Monuments of the *Palatine* Family and other Persons of note. The *French* have a Church here as well as the *Lutherans*, the last of which is call'd the *Church of Providence*, and the Elector, tho' a *Calvinist*, laid the first Stone of it.

Its Library.

The Town-House is remarkable for its Clock, which has divers Motions, and represents several Figures of Men fighting, of a Cock, &c. when it strikes. The Elector's Stables are near the River side, but one half of them has been ruined in the last *German* Wars, as well as the Statutes, that were on the outside of the Cattle, which being seated upon an eminency above the Town, has among other things a very large Tower, formerly call'd *Trutzkayser* or *Defiance to the Emperor*, the name of which is since changed into that of the *Star-fort*. Near it is a beautiful Garden, adorn'd with Grotto's, Caves and Water-works. But the most remarkable of all are the Cellars, well stored with Vessels of Wine, of a more than ordinary size, among which, that commonly call'd the *Tun of Heidelberg*, surpasses the rest, kept in a peculiar Celair, adjoining to the others, and built 1064. containing near 200 Tuns; Instead of Hoops it is made with large Knee Timber, like the Ribs of a Ship, well carved and painted, and supported by Pedestals likewise carved. On one side is a Stair-case 43 Steps high, leading up into the Gallery on the top of this great Vessel.

Castle.

Great Tun.

There is a certain solitary place not above a Mile from *Heidelberg*, where you see three very fine Springs come forth out of the Mountain, and after they have fill'd five Ponds, and passed thro' three Cascates or Falls, carry so strong a Stream thro' the adjacent Plains, that they turn four Mills within a small distance of one another. It is call'd the *Wolfs Fountain*, from a certain Princess, who, as they say, was torn to pieces near this place by a Wolf.

At *Heidelberg*, I was visited by two *English-men*, Mr. *Villers* and *Timothy Middleton*. These belonged to a certain Monastery call'd *Lobenfeldt*, possess'd formerly by the *Jesuits*, but bestowed since upon the *English*, who to the number of 100, leaving their Native Country, 1661, setled themselves with their Families in this Convent, a few Miles from *Heidelberg*. They call'd themselves *Christian Jews*, maintain'd a community of many things, did not cut nor shave their Beards, and observed many other Ceremonies enjoin'd in the Old Testament. Their Head was then one Mr. *Poole* of *Norwich*.

Whilst I tarried at *Heidelberg*, I took a turn to *Spires*, and afterwards to *Manheim*. The first (supposed to be *Urbs Nemetum* of the antients) is situate in a Plain near the Western Banks of the *Rhine*. The *Swedes* in the last *German* Wars demolish'd its Fortifications.

Spires.

The Episcopal See is under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Mayence*; it is well built, and has divers good Churches. In the Cathedral, which is beautified with 4 large Towers, the *Roman Catholicks*, *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* preach in their turns at different hours. It is very populous, by reason of the vast concourse of People which attend the Law Suits here. The Imperial Chamber, which was by *Maximilian*, establish'd at *Worms*, being since removed to *Spires*, in which, not only private Causes, but also the Differences betwixt the Princes of the Empire, are determin'd without appeal.

The Imperial Chamber here.

Manheim, lies at the conflux of the *Rhine* and *Neccar*, which from a Village, is in a few Years encreas'd to a goodly Town, with large fair Streets, being wall'd about and defended by a very strong Castle or Fortress. I saw the Model of a Palace the Elector designs to build here, and in that part which is already built, are divers very good Pictures, and among the rest, a Landskip, with the History of the *Swiss* Confederacy.

Manheim.

In our way from *Heidelberg* towards *Nurenberg*, we travell'd along the *Neccar* in Rocky Ways to *Mospach*; the second to *Foxberg*, where we saw nothing but an old Castle; and the same Day came to *Morkenthal*, or *Mergetheim*, the Residence of the Grand Masters of the *Teutonick* Order. It is a very well built Town, with a handsome Piazza, which has a Fountain in the Centre, and a Statue of one of the Grand Masters of this Order, with a long *Corridore* from the Palace.

Mergetheim, the Residence of the Master of the *Teutonick* Order.

This Order took its rise under the Emperor *Frederick* I. who in his Expedition against the Holy Land, being accompany'd by many Gentlemen of *Germany*, in emulation of the Knights Templers, entred into an Order, which being approved by Pope *Celestine* III. they waged afterwards War against the Pagans inhabiting *Prussia* and *Livonia*, and subdued them; of which they remain'd Masters, till they were at first divested of these Countries by the *Poles*, and afterwards by the *Swedes*; so that there is nothing remaining now of this Order, but a few Commanderies in *Germany*.

They wear a plain black Cross on a white Mantle; and the Dignity of Grand Master (who takes place of all the Bishops), is generally bestow'd upon one of the first Rank among the Princes of *Germany*.

As we pass'd by *Lauterbach*, we saw a Church, a very noble Structure on the top of a high Hill, where the Pilgrims perform their Devotions, in great numbers.

Rotenberg

The next place we came to was *Rotenberg*, an Imperial City, situate near the Head-Spring of the River *Tauber*; which after it has pass'd by *Rottingen*, and *Landen*, falls into the *Main* near *Wertheim*. Some have liken'd this City to *Jerusalem*, by reason of its many Towers, and Situation upon divers Hilly Places. We lodged that Night at *Burgperner*, and passing the next Day by *Schantzbach*, came before Night to *Nurenberg*.

Nurenberg

This City may very well claim the Prerogative of being the fairest of all *Germany*; most of the Houses being built of Free-stone, very lofty, and many of them painted on the outside, and adorned with gilded Balls on the top; they are generally six or seven Stories high; and tho' the City is at a good distance from any navigable River, and situate in a Barren Country, yet is it very populous, the Industry of the Inhabitants being such, as to be accounted the best Artificers in *Germany*, in Steel, Brass, Ivory, and Wood.

Its Churches.

The three chief Churches are the *Hospital Church*, but lately built; that of St. *Lawrence*, which is famous for its bigness, with two Steeples in the Front; and that of St. *Sebald*, which excels the rest. Here you see a wooden Crucifix so well carved, as to be valued at an excessive rate: Without the Church is another of black Wood. In short, as the *Lutheran* Religion is exercised here in its full pomp, so this stately Church, and especially the Pulpit, which is excellently carved and gilt, may challenge one of the first places among those of that Religion. Every Morning half an Hour is spent in this Church in reading certain passages out of the Scripture by the Priest, or else he preaches to the People.

The Senate-House.

The Senate-House is worth the Curiosity of any Traveller; the Hall is very spacious, and the Chambers lofty and adorn'd with many good Pictures, the Floor being paved with Stones gilt, and intermix'd with divers colours. In one of these Chambers you see the Picture of most of the Great Persons of *Germany*, that were entertain'd in the Halls; another of the Three Brothers of *Saxony*; an Elephant painted to the Life; a Piece of St. *John*, another of St. *Mark*, and two more of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, both done by *Albert Durer*; but that of *Adam* and *Eve*, by the same Hand, exceeds all the rest, with this Inscription:

Albertus Durer Almanus faciebat post Virginis partum, 1507.

There is also another very rare Piece, of St. *Luke* drawing the Picture of our Saviour, and the Virgin *Mary*. As you enter the Shambles, you see a large Ox carved in Wood, and painted over, with this Inscription:

Omnia licebent ortus sui que incrementa, sed ecce
Quem cernis, nunquam Bos fuit hic, Vitulus.

The Castle of *Nurenberg* is seated upon a Hill. The Emperor's Picture, his Chapel, a very fine Well, and divers other Pictures of the Electors, are very remarkable. They shew'd us also the Armour of *Hebbele van Gailingben*, a famous Sorcerer in those parts, and the Print of his Horse's Feet in the Wall of the Castle; from whence, as they tell you, he leap'd with his Horse over the Town-Ditch.

They were then busie in making a new Fountain; I must confess, that the Brass Statues intended for it, were excellent Pieces: The Sea-Horses were of a very large size, and the Sea-Nymphs exceeded the ordinary stature of Women; the Statue of *Neptune*, design'd to be set on the top, was above ten Foot high.

The small River *Pegnitz* passes through the City, near which are several Stone-Bridges; below it, it joins with the River *Rednitz*, which joins its Waters with the *Maine* at *Bamberg*, which last falls afterwards into the *Rhine*. The River *Rednitz* has its rise at *Weissenburg*, at no great distance from the River *Altmul*, which falls into the *Danube* not far from *Ratisbon*.

This Conveniency induced *Charles the Great* to endeavour a Communication betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, but after he had advanced about two *German* Leagues in this Work, his Warlike Employments, and some other Difficulties, made him give over this Design.

Altorff an University.

Not above four Leagues from *Nurenburg*, is *Altorff*, a Town under their Jurisdiction, made an University in 1623. They have here a very handsome Physick-Garden, containing above 2000 Plants. The Anatomy-School is not very large, yet has several Skeletons, of a Hart, of a Horse, of a Man, and of a Bear, bigger than a Horse; besides some very ancient Pictures, as that of *Moses*, and of a *Ninivite*. Dr. *Wagenseyl* (whose Brother travell'd with me from *Heidelburg*), Professor of the Law and History, shew'd me also a good Collection of his own, of Rarities and Coins, which he himself had gather'd in his Travels through *Europe*. In the University-Library I saw a fair *Hortus Eystetensis*, and *Tournefort*'s Collection of Plants, by his own Hands.

Leaving *Nurenburg*, we pass'd through *Newmark* in the *Upper Palatinate*, belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*; and the next Day by the way of *Heinman*, (subject to the Duke of *Newburg*), to *Ratisbon*, anciently call'd *Augusta Tiberii*, and *Colonia Quartanorum*, from the Fourth *Italick* Legion, which had their Quarters assign'd them here, as being the chief place belonging to the *Romans* on those Frontiers. Some are of Opinion, that *Tiberius* setled a Colony here in the Year of our Saviour's Passion; but it owes its chief Increase to the Emperor *Arnulphus*. Near it falls the River *Regen* into the *Danube*, whence the *Germans* have given it the Name of *Regensburg*. It has a Bridge of Wood below the Town, and another of Stone, the fairest that is to be seen upon the *Danube*, being supported by fifteen Arches. It is an Imperial City, and tolerably well fortified, and has many goodly Buildings, both private and publick. The Cathedral of St. *Peter* is a very fair Edifice, on the South-side of which you see the Picture of St. *Peter* in a Boat, and on the opposite side the Apostle's first Mission. In the Piazza stands a little, but very near Church; the Convent of St. *Paul*, another of St. *Emerammus*, Bishop of *Ratisbon*, and a celebrated Saint in those parts: *Albertus Magnus*, who was also Bishop of *Ratisbon*, has made no small addition to its Fame. But that which is the chief Glory of this place, is the Diet, or General Assembly of the States of the Empire, which is not to be call'd together in any other place but here. Upon this occation the Vice-Marshal is obliged to take care that Lodgings be provided for the Persons that are to appear there; that Provisions may be brought thither in plenty, and sold at a set rate; that the place of the Assembly be adorned suitable to so great an Occasion, and the Publick Safety be not violated.

In this place I entred the famous River the *Danube*, which beginning to be navigable in *Suabia*, passes by *Donawert*, *Neuburg*, and *Ingolstadt*; 'tis increased by the River *Licus*, or *Leck*; by which the Commodities of the famous City of *Augsburg*, are transported into it. From *Regensburg* we pass'd the first Day to *Thonawsteyn* (*Danube-stone*) where is a Castle seated upon a high Rock, and thence to *Pfeter*, famous among the Ancients, by the Name of *Vetera Castra*, now an inconsiderable place.

The Boats made use of upon the *Danube*, are generally flat-bottom'd, and broad at the Head and Stern; there is an Apartment for Passengers in the middle, and they have very large Rudders, the better to command the Boats where the Current is swift.

The next Day we pass'd by *Straubing*, a wall'd Town belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*, and the same Afternoon by *Swartz*, where we saw a Church upon a Hill, much frequented by Pilgrims; we lodg'd that Night at *Deckendorff*, near which the River *Iser*, or *Isara*, after having pass'd by *Landshut*, *Frising*, and *Munchen* (the ordinary Residence of the Elector of *Bavaria*) falls into the *Danube*.

Passaw.

Thursday being *November* the 15th, we pass'd by *Wilshoven* to *Passaw*, *Passovia*, or *Boiodurum*, a goodly City in the lower *Bavaria*, formerly known by the Name of *Castra Batava* among the *Romans*, who had setled a Colony there. It is composed of three Towns, *viz.* *Ilstadt*, *Passaw*,

saw, and *Inſtadt*, and ſeated at the meeting of the three Rivers, the *Inne*, the *Danube*, and the *Iltz*. It has divers very fair Churches, amongſt which that of St. *Stephen* excels the reſt. The Biſhop's Reſidence is a ſtrong Caſtle built upon a Hill, his Revenues are very conſiderable, part of which ariſe from the Baths of the great Lead-Mine at *Bleyberg* in *Carinthia*. It was not many Years ago almoſt laid in Aſhes, by an accidental Fire, and as moſt of the Streets have been rebuilt ſince after the *Italian* manner, ſo this City may now juſtly claim to be inſerted in the number of the ten conſiderable Cities upon the *Danube*, viz. *Ulm*, *Ingolſtadt*, *Ratisbon*, *Paſſaw*, *Linтz*, *Vienna*, *Preſburg*, *Strigonium*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*; the eight laſt of which I had the opportunity to ſee, before the end of my Journey.

Biſhop's

Juſt by a Wall, oppoſite to the Great Church at *Paſſaw*, you ſee a very large Head cut in Stone, the Mouth being two Spans wide, and the reſt proportionable. In the River *Iltz*, which comes from the North, they find abundance of Pearls: And the Noble River *Inne* or *Oenus*, coming from the South, and paſſing by *Inſprug*, is augmented bo the River *Seltz* (upon which ſtands the City of *Saltzburg*) exonerates it ſelf with great force into the *Danube*, being the largeſt River that hitherto has join'd that River. The River *Inne* ariſes among the *Alps*, in the Country of *Tyrol*.

Linтz.

The Sixteenth we arrived at *Linтz*, the Capital City of the lower *Auſtria*, not ſo much conſiderable for its bigneſs as neatneſs, the Houſes, or the whole Town, being built of a white Free-ſtone, and the Market-place very ſpacious and handſome. The Caſtle lies upon a Hill, and is fortify'd after the modern way. It has a Bridge alſo over the *Danube*. When *Solyman* beſieged *Vienna*, this was the Rendezvous of the Imperial Army. It was beſieged by 40000 Peaſants in *Ferdinand* II. time; but relieved by *Pappenheim*. Somewhat below *Linтz*, the River *Draun*, which ariſes out of the *Gemunder Sea* (or *Lacus Felicis*), joins its Current with the *Danube*.

Enns.

The 17th we paſs'd by *Embs*, or *Aniſie*, ſituate upon the River *Aniſius*, or *Onaſus*, which ariſing near the Frontiers of the Country of *Saltzburg*, and being augmented by the River *Saltza*, upon which ſtands *Maria Cell*, noted for the great Pilgrimages, divides the higher and lower *Auſtria*, and exonerates it ſelf into the *Danube*. Hereabouts ſtood the ancient *Lauriacum*, a *Roman* Gariſon, where a great many *Roman* Coins and Antiquities were found. On the North-ſide of the *Danube* we ſaw a Seat of the Earl of *Leichtenſtein*, near the Village of *Gretin*. Not far below this Village are 2 dangerous Paſſages in the *Danube* *, call'd the *Strudel*, and the *Wurbel*: The firſt is a place where the River being forced among the Rocks, ſome under, ſome above Water, the Waves are broken, and render the Current rapid and troubleſome, it requiring a great deal of Skill to paſs through the Ledges of the Rocks, eſpecially when it is low Water. The ſecond is a kind of Whirlpool, where the Current being forcibly repell'd by a great Rock, turns round with great violence. Here by on the top of a craggy Rock, you ſee a large Croſs, and at the foot a Chapel, dedicated to St. *Nicholas*, who being look'd upon as Patron and Protector of ſuch as have paſs'd ſafely this way, a Boat comes thence to receive ſuch Preſents as the Paſſengers are willing to give.

* Vide Fig 10.

A Cataract (or Waterfall) a Whirlpool.

We took up our Lodgings this Night at *Ips*, *Ipſium*, or *Ibiſſa*, on the South-ſide of the *Danube*; oppoſite to which is *Beſenbeug*, or *Ubium Ptolemæi*. Two *German* Leagues below *Ips*, lies *Pechlarn*, believed by ſome to be the old *Arlape*, where the River *Erlaph* falls into the *Danube*. A Mile and half lower you ſee *Melcke*, *Nomale*, or *Mea Dioceſis*; formerly the Reſidence of the Marqueſſes of *Auſtria*, which was afterwards removed firſt to *Leopold*, and afterwards to *Vienna*. The City is built along the South-ſide of the River; the Monaſtery of the *Benedictines*, which challenges the Prerogative before all others in *Auſtria*, is ſeated upon a high Hill; it has very great Endowments, and many Monuments of great Perſonages, and among the reſt the Tomb of St. *Colman*. We dined at *Steyn*, where is a goodly Bridge over the *Danube*. Near to this lies *Crembs*, a wall'd Town; and on the oppoſite ſide *Mautern*; not far from whence is the rich Monaſtery call'd *Kerwein*. A little beyond it, the River *Traiſin*, or *Tragiſama*, comes from the South. Afterward we paſs'd by the famous Town of St. *Pold*, or St. *Hippolitus*; and taking up our Quarters that Night at St. *Eldorff*, went the next Day by *Thuln*, *Stockeran*, and *Cloiſter Neuburg*, and ſo came ſafely to *Vienna*.

The Deſcription of VIENNA.

VIENNA, call'd *Wien* by the *Germans*, and *Beach* by the *Turks*, is the Capital City of all *Auſtria*, ſituate at 43 Degr. 20 Min. Latitude, differing not much from the Latitude of *Paris*; having been for a conſiderable time the Seat of the Arch-Dukes of *Auſtria*, and of the *German* Emperors. According to ancient Geographers, this City belonged to *Pannonia* Superiour; the Limits of *Pannonia* extending as far as *Kalemberg*, or *Mons Cetius*, about ſix Miles to the Weſtward of *Vienna*; beyond which all that lies more Weſtward, betwixt that Mountain and the River *Inne*, or *Oenus*, which falls into the *Danube* at *Paſſaw*, was anciently known by the Name of *Noricum*. Vienna.

The *Romans* call'd it *Vindebona*, where, according to *Lambecius*, the *Claſſis Iſtria*, and the Tenth *German* Legion had their Stations: The Shore on this ſide of the *Danube*, where the *Ripa Romana*, was beſet with Gariſons at *Carnuntum*, or *Petronel*, *Viſhmund*, or *Aquinoctium*; *Eberſdorff*, or *Ala Nova*, *Melck*, or *Nomale*, *Arlape*, or *Pechlarn*, *Lentia*, or *Linтz*, in the ſame manner as they had their Stations at *Cologne*, *Bon*, *Mayence*, and other places upon the *Rhine*.

Several of the *Roman* Emperors, and above all the reſt, *Marcus Antoninus Philoſophus*, have made themſelves famous by their Great Actions againſt the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*; the laſt of which, after he had routed theſe Nations, fell ſick at *Carnuntum* or *Petronel*, and died at *Vindebona* now *Vienna*, ſituate upon the South Shore of the *Danube*: Which is queſtionleſs the reaſon, that at ſeveral times, but eſpecially 1662, many *Roman* Antiquities have been found hereabouts; the laſt was a kind of Coffin containing hard Earth and Bones, with a ſmall Gold Coin, a Glaſs Urn in a Braſs Caſe, an Iron Knife like thoſe uſed anciently about Sacrifices; a little Roll of pure Gold, cloſed with a Golden Cover at both ends, with an Inſcription of ſtrange Characters; which according to *Lambecius*'s Opinion, were old *Pannonian Characters*: Not far from the Monument it ſelf, which was under the Foundation of a Wall not far from the old Palace, they found a Head in Braſs, a *Patera*, Lamps, Lachrymatories, and other Veſſels of the ſame Metal, and a Copper Coin of *Antoninus Caracalla*. Some Antiquities found here.

This City is not ſeated upon the Head-Channel of the *Danube*, but only upon a Branch thereof, of which there are ſeveral who make divers ſmall Iſlands. The River *Wien* (which has imparted its Name to the place) paſſes by the Eaſt-part of the City, and below it falls into the *Danube*: Upon Floods it often does conſiderable miſchief to the City, tho' at other times it is ſo ſhallow and narrow, that one may ſtep over it: It divides part of the Suburbs from the Body of the City, the firſt of which are very ſpacious, and full of fair Houſes, Gardens, Walks, and other Conveniencies. The River *Wien*.

The Body of the City it ſelf is that which is well fortified, being ſeparated from the Suburbs by a fair *Eſplanade*, yet this deſcending in an open Ground for 300 Paces. Its Fortifications are after the modern way, compos'd of ten Baſtions to the Land-ſide, and a very deep Ditch, which tho' it be kept continually dry, for fear the Water ſhould damnifie the Cellars, which are very deep here, yet can they let the *Danube* into it at pleaſure. It has two Baſtions towards the Water, on the North-ſide of the Town. The Baſtions are very large, the whole Fortification of a great breadth well fac'd with Brick, and edged with Free-ſtone. Beſides which it has an old inward Wall, built formerly with the Ranſome of our King *Richard* I. who was detain'd Priſoner there, in his return from the *Holy War*. Its Fortifications.

The whole Circumference of Suburbs and all, takes up a great Tract of Ground; but the Fortifications of the Body of the City don't exceed three *Engliſh* Miles in compaſs, but is exceeding populous, nothing being more delightful than to ſee *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Greeks*, *Tranſilvanians*, *Sclavonians*, *Hungarians*, *Croatians*, *Spaniards*, *Italians*, *French*, *Germans*, *Polanders*, all in their proper Habits. It has ſix Gates, *viz.* 1. The *Stuben* Gate to the Eaſt. 2. The *Carinthian* Gate to the South. 3. The *Caſtle* Gate. 4. The *Scotch* Gate. 5. The *New Gate*. And, 6. The *Red Tower* Gate, to the Northward, leading to the Bridge over the *Danube*; beſides which there is a Port by the Emperor's Palace, towards the Water-ſide: There is a certain Nunnery in the Town call'd *Himmel Port*, or the *Gate of Heaven*. The five firſt of theſe Gates are vaulted through the Town-Wall, with convenient Draw-Bridges to paſs the Ditch. The ſixth is a paſſage under a Tower, towards Gates.

the

the Bridge of the *Danube*: For as that River runs hereabouts through a low Country, it divides it self into seven small Channels, which are join'd by as many Bridges made of many thousand Trees laid close to one another. There is a very remarkable Bridge at *Vienna* call'd the *High-Bridge*, made by the crossing of two Streets by equal Angles; but the Ground in one Street being equal in height to the tops of the Houses of the other, they have been forced to build a Bridge or Arch in the lowermost Street, to let the upper pass over it.

Bridges of *Vienna*.

For the rest, the Houses here are well built of Stone, for the most part six Stories high, and flat roofed after the *Italian* manner; the Streets are of a middle size, neither broad nor narrow: Their Cellars are worth a curious Traveller's Observation; in some of them I found four Cellars one under another, well arched, with two Pair of Stairs to go into them. In some I observed an open space in the middle of each Roof, for the reception of the Air, and from the lowest a *Tube*, to convey the Air into it out of the Street, much after the same manner as they do in the Mines.

In Cellars.

I can't here pass by the Encomium *Æneas Sylvius* gives of *Vienna*; viz. *That it has Palaces fit for Kings, and Churches which* Italy *may admire*: Which is much better verified now-a-days. For the Imperial Palace is a truly Noble Structure, and excellently well furnish'd; it has two Courts, one very large, the other of a less compass, where the Emperor's Lodgings are. Over the Gate you see no other Inscription but the five Vowels in Capital Letters, *viz.* *A, E, I, O, U*; which some have interpreted thus: *Austriæ Est Imperare Orbi Universo*; tho' I am apt to imagine, that this is not the true sence of these Letters. There is besides the two before-mentioned Courts, another small one, where are the Lodgings of the Pages; whereof I took notice of a large rough *Jaspis* Stone, of about nine Foot Diameter, which lay unregarded upon the Ground, tho' a little piece that was polished, shew'd that it was full of beautiful yellow, red, black, and white Veins: It was a Present of the Arch-Bishop of *Saltzburg*, in whose Territories are Noble Quarries, and Stones of divers sorts. Next to this the Palace of the Count *de Draun*, and that of Count *Rothal*, lately built; with several others, are very considerable.

Imperial Palace.

Churches and Convents

Neither is this City destitute of noble Churches, and rich Convents; as for instance: Those of the *Carmelites*, of the *Franciscans*, of the *Benedictines*, and of St. *Nicholas*: In the Church of the last I saw the Tombs of Count *Strozzi* and Cardinal *Harrach*. The Convent of the *Dominicans* is a very fair Structure: The Church of the *Austin* Friars is very large, and has in the middle a Chapel, the Model of which was taken from the *Holy House of Loretto*; the top of it being adorn'd with many Colours taken from the *Turks* and *Tartars*; many of which were not square, but Escutcheon-wise, some full of Circles, with Half-moons within them.

The *Jesuites Colleges* are all very fair and spacious here; the Front of their *College* which faces the Piazza, has a Statue, or *Column of Copper*, belonging to it, which stands in the Centre of the Market-place, resting upon a Pedestal of white Stone, with four Angels with Escutcheons, and the blessed Virgin on the top *: It has also divers Inscriptions, by which the Emperor dedicates *Austria* to her Patronage and Protection.

* Vide Fig. 11.

When I came into the *Scotch Convent*, it raised no small curiosity in me to know how the *Scotch* became so considerable here, till I was inform'd, that *Vienna* had been many Ages ago a Receptacle of the *Scots*, in their Pilgrimages to *Jerusalem*; and that *Colman*, a Saint in high Veneration in those parts, was not only a *Scotch-man*, but also descended of the Blood Royal of *Scotland*, and barbarously murthered by the Peasants at *Stockerau*, four *German* Miles from *Vienna*; who hung his Body on a Tree, where it remained uncorrupted a Year and half, and after many Miracles was buried at *Stockerau*, and from thence removed first to *Melk*, and afterwards into *Hungary*, where it was preserved for a long time after at *Alba Regalis*, or *Stulweissenburg*.

The Church of St. *Peter* is highly esteem'd for its Antiquity, being the oldest of the City, and built in the same place where stood before the Altar dedicated to *Domitian*, call'd *Ara Flaviana*.

Among other Curiosities I saw this Inscription upon the Monument of the Learned *Wolfgangus Lazius*:

Magnifico Nobili Clarissimo atque summâ eruditione ornatissimo viro Domino Wolfgango Lazio Vien. *Philosophiæ atque Medicinæ Doctori & Professori Primario, Celeberrimi Archigymnasii* Viennensis *Rectori & Superintendenti* Cæsareo, *& ejusdem Sacræ* Cæsareæ *Majest.* Ferdinandi *Sanctissimæ memoriæ Consiliario & Historico Peritissimo defuncto Anno Domini* MDLXXXVI.

The Emperor *Maximilian*, and his Empress, as also the Empress *Mary*, Spouse to *Ferdinand* the Third, are interr'd in the Church of the *Capuchins*; which Order not admitting of any thing that is magnificent, their Tombs have but little resemblance to their Greatness.

But in the Cathedral of St. *Stephen* are many sumptuous Monuments of Princes, and other Great Persons: It is a very noble Fabrick, but none of the highest, by reason of the Paintings of the Glass Windows; it is covered only with Tiles of Wood, yet makes no ill shew. But what is most worth observation, is the Steeple and Spire, being high, large, strong, and nobly built: It has on the top, instead of a Weather-cock, a Cross under a Star and Half-moon, well gilded. This Star and Half-moon, was, as they relate, put upon this Spire by Order of *Soyman the Magnificent*, who when he had besieged the City, offered them to spare this Steeple, provided they would set upon the top the *Turkish* Arms *viz.* the Half-moon and Star; which the Citizens comply'd with. This Spire has the largest Crockets I ever saw, being above a Yard long, and adorned with Foliage Work. The Steeple is accounted 405 Foot high: I went up half way by 338 Steps; whence I could see the *Hamburger* Hill, near *Presburg*, and the Course of the *Danube* through a great part of *Austria*.

The Cathedral.

In the Room where I was, they had wooden Hammers, which they make use of from *Good-Friday* till *Easter-Sunday*, the use of Bells being forbidden during the time our Saviour was in the Grave *.

* See Fig. 12. Note, In the left Hand Corner of the top of the Steeple was a Globe, down from which hung a Chain with a Ball at it.

Near one of the Doors of the Church is a Stone fix'd into the Wall, which they believe to be one of those wherewith St. *Stephen* was stoned to Death: It looks like a Pebble, and is very smooth, by the frequent rubbing of the People, who touch it with their Fingers when they go to Church.

I was shewn another Stone, which they said, was one of those that kill'd St. *Stephen* in St. *Saturnine*'s Church, at *Tholouse* in *France*. Besides many Monuments of Great Personages, which are in the Church of St. *Stephen*. There are also divers Tombs of Men famous for their Learning, as of *Joh. Faber*, Bishop of *Vienna*; *Joh. Cuspinianus*, and *Sebastianus Tenguaglius*, the last of which according to the Inscription, was versed in fifteen Languages.

The University of *Vienna* may also challenge the preference before most others, in respect of its Antiquity, the number of Students, their Accommodations and Privileges. *Albertus* the Third is reputed the first Founder of it, above 300 Years ago; who distinguish'd the Students into four several Divisions or Nations, each of which, besides the General Constitutions, had their peculiar Rules and Privileges; they were the Classis of the *Austrians*, of the Nations of the *Rhine*, of the *Hungarians* and *Saxons*.

The University.

To the *Austrian* Division belonged those of *Friul* and *Trent*, all *Italy*, and the other Provinces beyond the Mountains.

Under the Nations of the *Rhine* were comprehended the *Suevians*, *Alsatians*, *Franconians*, *Hessians*, and the other Provinces, *viz.* *France*, *Spain*, *Navarre*, *Holland*, and *Brabant*.

To the third Class of the *Hungarians*, are the *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, *Moravians*, *Sclavonians*, and all that use the *Sclavonian* Tongue, as also the *Germans*.

To the Class of the *Saxon* Nation, belong the *Saxons*, *Westphalians*, *Thuringians*, *Misnians*, *Brandenburgers*, *Prussians*, *Livonians*, *Lusatians*, *Pomeranians*, with the *Ultramarine* Kingdoms of *England*, *Scotland*, *Ireland*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*.

As in these several Divisions all Nations of *Europe* are comprehended; so it must be confess'd, that there are in this Univerfity Students of many Nations, who sometimes when any Differences arise among themselves, stand up each for their respective Divisions; but are sure to unite together, if any Contentions happen betwixt the Students and the Citizens, or Jews.

As for their Natural Philosophy, they have not yet attain'd to our new way of explaining Matters, by Corpuscular Motions, and Experimental Philosophy; tho' some of them were very inquisitive after our Royal Society, as well here as at *Altorff*; and I have been solicited even from *Cassovia* in Upper *Hungary*, to send the Transactions of our Society thither: A manifest sign, that if they were once lead into the Path of our Modern Philosophy, they would without all question follow our Footsteps. For the rest they are well versed here in Languages, History, and Antiquity.

I remember I was present here at a Publick Anatomy-Lecture of a Woman, which lasted nineteen Days; perform'd by Dr. *Wolffregel*, a Learned Physician. I observed the *Pyramidal* Muscles, to be very plain and large,

and

and the *Uterus* of a size larger than ordinary; the *Carnilago Ensiformis* was double, and the Lungs very black. The Motions of the Eye were very nicely shewn by an artificial Eye of Ivory, and another of Pasteboard, contrived and made by himself; and after the Dissection of the Muscles of the *Pharynx*, *Larynx*, *Os Hyoides*, and the Tongue, he reduced them with an admirable dexterity into their proper places, to discover their natural Position.

The Anatomy-Theatre was capable of holding a hundred Persons.

This University has, among other Privileges, the Power of Life and Death, in respect of their own Members.

But what gives the greatest Lustre to this famous City is the Residence of the Emperor *Leopold*, born 1638. His eldest Brother *Ferdinand*, King of the *Romans*, dying before his Father *Ferdinand* III. *Leopold* succeeded in the Empire, and married *Margaretta* Infanta of *Spain*, the Daughter of *Philip* IV. He is the Darling of his People, and equally beloved both by the Soldiery and Clergy.

The present Emperor Leopold.

He is of a grave, but graceful Aspect, and has the long Chin, and remarkable Lip, belonging to the Family of *Austria*. He is well versed in the *German*, *Italian*, *Spanish*, and *Latin* Languages; and as he takes delight in reading, sometimes for several Hours together, so he is always forward in countenancing of Learned Men. He also delights in Musick, and frequently composes himself; which makes not only all the Church-men, and others, encourage Musick and Musicians, but also the Emperor himself, has excellent Musick, both Vocal and Instrumental, in his Palace, and some of his own Compositions are play'd in his private Chapel, where always eight or ten Pages of the Emperor, Earl's Sons, serve at the Altar, with white Torches in their Hands, whilst divers Eunuchs are singing.

Addicted to Musick.

A Lover of Hunting.

His Recreations abroad consist chiefly in Hunting, especially the Wild Boar. The young Nobility used to encounter a Wild Boar, sometimes a single Person alone, but since the unfortunate Accident that happened to Count *Nicholas Serini*, who was kill'd by one of those Creatures, the Hunts-men are always at hand, when the Boar is at a Bay, that the Emperor, or others there present, may the more safely kill it

There are great numbers of these Creatures hereabouts, their Meat being a common Dish at *Vienna*, and of a delicious taste; for they feed upon Acorns, Beach-mast, and Chesnuts, and upon the Sprouts of Broom, Juniper, and Shrubs, and upon the Roots of Fern; they will sometimes leave the Forests, and range in the Corn-fields and Vineyards. It is the Hunts-man's Business to keep a watchful Eye over them; and they are so skilful in that Game, that by the tread of their Feet, and the casting their Hind-feet out of the Track of their Fore-feet, they will tell you, whether it be a wild Swine, or tame Hog; nay, whether it be Male or Female, Young or Old, Lean or Fat, &c.

His Stables.

The Emperor, as he is a good Huntsman, so he takes a great delight in Horses: He has a very fine Stable fill'd with all manag'd Horses, brought thither from *Turkey*, *Tartary*, *Poland*, *Transylvania*, *Germany*, *Bohemia*, *Hungary*, and *Naples*.

Militia.

It was something surprising to me, to find in an Inland City so considerable Magazines of Naval Stores, as I found at *Vienna*: These are employ'd upon the *Danube* against the *Turks*; being a kind of Gallies, carrying great Guns, and a considerable number of Soldiers, besides Sea-men. They are laid up behind one of the Bastions of the City, and some of them are kept at *Raab* and *Comorra*.

His Court.

The Imperial Court is composed of many wise Counsellors, great Generals, and most refined Courtiers.

Eusebius Wenceslaus, Duke of *Sagan*, Prince *Lobkowitz*, was then Lord High Steward, and chief Minister and Favourite of the Emperor; he being the Person who first discovered the late *Hungarian* Revolt, for which Count *Peter Serini*, and *Nadasti*, paid with their Heads.

Henry William, Count *Stalhemberg*, Lord Marshal of the Court.

John Maximilian, Count *Lamberg*, Lord Chamberlain, who has near a hundred Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber under him, all Barons and Counts: They wear a Golden Key upon the Breast, as the Grooms of the Bed-Chamber wear one of Steel: Two of each attend every Night.

Gundakerus, Count *Dietrichstein*, Master of the Horse.

Count *Zinzendorff*, chief Hunts-Master.

The Count of *Roorsberg*, chief Falconer, who has twelve others under him.

The Count *de Paar*, Postmaster-General.

Leopoldus Wilhelmus, Marquess of *Baden*, Captain of a hundred *Harsiriers*, who are a kind of a Horse-Guard of the Emperor's Body, arm'd with Pistols and Carabines, without the City; but within, the Foot carry Launces and Javelins with broad Points.

Francis Austin, Count *Wallenstein*, Captain of a hundred of the Emperor's Foot-Guard of his Body.

Sixty Pages, most of them Counts and Barons.

Raymund Count *de Montecuculi*, who has signaliz'd himself in *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Germany*; the Emperor's General, President of the Council of War.

Next to him was Count *Soucies*, a Native of *Rochel*; and his Son Governour of *Leopolstadt*.

Count *Lesly*, Nephew to Count *Lesly*, who was sent in the Quality of Ambassador to the Port from the Emperor, is also look'd upon as one of the best Commanders the Emperor has: Besides a great many other brave Officers, who have shewn their Conduct and Valour upon a thousand occasions; that tho' the Emperor never takes the Field in Person, yet has he been very successful in his Wars, especially against the *Turks*.

The Courts of both the Empresses are fill'd with Persons of great worth.

Among the Clergy, and Men of Learning (of which the Emperor is a great Lover), the *Jesuites*, *Moelner*, and *Breecabella*, are the chiefest. And to sum up all it is certain, that *Vienna* is the most likely place for any Foreigner, whether Soldier or Scholar, to make his Fortune, provided he be of the *Roman Catholick* Religion.

The Imperial Library.

It will perhaps be surprising to some, when they understand, that upon the utmost Border of the Learned Part of *Europe*, the Emperor is Master of a Library, which, according to their Opinion, both for the Number and Value of Books, gives way to no other Library in *Europe*. The worst is, that the Receptacle is not suitable to so vast a Treasure; for tho' it is divided into eight spacious Rooms, in which the Shelves stand so close, that there is scarce an easie passage left betwixt them, yet are many Books fain to lie upon the Ground.

The Manuscripts have their peculiar places, distinct from the Printed Books, and are divided into six different Classes, *viz. Theological*, *Juridical*, *Medicinal*, *Philosophical*, *Historical*, and *Philological*. The Manuscripts of *Hebrew*, *Syriack*, *Arabick*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, *Æthiopick*, and *Chinese* Books, are without Comparison the best Collection that is to be found.

The choicest Books of which this Library is composed (which has been collecting ever since the time of *Maximilian* the First), are:

The famous Library of *Buda*, of *Matthias Corvinus*, Son to *Hunniades*.

The choice Library of *Wolfgangus Lazius*. As also 3000 Books of *Johannes Sambucus*.

Augerius Busbequius, made a considerable Addition to the rest; and in his two *Turkey* Embassies, bought a great many choice *Greek* Manuscripts at *Constantinople*, which are mark'd thus with his own Hand, *Aug. de Busbeck. emit. Constantinopoli*.

There was also a considerable number added out of the Library of the Learned *Johannes Cuspinianus*, the Emperor's Library-Keeper: And the noted Libraries, and Mathematical Instruments of *Tycho Brahe*, *Kepler*, and *Gassendus*, were purchased for it.

But the greatest Addition of all, was made by that Noble Library of Count *Fugger*, which consisting of 16000 Volumes, was purchased by *Ferdinand* the Third. Besides which, the Learned *Peter Lambecius*, the present Library-Keeper, Historiographer, and Counsellor of the Emperor, has brought hither the choicest Books out of the Library of *Inspruck*; and he himself is Master of a most excellent Library of his own; which will in time be added to the Imperial Library. I had it from his own Mouth, that there were then at least 80000 Volumes in this Library, which are encreased by the accession of other Books, which are purchased, especially in the *Turkish* Dominions, where the Emperor keeping a constant Resident, no Opportunity is let slip to buy up any good *Greek* Manuscripts in their Convents. I remember my self, that when I was at *Larissa* in *Thessaly*, the Resident, Seignior *de Casa Nova*, was continually enquiring after *Greek* Books in their Monasteries, the present Emperor sparing no Cost to purchase them; and were it only for the number of Books it is certain, that by the Right the Emperor has of having two Books of whatever is Printed in *Germany*, this Library might soon increase to a vast number.

Consists of 80000 Vol.

As *Lambecius* gave me a thousand Obligations upon all Occasions, so he was so kind, as to give me a sight of all the rarest Copies in this Library, among a vast number of which, I took an Account of the following:

Its best Manuscripts.

A Letter in the *Chinese* and *Tartarian* Language, from the present Emperor of *China*, unto the present Emperor *Leopold*, weaved in a very fine Roll.

Another

Another Roll written in an unknown Character, but most resembling the *Greek*.

A Book in the *Runick* Language.

A very fair Manuscript of *Ptolemy*, the Maps coloured.

A true Copy of *Livy*, the most ancient Manuscript extant, a thousand Years old, in very large Letters, without distinction of Words or Sentences, brought hither from the *Inspruck* Library.

A very fair Manuscript in *Greek* of *Dioscorides*, 1100 Years old, in large Characters, without Distinctions of Words or Accents; the Plants finely painted: With the Pictures of *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, and some other noted Physicians.

Two Books of Geometrical Propositions, demonstrated in the *Chinese* Language; whereof one with Pictures.

An old *Greek* Manuscript in great Letters, without distinction of Words or Accents.

A *Greek* Manuscript 1300 Years old, of the Book of *Genesis*, without Stops, or Accents. It contains forty eight Draughts in Miniature, or Water-colours, relating to the Habits of the Ancients, to the Manner of their Feasting, as their Postures at Meals, Attendance of Servants, and Musick. Among other things, the Execution of *Pharaoh*'s Baker, is worth observation, his Head being thrust thro' a forked Piece of Wood, and his Hands ty'd behind him.

A Book of Painting in Miniature, by *Albert Durer*; and a Sphere with a Globe within it, carved and painted by the same Hand.

A Book of *Michael Angelo*; wherein, besides many Rarities in *Architecture*, all the Paintings and Designs of the *Belvedere* are seen in little.

A very fair Alchoran in *Arabick*, with the *Turkish* Explication interlined betwixt it.

A Bible in the *Coptick* and *Persian* Languages.

Luther's one Bible, with many Notes, written by his own Hand.

A fair *Greek* Manuscript of the New Testament, written with Golden Letters upon Purple 1500 Years ago.

A Magical Glass of the Emperor *Rudolphus*, whereby to see Apparitions of Spirits.

Sixteen thousand Pieces of ancient *Greek*, *Roman*, and *Gothick* Medals and Coins, in Gold, Silver, and Copper. They pretend to have two Copper Coins of the Emperor *Marcus Otho*.

Being willing to add a few Drops to this Ocean, I presented some Coins, Intaglia's, and Inscriptions, not to be found in *Gruterus*'s Great Work: Which I met with in the furthest part of the Emperor's Dominions; which being shew'd to his Imperial Majesty by Mr. *Lambecius*, he was so well pleas'd with them, that he not only permitted me the use of what Books I desired, but also granted me a free Pass, in *Latin*, thro' the Empire, exempting my Goods from being search'd; which is no small conveniency, in a Country where a Traveller is to pass through so many different Jurisdictions.

After I had taken a full View of this Library, I thought I could not bestow my time better than in visiting also the Repository, or Collection of Rarities of many succeeding Emperors; in viewing of which I spent several Hours; but fully to set down all the rich and magnificent Curiosities I saw here, is much beyond the compass of this Treatise, (the Catalogue which is kept of them, taking up a large Volume in Folio;) so I will content my self with mentioning only a few of the best out of a great many, from whence the Reader may be able to give a Judgment of the rest.

The whole is divided into Fourteen Cases, or Cupboards.

Collection of Rarities of the Emperor.

1. Contains many curious Vessels turn'd out of Ivory, Cups of Amber; Spoons, and other Vessels, of Mother of Pearl, divers fine Works of Coral, a Galley of Ivory, and two Cups, one turn'd by the present Emperor's own Hand; the other by *Ferdinand* III. Several Cups of the Rhinoceror's Horn.

In the 2. An Elephant with a Castle, and many other Rarities of Workmanship on his Back. Two fine Pillars, all of Ivory, with variety of *Bosso Relievo*, and other Varieties in Ivory. A Picture in Oil of *Ganymede*, by *Corregio*.

In the 3. An Old Man's Head in Oil, by *Albert Durer*; vast variety of Watches and Clockwork; a fine *Centaur* in Silver.

The 4. Also contains Watches and Clocks; a triumphant *Chariot*; a *Turk* of Quality with his Attendance; a Landskip and a *Cupid*, by *Corregio*.

In the 5. Are divers curious Works of Filegrane, brought from *Spain* and the *Indies*; and a Bason of Agate finely wrought.

The 6. Contains an excellent Collection of *Intaglia*, and old *Roman Stones*, of inestimable Value for their workmanship and bigness. A large Agate, on which is wrought the Victory of *Augustus Cæsar* over the *Dalmatians* and *Pannonians*; it is five Inches long, and four broad, of a very high value; besides several Heads and Figures cut in Onyx's, Shells, and Sardonyx's; and a *Chain* with the Head of the whole *Austrian* Family.

In the 7. Divers Pieces of Mother of Pearl, curiously wrought. The Head of *Maximilian* I. in Plaister-work, with a Lock of his own Hair, and the Twelve *Cæsars* Heads. Another Head, excellently well done in Oil, by *Hans van Ach*.

In the 8. A Vessel made of one Piece of *Chrystal* of a Yard and a half high. An Urn. Several Hands, with other *Chrystal* Works.

The 9. Has a very noble Ewer of *Chrystal*, and another noble Vessel; many curious *Crosses*, and other Varieties.

The 10. Containing five rich *Crowns*; the Imperial *Crown* adorned with precious Jewels, and a large blue Sapphire on the top. A Model of the *Crown* wherewith the Emperor's are crown'd, much exceeding in Value the Original. A *Paragon Diamond*, weighing 17 *Carats*. Divers very large Rubies. A Scepter made of Unicorn's Horn, set with precious Stone. A Locket made of very large Diamonds. A most magnificent *Scepter*, *Globe*, *Cross*, and *Crown*, valued at 200000 Crowns. An Opal as big as a Hand, as it came out of the Mine, with many other very fine Opals, and a very large Emerauld.

In the 11. A Golden Bason, used at the Baptism of the *Austrian* Family. Divers Golden Scepters, Scimeters, Knives, and other Presents from the *Ottoman Court*. Three rich Dog-collars, sent from *England* with this Mark ꝺCꝺC. A great Piece of pure Gold of the bigness of a Hand, as it came out of the Mine. Another Piece of Gold Ore, where you see the pure Gold shooting forth upon a white Stone; besides divers other Basons of Gold, and Vessels of Coral.

In the 12. Great store of Vessels of *Jaspis*, *Agate*, *Lapis Lazuli*, *Oriental Granates*, *Cups* of *Onyx* and *Sardonyx*, one very great one of an *Amethyst*, and divers very large ones of *Lapis Nephriticus*.

In the 13. Are divers Flowers made out of precious Stones. A large high Vessel of *Bohemian Topaz*. A *Cup* made of an *Hungarian* Diamond. A Piece of Ambergriece of the bigness of a Man's Hand. A very fine *Jaspis* Stone. A large *Agate* Stone on the outside, and a Bed of large *Amethysts* naturally in it in the middle, which is look'd upon as a great Rarity.

In the 14. Are many noble Chrysolytes, Jacynths, Oriental Granates, Beryls, or Aquamarines. A very rich Smaragdus, or Emerauld, or a Cup out of that Stone; three great ones having been already taken out, valued at 300000 Crowns. Great store of Gold Vessels, and rare Figures in Coral; Turkish Knives, Gauntlets, &c. fine Wax-works, large Bezoar-stones; a Golden Medal of the Emperor's Arms, worth 1000 *l.* Sterl. a Cup said to be taken out of *Solomon*'s Temple; a most curious Bason and Ewer of carved Ivory; King *Philip* II. of *Spain* in Diamond Armour, set in Gold; a curious Picture of an Old Man courting a Young Woman, with this Motto:

Artium Annulum ne gestato.

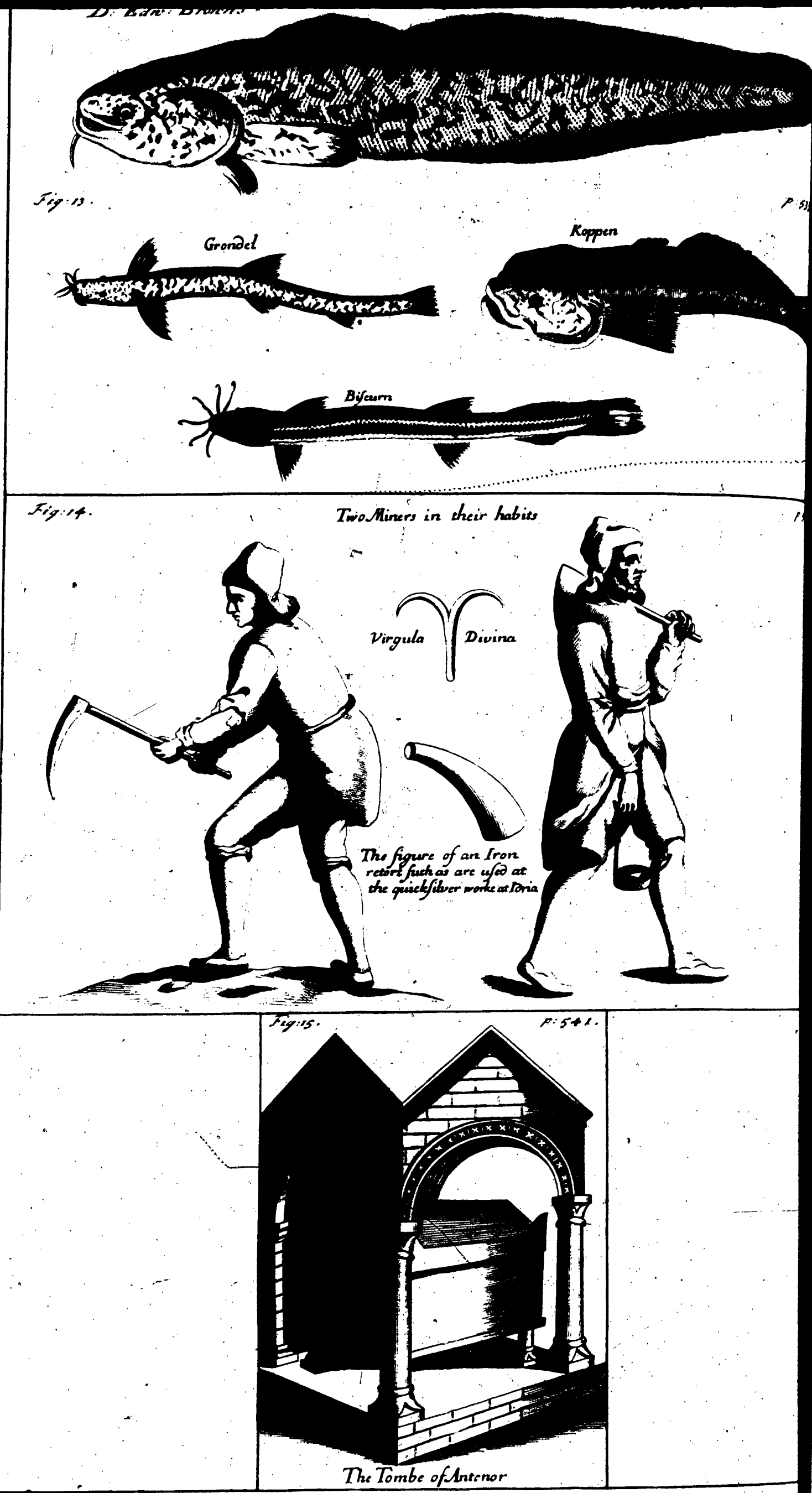
A very fine Crucifix of Pearl; the Buff-coat of *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, in which he was kill'd near *Lutzen*; all the Gospel written and painted; the Head of King *Charles* I. King of *England*, in Marble; Priests Garments set all over with Pearls; an inestimable Agate Dish, betwixt three and four Spans Diameter, in which you see in natural Characters *XRISOS*. Unto which may be subjoyn'd that most magnificent Chain of Pearl taken from Count *Teckley* in the late *Hungarian* War, as I have been inform'd since.

One Day I had the curiosity to walk up the Hill, which lies two *English* Miles from *Vienna*, from whence I had a full prospect of the City and circumjacent Country, as far as to the Mountains of *Styria*, covered with Snow; and in my return took a view of the Empress Dowager's House without the Town, call'd *La Favorita*.

Gardens of Rudolphus.

Two *English* Miles to the East of *Vienna*, are the Gardens of *Rudolphus* the Second, which are somewhat ruinous now. It hath an inward and outward Garden, the inward being about 200 Paces square, much of the same bigness as the *Place Royal* at *Paris*. It has a Cloister supported by 40 Pillars of white Stone on each side; and is covered with Copper, as are also the Pavilions.

Here


D: Edw: Browns
Fig: 13.
P: 53
Grondel
Koppen
Biscurn
Fig: 14.
Two Miners in their habits
Virgula Divina
The figure of an Iron retort such as are used at the quicksilver worke at Idria
Fig: 15.
P: 541.
The Tombe of Antenor

Here are also certain Buildings here, where they keep Lions, Tigers and other Wild-Beasts, which breed here. Some say that *Solyman* the Magnificent pitch'd his own Tent in this place, when he besieged *Vienna*.

At two or three Miles distance from *Vienna*, is a place call'd *Arnols*, whither many *Devotees* go on Pilgrimage, especially in Lent, with heavy Crosses on their Shoulders. Here you see a House, the Model of which is taken after the Holy Sepulchre of *Jerusalem*, with a very curious Copy of the Picture of our Saviour and the Virgin *Mary*, at full length; The first is exactly six Foot high, the last two or three Fingers breadth lower. They are done after the Original in St. *John de Lateran* at *Rome*. I saw one Day the Emperor and Empress go thither on Foot, the ways being very dusty, and were follow'd by the greatest part of the Court. Somewhat nearer to the City, is another place call'd *Iezing*, likewise much celebrated for Devotion. In the Road from *Vienna* to it, the twelve Stations of the Cross are marked out in the same manner, as is observed in the *Via Dolorosa*, near *Jerusalem*, in memory of our Saviour's going to the Mount *Calvary*. The Emperour has a very fine Park just by *Vienna*, with a House of Pleasure in it: I also took a view of *Lauenburg*, a House of retreat, also belonging to the Emperour; it is an old Structure, and not very large; There is also a Summer-House there, built in the middle of a Pond, and an eight-square Building in the Marsh, from whence they see frequently fly at the Wild Beasts. Over the Emperour's Palace Gate you see a Rib and Jaw-bone of an extraordinary size, which they told me were the Bones of a Heathen Maid, but appear'd to me more like the Bones of an Elephant.

An old place of Devotion.

A remarkable place of Devotion.

Lauenburg, a Pleasure-House of the Emperours.

From this place I took a progress to *Mannersdorff*, situate near the River *Leyta*; this place is famous for the *Bath*, call'd the *Wild bath*, over the Spring of which is built a Church: The Water being only Luke-warm, they boil it, and so bath in Tubs: That being judged best from what sticks to the sides of the Copper when it is a boiling; it seems to be impregnanted with *Sulphur*, *Salt-peter* and *Chalk*: The Water leaves a *Turquois* colour upon the Stones, and the Vapours which condense and adhere to the Roof and sides give it a tincture of Gold colour. The Physicians of *Vienna* have publish'd a Treatise in *High-dutch*, of this Bath.

The Bath call'd the Wild Bath.

From hence I went to the *Newsidler-see*, or *Lake*, which is three *German* Leagues broad, and seven long, a considerable Lake in those parts, abounding in Fish, and being encompass'd with a great number of small Towns and Villages. It has got its name from *Newsiedle*, a considerable Town, situated on the North side of it, with a Square and Castle upon a Hill. Near this place is a black Earth, of which they make *Salt-peter*. Afterwards I proceeded four *English* Miles up the *Danube*, to the famous Quarry of *Altenburg*. The Beds or Rows of the Stones, don't lie Horizontally, but elevated to the North, yet follow the shape of the Hill in their situation. I found here a Substance between a Clay and a Stone, call'd by them *Liverstone*, upon many of which you see the Figures of Trees and Leaves, but not so plain as in those of *Florence*.

The *Neusidler Lake*.

The Quarry at *Altenburg*.

I past'd by *Cloister-Newburgh*, a Town belonging to a rich Monastery of the same Name. Upon one of the Peaks of *Calenbergh*, before-mentioned, live certain *Hermites*, call'd *Camaldulenses*, a very severe order, living upon nothing but Herbs and Roots. Near their Cells they had paved the Ground with those figured Stones.

It being now near *December*, the branches of the *Danube* were frozen over, and the Ground being cover'd with Snow, afforded good pastime for the Ladies, who at this Season, take their Recreations in handsome Sledges in divers shapes, viz. *Griffins*, *Tigers*, *Swans*, *Dolphins*, *Scallop Shells*, &c. In one of those Machines the Lady is seated and richly attired in Velvet, lined with rich Furs, adorned with Laces and Jewels, and Velvet Caps lined with Sables. The Sledge is drawn by one Horse, adorned with Plumes, Ribbonds, and Bells; and as this pastime is commonly performed in the Night time; the Foot-men ride on Horse-back with Torches, the Gentlemen sitting on the Sledge, behind the Lady, to guide the Horse.

The Sledges used at *Vienna*, in the Winter time.

Christmas, they celebrate here much after the same manner as in *Italy*. On *Christmas-day* the Emperor dines in publick, having a very splendent attendance.

Their Christmas follies.

Upon St. *Stephen*'s Day, he went to the Cathedral, where he kneeled upon the Altar, and kiss'd the Place whereon the *Hostia* had lain.

On Twelfth-day they celebrated at Court the old Custom of chooling King and Queen, and the lot falling upon Count *Leslie* to be King, the Emperor laid the Cloth, and the Empress fill'd out the Wine.

Not long before *Christmas*, I saw the Solemnity of the Marriage of Count *Serau*, with a natural Daughter of *Philip* IV. King of *Spain*, where I could not but be surprized at the splendour, in which the Ladies appear'd upon this occasion.

Not long after I saw also a very splendid Funeral, the Corps of Count *Dreun*, which was brought from *Italy*, being interr'd in the *Dominican* Church, and a very sumptuous *Castrum Doloris* was raised, set round with a vast number of Wax Torches and Candles.

During my stay at *Vienna*, the Election for a King of *Poland* being at hand, after the voluntary Abdication of King *Casimir*, there pass'd daily Messengers thro' *Vienna*. The *Czar* of *Muscovy*'s Son, the Duke of *Newburg*, and the Prince of *Lorrain*, were Competitors for the Crown, but the *Poles* thought fit to pitch upon *Michael Wisnowitski*, a Native of *Poland*, for their King.

I saw also at the same time at *Vienna*, the *Spanish* Ambassadour, *Don Balthasar de la Cueva*; the Pope's *Nuncio* was *Carlo Caraffa*. Besides which, the *Venetians* had their Ambassadour at *Vienna*, who sollicited Succours for *Candia*, which the *Turkish* Envoy opposed with all his might.

Much about the same time came an Ambassadour from the *Cham* of the *Crim Tartars*, named *Cha Gagi Aga*, who presented the Emperor with divers very fine *Tartarian* Horses, in return of which he was regaled by the Emperour with some Plates, and a Silver Bason and Ewer, and a very fine Watch for the *Cham*. They were lusty, strong limb'd Fellows, but very course, their Habit, long furr'd Vests and Caps.

An Embassy of *Crim Tartars*.

They took a vast quantity of Tobacco in very long Pipes.

Among the *Greeks*, who trade and live at *Vienna*, I was chiefly acquainted with three considerable Persons; one was an Abbot, who had been forc'd to quit his Convent for fear of the *Turks*; another, who call'd himself *Constantina Cantacuzenos*, being descended of the Royal Blood of the *Cantacuzeni*; the third was a *Greek* Priest, named *Jeremiah*, who having travelled in quest of a young Man, taken by an *Algerine*, and retaken by an *English* Ship, thro' *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, the *Low Countries* and *England*, had retained a most peculiar kindness for the *English*, who he said had treated him more courteously than any other Nation.

The Country about *Vienna* is so fertile in all things, that People live here in great plenty; and if any scarcity should happen, the *Danube* supplies them from remoter parts. *Hungary*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, furnish them with such Varieties of Wine, that you may drink 30 several sorts of Wine at *Vienna*; neither are they destitute of good Beer. *Hallstadt* in *Austria* affords them Salt, from whence the Emperour draws a vast revenue. Sheep and Oxen, they have in great plenty themselves, yet are they supplied with the last out of *Hungary* and the *Grand Seignior*'s Dominions. Wild Boars Meat is a great Dish with them, their Fat being as delicious here, as that of our Venison. Neither do they want Hares, Rabbets, Partridges, Pheasants, a Fowl call'd in *Latin Gallina Corylorum*, &c.

Plenty at *Vienna*.

The *Danube* furnishes them with vast plenty of Fish, such as *Carps*, *Trouts*, *Tenches*, *Pikes*, *Eels*, *Lampreys* of all sorts, *White Fish*, and large *Crevisses*, besides divers Fish † not known to us. Here you meet with the Fish call'd *Scheiden*, the *Silurus Gesneri*, which exceeds the *Pike*, *Salmon*, nay, any of our River Fish in bigness; but the biggest of all are the *Hausons*, call'd *Husones*, by *Joinston*, being sometimes 20 Foot long. Some will have this to be the Fish named *Anacetus* by *Elian*, which he says is catch'd in the *Ister*. I saw them busy in fishing for them in the Isle of *Schutz*, between *Presburgh* and *Comorea*, for they seldom come up higher, it being supposed that they come out of the *Euxine-sea*. They are not unlike the Sturgeon in taste, and they eat them both fresh and pickl'd. It is full of Gristles, having a hollow nervous chord down the Back, which when dried, they use instead of a Whip. When they fish for them, they blow a Horn or Trumpet. *Venice* furnishes *Vienna* with Oysters, pickl'd Sturgeon, and other pickl'd Fish, with Red-Herrings, Oranges, Limons, and other Fruits. They are much disposed to jolity in this City; nothing more common than to see them dancing and fencing for Prizes on Holy-days, and spending their time in merry-making, which made me wonder that they have not a Company of Players belonging to them.

Fish near *Vienna*.

Fig. 13.

Their way of executing Criminals is commonly done by cutting off their Heads; tho' in cases of high Treason, they first cut off the Right Hand, the Executioner strikes off the Head with one Foreblow. I remember I saw

saw one executed in this manner, and no sooner was the Head separated from the Body, but a Man ran speedily to catch the Blood, which gushed out of the Neck, which he drank, and then ran as fast as he could: They look upon this as a Remedy against the *Falling Sickness*. I had heard of something like this in *Germany* before, and I well remember, that *Celsus* tells us, that in his time, some Epileptical Persons used to drink the Blood of the Gladiatours, yet most Physicians exclaimed against this Remedy, and I did not stay long enough here to learn the effects of it.

At *Presburg*, they have an odd way of Execution, (which is also in use at *Metz*).

They have an Engine framed in the shape of a Maid, which the Criminal Person is obliged to salute; but at the second Salute, she embraces him, and cuts him thro' the middle.

Their manner of living.

It must be confess'd that the Winters are very sharp here, but the rigour of it is much mitigated by their sleeping betwixt two Feather-beds, and the Stoves they make use of to warm their Rooms, as well here, as in most other parts of *Germany* and the Northern Countries.

The Citizens of *Vienna* are generally well clad, and wear Furs very much, and the Women Bonnets, which they wear upon their Heads, are both lined and faced with some Fur or other.

The Climate is very healthful, yet have they an Epidemical Disease, call'd *Colica Austriaca*, among them, which is very difficult to be cured.

Colica Austriaca.

In the Court and City they speak very good *German*, but the Country People speak somewhat thick, and have a different tone, and divers odd Words.

I saw a certain trick, performed at *Vienna*, which at first sight somewhat surprised me, *viz.* A middle siz'd Man laid upon his Back, had a heavy Anvil fix'd upon his Breast, upon which two lusty Fellows with great Hammers, gave at least a hundred blows, till they had cut an Iron Horse-shoe, about half an Inch thick, asunder.

No other Religion but the *Roman Catholick* is permitted the publick exercise of Religious Worship here; the *Protestants* being obliged to go to Church as far as *Presburgh*, forty Miles from hence; for which reason a Coach goes thither every Day, besides the convenience of the Passage by the *Danube*; the exercise of the *Protestant* Worship being strictly forbid here, ever since the Battle of *Prague*, the same being permitted before, in the Church of the *Holy Ghost* at first and afterwards at *Arnolds*, not above an *English* Mile from *Vienna*.

The Jews of Vienna.

In this City are abundance of *Jews*, but have their distinct Habitations on the other side of the Water. They are indeed permitted to traffick in a certain Street in the Day time, but must leave the City before Night. They have frequent broils with the other Inhabitants, and especially with the Students. Whilst I was there, these last assaulted the Jews Town, where divers were kill'd on both sides; the consequence of which was, that many of the Jews were to be banish'd against a certain Day. The Empress being then with Child, they presented her with a Silver Cradle, but as she was their declared Enemy, she would not accept of it, and it was chiefly by her means, that afterwards they were banisht, not only out of *Vienna*, but also out of all *Austria*; for as they were useful on one side, for the sale or exchange of many things, and used to furnish the Officers with Accoutrements and other Necessaries fit for the Regiments, so on the other hand, they spoil'd the trade of the Citizens, and were accused of having a secret correspondence with the *Turks*.

The *Jewish* Physicians pretend to more than ordinary skill in Urines, which makes the common People resort to them, and to look upon their Predictions as Oracles.

A Journey from Vienna in Austria to Hamburgh.

BEing now resolved to take my leave of *Vienna*, in order to my Journey for *Prague*, I took a place in the Coach, which goes thither in six Days in the Summer, and eight in the Winter. We pass'd over the great Bridge upon the *Danube* near the Chapel of St. *Bridget*. After we had pass'd the River, we enter'd that part of *Austria*, which lieth betwixt the *Danube* and the River *Theya*, we travelled in sight of *Corneuburgh*, seated near the Hill *Bisamberg*, which lies opposite to *Calenbergh*.

Hence we came to *Stockerau*, famous for the death of St. *Colman*: It is seated at the conflux of the River *Mida* and the *Danube*.

From thence by the way of *Gunterstorf* to *Koldorff*, which (tho' on the other side of the River *Thera*) is reckoned the first Village of *Moravia*, and so further to *Znaim*.

It is observable, that in this part of *Austria*, which extends along the North side of the *Danube*, believed to be inhabited in former Ages by the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*, there are not any Towns of note; the *Romans* having had their Stations and Colonies on the South side of that River. Yet is the Country well inhabited and full of Villages.

I came in sight of one of the chiefest places (as I pass'd down the *Danube*) call'd *Crembs* or *Cremona Austriæ*. *Znaim*, is a goodly place upon the River *Theya*; the common boundary betwixt *Moravia* and *Austria*, which joining its Waters at last with the River *Mark*, thereby opens it self a passage into the *Danube*. This Town is the fourth in rank among those of *Moravia*; *Olmutz*, *Brun*, and *Iglaw*, being the other three.

We continued our Journey from hence over *Unterskirken*, *Paulitz*, and *Moravian Budwesse* to *Zimmaw*, and taking our way thro' *Bynitz*, came to *Iglaw*, upon the River *Iglaw*, a place pleasantly situate upon a Hill, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*.

Iglaw.

Its Fortifications are very strong, after the modern way, especially on one side, and the Market-place is one of the largest I ever met with.

Moravia is a very plentiful and pleasant Country, being irrigated by divers Rivers, among which the *Mora* or *Marck*, is the chiefest; it arises on the North side, and passing thro' the whole extent of the Country, falls into the *Danube* near *Presburgh*. The other Rivers of note are, the *Theya* or *Theyssa*, the *Swarta*, the *Schwitta*, which run into the River *Marck*.

Rivers of Moravia.

After we left *Iglaw*, we enter'd *Bohemia*, the first place we came to being call'd *Stecken*; thence to *Tauchin Broda*, near the River *Saczua*, and so further thro' *Haberne* to *Janikaw*, famous for the Battle which was fought there, the 24th of *February*, 1643. betwixt the *Imperialists* and *Swedes*; the first had the better of it at the beginning, but falling to plundering, were defeated by the *Swedes*. In this Town I happened to meet with a Gentleman, who lived at *Schaclitz*, not far from the *Risgebergh*, or *Mountain of Giants*, situate near the Head Spring of the River *Albes* or *Elbe*; I was curious to enquire of him, what he knew concerning the pretended Spirit of *Ribenzhal*, which they say infests that Country, but I could get nothing from him that was satisfactory; all what he told me amounting to no more, than, that he verily believed there was such a Spirit, but that he had not done any harm these twelve Years last past. I have heard divers such Reports among the Mountains and Mines of *Germany*. Thus they talk of Spirits in the Silver Mines of *Brunswick*, and in the Tin-Mines of the *Slackenwalde*, in *Bohemia*.

From *Janikaw*, we continued our Journey to *Czaslaw*, the chief City in the Circle of that Name. This is reputed the Burying place of *Ziska*, the famous *Bohemian* General, who forced the Emperor *Sigismund* to quit that Kingdom.

From *Czaslaw*, we came to *Guttenberg*, about 12 *English* Miles from *Prague*, a very considerable Town, near the River *Elbe*, and famous for the Silver Mines about it. There are in all about 30 of them, but as the Hills hereabouts are not very high, so the Mines are not so deep as those in *Hungary*, and in some other places of *Germany*; however some are almost 70 or 80 Fathoms, and have been wrought at these 700 Years. I went into one of them which was first digged, call'd the *Cutten-Hill* (*Cutten* signifying a Mans Garment) which has got its name as they say from a Monk, who found a Silver Tree there, and thereby gave occasion for the digging of this Mine, which is no more than 19 Fathom deep: the chief Vein of the Ore, which is about a Foot broad, runneth South. It contains both Silver and Copper, of the first, a hundred Weight about an Ounce, of the last, eight, nine, ten, or more Ounces; tho' some Ore contains eight or nine Ounces of Silver the hundred-weight. When they meet with a blew Earth in digging, they are in some hopes of good Ore.

Silver Mines.

From hence we pass'd thro' *Colline*, and so by the way of *Bohemian Broda* (to distinguish it from the *Teutonick Broda*) came to *Prague*, the capital City, and formerly the Residence of the Kings of *Bohemia*. I soon perceived

The Jews of Prague.

even

even at a distance, that the Walls of the Town enclosed a larger Tract of Ground, than [illegible] in Germany; but considerable abatements are to be allowed for the wide spaces and Hills, which are compass'd within them.

Description of Prague. It is situate upon the *Moldaw*, a large rapid River, having its source in the South part of *Bohemia*, and before it comes to *Prague*, being augmented by the River *Sasawa* and the *Berna*, and to the North of *Prague*, by the River *Egra*, at last exonerates it self into the *Elbe*. This great body is divided into three Cities, *viz.* the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Lesser City*.

Old Prague. The *Old Town* is seated on the East side of the River *Moldaw*, being the most populous place of the three; and considerable for the University, which first established here, and frequented by a vast number of Students, this being the only one of the whole Kingdom, tho' it is not comparable now to what it has been in former Ages. If we may believe *Lewis du May*, there were, 1409. when *John Huss* was Rector, above 40000 Students there; and it is credibly reported among them, That when the Emperour *Charles* the IV. (the Founder of this University) would have retrenched some of their Privileges, 24000 Students left the Town in one Week, and not long after 16000 more. This part of the Town has also several Colleges and Monasteries, and among the rest the *Jesuits*, a very handsome one.

The University.

New Prague. The *New Town* is of a very large extent, encompassing the *Old Town*, together with the River, being divided from it by a Ditch, into which they can let the River. The *Irish* have a Convent of *Franciscans* here, and the Jesuits have began to lay the Foundation of a noble College. They were then busie in making some Bastions, and a Citadel for the defence of the Town, but are not finish'd.

The Lesser Prague. The *Lesser Prague*, seated on the West side of the River *Muldau*. It is far beyond the *Old Town* in pleasantness and good Structures, being join'd to it by a very strong Stone Bridge, of fixteen great Arches, the whole Fabrick being 1700 Foot long, and 35 broad, with two high Gates, under two large Towers at each end. Part of this Town is built upon a rising Ground, on the top of which stands *Herrs-hir*, or *Upper-Prague*, where the Emperour has a Summer-house, and a most magnificent Palace. In this part of the City is also the Cathedral Church of St. *Veit*, containing many ancient Monuments of great Personages. Most of the Houses of the Nobility are also in this part; among which the Garden and Palace of *Colorado*, excels for its neatness, but is not very large. But the Palace of Count *Wallenstein*, afterwards Duke of *Friedland*, General of the Emperour *Ferdinand* the II. Armies, is a very stately Structure, being built upon the Ruins of at least 100 Houses, which were pull'd down for that purpose: The Hall is a very lofty and spacious Room, and the Garden exceeding beautiful, on one side of which you see the place where they used to manage his Horses, with a noble Fish Pond near it: On the other side you see the *Aviary*, beautify'd with Trees and a Garden; the Model being taken from the *Aviary* of Prince *Doria* at *Genoa*. But what is most surprising are the large Stables, where you see a Marble Pillar betwixt each Horse; every Horse having a Rack of Steel and a Manger of Marble, fix'd in a nich of the Wall: Over the Head of each Horse you behold his Picture, as big as the Life, with his Name under it. Thus a certain Bay Horse was named *Monte d' Oro*, a Mare *Bella donna*, but his beloved Horse's name was *Mas Querido*.

The current Language of *Bohemia* is a dialect of *Sclavonian*, tho' all the Persons of Quality here, and not a few of the Inhabitants both in the City and Country, speak very good *High-Dutch*.

The *Lesser Prague* was surpriz'd by the *Swedish* General, *Koningsmark*, in the long *German* War, who carried off an incredible Booty.

The Jews of Prague. A certain part of *Prague* being inhabited by *Jews*, is thence call'd the *Jews Town*. They are here in great numbers, and deal chiefly in Jewels, and especially in those Stones, that are found in the Mines of *Bohemia*. I bought some *Bohemian Topazes*, very well cut, of them, at the rate of 7 or 8 Crowns.

John Huss and *Jerome* of *Prague*, who endeavoured a Reformation in those parts 800 Years before *Luther*, are not as yet forgotten among the *Bohemians*, who keep Silver Medals to the Memory of these two Great Men; upon which account I can't pass by in silence, what *Æneas Sylvius*, or Pope *Pius* II. says of them two, *viz.* *That John was more in Years and of greater Authority, but Jerome excelled in Eloquence and Learning; That they faced Death with an unparallel'd Constancy, and were singing Hymns in the midst of the Flames.* He adds, *That of the old Philosophers suffer'd Death with so courageous a Temper, as these the Flames.*

As the same Author has made a comparison betwixt the City of *Florence* and *Prague*, so I can't forbear to give you my observations upon this Head, which I made my self, both from the top of the *Dome* at *Florence*, and from the Cathedral of St. *Veit*, on the Hill of the *Lesser Town*. I found *Prague* to comprehend a much larger compass, and more populous than *Florence*. The Streets of the first are much longer; and the Windows of the Palace being of very fine Glass, made a much better show than the ragged Paper Windows of *Florence*. The River *Arno*, which passes thro' this last, bears not the least comparison with the *Muldau* at *Prague*, and the great Stone Bridge over this River, bears a full proportion to, if not exceeds, not only one, but all the four Bridges of *Florence*.

The Emperours Palace also upon the Hill, is a very noble Structure. On the other hand it must be confess'd, That the Cathedral of *Florence*, built of black and white Marble; the Chapel of St. *Lawrence*, and the Great Dukes *Gallery* and *Rarities*, exceed any thing I saw at *Prague*.

Upon the *White Hill* near *Prague*, was, 1620. *November* the 8th, fought the famous Battle betwixt the Armies of the Emperour *Ferdinand* II. and *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, in which the latter was routed.

The Winter coming on apace, I would not go by Water to *Hamburg*, by the way of the *Muldau*, which near *Melnick*, falls into the *Elbe*, so, that being obliged to travel by Land, I left *Prague* and the *Muldau*, to the right, and pass'd thro' *Zagethal*, *Weverne*, and *Budin* to *Labasitz* upon the *Elbe*.

After having cross'd the River *Egra* (which arising near the City of the same Name, falls afterwards into the *Elbe*) I came by the Castle of *Warrestone* (*Kriegstein*) seated upon a high Rock, thence to *Aussig*, a small City, and so by the way of *Nolendorff*, and over the Mount *Knipsberg*, came to the Frontiers of *Misnia*; taking our way thro' *Peterswald*, *Hellendorff* and *Kisdel*, near the last of which are Iron Mines and Iron Works. Having spent nine Days by Coach, from *Iglaw*, on the Confines of *Moravia*, to this place, not reckoning my stay at *Prague*, which is computed to be 200 *English* Miles, the Ways being very bad in some places, especially in the Winter Season.

As we were going forward toward *Dresden*, I took a view of the *Bohemian* Rocks behind us, in the Forest of *Bohemia*, which resembled at a distance, the Ruins of an old Wall; but could not be convinced of what most Geographers have told us of *Bohemia*, That it is enclosed in a great Forest, tho' it is not to be disowned, but that both within the Country, and in some parts near the borders, there are considerable Woods, believed to be part of the old *Sylva Hercinia*, or *Hercinian Forest*.

The *Bohemians* have been at all times a stout and warlike Nation; and tho' the common People are somewhat rough hew'd, the Gentry are very obliging and polite.

They abound in lusty and strong Horses, but since their unfortunate revolt, they have lost most of their Privileges, and many thousand Families have quitted the Kingdom.

Dresden. We continued our Journey thro' *Misnia* to *Dresden*, one of the most remarkable places in all *Germany*, being the Residence of the Electors of *Saxony* upon the *Elbe*, over which is a stately Bridge supported by 17 Arches.

Its Fortifications. The Fortifications of the City are very strong, after the modern way; the Bastions faced with Stone, surrounded in some places with a double Ditch. It has three Gates.

The things most worth a Travellor's Observation here are, The *Italian* Garden in the Suburbs, the *Hunting-House* in the *Old Town* beyond the River, and the Electoral Palace, with the House for Wild Beasts, Stables and *Arsenal*.

The Elector's Palace. The Hall in the Electors Palace is very spacious, and chiefly remarkable for the many Draughts of Cities, Pictures of Giants, and the Habits of divers Nations, very well done.

Chamber of Rarities. But what is most surprising of all, is the Collection of Rarities, divided into several Chambers. The first contains all manner of Mechanical Instruments for Handy-crafts Men, made very artificially. In the other Chambers, these following things are most worth taking notice of: A Tube-Glass, four Ells long; divers artificial Works of Coral: Towls and Caps made but of Mother of Pearl; Castles of Gold and Mother of Pearl; A Cup made of a Stone taken out of an Oxes Stomach, of a Foot long; a Stone as big as a Fist, taken out of a Horse, resembling a *Bezoar-stone*; some very pure Ore

out of the Mines of *Freiberg*; a natural Crosis of the same Ore; 121 Heads carved on a Cherry-Stone; a Chrystal Cabinet, sold by *Oliver Cromwell*; *Charles* the II. King of *England*, on Horse-back, carved out of Iron; King *Charles* the I. Head; an Organ of Glass; several unpolish'd *Topazes*, ten Inches Diameter; a Cup made of a *Topaze*; several Emralds, an Inch in Diameter, as they grow in the Rock.

Figures of Fishes in Stones, the Stones dark colour'd, the Fish of a Gold colour; two large fine pieces of pure Gold Ore; a White Hart as big as a natural one, made of the filings and shavings of Harts-horn.

Another Chamber contains all manner of Mathematical Instruments, and a Library of Mathematical Books and Maps; an Unicorns Horn, which they affirm to be of a *Land Unicorn*, because it is neither wreathed nor hollow.

The most remarkable Pictures among a great number, are, The Siege of *Jerusalem*, by *Colier*, valued at a high rate; two Nuns, by *Lucas van Leyden*, A Picture of Dr. *Luther*. Here is also a rowling Bullet, to demonstrate a perpetual Motion.

Of Clock Works you see a vast variety: A Cuckow singing, a Horse-man riding, a Ship under sail, an Old Woman walking, a *Centaur* running and shooting, and a Crab crawling or creeping upon a Table; all done by Clock-work, to the great Amazement of the Spectators.

The Stables. In the Stables, and Chambers thereunto belonging, you see a noble Stable full of Horses, each Horse eating out of a Rack of Iron, and Manger of Copper. Near unto them is a curious Fountain and Pond, surrounded with Ballisters, where the Horses are watered; a long Walk arched, and painted with most curious Horses, over which is a Gallery, with the Pictures of all the Dukes and Electors of *Saxony*, in their Electoral Robes and Military Habits; two Beds of Marble; a Horse-man of Silver, bringing a cup of Wine in his Hand, moved by a Spring; a pair of very fine Pistols, with the Stories of the *Old* and *New Testament* upon them; A Glass Gun; a Gun, which discharges forty times without being charged again; a Lock without a Cock.

Another Chamber has many rich Sleds and Accoutrements, made use of in the Winter time, upon the Snow. A White Bears Skin stuffed; Tigers and Lions Skins; A *Cassowares* Skin; very fine Armour for Men and Horses; a Picture of a *Laplander*; a *Lapland Magick Drum*; a Chamber full of all sorts of curious Hunting Tackle and Arms.

The *Arsenal* is an oblong Square, a Building containing near 400 Brass pieces of Ordnance; Of Musquets and other Arms a great quantity; divers Silver Coats of Male, &c.

Hunting House. Bear-garden. In the Hunting-house in the *Old Town*, are maintained fifteen Bears; Fountains and Ponds are made here for the conveniency of washing themselves, in which the Bears much delight. Round the Pond you see high ragged Trees or Posts set up, where the Bears climb up and down, and Scaffolds on the top, where they sun and dry themselves after they have been sporting in the Water.

The Horn Gallery here, is also worth taking notice of; Out of which you pass thro' three Chambers, one painted with all sorts of Hunting, the second with Fowl, and the third, with all kinds of Wild Beasts.

In the House where the Wild Beasts are kept, was a *Marian*, a four legg'd Beast, which hangs on the Bows of Trees by the Tail. A Wild Mountain Cat of an extraordinary size; five Young Bears; five old Black Bears; the Feet, Head and Neck, longer than those of the black, but not so thick; two Lions, and ten Lionesses.

Italian Garden. The *Italian Garden* and *Summer House* in the Suburbs, contained two noble Obelisks, two gallant Fountains, and Theater and good Landskip: They were built by two of the Electoral *Eunuchs*.

It is not many Years ago since *Dresden* has been made a City.

The Revenues of the Elector of *Saxony* are very considerable, arising chiefly from his Impositions upon Commodities, Excises upon Beer and Silver Mines.

The chief Church of *Dresden* is very fair. They are reputed to speak the best *High Dutch* here, and throughout all *Misnia*; a pleasant, fruitful and populous Country.

Freiberg. After I left *Dresden*, my Curiosity led me to *Freiberg*, noted for many considerable Mines, which are within two *English* Miles of the place.

The Mines hereabouts. Among those I took particular notice of three; One call'd *Upon the high Hill*, the deepest in those parts, being 77 of theirs or 208 of our Fathoms deep, which depth exceeded any of the Mines I ever saw in *Hungary*.

The second Mine I saw was call'd the *Prince of Heaven*, which not many Years ago, produced an Ore so rich, that 100 Pounds weight afforded 130 marks of Silver, or 65 Pounds in the hundred; but it is a constant Observation among the Miners, that where the Veins are richest and purest, they are thinnest, and generally not above the breadth of two Inches: The Ore as it generally runs, affords not one Ounce and a half of Silver in the Pound, and they work it if it holds not above half an Ounce. Which may seem somewhat strange to those who know not; that even in the Silver Mines of *Peru* and *Chili*, they will work the Silver Ore, which affords not above four or five Ounces, and the rich Ore in the celebrated Mines of *Potosi*, does commonly not produce above ten or twelve Ounces of Silver; tho' this Hill alone, if we may credit *Alberto Alonso*, has produced in Silver since it has been dug, betwixt 400 and 500 Millions of Pieces of Eight.

They have here several ways of opening the Ore to prepare it for melting; as by Lead, and a kind of Silver Ore which holds Lead.

The Sulphur Ore also which is found here, does, after its calcination, prove no small addition towards the melting of Metals; as likewise the *Schlich*, or pounded and washed Ore, and the *Slacken*, being the dross, or sediment, or Scum, taken out of the *Vortiegel* (*Pan*) which received the melted Minerals, let out into it at the bottom of the melting Furnace.

Their *Treibsheerth* or *Furnace of separating*, where the *Litharge* is driven which I saw here, is more like that described in *Agricola*, than those I saw in *Hungary*. Some of the Litharge is green: They wash the purest Ore, and such as is mix'd with Stones or Spars; and they have this peculiar here, That before they melt the Ore in the Melting Furnace, they burn the pounded and washed Ore on the *Roasting Hearth*, as they term it.

They make great work of the *Virgula divina* or *Forked Hazel*, * to find out the Silver Ore, or any other Treasure. I never saw them make use of it in the Mines of *Hungary*, where I was, but I took particular notice of the manner how they use it here; but as the same is amply described in some Books, and the same is better seen than represented at a distance, I will not enlarge further upon that subject. * *Virgula divina.*

The third Mine I visited was call'd the *Neckbreaker*, about 80 of our Fathoms deep: The Ore, it produces either Copper and Silver, or Silver and Lead, and sometimes all three; but they work only for Silver. I found the Mines cold as far as the Air could penetrate, but otherwise warm enough. Where they are at the deepest, they are full of damps; but that which troubles them most, is the Dust, which settles upon the Lungs and Stomachs of the Miners; They have excellent Engines to prevent the inconveniencies arising from the Water.

Here is also a rich Sulphur Ore, hard and stony, that withred spots being deemed the best. This is melted in a peculiar Furnace, to separate it from the Ore; some of which yields three pound of Sulphur out of 100 weight of Ore, which as it melteth, runs out of the Furnace into Water, or the Exhalations of the Ore are condensed in *Brimstone*, by the coldness of the surface of the Water, placed to receive it. It is purified again, by melting it once more. Some of this Brimstone Ore holds Silver, some Copper, but in small quantities.

The Remnants, after Sulphur is separated from the Ore, is reserved for a double use; either for the melting of Silver, or the making of *Vitriol*. In the first case, a certain proportion of it is cast into the Melting Furnace of the Silver, which, as the Miners term it, renders it the more fluid.

How they make Vitriol. In the making of *Vitriol* or *Copperose*, they take the Ore from which the Brimstone has been separated, and burn it over again, or let it continue to burn in the open Air, then putting it into a large Vessel, pour as much Water upon it as is requisite to imbibe the *Vitriol*, which Water being afterwards boiled to a certain consistency, is let out into Coolers, where the purest part of the Vitriol adheres to Sticks set in for that purpose, the rest setting at the sides and the bottom. It is observable, that the Ore, after it is deprived of its *Vitriol*, has not the least Vertue left in opening the Metals, and rendring of them fluid.

A description of the City of Freiberg. The City of *Freiberg* it self is of a circular Figure, surrounded with strong Walls; Its Streets are handsome, and so is the Market-place. The Elector's Palace is a very goodly Structure; it has five Gates. But what exceeds all the rest, is the Church of St. *Peters*, famous for the Monuments of many of the Ducal Family; among which, that of *Maurice*, Duke and Elector of *Saxony*, excels all the rest, being accounted the noblest in *Germany*, raised three Piles high of black Marble, with many fair Statues

The Tombs of the Electors.

Statues about it in Alabaster, and white Marble, which is the reason, that when this Town was surrender'd *October* the 5th, 1682, to the Emperialists, the Elector of *Saxony* paid 80000 Crowns to save the Tombs of his Predecessors, and the Robes, Jewels, Rings and other Ensigns of Honour, that were buried with them.

There were certain Vaults and subterraneous Passages from the Mines into the City, which are said to have been discover'd first 1189, since which time the Silver Mines at *Schneebergh*, *Annebergh* and *Joachims Dale*, have been found, *viz.* 1526.

After having taken a view of what I thought most curious in and about *Freiberg*, I travell'd by the way of *Waltheim* and *Coldick* to *Leipsick*, seated upon the River *Elster*, which having its source in *Voyteland*, passes by this City, and afterwards falls into the River *Sala*.

Leipsick.

It is a very rich and trading place, celebrated for its three Marts or Fairs every Year, when there is a great resort of Merchants from all parts. The Houses are generally stately Buildings, being for the most part six or seven Stories high. It has a Castle, but neither this nor the Town are well fortified.

The Church of St. *Nicholas* has the reputation of being one of the finest *Lutheran* Churches within.

This City is famous for three Battles fought near it in our Age; the (1) betwixt *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and Count *Tilly*, the Imperial General, 1631, in which the last were routed. The (2) some Years after, betwixt *Torstenson* the *Swedish*, and Arch-duke *Leopold William*, the Imperial General. The (3) about a League and a half from hence, near *Lutzen*, fought between the beforementioned King of *Sweden*, and *Wallenstein* Duke of *Friedland*, the Imperial General, in which the *Swedes* were again victorious, notwithstanding their King was slain before the beginning of the Battle, as he was going to take a view of the posture of the Enemy.

Virgula divina.

Its University.

There is also a good University at *Leipsick*, erected there whilst the Troubles were on foot in *Bohemia*, with the *Hussites*, when 2000 *German* Souldiers came hither at once from *Prague*.

From *Leipsick* I directed my Journey to *Magdeburg*, thro' a plain Country, betwixt the River *Sala* and *Elbe*, thro' *Landsbergh*, and near to *Petersdorff*, and so by the way of *Kochten* (the Residence of the Prince of *Anhalt*) to *Caln*, situate upon the River *Sala*, not far before it falls into the *Elbe*.

The Fichtelbergh.

Hereabouts is the *Fichtelbergh*, much celebrated for the Mines, Baths and Mineral Waters near it (of which *Bruschius* has given us a full description) and for those of four Rivers, running to the four different Quarters of the World, *viz.* The *Main* to the West, the *Nab* or *Nabus* to the South, the *Æger* to the East, and the *Sala* to the North, which four Rivers afterwards join their Stream with the three Capital Rivers of *Germany*, the *Danube*, the *Rhine* and the *Elbe*.

Magdeburgh.

Hence we pass'd thro' *Saltz* (noted for its Salt-springs) to *Magdeburgh*, seated upon the River *Elbe*. This City, which was in former Ages the Metropolitan City of *Germany*, but now under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, is of a very large circumference, but scarce half built, since it was destroyed by *Tilly*, the Imperial General, who put 36000 Persons there to the Sword. The Cathedral Church is a very fair Structure, built after the Model of our *English* Churches; by the Emperour *Otho* I. and his Empress *Editha*, the Daughter of our *English* King *Edmund*. Her Effigies in Stone, stands still in the Church, with eighteen Casks of Gold by her, which she gave thereto.

The *Lutheran* Churches are very handsome here, and their Jesuits very fine, as indeed they are in all other places where that Religion flourishes.

How they make Vinegar.

In the Cathedral Church of St. *Maurice*, I saw the Statue of the five Wise Virgins smiling, and the five Foolish Virgins lamenting, which were not ill done. Among the rest they shew'd several odd Relicks, *viz.* The Bason in which Pilate wash'd his Hands; and the Ladder whereon the Cock crow'd, after the denial of St. *Peter* of our Saviour.

A description of the City of Freiberg.

Among the Ruins of the Cloister of the *Austin Friars*, are still remaining *Luthers* Chamber, his Bedstead, and his Table; Upon the Door are certain *German* Verses, which translated into *English* are to this purpose:

> Luther *did lodge within this little Room,*
> *When first he did into the Cloister come;*
> *In memory whereof we still do keep*
> *The Bedstead upon which he us'd to sleep.*

At *Magdeburgh* I began to be sensible that I had left behind me the true purity of the *German* Language, for here you begin to hear another Dialect, generally call'd the *Lower Saxon Language*, spoken in all the *Northern* parts of *Germany*, at *Hamburg*, *Lubeck*, and other Cities in those parts. However People of fashion converse in *High Dutch*, and their Sermons are generally held, and Books written in the same Language.

The Turnaments of Germany.

The City of *Magdeburgh* is highly celebrated in *Germany*, as having been the first where the most famous Turnaments were instituted, in the Year 638, by the Emperor *Henry*, sirnamed the *Fowler*. The condition of these Turnaments or Exercises of Chivalry were, That none but of the ancient Nobility, no Bastard, no Usurper, no body attainted of High Treason, no Oppressour of Widows and Orphans, none born of Parents, whereof one was of ignoble extraction, no Heretick or Murderer, Coward, or who had given real offence to Ladies in Word or Deed, should be admitted into the List, and not above one of a Family at a time. Princes were to come attended with four Squires, Counts and Barons with three, a Knight with two, and a Gentelman with one. He that was desirous to enter the Lists, appear'd at the Presidents Lodgings, where his Name and Quality being registred in the presence of 3 *Heralds*, the Champion deliver'd unto them his Helmet and Sword, and after Confession entred the List, attended according to his Quality. Their Horses were to be without defect, their Furniture according to the rules prescribed for that purpose, and the Saddles without any rising behind or before. Having performed all manner of Exercises, they expected the sentence from the Judges, and he who had obtained the Prize, received it from the Hand of some Lady, or from the Prince that gave it.

But after these Pastimes had continued for some Ages, the same were aboliss'd upon very weighty Considerations, these Exercises having caused no small emulation among the Nobility, so that at the 23d Turnament, held at *Darmstadt*, 1473, this animosity rise to such a height between the Gentlemen of *Franconia* and those of *Hesse*, that seventeen of the former and nine of the latter remained dead upon the spot.

The Winter now coming on apace, I hastned my way to *Hamburg*, which I performed in the Stage Coach in four Days, taking our way through the Elector of *Brandenburgh* and the Dukes of *Lunenburgh*'s Territories. In this Road I took notice of many small Mounts of Earth, the ancient burial Monuments of Great Commanders; (which are also found in *England*) and sometimes rows of great Stones (not unlike those described in *Worm. Antiq. Dan.*) and in one place I saw three great massy Stones in the middle, in a large square, enclosed by other large Stones, set up on end.

Hamburgh.

The City of *Hamburgh* one of the greatest, richest, and perhaps the most populous Cities of *Germany*, is seated in a Plain, being well fortified after the modern way, yet are their works not faced with Stone.

Its Gates.

But the Territories belonging to it are of no great extent. It is divided into the *Old* and *New Town*; It has five Gates; The *Stone-gate*, which leads to *Lubeck*; the *Dike-gate*; the *Grass-Brook Gate*; The *Dome-Grate*, and the *Ellern* or *Altenaw* Gate, leading to *Altenaw*, a Town belonging to the King of *Denmark*. Their Buildings are very handsome, with very fine Entrances, and spacious Halls. The Senate House is a Noble Structure, beautified with the Statues of the nine Worthies.

Exchange.

The Exchange was then enlarging: It is celebrated for its fair Churches, and noble Steeples cover'd with Copper. The Church of St. *Catharine* has a noble Front, and round the Steeple you see a Crown well gilt. The Steeple of St. *Nicholas* is supported by great Globes gilt. The other great Churches are, the *Dome* or *Cathedral* Church, St. *Peter's*, St. *James's*, the Great and Less, St. *Michaels*, Churches in the *New Town*, besides several lesser ones, as of St. *Gertrude*, St. *John's*, St. *Mary Magdalen*, the *Holy Ghost*, the *Blue Coat Hospital Church*, and St. *Georges* in the Suburbs.

Churches.

Rivers.

The River or rather Lake call'd *Alster*, passes thro' it into the *Elbe*, which is just beyond the Town, join'd by another small River call'd the *Bilde*. The Tide passes daily twice thro' most of the great Streets, thro' Channels, tho' the City lies 18 Leagues distant from the Mouth of the *Elbe*.

As it is excellently well situate for Trading, so it abounds in Shipping; for besides its passage into the Ocean, it is but an easie Day's Journey from *Lubeck* on the *Baltick-Sea*, besides, that by the River *Elbe*, they carry on their commerce by Water with a great part of *Germany*, even as far as *Bohemia*. The conveniency of Trade drives many Foreign Merchants thither, among which the *English Company* enjoys great Privileges; it being computed that they vent there about 100000 Pounds worth of our Woollen Manufactory.

I left

I left *Hamburgh* the 10th of *December*, when embarking in an *Engliſh* Veſſel, we got that Day to *Stade*, upon the River *Zwingh*, which near it falls into the *Elbe*. It belongs now to the King of *Sweden*; and here it was the *Engliſh* Merchants reſided for ſome time, upon ſome diſcontent with the *Hamburgers*.

The Author's Voyage to London.

December the 11th, we paſs'd *Gluckſtadt*, ſeated upon the *Holſatian* ſhoar, and belonging to the King of *Denmark*: We caſt Anchor that Night at the Mouth of the River *Oaſt*, which ariſing in the Dutchy of *Bremen*, falls into the *Elbe*, a Mile from *Brunſbuttel*, on the oppoſite ſide of the *Holſatian* ſhoar.

December the 12th, we paſs'd *Cook*'s *Haven*, in hopes to reach the Sea that Night, but being becalmed at three in the Afternoon, were forced to caſt our Anchor again, between *Thick ſand* to the North, and *Newark* to the South, near a Light-houſe.

December the 13th, the ſtrong Wind forced us back to *Cook*'s *Haven*. I took the opportunity to go aſhoar, and took a view of the Caſtle, which belongs to the City of *Hamburgh*. It is a ſquare Fort with a double Ditch, and at high Tide, ſome Veſſels come up the Channel, which reaches up to the Fort, but at low Water it is dry. Both the Town and Caſtle are call'd *Reutzbuttel*, being not far from the *Lands-end*, and the Governour thereof, is always one of the Senate.

Within three Days after we ſet ſail again with a brisk N. E. Wind, for *England*, and ſcarce were we come out of the Mouth of the *Elbe*, but we got ſight of a certain ſmall Ille, belonging to the Duke of *Holſtein Gottorp*, call'd the *Holy Land*, which as it is very high, ſo it is a ſafe direction for Ships, eſpecially thoſe that come from Sea, without which they would be often at a loſs, by reaſon of the lowneſs of the ſhoar, near that Rivers Mouth. This Iſland, which is very ſmall, is reputed to have about 2000 Inhabitants, who live for the moſt part upon Fiſhing, and carrying Lobſters and other Sea-fiſh to *Hamburgh*, *London*, and *Quinborough*. We choſe the Main Sea that Night, but the next Day made nearer to the Shoar, and ſail'd in ſight of *Amelandt* and *Schelling*: and in the Evening diſcover'd the Lights at the *Vly* and *Texel*.

The next Day, having a fair Wind, we took down our Sails in the Evening, for fear of coming too near the *Engliſh* Shear in the Night time, and the next Morning diſcovered the *Northforeland*, and came the ſame Day to an Anchor in *Margaret* Road, and came ſafely aſhoar on *Chriſtmaſs* Day.

Now I muſt confeſs, that after I had taken ſo full a view of *Germany*, I found it quite different from the conceptions I had made of it my ſelf. For to ſpeak firſt of its Rivers, they are ſo noble and great, that they excel thoſe of *Italy* and *France*, it being certain that the *Po*, the *Arno*, *Garigliano*, and other Rivers of *Italy*, bear not the leaſt Proportion to them; and tho' *France* has four great Rivers, *viz.* The *Loire*, the *Seine*, the *Rhoſne*, and *Garonne*, as well has *Germany* has the *Danube*, the *Rhine*, the *Elbe*, and the *Weſer*, yet has *France* none that can come in compariſon with the *Danube* and *Rhine*. 'Tis true, *France* has many brave Cities and Seaports, yet does not come up in number of its Cities to *Germany*, and I much queſtion, whether it has any trading places, that exceed *Hamburgh*, *Lubeck*, *Dantzick*, *Bremen*, &c. Beſides which, the whole Country is full of Populous Towns, great Villages, ſtrong Caſtles, ſeats of Perſons of Quality, delicious Plains, Foreſts, and pleaſant Woods. Nay *Germany*, affords even under Ground, Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Tin, Lead, Quick-Silver, Antimony, Coal, Salt, Sulphur, Cádmia, &c. and it is full of the beſt Artificers, to work in them.

Add to this the eaſie converſation of the People, who are great lovers of Strangers, and honeſt in their dealing: The Women are generally well complexioned, of a ſober behaviour, faithful to their Husbands, and good Houſe Wives.

Beſides, that *Germany* affords an inexhauſtible ſtock of Men, they being naturally fruitful, they being not exhauſted by long Sea-Voyages and Engagements; and by Colonies ſent into far diſtant Countries; the only conſumption of Men they have being in the Wars; and if they have none at home, they will ſeek for it abroad, they being generally inclined to martial exploits; and Perſons of Qualty are always averſe to Trafficking.

To conclude, When I conſider the preſent condition of *Germany*, their great and populous Cities, with the ſtrength of their Fortifications, and the vaſt number of their publick and private magnificent Structures, and their civilized manner of living in them, and compare all this with the Character *Tacitus* gives of the ancient *Germans*, That they lived poorly, ſcattered, without Towns or Villages, ignorant of all Arts, and ſuch like, I can't but be pleaſed with the Expreſſion of a certain learned Perſon, tho' long ago, upon this Subject, That, if *Arioviſtus* and the other great Men of *Germany*, of thoſe times, ſhould ariſe out of their Graves, and take a full view of their Native Country, they would fancy themſelves to be in another World, and never acknowledge this for their own Country.

A Journey from Colen *in* Germany *to* London.

SEveral Gentlemen who accompanied their Excellencies the Lords Embaſſadours and Plenipotentiaries from his *Britannick* Majeſty to the Treaty of Peace at *Cologne*, 1673. having a curioſity to view ſome of the neighbouring Territories, but eſpecially the *Spra*, the Baths of *Aken*, &c. we ſet out the fourth of *July* from *Cologne*, towards *Juliers*, and upon the Road, overtook my Lord *Peterborough*, who was then returning from *Italy*, having been ſent to *Modena*, to bring over her Highneſs the preſent Dutcheſs of *York*.

We dined at a ſmall but wall'd Town, call'd *Berkem* (which ſome will have to be *Tiberiacum*) where being detain'd for ſome Hours to accommode an unlucky accident, that had befallen one of our Servants, who accidentally ſhot an Officers Horſe, we continued our Journey towards evening, thro' the Woods, and took up our Quarters at a place call'd the *Stone Street*, and the next Morning came to *Juliers*, ſeated upon the River *Roer*. It is ſmall but very ancient, being ſuppoſed to have been founded by *Julius Cæſar*, being called *Juliacum* by the *Romans*. It is very well fortified, its Streets are ſtrait, and the Houſes of Brick and well built. The Cittadel is fortified with four regular Baſtions, and the Piazza is very fair and ſpacious. Within the Cittadel is the Prince's Palace, this place being formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Juliers*, before this Country was united with *Cleve*, the laſt of which, together with the Country of *Mark*, is in the Poſſeſſion of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, as the Dukedoms of *Gulick* or *Juliers* and *Berg*, are under the juriſdiction of the Dukes of *Newburgh*.

Juliers.

Hence we continued our Journey to *Aken*, where we arrived the 5th of *July*. It is five Leagues diſtant from *Juliers* call'd in *Latin Aquiſgranum*, and by the *French Aix la Chapelle*, from a certain Chapel in the great Church, much frequented by Pilgrims. It owes its riſe to a certain noble *Roman* named *Granus*, who in the Year 53. coming into *Gallia Belgica*, diſcover'd ſome of the hot Springs, that are to be ſeen here to this Day; and built a Structure there after the manner of the *Roman Baths*, part of which the Inhabitants ſhew even now to Strangers, under the name of *Turris Grani*, being a very old Tower, at the Eaſt end of the Town Houſe, tho' the manner of its Building ſeems to contradict what they tell you of its Antiquity. Certain it is, that theſe Baths were named *Aquis Granis*, from its firſt diſcoverer, and the Town of *Aquiſgranum* flouriſh'd, till the ſame was laid waſt by *Attila* King of the *Huns*: It happened that *Charles* the Great riding a hunting that way 40 Years after, his Horſes Foot ſtruck into one of thoſe hot Springs, and he taking notice at the ſame time, of the Ruins of the ancient Buildings, was ſo much delighted with the place, that he gave immediate Orders for the repairing of thoſe Baths, built a Royal Palace near it, and order'd, that the King of the *Romans* ſhould be crown'd here with an *Iron Crown*, as they were with a Silver one at *Milan*, and one of Gold at *Rome*: He alſo built the Collegiate Church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; and the old or inward Wall of the City; And thus the City continued in a flouriſhing condition, till 882. when the *Normans* laid the whole Town and the Emperour's Palace in aſhes, ſince which time, tho' it was rebuilt, yet has it ſuffer'd conſiderable Loſſes by Fire, as in the Years 1146, 1224, 1236 and 1656. in the laſt of which, twenty Churches and Chapels, and 5000 Houſes were burnt.

Aken.

The Town-houſe is a noble Structure, of Free Stone, three Stories high, beautified with the Statues of the Emperours; The firſt and ſecond Storie is taken up with Chambers, but the higheſt of all is one entire Hall, 162 Foot long and 60 broad; where the Emperours keep their Coronation Feaſts: The Roof reſts upon four Pillars, thro' the concavities of which, the Smoak of all the Chimnies of the whole Building is conveyed away.

The Town Houſe.

For

For the rest, this Hall has divers rare pieces of Paintings, done by *Amisaga*, among which, that of the Resurrection, and another representing *Charles the Great*, giving the Charter to the City of *Aken*, are valued at a very high rate.

In the midst of the Market-place, directly opposite to the Town House, is a stately Fountain, remarkable both for its largeness, and workmanship, performed by a famous Artist *Gerard Coris*. It has four Springs, which running continually, empty themselves from above into a large Copper Cistern, of 30 Foot Diameter, whence it is again conveyed by six Pipes, into a Stone Cistern below, whence it is distributed thro' the Town.

A Statue of *Charles the Great*.

On the top of the Fountain, you see a large Brass Statue gilt over, of *Charles the Great*, in Armour, turning his Face towards *Germany*, and round the edges of the Brass Cistern, this following Inscription.

Hic aquis per Granum *Principem quendam* Romanum, Neronis & Agrippæ *fratrem inventis, calidorum fontium* Thermæ, *à Principio constructæ. Pestem verò per D.* Carolum *Magnum Imp. constituto ut locus hic sit caput & regni sedes trans* Alpes, *renovatæ sunt, quibus* Thermis *hic gelidus fons influxit olim quem nunc domum hoc æneo vase illustravit S. P. Q.* Aquisgranensis, *Anno Domini*, 1620.

In Churches.

The Church of our Lady, built by the said Emperour, is of a very odd Figure. The Steeple on the West end, has divers Pyramids about it, and a very large Globe and a Cross on the top.

From hence much higher than the Church, you see a Gallery, supported by a large Arch, reaching to the Cupolo, near the middle of the Church: At the East end there is another small Turret.

But the inside of the Church is very sumptuously adorned with Marble Pillars of several sorts, with Brass Pillars, gilded Statues, Brass Doors and Partitions, and much *Mosaick* work.

In the very middle of the Church (where formerly stood the Tomb of *Charles the Great*) hangs a Crown of a very large size, a Present of the Emperour *Frederick*; It is of Silver and Brass gilt, adorned with 16 little Towers, and 48 Silver Statues of a Foot high, and 32 lesser ones; Betwixt these stand 48 Candlesticks, in which they set up Candles upon their Festivals. I have seen several of those Crowns at *Colgne* and other places in the old Churches. The *Greeks* also have something like them, on which they hang the Pictures of their Saints, and the *Turks* hang in their Mosques their Lamps on Circles.

It was *Frederick*, who removed the Body of *Charles the Great*, and buried it again, part of it under the Altar of the Quire, in a Silver Copper, and the other part near the Wall of the Old Building, which he covered with the same Tomb Stone it had before, supposed by some to have been taken first of all from the Tomb of *Julius Cæsar*; being of white Marble, with the Figure of *Proserpina* upon it. At the removal of the Tomb of *Charles the Great*, many Relicks and Rarities were taken out of his Tomb, presented to him in his life time, by *Aron* King of *Persia*, and the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and others which are to be seen here to this Day. In this Church you see also the Monuments of the Emperour *Otho* I. in black Marble; under whose name the Elector of *Germany* hath his first rise about the year 1000.

Mines near *Aken*.

Near to *Aken* are found divers sorts of Minerals; Lead Ore, Sulphur and Vitriol Stone, Iron, Coal, and *Lapis Calaminaris*, or *Calmey*, as they call it.

When they are to make Brass, they take 100 Weight of it, 28 Pound of *Swedish* Copper, and the melted dross or *Schlacken*, as they term them, of both; of the last, they put first a certain quantity into very large *Crucibles*, and afterwards the Calmey and Copper, after they have stood in the Melting Furnace twelve Hours, they put eight Crucibles into one, and let what will run over, the metalick part sinking to the bottom; afterwards they cast it into Plates, in a Frame made of Stone, and bordered with Iron Bars.

A Description of the several Baths of *Aken*.

The hot Baths are much celebrated throughout *Europe*: Within the inward Wall are three, *viz.* The *Emperour's Bath*, the *Little Bath*, and St. *Quirinus* his *Bath*.

The first is in the same place, and the self same Spring, in which *Charles the Great* used to take so much delight, and to swim in it with his Nobles, sometimes 100 at a time: It is now divided into five Rooms, and the *Lesser Bath*, which is also taken out of it, into three more. These are reckoned to be *Nitro-Sulphureous*, and the Springs so hot, that they must let them cool twelve Hours, before they can use them. I saw in one of the Wells of these hot Springs, Brimstone of an Inch thick, Saltpeter and other petrefied Substances taken out. Besides these, there are without the inward Wall, but pretty near it, several other Baths, but not so hot as the former, being accounted *Sulphureo-nitrous*. Their smell is offensive to the Nostrils, and the Water not very clear. The first is St. *Cornelius's Bath*, (2) the *Rose Bath*, named after the Builder thereof, (3) The *Compus* or *Poor Man's Bath*; and another Fountain of warm Water, drunk frequently for Chronical Diseases.

There is a certain Bath, not above a Furlong from the City, named *Borset* or *Porcetum*, from the great number of Wild Boars found thereabouts formerly. Here are 28 Baths of Stone, fed by hot Springs on both sides of a little Rivulet; each of these Baths had commonly 50 Tuns of Water, which is very transparent and pleasant, having no ill smell; they are hotter than those within the City, which is the reason that they not only cool them 18 Hours, before they make use of them, but also stir the Water continually with a Wooden Instrument, pierced with many holes. They are for the most part square, about five or six Yards over, and are divided into fourteen Houses, each of which has two Baths: The (1) is call'd the *Lady's Bath*, (2) the *Snake*, (3) and (4) the *Sword*, (5) the *Golden Mill*, (6) the *Fool*, (7) the *Cock*, (8) the *Great Bath*, (9) the *Fountain*, (10) the *Crab*, (11) the *World Inverted*, (12) the *Glass*, (13) the *Angel*, and (14) the *Rose*. There is also another call'd the *Poor Man's Bath*; near it, in the open Air, and in the Street, another Fountain or Spring, as hot as any I have seen. It is further observable, that near those hot Springs in the City, are many cold ones, whereby the heat of the former might be much temperated, and those Baths, without any vast charge, made the most delightful in the World.

The Mines near *Limburgh*.

From *Aken* we went to *Limburgh*, to take a view of the Mine of *Lapis Calaminaris*, thereabouts, just over against the Castle of *Einenbergh*. I found this Mine about 18 Fathom deep, of an Oval Figure, and open like a *Chalk Mine*. The best *Calmey* they dig out of the deepest part from betwixt the Rocks, and were then digging in a very good *Vein* of eleven or twelve Foot thick. The Colour of this was of a dark yellow inclining to red, with some Veins of natural Brimstone. As the Veins of the *Lapis Calaminaris*, were dug very large, so they were dug over one anothers Head, making their works in the form of a pair of Stairs, one throwing up what the other digs below him, and so upward. Some of the Stone is brown inclining to black. The Engines belonging to this Mine are, (1) An *Over-shot Wheel*, in the Earth, designed for the moving of the Pumps; this is placed on one side of the Mine, and a passage cut out thence to the bottom of the Mine, by which it is drained. There is also another Passage or *Cuniculus*, cut thro' from the place where the Wheel is turn'd, which lets out of the Water which turns the Wheel, and conveys also the Waters which come from the Mine into an adjacent Valley. (2) The washing of the *Ore Stone*, which is done by letting the Water run over and stirring it. (3) The Manner of calcining the Ore (all our *Lapis Calaminaris* being calcined). They lay Faggots in a very handsome order, in a compass of about 40 or 50 Yards Diameter. Upon these they lay Char-coal very close, till they raise the whole a Yard from the Ground; then they lay ranks of the largest *Calmey Stones*, and the smaller by degrees; which done, they set fire to the bottom, which calcinates the Ore.

The City of *Limburgh*.

The City of *Limburgh* is seated upon a high Rock, surrounded almost with a River at the bottom. The Passage into the Town is upon the edge of a Rock on the North side: and the Town Gate, (over which stands the Governour's House) extends from one side of the Rock to the other, facing the Passage, which is of very difficult Access.

The *Spaa*.

In the Afternoon we travell'd to *Spaa*, a very fine Village in the Forest of *Ardenna*, situate in a bottom, enclosed with Hills, and to the N. with craggy Mountains, which makes it much exposed to sudden Water Floods. The Waters are not only drunk here upon the spot, but also transported into far distant places, sealed up in Bottles. Our Host told us, that he often sent them into *Spain*, and that he had at that time above 30000 Bottles empty, which he was to fill the next fittest Season, which is either the hottest time of the Summer, when it is very dry, or the hardest Frost in Winter.

A Description of its Mineral Springs.

The Mineral Fountains chiefly in request here, are call'd, *Geronster*, *Sweinere*, *Tomelet*, and *Pohunt*.

Geronster is in the midst of a thick Wood, about two *English* Miles to the South of *Spaa*; being the best kept, and built up with Stone, with a Pavillion over it, resting upon four Stone Pillars. There is a green Plat, cleared

The Town House.

ed from the Wood just by it, and a little edifice, for the Patients to warm themselves in, in the working or in cold weather. This Spring has a strong sulphureous Smell, and causes vomiting in some, but Works by Urine chiefly, as do all the rest. The Sediment at the bottom of the Well is light blue, but without of a dirt Colour. There is another such Spring in the same Wood, but is not built.

Saviniere, the second Spring, lies as far to the East, being built in the shape of a Tower, but the Waters are not so strong as the former.

There is also here another Fountain much of the same nature, but believed to be a peculiar remedy against the Gravel and Stone.

(a) In his *Spadacrene.*

The third is call'd *Tonnelet*, arising in a Meadow, and done up with Stone. (a) *Henricus Van Heers*, says, it contains more nitre than the rest, and is very cold in the Mouth and Stomach.

The fourth of these Springs, which is in the middle of the Village, is call'd *Pohunt*. This is the Fountain which supplies most of the Foreign Parts with Water, unless some other be desired; and is beautified with very good Stone Work, by the Bishop of *Liege* (under whose Jurisdiction it is) with this Inscription.

Obstructum reserat, durum terit, humida siccat
Debile fortificat, si tamen arte bibis.

From the *Spaa*, we took a turn to *Franchimont*, and passing thro' a Wood, came to an old Castle, near which are very good Sulphur and Vitriol Works, both in the same *Ore*; which I presume may be two of the principal Ingredients in the *Spaa Waters*.

We saw here how they cast the Brimstone into great Vessels, the clearest and purest part remaining upon the top and middle, and the thick drossy part settling and adhering to the bottom and sides, which commonly goes under the Name of *Sulphur Vivum*, after which, they did cast it into Rolls. Near it is a great heap of the burnt *Pyrites*, from whence the Sulphur has been drawn, and the dross of the Vitriol, which fermenting in time, grows hot and burns at last without intermission, appearing at a distance like a burning Hill.

From *Spaa*, we cross'd over to *Frapont*, a Village upon the *Ura*, or *Ourte*, from whence we went down that River in Boats, having a very pleasant prospect of variety of green Hills, and part of the Forest of *Ardenna*, and passing 30 or 40 small Water Falls in Boats made for that purpose, entred the pleasant River *Vesa*, or *Wesdert*, which carried us into the *Maes* near *Liege*, by their Inhabitants call'd *Luick*, and by the *Latines*, *Leodium*, or *Augusta Eburonum*. Many are of opinion, that it was in the Valley near this City, where the two *Roman Legions* under *Sabinus* and *Cotta*, were destroyed by *Ambiorix*, General of the *Eburones* in *Cæsar*'s time. Its situation is upon the *Maes*, which dividing here into two Branches, makes divers small Islands; and as the other small Rivers are join'd hereabouts with the *Maes*, this affords great plenty of Fish to the Inhabitants of this City, which is very populous. *Liege.*

Its Churches are fair, and most of the Convents stately built, and have great Revenues, in which it exceeds most other places in those parts.

The Bishop's Palace. The Bishops Palace is a very noble Structure. The Cathedral is dedicated to St. *Lambert*, Bishop of *Maestricht*, from whence the Body of that Saint, and the Bishop's See, were together translated to *Liege*. The Church is built of a red Stone, and has abundance of good Carving about it. The Canons of this Church are very rich and powerful.

Churches. Among the Parish Churches, those of St. *John* and of St. *Servasius* excel the rest, as among the Abbies, that of St. *James* within, and that of St. *Laurence* without the Town.

The *English Jesuits* have also a College here, with handsome Gardens, as also an *English* Nunnery. In the Church of the *Williamites*, you see the Burying place of Sir *John Mandeville*, our Country Man.

Chimes and Bells. Their Bells and Chimes are suitable to the fairness of their Churches. The Cathedral has eight great Bells, and twelve lesser, and one of them requires 24 Men to ring it. In the Church of St. *Paul*, of *S. Lawrence*, and the *Crossed Friars*, they have also very good Chimes. Here is also an University very famous in former ages. Their Speech here and at the *Spaa*, is commonly call'd *Roman*, being a kind of obsolete *French* mix'd with corrupt *Latin*, yet many here speak good *French*. They have here some Vineyards, but the Wine is very small; and some Quarries of Stone; they also abound in Pit-coal, and have some Mines, the Pumps of which are worth making notice of, being moved by Wheels at a considerable distance thence, being continued by certain Wood Work, moving backward and forward continually. The Cittadel is very strong, and built upon a Hill; 1649 upon occasion of some Differences betwixt the Bishop and the City, which cost the *Burgermaster*, *James Hennes* his Head.

It has very handsome Bridges, that over the *Maes* being very broad, and sustain'd by very large Arches.

Going from *Liege* to *Maestricht* by Water, we pass'd by the Castle of *Argentau*, seated upon a high Rock on the right side of the River, and afterwards by *Navagne*, a strong Fort on the *Maes*, belonging both to the *Spaniards*; and not long after came to *Maestricht*. This Town being lately taken by the *French*, they had a Garrison of 10000 Men in all, and we saw in the Market place about 200 Field-pieces. We were shew'd a Draught of all the Works, Approaches, and Attacks by Colonel *Storff*, and saw also the Half-Moon, which the Duke of *Monmouth* retook, after the *French* had been several times beaten out of it. It had a great many Out-works *Maestricht.*

The famous Quarries of Stones near it. Not above a quarter of a Mile from *Maestricht*, is that noble Quarry of Stone, which may compare with any in the World, far exceeding the Cave of *Custoza* or *Cubola*, betwixt *Padoua* and *Vincenza*, which is reckoned 700 Fathoms long, and 500 broad. We went into it and found the Roof very high and lofty, sustain'd by Pillars which were numberless, for two Miles under ground, resembling the intricate *Labyrinth*, and yet uniform in all its parts, the Floor being all in a level, and the Roof very near of the same height in all places. We came out again not far from a certain Convent, upon the very Banks of the River.

The next Day some of our Company returned by *Aken* to *Cologne*, and I with the rest of our Company, went back to *Liege*, to take the Conveniency of the Coach for *Brussels*.

Tongres. After we had left *Liege*, we pass'd by *Tongres* or *Tungrorum oppidum*, which for its Antiquity, challenges the preference before any in those parts, being a strong place, before the coming of *Cæsar* into *Gaul*, and being made afterwards a *Roman* Station, grew so powerful, that *Attila*, the King of the *Huns*, destroyed 100 Churches here, being then a Bishops See, which was 498. removed to *Maestricht*. Here are to be seen many old Coins and other Antiquities, and amongst the rest the Ruins of an old Chapel, said to have been built by St. *Maternus*, a Disciple of St. *Peter*.

We lodged the next Night at St. *Truyen*, and dined the Day after at *Tilmont*, upon the River *Geet*, a City formerly of great note in *Brabant*, but decayed long ago. Near the Walls of this place are three remarkable Sepulchral Eminencies, reputed to be the ancient Tombs of great Commanders. We saw many more of them hereabouts, as we pass'd thro' the Country.

Louvain. We reach'd *Louvain*, in the Evening: It is an ancient City of *Brabant*, of a pleasant situation upon the River *Dela*: Its Circuit is reckoned to be four *English* Miles, but as there are many Hills, Gardens, nay whole Fields in the Town, so it is very delightful, but scarce defensible. Its Buildings both private and publick, but especially the Convents and Churches, are good Edifices; among which the noble Church of St. *Peter*, the Convent of the *Carthusians*, the Hospital and Senate-house, excels the rest.

Its University. Its University is famous thro' all *Europe*, they account its beginning from the Year 926, but its true establishment must be deferr'd to 1425. when *John* IV. Duke of *Brabant*, endowed it, and *Pope Martin* confirm'd it. This University is under the Tuition of a Rector, who is in great Authority here; it has produced a great number of learned Men. There are no less than 43 Colleges in it, the four chiefest are call'd *Lilium*, *Falco*, *Castrum*, *Porcus*. *Goropius Becanus*, a native of *Brussels*, makes its situation to exceed all other Universities of *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, and *Germany*, upon which head I will only add, That as *Oxford* may compare with it for its pleasant Situation, so neither the Buildings of their Colleges, nor their Endowments, can stand in Competition with those of our Universities.

From this place to *Brussels*, we travell'd for the most part within sight of the high Steeple of St. *Rombald's* Church at *Mechlin*; and thence, taking our way over *Antwerp*, we pass'd thro' a fruitful plain Country, well planted with Trees, to *Ghent*, or *Gandavum*.

Ghent. This City is not only the biggest in *Flanders* and the *Low Countries*, but also claims a rank among the largest of *Europe*, but is of late Years not a little decreased from its former Greatness. It has many fair Convents, and the *Jesuits* deserves to be reckoned among the best.

The

The *English* Nuns have also a Convent here. The Cathedral is a noble Building, and the Steeple very high: The Market places are all fair and large, and in one of them you see a noble gilded Statue of *Charles* V. Emperor, and King of *Spain*, who was born here. The Houses are generally well built, and the Streets very clean: As the Inhabitants have often been guilty of Sedition, so it was they that first put the *Spaniards* upon the Invention of building Cittadels, this being the first that was erected in *Europe*, and that by *Charles* V. It is but a small Circuit, and the Bastions of no extraordinary size; so, that tho' it be regular, yet does it not come near to the Perfection of many that have been built of late Years.

The Statue of *Charles* the Great.

Bruges. We continued our Journey from *Ghent* by water to *Bruges* (20 *English* Miles from thence) a very fair and large City, and once a place of considerable Trade, being not above three Leagues from the Sea. It is pretty well fortified, but the Works are of Earth only; the Ditches very deep. It has a considerable number of Convents, and artificial Cuts on all sides, to facilitate the Passage thither by Water, among which, that leading to *Ostend*, is now designed to be made capable of carrying Ships of a considerable burthen up to the City.

Ostend. *Ostend*, (the only Sea-port besides *Newport* the *Spaniards* are Masters of in *Flanders*) is not above ten *English* Miles from *Bruges*, seated upon the Sea-shoar: As this is the most considerable Harbour of the two, so the *Spaniards* have almost let the Sea in, round the Town of late, and are now enlarging the Harbour, and by means of a great Lock or Receptacle of Water, are endeavouring to carry over their Ships into a Canal, leading from *Ostend* to *Bruges*, which if well finish'd, would be of great Advantage to the Commerce of the *Low-Countries*. The Situation of the Town is low, yet are the Streets broad, straight and uniform.

Newport. We travell'd from *Ostend* to *Newport*, along the Sea-shore: This is also but low built, but the Streets are fair and large; we saw a great number of small Ships in the Harbour. Near this place it was, where the *English* twice have signalized their Valour in our age; The first time at the Battle of *Newport*, fought 1604. betwixt *Archduke Albert* and Count *Maurice*, wherein the *Spaniards* were put to the rout, and the Honour of the Day was chiefly attributed to the Valour of the *English* under Sir *Francis Vere*: And the second time at the Battle fought not far from hence, at a place call'd the *Sandhils*, betwixt part of the *English* and *French* Army, that had besieged *Dunkirk*, and the *Spanish* Forces which came to its relief, in which the latter likewise lost the Day.

Gravelin. We set sail from *Newport* for *England*, but the Wind proving so very strong against us, we were forced to put in at *Gravelin*, (where there is only one Wooden Fort now above the Water-mark) having in our Passage had the opportunity of observing the vast multitude of Sand-banks, which lay scattered all along the Coast.

Dunkirk. Coming to *Dunkirk*, we found it considerably encreased from what it had been a few Years before, the King of *France* (who knows the consequence of this place) having spared no Money or any thing else, that might render it almost impregnable. The Cittadel begun then by the *English*, whilst they were Masters of it, was then very near finish'd, having on one side the Sea, on the other the Haven, and to the Land side the *Downs*. They had then also begun divers great Works, without the old Fortification of the Town, encompassing so large a piece of Ground, as makes the place near as big again as it was before. In this part are the *English* Nunnery, and most of their best Buildings. Were the Harbour as deep as it is large, it might be compared to some of the best upon the Ocean, but as it is dry at low Water, and there are a great many Sands at its entrance, it is not capable of receiving Ships of any great bulk.

Graveling. We went from *Dunkirk* to *Graveling*, which has good Fortifications, but of Earth only; a goodly Church, broad Streets, but low Houses, and but ill inhabited.

From hence I travell'd to *Calais*, where taking the conveniency of the Pacquet Boat in the Morning, we sail'd in a few Hours to *Dover*, and arrived safely the same night in *London*.

A Journey from Venice *to* Genoa.

HAving some few Years since travell'd thro' the Countries betwixt *Venice* and *Genoa*, where I had the opportunity of making peculiar Observations, not only of their fruitfulness, but also of many rare Antiquities, as everlasting Monuments of the many remarkable Actions performed in former Ages in these parts. The grateful remembrance of those Varieties, could not but induce me to lay hold of the Opportunity of this second Impression to annex this short account.

From *Venice* we travell'd to *Padua* by Water, up the River *Brent*, having many Summer Seats and Palaces on both sides. We entred the River near *Lizafusina*, five Miles from *Venice*, where formerly Vessels used to be carried into the River by an Engine, the *Venetians* having many Years ago stopp'd up the Mouth of the *Brenta*, for fear, that by the continual descent of the Water, the Channel might be quite exhausted, or at least rendred unserviceable; but of late they have contrived four large *Sostegni* or Locks *viz.* at *Stra*, *Dolo*, *Mira* and *Moranzan*, by which the Vessels are brought in between two Gates, and the Water let in or out, according as occasion requires.

Padua. The Key or Landing place at *Padua*, is faced for a considerable space along the River side with Stone Steps, as in most Cities of the *Low Countries*. The outward Wall is well fortified after the modern way, the Rivers *Brenta* and *Bacchiglione*, serving for a Ditch. The inward Wall has scarce any thing remarkable, except the Antiquity of its Name, being call'd *Antenor*'s Wall, after its Founder. This Wall enclos'd a far less space of Ground than the former, *Padua* having (like *Aix la Chapelle*) one Town within another.

Its Antiquity. *Padua* or *Patavium*, places its Origin as far as the Destruction of *Troy*, which that it was the Opinion of the ancient Writers, is evident among others out of *Livy*, who in the very beginning, makes this the Foundation Stone of his History. That *Antenor*, after the taking of *Troy*, brought a considerable number of the *Heneti*, lately driven out of *Paphlagonia*, to the bottom of the *Adriatick* Gulph, and having driven out the *Eugenians*, who inhabited between the Sea and the *Alpes*, setled a Colony of the *Trojans* and *Heneti* in those Countries.

Martial addressing himself to *Flaccus*, a *Padoan* Poet, calls him,

Flacce Antenorei spes & Alumne Lari.

And *Virgil* introduces *Venus*, thus expostulating with *Jupiter*.

Quem das finem, Rex magne, malorum?
Antenor potuit, mediis elapsus Achivis,
Illyricos penetrare sinus, atque intima tutus
Regna Liburnorum, & fontem superare Timavi;
Unde per ora novem vasti cum murmure montis
It mare præruptum, & pelago premit arva sonanti:
Hic tamen ille urbem Patavi, sedesque locavit
Teucrorum, & genti nomen dedit, armaque fixit.

In most ancient times, Navigation being but then in its infancy, the Mariners, who were not forward to go without sight of Land, if possibly they could avoid it; *Antenor*, who was obliged to keep along the Coast of *Peloponnesus* and *Epirus*, and so by the *Illyrian* and *Liburnian* Shoars, which are very unsafe by reason of the many small Bays, fill'd with many Rocks and small Islands, whereas had they cross'd over the *Italian* Coast, they might have made a much better and more pleasant Voyage, along an even, bold Shoar.

The Inhabitants of *Padua* are to this Day so much delighted with the thoughts of the supposed Founder, that they preserve still the Tomb of *Antenor*, which at present is to be seen near the Church of St. *Lawrence*; and in all their publick Shows, they will scarce ever neglect to introduce something of the ancient *Troy* and its Heroes. I saw here a Wooden Horse of about twenty Foot high, which they kept in remembrance of the famous old *Trojan* Horse, tho' in its bulk it did not approach to the Original.

Padua had of ancient times the reputation of adhering to the *Roman* Interest, in their Wars against the *Galli Senones*, the *Umbrians*, *Boians*, *Insubres*, *Cimbrians* and *Carthaginians*, till it was destroyed by Fire and Sword by *Attila*, King of the *Huns*, and being afterwards rebuilt by *Narses*, General to the Emperour *Justinian*; it was

forced to undergo the same fate a second time, by the fury of the *Langobard* Princes. The *Padouans* ow'd their Second Restauration to the Emperor *Charles* the *Great*, so that for some Ages they not only flourished, but also grew very powerful, having under their jurisdiction, *Vicenza*, *Verona*, *Trent*, *Treviso*, *Feltre*, *Belluno*, *Ceneda*, with many other places, till at last the *Venetians* 2405 having found means to size upon this City, and having kill'd *Francisco Novello*, their Governour, and his Son of the Family of the *Carraresi*, (who had ruled there for many Years before) secured themselves in the Possession thereof, which they maintain to this Day.

Its Buildings. *Padoua* has many noble Structures both publick and private, most of its Streets having very fair Portico's or Cloisters on each side, to serve as a defence against the Sun and Rain, like our Houses in the Piazza of *Covent Garden*; many of their private Houses are painted on the out side in *Fresco*, and their Churches very stately built and well adorned. The Cathedral Church is a large Structure, in the middle of the City, in which lies interr'd the Body of *Berta*, Empress to the Emperor *Henry* IV. who bestowed such considerable Endowments upon it, that its Yearly Revenues does amount now to 160000 Crowns *per Annum*. In this Church are preserved, (besides the Monuments of many eminent Persons) the Body of St. *Daniel*, of Cardinal *Pileo da Pratta*, and of Cardinal *Francisco Zabarella*.

St. Anthony's Church. The Church of S. *Anthony* of *Padoua*, is famous for the many Pilgrimages made thither, the Exquisite Design, artificial carving in Marble, and the stately Quire with all its rich Ornaments, renders it a very compleat piece of Workmanship: It has no less than six Cupola's, which make up the Cover of the Church, being cover'd on the top with Lead: But the Chapel of St. *Anthony* has a rich and most noble Roof, sustain'd by twelve Marble Pillars, betwixt each of which you see the Miracles of this Saint, whose Body is interr'd under the Altar, upon which stand seven Statues made by that famous Statuary of *Padoua*, *Titian Aspetti*, and behind the Altar there is a most excellent *Basso relievo*, done by *Sansovinus*, *Tullius Lombardus* and *Campagna Veronensis*. The Chapel of St. *Felix*, is directly opposite to that of St. *Anthony*, his Tomb, of coloured Marble, is very artificially wrought, and the whole beautified with Paintings, done by the famous *Giotto*.

The Relicks shown here, are the Tongue and Chin of St. *Anthony*; a Cloth dipp'd in our Saviour's Blood; three Thorns of his Crown; and a piece of Wood of the Holy Cross; some of the Hair and Milk of the Virgin *Mary*, and some of the Blood of St. *Francis*. Just before the Front of this Church, you see a noble Brass Statue on Horse-back, representing that great *Venetian* General *Gattemela*.

The Convent and Church of Benedictins. As the Convent of the Black Fryars of St. *Benedict* is not inferiour to any in *Italy*, so their Church, dedicated to St. *Giustina* (a Virgin Martyr under *Maximianus*, and the Daughter of *Vitaliene*, of this City) may compare with most in *Europe*. In this Church, (built by *Palladio*) there are preserved (as they say) the Body of St. *Luke* the Evangelist, of St. *Matthias* the Apostle; of two of the Innocent Children; of *Prosdocimus* the first Bishop of *Padoua*, who converted these Countries to the Christian Faith; of *Maxentius* the second Bishop, and of St. *Giustina*. In a very fair Burying place on the South side of the Church, you see a round old red Marble Stone, upon which they tell you, many Martyrs Heads were cut off; and near it a curious white Marble Well, call'd the *Martyrs Well*, whither the People flock in heaps to perform their Devotions. The Front of this Church looks into a spacious place, call'd *Prato della Valle*, where the Gentlemen take the *Tour-ala-mode* in the Evenings in their Coaches.

The Church of St. *Austin*, a very handsome Structure, is built in the same place, where in ancient times stood the Temples of *Juno*: It contains several Tombs of the Family of *Carrara*, of *Charlotta*, Daughter to *James* King of *Cyprus*, and of the noted Philosopher *Petrus Aponensis*.

Il Ponte Molino, where are no less than thirty Water Mills, and the *Castello delle munitioni*, are worth a curious Traveller's observation. *La Corte del Capitanio*, formerly the Palace of the *Carraresi*, is another Structure, and the *Palazzo della Ragione*, where they keep their Courts of Justice, very spacious, beautiful, and artificially built of Marble, with rows of Pillars without, and adorned within with Heads and Inscriptions for many eminent Persons of this City. Its length is 256 Foot, and the breadth 86, having no Pillar or any other support in the middle.

The University of *Padoua*, acknowledges the Emperor *Frederick* II. for its Founder 1220. The Schools, which are handsome and large, are built in one Quadrangle, with a double row of Pillars, one above and one below; here is also a very fair Anatomical Theatre. The Physicians Garden is spacious, wall'd in, and well stor'd with Plants. The Prefects thereof, have been Men of great Fame, as *Aloysius Cadella*, *Aloysius Anguillara*, *Melchior Guilandinus*, *Jacobus Antonius Cortusus*, *Prosper Alpinus* and *Johannes Vesslingius*. Its University.

The *Arena*, or ancient Amphitheater of *Padoua*, is one of the most remarkable Antiquities that can be seen; the *Arena*, and the whole *Podium*, being preserved entire and free, but of the Arches some Remnants are only to be seen backwards in the Gardens of that noble Palace, the Front whereof looks directly into the open Amphitheater; this Palace, which is a portion of an Oval Figure, being built at one end of it, so, as that the whole *Area* or *Arena*, serves for a Court to it, the Entrance whereof being directly at the end opposite to the Houses; The noblest Court-yard that can be beheld with Eyes, as being the spacious Plain or *Arena* of an Ancient *Roman* Amphitheater, and the Wall thereof, an high entire noble *Podium*, the like perhaps the World can't produce any where else at this Day; for, to confess the truth, of all the Ruins and Remainders of twelve ancient Amphitheaters, which I have seen, there is not one that can compare with this. The Amphitheater at *Doue* in *Poictou*, which is cut out of the Rock, is not near so large; besides, that part of the bottom being fill'd up, the *Podium* and its Beauty is not so apparent to the Eye; the same defect being also to be observed in that of *Nizza*, near the River *Varus*, and that at *Puzzuolo*; and that at *Nismes* being fill'd with Houses, the upper Seats are only visible; and as for the Amphitheaters of *Bourdeaux*, *Xaintes*, *Arles*, *Garigliano*, that at *Rome*, near the Church of St. *Croce* in *Gierusalemme*, and several others, are so much ruined, that nothing of this kind is to be expected. Nay, even about the *Arena* at *Verona*, and the great *Colosseo*, or *Domitian's* Amphitheater at *Rome*, the Ground is now so high, that the *Podium* is either buried, or at least much disfigured. But as the *Padoua* Amphitheater can boast of its entire *Arena*, so it is wanting in all the rest; so that he who now-a-days desires to form to himself a true *Idea* of these noble ancient Structures, must see many, and by joining them together, make the best estimate he can, of the Figure, Proportion and Dimensions of these old *Roman* Structures. The Amphitheater of Padoua.

The Walls of *Padoua* afford a most pleasing Prospect into a plain Country, to the N. E. and S. and of the *Euganean* Hills to the W. which have great rarity of Plants, and a great number of Vipers. A few Miles hence are the hot Baths of *Abano*, and the Mineral Waters of *Monte Ortone*; but what most delighted us, was the Country Seat of the Marquis of *Obizzi*, a well designed Structure, accommodated with a good Armory, a Theater for Plays, handsome Stables, and a Tennis Court, and adorned with noble Painting, both within and without, by that great Master *Paulo Veronese*.

According to the Computation of the *Padouans*, their City had then stood, since its first Foundation, 3785 Years.

From *Padoua* we travell'd for 18 Miles thro' a fertile Country to *Vicenza*, a place well worth the Observation of Travellers. Here the famous Architect *Palladius* has shown his utmost skill in the *Rotunda*, in imitation of the *Pantheon* at *Rome*, in the Altar, and other Structures of this place. The two Arches, one near the Gate, behind which there is a noble ascent to St. *Maria del Monte*, and another in *Campo Martio*, are also very remarkable. The *Piazza della Signiora*, where the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is a great number here) meet in the Evenings, is the most beautiful and spacious place, much beautified by that noble Front of the *Palazzo della Ragione*, of the *Capitania's* Palace, and the Buildings of the *Monte della Pieta*, where Money is lent to the Poor without Interest. In this Piazza they also perform the Exercises of Tilting and Turnaments. Vicenza.

Most of the Inhabitants of this City subsist upon Silk-weaving, but it is of a considerable strength, by reason of the several Hills near it.

The Annual Revenue of the Bishoprick of *Vicenza*, is reckoned worth 12000 Ducats. In the Cathedral are, besides other Reliques, kept the Bodies of *Carpophorus* and *Leontius*, Martyrs of this place: But the Thorn, said to be one of our Saviour's Crown, given by St. *Lewis* King of *France*, to *Bartholomew Briganza*, a Native and Bishop of *Vicenza*, is preserved in the Church of St. *Corona*, belonging to the *Dominicans*.

The City of *Vicenza* or *Vincentia*, stands upon the River *Bacchiglione*, is watered by the *Rerone*, or *Erotinus*, and has, besides the two little Brooks call'd *Astichello* and *Seriola*,

Seriola near it, which proves no small addition to its pleasant and convenient Situation. The General opinion is, that it was foundod by the *Galli Senones*, under the Reign of *Tarquinius Priscus*, tho' not a few Authors deduce its Origin from the ancient *Tuscans*, who were driven out by the *Gauls*. These having yielded to the *Romans*, it remain'd in their Possession till *Attila* plundered it. Afterwards it fell into the Hands of the *Ostrogoths*, and after them of the *Lombards*, till *Desiderius*, the last King of the *Lombardian* Race, being taken Prisoner by *Charles the Great*, his Successours enjoy'd the Possession thereof, till at last it set up for a free City; but being afterwards taken and burnt by the Emperor *Frederick*, they had several Masters, the *Padouans*, the *Veronese*, and at last *Giovanni Galeazzo Visconte*, the first Duke of *Milan*, whose Relict the Dutchess *Catharine* having, after her Husband's death, absolved them from their Allegiance, the *Vicentines*, after various Deliberations, whether they should unite with the *Switzers*, or submit to the Protection of the *Venetians*, chose the last, which is the reason that they enjoy greater Immunities than any of the other Cities under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction in those parts.

Verona. Leaving *Vicenza*, we travell'd to *Verona*, a fair, ancient, large, and populous City, six Miles in compass; pleasantly situate upon the River *Aiche*, or *Etsche*, *Athesis*, *Adige*, or *Adice*, and well built, having many handsome Churches, and stately Convents, besides many other publick and private Buildings. It is now strongly fortified by the *Venetians* with large Bastions, and defended by three Castles, two upon the Hill, and one by the River side.

The Adige. The *Athesis*, or *Adige*, is a noble River, which having its Scource among the high *Rhætian Alps*, and passing thro' the *Vallis Venusta*, and so by *Trent*, with various Windings runs thro' the City of *Verona*, and after having pass'd the Fens of the *Po*, exonerates it self into the *Adriatick Sea*. *Hermannus Cruserius*, *Gulielmus Xylander*, the Bishop of *Auxerres*, and divers other Translaters of *Plutarch*, are of opinion, that the *Cimbrians* made their irruption by the sides of this River, and that *Catulus* lay encamp'd along this River, to stop their further Progress; nay, some make mention of a Triumphal Arch erected at *Verona*, in honour of *Caius Marius*, after his Victory obtain'd over the *Cimbrians*: They say, that *Catulus* the Consul, and Collegue, with *Caius Marius*, finding it dangerous to defend the Passages of the *Alps* against the *Cimbrians*, posted himself near the River *Adige* or *Athesis*, where having strongly entrenched himself on both sides of the River, he order'd a Bridge to be made to maintain a Free Communication with his Forces; but the *Cimbrians*, to shew their Strength and Courage, marched naked thro' the Ice and Snow, and climbing for sports sake, up to the top of the Mountains, would with their broad Shields laid under their Bodies, slide down thence, and when they had pitch'd their Camp at a small distance from the River, pull'd up, Giant like, the Roots of great Trees. and throwing in heaps of Earth, and vast pieces of Rocks, to turn the Course of the River, *Plutarch.* and having at last found means to beat down the *Roman* Bridge, by huge massy Floats, the *Roman* Souldiers left their Camp and fled. But notwithstanding this circumstantial Account, it is doubted by many, whether they entred *Italy* by the sides of this River; for *Plutarch* himself does not call that River near which the *Cimbrians* did these Feats, the *Athesis*, but τὸν Ἄτισιν ποταμὸν, the River *Atiso* or *Tosa*, which is far distant from any part of the *Athesis*, and arising in the *Alps*, falls into the *Lago Maggiore*, or *Lacus Verbanus*, being next to the River *Lesia* or *Lestis*, which passing by *Vercelli*, falls afterwards into the *Po*. Add to this, that when *Becrix*, King of the *Cimbrians*, challeng'd the *Roman* General, to appoint the time and place for a Battel, *Caius Marius* sent them word, that in three Days after he would meet them in the Plains of *Vercelli*, where they might determine the matter in an open Field, and where he gave a fatal overthrow to one of the greatest Armies that ever invaded *Italy*. This seems to be sufficient to shew that this vast swarm of *Cimbrians*, or at least the greatest part of them entred *Italy*, by the way of Mount *Sampion* or *Mons Sempronius*, where the River *Atiso* takes its rise; besides, that the Description given by *Plutarch* of their sliding down such high Precipices, does not so well agree with the Passage into *Italy* by *Trent*, as with the terrible Account given us by Mr. *Raymund*, and Mr. *Lassels*, of the ill Passage betwixt *Briga* and *Domo*, over Mount *Sampion*.

By which way the *Cimbrians* entred *Italy*.

The four beautiful Bridges of *Verona* are no less Ornaments than the River *Adige* is a conveniency to this City: *Verona*, tho' esteem'd very ancient, yet is to this Day ignorant as to its Founder, or the exact time of its first rise: Certain it is, that *Verona* was a place of good Strength, in the time of the Civil Wars of the *Romans*; for it sided with *Cæsar* against *Pompey*, with *Augustus* against *M. Anthony*, with *Vitellius* against *Vespasian*, and long after defended it self bravely against *Constantine*. The Emperor *Galienus* knowing the importance of this place, by reason of its situation in the Jaws of the *Alps*, commanded its Fortifications to be strengthned with great care.

Theodoric Amalus, that great King of the *Goths*, much amplified and adorned it afterwards; and the Emperor *Charles the Great*, and his Son *Pipin*, made it the chief City of *Italy*.

In latter times *Albertus Scaliger*, brother to *Mastinus Scaliger*, the first Soveraign Lord of *Verona*, enlarged and fortified *Verona*, unto which the *Venetians* have added large Bastions, faced with Brick. A short Description of *Verona*.

For the rest, this City is both convenient and beautiful; the Piazza is a stately Oblong Square, the Streets spacious, and part of the Town built upon a Plain, part upon Hills, affords a more delightful prospect at a distance, not unlike *Lyons* in *France*. It has many goodly Structures; among which, the Palace and Gardens of Count *Augustin Giusto*, deserves particularly to be remembred; in this I saw the Aloe Plant in Stem and Seed, the Stalk being twenty Foot high.

The Churches are generally very beautiful, but that of St. *Anastasius* exceeds the rest; the Cathedral, and several others are very ancient. This City having received the Christian Faith 70 Years after Christ, under St. *Euprepius*, their first Bishop. St. *Zeno* was their eighth Bishop; and *Peter Martyr* was a Native of *Verona*. Its Buildings.

Besides these religious Men, famous for their Piety, they have had many others, who have been living Ornaments to their Native City: One of the first is that excellent Poet C. *Valerius Catullus*, mentioned by *Ovid*. Illustrious Men Natives of this City.

Mantua Virgilio gaudet, Verona Catullo.

And by *Martial*;

Tantum magna suo debet Verona Catullo,
Quantum parva suo Mantua Virgilio.

C. *Cornelius Nepos*, that most excellent Historian, was born in the Territories of *Verona*.

C. *Æmilius Macer*, another good Poet, under the Reign of *Augustus*, was also a Native of this City according to *Ovid*:

Sæpe suas volucres legit mihi grandior Ævo,
Quæque nocet serpens, quæ juvat herba, Macer.

Next to him comes *Lucius Vitruvius*, a great Architect, whose Statue among others, is to be seen over the Court of this City. The noted *Marcus Vitruvius*, was a *Roman* by birth.

Caius Plinius Secundus, was likewise an honour to this City, and of later Days, many learned Men have either been born or lived here, as *Torello Sarayna*, and *Onuphrius Panvinius*, who have wrote the Antiquities of their own City, *Feronymus*, *Fracastorius*, *Joannes Baptista Montanus*, *Antonius Fumanellus*, *Alexander Benedictus*, *Gabriel Zerbus*, *Joannes Arculanus*, *Guarinus*, *Joannes Antonius Pantheus*, *Joannes Baptista Bagolinus*, and the famous Lady *Isota Nagarola*, who among other Treatises, writ a Dialogue concerning the Fall of *Adam* and *Eve*, and which of them sinned first.

The Emperor *Philippus* was slain at *Verona* by his own Souldiers: The Emperor *Valentinian*, after he had made his Brother *Valens*, Partner with him in the Empire, staid a while in this City, and *Theodorick* the great King of the *Goths* resided here for a considerable time. *Placidia* the Daughter of *Valentinian* III. lived here the latter part of her Days, died here, and was buried in the Church of St. *Stephen*, this being formerly their Cathedral Church, in which are interr'd Twenty one Bishops of *Verona*, forty Martyrs, and four of the Innocent Children.

But we must proceed also to other things, which are no small addition to the glory of this City; among which the *Lacus Benacus*, or *Lago di Garda*, is none of the least, which stretching it self from *Peschiera* in the South, 35 *Italian* Miles to the North, is in some places fourteen Miles broad, and by reason of the various Winds blowing from the neighbouring Hills, rough like the Sea (a). In this Lake the *Venetians* performed a notable Exploit, when they brought their Galleys out of the *Adriatick* Sea, hither, and engaged in a Naval Combat against *Philip Visconte*, General of the *Milan* Forces. The Lake *di Garda*.

(a) *Fluctibus & fremitu assurgens, Benace, marino.*

Upon the side of this Lake are divers goodly Towns and Villages, as *Lacisium*, *Bardolinum*, noted for the well tasted *Bardolin* Figs; *Garda*, which gives its name to the Lake; *Malleseenum*, *Ripa*, *Tusculanum*, where are to be seen to this Day, some ruins of the old *Benacus*, which gave the ancient name to this Lake; *Maternum*, *Salodium*, *Desentianum*, a populous place, *Pischeria*, thro' which passes the River *Mincius*, as also the Remnants of the ancient *Sirmio*, upon a neck of Land, jetting into the Lake, where formerly stood the delightful *Villa* of *Catullus*.

Peninsularum Sirmio, Insularumque
Ocelle, &c.

Besides Eels, and Trouts, and other Fish, this Lake has a Fish peculiar to it self, call'd *Capitone*, which will not easily live or thrive in any other place. Near this Lake the *Alemans*, who had made an irruption with 200000 Men into *Italy*, were totally overthrown, by the Emperor *Flavius Claudius*; his Successour *Monte-Baldo*, or *Monte Baldus*, is look'd upon as the most considerable of all the *Alps*, for Plants and Medicinal Herbs; and the *Calderian* Baths are an additional Convenience to the City of *Verona*.

The Origin and various Fortune of *Verona*.

It is stiled *Verona Nobilis*, and *Verona Attica*, and doubtless its Origin is very ancient; for among the Cities which *Justin* says were built by the ancient *Gauls*, *Verona* is one, and *Livy* says expressly, that the *Gauls* settled themselves in those places where *Brescia* and *Verona* stand at present. But the modern *Italian* Writers, out of a natural Aversion they have to all tramontane Nations, positively assert, that those Cities were built long before that time, by the ancient *Tuscans*, and that *Verona* got its name from *Vera*, a noble *Tuscan*, its Founder; tho' they allow at the same time, that they were afterwards possess'd and enlarged by the *Gauls*. It remained for a considerable time afterwards under the *Roman* Jurisdiction, till its being taken and sacked by *Attila*, and being afterwards with the rest of *Italy*, conquer'd by *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, it remain'd in their Possession, till *Totiles* and *Tyas*, the last of the *Gothick* Kings in *Italy*, being routed and slain by *Narses*, General of the Emperour *Justinian*, they returned under the Imperial Jurisdiction, but did not continue so long; for *Narses* being disobliged by the Empress *Sophia*, who caused him to be recall'd, invited *Alboinus*, the valiant King of the *Lombards* out of *Pannonia* into *Italy*, who having made himself Master of all the Country, known formerly by the Name of *Gallia Cisalpina*, laid the Foundation of the Kingdom of the *Lombards* in *Italy*, which continued 200 Years; After which, being expell'd by *Charles* the *Great*, *Pitin*, and the *Berengarii* placed their Royal Seats here, till under the Reign of *Otho* I. it became a free City. Then *Ezzelin* the Tyrant, lorded it over them for some time, and next to him, the ancient Family of the *Scaligers*, who for 200 Years had lived in this City with great repute, and were at last advanced to the Soveraignty thereof, which they maintain'd for betwixt 200 and 300 Years longer, till *Antonio*, the last of that Family that raign'd here, was driven out by *Giovanni Galeazzo Visconte*, first Duke of *Milan*. After him came *Francisco di Carrara*, and at last the *Venetians*, who were however expell'd thence again by the Emperour *Maximilian*; but in Conclusion, in the Year 1517. the City of *Verona*, by a voluntary Agreement, surrendred it self entirely to the *Venetians*, under whose Government, they continue to this Day.

The Amphitheater at *Verona*.

But what is most worth the Curiosity of a Traveller, is that most noble piece of Antiquity in *Verona*, the ancient *Roman* Amphitheater, the most entire within side of any now standing, and one of the first rank for bigness, when it was first built, being a most glorious Building, beyond what can be imagin'd, and most surprising to the Eye sight: I have here inserted a draught of it, as it may be supposed to have appear'd whilst it was entire; which if it had then been divided into two parts, and one half removed from its Bases, the inside of the other half would have represented it self in this manner*; at present they call it the *Arene*, but in ancient times was named *Amphitheatrum*, and sometimes also *Cavea*.

* Fig. 16.

Prud.

Quid pulvis Caveæ semper funebris, & ille
Amphitheatralis spectacula tristia pompæ?

The Altar.

A, Is the Altar in the middle of the *Arena*, in the Center of the Amphitheater, dedicated to *Diana Scythica*, to *Saturn* or *Mars*, blood thirsty Deities, or to *Jupiter Latiaris* or *Stygius*.

The Arena.

B, B, B, Is the *Arena*, or *Area*, the Sandy Floor of the Amphitheater, where the Combats were perform'd, being cover'd with Sand, the better to suck up the Blood, to keep the Ground from being slippery under-foot, which sometimes they turned or raked away. Sometimes they used Stone-dust instead of Sand; and the Emperours *Caligula* and *Nero*, had the *Arena* strowed with Vermilion and Gold Dust, or rather with a Mineral resembling the Colour of Gold. The *Arena* is of an Oval Figure, which I found 90 of my Paces long, two of my Paces making five Foot, which agrees with the Measure of Monsieur *Desgodetz* and *John Caretus*, the Printer of the Antiquities of *Verona*, who makes it 224 Foot long, and 135 broad; but I found the *Arena* of *Domitian*'s Amphitheater at *Rome*, 150 of my Paces long, which makes 375 Foot.

The *Arena* is encompass'd with a Wall of 13 or 14 Foot high, in which are many *Portula's*, or small Gates.

C, C, C, leading into the Dens, from whence the wild Beasts were let out into the *Arena*, and after the Fights were ended, such as were left alive, used to be driven back into their Dens, by several Wheels and Engines (a). Neither let it seem strange, that the source of the *Rota* and *Axis*, which is able to remove any thing, should have the same effect upon the Wild Beasts; something of this nature (tho' with a considerable improvement) is now-a-day practised at *Florence*, where I have seen a Man put within a monstrous Green-Dragon, moved upon Wheels, which running with Violence upon the Wild Beasts, forces them back, and if they happen sometimes to tarry and stare upon this dreadful Engine, the Man within thrusts two lighted Torches out of the Dragon's Eyes, which certainly drives them back into their Dens. In ancient times, when they were hunting or baiting the Lions, they made use of great Oval Shields, covering their whole Bodies, and thus advanced unseen against the Lion: and if the Lion happened to push forward (as sometimes he would do) and overthrow the Huntsman, he laid safe enough upon the Ground under his Shield, the Lion being satisfied by leaping upon, and pawing the Shield. In what request these Diversions were among the old *Romans*, is manifest from the painting of this hunting of Lions, lately found in the Sepulchres of the *Nasonian* Family, in the *Campania di Roma*; in another part of which Sepulchre, is painted also the manner of hunting of *Tygers*, being performed by divers Huntsmen, holding their Shields close together, and so bearing up against the Beast, whilst one of them wounded it with his Launce, often over the Shield; sometimes they put a Lookinglass in a Wood, which the Tyger spying, comes to it, and whilst he is admiring himself, a Huntsman kills him from above with a Javelin. These Dens are now best to be seen in the Amphitheaters of *Nizza*, *Arles*, and *Doué*.

(a) Seneca, *Curricula verso tarentinæ versata facit Leonem rapit in Cavea.*

D, D, The uppermost part or top of the before-mentioned Wall, makes what they call'd the *Podium*, behind which the first row of Seats begins; This part of the Amphitheater being richly gilt, and adorned with the Figures of Victory and other Statues, the same were so contrived, as to cast out perfumed Liquors, to be-sprinkle the Knights and Senators; upon the Out-side of the *Podium*, were fastned Nets and loose Rowlers, which turning upon an *Axis*, prevented the climbing up of the Wild Beasts. The Podium.

E, Is what they call'd the *Suggestum Imperatoris*, or the Imperial Throne, being a Box, built on purpose for the Emperour to see thro' Lattices, or have the fore-part open upon the *Podium*; *Julius Cæsar* having been the first Author of it, this Throne, and the placing the Statue among the Kings, was (according to *Suetonius*) interpreted by some to his prejudice. And when afterwards the Emperour *Trajan*, had these lowest Seats made plain and equal, as at first, he was highly applauded by the People, when they saw him in Person, sitting equally with the rest of the Nobility. *Suggestum Imperatoris.*

The Seats of the Amphitheater at *Verona*, were at first 45 in number, but three of the lowest Rows being now under Ground, there remain now visible 42 Stone Seats, each of them half a Yard high. The Seats.

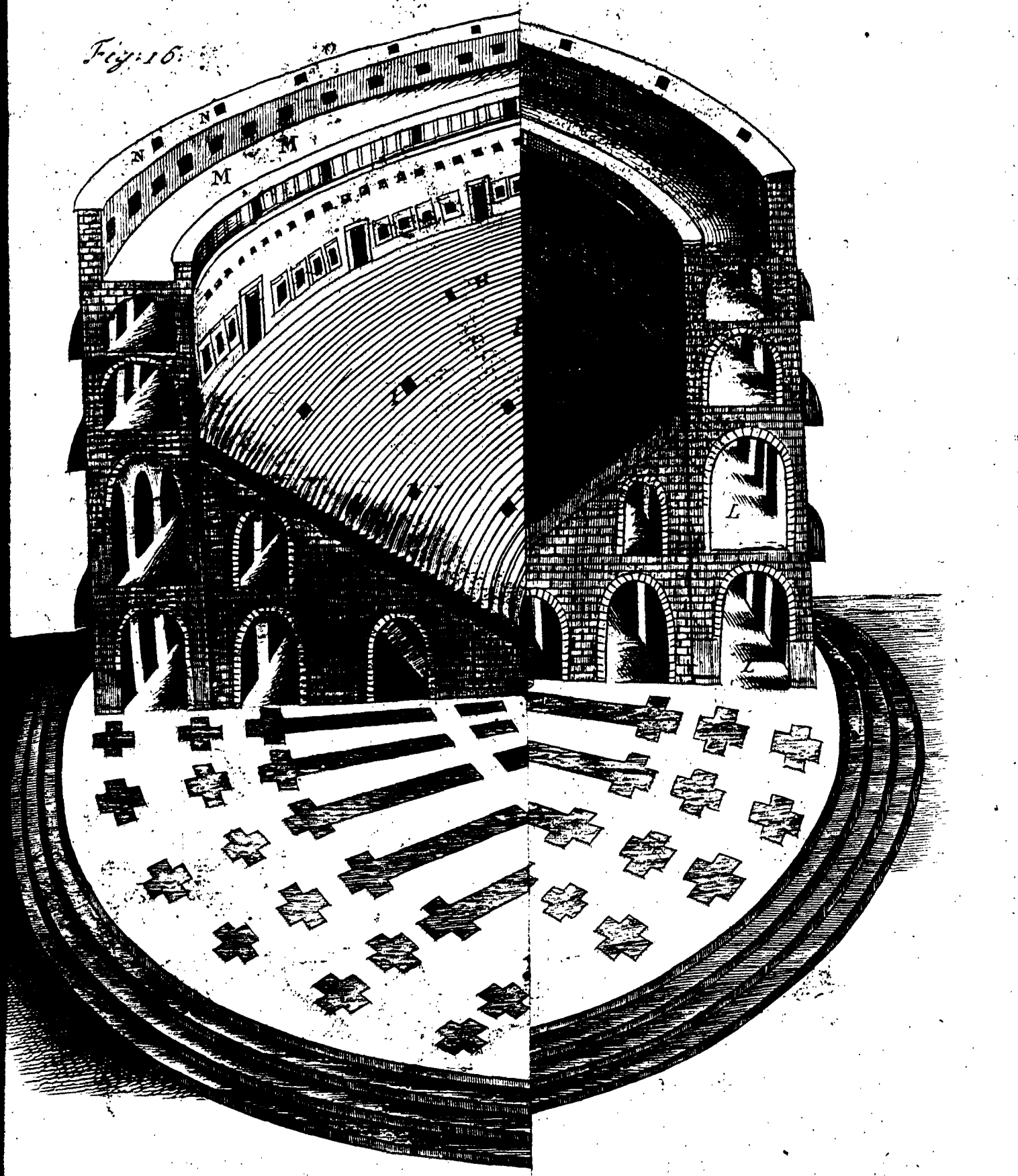
F, F, are the lower Seats of the Senators and Vestal Virgins, call'd *Orchestra*, the last of which the Emperour *Nero* allotted Seats here, in imitation of the Virgins devoted to the Goddess *Ceres*, who used to appear at the *Olympian* Games.

G, G, Are the *Equestria*, or the middle Seats for the *Roman* Knights and Gentlemen; Officers being appointed on purpose to place every one in his due rank; these were call'd *Designatores* and *Tribuni voluptatum*.

H, H, Are the *Popularia*, or Seats for the Common People of both Sexes, the Women being sometimes so eager after this Diversion, that they would bring Chairs and Stools to set upon the top of all, and in the *Portico's* and Gallery above.

I, I, I, are the *Vomitoria*, or square Doors, thro' which the Spectators came crowding in to take their Places; For, as the Amphitheaters were capable of containing a vast number of People (that of *Titus* at *Rome*, being able to receive 80000 Persons) it was requisite *Vomitoria.*

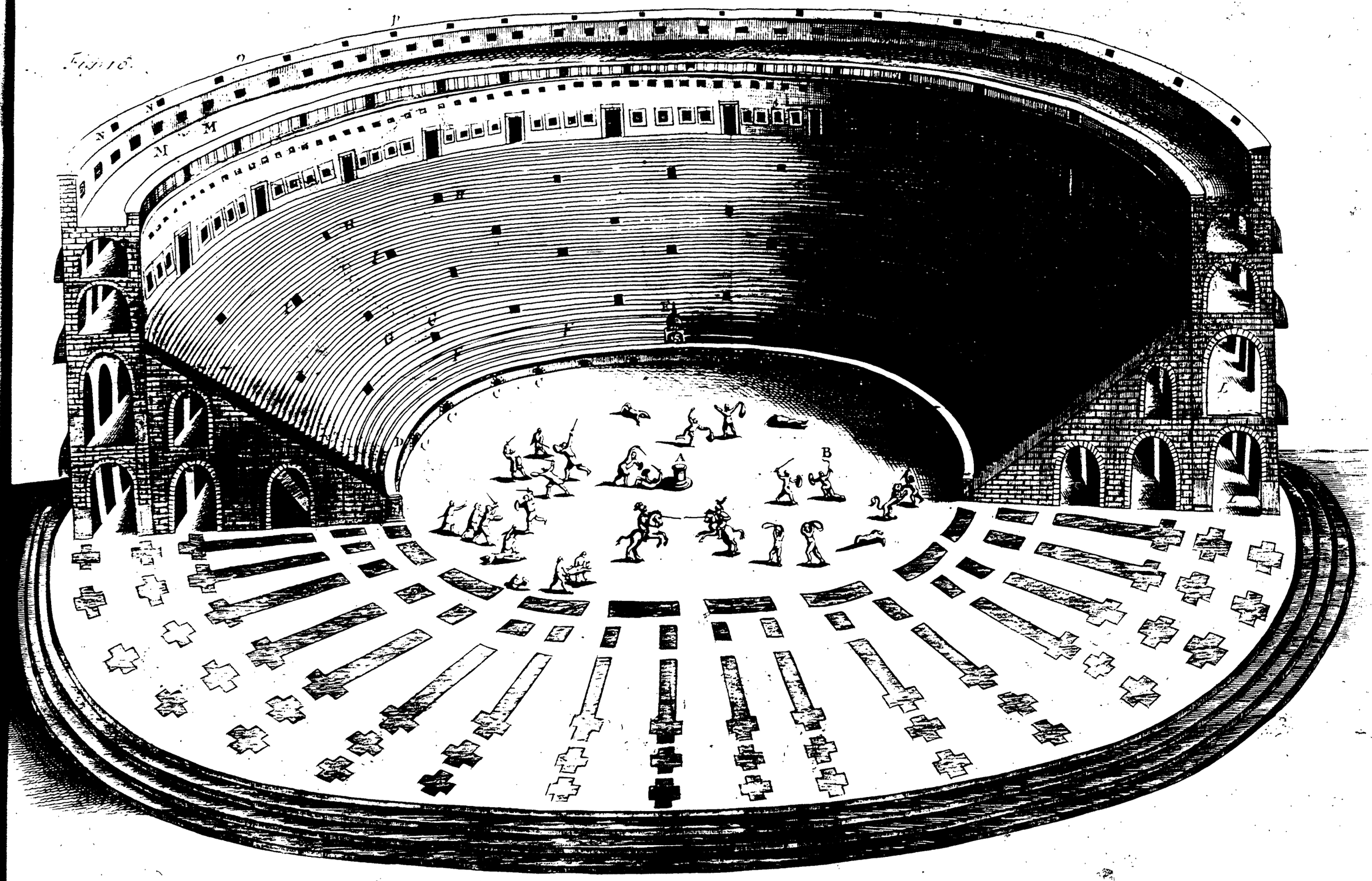
Fig. 16.



with Water) or in a Building made for that purpose, call'd *Naumachia*, or perhaps artificial Channels or Ponds. The Naval Combat exhibited by the Emperour *Claudius* on the *Lacus Fucinus*, a Day's Journey from *Rome*, is sufficiently famous in History, where both Fleets saluted him with an *Ave Cæsar, morituri te salutant.*

nites) the Emperor himself could sometimes not forbear crying out, *Well play'd fair Lady.* That they fought after the manner of the *Samnites*, is evident from *Juvenal*'s Words, when he says, *How creditable a thing it would be for a Man to cry out at a Sale of his Wife's Goods, Who gives most for my Wife's Boots? Who bids Money for*

The inside of the Amphitheater at Verona.



with Water, or in a Building made for that purpose, call'd *Naumachiæ*, or perhaps artificial Channels or Ponds. The Naval Combat exhibited by the Emperour *Claudius* on the *Lacus Fucinus*, a Day's Journey from *Rome*, is sufficiently famous in History, where both Fleets saluted him with an *Ave Cæsar, morituri te salutant.*

nites) the Emperor himself could sometimes not forbear crying out, *Well play'd fair Lady.* That they fought after the manner of the *Samnites*, is evident from *Juvenal*'s Words, when he says, *How creditable a thing it would be for a Man to cry out as a Sale of his Wife's Goods, Who gives most for my Wife's Boots? Who bids Money for*

being cover'd with Sand, the better to ſuck up the Blood, to keep the Ground from being ſlippery under-foot, which ſometimes they turned or raked away. Sometimes they uſed Stone-duſt inſtead of Sand; and the Emperours *Caligula* and *Nero*, had the *Arena* ſtrowed with Vermilion

and Gallery above.

I, *I*, *I*, are the *Vomitoria*, or ſquare Doors, thro' *Vomitoria.* which the Spectators came crowding in to take their Places; For, as the Amphitheaters were capable of containing a vaſt number of People (that of *Titus* at *Rome*, being able to receive 80000 Perſons) it was requiſite

Fig. 17. The Origin of the Amphitheaters.

These most magnificent [illegible] by the *Romans* for the diversion of the People, with Shows and Fighting; these Fights being either betwixt Beasts and Beasts, Men and Beasts, or between Men and Men. The Fights betwixt Beasts and Beasts, are still continued by the Gentlemen of *Verona* in this Amphitheater, which at present is still capable of holding 24000 Persons conveniently; the Seats remaining being very carefully preserved. But these Sports were pursued with much more eagerness by the Ancient *Romans*, who made it their Business to have strange Beasts brought from all parts of the known World, to fight in these Amphitheaters. The Engagements betwixt Men and Beasts were for the most part perform'd by Slaves, Captives and Condemn'd Criminals, tho' some Persons of note would sometimes enter the List upon this account, and therefore were justly stiled *Bestiarii*. The Story of *Androcus* is sufficiently known, who being to fight with a Lion in the *Arena*, he fawn'd upon him, because he had some Years before pull'd a Splinter out of the Paw of the same Lion, whence arise the Proverb, That the Lion was the Man's Host, and the Man the Lion's Chirurgeon. The Fights between Men and Men, are of divers kinds; sometimes they fought on Horse-back, and were call'd *Andabatæ*, sometimes in Chariots, as the *Essedarii*, sometimes in Vessels, either in the *Arena* (which was fill'd with Water) or in a Building made for that purpose, call'd *Naumachia*, or perhaps artificial Channels or Ponds. The Naval Combat exhibited by the Emperour *Claudius* on the *Lacus Fucinus*, a Day's Journey from *Rome*, is sufficiently famous in History, where both Fleets saluted him with an *Ave Cæsar, morituri te salutant.*

[illegible] with the *Retiarii*, who coming up to them with their Nets, would sing, *Non te peto, piscem peto, quid me fugis, Galle?*

Another sort of Gladiators were the *Samnites*, armed with Shields, flat and broad on the end towards their Breast, and nearer towards the Shoulder with a Breast-plate, a Helmet, upon the Crest a Feather, and a Boot upon their left Leg, as they are described by *Livy*. *Samnites.*

There were also *Dimachæri*, who fought with two Swords, and *Laquearii*, who fought with Sword and Halter. *Dimachæri. Laquearii.*

The *Meridiani* were a desperate kind of Fellows, who coming in about Noon when the Spectators were dismiss'd, engaged one another, without any Order, Art or Armour. *Meridiani.*

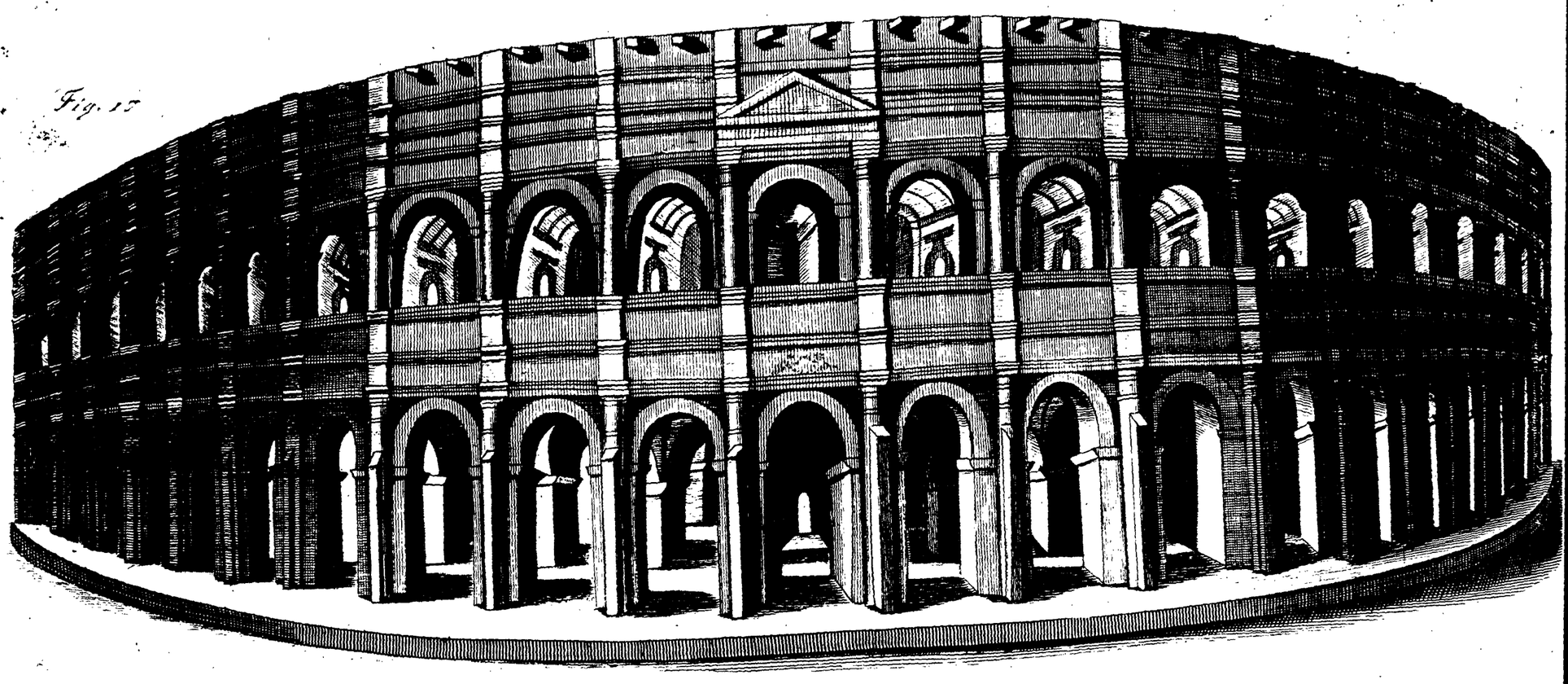
But what will appear more surprising, is, that even the Female Sex, was not exempted from these rude Exercises; for they would pick out the handsomest young Women that could be found, who were put to the *Lanista* or Fencing Master, to be instructed in the Art of Fighting; those who were put to the *Lanista* in the most severe way, being bound to be burn'd, whip'd, and fall by the Sword. When one of these Young Women fought in the *Arena*, with her Golden Shield and Plumb of Feathers in her Crest (for they were arm'd after the manner of *Samnites*) the Emperor himself could sometimes not forbear crying out, *Well play'd fair Lady.* That they fought after the manner of the *Samnites*, is evident from *Juvenal's* Words, when he says, *How creditable a thing it would be for a Man to cry out at a Sale of his Wife's Goods, Who gives most for my Wife's Boots? Who bids Money* Women Gladiators.

for

Vol: 2d.

The outside of the Amphitheater at Nismes.
Round about which there are one hundred and twenty Arches and as many Pillars, Sixty in the upper rowe, and Sixty in the lower.

Fig. 15



Amphitheater, where the Combats were perform'd, being cover'd with Sand, the better to ſuck up the Blood, to keep the Ground from being ſlippery under-foot, which ſometimes they turned or raked away. Sometimes they uſed Stone-duſt inſtead of Sand; and the Emperours *Caligula* and *Nero*, had the *Arena* ſtrowed with Vermilion

and Gallery above.

I, I, I, are the *Vomitoria*, or ſquare Doors, thro' which the Spectators came crowding in to take their Places; For, as the Amphitheaters were capable of containing a vaſt number of People (that of *Titus* at *Rome*, being able to receive 80000 Perſons) it was requiſite

r in the lower .

Amphitheater, where the Combats were perform'd, being cover'd with Sand, the better to ſuck up the Blood, to keep the Ground from being ſlippery under-foot, which ſometimes they turned or raked away. Sometimes they uſed Stone-duſt inſtead of Sand; and the Emperours *Caligula* and *Nero*, had the *Arena* ſtrowed with Vermilion and Gallery above.

I, I, I, are the *Vomitoria*, or ſquare Doors, thro' which the Spectators came crowding in to take their Places; For, as the Amphitheaters were capable of containing a vaſt number of People (that of *Titus* at *Rome*, being able to receive 80000 Perſons) it was requiſite *Vomitoria.*

quiſite that a ſuitable number of Doors ſhould be allowed for the convenient coming in and going out of the Spectators. In every ninth and tenth row of Seats in the Amphitheater, there are rows of *Vomitoria* or Doors, every one at an equal diſtance from one another, 18 in a row, making in all 72 different Entrances, unto every one of which belongs a peculiar Stair-caſe, coming out from within the Arches, which ſupport the Amphitheater, beſides all other Stairs, and Paſſages, and Aſcents within, from one Story to another, which is ſufficient to demonſtrate the vaſtneſs of theſe extraordinary Buildings.

L, L, L, are the Rows of Arches within, built round the Amphitheater to ſupport the Seats, and Upper-buildings.

The *Canaculum.*

M, M, Is the *Canaculum* or Upper-Gallery, built for Strength and Ornaments ſake; hither they uſed to retire, and refreſh themſelves with walking. This part is found only in the Amphitheaters of the firſt Rank; and there is but a ſlender part of it remaining in this, moſt of it being thrown down by an Earthquake 1103.

N, N, N, Are the Holes left in the outward Wall of the Amphitheater, to ſtick Maſts into, for the more convenient faſtning of theſe Ropes, Sails and Curtains, to keep off the Sun-Beams from the Spectators, firſt introduced by *Q. Catullus*, which *Julius Cæſar* afterwards cauſed to be made of Silk of divers Colours; and *Nero* had his own Picture embroidred in them, repreſenting *Apollo* in the Chariot of the Sun, with the Stars of Gold round about him.

The Out-ſide of the Amphitheater.

Tho' at preſent there be but a ſlender Portion remaining of the out-ſide of the Amphitheater at *Verona*, *viz.* as much as between *O* and *P*, yet conſidering the Uniformity of theſe Structures, it is ſufficient to ſhew, that it was no leſs ſplendid than the inſide, being all of Marble 120 Foot high, and conſiſted of three rows of Pillars and Arches, one over another, which opened into ſpacious Walks and Portico's within, quite round the Building, and above theſe three Rows of Arches, there was a handſome Wall, with Windows over each Arch, and Pilaſters over every Pillar beneath; each Row conſiſted of 72 Arches and as many Pillars, of a great height; the upper Row is ſuppoſed to have been adorned with excellent Statues.

The out-ſide of the Amphitheater at *Niſmes* being the moſt entire of any now ſtanding, I thought fit to inſert the Draught thereof here; but as that of *Verona* has three rows of Pillars and a Wall above them, this at *Niſmes* has no more than two Rows on the out-ſide, and the Seats within reach to the top of it, and it hath no Galleries above. For the more natural and convenient repreſentation of Naval Combats in this Amphitheater of *Niſmes*, the great *Pont du Guard* was built, which ſupporting an Aquæduct, paſſing from one Mountain to another, was ſufficient to ſupply it with as much Water as they had occaſion for, which being one of the moſt noble *Roman* Antiquities remaining in *Europe*, I have alſo inſerted the draught thereof *.

* Fig. 17. The Origin of the Amphitheaters.

Theſe moſt magnificent Structures were firſt raiſed by the *Romans* for the diverſion of the People, with Shows and Fighting; theſe Fights being either betwixt Beaſts and Beaſts, Men and Beaſts, or between Men and Men. The Fights betwixt Beaſts and Beaſts, are ſtill continued by the Gentlemen of *Verona* in this Amphitheater, which at preſent is ſtill capable of holding 24000 Perſons conveniently; the Seats remaining being very carefully preſerved. But theſe Sports were purſued with much more eagerneſs by the Ancient *Romans*, who made it their Buſineſs to have ſtrange Beaſts brought from all parts of the known World, to fight in theſe Amphitheaters. The Engagements betwixt Men and Beaſts were for the moſt part perform'd by Slaves, Captives and Condemn'd Criminals, tho' ſome Perſons of note would ſometimes enter the Liſt upon this account, and therefore were juſtly ſtiled *Beſtiarii*. The Story of *Androtus* is ſufficiently known, who being to fight with a Lion in the *Arena*, he fawn'd upon him, becauſe he had ſome Years before pull'd a Splinter out of the Paw of the ſame Lion, whence ariſe the Proverb, That the Lion was the Man's Hoſt, and the Man the Lion's Chirurgeon. The Fights between Men and Men, are of divers kinds; ſometimes they fought on Horſe-back, and were call'd *Andabatæ*, ſometimes in Chariots, as the *Eſſedarii*, ſometimes in Veſſels, either in the *Arena* (which was fill'd with Water) or in a Building made for that purpoſe, call'd *Naumachia*, or perhaps artificial Channels or Ponds. The Naval Combat exhibited by the Emperour *Claudius* on the *Lacus Fucinus*, a Day's Journey from *Rome*, is ſufficiently famous in Hiſtory, where both Fleets ſaluted him with an *Ave Cæſar, morituri te ſalutant.*

But their moſt general way of Fighting in the Amphitheaters, was performed by the Gladiators on Foot, and theſe were likewiſe of divers ſorts. The Gladiators.

The *Retiarii*, with a Trident in one Hand, and holding a Net in the other, endeavoured to enſnare their Enemies, which if they miſs'd of, they retreated ſwiftly, till they could recover themſelves, and ſo renew'd the Engagement. Their manner of fighting, is exactly deſcribed by *Juvenal* (a). Theſe Gladiators fighting without Armour, only in a ſhort Coat and bare fac'd, the People were much delighted in obſerving the Convulſions in their Limbs, and the Alterations of their Colour and Features in their Dying Agonies. *Retiarii.* (a) *Sat.* 8.

I ſaw the Statue of a dying Gladiator in *Ludoviſi's* Garden at *Rome*, ſo naturally repreſented, that it might well compare with the Figures of the moſt celebrated Statuaries in any Age, it being judged fit to be put in the firſt Rank, with the Works of *Plydias* and *Praxitcles*, and eſteem'd at the ſame rate, with that moſt admirable Statue of *Pyramus* in the ſame Garden, and the *Farneſes Hercules*, made by *Glycon*, the famous *Greek* and old *Ægyptian Terme*. Nay, the moſt beautiful Statues of *Antinous*, and *Apollo Pythian* in *Belvedere* (the Garden of the *Vatican*) are not at this Day preferr'd before it; nor that exquiſite Figure of *Venus*, in the Palace of the *Medici*; Nay, even the *Grecian* Statue of Peace, and the *Greek Shepherdeſs*, that holds up her Garments to ſee her due Proportions, are not aſham'd to be rank'd with this Gladiator, who by the beſt Artiſts, is held in the ſame eſteem with *Farneſe's* Bull, and the inimitable *Laocoon* and his Sons, the Joint Work of the three famous antient Maſters, *Ageſander*, *Polydore* and *Athenodore*. Antient noble Statues preſerved in *Rome.*

The *Retiarii*, acknowledging *Neptune* for their Patron, were generally engaged with the *Secutores*, who were Followers of *Vulcan*, Fire and Water being Contraries not to be reconciled. The *Secutores* guarded themſelves with a Shield which they carried high, to defend their Heads againſt the Nets of their Adverſaries, being, for the reſt, armed with a Spear or long Sword: Five *Retiarii's* having thrown down their Arms and yielded to as many of the *Secutores*, the Emperor *Caligula* commanded theſe laſt to kill the *Retiarii*, which they did to the laſt Man, who out of deſpair, taking up his Trident kill'd all the five *Secutores*. The *Secutores.*

Another ſort of *Gladiators*, were thoſe call'd *Threces* or *Thraces*, who were arm'd with a ſmall *Parmula*, or *Thracian* Shield, and ſtrong broad Swords, turning upwards like the preſent *Turkiſh* Cymeters; they derived their Cuſtom and manner of Fighting from the *Thracians*, who, according to *Herodote*, uſed to fight with the ſame Weapons for Prizes, at the Funerals and Tombs of their Great Men; theſe fought either againſt one another, or againſt the Gladiators. *Threces* or *Thraces.*

The *Myrmillones*, were a ſort of Sword Players, fighting after the manner of the *Gauls*, covering themſelves with an Oval Shield, armed with a Helmet, having a Fiſh for a Creſt; they would attack their Enemies with great Activity, or run at them with their pointed Swords: They engaged often with the *Thraces*, and ſometimes with the *Retiarii*, who coming up to them with their Nets, would ſing, *Non te peto, piſcem peto, quid me fugis, Galle?* *Myrmillones.*

Another ſort of Gladiators were the *Samnites*, armed with Shields, flat and broad on the end towards their Breaſt, and nearer towards the Shoulder with a Breaſt-plate, a Helmet, upon the Creſt a Feather, and a Boot upon their left Leg, as they are deſcribed by *Livy*. *Samnites.*

There were alſo *Dimachæri*, who fought with two Swords, and *Laqueærii*, who fought with Sword and Halter. *Dimachæri. Laqueærii.*

The *Meridiani* were a deſperate kind of Fellows, who coming in about Noon when the Spectators were diſmiſs'd, engaged one another, without any Order, Art or Armour. *Meridiani.*

But what will appear more ſurpriſing, is, that even the Female Sex, was not exempted from theſe rude Exerciſes; for they would pick out the handſomeſt young Women that could be found, who were put to the *Laniſta* or Fencing Maſter, to be inſtructed in the Art of Fighting; thoſe who were put to the *Laniſta* in the moſt ſevere way, being bound to be burn'd, whip'd, and fall by the Sword. When one of theſe Young Women fought in the *Arena*, with her Golden Shield and Plumb of Feathers in her Creſt (for they were arm'd after the manner of *Samnites*) the Emperor himſelf could ſometimes not forbear crying out, *Well play'd fair Lady.* That they fought after the manner of the *Samnites*, is evident from *Juvenal's* Words, when he ſays, *How creditable a thing it would be for a Man to cry out at a Sale of his Wife's Goods, Who gives moſt for my Wife's Boots? Who bids Money for* Women Gladiators.

for her Coʃelet, Helmet and Gauntlets? The Emperor *Domitian* would make the Gladiators fight in the Night time, not ſparing even his Dwarfs, that were to engage one another.

Mantua. But it is time to turn to more pleaſing Objects: Leaving *Verona* in the Morning, we purſued our Journey thro' a moſt pleaſant plain Country, for 24 Miles to *Mantua*; a City moſt pleaſantly ſituate in a Lake, like *Mexico* in *America*. This Lake, which is about five Miles long, is made by the opening of the River *Mincius* or *Mincio*, which has a low Current, and ſometimes ſpreads *See Virgil.* it ſelf over the adjacent Countries. It riſes in the Lake *di Garda*, and falls into the *Po*, being full of Reeds, eſpecially near *Mantua*. The Avenues of *Mantua* are ſtrong and broad, Cauſeways of 500 or 600 Paces, made croſs the Lake, having Draw-Bridges at each end; the *Ponte di St. Georgio*, thro' which we entred, hath a covered Bridge for a good ſpace together, and no Tower in the middle; the *Ponte de Molini*, has 12 Mills in the Arches, call'd the Twelve Apoſtles. The Streets are ſpacious, ſtrait and well kept. It has eight Gates, 18 Pariſh Churches, 40 Convents. The Cathedral is built after the deſign of *Giulio Romano*, the Roof being Painted with Gold and *Azure*; in this Church lies the Body of St. *Anſelm*, Biſhop of St. *Luca*, as the Body of St. *Longinus* the Martyr, is preſerved in St. *Andrew's* Church, together with ſome drops of our Saviour's Blood, ſaid to be brought hither by that Holy Man. The Duke's Palace is very magnificent: There are three Suburbs, *Porto Fonteze*, *Borgo di St. Georgio*, and *Il Te*. Beſides which the Duke has divers noble Country Seats, as that of *Marmirola*, in the way to *Verona*, *La Favorita*, upon the ſide of the Lake, having 100 Rooms. *La Virgiliana*, ſo call'd from its ſituation near to the Village of *Pereta*, anciently call'd *Andes*, the Birth-place of *Virgil*. The Palace *del Te*, lies at no great diſtance from one of the Gates; its artificial Roof is chiefly remarkable, ſo contrived that it makes a double Whiſpering place; I had ſeen ſeveral Whiſpering places before, as at *Padoua*, *Montpellier*, but theſe being ſingle ones, proceed from this Rule, That the Angle of Incidence, is always equal to the Angle of Reflection, and the whole top of the Room ſo proportion'd, as to reflect all to one Point, that came from another oppoſite to it; but theſe are much beyond them, being contrived with a double Croſs each, which makes a large, double, croſs Whiſpering Place.

Its Origin. About 60 Years before the *Trojan* War with the City of *Thebes*, having been deſtroyed by the *Greeks*, *Manetho* the great *Theban* Sorcereſs, fled firſt into *Aſia*, and thence to *Italy*, to *Tyberinus* King of the *Tuſcans*, by whom ſhe had a Son *Oenus*, who paſſing the *Appennines* and the *Po*, built this City, and call'd it after his Mothers Name. The *Tuſcans* were driven out by the *Galli Cenomani*, and theſe being overthrown by the *Romans*, *Mantua* continued under the Weſtern Emperours, till *Otho* II, gave it to *Tedaldo* Count of *Canoſſa*. In proceſs of time, the Family of the *Bonacolſi*, became Maſters of this City, and maintain'd themſelves therein, till *Paſſavino*, the laſt of that Race, was 1328. ſlain in the Market-place by the People, under the Conduct of *Ludovico di Gonzaga*, the firſt Lord of *Mantua* of the ſame Family, that now reigns.

The Po. From *Mantua*, we went forward towards the River *Eridanus*, *Padus*, or *Po*, which ariſing from Mount *Viſo* or *Mons Veſulus*, (the higheſt among the *Alps* towards *France*) and falling down in divers Chanels at firſt, unites at the Foot of the Mountain, where being ſwallow'd up under Ground, riſes again about two Miles after, and paſſing with a ſwift Courſe thro' *Lombardy*, and being encreaſed by 30 other Rivers, exonerates it ſelf by divers Mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea. This being the largeſt River in *Italy*, the *Latin* Poets have extoll'd it beyond the greateſt Rivers upon Earth, tho' there are many Rivers in all the four parts of the World, that far exceed it. We paſs'd the River *Po* by a peculiar Contrivance; for they tie Ropes to the tops of high Poplars, or high Poſts, placed on purpoſe, on each ſide of the River, and upon a line ty'd to them, put a running Pulley, to which they fix another long Rope, and the Boat being faſtned to the further end of the ſame Rope, by ſteering the Boat obliquely croſs the River, the force of the ſtream makes the Pully run from one ſide to another.

Ovid. Faſtis.

Sine remigis ictu,
Concava trajecto Cymba rudente vehit.

Next we came to *Guaſtalla*, a handſome but ſmall Town, under its own Duke of the ſame Name; It was formerly a conſiderable place, witneſs, the two general Councils held here, under Pope *Urban* II, and Pope *Paſcal* II. From *Guaſtalla* we travell'd by the way of *Gualtea* to *Berzello*, *Brixellum*; a ſtrong compact Town, upon the Banks of the *Po*, well fortified after the modern way, an old *Roman* place. It has about 3000 or 4000 Inhabitants now, and a good Garriſon belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, it being a frontier place betwixt *Milan*, *Mantua* and *Parma*. From *Berzello* (having croſs'd the River *Nicia* or *Lenza*) we ſoon came to *Parma*. The Dukedom of *Parma* is encloſed betwixt the *Appennine* Mountains and ſeveral Rivers, being a Country affording great plenty of excellent Wine, Fruits and Cattle, the beſt Cheeſe in *Italy*, and great ſtore of Cheſtnuts and *Tartufali Truffes*, *Tubera terra*, Roots without Stems or Plants; theſe they find out by the ſmell of Pigs, and are eſteem'd here a Provocative: beſides which, it has *Parma.* ſome Copper and Silver Mines, and very fine Wool. The City of *Parma* was anciently inhabited by the *Tuſcans*, then by the *Boii*, who were ſucceeded by the *Romans*, who ſent a Colony thither 182 Years before our Saviour's Nativity, and another in the time of *Auguſtus*, upon the declining of the *Roman* Empire. It was ſubject ſometimes to the *Venetians*, ſometimes to *Milan*, till being conquer'd by Pope *Julius* II. it was given by *Paul* III. to his Son *Petro Luigi Farneſe*, about 135 Years ſince, in whoſe Family it continues to this Day. The ſituation of this City is very airy and pleaſant; the Houſes are low, but the Streets broad; the River *Parma* runs betwixt the City and the Suburbs, both which are well fortified. Over the River are three Bridges; the Duke's Palace is noble, and the Gardens, Grotto's, Water-works, &c. worth ſeeing. The Lodgings are furniſh'd with many rare Pictures. The Cathedral is a ſtately Structure: In the *Capuchins* Church you ſee the Tomb of *Alexander Farneſe* Duke of *Parma*, one of the greateſt Generals of his time, and his Dutcheſs, *Mary* of *Portugal*. The Church of St. *John* is a moſt exquiſite and beautiful piece of Architecture, adorned with the Paintings of thoſe great Maſters, *Corregio* and *Parmegiana*. The adjoining *Benedictine* Convent is, perhaps, one of the largeſt and beſt of that Order.

Berzello.

From *Parma*, we travell'd 10 Miles to *Fornovo*, ſeated upon the ſwift River *Taro*, which with a winding and ſwift Current, runs about the Plains, before it falls into the *Po*. As ſoon as we were entred the Valley of *Taro*, in which this River runs, we were forced to travel on the ſides of the Hills, and ſo croſs the River above 40 times, till we paſs'd by *Borgo di Valle*, when turning more to the right Hand, we aſcended the *Appennine* Mountains. *Borgo di Valle*, is ſeated on the ſides of the Hills, at the upper end of this Valley, where the Duke of *Parma* keeps a Garriſon. The *Appennine* is a ridge of Mountains of ſeveral 100 Miles, beginning at the *Alps*, and extending from one end of *Italy* to the other, as far as *Reggio* or *Rhegium*, upon the *Sicilian* Sea, and being in ſome places 100 Miles broad, render *Italy* a Mountainous Country, which is the reaſon they generally travel into *Italy* on Horſe-back, or upon Mules; and were it not for *Campania Felix*, and the Plains betwixt the *Alps* and *Appennine*, the *gleba Italæ* would ſcarce deſerve the Character it has. The *Appennines* are generally more cloudy than other Hills or Mountains, for I have travell'd for many Days together upon the *Appennines*, with the Clouds continually either about us, or a little over or below us, the reflection of which affords a very delightful proſpect from the Hills into the Valleys. Many of the *Appennine* Peaks are very high, and covered with Snow, ſome are Rocky, but moſt earthy and full of Clay, which imparts a brown Tincture to the *Tyber*, and other Rivers that run thro' them, which ſome retain for two Miles after they are fall'n into the Gulph of *Venice*. The Hill we then paſs'd over, was call'd the *Mountain of the Holy Croſs* (different from that in the South part of *France*, in the Maritime *Alps*) being not rocky but all green, ſo that we deſcended with a great deal of delight a great part of the way upon the Graſs, till we reached the Sea-ſide in the Evening, formerly call'd *Segeſta*, at preſent *Seſtri di Levante*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Seſtri di Ponente*, betwixt *Genoa* and *Savona*; for the whole *Genoeſe* Coaſt being divided into Eaſt and Weſt, that extending from *Genoa* towards *Legborn*, they call *La Riviera di Levante*; and that betwixt *Genoa* and *Pavence*, *La Riviera di Ponente*. We hired a *Feluca* at *Seſtri*, and paſſing by *Porto Fin*, and keeping all along within half a Mile of the Shoar, came to *Genoa*, entring betwixt the New Mole on the Right hand, and the Old Mole and Watch Tower on the Left; and went aſhoar near the Foot of the New Mole.

Borgo di Valle. *The Appennine Mountains.* *Taro.*

OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS

TOPOGRAPHICAL, MORAL, and PHILOSOPHICAL.

MADE IN A

Cylindrical Buckets of Iron; the Chain being round form of a Wheel-band, and put over a large *Axis*, deeply furrowed, from whence hanging down into the Well below it, and being turn'd about by the *Axis*, the de-

from the high Grounds hereabouts. Of this we have divers other Instances in the Flats about *Venice*, and in the *Camarg*, or the Isle of the River *Rhosne*, near *Aix* in *Provence*,

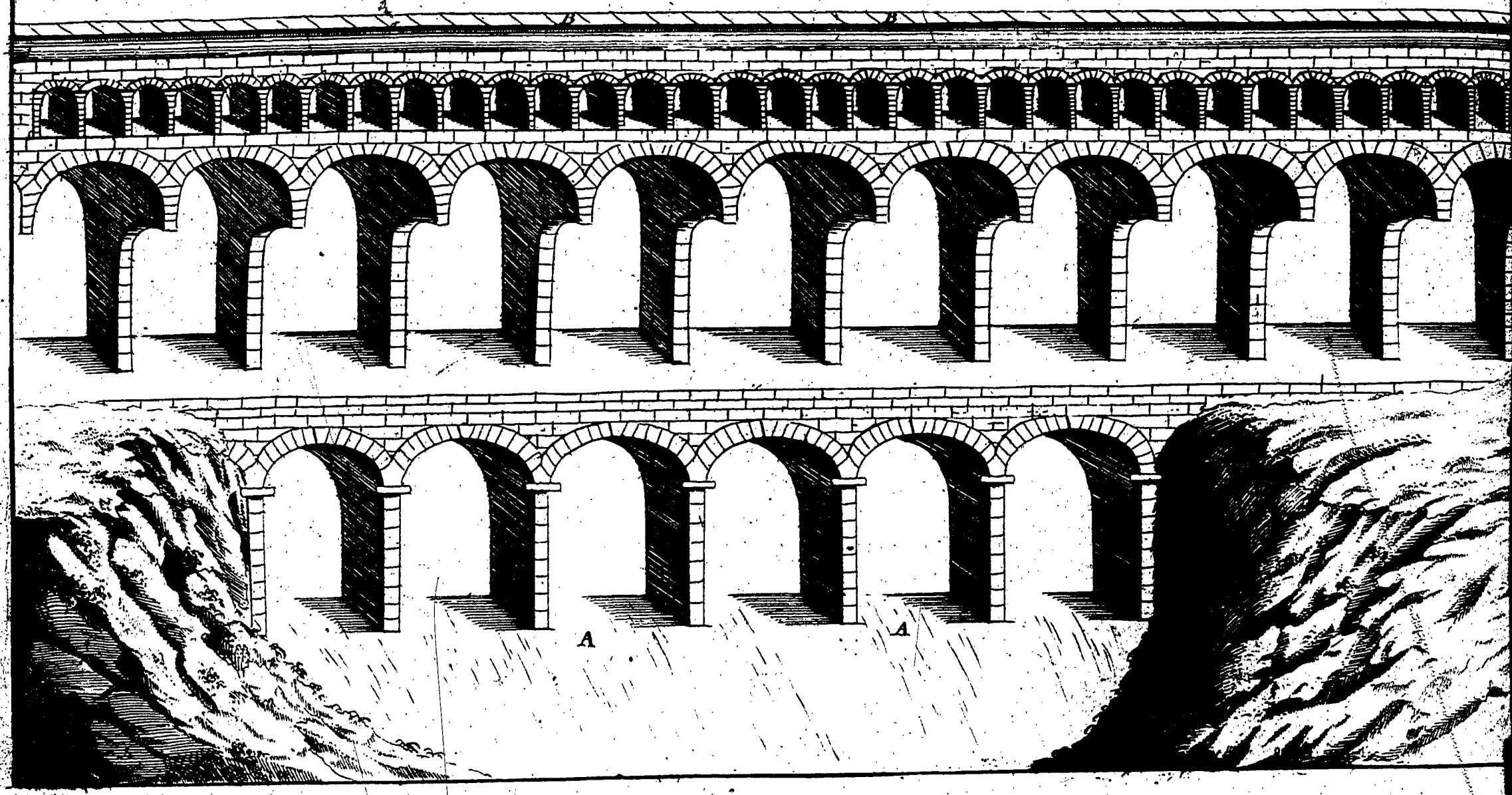
for her Corſelet, Helmet and Gauntlets? The Emperor *Domitian* would make the Gladiators fight in the Night time, not ſparing even his Dwarfs, that were to engage one another.

Mantua. But it is time to turn to more pleaſing Objects: Leaving *Verona* in the Morning, we purſued our Journey thro' a moſt pleaſant plain Country, for 24 Miles to *Mantua*; a City moſt pleaſantly ſituate in a Lake, like *Mexico* in *America*. This Lake, which is about five Miles long, is made by the opening of the River *Mincius* or *Mincio*, which has a low Current, and ſometimes ſpreads *See Virgil.* it ſelf over the adjacent Countries. It riſes in the Lake *di Garda*, and falls into the *Po*, being full of Reeds, eſpecially near *Mantua*. The Avenues of *Mantua* are ſtrong and broad, Cauſeways of 500 or 600 Paces, made croſs the Lake, having Draw-Bridges at each end; the *Ponte di St. Georgio*, thro' which we entred, hath a

Berzello. conſiderable place, witneſs, the two general Councils held here, under Pope *Urban* II, and Pope *Paſcal* II. From *Guaſtalla* we travell'd by the way of *Gualtea* to *Berzello*, *Brixellum*; a ſtrong compact Town, upon the Banks of the *Po*, well fortified after the modern way, an old *Roman* place. It has about 3000 or 4000 Inhabitants now, and a good Garriſon belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, it being a frontier place betwixt *Milan*, *Mantua* and *Parma*. From *Berzello* (having croſs'd the River *Nicia* or *Lenza*) we ſoon came to *Parma*. The Dukedom of *Parma* is encloſed betwixt the *Appennine* Mountains and ſeveral Rivers, being a Country affording great plenty of excellent Wine, Fruits and Cattle, the beſt Cheeſe in *Italy*, and great ſtore of Cheſtnuts and *Tartufali Truffes*, *Tubera terra*, Roots without Stems or Plants; theſe they find out by the ſmell of Pigs, and are eſteem'd here a Provocative: beſides which, it has *Parma.* ſome Copper and Silver Mines, and very fine Wool. The

Pag.

Pont du Gard near Remolin within four Leagues of Niſmes in Languedoc, a Remarkable Antiquity one hundred and eighty ſix foot high from the river. A A to the top of the Aqueduct. B B.



OBSER-

for her Coſſelet, Helmet and Gauntlets? The Emperor *Domitian* would make the Gladiators fight in the Night time, not ſparing even his Dwarfs, that were to engage one another.

Mantua. But it is time to turn to more pleaſing Objects: Leaving *Verona* in the Morning, we purſued our Journey thro' a moſt pleaſant plain Country, for 24 Miles to *Mantua*; a City moſt pleaſantly ſituate in a Lake, like *Mexico* in *America*. This Lake, which is about five Miles long, is made by the opening of the River *Mincius* or *Mincio*, which has a low Current, and ſometimes ſpreads it ſelf over the adjacent Countries. It riſes in the Lake *di Garda*, and falls into the *Po*, being full of Reeds, eſpecially near *Mantua*. The Avenues of *Mantua* are ſtrong and broad, Cauſeways of 500 or 600 Paces, made croſs the Lake, having Draw-Bridges at each end; the *Ponte di St. Georgio*, thro' which we entred, hath a confiderable place, witneſs, the two general Councils held here, under Pope *Urban* II, and Pope *Paſcal* II. From *Guaſtalla* we travell'd by the way of *Gualtea* to *Berzello*, *Brixellum*; a ſtrong compact Town, upon the Banks of the *Po*, well fortified after the modern way, an old *Roman* place. It has about 3000 or 4000 Inhabitants now, and a good Garriſon belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, it being a frontier place betwixt *Milan*, *Mantua* and *Parma*. From *Berzello* (having croſs'd the River *Nicia* or *Lenza*) we ſoon came to *Parma*. The Dukedom of *Parma* is encloſed betwixt the *Appennine* Mountains and ſeveral Rivers, being a Country affording great plenty of excellent Wine, Fruits and Cattle, the beſt Cheeſe in *Italy*, and great ſtore of Cheſtnuts and *Tartufali Truffes*, *Tubera terra*, Roots without Stems or Plants; theſe they find out by the ſmell of Pigs, and are eſteem'd here a Provocative: beſides which, it has ſome Copper and Silver Mines, and very fine Wool. The

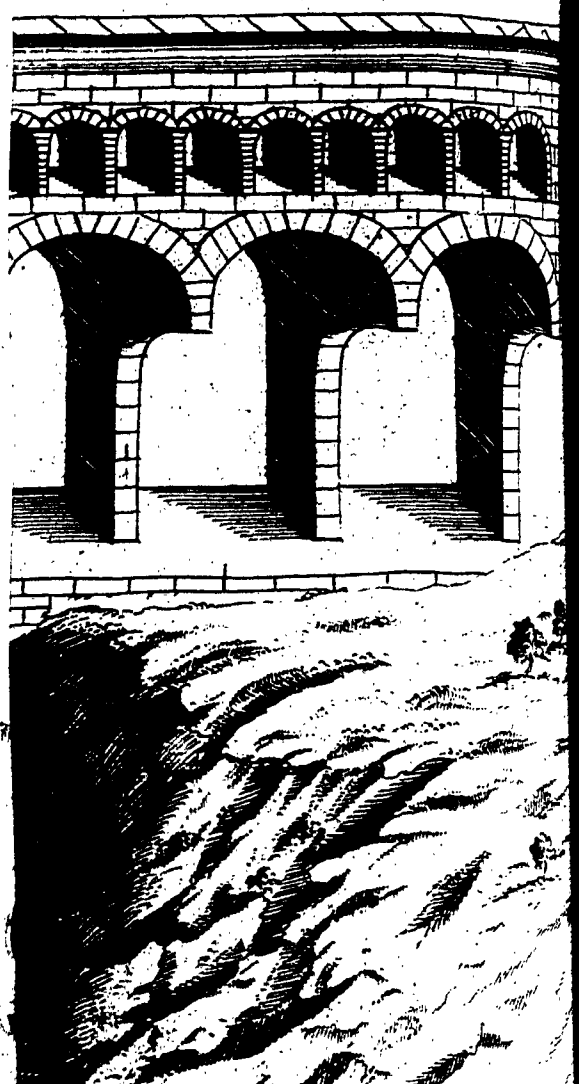
Berzell.

Parm.

See Virgil.

page 547

Remarkable Antiquity.



OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS

TOPOGRAPHICAL, MORAL, and PHILOSOPHICAL.

MADE IN A

Journey thro' Part of the *Low-Countries*; *GERMANY*, *ITALY*, and *FRANCE*.

By Mr. JOHN RAY, Fellow of the *Royal-Society*.

Calais. WE went in the Packet-Boat *April* 18th, 1663. from *Dover* to *Calais*, formerly belonging to the *English*, and since to the *Spaniards*, and soon after surrendred to the *French*, 1598. Its situation is very advantageous, and the Fortifications of Earth, with a deep Ditch and Cittadel to the Land-side. It exceeds *Dover* in bigness, and the Market-place is a very spacious square; the Government of the place being administer'd by a Major and four Aldermen.

Gravelingen. *April* the 21st, We continued our Journey by the way of *Graveling* to *Dunkirk*; the first is a place but indifferently built and peopled; seated in a watery Country, and enclosed with a good number of Out-works and broad Ditches: The second may be compared for its extent to *Cambridge*, being very populous and well fortified. It is one of the four Port-Towns of *Flanders*.

Dunkirk. We travell'd along the Sea-shore from hence to *Ostend*, taking our way by *Newport*: This last is another of the *Flemish* Ports, having a capacious and secure Harbour, but will admit of no Ships of any great burthen; the Streets are broad and uniform, but the Houses are low, and of Timber. *Ostend* is another of the Harbours of *Flanders*, considerable both for its Strength and Conveniency; being both very capacious and secure against the Violence of the Winds, and capable of receiving Ships of good burthen; The Buildings are likewise but low here, yet pretty uniform, and the Streets regular and streight, being built all at once, after the famous Siege of three Years, before it could be taken by the *Spaniards*.

Newport.

Ostend.

Sluys. *Sluys*, is another Sea-port Town of this Country, but under the Jurisdiction of the United Provinces; Its Harbour exceeds all the before-mentioned for its capacity.

April the 24th, Having taken us places in the Treek-boat, bound for *Bruges*, and drawn by Horses, we came about a League and a half from *Ostend*, to one of those Locks (call'd *Sostegni* by the *Italians*) which are generally made at a great Declivity of a Fall of Water, to keep up the Water, to render a River navigable, which either wants Water, or has too steep a Descent. Such there are in *Guilford* River in *Surrey* in *England*. The *Bruges.* City of *Bruges* is about four Leagues distant from *Ostend*; well built, and of a great Circumference, having been formerly a very considerable City for Trade. Here, when we saw pieces of Linen fastned to the Ring of the Doors, where Women were lying-in; it puts us in mind of what *Erasmus* had taken notice of upon this Head in his (a) Colliquies. But what delighted us much more, was (a) *Peregrin. Fig.* 1. a certain Engine made use of here, for the drawing up of Water in great quantities for the use of the City. This is perform'd by means of a Chain, unto which are fastned Cylindrical Buckets of Iron; the Chain being round in form of a Wheel-band, and put over a large *Axis*, deeply furrowed, from whence hanging down into the Well below it, and being turn'd about by the *Axis*, the descending Buckets having their Mouths downward, take up the Water as they pass thro' the Well, which afterwards ascending with their Mouths upwards (yet a little inclining from the Chain outward) they carry up to the *Axis*, to which as soon as they are come, they must, by reason of their Position, turn it out into a Trough placed lower than the *Axis*, by which it is conveyed into a Cistern, and thence by Pipes thro' the City. The deep Furrows in the *Axis* are made to hold up the Buckets, without which, the Chain would be apt to slip back, by reason of the weight of the ascending Buckets. I have seen a many of this kind in *France*, *Spain* and *Italy*. This City has but 7 Parish Churches, but Convents in a great number: In the Church dedicated to *Our Lady*, you see the Monument of *Charles*, sirnamed the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who (as the *French* Inscription tells you) was slain in the Battle of *Nancy*, 1476. and his Body translated thence by the Emperor *Charles* V. We saw here a very tall Fellow, and well-shap'd; from his middle Fingers and to his Elbows was 25 Inches, the length of his Hand to the Wrist 11 Inches, his middle Finger 7 Inches, and the rest of his Limbs proportionable: He was afterwards shown in *England*.

According to *Boetius* of this place, (a Native) certain subterraneous Woods are digg'd up 10 or 12 Ells deep in the Earth, with the Trunks, Boughs, and Leaves so exactly apparent, that the several kinds of them may be easily distinguish'd. The like I have been inform'd, are found in *Friesland* and about *Groningen*, especially in the fenny Ground, where they dig for Turves. In *England* they are call'd *Moss-Wood*, and are likewise found in moorish and boggy Grounds: It is very probable, that in most ancient times, before all Records of Antiquity, these places were Woods on the Continent, and being overwhelm'd by the Sea, continued under water, till the Rivers and Floods brought thither so much Earth and Mudd, as by degrees cover'd these Trees, and rejoin'd them to the Continent. As for the Seas often encroaching upon the Continent, it is manifest on our Coast of *Suffolk* about *Dunwich*; there being very ancient Records, which mention a certain Wood a Mile and a half to the East of *Dunwich*, which is now a great way into the Sea. And, as to what concerns the filling up of such places, I have some Reasons to believe, that if not all, at least a great part of the *Low-Countries* have been thus gain'd from the Sea. I remember that, (a) *Varenius* mentions, that at the sinking of a Well in *Amsterdam*, of 100 Foot deep, they met with a Floor of Sand and Cockle-shells, a convincing Argument that the bottom of the Sea lay so deep there in former Ages, and that in process of time, these hundred Foot of Earth were accumulated and brought thither, by some considerable River or other, which exonerated the Sands which its Stream had wash'd from the high Grounds hereabours. Of this we have divers other Instances in the Flats about *Venice*, and in the *Camarg*, or the Isle of the River *Rhosne*, near *Aix* in *Provence*,

(a) In his Geograph.

Provence, where (as we were credibly informed) the Watch-Tower had been three times removed nearer to the Sea, within the memory of some Men: by reason of the Accession of Land on that side. Some object concerning the Trees digg'd up in *England*, that they being generally taken for Firrs (a Tree that never grows well in *England*) this Argument will not hold in respect of our Country; but till we are better convinced that the Trees they speak of are really Fir Trees, the Solution of this Objection meets with no great Difficulty.

Ghent. We travelled, *April* the 27th, by water, from *Bruges* to *Ghent*, a City encompassing a great Tract of Ground, but scarce half built. It has only 7 Parish Churches, but 55 Religious Houses.

From hence we continued our Journey *April* the 30th, to *Brussels*, by the way of *Alost* (a fortified Town) the *Brussels.* first being the Capital City of *Brabant*, and the Residence of the Governours of the *Spanish Netherlands*. The Inhabitants here, as well as in divers other Cities of the *Low-Countries*, have Dogs to draw their little Wheel-Barrows or Carts, in which they sell Fruits and other small Commodities.

May the 2d, we came to *Louvain*, a City which for its *Louvain.* Circuit exceeds that of *Ghent* by three Rods, but contains like that, abundance of void Ground, and that but indifferently built; The Town-house, which is very stately, being the only Structure worth mentioning here. It has 43 Colleges, the Names of which, with their Founders, you may see in the following Catalogue.

Its Colleges.

1. *Magnum* sive *Majus Theologicum* erectum *per Ludovicum Rockium, Patricium Lovaniensem* & (2.) *Minus, Anno* 1562.
3. *Juris Utriusq;* vulgò *Baccalaureorum*, 1483. per *Robertum à Lacu Gandensem.*
4. St. *Donatiani*, 1414. *Juris studiosis fundatum ab Antonio Haveron.*
5. *Standonicum*, 1490. *à Joanne Standock, Mechliensi, Doctore Sorbonico.*
6. *Atrebatense* 1505. *à Nicolao Rutherio Luxemburgensi.*
7. *Winkelianum*, 1505. *per Joh. Winkelium & ejus filium Medicum Doctorem*, 1554.
8. *Houterlæum*, 1511. *per Henricum de Houterlen.*
9. *Busleidianum* alias *Trilingue, per Hieronymum Busleidium Luxemburgensem*, 1517.
10. *Pontificium*, 1522. *per Adrianum* VI. *Ultrajectinum.*
11. *Sabaudiæ*, 1548, *per Eustachium Chapuys, Sabaudum.*
12. St. *Annæ*, 1553. *per Nicolaum Goblet, Bovinensem.*
13. *Druitianum*, 1559. *per Michaelem Druitium.*
14. *Van Dale*, 1565. *per Petrum Van dale Antwerpiensem, J. U. Dr.*
15. *Viglianum* alias *Frisonum* 1568. *per Viglium ab Aytta Frisium.*
16. *Præmonstratense*, 1571. *per Carolum vander Linden, Parcensem, Ægidium Heyns, Averbodiensem & Michaelem Malenum, Ninoviensem, Abbates.*
17. *Cranendonck*, 1574. *per Marcellum Cranendonck.*
18. *Divæi*, 1576. *per Greg. Divæum, Bruxellensem.*
19. *Brugelianum, unicum Medicorum; à Petro Brugelio Med. Dr.*
20. *Seminarium Regium*, 1579. *per Philippum* II. *Hispanorum, R.*
21. *Pelsianum*, 1574. *per Joh. Pels Westphalum.*
22. *Montense*, 1596. *per Joh. de Bievena, Montensem, J. U. Dr.*
23. *Seminarium Leodiense*, 1605. *per Ernestum Ducem Bavariæ & Episcopum Leodiensem.*
24. St. *Willebrodi, alias Sylvæ Ducense*, 1625. *per Nicolaum Zoesium Episc. Sylvæduc.*
25. *Bayanum sive Reyorum, per Michaelem du Bay, Theologum & Jacobum du Bay hujus è fratre nepotem, & deniq; hujus nepotem Ægidium*, 1614.
26. *Divæ Pulcheriæ*, 1616 *per divisionem cujusdam Fundationis, Universitatis Colonienſis.*
27. *Ordinis Teutonici*, 1617. *per Edmundum Huyn, ab Anstenraedt Ord. Teut. Equite.*
28. *Canonicorum Regularum, St. Augustini*, 1618.
29. *Mylianum sive Luxenburgense*, 1619. *per Joh. Mylium Luxenburgensem, J. U. Dr.*
30. *Hybernicum*, 1623. *per Eugen. Matthæi, Archi-Episcop. Dublinensem.*
31. *Alnense*, 1626. *per Edmundum Feweret.*
32. *Floreffiense*, 1626. *per Joh. Roberts Ord. Floreff, Præsulem.*
33. *Joh. Malderi, Episc. Antverpiensis*, 1633.
34. *Franciſc. Hovii*, 1633.
35. *Minimorum, pro Religiosis, Ord. St. Franciſci de Paula*, 1639.
36. *Beggardorum, pro* Religiosis sui Ord. 1640.
37. *Collegium St. Michaelis*, 1649. *per Laurentium Zoesium.*

Sequuntur quatuor *Pædagogia*, liberalibus artibus & Philosophiæ dicata.

38. *Lilium*, fundatum, 1493.
39. *Falco*, 1488.
40. *Castrum.*
41. *Porcus per Joh: Widoc.*
42. *Vaulxiano* sive *Gandense*, 1593. *per Franciscum Newland Gandensem.* &
43. *Scholæ PP. Augustinianorum*, 1612.

The Students are distinguish'd by their Habits, according to their Professions, the Divines wearing constantly Gowns and square Caps, which the rest were not obliged to, except at publick Exercises; yet are none allowed to wear Swords in the City. In the four *Pædagogies*, Philosophy is only taught by two Professours; the first whereof is stiled *Primarius*, the other *Secundarius*. The first reads in the Morning, from half an Hour after six till half an Hour after seven, and from ten till eleven a Clock. The other in the Afternoon, from half an Hour after One, till half an Hour after Two; and from half an Hour after Four, till half an Hour after Five. They take the Professours Lectures (which are divided into *Dictata* or *Theses*, and Propositions, and *Annotata*, or Objections and Solutions) in certain Note-Books. For the rest, the Gentlemen Students are placed in a peculiar Form, call'd *Scamnum nobilium.* As soon as the Students come to the *Students.* University, they must enter their Names, with the President of their College; every time they are absent from a Lecture, they pay a Penny, for each time of absence from a publick Exercise, three Pence, and if they miss when they are to perform a publick Exercise themselves, twenty Pence. The Professours of each *Pædagogy* chuse every Year twelve (which must be of two Years standing) of their best Scholars; these 48, after they have been publickly examined, twelve out of their number are selected to be *Burses*, and to have their Lodgings, Diet and good Stipend in what College each of them pleases, and to choose what Profession they like best, out of these commonly the Professours are chosen. Their Degrees here are that of *Batchelour, Licentiate* and *Doctor.* After two Years standing in Divinity, they may be created Batchelors or *Baccalaurei currentes*, and at one more *Baccalaurei formati*, and can't be *Licentiates* till seven Years after; these immediately after their Creation, are reputed Gentlemen, and have liberty to choose a Coat of Arms. Doctors are seldom made till they are 50 Years of Age, unless they have given more than ordinary Proof of their Ability.

May the 4th, We took a Walk for half a Mile from *Louvain*, to take a view of the D. of *Aresschot*'s Palace, and the Convent of the *Celestines* adjoining to it; by the way, we found among the Corn the *Caryophyllus arvensis umbelliferus* and *Alsine foliis hederaceis Rutæ modo divisis.*

At *Louvain*, we also saw three things we had not met with before, *viz.* Storks, Women Porters, and Troopers begging on Horse-back.

May the 5th, Leaving *Louvain*, we travell'd to *Mechlin* (*Malines*) a very neat place, being the Seat of an *Mechlin. Malines.* Archbishop, and bearing the Title of one of the 17 Provinces under the name of the *Lordship of Mechlen*, tho' it has not above nine Villages under its Jurisdiction. The Inhabitants are much addicted to Manufactories; and among the rest, there are three whole Streets full of Tanners.

We continued the same Day our Journey to *Antwerp*. *Antwerp.* by Boat, which by some is compared to *Florence*, but exceeds it in my opinion, for beauty. It is encompass'd with Fortifications of Earth, faced with Free-Stone, of a considerable thickness, and a broad and deep Ditch, which together, with its situation in a low and level (a) *Dr. Brown's Travels.* Ground, makes it very strong. The (a) Citadel built by the Duke of *Alva*, is of a Pentagonal Figure. The Houses are generally lofty, and of Brick; the Chapel of the Jesuits very rich and stately; and the Steeple of St. *Mary*'s Church a curious piece of Architecture, as is also the Town-house. Our *Royal Exchange* of *London*, was built after that of *Antwerp*, but the Copy much exceeds the Original; this City being much fain off from its Traffick since the vast increase of Wealth in the United Provinces. *Plantin*'s Printing-House is the best of that kind I ever met with. Among other Curiosities I saw in the Garden of one *Francis van Steerbeck* a Priest, many rare Plants, *viz. Lentiscus, Pistacia, Spiræa Theophrasti, Barba Jovis frutex, Cerasus nana, Amygdalus nana, Althæa montis*

montis Olbii in Gallo-provincia, Morus fructu albo, Jasminum hederaceum, Lycium, Rosa sine spinis, Capparis leguminosa sive Fabago, Convolvulus heptaphyllus, Acanthus aculeatus, Esula rara Venetorum, Petroselinum Macedonicum, Daucus Creticus verus, Convolvulus Althææ folio, Thapsia latifolia, Ephemerum Matthioli, Pistolochia Virginiana, Pyrethrum verum, Auricula ursi folio & flore Boraginis, Sandalida Cretica, Sandariffæ species, Telephium legitimum Antiquorum, Gnaphalium Americanum flore luteo pleno, Spartum marinum, Laurus Alexandrina, Absinthium arborescens, Lilium Alle-bregum majus, Geranium tuberosum, Hellebori albines Spicas, Centaurium majus Helenii folio & Scolymi folio, Coralloides, Urtica fatua Virginiana, Campanula Damascena latescens flore purpureo & albo.

May the 15th, We embark'd aboard a small Vessel at *Lillo* Fort, upon the *Schelde*, three Leagues below *Antwerp*, belonging to the United Provinces: Having a favourable Wind and Tide, we made 54 *English* Miles, and arrived before Sun-set at *Middleburgh*, the Capital City of the Province of *Zealand*: In our Passage we saw several Sea Calves upon the Sands. This City is seated in the very Center of the Isle of *Walchria* (whence it got its Name) being of a large compass, well fortified, populous and wealthy. It has a Channel reaching from the Town thro' that part of the Isle which looks towards *Antwerp*, which being capable of receiving Ships of great burthen, the same are brought into the very Streets of the City. It has about 20 Churches, the *Lutherans*, *French Protestants*, *Anabaptists* and *Jews*, having also the publick Exercise of their Religious Worship allowed them here. *Middelburgh.*

We took a walk hence to *Flushing*, of about three *English* Miles; It is neither so large nor so handsomly built as *Middleburgh*, the Streets being much narrower; but the convenience and goodness of its Harbour, together with its Strength and Riches, makes it very considerable. *Flushingen.*

May the 19th, We took another walk to the *Ter-Vere*, about the same distance from *Middleburgh* to the North; it does not come near to *Flushingen* in bigness, yet has two very good Harbours, and several Wharfs and Keys: As we pass'd along, we found the Banks of the Sea-shoar cover'd with a kind of Matting of Rushes or Flags, staked down as high as the Tide commonly rises, to prevent their being wash'd away by the strength of the Current. *Ter Vere.*

May the 20th, We pass'd in a Boat from *Middleburgh* to *Bergen-op-Zoom*; and in our way by the strong Fort call'd *Rammeken*, situate at the entrance of the Channel leading to *Middleburgh*, a place remarkable for its Fortifications, which are strengthned by many Half Moons, Horn-works, &c. *Bergen-op-Zoom.*

May the 21st, We travelled to *Breda*, eight Hours from *Bergen*, which makes about 24 *English* Miles; it being the Custom of the *Dutch* to measure their Miles by ours. This place stands in competition with most of those Parts for its Strength, Bigness, and number of Inhabitants, being enclosed by very good Fortifications, and two broad Ditches, one of which is always fill'd with Water. It belongs to the Prince of *Orange*, whose Palace and Castle is to be seen here. *Breda.*

May the 22d, We continued our Journey by the way of *Gertrudenburgh* (a small but well fortified place, belonging to the *Dutch*) to *Dort* or *Dodrecht*, a City rich, populous and large, and for its Buildings, to be compar'd with *Antwerp* it self; the Streets being very neatly pav'd (as in all other Cities of *Holland*) with Stone in the middle, and on each side with a peculiar kind of yellow Brick, set edge ways. The *English* enjoy great Privileges here, and have two Churches, whereas the *French* have but one. We saw the Room in the *Gunners Hall*, in which the Synod held in this City 1621. was assembled, the Seats thereof being still preserved. *Dort.*

May the 23d. We pass'd in one of their *Treckschuits* or Boats drawn by Horses, to *Rotterdam* in five Hours. This City is of a Triangular Figure, and near to *Amstendam*, stands in competition with all the other Cities of the United Provinces, not excepting *Leyden* it self, having been considerably augmented of late, by the addition of many new Streets; Not far from St. *Lawrence*'s Church, you see a small House, which having given birth to the Learned *Erasmus*, his Pictures is set over the Door, with this Distich on one side of it: *Rotterdam.*

Ædibus his ortus tenuibus Roterodamus Erasmus
Artibus ingenuis, religione, fide.

And another thus:

Fatalis series nobis non invidit Erasmum,
At Desiderium, tollere non potuit.

His Statue in Brass stands in the great Market-place, with a Book of the same Metal in his Hand. As the Inhabitants of *Rotterdam* enjoy the conveniency of a very good Harbour, so the Ships of very great burthen are carried into the very Streets, so they addict themselves chiefly to Sea-traffick. Their Civil Government is administer'd by a President, four Burgermasters, and 24 *Aldermen* or *Senators*, which they call the *Vroetshap*: These continue in their Stations during life, choose all the publick Officers out of their own number, and if any one dies, have the Privilege of chooling another in his room; so that the Government here, as well as in other Cities of the United Provinces, is a kind of *Aristocracy*, with this difference only, that in some, the number of those who compose this *Vroetshap* is more, in others less.

May the 25th, We went into one of their *Treckschuits*, which go every Hour in the Day from hence to *Delft*, where we arrived in two Hours. This City is also very large, with fair Streets and Water-Channels in them, as most other places in *Holland*. The *Stadthouse* is a goodly Structure, and the Old and New Churches are very large; In the middle of the Quire of the last of these, you see the sumptuous Tomb of *William* Earl of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, who was assassinated by the *Spaniards*, as this following Inscription tells you: *Delft.* The Tomb of Prince *William* of *Nassaw* and *Van Tromp.*

D. O. M.
Et
Æternæ memoriæ
Gulielmi Nassovii,
Supremi Arausionensium Principis,
Patr. Patr.
Qui Belgii fortunis suas posthabuit,
Et suorum
Validissimos exercitus ære plurimum privato
Bis conscripsit, bis induxit;
Ordinum auspiciis Hispaniæ tyrannidem propulit:
Veræ religionis cultum, avitas patriæ leges
Revocavit, restituit:
Ipsam denique libertatem tantum non assertam
Mauritio Principi,
Paternæ virtutis hæredi, filio,
Stabiliendam reliquit;
Heroïs vere filii, prudentis, invicti;
Quem Philip. II. Hisp. R. ille Europæ timor, timuit,
Non domuit, non terruit;
Sed empto percussore fraude, nefanda
Sustulit.
Fœderat. Belg. Provinc.
Perenne memor. monum.
Fec.

In the Quire of the Old Church is the Tomb of the famous *Van Trump* with this Inscription:

Æternæ Memoriæ,
Qui Batavos, qui virtutem ac verum laborem amas, Lege ac lege.
Batavæ gentis decus, virtutis bellicæ fulmen hic jacet, qui vivus nunquam jacuit, & imperatorem stantem debere mori suo exemplo docuit; Amor civium, hostium terror, Oceani stupor, Martinus Harperti Trompius: *Quo nimirum plures continentur laudes, quam hic lapis capit sane angustior; Ex cui Schola Oriens & Occidens, mare materia triumphorum, Universus Orbis theatrum gloriæ fuit: Prædonum certa pernicies, commercii fulix assertor, familiaritate utilis non vilis, postquam navibus ac militibus, durum genus, paterno & cum efficacia benigno rexit imperio, post L. prælia, quorum Dux fuit aut pars magna, post insignes, supra fidem, victorias, post summos, infra meritum, honores, tandem bello Anglico, nautum non victor, certe invictus, X Aug. Anno Æræ Christianæ M.D.C.L.IV. Ætat. LVI. vivere ac vincere desiit. Fœderati Belgii Patres Heroi optime merito M.P.*

Over his Arms was written the following Distich.

Urbs (a) Phœbi cineres jactat, sed ciconiæ (b) honores
Ingreditur quoties egreditusque; mari.

(a) i. e. Delphi.
(b) Phœbi nimirum seu Solis.

One Mr. *Mees* an Apothecary of that City had a fine *Museum* of natural and artificial Rarities, and among the rest, the *Dens Hippopotami* (tho' I question whether there be such an Animal) the Horns of the *Hirtus Bezoardicus*, and the *Cornua & pedes Alces*, call'd the *Elk* in *English*, the same I suppose, which in *New-England* and *Virginia*, is call'd *Moose*, a Species of Deer of a tall and large size, the Horns being without Brow-Antlers, but only a broad Palm of several Snags upon it. I saw one of these Horns at *Leyden*, at Mr. *Hotey*'s an Apothecary, that weighed 25 Pounds;

Pounds, and the Skin of an *Elk* stuft, in the *Great Duke* of *Florence*'s Gallery. In the Anatomical Theatre we also saw many Rarities, too many to be inserted here. *Delft* is famous for its Earthen Ware, which is made in great plenty here, in imitation of the true *China* Ware.

The Government is administer'd by a *Prætor* or *Schout*, two *Burgermesters*, seven *Eschevins*, and forty *Senators*, which they call also the *Vroetschap*.

Hagus. *May* the 28th, We pass'd by Water, in less than an Hours time, to the *Hague*, being rather a Village than a City, and not enclosed with Walls or any thing else; but for the fairness of its Streets and beautiful Houses, and number of People, may challenge the preference before many goodly Cities. The Grove which is near it, is exceeding pleasant, and here I first saw the *Monophyllum* grow wild, as I found at *Scheveling*, a Village on the Sea-side, near the *Hague*, a *species* of *Spartum maritimum*, much larger than our *English* kind.

Lausdun. Whilst we were at the *Hague*, we took the opportunity of viewing the Burial place of a certain Lady of *Zealand*, in the Church of *Lausdun*, a Village about five or six *English* Miles from the *Hague*, who as the Inscription tells you, was *Margaret* the Wife of *Herman*, Earl of *Hennenbergh*, and Daughter of *Florentius*, Earl of *Holland* and *Zealand*, and Sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, &c. This Lady being about 40 Years of Age, and meeting with a poor Woman that had two Twins in her Arms, told her that she must have been dishonest to her Husband, as not believing that two Children could be begot at once; at which the poor Woman being highly concern'd, wish'd that she might bring forth as many Children at a Birth, as there were Days in the Year; which was fulfilled 1276, when at one birth she was brought to bed of 365 Children of both Sexes, who were baptiz'd by *Guido*, a Suffragan of *Utrecht*, in two Brass Basons, the Sons having the name of *John*, and the Daughters that of *Elizabeth* given them; and soon after died all in one Day, as did also the Mother, and were buried in this Church of the Village of *Lausdun*. This Inscription is to be seen in *Latin*, over the two Basons in which, they say, these Children were baptiz'd, and beneath it also this following Distinchon:

A memorable Story.

En tibi monstrosum nimis & memorabile factum,
Quale nec à mundi conditione datum.

Leyden. *May* the 31st, we went in one of their Passage-boats in three Hours from hence to *Leyden*, being next to *Amsterdam*, the largest City in *Holland*. The great Church of St. *Peter* contains many Monuments of learned Men, and in the *French* Church is also to be seen among others, that of *Joseph Scaliger*. The Schools for publick Lectures is a Structure of three Stories high, of Brick, having two Rooms on a Floor; the two lowermost being assign'd for Divinity and Physick; middlemost for Law and Philosophy; and the uppermost contains the Printing-House, known by the Name of *Officina Elzeviriana*. Every Year a Catalogue is printed in *Latin*, and affixed to the School Gates, containing the names of the Professours, and what publick Lecture each of them is to keep the Year following. Behind the School Yard is the Physick Garden, which encloses about an Acre of Ground in the Square, and has a considerable number of exotick Plants; the Catalogues of which are also frequently publish'd here. They have no more than two Colleges here, in the nature of Hospitals, for the Sustinence of poor Scholars, the rest of the Students living upon their own Purse, without any Gowns or Caps, but walk the Streets with their Swords, and appear in the Schools, and perform their Exercises in them, with their Heads uncover'd. Those that have a mind to be Members of the University, apply themselves to the *Rector Magnificus* (resembling the Vice-Chancellour of our University) who enters them into the Book, and gives them them a Seal, by which they are freed from paying of Excise, yet under a certain limitation. Besides the publick Lectures, each of the Professours allot certain Hours for reading in private (which they call *Collegia*) for which the Auditors pay a certain Gratuity. Degrees (of which they have only those of *Master of Arts* and of Doctors) are conferr'd here, without the least respect to the standing of the Candidates. He that is to commence in any Faculty, proposes only certain Theses upon a selected Subject in print, which he is obliged to maintain against all Opponents, every one having the liberty (after leave ask'd from the Professour that presides) to oppose the Candidate. Each of these Professours have a Sallery of betwixt 200 and 300*l. per annum* allowed them. Besides the University, there is a great deal of Woollen Cloth made in this City. For the rest, the Houses are very well built, with very steep Roofs on purpose to cast the Rain Water into certain Cisterns, wherein it is preserved for use. Its Streets are for the most part very broad, large, and streight, furnish'd with Water Chanels. In the Night time certain Watch Men go about the Streets, and making a noise with a Rapper, tell every Hour what time of Night it is. In the Anatomical Theatre, we saw many Skeletons of Men and Beasts, and among other Rarities, a Box, containing the Skeleton of a certain Head of an *Indian* Creature; half a Stag's, half a Hogs-head; many leaves of the *Bethle*, not unlike the great *Satyrion* Leaf; an *Ant-Bear*; and in the Library, the Manuscripts of *Joseph Scaliger*. *Leyden* is enclosed with a good Earthen Wall, and a Ditch, which being surrounded by divers rows of Lime-Trees, make very pleasant Walks.

The University.

See Brown's Travels.

Scevenhuse. Before we parted from *Leyden*, we took a turn to a Village call'd *Scevenhuse*, about four Leagues thence, to view a very pleasant Grove near it, excellently well stor'd with Wild Fowl, such as *Scholfers*, call'd *Shags* in *England*, being not unlike *Cormorants*, but somewhat less; we were much surprised to see them build upon Trees. *Lopelaers*, call'd *Plateæ* and *Pelicani* by *Gesner*, some call them *Spoonbills* in *England*. *Quacks*, call'd *Night-Ravens* by the *Germans*, because they always make a noise in the Night time, and *Reyers* or *Herons*; Besides which, this Wood affords vast numbers of *Ravens*, *Wood-Pidgeons* and *Turtle Doves*. By the way, we took notice of *Lysimachia lutea flore globoso*, and the *Arum sive Dracunculus* growing in the Ditches. All the Grounds betwixt this Village and *Leyden*, are low, fenny, and full of Pools. We saw the Country People hereabouts busied in making of Turf: They take with a kind of Hoop-net, fastned to a Pole, the Mud up from the bottom of a standing Pool, wherewith having laden a Boat, they throw this Mud with long Shovels on an even piece of Ground, making of it a Bed of an equal bigness as near as they can guess; this, after it has lain long enough to dry, they tread with pieces of Boards fastned to their Feet, to make it close and smooth; then they cut the whole Bed with a Spade into pieces of the bigness of a Brick, and pile them up in Stacks or Ranks, so that one may see thro' them, to give a free Passage to the Air and Wind, to dry them further, and afterwards are laid up in Barns, the sides of which being made up with wooden Bars at some distance from one another, to make them fit for firing.

The manner of making Turf.

Harlem. *June* the 6th, We continued our Journey in one of the Boats that go from this place to *Harlem*, where we arrived in four Hours; being a populous, long, strong and pleasant City; provided with very fair Chanels in divers of its Streets: It has most delightful natural Groves on that side where it looks towards *Leyden*; In the Garden of the Prince's House is a Summer-house, where you see the Picture of *Laurence Coster*, in a furr'd Gown, holding the Letter A in his Hand, with this Inscription over it:

M. S. *Viro Consulari*, Laurentio Costero *Harlemensi alteri Cadmo, & Artis Typographicæ circa Annum Domini* MCCCCXXXX, *Inventori primo.*

The Statue and Inscription which was on his House in the Market-place, are no more to be seen now, the House being sold. The chief Trade in this City is in weaving of Silks, Damasks, Velvets, Satins, Linen Cloths, &c. The Sea Coast near *Harlem*, and all *North Holland*, are covered against the Sea with green Downs.

Amsteldam *June* the 8th, We went hence in two Hours by Boat to *Amsteldam*, where we met at the Gate no more than two Souldiers, one without, the other within: This City, as it is the biggest of all the Low-Countries, so for Riches and Traffick, may compare with any in *Europe*. At that time I look'd upon the extent of it to be the same with *Venice*, and consequently less by one half than *London*, but as they were then busied in enclosing a very large Tract of Ground with a strong Wall and deep Ditch (which I hear is since fill'd up with stately Houses) it will bid fair for being numbred among those of the first rank for bigness. The chief publick Buildings here are, The *Stadthouse*, a most magnificent square Pile of Buildings, fac'd without with Free-stone; the Foundation of which, as they told us, cost 100000*l.* sterling, the Structure being built upon 13659 great Piles or Trees driven into the Ground. The Exchange a large Oblong Square, frequented by a vast number of all Nations. The *Admiralty-House* a goodly Structure, with fair Rooms. The *Magazine* and divers *Hospitals* and *Houses of Correction*. In this City is also a publick School, in which are kept Lectures in divers faculties, by six Professours, especially in

See Dr. Brown's Travels.

Its publick Structures.

in the Summer time. The number of *Jews*, who are richer here than in any other place, is computed to amount to 20000: In this City are also tolerated most other Religions (not excepting the Roman Catholick) but none, except those of the establish'd Religion, are permitted to erect any Steeples upon their Churches, or to make use of Bells for the assembling of the Congregation. In that stately Structure, call'd the *New Church*, you see a very fair Monument, erected to the memory of *John van Galen*, with this Inscription:

Generosissimo Heroi
Johanni à Galen
Essensi
Ob res fortiter & feliciter gestas, sexies uno anno, Dunkirkanorum navem captam, & à Barbaris opima spolia reportata, Ordinum Classi in Mari Mediterraneo Praefectus, memorabili prælio ad Livornam, Deo auxiliante, Anglorum navibus capsis, fugatis, & incendio deletis, commercium cum dicti maris accolis restituit, idibus Martii, Anno M.DC.LIII. *Et uno pede truncatus, nono post victoriam die, annos natus* LVIII. *obiit, ut in secula per gloriam viveret.*
Illustriss. & Praepotent. Foederati Belgii
Ordinum decreto,
Nob. & Pot. Senatus Archithalass.
Qui est Amstelodami
M. H. P.

Its Government.

The Pulpit of this Church is valued at 1000*l.* sterling, and there are 24 establish'd Ministers belonging to this City.

The Government is administer'd here by the *Prætor* or *Schout*, four *Burgermasters*, nine *Eschevins*, and 36 Counsellors or Senators, which they call the *Vroetshop*. The *Prætor* has the first place upon the Bench of the *Eschevins*: He is elected by the *Burgermasters* (with the approbation of the *Vroetshop*) for three Years, but may be continued in his Office from time to time: He cannot aspire to this Dignity unless he has been a Free-man seven Years. His Business is to make Laws in Conjunction with the *Burgermasters* and *Eschevins*, to apprehend and imprison Criminals, and he presides as Lord Chief Justice in Civil as well as Criminal Causes; and with the approbation of the *Burgermasters* and *Eschevins*, determines the Matters before them, and pronounces Sentence against Criminals, and sees it put in execution. In other Cities the *Prætor*'s Concern reaches no farther than to apprehend and prosecute Malefactors. The whole number of *Burgermasters* consists of twelve, but four only are regent at a time, which is a Year; they must be forty Years of age at least. For, every Year, the *Burgermasters* that have been *Eschevins*, choose by the majority of Votes, three out of the twelve to be Regents, which three selected out of the four that reigned the Year before, a fourth, who tenders them the Oath, and officiates as President the first three Months. The remaining eight *Burgermasters* are employ'd in divers other great Offices, such as Treasurers, Masters of Hospitals, one to be sent in the Quality of Deputy, to the Assembly of the States in the *Hague*, one for a Member of the Council of the Admiralty of *Amsterdam*, &c. The Office of the *Burgermaster's Regent*, is, to take care of the Government and Peace of the whole City, to determine Differences between private Persons, to be surveyors of the Fortifications, Streets, and Publick Buildings. If one of the twelve *Burgermasters* happen to die, it belongs to the *Vroetshop* to chuse another. When the *Eschevins* are to be elected, the *Vroetshop* proposes 14 Persons, out of which the *Burgermasters* select seven; but one condition is, that they must not be near of kin either to the *Schout*, or any of the *Burgermasters Regent*. Unto those seven, the *New* and *Old Burgermasters*, together with the newly elected *Eschevins*, do, by the majority of Voices, add two out of the number of the *Eschevins* chosen the last Year, which two for that Year have the first and second Rank among the *Eschevins*, who are Judges both in Civil and Criminal Causes. The Council of 36, or *Vroetshop* continue in their places for life, and as often as one of that College dies, the rest chuse another in his place, but no body under 25 Years of Age is admitted into this Council. They not only, as we told you, have the power of presenting the 14 Persons out of whom the *Eschevins* are chosen, but are also call'd together by the *Burgermasters*, when any thing of great moment is to be debated or resolved upon; so that the Supreme Power seems chiefly to be lodged in them. Not many Years ago, according to the Constitution of this City, no Body could be *Burgermaster*, unless his Father had been a Free-man a Year and six Weeks before he was born; but now any one who will pay 500 Gilders, may be made a Free Man, and after seven Years, is qualified to be made a *Burgermaster*; but such as don't aspire to this Dignity, may be made a Free Man for 50 Gilders a Man. The City Trained-Bands, did then consist of 54 Companies, divided into four Regiments, of eleven Companies each, 150 Men in a Company, which amounted to 8250. Two Companies are drawn out every Night to guard the City.

June the 10th, We prosecuted our Journey to *Utrecht*, by the ordinary Passage Boat, where we arrived in six hours. This is the Capital City of the Province of the same name; a large place, surrounded with a good Earthen Wall and deep Ditch; but its Streets are not comparable for neatness and cleanness to those of the Province of *Holland*, tho' the Water Channels are also conveyed thro' several Streets. The University here, was establish'd by the States General, 1636; The Professors of which, as well as those of *Leyden*, publish a yearly Printed Catalogue of their Names and intended Lectures. For the administration of the Government, they have an *Upper* and *Lower Schout* and four *Burgermasters*, whereof two are new chosen every Year. *Utrecht.*

Hence we pass'd by Boat to *Vianen*, a place for refuge, belonging to the Lord of *Brederode*. We saw here a certain Engine, for the weaving of Tape by the motion of many Shuttles at a time. *Vianen.*

We continued our Journey the same Day thro' *Leerdam* (about three Hours distant from *Vianen*) and the 19th *June*, thro *Asperen*, below which we cross'd the River *Wale* or *Vahalis* in a Ferry-boat, and came to a very pleasant wall'd Town, call'd *Bommel*, seated in an Island; a small distance hence we ferried over the *Muese*, and passing in sight of two strong Forts near the River side, one call'd *Crevecœur*, and the other *Engelen*, came in four Hours to *Hertogenbosch*, *Sylva Ducis*, or *Bois-le-duc*, as the *French* call it. *Leerdam. Asperen. Bommel.*

As this City is seated upon a kind of a Hill, surrounded with Fenns of a great extent, the greatest part of which was then (and is generally so) covered with Water, we pass'd upon Causeways, and thro' a Water, and over two Draw-bridges, before we entred the Town. Besides which, it being strengthned by a good Wall and deep Ditch, and defended by a regular Citadel, this, with its situation, seems to render it impregnable, yet has it been taken in the late Wars. In the Quire of the Church of St. *John*, are to be seen the Arms of many of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, and over the upper Stalls an Inscription in *French*, importing, That *Philip*, sirnamed the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, *Lorrain* and *Brabant*, had, 1429. instituted in the City of *Bruges*, a Company of Honourable Knights, unto whom he had given the name of *Knights of the Golden Fleece*, limiting their number to 24. Their Chief to be the Duke of *Burgundy*, or Supreme Lord of the *Low-Countries* for the time being. The Houses here are for the most part covered with Boards on the out-side; the Marshes about it produce great store of Wild Fowl, and the sandy gravelly Banks the *Herniaria hirsuta*. *Hertogenbosch.*

June the 20th, We travell'd in a kind of Wagon in six Hours to *Eindhoven*, and thence in four Hours more to *Haumont*, being both small, but wall'd Towns; the last of which belongs to the Bishop of *Liege*.

June the 21st, We travell'd for three Hours thro' Heaths to *Bry*, a small wall'd Town, and afterwards ascending the Hills, had a full view of *Maestricht*, and the River *Maese*, where we arriv'd that Evening after seven Hours riding. It is a strong, well fortify'd City, strengthned with very good Out-works. The Magistracy here are half *Protestants*, and half *Romanists*, and of the last are the greatest part of the Inhabitants; tho' the *Dutch* Protestants have also three Churches, and the *English* and *French* one, which they use by turns. The *Catholicks* have twenty Convents here; and are allowed the publick Exercise of their Religion. Most of the old Houses are of the same stamp with those of *Hertogenbosch*, but many new Brick-houses have been built of late Years. They were then also building a very goodly square Structure, intended for their Town House. The River *Maese*, which divides the City into two parts, is join'd to both by a large Stone Bridge, sustain'd by nine Arches, and the lesser part on the other side is call'd the *Wick*, being not inferiour in strength to the other part. *Bry. Maestricht.*

The Manners and Customs of the Dutch.

As to what relates to the common People of *Holland*, it must be confess'd they are a surly and ill bred Generation, which is the Reason that no Strangers that know the Country will deal with Inn-keepers, Wagoners, Boatmen, Porters, and such like, without bargaining beforehand. The Men are generally very large boned and bulky, and these, as well as the Women, are constantly eating as they travel. At their Common Entertainments, a

Sallad commonly leads the Van, a kind of stew'd Meat is the main part of the Dinner, and it concludes with some boil'd and butter'd Herbs. The chief Food of the ordinary People is Codfish and pickled Herrings, which they cure better than the *English*. In the publick Houses, you commonly meet with smoaked Beef, cut in thin slices, good Bread and Butter, and four or five sorts of Cheeses. Their strong drink (they call it *Dick* beer, and very properly, for it seldom is clear) is sold for three Pence a Quart; the dearness of which arises partly from the heavy Excise laid upon this, as well as all other Belly Commodities; partly from the plenty of Money in those Provinces, which makes Land to be sold here at betwixt 30 and 40 Years purchase. Most of their Beds are made close like Cabbins, both narrow and short, and yet you pay an excessive rate for them in the Inns. Their Houses are kept exceeding neat, even to the out-side of Pots and Pothooks, nay, the very Tiles of the Pent-Houses; yet has it been observable, that in dressing their Meats, they are not so clean and curious as the *English*. They use Organs in most of their Churches; collect Money for the Poor in Sermon-time, with a Purse fastned to a Stick, and a Bell hanging to it. The Psalms to be sung are set down upon Slates hung to the Walls of the Church for that purpose. They seldom travel on Horse-back, but generally in Waggons, some cover'd, others not, but most by Water; and this on Sundays as well as on other Days. Beggars are very seldom seen in *Holland*, notwithstanding its vast multitude of People, this Province containing no less than 24 Wall'd Towns and Cities, six of which (besides *Amsterdam*) are bigger than any in *England*, except *London*. And upon this occasion, I can't but give you the Heads of some Observations made by *Francis Bacon* Esq; who was in *Holland* with my Lord Ambassadour *Holles*.

Bacon's Remarks upon the Dutch.

There is, says he, a continual Watch kept upon the Steeples, in all the Cities of the *United Provinces*: The Differences arising among Boats Men and Waggoners, who shall go first, are decided by casting a Die. They gather the Rain Water by Pipes from the Houses and preserve it in Cisterns, as they do at *Venice*. The *Dutch* stand much in awe of their Superiours, because Justice is done here without delay. They are strangely addicted to Novelties, and mightily taken with any thing that is gay. They are extreamly greedy of Lucre, yet very just in their Bargains. The knowledge how to get Money, is what they esteem above all other things, and scarce ever apply themselves to any thing besides that and Politicks, in which they are generally well versed; the meanest of them being qualified by his Birth-right to become a *Burgermaster*. They fight bravely at Sea, tho' naturally they are of a phlegmatick temper, and consequently not fit for brave Exploits by Land. They allow of Liberty of Religion, but keep a watchful Eye over them to secure the publick Peace; which is the Reason that it is more difficult to hatch a Plot here, than in other parts, tho' at the same time, the people say and print almost what they please, the same being included within the general Notion of Liberty. Most of them have little Sense of Honour or Generosity, being guided meerly by the Prospect of Advantage or Interest. They don't prosecute Murder with so much violence as Theft. The *Dutch* are always careful to solemnize any great Action done by them, with all the publick Marks of Honour and Rejoicings, to imprint into the common People an Idea of the Ability and Wisdom of their Governours; which is the reason they frequently erect Monuments to those who have deserved well of the Commonwealth. The ordinary sort of Women (if not all) seem to be more pleas'd with obscene Discourses than the *English* or *French*: They have also the reputation of making not so severe an account of Chastity before Marriage, but of being very faithful to their Husbands. Even the better sort of Women are not backward of admitting Men, tho' of very little Acquaintance to a Salute; and kissing passes current here, not only at parting and upon Returns, but also in Frolicks and familiar Conversation. Most Women here are Privy to all the Actions of their Husbands, who seldom undertake any thing without their Knowledge and Approbation. They have abundance of Chiming in their Cities, and vast multitudes of Storks building their Nests upon the tops of the Chimnies. This however is not only observable in *Holland*, but also at *Louvain*, and in other Towns of the King of *Spain*'s Dominions, as well as in divers places belonging to Soveraign Princes in *Germany*, which contradicts that commonly received opinion, That those Birds never builds their Nests, but in Commonwealths.

June the 22d, We went from *Maestricht* to *Liege*, four Leagues distant. As we pass'd up the Hills, we observed at some distance from *Maestricht*, an arched Passage into a Vault, but being by the wet Season prevented from taking a view of it ourselves, I will here give you the Sense of (a) our *Royal Society* concerning it. This Quarry, says they, lies within a Cannon shot of *Maestricht*, being cover'd with 25 Fathoms of Rock or Earth; in length along the River towards *Liege* being of some Miles; and having one Entry near the River side, Carts can, with a great deal of ease, unload the Stones upon the Banks of the River; the Quarry within lying parallel to the Horizon or Level, and very little elevated above the River. After you have entred the Vault with Torches, it affords a most surprizing prospect to the Beholders, who see here some thousands of square Pillars in spacious level Walks, generally 20 Foot (and some more) high, so regularly wrought, that one would imagine, that the whole was designed for one of the Subterraneous Palaces of the ancient *Roman* Emperors; whereas the whole is no more than the Effect of the Quarriers, who come here to get Stone. This noble Quarry has another remarkable use serving the People for a retreating place, when Armies are marching that way, as being able to hold 40000 Men, who by reason of the many Pillars and Labyrinths, are able to defend themselves with their Fire Arms, against any Power that may attack them.

(a) *Transact.* Numb. 6. P. 2051.

See Dr. *Brown's* Travels.

Further upon the Downs, we observed three or four more of those Passages, and came before Night to *Liege*, a City, tho' very large, yet for Beauty and Riches, not comparable to those of *Holland*; the Houses being cover'd on the sides either with Boards or Clay, and the Streets narrow and very ill kept. The River *Maese*, divides it self, and runs thro' the River in two or three Branches, which are join'd by several Bridges. It is however very pleasantly situated, but surrounded with Hills, on one of which stands the Cittadel, the sides of those Hills being cover'd with Orchards and Vineyards. Provisions are very cheap here, and the People very courteous: The Women are not so fair as in *Holland*, and do a great deal of drudgery. They have Coal Pits near the Town, some of which are 150 Yards deep. The Cathedral Church, dedicated to St. *Lambert*, has 60 *Canonicos majores*, who must be all of noble extraction, except that they admit a few Men of learning among them. These elect the Bishop of *Liege*. Besides these, there belongs to it twelve *Canonici Mediocres*, and twelve more stiled *minores sive puræ Mensæ*. The three States of this Dioceſs, composed of the *Clergy*, *Gentry* and *Commons*, have a considerable share in the Government: No Tax being to be imposed, or other matters of great weight to be transacted without their approbation. This City is fill'd up with Religious Houses; In the *English Jesuits* College Garden, we saw divers Dials, the Invention of the ingenious *Franciscus Lucas*, and in the Cloister of the *Williamites*, without the Walls, the Tomb-stone of our Country Man Sr. *John Mandeville*, with this Inscription:

Liege.

HIC JACET VIR NOBILIS DNS JOES DE MANDEVILLE AL' DICTUS AD BARBAM MILES DNS DE CAPDI NATUS DE ANGLIA, MEDICINE PROFESSOR, DEVOTISSIMUS ORATOR, ET BONORUM LARGISSIMUS PAUPERIBUS EROGATOR, QUI TOTO QUASI ORBE LUSTRATO, LEODII DIEM VITE SUE CLAUSIT EXTREMUM ANNO DNI M°. CCC°. LXXI°. MENSIS NOVEMBRIS DIE XVII.

On the same Tomb-stone was also to be seen the Figure of an armed Man, treading on a Lion, with a forked Beard, and his Hand lift upwards in a Blessing Posture, with these Words going out of his Mouth, *VOS QUI PASEIS SOR MI POUR L' AMOUR DEU PRETES POR MI.* Which being old *French*, signifies, *You that pass over me, for the love of God pray for me.*

We left *Liege* the 26th of *June*, and travelling for seven Hours over hilly and rocky places, arrived at the *Spaa*, a pleasant little wall'd place, situate in a deep Valley. It is very well built, by reason of the concourse of many Strangers here, for the drinking of Mineral Waters; of which there are four several Springs. In the adjacent Woods and the Rocks, I met with the following rare Plants, rarely seen to grow wild, *viz. Asclepias flore albo, Polygonatum minus, Cynanchum majus, Rapunculus spicatus, Campanula persicifolia, Sideritis flore pallido similis Ledano segetum.*

The Spaa.

See Dr. *Brown's* Travels.

We pursued our Journey *June* the 28th, to *Aken*, taking our way thro' *Limburgh*, three Hours from the *Spaa*, a place of great strength for its situation, being situate on the side of very difficult access, but it has but one Street, and the Houses only of Wood. *Aken* or *Aix-la-Chapelle*,

Limburgh.

Aken.

Chapelle, as the *French* call it, to distinguish it from *Aix* in *Provence*, is a large and strong place, and a free Imperial City, being strengthned by a double Wall, and adorned with no less than 30 Churches. The Chair wherein the Emperor sits when he is crowned here, has its sides of Ivory, and they say, that the bottom is made of a piece of Wood belonging to *Noah's* Ark. The Government of this City is administred by a Major, two *Burgermasters*, 14 *Eschevins*, and 120 Counsellors. The Major has the Presidence among the *Eschevins*, is put in the by Duke of *Juliers*, and continues in his place for life, *or quam diu se bene gesserit*. The *Burgrimasters* are elected by the majority of the Companies of the City; and administer this Office two Years, a new one being chosen every Year. The *Eschevins* officiate in the quality of Judges, during life, another being chosen in the place of him who dies. The Councellors are also chosen by the several Companies, of which there are 14 or 15. The Territories belonging to this City are very large, comprehending near 200 Villages, enclosed on all sides with Mountains; which producing abundance of *Lapis Calaminaris*, this is employed here in great quantity, to turn Copper into Brass. But what renders this Town most famous are the *Mineral hot Baths*, some of which are within, the rest without the Town, at a Village call'd *Borcet*; These latter both in heat, and plenty of Water, much exceeds ours in *England*, being so hot, that one may boil an Egg in them. Their taste was saltish, and they were used both inwardly and outwardly. One Day as we were walking to *Borcet*, we saw a certain Pool, whose Waters were luke-warm, by reason of a small stream of one of the Springs of the hot Baths passing thro' it; They told us that it bred very good Fish, but that they were fain to put them into cold Water for two Months, before they eat them. Of the Nature, different Kinds, Ingredients and Uses of those Baths, both within and without the City, *Francis Blondel*, M. D. has treated at large in his Epistolar Discourse, published in *French*.

See Dr. *Brem.*

Of the *Lapis Calaminaris* Mines as well as the Baths of *Aken*, see Dr. *Brem's* Travels

From *Aken* we continued our Journey to *Juliers*, five Hours thence; a small but neat City, the Houses low, but of Brick, the Streets are somewhat narrow, yet it has a fair Market-place. Its Fortifications are considerable, but the Citadel (in which is the Ducal Palace, a stately Structure) may compare for Beauty, Bigness, and Strength, with any of *Europe*. The chief Employment of the Inhabitants here, is the making of Malt.

Juliers.

June the 30th, We went hence towards *Cologne*, and passing thro' *Bercheim*, a little wall'd Town, met by the High-ways, among the Woods and Hedges, with *Mezereon Germanicum*, *Mollugo montana latifolia ramosa*, *Pulmonaria maculosa*, *Galeopsis sive Urtica incers flore purpurascente majore*, *folio non maculato*, and among the Corn, with *Vaccaria Germ.*

Cologne, dignified with the Title of an Archbishoprick, is a free Imperial City, and perhaps the biggest in all *Germany*, in which however are excluded 300 Acres, planted with Vines, besides many other void spaces. The middle part of the City is very well built, having two very handsome Market-places: The Walls are lofty and of Stone, with two deep Trenches and divers Out-works. In the Cathedral of St. *Peter* are preserved the Bodies of the three Wise Men, that came to bring their Offrings to our Saviour, enclosed in a Chest of Gold. The number of the *Canons Nobles* belonging to this Church, consists of 54, besides eight *Canons Presbyters*; these 62 in conjunction with the Dean (who has two Voices) and two *Burgermasters Regent* (who have four Voices) of this City, choose the Archbishop. The Government of the City is in the Hands of six *Burgermasters*, seven *Eschevins*, and 150 Councellors; they all continue during life; but of the first, two are only Regents at a time, for a Year: The *Eschevins* are chosen by the Archbishop, as the Councellors are by the Companies of the City, and fifty only are in Power yearly, so that it returns to the same Persons every third Year. If a *Burgermaster* dies, the Councellors have power to choose another in his room. The Inhabitants are generally *Roman Catholicks*, yet have the *Lutherans* a Church within the Walls, but the *Calvinists* are obliged to go to Church on the other side of the *Rhine*.

Cologne.

At *Cologne* we took a Boat, drawn by Men, which carried us up the *Rhine* to *Vdich*, an inconsiderable Village; hereabouts we found among the Corn, *Delphinium flore purpuro-caruleo vulgare*, and *Nigella arvensis*; and in the barren Grounds adjoining to the River *Struthus citrina Germanica latiore folio*.

Next Morning we pass'd by *Bunn* upon the same River, the ordinary residence of the Electors of *Cologne*; and lodged at Night at a poor Town call'd *Brisacq*.

Bunn.

July the 6th, We pass'd by *Rhineck* to our right, and came to *Andernach*, over against which is the Castle of *Hammerstein*, belonging to the Elector of *Treves*. Further we pass'd betwixt two Castles, belonging to the Earl of *Wied*, that on the right hand being seated upon a high Rock, with a Cloister adjoining to it. Two Leagues from *Andernach*, we pass'd by *Singen*, and the same night came to *Coblentz*.

Andernach.

This City, which is the most considerable belonging to the Archbishop of *Treves*, is call'd in *Latin Confluentes*, from its situation at the Conflux of the Rivers the *Mosselle* and the *Rhine*. Over the first of which is a Bridge here of 13 Arches, as there is over the *Rhine*, a Bridge of Boats to the strong Castle of *Hermanstein*, situate upon a Rock, with a very sumptuous Palace below it, belonging to the same Archbishop. Not far from *Coblentz*, are the Mineral Springs, near *Helfenstein* Castle, of which kind there are several in those parts, as for instance, one at *Anthony's-Slona*, four Hours from *Andernach*, and another at *Zwalbach*, four Miles from *Frankfort*, they are generally drank mix'd with Wine, unto which they give a pleasant taste and purging quality, but I did not observe in them, what the beforementioned Dr. *Blondel* affirms, that they smoak, or are hot when they are mix'd with Wine.

Coblentz.

July the 7th, We pass'd by several Castles and small Places upon the *Rhine*, as the Town and Castle of *Lodestein* on the left, and *Capelle* on the right hand; next the small Town of *Rens* and *Brombach*, *Boppart* on the same side, and the Castle of *Bornholm* on the left.

Taking up our Quarters in the Village of *Hertznach*, we came, *July* the 8th, in the Morning to St. *Goer*, a pretty small Town, under the Jurisdiction of the *Lantgrave* of *Hessen*, who has a very handsome Castle here, built upon a Rock. The Magistrates and most of the Inhabitants are *Calvinists*, yet have the *Lutherans* as well as the *Catholicks*, each their Church. Just opposite to St. *Goer*, you see the Town and Castle of *Wellnich*, and further to the right, the Town and Castle of *Wesel*, under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Treves*, and higher up on the left hand, the Town and Castle of *Cub*, the latter upon a Rock belonging to the Elector *Palatine*. The next place of any note we came to was *Baccharach*, a wall'd Town, adorned with many Towers, famous for the goodness of its Wine, as is likewise a certain Tract of Ground about *Rüngaw*, a Town near *Mayence*. Our Boat-men paid Toll in this as well as several other places upon the *Rhine*.

St. Goer.

We pass'd the same Day in sight of divers mean Towns and Villages, and *July* the 9th, by *Aspithouse* Castle, and immediately after by the *Mouse-Tower*, built in a little Island of the *Rhine*. Further up the River on the right hand we left *Bing*, a tolerable good Town, and passing by *Rhodes*, *Gison*, *Elvelds* and *Wallop*, to the left hand, arrived the same Night at *Mayence*.

Bing.

From *Cologne* as far as to the Village of *Vidich*, the River is very broad, but thence up to the *Mouse-Tower*, much narrower, by reason of the many Hills and Rocks on both sides, some of which are cover'd with Woods, others with Vines and Orchards. The Vines are ty'd to Stacks much lower than those we use in our Hop Gardens. In the Corn Fields, Meadows, Rocks, Woods and Sands near the River side, we found the following Plants, rarely found to grow wild in other places, viz. *Gentiana cruciata*, *Chamædrys spuria angustifolia*, *Chondrilla juncea*, *Chamædrys laciniatis foliis*, *Lychnis sylvestris caliculis striatis*, *Perficaria siliquosa*, *Genistella montana Germanica*, *Genistella aculeata*, *Buphthalmum vulgare*, *Fraxinella Cardamino impatiens*, *Uberis*, *Millefolium nobile*, *Digitalis lutea magno flore*, *Caucalis albis floribus*, *Saxifraga Venetorum*, *Esula major*, and divers others. Near the City of *Mayence* we found the *Sea-gilly-flower*, call'd by *Casp. Bauhine Caryophyllus montanus major flore globoso*, *Caryophyllus graminco folio minimus*, *Caryophyllus arvensis umbelliferus*, *Heliotropium majus*, *Prunella flore majore & Prunella foliis dissectis*, &c.

Plants between *Cologne* and *Mayence.*

The City of *Mayence* is very large and well fortified, but the Houses are very old, the Streets narrow and ill paved: The Cathedral of St. *Martin's* has 24 Canons all of Noble Blood, who choose the Archbishop. The Arms of this Archbishoprick is a Wheel, which they derive from *Willigesus*, a *Saxon*, their first Archbishop, who being a Wheelwright's Son, gave this Wheel for his Arms. Near this place, the River *Maine* joining its Current with the *Rhine*, we went up the first of these two Rivers in a Boat, and passing by *Rudsheim*, a goodly Fort on the Right-hand, belonging to the *Landgrave* of *Hesse Darmstadt*, and another wall'd Town call'd *Hocha* to the left, arrived the 13th of *July* at *Frankfort*, five Leagues distant from *Mayence*.

Mayence.

This City is very rich and populous, and not unhandsomly built, tho' most of the Houses are of Timber: Its Fortifications, which consists in divers strong Bastions

Frankfort.

and

and a deep Ditch, are very considerable and well kept: The River *Maine* dividing this City into two parts, that which lies opposite to *Frankfort*, is call'd *Saxonhousen*, which are joined by a very noble Stone Bridge, sustain'd by 14 Arches. In the great Market-place are three noble Fountains. The Emperours are now-a-days chosen here in the Senate-house, and crown'd in the Church of St. *Bartholomew*.

The Golden Bull.

I had the good fortune to get sight of the *Aurea Bulla* or *Golden Bull*, of the Emperour *Charles* IV. which instead of a Seal had a large Golden Medal hanging on it, with the Effigies of *Charles* IV. on one side, with this Inscription, *Carolus quartus, divinâ favente clementiâ, Romanorum Imperator semp. Aug.* on the Reverse the City of *Rome*, and underneath *Aurea Roma*, and round it this Verse, *Roma caput mundi regit orbi frena rotundi*. The Government of this City is in the hands of a *Prætor*, 12 *Burgermasters*, 14 *Eschevins*, and 42 Councellors. The whole Senate is divided into three *Scamna*, (1) *Sabinorum*, (2) *Literatorum*, and (3) *Opificum*: When a place happens to be vacant in the Bench of the *Eschevins*, the same is supplied out of the second Bench of the *Literatorum*; but the *Scamnum Opificum* rises no higher. The Senate has the Power of chooſing Yearly two *Burgermasters* out of their own number. The *Jews*, of which there are great numbers here, have their peculiar quarters assign'd them, from whence they dare not stir in the Night time; they wear a piece of yellow Cloth to distinguish them from other people. The Magistracy and most of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*, unto whom belong five Churches. Yet have the *Romans* the free Exercise of their Religion here, and are possess'd of two Convents for Men and one for Women; but the *Calvinists* have their Church a good way from the Town; The *English* Church, first establish'd here under the Reign of Q. *Mary*, is fain much to decay, as well as the *English* House, which is turned into a Store-house. In the Country hereabouts, which is exceeding pleasant, we found growing wild, *Gramen amoris dictum*, & *Ischemon vulgare*, *Portulaca sylvestris*, and in the Hedges, the *Alsine baccifera*, which I met with no where else in all my Travels.

July the 17th, we took place in the Post-coach going to *Frankenthal*; we had scarce left *Francfort* half an Hour, when we travell'd all that Day, for three *German* Leagues, thro' Pine-woods, and lodged that Night at the Village of *Geirsheim*.

Worms.

July the 18th, We ferried over the *Rhine* at *Kernsheim*, and at six Leagues end came to *Worms*, a large and ancient City, but much decayed from its former flourishing condition. The Canons of the Cathedral (who are 20 in number) choose the Bishop. The Government of the City is in the Hands of the *Lutherans*.

Franckenthal.

From hence we came, after an Hour's travelling, to *Francke thal*, a place chiefly considerable for its strength, being situate in a Level near the *Rhine*, and provided with good Walls and Out-works. It is under the Jurisdiction of the Elector *Palatine*; and has three Churches, one *High-Dutch*, another *Low-Dutch*, and the third *French*.

July the 20th, We travell'd along the Banks of the *Rhine*, by the way of *Obersheim* to *Spires*, two Leagues and a half distant from *Franckenthal*.

Spires.

Spires, tho' dignified with the Title of a Bishoprick, yet is an Imperial City, under the Government of its own Magistrates. The Houses here are generally large, but not very convenient, and of Wood: The chief, if not the only thing, that makes this place considerable, is the *Imperial Chamber*, which is kept here, consisting of an Imperial President and 36 Assessors, besides three other Presidents, chosen by the Emperor out of the Delegates; Each of the Electors, as well as of the ten Circles, sending two Delegates or Assessors. There is such another Chamber belonging to the Imperial Court at *Vienna*, either of which (without any appeal from one to the other) determining Controversies arising betwixt the Princes and States of the Empire, and betwixt them and their Subjects in some Cases; But the Elector *Palatine* enjoys the Prerogative, *Jus non appellandi*.

The Imperial Chamber.

July the 21st, we pass'd the *Rhine* to *Manheim*, seated upon the very conflux of the *Rhine* and *Neckar*, It belongs to the Elector *Palatine*, being strongly fortified, and now strengthning by a new Citadel, which was almost finish'd. Who was the Founder of this City, you will see out of the Inscription over the *Neckar Gate*,

Manheim.

Quod felix faxit Jehova,
Federicus III. *Elector*
Palatinus Rheni, Dux Baveriæ,
E exteri Pago Manhemio
Ad Rheni Necrique confluvium
Justâ spatiorum dimensione
Nobilem Urbem molitus,
Vallo, fossâ, muro clausit,
Portam bonis civibus aperuit,
Anno Domini M. DC. X.

From hence we continued our Journey to *Heidelberg*, where we pass'd over the *Neckar* into the City by a wooden Bridge, covered over with a *Testum* to preserve the Timber. *Heidelbergh*, is not very large, but a neat and populous City, the Capital of the whole *Palatinate* and Residence of its Princes; the Houses are only of Wood, but handsomly built; it is seated at the Foot of a Hill, on the right side of the River *Neckar*, and is divided into five different Jurisdictions, independent from one another, (1) *Aulica*, under which are all the Princes and Noble Men; the Marital of the Court sits here as President, (2) *Cancellaria*, unto which belong all Councellors, and other Officers of the Courts, Advocates, Doctors, &c. (3) *Bellica*, for the Souldiers where the General presides, (4) *Academica*, for the Students, the *Rector Magnificus* for the time being, is their President, and (5) *Civica* for the Citizens. The Members of each of these Jurisdictions are not obliged to appear before any other Court but their own. The City is also divided into four Wards, under the Government of a *Prætor* and *Burgemaster*.

Heidelberg.

Its Castle.

About the middle of the ascent of the Hill call'd *Koningsthal*, stands the Royal Palace, a large and stately Structure, enclosed with a Wall and deep Ditch, hewn out of the Rock, which they may fill with Water when they please; here the Prince keeps his Court. According to the Inscription in *High-Dutch* upon the Gate, it was begun to be built by *Lewis* V. 1519. but several pieces have been added since, whereof one is call'd the *English Building*. In a Cellar under one of the Towers belonging to this Castle stood the famous great *Tun of Heidelbergh*, containing 132 Fudders, one of which is equal to four of our Hogsheads; But this Tun is taken to pieces of late and a new one building, which is to contain 150 Fudders or 600 Hogsheads. We were invited to dine in the Palace, where we observed every thing to be done with a great deal of regularity, and after Dinner the Elector was pleased to shew us the Curiosities of his Closet, and among the rest, a Purse made of *Alumen plumosum*, which being made red hot, received not the least harm, but appear'd the same it was before, after it was cool'd. Two Unicorn's Horns of eight or ten Foot long, wreathed, and hollow to the top (being the Horns of a certain Fish, and not a Quadruped, as the ancients vainly imagined!) An Imperial Crown and Globe, belonging to the Emperour *Rupertus* (who was of this Family) richly beset with precious Stones: A choice Collection of ancient and modern Coins and Medals; and among the rest a Copper *Swedish Doller* of the bigness of a square Trencher, with the King's Arms and Effigies stampt at the four corners. The Great Church (which formerly contained the famous Library of this place) as also that of the *Franciscans*, have divers very noble Monuments of the Princes of this Family, as that of St. *Peter* shews many fair Monuments of Learned Persons.

And great Tun.

The University of *Heidelbergh*, was founded 1346. and has three or four Colleges, for the Subsistance of poor Scholars. The whole management of it is committed to the *Academical Senate*, composed of 16 Professours *viz*, three for Divinity, four for the Law, three for Physick, and six Philosophers, but no more than four of them sit in the Senate, for fear they should make too strong a party. If a Professour dies, the Senate presents two Persons to the Prince, out of whom he chooses one. The Senate also chooses every Year a *Rector magnificentissimus*, a Honorary Title, not unlike that of Chancellour of our University, as their *Rector Magnificus*, the chief of the Senate is equivalent to Vice-Chancellour; besides which, they elect two or four more Officers out of their own number, to manage the concerns of the University. The Senate has his own Jurisdiction, and an unlimited Power in Criminal Cases, extending to life and death, the Prince reserving to himself only the Prerogative of Pardoning after Sentence past. In Philosophy they have no other Degrees but Masters, and those but few of late Years; In *Law* and *Medicine* they create both *Licentiates* and *Doctors*; and in Divinity, *Batchelors*, *Licentiates*, and *Doctors*. They have not the least regard to the standing of the Candidates, all they have to do being to undergo two Examinations, one of which is call'd the *Examen tentatorium*, before the Faculty, in which he is to commence, and in the presence of the *Rector Magnificus*; the second the *Examen rigorosum*, before the whole body of the Professours and the *Rector Magnificus*. After all this, he is to hold

The University.

hold a publick Diſputation *ſub Præſide*, to make a Lecture in his own Faculty, and a Speech. The Ceremony is performed with a great deal of Pomp, and concludes with a ſumptuous Feaſt, at which are preſent all the Profeſſors, and ſometimes the Prince in Perſon, or elſe he ſends the Court Marſhal to repreſent his Perſon, which is the reaſon that oftentimes when the Candidates have not very ſtrong Purſes, two or three join to ſave charges. Here alſo the Profeſſors publiſh a publick annual Catalogue of their Names and intended publick Lectures.

The Elector Palatine is abſolute in his Dominions, having alſo the Supremacy in Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, which formerly belonged to the Biſhop of *Spiers*, but ſince the Reformation the Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction has been annexed to the Soveraignty: He being the univerſal Patron of all vacant Benefices, tho' he permits the Eccleſiaſtical Council (compoſed of two Clergy-men and two Laymen) to repreſent unto him two, out of which he chooſes one. The generality of the Palatinate are of the Reformed Religion; and divided into three *Præfectures* (the biggeſt of which is ſubdivided into leſs) each of which has an Inſpector, who is one of the Paſtors of that *Præfecture*, and differs not from the other in Rank or Power, but have a larger Sallery. Each conſiderable Town has alſo a peculiar *Præfecture*, or Presbytery: Thus that of *Heidelbergh* is compoſed of five Miniſters of that City, two Deputies from each of the before-mentioned Juriſdictions, except the *Aulica*, and two from each of the four Wards of the City, making in all 21; in which the Lay-men have equal Voices with the Miniſters, theſe enjoying no other Prerogative in this point, than that one of them preſides always in his turn. They can't inflict any Church Cenſure, unleſs it be to make the Tranſgreſſours make a publick Confeſſion at the Church Door, and to promiſe Amendment, the reſt being left to the Determination of the Civil Magiſtrates. As the Elector is Univerſal Patron, ſo he is Maſter of all the Tithes, which for Conveniency's ſake, he allows to ſome Miniſters in certain places, but provides certain Salaries for the reſt out of the Church Revenues.

July the 25th, We hired a Coach, which was to carry us in three Days to *Strasburgh*: We had ſcarce travell'd three Leagues, but we paſs'd in ſight of the Fortreſs of *Philipsburgh*, ſeated in a Level near the *Rhine*; A League further we paſs'd thro' *Graffe*, and lodged that Night at the Village of *Linknom*. *Philipsburgh.*

July the 26th, After a Journey of four Leagues, we baited at *Raſpach*, two Leagues further thro' *Stolhoven*, and a League more thro' *Lichtenaw*, all inconſiderable places, we lodged that Night at the Village call'd *Sertz*.

July the 27th, we croſs'd the *Rhine*, over a Bridge laid over the two Channels of the *Rhine*, made of Firr-Trees laid cloſe together inſtead of Boats; and ſoon after came to *Strasburgh*. In our Journey thither, we ſaw abundance of *Indian* Wheat planted, as alſo ſome *Lathyrus ſativus*, and *Carthamus*, or baſtard Saffron. The *Battaria*, *Solidago*, and *Saracenica*, are wild hereabouts, and in the adjacent Meadows of *Strasburgh*, *Carduus Pratenſis*, *Tragi*, &c.

Strasburgh, is a free Imperial City, rich and populous, of a great Circumference, and well fortified with Walls and regular Out-works. It is governed by two Councils, one conſiſting of 71, in which are ſix *Burgermaſters*, as many *Stadtmaſters*, 15 *Patres Patriæ*, and 13 ſelected out of the *Militia*. The greater Council is compoſed of 300 Citizens, choſen by the ſeveral Companies of the City. The Women are generally handſome; and the Inhabitants *Lutherans*, tho' the *Roman Catholicks* have alſo a Church and four Convents, two for Men and two for Women. The Reformed have their Church at ſome diſtance out the Town. It is an Epiſcopal See; the Biſhop has a Palace in the City, but is not allowed to ſtay there above three Days at a time, but may continue in an Inn foreight Days together. The Armory or Arſenal here, may compare with any in *Germany*, and is not much inferiour to any other I ſaw elſewhere. The publick Granaries, Store-houſes, and Wine Cellars are alſo worth ſeeing. The *Dome* or Cathedral Church is a noble Structure, with a pair of folding Doors of Braſs at the Weſt end. Here is the famous Clock deſcribed by ſeveral Authors, which is a piece of moſt excellent Workmanſhip, made by a Citizen of this place, named *Iſaac Habrecht*. But what is moſt remarkable, is the Steeple, the higheſt that ever I met with, and curiouſly built of carved Stone; having 662 Steps from the bottom to the top; we went up 640 Steps to a place they call the Crown, from whence we took a view of the circumjacent Country at a great diſtance. *Strasburgh.*

About ten Hours diſtant from *Strasburgh*, towards the ſide of *Stutgard*, are very good acid mineral Springs, the Waters whereof they drink here, and in the other circumjacent Cities with Wine. In this, as well as other Imperial Cities in thoſe parts, the Inhabitants, but eſpecially the Women, adhere ſtill to an odd way of dreſſing, which yet is very different from one another, each having their peculiar Habits. Mineral Springs.

July the 31ſt, We continued our Journey towards *Baſil*, paſſing the ſame Day thro' the Village of *Tivelſheim*, and *Auguſt* the 1ſt, thro' *Markleſheim*, and two Leagues thence in ſight of the ſtrong Town and Fortreſs of *Briſack*, ſeated upon a Rock, and lodged that Night at *Lodeſheim*. *Briſack.*

Auguſt the 2d, After a League and a half riding, we arrived at *Baſil*, a large and noble City, well built of Stone, the Houſes very high, and painted for the moſt part on the out ſide. It is divided by the River *Rhine* into two parts (that on the North ſide being call'd *Little Baſil*) join'd together by a Bridge ſuſtained by 14 Arches. The chiefeſt Ornaments of this populous and rich City, are its Fountains, of which it has above 300. It is one of the thirteen *Swiſs Cantons*, its Territories comprehending above 100 Villages. The Biſhop of *Baden* has not the leaſt Juriſdiction in the Town, being not ſuffer'd to lodge here one Night, but keeps his Reſidence at *Broudint*. The Government here is adminiſtred by a greater and leſſer Council; the laſt conſiſts of 64 Perſons, choſen by the 15 Companies, and the greater of all the Magiſtrates and the leſſer Council. The Univerſity of this place was founded by Pope *Pius* II. in which are ſeventeen Profeſſors, three of Divinity, three of Law, three of Phyſick, and eight in Philoſophy and Literature. They keep their Lectures every Day in the Week in Term-time, except *Thurſdays* and *Saturdays*, but have very ſmall Salleries. The Eccleſiaſtical Government is in the Hands of three Profeſſors of Divinity, four *Scholarchæ*, and the Miniſters. The Senate has the Power of nominating three Perſons to any vacant Benefice, out of whom the Miniſters chooſe one; In the City theſe Miniſters live upon their yearly Salleries; but in the Country they have half Tythes and the other half in Money. The Miniſters here are at liberty to change their Profeſſion and become Laymen, whenever they pleaſe. They are of the Reformed Religion, as are all the other Proteſtant Cantons. *Baſil.*

Eraſmus lived part of his latter Days, and ended his life in this City; his Monument, which is of Marble, on the North ſide of the Communion Table in the Great Church, being to be ſeen to this Day. He was the Founder of a College in *Baſil*, for 20 Students of Divinity (in which number are however comprehended the Bedel and a School Maſter) ten of whom are to be natives of *Baſil*; they may ſtay there as long as they continue unmarried, tho' the Magiſtrates have a Power to command any one of them thence, if they think it convenient. They are under the Over-ſight of a Regent, without whoſe leave none of them dare ſtay out of the College one Night. In the ſame Church where *Eraſmus* lies interr'd is alſo his Library, commonly call'd *Bibliotheca Amberbachiana*, becauſe *Eraſmus* gave it by his laſt Will to one Mr. *Amberbach*. I ſaw the ſaid Teſtament written with his own Hand in half a Sheet of Paper, bearing date 12 *Feb.* 1536. In this Library are alſo divers very curious pieces of Paintings, done by that famous Maſter, *Holbenius*, a Native of this City; Some Diplomata of the Pope to *Eraſmus*, his Seal and Ring, a fine Gold Medal ſent to him by the King of *Poland*, beſides divers other good Coins and Medals, both ancient and modern; Three *Rappers* of Copper (worth about a Farthing a piece) turned into Gold, as they ſay, by that famous Alchymiſt *Leonhard Turnitius*, who tranſmuted the famous Nail of *Florence*; ſeveral ancient *Entaglie*; ſome Manuſcripts of *Amberbach*, containing the Antiquities of *Auguſta Rauracorum*, anciently a great City, but now turn'd into a Village, *Augſt* near *Baſil*. The Profeſſors and Miniſters wear Ruffs and a kind of Caps painted like Sugar-Loaves (in which they are imitated by the graver ſort of the Inhabitants) and Gowns which reach juſt below their Knees. The Women wear their Petti-coats very ſhort, and Caps not unlike the young Scholars at *Cambridge*, with a Tin Girdle. We took alſo a view of the *Muſeum* of Dr. *Platerus*, where we met with many both natural and artificial Curioſities of Minerals, Stones, Metals, Animals preſerved, &c. The famous Phanatick *David George* ended his Days in this City. We found divers Plants growing wild about *Baſil*, the chief of which were, *Scrophularia*, *Ruta canina dicta*, and *Paſſerina Tragi*, among the Corn, *Phalangium parvo flore ramoſius*, *Blitum minus album*, among the Hedges *Cymbularia Italica hederacea*, on the Town Walls near the *Strasburgh* Gate, *Stube major caliculis non ſplendentibus*, in the Grounds betwixt *Frankenthal* and *Baſil*, *Polium montanum*. *Eraſmus.*

montanum Lavendulæ folio, Consolidâ media Genevensis & Cheiranthi Marrubii seu Thymelæa minor Cordi. But of these and other Plants growing about *Basil*, see *C. Bauhini Catalogus Plantarum.*

We went hence, *August* the 10th, towards *Zurick*, and in our way about a *German* League from *Basil*, pass'd thro' *Augst*, supposed by *Ambachius* to be the ancient *Augusta Rauracorum* of the *Romans*, where we saw the Ruins of an Amphitheater. We travelled afterwards in sight of a wall'd Town upon the *Rhine*, and many Hills cover'd with wild Fir-trees, and passing thro' *Bruck*, a pretty handsome well built, but small Town, lodged the same Night at the *Baths* of *Baden*, about six *German* Leagues distant from *Basil*; here we first got sight of a small green *Tree-Frogs*. These hot Baths, about 60 in number, are not above half an *English* Mile from *Baden*, a City seated upon the River *Limagus*, on the side of a Hill, famous for the general Meetings of the *Swiss Cantons* here. *Baden.*

From hence we continued our Journey *August* the 11th, along the *Limagus* on one, and very fair Vineyards on the other side, to *Zurick*, another City belonging to the *Swiss Cantons*, scarce so big, but more populous than *Baden*. Its Fortification is extraordinary pleasant, near the *Zurick-Sea* or *Lake*, being divided by the River *Limagus* (which owes its rise to this *Lake*) into two parts, which are join'd together by two Bridges, one of which is for Foot-Passengers, the other for Carriages, and very broad. The Houses here, tho' of Timber and Clay, yet are well built, handsomly painted, and lofty; the Streets indeed are none of the broadest, but very well paved, and the whole body of the City enclosed with a strong Wall and many Out-works of Earth, after the modern way; the River *Sele* (which below this City falls into the *Limagus*.) serving for a *Ditch* on the South side. The Inhabitants, which are Protestants, are much addicted to Traffick, and generally rich. What is worth a Traveller's Curiosity here is, the colour of the Water of the *Zurick-Sea*, which is of a green Colour approaching near the Sea-water, tho' it has not the least brackish taste, unto which this Colour is ascribed in the Sea-water. Finding afterwards the Water of the Rivers and Lakes near the *Alps* of the same Colour, we could not attribute it to any other cause, but the melted Snow of those Mountains, wherewith they are (at least the higher parts of them) covered for six Months in the Year, which containing a nitrous Salt, may be sufficient to give the Water this Colour, tho' not to affect our taste. The Government of this City is administred by two Councils, *viz. The Greater* and *the Lesser*. The last is composed of 50 Members, to wit, 24 Tribunes, chosen by the twelve Tribes or Companies of the City, two out of each: These they call the *Twelvers*, because twelve of them have only their share in the Government at a time; twelve Senators, *viz.* one out of each Company, chosen by the *Lesser Council*, as *Simler* tells us, but according to our Information, by the *Great Council*, six Members more taken indifferently out of the Commonalty, and those likewise chosen by the *Great Council*, as we were credibly told, but according to *Simler*, by the *Lesser*; four Tribunes and two Senators chosen from among the Gentlemen, and two *Burgermasters* elected by the *Great Council* of 200. Half this Council governs by turns, and that part which rule, is stiled *Concilium novum*, or the *New Council*, as that which goes out is call'd *Concilium vetus*, or the *Old Council*: yet if any Decree be to be made, the same is dated in the presence of both, for which reason the whole 50 meet once a Week; For the rest, one half of this Council is chosen every half Year, *viz.* at *Midsummer* and *Christmas*, and as the *Concilium vetus* goes out, it chooses the *Concilium novum*, composed for the most part of the same Persons that were chosen before. The whole Council of 50 determines Civil Actions (tho' *Simler* says, no more than eight selected out of their number) as the new Council judges in Criminal Cases alone. The *Greater Council* is composed of 200 Persons, *viz.* 12 out of each Tribe, making in all 44, 18 chosen by the Gentlemen, from among themselves, 24 Twelvers, four *Tribuni nobilium*, two *Senatores nobilium*, the six before mentioned chosen by the great Council out of the People. These choose Governours (call'd by them *Landvoghts*) and are always consulted withal upon any Emergency, concerning the whole Commonwealth. They also chuse four *Proconsuls* out of the 24 Masters of the Companies; and two Treasurers, either out of the number of the twelve Senators, or of the twelve *Tribunes* of the *New Council*. *Zurick.* *The Zurick Sea.* *Its Government.*

August the 12th, In our way from *Zurick* to *Schaffhausen* we pass'd by a Cataract or Water-fall of the *Rhine*, which is so dangerous for the many Rocks that lay under Water, that the Vessels must unload here, and by the way found the *Orobus sylvaticus purpureus vernus*, the *Hepatica nobilis*, and *Ulmaria major sive Barba capri* growing wild.

The City of *Schaffhausen* is situate upon the River *Rhine*, over which is a Bridge, half of Wood, half of Stone, and some most of the Houses, very well built; especially in the two great Capital Streets, which are handsomly paved. The Citizens of this place, as well as of *Zurick*, wear constantly Swords: Those of the first being divided into 12 Companies, each of these elect two *Tribuni Plebis*, and these 24 make up the *Lesser Council*, having each a yearly allowance of 52 *Florens*, and nine measures of Corn. *Schaffhausen.*

The *Great Council* is composed out of those 24, and 60 more, to wit, five chosen out of each of the *Tribes*. These elect every Year two *Burgermasters*, two Treasurers, one Proconsul, and one *Ædilis*, but for the most part the same Persons: A Father and Son, or two Brothers, can't be chosen at the same time into this Council.

From hence we travelled to *Constance*, *August* the 13th, a free Imperial City, situate in a fair Plain near the *Rhine*, at the end of the *Boden Sea*, or *Lake* of *Constance*, known anciently under the names of *Lacus Brigantinus*, and *Lacus Acronius*, over which is laid a very long Bridge, part of Wood, part of Stone: The Streets here are very regular and handsome, and the Buildings of Stone. But what makes this place most famous, is the Council that was held here, 1417. in which the Doctrine of *John Hus* was rejected, and he condemned to the Fire. It is very strong by its situation, having the Lake on one, and the Fens on the other side, but its Fortifications are very old and inconsiderable. In our way thither we met with the *Hormirum Laucum glutinosum, sive Colus Jovis*; and in the Woods among the Mountains, the *Pyrola folio mucronato serrato, Pseudoasphodelus Alpinus, Anonymus flore Coluteæ, & Sonchus cæruleus latifolius.* *Constance.*

August the 15th, we pass'd over the Lake in a Boat, to the City of *Lindaw* (in sight of the strong Town of *Oberlingen*) situate in the middle of the Lake, and surrounded by its Waters on all sides, being join'd to the Continent by a Bridge of 290 Paces long, one half of which is of Stone, the other, *viz.* that to the Town-side, of Wood, so that it may be taken down in case of necessity. This place, besides its natural strength, by reason of its situation, is fortified with strong Bulwarks, and Stakes driven into the Ground to prevent the approach of any Boats. It is generally handsomly built, and the Streets are adorned with Fountains, yet are these last not so spacious, neither their Buildings so lofty as at *Constance*: It has on one side a double Wall, betwixt which is enclosed a large space of Ground, planted with Vines, which produce commonly, as we were told, about 300 *English* Hogsheads *per annum*. They have eight Villages belonging to their Jurisdiction. In the Mountains and Woods hereabouts we found *Erica procumbens herbacea, Scabiosa latifolia flore rubro, Gentiana Asclepiadis folio.* In the lower Grounds, *Ulmaria major sive Barba Capri, & Lactuca montana purpuro-cærulea Major* C. B. and *Pneumonanthe*; Near the Banks of a small River exonerating itself into the *Lake Myrica sive altera Clus.* and *Gratiola vulgaris.* *Lindaw*

August the 17th, Taking Post-Horses at *Constance*, in order to our Journey to *Munchen*; we changed our Horses at *Lindaw*, an Imperial City, two *German* Leagues thence; at *Laykirk*, another Imperial City, two Leagues further; at *Memmingen*, both for strength and its bigness, one of the chiefest of the Circle of *Suchia*, and dignified with the Title of a free Imperial City, and at *Mundelheim*, where we lodged that Night. *Memmingen*

From hence we travell'd to *Landsbergh*, four Leagues further, a very fair Town, with a handsome Fountain in the Market-place. After which, without meeting with any considerable Town, we pass'd by the Lake of *Ammerse*, in sight of the *Alps*, to *Munchen*. *Landsbergh.*

This being a strong and well fortified City, and the ordinary Residence of the Electors of *Bavaria*, no Strangers are permitted to enter the Gates without the consent of the Governour: (a) *Cluver* is not in the wrong of it, when he calls this City, the fairest of all *Germany*, the splendour and beauty of its Buildings, both publick and private, especially of the Electoral Palace (which may compare with any in *Europe*) and of divers magnificent Churches and Convents, being such as surpasses any thing in *Germany* for its bigness, its Streets being the broadest and most regular I have met with any where. Among other Varieties you see in the Electoral Gardens, a vast number of *Aloe* Trees (for such they must be call'd by reason of the bigness of their Stalks, which shoot up in one Year) the like perhaps all *Europe* can't produce in number both for their Stalks and Flower. There we also met with a Convent of *English* Nuns, and found in their Churches *Munchen*

(a) In his Geograph.

Pews

Pews and Seats, as is customary in *England*, whereas otherwise, the *Romanists* make use only in their Sermons of Moveable Chairs and Benches, and clear the Churches so soon as Sermon is over.

We took a turn from hence to *Augsburgh*, and passing by the Abby of *Bernardines* call'd *Pruck*, and the little Town of *Fridbergh*, arrived there the 21st of *August*.

Augsburgh This is a goodly and strong City, seated upon the River *Lech*, being about eight *English* Miles in compass: Its Houses are well built, its Streets fair, and beautified with many Fountains. Its Armory consists of 12 Rooms, not inferiour to that of *Strasburgh*, as its Town-house may challenge the second rank next to that of *Amsterdam*; The upper Room especially being very remarkable for its loftiness, spaciousness, gilding and paintings, in which it exceeds any I have seen yet. The Inhabitants are partly *Romanists*, partly *Lutherans*, but the last are double the number of the first, tho' these are in possession of 7 Convents here, among which one of *English*; some *Calvinists* there are here, but few. It is a free Imperial City, under the Jurisdiction of its own Magistrates; but seems somewhat decayed of late Years, the number of its Inhabitants being scarce proportionable to its bigness; In the Plains near *Augsburgh*, leading to *Munchen*, we saw many rare Plants, viz. *Tithymalus verrucosus*, *Trifolium pratense album Fuchii sive mas* J. B. *Pseudo-asphodelus Alpinus* C. B. *Thlaspi clypeatum asperifolium seu biscutatum*; *Horminum sylv. latifolium* Germ. *Phalangium flore parvo non ramosum* C. B. *Carlina herbariorum* Lob. *Gentianella Autumnalis flore cæruleo quinquefolio, calyce pentagono grandi.* Floris tubus è calyce non eminet, sed folia tantùm expandantur supra margines calycis, ut in Caryophyllis. *Gentianella species minima flore unico cæruleo Elegantissimo Linum sylvestre latifolium caule viscoso, flore rubro*, C.B. fortè. Folia habet acuminata, pilosa, modicè lata, nervis quinque per longitudinem decurrentibus, longitudine foliorum Lini: flos quinquefolius, coloris incarnati, sanguineis lineolis striatus; radix lignosa est; *Cirsii seu cardui duæ species*; Priori flos *Cirsii nostri Anglicani, flori simillimus*, & in uno caule plerunq; unicus, folio pallidè viridia, profunde laciniata, & spinulis horrid acuminata, instar Cardui viarum vulgarissimi: Alteri, quæ jam defloruerat, folia viridia, non laciniata, breviora, & latiora quam præcedenti, in ambitu spinosa, & Hyoseris masculi foliis similia, *Saxifraga Venetorum*, *Daucus montanus Apii folio, flore luteo.* Another sort of umbelliferous Plant, not unlike the *Caucalis Peucedani folio, Lotus siliquosa lutea Monspeliensis*, I. B. near the River *Lech*, as also the *Bellis cærulea Monspeliaca*, Germ. *Doryenio congener planta*; *Thalictrum angustissimo folio.* In the sandy Grounds near the City, *Rhamnus primus Dioscoridis*; and in the stony places *Caryophyllus gramineo folio minimus*; besides many more we had taken notice of in other places.

August the 28th, We left *Augsburgh*, and travelling three Days out of our way in order to take a view of the famous City of *Nurembergh*, we cross'd the *Danube* the first Day, about six Leagues from *Augsburgh*, at a place call'd *Donawert*, belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*, *Donawert.* where there is a wooden Bridge over that River.

The 29th, We pass'd thro' *Manheim* and *Papenheim*, two pretty wall'd Towns, and having made five *German* Leagues that Day, lodged at *Weissenbergh*, an Imperial City, inhabited by *Lutherans*; near which is also a strong Fort upon a Hill, belonging to the Marquess of *Anspach*, a *Lutheran* Prince.

Weissenbergh. The 30th, We pass'd thro' a small Town call'd *Pleinfelde*, and after a Journey of 3 Leagues further, close by another little wall'd Town call'd *Rotte*, and so, after two Hours riding more, arrived at *Nurenburgh*, which we no sooner got sight of, but we highly applauded the Epithet *Nuremb.* *Cluverius* bestowed upon it, when he stiles it *Germanicarum superbissimum*, it being beyond all question, that for its Buildings, which are very stately, it exceeds all, and for its bigness may compare with any of *Germany*; and were its Houses, which are all of Free-stone, as uniform as the Buildings generally are in the *Low-Countries*, would even out-vie them for beauty, besides, that under its Dominions, are at least 100 Towns and Villages. 'Tis true, the Ground where it is situated is very barren, and the River upon which it stands but very small, and not Navigable; notwithstanding which, by the Industry of the Inhabitants, who are generally very excellent in all sorts of handicrafts Works, this City is very rich and populous. They are generally *Lutherans*, and their Churches more adorned and beautified after the fashion of the *Romanists*, than ever we saw in any other place, where this Religion is profess'd. The *Roman Catholicks* have one Church allowed them, but the *Reformed* none. Their great Market-place, and the Town-house, are worth a Traveller's Observation; it is fortified with a good Wall and Ditches: Their Senate and whole Government is said to approach near to that of the *Venetians*, being for the rest a free Imperial City. The Plants we met with in our way hither, especially near *Papenheim*, were *Caryophyllus flore tenuissimè dissecto* C. B. Near *Weissenbergh*, *Draba lutea siliquis strictissimis* C. B. *Gentianula lanugine ad singulorum foliorum laciniæ donata, flore quadripartito*, J. B. *Buglossum angustifolium*, *Cytisus Gesneri cum floris spicatis* J. B. and another Plant not unlike our *Meadow Saxifrage*, but larger.

Septemb. the 3d, We set out from *Nurenbergh*, towards *Ratisbon*, and came to *Alterff*, a Town and University under the Jurisdiction of *Nurenbergh*. It has a very good Physick Garden, the Catalogue of the Plants contained therein, as well as another of what Plants grow wild hereabouts, the World stands indebted for to Dr. *Maurice Hoffman*. Over the Cloister of the College, in which are maintained 36 Students, at the Charge of the City of *Nurenbergh*, you see an Inscription in *Latin*, giving a short Account of the Foundation of this University and College, *viz.* That the said College was founded by the Senate of *Nurenbergh*, 1575. under the Reign of the Emperor *Maximilian* II. that 1578, under the Reign of *Rudolph* II. a *Gymnasium* was establish'd here, which 1633. under the Reign of the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. was dignified with the Title and Privileges of an University. *Alterff.* See Dr. *Brown's* Travels.

Dr. *Hoffman* shew'd us divers *Cornua Ammonis*, or Serpent-Stones, besides many Cockle and Mussel-shells found near *Alterff*, of which we also saw some the next Day in our way to *Nies-Marke*; upon which Occasion I can't forbear to give, by way of digression, a brief account (1) in what places they are found, (2) the different Opinions concerning them. In *England* those petrefied Shells are found at *Whitby* or *Whitebay*, in the North riding of *York-shire*; At *Huntley-Nabb*, more Northward on the same Coast; At *Alderley* in *Glocester-shire*; At *Cainsham* in *Somerset-shire*, not far from *Alderley*; At *Farnham* in *Surrey*; At *Richmond* in *York-shire*; besides in divers other places, as for instance, at *Lyme* in *Dorset-shire*, *Adderbury* in *Oxford-shire*, at *Brickworth* in *Northampton-shire*, about *Daventry*, *Wendlam* in *Hartford-shire*, *Shuckborough* in *Warwick-shire*, nay, even the *Peak* of *Darby-shire*. Besides these petrefied Shells, other congenerous Bodies are found in several parts of *England*, *viz.* The *Star-Stones*, call'd by some *Astroites*, *Lapis Stellaris*, and *Stella Judaica*. (2) St. *Cuthbert's* Beads or *Trochites*, and the *Capstone*, or *Echinites*, call'd *Lapides Brontiæ* by some, and considering that Sharks are often taken upon our Coast, it is a wonder that no *Glossopetræ* should be found in *England*. As for the *Star-Stones* (so call'd from their five Angles resembling so many Rays) they are found at *Shuckborough* in *Warwick-shire*, at *Cassington* near *Glocester*, and *Beauvoir* Castle in *Lincolnshire*. The *Trochites* are to be met with on the Western Shore of the *Holy Island*, and in the Chinks of some Stones found in the bottom of the Channel of the River *Tees*, the common Boundary betwixt *York-shire* and the Bishoprick of *Durham*; these are of a rotund Figure, and not angular like the former. The *Echinites* or *Brontiæ*, are found in divers places of *England* of several magnitudes and shape, and beyond Sea, at *Brescia* in *Lombardy*, upon the Banks of the River *Tanaro* in *Piedmont*, four Miles below *Aste*, but especially in the Isle of *Maltha*, where are also many *Glossopetræ*, resembling *Sharks* Teeth petrefied. As for these last (a) *Boetius* says, they are found near *Deventer*, in the Province of *Overyssel*, and in *Germany* in the *Alum-Mines* near *Lunenburgh*. (b) *Goropius Becanus* tells us, that they were digg'd up in the Ditches of *Antwerp*, and are found in great numbers on a Hill near *Aix la Chapelle* in *Germany*, which he uses as an Argument that they can't be real *Sharks Teeth* petrefied. *Georg. Agricola* affirms, that the petrefied Cockles, and other Sea-Shells, are found in the Stone Quarries of *Galgenbergh*, and in those beyond Mount *Maurice*, in the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* in *Germany*. (2) At *Alfeld*, a Town of *Saxony*. (3) At *Hanover*, in the Lime-Pits, and near the Village of *Lindaw*. (4) In a Village call'd *Ralschlyts*, near the Rivulet of *Trebitia* in *Misnia*. (5) At a place call'd the *Rose-Garden* in *Prussia*. (6) Near the Castle of *Spangenbergh* in *Hassia*. (7) In a Mountain of *Italy* near *Verona*. (8) On the Banks of the River *Elsa*; and (according to *Pausanias*) in the Quarries near *Megara*, and they are also found in *Thessaly*, *Macedonia*, and the Mountains of *Calabria*. *Bernardus Palissius* says, that those petrefied Shells are found in *France*, near the Suburb of St. *Martial* near *Paris*. In the Mountain of the Forest of *Arden*, but especially about *Sedan*; in the Provinces of *Valois*, *Xantogne* and *Champaign*, and in the Mountains near *Soissons*. In what places petrefied Cockle shells are found.

(a) L. 2.

(b) L. 3. Orig. Antwerp.

Johannes de Lact, tells us also of a Rock near *Dijon* in *Burgundy*, and speaks much of the Fields about *Sauvignac*, upon this account. Besides the beforementioned places of *Italy*, they are found in the Mountain of *Nicani*, in the *Modenese*, and in a Channel of a Rivulet near *Udine* in *Friuli*; *Goropius Becanus* names, *Limburgh*, *Liege*, *Namur*, *Tournay*, and divers other places in the *Low-Countries*: Besides all which before-mentioned places, there is not the least question, but that, if strict Observations were made in the other parts of the World, the same might be discovered there as well as in *Europe*.

Divers Opinions concerning them.

We will now proceed to give you a short hint of the divers Opinions maintained concerning them.

The first Opinion, and which was generally received among the Ancients, was, That they were originally the natural Bones or Shells of living Creatures, bred in the Sea, which by Deluges, Inundations, Earthquakes, or other such like means, being cast up into those places, which being fill'd with Clay, and some petrefying Water or Substance, were in tract of time, hardned into the same shape and figures they bore before; this Opinion they back by divers Experiments, as the finding of a petrefied Pearl, bearing Shell in *Tuscany*, with the Pearl yet sticking to the Shell; Of a piece of the greater Sea-nacre (*Pinna marina*) in which the silk-like Substance within the Shell being consumed, the colour of that Substance remained in the Clay that had fill'd the Shell. Another Experiment is, that about the City of *Volterra*, there are many Beds of Earth not stony, but full of true Cockle-shells, which have not undergone the least alteration, tho' they have lain there at least 3000 Years, from whence they would evince, that *Tuscany* was in former Ages cover'd by the Sea, and consequently so might those other Countries in which those petrefied Shells are found. Against this Opinion are two considerable Objections, not easily to be resolved.

The first is, that at this rate, the whole Body of the Earth must once have been covered with Water, since these petrefied Shells are found at a vast distance from the Sea, nay even upon the very tops of the *Alps*. Some pretend to answer this by the general deluge; but as that proceeded from the Rains, these were more likely to carry off into the Seas those Shells than to bring them in. What some argue from the Words of the Scripture (*The Fountains of the deep were broken up*) will also not answer the point; for supposing that by the breaking in of the Rivers and Seas, those Shells were brought, the same must of necessity have been scattered indifferently over the whole Surface of the Earth. Others are for solving this Difficulty, by referring the same to some particular Inundations, alledging, That those places where they are found now, might in most ancient times, have been low places, which by Earthquakes, have been raised up to Mountains; but as this perhaps may take place in respect of some inconsiderable Eminencies or Hills, it is not applicable to those Mountainous Bulks, such as the *Alps*, *Pyrenees*, *Apennines*, it being evident from the most ancient Records, that tho' the Face of the Earth may have undergone some change, yet the same Mountains, Islands, Promontories, Rivers and Lakes of any note, are still remaining, without any removal in their ancient Stations.

The second Objection against the first Opinion is, That among all these petrefied Cockles or Shells, there are many sorts, not to be found any where now; nay, some go further, that among all our Shell-Fishes, there is none found like those petrefied Shells; unto which, if it be answered, that those *Species* are lost, it is a thing which will scarce be admitted by many, for tho' it might be granted, that some few *Species* were lost, yet seems it next to an impossibility, that a whole *Genus*, of which there were so many Species scattered in so many far distant places from one another, should be utterly extinct. As for instance, of the *Serpentine* Stones or *Cornua Ammonis*, I have my self seen at least six several Species, and some of them of a Foot Diameter, being much beyond the bigness of any Shell-Fish now living in our Seas. Hence it is that many of our modern Naturalists have attributed these Bodies to the effects of a plastic Power in the Earth, and that they are produced and framed after the same manner as precious Stones, Crystals, and coagulated Salts, by shooting up into divers Figures. What makes for their Opinion is, That in the Earth are found many figured Stones, such as the *Lapides Lyncurii*, *Belemnites*, *Lapides Judaici*, *Trochites*, and others, which have not the least resemblance to any Shells, Bones, Roots or Fruits; to salve up which, no other recourse is to be had, than to the before-mentioned loss of those Species out of the World. I can't but mention upon this Occasion, what I was told by a very creditable Person, *viz.* That he had seen a Stone resembling a Cockle-shell, found in the Stomach of an Ox, which if it be admitted, there is not the least doubt, but that the like may be progenerated in Quarries and other places. These two different Opinions, have given occasion to a third, *viz.* That some of these Shells have been really petrefied, and that others are really Stones formed by some Plastic Power in the Earth, imitating the others in their Shapes and Figures. But as these seemed rather a shift than a dissolution of the Objections to be made against either of the two former Opinions, I am inclinable to adhere to the first, as seeming to me more consonant to the nature of the thing, tho' at the same time I should be very glad to hear the Objections made against it, more solidly answered than they have been hitherto. The Academical Senate of *Alterff* was composed at that time of 13 Professors, three in Divinity, as many in Law, two in Physick, and five in Philosophy, who publish every Year a printed Catalogue of the Lectures they intend to keep the next ensuing Year.

September the 4th, We set out from *Alterff* for *Ratisbone*, and passing thro' *Nieumarkt* and *Heinmaw*, two little wall'd Towns, came to *Ratisbone* the 5th at Night, by a fair Bridge built here over the *Danube*. This City, which had got its Name from the River *Regen*, which here joins its Current with the *Danube*, is very large and well built, with Stone Houses, the Roofs of which are flattish after the *Italian* manner. It is well fortified, but the Streets somewhat narrow. As it is an Imperial City, it is under the Government of its own Magistrates; who as well as the greatest part of the Inhabitants, are *Lutherans*, tho' their Bishop is of the *Romish* Religion, who have some Convents here, and a College of *Jesuits*. It is chiefly famous for, and its chief Glory is, the Imperial Diet, which is usually held here. On the Rocks on the other side of the River, a little below *Ratisbone*, we found the following Plants (not to mention many of the rarer sort found in *England*); The *Asclepias flore albo*. *Daucus montanus Apii folio major* C. B. *Apium montanum nigrum* J. B. *Caucalis Peucedani folio* Germ. having a fine Leaf, a small Root, red Stalks, and an Umbel of white Flowers, producing small round Seeds, with Purple *Apices*; *Daucus montanus Apii folio, flore luteo*, as I take it, having winged Leaves like the *Bipennella*, but larger, the several Wings being as large as the entire Leaf of the said *Bipennella*; a large Root, but not hot upon the Tongue as the *Burnet-saxifrages* are; the Stalk runs up to a Man's height, the Seeds round, streight, and covered with a hoary down, reddish towards the top, and of a hot taste. *Tithymalus verrucosus* J. B. *Scabe major caliculis non splendentibus* C. B. *Hepaticum trifolium* Lob. *Flammula Jovis*, *Cerinthe major flore luteo*, *Fraxinellæ*, *Cytisus supinus sylvest. Ratisbonensis*, *flor. luteo ad exortum foliorum prodeuntibus* Cat. Aldrdorf. *Cytisus Gesneri cui flores spicati* J. B. *Euphrasia pratensis lutea* C. B. this we found near *Heinmaw*; *Phalangium ramosum*; *Chamædrys vulgaris & Cham. foliis laciniatis*; *Aster montanus luteus hirsuto salicis folio*; *Aster Austriacus* 4 Clus. i. e. Linaria aurea *Tragi*; *Aster Atticus Italorum flore purpureo* Park. *Oxyacantha* sive *Berberis*; *Bugula cærulea Alpina*, *Orobanche minor floribus purpureis* sive *ramosa*, in the Corn-fields, *Chondrilla cærulea*, J. B. *Folia habet laciniata, glabra, glauca*; *Flores*, longis insident pediculis dilutè cærulei ad ruborem inclinantes. *Securidaca dumetorum major flore vario, siliquis articulatis* C. B. *Veronica supina facie Teucrii pratensis*, both very common in *Germany*, *Lepidium annuum*, growing among the Radishes; and *Fœnum Græcum*, which I suppose was sown.

Ratisbone.

September the 11th, We took Boat for *Vienne*, and past'd on the Left-hand of the River, by a Village and stony Castle on the Hill call'd *Thomastein*, and in three Leagues and a half below *Ratisbone*, in sight of the Castle of *Wert*, seated at the Conflux of the River *Wisent*, and the *Danube*, belonging to the Bishop of *Ratisbone*, we took up our Quarters one *German* League and a half thence, at *Straubing*, a handsome wall'd Town, belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*.

Straubing.

September the 12th, In the Morning we past'd by *Pogen*, and four Leagues belong *Straubing*, under a wooden Bridge laid over the *Danube*, somewhat lower we saw the small City of *Dreckendorf*, belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*, and having past'd by the Mouth of the River *Iser*, and in sight of *Osterhoven* on our Left-hand, and the Castle of *Hilkersbergh* on the same side, we lodged that Night at a little wall'd *Bavaria* Town call'd *Vilshoven*.

September the 13th, We came to *Passaw* or *Passovia*, four Leagues distant from *Vilshoven*, a City considerable for its strength, bigness, and goodly Buildings, the last of which were very near all consumed by Fire, about nine Months before our arrival. It is under the Jurisdiction of the Arch-duke of *Inspruck*, situate at the Confluence

Passaw.

Confluence of the Rivers *In* and the *Danube*, over the first of which is a Bridge to the Town of *Inſtadt*. Below *Paſſaw* the *Danube* being ſtreighned by Hills and Rocks on both ſides, begins to run with a much ſwifter ſtream than before; ſeven Leagues below *Paſſaw*, paſſing by the Caſtle of *Newhouſe*, we took up our Lodgings the ſame Night at the Village of *Aſh*, on the right-ſide of the River.

September the 14th, Paſſing thro' an open Country on both ſides, for four Leagues together, we came to *Linez*, a City neatly built after the *Italian* fashion, with a ſquare ſpacious Piazza, adorned with two noble Fountains, the Imperial Palace ſtanding upon a riſing Ground, from whence you have a fair proſpect of the *Danube* and circumjacent Country. Three Leagues below it we paſs'd by a very fine Village call'd *Mathauſen*, and in ſight of the City of *Inez*, ſeated on our Right-hand upon the River *Ens*; ſeven Leagues below *Linez*, the Country begins to be hilly again on both ſides of the *Danube*. Whereabouts is the Caſtle of the Elector of *Lichtenſtein*, near a Village call'd *Greine*; a little below which place we paſs'd a kind of Cataract, the Current being nearly encloſed betwixt the Rocks on both ſides, and rendred boiſtrous by thoſe under Water; and ſomething lower a Whirl-pool, made there by the jetting out of Rocks into the River. Afterwards, paſſing by a ſmall Town call'd *Ips*, we lodged that Night at the Village of *Morpach*, about 11 *German* Leagues from *Linez*.

Linz.

Ratisbone.

September the 15th, Early in the Morning, we paſs'd in ſight of the rich Convent call'd *Melk*, on our Right-hand, and about ſix Leagues further the Seat of the Earl of *Dietrichſtein* on our left, within ſight of the rich Abby of *Ketwein*, famous for its ſtony ſituation, and the brave Reſiſtance it made againſt the *Swedes*. Nine Leagues from our laſt Night's Lodging, we paſs'd under a wooden Bridge, near the City of *Stein*, not far from whence we came to *Krembs*, a very handſome, ſtrong, and well built City, ſeated at the Foot of a Hill. From hence, being an open Country, the Channel of the River begun to be much broader. Six Leagues below *Krembs* we paſs'd by a ſmall City call'd *Deuln*, and in ſight of the Caſtle of *Greitenſtein*, ſituate upon a Hill at ſome diſtance from the River on the Left-hand, and the City of *Cornburgh*. Hereabouts and afterwards, we ſaw abundance of Mills in Boats, the Wheels lying betwixt two Boats, which being placed at a convenient diſtance from one another, ſo that the Stream being by degrees ſtreighned betwixt the Boats, forces the Wheel to turn. One of the Boats is with Chains or ſtrong Cables faſtned to the Bank. Within one League and a half of *Vienna*, we paſs'd by the noble and rich Abby call'd *Cloiſter Newburg*, with a little wall'd Town of the ſame Name belonging to it, and having by the ſwiftneſs of the Current, made nineteen *German* Leagues that Day, arrived at *Vienna*.

Krembs.

This City, which in proportion for its bigneſs, is the moſt populous we had ſeen yet in our Travels; is the Capital City of *Auſtria*, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Emperor; ſeated upon the *Danube*, tho' it got its Name from the River *Wien*, which below it, *viz.* on the Eaſt ſide, falls into the former. The Body of the City is not above four or five *Engliſh* Miles in compaſs, but the Suburbs are very ſpacious, ſome of the Houſes of which were then lately pull'd down, upon the approach of the *Turks* towards *Presburgh* (not above 40 *Engliſh* Miles from thence) after the taking of *Newheuſel*. *Vienna* has a moſt regular Fortification, the Wall being of Earth, but very high and thick, faced with Bricks, ſtrengthned by a broad and deep Ditch, and defended by many Half-moons and Horn-works. The Houſes are very lofty and well built, with flat Roofs after the *Italian* way: The Markets very well ſtored with Proviſions; but the Streets none of the broadeſt. The Emperor's Palace, the Cathedral, and divers other publick Buildings are very magnificent. The Emperour himſelf is low of Stature, of a very dark Complexion, black Hair, and thin viſaged, with a thick hanging Under-lip, not unlike his Effigies on his Coin. In the Market we firſt met here with the Fruit of *Sorbus legitima*, with Tortoiſes, which they ſell for ſix Pence a piece, and are found here in Muddy places; and here we alſo ſaw the *Silurus* or *Shear-fiſh*, the biggeſt of all freſh Water-fiſh I ever ſaw, ſome of them weighing near 100 Pound. The Plants we met with hereabouts were, *Ombrychis ſpicata floro purpureo*, *Pſyllium vulgare*; *Kali ſpinoſum*, tho' at ſo great a diſtance from the Sea. *Scabioſa foliis diſſectis, flore albo* Cluſ. *Doryenio congener*; *Marrubium album anguſtifolium peregrinum* C. B. In the Iſle of the *Danube* near *Vienna*, *Ariſtolochia Clematitis & Solanum veſicarium ſive Alkekengi*.

Vienna.

See Dr. Brown's Travels.

September the 24th, We took Coach for *Venice*, and lodged that Night at a great Village call'd *Trayskirk*, four Leagues thence, by the way we ſaw great ſtore of *Abſinthium Auſtriacum tenuifolium*, Cluſ.

Trayskirk.

The 24th, After we had travelled four Leagues, we came to *Newſtadt*, (*Neapolis Auſtriaca*) a pretty ſtrong ſquare Town, well built, but of no great extent; having a fair Market-place, and very regular Streets. At three of the Corners it is defended by ſo many Baſtions, but on the fourth it has a Caſtle. Near this place I met with the *Aſperula cærulea*. After we had travell'd two Leagues beyond *Newſtadt*, we began to enter among the Hills, and lodged that Night at *Glocknitz*, four Leagues from *Newſtadt*.

Newſtadt.

The 26th, We had ſcarce made two Leagues, when coming to the Village of *Shadwin*, our Coach-man hired ten Oxen (which were ready at hand for that purpoſe) to draw the Coach up the ſteep Hills, which are the common Boundaries betwixt *Auſtria* and *Stiria*. Among theſe Mountains we found, *Libanotis Theophraſti minor* Park. *Cyclamen autumnale*, of two ſorts; *Tuſſilago Alpina folio rotundo*; a kind of ſmall *Trachelium*, I never met with in any other place; a ſmall ſort of *Muſcus clavatus*, its Leaves like *Juniper*: *Larix* in abundance; *Lyſimachia lutea in alis foliorum florens*; a kind of *Glaux*, with a rough Cod, beſides many others we had ſeen in thoſe parts before. In the ſhady Lakes we found much of the *Muſcus denticulatus major*, and in the watery Grounds *Alſine muſcoſa* J. B.

After we had travell'd for ſome time among the Hills, we paſs'd thro' *Mertzſuchlag*, a ſmall City ſeated upon the River *Mur* (where we ſaw many Mills) and afterwards thro' *Langenwang* and *Kriegla*, each of which have a Caſtle built on Hills. We croſs'd the River near the laſt, and paſſing thro' a pleaſant Valley ſurrounded with woody Mountains, lodged that Night at the Village of *Kimberg*, ſix long *German* Leagues from *Glocknitz*.

The 27th, We continued our Journey thro' the ſame Valley, thro' the Valley of *Kapfuberg*, in ſight of divers Villages, Caſtles, and Country-Seats, ſeated upon the ſides of the Hills, and at three Leagues end came to the City call'd *Pruck an der Mure*, i. e. *Pons Muræ*, a pretty place, defended by a Wall; having a ſpacious Market-place; The Inhabitants trade much in Iron work. Here we paſs'd the River *Mure* twice, and after we had left *Lewben*, paſs'd over a Hill, and ſo following the Courſe of the River among the Mountains, lodged that Night at the Village call'd St. *Michael*. Hereabouts it was we ſaw many Men and Women with large Tumors hanging down under their Chins and Throats, ſome of which were ſingle, ſome double, call'd in *Latin*, *Bronchocele*, and by ſome *Engliſh* the *Bavarian Pokes*. This it ſeems is a Diſeaſe natural, and of old belonging to the *Alpine* Inhabitants *Quis tumidum guttur miretur in Alpibus?* Tho' the *Griſons* inhabiting the higheſt parts of theſe Mountains, are either not at all, or at leaſt not near ſo much ſubject to this Diſtemper. Some attribute the ſource of this Evil to the Snow-water which comes from the *Alps*; others to the virulent Mercurial Particles of Streams, which are mix'd with theſe Waters; but as this Diſtemper is not frequently among other Nations inhabiting Mountainous Countries, where the Snow lies as long as here, nay, where their Waters are nothing elſe but melted Snow, neither among the *Hungarians* and *Tranſylvanians* (where they abound in Minerals, and eſpecially in Mercury) we had better ſuſpend our judgment, till ſome ingenious Phyſician, belonging to thoſe Countries, ſhall aſſign us the true cauſe and cure of this Diſtemper. We alſo ſaw more Idiots and delirious Perſons here than any where elſe, which indeed I attributed chiefly to the venomous and malignant Mercurial Vapours, which will beyond all queſtion, affect the Brains and Nerves, as is obvious in Gold-ſmiths, Gilders, Miners and Painters; tho' they generally aſſign the uſe of Snow-water, and of the vaſt quantity of Cabbage, which is their daily Food here, as the Origin of thoſe Evils.

Pruck or the Mure.

Lewben.

The 28th, We continued our Journey for three Leagues along the River *Mure* to *Knittlefield*, a ſmall City, and then paſſing thro' a Valley in ſight of divers Noble Mens Seats and Caſtles, lodged that Night at the Village of St. *Georgio*, upon the *Mure*, four Leagues from *Knittlefield*.

Knittlefield.

The 29th, We continued our Journey along the River *Mure*, thro' the ſame Valley, as far as *Newmarket* four Leagues from St. *Georgio*, and following the Tract of another River, which near *Volckmarck*, falls into the River *Drave*, we paſs'd thro' *Freiſach*, a conſiderable City in thoſe parts, ſeated in a little Valley betwixt high Hills, and after a League's travelling further lodged at *Heirt* in *Carinthia*.

Freiſach.

The 30th, For three *German* Leagues after, we travell'd still thro' rocky Valleys as far as St. *Veit*, where the Emperour has a Mint-house: Three Leagues further we came to *Vilkircken*, a Town of note, but was quite ruined by an accidental Fire three Years before.

October the 1st, We pass'd over rugged Rocks and Mountains all along the Lake *Ostsukersea*, at the further end of which the Earl of *Dietrichstein* has a strong Castle built upon a Hill. After that, passing thro' a pleasant Vally, we cross'd the River *Drave*, which begins to be
Villach. navigable here, and washes the Walls of *Villach*, a Town of note in this Country, three Leagues from *Vilkirck*. At some distance from *Villach* we pass'd the River *Guile*, which joins its Current with the *Drave*. Hence we travell'd again over very rocky Mountains to *Orlesteina*, where we lodged that Night.

October the 2d, We travell'd on for two Leagues thro' the Mountains to *Klein Tarvis*, and thence to the River *Timent*, which exonerates it self into the *Adriatick-Sea*, and took up our quarters that Night at *Pontieba*, the last
Pontieba. place in the Emperour's Territories, part of it being subject to the Emperour, from whence it is call'd *Pontieba Imperiale*, as that part which belongs to the *Venetians* is thence call'd *Pontieba Veneta*; here we were obliged to take a Bill of Health. Betwixt this place and *Klein Tarvis* observing several Herds of Goats following the Goat-herds like Dogs, this put us in mind of what our Savi-
a) *John* 10.4. our says, (a) *And he goeth before his sheep, and they follow him, for they know his Voice*; which proves that the same was usual in those Days in *Judea*.

October the 3d, We pass'd the River *Timent* by a Bridge, which here parts *Carinthia* from *Friuli*. About a *German* League thence, we came to a small Fort, call'd *Clausen*, where they stopped us till we delivered our Bill of Health. As we travell'd on along the River, we saw many Timber Trees floating down the Stream, which being fell'd in the *Alps*, are brought to the next Rivulet or Brook, and when the next strong Rain Shower falls, forced down in-
Venfonga. to the greater Rivers. We pass'd the same Day thro' *Venfonga*, a pretty little City, and lodged the same Night at the Village of *Hospitaletto*.

October the 4th, Quitting the Mountains, we entred
Limonia. the Plains of *Friuli*, and passing by *Limonia*, situate at the Foot of the Mountains, and some Leagues further thro' St. *Daniele*; after which we forded the River *Timent* in several places, tho' in time of Rain, or when the melted Snow comes down from the Mountains, it is a considerable breadth: The first time we had pass'd the
Spilimberg. River we came to *Spilimberg*, seated upon a Cliff, where we saw Cloisters under the Houses on both sides of the Streets (a thing common in *Lombardy*) and after ten *Italian* Miles further travelling, took up our Lodgings in the Village of St. *Avogio*.

October the 5th, We travell'd on for ten Miles to a
Sarile. wall'd Town call'd *Saribe*, encompass'd by the River *Livenza*, which here divides it self into two Branches. We travelled on for two *German* Leagues, and lodged at
Conegliano. *Conegliano*, a small City, seated on a Ridge of a Hill. Whilst we travell'd in *Italy*, we met scarce with any wheaten Bread, that which we used, being made of *Sorghum*, a certain Grain, the Blade whereof grows seven or eight Foot high, of the thickness of a Finger, bearing a large Panicle on the top, the Seed being bigger than Wheat, of a dusky Colour.

October the 6th, A *German* League from hence we ferried over the River *Anaxus* (*Piave*,) and ten *Italian* Miles further came to the large and famous City of *Tre-*
Trevis. *viso*, the Capital of the Province call'd *Marca Trevisana*: Hence we continued our Journey thro' a fertile Country to *Mestre*, a small place, seated near the *Lagune*, or Flats about *Venice*, which are dry at low, but covered with Water at high Tide. From whence we pass'd in a Boat to *Venice*. In our Passage thro' the Mountains we found divers Plants we had not seen before, as *Quinquefolium album majus caulescens* C. B. *Quinquefolium album majus alterum* C. B. *Teucrium Alpinum Cisti flore*; *Epidendrum vulgare*; *Linaria purpurea parva* J. B. Among the Rocks on the *Italian* side of *Pontieba*, *Ledum Alpinum hirsutum* C. B. *Ledum Alpinum hirsutum minus*; *Auricula ursi*, *Sedum ferratum alterum foliis longis angustis*; *Sedum Alpinum minimum*, *foliis cinereis*, *flore candido* J. B. *Siler montanum*, &c. On the tops of the Mountains, *Helleborus niger verus*; in the Rivulet of *Friuli*, *Scabiosa argentea angustifolia*; and in most Rivers and Ditches in *Italy*, the *Galega*. Throughout the greatest part of *Friuli*, the *Marca Trevisana*, and *Lombardy* we saw the Corn-fields planted with Trees as thick as our Orchards, against each Tree being planted a Vine, the Branches of which draw from Tree to Tree in rows, and make a kind of a Hedge; their Soil being so rich, that it suffices both for the production of Corn and Grapes, the Trees not giving the least hindrance to the Corn, either by their droppings or shadow, because little Rain falls here in the Summer, and the Leaves keep off the scorching heat of the Sun, which notwithstanding this suffices to bring it to maturity. This part of *Italy* has for its fertility justly deserved the name of the *Garden* of *Europe*.

The famous City of *Venice* is built upon divers little *Venice.* Islands in the middle of certain Shallows, surrounded by the Sea; call'd by them *Lagune*: These *Lagune* are separated from the Gulph of *Venice* by a certain Land-bank (which they call the *Lido*) being about 38 or 40 Miles in extent, and resembling the space contained in a bent Bow, the first being the Continent, and the String the *The Lido.* *Lido*. *Venice* it self is at an equal distance (*viz.* of five Miles) from each: The *Lido* serves as a Fence against the Violence of the Sea, and has five or seven In-lets or small Harbours, two only being capable of receiving Vessels of any great burthen, *viz.* those of *Malamocco* and *Lio*. Nor far from the *Lagune* most of the considerable Rivers of *Italy* exonerate themselves into the Gulph, viz. *Padus* the *Po*, *Atheſis* or *Adige*, *Meduacus major* or *Brenta*, *Meduacus Minor* or *Bacchiglione*, *Tilliaventum* or *Tajamento*, *Liquentia* or *Livenza*, *Silis* or *Sile*, *Anassus* or *Piave*; and these carrying along with them a vast quantity of Earth, may in time fill up the *Lagune*; for *Giannotti* tells us, that in ancient times the City of *Venice* was ten Miles from the Continent *Oriago* (*Ora lacus*) then lying upon the Shoar of the *Lagune*, which now is five Miles from *Fusina*, where they take Boat for *Venice*.

The first Origin of *Venice* must be traced as far as the *Its Origin.* irruption of the *Huns* into *Italy*, under *Attila*, when many of the best Families of *Italy* fled for shelter into these Islands, and at last erected here a noble City. Certain it is that this City has maintained its Soveraignty undefiled these 1200 Years, tho' it be not strengthned by any Fortification, but what the Sea affords it, no great Ships being able to approach nearer it, than the Harbour of *Malamocco*; those Inlets where small Vessels may pass, being defended by strong Forts, besides, that the Channels are so difficult to pass, that none but their own Pilots dare venture upon them.

The Circumference of *Venice* (taking in the *Giudecha*) is of about eight *Italian* Miles, being divided into two parts by the *Grand Canal*, which passes thro' the middle of it in the form of the Letter S. Each side is subdivided into three Wards, call'd by them *Sestieri*, viz. *Castello*, St. *Marco*, and *Canarejo*, on one side, and *San Paolo*, *Santa Croce* and *Dorso duro* on the other side. In the whole it contains 70 or 72 Parishes, and 67 Convents, according to a Survey taken in the Year 1581. according to which *The Number of People.* there were then in the City, of Noble Men 1843, Women 1659, Boys 1420, Girls 1230; Of common Citizens, Men 2117, Women 1936, Boys 1708, Girls 1418; Servants 3732, Maids 5753; Of Artizans, Men 32887, Women 31617, Boys 22765, Girls 18227; Of Beggars, Men 75, Women 112, Monks 945, Nuns 2508, Priests 516, Poor of the Hospital 1290, Jews 1043. The Sum total of which amounts to 134871. *Sansovinus* makes the number of Souls in his time to have been 180000, in which I suppose he comprehends the Suburb of *Muran*, and some other small Islands. Some of our Modern Writers have increased this number to 300000, but without much probability, nothing being more common than to aggrandize the number of Inhabitants of great Cities; thus I have heard them say frequently, that in *Paris* there is a Million and a half of People, whereas there is scarce half a Million.

The whole City is by small Channels divided into ma- *Channels and Bridges.* ny Islands, by which you convey your self and Goods by Boats from one place to another, there being no use of Carts, Horses, Coaches, Litters, or Asses here, except that they employ now and then Porters in the Alleys, which run a-cross the City for the Passage on Foot, for the conveniency of which 450 Bridges are built cross the Channels, of one Arch each, and most of Stone. The Bridge call'd *Ponte di Rialto*, and is built over the *Grand Canal*, excels all the rest. The number of Boats for the convenience of carriage in the Canal, some make them amount to 10000, some to 12000, some to 15000.

Government.

The Buildings here are generally lofty and beautiful, especially those along the *Grand Canal*, and the Noble-Men's Palaces, which tho' not very spacious, yet are very handsomly contrived; they all stand upon Piles of Wood, like the Houses of *Amsterdam*.

The Arsenal of *Venice* has above two Miles in Circum- *The Arsenal.* ference, containing a great store of all manner of Warlike Provisions, 20000 Pieces of great and small Cannon, and Arms for 250000 Men. Here they build and lay up their Galleys (of which, as they say, they have 200)

and

and among the rest the *Bucentaure*, in which the Duke of *Venice* every Year espouses the Sea at three Miles distance from the City, by casting thereinto a Ring, with these Words, *I espouse thee in token of perpetual dominion*. In this Arsenal are maintained at the Charge of the Publick, 1550 Work-men of all sorts, such as Ship-wrights, Carpenters, Smiths, Founders, &c.

The publick Structures of *Venice*, as the Piazza of St. *Mark*, and the Church of St. *Mark*, the Treasury and Tower of St. *Mark*, the Ducal Palace, the Chamber of the *Great Council*, Theaters for their *Operas*, the *Ponte di Rialto*, with the publick Halls, Schools, Mint-houses, Pillars, Statues, and other remarkable pieces of this kind, I will not pretend to give a description of here, the same having been exactly described by *Sansovinus*, *Lassels*, and other modern Travellers.

This City, according to its Epithet, *Venice the Rich*, did once surpass in Wealth, all the other Cities of *Europe*, and not without reason, till the Passage to the *East-Indies* by the *Cape* of *Good Hope* was discovered, at which time they were not only almost the Sole Masters of the *East-India* Trade (which Commodities they brought from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*) but were also in possession of all *Lombardy* and *Friuli*, of *Istria* and *Dalmatia* on the Continent, besides the Isles of *Cyprus* and *Candia*, *Zant*, *Cephalonia* and *Corfu*; besides several other Isles in the *Archipelago*: But since the loss of that Trade, and their heavy Wars with the *Turks* (in which they lost *Cyprus* and *Candia*) their publick Treasure has not been so well stored as before; yet are the Inhabitants, who never have been subject to any ravages or change of Government, very rich, and the Government remains still in possession of these following Dominions, viz. (1) The *Dogado*, in which is the City of *Venice*, (2) the City and Territories of *Padua*, (3) of *Vicenza*, (4) of *Verona*, (5) of *Brescia*, (6) of *Bergamo*, (7) of *Crema*, (8) *Marca Trevisana*, under which are comprehended the Territories and Cities of *Feltre* and *Belluno*, (9) *Friuli*, (10) *Istria*, (11) the Territory of *Rovigo*, formerly belonging to the Duke of *Ferrara*; the whole extending 250 Miles in length, and 125 in breadth. Out of *Italy* they are possess'd of part of *Dalmatia*, the Islands of *Zant*, *Cephalonia* and *Corfu*, besides some others of less note. We were credibly informed, that the ordinary annual Revenue of the whole Republick amounted to 5320000 *Venetian* Ducats, one of their Ducats being somewhat less than a *French* Crown: Of which *Venice* produces 1400000 yearly, *Brescia* 1000000, *Padua* 140000, *Vicenza* 200000, *Verona* 230000, *Bergamo* 140000, *Crema* 100000, *Rovigo* 70000, *Istria* 150000, *Il Friuli* 100000, *La Marca Trevisana* 190000, *Gli stati di mare* 450000, *La Zecca* 150000.

Its Riches.

Revenues.

Venice abounds in Provisions of all sorts, especially in Fish and Water-fowl; except fresh Water, which must be brought from the Land, and their rain Water they preserve in Cisterns. The Air of *Venice* is very sharp in Winter, by reason of its vicinity to the *Alps*. This City is famous for the best Treacle, for Paper, Turpentine, Needle-work Laces, Sope, Courtezans, and above all for the best both drinking and looking-Glasses; these are made at *Muran*, a Town of three Miles in circuit, in an Isle a Mile distant from *Venice*.

Women of any Fashion are kept in great restraint here, seldom appearing abroad, except it be at Church, when they are sure to have an old Woman for their Guardian. Their Daughters they put at seven or eight Years of Age into some Nunnery, where they are educated, and seldom stir from thence till they are married, the Suiters themselves being permitted no more than to look at them thro' the Grate of the Cloister, without speaking.

The Government of *Venice* is *Aristocratical*, in respect to the whole, the common People having not the least share in the Government, but in reference of the Nobility, may rather be call'd *Democratical*, every one pretending to his share in it, the *Doge* or *Duke* being no more than an empty Title, without any Princely Authority. The whole Administration of the Government is in the *Great Council*, the *Senate* or *Council of Pregadi*, the *Colledge*, the *Council of Ten*, and the *Signoria*; besides several other Magistrates for the administration of Justice; all which, together with their Method of choosing by Lot and other ways of transacting publick Affairs, are particularly described by *Contarini Giannotti*, and *Sansovinus*.

Government.

The Procurators of St. *Mark*; tho' not to be numbered among those who have the Administration of the Republick, yet are in great reputation in this City, this Dignity continuing for life, and since its first establishment, there having been but few Dukes, but what were Procurators of St. *Mark*. In ancient times there was but one Procurator of St. *Mark*, whose business was to provide for the Church of St. *Mark* and the Treasure thereunto belonging, which encreasing by degrees one more was added, and 1290 a third, and not long after a fourth, till their number was encreased to six, and afterwards 1423 to nine, and 1509 to fifteen.

The Gentlemen of *Venice* wear, whilst they are in Town, black Gowns, with narrow Sleeves and Caps, without which they never appear abroad. The principal Diversion here, as well of the Gentlemen as others of the principal Inhabitants, is to walk in the Piazza of St. *Mark*, that side next to the Great Council Chamber, being appropriated peculiarly to the Gentlemen. I told you before, that none, except the Gentlemen have any share in the Government, tho' there be no Law to exclude any from the greatest Office. But as the Interest of the Nobility is a sufficient Bar against them, so those that aspire to any Dignity in the Commonwealth, must purchase the same at a very dear rate; there having been no less than 80 Families received into the Number of the noble *Venetians* since the War with the *Turks* in *Candia*, each of which paid 100000 Ducats for his honour.

Here we saw first the little *Diabolus in carcere*, as some call it, being no more than an *icuncula* or Glass-bubble, put into a Cylindrical Glass-tube full of Water, the Bubble having in the heavier end of it a little hole of such a poise, as just to keep it swimming upon the Water; the Glass-tube being stopt at one end, they clap their Hand to the Mouth of the Tube, and so pressing down the Air upon the Superficies of the Water, the same a course presses upon the Air in the Bubble, which giving way makes room for the Water to enter thro' the hole in the Bubble, which becoming heavier sinks to the bottom, but upon the removal of the Hand, the Air in the Bubble by its elastic Power expanding it self, forces out the Water, and ascends again; so, that in proportioning the Force, they can make it descend or ascend, as much or as little as they please. For the further elucidation of which, I will refer my self to Dr. *Cornelius* of *Naples* his *Progymnasmata Physica*, in his Epistle *de Circumpulsione Platonica*.

Among other Curiosities we saw here a Boy, who by bending his Head betwixt his Leggs to the Ground, charged his Belly with Wind, and afterwards discharged it at pleasure. A certain noble *Venetian* also shew'd us a noble Fulminating Powder, not much inferiour to the *Aurum fulminans*, of which he gave us the following Receipt. R. Salt of Tartar one part, of common Brimstone two parts, and Salt-Peter three parts; beat them fine and mix them well: This Powder put into an Iron Vessel or Pan, and held over the Fire, as soon as it melts, will explode almost with as much noise as the Fulminating Powder of Gold.

The same Gentleman also introduced us to a place where we saw the whole manner of making *Venice* Soap, which is accounted as good as *Castile* Soap. The whole Composition is made of Oil of Olives, and a certain Lee: the last they make thus, Take of the Ashes of the Herb *Kali*, known in *England* by the Name of *Beriglia*, two thirds; of *Kelp*, *i. e.* the Ashes of the ordinary Sea-wrack one third; these being beaten with a Mallet into small pieces, and well mingled, are grinded to Powder in a Mill, not unlike our Cider Mills, and being sifted afterwards, they mix some slacked Lime with the Powder, and make it up into Pellets, which they put into Troughs, and pounding Sea-water upon it (fresh Water does as well) make the *Lixivium* or Lee. The Chauldrons wherein they boil their Soap are very large, the bottoms of Copper, but the side made of Stone, bound about with Iron Hoops, and enclosed in a wooden Case. One third part of those Chauldrons they fill with Oil, and the remaining part with the Lee, then putting fire under it, let it boil continually till the Oil be all boil'd away, still filling up the defect of the Lee as it boils away; by which means part of the Oil uniting it self with the Salt of the Lee, rises up to the top in form of a Scum, which condensing by the coolness of the Air, produces that which we call Soap. The Tryal they make of the strength of the *Lixivium* is, when an Egg will swim in it. The Craft or Soap they take from the Surface of the Liquor, they spread upon a Floor, whereupon Lime Dust is strowed (to hinder the Soap from sticking to it) then smooth it, and let it dry in a bed of about the thickness of a good Brick. This when dry'd, they cut in lesser Pieces, and having cleansed them by paring the adhering Impurities, seal them with a Seal.

How *Venice* Soap is made.

N. B. That *Beriglia* alone would make the Soap too soft, as the *Kelp* alone would render it too brittle. The green Colour (of which the *Germans* are very fond) is given it by putting a certain quantity of Juice of Beet into the Chauldron, with the Oil and Lee.

Paduay

Padua. *Padua*, watered by the two Rivers *Brenta* and *Bacchilio*, is of great Antiquity, and if we credit *Livy*, (who was born here) owes its Foundation to *Antenor*, after the Destruction of *Troy*, which is also confirmed, not only by (a) *Virgil*, but also by *Martial*, when he addresses himself to *Valerius Flaccus*, a Poet, and a Native of *Padua*, in these Words, *Antenorei spes & alumne lari.* Notwithstanding which, some will have the City of *Altinum* to be founded by *Antenor*, and *Padua* by *Paravius*, a King of *Veneti*.

(a) 1 Æn.

This City, after having born its share in the Devastations made by the *Huns* and *Lombards*, and having obtain'd its Liberty under the Emperour *Otho* I. was governed by its own Magistrates, till *Ezzelinus* the Tyrant, and not many Years after the *Carraresi* lorded it over them, and at last 1405. fell under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction. It is surrounded by two Walls, the first is call'd to this Day *Antenor's* Wall, (tho' of a far later make) being about three Miles in Circumference, the outward comprehending with all its Fortifications and Ditches, a Compass of six Miles, built by the *Venetians*, at the time of the League of *Cambray*, as may be seen by the *Latin* Inscription over the Gate of *All-Saints*.

Hanc antiquissimam urbem literarum omnium Asylum, cujus agrum fertilitatis semen natura esse voluit, Antenor condidit: Senatus autem Venetus his belli propugnaculis ornavit, Leonardo Lauredano Duce Venetorum invictissimo, cujus Principatus varias fortunæ vices excipiens quàm gloriosè superavit.

However this City is neither rich nor populous in proportion to its bigness, containing according to my Opinion not above 30000 Souls, tho some say 38000. There is a large and fertile Plain belonging to this City, so that their Bread is both very cheap and good, according to the *Italian* Proverb, *That Bread of* Padua, *Wine of* Vicenza, *Tripe of* Treviso, *and* Courtezans *of* Venice, *are the best in their kind.* No Trees are allowed to be planted within a Mile of its Fortifications, the Ground, which they call the *Waste*, being preserved for Corn, for as there is little Ground near this place for pasturage, Milk is excessive dear here. For the Use of the Poor, they make Bread of *Indian* Wheat, and of *Sorgum*.

It has several goodly publick Structures, as the *Palazzo della Ragione*, or Town-hall, where the Courts of Justice are kept; being 256 Foot long and 86 broad, unto which you ascend by many Steps, having Shops underneath it; some will have this to be the largest Room in *Europe*, tho' according to our Eye-sight, we thought it not quite so big as *Westminster-hall*, (2) The publick Schools, (3) The Church of St. *Anthony*, call'd the *Santo*, (4) The Church of St. *Justina*, with the Convent of *Benedictines*, (5) The Passage of the *Arena* or *Amphitheater*, (6) The Magazine of Corn and Ammunition, (7) The *Ponte molino*, where there are about 30 Mills together, upon the River *Brenta*, (8) The Palace of the *Capitaneo*, (9) *Antenor's Tomb*, as they would make us believe, for the particular Description of which, I refer my self to *Schottus* and others. There is one remarkable Building here near the *Domo* call'd *Mons pietatis*, where they tell you a stock of Money of 40000 Crowns is kept for the use of such poor People, as have occation to borrow Money upon Pawns, for which if the Sum be small, they pay no interest, if it be considerable, they allow only five *per Cent.* which defrays the Charges of the Clerks and other Attendance, the Superplus, if any be, being destributed among the Poor, the Bank always remaining entire. The like Foundations are in many other Cities of *Italy*.

Its publick Structures.

Its University.

But what renders this City most famous is its University, which acknowledges the Emperour *Frederick* II. for its Founder, *Anno* 1220. for a compleat Account of which, I will recommend to the Reader the *Gymnasium Patavinum* of *Thomasinus*. Such is the outragious Temper of the Students here, that no Inhabitant or Stranger dare appear in the Streets in the Night time, which if they happen to do, and meet with a Troop of those nocturnal Vagabonds, they cry to them, Who goes there? and if they answer, they bid them turn back, which if they don't instantly, they must expect to be saluted with their Pistols or Fire-locks they carry with them; nay, nothing is more common, than if two Parties of those Students happen to meet in the Streets, they retire behind the Posts of the Portico's or Cloisters, which are on both sides, and so let fly at one another.

The Physick Garden is well stored with Simples, but its Fame is chiefly owing to those excellent Men which have had the management of it, as *Aloysius Mundella*, *Aloysius Anguillara*, *Melchior Guilandinus*, *Jacobus Antonius Cortusus*, *Prosper Alpinus*, and *Joannes Veslingius*, the Epitaph of the last I found on his Tomb in St. *Anthony's* Church.

Joanni Veslingio Mindano,
Equiti,

Naturæ verique scrutatori solertissimo, qui sapientiæ
Atque exoticarum stirpium studio Ægypto peragratâ,
Ab Veneto Senatu *rei herbariæ*
Et corporum Sectioni præfectus, cum Latinitatis
Et Græcæ eruditionis cultum multis artibus circumfudit;
Ut illic naturæ latentis pompam æmularetur;
Hîc spectaculi diritatem oratione deliniret,
Ut quantum oculi paterentur, tantum sibi placerent aures:
Ad extremum laboribus fractus,
Dum miseræ plebi gratuitam operam commodat,
Noxio contactu publicæ saluti vitam impendit.
XXX *Mensis* Aug. Ann. Chr. M. DC. XLIX.
Æt. LI.

In the Dormitory of the Convent of the *Dominicans*, they shew'd us the Cell of *Albertus Magnus*, with an Inscription of certain Monkish Distichs over the Door.

The Government of *Padua* is administer'd by a *Podesta* or Major, and a *Capitaneo*, the first for Civil the second for Military Affairs. They are both sent by the *Venetians*.

From *Padua* we took a turn to *Albano* (anciently *Aponæ*) five Miles hence, to take a view of the hot Springs there, which arising in a rocky hillock, consisting of a Porous Stone, furnish such plenty of Water, that one of them drives an over-shot Mill; (a) and by reason of the porosity of the Rock and the Salt it contains, washes off certain small Particles of the Stone, which by degrees it lets fall again, and precipitates to the bottom of the Channels thro' which it runs, so that they pick abundance of Stone of a dark grey Colour off the Mill Wheel every Month. The Water is so hot, that in one of those Springs the Inhabitants frequently scald their Hogs, to get off the Hair; being full of a white Salt, which coagulates upon the Surface of the Water. The Waters of *Albano* are used only for bathing.

The hot Springs of Albano.

(a) As at Perrot in Derbyshire, Wigton in Somersetshire, and other such like places.

February the 3d. We continued our Journey to *Vicenza*, a City not quite so big, but more populous than *Padua*, its compass being no more than four Miles, but containing betwixt 30 and 40 thousand Souls. It is seated upon the River *Bacchilio*, and watered by the *Retro* or *Eretenus*, as also by two Rivulets call'd *Astichello* and *Seriola*, but is of no great Strength, being surrounded only by a Brick-wall. It is much inhabited by the Nobility and Gentry, of which there are said to be above 200 Families here. I will not pretend to give an exact account here of the several changes of their Government, referring my self as to this point to *Schottus* and *Leander Albertus*. I will only add, that after they had recovered their Liberty, they submitted voluntarily to the Protection of the *Venetians*, which is the reason they enjoy greater Privileges than any of the neighbouring Cities. The Theater of the Academy, call'd the *Olympic*, is a very neat Structure, the Inhabitants live chiefly upon Silkworms and winding, twisting and dying of Silks. Their Wines hereabouts are both rich and agreeable, especially that they call *Dolce & Piccante*.

Vicenza.

Hence we travell'd six Miles to the famous Cave of *Custoza*, being (according to *Joh. Georgius Trissinus*, who measured it) 650 Perches, or 4000 Foot long, and 490 Perches or 3000 Foot broad, and about three Miles in Circumference. The whole seems to be nothing else but a Cave left from the digging of Stones, as *Trissinus* has very well observed, it being certain that the ancient Buildings of *Padua* and *Vicenza* are of the same Stone, and the Roof of this Cave is at distances, sometimes greater, and sometimes lesser, supported by above 1000 huge Pillars of the Quarry, of three Perches square; besides, that to this Day, you see great square pieces of Stone, cut round about, and the Tracks of Cart Wheels, whereas there has been no Cart there in the memory of Man. We saw great numbers of Bats clinging to the Roof and Sides of the Cave, and some standing Waters, with a kind of Fish or rather Insect in them, call'd by them *Squillæ Venetianæ*, tho' they properly were the same call'd by the Naturalists *Pulices murini*, or *aquatici*, i. e. *Sea-fleas* or *Water-fleas*.

The Cave of Custoza.

In the same Village we also got sight of the famous Vemiduct belonging to a Noble Man of *Vicenza*, named *Trideneus*, contrived for the coolness of his Palace, during the heat of the Summer; To effect which, Channels are cut thro' the Rock, from a spacious high-roof'd Grot, to the Palace; so that when they intend to let in the cool Air, they shut up the Gate at the Cave, and by opening a Door

Door at the end of the Channel, which conveys the *fresco* into the Rooms of the Palace, each of which has a certain Conduit and hole to receive it.

Verona. From *Vicenza* we went to *Verona*, seated upon the River *Athesis* or *Adige*, which being very broad here, has a very handsome Stone Bridge built over it, being reckoned amongst the faireſt of *Europe*, besides three lesser ones. Its Circumference (without the Suburbs) is seven Miles, and is very populous and strong both by Nature and Art, being defended by good Bastions, Towers, and deep Ditches water'd by the *Adige*, besides which, it is strengthned by three Forts. We saw here among other things, the Collections of Rarities of an Apothecary named *Mapheus Casanus*, consisting of many *Ægyptian* Idols, petrefied Shells, Coins, and Medals, and among the last, a *Maximilian* and *Diocleſian*, with this Inscription on the reverse; *Veronæ Amphitheatrum*.

Another we saw of *Muscardo*, a Gentleman of *Verona*, who had good store of Lachrymal Urns and Lamps, Shells and Fruits petrefied, Ores and Gems, but especially of *Roman* Medals, among which he shew'd us an *Otho* of Gold, telling us at the same time, that those of Brass were all spurious. But a Description of this Collection being already published in *Italian*, I will not insist upon the further Particulars thereof, no more than of the *Museum* of *Mario Sala*, an Apothecary here, which contains only certain Remnants of the Collection of *Calceolarius*, published long ago.

The Amphitheatre of *Verona* is a Structure worth a curious Traveller's Observation, being both stately and spacious, and in outward appearance, not inferiour either for beauty or capaciousneſs, to that of *Titus* at *Rome*. Of the outward Wall is left only a small piece, from whence you may make an estimate of the whole. But the Remainder of the other Buildings is kept in very good repair; the *Arena* being 34 Perches (each of which is something more than six Foot) long, and 22 broad; surrounded by 42 Rows of Stone Benches, raised above one another, in the nature of Steps, capable of containing 23000 Persons. For the more ample Description of which, I will refer my self to *Schottus* (a), *Torellus Saraina*, a *Veronese*, and (b) *Lipsius*. This City as well as *Padua* and *Vicenza*, after many changes of Government, was at last forced to submit to the *Venetians*. Here are excellent white Wines, especially that they call *Garganico*. The Air is very serene and healthy, but sharp in the Winter, by reason of the Vicinity of the Mountains, amongst which *Baldus* has got the greatest Reputation, not so much for the variety of the Simples that grow there (for the *Alps* are not inferiour in that point) but chiefly by the Industry of the *Paduan* Herbarists, who, but especially *John Pona*, an Apothecary here, have obliged the World with a perfect Catalogue hereof. Near *Verona* is the Lake *Lago di Garda* (*Lacus Benacus*) which affords great quantities of Fish, but especially Trouts of divers kinds, some of which were a Foot long.

(a) In his Antiquity of Verona. (b) De Amphitheatralib.

Lago di Garda.

Mantua. We travell'd from *Verona* to *Mantua*, *February* the 9th, being 24 Miles, thro' divers goodly Villages, but not any Towns of note: Six Miles on this side of *Mantua*, we saw the Duke's Palace at *Marmirola*, a neat Structure, and well furnished with Pictures, and adorned with Statues. This City it self is very ancient, and strong by its situation, being seated in the middle of a Lake, and well fortified. Its compass is about four Miles, but is not populous in proportion of its bigness, scarce containing above 50000 Souls; it has no less than eight Gates. A little way from this City is a Country Seat, belonging to the Duke call'd *Palazzo del Te*, wherein you see a square Room, the Roof arched in the nature of a *Cupolo*, call'd the *Giants-hall*, in which, if two Persons stand in the opposite Corners, one having his Ear to the Wall, may hear what the other whispers, with his Face to the Corner; which he that stands in the middle or in the corner of the same side of the Room, shall not hear. They told us the Duke of *Parma* had such another Contrivance in his Palace of *Caprarola*, but our Whispering place in the Cathedral of *Gloceſter* is of a different nature. *Virgil*, the great *Latin* Poet, was born at *Andes* (now *Petula*) a Village near *Mantua*. Here are two Academies of *Virtuosi*, call'd the *Accesi* and *Timidi*. This City, after many changes of Government, was at last brought under subjection, 1328, by *Lewis Gongaza*, by the favour of the common People, from whom the present Duke is descended, this Title being conferr'd upon *Frederick Gongaza* 1530. by the Emperour *Sigismund* IV. The Revenue of the Duke is about 400000 or 386000 Crowns a Year, but as the Expences of the Dukes have exceeded their Incomes, they are much indebted to the *Venetians*. The common People have this peculiar here, That their Children have an equal share in their Parents Estates, especially such as are personal: A Widow, after the death of her Husband, takes her Dowry back with her; but if she dies first, the same is divided share and share alike among her Children: If she dies without issue, one half of her Dowry falls to her Husband, the other to her next kindred. If a Woman has Children by a former Husband, and marries another, and has likewise Children by him, one half of her Dowry goes to the Children of the first Marriage, the other half to those of the second.

Ferrara.

Taking Boat here for *Ferrara*, we pass'd by the way of the Lake into the Channel of the River *Mincio* (which coming out of the *Lake de Garde*, near a strong Fort of the *Venetians* call'd *Peschiera*, and coming to *Mantua*, (spreads it self into a Lake of five Miles in length) and at 16 Miles end, coming to a Bridge and Sluice at a place call'd *Governo*, entred the River *Po*, and passing down the Stream, came by *Ostia*, ten Miles from *Governo*, and ten Miles farther by *Massa*, both on the Left-hand, and seven Miles lower to *Stellata*, a large Village belonging to the Pope: Eight Miles lower we came to *Il Ponte*, where leaving the *Po*, we pass'd thro' an artificial Channel of four Miles long to the very Gates of *Ferrara*; A City considerable both for its bigness and strength; it being reputed for its bigness, the strongest in all *Italy*; being not only defended by strong Fortifications, and a deep Ditch, but seated also in a fenny Level. It was formerly under the Jurisdiction of its own Dukes, but now under the Papal Jurisdiction. From hence we went by Boat towards *Bologna*, and having shifted our Boat 17 Miles from *Ferrara*, at a place call'd *Mal-Albergo*, reached another Channel, viz. *Rhenus Bononiensis*, and passing thro' nine Locks, arrived at *Bologna*, distant by Water from *Ferrara* 45 Miles, the greatest part of the Country betwixt those two places being Fenny, not unlike the Isle of *Ely* in *England*.

Bologna.

The City of *Bologna* it self is seven or eight Miles in circumference, of a rotund Figure, the Houses not very lofty, but adorned with fair Portico's, on each side of them Streets. Many of their Houses, tho' not promising much on the out-side, yet being very neat and convenient within: Its Inhabitants are computed to be 80000 Souls. The Sausages, Wash-balls, and little Dogs of *Bologna*, are famous all over *Italy* and other parts. Their chief Trade is in Silk, and they have the most convenient Engines for winding and twisting of it, that ever I saw. The University of *Bologna*, for its antiquity, may compare with any in *Europe*, being chiefly famous for the Study of the Law, tho' it has a great number of Professors also in other Faculties, as may be seen by their yearly printed Catalogue of such several Lectures, as each of them is to keep the next following Year. Here we had the opportunity of seeing the ancient Exercise of Tilting, Tilting, still practised here in the Carnaval time: Those who enter the Lists, are mounted on Horse-back, and armed Cap-a-pee, adorned with Plumes, and Scarfs, with Launces in their Hands, wherewith they run at one another a full gallop, aiming at one particular part of the Body; he that hits nearest to it, carrying the Prize. We saw several Launces broken, but no body was either hurt or dismounted.

Tilting.

Dr. *Ovidio Montalbano*, one of the Professors here, shew'd us the *Museum* of *Aldrovandus*, left as a Legacy to this City, and kept in the Cardinal Legates Palace. What delighted us most, were ten Volumes of the Pictures of Plants, and six more of Birds, Fishes, and other Beasts, drawn in Water Colours. The same Person also introduced us to *Jacobus Zenoni*, an Apothecary, and very curious Herbarist; who among other Rarities shew'd us three pieces of Rock Crystal with some drops of Water, enclosed in the middle of them, as might plainly be discovered by the motion of the Crystals: In his Garden we made observation of the following Plants; *Arundo nastos* sive *farcta*, in rivis Rheni Bononiensis; *Solanum Americanum fructu molli*. Eyst. *Geranium triste*, Cornuti: *Scammonea Syriaca*; *Polytrichum Alpinum inciso folio, costâ viridi*; *Convolvulus Althææ folio non inciso*; *Pentaphyllum lucidum folio hirsuto*, ab ipso inventum propè Rhenum Bononiensem; *Malva Alpina folio laciniata*; *Jacobæa folio Betonicæ*, n. d. *Abrotanum fœmina inodorum*; *Bardana de Congo*, *Helleborus niger trifolius spinosus*, *Cyclamen Baldense folio rotundo*, *flore odorato*; *Thlaspi folio Sampsuchi*; item *folio sedi*; *Daucus Creticus verus*; *Stachys Cretica Salviæ folio*; *Clematis Smilaci Asperæ similis*, *verum non aspera*, *Clematis tetraphylla Americana*, *Malvæ folio Betonicæ*, ab ipso inventa; *Labrum Veneris altissimum Indicum*, *Eruca Tanaceti folio*, *Genista Alpina* sive *Spartium*. Col. *Adianthum nigrum ramosum Canadense* Cornut. *Chamædryos spuriæ species* ab ipso inventa propè *Rhenum Bononiensem*; besides many others, which had not yet put forth, it being early in the Spring.

The

The same Day we gave a visit to the famous Chymist *Giuseppi Buccmi*, who shew'd us the Effects of the *Phosphorus*, a Composition, which if exposed for some time to the Air, and afterwards put into a dark place, will appear like a burning Coal for some time, till by degrees its light begins to slacken, and quite vanishes at last, till it be exposed again to the Air. The Crude Stone which he shew'd us was like a kind of Sparre, which, as he told us, acquired this quality by being calcinated in a small Furnace, the pieces of Stone being laid upon an Iron Grate over a Wood fire; but whatever he told us, we could not make some of those Stones, which he sold us, shine, tho' we calcinated them exactly according to his Directions. The *Phosphorus* does by degrees entirely lose its shining quality, as we found by experience, in those we brought along with us. Hereabouts, and all along in *Lombardy*, we saw in flower the *Aconitum hyemale*, known otherwise by the Name of *Anemone Bononiensium*.

The shining Stone.

Castel Franco. Modena.

February the 22d, We continued our Journey towards *Modena*, by the way of *Castel Franco*, a strong Castle, belonging to the Pope, upon the Frontiers of *Modena*, about 20 Miles distant from *Bologna*, a place of no great extent, but very populous, being the Dukes usual Residence, and tolerably well fortified with a thick Wall, a broad Ditch, and some Out-works. In this place as well as at *Padua*, *Bologna*, and other places of *Lombardy*, we observed the Houses very well built of Brick, but not high, and the Streets cloistred on both sides, which seems to intimate, that this was the manner of Building of the *Goths* or *Lombards*, who settled in those parts. The Duke's Palace is no large Structure, but very neat within, the Rooms being nicely gilt, and adorned with Hangings and Pictures of the best Masters. What most delighted us was the Chamber of Rarities, Jewels, ancient and modern Coins and Medals, ancient and modern Entaglia's, curious pieces of turn'd Works, dried Plants pasted upon Boards whitened with Cerus; and a very fine Collection of Designs of the best Painters. We saw also a Human Head petrefied; a Hen's Egg, having the Figure of the Sun on one side; Moss included in a piece of Crystal; Silver in another; and a Fly in a piece of Amber, &c. The ordinary Revenues of the Duke of *Modena*, are computed to 350000 Crowns *per Annum*, his Expences not amounting to above half the Sum. About 28 Miles from *Modena*, near *Paiuli* Castle, issues out of a Mountain, a Spring of *Petroleum*; and in another Mountain call'd *Monte Niceni*, are found abundance of petrefied Cockles and other Shells.

Reggio.

February the 24th, We set out from *Modena* for *Parma*, and at seven Miles, having forded the River *Secchio*, and pass'd by a small, but strong Town call'd *Rubiera*, on the Left-hand, after a Journey of eight Miles further, came to the City of *Reggio*, being of equal bigness and strength with *Modena*, and belonging to the same Duke, whose Title is Duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*. This last being built more at length than the former, makes a fairer shew at a distance, having one long and one broad Street. Here are very good Sculptors and Artizans in carving of Ivory and Wood, for which, this Town is celebrated throughout *Italy*.

Parma.

Ten Miles further, passing thro' a long Bridge over the River *Lenza*, we entred the Territories of *Parma*, and five Miles more, brought us to the Gates of the City of *Parma*, which exceeds *Modena* in bigness, having broad Streets, but no Portico's.

Placenza.

February the 26, In our way to *Placenza*, we ferried at six Miles distance from *Parma*, over the River *Taro*, and nine Miles farther, came to a Town call'd St. *Donin*, and eight Miles beyond this, to a little Town call'd *Fiorenzuola*, near which, passing the River *Arta*, we came, after twelve Miles travelling, to *Placenza*. This City is well fortified, and defended by a strong Castle; in bigness it is equal to *Parma*, but its Buildings not so fair. The Dukes Revenues are computed to be 400000 Crowns *per Annum*, tho' some say 500000; he being, besides *Parma* and *Placenza*, Master of the Dukedom of *Castro*, and the Country of *Ronciglione*.

Crema.

The 27th, We took Horse for *Crema*, and passing thro' *Castigno* in the *Milanese*, and two Miles further, ferrying over the River *Adda*, and two Miles thence the River *Serio* (which falls into the *Adda*) we came to *Crema*, a Frontier City, belonging to the *Venetians*, about 13 Miles from *Placenza*, of no large extent, but well fortified; its situation being in a Plain near the River *Serio*.

Romin.

The 29th, We continued our Journey, and passing thro' *Osanengo*, three Miles from *Crema*, and by the Castle of *Romanengo*, belonging to the *Spaniards*, came to *Soncin*, a considerable place in the *Milanese*: Not far hence we ferried over the River *Oy* (*Ollius*) and two Miles further, rode close by a small Town call'd *L'orzi nuovi*, but well fortified, under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction. Two Miles further we pass'd a great Village call'd *L'orzi Vecchii*, and several others of note, and so came to *Brescia*, which is 30 Miles from *Crema*. The Country hereabouts was well planted with Flax, very populous, and the Fields fenced with Hedges like our *English* Enclosures.

L'orzi nuovi.

The City of *Brescia*, is not altogether so big as *Verona*, but better inhabited, its Streets being regular and spacious, with Bricks set edge ways on both sides (as the Cities in *Holland* are) as are also the Streets of *Parma*, *Placenza* and *Crema*. It has a double Wall, the exteriour of which is very strong, and encompass'd with a good Ditch, besides a Castle standing on a rocky Hill, which both defends and commands the Town. The Mountains hereabours afford very good Iron and Copper Ore, and the Inhabitants are accounted great Masters in Iron Works, but especially in making of Guns, which are in great esteem all over *Italy*; as is also the Cheese of *Brescia*. As they abound in fruitful Valleys, so their Markets are excellently well stored with Provisions. The Territories of this City extend in length, from *Mosa* near *Mantua* to *Dialengo*, in the upper end of *Val Camonica*, 100 Miles, and in breadth, from *Lago di Garda* to *L'orzi nuovi* 50 Miles, being full of Towns and large Villages. This City, like many others of *Italy*, has undergone the fate of many changes of Government, during the intestine Broils of the two famous Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines*; after which, it fell to the share of the Dukes of *Milan*, till 1426. they submitted to the Protection of the *Venetians*. On the sides of the Hill where the Castle stands, we found Serpent Stones, or *Cornua Ammonis*, and divers other petrefied Shells.

Brescia.

Its Citadel

March the 2d, We continued our Journey thro' the Villages of *Hospitaletto*, *Cokai* and *Palazzuol*, the last of which is seated upon the Banks on both sides of the River *Ollio*.

As we were travelling on to *Bergamo*, we had a full view of the *Alps*. This City is considerable both for its bigness and strength, being situate on the side of a Hill, encompass'd by strong Walls and a broad Ditch, but without Water: The Castle, tho' none of the biggest, yet is very strong by its situation. Without the Walls are five large Suburbs, call'd St. *Leonardo*, at the bottom of the Hill, inhabited chiefly by Merchants, the Suburbs of St. *Anthony*, St. *Catharine*, St. *Thomas*, and that of St. *Godard*. In the Church of the *Austin* Friars, we saw the Monument of *Ambrose Calepine*, the Author of the famous Dictionary. Over his Cell in the Cloister was a *Latin* Inscription, intimating, That he was a Native of *Bergamo*, and a Monk of this Convent, and that he died here, 1511, in the 71 Year of his Age. This City has also been subject to various Changes: They first submitted to the *Venetians*, 1428; but were 1509, forced to acknowledge the Sovereignty of the *French*, after they had made themselves Masters of *Milan*; but these being expell'd thence three Years after, it remained under the Jurisdiction of the then Duke of *Milan*, *Maximilian Sforza*, from whom it however revolted soon after to the *Venetians*, but was forced to return to its former Obedience, till at last the *Venetians* got once more in possession of it, 1516. and remain Masters of it ever since. They are governed by a Major, a Military Commander, Chamberlain, and Governour of the Castle sent hither from *Venice*. *Bergamo* is of so great reputation among the *Italians*, that by way of Proverb they say, *If* Bergamo *stood in a Plain, it would be a fairer City than* Milan. From hence we went on Horse-back to *Calcnica*, a Village seated upon the River *Adda*, in the *Milanese*, whence we went by Water to *Milan*.

Bergamo.

Novara. Vercelli.

Turin.

This City, which is one of the four Cities of the first Rank in *Italy* (*Rome*, *Venice* and *Naples*, being the other three) is also surnamed *la Grande*, from its bigness, having ten Miles in circumference, and approaching to a circular Figure. It contains 11 Collegiate Churches, 71 Parishes, 30 Monasteries for Monks, 36 for Nuns, eight of Regular Canons, the number of Inhabitants are said to be 300000, but this last is somewhat too large. Provisions are here all so cheap and plentiful, that the *Italians* have made it into a Proverb, *That they eat well only at* Milan. The Cathedral here challenges the second place after that of St. *Peter's* at *Rome*, both for bigness and sumptuousness; being 250 Cubits long, and 130 broad, and of a proportionable height; but the *Grand Hospital* justly claims the preference before all others in *Europe*, for its magnificent Structure and bigness. Among other Courts, it has a Square surrounded with a double Portico, one below the other above stairs. Its Revenues are yearly 50000 Crowns, out of which are maintained 4000 poor and infirm Persons. The Monasteries and Churches here are beautified with many Pictures and Statues of the

Milan.

best Masters, and stored with excessive rich Church Ornaments, for which I will refer my self to *Schottus*, and others. The *Bibliotheca Ambrosiana*, founded by Cardinal *Borromeo*, is a goodly Edifice, stored with goodly Books, unto which strangers as well as the Inhabitants, have a free access. But the College call'd *Hermathenæum*, is a truly noble Building, the Court being adorned with a double row of Cloisters, one above the other, with double Pillars each; the lowermost of the *Ionic*, the uppermost of the *Tuscan* Order.

Its Cittadel

The Cittadel of *Milan*, either for its bigness or strength, may also compare with any in *Europe*. The ancient Castle has been twice enlarged, first by the *French*, who taking in a considerable piece of Ground, encompass'd it with a very thick and high Wall, and a deep Ditch; from hence you have a fair Prospect of the whole City and circumjacent Country, as well as those Fortifications added by the *Spaniards*, being of a Pentagonal Figure, with a Bastion at each Angle, and a Half-moon between every two Bastions. *Schottus* says, that the Compass of the whole Fortifications (not including the Trenches) is 1600 Paces. We were told, that within the Castle, they have a Water-mill driven by a Spring, which arises within the Circumference of the Castle.

March the 6th, We saw the Collection of Rarities of *Manfredus Septalius*, Son to *Ludovicus Septalius*, the noted Physician, and among other things, divers Looking-glasses, which by natural Reflection, did multiply the Object, almost in infinite; A plain Glass, with spherical Portuberances, which represented the Objects as often multiplied, as there were Portuberances, and another Looking-glass of the same kind; several concave burning Glasses of Metal; several *Automata* and Clocks, among which, two of a Cylindrical Figure, moved without Weight or Spring, only by being placed upon an enclining Plain; so that their Motion proceeded from their own weight; besides many other Curiosities both natural and artificial, for the Description of which, I will refer my Reader to the Catalogue thereof, published by the Owner himself. There are great Artists in this City in working and engraving Chrystals, and other Glasses and Stones. Their way of polishing is perform'd by a Brass-wheel, upon which the Powder of *Smiris* mix'd with Water is put, and to smooth it, they use the Powder of (a) *Sasse-mort*, as they call it, which is a heavy pebble Stone, which by lying in the Water, dies by degrees, first degenerating into a light Pumice, and at last crumbling to Dust. They told us for truth, that most Stones by lying long in the Water, will die in this manner, except the clear pellucid Pebbles.

(a) i. e. Dead Stone.

March the 10th, We began our Journey towards *Turin*, along the Bank of the River *Navilio*, and leaving *Biagrassa*, a small Town to our left, we lodged at *Bufalora*, 22 Miles from *Milan*. By the way among the Hedges, we found *Fumaria bulbosa flore purpureo & albo*, in flower, and *Aristolochia rotunda*.

Novara Vercelli.

The 11th, We continued our Journey over *Novara*, a strong place belonging to the *Spaniards*, to *Vercelli*, under the Duke of *Savoy*'s Jurisdiction; a large place but neither strong nor populous 20 Miles from our last Night's Lodging.

The 12th, We travelled 18 Miles as far as *Sian*; and the 13th, being stop'd by the Floods, were constrained to stay at eight Miles length at *Chivas*; and the 14th passing by many Waters, and after we had ferried over at *Orco* and *Stura*, arrived at *Turin*.

Turin.

This City, known to the Ancients by the name of *Augusta Taurinorum*, and seated upon the River *Po*, is of no great extent, but very populous, this being the ordinary Residence of the Dukes of *Savoy*. The old Buildings are but very indifferent, but one new Street, and several other Houses of late date, are handsome and uniform. The Piazza is in the midst of the Street, being a large Square, with a lofty Cloister on each side: And at one end of it another Piazza, fronting the Duke's Palace, which is not yet finished. The Cittadel has five Bastions. Here we met with some of the Protestants of the Valleys of *Lucern* and *Angrona*, who had lately obtain'd Liberty of Conscience from the Duke. They told us, that being about 15000 Souls, they inhabited 14 or 15 Villages only, their fighting Men (who amounted not to above 2000) being divided into 14 Companies, under as many Captains, and that they had kill'd above 500 of the Duke's People in the last War, with the loss only of 40 or 50 of their own. They are the only Protestants in *Italy*, having maintained the Purity of their Religion, for above these 1200 Years. Here is also an University, which challenges the first Introduction of Printing into *Italy*. As the plain Country about *Turin* is very fruitful, so all Provisions are very plentiful and cheap here; it being certain that *Piemont*, for plenty of Corn, Cattle, Wine, Fruit, Hemp, and Flax, may compare with the best in *Italy*; and the Inhabitants apply themselves more to Husbandry than Traffick; which according to *Leti*'s Observations, makes them live generally well, and none excessive rich. The Duke's Revenue, if we may believe the same Author, amounts to 1800000 Crowns; of which *Piemont* alone produces 1400000. His Possessions in *Italy*, are, besides the Principality of *Piemont*, the two *Marquisates* of *Saluzzes* and *Asti*, the Dukedom of *Aosta*, and the Countries of *Nizza* and *Vercelli*. There are three very handsome Palaces belonging to the Duke near the City, call'd the *Venery*, *Millefiore*, and *Valentine*. The first Invention of oil'd Cloth is attributed to *Giacomo Marigi*, a Citizen of *Turin*.

March the 17th, Having provided our selves with a good Guide, we set out from *Turin* from *Genoa*, where we arrived in three Days after. Not above a Mile below *Turin* we cross'd the *Po* (which begins to be navigable here) by a Bridge; and after a Mile's travelling along the River, we ascended the Hills, under which the River has a very difficult ascent. In the Woods near the foot of the Mountains, and in the Woods on the Mountains, as also in the Ditches we pass'd by, I observed growing wild (a) *Dens caninus flore purpureo* Ger. *Leucoium Bulbosum vulgare* C. B. *Dentaria aphyllos* Clus. five *Arbutum Cordi. Doronicum vulgare* J. B. *Hepatica Trifolium* Lob. *Hyacinthus botryodes* 2 Clus. About five Miles from *Turin*, we pass'd thro' a large Town call'd *Chier*, and four Miles further, thro' another call'd *Villa nova*, and lodged that Night at *Asti*, 20 Miles from *Turin*, a large Town, but much decayed.

(a) i. e. Dogs Tooth Violet, common Bulbous Violet, the greater Toothwort, common Leopards Bane, the noble Liverwort, and the lesser Grape-Hyacinth.

The 18th, We travell'd as far as *Nove*, a goodly Town, under the *Genoese*, 27 *Piemont* Miles from *Asti* (which I believe may make 35 of ours). All along the Banks of the River *Tanar*, about four Miles from *Asti*, we found under the high Sands or Banks, abundance of Oisters, Scallops, Cockles, and other Shells petrefied; and among the rest the *Antales*, *Belemnites*, and other rare Stones. In the Corn-fields we met with (b) *Ornithogalum luteum* C. B. in flower. We pass'd this Day thro' two large Villages, call'd *Non* and *Felizan*, and so to *Alexandria*, a large and strong Town, but meanly built. The River *Tanar* divides it self into two parts, which are join'd together by a goodly Bridge of Brick-work; and thence to *Nove*.

(b) Yellow Star of *Bethlehem*. This has been found also in the Woods near *Gretta* Bridge in the North riding of *Yorkshire* in *England*.

The 19th, We travell'd from hence for 30 Miles together all over Mountains: After the first six Miles travelling, we came to a pretty wall'd Town, within a strong Castle call'd *Gavi*, and six Miles further to another goodly place call'd *Voltagio*; from whence, by a continued ascent of seven or eight Miles, we reached the top of a very high Hill; whence we had a full prospect both of *Genoa* and the Sea, whither we travell'd by a continual descent, meeting about 500 or 600 Asses and Mules, with Burthens on their Backs, by the way. Betwixt *Gavi* and *Voltagio*, we observed near the Road side *Dens caninus flore albo*; and on the Mountains from *Gavi* to *Genoa*, *Stœchas citrina altera tenuifolia sive Italica* J. B. *Psyllium majus semper virens & sedi minoris species flore albo quadrifolio*, now in flower; *Parasites flore albo*, on the side of the Mountain, about six Miles from *Voltagio*, towards *Genoa* side: *Erica arborescens Monspelliensis flore purpurascente ramulis ternis*, J. B. This last we met with near the Road from *Gavi* to *Genoa*, growing as tall here as the Broom, but is less near *Monpellier*.

Genoa.

March the 20th, We took a view of *Genoa*, which deservedly has got the Epithet of *Superba* among the *Italians*, by reason of its most magnificent Buildings, especially those of the *New-Street*, which contains not above ten Palaces, so stately and large, that the meanest of them is fit for the Entertainment of a great Prince and his Retinue. The Streets, which are somewhat narrow, seem to be no small blemish to the loftiness of their Buildings, but the scarcity of Ground, and defending themselves against the heat of the Sun, in the Streets, has put them upon this Expedient, which is frequently observed in many other ancient Towns of *Italy*, and *Gallia Narbonensis*. *Genoa*, as it lies under the Mountains, exposed to the South, being extreamly subject to scorching heats in the Summer, which however furnishes them with plenty of Oranges, Olives, and other Fruits. Its Figure is like a Crescent, fortified to the Land-side with a double Wall. The exterior taking in a great Tract of Ground, and extending to the top of the Mountains, which together with a Mole to secure their Harbour, has cost a prodigious Sum of Money, and is scarce to be parallell'd. The Inhabitants seem to bear but a slender proportion to the fair shew of their Buildings, they being very insolent, faithless, and uncivil to Strangers,

which verifies the old *Italian* Proverb of *Genoa*, viz. That it has, *Mountains without Trees, a Sea without Fish, Men without Faith, and Women without Shame.* Their chief Manufactory is in Silks and Velvets.

Their Government is administer'd by a Duke, who is changed every two Years, by two Colleges, one of the *Governatori*, the other of the *Procuratori*, 12 of the first, and eight of the last, who are all Elected; (3) by a greater Council of 400; (4) a lesser Council of 100; (5) A *Seminary* of 120 for the two *Collegia*. The chief Administration of publick Affairs, lies in the two Colleges of *Governatori* and *Procuratori*, who are the Senate and Privy Council of the Commonwealth, and are chosen twice a Year, *viz.* about the middle of *June* and the middle of *December*. The Society of St. *George* is a Company of Bankers, incorporated, who lend Money to the Publick, and others, upon good Security. They chuse Yearly eight Protectors, who manage the Affairs of their whole Company.

The publick Revenue of *Genoa*, is reckoned at 1200000 Crowns *per Annum*. There are in this City many private Persons vastly rich.

Upon the Cliffs near the *Pharos*, or Watch-Tower, we found these Plants, *Trifolium luteum luminosum* Ger. *Jacobæa marina* Ger. *Conyza major Monspelensis odorata* J. B. *Alaternus*; *Carduus galactites* J. B. *Thymum vulgare rigidius folio cinereo* J. B. *Geranium folio Alceæ*, C. B. *Thlaspi Alysson dictum maritimum* C. B. *Lotus Libyca Dalechampii*; *Lotus pentaphyllos siliquosus villosus* C. B. *Smilax aspera*; *Adianthus sive Capillus Veneris* J. B. *Hyoscyamus albus* Park. Hæc species circa *Genuam* habet folia breviora, viridiora, rotundiora, minus laciniata, quam vulgaris niger, florem minorem, in nonnullis totum luteum, in aliis planis, fundo obscure purpureo. On the Walls we saw Stock-Gilly-Flowers growing in abundance, but whether wild, or from some scattered Seeds, I will not determine; as also the *Globulæ Montispessulanum*, and *Genista Hispanica*, on the Eastern Rocks of the City. Upon the Sea we saw many Sea-balls, or round Lumps of *Festuca*, supposed to be cast out of Fishes Stomachs.

April the 2d, We pass'd in a Boat from *Genoa* to *Porto Venere*, and thence cross'd the Bay of *Spezzia* to *Lerici*, where taking Post-horses, we rode to *Sarzana*, a strong frontier Town, belonging to the *Genoeses*, and lodged that Night at *Massa*, a small City, but dignified with the Title of a Principality, the Duke thereof being likewise Lord of *Carrara*. His chief Revenues come from the Marble Quarries. He is of the *Genoese* Family of the *Cybo's*

April the 3th, We travell'd thro' a boggy Valley near the Foot of the Mountains, a kind of a desolate Country, as far as *Luca*: In this Journey we took notice of the the following Plants, *Scrophularia Urticæ folio* C. B. *Orchis macrophylla* Col. *Moly parvum caule triangulo*, between *Massa* and *Sarzana*, *Narcissus Medioluteus polyanthos* Ger. in Flower, among the Corn. On the sides of the Mountains, between *Massa* and *Luca*, *Antirrhinum flore luteo* C. B. *Tithymalus dendroides* J. B. *Lenticscus*, *Anagyris sive Laburnum*; *Colutea Vesicaria*, *Colutea Scorpioides*, *Ruta silvestris major*, J. B. *Laurus vulgaris*; *Teucrium*: In the Ditches and shady places, *Aristolochia Asarum latifolium* Clus. and *Aristolochia longa*; a sort of *Dentaria Aphyllos*, with a purple Flower; covering the Ground almost like Housleek, having scarce any Stalk. *Lychnis serrata folio angustissimo, flore rubello*, among Flax. *Ornithogalum vulgare* Ger. among the Corn *Cyclamen vernum*, in flower, among the Shrubs on the Hill's sides. *Myrtus minor vulgaris*; *Philyrea angustifolia*; *Philyrea* 3 Clus.. *Genista Hispanica* Ger. Upon the descent of the Mountains, four Miles from *Luca*, *Hesperis sylvestris latifolia flore albo parvo* Park. A kind of *Alsine hirsuta myosotis*, with a large Flower. A Shrub not unlike the *Guajacum Patavinum*, a kind of *Thlaspi monospermos*, with a white Flower. *Sedum minus semine stellato*; an *Sedum echinatum flore luteo* J. B. *Alsine foliis hederaceis*, *Rutæ modo divisis* Lob. *Anemone tuberosa radice* Ger. in Flower. Near *Porto Venere* we saw *Alsine folio crassо*.

Luca, contains not above 30 Miles in circuit, but is very populous for its bigness, the ease of the Government drawing thither abundance of People. Its situation is very pleasant, in a delightful Valley; and its Fortifications and Out-works strong and kept in good repair. The Buildings are fair, and their Churches, tho' not very large, yet neat and well kept. The Inhabitants, both of the City and Country very courteous, and withal so careful to preserve their Liberty, that they omit nothing which they think may contribute to maintain it. Their Women here are not kept so strict as in other parts of *Italy*, being allowed to walk abroad with a reasonable share of Freedom: They are generally handsome enough, and in their Dress affect to follow the *French*. The Administration of the Government is by the Great Council of 160, chosen every Year from among the Nobility (the rest having no share therein) these must be 25 Years old at least, nine *Anziani* and a *Gonfaloniere*, these last are chosen a-new every two Months, and are stiled the *Signioria*, the *Gonfaloniere* being their Head, but no more than by his Title. The City is divided into three Wards, call'd *Terzieri*, each of which has its Arms or Banner, call'd *Gonfalone*, whence the name *Gonfaloniere*: On the Corners of each Street these Arms are painted, with the Name of the Ward it belongs to, and what Bulwark they are to defend, in case of a sudden Attack. The Council chuses three *Anziani* out of each of those Wards. Their Revenue is computed at 100000 Crowns yearly. Hereabouts grow the best Olives in *Italy*.

The City of *Pisa*, formerly a rich and populous Commonwealth, is since its coming under the *Florentine* Yoak, become poor and almost desolate, notwithstanding all the Endeavours of the Great Dukes of *Florence*, who have erected an University, founded an Order of Knighthood, and built an Exchange there, for the Encouragement of the Inhabitants. Its Situation, which is in a fenny Ground, upon the River *Arnus*, renders its Air very unwholsome and obnoxious to Strangers. What we thought worth our peculiar Observation here, were (1) St. *Stephen*'s Church, dedicated to the Order of that Name, founded here by *Cosmus*, the first Great Duke of *Tuscany*. (2) The College for Students in Law and Philosophy (formerly the House of *Barbalus*) founded by the Great Duke *Ferdinand*, 1596. (3) The Cathedral, being a most magnificent Structure of Marble, the Doors of Brass, curiously engraven, a double Isle on each side of the Nave, and two Rows of Marble Pillars, beautified with stately Altars, and select Pieces of Painting, the sides hung with red Velvet, and the Roof richly gilded. On each side of the high Altar, you see a Picture, and under each of them an Inscription, giving a short Account of two notable Adventures of this City, which are expressed there.

I. *Templum hoc, ut auctæ potentiæ ac religionis insigne monumentum posteris extaret, Pisani ex Saracenorum spoliis captâ Panormo ædificatum, ac Sanctorum reliquiis è Palæstina usque advectis auctum, Gelasius II. P. M. solenni pompa consecravit*, An. Dom. M. C. XIX.

II. Pascale II. P. M. *autore, Pisani classe* 300 *triremium Petro Arch. Pis. Duce Baleares Insulas, profligatis Saracenis in ditionem redigunt, Christianoque nomini adjungunt; captâ regiâ Conjuge ac filio præclaram victoriam illustri pioque triumpho exornarunt* A. D. 1115.

4. The *Baptisterium*, in the Center of which you see a very noble Font of Marble, into which, like a Ciftern, the Water runs continually; the Pulpit is also of Marble, with most curious carved Work. (5) The *Campo Santo*, or Burying-place, being an oblong Square, enclosed with a broad Portico, well painted, and paved with Grave-stones: The Earth which makes up this Church-yard, is said to be brought from the Holy Land, and to consume Bodies in 48 Hours. (6) The Steeple, a round Tower, of a great height, seeming to encline so much to one side, as if it were ready to fall, which some attribute to the Contrivance of the Builder, others to a Defect in the Building. (7) The *Aqueduct*, which conveys the Water from the Mountains for five Miles into the City, by 5000 Arches, being begun by *Cosmus* and finished by *Ferdinand* I. great Dukes of *Florence*: This Water, for its goodness, is carried in Flasks to *Legborn*, (8) The Physick-garden, then but slenderly provided with Plants.

We took Boat here for *Legborn* (the *Portus Liburnus* of the Ancients) about twelve Miles hence. This Town is not very stately nor large, the Houses being but low, yet pretty uniform, and the Streets regular, with a large Piazza in the middle: It is strongly fortified on the Land side, and since the Great Duke has made it a free Port, much encreased in Traffick and Riches: Its convenient Situation for the Levant Trade having drawn thither great numbers of Strangers, and especially *Jews*, of the last of which there are computed to be above 5000. Before it was so well inhabited, it was reputed a very unhealthful place, by reason of its Situation in a fenny Level, without Mountain, or as much as a Hillock within five Miles of it, but since that time, the Multitude of Fires, and the Industry of the Inhabitants, have, by draining those Marshy Grounds, rendred the Air as agreeable here, as in most parts of *Italy*.

The

The Harbour within the Mole is but ſmall, but this Defect is compenſated by the goodneſs of the Road without, where there is ſafe Anchorage for Ships. Near the Harbour ſtands a moſt magnificent Statue of the Great Duke *Ferdinand* I. the Pedeſtal of which being, as it was, ſuſtained by four Braſs Statues of chained Slaves, of a gigantick Stature. The Great Dukes often reſide here in Lent, by reaſon of the great plenty and cheapneſs of Fiſh, tho' all other Proviſions are here at a dear rate. We ſaw many Work-men here employed in filling of *Marking-ſtones*, call'd in *Latin*, *Lapis galactites & morochthus*, by the *Italians*, *Pietra Lattaria*; they are found at *Monte negro*, five Miles from *Leghorn*; of the Duſt and Filings of which Stone, they make Powder for Hair.

Plants about Leghorn.

The following Plants we took notice of about *Leghorn*, *Kali geniculatum majus*, in the Marſhes near the Sea. *Abſinthium Scriphium Gallicum*, *Polium montanum album* C. B. *Medica doliata ſpinoſa*, *Medica cochlenta Spinoſa*, *Medica marina*, on the Sands. *Caltha arvenſis* C. B. *Hyacinthus paluſtris vernus*, *floſculis fimbriatis albis*; *Hyacinthus comoſus* Ger. *Lathyrus flore coccineo*; *Vicia luteo flore ſilveſtris*. *Ochrus ſive ervilia* Dod. theſe three laſt among the Corn, as alſo *Gladiolus Narbonenſis* Lob. *Telephium ſcorpioides* Anguill. in arenoſis. *Phyteuma Monſpelienſium*; *Cichorium pratenſe veſicarium* Col. *Medica Scutellata* J. B. *Iris humilis violacea latifolia*, & eadem *flore albo*, in rupibus ad mare. *Herniaria hirſuta*, *Allii ſpecies*, an *Ampelopraſſum*? *Ferrum equinum* Lob. *Orchis macrophylles* Col. *Trifolium fragiferum ſive Veſicarium*, *floribus nitidis rubellis floſculis velut in umbella parva diſpoſitis*, *Chryſanthemum Bellidis folio* Hort. Pat. inter ſegetes. *Buphthalmum Cotulæ folio* C. B. an *Chryſanthem. Valentinum* Cluſii? *Anthyllis leguminoſa flo. purpureo*. *Cruciata minima muralis* Col. *Peplus minor* J. B. *Ageratum ſive Balſamita mas*: A ſort of *Draba* with a white Flower. *Hieracium perfoliatum*; beſides divers which we had ſeen in other places; as that ſort of *Dorycnium* which *J. Bauhinus* calls *Trifolium album rectum hirſutum valdè*, *Carduus Chryſanthemus Narbonenſis*, call'd by *Lobel Eryngium luteum Monſpelienſium*, *Heliotropium majus*, *Carduus ſolſtitialis* Ger. *Cichorium pratenſe verrucarium* in arvis paſſim; *Blattaria flore luteo*; *Convolvulus minimus ſpicifolius* Lob. *Meliſſa ſilveſtris hirſutior minus odorata*, *Dorycnio congener planta*; *Raphanus monoſpermon*; *Ammi vulgare*; *Paſſerina Tragi*; *Sideritis vulgaris*; *Aſter luteus foliis ad florem rigidis*; *Stœbe major caliculis non ſplendentibus*. Betwixt *Piſa* and *Leghorn*, we found *Leucoium bulboſum majus polyanthemum* Ger. in the Marſhes near *Piſa*, *Ariſtolochia clematitis*, *Aſter conyzoides* nobis dictus; *Aſparagus altilis*: *Gramen ſupinum aculeatum* J. B. Beſides which, we ſaw ſeveral that grow wild alſo in *England*, but not frequently, ſuch as *Leucoium marinum majus folio ſinuato*; *Orchis fuciflora galeâ & alis herbidis*; *Hyacinthus ſtellaris vernus minor*, and many others.

We embarked at *Leghorn*, a-board a *Dutch* Veſſel, bound for *Naples*, but the Wind being very various, we ſpent five Days in this Voyage. Our Maſter of the Ship, told us, that it was a general Obſervation here, for the Wind to blow Eaſt in the Forenoon, from the Land, and in the Afternoon, Weſterly from the Sea. We alſo made this Obſervation, That the Wind generally was quite laid with Sun-ſet, and we had generally but little about Sun-riſing. In our return from *Meſſina* to *Naples*, and thence to *Leghorn*, we found the Wind contrary, for the moſt part, which according to the Sea-mens Saying, is commonly ſo here in the Summer. We further obſerved, that the Wind did follow the Courſe of the Sun, it proving generally pretty well for us in the Morning, but in the Afternoon againſt us, the Land being to the Eaſt of us, which confirmed us in what our Captain had told us. He alſo aſſured us, that when they are to make a Voyage from *Holland* to the *Weſt-Indies*, they ſail up as high as the South of *Africk*, as the place whither they are bound in the *Weſt-Indies* lies; and then ſteer their Courſe Weſtward, the Wind blowing conſtantly from the Eaſt, and the Sea running the ſame way; whereas, when they return, they go round the Bay of *Mexico*, far to the North, and ſo paſs over to *Europe*, which, if true, much ſtrengthens the Opinion of the Diurnal Motion of the Earth.

Naples.

The City of *Naples*, extending in form of a Creſcent along the Sea-ſide, under the Hills, reſembling in form, that of *Genoa*, except, that it is much larger, and more populous; for, tho' the Circumference of its Walls, it exceeds not above ſeven *Italian* Miles, yet has it very ſpacious Suburbs. The Houſes here are generally lofty and goodly Structures, of Stone, flat roof'd, and covered with a certain Plaſter, which keeps out the Rain to admiration. Its Situation is ſo far to the South, and that under Hills, would make the Heat exceſſive here, were it not for the conſtant Breezes of Wind about Noon-tide, which ſo cool the Air, that, except two or three Days, we found the Weather temperate enough, even at our return, which was in *June*, when it rain'd very hard there ſeveral times, tho' they look'd upon it as extraordinary: For want of Rain, they have a way of cooling the Streets every Day, by drawing thro' them a Tun, with Water, in a Cart, which has many holes in it. The Dialect of the common People here, is far different from the *Tuſcane*, and not very intelligible. Proviſions, but eſpecially Fruit, is very cheap here, and among the reſt, we ſaw the *Cucurbita anguina*, *Cucumis anguinus*, *Mala inſana*, and *Limoncelle*, ſold in the Market. All the *Neapolitans*, and generally the *Italians*, drink their Wine and Water ſnowed, by putting the Veſſels in which the Wine is, into another full of Snow or Ice, which is the reaſon, that it is not only ſold in Stalls all over the Town, but they carry alſo ſmall Barrels, with Snow Water on their Backs, crying, *Snowed or Iced Water to be ſold*.

Beltranus (a) tells us, that there are 160 Religious Houſes of all ſorts in *Naples*, *viz.* 121. for Monks, and 39 for Women, which maintain 12421 Perſons. This City is defended, or rather bridled, by four Caſtles, *viz*, by the *Caſtle d' Ovo*, built on a Rock in the Sea, with an artificial Cauſeway leading to it; The *Caſtle St. Elmo*, ſeated on a Hill above the City; *Caſtle nove*, for the ſecurity of the Harbour and Galleys, which lie near it; and the *Torrione di Carmine*, being only a Tower belonging to a Convent of the *Carmelites*, but famous for its having ſerved as a retreat to the Rebels, under *Maſſaniello*.

a) Deſcript. Neap. Its Caſtles.

Churches and Convents.

Naples is famous for the beauty of its Churches, they being generally very ſumptuous, ſome of them not only paved with Marble, but alſo the Walls covered with it. Of all things that ever I ſaw of this nature, I never met with any thing that exceeds the Convent of the *Carthuſians*, adjoining to the Caſtle of St. *Elmo*, having a ſpacious ſquare Court, with the fineſt Cloiſter round it that ever was ſeen. The Pillars, as well as the Pavement of the *Portico's*, are of Marble of divers Colours, ſo curiouſly wrought and poliſh'd, and nearly kept, that it can't but ſurpriſe thoſe that behold it. The Granary of *Naples* is alſo worth the Obſervation of a curious Travellor, both for its Extent and Conveniencies: they told us that there was generally laid up as much Corn, as would ſuffice the whole City for ſeveral Years, in caſe of Neceſſity; and that the Bakers of *Naples* are obliged to buy 25000 *Tomoli* (Buſhels) of Corn out of it every Month, at a certain rate, which indeed exhauſts the price of Bread, but makes room for the laying up of new Corn, which is every Day turned in the Store-houſe, by a great number of Men kept for that Purpoſe.

Its Provinces.

The whole Kingdom of *Naples* is divided into twelve Provinces; the Nobility is diſtinguiſhed into five *Seggi* or Societies, that of *Capua*, *Nido*, *Montagna*, *Porta*, and *Porta nova*; compoſed of 87 Princes, 122 Dukes, 159 Marqueſſes, and ſeven Earls. It has in all 20 Archbiſhopricks; and 122 Biſhopricks (to 30 of which the King of *Spain* only nominates;) and 148 Cities. (1) The Province of *Terra di lavoro*, (the ancient *Campania felix*) has 14 Cities, among which *Capua*, *Gaeta*, *Pozzuoli*, and *Vico Equenſe*, are the chiefeſt. (2) *Principato Citra*, containing 18 Cities; among them, *Campagna*, *Capri*, in the Iſle *Capreæ*, famous for the Retirement of *Tiberius Cæſar*, *Cappaccia*, *Laurino*, &c. (3) *Principato ultra*, which has 14 Cities, as *Beneveno*, *Avellino*, St. *Angelo de Lombardi*, *Monte marano*, &c. (4) *Baſilicata*, containing 11 Cities, as *Lavello*, *Policaſtro*, *Venoſa*, *Monte peloſo*, &c. (5) *Calabria Citra*, which has 12, as *Manſea*, *Paola*, *Montalto*, St. *Marco*, &c. (6) *Calabria Ultra*, 16, as *Reggio* (the Ancients *Rhegium*) *Belicaſtro*, *Montilene*, *Melito*, *Nicoterra*, &c. (7) *Terra d' Otranto*, 14, as *Gallipoli*, *Brindiſi*, *Otranto* (the ancient *Hydruntum*) *Caſtro*, &c. (8) *Terra di Bari*, 16, as *Andria*, *Barletta*, a very ſtrong place, *Biſeglia*, *Polignano* or *Puignano*. (9) *Abruzzo Citra*, has five only, *viz.* *Chieti*, *Sulmona*, *Benevento*, *Borrelle*, and *Ortona*. (10) *Abruzzo Ultra*, has alſo no more than five, *viz.* *Aquila*, *Atri*, *Campli*, *Civita di Penna*, and *Teramo*. (11) *Contado di Moliſi*, has four, *viz.* *Bojano Guardia*, *Alferes*, *Iſernia*, and *Trivento*. (12) *Capitanata*, contains 13, as *Monte St. Angelo*, *Aſcoli*, *Lucera*, *Sancto Severo*, *Manfredonia*, &c. Among this great number of Cities, are many which can't compare with the beſt ſort of our Villages in *England*.

Hearth Money is a cuſtomary Tax in the Kingdom of *Naples*, each Hearth paying 15 Carolines (about ſeven Shillings *Engliſh*) to the King, except the *Sclavonians*, who pay but 11 Carolines a Year, the whole Tax, deducting

ducting what is to be abated for privileged places, amounts to 6554873 Ducats and 6 Carolines *per An.* The Tax with the Feudatories pay yearly, instead of Personal Services, amounts to 120568 Ducats, besides several other Excises and Taxes, the whole Revenue then amounting yearly to 2996937 Ducats, three Carolines, and 14 Grains.

The Philosophical Academy

We had the Curiosity to visit the Philosophic Academy of *Virtuosi* at one of their Meetings, which was then every *Wednesday*; in the Palace of the noble Marquess *Arena*, a truly courteous and obliging Person; there were not above 15 or 16 of the Members present, but triple the number of other Persons. They shew'd an Experiment of the Waters ascending above its Level, in slender Tubes, upon which, after they had discoursed a while, three of the Society made an Harangue each had studied on purpose, upon a certain Subject, upon which some Arguments having been given *pro* and *con*, they concluded the Meeting. I must confess that I was not a little surprised to see such a Company of Learned Men, in a place, where I was of opinion, they would scarce allow a reasonable Latitude of Judgment; and I must give them their due, that they were not only well acquainted with the best and most refined Authors of the immediately preceding Age, such as *Galileus à Galileo*, *Des Cartes*, *Gassendus*, *Harvey*, *Verulam*, &c. but also with those surviving in the present Age, as Mr. *Boyle*, Sir *George Ent*, Dr. *Glisson*, Dr. *Willis*, Dr. *Wharton*, Mr. *Hobbs*, Mr. *Hook*, Monsieur *Pecquet*, &c.

Pozzuolo

April the 24th, We went by Water to *Pozzuolo* (the Ancients *Puteoli*) where the Country People brought us abundance of Shells, dry'd *Hippocampi*, ancient Medals and *Entaglia*, nay, printed Glass to sell, which they said, they had raked out of the Sea. Near this place you see many Arches of Stone (13 Peers) reaching a good way into the Sea, which has given birth to that Opinion, that these are the Remnants of the beginning of *Caligula*'s Bridge over the Bay, and that from the Extremity of this Pile to *Baiæ*, the rest of the Bridge was made up of Vessels fastned together, and kept by Anchors on both sides. But to me, this seems to be the Ruins of a Mole or Peer, intended for the security of the Harbour, because upon every Peer, is to be seen a great Stone perforated, and jetting out to tie Vessels unto. Certain it is, as well from the manner of its Arches, as from the Bricks, that it was an ancient *Roman* Work.

Baiæ. The Baths of *Tritoli.*

From hence we pass'd cross the Gulph to *Baiæ*, to describe the Antiquities of which place, would require a Volume alone, for which reason we will refer the Reader to such, both *Latin* and *English* Authors, as have given us a full Description of them. I will content my self with giving you some Account of the Grots or sweating places, call'd by them *Bagne* (Baths) *de Tritoli*.

This is a strait and long Passage, like a long Entry, the upper part whereof is so hot, that should a Man walk long upright, he must be stifled by the hot Vapours which fill the upper part of this Vault, whereas the lower part is passable enough, so that every one is obliged to stoop. What I observed chiefly upon this Head was, that the lower part of the Vault, as far as it is tolerably cool, was covered on the sides with a very solid Stone, whereas the upper part was an unctuous, friable kind of Clay or Plaster; and what is more observable is, that at the very partition of the Stones and the Clay, on the sides of the Bath, the difference of the Degrees of Heat is very perceivable; so that where you find the Clay reach lower, you must rule the Inclination of your Body accordingly. We found a watery Vapour contained in these Sulphureous Steams, as was sufficiently manifest from the Drops, which notwithstanding the great heat, were condensed on the sides of the Vault.

The Cinder Mountain.

In our return from thence we took a view of the *New Mountain*, call'd by some *Monte di Cenere* (Cinder Mountain) raised by an Earthquake 1538 *September* the 29th, its whole Altitude being now about 100 Foot Perpendicular (tho' *Stephanus Pighius* makes it much higher and larger.) We were told that it produced nothing, yet we found *Myrtle*, *Mastick* Trees, and some other Shrubs there. It is composed of a spongy Earth, which makes a great sound if you stamp hard. By the same Earthquake the *Lacus Lucrinus* was fill'd up with Stones and Earth, and turned into a fenny Meadow. As we were coming back from *Pozzuolo*, we viewed also the Mountain call'd *Solfatara* (anciently *Campi Phlegræi*) which burns continually. On the very top of it is a very large excavated hole, of an Oval Figure, 1500 Foot long, and 1000 broad, where is the Burning; besides which, there are divers other holes, which convey the Smoak as out of a Furnace. Out of those Vents I gathered a kind of *Flores Sulphuris*, and *Sal Armoniac*, which stuck to the Mouths of those Holes, and thrusting a Sword into them, or any other Iron, you will find it all bedewed with drops of Water, an evident sign, that there is a considerable share of Water mixed with those fiery Exhalations; and what confirmed me the more in this Opinion, was, that those *Flores* would not burn or melt, by reason of the heterogeneous Particles mixed with them. The Inhabitants have a way of separating them from the Brimstone, which lies as thick as a Crust all over the Mountain. As you walk you hear the Earth give a sound every step you make, as it were hollow underneath; and what is more, if every thing be quiet, you may hear the very boiling and bubbling of the Minerals or other Liquors.

The Mountain *Solfatara.*

About five Miles distant from *Naples*, is the so much famed Mount *Vesuvius*, where we found the Ground all about the sides of it covered with Cinders and Porous Stones, which had been cast thus far during the Conflagration: We also perceived great Channels, such as are commonly left after strong and sudden Floods, which they told us were the Effects of the Waters, which at the time of burning, are thrown out of the Mountain. We found some *Acetosa ovilla* near the top, and a little lower *Colutea Scorpioides*, and some Shrubs of *Poplar*. It was very steep, jetting up to the top, where is a vast hollow Pit, of a Mile in compass, occasioned by the breaking out of the fiery Substance, at several times, with great violence. We observed also some small Vents or Passages for the Smoak, but were scarce considerable enough to threaten an Eruption.

Vesuvius.

We also took a view of the *Grotto di Cane* (Dogs Cave) near the Lake of *Agnano*: It is both narrow and short, and (whatever some have been pleased to tell the World) you may go into it, and continue there for a long time, without any prejudice, some of us staying at the further end of it, above an Hour; because the Vapour (whether Sulphureous or Arsenical) ascending not above a Foot above the Ground, which you may perceive plainly by the heat in your Feet and Legs, so that if you bend your Head towards the Ground, you will be immediately sensible of a smell like burning Brimstone, which seizing your Head, makes you stagger, and may stifle one. We took a Dog, and holding his Nose down near the Ground, almost kill'd him, then throwing him into the Lake to recover him (which is the general opinion it will) we found him too weak to swim, and so was drowned. We try'd the same Experiment with a Puller, which was kill'd immediately, and afterwards with a Frog, which likewise did not live long; and last of all with a Serpent, which did not hold out above half an Hour. If you hold a Candle below the part where the Vapours are, it is extinguished immediately. I am of opinion, that many more such Grots might be digged hereabouts.

Addita.

As we were going to this Grot, we pass'd thro' the artificial Passage or Vault, thro' Mount *Pausilipus*, performed by one *Cocceius*, in 15 Days. We judged it about half an *English* Mile long, tho' some will have it as long again. Where it is lowest, which is in the middle, it is 12 Foot high, and broad enough for two Carts to pass conveniently by one another. As it is so dark in the middle (no light coming in but at the two ends) that no body can see one another, so those that pass thro' it, cry always *Alla marina*, if they go to the Sea-side, and *Alla Montagna*, if they go towards the Country, so that each taking the Left-hand, they prevent the running upon one another.

The Hole thro' the Mount *Pausilipus.*

The Plants we thought fit to take particular notice of were, *Trifolium corniculatum incanum maritimum majus*; *Lotus siliquâ Ornithopodii*; *Medica orbiculata minor*; *Medica dolicea spinosa*; *Jacea purpurea maritima capitulo spinoso Neapolitana*; *Rhamnus primus* Clus. *Stœchas citrina altera tenuifolia sive Italica* J. B. *Linaria odorata*. *Monspessulana*, *Medica marina*; among the Sands near the Sea side. On the Rocks about *Puteoli* and *Baiæ*, *Cytisus incanus siliquis falcatis*; *Acanthus sativus*, *Laurus Tinus cæruleâ baccâ*; *Acacia altera trifolia* Ger. *Gnaphalium maritimum*; *Sonchus Creticus foliis laciniatis* C. B. *Chrysanthemi Cretici duæ autores differentiæ*; *Faba Veterum foliis serratis*. *Moly parvum caule triangulo*; *Centaureum luteum novum* Col. *Cerinthe minor flore luteo*; *Lychnis sylvestris hirta*. Lob. *Lychnis montana viscosa alba latifolia* C. B. *Gramen tremulum maximum*; *Lagopus maximus* Ger. On and about the Mountain *Vesuvius*, *Helianthemum flore maculoso* Col. *Trifolium stellatum* C. B. *Vicia seu Lathyrus gramineo folio flore coccineo*; *Colutea Scorpioides*; *Lotus arbor*; *Arbutus*; *Linaria graminea floribus congestis purpureis*; *Linaria purpurea magna* J. B. *Genista Hispanica*. By the way, as you go up from the City to the Convent of the *Camaldulenses*, *Marrubium Chymistarum* Lob. *Aristolochia rotunda*, *Orobus sylvaticus Vicia foliis* C. B. *Laurus*, *Chrysanthemum Bellidis*

plants near *Naples.*

Plants growing about *Messina.*

foile

folio, Digitalis lutea vel pallida parvo flore C. B. *Hemionitis multifida, Horminum luteum glutinosum, sive Colus Fœvis; Trifolium bituminosum,* of which you see abundance both in *Sicily* and *Italy*. *Cytisus hirsutus* J. B. whole Woods of *Chesnuts*; *Genista Hispanica*; *Celutea tum vesicaria tum scorpioides*; *Ferula* Lob. *Genista tinctoria Hispanica*; *Vicia floribus pallide luteis amplissimis*; *Aster montanus luteus Salicis glabro folio*; *Millefolium odoratum*; *Hesperis sylvestris latifolia flo. albo parvo* Park. *Androsæmum fœtidum sive Tragium*; *Speculum Veneris majus*; *Pancratium* Lob. near the Sea-shore about *Naples*. *Lotus corniculata siliquis singularibus vel binis, tenuis* J. B. *Tribulus terrestris copiosissime*; *Hyoscyamus albus*; *Juncus cyperoides Maritimus* Ad. Lob. frequently in the sandy Grounds near the Sea-shoar, both in *Sicily* and *Italy*. *Mala insana Italis Melongena*, sold at *Naples* in the Herb-Market; as likewise *Cucumis flexuosus anguinus, Cucumeres*, call'd otherwise *Citrulli*, after the *Italians*. Melones aquatici *cucumere*; *Cucurbita anguina*; Lob. *Malus Limonia fructu parvo*, the *Messineses* and *Neapolitans* call them *Limoncelles*; fructus rarò habet nucleos.

We observed the Fish-boats out at Sea with Lights at one end, to draw the Fish after it, and so they strike them with a Mole-spear.

April the 29th, We continued our Voyage in the same Vessel, that had brought us hither, to *Sicily*, and arrived *May* the second at *Messina*: We sail'd by the *Æolides* or *Vulcaniæ insulæ*, two of which, viz. *Stromboli* and *Vulcano*, do still burn; we saw the first all in flames as we pass'd by in the Night time. It being no easie matter to make the Mouth of the Streight, by the *Faro* of *Messina*, by reason of the Current, which is very violent here, sometimes running towards *Calabria*, sometimes towards *Sicily*; Our Master was forced to hire a Pilot for ten Pieces of Eight, who conducted us.

Æolides.

Messina.

The Harbour of *Messina* it self is very good, being enclosed by the City it self on one side, and on the other by a neck of Land. As the Houses along the Sea-side are loftily built of Stone, they make a goodly show at a distance, but are but indifferent within, and the Streets narrow and ill paved, which verifies the *Italian* Proverb, *At* Messina *you have Dust, Fleas and Whores in plenty*. This City stands in competition with *Palermo*, both pretending to the Title of being the *Metropolis* of *Sicily*, which is the Reason that the *Viceroy* resides 18 Months in each, during his Government. The *Messinese* boast of great Privileges granted by *Charles* V. the Emperour, and pretend to the Monopoly of Silk, which was indeed formerly vended at *Messina*, but the *Palermitans* having got a considerable share of that Trade into their own Hands since, this causes great Jealousies between those two great Cities, which affects the whole Kingdom, some taking part with one, and some with the other of those two Cities. The Inhabitants of *Messina* are none of the most polish'd, haughty in their Conversation, and very much subject to Rebellion. The *Spaniards* are in possession of four Castles in and about the City, and the *Messinese* of as many; for the rest, the City Gates are open at all times. The Government of this City is administred by six Persons, whom they call *Jurats*, four of which are chosen out of the Gentry, and two out of the common Citizens. Their Government is annual, and tho' the first have the Majority of Votes, yet can they transact nothing of moment, without the Consent of the others; tho' the *Spaniards* have taken care to reduce their Authority into such narrow Bounds, that there is no great occasion of Contest among them upon this score.

Plants growing about *Messina.*

Of Plants we found here on the Baich or Languet of Land, between the Haven of *Messina* and the *Fretum Siculum*, *Peucedanum majus Italicum*; *Linaria angustifolia flore luteo, vulgæ persimilis*; *Sideritis verticillis spinosis* J. B. *Fœnugræco sylvestri Tragi in quibusdam accedens planta* J. B. Some call this Plant *Vicia Sesamacea Apula*; I think it might be fitly titled *Glaux peregrina annua*; *Vicia maritima multiflora alba, Messanensis nobis dicta*; *Spina Solstitialis flore conniveute, capitulis sessilibus*; An Solstitialis minor Apula *Col? Thlaspi clypeatum hieracifolium majus* Park. *Trifolium stellatum* C. B. *Polygonum niveum*; *Securidaca siliquis planis dentatis* Ger. *Trifolium capitulis globosis sine pediculis caulibus adnexis*; *In Anglia* hanc speciem nuper invenimus. *Gramen tremulum maximum*; *Melilotus Messanensis procumbens, foliculis, staticantibus, per maturitatem, rugosis, subalatis, spicæ florum brevior, verum seminibus grandioribus quam Melilotus vulgaris*: *Agilops Narbonensis* Lob. *Graminis Alopecuroidis nova species*: *Ornithopodium majus*; *Ammi vulgare*; *Cynosurum sylvestre alterum Dioscoridis Italorum* Lob. *Syringochium majus* Ger.

In other places, especially on the Hills above the City, *Ricinus sive Palma Christi* in the Hedges plentifully, both here and in other places of *Sicily*. *Tordylium*

sive Seseli Creticum minus Park. *Convolvulus Althææ folio*; *Alsine folio oblongo serrato, flore cæruleo* J. B. *Valeriana Mexicana*; *Arbutus*; *Sonchus lanatus* Dalechampii; *Geranium cicutæ folio, acutangulissimâ* C. B. *Lupinus sylvestris flore cæruleo*; *Lupinus flore luteo*; *Senecionis an Chrysanthemi species folio Bellidis*; *Calix* Senecionis calicem exactè refert, verùm *Flos* circulum habet foliorum in margine ad modum Jacobææ; Plantula tenera est, radicem habens fibrosam, folia Bellidis. *Lychnis parva, folio angusto, flore rubello*. Ab aliis facile distinguitur, quòd calix floris longus sit & gracilis, ipsáque florum petala ad unguem propè fissa velut Alsines. *Trifolium halicacabum sive vesicarium* J. B. *Hedysarum clypeatum* Ger. *flore purpureo & albo*; *Trifolium bituminosum*, ubique; *Lotus siliquâ quadratâ* Ger. *Gladiolus Narbonensis* Lob. *Medica orbiculata lævis major & minor. Medica fructu ovali echinato*; *Scorpioides Bupleuri folio* Ger. *Anagyris fœtida*; *Cratægonon seu Euphrasia erecta flore luteo magno*; *Radix* huic non simplex sed surculosa, annua. *Caulis* erectus cubitalis aut etiam altior, quadratus, nonnihil lanuginosus. *Folia* plerunque ex adverso bina, longa, angusta, rariùs dentata, & omnino foliis Cratægoni Euphrosynes facie similia. Spica *florum* in summo congesta, quadrata, lanuginosa & nonnihil etiam viscida. *Flores* lutei, ampli, cucullati, figurâ florum Ladani segetum.

Cratægonon erectum flore vario ex albo & purpureo; Priori simillimum est, & in eo præcipuè differt, quòd non sit adeò procerum, quòd caules & aliquando etiam margines foliorum rubeant, quòd flores minores sint & coloris diversi; cuculli v. g. rubent, Labia medio albent, ad margines rubore diluuntur. Possent hæ plantæ ad Cristas galli reduci; nos in catalogo ad Melampyra retulimus. *Holosteum Plantaginis simile* J. B. *Gramen dactylon geminâ spicâ*; *Asphodelus major ramosus flore albo* J. B. *Aster luteus foliis ad florem rigidis* C. B. *Trachelium parvum, folio Bellidis subrotundo, Radix* ei alba, simplex, lignosa, annua. *Caulis* erectus, striatus. *Folia* alternatim posita, subrotunda, sine pediculis caulibus adnexa. *Flores* Trachelii. *Trifolium album rectum hirsutum valdè* J. B. Dorycnii species; *Medica orbiculata fructu circa margines dentato*, an Medica coronata Cherleri *J. B. Lychnis ad Pseudomelanthium accedens, glabra ferè. Radice* nititur albâ, lignosâ, unde & planta annua esse videtur. *Caulis* nunc simplex ab eadem radice exurgit, nunc multiplex, vel saltem ab imo statim ramosus, pro ratione soli in quo nascitur, geniculatus. *Folia* ad genicula ex adverso bina, viridia, longa, angusta, Graminis leucanthemi foliis nonnihil similia, raris pilis hirsuta. *Flores* in summitatibus caulis & ramorum pediculis longis insident, quinquefolii pallidè purpurei, vice staminum in medio habentes calicem è quinque foliolis in summo bifidis compositum, ut Lychnidis sylvestris flores. *Perianthium* seu calix floris striatus velut Pseudomelanthii. Semina nondum maturuerant. *Absinthium arborescens*; *Paronychia sive Alsines folia incana* J. B. *Androsæmum fœtidum* Park. i. e. *Tragium*; *Acanthus sativus*; *Sedum medium flore albo, apicibus staminum luteis*; *Ferula* Lob. *Thapsia latifolia Hispanica* Park. *latifolia* P. Castello in Catal. Messanensi. *Hyssopus sylvat. Halymus* Lob. propè Pharon Messan. abundat, item in arenosis ad maris litus, versus meridiem, *Agnus castus* ibidem; *Oleander*, ad aquarum rivulos frequens; *Serbus vulgaris domestica*; *Myrtus angustifolia*; *Thymelæa* Ger. *Hieracium calice barbato* Col. *Chondrilla saxatilis viscosa caule* [illegible] Col. *Aceteſa Cymi folio Neapolitana*, [illegible] Col. ubique in Sicilia; *Scrophularia Rutæ canina dicta*; *Linaria altera botryodes montana* Col. frequens in montosis; *Asteris species, an Bacchâris* Col? *Daucii* 3 *Dioscoridis* Col. *Carduus Chrysanthemus Narbonensis* Ger. *Cardum chrysanthemus* Dod. *Carlina sylvestris vulgaris* Clus. *Psyllium vulgare*; *Kali majus semine cochleato*; *Lotus arbor*; *Cotinus Chamæmespilo similis*; *Valeriana rubra* Dod. *Delphinium sylvestre*; *Antirrhinum luteum* Ger. *Colutea scorpioides*; *Chrysocome capitulis conglobatis* Ger. *Alsine folio crassiore* P. Castel. *Lanaria sive Struthium Dioscoridis Imperato* J. B. upon the Rocks. *Botrys vulgaris*; *Marrhubium album fœtidum* P. Castel. *Acarna flore purpureo-rubente patulo* C. B. *Millefolium odoratum*; *Sedum echinatum vel stellatum flore albo* J. B. *Hyacinthus comosus* Ger. *Anagallis cærulea flore*, in Sicilia & meridionali parte Italiæ non minùs frequens est quàm flore Phœnicio. *Asparagus pervicus sive Corruda* Ger. *Smilax aspera*; *Antirrhinum minus flore corneo seu pallido, rictu striato*; *Atractylis*, in *Italy* and *Sicily* most common. *Heliotropium majus*; In barren Fields and amongst rubbish every where. *Blitum rubrum minus*; *Buglossum angustifolium*; *Carduus galactites* J. B. i. e. *leucographus semifolius Messanensis* P. Castel. *Cerinthe flo. pallidè luteo*; *Chondrilla viminea* Lob. *Cicer sativum*; Plurimæ *Astragali, Lathyri & Viciæ* species, quas tempore exclusionis satis accuratè distinximus; *Cymbalaria Italica*; *Cucumis asininus*: quæ & hîc & plu-

ribus

ribus *Italiæ, Melitæ, Siciliaque* locis ruderatis frequens occurrit. *Hyoscyamus albus major & minor*, which sort only we found in *Italy* and *Sicily*; *Juncus acutus maritimus capitulis rotundis* C. B. *Scæbe Salamantica prima Clusii* Park. *Caucalis maritima supina echinato magno fructu*; Ad maris litus ubique tam in *Sicilia* quàm in *Italia*, *Nigella arvensis*; *Oxys lutea* Ger. *Reseda major flore albo*; *Rhamnus salicis folio*, i. e. *Oleaster Germanicus Cordi*, ut vult P. Castel. *Satureia S. Juliani* Ger. *Scrophularia urticæ folio*; *Linaria pusilla procumbens latifolia, flore albo, rictu luteo. Radix* huic simplex quidem, verùm multis fibris majusculis stipata, sublutea, annua. *Cauliculi* exinde emergunt plures infirmi, rotundi, glauci. *Folia* Polygoni foliorum figurâ sed minora, glauca, nunc bina ex adverso, nunc terna, & interdum etiam quaterna simul ad eundem exortum, & proinde ramuli nunc singuli, nunc bini, nunc terni simul. *Flores* longis pedicellis subnixi, albi, rictu luteo, calcaribus tenuibus longissimis; pars illa floris quæ erigitur, in medio fissa in duas velut auriculas dividitur. Florem quinque circumstant foliola viridia pro calice. Postquam flos evanuit pediculus ejus deorsum incurvatur. *Vasculum seminale* rotundum apparet, Anagallidis vasculo simile; Verùm si curiosè spectetur, duos habet lobos seminibus repletos pusillis, rufis. Frequens est *Messanæ* in vineis & hortis. Quam primùm semen maturescit vasculum seminale dehiscit, adeò ut difficile sit ejus semina colligere. *Hyssopoides major flore grandiore*; *Melissæ quædam species* non deser. *Tithymalus arboreus*; *Tithymalus folio longo glauco, caule rubro, seminibus verrucosis*; *Teucrium arborescens lucidum*; *Iberis Cardamantica*; *Alaternus*; *Elatine flore cæruleo*; *Cyperus paniculis squamosis*; which I take to have been *Tràs*, but we regarded not the Root of it. *Anthyllis leguminosa flore rubro*; *Erica ramulis per intervalla ternis*; *Chamæcistus annuus flore luteo*; *Urtica Romana*, passim; *Securidaca minor* Ad. *Lagopus altera angustifolia* Lob. *Coronopus foliis acutis in margine dentatis.*

May the 5th, We hired a *Feluca* to carry us to, and bring us back from *Maltha.*

Catania. *May* the 6th, We sail'd with a brisk Gale as far as *Catanea*, 60 Miles beyond *Messina*, a little Town, having nothing considerable in it, but two or three good Convents.

May the 7th, We made 40 Miles to *Syracusa*, and sail'd in sight of *Augusta*, famous for the goodness of its Wines.

Syracusa. The small City of *Syracusa*, as it now is, is only part of the ancient *Syracusa*, call'd Νῆσος, being but indifferently built and slenderly inhabited, but very well fortified to the Land-side, by the *Knights Hospitallers* after they had been expell'd *Rhodes* by the *Turks*; but *Charles* V. thought it more expedient to bestow a Settlement upon them in the Isle of *Maltha*. About two Miles from the present City, you see the Ruins of the ancient *Syracusæ*, and among the rest, the Remnants of an Amphitheater.

The Grot call'd *Dionysius his Ear.* We were also shown the Grot, commonly call'd *Dionysius his Ear*, being cut out of the side of a high Cliff, it is high roof'd, but not long, and goes a little winding. In our return from *Maltha*, we took a view of one of the Burying-places, or Catacombs of the Ancients, of which there are divers here and in *Maltha*. This belonged to St. *Anthony*'s Church, and consisted of many vaulted Walks cut out of the Rock, having on each Hand other Vaults, at right angles with them, the Floors of which were about two Foot higher, than the Floor of the main Walk, hewn into Troughs or *Loculi*, wherein they used to depositе their dead Bodies: In some of those were 20 *Loculi*, more or less. At certain Intervals, you come to round Rooms or Halls in the main Walks, where several of them meet together, so that the whole being of a great extent, might contain many thousands of dead Bodies.

Capo Passaro. *May* the 8th, The Wind being contrary, we rowed as far as *Capo Passaro*, 40 Miles from *Syracusa*, call'd *Promontorium Pachynum*, by the Ancients. Upon the very utmost point of Land, stood formerly a small Castle, which being not long ago took off by the Sea, stands now in a small Island. The strong Wind obliging us to tarry here two Days, we spent part of our time in looking after Plants, of which this little Island afforded great variety, *viz.*

Its Plants. *Lotus siliquâ quadrata* Ger. *Lotus siliquis Ornithopodii*; *Lotus edulis Creticus* Park. forte *Lotopisum belli*, which we found also about *Naples*, tho' it be not mentioned there. *Lentiscus Chamærrhiphes sive palma minor*; *Limonium folio sinuato* Ger. *Chrysanthemum Creticum* Ger. *Aster luteus folio ad florem rigidis* C. B. *Medica magna turbinata* J. B. *Auricula muris* Camerarii, *Medica doliata spinosa*; *Gnaphalium roseum* Park. *Hedysarum clypeatum minus flore purpureo*; *Onobrychis fructu echinato minor* C. B. Flores huic parvi, purpurei, semen grande. *Trifolium halicacebum sive vesicarium*; *Asphodelus major ramosus flore albo*; *Asph. luteus sive hasta regia*; *Asph. minor* Clus. *Echium procumbens flore parvo, cæruleo*; *ornithogalum spicatum* Ger. *Facea lutea capite spinoso*; *Carduus lacteus peregrinus* Cam. *an potius Silybum majus annuum* Park? *Carduus galactites* J. B. *Teucrium Baticum* Ger. *Tragopogon perenne foliis angustis, incanis, floribus dilute cæruleis*; an potius *Scorzonera dicenda? Sanamunda tertia* Clus. *Anonis viscosa, spinis carens lutea major* C. B. *Convolvulus cæruleus minor, folio oblongo* Ger. *Ammi vulgare & foliis magis incisis*; *Meda orbiculata major* J. B. *Tordylium majus*; *Scorpioides Bupleuri folio*; *Crithmum spinosum sive Pastinaca marina*; *Passerina* Lob. *Aparine semine Coriandri Saccharato*; *Trifolium stellatum* C. B. *Cerinthe flore luteo*; *Melissa peregrina flore albo, Cortex* ramulorum antiquiorum (caules enim perennant) cinereus, juniorum ruber. *Caules* quadrati. *Folia* bina ex adverso, quàm Melissæ minora, pediculis satis longis subnixa. *Flores* cucullati albi, cum aliqua tamen ruboris mixtura. *Vascula* seminalia qualia Moluccæ lævis ferè, excepto quòd in quinque lacinias dividantur, duabus inferiùs, tribus superiùs sitis. *Semina* itidem qualia Moluccæ. Odor plantæ gravis. *Nigella arvensis*; *Sysirynchium majus*; *Limonium parvum Narbonense oleæfolium*; *Cichorea spinosa Cretica* Ponæ; *Daucus lucidus*; *Asparagus petræus sive corruda*; *Tragos sive Uva marina major herbariorum* Lob. *Beta Cretica spinosa* Park. *Trifolium capitulis glomeratis, glomerulis spinosis*; *Linum sylvestre cæruleum*; *Calcha arvensis*; *Atractylis*; *Cruciata minima muralis* Col. *Coronopus foliis acutis in margine dentatis*, i. e. *Plantagini affinis*; *Bibinella Siciliæ herbula*, J. B. *Malva flo. carneo minore*; *Ex radice* alba simplici plures emittit *caules* humi procumbentes, hirsutos, superna parte rubentes. *Folia* ima subrotunda, longis pediculis annexa; quæ in caulibus sunt in tres aut quinque lacinias dissecta, hirsuta & circa margines crenata. *Flores* parvi, quinquefolii, carnei. *Semina* qualia malvæ vulgaris; *Alaternus*; *Phillyrea latifolia seu serrata secunda* Clus. *Glaux peregrina annua*; *Iva moschata Monspeliensium*; *Asparagus sylvest. spinosus* Clus. *Sedum minus luteum ramulis reflexis*; *Geranium procumbens Althææ folio.*

May the 10th, We put to Sea again, but the contrary Winds forcing us back to *puzzallu*, we rowed six Miles further to the South, and put into a small Harbour call'd *Punto Cerciolo*, where being detained for three Days (having no other shelter than two or three miserable Huts, no other Beds than old Straw, and for our Food, the Flesh of some Tortoises) we had leisure enough to search the neighbouring Country for Plants, of which we found *Panax Herculium majus* Ger. *Cinara sylvestris* Ger. *Ruta sylvestris*; *Limonium elegans Rauwolfii*; *Beta Cretica spinosa* Park. *Medica orbiculata fructu minore*; *Med. orbiculata elegans, fructu circum oras rugoso*; *Hypericum foliis parvis crispis seu sinuatis*; *Perfoliata angustifolia montana* Col. *Siliqua arbor seu Panis St. Johannis*; *Medica marina*; *Anonis lutea parva procumbens.* In arenosis nascitur *radice* albâ, longâ, simplici, fibris nunc paucioribus nunc pluribus & majoribus donatâ; *Folia* ei parva, tripartitò divisa, pediculis nullis, verùm duæ inferiores partes cauli adjacent ut in Lotis fit, ac proinde hæc planta eodem modo trifolia est quo Loti quinquefoliæ. Quinetiam folia saturè viridia sunt, in margine eleganter dentata, alternatim posita. *Flores* lutei Anonidis vulgaris. *Siliquæ* breves, tumidæ, subrotundæ, duobus intus ordinibus seminum figura lienis præditorum. In arenosis maris litoribus circa Siciliam frequens, v. g. propè Cataneam, circa Promontorium *Pachynum* & hoc in loco. *Cistus mas 4 folio oblongo albido* J. B. *Lotus flore luteo, corniculis articulatis. Radix* ei simplex alba, in nonnullis tamen plantis ima parte in fibras spargitur. *Caulículi* plures in terram procumbentes. *Folia* glauca, pentaphylla si auriculas ad caulem hinc indè appositas adnumeres. *Flores* parvi, lutei, Trifolii corniculati sed minores, ad nodos nunc singuli nunc bini & interdum etiam terni. *Siliquæ* graciles, longæ, contortæ in spiram seu corniculatæ, articulatæ, *semina* oblonga in singulis internodiis continentes. *Caucalis maritima* J. B. *Smyrnium Creticum*; *Gladiolus Narbonensis*; *Polium montanum album*; *Saxifragia Venetorum* Ad. *Psyllium vulgare*; *Acanthium Illyricum*; *Telephium scorpioides* Anguillaræ: *Tragos sive uva marina major* J. B. *Opuntia marina*, in litus rejecta, besides many others observed in other places.

How they take Tortoises. *May* the 13th, The Wind being become favourable, carried us soon over to *Maltha*. In our passage, we saw the Sea-men take several Tortoises, which when they see floating upon the Water at a distance, they approach them in Boats, with as little noise as possibly they can, and so either catch them with their Hands, or turn them upon their

their backs, when they are eaſily catch'd, being not able either to turn or move themſelves. They are of opinion, that the Tortoiſe, while he floats thus upon the Surface of the Water, is a-ſleep, which appears not altogether improbable.

Barnacle-ſhells upon the Tortoiſes.

We obſerved in one of thoſe Tortoiſes, two great bunches of *Barnacle-ſhells*, as they are commonly call'd, growing on his Back: The fabulous Opinion of *Meyerus* and others, of Birds breeding in them, is not worth mentioning, theſe pretended Barnacles, ſaid to be bred in them, being hatch'd of Eggs of their own laying, like other Birds, is being certain out of *Pontanus*, that the *Dutch* in their third Voyage, for the Diſcovery of the North-paſſage to *China*, at 80 Degrees 11 Min. North Latitude, did find two Iſlands, in which they found many of thoſe Geeſe hatching their Eggs: Theſe Bunches or Shells, are no more than a kind of *Balanus marinus*, which never undergo any change, but that they encreaſe in bigneſs, as other Shells do.

But before we leave *Sicily*, it is fit I ſhould mention what Plants we found about *Catania* and *Syracuſa*. About *Catania*, *Scammonea Monſpeliaca affinis* Park. *Plumbago Plinii*, *Agnus Caſtus*, *Cruciata marina*, *Anonis marina procumbens flore luteo*, jam deſcripta; *Sedum minimum non acre totum rubrum, flore hexaphyllo purpureo*. Upon Mount *Ætna*, *Tragacantha* C. B. towards the top of the Mountain we obſerved *Berberry-trees* growing plentifully, a rare ſhrub in hot Countries, and which we did not find in any other place, either in *Italy* or *Sicily*; nay, a common Gooſe-berry-buſh is accounted a rarity at *Meſſina*. About *Syracuſa*, *Thymum Cretcum* Ger. *Origanum flore albo, capitulis ſquammatis rotundis*; *Verbaſcum* 4 Matthioli. The ſame kind of *Meliſſa* we ſaw about *Meſſina*, *Teucrium Beticum*, *Jacea lutea capitulis ſpinoſis*, *Lagopus quadam procumbens ſpicâ longiore*, *Anonis purpurea minima ſupina non ſpinoſa*, &c.

Malta.

The Iſle of *Malta* is about 20 Miles long, 12 broad, and 60 in circumference; its diſtance from the utmoſt point of the Land of *Sicily*, on that ſide, about 60 Miles; from the Cape of *Calipia* (the Ancients *Promontorium Mercurii*) the neareſt Point of the African Continent 200 Miles, and from the *Italian Cape* of *Spartivento* 190, ſo that in reſpect of its Vicinity, it ought rather to be accounted part of *Europe* than *Africk*, tho' the Native Inhabitants, ſpeak a kind of *Moreſco* or *Arabic*.

The old City of this Iſland, ſituate near its Center, hath 35 Deg. 15 Min. North Lat. the longeſt Day there being about 14 Hours 52 Min. and this I ſpeak upon the credit of the learned *Johannes Franciſcus Abela*, who being a Native of this Iſle, has made the moſt exact Obſervations thereof, that can be, as may be ſeen in his *Malta illuſtrata*, publiſhed in *Italian*, 1646. being not Ignorant, that ſuch Authors as would have this Iſle to be part of *Africk*, place it much nearer to the *Barbary* Coaſt, and conſequently allow it a leſs Latitude. The ſhalloweſs of the Soil here being not above two Foot above the Rocks, and the loweſs of its Situation not far above the Level of the Water, ſeems to intimate, That in moſt ancient times, it was one entire large Rock, which being by degrees covered with Earth, produced this Iſland; what confirms one in this Opinion, is the vaſt number of Shells, Sharks-teeth, and other Cockles petrefied, which are found even in the remoteſt part of the Iſland. Yet notwithſtanding this ſhalloweſs of the Earth above the Rocks, this Iſland has always been celebrated for its Fertility, according to *Ovid. Faſt.*

Its Soil.

Fertilis eſt Melite ſterili vicina Cyrenæ
Inſula.

But this muſt not be apply'd to Corn, their Wheat being very thin and rare here, and the Barley, of which the common People make their Bread, not ſufficient for their uſe, wherewith they are ſupply'd as well as with Wheat from *Sicily*.

Its Products.

The Products of *Malta* are *Cumin-ſeed*, of which they ſell yearly 3000 *Cantares*, each of which is equivalent to 116 Pounds *Engliſh* weight: *Anniſe-ſeed*, of which they tranſport yearly about 1000 *Cantares*, they ſell thoſe Seeds at 7, 8, or 9 Crowns the *Cantare*: Of Cotten-wool (*Goſſipium* in *Latin*) they export in the huſk yearly, 12000 *Cantares*.

Our before-mentioned Author tells us, that of late they have applied themſelves to the planting of *Indigo* with good ſucceſs. He alſo ſpeaks of a certain Excreſcency growing on the Rock call'd *St. Maria el Aabia*, and other Rocks on the North-ſide of the Iſland, call'd *Vorella* by the Inhabitants, which being cleanſed with a certain Liquor (he names not) and mix'd with ſome Ingredients, is dried in the Sun, and produces a good Carnation dye. This kind of Maſs, call'd *Renkerig* in *Wales*, and *Cork* or *Arcel* in *England*, is gathered and uſed for the ſame purpoſes in *Wales* and the North of *England*.

The breed of the *Catuli Meliteæ*, or little Dogs of *Malta* is quite loſt; but their Cats are much eſteem'd now. The Roſes and Honey of *Malta* may contend for goodneſs with any in the World, and ſome are of opinion, that it got the name of *Melita* from the *Greek* Word Μελι, ſignifying Honey.

As the Air is very ſerene here, ſo the People are long liv'd and healthful. It rains not much here, yet ſufficient to feed their Springs, of which they have a good number about the middle of the Iſle.

The Original of Springs.

Our before-mentioned Author ſufficiently proves, that thoſe Springs owe their Original to Rain Water, becauſe they are found at the Foot of little porous rocky Hills, or a chalky Earth, call'd *Giorgolena*, which imbibes, and afterwards lets out again the Rain. This Opinion ſeems to me very probable, becauſe in all the Obſervations I ever could make even on the higheſt Hill in *England* and Wales, I never found any Spring breaking out on, or near the top of a Mountain, but that there was Earth enough to feed it; nor are they ever to be ſeen in Plains, unleſs ſome Hills are near to feed them. (2) Many Springs quite fail in dry Seaſons, and moſt of them conſiderably abate. (3) in Clay Grounds, which ſoaks little or no Water in, few Springs are found, whereas in ſandy, rocky and gravelly Grounds, into which the Water has an eaſie admittance, you ſeldom fail of them. The Arguments uſed by thoſe who would have Springs receive their Supplies from the Seas, have not given ſufficient Proofs of the aſcent of the Water to the tops of the Mountains, to contradict ours: And thoſe who attribute the Original of Springs to the Watery Vapours, elevated by the ſubterraneous Fires, muſt firſt prove the ſame to be ſo intenſe as to be able to elevate thoſe Vapours at ſo prodigious a height, and thro' ſo thick a Coat of Earth. Mr. *Hook*'s Argument, *viz.* That the Salt-water, by reaſon of its preponderancy, forces up the freſh Water as high above the Surface of the Sea, as the tops of the Mountains are, before it comes to an *æquilibrium*, would certainly be to be preferr'd before the reſt, could he as eaſily move continued cloſe Channels from the bottom of the Sea, to the tops of the Mountains.

Ebbing and flowing Wells.

The Objection made from the ebbing and flowing Wells, is of no great ſtreſs againſt our Aſſertion, it being certain, that none of all thoſe Flowing Wells that ever I ſaw, follow the Motion of the Sea, but ebb and flow two or three times, and ſometimes oftner, every Hour; excepting one I ſaw in *Wales*, which is not above ¼ of a Mile from the Sea, in a ſandy Ground, which obſerves the due flux and reflux of the Tide, but is no running Water, which makes me ſhrewdly ſuſpect what has been written of thoſe Wells, which being at a good diſtance from the Sea, are ſaid to follow its Motions.

The Harbour of Malta.

But to return to *Malta*: It has a commodious and ſecure double Harbour, the ſame being ſeparated by a ſmall Point or Neck of Land, of about 1500 Canes (each of which contains 10 Palms of *Roman* Meaſure) long, and 380 broad upon which the new City is built. That on the *Weſtern* ſide is call'd ſimply the Harbour 1800 Canes long, containing ſeveral ſmall creeks. That on the *Eaſt* ſide call'd *Marſa moſcetto*, not inferiour in bigneſs to the other, having within its compaſs a little Iſle, where is the Hoſpital, near which, Ships that come from infected places, keep their *Quarentine*.

The City Valetta.

The New City, call'd *Valetta*, conſiſts of 20 Streets, eighe of which extend in length, and twelve in breadth, all very ſtreight, but not paved, as lying upon a ſolid Rock: All the uniformity they want, being their unevenneſs, which is unavoidable upon rocky Grounds. The Houſes are built of Stone, flat roofs, and covered with a kind of Plaiſter, which is ſufficient to keep out the Water, in places where it rains ſo little. Theſe Houſes are rather commodious than lofty; and they put their Beds in the Summer time, upon the Roofs of them, for the conveniency of the cool Air, as they do frequently in the Eaſtern Countries. According to a ſurvey taken 1632. the number of Houſes was 1891. and of Inhabitants 10744. which is conſiderably encreaſed ſince. Over one of the Gates leading to the Land-ſide, call'd *Porta Reale*, is an Inſcription, intimating, That the City of *Valetta* was founded the 28th of *March*, 1566. by *John de Valetta*, Great Maſter of the Order, and named after him.

Its Fortifications are accounted impregnable, and would have required an incredible Sum of Money, had they not Stronger hand; and Slaves to work; for beſides the

inward

inward double Walls, the Out-works comprehend a great space of void Ground, sufficient to receive the Country People, in case of an Invasion from an Enemy: All the Walls, Bastions, and other Works are vaulted. There is a Market kept here every Morning, well furnished with all sorts of Provisions, at a reasonable rate.

St. John Baptist's Church. The chief Buildings belonging to this City are, The Church dedicated to St. *John Baptist*, the Patron of this Order, containing many well beautified and richly gilt Chapels and Altar-pieces. Here are the Tombs of the Great Masters, since they were possess'd of this Island.

The Castle St. Elmo. The Castle of St. *Elmo*, which stood here before the City, at the very point of the Cape, is very strong, but not large; on the top of it is a constant Watch kept, who by setting up a Flag, lesser or bigger, according to the bulk of the Vessel they see approach the Coast, give notice thereof to the City; if there be two or three, they set up as many Flags as they discover Vessels, and always place them to the W. S. N. or E. according as the Ships come from one or other of those Quarters. This Castle is also a kind of Prison of State, for such Knights as are to be kept under restraint. Just before it you see certain Caves hew'd out of the Rocks, in the shape of a *Cupola*, with narrow Entrances on the top, where they keep as much Corn as will suffice the City for a Twelve-month; here they also keep their stores of Oil, Wines, and other Necessaries.

The Halls of the divers Nations. This Order being composed of eight several Nations, viz. *French*, *Italians*, *Germans*, *English*, *Provencals*, *Auvergnois*, *Castilians* and *Aragonians*, these have each their *Alberghi* or Halls, being fair Structures or Colleges, in each of which is a publick Hall, for the Knights of each Nation, to dine and sup in, when they please; or to have their share sent to their homes, or wherever they think fit. The Head or Master of each of those Halls or *Alberghi's*, is *Grand Prior* of his Nation, of the Great Cross (*Gran Croce* they term it) and a Member of the Privy Council, being distinguished from the rest by a large white Cross, embroidred of Silk, upon their Breasts. The *Alberghi* of the *English* Nation, is at present only a piece of Ground, enclosed with a Wall, which, as we were told, some of the Citizens would have bought to build upon, but were not permitted to do it.

The Armory. The Armory within the Great Master's Palace, is worth a Travellor's Observation, consisting of two Rooms, the largest of which (call'd the Hall) is the fairest and biggest that ever I saw of that kind. Both Rooms contain Arms for 30000 Men, curiously kept.

Hospital. The Hospital a goodly Structure, where the sick Persons are served by a certain number of Knights appointed for that purpose, according to their Institution, their very name being *Knights Hospitallers*. We saw them serve the Meat thus, The Meat being brought into the middle of a large Room, where many of the sick lay; one of the Knights read the Names of the Sick, one after another, out of the Physicians Bill, prescribing each Person his peculiar Diet; as he read a Name, the Cook took what was appropriated to him, whose Name was read, and dishing it up, delivered it to one of the Knights, who carried it to the Bed side, where stood a Stool ready covered with a Napkin, with Bread and Salt upon it. If any of the Order falls sick, he is obliged to be here, and two Knights are appointed to attend him.

Palace of the Grand Master. The Palace of the Great Master, has its peculiar Apartments for Winter and Summer: His Stable is worth seeing, having 40 or 50 great Horses, besides Saddle and Coach-horses, a considerable number, considering the scarcity of Horses here.

The Slaves Prison. The Prison for the Slaves, is a large square Building; here all the Slaves are obliged to lodge at Night, as long as the Galleys are abroad, but when they are come home, those belonging to private Persons, may stay at their Masters House. At our time there were 2000 belonging to the Order, and 200 to private Persons, besides those that were abroad in the Galleys.

The Isola, or Invincible City. Besides the *New City*, there are three large Boroughs, separated from the first only by the breadth of the Harbour. (1) The *Isola* (as they call it) or the Borough of *Senglea*, with the Fort call'd St. *Michael*, is built upon a small *Peninsula*, made by two Creeks of the Great Harbour; it has 994 Houses, and 4050 Souls. It has got the name of *Città invitta*, or the Invincible City, ever since the *Turks* were baffled before it, 1565. The (2) the *Burgo del Castello à mare*, being likewise built on a little Neck of Land, made by two Creeks of the same Harbour; on the utmost point of which, stands the Castle of St. *Angelo*, separated from the Town by a broad Chanel, cut thro' the Neck of Land, for its greater strength. This Borough contains about 782 Houses, and 3063 Souls, having got the surname of *Vittoriosa*, from its brave defence it made against the *Turks*, 1565. Betwixt these two Boroughs lie constantly the Galleys and other Vessels, for the greater security of which, they close it with an Iron Chain, in time of danger. (3) *Birmula*, is rather a Suburb of the first, yet contains 642 Houses, and 2778 Souls.

The Victorious City.

The Old City. *May* the 25th, We took a *Tour* into the Country, and passing thro' two large Villages, we came to the *Old City*, call'd anciently *Melite*, after the Island; now *Città notabile*, formerly a great and populous City, but contains at present, not above 569 Houses, and 2620 Souls, most of the Inhabitants having settled themselves in the *New City* of *Valetta*. Here we saw St. *Paul's Pillar* (as they call it) where he preach'd; and if you will believe them, his Voice was heard all over the Isle, as also the Grot of St. *Paul*, where is dug that white Earth out of a small Cave, call'd by them *Terra di S. Paolo*, and generally *Terra sigillata Melitensis*, unto which they attribute a singular quality against all Poisons and Infections, which, they say, it was endued with upon occasion of the Viper's fastning to St. *Paul's* Arm: They further tell you, That the said Grot retains its Dimensions, tho' a considerable quantity of earth be taken out there every Year.

The Terra sigillata.

From hence we went to a Country-house of the Grand Masters, which was a neat Palace, built in form of a Castle, surrounded with Gardens and Orchards, with good Water-works, and Fruits of all sorts, lying at the bottom of a little Hill, on which the Castle stands, and almost enclosed with Rocks.

The Inhabitants of Malta. To say something of *Maltha* in general: This Isle has been inhabited by many Nations, and after changing Masters, has generally followed the fate of *Sicily*, being in former Times, not strong enough to defend it self, tho' now-a-days it would find work for a great Prince. The most ancient Inhabitants, mentioned by *Homer*, were the *Phæaces*, who being expell'd by the *Phœnicians*, these were forced to make way for the *Græcians*. After this, tho' it changed Masters, yet the Inhabitants remained in their Possessions, under the *Carthaginians* first, and then the *Romans*. These being forced thence by the *Goths*, these were driven out again by the *Eastern* Emperours. Next the *Saracens* having made themselves Masters of it, were expell'd by the *Normans*, and these again by the *Suevia* or *German* Nation; these were succeeded by the *French*, *Aragonians*, and *Spaniards*, till the *Knights Hospitallers* got into the Possession of it; the History of which may fully be read in the before-mentioned *Abela*. This Isle is very populous in proportion of its bigness, containing betwixt 30 and 40 Villages, or rather Towns for their bigness, 26 Parish Churches, besides those of the Isle of *Gozo*. They reckon to have 25000 Men able to bear Arms, but in this, I believe they speak a little at large.

Their Language. The Modern Language of the Country, is a kind of corrupt *Arabic* or *Moresco*, introduced questionless by the *Saracens*, their ancient Language having questionless been a mixture of *Greek* and *Punic*: However the *Italian* is much in vogue here now, that and the *Latin* being used only in the Court of *Maltha*.

The Great Master Prince of the Isle. The *Great Master* of the Order, is the supream Head or Prince of *Maltha*, which was bestowed upon them with *Gozo*, and some other small adjacent Isles, by the Emperour *Charles* V. 1530, after they were expell'd *Rhodes* by the *Turks*. They live here under a very easie Government, which makes the Inhabitants appear generally in a flourishing Condition, and very courteous to Strangers. When the *Great Master* appears abroad, he is attended by some Knights, and two or three Pages, of which he has 24. All the Knights of the Order are uncover'd in the presence of the *Great Master*, except those of the *Great Cross*. All the Knights must be of Noble or Gentile Extraction, for three or four Descents, notwithstanding which, there is not the least Difference observed betwixt them in respect of their Birth or Quality, they knowing of no other Precedency (than the Seniority of their Admission into the Order). The *Great Master* is habited in a black short Gown, with hanging Sleeves: When the Knights are at home, they chuse what Dress they like best, but when aboard the Galleys, are dress'd in the proper Habit of their Order.

At our time, there were betwixt 3000 and 4000 of them, most of which reside in the City, except when they are upon Duty aboard the Galleys. The Name of the *Grand Master*, was *Nicholas Cotoner*, a *Majorcan* by birth; He was the 18th since they were in the Possession of this Isle.

Five

The Isle of Gozo.

Five Miles to the West of *Maltha* lies the Isle of *Gozo*, known under the Name of *Gaudos* to the Ancients, being 12 Miles long, 6 broad, and 30 in circuit. Its Soil is fruitful of Wheat, not unlike that of *Sicily*, and well cultivated, tho' it be somewhat mountainous. Of fresh Springs, and those excellent good ones, it has great store. Before the *Turks* laid it desolate, and carried away 6000 Persons into slavery, 1565. it was much more populous than it now is, yet is computed to contain about 3000 Persons, and 500 Houses. In the narrow Streight betwixt *Maltha* and the Isle of *Gozo*, lies another small Island, call'd *Comino* now-a-days, but anciently *Hephestia* (as *Cluver* will have it:) It has not above five Miles in circumference, but is well cultivated. For the better security of this Isle, and the Channel betwixt it and *Gozo*, the Great Master *Aloysius de Wignacourt* ordered a Fort to be built opposite to another Fort, on the other side of the Streight, in the Isle of *Gozo*.

Petrefied Shells of *Maltha*.

We have told you before, that abundance of all sorts of petrefied Cochles and Fish-bones, were to be found in the Isle of *Maltha*, among which, we will only mention such here, as are either not at all, or at least very seldom found in *England*. (1) The *Glossopetræ*, call'd *Serpents Tongues* by the *Maltheſe*, which are nothing else but Sharks-Teeth, of divers shapes and sizes. (2) The Vertebres of Thornbacks, and some other Cartilaginous Fishes. (3) *Catsheads* (as they are call'd from their resemblance to a little Skull). (4) *Serpents Eyes* of divers Figures and Colours, most generally red, not unlike those commonly call'd Toad-stones, the exteriour Superficies which is shining, being a Segment of a Sphærical. Of these I have seen whole Lumps cemented together, Dr. *Schonefeld* and Dr. *Merret* have demonstrated to the World, that the *Toadstone* is nothing else but the Jaw-tooth of the Fish call'd *Lupus marinus*; and I am apt to imagine, that the Serpents Eyes, have either the same, or like original. (5) *Serpents Teeth*, these are long, small, streight Stones, with a smooth superficies. (6) *Serpents Eggs*, being much like the preceeding, but not streight. (7) *Baculi S. Pauli*, resembling small snagg'd Sticks. (8) *Petrefied Lentils*, resembling that Pulse in colour, figure and bigness.

Few Plants I observed here, but what I had met with before in *Italy* and *Sicily*, viz. *Cucumis asininus*; *Hypericum tormentosum*; *Consolida regalis peregrina flore parvo* J. B. *Cardum lacteus peregrinus* Cam. Trees are a kind of rarity in this Island. The defect of Fewel, they supply of late with Sea-wrack, prepared after a peculiar manner, of which see *Abela*.

Here was first observed the Custom of slitting up the Nostrils of the Asses, which being naturally streight, does not admit a sufficient Passage of so much Air, as is requisite for the refreshment of their Bodies, whilst they are travelling in those hot Countries.

I don't mention the *Catacombs*, or Burning Places under-ground, of which there be many in *Maltha*, having given you a Description of them before, when we spake of *Syracuse* in *Sicily*.

Neither will I much insist upon what the common People here assert for a positive Proof, That this Isle neither produces nor nourishes any Serpent, or other venomous Creatures, which they say, St. *Paul* obtained by his Prayers, after the Viper fastning to his Hand, because *Abela* makes no mention of it: But this I was made sensible of to my cost, that the Gnats bite more violently here, than in any other place that I ever was in before.

Ætna.

In our return from *Maltha* to *Messina*, we stay'd a Day at *Catanea*, and there took Horses and a Guide to bring us up Mount *Ætna* (now call'd *Mon Gibello*) the top of which is reckoned 30 Miles from *Catanea*, and is one continued ascent; the Grounds thro' which we pass'd being very fertile, well cultivated and inhabited, the Cinders which are cast out by the Mountain; being instead of Dung, (after it is dissolv'd by the Weather) which fattens and cherishes the Soil. We advanced as far as where the Snow lies, which reached all up to the top, we could go no farther, however we were near enough to observe, that the very Top or Pinnacle of the Mountain, was surrounded with a Ring of Snow, but had no Snow it self.

Some Observations concerning *Sicily*.

As to the *Sicilians*, they have not undeservedly got the Reputation of being uncivil and rude to Strangers; and the *Banditti* or Highway-men, are so frequent, that there is very unsafe travelling here; the worst is, that they are not contented with robbing you of all you have about you, but carry you away into the Mountains, nor set you at liberty, till you have pay'd what Ransome they think fit to impose upon you.

They have some peculiar Laws and Customs not easily met with in other places. If you carry above the Value of ten Crowns in Money out of the Country, it is forfeited if found out; the best is, that a little Money makes the Custom-house Officers, to let Strangers pass unsearch'd. No Calves are permitted to be kill'd in this Island, for that you see no Veal at the Tables of the *Sicilians*, tho' at *Maltha*, (whither they carry it by stealth) is enough of it. No body ought to take above the weight of an Ounce of Silver, without weighing of it. No young Person under age, must enter or travel in *Sicily*, without peculiar Licence. To carry Pocket-Pistols about one, is a Capital Crime, tho' long Guns are not only allow'd, but also carried almost by every body: The Reason of which is, That by the first, a Person may be assassinated, before he can be upon his guard.

After our return to *Messina*, we took Boat, *May* the 27th, over the *Fretum*, to take a view of the ancient *Regium*, (*Rhegio*) which now makes but a very mean Appearance, having scarce any thing to boast of, except some Gardens, which indeed afford them great plenty of the best sort of Fruits: Here is also abundance of Bricks made, being reckoned the best in *Italy* and *Sicily*. They shew'd us a small fragment of St. *Paul*'s Pillar that burned, and told us so many Stories of it, that we were sooner aweary of hearing than they of telling. Regium.

The manner of taking the Sword-fish.

May the 29th, We went in a Boat as far as *Scylla*, to see the fishing of the Sword-fish: They place certain Fellows on the Cliffs near the Sea side (*Huers* our *English* Fisher-men call them) these either by a Signal, if they are out of hearing, or else by their Voice, give notice to the Fishing-boats, whereabouts they espy the Fish: These make what hast they can towards the place, whither they were directed, and placing one of the Boat's Crew on the top of the Mast (which have little steps made for that purpose) he gives from time to time, direction to those at the Oars, whither to take their course, according to the different Motions of the Fish. Being come near enough to him, they strike him with a Harpoon, and the Fish being wounded, swims up and down, till being spent with the loss of Blood, they draw him into the Boat. The Harpoon Iron is fastned to a Pole, the Point being sharp, with Beards on each side, like a Barbed Arrow, so jointed, that they go easily in, but resist the the drawing of them out. The *Messineſe* looking upon this Fish as a singular Dainty, buy it at the rate of six Pence *per* Pound, at first coming in. In *May* and the beginning of *June*, they are catch'd on the Coast of *Calabria*, and towards the latter end of *June*, come over to the *Sicilian* Coast, and are taken near *Messina* till *August*.

As there are no Rocks near the *Fare*, they are obliged to place their *Huers* on the top of a very high Mast, set up in a large Boat or *Brigantine*.

They have in the beginning of *June*, a yearly Festival, call'd the *Feast of our Lady of the Letter*, which is celebrated with more than ordinary Solemnity; for a whole Week together, all the Houses being illuminated with Candles, Wax Tapers, Lanthorns, &c. all the Night long. They call it the *Festival of our Lady of the Letter*, because it is celebrated in memory of a Letter, pretended to be written to them, by the *Virgin Mary* in *Greek*; of which they shew you the *Latin* Copy (the Original being lost) which runs thus.

Maria virgo Joachim filia Dei humillima, Christi Jesu Crucifixi mater, ex tribu Juda, stirpe David Messanensibus omnibus salutem & Dei patris omnipotentis benedictionem.

Vos omnes fide magna legatos ac nuncios per publicum documentum ad nos misisse constat: Filium nostrum Dei genitum Deum & hominem esse fatemini; & in cœlum post suam resurrectionem ascendisse, Pauli Apostoli electi prædicatione mediante viam veritatis agnoscentes. Ob quod vos & ipsam civitatem benedicimus, cujus perpetuam protectricem nos esse volumus. Anno Filii nostri XII. Indict. I. III Nonas Junii, Luna XXVII, Feria V. Ex Hierosolymis Maria virgo quæ supra hoc chirographum approbavit.

June the 6th, We took a *Feluca* at *Messina* for *Naples*, and lodged the first Night at a small Town call'd *Tropia*, in *Calabria*, 60 Miles distant from *Messina*. Upon the Rocks near the Town, we found *Zizyphus sive Jujuba sylvest.* Park. *Conyza minor hirta* Ger. *Andrachnum fœtidum* Park. i. e. *Tragium*; not to mention others we had seen before in *Sicily*.

The 7th, Lodging at St. *Lucido*, we met there also with the wild *Jujubes*.

The 8th, We took up our Quarters at *Porto Nicole*, a small Creek near *Scalea*, which is strengthned by a Castle

Near these two places we found the common *Cypress*-tree; *Lamium peregrinum sive Scutellaria* C. B. *Rosmarinum vulgare*, for quantity, found among the Rocks; *Sabina baccifera*, call'd otherwise *Cedrus Lycia retusa* Bellonii; *Chondrilla rara purpurea*, *Crupina Belgarum dicta* Park. *Meum alterum Italicum aniburiam* J. B. *Caryophyllus maximus ruber*; the largest and fairest flower'd wild Pink or Gilly-flower, that ever I saw; on the Rocks near *Scalea*, *Caryophyllus gramineo folio minimus*; A sort of small *Scorzonera* or Goats-beard; *Facea incana, tenuiter laciniata, capitulis Faceæ nigræ vulgaris*; *Valeriana quædam supina sergyllifolia*, n. d. This we saw afterwards by *Joan. Mario Ferro*, an Apothecary at *Venice*, who call'd it *Periclymenum*. *Myrtus communis Italica* C. B. *Auricula ursi*, a Plant which commonly delights in colder places, especially in the *Alps*. *Cistus postica*, Lob. not to mention others we found before in *Italy*. Here I also saw that Species of *Campanula*, unto which I have given the surname of *minor, folio rotundo, flore cæruleo pentagono grandi*, having a Leaf like to the common *Campanula minor rotundifolia*, sometimes hairy, sometimes smooth. *Agnus castus* grows plentifully among the Sands near the Sea-shore.

The 9th, We lodged at *Chiupo*, and the 10th, came to *Salerno*, where having quitted our Boat, we stayed the 11th. This City, which is dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, is at present, very inconsiderable, having neither University nor *Schola illustris*, as far as we could learn. The only thing worth our Observation here, was the Monument of *Hildebrand* (Pope *Gregory* VII.) who rendred himself famous by introducing Celibacy among the Priests, and his opposition to the Emperour. This is to be seen in the Cathedral of St. *Matthew*, in the Porch of which you see many *Roman* Grave-stones, with ancient Inscriptions. *Salerno.*

Plants about *Salerno.*

The Plants we took notice of hereabouts, were *Barba Jovis frutex*, among the Rocks; *Satureia durior* J. B. *Laurus Tinus cæruleâ baccâ* Lob. *Cytisus glaber siliquâ latâ* J. B. among the Rocks; this Plant I never saw growing wild in any other place beyond the Seas: *Colutea minima sive Coronilla* Ger. *Melissa sylvestris hirsutior & minus odorata Echium majus & asperius flore albo* C. B. *Thlaspi Candiæ* Ger. *Lamium peregrinum sive Scutellaria*; *Sorbus domestica* Lob. Peucedani facie pusilla planta *Lob. Lotus arbor*; *Staphilodendron*; *Colus Jovis*: besides many others we had observed before in *Italy* and *Sicily*. Hereabouts is the Mount call'd *Monte Angelo*, famous for the variety of Plants, but we had no time to search it.

The 12th, We travell'd from *Salerno* by Land to *Naples*, and pass'd that Day thro' *La Cava* and *Nocera*, both Episcopal Sees, and *Scafata*, *Torre d'Annunciata*, *Torre di Greco*.

The 13th, We embarked at *Naples* for *Leghorn*, and the first Day advanced no farther than five Miles, to *Nisita*, a small Isle in the Mouth of the Bay of *Pozzuolo*; but the second Day reach'd *Sperlonga*, a little short of *Terracina* (anciently *Anxur*) 60 Miles.

The 3d Day, We pass'd in sight of the *Monte Circello*, (or *Promontorium Circeum*) having got its name from the noted Enchantress *Circe*, who, as it is said, dwelt here: The Cape extends a great way into the Sea. About two Leagues from the Point of this Cape, directly against it, we observed a great number of certain Insects, very like the *Cicadæ*, such as we never met with before; our Ship's Crew call'd them *Grange*. The *Cicada* is commonly in our *English* Schools, rendred in *English* by *Grashopper*, whereas the same is a quite different Insect, of a rounder and shorter Body, sitting upon Trees, and making a much greater noise than the *Grashopper*, which ought properly be call'd in *Latin Locusta*. The *Cicadæ* are frequent in the hot Countries, but seldom to be seen on this side of the *Alps*. We lodged this Night at *Astura*, where we saw the Ruins of an ancient Town, and of the Foundations of certain Buildings in the Water. *Cicada.*

Not far thence, we pass'd the fourth Day, the new Town of *Antio*, and a Mile distant thence, we saw vast Ruines of the old Town, and of a great Mole belonging to the Harbour. We stay'd this Night at St. *Michael*, a small Town not far from *Ostia*, near the Mouth of the River *Tiber*.

The 5th Day, We sail'd with a fair Gale, to St. *Stefano*, not far from *Orbitello*, passing in sight of *Civita Vecchia*, and *Porto Hercole*, compassing *Monte Argentorato*.

The 6th Day, Being overtaken by a *Borasco*, or storm of Thunder and Lightning, we rowed 18 or 20 Miles to a little Creek, under the Tower of *Calo di Furno*. On the Sea-shore we saw those *Opercula concharum*, which by some Naturalists, are taken for Stones, and call'd *Umbilici marini*, by the *Italians S. Lucies Eyes*.

The 7th Day, We reached the Isle of *Troia*, and the Wind turning against us, we took shelter in a small Creek near the Tower of *Lo Molino*.

The 8th Day, Passing in sight of *Piombino* (a City subject to a Prince of the same name) *Populonia P. Barreto*, *S. Vincentio*, *Castagneto*, and *Vada*, lodged at the Tower of *Castiglione*.

The 9th Day, The Sea was very rough, it having blown hard all the Night before, yet we got safely into *Leghorn* by noon.

The Plants we saw in this Voyage were, *Rosmarinum vulgare*, *Cedrus Lycia folio retuso* Bellonii; *Barba Jovis frutex*, on the Rocks near the Sea-side, *Cruciata marina* in abundance, on the Sands of *Astura*. *Thlaspi capsulis sublongis incanum* J. B. ibid. *Cicherium verrucarium sive Zacynthe*, near the Mouth of the *Tiber* and about St. *Stefano*. *Lotus siliquosa lanea Monspeliensis* J. B. and another sort of *Lotus*, with a longer and slenderer end. *Aristolochia Clematitis*, a semper-virent shrub, with a Leaf like *Oleander*; *Terebinthus*, *Paliurus*, *Thlaspi biscutatum*, *Ambrosia vulgaris*, which we found no where else in all our travels. *Cirsii quædam species* near St. *Stephano*; *Chamærrhiphes sive Palma humilis* about *Orbitello*, and on the Rocks of *Hetruria*. *Draba quædam siliquosa foliis longis angustis incanis*, *Euphrasia pratensis lutea*; *Phillyrea angustifolia*, among the Hills and Rocks near the Sea-side. *Phillyrea serrata* 2 Clus. *Colutea minima sive Coronilla* Ger. on the Rocks near the Tower of *Castiglione*.

Florence, surnamed *The Fair*, answers its Character by the beauty of its Buildings, tho' in my opinion, were it not for the great number of Stone Palaces (such as the Great Dukes, the *Palazzo de Pitti*, of the *Strozzi*, *Salviati* and others) *Antwerp*, and divers other Cities in the Low-Countries, might challenge the Precedency in this Point: For, tho its Streets are well paved with broad Stones, like those of *Lucca* and *Cologne* in *Germany*; yet are they very narrow (to keep off the scorching heat of the Sun) and the Paper Windows much shattered in many places, are no small disgrace to the beauty of this City. The River *Arno* runs thro' the middle of it, over which are built four Stone Bridges, among which, the *Ponte Vecchio* or *Old Bridge*, has Gold-smiths Shops on both sides. Its whole circumference is said to be six *Italian* Miles, but of this, the Duke's Palace and Gardens, take up at least one sixth part, besides some hundreds of Acres made into Vineyards. It has 44 Parishes, including the 12 Priorates. The number of Inhabitants is computed by some 85000 Souls, by others 90000, nay 100000; but in my opinion they speak too large. We were told that it had 56 Nunneries, and 24 Convents of Monks, and 37 Hospitals, one of which, *viz.* the *Orphanotrophium* has 70000 Crowns yearly revenue, and maintains 900 Persons. *Florence.*

The chief strength of this City consists in its three Castles, among which, that on the South side has a good Garison, and an Armory furnished with Arms for 30000 Men. Another is a Fort in the Great Duke's Gardens: The third we viewed not.

The Churches of *Florence*, if not in all other respects, at least in point of Architecture, are most excellent; the Cathedral of St. *Maria Florida*, being accounted the most exquisite piece that ever was made, especially for the Pillars which support the Nave or Body of the Church, which stand at such a distance from one another, and are so slender, that they don't obscure the Isles, and afford a fair prospect at once of the whole Church. The Cupolo (the first and the Pattern of all the rest) both for its compass and height, exceeds all in *Italy*, except that of St. *Peters* at *Rome*. The Quire, which is of an Octogonal Figure, is under this Cupolo. The Walls of the Church, are covered on the out-side with Marble, cut into small pieces, and chequer'd of divers Colours. Within the Church beyond the Quire, you see four Inscriptions, (1) Concerning the building of the Church, the Foundation of which was laid 1280. The (2) concerning its Consecration, by Pope *Eugene* IV. 25 *March*, 1436. The (3) concerning the Union of the *Greek* and *Roman* Churches, under the said Pope *Eugene* IV. 1438. The (4) intimates the removal of the Body of St. *Zenobius* from St. *Lawrence*'s Church hither, by Archbishop *Andrea*, his Successour. In the same Church I also saw the Monuments of *Marsilius Ficinus*, and of *Giotto*, a famous Architect, who first revived Painting in *Italy*, as also of *Philip Brunelleschi*, another noted Architect, who design'd the Cupolo of this Church, and that of St. *Lawrence*'s. On the N. Wall of this Church is to be seen, the Picture of an *English* Knight on Horse-back, named *Joh. Acutus*, which makes some think his name to have been Sir *John Sharp*, tho' others would have his name to be Sir *John Hawkwood*, because *Guicciardin* calls him *Aucutus*, and describes him as a great and valiant Captain. Here also you see on a Table, the Picture of a famous *Italian* Poet, named *Dante*, a Native of *Florence*, but living in exile, was buried at *Ravenna*. Churches of *Florence.* The Cathedral.

In

The Church of St. Croce.

In the Church of St. *Croce* is to be seen the Monument of that great man *Michael Angelo Buonarota*, the famous Architect, Sculptor and Painter; under his Effigies is a Coffin, and under that three Statues sitting (of most excellent Workmanship) signifying Painting, Sculpture and Architecture, with this Inscription below,

Michaeli Angelo Bonarotio,
E vetusta Simoniorum familia,
Sculptori, Pictori & Architecto,
Famâ omnibus notissimo.

Leonardus patruo amantissimo & de se optimè merito translatis Româ ejus ossibus, atque in hoc templo Major. suor. Sepulchro conditis, cohortante Serenissi. Cosmo Med. magno Etruriæ Duce P. C. Anno Sal. MDLXX.

The Church of the Annuntiata.

In the Church of the *Annunciata* you see the Monument of another great Artist, named *John Bologna*, in a Chapel behind the Choir, built by himself, with the following Inscription:

Johannes Bologna Belga, Mediceorum PP. nobilis alumnus, Picturâ, Sculpturâ & Architecturâ clarus, virtute notus, moribus & Pietate insignis Sacellum Deo, Sep. sibi cunctisque Belgis earundem artium cultoribus P. An. Dom. CIↃ IↃ IC.

Of St. Mark.

In the Church of St. *Mark* is the following small Inscription, on the Tomb of the famous *Johannes Picus Mirandulanus:*

Johannes jacet hîc Mirandula, cætera nôrunt
Et Tagus & Ganges, forsan & Antipodes.
Ob. An. Sal. MCCCCLXXXXIV. vixit An. XXXII.

In the Cloyster of St. *Lawrence*, by the Church Door, we also saw the Monument of *Paulus Jovius*, with a Latin Inscription upon it. In the *Baptisterium*, or Church of St. *John*, of an octagonal Figure, is generally suppos'd to have been anciently a Temple of *Mars*; it has three pair of Brass Doors excellently well cast, and engraven with most curious Figures in *mezo relievo*. Here you see a fair Tomb erected to the Memory of Pope *John* XXIII. who was depos'd in the Council of *Constance*, with this Inscription:

Of St. John.

Joannes quondam Papa XXIIIus obiit Florentiæ Anno Domini MCCCCXVIIII. XI *Kalendas Januarii.*

The Church and Chappel of St. Lawrence.

The Church of St. *Lawrence* contains the Tombs of several of the *Great Duke*'s Family, and to this Church belongs the famous Chappel of St. *Lawrence*, which, when finish'd, 'tis suppos'd, will prove the most magnificent and rich Structure (for its bigness) in the World, the insides of the Walls being laid over not with Marble, but with Stones much exceeding it, such as Jasper of several kinds and colours, Agate, *Lapis Lazuli*, Touchstone, &c. which being all neatly polish'd, and inlaid, and wrought into various Figures, make a most glorious shew. This Chappel is an Octagon, the Roof of which is a spacious *Cupulo*: One side of this Octagon is left void hitherto, being reserv'd for a most magnificent Altar, on the opposite of which is the Door, the rest of the Sides being reserv'd for the Statues and Monuments of such as have been *Grand Dukes*; the first, beginning on the left hand of the Door, being intended (as we suppos'd) for *Alexander*, who was only Duke of *Florence*, was not yet made up; the rest have their respective Names set over their Effigies, each of which stands in a Nich, some of Stone, some of Brass, and underneath a Coffin or Cushion, with a Ducal Crown lying upon it, with the following Inscriptions in this order:

Franciscus Mag. Dux Etruriæ II. vixit ann. XLVI.
ob. XIX. *Octob.* M. D. LXXXVII.
Cosmus Mag. Dux Etruriæ II. *vixit ann.* LV.
ob. XI. Kal. Maii M. D. LXXXXIV.
Ferdinandus Mag. Dux Etrur. III. *vixit ann.* LX.
ob. VII. *Id. Febr.* CIↃ IↃ CIX.
Cosmus Mag. Dux Etrur. IV. *vixit ann.* XXX.
ob. XXVIII. *Febr.* CIↃ IↃ CXX.

There is one side remaining for *Ferdinand* II. the fifth *Great Duke*, who died since our departure; the present *Great Duke*'s Name being *Cosmus* III.

Betwixt the Tombs of each *Great Duke* are the Arms of two of the chief Cities under their Jurisdiction. There are so great a number of Towers, Pillars, Fountains and Statues of Brass and Stone, and most excellent Pictures, at *Florence*, that I will not pretend to enter upon a particular Description of them here, contenting my self with mentioning only the two *Statuæ equestres* in Brass, much greater than the life; one of *Cosmus* I. upon the great *Piazza*; the other of *Ferdinand* I. in the *Piazza* of the *Annunciata*; and so proceed to give you a short account of the Great Duke's Gallery in the Palace, a very handsom Structure, having the Stables below, under ground, and above them fair Portico's to walk in, over which are the Shops of all the Artificers that are imploy'd by the Great Duke, above which is that they properly call the Gallery, where in a Walk free for any man to come into, you see many ancient, and some modern Statues; and round about on each side of the Walk, the Pictures of Princes and other great persons. Here we saw, among the rest, the Pictures of Queen *Elizabeth*, King *James*, *Oliver Cromwell*, and of the before-mention'd *Johannes Acutus*.

The Great Duke's Gallery.

The Rarities which we saw here were preserv'd in four Closets, the chiefest of which were, a very large terrestrial Globe, and a *Sphæra armillaris* bigger than that; several Stone Tables curiously inlaid with Fragments of precious Stones of various colours, representing Flowers, Fruits, Birds, Beasts and Insects, so naturally, that the best Masters of *Europe* could scarce have drawn them more exactly to the life. One of those Tables the richest I ever saw, was set with many Rubies and Pearls, and valued at 100000 *Florence Scudi*, (a *Scudi* here being somewhat more than an *English* Crown;) divers very excellent Cabinets, the best of which being valued at 500000 *Scudi*, was beset with Gems of the first magnitude; a Pearl of an enormous greatness, but not perfectly round; with several Topazes about the bigness of Walnuts; large Rubies and Emeralds, besides other Stones of less value, &c. Here they also shew'd us the Nail, half of Gold, half Iron, part of which they pretend was transmuted by *Tournhausserus*, an Alchymist of *Basil*, into Gold, but the Iron and Gold was so coursely join'd, that it easily discover'd the Imposture. Besides many ancient *Roman* Idols and Lamps of divers shapes, and Pictures and Statues made by the best Masters.

His Armoury.

In the Great Duke's Armoury we took notice of the Armours of many great persons, and, among the rest, of a Headpiece pretended to have belong'd to *Hannibal*, having many *Moresco* Characters engraven on it; *Scanderbeg*'s Sword, the Hair of a Horse's Mane seven yards long, and the Skin of the Horse stuffed up; a long Gun and a Pistol, the Barrels whereof were of beaten Gold; several curious round Bucklers, on one of which was painted a *Medusa*'s Head, by *Michael Angelo*, valued at a high rate; *Italian* Locks for Women; a Thong cut out of the Hide of a Buffle, 250 yards long; a great many *Turkish* Arms, &c.

The *Argenteria* or Wardrobe contains 12 Cupboards, full of rich Plate; one is fill'd with all sorts of Vessels of beaten Gold; another has an Altar of Gold, (as they told us) set with Diamonds and other precious Stones, with this Inscription in capital Letters made up of Rubies, *Cosmus II, Dei gratia magnus Dux Etruriæ ex voto.*

If I should enter upon a description of the *Great Duke*'s Palace, with its Gardens, variety of Trees, Fruits, Shrubs, Walks, Fountains, Waterworks, &c. it would require a Treatise by it self; the choice Plants we took notice of *in transitu* were, *Dictamnus Creticus, Quamoclit Indorum*; *Tragoriganum*; *Stramonium peregrinum* Ger. i. e. *pomo spinoso rotundo*; *Pisum cordatum, Balsamina cucumerina, Chamærhiphes*, &c.

In the Duke's *Theriotrophium* we saw a *Lion*, *Tiger*, *Leopard*, *Bear*, *Wolf*, *Porcupine*, *Wild Boar*; the Snout of the last being longer than those of tame Hogs, the Ears not quite so long, of a black colour, as were the Feet and Tail, the rest of the Body being of a grisly or Iron-grey colour, which is constantly the same; it being observ'd, that most of the wild Animals, whether Birds or Beasts, keep to the same colour.

Most of the Palaces of *Florence* are built *à la maniera rustica*, as the *Italians* call it, that is to say, of rough hewn Stones, not smooth, but even protuberating above the Superficies of the Wall: For the rest, this City is rather in a decaying than an encreasing condition, in respect, I mean, of what it has been formerly, proceeding partly from the great decay of their Silken Trade with *France*, as also from the heavy Impositions laid upon them by the *Great Duke*, who, being absolute, receives the Tenth of every House of its yearly value, as well as the Tenth of what Lands or Houses are sold; 8 *per Cent.* of the Portion of all Women that are married; 2 *per Cent.* out of every Law-suit, according to the proportion of the Sum sued for; for every young Heifer that is sold, a Crown; and all other Provisions, even to the very Eggs, an Excise

Revenues of the Great Duke.

in proportion: nay, he farms the Monopoly of fine Bread (call'd *Pane di bocca*) to the Baker, who furnishes his Table, and pays 1000 *Scudi* yearly: besides these Impositions, as they render the generality of the Inhabitants very poor; (there having not been a new House built here in 40 Years) so it makes the Prince very powerful, whose ordinary Revenue is computed at One million and a half, and by some Two millions of Crowns *per annum*; whereas his annual Expences do not amount to above half the Money, being very thrifty in his Court, keeping his Servants at Board-Wages, and being at a set Rate with his Cook, Baker, &c. one of their chief Maxims of State being to amass great Treasures; for which reason the late Great Duke would often say of our King *Charles* the First, That want of Money ruin'd him.

Very few Gentlemen here, but what sell their own Wines by retail; not within doors, but by the means of a hole made in the Cellar-Wall, where they take in and return the Flasks or other Vessels: Instead of a Signpost, they hang out pieces of broken Flasks at their Palace Gates. Notwithstanding this, they look upon it as a great disparagement to breed up their Children to the Profession of Physick, but as for Trading, it is so well look'd upon here, that from the Great Duke himself to those of the lowest rank, they apply themselves to it.

Besides that they call the *Old State*, comprehending the Territories of *Florence* and *Pisa*, and the *New State*, comprehending the Territory of *Siena*, (for the last of which he owes Fealty to *Spain*) the Great Duke is Master of part of the Isle of *Elba* (likewise a Fief of *Spain*) part of *Graffignana*, purchas'd from the Marquesses of *Malaspina*; the Earldom of St. *Fiora*, bought of the *Strozzi*; the Marquisate of *Scanzano*, and the Earldom of *Pitigliano* and *Sorano*, once belonging to the *Ursini*; and some other small places which he holds from the Emperour, as he is Feudatary to the Pope; for *Radicofani* in *Tuscany*, and *Borgo san Sepulchro* in *Umbria*.

He has generally the reputation of securing his Fortresses in a better condition than any other Prince in *Europe*, for the defence of which he maintains, in time of Peace, 4000 or 5000 Men in constant Pay. The Guard of his Body are *Germans*. They have a kind of Race at *Florence*, especially in the Summer time, when a certain number of the swiftest Horses are let loose, and so run full speed thro' one of the Streets, (which thence is call'd *Corso*) without their Riders. To make them run, they fasten small pieces of Leather stuck with Pricks upon their Backs.

The Ecclesiastical Revenue in all the Duke's Territories did, according to a Survey taken thereof 1645, amount to 765000 *Scudi* or Crowns *per annum*.

It is a constant practice, among the Gentlemen as well as Citizens, of any note here, to put out their Daughters a boarding in the Nunneries as soon as they come to the eighth or tenth Year of age, they looking upon this as the cheapest and securest way to educate them till they are married.

Plants about *Florence*. The Plants we took notice of about *Florence* were, *Cardum chrysanthemum Nabonensis* Ger. *Acarna flore purpuro rubente patulo* C. B. *Echium majus & asperius flore albo* C. B. *Cardum solstitiale* Ger. *Atractylis*; *Conyza major Monspeliensis odorata* J. B. *Galega*; *Scrophularia*. *Ruta canina dicta*; *Lotus pentaphyllos siliquosus, villosus* C.B. *Aster luteus folio ad florem rigido* C. B. *Iberis* J. B. *Juncus acutus maritimus capitulo rotundo* C.B. *Ageratum vulgare*; *Stoechas citrina angustifolia*; *Sideritis vulgaris* Ger. *Nigella arvensis* Park. *Scutreia æstiva hortensis* Ger. *Scorpioides Telephium Ang.* Lob. *Passerina Tragi* J. B. *Globularia Monspelliensium*; *Melilotus major flore albo*; *Chrysanthemum Bellidis folio* Hort. Par. *Medica orbiculata* J. B. *Solanum vulgare fructu luteo*; *Melissa vulgaris*; *Chondrilla juncea* Ger. *Chamæsyce*; *Scabe calyculis argenteis* C. B. *Ischæmon vulgare*; *Gramen dactyloides radice repente* Ger. *Buphthalmum vulgare* Ger. *Buglossum angustifolium* Lob. *Betys*; *Psyllium vulgare*; *Cichorium verrucarium sive Zacynthus*; *Scordium*; *Xeranthemum*; *Kali spinosum*, tho' it's such a distance from the Sea. *Gramen serpinum aculeatum* J. B. *Gramen amoris dictum*, duæ varietates. *Iris floribus albis*, in muris urbis, unde *Florentina* dicta. On the Hills, near the City we found *Arbutus*; *Laurus*; *Lotus arbor*; *Cyclamen folio angulosa* J. B. *Phillyrea serrata* 2 Clus. *Erica arborescens Monspeliensis, flore purpurascente, ramulis ternis* J. B. *Scutreia S. Juliani* J. B. *Cistus fœmina* Ger. *Lychnis minima rigida Cherleri* J. B. *Pyracantha*, in the Woods near the River *Arno*. *Aristolochia Saracenica* Ger. *Graziola*; *Colutea vesicaria*; *Rhamnus*; *Cistus flore albo* Ger. *Digitalis lutea vel pallida flore parvo* C. B.

The red *Florence* Wine (deeper than ordinary Claret) is a Wine much esteem'd both in *Italy* and elsewhere; it acquires this deep-red Tincture by the letting it stand longer than ordinary upon the Husks or *Vinacea*, the interiour pulp of the Grape being white.

Sept. 1. we set out again from *Florence* towards *Rome*, and passing thro' *Castiano*, eight miles from thence, after we had travel'd four miles further, left the ordinary Road leading to *Siena*, (as being the longest) rode thro' St. *Buco*, to a poor wall'd Town call'd St. *Donato*, fifteen miles from *Florence*, and fourteen from *Siena*, whither we continued our Journey by the way of *Castellina di Campi*, and had a prospect of *Siena* ten miles before we came at it, the Country hereabouts, as well as all over *Tuscany*, being mountainous and barren.

Siena (being about four miles in compass) is a very fair City, the Piazza of which resembling the Figure of a Cockle-shell, is adorn'd with goodly Buildings; The Cathedral is a most magnificent Structure of Marble, with a most stately Front, and adorn'd within with the Heads of all the Popes, placed in the Wall, round about the Church; some part (*viz.* about the Front part) of this Church is pav'd with Marble inlaid, or rather a most curious Piece of *Mosaick* Work, containing part of the History of the Bible, done by *Micherino Sanese*: If it had been finish'd according to the first Project, it would have exceeded any thing of that kind in the World; as, the painting of the Library Walls in this Church, containing the History of *Æneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope *Pius* II; half by the hand of *Perugino*, and half by *Raphael Urbin*, is one of the best that ever I saw in my life, being as lively now, as if it had been done but a few days before. From the Tower call'd *Torre di mangio*, we took a full prospect of the whole City, which is of a triangular figure, and encloses a great many Gardens and Vineyards within its Walls: It is situate upon a Hill, which, together with the Pavement of the Streets, (which is of Brick set edgeways, as they do in *Holland*) keeps them very clean, and affords them this further conveniency, that having good Cellars, they make little use of Snow or Ice to cool their Drink. There is a Room in the Palace of the *Podesta*, the Roof and Walls whereof are so excellently painted by *Micherino Sanese*, that the same is valued more than the whole Palace besides. This place is pretty much frequented by Strangers, by reason of its temperate situation, in the Summer time; and as the Inhabitants speak the *Italian* in its purity, so they are very obliging to Travellers, and all manner of Provisions are at a reasonable rate here. *Siena*.

Sept. 23. we left *Siena*, and passing thro' *Lucignano*, *Buon Convento* and *Torniori*, came to St. *Quiricho*, (St. *Cyriaci oppidum*) whereabouts I met with abundance of Lavender-cotton. Hence we rode unto *Radicofani*, thirty four miles from *Siena*, situate upon a high Hill, and provided with a Garrison of 300 Men, being a well-fortified Frontier Town of the Great Duke. In this days Journey we saw great plenty of *Absinthium Romanum* Cæs. between St. *Quiricho* and *Radicofani* *Cynara sylv.* and two other Species of Thistle, one I guess'd to be *Carduus tormentosus* Lob. the other I knew not; *Acarna flore purpureo rubente patulo*; *Veronica spicata cærulea*; *Winter Savory*; *Aster luteus Linariæ folio*; *Colchicum*, all over the Pastures. *St. Quirico*. *Radicofani*.

Sept. 4. we continued our Journey from hence to *Viterbo*, being 38 miles; and we had scarce travel'd ten miles, when we pass'd over a small River near a place call'd *Ponte Argentino*, which on this side is the common Border of the Pope's and the Great Duke's Territories; and travelling on four miles further, came to *Aquapendente*, a large old Town, so call'd from its situation upon the top of an Hill, from whence the Water falls down perpendicularly. We observ'd all the Villages and Towns of this Country to be built on Hills, as I suppose, for coolness sake: And no sooner were we enter'd the Ecclesiastical Territories, but found the Fields full of Trees, intermix'd with pleasant and fruitful Valleys, whereas all that part of the Great Duke's Country thro' which we past'd was very craggy, without Trees, and appear'd to us very barren. From *Aquapendente* we went on to *Lorenzo*, a small place at the edge of the Lake of *Bolsena*, (anciently of *Volsinii*;) and travelling for five miles along the Lake, came to *Bolsena*, and thence mounted up to *Monte Fiascone*, where having refresh'd our selves with that most excellent Wine that grows here, we travel'd for eight miles, thro' a fertile Plain to *Viterbo*, a Town very spacious, and well situated, but indifferently built; we observ'd only two or three handsom Fountains, and one Tomb of Pope *John* XXI. in the Dome or Cathedral. The hot Springs hereabouts we had not time to take a view of. *Aquapendente*. *Monte Fiascone*. *Viterbo*.

From *Viterbo* we travel'd, *Sept.* 5, thro' *Ronciglione*, (a pretty place belonging to the State of *Castro*) to *Baccano*, being 22 miles. In the Woods of the Mountains near *Viterbo*, we met with these following rare Plants, *viz.*

Carduus

Cardnus globosus Ger. *Viola matronalis*; *Cassia poetica* Lob. *Cerrus minore glande* Ger. *Orobus sylvaticus vicia folio* C.B. *Cyclaminus folio anguloso* J.B. in great plenty in all the Woods between *Viterbo* and *Rome*: *Mespilus vulgaris*; *Hesperis sylvestris latifolia, flore parvo albo* Park. *Thlaspi Candia* Ger. *Lamium sambucaria dictum*; *Sorbus*; *Linaria major purpurea*; *Blattaria lutea*; *Cytisus cortice cinereo aut albido, siliquis hirsutis*. What this Plant is rightly call'd by the *Botanists*, I can't absolutely determine. *Plumbago Plinii* in great plenty at *Bolsena*, and on the high Roads about *Rome*: *Polygonum vel Linifolia per terram sparsa flore Scorpioidis* J.B. *Helleborus niger hortensis flore viridi* J.B. in vepretis mentosis passim.

Sept. 6. we went forward, travelling that day 16 miles, to *Rome*: We ascended a Mountain not far from *Baccano*, from whence having a large prospect of the *Campania* of *Rome*, being cover'd all over with a thick Mist, appear'd to us at a distance like a huge Lake. About 3 miles on this side of *Rome* we saw an ancient Monument they call'd the Sepulchre of *Nero*, the like we had met with before at *Modena*. About a mile short of *Rome*, passing over the *Tiber* by the *Ponte Molle*, (the ancient *Pons Milvius*) came upon the *Via Flaminia*, a well-pav'd straight way, having on both sides many Country Houses and Gardens, which brought us to the *Porta del Popolo*, one of the Gates of *Rome*.

Ponte Molle.

So many Authors having imploy'd their learned pains in the description of *Rome*, both ancient and modern, I shall be very brief in the following Account of it.

Rome.

The Antiquities worth the Observation of the Curious, are chiefly the Ruins and Remainders of *Pagan Temples*, *Theatres* and *Amphitheatres*, *Circi*, *Baths*, *Aqueducts*, *Obelisks*, *Triumphal Arches*, *Pillars*, *Fora*, *Mausolæa*, *Statues*, *Altar* and *Grave-stones*, and other Stones, with their Inscriptions; *Medals*, *Entaglie* or *Gems* engraven with Figures, *Sacrificing Vessels* and *Instruments*, *Sepulchral Urns*, *Lachrymal Urns*, *Ancient Lamps*, *Weights*, *Rings*, &c.

Among the ancient Temples, which are still entire, we have remaining some part of them: 1. The *Pantheon*, commonly call'd *Rotunda*, from its circular figure, now dedicated to the Virgin *Mary* and *All-Saints*, is 144 foot high, and as many broad, the Roof being vaulted in form of a *Cupola*, having no other Light but that it receives thro' a round hole on the top, of 9 foot diameter. Its Porch consisted of 16 tall and massive Pillars of speckl'd Marble, call'd Oriental Granite, each Pillar having but one Stone, of which there are only 13 remaining now. Upon the Architrave of this Portico you see these words inserted in very large Letters:

The Pantheon of Rome.

M. AGRIPPA L. F. COS. TERTIUM FECIT

And underneath it, in lesser Characters:

IMP. CÆS. L. SEPTIMIUS. SEVERUS. PIUS. PERTINAX. ARABICUS. ADIABENICUS. PARTHICUS. MAXIMUS. PONTIF. MAX. TRIB. POT. XI, COS. III. P. P. PROCOS. ET IMP. CÆS. M. AURELIUS. ANTONINUS. PIUS. FOELIX AUG. TRIB. POTEST. V. COS. PROCOS. PANTHEUM. VETUSTATE. CORRUPTUM. CUM. OMNI. CULTU. RESTITUERUNT.

This Temple was cover'd with Copper, till Pope *Urban* the Eighth remov'd it thence, and to appease the grumbling of the People, order'd the four famous wreath'd Pillars and Canopy of the high Altar in St. *Peter's* Church, to be made of it; the *Clavi trabales*, or Nails which fastned the Tiles of the *Portico*, weighing no less than 2800 pounds, out of which was cast a great Cannon, which is still to be seen in the Castle of St. *Angelo*, with this Inscription, *Ex clavis trabalibus Porticus Agrippæ*, and the Figure of one of those Nails engraven upon it. The whole Body of this Temple remains entire, being despoil'd only of its Ornaments and Statues, among which was the famous *Minerva* of *Phidias*. After its first building, it had seven Steps upwards, which surrounded the whole Structure, whereas now you must descend eleven Steps to go into it; a convincing Proof that a great part of the ancient *Rome* is involv'd in Rubbish under ground. Those that shew'd us the Church were very careful to tell us, That the Lintel and Side-posts of the great Door of this Church (which indeed is exceeding large in all its dimensions) were all of one entire Stone; which we thought fit rather to believe, than to give our selves the trouble of examining it. In this Church is to be seen the Tomb of that great Architect and Painter *Raphael Urbin*, with this following Epitaph:

Raphaeli Sanctio Joan. F. Urbinat.
Pictori eminentiss. Veterumque æmulo,
Cujus spirantes propè imagines si
Contemplere, naturæ atque artis fœdus
Facilè inspexeris.
Julii II & Leonis X Pontt. maxx. picturæ
Et Architect. operibus gloriam auxit.
V. A. XXXVII integer integros.
Quo die natus est eo esse desiit,
VII. Id. Aprilis MDXX.
Hic situs est Raphael, timuit quo sospite vinci
Rerum magna parens, & moriente mori.

2. *Templum Fortunæ virilis*, or the Temple of the *Moon*, as some will have it, but rather of the *Sun* and *Jupiter*, now call'd S. *Maria Ægyptiaca*, where the *Armenians* have their Service.

3. The Temple of the *Sun*, or of *Vesta*, as some affirm, or as others, *Templum Herculis Victoris*, standing not far from the precedent, *viz.* by the *Tiber* side, near the broken Bridge, and is now call'd *La Madonna del Sole*, or St. *Stefano alle carozze*; a small round Structure, with a Gallery of streight Pillars round about it: It receives its Light like the *Pantheon*, thro' a hole on the top. These two last remain entire.

4. *Templum Dianæ Aventinæ*, now call'd St. *Sabino*, is very large twelve strait Pillars on each side, dividing the Nave from the Isles.

5. *Templum Herculis Aventini*, now the Church of St. *Alexius* and *Bonifacius*, near the former, on the top of Mount *Aventine*.

6. *Templum Jani quadrifrontis*, in the Cow-market.

7. The *Temple* of *Concord*, or rather its Remainders, being only a *Portico* sustain'd by two great Marble Pillars of one Stone, at the foot of the *Mons Capitolinus*.

8. The Temple of *Saturn*, now St. *Adriani's* Church, the Frontispiece of which is only the remainder of the ancient Temple; it stands near *Severus's* Arch, at the foot of the Capitol.

9. The Temple of *Antonine* and *Faustina*, now St. *Lorenzo in Miranda*; of this remains entire the *Portico*, with its Inscription, and some of the Walls built of massy Stones, the Marble Pillars which support the *Portico* having a grain lying one way, do cleave like Wood.

10. The Temple of *Romulus* and *Remus*, since dedicated to St. *Cosmo* and *Damiano*, has scarce any thing remaining of its ancient Structure.

11. *Templum Isidis & Serapidis sive Solis & Lunæ*, now St. *Maria nuova*; the few Ruins remaining of the old Church are behind the Cloyster, the present Church being no part of it, neither standing in the same place.

12. The *Temple of Peace*, the Founder of which was *Vespasian*, exceeded all the other ancient Temples of *Rome* in bigness, as may be seen by the Foundation, the Ruins of which may easily be distinguish'd; for the rest, there are no more than part of three Arches left standing: The strait Pillar set up before the Church of St. *Maria Maggiore* (the greatest of one entire Stone now in *Rome*) was taken hence, being one of the eight which supported the *Nave* or Body of this Temple.

13. *Templum Jovis Statoris*, three Pillars now to be seen in the *Campo vaccino* were part of this Temple.

14. *Templum Jovis tonantis*; of this three Pillars, for the most part under ground, are suppos'd to be part; on the Architrave whereof are to be seen these Letters ESTITUER, on the left hand of the *Clivus*, as you go from *Severus's* Arch to the Capitol.

15. The Temple of *Faunus*, now call'd St. *Stefano rotundo*, from its circular Figure: This large Structure is sustain'd by two concentrical Circles of Pillars, the outermost Pillars being less than the innermost, the first containing 44 Pillars, and the other exactly half the number; besides that, the Pillars of the inner Circle stand at the same distance from one another as those in the outer.

16. *Templum Herculis Callaici*, now *Galluzo*, of a diagonal figure, its Roof being a *Cupola* not much less than that of the *Pantheon*; it has two Doors directly opposite one to another, and on both sides betwixt them eight Niches for Statues.

17. *Templum Bacchi extra portam Piam*, now the Church of St. *Costanza*, without the Walls: This is also a round Structure, having a concentrical Circle of twelve Pillars of a less circumference within. Here you see an ancient Monument of Porphyry, resembling a large Chest, having a Stone to cover it; it is curiously engraven with Branches of Trees, Boys treading of Grapes, of Birds, &c. In several places of the Roof are Pictures of Bunches of Grapes, and other things belonging to Vintage, but the freshness of the Colours and rudeness of the Figures makes me

me suspect them to be no *Roman* Workmanship. They call this the Monument of *Bacchus*.

18. The Temple of the Sun; of this there remains only some great Marble Stones in the Gardens of the *Columna's*, some of them curiously engraven.

19. The Temple of *Romulus* and *Remus*, now dedicated to St. *Theodore*; it is of a circular figure, into which you descend by Steps, like as into the *Pantheon*.

Theatres and Amphitheatres. Of the ancient *Roman Theatres* and *Amphitheatres* there are remaining only some small Footsteps of the *Amphitheatre* of *Statilius Taurus*, near the Church of St. *Croce* in *Gierusalemme*, and some part of the Walls of the *Theatre* of *Marcellus*, upon which the Palace of the *Savelli* is built: But of the *Amphitheatre* of *Titus* (now call'd the *Coliseo*) very great Ruins are to be seen to this day, being round without, and of an oval figure within: It was capable of containing conveniently 85000 Persons.

The Circi. Of *Circi* there are only some slender Remnants of that of *Antoninus Caracalla*, without the City, and of the *Circus maximus*, of which you may just discern the Figure. Of the *Circus Agonalis* (now the *Piazza Navona*) and of the *Circus* of *Nero* in *Campo Vaticano*; as likewise of the *Circus Flaminius*, nothing is left but their bare Names.

Baths. Of *Roman Baths* very considerable Ruins are to be seen, *viz.* of those of *Diocletian*, which had Seats for 3200 persons to bath without seeing one another; of *Antoninus Caracalla*, which had 1600 Seats all of polish'd Marble; the *Therms* of *Titus*, of *Agrippa* near the *Pantheon*, of *Constantine* near St. *Sylvesters*, of *Nero* near St. *Eustachius*'s Church, of *Paulus Æmilius* at the foot of *Monte Cavallo*, call'd *Magnanapoli*; besides many others, of which scarce any Footsteps are to be seen now.

Aqueducts. Among the ancient *Aqueducts* of *Rome*, there are only four that have something remaining now, *viz.* the *Aqua Martia*, conducted 37 miles; the *Aqua Claudia*, brought 35; and the *Aqua Appia* and *Aqua Virginis*, both brought 8 miles; the last of which being repair'd by Pope *Nicholas* V. is us'd now-a-days, and known by the Name of *Fonte di Trivio*. Besides those, there are two new *Aqueducts* built by late Popes, of which the following Inscriptions will give you a satisfactory account.

I.

This Work cost 200000 Crowns.

Sixtus V. Pont. max. Picenus
Aquam ex agro Columnæ
Viâ Prænest. sinistrorsum
Multarum collectione venarum
Ductu sinuoso à receptaculo
Mill. XX. à Capite XXII.
Adduxit:
Felicémque de nomine
Ant. Pont. dixit.
Capite anno I. absolvit III.
MDLXXXVII.

II.

Paulus V. Pontifex maximus aquam in agro Bracciánensi salubérrimis è fontibus collectam, veteribus aquæ Alsiatinæ ductibus restitutis novisque additis XXXV ab Urbe milliario duxit, Anno Domini MDCXII. Pontificatus sui septimo.

Obelisks. There are eleven Obelisks remaining, but we took notice only of nine: 1. That which anciently stood in the *Circus maximus*, but being broken, was by *Sixtus* V. set handsomly together, and placed upon a fine Pedestal in the *Piazza* within the Gate call'd *Porta del Popolo*, having on each side an Inscription, and two ancient ones on the opposite sides in the same words.

Imp. Cæsar Divi F.
Augustus
Pontifex maximus
Imp. XII. Cos. XI. Trib. Pot. XIV
Ægypto in potestatem
Populi Romani redacta.
Soli donum dedit.

On the other two sides are two modern Inscriptions; on one this:

Sixtus V Pont. max.
Obeliscum hunc
A Cæsare Aug. Soli
In Circo max. rictu
Dicatum impio,
Miserandâ ruinâ
Fractum obrutumque
Erui, transferri,
Formæ suæ reddi,
Crucique invictiss.
Dedicari jussit.
A. MDLXXXIX. Pont. IV.

On the other this:

Ante Sacram
Illius ædem
Augustior
Lætiorque surgo
Cujus ex utero
Virginalis
Aug. imperante
Sol Justitiæ
Exortus est.

It is engraven on each side with three rows of Hieroglyphicks.

2. The Obelisk which now stands in the *Piazza* before St. *Peter's* Church, was taken out of the *Circus* of *Caligula* and *Nero*, and at the charge of Pope *Sixtus* V. placed hither; as were also those of St. *Maria maggiore* and St. *Joh. Lateran.* This Obelisk is 72 foot high, besides the Pedestal, in all 108: It has no Hieroglyphicks upon it. Of the manner of its removal, a peculiar Treatise is written; as the four modern Inscriptions on the Pedestal, and the ancient one on the Obelisk it self, may be seen in *Roma antica & moderna.*

3. That of St. *John Lateran*, having three rows or files of *Hieroglyphicks* on each side of it; this is 112 foot high, besides the Base, where it is 9½ feet thick one way, and 8 foot the other. It is the greatest Obelisk in *Rome*: From the following Inscription it appears by whom it was brought to *Rome*, and set up.

Fl. Constantius Aug. Constantini Aug. F. Obeliscum à patre loco suo motum, diuque Alexandriæ jacentem trecentorum remigum impositum navi mirandæ vastitatis per mare, Tiberimque magnis molibus Romam convectum in circo maximo ponendum curavit S. P. Q. R. D. D.

4. That of St. *Maria maggiore*, without Hieroglyphicks, and much lesser than any of the former, was remov'd hither out of the *Mausolæum* of *Augustus*.

5. That of the *Piazza Navona*, taken out of the *Circus* of *Caracalla*, by Pope *Innocent* X: It has but one row of Hieroglyphicks, and much less than the last mention'd: Of this *Athanas. Kircher* has written a whole Treatise.

6. That of St. *Maburo*, near the Jesuits Church, is only a piece of the top of an Obelisk, placed upon four rude Stones; it has some Hieroglyphicks.

7. That in the Garden of *de Medicis* is also no more than a piece of the top of an Obelisk, full of Hieroglyphicks, placed upon a Base, without an Inscription.

8. That in the Garden of the *Mattei* is but very small, and broken in two pieces; the uppermost has to the top some Hieroglyphicks, but the lower piece none.

9. In the Court of the Palace of the Prince of *Palestrina* you see an Obelisk lying upon the Ground, broken in three pieces, with Hieroglyphicks; it seems to have been much longer.

10. *Roma antica* makes mention of an Obelisk standing at the foot of the Stairs in the Palace of the *Ursini*, in the *Campo di fiore*, but we did not see it.

11. We were also credibly inform'd, that an Obelisk bigger than any of those erected already in *Rome*, and suppos'd to be entire, was lying under a row of Houses in the *Campus Martius*.

Among all these Obelisks, those that are engraven with Hieroglyphicks are of the same kind of Stone, *viz.* of a hard Marble of a mingled colour, red and white, which in so many Ages has not undergone the least alteration by the Weather: their Figure is taper-wise, lessening by degrees from the Basis to the Center, yet so as that they don't terminate in a point; but when they are come to that degree, as to be too small to have any Hieroglyphicks engraven upon them, the tops are made in the form of an obtuse Pyramid. 'Tis the general Opinion, and not without a great deal of probability, that the Hieroglyphicks upon these Obelisks, from the bottom to the top, are by degrees greater and greater, which makes the uppermost appear of the same bigness with the lowermost.

Triumphal Arches. Of *Triumphal Arches* are yet remaining that of *Septimius Severus*, that of *Titus Vespasian*, that of *Constantine* the Great, that erected in honour of *Antoninus*, *Septimius Severus* his Son, and that of *Gallienus* and *Salonina*, call'd the Arch of St. *Vito*. We could not find out the Arch in the *Via Flaminia* call'd *Arco di Portugallo*, in *Roma antica*, where you may see the Inscriptions and places of those Arches.

Pillars. There are four *Pillars* yet remaining, (not reckoning those belonging to Temples) *viz.* the *Columna milliaria*, which anciently stood in the *Forum Romanum* in the center of the City, this being the Mark from whence they us'd to count their Miles, by a certain Stone set up at every Mile's end, this Statue being, toward the top, mark'd with the Letter I, of a considerable bigness, as the second Stone at the first Mile's end was mark'd with II, and so further; so that *ad secundum lapidem* signified at one Mile's distance from this Pillar, *ad tertium* two, and so on. It is of no considerable bigness, and now placed on one side of the *Area* of the Capitol.

The *Columna rostrata* in the *Forum Romanum*, erected to *C. Duilius*, in memory of the Victory he obtain'd over the *Carthaginians* at Sea; the old and long Inscription, which

which was much defaced, is supply'd in many places.

The *Column* of *Trajan*, of white Marble, which remains standing ever since its first establishment, being 128 foot high, and the Base 12; within it you ascend to the top by a pair of winding Stairs of 192 Steps, having 44 small Windows to give light; the whole Fabrick is compos'd of no more than 24 entire Stones, each Stone having 8 Steps. An *Helical Area* compasses the Pillar from top to bottom, in manner of a Screw, on which are carv'd the Actions of *Trajan* in his Expedition against the *Dacians*. The Pedestal, which was buried under ground, was laid open again by Pope *Paul* III, and has the following Inscription.

S. P. Q. R.

Imp. Cæsari Divi Nervæ F. Nervæ Trajano Aug. Germ. Dacico, Pont. maximo, Trib. Potest XVI. Imp. VI. Cos. VI. PP. ad declarandum quantæ altitudinis mons & locus tantis operibus sit egestus.

The *Column* of *Antoninus*, much like the former, is 175 foot high, has 206 Steps within, and 56 small Windows: Being miserably broken and defaced, Pope *Sixtus* V. mended and restor'd it.

Vid. Roma Antiq.

There are but two *Mausolæa* remaining, *viz.* that of *Augustus*, and the *Moles* of *Adrian*, now call'd the Castle of St. *Angelo*.

Mausolea.

Of *Statues*, the Palaces and Gardens in and about *Rome* can shew more than all *Europe* besides: Among these, the most taken notice of are, the *Equestris Statua* of *M. Aurelius Antoninus Pius* in Brass, now standing in the *Area* of the Capitol; the two Statues of Stone, of two Horses with Men by them, now to be seen in the *Mons Quirinalis*, whence it got the Name of *Monte Cavallo*. The Statues of *Laocoon*, the Trunk of *Hercules* and of *Cleopatra*, in the Pope's Garden, call'd *Belvedere*. That noted Statue of the Bull in the D. of *Parma*'s Palace, call'd *Il Toro di Farnese*. The incomparable Statue of *Venus*, in the D. of *Tuscany*'s Garden, the Work of *Apollodorus* the *Athenian*. *Venus verecunda*; *Marsyas* hung up by the Hands; the Wrestlers; the Country-man who discover'd *Catiline*'s Conspiracy, in a sitting posture, with a Wooden-knife in his Hand; all to be seen in the same Gardens. The Statue of *Meleager*, in the Palace of the *Pichini*; the Statue of *Pasquin*, whereon they usually fasten their Libels; the Statue of a Fellow plucking a Thorn out of his Foot, in the Capitol; the Statue of the she-Wolf giving suck to *Romulus* and *Remus*, in Brass, look'd upon as the most ancient in *Rome*; the Gladiator, of white Marble, in the *Villa Borghese*, valued at a very high rate, the Copy of which in Brass is to be seen at *Hampton-Court*; two Statues representing Friendship, in the *Villa Ludovisia*.

Statues.

Altar-stones, Grave-stones, and other Stones with Inscriptions, of those there is vast variety all over the City.

Stones, Medals, Engelia and Urns.

And of ancient Medals and *Entagliæ*, there are dug up daily, which are sold in the Shops and Stalls in the Market-places, and great numbers of them are preserv'd in the Collections of the *Virtuosi*; where, as well as in the Gardens and Palaces of Persons of Quality, you may see great quantities of Sepulchral Urns of divers shapes and bigness, some of Stone, others of Earth.

Among the Antiquaries of *Rome*, who have considerable Collections of these before-mention'd things, as well as of sacrificing Vessels and Instruments, Lachrymal Urns, ancient Lamps, Rings, *Fibulæ*, *Tesseræ hospitalitatis*, Weights, &c. *Leonardus Augustinus*, the then Pope's Antiquary, and *John Petro Bellori*, deserve to be prefer'd before the rest; that worthy and ingenious Gentleman, Cavalier *Carlo Antonio del Pozzo*, shew'd us 20 Volumes in Folio, containing the Figures of most of the Antiquities in and about *Rome*, drawn by the hand with great exactness; and among the rest we took notice of the *crepundia veterum*, being nothing else but little Images of Earth resembling Children, Apes, Hares, &c. found in Urns. Of Weights, we saw some in the Collection of *Leonardus Augustinus*; made of a dark-red Stone well polish'd, of the shape of a *Holland* Cheese, of divers magnitudes, mark'd on one side with the number of ounces or pounds it contain'd: Of these Weights I saw two as big as a large *Holland* Cheese, in the Church of St. *Maria in Cosmedin*, call'd *Schola Græca*, and two more in the Church of St. *Maria in Trastevere*, of which they have a Tradition, That they us'd to tie them to the Martyrs Feet, to stretch and torment them: In the last mention'd Collection, we saw also a Medal, with the Figure of a *Tatus* on one side, and this Inscription on the other; *Qui ludit orbem det quod satis sit*: The *Fritillus* or Dice-box of the Ancients, like ours; the *Strigiles*; a Medal that us'd to be hung about the Slaves Necks, having on one side the Figure of a she-Wolf giving suck to *Romulus* and *Remus*, and on the other, in three concentrical Circles, these words, *Tene me ne fugiam, & revoca me in foro Trajani purpuretica ad Pascasium Dominum meum*. A Drinking Glass like a *Priapus*, of which the Poet, *Vitreo bibit ille Priapo*. The ancient *Roman* Timbrel, not unlike our modern ones.

Rome has about 13 miles in circumference, but did to us appear not to be so populous as *Venice*, *Milan* or *Naples*, as comprehending a great deal of waste ground; the number of its Inhabitants are generally believ'd to be 120000 Souls, without the Strangers, of which there are great numbers here; it extends now-adays below the Hills into the Valley by the River side, being generally well built, the Streets streight, and beautified with many Palaces, Monasteries and Churches, of which, they say, there are above 300. Provisions for the Belly are not so cheap here as at *Florence* or *Naples*, yet have they great plenty of them, and those exceeding good, their Beef being not inferiour to ours in *England*. Before they kill their Beasts, they hunt them, as we do our Bulls. Their sucking Veal they prefer before all of that kind in *Europe*; and their Kid or *Capretto*, and Pork, is also excellent good Meat; but their Mutton is both tough and dry. For tame Fowl they may compare with any part of *Europe*, both in quantity and goodness, *viz.* *Hens*, *Capons*, *Turkies*, *tame Pigeons*, &c. Geese they have in no great plenty, but wild Fowl is very cheap, and that of the best sort, such as Partridges, of two kinds, the common and red-legg'd ones, Woodcocks, Snipes, Duck and Mallard, Wigeon, Teal, Quails, Plover, &c. besides what is sold in the *Small-bird Market*, of Thrushes, Blackbirds, Larks, &c. nay, even Robin-red-breasts, Finches, Wagtails, Grays, &c. Besides these before mention'd, you may see sometimes in the Poulterers Shops to be sold, *Cranes*, *wild Geese*, *Shell-drakes*, *Avosetta*, *Water Hens*, *Bogandeis*, and even such Birds as are not eaten in *England*, as Kites, Buzzards, Spar-hawks, Kestrels, Jays, Magpies and Woodpeckers. Neither are they in any want either of Sea or River Fish; tho' they be sold at a dearer rate than Flesh: Of Fresh-water Fish, Pike, Carp, Tench, Trout, Eels, Barble, Chevin and Dace, are the most frequent; I don't remember I ever saw a Perch at *Rome*. Of Sea-fish they have the *Mullus antiquorum*, now call'd *Triglia*, call'd *Rouge* by the *French*, from its colour; in *Cornwall* we call them *Surmullet*: *Spiegole*, or the *Lupus marinus*, a Fish not known in *England*; *Orate*, Gilt-heads; *Cephali*, the *Mugil* of the Ancients, we call it a *Mullet* in English; *Sarde*, or the Sprat; Conger, or Lamprey; Sole, Plaise, and others of the flat kind; *Merluzzo's*, we call them Hakes; sometimes small Sturgeons, Dog-fish, as also *Tuny* and *Sword-fish*.

A description of *Rome*.

Its Provision.

Wild Boar and other Venison you scarce ever miss in the Market, but their wild Deer (or *Capreole*) is generally very lean: Sometimes you meet also with Porcupine to be sold.

Oranges and Lemons are very cheap here, but large Pears and Apples very dear, being sold by weight all over *Italy*.

Their Bread is both very cheap and good, and light, tho' they use no Yeast to raise it.

Of Wines they have greater variety than in any other place of *Italy*; as *Greco*, *Lagrimo* of *Naples*, *Languedoc*; Wine of *Syracusa* and *Augusta* in *Sicily*, *Orvietano*, *Fensano*, *Monte Pulciano*, *di Monte fiascone*, *Castelli*, *Romano* and *Allano*, which is more frequently us'd than all the rest. Most of their Wines are sweet (which they call *Abboccati*) and so strong bodied, that they will bear half Water. Rough Wines they call *Asciuti*, tho' none of theirs are so harsh as our Clarets or *Florence* red Wines, which are also to be had here. Their Olives, tho' small, are excellent good and sweet; of Walnuts, Hazlenuts, and such other Fruits as are frequent among us, great plenty; but their Apples and Pears excel all the rest for goodness.

Rome is also noted for divers Commodities and Manufactures; as, the best Viol and Lute-strings in *Europe*, perfum'd Gloves, Combs made of Buffels Horns, Womens Fans, Vitriol, Essences; and as for Musick and Pictures of the best Masters, *Rome* may deservedly challenge the Preference before all other places in *Europe*. At one time Cavalier *Barberini* was the most noted and the only excellent Sculptor here, and *Pietro de Cortona* the most eminent Painter.

The *Ville* or County-Seats of the Princes and other Persons of Quality of *Rome*, for Flower-Gardens, Groves, cut Hedges of Cypress, *Alaternus*, Laurel, Bay, *Phillerea*, *Laurus tinus*, and other *semper-virent* Plants, close and open Walks, most excellent Orchards of Fruit-trees, Labyrinths, Fountains, Waterworks, Statues, Bird-cages, and other Ornaments, but especially in their bigness, (some being 3 or 4 miles in compass) exceed most of the Gardens of any Princes in *Christendom*; the chief of those, (1.) The *Villa Borghese*, esteem'd the best of all about

Country Seats.

Rome,

Rome, tho' inferiour in bigneſs to the (2.) *Villa Pamphylia*, which lies on the *Janiculum*, without St. *Pancrat's* Gate, being 4 miles in compaſs. (3.) The *Villa Ludovisia*, belonging to Prince *Ludovisio*. (4.) The Pope's Garden, call'd *Belvedere*, at the Vatican. (5.) The Pope's Garden at *Monte Cavello*. (6.) The *Villa de Medici*, or the Great Duke's Garden. (7.) The Garden of *Mondalto*. (8.) The Garden of the *Matthei*. Each of theſe have their little Pillars, beautified with moſt excellent Statues, *bassi relievi*, Pictures and other Curiosities, for the deſcription of which I refer my ſelf to Mr. *Laſſels* and others; neither will I pretend to enlarge upon their publick Structures, but can't altogether paſs by in ſilence the Church of St. *Peter*, being, in my Opinion, the moſt ſumptuous and magnificent Structure that ever was placed upon the face of the Earth, exceeding in all its dimenſions the moſt famous Temples of the Ancients, being 520 foot long, and 385 broad, according to *Laſſel*; which tho' it be not ſo long as St. *Paul's* at *London*, yet as it is much broader, ſo this renders it more regular and proportionable to its length. The *Cupola* is of that ſtupendious height and compaſs (having the ſame diameter as that of the *Rotunda*) which ſuſtaining on the top a very large Lanthorn, encompaſs'd with great Stone Pillars, this renders it the boldeſt and moſt ſtupendious piece of Architecture the World ever beheld. The Roof is arch'd and divided into ſpacious Squares or Panes like Wainſcot, the Ribs and tranſverſe Borders terminating thoſe Pannels, being richly gilt, and the *area* of each Square fill'd up with a large gilt Roſe. The oval Portico encompaſſes a large *area* before the Church conſiſting of four rows of great Stone Pillars, ſo cloſe together, that at a diſtance they reſemble a Grove of large Trees. To be ſhort, the lofty Porch to which you aſcend out of this *area* by 24 Steps: the covering of ſome part of the Walls with Marble finely poliſh'd, the excellent Statues, magnificent Altars, moſt curious Pictures, and other Ornaments, render this Church the moſt majeſtick and moſt admirable Pile of Building in the Univerſe.

The Church of St. *Peter*.

Freſcati. Whilſt we ſtaid at *Rome*, we took a *Tour* to *Freſcati*, twelve *Italian* miles thence, anciently call'd *Tuſculum*, where *Cicero* had a Country-houſe, of which they ſhew as yet ſome remnants: At preſent it is famous for three *Villa's*, *viz.* that of the *Borgheſe*, with its Palace call'd *Monâragone*; the *Villa Aldobrandina* or *Belvedere*, belonging to Prince *Pamphilio*, and the *Ville Ludoviſie*; all which for Walks, Groves, Labyrinths, and other Ornaments, may compare with the beſt near *Rome*; and for Waterfalls and other Waterworks, exceed them. That which pleas'd us moſt, (having never ſeen the like before) was the imitation of a Tempeſt, with a Storm of Thunder and Rain, which artificial Thunder they call *Girandola*.

Tivoli We alſo took a view of *Tivoli*, the Ancients *Tibur*, 18 miles from *Rome*; how much *Horace* delighted in this place, is evident out of his Verſes, *Tibur Argeo poſitum colono, Sit meæ ſedes utinam ſenectæ, Sit modus laſſo maris & viarum militiæque.* Its ſituation is, as well as *Freſcati*, on the brow of a Hill overlooking the *Campania* of *Rome*. Here are to be ſeen the Ruins of divers ancient Temples and other Structures, and a remarkable Waterfall of the River *Aniene* or *Teverone*. And the *Villa* of *Eſte*, for its Gardens, Orchards, Walks, Groves, the *Girandola* and other Waterworks, may compare with thoſe of *Freſcati*. Not above five miles from *Tivoli*, we paſs'd over the Sulphur River, the Water whereof we found of a blewiſh colour, and nauſeous ſmell, not unlike to that of our Sulphur Well at *Knaresburgh* in *Yorkshire*; the Chanel in which it runs is encruſted with a whitiſh kind of friable ſtony matter, which being congeal'd in many places in the ſhape of Sugar-plums, they call *Confetti de Tivoli*, and ſell them in whole Boxes full at *Rome*. About *Freſcati* we ſaw growing wild abundance of *Styrax arbor*, which we found no where elſe beyond the Seas.

The *Campagna* of *Rome* is generally very fertile, but being marſhy, and full of ſtanding Pools, the unwholſomneſs of the Air makes that Country but ill inhabited.

One thing more we obſerv'd very well worth mentioning during our ſtay at *Rome*, *viz.* that the Water the Servants brought us in froſty weather to wash our Hands, was ſo hot, that we thought it had been warm'd on purpoſe by the Fire; which Phænomenon having been denied by many of our modern Philoſophers, who were not ſatisfied with the *Antiperiſtaſis* of the Ancients, and yet could not give ſufficient reaſon for it, we thought fit to be ſatisfied of the truth of it, by making an ocular inſpection into the Fountain it ſelf, the Water whereof we found of an equal heat with what was brought us.

For the reſt, the frequent Rains that fall hereabouts make in ſome meaſure amends for the exceſſive drought and heat of the Summer: And as *Rome* has ſufficient wherewithal to entertain People of all tempers, ſo it is a place well fitted for the reception of Strangers.

As for the Inhabitants, they approach now-adays, in their Furnitures and ſome of their Manners and Cuſtoms, more to the *Engliſh* than any of the *Italians* beſides.

To enlarge here upon the Court of *Rome*, the Eccleſiaſtical State and Government, with that of their Churches and Ceremonies, &c. as it would require an entire Volume, ſo without inſiſting any further upon thoſe particulars, we will proceed in the account of our Journey.

They leave *Rome*. *Jan.* 24. 1664. We left *Rome*, and taking our way towards *Venice* along the *Via Flaminia*, paſs'd the *Tiber* again by the *Ponte Molle* (*Pons Milvius*) and at 7 miles diſtance from *Rome*, thro' a ſmall Village call'd *Prima porta*, which ſome ſuppoſe to have been the ancient Boundary of the City on that ſide. From thence we travel'd 8 miles further, to *Caſtel nuovo*, where we took up our Lodgings. All this Afternoon we kept along the *Tiber*, upon the *Via Flaminia*, which reaches as far as *Rimini*, and is all along pav'd with broad Flints and Pebbles, having on each ſide a Border of Stone, and in that Border, at every ſecond or third pace, a Stone ſtanding above the level of the Border. In the Fields, as we paſs'd along, we found abundance of Vernal Crocuſes in Flower.

Prima Porta. *Via Flaminia.*

Jan. 25. We continued our Journey to *Arignano* or *Ariano*, 8 miles, where leaving the *Via Flaminia*, we rode round a high Hill, for 9 miles, to a little Town call'd *Civita Caſtellana*, now ſtanding on a Hill, not far from whence we had a proſpect of the Duke of *Parma*'s Palace of *Caprarola*, which ſeem'd to be no more than two or three miles off, but was, as they told us, at leaſt ten or twelve diſtant.

Civita Caſtellana. *Caprarola.*

After we had travel'd 4 miles further, we paſs'd the *Tiber* a little below *Borgetto*, over a Bridge call'd *Ponte Felice*, begun by Pope *Sixtus* V, and finiſh'd by *Urban* VIII. At a ſmall diſtance from the River ſide we paſs'd under the little Town of *Magliano*, built on the top of a Hill, and travelling for 4 miles along the Bank of the River, came to *Otricoli*, now ſtanding upon a Hill, tho' the Ruins which remain ſhew the ancient *Ocricoli* to have extended, at leaſt for ſome part, to the River.

Ponte Felice. *Otricoli.*

From hence we rode, for five miles, over mountainous and rocky ways, and a mile before we reach'd *Narni*, upon the brink of a moſt dreadful Precipice, extending along the River *Nera*'s ſide. *Narni* (the *Nequinum* of the Ancients) has borrow'd its Name from the River *Nar*, which paſſes below that ſteep Rock, upon the ridge whereof this City is built: It was formerly a *Roman* Colony, and none of the leaſt conſiderable ones, but is now very poor and mean. Here you ſee the Braſs Statue erected in memory of *Gattamelata*, the famous *Venetian* General, on Horſeback, who was a Native of this place. Near it you ſee the Ruins of vaſt Stone Arches, which ſome would have to be the remnants of a Bridge, others of an Aquæduct over the River from one Mountain to another.

Narni.

Jan. 26. We travel'd thence thro' a very delightful and fertile Valley environ'd with Mountains, and well cultivated, to *Terni*, anciently *Interamna*, from its ſituation, a neat little City, in the Piazza of which ſtands a Church which ſeems to have been an ancient Temple. About 4 miles further is the famous Waterfall from the Lake *di Pie di Luco*. Beyond *Terni*, at the further end of this Valley, and on the circumjacent Hills, we ſaw whole Foreſts of Olive-trees, and the Country People buſie in gathering them.

From *Terni* we paſs'd over the Mountains to *Trivura*, and thence deſcended to *Spoleto*, the Capital of *Umbria*, thence call'd *Ducato Spoletana*: The Walls of this City are of conſiderable extent, and the Houſes well built: Hereabouts are to be ſeen the Ruins of many ancient Buildings.

Spoleto.

From hence we paſs'd thro' a moſt ſpacious and pleaſant Valley encles'd with Mountains in the form of an Amphitheatre, the Valley being planted with Trees and Vines after the manner of *Lombardy*, and the circumjacent Hills full of little Towns and Houſes. About 4 miles ſhort of *Foligno*, we paſs'd under *Trevi*, a little Town, ſeated on a round Hill.

Trevi.

Foligno (*Fulginium*) is a very pleaſant and handſome Town, famous chiefly for Confectioners and good Sweetmeats. Beyond it, at the extremity of the Valley of *Spoleto*, we ſaw ſuch another plantation of Olive-trees as before.

Foligno.

Jan. 27. We aſcended from *Foligno* to a Mountain, by a way cut out of the Rock, having a terrible Precipice on our left, and below a Valley ſurrounded with high and ſteep Hills, into which falls a ſmall River call'd *Date*, which

which drives some Paper-Mills. After we had thus travel'd four or five Miles, we reach'd the top of the *Appennine*, the Mountains round about us being cover'd with Snow: On the top of the Mountain we came into a small Plain, having a little Lake or Pool near a Village call'd *Col fiorito*, a very delightful place in the Summer. No sooner had we pass'd this Plain, but we began to descend, and passing thro' the Village of *Serravalle*, situate at the entrance of a narrow Valley 14 miles from *Foligno*, we continued our Journey thro' the Mountains, and lodg'd at *Valcimarra*.

Col fiorito.

Valcimarra.

Jan. 28. We travel'd thro' *Tolentino*, 9 miles from *Valcimarra*, a pretty little place, famous chiefly for being the Birth-place of that great Critick in the Greek, *Franciscus Philelphus*, who was the first Inventer of the word *stapes*, for Stirrops, which had before no word in Latin.

Tolentino.

From hence we rode on ten miles to *Macerata*, a large, fair and populous City, the capital of the *Marca Anconitana*, and usual Residence of the Cardinal Legate. From hence we travel'd thro' *Recanati* (a pretty Town, situate on the ridge of a Hill three miles from *Loretto*) to *Loretto*. At *Recanati* we saw a Statue in Brass of the Virgin *Mary* in *basso relievo*, with a Table having an Inscription upon it giving Thanks to her, that she was pleas'd to settle her House in the Territory of this City.

Macerata.

Loretto it self is no more than a small City, seated upon a Hill, consisting only of one Street within the Walls, and such another without, which makes the Suburb: The Church and College of the Canons stand at one end of the Street; and before the Church is a small Piazza, having a Cloyster on one side, where the Canons have their Lodgings. In the midst of the Piazza you see a very fair Fountain, and just before the Church Door a Brass Statue of *Sixtus* V. in a sitting posture, with an Inscription intimating, that it was he who gave a Bishop and the Title of a City to *Loretto*. All the Doors of this Church are of Brass cast, with several Histories engraven upon them. The Church is built in form of a Cross, with a *Cupola* in the middle, directly under which you see standing the *Santa Casa* or *holy House*, enclos'd in a Case of white *Parian* Marble, curiously engraven with Figures in *basso relievo*, representing several Histories, done by the best Sculptors then living, the full description of which may be seen in *Tursellinus*'s History. The Walls of the House it self (the Roof being remov'd) are made of a peculiar kind of Stone (as they would perswade the World) resembling Bricks both in their colour and figure, but to be found only about *Nazareth*, and no where else; which if they could prove to be true, would be the best Argument to verifie their Assertion concerning the transportation of this House from thence; but, in my Opinion, they are nothing else but real Bricks. But to let the Reader know what Arguments they make use of to perswade the World of the Verity of it, I will here insert the whole Relation of it, made by themselves, which being translated into thirteen Languages, and hung up in the Church, written on as many Tables, runs thus in English;

Loretto.

Ave Domina Angelorum.

The miraculous Origin and Translation of the Church of our Lady of Loretto.

The Church of *Loretto* was a Chamber of the Blessed Virgin nigh *Jerusalem*, in which she was born and bred, and saluted by the Angel, and therein conceiv'd and brought up her Son *Jesus* to the age of twelve Years. This Chamber, after the Ascension of our Saviour, was by the Apostles consecrated into a Church, in honour of the B. Lady: and S. *Luke* made a Picture to her, likewise extant therein to be seen at this very day. It was frequented with great Devotion by the People of the Country where it stood, whilst they were Catholicks; but when, leaving the Faith of Christ, they follow'd the Sect of *Mahomet*, the Angels took it and carried it into *Sclavonia*, and placed it by a Town call'd *Flumen*, where not being had in due reverence, they again transported it over the Sea, to a Wood in the Territory of *Recanati*, belonging to a Noble Woman call'd *Loretta*, from whence it took the name of our Lady of *Loretto*; and thence again they carried it, by reason of the many Robberies committed, to a Mountain of two Brothers in the said Territory: and from thence finally, in respect of their disagreement about the Gifts and Offerings, to the common Highway not far distant, where it now remains without Foundation, famous for many Signs, Graces and Miracles; whereat the Inhabitants of *Recanati*, who often came to see it, much wondering, environ'd it with a strong and thick Wall; yet could no man tell whence it came originally, till in the Year 1296. the B.V. appear'd in his sleep to a holy devout man, to whom she reveal'd it, and he divulg'd it to others of Authority in this Province, who determining forthwith to try the truth of the Vision, resolv'd to chuse sixteen Men of Credit, who to that effect should go all together to the City of *Nazareth*, as they did, carrying with them the Measures of this Church, and comparing therewith the Foundation's Remnant, they found them wholly agreeable; and in a Wall there by engraven, That it stood there, and had left the place. Which done, they presently returning back, publish'd the Premisses to be true; and from that time forward it hath been certainly known, that this Church was the Chamber of the Virgin *Mary*: to which Christians began then, and have ever since had a great Devotion, for that in it daily she hath done and doth many and many Miracles. One *Frere Paul de Sylva*, an Eremite of great Sanctity, who liv'd in a Cottage nigh unto this Church, whither daily he went to Mattins, said, That for ten Years space, on the 8th of *September*, two hours before day, he saw a Light descend from Heaven upon it, which he said was the B. V. who there shew'd her self on the Feast of her Nativity. In confirmation of all which, two virtuous Men of the City of *Recanati* divers times declar'd unto the Prefect of *Terreman* and Governor of the 'forementioned Church, as followeth: The one, call'd *Paul Renaiduci*, avouch'd, That his Grandfather saw when the Angels brought it over the Sea, placed it in the 'forementioned Wood, and had often visited it there: the other, call'd *Francis Prior*, in like sort affirm'd, That his Grandfather's Grandfather being 120 Years old, had also much frequented it in the same place; and for further proof that it had been there, he reported, That his Grandfather's Grandfather had a House nigh unto it, wherein he dwelt; and that in his time it was carried by the Angels from thence to the Mountain of the two Brothers, where they placed it as aforesaid.

By order of the right Reverend Monsignor *Vincent Cassal* of *Bologna*, Governour of this holy place, under protection of the most Reverend Cardinal *Moroni*.

I *Robert Codrington*, Priest of the Society of *Jesus* in the Year 1634. have faithfully translated the Premisses out of the Latin Original hanging in the said Church.

To the honour of the ever-glorious Virgin.

The Treasury of this Church is of an inestimable value for Jewels, Precious Stones, Gold and Silver Vessels, *tabulæ votivæ*, Altar-cloths, Copes, Vests, &c. for which, and the Vessels and Plate in the House it self, I refer my self to Mr. *Lessi*'s Voyage: The Earthen Pots in the Apothecaries Shop, painted by *Raphael Urbino*, and the great Wine-Cellars, are worth a curious Traveller's Observation.

From *Loretto* we travel'd, *Jan.* 30th, to *Ancona*, a populous City much frequented by Merchants, by reason of the conveniency of its Harbour; which formerly was the best in all the Gulph, but is much decay'd of late. Here we took particular notice of the Ruins of the Stones which secur'd the ancient Port, where you see that renown'd triumphal Arch of white *Parian* Marble, erected to *Trajan* by order of the Senate: The Stones are of a vast bigness, and inscribed thus:

Ancona.

Imp. Cæsari. Divi. Nervæ. F. Nervæ. Trajano. Optimo. Aug. Germanic. Daci. Co. Pont. Max. Tr. Pot. XIX. Imp. IX. Cos. VI. PP. providentissimo. Principi. Senatus. P. Q. R. Quòd. accessum. Italiæ. hoc. etiam. addito. ex. pecunia. sua. portu. cutiorem. navigantibus reddiderit.

On the right side is inscribed, *Plotinæ Aug. Conjug. Aug.* and on the left side, *Divæ. Marcianæ. Sorori. Aug.*

The *Statua equestris* of *Trajan*, which formerly stood on the top of this Arch, is remov'd thence, and set up over the Gate of the Exchange. Besides which, their Playhouse, the Cathedral dedicated to St. *Cyriacus*; and the Citadel, are things worth observation. Here we were also entertain'd with a Dish of Shellfish, of a very pleasant taste, call'd *Pholades* in Latin, because they live in holes within a soft kind of Stone, or rather hard Clay, which being found in great plenty at Sea, if expos'd to the Air, becomes in time a perfect Stone for hardness. The *Italians* call these Stones *Balle di Sasso*, and the Fish *Ballani* or *Dactyli de mare*.

Jan. 31. We continued our Journey along the Sea-coast for 20 miles, to *Sinigaglia*, (anciently *Sena Gallicæ*) a small

Sinigaglia.

a small Harbour for Barges, but well fortified. From hence we still pass'd along the Sea-shore for 15 miles further to *Fano*, (anciently *Fanum Fortunæ*) a large and well fortified City: Here is a triumphal Arch erected in honour of *Augustus*, which being somewhat broken and defaced, they have in the Wall by set a Model of it, as it was entire, with the following Inscription: *Effigies arcûs ab Augusto erecti, posteaque ex parte diruti bello Pii II. contra Fanenses*; Anno MCCCCLXIII.

Fano.

DIVO AUGUSTO PIO CONSTANTINO PATRI DOMINORUM.
IMP. CÆS. DIVI F. AUGUSTUS PONTIFEX MAXIMUS COS. XIII TRIBUNITIA POTEST XXXI IMP. XXVI PATER PATRIÆ MURUM DEDIT.
CURANTE L. TURCIO SECUNDO APRONIANI PRÆF. URB. FIL. ASTERIO V. C. CORR. FLAM. ET PICENI.

Here was the ancient Temple of *Fortune*, now the Church of the *Augustine* Fryers, the Brass Statue of *Fortune*, which was there ador'd, being now standing in the Palace. The City is govern'd by a Senate, consisting of 70 Gentlemen, chang'd every third or fourth Year, but the Governour of the Pope cunningly directs all matters of moment. This City is by some accounted the best situated of any in *Italy*.

Febr. 1. We continued our Journey seven miles along the Shore to *Pesaro*, a very fine City, with a stately Piazza surrounded with fair Buildings, and many Stones with ancient Inscriptions. The Harbour is almost choak'd up, but the Castle and Fortifications in tolerable good repair. We saw it only *in transitu*. From hence crossing the Country, we pass'd thro' the Village of *Catolica*, ten miles from *Pesaro*, and from thence went along the Sea-shore for the most part, till within two or three miles of *Rimini*, (which is fifteen miles from *Catolica*) when leaving the Shore, we took the *Via Flaminia*. The City of *Rimini* is but low built, but neat, with very regular strait Streets. Within the Walls of it, we pass'd under a high Stone Arch erected to *Tiberius*, or (according to *Schottus*) to *Augustus Cæsar*; the Inscription was much defac'd. In the Piazza they shew'd us the Stone on which *Cæsar* stood when he made his Speech to the Souldiers when he was preparing to march to *Rome*; these modern Inscriptions are engraven upon it:

Pesaro.

Rimini.

C. Cæsar Dict. Rubicone superato civili bell. commilit. suos hîc in foro Ar. adlocut.
Suggestum hunc vetustate collapsum Coss. Ariminensium Novembri & Decembr. MDV. Restit.

In another Piazza stands a Brass Statue of Pope *Paul* V. It being then Carnival time, we saw the Gentlemen here diverting themselves with tilting, but they did not run at one another, but at a Puppet of Straw, which they call *Bamboccio*.

St. Marino. *Febr.* 2. We made a small excursion to St. *Marino*, a little City and Commonwealth seated on the top of a very high Hill, about ten miles from *Rimini*, the Inhabitants boasting, That they have maintain'd their Liberty uncorrupted for above 1000 Years. All its Territories are included in one Mountain about three miles in length, and nine or ten in circumference, containing four Villages, viz. *Serravalle*, *Fietano*, *Monte Giardino*, and *Fiorentino*; about eight Corn-mills upon the little River *Canova*, and two Powder-mills. The Arms of this petty Commonwealth are, three Towers upon a Mountain, with this Motto underneath, *Libertas perpetua*. The Suburb of St. *Marin* is at the foot of the same Hill whereupon the City is built; here they keep a weekly Market every *Wednesday*, especially for Swine, of which sometimes 5000 are sold in a day, they paying no more than 6 *d.* Toll for every Drove, whether large or small. Besides, these weekly Markets, they have four great Fairs every Year, the chiefest of which is on St. *Bartholomew's* Day, where prodigious quantities of Cattle is sold, to the no small disgust of some of the neighbouring Princes, whose Customs are considerably impair'd thereby. At this Fair they keep a general muster of all their Forces. From this Suburb up to the City are two Ascents, the one pretty easie, and winding about to the furthermost Gate, by which Coaches may upon an occasion get up; the other leading to the nearer Gate, being very steep. The City is wall'd on one side, the other lying at the brow of a Precipice, being defended by three Towers in a row; and the Hill, even on that side where the Wall stands, is so steep, that it is inaccessible, except by the Ascents; neither are there any Hills near it, except what are much lower than that whereon the City stands. The Streets of the City are narrow, and their Houses but meanly built; they have two Cloysters within the Walls, one belonging to the Discalcate *Franciscans*, the other to the Nuns of the Order of St. *Clara*, and in the Suburb a Convent of the *Capuchines*; besides that, the *Servitæ* have a very fair Monastery not above a mile from the City, which has its own Bishop, and has always a Protector at *Rome*, who at present is Cardinal *Barberini*, whom they sometimes present with some Cheeses and *Muscatella* Wine, which grows very well hereabouts, and is in great esteem with the *Italian* Nobility. They have no Cows, but Goats and Sheep in abundance. Their Government is administred by a Council of 45, which they call *Corpo di Prencipe*; of these 15 are Gentlemen, (of which they have about 20 Families) 15 Artisans and 15 Countrymen, who continue for their Lives, and when one dies, another is chosen in his stead, by two thirds of the Votes; in the place of a Gentleman, a Gentleman, and so with the rest. But enough of this petty State.

Febr. 3. we left *Rimini*, and taking our way to *Ravenna*, pass'd that renown'd Bridge over the River *Rimino*, begun by *Augustus*, but brought to perfection by *Tiberius*, the Stones of which, they say, are join'd together without any Cement: Certain it is, that the sides of it are of vast Stones as high as the Borders, and of a proportionable breadth, without any Mortar or other Cement betwixt them that I could see: It has a large Inscription, intimating when and by whom it was built. About 15 miles from *Rimini* we pass'd thro' *Cesenatico*, and 15 miles further thro' *Cervia*, seated among the Seas, a poor City, having nothing to boast on but the Title of an Archbishop's See. All the way from *Cervia*, till within two or three miles of *Ravenna*, we travel'd near a vast Pinewood on the right hand of us, it is call'd *Pigneda*, and, if we may credit *Schottus*, bears Fruit enough to serve all *Italy*.

The Bridge over Rimino.

Cervia.

Ravenna.

The City of *Ravenna* lies enclos'd betwixt two Rivers, *viz.* the *Bedesis* and *Montone*, one running on one, and the second on the other side. It is of a great circumference, but meanly built: it has five Gates, and an old Castle of Brick, and three fair Convents, *viz.* the *Classe*, belonging to the *Monachi Classenses*; the second call'd the *Porto* from its being dedicated to St. *Maria Portuensis*, belonging to the *Canonici regulares Lateranenses*; and the third to the *Benedictine* Monks, dedicated to St. *Vitale*, the Church of the last being a double Octagon, the one concentrical to and enclos'd within the other; they say it was built by *Justinian*. These Monks shew'd us also two Marble Pillars, adding, That the *Venetians* had offer'd their weight in Silver for them: they were produced at first by an heap of small Flints or Pebbles united into one body by a Cement petrefied as hard as the Flints themselves, and capable of poliure, which Cement, it is probable, might be the Sediment of the same Stones mixt with a Fluid, and separated from thence. I have seen the like in the Library at *Zurick*, and at *Verona*, in our Ladies Chapel, in the Garden of Signior *Horatio Giusti*. To the same Convent also belongs the little round Church (call'd the *Rotunda*) of the Virgin *Mary*, a quarter of a mile without the City, the Roof whereof being fourteen ordinary paces in diameter, yet is made of one Stone, having in the midst a round hole to let in the light: Upon the top of this Church stood in former Ages the Monument of *Theodoricus* a *Gothick* King, of Porphyry, who is suppos'd to have built it; this Monument is as yet to be seen in the Wall of the Monastery of the *Succolanti* or Discalceate *Franciscans*, with this Inscription:

Vos hoc Porphyriacum el. Theodorici Gettor, imp, cineres in Rotundæ apice recondens, huc Petro Donato Cæsio Narnien. præsule favente transtulit ad perennem memoriam Sapientes Reip. Ravi. PP. C. MDLXIII.

This Convent is one of the fairest I ever met with belonging to this Order; and their Church dedicated to St. *Apollinaris* is remarkable, both for the double row of Marble Pillars brought from *Constantinople* by *Theodoricus*, and the ancient *Mosaick* Work in the Walls. Of the same *Mosaick* Work we saw the Figures of the Archbishops of *Ravenna* in the Cathedral, eleven of them having a Dove standing upon their Heads, being chosen, as they say, by a Dove alighting upon their Heads, if we will credit *Schottus*. Not far from the Convent of the *Franciscans* you see the Arch erected in memory of the famous Poet *Dante*, with his Effigies under it, and two Inscriptions in Latin Verse underneath, said to have been made by himself, but so slenderly done, that had he not compos'd better in *Italian*, he could scarce have challeng'd a place among the famous Poets. This City has scarce anything

to boast of now but its Antiquity, being very ill Peopled, ill serv'd with Fish, notwithstanding its vicinity to the Sea, ill provided with Inns, and worse with good Water, which verifies the old Saying of the Poet, *Sit cisterna mihi quam vinea malo Ravennæ*, the Water being all brackish.

In this Journey from *Rome* to *Venice* we were very sensible of difference of the temperature of the Air on both sides of the *Appennine* Mountains, being very temperate and warm on the other side, whereas on this side we found it as cold and raw as it is in Winter with us, which that it proceeded not from any sudden change of Weather, we were sufficiently assur'd of, not only by the Enquiry we made, but also from that we found Snow lying here in many places in the low Grounds, which was melted even on the Hills of the other side before our coming away: The true reason of it, I think, is to be attributed to the heighth of this ridge of Mountains, which reaching beyond the lower Region of the Air, where the Sun-beams are reflected, hinders the mixture of the warm Southerly and Western Air with the cold Northerly and Eastern Air, and also stops the free passage of the Southerly and Western Winds on one hand, which would carry the warm Vapours into the other part, as on the other hand they prevent the cold Northern and Eastern Winds from temperating the heat beyond these Mountains; in the same manner as some Travellers relate of a certain ridge of Mountains in the *East-Indies*, on the one side whereof it is Summer when it is Winter on the other side.

Febr. 5. we travel'd from *Ravenna* along the Bank of the River *Montone*, (which runs thro' a fertile and level Country like *Lombardy* with a swift stream) till within four or five miles of *Faenza*, which is twenty long miles from *Ravenna*.

Faenza. *Faenza* is a little (but neat) City, surrounded with a strong Brick Wall, but somewhat out of repair now: it is famous for the best Earthen Ware made in *Italy*. On St. *Thomas*'s Day yearly all the Gentlemen meet, to chuse Magistrates for the ensuing Year, *viz.* 9 Senators and a President (whom they stile Prior) for every Month, so that they have 12 several Senates throughout the Year.

From hence we travel'd ten miles to *Imola*, half a mile short of which we ferried over the River *Senio*. *Imola* (*Forum Cornelii*) is not so big as *Faenza*, yet has a fair Piazza with a Cloyster on one side.

Bologna. From hence we continued our Journey upon the *Via Æmilia* to *Bologna*, *Febr.* 6. Hereabouts they have a way of boiling their Wines, to keep them the better: the first, which they call *Vin Cotto*, appear'd to us much stronger than the other which they call *Vin Crudo*.

Ferrara. *Febr.* 7. taking the *Florentine* Procaccio's Boat to *Venice*, we pass'd thro' 9 *Sostegni* or Locks to *Mal Albergo*, where we shifted our Boat, going down from a higher to a lower Channel, which brought us to *Ferrara*, 45 miles distant from *Bologna*. From *Ferrara* we were tow'd by a Horse thro' an artificial Channel as far as *Ponte*, where entring the River *Po*, we chang'd our Boat again, and were row'd down the stream 27 miles to *Corbola*, where entring the *Venetian* Territories, we were oblig'd once more to change our Boat, in order to take a *Venetian* Boat. We had scarce gone two or three miles further down the *Po*, when striking into a Channel to the left, we pass'd a Sluce near *Loreo*, and proceeding 15 miles further, pass'd near to *Chioza* a large place built among the *Lagune*, and *Palestrina*, standing upon the *Lido*, entring into the *Lagune* at the Haven of *Malamocco*, and arriv'd at *Venice*, *Febr.* 9. of which we have given you an account already.

Chioza.

March 13. we set out from *Venice*, on our Journey to *Geneva*, taking our way thro' *Rhætia* and *Switzerland*. To *Mestre* we went 7 miles by Boat, from thence 12 miles further by Coach to *Treviso*, where taking Horse, we spent two days and a half in travelling to *Trent*, being 80 miles. The first day, after 12 miles riding, we pass'd thro' *C. Franco*, and thence thro' a fair champian Country to *Bassano*, a handsom City upon the River *Brenta*, where lives abundance of Silk-weavers.

Treviso. *C. Franco.* *Bassano.*

No sooner were we past *Bassano*, but we came among the Mountains extending for 14 miles along the River side: We lodg'd that Night at *Pont Sigismund*. The second day we still kept along the Bank of the River, and about 2 miles from *Pont Sigismund* pass'd thro' a Gate, where we paid the first Duty to the D. of *Inspruck*: At this Pass we saw, hewn out of the Rock, a small Castle call'd *Caudo*, unto which there is no Avenues, both the Soldiers that keep Garison there, and their Provisions, being drawn up by Ropes and Pullies; it has a Fountain of fresh Water in it, and belongs to the Archduke of *Inspruck*, tho' the *Venetian* Territories extend 4 or 5 miles beyond it.

Caudo.

After having travel'd 16 miles further, we came to a small Town call'd *Borgo*; and 13 miles more, to a rich and populous Borough call'd *Perzine*, not above 5 miles on this side *Trent*. Upon the River *Brenta* we saw divers Saw-mills, and abundance of Timber floating down the streams; and as soon as we enter'd the Mountains we found Stoves instead of Chimneys. The Plants we took notice of by the way were, *Erica Pannonica* J. Clus. in flower, on the side of the Rocks; *Flumina bulbosa*; *Leucoium bulbosum vulgare*, C. B. & *Leuc. bulbosum minus triphyllon* J. B.

Trent. *March* 16. we got to *Trent* in very good time, a little (but handsom) City, seated upon the River *Athesis* or *Adda*, at the foot of the Mountains which almost surround it, were it not for the Valley where the River runs. It belongs to the Archduke of *Inspruck*, but the Inhabitants speak *Italian*. Near the North Door of the Cathedral is the Monument of *Matthiolus*, having several Inscriptions, and among the rest the following Distich.

Saxa quidem absumit tempus, sed tempore nunquam
Interitura tua est gloria Matthiole.

On the Front of the Quire is to be seen the following Inscription, giving a short account of the Council held in this City:

Sacrosanctum postremum Oecumenicum generale Concilium fuit in hac celeberrima civitate celebratum; & quidem sub Papa *Paulo* III, Anno MDXLV, 31 Decembris pro felice inchoatione fuit facta Processio generalis per totam Urbem, ab Ecclesia Sanctissimæ Trinitatis ad hanc Ecclesiam Cathedralem; quâ finitâ primus Cardinalis Præsidens, qui postea fuit Papa *Julius* III, [prout etiam alter Card. Præsidens fuit Papa *Marcellus* II. nominatus] in hoc loco eminentiore, tunc magis amplo, ad celebrandum Concilium & Sessiones faciendas deputario, ad altare S. & Gloriosissimi martyris *Vigilii* hujus Ecclesiæ patroni celebravit missam de Spiritu S. Ac reliquis cæremoniis peractis fuerunt sub D. *Paulo* III. celebratæ octo publicæ Sessiones cum decretis, & aliæ tres ob vastam pestem in hac Urbe grassantem *Bononiæ*, ubi nihil fuit decretum, Anno MDXLVII. Postea cessante peste & bellis fuit reductum hoc Concilium, & in hoc eodem loco fuerunt sub Papa *Julio* III. celebratæ aliæ publicæ sex Sessiones cum Decretis Annis 1551, 1552, quibus interfuerunt tres Serenissimi Principes Ecclesiastici, S. R. I. Electores Archiepiscopi, *Moguntinus*, *Trevirensis*, *Colonienssis*, 1 Die Septemb. 1551. hanc Urbem ingressi; prout etiam Serenissimus Elector Brandenburgensis duos oratores hic ablegavit. Demum sub Papa *Pio* IV. Anno 1561 & 1563 fuerunt celebratæ ultimæ novem publicæ Sessiones cum Decretis in Ecclesia S. *Mariæ* majoris hujus urbis, istius Ecclesiæ Reverendissimo Capitulo incorporata, sicuti etiam Ecclesia S. Petri. Et nihilominus ad pedes Sanctissimi Crucifixi tum in hoc loco existentis & nunc alio translati pro Decretorum corroboratione semper fuerunt publicata omnia, dicti Concilii Decreta. Interfuerant sub dictis summis Pontificibus celebrationi Cardinales Legati 13, inter quos *Christophorus Madrucius*; non Legati 4, inter quos *Ludovicus Madrucius*: Oratores Principum totius Europæ 29: Patriarchæ 3: Archiepiscopi 33: inter quos Archiepiscopus Rossanienssis, qui postea fuit *Urbanus* 7 nominatus: Episcopi 233: Abbates 18: Generales ordinum 12: Theologiæ Doctores 148: Procuratores 18: Officiales Concilii 3: Cantores 9: Notarii 4: Cursores Papæ 2.

Sacrosancto Spiritui S. omnium Conciliorum directori sacratissima Die Pentecostes, Anno 1639. dicatum.

Here are no other remarkable Churches or publick Buildings

The Inclinations, Manners and Customs of the *Italians*.

The *Italians* are generally very industrious and patient in whatever they undertake, their Temper being a *medium* betwixt the fastuous Gravity of a *Spaniard*, and the Levity of a *Frenchman*. They are very faithful to their Friends, and scarce ever forgetful of an Obligation; not easily provok'd, and careful to avoid all Occasions of Quarrel; very observing in the Punctilio's of Civility, even to an excess; they not easily contract familiarity with Strangers, but when once well acquainted with them, their Conversation is very obliging and profitable, most of them, not excepting even the meaner sort, being addicted to Politick Studies, which makes them very desirous of Liberty.

Of Pictures, Statues and Musick they are fond to such a degree, that they will purchase them at any rate; and are so much addicted to their own Language, that they even neglect the *Latin*; and for the *Greek*, it seems

to be quite laid aside among them. They are very temperate in their Diet, eating more Herbs than Flesh; and seldom drink Wine without Water, and that seldom to any excess. During the space of 18 Months that I staid in *Italy*, I saw only one *Italian* drunk. The *Italians* in general, but especially the meaner sort, are very frugal and sparing, even those of the first rank, spending the greatest part of their Revenues in building of Palaces, and beautifying them with Pictures, Statues, Gardens and Walks; in great Retinues and splendid Equipages, more than in Housekeeping, commonly giving Board-wages to their Servants; and the inferiour Gentry affect nothing so much, than to appear with all possible splendor abroad, tho' they deny themselves many things at home. As the *Italian* Nobility and Gentry live for the most part in great Cities, this makes them so splendid, rich and well built; tho' most of their Palaces have more of stateliness than conveniency in them. Their Houses are for the most part of Stone, and high Roof'd, which makes them warm in Winter, and cool in the Summer, by reason of the largeness of their Windows, which, in those places where they are of Paper, are not very suitable to the magnificence of their Houses.

Among the Nobility of *Italy* (especially the *Venetians*) a certain Custom has been introduc'd, that if there be a numerous Issue of Sons belonging to a Family, one only marries, the eldest, if he pleases; if not, as they can agree the point among themselves; the rest make shift with Concubines.

There are very few Cities or Towns of note in *Italy*, but what have Societies of *Virtuosi*, whose business is, at their Assemblies, to exercise themselves in Rhetorick, Morality, or other curious Questions: Most of these assume certain conceited Names, and take a suitable Coat of Arms; as for instance, the Society of *Bergamo* stile themselves *Eccitati*, their *impreſe* being the Picture of the Morning: Of those Academies there are three in *Rome*, as many at *Padua*, and as many at *Bologna*; two in *Venice*, two at *Naples*, and two at *Luca*; and thus in the other Cities.

The *Italians* commonly wear black or dark-colour'd Clothes, in the Fashion of which they imitate the *French*, yet not very hastily, tho' the Subjects of *Spain* also frequently appear in a *Spanish* Dress.

Their Vices. As for their Vices, they are generally taxed for three; (1.) *Revenge*, unto which they are addicted to such a degree, that nothing but the Death of those who have injur'd them will satisfie them; which they will procure by poysoning, assassinating, or any other way: This seems so firmly rooted among them, that the Mothers will keep the Weapons wherewith their Husbands were murther'd, and shew them to their Children, to excite them to Revenge.

(2.) *Lust*, unto which they are inclin'd with such Violence, that to avoid worse consequences, publick Harlots are allow'd in all great Cities. I will not charge them with Masculine Venery, as having not sufficient ground for it.

(3.) *Jealousie* they are so possess'd with, that they lock up their Wives upon the least frivolous Pretences: Hence it is that to salute the Wife of an *Italian*, or to call the Husband Cuckold, is a Crime not to be expiated, but with Death. The poor Ladies at this rate had a most uncomfortable Life, not being permitted to stir abroad, except to Church, and then not without certain she-Guardians; notwithstanding all which, they often find means to deceive both the Guardian and the Husband, and satisfie themselves in spight of all their Jealousie.

To those three Vices I might add *Swearing*, were it not so common among them, not excepting the Priests and Monks, that I am of opinion they account it no Sin, or at least no Vice.

The *Italians* have a general Custom to sleep every day in the Afternoon, from two till four, during the Summer season.

Charity. But among those Vices, I ought not to pass by in silence one peculiar Virtue, which is their *Charity*: There are many Cities in *Italy* which have Hospitals, for the entertainment of poor Travellers for three days *gratis*, unto whom a piece of Money is given besides at their departure. They have also Hospitals for the reception of all such Children as shall be brought thither without exception, an Officer being appointed on purpose, who upon the ringing of the Bell, takes the Child immediately out of the Grate into which it was put, (being so small as to admit only a Child that is very young) and having ask'd the Party that brought it, whether it has been baptiz'd, puts it out to nurse.

At *Rome*, *Venice*, and in divers other Cities of *Italy*, they have also certain Confraternities of charitable Persons, who by a voluntary Contribution raise Money among themselves yearly, which is bestow'd upon poor Maids, to help them to Husbands, and to enable them to furnish their Houses, and to begin the World withal.

Some Observations about their Diet. They eat in *Lombardy* a kind of subterraneous Mushrome call'd *Tartufale*, i. e. *Tubera Terræ*, by the English *Trubs*, and the French *Truffes*: it is accounted an incentive of Lust. They also eat Snails serv'd up in their Shells with Pepper and Oyl; Frogs fry'd, and serv'd up with Oyl; their Flesh looks white, after they are skin'd and ready for frying: Land Tortoises, which they prefer before Sea Tortoises. They use also in their Diet divers sorts of Shell-fish, which we either have not, or at least eat not; as Purples, Periwinkles of all sorts, *Patellæ* or Limpets, Sea-Urchins and Sea-Tortoises.

Upon all their Dishes, even not excepting their Flesh, they grate Cheese, which they think gives it a relish.

The Kernels of roasted Chesnuts they serve up with Juice of Lemon and Sugar. At *Bononia* they make Cakes of the flower of grinded Chesnuts, which, as well as common roasted Chesnuts, is the common Diet of the poor Peasants.

They feed also upon all sorts of Small-birds, such as *Wrens*, *Stares*, *Titmice*, *Butcher-birds*; and divers sorts of great ones, which are never eaten in *England*, such as *Magpies*, *Jays*, *Woodpeckers*, *Jack-daws*, nay, even *Kites* and *Hawks*.

For Salleting they use the young shoots of *Selleri* (sweet *Smallage*) with Oyl and Pepper; and so they eat *Fennel* and *Artichokes* raw: Besides, in most of their Sallets they mingle Rocket (*Racketta*, as they call it) and *curl'd Endive*, which being kept all the Winter, excels *Lettuce* it self.

The Fruits in request among the *Italians*, and not used in *England*, are, *Jujubes* green, *l'Azarole* being the Fruit of the *Mespilus Aronia*, of a pleasant sharp taste, both Fruit and Tree exactly like the common Hawthorn, but bigger; *Services* or *Sorbes*, of the bigness of small Pears, those that grow with us being the Fruit of the *Sorbus torminalis*; *Green Figs*, both white and blewish, most delicious Fruit when full ripe; the Husks or Cods of *Carobs*, call'd *Siliqua dulcis* in Latin; *Love-Apples*; *Mad-Apples*, both raw and pickled; *Water-Melons*; several sorts of Gourds, as *Cucurbita lagenaria* and *Cucurbita fluxuosa sive anguina*; *Cucumis anguinus*, &c.

In their Disserts they serve up *Pin-kernels*, *green Almonds*, and a kind of Sweetmeat made of Mustard and Sugar.

They don't care to drink Wine without Snow or Ice, even in the middle of Winter.

In the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* they make a kind of Cheese call'd *Caseo di cavallo*, i.e. Horse-cheese, for what reason I can't tell; they told us they were made of Bufflers Milk, which I much question, considering they are not well stor'd with those Beasts; however, these Cheeses are of a very good taste, tho' neither fat nor strong.

The *Italians* don't compute their Hours from 12 to 12, as we do, but from 1 to 24, beginning at Sun-set, which being a movable term, is much more troublesom than ours, which are fix'd.

Tho' the *Italians* have a Proverb, *That* Italy *is the Garden of the World*, and continually boast of their *Italia gleba*, yet if you except *Lombardy*, *Campania felix*, and some few other places, the rest is mountainous and barren enough.

Bufflers are very common in *Italy*, which they make use of in all respects as we do our Oxen; but being somewhat unruly, they tame them by putting in Rings thro their Noses, wherewith they guide them, as our Bear-wards do the Bears.

For Insects, the most remarkable sorts, which we have not in *England*, are, 1. The *Cicada* before-mention'd. 2. The flying *Glow-worms*, being nothing else but the Males of the common creeping or unwinged Glow-worm. 3. *Scorpions*, which sting not in *Italy*, and if they do, it is not venomous. 4. *Tarantula's*, being a large sort of Spiders, the biting whereof is suppos'd to put People into Phrenetick Fits, enforcing them to dance to the Musick, by which means they are cured, this Exercise causing an evacuation of the venomous Humour by Sweat. 5. *Cimici*, as the *Italians* call them, and *Punaise* by the *French*; we *English* call them *Chinches* or *Wall-lice*, raising heats by their biting in the Skin, and harbouring in the Wood of the Bedsteads, Straw and Bolsters; when bruised, they emit a nauseous smell: We have of these Insects in some places of *England*, but not many.

March 28. we left *Trent* to continue our Journey to *Coira* or *Clur*, in the Country of the *Grisons*, call'd in Latin *Curia*.

Curia Rhætorum. We passed thro' the Valley where the River *Adda* runs, and every 5 miles thro' a large Village, and at Night lodged in a little Town called *Brunsole.*

Bolzan. Maran. The 19th we passed thro' *Bolzan*, a Town as big as *Trent*, and ten miles further thro' *Maran*, another large Town; that Night we lodged at the Village of *Revelgnd.*

Cleurn. The 20th we continued our Journey by the way of *Latourn*, *Slach*, *Schlanders*, and *Malez*, all places of note, and coming to a pretty large Walled Town called *Cleurn*, there struck off to the left hand among the Mountains, to the Village of *Tavers*, where we lodged.

The 21st we rode on to *Monastero*, the first place in the Country of the *Grisons*, and stopt at *Cherf*, a Village at the foot of the Mountains. In this Country the People use a peculiar Language they call *Romansch*, i. e. *Lingua Romana*, which comes nearer to the *Spanish* than *Italian*, tho' distinct from both; besides which, they generally speak both *Italian* and *High Dutch*. We found the Country cover'd with Snow, they being oblig'd to Winter their Cattle here for six Months in the Year, tho' they assur'd us, that hereabouts the Snow did not lie all the Summer, even not on the tops of the highest Mountains. They use Stoves, to defend themselves against the cold; and they told us, that they catch'd hereabouts great store of *Chamois* or *Gemis* (*Rupicapræ*) among the high Hills; and we saw abundance of the Horns of those Creatures stuck up in their Houses. They also meet here now and then with Bears and Wolves, but not many. The Men wear Ruffs and bushy Beards, and the generality of the People appear'd to us very honest and civil. Their Houses are strongly built of Stone, with little Windows. Fortifications they have none, trusting either to their own Courage, or to the Poverty of their Country, which is not inviting enough to draw the Arms of the neighbouring Princes that way.

March 22. we passed the Mountain of *Bufalora* in seven or eight hours: In the top of the Mountain, half way betwixt *Cherf* and *Zernez*, is an Inn called *Furno.* From *Zernez* we rode thro' the Valley of the higher *Engadine*, thro' the Village of *Zuez*, and several other Villages, taking up our Quarters at *Ponte.*

Of the Grisons. The *Grisons* are divided into three Leagues, each of these being subdivided in *Communes*, which have each several Villages, some more, some less: The *Lega Grisa* has 19 *Communes*; the *Lega della casa Dio* 21; the *Lega Dieci Dritture* 10. Each *Commune* has its chief annual Magistrate, (whom in some places they call *Maestrale*, in some places *Landamman*) and a certain number of Assessors or Judges, call'd *Truæder*, by them. Each Village chuses its Judges by majority of Votes, every Inhabitant (even not excepting the Servants) above the age of sixteen having their Suffrages. These Magistrates are chang'd every two Years, but confirm'd every Year, and may be deposed by the People. The executive Power and chief management of publick Affairs is lodged in the *Maestrale* or *Landamman*, who assembles the *Truæder.* Every two Years they have two General Diets, one at *Michaelmas* Day, when they chuse Governours of places; the second at St. *John Baptist*'s Day, when they take an account of all their Officers. To these Diets each *Commune* sends its Commissioners, some one, some two, who are to act according to the Instructions given them. Each League has its Head or Chief; as for instance, the Burgomaster of *Coira* is always Head of the League *della casa di Dio.* From the Diet lies an Appeal to the Communities. The *Grisons* pay no manner of Taxes; the County of *Chiavenna* and the *Valtoline* in *Italy* are subject to them, whither they used to send two Bailiffs before *Plurs* was destroy'd by the falling in of an adjacent Mountain, now they send but one to *Chiavenna*; these are called *Commissario's.* The *Valtoline* is divided into six Districts or *Præfecturæ*, each of which has its peculiar Governour sent thither by the *Grisons*; their Names are, *Tirano*, *Tellio*, *Sondric*, *Morbegno* and *Trevona.* The People of the *Valtoline* and of the Country of *Chiavenna*, pay no other Taxes but only for the maintenance of their Governours.

See Simler, in Rep. Helvet.

March 24. we left *Ponte*, and travel'd over a very high Mountain, in very bad Weather, it snowing so exceedingly, that we were scarce able to open our Eyes; yet by the way we took notice, that the People living among those cold Mountains were of a more swarthy complexion than those below.

Coira or Chira. *March* 25. we came to *Coira*, the capital City of the *Grisons*, standing upon a River which falls into the *Rhine* about half a mile below it. It is encompass'd with Mountains, except on that side where the *Rhine* passes thro' a pleasant Valley of very good Meadows and Pasture-grounds. The Inhabitants of *Coira* are Protestants, except the Bishop and 24 Canons, who have no share in the Government of the Town, the form of which is much like to that of *Zurich* and *Basil*; the Citizens being divided into five Companies, each of which chuses fourteen Senators, which composes the Great Council of 70: The same are chosen commonly again every Year on St. *Martin*'s Day. The lesser Council consists of certain Members of the *Great Council*, *viz.* five out of each Company chosen every Year, and five Masters of the Companies for the last Year, making up the number of 30. This Council, with the Burgomaster regent, (whom they call *Statthought*) judge in criminal Causes, as Actions of Debt are determin'd by the five Masters of the Companies, and ten Members of the Council of 30. But from them an Appeal lies to the lesser Council. *Vid. Simler.*

In the Mountainous Pastures hereabouts we found *Crocus vernus flore albo, & flo. cæruleo, & flo. ex albo & cæruleo variegato; Hepatica nobilis ubique; Leucoium bulbosum Tab. & Ornithogalum flore luteo.* The *Grisons* have besides *Coira* two Towns more, *viz.* *Mayfield* and *Eylandts*: Some of their Communities are *Romanists*, some *Protestants*, but most of the last, the number of which is computed to 17000 fighting men.

Walenstadt. *March* 29. we went from *Coira* to *Walenstadt*, seated upon a small Lake called the *Wallenstatter-Sea*: This, as well as *Sargans*, thro' which we passed, are *Voghtia's* of the seven Cantons.

Glaris. The 30th we ferried over the Lake to *Wisen*, and from thence travel'd to *Glaris*, one of the thirteen *Swiss Cantons*: Here they shew'd us the Horns of the *Ibex*, (which they call *Steinbuck*) not unlike, but somewhat longer than Goats Horns; they told us, that they were found in *Wallisland* and the Archbishoprick of *Saltzburgh* in *Germany*; but of the before-mentioned *Rupicapræ* or *Gimpses* and *Mures Alpini majores*, called *Marmottoes*, they have great store, as well as of the *Merulæ torquatæ* and *Merulæ aquaticæ*; of the *Urogallus*, or *Cocks of the Wood*, and the *Lagopus* a white Bird like a Partridge, feathered down to the very Claws; but of these they have greater plenty among the *Grisons.* The Inhabitants of the two Cantons of *Glaris* and *Appenzel* are mixt, two thirds *Protestants* and one third *Romans*; for the rest, the difference of the Government of the several *Swiss Cantons* may be reduced under three Heads; the first, of those who have no Cities, where the supream Power is lodged in the People, *viz.* *Uri*, *Suits*, *Underwalden*, *Zug*, *Glaris* and *Appenzel*; the second of those which have Cities, that were subject formerly to Princes, where the form is Aristocratical, as *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Friburg* and *Solothurn*; the third of these, which have Cities which were always free, where there is a mixture of both, being divided into certain Companies, by whom the Magistrates are chosen yearly, of this Order are *Zurich*, *Basil* and *Schaffhauss.*

Rupicapræ. *The Ibex.*

Glaris. The Canton of *Glaris* is divided into 15 *Districts*, some of which elect five, others six Counsellors, some more, others less, which make up the Senate or Council of 60, two parts whereof are *Protestants*, and the rest *Romans.* The Soveraignty is lodged in the People, who meet every Year on the last *Sunday* in *April*, (all Males above sixteen Years of age having their Votes) to chuse by the majority of Suffrages, 1. the *Landamman.* 2. the *Stadthalter*, or his Lieutenant. 3. a Treasurer. 4. a Standard-bearer. 5. the head Captain, and in time of War a Lieutenant. 6. the head Enlign. 7. three Secretaries. 8. the Apparitor: each of which has his particular station and share allotted in the Government, with such Persons as are joyned with them in Commission, for the further elucidation of which, I will refer my self to Mr. *Simler*, in his *Rep. Helvetiarum.*

The Territory of *Glaris* is about 24 English miles long, the number of Freemen, of both Religions, about 2500. In the Cantons of *Basil*, *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Schaffhausse*, *Tiburg* and *Solœurn*, the Citizens are only Freemen, the Inhabitants of the open Country being Subjects under the Government of Bailiffs, who in some places govern two, in others three, in others six Years. But in those Cantons which have no Cities, each Countryman is a Freeman, as far as they belong to their respective Cantons, for they have also their Subjects govern'd by Bailiffs.

Einsidle. *April* 1. we travelled from *Glaris* thro' *Nafels*, and divers other Villages near the *Lake of Zurich*, and after an hours riding ascended a high Mountain, where we found the Ground cover'd with Snow, and here found the famous Monastery of the *Benedictine* Fryers, call'd *Einsidle*, where is the Image of our Lady, who has a peculiar Chappel consecrated to her, visited by many Pilgrims: This Abby is under the Jurisdiction of those of *Switz*, unto which place we came *April* the 2d, being no

Switz.

more

more than a Village, but comparable to a goodly Town; its Government is the same with *Glaris*, being divided into six Quarters, each of which chuses ten Senators, which composes the Senate, consisting of sixty Persons. Their Officers are also the same as at *Glaris*. This Canton, as every one of the rest, sends two *Messi* or Deputies to the General Diet at *Baden*, of which the *Landamman* is generally one.

Altorf. *April* 3. After we had travel'd three miles along the Lake to *Brunen*, we embark'd for *Altorf*, and having spent three hours more in our passage, had a mile further to *Altorf*, there being no travelling from *Switz* to *Altorf*, unless you will take a compass about 60 miles. It is larger than *Switz*, and has a pretty Church and a Monastery belonging to the *Capuchins*. Here they told us the Story of *William Tell* and the *Lantvogt*, (this Canton of *Uri* being the first that set it self at liberty) the Statue of the first we saw on the top of a Pillar, over one of their Fountains, with his Crossbow on his Shoulder, leading his Son by the Hand, and at some distance a Tower, on which were painted the several passages of this Story.

The Government is the same with *Switz*, the number of Senators and manner of election the same, except that they have a Master of the Artillery, and 6 Proctors or Councellors besides.

April 4. we return'd to the Lake of *Lucern*, and went by Water within an hours travelling of *Stantz*, the chief *Underwalden* Village of *Underwalden*, where we lodg'd. Here is a very fair Church, and two Convents, one for the *Capuchins*, and one of Nuns. In this place, and at *Altorf*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, &c. we saw in the Church yards Crosses of Wood and Iron upon the Graves, on some of which hung a little Copper Kettle with holy Water, and many Women coming, with bunches of Herbs in their Hands, which they dipt in the Kettle, and sprinkled the Water upon the Graves.

This Canton is divided in *Oberwald* and *Underwald*; the capital Village of the first being *Stanner*, as *Stantz* is of the latter. The lower is govern'd by 60 Senators, chosen by 11 Communities, some more, some less. Their Officers and Elections the same as in *Switz* and *Uri*, (every Male of 14 Years having a Vote in both) except that here they change their *Lendamman* every Year. *Oberwald* has its own *Landamman*, Officers, &c. so that they seem to be two distinct Cantons, were it not that they send but two Deputies to the General Diet at *Baden*.

These three Cantons of *Uri*, *Switz* and *Underwalden* have no Corn-fields or Vineyards, but only Pasture-Grounds, being supplied with Wines from *Italy*, which is very dear here.

The People are generally very honest and good-natur'd, and keep their Houses very clean, but are much given to eating and drinking.

Lucern. *April* 5. we travel'd to *Lucern*, crossing part of the Lake. It is a very polite City, pleasantly situate upon the Lake of the same name, and divided in two parts by a River, which arising from the Lake, is cover'd here with three Bridges, one for Carts and Horses, the other two for foot Passengers, cover'd with a Roof, one being near a quarter of a mile long; besides which, it has a fourth Bridge cover'd like the other, but longer, leading to the Church. The great Church, which stands without the Wall, is a very lofty Structure, over the Western Door of which is the biggest Organ that ever I saw, the hollow of the greater Pipes being capacious enough for a Man to creep into. They told us, that their Great Council consisted of 136, who continue in Office during Life, and when one dies, the rest chuse another in his place. It has two Presidents, whom they call *Sculteti*, who also continue for Life, but preside in their turns every other Year. For their manner of chusing these Senators and other Officers, I will refer my self to * *Simler*. All the Inhabitants of the Territories belonging to this City are Subjects, and divided into 19 or 20 *Præfecturæ*, but they pay no more than five *Batz*, or a Hen a man *per annum* to the Governour.

* *Rep. Helv.*

Zug. From *Lucern* we travel'd, *April* the 6th, fifteen miles to *Zug*, (*Tugium* in Latin) seated at the side of a small Lake, but it is less by one half than *Lucern*. The Government here is Popular, like those of *Uri*, *Switz* and *Underwalden*; but besides the City, the three *Communes* of *Bery*, *Merisinguen* and *Baar* have a share in the Government. Their Magistrates, Officers and Elections the same as in *Uri* and *Switz*. To the General Diet the City sends one, and the three *Communes* the other Deputy. The nomination of the *Landvogts* or Governours in the Country belongs once to the City and twice to the Communities.

The Lake of *Zug* (if you may believe the Inhabitants) has greater variety of Fish than any other of *Switzerland*; those they named to us were, *Eels*, *Carps*, *Perches*, *Trouts*, *Salmons*; which is very strange, by reason of its great distance from the Sea; *Esch*, call'd *Grayling* in English, *Trisea* of the *Eelpout*, *Pikes* (of which we saw one weighing thirty pound) *White-fish* or *Alcrlin*, which is taken also in the Lake of *Bala* in *Merionethshire* in *Wales*, and is call'd there *Guiniad*; and in *Huls-water* near *Pereth* in *Cumberland*, and there call'd *Schelley*; *Hasster*, a Fish I take to be the same with our *Charre* in *Winandermere* in *Westmerland*, and the *Torgoch* of *North Wales*; *Balla*; *Nase*, (call'd *Nasus* by Naturalists) *Breams*, *Crevises*, &c. and many more. In the shadowy Lakes about *Santz* and *Zug*, we found *Anblatum Cordi*, or *Dentaria aphyllos*.

From *Zug* we rode *April* 7. in five hours to *Zurich*, of which we have given an account before.

April 13. we travel'd thence four good leagues, to *Mellingen*, a free Town, not far from *Baden*, and passing *Mellingen.* thro' *Lensburgh*, lodg'd at *Arauw*, a considerable Town *Arauw.* upon the River *Aar*, four short leagues from *Mellingen*.

The 14th we pass'd thro' no considerable place till we came to *Solorurn*, nine leagues from *Arauw*, which, tho' *Solotarn.* the Head of a Canton, is not considerable, either for it strength or bigness.

April 15. taking a circumference out of the ordinary Road to *Geneva*, we took a view of *Bern*, six hours riding from *Solotarn*.

Bern is a very handsom City, tho' the Houses be not *Bern.* very high, yet well built of Stone. The chief Street, which is very long, has Cloysters on both sides; it lies stretched out in length upon a Hill, resembling a Peninsula, being almost encompass'd by the River, that side where it is not being strongly fortified with Bastions and Outworks. The Founder of this City, as also of *Friburg* in *Switzerland*, and of *Friburg* in *Brisgoia*, was *Berchtoldus* Duke of *Zerin*, unto whom they have erected a Monument in the great Church, one of the least Stone Fabricks in all *Switzerland*.

The Territories of this City are of such an extent, as to comprehend one third part of all the Country of the *Swiss*, being divided into sixty Bailyages, besides four others they have in common with *Friburg*. The *Landvogts* or Bailiffs continue in their stations for six Years, which makes them very rich without exacting upon the People. They keep here five or six Bears in a Pit, which are often climbing up and down the Fir-trees that grow in the Pit. The Arms of *Bern* is a Bear, alluding perhaps to their Name, this City being the first that coin'd the Money call'd *Batze*, (signifying a Bear's Paw) from the figure of a Bear stampt upon it, which was afterwards imitated by all the rest of the Cantons.

April 17. we travel'd from *Bern* to *Friburg*, a very *Friburg.* handsom City, and likewise the Head of a Canton; its situation is much the same as *Bern*, upon a Hill, almost surrounded with a River, and encompass'd with Hills, except on that side where it is coherent to the Land.

April 18. we travel'd from *Friburg* thro' *Maulton* to *Lausanna*, a great Town, and an Universiry; and *April* *Lausanna.* the 19th continued our Journey by the way of *Morges*, *Rolle* and *Nion*, considerable Towns upon the Lake of *Geneva* and *Verfoy*, a small place on the Lake near *Geneva*, belonging to the *French*, and came the same day to *Geneva*, where we staid for three months.

The Governments of *Solotarn*, *Bern* and *Friburg* are much the same as that of *Lucern*. In *Solotarn* the Great Council consists of 115, the lesser 35; if one of this happens to die, the 34 remaining chuse another out of the 115, and his place is supplied out of the Citizens. In *Bern*, the greater Council is compos'd of 200, and the lesser of 42. In *Friburg* the greater Council is of 200, likewise, and the lesser of 24. All these Cities have two *Scouts* or Consuls, who rule every other Year each in his turn. He that desires a more ample account of the Government of these and all other *Helvetick* Cities, may consult *Simler de Rep. Helvet.* Each of the Protestant Cantons acknowledge a certain Saint for their Patron, whose Image they stamp upon the reverse of their Money. The Protestant Cantons are, *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Basil*, *Schaffhausse*, and part of *Glaris* and *Appenzel*. That which breeds frequent intestine Differences among the *Swiss*, is the business of the common Bailiwicks; for the Popish Cantons being more in number than the Protestants, they send Bailiffs to those places twice to the Protestants once, who are often oppress and injur'd by the Popish Bailiffs, and the *Switzers* being very jealous on both sides in their Religion, *hinc illæ lachrymæ*. On the other hand, the Protestant Cantons, tho' fewer in number, yet are the more powerful,

powerful, and are poſſeſs'd of the beſt Grounds, the *Bernese* alone being ſaid to be able to raiſe 100000 Men, and leave enough at home to cultivate the Ground. All the Cantons of *Switzerland* coin Money, except *Appenzel*, *Underwald* and *Glaris*. The *Swiſs* are generally a very honeſt ſort of People, and very kind to Strangers, and are very neat in their Houſes. Betwixt *Zurich* and *Mellingen* we ſaw abundance of *Gooſeberries* in the Hedges, and in ſome places *Barberries*; in the Woods and Hedges great plenty of *Sigillum Salamonis* and *Herba Sarâ*: On the Mountains near *Zurich*, *Anonymus flore luteo*. Betwixt *Arcum* and *Soleurn*, on the Hill ſides, *Helleboraſter maximus* and *Chriſtophoriana*, as alſo *Fumaria bulboſa* in the ſhady Lanes.

Geneva

Geneva is very well ſeated, at the lower end of the Lake of *Geneva*, (*facim Lemanus*) or *Geaffer Sea*, as the *Germans* call it, upon a Hill reſpecting the Lake. The River *Rhoſne* (*Rhodanus*) divides it in two parts, which are join'd again by two Wooden Bridges, one of which has Houſes on both ſides, like *London* Bridge, but very low. The two principal Streets are, the lower Street, extending along the River and Lakes ſide, and the great Street running up the Hill. It has lately been well fortified with Works of Earth. It is very populous in reſpect of its bigneſs, containing 30000 Souls. St. *Peter's* Church, formerly the Cathedral, is a goodly Structure, where is a ſtately Monument for the Duke of *Rohan*. Their Territories being but very ſmall, the Inhabitants live by their Induſtry and Traffick, and Proviſions of all ſorts are very cheap here, eſpecially Milk-meats, the neighbouring Mountains furniſhing them with plenty of Food for their Cattle; for the tops of *Jura*, *Saleve* and other high Mountains of *Savoy*, *Dauphine* and the *Alps*, which are bare of Wood, put forth very good Graſs about mid-*May*, after the Snow is melted. The Men of the circumjacent Countries, at that time, drive up their Cattle to Paſture for three months, living ſcattering in Sheds and Dairy-huts erected for that purpoſe, whilſt their Wives take care of their Families at home.

The temperature of the Air of *Geneva* in reſpect of heat and cold, is much the ſame with *England*, without either extream. The City is well govern'd, and Vice ſuppreſs'd, tho' they uſe divers Sports and Exerciſes on *Sundays*.

Our ſtay at *Geneva* happening in the proper ſeaſon for Simpling, we can't omit to give the Reader a Catalogue here of what Plants we met with in the neighbouring Mountains and Fields: Such as are native of *England* are in the *Roman* letter.

In Colle à Baſtie dicto & Sylvis clivoſis ad Rhodani ripas.

Colutea ſcorpioides: Meliſſophyllon Fuchſio flore albo atque etiam vario: *Lilium flore nutante ferrugineo majus* J. B. *Monophyllon* Ger. *Orobus Pannonicus* 1 Cluſ. *Hepaticum trifolium* Lob. Frangula; *Chamædrys falſa maxima*, &c. J. B. *Bellis ſylvatica* J. B. *Trifolium purpureum maſus folio & ſpica longiore* J. B. Orobus *ſylvaticus viciæ foliis* C. B. *Tithymalus cypariſſias* J. B. *Tithymalus non aeris flore rubro* J. B. *Hirminum luteum* ſive *Colus Jovis*; Aquilegia vulgaris.

In Monte Saleve *dicto unâ circiter leucâ à Geneva diſtante.*

Cotoneaſter Goſneri J. B. *Dioſpyros* J. B. *Bellis cærulea Monſpeliaca* Ger, *Scabioſa* 10 *ſive repens* Cluſ. *Alſine muſcoſa quibuſdam* J. B. Ad rivulos propè *Saleve*. *Ageratum purpureum Dalechampii* J. B. ad radices montis. *Sanicula Alpina guttata*, In ſummitate propè fontes. Pes cati flore albo & ſuaverubente *ibid & copioſiſſime*. *Gentiana major* Ger. In paſcuis propè ſummitatem montis abunde. *Gentianula quæ Hippion* J. B. ibid. *Cacalia quibuſdam* J. B. in ſylvoſis ſuprema montis parte. *Polygonatum anguſtifolium*, ibid. Polygonatum floribus ex ſingularibus pediculis J. B. In rupibus & ſaxoſis ad latera montis. *Draba alba ſiliquoſa repens*; juxta fontes propè montis ſummitatem. *Heſperis ſylveſtris, latifolia flore albo parvo* Park. *Ribes Alpinum dulce* J. B. In ſylvoſis ſummo montis cacumine. *Anagyris ſive Laburnum*, In ſylvoſis ad latera montis. *Ferrum equinum Gallicum ſiliqua in ſummitate* C. B. *Periclymenum rectum fructu rubro* Ger. *Dracunculus vulgaris* J. B. *Dentaria heptaphyllos* C. B. In ſylvoſis ad latera montis. *Barba capri heptaphyllos* C. B. In ſylvoſis ad latera montis. *Barbâ capri* J. B. ibid. Lilium convallium, ibid. Chriſtophoriana, ibid. *Lilium floribus reflexis montanum* C. B. Aria Theophraſti; Meliſſophyllum Fuchſii; Polygonatum vulgare; Polemonium petræum Geſn. *Colutea ſcorpioides*; *Thlaſpi oleraceum* Tab. Fraxinus bubula; Alchimilla vulgaris, in paſcuis in ſuprema montis parte abunde. Pyrola vulgaris; *Pyrola fol. anacrumato ſerrato* C. B. utraque in ſylvoſis. Filix tenuifolia minor J. B. *Libanotis Theophraſti minor* Park. In ſaxoſis ad latera montis. *Siler montanum Officinarum* J. B. Carum: *Lactuca ſylvatica purpurea* J. B. *Cyclaminus folio anguloſo* J. B. *Filix Saxatilis non rameſa minima*; *Caryophyllum gramineo folio minimum*; *Aconitum lycoctonum luteum* C. B. *Vicia maxima dumetorum* J. B. in ſylvis in aſcenſu montis. *Sedum Alpinum hirſutum luteum* C. B. E ſaxorum rimis emergit. Pucedani facie puſilla planta *Lob.* E rupium fiſſuris. *Sedum ſerratum* J. B. *Uva urſi*; *Colus Jovis*; *Gramini Luzulæ affine flore albo* J. B. in ſylvoſis & dumetis propè imam montis partem. *Thlaſpi Alpinum minus capitulo rotundo* C. B. in rupibus humidioribus. *Rubia cærulea elatior* J. B. inter ſegetes. *Phalangium pulchrius non ramoſum* J. B. Androſæmum Campoclarenſe *Col.* *Heliantbemum Alpinum folio Piloſellæ minoris Fuchſii* J. B. *Helleborine ex albido ſubluteo* J. B. in ſylvoſis ad radices montis. *Aſtragalus Monſpeliano candidior & Onobrychis quorundam* J. B. in ſaxoſis. *Helleborine flore albo*, in ſylvis ſuprema montis parte. *Aſtrantia nigra*, in pratis montoſis. *Cicutaria latifolia hirſuta* J. B. ibid. *Pentaphylloides erectum* J. B. Propè arcem antiquam jam dirutam. Chamæneriium vulgare: *Piloſellæ majoris ſive Pulmonariæ luteæ laciniatæ ſpecies minor* J. B. *Hieracium parvum hirtum caule aphyllo criſpum ubi ſiccatum* J. B. ad radices montis. *Orchis ſtrateumatica minor* J. B. *Pſeudo-aſphodelus quibuſdam* J. B. in paludoſis ad radices montis. Orchis parva autumnalis lutea *J. B.* ibidem. *Dioſpyros* J. B. in ſylvoſis ad latera montis. *Thymelæa quædam incana*. Ad pedalem & ſeſquipedalem altitudinem aſſurgit, & in plures ramos dividitur hic frutex. Lignum ejus ſupra modum fragile, cortex cinereus; Folia Mezerei Germanici ſed minora, acuminata, utrinque hirſuta, glauca. Flores in ſummitatibus ramulorum 4 aut 5, aut etiam plures ſimul conferti, pediculis nullis, nullo calice, è tubo longiuſculo in 4 foliola alba acuminata expanduntur, Stamitula crocea intus continentes. Floribus ſuccedunt baccæ longiuſculæ quæ nondum mutuerant. Floret initio Maii; in ſylvoſis ad latera montis. *Dentaria Pentaphyllos*; Damaſonium *purpureum dilutum ſive Helleborine* 4 Cluſ. J. B. in ſylvoſis ad latera montis. Calceolus Mariæ, *ibid.* *Cardun Ciriium dictus folio laciniato nigrius* J. B. *Pentaphyllum rectum* J. B. è rupium fiſſuris. *Campanula repens flore minore cæruleo* J. B. *Digitalis flore minore ſubluteo, anguſtiore folio* J. B. *Alſine maxima* Hiſt. Lugd. *Valeriana Alpina* J. B. Hanc Patavini Valerianam Trachelii folio denominant, aptâ ſanè appellatione: Sunt enim ei folia Trachelii majoris. Radix valdè aromatica eſt & odorata. *Valeriana Alpina altera foliis integris, inodorata*: *Radices* longæ, repentes, fibris donatæ ſubinde germina protrudunt. *Folia* valerianæ minoris ſylv. ex rotundo oblonga pediculis longis inſident, non laciniata, ne illa quidem quæ in caule conſiſtunt, ad margines obiter nonnunquam dentata, violæ foliis quodammodo ſimilia. Radix nec ſaporem nec odorem (quem quidem ego ſentire potui) aromaticum habuit. Caulis pedalis, rotundus, ſtriatus, concavus, duplici plerunque foliorum pari, quæ ſine pediculis illos amplectuntur, præditi. Flores albi, Valerianæ ſylveſtris ſimillimi, uti ſunt & ſemina. *Scabioſa maxima dumetorum folio non laciniato* J. B. *Herba Doriæ*, propè Carthuſianorum cœnobium. *Ranunculus magnus valdè hirſutus flore luteo* J. B. ibid. Sedum an potiùs Draba minima ſiliquoſa flore albo. *Radice* nititur ſimplici, fibrosâ, albâ: *Folia* juxta terram plura Senecionis aut Bellidis majoris ſed minora & pro magnitudine breviora, per oras rarioribus inciſuris dentata, extremitatibus ſubrotundis, atrevirentia, rarioribus pilis iis tamen rigidiuſculis aſpera. E medio foliorum emergunt caules rotundi, rubentes, rarioribus pilis hirſuti, foliis nudi præterquam ad florum pediculos. Flores in ſummitatibus caulium ſingulorum 5 vel etiam 6 & nonnunquam plures, albi, quadrifolii, è calice longiuſculo, herbaceo, quadrifolio exeunt. In ſummitate montis ſub initium Maii flores incipit.

In monte Jura circa vertices Thuiri & la Dolaz *rariores.*

Helleborus albus in paſcuis montoſis copioſiſſime. *Tuſſilago Alpina minor folio rotundo* J. B. in ſummis verticibus. *Soldanella Alpina quibuſdam* J. B. ibid. *Scabioſa montana maxima* Park. In vertice *Thuiri Ranunculus albus ſimplici flore* J. B. In ſylvoſis propè ſummitates montis. *Ranunculus montanus albus hirſutus* J. B. ibid. *Thalictrum majus folliculis anguloſis, caule levi* J. B. ibid. *Oxalis maxima ſylvatica* J. B. *Oxalis folio rotundiore repens* J. B. ibid. *Lonchitis altera cum folio denticulato, ſive Lonchitis altera Matthioli* J. B. In ipſo montis vertice in rupibus. Sedum majus vulgare *ibid.* Sedum tridactylites Alpinum, *ibid.* *Chamædrys Alpina flore Fragariæ albo* J. B. *Auricula muris pulchro flore, folio tenuiſſimo* J. B. Accedit hæc planta ad Saxifragam noſtram paluſtrem Anglicam. *Anthora flore luteo Aconiti* J. B. in ſummis montis jugis. *Linaria purpurea parva* J. B. *Dentaria quinquefolia* J. B. in ſylvoſis ad latera

lacta montis. *Coralloides altera sive septifolia* J. B. ibid. *Cacalia quibusdam* J. B. ibid. *Pentaphyllum sive potius Heptaphyllum argenteum flore muscoso* J. B. Carum; *Phyllon thelygonon Delechampii*; *Sigillum Solomonis angustifolium*. *Echium Alpinum luteum* C. B. *Libanotis Theophrasti minor* Park. *Astrantia nigra*; *Sanicula Alpina guttata*; *Helianthemum Alpinum folio Pilosellæ minoris Fuchsii* J. B. *Crocus vernus latifolius flore purpureo minore* J. B. *Helianthemum tenuifolium glabrum luteo flore* J. B. ad radices montis. Pescati; *Ribes Alpinus dulcis* J. B. *Lactuca sylvatica purpurea* J. B. *Valeriana Alpina*; *Cyanus major*; *Polygonatum floribus ex singularibus pediculis* J. B. *Digitalis lutea magno flore* J. B. ad radices montis. *Thora folio Cyclimini* J. B. i. e. *Phthora Valdensium*; in summitate montis copiosè. *Diospyros* J. B. in sylvosis ad latera montis. *Plantago angustifolia Alpina* J. B. *Nerium Alpinum quibusdam, aliis Ledum glabrum* J. B. *Chamæcerasus* J. B. *Acini pulchra species* J. B. *Veronica saxatilis* J. B. *Chamædryi vulgari falsæ aliquatenus affinis Alpina, an Clinopodium Alpinum Ponæ?* J. B. *Gentiana Alpina magno flore* J. B. in altissimo vertice *Thuiri*. Bistorta minima *J. B.* an Bistorta Alpina media *C. B.*? *Orchis palmata flore viridi* C. B. in pascuis montosis. *Orchis rotunda Dalechampii* J. B. Lunaria Botrytis *J. B.* Ranunculus flore globoso, quibusdam Trollius flos *J. B.* *Pilosella sive Pulmonaria lutea angustiore folio* J. B. E rupium fissuris exoritur. *Nasturtiolum Alpinum tenuissimè divisum* J. B. *Aster purpureus montanus* J. B. *Viola martia lutea* J. B. *Sideritis Valerandi Dourez hirsuti spica* J. B. *Geranium phæo sive pullo flore Clusii* J. B. *Daucus Creticus semine hirsuto* J. B. *Apium montanum nigrum* J. B. Ad radices montis. Circa verticem *la Dolaz* dictum.

Sonchus cæruleus latifolius J. B. *Tussilago Alpina folio longo* J. B. *Rapunculi genus folio serrato rotundiore* J. B. *Orchis palmata minor odoratissima purpurea sive nigra* J. B. In pascuis montosis. *Pentaphyllum Alpinum splendens aureo flore* J. B. *Gnaphalium Alpinum pulchrum*, in summo montis cacumine. *Asarum*, In sylvis non longè ab Abbatia de *Beaumont*. Helleborine flore atro-rubente, *Chamæ-iasme Alpina* J. B. in Append. in altissimo vertice *la Dolaz*. Hieracium Alpinum flo. singulari magno cauli cubitali insidente, *ibid.*

Iterum in monte Thuiri.

Pilosella minore flore, hirsutior & elatior non repens J. B. *Astragalus quidam montanus vel Onobrychis alia* J. B. *Caryophyllus sylvestris quædam species*, flore purpureo odorato, foliis glaucis. *Caryophyllus flore tenuissimè dissecto* C. B. *Solidago Saracenica*; *Silex montanum*; *Pulsatilla alba* J. B. *Lunaria major siliquâ longiore* J. B. *Hieracium latifolium montanum Genevcese folio Conyzæ majoris Monspessulanæ* J. B. Ad latera montis. *Caryophyllus montanus tenuifolius Lini flore*. Radix ei lignosa, vivax: Cauliculi ex eadem radice plurimi ut in caryophyllis, lignosi, cortice cinereo tecti, [vetustiores intelligo] geniculis crebris intercepti. Ad singula geniculæ ramulorum hornotinorum folia ex adverso bina Tunicæ minimæ vel Spergulæ purpureæ, angusta, graminea. Cauliculi in ramulos divisi, inferiùs ferè glabri, supernè hirsuti, in summitatibus suis flores gestant amplos in pediculis longis hirsutis, albos, pentapetalos, striatos, Lini floribus similes; foliis quippe compositos subrotundis, & minimè bifidis cujusmodi solent esse Alsines & Lychnidum, non tamen caducos ut in Lino, stamina continentes plurima herbacea seu luteola. Vasculum seminale longiusculum, crassum. Floret circa finem Junii & Julii initio. *Pseudo-stachys Alpina* C. B. *Ranunculus tenuifolius montanus luteus* J. B. *Bellis Alpina major rigido folio* C. B. Salix pumila latifolia folio utrinque glabro, supernè autem splendente. Ramos per terram spargit minimi digiti crassitudine, annosos cortice glauco, juniores virente præditos, in plurimos surculos, divisos, adeò ut terram cooperiant. Folia in ramulis crebra alternatim posita, pediculis brevibus fulta, parva, ex rotunditate acuminata, utrinque glabra, supernè saturo virore splendentia, nervosa, unciam plerunque rariùs sesquunciam longa. Julos profert creberrimos, breviusculos, è pluribus vasculis seminalibus in acutum apicem ex latiori basi paulatim fastigiatis compositos. In altissimis jugis montis Juræ. *Veronica Saxatilis parva caulibus nudis*. Eodem modo repit & in vastos dividitur cæspites quo Cotyledon Matthioli, aut Sedum serratum. *Folia* ei Veronicæ parva, subrotunda, hirsuta; ad margines serrata. Caules eodem modo exurgunt quo in Phyllo Dalechampii thelygono; duorum trium ve digitorum altitudine, rotundi, foliis destituti. Flores in summo 5, 6 aut etiam plures Chamædryos spuriæ aut Veronicæ, cærulei, quadrifolii. Vascula seminalia magna Thlaspeos aut Veronicæ vulgaris repentis. *Sedum minimum montanum non acre flore purpurascente parvo*. Radix ei alba, tenuis, nec ultra annum (ut mihi visum est) vivax, pluribus fibris capillata. Caulis nunc simplex, nunc plures, semipalmares, erecti, rotundi, rubentes, foliis vestiti creberrimis, circumcirca nullo ordine positis, crassis, teretibus fere, apicibus obtusis, rubentibus. Flores in summis caulibus velut in umbellas digesti, exigui, pentapetali, vix se pandentes. Florum petala acuta, purpurascentia, linea per medium saturationis purpuræ decurrente. Vascula seminalia quinquepartita, stellata.

In pratis, pascuis, satis, collibus, dumetis, aggeribus, alveis, muris, viis publicis, & alibi circa urbem.

Thlaspi oleraceum Tab. *Campanula Persicifolia*, in dumetis. *Chamædrys foliis laciniatis*; *Mezereon Germanicum*; *Christophoriana*; Eryngium campestre; Sigillum Solomonis; Lilium convallium; Chamæpitys; *Uva ursi*; *Rhamnus secundus* Clus. In arenosis ad Rhodanum. Aria Theophrasti; Berberis; Thlaspi minus quibusdam, aliis Alysson minus *J. B.* passim. *Rapunculus spicatus* C. B. in dumetis. *Pulmonaria maculosa* Lob. *ibid.* *Sinapi Genevense sylvestre* J. B. In muris ad pontem *Arvæ* flu. *Pentaphyllum parvum hirsutum* J. B. *Saponaria minor quibusdam* J. B. *Tanacetum inodorum* Clus. *Typha minor* J. B. in saliceto non longè à ponte *Arvæ* flu. *Trifolium pratense album à Fuchsio depictum sive mas* J. B. *Tithymalus cyparissias* J. B. In agris sicciosibus ad aggeres ubique. Tithymalus platyphyllos Fuchsii J. B. *Psyllium majus erectum*, in arenosis propè fluvium *Arvæ*. *Lysimachia siliquosa speciosa angustifolia* J. B. In alveo flu. *Arvæ*. *Scrophularia Ruta canina dicta*, ibidem & copiosè. *Chamædrys vulgaris*; Abrotanum campestre; *Phyteuma Monspelliensium*, J. B. *Pereclymenum rectum fructu rubro & nigro* J. B. In sepibus & dumetis. *Betonica coronaria sive Caryophyllus sylvestris vulgatissimus* J. B. in pratis. *Gelidrychum sylvestre vulgò, sive sylvestris Schlaræa purpureo cæruleove magno* J. B. Orchis galeâ & alis ferè cinereis *J. B.* Orchis myodes; Orchis fuciflora galeâ & alis herbidis; In aggeribus sylvosis utraque & copiosè. *Asclepias flore albo*; *Tamarix Germanica, sive minor fruticosa* J. B. Ad *Arvæ* fluvium. *Polemonium petræum* Gesneri; Ad *Rhodani* ripas, ingue ipsis urbis muris. *Crista galli utraque mas & fœmina* J. B. in pratis. *Lotus siliquosa lutea Monspelliensis* J. B. *Chamæmelum vulgare amarum* J. B. inter segetes. *Chamæbalanus leguminosa sive Terræ glandes*; in vineis & seget; extra portam *S. Gervasii*. *Lathyrus flore vario ex coccineo & albo*, inter segetes: *Rosa rubello flore simplici non spinosa* J. B. in collibus. *Gramen cyperoides exiguum seminibus bullatis*; *Melampyrum multis sive Triticum vaccinum*, J. B. inter segetes. Melampyrum cristatum *J. B.* *Asphodelus bulbosus Dodonæi, sive Ornithogalum spicatum flo. virente* J. B. inter segetes. *Orchis magna latis foliis, galeâ fuscâ vel nigricante* J. B. Ad latus sylvosi cujusdam collis propè montem *Saleve*. *Thlaspi umbellatum arvense amarum* J. B. In arvis non procul à *Thuiri* copiosè. *Allium umbelliferum pratense* J. B. *Rapistrum monospermon*, in aggeribus fossarum. *Campanula rotundifolia minima* J. B. in glareosis ad fluv. *Arvæ*. *Rosa sylvestris rubella parvo fructu* J. B. in collibus & dumetis copiosissimè. *Medica major erectior floribus purpurascentibus* J. B. scritur aliquibus in locis ad pabulum jumentorum. Rubia erecta quadrifolia *J. B.* *Melilotus quinta Tragi* J. B. *i. e.* Securidaca flo. vario siliquis articularis: *Blattaria flo. albo & luteo*, ad vias. *Chamædrys spuria angustifolia* J. B. in dumetis. *Pilosella minor folio angustiore, minùs piloso, repens* J. B. *Hyacinthus maximus botryodes, comâ cæruleâ* J. B. inter segetes passim. Thlaspi minus, juxta *S. Gervasii*, in muris. *Sedum parvum folio circinato, flore albo* J. B. in muris. *Heliotropium majus*. Ad ripas fl. *Arvæ*. Stachys *Fuchsii*; ad vias. *Cynoglossum minus* J. B. in ruderatis & ad vias. Cardiaca, *ibid.* Lathyrus siliquâ hirsutâ *J. B.* inter segetes circa *Champo*. *Atractylis*, juxta vias propè urbem. *Saxifragia Veterum*, in collibus ad *Arvam* fl. *Anonis lutea non spinosa, Dalechampii Natrix* J. B. juxta fl. *Arvæ*. *Armenia prolifera* Ger. Ad vias passim. *Orobus sive Ervum multis*, inter segetes non longè ab oppido *Fay*. *Lathyrus angulosa semine* J. B. Hujus duæ varietates circa Genevam seruntur, alia flore albo, alia flore dilutè cæruleo & striato. *Conyza media Monspelliensis, quibusdam Asteris Attici genus folio glabro rigido* J. B. *Tragorchis minor flore fuligineo* J. B. In pascuis quibusdam trans *Rhodanum*. *Sedum echinatum vel stellatum flore albo* J. B. in muscosis scopium aggeribus. *Allium Sparocephalum purpurascens*. *Bulbus* ei simplex albus velut parvæ cepæ. *Folia* fistulosa, glauca tria quatuórve. *Caulis* dodrantalis, in cacumine *flores* gestans in orbiculare ferè capitulum conglobatos, è membranaceo purpurascente involucro, striato, in duas carinas dehiscente erumpentes. *Flosculi* singulares brevibus pediculis nixi, sex foliolis constant longiusculis, acuminatis, pallide purpureis, saturatiore linea purpureâ per medium decurrente, staminа sex brevia cum apiculis purpureis occultantes. Floret initio Julii: in arenosis ad *Rhodanum* fluv. *Gramen cum panicula multi rubente* J. B. Besides these which we found out, *J. Bauhine* observ'd some few

few others, which we had not the hap to meet withal, viz. *Carduus pratensis Tragi*, in monte *Thuiri*: *Eryngium Alpinum latis foliis, magno capite oblongo cæruleo*, ibid. *Ledum Alpinum minus hirsutum*, ibid. *Galega montana Dalechampii*, ibid. *Lapathum folio acuto Alpinum*. ibid.

Lions. From *Geneva* we travel'd to *Lions*, the second City in *France* for bigness, goodly Buildings, Traffick, Riches, and the number of People; but being hurried out of *France* beyond expectation, by the King's Declaration, before we could finish a third part of our intended Travels in this Country, we will content our selves with mentioning only the Names of the chief places thro' which we pass'd, and what Plants we met with in those places, where we tarried till our return into *England*. Betwixt *Geneva* and *Lions* we took notice only of two Plants, which were Strangers to us, viz. *Valeriana rubra angustifolia* J. B. about *Mantua*, a Town of *Savoy*; and *Anchusa lutea*, in some barren Fields, a days Journey short of *Lions*.

Grenble La grand Chartreuse. *July* 25. we continued our Journey from hence to *Grenoble*, and thence to the *grand Chartreuse*: By the way, but especially upon the Mountains near this Convent, we saw many Plants we had not met with before, viz. *Linariæ aliquatenus similis folia Bellidis* J. B. In some Fields about 5 or 6 leagues from *Lions*, in the way to *Grenoble*, *Catanance Dalechampii folio Cyani, flore Coronopi* J. B. On the sides of the Mountains about half a league above *Grenoble*, in the way to the *grand Chartreuse*, *Melampyro affinis Parietaria cærulea quorundam* J. B. *ibid.* in sylvosis. In the Mountains about the Cloyster, *Sambucus racemosa*; *Circæa minima* Col. *Helleborus niger* Lob. Trachelium majus Belgarum; Radix Rhodia, copiosissimè; *Gentianella Alpina verna magno flore*; *Pulsatilla alba* J. B. *Solidago Saracenica*; *Periclymenum rectum fructu nigro* Park. *Xylosteum Allobrogicum* i. e. *Periclymenum rectum fructo rubro* Ger. *Chamæmespilus Gesneri*; *Imperatoria vulgaris*; *Sonchus cæruleus latifolius* J. B. *Nerium Alpinum quibusdam, aliis Ledum glabrum* J. B. *Auricula ursi*; *Vittorialis longa*; *Trifolium Alpinum argenteum* Park. *Helleborus niger Caniculæ folio minor*. Park. Pedicularis sive Crista galli montana; *Radix* ei simplex, alba, paucis fibris donata, magnitudine & figurâ radicis Tragopogi, nisi quòd longior sit, sapore non ingrato nucis Avellanæ paulò amariore. *Folia* ad radicem panca [unum aut duo] alata, ex pluribus pinnarum conjugationibus Filicis ferè in modum composita, inferiùs hirsuta, in acutum definentia, pallide viridia. Singulæ pinnæ ad margines serratæ Cristæ galli vulgaris folia bene imitantur. *Caulis* ab eadem radice singularis, dodrantalis aut pedalis, rotundus, firmus, nonnihil hirsutus, intus concavus, in summitate gestans spicam palmarem florum densè stipatorum, pallidè luteorum, *Cristæ galli* similium, nisi quòd vix sese aperiant, è calice ventricoso pentagono emergentium, pediculis nullis. In calice latet vasculum seminale turbinatum seminibus minutis rotundis repletum. Unum habet hæc planta in caule folium infra Spicam: in ipsa Spica ad singulos flores singula folia.

Hominum seu *Pseudo-stachys quædam Alpina*. *Radice* nititur oblique actâ, multis fibris præditâ. *Folia* longis pediculis hirsutis insident hirsuta & ipsa, rugosa, urticæ similia, circa margines serrata vel dentata denticulis majoribus. *Caules* pedales hirsuti, medullâ farcti, striati & quodammodo quadrati, plerunque duobus, interdum uno duntaxat foliorum pari vestiti: *Folia* quæ in caule iis quæ ad radicem similia, sed minora, & brevioribus pediculis (ut in hoc genus plantis solenne est) fulta. In summitate caulium *spicæ* breves compactæ, Betonicæ æmulæ. *Flosculi* galeati, lutei, è calicibus in 5 molliores spinulas terminatis exeunt. Julii 17 jam penè defloruerat.

Asteri montano purpureo similis J. B. *Radix* ei satis crassa, obliqua, intus nonnihil lutea, sapore acriusculo, fibris aliquot donata. *Folia* ad radicem plura, longa, angusta, figurâ ferè Polemonii petræ *Gesneri*, saturo virore splendentia, ad latera nonnihil pilosa, neque dentata neque serrata. *Caules* semipedales aut dodrantales, surrecti, foliis vestiri alternatim positis, iis quæ ad radicem similibus, ramosi, singulis ramulis florem sustinentibus Bellidis minoris, nisi quòd limbus seu corona foliorum radiatorum in margine minoribus brevioribusque foliolis constet colore purparascente prædictis, interiores à flosculi qui fundum floris componunt inter viridem quasi & luteum colorem ambigunt. In ascensu montium *Julii* 17 florentem inveni, & *Bellidem Alpinam ramosam flore purpurascente* denominavi.

Pyrenaica folio alato. Radix ei alba, obliqua, repens, fibris longis crebris firmata. *Caules* exigit cubitales, rotundos, inanes, brevi & vix perceptibili lanugine præditos, *foliis* crebris alternatim positis vestitos. *Folia* alata 4 aut 5 pinnarum conjugationibus constant; singulæ pinnæ circa margines dentatæ, & subinde etiam altius incisæ. *Flores* in summitate caulis velut in umbella, albi & Ptarmicæ vulgaris vel potius Ablinthii albi umbelliferi floribus omnino similes. Nullus in hac planta vel odor vel sapor insignis: initio guttanti subamara videtur. In sylvis montosis *Junio* floret. *Bellis cærulea caule nudo* C. B. Hæc à Globularia vulgari Monspel. omnino specie diversa est.

Pentaphyllum argenteum Alpinum flore albo. Radicem non observavi. *Folia* quinquepartita reliquorum hujus generis more, exigua, lanugine molli argentea utrinque canentia, in extremitatibus duntaxat crenata. *Caules* ex eadem radice plures, pariter villosi, infirmi, foliis duobus tribusve tripartito ut plurimùm divisis vestiti; quæ appendicibus duabus caulem amplectuntur, *flores* in summitate sustinentes duos vel tres pentapetalos, albos, cum numerosis intus staminulis purpureis apicibus ornatis. Vice styli congeries & velut fasciculus quidam filamentorum. *Calyx* (ut in reliquis hujus generis) 10 foliolis hirsutis constat, quinque nimirum latioribus, quinque angustioribus alternatim positis: Est hoc Pentaphyllum foliis infernè, & supernè incanis *J. B.*

Muscum Alpinus flore insigni dilutè rubente J. B. Hæc planta rectiùs meo judicio Caryophyllus aut Lychnis inscriberetur.

Cerinthe quorundam major, versicolore flore J. B. Perennis esse videtur hæc planta; foliis est maculosis, *floribus* purpurascentibus pentagonis; *seminibus* reliquis sui generis minoribus, cum planta ipsa omnium maxima sit.

Alsine minima Alpina flore albo majore.

Hypericum nummulariæ folio, C. B.

Planta quædam umbellifera Pimpinellæ similis, quam describere nescio quomodo omisi.

Orange. From *Grenoble* we pass'd on to *Orange*; by the way we observ'd *Echinopus minor* J. B. in great plenty all over *Gallia Narbonensis*; *Facea cum spinosis capitulis purpurea tenuifolia* J. B. *Thymum vulg. rigidius folio cinereo*, in the fenny Grounds; *Pulegium cervinum*, by the *Rhosne* side at *Pont S. Esprit*; *Lavendula major sive vulgaris* Park. *Dentellaria Rondeletii*; *Acanthium Illyricum*; *Chondrilla viscosa caule ramoso*, Col. *Echii sive Anchusæ* quædam species *flore cæruleo*, An *Lycopsis*?

Avignon. From *Orange* we travel'd to *Avignon*, where we saw whole Fields sown with *Fœnum Burgundiacum*: and besides those Plants we had seen near *Orange*, *Paliurus*, *Cistus Ledon Monspelliensium*, *Cistus fœmina folio Salviæ*, *Malus granata*; quæ per totam Galliam Narbonensem frequentissima est; *Catanance Dalechampii flore cyani folio Coronopi* J. B. *Helianthemum tenuifolium glabrum flore luteo* J. B. *Helianthemum flore albo, folio angusto hirsuto* J. B. *Fœniculum tortuosum* J. B. *Millefolium odoratum*; *Millefolium tomentosum luteum* J. B. *Stœchas citrina tenuifolia Narbonensis* J. B. *Capparis*; *Ilex coccifera*; *Genista Hispanica*; *Buxus*; *Cucumis asininus*; *Aspalathus* 2. *Monspelliensis*, and many others which grow also about *Montpellier*.

Nismes. The next place we came to was *Nismes*, where, besides those we saw about *Avignon*, (most of which also grow here) we took notice of *Thlaspi siliculatum asperum hieracifolium & majus* C. B. *Psyllium semper virens*, *Camphorata Monspelliensium*, *Trifolium bituminosum*; *Ruta sylvestris*, *Peganium Narbonensium*; *Tithymalus serratus*; *Lotus arbor*; *Convolvulus spicæfolius*; *Plumbago Plinii*; *Scabiosa montana calidarum regionum* Lob. *Tithymalus characias Amygdaloides*; Papaver corniculatum luteum; *Clematis sive Flammula repens* C. B. *Phyteuma Monspelliensium*; *Sideritis verticillis spinosis*; *Alkekengi*; *Clematis daphnoides major*; *Lepidium vulgare*; *Chondrilla viscosa caule ramosissimo*, Col. Et quod nusquam alibi hactenus invenerim, *Abrotanum fœmina foliis Ericæ* sive *Unguentaria Luterianorum*.

Montpellier. From *Nismes* we travel'd to *Montpellier*, where staying all the Autumn and part of the Winter, we had time enough (tho' in an improper season) to observe the following Plants.

Absinthium Scriphium Narbonense Park. Ad mare. *Acarna flore purpureo ruente parvo* C. B in aggeribus. *Acarna major caule foliato* C. B. in arvis non procul à *Miravalle*: Juxta vias eundo à *Montpelio* ad *Pedenarium*. *Alsine oblongo folio serrato, flore cæruleo* J. B. in muris. *Althæa frutescens folio rotundiore incano* C. B. in scopulis non longe à specu *Frontignano*. *Alyssum montis Ceti*, &c. Lob. in Promontorio *Ceti*; vidimus etiam in montibus prope oppidum *S. Chamas* in Galloprovincia. *Anchusa angustifolia* C. B. in collibus juxta *Castelneuf* & *aux Garigues*. *Anchusa Montspeliaca* C. B. in colle arenoso non longe à *Castelneuf* versus *Grammontium* lucum. *Androsace* Matth. in fundo stagni Volcarum *Estang* dicto copiosissime. *Aristolochia Pistolochia dicta*; in arvis quibusdam *aux Garigues* copiosè. *Anonis pusilla frutescens Cherleri* J. B. in collibus sicciosibus. *Asphodelus Monspeliensibus* J. B. in collibus propè *Castelneuf* aliisque, oppido vicinis. *Aristolochia Saracenica*

Ger. in vineis, fossis & aggeribus frequens. *Aspalathus 2 Monspelliensis* J. B. in collibus petrosis abunde. *Aster conyzoides odoratus luteus* hort. Eyst. ad viarum aggeres variis in locis. *Bellis cærulea Monspeliaca. Buplevrum folio rigido* C. B. In sylva *Grammontia* & sylva propè *Selneuf. Buplevrum angustifolium*; in locis saxosis non longè à *Bouconet. Caltha simplici flore*, in agris frequens. *Carduus bulbosus Monspelliensis, sive Acanthus sylvestris quibusdam foliis laciniatis* J. B. in pratis circa Monspelium passim. *Carduus chrysanthemus Hispanicus* Clus. Viâ inter S. *Lupian* & *Pedenatium*, & alibi propè urbem. *Carduus lanceolatus ferocior* J. B. Propè montem *Lupi. Carduus solstitialis*, ubique fere. Chamelæa tricoccos; *Chamæpitys sive Iva moschata Monspelliensium* J. B. in collibus saxosis. *Chondrilla lutea* J. B. in aggeribus ipsius urbis. *Cistus mas 4folio oblongo albido* J. B. *Cistus Ledon Monspeliensium* J. B. *Cistus fœmina* Ger. Omnes hæ species in collibus & sylvis frequentes. *Clematis sive Flammula repens* C. B. in saxosis collibus & arvis arenosis. *Convolvulus spicifolius* Park. *Conyza maritima cærulea* an *Jacobæa quædam?* Circa *Peroul. Coris cærulea maritima* C. B. in arenosis ad mare præsertim. *Cyanus pulchro semine Centaurii majoris* J. B. i. e. Crupina Belgarum *Lob.* in collibus propè flu. *Ladum* juxta *Castelneuf. Cyperus paniculâ sparsâ speciosâ* J. B. in pratis propè *Bouconetum* & *Castrum novum. Doricnyum Monspelliense* J. B. in aggeribus sepium frequens. *Echinopus minor* J. B. i. e. Carduus cæruleus sphærocephalus minor C. B. in collibus & ad vias passim. *Erica arborescens Monspelliensis, flore purpurascente, ramulis ternis* J. B. in luco *Grammontio. Erica arborescens floribus luteolis vel herbaceis nitidissimis* J. B. ibid. *Ferula* Lob. *Fœniculum tortuosum*. passim. *Geranium folio Althææ* C. B. juxta munitiones arcis, non procul à nivis reconditorio. *Geranium cicutæ folio, acu longissimâ* C. B. ad agrorum margines & in aggeribus. *Gingidium umbellâ longâ*, in prato quodam juxta viam quæ *Frontignanam* ducit copiosè. *Gnaphalium ad Stœchadem citrinam accedens*, juxta flu. *Ladum. Gramen minimum Dalechampii* J. B. in vineis, vere primo floret. *Gramen parvum pulchrum paniculâ compressâ nigricante* J. B. in aquosis. *Hedypnois Monspessulana sive Dens leonis Monspessulanus* J. B. in aggeribus terrenis passim. *Helianthemum tenuifolium glabrum flore luteo* J. B. in collibus ardioribus passim. *Helianthemum flore alba folio angusto hirsuto* J. B. in collibus *Castro-novo* vicinis & alibi. *Herba Doria* Lob. Ad *Ladum* amnem copiosè. *Herniaria glabra*, in prato quodam juxta lucum *Grammont. Hieracium parvum hirtum caule aphyllo* J. B. in arenosis collibus propè *Sellam novam* & alibi passim. *Holosteum Plantagini simile* J. B. in aggere quodam inter urbem & *Ladum* amnem. *Hypericum tomentosum* J. B. in humidioribus circa *Selneuf* & alibi. *Ilex coccifera*, in collibus saxosis. *Jacea cum spinosis capitulis purpurea tenuifolia* J. B. passim. *Jacea montana capite magno Strobili* J. B. in collibus juxta *Castelneuf, Selneuf*, &c. *Jacea lutea capite spinoso* C. B. satis frequens in pascuis & collibus. *Kali majus semine cochleato* Ger. In litoribus maris & salsis palustribus. *Lathyrus major Narbonensis angustifolius* J. B. in collibus quos *Garigues* vocant. *Leucoium maritimum angust folium*, in lingua illa inter stagnum Volcarum *Estang* dictum & mare. *Linum marinum luteum*, ad in pratis circa *Sellam novam, Castrum novam*, itémque ad mare. *Linaria lutea parva annua* J. B. in summitate montis Lupi. *Lotus siliquosa lutea Monspelliensis* J. B. in collibus & pascuis. *Marrubium nigrum longifolium*, i. e. *Herba venti* Monspelliensium, in aggeribus & ad vias. *Moly moschatum capillaceo folio* C. B. propè sylvam non longè à *Selneuf*; & in collibus quos *Garigues* vocant. *Orobus receptus beberiorum* Lob. in agris passim. *Peucedanum vulgare*, prope sylvam *Grammontium. Phyllon arrhenogonon & thelygonon* J. B. in aggeribus fossarum & præcipue secus fluvios. *Phyteuma*, passim. *Polemonium sive Trifolium fruticans* Ger. in sepibus vulgatiss. *Prunella angustifolia* J. B. *Pulegium cervinum angustifolium* J. B. in locis ubi per hyemem aquæ stagnârant. *Polygoni quædam species erecta*, an *Arenaria* J. B? Ad agrorum margines. *Rhus folio Ulmi* C. B. in collibus prope *Castelneuf* copiosè. *Rhus myrtifolia Monspeliaca*; ad sæpes, præcipue verò ad ripas *Ladi* amnis. *Rubia maritima*, in lingua illa inter *Estang* & mare. *Scammonea Monspeliaca foliis rotundioribus* C. B. ad mare propè *Peraux, villam novam*, &c. *Scorpioides siliqua compositâ hispidâ*, in aggeribus munitionum. *Securidaca genus triphyllon* J. B. in collibus propè *Castelneuf. Sideritis Monspessulana* J. B. propè patibulum, *aux Garigues*, &c. *Sideritidis genus verticillis spinosis* J. B. in agris copiosè. *Sinapi echinatum* J. B. inter segetes. *Smilax aspera* J. B. ad sepes passim. *Sonchus laniechus Dalechampii* J. B. *Sonchus affinis Terracrepolæ*, in pascuis. *Stœchas Arabica*, in *Grammontia* sylva copiosè & in sylva prope *Selneuf. Stœchas citrina tenuifolia Narbonensis* J. B. passim. *Stœchadi citrinæ affinis capitulis parvis rarisquamosis, in pappos evanescentibus* J. B. in fissuris rupium juxta *Castelneuf* & alibi. *Tamarix major sive arborea Narbonensis* J. B. ad mare copiosè. *Telephium scorpioides* J. B. circa *Castelneuf. Thlaspi clypeatum serpylli folio* C. B. *Thlaspi fruticosum spinosum* C. B. in rupibus in summa parte montis *Lupi. Thlaspi umbellatum tenuiter diviso folio amarum Narbonense* J. B. in arvis prope patibulum & alibi. *Thymum vulgare rigidius folio cinereo* J. B. in aridioribus passim. *Tragos sive Uva marina minor*, ad mare copiosè. *Tribulus terrestris*, in agris passim. *Trifolium argentatum flor. luteis* J. B. in collibus prope *Castelneuf* & alibi in agro *Monspeliaco. Trifolium hæmorrhoidale* seu *Lotus Libyca Dalechampii*, ad ripas *Ladi* amnis. *Trifolium stellatum purpureum*, circa patibulum & alibi. *Valeriana rubra angustifolia* C. B. in rupibus montis *Lupi. Verbascum sylvestre Monspelliense flore luteo hiante* J. B. in collibus saxosis. *Vinca pervinca major*. Ad sepes.

The City of *Montpellier* is seated upon a Hill in the midst of a rocky Country, its compass being somewhat larger than *Geneva*, but not so populous, the number of its Inhabitants being computed not to be above 25000 Souls, two thirds of which are *Roman Catholicks*, the rest *Protestants*, who have two Churches here. The Houses of this City are for the most part of Free-stone, and well built, but the Streets are very narrow, crooked, irregular and intricate, neither has it any large Market-place. There were then above 130 Apothecaries Shops here, who live for the most part upon the sale of *Cyprus powder, Sweet-bags, Cassolets, Treacle, Confectio Alkermes & Hyacinthi* and *Hungary-water*, being nothing but common Spirit of Wine, in which Rosemary-flowers are macerated and afterwards distill'd from the Flowers. Their Wines hereabouts are very strong, but their Vineyards of dwarf Vines without any support.

At *Montpellier* the best Verdegreece (*Viride æris*) is made in the following manner: They take Grape-stalks well cleansed from the Raisins and from all filth, then putting a certain quantity of the best red Wine in the bottom of a Pot, they set Sticks across a little above the Wine, and upon them lay a quantity of Grape-stalks first also drench'd in Wine, and let them stand thus fifteen days, less or more. These Grape-stalks they put again in the bottom of an earthen Vessel of the best red Wine that begins to sowre, to the quantity of about two or three inches depth; somewhat above the Wine they set Sticks cross the Pot, then take little Plates of Copper; they lay upon the cross Sticks first a layer of the prepar'd Grape-stalks, then a layer of Copper Plates, and so alternatively S.S.S. till the Pot be full, leaving a hole all along for the Vapour of the Wine to ascend. The Pot being fill'd, they cover it, and putting it in a Cellar, after five or six days turn the Copper Plates, and so letting it alone four or five days longer, the *Verdegreece* comes in eight or ten days. This done, they take out the Plates, and laying them six or seven on a heap, put them in a Trough, and sprinkling the edges of them with the same Wine for three or four days, they next press them for four or five days, and last of all scrape off the *Verdegreece* with Knives, and moulding it with a little Wine dry it and sell it. The same Plates are used again as before.

How Verdegreece is made.

Here also we saw the whitening of Wax: They melt Bees-wax in a great Cauldron, of which they cast a Mould of Wood the figure of a Sugar-loaf, first dipt in the slime of Snails made by beating Snails and Shells together in a Mortar, which is perform'd in the same manner as we make our Candles by dipping. Having smoothed it a little with their Hands, they take off, after it is quite cold, from the Mould in form of Cones, which being put in ranks singly in a Garden, supported by Canes or Sticks crossing one another, they set Pots with Water near them, wherewith they sprinkle the Wax six or seven times a day in the Summer, and three or four times at other seasons. In fourteen days the upper end of these Cones being become white, they turn them, so that commonly in a months time they are white all over; then they melt the Wax again in earthen Pans, and run it so melted thro' the Neb of a tin Pot into Water, whilst a man works it into round figures like spiral Wreaths or *Corollæ*, which being order'd as before, in the Garden, till they become entirely white, they melt into great pieces for sale. The form once besmear'd with the Mucilage of Snails, will last dipping many times.

How Wax is whitened.

Montpellier is also famous for the best *Confectio Alkermes*, which grain grows hereabouts in great plenty: Concerning the manner of the preparation of this grain for the Confection, see the *Philosophical Transactions*, Numb. 20. p. 362. and *Dr. Lister's* Letters in the said *Transactions*.

Confectio Alkermes.

At *Montpellier* we also took notice of the manner of making Oyl of Olive: They take Olives, either fresh gather'd or laid in heaps for some time, these being ground like our Apples for Cyder, they put in round thin Baskets made of *Spartum* like Frails, with a round hole in top

the top, but both top and bottom clapping together, so that, when press'd, they look like a round Cake: Half a score or more of these Baskets they fill'd with the bruised Olives, they put one upon another in a Press, and letting down the Press-beam, thus squeeze them; then winding up the Beam, they take out the Baskets, and having put into each a good quantity of scalding Water, and shaking the Baskets, they put them again into the Press and squeeze them as before: This second Operation they repeat again, the Oyl with the Water running out into Vessels which receive it, the Water with the Sediments settling to the bottom, and the Oyl swimming on the top, which is taken off with a Copper Dish, like those we take Cream off with from the Milk. They told us, that in *Provence* they spread their Olives for thirty days upon the ground to dry, which makes their Oyl better than that of *Languedoc*.

The Olives when gather'd are very bitter, notwithstanding which the Oyl is very sweet: The like is to be observ'd in bitter Almonds. The Olives, when they come to maturity, turn black, and are of an ungrateful taste; these afford the most Oyl, but when press'd green, the best; which are also pickled only with Salt and Water, and sent abroad.

A boiling Fountain.

Near *Peroul*, about a league from *Montpellier*, we saw a Fountain wherein the Water did bubble as if it boil'd; and what was further observable, is, that if you dug a hole any where near it, and pour'd Water in it, it would bubble like the Spring; which must be attributed to a certain Vapour ascending out of the Earth, like that which has been observ'd in Mr. *Hawkley*'s Ground about a mile from *Wigan* in *Lancashire*, which Vapour, by the application of a lighted Candle, catches fire; but this Experiment we did not try at *Peroul*.

From *Montpellier* we took a Tour to *Frontignan*, three miles distant from the *Estang*, which gives name to the famous Muscate Wine. The Country lies open to the Sun, the Sea being to the North on the Land-side, enclos'd with a ridge of Hills like a Bow, touching the Sea at each end; the whole like a Theatre, in the *Arena* of which, on the sides of the Hills, grows the *Muscadine* Grape. In this space are two other little Towns, *Miraval* and *Vich*; which last has a Spring of acid Vitriolick Waters much used hereabouts, but are not so strong as our Spaw Waters.

How raisins are made.

At *Frontignan* and some other places we saw the way of making of Raisins (*uvæ passæ.*) They chuse the fairest Bunches, and having snipt off the faulty Grapes with a pair of Scissars, they tie two Bunches together with a String; these they dip into a boiling Lye (*Lixivium*) not for above half a minute, and then taking them out again, wash them in cold Water, and hang them upon wooden Poles for two or three days in the shade to dry, and afterwards expose them to the Sun, taking them in in the night-time or rainy weather. *Cyprianus Eichovius* says, that in *Spain* they make Raisins thus: The *Raisins of the Sun*, of a blew colour, are prepar'd by letting them hang on the Vine, where they are dried by degrees by the heat of the Sun, and afterwards gather'd; but before they are quite ripe, they cut the foot-stalk of the Bunch they design'd for that purpose half asunder, to prevent part of the radical moisture from being convey'd to the Grapes. Their *Baker Raisins* they make as they do in *France*, by dipping them into Lye made of the cuttings of the Vines burnt to ashes, and afterwards spread them upon the Floor, to be dry'd in the Sun. After the same manner they dry their Figs, after they have dipt them in Lye made of the Branches or Cuttings of Figtrees; but I don't question but that the Lye made of the ashes of any indifferent Wood would do as well, as we see it done in *France*.

Baths of Balaruch.

We also took a view of the hot Waters at *Balleruch* near *Frontignan*, being then in the beginning of *September*, the Water was luke-warm, but they told us it was hot in the Winter: The Water thereof is not above two flight-shots from the *Estang*, and tasts very brackish, whether from the nearness of the Sea or from some Salt-mines, I will not determine, tho' I am apt to incline to the last.

A Spring of Petroleum.

At *Gabian*, a days Journey from *Montpellier*, in the way to *Beziers*, is a Spring of *Petroleum*, black, burning like Oyl, and of a strong pungent scent, issuing out from among the Rocks all the Year long, but most in Summer. They gather it with Ladles, and putting it into a Barrel, separate the Water from the Oyl, by letting the first out by means of a Spigot.

How they make Salt.

Upon the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, as at *Berre* near *Martegue* in *Provence*, at *Messina* in *Sicily*, they make Salt of the Sea-water, by letting the Water into a large shallow Plain, there being well heated, they run it into several shallow Beds, like the Beds of a Garden; this being dry'd up by the Sun, they let in more, and so repeat it three or four times, till the Salt remain in the Receptacles three fingers thick, when they take it out, and heap it on little Hills. See the *Philosophical Transactions*, Numb. 51. *p.* 1025.

Since I have mention'd *Martegue*, I will add a word or two out of Mr. *Willoughby*'s Notes concerning the preparation of the *Botargo*. Near this place they take abundance of Mullets (*Mugiles*) in their *Burdigos*, being certain Enclosures of Reeds in the Shallows: The male Mullets are call'd *Allettans*, because they shed the Milt (*Lac piscium*); the females *Botar*, of the Rows or Spawn of which the *Botargo* is made. This Spawn they take out entire, and after they have cover'd it all over with Salt, for four or five hours press it a little between two Boards or Stones, then wash it, and let it dry fourteen days in the Sun, taking it in at night. The Preparation of Botargo.

Decemb. 2. we made an Excursion from *Montpellier* into *Provence*. The chiefest Towns we took notice of were, 1. *Lunel*, four leagues from *Montpellier*. 2. *Arles*, seated upon the *Rhosne*, once the head of the Kingdom of *Arelate*. Beyond it, in the way to *Marseilles*, we pass'd thro' a large Plain cover'd with Stones, call'd hence *les Champs pierreux*, anciently *Campi lapidei*. 3. St. *Chamas*, a large Borough standing upon a ridge, and a narrow Hill on each side, perforated like *Pausilypus*. Among the Rocks here I found *Seseli Æthiopicum fruticosum*, *Alyssum montis Ceti*, *Coris Monspessulana*, *Ruta sylvestris minor*, *Colutea caule Genistæ fungoso* J. B. and abundance of *Genista spinosa*, or our common Furze, near the way sides. Arles.

4. *Marseilles*, an ancient populous and well-built City, with large Stone Houses, but the Streets narrow; it is reckon'd to contain 120000 Souls. The Harbour is very secure and commodious, having a narrow entrance, but capacious within to contain 500 Ships, but none of above 600 Tons. On the Rocks near this place I found *Valeriana rubra* Dod. *Carduus geraldises* J. B. By the Sea-side, *Tragacantha Massiliensium*, *Aster luteus supinus* J. B. *Tithymalus myrsinites angustifolius*, *Coronopus Massiliensis* Lob. 5. *Bausset*. 6. *Olliole*, two little Towns; and 7. *Thoulon*, a place of no great circumference, but very strong, being the best Harbour the *French* are Masters of in the *Mediterranean*, the Bay being capable of the greatest Ships, which may ride here with safety. Marseilles. Thoulon.

How they prepare Capers.

At *Thoulon* they make holes in their Stone Walls near the ground, and there plant Capers, the fruit whereof they prepare thus: They gather the Buds or Blossoms of the Flowers before they be explicated, these they lay thin spread in the shade for three or four hours to wither, and so to prevent the opening of the Flower; then putting them into a Vessel, they pour Vinegar upon them, and let it stand cover'd nine days, then they take them out, and press them gently, and putting on fresh Vinegar, let them stand nine days again; this done the third time, they put them up in Barrels with Vinegar; some mix Salt with the Vinegar, which keeps their colour and taste for three Years.

Near *Bausset* I found plenty of *Myrtle* in the Hedges; near *Olliole*, *Acanthus sativus*; *Althæa frutescens folio rotundiore incano* C. B. *Fumaria minor sive tenuifolia surrecta* J. B. *Acacia trifolia*; *Teucrium vulgare*; *Arisarum latifolium*; *Chrysocome* Ger.

8. St. *Maximine*, near which you see the famous Grot of *Mary Magdalen*, call'd St. *Baulme*. 9. *Aix*, anciently *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from the hot Baths; it is a very neat City, having goodly Houses, broad Streets, and handsom Piazza's. 10. *Selogne*, *Salonia*. In the Cordeliers Church lies buried the famous *French* Astrologer *Nostradamus*, and in the Church Wall you see a Stone with an Inscription to his memory. Aix.

D. M. *Clariss. ossa M. Nostradami unius omnium mortalium judicio digni, cujus penè divino calamo totius orbis ex astrorum influxu futuri eventus conscriberentur. Vixit an.* 62. *m.* 6. *d.* 10. *Obiit Salo*: MDLXVI. *Quietem posteri ne invidete. Anna Pontia Gemella Salonia conjugi optimo* V. F.

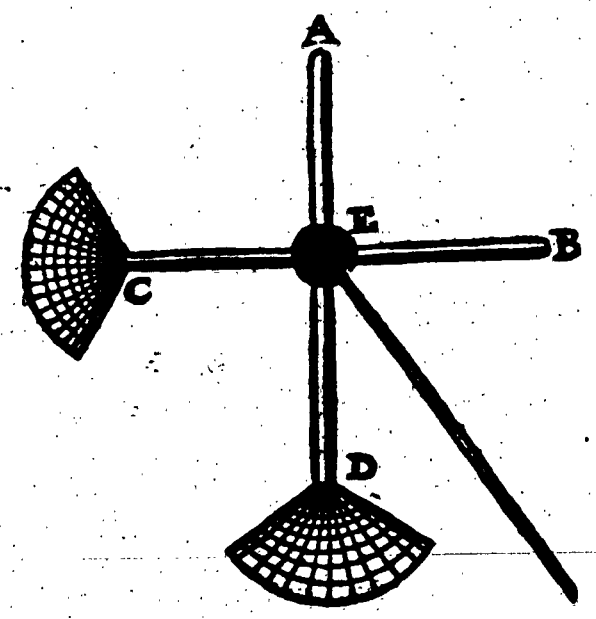
11. *Aiguemortes*, a small but strong place, in the Fens, near the Sea, six leagues from *Montpellier*. From hence we return'd to *Lions*, where taking a Messenger for *Paris*, we continued our Journey from thence to *Calais*, and so cross'd the Sea to *Dover*, where we first began our Journey.

A Relation of a VOYAGE MADE THROUGH A Great Part of SPAIN, BY FRANCIS WILLUGHBY, Esq; CONTAINING The Chief OBSERVABLES he met with there: Collected out of his NOTES.

August 31. 1664. we left *Bagnols*, in the County of *Roussillon*, being the last or furthest Town belonging to the *French*, and at about three fourths of a leagues distance came to a great Stone erected here for a Boundary between *France* and *Spain*; and passing very bad way among desolate Mountains, after many hours riding, we came to *Lansa*, the first Town of the King of *Spain*'s Countrey. All along these Mountains grew Rosemary, common Furze or Gorse, and *Agnus castus* of two sorts, the one with a carnous, the other with a blue Flower. From *Lansa* we went on the same day as far as *Cau de Creux*, five leagues or twenty English miles from *Bagnols*. Among these Mountains we met with no Brooks, and scarce any Water.

Sept. 1. we intended to have seen the Coral-fishing here, but the windy weather hindred us. The Sea must be very calm and smooth, else it is impossible for them to fish for it. It grows downward (as the Urinators told us) under the hollow Rocks, and not upwards as Trees. I believe rather that it grows indifferently either upwards or downwards, according to the situation of the Rocks.

The Engine they use to get it is a great Cross of Wood, A B C D, that at the middle E hath a huge Weight of Lead made fast to it, and at each end A B C D, a round



Net: To the Lead at E is fastned a long Rope. They go out in little Boats, and let down this Cross, and when they have found a Rock at the bottom of the Sea, he that manages the Rope thrusts it into the hollows, getting in one or two of the Legs, and if there be any Coral, it entangles in the Nets at the end of the Cross, by which it is torn off and brought up. The natural colour of the Coral, while it is alive and growing to the Rocks, is a pale carnous; but when the Scurf (which answers to the Bark in Trees) is rubbed off, it is red. The Coral that dies or is broken off from the Rocks, loses that carnous Scurf or Bark in the Sea, and becomes red, though sometimes it gets a greenish white Rust. They say it is fifty years before it comes to its full growth: but that, I conceive, is an ungrounded Conjecture. They sometimes, but very rarely, find Branches of three or four pounds weight: it rots, dies, grows light, worm-eaten and full of holes like Wood; they all affirm'd it to be hard, and not soft, as it grows under Water, contrary to the current Tradition of the Ancients, *Mollis fuit herba sub undis*. I believe the outward Scurf or Bark may be soft, it easily crumbling off afterwards, which might give occasion to the Fable. They told us, that a piece of Coral (having the carnous Scurf upon it) wetted, is just the same as when it is first taken out of the Sea. The best Coral, rude as it is found, is worth a Pistole the pound, or two or three Pieces of eight; polish'd and wrought into Beads, Bracelets, &c. at *Marseilles* it is sold for thirty, forty, and sometimes sixty Sols (*i. e.* so many Pence) the ounce. They find here white Coral also, but very rarely.

Near *C. de Creux*, upon the Mountains, they find a kind of *Selenites*, which may be cut or slit into very thin Plates, like the common *Muscovy*-glass.

Upon the Shore are thrown up *Conchæ veneres* of several sorts and magnitudes, and other small Shells of affinity to them, which they call *Porcellane*: These they put in the Juice of Lemons or Citrons, and set them out in an open Bottle all night. The Dew mingling with the acid Juice, dissolves the Porcellane. This Liquor they use for a Cosmetick.

They catch Fish about *C. de Creux*, as at *Naples*, by hanging a Fire-brand or other light at the end of the Boat, which entices the Fish into the Nets.

This day we pass'd by *Rosas*, a strong Garison, *Castillon*, *Villa sacra*, and lay at *Figera*.

Sept. 2. we pass'd *Crispia*, *Basalon*, *Argelagues*, St. *Ja*— and lay at *Castel-foulet*, five leagues: All the way we observ'd abundance of Pomegranate-trees: *C. Foulet* is a small Garison.

Sept. 3. We passed by *Aulot*, where we saw a Bufalore, of which there are divers in that Town: It is a Hole or Cave, out of which continually issues a cool Air; they keep Bottles of Wine, Fruit, &c. in a little House built over the Cave; the Wine here kept drinks as cool as if it were kept in Ice or Snow: They say that it is the Water running and falling down under the Ground that makes these *Spiracula*, which is not unlikely. They are all on the left side of the River, as you go to *Vich*, and none on the right. This day also we passed *Rhoda*, and lay at *Vich*, 7 leagues.

Sept. 4. We went to the Hill where the Amethysts or Violet-stones are found, distant two leagues from *Vich*, call'd

call'd *S. Sigmiont*. On the top of the Hill is an hermitage and place of Devotion, where S. *Sigmiont* a *Burgundian* King did Penance. The Amethysts are found lower in the side of the Hill, Viscount *Jacque* is Lord of the Soil, and whoever opens a Mine, pays him a Pistol and a half *per mensem*. They find the Stones by following a Vein of reddish or black Earth, or a Vein in the Rock so colour'd. They are all hexangular, and pointed like Crystal. There are of three sorts, the best are the blackest or deepest Violet. 2. Others are almost quite white. 3. Some, but very rarely, are found tinctur'd with yellow: They sometimes stick a great many together to the Rock, like the *Bristow*-diamonds, but those are never good; the best are found loose in the chinks of the Rock, in a fat yellowish or reddish Earth: They scrape out this earth with long narrow Knives that enter into the chinks, and then crumble it in pieces with their Fingers, to feel for the Stones: They are afterwards ground and polish'd upon leaden Moulds, after the same manner as Crystal is. First they use the dust of *Smiril* or Emery, and at last of *Tripoli*. All along the way to this Hill we saw abundance of *Arbutus* and *Rhus coriariorum* call'd *Rhondo*. In this Countrey they use not bark of Oak to tan their Leather, as we do, but the leaves and branches of this Shrub, which they first bruise with a perpendicular Stone, and then mingle with Water, and heating the Water lukewarm, steep the Skins in it three or four days. In these Mountains are also found Emeralds, Gold and other sorts of Minerals and Stones, but it doth not turn to account to search for them. Topazes are found in a Lake call'd the Lake of *Silles*, not far from S. *Colomna* near *Girona*: They find them upon the Shore of the Lake.

Sept. 5. At *Vich* there is a great Market-place, and a Church at a Covent, said to have been built by *Charlemagne*, when he had discomfited the *Saracens*, and driven them out of *Catalonia*. This night we lodg'd at *Moia*, having travel'd only three leagues.

6. We rode within sight of *Montserret*, broken at the top into Rocks standing like the Teeth of a Saw, from whence it took its name. There is a Chapel of our Lady, a place of great Devotion. This night we lodg'd at *Casa della pobla*, a single Inn, 5 leagues.

7. We came to *Cardona*, two leagues. All the way as we rode, the Rocks and Stones were full of round holes, just like those in the Stones at *Ancona*, in which the *Pholades* harbour; and there is no question but these holes have been made by some Animal before the Stones were hardned.

8. We view'd the Mountain of Salt, where were three Officers, one to weigh the Salt, another to receive Money, and the third to keep Accounts: The Revenue of this Salt amounts yearly to about 30000 Pieces of eight; for every Quintal, that is 104 pounds, they pay ten Reals of two Sous to a Real. The Salt is hard, and transparent like Crystal, and when powder'd fine, as white as Snow; they hew it out with Axes and Mattocks, and make Chaplets, Boxes, &c. of it: They say there is no end of it, but that it reaches to the center of the Earth. Near the place where they work, there are two Caves within the Rock of Salt, to the end of one of which they never durst venture to go.

Not far from this there is another Mountain of Salt, where the Salt sticks to the Rocks, and is most of it tinctur'd with red: Of this red Salt they make broad Plates like Tiles, which they call *Ruggiola*; these they heat before the Fire, but never put them into it, and use them to take away Aches, strengthen the Stomach, keep the Feet warm, &c. well heated on both sides, they will keep warm for 24 hours. Amongst this red Salt there is a kind of *Selenitis*, (which some call Ising-glass, and the Italians *Gesso*, from the Latin word *Gypsum*, signifying Chalk, because when burnt it is turn'd into a white *calx*) which naturally roches into Parallelipipedums of the figure of a Lozenge; of which sort of Stones many are found in several places of our Nation. About these Mountains of Salt grows great plenty of *Halimus* and *Limonium*.

Cordona is a Dukedom containing three or four Villages besides the Town: The Duke thereof is one of the richest Grandees of *Spain*, having three Dukedoms, four Marquisates, two Earldoms, &c. the Name of his Family is *Folke*. He lives for the most part at *Madrid*, but sends every three Years a Governor. The King of *Spain* hath nothing at all to do with this City; and the Duke never imposes any Taxes, but hath only all the Tithes of the Corn, Wine, &c. There is a Council of 36 chang'd every Year, and he that hath been of the Council must wait three Years before he can be chosen again: The last thing the Council does, is to chuse a new Council for the Year following. This new Council is divided into four Ranks, not equally, but as the old Council shall think fit; and their Names are put into four Boxes, out of every Box a Child takes out one to be Consul: He that is drawn out of the first Box is the first Consul, and so in order. Near the Town is a Castle, and in the Castle a Tower, said to be built by *Charlemagne*. Every Duke hath an Oath given him by the Consuls, wherein is an Article, that he must reside in the Castle, which is never kept.

We passed thro' *Kalah*, and lay at a single Inn a league and an half further, four leagues and an half distant from *Cardona*. *Sept.* 9.

We passed thro' S *Columba*, *Reccafort*, and lay at *Sireall*, five leagues and an half. 10.

We passed by *Pobla*, a famous ancient Monastery, about two leagues distant from *Sireall*. In the Church there are a great many Monuments; they told us, that thirteen Queens and seven Kings lay interr'd there. Then we passed *Praves*, and lay that night at *Coulnouvil*, 5 leagues. All over *Catalonia* they reckon a league two hours, and make account that four *Catalonian* leagues are equal to six *French*. We heard that there were Amethysts also found about *Praves*. 11.

We passed by *Falset*, two leagues from *Coulnouville*, where there are a great many Lead-mines; the Oar is very rich, and they melt it just as it is taken out of the Mine, without bearing it to powder. They sell the Oar for 40 *Reals* of *Ardit* the Quintal, a Quintal being 122 pounds: Five Quintals of Oar usually yield four Quintals of Lead. This Town, and the Mines about it, belong to the Duke of *Cardona*. They told us, that the Vein of Metal lay always East and West: The best and finest of this Oar they grind to powder, and thereof make Varnish to lead earthen Pots and Vessels with, sprinkling the Powder upon the Pots. This night we lay at *Tivisa*, four leagues. 12.

We passed *Venu-felet*, *Tivians*, and lodg'd at *Tortosa*, six leagues. All along the way we saw a great deal of *Palma humilis Hispanica non spinosa*; the Fruit grew up in bunches out of the ground, like the Berries of *Arum*, and was not much bigger; those that were ripe were of a reddish colour, of an oblong figure, and divided into four quarters: those that were less ripe were yellowish; the Skin and Pulp very thin, and did but just serve to cover the Stone: It hath the smell and taste of Dates: The Stones, being broken, are not at all hollow, but have a hard white Kernel or Pearl within them. We observ'd also abundance of *Garoffus*, (as they call it) i. e. *Caroba* sive *Siliqua dulcis*, the Cods whereof they give their Mules instead of Provender. The *Spanish* Soldiers, at the Siege of *Barcellona*, had nothing but these *Siliquæ* and Water to live upon. All over *Catalonia* the People are generally poor; they use neither Glass nor Paper in their Windows, but only Shuts of Wood. 12.

Tortosa is a very poor and desolate Town. There is a Bridge of Boats over the River *Iberus*, now call'd *Ebro*, in sight of which we rode all along from *Tivisa* hither. At *Tortosa* they were wont to make Saltsellars, Mortars, Bowls, Beads, &c. of a kind of Marble of a mingled colour, red and yellow, found near the Town, which they call *Jasper*, and of another greenish Marble spotted with black, brought from *Genoa*.

We went to the Jasper-mine about two miles from the Town, with one of the chief Workmen: We saw there vast Pillars hewn out and wrought for a Church in *Palermo*. He told us, that all the Veins of Marble, Jasper, &c. went from East to West; that they saw'd these Stones to make Tables, &c. with only Water and Sand; that when there was not enough red in the Stone, they made little holes, and set in red Stones: that the Cement they used for all Stones in Mosaick Works was made of one half Mastich, and one half Greek Pitch: that in building they joyn'd the Stones together with ordinary Lime, but on the outside they fill'd up the chinks with a Cement made of the Powder of the Jasper mingled with Sulphur and *Mangra*; to make it more white, they put in more Sulphur, to make it more red, they put in more *Mangra*. The Jasper was hew'd out with Chizzels and Hammers, just as Stone in our Stone-pits; it is afterwards polish'd with Armoril, *i. e.* the Powder they use to polish Armour with, and to give it a lustre, so that one may see his Face in it, with the Powder of the Cinders of the best Tin. 15.

This day we set out towards *Valence*, passing the *Ebro* by the Bridge of Boats, and lodg'd at *Galera*, a small Village two leagues distant from *Tortosa*.

We pass'd by *Tregera*, whereabouts seem'd to be the ruins of an old *Roman* way, *Mattheau*, *Salsandail*, and lay at *Lescova*, 7 leagues. Near *Lescova* we found store of *Oleander* with a red Flower. 16.

We

Sept. 17. We passed *Cabanes*, *Peblettа*, *Buriol*, *Villa real*, *Annules*, 7 leagues. This Journey we saw a great many Rivers quite dried up, and for above a month together had scarce any Rain; that little that was, always came just from the Sea.

18. We passed *Chinces*, *Almenare*, *Monfuedere* (*an Saguntum?*) *Massa-mogril*, *Albalade*, and arriv'd at *Valence*, 7 leagues. Near *Valence* the Country is very populous and well cultivated. Abundance of Mulberry-trees are planted in rows all the Fields over. As we passed thro' the Market-place at *Valence*, all the People houted at us, and threw Parings of Melons, *&c.* on our Cloaks. It seems they are not used to see Strangers and Travellers there: this was the first place in *Spain* where we were search'd: In this City is an University; I heard a Professor read Logick. The Scholars are sufficiently insolent, and very disputatious: One of them ask'd me, *Quid est Ens universale?* and whether I was of *Thomas Aquinas*'s Opinion: another, *Quid est Genus?* None of them understood any thing of the new Philosophy, or had so much as heard of it. None of the new Books are to be found in any of their Booksellers Shops: In a word, the University of *Valence* is just where our Universities were 100 years ago.

In the Kingdom of *Valence* the King of *Spain* is not absolute; but to impose Taxes, raise Soldiers, *&c.* he must have the consent of the three Estates, *i.e.* 1. the Clergy; 2. the Nobility; 3. the Cities and Villages; and if one of these refuse to consent, nothing can be done. These three Estates have six Deputies, two for each, who are chang'd every third Year. Of the two for the Cities, one is for the City of *Valentia*, and the other for all the rest. Each City chusing a Syndick, one is taken by lot to be a Deputy: The six Deputies have the care and government of the Militia; upon any urgent occasion the Deputies must assemble the three Estates, *i.e.* the chief of the Clergy, the Nobility, and the Syndicks of the Cities.

The City of *Valence* is govern'd by six Jurats or Consuls; they are taken by lot out of six Urns or Burses, two out of each: In the first Urn are the Names of all the better sort of Nobility that have the title of *Dons*; in the second Urn, the Names of the lower rank of Nobility, that have not the title of *Don*; in the third, the Names of all rich Citizens that are not Gentlemen; they must have at least 400 Crowns yearly Rent, besides what their Wives bring. Besides these, there is a Rationel and two Syndicks chang'd every third Year; six Advocates for their Lives, and forty Plebeians chang'd yearly. The City being divided into fifteen Trades or Companies, each Company chuses two, which make thirty; the other ten are chosen, two by the Rationel, and eight by the six Jurats and two Syndicks, each chusing one. Of all these Officers, and the forty Plebeians, consists the Senate, but nothing can be done, unless there be 29 of the Plebeians present at least. There is also, 1. a Judge for Criminal Causes, taken by turns out of the three Urns, and chang'd yearly: He hath an Advocate to assist him, who is chang'd yearly, but so that all the Advocates in the City have the place by turns; and a Lieutenant Criminel, taken by lot out of the forty Plebeians. 2. A *Mustafa*, who has the care of all kind of Victuals, Corn, Weights, Measures, *&c.* He is taken by lot out of the three Burses, as the criminal Judge is, and hath also a Lieutenant out of the 40. Moreover, there is a Judge for civil Causes, taken out of the three Burses, who has an Advocate like the criminal Judge, but he cannot decide Causes of above fifteen Crowns.

The University is govern'd by the Town, who every third year chuse a *Rector* that must be a Canon. The other Officers are, a Beadle, a Sergeant, and a Puntadore, who is to take notice when any Professor fails to read. There are eight *Præpositi* in this University, four for Divinity, two for the Canon Law, and two for the Civil Law; who have each 500 Crowns yearly. There are also four Readers for Philosophy, seven for Physick, one for the Greek Tongue, one for the Hebrew, and two for the Mathematicks. These have but small Stipends, but all their Scholars that come to hear their Lectures pay somewhat yearly. If a Professor promote three rich Scholars, that are able to pay the Fees, to any Degree, he may promote a fourth, that is poor, for nothing: The Degrees are the same with those in our Universities, *viz.* 1. Batchelour, after they have finish'd a course in Philosophy, which Degree costs about 12 crowns. 2. Master of Arts, which costs 80. 3. Batchelour in Divinity, Law or Physick, which costs 16. 4. Doctor, which costs 150. They may be Masters of Arts presently after they are Batchelours, if they will, and in like manner Doctors: In the Markets at *Valence* and all *Spain* over, they divide both their Hens and Chickens into pieces and sell them by quarters: They make great Vessels of Goats-Skins to put Wine and Oyl in, and lesser Bottles, which they call *Boto's*. The Women paint, laying it on so thick, as if one daub'd *Minium* upon a Wall. No Garison nor Soldiers here.

We set out from *Valence*, and passing by *Masanasse*, *Cafareggi* and *Beilla*, lodg'd at *Mussafes*, 3 leagues. Coming out of *Valence*, we were fain to give Money at three places to avoid searching. *Sept.* 24.

We passed *Cullera*, where we ferried over a great River call'd *Xucar*, and lay at *Gandia*. There is a College and an University, as appears by this Inscription upon the Wall of the College: 25.

Sanctus Franciscus à Borgia, Dux Gandiæ 4, Præpositus generalis Societatis Jesu 3 hoc Collegium & hanc Universitatem à fundamentis erexit A. D. 1546.

At *Cullera* the Wine first began to be sweet, and three leagues off, at *Gandia*, the Plantation of Sugar-canes began. Q. Whether the nature of the Soil, that was fit to nourish the Sugar-canes, did not also contribute to the sweetness of the Grapes? At *Gandia* we first found Raisins of the Sun (as they are call'd in *England*) in *Spain* they call this kind *Pansa*, and they seem to be the *Duracine* of the Ancients: they are all white, round, and have a tougher Skin than other Grapes; they gather them when fully ripe, and dip them in a boiling *Lixivium* of Water and Ashes, just dipping them in, and taking them out again, and then dry them upon Boards in the Sun, taking them in by night or in foul weather. The name Raisin comes from *Racemus*. Figs are dried just as they are gather'd, not being dipt into any *Lixivium*.

I went to *Olives*, where, and at *Gandia*, are the Engines for Sugar-works, the best are at *Olite*. By the way we saw the Sugar-canes growing in several places; they are planted in low wet grounds well mucked and dressed; divided into beds or hillocks and furrows. They cut the Canes close to the Roots in *November* and *December*, and cutting off the slender Tops, which afford no good Juice, keep them under ground till *March*, and then prick them into these hillocks or beds: Out of every *talea*, or cut, shoot four, five or six Canes, which will be ripe the next *December*. The knots or joints of the Cane at the bottom are very close together, scarce an inch asunder, but upwards the distance is more, as the Cane grows slenderer: Within is a white Pulp or Pith, full of Sap, sweet as Honey: They sell them at *Gandia* to eat, and cutting them into pieces just in the middle between two knots, suck the pieces at both ends. To make Sugar, after the Canes are cleansed from the tops and leaves, and cut into pieces, they are first bruised either with a perpendicular Stone running round, as Apples to make Cyder, or *Olives* to make Oyl, or between two Axes strongly capped with Iron, horizontally placed, and turned contrary ways, and then pressed as Grapes or Olives are. The Juice thus pressed out, is boil'd in three several Cauldrons, one after another; in the third Cauldron it becomes thick and black, and is then put into conical Pots, which at the bottom have a little hole stopt only with course and foul Sugar; Mr. *Ligon* saith, with Plantane Leaves: These Pots are cover'd, when full, with a Cake of Paste made of a kind of Earth call'd in Spanish *Gritto*, and found near Olives, which is good to take spots out of Clothes, which Cap or Cover sinks as the Sugar sinks. [Mr. *Swift* told me, that the Clay they use with us is Tobacco-pipe-clay, or very like it, and that the Water in the Clay served to wash down and carry away the *Molasses*, at least the Clay helps the separation and precipitation of it] These conical Pots are put into other Pots, into which, by the hole at the *Vertex*, the Juice dreins down thro' the course Sugar at the bottom. It dreins so for five or six months, in which time the Sugar in the conical Pots grows hard and white, all the Juice being either drunk up by the Lute, or run out by the hole at the *Vertex*: This Juice is boil'd again so long as it is good for any thing, but at last it makes only a foul red Sugar, that will never be better. The conical loaves of Sugar, after they are taken out, are set to drein over the same Pots for fourteen or fifteen days. To make the Sugar more white, they must boil it again, but about one sixth is lost every time. A pound of Sugar of 12 ounces is sold at *Olives* for three *Sous* and a half; refined, for five or six *Sous*. The Sugar-juice is strain'd thro' Strainers of Linen, as it is put out of one Cauldron into another: They take it out of the first and second Cauldrons so soon as it begins to boil, but in the third Cauldron they let it boil till the Scum rises, and then take it off, only the Scum, with a Scummer, and put it into a long Trough to cool, and when it is cool, put it into the conical Pots. One Scum rises after another in the third Cauldron: the Scum, when it is taken off, 26

off, is white, but turns to a black Liquor in the Trough. They never refine the Sugar more than three or four times: they uſe for the refining of it Whites of Eggs, putting in two or three dozen into a Cauldron: they uſe but one Cauldron for refining. When it is refin'd, it grows white and hard in nine or ten days. The Juice boil'd up, is eaten with Bread toſted, as Honey: the Juice of the refin'd Sugar is much better than the firſt Juice. The Duke of *Gandia* ſends Preſents of this refin'd Juice to the Queen of *Spain*. When they refine it, they put in a little Water into the Cauldrons to diſſolve it the better. But for a more exact deſcription of the whole proceſs of the Sugar works, I refer to *Piſo*, in his Natural Hiſtory of *Braſil*, and *Ligon*, in his Deſcription of the *Barbados*. The Sugar of *Olives* is better than the Sugar of *Gandia*. At *Motril* in *Granada* they alſo make a great deal of Sugar.

About *Valence*, *Gandia*, &c. the Earth is always wrought, and never lies fallow or idle; they reckon five *Raccolta's* or Crops in one Year; 1. Of Mulberry-leaves for Silk. 2. Wheat and other *European* Grain. 3. *Daſi*, i. e. *Maiz* or *Indian* Wheat. 4. Grapes. 5. Olives; and 6. at *Gandia* Sugar-canes. After the Wheat is cut, they preſently ſow the *Indian* Wheat. They complain'd, that lately, for a great many Years together, they had very bad *Raccolta's* for want of Rain, which had almoſt ruin'd *Spain*.

Sept. 27. We paſſed *Benegana*, and lay at *Chativer*, ſix leagues and a half. *Chativer* is an ancient Town of the *Moors*, and was once head of one of their little Kingdoms. About a league from the Town began a very remarkable Aquæduct, made by the *Moors*; it was juſt over a River along the ſide of a Hill, in moſt places not above a yard or two under ground, and had a great many Funnels juſt like the tops of Chimneys, to give vent, and let out the Water when there ſhould be too much. The tops of theſe Funnels were made of a red Clay and Pebble Stones. The Water came almoſt to the top in all of them, but run over but in one.

28. We paſſed in ſight of *Monteſa*, a Caſtle belonging to the Knights of *Monteſa*, that wear a red Croſs; *Ortenente*, and lodg'd at *Bechert*, ſix leagues.

29. Near *Alicant*, among the Mountains, there is a very good breed of Falcons. In the Plains near *Alicant* grows abundance of *Gramen ſpartum Plinii ſive ſportularum Officinarum* J. B. *i. e.* Matweed, of which the Frails wherein they put Raiſins and other Fruit are made: This in *Spain* they call *Spar*, at *Marſeilles*, *Auffe*. The Women hereabout gather abundance of this, and ſteep it in Sea-water till it be well ſoftned; then they dry it, and carry it by Sea to *Marſeilles*, where they ſell it at eight *eſcus* the Milliere: Every Milliere conſiſts of ten Packieres, every Packiere of an hundred Manado's or handfuls. Of this they make Cables for Ships, Baskets, *&c.* In this days Journey we ſaw a great many Fountains cover'd with long Arches, to hinder them from being dried up. We paſſed *Elda*, *Novelda*, *Aſpe*, *Clavillente*, *Albitella*, and lay at *Orivola*, eleven leagues.

30. We came to *Murcia*, four leagues. Near *Orivola* (which City is an Epiſcopal See) we obſerv'd many Turpentine-trees, ſome in flower, and ſome with ripe Berries. Near *Elda* they dig up a ſort of *Selenite*, which they burn and put into Wine to clarifie it. About a league from *Orivola* began the Kingdom of *Murcia*: two leagues from *Orivola* we were fain to give Money to avoid ſearching. *Murcia*, which gives denomination to this Kingdom, is a pitiful deſolate Town. The Fiſh-market here is ſhut up in a Cage or Grate, as at *Genoa*, the People crowding about it, and thruſting in their Baskets as there.

October 1. We travel'd thro' a miſerable deſolate Countrey to *Mula*, ſeven leagues.

2. We paſſed thro' *Caravacca*, where they drive a great trade of making little Croſſes of Silver, Braſs, Wood, *&c.* After that Pilgrims, Travellers, *&c.* have bought them, they carry them to the Caſtle to touch them by a famous Croſs, which according to their fabulous Legend deſcended miraculouſly from Heaven, which, forſooth, infuſes a wonderful virtue into them. We lay this night at an odd Houſe four leagues off *Caravacca*, having travel'd in all ten leagues.

3. We paſſed by *Venta nova*, and came to *Hueſca*, eight leagues. At *Hueſca* we firſt ſaw a yellowiſh Whitewine like Sack. The Kingdom of *Granada* began about four leagues before we came to *Hueſca*. The Town of *Hueſca* belongs to the Duke of *Alva*.

4. We paſſed by *Baſa*, and reſted at *Venta*, eight leagues.

5. We travel'd to *Guadix*, an Epiſcopal See, and ancient *Roman*-Colony. Upon the Gates we took notice of this Inſcription:

Recipit Colonia Accitana Gemellenſis provincia caput primas omnium Hiſpaniarum fidem Chriſti Jeſu, reſectis idolis, evangelizantibus ſanctis Torcato & ſocis, Anno ſalutis 70, Pontificatus S. Petri 37, Imperii Neronis 13. Urbi Accis patrono ſuo ſanctiſſimo D. D. 1593. Honorati ſunt Amici tui Deus. Colonia Accitana.

We travel'd to *Granada*, ſix leagues diſtant from *Duſnot*, where we lodg'd the night before. Here we ſaw the Caſtle call'd *La Lhambra*, the Seat of the Kings of *Granada*. Within the Walls of the Caſtle live abundance of People, which dare not live in the City for Debt or other cauſes. There is a fair Palace begun by *Charles* V. and yet unfiniſh'd: the outſide of it is ſquare, but it is round within, having two rows of Cloyſters one above another, round about the Court. Adjoyning to this is the ancient Palace of the Kings of *Granada*: within there is all the ſame kind of Moreſco-work wrought in Mortar and Stone, with Gold and Painting. The Cloyſters are ſupported by long ſlender Pillars. In this Palace is an octagonal Chamber vaulted at the top, with eight Doors, one in every ſide. If one ſtand in one Angle, and whiſper to another that ſtands in the Angle diametrically oppoſite, the Voice is convey'd as in the whiſpering-place at *Glouceſter*: but if you ſtand in an Angle that is not diametrically oppoſite, you hear nothing. The reaſon of the conveying the Voice is the Vault above, and the Corners being ſtreightned into a very ſharp Angle or Channel. In *Granada* are two great Market-places, one call'd *Pleſſa nova*, the other *de Villa Rambla*. In the great Church are two Monuments, one for *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, with this Inſcription:

Mahometicæ ſectæ proſtratores, Hæreticæ pervicaciæ exſtinctores; Fernandus Aragonum & Heliſabetha Caſtellæ, vir & uxor unanimes, Catholici appellati marmoreo clauduntur hoc tumulo.

The other is of *Philippus* I. and *Joanna*, Daughter and Heir of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, without an Inſcription. In the River *Daro*, that runs by *Granada*, they find Gold among the Sand. In the Mountains of *Sierra nevada* near *Granada*, are ſaid to be divers ſorts of Minerals, which are not at all look'd after. Near *Motril*, at the *Cape di Gatto*, there is a Mine of Granates cover'd with the Sea. They are pointed as Amethyſts and Cryſtal, but the beſt come from *Africa*.

We ſaw that day *Monte Sacro*, a place within half a league of the Town, of great Devotion. In *Caſtile*, *Granada*, &c. the greater Cities have a *Corregidore*, and the leſſer an *Alcayde*, who adminiſter Juſtice, and are appointed and ſent by the King to govern the Towns. All over the Kingdom of *Caſtile* they eat Fleſh upon Saturdays, and obſerve only Fridays.

12. We left *Granada*, and paſſing by *Santa Fede*, travel'd to *Lotta*, eight leagues.

13. At *Lotta* we were troubled with Soldiers that came from the Frontiers of *Portugal* to take up their Winter Quarters: there had been of this Party 2600, but this Summer at *Alcantara* they were reduc'd to 900, the reſt being ſlain, or dead of Diſeaſes. We paſſed this day by *Archidona*, *Lalameda*, *Laranda*, and lay at *Pedrera*, ten leagues.

14. We paſſed by *Oſſuna*, *la Pobla*, and lay at *Elazabal*, ten leagues. This Countrey was the beſt we ſaw ſince we came into *Spain*, the Land being for the moſt part well planted and cultivated.

15. We paſſed by *Gandula*, and arriv'd at *Sevil*, ſeven leagues. Between *Gandula* and *Sevil* there are abundance of Olive-trees: Here we firſt ſaw the greater ſort of Olives, which are uſually eaten in *England* for a Sallet, call'd the great *Spaniſh* Olive; all that we had ſeen in *Italy* or in *Spain* before being of the leſſer ſort. Here is a brave Aquæduct of Brick, which conveys Water from *Carmona*, ſix leagues diſtant: under the Arches there are *Scalæ Hiſtes*, as at the Aquæduct of *Piſa*. The Galeons bring nothing home from the *Weſt-Indies* but Plate, the Merchants Ships are loaden with Leather, Cocao, Sugar, *Lana di Vigonna*, &c. Of the Cocao-Nut they make *Chocolate* thus; firſt they roſt the Berries to get off the Huſk, then pound the Kernels to powder, and to every *Miliao* (*i. e.* three pound and a half) of powder they add and mingle two pound of Sugar, twelve Vanilla's, a little Pimentone or Guiny-pepper, (which is uſed by the *Spaniards* only) and a little *Acchiote* to give a colour; but theſe two laſt may be omitted; they melt the Sugar, and then mingle all well together, and work it up either in Rolls or Loaves.

April

Sevil hath of late decay'd very much, and doth continually decay more and more, the Trading being most remov'd to *Cales*, the reason whereof is, because they pay about 27 *per Cent.* for all Merchandizes at *Sevil*, and but 4 or 5 *per Cent.* at *Cales*. The chief places to be seen in *Sevil* are, 1. the great Church; 2. the King's or Assistant's Palace; 3. the Archbishop's Palace; 4. the Steeple of the great Church, like St. *Mark*'s Tower at *Venice*, which you ascend almost to the top without Stairs, by gently-inclining Plains; 5. the *Franciscan* Covent; 6. The *Longa*, where the Merchants meet about the Affairs of the Flote; 7. the Convent of *Nostredame del Peuple*; 8. the Bridge of Boats over the *Guadalquivir*, *i.e.* the River *Bætis*, the Town on the other side this River is call'd *Triana*; 9. the Inquisition or Castle of *Triana*, just over the Bridge; 10. an old Tower call'd *Torre d'Oro*, where St. *Ferdinand* that recover'd *Sevil* kept Money made of Leather; 11. the Aquæduct; 12. the old Palace and Garden of the *Moors*. Near the Bridge, along the River side, they come every night with their Coaches to take the *fresco*. In the great Church, between two Altars, are three Monuments for St. *Ferdinand* the wife, his Wife *Beatrice*, and his Son *Alphonsus*: The same Epitaph in Hebrew, Arabick, Greek, and Latin.

Hic jacet illustrissimus Rex Ferdinandus Castelliæ & Toleti, Legionis, Galliciæ, Sibiliæ, Cordubæ, Murciæ & Jaheni, qui totam Hispaniam conquisivit, fidelissimus, veracissimus, constantissimum, justissimus, strenuissimus, detentissimus, liberalissimus, patientissimus, piissimus, humillimus, in timore & servitio Dei efficacissimus; qui construxit & exterminavit penitus hostium suorum proterviam; qui sublimavit & exaltavit omnes amicos suos, qui civitatem Hispalem quæ caput est & metropolis totius Hispaniæ de manibus eripuit paganorum, & cultui restituit Christiano; ubi solvens naturæ debitum ad Dominum transmigravit ultima die Maii, Anno ab incarnatione Domini 1252.

In the same Church is *Fernandus Columbus*, *Christopher Columbus*'s Son, buried, with this Epitaph:

Aqui jace el mucho magnifico signor Don Hernando Colon. el quel expleo y gasto toda su vida y facenda en aumento di las Letras y en juntar y perpetuar en esta cividad todos los libros di todas las scientiæ qui in su tempo hallo y en ridurlos à quatro libros segun estan à qui senalados. Fallescio en esta cividad à 12 di Julio 1532. *An. de su edad* 50 *an.* 10 *menses & 14 dies. Fue Hyio del valeroso & memorabile Signor Don Christophoro Colon. primiero Admirante qui descubrio las Indias y nuevo mundo, en vida di los Catholicos Reys Don Fernando y Donna Isabella di gloriosa memoria, à onze de Octobre dy mill quatrocentos y noventa, y dos annos, y partio del puerto de Palos à descubrirlas con tres Carabelas y noventa personas di tres de Agosto ..... innes ..... y bolvio a Castilla con la victoria à quattro di Marzo del anno siguente, y torno despues otras dos vezes à poblar lequale scubrio, y al fin fallescio à Valladolid à vente de Mayo de mill y quinccentos y seys annos, Rogad al Senior por elus.*

Chocolate is sold at *Sevil* for something more than a Piece of Eight the pound. Vanillas, which they mingle with the Cocao to make Chocolate, for a *Real di Plato*. Acchiote, which they mingle with the other Ingredients to give a colour, is made of a kind of red Earth brought from *New Spain*, wrought up into Cakes, it is sold for a *Real di Plato* the ounce. All the Oyl and Wine they have in the *West-Indies* goes from *Spain*, they not being permitted to plant Vines or Olive-trees, that they may always have a dependance upon *Spain*. At and near *Sevil* we paid two *Reals de quarto* a Bed; Bread, Wine, Flesh, and all other Commodities excessive dear, excepting only Olives and Pomegranates, which were better here than in any other part of *Spain*. There had lately been a great Plague in *Sevil*, which had very much depopulated and impoverish'd, indeed almost ruin'd, the City.

Octob. 23. I set out from *Sevil* towards *Madrid*: the first day we travel'd to *Carmona*, where the Aquæduct 'forementionⁿd begins, six leagues; in all which way we saw no Houses, but a great many Aloe-trees.

24. We passed *Les fontes*, and lay at *Ecija*, a great Town of above 20000 Inhabitants. Between *Carmona* and *Ecija* is a very good Countrey, abundance of Corn and Olive-trees. *Ossuna* is within four leagues of *Ecija*, where the Duke of *Ossuna* hath a Palace. We travel'd this day nine leagues.

25. We passed over the River *Xenil*, that runs into *Guadalquivir*, baited at *Arrasith*, and lodg'd at *Cordova*, eight leagues. About a league from *Cordova* we passed another little River that runs into *Guadalquivir*. Before we enter'd *Cordova*, we rode over a great Stone Bridge that here crosses the *Guadalquivir*. In the middle of the Bridge stands a Statue erected to the Angel *Raphael* with this Inscription:

Beatissimo Raphaeli Angelorum proceri, custodi suo vigilantissimo, qui ante annos 300 *sub Paschali antistite, populum peste depopulante se medicum tantæ cladis futurum prædixit, qui subinde Anno* 1578, *venerabili Presbytero Andreæ de Cos Roelas S. S. M. M. exuviæ evulgavit, & tandem præfecit Cordubensium tutelam sibi à Deo demum datam. Quare ut justa gratitudo diu stares S. P. Q. Cordubensis hanc lapideam statuam cautus & pius erexit, mulctâ procuratione Domini Josephi de Valdeana & Herera & Domini Gundisalvi de Cea & Rios Senatorum, Pontifice Innocente X, Hispan. rege Philippo IV, Episcopo Domino Fratre Petro de Tapia, Prætore Domino Alphonso de flores & monte negro: Anno* 1651.

The most considerable places in *Cordova* are, 1. the Bishop's Palace: 2. the *Cavallerisca*, where the King keeps a great many Horses: 3. the Ruins of *Almanzor*'s Palace, the last King of the Moors: 4. *Plassa di Corridera*: 5. the Church of the *Augustine* Friers: 6. the great Church, which was anciently a Mosque; it is large, but very low, supported by a great many rows of Pillars in a Quadrate Order, sixteen rows one way, and thirty another; upon many of the Pillars are Moors Heads carv'd in the Stone, and one or two with Turbants on. In the middle of this Church is the great Chapel, where are several Bishops interr'd. In one of the Chapels that is now dedicated to St. *Peter*, in the Moors time was kept a Thigh of *Mahomet*: Round about the Cornish of this Chapel, and that part of the Church next it, is an Arabick Inscription. The People complain grievously, that *Cordova* is quite ruin'd and undone by Gabels and Taxes.

We left *Cordova*, and after a league or two riding, entred the *Sierra Morena*, a miserable, desolate, mountainous Countrey, and lodg'd at a little Village call'd *Adamus*, six leagues. *Octob.* 27.

28. We travel'd all day thro' the *Sierra Morena*, and lay at a Village call'd *La ecruisille*, nine leagues.

29. In this days Journey we saw abundance of Galls upon the *Ilices*, which were of like bigness, figure, colour, consistency and other accidents with those that grow upon Oaks. This day we first met with red Wine again, which they call *Vino tinto*. We got safe out of *Sierra Morena*, and came to *Alm-dovar del campo*, a great Lougar, nine leagues. About the middle of *Sierra Morena* are the Bounds of *Castilia nova* and *Andaluzia*.

30. We passed by *Caraquel*, *Ciudad real*, and lay at *Malegon*, ten leagues. Between *Malagon* and *Ciudad real* we passed over the River *Anas*, now call'd *Guadiana*, which was there but a little Brook. In this days Journey we met with a great many great flocks of Sheep and Goats going towards the *Sierra Morena* out of *Castile*; it being the Custom all Summer to feed their Sheep upon the Mountains of *Castile*, and in Winter in the *Sierra Morena*.

31. We passed by the Ruins of an Aquæduct about four leagues from *Malagon*, then *Tocnas*, a good big Lougar, and lay at *Origas*, ten leagues.

Novem. 1. We passed thro' *Toledo*, and lay at *Esquivias*, eleven leagues. As soon as ever we passed the *Sierra Morena*, we felt a great change of weather, the warm Air that comes from *Africk* and the *Mediterranean* Sea being stopt by the interposition of the Mountains. This day there was here a hard Frost, and pretty thick Ice. The most considerable things in *Toledo* are, 1. The Bridge over *Tagus* consisting of but two Arches, one great one, and one little one. 2. The Shambles, where, notwithstanding the coldness of the day, I saw abundance of Flies, which confutes the Story, that there is but one great Fly there all the Year. 3. The great Church, where there are many Monuments of Bishops, but without Inscriptions; in the *Capella maggior* lie interr'd two Kings, and in the *Capella de los Reys* four Kings. 4. The King's Palace. 5. The Ruins of a famous Engine to raise up Water to the King's Palace; there is so little of it remaining, that it is impossible thence to find out all the contrivance and intrigue of it.

Between *Toledo* and *Madrid* the Countrey is very populous, and the Soil very good. All along the Road from *Sevil* to *Madrid* the common fare is Rabbets, red-legg'd Partridges, and Eggs, which are sufficiently dear.

2. We arriv'd at *Madrid*; six leagues near the Town we passed over the River *Xarama*. *Madrid* is very populous, well built with good Brick Houses, many having Glass Win-

Windows, which is worth the noting, because you shall scarce see any in all *Spain* besides. The Streets are very foul and nasty. There is one very fair Piazza or Market-place, encompass'd round with tall and uniform Houses, having five rows of Balconies one above another, and underneath Portico's or Cloysters quite round. The chief things to be seen in *Madrid* are, 1. the Prison; 2. the Piazza just now mention'd; 3. the King's Chapel; 4. Palaces of several Noblemen, as that of the Duke of *Alva*, that of the Duke of *Medina de los Turres*, &c. 5. the King's Palace, where there is the King's *Cavallerisca*, and the Queens *Cavallerisca*; 6. a great Piazza before the Palace, where are abundance of Coaches always attending; 7. the English College of *Theatines*; 8. *Il retiro*; out of the Town the *Escurial* and *El Pardo*.

Novem. 5. I set out from *Madrid* for Port S. *Sebastian*; we passed within sight of the *Escurial* and *El Pardo*, and lay that night at St. *Augustin*, six leagues.

6. We passed *Butrago*, and lay at *Samoserra*, all the way a barren, miserable, mountainous Countrey, 11 leagues.

7. We passed *Freccdille*, and lay at *Aranda*, having crossed the River *Durius* or *Duero*, 11 leagues.

8. We passed *Babalon* and *Lerma*, where is a Convent of *Dominican* Friers, and a Palace of the Duke of *Lerma*'s, and came that night to *Burgos*, 12 leagues. The most considerable things in *Burgos* are, 1. the Bridge over the River *Relarzon*; 2. the Gate at the end of the Bridge, where are the Statues of *Charles* V, of *Jarus Calvus*, of *Diego Porcellero*, of *Fernandez Gonsales*, of *Numio Pasures*, of *Don Carlotte*, all famous men of *Burgos*; 3. the Market-place; 4. the great Church, in which are a great many Monuments of Bishops and Canons, two great Monuments of *Pedro Fernando di Velasco*, Constable of *Castile*, and his Wife *Mencia di Mendoza*, Countess of *Haro*. This night we lodg'd at *Quintora-vides*, five leagues.

10. We passed by *Pancorva*, a place very famous for good Water; *Miranda*, a great Town, where there is a good Bridge over the River *Iberus*; and after that we passed over two other Rivers, *Baias* and *Sadurra*, and lay at *Erminian*, eleven leagues. At *Miranda* there is a great Market for Wheat.

11. We travel'd to *Vittoria*. Over one of the Gates is the Statue of King *Bamba*, and inscrib'd in golden Letters, *Hæc est victoria quæ vincit*; four leagues. *Vittoria* is the chief City of a little Countrey call'd *Alaba*. We passed this day by *Salines*, the first Town of *Guipuscoa*, and lay at *Æscuria*, nine leagues. In *Guipuscoa* they pay no Taxes or other Duties to the King, without the consent of the Countrey. The whole Province is more commonly call'd *Provincia* than *Guipuscoa*; it is canton'd out into a great many Corporations and Villages, every one of which send one, two or three Representatives to the general meeting, when there is any publick business. All Offices are annual, and chosen diversly, according to the differing Customs of the Towns; the chief Officer in each Town to determine all civil and criminal Causes, is the *Alcalda*, but from him they may appeal to the Governor of the Province, sent by the King every third Year, and from the Governor to the King's Council at *Valladolid*. Next to the *Alcaida* are two *Regidores*, to look after the prices of all Commodities; a *Bolser* for the Treasury; a *Medino* for the Prison, *Argezils* or Serjeants, &c. They boast, that they are the Walls of *Spain*, and therefore have many Privileges. *Guipuscoa* is under the Bishop of *Pampelona*. In *Guipuscoa* and *Biscay* they have a peculiar Language of their own, and therefore send their Children to School to learn *Spanish*, (which they call *Romance*) as we do ours to learn *Latin*. The Searchers having hindred us, we were forc'd to travel a great way in the night. We were lighted by *Tias* or *Teas*, which burnt as well, and gave as good a light as Torches: When they went out, they tossed them up and down in their hands, which kindled them again. These *Teas* (so call'd doubtless from the Latin word *teda*) are very commonly used in this Countrey, and are nothing else but Bastions of Wood hack'd and cleft, (but so as the pieces hang together) and afterwards soundly dried in an Oven or Chimney. Along the middle they use to cleave them almost quite asunder. They are made of several sorts of Wood, of *Robla*, i. e. Oak, *Aiga*, i. e. but the best of *Avellanc*, i. e. Hazel. *I wonder much at this, unless they have some way of preparing the Wood, by steeping it in Oyl or other inflamable matter. The tædæ of the Ancients were made only of the Trunks of old and sappy Pines.*

12. We passed by *Mondragone*, where there is a *Fabrica* of Arms for the King, *Oniate*, *Legaspa*, *Villa real*, and lay at *Villa franca*; seven leagues. We left S. *Adrian*, which is the ordinary Road, a little on our left hand. This Countrey is very populous and well wooded, all the Hills being cover'd with Oaks. They use no Ploughs, but turn over the Ground with Tridents of Iron, four or five of them working together, and thrusting in their Tridents all together, turn up a yard or two of Earth at a time, which they afterwards dress and level like Beds in a Garden. The People are something better condition'd than the *Spaniards*, richer, and far more populous; 1. because there is a better Government and greater Liberty; 2. there is abundance of Wood and Iron; 3. more Rain than in other parts of *Spain*.

We passed *Telsa*, and arriv'd this night at S. *Sebastian*, Nov. 13. having travel'd eight leagues. The most observable things in S. *Sebastian* are, 1. the Walls and Guns; 2. a great Convent of *Dominican* Friers, in which there is a famous pair of stone Stairs, each Step being of one entire Stone, and supported only on one side; 3. the Haven. The Government of S. *Sebastian* consists of a great Council of all that have one or more Houses, and are married, but none can bear Office unless he have two Houses; of these there is not above 150 or 200, tho' the Town be very populous, containing about 24000 Souls. Once in a Year all the Names of this 150 or 200 are put into an Urn, and a Child takes out eight to be Electors; every one of these eight chuses his Man: the old Magistrates that are just then going out, divide these eight that the Electors have chosen into four pairs, fitting them as well as they can, *v. g.* an old man and a young together, *&c.* These four pairs are put into an Urn; the first pair that are drawn out are the two *Alcalda's* for that year; the second pair, the two Deputy *Alcalda's*; the third pair, the two *Regidores*; the fourth pair, the two Deputy *Regidores*. In much the same manner they chuse two Jurats, one Syndick or Attourney-general, one Treasurer, *&c.* all these Officers make a lesser Senate; but in businesses of importance the whole number meets. There is no distinction of *Nobiles* and *Plebeii*, but all that are descended from *Guipuscoans*, that are married and have one House, are in a capacity to be Electors; all that have two Houses, to be Magistrates. The Jurats Places are most desir'd, there being a great many Ecclesiastical Preferments belonging to the Town, the disposition whereof when they come to be vacant is in them, who usually bestow them upon their Relations and Friends.

14. Every Winter there are several Whales caught upon this Coast, they coming hither in Winter and frequenting here, as they do upon the Coast of *Groenland* in Summer: they catch them by striking them with a Harping-iron, after the same manner as they do Sword-fish upon the Coast of *Calabria* and *Sicily*. Abundance of Cyder made about St. *Sebastian* and *Bayonne*.

From St. *Sebastian* I travel'd thro' *Oregna*, *Irun*, on the left hand of which is *Fontarabia*, a strong Fort just on the Frontiers of *Spain*. About a league and half from *Irun* is the River that parts *France* and *Spain*. In the middle of this River is an Island where the Kings of *France* and *Spain* met, when *Lewis* XIV, the present King, married *Philip* the Fourth's Daughter. The Island was divided just in the middle, and a House built, so that at the Table where they sate to eat, the King of *France* sate in *France*, and the King of *Spain* in *Spain*.

Spain is in many places, not to say most, very thin of People, and almost desolate. The causes are, 1. a bad Religion; 2. the tyrannical Inquisition; 3. the multitude of Whores; 4. the barrenness of the Soil; 5. the wretched lazines of the People, very like the *Welsh* and *Irish*, walking slowly, and always cumbred with a great Cloak and long Sword: 6. the expulsion of the *Jews* and *Moors*, the first of which were planted there by the Emperour *Adrian*, and the latter by the *Caliphs*, after the Conquest of *Spain*: 7. Wars and Plantations. In all the Towns, especially in the South and West parts of *Spain*, a great many Ruins of Houses to be seen. Within a quarter of a league of the Town you begin to see Ground plough'd, else all a wild Countrey, and nothing but Rosemary, Cistus, Juniper, Lavender, Broom, Lentiscus, *&c.* growing in the Fields and on the Hills. Little or no Hay any where in *Spain*, they feeding their Mules and Horses with Straw: At least one half of *Spain* is mountainous.

The *Spaniards* are not so abstinent as most People take them to be, eating the best they can get, and freely enough if it be at another man's cost; and in Inns never refusing Partridges, Quails, *&c.* for the dearness, if they have but Money. Laziness and Sloth makes them poor, and Poverty makes them pinch their Bellies and fare hardly. They seldom mingle Water with Wine, it being a common Saying among them, *Vino puro & puro*, tho' all over *Spain* the Wine is very hot and strong. They delight much in *Pimentone*, i. e. Guiny-pepper, and mingle it with all their Sauces. In roasting of Meat they never use Dripping-pans, but draw the Coals just under the Meat,

which, tho' it be not so cleanly, yet is the quicker and more thrifty way for saving of fewel. They tear Rabbets in sunder with their hands when they are almost roasted, and stew them in a Pot with Water and *Pimentone*. To roast Bread, they throw it upon the Coals. They long and ask for every thing they see, to avoid which, a Merchant that travel'd with me was wont to put in something into his Victuals which they did not love. They take Tobacco much in Snuff, and if one take out a Box of Snuff, he must give some to all the Company. The best Person in the Company at Table cuts and tears the Meat in pieces, and gives to every one his share.

They are most impertinently inquisitive, whence you come? whither you go? what business you have, *&c.* most horribly rude, insolent and imperious; uncivil to Strangers, asking them, What do you come into our Countrey for? we do not go into yours. [This is to be understood of the middle and inferiour sort of People, many of the Gentry being very civil and well-bred.] Their Children are the most unmannerly and ill-bred of any in the World. The Sons of *French* Fathers and *Spanish* Women, when they are grown up, often turn their Fathers out of doors, having many Privileges above them for being born in *Spain*. They are extremely given to lying; *Almuzzo's*, and such kind of Fellows, not to be believ'd or entrusted in any thing they promise.

They ride altogether upon Mules, and carry their Portmanteau's before them, for fear they should be lost or stoln from behind them; they lie between a high Pummel of the Saddle and an Iron Hook. Instead of Stirrops, Persons of Quality use great Clogs of Wood, of the shape of Shoes, without Heels. They cut away the Mule's Hair close to the Skin under the Saddles and Portmanteau's, to avoid galling. Of this bastard-breed of Animals the males are usually bigger than the females. Q. Whether the reason be, that they are always bred of a Mare and an he-Ass? 2. They piss very often. Q. Whether the reason be the sharpness of their Urine, or the smallness of their Bladder? 3. They piss almost always when they go thro' Water. 4. They shooe them with Shooes a great deal broader than their Feet, to prevent, I suppose, the breaking of their Hoofs. Under the Mouths of their Mules of burthen they usually hang a Net with Provender in it. These Beasts are better at climbing of Mountains than Horses, have a greater Courage to endure long and hard travel, and besides, are maintain'd with less charge.

The *Spaniards* seldom ride alone, but stay for a *Troppa*, as they do for a Caravan in *Arabia*. The common phrases or forms of salutation when they meet or pass by one another, are, *Garda Dios vostes*, i. e. *vos autres*, [God defend you] *A Dios* [adieu] *Vaga con Dios* [God go along with you.] When they are angry, *Cornuto*, i. e. Cuckold is the first word, and sometimes *Cornutissimo*. When they speak to their Mules, or Boys they send of Errands, they say, *Anda Cornuto*, [Go Cuckold.] When they refuse a Courtesie, or complement to drink first, go first, or the like, they say, *Non per vitâ mea*, [No, by my life] At any thing strange or ridiculous they cry out, *Cuerpo di Dios*, or *di Cristo*, [Body of God, or Body of Christ.] When they call to one to make him hear, instead of *Escoutes* in French, or *Senti* in Italian, they cry, *O—yes*, as our Cryers do in *England*. When they put off a Beggar, not giving him an Alms, they say, *Vostes perdonné*, [Good friend, pardon (*or* excuse) me.]

As for their Religion, the *Spaniards* are the most orthodox and rigid *Romanists* in the World, it being a Saying among them, *Faltando in uno punto à Dios*, [If you leave the Church in one Punctilio, God be with you, you must needs be damn'd.] All over *Spain* there are abundance of pitiful wooden Crosses, set up in the middle of heaps of Stone. Under all the Pictures of the Virgin *Mary* is written, *Concebida sin peccado originale*, i. e. *Conceiv'd without original Sin*. At the *Ave Maria*-Bell they all fall down upon their Knees; whereas in other Countries they are contented only to pluck off their Hats. When they have done their Devotions, as also after their Meals, when they take away, and when they go to Bed, they say, *Sea lodato il sanctissimo Sacramento*, [Praised be the most holy Sacrament.]

For Fornication and Impurity, they are the worst of all Nations, at least in *Europe*; almost all the Inns in *Andalusia*, *Castile*, *Granada*, *Murcia*, &c. having Whores who dress the Meat, and do all the business: they are to be hired at a very cheap rate: It were a shame, to mention their impudence, lewdness, and immodest behaviours and practices. In *Catalonia*, *Cuipuscoa*, and some other places, they are not so bad.

They are so lazy, that in their Shops they will say they have not a Commodity, rather than take pains to look for it: Not to be hired to carry a Portmanteau, go of an Errand, *&c.* but at an excessive rate. Mercers never tie up any thing they sell, and if they allow Paper, they only rudely mumble up the Commodities in it. Of their fantastical and ridiculous Pride, and that too in the extremest Poverty, all the World rings. If there be any Imployment that you would set them about, which they think themselves too good for, they presently say, *Send for a French-man*. Indeed the *French* do almost all the Work in *Spain*. All the best Shops are kept by French-men, the best Workmen in every kind are French, and, I believe, near one fourth or one fifth part of the People in *Spain* are of that Nation: I have heard some Travellers say, that should the King of *France* recal all his Subjects out of *Spain*, the *Spaniards* would hazard to be all starv'd to death.

Bread is very scarce and very dear in many places of *Spain*, because of the barrenness of the Soil and want of Rain; but chiefly because of the Sloth of the People, in letting a great deal of Ground lie untill'd, and in not taking the pains to fetch Corn and Bread from those places where there is plenty: So that in a days Journey the price of Bread will be trebled, and in another days journey fall as much again. This Summer there was a tumult at *Madrid*; the poor People gathering about the King's Palace, cried out, *Let the King live, but let the ill Government die; let Exactors die*, &c. just as they did at *Naples*, in the Rebellion under *Massanello*; upon which the King sent to all the Towns about for Bread-corn, and in two or three days Bread was very plentiful and cheap. The *Spanish* Bread is commended for the best of the World; and well it may be, if, as we have heard, they pick their Wheat grain by grain.

At my being at *Madrid* there was an Engineer there sent by the Emperour, that had invented a Plough, call'd by the *Spaniards* a *Sembrador*, to sow Corn at equal distances, and one Grain in a hole; the description whereof hath been since publish'd in the *Philosophical Transactions*.

In all kind of good Learning the *Spaniards* are behind the rest of *Europe*, understanding nothing at all but a little of the old wrangling Philosophy and School Divinity.

The People are much discontented all over *Spain*, complaining of Taxes, evil Counsellors, *&c.* but they have a good Opinion of, and are generally well-affected to their King, whose Intentions, they say, are very good.

As for their Habit and Dress, in that they are to be commended, that they are constant to the same Fashions, tho' they be not the most convenient that might be devised: To change for the better, I think it rather commendable than blame-worthy; but to change out of meer levity, or an apish imitation of others, is foolish and unreasonable. They wear great Hats with broad Crowns, and the top broader than the bottom. Their Hair most commonly, but especially when they travel, they tie up in a knot behind, and sometimes braid like Women. Their Bands lie upon black Collars just of the same bigness, or a little bigger; they are joyn'd to the Collar, and they put on Collar and Band together. They wear very much Cambrick Half-shirts, and have their Sleeves open before and behind both Winter and Summer: they have great Skirts upon their Doublets: their Breeches are very streight and close to their Thighs, and button'd down on each side, and reach a little lower than the Knee. They wear very slight-wrought black Silk-stockins, that the white Linnen-stockins which they wear underneath may be seen thro' them. Their Shoes just fit for their Feet, very light and thin, with low Heels. Over their Doublets they wear a close Coat or Jerkin, with open Sleeves like the Doublet, and for the most part with hanging Sleeves like Childrens, yet never reaching lower than their Skirts; a very long Sword, and a short Dagger hanging just behind them, and at last, over all, a Cloak with a great Cape. The Women wear great Vardingales, standing so far out on each side, that to enter in at an ordinary Door, they are fain to go side-ways: When they go abroad, they are cover'd with a Veil of black, having only a hole left for one Eye. The poor People wear Shoes made of Packthread.

The most noble Sport in *Spain* is the *Jeu de Taureau*, or Bull-fighting, practis'd at *Valencia*, *Madrid*, &c. at *Madrid* three times a year, where, in the Market-place, a brave Don on Horseback, and a great many Pages on foot, fight with a wild Bull: when one Bull is kill'd or much wounded, they turn in another: Seldom but some of the Pages are kill'd. And with these cruel and bloody Spectacles the People are much delighted, as were the *Romans* of old, in the time of Heathenism.

Mr.

Mr. LASSEL's Voyages INTO ITALY.

BEfore I enter upon a particular Account of my five Voyages thro' *Italy*, it will, in my Opinion, be not beyond our ſcope to ſpeak ſomething in general of this Country, its Inhabitants, their Manners, Cuſtoms, Riches, &c.

The Fertility of Italy. *Italy* ſeems in Fertility to challenge the precedency before all others, eſpecially that part which is call'd *Lombardy* and *Campania felix*, where *Ceres* and *Bacchus* ſeem to endeavour to outvie one another in filling the Barns and Cellars; whilſt the other parts afford vaſt numbers of Olive, Orange and Lemon-trees, beſides Rice, *Turky* Wheat, and many other excellent Fruits. Even their moſt barren Mountains produce vaſt ſtore of the beſt Marble, as the innumerable Groves of Mulberry-trees to be met with in many parts of *Italy*, and the Silk-worms, furniſh them with what ſometimes may ſatisfie their Neceſſity, but often their Pride. *Lombardy* is ſo rich in Paſturage and Cattle, that their Cheeſes in bigneſs exceed moſt that ever I ſaw, and for goodneſs may compare with the *Parmeſan*. In ſhort, the Surface of the *Italian* Ground is ſo cover'd with many rich Vegetables, out of which they diſtil their Eſſences, Perfumes, and odoriferous Waters, that the ordinary Barbers and Laundreſſes are lavish of them. In fine, it abounds in all ſorts of Proviſions, both for Neceſſity and Pleaſure: I have ſeen whole Cartloads of Veniſon and wild Boars brought at once into the Market at *Rome*, and 60 Hares at a time at *Florence*.

Objection againſt Italy. I knew ſome exclaim againſt the heat of the *Italian* Air, as peſtiferous, and not very agreeable to our Conſtitutions, unto which they attribute the *Catarrhs* of *Genoa*, the *Milaneſe Gout*, the *Falling-ſickneſs* of *Florence*, *Fevers* of *Rome*, *Hemerrhoids* of *Venice*, &c. But beſides that, the ſame might be applicable to many other Countries, as the *Conſumption* of *Portugal*, the *Kingsevil* in *Spain*, &c. when I reflect, that the happy Conſtitution of their Climate fills their Cellars with above thirty ſorts of different Wines, and their Markets with moſt wholſom Herbs and excellent Fruits; when I conſider how its benign Influence has ſtor'd *Italy* with ſo many great Men, both for Peace and War, I can't but be of opinion, that the warm Sun, which hath ſo kindly temper'd the *Italian* Wits, ought to be look'd upon as the greateſt Bleſſing beſtow'd upon *Italy* beyond other Countries.

Anſwer'd.

The Italian Wits. It is in this Country that the moſt celebrated Philoſophers, *Pliny*, *Cato*, and *Seneca*, flouriſh'd, as well as the great Orators *Cicero*, *Hortenſius*, *Portius*, *Latro*, *Gimius*, *Gallio*, *Milius*, *Fuſcus* and *Antonius*; the famous Hiſtorians *Livy*, *Tacitus*, *Valerius Maximus*, *Saluſt*; the moſt admirable Poets *Virgil*, *Lucretius*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus* and *Propertius*; the noted Satyriſts *Horace*, *Juvenal* and *Perſius*; and renown'd Comedians *Plautus* and *Terence*. The laſt Ages have furniſh'd us with *Thomas Aquinas*, *Bellarmin* and *Baronius* in Divinity; in Oratory, with *Pamgarolus*, *Menzini*, *Varchi* and *Loredano*; in Hiſtory, with *Guicciardine*, *Bentivoglio*, *Davila* and *Strada*. *Ficinus* and *Cardan* have been her Philoſophers, as *Taſſo*, *Sanazarius Marino*, *Petrarch* and *Guarini* were her Poets. She juſtly boaſts of *Brunalleſchi*, *Palladio* and *Fontana* for Architects and Statuaries; of *Oliverio* and *Berini*, for their Excellency in Sculpture: and as for Painting, the famous *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Titian* and *Sarto* may juſtly challenge the precedency before any others in *Europe*.

Its ancient and modern Captains. It would be much beyond the ſcope of a Traveller, ſo much as to pretend to enumerate thoſe valiant ancient Heroes this Country produc'd, it being ſufficient to remember upon this head, that without ſuch a prodigious ſtock of great and valiant Captains, *Rome* could never have aſcended to that Pinacle of Glory, as ſo juſtly to deſerve the Title of *Miſtreſs of the World*. I cannot here forbear to add, that if the ancient *Italians* had their *Scipio*, *Duilius*, *Marius* and *Cæſar*, the modern *Italians* may juſtly boaſt of their *Alexander Farneſe*, their *Andrea Doria*, their *Caſtruccio*, and their *Spinola*.

Its ancient State. *Italy* was in ancient times divided into ſeveral Kingdoms and Republicks, until they all became ſubject to the City of *Rome*, the Empire of which arriv'd not to its higheſt pitch till under the Reign of *Auguſtus*, and began to decline conſiderably in the Fifth Century, when the *Goths*, *Lombards*, *French*, *Normans*, *Saracens*, *Germans*, and other Nations, in their turn, got their ſhare in this noble Countrey. 'Tis true, the Emperour *Juſtinian* did, under the Conduct of *Belliſarius* and *Narſus*, his Generals, recover part of it, and erected an Exarchate in the City of *Ravenna*; but being forc'd to ſubmit again to the *Lombards*, theſe founded their Kingdoms in *Gallia Ciſalpina*, which continued till 774, when being utterly extirpated by *Charles* the Great, he gave part of its Territories to the See of *Rome*.

In the 9th, 10th and 11th Centuries the *Moors* made frequent Inroads into *Italy*, having made themſelves Maſters of the Iſle of *Sicily*, till they were drove out by the *Normans*, 1058. After which ſometimes the *French*, ſometimes the *Spaniards*, play'd the Lords in *Italy*, till by degrees their Princes maintain'd their Soveraignties againſt them, and ſince that time are at liberty to act according to their own Intereſt, which is generally link'd with the Pope or the Emperour.

The Italian Humour. As for the Humor of the *Italians*, being much inclin'd to Melancholy, it may be ſaid to be a happy mixture betwixt the inſulting Gravity of a *Spaniard*, and unſettled Levity of a *Frenchman*. They have both ſtrong Fancies and ſolid Judgments, which makes them good Oratours, Politicians and Engineers. They are great Lovers of their Families, for the advancement of which they will neither be ſparing in their Advice nor Purſes. As for their Diet, they are very frugal in that point, Sobriety in eating and drinking being one of their chief Virtues, practis'd here almoſt to an exceſs, they looking upon it as one of the greateſt Affronts that can be given, to be call'd a Drunkard, notwithſtanding the Temptation of ſo many excellent Wines their Countrey affords.

They are ſomething addicted to Vain-glory; hence it is that they aſſume to themſelves the glorious Names of the ancient *Romans*, ſuch as *Camillo*, *Scipione*, *Julio*, *Mario*, *Pompeo*, which perhaps is one reaſon why they are ſo over-jealous of their Wives; but recede much from the true Valour of their Anceſtors in this point, that they will neither forgive an Injury, nor eaſily take Revenge in the open Field.

Their Manners. In their Manners they are generally very commendable. They never will give the leaſt occaſion of affronting a Stranger, let them appear in what Garb or Condition they pleaſe; and tho' they don't eaſily admit them into familiarity with them, yet they do treat them with extraordinary Civility, avoiding even the leaſt occaſions that might diſguſt them; and among themſelves even the greateſt Familiarity never makes them in the leaſt recede from the ſtricteſt Rules of Civility: Hence it is that they are very careful in interrupting one another in Diſcourſe, never whiſper, nor talk a foreign Language not underſtood by the Company; and Back-biting is conſider'd among them as one of the moſt enormous Vices that can be nam'd: And Satyrical Jeſts are very ſparingly made uſe of in Company. For the reſt, they are very modeſt in their Apparel, following the *French* Mode in their Dreſs, but not over-haſtily, their greateſt ambition of this kind conſiſting in a ſplendid Equipage, ſuch as Coaches, Horſes, Liveries, &c. for the reſt they are frugal to an exceſs,

ceſs, it being frequent for Princes and Cardinals, when they are preſented with Sweetmeats or Fowls, to have them ſold to the Confectioner, Poulterer, &c.

Their Ceremonies. In point of Ceremony they are nice to the higheſt Punctilio, there being ſcarce an *Italian* of any tolerable condition, but knows how to receive, place, ſtile and reconduct a Perſon even of the higheſt rank; tho', in my opinion, in the Titles they beſtow upon one another they are ſomething ridiculous, it being common, even among School-boys, to call one another *Voſtra Signioria*, and they frequently ſtile a Mechanick *Signior multo, magnifico*, &c. I don't remember that ever I heard two *Italian* Women ſcold publickly, or Man and Wife quarrel in words, except once, which was done in a very low tone.

Their peculiar Cuſtoms. Among their peculiar Cuſtoms, this is one, that they ſeldom ſee their Brides till they come before the Pariſh Prieſt to be joyn'd together: They keep Children bare-headed till they are five years old to inure them to hardſhip; the Women go bare-headed Winter and Summer at home, and the Men wear nothing but a little *Calotte*: The Women alſo waſh their Hair with a certain Waſh, to make it yellow, a colour much admir'd here among Ladies. After the Men return home, they throw by their Clothes, and put on a grey looſe Coat, or *Surtout*, without which they never dine or ſup, and ſometimes give to their Gueſt ſuch Coats and Caps before they ſit down to Dinner, where the beſt Meats are always ſerv'd firſt, and commonly end with Pottage. Their Drink they generally preſent upon a *Sottocoppa* (Standiſh) of Silver, with three or four ſtrait-neck'd Glaſſes upon it full of divers ſorts of Wines and Waters, and one empty Glaſs, to pour in what quantity of Wine or Water you pleaſe. At great Feaſts certain Carvers attend, who carving the Meat at a Side-table, give it to the Waiters, to be carried to the Gueſts, every one of whom has the ſame part, *viz.* a Leg and a Wing of a Fowl. The Carvers as well as Gueſts never touch the Meat, but with their Knives and Forks.

To travel with Fire-arms here is very troubleſome, for no body being permitted to carry them in wall'd Towns, for fear of Aſſaſſinations, Travellers are oblig'd to leave them at the Gates. Another trouble is, the taking of Bills of Health from one City to another, without which you muſt not expect admittance.

Their Hours they count from Sun-ſet to Sun-ſet again, which they divide into 24 hours. They have a Cuſtom of calling one another much by their Chriſtian Names, as *Signior Franceſco, Signior Jacomo*, &c. ſo that you may be acquainted a good while with an *Italian* before you know his Sirname. If Perſons of Quality intend to viſit one another, they are ſure always to ſend a Servant before-hand to give notice thereof, that they may not ſurprize one another unawares. You ſeldom ſee Men and Women together in the ſame Coach, not even Husbands and Wives: If two Perſons of great Quality meet in their Coaches, they ſtop, and after having complimented one another, go on their way; yet ſo, that he who is ſuperiour in quality moves firſt with his Coach: Thus if a private Perſon meets one of the chiefeſt quality, either on foot or in a Coach, he ſalutes him by ſtanding ſtill till he is paſs'd by.

Their Riches. Their Riches are ſo apparent to every body's Eyes, in their Palaces, Churches, Monaſteries, Gardens and Furnitures, that it needs no further Enquiry into; but the *Sacriſty* of *Loretto*, the Duke of *Florence*'s Gallery, and the *Treaſury* of *Venice*, ſurpaſs all the reſt. Of the Riches of the *Italian* Princes we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter.

As the *Italians* are more addicted to building of fine Houſes, excellent Paintings, Orchards, Gardens, and fine Equipages, than to Houſe-keeping, ſo they delight moſt in living in Cities; this makes them ſo great, fine, and well built. They have in many of theſe Cities Hoſpitals for the entertainment of Pilgrims and poor Travellers for a certain time; as alſo ſome Hoſpitals for the reception of ſuch Children as are expos'd by their Parents immediately after they are born.

Their manner of eating. The Meat being generally ſomewhat lean and dry, they make it worſe, by their roaſting it till it is ready to drop from the Spit. Frogs fry'd and ſerv'd up with Oyl, is a great Diſh with them; but at *Venice* and *Florence* they only eat the Loins and hind-Legs. Snails boil'd and ſerv'd up with Oyl and Pepper, in their Shells, is alſo a common Diſh. They eat not only all manner of Small-birds, as *Wrens, Titmouſe*, &c. but alſo *Magpies, Jackdaws*, nay, *Kites* and *Hawks*. Their Fruits are excellent, but they are fond of *Water-melons* and green *Almonds* before all the reſt; as alſo of Pine-kernels. They uſe alſo frequently a kind of Sweetmeat of Muſtard and Sugar. The uſe of Snow and Ice is never neglected with them both Winter and Summer.

Their Vices. The moſt capital Vice peculiar to the *Italians*, is, their moſt extravagant Revenge, to accompliſh which they make uſe of all treacherous means, tho' never ſo black; and if prevented in their deſigns, will be ſure not fail to embrace the next opportunity to put it in execution, tho' they have engag'd to pardon the Offence. Neither does their raging Luſt, both natural and unnatural, admit of the leaſt Excuſe, of which their unaccountable Jealouſie is the unhappy effect, ſo that the poor Women lead a miſerable life here. Swearing and Curſing is ſo common here, that the Prieſts and Monks don't refrain from it.

Language. The modern *Italian* is a mixture of corrupted *Latin*, *Gothick*, *Vendalick* and *Lombard* Languages; the moſt polite Dialect is in *Tuſcany*, which muſt however be underſtood of their Writing, and not of their Pronunciation, which does not approach to the nicety of that of *Rome*, but is harſh; hence the *Italian* Proverb, *Lingua Toſcana in bocca Romana*. In *Savoy* and *Piedmont* they ſpeak for the moſt part *French*.

Religion. Their Religion is the *Roman Catholick*, with excluſion of all others, except that a few *Jews* are tolerated in trading places; and the Proteſtant *Vaudois* inhabiting the Valleys of *Piedmont*, to the number of 15000, have maintain'd the Purity of their Religion above 1200 years. But let this ſuffice for a general Account of *Italy*; I will now proceed to give you a particular Account of what Obſervations I have made in Five ſeveral Voyages thro' it.

The ſeveral ways to Italy. There are five ſeveral Ways by which *Engliſhmen* commonly travel into *Italy*, *viz.* by the way of *Flanders* and *Germany*, to *Trent* or *Trevis*, and ſo to *Venice*: Or elſe thro' *France*, to *Marſeilles*, and thence to *Genoa* by Sea: Or elſe by Land from *Lyons* thro' the *Swiſs* Countrey, that of the *Griſons* and the *Valteline*, to *Breſcia*: Or elſe from *Lyons* thro' the *Valeſians*, over Mount *Sampion*, and by the *Lago Maggiore*, to *Milan*: Or, in fine, over *Lyons* and Mount *Cenis*, to *Turin*. I having travel'd all theſe five, I will give you a ſhort Account of them all; tho' I prefer the laſt, both for its nearneſs and conveniency.

The Author's firſt Voyage into Italy. My firſt Voyage was from *England* to *Dunkirk*, from thence thro' *Furnes, Newport, Oſtend, Bruges, Ghent, Bruſſels, Louvain, Liege, Cologne, Mayence, Frankfort*, to *Munichen*, thence by the way of *Augsburg* and *Inſpruck* to *Trent*, the Inlet into the *Treviſo* Territories, belonging to the *Venetians*.

His ſecond Voyage. In my ſecond Voyage I took the way of *France*, and over *Paris* to *Lyons*: In the way I took notice of that moſt pleaſant Country Seat of Monſieur *Eſſolin*, call'd *Yſſone*, being much celebrated for its moſt curious Water-works, which being ſupply'd from a ſmall Brook running near the Houſe, is receiv'd into a Canal of Free-ſtone as long as the Houſe, made in the form of a Ship, and from thence convey'd thro' a vaſt number of Pipes into all the Offices of the Houſe, and into the Gardens.

Fontainbleau. From *Yſſone* we came to *Fountainbleau*, that famous Royal Palace of *France*, the chief delight of K. *Henry* IV, being large enough to lodge four Kings, with their Courts. The Court of *Cheval Blanc* is a fine Square of Buildings, but low, being intended only for the Lodgings of the inferiour Servants. The Oval Court is a goodly Structure, but very old. The Roofs of the King and Queens Lodgings are richly gilt. The Gallery of the *Stags-heads*, as well as the Gallery of *Romances*, are ſtately Rooms, the laſt being highly eſteem'd for its Paintings. The *Hall of the Conference*, whence the Cardinal *du Perron*, in the preſence of K. *Henry* IV, and many learned men of both Religions, diſputed with Monſieur *Pleſſis Mornay*. The Hall of Masks, and the Lodgings of Madam *Gabrielle*, with her Picture over the Chimney, repreſenting *Diana* in her hunting Garb, are very fine Rooms. It has two Chapels, one an old and very mean one, the other both neat and ſtately, built by *Lewis* XIII, on occaſion of a *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador's coming thither to view the Palace, (as I was inform'd by a *French* Biſhop) who ſtopping at the Chapel-door to perform his Devotion, ask'd whether this were the *Caſa di Dios*, or God's Houſe? and being anſwer'd it was, turn'd back immediately, ſaying, *I care for ſeeing no more*. Near the Houſe are handſom Mails, and divers moſt excellent Fiſh-ponds, in which, as well as in the Moat about the Houſe, are Carps ſaid to be 100 Years old, which perhaps may not ſeem fabulous to thoſe who give credit to *Columella, de re Ruſt.* ſpeaking of a Fiſh in *Cæſar*'s Fiſh-pond near *Puteolum*, which was ſixty Years old; and what *Geſner* relates

relates of a certain Fish-pond near *Hailprun* in *Swabia*, where, in 1497, a Fish was catch'd with a Brass Ring at his Gills, in which were engraven these words, *I am the first Fish which* Frederick *II, Governour of the World, put into this Pond the 5th of* October, 1203. which if true, this Fish liv'd 260 years.

In our way from *Fountainbleau* to *Lyons*, I met with an old Inscription, in Letters of Gold, upon a wooden Fabrick a mile on this side *Montargis*, importing, that the *English* had been forc'd to raise the Siege of *Montargis*, by reason of great and sudden Rain and Inundations.

Montargis. Coming to *Montargis*, a pleasant Town, the chief of the *Gastinois*, we saw in the Wall of the Castle, painted, the History of the Dog that kill'd the Murtherer of his Master.

From hence to *Briare*, remarkable for the Channel that joyns the *Loire* and *Seine*: from thence to *Cosne la Charite Pougues, Neures, Moulins, la Palisse, Roanne*, where the *Loire* begins to be navigable, and so over *Terrara* Hills to *Lyons*.

Lyons. *Lyons* may, both for Riches and Greatness, compare with the best of *France*, its situation upon the Rivers *Saone* and *Rhosne* (*Araris* and *Rhodanus*) drawing thither a great Traffick both from *Germany* and *Italy*. The Dean and Prebends of the Cathedral of St. *John* are all dignified with the Titles of *Counts*, and must be of noble Extraction of four descents. The Canons officiate on solemn days in Miters like Bishops, and sing the Office without Book, Organ, or any other Musick. This Church has also a Clock much cry'd up for a rare Piece; the Archbishop thereof is Primate of *Gaul*. The new *Town-house*, built of *Its Town-house.* fine white Stone, seems to imitate that of *Amsterdam*, the *Staircase* and *Hall* above are very well worth a Traveller's Observation, the first for its Contrivance, the other for its Painting. The Jesuite's College, with its Library; the Convent of the *Carthusians*; the Paintings in *Minimes* Sachristy; the Remnants of an ancient Aquæduct upon the Hill; the *Mail*, and delightful Walk of *Belle Cour*; the *Charite*, a noble Structure, compos'd of nine Courts, where 1500 poor People are kept at work; the Castle of *Pierre Ancise*, built upon a Rock; and *Nostre Dame de Fourier*, standing upon an high Hill, affording a pleasant prospect of the whole City, are also worth taking notice of: and the rare Cabinet of Monsieur *Servier*, fill'd with most curious Mathematical Inventions and Mechanick Experiments, ought not to be pass'd by in silence. Here you see divers sorts of Dials, several sorts of Bridges of an easie carriage, to transport an Army over Rivers; a rare Engine to throw Granades into besieg'd Towns; a way how to change Dining-rooms three or four times, with their Tables, the Seats and Guests being by the motion of a Wheel transported sitting from one Room into another, and so into three or four more: the *Desk-Dial*, and the *Dial of the Planets*, the first whereof throws up a little Ivory Ball without intermission, and thereby sheweth the hour of the Day; the other represents the Days of the Week, by several Figures of the Planets in Ivory; with many other such-like Curiosities.

Vienne. At *Lyons* I embark'd in a small cover'd Boat, and with a swift current went down the *Rhosne* to *Vienne*, where *Pontius Pilate* (banish'd hither) put an end to his Life, by throwing himself from a high Tower. The Cathedral, dedicated to God, has neither Pictures nor Hangings, being otherwise a fair Structure.

Hence I travel'd to *Tournon*, *Valence* in *Dauphine*, and thence to *Pont S. Esprit*, famous for its long Bridge of 33 *Avignon.* Arches, and so to *Avignon*, the capital City of a small Country belonging to the Pope, which being formerly purchas'd of *Jane* Queen of *Naples*, and Countess of *Avignon*, has serv'd divers Popes for a place of retreat during the Troubles of *Italy*, which lasted 70 years, after which *Gregory* XI. return'd to *Rome*. *Avignon* is always govern'd by a Vice-Legate, sent thither by the Pope. The most remarkable things here are, the Cathedral, with divers Tombs of Popes; the Church of St. *Didier*, with the Tomb of *Petrus Damianus*; the Church of the *Celestins*, with the Chapel and Tomb of Cardinal *Peter* of *Luxemburg*; the Convents of the *Carthusians* and *Dominicans*; in the first you see abundance of good Painting, and in the last the true original Picture of St. *Vincentius Ferrerius*: The *Cordeliers* Church is famous chiefly for its wideness, without being supported by any Pillars, and the Tomb of Madam *Laura*, the Poetical Mistress of *Petrarch*. Besides which, this City is encompass'd by a most noble Freestone Wall, and adorn'd with an admirable Bridge, many handsom Palaces and curious Gardens. Their Trade consists chiefly in Silk-stuffs, perfum'd Gloves, Ribbons and fine Paper, the Inhabitants being very nice in their Clothes.

From hence we went by land to *Aix* in *Provence*, an *Aix.* University and Parliament Town, and the Seat of an Archbishop.

From *Aix* we travel'd to *Marseilles*, a most ancient *Marseilles.* Town upon the Mediterranean Sea, built 633 years before our Saviour's Nativity, and in ancient times compar'd with *Athens* for Learning, being now chiefly famous for its convenient Harbour. Being oblig'd to stay here eight days for the return of two *Genoese* Gallies, that had brought an Ambassador into *France*, I spent most of this time in taking a view of that famous place of Devotion call'd *La Sainte Beaume*, where St. *Mary Magdalen* liv'd *See Baron. Ann. 35.* a penitential life among the Mountains and Desarts, after she had been assur'd of her Pardon by our Saviour himself.

Not far from St. *Beaume* stands the Town of St. *Maximin*, famous chiefly for the Church of St. *Maximin*, which contains the Relicks of St. *Mary Magdalen*, as, her Head in a Crystal Case enchased in Gold, her Body in a gilt Chasse, besides several other things of great value.

I embark'd at *Marseilles* in the aforesaid Gallies, thinking them much safer than the ordinary Felucca's or small Boats) and passing in sight of *Thoulon*, *Nice*, *Antibo*, *Monaco*, *Savona*, arriv'd in nine days at *Genoa*.

My third Voyage was likewise by the way of *Paris* to *Lyons*, but after that, thro' *Geneva* and the Country of the *Swiss*.

From *Lyons* I passed over the great Hill call'd *Grand* The Author's *Credo*, thro' *Nantua*, situate upon a Lake, and thence in 3d Voyage. two days to *Geneva*, seated upon the Confines of *Savoy*, *France* and *Germany*. Here I saw in the Quire of the *Geneva.* Church of St. *Peter*, (the ancient Cathedral of the Bishops here) the Figures of the twelve Prophets on one side, and of the twelve Apostles on the other; as also the Tomb of the Duke of *Bouillon*, General of a body of *Germans*, who were defeated near this place by the Duke of *Guise*. From the top of this Church you have a fair prospect upon the Lake, and from the Steeple you can see into six Principalities, *viz.* their own, *France*, *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, the *Valteline*, and the *Franche Conte*. Their Arsenal is but small, yet well stor'd with defensive Arms; and here they shew you the Ladders of the *Savoyards*, who attempting to scale the Town, were taken and beheaded immediately. The ancient Government of this City was under the Jurisdiction of their Bishop, who had some dependance on the Duke of *Savoy*, but since the Reformation it is turn'd into a Commonwealth, govern'd by *Calvinists*; however, the Bishop retains his Title, and the Chapter its Revenues, which lie in *Savoy*; both the Bishop and Chapter reside at *Anssy* in *Savoy*. St. *Francis de Sales* was Bishop of this See.

From *Geneva* I travel'd towards *Switzerland*, all-along The Lake of the Lake as far as *Lausanna*: This Lake is certainly the *Geneva.* fairest I ever met with in my Travels, exceeding either the *Lago maggiore*, the Lake of *Como*, the Lakes of *Zurich* and *Wallenstadt*, that of *Isee*, that of *Murat*, and even the Lake *di Guarda*: It is near fifty miles long, and in some places eight broad.

Lausanna is a Town of *Switzerland*, under the Juris- *Lausanna.* diction of the Canton of *Bern*. The ancient Cathedral is a noble Structure, having its own Bishop formerly, but now in the hands of those of the Reformed Communion: The Person that shew'd us the Church told us, that pursuant to the Records of that Church, Mass had been said in it above 1300 Years ago.

As we travel'd along from *Lausanna* towards *Soleur* or *Solothurn*, we passed sometimes thro' the Territories of *Bern*, sometimes thro' those of the Canton of *Friburgh*, sometimes thro' a Protestant, and not long after thro' a Popish Village, who nevertheless live very neighbourly together; those of the Canton of *Friburgh* being distinguish'd by a Cross, as the rest were by a high Flag with the Picture of a Bear, intimating that they belong'd to *Bern*.

Soleur is the chief City of a Canton, a neat place, in- *Soleur.* habited by *Roman Catholicks*: Here the *French* Ambassadour to the *Swiss Cantons* keeps his ordinary Residence, as the *Spanish* Ambassadour generally does at *Lucerna*. Certain golden Letters upon the Clock make this place the next, as to its antiquity, to *Treves*, which, according to *Æneas Sylvius*, was built 1300 Years before *Rome*. Some *See Petr. Rumpoldum.* Chronologers refer its first foundation to the 2030 Year after the Creation of the World.

From hence I travel'd to *Murat*, a small Town, famous *Murat.* for the Battle fought here betwixt the Duke of *Burgundy* and the *Swiss*, in which the first being overthrown, he sav'd himself by swimming with his Horse cross the Lake of *Murat*, which is two miles broad. In the high Road,

Road, at some small distance from the Town, you see to this day a great Chapel, containing the Bones of the slain *Burgundians*, with an Inscription concerning the time and circumstances of this Overthrow.

Zurich. From *Murat* I went to *Zurich*, the head City of a Canton of the same name, being very pleasantly seated upon a Lake: The Inhabitants are *Calvinists*: Their Arsenal is well stor'd with Cannon and Arms of all sorts. Their great Library was shewn us by a Woman. The Wheels whereby the Water is drawn up out of the Lake and convey'd thro' the Town, are worth taking notice of: But what appear'd the greatest Novelty to us was, the publick great *Drinking-Hall*, where we saw certain Tables for Persons of several Trades, each with its peculiar Sign, as for that of the Shoemakers a *Last*, for that of the Sadlers a *Saddle*, &c. Every day, at two a clock in the Afternoon, the great Bell rings, (to put them in mind of their time of meeting) as gravely as if they were calling People to their Devotions.

See Rast Travels.

Hence I pass'd by Water (a whole days Journey) upon the Lake to *Coire* or *Cear*, passing under a wooden Bridge laid quite cross the Lake for two miles, being maintain'd at the cost of the King of *Spain*, for the more convenient passage of his Recruits raised in this Country.

A long Bridge.

Coire. *Coire* is the chief City of the *Grisons*, inhabited by *Calvinists*, yet suffer the Bishop, with the Clergy and some others belonging to the great Church, to live quietly within the Precincts belonging to the Cloyster of that Church; where, among other Relicks, they shewed me the Head (cochased in Silver) of our ancient *British* King *Lucius*, who planted Christianity here.

In a little Town of the *Grisons*, called *Herberga*, the Mayor of the Town, an ancient man, shew'd me a Cheese, which he assured me was 100 years old.

The Valtoline. From the *Grisons* I travel'd thro' the *Valtoline*, a Country subject to the *Grisons*, notwithstanding their difference in Religion, those of the *Valtoline* being *Roman Catholicks* and the *Grisons Calvinists*. These two Countries are divided by the great Hill *Berlino*, over which I passed to the little Borough of *Poschiavo*, and thence to our Ladies of *Tirano*, a very fair Church, with a good Inn near it. Sometimes when the Snow lies very high, Travellers are forced to pass the Hill of *Splug*, instead of that of *Berlino*.

Mount Berlino and Splug.

From our Ladies of *Tirano*, I passed Mount *Aurigo*, and thence towards the Lake of *Wallenstadt*, which, as well as that of *Iseo*, having passed in a Boat, entred the Territories of *Brescia*, belonging to the State of *Venice*.

The Author's 4th Voyage. In my fourth Voyage into *Italy*, I took again the way over *Lyons* to *Geneva*, where leaving the Lake to the left, and passing along the Frontiers of *Savoy*, I came through the Village of *Bonneville* to St. *Maurice*, the first Town on this side of the Country of the *Valesians*, being so called from the great Valley they inhabit, of about four days Journey, besides the Hills, which are two more. The Town of St. *Maurice* has yet its Name from St. *Maurice*, the Commander in chief of the *Theban* Legion, who together with the said Legion was martyr'd here for the Christian Faith. Most of the Towns and Villages are built on the sides of Hills, their Houses are very low and dark, some of them without Windows; the Inhabitants profess the *Roman* Religion, are an honest plain sort of People; they wear short Hair on their Heads, and long Beards, their Dress being after a very ancient Fashion, which they not easily alter: Both Men and Women are very bulky, which put me in mind of Cardinal *Bentivoglio's* Saying of the *Swissers*, viz. *That they were made for the Alps, and the Alps for them.* I observ'd abundance of natural Fools here. They are able to assemble 40000 Men in case of necessity, under their known Commanders, who are generally Innkeepers and such-like, who serve well enough for the defence of their inaccessible Passages, they being neither ambitious nor rich enough to engage in an offensive War.

The Valesians

Sion. From St. *Maurice* I travel'd on to *Sion*, (*Sedunum*) the chief Town of this Country, seated in the center of it, and the Residence of its Bishop and Prince; his Court and Attendance is very slender, among a People who are not addicted to Vanity, and has no Guards but the Honesty and Love of his Subjects.

From hence I passed on by the way of *Lucia*, to the Village of *Brige*, seated at the foot of very high Hills; here having rested our selves and Horses all night at the best Inn, (the Master whereof was a Colonel) we began to ascend the Hills on Horseback for three hours, but advancing higher up towards the steep of the Mount *Sampion*, (one of the highest in *Italy*) we were glad to go on foot, tho' we found it tolerable passable at that time, being in *October*, which at other times is much more difficult. Having spent an hour in crawling to the top of the Mountain, we had two hours more riding to the Village and Inn of *Sampion*, where meeting but with slender Entertainment, we paid for our Dinner, tho' we eat but little, and so bestow'd the rest of the day in descending *Sampion* to *Devedra*. To give you a particular Description of the turnings and windings about Hills, upon a narrow way artificially made out of the sides of those Hills, sometimes jutting out as if they had been plaister'd to them, were to renew the trouble I had in passing them, the Precipices being such, that the least slip makes one fall but once for all one's life-time: So that by letting our Horses go loose, with the Bridle upon their Necks, and making a Man go before each Horse, (lest they should jumble one another down) we arriv'd safely at *Devedra* that night; next morning we set forward for *Domodoscela*, a little Frontier Garison Town of the *Milanese*; from hence we passed through a pleasant plain Country, to the Village of *Marguzzi*, seated upon the *Lago maggiore*, (the ancient *Lacus Verbanus*) where bargaining with the Boat-men to carry us in one day to *Sesto*, and that out of reach of all the Castles, to avoid being troubled with the Searchers, we accordingly came safe to *Sesto* that night, where taking Coach the next day, we dined at *Civita Castellanza*, and arriv'd in good time at *Milan*.

Mount Sampion.

My fifth Voyage I made into *Italy* was still from *Lyons*, but by the way of Mount *Cenis* to *Turin*, the ordinary Post-Road. Taking Horse at *Lyons*, we passed through *Verpillier*, *La Tour du Pin*, *Beauvoysin*, (the Bridge whereof parts *France* and *Savoy*) and in two days came to the foot of Mount *Aiguebellet*, the Threshold of the *Alps*, having all the shapes, windings and turnings of the *Alps*, so that it may be compar'd to Mount *Cenis*, as a lusty Man to a Gyant.

The Author's 5th Voyage.

Mount Aiguebellet.

We had no sooner passed this Hill, and through the very Clouds, but we came to *Chambery*, the capital City of *Savoy*, where we happen'd to see the most solemn Entrance which the Duke made for his new Spouse, the third Daughter of the Duke of *Orleans*, which was perform'd with incredible magnificence.

Chambery.

The next day after we travel'd on to *Montmelian*, a strong Castle, situate upon a high Rock overlooking the River *Isere*, and commanding the narrow passage betwixt the Hills, being provided with a strong Garison and suitable Ammunition. They also shew'd us their deep Well for fresh Water, in the midst of a high Rock.

Montmelian.

From *Montmelian* we pass'd thro' very rough ways to *Aiguebelle*, St. *John Morian*, St. *Michael*, and at last to *Lasneburgh*, seated at the foot of Mount *Cenis*, the highest of all the Hills I passed over in my several Voyages into *Italy*, or out of it, to wit, *Sampion*, *Berlino*, *Splug*, and St. *Godard*.

Lasneburgh.

This Mount *Cenis* being the common Boundary betwixt *Savoy* and *Italy*, I will here begin my Description of *Italy*, what has been said hitherto being only an account of the several Ways into it.

Italy *described, in a Voyage thither.*

HAving rested all night at *Lasneburgh*, at the foot of Mount *Cenis*, (*Cinisium*) we agreed with the Chair-men, for a Pistole for every man, to carry us up and down the Hill, and over the Plain, all the way to *Novalese*, being ten miles, *viz.* four miles in going up the Hill, four miles upon the Plain, and two miles more upon the descent to *Novalese*. Accordingly we began to ascend immediately after we had left our Inn at *Lasneburgh*, and having passed by *Ramassa*, were, after two hours labour, carried by our Chair-men to the top of the Hill, and soon after to the Posthouse and the little Hospital upon the Plain; thence passing by the Chapel of the *Transis*, (where are buried such as are found frozen to death in the Snow) we came to the *great Cross* and *Tavern*, where we began to descend, and came about noon to *Novalese*.

Mount Cenis.

Novalese.

We had no sooner dined, but mounting on Horseback, arriv'd the same night at *Susa*, (anciently *Segusium*) one of the Gates of *Italy*; its strength consisting wholly in its Castle, which being built upon a Rock close to the Town, commands the whole passage betwixt the Mountains, known by the name of *le pas de Suse*. Here begins *Piedmont*.

Susa.

From

From *Susa* we travel'd to St. *Ambrose*, and passing by a fine Palace of the Duke's, call'd *Rivolta*, came the same night to *Turin*, (the ancient *Augusta Taurinorum*) seated in a Plain near the foot of the Hills, upon the Banks of the River *Po*, which here begins to be navigable.

Turin.

The River Po.

Turin is now the Seat of one of the greatest Princes in *Italy*, *viz.* of the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince of *Piedmont*, being descended from *Siguardo*, the ancient King of *Saxony*, who liv'd in the Year of Christ 636, and consequently the House of *Savoy* has in an uninterrupted series of Princes preserv'd it self for above a thousand Years, since which time five Emperours and four Kings have issued out of this House. Formerly the Dukes of *Savoy* used to keep their Court at *Chambery*, or at *Bourg en Bresse*, (now under the *French* Jurisdiction, upon exchange with the Marquisate of *Saluzzo*) *Amadeo* V. Duke of *Savoy*, having first transfer'd his Residence to *Turin*.

The Family of Savoy.

Its Greatness

The number of his Subjects are said to amount to 1800000 Souls; his Yearly Revenue to a million of Crowns, and the whole extent of his Territories to 200 Miles in length, and 50 in breadth.

The City of *Turin* it self is seated in a fat Soil, being almost square, with four Gates, and a Citadel with five Bastions to it. It is an University, and its Markets are well furnish'd with Provisions. In the Cathedral is kept the holy *Syndon*, wherein, they say, our Saviour's Body was buried, in a Chapel over the Altar. The late Dutchess *Christiana* had begun to build a Chapel of black Marble, adorn'd with stately Pillars of the same, but was not quite finish'd when I passed that way.

The Ducal Palace.

The Duke's new Palace is a very noble Structure, having a stately Court before it, and a noble Piazza, with a large handsom Street leading to it. The Dutchesses Cabinet, and the curious *Bathing-place* above, are hung with the original Pictures, in little, of all the great Ladies in *Europe*, into which the Dutchess can convey her self up out of her Bed-chamber, by a Pulley and a Swing. The Stair-case is very noble; and in the old Gallery you see the Pictures of the *Princes* and *Princesses* of the House of *Savoy*, with the Marble Statues of the ancient Emperours and Philosophers. The *New Street* runs from the *Palace* to the *Piazza Reale*, which is very finely built, like our *Covent-garden*, and inhabited by Noblemen. The Church of the *Austin Friers*, which stands in it, being a very neat and well-contriv'd Fabrick. And the *Capucins* Church, without the Town, appears to be above the rate of that Order; its situation being upon a Hill, I had from hence a fair prospect of the City and adjacent Country. About three miles without the City is the Duke's Country-house, call'd *la Venery Royale*; I saw the Court all set round with *Stags-heads*, and many good Pictures in the Chambers; but what delighted me most, were the Pictures of the Duke, his Mother, his Sisters, and other Ladies on Horseback, drawn in a hunting garb, in the Hall.

About a mile on the other side of the Town, stands the old Dutchesses House, call'd *la Valentine*, seated most pleasantly upon the Banks of the *Po*; it has most curious Paintings of Flower-works and other rare pieces. Among the rest, they shew'd us four Pictures representing the four Elements; as, all the *Birds* that live in the Air, the *Beasts* that dwell upon Earth, the *Fishes* and *Shells* nourish'd in the Water, and all things belonging to the Fire, every thing expres'd in its natural shape and colour.

Leaving *Turin*, we also left the ordinary Road leading to *Milan*, by the way of *Vercelli* and *Novara*, two strong Frontier Towns, to avoid two Armies that lay in the way, and taking our course lower, came by the way of *Alpare* to *Savona*, (anciently call'd *Sabatia* or *Sabacium*) seated upon the Mediterranean Sea, or, as they call it, upon the *Riviera di Genoa*, within sight of *Genoa*, yet 25 miles off. To the Land-side it is defended by the *Apennine Hills*, and towards the Sea by regular Fortifications: Great part of it was destroy'd by Lightning, 1648, which striking into a Tower where the Gunpowder was kept, blew up above 200 of the best Houses, besides others. It is famous for the interview of two great Kings here, *viz.* *Lewis* XII. of *France*, and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*. Of this City were the two Popes, *Julius* II. and *Sixtus* IV. both of the House of *Roveri*; and two Cardinals, *Peter* and *Raphael Riarii*.

Vercelli and Nova.

Savona.

At *Savona* we imbark'd in a Felucca, and sowing along the shore, (call'd by them *la Riviera di Genoa*) came to *Genoa* it self: All the way we were surpriz'd with a continual row of such stately Country-boats and Villages, that had we not had all along a full sight of *Genoa* it self, we should have taken some of them for it.

Genoa.

Genoa challenges deservedly to be plac'd not only among the Cities of the first rank in *Italy*, but also among those seated on the Mediterranean Sea; standing on the side of a Hill, and thus rising by degrees, it appears to the Sea-side like an Amphitheatre, being commonly call'd *Genua la superba*, from its magnificent Buildings: Formerly it had no other defence on the Land-side than the Marble Hills that encompassed it, but forty Years ago it was fortified with a new Wall six miles in compass, which yet was finish'd in eighteen months.

Their Harbour was also very unsafe formerly, but since they have rid their hands of the *French*, they have render'd it both safe and commodious, by a most stupendious Mole crossing almost the whole Bay, at the end of which stands the *Pharos*, upon a little Rock, with a Lanthorn upon it, to guide the Ships.

As for the City it self, it affords a most beautiful sight, most of the Houses being well painted on the outside, very lofty and high, adorn'd on the top with open Galleries, where the Women sit together at work, and where they also dry their Hair after they have wash'd it with a certain Wash to make it yellow.

The Streets are very narrow, which makes Coaches much out of fashion here, instead of which they make use of Chairs and Litters: However, the *Strada nova* (new Street) surpasses, for neatness and proportion, all that ever I saw, if it had breadth enough to hold out at the same rate a little longer. In this Street is nothing but Palaces, as fine as Marble and Painting can make them.

The great Church of St. *Lawrence* is the Cathedral of the Archbishop, being a vast Structure of white and black Marble intermingled. In a Chapel opposite to the Pulpit is an authentick Relick of St. *John Baptist*, under the Altar; and a great Dish of one Emerauld, in which, as they say, our Saviour eat the *Paschal Lamb*: The Relick of St. *John Baptist* is positively asserted as such by *Baronius*; but as for the Dish, neither he nor any other Author has made mention of it; and *Beda* says, that the Dish in which our Saviour eat the *Paschal Lamb* was of Silver.

The Church of the *Annunciata* is not yet finish'd, the Roof is all gilt, and excellently painted; all the Altars round the Church are cheeked with the finest Marble Pillars, and adorn'd with Pictures; and the two rows of vast Pillars, which sets out the Roof, are of the best white and red Marble.

The *Jesuits* Church, dedicated to St. *Ambrosio*, is all cover'd with Marble, and the Roof richly gilt; it wants a little length for want of room, being near the *Doge's* Palace; and the Church of St. *Cyro*, belonging to the *Theatins*, makes a most graceful show with its double row of white Marble Pillars.

Palaces.

The Palaces are generally very sumptuous here, especially in the *Strada nova*, among which also that of the Prince *d'Oria* excels, being built upon white round Marble Pillars, which support its Galleries, which lead into noble Rooms.

I saw also the two Palaces of the *Signora i Balbi*, in the Street of the *Annunciata*, in the one whereof (on the left hand) I was shewn, among other things, a Looking-glass valued at 60000 Crowns, the Frame of it all Silver, set thick with a thousand little Figures arm'd like *Cupids*. The round Pillars which support the Porch of the Palace, and the *Giuochi di acqua* in the Garden, are highly worth taking notice of.

The Doges Palace, and the Armoury

The Palace of their biennial *Doge* has twelve most excellent white Marble Statues, representing many great Men of this Town who have done considerable Service to the Commonwealth. In the Armoury are Arms for 30000 Men, and among them the Armour of the *Genoese Amazons*, who behaved themselves so gallantly in the War in the *Holy Land*. But what surpriz'd me most was, the stately Suburb call'd *San Pietro in Arena*, where for a mile together you see nothing but most stately Country Seats, adorn'd with Marble Statues, Gardens, Arbours, Grottoes, Ponds, Fountains, high Walks sustain'd by Marble Pillars, &c. among which the Villa's and Palaces of *Hieronymo Negro*, and that of the *Imperiali*, excel the rest.

The Suburb of St. Pietro in Arena.

The Villa of the Duke d'Oria.

In our return from the Suburb of St. *Pietro* in *Arena*, we took a view of the *Villa* or Palace of the Duke *d'Oria*, seated near the Sea-side, its Gardens facing the Sea, being built upon three rows of white Marble Rails, supported by white Marble Pillars, which ascending by degrees, affords so beautiful a sight towards the Sea, as can't but be surprizing to Travellers who pass that way to *Genoa*. In the midst of this Garden you see that admirable Fountain of *Neptune*, representing the true looks of the great *Andrea d'Oria*, the *Neptune* of the *Ligurian* Sea, who deliver'd his Country from Slavery. All along one side of this Garden stands an Iron Cage of one hundred paces long, at such a height that it contains abundance of Lawrel and other Trees, for the diversion of a

vast

vast number enclos'd in this Cage together with the Trees. The Palace it self is most richly furnish'd, and stor'd with many Curiosities: In the Wardrobe we saw among divers rare Silver Tables, one which weighed 24000 pound weight.

The Government of Genoa. The Government of *Genoa* is *Democratical*, the administration whereof is committed to a *Duke*, chosen every two Year, and eight Senators or Councellors, who live in the same Palace with him; but the main Foundation of the Government is laid upon the Shoulders of the *Great Council*, consisting of four hundred persons, chosen indifferently out of all the Families of the Town, who are to be consulted in all Affairs of moment. Formerly, as I told you, the *Genoese* were under the *French* Jurisdiction, till they were set free by *Andrea d'Oria*; for which reason, and their constant correspondence with the *Milanese*, they much incline to the *Spaniards*, even in their Humour and Apparel: Hence you shall see here broad Hats without Hatbands, broad Leather Girdles, narrow Breeches, with long-wasted Doublets and Hanging-sleeves worn by the Men, after the *Spanish* Mode; and the great Ladies here imitate the *Donna's* of *Spain* in their Whalebone Fardingals, (call'd *Guardinfanta's* or *Child-preservers*) which make them appear almost as broad as they are long.

Their Interest. Fashions.

Riches. As to the publick Revenue, it is computed at no more than One million and two hundred thousand Crowns, and consequently not near so considerable as that of *Venice*, but their particular Men much exceed the *Venetians* in Riches, they being generally great Bankers; besides that, they drive a vast trade in *Taffaties*, *Velvets*, *Sattins*, Needlework, and other rich Commodities.

Strength. Formerly the *Genoeses* worsted the *Pisani*, made themselves Masters of the Isle of *Corsica*, an hundred miles distant from it, which being a Kingdom, they got by it the title of *Serenissima*, and a close *Regal Crown* over their Coat of Arms: They also sent considerable Succours to *Godfrey of Bullen*, in his Conquest of *Hierusalem*, whence upon the very *Area* of the holy Sepulchre in *Hierusalem*, are written these words, *Præpotens Genuensium præsidium*; but now-adays they are scarce in a condition to make an offensive War: So the *Apennines* on the one side, with their new Wall, and their strong Fortification towards the Sea, together with fourteen Gallies and twenty Men of War, and thirty thousand Men, which they are able to raise in case of necessity, seem to be sufficient for their defence.

Their Learned Men. *Bankers* being in more request here than *learned Men*, they have not been so well furnish'd with them as some other places of *Italy*; yet have they also had their learned *Baptista Fregosus* or *Fulgosus*, *Justinianus*, *Balus*, *Mascardi*, and *Christopher Columbus*.

The Church of *Rome* stand also indebted to *Genoa* for three Popes, *viz.* *Adrian* the Fifth, *Innocent* the Fourth, and *Innocent* the Eighth.

Here is also an Academy of Wits, call'd the *Addormentati*. He that desires to know more of *Genoa*, may consult *Augustinus Justinianus*.

After a stay of six days at *Genoa*, we set forwards thence to *Milan*, four little days Journey.

In another Voyage I made from *Genoa* to *Turin*, by the way of *Montferrat*, I saw by the way of *Novi* (of which more anon) *Trino Cassale*, one of the strongest places in all *Italy*, and *Alexandria della Paglia*, a strong place seated upon the *Po*.

Cassale. Alexandria.

But at this time leaving *Genoa*, we passed thro' *San Pietro d'Arena*, and by the *Carthusians* Monastery, over the *Apennines*, and the next day about noon came to *Novi*, a little but strong Town, belonging to the *Genoese*, on the Frontiers of *Milan*, about twelve miles distant from *Tortona*, the first City on that side in the *Milanese*. The Frontiers being at that time somewhat unsafe, by reason of the *Banditti*, the Governour of *Novi* allow'd us a Convoy of eight or ten Horsemen to be our Guard, but these, upon enquiry, we found to be the *Banditti* themselves, who being banish'd the *Genoese* Territories, had only two months allow'd them every Year to come into Frontier Towns. This did not a little surprize us at first, but relying upon the Governour's Parole, who told us they were the safest and surest Guards he could give us, we went on unconcern'd; and being conducted by them past all danger, gave them three Pistoles for their pains; and passing over a little River on Horseback, entred the *Milanese*, and the same night came to *Tortona*.

Novi.

Pavia. Ticinum. From hence we travel'd the next day to *Pavia*, once the Seat of twelve Kings of the *Longobards*, seated upon the River *Ticinus*, from whence it has borrow'd its Latin Name. The University here was either founded or furnish'd with Readers at first, or by Readers of the University of *Oxford*. The two chiefest Colleges are, that of *Pius* V. and that of St. *Charles Borromeus*. In the Cathedral lies interred the Body of *Santi*, a holy Bishop of this place, who was Contemporary to St. *Borromeus*.

Near this Cathedral, in the *Piazza*, stands an *Equestre Statua* of Brass, which some will have to be the Statue of *Constantine* the great, but others (with more probability) of *Antonius Pius*: It was brought hither from *Ravenna*, after the Conquest of that place.

In the Church of the *Austin* Monks lies interred the Body of that great Father of the Church St. *Austin*, being brought hither out of *Sardinia* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Longobards*. The new Tomb in the *Sacristy* is most artificially carv'd, of white Marble, with historical Figures, representing the most remarkable Actions of St. *Austin*.

In the same Church we saw the Tomb of *Severinus Boetius*; and in the Cloyster of the Convent of the same Friers, the Monuments of two *Englishmen* of quality, *viz.* the Duke of *Suffolk*, and an *English* Bishop call'd *Parker*, of the *Morley*.

In the *Franciscans* Church lies interred the famous Jurisconsult *Baldus*. Here also they shew you the Chapel where the Bones of the *Frenchmen* kill'd in the Battle of *Pavia* are kept.

Ennodius Ticinensis and *Lanfrancus* Archbishop of *Canterbury* were Natives of *Pavia*, the History of which you may read in *Antonio Spelta* and *Sacco*.

From hence we continued our Journey to *Milan*, twenty miles off, and in our way stopt at the Monastery of the *Carthusians*, famous for the Battle that was fought near it 1525, on St. *Matthia's* Day, betwixt the Emperour *Charles* V. and *Francis* King of *France*, wherein the last was taken Prisoner, and his Forces put to the rout, because he had, not long before, sent a great part of his Army to *Naples*. The *French* King was conducted to this Monastery, where, after having heard Mass, he dined, and was serv'd by three Generals of the Enemy's Army, *Launoy*, *Bourbon*, and the *Marquis del Vasto*, and afterwards carried into *Spain*.

The Battle of Pavia.

As for the Monastery of the *Carthusians*, it justly deserves to be rank'd among the best of *Italy*, as well as the Church, tho' built *à la Tedesca*, the Frontispiece of which is adorn'd with many Heads and Figures of white Marble: The Chapels within are very remarkable for their Paintings, and the Tabernacle esteem'd worth eighty thousand Crowns: But that which exceeds all the rest, is the most sumptuous Monument of their Founder *John Galeazzo Visconti* Duke of *Milan*, standing a little without the Quire, with the *cumbent Statues* of *Ludovico Moro*, the last Duke of *Milan* and his Spouse, lying under the other. In the Sacristy they shew'd us, among other Riches and Curiosities, a Back of an Altar of Ivory, cut into historical Figures.

The Carthusians. The Cathedral.

Thence we came to *Milan*, firnam'd the *Great*, and not undeservedly, being ten miles in compass within the Walls; it has ten Gates, two hundred Churches, and about three hundred thousand Inhabitants: It was anciently call'd *Altera Roma*, being the capital City of the Duchy of *Milan*, which from North to South is a hundred miles long, and contains four hundred Towns: It is call'd *Milano quasi Midland*, as being an Inland City, without the conveniency of so much as one River running in it, which defect is in some measure recompensed by two Channels cut out of the *Ticine* and the *Adda*. It has (like other great Cities) suffer'd much by War, having been no less than forty times attempted, and twenty times taken. This City is so stor'd with Gentry and Nobility, that I remember I saw, upon a private festival day, above a hundred Gentlemens Coaches at one Church; and as for Artisans, as Goldsmiths, Armourers, Gunsmiths, Weavers, Silk-stockingmakers, Refiners of Gold, such as work in Crystal, and many others, they are almost innumerable.

The City of Milan. The great Hospital. The Library.

In the Church of St. *Ambrose* (where that Father refused entrance to the Emperour *Theodosius*) lieth the Body of St. *Ambrose*, under the high Altar; as also the Bodies of *Gervasius* and *Protasius*, two primitive Saints. In this Church also you see, upon a high round Pillar, a brazen Serpent, like that erected by *Moses* in the Desart.

The Church and Tomb of St. Ambrose.

Near unto this Church of St. *Ambrose* is a little Chapel where St. *Augustin*, with his little *Adeodatus* and his Friend *Alippius*, were initiated by the holy Baptism; as is evident from the words over the Altar. They relate, that as St. *Ambrose* and St. *Augustin* (after they were become Christians) were going in procession to the before-mention'd great Church, made the Hymn *Te Deum* as they went, one making one Verse, the other another. On the other side of the same Church stands another little Chapel, built (as they say) upon the same place where St. *Augustin* was converted by a Voice which said to him, *Tolle lege, Tolle lege.*

Adjoyn-

Adjoyning to the Church of St. *Ambrose* is a most stately Monastery, with two curious Cloysters built upon round Pillars: Both the Church and Monastery belong to the *Cistertian Monks*.

The Church of St. *Victor*, with the double Cloysters of the Monastery built upon round Pillars, belonging to the *Olivetan Fathers*, is a neat Structure; and the most admirable Piece of St. *George*'s killing the Dragon, done by *Raphael Urbin*, worth the Curiosity of a Traveller.

In the Church of St. *Nazarius* you see the most noble Tombs of the *Trivultii*.

They shew you, in the Church of St. *Enstorgius*, the *Arca*, an ancient Tomb, under which were laid the Bodies of the three *Magi* of the *East*, who came to adore our Saviour at *Bethlehem*, and whose Bodies are said to have been carried hence to *Cologne* in *Germany*.

The Church of St. *Lawrence* is built after that of St. *Sophia* in *Constantinople*, and contains the Body of *Placidia*, the Sister of the Emperour *Honorius*.

In the Church of St. *Mark* the Fall of *Simon Magus* from the Skies is an excellent Piece; as is likewise that of the last Supper, in the Church of the *Passion*, done by *Christopher Cilio*. The Church of St. *Celso* has divers rare Pictures of *Raphael*'s hand, in the Sacristy: And the Churches of the *Jesuits* and *Theatins* are very fair Structures.

The Cathedral.

However, the *Domo* or Cathedral surpasses the rest, in the midst of which, near the Quire, lieth the Body of St. *Charles Borromeus* in a Vault, turn'd since into a Chapel, open at the top, and enclos'd by low Rails: The inside of it was richly hung, and upon the Altar lieth the Body of St. *Charles* at length, in a Crystal Coffin, made of divers great Squares of Crystal, thro' which (the wooden Case being open'd) we could see all the Body lying along in his Episcopal Robes, the Face, Head and Feet being only to be seen, and tho Nose and Lips shrunk and parch'd. His original Picture is to be seen at the entrance below into this Chapel, with his most remarkable Actions hung up in Painting round about the Church, in the very Roof of which, just over the high Altar, is preserv'd one of the Nails of our Saviour's Cross: Before it always burn certain Lamps, to shew the People where this Relick is kept. The Church it self, for solid Work, may justly claim the second place among the Churches of *Italy*, being built all of white Marble, with Isles and Pillars, each Pillar valued at ten thousand Crowns, and there are one hundred and sixty of these Pillars, not crusted over (like most of the fine Churches in *Italy*) but of massy white Marble. Besides which, there are placed six hundred white Marble Statues round the outside, each of which is esteem'd at a thousand Crowns; among which those of St. *Bartholomew* and of *Adam*, of the hand of *Christopher Cilio*, excel the rest. The length of this Church is said to be two hundred and fifty cubits long: The Frontispiece is not yet finish'd, no more than the Steeple, the last of which was however advanc'd so far, as to afford a most glorious shew, from the top of the City and circumjacent Country of *Milan*.

The great Hospital.

The great *Hospital* is a Quadrangle, built upon Arches and round Pillars; the place where the Sick are, is made cross-wise, in the middle of which stands an open Altar, so that the sick people may hear Divine Service from their Beds. Its Revenues are very great, above four thousand persons being daily maintain'd in it: St. *Charles* gave at once an Inheritance of 25000 Crowns to it.

The noble *Seminary*, and the College of the *Swissers*, both stately Structures, are also the Gift of the said St. *Charles*.

The Library.

The *Lazzaretto* is of a vast bulk, comprehending 1800 Yards in compass, built just without the Walls, for the use of those infected with the Plague; it contains 365 Chambers, and in the midst of the Square of this great Court stands a round Chapel, cover'd at the top, but open on all sides, so that the People from their Chambers may hear Divine Service said by the Priest.

The *Bibliotheca Ambrosiana*, begun by St. *Charles*, continued by his Nephew Cardinal *Frederico Borromeo*, and since encreased by the accession of *Vincentius Pinelli*'s Books, (redeem'd from the *Turks*) has this before most other Libraries of *Italy*, that it allows all comers and goers to read what Books they please; whereas all the others will scarce admit of being well look'd upon.

Behind the Library stands the Gallery, furnish'd with many Original Pictures of the best Masters of *Europe*, and divers most excellent Copies, as the four Pieces of the four Elements, copied after those I saw in the Palace of *La Valentine* near *Turin*. But the greatest Rarity here, as well as of the Library, is the Manuscript of *Alberto Durer*, valued at above three hundred pounds.

The *Dominicans* Library is also worth seeing, but much more their *Refectory*, by reason of its exquisite Piece in Painting of the *last Supper*, the Work of *Laurentius Vincius*.

The Monastery call'd the *Gratie* may be numbred among the best of *Europe*; and the Picture of Christ crown'd with Thorns, by *Titian*, in their Church, ought not to be passed by in silence, no more than the most curious Cabinet of the Canon *Setali*; which containing great variety of natural and artificial Curiosities, it will suffice to mention some few of them here, *viz.* great numbers of *Burning-glasses*, yet not *Convex*; a Bird without Feet, call'd *Apodes* by *Aristotle*; the Stone of *Asbestos*, the Thread whereof drawn, is incombustible. A vast quantity of ancient Medals of Silver, Gold and Brass. Many wooden things, Fruits and *Fungi*, petrified without changing their natural forms. Many most curious Clocks. A little round Cabinet, flat above like a Child's Drum, cover'd with a smooth Glass, upon which small Coaches or Ships (having some Iron in the bottom) being placed, a Load-stone, mov'd by a certain Wheel within, makes the Coaches and Ships appear to go to and fro without any visible assistance. A piece of a Thunderbolt, which the Canon himself told us he had cut out of a man's Thigh stricken with it: Besides many other rich things of Coral, Jewels, Stones, Pictures, Crystals, little Infants in Wax, and many other Rarities.

Monastery of *Gratie*.

Palaces in *Milan*.

Among the Palaces of *Milan*, that of the Governour is rather bulky than curious, being able to lodge whole Regiments: But the Palace of *Marini* is very noble, and that of the Archbishop very fair. At the entrance of the Palace of the *Borromei* I saw the Motto of St. *Charles*, (who was of this Family) *HUMILITAS*. The Palaces of the *Visconti*, of the *Sforze*, of the *Trivultii*, and several others, are also worth taking notice of.

The Castle or Citadel here, situate on the back of the Town, challenges a rank among the first and best of *Europe*, being guarded commonly by five hundred natural *Spaniards*, under the command of a Governour of their own, independant from the Governour of *Milan*; its whole compass being a mile and a half, it has rather the resemblance of a City than a Castle, being adorn'd within with divers large Streets, fair Houses and Palaces for the chief Commanders, a goodly *Piazza*, neat Shops, five Fountains not to be dried up, a Mill, Hospital, and Church, with ten Chaplains and a Curate belonging to it. Its Fortifications consist of six Royal Bastions and divers regular Outworks, and a triple Ditch, provided with Cannon and Ammunition sufficient for a long and vigorous defence.

The Academy of Wits.

Here is also an *Academy of Wits*, who stile themselves *Nescosti*, i. e. *hidden men*: The most famous Men of this Town for Learning have been *Valerius Maximus*, *Alciatus*, *Decius*, *Jason*, *Cardan*, *Panigarola*, *Paulus Aretius*, *Bonacina*, and *Ferrarius*, who liv'd lately at *Padua*. This City has produced two other noted men, *viz.* *Uberto Crucio* and *Gulielmo Pusierula*; the first for his strength of Body, the other for his natural Wit: *Uberto* was so strong, that he could take a Horse laden with Corn upon his Back, and stop a Horse in his full gallop. *Gulielmo* did, without the least assistance of Learning except his first Grammar Rudiments, by the natural strength of his Wit, resolve the most nice Law-Questions, and give such decisions in point of Law, as were past the amendment of the greatest Lawyers.

The ordinary Revenues of the Dutchy of *Milan* are computed at two millions four hundred thousand Crowns *per annum*.

The History of *Milan* may be read in *Corio*, *Ripamontius*, *Scipio Barbero*, and *Paulo Morigi*.

Having spent six days at *Milan*, we took Horse for *Bologna*, a Journey of six days, and in our way took a view of *Marignano*, *Lodi*, *Piacenza*, *Parma*, *Reggio*, *Modena* and Fort *Urbano*.

Marignano.

Marignano is a small Town, about ten miles from *Milan*, and from thence to *Lodi* is a most pleasant way. Near to this Town 16000 *Swiss* were defeated, by *Francis* I. the *French* King, and *Ludovicus Sforza* Duke of *Milan* taken Prisoner.

Lodi.

Lodi is a frontier Town on the *Venetian* side, wash'd by the River *Adda*. It got its Name from being built upon or near the Ruins of the old *Lodi*, call'd anciently *Laus Pompeia*. This place affords Cheeses of a vast bigness, a Gentleman of this Town having four Cheeses made weighing five hundred pound weight each. Their Ground affords Hay three times a Year.

Piacenza.

Piacenza or *Pleasance*, belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, has got its Name from its most pleasant situation in a most fertile Country along the *Po* and *Trebia*, near the last of which the *Romans* under *Sempronius* were overthrown by *Han-*

Hannibal. The most remarkable thing here is, the *Equestrian Statue* in Brass, in the Market-place, of *Alexander Farnese*; the old Fountain made by *Augustus Cæsar*; the exquisite Picture in the Church of the *Benedictins* (done by *Raphael*) just behind the Altar; as also the Churches of the *Dominicans*, and the *Canon Regulars*, are very well worth seeing. Notwithstanding the fertility of their Pasture-grounds hereabouts, and the plenty they afford, I saw here a piece of thriftiness, used by the Gentlewomen of this City, *viz.* to be drawn by two Oxen yoked together in their Coaches, to their Country-houses near the Town. The History of *Piacenza* may be read in *Umberto Locati*.

Parma. The City of *Parma* likewise belongs to the Duke of the same name, of the House of *Farnese*, being three miles in compass, the River *Parma* running thro' it, over which is built a handsom Stone Bridge. The Country round about being extreamly fertile, has given a great reputation to the *Parmesan* Cheeses. The Duke's Palace, with its Gardens, Fountains, a stately Theatre for Opera's, his rich Coaches and Stables, are worth the sight of a Traveller. The Cathedral is remarkable chiefly for its Cupola, painted by the most excellent *Correggio*, as the Church of the *Capucins* is for the Tomb of that most famous Hero *Alexander Farnese*. *The Duke's Palace.*

The Revenues of the Duke of *Parma* are said to be six hundred thousand Crowns *per annum*. The *Academy of Wits* of this place stile themselves the *Innominati*.

The two famous Painters, *Correggio* and *Parmigiano*, were Natives of this City, the History of which may be seen in *Bonaventura Arrighi*.

Reggio. From hence we went unto *Reggio*, a Town under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Modena*. It has a neat Cathedral, and *Guido Pancirola*, Cardinal *Tosco* and *Castelvetro* were born here.

Modena. *Modena* is the ordinary Residence of the Duke of that Name; it is a goodly Town, which by its high Steeple discovers it self at a considerable distance; its Citadel lies upon a level with the City. The Duke is of the Family of *Este*, but not of the true Line. Cardinal *Sadoletus*, *Carolus Sigonius*, and *Gabriel Falopius* were born here.

Modena is famous in *Italy* for the best Visards for Masquerades; and the Duke's yearly Revenue computed at three hundred thousand Crowns.

Fort Urban. From thence, passing the River, we came soon to the Fortress of *Urban*, (so call'd from Pope *Urban* VIII. its Founder) situate upon the Frontiers of the Ecclesiastical State, from whence, by the way of *Castel Franco*, (anciently *Forum Gallorum*) we came in good time to *Bologna*.

Bologna. *Bologna* is one of the largest and fairest Cities of *Italy*, and the chief University for Law: It's commonly stiled *Bologna la grassa*, from the fertile Soil in which it lies, in the very center of *Lombardy*, anciently call'd *Gallia Cisalpina*, and in middling Ages *Romagnola*.

As for the City it self, it is very curiously built, for the most part upon Arches, like the *Covent-garden* in *London*, its whole circumference being about five miles. The Pope sends hither a *Legate à latere*, for the administration of the Government, in lieu of which they send an Ambassadour to *Rome*, who resides there constantly, by a peculiar Privilege reserv'd to themselves, with many others, at the time of their voluntary submission under the Papal Jurisdiction. *Their Government and Privileges.*

I spent here six days, in which I took a view of all the remarkable things here, and among the rest, of the Church and Convent of the *Dominicans*, in the first of which is the Tomb, of white Marble carv'd with curious Figures, of St. *Dominick*, the Founder of that Order. Here also they shew you a Manuscript of the Bible, written upon Parchment by *Esdras* himself, (says *Leandro Alberto*) as also a Lamp sent hither by some new-converted *Indians*; a most curious piece of Workmanship. The Quire behind the high Altar is very remarkable for its Seats of rare *Mosaick* Work, of colour'd Wood inlaid into Figures representing the *Old* and *New Testaments*, with such Art, that the Emperour *Charles* V, when this Quire was shewn him, did with the point of his Dagger try whether it were inlaid or painted, the piece which he then pick'd out never being put in since.

The Convent of the *Dominicans* may for Beauty vie with any in *Europe*, in which are maintain'd no less than 150 Friers.

The Nunnery of *Corpus Christi*, of the Order of St. *Clara*, is famous for the Body of *Beata Catherina di Bologna*, a Nun of this Convent: I saw her Body sitting upright in a Chair in her Nuns Habit, the Face and Feet being plainly to be seen, but black and dried up.

Out of the Gate is the pleasant Street where the Coaches make the *Tour à la mode* in the Summer Evenings. From hence turning to the left hand, you see that noble Convent of the *Olivetan Fathers* call'd St. *Michael* in *Bosco*, from the Hill upon which it is built; you have a most agreeable prospect of the City and circumjacent Country. The Oval Court is painted by divers of the best Masters of *Europe*; and I found the *Dormitory* one of the fairest I ever met with in all my Travels.

To be short, the rare row of Pillars, and Portico towards the Street, of the Convent of the *Franciscans*; the two vast Courts, or double Cloyster, built upon Galleries above, in the Monastery of St. *Salvatore*, and the Monasteries of the *Servits*; that of the *Augustines* and *Carmelites*, are so artificially and nobly built, that I much question whether, for fair Monasteries, any City in *Europe* is comparable to *Bologna*.

I took also a view of the Church of St. *Petronio*, at the end of the great Piazza; and considering that at this time I found the same Scaffolds there, and the same knocking and working I had seen 21 years before, when I passed this way, without any great visible improvement, I began to be of *Leandro Alberto's* Opinion, who writ a hundred Years ago, That he believ'd *it would not be finish'd, but with the World*. In this Church *Charles* V. was created Emperour by Pope *Clement* VIII. The Cathedral also is not above half finish'd. *St. Petronio's Church.*

The new Church of St. *Paul* has a most beautiful high Altar, as that of *Giovanni in Monte* boasts of that most excellent Picture of St. *Cecily*, done by *Raphael Urbin*. The *Jesuits* Church, as also that of St. *Stephen*, and that of the *Passion*, also deserve to be taken notice of.

In the Palace of the Pope's Legate I was shewn two or three hundred Manuscripts, all of the Hand-writing of *Aldrovandus*, being Collections and Notes taken out of the best Authors, which had furnish'd him with his Materials for his six great Volumes since in print. He liv'd till he was 83 years old.

The *Spanish* College founded by Cardinal *Albernozzo* is a very handsom Structure, into which none being to be received but natural *Spaniards*, (except the Chaplains) and those to be Doctors of Law before they can be admitted. The intention of this Foundation was, questionless, to encourage the *Spaniards* to learn the Language and Custom of the Country here, and to perfect themselves in the study of the Law, the better to qualifie themselves to fill up the Vacancies in the Courts of Judicature in the *Milanese* and Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*. They have an annual Revenue of twelve thousand Crowns, keep two Coaches, and live very nobly. Hence it is that in this College you see the Pictures of many great persons, who have been Members of this College; and that of Cardinal *Albernozzo*, their noble Founder, in the Church. *The Spanish College.*

In the center of *Bologna* you see two Towers, one high and streight, call'd *De gli Asinelli*; the other low and bending, call'd *La Carissenda*: They would perswade us that this last was built so, by a peculiar piece of Workmanship; but, I think, its lowness is a sufficient Argument that the Architect finding it going on awry, thought it his best way to desist. *Two Towers.*

The Houses of *Bologna* being generally very fair Buildings, with their Doors and Gates commonly open into the Streets in the Summer season, these afford a very delightful prospect of their Courts, Porches and Gardens behind them to the Eye, and a most delicious smell of Jessomin, Orange, and other Flowers to the Nostrils. The best Palaces here are those of *Malvezzi*, *Campeggi*, *Pepoli*, *Fechinetti*, *Cospi*, &c. and these being well fill'd with Nobility and Gentry, the same afford a most glorious shew in their Coaches, in the *Corso* or Street where the *Tour à la mode* is made in the Evenings. *Their Houses.*

Their chief Trade here consists in Silks, Velvets, Olives, Leather-bottles, Gellies, Washballs, and little Dogs for Ladies. Of Provisions they have great plenty here, witness their *Salsicci* only, which are a *Regale* for a Prince. *Their Trade.*

They have also an *Academy of Wits*, known by the name of *Gli Otiosi*, or *Idle men*: From hence (I suppose) came forth these three excellent modern Authors of this City, *viz.* Cardinal *Bentivoglio*, the Marquess of *Malvezzi* and *John Baptista Manzini*; unto whom may also be added *Leandro Alberti*.

For the particular History of *Bologna*, I will refer my self to *Bartholomeo Galeotti* and *Giovanni Garzo*.

Having thus taken a full view of *Bologna*, and provided our selves with a *Bill of Health*, we got on Horseback, and in two days got to *Florence*. We found our first days Journey, by *Pianora*, *Loiano*, *Scarpo*, *l'Azino*, *Pietra Mala*, and over the *Apennines*, very tedious, but were towards night diverted with the sight of a Fire at two miles distance, which often appears here, especially in cloudy weather; I saw it plainly for an hour together of the same bigness, like *The Aire kindled.*

like the glowing of a Furnace, of a perfect round form, and not pyramidical, as other Flames are: The Country People call'd this fixed Meteor *La Bocca d'Inferno*, or *The Mouth of Hell*; the sight of which something allay'd the troublesomness of our Journey till we came to *Fiorenzuola*, where having passed the night, we went on the next morning by *Scarperia* and *Il Ponte*, and came in good time to *Florence*.

Fiorenzuola.

Florence.

Some Authors are of opinion that this City was built by *Sylla*'s Soldiers, (upon whom he had bestow'd this tract of Ground for their Services) at the joyning of the two Rivers *Arno* and *Munio*, and from thence gave it the name of *Fluentia* (as *Colleney* in *Germany* is nam'd *Confluentia* upon the same account) and that it was afterwards call'd *Florentia*, by reason of the flourishing condition of its Soil, as also from the flourishing Wits of the Inhabitants, who were in such esteem among the *Romans*, that they us'd to send their Children into *Tuscany* to be instructed in Learning and Religion.

St. Lawrence's Chapel.

During my stay at *Florence*, I took notice of the most remarkable things here, *viz.* the Chapel of St. *Lawrence*, which when finish'd, will be one of the best Pieces that Eyes can behold, the Sides, as well as the Roof, being to be cover'd with Jasper, *Lapis Lazuli*, and other precious Stones above the rate of Marble; and so finely polish'd, that Art seems to exceed the Materials. In the Niches which are round about the Chapel are to be plac'd the Statues (of Brass gilt) of all the Great Dukes in their Robes, and under each a Tomb, with a Cushion and Ducal Crown upon it; and between each of these Tombs, the several Arms blazon'd by precious Stones of the chief Cities under the Great Duke's Jurisdiction. It's above sixty Years since it was first begun, and yet only the Tomb of *Ferdinand* II. is perfectly finish'd, tho' above sixty Men are kept at work every day. The Cushion upon his Tomb is valued alone at sixty thousand Crowns; from whence you may guess at the rest. The Altar and Tabernacle are kept in the Great Duke's Gallery till the Chapel be finish'd.

The Church of St. Lawrence.

The Church of St. *Lawrence*, unto which this Chapel belongs, tho' not approaching in magnificence to it, yet is a very stately Building, design'd by *Brunelleschi*, the Roof whereof being supported by a double row of stately Pillars; and the Picture painted on the said Roof, over the Quire, representing the Day of Judgment, a rare Piece, done by *Pontorno*; as are the curious Pictures of St. *Anne* and our Blessed Lady in *chiaro è obscuro*. The two *Brazen Pulpits* wrought into historical Figures, are most artificial pieces, by *Donatello*. In the new Sacrifty (intended for the before-mention'd fine Chapel) the Bodies of the Princes of the Family of the *Medices* are deposited, till the Chapel be compleated: But that which is most surprizing, are four most excellent Statues, made by *Michael Angelo*, representing the *Day*, the *Night*, *Aurora* and the *Evening*, that of the *Night* being cried up for the rarest Piece that ever was made. In the midst of this Church, just before the high Altar, is interr'd *Cosmus*, sirnamed *Pater Patriæ*, he that first raised the *Medicean* Family. The Statue of *Paulus Jovius* the Historian, stands in the Cloyster joyning to the Church; and near it, you go up Stairs to the *Bibliotheca Laurentiana*, containing many rare Manuscripts, a Catalogue whereof, as well as of the Books, is printed *Amsterdam*, 1622, 8vo.

The Library

The Great Duke's famous Gallery in the old Palace is a very handsom Pile of Building, and in it a vast number of curious Pictures and Marble Statues of the *Medicean* Family, and Princes as well as other great men, famous either for Learning or Valour. Among the Statues I remember that of *Leda*, of *Diana*, of *Bacchus*, of *Hercules*, of *Scipio Africanus* in Brass, dress'd in the Habit of the ancient *Romans*; the Heads of *Cicero* and *Seneca*, that of *Michael Angelo Bonarota* in Brass, (of his own making) and the Head of *Brutus* the Murtherer of *Cæsar*, begun, but left unfinish'd, by the same *Michael Angelo*, the reason whereof the Sculptor himself has express'd in the following Distich underneath it:

M. *Dum Bruti effigiem Sculptor de marmore ducit,* A.
B. *In mentem sceleris Venit, & abstinuit.* F.

The four corner-Letters intimating, *Michael Angelus Bonarota Fecit.* Among the Pictures, I took notice of the following, renown'd for their Valour, *viz.* of *Hannibal*, of *Scipio* that vanquish'd him, of *Pyrrhus*, *Scanderbeg*, *Venerius*, *Alexander Farnese*, *Cortesius*, *Magellan*, *Andrea d'Oria*, *Gaston de Foix*, the Duke of *Alva*, *Anne de Montmorancy*, *Eccelino* the *Paduan* Tyrant, and many other brave Heroes. Among the Learned Men I observ'd the Pictures of these *Italians*, viz. *Petrarch*, *Ariosto*, *Joannes Casa*, *Poggio*, *Machiavel*, *Guicciardine*, *Jovio*, *Sannazario*, *Bocacchio*, *Platina*, *Brunelleschi*, *Michael Angelo*, *Raphael Urbin*, *Columbus*, *Americus*, and of *Galileo*, with many others.

The Armoury

From hence we passed into the Armoury, being three or four Chambers filled with exotick Curiosities, as with the Armour of many great persons, most curious Cymetars, Scabbards, Caps, Saddles, and abundance of *Turkish* Furniture set with *Turquoises*; a Fowling-piece, with a thick Barrel of Gold, valued at 1500 Pistoles; five Pistol-barrels set together, to be put into a Hat, and to be discharg'd at an Enemy as you salute him, whence they call them *Buona notte*; another Pistol with eighteen Barrels, to be us'd for defence in a Room; a little Brass Cannon, to be taken to pieces, and to be carried with ease upon the highest Steeple; the King of *Sweden*'s Cornet, taken in *Germany*; a Staff of white Cane, (once belonging to the Dukes of *Urbin*) on which are engraven in black the History of the *Apocalypsis*.

From the Armoury we were conducted into five Cabiners full of Precious Jewels, Pictures, and innumerable other Curiosities.

The first Cabinet.

In the first, in the middle of the Room, hangs a rare branch'd Candlestick of Amber; a Table of polish'd Stones of several colours inlaid into Birds and Flowers; the Head of *Tiberius Cæsar* in one *Turky* Stone as big as a Pullet's Egg; several little old Pagan Idols, &c.

The second Cabinet.

In the second Cabinet stand the two great Globes, made in the same Room; a Table of polish'd Stones representing a Town in *Bohemia*, with many other Figures, and having in the middle a natural Tree petrified, retaining the colour of Wood, and bright like the rest of the polish'd Stone. Some Statues in Porphyry of three or four Great Dukes, &c.

The third Cabinet.

In the third Cabinet they shew'd us another Table of polish'd Stones, representing the City and Harbour of *Leghorn*; a very large Ebony Cabinet set with precious Stones on the outside, and with the History of the holy Scripture, curiously done in miniature in divers little squares of rich Stones; on the top is a Clock, made in *Germany*, which no body dares to mend since it has been out of order. Within the Cabinet the whole Passion of our Saviour is most artificially cut by *Michael Angelo*, in Ivory, as they say, but I suppose it to be in white Wax; and our Saviour with his twelve Apostles in yellow Amber, the Heads being of white Amber. This Ebony Cabinet was the Present of the Elector of *Bavaria*, and valued at eighty thousand Crowns. We also saw here the Pictures of *Adam* and *Eve*, by *Alberto Darer*, valued at fifteen hundred Crowns; and the Original *Venus* of *Titian*, with many other Originals, and other foreign Curiosities.

The fourth Cabinet.

The fourth Cabinet, being a large Room call'd *Il Tribuno*, contains richer things than the rest, the Walls being cover'd with original Pictures of the best Masters of the World: Here you see the St. *John Baptist*, as also that of *Leo* X. with the two Cardinals *Julio Medici* and *Rossi* behind him, done by *Raphael*; that of *Southwel*, K. *Henry* VIII's Privy-Councellor, by *Hans Holbein*; that of our Lady, with our Saviour in her Arms, by *Andrea del Sarto*; and the Picture of Cardinal *Bentivoglio*, by *Vandike*; besides divers most curious pieces of Miniature. Here is also to be seen the famous Nail, half Iron half Gold, and two Shells of Mother of Pearl, with two Pearls sticking to them, as they grow naturally; two pieces of Emerauld Rock, one imperfect, the other quite finish'd and green: The two Cupboards within the Wall here contain great variety of fine Cups and Vessels of Crystal, Agate, *Lapis Lazuli*, and such-like curious pieces, valued at two hundred thousand Crowns. But what surpasses all, is the great Ebony Cabinet, valued at five hundred thousand Crowns, being full of ancient Gold, Silver and Brass Medals within, and set without with precious Stones, among the rest with a *Saphir* as broad as a Twenty-shilling piece, and half an inch thick; a Ruby as large as the former; an Emerauld valued no less than the others, and a Pearl of the bigness of an ordinary Walnut; not to speak of other lesser Stones, such as Diamonds, &c. Here also is the Table made of inlaid Work of precious Stones, as *Pearls*, *Rubies*, *Saphires*, *Cornelian*, *Emeraulds*, *Lapis Lazuli*, &c. done so artificially, that the Birds and Flowers are represented in their natural shapes and colours, as if they were painted; and in the center of it you see the Great Duke's Arms in precious Stones; they tell you that thirty Men were imploy'd in the making it for fifteen Years successively, and that it cost an hundred thousand Crowns.

The fifth Cabinet.

The fifth and furthermost Cabiner of this Gallery contains the Altar and Tabernacle before mention'd, belonging to the Chapel of St. *Lawrence*; the whole composure of which Altar and Tabernacle being for its curious Crystal

stal Pillars, with their *Capitelli* of Gold, the vast variety of precious Stones, with the uncommon contexture of other polish'd Stones, and many other curious inlaid Figures in the *Antipendium*, the most exact composure of Ingenuity and Riches that I ever met with, I will rather admire than pretend to describe.

The *Argentaria*. From hence being led thro' another quarter of the Palace, into the Great Duke's *Argentaria*, a great square Room, having twelve Cupboards as high as the Room it self, full of Plate of all sorts. In the first Cupboard we feasted our Eyes with a whole Service of Dishes, Plates, Spoons, Knives, Forks, and other Vessels of beaten Gold; a Bason and Ewre of the same Metal set thick with *Turquoises*; divers small Cabinets set with Gold and precious Stones; a *Turkish* Cymetar with a Scabbard and Handle of Gold, and beset with Diamonds and other Stones; two Swords with Hilts of Gold, beset with precious Stones, and a Dagger of the same richness. In another Cupboard we saw vast variety of Plate of all kinds; in another a Bridle and Saddle with Stirrops of Gold, set thick with *Turquoises*, Diamonds, Pearls, &c. In another Cupboard four large Silver Bed-posts, enamel'd in divers places: In another a very rich *Antipendium* for an Altar, all of beaten Gold, with the Picture of *Cosmus* II. in the middle of it, done most nicely in enamel'd Work, and his Ducal Crown set richly with Diamonds; and above it, all along the *Antipendium*, you see the following Inscription in letters compos'd of many Rubies, each being two fingers long:

COSMUS II. DEI GRATIA MAGNUS DUX ETRURIÆ EX VOTO.

In another Cupboard we saw the Foot of an *Elan*, and a Vizard cover'd with *Turquoises*, &c.

The great Hall. From this place we descended into the Hall, a very spacious Room, where the Country People dance every *Midsummer-day* before the Great Duke, and from thence came into the long *Corridor* or close Gallery, which runs from the new Palace to the old, over the River, and over the tops of Houses, which brought us into the new Palace call'd *Palazzo di Pitti*, because it was begun by *Luca Pitti*, but afterwards bought by the Mother of *Cosmus* II. and carried on to that perfection you now see it in, being one of the fairest Palaces of *Europe*, tho' it is not quite finish'd. The Design is to be a perfect Roman H, with double Rooms on all sides. The Front, unto which you ascend from the Street, has 22 great Windows in a row, all alike, and all of them cheek'd up on either side with fine Stone Pillars. This Palace, as well as most others in *Florence*, is built *à la maniera rustica*, as the *Italians* call it, viz. of rough-hewn Stones, not laid smooth, but advancing a little one over the other. Entring into the Palace, you see a fair Court, at the end of which stands a Fountain with a large Cistern, in which they keep Fish: The Court is square, being open only on that side towards the Garden, where it is also enclos'd by a Terrass of Stone, the top whereof is upon the same level with the ground of the Garden. Beyond this Terrass you see a delicious, fine, green spot of Ground level with the first Story of the Palace, being half encompass'd by a Demi-circle of Laurel-trees, under which are six rows of Stone Seats rising one above the other, (like those in the old Amphitheatres) capable of containing two thousand persons sitting, with conveniency for the Nobility and Gentry to behold the Exercises of the young Noblemen, perform'd here in the presence of the Great Duke and his Court, who look at them from the Windows of the Palace. The rest of the Garden is adorn'd with most curious Walks, affording a pleasant Shade, and overlooking the Town and Country, divers spacious Ponds, a great number of curious Statues of Marble and Stone, many Fountains, a rare Ice-house and cool Cellar, where the melting Ice dropping upon the Pipes of Wine, make the Liquor cool beyond whatever I could meet with in any Cellar before or since.

The long *Corridor*.

The new Palace.

The Garden.

The Duke's Lodgings. From the Garden we ascended into the *Great Duke's* Lodgings, which we found very magnificent both in the Building and Furniture, some of them being finely painted above the Hangings by *Pietro di Cortona*, the best Painter now living; others staying for his return from *Rome*. In one Chamber we saw a rare piece of Painting, representing *Seleucus* surrendring to *Antiochus* his only Son (who languish'd for love of his Mother-in-law) his Queen *Stratonica*. In the Chamber of Audience we were shewn a Suit of Hangings valued at 150000 Crowns, the ground being of Cloth of Gold, embroider'd with Birds, Beasts, Flowers, Trees, Rivers, Landskips, &c. in Silk and Silver; and in the Duke's Bedchamber we saw divers most curious *Thermometers* or Weather-glasses. The Apartment of Prince *Leopold* the Great Duke's Brother, containeth the best collection of Pictures that ever I saw, all Originals, by the best hands, as *Titian*, *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Andrea del Sarto*, &c. but that of *Raphael* excels the rest.

From another Room we could see thro' sixteen Lodging Rooms at once, belonging to the Prince, Son to the Great Duke, to Cardinal *John Carlo*, Prince *Matthias* and Prince *Leopold*, (all three Brothers of the Great Duke) and by most special favour got sight of the Great Duke's noted Diamond, which he keeps under Lock and Key himself; it is without question the finest in *Europe*, almost an inch thick, and weighing 138 carats. I shew'd the weight and thickness thereof to a great Jeweller of *Lyons*, named Mr. *Simonet*, who told me, that according to its right computation it was worth richly a hundred thousand Crowns betwixt Jeweller and Jeweller, and a hundred and fifty thousand Crowns betwixt Prince and Prince.

The *Augustins* Church. Coming from the *New Palace*, we soon fell upon the *Augustins* Church, a beautiful Structure, design'd by *Brunelleschi*; the Tabernacle and high Altar (one of the best in *Italy*) having cost an hundred thousand Crowns. Behind the said Altar is a rare piece of *Allori*, representing the Woman (with all possible marks of confusion in her Face) catch'd in Adultery, and receiving the absolution from our Saviour's hands.

The Piazza. From hence passing over the Bridge (where you see four white Marble Statues representing the four Seasons of the Year) which brought us into the *Piazza* of the *Gran Duca*, we saw here the *Equestrian Statua* of *Cosmus the Great* in *Bronze*, with his chief Actions in the *Pedestal* of the same Metal; and at the corner of the *Old Palace*, in this *Piazza*, a noble Fountain, with a *Neptune*, *Triton* and *Nereides*. Near the Gates of the same Palace stand the two Statues of *David* and *Hercules*, both of a Gygantick stature, the first the Work of *Michael Angelo*, the second of *Bandinelli*. The Statues of *Perseus* in Brass; the Rape of the *Sabins* in Marble, and that of *Judith* in Brass, in the Portico hard by, are also esteem'd most excellent pieces.

Looking up from the *Piazza* to the top of the Palace, I took notice of a high Tower thereupon, being a hundred and fifty yards high from the ground, without any other support than the Wall and top of the Palace, this being the chiefest of the three wonderful Towers among the *Florentines*, one whereof, they say, stands in the Air, which is this; another in the Water, viz. the *Fanal* of *Leghorn*; and the third in the Earth, to wit, the *Campanile* of *Florence*, the Foundations whereof are very deep in the ground.

The Church of St. Mark. As we came from the *Piazza* towards the *Domo* or *Cathedral*, we saw in our way a square flat Church, adorn'd with Statues on the outside, call'd St. *Michael*'s Church: The choicest among these Statues are, that of St. *Matthew* in Brass, and that of St. *Thomas*, of the same Metal, touching our Saviour's side, with a great deal of diffidence in his looks, done by *Andrea Verrocchio*: That of St. *Peter*, and that of St. *George*, are both of Marble; the first being highly valued for its Drapery, the other standing in competition with the best in *Rome*: That of St. *Mark* is highly valued for its honest countenance, and upon that score much applauded by *Michael Angelo* himself.

The Cathedral Soon after we came to the *Domo*, perhaps the finest Church in *Italy* at the time of its building, its Architecture being one of the most compleat (*a la maniera rustica*) that ever was design'd, being contriv'd by *Arrolfo di Lapo* a *Dutchman*. It was anciently known by the name of St. *Reparata* Church, but has since got the name of St. *Maria Florida*. Its outside is certainly the neatest and fairest that can well be seen, being cover'd with red, white and black Marble, but only with Plaister-work within; and the Pillars are of a dark-colour'd Freestone. But what is most remarkable in this Church, is the *Cupola* on the top of it, made by *Brunelleschi* a *Florentine*, which being the first in *Europe*, and consequently the original Pattern of that of St. *Peter*'s at *Rome* it self, and many others, deserves the greater admiration. It is from the ground below it to the top of the Lantern no less than 202 *Braccie* or small yards high; the strait passage from the top of the *Cupola* to the round Ball of Brass, is 36 yards high; the Ball it self has four diameter, capable of holding four and twenty men, and the Cross at the top of this Ball eight yards long: The strait passage up to the Ball is made in form of a round Chimney, of white Marble with holes on both sides, and Steps of Brass cross those holes, for the conveniency of climbing up by Hand and Foot thro' this passage, which is very smooth and well kept.

Having from the top of this *Cupola* taken a view of the City of *Florence* and the most delightful circumjacent Villa's, we descended into the inside of the Church, which we found three hundred foot long long, from the great Door

Door to the Quire, and thence to the end near two hundred more. The Quire, which is round, ſtands perpendicularly under the *Cupola*, and is of the ſame bigneſs. The high Altar ſtanding in the Quire is plain, like in moſt other ancient Cathedrals, adorn'd with a moſt excellent Statue of a dead Jeſus, in Marble, made by *Bandinelli*. On the Roof of the *Cupola* are repreſented in painting, Heaven, Hell and Purgatory, done by *Georgio Vaſari* and *Taddeo Zuccheri*. Neither muſt the moſt exquiſite Statues of *Adam* and *Eve* behind the Altar (the Work of *Bandinelli*) be paſs'd by in ſilence. Near the Door of the Sacriſty you ſee an Inſcription concerning the General Council of *Florence*, where, as they ſay, the Re-union of the Latin and Greek Church was effected: The golden *Diploma* of this Union, written both in Greek and Latin, and ſubſcrib'd unto by the hands of Pope *Eugenius* IV. and Cardinals on one ſide, and *Paleologus* the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperour, with the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* and the Greek Biſhops (except only *Marcus Epheſinus*) on the other ſide, beſides many of the *Armenians*, *Ethiopians*, *Georgians* and *Jacobites*, unto which are put the Leaden Seal of the Pope, and the Golden Seal of the ſaid Emperour; is preſerv'd among the Records of *Bologna*. This Church contains alſo (beſides the Statues of divers Saints, formerly Archbiſhops here) the Tombs of many famous perſons, as of *Marſilius Ficinus*, of *Dante* the *Florentine* Poet, with his true Picture; of *Joannes Acutius* an *Engliſh* Knight, and Commander in chief of the *Piſani*, as the ancient Gothick Letters upon the Wall under his Picture on Horſeback intimate. His Picture is alſo preſerv'd in the Great Duke's Gallery. In this Church you ſee alſo the Tomb of *Brunelleſchi*, the Architect of the *Cupola* of this Church; and that of *Giotto*, who built the fine *Campanile* or Steeple of *Florence*; as likewiſe of *Cimabue*, who firſt reviv'd Painting in *Italy*.

See Lamar. Anno. Deſcription of Italy.

The Council of Florence.

Near the Cathedral ſtands the *Campanile* or high Steeple of *Florence*, being one hundred and fifty *Braccie* or little Yards high, and half as deep in the Ground. It is flat on the top, but cover'd all over with fine poliſh'd Marble, and great variety of Marble Pillars and Statues, among the laſt of which, that of the *Zuccone* or *Blind-man* (the Work of *Donatello*) excels the reſt. But what is moſt ſurprizing, is, that notwithſtanding the curioſity of this Steeple, not the leaſt part thereof has periſh'd in above three hundred years time.

The Baptiſterium.

Not far hence ſtands the *Baptiſterium*, or round Church of St. *John*, where all the Children of *Florence* are baptized. It is chiefly famous for its three pair of Braſs Doors moſt artificially caſt or wrought into hiſtorical Figures of both Teſtaments, the Work of *Laurentius Cion*, who ſpent fifty years in making them: That pair which looks towards the *Domo* was valued at ſo high a rate by that great Maſter *Michael Angelo*, that he us'd to ſay, they were fit to ſtand at the entrance of *Paradiſe*. In this Church you ſee the Statue of *Mary Magdalen*, a moſt excellent piece of *Donatello*; and that neat Tomb of *Baltaſſar Coſſa*, afterwards Pope *John* XXIV, who being depoſed, died at *Florence* in *John Medices*'s Houſe, and making *Coſmus Medices* (afterwards ſtiled *Pater Patriæ*) his Heir; he by his vaſt Wealth laid the foundation of the *Medicean* Family. And here I can't paſs by in ſilence a ſmall round Pillar, ſtanding in the *Piazza* near the *Baptiſtery*, with the figure of a Tree in Iron nail'd to it, and an Inſcription engraven upon it, importing, that a certain Elm-tree, which anciently ſtood in this ſame place, being accidentally touch'd by the Hearſe of *Zenobius*, the Tree budded forth green Leaves, tho' in the month of *January*.

The Church of St. Mark.

In the Church of St. *Mark*, belonging to the *Dominicans*, is to be ſeen the Tomb of St. *Antoninus*, (once Archbiſhop of *Florence*, and a Monk of this Order) under the Altar; as alſo the moſt exquiſite Picture of St. *Mark*, done by *Bartholomeo del Frati*, juſt oppoſite to the great Door, on the left hand of which, as you enter, is the Tomb of *Picus Mirandula*; and near it, upon an Altar, two Angels painted playing upon Muſical Inſtruments, eſteem'd the rareſt pieces in painting that can be ſeen, done by *Bartholomeo del Frati*.

The Annunciata.

Turning from hence to the left, we ſoon came to the *Annunciata*, where we ſaw the curious Picture of Faith and Charity over the Arch in the open Porch built upon Pillars, done not above nineteen Years before by *Jacomo Pontormo*, highly applauded by *Michael Angelo*. The little Court before the Church-door is painted all about in *freſco*, by the beſt hands, the Pieces done by *Andrea del Sarto* (whoſe Head in white Marble you ſee here in the Wall) exceeding the reſt: And in the Cloyſter, over the Door that goes into the Church, you ſee upon the Wall a moſt curious piece, done by the ſame *del Sarto*, repreſenting the Virgin *Mary*, with our Saviour upon one Knee, and *Joſeph* riding upon a Sack full ſtuff'd, and reading in a Book: This Piece, call'd *La Madonna del Sacco*, got ſuch Reputation to *Andrea*, that *Vaſari* declar'd often, he had never ſeen any thing like it; and *Michael Angelo* talking one day in *Rome* with *Raphael Urbin* concerning painting, ſaid, *There is a little fellow* (meaning *Andrea*) *in Florence, who, had he been put upon matters of the ſame conſequence as thoſe he has been, would make thee ſweat again.* Certain it is that *Urbin*, *Andrea*, and *del Sarto* are, by the *Virtuoſi* of *Italy*, almoſt eſteem'd at an equal rate; the firſt being moſt excellent in *Colours*, the ſecond in *Deſign*, and the laſt in *Relievo*, to make them appear natural, and riſing up like living Fleſh.

Within the Church we ſaw the curious Silver Altar, behind which, upon the Wall, is kept the Picture of the *Annunciation*; the little Picture of our Saviour of a foot and a half long: On the outſide of the Tabernacle is alſo a rare Piece, of *del Sarto*'s hand. In this Church you ſee alſo the Tomb, of Marble, of the famous Sculptor *Baccio Bandinelli*, with his own and his Wives Pictures engraven in Marble by himſelf. Behind the Quire is the Tomb of another celebrated Sculptor, to wit, of *Joannes di Bologna*, as ſeveral of his curious Works in *Florence* ſufficiently teſtifie.

Santa Croce.

From the Church of the *Annunciata*, paſſing by the Statue of Braſs of great Duke *Ferdinand*, in the *Piazza* before this Church, we went to that call'd *Santa Croce*, belonging to the *Frati Minori*, is both high and large, but ſomewhat dark, being fill'd on all ſides with many Altars check'd with round Pillars, and beautified with rare Pictures. In the white Marble Pulpit are engraven the moſt memorable Tranſactions of St. *Francis*, in *Baſſo relievo*. Near a little Door behind this Pulpit is the Tomb of *Michael Angelo*, the greateſt *Painter*, the moſt curious *Sculptor*, and the greateſt *Architect* of his time. Hence you ſee under his Picture three Statues of Women, ſignifying *Architecture*, *Painting* and *Sculpture*, with the Inſtruments belonging to their reſpective Profeſſions in their hands. In the midſt of the ſame Church lies interr'd the Body of an *Engliſh* Biſhop, call'd *Cromer*, who had been here in the quality of Ambaſſadour from *England*, perhaps in the time of the Council of *Florence*; his Arms were three Cats Argent in a Sable Field.

The neat and well-painted Chapel of the *Nicolini*, adorn'd with divers excellent Statues, is to be ſeen on the left hand, at the very end of this Church.

The Abbey of the Benedictins.

Near this Church ſtands the Abbey of the *Benedictins*, in the Church whereof is to be ſeen the Tomb of Count *Hugo*, a famous *German* Nobleman, who govern'd *Tuſcany* under the Emperour *Otho* III. The occaſion of founding this Abbey, and many other Monaſteries, by the ſaid *Hugo*, is every Year (viz. on St. *Tecla*'s Day) publickly told here at large by ſome one or other of the beſt Wits of the Academy of *Crusca*.

The Church of St. Maria Novella.

In the Church of St. *Maria Novella*, belonging alſo to the *Benedictins*, the above-mention'd Council of *Florence* was held. Among divers good Pictures and fine Tombs, that of *Joſeph* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* excels all the reſt.

Returning thence by the River-ſide, we paſs'd by the high Pillar having the Statue of Juſtice in Porphyry ſtanding upon it; of which a certain Gentleman ſaid, that it was too high placed for poor men to reach it; and another made this obſervation, that it ſtood with his Back turn'd towards the Courts of Juſtice, which are not far thence.

Poggio Imperiale.

We now thinking it high time to take a turn without the Town, we went to the *Poggio Imperiale*, a Villa belonging to the Great Dutcheſs, not above a mile from the City, having great ſtore of rare Pictures. In one Gallery we ſaw the original Pictures of divers Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and of the Houſe *de Medices*, and of other Princes their Allies. In the other Rooms were to be ſeen (among a great number of others) the *Venus* of *Titian*, tho' I believe this to be only a Copy; the admirable St. *Hierom*, of *Alberto Durco*; a *Magdalen* by *Raphael*; a St. *John Baptiſt* by *Caravagio*, and an *Adam* and *Eve* by *Durco*; another moſt ſurprizing piece, of the Virgin *Mary*, with our dead Saviour upon her Knees, St. *John* the *Evangeliſt* and three other perſons ſtanding or kneeling by, with tears in their Eyes, and moſt dejected Countenances; a piece of *Pietro Erugino*; the Picture of the Aſſumption of our Lady in the Chapel, by *del Sarto*.

The little Apartment call'd the *Great Dutcheſſes Oratory*, for its well-poliſh'd Marble Walls inlaid with curious Flower-works, is certainly the neateſt Cloſet I ever ſaw; and the little pleaſant Grotto, and the Statue of *Adam* made by *Michael Angelo*, deſerve alſo to be mention'd in this place.

Another time we took a view of the Great Duke's Villa ſix miles from *Florence*, call'd *Pratolino*, the Gardens whereof

whereof, with its most excellent Grotto, Fountains, Waterworks, Walks, Groves, &c. are all upon the side of a Hill. The *Grotto* of *Cupid*, and the Fountain of the *Tritons*, as well as those Springs among the Lawrel-trees, wet you soundly as you walk along; and in the Grotto under the Stairs you see many *Guiochi d'Aqua*, as they call them; as that of *Pan* playing upon his Bagpipe, of an Angel sounding a Trumpet, several Mills, and the *Saracens* Head spouting out Water; *Galatea* coming out of her *Ghotto* in a Sea-chariot with two Nymphs, and after having swam a while upon the Water, returns into the same Door: A round Table capable of holding twelve or fifteen persons, with a Fountain playing constantly in the midst of it: The *Samaritan* Woman coming to fill her Buckets with Water, and then returning back again. You see also Smiths knocking, Birds chirping, and Mills grinding, all done by Water, which sets these Engines at work. The neat Bathing-place, the Pillar of petrified Water, and large Pond before the House, with the huge Gyant, within whose Thigh is a Grotto of Water call'd the *Grotto* of *Thetis*, are also highly worth taking notice of.

Lampeggio. We also took a view of the Villa of Prince *Matthias*, call'd *Lampeggio*, about five miles from *Florence*, where we saw most curious Pictures, especially Battels, of the hand of *Tempesta*; a most rare Cabinet of Coral and enamel'd work; a neat Armoury, and divers other pieces of Curiosity.

The Stables, and Menagerie of Wild Beasts. In our return to the Town we saw the Great Duke's Stables, well stor'd with fine Horses; and near to the Stables the Garden, where the wild Beasts are kept in their Dens, from whence they can be brought out into a fair Court to fight, which when it is over, they are frightned into their Dens again, by a certain Engine in the shape of a Dragon, moving upon Wheels, with a Man within the concavity of it, holding out lighted Torches at the Eyes.

See *Brown's Travels.*

I had also the opportunity of being present at divers of their Festines, which all the Noblemen keep during the Winter, when every one in his turn invites the chief (married) Ladies of the Town, to spend the Winter Evenings in playing at Cards. At this time all comers and goers, of both Sexes, that are of any garb, are admitted, the Doors being set open in eight or ten Chambers going out of one another, with a square Table in each, holding about eight persons, as many Chairs, two Silver Candlesticks with Wax Lights, besides many other Lights all about the Room. The Company being come, they sit down to play, a Gentleman sitting between every Lady, the Women being as fine as Jewels and Clothes can make them, and any Gentleman being allow'd to stand behind them and see with what decency they play, and for how little, there being a great Room fitted on purpose, with a long Table, below Stairs, for such Gamesters as have a mind to play only for Moneys sake. There is also a side-Chamber open for Gentlemen to refresh themselves in, with Wine standing in Snow, with Limonade and cooling Drinks, which they also offer to the Ladies.

Their Sports. As the *Florentines* have for a considerable time enjoy'd the fruits of Peace, so they are much addicted to Recreations: They have in the Winter a certain Play call'd *Giuocho di Calcio*, much like our Football, but that they play it with their Hands. Every night, from *Epiphany* till *Lent*, they divert themselves with their *Principi di Calcio*, which being a thing peculiar to *Florence*, deserves to be mention'd here.

They divide themselves into two Companies, viz. the *red* and the *green*, each of which chuses a Prince, some Gentleman of a good Estate; these Princes being chosen, lodge for the time in some considerable House, elect Officers, keep their Courts, give Audience to one another's Ambassadours, complain of one another's Subjects, give Orders for settling their affairs, hear the Complaints of their Subjects, jeer one another in their Embassies, and after Redress demanded and refused, proclaim War. During these Transactions, in which they spend their Winter Evenings, the Secretaries of State (two of their best Wits) read each before his respective Prince, divers Bills for regulating Abuses, and many Petitions and Advices upon that subject, taking this opportunity to jeer the Abuses of the Town with a prodigious deal of Wit. Thus having passed on their time till the Carneval, both Princes appoint a Battel at *Calcio*, to be fought in the *Piazza* of *Santa Croce*, where both Princes, with their Attendance, being come at the appointed time, richly apparel'd, on Horseback, distinguish'd by their green and red Scarfs about their Arms, they make their several Cavalcades before the Great Duke's Scaffold, and then alighting from their Horses, they enter, with their sumptuous train of young Gentlemen and rich Liveries, the List under the sound of Trumpets; and having laid their Standards at the Great Duke's Feet before his Scaffold, the Ball or Ballan is thrown in the midst among them, which they manage to and fro with excessive nimbleness and skill, and sometimes stand to it so close, that they don't come off without cuffs, but no man must resent afterwards what passes in the Lists, upon pain of Death. In fine, that side which can strike the Ball first over the Rails of the other side gets the day, and running to the Standards, carry them off. The whole is concluded at night by a Ball at Court, which the Prince of the conquering party gives to some Ladies, and where all his chief Officers dance alone with the Ladies, none else being admitted to that Honour this night.

Besides these Diversions, they have constantly once a week a Ball at Court, from *Twelfth-day* till *Lent*, where all the married Ladies of the Town are invited by a Ticket.

Their Opera's are also acted with singular Art about this time; and they have their running at the Ring, or at the *Fanchin*, for a piece of plate. In the Summer-time they have their set dancing days, their frequent *Corsi di Palio*, or running of Horses for Prizes, before their Prince, who thinks it his Interest to divert the minds of his Subjects by these Diversions from entring into Cabals against the State.

The Court of *Florence*. As for the Court of *Florence*, it is one of the best of *Italy*. The noble Palaces, the numerous train of noble Officers and Gentlemen, with a good number of Pages, Palfreniers, Guards of *Swiss*, &c. make it appear very splendid; but the greatest Ornament of this Court was the Duke's person, whose extraordinary Civility in admitting of the Visits of Strangers, if they be of any condition, makes this Court very agreeable to all. He not only entertain'd us with a great deal of good Discourse in his Apartment, but also sent us a *Regalo* of the best Meats and Wines to our Lodgings. The Name of this Family is *Medices*, which has given no less than four Popes to the Church, and two Queens to *France*, and is originally descended from *Athens*, but being grown considerably during the Republick of *Florence*, was first raised to a more than ordinary pitch of greatness by *Cosmus Medices*, who having bestow'd part of his vast Wealth in publick and private Buildings, and lending Money to the poor Citizens, did thereby raise a strong Faction against him, which prevailing, they clapt him up in Prison, with an intent to take away his Life; but being, by the means of a vast present, escap'd out of Prison, retir'd to *Venice*, from whence having been recall'd not long after, he was not only restor'd to his former station, but also dignified by the common people with the Title of *Pater Patriæ*, which at last got the Soveraignty into his Family, the Government of *Florence* being now Monarchical and Despotical, where the Great Duke's Will is instead of a Law. This State has at present twenty Episcopal Cities, five hundred walled Towns, twelve Gallies, and about twenty Ships of War. As for the Inhabitants, the happiness of their Climate has made them naturally ingenious, as their good management has stor'd them with Riches, the Nobility and Gentry here thinking it no disparagement to their Quality to exercise their Stock by trafficking, by which means they often purchase considerable Offices for their Children, and make them rise now and then to high Dignities.

The Inhabitants.

The Yearly Revenue of the Great Duke is computed at a million and a half *Piastri*, each Piaster being something more than our Crowns; besides his Jewels, Forfeitures, and *Datii*; which last are a considerable addition to his Revenue.

His Interest being with the *Austrian* Family, he consequently stands well with the *Spaniards*, yet so, as to maintain a good correspondence with *France*, it being his Interest to be against a War in *Italy*, as having a great deal to lose.

The Language of *Florence* is the purest in *Italy*, but this is in their Books, for they speak much in the Throat. The Academy of Wits, call'd the *Crusca*, has contributed much to the enriching of this Language with a great number of choice words, by their famous Dictionary, call'd from them the *Crusca*, which could not be brought to perfection in less than forty Years.

The Language.

The Learned Men of this City in latter times are, *Marsilius Ficinus*, *Dante*, *Petrarch*, *Guicciardine*, *Poggio*, *Vespucius*, *Accursius*, *Michael Angelo*, *Joc. Casa*, *Nectantus*, *Galileo*, *Doni*, *Luigi*, *Alemanni*, and others. The History of *Florence* may be read in *Giovanni Villani*, *Matthæo Villani*, *Scipione Ammirato*, and in the Life of *Gran Cosmo*.

Having thus far satisfied our Curiosity in taking a full view of fair *Florence*, we resolv'd to make an excursive Voyage for the same purpose to *Leghorn*, by the way of *Pistoia*, *Lucca* and *Pisa*.

Pistoia

Pistoia is a very ancient City, having nothing remarkable in it now, but that Pope *Clemens* IX, of the ancient Family of the *Rospigliosi*, was born here; it being for the rest, either by its nearness to *Florence*, or by its Civil Distractions, reduc'd to a very ruinous condition.

Pistoia.

As for *Lucca*, it is a very pretty little Commonwealth, seated within the Territories of the Great Duke of *Florence*, govern'd by a *Confaloniero*, and a Council of its own, consisting of one hundred and sixty persons chosen out of the Citizens every Year. The Town, which is three miles in circumference, and is fortified with eleven Bastions faced with Brick, surrounded with a broad Ditch, and encompass'd with Trees, has altogether the resemblance of one of the *Dutch* Cities, and is computed to contain about thirty thousand Souls in its circuit, and to have about five hundred thousand *French* Livres for its Annual Revenue. The Arsenal contains thirty thousand Musquets, eight thousand Pikes, and two thousand pieces of Armour, besides good store of great Artillery.

Lucca.

Its Strength.

Churches.

The Cathedral here is dedicated to St. *Martin*, the Bishop whereof has all the Ensigns of an Archbishop, and the Canons in the Quire appear with Miters like Bishops. The *Confalonier* resides, during his Charge, in the Town-house. In the Church of St. *Frediano*, belonging to the *Canon Regulars*, you see the Tomb of St. *Richard* King of *England*, who died there in his Pilgrimage to *Rome*. In the *Augustins* Church they shew you a hole where the Earth open'd to swallow up a blasphemous Gamester.

Pope *Lucius* III. was a Native of *Lucca*, as were the brave *Castruccio*, and the learned *Pagninus*, a great Hebrecian.

Camagior, Viareggia, Montignose, Castiglione, and *Minuciano*, are also under the Jurisdiction of this small Republick.

From *Lucca* we travel'd ten miles further to *Pisa*, once the Head of a most flourishing Commonwealth, but since subject to the *Florentines*. Its situation in a very bad Air makes it but ill inhabited now.

Pisa.

The *Domo* or Cathedral, built *à la maniera Tedescha*, (introduc'd by the *Germans*) is a very neat Structure, its three brazen Doors being full of excellent Figures in *basso relievo*, near which you see a Tower, so artificially contriv'd, that it seems to be falling; and on the other side of it is the *Campo Santo*, a Square cloyster'd about with two Cloysters, but excellently well painted, having got its Name from the Holy Earth brought from *Jerusalem* by fifty Gallies belonging once to this Republick, 1224, of which they made this Square.

The Cathedral and beaning Tower.

Here also we saw divers good Colleges, but few Students, a handsom Library, and a Physick-Garden.

Here the Order of St. *Stephen* (the only in *Florence*) have their Residence, the Knights whereof wear a red Sattin Cross upon their Cloaks; their Profession is to fight against the *Turks*; they have a very goodly House, wherein they live in common, and have a sufficient maintenance. Their Church is remarkable for its *Facciata*, of white Marble, and a multitude of *Turkish* Ensigns within it; and in their Treasury they shew'd us a great Buckler all of Pearl and Diamonds, taken formerly in the Battel against the *Turks*. In their Records they preserve the Names of all such Knights as have done considerable Services against the Infidels, to excite others to follow their laudable Examples. They are at liberty to marry, but most of 'em prefer a single life before it. At *Pisa* were call'd two Councils, one 1409, the other 1511.

From *Pisa* travelling thro' a pleasant Forrest, we came to *Leghorn*, (*Portus Liburnus*) the only Harbour belonging to the Great Duke of *Florence*; it is of no large extent, but perhaps the neatest Seaport Town that may be seen; and very populous since the unwholsomness of the Air, occasion'd by the circumjacent Seas, has been corrected, by dreining and conveying the Waters thereof into a cut Chanel which reaches from hence to *Pisa*, and carries Boats of a good burthen. Within the compass of the great Haven is a lesser one, for the Gallies: The first is secur'd by a Mole, and a Lantern with seven Lights. The Statue of *Ferdinand* I. in Marble, with four *Slaves* in *bronze* (who would have row'd away in a Galley) at his Feet; the Greek Church, the Castle, the Gunpowder Tower in the Sea, the *Jews* Synagogue, and lastly, the two Windmills here, (rare things in *Italy*) are worth a Stranger's observation.

Leghorn.

As good Bargains are prefer'd in this place before good Books, so there is no *Academy of Wits*, or any other Record of Learned Men of it.

From hence we return'd to *Florence*, where having rested our Horses two days, we set out for *Rome*; and passing three miles beyond *Florence*, under a Monastery of the *Carthusians* seated upon a round Hill, and thro' St. *Cassian* lodg'd at night at *Poggio-bonzi*, a little Town, famous only for the making of perfum'd Snuff of which the *Italians* and *Spaniards* are very fond, and the next day by Noon reach'd *Siena*, now the second City in the *Florentine*, and once the Head of a considerable Commonwealth, till it was forc'd to submit to the *Florentines*, 1555. It has got its Latin Name (*Sena*) from the *Galli Senones*, who coming with *Brennus* into *Italy*, were the Founders thereof. Its Streets are neatly pav'd with Bricks set edge-way, and the wholsomness of the Air, fruitfulness of the Soil, and sociableness of the Inhabitants, makes this place much frequented by Strangers in the Summer-time.

Poggi Bonzi.

Siena.

The Cathedral here, built *à la Tedescha*, of black and white Marble both without and within, is one of the neatest Buildings in all *Italy*; its Frontispice being most curiously carv'd, and beautified with many Statues; the only defect it has being the smallness of the *Piazza*, which robs it of part of its Grace. In the inside, immediately under the Roof, you see the Heads of all the Popes in white Marble; but what is its chief Ornament is the Floor or Pavement, of Marble inlaid with Figures of Marble of divers sorts and colours, which making the shadows, produce such a kind of most curious Mosick Work, as no body hitherto has had boldness enough to attempt to imitate, or to finish that part of it which remains undone. It was begun by *Duccio Senese*, and carried on by *Dominico Beccafumi*, or, as some say, by *Marchesini*, but left unfinish'd. That part which they shew'd us uncover'd (it being all cover'd with Boards) represented the History of *Abraham* going to sacrifice his Son *Isaac*, and that of the *Maccabees*. Turning to the left within the Church, you see the Library, rarely painted in *fresco*, by *Pietro Perugino*, *Raphael's* Master, representing the Actions of *Æneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope *Pius* II. And in the same Chapel you see the Statues of the Popes *Alexander* III, *Pius* II, *Paulus* IV, and of *Alexander* VI, all Natives of *Siena*. The Chapel here, erected in memory of St. *Katherine* of *Siena*; the great Hospital; the Palace of *Pius* II, of the Family of *Piccolomini*; the great Piazza; the Pillar with the Wolf of Brass upon it; the Marble Pillar near the Gate as you come from *Florence*, with the *Imperial* and *Portuguese* Arms upon it, (erected in memory of the Marriage celebrated here, betwixt the Emperour and *Eleanora* of *Portugal*, in the presence of *Æneas Sylvius* then Archbishop here) are worth the Curiosity of a Traveller.

The Cathedral.

Library.

The Academy of Wits of this place have given themselves the illustrious Title of *Gli Intronati*, for what reason I know not.

Academy.

In this place was held the General Council, consisting of 130 Bishops, call'd by Pope *Nicholas* III. St. *Bernardin* the Reformer of the *Minorites*, St. *Katherine*, and *Bernus Columbanus*, the Founder of the Order of the *Feuillans*, were of this place; as also *Alexander* III, of the Family of the *Bandinelli*; *Pius* II, of the *Piccolomini*; *Paulus* V, of the House of *Borghesi*; and *Alexander* VII, of that of *Chisi*, all four Popes. *Ambrosius Politi* and *Adrianus Petri*; the first whereof has render'd himself famous by his Writings against *Luther*, the other by his *Dictionary*; were both Natives of *Siena*, the History whereof may be seen in *Orlando Malavolto*.

Council.

From hence we continued our Journey thro' *Buon Convento*, *Torrenieri*, and St. *Quiricke*, to *Radicofani*, a strong Castle built by *Desiderius* King of the *Longobards*, upon a high Hill, being now the last place under the Jurisdiction of the *Florentines* on this side. Having taken our Dinner here, we went on to lodge at *Aquapendente*, about twelve miles off, the first Town belonging to the Ecclesiastical State, seated upon a Hill, and of late years dignified with the Title of a Bishop's Seat, which was transfer'd thither from *Castro*, after its demolishment by the Pope's Order.

Aquapendente.

From hence passing thro' St. *Lorenzo*, we came no long after to *Bolsena*, (*Urbs Volsinensium*) where the famous Miracle was wrought, 1263, which gave occasion to Pope *Urban* IV. to institute the Feast of *Corpus Christi*, as may be seen in *Leandro Alberti* and *Onuphrius Panvinus*, in his Life of Pope *Urban* IV. We travel'd on along the Lake of *Bolsena*, in the midst of which is a small Isle, wherein *Amalasuinta* Queen of the *Ostrogoths* is said to have been murther'd by her next Kindred.

After we had passed for a considerable time along this Lake, we entred a Wood call'd anciently *Lucus Vulsinensium*, and now *Bosco Helerno*, formerly a dangerous Passage because of the Banditti, before they were extirpated out of the Ecclesiastical State by Pope *Sixtus* V, by promising a Pardon, and a Recompence of some hundred Crowns for the Head of every Banditti that should be brought.

No.

No sooner had we pass'd this Wood, but we reach'd *Montefiascone*, seated upon a Hill, and a Bishop's Seat, but chiefly famous for its excellent *Muscatello* Wine.

Montefiascone.

In a Church here, at the foot of the Hill, you see the following Inscription,

Propter EST, EST,
Herus meus mortuus est.

upon the Tomb of a certain *Dutchman*, who drank himself to death here, it being his custom to send always one of his Servants before to try the best Wines in the Inns, and to mark such Inns as had the best Wines with the word *EST*.

It was here also that *Camillus* shew'd his Generosity at the Siege of *Phaliscum* (the ancient Name of this place) when he caus'd the Schoolmaster, who would have betray'd the Town to him, to be whipt back by his own Schoolboys.

Viterbo.

From thence descending the Hill, we came to *Viterbo*, an Episcopal Seat in a very wholsom Air, with most excellent Fountains; it was ruin'd by the two Factions of the *Gatti* and *Maganesi*.

In the Cathedral and the *Franciscans* Church you see the Tombs of several Popes; and in the last, the Body of St. *Rosa* entire.

The *Academy of Wits* here call themselves *Gli Ostinati*, from their perseverance in their Studies.

A mile beyond *Viterbo* you see the Church and Convent call'd *Madonna del Querco*; and a mile further, a very fine Country-Seat.

Caprarola.

Being on our own Horses, we made a small Excursion to *Caprarola*, a stately Palace belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, being accounted one of the best in all *Italy* for the excellency of its Architecture. Its situation is upon the side of a Hill, from whence you have a prospect of *Rome*, tho' about two and thirty miles off. Its form is a Pantagone without, but circular within, and the Chambers all square, well proportion'd, and most curiously painted, by *Pietro Orbista*. Here is the noted Whispering-chamber, where four Men standing each in one of the four corners of the Room, with their Faces to the Wall, may hear distinctly what any of them says with a very low tone, whereas nothing can be heard by those that are in the midst of the same Room. The Kitchin all of one Stone; the low Cave with the Pillar in it cut out of a Rock, and supporting the whole Pavement of the round Court, which lets light into this Cave; the Gardens on the Hill side, with its curious Waterworks, Grotto's, &c. but especially the curious Wine-cellar under the great Terrass before the House, deserve the particular Observation of a curious Traveller.

From *Caprarola* returning into the Road at *Monterosa*, we passed by *Bacano* and the *Hosteria del Storto*, and reach'd *Rome* the same night. All the way from *Monterosa*, near to the Gates of *Rome*, was anciently in the possession of the *Veientes*.

The River Varca.

Near to *Bacan* you see a Lake, whence arises the River *Varca*, (anciently *Cremera*) near unto which hapned that famous Engagement, in which three hundred *Fabii* were slain by the *Veientes*, there remaining none alive of that whole Family, except one little Boy incapable of bearing Arms, from whom descended *Fabius Maximus*, the first that check'd the Courier of *Hannibal's* Victories.

Veii.

It was hereabouts also that the ancient City of *Veii* stood, which, after having resisted the *Romans* for ten Years successively, was taken at last by *Camillus*, and was of such consequence, that after the *Gauls* had destroy'd *Rome*, it was debated in the Senate, whether they should not leave *Rome* and fix themselves at *Veii*.

See Val. Max. l. 1. c. 1.

Coming within twelve miles of *Rome*, we saw the *Cupola* of St. *Peter's* Church, and a few hours after passing by an old Tomb, commonly call'd *Nero's* Tomb, and over the *Ponte Molo*, entred *Rome* by the *Via Flaminia* and *Porta del Populo*.

AN

AN ITALIAN Voyage: OR, A Compleat Journey thro' ITALY.

PART II.

By *RICHARD LASSELS.*

WE were no sooner settled in a House, but we began to satisfie our own Curiosity, with taking a satisfactory view of a City, who once was stiled, and that truly, the *Mistress of the World*. But not to insist at present upon her ancient Titles, whilst yet in the possession of the Pagans, it will not be beyond our purpose to set down the Reasons why *Rome* has, among all the other Cities of *Italy*, (which commonly are distinguish'd by peculiar sirnames) obtain'd the Name of *Roma la Santa*, i. e. *Rome the holy*.

Why Rome is stiled the holy

Its having been the Seat of St. *Peter* and his Successors, to the number of 240 and odd Popes; its being sanctified by the Preaching and Blood of the two Apostles, of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, and with the Blood of many other Martyrs, whose Bodies lay interr'd here; but above all, its having been so instrumental in the Conversion of many Nations of *Europe* to the Christian Religion: All these, I say, being Prerogatives belonging in a peculiar manner to *Rome*, may sufficiently entitle this City to its holy Epithete: And to accomplish the rest, the most singular Charity that is practis'd daily in *Rome*, beyond any other place that ever I saw in the World, seems to establish its Title beyond all contradiction.

Regular acts of Charity at Rome.

If we cast our Eyes upon the Hospitals in *Rome*, it must be confess'd by all, that there is scarce any Evil of the Body, but what may meet with its Remedy here. Here Pilgrims find their Tables ready cover'd for their reception; young unmarried Women, Sustenance and Portions till they are married or otherwise dispos'd; expos'd Infants are carefully maintain'd, Fools and Madmen well entertain'd, poor People provided with Food and Remedies, and even the Gentlemen reduc'd to a low condition, with a great deal of tenderness look'd after in peculiar places erected for that purpose.

The *Apothecary's Shop* founded by Cardinal *Francis Barberin*, has a yearly Revenue of 12000 Crowns, for the use of the poor sick People.

The *Hospital* of the *Holy Trinity* has been known to treat, in the Year of *Jubile*, five hundred thousand Pilgrims, and about fifteen thousand in a day. Most Nations may find here the Consolation of meeting with *Hospitals* of their own: Thus the *English* College was formerly an Hospital for the *English*; that of the *Anima* is for the *Germans*; that of St. *Lewis* for the *French*; that of St. *Jacomo* for the *Spaniards*; that of St. *Anthony de Padua* for the *Portuguese*; that of St. *Julian* for the *Flemmings*; that of St. *Ambrose* for the *Lombards*; that of St. *Ivo* for the *Britans*; that of St. *Hierom* for the *Illyrians*; that of St. *Maria Egyptiaca* for the *Armenians*; that of St. *Stephen* for the *Hungarians*; and that of St. *Stanislaus* for the *Poles*; besides a great number of others, there being scarce any Generation of Artisans in *Rome*, but what have their peculiar Hospital.

Hospitals for most Nations at Rome.

In the Church of the twelve Apostles are yearly chosen twelve Noblemen and one Prelate, (whom they stile their *Prior*) these search all the corners of *Rome* for poor Men, who perhaps are asham'd to expose themselves by begging in publick. It is very well known what Sum the Popes commonly allow yearly for charitable uses, in which he is imitated by many of the Cardinals, who contribute liberally towards the maintenance of indigent persons: By the Books of Accounts of Cardinal *Montalto* it was found, that he had given away above 107000 Crowns to the Poor.

They take no less care to remedy the Distempers and Inconveniencies of the Mind, for which reason you see so many Libraries, Colleges, Monasteries, and devout Societies here. Not to speak here of the Libraries belonging to the Religious Houses, and the incomparable Library of the *Vatican*, (of which more hereafter) those of Cardinal *Barberin*, of the Duke of *Altemps*, that of *Sapienza*, and that of the *Augustins*, are undeniable Instances of their singular care in this kind, the two last being open and free to all Gentlemen every day. And as to Colleges and Seminaries for the education of Youth, here is such a vast number of them, that there is scarce a Nation but what has one belonging to it.

Libraries.

Colleges.

Neither ought the *Monasteries* for the restraining of *Lust* and other Worldly Extravagancies, be pass'd by in silence. The breeding up of young Girls in a virtuous way, the House erected for the retirement of such Women as live at variance with their Husbands, and the Convent of penitent Whores, in order to the recalling them from their lewd Courses, are the highest Acts of Charity that can be imagin'd. Even the Lawyers of *Rome* make peculiar profession of Charity, a certain Society meeting every week to carry on the just Causes of the Poor at their own charge. The Priests of the Oratory make it their business to make up Breaches in Families, and preach every day four times in the *Chiesa Nova*, for the instruction of the Inhabitants, as the Pope allows a peculiar Preacher to preach every *Saturday* to the *Jews*, and provides for them in the Hospital of the *Catechumens* till they are well instructed. The Fathers of the *Agonizants* assist those struggling with Death, as the Society call'd *la Compagnia di Morti* give their pious assistance to condemn'd Criminals, and bury the dead. Add to this the *Schola pia* of *Rome*, manag'd by a Society of *Religious Fathers*, who teach the Youth only the first Rudiments of Grammar *gratis*, in order to fit them for the *Jesuits Schools*. They are clad like the *Jesuits*, except that they go barefoot in Sandals.

Monasteries and Convents.

Charitable Actions.

Such variety of charitable Actions being sufficient to entitle *Rome* to the Name of *Holy*, we will now take a view of it, and begin with the *Ponte Angelo*.

This Bridge was anciently call'd *Pons Elius*, and is now beautified with most curious Iron-work and twelve Marble Statues, set up by Pope *Clement* IX. From hence looking down on the left hand into the River, you see the Ruins of the famous *Triumphal Bridge*, because over it the ancient *Romans* passed in triumph to the Capitol, having this peculiar Privilege annexed to it, that no *Rusticks* or ordinary fellows should pass over it.

Ponte Angelo.

At the end of *Ponte Angelo* is the Castle call'd *Moles Adriani* formerly, being the place of Burial of the Emperor *Adrian*; it was then a vast round Stone Tower, divided into three Stories, growing lesser and lesser to the top, on which stood the Brass gilt *Pine-Apple*, now to be seen

in the Garden of *Belvedere*; it had round about in the Wall vast Marble Pillars, and many Statues, which were broke down by the Soldiers of *Belisarius*, the better to defend themselves against the *Goths*; it has got the name of St. *Angelo* ever since St. *Gregory*, in a Procession. During the Plague, we saw an Angel sheathing his Sword upon the top of the *Mole*, from the Bridge below it, which therefore was likewise its Name from this Miracle. The Popes *Boniface* VIII, *Alexander* IV, and *Urban* VIII have since taken care to have it fortified with five regular Bastions, and allotted a suitable Train of Artillery for its defence; which stood in good stead to Pope *Clement* VII, who retir'd thither from the *Vatican*, thro' the long Gallery, which runs from the Palace to this Castle, to avoid the fury of the *Germain* Soldiers, many of which were *Lutherans*. Here are divers pieces of Cannon, made of the Brass taken out of the *Pantheon*. This Castle serves also for a Prison of State: Here are kept five millions, laid up by Pope *Sixtus* V. the Papal triple Crown call'd *Regni*, and the Records of the Pope.

See Ray's Travels.

Hence going towards St. *Peter's* Church, we saw the Church of the *Carmelites*, call'd St. *Maria Transpontina*; and in a Chapel on the left hand as you enter, two Stone Pillars enchased in Wood, to which (they say) St. *Peter* and *Paul* were tied, when they were whipt before their Execution, according to the *Roman* Custom. Here you see also the Head of St. *Basil* the *Greek*, and a curious Picture of St. *Barbara*.

St. *Maria Transpontina*.

From hence we came to the Palace formerly belonging to the *English* Ambassadors, near the Pope's Palace, but given to *Campegi*, the Pope's Legate in *England*, by King *Henry* VIII, it now belongs to the Cardinal *Colonna*.

The *English* Palace.

Opposite to it you see a curious Fountain in a small Piazza, with a little Church adjoyning to it, call'd St. *Jacomo Scozza Cavalli*, where they shew you two Stones, that on the right hand of the Altar being that upon which *Abraham* would have sacrificed his Son *Isaac*; that on the left side, under another Altar, being the Stone on which our Saviour stood when he was presented in the Temple.

From hence you soon enter the Piazza of St. *Peter*, built all about with a stately Stone Portico, supported by four rows of noble round Pillars. This Portico, which is of an oval figure, (enclosing the whole Piazza before St. *Peter's* Church, which is capable of holding two hundred thousand Men) can be no less than half a mile in circumference, the most stately thing I ever beheld in my life; it was begun by Pope *Alexander* VII, and one half of it is quite finish'd.

The Portico of the Piazza of St. *Peter*.

In the midst of the Piazza stands that noted *Guglia* or *Egyptian* Obelisk brought in ancient times to *Rome*, and dedicated to *Augustus Cæsar* and *Tiberius*, as the Inscription tells you. It was taken out of the *Circus* of *Nero*, and placed here by the famous Architect of *Como*, *Dominico Fontano*, at the charge of *Sixtus* V. The whole *Guglie* is of one Stone of speckled Marble without Hieroglyphicks, and is (including the Basis, which is not of the same Stone) 108 foot high: It is supported by four Brass Lions gilt, and has at the top a Cross of Brass fixt upon three Mountains, with a Star over them, (the Arms of *Sixtus* V. his Name being *Montalto*) within the Cross is enclos'd a piece of our Saviour's Cross: The whole *Guglia* is said to weigh 956148 pound weight, and is to have on each side most curious Fountains, one whereof is to be seen there already, and throws up a great quantity of Water.

The Obelisk before the Church.

Out of the Piazza you ascend by twenty four Marble Steps, as long as the Frontispiece of the Church is wide, to the Church of St. *Peter*, these Stairs being the same as belong'd to the old St. *Peter's* Church, leading up to the Frontispiece it self, which has five Doors, and consequently as many Inlets into the Porch. These Doors are cheek'd with large round Pillars of Stone 24 foot in circumference, and 86 in height; these support the Architrave, over which is the Balcony where the Pope is crown'd, and from whence he imparts his Benediction on *Easter-day*. Over this Lodge or Balcony runs a row of Rails, on which stand thirteen vast Statues of Stone, *viz.* of our Saviour and his twelve Apostles.

The Steps and Frontispiece of St. *Peter's* Church.

As you enter the Porch, you are surpriz'd with the sight of a great number of Marble Pillars, and of a most rich gilt Roof, but, above all, with its height, length and breadth, its height being 134 foot, its length 289, and the breadth 44.

The Porch.

Directly opposite to the five Doors of the Porch stand the five Doors of the Church it self, one whereof, which is call'd *Porta Santta*, is open only in the Jubilee Year, the others are open every day; and the two principal ones, cover'd with Brass, being thirteen foot wide and forty five high, are known by the Name of *Valvæ St. Petri*, because the Pope's Bulls are affix'd here at the time of their publication. You see engraven in them the crowning of the Emperour *Sigismund*, the Union of the *Greek* and *Latin* Churches, with some other memorable Actions of Pope *Eugene* IV.

The Church doors, and *Porta Santta*.

Valvæ S. Petri

The inside of this Church is built cross-wise, 520 foot long, and 385 broad; so that in spaciousness it surpasses all the famous Temples of Antiquity, *Solomon's* Temple being but 60 cubits long; that of *Ephesus*, dedicated to *Diana*, 425 foot, and the length of the Great Mosque at *Fez* being 150 cubits.

The inside of St. *Peter's* Church.

The vaulted Roof of this noble Church is divided into great squares, each of which is almost fill'd with a large gilt Rose; it is supported by vast Stone Pillars of a square form, each 185 foot in compass, and 40 distant from one another. The *Capitelli* are most curious Workmanship, of the *Corinthian* Order, joyn'd to one another by Arches, and one continued *Cornice*, over which you see in Stone the Statues of several moral Virtues. That side of them wherewith they face the body of the Church, is to be cover'd with white Marble, with two rows of Niches in them for great Brass Statues gilt. The other sides are already over-crusted with a kind of reddish Marble, and adorn'd with the Heads of the primitive martyr'd Popes, held up by two Angels, and the Pigeon of *Innocent* X. (who made this decoration) all of white Marble, and in *mezzo relievo*. Behind these Pillars is a large Isle or Passage, behind which you see many fair Chapels flanking the Church, each having a small *Cupola* of its own.

The Roof.

In the midst of this vast Structure is mounted the great *Cupola*, supported by four Pilasters or vast Pillars, which make the four corners of the Cross of the Church. It is as large in compass as the *Pantheon*, i.e. one hundred and seventy paces, as may be seen by a circle of Marble in the Pavement which surrounds the Altar of St. *Peter*, perpendicularly under the circle of the *Cupola*, which is within most curiously painted with Pictures in *Mosaick* Work representing the Heavens. This *Cupola*, the boldest piece of Architecture the World ever beheld, was the effect of the Liberality of Pope *Sixtus* V. The four square Pilasters which support it are square Pillars 120 foot in compass each, and capable of Stairs within them, and large Sacristies above, for the preservation of the Relicks kept there, *viz.* the print of our Saviour's Face in the Handkerchief of St. *Veronica*; a piece of the holy Cross; the top of the Lance wherewith our Saviour's side was pierced; and the Head of St. *Andrew* the Apostle. In these four Pillars you see Niches, in which are placed four vast white Marble Statues: Under that where the Relick of the Handkerchief is, is the Statue of St. *Veronica*; under that where the piece of the holy Cross is kept, the Statue of St. *Helen*; under that containing the top of the Lance, the Statue of *Longinus*; and under St. *Andrew's* Head, the Statue of St. *Andrew*.

The *Cupola*.

Perpendicularly under the very center of the *Cupola*, stand the truly great or high Altar, both for its matter and form; the Altar it self stands over the Tomb of St. *Peter*, half whose Body, together with half of St. *Paul's*, lies buried here, the other half of their Bodies in St. *Paul's* Church. A stately Canopy of Brass, wrought about the edge with Vallances, and a Fringe of the same Metal gilt, is supported by four curious Brass Pillars: Over the Altar, and upon the corners of the Canopy, stand four large Angels of Brass gilt; and in the midst of it, very high, you see a Globe of Brass gilt, with a fine Cross upon it of the same Metal. These four Pillars are (according to the measure I took of them my self) of the thickness of three ordinary Men; they are Serpentine in form, wreath'd about with Vines all of Brass, and beautified with little Angels hanging and climbing on the Branches, interspers'd with Bees, (relating to Pope *Urban's* Arms, who made them.) Each of these Pillars is fifty foot high, and weighs 25000 pound weight.

The high Altar, and St. *Peter's* Tomb.

Behind this Altar (I mean in reference to him that stands at the Altar) stands the Confession of St. *Peter*, which had got its Name because the places where the Bodies of Martyrs were kept was in primitive times call'd *Confessio*, and in the *Greek* Church *Martyrium*, the words *Confessor* and *Martyr* being often taken for one and the same thing; so that by reason that this place contains half the Body of St. *Peter*, it is thence call'd *The Confession of St. Peter*. It is built like a Cave, open above, rail'd in with Rails, so low that the People may kneeling look over them to the Iron Grate, behind which the Tomb of St. *Peter* stands, directly under the Altar, for these Rails enclose, in form of a demicircle, the Altar from one corner to the other. It has a double pair of open Stairs, of about twelve Steps each, for those who officiate, and two little half-doors leading to these Stairs. I remember that in the bottom of the same Doors, which are about the high Altar of St. *Paul's* Church, where the other half of St. *Peter*

The Sacristy of St. *Peter*.

The Grate under the Altar

and

and St. *Paul*'s Bodies are interr'd, I saw the words *Limina Apostolorum* written, which makes me conceive that these little Doors, and the Steps about the Altar, are properly the *Limina Apostolorum*; tho' I am not ignorant that the Steps at the entrance of the great Door of the Church are by divers learned Authors dignified with that Title, and that to visit the *Limina Apostolorum* (unto which Bishops are oblig'd by the Canon Law) implies as much as to visit St. *Peter*'s Church.

Chapels of the Church.

The whole Church is on the inside encompass'd with twenty six Chapels, call'd anciently *Cubicula*, and their Chaplains *Cubicularii*, whence arose the Title of *Cubicularius S. Petri*. Each of these Chapels has something rare or remarkable: In one of them is always reserv'd the Sacrament, for the use of Pilgrims who have a mind to communicate in St. *Peter*'s Church.

In the Chapel of St. *Gregory Nazianzen* lies the Body of that Saint, as in the Chapel of the Canons does the Body of St. *Chrysostom*. In the Chapel call'd the *Clementina* is interr'd the Body of Pope *Gregory* the Great, who sent *Augustin*, *Justus*, *Melitus*, and divers other Monks, to convert the *English* to the Christian Faith. In a Chapel at the further end of the Church you see St. *Peter*'s Chair, held up by four Doctors of the Church cast in Brass; this Chair being of Wood, and almost consum'd by age, Pope *Alexander* VII. got it enchas'd very curiously, and set up here. In another Chapel is to be seen the Crucifix made three hundred Years ago, by the famous *Pietro Cavallino*; and in another, the History of St. *Leo*'s meeting *Attila* without *Rome*, artificially cut in white Marble.

The Bodies of Saints interr'd in this Church are, those of St. *Simon*, of St. *Jude*, of St. *Petronilla*, of St. *Processus*, of *Martinianus*, and of the ten first Popes after St. *Peter*. The Tombs above-ground in the Church are, that of *Sixtus* IV, *Paulus* III, *Urban* VIII, *Leo* XI, *Innocent* VIII, *Gregory* XIII, *Innocent* X, and of the famous Countess *Matilde*, whose Body was translated hither from *Mantua* by Pope *Urban* VIII, 1633.

Near the before-mention'd *Confession* of St. *Peter* you see a very old brazen Statue of St. *Peter*, in a sitting posture, lifting up his Hands as if he were giving his Blessing, and holding his right Foot out a little to be kiss'd: And over the Holy-water Bason, on the left hand as you come into the Church, is fastned unto the Wall an ancient Inscription, intimating, that the square Stone upon which you see this Inscription is the same upon which the Bodies of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* were divided, when half of their Bodies were buried here, and the other half in St. *Paul*'s Church, by St. *Sylvester*.

The Pictures.

The chief Pictures to be seen in this Church are, that of St. *Michael* in *Mosaick* Work, the Design of Cavalier *Giosseppe*; as likewise the Design of the *Mosaick* Work in the *Cupola*; that of St. *John* the Evangelist, and St. *Luke*, under the *Cupola*, done by *Giovanni de Vecli*; the Picture of St. *Peter* curing the lame man, by *Ludovico da Civoli*; that of the Fall of *Simon Magus*, by *Vanni* of *Siena*; that of St. *Peter* with *Ananias* lying dead at his Feet, done by Cavalier *Rancalli*; that of the Altar of St. *Gregory*, by *Andrea Sacco Romano*; that of the Creation of the World, by *Pietro Berettino de Cortona*; that of *Medica fidei*, by *Lanfranco*.

The Sacristy of St. Peter.

By particular permission from the person who has the Keys of the Sacristy of St. *Peter*, I had the opportunity of taking a view of the many Relicks richly enchas'd in Gold and Silver; of the Church Plate of a great value, as, many Calices of massy Gold set with precious Stones, vast Silver Candlesticks, with a Crucifix of the same Metal, so heavy that a Man could scarce lift them, &c.

Here they also shew you an ancient Picture of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* set in a Silver Frame, which St. *Sylvester* shew'd to *Constantine* the Great *, to confirm him in his Vision; it is very ancient, and the Faces scarce perceivable.

* See Baronius.

In the same Sacristy I saw another Picture nail'd up very high on the Wall, which, they say, was made with Fingers instead of a Pencil, by *N. Carpi*.

The Grott under the Church.

From the Sacristy I went down into the Grott of the Church: Here I saw the Tomb of St. *Peter*, with an Altar upon it, at which any Bishop or Priest may say Mass; abundance of old Statues placed in small Chapels and the Wall of this Grott, belonging formerly to the old Church of St. *Peter*, which sheweth the antiquity of Pictures in Churches: The Tomb of *Adrian* IV, the only *English* Pope; that of the Emperor *Otho* in a Shrine of Porphyry; the Tombstone of *Charlotte* of *Luzignan*, Queen of *Jerusalem*, *Cyprus* and *Armenia*, who having been forc'd out of her Dominions by her Bastard-Brother, came to and died at *Rome* in the time of *Sixtus* IV. It was she that first entitul'd the Dukes of *Savoy* to the Title of *Royal Highness*, by bequeathing to the then Duke of *Savoy*, her Brother-in-law, the Kingdom of *Cyprus*. There are several other Tombs of Popes and Cardinals in this Grott.

Being desirous to take an entire view of every thing belonging to this prodigious Structure, I ascended by a very fair Stair-case to the Terrass over the Balcony, where I had the satisfaction not only to see the thirteen Statues of our Saviour and his twelve Apostles near hand, being above eighteen foot high, but also the small *Cupola's* belonging to the two inside Chapels of the Church; thence mounting somewhat higher, I took a view of that rare piece of Workmanship the great *Cupola*, both within and without. It must be confess'd, without flattery, that the Stairs by which you ascend to it; the double Vault in it, with the Stairs betwixt these two Vaults; the Lantern on the *Cupola*; the small Stairs in one of the Pillars of the Lantern, leading up to the Ball; the streight neck of the passage into the Ball, with the Ball it self, shew this *Cupola* to be the most perfect Fabrick in the World. The Ball it self, of Brass gilt, is spacious enough within to contain thirty-men, upon which you see a great Cross gilt. We had from this *Cupola* a most compleat view of *Rome*, and the Church of St. *Peter* underneath us. To sum up all, this Church may very well pass for the eighth Wonder of the World, all its parts being Master-pieces, the Pictures, Originals and Statues perfect Models: For, till the Year 1654, (when the accounts were summ'd up) it had cost forty millions of Crowns, and in the building of it, the most famous Architects of the World have strove to outvie one another, *viz. Sangallo*, *Bramante*, *Baldassare*, *Buonarota*, *Giacomo della Porta*, *Giovani Fontane*, *Carlo Maderno*, and Cavalier *Bernino*: And for the maintenance of this stately Fabrick, it has a yearly Revenue of above twenty thousand pounds.

The Vatican.

Not far from St. *Peter*'s Church stands the *Vatican*, a Palace where the Popes usually reside in the Winter, the Curiosities of which I will rather mention than pretend to describe, as requiring a great Volume by it self.

Sala Regia

From the Church of St. *Peter* you ascend by a noble pair of Stairs, able to hold ten men a-breast, into the great Hall or *Sala Regia*, where the Pope gives Audience to Foreign Ambassadors: It is adorn'd with most curious Pictures, all at length: The Representation of the Emperour *Frederick* kissing the Pope's Foot, is of the hand of *Gioseppe del Salviati Garfagnino*; that of *Coligni*, that of the Pope condemning Heresie, and his return from *Avignon*, by *Georgio Vasseria*; that of *Charles* the Great signing the Instrument of the Donation, of the hand of *Taddeo Zuccare*; and the Battel of *Lepanto*, by *Donato Formello*.

The Pope's Chapel.

This great Hall has at each end a Chapel, viz. the *Paulina* and the *Sixta*; in the first you see a curious piece of *Michael Angelo*, representing the crucifying of St. *Peter*; and the Roof is most exquisitely done by *Federico Zuccari*, but much defac'd by the Smoak of the Candles.

The Chapel of *Sixto* is that where the Pope holds *Capella* upon certain days, in the presence of all the Cardinals, when it is hung with a most precious Suit of Hangings, in which are wrought with Gold and Silk the Acts of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, the Design of *Raphael Urbin*. At one end of this Chapel you see that famous piece of *Michael Angelo*, representing the last Judgment, painted upon the Wall.

The Pope's Sacristy.

Behind this Chapel is the Popes Sacristy, a place but rarely seen by Strangers, being always under the keeping of a Prelate, who must be an *Augustin* Frier and a Bishop, and call'd *Maestro Sacrista*, mention'd in ancient Authors under the Name of *Camerarius*. Here I saw such abundance of most precious Church-Ornaments for the Pope's use, that it will be sufficient to mention only some of them; as, the Cope of Pope *Sylvester*, thirteen hundred years old; the most curious Chasuble of Cloth of Tissue, with the Figures of ministring the seven Sacraments embroider'd in it with Silk and Gold, the Gift of our K. *Henry* VIII. This *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel*, late Lord Marshal of *England*, got leave to have painted out. The most rich Suits for Priest, Deacon and Sub-deacon, to be used in high Mass, cover'd all over with eight hundred pounds weight of Pearl, the Gift of *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, these being the first Pearl that came out of the *Indies*.

St. Laurence's Head.

Here I saw also near at hand the Head of St. *Laurence* thro a Crystal; a piece of the Sponge in which they gave Gall to our Saviour; the *Camisia* of St. *Prisca*, a Saint martyr'd fourteen hundred years ago; a Crucifix, in which you see, under a Crystal, a piece of the holy Cross, with the Passion of our Saviour painted on it; a Thorn of our Saviour's thorny Crown; a Cross set with Diamonds and Pearls; and a large Ring, which the Pope wears in solemn Functions, and is set with a Sapphire and four large Pearls; a Crucifix cover'd with Pearl and precious Stones; the Pope's *Pallium*, which he wears upon

most solemn occasions; the golden Pipe thro' which the Pope takes the consecrated Wine upon great days; divers rich Chalices, but more precious for their Workmanship than the Jewels that cover them; the grand golden Chalice, in which the Cardinals cast their written Votes when they chuse a Pope; the five Triple Crowns, call'd *Regni*, four whereof are set with precious Stones and Pearls of a vast value, kept ordinarily in the Castle of St. *Angelo*; two Mitres as rich as the Crowns, and the Book of the Gospel painted in Miniature, by that great Master *Giulio Glovi*.

From hence I was led thro' the great Hall, into an adjacent large Room, where the Pope washes the Feet of thirteen Pilgrims upon *Maundy Thursday*, every one having besides this a large golden Medal, another of Silver, and four Pistoles besides.

Raphael's Library. Out of this Room I was conducted into the open Gallery in the second Lodge, there being three such Galleries, where I saw the most curious representations of the whole History of the Bible, in painting; that of the Creation; that where *Adam* sows; that where the Sheep drink: *Jacob's* Ladder; that of Christ's Last Supper with his Disciples; that of *Moses*, are all of the hand of *Raphael Urbin*; the Deluge, and adoration of the golden Calf are done by *Raphael* and *Dorgo*; that where *Josue* commands the Sun to stand still; and that of *Bersabe*, by *Picrino del Vega*; the Chariot, and some others, by *Caravagio*: *Moses* striking the Rock; the Judgment of *Solomon*, with some others, by *Julio Romano*: The Baptism of Christ, with divers others, by *Pellegrino da Modena*. But because in all these Pictures *Raphael Urbin* gave either the design or some touches, this Gallery has got the name of *Raphael's Gallery*.

The best design'd Piece in the World. From this Gallery I pass'd thro' a very spacious Room, where the Victory of *Constantine* over *Maxentius* is so curiously painted on the Wall by *Raphael*, that Monsr. *Poussin*, a most excellent Painter, judg'd it, for the design, the rarest piece of the World. In the adjacent Rooms I saw divers other pieces of the same hand; as, that of Pope *Leo* meeting *Attila*; that of St. *Peter* in prison; that of *Æneas* carrying his Father *Anchises*, &c. the History of *Heliodorus*, being a piece of *Julio Romano Raphael's* Scholar.

From hence ascending into the highest open Gallery, I there saw many Geographical Maps painted by *Antonio da Varese*, and the Roof likewise excellently, by *Pomerancio*, *Paris Romen*, and *Bronzini*, all great Masters.

Thence descending, I saw the *Sala Clementina*, a noble Room, for the most curious Perspectives in the Roof and in one of the corners, and then pass'd thro' the Pope's Lodging-chambers, richly hung with Damask Hanging in the Summer, and with Velvet in the Winter. In this Bedchamber I saw a Picture painted upon a white transparent Stone three inches thick, which yet, if held against the Sun, shews the Picture on both sides, representing our Lady with our Saviour in her Arms.

Thence passing thro' the great Room with a richly-gilt Roof, where the Pope treats great Princes, and thro' the old Apartment of *Pius* V, we saw that most curious piece of Perspective over the Door of the long Room leading to the Gallery of Maps, which at first looking it seems to represent some Types of the blessed Sacrament out of the Old Testament; but if you stand directly under it, looking upwards, you see all contracted in the figure of a Chalice and Host over it. So going on, you come into

The Gallery of Maps. the Gallery of Maps of *Italy*, painted upon the Walls on both sides, by a certain *Flemming* nam'd *Paulus Brillus*, representing most distinctly every State, Province, City, River, Village, Castle, even to the Highways of *Italy*, with the places where any memorable Battels have been fought, either in ancient or modern times.

The Gallery of the Conclave. The Gallery leading to the *Belvedere*, where the Conclave is kept, and where fifty or sixty Cardinals have two Chambers each, ought not quite to be pass'd by in silence, as being an evident demonstration of the vastness of the Palace, of which it is only a part, the whole circuit of the Palace containing, as they assur'd me, Fifteen thousand Rooms.

In the middle of this Gallery you see a Door, which brings you into that famous *Vatican* Library, which, besides the Church-Records, contains the choicest Manuscripts in the holy Languages, a description of which being given to the World by *Angelus Rocca* in Latin, and *Muzius Pansa* in Italian, might well induce me to supersede the giving any further account thereof, were it not for the satisfaction of some of our Countrymen, who perhaps are not very well vers'd in either of these Languages.

The Vatican Library. First of all you enter into a Room fill'd with Desks for twelve Writers, who are allotted an annual stipend for copying of Books so many hours a days; and round about the Room you see the Pictures of all the Cardinals that have been Library-keepers here since *Sixtus* V's time. Thence you come into the Library it self, a vast spacious Room, supported by large square Pillars, about which are many Presses and Cupboards, to preserve the Manuscripts from Mice and Rats. On the Wall on the right hand you see painted in *fresco* the General Councils, with the Bible in the midst lying open upon a Throne, and with the order and precedency observ'd in them; with divers other remarkable passages in Ecclesiastical History. On the opposite side are painted all the Libraries mention'd by the most ancient Authors; and upon the Pillars the Figures of the first Inventers and chief Promoters of Learning. This Room spreads at the further end into two Wings on each hand, both which are fill'd with most excellent Books, both Manuscripts and printed; the chief of them, as they were shew'd me by Mr. *Holsten*, the then Library-keeper, were these;

A large *Hebrew* Bible, too heavy for any man to carry. *Rare Books.*

A most ancient Copy of the *Greek* Translation of the *Septuagints*, after which the Bible, both at *Rome* and *London*, have been printed.

The *Acts of the Apostles* in *Greek*, written in golden Letters.

The Gospel, written by St. *Chrysostom's* own Hand.

An *Hebrew* Bible, written on Rolls of Parchment pasted together at the ends; whence the word *Volumen*.

A small Book written on the Bark of a Tree.

Certain ancient Roman Table-books.

A *China*-wooden Table-book, in which they write with a pointed Steel.

Another *China* Book written in Hieroglyphicks, and folded up in many folds: Our *Purchas* has both printed and decipher'd it.

Polidore Virgil's History of *England*, of his own Hand-writing.

An old *Latin* Sermon-book, in the margine whereof St. *Thomas* of *Aquin* has written several Notes with his own Hand.

An old *Virgil*, with the Figures of the History.

An old *Terence*, written twelve hundred Years ago, which *Politan* testifies by his own Hand-writing in the inside of the Cover of the Book, to be the most ancient he ever saw.

The Annals of *Baronius*, written by his own Hand.

The Quotations out of the ancient Fathers, collected from the best Copies by the learned Cardinal *Sirleto*, during the Council of *Trent*, and sent by him weekly by the Post from *Rome* to *Trent*; they make in all six Volumes.

King *Henry* the Eighth's amatory Letters to *Ann Bolen* his Mistress, some in *English*, some in *French*. That these are of his own hand-writing, is evident from two Verses written with the King's own Hand, by which he dedicated his Book written against *Luther* to Pope *Leo* X, which got him the Title of *Defender of the Faith*. They are in Latin, and written with his own Hand in the Frontispiece of the Book.

Here is also to be seen the exquisite Library of the Duke of *Urbin*, which he bequeath'd to that of the *Vatican*; in which, among many other curious Manuscripts, written on parchment, and some painted in *miniature*, I saw one which had painted in the margin (by an excellent hand) all the Insects in their proper shapes and colours. *The Duke of Urbin's Library.*

Just opposite to this, but in the same Room, I saw the *Heidelberg* Library sent to *Rome* by the Elector of *Bavaria*, after the expulsion of *Frederick* Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*. Among other rare pieces, they shew'd me a Book of Designs done by the said Elector himself.

In the great Room of this Library there is an Iron Door, which brings you into a retiring Room, where are kept the Records of the Church, the Keeper of which was formerly call'd *Chartularius* in the Latin Church, and *Chartophylax* by the Greeks. *The Keeper of the Church Records.*

I was also shewn many Letters of Princes, and persons of eminent rank, written with their own hands; as, of St. *Charles Borromeus* to Cardinal *Sirleto*; of *Mary* Queen of *England*; King *Philip* her Husband, stiling himself King of *Spain*, *England*, and *France*; of *Francis* I. King of *France*; of *Margaret* of *Parma*, Governess of the Low Countries when they revolted; of President *Vargas*, a much better Politician than Latinist, as is apparent from his Answer to the Petition of the Doctors of *Louvain*, *Non curamus vestros privilegios. Mali fecerunt templa; boni nihil fecerunt contra: Ergo debent omnes patibulari.* *Bad Latin.*

Just as I was going out of the Library, I saw near the Door the Statue of *Hippolytus* Bishop of *Portua* fourteen hundred years ago, sitting in a Chair of Stone, upon which is cut in Greek Letters the ancient Canon *Paschalis*, which *Scaliger* and others have illustrated with their Animadversions.

From

Belvedere. From the Library we pass'd thro' the long Gallery of the Conclave, into the Pope's Gardens call'd *Belvedere*, well stor'd with Orange-trees, pleasant Walks, and curious Fountains, and among the rest a rare Spring, form'd in the nature of a Ship, of Iron. Here you see also the great Pine-apple of Brass gilt, (anciently belonging to the *Moles Adriani*) being twice as high as a Man can reach, and of such a circumference, that three Men cannot grasp it: And near it, the two great Peacocks of Brass gilt, about three or four yards long, which formerly stood upon the Tomb of *Scipio Africanus*.

The great Pine-apple, & two Peacocks.

From hence they conducted us to the *Belvedere* of *Mascbere*, being a square Court planted with Orange-trees, in the Walks whereof are large Niches with Leaves to them of Wood, where the most select Statues of the World are kept under Lock and Key; whence *Michael Angelo* used to call this place his Study. The most choice Statues here are, that of the River *Nile*, and that of the *Tybur*, both in cumbent postures; that of *Antinus*, the Favourite of the Emperour *Adrian*, of the best Oriental Marble; that of *Cleopatra*; that of *Venus* coming out of a Bath; that of the Emperour *Commodus*; those of *Laocoon* and his Sons, the first whereof is accounted the most exquisite piece of Sculpture that can be made. In the middle Court stands a Trunk, without Hands, Arms, or Legs, which, by a piece of a Lyon's Skin remaining, appears to be of *Hercules*, is so excellent a piece, that *Michael Angelo* used to say, he had learnt more out of this remnant of a Statue, than out of all the whole ones in the World.

Statues.

The Armoury.

From hence passing thro' the great Garden of the *Belvedere*, we saw there abundance of Exotick Trees, delicious Fountains, most delightful Walks, and vast variety of Grotts and Waterworks; and in our return thro' the *Vatican*, the Pope's Armoury, containing Arms for thirty thousand Men, neatly kept.

The Hospital of S. Spirito. Returning from the *Vatican* by St. *Peter's*, and leaving the Palace of St. *Officio* on the right, I soon came to the Hospital of St. *Spirito*, one of the fairest in *Europe*, both in respect of its Bigness, Usefulness and Revenues, having above a thousand Beds, a Prelate for its Governour, abundance of Priests, Physicians, Officers and Attendants, with a yearly Revenue of 70000 Crowns. It contains also a kind of Monastery separate from the rest for five hundred Girls; and peculiar Apartments and Entertainment are allotted for such unfortunate Gentlemen as are fit Objects of Charity; this was the Gift of Pope *Urban* the Eighth.

Towards the Street you see a Grate, with a Turn in it, where in the night-time little Infants may be put in by their Mothers: She that brings the Child rings only a Bell whose Rope hangs without the Grate, whereupon an Officer appointed for that purpose takes the Child out of the Turn, and having ask'd whether it be baptiz'd, carries it immediately to a Nurse, of which there are always some at hand in the Womens Apartment; here they are afterwards educated till they are fit for Trades, Marriage or Monasteries. *Constantine* the Great was the first who founded Hospitals for expos'd Children.

S. Onofrio's Church. From hence I went to *Onofrio's* Church, upon the Hill, famous only for the Tomb and Picture of that great Poet *Torquato Tasso*.

Coming down again long the *Longara*, I saw on the right hand the Palace of the Duke of *Salviati*, and on the left the Villa of *Chisi*, now call'd the Garden of *Farnese*.

S. Onofrio's Tomb.

Over against the Garden of the last Palace is that of Queen *Christian* of *Sweden*, having, besides a great many curious Hangings of Gold and Silk, a most noble Collection of Original Pictures, by the best Masters in *Europe*; among these, that of Sir *Thomas Moor*, done by *Hans Holbain*, is counted a most excellent piece.

Q. Christina's Palace.

As I passed on the *Longara*, I came to the *Porta Septimiana*, so call'd from the *Thermæ* built here by *Septimius Severus*, and thence up the Hill to St. *Pancreas* Gate, and the Church dedicated to that Saint, now in the possession of the discalceated Carmelites: Under it is the *Cæmiterium Calepodii*, the burial-place of many Martyrs. Here was also buried *Crescentius* the Tyrant.

St. Pancras Church.

The Villa Pamphylia. Hard by is the *Villa Pamphylia*, seated very high. The best *Pictures* here are, St. *Peter's* Crucifixion, and the Conversion of St. *Paul*, done by *Michael Angelo*; but the representation of the Beasts entring *Noah's* Ark is a most exquisite piece of painting. Among the Statues, the wrestling of *Jacob* with the Angel, in white Marble; that of *Seneca*; the *Busto* of *Innocent* X. of Porphyry, and his Head in Brass, are very remarkable.

The Fountain of Paul V. As we were returning into the Town by the same way we came, I took particular notice of that noble Fountain made by *Paul* V, which being furnish'd with Water by a most stately *Aquæduct*, from the Lake of *Bracciano*, (at least thirty miles off) afterwards carries its Waters, by the means of many other Fountains, quite through the City.

Not far from thence you see the Convent of *Franciscans*, upon a Hill call'd St. *Pietro Montorio*, because St. *Peter* was crucified with his Head downwards, in that place of the Court where you now see a round Chapel. The Picture in the Church, before the high Altar, representing our Saviour's Transfiguration, was the last and best piece of that great Master *Raphael Urbin*, which upon his Death-bed he commanded to be set at his Feet after his death: The two Marble Statues of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, by the hand of *Michael Angel*, are most excellent pieces. In this Chapel lies interr'd the Body of the Earl of *Tyron*, who in Queen *Elizabeth's* time fled hither from *Ireland*. The Hill upon which this Church stands was anciently call'd *Janiculus*, upon which was buried *Statius* the Poet, and at the foot of it *Numa Pompilius*.

Janiculus.

Near the foot of it I saw the Church and Convent of the *Scala*, possess'd by the discalceated *Carmelites*. They shew'd me in a little Chapel within the Convent the Foot of St. *Theresa*, enclos'd in a Crystal.

Scala.

Not far thence stands St. *Maria Transtevere*, the first Church built in *Rome*, in the same place where formerly stood the *Taberna Meritoriæ*, where the maim'd Soldiers us'd to receive their daily allouments. The Roof is finely gilt, and two rows of most beautiful Marble Pillars do support the whole Fabrick. Under the high Altar they shew you the place where Oyl issued out a little before our Saviour's Birth. Here you see also the Tombs of the learned Cardinal *Hosius*, who assisted at the Council of *Trent*, and Cardinal *Campegius*, the Pope's Legate in *England*, under the Reign of *Henry* the Eighth. The Stone which was tied about the Neck of Pope *Calixtus*, when he was thrown into a Well; as also several great round Stones, which were hung to the Feet of the Martyrs when they were to be tormented.

Near it is the Convent of the *Franciscans*, call'd *Francesco in ripa grande*, where is to be seen the Lodging-room of St. *Francis* during his abode in *Rome*, the same being since turn'd into a Chapel. The Picture of Piety, done by *Caraccio*, is a most exquisite piece.

All along the *Ripa grande* I saw in the River the Barks which bring all sorts of Commodities from *Leghorn*, *Civita Vecchia*, *Naples*, &c. to *Rome*.

From thence going to St. *Cecilia's* Church, (but it was where her House stood) I saw the Tomb of this Saint, under the high Altar, with her Statue in a cumbent posture, cover'd with Veils stain'd with Blood, just as her Body was found in *Clement* the Eighth's time. Cardinal *Sfondrati* beautified this Altar with the Silver Lamps that are constantly burning before this Tomb. Just at the coming in of this Church are shewn to this day the Stones in which St. *Cecilia* was shut up to be stifled in her own House, which not succeeding, she was beheaded. These Stoves being yet entire, are a sure Pattern of the ancient Stoves. In the Perch of the same Church is to be seen the Tomb of one *Adam*, an *English* Bishop of *London*, and Cardinal, who died in *Rome*, 1397, with the following Inscription:

St. Cecilia's Tomb.

Cardinal's Tomb.

Artibus iste pater famosus in cunctis Adam
Theologus summus, Cardinalisque erat
Anglia cui patriam, titulum dedit ista Beatæ
Ædes Cæciliæ, mors quæ suprema Polum.

For Fair.

The neat Church of St. *Chrysogonus*, repair'd not long ago by Cardinal *Burgese*, stands not far from hence: The four Pillars of the high Altar seem to be a mixture of Sand and Crystal petrified. Near the great Door, on the Wall on the left hand, is the Tombstone of one *Rice* Archbishop of *York*, and Cardinal of this Church.

From hence passing over the *Transtevere*, I went to the Isle of St. *Bartholomew*, in which stands an Hospital, and the Convent of the *Franciscans*, in whose Church is the Tomb of Porphyry (under the high Altar) of the Apostle St. *Bartholomew*. This Isle was formerly known by the name of *Insula Tiberina*, being made by the Corn, which after the ejection of *Tarquin* the proud) was pluck'd up by the Roots, and thrown into the River.

From this Isle I pass'd over the *Bridge of four Heads*, (anciently call'd *Pons Fabricius*) which joyns the Isle to the City. Looking down into the River on the right hand, I espied the *Pons Sublicius*, famous for the brave defence made there by *Horatius Cocles*, till it was cut down after him. It got its Name from the Latin word *Sublica*, signifying Beams of Wood, but was afterwards built of Stone by *Æmilius*. It was this Bridge from whence the Emperour *Heliogabalus* was thrown into the *Tybur*, with a Stone about his Neck.

So

The Jewry.

So soon as you come over the Bridge, you see on the left hand the great Back-door of the *Jewry*, which is lock'd up every night, the *Jews* who have their Habitations here being all confin'd to this corner of the City. They meet in their Synagogues (which they call Schools) every *Saturday*, to sing and pray, which I found them to perform in a very indecent manner, with their Hats on, and without the least Ceremony of lifting up their Eyes or bending their Knees. I once was present at a Circumcision, which appear'd to be extreamly painful to the Child.

Returning from the *Jewry*, thro' the before-mention'd Back-gate, I saw to the left the Palace of Prince *Savelli*, built upon the Ruins of the Theatre of *Marcellus*, the Founder whereof was *Augustus*, capable of holding eighty thousand persons at once.

From hence going forward, I saw the most ancient Church call'd St. *Maria in Cosmedin*, or in *Schola Græca*, where St. *Austin* (before his Conversion) us'd to keep his Lessons of Rhetorick. In the Porch you see a great round Stone, cut into the Face of a Man, with an excessive wide Mouth, call'd *La Bacca della verita*, which I am apt to believe serv'd formerly for a Gutter-spout to some ancient Fabrick.

S. Maria Egyptiaca.

The next Church to this, is call'd St. *Maria Egyptiaca* (anciently the Temple dedicated to the *Sun* and *Jupiter*.) It is adorn'd with most artificial chanel'd Pillars, and belongs to the *Armenians*, as well as the adjoyning Hospital for the reception of the Catholick *Armenian* Pilgrims, who celebrate Mass here (by the Pope's permission) after their own Rite.

St. Stephen's Church.

On the further side of the great *Piazza* you see St. *Stephen*'s Church, surrounded with chanel'd Pillars, anciently known by the name of *Juno Matutina*, i. e. the *Morning Juno*, or *Alba Dea*, the *Break of Day Goddess*. This Church stands upon the River-side, and near it the great Sink of *Rome*, call'd *Cloaca maxima*, discharges it self into the *Tyber*, being one of the most noble Monuments of ancient *Rome*, built all of Freestone, and arch'd on the top by *Tarquinius Priscus*: it was of that bigness, that a large Cart might pass thro' it with ease, having many Springs running into it.

Passing from hence along the River-side, by the foot of the Mount *Aventin*, I saw on my left hand the Chapel belonging to the *Malthese* Knights, near which place (if we may credit our Antiquaries) stood the ancient Temple of *Bona Dea*; and on the inside of this Hill, the Den of *Cacus*, as also the *Scalæ Gemoniæ*, down which Criminals were tumbled into the River.

The Temple of Bona Dea, Cacus's Den, and the Scalæ Gemoniæ.

As you go up the Hill, you see St. *Alexius*'s Church, and in it the wooden Stairs under which this Saint lodg'd secretly seventeen Years. His Body, together with that of St. *Boniface* the Martyr, lies interr'd under the high Altar.

St. Sabina's Church.

Near it, upon the same Hill, is St. *Sabina*'s Church, whither the Pope comes every *Ashwednesday* in a solemn Cavalcade: and upon this Hill stood the ancient Temple of Liberty, and the *Armilustrium* of the *Romans*.

Mons Testaceus.

Coming down the said Hill, towards St. *Paul*'s Gate, I saw to the right the Hill call'd *Mons Testaccius*, compos'd of the broken Pots thrown there in the time of the *Romans* by the Potters, being half a mile in compass, and an hundred and sixty foot high. Near the Gate of St. *Paul* we saw the Tomb of *Caius Cestius*, of the finest white Marble, like an *Egyptian Pyramid*, the most entire piece of *Roman* Antiquity. This *Cestius* was *Septemvir Epulonum*, *i. e.* one of the seven call'd *Epulones* by the *Romans*, who us'd to devour the Banquets set before the Gods in their *Lectisternia* in the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*.

Cestius his Tomb.

St. Paul's Church.

Hence passing thro' St. *Paul*'s Gate, (the ancient *Porta Tergemina* and *Porta Ostiensis*) I went to St. *Paul*'s Church, a little mile from the Town. As I went along, I saw a little Chapel on the left hand, built on the place where St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* took their leaves of one another before they suffer'd Martyrdom.

The Church of St. *Paul* was built by *Constantine* the Great, in the same place where *Lucina* a *Roman* Lady buried the Body of St. *Paul*. It is built cross-wise, and the Body of it 477 foot long, and 258 broad; a hundred round Marble Pillars (taken out of the Baths of *Antonius*) set in four ranks, supporting the whole Fabrick: Besides which, this vast Church is without any decoration or Chapels, except at the one end of it near the great Door, where these words are engrav'd upon an Altar,

Hic inventum est caput S. Pauli.

The high Altar.

The high Altar has a Canopy of Stone like a Tabernacle, supported by four Pillars of Porphyry, and adorn'd with many Statues: Under this Altar are entomb'd the half of the Bodies of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, according to the Inscription upon the side of the Altar,

Sub hoc altari requiescunt gloriosa corpora Apostolorum Petri & Pauli pro mediocate.

Behind the Altar stands the Confession of St. *Paul*, in all respects like that of St. *Peter* before mention'd. Underneath the little half-doors leading to the Steps of the Altar, are these words in golden Letters, *Limina Apostolorum*, which makes me conjecture (as I alledg'd before) that this place was anciently call'd the *Limina Apostolorum*, and not the Church-door.

The old Arch in the top of the Roof is remarkable for a most ancient piece of *Mosaick* Work, representing our Saviour in the midst of the four and twenty Elders of the *Apocalypse*. It was made about twelve hundred years ago, in the time of St. *Leo* the Great, at the charge of *Placidia Galla*, (Daughter of *Theodosius*, and Sister of *Honorius*) according to the two Verses on that Arch:

Placidiæ pia mens operis decus omne reportat,
Gaudet Pontificis studio splendere Leonis.

Remarkable things.

The other remarkable things in this Church are, the miraculous Crucifix which spoke to St. *Bridget*; the Chapel and Tabernacle of the B. *Sacrament*, with the rare Pictures by the hand of Cavalier *Lanfranco*; the Picture of the Altar of St. *Stephen*, made by a Lady of *Bologna* call'd *Lavinia Pontana*: Of Relicks, the Head of the *Samaritan* Woman converted by our Saviour; the Arm of St. *Anne*, Mother of the Virgin *Mary*; and the Chair of St. *Paul*.

From this Church going to the *Tre Fontane*, above a mile and a half off, I pass'd in my way over the place where St. *Zeno* and ten thousand Christians were martyr'd at once, under the Reign of *Diocletian*. At the *Tre Fontane* I saw three Churches standing, within the place anciently call'd *ad Aquas Salvias*; the first is the Church of St. *Vincent* and *Anastase*, because of the Head of St. *Anastasius* sent to Pope *Honorius* by the Emperour *Heraclius*, 627, kept here. The second is a little round Church on the right hand, where you see the famous Picture of St. *Bernard*'s *Extasis*, and under it a Vault of a mile under ground, where many of the Bodies martyr'd with *Zeno* are buried. In the third place stands the little Church of the *Tre Fontane*, so call'd, because St. *Paul* was beheaded there, and where his Head jump'd thrice, three Fountains gush'd out. Upon the Altar on the left hand is to be seen that most exquisite piece of St. *Peter*'s Crucifixion, done by *Guido Rheni*; and on the other side a little Block (within an Iron Grate) upon which, they say, St. *Paul*'s Head was cut off.

The Annunciata.

From hence crossing the Fields, we saw the Church of the *Annunciata*, one of the nine Churches of *Rome*, visited by Pilgrims; and from thence to the Church of St. *Sebastian*, one of the seven Churches. The Tomb of St. *Sebastian* is under an Altar on the left hand; and underneath the Vault where Pope *Stephen* was beheaded in his own Seat of Stone, and where the Bodies of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* were kept conceal'd for many years.

The Catacombs.

From this Church you go into the Catacombs, which run thence many miles under ground. Of these there were several in the primitive times, call'd by divers names, viz. *Arenaria*, *Cryptæ*, *Arcæ*, *Concilia Martyrum*, *Poliandria*, but most generally *Cæmiteria* or *Dormetoria*, because here were deposited the Bodies of Martyrs, *qui obdormiverunt in Domino*; and among all these *Cæmiteria*, that of *Calixtus* was of the greatest extent. In these Catacombs it was that, during the ten Persecutions of the Christians, the Believers us'd to exercise their acts of Religion and Devotion in private, to hear Mass in little Chapels, administer the Sacrament, bury the dead Martyrs, preach, hold Conferences, and even celebrate Councils. I took at divers times a view of several parts of these Catacombs, with a good Guide with Wax Lights, (Torches being too stifling) the Streets whereof, under ground, were cut out with Mens Hands and Mattocks, about the height of a Man, and no broader than for two Men to meet: The sides of these Alleys are full of holes of a Man's length, sometimes two or three rows one over another, in which they us'd to bury their Martyrs and Confessors; and that Posterity might be sensible which of them were Martyrs, which Confessors, they us'd to engrave upon the Stones which immur'd them, or upon one of the Bricks, a Palm Branch for a Martyr, and the words *Pro christo* in cyphers for a Confessor. Their Records tell us, that during the ten Persecutions, no less than a hundred and seventy thousand Martyrs were buried in this *Cæmiterium* or *Calixtus*, and among them nineteen Popes Martyrs. As you descend into them from the Church of St. *Sebastian*, you

see

see certain words over the Door, intimating, that St. *Hierome*, in *Ezek.* c. 40. (according to his own confession) us'd every *Sunday* and Holiday (during his stay in *Rome*) to go into these Catacombs.

Capo di Bove. Near the Church of St. *Sebastian* is the place call'd *Capo di Bove*, a considerable Structure in the *Via Appia*, faced about with Marble Stones: It was the Sepulchre of *Metella*, the Wife of the rich *Crassus*: It has since got the Name of *Capo di Bove*, from the Oxheads cut in Marble which compose the Cornice that was about the top of the *Moles*. The Walls are above eight ells thick.

The Pretorium. Hard by this stand the Ruins of the *Pretorium*, the Quarters of the *Pretorian* Bands, where the Emperour lodg'd, at some distance from the Town, to avoid all occasion of Tumults, and for the conveniency of exercising these Troops in the *Circus* of *Caracalla*, which is hard by.

The Circus of Caracalla. This *Circus* owes its Name to the Emperour *Caracalla* its Founder, being the most entire of all the ancient *Circi* in *Rome*; for in this you see plainly where the *Carceres* or Starting-place was; where the *Meta*, where the *Guglia*, and the Walls yet show its length and compass. In the center of it formerly stood that *Guglia* which is now to be seen in the midst of *Piazza Navona*; I saw it lie here broken in three pieces, and neglected, till the Earl of *Arundel*, the late Lord Marshal of *England*, having bid a Sum of Money for it, the *Romans* began to consider of the matter, and Cavalier *Bernini* found means to joyn it so neatly together, that it now stands streight upon a most curious Basis in the very heart of *Rome*.

Near this *Circus* you see an old round Temple, with another little Anti-temple adjoyning to it, thro' which you go into the other: perhaps this was the *Temple of Honour*, into which there was no passage but thro' the *Temple of Virtue*: certain it is, that anciently these two Temples stood near the *Porta Carpena*, (now St. *Sebastian's* Gate) as these two do.

An Echo. Not far from this old Temple is an *Eccho*, which (the Inhabitants tell you) would repeat a whole Verse out of *Virgil*, but I could hear no more than the two last words of a Sentence.

In our return from St. *Sebastians* to the City, we pass'd in sight of a small Chapel call'd *Domine quo vadis*, and formerly St. *Maria ad passus*; it is call'd *Domine quo vadis*, because St. *Peter* flying out of the Prison of *Rome*, our Saviour appear'd to him in this place, and being ask'd by *Peter*, *Domine quo vadis?* i. e. *Lord, whither go you?* he answer'd, *Vado Romam ut ibi iterum crucifigar*, i. e. *I am going to* Rome, *to be crucified again*; which *Peter* understanding rightly, return'd to *Rome* again, and was there crucified. In the middle of the Chapel they shew you the prints of our Saviour's Feet in a white Marble Stone cover'd with an Iron Grate.

Passing thro' the Gate of St. *Sebastian*, we came strait to the Church of St. *Nereus* and *Achilleus*, whereof *Barenius* was Cardinal. The Tombs of the two Saints are under the high Altar.

St. Sixt. Over against this Church is the Monastery and Church of S. *Sisto*, in an unwholsome place call'd anciently the *Piscina Publica*, where the people us'd to wash themselves. Here St. *Dominic* had his Habitation; and in the Church are to be seen the Tombs of St. *Sixtus*, *Lucius*, *Lucianus*, *Sotherus*, and *Zepherinus*, Popes and Martyrs; and the glorious Picture of S. *Vincentius Ferrerius*.

Hence going towards the *Porta Latina*, we saw the Church where St. *John* the Evangelist was boil'd in a Cauldron of Oyl; and following the Walls of the City, came to St. *John Lateran's* Church.

St. John Lateran's Church. This Church is, according to the Inscription of the Architrave over the Porch of the Church, and the Bull of *Gregory* XI, the Pope's Cathedral, and the Mother of all other Churches *Orbis & Urbis*, not excepting St. *Peter's* it self: *Constantine* the Great was the Founder of it, upon Mount *Coelius*, and dedicated to our Saviour; whence it is stiled by some *Basilica Constantina*, by others *Basilica Salvatoris*; sometimes *Basilica* St. *Joannis*, from its being near the two Chapels dedicated to the two St. *Johns*, in the Baptistery of *Constantine*: sometimes *Basilica* St. *Joannis in Laterano*, its Foundation being laid upon the place where *Plautius Lateranus* had a noble Garden, which was seiz'd upon by *Nero*, after he had kill'd the Master: Upon this occasion it is to be observ'd, that all the great Churches of *Rome* are call'd *Basilica*.

In this Church of St. *John Lateran* the Pope takes possession of his Papal Dignity, after having been consecrated Bishop (if he were none before) in St. *Peter's* Church. Hence it is that the consecration of Bishops and Priests, Confirmations, Baptisms of *Jews*, and other Episcopal Functions of the Diocess of *Rome*, are perform'd here, and the Clergy thereof have the precedency before those of all other Churches in publick Processions, and to carry two Crucifixes before them. Here are also entomb'd the Heads of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*.

The Roof of this Church is most richly gilt, and the inside of the body of the Church renew'd by the command of Pope *Innocent* X. The Painting cross the Church from the Organs to the Altar of the B. Sacrament, representing the chief actions of *Constantine* the Great, are most exquisitely done, especially the Figures about the Chariot of the Emperour, by *Bellardino*. The Ascension of our Saviour is of the hand of Cavalier *Giosippe*; as the Apparition of our Saviour, that of Mount *Soracte*, and that over against *Constantine's* Baptism, are done by *Paris Romano*; and that of *Constantine's* Baptism, by *Ricelli*. The Picture of our Saviour in the *Tribuno* or *Abside*, was the first Picture that appear'd publickly in *Rome*. Besides this, there are several other rare pieces in *Mosaick* Work in the vaulted *Tribuno*, and some Symbolical Representations relating to our Saviour's Life, and more especially to his Passion, a thing much used in the ancient Churches.

Within the highest Altar is enclos'd the most ancient Wooden Altar, upon which St. *Peter* himself and the first Popes used to say Mass during the ten Christian Persecutions: It was placed here by St. *Sylvester*, and order'd, That none should say Mass at this Altar but the Pope, or, in case of his indisposition, some Cardinal authoriz'd by an Apostolical Brief to be affix'd to one of the four Pillars of the said Altar; over which is erected a noble Tabernacle of Marble, supported by four Pillars: This Tabernacle serves not only for a Canopy to the Altar, but also for an *Area* to the Heads of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, which are shewn on Holidays thro' an Iron Grate. *St. Peter's and St. Paul's Heads.*

The Altar of the Blessed Sacrament has a most curious Tabernacle of noble polish'd Stones, with four Brass gilt Pillars fifteen foot high. Over this Altar is preserv'd the Table it self upon which our Saviour eat the Paschal Lamb. The Tomb of Brass of Pope *Urban* V, and that of *Alexander* III, are most noble pieces; and the Tomb of *Laurentius Valla*, a learned *Roman*, and Canon of this Church, the first Restorer of the purity of the Latin Language, corrupted by the barbarous *Goths* in *Italy*. Upon the Architrave of the Porch of this Church you see the following Inscription in *Gothick* Letters.

Dogmate Papali datur ac simul Imperiali,
Quod sim cunctarum Mater & Caput Ecclesiarum.

The pierced Chair of *Porphyry*, which is placed near the great Door of this Church when the Pope takes possession of his Office, is kept in the Cloyster of this Church. In this Chair the Pope is set for some time, and at his rising from it again the Quire sings this Verse of *Psal.* 112. *Suscitat de pulvere egenum & de stercore erigit pauperem*: These words and the pierced Chair being to put the Pope in mind of his human Frailties amidst the glorious acclamations of the people. The Adversaries of the *Roman* Church have put a quite different Interpretation upon it, alledging, That this pierced Chair was intended for the discovery of the Sex, to prevent the inconveniencies of another Pope *Joan*; tho' it be past all contradiction, that this Story of the pretended Female Pope is a meer Fiction, invented by *Martinus Polonus* and others of the Emperour's Faction, to render the Pope's party (then at variance with them) odious to the World. Not to mention, that the circumstances of this Story render it altogether suspected, if not improbable, to unbyass'd persons, how is it possible that so refin'd a Nation as the *Italians* should be so grosly impos'd upon in so nice a point as this, and that the *Greek* Church, then at variance with the *Roman* Church, should not have objected the same to them, by way of retaliation for upbraiding them with an Eunuch Patriarch; and that *Anastasius Bibliothecarius*, who writ within thirty years after, should not make the least mention thereof in his Lives of the Popes: Add to this, that the most learned of the Adversaries of the *Roman* Church, as Mr. *Blondel*, (who has writ a Treatise on purpose to shew the nullity of this fabulous Invention) Mons. *Seravius*, *Samuel Bochart*, and several other Protestants, have been convinc'd of and acknowledg'd the Falsity of this Story. *The Story of Pope Joan a Fable.*

We went out at the little Back-door of this Church to the Baptistery of *Constantine*, the first *Christian* Emperour. It is of a circular figure, in the center whereof stands the Font in which the said Emperour was baptiz'd by Pope *Sylvester*, being enclos'd with two Rails of Marble, and adorn'd with twelve great pillars of Porphyry, which support the painted Vault or Roof over the Font, unto which you descend by four Steps. Upon the Walls of this round Chapel are painted in *fresco*, the Vision of *Constantine*, of the Cross in the Air; his *Victory* over *Maxentius*; his Baptism, and other memorable actions of his Life. *The Bapt. of Constantine.*

On

The *Scala Sancta.*

On the other side of St. *John Lateran*'s Church you see the *Scala Sancta* and the *Sancta Sanctorum*: The first has got its Name from the twenty eight white Marble Stairs, six foot long, up which our Saviour was led to *Pilate*'s House. Upon some of these are plainly to be distinguish'd the places where the precious Blood of our Saviour had fallen, for which reason they are cover'd with Grates of Brass; they are kept in such reverence, that none ascends them but upon their Knees; of which I have seen many instances, during the Jubilee, in persons of Quality of both Sexes. These Stairs were sent to *Constantine* the Great, by his Mother Queen *Helen*, from *Jerusalem*.

The *Sancta Sanctorum.*

At the top of these Stairs is a Chapel call'd *Sancta Sanctorum*, from its holy Relicks, as the Inscription over the Altar testifies;

Non est in toto Sanctior Orbe locus.

Upon this Altar is kept the famous Picture of our Saviour, drawn half-ways, representing him about thirteen Years old, about a foot and a half long, said to have been begun by St *Luke*, and finish'd by an Angel: It is beset all round about with Jewels of a considerable value. Under the Altar is entomb'd the Body of St. *Anastasius*, and the Heads of St. *Agnes* and *Praxedes*, with other Relicks, are kept here. In former times (according to their Records) the Prepuce or Fore-skin of our Saviour was also kept here; but at the time of the sacking of *Rome* by *Bourbon*, one of the Soldiers seiz'd upon it, but not being able to rest, left it in a Village call'd *Calcata*, about fifteen miles from *Rome*, where I saw it at the House of the Count *d'Anguillara*, encles'd in a Crystal Case, whereof the said Count keeps one Key, and the Parish Priest another.

Triclinium Leonis.

Not far from the *Scala Sancta* you see a notable piece of Christian Antiquity call'd *Triclinium Leonis*, a Picture of *Mosaick* Work of our Saviour resuscitated, holding out a Book to his Disciples, with these words written in it, *Pax vobis*, which was caus'd to be made eight hundred years ago by *Leo*, as an Emblem of his return to *Rome*, whence he had been chas'd by his Enemies. Upon a Pillar on the right hand our Saviour is painted sitting upon a Throne, giving with his right hand the Keys of the Church to St. *Peter*, and with his left the Imperial Standard to *Constantine* the Great. On the opposite Pillar to the left hand you see represented, in *Mosaick* Work, St. *Peter* sitting in a Chair, giving the Pontifical Stole to Pope *Leo* III. with his right hand, and with his left the Imperial Standard to *Charlemagne*, who had restor'd Pope *Leo* to his Seat again.

In our return passing by St. *John Lateran*'s Church, and by the Pope's Palace built by *Sixtus* V. we saw the great *Guglia*, which anciently stood in the *Circus maximus*, being by *Constantine* the Great brought thither from *Alexandria*; its height is above a hundred foot.

In a large Room adjoyning to the Church stands the Statue in *bronze* of the *French* King *Henry* IV, erected by the Canons of St. *John Lateran*'s, to shew their Gratitude for having restor'd ten thousand crowns *per annum* to that Church, due to it in *France*.

St. *John Lateran*'s Hospital.

In the Hospital of this Church the Sick are attended with so much care, that persons of Quality, in their Sickness, often prefer this place before their own homes.

St. *Stephano Rotondo.*

Keeping along the Wall of the old *Aquaduct* of *Claudius*, we took a view of the Church upon the Mount *Cælius*, call'd St. *Stephano Rotondo*, belonging to the Seminarists of the *German* College: The Martyrdoms of most of the ancient Martyrs, with the several Instruments us'd upon that occasion, are to be seen painted upon the Walls.

Over against this Church stands another, call'd St. *Maria della Navicella*, from a little Boat of Stone standing before it, being the Vow of certain Mariners. It was anciently call'd *Dominica*, or *in Ciricca*.

The Villa *Mattei.*

Not far hence is the Villa or Country-house of the Duke *Matthei*, crusted over on the outside with most curious *anticaglie*, and well stor'd within with rare Statues, as, the Heads of *Brutus* and *Porcio* in one Stone; the Statues of *Cleopatra*, of *Hercules*, of three Boys asleep, and hugging one another; the Head of *Cicero*, a most exquisite piece; the Statue of M. *Aurelius*; a Table of precious Stones. In another House (looking towards St. *Sisto*) stands that incomparable Statue of *Andromeda* (white Marble) expos'd to the Sea-monster, by the hand of *Oliviero*; that of *Apollo* fleaing *Marsias*, likewise of white Marble; the Satyr plucking a Thorn out of his Foot: not to mention the curious Alleys, Waterworks, Grotto's, &c.

The *Amphitheatre.*

From hence we went to the old *Amphitheatre*, call'd now the *Coliseo*, from a certain *Colossean* Statue that stood in it. This being one of the most curious pieces of Antiquity of *Rome*, (as being compos'd of Stone of a most prodigious bulk) was begun by *Vespasian* and finish'd by *Domitian*. It is of a circular figure without, and oval within, adorn'd on the outside with Pillars of the three Orders, great Arches below, and open Galleries above, for the conveniency of letting the people go out and in without crowding; within it had Stone Steps leading up to the top, which was set round with Statues: Underneath were the Caves of the wild Beasts, whence they were let loose to fight, sometimes against one another, sometimes against condemn'd Christians. *Nero* order'd the Christians to be clad in Lyons and Bears-skins, and thus to engage with these wild Beasts. Sometimes the Gladiators fought against one another, and even the noble *Romans* would sometimes engage in these Combats.

Meta Sudans.

Near this *Amphitheatre* you see a great heap of Rubbish of Brick, being the Remnants of the ancient noble Fountain call'd *Meta Sudans*, built for the conveniency of the Spectators that came to see the Sports in the *Arena* of the *Amphitheatre*; it was faced with Marble, and adorn'd with a Brass Statue of *Jupiter*.

Near it stands the Triumphal Arch of *Constantine* the Great, erected in memory of his Victory over *Maxentius* the Tyrant, with these words upon it, *Liberatori Urbis, Fundatori Quietis*. It's all of white Marble, with many most curious Statues (which are now headless) and with Histories in *bassi relievi*.

St. *Gregory*'s Church.

From hence passing by the Church of St. *John* and *Paul*, we went to St. *Gregory*'s Church, which being built on the place where his House stood formerly, we saw the Table where this holy man entertain'd (in recompence of his charitable Hospitality) an Angel and the Lord of Angels for his Guests. In one of the Chapels of this Church stands a most curious white Marble Statue of St. *Gregory*, in his Pontifical Robes, the Gift of Cardinal *Beronius*.

In a certain Cave in the Garden belonging to the Convent of St. *Gregory*, we saw some paintings on the Wall of the old times of *Pagan Rome*, most miserably done, and considerable for nothing but their antiquity.

The Baths of *Antonius.*

Afterwards I took a view of the *Thermæ*, or Baths of *Antonius*, of that bigness, that *Ammianus Marcellinus* speaking of this and other *Roman* Baths, stiles them, *Lavacra in modum provinciarum exstructa*; and in the *Excerpta Olympiadori* it is said, that these Baths of *Antonius* had no less than sixteen hundred Seats of polish'd Marble, for as many persons to bath in apart; nay, some of these Bathing-places were pav'd with Silver, and furnish'd with Water by Pipes of the same Metal, and adorn'd with Statues, Pictures, and precious Stones: Now these Baths serve the *Roman* Seminarists for their diversion.

In our way thence passing betwixt the Mount *Aventin* and the Mount *Palatin*, we set sight of the place where formerly stood the *Circus Maximus*, being the largest of all the *Circi* in *Rome*; *Tarquinius Priscus* was the first Founder of it, and *Julius Cæsar* and *Augustus* encreas'd it to that bigness, which was three stades in length, and four acres in breadth, (each *Roman* stade being 625 foot, or 125 paces) and *Trajan* and *Heliogabalus* caus'd it to be beautified with Statues and Pillars: it had three Galleries, one for the Senators, the second for the Gentlemen, and the third for the common people, all which could conveniently contain one hundred and fifty thousand persons. It was also adorn'd with two great Obelisks, *viz.* with that now standing before the *Porta del Populo*, and that before St. *John Lateran*'s Church. Underneath this Building were certain vaulted Rooms, call'd *Fornices*, where the lewd Women us'd to expose their Bodies for Money, whence the word *Fornication* had its derivation.

The Ruins of the Imperial Palace.

Passing forward towards the Church of St. *George*, we saw on the right hand the Ruins of the Imperial Palace call'd *Palazzo Maggiore*, which extended almost all over the *Palatin* Hill. By the way we also took a view of the Church of St. *Anastasius*, which was anciently the Temple of *Neptune*, and thence to the square Temple, suppos'd to have been the Temple of *Janus Quadrifrons*: certain it is that it has four Doors, and twelve Niches, on each side of the square outside; the Doors representing the four Seasons of the Year, and the twelve Niches the twelve Months of the Year. Some are of opinion, that this was only a Porch or Lodge belonging to that Temple.

St. *George*'s Church.

Coming to St. *George*'s Church, we saw a curious Marble Arch richly engraven adjoyning to it, erected by the Company of Goldsmiths to *Severus* and *M. Aurelius*. The Water of the *Tyber* came formerly up very near to this Church, this Creek being then call'd *Velabrum*, because they sometimes made use of a small Sail there, as they were crossing the River in their small Ferry-boats.

From hence we went to the round Church of St. *Theodore* in the *Foro Boario*, which was anciently the Temple of

of *Romulus* and *Remus*, erected in the same place where they were expos'd and nourish'd by a she-Wolf.

The Vestal Virgins.

Not far thence we saw the Hospital of our *Lady of Consolation*, once the Temple of *Vesta*, where the *Vestal Virgins* kept the eternal Fire, and upon that score had peculiar Privileges granted them; but if they hapned to lose their Virginity, they were buried alive in a deep Vault made for that purpose.

The Temple of Jupiter Stator.

From thence going to the *Campo Vaccino*, we saw three Pillars of a most admirable Structure, anciently belonging to the Temple of *Jupiter Stator*, built by *Romulus*, in memory of his Battel against the *Sabins*, when his men being ready to fly, he implor'd *Jupiter* in these words, *Siste fœdam fugam*, whereupon his Soldiers keeping their ground, he built this Temple pursuant to his Vow. Just by these three Pillars you see the Church of St. *Maria Liberatrice*, the reason of which Name is to be seen in a long Writing in the Church, and in *Baronius*'s Annals.

Mæta Sudans.

Hard by was the famous *Lacus Curtii*, a Pool of pestiferous Water, which, the Oracle said, could not be stopt up, but by casting the most precious thing in *Rome* into it; the Ladies and Noblemen having thrown in what was most valuable to them without effect, *Curtius*, a gallant young Patrician, judging that nothing was more precious than a brave Man, leapt into it on Horseback, and thus sacrificing himself for the publick good, the hole clos'd.

See Tit. Liv.

Farneses Gardens.

Then turning to the right hand, we came to the Garden of the *Farneses*, upon the Mount *Palatin*, on the upper part of which formerly stood the Imperial Palace, but on the skirts thereof the Temples of the Goddesses *Feaver* and *Viriplaca*, and *Catalin* and *Cicero*'s Houses. The Scholars of the *English* College in *Rome* have now a kind of Vineyard upon part of this Hill, where they divert themselves. The high Walks in the *Farneses* Gardens are very remarkable for their prospect into the place where the *Circus Maximus* stood in ancient times.

Titus's Arch.

Going on in the same Tract, on the right hand, we came to the Triumphal Arch erected to *Titus*, in memory of his Victory over the *Jews*; here you see in *mezzo relievo* the said Emperour in his triumphant Chariot engraven, and on the other side the holy Candlestick of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, the Ark of Alliance, and the Table of the Law, brought by the said Emperour from *Jerusalem*. This is the most triumphal Arch in *Rome*, and stood in the *Via Sacra*.

The Church of St. Francesca Romanda

Turning off again towards the *Campo Vaccino*, we came to the Church of St. *Francesca Romana*, of St. *Maria nuova*, where we saw the Tomb of that Saint in Brass gilt, set up by *Innocent* X. The History of the Pope's return to *Rome* from *Avignon* is cut here in Marble upon an Altar; and to this Church belongs a most fine suit of Hangings, the Gift of the Sister of Pope *Innocent* X. Near it you see the Remnants of the *old Temple of Peace*, once the most stately of all the *Roman* Temples; as, the Pillar, which now

The Temple of Peace.

stands before St. *Mary Majors* great Door, (formerly belonging to this Temple) which two hundred foot large and three hundred long sufficiently shews: *Vespasian* was the Founder of it, by whom it was adorn'd with the Spoils brought from *Jerusalem* by *Titus*. Behind it is a fine Garden, formerly belonging to Cardinal *Pio*.

Passing over the *Campo Vaccino*, on the right hand we saw the round Church, dedicated to St. *Cosmus* and St. *Damian*, formerly the Temple of *Castor* and *Pollux*. The

The Temple of Castor and Pollux.

Mosaick Work in the Roof of the Tribune is very remarkable for its symbolical Figures.

The Temple of Faustina.

Going on the same way, we saw the Church of St. *Lorenzo in Miranda*, once a Temple dedicated to the Empress *Faustina*, by her Husband *Antonius*. The Porch is worth a Traveller's observation, by reason of its huge Marble Pillars.

The Temple of Saturn.

A little further is the Church of St. *Andriano*, dedicated to *Saturn*, who having first taught the *Italians* the use and coining of Money, the *Romans* had their publick Treasure in this Temple, and their Mint near it.

The Church of St. *Martinas*, formerly the Temple of *Mars* the Revenger, is remarkable only for the Tomb of that Saint, standing in a low Chapel. Just before it stands

The triumphal Arch of Severus.

the noble triumphal Arch of Marble of *Septimius Severus*, curiously engraven in *mezzo relievo*, tho' one half of it is buried under ground, and the other part much defaced by the length of time.

Going on a little further, upon the Hill-side, we saw the little Church of St. *Joseph*; and in a deep Cave underneath, the ancient Prison call'd *Tullianum*, into which St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* were shut up; and in the lowermost Dungeon, where St. *Peter* baptiz'd *Processus* and *Martinianus*, his two Keepers, (with divers others) the Fountain which miraculously sprung up for that purpose at that time, and continues here ever since.

This *Forum* was anciently famous for many other Buildings; as, the *Comitium* (or publick place of assembly) in which stood the Tribunal where the *Prætor* sate in the *Cella Curulis* or Ivory Chair, administring Justice. In this *Comitium* stood the Statue of *Horatius Cocles*, and of *Pythagoras* and *Alcibiades*. In the same *Forum* stood the *Rostra* (or Pulpit made of the brazen Prows of the Ships taken from the *Antiates*) where the *Roman* Orators us'd to plead. Behind it stood the Tomb of *Romulus*, and before the Tomb of *Faustus* the Foster-father of *Romulus*.

Hence going up to the Capitol by the Coach-way, I saw upon the side of the Hill the Pillars once belonging to the Temple of *Concord*, erected by *Camillus*, and three other Pillars neatly wrought, which were part of the Temple dedicated by *Augustus* to *Jupiter* the Thunderer, after having narrowly escap'd a Thunderclap, which kill'd his Chairman.

The Capitol.

The Capitol got its Name from the Latin word *Caput*, *i. e.* a Head, a Man's Head being found here underground when they were laying the Foundation of the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*, portending, that this City should one day be the head of the World. The first thing I took notice of, was the highest part of this Hill, call'd anciently *Rupes Tarpeia*, being of no very difficult access; it looks down towards the Theatre of *Marcellus*. Thence returning back to the *Piazza* of the Capitol, I delighted my

The Equestrian Statue of M. Antonius.

Eyes with that miraculous *Statua Equestris* of *Marcus Aurelius*, a great Philosopher and great Emperour, being the noblest Statue in the World, once gilt, but now appearing all to be plain Brass. Near this Statue stand two *Colossean* Statues, whence spring forth two Rivers, one representing the *Nile*, and the other the *Tyger*: Over them you see standing a Statue not unlike *Pallas*, representing *Rome*, the Face of white Marble, and the Garments of Porphyry. Here I saw also the Trophies of *Marius*, cut

The Trophies of Marius.

anciently in Stone; and the two great Statues of *Constantine* the Great, in white Marble, with the Horses; as also the little Stone Pillar, with a large Brass Ball upon it, call'd the *Miliarium*, because from thence the Romans us'd to count their miles to any part of the Empire. It stood anciently in the *Forum Romanorum*, and was erected there by *Augustus*.

Entring into the Palace of the *Conservatorio* or *Senatore*, I saw there the *Statues* of *Julius Cæsar* and *Augustus*; and in a little Court a Marble Table set in the out-wall, the marks of the Roman measures; and the Feet, Hands, Thighs and Head of Marble, scatter'd in this Court, of the great *Colossus* of *Apollo*, order'd to be made by *Lucullus*; that most exquisite Statue of a Lyon tearing a Horse; the Tomb of *Mamea* and *Alexander Severus* her *Son*, with the Rape of the *Sabines* upon it, in *basso relievo*; and a little *Egyptian* Idol set up high over the said Tomb; as also the Head of the Emperour *Commodus* in Brass, with a Hand of the same.

At the Stairs foot leading up into the Chambers, you see the *Colonna rostrata*, a Marble pillar of twelve foot high, cover'd with stems of Ships cut in Marble, with an Inscription on the *Basis* in very old scurvy Latin, intimating, that this Pillar was erected in memory of a Naval Victory obtain'd by *Duillius* against the *Carthaginians*, an evident sign that the ancient *Romans* took more pride in glorious Actions than in refin'd Words.

Going up about ten Steps, I entred into a little Court, the Walls whereof were cover'd all over with Marble, and four rare pieces of *M. Aurelius*'s Triumph cut in 'em; the first represented him in his triumphant Chariot, the second offering his Sacrifices, the third giving his Largesses to the People, and the fourth, the Presents offer'd to him by the *Romans*. The Emperour's Chariot has got new Wheels, and the Horses new Shoes and Feet, the rest being all the same it was made at first.

M. Aurelius his Triumph.

Mounting up higher the same Stairs, I saw an old Brass Plate nail'd up, in which the *Roman* Laws of the ten Tables were written. Then entring into the Chambers and great Hall, I took particular notice of the Statues of *Alexander Farnese* Duke of *Parma*, and *M. Antonius Colonna*, the Pope's General in the Battel of *Lepanto*, and of *Don John d'Austria*. Upon the Walls were painted in *fresco* the Rape of the *Sabins*, the Combat of the *Tergimini Fratres*, betwixt the *Horatii* and *Curatii*; *Scevola* holding his Hand over the burning Coals; *Cocles* descending the Bridge; *Scipio* and *Hannibal*, with their Armies, most excellently painted by *Pietro Perugino*; the Picture of *Brutus*, the first Consul, commanding the death of his Son; that of the *Tarquins*, and that of the Conquest of the *Sabins*, are also very bold pieces. In the Chambers I saw the Statues of *Caius Marius*; of *Hercules*, in Brass, whilst yet a Lad; of *Junius Brutus*, likewise Brass; the Heads of *Diogenes*, *Plato* and *Socrates* in Marble; the Statues of *Cicero*, *Virgil* and *Plato*; the Statue in Brass of the

Wolf that gave suck to *Romulus* and *Remus*: But what exceeds all the rest is, the brazen Statue of a young Fellow picking a Thorn out of his Foot, who being a Foot-post, and having Letters of great concern to carry to the Senate, would not stop by the way to pull out the Thorn that stuck in his Foot, but having deliver'd his Letters, (which was done with prodigious haste, as appear'd by the date) he began to pick out his Thorn in the presence of the full Senate, in the same posture as is express'd in this Statue, which was erected in the Capitol by the command of the Senate.

Ara Cœli, or the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*.

Having thus taken a full view of the Capitol, we went into the Church of *Ara Cœli*, adjoyning to the Capitol, upon the same Hill, in the same place where anciently stood the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus* or *Jupiter Feretrius*. The Tomb of St. *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great, is in this Church. Descending from hence by two Marble Stairs, of that breadth that twelve Men may go up at once a-breast, we came to the Jesuits Church and House, call'd the *Casa Professa*. The Church is both large and neat; the Chapels are adorn'd with good Paintings, and the Ornaments of the Vestry exceeding rich. The Picture of St. *Ignatius* is to be seen upon the same Altar, under which lies interr'd the Body of that Saint, the Founder of the Jesuits Order. Near the high Altar is to be seen the Tomb of Cardinal *Bellarmin*. The Chamber of St. *Ignatius* in this House, is since turn'd into a Chapel.

The Jesuites Church.

In our way from hence we took a step into the Palace of St. *Mark*, belonging to the State of *Venice*, the ordinary Residence of the *Venetian* Ambassadours. Thence going towards the Mount *Quirinal*, now call'd *Monte Cavallo*, and passing thro' that part of the Town anciently call'd *Forum Trajani*, we took a view of that most stupendious white Marble Pillar, erected there in honour of *Trajan*, and hence call'd *Colonna Trajana*, but never seen by him, because he died in his return from his Expedition against the *Persians*. It is a hundred twenty eight foot high, besides the Pedestal, which is twelve more; and compos'd of twenty four vast stones of Marble, in which are cut the great *Actions* of *Trajan*, especially those against the *Dacians*. Within it you ascend by a hundred eighty five steps up to the top, light being let in by forty small Windows. On the top of this Column were buried the Ashes of that Emperour, in lieu of which *Sixtus* V. order'd a Statue in Brass gilt of St. *Peter* to be set up there.

Going from hence up the Hill, we came to the Palace and Garden of *Aldobrandini*, neatly adorn'd with Statues and Pictures: Those I took most notice of were, an old Picture of the *Pagan* times, representing a Marriage of the ancient *Romans*; this being accounted the most ancient Picture in *Rome*, a Copy thereof is preserv'd in the House of the Brother of Cavalier *Pozzo*, near St. *Andrea della Valle*. Here I saw also the true Picture of *Martin Luther*; and in the Chapel a St. *Sebastian*, by *Raphael*. Upon the Stairs stood a Statue of a Man hanging by the Hands, with great Stones at his Feet, a Torment much practis'd by the *Pagans* upon the Christians; with many other curious Pictures and Statues.

The Palace of *Aldobrandini*.

The next Palace we came to in our way, is the Palace of Cardinal *Mazzarini*, in the Garden whereof is to be seen that most noted Picture of the *Aurora*, done by *Guido Rheni*. In the Court of this Palace the best Riding-masters of *Rome* teach their Scholars to ride their great Horses, but are much inferiour to the Masters of *France*. Hard by this Palace stand the Pope's Stables, where we saw all the Genets presented to the Pope since his exaltation to the Papal Dignity, by the King of *Spain*, for the Kingdom of *Naples*, the rest being all Coach-horses.

The Pope's Stables.

We soon came to the Piazza of *Monte Cavallo*, so call'd from the two famous Horses of Marble, with each a Man to hold him, presented to *Nero* by *Tiridates* King of *Armenia*. On the Pedestal of one of them are written, *Opus Phidiæ*; under the other, *Opus Praxitelis*; these two Horses and Men being suppos'd to be made by these two great Sculptors of *Greece*, to represent *Bucephalus* and *Alexander* the Great. Upon this Hill, which was anciently call'd *Mons Quirinalis*, stood the Baths of *Constantine* the Great, some remnants of which are yet to be seen in the Garden of *Colonna*, adjoyning to the Wall of this Piazza. Opposite to these Horses stands the *Pope*'s Palace, where he commonly resides in Summer, a noble Structure, with stately Rooms: The Gardens are very delightful, adorn'd with curious Walks, admirable Grotto's, and fine Waterworks, among which is an Organ, playing without being touch'd by any Fingers. Over against the Back-door of the Garden stands the Novitiate of the Jesuits, with a fine new Church, and delicious Gardens belonging to it.

The Pope's Summer Palace.

St. *Sylvester's* Church.

In our return thence we took a transitory view of St. *Sylvester*'s Church, over against *Mazzarina*'s Palace, belonging to the *Theatins*; and of the Tomb of Cardinal *Bentivoglio*, which is in this Church.

From hence passing thro' a private Street to St. *Agatha*'s Church, in the *Saburra*, near the foot of the *Quirinal* Hill, we saw there the Tomb of St. *Agatha*, entomb'd under the Altar, and before the Door of the Church certain ancient Statues representing little Boys in the habit of a *Prætexta*, a Dress belonging to Noblemens Children.

Passing on forwards by the Church of *Madonna del monte*, we ascended the Hill to St. *Peter's advincula*, where we saw that noted Statue of *Moses* of white Marble, in a sitting posture at the Tomb of *Julius* II. a rare piece of *Michael Angelo*. Near unto the Church-door you see an Altar, with the Statue of *S. Sebastian*; and in the *Sacristy*, the Chains wherewith *S. Peter* was fetter'd, and which have given the name of *St. Peter ad vincula* to this Church.

St. Croce in Jerusalem.

St. Bar. in Appul.

The next Church is, St. *Maria in monte*. In a Vault underneath it two Councils were held by St. *Sylvester* during the persecutions of the Christians, as the words upon the stairs leading into the Vault and *Baronius* testifie. It is said also, that in this place the first publick Exercise of the Christian Religion was made.

The Church of St. *Praxedes* is next to this, where you see a low round Pillar of speckled Marble, enclos'd in an Iron Grate, the same at which our Saviour was whipt: The Inscription over the Door of the Chapel tells you, that this Pillar was brought hither from *Jerusalem* four hundred years ago, by Cardinal *Colonna*. In another Chapel is a most curious Picture of the descent of our Saviour from the Cross, done by *Gnido*.

The Pillar on which our Saviour was whipt.

Thence we took a turn to St. *Maria maggiore*, a Church so call'd, because it is the biggest of all the Churches dedicated to our Lady in *Rome*. It is built upon Mount *Esquilin*, upon the same place which by a singular Miracle was cover'd with Snow on the Fifth of *August*, the History of which is known by the Feast in the Calendar call'd St. *Maria ad Nives*, and is represented in old Mosaick Pictures on the Wall, over the Pillars that support the Roof. The things I chiefly took notice of here were, the Tomb of *Patritius*, of Porphyry, near the great Door, the Founder of this Church; and the fine Roof, gilt with the first Gold that was brought out of the *West Indies*; the Mosaick Pictures all along the Church, representing the History of the Old and New Testament, and of the Foundation of this Church; the Tomb of an Ambassadour of *Congo*, over against the Brass Statue of *Paul* V. Under the high Altar lies interr'd the Body of St. *Matthias* the Apostle, whose Head is to be seen upon the Altar, in a Crystal, upon St. *Matthias* Day.

St. Bibiana's Church.

St. Lawrence's Church w. th. ou the Walls.

In a little back Court is a very quick and sharp Eccho, in a Well.

The Chapel of *Sixtus* V.

The Chapel of *Sixtus* V. the Work of *Domenico Fontana*, is said to have cost seven hundred thousand crowns: The chief actions of *Sixtus* V. and *Pius* V. are cut in white Marble round this Chapel; and in a side Altar on the left hand are interr'd the Ashes of St. *Jerome*, near our Saviour's Crib, which is here enchas'd in Crystal in a low Chapel, under the high Altar of this Chapel, and shewn publickly every Christmas-day: the Brass Tabernacle, held up by four Angels, of the same Metal, with one hand, and each with a Torch in the other hand, is a most curious piece of Workmanship.

The holy Crib of our Saviour.

St. Antonio.

The Chapel of *Paul* V.

Opposite to this stands the Chapel of *Paul* V. very like the former in all respects, except that the high Altar stands not in the middle, but at the end of it, being a most rare piece, both for its Workmanship and Materials; for the Back of this Altar is supported by four large Pillars of polish'd Jasper, the Bases and Capitols whereof are of Brass gilt, the Back of the Altar being all of *Lapis Lazuli*, or Oriental blue Azure-stone, and in the midst of it a little Nich, wherein is plac'd the *Picture* of our Lady with our Saviour in her Arms, made by St. *Luke*. The Nich is enclos'd by a row of precious Stones of great value, and shut up with two half-Doors of two entire Agate stones, each of them two foot long and a foot broad: The *Picture* it self being very old, and placed very high, is not well to be seen, as to the Lineaments of the Face, unless (as I did) you hold a Wax Taper at the end of a long pole. This is the same *Picture* which St. *Gregory* the Great carried a thousand years ago in procession on *Easter-day*, when he saw over the *Molos Adriani* an Angel sheathing his Sword, upon which the Plague ceased in *Rome*. The *Cupola* of this Chapel is finely painted by *Guido Rheni* of *Bologna*, and the sides of the Walls cover'd with white Marble cut in *mezzo relievo*, representing the *chief Actions* of *Clement* VIII. and *Paul* V. whose Statues are also to be seen here of white Marble.

The Picture of our Lady by St. Luke.

St. Prudentiana's Church.

See Baronius.

St. Vitale.

Without the Church stand two great Pillars, at each end one, *viz.* an *Egyptian Guglia* or Pyramid with Hieroglyphicks, and the other a Pillar found among the Ruins of the *Temple of Peace*: It is of a great heighth, having the

the Statues of our Saviour and the Blessed Virgin upon it, of Brass gilt.

From hence we came to the Church of St. *Vito* and *Modesto*, near the Ruins of the Triumphal Arch of the Emperour *Galienus*, on the top whereof you see nail'd certain great Keys, belonging formerly to the City of *Tusculum* (now *Frescate*) in remembrance of a Victory over that Town five hundred years ago, under the Pope *Honorius* V.

A little further we saw the Church of St. *Eusebio*, erected upon the Ruins of the Baths of the Emperour *Gordiano*. Near unto this Church were found the Trophies of *Marius*, mention'd before when we spoke of the Capitol.

St. Croce in Jerusalem. At last we reach'd St. *Croce* in *Ferusalem*, one of the seven Churches of *Rome*, and built by *Constantine* the Great, near the City Walls, at the end of *Mons Calius*, having got its Name from the Earth of Mount *Calvary*, which was brought hither from *Jerusalem*. Not far from it appear certain remnants of the Temple of *Venus* and *Cupid*, ruin'd by the said Emperour, to build this Church in lieu thereof. The Painting in the Tribune or Roof of the Choir, representing the exaltation of the Cross, seems to be of the hand of *Pietro Perugino*, a famous Painter, before *Raphael* rais'd that Art to its highest pitch. In the Sacristy are shewn three pieces of the holy Cross, one of the Nails of that Cross, two Thorns of our Saviour's Crown of Thorns, a great piece of the Title of the Cross, a Finger of St. *Thomas* the Apostle, and one of the thirty pieces of Money for which our Saviour's was sold by *Judas*.

See Bar. in Anpal.

St. Bibiana's Church. Hard by is the Church of St. *Bibiana*, in the same place anciently call'd *Ursa Pileata*, from a Statue of a Bear with a Hat on, that stood there. Some good Painting is to be seen in this Church of *Campelli* and *Pietro Cortonese*, and the Statue of *Bibiana* by *Bernini*. Here is also the Churchyard call'd *Inter duas lauros*.

St. Lawrence's Church w th-out the Walls. Going forward, we pass'd thro' St. *Lawrence*'s Gate to the Church call'd St. *Laurenzo furori delle mura*, to distinguish it from some others dedicated to that Saint within the Walls: It acknowledges *Constantine* the Great for its Founder, who order'd it to be built upon the *Cœmiterium* of St. *Ciriace*, in the *Via Tiburtina*, being one of the seven Churches of *Rome*, and one of the five *Patriarchal Churches*, and consequently not Titular of any Cardinal.

Under the high Altar is the Tomb of St. *Lawrence*, and behind the said Altar the Stone upon which stood the Gridiron upon which St. *Lawrence* was broil'd, cover'd with a great Glass. Under the Church are certain Vaults or Catacombs, where the Saints us'd to be buried in primitive times; and in the Roof of the Church are cut these following words in large wooden Letters,

Quam clarificata est Hierosolyma Stephano, tam illustris facta est Roma Laurentio.

being a certain passage in the Sermon of St. *Leo*, upon the Feast of St. *Lawrence*.

S. Antonio. In our return into the Town we cast our Eyes upon St. *Anthonys* Church and Hospital, hard by St. *Maria maggiore*. The Pillar with a Cross upon it before the Church was erected in memory of the Conversion of *Henry* IV. King of *France*.

St. Pudentiana's Church. See Bernino. Behind St. *Maria Maggiore* stands the Church of St. *Pudentiana*, in the most ancient Street call'd *Vicus Patricius*, built upon the self-same place where anciently stood the House of *Pudens*, a Senator, and Father of *Pudentiana*, and where St. *Peter* lodg'd at his first coming to *Rome*, the Father and his two Daughters *Pudentiana* and *Praxedes*, being by him converted to the Christian Faith; the Well of the first, into which she us'd to put the Relicks of many Martyrs, being to be seen here to this day, as likewise the wooden Altar upon which St. *Peter* said Mass there. The two Marble Statues of our Saviour and St. *Peter* are excellent pieces; and the fine Chapel of the *Caetani*, with the Back of the Altar, in white Marble, most curiously engraven in a *basso relievo*, representing the adoration of the *Magi*, is of the hand of *Olivieri*. Near the high Altar you see the Picture of *Pudens*, in his Senator's Garb.

Thence we went to St. *Lorenzo* in *Panisperna*, built upon the same place where stood formerly the Palace of the Emperour *Decius*, by whose command St. *Lawrence* was broil'd here upon a Gridiron, whose Martyrdom you see painted in *fresco* on the Wall of the Church. The Bodies of St. *Bridget* a *Scottish* holy Virgin, and of Cardinal *Sirletus*, are interr'd here.

St. Vitale. From hence passing thro' a by Street all along the foot of *Monte Cavallo*, we came to the Church of St. *Vitalis*, adjoyning to the Garden of the Jesuits Novitiate. It's said that in this place stood the ancient Temple of *Romulus* or *Quirinus*, built by the Senate after *Proculus* had depos'd that *Romulus* had appear'd to him after his death, and bid him tell the *Romans*, that he would be worship'd under the Name of *Quirinus*.

Thence we came to the *Quatro Fontane*, or four Fountains, standing at the meeting of as many Streets. They spout forth out of Statues in a cumbent posture, made here by *Lepidus*; and so further to St. *Maria della Vittoria*, owing its Name to the Victory obtain'd by the Imperialists at the Battel of *Prague*, the Colours and Standards taken upon that occasion being hung round about this Church. In one of these Colours over the Door were cross Keys wrought, Cardinals Caps, Mitres, Priests Caps, &c. turn'd topsie turvy, with this Motto, *Extinguentur*. It has divers fine Chapels, the Picture of St. *Teresa* wounded by a *Seraphin*, done by *Bernini*; in a Chapel on the left hand is a most curious piece. In the Hall of the Convent is painted the Battel of *Prague*; and in the Sacristy is to be seen a Sepulchre of our Saviour, most curiously wrought in Ivory. At the entrance of this Church stands the great Fountain call'd *Fontana felice*, where the Aqueduct of *Sixtus* V. exonerates it self into a large Stone Cistern, which furnishes a considerable part of the City with Water.

The Garden of *Montalto*. Not far from hence is the Garden of *Montalto*, one of the best in *Rome*. At the very entrance stands a round Table of a blewish Stone, having the Arms of the House of *Montalto* engraven upon it, and underneath a low Iron Pump, which is no sooner press'd down with the Foot of the Gardener, but the Water spouts forth on all sides.

In the little Palace near the Gate is a wooden Organ, which gives no ungrateful sound; and besides many Pictures and Statues of the Family of *Montalto*, the Picture of an Engagement betwixt *David* and *Goliah*, turning upon a Frame, shews you both the foresides and backsides of these two Combatants. Here you see divers curious Urns; the true *Busto* of *Sixtus* V, a Tabernacle of rich Stones, a *Picture* in Stones of divers colours, which, held one way, represents only a Bunch of Herbs, but turn'd another way, represents a Man's Head and Face; and to make up the rest, a curious Library, over the Door whereof, on the inside, you see these words, *Medicina animi*. The Gardens are full of most curious Waterworks and delightful Walks.

The Baths of *Diocletian*. The Church and Convent of the *Carthusians*, built upon the Ruins of the Baths of *Diocletian*, are not far from hence, for the building of which forty thousand Christians were imploy'd by this Emperour and his Associate *Maximian*.

The Pope's Granaries. From hence we went to the Pope's Granaries, vast Structures two stories high, and always stor'd with Wheat, to supply the City; many Officers are appointed for the management thereof, and abundance of Labourers imploy'd daily in turning the Wheat, and by the smelling at the end of them, can tell whether the Grain begins to moisten. These Granaries are also built upon the Ruins of the Baths of *Diocletian*.

The Church of St. *Agnes*. Passing hence thro' the *Porta Pia*, (not far off) we went for a mile to St. *Agnes*'s Church, where the Body of this Saint lies entomb'd under the Altar, who suffer'd Martyrdom at fifteen years of age.

Hard by it you see another Church dedicated to S. *Constantia*, another holy Virgin, and that famous Tomb known generally by the name of *Bacchus*'s Tomb, but erroneously, it being the Tomb of St. *Constantia*, curiously cut in *basso relievo*: the *Area* or Chest, being of one Porphyry-stone of six foot long, and above half a foot thick.

The Villa of *Borgheses*. Thence crossing the Fields, we came to the Villa of the *Borgheses*, (a little half-mile from the Town) the largest of any about *Rome*, and beautified with Walks, Fishponds, Bird-cages, Thickets of Trees, many Fountains, Wetting-spouts, Statues, Grotto's, Banqueting-places, and a very fair Park of Deer. The Statues in the noble Palace are so exquisite and many in number, that they have furnish'd sufficient matter for a whole Volume in 8vo, unto which I refer the Reader. This Palace is enclos'd on both sides by a Demi-circle of Statues, and the Wall thereof cover'd with many old Marble pieces of Antiquity; as, that of *Curtius*, of *Europa* and *Jupiter*, &c. In the great Hall you see the Statue of *Diana* in Oriental Alabaster, which was reverenc'd as a Deity by *Augustus Cæsar* himself; and two very large *Pictures*, one representing a publick Cavalcade of the Pope, the other a Cavalcade of the Grand Signior. In an adjacent Room stands the Statue of a bold ancient Gladiator, who alone fought against twenty, and being mortally wounded, discovers, even dying, his fierceness by his threatning looks. In another Room below you see the Statue of *Seneca*, of black Stone like Jett, bleeding to death; the Statue of *Daphne* pursued by *Apollo*, and she stiffening into a Tree, the Work of *Bernini*; the Statue of *Æneas* with his Father on his Back, the first very brawny, bold and strong, the other lean and timorous; as also that

that of *David* slinging at *Goliah* with terrible Frowns in his Countenance, both by the hand of Cavalier *Bernini*. In one of the Chambers above is the Head, in *Profile*, of *Alexander* the Great, in Marble; and in another Chamber, a great Elbow-Chair, which locketh fast any man that is set in it. Here I saw also some Toys and Clockworks for the diversion of young People.

In our return from this Villa, by the Back-door leading to the *Porta del populo*, we took a transitory view of the Church of *Madonna del populo*, much beautified by *Alexander* the Seventh. Here you see that famous Statue of *Jonas*, made by the direction of *Raphael Urbin*; and in a Chapel near the Gospel-side of the high Altar, a most curious Picture, done by *Guido Rheni*. The ancient Tomb of *Nero* stood where you see now the high Altar of this Church.

Turning afterwards to the left, to the *Piazza di Spagna*, we pass'd by the great *Guglia* or *Egyptian Pyramid*, carv'd all over with Hieroglyphicks, which stands at the head of three Steps. Going on a little further, we saw the Greek Church and College, their Ceremonies, and heard them singing of Mass after the Greek manner, tho' they are in Communion with the *Roman* Church, this Seminary being intended for the education of Missionaries, to be sent in Missions into their own Country.

The Greek College.

From hence keeping still to the left hand, and ascending to the top of the Hill by the Coach-way, we took a view of the Great Duke of *Florence*'s Villa, its curious Gardens and Fountains, three vast Marble Vessels, and a world of Statues, both in the Palace and long Gallery; the most remarkable were, that of the two Gladiators wrestling; that of the Clown whetting his Sithe, and hearing *Cataline*'s Conspiracy (one of the finest pieces in *Rome*) and that of *Cupid* and *Venus*.

The Great Duke's Villa.

Crossing the Street here as we were coming out of the Back-door, we soon came to the Back-door of the Villa *Ludovisia*, belonging to the Prince of that Name, seated upon a rising Ground, in a most excellent Air: It has two Houses, both most curiously furnish'd with many Rarities; in that near the Back-door we took particular notice of these following; a most excellent Picture of the B. Virgin *Mary*, by *Guido Rheni*; a rich Cabinet, with the Picture of *Gregory* XV. in a *Cameo*, and other rich Stones adorning it; a little Closet full of Rarities, such as a Skin of a *Hydra* with seven Necks, a petrified *Fungus*, the true Picture of *Francis* I. King of *France*, and his Physician *Lorenzo Vinci*, &c. In another Room, the Heads of *Gregory* the Fifteenth and Cardinal *Ludovisio* his Nephew, in white Marble: a Room full of curious Glasses: Upon the Staircase you see a most exquisite piece of a little *Cupid* so burthen'd with Arrows, that another little *Cupid* is forc'd to sustain them behind. But what surpasses all the other Curiosities here, is the most magnificent Bedstead in one of the Chambers, valued at an hundred thousand crowns, the four Posts being of Oriental polish'd Jasper, the rest of other rich Stones, the Head exceeding all the rest, especially in the middle, where the Arms of the House of *Ludovisio* are most artificially set in rich Stones of divers colours. This House is surrounded with Fountains, Waterworks, and shady Walks.

The Villa *Ludovisia*.

The first House.

From hence crossing the Garden, we went to the other House, where, in the several Chambers, we were shewn these following Curiosities; two old Gladiators, in Stone, sitting down; a St. *Francis*, a *Lucretia*, a *Judith*, and a Conversion of St. *Paul*, all four painted by *Guido Rheni*; with divers other Pieces of *Titian*, *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Caraccio*, and others; a most curious Head of *Scipio* the *African*; the Head of *Seneca* in *busto*; divers rich inlaid Tables of Stone; two *Apollo*'s of white Marble; the Statue of a dying Gladiator; the Body of a petrified Man. In another Chamber you see a most curious Clock made in *Germany*, but has not gone since it came to *Rome*, none of the Clockmakers here daring to venture upon the mending of it. In another Chamber, a new Statue of white Marble, representing the Rape of *Proserpina*, by *Bernini*. In another, the most exquisite Statue of *Cestius Marius*, killing himself with his Dagger at the sight of his dead Daughter, who had kill'd her self to avoid the Lust of the Emperour. In the long Gallery we saw the Statues of *Junius Brutus*, of *Nero*, *Domitian*, &c. But what surpass'd all the rest, was, the Head of *Olympias*, (Mother of *Alexander* the Great) in *basso relievo*, and in a Frame.

The second House.

From this Villa we went to the Church of the *Capuchins*, opposite to the great Door thereof, where, on the left hand, we saw the Tomb of St. *Felice*, a Lay-brother of this Order, famous for his Sanctity; as also the Tomb-stone of Cardinal *Antonio Barberino*, Brother to Pope *Urban* VIII, who having been long a *Capuchin*, was hardly prevail'd upon by his Brother's command to accept of the Cardinals Cap: Upon his Tomb-stone you see only this Inscription,

The Capuchins.

Hic jacet umbra, cinis, nihil.

This Cardinal, and Cardinal *Mazat*, made by *Clement* the Eighth, are the only Cardinals of the *Capuchins* Order.

Directly opposite to the *Capuchins* stands the Palace of the *Barberini*, now in the possession of the Prince of *Palestrina*, of that Family, being one of the finest Palaces of *Rome* for its noblenes, most curious situation on the side of a Hill, for its two neat Staircases, the noble pieces of Painting on the Roof of the great Hall, by *Pietro di Cortona*, the rare Gallery full of Pictures and Statues, stately Apartments, and lastly, for that most exquisite Library of Cardinal *Francesci Barberino*.

Palazzo Barberini.

Hence (in our way to the *Minims* of *Trinita di Monte*) we view'd in *transitu* a little Church of *Spanish Augustine* Friers, call'd St. *Ildefonso*, beautified with a goodly high Altar, side-Chapels, a curious *Cupola*, and neat Quire, tho' it be the least Church in *Rome*.

The Church of St. *Ildefonso* the least in *Rome*.

Then coming to the *Minims* of *Trinita di Monte*, belonging to *France*, and St. *Francis* of *Paula*'s Order, founded by *Lewis* XI. King of *France*, we found it one of the best scituated of all in the City, which may be overlook'd from thence at one piece. In the Church we took notice of the Assumption of our Lady, painted by *Zuccary*; that of our Saviour's taking down from the Cross, by *Raphael*; the appearing of our Saviour to St. *Mary Magdalen*, by *Julio Romano*, *Raphael*'s Scholar. In the Dormitory of this noble Convent you see a most curious Perspective of St. *Francis* of *Paula*, and a rare Sun-dial.

From hence going down into the *Piazza di Spagna*, we took notice there of the *Ship-Fountain*, which in Summer-time spouts forth its Waters all over the *Piazza*, to cool it. In this *Piazza* is the Palace where the *Spanish* Ambassadours keep their ordinary Residence in *Rome*, and at one end of it, the College *de progaganda Fide*, founded by *Urban* the Eighth, for the maintenance and education of young Students of the Eastern Countries, even to the *Indians* and *Ethiopians*, to qualifie them for Missions into their Native Countries, for the conversion of the poor Infidels in those remote parts of the World.

Piazza di Spagna.

Next we steer'd our course towards the *Piazza* of the *Fontana de Trevi*, where in our way we saw divers noble Palaces of Cardinals near the *Monte Cavallo*. The Fountain of *Treve* emits three different Streams out of its three Mouths, being for the rest, as yet, unfinish'd.

Fontana di Trevi.

Advancing nearer the foot of the *Monte Cavallo*, we took a transitory view of the College of the *Maronites*, and in their Church heard them singing Mass in their own Language and Rites: They use the *Arabick* Tongue, and have been in Union with the *Roman* Church these five hundred Years.

The College of the *Maronites*.

Thence we went to the Church built by *Constantine* the Great, in honour of the twelve Apostles, in memory of whom the said Emperour himself carried twelve Baskets upon his Shoulders when the Foundation was laid. Here lie interr'd St. *Philip* and *James*, two Apostles; and the *Piazza* before the Church is adorn'd with four stately Palaces, *viz.* that of the Prince *Colonna*, that of Cardinal *Chisi*, that of Cardinal *Sforza*, and that of Signior *Muli*.

From hence we took a turn into the *Corso*, the finest Street in *Rome*, so call'd from the Races that are run there in Carnival time, by Horses against Horses, *Jews* against *Jews*, or Boys against Boys. In this Street also the Masquerades divert themselves in Carnival time, when the other wise grave *Italians* vent their Humors according to their respective Inclinations; thus you see some represent Doctors of Law, and disputing with one another in pure Railery; another rides on a Mule, in the habit of a Physician; another cries, *A Secret against Mice*, and carries a Cat under his Cloak; Persons of great Quality are drawn in *Carro's* with four Horses abreast, with Pageants and a great train of Trumpets and Horsemen, whilst some Dukes and Princes appear on foot, and pelt those in the *Carro's* and Windows with Sugarplums. But what diverted me most was, a certain *Italian*, who being dress'd half like a *Spaniard* and the other half like a *Frenchman*, made a most lively representation of these two *Antipathetical* Nations. All these Diversions are perform'd with all imaginable decency, no body being allow'd to carry a Sword or any other Arms, nor to appear mask'd after it is dark, nor to make any scurrilous Reflections, for which reason certain Serjeants ride up and down the *Corso* to see a most exact *decorum* observ'd, and to prevent any Disturbances.

The *Corso*.

As in this Street Persons of Quality make the *Tour à la mode* in their Coaches, so it is upon that score that several fine

Some Palaces in the *Corso*.

fine Palaces are built in it. In the Palace of Signior *Vitelleschi* are no less than ten spacious Rooms on a Floor, adorn'd with most curious Pictures and Statues; among the last; that of *Cincinnatus* and *Brutus* are the most remarkable, that of *Brutus* being defac'd by special order from the Senate, the very marks of the punches of the Halberts are plainly seen to this day. Near it stands the Palace of Prince *Pamphylio*, exceeding in Riches and Furniture any other in *Rome*, or perhaps in *Italy*: The other Palaces in the *Corso* are, that of Prince *Carboniano*, that of Cardinal *Franciotti*, that of *Don Augustino Chisi*, that of Prince *Ludovisio*, and that of the Duke of *Caetani*.

The Churches in the *Corso* are, that of St. *Maria* in *Via Lata*, near the Palace of Prince *Pamphylio*, an ancient Church, said to have been built where St. *Paul* lodg'd at his first coming to *Rome*, and that St. *Luke* wrote the *Acts of the Apostles* in the Oratory here. The Church of St. *Marcello*, in the same Street, was built on the same place where anciently stood the Temple of the *Egyptian* Goddess *Isis*, destroy'd by the command of *Tiberius*. Behind the Church stands the Oratory of the holy Crucifix, in which Society many Noble Persons of *Rome* have entred themselves. Here is most excellent Musick, and one of the best Preachers in *Rome*, to be heard every *Friday* in *Lent*.

S. Carlo in Corso.

The next is the Church of St. *Carlo* in *Corso*, belonging to the *Milanese*; here the Heart of St. *Charles Borromeo* is preserv'd in a Crystal.

S. Jacomo di gl'Incurabili.

In this Street is also that neat round Church of St. *Jacomo de gl'Incurabili*, belonging to the Hospital, where such as are afflicted with incurable Diseases are maintain'd.

The Convent of Penitent Whores.

And lastly, the Church and Convent of the *Penitent Whores*, where such as truly repent of their former bad course of life are receiv'd and maintain'd, and pass away the remainder of their days in Penances and Austerities, their Faces being always veil'd, and no Man, except their Confessor and Physician, permitted to speak with them.

Behind this Convent stands the Church of St. *Sylvestro in capite*; so call'd from the miraculous Picture of our Saviour's Head and Face, which our Saviour made himself, and sent to *Abagarus* King of *Edessa*.

The Column of Antonin.

From thence returning thro' the *Corso*, we took a full view of the great Pillar of the Emperour *M. Aurelius Antoninus*, built by him in honour of his Father *Antonius Pius*: It is built in the same manner as that of *Trajan* before mention'd, of white Marble, engraven without with a *basso relievo* from top to bottom, representing the chief actions of *M. Aurelius*; its height is a hundred seventy five foot, having two hundred and six Steps which lead up to the top, and fifty six little Windows to let in the light. This great Pillar is compos'd of no more than twenty eight Marble Stones. The *Basri relievi* being much defac'd by age, printed Cuts are to be sold of them in *Rome*, containing the Atchievements of that Emperour against the *Armenians*, *Parthians*, *Germans*, *Vandals* and *Sarmats*. Upon the top of this Column the Statue of St. *Paul*, in Brass gilt, was set by command of *Sixtus* V, from whence I had a prospect of *Rome* and its seven Hills, *viz.* the *Capitolin* Hill, the *Palatin* Hill, the *Aventin* Hill, the *Celian* Hill, the *Esquiline* Hill, the *Viminal* and the *Quirinal* Hills. Unto these seven ancient Hills of *Rome* were added three others, *viz.* the *Janicule* Hill, the *Vatican* Hill, and the *Pincian* Hill, now call'd *Montrinita*.

The 7 Hills.

The Pazzarella.

From this Pillar we went to the *Pazzorella*, or Madhouse, and thence to the *Piazza di Pietra*, to take a view of that row of stately Pillars which adorn'd the *Basilica* of the Emperour *Antoninus*, who had his Palace and *Forum* here.

The Roman College.

Thence passing thro' divers little Streets, we came to the *Roman* College of the Jesuits, a goodly Structure, and conveniently situated. Here we saw the Schools and Gallery of the famous *Athanasius Kerkerius*, full of Curiosities Mathematical, Mechanical and Hydraulical; but it falls, in my opinion, far short of Signior *Settala*'s Gallery in *Milan*, and Monsieur *Servier*'s at *Lyons*. Here is also a fair Library, but kept under Locks and Keys. The Church belonging to this College is design'd to be a noble Structure, but is not above half built, for want of Money.

La Minerva.

Hence we steer'd our course towards *la Minerva*, a Convent of the *Dominicans*, being built upon the place where anciently stood the Temple of *Minerva*, whence also this Church is call'd S. *Maria supra Minervam*. It is full of neat Tombs, as those of *Leo* X. and *Clement* VI. both Popes, of the House of *Medices*, the Work of *Baccio Bandinelli*: The Tombs of the two Cardinals, *Pimentelli* and *Morona*, who had been thirteen times *Legatus à latere*, and the Pope's Legate in the Council of *Trent*. Here is to be seen a Tomb of a certain Lady of the Family of the *Raggi*, a curious piece of Workmanship, the black Marble being laid upon another-colour'd Marble, and both upon a round Pillar. That exquisite Statue of our Saviour, of white Marble, on the Gospel-side of the high Altar, is the Work of *Michael Angelo*.

In the Sacristy of this Church you see the Chapel of *Katherine* of *Siena*, transfer'd hither by Cardinal *Antonio Barberino* from *Siena*; her Body lies interr'd under the Altar of the *Rosary* in this Church.

S. Andrea della Valle.

From *la Minerva* we took a turn to St. *Andrea della Valle*, a goodly Church possess'd by the *Theatins*, and built upon the same place where formerly stood the Theatre of *Pompey*, and in later times the Palace of *Piccolemini*, for which reason perhaps *Pius* II. and *Pius* III. both Popes of this Family, are buried here. The rare Painting in the Cupola was done by the hand of Cavalier *Lanfrenco*, as the three corners under the Cupola, and the Tribune, are by *Domenichini*. To be short, it is one of the neatest Churches of *Rome*, being of the Architecture of *Maderno*. In the Street before this Church liv'd, not long ago, that most ingenious Roman Traveller *Pietro della Valle*, who has oblig'd the World with three entire Volumes in Quarto of his Travels: He had spent considerable Sums of Money in purchasing all sorts of Rarities, which are kept still in his House.

And behind the Church liv'd, at my first coming to *Rome*, another *Virtuoso*, Cavalier *Pozzo*, who shew'd me his curious Pictures, Medals, *Bassi relievi*, Books, and other Rarities, which he had painted, copied and design'd with vast expence.

The Palace of Mattei.

Taking a view *en passant* of the many rare Pictures in the Palace of the Duke of *Matthei*, and passing by S. *Carlo in Catenari*, a neat round Church, we went to the *Cancellaria*, a Palace built of the Stones of the *Coliseo*, by Cardinal *Riani*, where we saw the Gallery of Pictures of Cardinal *Barberin*. This Palace overlooks a Collegiate Church call'd St. *Lorenzo in Damaso*, under the high Altar whereof is entomb'd the Body of St. *Damasus* a Pope, and the rare paintings on the Walls represent the History of St. *Lawrence*.

Lorenzo in Damaso.

The Palace of Farnese.

Near this Church stands the Palace of *Farnese*, belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, having a most noble *Piazza*, with two stately Fountains before it, and no Houses adjoyning to it. It is built in form of a Square, having in the midst of each Square a great Door leading into the Court. This Court is built upon Arches and Pillars, with a fine Gallery round it, leading into the several Apartments. In this Court stands that noted Statue of *Hercules* leaning upon his Club, the Work of *Glyco* an *Athenian*, as the Greek Inscription intimates, but one Leg is modern; it was found in the Baths of *Antoninus Caracalla*.

Opposite to it is another Statue of *Hercules*, which being a Copy only of the former, don't come near it in goodness. The Statues of the two *Flora's*, of the two Gladiators, and divers others, are also excellent pieces.

Upon the great Staircase leading into the Gallery, we saw the most exquisite Statue of a Boy and Dolphin; and at the entrance of the great Hall, the Statues of two *Parthian* Kings; and within it, the rare Statue of *Alexander Farnesi* Duke of *Parma*, trampling upon two prostrate Statues, *viz.* *Heresie* and *Rebellion*, whilst Fame crowns him: They are all four of white Marble, and of one entire Stone. In the same Hall, the excellent Statues of *Charity* and *Plenty*, in cumbent postures, are worth the curious Traveller's Observation, being the fellows of those two Statues which are to be seen at the Tomb of *Paul* III. (the first Raiser of this Family) in St. *Peter*'s Church. And round about the same Hall you see many Statues of Gladiators in different postures, with their Swords upon their guard. In this neat Apartment are painted several of the most memorable Actions of *Paul* III, by *Salviati* and *Frederico Zuccari*; as also the Picture of *Luther* disputing with *Cajetan*; the Picture of the four Latin Fathers of the Church of St. *Jerome*, St. *Ambrose*, St. *Augustin* and St. *Gregory*, are of the hand of *Perdonini*. In another Room we saw a good number of ancient *Statues* of *Philosophers* and *Poets*, as, *Euripides*, *Plato*, *Possidonius*, *Zeno*, *Seneca*, *Diogenes*, *Bacchus*, *Meleager* and others; and in another Apartment, abundance of rare Pictures done by the choicest hands: The rare Gallery of Statues, with the most exquisite painting on the Roof, by *Hanibal Carraccio*, representing the Loves of the Heathen Gods and Goddesses, is look'd upon as one of the best in *Rome*, if not in all *Europe*; the printed Cuts thereof being admirably done, and sold in the Stationers Shops in this City. The admirable Statue of *Apollo*, in a Flint-stone, stands in the same Gallery. The Library here has, besides many curious Books, many exquisite pieces of *miniature*, and rare pieces of *Raphael* and *Titian*, and several Designs of *Raphael* and *Michael Angelo*.

Then

Then mounting up higher, we saw in the Chambers there many rare Pictures, and lesser Statues; and in the long Gallery above, several excellent pieces of *Caraccio*; and in the adjacent Rooms, many ancient Curiosities, as, an ancient piece of Painting, done fifteen hundred years ago, found in *Adrian's* Villa; another ancient Picture representing *Eugene* IV. in his Study, and St. *Bernard* standing by him; a curious Design of *Vassari*, representing a Town in *Flanders* taken by *Alexander Farnesi*; a true Picture of *Michael Angelo*; a *Venus* of *Michael Angelo*; a small old Picture of our Lady and St. *John Baptist*, in Mosaick Work; a Crucifix of Ivory, made by *Michael Angelo*; a Model of a Bridge thrown over the *Scheld*, when *Alexander Farnesi* took *Antwerp*; with many other Curiosities, too many to be inserted here.

The famous Bull. In a little back Court you see the famous *Toro*, a Statue of a large Bull, to whose Horns a Rope being tied at one end, and at the other end of it a Woman's Hair, two strong Fellows are endeavouring to push the Bull and Woman from a Promontory into the Sea: This Bull, the two Fellows, the Woman, a little Boy, and a Dog, are all cut out of one Marble Stone.

Over against the Palace of *Farnesi* stands the House of Signior *Pighini*, where we saw two Statues, the one of *Venus*, the other of *Adonis*, both very ancient ones, for which the Earl of *Arundel*, late Lord Marshal of *England*, offer'd twelve thousand crowns, but could not have 'em. In the Palace of Cardinal *Spada* we also had sight of many rare Pictures.

The Hospital of the Trinity. Thence passing *Ponte Sisto*, we went to the Hospital of the Trinity, where Pilgrims are treated handsomly for three days.

Returning thence, we took a view of St. *Girolamo della Charita*, a Church and House of Priests (most Gentlemen) living in Community at their own expence. The first Founder of this Society was *Philip Neri*, who liv'd thirty years among them. Upon the high Altar of the Church is a rare Picture of St. *Jerome*.

The English College. Near it stands the *English* College, formerly an *English* Hospital, built by *English* Merchants. *Alan*, the last *English* Cardinal, lies interr'd in this Church.

From hence we took a turn to the *Chiesa Nuova*, belonging to the Priests of the Oratory, one of the neatest Churches in *Rome*, it being most richly gilt, and the Roof painted by *Pietro di Cortona*. St. *Philip Neri's* Chapel (the Instituter of this Society) is very neat, and placed on the Gospel-side of the high Altar, where you see his true Picture, done by *Guido Reni*; and in a lower Chapel under this Altar, you see his Body laid in an Iron Chest. On the other side of the high Altar, within the Rails, lies entomb'd the Body of *Cæsar Baronius*, once a Priest of this House, and afterwards made Cardinal (not without reluctancy) by Pope *Clement* III, as a just Reward for his Services, in having maintain'd the cause of the Church alone against the whole Gang of Centuriators. In the House of these Priests is also to be seen one of the best Libraries of *Rome*; and in their Oratory is every *Sunday* and *Holiday*, in Winter, an excellent sett of Musick, at night.

Cardinal Baronius.

La Pace. Afterwards we took a turn in the Church *de la Pace*, to view the excellent *Pictures* and *Statues*, done by some of the best hands, as *Peruzzi* of *Siena*, *Veseria*, *Lavinia*, a Lady of *Bologna*, *Fontana*, *Genteleschi*, Cavalier *Gioseppe*, *Rossi*, and *Raphael Urbin* himself, who painted the *Prophets* and *Sybils* in the Chapel of *Augustino Chigi*. The Statues of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* are the Works of *Michael Angelo*.

Pasquin. From hence passing thro' the *Stationers Street*, this brought us to the very center of *Rome*, *viz.* the *Piazzo di Pasquino*, owing its Name to *Pasquin*, where we saw an old broken Statue, of some excellent hand, resembling the above-mention'd Statue of *Hercules* in the *Belvedere*. This Statue standing at the meeting of three or four Streets, and consequently convenient for an escape, they fix their jeering Libels on this Statue, and thus fasten them upon poor *Pasquin*, call'd thence *Pasquinades*, which are answer'd by *Marforius*, another Statue near the Capitol.

S. Pantaleon. Going forward, we came to the Church of St. *Pantaleon*, belonging to the Fathers of the *Scholæ piæ*; it was four hundred years ago a Collegiate Church, possess'd by *English* Priests, as appears by an Inscription upon one of the Bells.

Piazza Navona. Thence we took a turn into the *Piazza Navona*, so call'd by corruption instead of *Piazza d'Agona*, this having anciently been a *Circus* for sports, and known by the name of *Circus Agonalis*, in the center whereof stood a great *Egyptian* Pyramid, adorn'd with Hieroglyphicks; in lieu whereof Pope *Innocent* X. order'd another such Pillar to be set up here, with a fine Fountain issuing forth at the foot of it, with four noble white Marble Statues representing the four parts of the World. In this *Piazza* stands the new Church of St. *Agnes*, built at the charge of Prince *Pamphilio*, whose Palace is near it. In this *Piazza* is also the Palace of the Duke of *Braccino*, of the House of *Orsini*, and that of the Family of *Torres*. S. Agnes's Church

Neither ought the *Spanish* Church of St. *Jacomes* be pass'd by unmention'd, the Picture especially of St. *Diego*, by *Hannibal Caraccio*, being worth any Traveller's observation.

Just over against the Back-door of this Church you see a goodly College for publick Lectures, call'd *Sapienza*, founded by *Eugene* IV, and enlarg'd with handsom Schools and a neat Church by *Urban* VIII, and a goodly Library by *Alexander* VII. In my time Dr. *Hart* and Dr. *Gibbs*, two Englishmen, were Readers there.

From hence going thro' the *Piazza Madama*, by the Great Duke's Palace, we enter'd the Church of St. *Lewis*, belonging to the *French*. Upon one of the pillars on the left hand you see the Picture of that great person Cardinal *Dessat*, a *Frenchman*; and in the middle of the Church lies interr'd an *English* Priest nam'd *Moor*, of the Family of the great Sir *Thomas Moor*, and Heir of that Family, notwithstanding which he embrac'd a religious life, leaving the Estate to his younger Brother. It was he who oblig'd the publick with the Life of Sir *Thomas Moor* in English, and retiring at last to *Rome*, there ended his days. There is also an Hospital belonging to this Church. S. Lewis.

The Tomb of Angelus.

We afterwards took a turn in the Palace of *Justiniani*, where we saw every Room in the House so much clog'd with Statues, some entire, some broken, that one would perswade ones self that the Pagan Gods, after their banishment out of the *Pantheon*, were come hither for shelter; but the true reason is, that the old Prince *Justiniani* dying without Heirs male, bequeath'd this Estate to a certain person, under condition, that not one Statue should be alienated, upon pain of forfeiting the whole. There are however, besides these, Pictures not a few, rare pieces of *Titian* and others of the best Masters of *Europe*, shewn in the Gallery above; as, that most exquisite Picture of St. *John* the Evangelist, by *Raphael Urbin*; and in another Room, that of our Lady and St. *Joseph*, a rare Copy of that so famous Picture in the Cloyster of the *Annunciata* in *Florence*, by the hand of *Andrea del Sarta*. The Palace of Justinian.

From hence passing by the stately Ruins of the Baths of *Alexander Severus*, we came to the Church of *S. Eustachio*, where, by a certain Inscription on a stone in the Porch, it appear'd, that *Alexander* of *Parma* was baptiz'd here with his Brother, being Twins. This Church stands in the same place where *S. Eustachius*, with his Wife *Theopista*, and his two Sons *Agapitus* and *Theopistus*, were put into a brazen Bull by *Trajan*, whom *Eustachius* had serv'd twice as General. S. Eustachio.

Then we took a view of the *Rotunda*, (the *Pantheon* of the Ancients) a bolder piece of Architecture than is perhaps to be met with in any other part. *Sebastian Serlius* a very experienc'd person in Architecture, alledging this as the only Model of accomplish'd Architecture; for as all other Vaulted Fabricks are strengthned by being shut up close at the top in the center thereof, this great massive Vault has a hole there of above three yards diameter, having no Windows, or any other light, but what is let in at the top: it is a hundred and forty foot high, and as many broad, without any pillars to support it: it was formerly cover'd with Tiles of Brass, but now cover'd with flat Stones. All the Pillars belonging to this Church stand in the Porch, where there are no less than thirteen, each fifty three foot high, and six in diameter, all of speckled Marble, the *Capitelli* of these Pillars being the best in *Rome*, of the *Corinthian* Order. Here is to be seen the Tomb of that famous Painter *Raphael Urbin*, with the following Inscription: The Rotunda or Pantheon.

Ille hic est Raphael, *timuit quo sospite vinci.*
Rerum magna parens, & moriente mori.

It was in this Temple the Statue of *Minerva* (so famous in History) made by *Phidias* stood, as also that of *Venus*, in whose Ear hung that incomparable Pearl of *Cleopatra*, which she would have dissolv'd in Vinegar. The Inscription in the Architrave of the Porch tells you, that this Temple was built by *Agrippa*, who had been thrice Consul.

Thence passing thro' the *Campo Marzo*, we saw *en passant* the Church of St. *Lorenzo* in *Lucina*, the greatest Parish Church in *Rome*, and so went forward to the Palace of *Borgheſi*, one of the noblest in the whole City. S. Lorenzo in Lucina. The Palace of Borgheſi

It has a fair prospect of three stories, of a prodigious length, the Gallery which leads into the several Apartments being supported by Arches and Pillars round the Court.

Court. On that side which faces the Piazza are ten or twelve large Rooms, where we took notice of very rich Hangings, and most curious Paintings over them; as, the visit of the Queen of *Saba* to *Solomon*, the Rape of the *Sabins*, &c. a fine Ebony Cabinet, inlaid with Gold and precious Stones, valued at sixty thousand crowns; an exquisite Picture of *Hercules* and *Anteus*; the true Picture of *Raphael*; the Last Supper, by *Titian*. In the little black Gallery of Pictures we were shewn, among others, the Pictures of *Martin Luther*, *Nicholas Machiavel*, and *Cæsar Borgia*; and in the low cool Gallery, many Statues and Pictures, of the Family of the *Borgheſi*: That of *Paul* V, as also the Assumption of our Lady, both in Mosaick Work, are so nicely done, that they can scarce be discerned from painting. Here is also a Terrass, and Garden with Fountains and Waterworks, at the very top of the House. In the aforesaid Gallery is also to be seen the true Picture of *Titian*, and that excellent Crucifix made by *Michael Angelo*, with such an exquisite Art, that some have given it out, he drew it after a crucified Man.

The Tomb of Augustus.

We saw afterwards the *Mausoleum* or Tomb of *Augustus Cæsar*, near St. *Rock*'s Church; it was anciently a noble round Fabrick of white Marble, four stories high, surrounded with Pillars, each story growing lesser and lesser, with green Trees about each story; at the top of all (which was two hundred and fifty cubits high) stood the Statue in Brass of *Augustus*; it is altogether defac'd, there remaining something of its greatness, but scarce any thing of its beauty.

Going from hence, we took a transitory view of the Church of St. *Anthony* of *Padua*, belonging to the *Portugueſe*; and of the Tomb of that famous Canonist and Casuist *Martin Aspelenita*, with his Statue in *busto* over it, who died at *Rome*, having follow'd his Friend *Caranza*, to defend his Cause.

St. Austin's Church.

Not far from this Church, is the Church and Convent of the *Austin* Friers; in the first whereof is to be seen the Tomb of St. *Monica*, Mother of St. *Austin*, and of *Onufrius Panvinus*, a learned Antiquary and Hebrecian of this Convent, where is kept the Library call'd *Bibliotheca Angelica*, the Gift of *Angelus Rocca*, under condition, that it should be open always in the Mornings.

Bibliotheca Angelica.

The German College.

Hard by it stands the Church of St. *Apollinaris*, and the *German* College, the constant meeting-place of the best Singers of *Rome*.

The Palace & Pumps.

Over against it stands the Palace of the Duke of *Altemps*, in the Hall whereof the Triumph of *Bacchus* in *basso relievo* is cut most curiously in Marble, and a certain Town cut in Wood, most exquisitely done, being a very ancient piece. The Picture here of the B. Lady, with her Son in her Arms, done by *Raphael*, is valued at five thousand Pistols; and the Library has divers excellent Manuscripts, and many other good Books. The Chapel belonging to this Palace is very noble, and the Ornaments for the Church-service so rich, that they have cost the Duke above an hundred thousand crowns. The Tomb of Pope St. *Anacles* is made the Altar, and his Head enchas'd in Silver in the Sacristy, set thick with precious Stones.

From hence we went to a neat Church belonging to the *Florentines*, call'd St. *John Florentins*, where I took notice, in one of the Chapels, of the Picture of our Saviour's Resurrection, a rare piece done by *Lanfranc*; whence I return'd to the Bridge of St. *Angelo*, where I had begun to take the Tour about *Rome*, whereof I have given a short account to the Reader, referring my self, for the rest, (which I was forc'd to pass by for method sake) to the Books and Cutts publish'd of the Palaces, Fountains, Statues, and other Antiquities of *Rome*, as much as are remaining of them, it being beyond all question that the greatest part of them have scarce any thing left of them now, except their bare Names; as, the *Cymbourn Marii*, the *Gregostasis*, the *Curia Hostilia*, the golden House of *Nero*, the Theatre of *Pompey*, the Theatre of *Statilius Taurus*, the *Septizonium Severi*, *Mecenas*'s Tower, the *Hippodromus*, the House of *Gordianus*, the *Circus Flaminius*, the *Circus Maximus*, the *Atrium Libertatis*, *Scipio*'s House, the Triumphal Arch of *Augustus Cæsar*, of *Domitian*, &c.

It will now be time to take my leave of *Rome*, which I will do so soon as I have given you a touch concerning the Devotion, Musick, Ceremonies, Shows, Government, and the Inhabitants of it.

Devotion in Rome.

As for the Devotion here, the same is sufficiently discernable in those places where the *Quarante Hore* and Stations are kept, which going all the Year round from one place to another, you shall see the People flock early in the Morning thither, in such vast numbers, that you need not be at any great pains to enquire where the Station is.

Musick.

As for their Musick, it is the best in the World, and of the best kind, *viz.* in Voices, especially in the Pope's Chapel, where they sing without any Organ or other Instrument. The Musick of the *Chiesa Nova* in the Church of St. *Apollinaris*, upon *Cecilia*'s Day in the Church dedicated to that Saint, in the Oratory of St. *Marcello* every *Friday* in *Lent*, at the *Jesuits*, during the *Quarante Hore* in *Shrove-tide*, besides in other Churches upon their Patrons Days, are so delightful to the Ear, that a man who but once feasts his Ears with it, thinks himself well paid for his Journey to *Rome*, were it only upon the account of their Musick.

The Ceremonies.

The Ceremonies I took notice of during my several Voyages were, the Ceremony of the Pope's opening the *Porta Sancta* of St. *Peter*'s Church in the Jubilee Year; the Ceremonies of the Pope's Chapel when he assists there in person, as on *Candlemas-day*, *Palm Sunday*, *Maundy Thursday*, &c. the Pope's washing of thirteen Pilgrims Feet; his singing Mass publickly in St. *Peter*'s Church on St. *Peter*'s Day, and other Festivals: The Ceremony of canonizing Saints, of creating Cardinals, and presenting them with the Caps in publick Consistory: The Ceremony of singing Mass in *Greek*, according to the *Greek* Rites, in the Church of the *Greek* Seminary, upon the Feast of *Epiphany* and St. *Athanasius*'s Day; the Ceremony of baptizing of *Jews*, with divers others; but in all my five Voyages I had the good fortune to miss the Ceremony of a *Sede Vacante*.

Shows Sacred

The Shows I took notice of, both sacred and prophane, were, the Whipping Processions in the Holy Week; the great Procession from St. *Marcello*'s Oratory to St. *Peter*'s Church, upon *Maundy Thursday*, in the holy Year; the Procession of the *Zitelle*, upon our Ladies Day in *Lent*; the Procession of the Priests of the Oratory, upon *Shrove-Tuesday*, to the seven Churches, with five or six thousand persons following them, every one of whom they treat with two hard Eggs a piece, and a slice of *Salsigie*, with Bread and Wine. The Cavalcades of the Pope and Cardinals; the *Spanish* Cavalcade upon St. *Peter*'s Eve, when the *Spanish* Ambassador presents the Gennet and Purse of Gold, &c.

Prophane

Among the prophane Shows I saw the solemn Entries and Cavalcades to Court of Ambassadors, wherein they strive to outvie one another, to honour their respective Masters; their Reception in a publick Consistory, and their Audience of Leave; their most exquisite Opera's, with the stupendious changes of Scenes and Machines, as swelling Rivers, overflowing Lakes, Houses falling on a sudden, whole Towns starting out on a sudden upon the Stage, and such-like; not to mention the excessive Carnival-pomps exhibited by persons of Quality, with vast charge and incredible magnificence.

The Government of the City.

The Government of *Rome* must be consider'd under a double qualification, *viz.* that of the City, and that of the Church; the Government of the City is manag'd by a Governour (a Prelate) appointed by the Pope, unto whom he gives an account weekly of all remarkable Occurrences there. Besides his own Guards, he has a *Barigello*, or Captain of the *Sbirri* or Serjeants, who watch the motions and behaviour of all the Inhabitants, and perform Justice without delay; for the price of every thing being fix'd, and affix'd in all Inns, Taverns, and other publick places, if you are deceiv'd it is your own fault, and you may soon have Redress. I have seen, the last Jubilee Year, the *Sbirri*'s disguis'd in Pilgrims Habits, to mix with the other Pilgrims, to see in what manner Strangers were us'd by their Hosts, and otherwise, and if they found any faulty, they made quick work to carry them to Prison; a thing so common in *Rome*, that there needs not much to give cause for an Imprisonment, as a Knife in a man's Pocket, a dark Lantern, a Sword without License, &c. but a Pocket-pistol is enough to send a Man to the Gallies, besides a good Strapado into the bargain; however, Strangers are not always used with the same severity.

Of the Church.

The Government of the Church is administred partly by the Pope in person, partly in the several Congregations; partly by his Vicar-General, a Cardinal, who has for his Assistant a Vicegerent, who is always a Bishop. Scarce a week passes but a Congregation is held about Church-affairs, unto which are admitted not only the Cardinals, but sometimes also the Bishops and Doctors. Every three weeks a Consistory is held in the presence of the Pope, where the Cardinals consult about all necessary affairs of the Church.

Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants of *Rome* are not now the tenth part in number in comparison of what they were when this City was at its full growth, when it was computed to have no less than three or four millions of People: And it is further observable, that most of the modern Inhabitants are descended from other parts of *Italy* or *Europe*, having been invited thither by the hopes of Preferments or other business. The Nobility it self (except some ancient Fami-

lies

lies of the *Ursini*, *Colonna*, *Favelli*, *Frangepani*, and a few others) trace their original from foreign parts, being descended from such Families of *Popes*, *Princes* and *Cardinals* as were Foreigners before their promotion.

The Author leaves *Rome*.

Having thus satiated my Desires with an entire view of *Rome*, I pursued my Journey thence to *Naples*, and going out of the Gates of St. *John Lateran*, travel'd to *Marino*, a small but neat Town, belonging to Cardinal *Colonna*;

Marino.

thence to *Velletri*, an Episcopal Town, famous in ancient time for the Birth of the Ancestors of *Augustus Cæsar*; Cardinal *Ginetti* has a fine Palace here, and the Statue in Brass of *Urban* VIII. is worth a curious Traveller's observation.

Velletri.

Hence taking our way thro' *Tre Taberne*, where St. *Paul* was met at his first coming to *Rome* by the *Christians* of *Rome* *, and *Peperno*, the Birth-place of *Camilla* the *Amazon*, and *Fossa Nuova*, we came to *Tracina*, (the ancient *Anxur*) formerly the capital City of the *Volscians*, but having scarce any thing remaining now of its ancient splendour, except the Ruins of the Haven adorn'd by *Antonius Pius*, and of an old Temple. It is an Episcopal Town.

Tre Taberne.

* See *Acts* c. 28.

Fossa nuova.

Near this place stood in ancient times the Town of *Anxur*, the Inhabitants whereof, being addicted to the *Pythagorean* Opinion, were devour'd by Serpents, because no body would kill them; as at another time it was ruin'd by Silence, no body daring to speak of the Enemies approach, because they had often been alarm'd with false Reports of that nature, which had produced a severe Edict from their Magistrates not to speak of any such thing.

Anxur.

From *Terracina* passing thro' a Wood of Bay-trees, and an open Gate call'd *Portello*, (the Inlet into the Kingdom of *Naples*) we came, towards Supper-time, to *Fundi*, so call'd from its being built in a low flat ground. It is a very ancient place, tho' it has got a new Face since it was burnt about a hundred and thirty years ago by *Caradin Barbarossa*, who from a Pyrate became to be Admiral to *Solyman*, and afterwards King of *Algiers*, after having perswaded the Inhabitants to shake off the *Spanish* Yoke. This *Caradin* being with his Squadron upon the Mediterranean Sea, and having receiv'd intelligence, that *Julia Gonsaga*, the Widow of *Vespasian Colonna*, (one of the handsom'st Women in the World) liv'd at *Fundi*, he landed some of his Men in the night-time, in hopes of getting this precious Booty into his hands, whom he intended to make a Present of to his Master *Solyman*; but she having escap'd in her Smock, the Pyrate pour'd out his Revenge upon the place, which he laid in ashes, and carried most of the Inhabitants into Slavery.

Fundi.

The *Via Appia.*

From *Fundi* we travel'd on towards *Mola* upon the *Via Appia*, so call'd from *Appius* its Founder, a noble *Roman*, this Cawsey being one of the most convincing Proofs of the ancient *Roman* greatness, for it reach'd from *Rome* to *Brundusium* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, five whole days Journey, being of that breadth, that two Waggons could meet one another with ease, and pav'd all with black Flint-stones, each of which was of that bigness, that two Men could scarce carry one of them, and laid so close together, that they seem'd to be but one entire piece, and have held so these eighteen hundred years, and by the frequent passage of Horses and Mules it is become so bright now, that in a Sunshiny day it shines like Silver at two miles distance. Coming to *Mola*, (the ancient *Formiæ*) I went to take a view of the Tomb of *Cicero*, in a Garden not far thence. I am the rather induc'd to believe this, because it is beyond all question that *Cicero* had a Country Seat in *Formiis*, and that he was going thither in a Litter, when he was overtaken by the way by the Executioners sent by the *Triumviri*, and beheaded *, tho' there is no Inscription upon this Tomb.

* See *Valer. Max.* l. 1. c. 4.

Whilst some of our Company were providing for our Dinner at *Mola*, I went with the rest in a Boat to *Gaeta*, where we arriv'd in a little less than half an hour, and saw the Skeleton of *Charles Bourbon*, Constable of *France*, who being disgusted in his Native Country, serv'd under the Emperour *Charles* V. as one of his Generals, and was at last made Governour of *Milan*; but as he was scaling the Walls of *Rome*, in order to plunder it, he was kill'd by a Musquet Ball, and his Body carried afterwards to *Gaeta*, where you see it standing upright, with his Cloaths, Boots and Spurs on, in a long Box, with this *Spanish* Epitaph upon it:

Gaeta.

Bourbon's Body.

Francia mi dio la leche,
Espagnalos y Ventura,
Roma mi dio la muerte,
Gaeta la Sepoltura.

In English thus:

France *gave me Milk*,
Spain *great Employments gave*,
Rome *gave me Death*,
And here Cæt's *a Grave.*

This Castle, which stands upon a Promontory, overlooks the Town and thirty miles into the Sea; and at one end of the Town, towards the Land-side (the Town being a *Peninsula*) you see a cloven Rock, which (they say) was clo en at our Saviour's death; two long Stairs lead you down into the open gash betwixt these two Mountains. On the very Pinacle of this Promontory is a most ancient Monument of a certain *Roman* named *Manutius Plancus*, with a very old Latin Inscription upon it; but being tir'd, I was unwilling to go up so high to see the said Monument.

The cloven Rock.

This Town was built by *Æneas*, in memory of his Nurse *Caieta*, and was the Birth-place of the famous Cardinal *Caetanus*.

After our return to *Mola*, having taken a view of the Grotto of *Cicero*, we set forward again, and in three hours riding came to the Ferry of *Carigliano*, near which, to our no small surprize, we saw the fair Ruins of an ancient Amphitheatre in an open Field, with the Remnants of an Aquæduct, but upon enquiry found that in this Field had stood the ancient City of *Minturna*, but so ruin'd since, that not one Stone thereof remains in the place where it stood formerly, having been forc'd to undergo the same fate with divers other Cities of *Italy*, as *Luna*, *Populonia*, *Coma*, *Baiæ*, &c. which were turn'd into Corn-fields.

The Ferry of *Carigliano.*

Minturna.

No sooner were we pass'd the River in the Ferry-boat, but we entred the Marshes (call'd the Fens of *Minturna*) where *C. Marius* conceal'd himself, and by his stern Look and Voice frightned the Soldier that was going to kill him, telling him, *Dareſt thou attempt to kill* Marius? and afterward escap'd into *Africa*.

As we were riding along the Meadows, we kept in sight of the Mountain of *Cære*, (the old *Mons Massicus*) noted for its excellent Wines, as well as the adjacent Country, known by the name of *Ager Falernus*, fam'd among the Poets for the most delicious *Vinum Falernum*. At night we lodg'd at St. *Agatha*'s, and the next morning entred into *Campania Felix*, so surnam'd from its wholsom Air and vast plenty of Corn and Wine, whence it has got the name of *Certamen Cereus & Bacchi*, i. e. *the Strife of* Ceres *and* Bacchus, among the Ancients. It was this Country which broke *Hannibal*'s Army.

About Noon we came to *Capua*, a Town two miles distant from the place where stood the famous old City of *Capua*, which stood in competition with *Rome* it self, and demanded, that one of the annual Consuls should reside always there; but of this City scarce any thing remains now, that which now bears its Name having nothing to boast of but a pretty good Castle and River, and an Archbishop's Seat.

Capua.

From hence we pass'd thro' *Aversa*, once a considerable place, most pleasantly seated, before it was ruin'd by *Charles* I. King of *Naples*. In this place it was that *Joan* Queen of *Naples* strangled her Husband *Andreasso*, and was her self soon after serv'd so too in the same place.

Aversa.

From hence we had but eight miles to *Naples*, call'd anciently *Parthenope* from one of the *Syrens*, and since call'd *Neapolis*, i. e. *New City*, because the Inhabitants of *Cuma* having destroy'd *Parthenope*, were afflicted with the Plague, till they rebuilt it, in the Year of the World 1449.

The City of *Naples* is now the Capital of a great Kingdom of the same name, which formerly belong'd to the Emperour, but being conquer'd by the *Saracens*, and afterwards recover'd by Pope *John* X, it since that time acknowledg'd the See of *Rome*, the first that was invested by Pope *Innocent* II. being *Roger* II. a *Norman*, 1130. afterwards the *French* and *Spaniards* have struggled frequently with various Fortune for this Kingdom, till at last it remaineth under the Jurisdiction of the *Spaniards*, who hold it from the Pope, and as an acknowledgment, pay every Year a Purse of Gold and a Gennet. This Kingdom is of vast consequence to *Spain*, for its convenient correspondence with *Sicily*, for the strengthning of the *Spanish* Interest in the Court of *Rome* and all *Italy*, and a yearly Tribute of Four millions of Crowns. This Kingdom being no less than 1500 miles in compass, and 450 broad, it has 20 Archbishops Seats, 125 Bishops Seats, 1500 Boroughs, two millions of Souls, ten Principalities, twenty three Dutchies, thirty Marquisates, fifty four Earldoms, and a thousand Baronies, four hundred whereof are ancient; it can raise a hundred and fifty thousand Foot, and

Naples.

The King-dom of the Emperour.

a hun-

a hundred thousand Horse upon occasion, but its Naval Strength consists only in twenty Gallies. As for the Town it self, as it bears the third rank among the Cities of *Italy* for its bigness, so it may challenge the first for strength and neatness, whence she has got the Sirname of *The Gentile*; for having *Campania* on the Land-side, and the Mediterranean Sea on the other, it enjoys the conveniency of whatever Sea and Land can afford to a place; their Air being accounted so wholsom here, that most of the *Romans* of note had their Seats either in or near it. Its Structures are generally very good, the Streets neatly pav'd, the Palaces well stor'd with Nobility, and the Markets furnish'd with excellent Provisions; the chief Street especially, call'd *Strada di Toleda*, is flank'd with fine Palaces and goodly Houses, and pav'd with Free-stone: Their Houses are generally flat on the top, for the conveniency of taking the cool Evening Air there: The chief Palaces were, that of the Viceroy, that of *Gravina*, *Caraffa*, *Ursino*, *Sulmone*, *Toledo*, &c. The publick places of assembly for the Nobility, according to their respective ranks, are open Walks rail'd in with high Iron Rails.

The City of Naples.

The *Mole* extends a quarter of a mile into the Sea, and has at the end a high Lantern, serving for a Guide to the Ships at Sea, and a delicious Fountain of fresh Water.

The Mole.

The Churches of *Naples* are not inferiour to any in *Italy*; the *Dome*, tho' very old fashion'd, yet has a fine modern Chapel, beautified with brazen Statues and rich Painting: The *Cupola* is painted by *Domenichino*. In the before-mention'd Chapel you see the Tomb of St. *Januarius* Bishop of *Benevento*, whose Blood being kept congeal'd in a Glass, turns liquid as soon as 'tis plac'd near the Head.

In Churches.

On the left hand of this Chapel, without, is interr'd the Body of Pope *Innocent* IV. the Verses upon his Tomb tell you, that he was the first who order'd the red Hats to be worn by the Cardinals. In the Sacristy are kept many Relicks enchas'd in Gold and Silver, and other precious things.

The near Church of the *Annunciata* has a well-gilt and painted Roof and Cupola, and in it they shew you two Infants of *Bethlehem*, one being wounded in the Head, the other in the Body. The adjoyning Hospital maintains two thousand sick and aged persons, besides eight hundred Orphans.

The Annunciata.

Near the Hospital is St. *Peter's* Church, and before it the Altar upon which (according to the Inscription) St. *Peter* said Mass at his first coming to *Naples*.

St. Peter's.

St. *Paul's* Church belongs to the *Theatins*, and when dress'd in its Holiday Hangings, is one of the neatest Churches in all *Italy*, the Roof being very richly gilt and curiously painted.

St. Paul's.

The Tabernacle of the high Altar, and the Tomb of *Beato Caetano*, a holy man of this Order, are both very noble; and the Ornaments in the Sacristy are not inferiour to any Church of *Italy*.

The Jesuits Church here is the finest belonging to that Order in *Italy*, only it is something too broad in proportion of its length; it has both curious Paintings, and Sculptures in Marble; the Altar, tho' not above half finish'd, promises Wonders; and in the Sacristy are to be seen the richest Ornaments and finest Silver Candlesticks that ever I beheld.

The Jesuits Church.

The Church of the *Franciscans*, call'd S. *Maria Nova*, has a gilt Roof, very neat Chapels, and goodly Tombs, among which that of *Lotrecke*, who commanded the *French* Forces in *Naples*, excels the rest.

St. Maria Nova.

The *Dominicans* Church is exceeding handsom, if you see it especially, as I did, in its best Attire, hung with embroider'd Hangings. Here you see the Crucifix which is said to have spoken to St. *Thomas* of *Aquin*, the Doctor of this Order and Country, *Bene de me scripsisti Thoma*. In this Sacristy are preserv'd, in divers Coffins, (cover'd some with white, some with black Velvet) the Bodies of *Alphonso* I. King of *Naples* and *Arragon*; of the unfortunate Queen *Joan*; of an Emperour of *Constantinople*; of *Durazzo*; the Marquess *del Vesto*, with divers, till their Tombs can be made.

The Dominicans Church.

The Church of the *Olivetan* Fathers is a noble Structure, containing the Body of that great Antiquary *Alexander ab Alexandro*. Here also lies interr'd the Body of the brave Marquess *de Piscara*, sirnam'd the *Thunderbolt of War*; the words upon his Tomb deserve to be remember'd in foreign Countries:

The Church of the Olivetans.

Quis jacet hic gelido sub marmore? Maximus ille
Piscator, belli gloria, pacis honos.
Nunquid & hic pisces capit? Non, Ergo quid? Urbes,
Magnanimus reges, oppida, Regna, Duces.
Hic quibus hæc capit Piscator, retibus? Alto
Consilio, intrepido Corde, alacrique manu?
Qui tantum rapuere Ducem? Duo Numina, mors, mors;
Uterque quidnam compulit? Invidia.
Nil nocuere ipsi, vivit nam fama superstes,
Quæ Martem, & mortem vincit, & invidiam.

The Church of St. *John Carbonare* is remarkable chiefly for the noble Tomb of King *Robert*, as the Church of the Nunnery at the foot of the Hill as you go up to the *Carthusians*, is for the most curious Tabernacle upon the Altar, of precious polish'd Stones; it exceeds all others of that kind for richness, except that of *Florence* before mention'd.

Then going up the winding *Hill* to the *Carthusians* Church and Monastery, call'd St. *Martins*, we saw the most stately Fabrick in *Europe* for a Convent, both in prospect of its building and situation, upon a high *Hill*, under the Castle of St. *Elmo*. The whole Quadrangle or Cloyster of this Convent is of most excellent white Marble, pav'd with Marble, and adorn'd round about with a Balluster and white Marble Pillars. From an open Gallery you have here the best prospect in *Europe*, for you have under you the whole City of *Naples*, with its three Castles, the Harbour, Mole, Arsenal and Ships, the most delightful Country round the City, the Mount *Vesuvius*, *Pausilippus*, the Promontories of *Misenum* and *Minerva*, the Isle of *Capreæ*, &c. In the Apartment of the Father *Visitor* we saw many good Rooms. Going from hence to the Church, we found it even to exceed the Cloyster it self, being all of white Marble, and most richly gilt and painted, the Pavement being all of red and white Marble. The Chapels, Pictures, and Pillars are suitable to the rest, and the Sacristy is beyond whatever I saw before; the great Cupboards being of such exquisite Mosaick Wood-work inlaid into Pictures, that it comes very near to that of the *Dominicans* in *Bologna*. Here is a large Silver Crucifix, which (they say) has been making fifteen years; and the *Remonstrance* great Candlesticks and Flowerpots of Silver are most excellent Workmanship.

The Carthusian Monastery.

Then we took a view of the three Castles of *Naples*; that of St. *Elmo*, just by the *Carthusians*, was built by *Charles* V. rather to bridle *Naples* than to defend it self against an Enemy: The Castle *Vovo* acknowledges *William* III. of *Normandy* for its Founder, being built upon a Rock in the Sea, and joyn'd to the Continent by an high Cawsey; it is call'd Castle *Vovo* from its oval figure: The Castle *Nuovo* was built by *Charles* of *Anjou*, design'd King of *Naples*, near the Mole, level with the Town and Sea. These three Castles are guarded by a Garison of natural *Spaniards*.

The Castles.

Hence we took a view of the Markets, especially those of Fruit, which are excellently well furnish'd out of *Campania*, and were it not for the heavy Taxes impos'd by the *Spaniards* upon the *Neapolitans*, *Naples* might perhaps, for Riches and Plenty, compare with any other place in *Europe*; this the *Neapolitans* are so sensible of, that they have sometimes courted even the least opportunity of shaking off the *Spanish* Yoke; as is evident from the Revolt of *Mazanello*, whose true Name being *Thomas Angelus Maja*, a poor Fisherman without Shoe or Stocking, took the *Neapolitans* in a desperate humour, that they obey'd him for ten days no otherwise than if he had been a most absolute Prince.

The Markets.

In *Naples* are two Academies of Wits, one call'd the *Ardenti*, the other the *Otiosi*. Among the learned Men of this Town were, *Statius*, *Sannazarius*, *Alexander ab Alexandro*, and *John Baptist Marini*. *Naples* has also furnish'd the Church with no less than eighteen Popes.

The Academy of Wits.

Having thus taken a full view of the City of *Naples*, we took Guide to see also the burning Mountain of *Vesuvius*, about seven miles from the City. Our Guide being well acquainted with the History of this Mountain, told us, that it had made twenty Eruptions since the beginning of the World, among which that 1631. being the most dreadful, in which he also had had his share, he gave us an exact account thereof, shewing us as we pass'd along the places where, before that time, many noble Vineyards and Corn-fields, many very delightful Villa's and whole Villages had stood, which were altogether, with about two thousand Souls, ruin'd by the Stones thrown out by *Vesuvius*, of which he shew'd us some of a vast bulk; as also a Chanel, where a River of green matter mingled

Mount Vesuvius.

with Brimstone, Allum and Salt-petre, had ran down from the Hill. Of the Eruption it self he gave us the following account; The Hill, after having smoak'd vehemently for some time, burst out into Flames, and cast out such a prodigious quantity of Ashes, that had the Wind stood towards *Naples*, it would have been buried in the Ashes; then it began to make such a thundring noise, as if Heaven and Earth were to be mix'd together, after which follow'd such a prodigious number of vast Stones thrown out by the Mountain, and a River of sulphurous matter running from the top of the Mountain for three miles into the Sea. All which he confirm'd by a certain Inscription upon a fair Marble Stone erected for that purpose not far thence. But being desirous to see the Mountain it self, we made all the haste we could: We came no sooner to the foot of the Hill, but alighting from our Horses, we crawl'd up that steep Hill for a mile together to the middle of the Leg in Ashes; being at last got to the top of it, we peep'd, not without some fear, into the great Concavity from the brink of it, which we found to be like a vast Kettle, much larger than those near *Distington* in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, made by Earthquakes, the Orifice of this being near two miles wide, and near as deep, in the bottom whereof we saw arising a new little Hill out of the hollow of the old one, emitting constantly a thick Smoak, as if in its turn it threatned another Eruption.

See *Baker's Chron.*

Having satisfied our Eyes with the sight of this Chimney of *Hell*, we came much faster down than we went up. He that desires a more ample account of the burning of *Vesuvius*, may consult a Book entitul'd, *De Vesuviano incendio*, written by *Julius Cæsar Recupitus*.

Our Journey to *Puzzuolo*.

We return'd thence to *Naples*, and having taken another Guide, went the next morning to *Bajæ* and *Puzzuoli*. In our way we pass'd by the Castle *Vovo* to *Margelina*, where we saw the Tomb of *Sannazarius* the Poet, in the Church of St. *Maria del Porto*, where once stood the House of the said *Sannazarius*, which he bequeath'd to be turn'd into a Church. The Tomb is adorn'd with Marble Figures, and an Epitaph made by Cardinal *Bembo*:

Sannazarius his Tomb.

Da sacro Cineri flores, hic ille Maroni
Sincerus Musæ proximus, ut tumulo.

Where it is to be observ'd that he changes his true Name, which was *Jacobus Sannazarius*, for that of *Sincerus*, at the request of *Pontanus*, who at the same time assum'd that of *Jovianus*. Near it (*viz.* not far from the entrance of the Grotto of *Pausilippus* in the Gardens of St. *Severino*) stands the Tomb of *Virgil*, cover'd all over with Laurel or Bay-trees. From thence returning on to our way, we found our selves immediately at the entrance of the Grott of *Pausilippus*. This Mountain lying so near *Naples*, and rendring the passage that way extreamly inconvenient for Carriages, it was thought fit to cut a Cartway under ground quite thro' the Mountain, which by some is attributed to *Lucullus*, by others to *Coccejus Nerva*; it is doubtless very ancient, the same being mention'd by *Seneca*.

Virgil's Tomb.

The Grotto of *Pausilippus*.

Coming into the Grott of *Pausilippus*, we found it forty foot high, and broad enough for two large Waggons to pass by one another with conveniency; they reckon it about a mile in length, but I guess'd not quite so much. For the first forty paces we were guided by the light of the wide entrance, but were afterwards left in the dark for a considerable time, till we came to the half-way, where a burning Lamp hanging before the Picture of our Saviour in the B. Virgins Arms afforded us a very agreeable light for some time. The way throughout the Grott is very level, but exceeding dusty, which made us shut both our Eyes and Mouths. The People, in their passage to and fro, know how to avoid one another, notwithstanding the darkness, those coming from *Naples* keeping constantly on the right hand, and returning on the left side; that is, keeping as they go on the Mountain-side, and returning on the Sea-side; which they express by crying out frequently, *à la Montagna*, or *à la Marina*, to give notice whether they come or go.

We were no sooner got out of this dark passage, but glad to open our Eyes and Mouths again, we discours'd upon this Wonder till we came to another call'd the *Grotta del Cane*, i.e. the *Grott of the Dog*.

Grotta del Cane.

This Grott being but three yards within the side of the Hill, a Man may make the Experiment with the Dog without entring into it: If you hold the Head of a Dog with a wooden Fork close to the ground, the Dog begins to cry first, and soon after turns up the white of his Eyes as if he were ready to die, and is no sooner let loose but he recovers; afterwards they take the same Dog, and hold him down till he appears quite dead, then taking him by the Leg, they run immediately with him to the Lake of *Agnano*, about forty paces off, where being thrown in, he soon recovers and comes out himself, the infectious Vapours which had stunn'd the Dog being dissipated by the Water of that Lake. The Pestilential quality of this Grott is easily discover'd in a lighted Torch, which being held a considerable way from the ground, burns very clear, but as it approaches nearer to the ground, burns dimn, till being held close to the ground, it burns blue and goes out quite.

Near it are the Stoves of St. *Gennaro*, the natural sulphureous Vapours whereof cause a sudden Sweat, and are accounted a good Remedy against the *Neapolitan* Disease or *French Pox*.

The Stoves of S. *Gennaro*.

Thence going about the Hill by a narrow way, we came to the Convent of the *Capuchins*, built in the same place where St. *Januarius* was beheaded; and in a little Chapel on the right as you enter the Church, they shew you a Stone with some Blood upon it, upon which he was beheaded.

Afterwards we took a view of the *Sulphatara*, a Pit with Banks all round, about fifteen hundred foot long, and a thousand broad, where you see the Smoak of the burning Sulphur issue from under ground without intermission. As we were riding down into it on Horseback, we found it sound hollow, as if we were riding over a wooden Bridge, and we found divers *Spiraculæ* or Vents through which the Smoak came out like as out of a Furnace. The Potters make their Chymical Vessels out of this Earth.

Hard by the *Sulphatara* you see a Pool of black muddy Water, which always boils, and whatever is thrown into it comes out again boil'd, yet not without some diminution. We were not a little surpriz'd when in our way from *Sulphatara* to *Pazzuolo* we found the Highway smoak as we went along, tho' it did not feel hot under our Horses Feet, till we discover'd certain chinks thro' which the Smoak issued from below, a manifest sign that the ground was on fire underneath.

See *Lunar. Albert.*

Before we reach'd the Town, we pass'd by the Ruins of a fair *Amphitheatre*, and *Cicero*'s Academy.

Coming to *Puzzuolo*, (so call'd from the great number of Springs, or else a *Putore*, from the sulphureous smell) a little Town, we took a Boat immediately to go cross the Creek of the Sea to *Baja*, three miles hence. As we were rowing along, we could not but be surpriz'd at the stupendious Folly of *Caligula*, who built a Bridge from *Puzzuola* to *Baja*, some of the Arches being as yet to be seen on both sides; tho' the nature of the Soil here, which mix'd with Mortar grows solid, nay, even petrifies under Water, might be no small encouragement to this unaccountable Design; *Puteolanus pulvis, si aquam attigit saxum est.* Reaching the other side of the Bay, we came first to the *Mercato di Sebato*, having still some resemblance of a Street with the Ruins of Houses on both sides. Thence going into the *Elizian* Fields, we found them a level common Plat of Ground, without any thing remarkable in it, so that these Fields are much oblig'd for their Fame to the Poets, who have thought fit to fix their Paradise here.

Puzzuoli.

The *Elizian* Fields.

Soon after we got sight of the *Piscini Mirabili*, a large Fabrick under ground, supported by forty or fifty huge square Pillars; its length is a hundred and fifty paces, its breadth forty, and height thirty, being so well vaulted with Stone and Lime, that no Water can penetrate into it: You descend into it by many Steps. On the top of this *Piscini* are still remaining some Stone Spouts, by which they us'd to let in the fresh Water into this subterraneous Reserver for the use of the *Roman* Gallies, who had their station in this Harbour in the Winter; or else for the conveniency of such of the *Romans* as had their Country-seats hereabouts, and did not care to make use of the Water of the Springs of this Bituminous Country.

Baiæ.

In our return we saw, at a distance, the Promontory of *Miscenum*, and the *Mare Mortuum* not far off, and afterwards took a view of the *Cento Camerelle*, so call'd from two Rooms built together like Chambers within one another, to serve for Lodgings to the Slaves on board the Gallies.

Albem.

As we were going to our Boat, we were shewn the place where *Agrippina*, *Nero*'s Mother, was by her Son's order to have been drown'd by a false-bottomb'd Boat, but that failing, was stab'd afterwards. Her Tomb is to be seen to this day near the Shore.

Agrippina's Tomb.

Then taking Boat again, and rowing along by the Ruins of *Marius* and the Villa's of *Cæsar*, we could (it being a clear day) plainly see the Foundations of *Baja*; some Arches, nay, even the very Pavements of the Streets, are under Water. Keeping along the Shore, we came to the Ruins of *Nero*'s Palace, near which we saw a strong

Baiæ.

Fristati.

Castle,

Castle, built *à la moderna* upon a high Hill; and as we were ready to quit our Boat, we put our hands into the Sand under Water, near the shore, which we found to be very hot. The next thing we did after our landing, *Cicero's Baths* was to take a view of *Cicero*'s Baths, a very large Square, having formerly certain Inscriptions upon it in very old Letters, intimating the Names of the Diseases cur'd by these Waters, which were since defac'd by the Physicians, under pretence that they were superstitious Characters.

The Baths of Tritola. Hard by these Baths are those of *Tritola*, where we no sooner were entred into a long *Grotto*, but found our selves immediately put into a Sweat by the violent stifling heat, that met us at the very entrance thereof. Finding the Vapours so choaking, I stoop'd behind my Guide pretty low, and thus was convinc'd of what I had heard them say before, That the nearer the ground, the cooler it is. In the middle of this long Entry is a place fitted for those that have occasion to sweat plentifully; and I was told, that at the further end of the *Grotto* there were *Baths* of a most soveraign vertue; but as I had no occasion for them, I chose rather to believe them than try them.

Lacus Avernus. From hence we had a good large Walk to the *Lacus Avernus*, made by the River *Acheron*, i. e. *sine gaudio*. This Lake having a stinking Air, was anciently observ'd to kill the Birds that flew over it; and at the further end thereof stood the Temple of *Apollo*.

Leaving this Lake on our right hand, we went to the *Grotto* of the *Sybilla Cumæa*, so call'd from the City of *Cumæ*, which stood near it, from whence there was a subterraneous passage into this long *Grotto*, (as there is from *Naples* into that of *Pausilippus*) the dark Entry which strikes out of the long *Grotto* being properly call'd the *Sybils Grotto*, which leads you to the Chamber of the said *Sybil*, and her Baths. This *Sybil* prophesied in a most peculiar manner of the Nativity of our *Saviour*, for which reason *Julian* the *Apostate* order'd her Prophecies to be burnt; as *Ammianus Marcellinus*, a Pagan Historian of those times, has observ'd.

Returning from hence to our Boat, we got sight of a *Mons Nuovo.* great Mountain call'd *Monte Nuovo*, i. e. the *New Mountain*, because it was (on *Michaelmas* night, 1536.) cast up by an Earthquake, and cover'd a great part of the *Lacus Lucrinus*; it is generally reported to be three miles high, but I believe it to be about a good mile in height.

Then taking our Boat again, we return'd first to *Puzzuolo*, and thence at night to *Naples*. The History of *Naples* may be read in a Book call'd *Il Compendio del Historia di Napoli, di Collenuccio*.

They leave Naples. Having seen every thing we thought worth our Observation at *Naples*, we return'd by the same way we came to *Rome*, without any sinister accident, except that one of our Company was not a little molested by the troublesom Customhouse Officers of *Fundi*, who finding more Money about him than was allowable to carry out, would have seiz'd the same, these Customhousers here, as well as in most other places, being very impertinent in their stations, sometimes meeting (at a good distance from their places) Travellers in the open Fields, and not only searching their Pockets, Boots, Breeches, Horses Tails and Feet, but also even to their Shirts; which may serve as a Warning to young Travellers, to be well inform'd of the several Customs of the Countries thro' which they are to pass, to avoid those Inconveniencies which otherwise might ensue.

In another Voyage to *Naples*, in our return to *Rome*, we had a mind to make some small excursive Journeys thro' some places about *Rome*, which had escap'd our view before; as, *Albano*, *Castel Gandulfo*, *Frescati*, and *Tivoli*.

Albano. From *Veletri* we cross'd the Hills to *Albano*, (the *Longa Alba* of the Ancients) now one of the seven Bishops Seats near *Rome*, which are bestow'd upon the eldest Bishop-Cardinals, that they may be always at hand to assist the Pope in all Affairs of moment; the other six being *Porto*, *Ostia*, *Frescati*, *Tivoli*, *Prenestе*, and *Veletri*. There is scarce any thing to be seen in *Albano* but a very old Church and some old Houses, yet is this place famous for its wholsom Air and excellent Wine, being the best that is constantly drank in *Rome*. Near it stands *Castel Gandulfo*, the Pope's Summer-house, pleasantly seated near a Lake and Wood in the *Campania* of *Rome*, within view of the City; it was then unfurnish'd.

Frescati. From hence we took a turn to *Frescati*, (the ancient *Tusculum*) a small Town, but one of the pleasantest in *Europe*, being surrounded, especially on the Hill-side, with many most delightful *Villa's*, *Palaces*, *Gardens*, *Springs* and *shady Walks*. Here it was that *Cato* drew his first breath; here *Lucullus* used to delight himself, and *Cicero* spent much of his time here in Studies, and writing his *Tusculan* Questions. The first thing we took notice of here, was the *Villa Aldobrandina*, call'd also the *Belvedere* of *Frescati*, from its delightful situation on a Hill-side, cover'd with Lawrel-trees, most curious Fountains, *Cascata's*, and other Waterworks: The Water is convey'd to the *Cascata* thro' the Hill, which at the turning of a Cock spouts out of the top of two high twisted Pillars of Stone, mounted upon the head of an high pair of open Stairs, and afterwards falling upon the same Pillars again, follows the winding cut into Chanels and little Gutters, and so warbles round these Pillars till it issues out at the foot of them, and so falling upon the before-mention'd Stairs, covers them all over with a thin gliding Stream. Many other little Fountains being set at work by this Water, the whole Hill is spouting out Water, and filling the circumambient Air with a sweet murmuring noise. The Gardener turning at the same time another Cock above, furnishes such store of Wind and Water to the great *Girandola* below the Stairs, in the *Grotto* of *Atlas*, that it imitates perfectly Thunder, Hail, Rain and Mist. *The Cascata.*

The large Centaure, with a Hunter's Horn at his Mouth, winds it duly and in perfect measure, whilst *Pan* plays on his Mouth-Organ, and the Lyon and Leopard spit with great fury at one another's Faces.

All these Waterworks playing together, make innumerable wetting-places on the Stairs, behind *Pan*, behind the *Centaure*, and many small Spouts under ground on all sides.

Then they shew you the Hall of *Apollo*, which being *The Hall of Apollo.* open'd, you see him sitting upon Mount *Parnassus*, with the nine Muses somewhat lower in a circle, playing all at once harmoniously upon divers Wind-Instruments, an untouch'd Organ underneath the Hill playing all the while a soft Ground to the Muses Instruments, during which Melody a little round hole in the midst of the Room forces out from below so stiff and cool an Air, that it carries a small hollow Ball of Copper a yard high from the ground. Over the Door you see this Distich:

Huc ego migravi Musis comitatus Apollo,
Hic Delphi, *hic* Helicon, *hic mihi* Delos *erit*.

Having an opportunity to take a full view of this *Hydraulick Organ*, I found it to be made and manag'd thus; *A Water Organ.* the Pipes were like those of another Organ, of Lead, and set in a close Frame, with Stops and Touches to them; close by these Stops a Wheel made like a Drum, and as long as the Organ, is turn'd by the force of Water. This Wheel has here and there several pieces of Brass about the thickness of half a Crown piece, and just as broad as the Stops of the Organ, these Brass pieces sticking out just so far as to reach the Stops in turning about, and so press them down as the Organist does with his Fingers, in that distance, as to strike their Note in tune as they turn about leisurely; they produce an agreeable and perfect Harmony, the Wind-pipe which forces out the Ball serving both for Bellows to this Organ and the Instruments of the Muses, and all this by the force of Water.

From hence we went to the Villa of Prince *Ludovisio*, *Villa Ludovisia.* which is hard by: The Gardens are stately, but the House but little. I observ'd in this Palace the Curtains of the Beds to be wrought with little holes of Needle-work, to give a free passage to the Air, yet so as to keep out the Gnatts.

Thence we took a turn to the Villa of Prince *Borghese*, *Monte Dragone.* call'd *Monte Dragone*, from the *Dragon* in his Arms, a mile and a half from the *Belvedere*, all the way being curious Walks of Lawrel-trees. The Palace is both stately and curious, the Rooms finely furnish'd, and fitted both for Summer and Winter Seasons. The Pictures we took notice of here were, the Last Supper, a rare piece of *Alberto Durero*'s hand; the Story of *Polyphemus*, by *Lanfranco*. The Hall below was full of the true Pictures of great Men, famous for Learning and Arms; and this Hall brings you into a little but very neat Garden, adorn'd with fine Waterworks, &c.

From *Frescati* we travel'd to *Tivoli*, an ancient Town *Tivoli.* seated upon a Hill, fifteen miles from *Rome*, and as many from *Frescati*. In the time of the *Romans* it was call'd *Tyber*, and noted for a most delicious place. Here is still *Old Tyber.* to be seen the old Temple, and the House of *Sibylla Tyburtina*: here is also a *Cascata* or Waterfall, made by the *The Waterfall.* River *Anio*, which here falls suddenly down a rocky Precipice: here the Villa of Cardinal *d'Este* is built upon a *Villa d'Este.* rising ground overlooking the *Campania* of *Rome*. The Gardens lie upon the ascent of an Hill, divided into four rows of Gardens, with as many degrees in the descent, with curious *Grotto's*, *Cascata's*, and other Waterworks, supplied with Water from the River *Anio*, which running behind the *Hill*, the Water is convey'd into these Gardens thro' the Rock, which is bor'd for that purpose, and fur-

nishes sufficient Water to the great Fountain of *Leda*; the Stairs cover'd with Water, the Walk two hundred paces long, &c. Here you may feast your Eyes with a perfect representation of the ancient *Rome* in a Perspective, with the *Capitol*, the *Pantheon*, the *Triumphal Arches*, *Circus*, *Theatres*, *Obelisks*, *Mausolea's*, and the *Tyber* it self. Here you see delicious Groves of green Trees in the midst of Winter, and cool *Grotto's* and *Fountains* in the midst of the Summer. Here you divert your self with hearing false Birds chirping upon true Trees, every one according to his own nature, and all of 'em chattering at once at the sight of a false Owl howling in a Tree. Here are most delightful *Grotto's*, among which the *Grotto of Nature*, adorn'd with Nymphs, Shells, Statues, exceeds the rest. The Organs play here without touching; and the fearful *Girandola* of the Dragons thundring out cold Water, affords a most surprizing show. But not to insist further upon those things which I would rather recommend to a Traveller's Eyes than Ears, it is time we return to *Rome*, which we did accordingly; and having once more satiated our selves with a full view of that incomparable City, we took our leave of it, with an intention to return homeward by the way of *Loretto*, to *Venice*.

The *Via Flaminia*.

Accordingly we set out from *Rome* by the *Porta del Popolo*, along the *Via Flaminia*, which reach'd, from *Rome* to *Rimini*, as far almost on this side *Rome* as the *Via Appia* did on the other. It is call'd *Flaminia*, because the Consul *Flaminius* order'd it to be made by his Soldiers in time of Peace, to keep them from idleness. The other part of this Cawsey, from *Rimini* to *Bologna*, being pav'd at the cost of *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Collegue of *Flaminius*, was from him call'd *Via Æmilia*.

Ponte Molo.

We soon came to *Ponte Molo*, (the ancient *Pons Milvius*) about a miles distance from the Gates of *Rome*, near which *Constantine* the Great overthrew *Maxentius* the Tyrant,

The *Tyber*.

forcing many of his Men into the *Tyber*, which I wonder'd to find here of so small a Current, considering the Poets have put it among the Rivers of the first rank.

Narni.

Keeping along the *Via Flaminia*, we pass'd by *Castel Nuovo*, *Civita*, *Castellana*, *Otricoli*, and so to *Narni*, so call'd from the River *Nar*, but anciently known by the Name of *Nequinum*, (wicked Town) because the Inhabitants, being reduc'd to the greatest extremity for want of Provisions, kill'd their Children, Sisters, Mothers and Wives, and at last one another, rather than they would surrender themselves to the Enemy. It is a very ancient Bishop's Seat, the first Bishop whereof was St. *Juvenalis*, whose Body lies interr'd in a curious low Chapel in the Cathedral here. Not far from the Town we saw divers high Arches, belonging formerly to an ancient *Aqueduct*.

Terni.

Hence we went to *Terni*, anciently call'd *Interamina*, from its situation among many little Brooks, now a Bishops Seat, situate in a most pleasant Soil. This was the Birthplace of *Cornelius Tacitus*. The famous *Cascata* or Waterfall four miles from hence, we found far to exceed that of *Tivoli*.

Spoleto.

From *Terni* we travel'd to *Spoleto*, a neat Town, which has imparted its Name to the whole Dutchy of *Spoleto*; the Country hereabouts being anciently call'd *Umbria*; for after the Emperour *Justin* had recall'd *Narses* out of *Italy*, (who and *Basilius* were the last two Consuls) he sent *Longinus* with the Title of *Exarch* in his place, who fixing his Residence in *Ravenna*, govern'd the rest of *Italy* by a certain *Duces* or Dukes, at which time *Spoleto* got its Title among the rest. This City was famous anciently for holding out against the victorious *Hannibal*, after he had overthrown the *Romans* at the Lake of *Thrasimeno* near *Perugia*. It also has given the Name to the most delightful Valley of *Spoleto*, which lies near it, and is above thirty miles in compass, enclos'd with Hills, and those well clad with a good number of brave Towns stor'd with Inhabitants.

The Valley of *Spoleto*.

Foligni.

From hence we went to *Foligni*, (anciently *Folignum*) noted for Confectioners. Near it stands *Assisium*, famous

Assisium.

for St. *Francis*, the Founder of the Order of *Franciscans*; their Convent is very stately, and much visited by Pilgrims. *Montefalco* is celebrated for the miraculous Heart of B. *Clara*.

Montefalco.

Tolentino.

From *Foligni* going up the *Apennins*, we came to *Tolentino*, where we saw the Tomb and Relicks of *Nicholas Tolentinas*. Of this Town was *Philelphus*, a noble Knight, who being desirous to attain to the perfection of the *Greek* Tongue, did not only go in person into *Greece*, but also having married a *Grecian* Lady, for the better improvement thereof, did arrive to that height in the said Language, that he surpass'd the *Grecians* themselves, and entring into a dispute with one *Timotheus*, a Native of *Greece*, about the true signification and accent of a certain word, they came to that height, that they laid their Beards (which they both wore very long and were very fond of) for a Wager; *Philelphus* having got the better of the Lay, caus'd the other's Beard to be shav'd off immediately, tho' he offer'd a good Sum to redeem it. The Statue of this *Philelphus* is to be seen in the Townhouse.

Macerata. *Recanata.*

Hence we came to *Macerata*, a neat Town in the Country of *la Marca*; and thence by the way of *Recanata*, another handsom place in the same Country, to *Loretto*.

Loretto.

As our stay was to be but short here, so we made the best use of our time in viewing this sacred place, which at first was no more than a bare Highway, till the Chamber of our Lady (in which the Angel announced unto her our Saviour's Birth) was translated thither by the Angels, 1294, when the *Turks* and other Infidels had made themselves Masters of the *Holy Land*, which has since been turn'd into a Chapel. For my part, tho' I am sensible that this is no Article of Faith, yet considering with my self the Angels words to the Virgin *Mary*, That *nothing is impossible to God*, I can very easily acquiesce in what, besides this, has been confirm'd by ancient Records, solid Depositions, constant Tradition, and the real Belief of all the Roman Catholick Princes. Add to this, that the Stones of this House are quite different from those used in that Country, that it has no Foundation at all in the Ground, tho' the Walls are of a considerable thickness, and the House of a large bulk. The Paintings of the Walls are very old; And how can it be conceiv'd that the whole Country should not have given the lye to such as first rais'd this Tradition? But to come to the holy House it self: It stands in the middle of a spacious Church, built over it since, for the better conveniency of Peoples Devotions, and immediately it is enclos'd as it were in a fine Case of white Marble, which stands half a foot distance from the House it self, to shew that it was made not so much for a Prop as a Decoration, and to keep off the Hands of the devout Pilgrims, who would have quite defac'd it by this time. This Decoration is surrounded with two rows of white Marble Statues, the Workmanship of *Sansovino*, *Bandinelli*, *San Gallo*, *Monte Lupo*, and other rare Masters of *Italy* in those times. The lowermost row represents the Figures of the ancient Prophets; and the other row above, the Statues of the *Sybils*.

The holy House of Loretto.

As for the Fabrick of this House, it is of a hard red Stone like Bricks, but much harder and bigger than our Bricks; it is very near square, and of the bigness of a reasonable Lodging-Chamber; it has no more than one Window, and had anciently but one Door, tho' it has three now, one on either side, and one behind the Altar, for the Chaplains that look after the Lamps and Lights, which are always burning there. At the upper end of the *House* you see a Silver Altar, (the Gift of *Cosmus* II. Great Duke of *Florence*) where Mass is said from four in the Morning till one in the Afternoon. Before it hangs a Lamp of pure Gold, as great as two Men can well carry, the Gift and Vow of the Senate of *Venice*. On either side of the Walls are fastned two large Branches of massive Gold, made and neatly twisted like *Cornucopia's*, a Present of *Magdalen* of *Austria*, Great Dutchess of *Florence*, as her Arms upon them shew'd us. On the Gospel-side of the Altar you see an old Cupboard within the Wall, with some Earthen Dishes in it, brought hither with the *House*, and believ'd to have been our Saviour's and the B. Virgin's Vessels, for which reason this Cupboard is now adorn'd with a Silver Door, given by a Duke of *Parma*. The Window at the end of this *House* is suppos'd to be the same thro' which entred the Angel when he came to the Virgin *Mary*, to announce the Birth of our Lord; it is now enrich'd with Silver. Round about above hang many Silver Lamps, and the sides of the Walls retain to this day some of the old Paintings, which were there at the time when it was first consecrated into a Chapel in primitive times. They shew'd me by a lighted Candle, that it had no Foundation at the bottom, but stands as if it had been let down upon the Ground out of the Air.

Our B. Lady's Statue.

Immediately behind the Altar you see a great Iron Grate running cross the Chapel, thro' which you may see the Statue of Cedar of our Blessed Lady with her Son in her Arms, said to have been made by St. *Luke*, and brought hither together with the *holy House*, where you see it standing up high in the very further end of the Chapel, its height being about four foot, and adorn'd with a peculiar kind of Veil hung before it, resembling a Womans Garment. These Veils they call *Vesti*, made of divers Colours and Stuffs, but all very rich, that given by the *Infanta Isabella* Governess of *Flanders* being valued at forty thousand Crowns; it has before about six thousand Diamonds set in six rows; all over it is embroider'd with Flowers of small Pearls, with great Pearls on the inside of them, to the number of twenty thousand Pearls in all. Upon the heads of our Saviour and the Virgin *Mary* you see two rich, close, royal Crowns of Diamonds, the Gift of

of *Anne* of *Austria* Queen of *France*, and before the Breast of the Statue a rich Fleece of precious Stones, presented by a Prince of *Transilvania*; the Collar is compos'd of Rubies, Pearls and Diamonds, with a rich Cross hanging at it, all given by Cardinal *Sfondrati*. The Niche in which this Statue is placed is adorn'd with a close row of precious Stones, seventy one in number, which being of divers sorts and lustres, and all very large, compose an *Iris* of several colours. Betwixt the Statue and the Iron Rails or Grate hang twelve Lamps all in a row of massy Gold, of the bigness of a Man's head, one whereof exceeding the rest in curious Workmanship, was the Present of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*; the rest of that part of the Chapel where these Lamps hang being almost cover'd with the rich Presents of great Persons: Those I remember are, the Image of the eldest Son of the Emperour *Ferdinand* III. in Silver, with a Collar of Diamonds about it; an Angel of the same Metal, presenting to our Lady a Child of Gold in Swathing-cloaths upon a Silver Cushion, the Gift of the Queen of *France*, after she was deliver'd of the *Dauphin*, now King *Lewis* XIV; the Picture of the Prince of *Conde* kneeling, a Vow of his Mother at his first going to the Wars; the *Busto* of St. *Barbara* in Silver, set with precious Stones, the Gift of an Arch-Duke of *Austria*; another *Busto* of St. *Girione*, set with rich Stones, the Gift of a Queen of *Bohemia*: the Silver Statue of St. *Ladislaus*, given by *Ladislaus* IV. King of *Poland*: a fine kneeling Stool of Silver, presented by Cardinal *Colonna*, with many other Presents which I am not able to remember. Under this Statue of Our Lady is also to be seen the Chimney (now adorn'd with Silver) which was anciently in this Chamber.

Macerata. *Recanata.* *Loretto.* The holy House of Loretto. Our B. Lady Statue.

The Treasury of Loretto.

Next morning we took a view of the Treasury, (where many other rich Presents are kept) a Room forty paces long and fifteen broad, vaulted and painted like a Chapel over head. The great Cupboards cover'd within with Nets of strong Wire, are on the left hand of this Room, containing the inestimable Treasure: In one of these Cupboards we saw a whole Service for the Altar, Crucifix, Candlesticks, Cruets, Bason and Ewre, and the Foot of the Chalice, all of Amber: in another, such a whole Service of Agate; another such Service of *Lapis Lazuli*, the Gift of Count *Olivarez*; another such Service all of Coral, presented by Arch-Duke *Leopold*: in another such a Service of Crystal; and in another the same Service of Silver, with Flowerpots most curiously wrought, given by *Don Teadeo Barberino*: in another a most stately Crucifix of Ebony, beautified with many exquisite Pictures in miniature, the Gift of Pope *Clement* VIII. In another a Spread-Eagle of Diamonds, given by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*; two golden Crowns set with Pearls, the Gift of a Queen of *Poland*; a large Crown of Gold enrich'd with great Rubies, given by the Dutchess of *Nevers*: In another a golden Crown and Scepter enamel'd, the Present of *Christian* Queen of *Sweden*, at her first coming into *Italy*: In another, an enamel'd Pigeon, with a Jewel of great value on its Breast, the Gift of Prince *Ludovisio*, a Heart set with Diamonds, with a great Emerauld in the middle, of a very large size, the Gift of *Henry* III. King of *France*, after his return out of *Poland*: In another a very rich three-corner'd Jewel, with the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* in the middle of it, the Present of two *Bohemian* Counts and a Gentleman, *viz.* Count *Martinitz* and Count *Slavata*, and a Gentleman that was Secretary to the last, who being thrown out of a Window at *Prague* by the Fanaticks, fell upon the Ground without receiving the least hurt, the Secretary, who was thrown out last, and falling upon his Master, having craved his Pardon for it; in memory of which three Pillars have been erected before that House in *Prague*, out of which they were thrown. In another Cupboard we were shewn many golden Chains, presented by Generals and other great Men: In another a large Heart of Gold, of the bigness of a Man's Hand, enamel'd with blue, and enrich'd on the outside with these words in pretty big Diamonds, JESUS MARIA, and within it having the Pictures of the B. Virgin on one side, and of the Queen of *England*, *Henrietta Maria*, on the other, the Heart opening into two leaves. In another, a little Heart of Gold, enamel'd and enrich'd with Jewels, the Present of *Christina* Dutchess of *Savoy*, Sister to the aforesaid Queen of *England*, with her own and her Son's Picture in it. In another, the Picture of our Blessed Lady with our Saviour in her Arms, cut in a great Pearl, and set in Gold. In another Cupboard the Picture of the B. Virgin wrought most curiously of *Indian* Feathers of several colours, and cut short as Plush, changing colours as often as you change its situation or your own station. In another, a large *Custodia* of Crystal, the Gift of *Christina* of *Tuscany*. In another, a *Custodia* of *Lapis Lazuli*. In another, a diamond valued at 12000 Crowns, a Present of Prince *d'Oria* of *Genoa*; and another of the same value, the Gift of a *German* Prince. In another, a curious Book of Gold set with Diamonds, the Leaves of Gold, and exquisitely painted in miniature, a Present of a Duke of *Bavaria*. In another, the *Samaritans* Well, of Gold, with Pictures of our Saviour and the *Samaritan* Woman, in Gold also, the Gift of Cardinal *Brancaccio*.

I saw in several other Cupboards such a multitude of other Jewels, as confounded both my Memory and Eyes. In another great Cupboard we were shewn most excellent Church-Ornaments, of very rich Stuffs embroider'd with Silver and Gold, among which was one whole Suit (for the Altar, Priest, Deacon and Subdeacon) cover'd so thick with Embroidery of Pearl, (and those of a very good size) that the Ground of the Stuff could not be discern'd thro' them; these were the Presents of *Katherine Zemousky*, Wife to the Chancellour of *Poland*, valued at a hundred and thirty thousand Crowns.

On the other side of this Room are large Windows, betwixt each of which you see upon long Tables divers *German* Towns of Silver, of curious *German* Work, so exactly wrought, with their Walls, Ramparts, Churches, Steeples, &c. that whosoever has seen these Towns may easily know them again.

This is all that occurrs to my Memory, tho' not one half of what I saw: And going again into the great Church, I saw upon the great Pillars that compose the Isles the History of the *Holy House*, engraven in Stone, and written on Parchment, in a fair Hand in twelve or thirteen several Languages, for the use of Foreigners, and just before the Church-door, the brazen Statue of *Sixtus* the Fifth, and a most noble Fountain.

The Cellar of Loretto.

Afterwards we took a view of the Cellar belonging to the *holy House*, which furnishes with Wine the Governor's House, the Canons, the Churchmen, the College of the *Penitentiaries*, the Convent of the *Capuchins*, the *Seminarists*, the Hospital, and in short all that have any dependance on the Church here; and not only these, but also all the Princes, Cardinals, Bishops, Ambassadors and other great Men, as well as other Pilgrims, as long as they stay here upon Devotion. And considering how many thousand Pilgrims pass'd so frequently that way, it may easily be conjectur'd how vast its Revenues must be, and that it may very well be preferr'd before all the Cellars in *Italy*; for if we may credit *Turselinus*, in his History of *Loretto*, *l.* 3. *c.* 25, there have, betwixt *Easter* and *Whitsuntide*, flock'd thither sometimes five hundred thousand, sometimes six hundred thousand Communicants; and in two days time in *September*, (about the Feast of the Nativity of our B. Lady) there have appear'd two hundred thousand Communicants. The Vessels of this Cellar are vastly large, so as not to be remov'd from thence; they are all hoop'd with Iron, and some of 'em so contriv'd, that they can draw three several sorts of Wine out of one Vessel and the same Tap. When they clean them, they take a piece out of their Broad-sides.

The Apothecary's Shop.

From the Cellar we took a turn to the Apothecary's Shop belonging to the *holy House*, where the most remarkable things we met with were, the great Pots standing round about the great inner Shop, painted by *Raphael Urbin*, and consequently valued at a high rate; witness those four Pots on which are painted the four Evangelists, for the which a *French* Ambassadour offer'd as many Pots of Gold of the same size, but could not obtain 'em: All these Pots were given to the *holy House* by a Duke of *Urbin*, whose Subject *Raphael* was, and for whom he had made them. The History of *Loretto* may be read in *Turselinus*'s History of *Loretto*.

Ancona.

Taking Horse again, we made the best of our way towards *Venice*: The first place we came to was *Ancona*, the capital City of the *Marca*, and one of the best Harbours in the Gulph of *Venice*, corresponding with *Sclavonia*, *Greece*, *Dalmatia*, and divers other Countries, built by the Emperour *Trajan*, whose Triumphal Arch is yet to be seen here: It lies directly upon the Cape, being defended towards the Land-side by a good Castle; the *Mole* extends two hundred paces into the Sea. Here died Pope *Pius* II. and in the Vault of the Cathedral, call'd St. *Ciriaco*'s Church, lie interr'd the Bodies of many Saints.

Senigallia.

From *Ancona* keeping along the Sea-side, we came to *Senegallia*, a neat Town, seated in a most agreeable Air, owing its Name to the *Senones Gallici*; it is a Bishop's Seat, upon the Borders of the ancient *Gallia Cisalpina*.

Fano.

From hence we went to *Fano*, (*Fanum Fortunæ*) so call'd from the Temple of *Fortune* built there in memory of a Battel won by the *Romans* near the River *Metaurus*. Here is also an ancient Triumphal Arch. Near this place *Narsetes* vanquish'd *Totila*. It is now an Episcopal Town.

Hence

Pesaro. Hence we set forward for *Pesaro*, most pleasantly seated near the Sea-side; it is call'd *Pesaurum* in Latin, from the weighing here of the Gold which the *Romans* paid to the *Gauls*. It once belong'd to the Dukes of *Urbin*, but for want of Heirs male it fell to the Church again. At the Bridge of Stone begins the *Marca d'Ancona*. The Figs and the Air of *Pesaro* are thought to be the best in *Italy*.

Cattolica The next place we came to was *Catholica*, a poor Village, having no other presence but its glorious Name, the reason whereof you see express'd in an Inscription upon the Wall of the Chapel, *viz.* That after the conclusion of the Council of *Arimini*, (not far from hence) the Emperour *Constantius*, a profess'd *Arrian*, having stopp'd the passage of most of the Fathers assembled there, till they had complied with the Emperour's Faction of *Arrians*, some of them out of weakness complied with the Emperour's Command, whilst the rest of the Orthodox Fathers found means to get to this little Village, which from thence got the Name of *Catholica*.

Rimini. From this place we travel'd to the aforesaid *Ariminum*, (now *Rimini*) where in the Market-place you see a Stone (now set upon a Pedestal) upon which, they said, *Cæsar* stood when he exhorted his Soldiers to march to *Rome*. Near it, in the same Market-place, stands a round Chapel, noted for a Miracle wrought here by St. *Anthony* of *Padua*, the History whereof is painted round the Chapel, but too long to be related here.

Cesena. Hence passing thro' *Cesena*, an Episcopal Town, we

Forli. came to *Forli*, (*Forum Livii*) another Bishop's Seat. Before we arriv'd at *Cesena*, we saw near a little River-side an ancient Inscription in Stone, which upon an exact view we found to be the exact Decree of the Senate of *Rome*, forbidding, upon pain of High-Treason, any Officer or Soldier to pass the *Rubicon*, which being level'd against *Cæsar* and his Army, we were satisfied that this little River (now call'd *Pistacello*) was the *Rubicon* mention'd in the Decree of the Senate.

Faenza. Leaving *Forli*, we left the way on the left hand leading to *Imola* and *Bologna*, and passing forward came to *Faenza*, a neat Town, but noted for nothing except its Earthen Ware, which is most excellent here. As we were travelling this way in the Night-time, I saw millions of small Flies like Glow-worms, especially in the Corn-fields, carrying a bright light along with them; I catch'd some of them, and found them have their little Lanterns in their Tails; they call them in this Country *Lucciole*, and I suppose them to be the Flies call'd *Cicindelæ* by *Pliny*, and *Lampurida* by *Aristotle*.

Ferrara. We were forced to lodge that night in a small Village, but came the next morning early to *Ferrara*, once the Residence of a Soveraign Prince of the Family of *Este*, but *Alfonso* II. dying without Heirs male, it fell to the Church in *Clement* VIII's time. Its compass is of about four miles, seated in a Plain, and defended by a good Citadel, strong Walls, Ramparts, Bulwarks, and a good Garison; the Streets are handsom, and the Palaces stately, but not very populous: The Cathedral is more remarkable for its Antiquity than any thing else, over against which you see two brazen Statues of the Princes of the House of *Este*, the one sitting, the other on Horseback: Behind these Statues stands the Townhouse. The ancient strong Palace of the Duke is seated in the center of the City, surrounded with a Moat. In the Court within you see the Pictures of all the Dukes of *Ferrara*. Here the Pope's Legate keeps his Residence. The noted Diamond Palace (as it is called here) is built of white Marble without, because the Stones are all cut into sharp points like Diamonds. I expected to have the inside answerable to the outside, but it had nothing but bare Walls.

In the Church of the stately Convent of the *Benedictins* is the Tomb of *Ariosto*, the Author of the Poem call'd *Ariosto's Tomb.* *Orlando Furioso*. The *Carthusians* Church is very neatly built, and well stor'd with good Pictures, as well as the Church and Convent of the *Carmelites*, in whose Library is preserv'd a Manuscript of *John Bacon*, and another of *Thomas Waldensis*, both our Countrymen.

The *Academy of Wits* stile themselves *Gli Elevati*. Of this Town was *Hieronymus Savonarola* and *Baptista Guarini*, the Author of the *Pastor Fido*. The History of *Ferrara* may be read in *Giovanni Baptista Pigna*.

The Weather being fair, we got in two days to *Padua* by Land (most People going in the Winter from *Ferrara* to *Venice* by Sea, by reason of the bad ways.) Passing the *Po* in a Ferry-boat at *Francalino*, we came the same day to *Rovigo*, the first Town under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction on that side; it is built upon the Ruins of the

Rovigo. ancient *Adria*. (whence the *Adriatick* Sea has borrow'd

Adria. its Name) being govern'd by a *Podesta* and *Capitano grande*, as the other Towns of the *Venetian* State. *Celius Rhodiginus* and *Bonifacius Bonifacii*, both Men of Learning, were Natives of this Town.

From hence we came soon to *Padua*, where we embark'd immediately for *Venice* in a *Piotta* or little Barge, and pass'd in view of many stately Country Seats standing upon the River *Brenta*. About five miles short of *Venice*, leaving the Horses that drew our Boat, we rowed thro' the Shallows call'd the *Laguna*, which surround *Venice* on all sides; over these Shallows none but little Vessels can pass, and that by certain Chanels, fortified with Castles, Forts and Chains.

The first Original of *Venice* consisted only in a few *Venice.* Fisher-huts, erected upon little dry spots of Ground in the shallow Seas, into which exonerate themselves seven Rivers, the *Piave*, *Sila*, *Livenza*, *Po*, *Adige*, *Brenta*, and *Tagliamento*. When *Italy* was over-run by the *Goths*, *Huns* and *Visigoths*, many of the better sort of People of *Padua*, and some other parts of *Italy*, sought for shelter among these Cottages, to avoid the Fury of these barbarous Nations; which succeeding according to expectation, they built many Houses, and at last a fine Town here, which in process of time exceeded her Mother *Padua*, being arriv'd to that greatness since, that it may be compar'd with the fairest in *Europe*; whence she has got the Sirname of *Venetia la Ricca*, Venice *the Rich*. Its compass is about eight miles, built in the form of a Lute, having no other defence but the shallow Seas five miles broad. It has also many small Islands near it, some of which serve instead of Suburbs. As instead of *The Gondolas* Streets they have Water-Chanels, so they use no Coaches, but Boats; these they call *Gondola's*, and have about twenty thousand of 'em, which ply at every Wharf; besides that, Persons of Quality have two or three for their own use: These are neat Boats, not unlike our Oars, able to hold six Persons conveniently, cover'd over head with a thick black Cloth, with Windows on both sides: These train up abundance of Seamen for the service of the Republick. Most of the common People pass from one place to another in the Town by little Lanes and Alleys (call'd here *Calle*) and by the Bridges built *Bridges of Venice.* over the Chanels, all of Stone, and of one Arch, reaching from one side of the Street to the other; of these there are above fifteen hundred in *Venice*; the chiefest of these Bridges is that they call *Rialto*, built of white *The Rialto.* Marble, over the *Canal grande*, one of the finest Bridges in *Europe*, by reason of its height, and the extent of one Arch only, upon which it rests, the Chanel being as broad here as a Man can well throw a Stone. Upon this Bridge you see two rows of Shops and small Houses cover'd with Lead. This Bridge cost a hundred and fifty thousand Crowns. The *Canal grande* runs out thro' the middle of the City, being flank'd with stately Houses, among which are two hundred fit to entertain a King. The number of the Inhabitants of this City is computed at a hundred and eighty thousand. It has thirty two Monasteries of Men, twenty eight of Women, and seventy Parish-Churches.

The Government of *Venice* is purely *Aristocratical*, viz. *The Government of Venice.* by the Doge and Nobility, the great Council of two thousand Gentlemen being the Basis of their Government; out of whom are chosen all the other Magistrates, as *Potesta's*, *Generals*, *Capitani*, *Grandi*, *Proveditor Generals*, *Ambassadours*, &c. This great Council assembles in the Doge's Palace, and there vote by *ballotting*, i. e. by putting into a close double Box a little Ball of the bigness of a Button, which being soft, no body can know into which part of the double Box the Ball is cast; every Member of this Council having two of these Balls given him, *viz.* one white, and another red; the first signifying the Affirmative, the other the Negative.

To enter upon a description of all their Magistrates and Officers, *viz.* the *Pregiadi*, the *Savi Grandi*, the *Savi di Terra firma*, the *Savi de gli Ordini*, &c. being a thing beyond our scope, we will only say, something of the *Doge* or Prince, the Head of this Republick.

This Dignity was hereditary till 1032, ever since *The Doge.* which time he is chosen for Life, by the whole Senate; for the manner of chusing him I will refer my self to *Sabellicus*: They generally observe this Rule, that they pitch upon a man pretty well advanced in Years, and one who had been fifteen years Ambassadour in the chief Courts of *Europe*. The Doge is not permitted to go beyond the *Laguna*, or to transact any matter of moment without the Advice of his Privy Councellors, of which there are six chosen out of the best Gentlemen of the City, four of whom must be always present, the Doge having no Authority to execute any thing of consequence without them, tho' they may act without the Doge; and these Councellors propose matters of concern to the *great Council.*

Council. The *Doge* has no more than one Vote in the Senate, but two Voices in the great Council. The *Doge* and these Councellors are call'd *Il Collegio*, with whom are joyn'd (in Cases of great consequence) six *Savi grandi*, five *Savi di Terra firma*, five *Savi de gli Ordini*, and three *Capi de Quaranta Criminali*.

The Habit of the *Doge* has some resemblance to the *Pontifical* Habit: When he appears abroad upon a publick account, they carry before him eight Silver Trumpets, a large Umbrella of Cloth of Tissue, the Cushion, the Chair, the gilt Sword, and a white Wax-Candle carried by a Child. All Letters of State are however written in his Name, and Money coin'd in his Name, the Stamp being S. *Mark*'s Lion. The *Doge* is most generally chosen out of those they call *Procuratori di San Marco*, who are in high esteem here: Formerly there was no more than one *Procurator* of St. *Mark*, whose Office oblig'd him to take care of every thing relating to St. *Mark*'s Church and Treasury, but now there are five and twenty, the Republick having thought fit, since the last War, to dispose of that Dignity for Money.

Its Strength. Their Strength is very considerable, as well as their Possessions, which in *Italy* are as great as the Pope's Dominions, but far greater out of *Italy*; they have fourteen Provinces in *Italy*: The *Venetians* challenge the Dominion over the Gulph of *Venice* in the *Adriatick* Sea; they are also in possession of a large Tract on the Sea-Coast of *Dalmatia*, and of the Isles of *Corfu*, *Cephalonia* and *Zant*. *Candia* or *Creta* do likewise belong to them; and they have a pretension upon the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, the same being bequeath'd to the Republick by *Catherine Cornaro*, 1438, it being left her by her Son before. The whole History may be seen in Pictures in the Palace of *Cornaro*, done by *Paulo Vernese*. The Fortresses the *Venetians* are possess'd of in *Italy* are, *Crema*, *Bergamo*, *Brescia*, *Peschiera*, *Chiesa*, and *Palma Nuova*, the last being one of the best Fortifications in *Europe*, with nine Royal Bastions, eighteen Cavaliers, and broad Ditches. In the Arsenal of *Venice* are always Arms in readiness for a hundred thousand Men. Their ordinary Militia consists of eighty thousand Foot and six thousand Horse, tho' upon occasion they may raise three hundred thousand Men. Their Naval Strength consists in thirty Galleys, and some Men of War.

Their Riches. Their ordinary Revenues, before the late *Turkish* War, was about four millions of Crowns; but since that time they are considerably encreas'd by new Taxes, Forfeitures, &c. besides that, of late Years, they have found out a way of raising vast Sums of Money by receiving their Citizens among the number of the Nobility. Thus in 1646, Fifty rich Families were honour'd with the Title of *Noble Venetians*, each of which paid a hundred thousand Crowns to the State.

Religion. As to their Religion, they are *Roman Catholicks*, and have ever been so since the first beginning of this Republick, which is above twelve hundred Years ago, this City being begun to be built in the same Year that S. *Austin* died.

The Noblemen of Venice. The Observations I made during my stay here were, 1. The Men, who are the most sightly, proper and grave that ever I saw; the Noblemen wear in Town a long black Gown, a black Cap knit with an edging of black Wool about it, in the nature of a Fringe; Perriwigs are forbid here, but their Hair is generally very good, being not press'd so much by their Caps as is done by our Hats. Under their Gowns (which are open before) they wear rich black Suits, with Stockings and Garters, and *Spanish*-Leather Shoes: Thus have I seen daily five hundred Gentlemen (every one fit to be an Ambassadour) walking in the *Piazza* of St. *Mark*, but to my singular regret had not the opportunity to converse with them, because the *Venetian* Noblemen are forbidden, under most severe Penalties, not to converse with any Ambassadours or other foreign Ministers, nay, not even with their Domesticks, or such as have any relation to them, which makes them very shy of Strangers: And it is upon the same score that they allow not their Wives to visit the Ladies of foreign Ambassadours, for fear of creating any suspicion of this kind, and to have their Names put into what they call *Denuncie secrete*, i. e. secret Informations, being certain wide Mouths cut in Marble Stone in the Wall of the Palace, into which are cast secretly Accusations against such Noblemen as they durst not accuse in publick.

The Ladies. 2. The Ladies here being willing to imitate the Men in tallness, wear very high-heel'd Shoes, like Stilts, which being very inconvenient for walking, they commonly rest their Hands or Arms upon the Shoulders of two grave Matrons. As for the unmarried Ladies, they are never to be seen abroad without a disguise at Fairs, or some publick Solemnities, being for the rest advanc'd in the Monasteries till they are married.

St. Mark's. 3. The next thing I took notice of was the Church of St. *Mark* the Evangelist, whose Body (interr'd here) was translated hither from *Alexandria* above eight hundred and fifty years ago, and has been ever since reputed the chief Patron of this State, as his Lion in the Arms of the Republick, and in their Great Seal, sufficiently demonstrates. The Church it self is built *à la Tedesca*, as it is call'd here, and as the best Churches were built in those days; it is neither spacious nor lofty, but very rich, and adorn'd with most excellent *Mosaick* Work and Marble, the Roof and the Walls, a good way down, being most curiously painted with *Mosaick* Histories and Pictures, and the lower parts crusted all over with Marble. In the Vault of the Arch over the Door of the Treasury, are to be seen two old *Mosaick* Pictures, one of St. *Dominick*, the other of St. *Francis*, both before they instituted their respective Orders, yet both in the same Habit as their Religious Men of those Orders wear. The Pavement of this Church is in some places compos'd of vast Marble Stones, with Veins in them resembling the Waves of the Sea, the rest being curiously inlaid with Stones of various colours, in Figures of Flowers, Stars, Birds, Beasts, and such-like. Among these Stones I saw some *Turkey* Stones, which would be of considerable value with us, but are trod upon here. The Roof of the Church is supported by thirty six round Marble Pillars of two foot diameter. The high Altar is a most noble piece of Workmanship, especially the Back thereof, beautified with several rows of little enamel'd Pictures *à la Greca*, set in Gold, and adorn'd with Pearls and precious Stones set betwixt them; this was the Gift of a *Doge* of *Venice*, and brought from *Constantinople*. Behind the high Altar stands the Altar of the B. Sacrament, adorn'd with two transparent round Pillars four yards high; and in the Sacristy hard by, a most admirable Picture of St. *Jerome* in *Mosaick* Work, of which there is abundance more finely done on the Roof. Over the Pillars round about the inside of the Church hang the *Escutchions* of several *Doges*; for when a *Doge* is created, he takes care of three things, (1.) he has his Picture set up in the Hall where the *Great Council* meet; (2.) he has his Arms made in an *Escutcheon*, (sometimes of Silver) which being of a large size, is set up after his death in the Church; (3.) he gives his Picture to be hung up in the *Collegio* or *Pregiadi*.

The Treasury of St. Mark. The Treasury of St. *Mark* is adjoyning to the Church, which is always shewn by two *noble Venetians*, and that not without special Leave: First we saw the *Spiritual Treasury*, which contains the Relicks, and next the *Temporal Treasury* or Jewels; in the first were, a great piece of the holy Cross of about a span in length, the biggest of this kind I ever saw, except that in the holy Chapel in *Paris*. I know that it is objected against us by our Enemies, that there are so many rare pieces of the holy Cross shewn in *Europe*, as would load a Cart, and therefore can't but give this in answer, for the satisfaction of those as have not the opportunity to be so well convinc'd in this point, that of all the Pieces that ever I saw belonging to the *holy Cross*, (and I have seen most in *Europe*) they would not make up two foot of Timber. Here were shewn also a Finger of St. *Mark*, and his Ring with a Stone in it not known to Jewellers: Some of our Saviour's Blood gather'd up in his Passion, with the Earth it was spilt upon: A Thorn of the *holy Crown of Thorns*, and a Nail which nail'd the two pieces of the Cross together; a Finger of St. *Mary Magdalen*; a piece of St. *John Baptist*'s Scull, and of his Habit; a Tooth of St. *Mark*; some of the B. Virgins Hair; an ancient Picture of St. *John Baptist*, enamel'd in Gold; a piece of the white Robe worn by our Saviour when he was scourg'd; an ancient Picture of our B. Lady, which *Constantine* the Great us'd always to carry about him; one of the Stones wherewith St. *Stephen* was ston'd; the Sword of St. *Peter*.

The Spiritual Treasury.

The Temporal Treasury. Hence being led into the *Temporal Treasury*, we saw, first, the twelve golden Crowns, and as many Back and Breast-pieces of the same Metal, all set thick with Pearls of a great value, which twelve young Virgins us'd to wear anciently upon a certain Festival: Next, three great Carbuncles, one whereof is as big as a large Hen-Egg, and weighs six ounces, being valued at two hundred thousand Crowns: Two Crowns of Gold, adorn'd with precious Stones, one representing the Crown of the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, the other of *Candia*: The *Doge*'s Crown, call'd *Il Corno*, from its resemblance to a Horn, sharp and turning at the top; it is set very close, with a row of most precious Stones, each as big as a Hazel-nut, with a

vast

vast Ruby in the front of it, valued at a hundred thousand Crowns, and one of the faireſt Diamonds in *Europe* in the top of it: They ſhew'd us afterwards the *Flower de Luce* of Gold, with a very fine Diamond in it, the Gift of *Henry* III. King of *France*, at his paſſing by *Venice*, in his way from *Poland* to *France*: Two Unicorns Horns, much leſs than that of St. *Denys* in *France*: Two Crucifixes ſet with a vaſt number of Pearls and rich Stones: The great Candleſtick and Thurible of Gold neatly wrought, each as heavy as a man can carry: A large Chalice of Gold, of that bulk, that a man can ſcarce carry it in both hands: A *Sapphire* weighing ten ounces: A Cup as broad and deep as an ordinary Callote, made of one *Turkey* Stone of an inеſtimable value, the Preſent of a King of *Perſia*: A Tankard of a rich *Cameo*, the Handle being curiouſly cut with a Diamond: A ſmall Vaſe of the Roots of an Emerauld; another of *Sardonick*: A large Cup of Agate; another of a *Roman Agate*, finer and more tranſparent than the other: A rich Box of Mother of Pearl.

The Doge's Palace.

Hence we went to the *Doge*'s Palace, adjoyning to the Church of St. *Mark*, where mounting up the Stairs leading into the open Gallery, we ſaw the two noted Statues of Marble repreſenting *Mars* and *Neptune*, at the head of theſe Stairs, under which you ſee theſe words, *Opus Sanſovini*. This open Gallery brought us into many Chambers of Juſtice, the Clerks Offices, and other Rooms; thence mounting up a Story higher, we were ſhewn the *Doge*'s Chamber of Audience, his Antichambers, Dining-rooms, ſeveral Council-chambers, all excellently painted: The great Chamber of the Senate, where they chuſe Officers, and tranſact other matters of the greateſt moment, being not permitted to depart till they have agreed to the matter in hand; it is ſixty paces long, and half as broad, with two thouſand Seats for the Noblemen, who have Authority to ſit here; it is painted on all ſides by the hands of the beſt Painters of *Italy* of that time. Over the *Doge*'s Throne you ſee a moſt excellent piece of Painting of *Tintoret*, repreſenting Heaven; and the great Pictures upon that ſide of the Room which looks into the Court of the Palace, contain the Hiſtory of Pope *Alexander* III. and the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. In this and the next adjoyning Room we ſaw alſo the Original Pictures of all the Dukes of *Venice*; and in the other Apartments of this Palace, in the Churches and other Palaces of this City, ſo vaſt a number of, and ſuch excellent pieces of Painting of *Titian*, *Tintoret*, *Bellino*, *Gentile*, *Caſtel*, *Franco*, *Briſſano*, *Paolo Veroneſe*, *Perdenone*, and others, that it muſt be confeſs'd, that in this point *Venice* excels *Rome* it ſelf: *Rodolfi*, who has writ on the Painters of the *Venetian* State, will convince you beyond all diſpute of the truth of this Aſſertion.

The little Arſenal.

From theſe Chambers we were conducted to the *Sala* of the *Conſiglio de Dieci*, (call'd otherwiſe the *little Arſenal*) in the ſame Palace. Here are kept Arms for a thouſand Men, (ready upon all occaſions) the Muſquets ready charg'd, and the Pikes and Swords ſo order'd, that by plucking a String, they fall ready to be taken up in good order, ſo that in leſs than half an hours time a thouſand Men may be ready arm'd to ſally out. This Armoury is intended for the Security of the *Doge* and Senators (whilſt aſſembled) againſt any Treaſonable Deſigns, for which reaſon a Door out of this Room opens into the *Great Council-chamber*, the Keys whereof are always laid near the *Doge* when he is preſent. In this Arſenal is alſo kept the Sword and Arms of the great *Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Albania*, ſo famous for his great Exploits againſt the *Turks*: As for the Sword, it is a broad thin Blade, of a reaſonable length, but light. Here alſo you ſee the Standard of the Doge *Zeni*, who reſtor'd Pope *Alexander* III. with his Sword, Buckler and Helmet. The Standard and Horſe-tail belonging to the *Turks*, taken by a *Frenchman* named *Ciotar*. The Statues of *Ludovico Sforza* Duke of *Milan*, and his Spouſe *Viſconti*. The Head of *Cavare*; and the Head in Braſs of *Venerio*, the *Venetian* General in the Battel of *Lepanto*; as alſo the brazen Head of brave *Bragendino*, flea'd alive by the *Turks* for his Country's Service: The Picture of St. *Juſtina*, in a Caſe, adorn'd with rich Stones: A moſt rich Carpet, wrought with curious Figures, a Preſent of a King of *Perſia* to the Republick: The Habits of two noble *Chineſes* baptiz'd at *Venice*: The Armour of brave *Gatta Mela*, with the Picture of a Cat on his Headpiece: The Armour of forty or fifty *Doges* of *Venice*, who headed their Armies in perſon: The Habit, Buckler and Sword of a King of *Perſia*, adorn'd with precious Stones: The Armour of *Henry* IV. King of *France*, and of the Duke of *Roban*: The compleat Armour of a little Boy of ten years old, found dead in a Battel, fighting for the *Venetians*: *Attila*'s Helmet, and his Horſe's Headpiece: A Cannon ſhooting ſeven Shots at once; and another ſhooting threeſcore, out of ten Barrels: Two Halberts, one ſhooting fourteen Shots, the other ſeven: An Iron Cannon carrying two miles: The Iron Collar of *Carara* the *Paduan* Tyrant, and his Iron Croſsbow; The Devil's Organ, or a Trunk of Leather with ten Piſtol-barrels in it of a foot and a half long, diſpos'd like Organ-pipes, which upon opening of the Lock of the Trunk, diſcharge all at once, ſcattering their Bullets all about a great Room: The Box of *Berrargoes* is much ſuch another Invention here: A Piſtol in a Pocket-book, and ſeveral others in Swords and Daggers. Here we alſo ſaw a moſt curious Tabernacle of Cryſtal; a burning Lamp found in *Antenor*'s Tomb; a Burning-glaſs which burns at half a miles diſtance; an exquiſite Piece of *Adam* and *Eve*, with the Tree and Serpent, cut out of one piece of Wood, by *Alberto Dureo*; and laſt of all, the Picture of King *James* of *England*, the only Picture of any Soveraign Prince to be ſeen here.

From the Quarters of *Mars* we went out of the Palace into the *Piazza* of St. *Mark*, into which the aforeſaid Church and this Palace look, one of the nobleſt of that kind that ever I ſaw; for it runs up from the Sea-ſide along the Palace to the Church of St. *Mark*, whence turning on the left hand, it ſpreads in an open and moſt beautiful place, built all along upon Arches and Marble Pillars, and adorn'd with moſt convenient Lodgings for a vaſt number of perſons of the beſt rank. Here alſo ſtand the Mint and Library. The Walk call'd the *Broglio*, where the noble *Venetians* meet twice a day, is in that part of the *Piazza* which lies under the Palace. At the end of it, near the Sea-ſide, you ſee two Pillars of the fineſt Marble, the one bearing upon it the Image of St. *Theodorus*; the other the Lyon of St. *Mark*, being the two Patrons of this City; theſe two Pillars were the Preſent of a certain *Lombard*, under condition, that it ſhould be lawful for any one to play at Dice here, tho' even they play'd falſe play, without incurring the uſual Penalty. Betwixt theſe two Pillars they commonly execute their Malefactors.

The Piazza of St. Mark.

Directly oppoſite to the Palace ſtands the Mint, in a place call'd *la Zeccha*, whence the golden Coin call'd *Zecchino*, worth about ſeven ſhillings and ſix pence of our Money, has got its Name. Juſt by it is the Library, containing a conſiderable number of valuable Books, and much encreas'd by the Library of *Petrarch* (a Canon of *Padua*) and the Manuſcripts beſtow'd upon it by the Greek Cardinal *Beſſarion*, which coſt him thirty thouſand Crowns.

As we were advancing to that part of the *Piazza* near the Church, we eſpied at the very corner of the Wall of the Church four Porphyry Statues of four Monuments, embracing one another, which they told us were the Statues of four foreign Merchants, who having brought hither moſt of the Jewels we had ſeen in the Treaſury of St. *Mark*, poyſon'd one another out of covetouſneſs, and ſo left the State Heir of all.

Juſt before the Church are erected three tall Maſts, (adorn'd with Flags and Streamers on Holidays) upon ſtately Pedeſtals of Braſs, ſignifying the three nobleſt parts of the *Venetian* Dominions, *viz.* the Kingdoms of *Cyprus* and *Candia*, and the State of *Venice*. In this *Piazza* you ſee alſo a great concourſe of foreign Merchants of all Nations in their own Habits, as *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Albanians*, *Sclavonians*, *Polonians*, *Jews*, and *Turks*, and towards night Mountebanks, Morris-dancers, and ſuch like, to divert the Mob, and cajole them out of their Money. In this *Piazza* alſo, *viz.* about fifty paces from the Church of St. *Mark*, ſtands the high Steeple of *Venice*, built forty foot ſquare on all ſides, and two hundred thirty ſix high, the top whereof being cover'd with gilt Tiles, makes a glorious ſhew in a Sunſhiny day; and the Foundation is near as deep under ground as 'tis above, a ſurprizing thing, conſidering it is in *Venice*. From the top of it we had a full proſpect at once of *Venice*, and among other things, of the Horſes of Braſs gilt, which ſtood over the Frontiſpiece of the Church of St. *Mark*, the Workmanſhip of *Liſippus* the famous *Grecian* Statuary; they were preſented to *Nero* by *Tiradates* King of *Armenia*, carried from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople* by *Conſtantine* the Great, and thence brought hither.

The Campanile or high Steeple.

From hence we had alſo a view of the great *Arſenal*, (which ſome would have to be three miles in compaſs, (tho' I think it is not near ſo much) which invited us to haſten thither.

The great Arſenal.

Coming to this *Arſenal*, (where we were forc'd to leave our Swords at the Door) ſeated near the Sea-ſide, we were ſurpriz'd at its moſt admirable Oeconomy,

The Fair.

fifteen

fifteen hundred Men being imploy'd daily here in their Works, the Charges whereof amount yearly to above four hundred thousand Crowns, each of these Workmen having Wine allow'd them twice a day, and that very good, tho' mix'd with Water.

After you enter the Arsenal, you see a Well of fresh Water, in which two pieces of Unicorns Horn are fastned into the bottom, to keep it, as they believe, from being poyson'd. Hence we were led thro' all the vast Rooms of this Magazine, each of which for bigness resembled a vast Church; some of these were fill'd with vast Oars, seven Men to an Oar; another with Nails, another with Scales: In one they were making Saltpetre for Gunpowder; in another they were casting Cannons and Mortars; in others they had laid up vast stores of Masts, some of which were worth eighty pounds. Here we saw vast numbers of great Cannons, some whereof were taken from the *Turks*, with *Turkish* words upon 'em. Here we saw the great Cannon buried in *Candia*, full of golden Medals; and the great Cannons cast here, while *Henry* III. King of *France* dined in this Arsenal; with a prodigious number of Cannon Bullets, tho' a great part of their great Artillery was then imploy'd against the *Turks*. In the Rooms above we saw Arms for fifty thousand Men, Arms for twelve Galleys; and in another Room, for fifty Galleys more: Here was also the Suit of Armour of *Scanderbeg*, and of the Doge *Zani*; the Lantern of *Don John d'Austria*'s Ship in the Battel of *Lepanto*; and another belonging to a *Turkish* Galley: The Armour of *Benjamante Theopoli* and his Accomplices, who intended to have assassinated the Senate and the Doge: Some Arms taken in the Battel of *Lepanto*, and from the *Genoeses*; and several other sorts of Arms of a peculiar contrivance. Here we were also shewn a Draught of the Town and Fort of *Cliffa*, and how it was taken by the *Venetians* twenty years before.

The Arsenal.

Going down again to the place where they build and repair their Galleys, we found it a vast square Court, broad three hundred paces in the Square, divided into many Penthouses of fifty paces long; in the midst of it is a Pond or Chanel, where they try the Galleys, and carry them from thence to the Sea. Here it was that they made and equipp'd a Galley whilst *Henry* III. King of *France* dined. They were at that time busie in building of two Galeasses of a vast bulk. Here we saw the old *Bucentoro*, and the new one building; a Galley of State of the *Doge*, used by him upon *Ascension-day*, when he performs the Ceremony of espousing the Sea, as they call it here; it is a noble Galley, gilt without, with gilt Seats, and Wainscotted round about the Deck, a Partition running quite along the Deck with Seats on both sides, with a low Roof, open on all sides to afford a passage to the Air, but to keep out the Sun, all finely painted, capable of holding five hundred Senators, who in their Robes attend the *Doge* at this Ceremony, who sits in the *Puppe*, in a Chair of State, with the Pope's *Nuncio* on the right, and the Patriarch of *Venice* on the left, the Musick being placed behind him.

Bucentoro.

I happen'd to be thrice at *Venice* at this great Sea-Triumph or Feast of the Ascension: About eight a clock in the Morning the Senators in their Sea-robes meet the *Doge* at his Palace, and conduct him to the Sea-side, where embarking in the *Bucentoro*, they weigh Anchor, and the Signal being given by the Captain's Whistle and sounding of Trumpets, they all at once strike with their Oars, (twenty on each side) and thus majestically go on for two miles upon the *Laguna*, being follow'd by a great number of *Piotta's* and *Gondola's* cover'd with rich Canopies, in which are all the foreign Ministers, Noblemen and Strangers of Quality, attended by their Servants in rich Liveries. Coming to the appointed place, the *Doge* throws a Ring into the Sea, without any other Ceremony but saying these words, *Desponsamus te, Mare, in signum perpetui Dominii: We espouse thee, O Sea, as a token of our perpetual Dominion over thee*: So he goes to St. *Nicholas*'s Church in *Lio*, (an Island near *Venice*) whence, after having assisted at high Mass, he returns in the same state to *Venice*, the Evening being spent in a fine Collation he gives to the Senate, and revelling with *Gondola's*, fine Musick, and other Diversions, upon the *Canal* of *Murano*.

The Fair.

The next morning begins the Fair in St. *Mark*'s Place, which lasting ten days, you see all the Gallants of *Venice* appear there with a great deal of splendour, and the young Ladies in a very odd Disguise, with false Noses and little Beards of black Wool, a Disguise they frequently make use of also upon other occasions when they intend to pass undiscover'd.

Another day we went to see the Isle of St. *George major*, and its stately Monastery, Church, Cloyster and Garden; the Church scarce gives place to any in *Venice*, being the Work of the famous Architect *Palladio*; in it we saw a Silver Lamp of that bulk, that two Men could scarce carry it; and a Pillar of Marble over a side-Altar, with the figure of a Crucifix in it discover'd naturally in the Marble at the polishing of it; and in the *Refectory*, that admirable Piece of the Wedding of *Cana* in *Galilee*, by *Guido Reni*.

From hence we went in our *Gondola* to *Procuratore Nani*'s Palace, in another Island beyond St. *George*'s, being richly furnish'd and adorn'd with the Pictures of many modern Princes and Ladies of *France*, *England* and *Germany*, all excellently well painted: But the chief thing worth our peculiar Observation in this Palace was, its Gardens, a thing as rare to be seen in *Venice* as Coaches. The Master of this Palace is the same *Nani* who has oblig'd the World with his most excellent History of *Venice*. The Palace of Nani.

We took at the same time a view of the Convent of the *Capuchins*, which being a Vow of the Senate in time of a Plague, is built more suitable to the Grandeur of the Senate, than to the Simplicity of the *Capuchins*. The Capuchins.

From hence returning to the Town, we came to *Madonna di Salute*, a new round Church, likewise a Vow of the Senate in another Plague-time, which when finish'd will be one of the finest Churches in *Venice*. The Pictures in the Roof are done by *Titian*, as the Picture of a Feast in the Sacristy was by *Tintoret*. Madonna di Salute.

The next we saw was, the Church of the Canon-Regulars call'd *la Carita*, in which Convent Pope *Alexander* III. liv'd privately in the quality of a Chaplain, till he was discover'd by a Pilgrim, and afterwards restor'd by the Senate. Over the Entrance of the Quire you see the Picture of the said *Alexander* III. admitting the Emperour *Frederick* to kiss his Feet. Here is also a very good Picture of the raising of *Lazarus* by our Saviour, by the hand of *Bassan*. La Carita.

Another day we visited the Church of the *Dominicans* call'd St. *Giovanne & Paulo*, where is to be seen the Tomb-stone of the Lord *Henry Aubigni*, second Brother to the Duke of *Lenox* and *Richmond*, who died here in his Travels. Before the Door stands the *Equestris Statua* of Brass gilt, of *Bartholomeo Coleono Bergamensc*, a brave Soldier, to whom (as the Inscription tells you, *Oli militare imperium optime gestum*) the Senate decreed this Statue to be set up. The Tabernacle and Altar of this Church are very noble; the Chapel of St. *Hiacinth*, and the Miracles of this Saint, are of the hand of *Bassan* and *Palmarino*; the Martyrdom of St. *John* and *Paul* is of *Titian*: The Convent also of St. *John* and *Paul* is one of the best in *Italy*. The Church of St. *Salvadore*, a neat Structure, and noted for the Tombs of divers *Doges* and other Persons of Quality. Here are two excellent Pictures, by *Titian*, the first representing the Transfiguration, upon the high Altar; the other upon the right hand of the Wall, of the Annunciation, under which *Titian* wrote these words, *Titianus fecit, fecit*. The Picture here of the Last Supper is done by *Titian*'s Master. On the Epistle side of the high Altar is a little Chapel, over whose Altar is the Tomb of St. *Theodore*, one of the Patrons of this City. S. Giovanni & Paulo. S. Salvadore.

In the Church of St. *Chrysostom*, upon a side-Altar on the left hand, you see the Stone Statues of our Saviour and his twelve Apostles, by the curious hand of *Tullius Lombardus*, whose Statues adorn also St. *Anthony*'s Tomb at *Padua*. St. Chrysostom.

In the Church of the *Apostoli* I saw a rare old Picture of St. *Lucy*; and in that of the Jesuits, the Tomb of St. *Barbara*, a Virgin Martyr.

The Cathedral Church of *Venice* has little considerable in it, except the Tomb of St. *Laurentius Justinianus*, a great Preacher, and the first Patriarch of *Venice*. The Dome.

The Church of St. *Jacomo* was, according to an old Inscription, built twelve hundred Years ago, in the very infancy of *Venice*; it has divers good Pictures of *Lanfrancus* and *Marcus Titianus*, old *Titian*'s Scholar. S. Jacomo.

The 23d of *April*, being St. *George*'s Day, we went to the *Greek* Schismaticks Church, dedicated to St. *George*, and found their Ceremonies little different from the *Catholick Greeks*; their Tenets may be seen in a Book call'd *Acta & Scripta Theologorum Wittenburgensium & Hieremiæ Patriarchæ*; printed at *Wittemberg*, 1584. The Greek Church.

One *Saturday*, after Dinner, we also view'd the *Jews* Synagogue, and among other things observ'd a Rabbin, who look'd like a *Puritan* Minister, make an Homily to his Congregation in *Italian*. Another time we took a turn to *Murano*, where are the famous Glass-houses of The Jews Synagogue.

The Glass-houses of *Murano.*

Venice, whence they are said to vend Two hundred thousand Crowns worth a Year for the use of all *Europe*. I must confess I was extreamly pleas'd, not only with the sight of so many sorts of Drinking-glasses, fitted to the Humour of every Nation, but especially with the Industry of some of the Glass-workmen here, who had made whole Ships with all their Tackling; Organs; Castles, with their Fortifications, Cannons, Gates, Centries, &c. with almost stupendious Art. In *Murano* is also to be seen the Palace of Signior *Camillo Trevisano*, with the rare Gardens after the *Roman* way.

I spent the rest of my time in viewing the well-furnish'd Shops of all sorts and sizes, the *Canale Grande*, and The Palaces. the most celebrated Palaces of *Justiniani*, *Mocenigo*, *Grimani*, *Priuli*, *Contarini*, *Foscoli*, *Loredano*, *Gussoni* and *Cornaro*, to my no small satisfaction, being equally to be admir'd for the richness of their Furniture and Contrivance.

The Men famous for Learning, who have adorn'd this City, I found to have been these; *Laurentius Justinianus*, *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Petrus Bembus*, *Aloysius*, *Lippomanus*, *Paulus Paruta*, *Baptistus Egnatius*, *Ludovicus Dolce*, *Paulus Manutius*, &c. I had the good fortune to see, during my stay here some Years before, the Ingenious *Loredano*, and Learned Procurator *Nani*. The History of *Venice* may be read in *Andrea Morasini*, *Paolo*, *Partua*, *Sabellico*, *Berdino Tomasino*, *Corido* and *Nani*.

Having thus spent a month at *Venice*, it put me in mind of the Saying of *Socrates* of *Athens*, *viz.* that it was *melior meretrix*, *quam Uxor*; the stinking Cellars and Chanels, the badness of the Water, and moistness of the Air of this City, rendring a long stay inconvenient, if not troublesom, to Foreigners. So leaving these polish'd *Amsterdammers*, I return'd by the way of *Padua*, once *Padua.* the Mother of *Venice*, but now the second in the *Venetian* State, built by *Antenor*. It is a stately spacious Town, but has more Houses than Inhabitants, having been much dispeopled by intestine Divisions and the nearness of *Venice*; it stands in the *Marca Trevigiana*, near the *Eugenian* Hills, in a fertile Plain, fortified with good Walls and Ramparts: The University here is chiefly renown'd for the Study of Physick. The most *Antenor's* remarkable things here are, the Tomb of *Antenor*, with *Tomb.* a *Gothick* Inscription; the publick Schools, call'd *Il Bue*, or an *Ox*; the Physick-Garden: The Body of St. *Anthe-* St. *Anthony's* ny of *Padua* lies entomb'd under the Altar of the open *Tomb.* Chapel, on the left hand of the Church dedicated to that Saint, the said Chapel being beautified with most curious Marble Figures, representing the chief Actions of St. *Anthony*, and twenty seven great Lamps of Silver gilt hang before the said Altar.

Over against this Chapel is such another open Chapel, call'd St. *Felice*, most curiously painted by the famous *Giotto*; and in a side-Chapel on the right hand, the Tomb of brave *Gatta Mela*; the Tomb of *Alexander Contareno*, the *Venetian* General, fastned to a side-Pillar, and the finest cut that ever I saw. The Quire of the Church is all inlaid with Wood; and in the Cloyster of the Convent you see divers Tombs of learned Men: It was hereabouts I saw upon a black Marble Stone these words, *Interiora Thomæ Howardi Comitis Arondeliæ*; *The Bowels of the Earl of* Arundel: This Great Man died at *Padua*. As you come out of this Church, the *Equestris Statua* of the just-now-mention'd *Gatta Mela*; he was nick-nam'd *Gatta* for his watchfulness, his true Name being *Eresino di Narni*.

St. *Justina's* Church and Convent.

The Church and Convent of St. *Justina* are not inferiour to any in *Italy*, the first being built by the great *Palladio*; the Body of this Saint lies interr'd under the high Altar, which is extreamly rich, as well as the Pavement of red and black Marble. The Cupola's are very fine, and the Seats in the Quire adorn'd with the Histories of the Old and New Testament cut in Wood; the Martyrdom of St. *Justina* being painted most curiously over the Abbot's Seat, by *Paolo Veronese*. The Tombs of St. *Luke* the Evangelist, of St. *Matthias*, and of St. *Prosdochimus*, St. *Peter's* Disciple, and first Bishop of *Padua*, are worth a Traveller's Observation. In the Field before this Church is a Fair kept every month, and the Ladies and Gentlemen of the Town take the *Tour à la mode* in their Coaches.

The Cloyster of the Convent is remarkable for its Painting, for the neat Library, and for the Picture of St. *Justina* in the Abbot's Chamber. The Cathedral here is not so considerable for its Fabrick as for its Revenues, which amounting to a hundred thousand Crowns *per ann.* maintain a hundred Clergy-men and other Officers: It has twenty seven Prebends, who are commonly Gentlemen. The Palace of the *Capitano grande* is very beautiful without, and has a most curious Library. The great Hall, call'd *Il Palagio di Ragione*, is a hundred and eighty The great paces long, and forty broad, without any Pillars, with Hall. four large Doors, over each of which stands the Statue of a learned *Paduan*. On the Roof are painted Astronomical Figures; and at one end of it is fix'd a round Stone, with these words upon it, *Lapis opprobrii*, i. e. *the Stone of Disgrace*; upon which whosoever will sit in publick, and declare himself *non solvendo*, can't be imprison'd. At the other end you see *Livy's* Head in white Marble; and out of a Back-door joyning to the Wall of this Hall, *Livy's Busto* in Stone, with this Epitaph under it in Gothick Letters:

Ossa Tui Livii Patavini unius omnium mortalium judicio digni, cujus prope invicto calamo invicti Populi Romani res gestæ conscriberentur.

The Picture of the high Altar in the *Austin Friers* St. *Austins.* Church, and that of St. *John* Baptist in the Sacristy, are of the hand of *Guido Reni*.

Near this Church are to be seen the Ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*, the *Arena* of which is oval, and retains its The *Arena.* ancient Name.

The high Altar in the *Dominicans* Church is very stately; and behind it, in the Quire, the curious Tombs of the *Carari*, once Lords of *Padua*, before they were displaced by the *Venetians*.

In the Church of St. *Francesco Grande* is a fine Altar of white Marble, and the Tombs of *Cavalcante* and *Lengolio* are curious Pieces.

In the little Church of the *Oratorians*, call'd St. *Thomas* of *Canterbury's*, lies interr'd the Lady *Catherine Whitenhall*, in a Vault, cover'd with a white Marble Stone; she St. *Thomas of Canterbury.* was Daughter to the late Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and married to *Thomas Whitenhall* Esquire, who died here in her Travels.

Padua has two Academies of Wits, called *Gli Recovrati* and *Gli Inflammati*. The Learned Men were, *Livy*, *Apponius*, *Paulus* the Jurisconsult, *Sperone Speroni*, *Antonius Querenchus*, *Jacobus Zabarella*; and *Titian* the great Painter. The History of *Padua* is to be read in *Angelo Portinari delle felicitade di* Padua, and in a Book entituled, *Gl'Origin di* Padua.

From *Padua* we set out towards *Milan*, taking our way over *Vicenza*, a Town seated upon the two Rivers *Vicenza.* *Bachilione* and *Rerone*, under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction. The Townhouse and large Piazza, the Palace of Count *Valmarana*, the Triumphal Arch (the Work of *Palladio*) leading into the *Campo Marzo*, where they keep the *Tour à la mode* in Coaches, and in fine, the curious Playhouse, are worth a Traveller's observation.

The Academy of Wits here are call'd *Gl'Olympici*. The History of this place is to be seen in *Jacomo Mazari* and *Alphonso Loschi*.

Hence we went to *Verona*, surnamed *la Nobile*, seated *Verona.* in a most excellent Air upon the River *Addesis*; it belongs to the *Venetians*, and is strengthned by three Castles. The Cathedral here may boast rather of its Antiquity than Stateliness; in it is the Tomb of Pope *Lucius* the Third, with the following Epitaph:

Luca dedit lucem tibi, Luci, Pontificatum
Ostia, Papatum Roma, Verona miri.
Imo Verona dedit tibi Lucii gaudia, Roma
Exilium, turas Ostia, Luca mori.

The other things worth taking notice of here are, the Tomb of *Signori della Scala*, once Lords of this place, from whence *Joseph* and *Julius Scaliger* pretend to be descended.

The rare Picture of St. *George*, in the Convent of St. *George*, by the hand of *Paolo Veronese*; the famous Amphitheatre, are the most entire in *Europe*.

The Academy of Wits of this place stile themselves *Gli Philarmonici*. Their Learned Men were *Zeno Veronensis*, *Cornelius Nepos*, *Pliny* the second, *Catullus*, *Fracastorius*, *Onuphrius*, *Panuinus*, *Paulus Æmilius* the Historian, *Francesco Pona*, *Aloysius Novarinus*, and *Paolo Veronese* that noted Painter.

Upon the Plains of *Verona* was fought the Battel in which *C. Marius* overthrew the *Cimbers*, and another betwixt *Theodoric* and *Odoacer*. The History of *Verona* may be read in *Torello Saraina*, *Girolamo di Corte*, and in the *Antiquitates Veronenses Onufrii Panuini*.

From hence we travel'd towards *Brescia*, by the way of *Peschiera* and *Disenzano*, both seated upon the Lake *Peschiera.* *di Garda*; the first is a regular Fortification with five Bastions, and the last noted for excellent Fish and

Mus-

Muscatello Wine, call'd by them properly *Vino Santo*.

Brescia. *Brescia* is also a strong Town under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction, noted for the best Gunsmiths. Hence we

Crema. took a turn to *Crema* and *Bergamo*, two *Venetian* Towns on the Frontiers of the *Milanese*: *Bergamo* is seated very high, and well fortified. In the *Austin* Friers Church here lies buried *Ambrosius Calepinus*, the Author of the famous Latin Dictionary.

Bergam. From *Bergamo* we travel'd to *Milan*, thro' *Mantua* and *Mirandola*.

Mantua. *Mantua* is the capital City of a Dukedom of the same Name, govern'd by its own Prince, of the House of *Gonsague*. It is seated in the midst of Marshes, not far from the River *Mincio*; The Duke's Palace was formerly, (before this City was surpriz'd by the Imperialists) one of the finest Palaces in *Italy*, having at that time, as I was told, no less than seven changes of rich Hangings for every Room, besides many other Rarities.

Casal. The Town of *Casal*, with its Citadel, is one of the strongest places of all *Italy*. The Duke's Revenues are computed yearly at five hundred thousand Crowns, and he is able to raise fifteen thousand Foot, and two thousand Horse. *Virgil* and the modern Latin Poet *Baptista Mantuanus* were of this place, the History of which may be seen in *Mario Aquicola*.

Mirandola. The Dukedom of *Mirandola* is of no great extent, having got its Name from three Children brought forth at a Birth by *Euridis*, the Daughter of *Constantius* Son to *Constantine* the Great, who being fallen in love with one *Manfred*, fled with him to *Naples*, thence to *Ravenna*, and at last liv'd there for a considerable time amongst the Shepherds, till *Manfred* purchased those Lands, which were afterwards confirm'd to him by the Emperour; and from the Birth of his three Sons, *Picus*, *Pius*, and *Papazzo*, at one time, got the Name of *Mirandola*, or *Miraculous*. The Revenues of the Duke of *Mirandola* are about eighty thousand Crowns yearly.

The most famous Men of this Country was, the great *Joannes Picus Mirandulanus*, whose Life was written by Sir *Thomas Moor*.

From *Mirandola* I pass'd forward over *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Lodi*, and *Marigno*, to *Milan*, whence taking my way thro' the Country of the *Swiss*, by the Lake of *Como*, and over the Mount of St. *Godart*, came to *Basel*, where taking Boat upon the *Rhine*, I saw *Strasburgh*, *Brisac*, *Spire*, *Philipsburgh*, *Oppenheim*, *Coblentz*, *Harmerstedt*, *Worms*, *Francfort*, *Mayence*, *Cologn*, *Dusseldorp*, *Skinskonce*, *Rat*, *Wesel*, *Arnheim*, &c. and continued my Journey through *Holland* and *Flanders* to *Calais*, whence I pass'd over to *Dover*, into my native Country of *England*.

A NEW VOYAGE TO ITALY,

WITH

A Description of its chief Towns, Churches, Tombs, Libraries, Palaces, Statues and Antiquities.

By *MAXIMILIAN MISSON*, Gent.

Done into English, and adorn'd with Figures, in two Volumes.

VOL. I.

LETTER I.

SIR.

Holland being a low flat Country, like one continued Meadow, we saw, as we approach'd the Shore, the Pinacles of the Steeples and the Trees, as if they were rising out of the Water. The whole Country is cut into Canals and Ditches with incredible Labour, without which the Grounds would be so soak'd with Water, as would render the Country not habitable; whereas now, by the Industry of its Inhabitants, it is the richest and best Peopled in the World, proportionable to its extent: Some make their number amount to Two millions five hundred thousand Souls; some to Two millions in the seven Provinces.

The Cities of *Holland* are generally very neat and beautiful, their Inhabitants sparing no Pains nor Cost to make them appear so, by constantly washing them; and having the insides of their Houses curiously painted; and their Windows are generally of Glass as clear as Crystal: Their cleanliness extends even to their Shops and Stables, which are kept neater here than the best Apartments in some Countries. Their Streets are so clean, that you see the Women walk almost constantly in 'em in their Slippers; and the Canals being on both sides planted with Trees, this affords a most delightful shady passage thro' all the chief Streets of the Cities, and of some of the Towns and Villages.

They have one City of the first rank, twenty of the second, more than thirty of the third, above two hundred large Towns, and eight hundred Villages.

Theſe Canals are alſo very convenient for travelling, which is moſt generally perform'd here in large Boats cover'd againſt the Injuries of the Air, and drawn by Horſes, which go off and bring you to your Journeys end at certain hours; the ſame ſerve for the tranſportation of Commodities from one place to another: And ſome of theſe Canals afford tolerable ſtore of Fiſh.

Notwithſtanding all theſe ſeeming Advantages, there are many things wanting in *Holland*, their ſupplies of Wines, nay, even of Corn, and moſt other things neceſſary for the ſuſtenance of Life, coming from foreign Countries, which makes them be ſtor'd with ſuch a prodigious number of Ships, that ſome have compar'd 'em to all what *Europe* can produce of that kind together. But as on one ſide they are chiefly oblig'd to the Sea for their Riches, ſo on the other hand it proves the occaſion of almoſt irreparable Damages and Deſolations; for tho' they take all poſſible Precautions to maintain their Dams of Earth, and their Mills for the emptying of the Water, yet does ſometimes the impetuoſity of this Watery Element break thro' all theſe Fences, which has coſt at ſeveral times the Lives of ſome millions of People.

Apr. 17 1429 a hundred thouſand People were drown'd about *Dort*.

Another Inconveniency is, the ſudden change of the Weather from heat to cold, a thing not agreeable to thoſe who are not uſed to it. Their Impoſitions are alſo very heavy, which conſequently occaſions a ſcarcity of Victuals, but their plenty of Trade ſeems to make them a ſufficient amends for this Inconveniency.

Rotterdam.

We were not a little ſurpriz'd with the firſt ſight of *Rotterdam*, for its Canals being for the moſt part ſo deep and broad, that they are capable of receiving Veſſels of a great bulk; this affords the moſt agreeable Proſpect of a mixture of Trees, tops of lofty Houſes and Maſts, at a diſtance.

The City of *Rotterdam* has not always been in the ſame flouriſhing condition 'tis in now, which makes it challenge a place among the Cities of the ſecond rank in *Europe*, its Ports being both large and commodious, the City rich, populous and pleaſant, and extreamly flouriſhing; their Storehouſes for the Navy, the Townhouſe and the Bank, are goodly Structures; their Glaſs-houſe (famous thro' all the Seven Provinces) works abundance of little enamel'd Bowls, and ſuch-like Baubles, curiouſly done, which are ſold to the Savages in the *Indies*.

The firſt Statue was erected 1540, of Wood, another of Stone 1657, and this of Braſs, 1622.

There are two *French* Churches here: The Statue of Braſs of *Eraſmus* is fix'd on a Pedeſtal of Marble in the place call'd the *Great Bridge*, ſurrounded with Iron Rails. *Eraſmus* is dreſs'd in his Doctor's Robe, with a Book in his Hand; and near it you ſee the following Diſtich, wrote over the Door of a little Houſe where he was born *Octob.* 27. 1467. but died at *Baſil*, *June* 12. 1536.

Ædibus hic ortus, mundum decoravit Eraſmus
Artibus ingenuis, Religione, Fide.

We made a little excurſive Journey to a ſmall Village call'd *Leekerkeek*, about three leagues from the City, upon the River *Leek*, where the Lord of the Mannor told us that the Salmon-fiſhing (the fifth part whereof only belongs to him) uſed formerly to amount to twenty thouſand Livres and more *per annum* for his ſhare, but that of late years the Salmon having left that River, the Fiſhing (which they are forc'd to continue only to maintain their Right) does not defray the charge.

At the ſame place they ſhew'd us a Woman, who was the Year before brought to bed of ſix Sons at one birth, four of them were baptiz'd, and the eldeſt liv'd four months after.

At the Lord of the Mannor's Houſe we ſaw alſo a Servant-maid nam'd *de la Brato*, who under that Name was muſter'd, and ſerv'd no leſs than ſeven years in the quality of a Muſqueteer.

We were credibly inform'd, that a few years before there died in this place one *Gerard Baſtianſon*, a Fiſherman, who was full eight foot high, and tho' a very lean perſon, weigh'd five hundred weight: The Doors of his Houſe, and his Clothes, which were ſhewn us, confirm'd us in what they told us of his bulk. I am,

Sir,

At *Rotterdam*, *Oct.* 6. 1687, *N. S.*

Yours, &c.

LETTER II.

SIR,

Delft.

THE ordinary Paſſage-boat carried us in two hours from hence to *Delft*, a City that holds the third rank in the Aſſembly of the States of *Holland*. One of the beſt Curioſities they ſhew you in this City is, the Tomb of *William* Prince of *Orange*, aſſaſſinated here by *Balthaſar Gerard*, 1584. The Arſenal, the Townhouſe, the *Stadtholders* Palace, the Grand Place, and the great Hoſpital, with its Gardens, are alſo worth the ſight of a Traveller. The *Canal* betwixt this City and the *Hague* is not above a league in length, in ſight of *Reſwick* and *Voerburgh*, two pleaſant Villages, and adorn'd on both ſides with moſt delightful Summer-ſeats, Walks and Gardens.

Hague.

The *Hague*, being without Gates or Walls, is reckon'd among the Villages, notwithſtanding which, as it enjoys the Privilege of a City, ſo its Grandeur and Beauty deſervedly entitles it to that Name, being beſides this the Reſidence of the Princes of *Orange*, and all the foreign Miniſters, and the place of aſſembly of the *States General*; beſides that, the great concourſe of Foreigners of all ſorts renders the People more obliging and ſociable than in any other place of *Holland*. Add to this, that the Air is very good, the Wood near the Town extreamly delightful, and the Walk from thence to the Village of *Scheveling*, near the Sea-ſide, very diverting. Here they ſhew a Chariot furniſh'd both with Wheels and Sails, which is carried along by the Wind upon the Sea-ſhore, which is both hard and level.

Its Situation.

Its Situation is certainly the moſt pleaſant of any City in *Holland*, having the before-mention'd Wood to the North, moſt fertile Meadows to the South, good Arable Lands to the Eaſt, and the Sea to the Weſt.

The Princes of *Orange* keep their Reſidence in the Palace of the ancient Earls of *Holland*; but that call'd the *Old Court*, where they formerly lodg'd, is much the more regular Structure: But the Houſes of Pleaſure about the *Hague* are generally very beautiful.

We took, among other things, a view of the Church of the Village of *Loſdun*, ſo famous for the two Baſons of Braſs preſerv'd there in memory of the three hundred ſixty five Children of the Counteſs of *Henneberg*, Daughter to *Florent* IV. Earl of *Holland*, that were baptiz'd in them. I ſuppoſe you have heard the Story, how that the ſaid Counteſs having reproach'd a Beggar-woman with having too many Children, the poor Wretch, by way of imprecation, wiſh'd her as many as there were Days in the Year; which being fulfill'd accordingly, they were all chriſtned, (the Boys by the Name of *John*, the Girls *Elizabeth*) and buried in the Church of *Loſdun*. The whole Hiſtory is painted at large in the ſaid Church, on both ends of which the two Baſons are fix'd.

This Story is atteſted by *Eraſmus*, *Vrsinus*, *Goltzius*, and others.

From the *Hague* we went forward to *Leyden*, a place not ſo much frequented by Courtiers and Officers, nor ſo much diſturb'd with Buſineſs and Traffick as the *Hague* and *Rotterdam*, but exceeding charming by its intrinſick Beauty and Quiet, ſo that you ſeem to enjoy the benefit of a Country Life in the midſt of a great City: Its chiefeſt Trade conſiſts in the Woollen Manufactury, which, together with the Univerſity, makes it one of the moſt conſiderable Cities in *Holland*.

Leyden.

The number of Students is commonly 1500.

In the *Anatomy Hall* they ſhew you a great many Skeletons both of Men and Beaſts, abundance of Plants, Fruits, Animals, Arms, Habits, Pictures, Mummies, Urns, Images, &c. and among the reſt the Picture of a *Pruſſian* Peaſant, who having ſwallow'd a large Knife, the ſame (as they tell you) was cut out again of his Stomach, and he liv'd eight Years after.

In the Gallery of the Phyſick-Garden, and the adjoyning Cabinet, call'd the *Indian Cabinet*, we ſaw divers natural Curioſities, among the reſt a wing'd Cat and Ape, the Hand of a Mermaid, a Vegetable *Priapus*, a moſt curious Plant, a Monſter produced from a Hens Egg; a Piece of Money of Paper, made during the Siege of *Leyden* by the *Spaniards*, in 1574, with this Inſcription on one ſide, *Hac libertatis ergo*; on the other, *Pugno pro Patriæ*: an *Eaſt-India* Serpent, on whoſe Skin are to be ſeen ſeveral natural Figures reſembling *Arabick* Characters; beſides a great number of Animals, Inſects, and other things, preſerv'd in Vials fill'd with Spirit of Wine.

Before I take my leave of *Leyden*, I muſt not forget to give you an account of the *Rhine*, which is loſt near its Harbour, where moſt other Rivers are at the largeſt; for

for the *Rhine* dividing it self into two Branches near *Schenkerschonz*, one of 'em takes the Name of the *Wahal*, the other a little above *Arnheim* that of *Yssel*; and continuing its course about seven or eight leagues below that City, as far as *Dorstadt*, is there again subdivided into two other small Chanels, the chiefest whereof takes the Name of the *Leck*; and the other Rivulet, which turns more to the right, retains the Name of the *Rhine*; till coming to *Utrecht*, it emits another Branch, which taking its coarse to the North, is known by the Name of the *Vecht*; and the other continuing its course, by the Name of the *Rhine*, to *Warden*, it at last looses it self in two or three Canals at *Leyden*. The cause of this odd fate of the *Rhine* is attributed to an Earthquake, which throwing part of the *Downs* into the mouth of this River, it having been shut ever since, the Waters of the *Rhine* were driven back, and consequently enlarg'd and deepned the Chanel of the *Leck* as you see it now.

His right Name was John Boccold.

They also shew you here the Shopboard belonging to that noted Taylor call'd *John* of *Leyden*, (where he was born) the chief of the *Anabaptists*.

From hence to *Harlem* is five hours travelling by the Passage-boat, the *Canal* being all-along lined with a great number of Country-seats and Summer-houses.

Harlem is a large and pleasant City, and for its agreeable situation, may challenge the preference before *Leyden*, most of its *Canals* being mix'd with the little River *Sparm*. This City is chiefly famous for the Linnen Manufactury and that of Tape, tho' of late Years they have made also great quantities of Silk-stuffs. The great Church (the largest in all the Seven Provinces) and the Townhouse are stately Structures; and the Wood without the City is a great addition to its pleasant situation.

The Art of Printing invented at Harlem.

Lawrence Coster, who challenges the first Invention of Printing, was a Native of this City; tho' *John Guttenbergh* of *Strasburgh*, and *Conrade* and *Arnold*, two Brothers of *Mayence*, challenge that Honour before him. However, those of *Harlem*, in honour of their Townsman, keep in their Townhouse the first Book that ever was printed, in a Silver Case wrapt in Silk, the keeping whereof is committed to the care of several of the Magistrates; and the Statue of *Lawrence Coster* is to be seen in the same place: This Inscription, with the two following Distichs, are to be seen in golden Letters over the Door of the House where the said *Lawrence Coster* liv'd:

MEMORIÆ SACRUM,
Typographia ars artium omnium Conservatrix, hic primum inventa circa annum 1440.

Vana quid Archetypos & prela Moguntia jactas?
Harlemi *Archetypos prelaque nata scias;*
Extulit hic monstrante Deo, Laurentius *artem*
Dissimulare virum. Dissimulare Deum est.

A Mermaid at Harlem.

Meyer assures us, that 1403. a Mermaid was cast ashore by a Tempest near *Harlem*, who was brought to feed upon Bread and Milk, taught to spin, and liv'd for many Years. *John Gerard* of *Leyden* adds, that she would frequently pull off her Clothes and run towards the Water; and, that her Speech was so confus'd a noise, as not to be understood by any body: She was buried in the Churchyard, because she had learnt to make the sign of the Cross. He speaks this upon the credit of several Persons that had seen her.

It being pretty late, we took Coach at *Harlem*, which Carriage, tho' somewhat uneasie by reason of its not being hung, brought us in an hours time to *Amsterdam*. I am,

Sir,

Amsterdam, Oct. 15. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER III.

Amsterdam.

SInce it would require a long continuance in the City of *Amsterdam* to learn every thing that belongs to it, and a large Volume to describe it all, I will content my self with giving rather a Scheme than a Description of a place which is, beyond all dispute, one of the most beautiful and important Cities in the World; however for its extent it is in no wise to be compar'd to *London*, there being, according to calculation, in *London* about Seven hundred thousand Souls, but in *Amsterdam* not above Two hundred thousand; but for Riches and Trade it may vie with any City in the World, witness their *East-India Company*, which has waged Wars alone against very potent Princes, without any considerable diminution of their Trade.

Their East-India Company founded in 1594.

This City is built upon Piles fix'd in the Marshes on the South side of the River *Y* or *Ye*, which is a Branch of the South Sea: Its Fortifications are not inconsiderable, consisting of many Bastions faced with Brick, surrounded with a Ditch eighty paces broad fill'd with running Water, which, together with the Sluces, by which means they can lay all the circumjacent Country under Water, renders it almost impregnable; besides the ordinary Garison, the Militia or Train'd Bands of the City consist of sixty Companies of a hundred and fifty Men each.

The Townhouse is said to have cost 3 millions.

The Townhouse is a spacious and most magnificent Structure, of hewn Stone; its length is a hundred and ten paces, and its breadth twenty four; it is highly esteem'd for its regular Architecture, tho' most are of opinion that the Foundation cost as much as the Fabrick above ground; however, the Doors which give entrance to this great and splendid Palace seem to be too small, in proportion of the whole, and the Square or place before it is neither neat nor regular.

The New Church.

Coming from thence, you turn to the left hand into the principal Church of the City, formerly dedicated to St. *Catherine*, but now call'd *The New Church*; it is not so large as either of the great Churches at *Leyden* or *Harlem*; for as *Amsterdam* was no more than a poor Village within these five hundred Years, and its condition even in our Age was not comparable to what you see it now, this Church was built answerable to its power. They tell you, that the Pulpit, made of Wood of *Gothick* carving, with its Canopy, cost two hundred thousand Crowns; and the Organs (which are extraordinary fine) at least a hundred thousand Crowns; the Steeple intended to be erected remains imperfect. On the Glass Windows of this Church is painted the History of the Emperour *Maximilian* V, who bestow'd the Imperial Crown upon the Arms of this City. The Tomb of Admiral *de Ruyter*, in this Church, is a fine Piece. The Synagogue of the *Portuguese Jews* is a stately secure Fabrick; but that of the *High-Dutch* is but very indifferent. It is observable, that notwithstanding the Inquisition of *Spain* and *Portugal*, the Agents of both these Crowns at *Amsterdam* were *Jews*.

One of their Houses of Correction is for the young Debauchees, where they are kept to their Tasks, under the Penalty of whipping. There is another such a one for the Whores, who are not treated with the same Severity.

The *Roman Catholicks* enjoy Liberty of Conscience here as in other parts of the Seven Provinces, tho' their number is not near so considerable as some have endeavour'd to perswade us; for I have been inform'd by Persons of Knowledge and Credit, that the *Roman Catholicks*, and all other Sectaries together, don't make a fourth part of *Amsterdam*.

The Beguines instituted in 1207.

In this City remains still a Convent of certain Nuns call'd *Beguines*, compos'd of Maidens and Widows, who have no Children, and who need no other Qualifications to be admitted into this Society than a Testimonial of their good behaviour, and a Competency to live upon either by themselves, or in conjunction with one or more of the Sisters, as they find it most suitable to their purpose. The Convent (which contains about a hundred and thirty Sisters) is built like a little City with a Wall and Ditch about it, within which stands a Church, where they are oblig'd to perform their Devotions at certain hours. They wear an odd black Habit, receive and pay Visits, and quit the Convent when they please.

The Houses of *Amsterdam* being founded upon Piles of Wood, this is the reason they will not allow any Coaches here, except to Physicians and some Strangers of note, instead whereof they make use of a kind of Sleds made like Coaches, but this carriage being but slow, and uneasie, is not generally approv'd of.

We saw at *Amsterdam* a *French* Opera, but wanting both good Machines and Actors, we were not much delighted with it.

Their Musick-houses.

The so much celebrated Musick-houses of *Amsterdam* are publick Houses or Taverns, where young People, of the dregs of the People, come under pretence of dancing, but in effect to pick up lewd Women, who resort thither in great numbers, and to carry them to other convenient Lodgings, these being intended only for their meeting places. They are generally visited by Strangers, out of curiosity.

The

The Exchange of *Amsterdam* is two hundred foot long and a hundred and twenty broad: The Galleries above are supported by forty six Pillars, but are not so spacious nor so many as those over the *London* Exchange.

The Academy, stiled the *Illustrious School*, is also a goodly Structure, divided into several Schools for Divinity, Philosophy, History, Law and Physick.

There are five high Towers in this City, which have each a great Clock, and placed at such a convenient distance, as that the hours of the Day are known all over the Town.

Since my last, I took another turn to *Losduen*, where I observ'd that the Inscription in the Church of this Village differs from the passage relating to this matter found in the Annals, where the Bishop that baptiz'd the three hundred sixty five Children is call'd *Guido*, Suffragan of *Utrecht*; whereas in the Annals he is stiled *William*, Suffragan of *Treves*; but this might be occasion'd by the carelessness of the Transcribers. Above the Inscription you see these two Verses:

Ex tibi monstrosum nimis & memorabile factum
Quale nec à mundi eruditione datum.

And below,

Hæc lege mox animo stupefactus, Lectoralibus.

I am,

Sir,

At *Amsterdam*,
Oct. 20. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER IV.

WE pass'd seven hours upon the Canal betwixt *Amsterdam* and *Utrecht* very pleasantly; leaving on the right hand the old Castle of *Abcaw*, and the Village of the same name, the Boundary of the Province of *Holland* on that side, about three leagues from *Amsterdam*; we no sooner came to *Utrecht*, but found it to recede much of that extream neatness we observ'd in the Province of *Holland*, yet it retains a sufficient share of it.

Utrecht. This City is famous for its Antiquity, its University, and the Union made here 1579, which is the Foundation-stone of the whole Republick. The Steeple of the Cathedral is very high, and the Church contains many Relicks highly valued by the *Roman Catholicks*.

Its Mall. The Mall, and the Walks about it, without the Gates of the City, are infinitely pleasant, being upon that score spar'd by the *French* King's special Command, when his Troops ravag'd all the Country round about. A certain Gentleman of *Utrecht* told me, that there were no less than forty eight Towns within the reach of a days Journey from *Utrecht*, and among 'em thirty three to which you may go, and come back thence the same day. The Country about *Utrecht* has a far different Face from what you see in *Holland*, their Fields being for the most part plough'd Lands enclos'd with strong Hedges.

Zeist. Two hours from *Utrecht* we pass'd in sight of *Zeist*, and of the Castle on the right hand: It is a very handsom Structure, enclos'd with a Ditch full of running Water, adorn'd with Labyrinths, Gardens, Statues, Fountains and other Ornaments, being built not many Years ago by one of the richest Lords of this Country. The Fields betwixt *Rhenen* and *Arnheim* are for the most part planted with Tobacco, propp'd by Stakes; and at *Rhencom*, a Village three hours on this side of *Rhenen*, you see a Stone, the Boundary betwixt the Lordship of *Utrecht* and the Province of *Guelders*.

Arnheim. *Arnheim* has nothing remarkable but its Fortifications. Two hours and a half beyond it we pass'd the *Yssel*, divided into three Branches, near each other; and afterwards continuing our Journey thro' *Doesburgh*, (a little City on that River in the Province of *Zutphen*) we din'd in a poor Village, if Milk with Biscuit may be call'd a Dinner; but the worst is, that our Fare was no better at Night, when we lodg'd at *Ysselburgh*, a small dismantled Town upon the Borders of *Cleves*.

Doesburgh.

Wesel. Between this last place and the City of *Wesel* the Country is sandy, and full of Woods: Its Fortifications are but indifferent, but they are busie at present in erecting a Citadel betwixt this City and the Fort of *Lippe* upon the Bank of the *Rhine*. It is under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, who, by vertue of a Treaty made with the Duke of *Newburgh*, (now Elector *Palatine*) grants Liberty of Conscience to the *Roman Catholicks*, the same being allow'd reciprocally to the *Protestants* in the Dutchies of *Juliers* and *Berg*, under the Elector *Palatine*'s Jurisdiction. The *Calvinists* have two Churches, the *Lutherans* and *Roman Catholicks* each one Church, for the exercise of their Divine Worship. The *Jews* have likewise a little Synagogue here.

About half an hour beyond *Wesel* we pass'd the River *Lippe*, which joyns its Waters with the *Rhine*, and arriv'd before Night at *Duisburgh*, a City of the same bigness with *Wesel*, but without any Fortifications: It has however an University, but no great concourse of Scholars. The great Church belongs to the *Protestants*, but the *Roman Catholicks* enjoy also the same exercise of their Religion, and have even the liberty of carrying the Host in publick Procession, tho' they refrain from doing it, for fear of giving occasion of Disturbance betwixt them and the *Protestants*. *Duisburgh.*

Not above half a league beyond *Duisburgh* we entred the Country of *Berg*, and in two hours after pass'd thro' the little City of *Keyserwaert*, seated upon the *Rhine*, and very well fortified. *Keyserwaert.*

Hence we continued our Journey to *Dusseldorp*, the Residence of the Electoral Prince *Palatine*. It is much larger and better Peopled than *Duisburgh*, and its Fortifications in a very good state, but has no Suburbs, no more than *Keyserwaert*, I am, *Dusseldorp.*

Sir,

At *Dusseldorp*,
Oct. 23. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER V.

SIR,

THE City of *Cologne* affords a most agreeable Prospect at a distance, by reason of its situation in a plain and level Country, and the vast number of Steeples, which make a most glorious shew. Tho' it be of a vast extent, yet is it surrounded with a Wall, Towers, Bastions, and a dry Ditch. It has twenty four Gates, thirteen to the Land, and eleven on the *Rhine*. It is an Imperial City, govern'd by its own Magistrates, tho' the Archbishop and Elector of that Name has some share both in the Civil and Criminal Jurisdiction, and a Prerogative of pardoning Criminals. The Oath which the Citizens takes to this Prince seems to be a kind of Homage, conceiv'd in these terms; *Cologne.*

We the free Citizens of Cologne *do this day, for ever and for ever, promise to - Archbishop of* Cologne, *to be faithful and favourable to him, as long as he shall preserve, in our Rights and Honour, and in our ancient Privileges, Us, our Wives, our Children, and our City of* Cologne.
So God and his Saints help us.

The Answer of the Archbishop is as follows:

We - by the Grace of God, Archbishop of the holy Church of Cologne, *and Arch-Chancellour of the Empire in* Italy, *to the end that an amicable Confederacy, entire Confidence, and sincere and lasting Peace, may be cultivated betwixt Us and our dear Burgesses of the City of* Cologne, *do make known by these Presents, and promise and declare sincerely, without Fraud, that we do confirm all their Rights and Privileges, written or not written, old or new, within or without the City of* Cologne, *which have been granted to it by the Popes, Emperours, Kings, and Archbishops of* Cologne, *without ever doing any thing to violate the same. In Testimony whereof, &c.*

The whole Chapter of *Cologne* is compos'd of sixty Canons, who must be Dukes or Earls, but the twenty four eldest are the Capitularies. According to the *Golden Bull*, the Electors of *Cologne* us'd to Crown the Emperour, (as the present Emperour was) but these Archbishops not having been Princes for a considerable time, those of *Mayence* have perform'd the same in their stead, and since that, challenge it as a Right.

There live a considerable number of *Protestants* in this City, who have a Church not far thence, in the Territories

rics of the Duke of *Newburgh*, they ſtile them *Gueux* or Beggars to this day, by the ſame Name that was given at *Bruſſels* to the firſt Authors of the Agreement by the Count *de Barlemont*.

The Town-houſe. The Townhouſe is a vaſt Fabrick, after the *Gothick* manner: Here they ſhew you whole Rooms full of Bows, Arrows, Croſsbows, Bucklers, and ſuch ſort of antick Arms. One of theſe Croſsbows was of Whalebone, and twelve foot long, eight inches broad, and four inches thick. From the Tower of this Houſe you have a moſt delightful proſpect of the whole City and circumjacent Country. That part which lies oppoſite to the City, on the other ſide of the River, is chiefly inhabited by the *Jews*, and belongs to the Territories of *Newburgh*. The Cathedral. The Cathedral Church (or rather its beginning) is ſo fine, that 'tis a thouſand pities it ſhould not be brought to perfection. The three Kings of the Eaſt. Here lies entomb'd the three Kings of the Eaſt, that came to worſhip our Saviour, being tranſfer'd hither from *Milan* at the time when *Frederick Barbaroſſa* laid that City deſolate. They tell you of abundance of Miracles wrought by them, and among the reſt, that an exceſſive Dearth having been occaſion'd by a great Drought in *Hungary*, abundance of that Country came hither to implore the aſſiſtance of theſe three Kings, who promiſed them Rain, which following ſoon after in great plenty, the *Hungarians*, in remembrance of this Miracle, come every ſeven Years in a body on Pilgrimage to *Cologne*, where they are entertain'd by the Magiſtrates for fifteen days, in a very handſome Houſe built for that purpoſe.

In the Vaulted Roof of this Church, almoſt over the Chapel that contains theſe precious Relicks, is a hole of three or four foot wide, round the opening of which you ſee theſe words; *Anno* 1404. 30 *Oct. Ventus de nocte flatingens, grandem per tectum lapidem pillit*; i. e. *On the* 30*th of* Octob. 1404, *the Wind blew very hard in the Night, and forc'd a great Stone thro' the Roof*: The Stone is ſtill to be ſeen upon the Floor near this Chapel, they call it the *Devil's Stone*, becauſe they were of opinion that the Devil threw it out of Malice. Over one of the Doors of the ſame Church we ſaw thirty ſix gilt Staves about three foot long each, with this Diſtich under them:

Quot pendere vides beatos ante Epiſcopus armos
Huic Agrippinæ præfuit Eccleſiæ.

Upon enquiry we found that the preſent Elector was then in the 37th Year of his Reign, but could not learn either the true Original or Uſe of this Cuſtom.

St. Urſula's Church. In the Church of St. *Urſula* they ſhew you the Tombs of the eleven thouſand Virgins that were maſſacred by the *Huns* at *Cologne*, in the Year 238, together with this Saint, unto whoſe Memory is dedicated this Church. They tell you, that the Earth in this Church will not admit of any other dead Corps; for an inſtance of which they ſhew you the Tomb of a Daughter of a certain Duke of *Brabant*, who being interr'd there, rais'd up her ſelf, and remaining thus in the Air, they were forc'd to put her in this Tomb, fix'd upon Iron Supporters two or three foot from the ground, againſt one of the Pillars of the Church. In a great Chapel on one ſide of the ſame Church you ſee the Bones of theſe Saints hung up in as decent a manner as you ſee the Swords and Piſtols ranged in the Guard-chamber of *Whitehall*, or in a well-order'd Armoury; theſe Bones have no Ornaments except the Heads, ſome of which are kept in Caſes of Silver, others are cover'd with Stuffs of Gold, and ſome have Bonners or Caps of Cloth of Gold, Velvet, &c. Hence it is that the City of *Cologne* challenges the Title of *Cologne the holy*; and its Arms are, *Argent eleven Flames Gules, with a Chef of the Second, charg'd with three Crowns Or*; the eleven Flames intimating the eleven thouſand Virgins, and the three Crowns the three Kings.

In the Church of the *Maccabees* is a Crucifix with an everlaſting Perriwig on its Head; for tho' the *Hungarian* Pilgrims, at their coming to *Cologne*, do each of 'em cut a Lock of Hair off it, yet has it not been diminiſh'd hitherto.

The Church of the Twelve Apoſtles. At the entrance of the Church of the *Twelve Apoſtles* is to be ſeen a Picture, which is remarkable chiefly for the Story it repreſents: They relate, that a Burghermaſter's Wife of this City being, in 1571, buried in this Church, with a Ring of great value on her Hand, the Sexton made bold to viſit the Grave afterwards for the Ring ſake, but was not a little amaz'd when he found the ſuppoſed dead Lady graſp him by the Hand, which made him retreat with all ſpeed: However, the Lady having made hard ſhift to get out of the Sepulchre, went to her own Houſe, where knocking at the Door, ſhe call'd to a Servant, and related unto him the whole Adventure; but the Servant taking her for a Ghoſt, ran in a fright to recount unto his Maſter what had hapned, who told him; that he would as ſoon believe his Horſes in the Garret; He had no ſooner ſaid theſe words, but a great noiſe being heard in the Garret, the Servant went up, and to his great amazement found ſix Coach-horſes there: By this time the Woman had made ſhift to get in, and by the care of her Servants was ſo well recover'd, that there was no great likelihood of her returning to the Grave for that time; and the Horſes were the next day let down out of the Garret by certain Pullies. They ſhew you to this day, in the ſame Garret, ſeveral wooden Horſes, ſaid to be cover'd with the Skins of the ſame that were ſeen there; and in the Church of the twelve Apoſtles, a great piece of Linen Cloth, which, they ſay, was of this Womans own ſpinning, after her releaſement from the Grave, after which ſhe liv'd ſeven Years. A Woman reviv'd from the dead.

To conclude this Letter, I muſt tell you, that there are ſome Families now in *Cologne* who deduce their Genealogies from the *Roman* Race, that ſettled a Colony here the firſt time. I am,

Sir;

At Cologne, Oct. 26. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER VI.

SIR;

THE Roads betwixt *Cologne* and *Mayence* being then extreamly bad, we choſe to go on upon the *Rhine*: The firſt place we came to was *Bonn*, a ſmall inconſiderable place, the Fortifications whereof lie neglected, and the Electoral Palace of *Cologne* made but a very indifferent appearance. *Bonn.*

As we came nearer to *Andernach*, a Burghermaſter of that place told us, that there were certain Gentlemen belonging to that City who love the Title of *Free Knights*, and enjoy peculiar Privileges. *Andernach* and *Keyſerwaert* have a right of Toll upon the *Rhine*.

Coming to *Coblentz*, we found its ſituation to be upon a Neck of Land made by the *Moſelle*, where it joyns its Current with the *Rhine*, which renders it very agreeable. We were told, that it was very well fortified on the Land-ſide, but near the Water-ſide we ſaw only a ſingle Wall. The Caſtle of *Ehrenbreitſtein*, i. e. *the Rock of Honour*, built juſt over againſt it, upon a riſing ground on the other ſide of the River, is very ſtrong both by Art and Nature, its Foundations being laid upon the Ruins of the old Fort of *Hermanſtein*, the remains whereof are ſeen on one corner only of the ſame Rock, on which the Windmill ſtands. It is always well provided with a good Gariſon, and Ammunition in proportion. The Palace (where the Elector of *Cologne* commonly reſides) is at the foot of the Hill, upon the very bank of the *Rhine*, juſt under the Caſtle. *Coblentz.*

About half a league on this ſide of *Baccharach*, directly over againſt *Coub*, (a Town under the juriſdiction of the Elector *Palatine*) ſtands an old Caſtle in the middle of the *Rhine* call'd *Pfaltz*, whence ſome have deriv'd the Titles of the *Pfaltz* Graves or *Counts Palatines*. *Pfaltz.*

Baccharach is a ſmall City belonging to the Elector *Palatine*, built on the ſide of a Hill, chiefly famous for its excellent Wines that grow thereabouts. We dined with one of the Miniſters of the place, who would needs derive the Etymology of *Baccharach* from *Bachiara*, or the *Altar of Bacchus*; and for a confirmation of his Opinion, told us, that in the ſame Neighbourhood there were four other ancient Towns which ow'd their Name to *Bacchus*, viz. *Steeghach*, which lying on a Hillock, ſignifying as much as *Scala Bacchi*, or the *Ladder of Bacchus*; *Diabach*, i. e. *Digitus Bacchi*, or the *Finger of Bacchus*; *Handbach* or *Mannersbach*, i. e. *Manus Bacchi*, the *Hand of Bacchus*; and *Larch*, i. e. *Laurea Bacchi*, or the *Bays of Bacchus*. *Baccharach.*

Soon after we were paſt *Baccharach*, a furious Tempeſt oblig'd us to ſeek for ſhelter a-ſhore, a little on this ſide *Rudeſheim*. In our way we paſs'd by an old ruin'd Caſtle or ſquare Tower, known by the name of the *Tower of Ratts*, whither, they ſay, a certain Archbiſhop of *Mayence* retreated (its ſituation being on a little Iſle in the *Rhine*) to avoid the Ratts, that devour'd him at laſt. Some look upon it as a Fable, becauſe the old Chronicles of the Country mention different Names and Times when this Accident hapned; but others, who look upon it as a Truth, (as it is generally taken for ſuch hereabouts) alledge in behalf of their Opinion ſeveral Hiſtories The Ratts Tower.

ſtories of this nature related by Authors of an unqueſtionable Authority.

From *Bonn*, as far as *Binghen*, three leagues on this ſide *Mayence*, the *Rhine* carries its current thro' the Mountains, at the foot of which you ſee all the Country on both ſides cover'd with Vineyards interſpers'd with a great number of ſmall Cities, good Villages and Caſtles, of the laſt of which I counted forty ſince I parted from *Cologne*, built for the moſt part upon the aſcents of the Mountains, and ſome on the very points of the Rocks.

Odd Dreſs of the Women in theſe parts.

The Country People in theſe parts, but eſpecially the Women, have a very odd Dreſs; on their Heads they wear little Caps of ſome colour'd Stuff, border'd with an Edging of a different colour, their Hair hanging in Treſſes quite down their Backs. Their Waſtes appear very ſhort, half a foot below which they gird themſelves with a broad Leather Girdle, and underneath it is a thick Roll, which bears up their Petticoats almoſt as high as their Knees.

Mayence.

From *Binghen* to *Mayence* the *Rhine* is very broad: Here you go over a Bridge of Boats, and as ſoon as you enter the City the Electoral Palace preſents it ſelf to your view, a Fabrick of a reddiſh Stone, embelliſh'd with divers Ornaments, wanting neither regularity nor magnificence, tho' built after the *German* faſhion. They told us, that in the middle of the Citadel was to be ſeen a

The Tomb of *Druſus Germanicus.*

wind of a Tower, call'd commonly the *Tomb of Druſus*: 'Tis true, *Druſus Germanicus*, the Brother of *Tiberius*, died in *Germany*, but not near the *Rhine*, and he was buried in the *Campo Martio* at *Rome*, ſo that in all likelihood this was one of the Statues or triumphal Arches erected near the Banks of the *Rhine* to his memory, after the Senate had beſtow'd upon him the Sirname of *Germanicus*.

The Church-Ornaments in which the Elector ſays Maſs, are celebrated for their Riches; and the Canopy under which the Hoſt is carried upon certain Feſtivals in proceſſion, is all cover'd with Pearls.

Every one of the Electors of *Mayence* bears the Arms of his own Family, but he quarters *Gules a Wheel Argent*, which are the Arms of the Electorate, the original of which they deduce from the firſt Elector, who was the Son of a Wheelwright.

In the Cathedral you ſee many magnificent Tombs of the Electors interr'd here. The Chapter conſiſts of forty two, all Gentlemen, twenty four of which are Capitularies. The *Proteſtants* are allow'd Habitations at *Mayence*, but not the exerciſe of their Religion. The City is ſufficiently large, but indifferently Peopled: Neither is the Univerſity in any great eſteem now: However, its ſituation is very pleaſant, in a moſt excellent Country. I ſuppoſe you are not ignorant the Elector of *Mayence* is the firſt among the Eccleſiaſtical Electors, and Dean of the Electoral College. I am,

Sir,

Mayence, Nov. 3. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER VII.

SIR,

AFter having croſs'd the *Rhine* at *Mayence*, we embark'd on the River *Maine* in the ordinary Paſſage-

Frankfort an Imperial City.

Boat, which carried us in one day to *Frankfort*, a City much exceeding *Mayence* in Beauty, Riches, Bigneſs, number of Inhabitants, and Strength, being fortified with eleven Baſtions, which tho' they have ſome defects, yet the ſame is in ſome meaſure repair'd by its ſituation in a flat Country: The Houſes are generally built of the ſame red Stone I mention'd before, or elſe of Wood or Plaiſter cover'd with Slates. The *Maine*, a conſiderable large River, leaves it on the right, and a Stone Bridge of Four hundred paces in length joyns it with *Sakerhauſen*. The Territories of this City are of no great extent: The Senate, as well as the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, are *Lutherans*, tho' the *Roman Catholicks* are poſſeſs'd of the Cathedral Church, where the Ceremony of anointing the Emperour is perform'd; however, they are not allow'd to make any publick Proceſſions. The *Proteſtants*, call'd *Cevinists*, inhabiting here, have a Church at *Bochenheim*, a ſmall hours walk from thence, in the Country of *Hainault*, but are oblig'd to marry and to chriſten their Children in the *Lutheran* Churches.

In the Townhouſe is the Apartment where the Solemnity of the Election of the Emperour is perform'd, and where one of the Originals of the *Golden Bull* is preſerv'd. It is hung only with Tapeſtry, and furniſh'd with ſome Elbow Chairs of black Velvet, and a large Table cover'd with a green Carpet. On one ſide of this Apartment is a Hall where certain Ceremonies are perform'd immediately after the Election, which being over, the Emperour goes from thence to the Church, where he is crown'd.

The *Golden Bull* is a Book in *4to*, of twenty four leaves of Parchment ſtitch'd together, and cover'd with a piece of Vellum, without any further Ornament. The Seal, which is about two inches and a half broad, and cover'd with Gold, is faſtned to it by a String of twiſted Silk of divers colours; upon this Seal, which appears not unlike a Medal, you ſee the Effigies of the Emperour *Charles* IV, ſeated and crown'd, with a Scepter in his right hand, and the Globe in the left, having the Shield of the Empire on his right, and that of *Bohemia* on his left, with this Inſcription round it;

The Golden Bull.

Carolus quartus divinæ favente clementia Romanorum Imperator ſemper Auguſtus.

And on each ſide near the two Scutcheons, *Et Bohemiæ Rex.* On the Reverſe is a Gate of a Caſtle betwixt two Towers, which denotes *Rome*, as is apparent by the following Inſcription about it:

Roma caput Mundi regit orbis fœcina rotundi.

And upon the Gate betwixt theſe two Towers,

Roma aurea.

This Bull, intended to be the Foundation-ſtone of the Empire, was made at *Nurenburgh* by *Charles* IV, with the general conſent of the States in 1356, and contains the manner of the Election of the Emperour and of the King of the *Romans*, as alſo many things relating to the Rank, Aſſemblies, Right, Immunities and Succeſſions of the Electors, and in what manner every one of 'em is to perform his Function. *Frankfort* is by this Bull appointed for the Election of the Emperour, notwithſtanding which *Henry* II. was elected at *Mayence*, and *Henry* III. at *Aix la Chapelle*, and ſome others have been choſen at *Cologne*, *Augsburgh* and *Ratisbon*, not to mention ſeveral other Innovations introduc'd ſince that time, eſpecially in the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*.

At Dr. *Peter's*, who makes the famous Treacle of *Frankfort*, we ſaw many Curioſities, and among the reſt a Stone taken out of a human Body of the bigneſs of a Man's Head, which he bought for 1600 crowns.

There are abundance of *Jews* at *Frankfort*, but are not near ſo rich as thoſe of *Amſterdam*, being uſed in a manner like Drudges here, *viz.* to fetch the Water when any Fire happens to break out in the City; for the reſt, their chief Employment is to go from one Inn to another, to ſell their Commodities to Foreigners.

I need not tell you, that the three annual Fairs of *Frankfort* contribute not a little to its Fame and Riches.

The Univerſity acknowledges for its Founders *Joachim* and *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, in 1506. I am,

Sir,

Frankfort, Nov. 7. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER VIII.

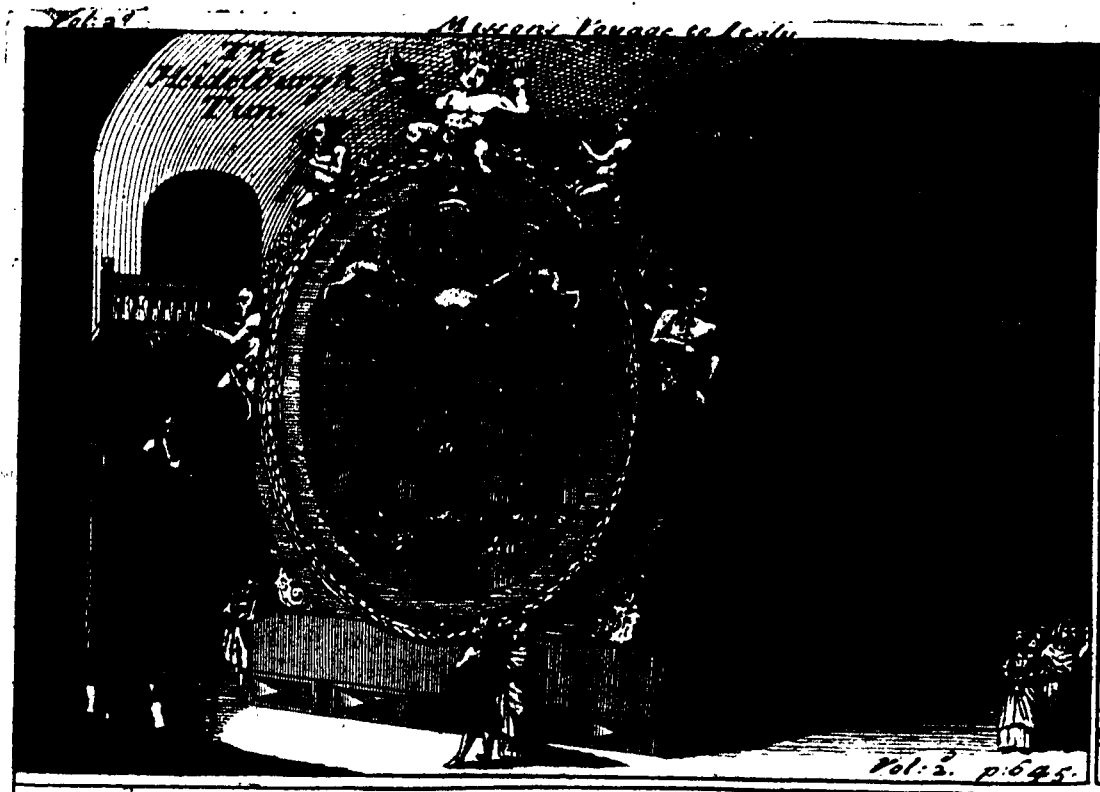
SIR,

AS we were taking Coach to leave *Frankfort*, we obſerv'd the Coachman to put ſome Salt upon each of his Horſes, which he told us was a never-failing Antidote againſt Witchcraft and other unlucky Accidents.

Having paſſed the *Rhine* at *Gernſoeim*, we entred a Wood, where the Roads prov'd very bad; but after that, for two leagues, till we came to *Worms*, they prov'd exceeding good.

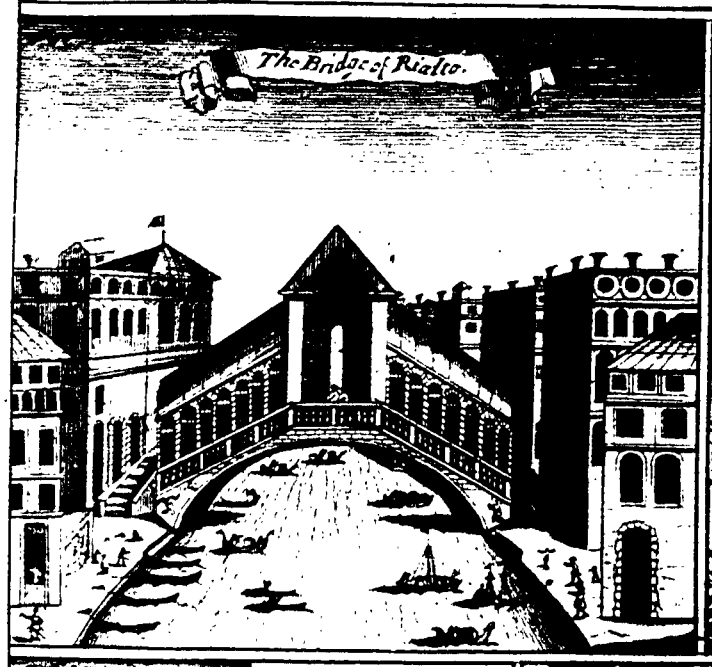
Worms an Imperial City.

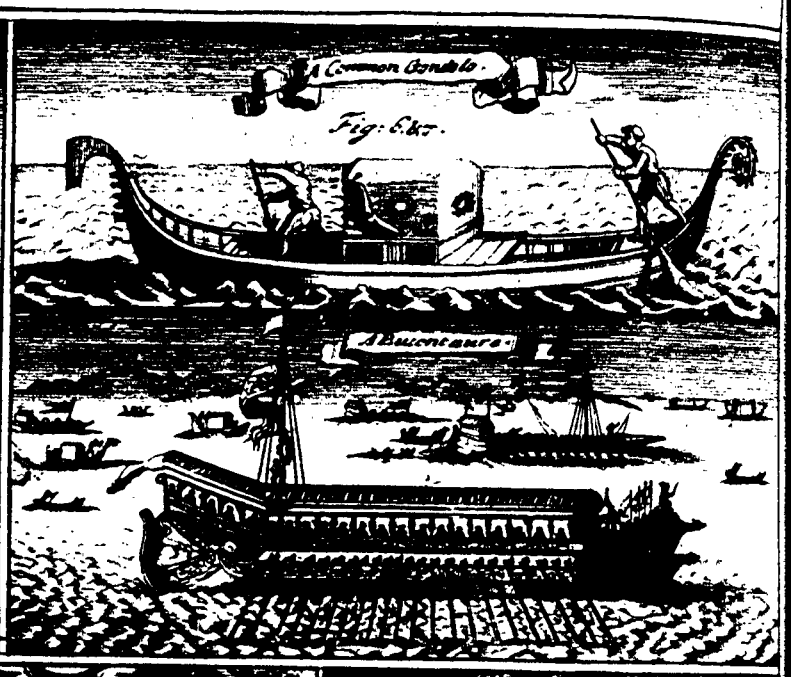
The City of *Worms* is ſeated about three or four hundred paces from the left ſide of the *Rhine*, in a moſt fruitful Country, having no other Fortifications but a double Wall:


The Heidelburgh Tun.
Vol: 2d. p:645.

The Lady of Newburgh.
p:647.

Vol: 2d.
Divers Habits of the Women at Ausburgh.
p:648.


The Bridge of Rialto.


A Common Gondolo.
Fig: 6.&7.
A Bucentaure.

The Dogé of Venice.
Vanitas Vanitatum.

Virgil's Tomb.
Fig: 8.

Wall: It is an Imperial City, notwithstanding which the Bishop * has a considerable Authority here; it is not inferiour in bigness to *Frankfort*, but ill Peopled and poor. I saw a House that was sold for a thousand crowns, which had yielded formerly as much annual Rent; and there are so many void places within the compass of the place, that the Vines planted there are computed to produce every year fifteen hundred Fuders of Wine, a Fuder being a Cask that holds no less than two hundred and fifty English Gallons. This Wine is in such high esteem in those parts, that they have turn'd it into a Proverb, and say, *It is sweeter than the Virgins Milk*; whence questionless is also arisen the Custom of presenting it to Persons of Note that travel that way, with some Fish, &c.

* It was formerly an Archbishoprick, till the See was remov'd to *Mayence* by Pope *Zachary*.

Besides that, the *Lutherans* have one Church for their own use here; they preach by turns with the *Romanists* in the *Dominicans* Church, all the rest being in the possession of the *Roman Catholicks*, who don't carry the Host in publick, nor make any Procession, except on the Day after *Easter*. The *Calvinists* have a Church at *Newhausel* in the Palatinate, about half a league from *Worms*, where the *Lutherans* now and then christen their Children, quite contrary to what is practis'd by the *Lutherans* at *Frankfort*.

The Church of St. *Paul*.

The Church of St. *Paul* as well as that of St. *John* are very ancient Structures, the best of the two being built of vast square Stones, in a very irregular manner, with narrow Windows, and Galleries all round the outside just under the Roof; the Walls are twelve foot thick, and seem as if they were not at first design'd for a Church.

The Cathedral.

The Cathedral is both very long and lofty, adorn'd with a Tower on each of the four corners; it is a strong Fabrick, and not without some Ornaments after the *Gothick* way. Over one Door of this Church they shew you the figure of a strange Animal of the bigness of an Ass, with four Heads, one the Head of a Man, the second of an Ox, the third of an Eagle, and the fourth of a Lyon; the two first stand upright, and the two others hang downwards; the right Fore-foot is of a Man, the left of an Ox, and the two hindermost of an Eagle and a Lyon; a Woman sits on the Back of it: The People here tell you very odd Surmises concerning it, but suppose it to be an Hieroglyphick composed of the four Beasts in the Vision of *Ezekiel*, and the Woman to represent the Gospel. Over the Altar of one of the Chapels of the same Church I observ'd a Picture, in which the Virgin receiv'd Christ as he was descending from the Cross, whilst the Angels were carrying the Instruments of his Crucifixion to Heaven.

But the Picture at the entrance of St. *Martin's* Church, just over a movable Altar, is worth the most peculiar observation of a Traveller; it is about five foot square, and in it God the Father is represented on the very top of one corner, from whence he seems to address himself to the Virgin *Mary*, who is on her Knees in the midst of the Picture, holding the Infant Christ by the Feet, and putting his Head into the Hopper of a Mill, which is turn'd by the twelve Apostles hands by the help of a Wheel, assisted by the four just now mention'd Beasts of *Ezekiel*, who give a helping hand on the other side. Hard by the Pope is painted upon his Knees, receiving the Hosts, which fall ready made from the Mill into a golden Chalice or Cup, one whereof he presents to a Cardinal, who gives it to a Bishop, the Bishop to a Priest, and the Priest to a Layman.

There are two publick Meeting-places in this City, one intended for the Senate, where they meet twice a week about matters of State, the other for the Courts of Justice. It was in the first that Dr. *Luther* made his solemn appearance, concerning which they tell you, that the Dr. being much heated with the eagerness of the Dispute, as also by a Fire that was near him, he desir'd a Glass of Wine, which being brought, he forgot to drink it, but being still eager in the pursuit of his Discourse, set it down upon a Bench, where soon after it broke without being touch'd by any body, which made it pass for current that there was some Poyson mix'd with the Wine, which the *Lutherans* were so fully perswaded of, that they broke the Bench on which the Glass stood in pieces, and kept some pieces of it, which are still preserv'd in memory of *Luther's* deliverance.

We also took a view of the House call'd the *Mint*, where, among other Curiosities, they shew'd us a square piece of Parchment in a Frame, upon which there are twelve sorts of Hands written with divers Miniatures, and Draughts rarely well done with a Pen, by one *Thomas Shoevciner*, only with his Feet, he being born without Arms, as the following Inscription testifies:

Mira vides, pedibus juvenis facit omnia recta
Cui parens Mater brachia nulla dedit.

In a spacious Portico belonging to this House you see a vast number of Bones and Horns hanging betwixt the Arches: The first, they say, are the Remnants of Gyants, and the last of the Oxen which drew the Stones wherewith the Cathedral was built. The outside of the House is adorn'd with variety of Pictures, and among the rest with many arm'd Gyants, which in the Inscription underneath are call'd *Vangiones*: That this part of the *Rhine* was inhabited by a sort of People call'd *Vangiones*, is evident from *Tacitus* and others; but how they became Gyants, I am not able to tell.

Frankendal.

But proceeding on our Journey, we pass'd only by *Frankendal*, the Fortifications of which place would not be despisable were they faced with Brick, whereas now they are slop'd too much, by reason of the softness of the Earth, which could not be supported otherwise.

Manheim.

The same Defect belongs, but in a higher degree, to the Fortifications of *Manheim*, both which belong to the Elector *Palatine*, and are not above two hours travel distant from each other; but the last has a considerable advantage by its situation in a flat Country, and its being almost enclosed by the *Neckar* and the *Rhine*. The most remarkable Piece in *Manheim* is the *Temple of Concord*, founded by the Elector *Charles Lewis*, Father of *Charles*, the last of that Race, lately deceased, who being a person of no harsh disposition, especially in matters of Religion, order'd that the *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* should by turns exercise their Divine Worship in this Church; and the present Elector *Palatine*, who is a *Roman Catholick*, has thought fit to joyn the *Romanists* with the others; since which time the Ministers of three different Religions perform each in their turn their religious Service in the *Church of Concord*, so that in three successive Sundays each of the three Ministers has the privilege of beginning first. The Church is not very large, but exceeding neat, the Pulpit common to all three. The *Roman Catholicks*, after they have said Mass, draw a Curtain, and so hide the Altar.

The Temple of Concord.

Manheim was about forty years ago no more than a Village, but owes its encrease to *Frederick* the Father of *Charles Lewis*, who at the same time built and fortified it: The Streets are very streight and regular, and some of 'em planted with Trees, as in *Holland*.

After having passed the *Neckar* at *Manheim*, over a Bridge of Boats, we travel'd for three hours thro' a fertile Plain, extending to the foot of the Mountains of *Heidelburgh*, which by a continued ridge seem'd to intercept our passage, but that the *Neckar* passes thro' a certain opening, and shews you a direct way to *Heidelburgh*, by a cover'd Bridge which brings you to the other side, where this City is seated very pleasantly among the Trees and Rocks.

Heidelburgh was laid waste by the *French* *May* 22. 1693.

The City is neither fine nor well built, most of their Houses being of Wood, tho' they dwell among the Rocks; the Electoral Palace is of hewn Stone, some parts whereof are of good Architecture, but neither of 'em quite finish'd. They have made divers fine Gardens among the Rocks, but at the best they are irregular.

Not long ago the Dutchess of *Orleance*, Sister to the last Elector, and Heiress to part of his Personal Estate, had taken the Furniture of this Palace away, at which time they sold every thing, even to the Wine of the famous Tun of *Heidelburgh*.

The Tun of *Heidelburgh*.

This so much celebrated Tun is thirty one foot long, and twenty one high, unto which you ascend by a pair of Stairs of fifty Steps, to a kind of Platform or Balcony of twenty foot long, enclosed with Rails: The Elector's Arms are placed on the Front of the Tun, and *Bacchus* on the top, attended by Satyrs, Drunkards, and such-like Sparks, and the Vines, Grapes, Glasses and Leather Jacks make a great part of the Ornaments of this Tun, in *basso relievo*. Abundance of Jests and Apothegms relating to the same Subject are also to be seen, in *high Dutch*, on divers parts of this Tun.

The various Chances of War have reduc'd this Country to a poor condition, tho' else naturally very good. All Religions are tolerated, but the Magistrates are generally *Protestants*.

The great Church of this City contains many magnificent Tombs of the *Counts Palatines*, and among the rest that of *Robert* King of the *Romans*, the Founder of the Univer-

University of *Heidelburgh*. You know by what ill Fate this City lost its famous Library, which, in 1622, was transported thence to the *Vatican*. I am,

Sir,

Heidelburgh, Nov. 12, 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER IX.

SIR,

WE were scarce two hours riding from *Heidelburgh*, but we met with nothing but with whole Forests of Firr-trees, and a Country so poor and low, that about *Wisloch* and *Sintzheim* you might buy a Wheaten Loaf of eight pound for two pence; and in four days Journey we did not so much as get sight of one considerable Town: One of the best of 'em is *Winsheim*, an Imperial City as well as *Wimphen*, both inhabited by *Lutherans*. What diverted us most in all this Journey was, a meeting of the Magistrates of the little City of *Palemburgh*, which happening to be in the same Inn where we dined, we were well diverted with the sight of twelve or fifteen Peasants, with high-crown'd Hats, cover'd round about with green and yellow Ribbon, with red or blue Vests, Ruffs of black Taffata, their Hair cut round close just below their Ears, and their Beards like those of the *Capuchins*: In this habit we saw them sitting together, with their Elbows resting on a Table, and explaining the Law (after their manner) each with a good Glass of Wine in his hand, every one striving to outdo one another more by the strength of his Voice than the stress of Argument.

Winsheim. *Wimphen.* *Palemburgh.*

It is almost not to be wondred that Drinking should be so current a trade in this Country, considering the temptations they lie under here upon that account, for you buy four great Pots of Wine for a Penny; and if a Passenger happens to ask for a Cup of Wine, they bring him a large Jack, scarce knowing what little measure is.

Wine cheap.

As you travel by degrees from the mountainous Country into the Plains that lead to *Nurenburgh*, the Tobacco and Hops succeed in place of the Vineyards: We had a fair prospect of this beautiful City at a considerable distance, as we were travelling along the Banks of the River *Pegnitz*, which runs from it, but serves only to turn some Mills, whereas without any great difficulty it might be made navigable, and consequently much encrease the Grandeur of this City.

Nurenburgh.

However this Defect does not hinder *Nurenburgh* from being a place of great Trade, great Riches, and well Peopled; and for its bigness it is reputed to be twice as large as *Frankfort* upon the *Meine*, and contains under its Jurisdiction seven other Cities and four hundred and eighty Boroughs and Villages: It has six Gates, two hundred twenty eight large Streets, and a hundred and eighteen Fountains and Wells: Its Fortifications being after the ancient manner, are of no great consideration, its situation in the very heart of *Germany* being its chief Security.

Nurenburgh is a very handsom City, its Houses being generally lofty and strong, of hewn Stone, and many adorn'd with Pictures on the outside, tho' for the rest they are after the *Gothick* manner, and consequently not very regular: Besides this, it has good store of Brass Fountains, one whereof we saw then at the Artificer's House, the Statues of which alone cost seventy thousand crowns. The Streets are broad, clean, and well paved, but not streight. One of the Towers of the Castle bears the name of *Nero's Tower*, whence some would look for the Original of this City as far as *Nero*, whereas 'tis more probable that *Noriberg*, or *Mons Noricorum*, as 'tis call'd in Latin, has its Etymology from the *Norici*, the old Inhabitants of the Country, and *Berg*, i. e. a Mountain.

Its Castle.

The Castle is seated on a high Rock, tho' all the rest of the City be very flat; it is irregular, being built according to the unequal shape of the Rock. They shew'd us a Well which they affirm'd to be sixteen hundred foot deep, and that the Chain of the Bucket weigh'd three thousand pounds.

In one of the Halls of this Castle are to be seen four *Corinthian* Pillars forty five foot high, which were brought from *Rome* by the Devil, upon a challenge which a Monk made him. On the Stones of the Parapet of the Castle they shew you the print of a Horse's Shoe, where they say a Conjurer leap'd over the Ditch.

The Ornaments used at the anointing of the Emperours are preserv'd in the Church of the Hospital; the Diadem of *Charlemain* (call'd also the *Infula*) is of pure Gold, weighing fourteen pound, and cover'd with precious Stones, being not closed on the top as the Imperial Crowns are generally represented, but you must suppose that instead of the Fleurets on Ducal Coronets, you see Plates rounded on the top, which being joyn'd by the sides, make the compass of the Bonnet; of these there are seven, that before exceeding the rest in the lustre of the precious Stones; on the top of all is a Cross, and a Semicircle, supported by the two Head-plates behind, raised above the Bonnet, and joyn'd to the top of the Cross. The Scepter and Globe are of Gold, and the Sword is said to have been brought from Heaven. The Robe of *Charlemain* is of a Violet colour, embroider'd with Pearls, and the Imperial Cloak edg'd with the same, and strew'd with Eagles of Gold and a great number of precious Stones. Here are also the Cope, the Stole, the Breeches embroider'd with Stones, the Stockins, and the Buskins cover'd with Plates of Gold.

Charlemain's Diadem.

Amongst divers other Relicks, they keep in this Church the Iron Head of St. *Longin's* Launce; and because they are not ignorant that the same is shewn in above ten other places in the World, they say all these are Counterfeits, and that theirs was found by St. *Andrew*, and brought from *Antioch*.

Their Arsenal is one of the most renown'd in *Germany*; in the two great Halls (each two hundred and fifty paces long) we saw three hundred pieces of Cannon, and among them many of a very large bore, the biggest whereof carried a Ball of three hundred pounds; but to speak the truth, the rest, being Arms of more antiquity than use, serve only for a Shew.

The Arsenal.

The publick Library is in a Cloyster formerly belonging to the *Dominicans*, and contains, as they say, twenty thousand Volumes; the most ancient Manuscript is of nine hundred years, being a Copy of the Gospels, with the Prayers and Hymns formerly used in the *Greek* Church; the Characters are very different from what is used now: they also shew'd us a Book printed at *Spires* 1446, but it seems as if there had been an Errour in the Cyphers; for at the same time we were shewn another of the Impression of *Faustus* at *Mayence*, in 1459, which had, by way of Advertisement, annex'd to it, *That this Book was not written by the Hand, but was printed by an admirable Secret newly invented.* They keep in this Library many Rarities, but the Cabinet of Mr. *Viati* exceeds 'em in a high measure, it being almost impossible to conceive how a man of a private Fortune could heap together so many things brought from all parts of the World. There is one great Apartment fill'd with the divers Arms of all Countries; from whence you go into another stor'd with excellent Pictures, Medals, curious Works both ancient and modern, Idols, Shells, Plants, Minerals, and other natural Productions. He shew'd us a Wind-Gun, wherewith considerable mischief may be done at a distance, without any noise.

Library. *A Treatise of Predestination.* *The Cabinet of Mr. Viati.*

The Townhouse is a spacious Fabrick, with a beautiful well-proportion'd Front, but no Court before it.

The Townhouse.

From hence we were carried to the publick Cellar, which is two hundred and fifty paces long, and contains twenty thousand middle-siz'd Tuns (they call 'em *Aums*) of Wine, a Provision the *Germans* always take extraordinary care of; for it must be confess'd, that the *Germans* are the most civil and most obliging People in the World, but excessive Drinkers: You scarce enter a House to make a Visit, but before you can speak three words you are saluted with a savoury Collation and large Jacks of Wine; and to refuse a Health, or to leave a drop in your Glass, is a capital Fault, by which means the Cup never stands still; which made the Duke of *Rohan* say pleasantly of the *Germans*, That *they had found out the Perpetual Motion in their Cups beyond all the Mathematicians in the World*: Hence it is that Glasses of all sizes are in so high an esteem with them, that they are ranged in very good order in some of their best Apartments, and make a part of their Ornaments.

The publick Cellar.

Yesterday in the Evening we had the opportunity of seeing part of the celebration of a Wedding: The Bridegroom, attended by his Friends and Kindred, march'd first on foot from a House to the Church, which was not above two hundred paces distant, his future Spouse following soon after, with her Friends, from the same House: Being come into the Church, the Bridegroom sate down with his Relations on one side, and the

A Wedding at Nurenburgh.

Bride

Bride on the other opposite to him; over each of their Heads, against the Wall, being painted the Figure of Death: From thence they both approach'd to the Minister, who stood in the midst of the Choir, who had no sooner perform'd the Ceremony of Copulation, but four or five Trumpets sounded divers Levets from the top of the Steeple, and so the new-married Couple return'd in the same manner and to the same place from whence they came.

The Bridegroom appear'd all in black, with a Cloak trimm'd with Lace, a great Ruff, and a little Crown of Gold Plate-Lace upon his Perriwig; but the Brides Dress is not so easie to be describ'd; the best way to give you an Idea of it, is, to fancy a Head-tire compos'd of Plate-Wire gilt, like a Bob-perriwig, half a foot higher than the Forehead, and frizled out on the sides; these Threads or Wires are so close together, that there is no more distance between them than is just sufficient to fasten to them an infinite number of very small thin Plates of Gold, round, polish'd and bright, which hanging both within and without, wave with the least motion. *The Womans Dress.*

Her Habit was a kind of black Vest with long Skirts, resembling the *Hongrelines* used not long ago in *France*; and the Body of this Cassock, which was cut very short, was cover'd with Gold Lace all over the Seams, as the Skirts were with little close Knots of black Satin Ribbon, and the streight Cuffs reach down below the Wrists. Over this she wore a Neckband of very fine antique Lace, shap'd before like a Man's Band, but ending behind in a point, which reach'd down to the middle of her Back: About her Shoulders she had a Gold Chain like the Collar of some Order; and such another Chain instead of a Girdle. The Petticoat was pretty short, trimm'd towards the bottom with Gold Fringe and black Bone-Lace. We saw this Bride dance at the Wedding with one of the Senators in a great Ruff; and to tell you the whole truth, the Customs I observ'd at this Feast were so very different from ours, that I rather fancied my self in *China* than in *Europe*.

It would be an endless piece of Work, if I should describe to you all the other Habits I saw here, but I will only tell you, that as odd and fantastical as they appear at first sight, they are not unbecoming to agreeable persons.

Artisans of Nurenburgh. *Nurenburgh* can boast of better Artisans, and that in greater numbers than perhaps any City in *Europe*: Some have attributed to them the Invention of Fire-arms, and of Gunpowder, by *Bertold Swartz* a Monk; tho' others would have the same to owe its Origin to the City of *Chioggia* in the *Venetian* State, and others to *Denmark*. But the curious Works of *Nurenburgh* of Wood, Ivory, Alabaster, nay, of Paper and Starch, are famous over all *Europe*. Their Houses are both spacious and neat, and I never saw one Ceiling in all the City, but what had some understetting of curious Joyners-work. They have here a peculiar respect for Horns, with these they adorn even their best Apartments and Chambers.

All the way betwixt *Heidelburgh* and *Nurenburgh* we met with very poor Entertainment, but the Inns of *Nurenburgh* made us an ample amends for it, where, among other things, we had every day a Desert of late Fruit, and after very good Fish.

In the Church of St. *Sebald* you see a wooden Crucifix, which is esteem'd a great Masterpiece; but the Church of St. *Lawrence* exceeds all the rest in bigness. They are both built after the *Gothick* manner, but the last has eight Doors. The great Church-yard is worth the observation of a Traveller, for it has above three thousand Tombs with Epitaphs and Coats of Arms wrought in Brass. The *Jews* are confin'd to a Village near the City, from whence they may come daily into the Town for a small piece of Money, but must return before night. The few *Roman Catholicks* that inhabit here have the privilege of performing their Religious Service in one of the *Lutheran* Churches, at certain hours when their Service is over. The *Calvinists* have their *Church* a league from the City, in the Marquisate of *Anspach*, and baptize their Children in the *Lutheran* Churches. I am,

Sir,

At *Nurenburgh*, *Nov.* 22. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER X.

SIR,

FRom *Nurenburgh* the Roads are very bad and woody till you come towards *Ingolstad*, where you meet with a well-cultivated champaign Country.

Ingolstad (under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Bavaria*) is seated upon the *Danube*, of an indifferent bigness and strength, with broad, streight and well-pav'd Streets, and pleasantly situated, but poor and ill Peopled; the Houses are for the most part painted white without. They told us Wonders of their Arsenal, but as they were very coy to shew it, I suppose its fame surpassed its worth, it being generally observable, that things of this nature are seldom kept from the sight of Strangers, unless they be not worth their seeing. *Ingolstad.*

I took notice at *Ingolstad* (as in many other Cities of *Germany*) of certain Vessels of Wood or Brass mounted upon four Wheels, near the Fountains, which are kept to carry Water when any Fire breaks out.

From *Ingolstad* we travel'd to *Newburgh*, a little *City* without any Strength, seated on the right bank of the *Danube*, where this River begins already to be pretty broad and rapid; we pass'd it over a Bridge, which brought us into the *City*, where at our first entry we took a view of the *Castle*, built on a Rock, the Apartments whereof, especially on the ground-floor, are very handsom and convenient, tho' all the Furniture was lately remov'd from thence to the Castle of *Heidelburgh*, there remaining only a Cabinet full of rare Pictures and other curiosities; among the rest I obser.'d a round hard Stone, which weigh'd four pounds, and was found in the Body of a Horse. *Newburgh.*

The Church of the *Jesuits* is the handsom'st in the City, tho' that of St. *Peter* has of late years rendred it self famous by a pretended Miracle that hapned to the *Capuchin, Mark de Avilano*, who made himself so much talk'd of in the *Hungarian* War: This Father coming some years ago to *Newburgh*, and perceiving an old *Nostradame* of Wood in one corner of the Church of St. *Peter*, that was all cover'd with Dust, the good Father prostrated himself before it, and whilst he was offering his fervent Prayers, he cried out on a sudden, *A Miracle!* protesting that the *good Lady* had lifted up her Eyes towards him: The Story, back'd by the Reputation of the Father, soon got such an ascendant upon the Inhabitants, that they went in procession to St. *Peter's* Church, where they took the Statue, and having clean'd and dress'd it in a sumptuous Habit, placed her on the high Altar, where she is visited by a great number of Pilgrims from all parts. *A Miracle in the Church of St. Peter.*

The Country betwixt *Newburgh* and *Augsburgh* is very good and pleasant, except that near the last the Grounds are boggy and barren; notwithstanding which the *Augsburghers* boast their City to be the fairest in all *Germany*, and that even in bigness it exceeds *Nurenburgh* it self, tho' they own it not so well Peopled; besides, tho' their Streets are broader and streighter, their Houses are not near so handsom, few of 'em being built with hewn Stones, but for the most part plaister'd only, and whiten'd without, and sometimes adorn'd with Pictures; however, the Floors of their Apartments are for the most part pav'd with a kind of yellowish Marble, brought thither from *Tyrol*; and their Ceilings are either of curious Joyners-work divided into Compartiments, or of a certain Cement well polish'd, which is very durable; the worst in their Buildings is, that their Chambers have no regular figure, the Stairs which lead to 'em taking away all their Uniformity. *Augsburgh an Imperial City.*

Augsburgh is the Metropolis of *Swabia*; you are not ignorant that *Augustus* sent thither a Colony, and gave it the name of *Augusta Vindelicorum*, from the *Vindelici*, a People inhabiting about the Rivers *Vindo* and *Picus*, (call'd to this day the *Werda* and *Leck*.)

Betwixt the City of *Augsburgh* is seated, to distinguish it from *Augusta Trevirorum, Taurinorum*, &c. but this City having been so often pillag'd, (especially by *Attila*) there are scarce any Remainders of Antiquity to be found here. However, not long since there was dug out here a Pillar of five or six foot high, with the figure of a Pine-apple on the top of it; they also found certain Medals of *Augustus* with such a Pillar on the Reverse: 'Tis very probable that this Pillar was intended to mark out the Boundary of the Empire on that side; for it being a constant Custom among the *Romans* to distinguish the Limits of a new-conquer'd Country by some mark or other distinct from the rest, by something relating more peculiarly to *A piece of Antiquity found here.*

that Country; it is likely that they chose the Pine-apple for this Pillar, because this part of *Germany* abounds in Firr and Pine-trees; and it is perhaps for the same reason that *Augsburgh* bears the Pine-apple in its Arms.

Two Religions at *Augsburgh*.

Tho' the Fortifications of this City are not very considerable, this City has endur'd divers Sieges with a great deal of bravery. The Senate is compos'd of half *Lutherans* and half *Roman Catholicks*, tho' the Bishop has also a considerable sway in the City, who has a Palace in the City, (tho' he resides generally at *Dillingen*) and is Master of the greatest part of the Territories belonging to this City. The *Roman Catholicks* make publick Processions here, and carry the Host thro' the Streets, which the *Lutherans* salute by pulling off their Hats; for as they live in a good correspondence with one another, so they avoid all opportunities of giving Scandal to one another, the Poor of both Religions being maintain'd in one Hospital.

The *Jews* are confin'd to a separate place, and for every hour they stay in the City are oblig'd to pay a Florin.

The Town-house.

The Townhouse is a lofty and spacious square Fabrick, of very fine hewn Stones; the Portal is of Marble, and almost all the Rooms wainscoted and ceil'd with Ash of *Poland*, which looks very fine. The great Hall makes a very noble appearance, being a hundred and ten foot long, fifty eight broad, and fifty two high, with a grave Marble Floor: The Walls are adorn'd with Paintings intermix'd with Emblems and Devices relating to the Government; but the Roof exceeds all the rest, for its singular Beauty, being compos'd of regular Compartments, the Squares and Panels whereof are enrich'd with Sculptures richly gilt, and beautified with curious Pictures and other Ornaments.

The Arsenal is also a very large Structure; the two Halls below are full of Cannon, most of which are of Brass, among the rest there's a Culverine, a six-pounder, of Leather, twenty six foot long; the other Arms are kept above Stairs.

During the Wars of this last Age, the *Augsburghers* us'd to keep frequently their Gates shut, for fear of a Surprize, but for the conveniency of admitting Strangers and others without danger into the City, they contriv'd a secret Gate, which remains still, with all its Locks and Engines, the Design of which is so nicely and well contriv'd, as is too tedious and difficult to describe.

Augsburgh was formerly a City of great Traffick, whilst the Merchandizes from the *Mediterranean* were landed at *Venice*, and from thence by the way of *Augsburgh* dispers'd thro' all *Germany*; but since *Holland* has almost engross'd all that Trade, *Augsburgh* bears its share in the general Loss, as well as *Venice*, *Milan*, *Antwerp*, and many other Cities.

In the Bishop's Palace they shew you the Apartment where the Confession of *Augsburgh* was presented to the Emperour *Charles* V. in 1540, by *Melanchthon* and *Luther*. The Cathedral here has a Gate of Brass, over which are represented several historical passages of the Holy Scripture in *basso relievo*: In the History of the Creation the Virgin *Mary* is represented framing *Eve* out of one of *Adam*'s Ribs.

Curious Clocks and Ivory Work.

The Artisans of *Augsburgh* are not inferiour to those of *Nurenburgh*; nay, they excel them in Clocks and Goldsmiths Work, and in Ivory. They shew'd us here several Clocks valued at fifteen or twenty thousand Crowns a-piece; but the worst is, they are not durable. Their Ivory Work is no less admirable, and among the rest certain Cups hollow'd and well shap'd, with a Ring made of the same piece in turning, which plays betwixt the foot and the bowl of the Cup, without possibility of coming off: Of these there are an hundred, with their Rings in a Pepper-corn of an ordinary size; I have some of 'em. Upon examination I observ'd distinctly the traces of the Tool wherewith they are turn'd, which shews it a pure Work of the Eyes and Hand.

They have another curious Bauble, *viz.* Fleas fastned about the Neck with Chains of Steel, so finely wrought that tho' they are a span long, they are so light that a Flea will lift it up when it leaps. They sell one of these Fleas, with Chain and all, for ten pence.

Odd Dresses at *Augsburgh*.

The variety of Habits is still more conspicuous at *Augsburgh* than at *Nurenburgh*, that affair being so exactly regulated here by the Magistrates, that the difference of Religion and Quality of People is for the most part seen by their Clothes. As for instance: I saw a *Roman Catholick* Merchant's Widow in Mourning for her Husband; she had a christning Kercher well whited and starch'd, with Wings and Corners belonging to this Dress; a black Petticoat, and black Cloak, made like that of a Man, reaching down to her Knees; a great white Veil behind, hanging at the tail of the Kercher down to her Heels, enlarging it self by degrees; a piece of the same Linen with the Kercher four foot long and at least two broad, which is very much starch'd and stretch'd on a square Wire Thread, fastned by the middle of one of its ends, just below the Hips, and covers all the forepart of the Body.

They have found means to turn a branch of the River *Leek* into the City, the Waters whereof are exceeding clear and good. Upon this Chanel stand four or five Towers, on the tops of which are certain Cisterns, which are fill'd by the help of certain Pumps mov'd by Mills, from whence the Water is convey'd into all parts of the City.

I must not forget to tell you, that *Augsburgh* has many Fountains, some of which are not inferiour to the magnificent Fountain of *Nurenburgh*. I am,

Sir,

Augsburgh, *Dec.* 2. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XI.

SIR,

AS we were leaving *Augsburgh* we took notice upon the Road, that they cover the Vines and Fig-trees hereabouts with Straw or Mats against the cold, which is sharper here than in *England*, tho' they lie more remote from the North. The Country is all upon a level betwixt *Augsburgh* and *Munich*, but none of the best, being full of Woods of Fir-trees.

Munich built in 965.

Munich is a beautiful City, but very indifferently fortified, and scarce half so big as *Augsburgh*, and of no Trade, the chief thing it has to boast of being the Residence of their Prince, and his magnificent Palace.

The Jesuits Library and College.

The first thing we did, was to visit the *Jesuits* Library, of which we had heard wonders, but found it by far not to answer our expectation; and the Library-keeper or his Deputy, who was order'd to shew it us, was so prodigious a Blockhead, that we could scarce imagin there could be so much Ignorance found among those of that Order. However, both their Palace and Church are exceeding fine, and the last very large, high, and lofty roofed; the Vestry is very rich, and among their Relicks they shew a Joynt as big as that of an Elephant, which, they told us, was one of St. *Christopher*'s Joynts of the Back-bone. In the *Austins* Church they have many excellent Pictures; and that of the *Cajetans* is a goodly Structure.

The City of *Munich* bears a Monk in its Arms, which seems to confirm the common Opinion, that it got the Latin Name of *Monacum* or *Monachium* from a Monastery that stood on the place where it was built.

In the Church of *Nostre Dame* is the magnificent Tomb of the Emperour *Lewis* IV. beautified with many Marble and Brass Figures. About ten or twelve steps from the entrance of the great Door of the Church, one of the Stones of the Pavement is mark'd with a double Cross; and if you stand upright upon this Stone, you find the Pillars of the Church so placed, that you can't see one of the Windows of the Church.

The Electoral Palace.

The outside of the Electoral Palace is not answerable to its internal Beauty, tho' at the same time most of its Apartments are not very regular; for this vast Structure being not built by one person, nor at the same time, its Fabrick differs according to the various Fancies of the persons that had the management of the Roof; notwithstanding all which, it is in the whole a very beautiful Fabrick. The great Hall of the Emperour's Apartment is a hundred and eighteen foot long, and fifty two broad; it is a truly-magnificent Apartment, especially in respect of its curious Pictures, which are all *Histories*, the sacred on one side, and the prophane on the other, every *History* having a certain Latin Inscription in Verse, one of the best of which is the Distich annex'd to that of *Susannah*,

Casta Susanna placet, Lucretia cede Susannæ
Tu post, illa mori maluit, ante pudor.

In the little Chapel belonging to the Electoress Apartment, you look almost upon nothing but Gold, Pearls and Gems. Among the Relicks they shew you a piece of Gold Mohair, which they pretend to be part of the Vir-

Virgins Robes. The Parlour of Perſpectives is extreamly fine; but the Hall of Antiquities (they were brought hither from *Rome*) exceeds all the reſt; we counted no leſs than a hundred ninety two Buſts, and four hundred other Pieces here, all highly eſteem'd for their exquiſite Workmanſhip and Antiquity.

The Furniture of this Palace is rich beyond what can be imagin'd, and they told us, that beſides the Tapeſtry in uſe, there were laid up in the Wardrobe to the value of eight millions of Crowns; but here, I am afraid, they overſhoot the mark. The Treaſury contains whole Services of Gold, and many other precious Veſſels, vaſt numbers of Pearls, Diamonds, Rubies, and other precious Stones, beſides an infinite number of rare Pictures, curious Works, Medals, and ſuchlike Rarities; among the reſt is a Cherry-ſtone, upon which you ſee diſtinctly engraven a hundred and forty Heads; and a Boat of Palm-tree Wood turn'd into Stone, with this Inſcription:

Palma fui, capi lapideſcere, cymbala nunc ſum
Si non Neptunus, Navita Bacchus erit.

Wherever you turn your Eyes in this Palace, you ſee nothing but Marble, tho', to unravel this Secret, it is to be known that the ſame is only a certain Compoſition, which they know how to harden and poliſh ſo artificially that it appears like natural Marble. They have divers ſubterraneous Walks or Galleries, leading from the Palace to all the Churches and Convents of the City.

The Arſenal. The Arſenal was at that time almoſt unfurniſh'd, moſt of the beſt Arms and Cannon being carried thence into *Hungary*. They ſhew'd us here the *Grand Vizier*'s Tent, taken in the laſt Battel, which was more remarkable for its bigneſs than its beauty; the Materials were only of painted Callico, with fine Sattin Strings, cover'd with Silk Braid, and the Lozenges of the ſame, placed from one place to another betwixt the Strings.

The Grand Vizier's Tent.

This Country produces no Wine, and as they know no other Religion but the *Roman*, ſo they look upon thoſe of another Perſwaſion more like Monſters than Men. I am,

Sir,

Munich, Dec. 4. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XII.

SIR,

AFter we had for ſome time travel'd along the Banks of the River *Iſer*, (upon which *Munich* is ſeated) we paſs'd thro' a Foreſt, and coming out thence immediately, diſcover'd the ſnowy tops of the *Alps*, which at a diſtance appear'd like the foaming Waves of a raging Sea: We came the ſame day to a Village call'd *Legrem*, ſeated near a ſmall Lake of freſh Water at the foot of the Mountains; we eat here ſome Fiſh we had never ſeen before. We coaſted along the Mountains for two hours, and by degrees got within the Rocks cover'd with Fir-trees and Snow, being a moſt deſolate place, and deſtitute of Inhabitants, except that near two or three Lakes you meet with a few Fiſhers Hutts, made of the Roots of Fir-trees well joyn'd together, their Boats being made of the ſame Trees hollow'd out.

Mittenwald in the *Alps*. At the Village of *Mittenwald*, three leagues within the Mountains, ſeated in a pleaſant Valley ſurrounded with Rocks, they treated us with ſome Goats-fleſh and Salmon Trouts. Our Hoſt ſhew'd us a certain kind of round Stones of the bigneſs of a Hens Egg, which he aſſur'd us were found in the Stomach of their Goats, and reſembled a ſoft imperfect *Bezoar*; he ask'd ten Crowns a piece for 'em.

We were not gone far from this Village, but we met a troop of Beggars acting the Hiſtory of the Fall; for they had planted a Tree loaden with red Fruit in the way, againſt which you ſee climbing up a little Demi-Devil, whilſt a Girl with long diſhevel'd Hair approacht towards it, and an old Fellow clad in black, with a young Boy clad in white, holding a Sword in his hand, ſtood at a little diſtance.

Within a quarter of an hour after, we paſſed by the Fort *Chernitz*, built betwixt two inacceſſible Rocks, being the common Boundary of *Tyrol*, and in the Biſhoprick of *Freiſingben*, the firſt whereof belongs to the Emperour, the laſt is part of the Country of *Bavaria*.

At Night we came to the Village of *Leefeld*, where is a Convent of *Auſtin* Friers: In their Church they ſhew you two or three pretended Miracles, and among the reſt a chew'd Hoſt, and bloody, in a Repoſitory of Glaſs: They tell you, that a Gentleman nam'd *Milſer*, Lord of the Caſtle of *Schiesburgh*, being ſo vain as to oblige them to give him the great Hoſt, which is only for the uſe of the Clergy, he had no ſooner put it into his Mouth, but it caſt out a Flood of Blood, and at the ſame time his Legs ſunk into the Pavement up to his Knees; they ſhew you the hole to this day in the Pavement near the Altar, and the print of his Hand on one of the Stones of the ſame Altar, where he would have ſupported himſelf.

About two leagues beyond *Leefeld* we began to deſcend into a Valley at leaſt a mile in breadth, adorn'd with divers pretty little Villages, water'd by the River *Ilm*: We paſſed only on the right ſide of it, along the Foot of the Mountain; where, after we had travel'd a league further, they ſhew'd us a ſtreight and craggy Rock, call'd the *Emperour's Rock*, above a hundred fathoms high, (as they aſſur'd us) about three quarters of the height of which we could obſerve a Nich dug, in which ſtood a Crucifix, with a Statue on each ſide: They tell you, that the Emperour *Maximilian* I. being in chaſe of a wild Goat, purſued her to this place, where alighting from his Horſe, he durſt not remount it, but was forc'd to be brought down by the help of Engines.

The Emperour's Rock in the *Alps*.

Inſpruck, a City ſeated upon the River *Ilm*, about two hours beyond the middle of the beforeſaid Valley: Before you enter the City you paſs that River over a Bridge, whence it has got the Name of *Inſpruck*, i. e. *The Bridge of the Ilm*, and *Ænipons* or *Æniponum* in Latin. *Inſpruck*.

The Houſes of *Inſpruck* are very fine, but their Roofs are built after an odd manner, being flat on the top, and the Rafters, inſtead of riſing to a point, are revers'd, ſo that the Rain is gather'd in the middle of the Roof.

The Palace of *Inſpruck*, where the Duke of *Lorrain* then reſided as Governour, is both convenient and large, but neither beautiful nor regular, having been built at divers times. There is one thing particular here, of which I will endeavour to give you the beſt account I can: There ſtands in the middle of the City a Houſe call'd the *Chancery*, the Roof of the Porch of which, they tell you, is cover'd with Plates of Gold, by Archduke *Frederick*, after he return'd from his Exile. I made the beſt Obſervation I could concerning the truth of this Story, and found that the Plates of Braſs were faſtned to the Timber inſtead of Tiles, and that each of theſe Tiles was cover'd with another thin one of another Metal, which if they be not Gold, I am ſure they are gilded; the Roof being about fifteen foot ſquare, it could by calculation not amount to above two hundred thouſand Crowns.

The Chancery

A Roof of Gold.

The twenty eight magnificent Braſs Statues in the Church of the *Cordeliers*, were the Gift of the ſame *Frederick*; they are bigger than the life, and repreſent Emperours, Archdukes, Dukes of *Burgundy*, two Empreſſes, and two Princeſſes, the Names of whom they are not able to tell you.

About half an hour from *Inſpruck*, at the foot of a Mountain ſtands *Amras*, a Country Seat of the Archdukes, being remarkable only for its ſituation and the curioſities they ſhew to Strangers. There is a large Hall fill'd with all ſorts of Arms, which were more curious than uſeful; and among other things, a Launce uſed by Archduke *Ferdinand* in Turnaments. They tell you ſurprizing things of the Strength of this Prince; as for inſtance, That he could ſtop a Coach with ſix Horſes, by taking hold of a Spoke of the Wheel; and would break two Crownpieces joyn'd together. In an adjacent Gallery we ſaw the Effigies of many Princes mounted on their beſt Horſes in Armour, with all the Ornaments uſed in Turnaments; and the Skin of a Serpent fifteen foot long, taken near *Ulm*, upon the Bank of the *Danube*. At the end of this Gallery is an Apartment fill'd with the Spoils and Arms taken from the *Turks*: Here you ſee a *Baſſa* and an *Aga* of the *Janizaries* repreſented on Horſeback, in the ſame magnificent Habits and Harneſſes, embelliſh'd with Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, they had when they were taken.

Curioſities in a Country Seat of the Archdukes of *Inſpruck*.

In another Gallery they ſhew'd us a double rank of Cupboards, joyn'd by the Backs and Sides, extended all along the middle of the Gallery, there being but a little room left to walk on both ſides: The three firſt were full of curious Works of all ſorts, as Alabaſter, Glaſs, Coral and Mother of Pearl; the fourth contain'd Medals and Gold and Silver Coins; the fifth, Veſſels of Porclave and Seal'd Earth; in the ſixth were many rare little

Cabinets

Cabinets richly inlaid, the Drawers whereof were fill'd with Medals and little Curioſities of *Agate* and *Ambergriſe*. Beſides theſe, you ſee here ſeven large Volumes, bound in black Velvet, with Edges and Claſps of Silver, which, inſtead of Leaves, contain'd ſmall Boxes fill'd with a great number of Medals. The ſeventh Cupboard has many very ancient Arms curiouſly wrought; and among the reſt, a Croſsbow with thirty four leſſer Bows within its compaſs, diſcharging as many Arrows at a time. The eighth is fill'd with Animals, Plants, and ſuchlike natural Curioſities; here you ſee a Horn of an Ox of ſix inches diameter. The three following Cupboards are ſtor'd with Works of Ivory, of Wood, and of the Pen; the twelfth with Manuſcripts and rare Books; the thirteenth with Works of Steel, and particularly Padlocks and other Locks of a rare invention: In the fourteenth they ſhew'd us Stones repreſenting Trees, Fruits, Shells, and Animals, all the pure Productions of Nature: In the fifteenth and ſixteenth, all ſorts of Clockwork and Muſical Inſtruments. The ſeventeenth contains a conſiderable quantity of precious Stones unpoliſh'd, and of Metallick and Mineral Oar. The eighteenth, a good number of ſmall Veſſels of precious Materials, and of the rareſt Shells in the World. The nineteenth ſurpaſſes all the reſt in Riches, being fill'd with Veſſels of Gold, Cryſtal, Agate, Chalcedony, Onyx, Cornelian, *Lapis Lazuli*, and other precious Stones, enrich'd with Gold and Diamonds in *baſſo relievo*, and other rare Workmanſhip. The twentieth and laſt contains Antiquities of all ſorts, Sepulchral Lamps, Urns, Idols, &c. and among the reſt, a piece of a Rope about the length of a Hand, which, they tell you, is part of the ſame Rope wherewith *Judas* hang'd himſelf.

On the Walls and Ceiling you ſee an infinite number of other Curioſities, among which the Bow of *Noah* is an admirable piece of Painting, for which, they ſay, the Great Duke of *Tuſcany* offer'd an hundred thouſand Crowns; and in a great Cheſt you ſee a whole Cartload of Medals laid up.

From hence they carried us into the Library, which we found much out of order; and from thence into another Gallery full of Statues, Buſts, and other pieces of Antiquity; beſides a great many other Apartments adorn'd with Pictures of a great value.

At our Inn (the *Golden Hart*) we ſaw a Fellow who would lay his Arm ſtretch'd upon the Ground, upon which a luſty Fellow ſtanding with both his Feet, he lifts him up with the ſame Hand only, and carries him croſs the Room. I am,

Sir;

Inſpruck, *Dec.* 7. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XIII.

SIR,

ABout a league beyond *Inſpruck* we re-enter'd the Mountains, and by a troubleſom and tedious aſcent of ſeven hours, came late at night to a little Village (not quite at the top of the Mountain) call'd *Gruſs*, i. e. *Salutation*, having got its Name from the meeting of the two illuſtrious Brothers near it, *viz. Charles* V. and his Brother *Ferdinand*, the whole account whereof you find engraven on a Marble Stone two hundred paces from the Village, the exact place where they ſaluted each other at firſt. They treated us at night with ſeveral ſorts of Wildfowl and Veniſon; all the Hares, Foxes and Bears are white here, as well as moſt of their Partridges; they abound alſo in Heathcocks and Hens, Pheaſants, and another kind of large Wildfowl, call'd by them *Schneehahn* or *Snowgoaſe*. All theſe ſorts of Wildfowl have their Feet Velvered about the Claws, with a kind of Furr which is neither Hair nor Feathers, but ſo thick, that the Snow can't penetrate it.

The Salutation of *Charles* the Fifth and *Ferdinand*.

The Wildfowl in the *Alps*.

This Mountain is call'd the *Brennerberg*, i. e. a *burning Hill*, by reaſon of the piercing and burning Winds, which (together with the Thunder and Lightning) reign frequently there in the Summer ſeaſon. Theſe Winds forcing their paſſage thro' the hollowneſs of the neighbouring Mountains, like thro' Pipes, raiſe ſuch various Hurricanes as ſometimes overthrow both Rocks and Trees.

Having travel'd about two hours the next day, we came to the top of the Mountain, where we diſcover'd a remarkable Spring, which diſcharging it ſelf upon a Rock, there ſeparates into two Currents, which ſoon after become conſiderable Rivers, one turning to the South and joyning with the *Ilm* near *Inſpruck*, the other to the North, after it has paſſed *Brixen* and *Bolſano*, diſcharges it ſelf into the *Adige* a little above *Trent*.

A remarkable Spring in the *Alps*.

We dined that day at *Steerzingen*, where we eat the Fleſh of a certain Creature call'd by them *Steinbocks* or *Rock-Goats*, (*Rupæ Capræ*) a Creature betwixt a he-Goat and a Doe, which was moſt excellent Meat.

From hence, the direct way to *Trent* being very rough, we took that over *Brixen*, which is leſs dangerous: We met this day above a hundred Waggons drawn by Oxen, the cloven Feet whereof were ſhod with Iron; they came from the Fair of *Bolſano*. We ſaw alſo in theſe Mountains abundance of ſmall Carts with two Wheels, which the Peaſants draw themſelves, and chiefly make uſe of 'em to fetch Salt from *Hall*, a little City in the Valley of *Inſpruck*; it is made out of Water boil'd into Salt. The Habits of theſe Mountaineers are very odd, ſome wearing green, others yellow, and others blue Hats, and that with ſuch little difference in their Garments, that the Women are ſcarce to be diſcern'd from the Men.

Brixen is a very ſmall City in the Country of *Tyrol*, tho' it is the Reſidence of the Biſhop. They keep their beſt Apartments here in the higheſt Stories, but for what reaſon I know not.

Brixen.

From hence to *Bolſano* is only ſeven hours travelling; but as the Road lies betwixt the River and the high Mountains, if a ſudden Thaw happens to melt the Snow, it rowls down from the Precipices with ſuch violence, that it ſwallows up both Man and Beaſt; whence it is that on the Road you ſee ſo many ſmall Monuments fill'd with the Hiſtories of ſuch as have either eſcap'd narrowly or periſh'd by theſe Accidents; and hence it is that the Churches hereabouts, and eſpecially our Lady of *Newburgh*'s, are almoſt overladen with Preſents.

We were not a little ſurpriz'd when we found the Valley of *Bolſano*, in the middle of the Winter, cover'd with green Willows, Roſes, and Mulberry-trees, the reaſon whereof may be attributed to the ſituation of the Valley, which on all ſides is ſheltred from the Winds.

The Valley of *Bolſano*.

The City of *Bolſano* belongs alſo to the Biſhoprick of *Trent*, but is of a little compaſs; its chief Traffick conſiſts in four Fairs a year, each of which laſts fifteen days, in which they exchange the Commodities brought thither from *Germany* and *Italy*. They ſhew'd us a round hole of three foot diameter in the Roof of the Church, ſurrounded with a Garland of Ribbons of different colours, on which hang a great number of large Wafers: They told us, That an Opera being acted in that Church on *Aſcenſion Day*, the Perſon that repreſented Chriſt was taken up into Heaven thro' this hole.

The City of *Bolſano*.

The Valley of *Bolſano* is full of Vineyards, which produce a Wine much eſteem'd hereabouts, but is not ſo pleaſing to Strangers, by reaſon of its fulſome ſweetneſs.

The Road betwixt *Bolſano* and *Trent* (juſt a days Journey) is planted all along the Valley with Vines, where you ſee, at certain diſtances, little Straw Hutts, ſupported by three high Firr-poles, like a Trevet, from whence they kill the Bears with Fuſees, that come from the Mountains to eat the Grapes.

Trent is much of the ſame bigneſs as *Bolſano*, and ſeated after the ſame manner, on a flat Rock of a kind of red and white Marble, which alſo furniſhes the Materials to their Houſes. This City is ſubject to moſt dangerous Inundations, not only from the overflowing of the River, but alſo from the Brooks of *Levis* and *Ferſapa*, which ſometimes diſgorge themſelves with ſuch impetuoſity from the adjacent Mountains, that they force and rowl great Rocks along with 'em even into the Town.

Trent.

Trent is fortified only with a ſingle Wall, waſh'd by the River *Adige*. The Bridge and Biſhop's Palace are much boaſted of by the Country People, tho' the laſt is both low and but indifferently large. The Biſhop is both a Temporal and Spiritual Lord, and his Territories are of a conſiderable extent. Some place *Tyrol* in *Germany*, others in *Italy*, becauſe the Biſhop is a Prince of the Empire; but the common Language of *Trent* is *Italian*, and the Inhabitants of the Country reckon it part of *Italy*.

In one of the Chapels of the Cathedral they ſhew a Crucifix as big as the Life, which, they ſay, bow'd its Head at the time of the Councils being ſworn and proclaim'd under it, to ſhew its approbation of the Veracity of their Decrees. They add, That no body knows the Materials of which it is compoſed; and for that reaſon would have you believe it was made without Hands. They are building a moſt magnificent Chapel, where it is

The Council of *Trent*.

to

to be placed, this being somewhat dark; they call it the *Holy Crucifix*.

The Church of St. *Mary major*, where this Council sate, is a little Church, built of a kind of base Marble. The Organs here are worth taking notice of, for they not only play'd to us many new Ayres, but also counterfeited the Cries of divers Beasts, beat the Drum, and several other things of this nature, which seem'd to us too gay, in relation to the gravity of such a Council, the History whereof is painted near it.

The little Saint *Simonin*. In the Church of St. *Peter* they shew the Chapel of the little Saint *Simonin*. They tell you, that in 1276. the *Jews* stole their *Simonin*, (or little *Simon*) a Shoemaker's Son, in the 28th month of his age, and after having kill'd the Child in a most cruel manner, to drink the Blood at one of their Feasts, threw his Carcass into a Water-pipe, (which now passes to the House where the thing was committed, and where their Synagogue was at that time) which being thence carried into the River, and found by some Fishermen, the whole business was discover'd, the *Jews* convicted, thirty nine of 'em executed, and the rest for ever banish'd the City. Pope *Sixtus* IV. canoniz'd the Child, which being embalm'd, is now to be seen in a Case upon the Altar of a Chapel dedicated to his memory, with a Knife, Pincers, and four great Iron Needles they made use of in tormenting the Child, and two Silver Goblets, in which they drank the Blood. The same Story is painted at *Frankfort* on the *Main*, under the Bridge Gate. I am,

Sir,

Trent, *Dec.* 13. 1687.

Tours, &c.

LETTER XIV.

SIR,

Rovereto. FRom hence we travel'd on to *Roveredo*, a little City famous for its Trade in Silk, and so on to *Borguetto*, the last Village in the Territory of *Trent*, and to *Ossenigo*, the first belonging to the *Venetians*, a little wooden Cross being the Mark that shews the Boundary of these two States.

On this side of *Roveredo* you travel thro' the *Wood of Roveredo*, as they call it, tho' there is scarce a Shrub to be seen all the way, the Ground being cover'd all along with Rocks, that lie scatter'd up and down, and some distance from one another. It is a dangerous passage for Travellers, as well as the Forest *Vergnara*, between *Ossenigo* and the Fort of *Goardara*, by reason of the multitude of Robbers that frequent these Desart places.

Chiusa. It being too late to reach the Fort *Scluse*, we were forc'd to lodge in the little Village of *Seraino*. The Fort is seated at the foot of a high Rock, the way leading to it being cut out of the craggy Rock which is a Precipice on the back-side, at the bottom whereof the *Adige* runs with a swift current.

After we had passed the Fort, and had coasted for some time the Banks of the said River, which here glides along among the Rocks, we came at last into a vast Plain, which is stony and barren in divers places, tho' in others you see it well planted with Olive and white Mulberry-trees for Silk-worms, as well as with Vines, the last of which are planted at the foot of Cherry-trees and young Elms, and joyn themselves from Tree to Tree.

Having pass'd the *Adige* in a Ferryboat two leagues from *Seraino*, we discover'd soon after the City of *Verona*, where we arriv'd the same day.

Verona. On that side where we entred the Gates, we found a great many void spaces, and the Grass growing in the Streets, which were scarce half pav'd; and tho' the rest is something better, yet generally speaking, it is a poor place, and very indifferently Peopled. The Houses are generally low and unequal, the Balconies for the most part of Wood, and the Streets dirty and for the most part very narrow; however, its situation is infinitely pleasing, and the Air very good. The *Adige* divides it in two parts, which are joyn'd again by four Stone Bridges. *Castles.* The Castle of St. *Peter* being seated upon a rising ground, affords a most admirable prospect of the circumjacent Country. The Fort of St. *Felix* is behind that of St. *Peter*, and both together command the City; the rest of the Fortifications are both irregular and much out of repair.

The Amphitheatre. The Amphitheatre of *Verona* is all destroy'd as to the Front or outward Wall, but the Benches have been kept in tolerable repair; there are forty four of 'em, the circumference of the highest I found five hundred and thirty paces, and of the lowest two hundred and fifty; each Step is a foot and a half high, and twenty six inches broad. At each end of the *Arena*, betwixt the Benches, is a Portal of twenty eight high, by which you may enter out of the Street into the *Arena*; and above each of these Portals, a Balcony of twenty foot long and ten broad, surrounded with Marble Rails.

In the Cathedral, which is a little dark Building, you see the Tomb of Pope *Lucius* III. with this Inscription only:

Ossa Lucii III. Roma pulsus invidia.

St. Zeno's Church. The Church of St *Zeno* at *Verona* acknowledges *Pepin* the Son of *Charlemain* for its Founder; it has most wretched carving on the Frontispiece. On the Portal I took notice of two Birds that, I suppose, were made for Cocks, holding between them a Creature with a long Tail, intended perhaps for a Fox, by which, some believe, is represented *Pepin* and *Charlemain* (two *French-men*) who dispossess'd *Didier* King of the *Lombards*. On the same Portal is another Hieroglyphick, *viz.* a Man on Horseback in *bosso relievo*, over whom the following three Verses are written, in half *Roman* and half *Gothick* Characters:

O Regem stultum, petit infernale tributum,
Moxque paratur equus, quem misit Dæmon iniquus.
Exit aquæ nudus, petit infera non rediturus.

But I could not meet with any body that could give me an interpretation of this Devil's Horse.

Near the Church of St. *Mary the Old* you see many magnificent Tombs of the *Scaligers*, who were Princes of *Verona* before this City was forc'd to submit to the *Venetians*.

Count *Mascardo*'s Cabinet. The Cabinet of Count *Mascardo*, consisting of a Gallery and six Chambers full of Pictures, Books, Rings, Animals, Plants, Metals, monstrous or extravagant Productions of Nature, and the most exquisite Pieces of Art, is so admirable, and their number so great, that even a Catalogue of 'em would fill a good Volume; however, I can't forbear to mention some of 'em, not spoken of before: It has many Instruments and Utensils used in the *Pagan* Sacrifices, and divers Figures of Brass, which they used to hang up in their Temples in remembrance of some signal Deliverance; divers pieces of Workmanship out of the Stone *Amianthos*, or the ἀσβεστος, spun into Thread like Cotton. Here I observ'd also many of those Barks of Trees used among the Ancients before the inventing of Paper; two Trees of black Coral three foot high each; a Hens Egg of this figure (⟝); a Circumcision Knife, used by the *Jews* to those Children that died before the eighth day.

An Italian Burial. We saw also a Funeral at *Verona*, the Body being dress all in black, with a white Linen Cloak, a fine Perriwig upon the Head, and a Hat adorn'd with a Garland of Flowers, was thus laid upon a Quilt, with a Counterpane of flower'd Silk yellow and red, and a Pillow of the same Stuff. It was carried thus open by four Men thro' the Streets, the Company following two by two, and such as were never married wearing Garlands, in imitation of the Ancients, who had their *Corona Pudicitiæ*, or *Garland of Chastity*. One Mr. *Montel*, a *French* Merchant living at *Verona*, gave me an account of a Procession he had often seen, which I can't but give you a short account of; the Story runs thus:

An odd Procession. *Jesus Christ* having a compassion for the Ass he made his entrance upon into *Jerusalem*, gave her a Key to the Fields, where she was to feed quietly all her life-time after; but the Ass, it seems, being tired with her own Country Pasture, had a mind to try those of foreign Countries, and coming to the Sea, the Waves became smooth and solid, so that with little trouble she visited the Isles of *Cyprus*, *Rhodes*, *Candia*, *Malta*, and *Sicily*, and thence coming to the Gulph of *Venice*, staid for some time in the same place where *Venice* was built since, but finding the Air not very healthy, and the Marshy Pastures not sweet enough for her Palate, she march'd up the River *Adige* to *Verona*, where she liv'd and ended her days.

To preserve the Memory of this renown'd Ass, they have put his Relicks into the Belly of an artificial Ass, which

which is kept in the Church of *Nostre Dame* of the Organs, and which is carried two or three times every year, by four Monks of the Convent in Pontifical Habits, in Procession round the City. I am,

Sir,

Verona, Dec. 16. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XV.

SIR,

AS we travel'd from *Verona* to *Vicenza*, we found the Country very fertile, well cultivated, and generally level; their Trees they plant here chequerwise, on which they raise their Vines. We dined at the little Village *La Terre*, the Boundary betwixt the *Veronese* and *Vicentin* Territories; their Wines are fulsom and sweet; their Bread, tho' made of excellent and white Flower, as heavy as a lump of Earth, for want of good management; and the rest of our Fare was a Dish of grey Pease fry'd in Oil, a thing surprizing enough in so plentiful a Country, when we had better Fare among the Mountains.

Vicenza. *Vicenza* is scarce half so big as *Verona*, and but slenderly fortified with an old Wall. Three or four Rivulets meet near it, but none of 'em are navigable.

Among their Churches, the *Coronata* is finely pav'd and wainscotted; and that of the Religious of St. *Catherine* is noted for three very fine Altars, as the Cathedral is for divers good Pictures.

Their Townhouse, tho' much boasted of by the *Italians*, is but an indifferent Structure, as indeed are many others which pass among them for magnificent Buildings, there being nothing more natural to the *Italians* than to be lavish in their Titles, whence they give frequently the name of a *Palace* to those Structures that would scarce pass for a handsom Country-Gentleman's Seat in other parts; as they often call that a *Chamber of Audience* which in *England* they call a good *Parlour*. Among other Fabricks we saw a little Country Seat belonging to the Marquess of *Capra*, about half a league from the City; it is a square Building, in the midst whereof is the Hall, under a small Dome, having at each Angle of the Square two Chambers and a Closet: It has some good Pictures, and its situation on an Ascent makes it very pleasant.

In our return we look'd upon the Church of our Lady of *Montberic*; the Prior gravely told us, that this Image of our Lady came out of the Earth, in the same place where she now stands, and from whence she is not to be remov'd; for if you will believe him, ten thousand men have been imploy'd to carry her to *Vicenza*, but could not perform that task. The Picture by the hand of *Paul* of *Verona*, in the Dining-room, representing St. *Gregory* at dinner with some Pilgrims, is a most excellent piece. The Ruins of the old Amphitheatre at *Vicenza* are hid under other Buildings. The Theatre which is in the Academy of the *Olympicks* is the Work of the great Architect *Palladio*; as is the Triumphal Arch without the Gates that lead into the Plain call'd the *Field of Mars*, built in imitation of the Ancients.

The Garden of *Valmanara*. The Garden of the Count *Valmanara* is a thing much boasted of among the *Vicentins*; 'tis true, it has a handsom Canal, curious Divisions, Knots and Closets, and a most delightful Alley of Oranges and Citrons, but after all, it wants much of being an accomplish'd piece, suitable to the Inscription over the Garden Gate, which begins thus:

> *Stop, dear Traveller, thou who searchest for rare things and enchanted places, for here thou maist find Satisfaction: Enter into this delicious Garden, and take a full taste of all sorts of Pleasures; the Count* de Valmanara *gives thee leave*, &c.

The Road betwixt *Vicenza* and *Padua* is much the same as betwixt *Verona* and *Vicenza*. We passed the *Tezenza* about an hour after we left *Vicenza*, and the *Brenta* an hour on this side of *Padua*, a large and poor City, seated in the midst of a most fruitful Country, having many void places without Houses, and many Houses without Inhabitants.

This City fell into the hands of the *Venetians* in 1406, and in 1519 they included the Suburbs within the Fortifications, which are now ready to fall. The Streets of this City are lined on both sides with Portico's or Piazza's, which tho' they afford a convenient shelter against the Rains and Sun-beams, they make 'em narrow and dark, and give Opportunity to many Murthers, Robberies and other Insolencies committed by the Scholars, known by the Name of *Qui vali* of *Padua*. *Padua* call'd *The Learned*.

The *Qui vali* of *Padua*. These Scholars have a Custom of going abroad arm'd in the Night-time in whole troops, and lurking between the Pillars of these *Piazza's*, assault such as happen to pass by that way; for whilst one asks the Question *Qui vali?* another immediately cries, *Qui vala?* and so, without giving time to the Passenger to recollect himself, knock him down, and sometimes break an Arm or a Leg.

Some Understanding Persons in these parts are of Opinion that *Padua* was formerly a Sea-port, by reason of its former Grandeur and Riches, and that now they sometimes dig Masts and Anchors out of the Ground; but these may perhaps be the Remnants of Ships left in a Canal leading to that City.

The Tomb of *Antenor*. The *Paduans* boast of *Antenor*, as their first Founder; but not to insist upon the probability of this Assertion, or whether *Padua* be the *Patavium* of *Antenor*, I will only tell you, that their pretended Tomb of *Antenor* is a meer Imposition upon the World; for, about four hundred Years ago, as they were laying the Foundation of an Hospital, they hapned to dig up a Leaden Coffin, near which lay a Sword; the Coffin was without any Inscription, but the Sword had some Verses of *barbarous Latin*, having but very little relation to what was used in *Antenor*'s days: Notwithstanding which, the *Paduans* in general, but especially one *Lupatus*, a man of some Learning, and who was one of their Magistrates, were so much prepossess'd with the conceit of their pretended Founder, that they would needs erect this Monument at the entrance of St. *Lawrence*'s Street, and bestow the Title of *Antenor's Tomb* upon it, with the following Inscription in *Gothick* Characters;

C. *Inclytus Antenor patriæ* ◊ ☐ VOX
nisa quietem
Transtulit huc Exetum Dardani dumque fugas
Expulit Euganeos, Patavinum condidit Urbem
Quem tenet hic humili, marmore casu domus.

Several Criticisms have been made upon this Inscription, but among all the rest no body has been able to find out yet the intention of the C. at the beginning of these Verses. The Tomb of *Lupatus* stands just by that of his dear *Antenor*.

The Church of St. *Anthony* of *Padua*. The Church of St. *Anthony* of *Lisbon*, otherwise call'd St. *Anthony* of *Padua*, is both very large and exceeding magnificent both in carving and painting, and many very sumptuous Tombs; among the last are that of *Alexander Contarini*, the *Venetian* Admiral, and of Count *Horatio Sfeco*, kill'd at the last Siege of *Vienna*.

The Picture *in fresco* in the Chapel of St. *Felix*, done by the famous *Giotto*, is a most admirable piece: But the most considerable piece of all is, the Chapel of S. *Anthony*, which is forty foot long, and twenty five broad; his Body lies entomb'd under the Altar, which is very magnificent and rich; they pretend that his Bones send forth an odoriferous scent, for which reason there is kept a place behind the Altar, which being not well joyn'd, it is no difficult matter to put some Ballam into the opening. The Chapel is cover'd all over with a *basso relievo* work of white Marble, representing the Miracles wrought by this Saint, the Works of *Tullius Lombardus* and *Sansovin*: Before the Altar hang thirty six great Silver Lamps, which burn Night and Day.

The Church of St. *Justina* is both very large and magnificent, tho' not brought yet to its full perfection; the Pavement is compos'd of red, black, and white Marble Squares; and the Roof of the great Church hath seven Domes, which give it both Light and Ornament, and two more on each Arm of the Cross; it contains twenty four fine Marble Altars, all of a different colour, besides the *great Altar*, which is a most magnificent Work; they suffer no Monuments to be erected in this Church. The *Basso relievo* of the Benches of the Choir, representing the Prophecies of the Old Testament concerning Christ, with their Accomplishment in the New, is almost surprizing; it was not finish'd till after twenty two Years. The History of the Martyrdom of St. *Justina* over the *great Altar*, is of the excellent hand of *Paul* of *Verona*. The Monastery is a vast pile of Building, having no less than six Cloysters, and as many Courts and Gardens: I will not trouble you with the Story of the Image of the Virgin, which flew from *Constantinople* when the

the *Turks* became Masters of that City, no more than with an account of the other Saints that are kept in this Church. The great Place* near it was formerly call'd the *Field of Mars*, but has since chang'd its Name into that of *Prato della Valle*, or the *Meadow of the Valley*. The Hall of the Townhouse is a hundred and ten paces long, and forty broad, but dark; it contains many Monuments of illustrious Persons.

* 156 foot long, and 86 broad.

The *Paduans* have had no less Success in finding the Tomb of their Countryman *T. Livius*, than in that of *Antenor*, for in 1413. a Shrine of Lead having been found in the Gardens of St. *Justine*, they did not in the least question but that this Coffin must be that of *Titus Livius*, considering this noted Historian was the *Priest of Concord*, and that this Monastery of the *Benedictines* of St. *Justina* was built upon the Ruins of the ancient *Temple of Concord*. To be short, this pretended Coffin of *Livius* being chang'd for one of Wood, was carried with a great deal of Pomp to the Palace of Justice, where they erected the same Monument that is seen to this day, and afterwards added the following Inscription, which was found in the neighbourhood of the place where the *Temple of Concord* formerly stood:

The discovery of Livius's Tomb.

Vivus Fecit.

V. F.
Titus Livius
Liviæ T. F.
Quartæ L.
Halys
Concordialis
Patavi
Sibi & Suis
Omnibus.

Over this Inscription they have placed a Head of Marble, which passes for that of *Titus Livius*; but tho' both the Head and the Inscription are ancient, yet *Orsato* has in his late Dissertation sufficiently prov'd, that the *Titus Livius* mention'd in this Inscription was no more than a freed Man, of one of the Daughters of *Titus Livius* the Historian.

In the same Hall is another Monument of the Marchioness *d'Obizzi*, who, in my opinion, deserv'd as much, if not more Praise than either *Susanna* or *Lucretia*; for a Gentleman of *Padua* being extreamly in love with this young and beautiful Lady, found means to get into her Bedchamber whilst she was in Bed, in her Husband's absence, and finding all his Rhetorick and Perswasions in vain, and the Lady resolute not to grant his desire, he was so transported with Rage, that he stab'd her. Her Tomb has this Inscription:

A modern Lucretia.

Venerare pudicitiæ simulacrum & victimam, Lucretiam de Dondis ab Horologio Pyrrhæ de Obizzionibus, Orciani Marchionis uxorem. Hæc inter noctis tenebras maritales asserens tedas, furiales recentis Tarquinii faces, casto core extinxit. Sicque Romanam Lucretiam intemeratæ gloria vicit. Tantæ suæ Heroinæ generosis manibus hanc dicavitatem Civitas Patavina decreto; Die 31 Decembr. Ann. 1661.

It is remarkable, that the Gentleman who committed so foul a Fact being put to the Torture, denied the Fact, so that being, after fifteen Years imprisonment, at last discharg'd at the intercession of his Friends, he was soon after shot by the Son of the said Lady, who was no more than five Years old when this barbarous act was committed, and is now in the Emperour's Service.

I can't pass by to tell you, that among all the Antiquaries of those parts, Mr. *Patin*, Professor of Physick, has the most judicious Knowledge in these, as well as most other matters of this nature.

The Amphitheatre of *Padua* exceeded that of *Verona*, but nothing is to be seen of it now but an heap of Ruins.

I must tell you, that going into a Tennis-court here, I found the Walls white, and the Balls black, and the Rackets of the bigness of a large Sieve. I am,

Sir,

Padua, Dec. 19. 1687.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XVI.

SIR,

WE left *Padua* the 20th of *December*, and came to *Venice* the same night in good time: By the way we saw many good Villages and Country houses belonging to *Noble Venetians*.

Coming to *Mestre*, a little City on the shore of the Gulph, five miles from *Venice*, we took a *Gondola*, which carried us in an hour and a half thither.

To give you a true Idea of *Venice*, I must say some- *Venice* the Rich.
thing of the Waters, in the midst whereof it is built. 'Tis certain that the Grounds upon which *Venice* now stands were, thirteen or fourteen hundred Years ago, drown'd by the Sea, till afterwards they were raised out of the Water, and Chanels made betwixt them, for the more convenient approach of Vessels to the City, some of 'em being capable of admitting Ships of the greatest burthen, whereas some can't carry Vessels of above two hundred Tuns. To empty the Mudd out of these Chanels, they have Mills and other Engines, and have turn'd the Mouth of the *Brent* and some other Rivers, to prevent their forcing the Sands into the Lagunes or Chanels, for fear the Earth should gain upon them, who put their greatest Safety and Strength in their Situation: But as they are oblig'd on one side to keep the depth of their Waters, so on the other hand it is not for their interest that these Chanels should be of an equal depth in all places, this being one of their main Securities, which has stood them in good stead at several times, witness the miscarriage of *Pepin*'s Vessels in these Chanels, and of the *Genoese* Fleet about three hundred years ago.

Imagine then a City with thirty or forty tall Steeples to rise from among these Chanels, at a league and a half distance from the Continent, without any other fence than the Waves of the Sea.

Venice is generally describ'd to consist of seventy two Islands, whereas it is altogether built upon Piles in the Water, which washes the Foundation of almost all the Houses four or five foot high; and the *Canals* are of an equal breadth: 'Tis true, that they have some spaces of a reasonable bigness, which seems to intimate, that there was formerly some Land there, but does not evince that there was seventy two Isles. The Streets are very narrow, and were in all likelihood raised with Mudd and Rubbish, and if all the Divisions made by the *Canals* should pass for Isles, there would be near two hundred, instead of seventy two. A description of the Chanels of *Venice*

The compass of *Venice* is generally said to be seven or eight miles; but considering that we row'd the five miles from *Mestre* to *Venice* in an hour and a half, and that in the same space of time we took the whole circumference of *Venice*, with two Rowers, it is reasonable to conclude that its compass can't be above five miles, considering especially that, to avoid the little Lakes, our *Gondola* was forc'd to take a larger compass than the real circuit of the City. Its bigness.

The same Caution is used in reference to the number of its Inhabitants, which some make amount to two or three hundred thousand Souls, others to four hundred thousand: I know not whether the number of its Inhabitants may not have been much greater, whilst this City was in its flourishing state; but if the Word of a Person of Credit, who has liv'd a considerable time here, may be taken, according to his computation, the number of Inhabitants does not at present amount to a hundred and forty Souls, including the Isle of *Giudecca*. What some alledge to prove the Populosity of *Venice*, (*viz.* that it has very few or no Streets of any bigness) is to very little purpose, since the *Canals* take up as much space as would suffice to make very spacious Streets. Number of Inhabitants.

The first place we visited was the Palace of St. *Mark*, the Soul and Glory of *Venice*; the Church of St. *Mark* fronts one end of it, and that of *Geminian* the other; and betwixt both these Churches, the *Procuraties*, or Inns of Court and Offices of Lawyers, built very regularly of fine Marble, border both sides of it with lofty and handsome *Piazza's*. This Place is two hundred and eighty foot long, and a hundred and ten broad. The Palace of St. *Mark*.

As you are going from the Church of St. *Geminian* towards that of St. *Mark*, and instead of entring there, to the right hand you come into another Square two hundred and fifty paces long, and eighty broad, call'd the *Broglio*, the extremity of which reaches to the Sea-side. The *Doge's* Palace takes up one side of it, and the *Procuraties* are continued on the other.

The Tower of S. Mark.

The Tower of St. *Mark* being near the Angle of the Square within, does in ſome meaſure ſpoil the Symmetry of the place; its height is three hundred and ſixty foot, including the Angel that ſerves for a Weathercock; formerly it was finely gilt, and could be diſcern'd thirty leagues at Sea, but the Gold being now worn off, it appears at no great diſtance.

The *Broglio*.

The *Broglio* is the place where the Nobles walk, who ſometimes take to one, ſometimes to the other ſide, according to the conveniency of the Sun or Shade, and no body elſe is admitted to mix with 'em on that ſide they walk, but the other is free for every body; they are ſo nice in this point, that when a young Nobleman is come to an age that qualifies him for the Council, and to take the Robe, four Noblemen of his Friends introduce him the firſt day into the *Broglio*; and if any Nobleman is excluded from the Council, he is alſo not admitted into the *Broglio*.

About the ninth Age the Merchants of *Venice* tranſported the Body of St. *Mark* from *Alexandria* in *Egypt* to *Venice*; and as Chriſt ſaluted this Evangeliſt in Priſon with theſe words, *Peace be unto thee* Mark, *my Evangeliſt*, ſo the Body of this Saint was receiv'd with the ſame words by the Senate of *Venice*, and order'd the ſame to be written in the open Book held by the Lyon of S. *Mark* in the Arms of *Venice*, and the Church of St. *Mark* to be built to his honour; tho' at the ſame time they were ſo careleſs in obſerving his Shrine or Tomb, that now they can't preciſely tell where it is. I will not detain you with the Story of his Apparition, when he ſhew'd his Arm to the *Doge*, and beſtow'd upon him the Golden Ring, which is carried with great ſolemnity in Proceſſion every Year on the 28th of *June*.

The Patriarchal Churches dedicated to St. *Peter* and St. *Mark* is no more than the *Doge's* Chapel, and the *Primicerio* or Dean of the Canons of St. *Mark* wears a Mitre and Rochet, like a Biſhop, and has no dependance on the Patriarch; I ſaw him officiate in great pomp on *Chriſtmas Day*; he muſt always be a Noble *Venetian*, and his annual Revenue may be about a thouſand pounds Sterling.

St. *Mark's* Church.

The Church of St. *Mark* is a ſquare Structure after the *Greek* way, being a Croſs ſhorined, but not very lofty, and ſomewhat dark; its chief Ornaments conſiſt in excellent *Moſaick* Work and Marble; the Roof has ſeveral Domes, among which that in the middle exceeds the reſt: It has a vaſt number of Statues on the outſide, among which the *Adam* and *Eve*, by *Ricedo*, are chiefly remarkable: I don't ſpeak in this place of the four brazen Horſes over the Porch, as being foreign Pieces brought thither by accident. A certain learned Antiquary told me, that theſe Horſes belong'd formerly to the Chariot of the Sun, which was made as a ſingular Ornament to a triumphal Arch erected by the *Roman* Senate to the honour of *Nero*, after his Victory over the *Parthians*; *Conſtantine* the Great carried them from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*, where they ſtood in the *Hippodrome* till the *Venetians* brought 'em from thence: One may ſtill ſee they were gilt.

Moſaick Work.

But the greateſt Curioſity belonging to the Church of St. *Mark* is, the vaſt quantity of *Moſaick* Work wherewith both the Roof and Pavement is cover'd. To give you ſome Idea of this Work; it deduces its Origin from *Greece*, tho' they tell you that its uſe has been in *Italy* near two thouſand Years; for *Vitruvius* (who liv'd under *Auguſtus*) calls it *Opus ſectile*, *Pavimenta ſectilia*, *Opera Muſiva* and *Muſroa*; by others it is call'd *Opus Varniculatum* or *Teſſalatum*. All Works therefore compos'd of ſmall inlaid Pieces, whether of Stone, Wood, Ivory, or any other matter, let their repreſentations be what they will, come within the compaſs of what is call'd *Moſaick* Work: The moſt curious Works made out of *Florence* Stone come alſo under the denomination of *Moſaick* Work: but inſtead of natural Stones, which would take up too much time to be poliſh'd and prepar'd, they have made uſe here of a certain compoſition of Glaſs and Enamel, melted together in a Crucible, which takes a moſt lively and bright colour, that never fades nor ſtains. Every piece of the *Moſaick* of St. *Mark* is a little Cube; the Field is *Moſaick* finely gilt, and incorporated in the Fire, upon the Superficies of one of the Faces of the Square, all the Figures (with their Draperies and Ornaments) being colour'd according to Nature, by the artificial joyning together of all the pieces of the Work, according to the deſign of the Workman, being ſtraitly united in the compound Matter or Plaiſter prepar'd to receive 'em, which immediately after becomes ſo hard and ſolid, that this Work has laſted near eight hundred and fifty Years without loſing any thing of its beauty.

The Pavement of the Church is not inferiour to the Roof, being compos'd of *Jaſper*, *Porphyry*, ſpotted-green *Marble*, and *Marble* of divers other colours, which make Compartments different from each other. Among all the Relicks, miraculous Images, and other holy Rarities kept here, I will mention only the Rock which *Moſes* ſtruck in the Wilderneſs, in the Chapel of —— at the end of the Font, of a greyiſh Marble; the three holes out of which the Water iſſued are placed triangular-wiſe, about two inches aſunder; but as each of 'em is no bigger than a Gooſe Quill, how theſe could furniſh Water ſufficient in ſo ſmall a time to quench the thirſt of ſix hundred thouſand Men, with their Wives, Children and Cattle, is what I am not able to determine.

In the middle of the Portico of the Church, over againſt the Door, they ſhew a piece of Porphyry enchas'd in the Pavement where Pope *Alexander* III. ſet his Foot on the Neck of the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.

The Treaſury of S. Mark.

From the Church of St. *Mark* we were conducted to the Treaſury, of which three Procurators of St. *Mark* are always Guardians, and is never open'd but in the preſence of one of them. In the firſt Apartment they ſhew you ſome Relicks, ſeveral pieces of the true Croſs, the Bones of the Dead, the Hair and Milk of the Virgin. Thence you go into another Room, where the real Treaſure is kept, moſt of which was brought from *Conſtantinople* with the beforemention'd brazen Horſes. The moſt conſiderable Pieces here are, the two Crowns of the Kingdoms of *Cyprus* and *Candia*, abundance of precious Veſſels of Agate, the Root of an Emerald and of Rock-Cryſtal; all theſe, they tell you, belong'd to *Conſtantine's* Cupboard: A Seal eight inches deep, and as many in diameter, made of one ſingle Granate; a *Saphir* weighing ten ounces; twelve Croſſets of Gold, adorn'd with Pearls; as many Head-tires in form of a Crown, worn upon certain Feſtivals by the Maids of Honour to the Empreſs *Helen*; a Cup made out of a ſingle *Turquoiſe*, with *Egyptian* Characters, it is ſeven inches diameter, and three and a half deep; a Picture of St. *Jerome* in curious *Moſaick*; and many other rich things of this nature: But the Duke's Coronet is, in my opinion, the fineſt Piece of all, (which *Camerarius* values at not above two hundred thouſand crowns) the Circle is of Gold, the Bonnet of Crimſon Velvet, enrich'd all over with precious Stones and Pearls of a large ſize: *Charles Paſchal* is of opinion that this Coronet is the *Phrygian* Bonnet or *Trajan* Mitre brought into *Italy* by *Antenor*, the figure whereof is expreſs'd in ſeveral ancient Pieces, as in the Statue of *Ganymede*, which is to be ſeen in the Porch of the Library of S. *Mark*, upon ſome Medals of the God *Lunus*, in ſome others where *Æneas* carries *Anchiſes* upon his Back, and in the Miniatures of the ancient Manuſcript of *Virgil* in the *Vatican*.

The Goſpel of S. Mark.

This Manuſcript puts me in mind of another, *viz.* the ſo much celebrated *Goſpel of St. Mark* kept in this Treaſury, which I had leave, by a ſpecial favour, to conſider all over; its Leafs are of Parchment looſed from each other, very much worn and torn, defaced, and ſo rotted, that wherever you touch it ſomething will ſtick to your Fingers; it is very hard to diſcern any thing diſtinctly of it; it was in *4to*, of the thickneſs of two Fingers, and the remnants of this precious Treaſure are kept ſhut up in a Box, of Vermilion gilt, made in the ſhape of a Book. Here and there you may ſtill diſcern the traces of ſome imperfect Characters upon the moiſt Parchment, but ſo as ſcarce to be diſtinctly ſeen what they were; by a nice inſpection I diſcover'd three or four Letters well form'd, and met with the word KATA diſtinctly written as you ſee it here. The Abbot *Lith*, Library-keeper of St. *Mark*, aſſiſted me in turning over with a great deal of exactneſs all the Leafs, but could diſcover nothing material, except that it had a very broad Margin, and the Lines were placed at a great diſtance from one another, rul'd with two parallel lines, to make the Writing equal and ſtreight. The beforemention'd word KATA, with one Δ and one Σ, which we alſo plainly diſcern'd, prove that it is a Greek Manuſcript; *Alphonſus* ſays 'tis Latin, and *Baronius* confirms it; but that it ſhould be of St. *Mark's* own hand-writing, I can't find ſufficient reaſon to believe, being rather of opinion that (the manner of writing conſider'd) it is the Work of ſome profeſſed Tranſcriber; and as for the reſt, we muſt relie upon Tradition and common Fame, that it is the *Goſpel of St. Mark*; it being ſo much defac'd by the injury of Time, that few Letters can be decipher'd in it, and conſequently it is a difficult task to prove or diſprove whether it real'y be, or not, what they pretend it is.

In the Year 1427. one *Stamati*, a *Candiot* by birth, rob'd this Treaſury, and broke thro' the Wall, but was taken, and every thing recover'd, and he ſentenc'd to be hang'd, which was executed accordingly betwixt the Marble Pillars which ſtand at the entrance of the Palace

over against the *Loggietta*: They say, he beg'd of the Judges, that he might be hang'd in a golden Halter, which was granted.

The Palace of St. *Mark.*

Next adjoyning to the Church of S. *Mark* is the Palace of S. *Mark*, a great mass of Building after the *Gothick* manner, but nevertheless very magnificent: It has been several times defac'd by the Fire, so that the Reparations made at divers times have made it not so uniform as it would have been otherwise. That part which faces the Canal is built of a kind of very hard Stone brought from *Istria*, and excellently well design'd; were all the rest like this, it might pass for an exquisite piece of Architecture.

'Tis in this Palace that the Duke keeps his constant residence; and here it is that the Council of State and the other Assemblies meet. The Apartments are spacious and lofty enough, and well wainscotted, but want Light, in respect to our modern way of Architecture.

The Hall appointed for the meeting of the *Great Council* (where in effect the Soveraignty is lodg'd) is of a large size, and adorn'd with curious Painting; here you see the Pictures of all their Dukes, the History of the taking of *Constantinople* in 1192, but was lost again within sixty Years after; among the rest they shew you the History of Pope *Alexander* and *Frederick Barbarossa*, with the Pope's Foot on the Emperour's Neck, or rather his Shoulder, as 'tis express'd here.

The little Arsenal.

If you remember the Story of the Rebellion of *Bajamonta* against the Senate, in 1210, I must tell you, that this was the occasion of the little Arsenal kept in this Palace, from whence there is a passage to the Hall of the *Great Council* where the Nobility assembles, that in case such another Conjuration should break out whilst they are assembled in Council, they might readily be supplied with Arms from thence for their defence. It was upon the same score that they built the little Judgment-Seat call'd the *Loggietta*, at the foot of St. *Mark*'s Tower, in sight of the Palace and the *Grand Council* Chamber: Here are always some Procurators of St. *Mark* upon the Watch whilst the *Great Council* meet and deliberate of Matters of State.

This Arsenal is provided with a good number of Fusees and Musquets ready charg'd, besides many other Arms. Here they have an Engine which will light five hundred Matches at once: They preserve here also some very curious Arms of an ancient make, and among the rest the Sword of the brave *Scanderbeg*. Here they also shew you the Bust of *Francis Carrara*, the last Lord of *Padua*, who for his Cruelties was strangled, with four of his Children, by the command of the Senate of *Venice* in 1405. I observ'd also a little Trunk with six little Guns, which the said *Carrara* sent for a Present to a Lady, and was so contriv'd by certain Springs, that upon opening of the Trunk the Guns all fir'd at once, and kill'd the Lady. They also shew'd us some little Pocket Cross-bows, and Arrows of Steel of this Tyrant, wherewith he used to kill such as passed by, without knowing from whence they receiv'd their Wounds; and various sorts of Locks and Bolts, wherewith he used to keep up his Strumpets.

Here I also saw the two little Statues of *Adam* and *Eve*, which *Albert Durer* made in Prison with the point of his Pen-knife only, and which purchas'd him his Liberty.

We must not forget the antick Mouths under the inner Portico of this Palace, and in divers places of the Galleries, into the Throat of which any body may cast a Note, to give the best advice or notice of any thing he is able to the Inquisitors, who have the Keys of these Boxes, and sometimes reward those who make what they call *The secret Accusation*, who, to discover themselves, tear a piece of the Billet.

The Library is kept in the *Procuraties* opposite to the Palace, on the other side of the *Broglio*; it is none of the most numerous, rare, and best-condition'd, and has but few Manuscripts, which are for the most part *Greek*; tho' they also shew you another, entitul'd, *De Consideratione Dei*, attributed to St. *Austin*; but to make amends, it has divers excellent Pictures, done by *Titian* and other great Masters, and several exquisite *Greek* Statues, as that of *Ganymede*, a *Venus*, an *Apollo*, and two Gladiators.

It is the Opinion of some, that *Venice* has as many rare Pictures as *Rome*; I will not pretend to determine that matter, but only tell you, that the three most celebrated Pieces we could see, either in the Churches or any other publick place, are, the Wedding of *Canah*, by *Paul Veronese*, in the Refectory of *S. George major*; the Presentation of the Virgin, in the School of Charity; and the S. *Peter* Martyr, in S. *John* and S. *Paul*'s, both by *Titian*.

Venice is the likeliest place in *Europe* for young Painters to improve themselves, for in both the Academies they have the opportunity of viewing naked Persons of both Sexes, in which posture they please.

The Tide.

In answer to your Question concerning the Flux and Reflux, I can only tell you, that the Sea flows six hours, and ebbs as many; it is later every day about three quarters of an hour, as it is generally upon the Coasts you know: The Tide rises at *Venice* generally four foot, or four and a half, sometimes more, sometimes less. The Shore beyond *Venice* is extreamly pleasant, the long and narrow Isles enclosing this City from the North to South, in the form of a Semicircle. The main Sea affords some Shell-fish, and abundance of Oysters, but are neither so savoury nor so wholsome as ours.

The Policy and Liberty of *Venice.*

The *Venetians* boast much of their *Policy* and *Liberty*; for the proof of the first they generally alledge, that they have maintain'd themselves for thirteen hundred Years: This Reason might perhaps stand good, if they could boast to have maintain'd the same Form of Government; whereas it is beyond all contradiction, that the Government of *Venice* has often chang'd its Constitution, since their Dukes were as absolute as *Cæsar* was at *Rome* not long before his death. Another Consideration is, that the Republick of *Venice* being confin'd to such narrow Bounds, in comparison of the more powerful States of *Europe*, and surrounded by Neighbours less potent than it self, it seems not to require such profound Maxims of Policy to maintain it self, by living quietly and peaceably with the rest; and notwithstanding all this, the Senate of *Venice* have, with all their Policy, not been able to prevent the Declensions their State has suffer'd at divers times. As for their Liberty they so much brag of, it amounts chiefly to this; That provided they don't intermeddle with State-affairs, and commit no enormous Crime, that must of necessity, or by its notoriety, fall under the censure of Justice, every body is at liberty to live as he pleases: Hence it is that the *Greeks*, *Armenians* and *Jews* are allow'd the publick exercise of their Religions; and all the other Sects are tolerated, or at least conniv'd at, provided they manage matters with a little discretion: 'Tis true, the worshipping of Images, and Relicks, and such like Superstitions, are as frequent among the common People of *Venice* as in other places; but the better sort set no great value upon 'em. They are now as jealous of the Liberty of the *Venetian* Church as the *French* are of the *Gallican*; and it is for this reason they keep the *Jesuits* so much in awe; they allow none in their Convents but their own Subjects, and will not allow of any Superiour, except a Native of the City. They don't stick to permit these Fathers to wear Masks during the Carnival, to entertain their Concubines, to sing on the Stages, and what else they think fit, provided they keep their Fingers out of the publick affairs.

The *Greeks* at *Venice.*

Concerning the Articles of Faith of the *Greeks* here, I can't but be of opinion, that they differ in many points from the *Greek* Churches of the *Eastern* Countries, tho' they exclaim heavily against the Usurpation of the Church of *Rome*; they declare for Transubstantiation; they make use of common Bread, mingle Water with Wine, and communicate under both kinds. In their Churches they have two Altars, one call'd the *Altar of Preparation*, the other of *Consecration*; the first they make use of to cut the Bread with a Knife slrap'd like the Iron point of a Launce, where also they mix the Water and Wine, and the Priest takes it with a Sponge out of the Vessel in which it was first mix'd, and afterwards squeezes it into the Chalice. They embrace one another before they communicate, and the Communicants receive the Bread steep'd in the Wine, the Priest putting it with a Spoon into their Mouths: Of all this I was an Eye-witness. The Archbishop officiated in a Mitre not unlike an Imperial Crown, and all his Ornaments were exceeding magnificent, and were chang'd several times, according to the different parts of the Service.

Their Ceremonies.

They abound in mysterious Ceremonies; whenever the Bishop blesses the People, he has in his right Hand a three-branch'd Candlestick, with as many lighted Tapers; this, they say, is an Emblem of the Trinity, as the Candlestick with two Branches he holds in his left is of the two Natures of *Jesus Christ*. They divide their Churches into four several parts, the Altars stand at one end, which they call *holy*, none but the Priest who officiates and his Attendants are admitted there; the next part to that is appointed for the other Service; the third is where the Men are separated from the Women by little Balisters; the Women sitting behind Lettices at the other end of the Church, or in the Galleries. They perform their Divine Service in the vulgar Greek, and highly discommend the use of an unknown Language in the Church. They worship standing, bow their Heads, and put their Hands at the same time on their Breasts. Mar-

riage is among them no bar to Priesthood, but if they are single at the time of their being admitted into Orders, they must not marry afterwards; they forbid the fourth Marriage for decency sake, deny *Purgatory*, and yet pray for the Dead. They use Confession, but not after the manner of the *Romanists*: Concerning the Article of the *Proceeding of the Holy Ghost*, they say as little now as they did formerly dispute upon it, looking upon it as a point that has more of nicety than usefulness; they also preserve Relicks, but never worship 'em.

The *Armenians* at *Venice*.

I have, pursuant to your desire, made the best enquiry I was able about the Worship of the *Armenians*, but their Church being repairing at present, I have had no opportunity to see their Religious Worship, nor to learn the truth of it from others, except that a Friend of mine told me, that they were of very different Opinions in respect of several Articles, but that these four or five were most generally receiv'd among 'em, *viz.* they communicate under both kinds, they give the Sacrament even to Infants, believe the Sequestration of the Souls as the *Greeks* do, allow of Divorces, and believe that at the time of the Resurrection there will be no difference of Sexes. I am,

Sir,

Venice, *Jan.* 20. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XVII.

SIR,

BEfore I leave *Venice*, I must add some few other Observations to what I have said in my former concerning this City.

The Bridge of *Rialto* at *Venice*.

The Bridge of *Rialto* challenges the first place, being built over the middle of the great Canal which divides this City in the figure of an S. The *Venetians* are so much taken with this Bridge, that they often want terms to express its worth as they believe, whereas 'tis certain that it has nothing extraordinary belonging to it, except that 'tis built upon one Arch: As I took particular care to measure it, so I can give you an exact account of it. The compass of the Arch makes a third part of a Circle; the whole extent from one extremity of the Arch to the other, on the level of the Canal, is ninety foot, and its height twenty four. I know some have blam'd the Architecture of this Arch, which according to the strict Rules of Art, might, for its greater strength, be an exact Semicircle; but, in my opinion, this Objection may soon be answer'd, it being reasonable to suppose that the remaining part of the Semicircle is taken up in the Foundation under Water. It is strongly built of great pieces of a kind of white Marble; it has two rows of Shops, which divide it in three Streets, *viz.* one large one in the middle, and two other little ones, between the Rails and the backsides of the Shops. Almost all the other Bridges of *Venice* have but single Arches, and Steps of a white and hard Stone, and most commonly very slippery, which in part has given occasion to the noted Proverb of *Venice*,

Beware of white Stones,
Whores, Priests, and Pantaloons.

All the best Houses of *Venice* stand on both sides of the *Great Canal*, among which are some magnificent Palaces, of *Pisani*, *Morosini*, *Loredano*, *Rosini*, *Vandramino* and *Grimani*, but their chief beauty consists in their Frontispieces, which commonly are of two or three sorts of Architecture, the rest being but very indifferent.

The *Lagunes* do in all probability contribute not a little to the unwholsomness of the Air of *Venice*, tho' the *Venetians* are very unwilling to own it, but their Water is generally bad beyond contradiction; for among a hundred and fifty Springs they have here, there are not above two or three that afford good Water, which is the reason that most private persons of note are forc'd to preserve the Rain-water in Cisterns.

The Wines generally drank here are either fulsome sweet or sowre and eager: Their Bread is also very ill made, for let it be never so fresh, it is as hard as a Bisquet, and must be broken with a Hammer.

The little opportunity a Stranger has of conversing with the *Venetians* in their Houses, makes me give you no account of their manner of House-keeping, but it puts me in mind of what I read the other day in a Preface of *Henry Stephens*, That in his time, a Woman that appear'd bare-neck'd abroad, was look'd upon with a very indifferent Eye in *France*; whereas in *Italy*, and especially in *Venice*, every old Hag did show her wither'd Neck, but at present none but publick Whores shew their Necks bare; nay, the Women of Quality don't even shew their Faces in the Churches, the only places where they appear in publick; and the ordinary Women wear over their Heads a great Scarf, opening only a little about the Eyes.

Their Ladies and Marriages.

Their Females they educate in the Convents, from their tender age till they are married, which is done commonly by their Parents or Kindred, without letting them see their future Husbands; for 'tis to be observ'd, that among Persons of Quality there is no other regard, in reference to this point, but a good Family and Riches, the rest being left to Chance; whence it is that the Men commonly remedy the personal defects of their Wives, by maintaining Concubines: They have here a peculiar way of maintaining certain Women, much used among those of a tender Conscience; 'tis a kind of clandestine Marriage, the Ceremony whereof is not perform'd sometimes many Years after they have cohabited together, and often not till a few Days or Hours before the Death of one of the Parties: But the most general way is, to keep their Mistress at a certain Allowance as long as both Parties agree; and this is so frequently practis'd here, that such as are not able to keep one singly, joyn with two or three more, who enjoy the Woman, without the least Jealousie, each in his turn.

Concubines.

This kind of Libertinism is so generally receiv'd at *Venice*, that the Mothers of young Noblemen are commonly the first who agree with a poor Maidens Father or Mother, for the use of their Sons, at a certain rate, to be paid monthly or yearly, as they can agree best. I have it from credible hands, and *Roman Catholicks*, that the Confessors look upon this as such a trifle, that they will not take the least notice of it in their Confessions.

For Comers and Passengers you have whole Streets fill'd with Ladies, easily distinguish'd from others by their Habits, being dress'd in red and yellow, with naked Breasts, painted Faces, and a Nosegay above their Ears, whereas all the other Ladies appear in black.

The Carnival.

The Carnival begins here the second Holiday in *Christmas*; then it is they begin to wear Masks, and open their *Play-houses* and *Gaming-houses*; the Place of St. *Mark* is fill'd with *Mountebanks*, *Jack-puddings*, *Pedlars*, *Whores*, and such-like sort of Cattle, which flock thither from all parts. In the beginning they do act with some moderation, but the nearer they come towards *Shrove-Tuesday*, the more their madness encreases. The Senate of *Venice* allow these Extravagancies, to divert the People from feeling the heavy burthen of their Government, which, without such-like Amusements, would be insupportable to them: Besides that, the vast number of Strangers which come from all parts to *Venice*, to partake of the Diversions of the *Carnival*, brings a vast Sum of Money to the City; I was credibly inform'd, that during the last *Carnival*, there were no less than seven Soveraign Princes and thirty thousand other Foreigners here.

Their *Opera's*.

To give you (according to your desire) my Opinion of the *Opera's* and *Comedies* of *Venice*, in respect to those of *Paris*, I must be plain with you, That the Ornaments of the first are infinitely inferiour to those of *France*; their Habits are mean, without any Dances, and generally without any Machines or Illuminations, except here and there a few Candles, scarce worth mentioning. I will not venture to contradict the general Opinion of the World concerning the *Italian* Musick; and it must really be confess'd, that they have some excellent Ayres, and most exquisite Voices; but, to tell you my Sentiment of the matter, there is a certain unpleasant Confusion in several Songs of their *Opera's*, and they dwell many times longer in one quavering than in singing four whole lines, and immediately after they run so fast, that you can't tell whether they sing or speak or do both by turns. 'Tis certain that the overstrain'd Shrill is not so pleasing to Foreigners as to the *Italians*. The Consort is much less than at *Paris*, but this may perhaps be esteem'd rather a Perfection than a Fault.

There is another thing I can't pass by without a Remark, I mean the preposterous figure which their Eunuchs make on the Theatre; it is a very odd sight to see one of these mutilated fellows act the part of a Bully with his effeminate Voice; and another to represent a young Lover, with his wither'd wrinkled Face.

The Arsenal of *Venice*.

There are at present no less than seven several *Opera's* at *Venice*, which by Foreigners are frequented chiefly for the

the good Company's sake: They have a Buffoon in every *Opera*, who intermixes his Fooleries, without discretion, with the most serious and tragical part of the Play.

Their Comedies. Their Comedies are fill'd with such ridiculous Buffoonries, that in other parts they would not pass for tolerable Farces, *Harlequin* or some other Buffoon being commonly the head Actor, who is back'd in his Grimaces with the most rank Bawdry that can be invented, to make the Spectators laugh; and for fear they should be disappointed in their aim, they admit whole troops of the *Gondoliers* or Watermen into the Playhouse for nothing, when they are just ready to begin; these are very diligent on this occasion, by bawling and clapping their Hands, to extort as it were a general applause from the Spectators. These Theatres belong to some Noblemen, who make a considerable profit of 'em during the Carnival.

Their Basset-houses. Their Meeting-places where they play at Basset they call *Ridotti*, which are kept open as long as the Theatres; they allow none but Noblemen to cut; you shall see sometimes ten or twelve Rooms on a floor, with Gaming-tables in all of 'em, crowded with Gamesters mask'd, with Courtesans and Ladies of Quality, who under this disguise have the privilege of enjoying all the Diversions of the Carnival, provided they can get a little out of the way of their Spies or jealous Husbands. They have also certain Rooms, where they sell Liquors, Sweetmeats, and suchlike things.

Masquerades Every one thus mask'd, provided he be in good Apparel, has the liberty of talking to the Ladies even of the highest Quality, no body, not even the Husband himself, taking notice at that time what is said to his Wife, because the Mask is sacred, tho' this sometimes gives occasion to an Intrigue, in a place where the scarcity of Opportunity prompts them to do more with the wink of an Eye, than in other Countries with long Courtship.

But the chief place for Masquerading is the Place of St. *Mark*, where you may put your self in what Disguise you please, provided you can maintain the Figure of the Person you assume; for here you see the *Harlequins* jeer one another handsomly, those who personate Doctors to dispute both learnedly and wittily; and so with the rest: But such as have no inclination to venture upon these Engagements, may appear in the Habit of a Nobleman, or some foreign Dress, and so be only Spectators.

All the Masquers must appear without Swords. Here you see, besides *Puppet-players*, *Rope-dancers*, and suchlike, divers *Fortune-tellers*, whose little Stages are fill'd with *Globes*, *Spheres*, and other *Astronomical Instruments*; they make use of a Tube of Tin to speak into the Ears of those who consult 'em; and it is a pleasant sight to see the Priests and Monks more frequently taken up with the Tube than the rest.

I will not pretend to give you an account of their *Bull-baitings*, *Goose-hunting*, *Wrestling* or *Boxing*, *Balls*, *Races* upon the Water, or of their *Feast* on *Shrove-Tuesday*, when they cut off a Bull's Head in the presence of the whole Senate, in memory of a Victory in *Friuli*: but I can't forbear to tell you, that the Carnival is not the only time when *Masks* are in request at *Venice*, there being a Feast of Pleasure where they are not used more or less, as at the Audiences of Ambassadours, on *Ascension-day*, &c. All these days are very profitable to the Watermen, who knowing all the turns and by-ways, keep correspondence with the Waiting-women, and for a good Reward will furnish Ladders of Cords for an Intrigue, one of their main businesses being Pimping, in which Art they are so well vers'd, that they will depositе a sum of Money that their Ware shall prove good.

The Venetian Watermen and Boats. They hire the *Venetian Gondola's* or *Boats* either from place to place, or by the hour, or by the day: You may have one of the best for five or six Shillings a day. These Boats are prettily contriv'd and very light; their length
See Fig. VI. is generally thirty or thirty two foot, and their breadth four or five, in which you may sit with a great deal of convenience, under a Cover like a Couch, with Glasses on both sides; the left is reckon'd the best place, because there you can best see the Boatman, and command him as you please. These Fellows are very dextrous in their business, and will with a surprizing facility manage their Oars standing with their Faces towards the place where they are to go.

All the *Gondola's* or *Boats* must be black, even the little Chamber, which is generally cover'd with black Cloth or Serge, but Foreigners are not so strictly tied to this Rule; the *Gondola's* especially of the Ambassadours are generally exceeding magnificent; they have generally four or five, and make their Entries in 'em.

The Arsenal of Venice. The Arsenal of *Venice* challenges to be rank'd among the first of *Europe*; but as it must be confess'd that it is a place of great consequence, so on the other hand it ought to be consider'd, that it is the only one the *Venetians* have in *Italy*, and that in its enclosure it comprehends all their Ammunition, Stores for their Navy, Casting-houses, Rope-yards, Forges, Lodges for the Galleys and Galeasses, and the *Bucentoro* it self, besides the Docks for refitting their Ships; and notwithstanding all this, you must not believe above half what they tell you upon this Head. I remember that our Guide would fain have persuaded us that it contain'd no less than two thousand five hundred pieces of great Cannon, Arms for a hundred thousand Foot, and compleat Accoutrements for twenty thousand Horse; but these are only words.

Among their Men of War, that call'd *The Redeemer* is the biggest, and, as they told us, carried eighty pieces of Cannon and fourteen Pattareroes, and is now at Sea.

Their Galeasses. Their Galeasses have three rows of Guns in the Prow, but only two in the Poop; their complement of Slaves is ninety two, at six on a Bench: The *Bucentaure* is a
See Fig. VII. large Galeass of State finely carv'd and gilt, in which the Doge and Senate, with many of the Nobles, go out to Sea every Year on *Ascension-day*, to perform the Ceremony of marrying the Sea.

The Noble Venetians. Concerning the Nobility the Noblemen of *Venice* pretend to, which they have push'd to that degree, that they pretend their Nobility to comprehend all other Titles, so as even to compare themselves with Princes of Royal Blood; I must tell you, that it appears to me rather founded upon an Opinion than solid Reason. 'Tis true, that considering the *Noble Venetians*, by right of Inheritance, are Members of the great Council, which gives Life to all the rest, are born with some Character of Soveraignty, but at that rate the Nobility of *Genoa* might challenge the same Prerogative; and after all their boasting, the Commands, great Offices, Wealth and ancient Extraction make new distinctions among them; and they are not so nice, but that they will sell this Title for a certain Sum of Money.

Their Habit. They never appear in publick but in their Robes, which are of black Cloth, and ought to be lined with greyish Cloth in the Winter, and Ermins in the Summer. The Stole is of the same Cloth, as well as the Girdle, which being about four inches broad, is adorn'd with Silver Buckles and Plates. Their Bonnets are no more than a kind of Caps of black Worsted, with a Fringe of the same Stuff, which they commonly bear in their hands, because they are unwilling to incommode their great Perriwigs; however, the Procurators of St. *Mark*, the *Sacri Grandi*, and some others of the great Officers of the State, are distinguish'd by their peculiar Habits; those that have been Ambassadours have the Privilege of wearing a Stole of Cloth of Gold, and Golden Buckles on their Girdles, but they generally content themselves with a little Gold Galloon upon their black Stole.

The *Physicians*, *Advocates*, *Notaries*, and all those they call *Cittadini*, wear the same Habits as the *Nobles*; they challenge the Title of *Excellency*, and the manner of saluting 'em is, to kiss their Sleeve, which about the Elbow is as big as a moderate Sack, which serve sometimes to carry Provisions in from the Market, because they scarce ever appear with any Attendance at their heels. They are never saluted in the Street, except by those who wear the same Robe, being rather fear'd than lov'd by the People, not so much on account of the hardship they suffer from them, as for want of knowing them, the Nobles being not permitted to converse familiarly with any body.

The Nobility of *Venice* does not descend only to the eldest Sons, as in *England*, and they are not permitted to traffick, much less to marry with Foreigners.

The titular Nobility of the Venetian State. Those *Marquesses*, *Counts*, and other titular Nobles belonging to the *Venetian* State, are no Noblemen of *Venice*, but either such as really enjoy'd these Dignities in their respective Countries before they became subject to the *Venetians*, or such as by the *Venetians*, since their Conquests, have been dignified with these Titles to humble the rest, and by a confusion of new Titles abate the Pretensions of the ancient Nobility of those Countries.

There is a third sort of titular Nobility in the *Venetian* State, whose Ancestors, tho' not fully entitled to those Dignities, yet had some Pretensions to them, and upon the change of the Government, laid hold of these Titles by the connivance of the *Venetians*.

The Duke of Venice. Your Information concerning the Duke or Doge of *Venice* is wrong in all its parts; for, I can assure you, he bears only the figure of a Prince, and the shadow of Greatness without any real substance; much in the same manner the Dukes of *Aquitain* and *Normandy* do at the Coronation of a King of *England*: 'Tis true, he has some outward marks of Grandeur annex'd to his lofty Title, but these are bestow'd on him no otherwise than as he is a Re-

Repreſentative of the Republick, as Ambaſſadours are of their Maſters. That this is true beyond all contradiction, pray conſider, that his Councellors have a conſtant watchful Eye over all his Actions, and have an Authority to viſit his Cloſet every hour. It is not in his power to pardon any Criminal; he can't ſo much as paſs over to the Continent without ſpecial permiſſion from the State; and he no ſooner ſets foot aſhore on that ſide, but his Ducal Authority and Dignity ceaſes, and he is conſider'd no more than a bare Nobleman of *Venice*; immediately all his Kindred, that were before in any Offices, are turn'd out, and when he dies, there is no ſuch thing as the leaſt publick Mourning upon that occaſion. He is, beſide this, as much ſubject to the Law as the meaneſt perſon, and the Inquiſition of State ſeems chiefly level'd at his Power, which is ſo ſtreightned, that except two or three inconſiderable Privileges, he poſſeſſes nothing before other Noblemen, which are, that he has a double Voice in the *Grand Council*, and the diſpoſal of divers little Offices belonging to the Palace, and the nomination of the *Primiceria* and Canons of St. *Mark*. The Honours, as I told you before, paid uſually to him being nothing elſe than the marks of the Soveraignty of the Commonwealth in their Repreſentative; 'tis in this ſenſe he bears the Title of Duke and of *His Serenity*, (a Title eſteem'd here beyond that of *Highneſs*) and when he appears abroad upon any ſolemn occaſion, has a Torch carried before him, a folding Chair, (having two Arms and no Back) with its Cuſhion, eight Silver Trumpets, and as many Standards with the Arms of *Venice*, and perhaps ſome Hautboys: Of theſe Standards two are white, two red, two Violet, and two blue, which, they ſay, ſignifie *Peace*, *War*, *Truce* and the *League*: They ſhew'd us that the two red ones were carried firſt, the State being engag'd then in a War againſt the *Turks*, whereas in time of Peace the white ones precede the reſt. He has alſo a kind of Umbrello carried after him.

His limited power.

Upon theſe occaſions the *Doge* is generally accompanied with the *Nuncio* and the Ambaſſadours reſiding at *Venice*, except the Miniſter of *Spain*, who never appears at theſe Solemnities, to avoid diſputing with the *French* Ambaſſadour about Precedence; all theſe Miniſters have their Hats on; the Duke never pulls off his Coronet, except when the Hoſt is elevated, or when he is viſited by a Prince of Royal Extraction, or by a Cardinal, who ſits in the ſame Chair with the Duke, and even on his right hand. After theſe march the chief Senators, before whom is carried the Sword of State, as an evident mark of the Soveraignty of the Council.

'Tis true, upon their Coin the Duke's Name is ſtamp'd, but as on the Reverſe you ſee him on his Knees, at the Feet of the *Primiceria*, who ſits and repreſents St. *Mark*; of him the *Doge* takes the Oath of Fidelity, with the Maſs-book in one hand, and with the other receiving the Standard of *Venice*; ſo it is evident that his Image bears no more marks of Honour here than that of the *Primiceria*.

The Letters of foreign Princes are alſo directed and deliver'd to the *Doge*, but he is ſo far from having any power of opening 'em, that he muſt deliver 'em to the Council: The ſame thing is obſerv'd in reſpect of Ambaſſadours; for after matters have been deliberated and concluded in the Council, the Anſwer is put ſo exactly into the Duke's Mouth, that ſhould he commit the leaſt miſtake, he is corrected upon the ſpot. Thus in all Acts or Declarations of State he is no more than the Herauld, who has the honour of publiſhing what is enacted by the Senate.

See Mr. *Amelot* upon this Head.

I will not pretend to unravel to you the Myſteries of the *Venetian* Commonwealth, the ſame being above my purpoſe, and even out of my knowledge, for want of ſufficient time to be fully inſtructed in ſo many things: I will only add concerning the Patriarch of *Venice*, that after he is elected by the Senate, he receives his Confirmation from the Pope: Tho' his Station is very eminent, yet his Authority is kept within very narrow bounds; for, except two or three Benefices, the People of each Pariſh chuſe their own Curates, and the Clergy (to ſpeak truly) acknowledge no other Superiority but that of the Senate. This Prelate muſt always be choſen out of the Nobility, and his Garment is of a Violet colour; he ſtiles himſelf, N—— *divini miſeratione Venetiarum Patriarcha*, i. e. N—— *by God's mercy Patriarch of* Venice; but not as others do, *Et Sanctæ ſedis Apoſtolicæ gratia, and by the Grace of the holy Apoſtolick See*; the *Venetians* acknowledging no ſuch Superiority. For the reſt, this Election is commonly carried on by Intereſt and Intrigue, as in the chuſing of a Pope, little regard being had to perſonal merit; and 'tis beyond all diſpute, that the Ignorance of the Clergy here is beyond what can well be expreſt or imagin'd; to remedy which, as alſo their licentiouſneſs, and the too free converſation with the Nuns, the Cardinal *Barbarigo*, Biſhop of *Padua*, a wiſe and venerable perſon, has taken a great deal of pains of late years, but to little purpoſe.

The Patriarch of *Venice*.

I muſt not forget to tell you a pleaſant Secret they make uſe of here in behalf of ſome Prieſts that are Muſicians: You are not ignorant that one of the main Qualifications belonging to a Prieſt, is to be a compleat Man; but as the ſweetneſs of the Voice is of great uſe, both in their Opera's and Churches, they have found out this Expedient, that a Prieſt thus fitted for Muſick may exerciſe the Functions of Prieſthood, provided he carry the ſame Implements that before belong'd to his Body in his Pocket.

Father *Mark Aviano*, whom I mention'd in my Letter from *Augsburgh*, is here at preſent, but I could never hear him preach, the crowd of the People being ſuch, that they were forc'd to break a hole thro' the Wall of the Church, to let him go into it from a neighbouring Houſe.

The Cathedral.

If I ſhould enter upon a particular account of the Churches and Cabinets of Curioſities of *Venice*, (among the laſt, the moſt famous are thoſe of *Roſini*, *Juſtiniani*, *Capello*, *Barbaro*, *Grimani*, *Zani*, &c.) I muſt prepare my ſelf for an entire Volume, which being beyond my preſent purpoſe, I conclude, deſiring you will believe that I am,

Sir,

Venice, *Febr.* 14. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XVIII.

SIR,

THE only thing worth taking notice of betwixt *Padua* and *Rovigo* is the Country, which is plain and fruitful, ſtor'd with Vineyards, Groves, Meadows and well-till'd Grounds, and water'd by many Rivulets. Upon the Road you ſee ſome Houſes of Pleaſure belonging to the *Venetians*, but the Country People about *Rovigo* dwell only in Huts made of Reeds.

Rovigo.

The City of *Rovigo* it ſelf is very poor, and of no great extent, yet is the Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Adria*, that famous City, which imparted its name to the Gulph, being now no more than a half-drown'd Village.

Ferrara.

Ferrara is a large and beautiful City, but poor and ill Peopled: We went on purpoſe to one of the beſt places of the whole City, where four Streets meet, but could not perceive one Perſon in any of them, tho' the Country about it is one of the beſt parts of *Lombardy*, but wants Tillage for want of Inhabitants, this fruitful Country being almoſt deſolate, by the ſeverity of the Papal Government.

Ferrara was united to the Eccleſiaſtical State under the Pontificate of *Clement* VIII. who built a very ſtrong Citadel, which is ſtill in good repair. Of the ancient Univerſity of *Ferrara* remains only a poor College, belonging to the *Jeſuits*. Near the Cathedral ſtand ſome Statues on Horſeback of Braſs; and directly over againſt the Palace of the Nobility is one of Duke *Hercules* II. on Horſeback, on the Pedeſtal of which is an Inſcription granting a Sanctuary to Criminals for twenty paces round it.

Carria.

Cenate.

We alſo ſaw the Ducal Palace, the Houſe of the Marqueſs *de Villa*, and divers Churches and Convents, which have all their own Beauties; and, among the reſt, took notice of the Tomb and Epitaph of *Arioſto*, in the Church of the *Benedictins*.

In the Opera we heard a pretty little Songſtreſs of twelve or thirteen years of age; moſt of the Boxes were fill'd with Jeſuits and Clergymen.

Rimini.

From *Ferrara* to *Ravenna* is fifty miles; all the way we ſaw not one Town or Village worth taking notice of. The firſt days Journey was very paſſable, but afterward the Road becomes very deep, betwixt the Branches of the *Adige* and the *Po*: The ancient Geographers deſcribe its ſituation like that of *Venice*, amongſt the Waters, and it is certain that this was the beſt Harbour the *Romans* were Maſters of in the *Adriatick* Gulph, but ſince that time the *Lagunes* are dried up, and the Sea is at leaſt three miles from it, the City being now ſurrounded with the moſt fruitful Fields of *Italy*: Neither is there the leaſt

Ravenna.

The Harbour.

doubt,

doubt, but that the present *Ravenna* stands in the same place where the ancient *Ravenna* was, there being in the Walls that face the Sea-side many great Iron Rings, by which they used formerly to fasten their Vessels; and the Ruins of the ancient Beacon are to be seen to this day. This City is seated in a flat Country, is not above half as big as *Ferrara*, but meanly built, and as thinly Peopled.

The Mausoleum of Theodoric King of the Ostrogoths.

Without the Walls, near the ancient Harbour, you see the *Mausoleum* erected to the memory of *Theodoric* King of the *Ostrogoths*, by *Amalasintha* his Daughter; 'tis since turn'd into a little Church call'd the *Rotunda*; it is cover'd with one hewn Stone of thirty eight foot diameter and fifteen in thickness, on the top of which stood the Tomb of *Theodoric*, surrounded by the Statues of the twelve Apostles, which were destroy'd during the last Wars of *Lewis* XII, together with the Tomb of *Porphyry*, which since has been fix'd in the Wall of an ancient Palace within the City.

The Cathedral.

The Cathedral is a very ancient Structure, supported by fifty six Pillars of Marble of the *Archipelago*, placed in a double range on each side. The Choir is vaulted with excellent *Mosaick* Work, where they shew you, as a precious Relick, one of the Stones with which St. *Stephen* was stoned. But the great Door of this Church is the most curious thing, worth a Traveller's observation, being made of Planks of Vines, some whereof are twelve foot high, and fourteen or fifteen inches broad; for it is to be observ'd, that in those places hereabouts that were formerly cover'd by the Sea, the Vines grow to a prodigious bigness.

The Church of the Theatins.

In the Church of the *Theatins* they shew a little Window just over the Altar, with the figure of a white Pigeon upon it, placed there, as they tell you, in memory of a Miracle that hapned at the Election of the second Bishop of *Ravenna*, after the death of S. *Apollinarius*, when a Pigeon coming into the Window, perch'd upon him who was to be elected; and the same thing hapned eleven times after successively.

The Churches of S. *Vital*, S. *Apollinarius*, S. *Romualdus*, and S. *Andrew* have many stately pieces of *Marble* and *Porphyry*, brought from *Greece* during the time of the *Exarchy*. The Tomb of *Galla Placidia*, the Daughter of *Theodosius the Great*, is to be seen in the Church of S. *Celsus*, between those of *Valentinian* and *Honorius*.

In the *Grand Place* you see a noble Statue of Brass of Pope *Alexander* VII. And at the other end of the same Square, two Columns, on which formerly stood the ancient Patron and the Arms of *Venice*, whilst *Ravenna* was under their jurisdiction; the like Columns they erect in all Cities belonging to their State; but since, the Pope has put the Statues of S. *Victor* and *Apollinarius* upon the same Columns. Near them, under a Portico, they shew the Gates of Brass, and some other Spoils, those of *Ravenna* took from those of *Pavia*.

We had scarce travel'd a good hour from *Ravenna*, but we enter'd a Forest of Pine-trees, which is four miles long, after which we travel'd within sight of the Sea to the left, and the Marshes to the right.

Cervia.

Having passed the River *Savia* in a Ferryboat, we continued our Journey thro' the little City of *Cervia*, seated among the Bogs; the Inhabitants live upon making of Salt.

Cesenate.

We dined at *Cesenate*, near the Sea-side, and before we had made three miles more, came to the Banks of the famous River *Rubicon*, call'd also the *Piscatello*, and by some the *Frumiscino*; and we were not a little surpriz'd to see our Coach pass it without a Bridge or Ferryboat, tho' *Lucan* in his time gives it the following Character:

Fonte cadit modico, parvisque impellitur undis.

Within an hour after we travel'd close along the Seashore, which was even, sandy and firm, without any Rocks or Shells, till within a mile of *Rimini*, where we were forc'd to travel deeper into the Country, for the conveniency of passing the River *Ariminum*, which washes the Walls of the City of *Rimini*, it is now call'd *Marecchia*.

Rimini.

Rimini is a small and poor City seated in a rich Country. On the Bridge of Marble are two entire Inscriptions, intimating, that *Augustus* and *Tiberius* were the Founders of this City, and that the triumphal Arch was built by the first. Behind the Gardens of the *Capuchins* are to be seen the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, and five hundred paces thence, without the City, a Brick Tower,

The Harbour.

which was the *Pharos* of the ancient Harbour, but is now encompass'd with Gardens, the Sea being retir'd at least half a mile thence.

The Church of S. *Francis* was built out of the Ruins of the Harbour, which was once one of the best in *Italy*.

The Library of the Count *de Gamba Longa* is numerous, but without any rare Books.

In the midst of the Market is a Marble Pedestal with these words upon it, *Caius Cæsar Dict: Rubicone superato civili bell: Commilit: sues hic in foro Ar: allocutus.* In another place you see the brazen Statue of *Paul* V. and near it a curious Marble Fountain.

From *Rimini* we travel'd for fifteen miles along the *Downs* betwixt the Sea and the Fields. As we passed thro' the Village *Catholica*, we found over the Portal of the great Church an Inscription, by which it appear'd that this Village got its Name from certain Orthodox Fathers, who, during the Council of *Rimini* in 359, compos'd for the most part of *Arrians*, used to perform their Religious Service here. Catholica.

About ten or twelve miles thence, towards the *Apennines*, we discover'd the City and little Republick of *Marin*, at the top of a Mountain, on the foot of which are the Limits of its Territories: This small and inconsiderable Commonwealth being below the Envy and Jealousie of its Neighbours, has maintain'd its Liberty for many Ages. The Country betwixt *Catholica* and *Pesaro* is for seven miles together very well inhabited and cultivated. Marin.

The City of *Pesaro* exceeds *Rimini* as well in bigness and the pleasantness of its situation, upon an easie ascent, as in the neatness and goodness of its Buildings. Nothing can be more pleasant to the Eye than the little Hills that surround it, with the agreeable mixture of *Pastures*, *Vineyards* and *Orchards*. Their Olives are very good, but their Figs are esteem'd the best in *Italy*. Meat is so cheap here, that you may buy a pound (which contains eighteen ounces here) for less than an halfpenny; Bread and Wine are cheaper in proportion than Meat, and as both the Sea and Rivers furnish them with plenty of Fish, so this City abounds in all things necessary for Life. Its Fortifications are none of the worst, considering they are after the old fashion. Pesaro.

In the Marketplace is a fine Fountain, and a Statue of Pope *Urban* VIII, under whose Pontificate this City and the Dukedom of *Urbin* were incorporated with the Ecclesiastical State.

From *Pesaro* we continued our Journey along the sandy Shore for seven miles, as far as *Fano*. We saw abundance of Walnuts, Chesnuts, Rushes, and divers other things, forced by the Winds from the neighbouring Rivers to this Shore: One of our Company, among the rest, took up here a certain little Fish, call'd *Cavaletto* by the *Italians*, call'd in *France* by some *Cheval Marin*, or the *Sea-horse*; it is frequently to be met with in the Cabinets, being easily dried and preserv'd; its Head and Neck has some resemblance to those of a Horse. The *Italians* attribute to it a peculiar quality of curing the bite of a mad Dog, if eaten roasted and applied to the affected part, skin'd and beaten with Honey and Vinegar. Fano. A Sea-horse.

Fano it self is a small but neat City, having nothing in it worth taking notice of, except one Triumphal Arch, but the Inscription of it is quite defac'd. It is compos'd of three distinct Gates.

About a mile from *Fano* we travel'd over a wooden Bridge five or six hundred paces long, built over the several Branches of the *Pragio*, which overflow all the circumjacent Country when the Snow begins to melt on the *Apennines*; afterwards coasting along the Sea-side for fifteen miles, we came to *Senegallia*, an old City, enclos'd with a strong Wall and some Bastions, but are not very regular. Senegallia.

Our weariness after a tedious days Journey prov'd the occasion of our good Fortune, without which we had run the same danger that befel several of the Inhabitants, who were the same night present at a Play acted at the Governour's House, but the Arch which supported the Stage, with some of the neareſt Seats, being overladen, gave way, and above thirty persons were kill'd, and many more wounded by this Accident.

From *Senegallia* we kept still all along the Shore, but for seventeen miles met with no Houses, except an old Castle and some Inns, about a hundred paces from the Sea-side. Near a little Village call'd *Turret*, about three miles from *Ancona*, we turn'd into the Land-way, where we arriv'd in good time.

This City is seated upon a double Hillock, at the very point of the Cape, being much larger than any of the four or five last-mention'd Cities, but not much richer, tho' the goodness of its Harbour, and the fertility of the circumjacent Country seems to entitle it to Traffick, of which it had a sufficient share formerly, but is much decay'd of late Years. Ancona.

The Streets of *Ancona* are both narrow and dark, and their Buildings but indifferent, besides that, its situation up and down Hill renders it very inconvenient. The Citadel

Citadel is seated on the first Hill, which commands both the City and Harbour; and on the other, which makes the point of the Cape, stands the Church of S. *Cyriaca*, being a low dark Fabrick, the Front whereof is of Marble, but without any Ornament. Here they boast of the Body of St. *Ursule*, as well as those of *Cologne*, besides many other Saints and Relicks in high veneration among the People. From hence we had a very delightful Prospect of the Sea, City, and Country at one view.

The Triumphal Arch of *Ancona*. At the entrance of the Mole is a magnificent Triumphal Arch of white Marble, erected to the honour of *Trajan*, by the Senate, in acknowledgment of the charge he had been at in repairing this Harbour, as the Inscription, which is not in the least defac'd, tells the Reader.

The *Exchange*. The Exchange where the Merchants meet is built in the nature of a Portico of an indifferent bigness; at the four corners stand as many Statues, representing *Faith*, *Hope*, *Charity* and *Religion*, the last of which is thrown down by an Earthquake.

Odd Dresses. Before I leave *Ancona*, I must tell you something of the oddness of the Dress of the Inhabitants: We saw the chiefest Burghers, on a Holiday, appear in a black Cloak lined with green, with blue or philamot Stockins, Shoes whiten'd with Chalk, and tied with Ribbons of all sorts of colours; their unbutton'd Doublets were embroider'd with divers colours, and the great Sleeves of their Shirts hung down to their Fingers ends. The ordinary sort of Women wear a kind of Coif, with a long Fringe hanging over their Face; the Body of the Gown is generally red or yellow, fastned on four sides with Laces, and trim'd all over with colour'd Galloon; their Wastcoats and Petticoats are both very short and of various colours. The Ladies of Quality imitate in their Dress the *French* Fashion, but after so awkward a manner, that they appear more ridiculous than the others in their Country Dress.

We observ'd another Custom upon this Road, which, they told us, runs from *Ferrara* all over *Italy*; I mean their Paper Windows, which being always torn, prove very inconvenient in the Winter, and afford a very odd Prospect to Foreigners.

To compleat our misery, they would commonly bring a Fricacy of three Eggs, and perhaps as many Pilchards, for a Supper of five or six persons, and at last make us pay as dear as if we'd had extraordinary good Cheer, our Dinner and Supper amounting generally to four shillings a head.

The Tide. The Flux and Reflux of the Sea encreases and decreases according to the distance from the extremity of the Gulph; for at *Venice* the Tide rises about four foot, near *Ravenna* to three, at *Pesara* two, and scarce above one at *Ancona*, till at last it comes to nothing. I am,

Sir,

Ancona, *Febr.* 24. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XIX.

SIR,

THE Country betwixt *Ancona* and *Loretto* is the best in *Italy*, but the Roads the worst, which oblig'd us to alight several times to ease the Coach. I don't question but you have seen several Accounts of our famous Lady of *Loretto*, but since matters of this nature are variously represented, the curiosity of the thing deserves very well an exact Abridgment of what I was able either to learn or see.

The Holy House of *Loretto*. This House, so much celebrated among the *Roman Catholicks*, is the same (if you will take their Word for it) in which the Virgin was born, where she was betroth'd and married to *Joseph*, where she receiv'd the Salute of the Angel, and where the Son of God was incarnate. This House was from *Nazareth* transported by the Angels into *Dalmatia*, and placed on the Hill of *Tersatto*, 10 *May* 1291, where, after it had continued for three years and seven months, the Angels remov'd it from thence into the middle of a Forest in the Territory of *Recanati*, part of the Marquisate of *Ancona*; but this Wood being famous for many Robberies committed thereabouts, this *holy House* was, after eight months, remov'd a third time from thence to the same Hill on which it now stands; but soon after a Controversie arising betwixt two Brothers, Coheirs of the Ground on which it stood, about the possession of this House, it was in four months after placed by the Angels some paces thence, in the high Road, where it is to be seen to this day.

The Chapel of *Loretto*. To prevent all Inconveniencies that might happen to so sacred a place, they built a most sumptuous Church about it, in the middle of which it stands free from all Injuries; and for its better preservation, they have since erected four Walls, which enclose it on all sides like a Box, without touching the Walls of the *Santa Casa* or *Holy House*; all that Painting, Sculpture, and Architecture were able to perform in the beginning of the last Age, has been bestow'd in this Fabrick, which is built of white Marble of *Carrara*, after the *Corinthian* Order, adorn'd with the most exquisite *Basso relievo*, in which the whole History of the Virgin is represented. Between the double Pillars are two Niches, one above the other; the ten Niches below contain the Statues of the ten Prophets, and those above, the ten Sybils. In the middle of this it is the *Santa Casa* or *Holy House* is enclos'd, which is only a single Chamber forty four palms long within, eighteen broad, and thirteen high, each palm and a half being equivalent to thirteen inches English measure.

To make the Story of the removal of this Hall or Chamber the more probable, they pretend it to be built of some unknown Stones; but, upon the strictest examination I could make, I found the same to be true Brick, of a different bigness and unequal shape, mix'd with some flat and greyish or reddish Stones, which are very common here; the whole is cemented with Lime and Sand, but the pieces are ill joyn'd, as if it had been done in great haste: The Masons Work is almost open to view on the inside, except in some places, where you see certain Fragments of Plaister-work cover'd with Painting, representing the Virgin with the little Jesus between her Arms; this appears plainly in five or six different places. The *holy House* stands from-East to West, a thing not much used in *Italy*; on the East side is a little Chimney, over which, in a Niche, stands the Image of the *Great Lady* of *Loretto*, made (as they say) of Cedar-wood, and by the hands of S. *Luke*, being about four foot high. Her Ornaments are of an inestimable value, and if we may believe those that live thereabouts, she has a great many Robes for change, and seven different mourning Habits for the holy Week: Her triple Crown, which is all over cover'd with precious Stones, was the present of *Lewis* III. King of *France*; they told us, this Distich was engraven upon it:

The Image of our Lady of *Loretto*.

See Fig VIII.

Tu caput ante meum cinxisti virgo Coronæ
Nunc Caput ecce tenet, nostra Corona tuum.

On both sides of the Niche are Cupboards fill'd with ancient Ornaments of this Statue; and in a little Window in the Wall on the South side, they shew you some earthen Dishes which were used in the holy Family; some of these Vessels have since been edg'd with Gold, but that which they shew'd us was a Porringer with a Silver Foot at the bottom, done on purpose to perswade the World that it was made of a strange Earth, whereas it is no more than Potters Ware, the glasing whereof is not so nicely taken off, but that some parts of it remain to be discover'd by a curious Eye. At the West end, just opposite to our Lady, they shew you a Window of about three foot square, thro' which the Angel enter'd: The present Arch of this House being of a modern Fabrick, I ask'd 'em what was become of the old Roof, but they could tell me no true tidings of it. Here are also two remarkable things, which, they say, were transported at the same time with the House, *viz.* the Altar made by the Apostle's own hands, and the Stone on which S. *Peter* celebrated Mass the first time; it is cover'd with Silver, and kept as a precious Relick under the Altar where they usually officiate.

The Floor of the *Santa Casa* is of Squares of red and white Marble; but this is not the old Floor, because that was left, together with the Foundations, at *Nazareth*. This sacred place has three Doors, two of which are at the end facing the East, and give passage to cross from North to South; here the Pilgrims are let in: The other is on the South side, and leads to the Sanctuary, *i. e.* the space betwixt the Altar and the end of our Ladies Chamber.

The rich Ornaments of the holy House. To particularize all the Riches of this place would be an endless piece of Work, the infinite number of precious Stones, wherewith the Mantle of this Image is adorn'd, are alone sufficient to dazzle the sight of the Spectators, besides that all about you see nothing but Lamps,

Lamps, Statues, Buſts, and other Figures of Gold and Silver, not including the twenty eight Candleſticks of Silver and Vermilion, and the twelve of maſſy Gold of twenty ſeven pound weight each. They have a Cuſtom of expoſing the laſt Offering of value for a certain time, before the Eyes of our Lady, in a place made for that purpoſe. That which we ſaw there was an Angel of Gold, with a Heart of the bigneſs of an Egg in his hands, ſet all over with Diamonds of a great value. Our Conductor being an *Engliſh Jeſuite*, he was not forgetful to tell us, that it was a Preſent of the Queen of *England*, and that the ſaid Princeſs had conceiv'd at the ſame minute the ſaid Preſent was offer'd to our Lady, and was then big with Child. He had taken the pains to make a whole Copy of Verſes upon this Subject, by way of Dialogue betwixt our Lady and the Angel, and took a great deal of care to recite them to us more than once with a laudable tone, and would at laſt force a Copy of them upon me.

A Preſent of a Queen of England to our Lady of Loretto.

Round the Walls of the Chapel that encloſes the *Holy Houſe* you ſee a vaſt number of branch'd Candleſticks, to illuminate the whole Fabrick: But the greateſt Curioſity is, the Proceſſions of thoſe Devotees, who crawl round the *Holy Houſe* upon their Knees, ſome five times, others ſeven, and others twelve times, according to the different degrees of their Devotions; ſome of theſe creep along from one ſide whilſt others meet them coming from the other, but all furniſh'd with Beads, and muttering *Pater Noſters*; but as they all covet to come neareſt to the holy place, this ſometimes occaſions no ſmall confuſion, which is the reaſon that this is never done but when there is only a ſlender number of Pilgrims, the chief reſort of whom is at *Eaſter* and the Virgins Nativity, which they celebrate in *September*: I had it from credible hands, that in ſome Years they have had here above two hundred thouſand Pilgrims during theſe two Feaſts.

Proceſſions on their Knees.

The Caravans of Pilgrims.

It is no unpleaſant ſight to obſerve the Caravans of the Pilgrims of both Sexes, who commonly come in Societies: as for inſtance; a certain body of Men joyn at *Bologna*, each of whom has a Frock of courſe Linen, and a Cawl of the ſame, made like a Streiner for *Hippocras*, which covers their Head, leaving only three holes for the Eyes and Mouth. They appear in different colours, each Society chuſing their own, but are all provided with Beads, Girdles, Pilgrims Staves, and the Arms of the Society, which are either painted or wrought on the Back and Breaſt of every Member of the Fraternity. They commonly ride on Aſſes. The Women appear in as rich Apparel as poſſibly they can, and fix to the Bodies of their Gowns a little Pilgrims Staff of the length of a Hand, ſome of which are of Gold and Silver adorn'd with Gems and Pearls, others of Ebony, Ivory, &c. artificially wrought. The Ladies commonly ride in Caleſhes, attended by whole Squadrons of Aſs-troopers.

The Treaſury.

After all the extraordinary things that have been ſaid of the *Holy Houſe*, the Treaſury infinitely ſurpaſſes it in Riches; this is a ſpacious Chamber or Hall, wainſcotted, with ten large Preſſes with folding Doors, the arch'd Roof being a moſt curious ſort of Plaiſter, divided by gilt Compartments, beautified with excellent Pictures. Formerly they were glad to keep abundance of Silver Work here, but the ſame having ſince given place to Gold, is laid up elſewhere in great heaps in private places, and perhaps for private uſes. Theſe Preſſes therefore are now-adays quite fill'd up with nothing but pure Gold, precious Jewels, among which they ſhew a Pearl of an ineſtimable value, ſhap'd after the faſhion of a *Gondola*, or ſuch Veſſels and Ornaments as exceed the value of Gold and Gems.

It would be a piece of Folly to attempt a particular account of what exceeds even Imagination it ſelf; the beſt Idea I am able to give you of this Treaſure is, that you muſt conſider, that all the People, Princes and States who acknowledge the Papal Authority, have for theſe four hundred years laſt paſt, endeavour'd to outvie each other, who ſhould be moſt profuſe in beſtowing the richeſt Preſents that could be had upon this *Holy Houſe*. They have, beſide this, a ſettled Revenue, and vaſt tracts of Land belonging to it; and the Boxes in which they gather the Alms of the Pilgrims furniſh them every Year with more Money to make freſh Purchaſes. To excite the Charity of the Pilgrims, they don't forget to give it out, that the annual Charges of maintaining all that belong to the *Holy Houſe* amounts to no leſs than 38634 Crowns, whereas their ordinary yearly Revenue is no more than 27000 Crowns.

The Arſenal.

From the Treaſury we were conducted to a little Arſenal, which has ſcarce any thing remarkable but ſome Arms taken from the *Turks*, who about fifty years before (under the Reign of *Mahomet* II. and *Palim*) made a deſcent thereabouts, to plunder this ſacred place, but were ſtruck blind by our Lady, as they were endeavouring to break into the Houſe. From the Windows of this Arſenal they ſhew you that part of the Sea over which the Houſe was carried by the Angels; and our Jeſuit made moſt ſolemn Proteſtations, that ever ſince there remains a certain white Tract on the Water, and that he had often obſerv'd it.

I can't paſs by in ſilence, that as we were going Yeſterday towards the *Holy Houſe*, the Rabble flock'd about us, telling us, that we muſt not approach the holy place without confeſſing and communicating, unleſs we would throw our ſelves into manifeſt Danger or ſudden Death.

The Wine-Cellar.

From hence we went to the great Wine-Cellar, ſtor'd with a hundred and fifty Tuns of excellent Wine. And in the Apothecary's Office they ſhew'd us a hundred forty five earthen Veſſels, highly eſteem'd, becauſe they believe 'em to have been painted by *Raphael*. On five of the largeſt are painted S. *Paul* and the four *Evangeliſts*, the reſt being adorn'd with the Hiſtories of ſome Saints, the Metamorphoſes of *Ovid*, &c.

The City of Loretto.

The City of *Loretto* is but ſmall, but well fortified, and has the Title of a Biſhoprick. In the *Great Place* ſtands a moſt noble Fountain of Marble, beautified with divers Braſs Statues, and another erected by the Citizens of *Loretto*, in acknowledgment of certain Privileges granted them by Pope *Sixtus* V.

The Inhabitants get their Livelihood by making and ſelling Medals, Roſaries, ſanctified Beads, Images, *Agnus Dei's*, Meaſures of the height of the Image of our Lady, and ſuchlike Trifles. They ſell here Chaplets, whoſe Beads were as big as Gooſe-Eggs, and are uſed on days of extraordinary Devotion.

The Tradition of the removal of the *Holy Houſe* is ſo ſtedfaſtly maintain'd in this place, that there is ſcarce an Inhabitant ſo mean, but pretends to be deſcended from the Race of thoſe that ſaw the *Holy Houſe* fix'd where now it is, by which means they tranſplant this Tradition from Father to Son *in infinita*. I am,

Sir, &c.

Loretto, Febr. 26. 1688.

Tours, &c.

LETTER XX.

SIR,

Recanati.

TRavelling from hence thro' *Recanati*, a little City ſeated on the top of a Hill three miles from *Loretto*, I look'd into the great Church, where I could ſee nothing worth mentioning but the Tomb of Pope *Gregory* XII, who was depoſed from the Pontificate by the Council of *Piſa*.

Helvia Ricina.

Ten miles further, in a moſt fertile Country on the Bank of the *Potenza*, we paſſed thro' the Ruins of the City formerly known by the name of *Helvia Ricina*, where we ſaw vaſt Fragments of an Amphitheatre, built of Stone and Brick mingled together. We travel'd on this ſide of the River for two miles among the Hills, till we came to *Macerata*, where we lodg'd that night; it being foul weather, we could not ſtir abroad, but were told by the Inhabitants, that it was a pretty large and pleaſant place.

The Country betwixt *Macerata* and *Tolentino* lies all upon a level, and is extreamly fruitful, but very indifferently Peopled. They prop their Vines with Reeds, and plough with Bouffles, theſe Beaſts being ſtronger than Oxen, and eaſier fed.

Tolentino.

Tolentino is ſeated on a riſing ground, being for the reſt a place that has nothing remarkable belonging to it.

Belfort.

The next place we came to was *Belfort*, built all of Stone: A mile beyond it begins the Province of *Umbria*, where we began to enter into the *Apennine*. I remember we fell into the company of a certain Gentleman, who was going from *Macerata* to *Foligno*, who, after ſome Diſcourſe relating to the Lady of *Loretto*, told us, among other things, that they were extreamly pleas'd in *Italy* at the News they had lately receiv'd from *England*, that their King was turn'd Chriſtian. I deſir'd him to explain his meaning, which he did in ſuch terms, that I could not but ſtand amaz'd at his Ignorance, his notions of the *Proteſtants* being near the ſame the *Pagans* entertain'd of the *Primitive Chriſtians*, ſo that with all the Art

I had, I could not perſwade him that we uſed Baptiſm among us: This Simplicity is ſo univerſal in this Country, that they are more ignorant of our Religion than the *Chineſes* themſelves, in which they are encourag'd by their Clergy, who leave no Stone unturn'd to make the *Proteſtants* odious to the People at any rate.

Simplicity of the *Italians* in matters of Religion.

After we had left *Tolentino*, we travel'd for forty miles among the Rocks; the chief Villages we took notice of in our way were, *Valcimara*, *Ponte di Trocca*, *Matic*, *Dignano*, *Colſiorita*, *Caſa nuova*, &c. We left the Mountains near the Village of *Pala*, from whence we diſcover'd the Plain of *Foligno*, which affords the moſt delightful Proſpect from the Hill, being water'd with many Rivulets, well inhabited, and extraordinarily improv'd; ſo that we had no ſooner quitted the Mountains, but we found our ſelves, as it were on a ſudden, in a ſweet and agreeable Climate, where we ſaw the Almond-trees already in Bloſſom, after we had ſcarce recover'd our ſelves from the cold of the froſty Rocks.

Having continued our Journey for four miles in a continual eaſie deſcent, we came into a narrow level way, on one ſide whereof runs a ſmall and clear River, at the end of which lies *Foligno*, in the moſt fertile Country in the World; it has the reputation of a better Traffick than moſt of the other Cities in the Eccleſiaſtical State; their Trade is chiefly in Draperies, Gold and Silver Laces, Silk Stuffs and Spices.

Foligno.

Soon after we came out of *Foligno*, we diſcover'd on the other ſide of the Plain, upon an Eminency, the Town of *Montefalco*, famous for the Interment of St. *Clara*. They ſhew here the three Stones of the bigneſs of ſmall Nuts, ſaid to be found in the Heart of that Saint, upon which the Hiſtory of the Paſſion is engrav'd.

Montefalco.

Near the Village of *Peſignano*, betwixt *Foligno* and *Spoleto*, at the foot of the Hill which encloſes the Plain, a large Spring ariſes thro' four ſeveral Outlets from under the Rocks, which make a ſmall Lake by their conjunction, and thence ſend forth a pleaſant Rivulet, which waters the circumjacent Country.

Not above two hundred paces from the Spring-head you ſee, near the Road, a ſmall Temple of the *Corinthian* Order, call'd S. *Salvatore*, where the Biſhop of *Spoleto* ſays Maſs once a Year. We obſerv'd the three following Inſcriptions on the Front, and on both ſides,

(1) + S. C. S. *Deus Profectarum qui fecit Redemptionem.*

(2) *Deus Angelorum qui fecit Reſurrectionem.*

(3) + S. C. S. *Deus Apoſt.* ——

the reſt being quite defac'd; which together with its manner of building Croſs-wiſe and Eaſtward, as moſt other Churches, and the Croſſes carv'd in divers parts of the Pediments, ſufficiently contradict the Opinion of thoſe who would have this Temple to have been conſecrated to *Clitumnus*, tho' perhaps it may have been erected upon or out of the Ruins of that of *Clitumnus*. It is much more probable what I heard a skilful Antiquary ſay at *Spoleto*, *viz.* That the before-mention'd River is the *Clitumnus* mention'd by the Ancients, and among the reſt, by *Virgil*, in the ſecond of his *Georgicks*.

The Temple and River of *Clitumnus*.

From *Peſignano* to *Spoleto* you travel for ſeven miles in a plain Country, at the foot of the Hills, well ſtor'd with Inhabitants. *Spoleto* is ſeated within the Mountains beyond the before-mention'd Plain, a poor, ill-built, and thinly-peopled City. The Cathedral is celebrated for its height, which however is not extraordinary. The Pavement is inlaid with ſmall pieces of Marble, like S. *Mark*'s Church at *Venice*, and the Pediment of the great Portal is fine *Moſaick* Work on a golden Ground. The Caſtle is ſeated on the higheſt ground, and has nothing to boaſt of but its Situation. About five hundred paces without the City is a Church conſecrated to *Concord*, and ſince call'd the Chapel of the Crucifix.

Spoleto.

Spoleto has alſo ſome Remnants of Antiquity, a Triumphal Arch half ruin'd, and the Fragments of an Amphitheatre with divers looſe Marble Stones, without Inſcriptions, except that the Arch ſtill retains a few Characters. The moſt remarkable thing here is the Aquaduct, which joyns the Mountain of St. *Francis* to that of *Spoleto*: It is a *Gothick* Work, and remains entire and uſeful to this day; its length is three hundred and fifty paces, and its height from the bottom of the Vally two hundred and thirty.

The Aquaduct.

Three miles beyond *Spoleto* we paſs'd the higheſt Mountain hereabouts, call'd *Semma*; and after we had travel'd about five or ſix miles among the barren Rocks, we found the ſucceeding Hills, for four or five miles, cover'd with Lawrels, wild Olive-trees, Tamarinds, Junipers, ever-green Oaks, and divers other ſempervirent Trees and Shrubs.

At our approach to *Terni*, theſe Mountains, which had enclos'd us in a ſtreight paſſage upon the brink of a Torrent which runs at the bottom of the Valley, extended themſelves by degrees to a great Foreſt of Olive-trees laden with Fruit, which they generally let hang till they drop off themſelves: The Olives for pickling are gather'd before they are ripe, and their bitterneſs is remov'd by Art; the ripe ones are as bitter as the green ones, notwithſtanding which they produce the ſweeteſt Liquor that can be imagin'd.

Terni.

From this Wood of Olives we travel'd for a mile in a moſt agreeable Plain, which brought us to *Terni*, ſeated upon the River *Nera*, in a moſt fruitful Country. This City is not ſo large in compaſs as *Spoleto*, but much more populous; they ſell abundance of Oyl: We were told, that during ſix Months of the Year they make here an hundred Charges of Oyl every day, each Charge weighing ſix hundred pounds, and is generally ſold at the rate of twelve Engliſh Crowns. By an Inſcription to be ſeen on the Porch of the Seminary near the Cathedral, it appears, that it may contend for its Antiquity with *Rome* it ſelf; the Inſcription being made for *Tiberius*, is dated thus,

Poſt Interamnam conditam DCCIIII.

Its Antiquity

Terni being anciently call'd *Interamna* and *Interamnium*, from its ſituation *interamnes*, or the two Branches of the River that waters it. On the Bridge is to be ſeen another Inſcription, put there in the time of Pope *Urban* the Eighth, intimating, that this Bridge was built by *Pompey the Great*.

About three miles from *Terni* is the famous Waterfal of Mount *del Marmore*; the way that leads up to it is very rocky, ſo that we were forc'd to alight often from our Horſes. By the way we obſerv'd, on the South ſide of the Mountain, divers Nooks which never felt the rigour of the Winter Seaſon, and among the Buſta's abundance of *Jeſmins*, *Lawrels*, *Myrtles*, *Roſemary* as freſh then (in *February*) as they are with us in *April*.

The great Waterfal.

As we were aſcending the Hill *Papinio*, we obſerv'd in a Valley near the Bank of a River, a tract of Ground planted with at leaſt ſeven hundred Orange-trees, a thing rarely to be ſeen in the open Field, where they have no ſhelter. But to return to our Cataract.

The River *Velerio* has its riſe among the Mountains, twelve or thirteen miles from the place where the Water falls down. At about nine miles from its head Spring it falls into the Lake of *Luco*, whence continuing its Current, with a much larger Stream than before, to a Plain, which in reſpect of the depth below it proves a Mountain, it falls with a great force down from a craggy Rock three hundred paces high, into the Concavity of another Rock underneath it, againſt which the Waters break with ſuch a violent agitation, that it riſes like a cloud of Duſt twice as high as the Fall, and produces a kind of perpetual Rain in all the adjacent parts: The repercuſſion of the Sun-beams in this pulveriz'd Water produces an infinite number of Rainbows, according to the various redounding and ſpurting of this Watery Cloud, the ſight whereof fills the Spectators with amazement; at laſt all theſe Waters gathering into an Abyſs, occaſion'd by the continual falling down of the Waters, from thence break forth with incredible force thro' the Crevices of divers Rocks, and ſo continuing their courſe with a murmuring noiſe a little further, at laſt joyn themſelves with the little River *Nera*, which is much enlarg'd by the acceſſion of theſe Waters.

Narni.

From *Terni* to *Narni* you travel for ſeven miles thro' a plain and fertile Country; it affords an indifferent good Proſpect from the circumjacent Hills on the ſide you come from *Terni*, but deceives you in your expectation after you come into it, being in a manner deſtitute of Inhabitants, with narrow dirty Streets, and ſo uneven, that you can't go five ſteps without aſcending or deſcending; and their Paper Windows make a very beggarly ſhow. I took notice *en paſſant* of two tolerable handſom Fountains of Braſs. The Emperour *Nerva* was a Native of this City.

A little before you enter the City, you ſee the Ruins of a Bridge, ſaid to have been built under the Reign of *Auguſtus*; it is admirable both for its height and ſtructure, becauſe after having joyn'd the Mountain of *Spoleto* to another neighbouring Mount, it ends in the high Road towards *Pemſa*. The vaſt pieces of Marble, which are the Materials of this Bridge, are joyn'd together without any Cement or Iron-work; it hath four or five Arches,

An admirable Bridge.

of

of which only one remains entire; the top of the Mould of the largest being broken: I was credibly inform'd that this Arch is a hundred and seventy foot in extent, which far exceeds the so much celebrated Bridge of *Rialto*.

We had no sooner left *Narni*, but we found our selves again among the Mountains: Thus travelling on for eight miles, we came to the Town of *Otricoli*, near which, at the entrance of a Plain, are to be seen the Ruins of the ancient *Ocriculum*, but could find nothing worth our observation among 'em. *Rimini.*

Not long after we passed the *Tyber* over a Stone Bridge that owes its foundation to *Sixtus* V, and its perfection to *Urban* VIII, as the Inscription tells you.

We came very late to *Citta Castellana*, and departed again early in the morning, this place having nothing that could invite us to stay there. *Citta Castellana.*

Near to *Regnano* we found the old *Via Flaminia*, with its Pavement entire, having not perceiv'd any foosteps of it before since we left *Rimini*, to which place it extended it self.

After we had dined at *Castel Nuova*, an inconsiderable place as well as *Regnano*, we continued our Journey to *Rome*, thro' an infinite number of ancient Ruins, but the Country lay untill'd, and almost destitute of Inhabitants. Having repass'd the *Tyber* by the *Pons Milvius*, (as the ancient Authors call it) since by corruption call'd *Ponte Molle*, we came upon a pav'd way, which brought us betwixt many Gardens and Summer-seats, to the famous City of *Rome*. I am,

Sir,

Rome, *March* 4. 1688. *Yours*, &c.

LETTER XXI.

SIR,

AFter we had rambled two or three days about *Rome*, the good Company invited us to hasten our intended Journey for *Naples*, which is reckon'd eight days Journey from *Rome*. About twelve miles from this City we came to *Marino*, a great Town, now belonging to the Prince *Colonne*, and formerly known by the Name of *Villa Mariana*.

From *Marino* we ascended a rocky Mountain, where we saw nothing but Wood and Bushes: Of the Lake of *Castel Gandolfo*, which we coasted near an hour, we shall have occasion to speak in our return.

About five miles after we had left the Lake, at the descent of the Mountain, we discover'd the Sea, and on our right hand, on a little Hillock, the City call'd *Citta de la Vigna*; being the ancient *Lanuvium*, a Municipal City, which gave Birth to *Antoninus Pius*, but not the *Lavinium* of *Æneas*, according to the common Opinion: *Lavina Sistova* is twelve miles thence, towards *Practica*. *Lanuvium.*

It was late before we reach'd *Velitri*, a little City seated on a Hill, and surrounded by a Wall; it was anciently a considerable place, when it durst cope with *Rome* it self, but now makes a very indifferent figure. The People here are generally of opinion that *Augustus* was a Native of this City, and one of the Servants in the Inn was so curious as to tell us so; but being ask'd who that *Augustus* was, he answer'd, He was the first Christian Emperour; for you must observe, that nothing is more common in *Velitri*, among the *Italians*, than to canonize all illustrious old Men, whether *Christians* or *Pagans*. 'Tis certain that *Augustus* was born at *Rome*, under the Consulate of *Cicero* and *Anthony*, as *Suetonius* positively affirms: 'Tis true, that his Family deduced its Origin from *Velitri*, *Gentem Octavicam Velitris præcipuam olim fuisse multa declarant*. The same Author tells us, that the Chamber in which he was nurs'd, near *Velitri*, was held in the same veneration as they do now-adays the *Holy House* of *Loretto*: *Huc introire*, says he, *nisi necessario & casto, religio est. Temere adeuntibus metus & horror objicitur.* *Velitri.*

In the midst of the Market-place of *Velitri* stands a curious Brasen Statue of Pope *Urban* VIII. sitting, as generally all the Statues of Popes are represented, to denote (as I suppose) their Superiority over other Princes. The Marquess *de Ginetti*'s House is worth viewing, both for its pleasant Situation, and the many Antiquities preserv'd there.

Descending from the Hill of *Velitri*, we took notice of a great many Caves dug on purpose to keep their Wines cool; after which we travel'd for fifteen miles thro' a poor Country, to the foot of the Mountain, on the top whereof stands the little City of *Lormaiera*, built upon the Ruins of the old *Lera*.

About four miles further we saw, on the left hand, about fifty paces from the Highway, certain ancient Ruins, which they told us were the Remains of the place call'd by *St. Paul* the *Three Shops*, but now the *Three Taverns*. On the right hand we discover'd the Cape call'd now-adays *Monte Circello*, suppos'd by some to have been an Island formerly: Here it was that the jealous *Circe* chang'd her Rival *Scylla*, the Mistress of *Glaucus*, into a Sea-Monster, and *Ulysses*'s Companions into Hogs. *Acts* 28.

A little way from the *Three Taverns* you see the City of *Letiæ*, seated on a Mountain; its ancient Fame of the goodness of its Wine is now quite lost, the Mountain producing nothing of that nature at present: 'Tis true, the Woods wherewith these Mountains are almost cover'd, produce abundance of these Trees, call'd *Focus Indica*, some of which grow up to the height of thirty or forty foot, with Trunks as big as a Man; Lawrels and Myrtles you find in great plenty in the Hedges, and abundance of Orange-trees in the open Field. *Letia.* *The Indian Figtree.*

Not far from *Letia*, at the Village of *Casa Nuova*, you may take Boat upon the Lake, which brings you to *Terracina*, but we continued our Journey by Land, and turning to the left, entred into a Valley, which brought us to the Mountain and City of *Piperno*. In our passage thither I observ'd a Church-yard planted with Orange-trees, a thing not usually seen in *Italy*, where all People of fashion have their Chapels or Vault in some Church or Convent, and the poorer sort are buried in some private corner, without the Cities; besides, whenever they have any Church-yards, they plant them with Pines, Yew-trees or Cypresses, but never with Orange-trees.

Piperno is a modern City, built near the place where the ancient *Privernum* stood, the Metropolis of the *Volsci*, and the Residence of their King *Metabus*, Father to the famous *Camilla* *. The Bishoprick of *Piperno* was united with that of *Terracina*, by reason of its Poverty: They keep the Bishop's Chair in the Choir of the Cathedral. In the Church of St. *Benedict* they shew you an Image of our Lady, made by St. *Luke*, which, they say, could not be burnt at the time of the Conflagration of *Piperno*. *Piperno* or *Privernum.* * See *Virgil*, l. 11.

On the Hillock of *Piperno*, call'd *Colle Rosso*, the Lilies and Daffodils grow naturally in great plenty; this Hill also affords a peculiar fine Earth for Potters Ware. From the top of this Hill you may see a little City call'd *Mayerica*, near which is a Lake, the Waters whereof rise considerably two days before Rain.

From *Piperno* we travel'd over sandy Hillocks, cover'd with various sorts of sempervirent Shrubs; we got afterwards into a Wood, where we saw abundance of Cork-trees much resembling an ever-green Oak, and, to speak the truth, I believe it to be a kind of Oak, since it bears Acrons; it has this peculiar quality, that the more you strip it of its Bark, the stronger it grows, and produces immediately a new one.

Soon after we came out of the Wood, we went to see the Abby of *Fossa Nuova*, said to be built upon the Ruins of the *Forum Appii*, about some three hundred paces from the high Road. The Story the Monks told us concerning *Thomas Aquinas* is a very odd one; they tell you, That the said *Thomas Aquinas*, in his way from *Fundi* to the Council of *Lyons*, finding himself very ill, alighted from his Mule, and fastning a Stick in the Ground, ty'd his Mule to it, whilst he laid himself asleep in a corner of the Wood not far from the Church; the Mule getting loose, ran strait to the Church, and setting his Feet in the Choir, sunk in an instant into the Pavement, where he died. They shew you the print of his Feet, over which they have laid an Iron Grate. However, as they search'd after the Master, to chastise him for his Negligence, they met with St. *Thomas*, who was so afflicted at the loss of his Mule, that he died within a few days after in this Convent, where his Body was entomb'd in the Church, and from thence afterwards remov'd to *Fundi*, and from *Fundi* to *Thoulouse*. *Fossa nova.*

About ten miles thence we began to discover certain Remains of the ancient high Road call'd *Via Appia*, made by *Appius Claudius* when he was Censor; you see it come out of a deep Marsh, which is at present unaccessible, whereas formerly it was the direct and common Road from *Capua* to *Rome*, a convincing Instance of the constant vicissitude of all Worldly things. The same thing we observ'd in our way betwixt *Citta Castellana* and *Rome*, of the *Via Flaminia*, of which we saw now and then *The Via Appia.*

considerable Tracts preserv'd entire, as on this side *Regnano*, and towards *Castel Nuovo*, fifteen miles from *Rome*; whereas in other places it amounts up to inaccessible Mountains, and in other places it is swallow'd up in deep Marshes and Valleys, occasion'd questionless by Winds, Rains, great Floods, Earthquakes, and other suchlike Accidents, which produce such stupendious Changes upon the Surface of the Earth.

In my opinion these famous Roads are more surprizing than most other pieces of Antiquity, considering that an infinite number of Passengers, Horses and Chariots should incessantly, for so many Ages, tread on this Pavement, and yet so many considerable Fragments of it remain entire: The Stones which compose this Pavement are not all of the same bigness, (*Procopius* say they were all square, but he is in an Errour) of a grey and reddish colour, not unlike rusty Iron, very hard, and ten or twelve inches thick; generally speaking, those of the largest size are above two foot, and the least not less than one: Notwithstanding the great difference in their shape and figure, they have been joyn'd so nicely, that in those places where the Pavement is quite entire, you can't thrust the point of a Sword betwixt 'em.

Via Consulares These Ways, which they call'd *Viæ Consulares*, had on each side Borders of the same Stone raised about two foot above the rest; I have observ'd 'em very entire in some places; they call'd 'em *Cippo* or *Marginei*, or *Marginationes Viarum*; and 'tis betwixt these Borders the true breadth of these Highways ought to be taken, according to which I found the two Ways, *Via Appia* and *Via Flaminia*, twenty palms broad, with very little difference, which makes fourteen foot less by four inches English measure. In some places you see Ruts made by the Chariot-wheels three or four inches deep, the Tract whereof, from one Pavement to another, is the surest mark of its ancient situation; for the rest, the Pavement is whole and even, without any visible impressions made by the Horseshoes. They told us, that the Foundation of this Pavement was made of another very thick Lay of Stone, fix'd on a Bed of Sand, which keeps it from sinking.

All along the Road to *Terracina* are to be seen the Ruins of many ancient Monuments, erected formerly for Ornament sake.

Terracina (so call'd from its situation upon a Rock of difficult access) or *Terracina* is the *Anxur* of the Ancients, now a poor and ill-peopled place, seated in a desolate Country. A little beyond *Terracina* one may plainly discover divers parts of the Pavement of the *Via Appia* to have been cut thro' the Rock call'd *Pisca Marina*, which being near a hundred twenty six foot high, the ancient Cyphers are mark'd from ten to ten in a capital Roman Character, on the inside of the Rock, which is cut perpendicular, so that the Cypher on the top is CXX. A certain Antiquary of *Rome* told me, that having measur'd these distances, he found them almost all unequal, whence some conjecture, that these marks were only made for the direction of the head Workman, without any further design. Others are of opinion, that the distance of each Cypher marks the division of the Work of every ten Days, and that the inequality did arise from the more or less difficulty the Workmen met with in cutting the Rock. The narrowness of the Rock towards the top, and the greater distance in proportion to it, seem to confirm this Opinion, were it not that according to this Supposition the first Tenth must have been mark'd above, and the Cypher CXX at the bottom, it being very probable that they begun at the top of the Rock.

We continued our Journey over the Hills cover'd with Cork-trees, the Marshes and the Sea on our right, and thus keeping near the old Pavement, we arriv'd at night at *Fondi*. In our way, about three miles beyond *Terracina*, we saw an old Wall which, they told us, was the Boundary betwixt the Ecclesiastical State and the Kingdom of *Naples*.

Fondi. *Fondi* is seated in a flat Country, not far from a Lake bearing the same Name, which extends it self in a large compass among the Marshes, betwixt the Hills and the Sea: The Eels of this Lake are highly celebrated for their bigness. This City was entirely ruin'd in 1534, by *Hariaden Barbarossa* Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet, the History of which is painted in the Church of the *Annunciata*. *Fondi* is pav'd with the Stones taken from the *Via Appia*, but are not near so exactly joyn'd.

Cicero's Garden. Not far from the Castle they shew you a Garden which (they say) belong'd to *Cicero*. The *Dominicans* preserve with a great deal of Veneration the Chamber and Auditory of *Thomas Aquinas*, as also an old Orange-tree, which he planted; he died in 1273, so that certainly this is the oldest Orange-tree that ever was heard of: I remember they told us strange things of this Tree, and among the rest, that its Leaves were of a quite different shape from those of other Orange-trees; but we could not find the least difference, and were convinc'd by our own Eyes, that the Winter had not spar'd the Oranges of this Tree any more than the rest in other places.

After we had left *Fondi*, we travel'd for ten miles upon the old Pavement to *Mola*, among the Mountains.

Near *Itri*, a small City, seated upon a Rock about six miles from *Fondi*, I took notice of certain large Trees call'd thereabouts *Soucelles*; the Fruit is a Cod of half a foot long, of the thickness of a Bean-cod; they dry 'em, and then they taste like Hony or Manna; their true name is *Carobba*. The Fruit *Carobbe*

About ten a clock in the Morning we came to *Mola*, a little City seated upon the Sea-shore; here are to be seen vast heaps of Marble Stones and other Ruins; *Formiæ*, once a glorious place, built by *Antiphinanes* King of the *Lestrygons*. The Air is infinitely sweet here, and the Hills on the Gulph between *Cajeta* and *Mola* produce most excellent Fruits and Wines, as the Sea affords them vast quantities of Fish. They shew'd us in particular the Ruins of a certain old Palace, which, they tell you, belong'd to *Cicero*, and was for the most part destroy'd by the Sea. The various pieces of *Mosaick*, which are plainly to be distinguish'd yet in divers parts, sufficiently testifie that it was no ordinary Structure; and they assure you with a great deal of confidence hereabouts, that certain Inscriptions have been taken from thence, which made it plainly appear to be *Cicero's*. *Cicero's Palace.*

It blowing then a very brisk gale, we were at a stand whether we should venture over the little Gulph (which is four miles broad) to *Cajeta*, seated on the very point of the Cape, directly opposite to *Mola*, but at last having resolv'd on the passage, we found *Cajeta* of a pretty large extent, strong by Art and Nature, by reason of its difficult access upon the high Rock. The Harbour is also very good. Here is to be seen the Tomb of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Constable of *France*, who was slain in the sacking of *Rome* by the Imperial Forces: And the ancient *Mausoleum* of *Munatius Plancus*, commonly call'd the Tower of *Orlando*. The Epitaph of the first is as follows; *Cajeta.*

Aucto Imperio, superatæ Italiæ, devicto Gallo, pontifice obsesso, Romæ capto, Bourbonii hoc marmor cineres continet. The Epitaph of Charles of Bourbon.

From hence we were conducted to the cleft Mountain call'd *La Spaccata*, just at the brink of the Sea-shore; it is separated from the top quite to the bottom, where 'tis about four or five foot asunder, but grows broader and broader towards the height: The Concavities on one side, and the Protuberances on the other, directly opposite to one another, seem to be evident marks of its being really divided, which, they say, hapned at the time when our Saviour gave up the Ghost. At one of the insides of this Rock they shew you the print of a Hand, which softned under it on the Challenge of a certain incredulous person; underneath it you see this Distich: The Rock Rupes the Gonrel.

Improba mens verum renuit, quod fama fatetur
Credere; at hoc digitis sexa liquata probant.

This Rock being a famous Pilgrimage, there are small Steps contriv'd, which lead down to a small Chapel dedicated to the holy Trinity. The Curate would have given us some pieces of the Rock he cut off with a Hammer, but finding us not willing to overcharge our selves with such sort of Baggage, he seem'd to be offended at our refusal.

From thence taking our way to the Cathedral, we were shew'd, among other Antiquities, a pretended Pillar of the Temple of *Solomon*; four such-like are to be seen at the high Altar of S. *Mark's* Chapel at *Venice*. Here is also a very ancient Vessel of white Marble, said to have been found at *Mola*, which now serves instead of a Font in the Baptistery; it is a most curious Piece, and most entirely preserv'd: Its shape resembles a Bell about four foot high, supported by four Lyons of the same materials. The *Basso relievo* is esteem'd most rare Workmanship, especially the little *Bacchus* arising out of *Jupiter's* Thigh, put by *Mercury* into the hands of *Ino*: All round it you see *Satyrs* and *Bacchanals*, and among the rest a *Faunus* playing on two Pipes at once, as I have seen the Shepherds do in *Tyrol*; the Workman's Name is engraven on the Vessel, ΣΑΛΠΙΩΝ ΑΘΗΝΑΙΟΣ ΕΠΟΙΗΣΕ.

Not far from the Gardens of the *Franciscans* *Zoccolanti* is a Bush of Thorns which has scarce any Pricks, which, they

they say, has grown thus ever since S. *Francis* rowl'd himself there to extinguish his Lust. Near the place call'd *Della Foglia*, they shew you where he preach'd to the Fishes.

The Statue of Æsculapius.

As you go up by the little Door of the Episcopal Palace, over against the Altar of the *Holy Sacrament*, there is a Marble Statue of about four palms high, representing an old Man setting his Feet upon a little Dog, underneath which is a Death's Head, and a Serpent whose Tail is placed on the Dog, wraps it self about the old Man, and rests on his Head, and has an Eagle on his. This is generally supposed to be the Statue of *Æsculapius*, with his Serpent, the Dog signifying Vigilance requir'd in a Physician, and the Eagle the Empire of God; the Death's Head is an Emblem of Human Nature, subject to that Deity.

After a short stay at *Cajeta* we return'd to *Mola*, and then coasting the Sea upon the *Via Appia* for eight miles, came to the Ruins of the ancient City of *Minturna*, where-

Minturnæ.

abouts *Marius* shelter'd himself after his Army had been defeated by *Sylla*.

We took notice in our passage of the Ruins of an old Amphitheatre, and the Remnants of an Aqueduct which came from the little City of *Tajetto*, two miles further on the left hand. The River *Garigliano* (formerly call'd *Liris*) runs just by *Minturna*; we pass'd it in a Ferry-boat, and quitting the old troublesome and slippery Pavement, travel'd thro' the Meadows to the Village of St. *Agatha*, where we lodg'd that night.

Capua.

The Country betwixt this Village and *Capua* (which is sixteen miles) is very level, and extreamly fruitful near *Capua*. Not far from S. *Agatha* they shew'd us, at some miles distance, the Hills which formerly produc'd the famous *Falernian* Wine.

Capua is seated upon the Bank of the *Volturnus*, the chief River of the Kingdom of *Naples*, tho' but of an indifferent bigness; it has divers Inscriptions and Marble Stones, brought thither from the ancient *Capua*, the Ruins whereof we visited, about two miles from thence, near the Mountains to the Eastward, the Town call'd St. *Marys* being built out of the Ruins of this once so celebrated City; the many little Temples and old Castles, the remnants of two Amphitheatres, one of the Gates, and a great number of broken Pillars and other magnificent Fragments of Architecture, are undeniable Proofs of its former greatness. The Country People brought us variety of Medals to sell, but as they are cunning enough to carry the best to the Antiquaries of the neighbouring Cities, who pay them a good rate for 'em, so they seldom offer any thing but their Refuse to Travellers.

The Campaign betwixt *Capua* and *Naples* (which is sixteen miles, and part of the Province of *Terra di Lauro*) is perhaps the most fruitful Soil in the World, whence it is that they have given it the Name of *Campagna Stellata*, to signifie the benign influence of the Stars upon this Country.

Among other places, we passed thro' *Aversa*, built (as they tell you) out of the Ruins of *Atella* by the *Normans*, after they had driven the *Saracens* and *Greeks* out of *Naples*.

Naples the Grecod.

The City of *Naples* was rebuilt by the *Cumani*, who gave it the Name of Νεάπολις, to distinguish it from the Remnants of the high City, unto which they gave the Name of Παλαιόπολις, for both were before that time called *Parthenope*, from the Mermaid *Parthenope*, who after *Ulysses* and his Companions had escap'd her Snare, threw her self, out of despair, headlong from a Precipice, and was interr'd at *Pelaiopolis*; tho' some others derive its Etymology from *Parthenope* the Daughter of *Eumolus* King of *Thessaly*, who setled a Colony there, and chang'd its ancient Name into that of *Parthenope*. These *Grecian* Names seem sufficiently to evince, that the *Greeks* were the Founders of this City, which is very large and populous, tho' I am not able to give you an exact account of the number of its Inhabitants: Its figure is very irregular, and its circuit, according to the computation of some who have walk'd round the Wall, is about nine miles, not including the Suburbs, which amounting to nine more, make the whole circumference up eighteen: It is pav'd all over with square Stones of the same bigness, the Streets being generally streight and broad, the Houses lofty, flat-roof'd and uniform, in which it exceeds the Buildings of *London*, *Paris*, *Venice*, and even *Rome* it self, all which have very fine Noblemens Seats, but these are mix'd with a great number of ordinary Houses, whereas at *Naples* they are, generally speaking, very handsom Fabricks. To the South it is enclos'd by a little Bay, and to the North by very fertile Hills, which rise by an easie ascent into *Campagna Felice*; to the East lies the Plain which leads to Mount *Vesuvius*, and on the West side the *high Town*, where are the *Chartreux* and the Castle of S. *Ermus*, the Prospect of which Ascent is very charming to behold.

Palaces of Naples.

Besides these private Houses, there are a great many who may be rank'd among the number of the best Palaces; as for instance, those of the Dukes of *Matalone*, *Gravina*, *Airola*, and *de la Tour*; of the Princes of S. *Agatha*, *Montemiler*, *Bisera*, and *Cellamara*; the Palace of the Viceroy stands in a *Great Place*, its Front is very regular, and adorn'd with three Orders of Architecture; its whole length is near four hundred foot, and was built by the famous *Montana*. The three Castles of *Naples*, the Academy call'd *Studii Nuovi*, the School for riding the great Horse, the Convents in general, the Hospitals, the Arsenal, and the Magazines for their Galleys, are all very remarkable Structures. The whole City is adorn'd with

Churches of Naples.

a considerable number of Fountains, among which three are of an incomparable grandeur and beauty: But the Churches here, both for their number and beauty, surpass all the rest; their Frontispieces, Portals, Chapels, Altars and Tombs being the most exquisite Pieces of Architecture that Art ever produc'd; they are fill'd with Pictures, Sculptures, and Gold and Silver Vessels, and their Arches, Wainscots and Walls are cover'd with the most precious Marble curiously laid together, or with Compartiments of *Basso relievo*, or of gilt Joyners work, and beautified with the Works of the greatest Painters. To be short, wherever you turn your Eye, you are dazled with the curious Works of *Jasper*, *Porphyry*, and *Mosaick* of all sorts, and the most exquisite Products of Art. The Church of the *Jesuits* is an excellent Fabrick, embellish'd with magnificent Ornaments from the top to the bottom. The Painting of the Dome is the Work of *Lanfranc*; that of S. *Mary* of the *Annunciata* is not inferiour to it; and the famous Hospital (which has two hundred thousand Ducats annual Revenue) is exceeding rich all over, as are those of S. *Philip of Neri*, S. *Maria le Nuovo*, S. *Severin*, S. *Paul*, S. *Dominick*, the Church and Convent of Mount *Olivet*, the Church of the *Holy Apostles*, S. *John Carbonara*, of the *little Hospital*, and S. *Marys of Health*, not to mention many more, which are all very fair, and have their Vestries and Treasuries stor'd with Riches.

I remember that two *Theatines*, as they were conducting us into their Church of the *Holy Apostles*, made heavy complaint of the Poverty of their Order, (they having no Possessions, and at the same time not being permitted to beg, like the *Mendicants*) but after they had shew'd us the magnificence of their Church, and fourteen large Cupboards in the Vestry fill'd with Gold and Silver Vessels and other precious things, we had sufficient reason to believe, that they had no great occasion to go a begging.

The Convent of the Chartreux.

The spacious Convent of the *Chartreux* of St. *Martin* is every where full of curious and magnificent Pieces; and the Church, tho' none of the largest, yet is a compleat Piece both for the Materials and exquisiteness of the Art. The Monks that were our Conductors assur'd us, that under one Priorate there were bestow'd among them above five hundred thousand Ducats in Silver Plate, Sculptures and Pictures: The Nativity of Christ is a most exquisite Piece, done by *Guido*; the four Pictures of the Last Supper are of the hands of *Espagnolet*, *Anna Caraghe*, *Paul Veronese*, and Cavalier *Massimno*, the last of which has represented Christ standing, giving the Sacrament to his Apostles, who are upon their Knees; besides many other Pieces of high value.

The Pavement of the Cloyster (which is an hundred paces square) is of Marble inlaid in Boughs and such-like Ornaments, the four Galleries being supported by sixty Pillars, each of one entire piece of the best white Marble of *Carrara*. Every Frier has his own Chamber, a Closet and Library, besides a little Garden; and the Prior's Lodgings are fit for the reception of a Prince: Here it is they shew the famous Crucifix of *Michael Angelo*, done, as they say, to the life after a Peasant who was crucified by the said Painter; it is of Wood, and not above half a foot high: It is observable, that the Crucifix holds his Head streight, which looks not very like the posture of an expiring Person on the Cross. They have also a S. *Lawrence*, by *Titian*; and some Designs of *Ruben's* and *Albert Durer*, which are valued at a high rate.

From this Ascent you have the most delightful Prospect that well can be conceiv'd; you have at one view the Sea and many Islands, and among these that of *Capreæ*, the famous *Seraglio* of *Tiberius*, as likewise the whole City of *Naples*, with its three Castles, the Castles of the Egg, the new Castle, and that of S. *Elmo*; the Harbour, Mole and Lantern; and along the Sea-shore, the Creeks and

Inner

Inlets mix'd with the little Capes, as also a great number of Villages built along the Sea-side; towards the Land-side, the Gardens and fertile Hills leading into *Campania Felice* are the most agreeable Objects in the World; and at a greater distance you may behold the horrible Smoke and Shape of the Mount *Vesuvius*.

Chief Relicks at Naples.

To describe all the Relicks, Statues, or miraculous Images, as they stile them here, would be an endless piece, I will only mention a few of 'em: At St. *Lewis* they keep some of the Virgins Milk, which becomes liquid on all our Ladys Festivals; at St. *John Carbonara* the Blood of St. *Januarius* is boil'd up when any one approaches his Shrine, as the Blood of St. *John Baptist* (preserv'd at St. *Maria Donna Romita*) does, whilst they say Mass for his beheading. I pass by the pieces of the true Cross, the Nails, the Branches of the Crown of Thorns, the Images said to be made by St. *Luke*, and suchlike preserv'd Rarities. At St. *Dominick the Greater* they shew the Crucifix that spoke to St. *Thomas Aquinas*; and another in that of the *Benedictins*, which, if you will believe them, spoke much more to Pope *Pius* V. At the Church of St. *Agnello*, in the Chapel of the *Monaci*, they shew you also a speaking Crucifix, with a long Inscription underneath relating to the Story; and another in the same Church, which, they tell you, used to hold long Dialogues with *Fame* the Mother of St. *Agnello*, and with St. *Agnello* himself; this they stile the Image of S. *Mary of Intercession*.

Miraculous Crucifixes.

Among the miraculous Crucifixes here, that of S. *Mary* of the *Carmelites* must not be passed by in silence; for when D. *Pedro d'Arragon* besieg'd *Naples* in 1439, it bow'd its Head at the sight of a Cannon Ball, which only beat off the Crown of the Crucifix.

These Churches contain a vast number of Tombs and Epitaphs: In that of St. *John the Evangelist* are six or seven Epitaphs, made by *Joh. Jovianus Pontanus*, among which one is for his Daughter *Lucia*, another for his Son, and two more for his Wife and himself. At St. *Clara's* you see the Epitaph of King *Robert*, surnam'd the *Good* and the *Wise*. At S. *Domin. Maj.* one for a noble Lord of the Family of *Caraffa*, and another for the Cardinal *d'Ariano* of the same House. In the Vestry of this Church you see many of the Tombs of the *Kings* and *Queens* of *Naples*, among which those of *Isabel* of *Arragon*, Daughter of *Alphonsus* I. and Wife of *John Galeazzo* Duke of *Milan*, and of *Joan* the first Queen of *Jerusalem*, and both the *Sicilys* deserve to be remember'd, the first runs thus:

Noted Tombs and Epitaphs.

Hic Isabella jacet, centum insita sanguine Regum,
Quæ cum Majestas, Itala prisca jacet;
Sol qui lustrabat radiis fulgentibus orbem,
Occidit, inque alio nunc agit orbe dum.
Obiit die 11 Febr. 1524.

The second thus:

Inclyta Parthenopes jacet hic Regina Joanna
Prima, prius felix, mox miseranda nimis.
Quam Carolo genitam, mustavit Carolus alter
Qui morte illa virum, fustulit ante suum.

She was the Daughter of *Charles* of *Sicily*, Duke of *Calabria*, and was strangled by *Charles Durazzo*, whom she had adopted, and who rebelling against her, accused her of having strangled *Andrew* of *Hungary* her first Husband, whose Tomb is to be seen in the Cathedral.

In the same place is also to be seen the Tomb and Epitaph of the famous Marquess of *Pescara*, by *Ariosto*; and in the Church of S. *Mary of Concord*, a long Inscription upon the Tomb of a King of *Fez*, who having embrac'd the *Roman* Faith, and fought under the *Imperial* and *Spanish* Banners, died a hundred Years old in 1641. The Tomb of *Innocent* IV. who died at *Naples* in 1254, is to be seen in the Cathedral, with two long Epitaphs, one whereof is in *Leonine* Verse. In the Church of St. *Agnello* is the following Epitaph for a Bishop who refused the Cardinals Cap;

Sigismundo Papacudæ Franc. F. Tropeiensium Præsul; viro opt. & Jurisconsulto, qui cum in eorum Cardinalium fulsset à Clemente VII. ascitus, maluit in patriâ Episcopus vivere. Vixit ann. 80. M. VI. D. X. obiit 1536.

In the Church of St. *Severin* of the *Benedictins*, in the most beautiful Chapel belonging to the Family of St. *Severin*, are to be seen the Tombs and Inscriptions of three young Lords, Brothers, poyson'd by their Uncle; as also that of their Mother, lamenting the untimely Death of her Sons. Directly opposite to the Church of the *Carmelites* you see a kind of Chapel, erected by order of *Charles* I. King of *Naples*, in the same place where he caused the Head of the unfortunate *Conradin* to be cut off, and at the same time of his Cousin *Frederick* Marquess of *Baden* and Duke of *Austria*, with five or six other Lords, the whole History of which is painted in *Fresco* on the inside of the Walls of the Chapel, in the middle of which stands a Pillar of *Porphyry*, and round about it this Distich:

Astutâ ungue Leo, Pullum rapiens Aquilinus
Hic deplumavit, Acephalumque dedit.

The *Carmelites* shew'd us in their Convent the place where the famous Rebel *Thomas Aniello* (commonly call'd *Massaniello*) was slain, after he had been the Head of the Rebels eighteen days: I have a piece of Money that was coin'd whilst this Rebellion lasted, with this Inscription, *S. P. Q. N.*

As we passed by the Church of St. *Mary Major*, our Conducter told us, there was a brazen Hog to be seen there, made by *Pomponius* Bishop of *Naples*: it seems the place where this Church now stands was haunted by the Devil in the shape of a Hog, which so terrified the Inhabitants, that they left their Houses, till the said Bishop being bid by the Virgin to build a Church for her in the same place, the infernal Hog disappear'd.

I reserve the rest I have to tell you about *Naples* for my next; in the mean while believe that I am,

Sir,

Naples, Mar. 14. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXII.

SIR,

Antiquities of Naples.

THE City of *Naples* having been subject to so many Masters and various Desolations, has lost the greatest part of its Antiquities; however, in the Front of S. *Paul major* you still see the Frontispiece of the ancient Temple of *Apollo*, afterwards dedicated to *Castor* and *Pollux*, by one *Tiberius Julius Tarsus*, his Name being to this day distinctly to be seen on one of the Friezes of this Frontispiece:

ΤΙΒΕΡΙΟΣ ΙΟΥΛΙΟΣ ΤΑΡΣΟΣ

The Portico rests upon eight twisted Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order, and the Pediment is adorn'd with *Basso relievo*, representing the Deities. The Columns of the *Restituta* are said to have been taken from the ancient Temple of *Neptune*. Here are also to be seen some Ruins of an Amphitheatre, and an ancient Statue of the *Nile* upon a Crocodile. The House of D. *Dionedes Caraffa* contains many Sculptures and ancient Inscriptions; in the Court you see the Head and all the Crest of a brazen Horse which had no Bridle, which being an Emblem of the Liberty of *Naples* whilst yet a Commonwealth, stood in one of the Great Places, but King *Conrad* having order'd a Bit to be put on this Horse, order'd the following Distich to be set on the Pedestal:

Hactenus effrenis, Domini nunc paret habenis
Rendomas hinc equis, Parthenopensis equum.

On the Hill, where 'tis suppos'd the ancient *Paleopolis* stood, are a great many old Ruins, and divers Collections of Medals, which contribute not a little to the true understanding of the History of *Naples*, are to be found in the Cabinets of the Antiquaries of this City, and especially in that of Mr. *Ricketti*. Of the Catacombs I shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

The Bandits extirpated in Naples.

After Pope *Sixtus* V. had clear'd the Ecclesiastical State of the *Banditti*, they became more numerous in the Kingdom of *Naples*, so that within these few Years Travellers were forc'd to go in Caravans to secure themselves against their Insolencies; but the Honour of freeing this Country from this dangerous Vermin belongs to the Marquess *del Carpio*, late Viceroy of *Naples*, who put a great number of 'em to death; and I remember we saw lately above five hundred of them at work in the Arsenal,

who

who had surrender'd under condition that their Lives should be sav'd and they not made Galley-slaves: But notwithstanding all this, it must be own'd, that the generality of the *Neapolitans* are a very wicked Generation. We were credibly inform'd, that in two Prisons only there were no less than four thousand Malefactors at that time; this has questionless given occasion to the noted Proverb, *That* Naples *is a Paradise inhabited by Devils.*

Certain Defects of Naples.

Besides this, notwithstanding all the outward Grandeur of this City, it has several things which not a little overcloud its Lustre; for Women are as scarce to be seen here as in any part of *Italy*. The Habits and Equipages of Persons of Quality are all black, being not allow'd the wearing of Gold and Silver, and the greatest Lord no more than two Footmen; besides that, most of their Coaches are drawn by Mules; they generally appear in the *Spanish* Dress. The Vigeroy's Court is very quiet and melancholy. Their Trade is also much decay'd, their chiefest Commodities at this time being Soap, Snuff of Tobacco, Stockins, Wastcoats, &c.

The Mount Vesuvius described.

From *Naples* to the top of Mount *Vesuvius* is eight miles, of which I will endeavour to give you a more exact account than in all likelihood you have seen hitherto. The first four miles, as you pass along the Sea-coast, you go thro' many good Villages, and the Grounds are very well cultivated; yet from place to place you see divers great Stones, thrown thither by the Eruptions of that Mountain: The last of these Villages is call'd *Resina*; when turning to the left, we began to ascend, but still on Horseback for two good miles further, among loose Stones and heaps of burnt Earth; the nearer you come to the top, the more you find the Ground crack'd and cover'd with these burnt Stones, and in divers places you see the tracks of the Chanels of Sulphur, which have been forced down from the top towards the bottom. About the middle, the Ascent beginning to grow extream rough, you must alight to pass forward on foot, which is not done without a great deal of difficulty, the Ashes, or rather calcin'd Dust, not allowing any sure footing: but at last, after several small restings, we came up to the ancient Gulph or Hollowness, for of late considerable alterations have hapned in this Mountain. The circumference of this first Gulph has about a mile in diameter, to the best of our guess; the edges being worn into divers rugged Elevations, you may go down into it several ways about a hundred paces below the first Circle of the brim of the Gulph, this being the whole depth of this old Mouth; for it is to be observ'd, that this vast Abyss was by an extraordinary Eruption (not many years ago) almost quite fill'd up with a mixture of Sulphur, Alom, Nitre, Saltpetre and nitrefied Earth, which, after the violence of the Eruption was past, turning into a hard Crust, produc'd a Level in this Gulph not above a hundred paces below its exteriour Brims; but some time after, a furious Eruption having shaken and broken thro' this Crust, tumbled the hardned pieces one upon another, as we see the broken Ice of a Pond congeal'd by a sudden Frost. This unequal Superficies is interspers'd with divers burning Funnels, which emit continual Exhalations, and in some places we could feel the heat thro' our Shoes.

The Hollowness of the Gulph.

You must know then, that in the middle of this Superficies (which is almost of a circular figure) another most violent Eruption has forc'd its passage, and cast up a new Mountain, which is likewise round and about a quarter of a mile high.

A description of the lesser Mountain within the Gulph.

After we had travers'd that rough space of about three hundred paces broad, betwixt the greater and lesser Mountain, we ascended this little Mountain with as much pains as we had done the first, which we found full of smoaking Chinks, and in many places a pure Sulphur mix'd with a kind of *Sal Armoniac* of a Citron colour: In some places we saw a reddish porous substance, like the Dregs or Scum of Iron as it comes from the Smiths Forges.

The hollowness of the lesser Mountain.

The top of this lesser Mountain hath its Gulph as well as the great one, which is about a hundred paces broad, and the Throat and Inlet to this vast subterraneous Abyss, which sends forth a whole flood of Smoak, which fills up the whole Concavity; the Winds forcing it sometimes on one side and sometimes the other, we had an exact view of the height of its Entrance or Brink, which is perpendicular within, except in one place, where it is sloaping enough to descend into it, which we did after our Guide for sixty or eighty paces, when coming to the very brink of this Precipice, we rowl'd down many Stones we broke off near it; we found them sometimes to stop at the first or second falling, and sometimes to make a long continuation of rebounding with a great noise.

We could not perceive any considerable encrease of the Smoak by the tumbling in of these Stones, and if they had been much bigger, would perhaps have produc'd no other effect, there being no great reason to imagine that the Sulphureous Lake is perpendicular under the opening of this Mountain: I know some have had the curiosity to blow up part of these Rocks with Gunpowder, but this seems to me a dangerous piece of curiosity, where 'tis not safe to stay too long, by reason of the sudden Eruptions that happen now and then; witness poor *Pliny*, who was surpriz'd with such a one, tho' at a considerable distance; and the furious Eruptions in 1682 and 1685, and of the last Year, not to mention those mention'd by the ancient Authors.

The little time we had to stay about *Puzzoli* did not permit us to take so particular an account of all the Curiosities there, as we might have done had we been more at leisure; however, I don't question but to relate to you something that is new concerning this Journey.

Pausilippus.

In our way from the Suburbs of *Naples* to *Puzzoli* we saw the Hill known by the Name of *Pausilippus*. To confess the truth, it is a most delicious Hill, of an infinite charming Situation, extreamly well cultivated, full of Summer-Seats, and planted with most excellent Vines. The Ascent to this Hill was not so steep, but that it might have been made easie enough, but, inov'd by an extravagant humour, they resolv'd to pierce the Mountain, and by that means made indeed a shorter way, and of an extraordinary contrivance, but much more troublesome than the Ascent would have been.

The Grott of *Puzzoli*.

This Cave is generally call'd the *Grott of Puzzoli*, being in some places cut thro' the Rock, in others thro' the Sand; its whole length is near a mile, the height betwixt thirty and forty foot, and eighteen in breadth, affording an easie passage for two Coaches: It has no other Light than at the two Extremities, and a little hole in the middle over the Oratory, which is made in the Rock by enlarging that part somewhat beyond the rest. The Dust which is raised by the Passengers is very incommodious, to avoid which you cover your Face with a Handkerchief; and to avoid running against one another, you cry as you pass along, *To the right, or to the left?* This is an ancient Work, *Seneca* in his time complain'd of its Dust and Darkness; it is attributed to one *Cocceius*, who (according to some ancient *Annals*) is said to have imploy'd a hundred thousand Men in it, who finish'd it in fifteen Days; but 'tis not known who this *Cocceius* was, some believe him to be a Prince or Governour of that part of the Country, some only the head Workman.

The Lake of *Agnano*.

A little beyond *Pausilippus* the Lake of *Agnano* is, between two Hills, almost round, and two miles in circumference: The Water is very clear, and without any ill taste, and tho' continually boiling, produceth not the least heat, but great store of Tench and Eels.

The Baths of St. *German*.

Near the Banks of this Lake are the two celebrated Caves known by the Names of the *Baths of St. German* and the *Grotta di Cane*, or *Grott of the Dog*; the Etymology is so fabulous, that I will not pretend to enlarge upon it; thus much is certain, That after you have scarce descended three or four Steps into these *Baths*, you on a sudden feel heat and a sulphureous smell, which puts you immediately into a sweat, and is accounted very salubrious to Gouty persons, and those afflicted with some other Diseases.

The Grott of the Dog.

The *Grott of the Dog* is no more than the beginning of a Cave, at the very foot of a Hill, being no more than nine foot long, four and a half broad, and five high, and not made by Art; the bottom is pure Earth, and the sides have nothing but what is natural: I observ'd some drops falling from above, which, they told us, were produc'd by the condensation of the Exhalations or Vapours raised from below; tho' I am rather of opinion, that it distils from the Mountain, and pierces the top of the Cave, out of the bottom of which arises a subtil penetrating Exhalation, without any visible Smoak, being a sulphureous Steam which stops the Breath in a minute. We saw him who keeps the Key of this Cave, as well as of the beforesaid Baths, make the Experiment with a Dog in the following manner.

The Experiment of the Dog.

He enters as upright as he can to the middle of the Cave, when bowing and kneeling down by degrees, holding his Head as upright as he can, he sits down upon his Heels, so that with his Hands he can hold a Dog by all his four Feet down close to the Ground; the poor Creature is seiz'd in an instant with violent Convulsions, stretches himself without crying, and becomes stiff, when he that holds him throws him out of the Cave, and being put presently into the Lake, which is not above twenty paces distant, he recovers his Breath in a minute, and

and ſwims out of the Water. The ſame Experiment has been made upon Men and divers ſorts of Animals with the ſame effect; the Viceroy D. *Pedro de Toledo* made it with two of his Slaves, who died.

Two foot from the Ground, and even lower, there is nothing to be ſeen of this nature.

The Keeper ſhew'd us another Experiment with two lighted Torches, one of which he put near the Ground, and 'twas extinguiſh'd immediately without the leaſt Smoak; then lighting it by the other, he put that near the Ground as the former, which being likewiſe put out, he rekindled by the other, and ſo by turns.

The like ſulphureous Exhalations are ſaid to be in a Cave at *Zoli* in *Hungary*; and *Pliny* calls this we are ſpeaking of now *Spiraculum Gutet Lunum*. All the circumjacent Country ſeems to be fill'd underneath with Brimſtone, eſpecially about *Monte Sicco* and *Solfatara*, where we ſaw ſubterraneous holes fill'd with Sulphur and Allom, which ſend forth Flames and Smoak with the ſame ſmell and noiſe as we ſee in *Veſuvius*. They prepare abundance of *Roch-Allom* on the *Solfatara*, which is a yellow and white Mountain, dried up and conſum'd by its own Fire; they live in ſmall Hutts, and the Cauldrons boil only by the heat coming out of the Openings.

The Hill of *Solfatara*

The top of this Hill has a kind of oval Baſin about 1250 foot long, and a mile in breadth, the Exhalations of which are often ſmelt at *Naples*, and blacken their Marble and other Ornaments, nay, even corrupt the neighbouring Waters; whence it is that the *Capuchins* of St. *Januarius*, who live near it, have been forc'd to raiſe their Ciſterns from the Ground upon Pillars. Moſt of the Inhabitants in the City, and about it, will poſitively tell you, that theſe ſmoaking holes of *Solfatara* are actually the Chimneys of Hell it ſelf; *Capaccio* himſelf is of the ſame opinion, and aſſures us, that the ſaid *Capuchins* hear often moſt dreadful howlings, and are peſter'd with Hobgoblins.

Puzzoli.

From hence we deſcended towards *Puzzoli*, anciently a famous City, as a vaſt number of ſtately Ruins ſufficiently teſtifie, tho' at preſent it is but an inconſiderable place.

Near to St. *James*'s Church you ſee the Ruins of a magnificent Amphitheatre, the *Arena*'s whereof were an hundred ſeventy two foot long, and eighty eight broad, built of hewn Stone: Here they tell you St. *Januarius*, with ſix other *Chriſtians*, being thrown before the Beaſts, they ador'd inſtead of devouring 'em; but not long after theſe ſeven had their Heads cut off near *Solfatara*, in the ſame place where the Church dedicated to St. *Januarius* now ſtands. On the Altar you ſee theſe words:

Locus de collatione S. Januarii & ſociorum ejus.

Cloſe to the Amphitheatre remain ſtill vaſt Ruins, but buried almoſt under-ground, look'd upon by ſome as the Remainders of a Labyrinth, tho' I am rather inclin'd to believe it to have been a Fiſhpond like the *Piſcina Mirabilis*. The Cathedral is built not only upon the Ruins of the Temple of *Jupiter*, but alſo of part of its Materials. In the Frontiſpiece you ſee theſe words, *Colſurnius Luc. Fil.* which ſhew evidently by whom it was built.

Antiquities of *Puzzoli.*

Betwixt the City and the Amphitheatre are to be ſeen alſo the Ruins of the Temple of *Diana*: In tempeſtuous weather the Sea throws aſhore near the *Dominicans* of *Jeſu Marie*, many new marks of the ancient magnificence of *Puzzoli*, as *Cornelians*, *Agates*, *Jaſpers*, *Amethiſts*, as likewiſe divers other ſorts of Stones, upon which are found engrav'd all ſorts of Figures, as *Cocks*, *Eagles*, *Swans*, *Hares*, *Serpents*, *Greſhoppers*, *Ants*, *Vine-branches*, *Grapes*, *Ears of Corn*, *Heads of Men*, and *Motto's* of Greek and Latin. The Sand of *Puzzoli*, uſed in their Building, is much commended both by *Vitruvius* and *Pliny*; and in effect, if mix'd with a certain ſort of Mortar, becomes as hard as Marble, even in the Sea it ſelf.

As we paſſed along in our Boat to go to the Lake of *Lucrin*, two miles diſtant from *Puzzoli*, we had the opportunity of taking a full view of the famous Arches generally ſuppoſed to be the Remnants of a Bridge built by *Caligula* from *Baja* to *Puzzoli*, whence to this day they

Caligula's Bridge.

are known by the name of *Caligula's Bridge* among the Inhabitants; but if we will attend the words of *Suetonius*, nothing is more evident than that this pretended Bridge of *Caligula* was not of Stones or Brick, but of Boats; theſe are his words, * *Bajarum medium intervallum Puteolanas moles trium millium & ſexcentorum fere paſſuum ponte conjunxit, contractis, undiq; onerariis navibus, & ordine duplici ad anchoras collatis, ſuperjectaque aggere terreno ac directo in Viæ Appiæ formam*, &c. The words *Puteolanas Moles* plainly diſcover what theſe Arches we now ſee were, *viz.* belonging to a Mole that defended the Harbour againſt the Violence of the tempeſtuous Waves: Neither is it a ſufficient Objection to ſay, that we don't build our modern Moles with Arches, ſince things of the ſame nature may be done variouſly at ſo great a diſtance of time; beſides that, ſome will maintain, that a Mole with Arches might be more durable than one without, and be nevertheleſs ſufficient to break the Waves, and to defend the Harbour.

* In Vit. Cal. Sect. 19.

The Lake of *Lucrin*, ſo famous in ancient times, is now no more than a little Pond of about a hundred paces broad, and a quarter of a mile long, being for the moſt part fill'd up with the *New Mountain*; of which more anon. It is now about ſixty or eighty leagues from the Sea, whereas anciently it was joyn'd with it; for if we may credit *Pliny*, they were forc'd to make uſe of many Engines to ſeparate 'em. The Water of this Lake is always ſalt; it was highly celebrated among the Ancients for its Oyſters: *Nuptiæ videbant Oſtreas Lucrinas*, ſaith *Varro*; and *Concha Lucrini delicacior ſtagni*, Martial. I ſuppoſe you are not ignorant of the Story related by *Pliny* and ſeveral other Authors concerning a Dolphin, who being frequently fed with Bread by a Boy that went every day to School from *Baja* to *Puzzoli*, became at laſt ſo familiar with the ſaid Boy, that he uſed to carry him often on his Back over the little Bay; *Appion* tells us, he was an Eye-witneſs of it, beſides many more that flock'd from all parts to *Puzzoli* to ſee it; and *Solin* affirms, that at laſt it was ſo common, that it was ſcarce regarded any more as an extraordinary thing.

Lacus Lucrinus.

Anecdote of a Dolphin.

I remember that in my Travels I ſaw a Sea-Calf, ſo very tame, that it would do as many Tricks as a well-taught Spaniel.

In the Year 1538, in the Night betwixt the 19th and 20th of *September*, the Earth produc'd on a ſudden a certain Mountain never ſeen before, which for that reaſon has ever ſince retain'd the Name of *Monte Nuovo*, or the *New Mountain*. Thoſe who have meaſur'd it make its height perpendicularly four hundred Toiſes, and its circumference three large miles. The Gulph or Opening of fifty paces diameter on the top of this *New Mountain* ſufficiently proves its production to have been cauſed by an Irruption, tho' it never hath ſent forth either Fire or Smoak ſince its firſt Irruption, which was attended with a moſt dreadful Earthquake, that put all the neighbouring Country under a great conſternation, the Sea recoiling, many Churches and Houſes being either burnt or ſwallow'd up, a vaſt number of Men and Beaſts periſhing by this prodigious Birth of the *New Mountain*.

The New Mountain.

Your Mountain of *Markle-Hill*, in the County of *Hereford-ſhire*, was uſher'd into the World after a much eaſier and more pleaſant manner, becauſe it mov'd with an eaſie pace for *three Days* and *Nights*, with *Houſes* and *Trees*, for about four hundred paces.

On the other ſide of the *Lucrin* Lake you ſee another famous Hill call'd *Monte di Chriſto*, the Story whereof runneth thus; A moſt violent Earthquake having made an Opening in this Hill which reach'd from the *Superficies* to the very *Limbus Patrum*, *Jeſus Chriſt* entred thro' this Cavern, where being joyfully receiv'd by the Souls that were deſtin'd to Heavenly Felicity, he led 'em thro' this Paſſage, up to the top of the Mountain, from whence they were lifted up to Heaven.

The Mount of Chriſt.

The Lake of *Averno* is not above a mile from the Lake of *Lucrin*, being much about the ſame bulk as the Lake *Agnano*; it is beyond queſtion, that what *Virgil*, *Lucrece*, *Pliny*, and others ſay of its deadly Vapours, is not ſo at preſent, the Birds now flying over it without the leaſt detriment, which is the reaſon that *Pliny* is reckon'd by ſome modern Authors in a manifeſt Falſhood; but if the matter be truly weigh'd, it will ſufficiently appear that *Pliny* only quotes *Varro* in what he ſays of this Lake, but ſpeaks not as an Eye-witneſs; for, diſcourſing of the *Lakes* which have extraordinary Qualities, he cites *Cliſius* a Greek Hiſtorian, who mentions a Lake in the *Indies* on which nothing ſwims, and afterward alledges the Teſtimony of *Varro* about the *Averno*. Add to this, that *Strabo* attributes the cauſe of this Stench in the *Averno* to the thickneſs and number of the Trees that ſurrounded it on all ſides, which, he ſays, being remov'd by *Auguſtus*, the Air became pure and ſweet: And *Boccace*, who liv'd not above three hundred years ſince, aſſures us, that ſome ſubterraneous Chanel of Sulphur being mix'd with the Waters of the *Averno*, they became ſtinking, and kill'd many of the Fiſh, which he ſaw with his own Eyes: Two manifeſt Inſtances, that this Lake hath been at different times in a very different condition.

The Lake *Averno*.

Virgil derives the word *Avernus* from Ἄορνος, notwithſtanding which this Name ſeemeth to have been the ancient Appellation of ſulphureous *Gulphs* in general, which makes *Lucretius* call theſe kind of Pools *Averna Loca*.

The

The Ruins to be seen to this day about the *Averno* plainly demonstrate, that the adjacent *Hills* were well Peopled after the before-mention'd Trees were cut down. The Antiquaries don't agree, whether the Ruins next to the Lake belong'd to a Temple of *Mercury* or of *Neptune*, but certain it is, it could not be the Temple of *Apollo*.

As we approach'd the *Averno*, I could plainly perceive something of a nauseous Smell, but whether it proceeded from the Lake or not, I will not pretend to determine; for the Lake abounds in Fish, its Waters are fresh and pretty clear, only inclining somewhat to a dark blue; I tasted 'em in divers places, and found 'em to have a little sharp twang of some Mineral.

The Grott of the *Sibyl*. Not far hence is the subterraneous Passage and Cave commonly known by the Name of the *Sibyl's Grott*, the chief Entrance whereof is said to have been near *Cuma*, four miles from *Averno*, but it is all fill'd up on that side. We went into it thro' a narrow Passage, every one with a lighted Torch in his Hand, the Passage being on both sides overgrown with Briars and Thistles. This subterraneous Passage is dug under Hillocks, without any Ornaments, except in that place I am going to describe to you: It is about ten foot broad and twelve high. After you have gone two hundred and fifty paces in a streight line, you meet with a square Grott on the right, and seventy or eighty paces further a little Cell of fifteen foot long, and eight or nine broad. You may perceive by divers Remainders that the Roof was formerly painted and the Walls adorn'd with *Mosaick* Work.

The vulgar Error concerning this Grott. After I had read the learned Treatise of Mr. *Blondel* concerning these pretended *Sibyls* and their *Writings*, I was sufficient Proof against all the vulgar Opinions of this Grott; notwithstanding what divers ancient Authors have told us concerning the *Sibylla Cumæa* and her Den, which by the *Italians* has been applied to this subterraneous Passage, I am not ignorant of the Description of *Virgil*,

Quo lati ducunt aditus centum, ostia centum
Unde ruunt totidem voces ——

but at the same time am convinc'd, that *Virgil* spoke of it only as a Fabulous Tradition; for what else will you say to the *centum aditus* and *centum ostia*, which are not to be found here or any where else? In my opinion this might be such another Passage as the Grott of *Pausilippus*, and the painted Cell appropriated to some Deity. *Strabo* relates, upon the Credit of *Ephorus* an ancient Historian of *Cumæ*, that the *Cimmerians* of *Italy* (to distinguish 'em from those inhabiting near the *Bosphorus*) did inhabit in subterraneous Dens betwixt *Bajæ* and the Lake *Averno*, from whence they sallied out in the night-time, to perpetrate their Murthers. The digging of this Cave seems more properly to belong to them, were it not that the *Mosaick* Work in the Cell hath as little resemblance to their way of living, as to the Habitation of a pretended Mad-woman, such as the *Sibyl* is supposed to have been.

Bajæ. From this Cave we took a turn to *Bajæ*, the most pleasant and magnificent place in the World in ancient times; *Horace*, *Martial*, *Josephus*, *Seneca*, *Albinus* and others have left us such a Character of it, as puts this Assertion beyond all question, were not the Ruins of many *Temples*, *Baths* and *Palaces*, which are to be seen round the Bay, and even in the Sea it self, undeniable Proofs of its former Grandeur. The Bay of *Bajæ* is infinitely pleasant, the Air exceeding sweet, and the adjoyning Hills with their easie Ascents charming beyond what can be express'd or imagin'd; but, alas, that vast number of Summer-seats which adorn'd the neighbourhood of this City, is now nothing but a vast heap of Ruins, and a dismal Solitude.

Agrippina's Tomb. Betwixt *Bajæ* and *Miseno* is the Precinct call'd *Bauli*, where you see the Tomb of *Agrippina*, and near it the Remnants of the Fishpond of *Q. Ort. Hortensius*, Collegue of *Q. Cecil. Metellus*.

Mercato di Sabato. Not far from this are very great Ruins commonly call'd *Mercato di Sabbato*, which some pretend to be the Remainders of a *Circus*. At the very Sea-side are to be seen considerable Ruins of the Country-house of the said *Hortensius*; and near his Fishpond, the Remainders of a Temple said to have been dedicated to *Diana*. Not many years since, a most noble Statue of *Venus*, twice as big as the life, was dug up in this Neighbourhood, holding a Globe in her right hand, and three Oranges in the left: *Capaccio*, who hath given an exact description of it, says, that this Statue was found in the same place where anciently stood the Temple of *Venus Genitrix*. Antiquities of *Baja*.

From *Bajæ* it is not above a good mile to that delightful Plain call'd the *Elysian Fields*, situate betwixt the Sea and that stinking Marsh *Acheron*, call'd by *Virgil*, *Tenebrosa Palus*, now *Lago della Coluccia*. The *Elysian Fields*.

I might farther speak of the Academy of *Cicero*, now turn'd into an Oxen Stall, of the Barhs of *Tritoni*, the Tomb of *Agrippina* Mother of *Nero*, of the *Piscina Mirabilis* or Fishpond of *Agrippa*, and the other Fishpond call'd *Cento Camerelle*, besides a great many other remarkable Remnants of Antiquity, but that I had not sufficient leisure to make so exact an observation of them, as was sufficient to give you a full description of 'em.

From *Bajæ* we took Boat to *Puzzoli* again, and thence went on Horseback to *Naples*. But before we depart, I must say a word or two of the Tomb of *Virgil*.

At the entrance of the Grott of *Pausilippus*, which leads to *Puzzoli*, stands an ancient Monument shap'd like a Pyramid, but above half destroy'd: Some modern Historians assure us, that in their time there were nine small Columns of Marble in the little Chamber of this *Mausoleum*, which supported an Urn of the same substance, with this Distich upon it: *Virgil's* Tomb. See Fig. IX.

Mantua me genuit, Calabri rapuere, tenet nunc
Parthenope; cecini, pascua, rura, Duces.

but now there are neither Columns nor Urn to be seen here. The *Mausoleum* is built of very large square Stone, notwithstanding which it is almost cover'd with Bushes and Shrubs, that have taken root betwixt the Stones; among the rest there grows a Lawrel on the top of it, which, if you will believe the Inhabitants, has been often cropp'd and pluck'd up, but always grows again.

Virgil is look'd upon by many of the Inhabitants of this Country as a great Sorcerer, whence it is that they have attributed to him the making of the Grott of *Pausilippus*, as also of the brazen Horse, the Head whereof, as I told you before, is still preserv'd at D. *Diomedes Caraffa*. Unto this Horse they attributed, for the same reason, a secret Virtue of curing all sorts of Diseases in Horses, and of preserving them from sinister Accidents, and for a considerable time used to bring their Horses from the remotest parts of the Kingdom of *Naples*, to lead 'em in procession round this pretended Horse of *Virgil*; till at last the said Horse was by the order of a certain Archbishop of that Kingdom remov'd from thence, and a great Bell cast of its Body, which remains in the Cathedral to this day.

The House of *Sannazarius*, which stood on the Sea-side, at the foot of the Hill of *Pausilippus*, being destroy'd by the War, a Church was built in the same place, dedicated to the most *holy Birth of the Mother of God*, where his Tomb is now to be seen in one of the Chapels. The Tomb is of white Marble, done by the excellent Hand of St. *Croce*; on it you see the Bust of *Sannazarius* crown'd with Lawrel, and on each side the Statues of *Apollo* and *Minerva*, which they commonly call *David* and *Judith*: I suppose you are not ignorant that *James Sannazarius* chang'd his Name into that of *Actius Sincerus*. I conclude, in hopes that you will believe me to be, The Tomb of *Sannazarius*.

Naples, *Mar.* 17. 1688.

Sir,

Yours, &c.

A NEW VOYAGE TO ITALY,

WITH

A Description of its chief Cities, Churches, Tombs, Libraries, Palaces, Statues and Antiquities.

AS ALSO

Certain Instructions to such as intend to Travel into that Country.

By *MAXIMILIAN MISSON*, Gent.

VOL. II.

LETTER XXIII.

SIR,

YOUR Letter I receiv'd with a great deal of Pleasure, in return whereof I will endeavour to satisfie your Curiosity, in resolving your Questions concerning *Venice*, in the same order you have propos'd 'em; after which I will proceed to give you an account of *Rome*.

1. Whatever your Friend may say on pretence of his being a Citizen of *Venice*, of the number of Inhabitants in that City, which he makes amount to 250000 Souls, I can't allow him a competent Judge; tho' on the other hand I must tell you, that you carry the matter too far, when you declare, that 'tis impossible to know the exact number of Inhabitants of great Cities, Sir *William Petty* having propos'd to us a rational method of making such a Computation, without any remarkable Errour: I ought however not to pass by in silence, that in my Computation I included the Inhabitants of the Isle of *La Giodeca*, but not the Isle of *Murana*.

2. The two Columns of *Granite* in the Place of the *Broglio*, some say, were brought from *Egypt*, others from *Constantinople*, (perhaps they were brought from *Egypt* to *Constantinople*). Upon one of these Columns stands the Arms of *Venice*, *viz.* the *wing'd Lion* of S. *Mark* holding an open Book, with the Inscription of *Pax tibi Marce*. On the other you see the Statue of St. *Theodore*. The like Columns the *Venetians* erect in all the great Cities under their Jurisdiction.

The same *Venetian* did also misinform you about the three great Banners set on Festival Days upon the Brazen Pedestals opposite to St. *Mark*'s Church, *viz.* That they represent the *Venetian* State, and the two Kingdoms of *Cyprus* and *Candia*, the Republick's Arms being to be seen without the least alteration in all the three Banners. Another Vulgar Errour is, That the *Venetian Signiory* has no Coat of Arms, tho' the *Lion* is to be seen in all those places where the Arms of a State are generally to be seen. The Lion of St. *Mark* takes his Origin from the Vision of *Ezekiel*, and not from the imaginary transformation of St. *Mark* into a Lion, to check the incestuous Love of his Sister. Hence it is that the *Venetian* Ambassadour being ask'd what Country it was that produced those *wing'd Lions*, replied, The same that brought forth the double-headed Eagles; alluding at the Arms of the Empire.

3. What I told you concerning the Air of *Venice* must be taken with some grains of allowance, tho' the Air of *Venice* is none of the worst: In the *Lagunes* it is so bad, that the Inhabitants of the lesser Isles commonly leave their Habitations in the hot season.

4. That the Doge of *Venice* continues for Life, whereas the Doge of *Genoa* does only for two Years, is sufficiently known. The Revenues of the Doge of *Venice*, so far as I was able to learn, does amount to about 3000 *l.* Sterling *per annum*; but the Frugality wherewith the *Venetians* manage their Government has taught them not to allow their Spouses any share in those imaginary Honours they pay to their Husbands.

5. Concerning the Libertinism in the Monasteries of *Venice*, as I will not profess my self to be acquainted with it in particular, so I can only tell you, that it is generally acknowledg'd here, that the Nuns are often visited by Persons in Masquerade at the Grates; that they go to *Plays* and other places in Disguise; that they have made Tables on purpose for Entertainments, one half within, and the other half without the Grates; nay, that they are often engag'd in Intrigues; and that the Friers are guilty of such Debaucheries as can scarce be parallel'd or imagin'd.

6. What your Friend has been pleas'd to alledge against the Soveraignty of the *Doges*, is not worth taking notice of, the same being sufficiently known to all that have had any insight into the *Venetian* State.

7. The

The Revenue of Venice.

7. The whole Revenue of this Commonwealth, according to the best computation, amounts yearly to six millions of Crowns, including the sale of Offices and Nobility, Confiscations, &c.

8. They permit some *Jews* to live at *Venice*, who are very rich, especially the *Portuguese*; their Quarter is call'd *Il Ghetto*, or the *Jewry*; their Hats are cover'd with Scarlet, lined and edg'd with black; the poorer sort are contented with wax'd Linen.

The Great Council est ablish'd 1289.

9. The whole number of their Nobility arriv'd to a proper age of sitting in the *Great Council*, amounts to about thirteen hundred; but one half of them being generally abroad in Civil or Military Employments, this Assembly scarce ever exceeds six or seven hundred; yet these seem too many for the management of those matters that come before them, which hath given birth to this Proverb, *Troppo Teste, troppo Feste, troppo Tempeste*; *Too many Heads, too many Festivals, and too many Tempests*: And as the first is meant of the Great Council of *Venice*, so their *Festivals* are so frequent, that they exceed those observ'd in *France* by one third part, and are frequently pester'd with *Storms* in the Summer.

10. The *Golden Book* mention'd contains a Catalogue of all the Noblemen; and as all the Brothers have an equal share in the Nobility, so their Names are registred in this Book as soon as they are born. Upon this occasion I can't forbear to add something in reference of what has been told you against the account I gave you of the haughtiness of the *Venetian* Nobles: There is scarce any body that is acquainted at *Venice* but will easily agree with me, that the *Venetian* Nobles are not only extreamly conceited of their Nobility, but also of very difficult access to Strangers of great Note; tho' the last may be attributed either to a Custom, or rather the Politicks of their Government: And tho' they are not very sparing of Salutations when they are walking at the *Broglio*, yet do they always appear very reserv'd and proud in the company of the Citizens; nay, they give and receive but few Visits among themselves. It must however be confess'd, that in private Conversation, especially if their Interest be concern'd, they will be as obliging as most Men, and will sometimes enter into a familiar acquaintance with Strangers, provided both sides be not of more than ordinary Quality.

The Venetian Nobility.

What I told you concerning the great Sleeves of the Noblemen that they serve instead of a Basket at certain times, was not a bare Jest; for I remember once I saw a good Salad, and at another time an excellent Cods-tail, thus carried out of the Market.

There are, besides this, about two or three hundred *Barnabotes*, so call'd from a cheap place in the City, where they live, (a sort of poor Gentlemen, that serve for a Foil to the richer sort) who both beg about the Streets, and are glad to earn a Penny in carrying home Provisions for other People. In the Summer these Noblemen have their Vests without Furrs, but they turning up on the Edges, remain always furr'd.

11. It was not Negligence that made me give you so imperfect an account of the curious Paintings in *Venice*, but rather the Defect of my Memory, which I will endeavour to supply with some additional Observations.

Formerly there were to be seen in the *Great Council-Chamber* divers rare Pictures done by *Gentile* and *John Bellini*, two Brothers, the best Artists of their Age; but these being lost in a Fire, 1577, and representing the History of the Wars betwixt *Alexander* III. and *Frederick Barbaressa*, they were copied five years after by *Frederick Zucchero*. The Pictures in *Fresco* in St. *Stephen's* Cloyster, done by the excellent Hand of *Pordenonne*, (who both in his Colours and Designs emulated *Titian*) are most excellent Pieces; as are likewise his St. *Sebastian*, St. *Roch*, and St. *John de Rialto*.

The St. *Peter Martyr* of *Titian* would be the finest Picture that is to be seen, had it not lost part of its Lustre, the Beauty and Richness of its Colours, as well as the judicious Disposition of the Lights, together with the Roundness of the Figures, being much defaced.

Rare Pictures of Venice.

Many other rare Pieces of this great Master are to be seen in divers Churches, in the Palace of St. *Mark*, in the Library, Convents and Fraternities. In the Library are some Pieces of *Schiavani*, so excellently well done, that they have been taken for *Titian's*. *Horace Vercelli* came so near to *Schiavoni*, (his Father) that the Picture in the *Great Council-Chamber*, representing the Battel fought betwixt the *Romans* and *Frederick*, made by the Son, is generally ascrib'd to the Father.

The Picture of the Marriage at *Cana*, containing an hundred twenty five Figures, and thirty four foot broad, in the Refectory of the *Benedictins*, in the Isle of S. *George*, is the Masterpiece of *Paul Veronese*, who imitated *Titian* in his beautiful disposition of Figures, judicious choice of Colours, his great Genius, and a most charming Variety. The Feast of *Simon* the Leper, in St. *Sebastian's* Church, is a Piece of the same hand; as also three others in the Arch of St. *Mark's* Library, representing *Geometry*, *Arithmetick* and *Glory* acquir'd by Learning. *Tintoret's* Paradise, in the *Great Council-Chamber*, is a most exquisite Piece; it being the Character of this great Artist, That he joyn'd the most excellent Designs of *Michael Angelo* with the charming Colours of *Titian*; besides that, he had the quickest hand of any Artist. I was shewn a rare Picture of *Tintoret*, which he finish'd whilst *Paul Veronese*, *Salviati*, and *Frederick Zucchero*, his Competitors in the same Work, were imploy'd in finishing the rough Draught. Divers other Pieces of the same Hand are to be seen in the School of St. *Roch*, St. *Maria del Orto*, St. *Mark's* School, and other places. Some of *Bassara's* Pieces are to be seen at St. *Maria Major*; and *Schiavani's* Pictures in the Library are Emblems of Valour, Soveraignty and Sanctity.

12. I told you, if I remember right, that their *Gondola's* or *Boats* have black Covers; I will add, That no body (except the Doge) may be attended by Servants in Liveries; tho' the Ladies of Noblemen, during the first and second Year of their Marriage, are allow'd to give what colours they like best to their *Gondeliers* or Boatmen, and the use of Jewels; but this time being once expir'd, this Courtesie ceases, they being not permitted to appear in Jewels unless on some high Festivals, and during the Carnival; whence it is that the rich Courtesans chuse rather to pay the Fine, than be debarr'd of this Ornament.

The Ladies of Venice.

What I have heard disputed by some, That the *Venetian Ladies* enjoy a greater share of Liberty than those of *England* or *France*, seems to me to be the effect of a fond conceit of Contradiction; for, supposing the *Ladies* of *Venice* have the Liberty in *Carnival* time to go to *Plays*, *Opera's*, *Fairs* or *Gaming-houses* in disguise, what Advantages can they reap from the Diversion of so short a time, especially considering that all this while they are constantly attended by their *Husband's Spies*, who can't but put them in mind of the Slavery they are to undergo for ten or eleven Months in the Year? What comparison is there betwixt this Confinement and the entire Liberty the *English* and *French Ladies* enjoy in their *Walks*, *Visits*, *Meetings* and *Divertisements*, without the least Restraint?

13. However, the young Noblemen are permitted to be as splendid in their *Gold* and *Silver Laces*, *Stuffs*, *Plumes* and *Embroideries* as they think fit: They put on the Gown at fifteen Years of age, tho' they have no Vote in the *Great Council* till they are five and twenty. They have also the liberty of wearing what Habits they like best on the Continent, the Jurisdiction of the Tribunal that regulateth Habits not extending beyond the *Laguna's*.

14. When we were viewing the Treasury, no mention was made by our Guides of St. *Mark's* Thumb, and that he was dismember'd to prevent his being chosen a Priest; but they were not forgetful to tell us the Tradition of the loss of his Ring, and how it was recover'd, the Story whereof runs thus:

An odd Story of St. Mark's Ring.

In the Year 1339. three Men came to a *Gondolier* in very tempestuous weather, and having constrain'd him to carry 'em two miles to the *Lido*, they found there a whole Shipful of Devils, that were busied in raising a Tempest by their Hellish Enchantments; but these three Men had no sooner given them a severe Reprimand, but the Tempest ceased. The first of these three Persons made the Boatman carry him back to the Church of St. *Nicholas*, the second to that of St. *George*, and the third to that of St. *Mark*; but the last, instead of paying the Boatman, gave him a Ring, ordering him to carry it to the Senate, and told him at the same time, that he who went ashore first was St. *Nicholas* himself, the second St. *George*, and that he was St. *Mark*. The Boatman, astonish'd at his words, related the whole matter to all the Senate, who bestow'd a considerable Reward upon him.

15. They suffer *Protestants* to be buried in their Churches; the reason is, because they take no notice of them here as *Protestants*, all such as are neither *Jews*, *Greeks* nor *Armenians* being reputed *Roman Catholicks*.

16. Your Admirer of the Palaces of *Venice* hath mistaken my aim, because I did not deny that there were some stately Palaces there, and made particular mention of divers of 'em; but notwithstanding all this, what I said of the *Italian* Palaces in general, is true beyond contradiction: And because you own that he hath no Skill in Architecture, you will do very well not to relie too

far upon his Judgment in this point, no more than what you have been inform'd concerning the Machines in the *Venetian Operas*, and that *Venice* is for neatneſs to be compar'd to *Holland*.

Paſſage by Water to all the Houſes of *Venice*.

17. I told you, that there is a paſſage by Water to all the Houſes in *Venice*; I am well ſatisfied you did not take this part abſolutely according to the literal ſenſe, becauſe there may be perhaps about five or ſix in a thouſand that can't be approach'd but by Land, and in this I ſpeak the outſide; for what your young Traveller has aſſur'd you, that there was no Canal within five hundred paces of the Houſe where he lodg'd, and that there are twenty ſuch places in the City, is a Contradiction in it ſelf, for at this rate how many ſpaces of a mile in diameter muſt there be in *Venice*? And whether this is poſſible, I leave to your own determination, if you will carefully examine the Platform of this City, which I ſend you, and is founded upon unqueſtionable Evidence.

Of *Rome*.

We will now come to *Rome*, which being ſufficiently deſcrib'd by divers perſons of note, who had all poſſible Opportunities of giving the beſt account in the World of it, I will pretend to no more at this time, than to give you a general Idea of this great and famous City, together with what Obſervations I was able to make upon ſuch matters as were then altogether new, or but little known, and have relation to the anſwering of your Queſtions.

I need not tell you, that before the Reign of *Servius Tullius* it comprehended no more than ſeven Hills, whence it got the Name of *Septizonium* or *Seven Hills*; but being much enlarg'd ſince, contains no leſs than twelve, *viz. Monte Capitolino, Palatino, Aventino, Celio, Eſquilino, Viminale, Quirinale* or *Monte Cavallo, Janiculo, Pincio, Vaticano, Citorio*, and *Giordano*; however, you muſt not imagine 'em to be huge Mountains, but only little Hills, the aſcent whereof is ſcarce diſcernable.

Vopiſcus (who flouriſh'd under *Dioclesian*) would make us believe that the Walls of *Rome*, built by *Aurelian*, were no leſs than fifty miles in compaſs; but there muſt be an enormous Errour in this, ſeeing that the preſent Walls of *Rome* are very near the ſame which *Aurelian* had erected, and yet are not above thirteen miles in circumference, this being the largeſt compaſs *Rome* ever had, tho' its Suburbs perhaps extended far beyond them on all ſides.

But of what is enclos'd within the Walls there is not above one third part inhabited at preſent, the reſt (*viz.* to the South and Eaſt) being nothing but *Gardens* and *Ruins*. Moſt of the Houſes are of Brick, and plaiſter'd over on the outſide; the Roofs are ridg'd, but the Angle on the top is very obtuſe; and ſome are faſhion'd, as we call it in *France*, *à la Manſarde*. Neither the Houſes nor Streets are very beautiful, and the Pavements both narrow and not very neat.

Which way ſoever you approach *Rome*, you may diſcover St. *Peter*'s Cathedral above all the other Spires and the tops of the higheſt Edifices.

See *Loſſi*.

The courſe of the *Tyber* (which makes a little Iſland here) is from North to South: That part on the right ſide (call'd *Traſtavere*) is not above the ſixth part of the other.

The firſt Proſpect of this great City does not ſurprize the Traveller with its Beauties, but the longer he ſtays in it, the more frequent opportunities he will meet with of obſerving ſomething worth his attention, in ruminating upon the remnants of the Spoils of the Univerſe, which made once the *Porphyries, Granites*, and the pureſt *Oriental Marble* to be more common at *Rome* than the *Bricks* or *Stones* out of the neighbouring Quarries; the *Coloſſes, Temples, Palaces, Amphitheatres, Arches, Baths, Cirques, Columns, Fountains, Aqueducts, Obelisks, Mauſoleums*, and other magnificent Structures, being for the moſt part of theſe precious Materials, which, tho' buried now in Ruins, yet retain ſome Remnants of their ancient Splendour.

The Country about *Rome*, for ten or twelve miles, is flat, but uneven, ill Peopled, unhealthy, and barren in many places. As to the number of the Inhabitants, they are generally computed to be two hundred thouſand Souls, but I will not be anſwerable for this Computation, theſe things being founded upon uncertain Conjectures, ſo that even the Paſſages in the ancient *Roman Authors* are very hard to be reconcil'd in this point, ſome telling us three millions a thouſand and thirty ſeven, under the Reign of *Auguſtus*, others of four or five millions, whereas *Suetonius* computes no more than one million and ſix hundred thouſand under *Tiberius*, the immediate Succeſſor of *Auguſtus*; and I remember that *Werner Rolwink*, in his *Faſciculus Temporum*, does not ſtick to make them amount to twenty ſeven millions and eighty thouſand. I ſuppoſe he included all ſuch as had the privilege of *Roman Citizens* in his account.

The Ceremony of endowing 300 Maidens.

Two days after our return from *Naples*, we hapned to ſee the Ceremony of making either Wives or Nuns of three hundred and fifty Maidens, the Fund whereof was raiſed by a Club of ſixty charitable Gentlemen. This Ceremony is perform'd every Year on the Feſtival of the *Annunciation*, when the Pope and the Sacred College meeting at the *Minerva*, the Pope (or in his abſence ſome Cardinal) ſays High Maſs, and all the Girls confeſs, and receive the Sacrament, being cloath'd in white Serge, with Veils over their Heads, having only one opening for their ſight; they enter thus two and two into the Choir, where proſtrating themſelves at the Pope's or Cardinal's Feet who officiates, near whom ſtands an Officer with a Baſin full of little white Bags, each of which contains either a Bill of fifty Crowns, for ſuch Maidens as chuſe Marriage, or a Bill of a hundred Crowns for thoſe that are willing to embrace a Religious Life. Each Maiden having declar'd her Choice, receives her Bag hanging on a little String, with a Kiſs, and ſo goes off to make room for another. Thoſe that have choſen a Religious Life are crown'd with Garlands of Flowers, and have the firſt place aſſign'd them in the Proceſſion. At that time there were no more than thirty two of theſe among the three hundred and fifty.

Having taken a full view of the *Minerva*, (where we ſaw the famous Statue of Chriſt embracing the Croſs, the Work of *Michael Angelo*) we went to the beautiful *Borgheſe* Palace, the Portico of which is ſupported by ninety ſix Antique Pillars of *Egyptian Granite*. In the lower Rooms alone are no leſs than ſeventeen hundred Original Pictures, by the beſt Maſters of *Europe*, among which that of *Venus* blindfolding *Cupid*, done by *Titian*, excels the reſt. The Picture of *Paul* V. (who was of this Family) in moſt exquiſite *Moſaick* Work, is reputed to contain above a million of Pieces, which however I can't find out by my calculation. We alſo ſaw here a Crucifix of the ſame bigneſs with that ſhewn us by the *Carthuſians* at *Naples*, and they aſſur'd us that this is that celebrated Original of *Michael Angelo*.

The Rotunda or Pantheon.

The Name of *Rotunda* was given to the *Pantheon* by the common People, by reaſon of its circular figure. *Boniface* IV. dedicated it to the *Virgin* and all the *Martyrs*, whence he call'd it S. *Maria ad Martyres*: And another Pope would needs comprize all the *Saints* with the *Martyrs*. The origin of its ancient Name is likewiſe ſomewhat doubtful, ſome deriving the Etymology of the *Pantheon* and its Convexity to the reſemblance of the Heavens; others alledging, that it was dedicated to *Jupiter* and *Cybele* the Mother of the Gods, others, to *Jupiter* and *all the Gods*. This laſt Opinion ſeems to be founded upon the many Niches which are ſeen in the inſide, and were (queſtionleſs) full of Idols: But if we may believe *Varro*, who tells us of no leſs than thirty thouſand Gods worſhip'd at *Rome*; and the Philoſopher *Bruxillus*, who in his Speech to the Senate makes 'em amount to no leſs than two hundred and eighty thouſand: There are not near Niches enough to accommodate all theſe Deities.

See *Loſſi*.

The two Lyons under the Portico of the *Pantheon* ſtood formerly on the Front of the Temple of *Iſis*.

This Temple, tho' deſpoil'd of its beſt Ornament, yet is one of the faireſt and moſt entire Pieces of Antiquity in *Italy*. The Columns of the Portico of this Church are all of one piece of *Granite*, of the *Corinthian* Order; they are not equally big, but, according to the moſt exact meaſure I could take, they were fifteen inches in compaſs, ſome few inches leſs or more: That piece of *Granite* in which the opening of the great Gate is cut, is forty foot high, and near twenty broad.

La Guilliniere (who is follow'd by *Meurſius*) would needs perſwade us, that the *Pantheon* of *Athens* ſurpaſſes that of *Rome* in magnificence, having miſtaken the Temple of *Minerva* for the *Pantheon*, into which Errour they have been miſguided by the erroneous account of *Theodoſius Zygomala*, in his Letter to *Martin Cruſius*; or perhaps by the miſtaken Name of *Parthenion*, which *Pauſanias* gives it.

It being not my preſent purpoſe to give you a particular Deſcription of Churches, I will only communicate to you my Obſervations upon 'em.

St. Peter's Church.

That of St. *Peter* has the Reputation of the moſt magnificent and largeſt Church in the Univerſe; he that is willing to give a true Judgment of it, muſt not be ſparing of his pains in viewing it frequently, as well on the top into the very Ball, as the Church under ground. You no ſooner enter this great Structure, but your Eyes are ſurpriz'd with the incomparable proportions of the niceſt pieces of Architecture, and a moſt exact and unparallel'd Order, rather to be admir'd than deſcrib'd: And ſince you are pleas'd to rely upon my Fidelity and Judgment,

I will

nd.
Ry-

to The Ceremony of endowing 18. Maidens.
of
ras
his
he
ge
ne
ſs,
r,
or
r,
's
h
na
e
t
n
n
n
e
t
e
e

he Rotunda
Pantheon.

Laſſel.

two Ly-
under the
ico of
Pantheon
l former-
the
of the
ple of

rer's
h.

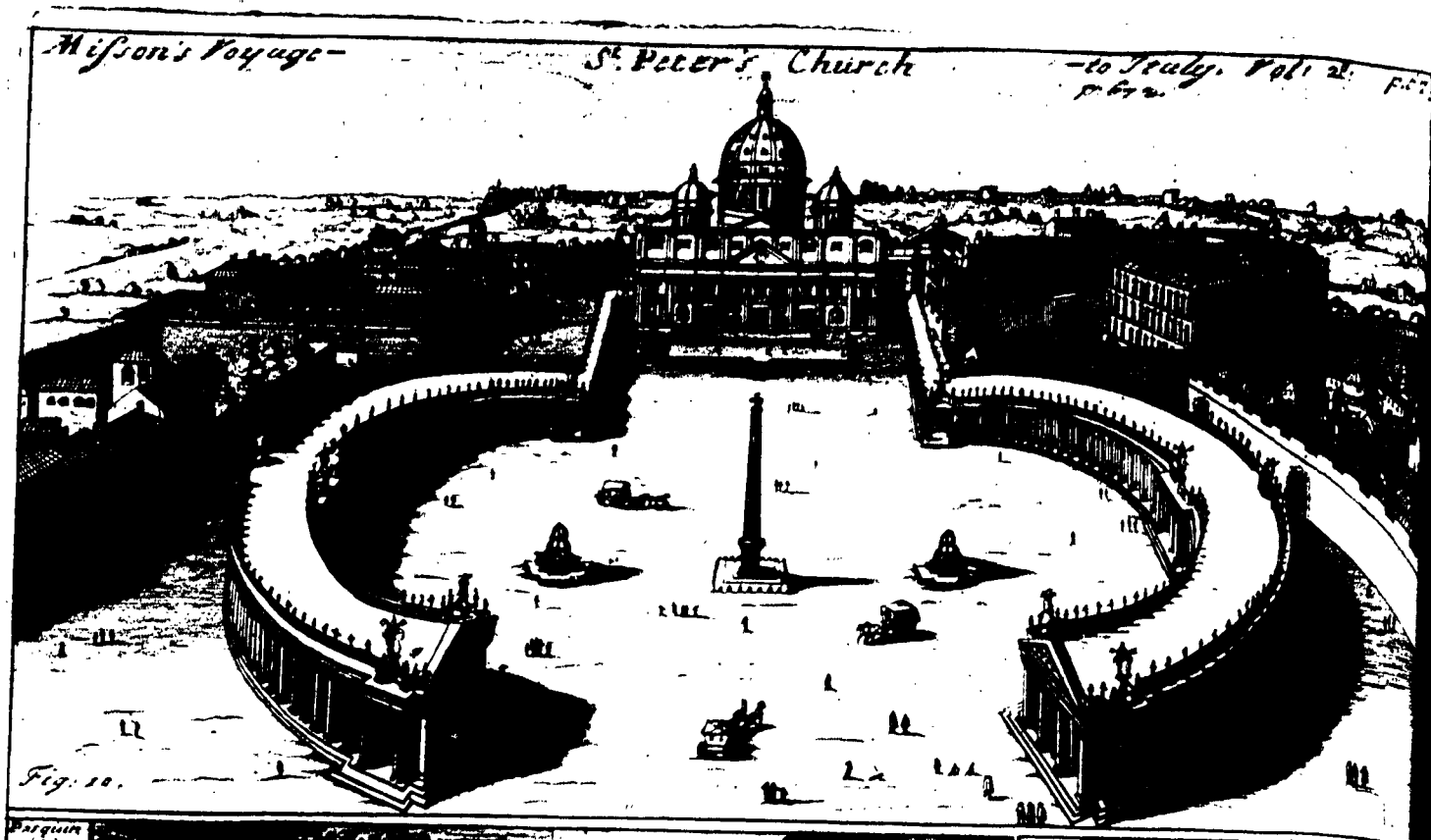
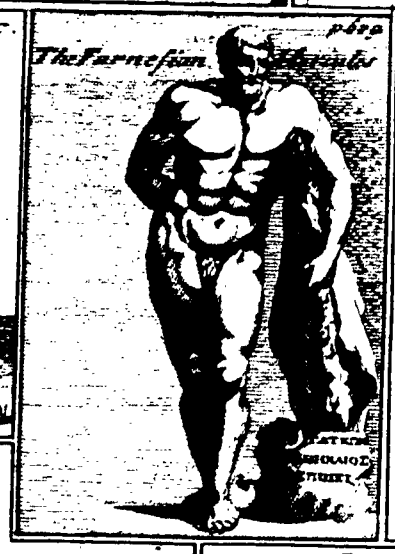
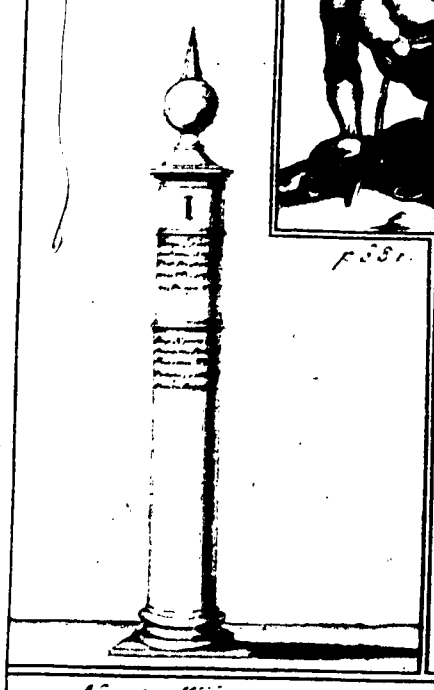


Fig. 10.

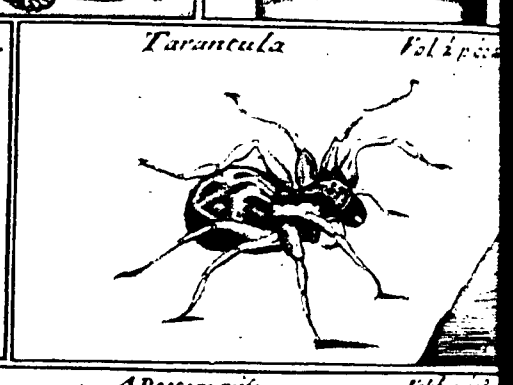
Parquin
Marforio

Myrmille expiring.


The Farnesian Hercules



The Doge of Genoa


Tarantula

A Country Wife
A Peasant
Habits of the Women at Strasbourg.
A Tradesman's Wife in mourning
A Burgher's Daughter
A Burgher's Wife in mourning
A Doctors wife
A Woman in mourning

See Fig. X.

I will ſend you the principal Dimenſions of this Structure, as I have taken them with the aſſiſtance of very skilful Perſons, more than once.

Dimenſions of St. *Paul's* Church.

1. The length of the Church, taken on the outſide, including the whole *Portico* and the thickneſs of the Walls, 722 Engl. feet.

2. The length of the Church within, not reckoning either the *Portico* or the thickneſs of the Walls, 594 feet.

3. The length of the Croſs of the Church on the outſide, 490 feet.

4. The length of the ſaid Croſs within, 438 feet.

5. The breadth of the Body of the Church, 86 feet 8 inches.

6. The perpendicular height of the Body of the Church, 144 feet.

7. The bigneſs or outward circumference of the Dome, 620 feet.

8. The diameter of the Dome within, 143 feet.

9. The breadth of the Front of the Church, 400 feet.

10. The compleat height of the Church, from the Floor to the top of the Croſs which is over the Ball, 432 feet.

11. The diameter of the Ball, 8 feet 4 inches.

12. The height of the Statues on the Corniſh of the ſecond Order of the Front, 18 feet.

Michael Angelo and *Bramanti* were the two chief Architects of this truly noble and majeſtical Structure, the firſt under Pope *Paul* III, the ſecond under *Julius* II. The Chair of S. *Peter* is ſupported by the four Doctors of the Church: The Statues of Braſs gilt, and the Tombs of *Urban* VIII, *Paul* III, *Alexander* VII, and the Counteſs *Maud*, are moſt magnificent and curious Pieces of Workmanſhip.

To be ſhort, wherever you turn your Eyes in this Church, you meet with nothing but gilt Work, excellent Pictures, and emboſs'd Work, Statues of Braſs and Marble, and theſe diſpers'd in ſo marvellous an Order, that their multitude does not cauſe the leaſt confuſion. The inſide of the *Cupola* is of *Moſaick* Work, and the Arch of the Nave of a certain fine Clay, with Compartiments of rais'd Work gilt; all the Pilaſters are deſign'd to be overcaſt with the ſame matter, as well as the remaining part of the inſide of the Church. The High Altar ſtands in the midſt of the Croſs, directly under the Dome, the Pavilion being ſupported by four wreath'd Pillars of Braſs, beautified with Foliages and Bees, the Arms of Pope *Urban* VIII. On each of theſe Columns ſtands a Braſs Angel ſeventeen foot high, and on the Corniſh you ſee Children playing and walking up and down: The whole height amounts to ninety feet. Under this Altar is a pair of Stairs leading to the Chapel under ground, where S. *Peter*'s Body is kept, and to ſome other ſacred ſubterraneous places belonging to this Church.

At the Entrance down theſe Stairs I ſaw a certain Bull engraven in Marble, forbidding any Woman to enter there, except on *Whitſun-Munday*, when Men are prohibited to enter there, under pain of being anathematiz'd; the place being very dark, we were told by the Sexton, that that this Prohibition was occaſion'd by an amorous Intrigue. An Indulgence of ſeven Years is granted for every Step of the Stairs leading to S. *Peter*'s Chapel, to all ſuch as deſcend 'em with Devotion.

The double row of Pillars (286 in number) which ſurround the Great Place before the Church, and leads to the ſame by a double Portico on each ſide, is a ſurprizing Piece to behold. The two magnificent Fountains in this place are highly worth a curious Traveller's Obſervation, as well as the Obelisk that ſtands in the middle of one entire piece of *Granite* ſeventy eight foot high, without either the Pedeſtal or Croſs placed on the top of it by *Sixtus* V, when he ſet up his ancient Monument here, which in 1586. weigh'd 956148 pounds without the Baſe. 'Tis a general (but erroneous) Opinion, That the Globe of Braſs which was there formerly contain'd the Aſhes of *Auguſtus*; but *Dominicus Fontana* the famous Architect, upon examination, found it not fit for that uſe, but to be only an Ornament to this Obelisk, which was conſecrated to *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius*; as is apparent from the Inſcription, which remaineth ſtill undefac'd:

Divo Cæſari, divi Julii F. Auguſto
Tiberio Cæſari D. Aug. F. Auguſto ſacrum.

The *Vatican*, ſo call'd from the God *Vaticanus*, who gave his Oracles or Oracles here.

The Palace of the *Vatican* is conveniently ſeated for the Pope near S. *Peter*'s Church, but by its too near neighbourhood takes off abundance of the Luſtre and glorious Proſpect of it, as well as ſome other Edifices near it. This Palace is not one entire regular Structure, but a compoſition of many beautiful Pieces, ſaid to contain 12500 Chambers, Halls and Cloſets, which may in ſome meaſure be diſcover'd in the Model which is ſhew'd of it in Wood.

The *Belvedere* belonging to the *Vatican* has got its name from its delightful Proſpect: We were ſo ſurpriz'd with the moſt excellent Pieces of *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Julius Romanus*, *Pintoriccio*, *Polidorus*, *John d'Udina*, *Daniel Volterra*, and other great Maſters, found us ſo much Diverſion, that we neglected to take notice of all the other Perfections of this beautiful Edifice.

I have often with a great deal of Delight ſeen and heard the moſt curious Perſons of *Rome* gaze with great amazement upon the Hiſtory of *Attila*, (the Work of the incomparable *Raphael*, who was born 1483, and died when he was thirty ſeven years old) and admire its Beauty and Perfections, nay, even put their Wits upon the rack to find out Expreſſions ſuitable to the ſeveral Excellencies of this marvellous Piece; when after all, ſome nice Judges have, and not without very good reaſon, found fault with the Dreſs *Raphael* has thought fit to repreſent *Leo* I. and two Cardinals in, being after the ſame manner as they are worn by them now-adays; whereas it is evident from the Hiſtory of thoſe times *, that Pope *Conſtantine* and the other Popes (two hundred and fifty years after *Leo* I.) wore plain Cambler Garments. Thus *Titian* hath painted *Roſaries* at the Girdles of the two Diſciples that met Chriſt in his way to *Emaus*; and another noted Painter, named *Roſſo*, has repreſented *Monks* in their Habits as Gueſts at the *Virgins Wedding*. I remember that at *Soeſt*, a Town of *Weſtphalia*, there is a Picture of our Saviour's Laſt Supper painted in a Glaſs Window of a Church, wherein that Painter has put a *Gammon of Bacon* inſtead of the *Paſchal Lamb*. Nay, even *Michael Angelo*, in his moſt celebrated Piece of the Laſt Judgment, has introduc'd many indecent poſtures, Angels without Wings, nay, even the Ferryman *Charon* with his Boat full of Souls.

* See *Platina*.

Miſtakes of ſome great Painters.

In the Hall where the Pope gives Audience to Ambaſſadours, are three large Pictures repreſenting the Hiſtory of the Admiral *Coligni*; the firſt ſhews you the ſaid Admiral as he was carried to his Houſe, after his being wounded by the Ruffian *Mercvel*, (fifty thouſand Crowns were ſet upon his Head) at the bottom whereof you read this Inſcription:

Gaſper Colignius Ammiralius, accepto vulnere domum refertur. Greg. XIII. Pontif. Max. 1572.

The ſecond repreſents him murther'd in his own Houſe, with his Son-in-law *Teligny* and others, with this Motto underneath:

Cædes Coligni & Sociorum ejus.
i. e. *The Slaughter of* Coligni *and his Adherents.*

In the third the News of this Murther is brought to the King, who ſhews a ſatisfaction in his Countenance, with this Inſcription:

Rex Coligni necem probat.
i. e. *The King approves of the ſlaughter of* Coligni.

Beſides theſe Trophies of ſo barbarous an action, the ſaid Pope cauſed Medals to be coin'd with this Inſcription, *Gregorius XIII. Pont. Max. an.* 1. and on the Reverſe an Angel with a Croſs in one Hand, and a Sword (with which he ſeems to thruſt) in the other; with this Inſcription, *Ugonottorum Strages* 1572, i. e. *The ſlaughter of the Hugonotts* 1572. I got one of theſe Medals, tho' they are become very rare of late Years.

Of the Gardens of *Belvedere*, and the Statues there, I will put you in mind only of the unvaluable Marble Statue (of one entire Stone) of *Laocoon*, the Work of *Ageſander*, *Polydorus* and *Athenadorus*, three *Grecian* Sculptors; of the Trunk without Head, Arms or Legs, with the *Sculptors Names* engraven on the Pedeſtal,

ΑΠΟΛΛΟΝΙΟΣ, ΝΗΣΤΟΡΟΣ, ΑΘΗΝΑΙΟΣ
Apollonius, the Son of Neſtor, an Athenian.

The *Vatican* Library owes much of its Encreaſe to the *Heydelburgh* Library and that of the Duke of *Urbin*; the number of Books it contains is ſo variouſly reported, that I thought it beſt to determine nothing upon that Head. The Pictures repreſent for the moſt part the *Sciences*, *Councils*, noted *Libraries*, *Inventors of Letters*, and ſome Pieces relating to the Life of *Sixtus* V. The old MS. of *Virgil* is in Quarto, but of greater breadth than length, in capital letters, without Points or any other diſtinction of Words. The *Gothick Letters*, as well as the *Miniature*, ſhew

The *Vatican* Library.

shew it not to be written in the first Ages of Antiquity, as some would have it.

Among the Manuscripts of the latter Ages, I took notice of some Letters written to and by Cardinals, wherein they give one another no other Title than Mr. *Peter* and Mr. *Julius*. They also shew'd us a Volume in Quarto, of the thickness of a Finger, containing Letters from King *Henry* VIII. to *Anne Bullen*. I also took particular notice of the *German Bible* which you mention'd, and, as they say, translated by *Luther*, and written with his own hand; which might have some probability of truth, were it not that a certain extravagant Prayer, written apparently with the same hand, at the end of it, did destroy it; the words are thus in the Original:

O God, durch deine Gute
Beschere uns Kleider und Hute,
Auch Mäntel und Röcke
Fette Kälber und Böcke,
Oxen, Schafa und Binder,
Viele Weiber, wenig Kinder;
Slechte, Spaise und Trank
Machet eikem das Jahr lang.

i. e. *O God, thro' thy Mercy, grant us Clothes and Hats, Cloaks and Gowns, fat Calves and Goats, Oxen, Sheep and Bulls, many Wives and few Children: Indifferent Meat and Drink makes the Year pass away very slowly.*

The Arsenal. In the Arsenal, they tell you, the Pope maintains constantly Arms for forty thousand Foot and twenty thousand Horse; but I am sure there were not half that number, and those very indifferently kept. I told you that the Pope may with great conveniency descend from the *Vatican* to St. *Peter*'s Church; and on the other side he may with the same ease make a secret retreat from thence into the Castle of St. *Angelo*, thro' a Gallery built by *Alexander* VI. *Urban* VIII. fortified it with four Bastions, unto whom he gave the Names of the four Evangelists. In the Chapel you see a Picture represent Pope *Gregory* I. prostrated at the feet of an Angel that appear'd to him on the top of the *Moles Adriani*, or *Adrian's Mausoleum*, and sheathing his Sword, foretold the Pope the deliverance of the City of *Rome* from a most violent Pestilence; whence this place got the Name of St. *Angelo*.

The Castle of St. *Angelo*. In the little Arsenal belonging to this Castle we saw, besides the Papal Triple Crown, an Armoury full of prohibited Arms, taken for the most part from such unfortunate Persons as were executed upon that account. Among the rest they shew'd us the Pistols of *Ranuccio Farnese*, Son and Heir of *Alexander Farnese* Duke of *Parma* and Governour of the *Netherlands*, who usually carrying Pistols about him, contrary to the express Prohibition of *Sixtus* V, who being a rigorous Person, and of a disposition very forward to maintain his Authority, order'd *Ranuccio* to be seiz'd in one of the Chambers of the Palace, as he was going to desire Audience of His Holiness, and to be carried Prisoner to the Castle of St. *Angelo*.

An odd deliverance of *Ranuccio* Prince of *Parma*. Cardinal *Farnese*, *Ranuccio*'s Uncle, left no Stone unturn'd to procure his liberty, but in vain; for one Evening, about ten a clock, whilst the Cardinal was soliciting his releasement with the Pope, he sent his Orders to the Governour of the Castle of St. *Angelo*, to have the Prince *Ranuccio* beheaded: This done, the Pope not questioning but that his Orders had been executed immediately, and willing to make a shew of obliging the Cardinal, he gave him a new Order about eleven a clock, enjoyning the Governour of the Castle to set *Ranuccio* at liberty. The Cardinal, who knew nothing of the first Order, made all the haste he could thither, but was highly surpriz'd when he found his Nephew preparing himself for present Death in the Arms of a Confessor, the only reason that had delay'd his Execution; but the Cardinal, overjoy'd to have nick'd the time so exactly, and producing his new Order to the Governour, had his Nephew put into his hands, who by his Uncle's procurement took Post immediately, and so escap'd the hands of his Executioners.

During our stay here, there was a certain Prisoner of Note kept in the Castle of St. *Angelo*, nam'd *Borri*, a Gentleman of *Milan*, and a good Physician and Chymist, accused of Heresie in receiving the Errours of the *Collyridians* in the fourth Age, who paid a kind of Adoration to the *Virgin*, nay, some say that he made her a fourth Person in the Godhead: However, he has the liberty of visiting some of his Patients of the best Quality in the City, being suppos'd to be not in his right Wits at certain times.

I am not well able to resolve your Question concerning Dr. *Molinos*, for tho' I have seen those Propositions that are said to be his, yet will I not presume to give my Judgment of 'em, unless I could hear *Molinos* himself; however, as they are publish'd, some of 'em are dangerous, others ambiguous, divers of 'em indifferent, and many very reasonable and orthodox. As to his Person, he has a very bad Character, being reputed a Villain and lewd Fellow, who by his pretended *Insensibility* and *Extasie* has deluded a great number of Nuns, of which they tell you a thousand Stories, which have procur'd him his ignominious Confinement to a Cell for his Life. I have however observ'd, that his most inveterate Enemies have a much better Opinion of his Followers, who have embrac'd that *Quietism* and other Opinions you have heard so often attributed to *Molinos*. I am,

Sir,

Rome, March 30. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXIV.

SIR,

SOME Days ago meeting Mr. *M. B.* making his court to the *Heroine* you mention, the Discourse began soon to run upon the various Customs used in *England*, and especially upon the Liberty allow'd to their Women, in opposition to the Confinement of the *Italian* Ladies, in defence whereof it was alledg'd, That this Custom was introduc'd into *Italy* as a necessary Caution, where three parts of the Men living under the constraint of Celibacy, would without this Precaution create most dreadful Disorders; but Answer being made, That St. *Paul*'s Advice might be a much better and more convenient Remedy against this Danger, we chang'd the Discourse: And the Queen understanding that there was a *French* Gentleman in the Company, she ask'd him, what News concerning the late Millions of Dragoons; and having understood his Answer*, *I have*, said she, *heard as much from the mouths of Eye-witnesses, and even the Jesuits themselves, who gave me an account of their barbarous Insolencies. Some German Jesuits told me*, continued she, *that they had seen the Dragoons* Priapos suos immanes in os fœminarum immittentes, ibique urinam fundentes. *I chid them*, added she, *for suffering such Insolencies, but they laugh'd at it.* After these words and some other Stories upon that Subject and the difference betwixt the Court of *Rome* and that of *France* concerning the Immunities, the Queen withdrew.

* See that Princesses Letter to the Chevalier de Terlon, inserted in the Nouvelles de la Rep. de Lettres, May 1686.

This Princess was then about sixty Years of age, of a low Stature, and very fat; her Complexion, Voice and Countenance are masculine, with a great Nose, large and blue Eyes, and yellow Eyebrows; her double Chin is strew'd with some few long Hairs of a Beard, and her under Lip sticks out a little; her Hair is of a light Chesnut colour, of a hand-breadth long, powder'd and curl'd up in Puffs, without any other Head-dress; her Air is very pleasing, and seldom without a Smile: As for her Habit, imagine a Man's *Justaucor* of black Sattin, reaching to the Knees, and button'd quite down; a very short black Petticoat, which plainly discovers a Man's Shoe; a Knot of black Ribbon instead of a Neckcloth, and a Girdle above the *Justaucor*, which supports the Belly.

The Queen had no sooner left us, but we took a view of the Palace *Riari*, her Residence, where we met with many ancient Pieces; the most exquisite of them are, the *Augustus*, of the rarest transparent Oriental Alabaster, but the Head and Feet are of a newer date, and of Brass gilt; sixteen ancient Columns of *Giallo*, with two Pillars of transparent Oriental Alabaster seven foot high; the *Venus*, whose mangled Legs are so admirably supplied by new pieces, that the joyning is not to be perceiv'd; the *Castor* and *Pollux* on each side of their Mother *Leda*, all of one piece of Marble, the Sons are bigger than the Mother; the Altar of *Bacchus*, of beautiful white Marble, is adorn'd with most exquisite Sculptures in *Basso relievo*: Old *Silenus* going home drunk from the Feast of his Foster-child, supported by two Men; the *Bacchantes* appear'd in the posture of Mad-women. In another place we saw a Goat flea'd alive, for cropping the Vines; and a Boar, who is wash'd in order to be sacrific'd.

The Queen of Sweden's Palace.

Among

Among the Pictures, the Piece of *Correggio*, repreſenting the Intrigue of *Jupiter* with *Leda* in the ſhape of a Swan, is exceeding fine; as are the *Virgin*, with the Infant *Jeſus*; the little St. *John*, by *Raphael*; and *Danae*, by *Carachio*, beſides divers other rare Pieces of *Titian*, *Paul Veroneſe*, *Guido*, and other great Maſters.

Medals. It would be much beyond the compaſs of a moderate Treatiſe to enter upon a deſcription of all the rare Medals to be ſeen in this Palace, wherefore I will content my ſelf with mentioning only the beſt: The *Otho*, of Braſs, an *Egyptian* Piece, with *Serapis* on the reverſe of it; the *Pertinax*; a ſmall Latin Medal, on the reverſe whereof you ſee that Emperour offering a Sacrifice; the *Antoninus Pius*, another Latin Medal, having on the reverſe *Victory* and *Plenty* offering him Fruit; another little Medal of the ſame *Antonin*, call'd by Mr. *Bellori*, *l'Anno Nuovo*, or *The New Year*, from the four Letters *A. N. F. F.* which he interprets *Annum Novum*, *Faustum*, *Felicem*; and a Medal of *Nero*, with *Hercules* on the reverſe; the *Cicero*, of Onyx, the Head white on a brown ground, a moſt curious Piece.

The Stone of St. Sabina's Church. But we will paſs from hence to ſome other Curioſities: In St. *Sabina's* Church, on Mount *Aventine*, we ſaw a great Stone, which, they tell you, the *Devil* of *Cullen* hurl'd down from the top of an high arch'd Roof, to knock out St. *Dominick's* Brains, after he had been diſappointed in his deſign of beating down the Chapel of the three Kings.

The Crucifix in St. *Paul's* Church, which ſpoke to St. *Bridget*, was the Work of P. *Cavallini*, it was made in the Year 1360; beſides which, they have ſeveral other talking Images at *Rome*, as, the Crucifix of St. *Mary Tranſpontin's*, which ſpoke ſeveral times to St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*; our Lady of St. *Coſmo* and *Damian*, (formerly the Temple of *Remus* and *Romulus*) which chid St. *Gregory* for paſſing by without ſaluting her; they ſhew you certain Latin Verſes (attributed by ſome to the Abbot *Joachim*, by others to *Beda*) containing the whole Dialogue betwixt the Image and the Saint: Another at St. *Marys the Empreſs*, and one more in St. *Gregory's* on Mount *Celio*, have now and then given ſome Proofs of their not being without the faculty of Speaking, as divers others (if you will believe them) have not been ſparing with their Tears; as at St. *Mary's of Peace*, St. *Mary's* in *Valicella*, and another St. *Mary's* call'd *del Pianto*, and that in the Church of the *Holy Ghoſt*, has ſhed whole Floods of Tears.

Speaking and crying Images at Rome.

The Image of Chriſt at St. *Sylveſter's* in the *Campo Martio*, done by himſelf, as they ſay, and ſent by him to King *Abagarus* (according to *J. Damaſcen*) is the rareſt Picture in *Rome*. *Euſebius* mentions the Letter paſs'd between Chriſt and *Abagarus*, but ſays nothing of the Image.

This City abounds alſo in variety of Relicks; as, the Ark of the Covenant, *Moſes* and *Aaron's* Rods, and the Fountain of Chriſt preſerv'd at St. *John Lateran*; a piece of the ſame Money *Judas* receiv'd, his Lanthorn, (which is alſo ſhewn at S. *Denis* in *France*) and the Croſs of the S. *Good-Thief*, are ſhewn at the Church of the *Holy Croſs* of *Jeruſalem*, with the Tail of *Balaam's* Aſs, and S. *Paul's* Thorn; S. *Roch's* Bowels are kept at S. *Marcell's*. The Beams of the Star that conducted the Wiſe-men have been evaporated of late years, as well as the ſound of the *Jeruſalem* Bells; but *Moſes's* Horns, it ſeems, are ſtill preſerv'd at *Genoa*.

The Relicks of Rome. The Navel of Chriſt is preſerv'd at S. *Maria del Populo*, concerning the Foundation of which they tell you the following Story: In the ſame place ſtood a large Walnut-tree, on the Branches of which uſed to perch a certain troop of Devils, who guarded the Aſhes of *Nero* in an Urn near it; this being very injurious to the Neighbourhood, they prevail'd with Pope *Paſchal* II. to rid them of this Helliſh Company; after ſome time ſpent in Faſting and Prayer, it was reveal'd to him, that he ſhould pull up the Tree by the Root, and build a Church; which being done accordingly, he gave it the Name of S. *Mary of the People*.

In the Church of S. *Giacomo Scoſſa Cavalli* (or S. *James Shake-horſe*) they ſhew the Stone (on the Altar of the Preſentation) on which Chriſt was circumcis'd, with the Impreſſion made by one of his Heels upon the Marble; as alſo another Marble Table on S. *Anne's* Altar, on which *Abraham* intended to ſacrifice his Son: Theſe Relicks, they ſay, were ſent by the Empreſs *Helena*, to be kept in S. *Peter's* Church, but the Waggon was no ſooner come near S. *James's* Church, but the Horſes ſtop'd, ſo that the Drivers not being able to make them go one ſtep further, ſome Myſtery was ſuppos'd to be hidden in this unaccountable Accident; and it being conſider'd at laſt, that S. *Paul* call'd S. *James*, as well as S. *Peter*, the *Pillar of the Church*, they reſolv'd to leave them at S. *James's*, and to preſerve the memory of the Miracle, gave that Saint the Name of *Scoſſa Cavalli* or *Shake-horſe*.

You may eaſily imagin that my Curioſity did lead me to hear ſome of their Preachers, who, generally ſpeaking, expreſs themſelves more in fantaſtical Geſtures, wry Mouths, and odd-compoſed Faces, than in the reality of their Arguments, or a fine diſpoſition of Words, ſerving more for Diverſion than Inſtruction. I muſt further tell you, that each Order has its peculiar way of preaching; the *Jeſuits* declaim very well, without thoſe apiſh geſtures and motions the reſt are guilty of, but their Stile is extravagant enough: The *Capuchins* thunder out nothing but Hell and Deſtruction, and make a hideous noiſe, whence it is that a certain *Italian* Author ſays pleaſantly, That when a *Capuchin* preaches, the Dogs run out of the Church. In ſhort, their Diſcourſe has neither Strength nor Gravity, a confuſed Noiſe and Heat, without either Senſe or Reaſon.

The Roman Catholick Preachers.

I remember I heard once a *Carmelite* preaching before the *Penitent Whores* of the *Holy Croſs*, concerning *Mary Magdalen*, who ſpent at leaſt a quarter of an hour in repreſenting all her Features to the greateſt nicety, not like a Preacher, but like a Painter.

The Queſtion you put to me, Whether there are more Courteſans at *Rome* or *Venice*, I am not well able to anſwer; for tho' I ſee not ſo many here as at *Venice*, I have it from credible perſons, that their number is almoſt infinite. *Sixtus* V. endeavour'd to root out this Evil, but after he had done all he could with Baniſhments and otherwiſe, was forced to recal them again, as *Sixtus* IV. did before, to prevent, as they ſay, greater diſorders.

Upon this occaſion I can't but remember an ancient Picture of a Wedding at the *Aldobrandin* Palace. This is a piece of Frize, brought hither with the ſame part of the Wall on which it is painted, being highly valuable both for its Antiquity and Workmanſhip. I am not to tell you, that the Marriage Ceremonies were very different among the *Romans*, the Bride being ſeated ſometimes upon a Sheeps Fleece, ſometimes on a Figure of the God *Priapus*, ſometimes in another poſture. In this Picture ſhe is ſeated on the Bed-ſide, with her Head hanging down with a pretended coyneſs, whilſt a Matron * ſitting by her puts her in mind, with a ſmiling countenance, of her Duty. The Bridegroom, in an odd Dreſs, with an Ivy Garland on his Head, is ſeated near the Bed, waiting, with an eager impatience expreſt in his looks, for the compliance of his whining Spouſe, whilſt divers Maids are buſie in preparing Baths and ſweet-ſcented Ointments, and a She-Muſician plays upon the Harp, whilſt another ſeems to ſing ſome *Hymenic O Hymenee*, ſome *Epithalamium*, or laſcivious Song, to diſpel the Charms.

* *Pronuba.*

This Picture on the *Frize*, and another on the *Pyramid* of *Ceſtius*, are the only Remnants of the true ancient Painting in *Rome*. This Pyramid is ſquare, ending in a ſharp point; it is of Brick, but covered with white Marble; it was repair'd 1673, and reſtor'd to its former beauty by *Alexander* VII, and as appears by the Inſcription, was erected to the memory of *C. Ceſtius*, one of the ſeven Magiſtrates appointed to take care of Religious Feaſts.

You enter the *Maſoleum* thro' a narrow opening in the middle of the thick Wall, and thence into a vaulted Room nineteen foot long, thirteen broad, and fourteen foot high, plaiſter'd over with a certain white poliſh'd Mortar, on which are ſeen ſeveral Pictures of Women, Veſſels, and other Ornaments.

The old Pictures in the Pyramid of Ceſtius. To enter upon a particular deſcription of ſo difficult a Subject being beyond our ſcope, I will content my ſelf to tell you, that I found the Antiquaries here of different Opinions in reference to theſe Figures, ſome pretending that they repreſent the Preparatives for a Funeral Show, others a Banquet, as a Memorial of the Office of the Deceaſed. One of the Figures holds a Veſſel, in which ſome others pour luſtral Water, and others Wine. Another Figure you ſee with large Pipes, deſign'd, as ſome ſay, for Mirth, and according to ſome, for Mourning, both Parties pretending to back their Opinions by this Diſtich in *Ovid's Faſts*:

Cantabat Fanis, cantabat Tibia Ludis
Cantabat mœſtis, Tibia funeribus.

There is one thing, *viz.* the different colours of the Figures, which ſeem to intimate that theſe Habits were not intended for Funeral Ceremonies; and as, according to the Inſcription of a Pedeſtal dug up near this Pyramid, this *Ceſtius* died in the beginning of *Auguſtus's* Reign, ſo it

it is beyond dispute, that the Women were cloath'd in white at the Funerals in his Reign, the fashion of mourning in black being abolish'd in the beginning of *Cæsar*'s Dictatorship. Perhaps these Pictures were design'd only for an Ornament to the Tomb, without the least respect either to Feasts or Funerals, as the Sepulchre of the *Vibii* has many such Historical Ornaments, the bare product of the Painter's Fancy. The like is to be seen in divers other Tombs, and especially Urns. The greatest Curiosity in these Pictures is their durableness, especially of their Colours, which were only mix'd with Water, and don't even penetrate the Plaister, besides that, Painting in Oyl is an Invention of the latter Ages, by *John de Bruge*, 1450.

The Hill of Potsherds.

This Pyramid is about two hundred paces distant from the Hill called *Doliolo* or *Mon e Testaceo*, i. e. *the Hill of Potsherds*, which some would have derive its Name from the broken pieces thrown there by the Potters, that were obliged to live near the *Tyber*, to prevent its Inundation on that side, by casting together the pieces of the broken *Idols*, *Bathing-tubs*, *Statues*, *Tiles*, and other sorts of earthen *Vessels*, which amounting to a vast quantity in so great a City, produced this Hillock.

But as probable as this Opinion appears at first view, I have, upon strict examination of the matter, observ'd divers things which induce me to believe otherwise; for having seen, at several times and at several places, the People dig Caves under this Hill to keep their Wine in, I could never observe them bring out any Fragments of *Images*, *Tiles*, &c. but only the Remnants of *Urns*; whence I conjecture, that whilst the Custom of burning the Dead continued, a prodigious quantity of earthen *Urns* were made for the common People, and as of necessity many of 'em must be broken, the reverence they had to those *Vessels* that had contain'd the Ashes of the dead Bodies, had induced them to assign a certain place for these Fragments to be laid up in a heap, just as we, out of respect to the Dead, preserve their Bones.

Your Curiosity concerning the famous *Pasquin* and his Antagonist *Marforius* I will satisfie as well as I can: This *Pasquin* was a Taylor, and a jovial smart fellow, at whose House the Newsmongers used to meet; his *Lampoons* were called *Pasquinades*, and these as well as all the other *Libels* of the Town were affixed at a Statue which stood near his Gate: 'Tis a mangled Statue, thought by some to be a *Roman* Soldier; it stands leaning against a House at the corner of a place where several Streets meet. Pope *Alexander* VI. being advised to throw this *Pasquin* into the *Tiber*, he answer'd, *I should be afraid, lest it should be turned into a Frog, and trouble me Day and Night with its croaking.* See Fig. XI.

Marforio is likewise a maim'd Statue, said by some to be made for *Jupiter*, others for the *Rhine*, or for *Nera*, which runs by *Terni*: It stands in one of the Courts of the Capitol; and *Marforius* commonly asks the Questions which are resolved by *Pasquin*.

You will perhaps expect me to tell Wonders of *Tivoli* and *Frescati*, and 'tis not to be denied but that they are *pleasant* or (if you will have it so) *fine places*, but if things are best distinguish'd by way of comparison, (as for instance, betwixt *Frescati* and *Versailles*, or even to some other Seats that are not Royal Seats) I dare boldly affirm, that both *Tivoli* and *Frescati*, and all the other celebrated places about *Rome*, in respect of their *Gardens* and *Water-works*, are only *pretty Toys*.

Frescati the ancient *Tusculum*.

Frescati is a small Town seated on the brow of a Hill, twelve miles from *Rome*; it has several beautiful Country Seats, the three principal ones of which are, *Monte Dragone*, belonging to Prince *Borghese*; *Belvedere*, to the Prince *Pamphilio*; and the *Villa Ludovisia*, to the Dutchess of *Guadagniola*, the Constable *Colonna*'s Sister; all which are in comparison to *Versailles* the same as *Frescati* is to *Rome*.

Monte Dragone.

Monte Dragone is a very large Structure, seated on an Ascent, from which you may see *Rome* and the interjacent Plain; but as the City lies at too great a distance, and the Plain is not embellish'd with that variety of things which render a Landskip agreeable, so the Prospect of *Rome* from St. *Clou* is infinitely more delightful: On the side of *Monte Porzio* there is much more variety in the Prospect, but much more straitned. The Avenues to the House are but indifferent, and very difficult, and the Gardens and Fountains much out of order.

Belvedere.

The situation of *Belvedere* is near the same with *Monte Dragone*; it has a pretty *Cascade* and a *Grotto*, where you see *Apoll* with the *Nine Muses* on *Parnassus*.

The chief Ornament of the *Villa Ludovisia* is the *Cascade*; but the Furniture of all these Houses were but very indifferent.

Tivoli.

Tivoli is such another small Town, about eighteen miles from *Rome*: Here is a Country Seat belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, commonly in the possession of the Cardinals of that Family; it is very spacious, but wants both convenient Apartments and good Furniture; the best thing belonging to it are three Rooms painted in *Fresco* by *Raphael*, and some ancient Statues: The Gardens, tho' but small, yet are adorned with most delightful Terrass Walks and curious Waterworks, far beyond those of *Frescati*, and perhaps all other Works of this nature in *Italy*; but at present, what with the stoppage of the Canals and the defect of the Pipes, every thing is so much out of order in this House, that you see only the remnants of its beauty. *April* 1688

The Palace and Gardens of *Este.*

This sight, as well as of divers other most celebrated Country Seats, put me in mind, after the surprizing things I had heard said concerning the *Italian* Water-works, that if formerly they did surpass those of *France*, the face of affairs is much alter'd now; and allowing even what they say of the Palace *d'Este*, that the Water-works cost no less than three millions, it is nevertheless beyond all dispute, that the Waterworks and other Beauties of *Versailles* exceed abundantly all those that are at *Tivoli*.

The Cascade or Cataract of the River *Teverona* (which produceth white smooth Flints call'd the *Diamonds of Tivoli*) in this small Town is very pleasant to behold, being not very high. Near it you see the Ruins of an ancient Structure, reputed by some to have been the *Sybils House*, by others a Temple of *Hercules*: In the Court stand two ancient Statues of a reddish Granite speckled with black, representing (according to Mr. *Spon*'s Opinion) the Goddess *Isis*, which he supposes to have been brought by *Adrian* out of *Egypt*, to adorn his Country Seat at *Tivoli*.

The Quarries of Rome.

The Hill near this place has many Ages ago, and does now afford most of the Stones used in *Rome*, call'd commonly *Travertin* by corruption, instead of *Tiber Fin*; the Front of St. *Peter*'s Church is built of the same, as well as the *Colliseo*, which is quite cover'd with it: The Stone is very excellent, but yellowish and porous, and not so serviceable as your *Portland* Quarry and those of *Paris* and *Caen*.

Alexander Tassoni, in his *Various Thoughts*, says, That some Workmen having cleft a great piece of one of the Stones of *Tivoli*, found in the middle of it, in an empty space, a *Crabfish* weighing four pounds, which they boil'd and eat. *Alexander ab Alexandro* assures us, that he found a wrought Diamond in the Heart of a great piece of Marble, and at another time a considerable quantity of sweet-scented Oyl in another piece of Marble. *Bapt. Fulgosius* speaks of a Worm found in the middle of a Flint. The before-mention'd *Tassoni* relates, that a Cat suckled a Rat at *Tivoli*.

Lacus Aricinus.

About three miles from *Tivoli* we saw a small Lake call'd *Lago de Bagni*, or *Solfatara*, call'd by the vulgar the *Sixteen Barges*, from the same number of small floating Isles that are upon it: It is no more than a large round Pond, of about two hundred paces diameter, the Water whereof is very transparent, and of a bluish colour; it gives rise to a small Rivulet which, after a small but rapid course, joyns its Waters with the *Anieno*; they say the Waters of the *Anieno* whiten the Teeth. The Lake as well as the Brook emit a very strong sulphureous scent.

The Villa of Cleopatra, Pompeii, and Virgil's Master.

The late Cardinal *d'Este* having in vain attempted to sound the depth of this Lake, tho' divers were prevail'd upon to enter into it, one of whom never return'd, and the other related, that coming at a certain depth, he found the Water so hot, that he was not able to endure it, tho' on the surface it is very cold: The sound made by the treading of the Horses thereabouts, makes it apparent, that there is a hollowness underneath the ground near the banks of this Lake. 'Tis not unlikely that the circumference of this Lake is only the mouth of a much larger Abyss extending a great way under ground on all sides, and that the Diver that was never seen again happened to be carried into the subterraneous Gulph, and could not find out again the entrance of the Lake, for he never appear'd afterwards upon the surface of the Water.

Floating Islands.

Near the Bank of this Lake are seen some Ruins, supposed by some to be the *Baths of Agrippa*: The largest of the floating Islands is of an oval figure, not above fifteen foot long: As the least touch puts 'em in motion, so they are easily carried by the Wind which way soever it blows. Two of our Company got upon the least of these Islands, and push'd it from the Bank only with the points of their Swords.

The

The *Villa Borgheſe* is in my opinion one of the moſt pleaſant and the beſt kept of any about *Rome*; it is all cover'd on one ſide with moſt curious ancient Pillars of *Baſſo relievo*, ſo naturally diſpos'd, as if they had been made for thoſe places where you ſee 'em. All the Apartments are fill'd with rare *Statues* and *Pictures*; among the firſt, the *Gladiator* made by *Agaſias* Son of *Doſithеus* the *Epheſian*, as the Greek Inſcription on the Baſe expreſſes it, a Copy whereof in Braſs ſtands at the end of the Canal in St. *James's* Park in *London*, (ſince remov'd to *Hampton Court*) is an excellent Piece, as well as the *Juno* of Porphyry; *Romulus's* Wolf, of the fineſt *Egyptian* Marble; the Buſts of *Hannibal*, *Seneca*, and *Pertinax*; the *Hermaphrodite*; the old *Silenus* with *Bacchus* in his Arms; the *David* throwing a Stone out of his Sling at *Goliah*, *Æneas* carrying his Father, and the Transfiguration of *Daphne*, three modern Pieces of *Bernin*, yet deſerve to be rank'd among the beſt of the former Ages. Among the *Pictures*, which are numberleſs here, the St. *Anthony* by *Caracchio*, and the *dead Chriſt* by *Raphael*, are prefer'd before all the reſt. In ſhort, the *Villa Borgheſe* is a moſt delicious Seat, and if it wants ſomething of that Royal Magnificence which gives a luſtre to ſome Palaces, its ſweet and natural beauties ſeem to make an ample amends for it: Beſides that, for *Statues* and *Sculptures* the Seat of a *Roman* Gentleman may challenge the precedency before all the other Palaces in the World.

The Villa Borgheſe.

In the Garden the Gardener ſhew'd us a double white *Hyacinth*, the Root of which, he told us, coſt five hundred Crowns the Year before; a thing not much ſurprizing to me, when I had known the fondneſs (to ſpeak no worſe) of ſome People to proceed to that extravagancy in *Flowers*, as to give four or five hundred Piſtoles for a Tulip-plant in *Flanders*.

The *Villa Ludoviſia*, tho' much out of order otherwiſe, yet is remarkable for a vaſt number of Statues, and thoſe for the moſt part very ancient ones: The *Fauſtina* embracing a Gladiator, her Lover; the two Gladiators, one a dying *Mirmillo*, and the other repoſing himſelf after the Engagement. The Statues of *Bacchus*, *Mercury* and *Concord* are all moſt curious Pieces; the choiceſt Pictures and richeſt Furniture are remov'd from hence to other places, the only thing of value remaining there being the Bedſtead, which (they ſay) coſt twenty thouſand Piſtols, but was much out of order then. In the ſame Chamber they ſhew'd us ſome Bones which, they would make us believe, were the Skeleton of a petrified Man, but upon a ſtrict ſearch I found theſe Bones not petrified, but cover'd only with a ſtony Cruſt; not but that I believe Bones to be capable of petrefaction as well as other things, having in my Travels had the opportunity of ſeeing great variety of petrefied *Fruits*, *Flowers*, *Trees*, *Wood*, *Plants*, *Bones*, *Fiſhes*, broad pieces of *Fleſh*, and *Animals* of all ſorts; *Pareus* ſpeaks of a whole Child petrefied in the Mothers Womb; and *Kircher* relates of the Town of *Binedobolo* in *Africk*, that it was petrefied in one Night, with Men, Beaſts, Trees, and every thing that was in it.

Villa Ludoviſia.

Sic Laſſel.

The *Villa Chigi* is famous for its curious little Water-ſpouts, and the Cabinet of Curioſities, in which the *Adrian* of Oriental Jaſper excels the reſt.

The Villa's of Chigi, Pamphili, and Fyni Madame.

The curious Walks of the *Villa Montalto* or *Savelliane*, not inferiour to any of *Rome* for its curious *Statues* and *Pictures*; among the firſt, the *Germanicus*, the *Peſcennius Niger*, the *Scipio*, the Goddeſs *Nænia*, the *Admi*, and the *Gladiator*, are moſt excellent Pieces of Antiquity; and among the *Pictures*, the *dead Chriſt* by *Raphael*, the S. *Francis* by *Caracchio*, the *Virgin* and the *Bacchus* by *Guido*, and the S. *John* by *Pomarancia*. I obſerv'd here an unuſual Figure of *Abraham's* Sacrifice, by *l'Eſpagnolet*, who, inſtead of a Cymetar or ſhort two-handed Sword, as *Abraham* is commonly painted with, has given him a plain ſacrificing Knife to cut his Son's Throat.

The Gardens of the *Villa Pamphili* would for their exactneſs and orderly diſpoſition challenge the preference before many others, were they kept in better repair, the Houſe being adorn'd on the outſide with excellent *Baſſo relievo*, like that of the *Villa Borgheſe*, and is as well furniſh'd within, but that the beſt *Statues* are much diſorder'd by an odd Accident; for the Prince *Pamphilio* being very young, and much bigotted to the *Jeſuits*, theſe holy Fathers, under a pretext of Devotion, prevailed upon him ſo far as to have all his Marble Statues, Men, Women and Children, to be laid over with Plaiſter-work in divers parts of their Bodies, except a little *Bacchus*, who had the good fortune to eſcape their ill-placed Zeal; and a poor *Venus*, the Maſterpiece of *Caracchio*, was forced to ſee her Beauties hid by a ſmutt from Head to Foot. But after ſome time the Prince being got out of the hands of theſe pretended Zealots, he order'd the naſty Clay or Plaiſter to be taken off again, which was done accordingly, but found to his no ſmall regret, that the clumſy-fiſted Plaiſterers had mangled ſeveral parts of the *Statues* to make their Clay ſtick the better.

The *Vigni Madame*, a Country Seat belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, is neither ſpacious nor magnificent, but very regular and pleaſantly ſeated, being the Deſign of *Julius Romanus*: On one ſide it has a moſt delightful proſpect of *Rome*, with many Gardens and adjacent Seats; and on the other, a moſt beautiful Landskip of little well-cultivated Hills: Over againſt it you ſee the *Tiber* flow thro' the pleaſant Meadows and Fields, and at a diſtance the Snowy tops of the *Apennines* riſing up among the Clouds; behind it is a Wood of tall Trees, divided into cool and ſhady Walks; the Gardens riſe by degrees into Terraſs Walks, and are well adorn'd with Statues and Fountains.

Having ſufficiently tir'd your Patience with the Deſcription of *Statues* and *Pictures*, I will ſay nothing of the Houſes of *Medici*, *Matthei*, *Lanti*, *Cæſarini*, *Juſtiniani*, and others. I am,

Sir,

Rome, *April* 11. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXV.

SIR,

I Will begin this Letter with anſwering your Queſtions concerning the *Tyber* (formerly call'd *Rumon*, *Teretus* and *Albula* it receives.) As on one hand it owes its chief Reputation to that famous City that was built upon its Banks, ſo on the other hand it has been repreſented by ſome with too much Contempt, its breadth being by a general computation at *Rome* of about three hundred feet, as may be ſeen by the Bridges of St. *Angelo* and of *Sixtus*, the firſt whereof is three hundred and thirty, and the laſt three hundred foot long; beſides that, it has a rapid current, and a conſiderable depth. What ſome Antiquaries would maintain, that it was unlawful to erect Houſes upon the Banks of the *Tyber*, is ſufficiently to be refuted out of *Claudian* and other Authors: *Suetonius* ſays, that *Auguſtus* order'd it to be clean'd, and enlarg'd its Chanel, to render the eaſier paſſage to the Current; whoſe Example has been follow'd by ſeveral other Princes, to prevent its Inundations, (the greateſt happned in *Dec.* 1598, under *Clement* VIII.) but without any remarkable ſucceſs; for the South-East Wind of the *Mediterranean* (here call'd the *Sea Wind*) ſometimes blows with ſuch violence, that it ſtops the Waters of the *Tyber* at its entrance, which if it happens at a time when (either by continual Rains, or the melting of the Snow in the *Apennines*) the torrents of the leſſer Rivers that joyn with the *Tyber* are ſwoln, this concatenation of Accidents produces theſe Inundations, which are look'd upon as the Scourge of *Rome*, as the ſulphureous Eruptions of Mount *Veſuvius* are the Scourge of *Naples*.

The Tyber.

The Cauſe of the Inundations.

The Waters of the *Tyber* appear always muddy and yellowiſh, but if they are ſet by for a night to ſettle, they will become clear and limpid, and are then accounted very good; notwithſtanding which, the *Romans* have been, and ſtill are, at a vaſt charge to convey other Waters to *Rome*, thro' the Mountains, by the means of coſtly Aqueducts. The *Aqua Felice* coſt Pope *Sixtus* V. near four hundred thouſand Crowns to bring them twenty miles to *Rome*; and as the Waters of the Fountain of *Montorio* were carried at a greater diſtance, by Pope *Paul* the Fifth, 1612, ſo 'tis probable they coſt a great deal more.

The Aqueducts of Rome.

On the High Altar of the Church of the *Franciſcans* at *Montorio*, is to be ſeen that moſt excellent Piece of the *Tranſiguration*, which is the laſt Work and Maſterpiece of *Raphael*.

Not far thence ſtands the Chapel, built in the ſame place, as they believe, where S. *Peter* was crucified; for which reaſon they ſhew a deep hole in the Chapel, where the Croſs was fix'd. The Picture of this Crucifixion, with the Head downwards, is to be ſeen at St. *Paul's at the three Fountains*, by the hand of *Guido*; where they alſo ſhew you the Pillar on which, they ſay, S. *Paul* was beheaded. In the Cloyſter of S. *John de Lateran* they ſhew the Column on which S. *Peter's* Cock crew; and another which, they tell you, was cleft aſunder from the

top to the bottom, on the day of Christ's Passion: Here you see also the measure of Christ's height, and the Stone on which *Pilate*'s Soldiers cast Lots for Christ's Garments, it is of Porphyry, four foot long, and three broad; the Dice they pretend to be kept at *Umbratico* in *Calabria*.

I will not trouble you with many other Curiosities pretended to be preserv'd here, but can't forbear to tell you of the Chair I saw there, being a kind of Arm'd Chair of one single piece of Porphyry, about which you desire to be inform'd, that was formerly made use of in the Ceremony instituted to prevent all Doubts concerning the Pope's Chair.

I will not be too curious to enquire into the Reason and End of that Search, but since you have given me sufficient occasion to make the best Reflections I can upon the subject of the *She-Pope*, I must frankly confess, that I have hitherto not met with the least Solidity, either in your Objections, or any made by others, against the truth of this History; tho' I am not ignorant that some *Protestant* as well as *Roman Catholick Doctors* of the last Ages, have rejected the same as a Fable.

For, what reason can be given to rank this among many other extraordinary Events recorded in History, when seventy or eighty Authors, (*Blondel* says seventy one Greek and Latin canoniz'd Writers) all men of Sense, not prompted either by Interest or Honour, have related the same at divers times, nay, when the Interest of Religion and Fear of Punishment might in all likelihood rather have deterr'd them from publishing the same? 'Tis a very slender Objection to alledge the difficulty of the matter, the same not being sufficient to disprove a matter founded upon so unquestionable an Authority, especially if we give some allowance for the diversity of Times, it being certain, that People living then in an Age of Ignorance and Stupidity, they might be sooner impos'd upon than in this crafty Age; besides, that things which seem'd to be involv'd in unsurmountable *Difficulties*, have nevertheless been brought about by Time and Chance; witness *Joan of Arc*, known by the name of the *Maid of Orleans*, born in the Village of *Damremy*, in the Year 1429, who at the age of eighteen or twenty, from a poor *Shepherdess*, became at once a great *General*: Besides, the Difficulties objected by our Adversaries are of such a nature, as cannot render this History fabulous, all the circumstances attending the same being, if not altogether probable, at least within the compass of Possibility.

Arguments to prove the History of the She-Pope a true one.

The Beardless Chin objected to *her Holiness* is of little validity, when we consider that the Papal Chair has at other times been fill'd with Beardless Youths, witness *Benedict* IX. and *John* XII, the first of whom was chose at ten or eleven, and the last at eighteen Years of age. Perhaps this *She-Pope* might be of the number of those *Viragoes* who have not only a masculine Mien and Beard, but also the Courage and other Qualifications of Great Men; And why might not such a one, in disguise, have as fair a pretension to the Papal Chair as a begging Vagabond, such as *Adrian* the Fourth, or a Swineherd, like *Sixtus* the Fifth?

But, say they, how could a Woman hide her great Belly so long, and at last expose her self to the danger of being deliver'd in a solemn Procession? As to the first part of your Objection, What difficulty is there for a Woman that is taken for a Man to hide her great Belly, any more than for a Man that has a swell'd Belly to be imagin'd to be with Child? And as to the pretended Imprudence of our *She-Pope*, it is to be consider'd, that certain things in this World are involv'd in such Difficulties as must be overcome at any rate, maugre all the danger that attends 'em; besides that, it is no hard matter to suppose that she might be deliver'd before her time.

You alledge the different calculations of the time, but the reason is obvious, those who have expung'd the *Popess*'s Name out of the Catalogue of Popes being forc'd to extend the Reigns of the preceding Popes, to fill up the Breach they made themselves.

The next Objections, concerning her Voyage to *Athens* when she was but a young Scholar, is founded upon a frivolous Supposition, which I may soon answer, by telling you, that perhaps she was old enough to be admitted among the Auditors of the *Athenian* Philosophers; besides that, not all the Authors mention her going to *Athens*: And tho' from this various relation of my Authors you may seem to hope for an advantage on your side, I must tell you, that even in *Sacred History* there are not wanting Instances of Variations in the circumstances of this Age, and that these Variations, provided they don't amount to Contradictions, do not in the least weaken, but rather strengthen the credit of such a Relation; for had there been a Combination set on foot on purpose to usher a fabulous Story, as that of Pope *Joan* is pretended to be, they would have certainly agreed in all the circumstances relating to the Story.

The strongest Argument (in your opinion) against us is, the Silence of those Authors who were Contemporaries of Pope *Joan*; but you will find this as weak as the rest, if you consider that *Marianus Scotus*, who died at *Fulda* in *Germany* 1086, *Sigebert* a learned Monk, who died in the beginning of the twelfth Century, and divers others more ancient Authors, did in all probability take it from those Authors that had mention'd the same before them, there being not the least likelihood that they invented it for the reasons before-mention'd: Besides, let me tell you, your Argument is built upon a wrong bottom; for the Editions of *Anastasius* (firnam'd *the Bibliothecary*, who was a *Roman Abbot*, a Person of Learning, and Contemporary of Pope *Joan*) which have escap'd gelding, give a very circumstantial account of the whole matter. But suppose it did not, what wonder is it if *Fear* and *Shame* did impose Silence to the Writers of that Age, when the Invention of Printing was unknown as yet in the World, which could not be kept secret afterwards; as we see that the worst of Princes have been flatter'd during the Age they liv'd in, whom afterwards Posterity, not cow'd by Fear, hath painted in their true colours.

I can't for my life see why the Church of *Rome* should make such a bluster to hide this Disgrace, when *Baronius* bestows the Title of *Monsters* upon several other Popes, and not without reason, considering the Enormities the Popes have been guilty of, of distributing Scepters, and treading crown'd Heads under their Feet, notwithstanding they retain'd the quality of Priests; and what is worse than all the rest, to set a certain rate of Absolution upon the most abominable Crimes that can be committed; witness the Book intituled, *The Rates of the Apostolical Chamber* *, which I bought some days ago. 'Tis true, they have since endeavour'd to suppress the Book, by inserting it in the *Index Expurgatorius* of the *Council of Trent*, but continue nevertheless in selling their Dispensations.

* This Book is sold publickly to this day at *Paris*.

——— Venalia nobis,
Templa, Sacerdotes, Altaria, Sacra, Coronæ
Ignis thura preces, Cœlum est venale Deus.
B. Mant.

I will appeal to all unbyass'd persons, when once Posterity shall read the History of the Persecution of *France*, as represented by *Maimbourg*, *Varillas*, the Bishop of *Meaux*, and others of the same stamp, I say, when they shall read the same in these Authors, whether they would not be apt to imagin that these poor Wretches were used with all imaginable moderation, if it were not manifest by unquestionable Authority, that these unfortunate Creatures suffer'd all the Cruelties that could be invented by their implacable Enemies.

Before I take my leave of Pope *Joan*, I can't forbear mentioning what *Mazeray* says (in the Life of *Charles the bald*) upon this subject, *viz.* That *this Opinion was generally receiv'd as an undoubted Truth for five hundred Years together*. If you are curious to know the reason why the use of this Chair is laid aside now-adays, the following Epigram of *Pannonius* * will satisfie your Curiosity:

* John Bishop of the City of *Five Churches* in *Pannonia* or *Hungary*.

Non poterat quisquam reserantes Æthera Claves
Non explorato, sumere Testiculis
Cur igitur nostro mos hic nunc tempore cessat?
Ante probat quod se, quilibet esse marem.

Pasquin, in his Verses on *Paul* II. and *Innocent* VIII, gives you the same reason;

Pontificis Pauli *Testes ne Roma requiras*
Filia quam genuit, sat docet esse marem.
Octo Nocens *pueros genuit, totidemque puellas*
Hunc merito potuit dicere Romæ patrem.

The Church of St. *John Lateran* is celebrated for its spaciousness, magnificence, and the title she bears of *The Head and Mother of all Churches*, according to the Inscription engraven on the Portico:

Dogmate Papali, datur simul Imperiali
Ut sim cunctarum mater Ecclesiarum.

Sixtus V. built a large Palace near this Church, but was never inhabited. Next adjoyning to this Structure is the *Santa Scala*, from the twenty eight Steps of white Marble, pretended to be the same by which Christ ascended into *Pilate*'s House, where no body is permitted to ascend but kneeling, tho' there are two little Stairs, on each

The *Scala Santa* and *Santa Sanctorum*.

each side one, by which every one is permitted to walk up into the Chapel call'd *Sancta Sanctorum*, or the *Holy of Holies*, except Women, who are forbidden to enter there. It has got its Name from an Image of Christ, which, they say, was made by Angels: I saw it, and can assure you it is very ugly and ill-shapen.

S. Mary maj. From hence we passed by St. *Mary Major*, a vast sumptuous Fabrick. A certain devout *Roman* Lord being warn'd in a Dream to go to Mount *Esquilin*, and there to build a Church to the honour of the *Mother of God*, in the place where he should find Snow; and Pope *Liberius*, having at the same time such another Vision, they walk'd thither the next morning; and notwithstanding it was then in *August*, *Ann.* 355, they found Snow, which they remov'd with their own hands, and laid the Foundation of a Church in that place.

The Chapels of *Sixtus* V. (the Work of *Dominic Fontana*, it cost seven hundred thousand *Roman* Crowns) and of *Paul* V. are very magnificent Structures; in the last of which they shew you the Manger of *Bethlehem*, and the Picture of the Virgin made by St. *Luke*. Near it stands the little Church of S. *Anthony*, where all the Horses of the City receive the Benediction every Year on that Saint's Festival.

Soon after we took a turn to *Castel Gondolfo*, sixteen miles from *Rome*, a Palace belonging to the Pope, but has little remarkable in it. About a mile from this Castle we saw the small Town of *Albano*, where in former Ages stood the famous City of *Alba*, which, they say, extended from the Lake of *Castel Gondolfo* to this Town of *Albano*; but this is called in question by some.

Town.

Its Antiquities. We were shewn at *Albano* the ruins of a *Mausolæum* not unlike an old Tower, call'd commonly the Tomb of *Ascanius*, but with the same uncertainty. There is another very ancient Tomb near *Albano*, suppos'd to be the Sepulchres of the two *Horatii* and the three *Curiatii*, occasion'd questionless by the five Pyramids standing on this Tomb; but *Livy* expresly contradicts this Opinion, *viz.* that their Sepulchres were erected in the same places where each of them expired, *viz.* those of the *Horatii* near *Alba*, and those of the *Curiatii* not far from *Rome*.

The Lake of Castel Gondolfo. They told us, that the Lake of *Castel Gondolfo* was six or seven miles in circumference, enclosed on all sides with rising grounds in the form of an Amphitheatre. In two places the depth of this Lake cannot be sounded, and sometimes the Waters of this Lake swell on a sudden to the very brink of these high Banks, occasion'd questionless by some subterraneous watery Receptacles, which discharge themselves into it

The Lake of Nemi. Near *Genzano*, about half a mile from this Lake, is another little one, call'd by the Moderns the *Lake of Nemi*, but by the Ancients *Speculum Dianæ*, from a Grove and Temple consecrated to that Goddess, which formerly were near the Bank of this Lake.

Between *Albano* and *Castel Gondolfo* are to be seen the ruins of an ancient Amphitheatre; and we were not a little surpriz'd to see several large Trees, that had taken Root without, to have forc'd their passage thro' and cleft asunder the best cemented Stone and Brick. The Country about *Albano* and *Genzano* is very fertile of the best Wines and Fruits, and the Inhabitants do still hold their most ancient custom of cultivating *Leeks* and *Onions*; *Mittis præcipuos nemoralis Aricia porros Marli*.

Before I leave the *Roman* Palaces, I must tell you also something of those within the City, which I will do with all imaginable brevity.

The Palaces of *Justiniani*, *Cesi* and *Farnese*. At the Palace *Justiniani* there is a Catalogue of Antiquities of 1867 Pieces, and of 638 curious Pictures, the most excellent of which are, the *Nero*'s Head, the *Minerva*, *Venus* coming out of a Bath, and the three little *Cupids* sleeping and leaning upon one another. Cardinal *Chigi*'s Palace is scarce inferiour to any in *Rome*, the Gates are overcrusted with an old green Marble: The Statues of the two *Venus*'s, of *Marsias* flea'd, and of the dying Gladiator, are admirable Pieces. The *Farnesian* Palace was begun by *Antonio de S. Gallo*, but brought to perfection by the famous *Michael Angelo*; the Front being broad a hundred and eighty foot, and ninety foot high. The *Gates*, *Corner-pieces*, *Cross-bars of the Windows*, *Cornish*, and in short all the principal *Stones* of this beautiful Structure, were the Spoils taken from the great *Colliseum*, which admirable Monument of Antiquity has furnish'd Materials also not only to the Palace of the *Chancery* and St. *Lawrence*'s Church *, but also to some part of the City Walls. Thus *Innocent* VIII. destroy'd the *Gordian* Arch to build a Church; and *Alexander* VI. that most beautiful Pyramid of *Scipio*, to pave the Streets with the Stones.

* S. Lawrence in Damaso.

The Marble Steps to the Church of *Ara Cœli* belong'd formerly to the Temple of *Romulus*: S. *Blaise*'s Church owes its Ornaments to the Spoils of the Temple of *Neptune*, as S. *Nicholas of the Souls* was built out of the ruins of the *Circus Agonalis*; and had it not been for *Sixtus* V, we might now look in vain for any of the precious Remnants of Antiquity in *Rome*.

The *Hercules and Bull* in the *Farnesian* Palace are celebrated throughout the World; and the Gallery by *Caracche*, the Hall by *Salviati*, and the *Venus* and *Adonis* by *Titian*, are also excellent Pieces.

The Palaces of *Altieri*, *Barberini* and *Colonna*. The Library of the Palace *Altieri* contains a good number of the best Books. The whole Staircase, and especially the Statue of a Captive King at the foot of it, (found five hundred years ago in the Place call'd *Navona*) is very fine. It has very spacious Apartments, well filled with curious Pictures and rich Furniture. I saw here a *Looking-glass* of *Rock Crystal*, ten inches long, and six broad, in a Frame of Gold beset with precious Stones of a considerable value. They also shew'd us a little earthen Dish, carefully kept in a rich Frame, as being suppos'd to be the Work of *Raphael*, and is of the same kind with the Vessels of *Loretto*; but discoursing upon this subject with the noted *Carlo Maratti*, he assur'd me, that *Raphael* never drew a stroke on any of these Dishes, but that by the resemblance of the way of working, some of his Scholars did paint the same, in imitation of his Designs.

The Palace *Barberini*, call'd the *Palestrin*, containing four thousand Chambers, is the largest in *Rome* next to the *Vatican*, and has abundance of Antiquities; the little *Diana*, of Oriental Alabaster, is of great repute; the *Tullia*, Daughter of *Servius Tullius*, and Wife to *Tarquin* the *proud*, is very rare, and said to be the only one of that kind in *Rome*: Here I also saw the God *Osiris* with his Hawk's Head on a Human Body, which was found with the Obelisk of *Minerva*, under the ruins of the Temple of *Isis*; and a Marble Bust of Pope *Urban* VIII. made by a blind Man, and yet the best that is extant of that Pope. The other Palace of *Barberini* towards the four Fountains is fill'd up with *Rarities*, *Antiquities*, and *Curiosities* of all sorts: They told us, that the Library contains four thousand Volumes.

In the Halls of the Palace *Colonna* you see the Pictures of two Popes, *Adrian* I. and *Martin* V, two of the best that ever sate in the Chair, nineteen Cardinals, and fifty four Generals of Armies, all descended from the House of *Colonna*. In this Palace are nine very spacious Apartments, eight thousand Original Pictures, a little Arsenal, Busts, antique *Basso relievo*, Statues, and rich Furniture, in considerable quantities.

As for their way of building in general, I told you before, that they cover their Houses more with ridged than flat Roofs, found out by our famous *Mensard*, and much preferrable before the flat Roofs; and upon this occasion I must entreat you to lay aside that partial Opinion you seem to have conceiv'd of the entire perfection of the *Roman Architecture*, which, as well as in other Countries, varies according to the difference of the Age and peculiar mode of the Country, and is not always suited to the regularity and magnificence of Architecture.

The Obelisks in *Rome*. The *Obelisks* in *Rome* are quadrangular, ending in a sharp point, their Angels respecting the four corners of the World, and denoting the four Elements, as the whole resembled the Rays of the Sun, the chief Divinity ador'd by the *Egyptians* under the name of *Osiris*. The *Hieroglyphic Characters* on these *Obelisks*, suppos'd by some to have been the *Elegies* or *Histories* of great Actions, erected by the *Egyptians* in honour of the Heroes of their Nation, have since been clearly demonstrated to contain the Secrets of their *Divinity*, *Astrology*, *Metaphysicks*, *Magicks* and such other Sciences as were in vogue among the *Egyptians*: All these *Obelisks* (not one of 'em being made at *Rome*) are of *Granite*, a kind of very hard Marble, which, they say, will resist the Fire for a considerable time, and without question induc'd the ancient *Egyptians* to make choice of it for such lasting Monuments.

The *Obelisks* of S. *John Lateran* has stood three thousand Years, and that of S. *Peter* (weighing 956148 pounds) nine hundred Years longer: The first, which is the biggest of the two, is a hundred and eight foot high, without including the Pedestal or the Cross. There are also some *Granites* of *Corsica* in this place, but their Grain is much courser than those of *Egypt*. I am,

Sir,

Rome, *April* 24. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXVI.

SIR,

Since you deſir'd me in your laſt to give you my Obſervations upon what Mr. *Chevreau* hath alledg'd, in his Hiſtory of the World, concerning Pope *Joan*, I will write you my Sentiments upon this Head.

The ſaid Author acknowledges, That *a conſiderable number of famous Authors have mention'd that Story, and poſitively aſſerted the truth thereof:* And what reaſon, I pray you, can he alledge why ſo many unbyaſs'd Witneſſes of unqueſtionable credit, who unanimouſly atteſt that matter, ſhould not be credited? He ſays, *The more judicious and cautious part of Mankind, relying on the ſilence of ſeveral other Authors, have examin'd and rejected the ſame.* It is certainly a very weak way of arguing, to ſay that a thing atteſted by the unanimous Voice of ſeventy or eighty Men, all of the *Roman Catholick* Religion, moſt of them Clergymen, and even ſome of them Canoniz'd Saints, all which is confeſs'd by the *Romaniſts*, ſhould be invalidated by the ſilence of ſome other Authors. But, ſays Mr. *Chevreau*, Anaſtaſius *the Bibliothecary makes no mention of the She-Pope* Joan: But this Author, as well as *Onuphrius*, who alledges the ſame Argument, is miſtaken. If you will be pleas'd to conſult Mr. *Lefuevr's Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, and *Colomeſius's Hiſtorical Miſcellanies*, you will hear there of an *Anaſtaſius* in the *French* King's Library, containing a circumſtantial account of this female Pope; beſides two other Copies of the ſame Author * at *Augsburgh*, and another at *Milan*, which give an account of the ſame Pope *Joan*. Theſe before-mention'd Books tell you further, that the *Jeſuits of Mayence* having only ſuffer'd two Copies to be wrought off conformable to the Original, (which they don't deny themſelves to be true) did ſuppreſs what diſpleas'd them in the reſt of the Edition.

* *Salmaſius* ſaw them, not does *Blondel* diſown 'em.

Upon this occaſion I can't but put you in mind truly to weigh the Authority of the Teſtimony of *Anaſtaſius*, (he writ the Lives of the Popes to *Nicholas* I. the Succeſſor of *Benedict* III.) who being a man of ſingular Learning, lived at *Rome*, and was Contemporary with this female Pope.

I can't forbear, in the next place, to give you my Thoughts upon the Reflections made by Mr. *Chevreau* on *Martinus Polonus*, or the *Pole* Archbiſhop of *Coſenza*, and Penitentiary to *Innocent* IV, as likewiſe (according to the Opinion of ſome) to *Nicholas* III, whom he call'd a ſilly Monk; and, I pray, for what reaſon? *Since*, ſays he, *in his Treatiſe of the Wonders of* Rome *he miſtakes the Gate of* Oſtia *or of* S. Paul, *and of* Capenna *and* S. Sebaſtian, *for another which he calls* Collina, *inſtead (as we may probably ſuppoſe) of* Collatina *or* Pinciana, *the* Pantheon *for a Temple of* Cybele, *and the* Amphitheatre *for a Temple of the* Sun, *we may the eaſier forgive his Blunder in Hiſtory when he miſtakes a* Pope *for a* Popeſs.

* *M. Polonus* flouriſh'd in the middle of the 13th Century.

If this Argument holds, *That ſuppoſing* M. Polonus *had miſtaken one Gate for another, therefore he muſt take a* Pope *for a* Popeſs, I might with the ſame reaſon retort it upon *Chevreau* himſelf, that *ſince his Reflections on* M. Polonus *are groundleſs, therefore he miſtakes a* Popeſs *for a* Pope.

That his Reflections are groundleſs, appears, (1.) That Mr. *Chevreau* himſelf knew not that there was ſuch a Gate at *Rome* as the *Collina*, when he ſays that *Polonus took the Gate of* Oſtia *and the Gate* Capena *for another which he call'd* Collina, *inſtead of* Collatina *or* Pinciana; it being certain that *Collina* was the name of a Gate as well as *Collatina*, and had its name *à Colle Quirinali* mention'd by *Ovid:*

Templa frequentari Collinæ proximæ portæ
Nunc decet, ——— Faſt. 4.

being now call'd *Salarco*. (2.) The Gate *Collatina*, ſo call'd from the Town of *Collatium*, is different from the *Pinciana*, as F. *Nardin* hath ſufficiently demonſtrated. (3.) Mr. *Chevreau* has as little reaſon to find fault with *Polonus* for calling the *Pantheon* the Temple of *Cybele*, the ſame being founded upon the Opinion of divers learned Antiquaries, who believe it to have been conſecrated by *Agrippa* to *Jupiter* the *Avenger*, and to *Cybele* the Mother of all the Gods, who was ſometimes worſhip'd under the Names of *Ops*, *Rhea*, *Veſta*, *Berecynthia*, *Dindymena*, ſometimes under the Names of *Tellus*, *Magna Pales*, *Magna Mater*, and frequently ſtiled *Natura rerum parens*. (4.) Mr. *Chevreau* ſpeaks ſo ambiguouſly concerning the *Roman Amphitheatre*, that his meaning is ſcarce to be well underſtood; for ſince there were ſeveral *Amphitheatres*, the ruins of ſome of which are ſtill remaining, I ſuppoſe he means the great *Amphitheatre* call'd *Colliſeum*, built by *Veſpaſian*, and dedicated by *Titus*. (5.) 'Tis certainly too great an abſurdity to believe that *Polonus* could miſtake this *Colliſeum* for the Temple of the Sun; which makes me imagin that ſome of his Expreſſions muſt not be well underſtood, and that inſtead of expreſſing the *Colliſeum* as the Temple of the *Sun*, he might ſpeak of this Temple near the ſaid *Amphitheatre*.

You tell me you have ſeen a Manuſcript of *Polonus*, where this Story is written in the margin by another Hand; And what, I pray, can be inferr'd from thence, except, that the Author having been mutilated by ſome body or other, a more equitable perſon, ſupplied the defect by his own Hand, *Bellarmin* himſelf making not the leaſt ſcruple to confeſs, that *M. Polonus* writ the Hiſtory of the *Popeſs*? For the reſt Mr. *Chevreau* being not a little puzzled to give the World a probable account of the firſt occaſional riſe of this Story, is forc'd to have recourſe to *Onuphrius*, (tho' he conceals his Name) who pretends that Pope *John* was nicknam'd *Joan* from a Favourite Concubine he had of that Name; tho' neither of them can produce any other Authority for this Aſſertion than their own, or make it appear that Pope *John* had ſuch a Concubine: 'Tis true, they cite *Luitprand* in their behalf, but erroneouſly, the Widows Name he ſpeaks of being *Anne*, and not *Joan*. And Mr. *Chevreau*, it ſeems, was ignorant that our Mr. *du Pleſſis Mornay* had already made a diſcovery of this Forgery of *Onuphrius*, and that this Pope *John* fill'd the Chair a hundred years after Pope *Joan*.

What he affirms of the *Chair not being bor'd*, I can contradict as an ocular Witneſs, having ſeen it more than once; and it is bor'd after the manner of Cloſe-ſtools. There are two of 'em, (both of Porphyry) one broken and the other entire, both made after the ſame manner. *Platina* affirms poſitively, after *Chalcondylas* an *Athenian*, who flouriſh'd about the middle of the fifteenth Century, and other approv'd Authors, that the new-elected Pope was placed in the bor'd Chair, and that the youngeſt Deacon us'd to thruſt his Hand thro' the hole, to feel whether he had the true marks of Virility: This was queſtionleſs the primitive uſe of this Chair; and tho' this Cuſtom was laid aſide by degrees, they continued however for ſome time to ſet the Popes on the ſame Chair, to put them in mind, as Mr. *Chevreau* affirms after *Faucher*, that they were ſtill ſubject to the common Infirmities of human Nature.

What Mr. *Chevreau* tells us concerning the Deputies of the Council of *Soiſſons*, ſent to Pope *Leo* IV, who was deceaſed before their arrival, is of little conſequence, ſince he mentions a Council of *Soiſſons* without any peculiar diſtinction, and without the leaſt proof, which ought to have been founded upon Manuſcripts of *uncontroverted Antiquity* and *Credit*, to extricate himſelf and his Adherents out of the Labyrinth in which they have entangled themſelves, by confounding the Succeſſion of the Popes that preceded and follow'd the Popeſs *Joan*; whence it is that whereas *Platina*, *Garenza*, and other unbyaſs'd Hiſtorians, compute twenty four Popes that bore the Name of *John*, (the reſt count but twenty three) and thus introduce an irreparable confuſion in Hiſtory.

But it is time to have done with Mr. *Chevreau*; I will only add, That it ought not to ſeem ſtrange to you that our *Popeſs* is ſometimes call'd *Anglicus*, ſometimes *Moguntinus*; the Author of the *Faſciculus Temporum* (*Werner Rolwinck* a *Weſtphalian*) has unfolded the Riddle in theſe words, *Joannes Anglicus cognomine, ſed natione Moguntinus*. Her Name was *Joan Engliſh*, but was born at *Mayence*. Neither muſt the Variations obſerv'd in Manuſcripts diſturb you, who are not ignorant of a thouſand Inſtances of what Forgeries have been introduc'd by Tranſcribers, no more than the doubtful Expreſſions you meet with in ſome Authors that relate this Hiſtory, it being to be conſider'd, that as the force of Truth did prompt them to ſpeak, ſo Fear on the other hand was a ſufficient Bridle to reſtrain them from ſpeaking too freely of the matter: But as, notwithſtanding all this, ſome Authors have broken thro' all theſe Obſtacles, and given us a poſitive and circumſtantial account of the whole matter, all the *Negative Authorities* in the World cannot be ſufficient to counterbalance the *Credit of ſo many Authentick Witneſſes*, and of a Relation ſo generally and ſolidly atteſted.

To bring up the Rear of your Arguments, you have call'd to your aid ſome of the *Proteſtant Doctors*, who deny the Story of Pope *Joan*, and among the reſt the famous Mr. *David Blondel*, a man of Learning and Wit: But, to deal frankly with you, as the Author's Name is

the

the ſtrongeſt Argument in his Book, ſo it is an unaccountable piece of Prejudice to build blindly upon the Opinion of any man not divinely inſpir'd, let his Name be never ſo great in the World.

For my part, I cannot reconcile his Argument when he confeſſes, that *the Hiſtory of the Female Pope is contain'd in the* Augsburgh *Copies of* Anaſtaſius, but in oppoſition of theſe pretends to cite (and that only in Shreds, without quoting any entire Paſſage) a certain private Copy of *Anaſtaſius*, to be met with (which we muſt take upon his credit) at *Paris*, the certainty whereof he ſeems to queſtion himſelf, when he tells us, that *it has often been miſtaken for* Platina; ſo that in the main this Book may, without much difficulty, be refuted by it ſelf, the reſt being a confus'd Medley of Chronological Cavils, and an heap of needleſs Quotations, ſerving more for Oſtentation, and to confound than demonſtrate the matter he has taken in hand.

To conclude the whole, and to tell you my Thoughts with all imaginable freedom, I have a great deal of reaſon to believe that it was rather Intereſt and Oſtentation than the Love of Truth that engag'd our Author in this Deſign; for I was aſſur'd by a Perſon of Honour living at *Paris*, who knew the Author very well, That he had it from the firſt hand, that he was hir'd to write a Treatiſe againſt the *Hiſtory* of Pope *Joan*. And as my Author is a Perſon of unqueſtionable Reputation, ſo the only thing that can be ſaid upon this Head is, that Mr. *Blondel* is not the firſt man that has been overcome by the force of Gold.

The Greeks and Armenians in Rome.

All what I am able to anſwer to your Queſtions concerning the *Armenians* and *Greeks* is, That as they have each of 'em their peculiar Ceremonies, ſo they officiate according to their own Rites; but before they can ſettle at *Rome*, are oblig'd to acknowledge the Pope's Supremacy. Some Antiquaries ſay, the little *Armenian* Church was formerly one of the Temples of the *Sun* and *Jupiter*.

The Jews at Rome.

Before the Pontificate of *Paul* IV. the *Jews* liv'd pretty eaſie in any part of *Rome*, but this Pope confin'd 'em to a certain corner of the City, whither they were to retire at Sun-ſet, forc'd them to ſell their Poſſeſſions, and allow'd them to deal only in old Clothes, and for diſtinction ſake to wear yellow Hats. *Gregory* XIII. obliged a certain number of them to hear a *Chriſtian* Sermon every *Saturday* in the Afternoon, but I had no opportunity to ſee this Aſſembly. The *Italian Jews*, and eſpecially thoſe of *Rome*, religiouſly obſerve that Cuſtom of marrying before the twentieth Year of age: Their number may at preſent amount, in *Rome*, to about ſix or ſeven thouſand.

The Ceremony of baptizing Infidels.

If any *Jew* or other *Infidel* has a mind to be baptized, the Ceremony thereof is generally put off to *Saturday* in the *Holy Week*, and then perform'd in the Church of S. *John Lateran*, becauſe they believe *Conſtantin the Great* to have been baptiz'd here. We ſaw ſix *Turks* baptiz'd; they wore white Damask Cloaks, and a large Band, with a Silver Croſs hanging at their Necks; the Cardinal that was to officiate, attended by the Canons of the Church, began the Ceremony with bleſſing the Water; then the New Converts being preſented by their reſpective Godfathers, advanced one after another, and having declar'd their willingneſs to receive Baptiſm, they lean'd over the Font, and the Cardinal baptiz'd them by pouring Water upon their Heads with a large Silver Spoon; and having given each his Name, they were, with Wax Tapers in their hands, conducted to the Chapel of the Baptiſtery, to be confirm'd, and from thence went to hear Maſs in the ſame Church.

The Ceremony of waſhing the Feet called Tenfan.

The *Thurſday* before we were preſent at the Ceremony of waſhing the Feet of thirteen Pilgrims in one of the Chapels of the *Vatican*: They appear'd all in white, with a kind of Hood and ſquare Cap, ſeated in a row upon a Bench: After they had pull'd off their Shoes and Stockins, a great Baſin was brought, and Ewers of Vermilion, one for each Pilgrim; then the Cardinal that officiated inſtead of the Pope putting their Feet in the Baſin, waſh'd and rubb'd them with his own hands, and at laſt wip'd and kiſs'd 'em: Soon after, each of them being regaled with two Golden Medals, they went all together to a certain Chamber of the Palace, to partake of a magnificent Entertainment prepar'd for them; they were placed in one row at a Table, the Cardinal dining at the ſame time at another in the ſame Room.

The Pope, [*Innocent* XI.] tho' really old and infirm, yet often makes the want of Health ſerve for a pretext to excuſe his abſence at thoſe numerous Ceremonies uſed at *Rome*.

I had it from very credible perſons, that he did in no wiſe approve of the *French* way of converting People by *Dragooning*, and ſhew'd a great deal of averſion to thoſe who pretended to propoſe certain methods of accommodation to him with the Crown of *France*.

His Retirement is the occaſion he is ſeldom ſeen by Strangers, nay, it is a Rarity to meet any of his Coaches, Footmen, or others belonging to his Retinue. If he happens to ſtir abroad, it is in a large Litter lined with Crimſon Velvet, without and within adorn'd with Gold Galoons and Fringes, the Harneſſes of the Mules being cover'd with the ſame Stuff. He ſits always alone in his Litter, with a little Table before him. All the Popes have the ſame Livery, *viz.* Scarlet, with a double Velvet Galoon of the ſame colour; even the Apartments of the *Vatican* and *Monte Cavallo* are hung with red Damask intermix'd with Edges of Gold Galoons, and adorn'd above with Gold Fringes.

Monte Cavallo.

The Situation of the Gardens of *Monte Cavallo* is very delightful, but their Contrivance is not very regular, nor are they well kept. The two Marble Horſes before this Palace are generally reputed to be made by *Phidias* and *Praxiteles*, whoſe Names are engraven upon them,

Opus Phidiæ, Opus Praxiteles.

Some will have them to be the Statues of *Bucephalus* the Horſe of *Alexander*, which theſe Artiſts made in emulation of one another, but there is a miſtake in this Tradition, conſidering that *Phidias* flouriſh'd a whole Age before *Praxiteles*, and *Alexander* the Great reign'd fifty years after *Praxiteles*.

The Capitol.

The two Marble Horſes in the Court of the Capitol were brought thither from the Theatre of *Pompey*, and the *Equeſtris Statua* of Braſs, placed here by *Paul* III., is ſuppos'd to be the Statue of *Marcus Aurelius*. The Capitol is a modern Structure, built not only upon the Ruins but even upon part of the Foundations of the ancient Fabrick, the old Foundations ſtill appearing.

The Antiquities here being ſo many, that a deſcription of 'em would require an entire Volume, I will only mention ſome of the principal ones: The *She-Wolf* giving ſuck to the two Brothers, on which is to be ſeen the mark of the Thunderbolt mention'd by *Cicero**; four great *Baſſo relievo's*, repreſenting divers paſſages of the Hiſtory of *M. Aurelius*; the *Columna roſtrata* of *Duilius*, the firſt that was honour'd with a Naval Triumph at *Rome*; the Meſſenger pulling out a Thorn in the Senate-houſe; the Buſt of *Cicero* with his Verſes; the four ancient Meaſures, one for Oyl, two for Wine, and the fourth for Grain: the Buſt of *Virgil*; *Nero*'s Nurſe holding him by the Hand; the Goddeſs of *Silence*; the God *Pan*; the three Furies; a Statue of *Ceſar* in Armour; another of *Auguſtus*; thoſe of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; the Fragments of the *Coloſſus* of *Apollo*, *Domitian*, and *Commodus*; the Lyon devouring a Horſe; and the Trophies of *Trajan*, but believ'd by others to have belong'd to *Marſus*.

* *Orat. contr. Cat.*

The Pictures in *Freſco* in the *Great Hall* are of Cavalier *Joſeph*'s Hand; in my Opinion they repreſent the Battel of the *Romans* with the *Sabines*.

See Laſſ.

I am ſomewhat doubtful what account to give you of the Pillar call'd the *Milliarium*; it is of white Marble eight foot and a half high, with a Cypher [I] mark'd on the top, and on the Chapiter a Braſs Globe of two foot diameter: It is the general Opinion, that this Pillar ſtands in the center of *Rome*, from whence they uſed to compute the diſtances from that City, divided into miles by other Pillars erected on all the great Roads of *Italy*; but there are ſeveral Arguments which contradict this Opinion, for the Column in the *Forum Romanum* was, according to *Suetonius*, *Tacitus*, and other ancient *Roman* Authors, either of *Braſs* or *Braſs gilt*, with the names of the great Roads and diſtances of the chief Cities engraven upon it, like unto which there appears nothing on the *Milliarium* in the Capitol.

The Pillar call'd Milliarium.

If you object, that perhaps the brazen *Milliarium* being loſt, this was ſet up inſtead of it; the Inſcription engraven on one of the Faces of the Pedeſtal will tell you, that it was found near the *Appian* Highway:

Columnam Milliariam primi ab Urbe lapidis in Circo ab Imperatore Veſpaſiano & Nerva reſtitutam de ruinis Suburbanis Viæ Appiæ in Capitolium tranſtulit.

And it ſeems not likely that this Column was from the center of the City tranſpos'd to a mile's diſtance from the Walls; then which way can you give a true explication of theſe Expreſſions, *Primus*, or *ſecundus*, *ab Urbe lapidis*, if

if these Stones or Pillars were not without the City, the words *ab Urbe* shewing plainly that they were not within? And since this *Milliarium* was found in one of the Suburbs near the Highway, I can't but perswade my self that it then stood in its proper place, and that the number of those first Columns was equal to that of the great Roads. Whether we suppose the gilt *Milliarium* to be the only first Pillar, and the second Columns to have been placed at the distance of one mile from it; or that the gilt Column in the center of the City was the head Mark from whence all the distances were computed, and that the next Columns were call'd the first *Milliariums*, and mark'd with an Inscription like that you see in the Capitol; it is evident from either of these Suppositions, that considering the extent of *Rome*, none of these first or second Columns but must be within the City; and that consequently this expression, *Primo ab Urbe lapide*, could not take place, but instead thereof the *primus lapis* must have been *in Urbe*, and not *ab Urbe*.

There is a very ancient Inscription in the Palace call'd *Palestrinum*, which contains the Statues of a College of *Æsculapius* and of *Health*, unto which *Salvia Marcellina* bequeath'd a Temple, a Place or Court, and a Walk, the whole situate on the *Appian Way*, near the Temple of *Mars*, *Intra milliarium primum & secundum ab Urbe euntibus*, i. e. *Between the first and second mile as you come from the City*; which words joyn'd to the Opinion of the best Antiquaries, that there was a Temple of *Mars* without the City, and on the *Via Appia*, are a sufficient inducement to convince me, that the gilt *Milliarium* was erected as a publick Mark to know where all the great Roads begun, and to compute the distance of great Cities; but that all the first Columns were each one mile distant from the Walls of *Rome*. The two following Inscriptions are engraven on the body of the *Milliarium* in the Capitol:

IMP. CÆSAR VESPASIANUS PONTIF. MAXIM. TRIB. POTESTAT. XVII. IMP. XVII. P. P. CENSOR. COS. VII. DESIGN. VIII.

IMP. NERVA CÆSAR AUGUSTUS PONTIFEX MAXIMUS TRIBUNITIA POTESTATE COSMUS III. PATER PATRIÆ REFECIT.

The Church of *Ara Cœli*.

Adjoyning to the right Wing of the Capitol is the Church known by the Name of *Ara Cœli*: They tell you, that *Augustus* having for a considerable time, but in vain, sollicited the Oracle of *Delphos* to know his Successor in the Empire, the Oracle at last declar'd, that his Mouth was stopt by the *Hebrew* Child, who was the Son of God, and True God himself; and that *Augustus* finding this to agree with *Sybillin* Prophecies, order'd an Altar to be built in the Capitol to the honour of the *Hebrew* Child, unto which he gave the Name of *Ara primogeniti Dei*, *The Altar of the First-born of God*. The before-mention'd Church being built in the same place, where *Augustus*'s Altar still remains near the Quire, had thence the Name of *Ara Cœli*.

The Chapel of S. *Pietro in Carcere*.

Near unto this place is a Chapel called S. *Pietro in Carcere*, built in the same place where S. *Peter* and S. *Paul* were kept in Prison after their Condemnation, and according to the Opinion of the best Antiquaries, is the *Tullianum* finish'd by *Servius Tullius* or *Tullius Hostilius*, a Prison for condemned Malefactors only.

Here they shew you a Spring (they tell you that the Water has a Milky taste) which, they say, gushed out of the Rock at the Prayer of St. *Peter*, in order to baptize certain Proselytes; as also an Impression in the Wall, made (as they say) by that *Apostle*'s Face, the Stone yielding as he was thrust with his Head against it by a Soldier.

Among the vast multitude of ancient Ruins behind the Capitol, is the famous *Rupes Tarpeia*, (so call'd from one *Tarpeia* a *Roman* Lady) that once so dreadful Precipice, being now not above twenty foot high; then the Triumphal Arch erected to *Titus* after his Conquest of *Jerusalem*, the *Basso relievo* representing the Candlestick, Table, Trumpets of the Jubilee, and some Vessels taken out of the Temple, were worth a Traveller's Observation. The Arch of *Constantine* is very near entire, except that you see some Statues of them without Heads, supposed to be carried privately by *Lawrence de Medicis* to *Florence*; and as the nicest Judges have observ'd a considerable difference in the beauty of the *Basso relievo*, it is suspected that some of the best Pieces were taken off when it was erected.

Triumphal Arches of *Titus* and *Constantin.*

The Lake of *Curtius* was in the middle of the *Forum Romanum*, but was lost already in *Ovid*'s time;

The Lake of *Curtius*.

Curtius ille Lacus, siccas qui sustinet aras
Nunc solida est tellus: sed fuit ante Lacus.

The vast *Amphitheatre*, call'd *Colliseum* from a Colossus that was near it, is of a circular figure on the outside, tho' the *Arena* is oval; it was capable of containing eighty five thousand Spectators, not including the twenty thousand *Excuncati* who stood in the Passages, and consequently four times as many as the Amphitheatre of *Verona*. The Pillars of the third Order, and the Pilasters of the fourth, had *Corinthian* Chapiters.

Tho' I cannot engage to answer your Questions concerning the Senate of Women instituted by *Heliogabalus*, yet I can thus far satisfie your Curiosity, that the little Edifice at *Monte Cavallo*, by some suppos'd to have been the Temple of the *Sun*, by others the Temple of *Hercules*, is suspected to have been the Meeting-place of that sage Assembly.

The Columns of *Trajan* and *Antonin* are truly magnificent Monuments of Antiquity, adorn'd with most excellent *Basso relievo*, ascending in a spiral line from the Base to the Chapiter, and representing the great actions of those great Princes. *Antonin.*

The first is compos'd of twenty four Stones, each containing eight Steps, erected by the Senate to the honour of *Trajan*, and serv'd afterwards for his *Mausoleum*, his Ashes being placed, in an Urn of Gold, on the very top of it; in lieu of this Urn was afterwards placed the Statue of St. *Peter*, of Brass gilt, by *Sixtus* V. The whole height of the Body of this Column is 128 *Roman*, or 124 *English* feet; and you ascend to the top by 123 Steps.

The second (compos'd of twenty eight Stones) was likewise built by the Senate, to the honour of *Antonin Pius*, with the Statue of that Emperour on the top of it, but has since been forced to make way for S. *Paul*, whose Statue of Brass is now placed there, and gilt like that of S. *Peter* on *Trajan*'s Pillar. The Body of this Column is 160 *Roman*, or 155 *English* feet high; and the Stairs leading to the top consist of 206 Steps. See Eng.

One day, as we were visiting the Caves, known generally by the Name of *Catacombs*, we entred into the *Mausoleum* * of *Cecilia*, the Daughter of *Metellus*, sirnamed *Creticus*, where at the very entrance of it we were shewn a Hole, into which, but a few weeks before, a certain Gentleman (D. *Maiatesta Stanati* of *Cesena*) hapned to tumble deep under ground, unperceiv'd by his Company; his Friends being amaz'd to know what was become of him, after they miss'd him, went in search of him; but whether it was the depth of the Pit, or that he was stunn'd by the Fall, he was not able to cry, or at least not sufficiently to be heard by them, so that they were forc'd to return without him: The poor Gentleman having continued in this deplorable condition for sixty hours, at last found means to open a passage, and so clambering out of the Pit with a great deal of difficulty, got to an adjacent House, where being comforted with some good Brath, he soon after recover'd his strength. * See Addi.

I am apt to believe there is no place in the World that can compare with *Rome* for subterraneous Passages; and tho' the Earth has stopt up the Entrances of some, yet are there still left a prodigious number of those Caves so generally known by the Name of *Catacombs* among the modern Authors, tho' they cannot give sufficient reason for the Etymologies they produce.

The Catacombs of *Rome*.

These Catacombs are not single Vaults, but rather whole subterraneous Cities, with turnings and windings like Streets; as for instance, those of S. *Agnes*, S. *Sebastian*'s, &c. There are some Caverns; as, those of the Gate *Pinciana*, and those near S. *John* and S. *Paul*, which seem never to have been made use of as Burial-places, and are known by the Name of *Grotto's*.

Of *Naples*.

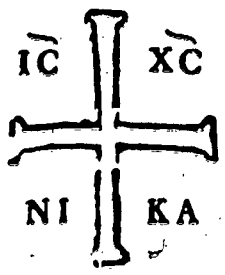
The Catacombs of *Rome* extend under all its Suburbs, but those of *Naples* only under one part of that City; these are dug out from among the Rocks, each Passage being commonly betwixt fifteen and eighteen foot wide, and twelve or fifteen foot high: the hollow Niches in both sides of the Walls are shaped like Chests, of divers sizes, placed in rows above one another without the least order, in which were laid the Bodies without any Coffins, cover'd only with flat Stones like Tiles, cemented with a kind of Mortar or mixture of Chalk and Sand. See Engl.

Tombs in the Catacombs of *Naples*.

Besides these, the Catacombs of *Naples* have divers Tombs of an indifferent bigness, with several Figures of Heads, Half-persons, &c. with the Names of the Persons entomb'd, as *Paulus*, *Nicolaus*, *Proculus*, &c. and sometimes *hic jacet* or *quiescit* underneath it.

On

On one of these Tombs I saw a blue and yellow Cross with the following Characters:



Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς νικᾷ.

Jesus Christus vincit.

Jesus Christ overcame.

Where it is to be obsery'd that the *Greeks* wrote their Σ almost like our Latin C, during the three first Ages.

Among all the Catacombs of *Rome* those of S. *Sebastian* are the greatest; their height is the same as those of *Naples*, but the passages are not above two foot and a half broad, by reason the Sandy Ground could not be easily underprop'd, which those of *Naples*, hewn out of the Rock, don't stand in need of. We saw one of these Niches open'd, where we found a Skeleton moulder'd away into whitish Ashes, yet could we perceive that the Corps had been laid on its Back.

Opinion of the Romanists concerning Catacombs.

The *Roman Catholicks* have taken a great deal of pains to perswade the World, that *these subterraneous Vaults were dug by the Christians in primitive times, to bury their Dead in, with the exclusion of all Pagans; that they used to perform their Religious Worship in them during the time of the Persecutions; and, that consequently they contain an inexhaustible store of Relicks of the Saints and Martyrs inter'd there.*

The same refuted.

Tho' the proof of this Assertion lies at the Door of the *Romanists*, which hitherto they have scarce attempted, yet will I subjoyn some few Observations which contradict this Opinion. The first thing I have to offer upon this Head is, a Description of *Horace* of the *Puteoli* or *publick Burying-places* of the poorer sort, which is exactly applicable to the Catacombs;

Hinc prius angustis ejecta Cadavera Cellis
Conservum vili portanda locabat in arca
Hoc miseræ plebi, stabat commune sepulchrum.

Sir Thomas Gresham's Roman Hist. in the Chapter of Funeral Ceremonies.

The second Observation are the words *Fata, Diis manibus, Domus æterna*, and such-like, found in the Epitaphs of some Tombs in the Catacombs, which I can't conceive to have been in the least suitable to the Simplicity and Piety of the Inscriptions of the Christian Tombs in primitive times. I remember Mr. *Spon*, that most celebrated Antiquary, is of the same Opinion, in his *Voyage to Greece*, where he looks upon the word *Æthera* and *Superi* as sufficient Proofs to shew, that the Tomb which contain'd them belong'd to a Heathen.

The Glass Vials and little Metallick Vessels frequently found in the Catacombs, seem to be additional marks of *Paganism*; and the *Romanists* pretend those Vessels to have contain'd the Blood of the Martyrs, (this is rather a Conjecture than a Proof) whereas it is certain that the *Roman* Pagans used to put *Lachrymatories* (in which they gather'd the Tears of certain Women hired for that purpose) into their Urns and Tombs.

I remember a certain passage in *Tertullian*'s *Apologetic*, which does not at all agree with the Pretensions of the *Roman* Church; he says, The *Pagans* used to take the dead Bodies of the *Christians* out of their Tombs, and to drag them about the Streets; whence it seems very probable that they would have depriv'd them of their Caves, had they discover'd them: Besides, How can it be conceiv'd that the *Christians* should be able to dig those vast subterraneous Passages without being perceiv'd? and, How could they dispose of the Rubbish? They will tell us perhaps, that they did not do it in secret, and that the Sand of the Catacombs was sold by the poor *Christians*, who for this reason were nicknam'd *Arenarii*, but this is not applicable to the Catacombs of *Naples*; besides that, it does not appear that the poor *Christians* were the only People that imploy'd themselves in the selling of Sand about the City.

The Cyphers of the *Name of Christ*, *Palm-branches*, *Doves of Peace*, *Crosses*, *Crowns* and other Marks of Christianity to be seen upon the Stones of these Sepulchres, are so far from proving that these Burial-places were peculiar to the *Christians*, that they rather appear to be intended as Marks to distinguish them from the *Infidels*.

The same may be said of the *Christian* Epitaphs, the Question being not whether the Bodies of some *Christians* were buried here, (which is beyond all dispute) but whether all others were excluded from being inter'd in the same Vaults, set apart for the dregs of the People.

The Pictures and Altars of different sorts and ages, found in the Catacombs of *Naples* and *Rome*, have been the Products either of the zealous Covetousness of the Popes, who looking upon the Catacombs as a profitable Source of Relicks, have repair'd and made such alterations in them as they found most agreeable to encourage the concourse of the Pilgrims to the Catacombs: *Panciroli* gives us a large account of these Reparations. Most of the Bodies now to be seen in the Catacombs of *Naples* were buried there forty years ago, during the great Plague that raged in that City.

The pretended Temple of *Bacchus*.

About a hundred and sixty paces distant from the Catacombs of S. *Agnes*, stands an ancient *Temple* of a circular figure, reputed by some to have been the *Temple* of *Bacchus*, by reason of the representations of certain Vines on the Roof, and some Vine-branches, Grapes, Vessels, and such-like Instruments on a *Tomb* of *Porphyry* in the same *Temple*; but it being certain that *Bacchus* did not die at *Rome*, its nearness to the Church of S. *Agnes* (built by *Constantine*) seems to be a sufficient proof to believe that it was built by the same Emperour, to serve for a Baptistery to the said Church.

The Church of St. *Agnes*.

The *Tabernacle* of S. *Agnes*'s Church is supported by four Pillars of the best polished Porphyry: the Statue of *Agnes* you see there, is supposed to have been anciently the Statue of some *Pagan Deity*, the Mantle whereof is chiefly remarkable.

As it is beyond the purpose of a moderate *Treatise* to enter upon an exact description of all the Antiquities and other Curiosities I obsery'd in the Cabinets here, so I will content my self with mentioning only the most remarkable ones of those in the Cabinet of Mr. *Bellori*, which for their number exceed all that ever I saw of this kind. His *Fortuna Panthea* of Brass is not above half a foot high, this little Goddess being a composition of all the Characters of Divinity appropriated to other Gods, for she appears with the Beauty of *Venus*, *Juno*'s Crown, *Diana*'s Crescent, the Mitre of *Isis*, the Horn of Plenty of *Ceres*, *Minerva*'s Robe, the Wings of *Fame*, *Cupid*'s Quiver, the Goat-skin of *Bacchus*, the Serpent of *Esculapius*, *Fortune*'s Rudder, and several other Characteristical Marks of Deities; the *Faustina* deified with her Veil strew'd with Stars; the *Magna Mater*, or *Natura rerum parens*, suckling Animals of different kinds at all her Breasts; the Goddess *Fortune* with the Horn of Plenty in one, and the Nail of Necessity in the other hand; the Bust of a young *Roman*, with his Golden Bull hanging at his Neck; the *Cistrum*, or an Instrument used by the *Egyptians* to call the People together to the Sacrifice, and afterwards introduc'd among the *Romans* for the same purpose; it is a most curious piece of Antiquity, resembling a small Racket, the Wood pierc'd with four pieces of Brass like Cords or Rods, which play and make a noise; an ancient brown Earthen Vessel extreamly fine, and of the same sound as the true Porcelane, with Pictures upon it representing the ancient Customs of Bathing; among others you see a Woman holding in one hand a *Strigil* or Instrument for rubbing off Sweat, and in the other a *Guttum* or Vessel with sweet-scented Liquors; not to mention the *Urns*, *Sepulchral Lamps*, *Lachrymatories*, *Pictures*, &c.

Mr. *Bellori*'s Cabinet of Rarities.

Father *Kircher*'s Cabinet was once one of the most celebrated in *Europe*, and notwithstanding its being mangled of late years, retains still a good Collection of Natural Curiosities and Mechanical Engines.

Kircher's Cabinet.

The *Roman College*, or chief House of the *Jesuites* at *Rome*, (where the said Cabinet is to be seen) is perhaps one of the finest Palaces in *Rome*; the Library is numerous, but without any ancient Manuscripts, or other Rarities. In the Great Hall of this Society you see the Picture of the famous Jesuit *Garnet*, who was executed in *England* on account of the Gunpowder Plot, with an Angel on his side shewing him the way to Heaven, open'd to receive him. This Hall is adorn'd with the Pictures of many other Jesuites that suffer'd Martyrdom.

The Roman College.

During the last three days in the *Holy Week*, we saw the Streets of *Rome* crowded with Processions and Penitents with Hoods over their Heads, some clad in white, others in violet colour, blue, yellow, and other colours; some lashing their naked Bodies with Whips of small twisted Cords, which made more noise than they did execution; 'tis sufficiently known that some of 'em are hir'd for this purpose: However the concourse of Pilgrims was not so great this Year as it had been at some other times. I remember I read in an account of *Trinity Hospital*, that in 1600. (being the last Jubilee Year) that House entertain'd or took care to provide for (according to Custom) 440500 Men, and 2500 Women. The

Italian

Italian Pilgrims are entertain'd here three days, but Foreigners four days, and are serv'd at Table by Princes, Princesses, Cardinals, and the Pope himself.

One thing more I must not pass by in silence, *viz.* that we never met the Sacrament in *Rome* or any other Town of *Italy* except at *Venice*, where we saw it twice carried in great state under a magnificent Canopy, attended by a great number of Torches.

I must do this Justice to the *Italians*, that they are not possess'd with the Spirit of Persecution, at least not against Strangers; and I don't remember that in all our Travels thro' *Italy*, not excepting even *Rome* and *Loretto*, we were in the least affronted on the account of worshiping the *Relicks* or *Images*, the worst we ever heard upon that score being stiled now and then *Non sono Christiani, no sound Christians.*

Being oblig'd to leave *Rome*, I will conclude my Letter, assuring you that I am,

Sir,

Rome, *May* 4. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXVII.

SIR,

THE Way betwixt *Rome* and *Viterbo* has little remarkable, except some Remnants (towards the Wood of *Boccano*) of the *Via Emilia*, which we found of the same breadth with the other Consular High-roads.

The ancient *Lacus Cyminus* (now Lake *de Vico*) is at the foot of a very high Hill, but of an easie ascent, bearing the same Name with the Lake. It is almost cover'd with Sycamores and Chesnut-trees, and produces vast store of *Primroses*, *Narcissus's*, *Hyacinths*, and many other Flowers.

The City of *Viterbo*. The City of *Viterbo* is built of Stone, and surrounded with a Wall: Besides its Steeples, it has eight or ten square Towers, built by the Inhabitants for retreating places during the incestine Commotions of the *Guelph* and *Gibellin* Factions. The following Inscription on the *Townhouse* gives you an account of the restauration of the ancient *Tuscan* Name *Viterbo*:

Its ancient Inscriptions.

Desiderius ultimus Insubrium Rex Longulam, Vetuloniam *atque* Volturnam *mœnibus cingit & Etruriæ priore nomine inducto* Viterbium *multitudine capitis inducta appellari jubet.* Sal. An. DCC. LXXIII.

Schoder says he saw another ancient Inscription:

M. T. Ciceronem ob egregias ejus virtutes singularesque animi dotes pertotum Orbem nostrum armis virtuteque perdomitum; salvum & incolumem esse jubemus.

In the before-mention'd place is to be seen another ancient Inscription, confirming the Donation made by the Countess *Maud* to the See of *Rome*:

Æternæ memoriæ inclytæ Mathildi, quæ ob præstabile Religionis studium ac pietatem sed: Pontifex suum hoc patrimonium Divi Petri in Thuscia dein nuncupatum elargitus, & in veterem Urbis ejus splendorem intuens Paschalis II. Bledem Pontif. Max. ejus Metropolim, ut ante Viterbium constituit. An. S. 1113.

It would be a fine thing for the *Romanists* if they had so good a Plea for the Donation of *Constantine*; the Latin Version of it is to be seen in *Barth. Picerna* and *Aug. Steuchus*, pretended to be done after the Greek Original in the *Vatican*; it is also inserted in *Gratian's* Decretals, but S. *Antonin* of *Florence* assures us it is not in the old Decretals; and divers noted Authors have refuted this Fable.

This puts me in mind of a witty Repartee of *Hieronymo Donato*, *Venetian* Ambassadour to *Alexander* VI, who being ask'd by the Pope where their Title of Soveraignty to the *Adriatick Gulph* was recorded? replied, That *His Holiness could find their Title written on the back of the Donation of* Constantine.

Notwithstanding the Inscription of *Desiderius* mentions only three Cities united under the Name of *Viterbo*, yet I remember that this City is sometimes stiled *Tetrapolis*, and its Inhabitants *Quaterni Populi*; the Names of the four Cities are express'd in a Distich written on the top of the Stair-case in the Town-house:

Hanc Fanum, Arbanum, Vetuloni, Longula, *quondam Oppida dant urbem: prima Elementa.* F. A. U. L.

Some deduce the Origin of the ancient *Viterbium* from *Isis* and *Osiris*, for which they produce some Greek and Latin Inscriptions, but being inform'd by credible persons that they were suppositious, and suppos'd to have been contriv'd by *John Annius* the *Dominican*, known commonly by the Name of *Annius Viterbiensis* (an Author of no great reputation) I will not insert 'em here.

In one of the Halls of the *Town-house* you see a Picture representing an innumerable swarm of Locusts, which darkned the Sun and cover'd the Earth, devouring every thing they met with upon the Ground about *Viterbo*. This hapned 1526. *Mezeray* relates such another Story, which hapned in *France* 873, and was follow'd by a great Plague; and *Osorius* another Instance of the same nature, which, he says, hapned in *Africk* in the Year of the World 3825.

Montefiascone. We were no sooner come within sight of *Montefiascone*, a little Town seated on a little Hill within eight miles of *Viterbo*, but the Children came out and ask'd us, whether we would not take a view of the *Est, est, est?* The Story, I know, has been mention'd by others, but perhaps not with all its circumstances: A certain Abbot or Bishop travelling from *Germany* to *Italy*, used to send a Servant before, to know in which Inn he could meet with the best Wine, and to mark it with the word *Est* over the Door. Coming to *Montefiascone*, the Servant was so highly pleas'd with the *Muscatello*, that he writ three *Ests* over the Door, which inviting his Master to drink more plentifully than he used to do, he fell sick and died on the spot; his Monument stands in S. *Flavian's* Church, about two hundred paces from the Town; he is represented with a Mitre on his Head, with two Scutcheons (*quarterly in the first a Lyon, in the second two Testes, the Shield not blazon'd*) and as many Drinking-glasses on each side of him; at his Feet you see the following Inscription in *Gothick* Characters, by way of Epitaph, made in all probability by his Servant:

Est, Est, Est, propter nimium Est, John de Fuc: *D. meus mortuus est.*

that is,

Est, Est, Est, for taking too much Est, my Master John de Fuc.* *lost his Life.*

* His Name was *John de Fuc*, the Name of a great Family in *Augsburg*.

All the way betwixt *Montefiascone* and *Bolsena* we pass'd all along near the Banks of the Lake of that name; it is of an oval figure, and forty miles in compass; it contains two Islands, call'd *Martana* and *Passentina*; the first whereof is celebrated for the banishment of *Amalasuntha* the Daughter of *Theoderic* King of the *Goths*, who was afterwards murther'd there by the command of her Cousin *Theodat*, whom she had made her Associate in the Government.

Bolsena. *Bolsena* is a very indifferent Town, formerly an Episcopal See, till it was translated to *Orvieto*. Behind it you see the Ruins of the ancient *Volsinium*, which, as *Pliny* relates, was burnt by Lightning.

Aquapendente. The Country betwixt *Bolsena* and *Aquapendente* is the worst in the whole World; the last of these two is poor and almost desolate, yet has got the Title of an Archbishoprick ever since the destruction of *Castro*. *Centino*, a little Village at the foot of the Hill *Radicofani*, is the utmost Boundary of the Pope's Dominions on that side; the Town and Citadel, built by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, bearing the Name of the said Hill upon which they stand, are for half the Year conceal'd in the Clouds. In our way hence towards *Siena*, we saw for eight or ten miles nothing but barren Mountains; but as we came towards S. *Quirico*, the Country began to grow better and better, tho' this lasted not long, for near *Torrinieri* the Land grew worse than before, and continued thus, with some small alteration, till we came *Siena*.

The Town and Citadel of *Radicofani*.

Siena. *Siena*, the third City, and perhaps the most pleasantly situated, upon a little fertile Hill, in all *Tuscany*; its Air is excellent, the Streets, tho' not level, yet very neat, being pav'd with Bricks laid sideways; the Houses are handsomly built, and the Waters very good; besides that, the *Tuscan* Language is spoken here in its utmost purity, without the roughness of the *Florentine* Dialect.

Its Cathedral. The Cathedral of *Siena* is a *Gothick* Structure, but very beautiful, and one of the most perfect among all the great Churches of *Europe*, being cover'd within and without with Marble;

Marble; the Pavement is of black and white Marble put together in the Quire. On the Corridor running round the body of the inside of the Church, are to be seen the Statues of the Popes, and among the rest there is one smooth-chin'd Creature, which, as 'tis said, was placed there in the room of the Popess *Joan*: *Baronius* says, it was taken away and broken to pieces; *Launoy* says it was to be seen in 1634, and *Blondel* acknowledges the same, as also the Statue erected in the place where Pope *Joan* was deliver'd; Father *Maillon* confesses the same Statue, and says, that the Name *Johannes* VIII. *femina Anglica* was added to it. All the Authors that ever I saw, who inveigh against the Story of this female Pope, and mention this Statue, acknowledge that it is still remaining, or at least, that it really subsisted heretofore. This Structure was begun by *Duccio*, and finish'd by *Dominic Beccefumi*. That part next the Quire is beautified with the Pictures of *Abraham*'s Sacrifice, and the passage of the *Israelites* thro' the Red Sea; the arch'd Roof is Azur'd, intermix'd with Stars of Gold.

From the Church you pass into the place where the Library was kept formerly; here we saw those glorious Pieces in *Fresco* representing the Life of *Pius* II, design'd by *Raphael*, but painted by *Peter Perugin* his Master, with *Bernardin* and *Pinturicchio*; most of the Faces represent persons then alive; among others, the Pope's Soul soaring upwards in the shape of a *Paradise* Bird, and the *Hermit* gazing on it, is an exquisite piece.

I will not detain you with the Story of S. *Katherine* of *Siena*, but I can't pass by in silence the old Citadel with fifteen or twenty square Towers; among these the Tower of *Mangiana* is mightily extoll'd for its height, but it is by those who have seen but few others. The Arms of *Siena* are, the famous *She-Wolf* that gave suck to *Romulus* and *Remus*, founded upon a Fable, that *Siena* was built by the Children of *Remus*.

The Arms of Siena.

Travelling betwixt *Siena* and the River *Arno*, we found the Ground grow better and better the nearer we came to the River, especially about *Camiano*, *Granajola*, *Ponte d'Era*, and between *Pontgibon* and *Pisa*. Near *Pontgibon* or *Poggi-bonzi* (famous only for its Tobacco) we met whole troops of young Girls going from House to House singing and wishing every where a merry *May*; their Songs are compos'd of a vast number of pleasant Wishes, every Stanza concluding with *a merry, merry May*.

On several Sandy Hills near *Certaldo* we saw great quantities of divers sorts of Shells, as we had before at *Monte Mario*, a mile from *Rome*, in the *Alps* in *France* and other places; the same have been observ'd by *Olearius*, *Steno*, *Cambden*, *Speed*, and others. I did receive your Observations with a great deal of satisfaction, but, to deal frankly with you, I must tell you, that I differ with you in Opinion; for if these Shells were the Remainders of the Deluge, I see no reason why the same should not rather have been left in the Valleys, and more universally spread upon the Surface of the Earth, whereas now they are only gather'd into heaps in certain places. Nor see I any sufficient cause to have recourse to supposed Inundations, Tempests, and Eruptions; for tho' some such thing might rationally be concluded in reference to certain places subject to Earthquakes, (as for instance, the *New Vesuvius* or *Monte Nuovo*) yet as the same reason does not hold in all other places where these Shells are found, so the Solution of this *Phænomenon* may with much more ease be look'd for in the same property upon the Land which produces these Shells at Sea. You will perhaps tell me, that Shells are inseparable from Fishes, Snails, &c. but you may easily answer your self, if you will but consider, that Shells have been found in the Stomachs, Kidneys, and other parts of Human Bodies. But we will proceed on our Journey.

Shells found on the Hills.

See Mr. Ray's Travels.

Pisa is the second City of *Tuscany*, formerly a considerable Republick, seated in a level Plain on the River *Arno*, dignified with the Title of an Archbishoprick and an University; its Streets are spacious, streight, and well pav'd with broad Stones, and generally well built. The *Arno*, which is navigable here, and twice as broad as the *Tyber* at *Rome*, divides the City into two parts; it is at present very poor and ill-peopled, its desolate condition must be attributed to their Wars with the *Florentines*, who, after the Conquest of this place, founded the Harbour of *Leghorn* upon the Ruin of *Pisa*.

Pisa.

The Cathedral here is very like that of *Siena*, but not quite so large; it is a regular Structure, and overcrusted with curious Marble. The Baptistery is of a circular figure a hundred and eighty foot in circumference, and arch'd, ending into a *Cupola*: By an Inscription on a Pillar of this Baptistery it appears, that the Church was finish'd 1153. Here is an Eccho which magnifies a noise to such a degree, that the sound thereof lasteth as long as the tinkling of a great Bell. Some Travellers make a great account of the Leaning Tower, which some pretend to appear leaning on all sides, by a peculiar Art of the Architect, when in effect its Inclination is only on one side, occasion'd by the sinking of the Foundation: Its whole height is a hundred and eighty eight feet, and is of the figure of an exact Cylinder. I let down a Plummet from the Balcony on the top, on that side where it inclines most, and after several tryals both to the right and left, found that the Lead touch'd fifteen foot distant from the Foundation.

The Cathedral.

The Baptistery.

The leaning Tower has 293 Steps to the top.

The famous Burying-place of *Siena*, call'd *Campo Santo*, (because the Earth was brought from the *Holy Land* 1228) is a kind of Cloyster, a hundred and ninety paces long, and sixty six broad. On a Wall under one of the Portico's I saw an Inscription, being a Decree of the Senate of *Pisa* upon the Death of *Cæsar*, ordering their Subjects to appear in Mourning for a whole Year, and to abstain from all publick Divertisements.

The Camp: Santo.

I will not trouble you with their Physick-garden, as having nothing memorable in it, but must not quite forget the Knights of S. *Stephen*, who have their Residence here: They must be of Noble Blood, and born in Wedlock; they vow Conjugal Chastity, and say a hundred *Pater Nosters* and *Ave Maria's* every day. This Order was founded by the Great Duke *Cosmo* I. 1561, the sixth of *August*, after he had gain'd the Battel of *Marciano*; his Statue stands directly opposite (in the Place) to the Church.

The Order of S. Stephen.

Leghorne is about fourteen miles distant from *Pisa*, the interjacent Country being very level, but woody, fill'd with Oaks, Cork-trees, and wild Myrtles: They tell you that these Woods were formerly all cover'd by the Sea, which reach'd within three miles of *Pisa*, where you see now a large Church at the entrance of these Woods, which, they tell you, was built at the same place where S. *Peter* was shipwreck'd one day when he was abroad fishing. I need not tell you that *Legherne* is a modern City, built on a level Ground, and strengthned with good Fortifications faced with Brick-work; its Streets are large, streight and uniform, the Houses generally of the same height, and painted on the outside.

Leghorne.

In our Journey from *Legherne* to *Lucca*, passing a second time thro' *Pisa*, we saw, three miles on this side of it, the craggy Mount S. *Julian*, the Boundary betwixt *Tuscany* and the Republick of *Lucca*.

Lucca.

This City is most pleasantly seated in a fruitful Plain of fifteen or twenty miles, enclosed by very rich and well-peopled Hills; its Fortifications are regular, and faced with Bricks; we walked round the Ramparts in an hours time: But tho' it is not so big as *Pisa*, it contains many goodly Houses, and is very well peopled. They shewed us the Palace of the Republick, where the *Gonfalonier* or Standard-bearer, with the seven *Anziani* or Counsellors, lodge and eat together.

The State of *Lucca* is a Fief of the Empire; its Government is Aristocratical, manag'd by the Council of two hundred and forty Nobles, divided into two Bodies, who rule alternatively every six months, with the *Gonfalonier* at their head. This chief Magistrate bears some resemblance to the Doges of *Venice* or *Genoa*, but continues no longer than two months in this Dignity, whereby he reaps no other Profit but the maintaining of his Table at the publick charge: His Dress is a Robe of Crimson Velvet, with a Bonnet and Stole, and his Title is *His Excellency*; his Guard consists of sixty *Switzers*, and he may not be chosen to the same Dignity till after six years. Their Arsenal is well stor'd with Arms, and those very well kept.

In the Cathedral we saw the Chapel of the *Volto Santo*. They tell you, that *Nicodemus* having several times attempted in vain to paint the Crucifix, was at last assisted by the Angels, who guided his Pencil to finish it; they are not able to tell you how this Picture came to S. *Fredian's* Church, but are positive that it remov'd from thence to the Cathedral, where it hung in the Air, in the place where we saw it, till they built an Altar under it, on which it rested, and about which they afterwards built a magnificent Chapel. This Crucifix is in such high esteem with them, that they stamp it on their Coin, with the Arms of the Signiory.

The Cathedral.

In S. *Fredian's* Church is a Marble Table seventeen foot long, six and a half broad, and fourteen inches thick, the whole Story whereof is express'd in the following Inscription:

S. Fredian's Church.

O quisquis legis, lapis es, in lapis hic moveas in admirationem & cultum D. Frediani, *qui templo huic construendo, molem hanc in montibus ad quartum lapidem nactus viribus impar, sed spiritu fervens; mirâ facilitate manibus humerisque suis, & Canonicorum in plaustrum binis indomitis vacculis torchendum impositum, sexto salutis seculo, hac in æde statuit sacrum monumentum.*

In the midst of the same Church is to be seen a Tombstone with this Inscription:

Hic jacet Corpus Sancti Riccardi Regis Anglie.
Here lies the Body of St. Richard *King of* England.

Who this Royal Saint was, I am not able to imagine; for *Richard* I. (sirnam'd *Lyonheart*) died in *France*, and was interr'd in the Abby of *Fontevraut*; *Richard* II. was, after his dethroning, stabb'd at *Pomfret*, and buried first in St. *Paul's*, from whence he was carried to *Langley*, and afterwards to *Westminster*; and *Richard* III. being slain in the Battel of *Bosworth* in *Leicestershire*, his Body was interr'd in the City of *Leicester*; and I don't remember ever to have heard any thing of a King *Richard* before the Union of the *Heptarchy*.

In the Church of S. *Austin* you see an Image of *our Lady*, with the little Jesus in her left Arm, concerning which they tell you the following Story: A certain Soldier having lost all his Money at Dice, fell into such a rage, that after having given a great many ill words to the Image of our Lady placed then against the Wall of the Guard-house, he threw a Stone level'd directly at the Head of the little Jesus; but our Lady perceiving the danger, thrust the Child in an instant from her right Arm into the left, where it remains ever since; the insolent Soldier was swallow'd by the Earth, the hole being shewn to this day. About the time of the Reformation divers Noble Families retir'd from *Lucca* to *Geneva*.

Half way betwixt *Lucca* and *Florence* stands *Pistoya*, viz. twenty miles from each; the Country thereabouts is extreamly fertile, and well cultivated, but the City is almost desolate, having lost all the Trade with its Liberty: It is much larger than *Lucca*, its large and regular Streets and beautiful Buildings are sufficient testimonies of its former Grandeur.

The Inhabitants of *Pistoya* have a most profound Veneration for S. *James* and his Relicks; the Altar of his Chapel in the Cathedral is cover'd with Plates of Silver, and adorn'd with very rich Lamps; here I observ'd in a peculiar Prayer directed to him these words, *Tu qui primatum tenes inter Apostolos, imo qui eorum primus*; i. e. *Thou that wert the first, nay, the chief among the Apostles*, &c.

The Guelph and Ghibeline Factions.

There are not a few who pretend to look for the Original of the *Guelph* and *Gibellin* Factions among the *Pistoyans*, where, they say, liv'd two Brothers call'd *Guelph* and *Gibel*, the elder of which sided with Pope *Gregory* IX, whilst the younger embrac'd the Interest of the Emperour *Barbarossa*; but, in my opinion, those hit much nearer the mark who derive the Names of these two famous Factions from the illustrious and potent Families of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines* (upon the Borders of *Germany* and *Italy*) who were at open Enmity a considerable time with each other, before one declar'd for the Emperour, and the other for the Pope. I am,

Sir,

Florence, *May* 7. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXVIII.

SIR,

MY last being written the next day after our arrival at *Florence*, I will in this give you a brief description of this City, and afterwards communicate such Observations as I have had occasion to make during our stay here.

Florence.

Florence, the capital City of *Tuscany*, dignified with the Title of an Archibishoprick, and the ordinary Residence of the Great Dukes, is seated upon the River *Arno*, as it were within the *Arena* of an Amphitheatre, being enclos'd at four or five miles distance (except on the side toward *Pistoya*) with very fruitful Hills, rising by an easie ascent till they unite with the high Mountains: If you take a full view from one of the Towers of *Florence*, of the Villages and Houses of Pleasure in the circumjacent Plain and Hills, it seems to be only one continuation of Suburbs, this Valley being perhaps the best peopled place of that kind in the Universe.

I was credibly inform'd, that the circumference of the Walls of *Florence* is 15240 fathoms, and that the River *Arno*, which runs thro' it, is 500 fathoms broad; so that adding the double breadth of the River to the compass of the Walls, the whole circuit of *Florence* amounts to 16240 fathoms, three of which are equivalent to 5 feet 8 inches *English* measure, according to which computation it amounts to 36675 feet: It is almost of a circular figure. The same person told me, that there are in *Florence* about 8800 Houses, 60000 Souls, 22 Hospitals, 89 Convents, 84 Fraternities, 152 Churches, 18 Halls belonging to Merchants, 72 Courts of Justice, 6 Columns, 2 Pyramids, 4 Bridges, 7 Fountains, 17 Places or Squares, and 160 publick Statues. The Streets are pav'd with broad pieces of a grey Stone call'd *Pietra-forte*, and most of the Houses are built of the same; these are brought from the neighbouring Quarries.

The Great Duke's Palace.

The Great Duke's Palace (call'd *Pitti*) is a most noble Structure, but has this defect, that the Court is not spacious enough in proportion of the Structure, which being 120 foot high to the Cornish of the third Order, can't be seen without trouble in any part of the Court, which is only 160 foot long, and 140 broad.

As we were entring the old Ducal Palace, (the receptacle of all the so much celebrated Curiosities) we took a full view of the four Statues of white Marble on the Bridge of the Trinity, representing the four Seasons of the Year, made by *Michael Angelo*: The chief Curiosities we observ'd here were, the *David*, the Work of *Michael Angelo*; the *Judith*, by *Donatello*; the *Sabin* Women carried off by violence, by *John* of *Bologna*; the *Perseus* of Brass, by *Coligni*; the *Hercules* and *Cacus*, by *Bandinelli*; and the Brass Statue on Horseback of *Cosmo* I. by *John Bologna*; all these are most exquisite Pieces. The three *Basso-relievo's* on the Pedestal of that Statue represent *Cosmo* I. kneeling before the Pope as he was giving him the Title of *Great Duke*; the same Prince entring *Florence* in a triumphant Chariot, and the resignation of the Soveraignty to him by the Senate of *Florence*. The great Gallery of the same Palace is four hundred foot long, where we pass'd betwixt two rows of ancient Statues and Busts. Above them, against the Wall, we saw the Pictures of the ancient Philosophers on one side, and those of great Generals on the other.

Among these Statues, that suppos'd to be *Scipio's*, in a Robe of Brass, excels all the rest, the Characters on the Hem of his Garment are of the old *Hetruscan*; the *Leda* embracing *Jupiter* with a Pleasure mix'd with Shame; the *Bacchus*, with a Copy of the same by *Michael Angelo* not inferiour to the Original; *Julia* the Daughter of *Augustus*, the *Pomona*, the *Venus*, the *Diana*, the *Apollo*, another *Bacchus*, the Peasant striking a Boar, the Busts of all the Emperours to *Galienus*, and especially those of *Adrian*, *Pertinax* and *Severus*, are excellent Pieces.

In the Chambers behind this Gallery we observ'd in the first a great branch'd Candlestick of Amber, a delicious Column of Oriental Alabaster, a Rhinoceros's Horn of an extraordinary bigness, abundance of *Basso-relievo's*, and a great number of ancient Sculptures, Medals, Idols, Sepulchral Lamps, Stones, Minerals, and other natural Curiosities: The second is fill'd with Pictures; the third, call'd the *Mathematical Chamber*, (here used to be kept the Iron Nail, one half of which was pretended to be transmuted into Gold, but is not shewn now, it having been found to be no more than a Sodering) has among other things Globes and Spheres of seven foot diameter: The fourth has likewise nothing but Pictures, which excell those of the second, except the Ornaments of Ivory, Amber, and precious Stones in a peculiar Cabinet, and among the rest a large rough Emerauld rooted in its Rock, and the Platform of *Legborne* on a Table of *Lapis Lazuli*: In the fifth Chamber you see the Pictures of most of the illustrious persons of the present Age; among the Generals are *Cromwell*, *Monk*, and the late Earl of *Ossery*: The sixth contains a hundred and thirty seven Pictures of the most famous Painters, done by themselves: The seventh is filled with Porcelane Vessels, and the five following with all manner of surprizing Curiosities, and great store of Arms of all Countries; the Horse-Tail of twenty foot long, presented to the last Great Duke by the late *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain*, is none of the least among these Rarities;

Rarities; but the most precious things are preserv'd in an Octagonal Apartment call'd the *Tribune*, built by *Buontalenti*, being twenty foot in diameter; the Floor is pav'd with Marble of divers colours, artificially joyn'd like inlaid Work; the Hangings are of Crimson Velvet, the Windows of Crystal, and the inside of the Lanthorn cover'd with Mother of Pearl. You have questionless heard of that most celebrated *Diamond*, which weighs 139 Carats; *Tavernier* says, it is pity that the Water of it is yellowish. Among the other Rarities, the following are the choicest; an antique Head of *Julius Cæsar*, of one entire *Turquoise* of the bigness of an Egg; a Cupboard fill'd with Vessels of Agate, *Lapis Lazuli*, Cornelian, and Rock-Crystal set with Gold and Precious Stones; a large Table and Cabinet of inlaid Work of Oriental Jasper, Calcedony, Rubies, Topazes, and other Precious Stones, excellently well contriv'd; a Collection of the best Medals; a vast number of carv'd and engrav'd Pieces nicely kept; some Masterpieces of the most excellent Painters; six very beautiful *Grecian Statues*; two Wrestlers; the Peasant whetting his Bill, and at the same time listning to the Conspirators, *Catiline*'s Associates; a *Tauro*, a *Cupid* sleeping, a *Venus* six foot high, and another five foot, both of white Marble, the finest piece of Workmanship in the World, the Head turns a little towards her left Shoulder, with her right Hand before her Bosom, yet at some little distance, and covering her privy parts with the other, but without touching it; she stands bowing gently, with her right Knee forward, the better to hide her self. This bashful posture is accompanied with all the marks of Modesty and Chastity in her Face, and with an incomparable Beauty, Sweetness and Youthful Air; her Neck is exceeding beautiful; and, in short, this Masterpiece is the most exquisite imitation of the Perfection of Nature. On the Marble Base are these words, ΚΛΕΟΜΕΝΗΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΟΔΩΡΟΥ ΑΘΗΝΑΙΟΣ ΕΠΟΙΕΣΕΝ. *Made by* Cleomenes, *Son of* Apollodorus *the* Athenian.

From this Palace passing thro' a small Gallery, we came into the ancient Palace of the Republick, where the Great Duke's Wardrobe is kept; and among other things we saw there the rich Coach made for the Solemnity of the Great Duke's Marriage. The great Hall of this Palace is a hundred and seventy two foot long, and seventy four broad.

The Cathedral is a large and stately Building, tho' for the most part of a *Gothick* Architecture, being overcrusted both within and without with the finest polish'd Marble of divers colours: Its whole length is four hundred and ninety feet, and its height, to the top of the Cross on the Globe, three hundred and eighty feet; the worst is, that it has no Frontispiece.

The rarest Statues in this Church are, St. *James*, by *Sansovin*; the *Adam* and *Eve*, by *Bandinello*; the Statue of *God the Father*; the *dead Christ*, and an Angel supporting him, by the same hand, on the high Altar: The *Eve* is somewhat larger than *Adam*. The *Resurrection* painted in the Dome is a most excellent Piece, tho' the Criticks find fault with *Fred. Zuccharo*, who made it, because he has represented the rising Bodies with Clothes on: Besides this, we took notice of a worse Blunder in the same Church, committed by no less famous a Painter than *Paul Uccello*, who has painted a General * on Horseback, and his Horse resting on two Legs on the same side, whilst the other two are in motion.

* *Acciaioli* an Florentine, General of the Pisans.

The pieces of the Rods of *Aaron* and *Moses*, shewn in the Cathedral, are question'd by some, because these Rods are said to be entire at S. *John de Laterans*.

The Steeple of the Cathedral.

The Steeple (near the Church) is a Tower of a hundred and eighty feet high, overcrusted with square pieces of red, black, and white Marble, and beautified with divers excellent Statues: The old Bald Man, by *Donatelli*, is highly esteem'd.

The Baptistery.

The Baptistery is not unlike that of *Pisa*, and cover'd like the Church; some say it was anciently the Temple of *Mars*, and that after its being converted into a Baptistery, it was dedicated to S. *John Baptist*. The *Mosaick* Work on the arch'd Roof is excellent Work, and among the Statues here, the *Magdalen* of Wood, by *Donatelli*, excels all the rest: But the most surprizing Pieces are, the three Gates of Brass, wherein are represented some sacred Histories in *Bassorelievo*. The Back-Gate with this Inscription, *Andreas Ugolini de Pisa me fecit* 1330, is not altogether so beautiful as the other two, which put *Michael Angelo* into such a Rapture, that he said, they deserv'd to be placed at the entrance of Heaven:

The famous Gates.

Dum cernit vivas aurato ex ære nitentes
In templo Michael Angelus, *obstupuit*;
Attonitusque diu, sic clara silentia rupit;
O Divinum Opus! O Janua digna Polo!

The Statue of Justice near the Church of the *Trinity* is supported by a Column of Porphyry said to have stood formerly in the *Pantheon*. In the Court before the middle Gate of the Baptistery, you see two Columns of Porphyry at some distance from one another, and yet chain'd together, which, they say, were brought from *Majorca*, and bestow'd upon the *Florentines* by the *Pisans*, for the assistance they gave them in the conquest of part of that Isle. Near them stands another Column erected in memory of a pretended Miracle wrought by the Body of S. *Zenobius* when it was remov'd from S. *Lawrence* to the Cathedral Church, for his Shrine touching by chance the trunk of a dry Tree that lay upon the ground, it blossom'd immediately, and produc'd Fruit.

S. *Lawrence*'s Church and Chapel.

The Church of S. *Lawrence* is both spacious and rich, and the Chapel, I must confess, when first I saw it, seem'd to be the most exquisite Structure that ever was seen of this kind; it is both very large and magnificent. In the middle of each Face of the Hexagon stands a double Pilaster of Jasper, with a double Chapiter of Brass gilt, the Base being the same. The Emblematical Figures on the Pedestals of these Pilasters are very artificially made of precious Stones: In the six Angles are plac'd as many rich Tombs of Porphyry, Oriental Granite, and some other of the most precious kinds of Marble; on each Tomb lies a great Pillow of Jasper, valued each at forty thousand Crowns, enrich'd with precious Stones, and upon each Pillow stands a Crown exceeding in riches the Pillow it self: The Base supporting the Tombs is overcrusted with Porphyry and Calcedony, on which will be engraven the Epitaphs of the Princes for whom these Tombs are design'd, and their Statues of Brass gilt, twice as big as the life, are to be placed in the Niches of black Marble that are over the Tombs. The inner Roof of the Dome is intended to be cover'd with *Lapis Lazuli* intermix'd with Roses and other carvings gilt; and the rest of the Walls are overcrusted in Compartiments with the finest Agate Granite, Onyx, and suchlike precious Stones, each Pannel being divided into Squares, embellish'd with various sorts of Ornaments of Copper gilt; and the High Altar is likely to surpass all the rest.

The Library of S. *Lawrence* is celebrated for its MSS. as for instance, that of *Virgil* of the age of *Theodosius*, and a very ancient Greek MS. of the Chirurgery of the Ancients, of *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Asclepiades*, *Bithynus*, *Apollonius*, *Archigenes*, *Nymphodorus*, *Heliodorus*, *Diocles*, *Rufus*, *Ephesius* and *Apollodorus Cicienſis*, with the manner of curing Dislocations, with Figures painted on Vellum, the only ancient Work of this nature now extant. Mr. *Magliabecchi* the Bibliothecary was very sorry he could not communicate to me S. *Chrysostom*'s Letter to *Cæsarius*, having receiv'd express Orders to the contrary from the Great Duke; but he positively assur'd me, that the passage cited by *Martyr* is contain'd *verbatim* in that Manuscript.

The Library of S. *Lawrence* is 80 fathom long, and 20 broad. A fathom of Florence is a Roman foot, which shorter by 6 inches than the English.

In the Church of the *Holy Cross* we saw the Tomb of *Michael Angelo*, which, in my opinion, bears no proportion to the merit of so famous a person. In this Church is a Chapel belonging to the Family of the *Zanchini*, on the Altar of which is a Picture of Christ delivering the Souls of the Fathers, and among them many female Spirits, the Work of *Angelo Bronzini*: Some are of opinion, that she who is represented for *Eve* is the true resemblance of *Bronzini*'s Mistress, and that the Man in the right corner of this Piece, gazing upon this pretended *Eve*, is the Painter himself; just as *Pinturiccio* painted in the *Vatican* Pope *Alexander* VI. prostrate at the Feet of *Julia Farnese*, under pretext of his adoring the holy Virgin.

The Tomb of Mich. Angelo.

In the *Annunciata* are kept two pieces of the thirty *Judas* receiv'd to betray his Master; and in the Church of the *Carmelites*, the Crucifix that spoke to S. *Andrew d'Ursini*.

Among the several fine Seats belonging to the Great Duke, we had only the opportunity to see *Poggio Imperiale* and *Pratinole*; it must be confess'd they are very delightful places, and have even a sufficient share of Beauty, but since our Gardens and Waterworks are advanc'd to that height in *France*, the only way to maintain the ancient Reputation of the *Italian* Seats, is to pass by in silence their pretended miraculous Works.

The Arsenal and Citadel.

The Arsenal and Citadel of S. *John Baptist* are kept in very good order, but the Forts of *Belvedere* and S. *Miniato* are much out of repair. The Great Duke also maintains divers sorts of wild Creatures, and Nurseries for 'em. In the Hospital *ad Scalas* is the Tomb and Epitaph of a human Monster, with two Heads and four Hands on one Body, nam'd *Peter* and *Paul*; one of these Heads did often weep whilst the other laugh'd, and this slept often whilst the former was awake.

The Mountains near *Florence* produce certain Stones, which being saw'd in the middle and polish'd, represent sometimes Trees of divers sorts, sometimes whole Towns, and the Ruins of old Castles; the first are call'd *Dendrites* by *Kircher*.

To conclude, I must tell you, that tho' *Florence*, for its Situation, and divers other Advantages, may be reckon'd among the finest Cities in the World, yet to those who know the Pleasures of the enjoyment of Society, and especially of the delicious Conversation with the Fair Sex, the insupportable Constraint and unavoidable Ceremonies used at *Florence*, appear an intolerable Burthen, except to those that are inur'd to this kind of Slavery from their Infancy. I am,

Sir,

Florence, *May* 23. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXIX.

SIR,

THE Way betwixt *Florence* and *Bologna* being one continued ridge of the *Apennine* Mountains, and consequently not very fit for Calashes, we were forced to hire Horses, all the Litter-men being taken up in carrying Monks (by what accident I know not) over the Mountains. For two days together we passed thro' a barren and mountainous Country, the highest Mountain we met with in our passage was that call'd *Monte Fuoco*; however, the Valleys of *Sarperia* and *Fiorenzola* (which some think to be the *Fidentia* of the Ancients) are not quite so desolate as the rest; the first is famous for Knives and other Cutlers Work made there; it was destroy'd by an Earthquake 1642. We took notice, that near the Village of *Pietra Mala* the Air did sparkle in the Night. At the Village of *Scari Calassino*, betwixt the last-nam'd place and *Loyano*, we saw a Post, the common Boundary of the Pope's and Great Duke's Territories, the Arms of the first being affix'd on one, and the *Florentine* Arms on the other side.

From the top of the last Hills of the *Apennine*, as you approach *Bologna*, and by an easie descent near that City, we had the most glorious Prospect in the World, of the vast and most delightful Plain of *Lombardy*, extending all along the *Po*, from the *Apennines* to the *Alps*.

Bologna, the Seat of an Archbishop, who has the Title of a Prince of the Empire, and the second City in the Ecclesiastical State, is seated at the foot of the *Apennine Hills*, at their opening into the Plain, upon the *Via Emilia*. The fairest prospect of *Bologna* and the circumjacent Country is from the Convent of S. *Michael in Bosco*, where at the same time you may have the pleasure of viewing one of the most magnificent Monasteries in *Italy*, comparable for its beauty to most of the Royal Palaces of *Europe*; and to speak the truth, as *Bologna* is larger and more populous, nay, even richer than *Florence*, so its Convents are generally very spacious and exceeding magnificent. The City is surrounded only with a single Wall without a Citadel; for when they surrendred to Pope *Nicholas*, 1278, it was under these Conditions, That they should not be bridled by a Citadel, their Estates not be liable to any Confiscations, and should be allow'd an Auditor of the *Rota*, and an Ambassadour of their own at *Rome*; which Privileges have not been infringed hitherto.

Bologna, surnamed *the Fat*.

The University acknowledges for its Founder *Theodosius* the younger, 425, but owes its chief Splendour to *Charles the Great*; hence it is that the Motto *Bononia docet* is seen on the Coin of this City, as the word *Libertas* is in their Arms.

The University of *Bologna*.

In one of the Halls of the University College is a Monument, erected to the memory of a certain noted Chirurgeon named *Gabriel Taglicozzo*, who made artificial Noses, Lips, &c. of Flesh.

The Canal, which joyns the *Arno* with the *Po*, is a great conveniency for Traffick to this City, the Inhabitants of which trade in Wax, Hemp, Flax, Hams, Sauciges, Soap, Tobacco and Perfumes, besides that they have near four hundred Silk-mills; formerly they used to sell their little Dogs at a high rate. The Houses of this City are generally of Stone, or Brick plaister'd over; the Streets have Portico's on both sides, like those of *Padua*, but are higher and larger, and are for the most part very streight; the Women are handsom, and not kept under to much restraint as at *Florence*; the better sort are inclin'd to follow the French Mode.

In General *Caprara*'s Palace, one of the best in the whole City, we saw many rich Spoils taken from the *Turks*.

The Publick Palace of this City is appointed for the Lodging of the *Cardinal Legate*, and the *Gonfalonier* and his Councellors. Over the Portal stands a Brass Statue of *Gregory* XIII, and on one side of it that of *Boniface* VIII. with this Inscription,

The publick Palace of *Bologna*.

Bonifacio VIII. P. M. ob eximia erga semerita, S. P. Q. B. Ann. MCCC.

Here you are also shewn the Cabinet of Curiosities of *Ulysses Aldrovandus*, joyn'd with that of the Marquess of *Cesti*, both belonging to the Publick. Among the rest we took notice of the Picture of a certain Woman who (as *Aldrovandus* says by his own knowledge) had a long and thick Beard, like a *Capuchin*. Mr. *Lotier*, a Banker of this City, has also an excellent Collection of Medals, in which are to be seen two *Otho's* in Brass of unquestionable Antiquity *. In a Chamber near it they shew'd us a hundred and eighty seven Volumes in *folio*, all of *Aldrovandus*'s own hand-writing, and about two hundred Bags full of loose Papers; the Margins were pretty large, and the Lines not very close.

* Note, ignorant Fellows, that these are no more *Otho's* than mine.

On the Front of this Palace, betwixt the Statues of the Popes, is a Latin Inscription, intimating, that the Emperour *Charles* V. and Pope *Clement* VIII. meeting at *Bologna* in *Nov.* 1529. restor'd the Peace of *Italy*, and that afterwards the said Emperour was crown'd King of *Lombardy* in the Church of St. *Petronius*; the Emperour had been crown'd before, *Oct.* 22. 1520, at *Aix la Chapelle*.

In another place of this Palace you see the Picture of one named *Ugolino*, on the Wall, hanging by one Foot, with this Superscription, *Ugolino traditore, Sibatuglielo alla Patria*; perhaps this might be Count *Ugolin* of *Pisa*, one of the Heads of the *Guelphs*.

In another place you see an Inscription beginning thus, *Adeste O Sol & Lunæ Testes*, &c. relating to a Miracle wrought by an Image of our Lady, who deliver'd *Bologna* from the Pestilence. That great and stately Fountain which faces this Palace is the Work of the famous *Flemish* Architect and Sculptor *John* of *Bologna*, said by some to have cost seventy thousand Crowns.

In the Church of S. *Petronius* (the biggest of the whole City) is to be seen the so much celebrated *Meridian* Line of *Cassini*, engraven on a Copper Plate of 222 foot long, and fix'd in the Pavement. It begins at the entrance of the great Body on the left hand, and passes between the Pillars, without the least Obstacle, to the end of the little Nave of the Church, the situation of which is almost *East* and *West*. In the arch'd Roof of the last Nave is a Hole, directly over the Noon-point of this Line, thro' which a Ray of the Sun entring, marks the Solstices and Equinoxes upon the Line. The same Operation may, without much difficulty, be perform'd in any other convenient place, the whole Mystery consisting only in measuring the Degrees on the Line, proportionably to the height of the Hole thro' which the Ray enters.

Cassini his Line in the Church of S. *Petronius*.

In the Church of *Corpus Domini* they shew an embalm'd Body of S. *Catherine Vigni*, which has wrought many Miracles: But the Image of *our Lady*, said to be made by S. *Luke*, is in much greater veneration with them; her Residence is at the Mount *la Guardia*, eight miles from the City, (they were then making a cover'd way to that Mountain) from whence they bring her at certain times in Procession into *Bologna* with more than ordinary magnificence, attended by the several Companies of the Artisans, the Fraternities, Convents, Heads of the Parishes, Magistrates, the *Gonfalonier*, and the *Legate* himself: The Image is always carried under a stupendious rich Canopy, the People upon their Knees saluring it as it passes by with the most zealous Ejaculations that can be conceiv'd.

The Image of our Lady.

In the Church of the *Dominicans* you see the most magnificent Chapel and Tomb of S. *Dominic*; the inlaid Work of different colours on the Benches of the Quire, done by *Damian* of *Bergamo* a Monk, are highly esteem'd to this day, tho' it is beyond all dispute, that since the finding out of the Art of imprinting natural Colours on Wood, this kind of Work has been brought to a much greater perfection. In the same Church is to be seen the Tomb of *Hentius* or *Enzelin* King of *Sardinia* and *Corsica*, Natural Son to the Emperour *Frederick* II. The Epitaph gives you an account of his being taken Prisoner by the *Bononians*, who detain'd him twenty two years, nine months, and sixteen days in Captivity, till his Death, which

which happned in *March* 1272. The Tower call'd *Garisenda* is about 130 foot high, and leans like that of *Piſa*; it is a ſquare Tower built of Brick, and its inclination to one ſide proceeds queſtionleſs from the ſame reaſon (*viz.* from the ſinking of the Foundation) as does that of *Piſa*. The bright Stones, known by the name of *Bononian* Stones, are the products of the Hill of *Paderno*, about three miles diſtant from the City.

The heats being almoſt as troubleſome here as in the *Apennines*, the Men uſe Fans as well as the Women, ſome of which are of Paper, and ſold for a Penny a piece. In our Inn they had a way of driving away the Flies by a certain Machine, where they often treat us with *Lake Tortoiſes* of the bigneſs of a good Trencher; their Fleſh is pretty firm, and not ill taſted.

Laſt night leaving *Bologne* about Sun-ſet, we travel'd ten miles to *Samogia*, a ſmall Village about half way betwixt this City and *Modena*. They told us, that from this place to the *Alps* the Country is as level as a Bowling-green, and that the Roads are lined on both ſides either with Cornfields or Vineyards, the Vines whereof are ſupported by Fruit-trees planted Chequer-wiſe, as we have ſeen them already in ſeveral parts of *Lombardy*, and afford a very delightful Proſpect at firſt, but at length grow offenſive to the Eyes of Travellers, for want of that variety which is ſo diverting to the ſight.

The ſame night, as we came near to the ſaid Village, we were ſurpriz'd with the ſight of a prodigious quantity of *ſhining Flies*, call'd *Lucciole*, wherewith the Hedges were cover'd to ſuch a degree, that they ſeem'd to be on fire; they are not unlike the Locuſts in ſhape, but not ſo large; the ſhining part is a certain yellow hairy Doune under the Belly, which being ſtretch'd at every motion of their Wings, ſend forth a bright glance like Fire.

Early this morning we purſued our Journey to *Modena*, where we arriv'd in two hours: In our way we paſſed by the Fort of *Urban* VIII, defended by four Baſtions bearing the Names of S. *Mary*, S. *Peter*, S. *Paul*, and S. *Petronius*; and a little on this ſide of it we croſs'd the River *Panaro*, the Boundary betwixt the *Bolonian* and *Modeneſe* Territories.

Modena. The City of *Modena* it ſelf is ſeated in a fertile Country, but for want of Trade makes but an indifferent appearance; for its Fortifications are much decay'd, the Streets are narrow and dirty, the Portico's on both ſides of them low and ſtreight, and even the Churches contain nothing worth taking notice of; and were it not for its ancient Reputation, and the Reſidence of the Dukes of that Name, it would ſcarce deſerve a place among the Cities of *Italy*. The old Palace is an inconſiderable Edifice, but the new one promiſes much better. I am,

Sir,

Modena, May 28. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXX.

SIR,

WE travel'd in Calaſhes in four hours from *Modena* to *Reggio*, a City as void of Curioſities as *Modena*, but is better built, and its Situation very pleaſant. The Inhabitants tell you Wonders of their Churches, but theſe things they muſt tell to thoſe that have not ſeen *Rome* or *Naples*; their chief Pretenſions lie in the Workmanſhip of Bones, whereof they make divers ſorts of Toys not worth the mentioning, and ſold miſerably cheap. *Reggio.*

They told us of certain ancient Inſcriptions found at *Reggio*, in which this City was call'd *Regium Lapidi*, the other *Reggio* in *Calabria ulteriori* being known by the Name of *Regium Julium*, and its Inhabitants *Regienſes*, whereas thoſe of the firſt were call'd *Regini*. They ſtile their Prince Duke of *Reggio* and *Modena*, juſt as in *Scotland* they put the Name of their Country before *England* in the Title of the King.

About eight miles from *Reggio* we paſſed the Bridge over the River *Enſa*, on the other ſide of which begins the Dutchy of *Parma*, being a plain Country, but moſt Paſtures, whereas about *Bologna* and *Modena* the Grounds are generally till'd.

Parma. The City of *Parma* is ſeventeen miles from this Bridge, very pleaſantly ſeated, and ſeen at a conſiderable diſtance, by reaſon of the ſtreightneſs of the Road leading to it, and the height of its Spires. Over the Gate thro' which we entred we ſaw the Arms of Pope *Paul* III, the ſame who beſtow'd the Dukedoms of *Parma* and *Placenza* upon his Natural Son *Lewis*. The River of *Parma* divides it into two parts, but is not navigable; its Fortifications are very good, and the Citadel deſign'd after the Model of that of *Antwerp*.

The Ducal Palace is a very indifferent Building, but the new one is likely to be much larger and handſomer. The Wardrobe is well ſtored, and ſo are the Stables, and the Coaches very rich. The great Theatre is beyond any of that kind I ever ſaw, either at *Paris* or *Venice*; the ſofteſt Whiſper may be heard thro' any part of it, tho' it is of a very large extent; there are no Boxes, but only Benches rais'd one above the other, like in the Amphitheatres. The Floor of this Theatre is alſo very ſpacious, and may be fill'd with Water to the height of three foot, in which they repreſent whole Squadrons of little gilt Boats.

Beſides the Schools of the Univerſity, they have here a College, wherein they receive young Gentlemen of all Nations, but none except ſuch as are capacitated to be admitted Knights of *Malthe*. They eat together tho' they have different Penſions according to the different Sciences they learn; their number at that time amounted to two hundred and thirty.

The Dome of the Cathedral is painted by the hand of *Correggio*, and in the Churches of S. *John* and S. *Anthony* are divers excellent Pieces.

At the Race we ſaw abundance of very good Company taking the *Tour à la mode* in their Coaches; but they obſerve here the ſame Cuſtom that is practis'd upon this account at *Rome*, *viz.* that the Women go never with the Men in the ſame Coach, but always appear in Coaches by themſelves.

In our Journey from hence to *Placenza* we ſaw not any Village or River worth mentioning, except the little diſmantled Town of S. *Domino*, tho' they are thirty five miles diſtant from one another.

The City of *Placenza* is ſeated in a pleaſant Plain about ſix hundred paces from the *Po*; its circumference is larger than that of *Parma*, the Houſes are of Brick neatly built, but very low, and on each ſide of the Houſes foot-ways fenced in with Poſts, like as in *London*, eſpecially in the *Rece-ſtreet*, which is as ſtreight as a Line, of an equal breadth from one end to the other, and three thouſand foot long. The Statues of the famous *Alexander Farneſe*, Governour of the *Netherlands*, and of his Son *Ranuccio* I, adorn the *Great Place*. *Placenza.*

From the top of one of the higheſt Steeples we had a full view of the circumjacent Country, embelliſh'd with the various windings of the *Po*, and could plainly diſcern *Cremona*, tho' at twenty miles diſtance.

The Cathedral has ſome Pictures, done by the hand of *Carache*; and that of S. *Sixtus*, an Image of our Lady, by *Raphael*. To conclude, *Placenza* is ill Peopled, and the Fortifications are but indifferent, tho' much extoll'd by the *Italians*; and their Weights, Meaſures and Coins are different from thoſe of *Parma*.

We coaſted the Banks of the *Po* at ſome diſtance, following the current of the River till we came over againſt *Cremona*, where we paſſed the River in a Ferry-boat, for there are no Bridges on the *Po* below *Turin*.

The City of *Cremona* is ſeated on the *Milaneſe*-ſide of that River; it is very large, but poorer and leſs populous than *Placenza*. The Caſtle, tho' much extoll'd by the romantick *Italians*, is an antick ſhapeleſs heap of Ruins; the Inhabitants of this City boaſt exceedingly of its Antiquity, but produce no proofs for it. This City is forty miles from *Mantua*, and in the way betwixt both you meet with no conſiderable Town except *Buzzolo*, a ſmall City, ſurrounded with ſome inconſiderable Works, which among ſome paſs for Fortifications; however, it bears the Title of a Dukedom, and its Prince is at the ſame time Soveraign of the adjacent Country for four or five miles about it. We paſſed the River *Oglio*, which ariſes with a large and rapid current out of the Lake of *Iſeo*, and falls into the *Po*. *Cremona.* *Buzzolo.*

The moſt Deſcriptions I ever ſaw of *Mantua* have given a very imperfect Deſcription of the true Situation of this City, which is generally repreſented to be ſeated in the midſt of a Lake, but to ſpeak the real truth, this pretended Lake is no more than the Waters of the River *Mincio*, ariſing from the Lake of *Guarda*, which overflowing the flat Country, makes a kind of Marſh fourteen or fifteen times longer than it is broad, in which, but toward one ſide of it, the City of *Mantua* is built on a firm tract of Ground. The Cawſey over which we paſs'd was betwixt two and three hundred paces long, but towards the ſide of *Verona* it is of a larger extent. In ſome *Mantua.*

places

places of these Marshes the Water is always in motion, but as it stagnates in most places, the best of the Inhabitants leave the City during the Summer season.

Mantua has only a Wall for its defence, but the Citadel is very strong: For the rest, it is much about the same bigness as *Cremona*, but much better Peopled; the Streets are broad and streight, but the Houses indifferently built.

The Ducal Palace. The *Italians* will tell you strange things of the magnificence of this Palace, tho' in effect it has neither beauty nor regularity, and the best Idea I can give you of it is, to compare it to *Whitehall*, *viz.* that it is large and commodious, without the other qualifications belonging to a Royal Palace.

We were assur'd that this Palace was most magnificently furnish'd before it was pillag'd by the Imperialists *Anno* 1630. but as you see it now, the Duke's Lodgings want nothing of what is requisite to render 'em both convenient and splendid: The Hall is stor'd with rare and ancient Pictures, and the Cabinet of Curiosities wants not Materials to entertain the industrious Traveller. The Duke of *Mantua* has seven or eight Country Seats, among these we only saw *la Favorita* and *Marmirolo*, the last of which is very pleasantly seated near a delightful Brook and Wood, and well furnished with Pictures and Antiquities, with Gardens, Orange-walks, Bird-houses, and most curious Fountains belonging to it.

In the Church of S. *Anna* they shew the S. *Longin*, with some drops of that miraculous Blood found in this City in the time of *Leo* III. which afterwards gave the occasion (*viz.* 1608.) to the institution of the Order of *Mantua* by *Vincent Gonzaga*, who erected twenty Knights Companions of this Order.

The Knights of Mantua, their Habit was Scarlet, with eight points.

The other remarkable things in *Mantua* are, the Churches of the Jesuits, of S. *Barnaba*, S. *Maurice*, S. *Sebastian*, S. *Ursule*, and S. *Belarie*, the Townhouse, Theatre, Manufactory-halls, the Mill of the twelve Apostles, the Synagogue and Shambles. But before we part with *Mantua*, we must remember the Village of *Andes* near this City, which gave birth to *Virgil*,

Mantua Musarum Domus, atque ad sidera cantu
Excelsa Andino. Sil. Ital. l. 8.

Brescia. Leaving *Mantua*, we travel'd for twenty two miles till we came to the River which is the common Boundary betwixt that Dukedom and the *Venetian State*, and eighteen miles further came and lodg'd the same night at *Brescia*. We were not a little surpriz'd at the sight of the Women in the Streets and Shops, a thing we had not seen since our coming to *Verona*.

Brescia is pretty well peopled, and indifferently large; its Citadel, which is very strong, stands on an adjacent Hill near the foot of the *Alps*; the other Fortifications are of no great moment. The Palace of *Justice* is a noble Structure, of a certain Stone not unlike Marble; on the Pediment of the Front you see these words,

* with a C. *Fidelis Brixia Fidei & Justicia* consecravit.*

The Armourers Shops are directly opposite to this Palace, under a Portico of five hundred paces long, the Fire-arms of *Brescia* being accounted the best in *Italy*; and this City is water'd with many fine Springs and a commodious Rivulet, which have their rise among the *Alps*.

The Cathedral. In the Cathedral they shew you what they call *Constantine's Oriflame*, which they told us was the same blue Cross that appear'd to *Constantine* with this Motto, *In hoc Signo vinces*. But how is it possible that an Apparition in the Air could be preserv'd? And how could it be call'd an *Oriflame*, which signifies a kind of gilt *Standard* or *Banner*? some deriving its Etymology from *flammula* a Banner, and *aurea* golden, because it was affix'd to a gilt Lance; others, from a sort of Gold and Flame-colour'd Stuff; it was adorn'd with green Tassels. I remember *Mezeray* tells us, that the second Race of the *French Kings* used to have S. *Martin's* Cope born before their Armies, but that the *Capets* made use of the Banner of S. *Denys*, call'd *Oriflame*, kept in that Saint's Church. Perhaps this *Oriflame* of *Brescia* is the *Labarum* in which *Constantine*, after his Victory over *Maxentius*, order'd the following Cypher, which consists of the initial Letters of the Name of Christ, to be written, ☧

As we travel'd from *Brescia* to *Bergamo*, we pass'd constantly along the ridge of the *Alps* on our right hand, at the distance of two or three miles.

Palazzuolo. At *Palazzuolo*, a place seated half way betwixt both these Cities, (*viz.* fifteen miles distant from each) we passed the *Oglio* a second time. Coming to *Bergamo*, we found it both a trading and strong Town, its situation being at the foot of the *Alps*. The Fortifications are well faced and kept, and the Citadel, with some Outworks, defend the rising grounds about the City, which has no less than five good Suburbs.

In the Cathedral you see the Tomb of the great *Barth. Coglione*, General of the *Venetian* Forces against the *Milanese*; and in that of the *Austin* Friers, the Tomb of the famous *Ambrose Calepin*, a Native of *Calepio*, a Village not far from *Bergamo*. In the Quire of the Cathedral you see some inlaid Work on the Benches, done after the same manner and by the same hand as that we saw in the Church of the *Dominicans* at *Bologna*.

Bergamo. The *Bergamese* Jargon is very gross, besides which, the Inhabitants have for the most part Scrophulous Tumors on their Throats, which appears very nauseous to Strangers, tho' to them it appears so natural, that they question whether it be a greater Perfection to have or be without these Tumors.

The Grounds about *Bergamo*, and generally all over the *Milanese*, being water'd with many Rivulets arising from the *Alps*, the Country People have from thence deriv'd an infinite number of Chanels, whereby they prevent the inconvenience of Drought, and render their Grounds fertile. The River *Adda* (arising out of the Lake of *Como*) having at that time overflown its Banks, we were oblig'd to quit our Calash at *Canonica*, a Village about twelve miles from *Bergamo*, and to pass the River in a Boat, not without some danger, by reason of the violence of the Current.

Two miles above *Canonica*, on the opposite side of the River, lies *Tezzo*, where we embark'd on the Canal call'd *Navilio della Marresana*, which reaches in a streight line within half a mile of *Milan*, its length being about twenty miles. It is supplied with Water by the *Adda*, which River having in many places very steep Cataracts or Waterfals before it comes into the flat Country, is near *Canonica* twenty five or thirty foot lower than the Canal; which is the reason that so many attempts were made in vain to bring the Waters of the *Adda* to *Milan*, till at last that most celebrated Architect and Engineer *Leonard de Vinci* undertook this Work, and brought it to perfection. Mr. *Felibien* gives this great *Florentine* the following Character; That he was of a very large stature, and of such strength, as to be able to twist the Clapper of a Bell with one hand; he was an excellent Horseman, Dancer, and very dextrous in the management of Arms, and all other Gentleman-like Exercises; he was one of the best Painters of his Age, he and *Michael Angelo* having engag'd *Raphael* to leave his first way of drawing; besides which, he was a skilful Architect, a good Sculptor, and great Engineer; a learned Mathematician, Musician, Anatomist, Philosopher, Poet and Historian; all which joyn'd with his courteous and generous Behaviour, did certainly render him one of the most accomplish'd Persons the World ever saw. He died in the 75th Year of his age, in the Arms of *Francis* I. King of *France*, who giving him a Visit, and our illustrious *Leonard*, endeavouring to shew his acknowledgment by raising his Body in the Bed, the King advanc'd with his Arms to hinder him, and so he expir'd.

The River *Adda*.

The Character of Leonard Vinci.

From this Canal we had a most delightful prospect of the circumjacent Country, border'd in many places with Summer-houses, Gardens and Orchards, like some of the Canals in *Holland*. I am,

Sir,

Milan, June 7. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXI.

SIR,

Milan the Great.

SCarce any City in *Europe* hath been so entirely destroy'd by the two terrible Scourges of Mankind (I mean *War* and *Pestilence*) as *Milan*; notwithstanding which, it may to this day be rank'd among the best and finest Cities in the World: It was quite destroy'd by *Frederic Barbarossa*, 1162. It is almost of a circular figure, about ten miles in compass, and is said to contain no less than thirty thousand Inhabitants. There are but few Instances of such great Cities built in the middle of the Land without the conveniency of either the Sea or a River,

River, the defect of which is supplied by many Springs and Rivulets that water the circumjacent Country, and the Canal deriv'd from the River *Adda* fills the Ditch of the inward Enclosure of the City with running Water. The Fortifications, or outward Enclosure, were made since the destruction of this City by *Barbaroſſa*.

Near the Gate of *Pavia* is to be seen the beginning of a Canal, intended to be made from thence to the City of *Pavia*, by *Galeazzo Viſconti*, the execution whereof was stopt by his death. A certain Latin Author (*Verner Rolwinck*) derives the Etymology of *Mediolanum* à *ſue dumidia lanea*, i. e. from a Sow half cover'd with things found in the same place where this City was fourkled.

The first thing we thought worthy our viewing was, the famous Cabinet of the late Canon *Manfredi Settala*, a man equally learned and skilful, not only in his choice, but also in working many curious things with his own hands. We saw here divers Machines, invented for the discovery of *Perpetual Motion*; Looking-glasses of divers sorts, Dyals, Musical Instruments both ancient and modern, and some of his own inventing; Books, Medals, curious Keys and Locks, Seals, Rings, Pictures, *Indian* Works, Mummies, Arms, strange Habits, Lamps, Urns, Idols, and a great number of all sorts of Antiquities; Fruits, Stones, Minerals, Animals, variety of Shells, Curiosities in Steel, Wood, Amber and Ivory; a piece of Cloth of the Stone of *Amiantus*, Monsters, &c.

But the Dish of yellow Amber, two foot in diameter, is a most exquisite Rarity: There are divers other pieces of rough Amber with *Ants*, *Flies*, *Spiders*, and other *Insects* enclosed in the substance of 'em, a convincing proof, in my opinion, that the Amber is a kind of Gum or Bituminous Matter hardned by the Air, the Sea, or some other cause, so that when (for instance) an Ant happens to light upon a raw and clammy piece of this Bituminous Matter, she is entangled in this unctuous substance, and it growing hard and bigger by degrees, the Insect is enclosed in it. This Opinion is exactly the same *Martial* had of it;

Dum Pinëton ſæa formica vagatur in umbra
Implicuit tenuem ſuccina Gutta feram.
Sic modo quæ fuerat vitæ contempta manenti
Funeribus facta eſt, tunc pretioſa ſuis.

Unicorns Horns. There are three or four pretended *Unicorns Horns* in this Cabinet; for tho' it be beyond all dispute, that they are properly no more than the Teeth of a certain Fish found in the *Northern Seas*, yet here, as well as in the *Venetian* Treasury, and other places where they are preserv'd, they retain still the Opinion, that they grow on the Head of that imaginary four-legg'd terrestrial Creature. There are also some *Fossil Horns* exactly like those that grow on Fishes, tho' of a very different matter. The *Remora*, a Fish about the bigness of a Herring, shewn in the Cabinets, is of the same fabulous kind, I am sure I have seen no less than twelve of 'em in several places, but never two of the same kind.

The Cathedral was begun by the Archbishop Antonio Archinto, first Duke of Milan, in June 1386.

The Cathedral, which stands in the center of the City, is a Structure of a prodigious bulk, tho' (according to my dimension) a sixth part less than S. *Peter's* at *Rome*, but is infinitely beyond it in the curiosity of the Ornaments and Sculptures, wherewith it is cover'd both within and without, there being not the breadth of a hand to be seen in the whole that is unwrought: It is built after the *Gothick* manner, and to form your self a true Idea of this Edifice, you must represent to your self a medley of *Roſes*, *Trees*, *Animals*, *Groteſques*, *Pyramids*, *Niches*, *Statues*, and a thousand other Varieties, affording an agreeable confusion to the Eye: However, there are only some parts of this Church compleatly finish'd, the Canons of the Chapter thinking it their Interest not to proceed with too much vigour in a thing of this nature, which brings vast Sums of Money (by *Donations*, *Legacies*, &c.) into their Coffers, part of which they know how to imploy to other uses: According to an Inscription in golden Letters engraven on a piece of Marble in the same Church, one *John Peter Carcanus*, a Native of *Milan*, left by his Will the Sum of 230000 crowns of Gold, toward the building and adorning the Front of this Church, which nevertheless remains to this day almost naked. There may perhaps also be another reason why the same is not finish'd; for considering that there are two sorts of Architecture in that part of it which is already begun, it seems as if the Undertakers were not a little puzzled how to reconcile the Uniformity of the Architecture to the *Gothick* Structure of the whole body of the Church.

Martin the Fifth's Statue stands in the Quire of this Church, without a Beard, and a very young Face, tho' he was near fifty years old when he was chosen Pope; the Inscription says, it exceeds *Praxiteles*:

—— *Præſtantis Imaginis author,*
De Tradate fuit Jacobinus in arte profundus
Non Praxitele *minor, ſed major, farier auſim.*

Near it is the Statue of *Pius* IV. Behind the Quire are two Marble Tables, containing a Catalogue of all the Relicks preserv'd in this Church, among which is a piece of *Moſes's* Rod, tho' at the same time they pretend to have it entire at S. *John de Lateran's*. Besides this piece, there is another preserv'd at *Florence*, and *Baronius* says another was found at *Sens* 1008. On the great Altar you see the Nail of the Crucifixion, of which 'tis said *Conſtantine* made a Bit for a Bridle; five Lights burn constantly round it day and night.

The Pavement of this Cathedral is more curious, and much more solid than that of S. *Peter's* at *Rome*, the Marble whereof being very thin, is almost worn out. The whole charge of this Pavement (when finish'd) is computed at 66290 crowns, not including the Quire.

We had from the Steeple of this Church a full view of *Milan*, besides divers other Cities in the Plain of *Lombardy*, and the conjunction of the *Alps* and *Apennines* near *Genoua*. The great Bell, nam'd S. *Ambroſe*, has seven foot diameter, and weighs thirty thousand pound. In the great Square before the Church we observ'd generally about thirty Coaches assemble there; but their ordinary *Tour à la mode* is a spacious unpav'd Street (call'd *Strada Marina*) sprinkled every day with Water.

The Ambrosian Library. The *Ambroſian* Library got its Name from being dedicated to S. *Ambroſe*, by *Frederick Borromeo* Archbishop of *Milan*. A certain Author, in his description of this Library printed at *Tortona*, makes the number of its MSS. amount to 12000, and the printed Volumes 72000, but the Library-keeper told us there were not above 40000 in all: Among the first, *Ruffinus's* Version of *Joſephus* challenges the precedency for its antiquity. The great Hall is seventy five foot long and thirty broad; it is kept open two hours in the Forenoon, and as many in the Afternoon *. Among other Rarities, we were shewn a large Volume of Mechanical Draughts, done, as they said, by *Leonard de Vinci's* own hand; the Writing is so bad, that it is not to be read without a Perspective-glass. An Inscription on the Wall near it tells you, that a King of *England* offer'd three thousand Pistoles for it, but mentions not his Name. In the Academy for Painting, adjoyning to this Library, we saw a Picture of *Clement* X. resembling a Print so exactly, that we were all deceiv'd in it.

* See Bescot's Treatise De Orig. & Stat. Bibliothecæ Ambroſianæ.

The Citadel is a regular Hexagon Fortification, well faced, and strengthen'd with a good Ditch and Counterscarps.

The principal Structures, besides the *Churches* and *Convents*, are, the two Palaces of the Governour and Archbishop, the Houses of the Marquess *Homedei*, Count *Barth. Areſe*, and Signior *Martini*.

The Seminary (founded by *Charles Borromeo*) has a double Portico 176 foot 3 inches long, and 16 foot 10 inches broad, extending round the inside of the great square Court; the first Order is *Doric*, the second *Ionic*: Over the high Portal you see the Statue of Piety.

The *Townhouse* and the *Great Hospital*, the great Court of which is 120 paces square, about the inside whereof are two rows or stories of Portico's, supported on each side by forty two Pillars of a certain kind of Marble found in the *Alps*, each Pillar consisting of one single piece of Stone. The body of the Structure is of Brick; the old Hospital is united with it, but the *Lazaret* or Hospital for infected persons lies about three hundred paces without the City; *Bramante* was the Architect. This large Structure is composed of four Galleries joyn'd in a Square, each of which contains ninety two Chambers, about twenty four foot broad, so that the whole length of each Gallery (including the Walls) amounts to eighteen hundred feet. The whole inside is surrounded with a Portico resting upon Marble Pillars, and the Square within is a Meadow, water'd by divers Springs and Brooks, in the middle of which stands an Altar under a Dome, supported by Pillars, by which means the Sick may see Mass said from their Chambers.

The Lazaret.

The Church of S. *Ambroſe* hath divers Statues and Pictures, which were the production of the ignorant Ages: Among the rest, you see here a *Dragon* of Brass, resting upon a Column of Marble; some think it to be the Serpent of *Æſculapius*, others an Emblem of the Serpent in the Desart; nay, the common Opinion is, that this Dragon was cast out of the Fragments of that Serpent;

S. Ambroſe's Church.

2 Kin. 18. 4.

pent; which makes many Pilgrims flock thither to worship it, as *Bossi* and *Charles Torre* assure us by their own experience.

S. *Eustorgia's* Church. In the Church of S. *Eustorgia* they shew still the Tomb that contain'd the Bodies of the three Kings that were afterwards remov'd to *Cologne*; they pretend that it retains to this day a certain Virtue of curing Distempers; for it is to be observ'd, that the *Milanese* are not behindhand with the rest in magnifying their Relicks, of which they have good store, for at S. *Alexander's* there are no less than 144000 Martyrs of the Catacombs of S. *Sebastian*.

The chief Curiosities made in *Milan* are Works of divers sorts in Steel and Rock-Crystal, wherewith they are furnish'd by the neighbouring *Alps*; of the largest pieces they make Looking-glasses, but they are seldom above a foot square. 'Tis to the Curiosity of their Workmanship that some attribute the original of the old Proverb, *viz. He that wishes well to* Italy, *must destroy* Milan; meaning, that thereby it would be dispers'd thro' the whole Country; tho' some explain the same of the fatal Wars that have afflicted *Italy* on the account of this City, it being forty times besieg'd, and two and twenty times taken.

The House of the Marquess of *Simonetta*, two miles without the City, hath an Echo which repeats the last syllable about forty times; we heard it in a cover'd Gallery in one of the wings of the Buildings, where the Echo answering from the other wing, we found the sound to decrease like the reboundings of an Ivory Ball.

In our way from *Milan* to *Pavia* (which is only fifteen miles distant thence) we went to take a view of the famous Convent in the Plain of *Barco*, founded by *John Galeazzo Visconti* first Duke of *Milan*. The Church is of a *Gothic* Architecture, but the Chapels and Altars not inferiour to any in *Italy*; the Cloysters are exceeding handsom, and the Gardens, Parks, Brooks and Avenues exceeding delightful; it contain'd then about fifty eight Friers.

Pavia. The once famous, but now so inconsiderable, City of *Pavia* is so much decay'd from its ancient lustre, that its poor Remnants bear scarce any resemblance to what it was in ancient times, to wit, the Metropolis of a Kingdom, and the Residence of no less than twenty Monarchs, the Castle being now no more than an old heap of Stone, and the Fortifications quite neglected.

The University (founded by *Charlemain*, and re-establish'd by *Charles* IV.) is not much better than the Town; it hath however five Colleges, among which that of *Borromeo* is worth taking notice of, for the beauty of its Structure; the Scholars of every College wear different Gowns.

The Cathedral is a low, dark, and very old Edifice; over against it is an *Equestrian Statua* of Brass, call'd the *Regisol*, which some think to be the Statue of *Antoninus Pius*; *Platina* gives it the same Name, and says, it was brought from *Ravenna* after that City had been sack'd by King *Luitprand*, the same who (as they say) brought S. *Austin's* Body from *Sardinia* to *Pavia*, where it was buried in S. *Pietro's* Church, now in the possession of the *Austin Friers*, tho' it is certain that they can't shew the place where the Body lies, the Marble Tomb in the Chapel on one side of the Church being erected only in honour of that Saint. *Bernard Saccus*, (*l.* 10. *c.* 3.) a Native of *Pavia*, in his History of that City, gives us the following account of the translation of S. *Austin's* Body: *In templo D. Petri à Luitpranda ædificato condituin Augustini corpus fuit; & ne facile reperiri posset, ferunt Luitprandum tribus locis effossis, structis, sepulchris, aliis deinde factis, paucis operi adhibitis, justisse corpus cordi, omnibus sepulchris eadem nocte, occlusis, ut certa corporis sede ignorata, difficilior in avum fieret occasio, ejus perquirendi repetendique. Constructum deinde alio secessu sacellum D. Augustino fuit, juxta Templum D. Petri, in quo sacello Area marmorea & colobra, compacta est, Augustini sepulchrum representans.* The same Author makes the following Observations concerning *Pavia*, That the Grounds thereabouts produce naturally Asparagus twice every Year, which are eaten raw by the Country People; and that the *Po*, which now is five or six miles from that City, reach'd formerly within five hundred paces of it; which explains several passages in the ancient Geographers, who place *Pavia* near that River: *Padus*, adds *Saccus*, *sæpe rotus ab alveo profiliens alium sibi ex templo abeuntem fine fossibus cruit. Si ab Apennino aquarum copia irruat, flectitur in adversum ripam torquet, contra vero si ab Alpium latere aquarum impetus fiat, si ex utraque parte, effervet supermodum.*

St. *Austin's* Tomb.

The River *Tesin.* Coming out of *Pavia*, we pass'd the River *Tesin* (*Ticinum*) over a cover'd Bridge, being the most rapid and largest River of all those that fall into the *Po*. It is subject to great Inundations, which sometimes prove fatal to the low adjacent Fields; they say, that if these Inundations continue for eight days, (which however happens rarely) the coldness of the Waters destroy the Herbs to that degree, that they scarce recover in several years after.

The River *Ticinum* had formerly communicated its Name to the City of *Pavia*, which is built upon its bank; *Saccus* says, in the Year 472. its Name was chang'd in the time of *Odoacer*, who after he had destroy'd it, granted Immunity for five years to the Inhabitants, in order to rebuild the City; whence the City was call'd *Papia quasi piorum patria*, from the Piety of its Citizens, who went to *Ravenna* to implore the King's Pardon, not from their embracing the Christian Religion, which they had done long before. *Mediolanenses*, said one of their Envoys after their return, *nomen invenimus, quod nostræ pietatis officia in patriam restituendam, paucis syllabis posteritati attestabitur, & Ticini nomen aqua restituetur. Papiæ piorum Patria*, &c. I shall add only that *Pavia* is famous for the misfortune of two Kings taken Prisoners there, *viz. Desiderius* by *Charlemain*, and *Francis* I. by *Charles* V. I am,

Sir;

Pavia, June 12. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXII.

SIR,

Vghera. WE dined at *Vghera*, a Town about fifteen miles from *Pavia*, and lodg'd the same night at *Novi*, a City seated at the foot of the *Apennines*, thirty miles from *Genoua*, under whose Jurisdiction it is; the Road betwixt both is very mountainous.

Genoua. The Situation of *Genoua* is at the end of a Gulph partly on the brow of a Hill, which forms a Crescent round the Gulph, and partly on a little Plain betwixt the foot of the Hills and the Sea-shore; the Streets are narrow, and the Houses in the lower part of the City six or seven stories high, but are lower by degrees, as the ascent rises; this affords a pleasant prospect at a distance, but carries along with it divers other Inconveniencies, especially for Coaches, which for that reason are not much in fashion here, the Ladies being generally carried in Litters, and Gentlemen using Calashes they guide themselves: It is strengthned by a double Fortification, reaching on both sides to the Shore, the innermost encloses the body of the City, and the second the rising Grounds about it.

From 10 to 12 l. a month, according to the Government.

When I had taken a view of the City of *Genoua*, I could not but be surpriz'd at what is commonly reported of it, *viz.* that it is built all of Marble, whereas it is beyond all contradiction that (except some Houses in the *Strada Nuova*, that are either adorn'd with, or have whole Fronts of Marble) their ordinary Materials for building are Brick and Stone, or both together, and their Houses are generally plaister'd over on the outside: Notwithstanding this, *Genoua* is not destitute of beautiful Structures, especially in five or six of the best Streets, and in the Suburbs of S. *Pietro d'Arena*; besides that, *Genoua* has this advantage in Building, that Slates and Glass are as plentiful here as they are rare in other parts of *Italy*.

Gardens in the Air. The pretended *Gardens in the Air* in *Genoua*, compar'd by some to the very Gardens of *Semiramis*, owe their original to nothing else but the scarcity of Ground, which obliges the Inhabitants to put their Flowerpots in their Balconies, and sometimes to cover them with Earth.

The French Bombarding of Genoa. The best Edifices of *Genoua* escap'd the fury of the *French* Bombs, which being level'd against the middle part of the City, did most dreadful execution; there being to this day above five hundred ruin'd Houses in that part of the City. In the Church of *our Lady of the Vineyards* they shew'd us a Bomb which did fall there without the least detriment; had not the *French* Bombs thrown down four or five Churches and as many Convents at the same time, they would certainly make the World believe that the Bombs had a certain respect for so sacred a place.

During this Conflagration, the Doge, with thirty persons more, sheltred themselves in the great Hospital call'd the *Albergo*, whither many of the Inhabitants also carried their

their best Effects. To prevent the like for the future, they are at present busied in making a third Mole, which is to stretch further into the Sea than the two former.

In Harbour. The Harbour of *Genoua* is capacious enough and of a good depth, but is expos'd to the *Lubec-ir* or the *African* South-West Wind, the most dangerous that reigns in this part of the *Mediterranean*. This oblig'd them to make another lesser Port within the great one, for the security of their Galleys, which are now reduc'd to the number of six, a small Squadron in comparison of what the *Genoese* Navies were in former times.

Those that intend to have a compleat view of *Genoua*, must view it distinctly from three several places, from the top of the *Phares* or Water-Tower, from the Sea at a miles distance, and from the top of the Hill.

The publick Palace, or *Palazzo Reale*, where the Doge and some of the Senators lodge with their Families, is a very large Structure. In the little Arsenal of this Palace we were shewn a *Rostrum* of an ancient *Roman* Ship, it was of Iron, with a Boar's Head at the end of it; the Inscription tells you, that it was found in the Harbour of *Genoua* as they were cleansing it: Here are also some Curasses, said to have belong'd to certain Ladies of this City that fought against the *Turks*.

A Roman Rostrum.

The Ladies generally dress themselves in Gowns after the *French* mode, but the ordinary sort make use of a kind of little Fardingals. The Noblemen, tho' not oblig'd to any particular Habit, yet wear for the most part black and Cloaks; they assume the titles of *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, *Counts*, &c. which the *Venetian* Nobility does not, but they wear no Swords.

The Doge (who must be fifty years old at least) is stiled *His Serenity*, the Senators *Their Excellencies*, and the Noblemen *Most Illustrious*, a title of no great moment in *Italy*. The Doge is crown'd with a Crown of Gold and a Sceptre in his Hand, by reason of the Kingdom of *Corsica*, under the Jurisdiction of this Republick, but his Power is no less limited than that of the Doge of *Venice*; besides that, at the end of every two years Deputies are always sent to His Serenity, to give him to understand, that his time being expir'd, he must leave the Palace.

The Procession on Corpus Christi Day.

We saw once the whole Senate in their Formalities at the Procession on *Corpus Christi Day*, where the Doge appear'd in a crimson Robe, with a kind of square Bonnet on his Head; before him were carried two Battle-axes and a Sword in the Scabbard, a Senator marching on each side of him in black Gowns, but of the same make as that of the Doge; the Streets were strew'd with green Herbs, and lined on both sides with Tapestry; in the Windows we saw the Ladies dress'd in their best Attire, with Baskets full of Flowers, which they threw among those that follow'd the Procession, according to their several Inclinations, the Gentlemen receiving these favours with low reverences from the hands of the fair ones.

The Church of the *Annunciata*, tho' the fairest in *Genoua*, yet is in beauty and magnificence much inferiour to many we have had occasion to describe before; the most remarkable thing that belongs to it is, that it owns for its Founder a Citizen of *Genoua* of the Family of *Lomellini*.

I will not detain you with the Dialogue betwixt the Crucifix at S. *Jerome's* and S. *Bridget*, no more than with an ample description of the great Dish made of one single Emerauld, in which, they say, Christ eat the *Paschal Lamb*, (*Bede* says it was a Silver Dish) *Du Val* would have this Emerauld Dish to be one of the Presents made by the Queen of *Sheba* to *Solomon*.

At S. *Mary of the Castle* there is another *speaking Crucifix*; for a certain Gentleman, as it seems, having made a Promise of Marriage to his Mistress in a place of the City where a Crucifix stood, which he afterwards refus'd to fulfill, the Lady accus'd him before the Judges, where being upon the point of losing the Cause for want of sufficient Witness, she appeal'd to the said Crucifix; and some persons being sent thither, and the Question propos'd to the Crucifix, it answer'd with a Nod, which made the Judges determine in favour of the injur'd Lady; which is the reason that this Crucifix is particularly reverenc'd by Maids.

The Ashes of S. *John Baptist* are preserv'd in the Cathedral, in a Shrine supported by four beautiful Columns of Porphyry, brought from *Smyrna* 1098. This Saint and the Emperour are the two Protectors of *Genoua*, and the Image of the first is stampt on its Coin, which is the fairest and best in *Italy*.

The two Protection of the Republick.

The *Traffick* of *Genoua* consists chiefly in *Velvets*, *Points*, *Gloves*, dry *Confections*, *Anchovies*, and divers sorts of *Fruits*, but is much decay'd in *Trade*; for tho' some private persons are exceeding rich, yet the generality is poor; the Government monopolizes the Trade of Wine and Corn, so that the *Tavern* and *Innkeepers* must buy their Wines out of the Cellar of the State, and the Bakers fetch their Corn from the publick Granaries. I am,

Genoua, *June* 20. 1688.

Sir,

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXIII.

SIR,

TAking our way from *Genoua* towards *Casal*, we came back the same way we went as far as *Novi*, where hiring a Coach to *Turin*, we dined the next day at *Alexandria*, a little City, provided with slender Fortifications, notwithstanding which it maintain'd a Siege of six months against *Frederick Barbarossa*, who gave it the Name of *Cæsarea*, which *Alexander* III. chang'd into *Alexandria*. What some affirm, *viz.* that the Emperours used to be crown'd here with a Crown of Straw, is a meer Fable, whence (they say) it got the Name of *Alexandria of Straw*, which indeed it retains to this day, tho' the reason of it is not known. Alexandria.

Casal is a strong City, seated on the right bank of the *Po*; besides the old Castle, it has a new Citadel, fortified with six Royal Bastions, Half-moons before the Curtains, and a large and deep Ditch full of Water, and an Arsenal stor'd with Arms for ten thousand Men: Since the *French* have been in possession of this *Citadel*, they have made considerable alterations in the Fortifications, especially in the Bastions, which being very large, they made a second Rampart and new Bastions within the other: the *Town* remains still in the possession of the Duke of *Mantua*. Casal. Its Citadel.

From *Casal* we pass'd the *Po* a fourth time, the banks of which our Coach follow'd for a considerable time; we pass'd in sight of *Verni*, a small fortified place in that part of *Monferrat* under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Savoy*. *Verue* lies on the right side of the *Po*, and is much stronger than the other.

After we had travel'd eight miles from *Casal*, we entred *Piedmont*, the Ground being still level, but not long after found our selves among the Mountains, in a large and flat Valley almost surrounded with the *Alps*: the Grounds in some parts of this Plain are exceeding rich, but in some others very indifferent. In our passage we saw two or three large spots of Ground, where two days before had stood the finest Corn in the World, now laid quite waste by the Hailstones, the very Straw being beaten into the Ground, and the Vines, Walnut and other Trees broken to pieces. It is generally reckon'd but forty five miles from *Casal* to *Turin*, but the *Monferrat* miles, as well as in *Piedmont*, are much longer than those of *Lombardy*.

The City of *Turin* is seated in a Plain upon the River *Doire*, three hundred paces from the *Po*; not only the Town, but also the Avenues leading unto it, are very pleasant; but what most takes with Strangers is, that here they are rejoyc'd with the frank conversation of the Inhabitants, after they have been almost tired out with the sowre and jealous reservedness of the *Italians*, it being certain that, in respect of their manner of living, *Turin* may be compar'd to the most polite City of *France*, which Language is as generally spoken here as the *Italian*, and the People generally follow the same steps in their conversation, and it may be said without the least exaggeration, that the Court of *Savoy* is as sprightly and gay as any in *Europe*. Turin.

The old part of *Turin* is somewhat indifferently built, but to make amends for this, the new part has broad streight Streets, and the Houses are large, high, and pretty uniform. The Street that passes thro' the two Squares and reaches from the Castle to the new Gate, is one of the fairest in *Europe*. The Houses in the new Square are adorn'd with a large Portico, that encloseth it on all sides. Its Buildings.

The Duke's Palace has very good Apartments, tho' it appears in no great lustre on the outside. The Palace of the *Jesuites* and of the Prince of *Carignan* (but lately finish'd) are both magnificent Structures. There is an old and new Palace.

Turin is but of an indifferent bigness, enclos'd with a regular Fortification by the present Duke; but the Citadel

del exceeds the rest both in strength and beauty, but was not quite finish'd. The Walks of Oaks on the Ramparts are very delightful to behold at a distance, and afford an agreeable shade to those that divert themselves here, with the most delicious Prospect towards the Rivers; but the general meeting-place of the Gentry is near *Valentia*, a Country-seat of the Duke upon the Banks of the *Po*, about a mile from *Turin*, besides which the Duke has seven or eight more all well furnish'd.

The Chapel of the holy Handkerchief.

Before we leave *Turin*, we must not forget to say something of the new Chapel dedicated to the *holy Handkerchief*, in the Cathedral; it is, beyond all question, a very glorious piece of Workmanship, but what some have pretended, *viz.* that it excels the Chapel of S. *Lawrence* at *Florence* is so far from being true, that it is not comparable to it; they are indeed both of the same figure, but that of *Turin* is much less, and will be embellish'd only with black Marble. I must upon this occasion put you in mind, that instead of one, there are at least five or six of these pretended *holy Handkerchiefs*, *viz.* two at *Rome*, in S. *Peters* and S. *John de Lateran*; one at *Cadoin* in *Perigert*, one at *Besancon*, one at *Compeigne*, one at *Milan*, and another at *Aix la Chapelle*; they all produce Papal Bulls to maintain their Titles, in which point the Handkerchief of *Cadoin* has the preference, being authoriz'd by no less than fourteen Bulls, whereas that of *Turin* has only four.

Observations concerning *Italy*.

Being now upon the point of taking our leave of *Italy*, I can't let slip this opportunity of giving you some Observations, which I had either neglected or wanted opportunity to insert before: The Duke of *Modena* is tall of stature, and very handsom, resembling the Queen his Sister, but is of a brown Complexion; he discours'd near an hour with me concerning what Observations we had made in our Travels, and especially in *England*. I am sorry I can't give you a satisfactory account of the Academies of Sciences in *Italy*, having not had sufficient time to make so exact an enquiry after 'em as I could have wish'd; but, as I am told by persons of good Understanding and Credit, they are not inconsiderable; however, I can't forbear to give you some of their affected Titles, by which they are distinguish'd from one another, thus: Those of *Genoua* call themselves *drowsie*; those of *Naples*, *borrowing*; those of *Alexandria*, *immovable*; those of *Rome*, *fantastical* or *humorous*; those of *Viterbo*, *obstinate*; those of *Siena*, *fottish*; those of *Perusa*, *mad*; of *Parma*, *nameless*: At *Bologna* they stile themselves *idle*; at *Milan*, *conceal'd*; at *Ancona*, *obscure* or *confin'd*; at *Mantua*, *amorous*; at *Rimini*, *easie* or *pliable*; at *Macerata*, *chain'd*.

It can't be denied but that the *Italians* generally treat Strangers with a great deal of Ceremony and seeming Kindness, but to speak the truth of the matter, it is generally a mixture of Flattery and Design.

The Inns on the Roads give you sufficient Proofs of the Sobriety of the *Italians*, being very indifferently furnish'd with Provisions; they give you indeed divers Courses at Dinner, but such as are seldom pleasing to Forreigners; the first, unto which they give the name of *Antipasto*, is commonly no more than a Plate of Gizerns, Their Diet. ends of Wings and Birds Feet boil'd with Salt and Pepper, and mix'd with Whites of Eggs, which are follow'd by two or three very small Dishes, one after another, of different *Ragou's*. Between *Rome* and *Naples* they entertain you with the Flesh of *Buffaloes* and *Crows*, and you are oftentimes glad to meet with 'em, tho' their Flesh is very ill seented, and so harsh and tough, that without the Beast be well hunted before it is kill'd, the Flesh is not eatable.

Wines.

'Tis true, they don't want variety of Wines in *Italy*, but the best are pretty scarce; the Wine of *Gensana*, *Albane*, and *Cetel Gendolfo* grow about *Rome*; the Greek Wine of *Naples* and the *Lachryma Christi* are very strong; the *Asprino bianco*, and the *Chiarello peccato* are in no great esteem, by reason of their smalness, but pleas'd us best for its agreeable taste; the best Wines of *Florence* and *Montefiascone* have a very fine flavour, and are not strong to any excess, but they have a great quantity of 'em; the *Muscadelle*, dedicated to the Great Duke's own use, grows in a Vineyard by it self, and is never dispers'd thro' the Country, unless it be by way of Present; near *Verona* and *Genoua* are also some passable good Wines. There is a great difference betwixt the Casks made about *Loretto* and those of *Pavia*; the first are short and broad, like a *Dutch* Cheese, but the length of the last exceeds the extent of their diameter seven times.

Leandr. Alberti says, he saw four *Parmesan* Cheeses that weigh'd 300 pounds each.

The Country about *Parma* and *Placentia* abounding in excellent Pastures, they make abundance of Cheese there, Butter being a scarce Commodity in *Italy*, instead of which they use Oyl in their *Ragou's* and *Fricasies*; but notwithstanding they draw the Oyl from their own Olives, it is often not so good as you meet with it in those Countries where these Trees don't grow, it being a general Observation, that the best things, and that will yield the best price, are most transported.

Their Fruits.

We hapned not to be in this Country in the best season for Fruits: Our stay at *Venice* was for three months, in the Winter, where we had very firm and delicious Grapes at *Bologna*; at *Naples* we eat Winter Melons, and at *Genoua* all sorts of small red Fruits, and the largest and best Cherries that ever I saw, the Country about the River of *Genoua* abounding in most excellent Fruits. They have a Proverb of *Genoua*, that *its Hills are without Wood*, *its Men without Faith*, *the Ladies without Shame*, *and the Sea without Fishes*; but of these four the first only holds good, the Sea of *Genoua* affording very good Fishes: Near *Naples* I saw several Fishes taken out of the Sea that I never saw in other places; the Gulph of *Cajeta* affords good store of *Sturgeons*, and the *Tyber* has some of 'em.

Fishes.

In all our Travels thro' *Italy* we never saw either a Hare or Partridge in the Fields, and but very few of 'em in the Inns: It is almost surprizing, that in a Country as *Italy* is, where you see whole Tracts of Lands almost uninhabited, there should be no greater abundance of this sort of Game, especially since it is not quite destitute of these Animals, and that the *Italian* Gentlemen scarce ever reside in the Country, and consequently don't spoil the Game, tho' they are as jealous of their Privileges as other Nations.

As the Nobility of *Italy* don't reside in the Country, (as they do in *England* and *France*) so there are few Seats to be seen there, except in the great Towns or Cities: However, to make amends for the scarcity of Partridges, they are abundantly supplied with Quails every Spring Quails. from the *African* Shore; these poor Creatures come in whole flocks, and so tir'd with their long Voyage, that they settle upon a Ship or any thing they first light on, and are thus caught in heaps without much trouble, but being very lean, they commonly feed them for some time before they eat 'em. It is almost surprizing to conceive how the *Quail*, which hath no very strong Wing, and flies very heavily, should be able to continue so long a flight without resting, which has made some think that they sometimes swim to take breath; but considering that this would so moisten their Wings, that they would not be able to rise again into the Air, this Opinion can't take place here.

In all my Travels I saw no more than one Scorpion in *Italy*, neither are these Animals accounted mischievous here; I could never see any of the hanging Beds I have heard them talk of, to be used by the *Italians* to guard themselves against these Creatures. 'Tis true, that about *Verona* we observ'd many Iron Bedsteads placed at some distance from the Walls, and the Feet of 'em polish'd, to prevent these Insects from breeding in or come near to them. This Creature bruis'd and applied to the wounded part, is an infallible Remedy against its own sting, in lieu whereof they make use of the Oyl and Salt made of the same Animal, which have the same effect: But the stings of the Scorpion are not mortal in *Italy*, nor so frequent as to be much fear'd. Scorpions sting not mortal in *Italy*.

Italy produces two sorts of Animals, two whom they give the Name of *Tarantula*; one is a Species of a *Lizard*, whose sting is mortal, and is most frequent about *Tredi*, *Cajeta* and *Capua*; but the true *Tarantula* (having its Name from *Terentum*, where 'tis most found) is a kind of Spider, living in the Field; they are said to be in great abundance about *Abruzzo*, and in *Calabria*, and in some parts of *Tuscany*. Those that are stung by this Creature make a thousand odd gestures, they weep, dance, vomit, tremble, laugh, turn pale, swoon away, and, if not succour'd in time, die in a few days after: They find some ease by Sweating and other Antidotes, but the most sovereign Remedy is Musick. I had it from a learned and credible person at *Rome*, that he had been twice an Eye-witness of the Distemper and Cure: *Alexander ab Alexandro* says, he was an Eye-witness of the same, and relates divers curious Instances, *Dier. gen.* l. 2. c. 17. I remember that a Gentleman of my particular acquaintance, who was much afflicted with the Gout, always receiv'd ease, and sometimes was wholly freed from his pains, by a loud Musick; for he used to make his Servants beat with all the strength they had upon the Table and Floor of the same Room where he lay, which noise, together with the sound of a Bass-Viol, was his only and absolute Remedy. *Theophrastus* and *Gellius* affirm, that Musick asswages the pain of the Gout. *Albert Crantz* says, that *Henry* IV. King of *Denmark* was by a certain Musician elevated to such a height of Fury, that he kill'd several of his Courtiers.

Tarantula.

High-

Highway-men are no more dangerous nor frequent than the Scorpions, for since the Reign of *Sixtus V.* no *Banditti* have been heard of at *Rome*; and the Marquess *del Carpio* did clear *Naples* of this Vermin.

I made one remarkable Observation, that all the time we staid in *Italy* there was not one person put to death in the places we were in; and there is perhaps no place upon Earth where Executions are less frequent than at *Venice*, for it is but getting under the Patronage of a Nobleman, (which is no hard matter to be obtain'd) and you must commit a very publick and enormous Crime that will cost you your Life.

Fifteen.

At our coming to any Cities, they generally took our Pistols from us, which were redeliver'd at the other Gate at our departure, which however makes the charge at a long Journey's end amount to near as much as a pair of Pistols are worth. The Inhabitants of *Genoa* and *Lucca* are not permitted to wear Swords in their respective Cities, tho' Strangers (at their request) are seldom denied that Privilege: Bagonets are prohibited in all Cities, but upon the Road you carry what Arms you please, not excepting even Fuzees, which are often made use of by Travellers on Horseback.

As the *Italians* are jealous to a degree of madness, so Love and Jealousie are the great occasions of Bloodshed here; 'tis for this reason that the *Italians* have a constant Custom to send their Girls, in their very Infancy, into Nunneries, whence they are not suffer'd to come out till they are married, which is commonly done without seeing their future Spouses, none but the poorer sort keeping their Daughters at home. At *Rome* several Funds are establish'd for the marrying of poor Maids, or the confining of 'em to a Convent. I took notice in the Churches of *Rome*, that during *Lent* the Women were placed under the Pulpit, within a Fence of Rails of six foot high.

Fruits of Italy.

Italy produces divers sorts of Trees and Plants not to be met with either in *England* or *France*, unless it be in the most Southern parts. The Palm-tree is a Rarity in *Italy*, and very seldom bears Fruit there. In the Physick-Garden of *Pisa* we saw a male and female Palm-tree planted together, in pursuance of the ancient Errour, according to which these Trees, unless join'd together, will bear no Fruit; but this is contradicted by Experience, and I my self saw a single Palm-tree full of Dates at the *Villa Mecena* or *Monte Mario*; the largest Palm-tree in *Rome* is in the Cloyster of S. *Peter ad Vincula*.

We saw on *Palm-Sunday* all the Cardinals in the Pope's Chapel, where he who officiated for the Pope presented a Palm-branch to every one of the rest, they were about eight foot long, and the Leaves woven into Knots of divers shapes; one of these was sent to the Pope, and all the other Prelates and Ecclesiasticks then present had also their Branches, which varied in bigness according to the Dignity of those that bore 'em. The Laicks are oblig'd upon this occasion to be contented with Olive-branches.

In peculiar Trees.

Among the Trees that are not common in other Countries, are the great *Maple*, the *Cork-tree*, the *Jujub-tree*, *Carob-tree*, *Olive-tree*, *Myrtle*, *Pomegranate-tree*, the *Ceper-shrub*, *Scarlet-Oak*, the *Cypress*, *Sena*, *Lentisk* or *Mastick-tree*, the great *Indian Fig-tree*, the *Oak* that bears Galls, the *Shrubs* that bears Cotton and Fistick-nuts, and of *Orange* and *Citron-trees* several sorts; of these last those of *Florence* call'd *Cedrats* are the most excellent: The white *Mulberry-trees* grow wild in the Hedges, for the Food of Silkworms, which were first of all brought into *Europe* from *Japan* and *China*.

Those that are curious, and have leisure to look after *Simples*, may find Employment enough in the *Apennines*, betwixt *Loretto* and *Rome*, and in all parts of the *Alps*. Near *Terracina* I gather'd some Sponges, rooted on the hardest Rocks near the Sea-side, the rest lay loose on the Sea-shore.

The Pumice-stone.

These Sponges put me in mind of the *Pumice-stones*, for the search of which I spent a considerable time on the Mount *Vesuvius*, because I understood that they were there in great plenty, but upon a strict enquiry found those porous Stones which are seen upon the Mount *Vesuvius* no *Pumice-stones*, but of another kind, calcin'd and render'd porous by the sulphurous Eruptions of this Mountain.

For the rest; the Mountains of *Italy*, and the *Apennines* in particular, afford great store of Metals, Mineral Waters, Crystal, Alabaster, a kind of Agate, Marble of several sorts, but the Marble of the *Archipelago* is much brighter; the white Marble of *Carrara* is the finest in all *Italy*, abundance of which is transported into other parts.

The long and sharp Winter had so frozen the *Oranges* and *Citrons*, that the Grounds were almost cover'd with them under the Trees, in those places where they grow in greatest plenty.

As the Winters prove sometimes hurtful here, so the Summer season is no less inconvenient, against which they take a great deal of care to preserve themselves, especially at *Rome*; for this purpose Persons of Quality have low Apartments, whither the Sun-beams can't penetrate; they are commonly pav'd with Marble, and furnish'd with Springs and Water-spouts to cool the Rooms upon occasion; beside that, the Doors and Windows are so contriv'd, that thereby a free passage being open'd to the transient Air, they are never without a cool Breeze. To defend themselves against the Gnats, they surround their Beds at a little distance with a Circlet of Gauze or Tiffany, which being fastned close to the Ceiling above, and to the Floor below, prevents these troublesome Animals from coming near 'em.

How they preserve themselves against Heat and Gnats.

They also have a Custom of sleeping after Dinner upon a sort of folding Chairs cover'd with Leather, the Backs rising and falling with a Spring; and the use of *Umbrellos* is very near as common here as they are in the Eastern parts.

During three or four months in the Summer season, the Evening Dew in the *Campagna di Roma* is esteem'd so pestiferous, that Travellers take a great deal of precaution to stay abroad in the Country late, and if they can't reach *Rome* in good time, they remain at eighteen or twenty miles distance from the City. In reference to this I saw the following Inscription on a House in *Rome*, giving certain Advice for the preservation of Health in that City:

Dew about Rome in the Summer.

Evasi infelix residentes pessimus aer,
Romanus; filios non bene gratus habet.
Sospes ut hic vivas, hæc sepsima dat Medicinam
Abstinedir sedus; sic mediusque labor
Pelle somnem & fugias fructus seminaque reliqua
Nec placent gelido, fonte lavare sitem.

I had almost forgot to tell you, that in all *Italy* I saw only the ruins of one Windmill, near *Leghorn*. As Tin is a rare Commodity here, so instead thereof they use Earthen Vessels, which they make themselves, and some of 'em very curiously wrought; however, none resembles *Porcelain* so near as that of *Delft*.

The natural Day of the *Italians*.

The *Italians* don't begin their natural Day at Midnight as we do, but immediately after Sun-set, so that their Clocks strike all the Year round twenty four, from Sun-set to Sun-set again; and according to the length or shortness of the Days, the Hour of Noon varies every day: As for instance; when the Sun sets at four a Clock according to our computation, they count one when we reckon five, and consequently it is Noon the next day at the twentieth hour: Thus when the Sun sets at eight a Clock with us, it is one a Clock with them at nine, and consequently it is their Noon at the fifteenth hour. But in respect of the artificial Day, betwixt Sun-rising and Sun-setting, they use the words *Yesterday* and *To morrow*, as we do.

I will conclude this Account of *Italy* with an Inscription on the Pedestal of the Statue of *Justice* in the *Jesuites* College at *Rome*:

Quæ Dea? Sacra Themis, quæ Patria? Regna Tonantis
Qualis Origo? Enix Sanctus utrique Parens.
Cur Frontem facies aperit formosa severam?
Nescio corrumpi, non amor Blanditias.
Auribus apertis tibi, cur altera & altera clausa est?
Una patet justis, altera surda malis.
Cur gladium tua dextra gerit? cur læva Bilances?
Ponderat hæc causas, percutit illa reos.
Cur sola in cedis? Quia Copia rara bonorum,
Huc referunt paucos, sæcula Fabricios.
Pauperc cur cultu? Semper justissimus esse
Qui cupit, hic magnas, vix cumulabit opes.

I am,

Sir,

Turin, June 29. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXIV.

SIR,

AFter we left *Turin*, we lodg'd the first night at *Veillano*, and the next morning palling near the Gates of the small City of *Susa*, seated among the Mountains, we dined at *Novaleſa*, at the foot of Mount *Cenis*, the highest of all the *Alps*, over which there is a passage, but you must not imagin it to be as high as *Caucasus*, or as peak'd as the *Teneriff*, nor that its passage is over the top, for as you come to the highest part of this passage, you find your self in a Plain, or (if you please) in a Valley, with respect to the lofty Mountains that surround it.

Susa.

Mount Cenis.

The Plain on Mount Cenis.

At *Novaleſa* we took the Mules that carried us over the Mountain; the way is broad enough, without any Precipices, but uneven and stony: On the highest accessible part of it you see the Cross that is the common Boundary betwixt *Piedmont* and *Savoy*, and consequently of *Italy*. In the middle of this Plain is a Lake of a good mile in compass, which, according to common Report, is bottomless; a large Brook, which joyns its Waters with the little *Dore* near *Susa*, has its rise there. The Snow was almost melted on the Hill, tho' not on the highest tops of the Mountain on both sides, the tumbling down of which is the only thing that makes this passage dangerous at certain seasons of the Year. That side of the Hill next *Savoy* being much rougher than the other, we were carried in ordinary Chairs, to which they fastned Arms like the Shafts of a Litter, and thus, each attended by four Men, (who reliev'd one another by turns) we were brought safely and commodiously to the foot of the Hill, where we past'd the little River *Arche* over a wooden Bridge, which brought us to the Village of *Lanebourgh*. *Savoy* being a very mountainous Country, there is little to be said of it.

Chambery.

Chambery is the capital City of that Dutchy, formerly the Residence of the Dukes, and still a Parliamentary Town, tho' it be very small and but indifferently fortified; its situation is at the Conflux of the *Leſſe* and *Orbine*, (both navigable Rivers) at the very foot of the Mountains. If we may credit the Inhabitants, the People are extreamly obliging to Strangers, and the Ladies very handsom.

St. Jean de Maurienne.

St. *Jean de Maurienne* is seated in a very pleasant Valley bearing the same Name; it being an inconsiderable place, we did not think fit to go out of our way to view it, tho' we past within two hundred paces of it: Neither did we make any stay at *Montmelian*, a small City on the right Bank of the River *Iſera*, strengthned by a good Citadel.

Montmelian.

Aix is noted for its Baths. Coming to *Annecy*, we found the whole Country alarm'd at the News of an Irruption of the exil'd *Vaudois* into *Savoy*, by the way of *Lucern*, but this prov'd a false Report.

Aix.

Annecy.

The River *Arve* separates the Territories of *Geneva* from *Savoy*, the wooden Bridge built over this River leads almost to the Gates of the City of *Geneva*. The *Arve* is rather a Brook than a River, falling down from among the Mountains, and carrying some Gold-dust along with it, but with all the care that can possibly be taken, a man can scarce produce so much Gold out of it as will pay the labour even of an ordinary man, which is the reason this Gold is not much look'd after.

Arve.

Geneva.

It being beyond my present purpose to give you an account of the Antiquity, Government, and other matters relating to the History of *Geneva*, I will content my self with giving you a general Idea of that City, according to those Observations I had the opportunity to make during my stay in that City.

The River *Roſne*, just at its coming out of the Lake, makes a little Island: On the right Bank of this River, or rather on the side of its right Chanel, the Grounds are low and level, but on the other side the Ground rises insensibly to a Hillock; it is on this the chief part of the City is built, the rest being seated in the Islands, and on the other side of the *Roſne*, and the whole enclos'd with such Fortifications as may preserve 'em against a sudden Surprize, or perhaps against all the Force of *Savoy*, but not against a more potent Enemy, were it not for their confederacy with the *Swiss Cantons*, and especially with those of *Zurich* and *Bern*, which League was made 1536. They don't want store of good Cannon, and in their Arsenal they shew, among other things, the Ladders the *Savoyards* intended to have made use of in scalading the City, as also the Petard that was to have been applied to burst open the *new Gate*, in the Year 1602. In remembrance of this Deliverance they continue to this day to celebrate an Annual Festival on *Dec.* 22. with Sermons suited to that occasion, and feasting their Friends and Relations, when they never part without singing a certain Song made upon that occasion, and containing most of the remarkable circumstances that attended it.

This small Republick, as well as the Duke of *Savoy* and the *Switzers*, maintains some small Galleys on its Lake; I say its Lake, because the same was given to the City when yet a *Roman* Colony. The Duke of *Savoy* has erected a Fort (call'd *Bellerive*) near the Bank of this Lake, not above a league distant from the City, contrary to the Treaty of *S. Julien*, in which it was stipulated, That the Duke of *Savoy* should neither appear in a body, nor erect any Fortifications, nor maintain any Garison within four leagues of *Geneva*.

The Opinion of many Authors among the Ancients, *viz.* that the *Rhoſne* passes thro' the Lake without mixing its Waters, is absurd, considering the length and crooked figure of the Lake; and I can assure you, that my Eyes have often convinc'd me to the contrary: 'Tis very pure and transparent; it affords divers sorts of Fishes, and among them *Trouts*, some of which weigh fifty pounds each, and some considerably larger: These Fishes are rarely found of that bigness in other places, yet I remember that in one of the Halls of the Arsenal at *Cimachem* I saw the figure of a *Trout* taken in a small Lake of that Country, which weigh'd no less than seventy pounds. They say that the number of Fish is much decreas'd of late years in the Lake of *Geneva*, partly by the ravenousness of the great Pikes, wherewith this Lake abounds, and partly by another sort of Fish call'd *Montcils*, never taken in this Lake till within these six years last past. Their usual way of catching *Trouts* in the Lake of *Geneva* is thus: It is to be observ'd that this Fish keeps a certain time in the Year, when it descends from the Lake to the *Rhoſne*, and at another season returns back to the Lake; the Fishermen knowing exactly the times of their going and coming, fix Piles cross the River where they come out of the Lake, at such a distance that the great Fish can't pass thro' them, unless at certain open places, which are the openings of great Wreels of Wire, where they remain till they are taken out. The Fishermen pay a certain Annual Tribute to the Republick for this Fishery.

The Lake of Geneva.

The Genevoiſe Pound contains eighteen ounces.

How they catch Trouts.

They kill also vast store of Wild-fowl on this Lake in the Winter: It was frozen in the Year 1572. They say its Waves will rage sometimes like those of the main Ocean.

For the rest, the City of *Geneva*, tho' neither very large nor magnificent, yet may justly be call'd a lovely place, having the advantage of pleasant Walks, and of a most engaging Conversation of the better sort of the Inhabitants; and even the common People make, by their Honesty, amends for their Clownishness.

Their Academy is provided with learned Professors, and the Pulpit with able Ministers, but the Government is highly to blame for not allowing them sufficient yearly Salaries, in proportion of the constant Fatigues they undergo in preaching. They have belonging to each Church two Ministers call'd *Semainiers*, these are oblig'd to preach both six or seven times successively from week to week, relieving one another.

The Academy of Geneva.

Tho' the late Persecution of the *Protestants* in *France* has not a little lessen'd the number of Students in Divinity, yet as all Exercises that belong to the accomplishment of young Gentlemen are taught here in perfection, many *Protestant* Gentlemen of *Germany* and other places chuse rather to send their Sons hither upon that account than into *France*. The miserable, exil'd, and half-starv'd *Vaudois* were receiv'd by the Inhabitants with all marks of Compassion, as the *French Refugees* met likewise with a very kind reception there.

'Tis perhaps not unworthy our peculiar observation, that the Arms of *Geneva*, long before the Reformation, had this Motto underneath 'em, *Post tenebras ſpero lucem*, i. e. *I hope for Light after Darkneſs*; which, since the Reformation, they have with some variation turn'd into these words, *Post tenebras lux*, i. e. *Light succeeded Darkneſs*. It must be confess'd, that the City of *Geneva* is the Pattern of Sobriety and Moderation to other Cities; not that they are free here from vicious persons, but Debauchery rides not so triumphant here as in many other places, the Ministers and Consistories, back'd by the Authority of the Magistrates, labouring without intermission to suppress Luxury in Clothes, and all manner of Licentiousness: They used formerly to punish Adultery with Hanging and Drowning, the same being still done in some parts of *Switzerland*.

Their

The Library of Geneva.

Their publick Library contains divers rare Books and Manuscripts; among the last is a very ancient Manuscript Bible of S. *Jerome*'s Translation.

S. Peter's Church.

In S. *Peter*'s Church you see the Tomb of *Henry* II. Duke of *Rohan*, and the Sepulchre of the great d'Aubigne Grandfather to the Marchioness *de Maintenon*; it stands in the Cloyster on one side of the Church. *Calvin*'s Burial-place is in the Church-yard of *Pluinpaem*, without either Tomb or Epitaph. There was formerly an *English* Church in this City, and there is to this day a Church for the *Germans*, and another for the *Italians*, there being many considerable *Italian* Families resident here, as (beside those mention'd in the description of *Lucca*) those call'd *Gallatins*, *Sartori's*, *Puerari*, *Seger*, *Minutoli*, *Stoppa*, *Diodati*, *Offredi*, *Cerdnini*, *Rubieri*, *Franconi*, *Malcontent*, *Burini*, *Bartolone*, *Carmantini*, &c.

Italian Families resident here.

Their Language.

The *Savoyard* is the current Language of *Geneva*, and if we may credit the Treatise call'd *Scaligeriana*, the *Savoyard* Tongue was used in the Council of this City in *Joseph Scaliger*'s time, and that no other Language was to be spoken under a certain Forfeiture, but now-a-days most people of fashion speak also *French*, tho' not in its best Dialect.

Within four small leagues of *Geneva*, betwixt the Fort of *Sluys* and Mount *Credo*, is a *Cataract* or *Water fall*, where the *Rhosne* falls down from an high Precipice among the Rocks, and is as it were swallow'd up for some time; whence it is that such as intend to go by Water from *Geneva* to *Lyons*, are oblig'd to take Water at *Seissel*, below the Cataract and the rising up again of the River. I am,

Sir,

Geneva, July 12. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXV.

SIR,

THE whole passage betwixt *Geneva* and *Lausanne* being one continued, well-peopled and well-till'd Hillock you can't imagine a more pleasant Road in the World than this, which, besides this, coasts for the most part along the Lake, and gives you a delightful prospect of the lofty Piles of fork'd Mountains.

Morges.

Our first Nights Lodging was at *Morges*, a small Town seated upon the bank of the Lake.

Lausanne.

The Situation of *Lausanna* is very rough and uneven, and being an inconsiderable place, we did not stop here, no more than in any other of the little places among the *Swiss*.

The Lake Murat.

Upon the bank of the Lake *Murat* we saw a Chapel quite fill'd with the Bones of eighteen thousand *Burgundians* that were slain near that place, by the united Forces of *Lorrain* and *Switzerland*, as the following Inscription tells you;

D. O. M.

Caroli inclyti & fortissimi Ducis Burgundiæ Exercitus Muratrum obsidens ab Helvetiis cæsus, hoc sui monumentum reliquit 1476.

Bern.

Bern, the capital City of the most potent Canton among the *Swiss*, is of no large extent; its Buildings are generally of square Stone, but more solid than beautiful; its Streets are very clean, being wash'd by a Rivulet that runs thro' the middle of them, and cover'd on each side with Portico's, but they are very narrow. It was built by *Bertold* IV. Duke of *Zeringhen*, 1175, or as some others would have it, 1191; it enter'd into the *Swiss* Confederacy *Mar.* 6. 1352. They say it got its Name from a Bear taken in the place where they laid its Foundations, the word *Bern* signifying as much as *Bear* in the *German* Language, and they bear this Animal in their Coat of Arms; nay, they constantly maintain a certain number of Bears here, as they do Eagles at *Geneva*.

The only things worth our observation here were the Arsenal and the Great Church, the first whereof is well provided and well kept. In one of the Halls they shew'd us the Picture of *William Tell*, that famous Citizen of *Switz*, representing him with his Arrow shooting an Apple from his Child's Head.

I need not put you in mind, that the ill usage of the Governour *Grisler*, joyn'd with some other Grievances, gave occasion to the Revolt of the *Swiss*, and the establishment of their Confederacy, *Anno* 1307, under the Emperour *Albert* I. The following Inscription was lately placed over the Gate of the *Manufactory Hall*:

An Inscription at *Bern* concerning the French Refugees.

Tempore quo crassa Clericorum ignorantia, cum gratia & privilegio Regis in verum Dei cultum furevet; atque DRACONUM *opera nos qui*s Huguenotos *vocant, ferro flamma, & omni genere cruce è regno pelleret, supremus Magistratus eruderibus Cœnobii, olim Prædicatorium hoc ædes exstruxit, ut pietatem simul & a tem Galliæ exulentes hospitalibus tectis excipere at; Fiat Deus* T. O. M. *ut charitatis hoc Opificium juturi eremento patriæ.*

This Inscription being, as I am inform'd, remov'd from thence in *October* 1692, at the request of the *French* Ambassadour, I can't omit to give you the translation of it:

When the blind Ignorance of the Clergy, supported by the King's Favour and Authority, did exert its Rage against the true Worship of God, and by the force of Dragoons, with Fire and Sword and all manner of Torments, drove those call'd Huguenots *out of the Kingdom, this House was erected by the supream Magistrates, upon the Ruins of the old Monestery belonging formerly to the Predicant Friers, that Piety and Industry, banish'd at once out of* France, *might meet there with an hospitable entertainment: May it please the most Great and Good God, that this Charitable Act may tend to the advantage of our Native Country.*

In the Church of the *Dominicans* they preserve still some Monuments of that noted piece of Roguery transacted by certain *Jacobin Friers*, the Story whereof runs thus: A Dispute being arisen betwixt the *Jacobins* and *Cordeliers*, concerning the Conception of the *holy Virgin*, whom the last exempted from Original Sin, which being oppos'd by the *Jacobins*, four of them (at the request of some of their Fraternity) undertook to prove their Assertion by a Miracle; to make good this, they resolv'd to raise a counterfeit Apparition, and thereby to impose upon the simplicity of a certain Novice nam'd *John Jetzer*, and accordingly so contriv'd the matter, that the Virgin appearing to him in the night-time, declar'd to him, that she was conceiv'd in Sin; which succeeded so well for some time, that the People hearing of this Apparition, flock'd to this Novice-like Saint, to learn from his mouth the Opinion of the Virgin her self concerning her Immaculate Conception, which now began to be publickly discredited; but the Monks at last pushing the matter too far, *Jetzer* began to discover the Cheat, where of the Monks dreading the discovery, they endeavour'd by their Entreaties to engage him not to discover the matter; but unwilling to rely too long upon his good nature, they attempted to poyson him, which he having notice of, made his escape out of the Convent, and declar'd the whole matter to the Magistrates, who having obtain'd from the Pope certain Commissioners (*viz.* two Bishops and the Provincial of the *Jacobins*) to examin the matter, the four Friers, who upon this account were engag'd in divers other enormous Crimes, were condemn'd, and having confess'd the whole matter, were deliver'd up to the Secular Power, degraded and burnt, 1509. The Novice, after having suffer'd the Rack, was acquitted.

The Cheat of some *Jacobin* Friers.

Solothurn enjoys a very delightful Situation in a fruitful Valley, upon the River *Aar*, the same that passes by *Bern*. It is very proud of its Antiquity, which some would deduce as far as from *Ninus*, in which respect it stiles it self the Sister of *Treves*. Its Name is written differently in Latin by the modern Authors, but in the *Itinerary* of *Antonin* it is call'd *Solothurum*, from a Tower, as some would have it, that was built here to the honour of the Sun. It is defended by a very regular Fortification, faced with a kind of white Marble: As the *French* Ambassadour has his constant Residence here, so the common People are of opinion, that it was his Master that furnish'd the Money for this chargeable Work.

Solothurn, the People of this place were so superstitious, that they had the Image of Christ on the Cross in the Habit of a *Swiss*.

The City of *Basil* is defended only by a single Wall, strengthned with some Towers, tho' it may boast it self to be the largest, handsom'st and richest of all the Cities of *Switzerland*; its University is also much celebrated in these parts. The *Rhine*, which begins to be pretty broad and rapid hereabouts, runs thro' the middle of it, dividing it into two parts, which are rejoyn'd by a very handsom Bridge of Stone; however, that part which lies on the *German* side is not so considerable as the other, which

Basil was united with the *Swiss* 1522.

which is seated upon an Ascent. The Bishop of *Basil* resides at *Porcktren*, as the Bishop of *Geneva* does at *Annecy*, neither of 'em having any Jurisdiction in either of these Cities.

Basil hath several good Libraries, among the MSS. of which is a very rare *Virgil*, and an *Alcoran* written on *China* Paper; with some Cabinets of Curiosities. In that of Mr. *Sebastian Fesh* are many curious Pictures, and divers rare Medals, not to be seen any where else. In the Cabinets of *Erasmus* and *Amerbach* (belonging to the University) are no less than twenty Original Pieces of *Holben*; for that representing the dead Christ has been offer'd a thousand Ducats. Besides these, it has four *Series's* of excellent Medals, *Greek*, *Consulary*, and *Gold* and *Brass Imperials*; but the golden Medal of *Faustina*, *Trajan's* Spouse, is the most esteem'd: The following Epigram is under *Erasmus's* Picture;

Ingens, ingentem quem personat Orbis Erasmum
Hic tibi dimidium picta tabella refert
At cur non totum? Mirari desine Lector,
Integra non totum, Terra nec ipsa capit.

But among the Rarities of this City, the Magistrates with their long Beards and antick Dress, appear none of the least to Strangers.

Those who are admirers of Painting must not neglect to take a view of the rare Pictures in the Townhouse, and especially the *Dance of Death*, done by the famous *Holben*; it is to be seen in a publick place on the Wall of the *French* Church, representing a long train of persons of all sorts, holding one another by the hand, Death it self leading the Dance. *Holben* was a Native of *Basil*, and having learnt his Art without any Instructor, he had a peculiar turn in all his Pieces; he was call'd to *England* by King *Henry* VIII.

'Tis a general Custom in the Cities and Towns of *Switzerland* to present Strangers that pass that way with Wine, especially if they are of any Quality: Those who bring it have but one Speech, which they address to all indifferently, with some variation of the Titles, which they have enough to do to place sometimes where they ought to be: Their Courtesie must be return'd with a Present of Money.

Hunningen. From *Basil* you pass by an easie descent along the left Bank of the River to *Hunningen*: The Cavalier which you see so well furnish'd with Cannon above the rest, upon the Bastion looking towards *Basil*, is an evident Proof that this City is within their reach. As to the Fortifications of *Hunningen*, I will only tell you, that the *French* have spar'd no cost to bring it to an entire perfection; the Waters of the *Rhine* fill the Ditches, and there lies a small Isle directly over against it, which is joyn'd to both sides by two Bridges built over both the arms of the River; these Bridges are well fortified both in the Isle and on the *German* side.

Fribourg in Brisgaw. From *Hunningen* we travel'd to *Fribourgh*, four leagues from the *Rhine*, seated in a Plain at the foot of the Hills; it is of a considerable extent, notwithstanding which its Fortifications are very good and regular: It was taken by the *French* 1677, who have made it almost inaccessible by securing the adjacent Hills with Forts and Trenches. They make several pretty Toys here of a sort of Agate found in the Neighbourhood.

Brisac. *Brisac* is about four hours journey from *Fribourgh*; it is seated on a Hillock, fix'd as it seems on purpose, in a Country as smooth and level as Ice; on one end of this Hill stands the Town, on the other the Citadel, both extraordinary well fortified on the foot of the Hill; the Stone Bridge over the *Rhine* is also excellently well fortified on the *French* side.

Schlestadt, once an Imperial City. *Schlestadt* is a City of the lower *Alsace*, seated about three leagues from the *Rhine*, and four from *Brisac*; it is exceeding strong, both by its Fortifications and its Situation in a flat Country, without the least Eminency to annoy the Town.

Strasburgh. The City of *Strasburgh*, since it fell into the hands of the *French*, 30 *Sept.* 1682, is such a Prodigy of Fortifications, that I durst not venture upon a description of 'em, not questioning but that the Platform I have sent will give you a much better Idea of the whole than I could pretend to with all the Art I have. Before that time it was an Imperial City, and follow'd *Luther's* Doctrin.

Its Steeple. Its famous Steeple of the Cathedral is the highest in *Europe*, being 574 foot high; it was finish'd 1449. The Church is at present in the possession of the *Romanists*, where the Bishop said Mass and harangued the King a few days after the surrender of that City *. I can speak it upon my own knowledge, that the Clock of *Strasburgh* far exceeds that of S. *John* at *Lyons*, both in the variety and curiosity of its Motions, I having had the opportunity to take a full view of both 'em; this is the reason they say at *Strasburgh*, that the Clock at *Lyons* is the best in *France*, but that theirs is not to be match'd in the World. There is a very exact printed Description, with a very good Draught of it.

* See D. *Burnet's* Travels.

The River Ill. The little River *Ill*, after it has run thro' the City, divides it self into several Branches; the *Rhine* is not above a mile distant from it to the right hand. Its Arsenal, so much celebrated in former times, is now almost disfurnish'd by their new Masters the *French*. The Women here do still retain an odd, antick, and fantastical Dress.

Before I conclude I must tell you, that all the other Towns and Villages in the Country of *Alsace* were either entirely ruin'd, or at least half burnt, by the *French*, whilst the chief Seat of the War was near the *Upper Rhine*. I am,

Sir,

Strasburgh, Jul. 22. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXVI.

SIR,

BEing oblig'd, for pressing reasons, to make what haste we could to *Brussels*, we embark'd upon the *Rhine*, tho' we had before travel'd that way, from *Mayence* to *Cologne*.

Fort Louis. In our way from *Strasburgh* we took a view of *Fort Louis*, another *French* Fort, seated betwixt *Strasburgh* and the little City of *Germersheim*; its Fortifications are not inferiour to the other *French* Fortresses upon the *Rhine*, which making an Island here, the same is defended with a Fort of four regular Bastions, and the two Bridges on each side are cover'd by certain Redoubts rais'd on the banks of the two arms of the River. Night overtaking us sooner than we expected, we were oblig'd to go ashore and take up with a little Straw in a Barn for our Nights Lodging, in a miserable Village, where, besides the want of Victuals, we were very sufficiently pester'd with the Gnats.

Philipsburgh. The next place we thought worth our view was *Philipsburgh*, seated in the middle of a Marsh about a small Cannon-shot from the *Rhine*, on the *German* side; before it was fortified by *Christopher Sutteren* Elector of *Treves*, it was no more than a poor Village, call'd *Udenheym*: It is a very regular *Hexagon*, cover'd with Half-moons before each Courtain, and of difficult access, by reason of the Marshes that surround it, without the least Eminencies; it was taken from the *French* by the *Imperialists* 1676, who relying upon the Truce, had at that time but a slender Garison in it, but since retaken by the *French*. It lies under the Jurisdiction of the Bishoprick of *Spires*.

The Imperial Chamber at Spires. *Spires* is a free Imperial City, tho' of no large extent, and no Trade, the only thing that makes it considerable for the present being the Imperial Chamber, which was fix'd here by *Charles* V. This is the chief Court of Judicature of the Empire, from whence there lies no Appeal, except in some few Cases. The chief Judge, who must always be a *Roman Catholick*, represents the Emperour's Person, and has for that reason always the *Imperial Scepter* laid before him when he appears in the Court: Besides him, there are two Presidents, one a *Protestant* and the other a *Catholick*, and fifteen Assessors, seven of which are *Protestants*, and the rest of the *Roman* Religion. The other Great Tribunal of *Germany* is stiled the *Council of the Court*, because it is kept either at *Vienna* or wherever the Imperial Court resides; it is not in all its degrees equal to the *Imperial Chamber* of *Spires*, tho' Cases of the same nature are adjudg'd here, there being no removal of Suits from one of these Courts to the other, except that in some peculiar Cases a reverse of the Judgment may be obtain'd before the Emperour himself.

This Court is compos'd of Judges of both Religions.

I will now directly pass from *Spires* to *Cologne*, having nothing to add to the account I have given you before of those places that lie betwixt 'em.

Juliers. From *Cologne* we travel'd towards *Juliers*, the capital City of the Dutchy of that name; it seem'd to be indifferently well fortified: The *Protestants* are allow'd the free exercise of their Religion here.

From

From hence we travel'd for four or five hours thro' a very pleaſant Country, to *Aix la Chapelle*; it was formerly a very pleaſant City, but has loſt not a little of its ancient luſtre, notwithſtanding which it is ſtill a large and handſom City, enjoying the Freedom of its own Government, except that the Dukes of *Juliers* (in whoſe Territories it lies) have the nomination of one Burgher-maſter.

Aix la Chapelle, an Imperial City.

Attila quite deſtroy'd this City, but was after four Years rebuilt by *Charles the Great*, who beſides beſtow'd upon it many Privileges, conſtituted it the Metropolis of *Gaul beyond the Alps*, and kept his conſtant Reſidence here; his Tomb is ſhewn to this day. The ſame Emperour laid the Foundation of the great Church, whence this City got the Name of *Aix la Chapelle*, it being before call'd *Aquiſgrannum*, from a certain *Roman* nam'd *Granus*, a Kinſman of *Nero*, who laid the firſt Foundations of this City, and built a Caſtle here, whence one of the old Towers adjoyning to the Eaſt ſide of the Town-houſe, retains to this day the Name of *Granus* or *Granius*. The Succeſſors of *Charles the Great*, for the ſpace of five hundred years, were moſt of 'em deſirous to be crown'd here, and purſuant to the *Golden Bull* made in *Charles* IV's time, the Emperours were to receive their firſt Crown here; but that Cuſtom is laid aſide ſince, of which they have only the ſhade left now, the Emperour always declaring, in what place ſoever he is crown'd, that the ſame ſhall not be interpreted as a prejudice to the Privileges of this City. The Emperour is always a Canon of *Aix*, and in that quality takes an Oath at the time of his Coronation.

See Bruyn's and Tav's Travels.

Maeſtricht is a pretty large City, well built, and ſtrongly fortified; the Gariſon conſiſted at that time of no leſs than ten thouſand Men, all well-diſciplin'd Troops, the then Prince of *Orange* (late King of *England*) was taking a review of 'em whilſt we were there: The Suburbs on the right bank of the *Maeſe* is call'd *Wyck*. It is call'd in Latin *Trajectum ad Moſam*, or *Trajectum ſuperius*, as *Utrecht* was call'd *Trajectum ad Rhenum*, or *Trajectum inferius* or *ulterius*.

Maeſtricht.

We left *Maeſtricht* about three of the Clock in the Afternoon, and coming the ſame Evening to *Liege*, we found the City ſo crowded with People, by reaſon of the Ceremony of the Election of a new Biſhop, that we were forc'd to take up with very indifferent Lodgings. The City of *Liege* is of a great extent, pretty populous, and has ſome goodly Structures, among which the Cathedral and Epiſcopal Palace challenge the precedency. The Chapter of *Liege* was in former Ages in ſo high a repute, that, according to their Annals, there were preſent at the Coronation of *Lotharius* II. perform'd in this place 1131, by Pope *Innocent* II.) no leſs than nine Kings Sons, fourteen Sons of Dukes, all Soveraign Princes, twenty nine Counts of the Sacred Empire, and eight Barons; but now any Licentiate or Doctor of the Univerſity of *Louvain* is qualified for the Election of a Canon of *Liege*. The *Maeſe* divides the whole City into two parts, the chiefeſt whereof is ſeated on the left ſide, joyn'd to the other by a handſom Stone Bridge, the Arches of which afford a free paſſage to large Barks, that import and export all ſorts of Commodities. The adjacent Coal-mines have drawn thither a great many Armourers, and Vineyards on the circumjacent Hills afford 'em a ſort of tolerable Wine, but 'tis not ſtrong; theſe Hills produce alſo good ſtore of fine black Marble.

Liege.

From *Liege* we paſſed in ſight of *Tongres* and *Sainteron*, and took up our Quarters that night at *Tilmont*, or *Tirlemont*; we dined the next day at *Louvain*, and arriv'd the ſame night at *Bruſſels*.

Louvain is a ſpacious and pleaſant City, the ſecond of the Province of *Brabant*; it has divers goodly Churches, beſides the Townhouſe, the Phyſick-College, and ſome other Structures; but the Univerſity founded by *John* IV. Duke of *Brabant* 1425, is the chief thing that makes this place remarkable, having no leſs than forty five endow'd Colleges, with Divinity, Law and Phyſick-Schools.

Louvain.

See Mr. Ray's Travels.

Mr. *Gutſchoven* ſhew'd us certain embalm'd Bodies, diſſected after different methods, the Veins, Arteries, and even the leaſt Fibres, being fill'd with a certain red matter, which makes every part of 'em appear very diſtinctly, not unlike red Coral.

I muſt not forget to tell you, that we ſaw here a Sea-Calf, ſhewn by ſome *Dutch* Seamen, who had taken it near the Coaſt of *Greenland*, and had made it ſo tame, that it would play very near a thouſand tricks; it was about the bigneſs of a young Lamb, of an Olive colour, with ſoft and ſmooth Hair; the Head was thick and ſhort, with two long Hairs like a Cat; its fore-feet had Claws, which were joyn'd together like thoſe of Geeſe, and it draws the hindermoſt feet after it: They nouriſh it with Milk. I am,

A Sea-Calf

Sir,

Bruſſels, Aug. 12. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXVII.

SIR,

Bruſſels.

Bruſſels, the capital City of *Brabant*, and the ordinary Reſidence of the *Spaniſh* Governours of the *Netherlands*, is a large populous City, of an oval figure, ſeated partly in a Plain, and partly on the brow of a little Hill, the lower part of the Town being water'd by ſeveral Canals fill'd by the little River *Senne*, and communicating with the *Scheld*; they are able to bear Barks of a good burthen: It has ſome ſlight Fortifications on one ſide.

The Air of *Bruſſels* is excellently good, the Streets are pretty broad and well pav'd, the Houſes both large and commodious, and the circumjacent Country very delightful; moſt of the publick Places are beautified with Fountains; the Inhabitants are obliging and free, and by ſome accounted too eaſie; the Governour's Palace is neither regular nor magnificent, the chief thing belonging to it being its admirable Proſpect into the Park.

As you come from the Palace to the Park, you ſee a great Gun near the little Garden, the whole Story whereof is contain'd in an Inſcription engraven on a piece of Marble underneath the Cannon, containing in ſubſtance, that one of the Enemies Ships being blown up, that Cannon, with a young Girl, were carried thro' the Air into the Palace, and that *Iſabella Clara Eugenia*, the then Governeſs of the *Netherlands*, order'd this Cannon to be preſerv'd, and the Maid to be educated.

From the Flower-garden you aſcend into the Park, well planted with Oaks, Beech and Walnut-trees, and ſtor'd with ſeveral ſorts of Deer. The Alleys here are very delightful, and the Ramparts are likewiſe planted with a double row of Trees. Beyond the Park you ſee the Houſe of Pleaſure built by *Charles* V. and in it his Cradle; here he ſtaid for five or ſix months after his reſignation to his Son *Philip*. Not far from it is the Gallery furniſh'd with Arms and Inſtruments for Tournaments, beſides Suits of Armour of ſeveral Emperours, Princes, and great Generals. Here they alſo ſhew'd us three famous Horſes, whoſe Skins were ſtuff'd and joyn'd together ſo artificially, that they reſembled the Originals: The firſt, they tell you, belong'd to K. *Philip* II. and coſt twelve thouſand crowns; the ſecond bore on his Back the Infanta *Iſabella*, when the made her ſolemn Entry into *Bruſſels*; and the third was preſerv'd for having ſav'd the Life of Archduke *Albert* at the Siege of *Oſtend*; his Name was *Nobie*, and being a Horſe of Merit, it had a long Epitaph in Latin annex'd to it.

Bruſſels Park.

They have a peculiar Cuſtom here of harneſſing three or four Maſtiffs at one another's ſide, and make 'em draw Coaches or other Carriages at pleaſure. I was credibly inform'd, that upon a Wager two of theſe Dogs drew five Men in a Coach from one end of *Bruſſels* to the other.

Coaches drawn by Dogs.

The Filth of the City is carefully gather'd and ſold at a good rate; for as the *Flemmings* and *Hollanders* are ſtrange lovers of Flowers, they uſe this Dung in particular (after it is duly fermented) for the making up of theſe Flower-beds.

It muſt be confeſs'd, that for good Company, few Cities in *Europe* can compare with *Bruſſels*; abundance of People of Quality either live in, or reſort to this City, who are of no difficult acceſs, eſpecially to Strangers.

The *French* Tongue is much in vogue here: Every Night, both Winter and Summer, they take the *Tour à la mode* in the lower Town, where the Men never go in the ſame Coaches with the Women, as it is practis'd at *Rome*, but for a far different reaſon; for, whereas in *Italy* it is done to avoid the Converſation of both Sexes, they ſeparate here out of a pure piece of Gallantry; for the Men always keeping one Circle, and the Women another, they meet continually, and thus have the opportunity of talking to, or ogling, one another at pleaſure; the worſt is, that their continual Salutations as often as they meet is no ſmall interruption to this general Society.

There

There is another pleasant Custom observ'd among the Citizens of *Brussels*, on the 19th of *January*, when the Women undress their Husbands and carry 'em to Bed, the Husbands being oblig'd to treat their Friends the next day: For the original of this Custom they give you two reasons; the first is, That the City being once reduc'd to such extremity as to be forc'd to surrender to the Enemy, under condition only, that the Women should have liberty to carry along with 'em their Children and all they could bear upon their Shoulders, according to which they took their Husbands instead of their Ornaments. Others alledge, that a good number of the Citizens of *Brussels* following S. *Lewis* in his first *Croisade*, they had the good fortune to escape for the most part that general Rout, and afterwards coming home in a body, their Wives, rejoycing at the return of their Husbands, met and caught them in their Arms, and so carried them home.

The principal Churches of *Brussels* are, those of S. *Gudula* and the *Jesuites*; these have this in particular, that they use great Bells like the Parish-Churches, at which the other Monks are not a little jealous.

The Chapel of the Holy Sacrament of Miracles

In the Church of S. *Gudula* the Chapel of the *Holy Sacrament of Miracles* is much taken notice of; here are preserv'd certain Hosts in a golden Shrine, which being before consecrated by a Priest, were bought by some *Jews*, who stabbing the same with a Knife, a great deal of Blood issued out thence: The *Jews* were burnt on the highest Tower of the City Walks. The whole Story is painted on the Wall near the Quire. The *Capuchins* Church is perhaps the finest belonging to this Order.

In the *Jesuites* Library they shew, among other Curiosities, the Chair cover'd with gilt Leather, in which *Charles* V. resign'd the Crown to his Son: The Chapel belonging to the *Tassin*, in the Church of *des Sablons*, is also worth a Traveller's Observation.

I had it from credible persons, that of 35000 Acres which the Province of *Brabant* contains, 29000 belong to the Ecclesiasticks. Some few *Protestants* live at *Brussels*, but dare scarce own themselves such, tho' the Inquisition was never introduc'd in the *Netherlands*.

Lace and Tapestry are the chief Manufacturies of this City, whereof I would give you a more ample account, especially of its Academy, Theatre, the publick Place, the Townhouse, with its Pictures and curious Tower, the Duke of *Bournevill*'s Gardens, Count *Egmont*'s Hall, and other Curiosities, were it not that the want of Time did force me to conclude my Letter. I am,

Sir,

Brussels, Sept. 23. 1688.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XXXVIII.

SIR,

FRom *Brussels* we embark'd on the Canal, and in five hours came to the Village call'd *Little Villebroeck*, where taking Boat upon the *Ruppel*, we came with a fair Wind and Tide in two hours to *Antwerp*. At our departure thence we hir'd a Coach, which carried us over *Mechelen* to the little City of *Vilvorden*, from whence we went by Boat to *Brussels* again, being only two leagues distant.

Mechelen.

Mechelen is generally celebrated for its neatness, tho' in outward appearance it can challenge no preference in that point before other places: It is advantageously seated upon the River *Dyle*, which furnishing its Canals with sufficient Water, they thereby have a communication with most of the neighbouring Cities. Their chief Trade consists in Bone Lace made here. Nothing more common than for the Women of the Lordship of *Mechelen* to be brought to Bed in the Province of *Brabant*, that their Children may enjoy the benefit of the singular Privileges belonging to the Natives of that Country, which being so much talk'd of in these parts, I thought it not amiss to give you a short Abstract of them.

Privileges of the Province of *Brabant*.

I. *The Duke* (now the King of *Spain*) *shall have no liberty to call together any Assembly of the Prelates or inferiour Clergy, without the Knowledge, Consent, and Approbation of the other two Estates, viz. the Nobility and Commonalty.*

II. *The Duke shall not prosecute any Inhabitants of this Country, but by the usual way of Justice, whereby the accus'd Person may either plead his own Cause in publick, or by his Advocate.*

III. *The Duke shall have no Power to impose or levy Taxes on his Subjects, without the Consent of the States of the Province.*

IV. *No Dignities or Offices of Honour shall be bestow'd upon Foreigners, unless some inconsiderable Employments.*

V. *Whenever the Duke calls an Assembly of the States General, those of* Brabant *shall not be oblig'd to go out of their own Province, or to give their Consent to any thing, except in the same.*

VI. *If the said Duke, either by force, fraud, or any other way, should contravene or violate any of these before-mention'd Privileges, the People of* Brabant *(after a legal and dutiful Protestation) shall be absolv'd from their Oath of Allegiance, and are at liberty to dispose of themselves as they find it most convenient.*

Besides this, the Province of *Brabant* and Lordship of *Mechelen*, by a peculiar ancient Custom, receive no particular Governour. The Great Council instituted by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* 1473, and who us'd always to follow the Court, was settled at *Mechelen*, 1503. These Judges determine all the Causes depending betwixt the Knights of the *Golden Fleece* without Appeal.

Antwerp.

The City of *Antwerp*, so famous in the last Age, is seated in a smooth and level tract of Ground, upon the right Bank of the *Scheld*, in form of a Semicircle, the diameter whereof extends along the River side, and as I am credibly inform'd, is 3635 Geometrical paces in compass: Its Streets are generally large, streight, and well pav'd, but the Houses built after a way peculiar to it self, half of Brick, half of Wood, with a kind of Battlements on the tops of 'em, and very high Roofs; all which, tho' it appears somewhat antick, makes nevertheless in the main a handsom show.

The Fortifications are not so much celebrated for their strength as beauty, the Ramparts being almost every where adorn'd with double rows of Trees, which afford a most delightful and shady Walk in the Summer. The Citadel however is strong and regular, but somewhat neglected: Formerly the Statue of the famous Duke of *Alva* in Brass stood in the middle of the Place of Arms of the Citadel, in compleat Armour, but without a Head-piece, extending his right Arm towards the City, and his Hand open; he was trampling under his Feet a Monster with two Heads and six Arms, with two Dishes hanging in its Ears, and a Satchel about its Neck, out of which came forth two Serpents; in the six Hands it held a Torch, a Leaf of Paper, a Purse, a torn Cloak, a Club, and an Ax; and at the Feet of the Monster lay a Visor. On the Front of the Pedestal, that faced the City, were these following Letters;

The Duke of *Alva*'s Statue in the Citadel of *Antwerp*.

F. A. A. T. A. D. P. S. H. R. A. B. P. & E. S. R. P. R. P. P. I. C. P. P. F. R. O. M. F. P.

signifying,

Ferdinando Alvarez à Toledo Albæ Duci Phil. II. Hisp. Regis apud Belgas Præfecto, quod extincta seditione Rebellibus pulsis, Religione procurata, Justitiæ culta Provincias pacem firmaverit: Regis optimi Ministro Fidelissimo positum.

Over against *Antwerp*, and two leagues both above and below it, the *Scheld* is very broad and deep, which contributed not a little to the flourishing condition of this City in former times, when it had the reputation of the richest and most-frequented Port in *Europe*. I remember that I read in the Annals of this City, that its Trade in 1550 amounted to one hundred and thirty three millions of Gold, without reckoning the Bank. The same Records mention a certain Merchant nam'd *John Doens*, who having lent a million of Gold to *Charles* V. afterwards invited the Emperour to Dinner, where, after a Royal Entertainment, he threw the Emperour's Bond into the Fire, which was of Cinamon; but of late Years the face of Affairs is much alter'd, for now the Port of *Antwerp* is without Ships, the Exchange without Merchants, tho' for the rest the City it has not quite lost its ancient Beauty, and there are still many rich Families left.

A Story of a rich and pernicious Merchant.

Lubeck and *Antwerp* were in those days the two chief Cities of the *Hanseatick* Towns; they had a fair and spacious Building, call'd the *Easterlings House*, in the last of these Cities, which is in being still.

The

The *Bourse* or *Exchange* of *Antwerp*

The *Bourse* or *Exchange* of *Antwerp* is ninety foot long, and seventy broad, including the breadth of the Portico's which surround it on all sides; it was first built *An.* 1531, and has got the Name of *Bourse* from a House that stood in the same place, which had a Scutcheon with three Purses upon it, whence, they say, the publick place where Merchants meet have since retain'd the Name of *Bourse*. The Townhouse of *Antwerp* is a noble Structure.

Its Churches.

At the first time of my coming to *Antwerp* I was not a little surpriz'd at the magnificence of its Churches, especially of that belonging to the *Jesuites*, where you see nothing but curious Marble and excellent Pictures, till I saw a hundred Churches in *Italy* that infinitely surpass'd them: However, tho' the *Italians* have their Domes and Towers separate from the Bodies of their Churches, they can't boast of such Pyramids as the Steeple of the Cathedral of *Antwerp*, which has thirty three Bells, and is four hundred and twenty foot high, approaching pretty near to that of *Stramburgh*, but more finely wrought.

About thirty paces from this Church you see a Well, the Iron Branches of which, whereon the Pulley hangs, are adorn'd with Foliage-work wrought by a famous Smith nam'd *Quintin Metlys*, who becoming enamour'd of a Painter's Daughter, would have made her his Wife; but the Painter absolutely refusing to marry his Daughter to a Blacksmith, (tho' otherwise a man of a good Fortune) the Smith laid aside his Hammer, and taking up the Pencil, became one of the best Masters of *Antwerp*, and had his beloved Damosel, as a Reward of his Industry. He died *Ann.* 1529, and over his Tomb, at the foot of the Cathedral, near the great Portal, you see the following Verse engraven in *Roman* Letters;

Connubialis Amor de Mulebre fecit Apellem.

There is also a great part of *Plantin*'s Printing-house remaining to this day.

How the Brewhouses are supplied with Water.

The Water of the *Scheld* near *Antwerp* is brackish; and as the Fountains of the City could not supply the Brewhouses with sufficient Water, they were forc'd to bring another supply of Fresh-water by a Canal, which emptying it self into a great Cistern, it is from thence rais'd by certain Engines into a Basin, and so convey'd by forty Pipes to as many Brewhouses, every one of which knows how to open the Cock of his Pipe at certain hours.

Ghent.

Ghent is a large, pleasant, and neat City, enjoying the benefit of an excellent Air and convenient Situation; it was *Jan.* 1678. taken by the *French* in six days. The neighbourhood of the *Scheld* and the *Lys* are of no small advantage to this City: Upon the Bridge which is built over the latter stands two Brass Statues, representing a Man ready to cut off the Head of another. The same Figure you see painted in the Townhouse, with this Inscription underneath;

Ac Gandt le en Fendt trape Son Pere se tatte de tue, mais se heppe rempe si grace de Dieu 1371.

which *Walloon*, or ancient *Gaul* Inscription, implies as much as, *A Gand l'Enfant trappe Son Pere dessus la teste, mais son épée rompt, par la grace de Dieu*; the Story of which Adventure they relate thus, *A Father and Son being both condemn'd to Death, a Pardon was afterwards offer'd to either of them that would be the other's Executioner.* After a long Contest, the Father prevail'd upon the Son to save his own Life by taking away his, which the Son at last being forc'd to consent to, he was just ready to give the fatal blow, when the Blade either broke in the Air or flew out of the Handle; which being interpreted as a most singular piece of Providence, they were both pardon'd.

The Prince's Court.

The ancient Structure known by the Name of *The Prince's Court* was formerly the Palace of the Counts of *Flanders*. Here they shew'd us the Chamber where *Charles* the Fifth was born, which was so little that it could scarce hold a Bed; notwithstanding which, the ancient Inscription to be seen here proves, beyond contradiction, that this was certainly the place where that great Prince first saw Light.

The Cathedral.

The Cathedral is a vast Pile of Building, dedicated to *St. Bevon*; here I read a very short (but expressive) Epitaph, on a certain Prelate, *viz.*

Ecclesia Antistitem amisit, Respublica Virum.

Bruges, formerly a Hans Town.

Leaving *Ghent*, we passed along the Canal to *Bruges*, a very large and handsom City; for tho' it comprehends not so large a compass as *Ghent*, yet is it much more populous, and its Houses more uniform; Ships of five hundred Tuns may come up to the City by the Canal, but *Holland* has drawn the Trade from thence, as well as from *Antwerp*.

The Townhouse, the Waterhouse, Episcopal Palace, Cathedral, the great Market-place, the Colleges of the four Nations of *Flanders*, the *Jesuites* Church, and the magnificent Tombs in the Collegiate Church of *our Lady*, are all very fine, and worth a Traveller's Observation. On one side of the Quire in the Cathedral they shew you the place where *Charles the Good*, Count of *Flanders*, was assassinated.

The Order of the Golden Fleece.

The Order of the *Golden Fleece* was instituted at *Bruges*. It acknowledges for its Founder *Philip the Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, in the Year 1430. There are various Opinions concerning the occasion of the institution of that Order, but the most probable is, that the great encrease of this Prince's Revenue by the importation of the *English* Wool, was a sufficient inducement to him to erect this Order.

I remember I saw at *Brussels*, in the Townhouse, a very ancient piece of Tapestry, adorn'd with S. *Andrew*'s Cross, (the Arms of *Burgundy*) and the representation of the Story of *Gideon*'s Fleece, and *Olivier de la Marche* (who had considerable Employments under *Philip the Good*) relates, that at a great Feast, known by the name of *The Feast of Vows*, made by *Philip the Good* at *Lisle*, *February* the 17th, 1453. there was, among other things, represented the History of *Jason*'s Conquest of the Fleece.

Ostend.

At *Bruges* embarking again on the Canal, we came in three hours to *Ostend*, a little City and well fortified; but the Sluice which furnishes the Canal with Water from the Sea, is the most remarkable Curiosity belonging to this place. I need not put you in mind of the so famous Siege of this place, which being then but meanly fortified, yet sustain'd a most furious Siege of three Years, (it was begun by Archduke *Albert*, *Jun.* 5. 1601, and taken by *Ambrose Spinola*, *Sept.* 22. 1604.) during which they receiv'd 300000 Cannon-shot, had 71624 Men slain on their side, and kill'd of the Enemy 72900, and after all obtain'd of their Adversaries an honourable Capitulation.

Leaving the Canal that is betwixt *Ostend* and *Newport*, we took Coach thither, of which City I have nothing else to say, but that it put an end to our Travels on this side of the *British* Sea, which had in all respects been happy enough, and free from any sinister Accident; but notwithstanding all this satisfaction, we found it the greatest pleasure to come home. I am,

Sir,

Newport, *Oct.* 3. 1688.

Yours, &c.

Instructions to a Traveller.

AS *Travelling* seems to be a mixture of *Pleasure*, *Profit*, and *Pain*, so these Observations were intended to improve the two first, and lessen the last, in reference especially to those Countries thro' which we pass'd.

In *Holland* the Rates of Passages, either by Boats or Coaches, being fix'd, you meet with no great difficulty upon that account; but if you have more than one *Portmanteau* with you, you must either agree beforehand, or afterwards pay what they please.

Whilst you are in *Holland* you ought to make a small excursion into *North Holland*, the same being worth a Traveller's sight.

In our Journey from *Holland* into *Germany* we hired a Coach at *Utrecht*, to *Arnheim*, for 12 Livres 16 Sous, and there another to *Wesel* for 9 Livres; from thence we pass'd to *Cologne*, and so further to *Mayence* by Water, the Land-carriage being excessive dear. From *Mayence* to *Frankfort* is an easie days Passage upon the *Main* by Boat, at a set price.

By reason of the different sorts of Money in *Germany*, Travellers ought to provide themselves beforehand with Gold Ducats, Silver Rixdollars and Pistoles (the *Spanish* of full weight are the best for *Italy*) Letters of Commendation to private Persons living in those parts where they are to stay for some time, as also Pasports from those places from whence they came, are necessary Precautions; the first introduce you into the knowledge of the place, and may do a singular kindness in case of any Accident, the second does not only frequently save a great deal of trouble, but also procures a respect to the Traveller: And as for Bills of Exchange, they are so necessary, that the loss that attends them is much more supportable than the hazard of carrying much Money about one.

From *Frankfort* to *Heidelburgh* we travel'd in a Coach with six Horses, which we hired at the rate of three crowns a day.

From *Heidelburgh* to *Nurenburgh* we travel'd in six days, and paid thirty crowns for the Coach, and twenty more for another from *Nurenburgh* to *Augsburgh*, from whence there are set Stages going to *Venice*; but we having a mind to see *Munich* and some other places, we went on Horseback at the rate of twenty Ducats a head (all our Charges bore) over *Munich*, *Inspruck*, *Bolsena*, *Trent*, *Verona*, *Vincenza* and *Padua*, but were inform'd afterwards that we paid too dear by a fifth part.

'Tis to be observ'd, that Travellers are rarely stopt on the account of Customs either in *Holland* or *Germany*, and rarely at *Venice*, but in some other parts of *Italy* they are troublesom enough, but a few *Julio's* (*i. e.* Six-pence a piece) makes the Customhouse Officer very pliable. The Winters are generally pretty sharp in *Italy*.

From *Venice* we hired a Boat to *Padua* for twenty four Livres; in the common Boats a man may go at the rate of two Livres a head. At *Padua* we hired a Coach for fourteen Pistoles to carry us to *Loretto*. In many parts of *Italy* you have the conveniency of Stage-Horses, or of Calashes, or perhaps of both, which have this convenience, that you may stop where and as long as you please, because you change your Horse or Calash at every Stage: I prefer the Calashes in most places before Horses, for they carry two Persons, afford you a shade in the Summer, and keep you pretty warm in the Winter; besides that, you may have your Portmantles ty'd behind, tho' they weigh two hundred weight.

At *Loretto* we hired three Calashes with two Horses (there being eight of us) for two and twenty *Italian* Pistoles, to carry us to *Rome*, where we took a House ready furnish'd at 6 *l.* Sterl. *per* month, and 14 Pistoles a month for a handsom Coach and two good Horses, it being then near *Easter*, at another time you might have one for 10 or 12.

If you intend to take an exact view of *Rome*, you must address your self immediately to a skilful Antiquary, who will shew you many Rarities and curious things not to be met with in Books.

A Traveller ought to be well provided with Measures of divers sorts, Geographical Maps, a Watch, Perspective-Glass, a Mariner's Compass and Quadrant. I had always with me a piece of Packthread, well twin'd and wax'd, of fifty fathom long, divided into feet by Knots, by the means of which I could measure the height of Towers, bigness of Pillars, &c.

The Journey from *Rome* to *Naples* is commonly perform'd either with Horses or Calashes, or perhaps with both, for the better easing themselves by change. In your Journey thither you are very seldom troubled with any Customhouse Officers, but in your return they will be plaguing you the first half-days Journey, imagining that you have a cargo of Silk-Stockins with you, one of the best Manufactures of *Naples*, but are not near so good as the *English*.

We agreed at *Rome* for Calashes, and to have our charges bore from *Rome* to *Florence*, for eleven days, at the rate of six *Italian* Pistoles a head, *viz.* six days to *Leghorne*, two and a half from thence to *Florence*, the remainder being spent in our way at *Viterbo*, *Siena*, *Pisa*, *Lucca*, *Pistoya*, &c. *Florence* is famous for all manner of Perfumes.

From *Florence* to *Bologna* you travel either on Horseback (22 Livres for each Horse) or in Litters, the Road being too rough for Calashes. In *Lombardy* we travel'd always in Calashes, which are chang'd at every Stage. The Mountains betwixt *Novi* and *Genoua* are not passable but on Horseback; the Rates differ according to the Seasons.

In our return from *Genoua* we hired a Coach with four Horses at *Novi*, to carry us to *Turin*, from whence we travel'd on Horseback over *Geneva* to *Basil*, and from thence, by the way of *Hunningben*, *Friburgh*, *Brisac* and *Schledstadt*, to *Strasburgh*: The best way for a Traveller is, to agree with the Guides to have his Charges bore along the Road.

From *Strasburgh* we went to *Cologne* by the *Rhine*, there took Coach to *Brussels*, and from thence to *Ghent*, and so further by the Canal to *Bruges* and *Ostend*.

For the rest: It is not very convenient to travel in great companies, especially in *Italy*, where the Country Inns are but indifferently provided with Beds and Provisions, as well as in many parts of *Germany*.

A Traveller ought never to travel without an Iron Engine to fasten the Doors of his Lodgings, which are often without Locks or Bolts, and it is a true Proverb, that *Opportunity makes Thieves*.

For the rest: It ought to be his chief aim to keep the best Company he can, to enquire after Persons famous for their Skill in Arts and Sciences, and to converse with them, these being likely to prove the most useful to him in his Travels, which being at all times attended with many Difficulties and Accidents, this Reflection ought to be a sufficient inducement to the prudent Traveller to embrace all Opportunities that may in all likelihood recompense his Charges and Trouble.

Topogra-

Topographical Descriptions.

WITH

Historico-Political and Medico-Physical

OBSERVATIONS,

Made in Two several

Voyages thro' most parts of *Europe*.

By *JOHN NORTHLEIGH*, LL. M. D. *Lond.* 1702.

CHAP. I.

A Description of the United Provinces.

The *Briel*.

THE *Briel*, being the place from whence the Pacquet-boats take their usual passage to and from *Harwich*, may be rank'd among the Towns of a middle size of *Holland*, and is the chief City in the Country of *Van Voorn*, (the rest being inconsiderable places) so call'd from its situation before the other parts of the Province of *Holland* which lie N. N. E. of it. The Town of *Gemliet*, which some place in this part of the Country, lies in the Isle of *Putt*, separated from this by an Arm of the Sea.

At the *Briel* you observe the same neatness as in all the other Cities of *Holland*, and is strengthned with a Moat, and secur'd by Drawbridges, like most other Towns in this Province; the Wall is partly of Earth, partly of Stone, with a Breastwork of Turf, but none of the most regular; their Cannon were then dismounted, and their Garison very weak. By the help of a Canal, Ships can load and unload in the very City. They have one large and three lesser Churches, one whereof is call'd the *English Church*; their Houses are generally uniform, built of Brick, with sharp Roofs and pointed Fronts, but not so high as in some other places; their chief Street is streight, and near a thousand paces long; their Town-house is but small, the figure of the City almost triangular, and its situation very pleasant: Their Government is administred by a Scout, or Sheriff or Bailiff, the *Eschevins*, or a Court of Aldermen, and a *Raedt* or Common Council. What renders this Town the greatest Fame amongst the Cities of *Holland*, is, that the Count *de la Mar*, Lord of *Lume*, seiz'd upon this place with his Refugees or *Gueuses*, 1 *Apr.* 1572. and by his brave example drew the other Towns of the *Netherlands* into a general Revolt. This place was put into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth*, as one of the *Cautionary Towns*, an evident sign (considering its advantagious situation) that the *Dutch* were either forc'd or willing to trust to the Generosity of that Great Princess. Its situation is in a flat and fertile Ground, which produces in great plenty a certain Plant call'd *Hellem* by the Inhabitants, and *Genes* or *Genet* by the *French*, being our *Spanish Broom*: The Roots of this Plant being long and thick, they us'd formerly to fence the outsides of their Dikes with it in *Holland* and *Zealand*, which (by the description,) I suppose to be the *Spartum Maritimum* or *Quartum Clusii*, a sort of our *English Matweed*, which I observ'd on this Island, and on the sandy Shore near *Scheveling*, of a much larger growth than in *England*; the *Germans* call it *Halm*, whence the *Hollanders*,

See Guicciardine.

in their Dialect, have got the word *Hallem*, being thick at the Roots, and consequently proper for such a use; tho' now-a-days they fortifie their Water-fences with more Art and Security: I have also seen it on the Southern Coasts of *Italy*, and on those of *Denmark*, and we have some of it about *Sandwich* and the Isle of *Thanet*, but not so large as the *Dutch*.

The River.

The River hereabouts is call'd the *Maese*, tho' it may properly be consider'd as the common discharge of the *Rhine*, the *Wahl*, the *Yeuse* and *Mercie*.

Maesland Sluys.

On the opposite side of this River, almost directly over against the *Briel*, lies the Town of *Maesland Sluys*; the River being here near half a league over, we view'd it only at a distance: The Inhabitants maintain themselves chiefly with Fishing; they have of late years built themselves a fair new Church.

Vlaerdingen.

Higher up the River, to your left, lies a small (but ancient) Town, conveniently seated near the *Maese*, call'd *Vlaerdingen*, but of little Trade, which is quite remov'd thence to *Rotterdam*.

Schiedam.

About two miles higher lies the small Town of *Schiedam*, so call'd from its River the *Schie*; it aboundeth in Fishermen and such as make Cords, Nets, and such-like Work.

Delfshaven.

About two miles above this place you see the Town of *Delfshaven*, *i. e.* the *Harbour* of *Delft*, from the passage that goes up from hence to *Delft*. Here is a goodly Structure erected for the use of the *East-India Company*: This place is conveniently seated for a strong Fortification, and sends abundance of Busses to catch Herrings.

Rotterdam.

Two miles beyond this lies the famous City of *Rotterdam*, the second trading City of the *United Provinces*, seated upon the Banks of the River *Maese*, a place of vast Traffick: I was told, that in the Year 1671. after a great Frost, the *English*, *Scots*, and *Irish* set out at once three hundred Sail from this place, nothing being more common among the *English* Merchants, than to send great quantities of Merchandizes by the Inland great Passage-boats to *Amsterdam*, and from thence again to *Rotterdam*, because they often can make sooner returns from this last place to the *Thames* than they can get out of the *Texel*. It hath got its Name from the River *Rotte*, which runs into it on the North-West side, and the word *Dam*, signifying in *Dutch* a Fence against the Water. Its Figure is oval, or rather triangular, the Buildings lofty, but something irregular, the Fronts leaning forwards, for which reason they are fastned backwards with Iron-work.

Their Chanels which run thro' the Streets are so broad and deep that they admit Ships of great burthen into any part of the City; these are joyn'd by Draw-bridges, which appear not so beautiful as the Stone-bridges of *Amsterdam*. Their Great Church is that of *S. Laurence*, the Tower whereof was, not many years ago, set streight and upright again by a good Architect: In this Church you see the Tombs of *Cornelius de Wit* and *Egbert Bartholomew de Cortenaer*, two of their Admirals, the first slain in an Engagement against the *Swedes*, and the last in another Sea-fight; they are both very magnificent, and erected at the charge of the Publick. The noble Organ in this Church is compos'd of two or three thousand Pipes.

Th Tombs of Cornelius de Wit and Cortenaer.

The fairest Structure here (at least on the outside) is what they call the *Stadt-huys*, or the House for Consultation about publick affairs; it is a spacious square Pile of Building, the Front whereof is beautified with Free-stone and curious Fretwork. Their Exchange, Admiralty-house, the *East-India* and Town Houses, are also goodly Structures. In their Hospital they maintain five or six hundred Children.

Rotterdam is also celebrated for the Birth of the Great *Desiderius Erasmus*, whose Statue of Brass in a Gown and Cap, stands in the *Great Place*, with several Latin Inscriptions on the sides of the Pedestal. On the outside of the Walls this City appears rather pleasant than strong, by reason of the most delightful Walks that surround it on all sides.

Erasmus's Statue.

The Government of Amsterdam.

The Government is administer'd here by a President, four Burghermasters, and twenty four Senators or Aldermen, call'd the *Roosship*; the latter have the governing Power not for Life, but only for two or three Years, and if any one dies, the rest chuse another in his stead; for it is manifest, that in most part of *Holland* the Government is rather *Aristocratical* than *Democratical*, whatever some may pretend to the contrary. As their Excellency consists in foreign Traffick, so Manufactury is not much regarded here: This City had originally no right of sending Deputies to the State, till by the encrease of its power it was added with some others, to the rest. Liberty of Conscience is as free here as at *Amsterdam*; the *English* and *Scots* have two considerable Churches. I saw here also a *Quakers* Meeting, where I heard a certain noted *English Quaker* * preach an ingenious *English* Sermon to a *Dutch* Congregation, an Interpreter, who stood at his side, explaining with a great deal of dexterity what he said Paragraph by Paragraph. During the general Distraction in *Holland*, in 1672, this City was one of the first that declar'd in favour of the House of *Orange*, and for the revocation of the perpetual Edict.

* Mr. Pen I.

In the West end of the City, among their Ordnance, I observ'd an old Anchor, kept there as a great piece of Antiquity, which some had the Folly to give the Name of the *Anchor of Noah's Ark*; but upon enquiry I understood the same to have been dug up very deep out of the Ruins of the City, which seems to evince that a great part of the City lay formerly under Water. But the most curious Piece of Art I observ'd here was, the neat Work of Mr. *Van Dulet*, done only on plain Paper, in which he had cut the finest Piles of noble Structures, Fretwork, *bass* and *high Relievo*, Foreshwork, Ships and Landskips, as lively as if they had been done by the Hand of the most skilful Painter.

Mr. Van Dulet's curious Paper-works.

As for the Air of *Rotterdam*, I can't commend it as very wholsom; for, besides the situation of the place among the Fenns, which render it much subject to Fogs, the Canals of the City having not a current swift enough to purge 'em from the Filth the Water brings along with it, the heat of the Summer-season elevates certain Exhalations here, which much affect our Nostrils.

Dort.

From hence we sail'd in a Yacht to *Dort*, seated just where the *Meuse* and the *Waal* divide into two branches, and embrace a tract of Ground call'd the *Isle of Ysselmond*. Their Churches, Streets and Houses much resemble those of *Rotterdam*, but is not so large, and its Figure almost circular. In one of the upper Rooms of the *Gunners Doel* you see still the Benches where the famous Synod sate in 1611, which has given occasion to so many Divisions in this Country, betwixt the *Arminians* and *Anti-Arminians*, *Remonstrants* and *Anti-Remonstrants*, *Predestinarians* and *Latitudinarians*, &c. who all with the same Zeal pretend to the true explanation of the Articles establish'd by this Synod.

The Staple of Rhenish Wine.

Hereabouts hapned, in 1421, that prodigious Inundation in which seventy Villages were drown'd, but since regain'd: It was always the Staple for the *Rhenish Wine* and other Commodities that come down the Rivers above it, and pay a certain Duty here; but since the *Hamburghers* have left it, the Wine Trade is not so great as before.

Their Magistrates have some peculiar Privileges, and they have an old Mint with this Inscription;

This is the Imperial Mint, and the Land's of Holland.

Debtors have a Refuge here against their Creditors. This City was originally one of the six that had a Voice in the management of the State, and was very zealous for the House of *Orange* in 1672.

From *Rotterdam* you go in two hours to *Delft*; by the way we saw some neat Country Seats and Gardens on the bank of the River *Schied*, which runs to *Delft*, with the Town of *Overschied*, which has taken its Name from it. The Passage-boats that carry you from hence, and from one place to another, call'd *Trekschuyts*, being in shape not unlike our *London* Barges, but not so fine, and are drawn by Horses; they go off at certain times, at the warning of a Bell. Their Places of Execution are generally near some Canal, as we put ours near the High-way; their Felons hang here till they drop down, as we do ours hung in Chains.

Delft is a round, compact, and well-built City; the Townhouse is a goodly Structure, facing the new Church, betwixt which is a spacious Place; within it you see a noble Seat of Judicature, and six goodly Apartments for the use of the Officers of the Government. The new Church has a curious and lofty Steeple, the Tower of Brick, and the Spire of Stone; in this Church is the Monument of Prince *William* of *Nassau*, who was barbarously murther'd by one *Balthasar Gerard*; on his Marble Tomb is a handsom and long Inscription; at the head of his Effigies, as it lies along in Marble, standeth the Prince's Statue in Brass, and Fame sounding him in his Armour with this Motto, *Te vindicetur Libertas*; with another Emblem of his going on steady in a Storm, with this Inscription, *Deum Tranquillum in undis*. At his Feet lies a Dog, which, they say, really liv'd and died with him. The whole is adorn'd with as good Brass Statues and as excellent Marble as any I ever met with in *Italy*. This Monument contains the Bodies of four Princes and three Princesses, *viz.* *William* of *Nassau* and his Spouse, his Son and his Princess, Prince *Maurice*, Prince *Frederick* and his Daughter.

The old Church is much inferiour to the new one in its Fabrick, yet contains the Ashes of two renown'd Heroes, *viz.* of the Great *Van Tromp*, whose Tomb has likewise a large and elegant Inscription; and of *Van Heem*, who was likewise slain in a Sea-engagement, and lies interr'd here under a fair Marble Tomb: Here also lies the Body of the Lady of Sir *Charles Morgan*. The circumference of this City is about two miles, being fortified with a Wall and Ditch, but after the antique fashion. The chief Magazine and Armoury of the State is at *Delft*; here are two great Pieces of Ordnance, each weighing eight thousand pounds, made at *Lubeck* 1669. This City was always one of the six that had a Voice in the State, and now has the third in the States of *Holland*, and contains one of the Chambers belonging to the *East-India* Company: It is chiefly famous for its excellent Earthen Ware made here in imitation of Porcelane. This City also gave Birth to that pernicious Heretick *David George*, who set up for our Saviour; he quitted *Delft* in 1544, and went to *Basil*, where he died. Formerly a certain Apothecary nam'd *Vander Mere* had a curious Collection of Rarities here, but is since dispers'd among his Heirs, and neglected. They have also a Theatre for Anatomy, with some Natural Rarities and Lectures, but the Vicinity of the University of *Leyden* makes them not to be much taken notice of.

From *Delft* we went to the *Hague*, a place chiefly famous for the Court of the Princes, the Assembly of the States, and the great Consflux of Strangers; the Princes Court is neither capacious without nor within, but the Town it self round and compact, neatly built, and the old Church is a very noble Structure, adorn'd within with the Escutcheons of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, hung up here, without doubt, whilst they were yet under the *Spanish* Government: In this Church is to be seen the old Inscription, in Capitals, mention'd by *Henegius*, viz

E. Douse Jeni F. Hic Cubat Qui vixit, Ann. XXV. *Mensis* XI. *Dies* IV.

We heard a Sermon preach'd here by one of their Divines, who was dress'd in a loose Coat without a Girdle; they are cover'd during the Sermon. Their Town house can't compare either with that of *Delft* or *Rotterdam*. At the end of the Town towards *Scheveling* is the *Tapethuys* (as they call it) or Magazine, a goodly Edifice, and hard by it, nearer to the Town, the *Old Princess*

Princesses Palace, a handsom Fabrick of Free-stone, with the Treasury and some other fair Buildings.

The Tomb of Opdam in the New Church.

Their *New Church* is a plain (but modern) Structure, with a *Cupola*; the chief Ornament of it is the Tomb of the great *Opdam*; his Effigies is to be seen in a standing posture on a most noble Base, *Fame* crowning him with Lawrels, the whole cover'd with a *Cupola* of Marble resting on four Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order, finely vein'd with red and white; at the Pedestal of each you see a Statue of Marble representing *Fortitude*, *Vigilance*, *Prudence* and *Fidelity*; above, in the Front, is a long Inscription, and on the Sides two or three others, describing his great Actions, and how he had set fire to his own Ship in his last Sea-engagement against the *English*.

The Walks, which are even in the middle of this *Town*, as they make it extreamly pleasant within, so the Woods about it, especially that call'd the *Bosch*, render it infinitely delightful without. I remember that *Tacitus* mentions certain Groves hereabouts, in the chiefest of which *Claudius Civilis* assembled the People, and made an eloquent Harangue to them; *Guicciardine* has also taken notice of some ancient *Sculptures* and other matters hereabouts relating to the Emperors *Adrian*, *Antonin*, *S. Septimi Severus*, and some other *Roman* Heroes.

This *Town*, as considerable as it is, never had a Voice among the six in the Senate, nor among the twelve that have been added since, tho' *Purmerent* and *Scheidam*, two inconsiderable poor places, are of that number, the true reason whereof I am not able to give you, unless it be that the *Hague* was always consider'd as a Village; but if it be, it is the fairest and largest in the World: Whilst they were under the *Spanish* Jurisdiction, their Kings kept here their Chamber of Accounts, the Treasury, and a fair Library.

In the adjacent Wood I found the *Unifolium*, and on the Sea-shore near *Scheveling* (a poor Fisher-Town a mile from the *Hague*) the *Sparton Maritimum*, the *Kali Spinosum* J. B. and the *Tragus Matthioli*.

The most considerable places about the *Hague* are, *Honslaerdike*, a Country Palace belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, having got its Name from the Plain in which it is seated, where it was built by the late Prince of *Orange*, a mile from *Gravesend* or the Sea it self. It is very handsomly built, and adorn'd with fine Gardens, beautiful Fountains and Statues, and among these some antique ones, as the *Roman* Gladiator, *Sampson* tearing the Lyon, and several others: This House is superiour to many noted Palaces of *Italy*; from the backside there is a delicious prospect thro' a pleasant Grove and divers regular Plantations of Greens, which make up a Square of about half a mile from each Angle to the Center, the utmost rows of Trees being set in lines like a Landskip; beyond this is the place where they keep the Exotic Birds, and another for strange Beasts, the most remarkable are, the *Indian* Stork, the *Surinam* Hens, differing from other *Indian* Hens; the *Cassowary* and *Ostriches*; the *Cassowary* is the *Emeau* of *Aldrovandus*, and the *Ornithologia*, being of the *Ostrich* kind, but not so tall, and is rather woolly than feather'd; Dr. *Harvey* says it eats and digests Coals, and *Aldrovandus* allows it no Tongue, but *Jacob Bontius*, in his description of it, does not mention either of these: Among the two-legg'd Beasts we saw the *Plandbuck*, the *Indian Cows*, no bigger than our *Welsh* Heifers, having upon their Shoulders, where the *Vertebræ* of the Neck joyn with the Spine, Bunches like Camels; some *Indian* Deer, the Antelope and Roebucks, more frequent in *Germany*.

The lower Rooms of this Palace have no peculiar Ornaments, except that they are neatly pav'd with Marble after the *Dutch* fashion, but above-stairs the Rooms are stately, and the two Galleries very curious, and adorn'd with excellent Pieces of Painting; the Picture of King *Charles* I. is of the hand of *Van Dyke*, as is the *Medusa* and several other Pieces; the *Venus* is of *Rubens*, the Flower-work by one *Latine*, and the Figures by *Duval*. The Princesses Closet was most curiously wainscotted with most exquisite Japan-work.

The Palace at Rejwick.

Nearer to the *Hague* is another Palace belonging to the Princes of *Orange*, call'd *Rejwick*; it has many good Pieces of Painting, by the best Masters; the Marble Staircase is also exceeding fine, as well as the Marble Floor; its Front is of Free-stone, very noble and lofty, and the Terras very fine; it was then unfurnish'd; the late Treaty of Peace concluded at this Palace will render its Name famous for ever.

The House in the Bosch.

There is another House belonging to the Princes of *Orange*, call'd *The House in the Bosch*, i. e. *the House in the Wood*, from its situation in the Wood near the *Hague*; it has one noble Room with a Cupola on the top, enough to make (as indeed it does) the whole House; the Paintings in it are most excellently done, by great Masters, especially the Triumph of Prince *William* of *Nassau*; and another Piece representing Captivity, with the different passions of submitting Patience and insulting Pride excellently well express'd, besides divers other good Pieces done by one *Tulp*. Over the Chimney-piece you see this Inscription in golden Capitals:

Fr. Hen. Nassovius
Nass. Delph. W. Camer. Febr.
CIↃ IↃ XXXIV.

This Palace seems by its situation contriv'd for the sweetest and most solitary retirement this Country can afford.

Among other things we also took a view of the Village of *Lansdun*, six miles from the *Hague*, famous for the pretended Delivery of a certain Countess of *Hornsburgh* of three hundred sixty five Children at a birth, a Story that may well be look'd upon as a Relick of the Popish Legend; notwithstanding which they have taken peculiar care to transmit it to Posterity by certain Latin Inscriptions on a Table or Plate fix'd to the side of the Wall; but 'tis to be observ'd that this is a new Inscription, put up some hundred Years after the Fact, it being evident from *Guicciardine* that it was not there about a hundred Years ago, because the Epitaph recited by him is quite another and much shorter. The two Brass Basins in which they say these Children were baptiz'd, are not unlike our Milk-pans, with this Dutch Inscription:

In dese twey Bekens, sin alle dese Kin'ren gedoopt,
i. e. *In these two Basins were all the Children baptiz'd*.

On the opposite side is to be seen a short Inscription to memory of Mr. *Richard Hardihg*, an *English*man, who being Privy Purse to King *Charles* the Second in his Exile, is interr'd here.

From the *Hague* we went to the most celebrated University of *Leyden*; this City for bigness challenges the next place to *Amsterdam*, but the Academy falls short of ours of *Oxford* and *Cambridge*, and even of some others I have seen abroad.

By the way we pass'd by the ancient Town of *Woerden*, which some say was an old *Roman* Castle, or of *Rhinsod* King of the *Frisons*, which they pretend to prove from some ancient Monuments and Inscriptions found among the Ruins made by the *Danes* and *Normans*.

The Academy.

Their Academy is their Schools for publick Lectures, (they having no Colleges) being a Fabrick of Brick only two Stories high, and two Rooms on a Floor, the two lowermost for Divinity and Physick, and the two uppermost for Law and Philosophy; in the Garrets the *Officinæ*, and on the top a kind of Tower or Lanthorn for Mathematical Instruments and Astronomical Observations.

Adjacent to it is their Physick-garden, containing an Acre of Ground well stor'd with Plants, and carefully preserv'd by the Industry of Dr. *Herman*, a curious Botanist and Professor of Physick, and who has the keeping of a large and good Collection of Natural Rarities, for which I will referr my self to the Catalogues printed by him; the most remarkable and exotick things I saw there were, The Cabinet of Curiosities.

the *Anser Magellanicus Clusii*, so call'd from those Streights, *Penguinus dictus Clusii*, i. e. the *Indian* Goose call'd the *Penguin*. Mr. *Ray*, in *Willoughb. Ornithol.* *lib.* 3. *p.* 322. says, it walks upright, with Wings hanging down on both sides: A Bird of *Brasil*, the Head arm'd with a sort of Horns, according to *Margravius*; the Horns given powder'd in Wine are an excellent Remedy against Poyson; *Piso* affirms it by his own experience, *Siliqui arboris Indicæ Malebaricæ: Faseoli Pisanelli Cerbonensibus similes, dictæ*. Hort. Mal. *Tom.* 1. *p.* 77. The Authors of the *Hort. Malabarici* call it *Arborem admirandam*; the Cod was three foot long; the Cortex is used to consolidate Fractures, the Roots in Decoctions against the Dropsy and Distempers of the Head, and the bruis'd Leaves for Ulcers *: The *Orb-fish* with Prickles, call'd the *Guara* by *Piso*, the Gall whereof taken even in the least quantity, causes most dreadful Symptoms, as the Swimming of the Head, trembling of the Limbs, loss of Speech, cold Sweats, till a general Lipothegm puts an end to the Patient's life, notwithstanding all which it is in *Brasil* serv'd up for a Dainty, after the Cooks have carefully clean'd it from the *Felliculæ fellis*, which contains the poysonous matter, against which they have also a certain Antidote, *viz.* the Powder of a certain little Crab of a various colour, (of which I believe I have one) call'd by the *Brasilians Aratu*, which soon expels the Poyson. The Intestines of this Fish lie round in circles, like those of terrestrial Animals,

* *Vid.* Description of the Isle of Ceylon.

which

which is not usual in the Aquatick Creatures; a true *Seamorse's* Head, and the Skin of a wild Horse from *Brasile*; *Concha Maxima Imbricata Indica*; the Head of an Hart with huge monstrous Horns; the *Manucodiata* or Paradise Bird, a thing not so remarkable for its rarity as for the discovery of the vulgar Error of their having no Feet, and the absurd consequences thereof, as their living upon the Celestial Dew, their hovering in the Air, the Cavity in the Male's Back to lodge their Eggs, many of that kind coming to us as fairly footed as other Birds, and provided with Claws, which shews them to be Birds of Prey.

Vulgar Error concerning the Bird of Paradise.

The Fruit of the *Indian Ananas*, the *Rana Pinea* or *Pine-thistle*, brought from thence sometimes preserv'd, is of a delicious taste, being as big as a Melon; from the top sprouts forth the coniferous Bud or Bunch by which they propagate; I have some of the Leaves by me, which resemble those of the *Aloes Aquatica* or *Militaris Aizoides*, generally call'd the *Water Warrior*, but something shorter: This Fruit *Piso* and some other Physicians recommend as very cordial and stomachick, and excellent good in Distempers of the Stone and Gravel. I took notice of another exotick Plant, *viz.* a large arundinous Trunk of the great *Indian* Figtree, call'd *Jamacaru* by *Piso*, hollow'd like a Cane, the *Tamandu* of *Piso*, call'd *Ant-eater* by the *Dutch*, (or the *Ant-Bear*) because he feeds upon those little Creatures, and is taken by the *Indians* with a Hook hid in an heap of Ants, and tied to a Tree; it is a large Beast: The true Rattle-snake; the *Boiciningia Piseon*, who fay s the Rattle in the Tail is augmented by one Joint every Year, and a Snake often has one of two fingers long, which emitted into the *Anus* of any Creature, kills sooner than any other Infection; the Cure is perform'd by the application of its Head bruis'd, or the *Juncus, Scirpe dictus*: The *Hippopotamus*, but whether a true one or not, I will not determine, Authors varying so much in the description of this Creature, that I question whether there is any determin'd Species of it in Nature: The *Lacertus Indicus Squamosus*, a Creature more remarkable for its oddness than scarcity, for it lives underground like a Mole, and its Head is sharper, but the formations and junctures of its Scales are most surprising. *Bontius* and *Clusius* have given a very exact account of it. We also saw here the true Talipot-leaf of the *Palma Nucifera*, which serves the *Indian* for an Umbrello; and one of those Nests, made by a Bird like a Swallow out of the froth of the Water, or the scum of some Semen of a certain Fish found on the Coast of *Cormandel* and *Malabar*, fastned to the Rocks; *Bontius* says the Inhabitants eat it for a Dainty, like as we do Mushrooms, Caviar, &c. They also shew here a large Cabinet of all sorts of Animals, very well preserv'd in a Balsamick Liquor, as they call it, being only a Spirit of Wine mix'd with some qualifying Emollients or Gums, to prevent the Spirit of Wine from preying too much upon the Bodies they intend to preserve; among those few I took notice of were a *Lizard*, the *Legana* of *Bontius*, some of which (he tells us) are five foot long: there are also some Water-Lizards, differing not much in shape from the *Alligators* and *Crocodiles*; this was serrated all along the Vertebra of the Back, with a ugly squamous Skin, just as *Bontius* describes it, *Hist. Nat. Lyce.* 4. They preserve here another kind of *Lizard* wing'd like a Bat, the only kind of Dragons that ever has been seen; what the Scripture mentions of them seeming altogether congruous to this Creature, which commonly dwells in desolate places and solitary Caves, and can't fly at any distance; the Naturalists call it *Draco volans* and *Serpens alatus*. Besides these, they have a good Collection of *Vipers* and *Serpents* of the *Indies*, and especially of the Isle of *Ceylon*. The true *Indian* Locust, the *Acrimat.* of *Piso*; if it wounds a Man, it produces an immediate trembling all over the Body, which is cur'd by Palm-Oyl and the application of a certain Herb. I saw here the largest *Scorpion* that ever I met with, as big as one of our largest River *Crabs*: *Bontius* indeed mentions one he saw in the *Indies* of a quarter of a yard, but neither *Spain* nor *Italy* produces any that come near that for bigness.

The Rattle Snake.

After the publick Schools and the Physick-garden, the *Anatomical Theatre* challenges the first place, being much superiour to that of *Padua* and our *Chirurgeons-Hall*, and well furnish'd with Natural and Anatomical Curiosities, of which they have a printed Catalogue; those I took notice of were, two testaceous Shells, weighing about three hundred pounds each; the Skeleton of the Female *Ai*, a slow Beast, which, as *Piso* tells us, can scarce go in fifteen days so far as you can fling a Stone; the Skeleton of a Sea-Hare, which resembling somewhat our Land-Hares, (according to the Draughts they shew of them) with vast variety of all other sorts of Skeletons, the most entire and curious I ever saw. Here they also shew you the Effigies of a Peasant, who had a Knife cut out of his Stomach, and liv'd ten Years after, if any one will believe it; as likewise an odd-shap'd large Stone taken out of the Kidney of a young Maiden, a Present of *Heurnius*; as also a Liver containing such another Stone. I remember Dr. *P.* an ancient and noted Physician at the *Bath*, told me of a certain Body, which being open'd upon suspicion that the Kidneys were affected, upon strict examination one putting his Finger into the neck of the Ureter, or some of the *Caniculi* or *Tubuli* extended, took out a perfect petrified testaceous Shell, which (as far as I could guess by his description) was not unlike the *Turbines* or *Trochea* mention'd by Naturalists. See *Aldrovand. L. C. 25.*

The Anatomical Theatre

We saw here also the Head of the *Indian* Hog call'd the *Barbirousa*; an *Egyptian* Urn, with an Abortion preserv'd in it; as also a *Roman* Urn, with some Idols and Pieces of Antiquity; the Canon *Egyptiacus Ligneus*, the manner of embalming their Mummies; and certain Images taken out of their Sepulchres, which they used to bury with Persons of Quality, to preserve 'em from violence: Thus *Suetonius* tells us of *Nero*, that he used to worship a little Image of a Maiden, to *protect him against Conspiracies*. I pass by in silence a vast number of *Veins, Arteries* and other *Vessels* of the Body curiously preserv'd.

Quasi Romanum opus esset.

The *Apothecaries* and *Chirurgeons* (of the last of which there is above a hundred here) have each their particular Hall, and just without the Walls is their Pesthouse, or the Hospital used in the time of Plague; the Walk which leads to it is the best kept of any that ever I saw, and the Trees very tall; the Hospital is well built, and endow'd with a considerable Revenue, which is laid up every Year against a time of Plague, which is not near so frequent here now as in former times.

In their Childrens Hospital, call'd the *Weeshuys*, they maintain handsomly above nine hundred Children. We were credibly inform'd that it is a Custom here, establish'd by a Compact betwixt the several Towns of this Province, that if any of these Children, with permission from the respective Governours of the Hospitals, go to any of these Cities, they may demand to be entertain'd in the Hospital of that place to which they go; not unlike the Priests in Popish Countries, travelling by command of their Superiours.

Leyden was so famous formerly, that *Cornelius Aurelius* call'd it *Leyda* in the plural, as the *Athenians* did their University *Athenæ*; but *Ptolemy* calls it *Lugdunum*, the same Name it now bears; *Pliny* mentions it as an ancient Town; it was also call'd *Legia*, from the *Roman* Prætor, who having his residence in this Town, used to quarter his Legions hereabouts. It is water'd by many Canals, *Guicciardin* accounts no less than a hundred forty five, which number is considerably augmented since; besides that, it is wash'd by several branches of the *Rhine*. It is indifferently fortified with Walls and Ramparts.

The City of Leyden.

The Church of St. *Peter* is the oldest, and now the best in the whole City; its high Steeple was much celebrated among the Seamen, unto whom it serv'd for a Land-mark, but fell down in 1522. Here you see the Tombs of many persons eminent for their Learning, as of Dr. *John Heurnius*, *Gerardus Bontius*, *Thomas Erpenius*, *Rembertus Dodonæus*, &c. In St. *Maries* you see the Tomb of *Jo. Justus Scaliger*, the Son of the famous *Julius*; he could have no other Inscription upon his Tomb but the following:

Famous Men of Leyden.

Josephus Justus Scaliger. Hic expecto Resurrectionem.

Here liv'd *Carolus Clusius* the great Herbalist, the most celebrated *Justus Lipsius*, and the famous *John* of *Leyden* King of *Munster*; they shew you the Shopboard on which he used to work before he was intoxicated with the royal Title.

The place unto which they have given the Name of *Burgh* is a Mount of Earth cast up; some make *Hengist* the *Saxon* the Founder of it in 450, after his conquest of *Britain*, but others say it belong'd to the Burgraves of the Family of *Wassenaer*.

The *Townhouse* is a goodly Structure, adorn'd with divers excellent Pieces of Painting, by their celebrated *Lucas van Leyden*; they tell you, that the Emperour *Rudolph* offer'd as many *Hungarian* Ducats for one of these Pieces representing the Day of Judgment, as would cover it. It is one of the six Towns that anciently had a Voice in the Senate of the Province.

The chief Canals of this City are so curiously planted on both sides with tall Trees, that it appears to a Traveller like a pleasant Wood in a large City, or rather a City built in a Wood. The Prince's House stands in one

Privileges of the University.

Scholars.

Hartem.

The great Church.

The Church-Musick.

of

of their chief Streets call'd the *Rapenburgh*. Their Acts of Charity and Alms-house are very remarkable here; they have a certain College who take care of Orphans, and such Children whose Parents intend to remarry; their Government is administred by a *Vroetschap* or Council of forty four, out of which four Burghermasters are chosen every year; the plurality of Voices prevails in publick Affairs: The administration of Justice is committed to seven Eschevins and the grand Bayliff; their Subhastations both for Real and Personal Estates are without the least probability of Fraud.

The Government of Leyden.

Their Hall for the Woollen Manufactury is beyond our *Blackwel-hall*; and the Library contains a good number of Manuscripts, especially in the Oriental Tongues, bestow'd upon it by *Justus Scaliger*, some of them being those of *Bonaventure*, and what *Goltzius* brought from the *Levant*; *William* Prince of *Orange* gave the first beginning to it, by bestowing upon it the *Opus Complutense* and other Books of note. The Sick in the University Hospital are visited by the Students of Physick, who are to determine what Remedies they think most proper to be applied, which being approv'd by the Professor, he writes the Recipe, and the Students transcribe it; the dead Bodies of these Patients being all liable to be dissected, they never want wherewith to exercise their Industry in Anatomy.

Library.

The Students here wear Swords instead of Gowns, none but Professors being seen in Scholastick Habits, and that but rarely neither. He that intends to enter the List of the Students need only go to the *Rector Magnificus*, who enters them into the University Book for five Shillings, or half a Crown, and so by means of a certain Ticket they are entitled to a certain quantity of Wine and Beer, without paying Excise.

Scholars.

Their Degrees are not regulated here either by Time or Merit; if the Commencer can make a *Thesis* and pay his Fee, he may be admitted, a Professor bring his President, and any of the Scholars his Opponents. The Degrees of *Doctor* and *Master of Arts* are the only ones among them, that of *Batchelour* being not known here; the *Graduates* give publick Treats, and publish their *Theses* in print.

Degrees.

The Professors of the several Faculties print every year their *Series Lectionum*, containing the Times when, and the Subjects upon which they are to read in publick; some of them have two hundred, others three hundred pounds *per annum*.

Professors.

There are always three *Curatores* or chief Surveyors of the University, who take care of the publick Stock, Buildings, Privileges, and other matters relating to the University; for if a matriculated Student (as they term 'em) happen to become liable to a Criminal Action, the chief Officer of Justice can't apprehend him without the Consent of the *Rector Magnificus*; and if the Party be allow'd to be seiz'd, he is not committed to the common Goal, but to a Room of the Townhouse. In Civil Causes the *Rector* and his Assessors endeavour to accommodate matters between the Parties, which if it cannot be effected, they appeal to the Senate of the University.

Privileges of the University.

Tho' Duelling is strictly forbid here every year, at the time of the election of a new *Rector*, yet considering the various mixture of so many Nations that frequent here, it is almost impossible to be avoided. Their private Lectures are generally kept every three months, for which each Scholar pays forty or fifty Gilders, tho' they seldom are superour to the Lectures of our private Tutors; they commonly dictate in Latin, sometimes no less obscure than the sense it self.

The Renown of this University, and its difference from ours, has made me insist longer upon this Subject than I would have done upon any other account; we will now hasten to *Harlem*, where we arriv'd in one of the Passage-boats by the *Nieuwe Vaart* or *New Canal*.

This City is handsomly seated and built upon the little River *Spaar*, running thro that and the Country, from the *Y* to the *Harlem-meer*: the great Church is a spacious and lofty Fabrick, and has no less than three or four Organs, there being scarce any Church of note in this Country but what has one Organ; and as the *Lutherans* (the first Protestants) have scarce any publick Church without Vocal and Instrumental Musick, they seem to be a Reproach to our Dissenters, who exclaim with so much vehemency against these Church-Bagpipes, as they stile 'em. In the Walls of this Church they shew several Cannon Balls, which, the Inhabitants say, were left there ever since the Siege of this place by the *Spaniards*. In the Quire of this Church remains still the Stalls of several Princes and other Persons of great Quality, most of 'em of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, their Arms are painted on the Backs. In this Church (formerly dedicated to S. *Bavo*, and one of the best in *Holland*) are still preserv'd two antique Monuments, viz. the Model of the Ships which were sent by those of *Harlem*, under the Reign of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, to *Palestina* (now *Damiata*) on the Borders of *Egypt*, and deliver'd one of their Counts of *Holland* (a Prisoner there) by cutting the Chain that guarded the passage into the Harbour, with the Keels of their Ships edg'd with Iron; and the two little Bells of *Corinthian* Brass brought from thence, which hang still in the Tower of this Church, and chime about nine every night. The young Men of this *Town* do in memory of this extraordinary Action, celebrate every Year the First Day of *January*, when they carry little Boats fashion'd like the Ship in the Church in triumph: they boast, that *Frederick Barbarossa*, in consideration of the signal Services done by those of *Harlem* in the *Holy War*, added the Sword to the Arms of this City, as the Patriarch of *Jerusalem* bestow'd the Cross upon it: this Church hath also divers remarkable Tombs, and many pretty Inscriptions.

Harlem. The great Church. The Church-Musick.

The next thing *Harlem* glories in is, the Invention of the Art of Printing by one *Laurence Coster*, an Inhabitant of *Harlem*, who, as *Guicciardin* says, walking one day in one of the Groves, of which they have several about this place, he cut some Letters on the Barks he had piel'd from the Trees, and stamping them inverted on a piece of Paper, found them to come right, then rubbing them over with Ink, it produc'd something like a Letter, tho' somewhat blotted; however, being encourag'd by this rough Draught, he cut more regular Letters on more proper materials, which being dipt into a more glutinous Ink, by repeated improvements he brought it at last to perfection. They tell you, that one of his Servants rob'd him of all his Instruments, and went with 'em to *Mayence*, whence it is that this City disputes this Invention with those of *Harlem*. His Picture, with the Letter A in his Hand, is to be seen in the Princes Garden. In the Houses belonging to them are divers good Pieces of Painting, among which that done by *Cornelius van Harlem*, a Citizen of this place, is highly esteem'd. They shew you here a Piece of *Coster's* first printing, the impression only on one side, as they used to print their first Originals. The *Traffick* of this City consists at present chiefly in Linen, (which they bleech better here than in any other place) as also in *Taffaties*, *Damasks*, *Velvets*, and other Silks.

Printing invented

From *Harlem* to *Amsteldam* is three hours or *Dutch* leagues, the Metropolis of the *United Provinces*. Half way betwixt these two places we took notice of the Palace of the *Dyckgraves*, as they call 'em, whose business 'tis to take care of the Sea Dykes, and meet in this House, where every one has his own Apartment, and resides during the time of their Consultations. Just by we observ'd a small Barrier against the Sea, compos'd of Piles joyn'd with long Ledges of Wood, to break the violence of the Waves of the Sea, and keep 'em from breaking into the Canal; this slender Bank being the Barrier betwixt the Sea call'd *Het Y* and the *Harlemmer-meer*, in 1672 a strong North-West Wind bore the Waters of the *Y* with such violence upon this Bank, that at last they bore it down, and laid all the Land (which lies all upon a level) betwixt *Harlem* and *Amsteldam* under Water.

Amsteldam. The Haarlem-meer.

Amsteldam hath got its Name from the River *Amstel* that runs thro' it and about it by the help of Sluces; its figure is semicircular, making an Umbo to the side of the *Y*, and towards the Land-side it is fortified with good Bastions, but its chiefest Strength consists in the Waters they can bring about it in case of necessity, which stood them in good stead when the *French* were come so near them, as to be Masters of *Naerden*. Their Streets are narrow, as well as the Fronts of their Houses; however, the *Heeren Graef* or *Lords Canal* is a noble and spacious Street, with fine Buildings on both sides; some have computed the number of Houses of this City to 54000, its length 2500 paces, and its breadth 2000.

The Stadthouse.

Their *Stadt* or *Townhouse* is a magnificent Structure, built upon wooden Piles like Masts of Ships, forced down with Rams, as thick as they can stand together, in the same manner as almost all the other Houses are in this City; this *Townhouse* is said to be supported by fourteen thousand large wooden Poles, and to have cost above one hundred thousand pounds, there being a vast quantity of Ironwork in this Foundation to cramp the Piles together; the Superstructure is said to have cost twice as much: It is a large square Fabrick of Free-stone, with *Corinthian* Pillars of the same, with Statues and History in *Relievo*, of a great height and most magnificent form, but the Portico is somewhat dull, and not suitable, even in respect of

of its bigneſs, to ſuch a noble and lofty Pile of Building.

The Noble Hall. The Great Hall is a noble Room indeed, adorn'd on all ſides with the fineſt Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order; the Paintings on the Roof were not quite finiſh'd then, but the Floor of Marble is the moſt ſurprizing of all, for the Stones, without the addition of any other Lines but what is made by the joyning of 'em, repreſent both the celeſtial and terreſtrial Globes; which put me in mind of the famous Line of *Caſſini* at *Bologna*. In one of the upper Rooms we ſaw the Counſellors pleading their Cauſes before the Burghermaſters, (the Judges in Civil Cauſes) and they told us, that a Counſel's Fee was no more than three *Dutch* Shillings, which amounts to ſomething above eighteen Pence *Engliſh*. Criminal matters are determin'd by the Scout in the Orial below.

The New Church. The next Structure both in note and ſituation is the *New Kirk* or *New Church*; the Carvings on the Pulpit and the Canopy coſt 1000*l.* Sterling. The Sculpture on the back-ſide, repreſenting the Reſurrection, is an admirable piece of Workmanſhip; the Organ is alſo very remarkable, it counterfeits a *Chorus* of fifty two whole Stops, beſide the half ones, and the Screen is of maſſy Braſs.

The Tomb of *de Ruyter*. Here you ſee the moſt magnificent Tomb of the brave Admiral *de Ruyter*, his Effigies lying at large, adorn'd with all ſorts of Trophies, in Marble, Sculpture and *Relievo*, with large Inſcriptions. In one of the Iſles of this Church is another ſumptuous Monument, ſet up to the memory of *John van Galen*, another of their Admirals, with a very fine Inſcription.

The Old Church. The *Old Church* has ſcarce any thing remarkable but its Steeple and ſome Monuments of Perſons of Note, *viz.* thoſe of *Heemskerck* and *Hulſe*, Admirals; of *Iſaac Swerius* and another Hero, Vice-Admirals.

Their Admiralty-houſe is a goodly Pile of Building, with Magazines well ſtor'd, ſeated on the Sea-ſide.

Their Hoſpitals and Houſes of Correction. Their Hoſpitals, and other Houſes dedicated for the maintenance of the Poor, are more like Palaces than Hoſpitals. It is beyond all diſpute, that in no place in the World *Idleneſs* is leſs encourag'd, or *Poverty* better provided for; they have a peculiar Houſe for the confinement of Beggars, Vagrants, and other idle Fellows; in the *Raſphouſe* they keep *Petty Larciners*, and other ſuch-like Tranſgreſſors, as Women that counterfeit great Bellies, and Men that forge Paſſes or other Writings; here they raſp Braſilewood, Logwood, and ſuch-like; if Blows will not make them work, they are forced to it by being put into Water to their very Chins, ſo that they muſt be forced either to pump without intermiſſion, or drown. In the *Spinhouſe* they keep lewd Women, Drunkards, diſobedient Children, &c.

Their great Charity. Their Proviſions for the Poor are as much to be admir'd as their Care to keep People from being ſo; nay, *Amſteldam* ſeems to be one continued Alms-houſe, there being ſcarce a Window where you don't ſee a Box with a *Remember the Poor*; and there is no Bargain made, but ſomething is reſerv'd for the Poor, which is collected every Quarter by ſome of the Pariſh Officers; beſides which, the ſaid Officers do every firſt *Wedneſday* in the Month take their rounds, and collect the Charity of the Inhabitants at their Doors, and the Officers of the Hoſpitals do the ſame conſtantly twice a Week; nay, there is ſcarce any thing ſo inconſiderable or vile, but what pays a certain Tax to the Poor, *Mountebanks*, *Ropedancers*, *Bartholomew-boothis* pay the third Penny, and the Stage-players of *Amſteldam* eighty thouſand Gilders *per annum*; hence 'tis that they ſay, they provide for above 20000 Poor yearly in this City, ſome of their Hoſpitals containing 500, others 1000, and ſome 1500 perſons.

As their Exchange exceeds that of *Rotterdam*, ſo it is inferiour to that of *London*, tho' built ſomething like it, with Pillars and Piazza's; it is 200 foot long, and 130 broad.

The *Jews*. The *Jews* of *Amſteldam* live together in a peculiar Quarter, reſembling almoſt a little City; they have two Synagogues, one not inferiour to ſome of the beſt Churches in *London*, built all of Free-ſtone; and the other, tho' not near ſo ſumptuous, yet exceeds all they have at *Rome* or *Venice*; beſides which, they have their Schools, in which they educate their Youth in their own Religion and Tongue; and as their number is computed to amount to twenty thouſand, and many of them exceeding rich, having a vaſt ſhare in the *Eaſt-India* Company, ſo they ſeem to have greater Privileges than any other Chriſtians that are not of the Eſtabliſh'd Church. I went once into their Synagogue, where I ſaw about two thouſand Men and Boys with white Silk Hoods over their Shoulders, to hear two others (who had but little reſemblance to Prieſts) explain the Laws at the lower end of the Church; at every period they repeated their great *Alla* or *Allalujah*, but the reſt were not very attentive, but laughing and talking together.

Anabaptiſts mutiny at *Amſteldam*. In 1525 this City had almoſt fallen a Sacrifice to the *Anabaptiſts*, who had form'd a Conſpiracy to make themſelves Maſters of it, as they did at *Munſter* in *Germany*; this Deſign being agreed to be put in execution at the ſound of a certain Bell, ſix hundred of 'em were got into a body in the Market-place, before the Magiſtrates had any intelligence of it, they had already cut to pieces the Guards, and their number encreaſing every minute, made the beſt of their way toward the Gates; but ſome of the boldeſt among the Citizens having cut the Bell-rope and barricado'd the Streets thereabouts, they were prevented from being joyn'd by their Accomplices; the Night coming on, gave time to the Magiſtrates to conſult what was beſt to be done to quench the Fire of this Rebellion, which was happily effected the next Morning, the Conſpirators being all either diſpers'd or deſtroy'd.

Since their freeing themſelves from the *Spaniards*, and the eſtabliſhment of *Liberty of Conſcience*, this City has ſo encreas'd in Trade and the number of its Inhabitants, that it has been no leſs than four or five times enlarg'd, *viz.* in 1585, 1614, 1662, 1675. Every Spring, about the Month of *April*, they ſend a vaſt Fleet to the *Baltick*, beſide what goes to other parts of *Europe*.

Their *Eaſt-India* Company. But their *Eaſt-India* Company ſurpaſſes all the other Eaſt-trading Societies in the World for Traffick, Power, and Riches, and the number of Ships, they having oft waged War with great ſucceſs with ſome of the moſt potent Princes in the *Indies*, unto whom they are become formidable upon that ſcore; ſome ſay they conſtantly maintain thirty thouſand Men, and two hundred capital Ships; thus much is certain, that they have not only quite diſpoſſeſs'd the *Indians* in many places, but alſo the *Spaniards*, *Portugueſe* and *French*, nay, I may add alſo the *Engliſh*, and by this means monopolize a great part of the *Eaſt-India* Trade in *Europe*; and, to their great credit be it ſpoken, have been no leſs careful in introducing and propagating the *Chriſtian Faith* among the *Barbarians*, by ſending thither and maintaining a ſufficient number of Miniſters and Schoolmaſters, as alſo by tranſlating Bibles, Prayers, and other uſeful Books, into the *Indian* Tongues, much beyond what the *Roman Catholicks*, and even the *Jeſuits Miſſionaries* themſelves, can boaſt to have perform'd in thoſe parts.

The extent of their Dominions. From their Dominions you may make a computation of their Strength: They have a Fort on the *Cape of Good Hope*, for the conveniency of taking in freſh Water and Proviſions, by ſuch of their Ships as paſs and repaſs to and from the *Eaſt-Indies*: In the Iſle of *Java* they have a conſiderable City call'd *Batavia*, regularly fortified; in *Bantam* they have great Poſſeſſions, as well as in the *Moluccа* Iſlands and thoſe of *Banda*; they drive a vaſt trade in *China* and *Japan*; how they made themſelves Maſters of the Trade of *Amboyna*, our *Engliſh* were long ago made ſenſible to their coſt; in *Perſia* their Colonies are ſo numerous, that they are even formidable to that great Monarch; the Coaſts of *Malabar* and *Cormandel* is a continuation of their Settlements and Colonies, and they have conſiderable Plantations in the Countries of the *Mogul*, and in *Golconda*; and *Ceylon* may properly be call'd their own, ſince they have poſſeſs'd themſelves of *Columba*, and confin'd the Emperour of that Iſland to the inland Mountains.

The ſeveral Chambers of this Company. They have divers Aſſemblies or Meeting-places in ſeveral Cities, call'd by them *Chambers*, as at *Delft*, *Rotterdam*, *Middleburgh*, &c. but their *Great Chamber* is at *Amſteldam*, where they have built two Palaces for that purpoſe, fit for the reception of a Prince: By vertue of their Charter they have an abſolute juriſdiction in Criminal Affairs in the *Indies*, and Interlopers are puniſh'd with Death even in *Holland*. To be ſhort, this Company is in ſome meaſure the Baſis of their Government.

The paſſage of the *Pampus*. Notwithſtanding all theſe Advantages, *Amſteldam* labours under one great Inconveniency, *viz.* the paſſage of the *Pampus* into the *Y*, and from that into the *Zuyder* Sea, being ſomewhat too low, and conſequently not paſſable for great Ships, which was the reaſon they had formerly ſcarce any Men of War of above ſixty Guns; but having experienc'd the diſadvantage they lay under in this reſpect to their coſt, in ſeveral Engagements with the *Engliſh*, they built twenty more of eighty Guns a-piece and upwards, and the ſame *de Witt* was the firſt that ſhew'd 'em the method of bringing them over the *Pampus*.

The Government. The Government of *Amſteldam* is manag'd by a Council of thirty ſix Perſons, who enjoy this Dignity for Life, and upon the Death of one of their Members, chuſe another

ther in his ſtead; as likewiſe the four Regent Burgher-maſters: They have nine Eſchevins, who are the Judges in criminal matters, their Scout being like our Sheriff, who apprehends the Malefactors, and ſees Sentence executed: their Penſioner is like our City Recorder.

Their heavy Taxes. Their Taxes are innumerable, and ſo heavy that they would prove inſupportable to any but the *Dutch*, who looking upon their Country as their common Father, unto whom they are beholden for every thing, they think nothing too much for him, and willingly pay Exciſe out of what they eat and drink, to let him have his ſhare: What Taxes they pay for their Houſes and Lands, tho' they are exceſſive in themſelves, yet the Security they enjoy in their Titles by their publick Regiſters makes an ample amends for them. The Bank. What is paid to the Bank of *Amſteldam*, (the beſt in the World) as it is chiefly done by thoſe who have the moſt benefit by it, may rather be call'd an Inſurance than a Tax, if a Fund ſecur'd only by Credit may deſerve that Name.

Their *Lemm*, or general Pawn-Office. Their publick Pawn-Office or *Lombard* is alſo no ſmall Conveniency to this great City, which prevents Extorſions and Theſts; and as all the forfeited Goods are ſold here by open ſale, the Owner may buy his Goods again. Voluntary Bankrupts are puniſh'd pecuniarly, corporally, and ſometimes capitally; and if they are prov'd perjur'd in giving an account of their Eſtates, they die by the Law. Frauds are alſo puniſh'd with Death; and an Intention of Murther is look'd upon almoſt as criminal as the Fact. On the other hand, Creditors are oblig'd to maintain their Debtors in Priſon.

Their Muſick houſes. What is moſt blamable in the Government of this City is, the publick Licenſe they give to *Muſick-houſes*, where Women and Men enter, in the face of the World, to make their Bargains for Lewdneſs and Debauchery, in which point they exceed all whatever I ſaw of this kind in all my Travels, not excepting even *Rome* it ſelf.

Schola Illuſtris They have no Univerſity here, but ſomething reſembling an Academy, which they call their *Schola Illuſtris*, where, in the Summer-time, ſix Profeſſors keep their publick Lectures in their reſpective Faculties. They have alſo a ſmall *Anatomical Theatre*.

The Air of *Amſteldam* is not very wholeſom; formerly they us'd to be often afflicted with the Plague, but not of late, ſince that in 1663, the reaſon whereof is attributed to the extraordinary neatneſs of the Inhabitants, and the laying aſide the uſe of Wells, inſtead of which they gather and preſerve the Rain-water with a great deal of care.

The Phyſick-garden. Near the *Jews Quarter* they have of late Years cultivated a pretty little Phyſick-garden, the Supervifor of which (a curious Herbaliſt) beſtow'd upon me ſeveral Exemplars of collected Plants brought from the *Cape of Good Hope* and the Iſle of *Ceylon*, *viz.* the *Arbor Cotonea* or *Cotton-tree*, which bore a tuft of Cotton there; *Goſſypium ſive Xylon*, *Chabrei Gerardi*, the *Melo Cardnus Echinatus*.

Famous Men of *Amſteldam* They have in *Amſteldam* ſeveral Cabiners of Curioſities, gather'd by Men of Learning and Induſtry, this place being famous for divers Men of extraordinary Ingenuity, witneſs their *Janſon* and *Sandius*, two Divines; and *Spigelius* and *Horſtius* for Phyſick. During the general Calamity in *Holland* in 1672, when the *Amſteldammers* were reduc'd to the greateſt Nonplus that ever could happen to ſo potent a State in ſo ſhort a time, by the Arms of *France*, that appear'd within ſight of their Walls, there were not wanting among 'em ſuch as did ſhew themſelves both *true Patriots* and *bold Spirits*; Mr. *Valkanier* their *Burghermaſter* was the firſt, who in an eloquent Harangue exhorted them to venture all, rather than ſubmit to the *French* Yoke, who being bravely ſeconded by the Penſioner *Hop*, Mr. *Haſſelaer*, and divers other brave Citizens, it was reſolv'd to cut their Dams and lay all the circumjacent Country under Water; which being done accordingly, they preſerv'd their Liberties by this bold Reſolution, and afterwards joyn'd with the other Cities in annulling the Perpetual Edict, and reſtoring the then Prince of *Orange* to the Stadtholdership.

Naerden, *Weſep* and *Muyden*. At *Amſteldam* we took a Coach-Waggon (ſuch as they commonly uſe in *Holland*) for *Naerden*: In our way we paſs'd thro' *Weſep* and *Muyden*, two ſmall (but ſtrong) Towns, ſeated upon the River *Vecht*; it was near this laſt that the *French* made a halt with their Army after the taking of *Naerden*, which was then but ſlenderly fortified, and defended only by one Troop of Horſe and a few Companies of Foot but being regain'd in the ſame Year, at their Prince's perſwaſion was ſtrengthen'd with regular Fortifications of Earth and Brick-work. The Sea, which betwixt this place and *Muyden* is with a North-Weſt Wind forc'd ſtrongly upon the Dams, is kept out with prodigious chargable Works of *Piles*, *Planks*, and other *Timber-works*: It being then a time of Peace, there were no more than two Companies to guard it, and all the Guns diſmounted, which by ſome was attributed to the Jealouſie of the *Amſteldammers*. It is the capital City of the Country of *Goyland*.

Hereabouts I ſaw whole Fields with the true ſort of *Fagotriticum* or *Buckwheat*, the *Dutch* call it *Bockweyt*; I obſerv'd the ſame in *Eſſex*, in our way to *Holland*, where the Country People call it *Brank*; it is the *Fagopyron*, *Dodon. Eryſimum*, *Theoph.* C. B. the *Hollanders* make Bread of it, but the *Engliſh* feed their Horſes with it. The Country betwixt *Naerden* and *Utrecht* being high and ſandy, the Air is ſomewhat more wholſom and agreeable than in the watery parts of *Holland*.

Utrecht. *Utrecht* is an ancient City ſeated in a very good Country, anciently call'd *Urbs Antonina*, from a *Roman* Senator of that Name, who fled thither under the Reign of *Nero*, tho' others pretend to derive its Name from *Mark Anthony*; it got the Name of *Utrecht* by a certain King of *France*, who took it: Its ſituation is upon a Branch of the *Rhine*, where the Bed of the ancient *Rhine* lay, which is now drown'd in the *Leck*, and a new Canal cut out for new Waters, the *Vecht* croſſing it alſo: Its figure is almoſt circular, but not near ſo large as *Leyden*; it has an old Caſtle, built by the Emperour *Charles* V.

The great Church and Steeple. Their *Great Church* has a very old (but noble) Steeple, built after the ſame manner as that of *Delft*, and is four hundred and ſixty ſteps high: The Church has been alſo a goodly and lofty old Structure, but was for the moſt part beaten down ſome years ago by a Storm. In this Church, near the Quire, is the Tomb of *William Joſeph* Baron of *Gaunt*, who, as appears by the Inſcription, commanded in that famous Expedition when the *Dutch* came up our River *Thames* as far as *Chatham*; his Effigies is ſeen lying at length upon certain Trophies, his Atchievements being ſet forth in *Relievo* on the Baſe. Near this you ſee another Tomb of one of their Biſhops of an ancient Family, nam'd *George d'Egmont*. The Tomb of Van Gaune.

In their Church of St. *Mary*, commonly call'd the *Engliſh Church*, they have a Story by Tradition of a Pillar founded upon a Bull's Hide; it is to be ſeen in the Nave of the Church: And the half-defac'd Inſcriptions (made by an old Biſhop of theirs nam'd *Baldwin*) on the two Pillars that ſupport the Dome tells you, that the Emperour *Henry* IV. having ſack'd the City of *Milan*, and burnt the Church of St. *Maries* there, afterwards lamented his Raſhneſs, and vow'd to erect ſuch another Church to the honour of the Virgin in any other place; which *Conrade*, the then Biſhop of *Utrecht* (who attended him in that Expedition) improving to the advantage of his See, engag'd him to have the ſaid Church built at *Utrecht*: But whilſt they were imploy'd in the erecting of this Structure, the Workmen found a certain place ſo muddy as not to be able to bear one of the Pillars that was to ſupport the Church, till an ignorant Fellow call'd *Fuſo* offer'd to make a firm Foundation, but asking an extravagant rate for his Art, the Biſhop prevail'd upon his Son to pump the Secret out of his Father, which being done, the Pillar was fix'd upon Ox-hides: The old *Fuſo* ſeeing his Secret diſclos'd, and himſelf diſappointed in the hopes of his Reward, was ſo incens'd thereat, that he ſtabb'd the Biſhop. On the Pillar which they would make you believe was erected upon Bulls-hides, you ſee theſe odd Characters, intimating perhaps the date of the Year:

M * ① I *

Underneath them you ſee the Figure of a Bull in *Relievo*, with this Diſtich:

Accipe poſteritas, quod per tua ſecula nulla
Taurina Cutibus fundo ſolidata Columna eſt.

But conſidering that it was *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who reign'd a hundred years after *Henry* IV. that ſack'd *Milan*, and was commanded by the Pope to build this Church, this Story muſt be rank'd among the fabulous Popiſh Legends.

The Library. This Church has a little Library belonging to it, containing ſome old Books and Manuſcripts, and among the reſt a Bible of the old Tranſlation, in ſix Volumes, finely writ; beſides, ſome Pagan Idols, an Elephant's Tooth with exotick Characters and Figures upon it, &c.

The Univerſity. The Univerſity of *Utrecht* was founded in 1636, being model'd much after the ſame way as that of *Leyden*: Their Schools for publick Lectures are but indifferent, being only three in number, one for Divinity, another for Philoſophy, and the third for Law and Phyſick:

Every fourteenth Year they have what they call a *Jubilee*, when they celebrate their ſolemn Commencements, but don't come near to thoſe of our Univerſities either in Exerciſes or Splendour.

On one of the corners of the Ramparts they have a little Phyſick-garden, which contains nothing but a few Herbs commonly uſed by the Apothecaries. About their old Walls (which have very pleaſant Walks) I found in great plenty the *Cymbalaria Italica*, a Plant much diſputed about among the Herbaliſts what *Species* to refer it to, but all agree, that its Leafs reſemble neareſt the *Hedera terreſtris* or *Ground-Ivy*; and *Matthiol* obſerves, that in *Fluor. alb. mulierum* it is uſed with Oyl and Vinegar, like other Sallads. It grows alſo frequently about *Padua*, where the Apothecaries uſe it in the compoſition of their *Unguent. Populeum*, inſtead of the *Cotyledon verum* or *Umbilicus veneris*; in *Engliſh* it is call'd the *Italian Baſtard Navelwort*. In the Ditch that ſurround the Walls we obſerv'd abundance of the *Militaris Aizoides*, the *Aloe aquat. paluſtr.* C. B. L. B. our *Water Warriour*, which grows in abundance about *Cambridge* and in the Iſle of *Ely*. In the Fields near *Utrecht* we ſaw the *Baccharis* like the *Monſpelienſium*, being a kind of *Coniza* or *Fleabane*.

Their Walks round the Town are very pleaſant, eſpecially that which is ſomething like our Mall in S. *James's* Park, but neither ſo large nor pleaſant. The Air is very healthy here, there being an eaſie deſcent from the high ground of this place to the Sea-ſide, which is plainly to be perceiv'd from the Tower of the great Church. For the reſt, *Utrecht* is neither ſo large nor ſo uniformly built as ſome of the Cities of *Holland*; and tho' it has ſome Canals, yet are they neither ſo large nor ſo numerous as in the Seacoaſt Towns.

Their Civil Government

Their Civil Government is manag'd by two Scouts and four Burghermaſters, of whom two are choſen every Year. For the reſt, its ſituation is more fitted for Pleaſure than Strength, and it has a great number of delightful Villages about it, which eſcap'd the fury of the *French* Soldiers in the late Wars, by their early Compoſition. Before the Reformation this City was overſtor'd with *Abbies* and *Convents*, and Pope *Adrian* IV. was a Native of this place, whoſe Epitaph ſpeaks his Humility and Modeſty:

Hadrianus ſextus hic ſitus eſt, qui nihil ſibi infelicius, in vitâ duxit quam quod Imperaret.

The Union of Utrecht.

It was an ancient Epiſcopal See, but what has rais'd its Renown of late is, the famous *Union of Utrecht*, which laid the Foundation to the moſt potent Commonwealth of the *United Provinces*, after the Pacification of *Ghent* was found too weak to ſupport its intended Deſign, the *Catholicks*, tho' joyn'd with the *Proteſtants* in point of Intereſt in reſpect of their Liberty, being found unwilling to lend them an helping hand in the eſtabliſhment of their Religion, which made the Prince of *Orange* convene thoſe of *Guelderland*, *Holland* and *Zealand* at *Utrecht*, where they entred into this Union.

Vianen.

From *Utrecht* we continued our Journey to *Vianen*, a wall'd (but not fortified) Town, upon that Branch of the *Rhine* which from thence forward is call'd the *Leck*, which we paſs'd in a Ferry-boat at the *Leck-ferry*; it is a privileg'd place, belonging to the Lord of *Brederode*, of the ſame Family that headed the *Geuſes* at *Bruſſels*, when they preſented their Petition againſt the Inquiſition in 1566. The Town has nothing remarkable, except a handſom Country Seat which belong'd to the Count of *Dowey*, then at the Court of *Berlin*, his Uncle being lately ſlain at the Siege of *Buda*, who left an Eſtate of ten thouſand pounds *per annum* to him. It has very handſom woody Walks all about it, and the Garden, which is a quarter of a mile from it, has tolerable good Water-works, and the fineſt Walks of male Fir-trees that ever I ſaw. In a Summer-houſe belonging to this Seat were divers peculiar Aſſemblies kept, on account of the before-mention'd *Union of Utrecht*.

In our way we paſſed thro' *Leckerfield*, *Lexmont*, and *Meerkiſh*, ſmall Villages; the Fields thereabouts were full of Hemp, which grows very rank and high here: In the Ditches fill'd with freſh Water we obſerv'd great plenty of *Aloe*, or *Aizoides Militaris*. This way brought us to *Gorcum* and *Workum*, both ſeated upon the River *Wahl*, almoſt oppoſite to one another.

Gorcum.

Gorcum is of no great circumference, but well fortified to the Land-ſide, and ſufficiently defended on the other ſide by the Waters of the *Wahl* and *Maeſe*, which are twice as broad here as the *Thames* by *London-bridge*. Its ſituation is juſt on the point of the *Bommel-Iſle*, made by the Branches of the *Wahl* and the *Maeſe*; the River *Linge* runs alſo thro' the Town. The Country about it is call'd *Arkel*, being the Title of an ancient Lordſhip. It has a lofty handſom Steeple, and is not above five miles from *Dort*. Near it is the Caſtle of *Leveſtein*, where *Hugo Grotius* and ſome other noted *Remonſtrants* and *Arminians* were detain'd Priſoners.

Worcum.

On the oppoſite Bank of the ſame River, is *Worcum*, noted chiefly for its ſtrength; it belong'd formerly to the Family of the Counts of *Horn*, one of which was executed at *Bruſſels* with the Count of *Egmont*.

Henſden and Bommel.

As we were travelling from hence to the *Boſch*, we left *Heuſden* (a ſtrong place) to our right, and to the left the Town of *Bommel*, a place famous for its artificial and natural ſtrength, being ſeated upon an Iſle, and the ſame which *Cæſar*, in his deſcription of the *Maeſe*, call'd the *Inſula Batavorum*.

Hertogen-boſch. Boiſle-duc. Boſch.

From hence travelling for ſome time thro' very marſhy grounds, we came to the *Boſch* or *Hertogen-boſch*, or *Boiſle-duc*, (as the *French* call it) *i. e.* the *Duke's Wood*, from a Foreſt that was formerly hereabouts, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*; this Town is of very difficult acceſs, being ſeated on the River *Dieſe*, in the middle of a Lake, there being no other Avenues leading to the Town but Cawſeys made for that purpoſe of half a mile in length, the City it ſelf being ſeated on a riſing ground, defended by a ſtrong Wall and deep Trench; beſides that, the Avenues are commanded by ſeveral Forts, and the Citadel commands one ſide of the Town, and the Country towards *Bommel*; it had then a Gariſon of four Regiments, and a good Magazine.

The Houſes here have but a ſlender aſpect, in reference to what you ſee in *Holland*, being for the moſt part of Wood, and cover'd with Planks; however, their Market-place is ſpacious, and the Townhouſe a goodly Structure, built in imitation of that of *Amſteldam*.

Their chief Church, dedicated to S. *John*, is a good old Fabrick, provided with an excellent Organ, and adorn'd with as fine a Skreen as ever I ſaw out of *Italy*, and the Figures and Ornaments of the Skreen, as well as of the Altar, remain undefac'd, tho' in a *Proteſtant* place.

In the Quire you ſee painted the Arms of ſome of the Knights of the Golden Fleece, with a ſhort hiſtorical account of the inſtitution of that Order in *French*, by *Philip* (ſirnam'd *the Good*) Duke of *Burgundy*, *Lorrain* and *Brabant*, in 1429, in the City of *Brabant*.

This Town is properly ſeated in the Province of *Brabant*, and had formerly a Biſhop, Suffragan to him of *Mechlen* or *Maliues*, and has ſtill many Villages under its juriſdiction; the Air is not extraordinary good here, by reaſon of its ſituation in the midſt of the Marſhes. They ſhew here a certain Cabinet of Curioſities, where, among other Rarities, we ſaw a preternatural Object of a Woman of *Purmeren* (in *Holland*) with a ſort of Excreſcence on her Forehead of half an ell long, reſembling a Horn; a large *Xiphias*, as the *Greeks* call it, the *Gladius* of the *Latins*, or the *Sword-fiſh*, a Fiſh very common in *Italy*, where they plant certain Fellows on the Cliffs near the Sea-ſide, to give notice to the Fiſhermen whereabouts they eſpy the Fiſh, who ſtrike him with a Harpoon, and ſo give him Line enough till he is quite ſpent; in *Meſſina* they eſteem him a great Dainty. One of the largeſt *Stellæ Marinæ* or *Sea-Stars* that ever I met with; abundance of Ivory-work curiouſly done, beſides ſome Skeletons, &c.

The Sword-fiſh, how taken.

From hence to *Breda* is eight long leagues; in our way, about half a mile from the *Boſch*, we paſſed by two Forts, that command the Avenues on that ſide where the Moraſs is moſt acceſſible, and afterwards travelling thro' ſandy Plains and Heaths, we took notice of the *Salix Argentea* and *Erica vulg. & Corii folio*, *i. e.* the Silver ſhrub-by Willow, the thin leaf'd Heath, and the creeping *Dutch* Heath; we alſo ſaw the Herb call'd by ſome *Herba Turca*, the rough Head of it, more commonly known by the name of *Herniaria*, or the *hoary Rupture-wort*. We paſs'd by the way thro' a Wood of four miles long, as regularly planted as the Trees of the moſt artificial Walks.

Breda.

Breda was about three hundred years ago annex'd to the Family of *Naſſau* by Marriage; it is an ancient Barony, having about ſeventeen Villages under its juriſdiction. The City is ſeated on the River *Had* and *Merk*, being ſomewhat leſs than *Hertogen-boſch*, but much better built, and more regularly fortified after the modern way, and they were then ſtrengthning it by ſome additional Works. The Family of *Naſſau* have a handſom Palace here, with a delicious Garden, between the body of the Town and the Works; and Prince *Henry* of *Naſſau* built another in the Citadel in form of a Caſtle, after the antique way; it has a noble Portico and handſom Gallery, and the Box-work in the Garden is extraordinary curious. The Great Church, with its Tower, are old, but goodly Structures. In a ſide-Iſle of this Quire is the

Tomb

Tomb of the just-now-mention'd Prince *Henry* I. of *Nassau*, whose Effigies, with that of his Princess, you see at length on a Marble Base, with a Marble Canopy over them, supported by four Statues representing as many ancient Heroes kneeling, at the four Angles, with these Inscriptions at two of the corners:

C. Julius Cæsar / *virtute bellica* / *Imperavi Fortitudo.*

Mattillius Regulus / *Infractus* / *Servavi Magnanimitas.*

Divers other Inscriptions relating to the several Revolutions of this Town are to be seen in this Church, and among the rest two relating to the taking of it by *Spinola*, 1624, and its being retaken by *Frederick Henry* Prince of *Orange*, in 1637. Some say, that the final conclusion of the Union of *Utrecht* was made here; certain it is, that in 1660 a Treaty was manag'd here for the restauration of King *Charles* II.

The most eminent Men of this place were *Kecelius*, *Buscmius*, *Gerard de Breda*, &c.

Maestricht. The next place we came to (under the jurisdiction of the *United Provinces*) was *Maestricht*, seated upon the River *Maese*, an ancient Town, mention'd by *Cornelius Tacitus*, and an old Bishop's See, which was from thence translated to *Liege*. The Country about it is plain and fertile, especially towards *Tongeren*.

On the other side of the River is a small Town call'd the *Wiick*, joyn'd to the other by a fair Bridge, and enclos'd in the same Fortifications. Their Houses are of late built of Brick, by order of State; their Market-place is spacious, and the Townhouse a modern Structure after the model of that of *Amsteldam*, but not near so large; it has a fine *Orial* and *Cupola*. The *Jesuits* Church here is not so magnificent as these Fathers have in most other places, where they have better opportunity to enrich themselves: There are also divers Convents here, belonging to other Orders; the *Calvinists* have two Churches, the *Lutherans* one, and the *French* one.

In Government. The greatest part of the Inhabitants are *Roman Catholicks*, but the Government is equally divided betwixt them and the *Protestants*, with such an entire Union, that there is no State-administration manag'd here, but a *Protestant* and *Romanist* are joyn'd in Commission.

Strength. This place being one of the chief Frontier Towns of *Holland*, is of great strength; the Walls are reputed to be about two miles and a half in compass, they are old, and not extraordinary regular, but very broad, thick, and strongly made, strengthned and cover'd with abundance of Half-moons and other Works, especially to the North-West, where the *French* made their main attack in 1675, which is since cover'd with divers new Outworks; it has a Hill on the South side, where the *French* then planted two Batteries, notwithstanding which they look upon this side as the strongest part of the Town, by reason of the vicinity of the little River *Jecker*, by stopping of which they can overflow all the Ground betwixt the Walls and the Hill. The Governour of it then was Prince *Waldeck*, and the Garison consisted of ten Regiments of Foot, and two of Horse. It belong'd formerly to the Bishoprick of *Liege*, till one of their Bishops sold it to *Charles* V; the *Hollanders* took it from the *Spaniards* in 1633, and the *French* from them in 1675, but were forc'd to restore it to them in 1678, by vertue of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

Petersburgh. At no great distance from *Maestricht*, on the side of a Hill call'd *Petersburgh*, we entred the famous Quarry, having on the top of the Hill a small Convent of the *Brothers Minims*, near which we came out again. They told us here, that this subterraneous passage was of such an extent, that two of their Fraternity venturing in without Lights and a good Guide, were never heard of again. This is a Freestone Quarry, hewn out for many years successively in such a manner, that Columns of Stone being left in a regular order, it resembles a subterraneous Palace or Vault made on purpose; our Guide inform'd us, that its whole length was nine *English* miles, and that from the place we went in, to that we came out again, it was about one *Dutch* or three *English* miles, but it did not seem so much to us. In one of these Alleys which made these numberless square Columns, I observ'd a very good *An inverted Spring.* Eccho, and in another part a Spring of Water which, instead of rising from below, drop'd down into a Basin from the Rock above twenty five fathom thick; the Water had a very disagreeable Nitro-sulphureous taste: The Vault, with its Columns, is generally twenty foot high, and more in some places, and its extent encreases every day, by reason of the great conveniency they have of rowling down such Stones as are hewn out, from the Hill to the River-side on which it lies.

After we had made a little excursive journey into *Flanders*, (of which in the next Chapter) we went from *Bruges* by the *Nieuwe Vaert* or *New Canal* towards *Sluys*. In our *Sluys.* way thither we pass'd thro' a little Town call'd *Damm*, and near to the Fort of S. *Donaw*, both belonging to the *Spaniards*, being a little, square and regular Fort, where Passengers are to pay about half a Stiver: About three hours after we came to *Sluys*, a Port-town surrounded by the Sea, its Harbour being capable of five hundred Ships of great burthen; it has on the North-west side an old Castle, and a pleasant Grove: This place is memorable for two Sieges, which cost abundance of Men; the first by the Duke of *Parma*, in 1587, and afterwards (*viz.* in 1604.) when it was retaken from the *Spaniards* by Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*.

From hence we cross'd the Water in a Boat to *Cattsand*, *Cattsand.* an Isle which has got its Name from its *Sandy Ground*; it had formerly some Towns and Forts, and was the place where both the before-mention'd Generals had their head Quarters; it has now not so much as one Village, and only some small remnants of a *Dutch* Fort, demolish'd some years before. This Isle, as inconsiderable as it now appears, was once the Seat of the late learned *George Cassander*, celebrated for his Writings against the *Anabaptists*. We observ'd here some Sea-plants in great plenty; as, the *Halimus, sive Portulaca marina* C. B. *Marina fruticosa Halimus*; *Clusii* J. B. the Sea-Purslain, which the *Dutch* pickle as we do our Samphire; *Kaligeniculatum majus* C. B. *Salicornia* J. B. *Ger.* Park. *Saltwort* or *Glasswort*; *Kali spinosum* C. B. *Tragus Matthiol.* Park. Ger. *Tragus spinosus* J. B. Prickly *Glasswort*; *Kali minus* Ger. *Soluta minus arborescens vermiculatum* J. B. *Glasswort*; the *Papaver Corniculatum flore luteo* J. B. Park. yellow-horn'd *Poppy*; the *Halimus secundum Clusii* Ger. *Sallow-thorn*, or Sea *Buck-thorn*; *Eringium marinum Matth. Dod.* the *Sea-Holly* or *Eringo*.

From hence we pass'd in two hours cross the Water to *Flushing*, *Flushing.* a City of great Traffick, and an excellent Sea-Port, seated in the Isle of *Walcheren*, being almost surrounded by the Sea, and their Canals fit for the reception of Ships of vast burthen. The Houses are generally well built here, and the Townhouse is a goodly Structure. In their great Council-chamber you see the Portraicture of all the Princes of the House of *Nassau*. It is a place of great strength, and considerable for its situation, which made *Charles* V. leave this Lesson to his Son *Philip*, That by securing this place he might secure *Flanders*; and it was questionless for this reason that the Duke of *Alva* would have secur'd it to his Master's Interest, by ordering a strong Citadel to be built there, but the Inhabitants hang'd his Engineer, and so put an end to his Project, and were the first (after the Lord of *Lume* had seiz'd the *Briel*) that revolted in *Holland*; the Dukes of *Alva* and *Parma* both attempted it, but without success. This was one of the Cautionary Towns put into the hands of *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*, and Sir *Philip Sidney* was made Governour of it. And notwithstanding they were involv'd in so heavy a War, they erected a new Church for the *English*, a new Townhouse, and a Palace for the Prince.

From *Flushing* we travel'd in an hour to *Middelburgh*, *Middelburgh.* seated in the middle of the same Island, (whence it got its Name) of which it is the capital City. Their Market-place is very handsom and large, and the Townhouse a very old goodly Structure, having formerly been an Abbey, call'd *Nostredame*. They constantly maintain here, at the entrance into their Townhouse, three Eagles, as the living Emblems of the Arms of the Empire, (one of them being kept for a supply) in consideration of certain Privileges granted them by the Emperour.

Their New Church is a goodly Fabrick, their Houses are generally handsom, the Streets broad, and the Town very populous and full of Trade, being the Metropolis of the whole Province of *Zealand*, where the States of the Province meet, in the Prince's Palace. Here is also the Mint of the Province; and Ships of a great burthen may come up to it, by the way of an artificial Canal brought thither from the Sea.

We went up to the Tower of the Townhouse, from whence we had a full prospect of the whole Island, of the Town of *Ter-Vere*, seated on the North Shore of the *Ter-Vere.* Isle, from whence our ancient and noble Family of the *Veres* are said to derive their Name; as also of *Armuyden*, *Armuyden.* a small Town, and the places thereabouts where they make their Salt; and lastly, of the Fort of *Rammekens*, *Rammekens* which, with the Towns of *Flushing* and the *Briel*, was *Fort.* surrender'd as Cautionary to our Q. *Elizabeth*.

To say something in general of the Government, Manners and Customs of the *Dutch*, it is to be observ'd, that it was heretofore much more Democratical than it is

at present; the first Mould of this now so potent Republick was made at *Dort*, in 1572, after the seizing the *Briel* and the revolt of the *Flushingers*, where the Prince of *Orange* being declar'd their *Generalissimo*, their Union of *Utrecht* did not ensue till seven Years after, *viz.* in 1579.

Their Government. The Nobility as well as the Citizens send their Deputies to the General-Assembly of the Provincial States; these being their Representatives, the last of them were chosen by the Freemen, as our Parliament is now, but the *Dutch* Mob being found too turbulent, and consequently dangerous in such great meetings, the choice of these Deputies was committed to the chief Council of each City or Town which they were to represent. The Magistracy of the several Cities is compos'd for the most part of a certain number of *Burghermisters*, (like our Mayors) of *Eschevins*, as they call 'em, being Judges; and their *Scouts* are like our *Sheriffs*, as the *Pensioners* are the same with our *Recorders*. Each of these Towns or Cities hath its peculiar Jurisdiction, without any dependance or interferance on or with the Province in which they are seated; which tho' alledg'd by some as a mark of an independant Soveraignty, is no more than what all the Cities in *England* enjoy, no Sheriff of a County having any Authority to seize a Criminal in our Cities, all Seizures, Trials and Executions being perform'd by their own Officers, with this difference only, that whereas in our *English* Cities the Process runs in the King's Name, those of the *United Provinces* perform the same in the Stile and by vertue of their own Authority.

Their Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction. As to their Ecclesiastical Constitution, it is certain that they have a *National* or *Establish'd Church*; for tho' this point was left undetermin'd in the Union of *Utrecht*, it was afterwards (*viz.* in 1583) positively declar'd, that *Calvin*'s Form of Church-Government (which they gave the name of *Evangelical*) should be establish'd throughout the seven *United Provinces*, yet so that other Opinions should be tolerated.

In 1608 some Distractions had like to have happned, on account of some Disputes betwixt *Gomar* and *Arminius* and their Adherents, but the Synod of *Dort*, or rather the Prudence of the States, put an early stop to these Divisions.

Their Church Ministers are maintain'd by publick Salaries, without any Church-Lands, Tythes, or any other Contributions, which, together with the strict Rules impos'd upon them by the Civil Magistrates, makes them in some measure subservient to the State as well as the Church.

The People. As for the generality of the People, an unavoidable Necessity, as well as their natural Inclination, seems to engage them to Industry and Ingenuity; for they work hard and spend little, Herrings, Butter, Cheese, and Herbs being the ordinary Fare of the vulgar sort, whose surly temper makes the Character of Rusticity to have been impos'd upon the whole Nation. The Gentry themselves are very parsimonious in their Housekeeping, and not near so lavish in Clothes as most other Nations; they send their Children to *Leyden* or *Utrecht* for their better Education.

The generality of the *Dutch* are publick-spirited, whence it is that they seldom repine at Taxes, tho' never so heavy, and nothing is more severely punish'd here than Riots committed upon that occasion. Some attribute a sort of Dulness to the *Dutch*; however, it must be confess'd that the better sort among 'em have a sufficient share of Wisdom, to manage publick affairs to the utmost advantage; witness the Industry they shew in fortifying their Towns, Their Genius. strengthning their Dikes, managing their publick Stocks and Banks, but above all, their Maritime Affairs, unto which as they seem born by their very situation, so they have improv'd it to such a degree, that they have thereby drawn a great part of the Treasure of the World into their own Country, and besides this, never want Seamen and Understanding Persons to manage their Admiralties; Their Courts of Admiralty. there are certain Councils compos'd of such as are deputed from the chief trading places, which sit in certain Cities appointed for that purpose; these manage the Fund for their Fleets, try all Civil and Criminal Actions that relate to the Sea, and chuse all the Captains and other Sea-Officers, in which they have a peculiar regard to the vogue of the common Seamen, who upon that score have very seldom occasion to complain either of bad Diet or want of Wages. In all these Maritime Councils the Admiral or Vice-Admiral is President, whenever he happens to be present in any of the places where they keep their Sessions.

Add to this the Ingenuity the Common People shew, not only in improving their Lands, but also in the neatness of their Houses, Streets, Canals, Boats, &c. without which it would be impossible to keep the Air sweet in the Summer-time.

Tho' they are very apt to impose upon others, yet are they generally punctual in their Contracts; so that the only way to avoid being over-reach'd in *Holland* is, to make a Bargain with them beforehand.

The Women bear almost an equal share in the Drudgery of their Husbands, and in the Cities the Women often manage the Cash and part of the Trade, whence it is that there is much more equality observ'd here in their Families than in *England*, and other places, where the Husband is the head of the Family.

Their Meat is generally much better than their Cookery: With Corn and Materials for their Navies they are supplied from the Northern parts. Their Funerals are very grave, and not expensive. Prisons they have none, to speak properly, being only places of confinement, where the Debtors must be maintain'd at the charge of the Creditors that put 'em in. Their Language is a kind of a Dialect of the old *Teutonick*, model'd into many Monosyllables, and pronounc'd with a more tart and voluble-fineness.

It is however observable, that their former Frugality does not continue in the same degree, witness their stately Buildings in the new Streets of *Amsteldam*, their changableness in their Habits and Diet after the *French* mode; and the Folly of Gaming has also got no small footing among them. Their Cleanliness is very often incommodious, and they make but little account of the Sabbath-day.

Both Men and Women are generally bulky, and accounted more sturdy than truly couragious, tho' their *de Ruyters*, *Ghents*, *Opdams* and *Tromps* seem by their brave Exploits to contradict this Assertion; and the States always take care to reward good Services both while the Persons live, and raise them Trophies after their Death, which excites a most commendable emulation of doing well in those that serve them. Their Encouragement to Virtue.

It is very surprizing to see so many publick lewd Houses in a Country where they profess a more nice Sanctity than in some other places, where the same would be look'd upon as abominable: Young Women here justifie the liberty they take, whilst unmarried, with a common saying, that *their Bodies are their own, but afterwards their Husband's, and consequently not at their own disposal.*

Most of their ancient Nobility is rooted out by their Civil Wars and other Revolutions; a few are left, such as the *Brederodes*, the *Egmonts*, and the *Wassenaers*; the first have their Residence still at *Vianen*, near *Utrecht*; and the *Opdams* now bear the Title of *Wassenaers*; the Counts of *Egmont* are properly to be placed in the *Spanish Netherlands*. Some of these pretend to deduce their Pedigree from the ancient Counts of *Holland*.

To conclude; Notwithstanding the *Dutch* are charg'd with so much Dulness, it is evident, that both in their Revolt from *Spain*, and since they have disengag'd themselves from the Obedience to that Crown and the Confederacy of the *French*, they have by their Politicks sufficiently contradicted that Opinion; and as the Basis of their politick Maxims seems to be founded upon the *enriching of their Subjects at home, and strengthning themselves by good Alliances abroad*, they give Liberty of Conscience to all, and treat their Subjects with impartial Justice, prefer Peace before War, Merchants before Gentlemen, and Soldiers before Lawyers. In case of War, they sue for the Alliance of *England* and the House of *Austria*, keep the balance betwixt the two *Northern* Crowns, and love to be upon good terms with the Princes of the Empire, especially with the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, whose Assistance they may perhaps stand in need of at one time or other.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

A Deſcription of the Spaniſh Netherlands.

Antwerp. THE firſt place we came to in the *Spaniſh* Territories was, the once ſo famous City of *Antwerp*. In our way from *Breda* we paſs'd thro' *Cage*, a neat Village, with a handſom Country Church, and ſo by the way of *Rysberg* and *Sundere* (inconſiderable places) over a long Heath to this City, where we found the *Roman* Religion appear in its higheſt ſplendour, it happning to be the firſt *Sunday* after the Feaſt of the *Aſſumption*, when in honour of the Virgin *Mary* the ſeveral Companies of this City go in ſolemn Proceſſion, with their Banners diſplay'd, carrying the Virgin, with ſome other Saints richly attir'd, thro' the Streets, follow'd by the ſeveral Orders of their Religious Perſons deeply border'd with the beſt Lace of their Country; it appear'd to us in all reſpects like one of our *Lord Mayors Shows* in *London*.

Antwerp is pleaſantly ſeated, in a fertile Country, upon the River *Scheld*, and near the *Schyne*, which joyns with the former below the Town. It is fortified with Walls well faced with Free-ſtone, of a great height, and ſo broad that Walks of great Trees are planted upon them, ſurrounded by a broad and deep Moat. The Citadel is a Pentagon, erected by the Duke of *Alva* upon a riſing ground, to command the City. It lies very convenient for Trade, Ships being able to come from the main Sea with one Tide up to it; and tho' the River near the City is not ſo broad as the *Thames* about *London*, yet it encreaſes much below, but as the *Fluſhingers* lye ſo conveniently for ſpoiling their Trade, they have now been careleſs in improving the ſame, to the ruin of this City.

In Fortifications.

In Extent and Buildings. Its compaſs is much the ſame as that of *London* within the Walls; their Houſes are handſomly built, eſpecially in the great Market-place (call'd the *Meer*) in the middle of the Town, and the other adjacent Streets. On the Head of the *Meer* is to be ſeen a moſt noble Crucifix of Braſs, of betwixt thirty ſix and forty foot high, erected in 1635, with this Inſcription:

Chriſto Crucifixo Sacrum.

The Church of S. Mary. Their Great and New Church is dedicated to *Our Lady*, a noble Fabrick both within and without; the Steeple is ſomewhat lower than ours of *Salisbury*, but moſt excellently wrought in Stone. About the Church you ſee many Altars and little Chapels beautified with exquiſite Workmanſhip of Marble. The Skreen, which is on the ſide of the Church, exceeds that of *Hertogen-boſch*: The Paintings of the Altars are moſt of the hand of the excellent *Paul Reuben*, who inhabited here; the Aſcenſion of the Virgin on the high Altar; the taking down of Chriſt from the Croſs in the croſs Iſle, and the Hiſtory of the Salutation and Circumciſion painted on the Valves of the Doors that lock up the former, all done by the ſame Maſter, are all highly eſteem'd, as well as another of his in the *Cupola*. The Portico of this Church, with its Marble Statues, is not inferiour to any in *Rome*. By the Symmetry of the Building of this Church it is eaſie to perceive, that ſuch another Steeple was deſign'd to have been erected, but perhaps the Church of the other made 'em lay aſide that deſign. We went up to this Steeple by 620 Steps, and then wanted 30 foot to the top, which, they told us, was cover'd with Copper Pans, to alarm the Country upon the approach of an Enemy, by ſetting fire to Pitch and other combuſtible matter, as we us'd to do with our Beacons. From it you have a moſt delicious proſpect of all the circumjacent Country, and the Sea; *Guicciardin* makes its height 420 foot of *Antwerp* meaſure?

This Church has a Dean and twenty four Canons, and a particular Order call'd *The Confraternity of the Circumciſion*, becauſe they pretend to preſerve here the true foreſkin of our Saviour, ſent them by *Godfrey* Duke of *Bouillon* King of *Jeruſalem*; and every Year on *Trinity-Sunday* they go in publick Proceſſion, which they call the *Feaſt of the Preſence*. They have ſeveral other Confraternities, as that of the *Holy Croſs*, that of the *Virgin*, of the *Sacrament*, of S. *Anthony*, of S. *Roch*, beſides ſome other *by-Confraternities*, ſuch as dedicate themſelves to *Arms*, *Rhetorick*, and other Sciences, who all have their peculiar Chapels in this Church, where they perform their Devotions on certain Feſtivals. In this Church King *Philip* held the firſt Chapter of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, in 1556.

The Jeſuites Church. The ſo much celebrated *Jeſuites Church* is a moſt noble Structure, the Model of the inſide being not unlike that of our S. *Clements* in *London*, but ſomething longer, and not quite ſo broad: The Pillars that ſupport the Galleries, as well as the upper row that ſuſtain the Roof, are of the pureſt Marble, and the Walls and Roofs are wainſcotted, with Panels of the beſt Paintings of *Reuben* and other great Maſters. The Great Altar is very lofty and noble, of the moſt beautiful Marble that can be found, in which you ſee the Aſcenſion of the Virgin, by *Reuben*, and God the Father reaching down a Crown of Gold on her Head, with this Inſcription, *Veni, Coronaberis*. The Front is ſuitable to the reſt, reſembling ſomewhat that of our Theatre of *Oxford*, but twice as high, and beautified with moſt exquiſite Statues in the Niches.

These Fathers lead here a lazy idle life; they have a very good Library, and another private Chapel for the uſe of the Fathers belonging to the College, call'd *The Society Chapel*, where you ſee their Saints drawn in fine Paintings by the beſt Maſters, with their Names in capital Letters, with this Inſcription, *Sanctus Colitur XIII. Febr.* and ſo for the reſt, to put you in mind of their reſpective Feſtivals; which ſeems to contradict what they would generally make the World believe, *viz.* that they pay no adoration to the Saints or their Images. It is far otherwiſe in the *Lutheran* Churches, in which tho' you frequently meet with exalted Crucifixes, various Images, and many Pieces of Paintings, ſo much reſembling thoſe of the *Romaniſts*, that I have ſeen them by miſtake pay their Devotions there, as they would have done in their own, yet is all Veneration ſtrictly forbidden among them, they being preſerv'd only as the remembrances of our Saviour and the Devotion of his Saints, as we uſe our Prints and Pictures in the Bibles and Common-prayer Books.

Images in the Lutheran Church.

S. James's Church. Next to theſe, the Church of S. *James* challenges the firſt place; the High Altar is of the fineſt poliſh'd Marble, ſupported by two beautiful wreath'd Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order. Behind lies interr'd the famous *Paul Reuben*, the Painter of his Age and Country, (who alſo painted our Banqueting-houſe at *Whitehall*) in a by-Chapel of his own founding, the Altar-piece being a curious Painting of his own. A great number of Canons belong to this Church.

The Church of the Predicant Friers. The Church of the City, and beautified with many excellent pieces of Painting by the beſt Maſters. There is a ſeparate Sect of *Carmelites* here, who have a Cloyſter at one end of the City, but the College of the *Carmelites* lies near the *Meer*, or great Market-place; it has a very large Church and Quire, and a moſt curious Chapel in it, which contains the Heart of its Founder. Here you ſee the Eſpouſals of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, an excellent Piece, by the hand of *Paul Reuben*.

The Abbey of S. Michael. The Abbey of S. *Michael*, belonging to the Order of the *Premonſtrants*, is vaſtly rich, and has a noble Church; in it you ſee the Tomb of one of the Family of the *Stuarts*, and the Statues of the twelve Apoſtles round the Nave of the Wall. On the Altar is a fine Piece of *Reuben*, repreſenting the Sages adoring Chriſt. The Abbot's Apartments are very noble, and they have here fifty Veſtiments all white. The Founder both of this Church and Order was *Norbert* a Prelate, Son to Count *Herebert*, Palatine in *Picardy*, and in the Dioceſs *de Laon*, in a place known anciently by the name of *Premonſtre*, in 1124; his Life is written in Latin Verſe about the Cloyſter of this Abbey.

Plantin's Printing-houſe. The noted Printinghouſe of *Plantin* is a kind of little ſquare College, fitted for the lodging of divers Officers and Workmen; they are almoſt wholly imploy'd in Divinity-works.

Their Townhouſe is a handſom old piece of Architecture, and the *Eaſterlings* Houſe is a good Fabrick, ninety ſeven foot long, and ſixty five broad; the Exchange of *London* is ſaid to have been built after the Model of that of *Antwerp*, but the Copy much ſurpaſſes the Original. A certain Gentleman nam'd *Luerse* (who had been formerly Bedchamberman to K. *Charles* I, and ſpoke very good

good *English*) oblig'd us with the sight of an excellent Collection of Pictures by the best hands, *viz.* of *Reuben*, *Van Dyke*, *Lilly*; that of the Archduke *Leopold* on Horseback, by *Van Dyke*, is a most exquisite Piece; and the *Madona* of *Andrea Carta* is highly valued, besides divers others done by *Titian*, *Raphael* and *Palma*; they were all in his own possession.

Antwerp was formerly one of the Cities of the first rank for Trade in *Europe*, tho' now-adays there is but a slender Assembly upon their once so celebrated Exchange: It was also an Imperial City, and is still the capital City of the Marquisate of the same name; the Princes of the House of *Nassau* had formerly the Title of *Burghgraves* of this place, which has produc'd divers great Men, celebrated for Learning as well as Painting and other Arts, *viz.* the famous Geographer *Abraham Ortelius*, *Scotus*, *Gruterus*, &c. the most celebrated Painters, *John de Fuick*, *Reuben*, *Goltius*, *Heemskirk*.

Mechelen. From hence we travel'd thro' a very fine Country in five hours to *Mechelen*, a Town chiefly noted for the Lace they make, tho' they are imploy'd likewise in divers other Manufacturies of Linen, Leather, casting of Bells, great Guns, &c. It is seated on a rising ground, of a larger extent than *Hertogen-bosch*, but not near so strong, being no Frontier Town.

The Great Church. Their *Great Church*, dedicated to St. *Rumbald* is an ancient Fabrick, in which you see the Statues of the Apostles placed round the Walls. This St. *Rumbald*, they tell you, was stoned to death, like St. *Stephen*. In the Church is an Inscription in *French*, the Date being worn out, intimating, that *there lay the Body of* Margaret Stuart, *Daughter of* Her. *of her Royal Highness Madam the Dutchess of* Orleans, *Issue of* George Stuart *her Father, of the illustrious House of* Stuart *and* Lenox, *Earls of* Boverby *in* Scotland; *and of Dame* Mary de Baqueville *her Mother, of the Family of* Baqueville *in* Normandy, *who died*, &c. The situation of this City is in the very center of *Brabant*, at an equal distance from *Louvain*, *Brussels* and *Antwerp*, upon the River *Dele* or *Demer*, which runs thro' it, and the Tide comes somewhat above it: It is a Lordship, making (with its Appendences) one of the seventeen Provinces, whence it is that it had a Great Council and Parliament instituted in 1463, by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; the Council consisted of thirty seven Persons, he himself President; when it was annex'd to *Spain* by Marriage in 1503, the numbers were alter'd, but the Parliament in substance settled and retain'd to this day: It is a Bishops See, founded in 1559, by *Paul* IV, and made Primate of all *Flanders*; the Cardinal *Granvel* was their first Archbishop. We observ'd on the Road near it growing the *Bellis Cerulea*, *blue Daisie*, the *Tanacetum* or *Tansy*, and the *Argentina* or *Silver-weed*.

The Convent of Alexis. Not far from *Mechelen*, near the Road leading to *Antwerp*, formerly stood a large Monastery encompass'd with a strong Wall, call'd the Convent of *Alexis*, containing betwixt five and six hundred religious persons, under the Government of four Presidents; they had liberty to go out and in when they pleas'd, and to marry, after they had renounc'd their retirement; but this Convent was laid desolate in the Civil Wars.

Vilvorden. Going from *Mechelen* to *Brussels* we pass'd thro' *Vilvorden*, an ancient Town, situate upon the little River *Senne*, from whence a handsom Canal is carried to *Brussels*; it was formerly very well fortified, but Time and the *French* have batter'd down its Walls, tho' the Castle (where formerly were kept the Records of the Dukes of *Brabant*) remains pretty entire. In this place it was that Mr. *Will. Tindal* our Countryman, that early Translator of the New Testament, suffer'd Imprisonment and Martyrdom against all the Laws of Nations, he being then a Subject to another Prince.

Brussels. A league further lies *Brussels*, an old Town, surrounded with Stone Turrets and a Moat; they walk on their Walls as at *Antwerp*: It is seated upon the River *Senne*, and has always been the Residence of the *Spanish* Governour of these Provinces; it exceeds *Bristol* in bigness, and is built upon a rise and a descent; their Houses resemble more our *English* than the *Dutch*, being cover'd for the most part with Slate and Tiles; the Townhouse is an old but noble Fabrick, not much inferiour (in proportion to its bigness) to that of *Amsteldam*, and the Front exceeds it much.

Its publick Buildings.

The Jesuites College. The Jesuites College here is exceeding noble, and by its Front, Church and Tower seems to have been the Model to that of *Antwerp*, being much older, and not so august. Their private Chapel is neatly wainscotted, and they have a delightful Garden; their Library is kept in a long Room, the Intercloses betwixt the Windows being adorn'd with the Pictures of the eminent Writers of their Society; and on the Wall at the entrance you see some *Roman* Antiquities, with ancient Inscriptions in Stone, brought thither from *Italy*. They have their several Schools, of Grammar, Rhetorick and Philosophy. We observ'd at that time in all their Churches a certain Inscription in *Dutch*, *French* and *Spanish*, written on Tables, *viz. Pray for the prosperity of the Christian Arms before Buda*; and soon after we were rejoyc'd with the News of the good success of that Siege.

The Governour's House and Park. The Governour's Palace, an old Fabrick, stands in the Park; it has another additional one near it, call'd the *Emperour's Palace*, perhaps from *Charles* V, who built it; it has a curious Grotesque and Waterworks, tho' within it is a very ordinary Building; they shew'd us a piece of Painting here done by thirty six hands. About the middle of the Park you see, in a little Grott, a Marble Statue of *Magdalen*, extended upon the ground, with Water dropping over her Face, a curious Piece by one *Canaw*, who was afterwards burnt at *Brussels* for committing Sodomy behind the high Altar.

In their Great Church (an old *Gothick* Fabrick) are the Tombs of two Dukes of *Brabant*, and on one side of the Isles of the Quire you see an old written account on a Table of two or three *Jews*, who having hir'd some Persons to convey the sacred Host to them, prick'd it with their Knives, and the Blood presently follow'd; a thing absurd enough, notwithstanding which they keep an annual Procession in memory of this pretended Miracle, in which they pretend to shew the same Host still bleeding. This Church was anciently dedicated to S. *Michael* the Patron of the Town, but one S. *Gudule*, a Daughter of one of their Counts, having enrich'd it with good Revenues, they since consecrated it to her memory.

In S. *Mary's* Church lie interr'd the Bodies of *Ernest* Archduke of *Austria* Son to the Emperour *Maximilian* II, and of *Ernest* Count of *Isenburgh*; their Histories you have in their Inscriptions.

Palaces of Brussels. *Brussels* has divers goodly Palaces, as that of *Egmont*, (who was beheaded here by the Duke of *Alva*, with Count *Horn*) and that belonging to the Family of *Orange*; that of *Bourneville*, a handsom Structure, then inhabited by the Countess of *Soissons*, banish'd *France* for poysoning; those of Prince *Vaudemont* and of the Prince *de la Tour* are also noble Fabricks. The *Fabri*, *Remander*, the two *Martini's*, Civilians, and the celebrated *Vesalius*, were Natives of this City.

The Garden of Arscot. Within five hours hence is the Country Seat of the Duke of *Arscot*; the Castle is both old and little, but the Garden and Park not inferiour to any that may be seen out of *Italy* and *Versailles*, excellently well planted with delightful Groves and shady Walks of Firr, and a handsom Mall at the lower end; however, the Duke not residing here then, it was much out of order: The Town near which it is seated is call'd *Enghien*, one of the first Baronies of the Province of *Hainault*, and formerly gave a Title to some of the House of *Bourbon*, but now lies almost desolate, being demolish'd by the *French* in the last Wars. This place was formerly noted for excellent Tapestry-work, but now they make some Lace.

English.

Hall. In our return to *Brussels* we pass'd thro' *Hall*, a small, mean, and inconsiderable Town, seated upon the same River *Senne*, on the Confines of *Brebant* and *Hainault*; it is noted only for its Church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, whose Image being reputed to work prodigious Miracles, the Inhabitants of those parts flock hither on Pilgrimages, as the *Italians* do to *Loretto*; they have lately publish'd a whole Book of her pretended Miracles, said to be a *Translation* of *Lipsius*, and many of them are represented in Pictures round the Church; among the rest, we observ'd her painted standing on a Ladder and taking down a Thief alive, that had hung there a considerable time before, as they told us. In this Church lie also interr'd the Bowels of *Philip*, firnam'd *the Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who united the *Netherlands* with that House; it was miserably ruin'd by the *French* in the late Wars.

Louvain. From *Brussels* we travel'd for four hours thro' an excellent Country, but a very bad Road, to *Louvain*, a City seated in a kind of a Valley on the River *Dye*, and wall'd with double Works and Ditches: The generality of the Houses belonging to private Persons are but mean, tho' some of their Colleges are handsom enough, yet much inferiour to those of either of our Universities, with which they otherwise agree most of all the other foreign Academies in their Foundations and Government; they have a Rector, who is like our Vice-Chancellour, and is chosen every six months. The whole number of their Colleges and Schools amounts to forty three; a particular account of the Foundation of them was printed in the Year 1654; we were told, that at that time there were no less than sixteen hundred Students here; the chief Col-

Its Universities.

lege

Colleges. lege is call'd *Magnum ſive Majus Theologicum*, to diſtinguiſh it from that call'd *Minus*, dedicated to the ſame Profeſſion; the great one has no leſs than a hundred and twenty *Burſi* (as they call 'em) or Students that are maintain'd out of its Revenues; they have four *Scholæ minores*, as they ſtile 'em, more eminent than the reſt, known by the Names of *Porcus*, *Falco*, the *Caſtrum*, and the *Lilium*, theſe Emblems being to be ſeen over their Gates; one of theſe, they told us, contain'd ſix hundred Scholars, two hundred whereof were maintain'd at the charge of the Colleges, but they are for the moſt part Boys, nothing but Grammar, Rhetorick and Poeſie being taught here. Several of their Colleges are in their Buildings equal to ſome of ours, and the Students here wear no Swords, but certain Gowns, eſpecially thoſe of Divinity, who never appear without 'em. They have two Lectures in Philoſophy, the *Primarius* and *Secundarius*, each reads two hours, one in the Forenoon, the other in the Afternoon: Abſent Scholars pay a Fine of a Penny, and other Treſpaſſes are aſſeſs'd proportionably: They take an Oath before they are admitted Members of the Univerſity. As for their Degrees, they are obtain'd without much difficulty; they commence Batchelors of Divinity after two years ſtanding, but don't admit them to proceed Doctors till they are come to a good age: They have a *medium* betwixt a Batchelor and Doctor call'd a *Licentiate*, whoſe Title is *Peritiſſimus* in Phyſick, *Eximius* in Divinity, and *Conſulteiſſimus* in Law: They ſolemnize their Graduations with feaſting, preſenting of Gloves, beating of Drums, and ringing of Bells. The *Caſtrum* will make a fine Square when the fourth part, which was then imperfect, comes to be finiſh'd: The *New College* had then but two ſides, but they were then buſie in making it a handſom Quadrangle. The publick Schools, which were but mean formerly, have of late been new built, ſo that now they exceed thoſe of *Cambridge* as much as they are inferiour to thoſe of *Oxford*. Some will have this City to have no leſs circumference than *Ghent*; certain it is, that it has very large and empty ſpaces of Ground, ſcarce the fourth part being taken up with Buildings.

Their Degrees.

Their Churches. The Jeſuites Church here is a loftier Structure than that of *Antwerp*, but not ſo ſumptuous; the Church of S. *Quintin* is a goodly Fabrick of ancient Architecture; but the Great Church dedicated to S. *Peter* is but an ordinary Building: The *Townhouſe* is a noble Fabrick, built after that of *Bruſſels*, but not ſo large; the Carving and other Ornaments are extraordinary. Some would deduce the Origin of this City from *Cæſar*'s time. I obſerv'd hereabouts abundance of *Alſine rectæ Triphyllæ* C.B. *Park. fol. Hed. Rutæ modo diviſ. Lobel.* the *baſtard Chickweed*, the *Euphraſia vulg. & officinarum* C.B. common *Eyebright*, and the *Adriantium Aureum*, or *Gold-locks*.

About a league from *Lovain* are to be ſeen the Ruins of an old Seat belonging to the Duke of *Arſcot*, there being ſcarce any thing left beſides the Front. Near it ſtands a little Church belonging to the *Celeſtine* Friers, in the Quire whereof, in the ſide-Iſles, are ſeveral Tombs of the Dukes of that Houſe; moſt of the Inſcriptions are in *French*, except that upon one of their Dukes that died laſt, which is in *Latin*, on a white Marble; they were formerly Dukes of *Arenberg*, before that of *Arſcot* deſcended to 'em by Marriage.

The Tombs of the Family of *Arſcot*.

Town. The next Town we came to in *Brabant* is *Tienen*, about three leagues from *Lovain*, a ſmall inſignificant place, being demoliſh'd by the *French*; it is ſeated upon the River *Geet*.

Soutelay. Two hours more brought us to *Soutelay*, a wretched place, yet ſurrounded with ſome Works and a Ditch, and govern'd by a Mayor and a Governour, who commands the Garriſon; the Soldiers were ſo wretchedly kept, that they begg'd upon the Guard. Their Church belongs to a Convent of *Auſtin Friers*.

S. Truyen. An hours travel thence lies S. *Truyen*, another ſmall Town, demoliſh'd not long before by the *French*; it is renown'd in ancient Hiſtory, *Cæſar* makes mention of it, *l. 5. de Bell. Gall.* the Country hereabouts being known then under the Name of that of the *Centrones*. This, as well as the Town of *Tongeren*, belongs to the Chapter of *Liege*, and the Abbot of the Abbey of S. *Truyen* ſhares in the Government of the Town with the Biſhop of *Liege*. In all theſe Countries you ſee frequently near the Roads Croſſes and Crucifixes, with little Chapels, ſome cut out in hollow Trees; and I obſerv'd a certain Plant growing wild, which we cultivate in our Gardens, *viz.* the *Malum Spinoſum Chabræ*; *Stramonium*, Ger. *Prickly* or *Thorn-Apple*.

Tongren. About three or four hours thence lies the ancient Town of *Tongeren*, on the *Jaker*, which (ſome ſay) was built eleven hundred years before the Birth of our Saviour; the Ruins of the old Caſtle, and the old Wall on the Biſhop *Maternus*'s Chapel, are generally believ'd to have been before our Saviour's Nativity: I obſerv'd in the Moulding the Images of *Sol*, *Venus* and *Jupiter*. Their *Jeſuites Church* being demoliſh'd by the *French*, they were then erecting a new one, but not agreeable to the Grandeur of that Society. Their old Church is a *Gothick* (but very handſom) Fabrick; it has twenty two Canons and a Dean, and had formerly a Biſhop too, but the See was tranſlated to *Maeſtricht*, and from thence to *Liege*.

Antiquities. If it be true, that *Attila* the *Hun* deſtroy'd a hundred Churches here, it muſt have been much bigger than the Ruins, which are yet to be ſeen without the Walls, do appear; here are ſtill to be diſcover'd ſome remnants of a Temple and Statue of *Hercules*, and of a pav'd Cawſey, carried from thence in a ſtreight line for eighty leagues, as far as *Paris*, ſuppos'd to have been ſome *Roman* Work. It is beyond all queſtion that ſome of *Cæſar*'s Legions quarter'd hereabouts, and ſome of them were cut to pieces by the *Tungri*.

About half a mile from the Town we took notice of a Mineral Water of a chalybeat taſte, which ting'd the Stones and Earth with an Iron Ruſt; ſome would have this Spring be the ſame deſcrib'd by *Pliny*, *Nat. Hiſt. l.* 3. *c.* 2. but however moſt Antiquaries gather from this Deſcription, that he meant another near *Tungris* in *Gaul*, which are the preſent noted *Spaws*, about eight leagues from hence. I found wild hereabouts a Plant, which is not found ſpontaneouſly growing in *England*, *viz. Doronicum majus officinarum, maximum Chabræi*, the great *Wolfſtane*.

'Tis certain that this City had a conſiderable Territory belonging to it in the time of the *Romans*, as appears from *Cæſar*, *Strabo*, *Tacitus*, *Jul. Capitolinus*, &c. in all probability the Towns of *Tongerloo*, *Tongerhein*, and *Tongris* (now in different Principalities) did formerly belong to its Juriſdiction.

From hence we went to *Maeſtricht*, deſcrib'd in the preceding Chapter, and from thence to *Liege*, by the *Teck-ſchuyt*, up the River *Meuſe*, againſt a ſwift current: A ridge of Hills runs from *Maeſtricht* along the right hand as far as *Liege*, and tho' a ſtony Soil, yet is planted with Vineyards and Orchards: On the left hand, the firſt place you come to is *Novegne*, a little Town belonging to the *Spaniards*, in the County of *Limburgh*; it is ſeated on the Water-ſide, and defended by a Redoubt facing the River.

Novegne.

Beyond *Novegne*, half-way betwixt *Maeſtricht* and *Liege*, lies *Weſet*, a wretched place: The next we came to was the Caſtle of *Argenteau*, ſeated on a high Hill, and much celebrated in ancient times, but now almoſt ruin'd. On the right hand we paſs'd by *Herſtad*, and in ſight of the Convent of the *Minims Brethers*, very rich and conſiderable in its Revenues.

Weſet. Argenteau.

Liege. Soon after we came to *Liege*, ſeated upon the *Meuſe*, all-along the Banks of which is a Key a quarter of a mile in length, for the conveniency of landing their Goods, reaching to their new Bridge, ſupported only by ſix Arches, every one of which is twice as broad in compaſs as ours belonging to *London-bridge*, and not much leſs than the ſo much celebrated Arch of *Rialto* at *Venice*; it riſes high in the middle, and is broad enough for five or ſix Waggons to go a-breaſt; it is provided with ſome Cannon.

Its Bridge.

The form of the City is triangular, one whereof runs over againſt the Hill towards the Citadel: Its ſituation is much like that of our Town of *Dartmouth*, but it is of a much larger compaſs. The Citadel was built 1650, by the Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, and was three years before our arrival demoliſh'd by the *French*, and then rebuilding in the form of a Pentagon with five Baſtions, after the modern way: the aſcents to it are ſo ſteep, that Carts and other Carriages can't go up without a great deal of difficulty. Their Houſes, tho' generally of Wood, are well built, but their Streets dirty and irregular. Proviſions, tho' heavily tax'd, are very cheap here; and they have the beſt Mutton in the World, fed in the Foreſt of *Arden* near it, a Wood fam'd in *Cæſar*'s time.

Citadel.

The Seminary of the *Engliſh Jeſuites* (founded by a certain Duke of *Bavaria*) is ſeated on the aſcent of a Hill, having a pleaſant Garden belonging to it; here you ſee great variety of Dyalling, of the invention of the famous Mathematician *Linus*; among theſe, that in the middle of the Garden is the moſt curious, by its ſeveral ways of ſhewing the Hours, *viz.*

The Engliſh Seminary.

1. A Wine Glaſs, in the middle of which a perpendicular Gnomon directs you to the Figures on the outſide.

Curious Dyall.

2. A Glaſs reflecting like a Looking-glaſs, in which if you center your Eye, you ſee a little Star, caus'd by the penetration of the Sunbeams, that ſets the time of the day.

3. A

3. A round Glass full of Wire and small Brass Bars that surround it, from which to the Point of Time the Sunbeams are reflected in a Punctum, as from a Burning-glass, so that by counting the number of these little Bars, from the first to the Punctum, where the heat centers, a blind Man, by the sensibility of his Fingers, may find the Hour of the Day.

4. Reflections on a Globe of Constellations for a Night-Dyal.

5. By the elevation of the Pole-Star, and the light of the Sun trajected.

6. By the receding of the Gnomon till it casts no shadow, the Reverse of the ordinary Dyals.

Their Chapel is small, and the College none of the largest, containing about eighty in number. They receiv'd us very kindly, and gave us an Entertainment of Musick.

St. James's Convent. The Convent of S. *James* is a noble Structure; it has two beautiful Monuments, one of their Founder, and the other of one of their Abbots; they are both curiously wrought in *Relievo*, as is the Passion of our Saviour in the Skreen.

Their Relicks. They shew you abundance of Relicks here, as a Tooth of our Saviour, several pieces of the true Cross, some of *Mary Magdalen*'s Hair, a Shift of one of the Innocents murther'd by *Herod*'s command, some Bones and part of the Skulls of all the Apostles, besides a vast number of Relicks of Martyrs; among these last they shew'd us an *Antipendium*, made out of the embroider'd Cloak (as they pretend) belonging to our King *Charles* I, and the same he wore upon the Scaffold when he suffer'd: We were not a little surpriz'd at the sight thereof, especially since they positively assur'd us it was so, tho' they could not tell how it came to their hands; I am apt to believe, if the thing be real, they must have it from his Consort, afterwards the Queen-mother.

Their Structures. This City has two or three handsom Squares, with divers goodly Houses. The Episcopal Palace is a noble Fabrick, with divers Courts, one whereof is more spacious than our Exchange, with Piazza's. Their Great Church is but an ordinary Building; to their Cathedral (dedicated to S. *Lambert*) belong sixty Canons, all nobly descended, who chuse the Bishop of *Liege*: Besides these, The Chapter (call'd for distinction sake *Nobiles* or *Majores*) they have twelve *Canonici Mediocres*, and as many *Minores*. The Cardinal *de la Marche*, Brother to the famous Earl of the same Name, was Bishop of this See; his Effigies of Brass is to be seen in the Church kneeling, with this Inscription, and Death put before his Face by his own order;

Erardus à Marchâ mortem habens præ oculis, vivus, posuit.

In the Convent of the *Williamites*, situate at one end of the Town, you see the Tomb of our Countryman Sir *John Mandeville*, who ended his long Travels and Life in this place; they preserve in the Vestry (as Relicks) his Spurs, Bridle and Saddle, and two large Knives, said to have been presented him by the *Grand Signior*; his Effigies is cut in Stone, representing an arm'd Man with a fork'd Beard, his Hand elevated in a begging posture, with this Libel, in old *French* and a most barbarous Character, out of his Mouth:

Sir J. Mandeville's Tomb.

Vol Ki passeis sor mi
Pour l'Amour Deix preiez por mi.

i. e. *All you that pass o'er me,*
For the love of God pray for me.

His Latin Inscription in Capitals runs thus:

Hic jacet vir Nobilis Dominus JOHANNES *de Mandeville, al' dictus ad barbam miles, Dominus de Candia, natus de Anglia Medicinæ Professor, Devotissimus Orator, & Bonorum largissimus Pauperibus Erogator, Qui toto quasi orbe lustrato Lecdiis Dieb' vitæ suæ Clausit Extremam* ANNO DOMINI MCCCLXXI. *mensis Novembris Die* XVII.

This Knight writ an account of his own Travels, yet extant, under the Reign of our King *Edward* III, and was consequently a Contemporary with *Chaucer* and Sir *John Hawkwood*, another Countryman of ours, who render'd himself so famous in *Italy*.

The *Meuse* dividing it self here into several Branches, is a considerable advantage to this City, which (they say) has no less than a hundred Parish-Churches. Certain it is that its Bishop is a Member of the Empire, and that *Cæsar*, in his *Commentaries*, call'd the Inhabitants of this Country *Eburones*.

They have here a *Convention* of the *States* (somewhat like our Parliament) compos'd of the Nobility, Clergy, and Commons; no new Law can be made or any Taxes impos'd without their consent.

The Country has Mines of Iron and Coal. *Baldwin* a famous Civilian, and *Limbourgh* a noted Physician, were both Natives of this City. The Inhabitants make use of a certain Herb for Sallad which we account a Weed, viz. the *Eruca Sylvestris* or *Wild Rocket*; they chiefly speak *French*, and for their Fewel use generally what they call *Hotshots*, being a mixture of Coals and Clay made up into round Balls and dried in the Sun, which allays the heat of the Coal, and keeps it from wasting too much. The Women here undergo as much Drudgery as the Men, in carrying Baskets with Coals and other burthens of great weight, &c.

From hence we made an excursive Journey thro' the Province of *Luxemburgh*, and some of the *German* Territories on the *Moselle* and the *Rhine*, (of the last of which we shall have occasion to speak in the description of that Country) and so back thro' the Dutchy of *Limburgh* to *Liege* again.

What we observ'd in the places belonging to the *Spanish Netherlands* were these: First, on our left hand, the Town and Castle of *Franchimont*, a very ancient place, built upon the top of a Hill; it belongs to the Bishoprick of *Liege*, from whence it is about four of their miles distant, near the little River *Theu*: The Castle owns the before-mention'd Cardinal *de la Marche* for its Founder. These Hills afford store of wild *Juniper*, with the *Vaccinia Nigra* and *Rubra*. Franchimont.

Between *Liege* and the next place, we went to see the so much celebrated *Spaw*, where we found the purling Brooks rising from among the Rocks, and running along the Valleys; the Village which bears the Name of *Spaw*, and has imparted it to the Waters, being seated in a woody pleasant bottom. The Spaw Waters.

There is one Spring of these Waters in the Town, and two or three more in the Wood about a mile off; that in the middle of the great Street of this place they call the *Powhunt*, has a vitriolate taste, and if you put in it any thing that is austere, as *Galls*, *Oak-leaves*, *Balaustium*, &c. it turns black, which I experimented several times: those in the Woods are of a more piquant taste, and of quicker operation than our *Chalybeat Waters*: According to Mr. *Boyle*'s Experiments, they weigh two grains in three ounces more than *Tunbridge*, and four grains more than some of the *Islington* Waters, yet both less than the common Water by several grains; but a considerable allowance in that respect must be given for their evaporation in the bringing hither from those parts: they seem'd to me clearer on the place than our *Chalybeats*; and it is worth the observation of a curious person, that tho' by the exactest Scrutiny of Glasses no *visible difference* has been found hitherto betwixt the contexture of the minute parts of Common Water and any Mineral one; yet by Chymical Precipitations and ordinary Solutions, and sometimes by subsiding, considerable separations of a different Substance are made without much difficulty. I further observ'd, that a much greater Coldness is plainly perceivable in these Waters, than what is found in those commonly mix'd with the *Rhenish-Wine* in these parts to cool it, and which generally passes under the Name of *Spaw-water*, and makes a strong ebullition with the Wine, for this is brought from different and far distant places call'd *Dienstein* and *Coblentz*, upon the *Rhine* and *Moselle*; the true *Spaw-water* produces no such ebullition, tho' mix'd never so much with Sugar, and is always bottled up in the place in little Wicker Flasks, but the other in Stone Pottles. See Mr. Ray's and Dr. Brown's Travels.

Near the great Well in the Town is another lesser arch'd one, the Water whereof seems to exceed the other in strength; and it is worth observation, that there are several Springs both in the Town and in the Wood, at a small distance from the *Chalybeat Waters*, which nevertheless don't in the least participate of their taste or vertue; the Well call'd *Sauvenier*, a mile from this Village, does not taste so strong of the Vitriol as that in it. The two Springs in the Wood are call'd *Geronster* and *Tonolet*.

The Woods hereabouts afford store of Plants, the most rare I could take notice of were, the *Polygonatum minus*, a lesser sort of *Solomon's Seal*, and another with narrower Leaves, suppos'd to be the *Angustifol. ramosum Chabræi* much rather than the former; the *Cynus major*, by others the *Major Hortensis*, the *Great Blewbottle*, which we and the *Germans* cultivate in Gardens; the *Asclepias Vincetoxicum Dodonæi*, by what I could guess, the Flowers of both kinds being gone; *Fiore albo & nigro*, the *black and white Swallow-wort*. Divers rare Plants.

From

From hence we continued our Journey toward *Luxemburgh*, a ſtony and mountainous Country, and full of Woods, which perhaps are the remnants of the ancient Forreſt of *Arden*; for tho' the modern Forreſt of *Arden* is contain'd to that Track that lies about *Bovillon*, *Meſſiers* and *Fumay*, it is not unlikely that thoſe *Sylvæ Arduennæ* mention'd by *Cæſar* were of a much larger extent, and were perhaps cut down in part by his Legions and other Armies ſince that time, to ſerve them both with Fewel and Timber.

The Forreſt of Arden.

Stable.

In our paſſage leaving *Stable*, an inconſiderable Town, on our left hand, we paſs'd by a ſmall Convent ſeated on the top of the Hill call'd *Fraſcoun*, the Valley beyond it being water'd by a pleaſant Rivulet purling among the fertile Meadows.

Fraſcoun.

Alſemont.

A little way beyond it, we came to *Alſemont*, a little Town upon the River *Alſ*, in the middle whereof, in a ſtrong current, we took notice of a hollow Trunk of a Tree ſtamm'd down into the bottom of the Water, and looking into it attentively, I found the ſides of this wooden Well cover'd with a ruſty ferruginous ſubſtance, as is generally obſerv'd in all Vitriolate and Chalybeate Springs, and its taſte near the ſame with the *Spaw-waters*, except that it was not quite ſo ſtrong: I made the beſt enquiry I could of the neighbouring Country-people, who told me, that they call'd this Spring the *Little Spaw*, which by this wooden Trunk they had ſo ſeparated from the River-water, that it no way participated either of its taſte or quality. I obſerv'd however, that the Water of ſome of their Gutters and Spouts had ſomething of an aſtringency in it.

A Chalybeate Spring in the middle of a River.

Salmeville.

From hence we travel'd on to *Salmeville*, an inconſiderable Town, ſeated upon the *Alſ*, about five hours from the *Spaw*; and thence thro' a rocky Valley up to an Hill, on which ſtands an old Caſtle call'd *Salm Caſtle*, which gives title to the Count *de Salm*, and was formerly a place of ſtrength.

Soon after we croſs'd the *Sour*, paſſing thro' the Villages of *Gevi* and *Boilegne*, and by a Country Seat of the Sieur *Brandenburgh*, and in ſight of the ſmall Town of *Dickirk*, ſeated on the left of the *Salm*. We travel'd along the Banks of the River *Alſeth* for three or four miles in a very pleaſant Road. We paſs'd afterwards thro' *Altabrugge*, a wretched place, and by a little Caſtle, or rather Country Seat, call'd *Beriale*; and in three hours more came to *Mets*, a ſmall and inconſiderable place, three hours on this ſide of *Luxemburgh*, ſeated betwixt the *Alſeth* and the *Erk*. As about *Liege* and *Maeſtricht* they uſe a ſort of Language call'd *Walon*, being a mixture of *Low Dutch* and *French* in a *Flemiſh* Accent, ſo in the Province of *Luxemburgh* I obſerv'd ſuch another medley of *High Dutch* and *French* pronounc'd in the *French* Accent.

Mets.

The Walloon Language.

From hence we paſs'd thro' a Valley of about ten or twelve *Engliſh* miles, to *Luxemburgh*, over a pav'd Cauſey made by the *French*, from whence by a gentle aſcent we came up to the Rock on which this impregnable Fortification is erected.

Luxemburgh.

Luxemburgh, the Metropolis of the Province of the ſame name, is ſeated near the River *Alſeth* that runs under it, upon a Precipice of Rocks, which alſo ſurround it, Nature having made a Vale betwixt the Rocks on which it is ſeated and thoſe that front it, to render it almoſt impregnable without Art. By which however it has been ſo improv'd ſince, that what with the Works already made, and thoſe deſign'd to be made, it will queſtionleſs be the ſtrongeſt place in *Europe*; tho', after all, it has ſome adjacent Rocks from whence it may be bombarded, and made an heap of Stones and Aſhes. On the Weſt ſide of it lies a Promontory of the oppoſite Hill jetting out, which by a Bridge is joyn'd to the Town-Gate.

In Strength.

The *Jeſuites* have a handſom Church here, but miſerably batter'd by the *French* Bombs, which that King order'd to be repair'd at his own coſt: The *Franciſcans* Church being at the ſame time laid level with the ground, was not rebuilt then, tho' they had taken care of their own Lodgings.

In the little Chapel belonging to the great Church of the *Franciſcans* (likewiſe laid in ruins) they had a Vault, in which were entomb'd ſeveral Perſons of Note, among the reſt *John* of *Luxemburgh* King of *Bohemia*, Sonne to the Emperour *Henry* VII, and the famous Count *Mansfelt*, whoſe Effigies, with thoſe of two of his Wives in Braſs, are to be ſeen on his Tomb, with a Latin Inſcription in Capitals. This *Erneſtus* Count of *Mansfelt* was the ſame who render'd his Name ſo famous in the Civil Wars of the *Netherlands*, and afterwards Governour thereof, whoſe Son ſignaliz'd himſelf as much on the *Proteſtants* ſide as the Father had done at the head of the *Roman Catholick* Party.

Count Mansfelt's Tomb.

On that part where the Hill is neareſt to the Town, the King of *France* was then erecting divers additional Works, and Halfmoons, Redoubts, and other advanc'd Works were making on the Rocks that ſurround it, to cover thoſe within.

The additional Works by the French

For the reſt, the Town is neither large nor well built, except ſome Edifices built by the *French* King's order, for the conveniency of the Officers of the Gariſon. We found here one Dr. *Daffe*, an *Iriſh* Phyſician belonging to the Gariſon, who ſpoke *Engliſh* very well, and gave us a ſuccinct account of many things, being a perſon of good Underſtanding. The *French* at firſt left the Government in the ſame ſtation as they found it, when they had a Burghermaſter that had the chief management of publick affairs; but ſoon after they introduc'd a new Model, aboliſh'd the Power of this ſupream Magiſtrate, and made the Citizens to be contented with ſeven Common-councilmen and three *Schepen*. They were then imploy'd in making a High-road thro' the Valley, to keep Travellers into *Lorrain* and *Germany* from being oblig'd to paſs thro' the Town, a work of vaſt expence and labour.

In our paſſage from thence we obſerv'd on the Eaſt ſide ſome Ruins of ſtately Fabricks belonging formerly to the Counts of *Mansfelt*, demoliſh'd in the laſt Siege: At our parting, an old *Franciſcan* Frier, with whom we had ſome Diſputes about Religion, gave us this Farewell;

O vos Angli,
Quam Eſſetis Angeli,
Si non Hæretici!

From hence we went forward to *Gravemakeren*, a ſmall old wall'd Town, ſeated upon the Frontiers of this Province, about four leagues from *Luxemburgh*, but now demoliſh'd by the *French*: The *Moſelle*, upon which they lie, affords 'em good conveniency for the venting their Wines. The Country betwixt this and *Luxemburgh* is very hilly and woody, but near to this River the Vineyards lay upon a level with its Banks.

Gravemakeren.

Somewhat lower lies the Village call'd *Waſſerbillech*, where the River *Sour* diſembogues out of the Arch of a Bridge into the *Moſelle*, with ſuch violence, that the Current is viſibly repell'd by the oppoſite Shore.

Waſſerbillech.

From this place we paſs'd down the *Moſelle*, but the Countries hereabouts belonging either to *Lorrain*, the Archbiſhops of *Treves* and *Cologne*, or the Dukedom of *Juliers*, we reſerve the account thereof to the deſcription of *Germany*.

From *Aix la Chapelle* in *Juliers* we return'd to *Limburgh*, one of the ſeventeen Provinces. Croſſing the two Rivers of *Geul* and *Gueule*, we travel'd in ſight of *Dalem*, a ſmall (but fortified) place; and paſſing from thence thro' *Weſet*, a little Town on the banks of the *Moſelle*, (which we ferry'd over here) we return'd to *Liege*: Here we took the conveniency of one of their Drawboats for *Huy*, up the *Meuſe*, all the way under Precipices of Slate and Marble Rocks. Their Vineyards on the right hand, facing the South, produce a tolerable good Wine.

A mile above *Liege* we paſs'd in ſight of a Convent of the *Benedictins*, pleaſantly ſituated, and of *Sleyn*, a ſmall (but delightful) Village; and higher up, of the Caſtle of *Duſelmond*, ſeated on a high Rock; the little Village of *Tillo*, and another Caſtle built on a mountainous Precipice call'd *Choquiers*, belonging to the Baron of *Benbon*; it being obſervable, that moſt of the ancient Seats of the Nobility of this Country, which us'd to be frequently involv'd in Wars, are thus built on inacceſſible places, and ſtrengthned with Fortifications; and it is more than probable that the ſame Cuſtom obtain'd in *England*, before that general demoliſhing of Caſtles under the Reign of K. *Stephen*.

We obſerv'd hereabouts the method they uſe in making their Allom and Salpetre. On the top of theſe Rocky Hills they dig up a certain Earth, which being diluted with Water and percolated, they convey the Water thus impregnated with the Nitrous Salt, by the help of long Pipes, from the tops of the Rocks to the bottom, into boiling Ciſterns, where they boil it into Salt, and carry it by the River which way they pleaſe. I took particular notice, that the top of the Earth that lay round the Pits, which had been diluted by the Waters, appear'd of a reddiſh colour, like the *Caput Mortuum* or Remnants after the diſtillation of the *Spirit of Vitriol*, whereas the common Earth of the Hill was a black Soil; which made me imagin, that the mixture of ſome other Ingredients had imparted that colour to it, which they could not deny, but would not tell us what it was.

Allom and Nitre Works.

Higher up the River we paſs'd in ſight of the Caſtle belonging to the Baron of *Harmal*, a handſom Building,

and above that, of *Flowm Abbey*, compos'd of twelve regular Canons, built likewise of Brick, of that colour, which is of a much deeper red than ours.

Huy. *Huy* owes its Name to the River *Hoiaul*, which here joyns its Waters with the *Meuse*; it is but a little (but very ancient) Town, seated on both sides of the last of these two Rivers, being joyn'd by a Bridge, which together with the Castle was demolish'd by the *French*, but the first was then repairing. Their Great Church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is an ancient *Gothic* Structure. In the Convent of the *Capuchins* they have a Cistern of betwixt three and four yards diameter, hewn out of one piece of rough Marble, of which there is abundance hereabouts, but of a greyish colour, and some Iron Mines. They boast their Castle to have been built by the Emperour *Antonin*, which they pretend to maintain by a certain old Inscription, *Antoninus piissimus Imperator.*

Beyond *Huy* commences another ridge of Rocks all along the River as far as *Namur*, among which that call'd *Sampson's* Rock is the most remarkable: Hereabouts the *Meuse* dividing it self into divers Branches, makes several Islands.

In our way we pass'd in sight of the small Villages of *Este*, *Amder Abbey*, *Soissons*, *Marsledam*, and thence to *Namur*, seated upon the *Sambre*, at its conflux with the *Meuse*; it divides the Castle from the Town. At the mouth of the River here they shew you a little Isle, which was made (as they tell you) by the Stones and Earth carried thither by a great Flood of the *Sambre* in 1571, the time of which Flood, and the height to which the Waters arose, is to be seen in Inscriptions on their Walls. It is extraordinary well fortified to the Water-side, and was then well garison'd, tho' very ill paid: They bring hither continually vast quantities of Iron from the Mines in the Forest of *Arden*, where they are easily furnish'd with Wood to work 'em.

Namur.

Its Churches. They have about nine or ten handsom Churches; that of S. *John* was lately repair'd, and beautified with several fine Marble Altars; but their *Jesuites Church* exceeds even that of *Antwerp*, not only for the beauty of the Marble, but also for the excellency of the Workmanship and bulk of the Structure; the wreath'd Columns of red Marble of the *Dorick* Order, curiously vein'd, and near a yard and a half in diameter, with their beautiful Bases and Cornishes, are most excellent Pieces: They have some Copies of *van Dyke's* and *Reuben's*, done by very good hands, and an Original of the latter, representing our Saviour's Resurrection and Triumph over the Grave, over the high Altar. The outside of this noble Fabrick is 140 foot long, 120 high, and 100 broad.

Its Castle. The Castle, divided from the Town by the *Sambre*, is seated on the point of a steep Hill almost inaccessible, except from the River-side; the *Meuse* washes it on one side, as the *Sambre* does on the other; the Garison consisted at that time of four thousand Men. On the very top of it they have a deep Well, and two very good Springs, for a constant supply of fresh Water.

About an hours walk from the Town, upon the Bank of the River, the then Governour of the place, the Duke of *Barbacon*, had a little Country-house and Garden; three parts of the way you pass thro' pleasant verdant Meadows under the Precipice of high Rocks, where is an Eccho repeating whole Songs and Sentences with a plainness more than can be express'd or imagin'd.

The City of *Namur* is of a circular figure, about the bigness of *Exeter*; the Houses are but indifferently built, except in two or three of their Squares; the Country abounds in Marble and Iron, and it is an Episcopal See: Some of the Family of the *Courtney's* were formerly Counts and Marquesses of *Namur*.

Passing from hence towards *Charleroy*, we found the Country very pleasant and fertile, and the Air very agreeable. The Abbey of *Floresse*, with its fine Church, lies on the other side of the *Sambre* near *Namur*; and an hour from *Charleroy* is the Village of *Fosselines*, near which is the Seat of the Baron of *Bucquoy*, upon the River *Sambre*; it is a Structure of Brick, with Turrets, and enclos'd with a Moat, as most of the Castles hereabouts are, that are not built upon Rocks: The Gardens were but indifferently kept, yet I saw here an high and large Walk of *Charons* (as the *French* call it) much beyond those of *Enghien*; they are made with the young Plants of the *Carpinus* or *Betulus* planted in rows; the *Hornbeam-tree*, which growing high and thick, is very fit for a Quick-Hedge.

Fosselines.

Charleroy. An hour more brought us thro' a fertile and plain Country to *Charleroy*, rather a Garison or Citadel than a Town, having nothing in it but Barracks, and some Lodgings for the conveniency of the Soldiery. Its situation is on the descent of a Hill, and is fortified with a treble Wall, but dry Ditches, and the whole Fortification consists of six royal Bastions, as many Ravelins, and divers Outworks, all very regular, after the modern way. The *Basse Ville* or *lower Town* is divided from the other by the *Sambre*. It was lately but a poor Village, but being fortified by the *Spaniards*, was taken from them by the *French* in 1667, when its Fortifications were not finish'd, who were oblig'd to surrender again to the *Spaniards*, by vertue of the Treaty of *Nimmeghen*.

From hence we pass'd by a fair Village on our left hand call'd *Marchienpont*, upon the *Sambre*, and about three hours from *Mons*. In our way we saw a very pleasant Castle in a Wood, belonging formerly to the Marquess of *Grana*, Governour of the *Spanish Netherlands*.

Mons. *Mons*, or *Bergen* in *Hainault*, (to distinguish it from others of the same name) is seated on a rising ground in a level Country, which on one side is fenny, and may easily be laid under Water, on the other are two Hills within the reach of Cannon; on the East side it has a rising ground that cannot be set under Water, which is fortified by three or four Redoubts seated in the middle of large Trenches, which are not easily to be fill'd with Faggots, being two Pikes length deep, and defend all that part they can't lay under Water. For the rest, the *Its Strength.* Wall of the Town is very old and ordinary, the defect whereof is supplied partly by the Water, and partly by the many Outworks, which, as far as I could see from their stately Tower, are compos'd of twenty four Bastions, besides Redoubts. The Houses are generally handsomly built, and their Streets are very spacious; the Episcopal Palace is a goodly Fabrick, and their Piazza is a handsom spacious place; their noble Tower, a fine piece of Architecture, just faces the Townhouse, built on what they call the *Old Castle-hill*, an Eminency to be seen at five or six leagues distance, and which perhaps gave it the Name of *Mons*.

In the *Jesuites* Church (which is an ordinary Structure) you see a fine Marble Tomb, erected to *Francis van der Bark* late Bishop of *Cambray*: But their Canonesses Church *The Canonesses Church.* exceeds all the rest in this Town; to this Church belong no more than ten Canonesses, who have each a Revenue of two or three hundred pounds *per annum*, and their Abbess about three times as much; they are clad in decent Habits, with white Veils, and sing their Services as the Canons Regulars do in other Churches; they must be all of noble extraction, and are at liberty to resign their retir'd Life, and to embrace Matrimony; they enjoy also a sufficient share of Liberty whilst they lead this kind of religious Life, for after they have perform'd the usual Services, they change their Habits at pleasure, and after Dinner go abroad at pleasure: Some of this kind are also in use among the *Lutherans*, but have no such ample Revenues.

The little River *Trulla* that falls into the *Hayne* runs thro' part of this City, which formerly us'd to be noted for its Manufactury of Serges and other Woollen Stuffs; it is the Metropolis of the Province of *Hainault*, which is about twenty *Dutch* leagues in length, and about six in breadth, water'd by two Rivers, the *Scheld* and *Sambre*, well stor'd with Woods and Pasiures, and excellent arable Land.

In our passage from *Mons* to *Brussels* we observ'd many fair Villa's, and among the rest that of Seignieur *Brain le Comte*; and more towards the right, betwixt *Mont* and *Gemblours*, *Seneff*, famous for the Battel fought hereabouts betwixt the Prince of *Orange* and the Prince of *Conde*, both challenging the Victory. Betwixt *Mons* and *Valenciennes* we observ'd the Ruins of the Villages of *Cesson*, *Bossu*, *Tuling*, *Kyoring*, and several others.

In our first Tour from *Mons* to *Brussels*, in our way thro' *Ghent*, we passed thro' *Asch*, a wretched Village, tho' within three hours of *Brussels*: A little beyond it we travel'd in sight of *Affligbem Abbey*, a goodly Structure, *Affligbem Abbey.* with very fair Towers; they say they keep here a good Library, with some Manuscripts, but we had not time to view 'em.

Pursuing our Journey to *Alost*, two leagues thence and *Alost.* five from *Brussels*, we found it a pretty small Town, seated upon the *Dender*, which joyns its Current with the *Scheld* at *Dendermond*; its Jurisdiction extends to the very Walls of *Ghent*, comprehending a good number of small Villages; the Streets are very regular and neat: One of their Churches is very large and fair, and in one of their Altar-pieces you see an excellent Piece of *Paul Reuben's*, representing their Patron S. *Roche* with a *Madona* over it, which is always cover'd, and only shewn to Strangers.

About five leagues from *Alost* lies the large and re- *Ghent.* nowned City of *Ghent*, a place of vast extent, but better fill'd with Walks and Gardens than Inhabitants; it has a

Wall

Wall and Ditch, but avail them little, by reason of their vast circumference; the Castle encloses part of the Town.

In Churches. Among their Churches, that formerly dedicated to S. *John* (but since by *Charles* V. to S. *Bavo*) challenges the preference, the Abbot having a considerable tract of Ground, with many Villages, under his Jurisdiction, with some marks of Soveraignty: In this Church *Charles* V. was baptiz'd; several of their Bishops lie entomb'd here, and K. *Philip*, the Son of *Charles* V. celebrated in this Church the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, the second time that this Solemnity was ever perform'd at *Ghent*. In the Lower Church they shew'd us a Tomb of one entire Touchstone belonging to a certain Lady of Quality, we try'd it both with Gold and Silver, and found it as good as ever we saw of that kind. The Count *de Faing* has a very fine Chapel and Monument of Marble near the Quire of this Church. The next in rank is that of S. *Michael*, where they carefully preserve an excellent Piece of *van Dyke's*; after this comes the Church dedicated to S. *Peter* and S. *Paul*, belonging to a Convent of the *Franciscans* or the *Carmelites*, where they were then celebrating the *Exequiæ* for all the Christian Souls that lost their Lives in the Siege of *Buda*, with *Scandards*, *Armours*, *Banners*, and all sorts of Musick.

We took notice also of the *Dome-Tower* call'd *Belfort*, which formerly contain'd the largest Bell that ever was made, the Inhabitants had given it the Name of *Roland*, but being since cast again, is only of a moderate size.

The *Jesuites* College has nothing extraordinary. Over against the *Fridays-market*, as they call it, you see a great Cannon mounted upon a kind of wooden Scaffold, the diameter in the bore of which is a full yard, beyond the bulk of any Mortarpiece that ever was seen yet. In the great Marketplace stands the Effigies of the Emperour *Charles* V, and the Chamber in which he was born is a little round Chamber, no bigger than a Porter's Lodge, in what they call the *Prince's Hoff* or Palace: Over the Chimney you see his Nativity moulded in *Gypswork* and *Relievo*, with this Chronological Inscription underneath it:

MatthIas LVCe eXIgVo CVbILI natVs CaroLVs qVIntVs.

On the Bridge call'd *Dogebrack* stand two Statues in Brass representing a Son beheading his Father, of which they tell you a long old Story.

The Church belonging to the *Predicant Friers* is handsomly painted, and the Townhouse is a Fabrick of fine old Stone-work in Sculpture, adorn'd with Pilasters after the modern way. It is an Episcopal See: Its situation is very convenient, betwixt the *Scheld*, the *Lis*, and the *Lieve*, with fine spacious Houses, of which there are computed about 40000 great and small, its whole circumference being about ten *English* miles.

Their Government is manag'd by *Burghermasters* and *Schepens*, like most Cities of *Holland*; they were always accounted warlike, and had always a share in the several Revolutions that happen'd from time to time in these Countries. The *French* took it in six days, in 1673, but did restore it to *Spain* by the Treaty of *Nimmeghen*.

On the North-west side of *Ghent* you come back in a large *Treck-schuite* (bigger than those of *Holland*) upon what they call the *Nieuwe Vaert*, i. e. the *New Canal*, for *Bruges*, which lies seven hours thence; this is a very fine, convenient and spacious Canal, supplied with Water as occasion requires, by many Sluices erected at the side of the Banks, from the River *Lieve*, of which it is an artificial Branch.

Bruges is a pretty place, pleasantly situated, and partaking much of the neatness of the *Holland* Cities; it is almost of a circular figure, the Houses generally handsom and lofty, and the Streets spacious and clean, with several Canals in them, brought thither from the River *Rhey*, and leading to the *New Canal* of *Ghent*, to the *Sluice Canal*, and to *Ostend*; they told us that Ships of five hundred Tuns would ride in an artificial Cut that goes up to the City; we saw some of two hundred Tuns upon the Stocks. Upon one of these Canals stand their publick Warehouse, where the Boats bring the Goods to the very Door to be wound up, it having heretofore been a place of vast Trade, before the *Dutch* got their Traffick from 'em; tho' some say, that the first decay of their Trade was occasion'd by the rigour of the Magistrates, which made most of their best Weavers transport themselves into *England*.

The *Englishmen* are generally complimented here in the House where K. *Charles* II. resided during his Exile; and several Houses have been erected with the Money given by the Royal Family, for the Citizens to exercise themselves in with Bows and Guns: the Rooms are adorn'd with Pictures, and other Monuments, to the memory of the three Brothers.

The Churches of S. *Saviour* and S. *Donatus* are handsom Structures; in the Cathedral lies entomb'd the famous *Ludovicus Vives*. Our Ladies Church has a Tower leaning on one side by the neglect of the Builder, who threw himself down from it, and is interr'd just under it. Their *Jesuites* Church is as plain as that of *Namur*, and after the same Model: Here they shew you the exact Plan of our Saviour's Sepulchre, in a solid Fabrick built after the Model brought by a certain Lord (who lies interr'd here with his Lady) nam'd *Courhuys*, from *Jerusalem*, whither he undertook a Journey twice for that purpose. In our Ladies Church you see a noble Tomb of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* and his Dutchess, who had all the *Netherlands* under his Jurisdiction, (as appears by the Inscription) the last of these Dukes, whose Territories devolv'd by his death to the House of *Austria*; he was slain in the Battel of *Nancy*, and his Body translated thence by *Charles* V. his Grandson, and the Monument erected by *Philip* II.

Their Churches.

Our Saviours Sepulchre.

The Tomb of Charles Duke of Burgundy.

Bruges is suppos'd to have got its Name from the great number of Bridges that cross their Canals; it is an Episcopal See; its Fortifications are only of Earth-work; the Marketplace is handsom and large, and the Town and Clock-house handsom Fabricks: Here are two *English* Nunneries.

On the North-east side of *Bruges* is the Canal to *Sluys*, (of which before) which brought us in 4 hours to S. *Donat's* Fort, a little, regular, square Fortification, surrounded with a Ditch that rises and falls with the Tide.

S. Donat's Fort.

About half way betwixt *Bruges* and *Ostend*, both going and coming, we view'd the little Town of *Damm*, so call'd from the Dikes that lie round about it; 'tis strong and well garison'd, and serves as a frontier Town to *Bruges*: Some are of opinion that formerly the Sea wash'd its Walls, tho' now there are several Villages betwixt it and the Sea.

Damm.

From *Bruges* we went down the *New Great Canal*, (drawing fourteen foot Water) to *Ostend*, a small Town, but regularly built, not unlike *Leghorn* on the Coast of *Tuscany*; the Houses are low, and the Streets broad, and so order'd that at each end of the Street you can see quite thro' the Town. It is guarded by some Redoubts on the Sea-side, and towards *Bruges* with good Bulwarks and a Ditch; besides that, they can put all the Country round about it under Water. Their Harbour is none of the best, being often choak'd up with Mud, yet some Ships come thither for the sake of the *Bruges* Trade. It has undergone divers memorable Revolutions, and is chiefly remarkable for the three years Siege carried on by the Duke of *Alva*, when it was valiantly defended by our Countryman Sir *Francis Vere*, and at last deliver'd up to the Marquess *de Spinola*, the *Spanish* General, upon honourable terms. In my walks about it I took notice of the following Plants; the *Valerian. Marin. S. Aquat. Palust.* the *Alga Platuceros porcsa*, *Muscus marinus pennatus*, *Absinth. Marin. Abrotanum*, *Marin. Filicula & Cochlear. Marin. Fucus tenuifol. Musc. capillaceus*, some *Corallines*, the *Sea-holly* and *Eryngus Jacobæa Marin.* and the *Fucus Marinus*, *Sea-thongs*.

Ostend.

Not far from *Ostend* lies a little Town call'd *Westend*, and on the left hand, towards *Newport*, another not much better, call'd *Steegorge*. In the Marshes betwixt *Ostend* and *Newport* I found abundance of the *Rhamnus Clusii*, *Salicis fol. fructu flavescente* C. B.

Off of *Newport*, toward the Sea-side, you see a little Fort, defended only by an old Wall and a slender Ditch, with some indifferent Bulwarks, its chief strength consisting in its situation, because by the help of their Sluices they can set the whole Country about it under water. From hence the *Flanders* Packet-boat usually goes off for *England*. The *French* Territories extend almost within a Stone's throw of the Walls. The Harbour is both small and unfit for Ships of any bulk, and the Inhabitants very wretched, having no other livelihood than Fishing. It was formerly call'd *Sandhofft*, i. e. a *Sand-hill*, but since *Newport*, from the *new Town* built here. It is famous for the Victory obtain'd near this place by Prince *Maurice* over the *Spaniards*.

Newport.

From the Walls of *Newport* you may discover *Vuern*, a Town something bigger than *Newport*, and an hour and a half thence, in the possession of the *French*, who have demolish'd its Fortifications; it has still a handsom Townhouse and large Marketplace.

Vuern.

From *Newport* we embark'd on the Canal of *Ypres*, in one of their large *Treck-schuites*, and about half-way came to *Dixmude*, a ruin'd place belonging to the *Spaniards*, having only some remnants of an irregular Fortification;

Dixmude.

The House where King Charles II. resided in his Exile.

the Grounds hereabouts abound in Pasturage, and would make the Farmers as rich as their Soils, if the neighbourhood of the *French* did not keep them in constant fear, who just beyond it are possess'd of the Fort *Knock* and two or three other Redoubts, which give them a sure Inlet into this part of the Country at pleasure.

Ypres. Passing a deep Sluice and a high Fall, we came to *Ypres*, an ancient City, surrounded only with an old Wall, but by the *French* (who had then been in possession of it about three years) strengthned with new and regular Outworks. The circumjacent Country being low, can be laid under water.

In their Church dedicated to S. *Martin* are several Monuments of their Bishops to be seen, and among the rest that of *Antoninus Himininus*, the Founder of the *Himinian* College at *Douay*, as you see by the Inscription. Their Townhouse is a stately Structure, with a spacious Front: The *Jesuites* Church has nothing remarkable, except the Altar-piece, an Original Painting of *Cyrus Terrus*, a celebrated Artist, representing our Saviour's Resurrection. I observ'd in their College Cloyster the Prints and Effigies of all the Jesuites martyr'd (as they stile it) in *England*. The Marketplace is large, and the Houses well built, tho' for the most part of Wood, and the great Church is a lofty and goodly Fabrick.

This City got its Name from the River *Ypre* that runs thro' it, and was noted formerly for its Manufactury of Serges and other woollen Stuffs; they have still a good Clothiers-Hall. The *French* took it in 1678.

Rousselaer. In my second passage this way I took notice, betwixt *Bruges* and *Lisle*, of the Town of *Rousselaer*, a little open place belonging to the *French*, three or four leagues from *Bruges*; it formerly bore the Title of a Lordship, the Barons being High Chamberlains to the Dukes of *Brabant*; it is now govern'd by a *Burghermaster* and six *Schepen*.

Menin. Three leagues from hence is *Menin*, whither we travel'd thro' a miserable way, the Roads being all plank'd across with the trunks of Trees, as they make their Bridges over the Marshes in *Hungary*; it is in it self a poor wretched place, considerable only for its Fortifications, which are not inferiour to any the *French* have in the *Netherlands*, it being the Bulwark of *Lisle*, and not inferiour in strength to *Lisle* it self: They were then finishing a great Work on that side, and had demolish'd a good Church for that purpose. This Fort was surrounded with treble Bastions, and as many Ramparts, but the Ditch was dry on one side, tho' well water'd on the other towards *Lisle*; its situation is upon the River *Lys*.

Courtryck. In my last Journey to *Lisle* I took a Tour to *Courtryck*, a City once well fortified, but since demolish'd by the *French*, being for the rest a well-built Town: The great Church is a goodly old Fabrick after the *Gothick* manner, beautified with some good Pieces of Painting; their *King's Church* is also a handsom Pile, besides which they have a Convent of a certain Order of Women call'd *beguines*, endow'd with good Revenues: It is seated upon the River *Lys*, and deduces its Origin from the times of *Julius Cæsar*, the Inhabitants being willing to be reckon'd among his *Centrons* and *Nervians*. The *French* took it in 1667, and remain ever since Masters of it.

Aldersberg. Betwixt *Courtryck* and *Ghent* you come to a small place call'd *Aldersberg*, i. e. *the Old Mount*, being reckon'd the most ancient Town in *Flanders*. By the way we saw several Acres of Ground cover'd with Wood as regularly planted as our Orchards. About three miles on this side *Ghent*, towards *Courtryck*, there stands a new fair Chapel, near the High-road, occasion'd by the stealing of some of the Church-plate of *Ghent*, with the consecrated Host in the Silver Pix, and thrown in a Ditch here by the Felons as they were pursued.

A Cawsey of 20 English miles. Between *Ypres* and *Lisle* (call'd *Ryssel* by the *Flemmings*) is a Cawsey for near twenty *English* miles, reaching quite to *Lisle*, the work of the *French*, who have carried it all along thro' the marshy grounds, without which there would be no passage this way. About half-way is a small Town call'd *Wakerton* or *Walseren*, once a Lordship with several Villages under its jurisdiction, and famous for its Manufactury of Cloth: Here resides still an Abbot with about ten *Austin* Friers; they had just then wainscoted their Quire with good Oak, and adorn'd the Stalls with curious Carving, but their Church was ordinary.

Lisle. *Lisle* (call'd *Insula* in Latin) or *l'Isle*, from its situation perhaps in the midst of the Marshes, is the only place that may be said to have been a Gainer by its being conquer'd by the *French*; for, not to mention the strong Castle and the Fort, with the adjoyning Citadel, flank'd with five great royal Bastions (the Ditches being fill'd by the River *Dele*) cover'd by several Halfmoons, it is considerably encreas'd since the Conquest both in its Buildings and Trade, the People here looking with a different face to what they do even in the center of *France*. They have here a very good Arsenal, the Marketplace is spacious, the Townhouse a little (but handsom) Fabrick, with a goodly Church near it; their old Buildings are all of Wood, but the new ones, of which they have several entire Streets, of Brick and Freestone; their chief Trade consists in Linen Manufactury, the Country round about producing a vast quantity of Flax. Its situation is upon the River *Dele*, which joyns its Waters with those of the *Lys* or *Ley*; it is the Metropolis of what was anciently known by the Name of *Flandria Gallica*, and had formerly a Jurisdiction of great extent, the Chamber of Accounts of *Flanders* being kept here, establish'd by *Philip the Hardy*.

Their most considerable Church is that of St. *Peter*, founded by *Badouin* the famous Count of *Flanders*, who was born here. Here formerly was to be seen the Ruins of an ancient Castle call'd *le Bucq*, (but since quite lost) belonging to the Lords Wardens or Rangers of the Forests of the Kings of *France*, whence they had the name of *Foresters*, but were afterwards made hereditary Counts of *Flanders*.

Tournay. From hence we pass'd thro' a fruitful Country to *Tournay*, a City not near so large nor so well built as *Lisle*, however it has a double Wall with a dry Ditch about it. The Church of our Lady is a goodly Structure, and the Quire is adorn'd with excellent Marble-work; they boast much of their Antiquity, the best mark whereof is one of their ancient Structures much resembling a Piece of the old *Roman* Architecture.

This City is seated upon the River *Scheld*, which runs thro' it; it has no less than seventeen Parish-Churches, and the Cathedral is a noble Pile, adorn'd with five Towers placed like a *Burgundian* Cross; the Castle is ancient and strong, but rendred much stronger by the *French* of late; formerly it was noted for *Woollen Manufactury*, but now they are contented with a little dealing in Linen. The *English* made themselves Masters of it under King *Henry* VIII, but it was re-deliver'd to the *French* by the Intrigues of Cardinal *Wolsey*; the King of *France* took it in the Year 1667, who retains it to this day, and has taken care to fortifie it *à la moderne*, with regular Bulwarks and Bastions. I could not sufficiently admire the curiosity of the Underminings of the Citadel, the Works or Vaults under-ground (setting aside the depth and darkness) being so well contriv'd, that they might rather pass for Terras-walks than Mines; the greatest Curiosity is, that in the very center of the Citadel you see a Well the surface of whose Water is from the mouth about fifty foot deep, and just above the brink of the Water are certain Balconies, that conduct you to these several subterraneous places.

The Mine-works of the Citadel.

In our way from *Tournay* towards *Valenciennes*, we had a view of the two celebrated Abbeys of S. *Amand* and *de Vicoigne*. The first of these two is a stately Structure, both within and without, as lofty as our *Westminster*, with a double row of Galleries or Corridors about it; both sides are excellently well wrought in Stone-work and Mouldings; it is seated upon the River *Scarpe*, which not far from thence joyns its Current with the *Scheld*; the Abbot has both a temporal and spiritual Jurisdiction over the Dependencies belonging to the Abbey, which appears like a little Village. The *French* are now Masters of it. In the publick Records it is always stiled *Abbatia S. Amandi Elnocensis*, from the Saint that resided at this place call'd *Elno* by the old Latin Authors. It is seated in a most fertile Country, about four leagues from *Tournay*, a little above half-way from thence to *Valenciennes*; and the Foundation (made by *Dagobert* V. King of *France*) is for thirty Canonists and twenty Jesuites. The most delightful Forest, near it, call'd *The Forest of S. Amand*, was by the *French* King's Orders quite cut down in the Year 1676.

S. Amand.

The Abbey de Vicoigne. The Abbey *de Vicoigne* lies within a league of *Valenciennes*; this Structure is not so large nor so stately on the outside as the former, but exceeds it within both in Riches and curious Workmanship, all the sides of the Nave of the Church being cover'd with most exquisite *Relievo*, representing the History of the Passion of our Saviour; the Quire and Altar are very magnificent and noble, being adorn'd with two or three Pieces of Painting; the Nativity and Passion of our Saviour, with the Ascension of the Virgin, are excellent Pieces of *Paul Reuben*. They have also a good Library. *Sanguin* a Hermit was its Founder, who instituted twenty white Friers-hoe, that wear white Hats and white Serge Vestments.

Valenciennes. *Valenciennes* is a City seated on the ascent of an Hill, in an oblong form, representing it self on the North-west

side

side, towards *Tournay* Cawsey, like the South-west Prospect of *Oxford*, with divers *Towers* and *Turrets*. This Road or Cawsey begins at *Ypres*, and from thence by *Lisle* and *Tournay* reaches to *Valenciennes*, a tract of fifty miles, the work of the present *French* King, not inferiour to some of the *Roman* Roads, except that the Pavements are scarce so durable. The Town has a double Wall and Ditch, but dry; the *Scheld* passes thro the middle of it. The Buildings are for the most part of Wood; the Marketplace is spacious, and the Townhouse a large, oblong and ancient Structure; the Citadel is built upon a Hill at a little distance from the City, it was then not quite finish'd, but is not likely to come near either of those of *Tournay* or *Lisle*.

Their Great Church, dedicated to our Lady, is an ancient goodly Structure; that of S. *John* is a modern Fabrick; on S. *Peter's* they have a good Mathematical Dyal: Here are three Convents of *Mendicant* Friers; those of S. *Francis* have in their Chapel very noble Tombs of the Counts of *Hainault*, that were Lords of *Valenciennes*; the *Jacobins* have in theirs a noble Tomb belonging to *John* Nephew of the famous *Badouin*, Count of *Flanders*, and Emperour of *Constantinople*, who built a Palace here, the ordinary Residence of the ancient Counts of *Hainault*. Their *Clothworkers-Hall* shews them to have formerly had a good *Woollen Manufactury* here, and once it was the Staple for *French* Wines, but now they are forc'd to be contented with a reasonable share of Silks and Linen Trade. It had anciently a Jurisdiction of a great extent, the Towns of *Bouchin*, *Conde* and *Quesnay*, with a hundred Villages, being then its Dependencies: It was taken by the *French* in 1667, who have since fortified it with strong Works. The Emperour *Henry* VIII. was born here, and the Princess *Mary*, Daughter of *Charles* the last Duke of *Burgundy*. *Froissart* the Historian, and *Molinetus* the Poet, were both Natives of *Valenciennes*.

Hapre. From *Valenciennes* towards *Cambray* you travel thro' a fertile Plain; we stay'd a little in a Village call'd *Hapre*, where is a handsom Priory, and the Church divided into two parts, one for the Service of the Secular Parish Priest, the other for the seven Monks belonging to the Convent. It is seated upon the River *Sell*, as they call it, being a Branch of the *Scheld*. As you come near to *Cambray*, you pass over divers Bridges laid over Cataracts or deep Chanels of Sand which have no Water, except after the falling of great Rains, when they swell on a sudden like great Rivers; such Rain-Rivers are frequently met with in *Italy*.

Cambray. *Cambray* stands in a level ground, having a strong Citadel on the left as we enter'd; it is not so large as *Valenciennes*, but well fortified; the great Marketplace and Townhouse are both very large and noble; the Great Church of our Lady is a handsom Structure without, and beautified within with many Statues and Tombs of Saints, among which those of S. *Sebastian* and S. *Michael* are the chiefest, being of curious Marble. The Chapter consists of forty eight Canons and ninety five other Ecclesiasticks. Among the Statues is that of the Count of *Speigelberg*, slain at the Battel of S. *Quintin*, by our *English*, in Queen *Mary's* Reign. The Quire and the Nave of the Church are separated by Rails of massy Brass well wrought. Here they preserve a Clock which, upon striking, represents the whole History of the Passion of our Saviour, and is highly admir'd upon that account, tho' it has nothing extraordinary in it.

I remember that in my Travels in this Country I once met with a *Frenchman*, who by fifteen years Labour had produc'd an artificial Head, which by the motion of certain Wirework, Springs and Wheels, would utter whole Dialogues distinctly with an human Voice, nay, even laugh, and express some other Affections, without any delusion; it was at last stoln from him.

Cambray is seated upon the *Scheld*, that runs thro' it; it is an ancient Archbishoprick, and has several Suffragans; in 1677 the *French* took both the Town and Citadel, the latter of which is a good Fortification of five large Bastions, strengthned with Halfmoons and other Outworks, the Ditches being cut out of a Rock, and by its situation upon a rising ground commands the Town, which on the side of *Peronne* is defended by good Works, on the East side by the Castle, and to the West by the Water, which by drowning the Country renders it inaccessible thereabouts. It is noted for making of the finest Linen.

In Citadel.

But, before we enter *France*, we must give you a short description of some few other Towns of the *Spanish Netherlands* we visited in our return; first, the little Town of *Hesdin*, in the Province of *Artois*, upon the Borders of *Picardy*. It is but small, but fortified with a double Wall and Ditch, besides which they can put the Country under water: The *French* took it in 1639, and it was granted them in 1659 by the *Pyrenean Treaty*. From hence to S. *Omer* you travel for ten leagues thro' a fruitful and pleasant Country.

Hesdin.

S. *Omer* is seated on the River *Aa* and a great Morass; being besides this defended by a Citadel and several Bastions, Halfmoons and good Ditches; some Antiquaries are of opinion that the Sea came up to it in former Ages, and that it was the *Portus Iccius* of *Cæsar*. Near it is a little Lake, which, they tell you, contains floating Islands.

S. Omer.

It has divers good Churches, as that of S. *Bertin*, a very regular and handsom Fabrick, endow'd with good Revenues, belonging to the *Benedictins*; this Church has two noble Pillars of Marble twenty foot high, which support the Organ-loft. The *English* have a Seminary of *Jesuites* here, and the *Walcons* of the same Order another, both large and conveniently seated. It was taken by the Duke of *Orleans*, the *French* King's Brother, in 1677, and surrender'd to that Crown by vertue of the Treaty of *Nimmeghen* in 1678. The Air of this place is none of the most wholesom, by reason of the adjacent Morasses.

Its Churches and Convents.

From S. *Omer* we pass'd on a fair Canal in seven hours to *Winoxberghen*, a neat Town, seated upon the River *Colm*: By the way we took notice of another *Jesuites* College call'd *Warten*, belonging also to the *English*, seated on the top of a Hill near the Canal; their institution is for the education of *Novitiates*. The Town it self has four or five good Churches, and a handsom Piazza or Marketplace; the best Woollen Cloths and Stuffs of all *Flanders* were formerly made here, and it has still some dealing in them. It was taken by the *French* in 1658, and confirm'd to them by the *Pyrenean* Treaty.

Winoxberghen

From hence we were convey'd by another Canal in one of their *Treck-schuyts* to *Dunkirk*. About half-way betwixt these two places are two Royal Forts, the first call'd *Le Fort de France*, the second *Fort Louis*, erected to cover the Country betwixt *Winoxberghen* and *Dunkirk*, being an extent only of a league and a half.

Dunkirk is seated at the head of the before-mention'd Canal, and fortified to the Land-side with double Walls and Works, and Bastions of a great height, and towards the Sea-side with treble Works; it is of the bigness of *Oxford*, with large Streets and handsom Houses; its situation is on the North side of the Canal, environ'd by the Sea in form of a Halfmoon, the Breach of which us'd to fill the Works with Sand, but this is resisted now by a long Bank of Timberwork, Faggots and Fascines, that run for half a mile into the Sea, defended at the extremity by two small Forts that command the entrance into the Harbour. Tho' the whole Town be an entire and perfect Fortification, yet have they for its greater security erected a strong Citadel.

Dunkirk.

The Church is a plain old Structure, having nothing extraordinary but a good Piece of Painting of the Day of Judgment. After it was taken by the Marshal *de Turenne*, with the assistance of the *English*, it was deliver'd up to them by Contract, together with the Fort *Mardyke*, in 1662, but in 1666. sold to the *French* for the Sum of Six millions.

From *Dunkirk* we travel'd along the sandy Sea-coast towards *Graveling*, and in our way pass'd by the before-mention'd Fort of *Mardyke*, formerly a strong place, and valiantly assaulted and taken by our *English*, but now quite demolish'd, there scarce appearing any foot-steps of its Ruins.

Graveling is seated upon the River *Aa*, which a little below it exonerates it self into the Sea; this place, together with *Dunkirk* and *Ostend*, were the three Cautionary Towns offer'd to our Queen *Elizabeth*, in lieu of which she accepted afterwards *Brill*, *Flushing*, and the Fort of *Rammekins*. It is but a small Town, but its Fortifications of a considerable compass, consisting of six good Bastions, defended with Ravelins and other Outworks; besides that, by its low situation in a watery Plain it is of very difficult access, for we pass'd at least five or six Drawbridges before we entred the body of the Town, it having divers other Forts to hinder the approach of an Enemy; just without the Town the Fort *Philip* defends the Harbour, and at a further distance are the Forts of *Oye* and *l'Ecluse*. Near this place the *Spaniards* obtain'd a signal Victory over the *French* in 1558, who in an hundred years after, *viz.* in 1658, with the assistance of the *English*, took both this place and *Dunkirk*, and was confirm'd to them by the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

Graveling.

The *Spanish Netherlands* lie for the most part more remoter from the Sea than the *United Provinces*, but have nevertheless a fertile and pleasant Soil: They have got their

The Country.

their Name from their being now under the Jurisdiction of *Spain*; for tho' in their late Civil Wars even seven of the ten remaining were engag'd in the common Revolt, yet after the Union of *Utrecht* they return'd to their former Allegiance.

Its Government. This Country is for the most part govern'd by a *Grandee* of *Spain*, with the Title of the *Governour of the Spanish Netherlands*, who resides always at *Brussels*, and like a hungry Leach, sucking the Blood of the People, return loaden with the Spoils of their Subjects into *Spain*.

Their Cities retain still their former model of Government, which is administred for the most part by *Burghermasters* and *Schepens*, as in the Cities of *Holland*, but in garison'd Towns the Governour has the chief command. The City and Bishoprick of *Liege* has no dependency either on the *Spaniards* or *French* in the *Netherlands*, being a Principality of the Empire, and their Appeals in Temporals lie to the Chamber of *Spires*.

The People. The Inhabitants of these Provinces are more polite than the Natives of *Holland*, perhaps from their constant conversation with the *French*, whose Language is almost universal here, tho' mix'd with some *Flemmish*, which produces the *Waloon* Dialect. They neither live so parsimoniously, nor work so hard as the *Hollanders*; their former flourishing Trade is destroy'd by the Severity of the Government and the Encroachments of the *Dutch*, Linen being now their best Commodity, having a most convenient Soil for the growth of Flax and whitening of Linen. They retain here the *Roman Catholick* Religion, which being the same profess'd in *Spain*, makes them the better dispense with their Government. The Inhabitants were a warlike People in the time of the *Romans*, and made great opposition to *Cæsar*; their Nobility may boast now-adays more of their ancient Families than Riches. The Rivers *Meuse*, *Moselle*, *Sambre*, *Rhine* and *Scheld* water these Provinces, tho' at the same time it is evident that in the *Roman* under *Belgia* was comprehended (besides the before-mention'd Provinces) the Electorates of *Treves*, *Mayence* and *Cologne*, the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Campaign*, the Bishopricks of *Reims*, *Laon* and *Beavois*, and the City of *Aix la Chapelle*.

The greatest part of the *Spanish Netherlands* lying much more remote from the Sea-side than the *United Provinces*, enjoy a much better Air, and the Country abounds in Corn, a thing much wanted in *Holland*. They have no Mines, except some Iron, Allum and Salt-petre about *Liege*.

The eldest Son here challenges the Name of both his Parents, and has some precedency before the younger Children, but not the sole Inheritance, as our elder Brothers in *England*.

CHAP. III.

A Description of France.

THE first place we came to in *France*, properly so call'd, (without its Conquests) was *Peronne*, formerly a Frontier Town towards *Cambray*, and well fortified after the old way, being the first on that side in *Picardy*: Here the Custom-house Officers search'd us as strictly as if we had first set foot into the *French Territories*, tho' we came out of the *French Conquests*, and had paid Duties there before to the same King.

Peronne. It is seated upon a Level on the River *Somme*, not unlike our *Salisbury*, but in bigness approaching next to *Exeter*, in that part of *Picardy* call'd the *Vermandois* or *Sans-terre*; the first being the situation of the ancient *Veromandue*; S. *Quintins*, which is not far off, being suppos'd to have been the *Augusta Veromanduorum* of *Cæsar*.

Roy. From *Peronne* passing thro' the little Village of *Marsilpe*, we came to *Roy*, formerly a Town of note, (as its Ruins sufficiently testifie) seated on the River *Moreul* in the *Sans-terre*; then taking our way thro' the Village of *Gouncy*, sirnam'd *Sur le Arondeberg*, in the Isle of *France*, we came to *Pont*, sirnam'd S. *Maixence*, upon the River *Oyse*, having an old strong Wall, and a good Bridge that brings you to it cross the River.

Pont.

Senlis. From hence travelling three leagues further, we came to *Senlis*, a Bishop's See, Suffragan to that of *Reims*; some would have it the *Augustomagus* of *Ptolomy*. The Great Church dedicated to the Holy Virgin is suppos'd to have been built by the *English*.

Louvre. The next Town betwixt this and *Paris* is the *Louvre*, seated in the Dukedom of *Valois*, once the Family of the present King, before it was swallow'd up in the House of *Bourbon*. *Picardy* has generally a pleasant and fertile Soil.

Paris. Thence we came to *Paris*, the Metropolis of *France*, which some have compar'd with *London* for its Extent, Buildings, and number of Inhabitants.

Its extent. As for its Circumference, the same is easily discover'd from off the Towers of their *Nostre Dame* or *Our Lady's* Church, to be much less than ours, tho' it lies in a more circular figure.

Buildings. The Houses, it must be confess'd, look very handsom on the outside, being built with a fair white Free-stone, (found thereabouts) with handsom Sash-windows.

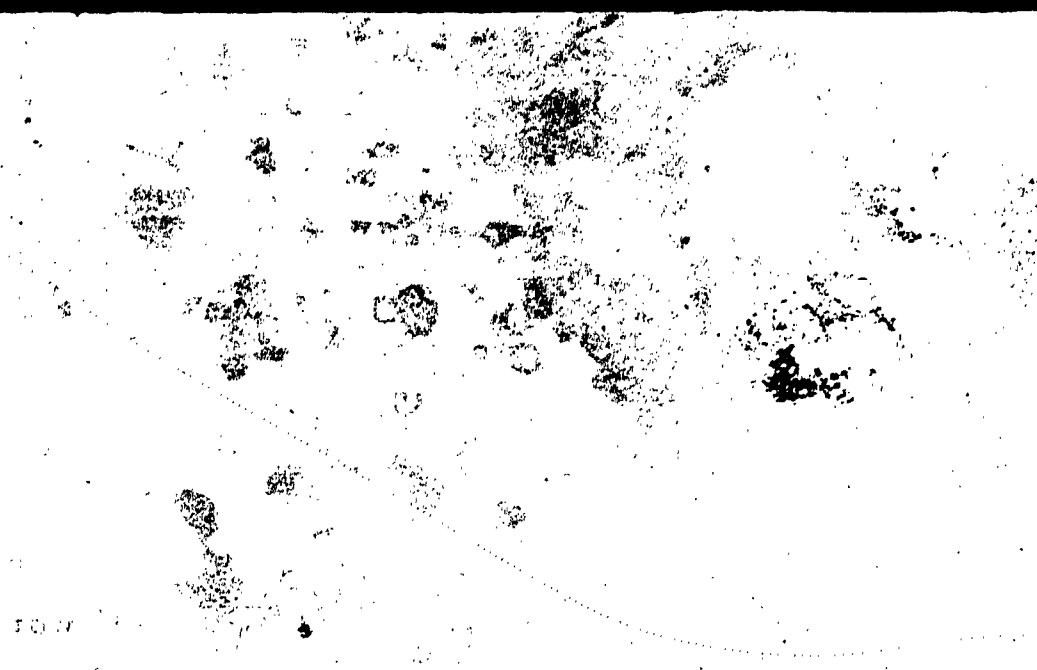
Inhabitants. The number of its Inhabitants is, in my Opinion, best guess'd at, without any further scrutiny, by the People you meet with in the Streets, especially on the *Pont neuf*, the greatest Passage in *Paris*, and that a very short one, notwithstanding which you shall very rarely see near so many People there as you meet continually walking all-along from *Tower-hill* to *Westminster-Abbey*: Add to this, that their by-Streets and Alleys are not near so throng'd with People as ours are in *London*; and if Trade is the main thing that renders Cities populous, (as we see in those of *Holland*) it is evident that our Metropolis challenges the preference upon that account. What some would alledge in reference to the number of Coaches in *Paris* is of no great consequence, tho' I am apt to believe we may carry it even upon that account.

Situation. This so much celebrated City is seated in a most delightful Plain; their Houses are generally six or seven stories high: By common computation *Paris* has betwixt thirty and forty thousand Houses, and about seven hundred thousand Souls.

Streets. The Streets are much handsomer and less dirty than they were formerly, (which gave it the Name of *Lutetia*) and their Squares are exceeding noble; they are enlightned in the night-time by Lanthorns hung on Lines. The whole bulk of this spacious City is divided into three parts; the first is call'd *la Ville*, containing the four Suburbs of S. *Antoin*, *Du Temple*, S. *Martin* and S. *Denis*, being encompass'd with the *Sein* on one side, and Walls on the other; the second is call'd *la Cite*, seated betwixt the first and the third, upon what is properly call'd the *Isle*, surrounded by the branches of the before-mention'd River, and joyn'd to the rest by Bridges, being the most ancient part of the Town; the third part is call'd the *University*, seated on a rising ground, containing the Colleges erected for the promoting of Learning, and the *Fauxbourgs* or Suburbs of S. *Germain*, S. *Michael*, S. *Jaquet*, S. *Marcell*, and S. *Victoire*. Its several Quarters.

The Suburb of S. *Germain* has the best Palaces and Colleges. For the rest; In all the three Quarters are reckon'd 40 Parish-Churches, 42 Abbeys and Convents, 40 Nunneries, 24 Hospitals, 48 Colleges, besides 17 Chapels, so that Charity and Religion seems to take up a considerable part of this great City. The *Sein* passes thro' the middle of it, and the Water is very sweet and fresh here, but has no Tide, like our *Thames* about *London*. So much of it in general; we will now proceed to give you the particulars.

The Louvre. The *Louvre*, were it finish'd according to the first design, would questionless exceed all Structures in the World, whereas now only two sides are compleated, *viz.* that towards the *Sein* and *Thuilerys*, the Hotels of *Crequi*, *Longueville* and *Montausier* being since built within the compass of this Structure, which for this and some other reasons (amongst which the siding of this City with the League in this King's minority is none of the least) is suppos'd will never be finish'd, it being certain that the third part of the Charges imploy'd in building of *Versailles* would have made this as compleat and magnificent a Structure as ever the World beheld: Some say *Philip* the *August* was the first Founder of it, above five hundred years



A New Chart of the CHANNEL Between ENGLAND and FRA

Shewing the Sands and Depth of water wit
of the Tydes, and Setting of the Current, as the
ved in the Year 1701. by Capt EDM: HA
MAJ,TIES Command.

Sold by Iex: Seller and Cha: Price at the Herm

Note The Variation was Observed in all parts of the Channell to be about seven Degrees and half, from the North, Westerly or two thirds of a point, in the Year 1701. and so much must be allowed in all Courses on this Chart.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
English and French Leagues

IRELAND.
WALES.
ENGLAN
CHANNEL
ST GEORGES CHANNEL
BRISTOL CHANNEL
CARDIGAN BAY
CARMARTEN.
MONMOUTH.
GLAMORGAN.
GLOCESTER.
SOMERSET.
DEVON.
CORNWALL
DORSET.
SOUTHAMPTON.
I. WIGHT
Aberistwith
Cardigan Bay
Weavy R.
Aberarth
Pennobadelth Pt
Penkemans P.
Cardigan
Kilgarren
Newport
Fishgard
St Davids Headt
Bishop and his Clarks
St Nicolas
Golworp Road
Haverford West
St Brids Bay
Scalin I.
Benton
Pigton
Laughern
Tissels
Penby
Pembrock
Caldy
Milford Haven
Stock holm
Block haus
Gresholm
Barrel
Matts
Small
Mascus
Flemston
Crow
St Govans P.
Worme head
Kelwich Sand
Lundy I.
Mort Pt
Mort B.
Bag P.
Ilfracomb
Combmartin
Lynton
Purlock
Dunster
Minhead
Hurstspill
Watchet
Hartland P.
Hartland
Barnstaple
Beddeford
Duck pool
Bude R.
Widemouth
Roundstock
Cleve
Botrick Cast.
King Arthurs Castle
Tintagell
Hendra
Port Isack
Warebridge
Boddow
Black R.
Gull R.
Cow and Calf
Pencarne
Lowan Bay
Crantock
Gull R.
Rewan
Sabulo
The man and his Man
St Agnis
Lowan
Godrevi I.
St Ives Bay
Clupe P.
St Ivens
Tehidy
Phillack
St Erth
Pendean
C. Cornwal
Long Ships
Seven Stones
The Land's End
St Levan
Scilly Islands
Tresco
Truro
Philly
Perran
Cull R.
Cerns
P. Pontin
Dodman Pt
Greg
Nare Pt
Falmouth
Penryn
Mevagissey
St Anthony
Pendennis Pt
Manacle
Eddystone Lighthouse
Tame R.
Saltash
Millbrook
Eash
R. Dock
Plimouth
Lanwater
Plimstock
Dartmouth
Hardness
Bigberry
Salcom
Start gate
Slapton
Start Bay
Cross Chilton
Start Pt
Bere I.
Malbery
Bolt Tail
Saltcomb
Exon
Exmanster
Powderham
Sidmouth
Salcom
Axmouth
Cullinton
Lyme
Chidiock
Bridport
Bexington
Burton
Abbotsbury
Melcom
Dorchester
Wallish
Warham
Poole
Barmouth
Christchurch
Stone Beach
Horst Castle
Limington
Leape
Southampton
Calshot Castle
Portsmouth
Chichester
Hyling
Bosham
Chidfield
Cosford
Lee
Newtown
Yarmouth
St Hellens
Road
Looe
Bembridge
Sandown Cast. & Bay
Dunnoze
Shingles
Needles
Krishwatergate
Hale Bay
Peverall Pt
Swanage
Heath
Abermawr
Kersage
Ogmore C.
St Donets
Aberthawes
Benarth
Cardiff
Newport Haven
Goldcliff Pt
Chepstow
Severn River
K. Road
Bristoll
Gravead
Forshot R.
Clendon
Woodspring
Weston
A R.
Brent marsh
Flatholm
Stepholms
Nash Pt
Kidwelly
Kidwelly Pt
Llanthye
Towy R.
Carmarthen
Renrisk
Tenby
Laughern
Tissels
Penby
Pembrock
Caldy
Milford Haven

A New Chart of the CHANNELL Between ENGLAND and FRANCE,

Shewing the Sands and Depth of water with the flowing of the Tydes, and Setting of the Current, as they were Observed in the Year 1701. by Cap.t EDM: HALLEY by his MAJ.TIES Command.

Sold by Ier: Seller and Cha: Price at the Hermitage Staires.

All Masters of Shipps and others who shall have opportunity to observe the Depths, with Certainty in respect of the place, are desired to Communicate them to the Publisher here of.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
English and French Leagues

ENGLAND.

GLOCESTER.

Bristoll

SOUTHAMPTON.

DORSET.

SUSSEX.

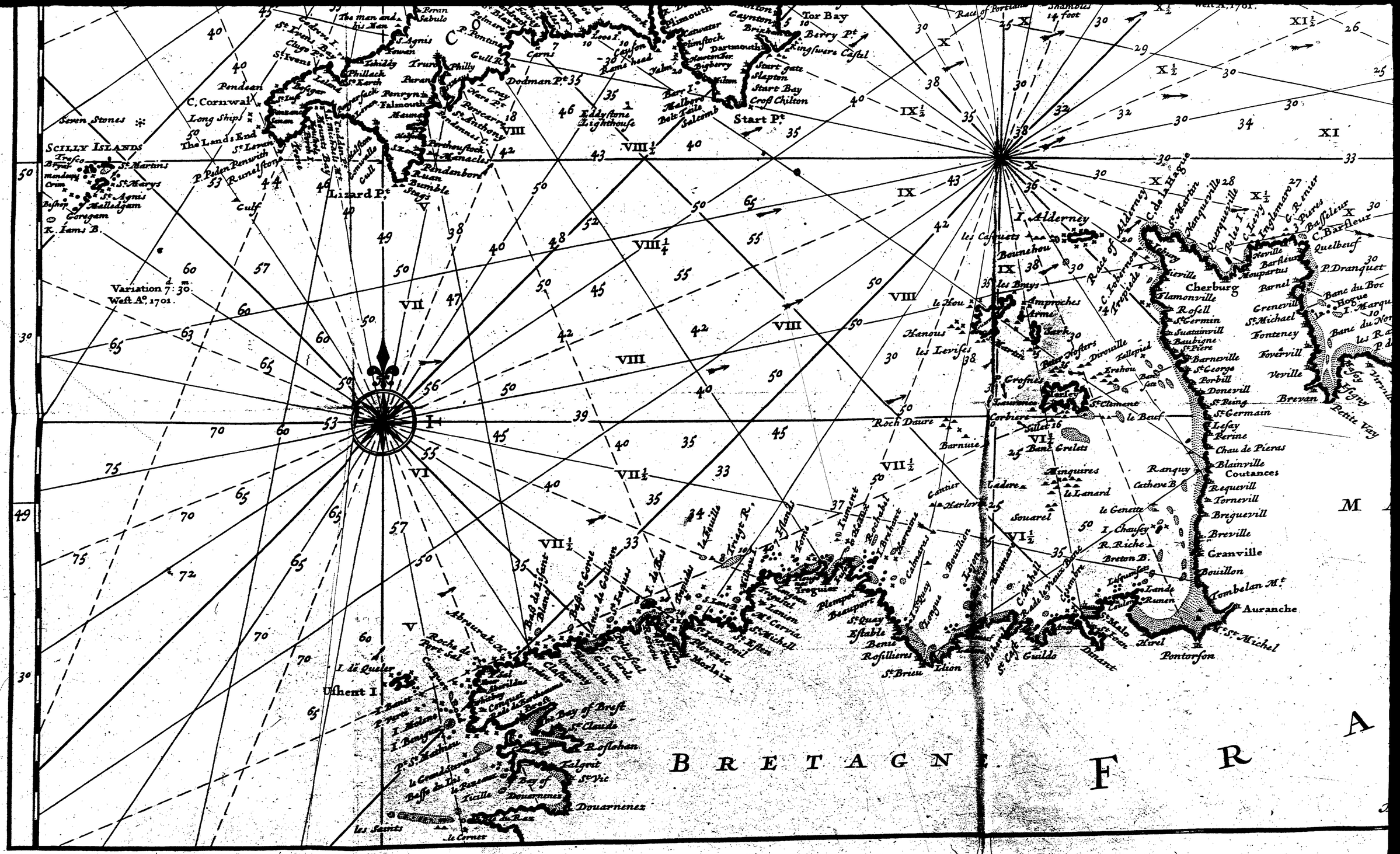
SUFFOLK.

ESSEX

KENT.

LONDON

Orford Ness
Orford haven
Whiting
Gabard
Ipswich
Bandsey
Shipwash
Harwich
Sled way
Naze P.t
west Rock
Gunfleet
Marsey I.
Gunfleet
The Kings Channel
Barrows Deepe
Kentish Knock
Malden
Burnham
Walfleet
Shubery
Lee
Black Deepe
The Long Sand
Canvey I.
Shell H.
Tilbury F.
Thames R.
Deptford
Greenwich
Woolwich
Long Reach
Gravesend
St. Maries
Medway R.
Noure
Ship P.t I.
Quinboro
Milton
Feversham
Margat Sand
N.th Foreland
Wolpack
Spell
Margate
Ramsgate
Rocelvers
Sandwich
Sandown C.
Deale
Deal C.
Walmer C.
St. Margaretts
Dover
Fulk.ston
Hith
S.th Foreland
The Downs
Goodwin Sands
Wylop Gut
Rumney
Marshland Gut
Winchelsea
Rye
Hastings
Warsham
Pemsey
7 Cliffs
Cookmere
Light house
Dungenes
Guiman
Riprapps
Calais
Calis Cliffs
Inghen
Chatelet
St. Lian
Ambleteuse
Bologne
St. Leonard
Chamieres
Estaples
Cuque
Barque
Houeban
St. Quintin
Rue
St. Firmin
le Crotoy
Somme R.
St. Valrey
Bassurelle
Bouvy de Ouest
Treporte
Here the two Tides meet
le Vogoye
Bassurt Bass
Croylers
le Quemer
Southampton
Calshot Castle
Leape
Tichfield
Bishops Waltham
Lake
Portsmouth
Southsea Castle
Limington
Hurst Castle
Stone Beach
Christchurch
Barmouth
Poole
Wareham
St. Albans
Lenthworth
Lulworth
Ringston
Briston
Melcom
Weymouth
Portland Rode
Portland
Shambles
14 foot
Sandwich
Staple
Langton
Peverell P.t
St. Kathrins P.t
Variation 8: 0.
West A.o 1701.
Shingles
Needles
Freshwater gatt
Chale Bay
New port
Vermouth
S. Hellens
St. Hellins
Road
I. Wight
Sandown Cast. & Bay
Dunnoze
Bembridg Ledg
Love
Middle
Owers
Mixon
Bagnor Rocks
East Barrow head
Beachy Head
15 foot
Bexington
Strang Trees
Bagnor
Arundel
Felsfield
Chichester
Ealing
Shoreham
Launling
Goreing
Preston
Rustington
Hepton
Newhaven
Bridhelmston
Blexington
Cookmere
Pemsey
Warsham
Hastings
Winchelsea
Rye
Rumney
Marshland Gut
Light house
Dungenes
Guiman
Riprapps
Calais
Calis Cliffs
Inghen
Chatelet
St. Lian
Ambleteuse
Bologne
St. Leonard
Chamieres
Estaples
Cuque
Barque
Houeban
St. Quintin
Rue
St. Firmin
le Crotoy
Somme R.
St. Valrey
Bassurelle
Bouvy de Ouest
Treporte
Here the two Tides meet
le Vogoye
Bassurt Bass
Croylers
le Quemer



Variation 7 : 30.
West A°. 1701.
SCILLY ISLANDS
Seven Stones
C. Cornwal
Long Ships
The Lands End
Lizard P.t
Dodman P.t
Eddystone Lighthouse
Start P.t
Tor Bay
Berry P.t
Kingswere Castel
Plymouth
Dartmouth
Start Bay
Cross Chilton
Falmouth
Penryn
Truro
Penzance
Manacles
Pendennis C.
Pendean
Runelstone
Gulf
I. Alderney
les Casquets
Bounehou
les Brays
Amproches
Hanous
les Levises
Roch Daure
Barnuie
Cherburg
Flamonville
Rosell
St Germin
Barneville
St George
Porbill
Donevill
St Germain
Lesay
Perine
Chau de Pieras
Blainville
Coutances
Requevill
Tornevill
Breguevill
Breville
Granville
Bouillon
Tombelan M.t
Auranche
M.t St Michel
Pontorson
Hirel
St Malo
Guildo
Dinant
Cancale
Lande
Runen
Breton B.
Cathove B.
Ranquy
Minquires
le Lanard
Souarel
Ladere
Harlow
Cantier
Calmaras
Bouillon
Lejon
Menmar
Treguier
Plampol
Beauport
St Quay
Estable
Benie
Rosillieres
St Brieu
Llion
Morlaix
Roscoff
Plouescat
Plouezec
Abreurakh
Roche de Port Sal
Conquet
Claster
Onizeny
Plounéour
Coarde
Golvan
Bay of Brest
St Claude
Roslohan
Talgrit
St Vic
Douarnenez
Bay of Douarnenez
Ticille
Raz
le Cornet
les Saints
I. de Queler
Ushent I.
Race of Portland
Race of Alderney
Race of Jobernos
Trepiede
Shambles 14 foot
West A. 1781.
B R E T A G N E
F R A

ADVERTISMENT

In this **Channell Draught**, *the smaller figures are the Depth in fathoms. The Litterall or Roman figures shew the hour of* **Highwater**, *or rather the end of the stream that setts to the Eastwards on the day of the* **New & Full Moon**. *Add therefore the time of the Moons Southing or Northing to ye Number found near the place where your Shipp is, and the Summe shall show you how long the Tyde will run to the Eastwards, but if it be more then 12 Subtract 12 therefrom.*
The Direction of the Darts shew upon what point of the Compaß the strength of the Tyde Setts.

H. Moll F.

NORMANDIE

FRANCE

I. Alderney
Race of Alderney
C. de la Hague
St. Martin
Manqueville
Querqueville
Pelée I.
C. Levy
Inglemaro
C. Renier
3 Pieres
C. Barfleur
Basseleur
Quelbeuf
Heville
Barfleur
Moupertus
Cherburg
Tatihou
Vieville
Flamonville
Rosell
St. Germin
Suatainvill
Baubigne
St. Piere
Barneville
St. George
Porbill
Donevill
St. Paing
St. Germain
Lesay
Perine
Chau de Pieras
Blainville
Coutances
Requevill
Tornevill
Breguevill
Breville
Granville
Bouillon
Combelan M.t
Auranche
St. Michel
Pontorson
Mirel
St. Malo
St. Joan
Dinant
Guildo
Cancale
R. Riche
Breton B.
Chaussey
le Genette
le Lanard
Minquires
Ranquy
Cathcve B.
Souarel
Brayes
Amproches
Arme
Sark
Petit Noſtors
Dinouelle
Tallepied
Erehou
Banc sea
Crosnes
Jersey
St. Clemene
le Beuf
Billet
Banc Grelets
Brevan
Fesay
Fegny
Pettite Vay
Virville
Potten Beſſin
Corps de Garde
Cour
Langurne
Orne R.
Caen
Dive
de Dive
Dove
Foverill
Veville
Fonteney
St. Michael
Grenevill
Parnel
P. Dranquet
Banc du Boc
Hogue
I. Marque
Banc du Nord
les Roſelles
P. de la Perce
P. Manvieux
R. de Cabado
C. de Antifer
Lambe B.
Rade
Etrehan R.
Lizo
Langrville
C. de la Hève
IX
XI
X
Vport
Etretat
Burnevall
St. Forin
St. Arefle
Havre de Grace
Marſleur
Tankerville
Caudebec
Rouen
Elbeuf
Quilleboeuf
Roque de Rile
Honfleur
Creſſin
Tongues
Houeban
St. Quintin
Rue
St. Firmin
le Crotoy
Som R.
St. Valrey
Baſſurelle
Calaiſiſe
Fayen
Boury de Ouſt
Treporte
Veric
Renly
Dieppe
R. Dailly
St. Marguerite
Sotterville
Veulle
St. Vallery
St. Martin
Bouleville
Fiſchamp
Road
Croſſers
le Quemer
meet

with Peop[illegible] in London, and if Trade is the *August* was the first Founder of it, above five [illegible] years

years ago, but the Fabrick, as it now stands, oweth its Rise to *Francis* I. The Hall call'd *le Salle de Cent Swiss*, formerly the Hall of Audience for Ambassadours, was by *Mary de Medicis* turn'd into a Playhouse: On the Porches you see several Inscriptions, sufficiently demonstrating that the *French* were always apt at flattering their Monarchs, tho' they then did not come up to that height as they have been since, in bestowing the Epithet of *Vero Immortali* and other such-like blasphemous expressions upon them. Upon this occasion I can't forbear to insert three Distichs made by the *French* Poets, exceeding for their loftiness the Structure it self:

Rex, Regnum, atq; Domus, tria sunt Miracula Mundi!
Rex animo, Regnum viribus, arce Domus.

Non orbis gentem, non urbem gens habet ullam,
Urbsve Domum, Dominum nec Domus ulla parem.

Louvre Domus, Dominus Ludovicus, Regia Rege
Digna suo, Cœlo est hæc minor, ille Deo.

All the Antiquities and *Roman* Statues, with a most curious Cabinet of Paintings formerly preserv'd here, are transported to *Versailles*; there are however some Pieces left of *le Brun*'s, and that celebrated Piece of *Paul Veronese*'s Wedding of *Cana*, presented to the King by the Senate of *Venice*; for the *Servi*, in whose Church it stood on the Altar, having sold the same to the *French* King, the Senate hearing of it, to check these mercenary Monks, presented it to the King.

The Academy for the *French* Tongue.

Their Academy for the cultivating and improving the *French* Tongue, instituted by the present King's Father, consisting of forty or fifty of the most ingenious Persons of the City, is kept here ever since. Many of the chief Artists belonging to the King have their Apartments in this Palace; their chief Painter then was Monsr. *le Brun*, since dead; their head Graver was *Girardon*; and for Sculptures, Medals and Coin, Monsr. *Roty*, whose two Brothers have the honour to serve in the same Imployment to the Kings of *England* and *Spain*. And not far from these they shew you another spacious place call'd the *Garde meuble*, stor'd with all sorts of Paintings, Tapestries and curious Cabinets.

The Thuillery.

The *Thuillery* is also a part of the *Louvre*, where it faces the fine Garden of the *Thuilleries*; it was formerly furnish'd with abundance of the best Painting, and other Movables of the best Workmanship, which have been carried to *Versailles*: That part which fronts the Garden is a long beautiful piece of a Fabrick begun by *Henry* IV, and compleated by *Lewis* XIV. The Theatre in it is exceeding noble, and the Garden is before it not inferiour to any in *Europe*, not excepting even *Versailles*, the Walks and Plantations whereof are indeed more costly, but not more delightful and regular. At the lower end of it stands a noble Statue of *Verity* carried off in the Arms of *Time*, with this Inscription;

The Gardens.

Opus Petri à Frankevilla Comeracensis, Ann. 1609.

There are divers excellent Pieces extant of this great Master.

The Royal Palace, call'd *Palais Royale*, does also belong to the King, being the ordinary Residence of the Duke of *Orleans*, the King's only Brother, when in Town; it is compos'd of two fair Courts, with a delicious Garden behind it; Cardinal *Richlieu* was the Founder of it, who also built here a Theatre on purpose for Tragedies, of which he was a great admirer; but since *Moliere* had liberty to act his Comedies there, and after his death the Opera's were acted in the same Theatre.

The Place Royal.

The *Place-Royal* is a vast Square, open towards the Street of S. *Honore*, intended chiefly for the King's Statue, which is to be put in the middle, for which reason they have demolish'd the *Hotel de Vendosme*, and ruin'd the Convent of the *Capuchins*.

The Academies for Painting and Architecture.

Near this is another Structure call'd *le Palais Brion*, design'd for a Library, but since turn'd into two Academies, *viz.* for Architecture and Painting; the first erected by Monsr. *Colbert*; *Mansard*, *Perault*, *Blondel* and *Felibien* were Members of it; they meet two or three times a week to consult about the most curious Models in Architecture that can be contriv'd. That of the Painters acknowledges Monsr. *Noyers*, Secretary of State, for its Founder, but Monsr. *Colbert* for its Restorer; of this M. *le Brun* their great Painter was President. They keep here good store of Original Paintings of some of the best Masters, Statues, Busts of ancient *Roman* Sculpture to design by; besides which, they hire every day some clean-limb'd Man or Woman, who expose themselves naked to their view.

The King's Cabinet.

The House known by the Name of the *Cabinet du Roy* contain'd formerly great store of curious Pictures, Medals, Agates, and such-like Rarities, as also the *Anticalia* found in *Childeric* the First's Tomb at *Tournay*, with his Library, and a considerable Collection of Manuscripts, among which was St. *Cyprian*'s Work, brought thither from St. *Lawrence*'s Library at *Florence*, but these are for the most part now at *Versailles*.

The Academy of Sciences.

The Academy of Sciences was likewise founded by Monsr. *Colbert*; they are imploy'd in promoting Mathematicks, Physick, and Natural Philosophy, like our *Royal Society*, which exceeds theirs both in number of its Members and advancement of Learning.

They have many Noblemens Houses of note, call'd by them *Hotels*; that of the great Monsr. *Colbert*, now in the possession of the Marquess of *Seignelay*, is a very noble Fabrick, and his Library is most exquisite, both for its number of good Books and curious Manuscripts; they shew you a Manuscript Bible as old as the Reign of *Charles le Chauve*; the famous Historian Monsr. *de Thou* has also left the Publick an excellent Library. Most of their Noblemens Palaces of note are furnish'd with very good Collections of Original Pictures by the most excellent hands, which they have purchas'd for a great part from the covetous *Italians*; among these the *Palais Mazarin*, and the Hotel *de Seguier*, deserve to be particularly remember'd; the first is noble without, and curiously furnish'd within with Statues and Paintings both ancient and modern, of the hands of *Grimaldi* and *Romanelli*, two noted *Italian* Painters, sent for hither upon that account; the King has taken the best of 'em, yet there are many Cabinets, Tapestries, and other rich Vessels of Stone and Silver, left. The second was also excellently well furnish'd with all sorts of Curiosities, and particularly with precious *China*-works of all sorts, but since sold or distributed.

The Palais Mazarin.

The Hotel de Seguier.

The *Recolets* have a very good Library, and some excellent Paintings: Hard by is the Hospital of St. *Lewis*, founded for those that are infected with the Plague, by K. *Henry* IV, but at present is made use of for the Sick of the *Hotel de Dieu*.

The Grand Prior's Palace.

In the Street of S. *Avoye* is an old large Palace belonging to the *Grand Prior* of *France*, but formerly appertaining to the *Knights Templers*; it has a considerable Revenue annex'd to it. In the Street of S. *Lewis* is a noble Fountain, adorn'd with *Tritons* and such-like other Ornaments.

The Townhouse.

Their *Maison de Ville* or *Townhouse* stands in the Place call'd the *Greve*, built by K. *Francis* I. Neither the place nor Structure are answerable to the greatness of such a City as *Paris*; however, there is a noble way leading to it, enlarg'd in 1675, with Cawsey-banks on both sides.

The Place Royal, and Statue of Lewis XIII.

The *Place Royal* is a magnificent Square, near as spacious as our *Great Lincolns-Inn-Field*, enclos'd with *Piazza-Walks*, and the Platform with Iron Rails; the Statue of K. *Lewis* XIII, set up by Cardinal *Richlieu*, stands in the middle of it, with divers Inscriptions on it in *French* and *Latin*; the Horse is said to be the Work of *Volterre* a famous *Italian*, who made it for K. *Henry* II. The said Cardinal's House stands in the same place, having among other Curiosities an excellent Collection of Paintings.

The Bastile.

The *Bastile* is a place not unlike our *Tower*, surrounded with a plain Wall and eight antique Turrets, and serves for the same use, *viz.* for a Magazine and a Prison for Prisoners of Quality.

The Arsenal.

There is another very good Arsenal not far from this, a spacious Pile of Building, three great Courts and a Garden; the Portal is supported by Cannons instead of Pillars, with this Inscription in Capitals:

Ætna hæc Henrico Vulcania tela ministrat,
Tela Gigantæos debellatura furores.

Here many Workmen are imploy'd by the King, to cast Statues and other Works of Metal.

The Abbey of S. Victoire.

The Abbey of St. *Victoire*, in the possession of the *Canons Regular* of S. *Austin*, is one of the most ancient Foundations in *Paris*; it has a good Library, and some Manuscripts, and Students are permitted to make use of them three times every week. The noted Mr. *Santevil* belong'd both to this House and Order.

The Physick-Garden.

The *Jardin Royal* or *Physick-Garden* (of which Mr. *du Verney*, an excellent Anatomist, was Surveyor) is maintain'd at the King's charge, and Botanick Lectures are kept there during the best season for Plants; it is something longer, but not broader, than that of *Oxford*. There also belongs to it a very good Anatomy-School, stor'd with

with Skeletons of Animals, and among the rest with one of a very large Elephant. In the King's Laboratory every body is admitted to see the Operations, and the Medicines whole here are bestow'd upon the Poor.

Near it is the *Hospital General*, as they call it, a vast Pile of Buildings, finish'd in 1657, by Cardinal *Mazarin*, and containing near six thousand poor People, who are imploy'd here in divers sorts of Work, and when sick, well look'd after.

Hotel Dieu. Another of their Hospitals is that call'd *Hotel Dieu*, a very large Building, but neither handsom nor extraordinary convenient, being sometimes overcrowded with Sick, and too closely built up round about it. As it is the chief Hospital in *Paris* for the Sick, the Nuns of S. *Austin* are oblig'd to tend and look after them, which they do with so much tenderness sometimes, that they don't care much to return to the Nunnery; for, not long before, a certain *Irishman* being recover'd by the care of his pretty Nurse, made shift to carry her away without being ever heard of since: The danger and trouble that must needs be the attendants of this Imployment, making the same very meritorious among the *Romanists*, the Ladies of the first Quality sometimes imploy themselves in these acts of Piety; and it was in this place that (not long before) the Dutchess of *Nemours*, Mother to the Dutchess of *Orleans*, got the Small-pox, and her Death into the bargain.

Hospital of Charity. Not far thence is the Hospital *de la Charité*, where the Friers of S. *John* perform the same Office as the Nuns do in the former: Each Room has three rows of Beds.

There is another Hospital in *Paris* they stile *The Incurable*, because only such as are past Cure are admitted into it.

The Royal Hospital of the Invalides. But what exceeds all the rest is, the *Hotel Royal des Invalides*, or the *Royal Hospital* for maim'd Soldiers, or those render'd unserviceable by age, founded upon the same Design as our *Chelsea-Hospital*, built at the present King's charge, from 1670 to 1678. The whole Structure is compos'd of five Quadrangles, one large one in the middle, flank'd with two other square ones on each side, with Piazza's and Corridors or Galleries round them all; the whole Fabrick being of a hewn Stone, makes a very noble appearance. The Kitchin is very large and handsom, and in their Refectories (where the Soldiers eat) you see most of the Sieges undertaken in the late Wars by the *French*, painted on the Walls. The Apothecary's Shop belonging to this place is the best contriv'd and as well furnish'd as any I ever met with in all my Travels. The Soldiers are attended here by the Sisters of S. *Lazarus*. Considering the freedom allow'd to Strangers, to be present at their Operations perform'd in all their Hospitals, the advantage of their Chymical Lectures, Physick-Garden, and frequent practise in Anatomy, *Paris* seems the most accomplish'd School for young Physicians, to be prefer'd in this respect to *Leyden*, *Padua*, *Montpellier*, *Cambridge*, and *Oxford* it self.

The Gobelins. The House known by the Name of the *Gobelins*, in the Suburbs of S. *Marcell*, was formerly famous for the making and dying of the best Scarlet Cloths, but now divers sorts of the best Workmen are imploy'd here at the King's cost and profit, in making the finest Tapestry, Plate, Mosaic, Iron, Copper and Brass-Works, Statuary, Sculpture, Embroideries, &c. These Suburbs have a Church dedicated to S. *Marcell*, where you see the Tomb of the noted *Peter Lombard*.

The University. The University of *Paris*, which makes up one third part of the whole, is worth the Curiosity of a Traveller; they make it as ancient as *Charles the Great*, and say it was encompass'd with a Wall; hence it is that they celebrate a certain Day to his memory, when all the Heads of the University meet at the College of *Navarre*. Formerly the University of *Paris* had more Colleges and Students, the number of the first (where publick Exercises are perform'd) is at present reduc'd to eight or nine, among which the *Sorbonne*, the College *du Plessis*, that of *Navarre* and *de Harcourt* are the chiefest: They had also formerly the Privilege of being exempted both from the Civil and Criminal Jurisdiction of *Paris*, but that is little regarded now.

The chief things profess'd here are Divinity, Physick, Law, and Arts, or Philosophy; for each of these they chuse, four times a Year, a *Rector* or *Professor*: The *Sorbonne* and the College of *Navarre* are the most considerable for Divinity. The Schools for the Civil Law are in the *Rue de Beauvais*, lately new model'd by the King's Orders. The Physicians have a fair Anatomical Theatre in the *Rue de Boucherie*; and their College call'd *de quatre Nations*, (i. e. of four Nations) *viz.* those of *France*, *Picardy*, *Normandy* and *Germany*, is dedicated to their Faculty of Arts.

The Sorbonne. The *Sorbonne* has got its Name from *Robert de Sorbonne* its Founder, formerly a plain and ordinary Fabrick, but now turn'd into a magnificent Structure, chiefly by the care of Cardinal *Richlieu*; it has always been famous for its learned Professors, ever since its first Foundation, which was under the Reign of S. *Lewis*, as the Inscription on a Brass Plate in the Church testifies;

Ludovicus Rex Francorum, sub quo fundata fuit Domus Sorbonæ circa Ann. Domini MCCLII.

The Professors and Students are lodg'd in the Apartments about the great Quadrangle.

The Library. The Library is kept in a handsom and lofty Room, much encreas'd by the liberality of the said Cardinal, especially with some Manuscripts, distinguish'd with his Arms upon 'em. Among other curious Pieces, they shew you two large Volumes of *Livy*, an old Translation in antiquated *French*, written in the Reign of *Charles* V, embellish'd with Paintings in Miniature on Vellum, which Art has been lost about two hundred Years since. They have good store of Divinity Works, and all Translations of the Bible. The Picture of the Cardinal their Benefactor hangs at one end of the Room, at length, in his Habit; and at the other, his Bustum in Brass, done by the excellent hand of *Varini*. The Fathers and School-Divines are regularly plac'd one after another, with their respective *Annotators* in the rows underneath.

Their Degrees. After they have frequented the publick Lectures for three Years, they are qualified for the Degree of Batchelors, who wear Lambskins and Tippets like our Batchelors of Arts at *Oxford*; after two Years more, they may be promoted to the Degree of Licentiates, who generally are the Opponents to such as take the Degree of Doctors. I was present at some of their publick Exercises and Disputations, which were manag'd with a great deal of decency and order. The Subjects on which most generally they exercise themselves are, the Sacrament, the Transubstantiation, Trinity and Incarnation, which in the *Roman* Church being look'd upon as the sole Object of Faith, even in contradiction to Sense and Reason, I could not but admire to hear the Opponents urge oftentimes such things as are accounted and declar'd heretical among 'em.

The College of Navarre. The College of *Navarre*, the next in rank, acknowledges King *Philip the Fair* and his Queen for its Founders, as the Inscription under their Statues testifies. Formerly none but Noblemens Children were admitted here, but now all sorts, without distinction. They have four Professors in Divinity, and the Archbishop of *Paris* is President of it. In 1684 the Magistrates of *Paris* founded an annual Panegyrick for this present King, on S. *Lewis*'s Day.

The College Harcourt. The College *de Harcourt* is a large Structure, near the *Sorbonne*, where continual Exercises are held for inferiour Forms of Students in Logick and Philosophy; they print their Theses, and dispute categorically, without confining themselves strictly to Syllogistical Rules.

The College du Plessis. The College *du Plessis* was restor'd by Cardinal *Richlieu*, being as it were the Nursery of the *Sorbonne*, who always put a Governour of their own College over it. The Faculty of Arts for the four Nations is a different Foundation from the College of the *quatre Nations*, these Artists having peculiar Houses allotted 'em, and chuse each every Year a President of their own Nation.

The College of the four Nations. The College of the *quatre Nations* acknowledges the Cardinal *Mazarin* for its Founder; the Portal hath this Inscription:

Jul. MaZarin: S. R. E. Card.
Basilicam & Gymnas.
F. C. A. MDC. LXI.

It has a double Court, and a good Library of the Cardinal's own Collection, which is open to every body at certain hours in the day. The number intended by the said Cardinal's Will were sixty, *viz.* fifteen from about *Pignerol* and the adjacent parts of *Italy*, fifteen for the *Alsatian* Youth of *Germany*, twenty for those of the *New Conquests* in the *Netherlands*, and ten for *Roussillon* and *Catalonia*; but neither the *Structure* nor *Institution* is compleated yet. As the *Doctors* of the *Sorbonne* are Governours of this College, so their Books in the Library treat of the Canon and Civil Law, mix'd with abundance of School-Divinity-men.

College Royal. The *College Royal*, founded by *Francis* I. for Law, Physick, Mathematicks, and the Oriental Languages, was carried on further by K. *Henry* IV. *Mary de Medicis*, and *Lewis* XIII, tho' not brought to perfection; the *Professors* receive

receive their Salaries from the King, without any dependance on the University. It is seated near S. *James's Street* and the College of *Cambray*.

The *English* Nunnery and Convent.

The *English Roman-Catholicks* have a good Nunnery and Convent of the *Benedictins* in *Paris*, foundded in 1657. In the Nunnery many young Ladies of Popish Parentage are educated.

The Cathedral.

Among their Churches, the Cathedral call'd *Nostre Dame* challenges the first rank, an antique *Gothick* Structure, compleated at several times, more strong than noble, a very ancient Bishoprick, founded (as they say) by S. *Dennis* not long after the Apostles time, but made an Archbishoprick not till 1622, by Pope *Urban* VIII. In the Quire you see divers good Pieces of Painting and rich Tapestry, and abundance of Gold and Silver Plate for their Altars: It has about fifty Canons belonging to it, among which was once the famous Historian *Paulus Emilius Veronensis*, whose Tomb is to be seen in one of the little Chapels.

The *Jesuites* College.

The next is the *Jesuits* Church; on the Front of their College you see these words in Capitals, *Collegium Ludovici Magni*. This Society was first introduc'd into *Paris* by *du Prat*, who presided at the Council of *Trent* for *France*, and afterwards prov'd a great Benefactor to them, as well as that famous and unfortunate Minister of State Monsr. *Fouquet*. The Library, which was his Gift, is a very good one, both for number of Books and Manuscripts, among which are many *Protestant* and *Socinian* Authors.

Another.

These Fathers have another College in the Street of S. *Anthony*, the Church whereof is a magnificent modern Structure, carried on in part by Cardinal *Richlieu*, under the Reign of K. *Lewis* XIII, whose Heart is entomb'd here, as well as that of *Henry de Bourbon* Prince of *Conde*.

A third.

They have lately built another in the Suburbs of S. *Germain*, call'd the *Novitiates*, the Church whereof is but small, but the Architecture most excellent; it was built at the charge of Monsr. *Noyes* Secretary of State.

The Church of S. Genevieve.

The Church of S. *Genevieve*, with its Regular Canons, is said to have been founded by King *Clovis*, who has an old Tomb here, which has been embellish'd of late years, for they have put on his Head a Crown with a *Flower de Luce*, whereas these Arms were not till long after us'd by the Crown of *France*; just as in some other Popish Countries I have observ'd our Saviour painted with Beads and a Rosary in his hands. They have put a modern Inscription upon the old King's Tomb.

The Tomb of Des Cartes.

But the chief Ornament of this Church is the Tomb of that great *French* Philosopher *Des Cartes*; it has two Inscriptions, one in *French* Verse, the other in *Latin*, as follows;

RENATUS DES CARTES.

Vir supra Titulos omnium retrò Philosophorum
Nobilis genere, Armoricus gente, Turonicus Origine
In Gallia, Flexiæ studuit,
In Pannonia, miles meruit,
In Batavia Philosophus delituit,
In Suecia vocatus occubuit:
Tanti Viri Pretiosas Reliquias
Galliarum Percelebris tunc Legatus
Petrus Chanut
Christinæ Sapientissimæ Reginæ, Sapientum Amatrici,
Invidere non potuit, nec vindicare Patriæ,
Sed quibus licuit cumulatus honoribus
Peregrinæ terræ mandavit invitus
Anno Domini 1650. *mense* Feb. 10. *ætatis* 54.
Tandem post septem & decem Annos
In gratiam Christianissimi Regis
Ludovici Decimi-Quarti
Virorum Insignium Cultoris, & Remuneratoris;
Procurante Petro Dalibert,
Sepulchri pio & amico violatore
Patriæ Redditæ sunt,
Et in isto urbis & Artium culmine positæ.
Ut qui vivus apud Exteros otium & famam quæsierat,
Mortuus apud suos cum laude quiesceret.
Suis & exteris in Exemplum & documentum futurus.
I NUNC VIATOR.
Et divinitatis immortalitatisque Animæ
Maximum & clarum assertorem
Aut jam Crede felicem, aut precibus Redde.

The Apothecary's Shop belonging to the Convent, and the Library, are neatly dispers'd, where they have divers ancient Busts, Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities: Father *Molinet* has a curious Collection of Rarities of his own; and the famous Architect Father *Creil* was a Member of this Convent.

In the Monastery of the *Jacobins* is to be seen the Monument of *Humbertus*, the last Prince of *Dauphine*, who having no Issue, sold this Principality to *Phil. de Valois*, and embracing a Monastical Life at *Lyons*, became first to be Prior of this Convent, and afterwards Patriarch of *Alexandria*, as the Inscription tells you.

The *Jacobins* Convent.

The Church of the *Carmelites* is for its Antiquity not inferiour to any in *Paris*, being suppos'd to have been founded by S. *Dennis*; it now contains the Heart of the Great *Turenne*, and has divers excellent modern Paintings and other Ornaments within. That call'd *Val de Grace* is both a modern Institution and Structure, after the *Italian*, founded by Queen *Ann* of *Austria*, upon the miraculous Birth (as they stile it) of this present King, after she had been married 22 Years: Her Heart, as also that of our *Henrietta Maria* Dutchess of *Orleans*, lies entomb'd here. The *Altar* and *Cupola* are exceeding fine, and upon the *Portal* you see these words,

The Church of the *Carmelites* and *Val de Grace*

Jesu nascenti Virginiq; Matri.

All the Nuns are of noble extraction, and chuse a Lady Abbess every three years: Madam *Le Valleiere*, once the King's Mistress, retreated to this Nunnery, to do Pennance for her past Miscarriages.

In the ancient Abbey of S. *Germain* are the Tombs of many of their ancient Kings, who us'd to be buried here, before the time of the Inroads made by the *Northern* Nations, as of late they do at St. *Dennis*. That of *Chilperic* has only these few words, in a very old Character, on a plain Stone,

The Abbey of S. *Germain*.

Rex Chilpericus hoc tegitur Lapide.

But that this was but part of his Tomb, is evident from the Inscription on a broken Tombstone dug up since in another place;

Hic jacet Chilpericus Francorum Rex.
Ego Chilpericus Francorum Rex precor ut inde in Æternum non auferentur ossa mea.

Queen *Fredigonde*, who died in 601, is also entomb'd here; and *Clotharius*, and the second Son to *Chilperic*, of the same Name with his Father, with their Wives. Among the modern Monuments here, are chiefly remarkable that of the Duke of *Vernoüil*, Prince of *Bourbon*, Natural Son of King *Henry* IV, who was Bishop and Abbot of S. *Germain*, but afterwards relinquishing the Monastical state, married the Dutchess of *Sully*. Here is also inter'd the young Duke of *Bourbon*, Son of the present K. of *France*, and *Casimir* K. of *Poland*, who after having resign'd his Crown, died Abbot of this place; their Epitaphs and Inscriptions are too long to be inserted. Here are buried also some of the Family of the *Douglas*'s of *Scotland*. They have a very good Library here, formerly accounted one of the best in *Paris*, and which still has the reputation of excelling all the rest in Manuscripts, except the King's. They pretend to have the *Psalter* of St. *Germain*, which he generally us'd at Divine Service, and a Missal of nine hundred years old, written with a Style on little Tables of Cedar. They shew you a great Volume brought by a *French* Ambassadour from *Constantinople*, with attestation of most of the Bishops of the *Greek* Church, concerning their Belief of Transubstantiation, which they produce as an undeniable Proof against the Opinion of the *Protestants*; tho' to speak the truth, it is very probable that these good Fathers might do much out of complaisance both to the King and the Ambassadour, nothing being more observable among the *Greeks* than to accommodate themselves, both in Discipline and Doctrine, to those among whom they live; as is particularly remarkable at *Rome* and *Venice*.

The Fathers of this Abbey formerly publish'd a very good Edition of S. *Austin*'s Works, from the best Manuscripts in *Europe*; and Father *Dacherry*, of this House, has put out divers Volumes of his *Specilegium*, containing many Curiosities and Antiquities taken out of their Manuscripts. They tell you, that the Church being built in the same place where stood anciently the Temple of *Isis*, a Statue of which Goddess remains on part of the Walls, a simple old Woman was seen to worship it for a Saint, which the Fathers having got notice of, they broke it to pieces.

Another of their publick Structures is what they call *le Palais*, because in old times it was the Residence of their Kings, but by King *Philip the Fair* appropriated for the Assembly of their Parliament. The Hall in which anciently their Kings us'd to perform their greatest Solemnities is very spacious, and arch'd, with the several

Le Palais

Courts of Justice in particular Chambers about it; the ancient Chamber of Private Audience is now the Room where the Remainders of their ancient Parliaments assemble when the King has any thing of moment to propose to them; it opens always on St. *Martin*'s Day, when the Members attend in the Great Hall in their Scarlet Robes. Here is also kept the Court of Aids, which has a separate Jurisdiction from the Parliament; their *Court of Chancery* and the *Chamber of Accounts* are the same as our *Exchequer Court*; they plead by way of Bill and Answer, Plaintiff and Defendant, but in a more summary way than in our *Court of Chancery*, but much like our Civil *Courts of Judicature*; tho' at the same time there are not wanting Instances, that their Suits have been protracted for a great many Years. Here all the *Patents* of the Peers are regist'red, as well as their *Charters* and other *Records*.

The Chapel of St. *Lewis*. In the Chapel of S. *Lewis*, belonging to the Lawyers, they shew you abundance of Relicks, which they vouch for authentick; as, the Sponge dipt in Vinegar and Gall, the Head of the Spear wherewith they pierc'd our Saviour's Side, and the purple Robe entire, tho' at *Rome* they shew with the same assurance a piece of it. Near this Palace is the Place call'd *la Place Dauphin*, of a triangular form, built immediately after the Birth of *Lewis* the Thirteenth, which gave it the Name *Dauphin*.

The Palace of *Luxemburgh*. The *Palais de Luxemburgh* or *Palais d'Orleans*, built by *Mary de Medicis*, is one of the most regular and magnificent Structures in *Paris*; Madamoiselle *d'Orleans* has her Lodgings on one side, and the Dutchess of *Guise* on the other, in whose is that famous Gallery of Paintings of *Mary de Medicis*, representing her whole Life, from her Nativity to the end of her Government, the Work of the excellent *Paul Reuben*, who, they say, bestow'd two whole years upon it; her meeting with *Henry* IV, just before Marriage, he all in Armour, and she dress'd with all imaginable advantage, and the most beautiful and amorous Looks in the World, is a most exquisite Piece: The same Dutchess has most of her other Apartments curiously furnish'd with the choicest *Italian* Pictures, among these the wandring *David*, by the hand of *Guido Reni*, is most excellent. The Gardens are suitable to the magnificence of the Palace, and open for publick Walks.

The Observatory. Their *Observatory*, built by the present King for Astronomical Observations, is a vaulted Fabrick, without either Wood or Iron-work, three stories high; besides which, you descend by two hundred Steps into a Cave with little Alleys, from whence there is a Prospect thro' the very top of the House to the Sky, in order to observe the motions of the Stars by Day; but this Contrivance don't answer expectation, no Stars being to be seen there, but only the Light, which they impute to the not passing of any Stars thro' the *Zenith* of *Paris*; but it is something strange that this Defect should not have been foreseen by their Artists; tho' otherwise the Building is better contriv'd than ours at *Greenwich*.

Near it is the *Tour de Charpente* or the *Timber-Tower*, all of *Carpenters-work*, for the fixing of their Tubes and Telescopes; Mons. *Cassini* is the chief *Supervisor* of all this business, the same who was *Professor* of *Bologna*, and made that famous *Meridian Line* in one of the Churches of that City; he has a very good Salary allow'd him by the King.

The Royal Bridge. Among the Bridges of *Paris* there are only three worth taking notice of; the first is, the *Pont-Royal*, or *Royal Bridge*, a strong plain piece of Stone-work, but lately built cross the *Seine* to the *Thuilleries*; in 1685. a Silk Bag of Medals was lodg'd in some of the Masonry of it, to perpetuate the memory of their so much celebrated *Lewis le Grand*; it was included in a Cedar Box, with a blue Sattin, and the Arms of *France* upon it: One of these Medals was very large, of Copper gilt, besides twelve others of Gold and Silver; one among 'em had for its Motto *Germania servata*; another this, *Justis Quiescere*; another, *Rheno Batavisq; una superatis*; and on another is represented *Jupiter*, with this Motto, *Vibrata in superbos Fulmina*, and underneath, *Genua emendata*.

The Bridge of our Lady. The second is the *Pont Nostredame*, charg'd with Houses something like our *London-bridge*, but not near so big.

The New Bridge. The next to this is the *Pont Neuf* or *New Bridge*, a curious Fabrick, (tho' not near so large as that of *London*) first begun by K. *Henry* III, but finish'd by his Successor *Henry* IV, whose Statue on Horseback stands upon it much beyond the natural bulk; it is a most excellent piece of Workmanship of *John* of *Boulogn*, an *Italian* Artist, but descended from *French* Parentage; it has several Inscriptions about it, relating to some memorable actions, and the Battels of *Ivry* and *Arque* are represented in *basso relievo* upon the Pedestal, on each Angle of which lie four Slaves of massy Brass.

The Place of St. *Victory*. That noble Monument erected in the Place of St. *Victory*, to the memory of their present King, by the Care (if not at the Cost) of the Marquess *de la Feuillade*, is certainly the most excellent piece of Statuary that can be beheld either in *Italy* or any where else, and the *French* boast, that it exceeds all that ever were made of this kind, not excepting even those erected to the *Greek* and *Roman Emperours*. The King's Statue is of massy Brass, thirteen foot high, in his Robes, with a *Victory* standing behind him of the same bulk and metal, crowning him, pois'd with his Foot on a Globe; under his Feet is a three-headed *Cerberus*, to denote the triple Alliance over which he triumph'd, at the foot whereof you see these words, *Viro Immortali*, the last of which they explain of the *Immortality of his Fame*. The whole Mould was cast all at once, and weighs above thirty thousand pound. The Pedestal is twenty two foot high, which with that part of the massy Mould the Statue stands on being three foot, and the Statue it self thirteen, makes this superb piece about thirty eight or near forty foot high. Upon the Pedestal rest four Slaves of Brass, much beyond the natural largeness, with *basso relievo's* of his Battels and Conquests. It stands in a very spacious place, and to render it the more uniform, they demolish'd many Houses, and the Duke pull'd down part of his Palace. The Statue it self is enclos'd by stately Iron Grates that environ a Floor of Marble; and a Centinel is always placed near it. The grand Inscription upon it runs thus:

Ludovico Magno
Patri Exercituum
& Ductori
semper felici,
Domitis hostibus, protectis sociis,
Adjectis Imperio fortissimis populis,
Extructis ad Tutelam Finium firmissimis Arcibus.
Oceano & Mediterraneo inter se junctis, praedari variis toto mari Piratis: Emendatis Legibus. Delctâ Calviniana impietate;
Compulsis ad Reverentiam Nominis
Gentibus remotissimis, cunctisq; summâ providentiâ, & virtute domi forisq; compositis.
Franciscus Vicecomes d'Aubusson, Dux de la Fueillade ex Franciæ Paribus, & Tribunis Equitum unus in Allobrogibus Prorex & prætorianorum peditum Præfectus.
Ad memoriam posteritatis sempiternam.
P. D. C.

Besides this, there are several Verses, some for the Statue, some relating to the Historical part represented in the *Basso relievo's*; as for instance, that relating to the Statue,

Tali de ære ferens, orbi & sibi, jura modumq;
Dat Ludovix, famamq; affectat vincere factis.

There are divers others upon his passage of the *Rhine*, the Peace of *Nimeghen*, the *Dutch* and the *Germans*, but that on the *Genouese* for haughtiness exceeds all the rest:

Vane Ligur, frustraq; animis elate superbis;
Justiciam monitus disce, & non temnere Divos.

The Triumphal Arch. The *Triumphal Arch* was, at the time of my being there, not brought quite to perfection, but if you will believe the *French*, it is to exceed all of that nature in *Europe*, whether ancient or modern: 'Tis true, the Design promises the thing very noble; the Models consist of two Faces of an extraordinary height, with three Portals, after the manner both of the ancient and modern *Romans*; the Orders of the Columns are finely design'd, and the Captives and Trophies most exquisitely done, by the famous *Perault*, who translated *Vetruvius*. The King's Statue on Horseback is design'd to be placed on this Arch.

Their other Gates of the Town (as many *Triumphals* Gates. *Arches*) are all proud pieces of Architecture; that of St. *Dennis* (which leads to the Place of the same name) is above seventy foot high, and as many over, adorn'd with Columns, *Basso relievo's*, and Trophies, with some Inscriptions relating to the passing of the *French* over the *Rhine*, and their taking of *Maestricht*.

St. *Martin*. The Gate of St. *Martin* is fifty foot high, and as many wide, having on each side an Inscription relating to this King's Actions.

St. *Anthony*. The third Gate is that of St. *Anthony*, erected in King *Henry* the Second's time, but new embellish'd by the

the City, with some Inscriptions likewise relating to the present King.

The *French* boast, that *Cæsar* makes mention of this City, and that he laid Siege to it, being then enclos'd betwixt the two branches of the *Seine*, the same part now call'd the *Isle*. Some of their Historians add, that *Cæsar*, after the Conquest of *Gaul*, had his head Quarters here, and built several Castles on the *Seine*. They all agree in that point, that the Name of *Lutetia* was given them by the *Romans*, from its situation in a moist dirty Soil, betwixt the two branches of the River; the modern Name of *Parisii* being deduc'd from *Paris*, one of the Kings of the *Gauls*.

Paris is much more gay and splendid in outward appearance than wealthy within, nothing being more frequent than to meet with Beggars that appear in habit like Gentlemen. It has few or no Pumps, most of their Waters being preserv'd in Cisterns. I took particular notice here of two Medals that went about at that time, made in revenge to Pope *Innocent* XI; one represented our Sir *Edmundsbury Godfrey* strangling, with this Motto, *Jussu Pontificis*; the other had his Holiness's Head or Bust on one side, and an Altar, Pix and Chalice turn'd topsy-turvy on the other, with this Inscription, *Pontificis quis credat opus*: Another I met with at the same time no less odd than the two former, having the King's Bust on one side, and a broken Column on the Reverse, on the upper part whereof hung a Scroll of Parchment with these words written upon it, *Edictum Nanceii reversum*.

Divers odd Medals.

Mezeray says, that *Paris* was first pav'd and wall'd under the Reign of K. *Philip* II, firnam'd *the August*; and near it the *French King* has many Palaces, where he resides at pleasure: That call'd *Fountainbleau*, seated in the Isle of *France* among Woods, is an irregular Structure, but its convenient situation for Hunting makes the Court retire thither in the Summer-time. Its Fountains and Canals are very good, and it has one noble spacious Hall, the rest of the Apartments being neither large nor magnificent enough for a Royal Palace, tho' some very good Paintings are to be seen in them; in the Queens Gallery the Conquests of *Henry* IV. are excellently well done in *Fresco*; and in the Gallery *de Cerfs* underneath this, you see all the Royal Palaces of *France*, with their circumjacent Landskips, curiously painted; not to mention the Paintings in the King and Queens Cabinets. The Chapel Royal is also a very good Fabrick, and well adorn'd.

Fountainbleau

In their Playhouse is to be seen a curious Marble Chimney-piece, representing the Battel of *Ivry* fought by King *Henry* IV. The Gardens are beautified also with Statues; and formerly a good Library belong'd to it, since remov'd to *Paris*. The most noted Apartment in this Palace is what they call the *Salle de Conseil*, famous for the Conference occasion'd by Monsr. *du Plessis*'s Book against the Mass, in which the celebrated Monsr. *Perron* (afterwards Cardinal) pretending to shew at least five hundred false Quotations, a Conference was appointed to be held in this Room on *May* 14. 1600, in the presence of K. *Henry* IV, the President *de Thou*, and the famous *Isaac Casaubon*; the first for the *Romanists*, and the last for the *Protestants*: The first day was spent in examining only nine, and each Party challenging the Victory, the Conferences were discontinued; *Du Plessis* afterwards publishing a Treatise upon these Debates, the same was answer'd by *Perron*.

The Palace of S. *Germain*, seated on a rising ground near the River *Seine*, about four or five hours from *Paris*, and one from *Versailles*, is built in the nature of a Castle, surrounded with a dry Ditch; a noble Stone Gallery runs round the middle of the whole Structure, which is of an oval figure: The Covering of this Pile is of flat Free-stone, each Stone being three foot long, and two broad, and three inches thick: On one side of the Garden is a most delicious Terras-walk, with the River running under it, 3350 paces long; and on the other side it is flank'd by a most delightful Wood.

The Palace of S. Germain

I found hereabouts the wild *Genista Hispanica*, or *Spartum Hisp. Clus. Chab.* the *Spanish Broom*, and the *Onobrychis Spicata, Vulgaris parvi, Cocks-head*, commonly call'd by us *Sainfoin*, brought from *France* first, where it grows wild. In the Garden I observ'd, among other curious Plants, the *Agrifol. odoratum*, a smooth Holly with sweet-scented Flowers.

The *Chateau Neuf* was built by *Henry* IV, upon the brow of the Hill near the other, its Gardens descending by degrees down to the River; here are to be seen the noble Ruins of *Grotto's, Cascades*, and *Water-works*.

Chateau Neuf.

About an hour from hence is *Marli*, a most delightful Summer-seat, built by the present King (rather gay than magnificent) at the head of a Canal, with divers Houses along the side of the Water for the *Courtiers*; they were then busie in cutting a way to it thro' an adjacent Wood. Near this Palace, on the *Seine*, is that so much celebrated *Water-work* of *Marli*, by which the Current of the River is, by the help of an Engine-mill built upon it, forced over two or three vast Hills, by Iron Pipes of half a foot diameter, joynted into one another, and several laid by the side of one another, every stroke of the Mill throwing a vast quantity of Water into the Basins on the Hill, which from these Basins is convey'd by such another Mill higher, over all the Eminencies, when gathering into a small Lake, the same by Aquaducts furnishes with sufficient Water both *Marli* and *Versailles*.

Marli.

Versailles, the most beautiful Palace in *Europe*, is seated in a forc'd dirty ground; that side which faces the Stables is not suitable in magnificence to the rest, as that which fronts the Garden surpasses all what can be imagin'd sumptuous and excellent; its Roof glittering with Gold, affords a glorious Prospect at a distance; and the Garden, for *Statues, Canals, Groves, Grotto's, Fountains, Waterworks*, or what else may be thought delightful, far surpasses any thing to be seen of this kind in *Italy*; and its Riches and Beauty within are altogether answerable to its outside. The Royal Cabinet for Medals, Coins, Painting, and suchlike Curiosities, has the choice of all what *Italy* could afford. The King's Lodgings are enrich'd with Utensils of massy Plate, even to the Bedsteds, Balusters and Rails: The Gallery towards the side of the Garden is the noblest that ever I beheld in my life, for its most delicious Prospect, Statues and Looking-glasses plac'd between the Panels. The modern Paintings in this Palace are for the most part of *Mignard, Poussin* and *le Brun*, among which the Battels of *Alexander* are highly esteem'd. At one end of the Garden is the place where they breed all the foreign Beasts and Birds the *East* and *West-Indies* afford: And what they call the *Trianon* is a cool retreating place for the King after his Walks, suitable in all respects to the rest.

Versailles

About two leagues thence Monsr. *Louvois*, the late chief Minister, had erected a noble Palace with vast cost, the Ground rising into a pleasant *Terras*, with fine Gardens behind it.

Near *Paris* there is another of the King's Houses, call'd *Madrid*, both unfurnish'd and unfinish'd; they tell you that it was built by K. *Francis* I, who having promis'd to pay his Ransom at *Madrid*, gave it this Name, and carrying the whole Sum thither, paid the *Spaniards* with this Equivocation instead of Money.

Madrid.

Hard by it (*viz.* at *Ruel*, a little Town) stands a pretty little Palace built by Cardinal *Richlieu*; it is neither stately nor magnificent, but has very neat Gardens and curious Waterworks.

Ruel.

About two leagues from *Paris*, on the ascent of the Hill of S. *Cloud*, is another of the King's Houses, where the Duke of *Orleans* sometimes resides for his Diversion; the Gardens are very pleasant, the Galleries very beautiful, and some of the Paintings very good: It was here that King *Henry* the Third was stabb'd, by one *Clement* a Monk.

S. Cloud.

In our Tour to *Roan, Diep*, and the Sea-coast, we pass'd thro' S. *Dennis*, about a league from *Paris*, famous for the Sepulchres of the *French* Royal Race, and the Abbey built by King *Dagobert*, formerly call'd *Catulliacum*, but since dedicated to S. *Dennis* the *Areopagite*, whose Body (they say) lies interr'd here; tho' the Monks of the Convent of S. *Emeran*, near *Ratisbon* in *Germany*, dispute that point with 'em, and positively affirm, that they have the whole Body, and those of S. *Dennis* only a Finger. They boast here of the Sepulchres of divers other Saints, as of their King S. *Lewis*, S. *Hilary* Bishop of *Poictiers*, S. *Hypolito* one of the sanctified Martyrs of the *Thebæan* Legion, and one of the Innocents murther'd by *Herod*'s command. The most remarkable among the Tombs of the Royal Family are those of *Francis* I. and *Lewis* XI. Here you see also the Tomb of the Great Marshal *de Turenne*, placed by the King's order (but at the charge of his Nephew) in a Marble Chapel built for that purpose; he lies at full length, surrounded with Laurels and Trophies in *Relievo*, with a *Roman* Eagle at his Feet retreating as it were backwards, with display'd Wings, at the sight of his formidable Enemy: For tho' this *Abbey* is chiefly dedicated for the Sepulchres of the Royal Family, yet by the King's Favour, such of his Subjects as have signaliz'd themselves in his Service are also sometimes interr'd here. There is a Cross of massy Gold on the Altar seven foot high, set with Diamonds and the best Pearls, and a Table of Gold, the Altar it self being also plated over with Silver.

S. Denys.

Pontoise. From hence we pass'd on to S. *Pontoise*, an inconsiderable place, seated upon the River *Oyse*, which arising in *Picardy*, runs a little below it into the *Sein*. The Country of *Normandy* betwixt this place and *Roan* is a Plain champaign and extreamly fertile, especially in Apples, of which they make Syder.

Roan. *Roan* is the Metropolis of *Normandy*, and one of the Cities of the second rank in *France*; its situation is upon the banks of the River *Sein*, at the foot of a Hill, and to the opposite bank you pass by a handsom Bridge of Boats two hundred and seventy paces long, which being pav'd, rises and falls with the Tide; below it you see the Pillars of an ancient Stone Bridge, beaten down some years ago by the violence of the Current; something lower Ships of al out two hundred Tun can ride with safety: Near the River-side stands a very ancient Castle with Turrets, now the Residence of the Governour. Two other Rivers (*viz.* the *Robbée* and *Reinelle*) run also thro' this City, which has two Churches remarkable before the rest; the Cathedral, dedicated to our Lady, exceeds in handsomness and regularity that of *Paris*; here you see the Tomb of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France* in K. *Henry* the Fourth's time, but the Monument is not answerable to the Grandeur of so high a Person. The Church of S. *Tein* is also a lofty Structure, but chiefly famous for its great Bell.

The Streets of *Roan* are narrow, and their Houses for the most part of Wood and Plaister-work; here it was the *Virgin* burnt the Dame of *Orleans*; this place was the *Rotomagus* of the *Romans*, and the Residence of the Dukes of *Normandy*; it is at present a Bishop's See, and was lately a place of very good Traffick.

Diep. From hence we travel'd thro' a very good Country and bad Road to *Diep*, a pretty little Seaport Town, the Streets whereof are more spacious and regular than those of *Roan*; they are very ingenious here at working in Ivory. The little Harbour lies betwixt two Cliffs, and the River *Arque* runs into it: Anciently it was known by the Names of *Falia bona* and *Deppa*, and then strongly fortified; it has still a good Castle and Wall.

From *Diep* we continued our Journey thro' a little place call'd *Eu*, seated upon the River *Bresse*, which being the common Boundary on that side betwixt *Normandy* and *Picardy*, exonerates it self into the Sea about a league below it.

Near the River's mouth we saw on the Cliffs another small Town call'd *Criel-port*, and so passing thro' *Franche-*

Abbeville. *ville*, came safely to *Abbeville*, a poor old Town, meanly built and extremly dirty, in that part of *Picardy* they call *Ponthieu*. They are noted here for making Guns and Pistols, but they are rather fine than serviceable. It is seated upon the River *Somme*, which falls into the Sea near S. *Valery*, from whence Barks can come up to this City. Before the *French* had made themselves Masters of the Province of *Artois* this was a frontier Town of a considerable strength, and unaccessible in some parts, being almost surrounded by the Fenns. It is also a Bishop's See.

Calais. From hence we travel'd by the way of *Hesdin* (described before in the *Spanish Netherlands*) to *Calais*, from whence we could discover the chalky Cliffs of *Dover*; it is of no great compass, but regularly fortified, and strengthned with a good Citadel; the Townhouse is but small, but the Markerplace spacious: Some Antiquaries would have it be the same mention'd by *Cæsar* in his *Commentaries*, under the Name of *Portus Iccius*, which others explain of *Boulogn*, others of *Dewy*. The loss of it by the *English* is alledg'd the chief cause of our Queen *Mary's* Death.

Charenton. As you travel from *Paris* in a kind of *Dutch Treck-schuyt* along the River *Sein*, you pass by *Charenton*, a curious little place, seated on the Banks of the *Marn* and *Sein*, and once famous for the Privileges the *Protestants* enjoy'd there. Above it is a neat House belonging to the *Madamoiselle*.

Corbeil. The next place is *Corbeil*, of no great consequence, the *Castrum Corbolium* of the *Latins*, call'd by *Cæsar Fisedum* or *Metrosedum* on the *Sein*, where its Waters are mix'd with those of the *Juin* or the *Estampes*.

Higher up, on the River, you see another little place, about four or five leagues from *Corbeil*, call'd *Melun*, (the *Melodunum* of the ancient *Romans*) which gives Title to the Viscounts of a very ancient Family. Here the River *Sein* dividing into two Branches, makes a little Island, which you pass by two good Bridges. The Barge which carries you from *Fountainbleau* down the River to *Paris* being drawn by three or four Horses, runs inten or twelve hours sixteen of their leagues, or about forty eight *English* miles. In the Woods thereabouts I took notice of the *Milyssophillum*, *Orobanche*, *Rapum Genistæ*, Ger. Park. *Cariophillum olens* C. B. our *Broom-rape*, *Polygonatum*, *Lentifol. vulg.* C. B. the *Solomon's Seal*, besides all sorts of Spurges of the *Essula* and *Tythimalus* kind.

The next place we came to from *Fountainbleau* was *Nemours*, having nothing remarkable except that it gave *Nemours.* Title to the ancient Dukes of that Name. Near it is the Abbey of *Surcesson*, of the Order of St. *Bernard*. Here we observ'd the Women of the Town (even such as were in very good habit) to come to the Inns to collect Alms from Travellers for the Poor.

From hence we travel'd on to *Montargis*, an old wall'd *Montargis.* Town, but of no great note, except that being part of the *Demesnes* belonging to the Crown, it gives Title to the King's Brother, who is Duke of *Orleans* and *Montargis*; it has however a very ancient Church, with curious Pillars, and an antique Castle built in the midst of Ruins: The present King's only Brother has laid the Foundation of a Church here, but it remains unfinish'd, there being nothing compleated but a small Portico, in which, on a black Tablet of Marble, is a *French* Inscription with golden Letters, intimating, that he laid the first Stone of this Church in 1677, in memory of his Victories obtain'd in the Battels of *Montcassel*, S. *Omer* and *Buchar*.

From *Montargis* we continued our Journey to *Briare*, *Briare.* whither Cardinal *Richlieu* caus'd a Canal to be brought from *Blesueau*, a tract of twenty miles, and thereby made a Communication betwixt the *Loing* (which falls into the *Sein*) and the River *Loir*, so that by the help of *The Loir.* Sluices Boats can pass thro' all three; the Banks of the *Loir* lying all along on the Flats, as you see near the Seashore, make it a very pleasant River. Near it we found the *Cariophillus marinus*, Ger. Hob. *Juncus* C. B. or the *Sea-Gilliflower*, which is rarely found in Inland Countries, but commonly in Salt Marshes near the Sea-side.

From hence we pass'd thro' *Cosne*, a little place noted *Cosne.* for the making of Knives, and some Mills for polishing Iron and Steel, and so in sight of *le Charité*, an inconsiderable place, to *Nevers*, seated near the conflux of the *Loir* *Nevers.* and the *Nibarre*, the capital of the Territory of *Nivernois*, tho' notwithstanding which the Houses are but meanly built, representing more of Antiquity than Beauty: It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to that of *Sens*, and gives Title to the Counts of *Nevers*, (now in the Family of the Cardinal *Mazarin*) *Cæsar* mentions it under the Name of *Nivernum* or *Noviodunum*.

The next place we came to was *Moulins*, near which *Moulins.* are the so much celebrated Waters of *Bourbon*, even in the time of the *Romans*; they are of the nature of our *Baths* *The Waters of Bourbon.* and those of *Aix la Chapelle*, compos'd of a bituminous substance mix'd with an Alcalisate Salt, which being mix'd with an Acid, causes a fermentation, and produces the same effect on Syrup of Violets as the Salt of Tartar, turning it green. Of late they have been much used inwardly against the *Gout* and other Nervous Distempers.

The before-mention'd Town of *Moulins* is of no great extent, tho' once the Residence of the Family of *Bourbon*, who built a handsom Castle here; the Inhabitants are reputed excellent Workmen in Steel and Iron, Knives and Scissars, &c.

Among their Churches and Convents (of which they have several) those of the *Carthusians* and of the *Visitation* are most remarkable, the last containing the Monument of the great Duke of *Montmorency*, who was sacrific'd to *The Tomb of the Duke of Montmorency* the greatness of the Cardinal *Richlieu*. The whole Chapel consists only of a small Cupola to cover him, his Canopy and Armour is supported by Angels, with his own Effigies and that of his disconsolate Lady lying by him, in an elevated Tomb, with the Statues of *Pallas*, *Hercules*, *Charity* and *Religion*, all of the choicest Marble, much beyond their natural Grandeur, with this Inscription to his memory:

Henrico II. Montmorenciaci Ducum ultimo optimo & maximo, Franciæ Pari, Thalassiarcho, Polemarco, Terrori hostium, Amori suorum.

Maria felix Ursina, ex Romana Stirpe Conjux unice, cui ex immensis viri Divitiis, una amor viventis & defuncti Cineres, fœlicissimo post exactos Conjugii Annos XVIII. *Marito incomparabili, de quo dolere nihil unquam poterat, nisi mortem bene merenti pessit. Ann. Sal.* MIOLII. *Sui luctus* XX.

It is remarkable, that they were forc'd to behead him in the Townhouse, for fear of the Populace, whose Darling he was; his Dutchess was so highly afflicted at his death, that she forsook the World and retir'd into this Monastery, where she ended her days in Tears for the loss of a Husband

Husband she lov'd more than her own Life: I was credibly inform'd by a person who was well acquainted in that Family, that her fondness to the Duke was such, that she would not stick to assist him in his private Amours to gratifie his Desires.

S. Sophorin and Bregile.

We had hitherto travel'd for the most part thro' fertile Plains, but coming near to S. *Sophorin* and *Bresle*, two small places, we pass'd thro' Mountains cover'd with Pines and Firrs, which afforded great variety of Plants; those I took notice of *en passant* were, the *Polygala Lutea*, call'd by *Chabr. Polygala vulg. maj. fol. angustissimus*, a kind of *Milkwort*; the *Myrsophillum* or *wild Baum*; the *Bellis Cærulea Monspel.* tho' growing also in other parts of *France*; *blue Daisies*: In the Woods we observ'd the several Species of *Orchis*, *Spurges* of all kinds, but especially the *Tithymalus Cuprissicus*.

Lyons.

From *Bresle* we soon came to *Lyons*, the largest City of *France* next to *Paris*, seated at the Confluence of the *Soan* and the *Rhosne*; the last runs here with a swift current, and over the first they keep a Chain of Boats link'd together, to prevent Barks from passing by without paying Custom. Its situation was anciently, as well as now, at the conflux of these two Rivers, as appears from a passage in *Seneca*; and that its Name was *Lugdunum* among the *Romans*, is evident from the following Inscription found at *Gayeta* in *Italy*:

L. Minutius 2 L. Fil. L. N. L. Pro N. Plancus
Cos. Cens. Imper. iter. VII. Vir Epulon:
Triumph. ex Rhetis eidem Saturni fec. de manubiis agros divisit in Italia *Beneveriti, in* Gallia *colonias deduxit.* LUGDUNUM *&* *Rauracum.*

Part of the City is built on the Hills of *Tornir* and St. *Sebastian*, the rest along the banks of the Rivers; the Marketplace is handsom, and the Townhouse (lately built) a fine Structure. In the *Carmelites* Church is an Altar of *Agate* and *Lapis Lazuli*; the *Capuchins* have all the pretended Miracles of their Saint painted on the Walls of the Cloyster, among which you see one where he pays his Apothecary with Prayers instead of Money.

The Cathedral.

The Church of S. *John* or S. *Francis* is their Cathedral, compos'd of Gentlemen of the best Families, and formerly boasted of having had several Kings and Princes of their Chapter; they compute, that in the 13th Century they had, at one time, one Son of an Emperour, nine Sons of Kings, fourteen Dukes Sons, thirty of Counts, and twenty of Barons; there belong no less than three Churches to this Chapter, *viz.* that of S. *John* before-mention'd, of S. *Stephen*, and of the *Holy Cross*; in the first is to be seen the Clock so much celebrated for the variety of its Motions and Mechanism. The *Huguenots*, during the Civil Wars, knock'd down many of the Heads of the Saints that were placed to adorn the Front of this Church. Their *Theatres* and *Opera's* are not inferiour here to those of *Paris*; and the *Jesuites* College upon the *Rhosne* is the finest Structure in the whole City, being a regular Quadrangle curiously painted in *Fresco*, which is somewhat defaced on the East side, where the West Winds from the Mountains beat upon it: I found them to perform their publick Exercises much after the same manner as they do at *Paris*. Their Chapel has a fine Altar-piece of *Lapis Lazuli*, and an excellent Piece of Painting by *Blanchard*; who died while we were there.

The Jesuits College.

The Apartment for their Library is spacious and handsom, but the Books not extraordinary, and at that time were all disorder'd, by reason of a late Fire that broke out in the College; they have however some Manuscripts of the Bible, but not very old; and *Pliny's Natural History* and *Decades* finely printed on Vellum about two hundred years ago, all the capital Letters in Miniature, gilt and embellish'd like as we see the old Mass-books: The most valuable Piece of the whole Library is a Manuscript of the same Author's *Natural History*, four or five hundred years old; many obsolete words, such as *illod*, *jocondissimo*, &c. demonstrate it to be a Piece of a considerable antiquity.

The Abbey of Daisne.

The Abbey of *Daisne*, just without the Town, is an ancient piece of Architecture, with very good *Mosaick* Work, the Picture of God the Father (excellently done) being almost defac'd by age. This Abbey is the same place where *Caligula* had erected his *Athenæum* for the improvement of the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, (mention'd by *Suetonius*) Rewards and Punishments being propos'd to such as did either well or ill; to this *Juvenal* alludes,

Palleat ut nudis pressit qui calcibus anguem,
Aut Lugdunensem Rhetor dicturus ad aram.

Here they shew you the so much celebrated Buckler of *Scipio*, which upon due enquiry is so far from being his Buckler, that it is rather a Basin or Dish well gilt and emboss'd; for, according to the ancient form of Armoury, it is too unwieldy, and its concavity within more adapted to the bending of the Arm and covering the Body. Add to this, that all Bucklers, both ancient and modern, have their Ornaments of painting or gilding on the outside, and not within the Concavity; and I remember that talking with Monsr. *Patin*, a great Antiquary of *Padua*, upon this Subject, he was of the same opinion: It being crack'd, it was cramp'd on the Back with small Iron Bars.

The pretended Buckler of Scipio.

They have here a more authentick Piece of Antiquity, I mean the Speech of *Claudius*, who was born here; it is to be seen in the Front-walk of the Townhouse, and the word *illod* for *illud*, and the old *Roman* Punctation betwixt every word, sufficiently shews its antiquity. They have also some Obelisks, but not so ancient as those at *Rome*; that near the *Jacobins* Church is inscrib'd ☽ W ☽. τῷ θεῷ παντοπείαν παρακλητὸ ἱερὸν.

Their St. *Peter's* Nunnery is a fine Foundation, and the Parochial Church of S. *Nizier*, adorn'd with divers fine Pieces of Painting by *le Brun*.

The Prison of the City is built upon a Rock, unto which they have cut out a way with vast charge and difficulty, but 'tis probable that this was rather done to make a way into the Town by the Water-side, it extending perhaps before out into the River, which now runs just by the Street that lies under the Rock. Monsr. *Servie* hath a pretty Cabinet of Curiosities here. This place being seated on the Confines of *Italy*, was one of the best Magazines of the *Romans* in *Gaul*; some of the greatest Men of *Rome* have honour'd it either by their Birth or Abode, besides the Emperour *Claudius*, *Germanicus*, *Geta*, *Caracalla*; and here are still to be seen some Remnants of the *Roman* Antiquities, of their Baths, Aquaducts, and part of an Amphitheatre: At present the King's Treasury for that part of *France* is kept here, and another call'd the *Court of Commerce*.

Two General Councils have been held at *Lyons*, in 1245, under *Innocent* IV, and in 1274, by *Gregory* XI; besides which, they had several Synods here long before, as that assembled by St. *Irenæus* in 197, and another in the time of St. *Cyprian*, under *Faustinus* Bishop of *Lyons*; it was upon this occasion St. *Cyprian* writ that Letter to the Pope, which begins thus, *Faustinus Collega noster Lugduni consistens*, &c. In my walks about the *Carmelites* Church-walls I observ'd the *Fumaria major scandens*, the *large Fumitory*; the *Muscatellina fol. fumariæ bulb. fa.* J. B. or the *Radix cava minor*, Ger. the *Muskwood Crowfoot*; *Bellis major*, the *Enneaphyllon* of *Pliny*, or the *great bastard Hellebore*; the *Hypericum vulg.* C. B. St. *John's Wort*: about the City grows also the *Anchusa Lutea*, a kind of *bastard Gromel* with a yellow Flower. I was not a little surpriz'd to see so fruitful a Soil as all the Country betwixt *Lyons* and *Savoy* (call'd *Dauphiny*) almost destitute of Inhabitants, tho' well enough cultivated in many places, but upon enquiry found that this part of the Country being allotted for Winter-quarters to the *French* Horse, the Peasants used to come thither only in the Spring, to sow the Seed, and in the Summer to reap the product thereof, and so retire into other parts.

This fertile Tract of *Dauphiny* brought us to the utmost Borders of *France* on that side, *viz.* *Pontcheauvesin*, an obscure place seated upon an inconsiderable River call'd *Gyer*, which however is the common Boundary here betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The chiefest Plants of note I observ'd in *Dauphiny* were, the *Valeriana rubr. anguisol.* C. B. the narrow-leaf'd red *Valerian*; the *Radix Rodia* or *Rosewurt*, in great plenty; *Linaria fol. Bellidis* J. B. a kind of *Toad-flax* with a Daisy Flower; *Imperatoria vulg.* or the common *Masterwort*; *Parietaria cerulea quædam*, a sort of blue *Pellitory*; the *Cotaneme fol. Cyani Dalech. fl. Coronop.* J. B. which *Chabræus* would have the *Sisamoides minus Matth.*, a certain Grass with the Leaves of the *Blue-bottles* and Flowers of the *Buckshorn Plantain*.

The Government of France.

Tho' the *French* live under the most Despotical Government in *Europe*, yet are they so fond of it, that they laugh at other Governments which don't come up to that absolute Power, of which they frame themselves such pleasant Imaginations, that in the midst of their Slavery they find out an *Oligarchy* in their Council of State, an *Aristocracy* in their Parliaments, and a *Democracy* in their City Governments, administred by Provosts, Mayors and Merchants, and thereby would introduce into the World the most perfect mixture of a Commonwealth; when, to speak truly, all these different Qualifications make up

but

but one entire Chain of Slavery. They boast of the Policy of *France* as loudly as of their Conquests; and it must be confess'd, that in their Military Affairs they follow in many things the Footsteps of the ancient *Romans*, but want their Honesty and true Generosity.

The People. The Body of the People is compos'd of the Nobility, Husbandmen, Artificers and Traders; the Peasants, being condemn'd to perpetual Drudgery, furnish the Field with Labourers and Soldiers, for when they are suck'd to the very Marrow by the Gentry and Tax-gatherers, they must either chuse to starve at home, or seek for a Livelihood (such a one as it is) in the King's Armies. Artificers and Traders are much encourag'd in *France*, being the Court-Sponges, from whence they squeeze out what Juice they have gather'd before by one means or other: The King commonly picks out the most ingenious among them for his own service, and the rest are imploy'd in converting the Products of *France* into Manufacturies exported into foreign parts.

The Religion and Clergy. The Clergy of *France* has of late been look'd upon with somewhat of a jealous eye by the Laity, both by reason of the encrease of their number, and several Ecclesiastical Usurpations; these Encroachments of the Clergy at home, and the pretended Power from the Popes abroad, has made them revive our Lord *Digby*'s distinction betwixt the Church of *Rome* and the Court of *Rome*, and not to be so fond of the *Jure divino* Doctrin of the Priesthood, but that the Privileges of the *Gallican* Church, and the *Regale*, have been made to give Laws to both; witness the Synod and the Decrees made there in 1682, against Pope *Innocent* XI; the Profession of the *Protestant* Religion being resolv'd on to be rooted out, some were for attempting it by mild ways, which were follow'd at first, but soon chang'd for Fire and Sword, as the most effectual means, either to make 'em fly the Kingdom, or to comply with the King's express Commands. This is differently taken among the *French*, according as they are more or less devoted to that Unchristian Doctrin of the Extirpation of Heresie.

CHAP. IV.

A Description of the Dukedom of Savoy, *and Principality of* Piedmont.

WE were no sooner pass'd the Bridge of *Pontbeauvoisin*, but we were sensible of the difference of the Country; for whereas we had left behind us the fertile Plains of *Dauphiny*, the other side of the Banks of the same River represented to our view the frightful *Alps*, the Precipices whereof would have been more dreadful to us, had not the many Vineyards we found on the first Ascent taken off a great part of the Horrour we had conceiv'd at the first sight of 'em.

The *Alps*. As you ascend the first Rocks, you see and hear the Cataracts of the River *Guyre* among the Precipices, over which you ride by a way cut out and supported by Art: Along this terrible Road I found among the wild Hedges the *Oxyacantha*, the *Privet*, *Ligustrum & Vaccinia nigra*. From this narrow passage you proceed further into the *Alps*, where the Duke of *Savoy* has made a Road thro' the middle of the Rock, near which is erected a Stone with this Latin Inscription:

Carolus Emanuel II.

Subaudiæ Dux. Pedem. Princeps. Cypri Rex. Publicâ fœlicitate partâ, singulorum commodis attentus, breviorem securioremq; viam Regiam, à naturâ occlusam, Romanis intentatam, cæteris desperatam, dejectis scopulorum Repagulis, æquatâ montium iniquitate, quæ Cervicibus imminebant, præcipitia pedibus substernens, æterni populorum Commercii patefecit. Ann. Dom. 1670.

About half-way betwixt this noted Passage and *Chambery* you see a delightful Fall of Water from one of the highest Rocks, which being continued afterwards by three or four more gradual Falls joyning into a Current, and from a vast height spreading it self among the craggy Precipices, produces here a natural, but more pleasant Cascade than all the Art and Expences of *Versailles* are able to afford.

Pic. sent Cascade.

Chambery. From hence we proceeded to *Chambery* thro' a sort of a Valley, (in respect of the other Mountains) a Town not so considerable now as it was in former Ages, when it could boast to be the Residence of the Dukes of *Savoy*, but now has nothing to shew but old Houses and Walls, and a ruin'd Ditch about 'em; it is the *Camariacum* of the *Latins*, and still the capital of the Dutchy of *Savoy*, where their Parliament is conven'd, and the Chamber of Accounts kept: Its situation is on the little River *Orban*, in a sort of a Valley surrounded with Mountains; the Churches and Convents, the Townhouse, Marketplace, and a great number of Fountains, make some tolerable Show. Here we first observ'd what we afterwards found common over all *Italy*, the Houses built so as to jet out into the Streets, and supported by Pillars, which form a sort of Alley or Cloyster, under which you may pass secure from Rain and the heat of the Sun. The Mall without the Town is not unhandsom.

Another such a Plain brought us to *Montmelian*, a place of great strength both by Nature and Art, in *Savoy*, seated on a high Rock at such a convenient distance from the adjacent Mountains, that tho' they overlook it, they don't command it; the River *Hero* runs by the Town that bears the same Name with the Castle, with an impetuous Current, and joyning with the *Arche*, another rapid River made by the melted Snow, falls into the *Rhosne* at *Arbigny*, a little place above *Montmelian*, as the *Isere* does at *Grenoble*, the accession of these rapid Rivers being the true occasion of the impetuous course of that River. This Fortress is the Key of the Mountains on this side, as *Susa* is on the other; but notwithstanding its strength, it was taken by the *French* in 1691. *Montmelian.*

The Country hereabouts being all mountainous, hath a very indifferent prospect, except some few Valleys, which seem to promise something of fertility; and the People looking as meagre and dejected as the Soil was barren, they seem'd to be made for one another, and adapted to that Slavery they are forced to suffer from their Prince, who has model'd his Government after that of *France*.

We had scarce pass'd the River *Isere* at *Montmelian*, but we came into a Valley much more pleasant than any we had yet met with in *Savoy*, and continuing our way towards *Argentier*, we met the roaring River *Arche*, which at that time (it being Midsummer) was so swell'd by the melted Snow from the Mountains, that we were forced to leave the ordinary Road near the Water-side, and instead thereof, climb up a dreadful Precipice call'd by them Mount *Grety* or *Grezy*, as high if not higher than the noted Mount *Cenis* it self. On the middle Region of this Mountain you see a few small Farm-houses, there being thereabouts some cultivated Ground, which you can perceive below, but when you come to it, you find another Mountain rising upon the former like *Pelion* upon *Ossa*: The Froth and Sediments which are by the impetuosity of the River *Arche* forc'd down from the Mountains, makes its Waters appear in the Valley as black as Pitch, almost like the Washes of Dyehouses. The Rive Arche. Mount Grey.

We kept however along the Current of this River for some time thro' *Argentier*, *Esperies*, and *la Chambrey*, inconsiderable places; and we no sooner left the last, but we were forc'd (as we told you before) to climb up the Mount *Grety*, by reason of the Inundation of the River *Arche*, the descent whereof brought us to S. *John Maurienne*, once the chief City of the *Medulli*, and an Archbishop's See, which gave the Title of Earls of *Moriene* to the Dukes of *Savoy*. Argentier. Esperies. La Chambre. S. John Maurienne.

From hence we went on to St. *Michael*, a low watery place: On the top of the Mountain I observ'd as well as I could the *Mentha Cattaria montana*, *Valeriana Alpin. Lacifol. Valerian. Alpina Angustifol.* the *Caryophill. Alpin. minimus*; the small *Mountain Pink* of the *Alps*; afterwards I found it in great plenty on another Hill.

St. Mi-

St. *Michael*

St. *Michael* was formerly a Convent, but now only a Village, near the banks of the River *Arche*, which they pass over hereabouts by Bridges of Timber made of the Trunks of young Firr and Pines, laid athwart, which being round and ill joyn'd, tremble under your Feet as you pass 'em.

St. *Andre*.

The next place we came to was St. *Andre*, an inconsiderable Town seated among the Mountains; just over against it is such another Cascade or high Waterfall, but not altogether so diverting as that near *Chambery*. The Current of this River, render'd impetuous by the various Waterfalls, is almost like the Torrents of our Mill-tails, but more foul, swift and furious. I took notice hereabouts of the *Absinth. Latifol. Ponticum* or *Rom.* and the *Absinth. tenuifol. minus*, which some would have to be the *Absinth. Commune minus* of *Gesner* and *Gerard*. Above St. *Andre* the River *Arche* is, at a place call'd *Termignon*, augmented by a certain Chanel of Water coming from another part of the Mountains, which brought us to *Lasiebourgh* or *Lanscbourgh*, a place that has nothing remarkable, except its situation at the foot of the noted Mount *Cenis*: Here crossing the River *Arche*, we took our leave of it, which rises about two leagues above this place with a pure but small source, and hereabouts affords as well-tasted *Trouts* as our best Rivers.

Lasiebourgh.

The Mount *Cenis*.

We were now come to the passage of Mount *Cenis*, (the *Cinisium* of the Ancients) which we perform'd by the help of Mules we were furnish'd with at *Lasiebourgh*. This Mount exceeds in height those of S. *Goddard* and *Sampion*, by which you enter *Italy* from the side of *Switzerland*: Mount *Cenis* being in some places cover'd with Pine and Fir-trees from the top to the bottom, ascending regularly one above another with the gradual rising of the Mountain, affords the most natural Grove that can either be devis'd by Art or expres'd by the Pencil. About *May* these Mountains open their vast Storehouses of Snow, which melting by degrees till *October*, (when they begin to harden again) make the Rivers swell hereabouts in the heat of the Summer, when the Sources of most other Rivers are very near exhausted.

The Passage of Mount *Cenis*, notwithstanding its height, is not very unpleasant; the Precipices being not so perpendicular as the rest, gave our Eyes liberty to look about with less trouble, and the slowness of our Cattle (which made me walk on foot) allow'd me sufficient opportunity to expatiate a little way out of the Road, and to take notice of a great many Plants, but having lost the said Collection at Sea, I can only give such as I accidentally remembred and since set down, *viz.*

Plants on it.

the *Caryoph. Alpin. minor* in prodigious quantities; the *Geranan. Columbinum*, and what is more remarkable, the *Geran. Argent. Alpinum*; the Cranes-bill; the *Hyacinth. Caruleus Ger.* or *Racemosus carul. minor*, C. B. *Funcifol.* toward the bottom out of flower; *Calceolus Mariæ, ad Ger. Elleborine major.* Park. *Jcell. flor. rotund.* C. B. About the bottom, *Helleborine flor. alb.* C. B. or *Damasonium Alpinum* J. B. the little, wild, white *Hellebore*; *Iris fl. albo*; the great white-flower'd *Iris*, or *Flower de Luce* wild; the *Herba Paralysis* or *Paralytica Alpina*, out of flower; the *Caryophillat. Montan.* or *Caryophillat. Alpin. Lutea*; *Casp.* B. *yellow Mountain*; *Avens, flos Caryophill. Alpinus pumilio dictus*; the little Dwarf-mountain Pink, or rather a *Lychnis* agreeing with the description of *Ger.* who from its *Calix* calls it of the *Lychnis* kind; *Sedum Alpinum, Exigui fol.* C. B. *Sedum Alpin. minim. flor. carneo, Schol. Botan. Helleborus niger*, Lob; *verus* Park. Ger. *fl. Albo & Atro rubente*; the *black Hellebore*, *Gentian. maj. fl. lut.* &c.

I took this opportunity to make a strict examination of the Snow as it lay incrustrated in hard Cakes on the very top of the Mountains; some of these are such as have lain there for several years, the Sunbeams not being able quite to dissolve 'em, by reason of their vast thickness.

In the midst of the top of Mount *Cenis*, near the Road, (which is flank'd by other higher Rocks) you see a pretty large Lake, gather'd questionless by the melted Snows, as the coldness of the Water seems to testifie; in the midst of it the Duke has a very handsom House, and another just by the Road, one for Devotion (of which the Priests take care) and the other for his Diversion, which lies almost in ruins by neglect. Here it is you take Chairs to descend the Mountain, being only wooden Chairs carried by two Poles; with this carriage you are convey'd down the rocky Precipices, which are however not so dangerous or dreadful as some have represented them; for tho' your Horses are led about a further way, you may descend for the most part without much difficulty on foot, which I chose rather to do than be jolted in these uneasie Chairs.

A Lake on Mount *Cenis*.

Its Hospital.

Here is also a little Hospital for such as fall sick by the way, and a small Chapel to bury such as perish in the Snow, from thence call'd the *Transis*. The Plain on the top of this Mountain (which is about four miles long) has also an Inn for the accommodating Passengers, suitable to the circumstances of the place: The ascent is likewise four miles, but the descent no more than two.

Novalese has not any thing remarkable, except its being the utmost Frontier of *Savoy* near the River *Semæ*, which joyns its Waters with the *Doria* at *Susa*; where begins *Novalese.*

The Principality of Piedmont,

Having got its Name from its Situation at the foot of the Mount *Cenis*, the highest of all the *Alps*.

Susa, the first Town on this side of the Mountains, is seated at the Confluence of the two little Rivers *Semar* and *Doria*, which however often swell considerably by the Waterfalls from the Mountains, tho' they run not with so impetuous a Current as the River *Arche*: It was the *Segasium* or *Segovium* of the Ancients, where *Coctius* King of the *Allobroges* was interr'd, one of the seven Marquisses created by the Emperour *Otho*. It is a strong place, tho' its Fortifications were somewhat neglected at that time, notwithstanding which it is reckon'd (and not without reason) the Gate into *Italy* from *France*, which is the reason that the *French* held it a long time, and always will look upon it with a wishful eye. The Town it self, as I told you, was not well kept at that time, its chiefest strength consisting in its Castle, seated upon an adjacent Rock, which commands both the Avenues of the Town and the famous Pass of *Susa*, so remarkable in our time by the *French* breaking thro' no less than twelve several Barriers made by the Duke of *Savoy* to defend that passage into *Piedmont*. *Susa.*

The Plains of *Turin.*

Immediately after our coming out of *Susa*, we perceiv'd the Hill to open by degrees, which brought us into the most fertile and pleasant Plain of *Turin*; for passing by S. *Ambrosio* and *Rivoli*, one of the Duke's Country-houses seated in an excellent Air, we kept along the Banks of the River *Doria* till we came to Mount St. *Michael*, the utmost Branch of the *Alps* on that side, on the top whereof stands a Convent, but being a very solitary place, it remains uninhabited. From hence you have a most delightful prospect of the Plain that brings you to *Turin*.

The flying Glow-worm.

Hereabouts I first took notice of the flying *Glow-worm*, which is to be seen glittering in the dusky Evenings in great swarms, with large streams of light, which appear very surprizing to a Traveller that is ignorant of the true cause of it: These Insects are frequently to be met with in *Jamaica* and other places of the *West-Indies*, being only small Flies cover'd with scaley Wings and Backs, of the Beetle or *Scarabæus* kind; the colour of their Body is brown, but the extremity as well of the Tail as Head white or yellowish, in which is contain'd the *Noctiluca*. Upon this rugged Mountain we met the Train and Baggage of the Marquess of *Lavardin*, late *French* Ambassadour to Pope *Innocent* XI, who after he had in vain contested for the *Franchises* and *Regalia*, was now forced to return home, to give his Master an account of the resolute Temper of the Father of *Christendom* toward his *Most Christian* Son. What we took peculiar notice of (and which made no small noise upon the Road) was, that the Marquesses Coach-horses Tails had been cut by the way, which by some was interpreted as done by the *Italians*, in derision of his ill success at the Court of *Rome*.

Turin.

We were no sooner come into an Inn at *Turin*, but a certain *Franciscan* Frier of *Chambery* pull'd out of his Wallet two or three Satyrs upon the holy Father, which he seem'd mightily delighted with, and had brought them as far as from *Lyons*, tho' they were much more satyrical than witty, especially one call'd *The Pater Noster of the holy Father*.

The City of *Turin* (the *Taurinum* or *Augusta Taurinorum* of the *Romans*) was, according to some, built before our Saviour's Nativity: Its Walls are somewhat ancient, but the Citadel lately built is a regular Fortification of five Bastions, near the River *Po*. It is populous, but not very large; the old Houses are but indifferently built, but the new Street, and the Square in the midst of it, very handsom and uniform. Upon the Cathedral of St. *John* they were then erecting a fine Cupola, where they keep the Sheet in which (they say) our Saviour was wrapt up after his Crucifixion, and in which he was buried.

The Duke's Palace.

The Duke's Palace is not very spacious nor magnificent, but conveniently built, the new Street leading to it, and the Apartments are adorn'd with fine Tapestrys and Paintings by the best Masters, especially those in the Gal-

lery,

lery, as *Michael Angelo*, *Raphael*, *Paul Veroneſe*, *Baſſan*, and the Original of *Titian's* Laſt Supper; thoſe in the Bedchamber are of the hand of *Albani*. The Statue of *Amideus* on Horſeback, near the Staircaſe, is an excellent Piece; as likewiſe the Stairs, the Library, and ſome other Works. In his preſent Royal Highneſs's minority the *French* were Maſters of the Citadel of this City, by his conſent, but would not redeliver it till they had an Equivalent (*viz.* the City of *Pignerol*) put into their hands.

The Palace call'd *Valentin.*

From the Town down to the Banks of the *Po* a Walk of Elms of a mile in length brings you to the Dutcheſs Dowagers Palace call'd *Valentin*, finely furniſh'd with Paintings and Hangings, repreſenting all ſorts of Flowers, Birds, Fiſhes, and four-legg'd Beaſts that can be nam'd. The *Venery* is one of the Duke's Hunting-houſes. At one end of the Town are ſtill to be ſeen the Ruins of an old Caſtle of Brick, which they tell you was built before our Saviour's time. It is an Archbiſhop's See, and they have a ſmall Univerſity here, noted for one thing in particular, that the learned *Eraſmus* took his Degrees of Divinity here. They have alſo ſome Manuſcripts in the Duke's Library, and boaſt that the Art of Printing was brought hither into *Italy*; which, conſidering its ſituation, may not be altogether improbable.

From *Turin* we travel'd thro' a low and level Country full of little Rivers, and conſequently ſubject to Inundations, to *Chivazzo*, (an inconſiderable place) leaving the *Po* on the right, and croſſing the Rivers *Cerouda*, *Stura*, *Baltia*, &c. by the way, near the Road-ſide, I took notice of the *Hypericum* and *Aſcyron* J. B. *Anagallis flor. rubro, purpureo, Phœnicio*, J. B. *Alcea frutex ſive fruticoſa*; *Trif. fragiferum*, or *fragiferum Friſicum* C. B. the *Strawberry Trefoil*; the *Stramonium peregrinum fl. albo*; the *Thorn-Apple* with white Flowers. At the paſſage of a little River call'd *Donbo* I found the *Centaurium minimum lut.* perhaps the *Paluſtre luteum*; as alſo the *Minus vulgare fl. purpureo & albo*, the *yellow*, *white* and *purple Century*; and on the oppoſite bank the *Lychnis Coronaria fl. albo & rubro*, *white* and *red Campions*.

Vercelli.

Moſt of the Rivers we croſs'd, as the *Doria*, *Cerouda*, *Choria*, *Baltia*, *Servo*, *Orco* and *Seſia*, exonerate themſelves into the *Po*: Upon the two laſt is ſeated *Vercelli*, a place of note, and the chief Frontier Town of *Piedmont* on the *Milaneſe* ſide, in a delightful Plain, having formerly belong'd to that Dukedom, till it was beſtow'd upon *Amedeus* III. Duke of *Savoy*, in Dowry with *Blanch* the Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Milan*. The Fortifications conſiſt of five regular Baſtions, with treble Ramparts and Ditches. Hereabouts it was the *Lybici*, *Salaſſi*, and *Taurini* inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, when *Vercelli* (belonging to the *Latins*) was in a flouriſhing condition, but now is not very populous, becauſe the Taxes in *Piedmont* are even heavier than in the *Spaniſh* Dominions in *Italy*.

The Cathedral is a very ancient *Gothick* Fabrick, and you ſee ſome of theſe Characters on a certain Tomb in that Church: They have alſo a Monumental Piece of Panegyrick, erected in memory of an Indulgence granted them by Pope *Gregory* XIII, with a very good Piece of *Freſco-work* in it, beſides ſome other Antiquities. A Council was held here in 1050, by Pope *Leo* IX, who ſummon'd hither *Berangerius* an Archdeacon of *Angers*, for denying the Body of our Saviour to be tranſubſtantiated into the Elements, but he did not think fit to appear.

About *Turin* and *Vercelli* I took notice of theſe Plants wild, *Doronicum vulgare* J. B. or *Majus Officinarum*, Ger. the common *Leopards-Bane*, the *Hepaticam Trifol.* Lobel. cultivated in our Gardens by the name of *Noble Liverwort*, or *Hepatica*; the *Hyacinthus Botryodes* or *Grape Hyacinth*, growing likewiſe in our Gardens.

I thought fit to treat of theſe Dukedoms ſeparately from *Italy*, as belonging more properly to the *Alps*, *Savoy* lying in the mountainous part, and *Piedmont* being the Plain at the foot of them.

The Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants were in the time of the *Romans* known by the Name of the *Allobroges*, the moſt powerful among them; and as the roughneſs of the Country they inhabit makes them robuſt, they have maintain'd themſelves againſt their more potent Neighbours, tho' perhaps this ought to be aſcrib'd to the advantage of their Situation rather than their Valour; for, conſidering that they inhabit for the moſt part in the Valleys, into which the melted Snow carries along with it the ſcowrings of the Mountains, theſe occaſion in the Bottoms (tho' the Air be never ſo fine on the Hills) foggy Vapours, which ſtagnating betwixt the Hills for want of due ventilation, render the Air thick and unwholſom, and their Bodies ſluggiſh.

The Duke ſtiles himſelf (beſides the Title of *Savoy*) King of *Cyprus* and Prince of *Piedmont*, as alſo *Vicario Generale del Imperio in Italia*, a Title that only declares his ſubjection to the Empire. This Duke's Father, *Emanuel* the Second, at the interceſſion of the Cantons of *Zurich* and *Bern*, declar'd himſelf very favourable to the *Proteſtants* inhabiting theſe Valleys in about thirteen or fourteen Villages, to the number of fifteen thouſand Souls, who had maintain'd their Religion in the midſt of the *Roman Catholicks* for above twelve hundred Years.

The Vaudois.

As *Piedmont* is a plentiful Country, ſo Proviſions are generally very cheap here: The Duke's Revenue is by ſome computed at a Million of Gold, by others of Silver, and that he is able (without dreining his Gariſons) to bring into the Field thirty thouſand Foot and five thouſand Horſe.

The preſent Duke (notwithſtanding his arbitrary ſway) is highly belov'd by his Subjects; and it muſt be confeſs'd that he is a comely and active Prince, tho' it were to be wiſh'd that in ſome of his late Actions he had ſhewn more Generoſity and Sincerity than he has, in reſpect to the Confederacy and the before-mention'd *Vaudois*, who ſignaliz'd themſelves ſo well in his Service.

The

The Ingenious

LETTERS

OF

The Lady's —— Travels

INTO

SPAIN:

GIVING

An Account of the Devotions, Nunneries, Humour, Customs, Laws, Militia, Trade, Dyet, and Recreation of the *Spaniards*; being the truest and best Remarks extant of that Court and Country.

WITH

An Additional LETTER concerning the State of *Spain* in the Year 1700.

LETTER I.

Bayonne. IN my last I gave you account of what hapned of moment in our Journey to *Bayonne*, the last Town of *France* on the *Spanish* Frontiers, upon the Rivers *Dadour* and *Nivelle*: It is defended by two strong Castles, and has many pleasant Walks about it, being a place of considerable Traffick. Whilst I staid for the Litters that were to be sent from St. *Sebastian*, several of the Ladies of the Town came to visit me, who were of a very dark Complexion, but with sparkling Eyes, and a certain Vivacity of Wit: I was surpriz'd to see them bring along with 'em small sucking Pigs with Collars of Ribbons of divers colours about their Necks, which they diverted themselves with instead of our Lap-dogs.

Their manner of dancing. They having an inclination to dance, some Pipes and Tabors were sent for; and it was no unpleasant sight to see every one of the Gentlemen who attended the Ladies take one of them, and so with their Hands joyn'd dance around together: Afterwards long Canes being brought in, each Gentleman took hold of his Lady's Handkerchief, and thus they made so many Turns, Frisks, and Capers, (throwing at the same time the Canes into the Air, and catching 'em again) that I was not a little surpriz'd at their activity. Monsr. *de S. Pe*, the King's Lieutenant, invited me to a Dinner in the Castle facing the River, where I was very handsomly entertain'd, in the company of several Ladies, invited on purpose to bear me company, who were very handsom.

Civilities. At my return to my Lodgings I was not a little surpriz'd, to find the Ladies had sent me several Baskets of dried Sweetmeats, tied up in very fine Pieces of Linen, the finest Linen in the World being made in this Country; and I observ'd in our passage thro' the Villages near *Bourdeaux*, the Peasants, who else live most wretchedly, to have as fine Napkins as Persons of the best Quality at *Paris*. I return'd their Civilities with some Trifles, as Fans and Ribbons, of the last of which they are extreamly fond, and wear 'em on their Heads and Ears; in lieu of which they presented me again with Gloves and Thred-Stockings curiously knit: They would also regale me with a Consort of Musick in one of the adjacent Chapels, but tho' their Voices were good, they wanted both Air and Skill.

The Litters being come, I prepar'd for my departure: Each of these Litters has a Master, who looks as big as a Lord, mounted on a Mule, with a Servant upon another, in order to relieve those that carry the Litter at certain times, which makes Travelling very chargable here.

Having not without a great deal of difficulty got clear of the Custombouse Officers, we set out on our Journey, but were pursued by the Town-Musick, consisting of Drums, Trumpets, Pipes, &c. quite out of S. *Anthony*'s Gate, which made such a confused noise, that I was glad to buy 'em off with a piece of Money from pursuing me any further.

We had no sooner left *Bayonne*, but we travel'd over a barren Heath, having nothing but Chesnut-trees, but afterwards passed along the sandy Sea-shore, which brought us to St. *John de Luz*, the largest Burrough in *France*, and in that respect, as well as of the goodness of its Buildings, may compare with many of its Cities: Its situation is both pleasant and commodious, betwixt two Mountains, at the entrance of the River *Nivelle*, and Ships of a great burthen may come up to the very Key. We were well and cheap entertain'd here, especially with Wild-fowl, but their Beds were very bad. In the Market-

St. *John de Luz.*

place ſtands a fine Church of a modern faſhion, and the wooden Bridge which carries you croſs the *Nivelle* is of a great length. The Cuſtomhouſe Officers made us pay for every thing, not excepting our Wearing Apparel.

I took alſo a view of the ſtrong Caſtle of *Arion*, and a little further paſs'd by *Orognes*, where they begin to ſpeak the *Biſcayan* Jargon, being neither *Spaniſh* nor *French*. The badneſs of the way and weather oblig'd us to ſtay all night near the Banks of the River *Bidaſſoa*, the common Boundary betwixt *France* and *Spain*; its Stream is but ſmall, except when it overflows its Banks by the melted Snows, and we did not paſs it without difficulty. All this way from *Bayonne* they have a kind of light Carriage drawn by Oxen, with two Iron Wheels, which make a great noiſe at a diſtance. It being a Moonlight Night, they ſhew'd me the Iſle where the Marriage of our King was concluded upon with the *Infanta* of *Spain*. I paſs'd afterwards in ſight of the Fort of *Fontarabia*, ſeated at the mouth of this little River, belonging to the King of *Spain*, tho' the *French* as well as the *Spaniards* take Toll here, the firſt from thoſe that go into *Spain*, as the others do from thoſe that are bound for *France*.

The River *Bidaſſoa*.

Fontarabia

The Country call'd *Biſcay* is very mountainous, but abounds in good Iron Mines; the Inhabitants are very nimble and active, and their Jargon is a poor ſort of Speech, ſo that one word ſignifies ſeveral things.

Biſcay.

Coming on the other ſide of the River, my Banker, unto whom I had Letters of Credit, met me there, from S. *Sebaſtian's*, with two of his Relations, dreſs'd after a very odd faſhion, half *French* and half *Spaniſh*, and their Compliments were as inſipid as their Clothes.

We continued our Journey thro' the little Burrough of *Tran*, about an *Engliſh* mile from the River, and as much further came to *Iran*, the firſt Town of *Spain* on that ſide; it was extreamly ill built, the Streets very uneven, and we were forc'd to go into our Inn thro' the Stable, where were alſo the Stairs that brought us up into our Bedchamber: They had ſet up above forty Candles, upon little pieces of Wood, but no bigger than Packthreds, and in the middle a Pan of Coals of the Bark of Olive-trees, to qualifie the ſcent of the Candles. Our Supper was ſo high ſeaſon'd with Garlick, Saffron, and Spice, that I was forc'd to have recourſe to my Cook for a little *Regou*.

Tran.

Intending the next day to go no further than S. *Sebaſtien*, I dined before we ſet out, when one of my Women bringing my Watch to wind up, (which coſt me fifty *Louis d'Ors*) the Banker look'd ſo earneſtly upon it, that I could not but give it into his hands, in order to ſatisfie his Curioſity; which I had no ſooner done, but the old Spark made me a deep Reverence, with a thouſand Thanks for ſo conſiderable a Preſent, which he ſaid he would keep as long as he liv'd, and ſo put it into his Pocket: My Servants were ſurpriz'd, and I my ſelf out of countenance, not knowing what to do, but conſidering that I ſhould have occaſion for him hereafter, I thought it beſt to let him keep it: Upon enquiry, all the ſatisfaction I had was, that it is the Cuſtom in *Spain*, that when you deliver any thing into one's Hand, he may kiſs your Hand and keep it if he likes it.

Not long after we had left the Town, we entred the *Pyrenean* Mountains, the Precipices of which ſtruck us both with horrour and amazement: After we had paſs'd over ſeveral of 'em, *Don Antonio* (ſo was the Banker's Name) deſir'd me to change my Litter for a Boat, (being the more convenient paſſage) which I did accordingly, and in little Boats adorn'd with gilt Streamers and manag'd by Girls, two for the Oars, and one for the Steerage, were carried down to the very mouth of the River *Andaye*, where we ſaw three fine large Galeons riding at Anchor.

Female Rowers.

Theſe young Wenches live in ſmall Hutts along the Water-ſide, under the tuition of ſome old Maidens of their own Gang, (whom they much reſpect) they are generally of a brown Complexion, well ſhap'd, with white Teeth and black Hair, ty'd up on the Back with Ribbons in Knots; they cover their Heads and Breaſts with a kind of Veil of Muſlin flower'd with Gold and Silk; in their Ears they have Pendants of Gold and Pearl, and Bracelets of Coral; their Habit was chiefly a kind of cloſe-bodied Coat with very ſtrait Sleeves, which together with their gay Air and Countenance, was very natural and becoming. They told us, that they are a kind of a little Commonwealth among themſelves, whither they are ſent away very young by their Parents from the adjacent Countries, and that they ſuffer no Men, nor Women that ever have known Men, among 'em; but if they have a mind to marry, they go to *Fonterachia*, and after they have choſen a Husband, relinquiſh this Society. A ſcurvy buſineſs had like to have hapned betwixt my Cook and one of theſe female Rowers, who being a rough Fellow, would have turn'd up her Veil, in recompence for which ſhe broke his Head with the Oar, but the matter was compos'd by the interceſſion of *Don Antonio* our Banker and a little Money.

Here the Ways began to be ſo rough, the Paths ſo narrow, and the Precipices ſo dreadful, that I was not a little afraid of my Mules; when paſſing over a large ſandy Plain, we came to the Convent of S. *Francis*, near the River *Andaye*, which we paſs'd over a long wooden Bridge, and tho' very near S. *Sebaſtian*, we could not ſee it, by reaſon of a ſandy Mount that lay betwixt us and the Town, which is ſeated at the foot of a Mountain that on one ſide ſerves it for a Rampart againſt the Sea, where the Veſſels ſhelter themſelves cloſe to the foot of the Mount againſt the Tempeſts, which are frequent and violent here: The paſſage into the Haven is deep, enclos'd betwixt two Moles, no larger than affords a convenient paſſage for one Veſſel at a time: The Caſtle that defends the entrance is a ſquare Tower, well provided with Cannon, ſeated upon an Eminency, as are alſo the Walls and Baſtions of the Town facing the Sea-ſide.

The Pyrenean Hills.

S. *Sebaſtian*.

This Town is ſituate in the Province of *Guipuſcoa*; the Streets are long and broad, pav'd with a large white Stone, the Houſes tolerably good, and their Churches handſom enough, their Altars of Wood, hung with little Pictures from top to bottom. This Country abounds in Mines of the fineſt and beſt Iron and Steel in the World, and this, together with their Wool-trade, (which is brought hither for Tranſportation out of *Caſtile*) makes it a place of conſiderable Traffick, *Bilboa* and S. *Sebaſtian* being the two chiefeſt Ports the King of *Spain* is Maſter of on the Ocean; this is queſtionleſs the reaſon why every thing is ſo exceſſive dear here, tho' they have plenty of Fiſh and Fruit.

As I lay in the beſt Inn of the Town, it was not long before a certain Perſon of Quality nam'd D. *Ferdinand de Toledo*, a Nephew to the Duke of *Alva*, happening to paſs that way in his Journey from *Flanders* to *Madrid*, gave me a Viſit, and offer'd to encreaſe my Train, which I gladly accepted, conſidering that his Quality would ſtand us in good ſtead upon the Road; ſo, notwithſtanding the Entreaties of ſeveral Ladies of Quality, who would have ſtaid me ſome time longer, we ſet out the next day after, having ſufficiently provided our ſelves with Gammons of Bacon and dry'd Tongues, to ſerve us in our Journey in ſuch places (of which there are many) where we were not likely to meet with any freſh Proviſions.

Before I conclude I muſt tell you, that this Town has a peculiar Privilege belonging to it, *viz.* that when their Deputies are admitted into the King's preſence, he is to ſpeak to them bareheaded. I am

S. Sebaſtian, Feb. 20.
1679.

Yours, &c.

LETTER II.

LEaving S. *Sebaſtian*, a rough way brought us to a terrible ſteep Mountain call'd *Sierra de S. Adrian*, on the top whereof you ſee a whole Wood of tall Pine-trees, and in the middle a Rock higher than all the reſt, which ſeparates *Biſcay* from *Old Caſtile*, from whence you ſee nothing on all ſides but Deſarts water'd with pure Cryſtalline Rivulets. This Rock being placed in the middle of the top of the Mountain, a Stone Vault has been cut thro' it of about fifty paces long, where you ſee no Day-light except what comes in at both ends, which are ſhut up with Doors. In this Vault is an Inn in the Summer-time, and a little Chapel call'd S. *Adrian's*.

Sierra de S. Adrian.

After we had paſs'd this Vault, we ſtill aſcended to the higheſt top of the Mountain, which is reckon'd the higheſt among all the *Pyrenean* Hills, and all overcover'd with Aſh-trees, from whence you have a proſpect wounded only by the want of each of your Eyeſight, which, together with the agreeable ſhade and divers Cryſtalline Brooks, make it the fineſt place of Solitude that can be conceiv'd.

We began to deſcend afterwards, where we met ſometimes with little barren Plains intermix'd with Rocks, and with the River *Utrola*, which dividing it ſelf into divers Branches, fall with a great force and pleaſing noiſe in among the Rocks. We ſaw here and there a few Shepherds Hutts; and the Snow being deeper at this time than

than it had been in forty years before, twenty Men were always imploy'd in making way for our Company, and that without any considerable charge, the Inhabitants hereabouts being oblig'd to be the Traveller's Guides and Guardians, without any other Reward than what their Liberality is pleas'd to bestow upon 'em; and our Retinue was so numerous, that we resembled almost one of the Eastern Caravans; for besides my Train and that of Don *Ferdinand de Toledo*, three Knights more (*viz.* two of *Andalusia*, and one of *Catalonia*) travel'd along with us. We took up our Lodgings that night at *Golarate*, a small Burrough near Mount S. *Adrian*, seated in the little Province of *Alava*.

The Road betwixt this place and *Victoria* began to be better and better, as well as the Country, which yields great store of Corn and Grapes, and is full of small Villages. Don *Ferdinand de Toledo* having told me a thousand Stories about a certain Castle call'd *Quebara* we were to pass by, which they tell you is haunted by Spirits, we struck off a little to the left, to the Burrough of the same name: Our Innkeeper having the Keys to it, at last gave us entrance, tho' not without many fearful Protestations and Forewarnings of the Danger we were likely to undergo: We found it a very handsom Fabrick, tho' it was unfurnish'd, there being nothing left but some old Tapestry Hangings in a great Hall, in which were represented the Amours of Don *Pedro*, sirnam'd *the Cruel*, and Donna *Maria de Padilla*: We had the curiosity to go up into the Tower, on the top whereof was a Dungeon, which they said was the ordinary place of residence of the Spirit, who would perhaps not be seen at that time in so great a company.

The haunted Castle of Quebara.

From hence pursuing our Journey, we pass'd thro' a delightful Plain towards *Victoria*, the Capital of the fore-mention'd Province of *Alava*, surrounded only with two Walls, one old and the other new: In the Marketplace we saw about two hundred young Lads divided in four Companies, marching with Drums and Trumpets several times round, after which they fell to pelting one another with Snowballs, with so much eagerness, that they seem'd to be engag'd in a mortal Quarrel.

Victoria.

After I had taken a little rest, I was invited to a Play. The Theatre was rais'd upon old Barrels, cover'd with some very bad Boards; instead of Candles, they had set open the Windows to let in the light; they were to represent the Story of S. *Anthony*, who when he said his *Confiteor* (which he did several times) the Spectators fell down upon their Knees and knock'd themselves against their Breasts, as if they had been going to beat the Breath out of their Bodies. I observ'd, among the rest, that the Devil was only distinguish'd from the rest by a pair of flame-colour'd Stockins, and a pair of Horns on his Head. This, as well as all their other Comedies, consisted only of three Acts, and betwixt each of these Acts they represent a Farce, in which he call'd *El Gracioso*, or the *Buffoon*, acts the chief Part: These Interludes are intermix'd with Dances to the Harps or Goitars, which are generally Sarabrands, the Dancer performing them with Castanets and a little Hat on his Head: They have some peculiar motions, especially of their Hands, which they do with no ill grace.

A Spanish Play.

I will defer speaking of their Habits till I come to *Madrid*; yet I can't forbear telling you, that all the Ladies I saw here had bedaub'd their Faces with red Paint from the Eyes to the very Chin and Ears.

The Piazza or Marketplace of *Victoria* has a very noble Fountain in the middle, and round about it you see a Townhouse, the Prison, two Convents, and several handsom private Houses. They have a new and an old Town, but most People live in the first: Their Merchants are very rich here, their Traffick being chiefly in Iron, which they send to S. *Sebastian*, *Bilboa*, *Granada*, *Estremadura*, *Gallicia*, and other places. Their chiefest Streets are planted with Trees, and water'd with a Current. It lies seven leagues distant from Mount S. *Adrian*. I am

Victoria, Feb. 24. 1673. Yours, &c.

LETTER III.

FROM *Victoria* we travel'd to *Miranda*, where we lay that night, the Country being extreamly pleasant as far as *Aviguy*, but afterwards, near the banks of the River *Trola*, are much more troublesom; the natural Cascades, or Falls of the Water, occasion'd by the Rocks in this River, afford an agreeable diversion both to the Eyes and Ears.

We continued still to ascend the *Pyreneas*, (a very dangerous passage) where we saw near *Gargason* the Ruins of another haunted Castle, of which the *Alcade* or Mayor of the Burrough told us a long Tale, of a King's Daughter who died here for Love. Here we pass'd the River *Trola* over a handsom Stone Bridge, and not long after over another, and so came to *Miranda d'Ebro*, a little Town upon the River *Ebro*, (one of the best in *Spain*) with a pretty strong Castle seated on the top of a Mountain, with several old Towers. It has a spacious Marketplace, and a handsom Fountain in the middle of it. From the Rock on which the Castle stands flows a Rivulet with so strong a Current that it turns several Mills.

Miranda d'Ebro.

It being not very late when we came to our Inn, Don *Ferdinando* and the two *Andalusian* Knights went to play at *Ombre*, which they did without speaking one word, let the Cards run for or against 'em: In the mean while Don *Fred. de Cardenne*, the *Catalonian* Knight, entertain'd me with the rehearsal of certain Curiosities relating to his Country; he told me of a Salt Mountain there as transparent as Crystal, of a green, violet, and many other colours, which loseth its tincture as soon as it is wet; and what is more surprizing, that upon it there grows tall Pine-trees and excellent Vines: He told me likewise of two Fountains there, the Water of one being as red as Claret, and the other near *Blut*, the Water of which is of the same colour as others, but tinges every thing you put into it with a Gold colour; besides divers other things relating to that Country: But what pleas'd me most was the Character he gave of the *Spaniards*; he said, They have a certain Greatness of Soul and Constancy, a natural Seriousness and piercing Wit, and a set Behaviour, full of Affectation, and so highly valuing their own Merit, that in this respect they will scarce do Justice to that of others; they are brave on the defensive part, but do not care to engage easily into Danger; their Revenge and the means they use to attain it is unaccountable, and contrary to all Maxims either of Honour or Christianity; nay, they proceed so far, as not only to assassinate those who have affronted them, but also such as have been offended by them, for fear the same should otherwise be executed upon themselves: They alledge, That it is foolish, after your Enemy has taken the first Advantage, you should not secure the second; and, that to fight him upon the square, is not punishing him so much as your self, since you share half the danger with him. As to their Persons, added he, they are not very bulky, commonly lean, with good Faces, sparkling Eyes, well-set Teeth, and a dark Complexion; they are fond of a slow Walk, large Legs, a small Foot, and Shoes without Heels; their Hair being strait cut, they part it on both sides, and put it behind their Ears, with a broad Hat, black Habit, Taffaty or black Tabby Sleeves, a very long Sword, very strait Breeches, hanging Sleeves, and a Ponyard, and a black Frize Coat over all this.

The Character of a Spaniard.

It being late, by this time we went to Bed, and intending to lie the next night at *Birbiesca*, we set out early in the morning, and following the Banks of the River (to avoid the Mountains) we cross'd that of *Oron*, a considerable River, which joyns its Current with that of the *Ebro*, we ascended afterwards on a very narrow way to *Pancorvo*, the Castle of which stands on an Eminency hard by; thence we travel'd thro' a great Plain (a Rarity in this Country) enclos'd with a Chain of Mountains call'd *Ocea*, and after having cross'd another little River, we came to *Birbiesca*, a Burrough having nothing remarkable in it, except a good College and some Gardens, near the Water-side.

Birbiesca.

It being pretty late, I was willing enough to go to Bed, which before I do, I will give you an account of the condition of our Inn, which may serve as a Pattern for all the rest, they being the same all over *Spain*.

When you come into an Inn, either half roasted by the Heat, or almost frozen by the Cold and Snows, (for here commonly one of these Extreams reigns) you seldom meet with any Fire, and much seldomer with any Pot upon it; your first entrance is thro' the Stable, full of Mules and Mule-drivers, who live, eat and drink, nay, sleep with their Cattle, the Saddles serving at night for Pillows, and in the day instead of Tables. From hence you are conducted by a very stout Staircase, or rather a Ladder, to your Chamber, without any Hangings, except that the Walls are adorn'd with a vast number of little scurvy Pictures of their Saints, the Beds without Curtains, and the Sheets no larger than our Napkins; and of these you find not above four or five in a whole Town.

A description of the Spanish Inns.

Town. The worſt is, that they have but one Cup in a Houſe, which ſerves the Muleteers as well as other Paſſengers, and if they have taken hold of it firſt, you muſt make ſhift with an Earthen Pitcher, or what elſe you can get. When the Fire is made in the Kitchen, you can't come near it for Smoak; beſides that, the Fire-place is in the middle of the Room, (the Smoak going out on the top thro' the Cieling) with a dozen Men, Women and Children, as black as Chimney-ſweepers, ſtinking like Hogs, and clad like Beggars.

Inſtead of roaſting their Meat as we do, they lay it upon Tiles before the Fire, and ſo turn it till it be done enough; if it be too large, they faſten it with a String, and ſo turn it with their Hands till it be as black as a Chimney-ſtock.

The Miſtreſs of the Inn does not forget to bid you welcome, with her Gown tuck'd up, and her dangling Sleeves, bringing her Children to you bareheaded, (tho' never ſo cold) whoſe Eyes, Cheeks and Hands ſhe rubs with your Clothes, as if they were Relicks. The next thing is, to know whether you will eat any thing; if you will, you muſt (tho' it be midnight) ſend to the Butcher, Baker, Tavern, &c. for what you will have with ready-money, the Innkeepers being not allow'd to furniſh Travellers with any thing but Lodging: But the worſt is, that very often you meet with nothing that is eatable in a very conſiderable place, and if you do, they ſpoil it miſerably in dreſſing; for tho' their Mutton be very good, the frying it with Oyl does not reliſh with Strangers. They have plenty of very large Partridges, but they are lean and dry; and to make 'em the worſe, they roaſt 'em to a Coal: Their Pigeons are excellent, and ſome of the *Spaniſh* Country Towns afford very good Fiſh, eſpecially thoſe call'd *Baſſugoſſes*, a Fiſh in taſte like our *Trouts*, of which they make Pies, which would not be amiſs, were they not ſo overſeaſon'd with Garlick, Saffron and Pepper: Their Bread is white and ſweet as Sugar, but not well wrought, and worſe bak'd, which makes it very offenſive to the Stomach; it is flat, like a Cake, of about the thickneſs of a Finger. To make amends for all the reſt, their Wine and Fruits are very good, ſo that you may hope for a good Deſert after a bad Meal: Their Grapes are large, and of a luſcious taſte, and their Lettice the beſt in the World.

As Travellers in *Spain* carry much of their Proviſions along with 'em, ſo they ſeldom or never dine in an Inn, inſtead of which they repoſe themſelves a little near a River, or where-ever the Muledrivers bate their Mules, whom they feed with Barley, or Oats mix'd with chop'd Straw, but not with Hay. A Woman is not allow'd to ſtay (without very good reaſon) above two days in an Inn on the Road. And thus much for their *Inns*.

After Supper the Gentlemen went to Cards, but Don *Ferdinand de Toledo* having no inclination to play at that time, diverted me by the Fire-ſide with ſeveral Diſcourſes relating to *Old Caſtile*, his native Country, and would fain have perſwaded me to go ſomewhat out of my way, to take a view of *Valladolid*; he told me wonders of the Portal and emboſs'd Works of the *Dominicans* Church there, founded by the Dukes of *Lerma*, and of the Tomb of a certain *Caſtilian* Knight in the Quire of the Church of the Religious of S. *Clara*, which ſends forth Groans as often as any of the ſame Family are near their Deaths. Finding me a little doubtful in the matter, he told me if I queſtion'd the truth of it, I ſhould certainly be taken for an Heretick; and, to convince me, gave me an Inſtance of a certain Bell of fifty foot in circumference, in a certain Town call'd *Villilla*, which ſometimes ſounds it ſelf, without any help, beginning firſt to toll, and afterwards to ring out, and that generally as a forerunner to ſome remarkable Accident. Finding by my Countenance that I was not ſufficiently convinc'd of the truth of theſe things, he call'd to Don *Eſtevo de Carvagal*, one of the two Gentlemen of *Andaluſia*, to back his Story by another of the ſame nature well known to 'em both, and this was of a Bell in a certain Convent of *Conduc*, which (they aſſur'd me) never fails to ring not long before one of the Religieuſes dies.

A miraculous Bell.

I ſeeming to be better convinc'd than before, he turn'd his Diſcourſe upon other matters, as, the *Salt-Mines* near the Village of *Mengraville*, into which you deſcend by above two hundred Steps, the whole Roof of this ſubterraneous Cavern being ſupported by a Pillar of Salt as bright as Cryſtal, and of a ſurprizing bigneſs and colour. He added, that near this place, *viz.* in the Town of *Soria*, there was a great Bridge without a River, which by an Earthquake had been forced out of its Chanel.

The Aquaduct of *Segovia*.

But what was moſt taking with me was, the deſcription he gave me of the Aquaduct of *Segovia*, conſiſting of two hundred Arches of a great height, all of Free-ſtone, joyn'd without any Mortar or other Cement; the whole Aquaduct is five leagues long, and in ſome places the Arches are erected upon one another.

He told me another thing worth obſervation, concerning the Town of *Medina del Campo*, which, he ſaid, enjoy'd this Privilege, that the King of *Spain* can't appoint their Officers, nor the Pope confert Benefices upon Eccleſiaſticks, without their approbation and conſent.

We are juſt now come to *Burgos*, what is worth mentioning here you ſhall know by my next. I am

Burgos, Feb. 27. 1673.

Yours, &c.

LETTER IV.

Burgos.

I Was ſcarce arriv'd at *Burgos* but I was ſenſible that it was colder here than in any of the places thro' which we had paſs'd hitherto. Its ſituation is juſt upon the deſcent of the Mountains, reaching down the Plain to the very River-ſide, which waſhes its Walls: The Streets are tolerably handſom and ſtreight, and the Caſtle on the top of the Mountain is ſtrong, tho' not very large: Something lower ſtands the Triumphal Arch of *Fernando Gonſales*, much admir'd by ſome. It being the firſt Town conquer'd from the *Moors*, it holds the firſt place in the two States of the two *Caſtiles*, tho' this alſo is challeng'd by thoſe of *Toledo*: It is the capital City of *Old Caſtile*, where their Kings us'd formerly to reſide; its Buildings are very lofty, and *Vecaſco's* Palace is ſtately; the largeſt Streets, and other open places, are adorn'd with Fountains and Statues, ſome whereof are not deſpicable.

The Cathedral.

But what they chiefly boaſt of is their Cathedral, a Maſterpiece of *Gothick* Architecture, and of ſuch an extent, that they ſay Maſs in five ſeveral places at a time, without the leaſt diſturbance to one another. Three Stone Bridges lead you to the Suburbs of *Bega*, and the Gate of S. *Maria* is very lofty, with the Statue of our Lady upon it: In this Suburb are moſt of their Convents and their Hoſpitals; in that founded by *Philip* II. Pilgrims that are going to S. *James* are entertain'd for a whole Day; and the Abbey of *Mille Flores*, a noble Structure, is not far from it. This Suburb has alſo very pleaſant Gardens, water'd with Fountains and Springs from the River; and the adjacent Park, enclos'd with a Wall, affords very delightful Walks.

The Auſtins Convent.

The noted Crucifix in the Convent of the *Auſtin Friers* is placed in a Chapel large enough, but ſo dark, that without the help of Lamps it could ſcarce be ſeen; of theſe there are always kept burning above an hundred, ſome of Gold, others of Silver, and thoſe of ſo large a ſize, that they cover all the Vault of the Chapel; beſides, there ſtand upon the Ground on both ſides of the Altar ſixty Silver Candleſticks of the bigneſs of the talleſt Man, and of ſuch a weight that a Man can't lift one of 'em; thoſe upon the Altar are of maſſy Gold, and betwixt 'em you ſee two Croſſes of the ſame Metal, enrich'd with precious Stones and Pearls, as alſo Crowns adorn'd with Diamonds of a great luſtre hanging over the Altar: The Chapel it ſelf is hung all round with Tapeſtry wrought with Gold; beſides which, there are vaſt rich things kept in the Treaſury.

The Crucifix.

The holy Crucifix it ſelf is of a natural bigneſs, and ſtands upon the Altar, cover'd with three ſeveral Curtains embroider'd with Pearls and Precious Stones; 'tis ſeldom ſhewn, except to Perſons of Quality, and that not without a great deal of Ceremony, for no ſooner are the Curtains opening, but at the tinkling of ſeveral Bells every one preſently falls on his Knees: This Crucifix is exquiſitely made of carv'd Work, and the Carnation exceeding natural; from the Breaſts down to the Feet it is cover'd with a very fine piece of Cloth laid into plaits; they are of opinion that *Nicodemus* made it, but the *Monks* ſay it did fall from Heaven, tho' they can't tell how nor when; they tell you alſo, that it ſweats every *Friday*. One of the Knights Servants entring this Chapel booted, the Friers were ſo enrag'd thereat that they confin'd him, in hopes of extorting ſome Money from him, but he made ſhift to get out of their clutches, by ſhewing them a fair pair of Heels.

The Piazza.

Tho' this City is not very great, yet is the Piazza or chief Marketplace very ſpacious and noble, and the Pillars which ſupport the Buildings very ſtately: Here they keep their *Bull-feaſts*, a thing much delighted in among the

the *Spaniards* in general. The Great Bridge is also a good Fabrick, broad and long, leading to a Meadow, the Bank whereof is planted with delightful shady Trees, that make a pleasant Walk. It was formerly a place of much better Trade than it is now; the best *Castilian* is here spoken, and the Inhabitants are counted the best Soldiers in the whole Kingdom.

While the rest of our Company were playing at Cards after Supper, Don *Sancho Sanmiento*, one of our three Knights, took this opportunity of giving me an account of the Cruelties exercis'd by the Marquess *de los Navas*, the *Spanish* Viceroy of *Sicily*, after their Rebellion, which were such as are scarce to be parallel'd in History. Being tir'd with a rehearsal of those things so disagreeable to my Inclinations, (of which for the most part he had been an Eye-witness) he turn'd his Discourse upon *Gallicia*, which he confess'd was a poor and mean Country; but finding him willing to give us some better, of the
St. James de Compostella. City of *S. James de Compostella*, I was well enough pleas'd with his Intentions: This City, said he, is the Capital of *Gallicia*, not inferiour to any of *Spain*, either in Extent or Riches; the Yearly Revenue of the Archbishop amounts to seventeen thousand Crowns, and that of the Chapter to no less: Its situation is in a most delightful Plain, surrounded with Hills of an indifferent height, which keep out the venomous blasts that arise sometimes among the higher Mountains: Its Palaces and Churches are exceeding fine, the University none of the worst, and the publick Places noble; their Hospital deserves to be rank'd among the best in *Europe*, the Fabrick consisting of two very large Courts, with Fountains in the midst of them.

Several of the Knights of St. *James* reside here, and this Saint being the Patron of the City, his Body is kept
The Tomb of St. James. here in a most stately and magnificent Tomb: They pretend they hear in this Monument sometimes the clattering of Arms, which always portends something very ill to *Spain*. This Saint is represented on the Altar in carv'd Work, which the Pilgrims kiss three times, and as often put their Hats on his Head; some more zealous than the rest go up to the top of the Church, which is cover'd with broad flat Stones, on which stands an Iron Cross, whereon the Pilgrims fasten some Rags or other pieces of the Clothes they wear at their being there; then they pass under the Cross, thro' so strait a passage, that such as are somewhat corpulent are in danger of squeezing their Guts out; there are Instances that some have travel'd three or four hundred leagues to crawl thus upon their Bellies.

The French Chapel. Here is a *French* Chapel very neatly kept, tho' that under-ground surpasses the other for stately Tombs and ancient Epitaphs. The Archiepiscopal Pile is an ancient but noble Structure.

Our next Discourse running upon Military Affairs, the same Gentleman would needs give me an account of their *Militia*.

The Militia. These, said he, are oblig'd to appear in Arms every Year in the Month of *October*, no body being excepted from this Duty that is above the age of fifteen; and this is observ'd with so much rigour, that in case a Father should conceal his Son, he would be condemn'd to perpetual Imprisonment, of which there have been some Instances, tho' but few, the Peasants being so well pleas'd to see themselves in Arms, and to be call'd *Cavaliers* and *Nobles Soldados del Reg*, *Cavaliers* and the *Kings Soldiers*, that they would not miss this opportunity of shewing themselves for a good deal, tho' perhaps in a whole Regiment you shall scarce meet with one that hath more Shirts than Backs, and the Stuff which scarce covers their nakedness as coarse as if it were made of Packthread, without Stockings, and the Shoes of Wood; a Dunghil-Cock's Feather in their Caps is their best Ornament, the Sword being for the most part without a Scabbard, and fastned about the middle with a piece of Packthread; the rest of the Arms are suitable to these: Thus equip'd
Tuy their general Rendezvous. they march on to *Tuy*, one of their three general Rendezvouses (the other two being *Cindud Rodrigo* and *Badajor*) upon the Frontiers of *Portugal*, opposite to *Valentia*, a strong and well-fortified Town belonging to that Kingdom; and indeed *Tuy* is none of the least considerable among the *Spaniards*, being seated on a rising Ground near the River *Minhio*, and well provided with Works and Ammunition: Here it is that they perform their Exercises, and give Proofs of their Valour, a slender Recompense to the Country for the want of so many young Men, who in the mean time neglect cultivating the Ground, which makes it look about *Compostella* almost like a Wilderness. But near the Sea-side, the Country being much better Peopled, Provisions are in proportion to be had in much greater plenty, such as Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, and other sorts of Fruits, most excellent Fish, and especially most delicious *Pilchards*.

He told me another thing for a real Truth, which was more surprizing than all the rest, and that was, a Fountain at the source of the River *Lours*, on the very top of the Mountain of *Cerbres*, which tho' at twenty leagues distance from the Sea, has its flux and reflux like the Sea; and it has been observ'd, that during the greatest Heat it casts the most Water, which sometimes is as cold as Ice, and at other times boiling hot.

When I was going to Bed, I was not a little surpriz'd *Tricks of the Innkeepers.* to see my self conducted into a long Gallery, with Beds from one end to the other, like our Hospitals; I told them I wanted only four for my self and my Women, but being answer'd, that this was the best and only place left in the House, I was forc'd to be contented. I was scarce got into the Bed, but hearing somebody knock fiercely at the Door, my Woman open'd it, and to her great amazement saw the Master and Mistress of the House appear, with about a dozen of ragged or rather half-naked Creatures at their heels, who entring the Room without any further Ceremony, the Mistress of the House told me, that she had brought in some honest Travellers to lie in the empty Beds; I ask'd her whether she were out of her Wits; she replied, I might well think her so, if she should let the Beds stand empty, unless I paid for 'em all. It is scarce to be imagin'd in what a rage this rudeness put me, but considering that the safest means were the best, I agreed with her to allow her twenty pence for every Bed; and so this beggarly Crew withdrew. Upon enquiry I found the next day that these had been only her Neighbours, invited in on purpose to extort from me four Pistoles; and taking a view of these Beds I paid for at so dear a rate, I found most of 'em to be Sacks fill'd only with Straw; but being told that it was a Stratagem frequently practis'd by the Innkeepers in *Spain*, I laugh'd at the Frolick, tho' to my cost.

The Weather being very bad all that night, we did not set out till late from *Burgos*, and we had not travel'd far before we wish'd our selves there again, the Roads being so cover'd with Snow that we could not see a Tract, especially on the adjacent high Mountain, where one of our Muletiers fell from a Precipice and broke his Head, and disjoynted his Arm, so that we had enough to do to hale him up again.

Night beginning to come upon us, we were glad to take up our Quarters in a little Village call'd *Madrigalesca*, consisting of not above a dozen Houses, and the best of them (where we lodg'd) not above half cover'd, notwithstanding which, we were scarce got well in when an ancient Gentleman came to entreat me, in the behalf of a Lady, to let her have some small share in this House, as being the only one fit for Entertainment in the whole Village; understanding that she was the Widow of the Marquess *de los Rios*, (a Person of good Quality in *Andalusia*) I willingly accepted of her good Company.

Her Dress, when I saw her come out of the Litter, *How Widows mourn.* appear'd to me most singular; her Gown and Petticoat was only of black Serge, over which she wore a kind of Linen Surplice reaching down below her Knees, with the long and strait Sleeves quite over her Hands; the Surplice was fastned to the Gown, without any Plaits behind; on her Head she wore a Muslin Veil, which cover'd all her Head, Face, Neck, and part of her Body; she wore besides this a large black Taffety Mantle coming down to her very Heels, and a huge broad-brim'd Hat, tied under her Chin with a Silk Ribbon: This Dress they never leave off, unless they marry again, the *Spanish* Ladies lying under an Obligation, by the Custom of their Country, to bewail with a great deal of Ceremony the death of an Husband whom commonly they have but little reason to love.

I was credibly inform'd, that these Widows pass the first Year of their Mourning altogether in a Chamber hung with black, (without seeing so much as the glimmering of Day-light) and that sitting cross-leg'd on an *Indian* Quilt; after this they change it for another Room hung with grey, but are not permitted to have any Pictures, Looking-glasses, Cabinets, fine Tables, Plate, or any such like Ornaments, nor to wear Diamonds, Pearls, or any Colours.

She told me, she was going to see a near Relation, a Religieuse, at *Luschuelges de Burgos*, a noted Nunnery, *A famous Spanish Abbey.* wherein are near a hundred and fifty Nuns, most of 'em the Daughters of Persons of Quality; and, that the Jurisdiction of the Abbess extended over fourteen large Towns, fifty places of less note, and seventeen Convents;

and

and has the diſpoſal of twelve Commanderies, and of ſeveral other Benefices. She told me, that ſhe was going to paſs ſome time in this Monaſtery, and finding me ſomewhat ſurpriz'd thereat, ſhe aſſur'd me, that for a conſiderable time ſhe had ſeen fewer People at her own Houſe than ſhe ſhould there, where ſhe ſaid the Nuns had a ſufficient ſhare of liberty. She added, that there were certain Canoneſſes at *Madrid*, ſtiled the *Ladies of S. James*, and their Inſtitution is like to the Knights of the ſame Order, for (like them) they bear a Sword made in form of a Croſs, embroider'd with crimſon Silk; theſe they have on their Scapularies and Cloaks, which are white: Their Houſe is a fine Fabrick, with noble Apartments, as richly furniſh'd as if they liv'd in the World; and they have each a conſiderable Allowance, and three or four Women to wait on 'em; however, they never ſtir out, and tho' every body is admitted to viſit 'em, yet they are never to be ſeen (not even by the neareſt Relations) but thro' a Grate, which would perhaps ſeem a Hardſhip in any other Country but *Spain*, where Women are us'd to a perpetual Confinement.

The Ladies of S James.

Then our Diſcourſe running upon ſome Court-News, and at laſt upon the particular Privileges belonging to theſe of *Arragon*, I deſir'd her to give me the beſt account of them ſhe could, which Deſire ſhe readily complied with.

Privileges of Arragon.

The *Arragonians*, ſaid ſhe, being the firſt who ſhook off the *Mooriſh* Yoke, and there being none alive of the Race of the ancient *Gothick* Kings, they put the Crown upon the Head of a certain Lord of the Country nam'd *Garci Ximenes*, and being then a People free and unconfin'd to any Laws but what they thought fit to impoſe themſelves, it was agreed, that he and his Succeſſors ſhould rule them under theſe Reſtrictions: As ſoon as any of their Kings ſhould infringe any of their Laws, he ſhould by ſo doing forfeit all his Right and Title to the Crown, and the Subjects be at full liberty to elect another, tho' even a *Pagan*; and to render this the more effectual, a certain Magiſtrate was conſtituted under the Name of *Juſticia*, whoſe chief care was to be, to keep a watchful eye over the King's Actions and his Judges; and to protect and maintain his Authority it was eſtabliſh'd, that this Magiſtrate ſhould not be call'd to account for what he tranſacted in his Office, but by the General Aſſembly of the States, call'd by them *Los Cootes*.

It was further enacted, That if the King did prove grievous to any one of the Subjects, the Great Men of the Kingdom might aſſemble themſelves, and ſeize upon his Revenues, till Juſtice were done the oppreſs'd Party.

The Juſticia.

To make their new King *Ximenes* ſenſible at the firſt entrance upon his Government what Authority they had annex'd to the Office of this Magiſtrate, they order'd a Throne to be erected, and the King to kneel down before him bareheaded, to receive from him the Oath of adhering inviolably to theſe Conditions, which done, they proclaim'd him their Soveraign in the following words:

We, who are as good Men as your ſelf, conſtitute you our King and Governour, under Condition you maintain us in our Rights and Properties, otherwiſe we diſown you.

This Cuſtom continued till Don *Pedro* came to the Crown, who not reliſhing this Cuſtom, obtain'd (by his Authority and Entreaties, and the promiſing other Privileges) the aboliſhment of it from the States; the Parchment on which the Act was written being deliver'd to him, he drew his Dagger, and piercing his Hand with it, told them, That *a Law which entitled Subjects to a Liberty of diſpoſing of their Soveraigns, ſhould be effaced with the Soveraign's Blood.* His Statue ſtands to this day in the great Audience-Hall of *Saragoſſa*, with a Dagger in one Hand and a Parchment in the other.

Tho' their late Kings have not been ſo religious in obſerving their ancient Privileges, yet however the uſe of the *Juſticia* is not quite aboliſh'd, there being a Law ſtill in ure, known by the name of the *Law of Manifeſtation*, by vertue whereof a Subject who finds himſelf aggriev'd by a Judge, may (after having depoſited five hundred Crowns) appeal to the *Juſticia*, who is, after a moſt exact Inquiſition, to puniſh the Judge, if he is found guilty of having given a wrong Sentence: And in caſe the *Juſticia* fails in redreſſing the Grievance of the oppreſs'd Party, he may have recourſe to the General Aſſembly of the States of the Kingdom, who chuſe certain Perſons of their own Body to decide the matter in queſtion.

It is very obſervable, that they commonly pitch upon the moſt ignorant perſons to judge the Men of the Gown, alledging, that *Juſtice ought to be ſo plain, as to be underſtood by every body, even of the meaneſt Capacity.* But what is more ſingular, is, that tho' (in caſe of wrong Judgment given) they puniſh the perſon that has committed the Crime, yet does the Decree or Judgment remain in its full force, and muſt be put in execution accordingly; ſo that the aggriev'd Party has no other Redreſs for his Loſs (perhaps of a vaſt Eſtate) than his five hundred Crowns back again, and five hundred more out of the condemn'd Judge's Eſtate, all the reſt being forfeited to the King: But if the Plaintiff fails in making out his Charge againſt the Judge, he forfeits his five hundred Crowns to him.

The Country of Arragon.

She further added, Tho' the Country of *Arragon* was celebrated for Great Men, who ſignaliz'd themſelves beyond the reſt of the King's Subjects, nevertheleſs their Country was generally barren, unleſs in ſome few Valleys water'd by the Chanels brought thither from the River *Ebro*, the reſt being nothing but Sand and Stones.

Saragoſſa.

Her Character however of *Saragoſſa*, their capital City, was extraordinary, *viz.* that the *Holy Street* (where they run their Courſes) was vaſtly broad and long, beautified with many ſtately Palaces on both ſides. She told me, that the Vault of S. *Francis*'s Church was a miraculous Piece of Architecture, not ſupported by any Pillars, tho' of an extraordinary largeneſs: The greateſt Defect, it ſeems, of this City is, that it has neither Fountains nor Walls, and the River *Ebro* is not navigable even for Boats, by reaſon of the many dangerous Rocks that obſtruct its paſſage. The Annual Revenue of the Archbiſhop, ſhe told me, was ſixty thouſand Crowns; but the Viceroy of *Arragon* a bare Title, without any ſettled Income, whence it is that none but the richeſt Lords can aſpire to this Dignity. The Court of Inquiſition have a noble Palace here, and proceed with great rigour, the People being naturally fierce and ſtubborn.

A Tragical Story of a Robber.

But notwithſtanding all the rigour of the Government, there are a conſtant Gang of Robbers here, as well as in moſt other parts of *Spain*, call'd by them *Bandoleros*, who murther all they meet with, and much addict themſelves to ſtealing of young Children or Women of Quality, upon whom they ſet an extraordinary Ranſom, and if the Women prove handſom, ſometimes keep them for their own uſe, and make them lead a moſt direful Life in ſubterraneous places, or among the Mountains, and carrying them ſometimes from place to place on Horſe-back: I was credibly inform'd, that one of the Ring-leaders of a Troop of theſe Thieves being mortally wounded, ſome Soldiers that were ſent after him in the Mountains finding his Miſtreſs (who was a near Kinſwoman to the Marqueſs *de Camerata*, a Grandee of *Spain*) willing to take this Opportunity to deliver her ſelf from this doleful Life by flight, he catch'd hold of her Hair, and thruſt a *Dagger* into her Heart: Being found near her dead Body (almoſt expiring) ſoon after, by the ſame Soldiers that had wounded him, he declar'd, That tho' he was even dying, he could not ſuffer any body elſe to be poſſeſs'd of what he had lov'd ſo dearly in his life-time.

It ſnowing ſo hard all night that no Path was to be ſeen, we were forc'd to tarry three whole days in this little place, when the Weather beginning to mend, I took my leave of the Marchioneſs, and travel'd towards *Lerma*, whither we got not without a great deal of difficulty, being forc'd to traverſe the high Mountains call'd *Sierra de Cogolos* by the *Spaniards*. The Town is but ſmall, but the Caſtle conſiderable, which we intending to ſee to morrow, you will have an account of it in my next. I reſt

Lerma, Mar. 8. 1679.

Yours, &c.

A Re-

A Relation of
A Voyage to SPAIN,
In several LETTERS.

PART II.

LETTER V.

THE Castle of *Lerma* is by most of the *Spaniards* plac'd next to the *Escurial*, and to confess the truth, it is a noble Fabrick, which acknowledges the Cardinal *de Lerma*, King *Philip* the Third's Favourite, for its Founder: It is seated on the ascent of a Hill, and you go to it by a spacious Court environ'd with Piazza's and Galleries. The Structure it self consists of four vast Piles joyn'd together in one Quadrangle, having Porches on the inside near as high as the Edifice it self, which hinders the Prospect from the Rooms on that side; and consequently all the Windows are on the outside of the Apartments, which are very spacious, and most curiously gilt, and notwithstanding there is a great number of 'em, are adorn'd with rich Furniture.

The adjacent Park extends into the Plain, and is water'd with a River besides divers Brooks, and being well planted with Trees all-along the banks of the said River: These Walks of tall Trees, I say, together with a little Wood at a small distance, makes this questionless a very delightful place in the Summer-time.

The Keeper of the Castle ask'd me, whether I had a mind to see the adjoyning Convent; I told him, Yes; so we were conducted thro' a Gallery, at one end whereof was a Grate which reaches from the top to the bottom: The Abbess, having got private notice of our coming, receiv'd us here with several of the Religieuses about her, who were very handsom and young, but notwithstanding this, witty, and discours'd very well. Whilst we were entertaining one another, a young Wench did whisper the Lady Abbess in the Ear, who soon after told me, that a certain Lady of the chiefest Quality, the Daughter of Don *Mandrica de Laro* Count *de Valino*, and Widow of Don *Francisco Fernandez de Castro* Count *de Lemos*, being lately retir'd into their Convent, was always very desirous to entertain any *French* Ladies that pass'd that way; I replying, That I should be proud of the Honour of seeing her, she appear'd soon after in a Dress us'd by the *Spaniards* these hundred years, with a kind of Pattins, or rather Stilts, which made her seem exceeding tall, and oblig'd her to lean on two Daughters of the Marquess *del Carpio*, one of which was of a fair Complexion, (a Rarity in this Country) and the other had Hair as black as Jett, but both very handsom, tho' they were somewhat too lean, but this is look'd upon as no disadvantage in *Spain*, where Skin and Bones satisfies them instead of Flesh. For the rest; this Lady wore a kind of black Satin Bodice embroider'd with Gold, and button'd with Rubies of a great value, the Bodice reaching from her Neck down like a Wastcoat, with strait Sleeves, which had large Wings about the Shoulders, and other Hanging-sleeves fastned to the bottom of the Gown with Roses of Diamonds. Her Fardingal was so large, that she could not sit, except upon the Ground: She had about her Neck a Ruff, and divers rows of large Pearls and Diamonds. Her Hair, which was quite grey, (she being seventy five years of age) was cover'd with a kind of a Veil of black Lace; she look'd still very handsom, without the least wrinkle, and her red and white Paint did not ill become her.

A Tragical Story of a Robber.

She telling me, among other things, That she attending the *Infanta* when she espous'd *Lewis* XIII, she had the opportunity of seeing and knowing the most famous Queen *Christian* of *Sweden*, I was extreamly desirous to hear some particulars concerning this great Queen, which were not yet come to the knowledge of the World: She told me, that Don *Antonio Pimentel* being sent to *Stockholm* by the King of *Spain*, in the quality of Ambassadour, to penetrate into the Inclinations of this Queen in reference to the House of *Austria*, he soon got such an Ascendant of her Heart, that he not only succeeded very well in his Intentions, but also (by the Queens peculiar Orders) accompanied her into *Flanders*. She added, That tho' the said Queen in outward appearance laid down the Scepter (of which she was the lawful Heiress), without any seeming reluctancy, and rather harangued the States upon this occasion, as done out of a pure motive of Generosity, to bestow the same upon the Prince *Palatine*, it was very well known by some, that she made not this Surrender without a signal Grief to one she hated in the bottom, as having by his Interest with the States procur'd a Declaration, whereby he was propos'd to be her Husband, which being a subjection not to be brook'd by such a Spirit as hers, he retir'd from Court, but did not neglect, by his Creatures, to set out the Queens Defects in the worst colours he could: It was at that time (she seeing her self freed from her mortal Enemy) that, instead of applying her self more seriously than ever to the publick Affairs, she had recourse to Books, Love-Plays, Balls, and other publick Diversions, which together with the enriching of Strangers at the expence of her own Subjects, the *Swedes* began not only to murmur, but even to exclaim aloud against these Mismanagements, which put her upon that Resolution, to take Vengeance of her self rather than her Enemies, and to abandon the Kingdom to her Cousin.

Memoirs of Q. *Christian* of *Sweden*.

Her resignation of the Crown.

If her Conduct, in parting at so easie a rate with a Crown, was blam'd by the generality of the World, her Proceedings afterwards were no less liable to censure; for she left *Sweden* in a Dress very unbecoming her Sex, with a sort of *Justaucorps*, a very short Petticoat, Boots, a Cravat, a Hat with Feathers, and a Perriwig ty'd behind in a knot, (a thing not usual in those days) and she would be attended only by Men, it being her common Saying, *That she liked Men, not as Men, but because they were not Women*; tho', to speak the truth, she was guilty of some Weaknesses even below the very meanest of Women.

Her Conduct.

There needed no other Interest (said she) than that of Don *Pimentel* to introduce me to kiss Her Majesty's Hand, (tho' at the same time she had sent word to all the Ladies, that she would excuse 'em for their Visits) she receiv'd me very favourably, and, to speak truth, her Discourse was full of Wit, and a more than ordinary vivacity of Spirit, but she would often break out into Oaths, and many of her Words and Actions had nothing of that *decorum* in 'em that ought to be observ'd by People of Quality.

She and the Prince of *Conde* being both equally desirous to see each other, but differing about some Ceremonials, the Prince took the opportunity one day, when there was a great crowd of Courtiers in her Apartment to slip in *incognito* among 'em, but whether she had any notice of it, or had seen his Picture, certain it is that she knew him, and would have paid him such Civilities as were due to his Person and Merit, but the Prince retiring, she follow'd to conduct him, which made him stop, and so telling Her Majesty *Either all or nothing*, he retreated. However, soon after they had another Interview in the Mall of the Park of *Bruxells*, where they treated each other with a great deal of Civility, but much Reservedness.

Her Interview with the Prince of *Conde*.

Our Discourse turning afterwards upon the Castle of *Lerma*, whose Founder was the Cardinal of that name, the noted Favourite of K. *Philip* III, she gave me an account of the true occasion of his Death, which, for the oddness of it, and the relation it has to the Custom of the

Court

The occasion of the Death of *Philip* III.

Court of *Spain*, I can't forbear to relate: The King, it seems, being very busie one day (when it was very cold) in writing and dispatching Letters in his Closet, they had placed near him so strong a Charcoal Fire as put him into a sweat, but what with the easiness of his Temper and eagerness of dispatching his Matters, he made no Complaint; but the Marquess *de Pobar* observing the King's uneasiness, spoke to the Duke *d'Alva*, Gentleman of his Chamber, to have the Fire remov'd; but his Answer was, That it belong'd not to him to do it, but to the Duke of *Duesda*: The Marquess *de Pobar* being sensible how much the King suffer'd by the excess of heat, and yet not daring to venture to take it away, sent immediately word of it to the Duke of *Duesda*, who being by ill fortune gone a little way out of Town, to view a House of his that was building there, word was brought of it to the Marquess *de Pobar* accordingly, who again propos'd to the Duke *d'Alva* the removing of the Fire, but he persisted in his resolution of not invading another man's Province, but chose rather to send immediately into the Country to the Duke of *Duesda*, who indeed came away immediately, but before he arriv'd in the Palace the King was so far spent that they were forc'd to carry him to Bed, where he fell ill the same night of a violent Fever and Erysipelas, which Inflammation degenerating into the Purples, put an end to his days.

As the old Countess was a Lady of good Understanding, so she entertain'd me with several other Relations, as of the Count *de Villa Medina*, who was shot in his Coach by K. *Philip* the Second's order, he having conceiv'd a Jealousie against him of his being in love with the Queen, unto which his appearing at the *Carowsel* of *Madrid* in a Suit all cover'd with a sort of Money call'd *Realles*, with this Motto, *Mis amores son Realles*, gave the first occasion, by the word *Realles*, which signifies as much as *Royal*.

K. *Philip* IV. bastinado'd by the D. of *Alburquerque*

The other Story of K. *Philip* the Fourth's being in love with the Dutchess of *Alburquerque* was much more pleasant, especially that part of it where the King putting the Duke in his place to play at Cards for him, went in the mean while in disguise to visit the Dutchess, which the Duke mistrusting, found means to leave the Game, and returning home, found the King in the Court-yard, where he soundly bastinado'd him, pretending he came to rob him.

Tho' the weather was extreamly bad, we set forward, notwithstanding we could scarce see ten foot about us, and the Wind was so high that it blew off several pieces of the Rocks, one of which had like to have kill'd one of our Company; but the worst of all was, that after we had travel'd, according to our computation, about eight leagues, we found our selves at night just at the Gates of *Lerma*, having travel'd up and down round the Town all that day: Our Hostess was much better pleas'd at the sight of us than we, and as an addition to my sorrow told me, that I could not have the same Chamber, a Lady of Quality nam'd Donna *Eleanor* of *Toledo* being come into it just before our return. She being a near Kinswoman of Don *Fernand de Toledo*, he complimented her by his Gentleman, and afterwards conducted me into her Chamber; and Don *Fernand* having told her who I was, and whom I was going to see at *Madrid*, she told me, that she knew the Person very well, and that not long before the King had made her *Titularia* and Marchioness of *Castile*: As I had but little knowledge of the nature of these Titles, so I took this opportunity to desire her to oblige me with an account of this, as well as the Title of *Grandee*.

The Titles of *Spain*.

In the time of the first Kings (said she) of *Austria* and *Gallicia* they were elected by the *Prelates* and those call'd *Ricos-homes*, the Titles of *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, and *Counts*, which now distinguish the Nobility from the Gentry, being unknown in those days in *Spain*; these *Ricos-homes* were questionless the same with the modern *Grandees* of *Spain*, for they stood cover'd before the King, made up part of the States, and had their *active* and *passive* Voice: The *Titulado's* seem to come pretty near the *Ricos-homes*, but that their Privileges are not so large, and most of these Honours they possess having since been bestow'd on the *Grandees* of *Spain*. These *Titulado's* are allow'd a Canopy of State in their Apartments, in *Madrid* a Coach with four Horses, with long Traces of Silk that fasten the foremost to the hindermost; at the Bull-feasts they have Balconies allotted 'em, where their Wives (at the King's or Town's charge that makes the Feast) are presented with Sweetmeats, Gloves, Ribbons, Fans, Silk Stockings, &c. and when the King creates a *Titulado* Marquess of *Castile*, *Arragon* or *Granada*, he has his Seat among the States of the Kingdom.

The *Titulado's*.

The *Grandees* are of three different ranks in *Spain*, distinguish'd by the manner in which the King speaks to them in creating them; those whom he orders only to be cover'd, without saying any thing else, are only for Life, the Dignity not descending to their Families: The second, upon whom the King bestows this Dignity with a certain Title of *Duke* or *Marquess*, and tells him, *Duke* or *Marquess of* such a place, *cover your self for you and for yours*, transfer the same to their eldest Son, and for want of Sons, to their Daughter or Heir, the Grandeur being annex'd to the Estate: The last never cover themselves till after they have spoken to the King, and to these he says, *They are Grandees for Life, or in their Race.* Some others there are, whom the King makes to be cover'd before they speak to him, by saying only *Cubridos*, and they speak and hear the King speak always cover'd; others are uncover'd till they have spoke to him and he has answer'd them, and the last only cover themselves when they are withdrawn pretty near the Wall or Door; but in publick Offices, and at Chapel, they are all cover'd indifferently, and sit down before him; and if he writes to them, he gives them the Title of *Excellency*. The Queen receives their Wives standing, and they have Cushions laid to sit upon.

The *Grandees* are of three ranks.

Having a long Days-journey before us, we set out early in the morning towards *Aranda de Duero*; the morning was misty and the day rainy, and for our comfort we were no sooner arriv'd at the Inn, but the Host told us, that there was no Bread to be had; asking the reason, we were told, that the *Alcaid Major* (who is both Governour and Judge) of the Town had order'd all the Bread and Meal to be laid up in a House, in order to make an equal distribution of it, in proportion to the number of Families, because the River *Duero* (which surrounds the Town) as well as the *Leon*, *Sucgra*, *Burgos*, *Tormes* and *Salamanca*, (which fall into the former) being all frozen, the Mills could not grind, so that this Precaution was taken to prevent a Famine: However, upon sending a Servant to the *Alcaid*, we had as much Bread given us as we wanted, and something to spare for our Host, who wanted it much.

The *Alcaid's* Son, who was a true *Guap* or *Spark*, would needs give me a Visit; his Hair was parted on the Crown of his Head, ty'd behind with a blue Ribbon of four inches broad, hanging down two full yards long; his Breeches were of black Velvet, button'd close with five or six Buttons down each Knee; his Vest reach'd scarce to his Pockets, and his Doublet was scallop'd, with Hanging-sleeves of four Fingers breadth of white Sattin embroider'd; his Cloak was of black Bays, wrapt (as all the Gallants do in *Spain*) about his Arm, with a light Buckler in his Hand, having a Steel Point in the middle; his Sword was near the length of a moderate Half-pike, and the Guard so large, that the Iron thereof would have furnish'd materials for a Back and Breast-plate; the Scabbards of these Swords have a Spring, which opens them on the side with the least touch, no Man, except a Gyant, being able to draw them otherwise, by reason of their excessive length; his Poignard was fastned to his Belt on his Back, and his Collar was so strait, that it was impossible for him to move his Head; he wore something about his Neck, which I can call neither Ruff, Band nor Cravat; and his Hat was of a very large size, the Hat-band being bigger than those we wear in our Mourning; his Shoes were of Glove-leather, slash'd all over, (tho' the Weather was very cold) without Heels, and so well clos'd as if they had been pasted to his Feet. This modern Piece of Antiquity, all perfum'd as he was, entred the Room in an antick posture, making his Reverence after the *Spanish* mode, his Legs cross one another, and stopping low, as Women do at their first Salutes: He was very brisk, and did not neglect to let us know, that he never miss'd venturing his Person at the famous Bull-feasts. The best was, his Visit was but short, and he no sooner withdrew but to Bed we went.

The Habit of a Spanish Gallant.

We were scarce well asleep e're the ringing of Bells, a confus'd Noise, and most terrible Outcry, disturb'd our Repose; before we could know the true reason, we saw Don *Fernand* and Don *Frederick de Cordonna* bursting open our Chamber-door, and taking me out of the Bed, (with only my Gown wrapt about me) carried me and my Daughter to the top of the House: So soon as I was able to ask what was the matter, I was told, that a sudden Thaw in the Mountains had so swell'd the Torrents about the Town, that it was laid quite under Water, which immediately after came into the Chamber from whence they had brought me so lately: The Shrieks and Cries of those that were in danger of being swallow'd up by the Torrents kept us in continual fear all that night, but the approach-

A sudden Inundation.

approaching day afforded us some comfort, for the *Alcaid* and Inhabitants had been so careful in turning off the Waters, that the Town was soon free from the danger. I rest

Aranda de Duero,
Mar. 9. *Yours, &c.*

LETTER VI.

THE Thaw made the Air somewhat warmer, but the Roads scarce passable; and we did not without great difficulty pass the Mountain *Sarnozierra*, that parts the *Old* and *New Castile*; they call this Pass the *Puerto*, *i. e.* a *Port*, a Name they give not only to Sea-ports, but also to the Passage from one Kingdom into the other.

Puerto, gnid.

Coming to *Buitrago*, we were almost as wet as the day before by the Inundation at *Aranda*; for their Litter being not well clos'd at the bottom, the Mules, as they pass thro' the Water, throw it up with their Feet into the Litter.

Buitrago.

We went to see the famous Castle here, which is not altogether so spacious as that of *Lerma*, but no less handsom, and pleasantly seated; besides that, the Aparuments are both more uniform and more richly furnish'd. Both these Castles belong to Don *Rodrigo de Silva de Mendosa*, Duke *de Pastrana* and *del Infantada*, who deduces his Origin from *Ruy Gomes de Silva*, and was created Duke of *Pastrana* and *Eboly* by K. *Philip* II. His Wife was the Princess of *Eboly*, with whom that King was so passionately in love; she is represented here in a Picture at full length, sitting under a Tent fastned to the Boughs of some Trees, cover'd only with a fine Linen Cloth, which lets one part of her Body be seen; she seems as if she were rising, and if the Picture has not flatter'd her, she was certainly one of the most charming Women in the World; her Eyes are so sprightly, that they appear as alive; her Neck, Arms, Feet and Legs are naked, with her Hair spreading over her Breasts, surrounded with little *Cupids*, who seem to outstrive one another to attend her, one holding her Looking-glass, another her Slippers, and others strewing her with Flowers, whilst some at a greater distance are imploy'd in sharpning their Arrows, filling their Quivers, and managing their Bows; there is a Fawn painted looking on her thro' Boughs, whom she shews to one of the *Cupids* that is leaning at her Knees, with a smile.

In Castle.

A beautiful Picture.

I scarce could satistie my Eyes with so curious and beautiful a Piece, and should have regretted to part with it, had they not shewn her me again in an adjacent Gallery, where she was represented in a very large Piece attending Queen *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Henry* II. of *France*, married by King *Philip* II. of *Spain*, instead of giving her to Don *Carlos*, his Son, to whom she was promis'd before: She appear'd making her Entry on Horseback, with such lustre as something obscurated that of the Princess *Eboly*; her Gown was of blue Sattin, and the rest of her Habit the same I describ'd to you when I spoke of the Countess of *Lemos*. The King was represented standing in a kind of a Gallery to see her pass by, clad all in black, with the Collar of the Golden Fleece, his Hair red mix'd with grey, his Countenance pale and old, and his Visage long and wrinkled. Don *Carlos* rid by her side dress'd in white embroider'd with Precious Stones, in a Doublet, and his Hat button'd up on one side and cover'd with white Feathers: He appear'd very fine and handsom, with light yellowish Hair and blue Eyes, which he cast with so moving an Air towards the Queen, that one might easily discover the Secrets of his Heart.

Another curious Piece.

In the same Gallery I see another Piece, *viz.* the said Don *Carlos* dying; he was painted in an Elbow-Chair, leaning on one of his Arms on the Table, with a Pen in his other Hand, as if he were going to write; near him stood a Vessel fill'd with a black Liquor, design'd doubtless for the Poyson: On the other end of the Picture you see the Bath preparing for him where his Veins are to be open'd. The whole is so naturally done, that this Piece is look'd upon as inestimable.

sudden ndation.

We found afterwards, in a Chamber, the Furniture that once belong'd to the Archduchess *Margaret* of *Austria*, Governess of the *Netherlands*, and among the rest a Bed neatly wrought with Flowers, Woods, Animals, and Feathers of divers colours, the Hangings of the Room the same, pretended to have been done by the said Archduchesses own hands.

At Night, whilst the rest of the Company were diverting themselves with playing at Cards, Don *Estevo de Carqaval*, one of the before-mention'd Knights, entertain'd me very pleasantly upon divers Subjects, and our Discourse, among other matters, falling upon the Subject of Commanderies, I desir'd him to give me some account of the Orders of S. *James*, *Calatrava*, and *Alcantara*: He told me, that they are at least five hundred years old; that the Order of *Calatrava* is stiled the *Gallant*, because generally young Cavaliers are receiv'd into it; that of St. *James* is sirnam'd the *Rich* from its vast Revenues; and that of *Alcantara* the *Noble*, because such as are to be receiv'd Knights of that Order must prove themselves nobly descended from four Races, whereas the others require no more than two.

The Order of Knighthood in Spain.

For some time after their first institution, the Knights of these three Military Orders were oblig'd to a *Vow of Chastity* and to fight against the *Moors*, and when at home, liv'd in Community together; but in process of time, when the Great Men of the Kingdom began to be admitted among 'em, they by degrees got liberty to marry, provided they could obtain a Dispensation from the Pope. The chief thing to qualifie one for these Orders is, to have the King's Letters to prove one's Nobility, and that you are descended from a Family that has not intermarried with *Jews* or *Moors*.

By vertue of a Patent granted by Pope *Innocent* VIII, in 1489, to King *Ferdinand* and his Successors the King (under the Title of *Perpetual Administrator*) disposes of all the vacant Places, and the three Great Masterships bring him in an Annual Revenue of 4000 Crowns: When he holds a Chapter as Great Master of any of these Orders, the Knights sit down and are cover'd in his presence. Don *Estevo* assur'd me, that the Order of *Calatrava* had thirty four Commanderies and eight Priories, valued at 120000 Ducats *per annum*; that of *Alcantara* thirty three Commanderships, four *Alcaids*, and as many Priories, yielding about 80000 Ducats yearly; and, that the eighty seven Commanderies belonging to that of St. *James* amounted to the yearly value of 272000 Ducats. In relation to the Order of the *Golden Fleece* he added, That being an Order whose lustre consisted chiefly in Honour, without any Revenues, the same was not much regarded or sought for by private persons.

Revenues.

Concerning the Institution of the *Golden Fleece* they have this Tradition in *Spain*; That a certain Peasant, at the time when *Spain* groan'd under the *Moorish* Yoke, praying very devoutly to God to deliver his Nation from the Oppression of these *Barbarians*, an Angel came from Heaven, and giving him a *Fleece of Gold*, arm'd him by this Token to gather some Troops to fight against the *Infidels*; and the Success proving answerable to it, *Philip the Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, instituted this Order of the *Golden Fleece* in honour of God, of the *Virgin*, and S. *Andrew*, in 1429, on the Day of his Marriage with *Isabella Infanta* of *Portugal*.

The Order of the Golden Fleece.

While we were thus busied in talking, seeing a Coach with a good Equipage stop not far off, we found upon enquiry that the Archbishop of *Burgos* was arriv'd. As he was a very obliging person, so he no sooner understood that a *French* Lady lodg'd hard by, but he came to pay me a Visit; he was a very civil graceful person, and in his Carriage adher'd strictly to the Gravity becoming his Character and the *Spanish* Nation. He wore over his Clothes (they being of purple Velvet) a long Cassock with Sleeves ruffled up to his very Ears, and a pair of large Spectacles on his Nose. After the first Compliments, having told us the Expectation the Court was in of seeing an happy issue of the Negotiation of the Marquess *de los Balbacos*, concerning a Marriage between their King and *Mademoiselle*, he began to turn the Discourse upon the Greatness of the King of *Spain*, the vast extent of his Territories, and above all the rest, concerning the vast number of Dignities and Offices in his disposal, to gratifie his Subjects. I being very desirous to hear the Particulars of these things, he soon granted my Request, by pulling out an Abstract of them, and delivering it to me.

The Archbishop of Burgos.

Viceroyalties.

Great Offices in the K. of Spain's disposal.

Naples, *Sicily*, *Arragon*, *Valentia*, *Navarre*, *Sardinia*, *Catalonia*, and *Peru* in *Spain*.

Governments.

Of *Flanders*, *Milan*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, the Isles of *Majorca* and *Minorca*; in the *West-Indies*, of *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, *Mina*, S. *Thomas*, *Angola*, *Brasil*, and the *Algerves*; in *Africk*, of *Ceuta* and *Maragan*; in the *East-Indies*, the *Philipin Isles*.

Archbishopricks and Bishopricks.

The Archbishop of *Toledo* is Primate of *Spain*, Great Chancellor of *Castile*, and chief Councellor of State; his Revenue amounts yearly to 350000 Crowns, and that of his Clergy to 400000. However, the Primacy of all *Spain* is disputed with him by the Archbishop of *Braga* in *Portugal*, (who being also a Temporal Lord of that City, wears a Sword on his side) for during the Invasion of the *Moors*, the Primacy belong'd first to the Archbishop of *Seville*, but upon their further penetrating into the Country, was translated thence to *Toledo*, and for the same reason afterwards to *Braga*; but after the *Spaniards* had regain'd *Toledo*, the Archbishop challeng'd his Primacy, which was oppos'd and protested against by the Archbishop of *Braga*.

The Archbishoprick of *Seville* is valued at 350000 Ducats *per annum*, and the Chapter at 100000. The Cathedral of *Seville* is one of the finest Structures that can be seen; it has a Tower of Brick near two hundred foot in compass, and a hundred foot high, upon which is built another, so ingeniously contriv'd within, that you may go up to the top of it on Horseback; it is most curiously gilt and painted on the outside.

The Archbishoprick of S. *James de Compostella* has an Annual Revenue of 60000 Ducats, and its Chapter 100000; that of *Granada* 40000 Ducats; that of *Burgos* the same; that of *Saragossa* 50000; that of *Avila* 20000; that of *Valencia* 40000.

As to the Bishopricks, that of *Astorga* amounts to an Annual Revenue of 12000 Ducats; that of *Quenca* above 50000. of *Cordua* 40000, of *Siguenza* as much, of *Segovia* 25000, of *Calabria* and *Salamanca* 20000 each, of *Placentia* 50000, of *Palancia* 25000, of *Jaya* 30000, of *Malaga* 40000, of *Osma* 22000, of *Zamora* 20000, of *Coria* the same, of *Ciudad Rodrigo* 10000, of the *Canary Isles* 12000, of *Lugo* 8000, of *Mordenedo* 10000, of *Oviedo* 20000, of *Leon* 22000, of *Pampelune* 28000, of *Calez* 12000, of *Orensa* 10000, of *Ongueta* the same, of *Almeria* 5000, of *Guadix* 90000, of *Tuy* 4000, of *Badajos* 18000, of *Valladolid* 15000, of *Huesca* 12000, of *Tarazona* 14000, of *Balbastro* 7000, of *Albervain* 6000, of *Tervel* 12000, of *Jaca* 6000.

The Cathedral of *Cerdua*, added the Archbishop, is a most noble Structure, built by *Abderhaman* King over all the *Moors* in *Spain*, in 787, to serve for a Mosch, but turn'd into a Church by the *Christians*, after the Conquest of that City from the *Moors* in 1236: It has no less than twenty four Gates, emboss'd with Steel-work; the Fabrick is well proportion'd, being fifty foot wide and six hundred long, and supported by eight hundred and fifty Pillars, the greatest part of Jasper, the rest of black Marble, each one foot and a half in diameter; and the Roof is most curiously painted.

The Cathedral of *Cerdua*.

After what I have told you (continued he) concerning this Cathedral, you will scarce imagine that the Cathedral of *Leon* exceeds this by far, whence is arisen this common Saying in *Spain*, That *the Church of* S. Leon *is the finest in* Spain, *that of* Toledo *the richest, that of* Seville *the largest, and that of* Salamanca *the strongest*.

The Cathedral of *Malaga* is likewise a very beautiful Church; they say, that the Desk in the Quire has cost no less than 105000 Crowns; the rest is magnificent in proportion to this.

In *Catalonia* are the Archbishopricks of *Tarragona* and *Barcelona*, and the Bishopricks of *Lerida*, *Urgel*, *Gironne*, *Vique*, *Salsona*, *Tortosa*, and *Elm*.

In *Italy*, the Archbishopricks of *Briades*, *Lanciano*, *Matera*, *Otrante*, *Rocli*, *Salermo*, *Trani*, *Taranta*; and the Bishopricks of *Ariano*, *Acerra*, *Aquila Cestan*, and *Castelamare*.

In the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Archbishop of that City, the Bishopricks of *Gaeta*, *Galilopoli*, *Gniovenazzo*, *Mosule*, *Monopoli*, *Puzzuole*, *Potenza*, *Trivento*, *Tarpeia*, and *Digento*.

In *Sicily*, the Archbishopricks of *Palermo* and *Monteral*, the Bishopricks of *Girgento*, *Mazara*, *Messina*, *Pati*, *Cefalo*, *Catania*, *Zarayeta*, *Malta*.

In *Milan*, the Archbishop of that City, and the Bishoprick of *Vigevano*.

In *Majorca*, the Bishop of that Name.

In *Sardinia*, the Archbishopricks of *Cagliari*, *Oristan*, *Sacer*; the Bishopricks of *Alguerales*, *Roza*, and *Amprurias*.

In *Africk*, the Bishopricks of *Tangier* and *Ceuta*.

In the *East-Indies*, the Archbishoprick of *Goa*; the Bishopricks of *Madera*, *Angola*, the *Terecta Isles*, *Cape Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Cochin*, *Malara*, *Maliopanu*, *Macao*, &c.

From all these Archbishopricks and Bishopricks (some of which have been of late years subalienated from *Spain* but those only a few) they pay nothing to the Pope, neither while the Bishop lives nor when the See is vacant.

In the *Indies*.

In *New Spain* and its Isles, and in *Peru*, the Archbishopricks and Bishopricks are, the Archbishoprick of the City of *Los Reges*, the capital City of *Peru*, and has a yearly Revenue of 30000 Crowns; the Bishoprick of *Arequipa* 16000, that of *Truxillo* 14000, that of S. *Francisco de Quito* 18000, of *Correo* 24000, S. *John de Victory* 8000, *Panama* 6000, *Chili* 5000, of our Lady of *Chili* 40000.

The Archbishopricks of *Bogota* in the Kingdom of *Granada* 14000, of *Popoya* 5000, *Carthagena* 6000, S. *Maria* 18000.

The Archbishoprick of *la Plata* 60000; the Archdeacon 5000; the Master of the Children of the Quire; the Chaunter and Treasurer, 4000 each; six Canons, 3000 each; six other Dignities valued at 1800 Crowns each: Its Suffragans are, the Bishopricks of *Paz*, *Treuman*, *Santa Cruz*, *de la Sierre*, *Paraquay*, *de Buenos Agres*, *del Rio de la Plata*.

The Archbishoprick of St. *James*, in the Province of *Tutuman*, is valued at 600 Crowns; the Bishopricks of S. *Lawrence de la Barranca* 12000, of *Baraguay* 16000, of *la Santa Trinita* 15000.

The Archbishop of *Monico* has 20000 Reals *per annum*; the Bishop of *los Angelos* 50000 Reals; the Bishopricks of *Valladolid*, in the Province of *Mechoacan*, 14000 Crowns, of *Antequera* 7000, of *Guadalaxara* in *New Gallicia* 7000, *Durango* 4000, *Merida* 8000, *Gantiago* the same, *Santiago Leon* 3000, and *Chiopa* 5000.

The Archbishopricks of S. *Domingo* of the *Spanish* Isles 13000 Crowns *per annum*; of S. *John de Porto Rico* 50000 Reals, of the Isles of *Cuba* 8000, of S. *Anne de Coro* as much, of *Camayagua* 3000.

The Archbishoprick of *Manila*, Capital of the *Philipin Isles*, 3000 Crowns, and the Chapter as much, paid 'em by the King: Its three Suffragans are, the Bishop of the Isle of *Cebu*, of *Luzon*, and of *Comerika*.

The Archbishop of *Burgos* being ready to withdraw into his own Room, he begg'd of me to accept of an *Olio* for my Supper, which I readily accepted, considering I was in a place where it was not likely I should meet with better Fare: When it was brought in we were not a little surpriz'd to find it fastned with a Lock, (a thing usual in *Spain*) but the worst was, that the Cook being out of humour, would not give the Key, pretending he had lost it; the Archbishop chid him severely, but the fellow was so impudent as to tell him, *He would not be reprimanded, for* (says he) *I am of the Race of the old Christians, who are as noble, if not more noble than the King*; and persisted so far in his Obstinacy as not to deliver the Key, so that he kept the *Olio* for himself. I am

Superstition concerning Evil Eyes.

The Insolence of a Spanish Servant.

Buitrago, March 13. 1679. *Yours*, &c.

LETTER VII.

THE Weather proving warmer every day, (notwithstanding the Season) was an infallible sign of our approach to *Madrid*; but what seem'd almost astonishing to me, was, that the nearer we came to the capital City of so potent a Kingdom, where so great a Monarch keeps his constant Residence, the worse Inns we met with on the Road; for whereas in our Country we met near the capital Cities with fine Seats, Walks, Gardens, &c. you scarce have sight of a Tree here of three foot high, and meet with nothing but sad Objects of Poverty. I can assure you, that the Chamber from whence I write this Letter (tho' not above ten leagues from *Madrid*) stands even with the Stable, having no other Light than what is furnish'd by a little Lamp fill'd with stinking Oyl, Candles being things scarce known among them.

The Inns near *Madrid* bad.

I took particular notice, that notwithstanding this general Indigency, the *Spaniards* abate nothing of their natural haughtiness; and it could not but be almost surprizing to me, to see even the Peasants, tho' without either Shoes or Stockings, come into my Room with a grave pace, and to be as inquisitive after Foreigners and Politicks, and to reason up what they heard, as if they had been old Courtiers, a sign that they naturally have a very quick Apprehension and good Understanding.

A Lady of Quality's Nature.

As they are much addicted to Novelties, so even the Townsmens Wives would come to give me a visit; among the

the rest, one came with a very lean Child in her Arms, having above a hundred little Hands (like those of our joynted Babies) hanging about the Neck and round the Body; I asking her the reason of it, she told me, they were good against *Evil Eyes*; I thought she had meant Sore Eyes, but she soon explain'd her self, telling me, that there were certain persons among the *Spaniards* who carried so lively a kind of Poyson in their Eyes, that with looking stedfastly upon any thing, but especially upon Children, they would make it dwindle away to nothing; she added, she had known a Man, who had such an *Evil Eye*, that he was forc'd to wear a Patch upon it, for fear of doing mischief with that Eye, whereas the other had not the least Symptoms of *Malignity*: She added, that when he was in a merry humour among his Friends in the Country, he would single out a certain Fowl, and pulling off the Patch from his Eye, fix it upon it till it turn'd round several times and dropt down dead upon the spot: She told us, that her Child was reduc'd to this miserable condition by such an Eye, and that it was the Custom, when they suspected any person upon that account, to present one of these Hands, or one's own shut, and to say, *Take this Hand*, unto which the suspected person is to answer, *Dios le bendiura*, *God bless you*, which if he refuses to do, he is liable to be question'd by the Inquisition, or you may lawfully beat him till he says the words.

Superstition concerning Evil Eyes.

In the Wife. Indies.

Tho' I did not altogether rely upon the Relation of this Woman, yet I had the curiosity to ask her, whether there were any signs in these *mischievous Eyes*, to distinguish 'em from others; she answer'd, that their Eyes were commonly more fiery, and appear'd more spirituous than those of other People.

She told me several Instances how divers People, on account of being suspected and accus'd of suchlike Enchantments, had been severely handled by the *Inquisition*; and going on upon the rigorous Proceedings of that Court, she related to me a thing done by two *Jews*, the like is scarce to be paralleld among *Christians*: One *Ishmael* a *Jew* being put into a Dungeon by the *Inquisitors*, with his Father, who was a *Rabbin*, the Son made shift to get thro' a hole up to the top of the Tower, and by the help of Ropes got down, not without manifest danger, both he and his Father being condemn'd to be executed in a few days; he no sooner set Foot on the Ground, but recollecting with himself that he had abandon'd his Father, he climb'd up with much more danger than he came down, and descending into the Dungeon, made him escape first, and so got away after him.

Filial Pity of a Son to his Father.

Being now ready to go to *Madrid*, I intend to send my next Letter from thence. I am

S. Augustin, Mar. 25.

Yours, &c.

LETTER VIII.

MY Kinswoman was to meet me at *Alcovendus*, six leagues from *Madrid*, but finding her not there at our arrival, one of the Knights of our Company invited us to a Country-house of one Don *Augustin Pacheco*, his Friend, who had married lately a young beautiful Lady. We were receiv'd there with all manner of Civility; but as the *Spaniards* don't rise till late, I was introduc'd into the Lady's Bedchamber, where I was receiv'd with the same frankness and respect as if we had been known to each other several Years; for it must be own'd of the *Spanish* Persons of Quality, that tho' they will not be forgetful in challenging what is due to themselves, they are as ready to pay all manner of respect, even to the greatest nicety, to others. Her Head was bare, without any Cornet or other sort of Coif, the Hair parted in the middle of the Forehead, ty'd behind with a Ribbon; her Shift was very fine and very wide, almost like a Surplice, the Sleeves large in proportion, button'd at the Wrists with Diamond Buttons, the Neck and Wristbands were flower'd with Silk, and her Ruffles were of white Taffety pink'd instead of Lace; several small Pillows well trim'd with Ribbons and broad Lace lay upon the Bed; the Bedstead was of Brass gilt, and the Head adorn'd with four rows of Balusters of the same Metal.

A Lady of Quality's Attire.

When she was ready to put on her Shoes and Stockings, she order'd the Door to be bolted; I enquir'd the reason, she answer'd, That knowing there were some *Spanish* Gentlemen in the House, she would not for her life let them see her Feet; which could not but make me smile, tho' I must confess they were both very small and handsom.

The first thing she did after rising, was, to have recourse to the *red Pot*, out of which she laid it on very thick with a Pencil, not only on her Cheeks, Chin, under the Nose, above the Eyebrows and edges of the Ears, but also on the inside of her Hands, her Fingers and Shoulders; and this, she said, she practis'd constantly every night and morning, going to and rising out of Bed: She added, That it being so general a Custom in *Spain*, every body was oblig'd to follow it, without which their Complexion would appear sickly in comparison of the rest. At the same time one of her Women perfum'd her with the Smoak of very sweet-scented Pastrils, whilst another took Orange-flower-water in her Mouth, and besprinkled her with it thro' her Teeth, fancying this makes the Water scent the sweeter; tho', for my part, I can't see what pleasure there can be in having an old Hag with rotten Teeth spurt Water into ones Face.

How the *Spanish* Ladies paint.

This Lady being born at *Madrid*, but educated for the most part in *Portugal*, could not sufficiently praise the Advantages of that Kingdom: She told me, That the River *Tagus*, upon which *Lisbon* is seated on an easie Ascent, is capable of receiving the largest Ships; that the Ruins of the old Walls built by the *Moors* are yet standing, and that the Fortress upon the Hill commands the City.

Lisbon.

She told me Miracles of the *Royal Palace* of *Alcantara*, (a Village about an *English* mile from *Lisbon*) of its delightful Situation, Grotto's and Cataracts, and that the Country round about it is the most delightful in the World, by reason of the vast quantities of Limon and Orange-trees that grow thereabouts, and the many bright and sparkling Brooks that water the Grounds among these sweet-scented Woods. There is one thing I took particular notice of, *viz.* that whenever the King of *Portugal* intends to go abroad, Notice is given of it by the sound of Trumpet early the same morning, in those places thro' which His Majesty is to pass, which gives opportunity to the poorer sort, who have no admittance into the Palace, to offer their Petitions.

The Royal Palace of *Alcantara.*

Don *Augustin*, being a Person of a very pleasant humour, coming into the Chamber, told us, He would lay a Wager his Spouse had hit upon *Portugal*, this being always her Field of Actions: She replied, That he need not find fault upon that account, since he was as unwilling to leave *Mexico* (where he had liv'd a considerable time) when he was once settled in that Theme; of which he promis'd to give me an account hereafter.

He took me by the Hand and led me into a Hall pav'd with white Marble, cover'd on the sides with Pictures instead of Tapestries, where we found a Cloth laid upon a Table for the Men, and another for the Ladies upon a Carpet on the Floor. I being not us'd to this Custom, I must confess my Legs aked ready to break my Heart, which being obsery'd by Don *Fernand de Toledo*, they told me, I should absolutely dine with them at their Table; I told them, I was not unwilling to comply, provided the Lady of the House would do the same, which she durst not attempt till her Husband was pleas'd to dispense with the usual Ceremony (for Women to dine with the Men) upon my account: What made me smile was, that this Lady (as she told us) having never sate upon a Chair before, thought her self not half so much at her ease as she was before upon the Carpet. We dined very merrily, and after a most obliging Conversation, took our leave of our generous Benefactor and his Spouse.

How the *Spanish* Ladies sit at Table.

We had scarce travel'd an hour from the House when we espy'd at a little distance two Coaches, drawn by six Mules a-piece, which went on a greater pace than the best Horses commonly do; their manner of harnessing took up a great length; one had six indifferent large Glasses, and was made after the same fashion as ours are, except that it was very low above, and on the inside had a wooden Cornish gilt, big enough for a handsom Room. The Coach being gilt on the outside, we soon perceiv'd it belong'd to some Foreigner; but what surpriz'd me most was, to see the Coachman ride upon one of the fore Mules, tho' at the same time there was a handsom Coach-box: Don *Frederick de Cardonna* told me, that this Custom had been introduc'd ever since the Duke of *Olivarez* was betray'd by his Coachman, who had overheard him speaking something of great moment as he was sitting in the Coach-box. Their Traces are generally Silk, and sometimes Hempen Cords, of such a length, that there is at least three Ells distance from one Mule to another. In *Madrid* they use but four Mules, notwithstanding which the Coachman rides upon the foremost.

A *Spanish* Coach drawn by Mules.

Why the Coachman sits not in the Coachbox.

I found my Relation in the first of these Coaches, with three *Spanish* Ladies, the second being fill'd with the Gentlemen and Pages, which was made after a quite different fashion, with Boots like our antiquated Coaches; it had Glasses about twice the bigness of a Hand at the end of the Coach, the top of it was lin'd with Paragon, the Curtains were large and long, drawing round, and fastned with Buttons and Loops, like some Stage-Coaches. I was extreamly pleas'd to see my Relation dress'd half after the *French* and half after the *Spanish* Fashion, and much more at my hearing her speak a kind of mixture of *Italian*, *French*, *Spanish* and *English*: We embrac'd one another very tenderly, and I must confess that I found some of the Ladies very pretty and witty.

In our way to *Madrid* we pass'd over a sandy Plain of four leagues in length, but so full of holes that we fell in sometimes very deep, and consequently could advance but slowly; this lasted till we came to the Village of *Mardes*, within half a league of *Madrid*, the Country all about appearing very barren, so that you scarce get sight of a Tree in half an hour.

Madrid. The City of *Madrid* is seated in the center of *New Castile*, and it is above an Age since the Kings of *Spain* have made it their ordinary Residence, by reason of the *Its Founder.* excellency of the Air and Water: The *Spaniards* deduce the foundation of this City from a certain Prince nam'd *Ogno Bianor*, Son of *Tiberino* King of the *Latines*; they further tell you, that *Madrid* lies in the very heart of *Europe*, because the Village of *Pinto*, about three leagues thence, is call'd in Latin *Punctum*, which, if you will believe them, implies as much as that it is the center of *Europe*. At our first approach to it I took notice, that it had neither Walls nor Ditch, and tho' it has something like Gates, they are all broken, and fastned only by a Latch; neither has it any thing else that resembleth a Castle or a defensible place, its chiefest strength seeming to consist in the Mountains that surround it, which in some places have so narrow a passage, that two Men may defend 'em against a good body.

Its Streets and Houses. The Streets are indeed long, streight, and of a good breadth, but so ill pav'd that in some places the Horses fall into holes up to the Belly, and the Water comes into the Boots of the Coaches. There are few or no Houses here with great Gates, and those that have are without Court-yards; for the rest, they are spacious, handsom, and conveniently built, tho' only of Earth and Brick: It is remarkable, that the first Story of any new-built House belongs to the King, so that the Owners being oblig'd to purchase it, this produces a considerable Revenue: Few Houses here have less than ten or twelve Rooms on a floor, and some twenty and more; they divide 'em into Summer and Winter Apartments, and sometimes reserve particular Rooms for the Spring and Autumn.

Their Families and Domesticks. Families of Persons of Quality are generally so numerous, that they are forc'd to hire some neighbouring Houses to lodge 'em in; for this there are two reasons, first, because the Allowance of Servants is very slender, an ordinary Servant being allow'd but two *Reals*, or Sixpence, a day, both for Food and Wages, (tho' Strangers generally pay double that rate) and a Gentleman belonging to a Person of Quality in *Spain* has not above fifteen Crowns a month, out of which he must appear in Velvet in the Winter and Silks in the Summer; to make it hold out, they live upon Pease, Onions, and such-like ordinary Food, which makes 'em as greedy as Dogs if a good piece of Meat comes in their way, so that they will snatch the Victuals out of the Dishes as they are carrying it to the Table, unless special care be taken to prevent them.

It was upon this account that I advis'd my Kinswoman to get such a Silver Stewpan (fastned with a Padlock) as the Archbishop of *Burgos* had, which she did accordingly, so that the Cook can look into it thro' some small holes, but Servants can have nothing of it but the smell, whereas before we commonly had our Soup brought in without Meat.

Their greedy and covetous Temper. It is observable, that the so much celebrated Temperance of the *Spaniards* is owing chiefly to their covetous Temper, but when they eat at the cost of other People, they are as ravenous as Hounds; I can protest to you, that I have seen Persons of the first rank eat at our Table with so much greediness, as if they had not seen any Victuals in several days before; neither were they insensible of it themselves, for they would tell us, that *They lik'd the dressing of our Meat so well, that they could scarce satisfie themselves.*

At every corner of a Street you meet with Cooks Shops, but you must not imagin 'em like those in *London* or *Paris*; their chief Kitchin-Utensils consist in a Kettle set on a Trever, and their Meats in Beans, Garlick, Onions, Leeks, Pease, and such-like, and perhaps a little Broth, in which they steep their Bread, and with this both the Gentlemen and Waitingwomen live very merrily, for they go thither as well as other People, no Victuals being dress'd at home but what is just sufficient for the Master, Mistress and Children.

It must be own'd, that they are really temperate in Wine, the Men as well as the Women; the last never touch any, and the first in so small a quantity, that they scarce exceed a quarter of a Pint in a whole day. The worst Affront you can put upon a *Spaniard* is, to call him a *Drunkard*.

Thus much for the first reason; the second is, That it is a constant Custom among Persons of Quality in *Spain* for the Son to keep all the Father's Servants after his death, and the Daughter or Daughter-in-Law to do the same in respect of the Women-servants, which holds to the fourth Generation: These being lodg'd in adjacent Houses, come every foot, rather to show themselves than to do any Service.

I remember, the first time I came to pay a Visit to the Dutchess of *Ossuna*, (a Lady of high Quality) I was surpriz'd to see several Rooms till'd with Women and Chamber-maids, and could not forbear asking her how many she had; she answer'd, Only three hundred now, but lately she had five hundred. The King's Houshold is numerous in proportion to his Greatness, and I was credibly inform'd, that at *Madrid* only he pays Allowances or Pensions to above ten thousand Persons every day: The Provisions of the King's House are brought in and distributed every day, in proportion to the different Qualities of the Persons; they give 'em tame and wild Fowl, Fish, Chocolate, Fruit, Ice, Charcoal, Wax-candles, Oyl, Bread, and all other Necessaries for Life. Ambassadors, and some *Grandees* of *Spain*, pay no Excise for what Provisions they use, which saves a great deal of expence, considering the Impositions upon those things are very heavy.

'Tis only to Ambassadors and Foreigners that Footmen and Pages are allow'd at their pleasure, for notwithstanding the *Spaniards* keep such numerous Families, they must not take abroad above three persons to attend 'em, and one of these is a Groom, who wears no Sword as the Footmen do, but is only to take care that the Horses don't entangle their Legs in the long Traces; these are generally old fellows, nothing being more common than to see Footmen here to be fifty years of age and upward, *Their Footmen.* but never under thirty; they are generally very clownish and surly look'd, with their Hair cut close to the top of their Heads, there being left only one lock, which is seldom comb'd, and consequently very greasie: They wear long Swords, with Shoulder-belts and Cloaks; their Livery is generally blue or green, the Cloaks sometimes lined with Velvet cut in flowers; the Sleeves are either of Velvet, Sattin or Damask; and notwithstanding all this charge, these Liveries make but a very indifferent show, and the Looks of the Fellows a much worse, for they have upon their Coats or Vests neither Buttons, Loops, Laces, or any other sort of Trimmings, and they wear Bands without Collars, which affords a very awkward sight. The Gentlemen and Pages always follow in another Coach, they are dress'd in black Clothes in all seasons, *viz.* Velvet in the Winter, with Cloth Cloaks (which trail upon the Ground when they are in Mourning.) The Pages wear no Swords, but only Poignards; in Summer their Habit is of black Damask or Taffety, and the Cloaks of a light-black Stuff.

None but Persons of the greatest Quality, and such as *Their Equipage.* have Titles of Nobility, (call'd *Titulado's*) are allow'd four Mules to their Coaches (with long Traces) in *Madrid*; those that transgress are fin'd and abus'd besides in the Streets; for in *Spain* 'tis not Riches only, but Quality, that entitles a Man to many things. The King's Coaches only are drawn by six Mules, being distinguisht chiefly from others by their Coverings of Oyl-cloth both round about and on the top; for the rest, the Carv'd-work is extreamly course, and they have falling Boots, like our old-fashion'd Coaches; we were told, that the King of *Spain* retain'd this old Custom in memory of *Charles* V, who us'd such Coaches, tho' they have otherwise as fine Coaches as any are to be seen in *France*, *Italy* or other parts, but these are seldom us'd; and in this point the *Grandees* follow exactly the King's footsteps, for tho' they have very fine Coaches, these don't appear abroad above four or five times a Year: Their Houses being without Court-yards, this is the reason they have certain large Yards made on purpose, where Coaches are set up in several Partitions, sometimes two hundred in one Yard. Some of the great Lords begin of late years to use Horses instead of Mules, which looks very handsom, their Horses

Why they use Mules instead of Horses at *Madrid*.

ses being very beautiful Creatures; but, to speak the truth, 'tis a thousand pities that such fine Beasts should be put to the drawing of their Coaches, which almost resemble a little House, and their Streets being so full of holes and ill pav'd, their Feet are spoil'd in a little time; in short, they are very handsom and dear, but scarce big enough for any Coach, but I have seen 'em draw a Calash with extraordinary grace, for what with their nimbleness and the fine carriage of their Heads, they appear like Staggs.

Spanish Horses.

As soon as you are got out of the Town, you are at liberty to put six Horses to your Coach. Their Harnesses are very curious, and they trim their Manes (which hang almost down to the ground) with Ribbons of all sorts of colours, or with Puffs of a Silver Gauze, which makes a glorious show.

Some days ago my Kinswoman and I walking without S. *Bernardine*'s Gate, (a place much frequented in the Winter) we saw Don *Antonio de Toledo*, Son to the Duke of *Alva*, passing very near us in his Coach drawn by six fine *Isabella*-colour'd Horses curiously harnes'd, which made me speak in commendation of them as he pass'd by us; according to the *Spanish* Custom, he told me, they were absolutely at my service; and he prov'd as good as his Word, for at night he sent a Gentleman of his to tell me that the Horses were put into my Stable; we could not forbear laughing, but my Kinswoman told the Gentleman, that I being lately come to *Madrid*, was unacquainted with their Customs, and did not understand that one must not praise any thing that belong'd to so generous a person as his Master, desiring him to take 'em back again, which he refusing to do, we were forc'd to send 'em to his House by our own Servants, but he return'd them immediately, and so we spent several hours in sending backwards and forwards, till by a Letter we were oblig'd to give him our Reasons why we could not accept of so considerable a Present.

A piece of *Spanish* Gallantry.

I am inform'd, that after the King has once made use of a Horse, no body is to ride on him afterwards: As an Instance, they told me a Story of K. *Philip* IV. and the Duke of *Medina de los Torres*, who having bought a most beautiful Horse for 25000 Crowns, would have presented it to the King, who refus'd to accept of it, giving for a reason, That as he should seldom ride it, and no body would make use of it after him, it was pity so fine a Creature should remain useless.

Nothing is more common here than for Persons of good fashion to put their younger Daughters to Ladies of Quality; these Ladies take also great delight in keeping Dwarfs of both Sexes, who are generally very ugly, especially the Females, their Hands being commonly bigger than their Bodies without, their Hair hanging loose about their Ears, and sometimes down to the Ground; they are always richly clad, and as they are often their Mistresses Confidents, so they live very well.

Their Dwarfs.

At a certain hour all the Women of the Family attend the Lady of the House in the Chapel, where they do scarce any thing else but repeat their *Rosary* aloud, Prayer-books being things hardly known among them. The Count *de Charney*, a *Frenchman*, General of the *Spanish* Horse, told me, that one day reading his Prayers out of a Book at Mass, a *Spanish* Woman snatch'd it out of his Hand, and throwing it to the Ground, said, *Make use of your Beads*; these they are so well acquainted with, that every Woman wears 'em at her Girdle, hanging down to the Ground; these they use in the Streets, at Cards, whilst talking, making Love, backbiting, &c.

The *Spanish* Womens Habit.

'Tis not many years ago that the Women of *Spain* wore Fardingals, of so excessive a bigness that they could scarce enter a Door without some trouble, but they are seldom us'd now, except in the presence of the King and Queen; their general Dress now is a lesser Fardingal, made of thick Copper Wire almost round about the Waste, the uppermost has many Ribbons, wherewith they fasten another round of the same shape and make, which is wider, and thus they have five or six more one under another down to the Ground, to bear up their Garments: It is almost impossible to conceive how such little lean Creatures as the *Spanish* Women are should be able to carry such a burthen without a great deal of trouble. Their upper Garment is of a course black Taffety, or of a grey Stuff made of Goats-hair, with a Fardle coming down to the Knees round the upper Garments, which are so long before and on the sides, that they draw upon the Ground,

Their Feet.

which is done chiefly to cover their Feet, things they most affect to hide; and I have heard it said by credible persons, that after a *Spanish* Lady has granted the last Favour to her Lover, she will shew him her Feet, as a Pledge of her Passion to him: It must be confess'd they are exceeding fine and small; their Shoes are generally of black *Spanish* Leather, cut upon colour'd Taffety as strait as a Glove, without Heels, so that they rather slide than walk along, and that very nimbly.

Under this plain Under-garment they have a dozen others (don't think I romance, for in Summer they have seven or eight of Velvet and thick Sattin) of rich Stuffs trimm'd with Gold and Silver Laces or Galoons to the Girdle; under all the rest they have a white Garment, (call'd *Sebengala*) either of fine Bone-lace or Muslin flower'd with Gold, of about four ells wide; some of these cost five or six hundred Crowns. In their Houses they wear neither Fardingals nor Pattins, the last being a kind of Sandal of Silk or Velvet fastned to Plates of Gold, which raise them half a foot from the Ground, and make 'em walk awkwardly. They use not much Whalebone in their Stays, which are very high before, but behind scarce reach up to the middle of the Back, which (considering their leanness and swarthiness) affords but an indifferent sight to Strangers, tho' they would not be fat for any thing in the World. As their Shoulders are naked, so they participate of the red Paint as well as the Cheeks; they have a very good white Paint, but few of 'em have the nice way of using it; however, some of 'em have naturally a good Complexion, and generally their Features are very exact. Want of Breasts is so far from being a Defect among the *Spanish* Women, that they study all possible means to prevent their growth, by binding pieces of Lead upon 'em, as close as we swaddle a Child, which is the reason that [illegible] the least appearance of 'em, except the [illegible] between, caus'd by their excessive leanness.

Their Hands are no less beautiful than their Feet, [illegible], white, and exactly shap'd, and their Sleeves, fastned at the bottom of their Wrists, make 'em appear the less; these Sleeves are commonly Silk of several colours, like those of the *Egyptians*, with broad lac'd Ruffles. People of Quality wear very fine Linen, but the rest little, and often none; for as it is very scarce and dear, so the *Spaniards* will rather go without any than wear it course, or have but one Shirt, which they wash often, and for want of that, frequently dress themselves without any at all: But the best of Linen is very ill wash'd here, for they beat it upon rough Stones, which makes it full of holes, but seldom white.

But to return to the Womens Dress: About their Necks they wear Bone-lace, embroider'd over with red or green Silk, or Gold and Silver. Instead of Girdles, they have a row of Medals and Relicks, and perhaps a Cord of some Order, as of S. *Francis*, the *Carmelites*, &c. this small Cord is commonly of black, white or brown Wool, hanging round the outside of their Stays down before to the very bottom of the Petticoat, having many Knots, and upon each Knot is fastned a Diamond or some other Precious Stone.

Rich Jewels of the *Spanish* Ladies.

Of Jewels the *Spanish* Ladies have greater store, and much richer, than those of *France*, or any other Country that I know of; for they are so far from being contented with one good sett, that they seldom are without eight or ten, some of *Diamonds*, *Rubies*, *Emeraulds*, *Pearl*, *Turkey Stones*, &c. however, these are generally ill set for want of good Lapidaries.

On the top of their Stays the Ladies of *Spain* constantly wear a Breastplate of Diamonds, from whence hangs a Chain of Pearl, or ten or twelve little Knots of Diamonds, fastned at the other end to their sides. Necklaces are not in use among 'em, but Bracelets, Rings and Pendants in abundance; unto the last they hang sometimes other Ornaments, which, together with the weight of the Pendants, draws their Ears to a considerable length, for some are so extravagant as not only to hang on them whole Locks of Diamonds, but also good large Watches, nay, sometimes curious wrought *English* Keys and Bells. Their whole Bodies are cover'd with little Images and *Agnus Dei's*, and their Heads with small Bodkins in the shape of Flies or Butterflies, in their natural colours, distinguish'd by variety of Precious Stones. They wear not any sort of Coif, either night or day, but for the rest dress their Heads after different ways, some with curious Feathers of divers sorts of colours, which is not at all unbecoming.

For an instance of the manner of Conversation of the Ladies of Quality in *Spain*, their rich Furniture and Apparel, I will give you a brief account of the Reception I had at the House of the Princess of *Monteleon*, then lately married to Don *Nicholas Pignatelli*, tho' she was scarce thirteen years of age: You must know, that this young Princess, the Dutchesses of *Terra Nova*, *d'Hijar* and *Monteleon*, live all together in one Palace, which is so splendidly furnish'd, that I never saw any thing beyond it in all my life; we were introduc'd into the upper

The Palace of *Monteleon*.

Apart-

Apartments, hung with Tapestry done with rais'd-work as of Gold: There is one spacious Apartment (something longer than broad) where you see divers Glass Doors, which bring you into lesser Rooms; the first was that where the Dutchess of *Terra Nova* (of about sixty years of age) had her Lodgings, which was but plainly furnish'd, hung with grey, with a Bed of the same; next to her was the Apartment of her Daughter the Dutchess of *Monteleon*, who being a Widow, her Furniture was the same; the next brought you into the Lodgings of the Princess of *Monteleon*, the Bed being of Damask flower'd with Gold, and lin'd with a Silver Brocade trimm'd with Point *d'Espagne*, and the Sheets lac'd with *English* Bone-lace of half an ell deep: Opposite to this were the Lodgings of the Children of the Dutchesses of *Monteleon* and *d'Hijar*, hung all with white Damask; and next to theirs the Apartment of the Dutchess *d'Higar*, hung with crimson flower'd Velvet upon a Gold ground. All these Rooms were separated only by a Wainscot of a certain well-scented Wood; and I was told, that no less than six of their Women lay every night in each of their Chambers, upon Beds brought thither at night.

The Formality of visiting among the *Spanish* Ladies.

The Ladies receiv'd us in a spacious Gallery, the Floor whereof was cover'd with a rich Carpet, and all about the Room were set crimson Cushions of Velvet, much longer than broad; the rest of the Furniture consisted in rich inlaid Cabinets adorn'd with Precious Stones, (not made in *Spain*) between which were Tables of Silver and exceeding large and fine Looking-glasses with Silver and other rich Frames.

At one end of this Gallery was a Cabinet fill'd with divers sorts of Curiosities of *Ambergrise*, *Porcellane*, *Crystal*, *Bezoar-stone*, *Mother of Pearl*, *Coral*, *Filligrain-work* of Gold, and such-like things of great value: Among other Rarities they shew'd me a Fish with a little Tree upon its Skull, which was neither Wood nor Moss.

I was not a little surpriz'd to see above sixty Ladies sitting cross-legg'd on the Floor, (a Custom deriv'd from the *Moors*) and not so much as one Man in the whole Company: There was indeed one great Elbow-Chair of *Spanish* Leather, stitch'd with Silk after a very antique fashion, which (they told me) was for the Prince of *Monteleon*, who comes sometimes after the Ladies are retir'd. I took five or six Cushions and seated my self upon 'em instead of a Chair, knowing my self not able to sit long in their posture.

Their Visits are attended with divers odd Ceremonies, for when you come into the House a she-Dwarf runs up stairs immediately, to give notice of it to the Lady upon one Knee, whereupon the whole Company rising, follow her to the Door, where she receives the Visitors; they don't kiss at meeting, but shake hands with their Gloves off: In Discourse they never make use of any Titles, as *Your Highness* or *Excellency*, nay, not so much as *Madam*, but only *Thou* and *Thee*, adding their Christian Names, as Donna *Maria*, Donna *Theresa*, which (they told me) was done to avoid all occasion of Offence in a Country where they are so overnice in the least Punctilio's: 'Tis upon this score that you never see Ladies of Quality mix'd with those of an inferiour rank, nay, not even with those of the Long Robe. I found one thing very tiresom in these numerous Visits, that is, that as often as a new Visitor comes, every one there present is oblig'd to follow the Lady of the House into the Antichamber, to receive the last comer.

They were all richly dress'd, both in Clothes and Jewels.

Gaming and Cards.

There were two Tables for the Game of *Ombre*; as they play'd very high, so you did not hear 'em say one word relating to the Cards, which were painted after a quite different manner from ours, and so thin, that a cunning Gamester might easily discover the whole Game on the back-sides.

Conversation.

Their Discourse ran most upon News, with a great deal of friendship and kindness, and you would commonly hear them speak rather in praise than discommendation of other Persons, and that very ingeniously, and with a singular vivacity of Spirit and sound Judgment, which makes 'em, tho' they read but little, yet improve the same to the utmost advantage.

Features.

Their Features are for the most part as delicate and nice as their Wit, but their Leanness is not agreeable to such as are not well us'd to it: Their Complexion is generally brown, but smooth, and you seldom see any of 'em mark'd with the Small-pox. Their Hair is black and shining like Jett, and their Eyes very sparkling, which is a great addition to the Symetry of their Faces. I remember I saw, at a certain Lady of Quality's, a little Cup fill'd with the White of an Egg beat up with Sugar-candy; I ask'd one of her Women what they did with it, who answer'd, That her Lady us'd it both to clean her Face and make it shine. As most of 'em have only a little Thread of Hair above the Eyes, so those whose Fancy reaches above common rank are oblig'd to make themselves false Eyebrows: And tho' their Teeth are very even, yet what with the constant use of Sweetmeats, and the neglect of having 'em cleans'd by a skilful Artificer, (no such thing being known in *Spain*) they are generally very black. They have one odd Custom, both for Men and Women, to pick their Teeth without any respect to the Company, this being look'd upon here as a kind of Pastime to be allow'd of where-ever you are.

Their Spectacles.

At my first visit of the Princess of *Monteleon*, I could scarce forbear laughing, to see so many young Ladies with very large Spectacles on their Noses: The Marchioness *de la Rosa*, a *Neapolitan* by birth, (one of my intimate Acquaintance) being there at the same time, I ask'd her the reason of it; she told me, That this Custom so generally receiv'd among those of both Sexes in *Spain*, was introduc'd to make 'em look grave and careful: She also shew'd me a Lady sitting not far off, who (she said) had never left off her Spectacles for these many years, except when she went to Bed. As she is a person of Wit, so she told me a diverting Story of a certain young *Jacobite Frier*, who having by the interest of his Friends procur'd a favourable Sentence to those of his Convent in a Cause of great moment, the *Prior* desir'd him to ask what Favour he pleas'd that was in his power to give; whereat the young Frier being greatly rejoyc'd, requested that he might wear Spectacles, which was granted him to his singular satisfaction. They are so nice in this point, added she, that they have certain differences in Spectacles, in proportion to their Qualities, both Men and Women; those us'd by the *Grandees* of *Spain*, call'd *Ocales*, are as broad as a Man's Hand, which they are forc'd to fasten behind their Ears: She assur'd me, that she had seen a Statue of the Marquess of *Astorges*, Viceroy of *Naples*, with such a pair of Spectacles upon his Nose.

A Collation.

Some small time after, a Collation was brought in by eighteen of the Lady's Women, in great Silver Baskets fill'd with Sweetmeats wrapt up in gilt Paper, as *Cherries*, *Apricocks*, &c. and that in such plenty, that you might not only eat, but also carry away what you pleas'd; I saw three or four old Ladies fill their Handkerchiefs with them, and fasten 'em to their Fardingals, without any body's taking the least notice of it. The next Course was *Chocolate*, presented to every one in a *China* Cup placed on a little Dish of Agate set in Gold, and some Sugar in another Vessel of the same: There were divers sorts of *Chocolate*, some with Ice, some hot, and some with Milk and Eggs; they take it with Biskets, or some thin Bread made on purpose as hard as if it were toasted: Some of the Women took four or five Dishes, and I was told they would do so three or four times a day.

They are also much addicted to the eating of the *Medicinal Portuguese Earth*, (of which they have also some small Vessels, cover'd with Filugrain-work) tho' it generally causes Obstructions, and makes their Bellies swell as hard as Stones; it tasted to me like a piece of Stone. You can give them no better Entertainment, than to treat 'em with what they call *Barros*, accounted a soveraign Remedy against Poyson and some other Distempers; they are so fond of this, that their Confessors enjoyn it as a singular Pennance not to eat of it in 24 hours. I have a Cup of it, which holds about a Pint; no Wine will keep in it, but 'tis excellent for Water, which seems to ferment in it, and if it stands a little while, the porosity of the Earth of which the Cup is made drinks it all up; its scent is very strong. They commonly take *Water* before *Chocolate*, which is very pleasant and cool, tho' they make use only of *Snow*, which they think cools much better than Ice.

The Collation being over, in came the Governour of the Pages, a little, old, grey-hair'd Fellow, with a great Gold Chain and a Medal about his Neck, and kneeling down upon one Knee in the middle of the Room, said aloud, *Let the most holy Sacrament be prais'd*, unto which the whole Company answer'd, *For ever*; this being a Custom they constantly observe when Light is brought in. He was follow'd by 24 Pages, two by two, who having likewise kneel'd with one Knee upon the ground, placed each a Branch upon the Tables, and so departed with the same Ceremony, and then the Ladies made a low bow to one another. These Branches are full of Lamps fastned to a Silver Pillar, with a broad Foot; each Lamp has generally eight or twelve Pipes in which the Wick burns, which afford a glorious Light, to encrease which there is a Silver Plate fastned to it, which reflects the Light. The Oyl they burn being not inferiour in any respect to the best Sallad-Oyl, is not in the

Their Lights or Lamps.

the leaſt offenſive, either by its Smoak or its Scent.

The richneſs of the *Spaniſh* Ladies Apparel.

Before I took my leave, the young Princeſs of *Monteleon* would needs have me ſee her Wedding Clothes; I ſtood amaz'd when I ſaw thirty Silver Baskets fill'd with 'em brought in, in ſhape not unlike our Table Baskets, and of ſuch a weight and bigneſs, that no leſs than four Women were able to carry one of 'em. To enter upon the particulars of what I ſaw, would be an endleſs piece of buſineſs, I will only tell you, that whatever can be conceiv'd to be fine and rich, according to the *Spaniſh* Faſhion, was to be ſeen there; and among other things, no leſs than ſix cloſe Coats of Gold and Silver Brocade, made like Veſts, for an Undreſs in the Houſe, with Buttons of Diamonds, Emeraulds, and ſuch-like, ſix dozen in each Veſt. The Linen, Lace, and Jewels were proportionable to the reſt, but the laſt were very ill ſet. I am

Madrid, Mar. 29.
1679.

Yours, &c.

LETTER IX.

HAving in my preceding Letter given an account of their Houſes, we will now come to their Churches, which are exceeding rich and beautiful: They are but rarely frequented by Ladies of Quality, (who have their own Chapels at home) except on certain Days, as thoſe in the *Paſſion Week*, &c. when they receive their Indulgences, and go to Confeſſion.

Their Churches.

Our *Lady's Church* of *Atocha* (*i. e.* of the *Buſh*) is built within a ſpacious Convent of Religious Women ty'd to very auſtere Rules of Life: Here 'tis the *Spaniards* ſing their *Te Deum* after a Victory obtain'd over their Enemies; and 'tis this Church that is much celebrated by reaſon of the *Virgin* with a young *Jeſus*, unto whom they attribute ſingular Miracles. The *Virgin* her ſelf is of a black complexion, generally dreſs'd in a Widows Habit, but upon great Feſtivals richly adorn'd with Jewels and fine Clothes, with a large pair of Beads either in her Hand or hung at her Girdle. The Chapel in which this Image ſtands, being very dark, is enlightned by above a hundred Lamps of Gold and Silver, and in it the King has his Gallery, the forepart whereof is made up with a Lattice Window.

Our Lady of Atocha.

They uſe Haſſocks to kneel upon in their Churches; when a Perſon of Quality comes in, the Sexton ſpreads a Carpet before them, or elſe conducts them to a handſom Cloſet with Windows round about it. The Great Altar is every *Sunday* illuminated with a hundred Wax-Candles, and adorn'd with great ſtore of Church-plate, as are generally the Churches of *Madrid*. They contrive alſo abundance of Walks made of green Turfs ſet with Flowers, and adorn'd with Fountains, from whence the Water ſprings into Baſins of Marble, Porphyry or Silver; theſe are ſurrounded with a great number of Orange-trees as high as a Man, planted in Boxes, among which they turn looſe many Birds, which make a curious harmony. Their Churches are never without Orange or Jeſſamine-trees all the Year round.

The Chapel of our Lord of *Almunada*.

In the Chapel call'd *Our Lord of Almunada* is an Image of the Virgin, brought (if you will believe them) by S. *James* from *Jeruſalem*, and hid in a Tower in the middle of *Madrid*: They tell you, that the City being beſieg'd by the *Moors*, was reduc'd to the laſt extremity for want of Proviſions, till by chance they found this Tower full of Corn, which encourag'd 'em to ſo vigorous a defence, that the *Moors* were at laſt forc'd to quit the Siege. The Image of the Virgin being found in the ſame place afterwards, they erected this Chapel to her memory, and on the Walls thereof painted the whole Hiſtory in *Freſco*. The Lamps, the Altar, and the Rails about it, are of ſolid Silver.

The Church of the *Minim* Brothers.

The *Brothers Minims* have a Church not far thence, in which is the Chapel of our *Lord* of *Soledad*, a place of great reſort for Devotees, or at leaſt of ſuch as pretend to be ſo.

Their Lights or Lamps.

The Church of St. *Iſidore* (the Patron of *Madrid*, tho' but a poor Labourer) exceeds all the reſt in magnificence, the Walls being all cruſted with Marble of various colours, with Pillars and divers Statues of the ſame. The Saint's Tomb in the middle of the Chapel has over it a Crown of Marble embelliſh'd with Flowers in their natural colours, ſupported by four Porphyry Pillars; round the outſide of the *Cupola* ſtand the Images of the twelve Apoſtles.

S. *Iſidore's* Chapel.

S. *Sebaſtian's* Church.

In the Church of St. *Sebaſtian* they ſhew you a Canopy preſented by the Queen Mother, for carrying the holy Sacrament to the Sick; it is of Chagrin, nail'd with Gold Nails, and lin'd with crimſon Velvet, with ſeveral Glaſſes about it. In the middle of the Roof is a kind of little Steeple, with little Golden Bells, and is always carried by four Prieſts, accompanied by a great number of Flambeaux of white Wax, and divers Muſical Inſtruments. When they are to celebrate a Feſtival in ſome Church, a long Pole is ſet up the Evening before, with a kind of a deep Chaffingdiſh, which they fill with wooden Chips, Brimſtone and Oyl, which burning all night long, make a delightful ſhew at a diſtance.

When you ſee the Women at Maſs, you may eaſily obſerve a diſtraction in their Thoughts, which are commonly taken up with ſomething they like better.

Their Muffs are near an Ell long, and being generally of the fineſt Martins and Sables, coſt ſometimes four or five hundred Crowns. You never ſee 'em without a Fan, fanning themſelves both Winter and Summer whilſt they are at Maſs. When the Elevation is made, all then preſent give themſelves ſuch blows upon their Breaſts, that the noiſe thereof almoſt frightens a Stranger.

The *Cavaliers* or Gallants (diſtinguiſh'd from the reſt by a Crape Hatband) range themſelves as ſoon as Maſs is ended round the place where the Holy Water is kept, of which they preſent ſome to the Ladies as they go out, and at the ſame time ſay ſomething very obliging to 'em, which they know how to return by a genteel Reply in a few words. This Cuſtom has of late been aboliſh'd by the Pope's Nuncio, under pain of Excommunication.

Big bellied Women very troubleſom in *Spain*.

The *Spaniſh* Women, tho' of never ſo great Quality, uſe neither Cuſhions, nor have their Train born up, at Church. As big-bellied Women are mightily fondled in *Spain*, ſo they are very troubleſom, eſpecially in the Churches; for they will take the liberty, under pretence of longing, to pull off your Gloves, and examin every thing about you, even to your Pockets: I was told, that a certain young Gentleman, who was highly in love with a certain married Lady perſonating a big-bellied Woman, eaſily obtain'd from her Husband permiſſion to viſit his Wife in private, which you may be ſure was longer than they are uſual otherwiſe in *Spain*. Such is the Prerogative the big-bellied Women challenge in *Spain*, that whenever they give the King notice that they long to ſee him, he will come out into a Balcony which looks into the Palace of the Court, and ſtay there till they are ſatisfied. I was told a pleaſant Story contriv'd by ſome Courtiers, to intimate to the King the Magnificence of the Viceroys of *Naples*; they ſet on a big-bellied Woman, lately come from *Naples*, to deſire to ſee the King, which being eaſily granted, after ſhe had look'd for ſome time ſtedfaſt upon him, ſhe with her Hands lifted up, ſaid, *Pray God you may be one day made Viceroy of* Naples.

Their *Lents*.

I hope you will believe me when I tell you that I am glad *Lent* is over, for tho' I kept only the *Paſſion Week*, it was more tedious to me than if I had kept two *Lents* in another place; for, you muſt know, Butter is a ſcarce Commodity at *Madrid*, being brought thither above thirty leagues off, made up in Hogs Bladders; you may gueſs at the goodneſs of it: Their Oyl indeed amends for this Defect, to ſuch as like it; but the worſt is, they have very few River-Fiſh, and thoſe caught in the Sea, which being brought eighty leagues to *Madrid*, are ſeldom ſweet, and very dear into the bargain: To remedy this, their Shambles are open as well in *Lent* as at other times, and the Pope's Nuncio gives a Licenſe, for a Shilling, to eat Butter and Cheeſe all *Lent*, and the Heads, Feet, and Inwards of Fowl, &c. every *Saturday* throughout the whole Year.

Their Meat.

They have an odd way of buying and ſelling Meat, for the Butcher's Shop being never open, you tell the Maſter thro' a little Window what you would have, and pay the Money beforehand; this done, perhaps he brings you quite another Joynt than what you ask for, if you like it not, he takes it in again and gives you another, if that does not pleaſe you, he returns your Money, and tells you he will give you no other. Their Fleſh is generally lean, dry and black, but nevertheleſs very nouriſhing, which muſt be attributed to the goodneſs of the Climate, for an Egg is counted as nouriſhing here as a Pigeon in moſt other places.

Their Wines.

Their Wine is alſo none of the beſt in *Madrid*, coming not near that excellent taſte thoſe brought from the *Canaries* and *Andaluſia* have in foreign parts, after they are improv'd by their tranſportation beyond the Seas. They

are

are indeed here strong enough, but of a fulsom sweet taste, and always smell and taste of Pitch; so that it seems, in some measure, that Necessity rather than Inclination makes the *Spaniards* so famous for Temperance. The Poor are worse serv'd in this respect, for what is sold in small quantities is kept in an open Basin, and consequently soon turns flat and sowre.

The Passion Week.

No body, of what Rank and Degree soever, fails of going to receive Indulgences in *Passion Week*, especially from *Wednesday* to *Friday*; during these three days you see various things perform'd by *Penitents*, *Hypocrites*, and *Lovers*. It is well known here that many Women go to certain Churches at that time, where, a Year before, they have appointed their Lovers, and (notwithstanding the watchful Eyes of their female Guardians call'd *Duennas*), get thro' the Crowd into an adjacent House hir'd for that purpose, where they pass their time more pleasantly than at their Devotions, and afterwards returning into the Church, chide their *Duennas* for having neglected them at that rate.

Disciplinarians.

Their *Disciplinarians* afford but an unpleasant sight to such as are not used to it: As they are ty'd to certain Rules in this Discipline, so they have Masters on purpose to instruct 'em in every thing belonging to it, as we have our Dancing and Fencing-masters; they have a kind of Robe made of very fine Cloth, reaching down to their Feet, full of small Pleats, which takes up a prodigious quantity of Cloth; upon their Heads they wear a Cap not unlike a Sugarloaf, but three times higher, cover'd with Holland, from whence falls down a piece of Cloth which covers all the Face and fore-part of the Body, with two holes in it to see thro'; on the Back of their Wastcoats, just about the Shoulders, are two large holes, and the Sleeves of the Wastcoat, which hang down, are adorn'd with Ribbons of divers colours; their Gloves and Shoes are white, and to their Whip they tie a Ribbon of the same colour that is worn by their Mistress; to whip themselves with a graceful ayr, they must move only the Wrist and Hand, and give the blows leisurely, that the Blood may not spoil their Clothes; They must walk as if they counted every step, and when they come under their Mistresses Windows, they give themselves most terrible lashes, so that the Lady has the satisfaction of seeing the Blood gush from her Gallant's Back, unto which she encourages him by some obliging Expressions: If they meet a handsom Woman, they whip themselves till the Blood sparkles about her Clothes, which being counted a peculiar piece of Gallantry, the Lady acknowledges as a great Favour. Instead of Whips, they sometimes make use of Sponges stuck with Needles, wherewith they prick their Hides and Shoulders till the Blood follows.

You will perhaps be surpriz'd if I should tell you, that the young Courtiers of the best rank perform this kind of Pageantry in whole troops, and that well arm'd in the night-time: We saw the Marquess *de Villa Hermosa* and the Duke *de Vejar* perform this kind of Hypocritical Devotion; the Duke went from his House about nine of the clock at night, with a hundred Flamboys before him, accompanied by a hundred and sixty Gentlemen, every one with his Page; the Ladies appear'd in their best Apparel in their Balconies cover'd with rich Carpets, and illuminated by a good number of Flamboys; and so the *Knight of Discipline* with his Company walketh thro' the chief Streets in great state, where these Ladies are plain'd. But the best Sport was when we saw the Marquess *de Villa la Hermosa* meet the Duke in the same Street and both striving for the upper hand; 'twas no small pleasure, to see the Footmen lay one another about the Ears with the Flamboys, and the two Devotee Heroes to sing'e one each other to exercise their Whips: When the Whips, Flamboys and Disciplines began to fail, they fell to boxing like Carmen and Porters, till having bang'd one another very handsomly, the Duke *de Vejar* yielded to the Marquess *de Villa Hermosa*, and so the Quarrel ended, and every one walk'd on his way as gravely as if nothing had hapned, tho' several were carried off dostly wounded.

Spanish Disciplinc.

The Duke would have demanded Satisfaction for the Affront, but the King order'd both of 'em not to stir out of their Houses till the Quarrel was compos'd by the King's Authority.

After these flogging Knights are return'd home, they are well wash'd with Sponges dipt in Vinegar and Salt, to wash off the coagulated Blood, and the Night is spent in feasting, where their Friends are sure to magnifie their Bravery and Constancy, and above all, the Happiness of the Lady for whose sake he endur'd all this.

True Penitents.

Besides these, there are also to be seen some true *Penitents*, who are dress'd after the same manner as the *Disciplinarians*, except that they are naked from the Shoulders down to the Waste, swaddled with a kind of narrow Mat, to that degree, that the Flesh appears quite black and blue; they have sometimes six or se. en Swords sticking in their Backs and Arms, which hurt them grievously as they walk along, especially if they happen to stumble, which happens frequently, by reason of the sharpness and unevenness of the Pavement, over which they march barefooted. Some, instead of Swords, carry heavy Crosses, by which they are born down to such a degree, that their Servants (in disguise) are forc'd to refresh them frequently with Wine, Vinegar and other Restoratives, they being often Persons of Quality. These *Penances* us'd to be enjoyn'd for the most part by the Confessors, but the Pope's Nuncio told me, that he had forbid it for the future, so that those we saw did, in all probability, perform 'em meerly out of a Devotion they had impos'd upon themselves.

A Procession on Good Friday.

All the *Passion Week* you see abundance of all sorts of *Penitents*, who all meet in one general Procession on *Good Friday*, compos'd of all the Parishes and Convents. On this day the Ladies appear in their Balconies adorn'd with sumptuous Carpets and Cushions, richly apparel'd; the Procession begins at four a clock in the Afternoon, and lasts till eight, in the presence of an infinite number of Spectators, from the King, great Courtiers, the *Cardinals*, *Ambassadours*, the *Grandees*, to the meanest sort of both Court and City, every one with a Wax Candle in his hand and a numerous train of Servants with Torches and Flamboys: In this Procession they carry Banners and Crosses cover'd with Crape, as are also the Drums, which beat a melancholy Tune like at the Funeral of some great Military Officer; even the four Companies of the King's Guards of *Burgundians*, *Spaniards*, *Germans* and *Archilians* trayl their Arms, cover'd with Mourning, upon the Ground; at the same time certain Machines are represented upon Stages, relating to the Life and Death of our Saviour; I took particular notice of one representing the flight of our Lady into *Egypt*, the Furniture wherewith the Ass was cover'd was all over embroider'd with fine Pearls.

Their Funerals.

The *Spaniards* are not very expensive in their Funerals; during my stay at *Madrid* I saw scarce any one that was magnificent, except that of the Daughter of the Duke of *Medina Celi*; the Coffin was made of a most excellent *Indian* Wood, put into a blue Velvet Bag with Silver Strings, by which the Bag is fastned at both ends of the Coffin, like a Cloak-bag; the Hearse was cover'd with white Velvet, set round with Garlands and Coronets curiously wrought of Flowers: She was carried to *Medina Celi*. Commonly they dress the dead Carcass in the Habit of some Religious Order, and thus they carry 'em barefac'd to their place of burial. The Women are generally buried in the Dress of the *Carmelites*, an Order in great veneration in *Spain*, among which the Princesses of the Blood seek for their Retirement, and the Queens, after they are become Widows, are oblig'd to spend the remainder of their days there, unless the King, before his death, is pleas'd to dispense with this Custom, as King *Philip* IV. did; the same obtains in case of a Divorce.

The Royal Barefoot Carmelites.

The King of *Spain* presuming so much upon his own greatness, that no body after his decease ought to enjoy a Person that has once been his Wife. The King's Mistresses, if once dismiss'd, are oblig'd to submit to the same Fate, from whence they have the Title of *Descalcas Reales*, i. e. the *Royal Barefoot*.

I (was shewn a certain Collection of Letters of S. *Theresa*, by Donna *Beatrix Carillo* her Niece, Decess, written with her own Hand in a large legible Character, wherein appear'd a certain vivacity and sweetness of Thought.

You see very frequently, but especially in *Lent* time, Preachers at the corners of the Streets, who rather sing than preach certain good Morals to the vulgar sort of People, putting them in mind of the great Actions of their Ancestors; they frequently sing to a little Drum or Flute a certain Song made on King *Francis* I. in very bad old *French*, beginning,

When the King left France, to his sorrow,
He left it &c.

The Prison of K. Francis I.

The Palace in which this King was kept a Prisoner is for its Structure and Neatness not inferiour to most of the best Buildings in *Madrid*; the Iron Bars on the Windows being like big gilt. On the Roof of the Chamber where the King lodg'd, you see to this day an *Esmerald*, in memory of the Glory the *Spanish* Nation obtain'd by the Imprisonment of that great Prince in their capital City.

I sold

Their Furniture.

I told you before that their *Tapestry*, *Cabinets*, *Paintings*, *Looking-glasses* and *Plate* are exceeding rich, the reason is obvious, for the Viceroys of *Naples* and the Governours of the *Spanish Netherlands* having sufficient opportunity to provide themselves with the most excellent Tapestry, as the Viceroys of *Sicily* and *Sardinia* have with the best Embroideries and Statues, and those of the *Indies* with Precious Stones and Gold, 'tis no wonder if you see their Palaces furnish'd with the best Spoils both of the *East* and *West*. They change both their Furniture and Apartments according to the Season of the Year; in the Winter their Beds are generally of Velvet, trimm'd with rich Gold Galoons; the worst is, that they are so low, and the Valens so deep, that they touch the very Counterpans: In Summer they make use of no Curtains, or if they do, they are only of colour'd Gauze, to keep off the Gnatts. In Winter they use the Apartments of the upper part of the House, even to the fourth Story: They have many Rooms on a Floor, often twelve or fifteen, but generally six or seven; they are longer than they are broad, and neither the Floors nor Cielings are ever painted or gilt, being made of a plain (but very white) Plaisterwork, which being well scraped and polish'd every Year, looks almost like Marble. The Floor of their Summer Apartments are made of a certain matter, upon which tho' they throw ten or twelve Pails of Water in a morning, it is dry in half an hour after, and leaves a pleasant coolness behind it; they spread Matts made of fine Ruthes over it, and with the same cover the Walls to the height of an Ell; above these are hung Pictures and Looking-glasses; the Cushions of Silver and Gold Brocado's are set upon the Matts, with curious Tables and Cabinets betwixt 'em, and at certain distances Silver Cases or Boxes fill'd with Orange and Jessamin-trees.

Summer and Winter Apartments.

They keep out the Sun by certain Frames made of Straw, which they set in the Windows, and in the Evening take the cool Air in their Gardens, which are for the most part well adorn'd with Grotto's and Fountains, their Water being exceeding good.

Among the fine Palaces of *Madrid*, those of the Duke *d'Ossuna*, of the *Almirant* of *Castile*'s Lady, of the Countess *d'Ognale*, and of the *Constable* of *Castile*, excel the rest.

Few Tradesmen in Madrid.

Madrid has but few Inhabitants of the vulgar sort, in proportion of its bigness, there being not above seven or eight Streets fill'd with Tradesmen, the rest are inhabited by People of Quality: They have also but few Shops, except those where they sell Sweetmeats, Liquors, Ice, and Pastry.

Canopies are much in request here, for as not only the *Dukes* and *Princes* have the privilege of using them in their Houses, but also the *Titulado's*, (who are very numerous in *Spain*) and that there are often thirty Chambers on a Floor, each whereof has a Canopy, what wonder if their number is almost infinite?

My Kinswoman being created by the King Marchioness of *Castile*, I am also serv'd under a Canopy, by Pages upon one Knee; I had much ado at first to accustom my self to this kind of odd Ceremony, but was soon satisfied when they told me, that a Cobler would turn away his Apprentice if he should neglect to give him an old Shoe without bending one Knee.

Their Riches in Plate.

What I told you before concerning the preference they have, in respect of the richness of their Furniture, to other Nations, is in a more transcendent degree appliable to their Plate, of which they have such vast store, as is scarce to be imagin'd, much less express'd; besides that, a Plate weighs near as much here as a moderate Dish in *France*: Tin and Pewter are Metals never to be seen here in People of Quality's Houses, but only Earthen and Silver Vessels; I was credibly inform'd, that they spent two hours a day for six weeks together in weighing the Duke of *Albuquerque*'s Plate, who is lately dead; he had fourteen hundred dozen of Plates, five hundred large Dishes, and several hundred lesser ones, and every thing else proportionable, not to mention forty Silver Ladders for the Cupboard, to which you ascended by little Steps, like as to an Altar.

I should have look'd upon this account as romantick, had not Don *Antonio de Toledo* assur'd me that it was very likely to be true, and that the Duke of *Alva*, his Father, (who was not reputed very rich in Plate) had no less than three hundred dozen of Silver Plates, and eight hundred Dishes: Considering their penurious way of eating, one would wonder what use they have for so many Dishes, except at their Marriage Feasts, which are very magnificent.

Most of these Vessels are brought ready made from the *West-Indies*, and pay no Custom, but are generally very ill shap'd.

Their ill management in private Affairs.

It is almost past belief, how careless Persons of Quality are (in this Country) in the management of their Estates, most of 'em passing their whole Life at *Madrid* without so much as ever looking upon them, but leaving the whole to the Fidelity of a Steward, who is sworn to take care of his own Interest, especially with such as the *Spanish Grandees* are, who think it below themselves to inspect and enquire after their Accounts, whether they be true or not.

This Neglect is accompanied by another no less pernicious Errour, *viz.* that whatever is wanted in the House is brought in every day by the Bakers, Butchers, Pastry-Cooks, and other Trades, who as they give Credit for what they furnish, so they set down what they please, being sure that their Bills will never be strictly examin'd. What is left the Servants carry away every Night to their Lodgings.

This unseasonable Pride highly enriches the Tradesmen, for a Man or Woman of Quality would think it much below their Dignity to haggle for the Price of a piece of Silk, Stuff, or any thing else they buy of a Shopkeeper, or to take Change out of a piece of Gold. This, together with the Credit they are to give, (sometimes for ten Years) makes 'em sell that for ten Pistoles which otherwise might conveniently be bought for five, tho' they seldom lose at the long run, the *Spaniards* most commonly assigning them part of their Land for a certain time, till the Debt be paid.

Their Law-Suits.

In their Law-Suits they use stampt Paper, and they have certain Terms for the distribution of these Suits, which are given at *Madrid*, tho' most of 'em are try'd in other places; for this purpose they put the Deeds and other Papers relating to the Plaintiff in one Bag, and those belonging to the Defendant in another, and the Instructions in a third, and thus they are sent to some distant Parliament, who, after Judgment given, send it back to *Madrid*, where 'tis communicated to the Parties concern'd.

They are so little acquainted with improving their Estates, whether Real or Personal, that whatever ready-money is left by a Father or Mother, after their decease, to Minors; the same is not put out to Use, but kept in a Chest. Thus, in my time, the Duke of *Feas* left six hundred thousand Crowns in ready-money to three Daughters, (the eldest of which was not quite seven years of age) which was lock'd up in three Chests, with the Name of each of the Daughters upon it, and was not touch'd till they came to age.

Their several Councils.

They have divers Councils for the dispatch of publick and other weighty Affairs, as, the *Council of State*, the *Supream Council of War*, the *Royal Council* of *Castile*, the *Alcaids of Court*, the *Council of the holy Inquisition*, the *Council of Orders*, the *Sacred, Supream and Royal Council of Arragon*, the *Royal Council of the Indies*, the *Council of the Chamber of Castile*, the *Council of Italy*, the *Council of the Finances*, the *Council of the Croisado*, the *Council of Flanders*, the *Court* for the *Duty of Horses*, the *Court* for the *Royal Woods*, and the *Court* of the *Millions*. I am

Madrid, *Apr.* 27.
1679.

Yours, &c.

A Relation of
A Voyage to SPAIN,
In ſeveral LETTERS.

PART III.

LETTER X.

The Royal Palace.

THE Palace Royal ſtands on an eaſie aſcent of a Hill, extending even to the Banks of the River *Manzanarez*, having a moſt delicious proſpect into the Country; the Street which leads to it is call'd *Callemayor*, both long and broad, and adorn'd with ſeveral fine Houſes. Juſt before the Entrance of the Palace is an open Place, and no Coaches are allow'd to enter the Court, but muſt ſtop under the great Arch of the Porch, except when Bonfires are made here, or Maſquerades. The Gate is guarded only by a few Halberdeers; it ſtands at the South end of the City; the Front is compos'd of two Pavilions, the reſt being very irregular: Behind it are two large ſquare Courts, the firſt of which has two ſpacious Terras Walks, rais'd upon high Arches, and adorn'd with Baluſters and Statues; I obſerv'd the Womens Statues to have red Paint both on their Cheeks and Shoulders.

You paſs thro' ſeveral Porches to a fine and large Staircaſe, which leads to the Apartments, richly furniſh'd with curious Pictures, excellent Tapeſtry, exquiſite Statues, and other rich Furniture, ſuitable in all reſpects to the Grandeur of ſo potent a Monarch: The worſt is, that ſome Rooms are ſo dark, that no light is to be ſeen in 'em but what comes in at the Doors; and thoſe that have Windows are even but dark at the beſt, by reaſon of their ſmallneſs, which (they ſay) are thus contriv'd to keep out the heat of the Sun, tho' the exceſſive price of Glaſs may alſo be an additional occaſion of this Contrivance, whence 'tis that many good Houſes are ſeen here without any Glaſs Windows, tho' the ſame is not perceiv'd on the outſide by reaſon of the Lattices; and when a *Spaniard* gives you a deſcription of a compleat Houſe, he certainly tells you *it is glaz'd*.

This Palace is adorn'd with many Balconies finely gilt; all the Councils have their meetings here, and when the King has a mind to be preſent, there are divers ſmall Galleries and Entries thro' which he may go to 'em unperceiv'd by any but his Attendance.

I have heard it ſaid in *France*, that the Palace call'd *Madrid*, built by K. *Francis* I. near the Wood of *Bologn*, was built after the Model of this Palace, but I found not the leaſt reſemblance betwixt 'em.

The Gardens are not ſuitable to the Grandeur of a Royal Palace, being neither large nor extraordinary well look'd after; they reach down to the River, are enclos'd with Walls, and owe their chief Beauty to their pleaſant Situation.

The *Buen Retiro*.

The *Royal Houſe* call'd *Buen Retiro* is built alſo on the deſcent of a little Hill near one of the Gates of *Madrid*; it conſiſts of four great Apartments and four large Pavilions, which make a perfect Square, in the middle whereof is a Flowerpot well ſtor'd with Flowers, and a Fountain, whoſe Statue ſprinkles the Flowers and Croſs-walks leading to the Apartments, which are ſtately, adorn'd with excellent Paintings, and the Cielings and Floors beautified with Gold and other lively colours; the worſt is, they are ſomewhat low.

In the great Gallery is repreſented the publick Entry of Queen *Elizabeth* (Mother to the late Queen) on Horſeback, with a Ruff and Fardingal, her Hat trimm'd with Jewels and Feathers; ſhe looks plump, fair and pleaſing, her Eyes appear exceeding fine, and her Looks ſweet and quick.

The Theatre here for Comedies is well contriv'd, very ſpacious, and adorn'd with much carving and gilding: The Boxes (which hold about fifteen perſons a-piece) have all Lattice Windows, and the Cieling is richly gilt; however, they have neither Galleries nor Amphitheatre, every body ſitting upon Benches on the Floor.

Near the Terras-walk ſtands the Statue of K. *Philip* II. on Horſeback, of Braſs, a Piece highly eſteem'd by the Curious. The adjoyning Park is about a league in compaſs, having in divers parts private and handſom Lodges; the Canal is ſupplied with Water from Springs at a conſiderable diſtance, not without great charge; beſides which there is another large Pond ſurrounded with Fountains and Trees, where the King diverts himſelf in the hot Seaſon in little Boats finely painted and gilt. This Park has variety of Grotto's, Cataracts, Ponds, and ſhady Walks, which render it extreamly delightful.

The *Caſa del Campo* is a Royal Country-ſeat, noted more for its delightful ſituation upon the Bank of the before-mention'd River *Manzanarez* than its largeneſs, with pleaſant Groves about it, which afford an agreeable ſhade, by reaſon of the tallneſs and thickneſs of the Trees, a Rarity in this Country: It hath ſeveral curious Springs and Ponds, one of which is ſurrounded with large Oaks. In the Garden ſtands the Statue of K. *Philip* IV, but very ill kept; here they keep *Lyons*, *Bears*, *Tygers*, and other ſuchlike wild Beaſts, which are obſerv'd to live very long in *Spain*, by reaſon of the congruity of their Climate with thoſe from whence theſe Beaſts are brought. The *Caſa del Campo*.

The River *Manzanarez* ſcarce deſerves the Name of a Brook at certain times of the Year, for in the Summer you ſhall ſee the People walk thro' it without almoſt wetting their Feet; whereas in the Winter, after the melting of the Snows on the Hills, it runs with a moſt rapid Current, and overflows the adjacent Country. The Bridge which K. *Philip* II. order'd to be built over it (call'd the *Segovia Bridge*) is very ſtately, and not inferiour to the *Pont Neuf* or *New Bridge* at *Paris*. A certain Stranger ſeeing ſo lofty a Bridge, and no Water under it, told ſome of his Friends, *That they had better ſell the Bridge and buy ſome Water*. The River *Manzanarez*.

The *Florid* is another of the King's Houſes, with very pleaſant Gardens, adorn'd with a good number of *Italian* Statues by the beſt Maſters, and ſtor'd with all ſorts of ſweet-ſcented Flowers, water'd by divers murmuring Brooks. The Walk call'd *Prado Nuovo* is planted with Trees of an extraordinary height, intermix'd with moſt delightful ſpouting Fountains; it does not lie upon a level, but the aſcent is ſo eaſie, that 'tis ſcarce perceivable: Here the Men generally walk on foot at night, and if they ſee any Coaches with Women paſs by, they lean upon the Boots, and throw perhaps Flowers or ſpout Water upon 'em. The *Florid*. The *Prado Nuovo*.

The *Corzuela* is a Country-houſe which hath nothing to brag of but ſome cool Rooms, a moſt delightful Proſpect and curious Situation, where the King frequently refreſhes himſelf after hunting. The *Corzuela*.

But leaving the *Royal Palaces*, we muſt proceed to other matters: On the firſt day of *May* there is a vaſt reſort of People without the Gate of *Toledo*, at a place call'd *El Sotillo*, tho' by a general Cuſtom all Ladies of Quality are not permitted to go abroad or to appear in publick Places or Walks after the firſt Year of their Marriage, and during that time not without their Husbands, who ſit at the upper and the Ladies at the lower end of the Coach, with open Curtains, the Ladies appearing then in their moſt magnificent Apparel; and 'tis pleaſant enough to ſee two perſons ſit looking at each other, like Statues, without ſpeaking one word. However, there are certain Days appointed by Cuſtom at *Madrid*, when every body (except

(except the King and a few Courtiers) walk to take the Air; many Ladies that are not of the first rank come thither with their Curtains drawn, but at night even those of the highest Quality will make hard shift to participate of these Diversions *incognito*.

Their Diversion on *May-day*.

For, this purpose they disguise themselves in white Mantles not unlike the *English* Ridinghoods, (worn otherwise by none but the ordinary sort, or such as are engag'd in an Intrigue) of some Woollen Stuff, embroider'd with Silk, which covers 'em all over down to the Heels, where they divert themselves with talking to the *Cavaliers* or *Gallants*. The Count *de Berka*, the Imperial Envoy at *Madrid*, told me, that one Evening as he was at Supper, three Women in such white Mantles knock'd at the Lattice of his Hall, desiring the Windows might be open'd, that they might see the Envoy; but being by his order conducted into the Hall, they placed themselves in one corner, and said many witty things to him and the Company; they refus'd to sit down or to accept of any of the Sweetmeats offer'd them, and after an hours stay went their way: They were discover'd to be the Dutchesses of *Medina Cœli*, *d'Ossuna*, and *Ducada*, because the Ambassador partly knew 'em, having seen 'em at their own Houses, (a thing permitted to foreign Ambassadors) and having caus'd 'em to be follow'd at a distance by one of his Servants, who saw 'em go into one of their Houses by a private Door.

But, to return to the merry *May-day*, it is no small pleasure to see the People diverting themselves, with their Wives, Children, Friends or Mistrisses, in the Fields near the Banks of the River *Manzanares*, some eating, some drinking, some playing upon Musical Instruments: At that time the King hapned to come there, with Don *John*, the Duke of *Medina Cœli*, the Constable of *Castile*, and the Duke *de Pastrana*, in a Coach drawn by six of the finest py'd Horses in the World, with his Curtains close drawn, so that you could perceive nothing, except thro' the little Glasses on the sides of the Coach.

The *Spaniards* always stop their Coaches and draw their Curtains, but we, according to the *French* mode, left 'em open, and made a low Reverence: The King observing a handsom Spaniel Bitch in my Arm, he sent the Count *de los Arcos*, Captain of the *Spanish* Guards, to ask me for it; I gave it him, and I saw the King play with it, being mightily pleas'd with the little Bells about the Neck, and the Buckles upon the Ears; he had at the same time a Bitch with him call'd *Durana*, and he sent to ask me whether I would exchange mine for her, but finding me not very willing, he sent back my Spaniel, but without her Collar or Buckles, and order'd the Count *de los Arcos* to present me, in his name, with a golden Box full of Pastrils, which he had about him.

I was oblig'd for this Honour to Don *John*, who often us'd to visit my Kinswoman, tho' he had never seen me as yet.

Don John's Visit incognito.

Two days after, being all alone in my Apartment, I saw a Man enter, who by his Face and Air seem'd to promise something above the common rank; he told me, That understanding my Kinswoman was not at home, he was willing to stay for her return. After some indifferent Discourse, he began to talk of Don *John*, adding, That he suppos'd I was often visited by him; I told him, That he paid frequent Visits to my Kinswoman, but, as far as I understood, he never ask'd for me; This was perhaps, replied he smiling, because you were ill; I have not been sick, return'd I, and I should have been glad to embrace the opportunity of seeing a Person whom I have heard so much of, both Good and Evil, and I have told my Kinswoman as much, who excus'd the matter, alledging, that he was so devout as not to care to be disturb'd by the company of Women: I am apt to believe, answer'd he, that his Devotion has not so much got the ascendant over his mind; I dare assure you he ask'd for you, but was told you were ill of a *Fever*: Of a *Fever*, cry'd I, that is strange, who could tell you so?

Now my Kinswoman entring the Room, was not a little surpriz'd to find me with Don *John*, and so was I when I heard his Name, little thinking that it was he to whom I had spoken with so much freedom: He chid her for imposing upon him in such a manner, and my Kinswoman, tho' she clear'd her self well enough, yet could not forgive my having denied to have been ill of a *Fever*. It must be own'd that this Prince is extraordinary handsom, of a noble Air, very well bred, and has a great share of Wit, and a more than ordinary vivacity of Mind.

The King refuses to see the Queen-Mother.

Among other Court-News he told us, That the *Queen-Mother* having lately sent a Letter to the *King* her Son, to see him, he had refus'd her, and for that reason had stopt his Journey to *Aranjuez*, for fear she should come thither from *Toledo* contrary to his Orders. As we knew the *Queen-Mother* to have been banish'd by his Interest, so we would needs give him to understand our Surprize at such a Denial, unto which he replied, That *Soveraigns must square their Inclinations to the Publick Good*, adding, that the *Spaniards* at Court had one general Maxim in all affairs of moment, which was, to consult the Spirit of *Charles* V, and to regulate themselves according to what they might reasonably conclude that great Prince would have done in the same Case that was laid before them.

The first time I had a full sight of the *King* was at *Buen Retiro*, at the acting of an *Opera*, where he had the curiosity to open the Lattice of his Box to look at us, being dress'd in the *French* Mode; he was pleas'd to say that we were very handsom, but that it was pity we were not dress'd after the *Spanish* Fashion.

The King of *Spain*'s Portraicture.

His Complexion was very fair, his Forehead broad, with bright and sweet Eyes, but his Face is long and narrow, with thick *Austrian* Lips, a hook'd Nose, and a sharp and turning-up Chin; he has a very thick Head of Hair, very fair, lank, and put behind his Ears; he is streight, slender, and tall of stature, with small Legs all over of a thickness; his Inclinations are good and mild, sober, liberal and pious, of an equal Temper and no difficult access; he can't boast of that degree of Education as is requisite to form the Mind, yet is he not quite destitute of either. I will hint to you some of his merry Humors, which may give you a more compleat Idea of his Mind.

His merry Humors.

The Lady *Connestable de Colenna* having made so many escapes out of the Monastery at S. *Domingo*, that the Abbess was resolv'd not to admit her any more, she obtain'd (by the Intercession of her Friends) a Mandate from the *King* to receive her once more, but the Nuns persisting in their Refusal, under pretence that they would go in a body and justifie their Conduct to the *King*, he burst out a laughing, saying, *Won't it be pretty sport to see the Nuns in Procession singing* Libera nos Domine de la Connestabile?

Another time, it being a terrible tempestuous Day with Thunder and Rain, the *King* order'd the Marquess of *Astorga* to stay for him upon the Terras Walk; the Marquess replied, That *if His Majesty did not think fit to come in a little time, he would do well to send him a Coffin: Go*, said the King, *I will quickly be with you*. The Marquess did go out, but instead of going to the Terras-walk, went directly home in his Coach. About two hours after the King said to those that were near him, *Prey call in the Old Gentleman, for I shall be mightily pleas'd to see him wet to the Skin*; but being told that he went directly home in his Coach, the King said, *He is both old and cunning*.

Some days ago a handsom Miss being taken near the *Royal Palace* disguis'd in Mans Clothes, where she had set upon her Gallant, whom she believ'd unfaithful; he knowing her by her Voice, would not defend himself, but opening his Bosom, offer'd his Body to her, which she pierc'd thro' with her Weapon; no sooner had she committed the Fact, but she threw her self upon him, tore her Hair and Skin, and made most lamentable Outcries. She was seiz'd by the Officers of Justice just as some Persons of Quality came by, who having related the matter to the King, he would needs see her; being brought before him, he ask'd what could induce her to commit so barbarous a Fact; she replied, *Ah Sir! to be revenge'd of an ungrateful Villain. But*, said the King, *why were you so much afflicted at it? Oh Sir!* answer'd she, *in seeking Revenge I have punish'd my self, and desire Your Majesty to put an end to my Life*. The King turning to those that were near him, said, *I don't believe there is any thing so miserable in the World, as to love, and not be belov'd*: And so discharg'd her, telling her, that she had more Love than Reason, and that she should learn to be wise for the future.

An Opera.

But to return to our *Opera*; That which was acted they call'd *Alcinous*, the Machines were very miserable ones, the Gods coming down on Horseback upon a Beam as long as the whole Theatre; the Sun was represented to shine by the means of a dozen oyl'd Paper Lanthorns with Lamps; the *Daemons*, call'd out of Hell by *Alcinous*, came up by Ladders; *Jack Pudding* intermix'd a thousand Impertinencies; the Singers, 'tis true, had good Voices, but sung too much in the Throat: The Great Room, in which the Boxes are, is very spacious and finely gilt; the Boxes have Lattices reaching from top to bottom; that side where the King has his exceeds the rest in magnificence. Formerly all sorts of People were permitted to come into this place, but of late none but the *Grandees*, *Titulado's*, and *Knights of the Military Orders*, have access here; upon this account it is, I must tell you, that the

Plays which are commonly acted in the City receive their Fate from the fantaſtical Humour of ſome ignorant Fellow or other; there is now a certain Shoemaker in *Madrid*, whoſe Opinion in this reſpect has got ſuch an aſcendant over the People, eſpecially of the younger ſort, that on his Approbation or Diſapprobation depends the good or bad ſucceſs of the Play, which obliges the poor Poets to have recourſe to him, as their Dictator, before the Play is acted, and to ſtrike out or inſert what his Judgment ſhall think fit; for, if he happens to diſlike the Play at the firſt time of its acting, he falls a whiſtling upon a little Whiſtle, which being the Signal for a hundred more to do the ſame, the Play is damn'd for ever.

There is a kind of Amphitheatre in this Playhouſe call'd *la Cazuela*, where all the Women that are not of the beſt Reputation ſit; you ſhall hear Perſons of Quality talk to them, and they to make very pleaſant Repartees, being acquainted with all that paſſes in the Town, and the *Spaniards* are ſo fond of a good Jeſt, that they will even not ſpare Their Majeſties rather than loſe it.

The Women Players are highly careſs'd, and for the moſt part kept by Perſons of the beſt Quality, being extravagantly expenſive: Their Perſons are generally very ugly, but perhaps their Diſcourſe makes amends for it.

It being now the Seaſon wherein the Mules are put to Graſs, every body walks on foot, Perſons of the greateſt Quality ſcarce affording themſelves two Mules at this time to draw 'em.

Their Bull-feaſt.

The King commanding a *Bull-baiting* (or *Bull-feaſt* as they call it) to be on the 22d of this Month, I was very glad to have the opportunity of ſeeing what I had ſo much heard of before, eſpecially when I underſtood that the young Count *Conningſmark*, a *German* under the *Swediſh* Juriſdiction, would *tauriſe*, as they ſtile it, for a Lady of my acquaintance: The firſt thing I did was, to take a view of the *Placa major*, where 'tis perform'd, and where my Kinſwoman (being a *Titulada* of *Caſtile*) had her Balcony, with a Canopy, Carpet, and Cuſhion of State.

How they catch the Bulls.

To give you as compleat an Account of the matter as I can, you muſt know, that after the *King* has fix'd a Day for the Feaſt, certain *Cows* (call'd by them *Mandarines*) are led into the Foreſts and Mountains of *Andaluſia*, where the moſt furious *Bulls* are in vaſt numbers; the *Bulls* no ſooner ſpy the *Cows* but they purſue 'em with a great deal of eagerneſs, and the *Cows* flying, decoy 'em into certain Palliſado'd Rails made on purpoſe along the way, ſometimes for thirty or forty leagues, being follow'd by a good number of Men arm'd with Half-pikes, and mounted on good Herſes, to hinder their return, which is not done ſometimes without Bloodſhed. Certain Meſſengers being appointed to bring timely notice when theſe *Bulls* approach *Madrid*, the Streets thro' which they are to paſs are lin'd alſo with ſtrong Rails, to prevent their doing of miſchief; the *Mandarines* going before, and the *Bulls* following 'em, are thus convey'd to the very baiting-place, where are certain Stables built for this uſe, with Shutters to keep 'em in; ſometimes they bring in thus thirty, forty, or fifty at a time: The Stable hath two Doors, one thro' which the *Mandarines* go in, and another thro' which they eſcape, the *Bulls* being prevented from following 'em by a Trap-door.

The Placa Mayor.

After ſome hours reſt given them, they are one after another let out into the *Placa Mejor* or *Great Place*, where a great many young luſty Peaſants appointed for that purpoſe are, ſome whereof take the *Bull* by the Horns, others by the Tail, and ſo mark him with a hot Iron on the Buttock, and ſlit his Ears, whence they call 'em *Heradores*, which is alſo ſeldom done without ſome ſiniſter Accident or other. Theſe *Bulls* are well fed for a certain time, and the fierceſt of 'em pick'd out for the baiting; for as thoſe *Bulls* that behave themſelves well upon this occaſion are mark'd by a Ribbon tied to his Horns, ſo they diſtinguiſh them again by the difference of the Colours.

The Day for the Feaſt being come, the *Placa Major* is cover'd with Sand, ſurrounded with Bars of ſix foot high, on which are painted the *King's Arms*. This Place, which is longer than 'tis broad, ſeems to me more ſpacious than the *Place Royal* at *Paris*, being enclos'd on all ſides with fair Houſes built upon Pillars and Arches like Towers, five ſtories high, with a row of Balconies to each, into which you enter by Glaſs Doors. The *King's* ſtanderh in the middle of one of the ſides, being remarkable before the reſt by its largeneſs and rich gilding, with a ſtately Canopy over it. Directly oppoſite to his are the Balconies of ſuch of the Ambaſſadors as have their places in the *King's Chapels*, as the *Nuncio*, the *Imperial Ambaſſador*, thoſe of *France*, *Poland*, *Venice*, *Savoy*, &c. the *Proteſtant* Miniſters having no Privilege allow'd 'em upon this account. On the right hand are the Balconies for the ſeveral Councils of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, the *Inquiſition*, *Italy*, &c. known by their reſpective Arms embroider'd in Gold upon crimſon Velvet: Then come the City Companies, *Judges*, *Grandees* and *Titulado's*, according to their reſpective Degrees, at the *King's* charge, or elſe of the City's that gives the *Bull-feaſt*, who hire theſe Balconies from the People that dwell in theſe Houſes.

The moſt conſiderable part of the Bull feaſt.

All the Company there, of both Sexes, is entertain'd with a Collation of dry'd Sweetmeats, Fruits, Water cool'd with Snow or Ice, Gloves, Ribbons, Fans, Paſtrils, Silk-Stockings, Garters, &c. put up in curious Baskets, inſomuch that ſuch a Feaſt coſts commonly above a hundred thouſand Crowns, the Expence being defray'd out of the Fines and Forfeitures belonging to the *King* or the *City*, which are laid aſide as a Fund to be imploy'd to no other uſe than this, tho' in the greateſt Emergency, for fear of a Commotion of the People, who are ſo bewitch'd to this Sport, that commonly from fifteen to twenty Piſtoles is given for each Balcony, which are all cover'd with Carpets and Canopies

How the Spectators are placed

From the level of the Pavement to the firſt row of Balconies, Scaffolds are made for ſuch of the People as have no Privilege to be admitted into the Balconies, but no Benches are erected under the *King's* Balcony, that place being reſerv'd for his Guards. There are three Gates only leading into this Place, thro' which Perſons of Quality, but eſpecially foreign Miniſters, paſs in their rich Coaches and Equipages, and taking ſeveral turns round it before the King comes, they ſalute the Ladies in their Balconies, who upon this occaſion appear without their Veils, cover'd all over with Jewels, and in their fineſt Apparel, which, together with the Tapeſtry Carpets and Cuſhions embroider'd with rais'd-work of Gold, affords one of the moſt glorious Sights I ever beheld in my life: The King's Balcony had green and Gold Curtains, which he draws when he has no mind to be ſeen.

The King's Appearance and Train.

About four of the Clock the King came, with five or ſix Coaches before him fill'd with his Officers, Gent'emen and Pages of his Chamber; at his arrival all the Coaches withdrew out of the Place: The Coach of Honour, which is always empty, goes immediately before His Majeſty's own, whoſe Coachman and Poſtilion appear bareheaded, a Footman carrying their Hats; the Coach is attended by a Guard on foot: The *Lifeguard* are arm'd with Partiſans, and march at a little diſtance from the Coach, next to the Boots of which walk the King's Pages clad in black, without Swords, which diſtinguiſhes them from other Pages.

The Ladies deſign'd for the Attendance of the future Queen being already nam'd, they appear'd (under the Conduct of the Dutcheſs of *Terra Nova*) in the King's Coaches; near their Boots you might ſee divers Men of Quality, ſome on foot, others mounted on moſt ſtately Horſes: This piece of Gallantry muſt not be attempted without particular Leave from their Miſtreſſes, without which it would be look'd upon as a Preſumption, and a blemiſh to the Reputation of the Lady's Kindred, but when Leave obtain'd, they are permitted to make uſe of all the pleaſant Humors allow'd of upon occaſion of ſo great a Solemnity; tho' at the ſame time the *Ducgno's* or Women of Honour, of which there are always ſeveral in every Coach, and the *Guarda Dama's* that are on Horſeback, are but troubleſom Companions; the firſt will draw the Curtains whenever the Fancy takes 'em, and the laſt will tell the *Cavaliers*, That *the moſt reſpectful Love is always beſt*; ſo that often they are forc'd to make uſe of their Eyes inſtead of their Tongues.

His Guard.

The King being ſeated in his Balcony, the Captain of the Guards with the reſt of the Officers, mounted on fine Horſes cover'd with Knots of Ribbons of divers colours, and embroider'd Houſings, enter the Place at the head of the *Spaniſh*, *German* and *Burgundian* Guards; they are cloath'd in yellow Velvet or Sattin (the King's Livery) trimm'd with tufted crimſon Galoon mix'd with Gold and Silver. The Yeomen of the Guard, or his *Lifeguard*, have ſhort Cloaks of the ſame Livery, but only black Clothes.

The *Spaniards* wear their Breeches tuck'd up after the old way: The *Germans*, call'd by them *Tudeſques*, wear theirs like the *Switzers*: They are placed in ranks near the King's Balcony, whilſt the two Captains and the two Lieutenants march in a rank, each with a Staff of Command in his Hand, and attended by a great many Liveries, round the Place for ſeveral times, giving the neceſſary Orders, and ſaluting the Ladies. Upon this ſolemn occaſion every one affects to wear the Cobar that is moſt eſteem'd by his Miſtreſs.

Every one being ſeated, the Place is water'd with forty or fifty Tuns of Water, brought thither in little Carts, and the Captains and Lieutenants returning to their Poſts

under

under the King's Balcony, make a Fence of their Bodies and Halberts, by keeping close together, which they present to the Bull when he approaches 'em, being oblig'd not to move a foot from their station be the danger never so great; this done, six *Alguazils* or City Doorkeepers enter the Place mounted on excellent Horses harness'd after the *Morisco* fashion, and adorn'd with many little Bells, their business being to fetch the *Knights* that are to combat the Bulls; they have each a white Rod, and their Habit is white also, with Plumes of Feathers on their Heads.

Laws of the Bullfighting.

You must observe that there are certain receiv'd Laws for this *Bullfighting*, which they call *Duelo*, i. e. *a Duel*, because the *Knight* engages the Bull in a single Combat. No body must fight the Bull except a Gentleman born, and known to be such, that he may fight on Horseback: The *Knight* must not draw his Sword (which is short, and three fingers broad) till the Bull has insulted over him; they call it *insulting* when he has broken or forced the Launce out of his Hand, tumbled off his Hat or Cloak, or wounded the Horse or any of the Company, for this being an *Empenno*, as they stile it, or an Affront, that the *Knight* must either revenge or die in the attempt, he is oblig'd to push his Horse directly upon him, and to give him a back stroke upon his Head or Neck: If the Horse is daunted at the Bull, the *Cavalier* must alight and engage him on foot, when the other *Knights* are oblig'd also to alight from their Horses and to follow him, not with an intention to assist him, but only to try whether they can frighten this fierce Animal, by marching up directly against him; and if he, instead of encountring them, retreats to one end of the Place, they have satisfied the Laws of Duelling.

Horses Incens'd for their Combats.

They have an odd way of providing themselves with Horses for these Combats; if any Horse be known in Town to have been us'd at the *Bull-feast*, or to be well train'd up for that Exercise, any one of the *Knights* that are to fight, tho' an absolute Stranger to the Owner, will borrow it; and be sure not to be refus'd; nay, if the Horse happen to be kill'd in the Combat, the Owner will refuse the Money offer'd for the payment of the Horse, the *Spaniards* looking upon it as unbecoming their Generosity to take Money upon such an account, tho' the Horse cost 'em a great deal of Trouble and Money training up for this purpose.

The Knights Combatants Equipages.

The first day I was there I saw the *Alguazils* march to the Gate which is at one end of the List, to introduce the six *Cavaliers* that had engag'd to combat the Bulls; their Horses were exceeding handsom, and most magnificently harness'd; they had, beside those they rid on, each a dozen led Horses, with as many Mules laden with *Garrahons* or *Launces* made of Firr, about five foot long, painted and gilt, and the Iron very bright; the Mules were cover'd with Velvet Cloth, of the same colour as the Combatants, with their Arms upon 'em embroider'd with Gold. I was told that the same magnificence is not observ'd at all the *Bull-feasts*, (especially when given only by the City) but this being appointed in honour of the *King's Marriage*, the *Knights* did strive to outvie each other in their splendid Equipages.

Dress.

They themselves were dress'd in black, embroider'd either with Gold or Silver, or Silk and Bugles; their Plumes of Feathers were white intermix'd with other colours, and a Diamond *Hatband* and *Knot* of the same adorn'd the Hat; their Scarfs were of different colours, which some wore about the Waste, some over the Shoulders like Sword-belts, others about their Arms; these last were very small, being the Present of the Lady for whose sake they expose themselves to this danger. Their black Cloaks were wrapt about 'em, with the ends turn'd behind, so as not to hinder the full use of their Arms: They wore little white *Bukini*, and long gilt Spurs with one sharp point only, after the fashion of the *Moors*, whom they also imitate in riding with their Knees bent, which they call *Cavalgar à la Gineta*.

Attendance.

They were attended each by forty Footmen, some clad in Gold Mohair trimm'd with Galoon or Lace, others in Carnation-colour'd Brocado's striped with Gold or Silver; but all in the Habit of Foreigners, some like *Turks*, others like *Hungarians*, *Moors*, *Indians*, *Savages*, some of these carried abundance of Launces.

Thus, conducted by the six *Alguazils* under the sound of Trumpets, they pass'd over the *Placa Major*, and approaching the King's Balcony, with a profound reverence ask'd Leave of him to engage the Bulls, which being granted with a Wish of *Good Success*, all the Trumpets began to sound, in defiance of the Bulls, under the Acclamations and Shouts of the People and the repeated Huzza's, *Viva vivo los bravos Cavalleros*; this done, they separate, and saluting the Ladies of their acquaintance, send away all their Footmen out of the List, except two for each Knight, who carry the Launces, and always keep close to their Masters. At the same time many young Men (not nobly born) came from far distant places to fight the Bulls on foot.

The Rage and Fury of the Bull.

As soon as one *Cavallero* engages the Bull the rest withdraw at some little distance, for they must not assault the same Bull unless in their own defence, and the first the Bull runs at is to combat him: If the *Cavalier* happen to be wounded, they cry out, *Filemo or Empenno*, i. e. he must revenge the Affront receiv'd from the Bull, and then he attacks the Bull closely, on Horseback or a foot, and gives him a cut with his Sword on the Head, Neck or Throat, and not in any other part, but after the first stroke he may fight and strike him as he will or best can; and when the first blow is given, the rest of the Knights, if on foot, are at liberty to remount their Horses.

After the *King* had given the Signal for the beginning of the *Bull-fighting*, two of the *Alguazils* came under his Balcony, when he deliver'd the Keys of the Stables where the *Bulls* are kept (which are in his own custody) to Don *John*; then the *Trumpets* sounded, and the *Timbrels*, *Drums*, *Fifes*, *Hautboys*, *Flutes* and *Bagpipes* play'd in their several turns, whilst the *Alguazils* went trembling to the Stables, to open the Doors for the *Bulls* to come out. There stood a Man behind the Door with a Ladder, who, as soon as the Bull was come out, shut it, and so immediately sav'd himself by climbing up to the top of the Stable, these Creatures being so cunning as to look immediately behind the Door: As the *Alguazils* are naturally Cowards, and besides this are not allow'd to engage the Bull, they immediately seek their safety in their own Horse's Heels.

No sooner is the Bull come into the *Placa Major* but the young Men on foot throw their Arrows and Darts trimm'd with cut Paper at him, which sticking in his Skin, makes him stir about on all sides, and at the same time forceth the points deeper into his Flesh, the rattling of the Paper also contributing not a little to his rage, he strikes Terror into the Beholders, his Eyes and Nostrils breathing nothing but Fire and Flame, with as swift a motion as the nimblest Horse. The *Cavalier* approaches him with his Launce, which he holds like a Dagger; when the Bull makes up at him he declines his Fury, and at the same time thrusts one of the Launces at him, which the Bull breaks, but his Footman supplies him with another, which he also thrusts into the Flesh of the furious Beast, who turns, leaps, bellows, and overthrows every thing he meets in his way: If he runs at a Man unarm'd, they throw a Hat or Cloak at him, which stops him; sometimes they fall upon the Ground, and so the Bull runs over 'em; they have also a way of deceiving him by Figures made of Pastboards, which gives them leisure to escape. 'Tis further observable, that the Bull never fails to shut his Eyes at that very instant when he is ready to push, which being exactly taken notice of, they may avoid the blow, but sometimes their Skill fails 'em, and so pay dearly for it.

The fierceness of the Bulls.

Boldness of a Black.

I saw a *Black* perform one of the boldest and most dextrous acts of this kind that ever was seen; he advanc'd with only his Dagger to the Beast, whilst in his full rage, and thrust it so furiously into his Scull betwixt the Horns, that he fell dead upon the ground in an instant.

No sooner is a Bull kill'd, but four *Alguazils* fetch in four Mules cover'd with Feathers and little Bells, these they tye with Traces of Silk to the Bull, and so draw him out of the Rails, under the sound of Trumpets and Shouts of the People. There were no less than twenty baited the first day; among these one more furious than any of the rest ran with such fury upon Count *Comingsmark*, (one of the Combatants there) that he not only wounded him in his Leg, but also burst his Horse's Belly; he got off of him immediately, and tho' he had lost a good quantity of Blood, and was forc'd to be supported by one of his Footmen, he made up with an undaunted Courage towards the Bull with his Sword only, wherewith he gave a terrible wound to the Bull on his Head; then turning himself to that side where stood a young Lady for whose sake he had fought, he kiss'd his Sword, and so was carried off almost half dead, being accompanied to the Bars by the other Knights, who immediately after return'd to their stations.

The Bravery of Count Comingsmark.

There was a *Biscayer* who from his Horse leap'd upon the Bull's Back, where he staid for above a quarter of an hour, and let not go his hold till he had broke one of his Horns.

If a Bull defends himself so long till the King is tir'd of him, he calls for a fresh one, (who affords better sport) and the former is baited with a kind of *English* Bull-dogs, being not very big, but low, yet so fierce that they never let

let go their hold, tho' you cut them to pieces: If the Bull proves too hard for the Dogs, and they would be rid of him, they hamſtring him with certain Irons put croſs-wiſe to a long Pole; this they call *Facetar el Toro*.

Bloody Combats. We ſaw another *Cavalier*, after his Hat was faln off, ruſh with his Horſe upon the Bull, whom he gave a wound with his Sword in the Neck, but it being only a ſlight one, the enraged Beaſt roar'd and tore as if he would have trampled all under foot; a young *Toledian* was toſſed by the Bull up into the Air, and cruſh'd ſo miſerably with his Horns, that he died upon the ſpot. There were two other Perſons mortally wounded, and four Horſes kill'd or ſpoil'd, yet, according to the Sentiments of the *Spaniards*, this was not a fine *Bullfighting*, becauſe there was no more Blood ſhed, for they never eſteem it as ſuch unleſs ten Men at leaſt loſe their Lives in the Fray.

'Tis almoſt incredible with what dexterity theſe Combatants manage their Horſes and Arms, and how they ſometimes keep for an hour together not above a foot diſtant from the Beaſt, without being touch'd by him. I ſaw a *Caſtilian* jump as nimbly upon one of theſe Bulls as if he had been an Horſe.

The King gave a Preſent of fifteen Piſtoles to the *Black* we ſpoke of before, and as much to another, who likewiſe had kill'd a Bull.

To conclude, theſe Feaſts are very noble, magnificent, and coſtly, and muſt be confeſs'd to have ſomething in 'em ſo extraordinary as muſt be ſeen to form a true Idea of the whole: On the other hand it can't be denied that they ſavour ſomething of the Barbarity of the *Moors*, from whence they have deriv'd this Cuſtom; and it is doubtleſs upon this ſcore that divers Popes have been inclin'd to aboliſh this dangerous Cuſtom, but that the *Spaniards* made uſe of all their Intereſt in the Court of *Rome*, not to be bereav'd of their darling Sport.

Don *Ferdinand* perceiving me ſeveral times change colour and turn pale, at the ſight of ſome of the *Cavaliers* that were either wounded or ſlain, told me ſmiling, What would you have done if you had been preſent at a

A ſad Accident at a *Bull feaſt*. certain *Bull-feaſt* ſome Years ago? A certain Gentleman of Honour being deſperately in love with a beautiful young Lady, would needs give her ſome Proofs of his Love and Courage at one of theſe *Bull-feaſts*; ſhe diſſwaded him as much as poſſibly ſhe could, but finding him perſiſt in his Reſolution, ſhe diſguiſed her ſelf in the Habit of a Country Youth, and thus going to the *Placa Mejor*, found her Lover engag'd with a furious Bull; ſhe threw a Dart at the Beaſt, which piercing deep into his fleſh, ſo enrag'd him, that leaving the *Cavalier*, he ran directly roaring after the Youth, who being frightned, loſt his Cap in the retreat, and was ſoon diſcover'd to be a Woman, whilſt the Bull with one deſperate puſh threw her upon the ground: The Lover ſeeing his beloved Miſtreſs in this condition, threw himſelf like one enrag'd upon the Bull, and perform'd Wonders; but being more mindful of his Revenge than his Perſon, he receiv'd ſeveral mortal Wounds, which put a period to his Life ſoon after: The two unfortunate Lovers deſir'd to be laid both in one Chamber, and to be married, which being done accordingly, they died not long after, and were both buried together in one Grave.

I have hitherto ſaid nothing of the *Spaniſh* Language, which I am now ſtudying as much as I can, becauſe it appears to me grave, noble, and expreſſive; tho' the Courtiers, I muſt own, (who affect conciſeneſs) ſometimes thruſt in ſuch abſtracted Metaphors and Compariſons as make them hard to be underſtood, except by thoſe who are acquainted with their way of ſpeaking; yet, in the whole, I think *French* is the only Language that may challenge the precedency before the *Spaniſh*.

Land Galleys. You will perhaps be ſurpriz'd when I tell you that I ſaw at *Madrid* (which is eighty leagues from the Sea) ten Galleys lately arriv'd from *Gallicia* and *Mancc*; theſe are certain Chariots four or five times as long as the ordinary ones, with ſix Wheels, three on a ſide, the upper part cover'd with a Canvas, and round like a Galley; each of theſe holds about forty Perſons, drawn by eighteen or twenty Horſes; they eat and drink, ſleep and dreſs Victuals in 'em, and commonly travel ten or twelve in company, for fear of overturning, it requiring no leſs than the aſſiſtance of a hundred perſons to ſet one of 'em upright again: They carry all their Proviſions along with 'em, the barren Mountains (eighty leagues over) affording nothing but a little wild Thyme.

On *Trinity Sunday* I ſaw the Pope's Nuncio Monſ. *Molini* conſecrate the Patriarch of the *Indies*; he wore a black Suit, with a gold-colour'd Silk Belt, ſet in Flowers with little Pearls, with his broad Hat flapping over his Shoulders, an odd ſort of a figure for any Stranger to behold. I am

Madrid, *May* 29.
1679.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XI.

I Now begin to be ſenſible that what I heard before concerning the exceſſive Heat here, falls far ſhort of what I find it, being ready to be ſmother'd with it, till the *Weſtern* Briezes refreſh one a little about midnight. Whilſt you take the Air and keep the Glaſſes open you are choak'd with Duſt, if you ſhut 'em you are ſtifled with Heat, and the Duſt will notwithſtanding this penetrate into the Houſes and Coaches, and ſpoil your Clothes and Furniture.

The Proceſſion on *Corpus Chriſti Day*. I was preſent at the Ceremony on *Corpus Chriſti Day*; this Proceſſion is attended by all the Pariſhes and Monaſteries, thro' the chief Streets hung all with the fineſt Tapeſtry in the World, both of the King's and moſt Perſons of Quality; the Balconies upon this occaſion are without Lattices, adorn'd with Carpets, Cuſhions and Canopies, fill'd with Ladies, who appear upon this day the firſt time in their Summer Apparel, and throw Flowers and ſweet Waters upon thoſe that paſs by in Proceſſion, unto which no Women are admitted: They ſtretch Ticking croſs the Streets, to keep off the heat of the Sun, and wet it often with Water, to make the Air cooler; the Ground is cover'd with Sand and Flowers well water'd to lay the Duſt: The King appear'd there in perſon, preceded by his three Companies of Guards, new cloath'd in a black Luſtring Suit, with a Shoulder-belt of blue Silk edg'd with white, his Sleeves of white Taffety embroider'd with Silk and Bugles, they were long and open before, and his little Hanging-ſleeves did reach to his Waſte, with his Cloak wrapt about his Arm, and his golden Collar of the *Fleece*, ſet with Diamonds, about his Neck; the Buckles of his Shoes and Garters and Hatband were likewiſe of Diamonds, as well as the Knot at the buttoning of his Hat, on which hung a Pearl call'd by them *the Peregrine*, pretended to be the fineſt in *Europe* for its ſhape, largeneſs and colour. The whole Court and the Councils, without any order or precedency, follow'd the King and the Tabernacle (under which was the *Holy Sacrament*) each with a white Wax-candle in his Hand: The Gentlemen of the King's Bedchamber had at their Side a golden Key as large as one of our Cellar Keys; and I obſerv'd the Knights of *Malcha* with their Croſſes of *Holland* embroider'd on their Sleeves.

The Return or holy Tragedies. No ſooner is the *Holy Sacrament* carried back to the Church, but every one goes to Dinner, that they may be ready to go to what they call the *Auto's*, being certain poor Tragedies acted upon *Religious Subjects*, in the Court or Street of each Preſident of a Council. The King and moſt People of Quality commonly appear there, and my Kinſwoman and I among the reſt: It was an odd ſight to ſee a prodigious number of *Flamboys* lighted, whilſt the Sunbeams were ready to ſcorch you to death, and melted the very Wax of which they were made; it was the moſt impertinent piece I ever ſaw of this kind in all my life: They repreſented an Aſſembly of the Knights of the Order of S. *James*, and our Saviour coming in to petition them to be admitted into their Order, which ſome of the Knights are very willing to conſent to; but ſome of the *Seniors* alledging, that our Saviour being born of ignoble Parents, could not be a Member of their Order without infringing the Fundamental Rules of their Inſtitution, it was at laſt carried in the negative, but in lieu thereof pitch'd upon this Expedient, to inſtitute the Order of *Chriſto*, now us'd in *Portugal*.

Theſe *Auto's* continue for a whole month, but thoſe that frequent 'em muſt like 'em better than I do; the only ſatisfaction I had was, that I hapned to meet with Don *Auguſtin Pecchco* and his Lady, (of whom before) at the Preſident *de Hazienda's* Houſe.

We went, after the *Auto's* was over, to take the Air in the *Prado*, and ſtaying ſomewhat later than moſt of the Company, the *Nuncio* and the *Venetian* Ambaſſador order'd their Coaches to come up cloſe to ours: Whilſt we were talking with them, we were ſurpriz'd on a ſudden by a certain kind of Proceſſion and Illumination; there appear'd ſixty Cardinals in their proper Habits and

Caps,

Caps, mounted on Mules, follow'd by the Pope carried upon a Scaffold, cover'd with a Carpet, in a Chair of State under a Canopy, with S. *Peter*'s Keys laid at his Feet upon a Cushion, and a Vessel full of holy Water of Orange-flowers, wherewith he sprinkled all that pass'd by. They march'd on very orderly till they came to the end of the *Prado*, where the Cardinals began to play a thousand odd tricks, some throwing their Caps upon the Trees and catching 'em again upon their Heads, others standing upright upon their Mules Backs and making 'em run full speed, to divert *His Holiness*: They were follow'd by a vast number of People.

The Pope's *Nuncio* assur'd us he did neither know what it meant, nor approve of such an odd sort of Pageantry, and would have sent his Attendants to disperse 'em, but finding upon enquiry that it was the *Bakers Holiday*, or an Anniversary Feast celebrated in honour of their Saint, they pass'd on undisturb'd.

My Kinswoman being sensible how generously I had been entertain'd at Don *Augustin Paccheo*'s House, invited him to Supper, when I took the opportunity to challenge his Promise of giving me an account of the *Spanish West-Indies*, where he had liv'd a considerable time.

That part of *America* which now is under the jurisdiction of *Spain*, being first discover'd by the *Spaniards* in 1492, under the Conduct of *Christopher Columbus* a *Genoese*, in the Reign of *Ferdinand* King of *Castile* and *Arragon*, the said King and his Successors obtain'd a Grant from Pope *Alexander* VI, by which they were establish'd *Perpetual Vicars* of the *Holy See*, so that the Kings of *Spain* have a much larger extent of Power in *America* than in *Europe*, as being both *Temporal* and *Spiritual Lords* of that vast Tract of Ground, where they nominate Bishops, receive Tenths, and exercise all other Ecclesiastical Jurisdictions.

The Council of the *Indies* is one of the most considerable of all the Kingdom, besides which there are two Chambers of the *Indies*, one at *Madrid*, compos'd of the eldest Members of the Council of the *Indies*, whose business 'tis to take cognizance of all matters relating to the Revenues, and send Dispatches by their Secretaries; the other at *Seville* is stiled the *House of Contraction*, compos'd of Councellors both of the Robe and Sword: These last manage matters relating to the Fleet and Galeons, the others take cognizance of every thing relating thereunto, in a judicial way; tho' an Appeal lies from hence to the Council of the *Indies*.

The Chambers of *Madrid* and *Seville*.

In the *House of Contraction* are kept the Registers of all Goods imported or exported to the *Indies*, that the King may not be defrauded in his Customs, which are a Fifth part; but as the Clerks are generally Sharers with the Merchants, so they agree well enough in this point.

'Tis the Council of the *Indies* that recommend to the *King* such persons as they judge qualified for the *Viceroyalties* of *New Spain* and *Peru*, which are never granted for above five Years, as are all the other places of note in the *West-Indies*; as, those of the Governour, Captain General, and President of the Chancery of S. *Domingo* in the *Spanish* Islands; the Government of S. *Christophers* in the *Havanna*, of St. *James*, of *Cuba*, of the City of St. *John*, of *Puerto Rico*, of St. *Austin* in the Province of *Florida*, of the City of *Ascension* in the Isle of S. *Margaret*, of *Cumana* the capital City of the Province of *New Andalusia*; the Viceroyalty of *New Spain*; the President of the *Royal Audience* residing at *Mexico*; the Governour and Captain General of *Merida* the Metropolis of the Province of *Yucatan*; the President and Governour of the *Royal Audience* residing at *Gaudalakara* the Capital of *Galicia*; the Governour and Captain General of *Guadiana* the Capital of *New Biscay*; the Governour, Captain General, and President of the Chancery residing at S. *Jago*, in the Province of *Guatemela*; the Governour of the Province of *Lamusco* in the Streight of *Guatemela*; the Governour and Captain General of the City of *Cornigua*, of the Province of *Honduras*, of the City of S. *James*, of *Lyon* the Capital of the Province of *Nicaragua*, of *Carthagena* the Metropolis of *Costa Riga*; the Governour, Captain General, and President of the Chancery residing at *Marvilla* in the *Philippin Islands*; the Governour and Lieutenants of the Fortresses of *Ternate*; the Governour and Captain General of the Militia of the same Province; the Viceroy, Governour, Captain General, and President of the *Audit* of the City of *Lima*, eight Councellors, four Alcaids, two Accusators, the Protector of the *Indies*, four Reporters; the Governours of *Chucuito*, of *Ica*, of *Xica*, of *Delos Collegos*, of *Guamanga*, of *Santigo de Misastaves de Zara*, of S. *Marco*, of *Arequipo*, of *Truxillo*; the Viceroys of *Castra*, and of *Michael de Puerto de Blata*; the Master of the Camp of the Streight of *Puerto del Callao*; the President of *la Plata*, with his Councellors, Reporters, &c. the Governours of the Provinces of *Tucumanan*, *S. Croix*, *de la Plata*, and *Paraguay*, of the Citadel of *de la Plata de Potosy*, of *Philip* of *Austrich*, and the Gold Mines, of the City of *Paix*, and of the Mines of *Potosy*; the Governour, Captain General, and President of the City of S. *Foy*; the Governour and Captain General of the Province of *Casienaya*, with his Lieutenant and *Mareschal de Camp*; the Governour and Captain General of the Province of S. *Martha*; the Governour of the Citadel of S. *Martha*; the Governours of the Provinces of *Entoia*, *Popayan*, and *Merida*, of *de los Mosos y Colinos*, of the Cities of *Tunja*, *Tena*, *Emalhague*, *Quinos Zamoco*, *Ecanele*, *Jane*, *Santigo de Quingaquil*, *Luja Zamora*, and of the Mines of *Cernura*; the Governour, Captain General, and President of the City of *Panama*; the Governour, Captain General, Lieutenant General, and Captains of *Veragoa*; the Governours of the Castle of S. *Philip* and *Puerto Velo*; the chief Governour of *Puerto Velo*, and the Governour and Captain General of the Province of S. *Martha*, of the River *Hacha*; and the Governour of the great *Caka Marca*; not to mention the many places of the Courts of Judicature, and Benefices, which are very considerable.

Chief Governments of the *Spanish West-Indies*.

In those places where there is no Governour, the President supplies that Place; and when a Viceroy dies, the President of that Viceroyalty has the supream administration of the Government till a new Viceroy is sent by the King of *Spain*, who has the disposal of those great Posts and the most considerable Governments, the rest being the Gift of the Viceroys; these gather commonly in five Years time a Treasure of two millions of Crowns, and the Governours of the most considerable places about five or six hundred thousand Crowns each, and nothing is more common than a Missionary to bring home thirty or forty thousand Crowns for his share.

Riches of the Governours of the *West-Indies*.

The *Spaniards* were not in the wrong when they would not permit any sort of Manufacturies to be made in the *West-Indies*, by which means the Inhabitants must have a constant dependance on 'em, in respect of this as well as several other Commodities, especially Wine and Oyl, the planting of *Vines* and *Olive-trees* being likewise forbidden in their *American* Plantations.

It is upon this score the *Spaniards* send their *Flota* or Merchant-ships laden with all sorts of *European* Commodities to the *West-Indies*, their *Galeons* being properly Men of War, intended for Convoys, tho' they are often (contrary to the *King*'s Prohibition) laden so heavy with Merchandise, that they are not able to defend themselves in case of an attack: The Merchants pay for the dispatch of each of these Vessels three, four, or six thousand Crowns, to the Council of the *Indies*, according to the bigness of the Vessel.

The Flota and Galeons.

The *Galeons* stop at *Puerto Velo*, whence the *Flota* continues their Voyage to *New Spain*. The *Galeons* sail from S. *Lucar* to *Carthagena* in six weeks or two months, and after they have tarried there a little while, come back to *Puerto Velo*, a Seaport Town of *America*, seated in a very unwholsom Air.

Puerto Velo.

About ten leagues distant thence, on the opposite side of the *Isthmus*, lies the City of *Panama*, whither they bring prodigious quantities of Silver Wedges from *Peru*, besides other *Indian* Commodities, which are thence sent by Land to *Puerto Velo*, where is kept the greatest Fair in the World, nothing being more frequent than to hear that in forty or fifty days time there has been sold, of *European* Commodities, to the value of twenty millions of Crowns ready-money.

Panama.

After this Fair, the *Galeons* return to *Carthagena*, where they buy up abundance of *Indian* Commodities, and thence to the *Havanna*, to provide themselves with Necessaries for their Voyage back to *Cadiz*, which is generally perform'd in two months. The *Flota* stops at *Porto Rico* to refresh, and sail in five weeks to *Vera Crux*, there they unlade their Merchandize, which are thence carried by Land eighty leagues to *Mexico*; the *Flota* goes afterwards to the *Havanna*, which must be only in *April* or *September*, by reason of the North Winds. The *Galeons* spend generally nine months in their Voyage to *Peru*, and the *Flota* thirteen or fourteen.

All the Money brought from the *Indies* upon the *King*'s account is transported on board one particular *Galeon*, and deliver'd to one of the Masters of the Mint, who has One *per Cent.* Allowance for the whole, in consideration of which he pays six thousand pounds for every Voyage.

The Merchants pay a certain Duty for all the Silver and Goods register'd and brought from the *Indies*, call'd *Avarié*, towards the fitting out of the *Galeons* and *Flota* for the next Year; besides which, the *General* of the *Galeons* advances the *King* a hundred thousand Crowns, and every Captain of a *Galeon* a certain Sum, in proportion to the bigness of his Vessel, which is repaid them with

very

Duties paid to the King, out of the Mines and their Products

very good Interest in the *Indies*. There goes a *Tetacha* with the *Galeons*, which, after they are come to the Latitude of the Gulph *de las Tegua*, goes to the Isles of *S. Margaret* to fish for Pearl, and afterward meets them again at *Cartagena*: A fifth part of all the Pearl taken belongs to the King; the same Duty is paid for all the Silver, Gold and Emerauld Mines in the *West-Indies*.

Potosi has the best Mines of Silver, which is thence brought to *Porto d'Ariga*, one of the Ports of *Lima*. The Kingdom of *Peru* produces every Year in Gold and Silver about eleven millions of Crowns, and *New Spain* five more, besides Merchandize, such as *Cochenele*, *Tobacco*, *Wool of Vigogne*, *Campeachy-wood* and *Hides*.

The King of *Spain* disposes, in the *Indies* as well as in his own Dominions, of the Bull of the *Crusade*, which is a License to eat Flesh on *Saturdays*, and to have the benefit of *Indulgences*. The Inquisition in the *Indies* does not extend to the idolatrous Natives or Pagans, but only to the *Hereticks* and *Jews*. No Strangers are allow'd to go to the *Spanish West-Indies* without special License, which is seldom granted.

It is impossible for me, added Don *Ferdinand*, to represent to you the beautifulness of the Churches, Palaces,

The City of *Mexico*.

and publick Places of the City of *Mexico*, as also its Riches, Magnificence, and happy Situation, which is such, that they are never sensible of the excessive heat in the Summer, nor of the extremity of cold in the Winter. The circumjacent Country produces two Crops every Year, and Flowers and Fruits in vast plenty, and is very well stock'd with Cattel; their Lakes and Ponds afford vast plenty of Fish, and Forests excellent wild Fowl and Beasts; besides that, the Earth opens in this Country her most interiour Bowels, to furnish them with Gold and Precious Stones.

But to return to our Supper: Don *Augustin*'s Lady was so well pleas'd with some of our *Ragou's* done after the *French* way, that she would needs engage me to give her a Receipt of 'em; and Don *Augustin* himself begg'd to have some of my Larding-pins, which are a great Rarity in *Spain*. As 'twas in the hot season, when the Nights are much preferrable before the Days, we did not part till five in the Morning.

Their taking the Air in the Night-time.

I told you before, that there are certain Days when every body takes the Air upon the Bridges of the River *Menzanares*; I have seen them make a stand in certain places, and to tarry till two or three of the clock in the Morning, and that sometimes to the number of a thousand Coaches; some divert themselves with Musical Instruments, others eat and drink, and others bathe themselves, which is done after a very ugly manner, for they dig a hole in the Gravel, which presently filling it self with Water, they thrust themselves into it. We saw the *Danish* Ambassadour's Lady wash her self thus in this River.

The *Spanish* Nobility.

To prove your self of a noble Extraction in *Spain*, you must shew your Descent to be, both by Father and Mother, from *Viejos Christianos*, as they stile 'em, *i. e.* from *Ancient Christians*, without any mixture of *Jewish* or *Moorish Families*. Nothing's more common in *Spain* than for Children to take upon 'em their Mothers Name, if she be of the better Family, and there are now very few Families of note in *Spain*, whose Name and Nobility has not by a Daughter been transfer'd into another.

As *Biscay* and *Navarre* were secur'd against the Attempts of the *Moors* by the unaccessibleness of their Mountains, so there is scarce a *Waterbearer* there but what boasts himself a Gentleman

There is one thing very particular in *Spain*, *viz.* that all such as can prove themselves *Foundlings*, and to have been bred as such in the Hospital, are noble, bear the Title of *Hidalgoes*, and enjoy all the Privileges belonging to the Nobility. There are certain illustrious Families in *Spain* which hold their Estates by the Title of *Mejorazgo*; if all of the Name are dead, the next Male, tho' a Bastard, inherits the Estate, and for want of such, the eldest Domestick succeeds both in Honour and Estate.

An Instance of *Spanish* Jealousie.

I can't forbear to give you an account of a Misfortune that lately befel a certain Lady of Quality of our acquaintance in *Madrid*, call'd *Donna Clara*: This Lady having a strong Inclination to the Count *de Castrillo*, a Person both witty and handsom, found means to let the same be known to him by a Letter; the Count, ambitious of his Conquest, gave the Lady a suitable Return, and used frequently to see her, in spight of her Brother *Henriques*, (who watch'd her narrowly) in expectation of the return of her Father, to whom they did not question this Match would not be unacceptable: However, matters being not carried on so secretly, but that *Henriques* got some scent of it, he (without the least shew of Indignation) entred her Chamber in the night-time, and strangled her in her sleep, and fearing that *Castrillo* would take a severe Vengeance for the Death of his beloved Mistress, he appear'd no more in publick, under pretence of dedicating his time to his private Devotions. The Count *de Castrillo* having for some time left nothing unattempted to revenge his Quarrel, at last pitch'd upon a way which answer'd his Intention; he took the Disguise of an *Aguador* or *Waterbearer*, (who carry Water on Asses in Pitchers about the City) and leaning upon a Well just against the House where Don *Henriques* dwelt, and where he had committed that barbarous Fact, he discover'd thro' one of the Casements, which was half open, his Enemy looking in a Looking-glass; this cunning *Waterbearer* threw abundance of Cherry-stones into the Room, as it were to mock him, some of which hitting Don *Henriques*'s Face, he was so enrag'd thereat, that he ran out into the Street to chastise the Insolence of this rude Fellow, but was highly surpriz'd when he saw him advance with his naked Sword (which he had hid for that purpose) and discovering himself, saying, *Traytor, defend thy self: Henriques* begg'd Quarter, but in vain, for *Castrillo* kill'd him upon the spot, and so made his escape.

The Revenge of the *Spaniards*.

The frequent Assassinations in this Country on account of some Affront or other, seems almost to authorize these barbarous Facts: If a Man receives a box on the Ear, or a stroke in the Face with a Hat, nay, with a Handkerchief or Glove; if he be call'd a *Dunkard*, or a reflecting word happens to pass upon his Wife's Virtue, these must be wip'd off with no less than the Blood of the Aggressors, and that by Assassination; *For*, say they, *'tis not just that, after a signal Affront receiv'd, the Offended Party should put his Life in an equal balance with the Offender*. They are so tenacious of Revenge, that they will not lay aside an Injury for twenty years after: if they happen to die before they can accomplish it, they will recommend the same upon their Deathbeds, to be executed by their Children. I had it from credible hands, that a certain Person of note dreading the Revenge of his Enemy, went to the *West-Indies*, where he staid twenty years, till hearing that both he and his Son were dead, he return'd into *Spain*, yet not without changing his Name for his greater security, but in vain. for, notwithstanding all his Precaution, the Grandson of his Enemy, tho' not above twelve years of age, found means to hire a Ruffian, who assassinated him soon after his return.

Most of these Assassines are Natives of the City of *Valentia*, a wicked Generation, who will venture at any thing for Money, and are always provided with Fire-Arms that will discharge without noise, and *Stilettoes*; some of these are about the length of our common Dag-gers, but no thicker than a good Needle, of the best Steel, and sharp-edg'd; it wounds mortally, the Wound being never to be dress'd, by reason of its depth and small Orifice: They have another sort somewhat longer, and of the thickness of a little Finger; I have seen some of these struck at one blow thro' a thick wooden Table: I was told, that a certain *Spaniard* of note having agreed with one of these *Bandoleros* (as they call 'em) of *Valentia*, for a certain Sum of Money to dispatch his Enemy, but a Reconciliation being made soon after betwixt 'em, he acquainted the *Bandelero* with it, desiring him not to put his Design in execution, tho' at the same time he allow'd him the Money as a voluntary Gift; but the Assassine replied, That *he scorn'd to have any of his Money without deserving it, to do which he must either kill him or his Enemy*. The Gentleman being willing to preserve his own Life, was forc'd to let him put in execution what he had design'd against the other, unless he would have resolv'd to seize him, a thing of dangerous consequence in *Spain*, where these Ruffians are so numerous and so closely united, that they are sure to revenge the Quarrel of any of their Companions, which makes *Spain* the most doleful Theatre of Tragical Scenes in the Universe.

Their Stilettoes or Daggers.

What is more surprizing than all the rest is, that as well those who leave no Stone unturn'd to put their Revenge in practise, as those who put 'em in execution, should engage themselves in certain Devotions for the success of their Enterprizes, at the very time they are going to give the mortal Wound to an innocent person of their own Religion and Country: I will not apply this indifferently to the whole Nation, there being questionless among 'em some who are endow'd with a more than ordinary greatness of Mind, of which I will give you some undeniable Instances, tho' even those may perhaps be interpreted by many as Follies, rather than true Generosity.

Instances of the *Spanish* Generosity.

The *Constable de Castile*, one of the chiefest Lords of *Spain*, has (as most of the Nobility of *Spain*) by ill Husbandry been reduc'd to a considerable want of Money, he

he being Preſident of the Council of State, Conſtable of *Caſtile*, and Grand *Falconer*, theſe Places would ſufficiently repair that Want, but that his Haughtineſs will not permit him to receive the Money due to him upon that account, alledging, *That a Man of his Quality ought to eſteem himſelf happy in ſerving his Prince, without being hir'd to it by Money, which belong'd to mercenary and ſlaviſh Souls.* The Duke *d'Arcos*, or *d'Aveiro*, pretends a Title to the Crown of *Portugal*, which is the reaſon he never ſtiles that King otherwiſe in his Diſcourſe than Duke of *Braganza*, and loſes a yearly Revenue of 10000 *l.* in *Portugal*, becauſe he will not kiſs that King's Hand; nay, tho' the King of *Portugal* has ſent to him more than once, to ſend only one of his Sons, (which he pleas'd) to whom he would pay not only the Annual Revenue, but alſo all the Arrears (amounting to a vaſt Sum) due ever ſince the Seizure, he never could be prevail'd upon to comply with his Requeſt; his reaſon is, That an Annual Revenue of 10000 *l.* bears not the leaſt compariſon with the acknowledging an Uſurper. Thus the Prince *d'Eſtillano* hath as many Places in his diſpoſal, belonging to the *Houſe of Contraction* at *Seville*, as amount to 80000 Livres *per annum*; but ſuch is his Haughtineſs, that when his Secretary offers to him the ſigning theſe Commiſſions, he will ſeldom do it, telling him, That *they are Trifles not worth his taking notice of*; tho' at the ſame time the King does not think it below his Dignity to diſpoſe of theſe Places and take the Money too.

Few Strangers at Madrid.

Madrid hath fewer Strangers than any other City in the World; the reaſon is manifeſt, for the Jealouſie of the *Spaniards* makes 'em rarely admit any body to lodge in private Houſes, and they have no more than two Inns. Add to this, that the ſcarcity of Hackney Coaches, and the want of Converſation with the Fair Sex, makes this place very diſagreable to Foreigners; tho' the young *Spaniards* begin already, at the age of twelve or thirteen, to maintain their Concubines, (call'd by them *Amancebade*) who, beſide the vaſt charge, commonly give them a Tincture of the *French* Diſeaſe.

The French Diſeaſe very frequent.

This Diſtemper is ſo current here, that very few Perſons of either Sex, (nay, even thoſe of the beſt Quality) are free from it, for the Children bring it along with 'em into the World, or elſe ſuck it in with their Nurſes Milk: One thing is obſervable, that this Diſeaſe is not attended with ſuch dangerous Symptoms in *Spain* as in moſt other places, becauſe their Hair and Teeth are very good; the Women of Quality at Court talk of it with as little concern as they do of a *Fever* or any other common Diſtemper, and ſeldom will be cur'd of it, becauſe they are in continual danger of falling into it again by their Husbands, who (tho' married) ſeldom quit their Concubines.

The Spaniſh Lords ill Husbandry.

Perſons of Quality who return loaden with Riches from the *Weſt-Indies* and other Governments, never lay out their Money in Purchaſes, but live upon it as long as it laſts, profuſely enough; when the Stock is exhauſted, they ſeek to repair their Fortune by a new Poſt or Government, whither they go poor enough, but return rich.

It muſt be confeſs'd, that there are divers illuſtrious Families in *Spain*, deſcended from the Race of the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Navarre*, *Arragon*, and *Portugal*; but 'tis certain on the other hand, that their Education (except ſome few) is not in the leaſt ſuitable to their Grandeur: The Study of *Latin* and *Hiſtory* is ſo foreign to them, that it is a rarity to find an able Perſon here to teach 'em; and even thoſe that take to the *Sword* ſeldom are inſtructed in the *Mathematicks*, *Fencing*, *Riding the Great Horſe*, and ſuchlike Exerciſes.

Their Education.

Add to this, that they are ſo fond of *Madrid*, that (looking upon it as the only Center of Happineſs, or a Terreſtrial Paradiſe) a Father rarely ſends his Son abroad to improve himſelf in foreign Countries, but commonly keeps him at home to paſs his time in Idleneſs, and without ſeeing any thing but their own domeſtick Cuſtoms, which makes them the greateſt admirers of their own Perſon in the World. At the age of ſixteen or ſeventeen the young Lord marries a Wife more a Child than himſelf, ſo that being his own Maſter before he knows the leaſt thing belonging to the Affairs of the World, he follows the general footſteps of confounding his Wife and debauching himſelf.

After all, to give the *Spaniards* their due, ſuch of them as have had the good fortune of a liberal Education, and improving themſelves by Travelling abroad, muſt be own'd to be Perſons of a ſolid Underſtanding and uncommon Vivacity; they both ſpeak and write conciſely, very apt for Politicks, and upon occaſion very temperate, conſtant, and laborious: Beſides that, they are naturally inclin'd to Generoſity, Secreſie, true Friendſhip and Bravery: All which taken together, makes their Manners not ſo odious to me as they appear to ſome People, who have perhaps given them a worſe Character than they deſerve, for want of examining the matter. I reſt

Madrid, June 27.
1679.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XII.

THE News brought by the Marqueſs *de los Balbaces*, That the *French* King had conſented to the Match betwixt *Madamoiſelle* and the King of *Spain*, was receiv'd with extraordinary demonſtrations of Joy at *Madrid*; the King went in Perſon to hear *Te Deum* at the Church of our Lady *d'Atocha*; the Ladies appear'd at the ſame time in the Windows and Balconies, and the Tables were ſpread in every Houſe in the City, tho' moſt of 'em had no other Entertainment than Garlick, Leeks and Onions, and drank Their Majeſties Healths in Water; for, as I told you, they are ſo averſe to Intemperance, eſpecially in ſtrong Liquors, that by the Law a man who has been prov'd but once notoriouſly drunk, is not admitted as a good Witneſs in any Court of Juſtice. The ſame night the Houſes were illuminated with Flamboys of white Wax, much longer and much dearer than thoſe we uſe at *Paris*; ſome Houſes have in the Windows, from top to bottom, and in the Balconies, no leſs than five hundred.

A Maſquerade.

In the Palace was a *Maſquerade*, compos'd of a hundred and fifty Perſons of Quality mounted upon very fine Horſes, cover'd with Silver Gawze and rich embroider'd Houſings; they were clad in black, with colour'd Sleeves, and Plumes in their Hats, which were turn'd up with Diamond Buttons, with rich Scarfs and Jewels, but their black Cloaks and Collars appear'd not very agreeable to the reſt; they rid with ſhort Stirrops, like the *Moors* and *Turks*. They generally meet upon ſuch occaſions at one of the Gates of the City, from whence they march four a-breaſt with a grave pace, and attended by a vaſt number of Footmen richly cloath'd in Gold and Silver, with Flamboys in their Hands, thro' the Streets, that were ſtrew'd with Sand and illuminated with large Chaffing-diſhes ſet upon Poles, by a great number of Flamboys and Lanthorns; thus they proceeded under the ſound of *Trumpets*, *Timbrels*, *Bagpipes* and *Flutes*, to the Court cover'd with Sand, where they took ſeveral Turns, endeavouring to thruſt one another out of the Saddle; Prince *Alexander* of *Parma*, a very bulky perſon, had the miſhap to be lifted thus out of the Saddle, his Fall causing a general ſhout, and he was ſo bruis'd, that they were forc'd to carry him off immediately.

A Spaniſh Lord creates Grandees.

Now we are upon the point of *Grandees* of *Spain*, I remember Don *Ferdinand de Toledo* told me the other day a pleaſant Story of his Father-in-law the Marqueſs *de Palacios*; Being a great Gallant at Court, where there was a publick Feaſt appointed by the King, and the Marqueſs wanting Money to appear there with his uſual Splendour, he went poſt into the Country, to ſeveral Towns of which he was the Lord, and there had it publiſh'd, *That all ſuch as had a mind to be Grandees ſhould come to him at a certain time*; the Citizens, being ambitious of ſuch an Honour, crowded to him, and he agreed with each of 'em in private for a certain Sum; which done, they appear'd all together, when he bid 'em to be cover'd before him, and gave 'em certain Letters to create 'em *Grandees*, by which means he got a conſiderable Sum of Money. The thing was at firſt ill repreſented to the King, and not well reliſh'd, but upon his Excuſes and asking of Pardon, it paſs'd for a Jeſt.

Great Officers in the K. of Spain's Family.

There are three *Great Officers* (as they ſtile 'em) belonging to the King's Family, the *Major Domo Mayor*, who commands in chief in the Palace; the *Surceiller of the Body*, who manages every thing in the King's Chamber; and the *Maſter of the Horſe*, who commands every thing belonging to the Family without the Palace. The next in rank are the *Gentlemen of the King's Bedchamber*, who wear a golden Key at their Girdles; there are three ſorts of theſe Keys, the firſt belongs to the Employment, the ſecond gives both Entrance and the Employment, and the third only Entrance into the Antichamber. There are no leſs than forty Gentlemen of the Bedchamber, who wait in their turns every day, and are generally *Grandees*; there are alſo eight *Mayors Dome*, or *Stewards in Ordinary*, who wait every week in their turns, and in the

the abſence of the Lord High Steward officiate in his place, introduce foreign Miniſters to the King's Audience, and have the ſame freedom of acceſs to the King as the Gentlemen of the Bedchamber.

The King's Guards.

The King has three Companies of Guards, conſiſting each of a hundred Halberdiers, *viz.* the *Flemiſh* or *Burgundian*, the *German*, and *Spaniſh*; not to mention the Guard call'd the *Lancers*, compos'd likewiſe of a hundred *Walloons*, which never attend abroad but upon great Ceremonies.

The chief Miniſter of State is call'd *Privado*, who has under him a Secretary of State, ſtil'd *The Secretary of the Univerſal Diſpatches*, becauſe all matters brought before the King and the chief Miniſter paſs thro' his hands, for the Council of State and the other Councils, after having examin'd and debated matters relating to their reſpective Provinces, ſend 'em to the King and his chief Miniſter, to be determin'd as they ſhall think fit.

The Councellors of the ſeveral Councils of the *Indies*, of the *Inquiſition of Whr*, of *Arragon*, of *Italy*, &c. have conſiderable Salaries and Profits annex'd to 'em, which amount from ſixteen to twenty thouſand Crowns a Year. And tho' Places are not ſold in *Spain*, yet Preſents are not refus'd.

The Cargo of the *Galeons* and *Flota*.

It is known that about thirty five millions of Crowns are brought every year from the *Weſt-Indies*, but of this there does not a fourth part belong to the King or Kingdom, the reſt belonging to the *French*, *Engliſh*, *Dutch* and *Genoeſes*, who in lieu thereof ſupply the *Spaniards* with the Manufacturies and other Neceſſaries of *Europe*, of which they would ſtand but in little need, were it not for their lazineſs. All this Treaſure Foreigners are oblig'd to venture under the Names of the *Spaniſh* Merchants, who are ſo exact and faithful upon this account, that they would rather loſe their Lives than diſcover the Combination: And there are certain Fellows at *Cadiz*, call'd *Metadors*, whoſe whole Employment is to cheat the King, and to convey the Silver and other precious Merchandize to places of ſecurity, which they do with ſo much fidelity and exactneſs, that it was ſcarce ever heard they fail'd in either; tho' without doubt this could not be ſo eaſily put into practiſe without the connivance of the Magiſtrates and Officers, who, to ſpeak the truth, are the greateſt Cheats in nature in *Spain*, and will ſcarce ſtick at any thing for Money; hence 'tis that they let Thieves, Murtherers, and other Criminals eſcape the hands of Juſtice if they have nothing to give, but if they have, they muſt allow them a ſhare, and ſo will remain undiſturb'd.

Criminal matters are judg'd only twice or thrice in a Year, and 'tis a rarity to ſee even ſome of the worſt of them die, the *Spaniards* being ſo tender to each other in this reſpect, that they rather condemn 'em to the Mines or Gallies. If an unfortunate Wretch is to be hang'd,

How they execute Criminals.

they tie him upon an Aſs with his Face to the Tail, and thus carry him to a Scaffold erected for his execution, where, after a long Speech made to the People, he is turn'd off.

Notwithſtanding the haughty Temper of the *Spaniſh* Lords, they are very ſubmiſſive to the *King*'s Pleaſure, and reſpect his Orders with ſuch exactneſs, that they will go to Priſon, or into Baniſhment, without murmuring: This is chiefly to be underſtood of thoſe of the two *Caſtiles*, where the People upon that ſcore are groſſly burthen'd with Taxes, the other *Kingdoms* and *Provinces* challenging a much greater ſhare of Liberty, eſpecially in reference to Taxes.

At the arrival of the *Flota* from the *Indies* there is an univerſal Joy all over *Spain*, eſpecially at *Madrid*; and as the *Spaniſh* Lords are not for amaſſing Treaſures, ſo they ſend for their Creditors, and pay them with ſo much profuſeneſs as if Money came to 'em by chance, tho' perhaps they ſoon after find the want of it, and would much more, were it not that the Tradeſmen are willing enough to give freſh Credit to ſuch generous Debtors: And to ſpeak the truth, the *Spaniards* are much better in Adverſity than Proſperity, unto which their natural Temperance ſeems to contribute a great ſhare, and the Cuſtom they have of eating and drinking ſeparately from their Wives and Children; by which means, as they loſe great part of that Freedom and Union which produces that deſirable frankneſs betwixt Friends, ſo this creates in 'em a ſort of melancholy illuſive Philoſophy, and this a certain Indolency, miſcall'd by them a *Greatneſs of Mind*, which renders them neglectful, or at leaſt indifferent, to provide for future Contingencies.

Their Love-Paſſion.

Their only Paſſion ſeems to be *Jealouſie*, which they encourage to ſuch a degree, that the leaſt ſuſpicion produces fatal effects among 'em: A certain Lady of Quality, not long ſince, having found her Gallant unfaithful, ſhe invited him to a Houſe where every thing was at her devotion; after having reproach'd him at pleaſure with his Infidelity, ſhe offer'd him a Dagger and a Diſh of poyſon'd Chocolate, willing him to chuſe which he lik'd beſt, to put an end to his Life; the Gentleman, knowing it was in vain to reſiſt, without delay drank off the Chocolate, which done, he only told her, That ſhe would have done very well to put a little more Sugar in it, becauſe the Poyſon had made it very bitter; and being ſoon after ſeiz'd with Convulſions, he died in an hours time, the Lady not ſtirring out of the Room till ſhe ſaw him expire.

A Trick of a Spaniſh Jilt.

Not long ſince, a Lady in diſguiſe, with two Gentlemen-Ushers and a good Attendance, came to the *Venetian* Ambaſſadour's Houſe, deſiring to ſpeak to himſelf in private, which being eaſily granted, ſhe told him, That *her Name was Donna* Blanca de Guſman; *that, notwithſtanding her Quality, ſhe had ſet aſide all the Laws of Decency to declare her Paſſion for him, and that ſhe muſt ſtay with him all night.* The Ambaſſadour not queſtioning but that ſhe was a Jilt that intended to cozen him under a borrow'd Name, yet with a great deal of Courteſie told her, That *he was vex'd that his Station would not permit him to entertain a Perſon of her Quality, without running the hazard of great Troubles.* Whereupon ſhe broke out into bitter Reproaches, and would have ſtabb'd him with a *Stiletto* ſhe had carried along with her for that purpoſe, but being prevented, the Ambaſſadour order'd one of his Gentlemen to give her a Preſent of five or ſix Piſtoles, which ſo allay'd her fury, that ſhe diſcover'd the whole matter, adding, That *ſhe was drove to this Deſperation for want of being able to pay her Gentlemen-Ushers and other Attendants ſhe had hir'd to carry on this Ente p iſe, who without it would have brok' her Bones.* The Ambaſſadour being taken with her Ingenuity, order'd her ten Piſtoles more, ſaying, *That at that rate her Share would not anſwer the Pains ſhe had taken*; and ſo diſmiſs'd her. She went from thence directly to the *French* Ambaſſadour's, where ſhe would have acted the ſame part, but being diſcover'd, had enough to do to eſcape without a *Baſtinado*.

The Pride and Vanity of a Spaniard.

This morning, as we ſtopt in the *Placa Major*, we heard a Fiſhwoman bauling out her *Salmon*, a *Signior Capaten* or Shoemaker, as ſhe ſtiled him, came to ask her for a pound; the Woman wondring he ſhould not ask the price, ſhe told him, that *it was no leſs than a Crown a pound*, (for every thing, even Wood and Charcoal, is ſold by the pound here): The Shoemaker, vex'd to the heart that ſhe ſhould queſtion his ability in our hearing, told her in anger, that *if it had been cheaper he would have bought but one pound, but now would have three*; and ſo paid her three Crowns immediately, tho' it was very likely 'twas all he had, and more than he could get in a week, eſpecially conſidering that they never work but when Neceſſity obliges 'em; notwithſtanding which, there is ſcarce a Handicraftſman but will appear in his Velvet and Sattin Clothes, like the beſt Gentleman. If a Shoemaker has two Apprentices, he carries them both along with him when he is to try a pair of Shoes, which he will ſcarce do himſelf, unleſs upon an extraordinary occaſion: When he has receiv'd the Money he ſets himſelf a ſunning, and with ſuch company as himſelf determines State-affairs with more gravity and authority than an old Preſident of a Privy-Council; the beſt ſport is, that when they can't agree in their Opinions, they often fall together by the Ears, and beat one another very handſomly. Nay, even the Beggars in *Spain* will not ask an Alms, unleſs it be in an imperious tone, and you muſt not refuſe them without a Complement, that *you have no Money*, and then they go away from you contentedly.

Their general way of living.

Academies.

There is a ſort of Academies in *Madrid*, where they meet, ſome for Gaming, ſome for Converſation; the firſt is perform'd with a great deal of *Decorum*, and much more *Honeſty*; for tho' they loſe ſometimes great Sums, they ſurely pay it the next day without the leaſt exception. The Winners give what they call *Barato*, (a Cuſtom alſo uſed in *Italy*) *i. e.* a ſmall Preſent of Money to the Standers-by, which they muſt not refuſe, tho' they are of a better Fortune and Quality than the Gameſters; and they have the liberty of demanding it of thoſe that win, who never refuſe it. They are ſo nice in theſe Gaming-houſes, that in caſe any one ſhould be found out in cheating, he muſt never appear in company again, and will be glad to come off without ſome Cuts in his Face, as a mark of his Diſhoneſty.

Night Rambles.

Unto thoſe Houſes reſort alſo moſt of the Wits and other ingenious perſons about the Town, who improve one another by their Diſcourſes, and communicate what they intend to write before it goes to the Preſs: They

are

are excellent at writing of Novels, wherein their Genius, for the conciseness and equality of the Style, seems to surpass all others: They are very cautious in not advancing any thing beyond probability, except sometimes in their Elogies: For the rest, their Books are not well printed, their Paper not very white, and ill bound, either in Parchment or Sheepskin.

There are no good Painters at *Madrid*, and those that pretend to drawing are either *Italians*, *French*, or *Flemmings*.

A Trick of a Spanish Jilt.

They have a great number of Slaves, for the most part *Moors* or *Turks*, who are sold for four and five hundred Crowns a-piece: Formerly they had the freedom of killing a Slave at pleasure, but that being forbidden since, they don't fail to cripple 'em sometimes, without being accountable for it.

Their Slaves.

If they marry two Slaves together, their Children are Slaves to the same Master, but the Issue of these Children are free. If a Woman-Slave marry a Freeman, the Children follow the Condition of the Father: These poor Wretches make good and industrious Servants, and seldom change their Religion.

A mistaken Saint.

A few days since arriv'd at *Madrid*, from *Galicia*, a reputed Saint, sent for by the Marchioness *de los Velez*, to cure her of a dangerous Distemper, but being somewhat long in his Journey, the Lady was recover'd before his arrival; however, the whole Family knowing the Day when he was to come to their House, attended in full expectation of him: It hapned that Don *Ferdinand de Toledo* (who was her Nephew, and had not seen her since his return out of *Flanders*) gave her a Visit about the same time, whereupon the Domesticks, full of expectation of their Saint, and not knowing Don *Ferdinand*, (by reason of his long absence) threw open the great Gate to welcome him, but not contented thus, the whole Family met him as it were in Procession, with Wax-candles in their Hands, asking his Blessing upon their Knees; he thought them either mad or himself in a Dream, and would have talk'd to 'em, but in vain, for instead of hearing him, they began to crowd so close upon him that he could neither stir nor move, and in a few moments he saw his Clothes torn in small pieces from his Back, to be kept as Relicks; seeing most of his Clothes gone, he thought himself in no small danger of losing his Limbs upon the same score, when he was seasonably reliev'd by the Marchioness *de los Velez*, who having understood the arrival of the *Holy Man*, was carried by four Servants in an Elbow Chair to meet him, but seeing her Nephew mistaken for a Saint, she could not forbear laughing, and so heartily, that they were all overjoy'd to see her have still left so much Strength after a lingring Distemper. Don *Ferdinand* came to our House in the same Remnants of his Clothes that were left him by the Zealots.

The Pride and Vanity of a Spaniard.

Their general way of living.

The general way of particular Persons in their Houses is, to drink as soon as they are out of Bed some Water cool'd with Ice or Snow, and immediately after some Chocolate; at Dinner the Master sits down at Table, the Wife and Children eating upon the Floor near him, because the Women can't sit upon Chairs. Their Meals are very light and sparing; perhaps a great Lord shall have a Pheasant, a pair of Pigeons, and an *Olio*, (which are very good) and perhaps a *Ragou* overseason'd with Pepper and Garlick for his Dinner, and a Desert of a little Fruit and some Fennel. After Dinner every one takes his repose upon the Beds, which are cover'd with *Spanish* Leather for coolness sake, so that till two a clock in the Afternoon in the Winter, and four in the Summer, you shall find the Shops shut, and scarce any body appearing in the Streets; then they dress themselves, and after they have taken some Sweetmeats, or Chocolate, or Water cool'd with Ice, they go abroad, and seldom come home till eleven or twelve a clock at night. The Supper is not costlier than the Dinner, a *Ragou* of a Pheasant, or some small Pastry business well season'd, being the chief, and often the only Dish. The Lady drinks nothing but Water, and the Gentleman a little Wine, and so to Bed they go.

Academies.

Those that are unmarried, or don't live so regularly, after they have taken the Air in the *Prado*, go abroad in the Night with a light Supper in their Belly, on Horseback, with one Footman behind 'em, who is to hold the Horse upon occasion, and to serve at the same time as a Guard, tho' they generally leave their Masters in the lurch. These Night-rambles are generally on account of some Lady or other, and I have been told, that notwithstanding the continual Hazards they run in suchlike Enterprizes, they will continue their Commerce for many years, and that with admirable nicety, fidelity, and secrecy. These Nocturnal Lovers often meet with Mischances of a less dangerous consequence, but which nevertheless is very troublesom, by the throwing out what is not fit to be nam'd, for want of Necessary-houses, which sends the Gallant home sometimes with a very ill scent: This makes the Streets look very nasty in a Morning, but the heat of the Sun consumes or dries it up by Noon.

Night Rambles.

Besides these Night-visits thro' the Lattices, they have another, of meeting with their Mistresses when they pay a Visit to Ladies of their Acquaintance or Relations; 'tis no hard matter for an intriguing Lady to slip out at a Back-door in her Veil into a Chair, and to be carried to the place of appointment, and afterwards return to the same place as if nothing had been done; and this is easie to be done, for that there are few Women who have not a Brother or Sister, Uncle or Aunt, that will serve for a Pretence, and should the matter be guess'd at, the Women are so faithful to each other in this regard, that tho' they were at mortal enmity, they would not discover a thing of this nature, being sensible it must be attended by most fatal consequences; and as the Men rarely come in the Assemblies of the Women, they are secure as to them upon that score.

Dy intrigues

I remember, that talking the other day with the Marchioness *d'Alcannizes*, one of the greatest and most virtuous Ladies of the Court, she frankly told us, that if a Gentleman should be alone with her for half an hour, in a convenient place, and not ask her the last Favour, she should think he despis'd her, tho' she should at the same time not grant his Request.

It often happens that a Lady of Quality, disguis'd in a plain large Mantle or Veil, walks on foot thro' the Streets to pursue an amorous Intrigue, and as her manner of walking soon distinguishes her from the vulgar sort, so perhaps a Gentleman pursues her, contrary to her present Intentions; all that she has to do in this case is, to speak to the first *Cavalier* she meets with, and without discovering her self, to tell him, That *the Curiosity of the Gentleman that follows her will disappoint her Assignation*; she need say no more, the *Cavalier* is oblig'd upon Honour to ask the Gentleman that follows her, why he will press upon the Lady against her Inclinations, and if the other proves resolute, the Sword must decide the matter, the Lady taking this opportunity to pursue her Intrigue. The best Jest is, that sometimes the Husband is the person that thus delivers her, and consequently hastens her expedition to the Embraces of her amorous Gallant.

Kindness of the *Spaniards* in Love Intrigues.

The *Spaniards* are so kind-hearted to one another in Love Affairs, that if a Man meets his Mistress in a place where he has no opportunity of conversing with her in private, he need only go into the next House, and to request the Master (whether he knows him or not) to give him the opportunity of talking with a Lady of his acquaintance in private in his House, and he is sure 'twill scarce ever be refus'd.

Happening the other day to be stopt in the Street by the throng of Coaches, I saw at least fifty Chairs, and as many Coaches, going to the Dutchess *d'Uzeda*; asking the reason of such numerous Visits, I was told, That the Duke her Husband was under Confinement, on occasion of a Quarrel betwixt him and the Prince of *Stillano*, and as the Women are oblig'd not to stir abroad so long as their Husbands are under the least Confinement, so she sent every day for a great many Ladies of her acquaintance, the better to divert her self at home; for, you must know, that the *Spanish* Ladies are not at liberty to visit one another when they please, but only when they are desir'd to come, which is done by a Letter in the Morning, and in the Afternoon they go in a Chair, attended by a Coach, in which are the Gentlemen and Pages, who are sent back as soon as they come there, and so appointed to come thither again at certain hours. I rest

Madrid, July 25. 1679.

Yours, &c.

LETTER XIII.

BEing desirous to see the Entrance of the Marquess *de Villars*, the *French* Ambassadour, we delay'd our Journey to *Toledo* for a few days; it was made on Horseback, as the Custom is here. I wonder'd to see so many

Ladies appear in their best Apparel in the Balconies, to see a Sight which is not uncommon in *Madrid*, but soon recollected my self, that the little share of Liberty they have makes 'em court all opportunities to see and be seen; and you may believe their Gallants are sure to take this opportunity to come as near to the Balconies of their Beloveds as possibly they can, to supply the want of Conversation by their Eyes, and a sort of silent Language they have by the assistance of their Fingers, by which they can communicate their Thoughts to each other at a considerable distance.

This Solemnity being over, we set forward, in company of the Marchioness of *Palacio* and her Daughter Donna *Margareta*, as also the Marchioness *de la Rosa*, in two Coaches, the 6th of *August*; Don *Ferdinand de Toledo*, with divers other Gentlemen, went on Horseback. It was ten of the clock at Night before we came out of the Gates, to avoid the Heats of the Day, which were very excessive, but the Night being cool, and the Coaches open on both sides when the Curtains are drawn aside, we travel'd pleasantly enough, it being the fairest weather in the World.

Arranjuez. About five of the clock in the Morning we came within sight of *Arranjeuz*, seated in an Island made by the Rivers *Tagus* and *Xarama*, which supply it with Water, and are a great addition to its natural beauty.

Half a league on this side the *Tagus* we pass'd over a wooden Bridge into Walks of Elms and Lime-trees very The Walks. tall, green, and shady, a great Rarity in so barren a Country, but this Defect is supplied here by certain Pits and Trenches made along the Walks near the Trees, into which the Waters of the *Tagus* being convey'd, moistens the Roots of the Trees. These Walks are of such a length, that from the middle you can't see either to one end or the other, and several Alleys running into them, make the perfect figure of a Star: I never met with a more delightful place in all my Travels, tho' indeed the Gardens are somewhat too close, and the Alleys not spacious enough, yet in the main 'tis a most delicious place, the Trees and Hedges being loaden with Fruits, as the Terrasses were cover'd with all sorts of Flowers. There Divers Foun- are a vast number of Fountains, with Statues of Brass, tains. and Marble Basins, which being fed by the Waters of the *Tagus*, spout them forth to a great height. The Fountain of *Diana* excells the rest; 'tis placed on a delightful Ascent, the Goddess in the midst among Bucks, Does and Dogs, all spouting out Water; it is surrounded with a kind of Hedge of Myrrh cut in several shapes, with little *Cupids* peeping out and casting Water upon those Creatures round the Goddess. In the midst of a great Pond you see the Mount *Parnassus* rising aloft, with *Apollo*, the *Muses*, the Horse *Pegasus*, and a Cataract representing the River *Helicon*: Out of the Rock issue forth a thousand little Springs, which launch out in divers shapes, and disperse like Flowers in the Air. The Fountain of *Ganymedes* is also a very beautiful Piece; here the Child sits upon the Eagle plac'd on a Column with his Wings spread, from whence he throws out Water, as well as by his Beak and Talons. Near this is the Fountain of *Mars*, a noble Statue: That of the *Harpies* has these Creatures plac'd upon noble and lofty Pillars of Marble, and they cast the Water at a certain Youth represented in the middle of the Fountain picking a Thorn out of his Foot. Out of the Fountain of *Love* you see the little God arise all pierc'd with Darts, out of every one of which comes a Spout of Water; the three *Graces* sit at his Feet, and divers Spouts of Water come out of four high Trees like Fountains.

It would be an endless piece of work to give you a particular description of all the Cataracts, Fountains, and Springs, as also of the other Curiosities belonging to this delightful Garden; I must only tell you, that both the House and the Place wherein it stands are not suitable to the rest, tho' there are some excellent Pictures in the King's Apartments.

The place or Town has no more than two bad Inns, and a few private Houses, ill enough provided with every thing.

Having spent the Day in refreshing our selves with sleeping, and eating the best we could get, we went after Supper to the *Grand Canal*, where we diverted our selves on board a small Boat built in the shape of a *Galeon*, richly gilt, till two of the clock in the Morning, when we thought fit to continue our Journey to *Toledo*.

After we had left *Arranjeux*, I found the Plains cover'd with *Wild* and *Mother-Thyme*; they assur'd us that there was good store of Rabbets, Staggs, Does, and Fallow-Deer hereabouts. After we had pass'd almost two leagues in silence, I desir'd Don *Ferdinand de Toledo* (who was come into our Coach) to give me some account of the so much talk'd of *Inquisition*: This was (said he) a thing The Inquisi- *unknown* till the *Thirteenth Century*, before that time Here- tion. ticks lying under the Censure of the Bishops and Civil Magistrates; it was in the Year 1251. that Pope *Innocent* IV. gave Authority to the *Dominican* Friers to take cognizance of these matters, in conjunction with the Bishops; the same was confirm'd by *Clement* IV. in 1265. Several suchlike Courts were afterwards establish'd both in *Italy* and the Provinces depending on the Crown of *Arragon*, till at last the Court of *Inquisition* was introduc'd in *Castile* by *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, and in *Portugal* by K. *John* III, in 1557; for till that time this Jurisdiction being contested by the Bishops, the *Inquisitors* had only a limited Power; but before *Isabel* of *Castile* came to the Crown, her Confessor *John de Torquemeda*, a *Dominican*, and afterwards Cardinal, had engag'd her in a Promise to root out all Hereticks and Infidels, whenever it should be in her power; in pursuance of which she prevail'd upon *Ferdinand* her Husband to obtain a Bull in 1483, from Pope *Sixtus* V, to constitute an Inquisitor-General over *Arragon* and *Valentia*, and the Pope extending afterwards his Jurisdiction over all the Dominions of the *Catholick* King *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, constituted a Supream Council of the *Inquisition*, of which having made *Torquemada* President, it's said that in his time he try'd no less than a hundred thousand Persons, and that above six thousand were condemn'd to the Stake in less than fourteen years time.

This Court has power to proceed against all Hereticks, but especially *Judaizing Christians* and secret *Mahometans*. It is compos'd of the Inquisitor-General, (nominated by the King, but confirm'd by the Pope) five Councellors, one of which must be a *Dominican*, a Procurator, two Secretaries of the King's Chamber, two Secretaries of the Council, an *Alguazil Major*, a Receiver, two Reporters, two Qualificators and Consultors. The number of the inferiour Officers belonging to this Court is almost infinite, for as they are exempted from the ordinary Jurisdictions, so as many as possibly can are apt to shelter themselves under this Pretext.

This Supream Court of Inquisition has a full Authority over all the particular Inquisitions under the *Spanish* Jurisdiction, each of which consists of three Inquisitors, as many Secretaries, one *Alguazil Major*, three Receivers, Qualificators, and Consulters. All Persons admitted into any of these Employments must prove themselves firm unstained *Catholicks*.

Their Procedure is very odd, for a Man is committed to Prison without knowing his Crime or the Witnesses that depose against him; and as there is no delivery from thence, but by the confession of the Crime you are accus'd of, so many, to obtain their Liberty, own what they never were guilty of, the first Crime of this nature being not capital, tho' it makes him incapable of any Employment; and besides, there lies no Appeal from this Court.

Whilst I was listening with great attention to Don *Ferdinand*'s Discourse, the Marchioness *de Palacio* told us, that we were not far from *Toledo*, and that the Ruins we saw on the left hand belong'd to an enchanted Palace. Don *Ferdinand* perceiving me smile, told me, that tho' I was one of the Unbelievers, yet he would not conceal what Tradition had transmitted to them upon that account: They say, there was a Cave closely shut up, An enchan- with a threatning Prophecy foretelling the Destruction ted Cave. of *Spain* if ever it was open'd; this made this Cave to remain unattempted for several Ages, till Don *Rodrigo* the King ventur'd to have it open'd, and notwithstanding the most dreadful Noises and Hurricanes which terrified all that were present, the King would enter in Person, by the light of several Flamboys, where he saw the Figures of several Men with very antique Arms and Clothes, one of which had a Copper Blade in his Hand, and upon it writ in *Arabick*, That the time of the Desolation of *Spain* was at hand, and that by those whose Statues he saw there.

By this time 'twas light enough to observe the Charms *Toledo.* of the delightful Country, and we had no sooner pass'd a large stately Bridge over the *Tagus*, but we saw *Toledo*, surrounded on all sides with Hills and Rocks, which command it: You may discover among these Hills many very neat and pleasant Country-houses; that of the Archbishop is a handsom Building. As the City is built upon a Rock, so the Streets are uneven, narrow, ill pav'd, and troublesom, which makes People make use of Litters here instead of Coaches. We took up our Lodgings in the *Plaça Major*, (the only place of note whither Coaches can go) but we stopt first at the Hospital of *Foira* in the Suburbs,

Suburbs, the Building of which is compos'd of three sides, within which is a large square Court, the Church making up the fourth: This was the Foundation of an Archbishop of *Toledo*, whose Tomb and Statue stands in the middle of the Body of the Church. The Walls of the City are built after the *Mooriſh* fashion, with a great many small Towers, and what with this and the deep Ditches fill'd with the Waters of the *Tagus*, it would be a strong place, were it not for the adjacent Hills that command it.

The Church. The Church is reckon'd the fineſt in *Europe*, and is call'd the *Holy* by the *Spaniards*; were its length and height answerable to its breadth, it would be much more uniform: It has many Chapels not inferiour to some Churches, all cover'd with Gold and Paintings: There is a Niche in the Quire, whence (they tell you) issued out a plentiful Spring of Water, that reliev'd the Inhabitants when they were beſieg'd by the *Moors*, there being not so much as one Spring in the whole City, which is furnish'd with Water from the *Tagus*.

The Treasury is exceeding rich; the Tabernacle used upon *Corpus Chriſti Day* is so heavy, by reason of the Gold and Precious Stones, Angels and Cherubims that belong to it, that it must be carried by thirty Men, and is counted ineſtimable; the Chalices and Pixes, the Sun, (where the Holy Sacrament is kept) the Crowns and Robes of the Virgin, are cover'd with Diamonds and Oriental Pearls, and the most splendid and magnificent that can well be seen.

You will not wonder at all this when I tell you, that the Annual Revenue of the Archbishoprick is 350000 Crowns, that of the Church 100000 more, forty Canons have each a yearly Allowance of 1000 Crowns, the grand Archdeacon 40000; three Archdeacons, the first whereof has 15000, the second 12000, and the third 10000 Crowns; the Dean has also 20000 Crowns a year; the Chaplain *major* of the Chapel *de los Rios* enjoys an Allowance of 13000 Crowns *per annum*, and six more 1000 Crowns a year.

We were no sooner come to our Inn but an Almoner and a Gentleman belonging to the Cardinal *Porto Carrero* came to invite us to the Palace, whither we were forc'd to go, not without much reluctancy, and we were entertain'd with great splendour and civility.

Having a great inclination to kiss the Queen-Mothers Hand, we were order'd to attend her at eight of the clock in the Evening, and accordingly, being all attir'd in our

The Alcazar *Spaniſh* Apparel, we were carried in Chairs to the *Alcazar* or Palace where she resides, seated upon a very high Rock; you pass thro' a spacious Place into the Court, of 160 foot long and 130 broad, adorn'd with two rows of Piazza's, ten rows of the Pillars, which make up the length, being all of one entire Stone, and the breadth had eight rows of Pillars. The Staircase, which begins at the bottom of the Court, is as broad as the Court it self; it brought us into a Gallery, from whence we were conducted thro' many spacious Apartments (but with very few People in 'em) to a great Hall with all the Windows open, the Hangings, Cushions, Carpets and Canopy of which were all of grey Cloth; here we found the Queen-Mother leaning upon a Balconey, with a great pair of Beads in her Hand; she turn'd towards us with a cheerful Countenance, and we had the honour to kiss her Hand, which was very small and white, but lean; for the rest, her Complexion was pale, but clear, her Face little, long and somewhat flat, her Stature neither tall nor short, she appear'd in the Dress of a Nun, as Widows of Quality usually do in *Spain*. After some Discourse about the intended Marriage of the King her Son with *Madamoiſelle*, she shew'd me her Picture done in Water-colours, asking whether 'twas like her; when I told her 'twas not, and that she was much handsomer, she said, That her Son would be agreeably cheated, being already so well pleas'd with the Picture. Supper being ready, she desir'd us to follow her into a Parlour all cover'd with Marble, where she sate down alone, we standing near her; she had among other Dishes some Melons cool'd with Ice, and some Sallads, and Milk, of which she eat heartily, having a good Stomach; she did not touch the Flesh, which indeed look'd very indifferently; she drank some Wine, which was presented her by the Lady *Camerera* upon her Knees, another Lady presenting a Napkin upon her Knee also, to wipe her Mouth: She gave some Sweetmeats to my Daughter, and ask'd after the Queen of *France*. After Supper we took our leaves of her.

The next day we took a view of the *Placa Major*, which is round, and enclos'd with Brick Houses regularly built. We heard Mass in the Church *de los Rios*, a fair and spacious Structure, adorn'd within with whole Alleys of Orange, Pomegranate, and Jessamin trees, reaching up to the high Altar, shining with Silver, Gold, and rich Embroidery; besides which, there were a great number of painted Cages with *Nightingales*, *Canary-birds*, and others, which made a pleasant harmony.

Toledo has two high, long, and broad Bridges cross the River, and if the *Spaniards* were not so lazy, they might without much trouble make the *Tagus* navigable quite up to the City. The *Hospital* of the *Foundlings* and the *Town-house* are also handsom Fabricks.

The next day being again spent in feasting at the Archbishop's, we set forward towards the Castle of *Ignarica*, belonging to the Marquess *de Palacios*: We were most obligingly receiv'd there, and splendidly entertain'd for six days, part of which we spent in Fishing in the River *Xarama*, and so return'd well satisfied to *Madrid*. I am

Madrid, *Aug.* 30.
1679.

Yours, &c

LETTER XIV.

I Had a great inclination to see the late Treaty of *Nimeguen* ratified by the King; the Constable of *Castile* did us the favour to conduct us into a private Apartment from whence we could see the whole Ceremony, which began as soon as the Marquess *de Villars* came into the great gilt Hall, where the King was placed on a Throne embroider'd with Precious Stones and Pearls, on the right hand whereof, below the Alcove, sate the Cardinal *Porto Carrero* in an Elbow Chair, and the Constable of *Castile* upon a Stool, the *Grandees* being placed near the Cardinal; the Ambassadour was seated on the left hand of the Throne, upon a Bench cover'd with Velvet. The full Power of the most *Christian King* being read by a Secretary, a little Table was set before the King with a Crucifix and a Book of the *Evangelists*, and whilst he laid his Hand upon it the Cardinal read the Oath to keep the Peace inviolably. It was very hot at that time, as it is generally here in *June*, *July*, and *August*, for the rest the Seasons are much more pleasant in *Spain* than in *France*, *Holland*, *England*, or *Germany*, from *September* till *June*, and 'tis scarce ever so cold here but that you may be without Fire, which is the reason they make use here of Chasingdishes instead of Chimneys.

The First of this Month Don *John d'Austria* was reduc'd to such an extremity that his Life was despair'd of, which News he receiv'd with an entire resignation: The King was scarce ever out of his Chamber, he receiv'd the *Viaticum*, made his Will, and writ a Letter to a certain Lady, whose Name I could not learn, sending her at the same time a Box with Writings and Jewels. The King having at the same time receiv'd the News of the Queens approach, he imparted the same to Don *John*, bursting out into Tears, and telling him, that his desperate condition was the only allay of his Happiness, and would have put a stop to all the publick Rejoycings in the Palace, had not Don *John* beg'd him not to do it: He died *Sept.* 17. highly regretted by some, and as little lamented by others; he was of a middle Stature, well shap'd, with regular Features, black and sprightly Eyes, and black long Hair; his Judgment was beyond the common rank, he was generous, brave and liberal, vers'd in most Arts and Sciences, a good Historian, Mathematician and Musician, and skill'd in no less than five Languages. The Queen came to *Madrid* immediately after his death; he was buried in the little Vault near the *Pantheon* or Royal Sepulchre, in which none are buried but the Kings and such of the Queens as have had Children.

Don *John's* Death. His Character

As we had not the same fondness for *Madrid* as the *Spaniards* generally have, so we were willing to embrace the opportunity that was offer'd of seeing the *Escurial*.

In our way we saw the *Prado*, one of the Royal Houses of *Spain*, a square handsom Structure, supported by Pillars, adorn'd with several good Pictures, and among the rest the Kings of *Spain* in a very odd Dress; the Gardens and Park are very pleasant, and tolerably well kept. Near it, on the top of a Hill, is a Convent of the *Capuchins*, where they preserve a Crucifix made of the Wood of the true Cross, which (they say) works Miracles. The *Prado* and *Carcuela*.

From hence we walk'd to *Carcuela*, another of the King's Houses, which has nothing remarkable but its curious Fountains and delicious Water; and so we went forward to *Monarco*, where the Woods begin, not far thence coming

The Convent of the *Escurial*.

coming to the Park belonging to the Convent of the *Escurial*, built there by K. *Philip* II. among the Mountains; we were conducted to it thro' a long and spacious Walk of Elm-trees, planted in four rows, leading to the great Gate, which is adorn'd with divers noble Marble Pillars, above one another, with the Statue of S. *Lawrence* on the top; the King's Arms are cut in a certain Stone brought from *Arabic*, call'd the *Thunder-stone*, the cutting cost 60000 Crowns. The Building it self is a large square Pile, beyond which jetts out at length a row of Buildings contriv'd to represent the shape of the *Gridiron* on which S. *Lawrence* (the Patron of this Convent) was broil'd; it is very plain, and of the *Dorick* Order: The Square is divided in the middle, and one of those Divisions opens it self both ways into four lesser Squares or Cloysters built likewise after the *Dorick* Order: The whole Structure has nothing in it but its bulk, being 380 paces in the Square. The other Division is subdivided into two other Squares or Piles of Buildings, one of which is the King's Lodgings the other for the Pensioners, maintain'd here at the King's charge, besides which there are no less than three hundred Friers belonging to this Convent, who live after the same manner as the *Carthusians*; they are of the Order of the *Hieronymites*. The Stone wherewith this Structure was built being all taken out of the neighbouring Quarries, has this peculiar quality, that the sharpest Air and severest Weather makes not the least alteration in it, but it continues its natural grey colour, without growing in the least dirty.

The Pantheon or Royal Sepulchre.

This Structure is said to have cost six millions of Gold. It was *Philip* IV. who added the *Pantheon* or Royal Sepulchre to it, after that of *Rome*; it is under the great Altar of the Church, all of Marble, Jasper and Porphyry, into which you descend by Steps of Jasper; twenty six magnificent Tombs are to be seen enchas'd in the Walls. The Tabernacle, the Altar, with the Steps belonging to it, the Pix made of one single Agate Stone, and the Riches in Gold and Precious Stones belonging to it, are a matter of surprize, but not to be describ'd. There is one Cupboard with Relicks (and they have three more) is prefer'd much before the Treasure of S. *Mark* at *Venice*.

The Church.

The Church-Ornaments, Chalices and other Vessels, are cover'd with the best Pearls and Precious Stones, and all the Candlesticks and Lamps are of pure Gold. Forty Chapels, and as many Altars, have every day forty several Cloths and Attires. The fore-part of the high Altar has four ranks of Jasper Pillars, and the seventeen Steps by which you ascend to it are of Porphyry; the Pillars of the Tabernacle are of Agate, and the Figures of Metal and Crystal: You see nothing about it but Gold, Azure stone and some other Stones, so transparent that the Sacrament (kept in a Vessel of Agate) may be seen thro' them. The Tabernacle is valued at a million of Crowns. The Church has no less than eight pair of Organs. The Seats in the Quire are of an *Indian* Wood, curiously inlaid, like those of S. *Dominick* at *Bologna* in *Italy*.

The Chapel in the Convent.

The Cloysters of the Convent are also very magnificent, in the middle of 'em is a delicious Flower-garden, and a Chapel with four openings, the Roof being supported by Porphyry Pillars; in the Niches betwixt 'em you see the Statues of the four *Evangelists*, with an Angel and several Creatures of white Marble, bigger than natural ones, throwing Water into Marble Basins. The Arch of the Chapel is curioully wrought, and the Floor pav'd with black and white Marble; besides which, it has divers Pictures of inestimable value, as hath also the Chapter-Room, and two *Bosso relievo's* of Agate two foot and a half high, which are reckon'd beyond all value. The Church it self has nothing extraordinary, it is of the *Dorick* Order, design'd by the famous *Italian* Architect *Bramante*: Neither are the King's and Queen's Lodgings magnificent: But the Library is worth a curious *Traveller*'s Observation; for, besides a considerable number of Original Manuscripts of the Fathers and Doctors of the Church, finely bound and gilt, it contains above 100000 Volumes; and the famous *Titian*, with several other great Masters, have employ'd all their Skill in painting the Galleries belonging to it, to the utmost perfection.

The Library.

To give you the best Idea I can of the vastness of this Structure of the *Escurial*, I will only tell you, that it contains 17 Covsters, 22 Courts, 11000 Windows, 800 Pillars, and an infinite number of Halls, Parlours, and other Apartments: It is built on the descent of certain Rocks, in a barren and desart place surrounded with Hills, which makes it generally cool there. The Village below consists only of a few Houses: The Gardens and Park comprehend a large tract of Land, wherein are Woods, Hills, Plains, and Valleys, abounding with all sorts of Deer and Fowl; there is a large House in the middle of it, where the Keepers lodge.

We return'd by the way of the Mountains, a shorter but more troublesom Road, just when the new Queen's Houshold were setting out from *Madrid* to meet her upon the Frontiers: It was an odd sight to see the old Ladies mounted on Mules shod with Silver, and accoutred with rich Housings, but in such odd Dresses and morose Countenances, as we could easily guess would not be very acceptable to so young and well-temper'd a Lady as the Queen. I rest

Madrid, Sept 30. 1679. *Yours*, &c.

LETTER XV.

THE Court is return'd, the King and Queen were both in one Coach with the Curtains open, she was dress'd after the *Spanish* Fashion, and he in the *Spanish* Country-Dress, coming something near the *French* Mode: I was credibly inform'd that the Queen could scarce recover her self from the Surprize the first sight of the King had occasion'd in her, being dress'd in a close-bodied grey *Parragon* Coat, but both very short and wide Velvet Breeches, and very thin Stockings of *Pelo* or raw Silk; the Cravat he wore was exceeding fine, being sent him by the Queen, but hanging very loose, and his Hair turn'd behind his Ears, with a grey Hat, made a very odd figure. The *Queen* eats after the *French* fashion, as the *King* does after the *Spanish* way, dress'd by a Woman Cook: At Dinner there is no other Attendance than a few Ladies of the Court, and many male and female Dwarfs.

The Queen's Entry.

The Queen's Entry was exceeding magnificent, many Triumphal Arches were erected to honour her reception, the Magistrates of *Madrid*, mounted on very fine Horses, went to offer the City Keys to Her Majesty, who rid upon an excellent Horse of *Andalusia*.

The Kings and Queens of *Spain* sleep in different Apartments, but this King never lies from her, tho' else the *Spanish* Monarchs are oblig'd to as severe Rules in relation to Ceremonials and old Customs as the meanest of their Subjects, nay, even far beyond 'em; hence it is that the appointed time for the King's going to and returning from his Houses of Pleasure, being known at Court, the same is never transgres's'd, let the occasion be never so urgent; nay, even his Confessor never fails to present himself in due time to put him in mind of his Devotions.

Ceremonies at Court.

The Queens of *Spain* are attended by none but *Widows* and *Maids*; if any of these are let Blood, the Chyrurgeon knows how to be well paid for his labour, by preserving the Ligature, Fillet, or any other Cloth or Handkerchief which has but the least drop of the fair Lady's Blood upon it, for he is sure to have a good Reward of the *Cavaliers*, who make it their chief Ambition to stop at nothing for their Mistresses sakes.

When the Queen goes a hunting (which was never allow'd to any Queen of *Spain* except this last) and comes to the place where she is to mount on Horseback, she must set her Feet upon the Coach-boots, and so throw her self upon the Horse; if the King is present he assists her, if not, no body else dares pretend to it, tho' she should be in danger of being hurt without it. The Queen uses no Featherbeds, but in lieu of 'em thirteen or fourteen Quilts made of the best *Spanish* Wool, which being not above two or three inches thick each, the Bed is no higher than our Featherbeds are in *France*.

They have another peculiar Custom, *viz.* to see such as come to visit 'em out of the House, because (they say) 'tis the greatest piece of Civility one can shew to his Friend, to leave him in possession of every thing in his House.

I must mention such another before I conclude, *viz.* That if a young Woman pitches upon a Person for her Husband, and doubts of her Parents Consent, she need only apply her self to the Curate of the Parish, and let him know how the matter lies; if he approves of the Proposition, the thing is done in the main, for he has no more to do than to put her into a Convent for some time, or to some Lady of good Repute: If she persists in her Resolution, her Parents are oblig'd to allow her a Portion according to their Quality, tho' against their Will. I rest

Madrid, Sept. 28. 1681. *Yours*, &c.

Several

Several Years

TRAVELS

THROUGH

Portugal, Spain, Italy, Germany, Prussia, Sweden, Denmark, and *United Provinces.*

By an ENGLISH Gentleman.

1693. IN the Year 1693, I embark'd on board a Merchant-ship for *Portugal*, where we arriv'd safely, without any memorable Accident but such as are ordinarily at Sea, in the River of *Lisbon*, in which City staying several months, I will give you the best account I am able of what I observ'd during my stay there.

Lisbon in Portugal. It is seated on divers Hills, which makes the Streets very uneasie and unpleasant; besides that, the Dirt and noisom Smells arising from the Filth that runs from their Kitchins (which are all above-stairs) into them, and by reason of their narrowness can't be dried up by the Sun, makes them so offensive, that no body (unless upon urgent occasions) cares much to pass thro' the City.

Their monstrous Processions. Arriving there in *Lent*, I was entertain'd with the sight of their monstrous Processions, wherein I observ'd some of the true Penitents lash themselves with that severity that they frequently die of it, for which reason it is that the Priests are oblig'd (to moderate their blind Zeal) to declare to them, That *such as procure their Death by this excess of Folly are the occasion of their own Damnation.* But among these true Devotees are to be seen many others hir'd on purpose by the Religious Societies, to encrease the number of the Penitents; a thing so scandalous, that even the foreign *Catholicks* residing here blush at it, there being scarce any but the most profligate and debauch'd Wretches that will expose themselves to such dangerous Mortifications for lucre sake: Among the rest, they had at that time employ'd a certain lewd fellow, who us'd to serve as a Porter to the *English* residing there.

They have a vast number of Churches and Convents, but few that are magnificent, the *Domo* or Cathedral it self being neither large nor handsomly built: Their chief Publick Structures are, the Royal Palace, seated upon the River *Tagus*, the Model whereof was design'd much larger than it now is; it has a Cloyster behind adjoyning to it. The Palace of the Archbishop of *Lisbon* is a spacious Structure, with some good Statues upon the Stairs, the only kind of Furniture the *Portugueses* delight in, there being even in the King's Apartments nothing to be seen but white Walls. Their Houses are generally very high, and pretty cool, but the Streets so narrow, that instead of Coaches they are forc'd to make use of Litters carried by Mules, which are very strong and large in this Country.

Manners and Customs. 'Tis an odd sight to see the *Portugueses*, both young and old, appear with large Spectacles fastned to their Ears in the Streets. Their Diet is generally very moderate, and they seldom or never commit any Debaucheries in Wine; their predominant Vice is, the Conversation of lewd Women, unto which the heat of the Climate seems to incline 'em more than Extravagance. The Women paint here very young, and are consequently oblig'd to follow it as they grow more in years. The Men are exceeding jealous, and a suspicion of Incontinency in a Woman puts her in danger of her Life; hence 'tis that they are seldom allow'd to stir abroad, except when they go to Church on *Sundays*, *Holidays* or their *Eves*.

1693. The Women of Quality wear their Fardingals here larger than those of *Italy* or *Spain*; they wear Veils to cover their Faces; they look upon it as the greatest piece of Immodesty to shew their Feet, for which reason they wear very long Petticoats, and their Pages or Footmen hold a piece of Cloth either before or behind 'em as they get in or out of their Coaches or Litters, tho' at the same time they go both with their Bosom and Shoulders bare. *Their Habit.*

The Mens Habit is a black Coat and a Band, of our *Colchester* Bays, which they turn the wrong side outward in Mourning; this is the general Wear, without any distinction of Persons or Quality, unto which they are all subject without any difference, Silver and Gold Laces being expresly forbid among 'em. The *Inquisition* makes them all appear good *Christians*, tho' 'tis generally believ'd there are many conceal'd *Jews* among 'em, as their swarthy Complexion and fiery revengeful Temper are the remnants of their *Moorish* Ancestors.

Convenient Situation of Lisbon. For the rest, the Situation of *Lisbon* upon the River *Tagus* makes it a place of considerable Traffick; for, not to mention their Commerce in the *East-Indies* and *Brasile*, they trade with most Nations of *Europe*, but especially with the *English*, who take in Salt there for *Newfoundland*, and bring back to them dried *Codfish*; besides that, they exchange many of their Woollen Manufactures for the Wine and Fruits of *Portugal*.

The extent of the *Tagus* into a great part of the Country, affords them likewise a most commodious carriage of their Wines, Oyls, Fruits, and other Products of the Country: Their Salt, especially that of *S. Ubes*, is transported into most parts of *Europe*, and us'd in vast quantity in *Sweden*.

They abound in Fish at *Lisbon*, but have some scarcity of Flesh, especially of Beef and Mutton, the adjacent rocky Mountains affording Food only for Goats; however, their tame Fowl, when well fatted, are very good, and their Pigeons both very large and well tasted.

About *Lisbon* are many Summer-houses, and Gardens well planted with Orange-trees, the agreeable scent whereof perfumes the Air at a considerable distance: A Friend of mine had one of these Summer-seats at *Luz*, about four miles from *Lisbon*, with a well planted, pleasant, wall'd Garden of three Acres of Land belonging to it, which, among other advantages, had this Conveniency belonging to it, that we could go thither in a Coach, a Rarity among these craggy Mountains. I spent a great part of the Summer there.

During my stay here I took particular notice, that even in the hottest season we were constantly towards Evening refresh'd with a cool Sea-brieze, a thing I afterwards observ'd in most places about *Lisbon*.

From this Country-seat I us'd frequently to take a walk to the once so much celebrated Nunnery of *Odevellas*, but much restrain'd of late years both in its Revenues and the free Conversation allow'd to that Order in some of their Convents.

Leaving

1694. Leaving *Lisbon*, *May* 6. 1694. I travel'd towards *Porto*, to take a view of the Country on that side; I pass'd the first day thro' a Rocky Country to *Sacca Veina*, and thence two leagues further to *Alucrea*, and in the Afternoon thro' *Alinaca*, *Villa Franca*, *Povos*, and *Castinera*, where I lodg'd that night, but badly enough; the next morning early I pursued my Journey thro' the Villages of *Villa Nova de Reina*, *Ambesia*, and *Cassesia*; after Dinner I travel'd on near *Serra Terena*, thro' a plain and most delightful Country, abounding in Wine, Oyl and Corn, and so came to *Parsinia*, where I took up my Lodging for that night; the next day I continued my Journey in a no less pleasant and delightful Country, over *Campo de Gallicia*, (a delicious Plain, abounding in Corn and Olive-trees) thro' *Allamorsa*, *Pindva*, and *Jandemosans*, to *Coimbria*, where I lay that night, and the next morning over *Anjon*, *Pulgo*, *Rolosal*, &c. getting to *Coimbria* that night, after four days Journey in a Horse-litter, being none of the quickest in these Countries.

Coimbria. Before I entred the Gates of *Coimbria*, I cross'd the River over a Bridge very remarkable for its length, as having no less than twenty nine Arches, and its being built upon another Bridge, which is swallow'd up in the Sand; the River being so shallow now that 'tis fear'd it will in time be quite choak'd up. On this side of the Bridge stands a Convent and a Nunnery, both belonging to the *Franciscan* Order, the first dedicated to S. *Bartholomew*, the other to S. *Clara*.

The City it self is computed to contain about 30000 Souls, and its Situation is like most of the great Towns of this Country, upon Hills; it has sixteen Colleges and Convents.

The University The *University* has but two Colleges, *viz.* those call'd S. *Peter's* and S. *Paul's*, adjoyning to each other like one Building. Their Schools make no great show, tho' they keep publick Lectures in 'em in all Sciences; and I was told they had a good *Library*. I saw a *Fidalgo* (or Gentleman's Son) perform his Exercise for his Degree of *Doctor in Law* in the Hall, which is a handsom large Room, common to both the Colleges, hung about the Walls with the Pictures of the Kings of *Portugal*. As the number of Students here is computed at no less than five thousand, (because they are admitted as soon as they can well read, and are distributed accordingly in different Classes) so none but the Children of Persons of the best Rank can have their Chambers in the Colleges, the rest being dispos'd in the Town as they best can.

The Convent and Church of St. Cruz. The chiefest of their Convents is that of S. *Cruz*, being all Noblemen, and of the Order of S. *Austin*. The Church belonging to this Convent is a large Structure, with Altars richly gilt, and adorn'd with Silver Candlesticks of great value: They preserve here many Relicks, but as they are very shy of shewing 'em to Strangers, I obtain'd this Favour by the assistance of an *Irish* Father; they *Relicks.* shew'd me the Sword of King *Alphonso*, wherewith he kill'd five *Moorish* Kings; they tell you that K. *Sebastian*, when he was just upon going to the Wars in *Barbary*, borrow'd this Sword of the Convent, and that the Sword being lost there, together with the King, they instituted publick Supplications for the recovery of this Sword, which was one day found by a Frier upon the High Altar, as he was going to officiate there. But the chief Repository of their Relicks is in a Chapel at the end of the *Dormitory*; here they shew'd a Golden Cross set with Precious Stones, which (they say) contains a piece of the true Cross, and us'd always to be fix'd on the Royal Standard in their Wars against the *Moors*; half of one of the Thorns wherewith our Saviour's Head was crown'd; a Bone of S. *Stephen*, another of S. *Austin*, a Finger of one of the Innocents slain by *Herod*, S. *Peter's* Chains with large thick Iron Links, a Bone of S. *Paul*, a Leg-Bone of one of the eleven thousand Virgins sent out of *England* to the *Indies*, to marry and encrease the *Christians* there; an Arm-Bone of S. *Blazius*, a Bone of S. *Sebastien*, the Bones of *Theotonius* in a Silver Chest, the Bones of five Martyrs put to death by the *Moors* in *Barbary*, whither they were sent to convert 'em to the *Christian Faith*, likewise in a Silver Chest; a Bone of S. *Lawrence*: Most of these, besides many others, were brought out of *England* immediately after the dissolution of the Monasteries by K. *Henry* VIII. They were so cautious in shewing them, and that at such a distance, that I could scarce distinguish what they were, which made me never enquire any further about any such things as *Relicks* in this Country.

After a stay of three days I left *Coimbra*, taking my way towards *Aveyro* thro' a pleasant Country, tho' somewhat mountainous and rocky: I found my travelling upon a Mule as tedious as in a Litter, for you go no faster than your Guide, who is on foot.

Aveyro is a very handsom Town, with clean and pleasant Streets, govern'd by a Justice, as are most Country Towns here; it has three Convents, of *Dominicans*, *Carmelites*, and the Order of S. *Anthony*; and four Nunneries, of S. *Anthony*, *Franciscans*, *Dominicans*, and *Carmelites*; and four Parish-Churches: Each of the Nunneries contains above a hundred Persons, including Servants; and the whole City about fifteen or sixteen thousand Souls. The Duke of *Aveyro* lives in *Spain*, under pretence that the Family of *Braganze* has usurp'd the Crown of *Portugal*, so that his Estate being seiz'd upon for the King's use, his Palace is bestow'd upon the *Carmelite* Nuns. 1694. *Aveyro.*

The Town is fenc'd about with a Wall after the *Moorish* fashion, and has great plenty of good Fish and Fowl: The River is of such a depth that Vessels of seventy or eighty Tun may ride safe at Anchor under the Town, to which belong above four thousand Boats, employ'd for the most part in carrying Dung from thence into the Country, where the Ground is barren, and wants much more manuring than the Soil about *Lisbon*. Much Salt is also made hereabouts, which is carried into the Country, and into *Gallicia*.

From *Aveyro* to *Porto* is ten leagues; the first five I went by Water, for taking Boat at twelve at night, I came the next morning to a little Village call'd *Varr*, whence I travel'd the other five on Horse, thro' a barren Country, to *Porto*, the River of which affords a safe Harbour, being so environ'd with Hills, as to protect Ships against the violence of any Winds; the Ships may ride under the very Walls of it, which are very high, but at that time without a Garison.

The City of *Porto* it self is very handsomly built, and the Streets neatly pav'd, tho' seated upon Hills. On the other side of the River call'd the *Serra* stands a Convent of *Austin Friers*, a spacious Structure, containing about forty five Brothers, who call'd themselves *Dons*: Their *Dormitory* I found to be two hundred and fifteen paces long, and five broad. Near it is a Nunnery of S. *Dominick*. *The City of Porto.*

Somewhat lower, on this side of the River, at a place call'd *Gaia*, (famous in ancient times for the *Palace* of the *Moorish* Kings) is another Convent of twenty eight Friers, of the Order of S. *Antonio*. In the Convent of the *Serra* they shew'd me a pair of Crutches of a lame Child, which was cur'd by a certain little Image of our Lady in *Basso relievo* in the same Church: The like you see in several other Churches, as also wooden Legs and Arms, nay, sometimes the Pictures of the Persons pretended to be cur'd, near the Saint's Image that is said to have wrought it.

For the rest; This City has four Parish-Churches, the Cathedral, which is but small in comparison of others of that rank, the Church of S. *Nicholas*, of S. *Victoria*, and S. *Peter*; they appear'd to me richer and better gilt than those of *Lisbon*: Seven Convents of Friers, *viz.* the *Franciscans*, S. *John Novo*, S. *Elio*, (dress'd in Purple) the *Dominicans*, *Carmelites*, *Benedictins*, and the *Tanagrapes*, an Order following the Discipline of the *Jesuites*, and upon that score in much repute here. They have also a College of *Jesuites* and four Nunneries, *viz.* of S. *Monicha*, S. *Bento*, S. *Clara*, and the *Recollettes*, an Order peculiar to this Country, and seldom to be met with but in Sea-port Towns, being intended for Seamen to bestow their Wives in till their return; Orphans are likewise educated here till they come to years of maturity to chuse either Marriage or a Religious Life; Widows are also permitted to enter into this Order after the decease of their Husbands, provided they vow Chastity for the future. *Convents and Nunneries.*

The whole City is reckon'd to contain fifty thousand Souls, including the Suburbs, in one of which is another Parish-Church dedicated to S. *Alphonso*. It is a place of vast Trade, the River (which supplies them with great quantities of Provisions, Wines, Oyl, Corn, Fruits, &c. out of the Country, for transportation) having from its conveniency got the Name of *The Golden River*. The Bar thro' which the Ships come in is a very narrow passage, with Rocks on both sides. Over against it, near the Village of S. *John*, is a Fort kept by a small Garison. *The Harbour.*

The Episcopal Palace near the Cathedral seem'd to be a goodly Building, but was not inhabited then, because the Bishop being at variance with the Clergy of his Diocess, was at *Lisbon*.

From *Porto* I travel'd to *Gamarains*, over steep and rough Hills; it is a pretty neat Town, well built upon a Level, of a considerable compass; it has five Convents of Friers, *viz.* the *Dominicans*, *Carmelites*, *Capuchins*, *Franciscans*, and *Austin Friers*; and three Nunneries, *Franciscans*, *Carmelites*, and *Dominicans*, but no more than two Parish-Churches: The whole place is enclos'd by a strong and high Wall, and there are to be seen here the Ruins of

1694. of a Caſtle, ſaid to be built for one of the Kings of *Portugal*'s Brothers.

From hence I continued my Journey the next day to *Braga*, the moſt ancient Archbiſhoprick of *Portugal*, and which to this day diſputes the Precedency to the Archbiſhop of *Toledo* in *Spain*.

Braga. *Braga* is a ſpacious City, well wall'd according to the faſhion of this Country. The Cathedral is ſomething bigger here than in moſt other places in *Portugal*, and ſtrong'ly built, as are moſt of their Structures, for they have hereabouts a kind of very durable ſort of Marble, and their Loam very white and fine, and conſequently exceeding binding, as may be ſeen by their old Buildings. In this Church is a Monument of the Duke of *Barcelos*, (a thing the *Portugueſes* don't much regard) who being met upon the Road to this City by a great number of People to honour his Entry, and dying there ſoon after, order'd by his Will a certain yearly Revenue to be employ'd for diſtributing a certain Allowance to the *Poor* every morning in the Cloyſters of the Church, adding, That *ſince he was not able to feaſt 'em, he would take care they ſhould not go without a Breakfaſt.* The Tomb, which is about a yard and a half high, ſtands in the Iſle of the Church, being all of Braſs, with his Effigies at full length, which appear'd to have been gilt formerly; the Grates about it hindred my reading the Inſcription. Not far from the Dome ſtands the Archiepiſcopal Palace, an old Pile of Building, which made but an indifferent ſhew in the outſide, being not inhabited then, by reaſon of the death of the Archbiſhop.

Viana. The next place I came to in this Journey was *Viana*, one of the pleaſanteſt Towns in *Portugal*, ſeated along the Sea-ſide, ſo that from the Key you may ſee any Ships along the Coaſt: It is well pav'd, the Streets upon a level, with very good Buildings. Its Strength conſiſts only in a ſmall Caſtle on the Sea-ſide, which commands the Harbour, but they had at that time a Gariſon of a thouſand Foot and two Troops of Horſe, and the Caſtle about thirty ſeven great Guns mounted; there was then lately built a Magazine for the King, containing Arms for about twenty thouſand Men, and ſome Accoutrements for Horſe. They ſhew'd us a ſmall low Building within the Precinct of the Caſtle, ſaid to be built for the impriſonment of King *Alphonſo*. For the reſt, this is a place of pretty good Trade, tho' the River is not far navigable by reaſon of the Sands which choak up the Chanel.

From this place I travel'd for three leagues very pleaſantly along the Sea-ſide to *Camena*, ſeated in a Plain, and tho' the Frontier Town on the Borders of *Gallicia*, it is of no great ſtrength, but commonly provided with a good Gariſon: There ſtands however upon a Rock near the entrance of the River a little Fort, commanding the paſſage toward the Harbour, but it was guarded only by ſix or eight Country Fellows at that time, and had not above three or four Guns mounted; within it is the Convent of S. *Anthony*.

Camena.

This place has ſome little Trade, two Pariſh-Churches, two Convents of *Dominicans* and *Franciſcans*, and one Nunnery of *Dominicans*.

If you intend to go from hence into *Gallicia*, you muſt croſs the River, which is the common Boundary betwixt *Spain* and *Portugal* on this ſide.

Villa Nova de Silvero. I went from *Camena* to *Villa Nova de Silvero*, an ancient Town in the Road betwixt *Camena* and *Valentia*; as 'tis a Frontier Town, ſo it hath a Wall after the manner of this Country, with a Gariſon.

Valentia. *Valentia*, likewiſe a Frontier Town, upon the Borders of *Gallicia*, advantageouſly ſituated for being made a ſtrong place, but almoſt without Defence then, tho' ſo near to *Spain*; 'tis true, ſome Works it had, but without either Men or Arms to defend them, all the Defence they have being the Fort *Lovelio*, about a mile from the City, in oppoſition to which the *Spaniards* have one or two on their ſide of the River. At this place the King's Officers make ſtrict ſearch, whether you carry more Money with you than is allow'd; the ſame is done on the Borders of *Gallicia*, by the *Spaniards*, in your return hither, which they do with Severity enough, unleſs you make 'em civil by a piece of Money. Here you muſt alſo give Security for the return of your Mule.

Tine. The firſt *Spaniſh* Town you come to after you have croſs'd the River is *Tine*, an Epiſcopal Seat, but meanly built, which made me without any ſtay continue my Journey to *Vigo*, a Seaport Town in *Gallicia*, ſeated upon a River, and accounted one of the beſt Harbours of *Spain*, formerly the Rendezvous of the *Spaniſh Armada* or *Fleet*, when they made a much better figure at Sea than they do now: Here their *Galeons*, and the *French* Squadron commanded by Monſ. *Chateaurenaud*, were deſtroy'd by the

Vigo.

Engliſh and *Dutch*, in the Year 1702. For the reſt, the Town is of no conſiderable Traffick, few inhabiting here but Fiſhermen, which makes their Houſes appear very mean: 'Tis reckon'd among the Gariſon'd Towns of *Spain*, but the ſame conſiſts only of ſixty Country Fellows, who are ſummon'd out of the circumjacent Country, for the defence of ſome ſlight Works provided with a few Guns, and are chang'd every day. It has one large Pariſh-Church, but meanly built, and two Convents, one of Friers, the other of Nuns, both *Franciſcans*. About three leagues down the River you ſee the Iſles of *Bayonne*. 1694.

From hence I paſs'd for three leagues down a noble ſpacious River towards *Ponte Vedre*, lin'd on both ſides with Hills and pleaſant Valleys, and ſome little Redoubts oppoſite to one another, for the defence of the River. As you paſs along this River you ſee *Redundella*, a goodly Town, built upon the Bank of the River, in the middle of which is an Iſland, with a Convent of *Franciſcans* upon it, the Gardens of which being well planted with Fruit-trees, made a pretty ſhow at a diſtance. At the end of this River you muſt travel a league and half by Land before you come to *Ponte Vedra*, thro' very rough and uneven ways. *Redundella.*

Ponte Vedra is a large but meanly-built Town, tho' the River (which exonerates it ſelf into the Sea) affords 'em ſome Conveniency for Traffick. The chief thing worth taking notice of here is the Church of our Lady, a large Fabrick, and adorn'd on the inſide with ſome curious wrought Work on the Cieling, and the Pillars, which are Marble, a thing ſeldom obſerv'd in the Churches of *Gallicia*. The Front of this Church hath alſo ſome very fine *Relievo-work*; among the reſt you ſee here our Bleſſed Lady on her Deathbed, with the Apoſtles and ſome of the Ancient Fathers about her. *Ponte Vedra.*

The Archbiſhop of *Diego*'s Palace here is a large Structure, but appear'd much decay'd: It has two Pariſh-Churches and three Convents, two of *Franciſcan*, and the third of *Dominican Friers*, one of *Nuns*, and a *Jeſuits* College. The Magazine here had alſo ſome good Braſs Guns, and ſome ſmall Arms.

Gallicia appear'd to me the ſame as *Portugal*, as well in reſpect of the Soil as of the Manners and Cuſtoms of its Inhabitants, who alſo differ but very little from the *Portugueſes*, even in their Habit and Language; and as there is ſcarce any footſteps of Induſtry or Husbandry among 'em, ſo you ſee nothing but Poverty wherſoever you turn your ſelf. *Gallicia.*

The indifferent uſage I met with in all thoſe places thro' which I paſs'd, made me ſoon alter my Reſolution of going further that way, ſo I return'd to *Porto* the ſame Road I came, but took another way from *Porto* to *Aveyro*; for, after having paſs'd *Aveyro*, inſtead of going to *Coimbria*, I took the Road of *Figera*, a ſmall Maritime Town, yet not without ſome Trade in Salt and Oyl, Ships of about a hundred Tuns being able to come up the River hither: They have a Caſtle with ſome Guns for their defence. The Salt is made near this River, and the circumjacent Country affords abundance of Olives. *Figera.*

Betwixt *Aveyro* and *Figera* is the Town of *Mira*, much celebrated for the vaſt ſtore of wild Ducks thereabouts, which they take in a peculiar manner without either Nets or Guns, but by throwing Sticks at 'em as they riſe and take Wing, which they do with ſuch dexterity, that they knock down ſeveral at a time. *Mira.*

I paſs'd the River near *Figera* the 25th of *July*, which being on a *Sunday*, and S. *James*'s Day, I had ſcarce travel'd two miles to *Lavos*, where meeting with an *Iriſh* Prieſt, he would fain have engag'd me to go about four leagues with him, to a Chapel dedicated to St. *James*, where (he told me) was a Famil which had this peculiar to it ſelf, that on this Day, when the People of the adjacent Country came to pay their Devotions to the ſaid Saint, and are regaled with a large hot Cake by the Town, any of them can go to the Oven, tho' never ſo hot, and turn the Cake without the leaſt danger to themſelves; but I thank'd him for his care, and told him, That having no great Faith in ſuchlike matters, he muſt excuſe me if I did not go ſo far out of my way.

I came the ſame day to *Lazia*, the Seat of a Biſhop, whoſe Palace is a goodly Structure: For the reſt, the Town is but indifferently built; it hath three Pariſh-Churches, the Cathedral, S. *Diego*, and S. *Peter*'s; the firſt appear'd to be a large handſom Fabrick, but I did not view the inſide of it: They have four Convents of *Auſtin Friers*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, and *Capuchins*, and a Nunnery of *Dominicans*. Near it, upon a very high Hill, you ſee a Caſtle belonging to the King, which at a diſtance appear'd to be a noble Building. *Lazia.*

1694. In my way from *Luzia* to *Terena* I pass'd by *Batalia*, where is said to be the best built Church in all *Spain*, perfected by some *English* Workmen; it contains the Sepulchres and Tombs of the *Portuguese* Kings. The steepness of the Rocks over which I was forc'd to pass together with the length of the way, made this the worst days Journey I ever had, which made me not get to *Terena* till late at night; and having fourteen leagues to *Lisbon*, I set out early in the morning again, and after I had rode two leagues, embark'd on the River, (sending my Mule by Land) which brought me the same day to *Lisbon*.

I observ'd a great deal of Poverty in the Country thro' which I pass'd, the poorer sort living for the most part upon *Brow* and Water: This *Brow* is a kind of course yellowish Bread, made of a certain *Indian* Corn call'd *Milio*; certain 'tis that many a hundred Families live upon this, without ever tasting Meat in all their lifetime.

The Country thro' which I pass'd affords scarce any Wood for Timber, the Oaks, which are but few, appearing no bigger than Shrubs here; Olive and Cork-trees they have in abundance, and I saw some pretty large Groves of Pines.

The Author's Journey from Lisbon *to* Madrid.

I Set out *Sept.* 1. 1694. from *Lisbon*, for *Madrid*; I went three leagues by Water on the other side of the River to *Allegaiego*, whence continuing my Journey the next day, I travel'd for eight leagues thro' a barren Country to *Vento Novo*, and the next day by the way of *Monte Major* (a goodly Village) to *Ryolio*, a small ruin'd Town with an old *Moorish* Castle, which affords a fine Prospect into the adjacent Country. The next day I travel'd on to *Estremeze*, a place noted for Earthen Ware, then garison'd with eight Companies of Foot, and three Troops of Horse. *Estremoz.*

Thence I went to *Elvas*, the last Frontier Town of the *Portugueses* bordering upon *Spain* on that side, a place of good strength, and famous for the six months Siege it so bravely sustain'd against the *Spaniards*, in their last Wars. Near it is a most noble Aquaduct three leagues and a half in length, and of a vast height in some places where the Ground is low, where for a considerable way together there were no less than four Arches built upon one another with vast expence. *Elvas.* A noble Aquaduct.

Not above two *English* miles beyond *Elvas* you come to a small River, which being the common Boundary betwixt *Spain* and *Portugal* on that side, you are no sooner past it but you come to the *Campo* or *Plain* where was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Spaniards* and *Portugueses*, in their last War, with the loss of seven thousand *Spaniards*, in which Action the *English* had a considerable share on the *Portuguese* side.

The first Town belonging to the *Spaniards* on this side is *Badajos*, a strong place, into which you enter over a Bridge of twenty six Arches. *Badajos.*

The next day I travel'd on to *Merida*, into which you must pass over a Bridge of above sixty Arches; this place affords some Entertainment for curious Travellers, as the ruins of some ancient *Roman* Buildings, a spacious Castle, now turn'd into a Prison, a noble Arch of vast Stones joyn'd without Mortar, the work of *Julius Cæsar*, a curious Pyramid by *Augustus Cæsar*, the remnants of some ancient *Roman Aquaducts*, and another modern one, by which the Water is conveyed into the Town a great way. *Merida.*

From hence I travel'd to *Trukille*, thro' a woody and mountainous Country; the Town it self is very well built with several goodly Structures belonging to Persons of Quality; it has five Parish-Churches, as many Convents of Friers, and four Nunneries: The Villages upon the Road were most of 'em very large, but the Dwellings only of Mudd; however, I took notice by the way of one spacious and noble Palace belonging to the *Conde de Lopeso*; I lodg'd at *Telaveyra de Reyne*, a goodly Country Town, having eight or nine Parish-Churches, thirteen Convents of Monks, and five Nunneries. *Trukille.*

From hence I travel'd five good leagues out of my way to take a view of the City of *Toledo*, a magnificent place, nobly built, and adorn'd with stately Churches, very rich in Plate and Jewels. The Image of our Lady in the Cathedral has a Garment cover'd all over with Pearl and Precious Stones of an inestimable value: The Paintings are answerable to the rest. It is the Metropolis of all *Spain*, and the Archbishoprick is counted the most considerable for its Revenues in *Christendom*, tho' that of *Braga* disputes the Priority with it. The *Castilian* Language is spoken here in its purity, and several great Councils have been held here. The present Archbishop is a Cardinal. The King's Palace or *Castle* is a spacious Pile of Building, and the Stables belonging to it are capable of containing at least five hundred Horse. *Toledo.* 1694.

Madrid is only a Village, but may deservedly be call'd the largest of that kind in *Europe*; the Soil round about it is not so mountainous as in *Portugal*, but very fruitful, which agrees best with the slothful Temper of the *Spaniards*. This place, tho' the ordinary Residence of the Kings of *Spain*, is not seated in a very wholsom Air, occasion'd questionless by the adjacent River, which is often dry; this River is a Branch of the *Tagus*, arising near *Toledo*, whence it continues its course as far as S. *Terence*, fourteen leagues beyond *Lisbon* in *Portugal*. The Buildings here are generally very good, of Brick, and some of the Streets regular, spacious, and noble, but very dirty, nauseous, and full of Filth. Their Churches are for the most part very fine. *Madrid.* Its River.

The Palace of the *Almirant* of *Castile* is highly remarkable for its excellent Pictures, in the collection whereof the *Spanish* Lords spare no cost; among the rest I took notice of one done by *Titian* representing *Ixion* embracing the Clouds; it was pawn'd to this Lord for five hundred Dubloons, much less than 'twas worth.

In the King's Summer-house a little way out of the Town, call'd *Buen Retiro*, I took notice of many curious Pieces of Painting by *Titian*, *Raphael Urbin*, *Bodona Annibal*, and *Vandike*, but has nothing else remarkable either within or without, being built only of Brick, except that in the Garden you see the Statue of King *Philip* IV. on Horseback, finely done in Brass, plac'd on a Marble Pedestal. On the Canals are divers Pleasure-boats, and some Summer-houses for the Musicians to divert the King whilst he takes his pleasure in these Boats upon the Canals. At the entrance of the outer Court are the King's Stables, that for the Saddle-horses had at that time about sixty, chosen out of all Nations; in those for the Coach-horses were three setts of black ones, as many of light grey, all of *Flanders* breed, one of dark grey, and two setts of very fine duns, besides six setts of Mules. *Buen Retiro.*

Adjoyning to these is the Armoury, a spacious handsom Room, fill'd with many curious Suits of Armour belonging formerly to their Kings; here they shew you divers Suits once us'd by the great *Charles* V, with a Sword presented him by the Pope; his Armour is eatily distinguish'd from others by our Lady's Image he always wore engraven on his Breastpiece; a large polish'd Steel plate the said Emperour us'd instead of a Looking-glass when he put on his Armour, and an easie Chair he slept, eat, drank, and dispatch'd business in when in the Camp; several other Suits of *Philip* II, *Philip* III, *Philip* IV, and among the rest one for the late K. *Charles* II, tho' it is certain he never wore any, 'tis double gilt, and set with Precious Stones: Here you see also the Armour of that warlike Cardinal *Ildefonso*, and several Trophies and Colours taken from the *Turks*. The Armoury.

The outward Court of the Palace is a large Square, with Cloysters on both sides, the Stables and Armoury fronting the Palace it self; it consists of two Quadrangles, with Cloysters both above and below; one of these Quadrangles is allotted for the King, the other for the Queens Lodgings, but are not to be seen unless when the Court is not there.

I pass'd thro' three or four indifferent Rooms (as far as they would let me go) to see the King at Dinner; the Dining-room was large, but indifferently furnish'd, the Room before it was less, but crusted over on the Walls with fine Jasper and Marble. The King has always twelve Dishes at Dinner, and eight at Supper, serv'd up in as many Silver Plates, and attended by as many Halberdiers, who make every one uncover as the Meat passes by. There is a glorious appearance at Court every day, as well of Coaches as a great number of People, the reason is, because all the chief Courts of Justice belonging to the several Provinces under the *Spanish* Dominions are kept in the Palace.

Many of the Streets of *Madrid* have Fountains, but such as have nothing extraordinary in 'em. The *Plaça Major*, where they keep their *Bull-feasts*, is a noble handsom Square. The *Prado* of S. *Hieronymo* is sprinkled every Evening with Water out of the many Fountains plac'd there for the conveniency of the Coaches that take the *Tour à la mode* there.

Gross the Water the King has another House, call'd *Casa del Campo*, where he refreshes himself sometimes in the heat of the Summer, under the cool shady Walks, the chief Allurement of this Seat.

From

1694. From *Madrid* I took a turn to *Alcola de Henares* or *Compostell*, in Latin *Complutum*, the greatest Univerſity (next to *Salamanca*) in *Spain*, founded by Cardinal *Ximenes*. The Buildings of the City it ſelf are none of the beſt: The *Univerſity-College*, where all publick Exerciſes are kept, acknowledges the great Cardinal *Ildefonſo* for its Founder; the other Colleges are, that of *Madre de Dios*, of *Malca*, the *Trilingue*, the King's College, that of *Mena*, of *Manrique*, of S. *Clement*, of *Lugo*, that of *Arregon*, of *Verdes*, of S. *Ambroſe*, of S. *Catherine*, of S. *Denis*, that of the *Ruffians*, and S. *George*'s College, built and well endow'd by a *Portugueſe* Count, for the uſe of thirty *Iriſh* Students, but the Count dying before it was quite brought to perfection, the King ſeiz'd on the greateſt part of the Revenues, leaving only a ſlender Allowance for the maintenance of eight Students, who are oblig'd by Oath, after ſeven years ſtay in the College, to preach the Goſpel in ſome of the Northern parts. There are beſides theſe the Colleges of S. *Peter* and S. *Paul*, and that of the Grammarians.

Complutum or Compoſtell.

Its Colleges.

Madrid.

Its Rivers.

Their Convents of Monks are, that of the Order of S. *Auſtin*, of S. *Thomas*, S. *Baſil*, S. *Bernard*, and that for the *Complutenſes*, the *Carmelites*, the *Oratory*, the *Jeſuites*, two of the *Trinitarians*, the *Diſcalceats*, two of the *Mercenaries*, the *Minims*, the *Agoniſants*, the *Auſtin Friers Diſcalceats*; the Convent of the Angels of S. *Diago*, S. *John de Dios*, and that of *Leon*, beſides ten Nunneries.

Convents.

Bucs Retiro.

I heard one of their Diſputations, and it ſeem'd very odd to me, that the Reſpondent, after having repeated the Opponent's Syllogiſm, did not anſwer in Latin, but in his native Tongue.

Juſt before the high Altar in the Chapel of the *Univerſity College* ſtands a white Marble Tomb, containing the Body of the before-mention'd Cardinal *Ildefonſo*, his Effigies in a cumbent poſture, all excellently done, and encompaſs'd with Braſs Grates; *Mahomet*'s Lamp, and ſome *Turkiſh* Colours taken by him from the *Turks*, are hung up in the ſame Chapel.

The Cathedral here is a ſpacious and noble Fabrick, in which (among others) I took notice of a white Marble Tomb with a Latin Inſcription, erected to the memory of Dr. *J. Gonzales*.

This City ſtood formerly on the other Bank of the River, at the foot of an high Hill, but being laid deſolate by the *Moors*, it was afterwards rebuilt in the place where it now ſtands.

Over the Water, on an high Hill, in a little Chapel, they preſerve a red Croſs, which (they ſay) was ſent down from Heaven and put into the hand of one of their Kings, as he lay encamp'd againſt the *Moors*, who were entirely routed. In the Cathedral they ſhew you a miraculous Stone, which formerly afforded ſuch abundance of Oyl, that they ſupplied all the Lamps of the Church with it, but thoſe who look'd after it making a Gain of it, by ſelling it for other uſes, the Miracle ceaſed.

During my ſtay at *Madrid*, I made another excurſive Journey to take a view of the *Eſcurial*, that Wonder of the World, built by K. *Philip* II, purſuant to a Vow he made before the Battel at S. *Quintin* againſt the *French*, and having obtain'd the Victory, he dedicated the *Convent* adjoyning to the Palace to S. *Lawrence*, (being his Day when the Battel was fought) and placed in it two hundred Friers of the Order of S. *Jerome*, under a Prior nominated by the King, and a College or Nurſery for young Students. It is ſeated about ſeven leagues from *Madrid*, among the Mountains in the Kingdom of *Toledo*, having to the Eaſt and Weſt very delightful Plains water'd with many Rivulets and Springs. Its form is a large Square, each ſide whereof is 263 foot long, with a fine Tower on each corner; the Materials are a ſort of very hard Stone, ſpotted with grey; the greateſt part of the Architecture is of the *Dorick* Order, with ſome of the *Ionick*, *Corinthian*, *Compoſite* and *Tuſcan*: The whole Fabrick is ſubdivided into four leſſer Squares, which have ſixteen Gates; the chief Entrance is on the Weſt ſide, thro' three Gates, over which ſtand the Statues of S. *Lawrence*, the Patron of this Fabrick, and in the middle the Arms of *Spain*.

The Eſcurial.

The firſt Quadrangle is two hundred and thirty foot long, and a hundred and twenty ſix broad: The Front of this inner Court is adorn'd with ſix Pillars of the *Dorick* Order ſixty eight foot high, upon which are placed ſix Pedeſtals, and upon them as many Statues of the Kings of the Old Teſtament, *viz. David*, *Solomon*, *Joſias*, *Ezechias*, *Jehoſhaphat* and *Manaſſes*, with Crowns of Braſs on their Heads weighing a hundred pound each, and the Scepters (of the ſame Metal) fifty pound each; *David*'s Harp, likewiſe of Braſs, weighs no leſs than three hundred ſeventy five pounds. Under each of theſe Kings are the following Inſcriptions:

1694.

David	Solomon	Ezechias
Opera	*Templum*	*Mandata*
Exemplar	*Domino*	*Domini*
A Domino	*Ædificatum*	*Phaſe.*
Recepit.	*Dedicavit.*	*Celebravit.*
Joſias	Jehoſaphat	Manaſſes
Volumen	*Lucis*	*Contra*
Legis	*Ablatis*	*Aras*
Domini	*Legem*	*Altaria*
Invenit.	*Propagavit.*	*Deſtruxit.*

Into the *Church* you enter by five Arches twenty eight foot high and fourteen broad; the length of the *Church* is three hundred ſixty four foot, and its breadth two hundred and thirty; its whole height, from the Floor to the Croſs on the top of the *Cupola*, is three hundred and thirty foot; the Architecture is of the *Dorick* Order; it has ſix Iſles, two of which make a Croſs, the other four meeting into a Square; it has beſides this twenty four noble Arches, fifty large Windows, and thirty nine Galleries with Silk Curtains: There are here alſo no leſs than twelve noble Croſſes of Jaſper-ſtone, ſet over ſo many Chapels, and forty Altars, in their peculiar Chapels, beautified with excellent Pictures of the Saints.

The Church.

The Floor of the Church is pav'd with grey and black Marble, and the Iſles are illuminated with a vaſt number of large Silver Lamps; the middle Iſle alone has fourteen Balconies of two yards three quarters in length. The Grand Chapel is magnificent beyond what can be imagin'd, its length is twenty foot, the breadth fifty, and the height an hundred; you aſcend into it by the middle Iſle, by twelve Steps of the fineſt Jaſper of fifty three foot long; the Chapel is parted from the body of the Church by curiouſly wrought Rails of Braſs gilt; the Paintings are very excellent here, ſuitable to the reſt: It contains four ſorts of Architecture, which are ninety three foot high, and forty nine broad, the firſt of the *Dorick* Order with ſix Pillars, the ſecond of the *Ionick* with as many, the third is *Corinthian*, and the fourth the *Compoſite*, with two Pillars ſuſtaining the Roof and Arches; they are all of the beſt Jaſper, curiouſly poliſh'd, the *Baſes* and *Capitols* of Braſs gilt: In one of the Pillars of the *Dorick* Order is the *Cuſtodia* or place where the Sacrament is kept; on each ſide is an Original of *Perig ino* an *Italian*, one repreſenting our Saviour's Birth, the other the Adoration of the three *Eaſtern* Kings; the four *Evangeliſts*, in Braſs gilt, ſtand on the ſides of the Pillars: In the *Ionick* Order is painted S. *Lawrence*'s Martyrdom, by the ſame *Perugino*: On the ſides are two Originals, one of Chriſt ty'd to a Pillar to be ſcourg'd, the other repreſenting Chriſt bearing the Croſs, by *Frederico Zuccharo*, and four Statues of Braſs of as many ancient Fathers of the Church: In the *Corinthian* Order you ſee the Aſſumption of our Lady, and on the ſides the Reſurrection, and the Deſcent of the Holy Ghoſt, all Originals painted by the ſame hand: Between two Pyramids are two brazen Statues of S. *Andrew*, and S. *James* the Patron of *Spain*; the *Compoſite* Order has but two Pillars, and in the middle of them our Saviour on the Croſs, S. *Peter* and S. *Paul* on the ſides, and the Virgin *Mary* and S. *John* on the out-ſides; they are all four of Braſs gilt, and thirteen foot high each.

The great Chapel in the Church.

The *Cuſtodia*, or Box wherein the Sacrament is kept, is of a round figure, made of various Stones; its height is ſixteen foot, and its diameter ſeven and a half, ſupported by eight Columns of *Diaſpare*, imitating the Rainbow in their various colours; they ſay, that this Stone is not to be wrought but by Diamonds, and that the Workmanſhip of this coſt eighty thouſand Ducats.

The Cuſtodia.

Over the *Cuſtodia* you ſee the Statues of the twelve Apoſtles, and at the top the Reſurrection of our Saviour. You enter into this Chapel (call'd the *Segrario*) by two Doors of Jaſper, one on each ſide, and aſcend to the Altar by ten Steps of the ſame Stone, which alſo furniſhes the Materials for the Floor; it has its Light thro' a curious Cryſtal Window on the Eaſt ſide, with Iron Bars gilt; it is beautified with Pictures repreſenting the Myſtery of the Euchariſt, with a Rainbow and many Angels over it. On the right ſide of the Altar you ſee five Statues in Braſs upon their Knees, of the Emperour *Charles* V, his Daughter, and two of his Siſters; on the other ſide are placed the Arms of *Spain*, with five Statues underneath reſponding to the others, *viz.* one of K. *Philip* II, of his Queen *Anne*, of two of his former Wives, and of his Son *Charles*. Under this Altar is the *Pantheon* or Burial-place of

1694. of the Kings of *Spain* of the *Austrian* Family, of which more anon. This Church hath receiv'd much additional Beauty by the excellent Paintings of the Sacred History by the rare hand of *Luquesto* an *Italian*.

Relicks. Among their Relicks (of which, they say, they have something of every Saint) they shew some of the Hair of our Saviour and the Blessed Virgin, as also some of their wearing Apparel, some Thorns of his Crown, and one of the Nails wherewith he was nail'd to the Cross, some remnants of his purple Habit, divers Relicks of S. *John* the *Baptist*, of the Apostles Martyrs, and the entire Body of S. *Lawrence*, the Head of S. *Jerome*, and the Heads of several other Saints.

Riches and Ornaments. They tell you, that they have no less than five hundred and fifty *Pixes* and *Chalices* of Gold, Silver and Crystal, among which they shew one said to have been offer'd to our Saviour by one of the three Eastern Kings.

The Choir. In the middle of the Isle is the *Choir*, fronting the Chapel, its length is ninety six feet, its breadth fifty six, its height forty eight, the Floor cover'd with the same Marble as the Church, and the Walls painted with the Martyrdom of S. *Lawrence* and S. *Jerome*, the first by *Romulo*, the last by the just now mention'd *Luqueste*, who has also painted the Glories of Heaven on the top: It is illuminated by a Crystal Branch of twenty eight Lights, the Present of the late King *Charles* II, and has two Orders of Seats curiously wrought with precious Wood: On each side is an Organ, with cross Galleries gilt, and in the Church are six more, one of Silver, the Gift of *Charles* the Fifth.

Sacristy. The Sacristy is a hundred and eight foot long, and thirty broad, the Pavement of Marble of divers colours, and the Cieling and Walls painted with the best Originals (thirty four in number) of Sacred History, the Gift of *Philip* IV, by the greatest Masters in that Art, *viz.* *Titian*, *Raphael Urbin*, *Paulo Veronese*, *Tintoret*, *Andrea del Sarte*, *de Bordenon*, *Guido Bolgnese*, *Annibal*, *Caracche*, *Van Dike*, and others.

The Pantheon or Sepulchres of the Kings of *Spain*. Near the Sacristy you descend by Steps of the best Marble into the *Pantheon*, containing the Sepulchres of the Kings of *Spain* of the *Austrian* Family, being esteem'd the finest Piece of this kind in *Europe*: Over one of the Gates, (which are of Brass gilt) underneath the Arms of *Spain*, you see upon a black Marble this Inscription in golden Letters:

D. O. M.
Locus Sacer mortalitatem exuviis
Catholicorum Regum
A Restauratore Vitæ, cujus Aræ Max.
Austriaca adhuc pietate subjacent.
Optatam Diem expectantium.
Quam post suam sedem sibi & suis
Carolus Cæsarum Max. in votis habuit,
Philippus IIdus Regum Prudentissimus elegit,
Philippus IIItius verè pius inchoavit,
Philippus IVtus
Clementia, Constantia, Religione Magn. Auxit,
ornavit, absolvit; M. D. C. LIV.

The Arms of *Spain*, cut in precious Stone and richly gilt, are placed here betwixt two Statues of Brass gilt, one representing the Fall of Man, the other the Hope of a Resurrection. This Door brings you by the before-mention'd Steps of the finest Jasper and Marble into the *Pantheon*, which is overcrusted with the same, and most artificially polish'd; its form is round without, and an octagonal within, in each of the Squares being reposited the Urns for the Royal Bodies, four in each Square, there were then in all twenty six of these Urns, of grey Marble, supported by four Lyons Paws of Brass gilt; of the same Metal there is an oval Figure in the middle of each of these Urns, containing the Names of such Royal Persons as are interr'd there, in black Letters. In the Square fronting the Door stands the Altar, and upon it a large Cross of Brass gilt, fix'd within another of black Marble, of which also the whole Altar is compos'd, except that it has some curious Ornaments of the choicest *Porphyry*: On each side of the said Cross stands a Pillar of green *Genoua* Marble, with brass Bases and Capitols gilt. On the Gospel side of the Altar lie interr'd the Bodies of *Charles* V, *Philip* II, *Philip* III, and *Philip* IV, and on the other side such of their Queens as brought them forth Issue, such as die without being not admitted to be buried here, but in another Sepulchre allotted for the Branches of the Royal Family.

The *Pantheon* is enlightned by a curious Branch of Brass gilt, with twenty four Lights; the Floor is cover'd with the same Stone as the Walls, and wrought into the figure of Stars.

The Convent has no less than five Cloysters, the biggest being no less than eight hundred foot square, painted all about with the Life, Death, Resurrection and Ascension of our Saviour. 1694.

The old Chapel. The old Chapel affords three excellent Pieces, that of S. *Lawrence* on the Gridiron in the middle, and on both sides the Offering of the three Eastern Kings and Christ's Sepulchre, both by *Titian*, besides divers other Originals of Sacred History of the best Masters: They boast here of one of the Innocents Bodies entire, of one of the Waterpots in which Christ turn'd Water into Wine at the Wedding of *Canaan*, and of one of the Bars of the Gridiron on which S. *Lawrence* was broil'd, but these are not to be seen by Hereticks. In the Refectory you see a celebrated Piece, by *Titian*, of the Lord's Supper, brought hither from *England* during the Exile of K. *Charles* II, and pawn'd for 15000 *l.* Sterling.

The Royal Palace and Library. I had no opportunity of seeing the Royal Palace, which is not very large, and was told it contain'd little of moment except the Paintings; but the Library must be own'd a noble lofty Structure, two hundred foot long and thirty six high, the Stalls of the Books (which are all letter'd on the Back) being of Cedar and other precious foreign Wood; it has seven Pillars of the *Dorick* Order, the Floor is cover'd with white and grey Marble, and the Cieling with curious Paintings representing the Arts and Sciences, and the most celebrated Authors, by *Perugrina*; but those Histories of Arts and Sciences you see under the Cornishes are of the excellent hand of *Bartholomew Carducho*. In the middle of the same Room stand seven Tables of Jasper and Marble, and two of *Porphyry*, with Globes and Spheres plac'd upon them. They preserve also some ancient Medals and Writings on the Bark of Trees; their most valuable Manuscripts are, Manuscripts. *De Baptismo Puerorum* of S. *Austin*'s own writing, a Piece of S. *Chrysostom*, *Apocalypsis de Sancto Amadeo*, four Books writ by S. *Theresa*, a Letter of S. *Vincent*, the Original of S. *Lewis Beltram* of the Conception of the Virgin *Mary*, with divers other Pieces of St. *Gregory*, S. *Anastase*, and S. *Chrysostom*.

The most excellent Paintings on the Cieling of the Church, and over the great Stairs, by that great modern Artist *Luca Giordano* a *Neapolitan*, and but lately finish'd at the late King's expence, are no small addition to the beauty and glory of this stipendious Fabrick, which I was told contain'd, with every thing belonging to it, above thirty six leagues in circuit; certain 'tis that there belong to this Structure 15 *Cloysters*, 11 *Courts*, 25 *Fountains*, 13 *Statues of Stone*, and 38 of *Brass* gilt; the number of original and other choice *Pictures* is computed at 1602, besides 540 more on the Walls; the Copies of *Landskips*, *Fruits*, &c. are not to be number'd: It has besides this 9 *Refectories*, 5 *Infirmaries*, 2 fine *Apartments* for the reception of Strangers, and 9 *Kitchins*; it was 24 years before 'twas finish'd, and cost K. *Philip* II. six millions wanting only two thousand Ducats, unto which adding the charge of the *Pantheon* and other additional Buildings, and the Reparations made after the Fire hapned, in 1671, the whole charge has been computed at no less than eight millions of Ducats. The vastness of this Structure.

I have nothing to add to the description of this wonderful Piece, except the curious Walk of double rows of Elm-trees, leading from the little Town below to this Royal Foundation.

I left *Madrid* Dec. 3. 1694, and lodg'd the first night at *Valdemore*, whence I turn'd somewhat out of the Road the next day to go to *Aranjeux*, mov'd with a curiosity to view the King's Palace there, the situation of which among Woodlands (a Rarity scarce ever to be met with in this Country) put me in mind of my native Country *England*.

Aranjeux. For the rest, the House is but ordinary for a Royal Palace, the Gardens and Walks not very large, yet better contriv'd than any I ever saw either in *Spain* or *Portugal*; here are many excellent *Statues* and *Fountains*, brought hither from all parts by the Emperour *Charles* V. and those that are more modern are very good ones; the great number of these *Statues*, of Brass and Marble, together with the pleasant *Fountains* all along the shady Walks and Arbours of large Elms, and some Oak and Ash, (great Rarities here as well as in *Portugal*) render this place very delightful, its situation being between two Hills, upon the very Banks of the River *Tagus*, from whence some Walks run up the Hills for a league together, yet is the Air counted not extraordinary healthful. Here the King keeps his best Male Asses for breeding.

I lodg'd the next night at *Ocanno*, a place noted for the best *Castile-Soap*, and the following night at *Cerral de Almogner*. As the Road betwixt *Madrid* and *Alicant* is passable

1694. bly good for a Coach, for the Country is generally fertile in Corn, Oyl and Wines, and the rocky parts produce abundance of Rosemary, Thyme, and suchlike Sweet-herbs, wherewith they feed their Sheep and Goats.

Poor and bad travelling in Spain.

The next place I came to was *Alvarazete*, noted for good Knives, Daggers, and Scissars; notwithstanding this the extream Poverty of the Country-people, and consequently the ill Accommodation one meets with upon the Road, (where you are oftentimes destitute of Provender for your Horses, a Bed, nay, Bread and Wine) renders travelling very difficult and tedious in *Spain*; however, I got at last safe to *Alicant* the 13th of *December*, after a journey of ten days in a Calash.

Alicant.

The Town of *Alicant* is pleasantly seated betwixt Hills along the Sea side, where there is a continual passage of Ships bound to or from the *Mediterranean*; it suffer'd much in the late War with the *French*, who with three Bomb-Vessels threw in about 4700 Bombs, and destroy'd six hundred Houses; they told it as a great Miracle, that above three hundred of the *French* Bombs fell upon the Cathedral dedicated to S. *Nicholas*, of which one only pierced thro' the Roof, whereas the whole Miracle was only to be attributed to the strong *Cupola's* and *Arches* which cover it. The *French* bombarded the Town with incredible dexterity, throwing their Bombs even over the Castle, that stands a good way above the Town, upon so high an Hill, that I had enough to do to get up to it, tho' when I came there I found nothing worth the trouble I had taken except a fine Prospect, the whole *Spanish* Garison consisting of only five or six Guards, and perhaps as many Guns.

Bombs shot by the *French.*

Alicant is of no strength, and the People so unfit to defend it, that at the time of the *French* Bombardment they all retir'd into the Mountains, not excepting the Officers themselves, and had certainly deserted the place, had not one Mr. *Newland*, an *English* Merchant, ply'd the *French* with two Guns from the Mole, and by his example encourag'd some of them not to leave the place to the *French*.

The Manners of those of *Valentia.*

The Gentlemen here of *Valentia*, both in their Dress and Actions, much more imitate the *French* than the *Castilians*; they are of a hasty, vain and base Temper, and so bigotted to their foolish Niceties, or *Spanish Punctilio's*, that upon a very slender occasion they will either murther one another themselves or hire others to do it, there being many of that sort of Mercenaries in this Country, who will sacrifice any man for a few *Pieces of eight*, which they commonly perform by shooting and waylaying: These Murthers produce sometimes no small Disorders, the Friends of the murther'd Party thinking themselves oblig'd to revenge his Death, go in strong Parties, some a hundred in a body, arm'd each with five Guns, (one Fusee, and four lesser ones in the Girdle) and so going into the Field, surprize one another wherever they can, it being their Principle not to attack their Enemy but upon a manifest advantage; I was told there were at that time two such Parties in the Mountains of forty on a side each, and I was credibly inform'd, that not long ago two such-like fellows were executed at *Valentia*, who confess'd that one of 'em had murther'd thirty three persons, and the other no less than seventy seven.

Government.

The Government of the Kingdom of *Valentia* is administred by a *Viceroy*, but the Town of *Alicant* has its peculiar *Governour*, who commands also the Garison when they have any, all their standing Forces thereabouts consisting in a few Troops of Horse and some Foot of the Militia, for the defence of the Coast.

The City contains betwixt thirty and forty thousand Communicants; their Civil Administration is by a Justice, like our Mayors, and some Aldermen; it has six Convents of Religious Men, *viz.* the *Jesuites*, *Dominicans*, *Austin Friers*, *Carmelites*, *Franciscans*, and *Capuchins*; two Nunneries, the *Monges de la Sangue* and *Capuchins*; and as many Parish-Churches, S. *Nicholas* and S. *Mary's*.

The present Condition of *Spain.*

For the rest, *Spain* is at present in a very low condition, thro' the weak Administration of the Queen-Mother, the King's want of Education, and the Feuds among the *Grandees*, which has depriv'd 'em of all their former strength both by Sea and Land, for want of Money, Provisions, and all other things requisite for the maintenance of a Fleet and Army, and, what is worse, without any future prospect of having these things redress'd. Tis true, the King's Revenues are very great, but being anticipated, little of 'em comes into the King's Coffers; for the *Spanish Indies* are computed to amount to ten millions a year in their Revenues to the Crown, and their Sea-port Towns must needs bring inconsiderable Customs, were it not that the Officers are both remiss and corrupted in their Places.

About half a league from *Alicant* is the famous Convent of Nuns, whither there is a great resort of Pilgrims, to pay their Devotions to the *Santta Faz* or *Holy Face* kept in this Nunnery; among these are especially many Seamen, who when they leave *Alicant* frequently make a Vow of performing their Devotions here after their safe return, which they perform bare-foot after a prosperous Voyage. The Story of this *Holy Face* runs thus: 1694.

The Story of the *Holy Face.*

Our Saviour going to his Crucifixion, a certain Woman call'd *Veronica*, who was just then moulding Dough, and had a Napkin girt about her, coming out of her House at the noise of the People, and seeing our Saviour's Face all dropping with Blood and Sweat, took the folded Napkin and so wiped his Face, the impression whereof remain'd upon the three folds; these the *Church* has preserv'd as holy Relicks, one whereof (they say) is at S. *Peter's* at *Rome*, the other in a Convent near *Malaga*, and the third here, which (they say) came hither over Sea, and landing in *Valentia*, upon the Confines of two Parishes, a great Contest arose which of them it belong'd to; to decide this Difference 'twas agreed to blind a certain Person, who should walk for some time with the *Santta Faz* thereabouts, and that those should be Masters of it in whose Precinct he hapned to drop it; which was done accordingly, and it hapning to fall in this place, a *Convent* and *Church* was founded for its preservation.

Its Vertue was the first time experienc'd in a great Drought, when being carried in Procession, it rain'd immediately, and that in great abundance. By permission of one of the Fathers I had liberty given me to look upon it a second time, as near as the Glass in which 'tis enclos'd would allow of, and found it rather to resemble the Face of a Child than a Man of that age as our Blessed Saviour at the time of his suffering, which made me look upon the whole as fabulous; and I remember, a certain *Italian* Painter seeing it, did not stick to say, *It was the worst daubing he ever saw.*

Once a Year, *viz.* the 17th of *March*, there is a great Feast celebrated at *Alicant* in memory of this *Holy Face*, when 'tis brought into the City, upon which occasion great Rejoycings are to be seen every where, and the Night generally concludes with Bonfires and a fine Fire-work.

The Procession on *Corpus Christi Day.*

During my stay at *Alicant*, I had the opportunity of seeing divers of their Processions, and among the rest that on *Corpus Christi Day*, one of the most celebrated in those parts: The first Pageant represented the History of *Adam* and *Eve*, how the Serpent entic'd her, how they eat the forbidden Fruit, and were threatned by the Angel with a naked Sword: The next, *Abraham's* Sacrifice of his Son *Isaac*, acted by living persons, who (as we were told) were Fishermens Children, and had their Lessons taught by the Priests, and their Pay from the Town for their acting.

These Pageants are made upon Waggons, with Boards laid upon 'em, both the Stages and Actors being thus drawn by Men along the Streets; these were follow'd by certain Gyants, to personate the *Gentiles*, after whom came a Serpent representing Temptation, and after this a Dragon with his Mouth wide open, to represent Hunger: Next to these came the several Companies of Tradesmen with their Banners; then the *Capuchins*, *Carmelites*, *Austin Friers*, and *Franciscans*, each carrying the Image of the Founder of their Order, and that of the Virgin *Mary*, splendidly attir'd; then follow'd some Morris-dancers, and after them some Churchmen of note and a few little Children dress'd up like Angels, strewing Flowers before the Bishop, who walk'd under a Canopy, carrying the Host.

The Temper of the *Spaniards.*

And thus I take my leave of *Spain*, in hopes of meeting with better Accommodation in *Italy*, it being certain that the general Poverty and villanous Inclinations of the People here will make one thank God to have pass'd their Country with safety; and as I am taking my Farewel of 'em, I must declare it as an undoubted Truth, that all the time I staid in *Spain* I neither saw nor heard of any honourable or generous Action done by a *Spaniard*, but frequently of the direful Effects of their vain Pride, Poverty, Thefts, Murthers and Deceits, which are too often committed here.

The Author's Voyage to Genoua.

THE 20th of *July*, N. S. 1695, I embark'd at *Alicant* on board a *Genouese* Vessel call'd S. *Francisco Xaverio*, Capt. *Carcanio* Commander; we set sail the next day, but 1695.

1695. but were forc'd back in three days by contrary Winds: *July* 31. the Wind turning fair, we set sail again, but were no sooner got to Sea when we met with three *Turkish* Rovers off *Cape Antonio*, but finding us prepar'd to receive 'em, steer'd off. Soon after we were again surpriz'd with harder contrary Winds, off the Gulph of *Valentia*, which cast us upon the Coast of *Barbary*, but the Wind veering about, we made again to the *Spanish* Coast, and passing in sight of the Islands of *Yuica*, *Majorca*, *Minorca*, and *Sardinia*, we stood close in for the Isle of *Corsica*, (belonging to the *Genouese*) within Gunshot of the Town of *Lagiasi*, a pretty little Seaport Town, the Harbour of which was enclos'd on each side with Mountains. I did not go ashore in our Boat, which was sent to get Intelligence of the *English* Fleet, but our Mariners told me, that the Inhabitants of these Mountains were generally *Banditti*, who never stir abroad unarm'd, to be always ready for Prey, or to defend themselves against the *Moors*, who often land in these parts.

Lagiasi in Corsica.

Coasting along this Island, we pass'd in sight of another little Town call'd *Carvi*. The Island all along the Shore is encompass'd with Mountains, of such a height that they are never free from Snow, but the inland parts are very fertile in all sorts of Provisions; it is of a large circumference.

The Harbour of Genoua. We were fifteen days at Sea before we arriv'd at *Genoua*, which was not till the 14th of *August*, when we cast Anchor in the Harbour, now defended by two Moles, for before the building of the last, (with incredible charge) which runs a vast way into the Sea, there was no safe riding at Anchor here, but now the stoutest Ships may lie close to the Mole: At the upper end of it stands the Lanthorn upon a little Rock, which serves for a sure Guide to Ships at a great distance.

Their Feast. My arrival happening a few days before the Feast of S. *Bernard*, I saw the Ceremony of their Doge's giving a Portion to twelve Nuns of the *Order* of S. *Jerome*, which is done every year in the following manner: Twelve Nuns of this Convent, who are inclin'd to marry, are brought from thence in Litters to S. *Bernard*'s Church, where after Mass being said in the presence of the Doge and Senate, the Doge bestows upon each of 'em a Note of two hundred Livres as their Portion; this done, they are carried back to the Convent, and being at full liberty to marry, any one may make suit to them thro' the Grates; if they agree the matter, 'tis well; but if not, and they die unmarried there, the Convent inherits the Portion.

They have another Feast on S. *Bartholomew*'s Day, celebrated in a Convent dedicated to this *Saint*, in honour of the *Volto Santto* or *Holy Face*, pretended to be kept there; tho' if it be true, that there are but three of these Faces, (as their own Tradition says) the *Catholick Fathers* must agree among themselves which are the true ones, since *Alicant*, *Malaga*, and S. *Peter*'s at *Rome* challenge three of 'em.

Their Churches. The Churches of *Genoua* are generally extreamly rich and magnificent, but the Cathedral dedicated to S. *Lawrence*, the *Annunciata* of the *Franciscans*, that of S. *Ambrose* of the *Jesuits*, and that of S. *Cyro* belonging to the *Theatins*, excell the rest in Marble and Painting.

Armoury. The *Armoury* is said to contain small Arms for forty or fifty thousand Men; they shew you also some Leather Cannon lin'd thro' with Brass, some murthering Arms, and the Royal Standard taken from the Duke of *Savoy*.

In the *Strada Nova* and *Strada Balbi* are many fair Palaces, and the *Suburbs* of S. *Pietro in Arena* are worth seeing upon the same account; the chiefest are, the Imperial Palace, and that of the Duke *d'Oria*; the long Iron Cage for Birds in the Garden of the last is broken down of late, because the Waves of the Sea us'd in the Winter-time to beat over the Walls.

Their Work-house. Their *Albergo* or Workhouse, a Square of above two hundred paces on each side, built a little way without the City, on one side of a Marble Rock, will be a stately Structure when brought to perfection; the *Statues* of the *Founders* are to be seen here in Marble, and the Foundation will imploy above two thousand poor People in constant Work and Pay.

Government. The *Streets* of *Genoua* are narrow, but cleanly kept: Their Government is Aristocratical, compos'd of a biennial *Doge* and eight *Senators*, who constantly dwell with him in the same Palace, from whence the *Doge* is not to stir but at certain times. As they may be easily bombarded at Sea, so they are careful not to disoblige those Powers that are Masters of a good Naval strength. Their *Doge* is crown'd with a Royal Crown, and is stiled Prince of *Savona*, Doge of *Genoua*, and King of *Corsica*. What Guards or Forces they keep on foot are *Germans*, *Swiss*, *Dutch* and *Corsicans*, not judging it for their Interest to exercise their own Countrymen in the Feats of Arms.

1695. After fourteen days stay at *Genoua* I set out for *Milan*; the first night I lay at *Campo Morone*, the next at *Voltaggio*, and the next following at *Grevi*; the fourth day I din'd at *Novi*, the last frontier Town towards the *Milanese*, but of slender defence; the same night I took up my Quarters at *Tortona*, the first frontier Town belonging to *Milan*, and came the next day to *Pavia*, the second City in the *Milanese*, tho' not very considerable at present.

Pavia. It is seated upon the River *Ticinum*; the Cathedral is an ordinary Structure, and the Launce shew'd here of *Orlando Furioso* seems a fabulous Story: The *Statue Equestrian* in the Piazza before the Cathedral is said to be made for *Constantine* the Great, but by others for *Antoninus Pius*. The *Augustin* Church is a handsom Fabrick, containing the Body of S. *Austin*, and that of *Severinus Boetius*. Here are also inter'd two *Englishmen* of Quality, *viz.* a Duke of *Suffolk* and one Bishop *Parker*, of the House of *Morley*, as the Inscription tells you. The *Francisean* Church is noted for the Tomb of the famous Civilian *Baldus*.

Milan. The next morning I continued my Journey to *Milan*, where I did not arrive till after four days and a half: The first thing I took a view of was the Cathedral, one of the most beautiful and largest Structures I ever saw, and when finish'd will perhaps be inferiour to none of that kind. The Statue of S. *Bartholomew*, by the hand of *Cilio*, and the Picture of our Lady, are accounted inestimable. The chief Architect of this Church was *Giovanni Antonio Honedeo*. The great Hospital is for its largeness and Revenues beyond what can be met with in any other place. The Convent of S. *Ambrose*, belonging to the *Benedictine Friers*, is spacious enough for two or three hundred of that Society, whereas there are never more than thirty or forty admitted at a time, who live in such plenty that most of 'em keep their Coaches; and they have several stately *Apartments*, three *Refectories*, one for Winter, another under-ground for the Summer-season, and another very large one above this.

The Library of S. Ambrose. The *Library* of S. *Ambrose*, founded by Cardinal *Borromeo*, is a stately Fabrick, containing (if I may credit this *Librarian-keeper*) 50500 Books: In another Room are kept no less than 14000 Manuscripts, and these all very choice ones.

From hence you go into the *Statuary*, where you see some Originals, and the best Copies of all the rarest Statues in *Rome*. Out of this you are conducted into another Room fill'd with Pictures of a great value, and some Medals and other Antiquities

In the Room where the Manuscripts are kept you see also the Pictures of some learned Ladies, as of *Cornelia Episcopeia*, *Isabella de Rosales*, &c.

I took afterwards a view of the Castle, which with all its Outworks comprehends a large tract of Ground, tho' at that time the Garison consisted only of three hundred Men; they told me it had two hundred and fifty Brass Guns mounted.

In the Cloyster of the *Jesuites* College I took notice of the Pictures of seven *Englishmen* reputed Martyrs among them, *viz.* *Alexander Briant*, executed in *England*, *Dec.* 1. 1581; *Edmund Campion*, who suffer'd at the same time; *John Cornely*, *Jul.* 6. 1594; *Roger Filcock*, *Feb.* 27. 1601; *Edward Oldcorn*, who was executed *April* 7. 1606; *Henry Garnet*, *May* 3. in the same Year; and *Francis Page*, *Apr.* 30. 1607.

The Shops in *Milan* where the Marble Statues are wrought, as also those for Crystal, and where they work in all sorts of curious Steel-works, and for Embroideries, are worth the Visits of curious Travellers, which you are permitted to do whether you buy or not. Among the Statues those in the *Capuzin*, where the Overseers of the Cathedral meet, are most excellent, representing *Adam* and *Eve*, by the hand of *Annibal Fontano*; that of *Adam* has the reputation of an admirable Piece.

I also took a view of the *Chamber of Rarities* collected by the noted Canon *Serati*, consisting in all sorts of Burning-glasses, Mathematical Inventions, Medals, Musical Instruments, and other natural and artificial Curiosities; but the present Possessor seems not to preserve them with the same Care and Ingenuity as they were collected by that great *Virtuoso*.

The Palaces here are scarce worth mentioning, the *Governour*'s being only a large *Gothick Structure*, and very old; that of the Grand *Dada* (Brother to the Pope's Nuncio in *England* under the Reign of King *James* II.) I found to be well furnish'd with some very good Pictures, and being told it was one of the best of *Milan*, I look'd no further. The *Civilians* have a noble College at *Milan*, many of the best Families applying themselves to that Study.

1695. Study. At the entrance into the Church of S. *Nazarius*, in the Niches of the Wall, you see eight Tombs of the *Trivultii*.

The Academy of Wits of *Milan* (mention'd by Mr. *Lassels*) known by the Name of *Nascosti* or *Obscure*, have made their Title good by this time, being so much hidden that the Antiquary who conducted me was surpriz'd to hear me enquire after 'em, the very memory of 'em being now lost.

The *Lazaretto* without the City is also a stately Building, and consequently worth the sight of a curious Traveller.

After six days stay at *Milan*, I set out thence for *Parma*, and taking my way over *Marignano*, (famous only for the Battel fought there by *Francis* I.) I lay that night at *Lodi*. *Lodi*, seated upon the River *Adda*, which affords 'em a communication with *Venice*, *Leghorn*, and some other places of *Italy*.

Piacenza. Next morning I continued my Journey to *Piacenza*, all this way thro' a plain and fruitful Country intermix'd with Rivulets, Trees and Meadows: About six miles on this side *Piacenza* you enter the Duke of *Parma*'s Territories, (after you have a little before pass'd the River *Po*) not distinguish'd by any mark.

The Cathedral of *Pincenza* is an old Structure, the Portico of which is supported by Pillars resting upon Lyons, but notwithstanding this it makes a glorious show within: S. *Antonin*'s Church is noted for the Tombs of S. *Victor*, S. *Fiavioli*, and other Saints. The Convent of the *Austin Friers* is very large and rich; but the Carving in the Sacristy, representing the Birth, Death, and Resurrection of our Saviour, is highly admir'd. In the Marketplace stand the Statues on Horseback of the two famous Dukes of *Parma*, *Alexander* III. and his Son *Ranutio*, the first a great Warriour, and the other as great a Politician and good Prince. The City had then a Garison of six Companies of Militia; they did not search our Baggage at the Gates, but took our Names, which are sent to the other Gate where one is to go out at, and there you are examin'd again. The Prince's Palace makes so indifferent a show, that there are many others in the City far exceeding it.

I went from hence to *Fientogela*, where I slept the same night, and met with nothing observable but a Woman, who by her grey Hair and wrinkled Countenance appear'd to be above sixty years of age, that was suckling a Child.

Parma. I continued my Journey hence to *Parma*, the ordinary Residence of the Duke of that name, tho' inferiour in bigness to *Piacenza*. The Prince's Palace is a large but confused Building and scarce half finish'd; adjoyning to it are the Coach-houses and Stables, and in a great Room over them the rich Harnesses for Coach-horses, and magnificent Trappings for Saddle-horses. I saw the so much celebrated Coaches, eight of which were very large and heavy, but not near so stately as some Travellers make 'em. I had no opportunity of seeing the inside of the Palace. The Duke's Garden (or rather *Orchard*) is rather pleasant than magnificent; at the upper end it has a very delightful Summer-house, and the Fountains and Waterworks are none of the worst, were they kept in good order. The Cathedral here is remarkable for the excellent Painting of the famous *Correggio*.

Reggio. From *Parma* I travel'd on by the way of *Reggio*, a handsom City, and an Episcopal See in the Duke of *Parma*'s Dominions, to *Modena*, where I arriv'd the same night. *Modena.* The first thing I did the next morning was, to view the Palace, where being admitted into all the Rooms, I found in 'em most excellent Paintings of *Correggio*, *Parmigiano*, *Bordonon*, *Titian*, and *Raphael Urbin*. Thence I went into the Stables, where I saw the greatest number of the finest Horses that ever I met with in one place in all my Travels. The present Duke employs daily a considerable number of Workmen on his Palace, which, when finish'd, will be a noble Building: All the Country from *Milan* (thro' *Lombardy*) to this place being a flat, plain and rich soil, is exceeding pleasant in the Summer, but must of necessity be almost impassable in the Winter.

After having bestow'd a little time in viewing what was worth observation here, I took Calash again, and soon left this Duke's Territories, and after having pass'd *Fort Urban.* a small River, entred the Pope's Dominions, and came to Fort *Urban*, a regular Citadel built by Pope *Urban* VIII. The *Armory* contain'd Arms for about four thousand, but the Garison exceeded not four hundred Men.

Bologna. From hence I went on directly to *Bologna*, the second City of the Ecclesiastical State, being both handsom and large, with noble Buildings, especially their Convents and Palaces; among the Convents, that of the *Dominicans* challenges the preference, being the biggest belonging to this Order I saw any where: They have also a neat Library, and a vast spacious Cellar fill'd with prodigious stores of the best Wines. The Convents of the *Franciscans*, *Austin Friers*, and *Carmelites* are also magnificent Buildings, and several of their Churches worth the seeing of a Traveller. The Cathedral has nothing to recommend it but its bulk. The curious Fountain of Marble, with Brass Statues, in the *Grand Piazza* over against the Legate's Palace, is a noble thing; and in the said Palace is the Cabinet of Curiosities of *Aldrovendin*. The University and publick Schools are goodly Structures, and most of the other Houses are well built, with Arches on both sides of the Streets, either to keep you from Rain or the scorching heat of the Sunbeams; 'tis much inhabited by Gentlemen, who are extreamly courteous in their Behaviour.

1695.

I continued my Journey from hence in a Calash that was just then returning to *Florence*; I lodg'd the first night *Florence.* at *Lojano*, and dined the next day at *Pietra Mala*, the first place under the *Great Duke*'s Jurisdiction; thence passing over the rugged *Apennines*, I came to *Fiorenzuola*, a little old Town, and lodg'd the same night at *Scarperia*, and so the next day to *Florence*, seated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills upon the River *Arne*.

I visited the *Great Duke*'s Palace; the first Room below is curiously painted in *Fresco*, by *Giovanni de S. Giovanni* and *C. Bravo*; the other Apartments had curious Pieces of *Colonna*. Above Stairs I was shewn the excellent Paintings of *Pietro di Cortona*, and *Ciro Ferri*; and the Chambers of the Prince's Lodgings were adorn'd with the Pictures of the best Masters, *viz.* four Battels of *Bourguignone*, some others by *Salvator Rosa*, *Livius*, *Mense*, *Veronese*, *Peter* and *Paul Reuben*, *Andrea del Sarto*, *Dominichino Suternam*, *Fra. Bartholomeo Andrea*, *Mantegna*, *Rosse*, *Correggio*, &c. In the Cardinal's Lodgings I met with a great number of curious Paintings, and divers noble Cabinets.

The *Grand Duke*, *Princes* and *Cardinal* happening to be all out of Town then, I had the opportunity, in the company of a Lady of Quality, to see the *Mezzanini*, which are private Apartments in the uppermost Lodgings for the *Grand Duke* and *Princes* in the Winter season, never to be seen when the Court is there, but now shewn us by a Marquess, who was like our Lord Chamberlain, to the *Great Duke*.

From hence I went to the so much celebrated Gallery in the old Palace, to view the Rarities and Curiosities laid up there, which as they are very numerous, and described by many Authors before, so I will referr my self for a Catalogue thereof to them, as also for the most remarkable Statues there, the chiefest whereof stand in the Duke's Palace, tho' the *Equestrin Statua* of *Ferdinand* I. in Brass, in the Piazza of the *Annunciate*, made by *Giovanni di Bologna*, that of *Hercules* of the same Metal, and the *Centaur* in Stone, by the same Master, in the *Giardino di Cernassecca*, and the Statue of *Ajax* of *Grecian* Marble at the foot of the *old Bridge*, together with the Statues of the four Seasons of the Year on the Bridge of the *Holy Trinity*, are also very excellent Pieces. *See Misson and Brown's Travels.*

The chief Churches of *Florence* are, the Cathedral, *Churches of Florence.* whose *Cupola* was the first of that kind in *Europe*, the Work of *Brunelleschi*, the Painting by *Vasari* and *Zuccharo*: The Church of *S. Zenobio* is famous for its high and curious Steeple, built by *Scoto*, apart from the Church; the bald Man, by *Donatello*, is an excellent Piece, belonging to it. The *Cupola* of the *Annunciata* is painted by *Volterrane*. In the Church of S. *Maria Novella* belonging to the Convent of *Dominican Friers* the Council of *Florence* was held. The Altar in the S. *Spirito*, a Convent of *Austin* Monks, cost 100000 Crowns. The *Cupola* in the *Carmelites* Church is excellently well painted by *Giordano*. In S. *Mark*'s Church is the Tomb of St. *Anthony*, by *Giovanni di Bologna*. That of St. *Croce* has many fine Altars, and excellent Pictures over them; you see a most admirable Piece of the *Resurrection* over an Altar immediately on the left hand as you come into the Church by the great Doors, but by reason of some Nudities represented in that Picture, no Mass is said there.

After a view of the Churches, I took a walk to the *Poggi Imperiale*, so call'd from the present Great Duke's Grandmother, who was Sister to the Emperour; it has vast store of fine Pictures of the best Masters, as *Carracci*, *Perugino*, *Titian*, *Paul Veronese*, &c. The Offering of the three Eastern Kings, by *Ghirlandajo*, is esteem'd an admirable Piece; the four Pieces of our *Saviour's Sufferings* are done by the hand of old *Ligozzi*, and several curious Landskips by *Pandolpho* a *Polander*; but the Statue of *Adonis*, by the excellent hand of *Michael Angelo*, surpasses the rest. The Crystal-work in the Cardinal's Lodgings, made after the way of Filugrine, is also exceeding fine.

The

1695. The Great Duke's Stables are well stor'd with fine Horses, and near them is the place where is kept *Lyons*, *Leopards*, *Tygers*, wild *Boars*, *Bears*, *Wolves*, and other such like wild Beasts.

The Chapel of S. *Lawrence*, design'd for the Sepulchres of the Great Dukes, will be (when finish'd) the Masterpiece of the World. For the rest, the Streets of *Florence* are neatly pav'd with broad Stones.

Pistoia. After a stay of four or five days, I set out from *Florence* towards *Legorne*, taking my way over *Pistoia*, an old place of no consideration, and lodg'd that night at *Lucca*, a small Republick in the midst of the Great Duke's Territories; the City is well fortified, and their Magazine contains Arms for four or five thousand Men; their *Gonfalonier* or supream Magistrate (who is chang'd every two months) has his Swiss Guards and Attendance like a Prince. They allow no Stranger to wear a Sword without License, which is only for eight days at a time. They have their own Archbishop, who was a Cardinal at that time. The Cathedral is an ordinary Building: In their Church of St. *Frediano* lies interr'd an *English* King, S. *Richard*, who dying in his Pilgrimage to *Rome*, was canoniz'd.

Pisa. From *Lucca* I continued my Journey to *Pisa*, once a Commonwealth and its own Mistress, now under the subjection of the *Florentines*, whose Policy is to keep it low, which makes it appear in a desolate condition: The fine Cathedral, with the curious Brass Doors, the bending Tower, and the *Campo Santo*, are still remnants of its former greatness. The Knightly Order of S. *Stephen* is instituted to fight against the *Turks*.

Legorne. From hence I travel'd to *Legborne*, one of the neatest Seaport Towns that can well be seen: The Mole, which extends a great way into the Sea, renders the Haven very safe, and Ships may ride without danger close to the Wall; the Lanthorn serves for a Guide to such Ships as are to make the Harbour.

The Statue of *Alexander* the first Great Duke is highly esteem'd, and the *Bagnio* or place where the Slaves are kept at night and sent out to work by day, is very useful and convenient for that purpose; the *Turkish* Slaves have some Privileges allow'd 'em beyond the rest. The Cathedral is both low and meanly built, and so are almost all the rest of the Churches here, but the Streets are well pav'd with broad Stones, and neatly kept; the place is strongly fortified, and defended by a good Garison: As there is a great Trade here, so many Foreigners inhabit this Seaport, and among the rest the *Jews*, who are allow'd a good Synagogue.

From *Legborne* I return'd to *Florence* by post in one day, and set out the next day towards *Rome* in a Calash, which carried me thither in five days and a half, the weather being very bad. I lay the first night at *Poggi-bonzi*, a *Poggi-bonzi.* place noted for sweet-scented Snuff, and dined the next at *Siena*, a large handsom City, once a Commonwealth, *Siena.* but now under the Great Duke's subjection. The Cathedral here is a most beautiful Structure, especially the Pavement, compos'd of Marble of different colours, and so curiously contriv'd, that the various colours express the Lights, Shadows and Figures to the life.

This City has a very delightful Situation, its Buildings are very good, and the Streets pav'd with Bricks set edgeways, as in *Holland*; the wholsomness of the Air and the University invites many Foreigners to reside here for some time, especially the *Germans*, who challenge peculiar Privileges.

I went on from *Siena* to *Ponte Centino*, where I lay that night, and the next day passing by *Torricini*, *Radicofani* and *Aquapendente*, (once a Bishops See) I lodg'd that *Bolsena.* night at *Bolsena*, famous for the double Miracle wrought here for the confirmation of the Real Presence of Christ's Body and Blood in the Sacrament, on account of which that celebrated Feast of *Corpus Christi* was instituted by Pope *Urban* IV. They tell you, that a Priest officiating, and doubting the verity of the Article of the *Real Presence*, the Host he held in his hand dropp'd two or three drops of Blood upon the Stone he stood upon, which is shewn to this day, as is likewise another Stone, upon which (they say) the same Miracle hapned to confirm a doubting *Frenchman*.

Montefiascone. From thence we pass'd on to *Montefiascone*, a place sufficiently noted for excellent *Muscatello* Wine; it is a Bishop's Seat.

Viterbo. We lodg'd that night at *Viterbo*, a large City, and not unhandsom; the Cathedral contains the Tombs of four Popes: The next day I came by the way of *Monteroſi* to *Baccano*, where I staid that night, and the next day got in good time to *Rome*, by the *Via Flaminia*, thro' the *Porta del Popolo*.

It being now pretty late in the Year, I staid but four days at *Rome*, and so set out for *Naples* with the ordinary 1695. *Vetturino*, who oblig'd himself for seventeen *Roman Crowns* to carry me thither in five days, to stay for me at *Naples* till I could see it, and to bring me back in five days again, providing me with Lodgings and Entertainment upon the Road.

The first Town I came to after I had left *Rome* was *Marino*, about eleven miles thence; the next place we came to was the City of *Velletri*, a large Town, where we *Velletri.* lodg'd the first night. Betwixt *Rome* and *Marino* you see some Bowers and other antick Ruins of old stately Buildings, the Remnants of the ancient *Rome*.

From *Velletri* I pass'd forward by the way of *Peperno* to *Terracina*, an old Town seated near the Sea-side, and an *Terracina.* Episcopal Seat; so we travel'd on to *Fundi*, an inconsiderable little City, four miles beyond which you enter the Dominions of the Kingdom of *Naples*; near it you come upon the *Via Appia*, which reaches from *Rome* to the Ferry of *Carigliano*.

I was no sooner come to *Mola* (the ancient *Formiæ*) but *Mola or Formia.* my *Vetturino* or Carrier provided me a Boat to cr ss over (while Dinner was getting ready) to *Gaieta*, a small Isle *Gaieta.* in the possession of the *Spaniards*; I had much ado to get up to the Castle, which, after all, affords nothing remarkable but a fine prospect, and the Head and Bones of the once famous *Charles* of *Bourbon* Constable of *France*.

From hence I went to view the Rock that was split at the time of the suffering of our Saviour, into which you are led by a pair of Stairs into a little Chapel built between the two Rocks; it is built upon a vast Stone, which (they say) was miraculously cast cross the split Rock, and serves it for a Foundation; so I return'd to my Dinner at *Mola*, where to this day are to be seen some of the Foundations of the House of *M. T. Cicero*, as likewise his Tomb.

We came afterwards to the Ferry of *Carigliano*, near which you see the remnants of an Amphitheatre belonging formerly to the ancient and famous City of *Minturnæ*, *Minturna.* with a noble Aquaduct, but nothing is to be seen of it now.

Crossing the River in a Ferryboat, we travel'd on to *Capua*, an Archiepiscopal Seat, where I took particular *Capua.* notice of the Church of the *Annunciata*, a large and goodly Structure: From thence we went on to *Aversa*, once noted for a considerable City, but of moment now; and thence to *Naples*, the capital City of a great Kingdom.

As, according to agreement, I had but five days to stay, so I went the next day to Mount *Vesuvius*, about seven miles from *Naples*, and having satisfied my Curiosity, I return'd to *Naples*, and thence went the next day to *Pozzuolo*. I came first to the *Grotta di Pausilippo* (on the top of which, on the right hand, is *Virgil*'s Tomb) cut thro' a Rock, as 'tis said by *Cocceius Nerva*; its length is a measur'd mile, its height forty foot, and the breadth sufficient for two Waggons to meet with ease. Thence *See D. Brun and Misson's Travels.* I went forwards to the *Grotta del Cane*, where I saw the Experiments made upon a Dog and a lighted Torch, sufficiently describ'd by other Authors. Not far from this Lake are the sulphureous Sweating-baths of S. *Germane*, *The Stoves of S. Germane.* reputed an excellent Remedy against the *French* or *Neapolitan* Disease.

Going forward, I pass'd the Plains of *Solfaterra*, about *The Plain of Solfaterra.* a mile from *Pozzuole*, being computed 1242 foot long, and 1000 broad, environ'd with smoaking Hills on all sides; tho' you are sensible of a more than ordinary heat, yet holding a piece of Paper to the mouth of the Vault, I found the Paper damp with the Exhalations, without any sign of burning. The Smoaks are generally attended with roaring Winds, issuing from those subterranous Caverns. They refine hereabouts great quantities of Brimstone. The black Pool of boiling Water mention'd by Mr. *Lassels* is lost now, it being since cover'd with Earth.

From hence walking towards *Pozzuole*, I took notice by the way of the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, *Cicero*'s Academy, and his House. At *Pozzuole* I took Boat for *Baiæ*, observing by the way the stupendious Remnants of *Caligula*'s Bridge, which reach'd over the Sea from *Pozzuole* to *Baiæ*; landing here, I view'd the *Lacus Avernus*, *Baiæ.* on one side whereof you see the Remnants of *Apollo*'s Temple. Thence I came to the *Grott* of the *Sybilla Cumea*, with her Baths and Apartments; afterwards I visited *Cicero*'s Baths, the Baths of *Tritoli*, and S. *George*'s Bath. Rowing in my Boat to the other side of the Bay, I was shewn the *Mercato del Sabbato*, once a noted Street, where *Saturdays* Market was kept, but now a plough'd Field; as also the *Elisian Fields*, so highly celebrated by the ancient Poets: The *Piscina Mirabile* deservedly may be call'd

call'd wonderful. I obſerv'd alſo the ſituation of the Promontory of *Miſena*, the *Mare Mortuum* and the *Cento Camere*, two ſubterraneous Vaults made for the keeping of Slaves. I could ſcarce take a full view of *Agrippina*'s Tomb, being almoſt cover'd with Earth.

1695. Getting again into the Boat, they ſhew'd me the Ruins of *Nero*'s Palace, and the private Stairs contriv'd for the free acceſs of his Concubines, as alſo the places where formerly ſtood the Temple of *Diana* and *Lucullus*'s Palace. A great part of the ancient Town of *Baiæ* being ſwallow'd up by the Sea, I was told, that in a ſtill and clear day you may ſee divers Arches and the Pavement of ſeveral Streets under water, but it being ſomewhat tempeſtuous, I could diſtinguiſh nothing. In our return to *Pozzuolo* they ſhew'd me the *New Mountain*, which was caſt up in one night.

Naples. My time being but ſhort, I return'd immediately from *Pozzuolo* to *Naples*, where the firſt thing that did light in my way was the *Carthuſian* Monaſtery of S. *Martini*, ſeated upon a very high Hill, whence you have the faireſt proſpect in the World of *Naples*, the Sea, the Harbour, the Mole, the Arſenal, the adjacent Country, of Mount *Veſuvius*, the Cape of *Miſeno*, and the Iſle of *Capreæ*. The Chapel of this Convent is exceeding rich and neat, as is indeed the whole Fabrick; from whence I aſcended higher to the Caſtle of S. *Elmo*, built by *Charles* V. to bridle *Naples*.

The Cathedral of *Naples* is an ancient Structure, but has excellent Paintings, thoſe on the *Cupola* being by the hand of *Dominichino*. The *Jeſuits* Church is reckon'd the fineſt they are Maſters of; the excellent Paintings on the *Cupola* are done by Cavalier *Lanfrank*, now fallen down by an Earthquake, as are the noble, large, and ancient Pillars that ſtood at the entrance of the Apoſtles Church, the Paintings on the Roof of which are of the ſame hand, and thoſe on the *Cupola* by Cavalier *Benaſchi*. Here, they ſay, the Heads of the Images of *Caſtor* and *Pollux* were thrown down while S. *Paul* preach'd. In the great Church of the *Dominicans* is preſerv'd the Croſs which (they ſay) ſpoke to *Thomas Aquinas*. The *Annunciata*, S. *Maria Nova*, and that of the *Olivetan* Fathers, are all noble Structures.

The *Strada* or Street of *Toledo* at *Naples* is certainly the fineſt Street that can be ſeen, lined on both ſides with noble Palaces, and pav'd with fine broad Stones. The Palace of the Viceroy is a ſumptuous and magnificent Structure. The Mole runs a great way into the Sea, having a Lanthorn at the end, and well provided with great Guns ſince the laſt Wars.

Rome. My time being expir'd, I was forc'd to leave *Naples*, and return'd the ſame way to *Rome*, thro' the Gate of S. *John Lateran*, where I will begin to take a view of this famous City; but as divers Authors of unqueſtionable Credit and Ingenuity have given us very compleat deſcriptions of all the remarkable things there, ſo I will content my ſelf with mentioning them only in this place in the ſame order I took 'em.

See Lassels and Misson's Voyages into Italy.

The firſt Church I viſited was that of St. *John de Lateran*, the Mother-Church of *Rome*, which acknowledges no other Biſhop but *Rome*; the Tabernacle, in which are kept the Heads of S. *Peter* and S. *Paul*, ſtands in the middle of the Church, which is the fineſt next to S. *Peter*'s in *Rome*: in the Cloyſter of this Church are many remarkable Relicks, and among the reſt the bor'd Chair in which His Holineſs ſits when he firſt takes poſſeſſion of this Church.

The Baptiſtery of Conſtantine the great. From hence I went to the Baptiſtery of *Conſtantine* the Great, on the Walls whereof are very curious Paintings in *freſco*, by *Giacinto Ginignani*.

Paſſing along from hence I took notice of the Statue of *Henry* IV. of *France* in Braſs; the lofty *Guglia*, with *Egyptian* Hieroglyphicks; the noble Palace of *Sixtus* V, ſince beſtow'd upon the Poor; and the *Scala Santa*, with the Chapel call'd *Sanctum Sanctorum* on the top of theſe Stairs. The Church *Santa Croce*, ſo call'd from a piece of the true Croſs on which our Saviour ſuffer'd, preſerv'd here, was built by *Conſtantine* the Great, highly eſteem'd for many precious Relicks.

In my return thence towards S. *Maria Maggiore*, I took by the way a view of the *Columne* or Pillar in the little Church of S. *Praſſedo*, to which our Saviour was ty'd to be ſcourg'd, being brought to *Rome* by the Cardinal *Giov. Colonna*, whence the Family of the *Conneſtabile di Colonna* has got its Name. They ſay, that under this Church are buried the Bodies of 3000 Martyrs.

The Church of S. Maria Maggiore. Near it is the Church of S. *Maria Maggiore*, ſituate on the Mount *Eſquilino*; in the Piazza is a noble Column, upon which is fix'd a Statue of Braſs of the Bleſſed Virgin, with her Son in her Arms; the Model was the work of *Gulielmo Francaſe*, but the Caſting by *Dominico Herreri* a *Roman*: in the Church is a moſt excellent Picture of the Reſurrection of *Lazarus*, done by *Girolamo Muſiano*. The Chapel of *Sixtus* V. is a beautiful Piece, done by Cavalier *Dominico Fontana* a Native of *Milan*, in 1668. On the ſides ſtand two Marble Statues of *Sixtus* V. and *Pius* V. the firſt done by *Volaterra* or *Lombardo*, with moſt curious *Baſſo relievo*, the other by *Leonardo de Sarzana*. The Chapel of *Pius* V. on the other ſide of the Church is of the ſame Architecture as that of *Sixtus* V. viz. of the *Corinthian* Order, and of the ſame hand, but exceeds the other in Paintings, which are ſo numerous in both, that 'tis impoſſible they ſhould be remembered. As you come out of this Church toward the City, you ſee an ancient *Guglia* with *Egyptian* Hieroglyphicks. *The Chapel of Sixtus and Pius.*

Next I came to the Church of S. *Pudentiana*, built in the place where S. *Peter* liv'd at his firſt coming to *Rome*, and where he converted S. *Pudentiana* to the Chriſtian Religion: The Offering of the three *Eaſtern Kings*, by the excellent hand of *Pietro Paolo Oliveri*, in *baſſo relievo*, is an excellent Piece. The Church of S. *Maria della Vittoria* was the work of *Carlo Maderno*.

From hence I went by the way of the *Quatre Fontane* to the Garden of *Montalto*, eſteem'd one of the beſt in *Rome*, and thence to the Church and Convent of the *Capuchins* call'd S. *Maria de gl'Angeli*, built upon the Ruins of *Diocleſian*'s Baths, by that great Artiſt *Michael Angelo Buonarota*.

Next I view'd the Pope's Granaries, which are two ſtories high, and of a large circumference; and afterwards the Hill call'd *Monte Cavallo*, from the two *Coloſſian* Statues repreſenting Horſes of Stone, with a Groom to hold 'em. On the top of this Hill is the Palace *Mazarini*, famous for an excellent collection of Pictures; the *Aurora* in the Garden is of the excellent hand of *Guido Reni*. The *Chiſa Nova* or New Church is a beautiful piece of Architecture, the chief Architect of which was the famous *Martin Lunge*, but *Fauſto Rabeli* finiſh'd it; it has very curious original Pictures; the Roof is painted by *Pietro de Cortona*.

The Church of S. *Andrea della Valle* is both very large and beautiful within; the precious Chapel of S. *Ginetti* was the work of *Carlo Fontani*; the Church of S. *Nicholo di Tolentino* is one of the neateſt and fineſt Churches in *Rome* for its bigneſs; the fineſt of its Chapels is that of Monſ. *Gavott*, the work of *Pietro di Cortona*; the *Cupola* is painted by *Ciro Ferri*, and the moſt exquiſite *Baſſo relievo* over the Altar by *Coſimo Fancelo* a *Roman*. The Church of S. *Carlo Catinari* belonging to the Order of S. *Barnabo*, and that of S. *Pantele* near it, are both little handſom Churches.

The Church of S. *Ignatius*, or the *Roman* College, owns *Bartolomeo Ammanneto* a *Florentine* for its Architect; it is a large Structure, and they were then erecting a ſumptuous Altar for S. *Ignatius*, the Deſigners of which were Father *Graſſi* a Jeſuite, and the famous *Domenichino* and *Algardi*; ſome of the Paintings about the ſeveral Altars are done by *Pietro Sorri* a Jeſuite: The falſe *Cupola* is a curious contrivance, for tho' flat, the Perſpective is ſo nicely made, that it deceives the Eyes of the Beholders, the work of *Andrea Pozzia*, a Jeſuite: The four Statues on the Goſpel-ſide of the High Altar, repreſenting Faith, Hope, Charity and Religion, were done by *Simon Giorgino*, *Jacomo Antonio Savaggi*, *Franceſco Nivolone*, and *Franceſco Reinaldi*, all great Artiſts; as the four Cardinal Virtues in the Niches on the Epiſtle-ſide were by *Camillo Ruſcone*, a Native of *Milan*. The Painting over the Porch is of the hand of the incomparable and ingenious *Mutiano*. *S. Ignatius's Church.*

Near this Church is that of the *Maria Sopra Minerva*, belonging to the *Dominicans*; that extraordinary Piece in *baſſo relievo* repreſenting our *Saviour*, in white Marble, is the work of the greateſt Maſter in the World *Michael Angelo Buonarota*. Near it is the *Chiſa*, the Model of which Church was deſign'd by *Giacomo Barozzi*; the figure of our Saviour taken from the Croſs, in his Mothers Arms, is an admirable Piece of *Scipio Gaetano*.

Churches in the Corſo. In the Street call'd the *Corſo* I took notice of theſe following Churches, S. *Mark*'s, within the *Venetian* Ambaſſadour's Palace; that of S. *Carlo in Corſo*; the *Gieſu Maria*, one of the neateſt in *Rome*, the Walls are overcruſted with various Stones of value, and the Sculptures, Pictures and Gilding as curious as the Ingenuity of the Cavalier *Reinaldi* could contrive 'em. Somewhat lower is the Hoſpital and Church of S. *Giacomo de gl'Incurabili*; the Front was the Deſign of *Franceſco Volterra*.

As you go on to the *Porta del Populo* you paſs by two little Churches, S. *Maria de Monte Santo*, and S. *Maria de Miracoli*, anſwering one another at the Extremities of three Streets from the *Piazza del Popolo*, and built in the ſame form by that great Architect Cavalier *Reinaldi*;

1695. they are both very neat, tho' the first has the preference before the other, especially by reason of the excellent Paintings done by *Carlo Maratti*; the Tombs of Cardinal *Guesnai* and his Brother are the Works of Cavalier *Lucenti*.

In the middle of the *Piazza* stands a high *Egyptian* Pyramid, adorn'd with Hieroglyphicks, placed here by *Domitian Cæsar*. The S. *Maria del Popolo* is just within the Gate, where formerly *Nero*'s Sepulchre was; the *Cupola* was painted by Cavalier *Lanfranc*.

On this side appears the most noble entrance in the whole World into the City, affording a Prospect along the *Corso* as far as S. *Marco*, at least a mile in length, besides which you may see near as far into two others on each side of the Churches, as here [illegible] these both, one leading to the Bridge of S. *Angelo*, the other thro' the *Piazza del Popolo*.

Rome by Mr. Perrault. Pompous.

The Piazza *Navona* is an oblong Square, adorn'd with the best Fountains in *Rome*, divers stately Palaces, and the neat Church of S. *Agnes*, built by that great Architect *Borromini*, tho' the *Cupola* and *Cupola* were the work of Cavalier *Bernini*. The Pictures of the four Angels in the *Cupola*, by *Giovanni Battista Venetian*, and the other Paintings of the said *Cupola* by *Ciro Ferri*. In the same Piazza is the *Spanish* Church call'd S. *Girolamo*, and the College of Lectures for the Civil Law, call'd *Sapienza*.

From hence I went on thro' the Piazza *Medina* to S. *Lewis*, a large and handsom Church and Hospital belonging to the *French* Nation; the chief Architect of both was *Giacomo della Porta*.

Hence I pass'd on to the *Rotunda*, or the *Pantheon*, one of the most ancient Temples of *Rome*, of a circular form. Here are interr'd a great number of *Virtuosi*, and among the rest a famous Civilian named Dr. *Giles*, an *Englishman*, with his Effigies upon his Tomb in Marble, by *Michael Angelo*. The magnificence of the Portico and Pillars, together with other Excellencies belonging to this Structure, soon discover it to be one of the best Pieces of Architecture.

See Fer. Voy. Rome.

Taking one day a walk without the Gates, I took a view of the Church of the three *Fountains*, where they shew the Pillar S. *Paul* was beheaded upon: The Picture here of the Crucifixion of S. *Peter* is of the hand of *Guido Reni*. The Church of S. *Maria di Scala Cœli* was so call'd, because S. *Bernard* saw here a Ladder with Angels ascending and descending. The Church of St. *Paul*, formerly the Temple of *Mars*, was dedicated to S. *Paul* by *Constantine* the Great.

Betwixt this Church and the City Gates is a little Chapel built in memory of St. *Peter* and *Paul*, on the places where they took their last farewel of one another in order to suffer Martyrdom. The Tomb of *Caius Cestius*, built in form of a Pyramid, of white Marble, within the City Wall, half on one and half on the other side of it, near S. *Paul*'s Gate, is perhaps the most entire Monument of Antiquity in *Rome*, and is likely to last many Ages longer.

Not far thence is the *Monte Testaceo*, whence I went on to *Constantine*'s Arch, adorned by the Spoils taken from *Trajan*'s Arch. The Amphitheatre for *Coliseo* was the work of *Titus Vespasian*, whose Ruins sufficiently testifie its magnificence; they tell you here for certain, that a great Arch of this Structure tumbled down that very moment Pope *Innocent* XI. died. Near to it are the Baths of *Titus*, and not far thence the Temples of the *Sun* and *Moon*. Next to this comes the Triumphal Arch of *Titus Vespasian*, erected after his Conquest over the City of *Jerusalem*; among other carv'd Trophies, you may distinguish the golden Candlesticks he brought from *Jerusalem*, and on the top *Jupiter* under the shape of an Eagle, with *Titus* on his Back, and he flying up towards Heaven.

Vespasian's Amphitheatre.

Not far thence stand the Temple of Peace built by *Vespasian*, and that of *Venus* by *Julius Cæsar*. The ancient Temples of *Castor* and *Pollux* are now converted into one Church, dedicated to S. *Cosmo* and S. *Damian*. In the *Campo Vaccino* you see three remaining Pillars of the Temple of *Jupiter Stator*, and in the same place the Church of S. *Maria Liberatrice*, near which was the ancient *Lacus Curtius*.

Betwixt the Mount *Palatine* and *Aventine* was formerly the famous *Circus Maximus*, adorn'd in those times with the same two stately Obelisks, one whereof is now placed before the Church of S. *John de Lateran*, the other near the *Porta del Popolo*. Near unto the Triumphal Arch of *Septimius Severus* and his Son *Caracalla* stood anciently the Temple of Concord, and the remnants of the Dungeon where S. *Paul* was kept under-ground, but they are scarce to be discover'd now. Upon Mount *Celio* is a Church and Convent call'd St. *John* and St. *Paul*, in the possession of some *English* Father of the Order of the *Dominicans*.

1695.

From hence I walk'd up to the Capitol, where the first thing I met with was the Brass Statue on Horseback of *M. Aurelius*, esteem'd the finest in the World. Coming into the Hall, I there took notice of the excellent Pictures done by Cavalier *Giuseppe Arpino*, as a Proof of the Statues and Pictures of the best Masters in the other Chambers of this Palace, sufficiently describ'd by other Travellers. Adjoyning to the Capitol is the noble Church of S. *Maria in Aracœli*, from whence I went to that of S. *Maria in Cosmedin*, a very ancient Church, as also to S. *Tomaso degl' Inglesi*, formerly call'd *della Sanctissima Trinita*, given to the *English* by *Gregory* XIII, who now call it S. *Thomas à Becket*; the Society consists of *Jesuits*, their Church is small; Cardinal *Howard* made a considerable addition to this Convent, for he having built a Palace upon their Ground, afterwards left it them for a College, but it was not fill'd in my time.

Mus. Mag. Rom. Very fine.

The Library.

Not far thence, on the Mount *Pincio*, stands a Palace belonging to the Great Duke of *Florence*, which for its admirable Prospect and pleasant Gardens is highly valu'd at *Rome*. Underneath this Hill stands the Fountain call'd the *Barcaglio* or *Little Boat*, in the Piazza of *Spain*, and near it the College *de propaganda Fide*, where Students of all Nations may be instructed in the *Roman* Faith *gratis*. The Church of S. *Antonio de Portugesi* is small, but well stor'd with curious Pictures.

The Palaces at Rome.

One day I went to see the Churches of S. *Sebastian* and S. *Lawrence*, about a mile without the Gates; the first is built upon the *Via Appia* over the Catacombs: The Chapel where this Saint's Body is interr'd is very glorious, done by *Ciro Ferri*.

Returning from S. *Sebastian*, I view'd *en passant* the Cape *di Bove*, said to have been the Monument of the Wife of the Consul *Marcellus*; and near it the Ruins of *Caracalla*, the Ruins of the Walls whereof are undeniable instances both of its ancient grandeur and circumference! Here stood in ancient times the *Gingle*, remov'd thence to the Piazza *Navona*. Near this *Circus* you see also some remnants of the Wall where the *Prætorian* Bands had their Quarters. I took also a view of the little Chapel call'd *Domine quo vadis?* The Church of St. *Lawrence* stands near the Road of *Tivoli*; the most remarkable things here are two *Gothick* Tombs with excellent *vasso relievo* upon them.

The Manufactures and Columns of Rome.

But, before I take my leave of the Churches of *Rome*, I must not quite pass by in silence that magnificent Structure, I mean the Church of St. *Peter*'s: The four rows of Pillars supporting the grand Portico round the Piazza before the Church make the most glorious shew in the World; the Designers of this Piazza were the Cavaliers *Bernini* and *Reinaldi*. In the middle of this Piazza stands that most noble *Gugnal*, rais'd on a magnificent Pedestal, contriv'd by *Fontana*; *Constantine* the Great was the first Founder of this Church, *Julius* II. enlarg'd it, and *Paul* III. brought it into the form of a Cross by the Skill of *Michael Angelo Buonarota*; the following Popes carried on this great Work, and *Pius* IV. erected the Front, the Design of *Giacomo Barozzi*; the Cupola was added by *Sixtus* V. by the direction of Cavalier *Fontane*; the high Altar under this Cupola was design'd by *Bernini*; and at the feet of the Pilasters which support the Cupola are four Statues twenty two palms high each, representing *Veronica*, S. *Helena*, S. *Andrew* the Apostle, and S. *Longinus*, done by *Francesco Mochi*, *Andrea Bolgi*, *Francesco Quesnay* a *Fleming*, and by *Bernini*. The Tomb of *Alexander* VII, with his Statue in a kneeling posture, with the four Cardinal Virtues about it in Marble, is done by the same hand; but the peculiar Beauties of this Church being so nicely describ'd by others, I will not enter upon any further particulars, which, if describ'd to the utmost advantage, would require an entire Treatise.

Tivoli.

Fuligni.

From the top of this Church, where I was viewing the Cupola, I was shown the Mount where *Charles* Duke of *Bourbon* was slain by a Cannon Ball, as he was levelling his great Guns against the Castle of S. *Angelo*.

In my return from this Church I took notice by the way of the Workhouses, where a great number of People were employ'd in hewing and polishing of Marble and other Stones, as also in beating Marble to dust in Mortars; this Drudgery being inflicted by way of Pennance upon poor Bigots, they undergo this Toil with a great deal of Patience and Industry, and so the Church is serv'd better *gratis* than others for their Money.

Mascrata.

Loreto.

Adjoyning to this Church is the *Vatican* Palace; the Hall, into which you enter by easie Steps, is curiously painted by *Paul Brill* a *Fleming*, as the little adjacent Chapel was by *Romanelli*; and one of the largest Dining-rooms by *Andrea Secchi*, where is also a curious Piece

The Vatican

of

1695. of *Pietro de Cortona*; there are two other Rooms painted in *fresco* by *Julio Romano*, and three others by *Raphael Urbin*, (reckon'd the best in the World) and another little Chapel by *Zucchero*, and the Roof of another by *Guido Reni*; the Maps and Towns in the long Gallery by *Paul Brill*, and the great Hall by *Vasari*; the Paintings in the great Chapel are of the excellent hand of *Michael Angelo Buonarota*, but the darkness of the Room is no small diminution to their lustre.

The Gardens are exceeding curious in Waterworks and most exquisite Statues, describ'd by other Authors.

I also saw the Armoury, in which (they told me) were Arms for 62000 Men. But as we leave the *Vatican* we must not forget its Library.

The Library. In the Antichamber for transcribing and copying Manuscripts are divers good Pictures of *Paul Bril*; thence you enter the Library it self, where the Manuscripts are kept in Boxes round the large Pillars that support the Fabrick, and the Books on the sides of the Walls, likewise in Boxes, lock'd up. Among the Manuscripts I took notice of the ancient Septuagint, from whence the Bible has been publish'd; a very ancient *Terence*, with the Habits of the Actors; an old *Virgil*, &c. On the right hand of the upper end of the same Room, as you are going into the Gallery (likewise fill'd with Presses of Books) is an additional Building made for the reception of the Library of Queen *Christiana* of *Sweden*.

The Palaces at Rome. The Palaces belonging to private persons I visited were that of Prince *Justiniani*, the Palace *Farnese*, lately inhabited by the said Queen of *Sweden*, the little *Farnese* in *Lungara*, those of *Barberini* and *Borghese*, besides the Villa's of *Ludovisio* and *Borghese*; the vast variety of rich Furnitures, exquisite Pictures, and most excellent Statues, with their noble Gardens and almost inimitable Waterworks, and other Curiosities, having been describ'd long before by divers Travellers, who were Eyewitnesses of their Grandeur and other Perfections, I willingly supersede to enter upon the particular description of 'em at this time.

The Mausoleums and Columns of Rome. Not far from the Palace *Borghese* is the *Mausoleum Augusti*, or Sepulchre of *Augustus*, the remnants of which are undeniable proofs of its ancient greatness: The same may be said of the *Moles Adriani*, or the Sepulchre of *Adrianus Cæsar*, now converted into the Castle of S. *Angelo*, the only place in *Rome*, where the Pope keeps a constant Guard, being his State-Prison.

There are also some noble ancient Columns in *Rome*, as that erected to the honour of *Trajan*, of white Marble, by that great Architect *Apollodore*; and the Column erected in honour of the Emperour *Antonine*, likewise of white Marble, and curiously wrought in *basso relievo*.

Having satisfied our Curiosity in viewing *Rome*, I left that famous City *Nov.* 24. 1695, in order to pursue my intended Journey for *Venice* by the way of *Loretto*: I pass'd over the *Ponte Molle*, a mile distant from *Rome*, famous for the Battle fought here betwixt *Constantine* the Great and the Tyrant *Maxentius*. The next night I lodg'd at *Castel Nuovo*, and the next following at *Otricoli*, the Road being very bad, which grew worse the next days Journey, over Mountains and Rocks; I dined at *Narni*, and came in good time to *Terni*, an ancient Episcopal Seat, but inconsiderable now; the Cathedral had nothing remarkable except the Tomb of S. *Anastasius* Bishop of this place. The next morning setting out early, I came in good time to *Spoleto*, another Bishop's Seat, but soon after continued my Journey to *Foligni*; they tell you strange things of this City, that it was built by the *Longobards* or *Lombards*, and of such strength and consideration, that their Kings resided here for some time: Certain 'tis, that its situation is very pleasant, in a fruitful Country, and that the noble broad way near the City seems to be a remnant of its former grandeur.

Having fifteen miles to travel before Dinner to *Saravalla*, I travel'd with as much expedition as the foul weather and mountainous Country would permit. After a slender Entertainment in this poor Village, I travel'd on to another more wretched than the former, call'd *Ponte della Trave*, seated among prodigious high Mountains, yet this place had a *Franciscan* Convent erected there in honour of the Well where, they say, St. *Francis* turn'd Water into Wine.

I dined the next day at *Tolentino*, an old City, and lodg'd at night at *Maccrato*, a large City, containing five Parish-Churches, eight Convents, and eleven Nunneries. The next morning I soon came to *Loretto*, a place sufficiently noted for the vast concourse of Pilgrims that resort thither from all parts, to pay their Devotions and Offerings to the Holy House, as they call it, said to be the same where the Blessed Virgin was saluted by the Angel, and translated to this place *Dec.* 10. 1294, under the Pontificate of Pope *Boniface* VIII, for the further description of which, with its Treasury, and all other Curiosities belonging to it, I will referr my self to those Authors who have publish'd their Travels into those parts. 1695. See *Brown's*, *Ray's*, *Lassels's* and *Misson's* Voyages.

Going pretty late from *Loretto*, I travel'd no further that night than *Ulne*, which has but one Inn, but perhaps the best I ever met with in this Country. Not above an *Italian* mile thence, upon the *Adriatick* Gulph, lies *Ancona*, a large City and a very ancient Harbour, fortified first by *Trajan*, which have been since augmented by several Popes; the next day I dined at *Senegallia*, a Bishop's Seat and a Garison Town, not far from the Sea-shore; here I refresh'd my self with very good Oysters: I travel'd the greatest part of the Afternoon very pleasantly along the Sea-side, and by the way of *Fano* (another City) came by night to *Pesaro*, where I took up my Lodgings.

Pesaro. This is a considerable City, govern'd always by a Cardinal with the Title of *Legato a Latere*, who is attended by his *Swiss* Guards. The Piazza has, besides the Governour's Palace, divers stately Structures; in the middle of it you see a Marble Statue upon a Pedestal representing Pope *Urban* VIII, sitting in a Chair in his Pontifical Habit; the Fountain is also a good piece of Workmanship.

Rimini. We travel'd but slowly the next day, by the way of *Cattolica* (a pitiful Village) to *Rimini*, where I lay all night, and feasted my self once more with good Oysters. Near the East Gate I took notice of a Marble Triumphal Arch erected to *Augustus Cæsar*, and further in the Town of a Statue of Brass of Pope *Julius* II sitting in a Chair. The next day I dined at *Cesene*, an ancient Episcopal See, and by a pleasant Road pass'd *Savignano*, or little *Rome*, surrounded with a very ancient Wall, and so continuing to go on in the same delightful Road, came that night to great *Furli*, five miles distant from the former: Early in the morning I travel'd on to *Faenza*, a goodly City and Bishop's Seat, and dined at *Imola*, another Episcopal City, and taking my way thro' *Castello Pietro*, (another City) I reach'd S. *Nicolo* by night; from this place to *Bologna* is no more than ten miles, where having rested my self for one day, I hir'd a Calash to carry me in two days and a half to *Padua*. Little and great *Furli*.

I lodg'd the first night at S. *Pietro* in *Casal*, a place of little note, the next morning I took my way thro' *Ferrara*, a very ancient place, owing its origin to the *Goths*, seated upon the *Po*, and beautified with many stately Palaces; it being a frontier place on the Borders of the *Venetian* State, the Pope maintains a good Garison here: The Cathedral is large, but an old Building. *Ferrara*.

Not long after I pass'd the *Po*, the common Boundary on that side betwixt the Ecclesiastical State and the *Venetian* Territories; I dined that day at an *Hosteria* or Inn by the way, and lodg'd at *Rovigo*, the ancient *Adria*, govern'd by a *Venetian Podesta*; in my way hither I cross'd another River call'd the *Canale Bianco*. *Rovigo*.

The next day's Journey brought me to *Padua*, now the largest City belonging to the *Venetians* next to *Venice* it self; it is encompass'd with a strong new Wall. The Church where S. *Anthony*'s Body is kept is a very ancient Pile of Building, but his Chapel on the left side of the Church is a curious piece of Workmanship of white Marble: In the Church-yard you see the Statue on Horseback of the famous *Venetian* General *Gattamelata*. The Convent of St. *Justina*, with its Church, is one of the largest, stateliest, and best endow'd in *Italy*. Before the Church is the *Campo* where is kept a monthly Fair for Cattle, and is us'd instead of a *Corso*. At one end of S. *Lawrence*'s Church they have erected on the outside a Marble Tomb in memory of *Antenor* their first Founder, the Inscription in *Gothick* Characters, justly transcrib'd, contain these following Verses, the interpretation of which has puzzled several learned Criticks: *Padua*.

C. *Inclytus Antenor patriam vox nisa quietem*
Transtulit huc Exetum Dardani namque fugæ;
Expulet Euganeos, Patavinum condidit Urbem
Quem tenet hic humili, marmore casa, domus.

The Cathedral of *Padua* is but an indifferent Structure, but its Endowments make an ample amends for this defect; the then Bishop was a Cardinal, a very good liver, and who would willingly have introduc'd a better Discipline among his Clergy; his Palace adjoyning to the Church has nothing extraordinary in it, but the Palace of the *Podesta* presents it self very handsomly without, and the great Hall is worth the sight of any curious Traveller.

1695. As the Gentry or Nobility belonging to this place are descended of the most ancient Families of *Italy*, tho' now reduc'd to a low ebb of Fortune by the severity of the *Venetian* Government, so 'tis the interest of the *Venetians* to keep 'em so, for fear they should one time or other be in a condition to recover their ancient Liberty.

Besides many learned Men, *Titian* the great Painter was a Native of *Padua*. Their University was formerly as famous as the City, and to this day a considerable number of Students from all parts of *Italy*, and some *Germans* and *Poles*, frequent it.

From hence I set out for *Venice* in a Boat drawn by Horses, as far as *Lizza Fetika*, and from thence in a *Gondola* to *Venice*. *Venice*. I was not so much surpriz'd at the beauty of this City as at its stupendious situation, having scarce any other Foundation than wooden Piles, and Water instead of Walls for its defence. The famous Bridge of *Rialto* is built over the great Canal, which on both sides is lined with stately Palaces, where in the Summer Evenings Persons of Quality keep the *Corso* in their Gondola's, as in other places they do in their Coaches.

In the *Piazza* of S. *Mark* is the Doge's Palace, with the *little Arsenal*, and opposite to it the Library of S. *Mark*, as a little above the Palace stands S. *Mark*'s Church, adjoyning to which is the Treasury of S. *Mark*. In the same Piazza, as you come from the Sea, stand the two celebrated Pillars of *Porphyr*, with S. *Mark*'s Lyon upon one, and S. *Theodore* upon the other. The Churches of S. *John* and S. *Paul*, S. *Chrysostom* and *Salvatore*, as also that dedicated to the Apostles, have excellent Paintings; and that call'd the *Madona di Salute* is a very beautiful Structure.

I us'd sometimes to take a walk in the Garden of S. *George*'s Convent (the only place for a walk) belonging to the *Benedictines*. In their Chapel they pretend to shew you in a Marble Pillar a natural Crucifix, but if you get upon the Altar to view it nicely near hand, you may discover it to be artificial. In their Refectory is an excellent piece of Painting of the Lord's Supper, done by *Guido Reni*.

The great Arsenal, which is surrounded with a Wall of about three miles in compass, is well stor'd with all sorts of Arms and Instruments both for Sea and Land, and employ'd a great number of People.

Venice is famous for the finest large Looking-glasses (made in the Isle of *Murano*) and the best Treacle, because the adjacent Hills afford great store of Vipers, one of the main Ingredients in this Composition. I hapned to be there in the Carnival-time, which is spent in Opera's, Masquerades, and Balls, when intriguing is so much in fashion at *Venice*, that there is scarce an Inhabitant there but what will afford a Chamber to a couple of Masks; at the same time every body is allow'd to play at the *Redoubt*, (a place like our Groom-porter) where no body else is admitted but what is a *Noble Venetian* at another time.

After three months stay at *Venice* I return'd to *Padua*, and thence set forward by the way of *Vincenza* and *Verona*, towards *Vienna*.

Vincenza. *Vincenza* is a well-built City, with very rich Inhabitants, belonging to the *Venetians*, as does also *Verona*, seated upon the River *Adige*; here is to be seen an Amphitheatre one of the most entire *Roman* Antiquities of all *Italy*, they were then bestowing a considerable Sum of Money to repair it.

We had scarce left *Verona* but we began to ascend the Hills; the first night we lay at *Scravalle* upon the *Adige*, and the next morning pass'd the *Chiusa*, a Pass between the *Venetian* Territories and *Tyrol*, having the *Adige* on one side, and on the other inaccessible Rocks, adjoyning to which are a few Cottages, the Habitations of those that guard this narrow passage; the Rocks on that side which leads from the *Venetian* Territories are excessive steep, we were forc'd to take our Horses out of the Calash, and to have it drawn down by Men.

I lodg'd the same night at *Alla*, and taking my way *Alla*. the next day over *Roveredo*, came the same night to *Trent*, a place famous for the last Council held there, under the Pontificate of *Paul* III. and *Pius* IV, where were present 7 Cardinals, 2 Legates, 3 Patriarchs, 37 Archbishops, 230 Bishops, 71 Abbots, 7 Generals of Religious Orders, 146 noted Divines, and the Ambassadours of all the *Roman Catholick* Princes and States. In the Chapel of the Church of S. *Maria Maggiore*, where the Council sate, you see a Picture representing the true order of their Session.

Bolza n. The next day I travel'd on thro' *Salom* to *Bolzano*, a place famous for its Fair, especially of Silks, once a Year; it was just kept at that time. We had scarce left *Bolzano* but we also quitted the River *Adige*, and soon after came to *Wasock*, another River, not so large as the former, but no less rapid, being supplied with large Brooks from the neighbouring Hills, which are intercepted in their passage by divers Cataracts or Waterfalls. I lodg'd the same night at *Celman*, and having dined the next day at *Brixen*, lay at *Sterzingen*, and so came the following day to *Inspruck*, a City seated among the Mountains, cover'd with Snow all the Year round. 1695.

Inspruck. It is neither very large nor very healthful, the Hill which hangs over it, and is most commonly cover'd with Clouds, making it then (tho' in *July*) so dark and cold, that we could very well have endur'd a Fire. For the rest, the *Tyrol* Hills are full of Trees, most of 'em Firrs, which harbour abundance of wild Beasts, as Foxes, Wolfs, Bears, and wild Boars.

I visited the Palace, (then the Residence of the Queen Dowager of *Poland*, the Emperour's Sister) which has nothing extraordinary belonging to it, except that in the Gardens are some good Brass Statues, among which that of the Emperour *Ferdinand* on Horseback excels the rest. Near unto the old Palace you see another House built of Wood, for the security of Her Majesty and the Princes her Sons in time of Earthquakes, which happen frequently here.

Not far thence is the Riding-house, a handsom and well-contriv'd Building, well provided with good store of fine Horses.

The *Franciscan* Church contains about twenty eight Statues of Brass of Men and Women, and some Emperours. The Balcony of the Town-hall is cover'd with massy Gold, said to be done by one of their Princes nam'd *Frederick*, who keeping a very mean Court, was in derision call'd *Frederick with his Leather Satchel*; to contradict which, he put himself upon this vain proof of his Riches, and at the same time order'd his Statue to be made of Brass, with a poor man's Bag at his side, which is to be seen to this day among the Statues of their other Princes in the Church.

I took particular notice, in my passage over the *Tyrol* Hills, that the Inhabitants were tall and strong-bodied, what little Ground they had was very well cultivated, and scarce any poor People were seen among 'em.

I left *Inspruck* in the Evening, and came to *Hall*, where I embark'd upon the River *Ihn* for *Vienna*; in my passage *Schwatz*. I saw *Schwatz*, where they work the Silver Ore that is brought thither from the Mines out of the Mountains: We met abundance of large Boats laden with Corn from the Country of *Bavaria*, which going against the Stream, had sometimes twenty six Horses to tow 'em along.

Rotenburgh. The next place we pass'd by was *Rotenburgh*, in the Castle of which Count *Serini* a *Hungarian* was confin'd Prisoner for life. *Kuffstein*. The next place to this was *Kuffstein*, upon the Borders of *Bavaria*, and soon after found the Country more plain and open, and the Soil exceeding fertile, not full of Firr-trees, like the Mountains.

Rosenheim. Afterwards I pass'd by *Rosenheim*, a handsom large Town, and going along with a swift current, row'd that day eighty *Italian* miles to the City of *Vassenburgh*, where *Vassenburg*. I lay all night, and the next day passing by *Kramburgh*, *Mildford* and *Oeling*, (a place famous for the miraculous Image of our Lady) came to *Brunaw*, a considerable City, and of some strength, in the Country of *Bavaria*, from *Brunaw*. whence we row'd on to *Schardingen*, another pleasant and *Schardingen*. well-seated City, the last on that side belonging to the Elector of *Bavaria*. The *Dome* or Cathedral was very large, and a goodly Building, but my stay being short, I had not the opportunity of taking a full view of it, being extreamly pleas'd with this place, where, as well as all over the Country of *Bavaria*, we met with good Victuals, stout Beer, and convenient Lodgings.

The next morning passing by *Newburgh*, we soon after quitted the *Bavarian* Territories, and came into the Bishoprick and Principality of *Passau*. *Passau*. Its capital City being of the same Name, is most deliciously seated upon the *Danube*. The great Church here is esteem'd the finest of *Germany*, and I must confess, that of all that ever I saw in my Travels, but few exceeded it. Next to it is the Episcopal Palace, and near that the Jesuites College, a stately Structure. The *Capuchins* on the other side of the *Danube* boast of a miraculous Image of our Blessed Lady.

From *Passau* we pass'd forward by *Linz*, a City of *Linz*. *Austria*, famous for excellent Gunbarrels made here, and lodg'd that night at *Matthausen*: The next day we row'd by that noted Whirlpool call'd the *Wirble*, which at low water is very dangerous, but it being then an high water and day-light, we pass'd it without danger, by the help of six Oars. We took up our Quarters that night at *Crembs*, and the next day came to *Vienna*.

This

1695. This City, the ordinary Reſidence of the *German* Emperour, is not of a very large compaſs, but exceeding populous; its ſituation is low, and the Fortifications very ſtrong; the Streets are very regular and handſom, and the Churches ſtately and large, eſpecially the Cathedral and S. *Stephen's*. The Obſequies for the Imperial Family are always perform'd in the Church belonging to the Convent of the *Auſtin Friers*. The beſt Palaces now to be ſeen in *Vienna* are thoſe that have been built ſince the laſt Siege of this City by the *Turks*, who laid the greateſt part of it in Aſhes. One of the chiefeſt things worth a Traveller's obſervation in *Vienna* is, the S. *Trinita*, a curious Church, and the firſt of its kind in the World, built by the preſent Emperour, to fulfill a Vow he had made during a Peſtilential Diſtemper that had rag'd at *Vienna*, viz. *That he would erect a noble Structure in honour of the Holy Trinity.*

Vienna.

There is a moſt delightful place juſt without the Walls of *Vienna*, where the Gentlemen and Ladies take the *Tour à la mode* in their Coaches in the Summer Evenings; it is a Park well ſtor'd with Deer, Staggs, wild Boars, &c. formerly belonging to one of the Emperour's Palaces laid in Aſhes by the *Turks*.

About a good hours riding from *Vienna* is *Eberſdorf*, one of his Imperial Majeſty's Country Seats; in my way thither I took a view of *New Gebaw*, once a glorious place, as the Walls and ſome Ruins ſufficiently teſtifie, but now reſerv'd only for the keeping of the Emperour's wild Beaſts, as Lyons, Tygers, Bears, and a Panther; among other exotick Creatures, I ſaw here a kind of an *Indian* Bird not unlike an *Oſtrich*, except that the Hair or Feathers were black, and had on the Head a certain high riſing of Horn, joyning to the Beak, not unlike a Crown; they told us, that it was an amphibious Creature, and would devour a prodigious quantity of Meat. Here it was the *Turks* kept their chief Magazine at the laſt Siege of *Vienna*.

New Gebaw.

Eberſdorf.

The Imperial Palace of *Eberſdorf* is a pretty, compact, new Structure, infinitely well ſeated for Hunting, which is the reaſon the Rooms are generally rather pleaſant and convenient than large and ſtately; here 'tis the Emperour and Empreſs (who are both excellent at Shooting) divert themſelves for four or five weeks in *October* and *November* with hunting the wild Boars and Staggs. The firſt Room I came into was the Guardchamber, handſomly (but low) built, and adorn'd with very good Pictures of Horſes, wild Boars, Staggs, &c. the next, being a Withdrawing-room, was beautified with the ſame ſort of Pictures, among which was an odd kind of a Stagg kill'd near *Paſſau*, whoſe Head and Horns were quite different from the reſt of the Creatures of this kind; the Apartment beyond this was furniſh'd with the Pictures of the preſent Emperour, the *Infanta* of *Spain* his firſt Spouſe, as alſo thoſe of his Father, Mother and Brother, and a Landskip repreſenting the Emperour fowling upon the Water: In another Room I ſaw the Picture of the Elector of *Bavaria* and his firſt Spouſe the Emperour's Daughter, the preſent King of the *Romans* in his Royal Robes, the ſame he wore when crown'd King of *Hungary*, and the Empreſs; here was alſo an old Man's Head, of the hand of *Nicholas Fabrique* a Native of *Namur*, and a *Mary Magdalen*, two excellent Pieces: Another Apartment contain'd the Pictures of many of the Family of *Auſtria*; as did alſo the Empreſſes Dreſſing-room, where I ſaw the preſent Archduke's Picture excellently well done: The Audience-room is alſo adorn'd with a good number of exquiſite Paintings; and in the Apartment where the Emperour and Empreſs ſupp'd, hung two vaſt branch'd Candleſticks of Silver, with many Lights. The Apartments of the King of the *Romans* were alſo full of Pictures, eſpecially Landskips.

I told you before, that the excellency of this Houſe does not conſiſt ſo much in its magnificence as in its delightful ſituation, having on one ſide a moſt agreeable Proſpect over a vaſt tract of the richeſt Corn-ground that can be ſeen, and on the other excellent Paſtures, intermingled with little Woods and ſpacious Ponds; the Palace is ſurrounded by a Ditch.

Paſſau.

The Imperial Palace call'd the *Favourite* is a Summer-houſe, where the Emperour diverts himſelf in his Gardens, which are however not very noble, but exceeding pleaſant, by reaſon of the great variety of Springs and Fountains.

The Shoene Brunnen.

Hence I went to the *Shoene Brunnen*, i. e. *the Fair Fountain*, where they were then building a ſtately Palace for the King of the *Romans*, in lieu of an old one that was burnt by the *Turks*. The Ground is exceeding well fitted, both by Art and Situation, for a moſt noble Garden. I did not ſee the ſo much talk'd of Chambers of Rarities at *Vienna*.

After a ſtay of three weeks here, I ſet out towards *Dreſden*; and paſſing thro' *Newhouſe* and *Tabor* without the leaſt ſtay, I ſoon after left *Auſtria* and enter'd *Bohemia*, where travelling thro' the moſt fruitful champion Country of Corn that ever I beheld in my life, I came to *Prague*, the Metropolis of that Kingdom ſeated upon the River *Maldaw*, which runs thro' the middle of it, and divides the *Old Prague* from the *New Prague*, as they call it. Theſe two are rejoyn'd by a ſtately Stone Bridge, with three Statues of Braſs upon it, one whereof repreſents our Saviour on the Croſs. In *New Prague* about ſixty *Iriſh Franciſcans* have a ſtately Convent. The Royal Palace or Caſtle is ſeated upon a high Hill, within which ſtands the Cathedral, an old mean Structure, having nothing remarkable but the Tombs of many of the *Bohemian* Kings. I took alſo a view of Count *Stavenburg's* Houſe croſs the River, accounted the beſt in thoſe parts; it muſt be confeſs'd it is a neat Fabrick, but is neither large nor has any thing extraordinary in or about it.

1695.

Prague.

After a ſtay of two days at *Prague*, I continued my Journey to *Dreſden*: As ſoon as you leave *Bohemia*, you enter the Territories of the Elector of *Saxony*, which extends not many leagues: On this ſide of *Dreſden* at the ſame time you leave behind you the *Roman-Catholick* Religion, and now come among the *Lutherans*, the moſt general and eſtabliſh'd Religion in thoſe parts.

Dreſden.

Approaching *Dreſden*, the Metropolis of the Country of *Miſnia*, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Electors of *Saxony*, I found it one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt regular Fortifications I had ſeen any where before or ſince. Having the curioſity to ſee the ſo much talk'd of Stables and Chambers of Rarities, (call'd by them *Kuriſt Kammers*) two or three Gentlemen and I joyn'd Purſes for that purpoſe.

The Stables and Chambers of Rarities.

In the Apartments belonging to the Stables we were ſhewn vaſt variety of curious Sledges us'd in the Winter-time upon the Snow and Ice, with their magnificent Trappings for the Horſes that draw 'em, as alſo very rich Saddles, noble Accoutrements, and many curious and fine Suits of Armour. From thence being led into a Gallery cover'd on all ſides with Pictures, we ſpent all the morning in viewing of them, and after Dinner return'd to take a view of the Chambers of Rarities; the firſt contain'd chiefly all ſorts of Chyrurgical Inſtruments, and Pictures; the ſecond great variety of fine Glaſſes, Cups, and Platters of Silver richly gilt, and inlaid with Pearl; another had many fine and rich Cabinets, ſome Paper-Organs; another moſt exquiſite Braſs Cuts, Glaſſes and Pictures or Draughts; the next Apartment had a prodigious variety of precious Stones; and the laſt, great ſtore of all ſorts of Clockwork, and many curious Pieces wrought in Ivory.

Over theſe Chambers you ſee a vaſt Collection of Skeletons of all ſorts, both Men and Beaſts. In the adjacent Court is the Riding-place for the managing of the Elector's Horſes, of which he has a great number, and that of the beſt kind, in his Stables.

Another time we took an opportunity to ſee the *Arſenal* or Magazine of Arms, which we found well ſtor'd with all ſorts of Arms and Warlike Inſtruments, in a very exact order; I never ſaw ſo many Braſs Guns, and ſo well kept, in any one place before, the preſent Elector being of a martial diſpoſition; which makes his Subjects (who are naturally inclin'd to War) apply themſelves with unſpeakable reſolution to Warlike Exploits; and I was told, that in the Winter there is a vaſt concourſe of Officers and other Strangers of note at this Court, but it being then Summer, and the Elector (ſince King of *Poland*) in the Field againſt the *Turks*, the Town was pretty empty. I muſt confeſs I never ſaw ſtronger and better look'd Souldiers in my life, than theſe that kept the Gariſon here at that time.

Having ſpent five or ſix days in viewing what was the moſt remarkable at *Dreſden*, I ſet out on my Journey for *Hamburgh*: The firſt place of note I came to was *Meiſſen*, once the Capital of the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, to which it has given its Name, but now an inconſiderable place; thence I continued my Journey to *Leipzick*, a place of good Trade, and one of the beſt Univerſities in *Germany*, but has no Colleges, like ours; what their Students may be I am not able to tell you, becauſe I ſtaid but one night, by reaſon of the intolerable impoſition they put here upon Strangers in the Inns; however, they have certain Fairs here, when there is a great concourſe of Strangers; their Library is alſo worth ſeeing.

Meiſſen.

Leipzick.

From *Leipzick* I went the next day to *Hall*, the firſt City of note on that ſide, under the *Elector of Brandenburgh's* Juriſdiction, and made an Univerſity about two years before by the preſent *Elector*, (ſince King of *Pruſſia*) who aſſign'd a College in the great Piazza to the Students; tho'

Hall.

1695. tho' (to speak the truth) the continual burning of Coal for making of Salt renders the Air very thick, and none of the most wholesom. I had the curiosity to take an exact view of the Salt-pans here, which bring a considerable profit to the *Elector*: The Pans wherein they boil the Liquor taken out of the Brine-pit, which is very deep and brackish, are not very large, and the whole business requires no more Art nor Care than to take out the Salt after the Liquor has boil'd for four hours, and to replenish them again.

Salt-pans.

S. *Mary's* Church stands not far from these Pans, it is a goodly Fabrick; and from thence you go into the great Piazza, where you see a strong Tower that overlooks the Town, and where is a constant Watch kept all night long. The Cathedral is also a handsom Fabrick; over against the Pulpit is the *Elector's* Seat, and in a Gallery on the other side a Picture of a Gentleman, his Wife and Children, buried here, making in all thirty two, *viz.* sixteen Sons and fourteen Daughters. Near this Church you see the Ruins of an old Castle, ruin'd in the long *German* Wars by the *Swedes*.

Magdeburgh. From hence I pursued my Journey to *Magdeburgh*, by the way of *Loswick*, *Kockten*, and *Salz*. This City has given its Name to the whole Dutchy; it is but of a moderate bigness, but the Cathedral (formerly belonging to the *Franciscans*) is both large and stately, and retains still many remnants of the *Romanists*; it had formerly 32 noble Altars, upon the high Altar is still a Table of *Jasper Stone* nine ells long, four broad, and three foot thick: They shew us here several Relicks, which if true ones, are not inferior to any of that kind I ever met with, tho' the People that shew 'em to Strangers are so far from having the least reverence for 'em that they speak of 'em with contempt and derision. They shew a large piece of Stone, part of one of the Waterpots wherein our Saviour turn'd Water into Wine at the Wedding of *Cana* in *Galilee*; an old Wooden Slipper belonging to the Virgin *Mary*, that she wore when she travel'd cross the Mountains to *Nazareth* big with our Saviour; a great piece of Wood, part of that on which the Cock sate that crow'd at S. *Peter's* denying our Saviour; a large Basin, in which our Saviour us'd to wash; a piece of the Lanthorn made use of by the *Jews* while they went in search of our Saviour; a piece of Stone Vessel in which the Virgin *Mary* us'd to wash her self; besides divers very fine ancient Statues, and a most noble Tomb of Brass in a little Chapel, of *Ernestus* once Archbishop of this Church and Prince of *Saxony*; several other ancient Monuments are to be seen in the Cloyster of this Church, and among the rest the Picture of a Woman that had been twice buried.

The Cathedral and Relicks there.

From hence I continued my Journey for *Hamburgh*, and travelling thro' the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, I took the Road to *Gardleben*, *Salzwedel*, &c. and in my passage met with large Woods of Oak, and some Firr-trees.

Lunenburgh. From the *Brandenburgh* Territories I enter'd the Country of *Lunenburgh*, and soon came to the chief City, of the same Name, which having nothing remarkable in it, (except a Table of Gold in one of the Churches) I staid no longer than I could change my Waggon, and so travel'd on for *Hamburgh*, two *German* leagues on this side of which City I ferry'd over the *Elbe*, where the *Lunenburghers* have a small Redoubt on one, and the *Hamburghers* on the other side of the River.

Hamburgh. *Hamburgh* or *Hambrough* may deservedly be call'd the Key of the Northern part of *Germany*, and the chiefest City for Traffick, being seated conveniently upon the River *Elbe*, which being navigable quite above the City, occasions a considerable Traffick with *England*, *France*, *Spain*, *Holland*, and other parts; besides that they have a considerable Fishing-trade for Whales in *Greenland*, which makes this City noted for rich and able Merchants. There is an *English* Company of Merchant-Adventurers here, who upon their first establishment had extraordinary Privileges here granted 'em, but of late years the Citizens have retrench'd some of their Privileges, and 'tis to be fear'd that (unless due care be taken) they will by degrees make further encroachments upon 'em. This City is pretty regular, and strongly fortify'd, tho' their chief strength consists in its situation betwixt the Territories of divers potent neighbouring Princes, who envying each other the accession of so much Strength and Riches, are always ready to assist the *Hamburghers* when attack'd, especially against the *Danes*, who always did, and still do lay claim to it.

Their four chief Gates are, the *Altena* Gate, the *Dam* Gate, the *Stone* Gate, and the *Dike* or *Ellern* Gate. Their chief Churches (besides divers Chapels of ease) are, the *Cathedral*, St. *Peter's*, St. *Catherine's*, St. *Nicholas's*, and S. *James's* Church; and in the *New Town* are two, the *Old* and *New Church*, both dedicated to S. *Michael*. 1695.

The Cathedral.

In the Cathedral they shew you an ancient Tomb of Pope *Benedict* V. one of the Ant popes, it stands in the middle of the Choir, with this Inscription round it:

Benedictus Quintus Papa qui de sede Apostolicâ per violentiam amotus, & post, cum revocaretur, Obiit Hamburgi, Anno Domini D. C. C. C. *quadragesimo primo Quinto Nonas Julii & sepultus est hic.*

Platina says he died at *Habsburgh*, and mentions nothing of his being recall'd.

Within the Wall on one side of the Isles of this Church is to be seen an old Inscription on a Tombstone, with the figure of an Ass playing upon Bagpipes cut upon it, and several other Inscriptions in the old *Low Saxon* Tongue, which are for the most part explain'd by *Lambecius*, in his *Orig. Hamburg.* and of no great consequence; that relating to the Emblem of the Ass with the Bagpipes, representing the perverted Genius of the World, runs thus;

De Weltheft Zickum gekeheet, darem so hebbeick armen Isel-piepen gelehrt.

i. e. *The World is turn'd topsy-turvy; this has taught the poor Ass to play upon the Bagpipes.*

On the right hand, as you ascend up to the Choir, stands upon a Pillar the Statue of S. *Ascharius*, first Archbishop of this Cathedral; and in the body of the Church the Sepulchral Monument of the Counts of *Holstein*, *Wagern*, and *Stormar*, &c. In the Church of S. *Nicholas* is a Stone fix'd in the Wall on the East side, in memory of Count *Adolph* III. who, tir'd with the burthen of the Government, turn'd a *Franciscan* Frier; he is represented in his Military Habit standing, and in his Religious Order in a cumbent posture, tho' he was not buried here but at *Keil*. S. *Catherine's* Church has a curious Marble Pulpit, and a most excellent Organ; Mr. *Adams* the Organist told me it had six thousand and odd hundred Notes upon it.

Their House of Correction, Spinhouse, and Arsenal are also worth a curious Traveller's sight.

I set out from *Hamburgh*, *Apr.* 14. 1696, for *Lubeck*, where I arriv'd after a difficult day's Journey, the Roads being exceeding bad. 1696.

Lubeck. *Lubeck* is like *Hamburgh*, one of the *Hans Towns*; the King of *England* most generally maintains a Resident in these parts, sent to *Lubeck*, *Bremen*, and *Hamburgh*, who for the most part resides in the last of these three Cities: *Lubeck* is tolerably well fortified, yet not sufficient to defend it self against a vigorous attack; its chief Security is the mutual Jealousie of its Neighbours: it has five Parish Churches and three Chapels of ease; I us'd frequently to visit S. *Mary's* Church, a stately Structure, containing several remarkable things both ancient and modern; among the last is the High Altar, compos'd of black and white Marble, the Pillars of divers other colours, all brought from *Italy* at the charge of one Mr. *Fredenburgen* a rich *Spanish* Merchant, yet living; it will be a most beautiful piece when brought to perfection. Under the Altar is a beautiful Vault for the said Merchant's Family: The Pulpit is likewise of black and white Marble; and it has two very good Organs.

The Cathedral is low built, but very long; the High Altar lately set up at the charge of Mr. *Westenberg* is so exactly painted, that at a distance one can't distinguish it from true Marble: Just before this Altar lies interr'd the Body of *Henry Bockholt*, once Bishop of *Stralsund*; over the Vault you see his Statue in Brass, with an Inscription upon it, of which I could understand nothing else but that he was buried here in 1322. Over one of the Altars is a Picture excellently well done by *Mark Hobby* a Frier, in 1591, representing the Passion, Death and Burial of *Christ*.

The rest of the Parish-Churches are those of S. *Helen's*, S. *Peter's* and S. *James's*, all goodly Buildings, as are the greatest part of the private Houses, after the manner of the Northern Countries; the Streets are spacious and well pav'd, and the City has a considerable Trade into *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Sweden* and *Denmark*, by means of the River *Trave*, which near the Town has nine fathom Water at low Tide.

Their Government is somewhat like that of *Hamburgh*, but much more quiet; and the Country round about extreamly well stor'd with Wood both for building of Ships and Fuel.

After

1695. *Travemunde.* After a stay of eight days I was perswaded to go and stay for a fair Wind at *Travemunde*, a poor Fishing-place seated near the entrance of the River *Trave*, about two *German* leagues from *Lubeck*; here the *Lubeckers* have a small Fort, the Garison whereof is chang'd but once a year.

After five days stay we imbark'd on *Monday Apr.* 26. and the next morning pass'd betwixt the Isles of *Moen* and *Lanteritze*, the first belonging to the *Dane*, the other to the *Swedes*. *Bornholm.* In the Evening we sail'd in sight of *Bornholm*, one of the most considerable Isles belonging to the King of *Denmark*.

On *Tuesday* we pass'd in sight of the Coast of *Pomerania*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Swedes*) and on *Friday* in the Evening discover'd the Watch-tower of *Hela*, belonging to *Dantzick*, and no more than four leagues thence; towards the maintaining of this Light-house each Ship is oblig'd to pay a certain Duty.

May 3. leaving our Ship in the Road, I went with the Master of the Ship towards the City; after we had been clear'd at the *Munde* by the Custom-house Officer, we cross'd the Water, to be examin'd at the Fort or Castle, which done, we came by means of a *Treckschuyt*, or Boat drawn by Horses, (set up a few years before) to *Dantzick*. This Boat goes every hour in the day by a certain artificial Chanel, the passage for the Ships being on the other side of the Island, where is that noted River the *Weichsel*, which comes from *Cracow* to *Dantzick*, and near it exonerates it self into the *Baltick Sea*.

The Castle of Munde. The Castle of the *Munde* commands the Road of *Dantzick*, being always provided with a good Garison under its peculiar Governour; having a License from one of the *Burgomasters* to see its Fortifications, I found them very strong, and they were then adding some new Works, by reason of some late Threats from *France*.

Dantzick. The City of *Dantzick* it self is a stately City, the Metropolis of all *Prussia*, and the chief trading Town in the *East Sea*; their staple Commodity is Corn, brought thither down the River twice a year out of *Poland*, in such prodigious quantity, that *Dantzick* may justly challenge the Title of the chief Granary of *Europe*, from whence *Its Traffick.* *Holland* is almost wholly supplied with this Commodity. *Sweden* carries off yearly a great deal, and some other places in proportion, in lieu whereof they are supplied with *Wines* from *France*, with *Woollen Manufactury*, *Lead*, *Tobacco*, and *Coals* from *England*, *Salt* and *Herrings* from *Scotland*, with *Salt*, *Wine* and *Fruits* from *Spain* and *Portugal*, tho' *Holland* furnishes them chiefly with these Commodities, which are afterwards transported thence into the neighbouring Countries, as *Poland*, *Prussia*, *Cassubia*, &c. *Sweden* sends them abundance of Iron.

Harbour. The greatest defect belonging to the Harbour of *Dantzick* is, that at the entrance of the fresh Water, call'd the *Barr*, there is seldom above nine foot Water, so that they are forc'd to unlade their Ships here, and carry their Commodities in Lighters (which hold a hundred Tuns at a time) to the City:

Warehouses. Their Warehouses are very large, strong, and lofty Buildings; the Cellars and Warehouses below are kept for other Merchandize, but the Stories above for Corn only: They are all built together on the same side of the Water. No Ships in the River *Motlaw*, that parts the Town from these Warehouses, are allow'd any Fire on board, for fear of mischief; all night there is a Watch kept thereabouts, and great Dogs are let loose, to prevent the approach of Thieves. The Boats that come out of *Poland* lie sometimes so close in this River, that you may cross the River over them, like a Bridge of Boats.

Buildings. Most of the Houses of *Dantzick* are well built, of Brick or Stone, tho' they have more of outward shew than inward conveniency, a long Entry, a spacious Hall, and a large Parlour, with a Stove backwards, taking up so much room, that the rest of the Apartments are pinch'd for them. For the rest, they can't boast of any Palaces or stately publick Edifices, and their Streets are very narrow, by reason of their way of building a pair of Stairs to every House on the outside into the Streets, which takes up a great deal of room, and gather a great deal of filth under them just before their Doors.

Their Arsenal is worth the sight of a curious Traveller, but you must have a *Burgomaster's* License before you can be admitted.

Religion and Churches. The *Lutheran* is the Establish'd Religion here, yet the *Romanists*, *Calvinists* and *Anabaptists* are also tolerated here. The Cathedral is a spacious Fabrick; over one of the side-Altars is an excellent piece of Painting: There is an ancient piece of Clockwork here, which for the variety of its motions must have been an admirable piece, especially in these days; they tell you, that the Artist who made it being condemn'd (an unheard-of piece of Barbarity among Christians) to lose his Eyes, because no other should be made like it by him, he desir'd to mend something in it, which being granted, instead of adding the Spring he pretended, he so disorder'd the Work that it could never be made to go since. 1696.

Government. Their Government is Democratical; they live under the protection of the Republick of *Poland*, swear Fealty and pay Homage to that King. It would be a strong place, were it not for some adjacent Hills that overlook it.

The Convent of Oliva. Four *English* miles from *Dantzick* is the famous and stately Convent of *Oliva*, with its beautiful Church: it has a considerable Revenue, and the Abbot is stiled *His Grace*.

Newstadt. I went also to *Newstadt*, which by some is thought to be done after the model of the true *Jerusalem*, as it now is; here you see many little Chapels, in which are represented the Cross, Pallion, Death and Burial of our Blessed Saviour.

Elbing. A good days Journey from *Dantzick* lies *Elbing*, another City under the protection of *Poland*, stronger both by Art and its Situation than *Dantzick*; it was formerly a place of Trade whilst the *English* were setled there, but these leaving it in disgust, Trade left the Town at the same time.

Konigsberg. From hence I continued my Journey to *Konigsberg*, where I arriv'd not long before the famous *Muscovite* Embassy (in which the Czar was *incognito*) made their solemn Entry, which was exceeding magnificent.

This is the capital City of the Ducal *Prussia*, under the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, who has since been exalted to the Title of King of *Prussia*. It is a place of some Trade, because Ships can come up to it, but has nothing extraordinary belonging to it. The Palace is a very indifferent Structure: In the Library they shew'd me a Knife which (they say) one *Andrew Grunheid* was kill'd, and after it had been in his Body five weeks and six days, was, by the application of a Loadstone to his side, drawn that way near to the skin, and afterward taken out by Incision, after which he liv'd nine years: To the Knife is fastned a Plate with this Inscription,

Andreas Grunheid Natus Anno 1613. [illegible] Anno 1635. 29 Maii; Idem exsiit [illegible] die 9 Julii.

Regiomonti Prussorum.

I had the opportunity of seeing the artificial Fireworks made by Count *Sternfeld*, Lieutenant-Colonel of the Artillery, for the diversion of the Czar and Embassy, which was exceeding fine, and curiously contriv'd, and succeeded to the general satisfaction of all, without the least miscarriage.

Elector. The *Elector* would also entertain the *Czar* with the fighting of wild Beasts; among these was an *Ore-Ox*, a *Fighting of wild Beasts.* Beast (as they say) not to be met with any where but in a certain Wood about ten *German* leagues from *Konigsberg*; 'tis the strongest and fiercest Creature that ever I beheld in my life, and of such courage, that he will engage and worst a Lyon; he seem'd by his shape and nature to resemble a wild Bull, with a short and thick Head and Neck, and on his Forehead he had long Hairs, which when first pull'd out by the roots, have a smell like Musk; the Horns are short and black, bending so as to make a guard to his Head; his Eyes were both quick and fierce, and he had but little Hair all along the Back; his Colour is almost of a Chesnut brown: If you see him from behind you may perceive him to be somewhat unweildy, but this Defect he recommences by the agility of his fore-parts, wherewith he will assault any Creature with incredible activity. *An Ore-Ox.*

The first Experiment they made with him was, to turn him out to a Bull and Cow; he did run at them at the first sight with great fury, but coming up with them, made a sudden stop and smelt upon them; he was so far from offering any violence to them, that when soon after a Bear was turn'd out upon the Bull and the Cow, he would not let the Bear so much as come near them.

I saw afterwards this furious Creature engag'd with three wild Bears at once; they made all together at him with incredible fury, but he met them with an angry countenance, and toss'd the Bears about to that degree, that but one of the three could take hold of him; this Bear had fix'd his Paws and Teeth in the Ox's Shoulder, which rather heightning than diminishing his Courage, he stamp'd and turn'd about most furiously till he got one of his Horns under the Bear's Belly, and thus threw

1696. threw him at once over his Back with such violence, that the Bear being sorely bruis'd by his weight and fall, was glad to crawl away.

After I had spent eight days in *Koningsberg*, I return'd to *Dantzick* by the way of the *Pillaw*, an inconsiderable Fishing-place, but useful for its Harbour, where Ships of the greatest burthen can unload, for which reason there is a goodly Fort erected here, defended by a good Garison. *The Pillaw.*

After you have cross'd the Water, you travel all the way to *Dantzick* thro' sandy Woods, and along the *Strand* where the *Amber* is gather'd, which producing a considerable Revenue to the *Elector*, a certain number of Horsemen patrole constantly thereabouts, to prevent any other persons but what are appointed for that purpose from gathering this Resinous substance, which is thrown upon the shore by the Sea with the Weeds.

From *Dantzick* I took a *Tour* to *Marienburgh*, an old City under the Jurisdiction of *Poland*, very mean and poor, without any thing remarkable in it, except an old ruinous Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Weywode of *Marienburgh*; the Country round about it is flat and very fertile, and affords a large Prospect. *Marienburgh.*

1697. After having spent a considerable time in *Prussia*, I embark'd at *Dantzick*, *June* 3. 1697, for *Stockholm*, in which Voyage we spent twelve days, by reason of contrary Winds.

The only places I could take notice of in this Voyage were, the Islands of *Gothland* and *Oeland*, both belonging to *Sweden*; the first is pretty large, and produces some Tarr, the other furnishes them with a kind of very good Stone for Building. *Gothland and Oeland.*

When you come near *Landsorth* or the *Lands-end*, the entrance towards *Stockholm* is very dangerous, by reason of the vast number of Rocks, some whereof lie just under, others even with the surface of the Water. So soon as they 'spy a Ship from the shore, a Pilot comes to conduct you as far as the place they call the *Dahlers*, where you are met by another, who conducts you to *Stockholm*, which is near sixty miles, and very tedious and troublesom to pass, because you can't come up with the same Wind, without which Inconveniency *Stockholm* would be one of the best Harbours in the World, because Ships of the greatest burthen can come up and ride safely in any weather just by the Bridge.

As these Pilots are absolutely necessary for the safe and secure conducting of the Ships, so it is not left to the Master's choice whether they will have 'em or no, a certain number of 'em being sworn, who in their turn go on board without being demanded, and take a set Duty, the greatest part whereof belongs to the King, the rest the Pilot has for his pains.

Stockholm, the Metropolis of the most potent Northern Kingdom of *Sweden*, is built for the most part upon Hills, their Houses are generally of Brick, and tolerably good. The *Royal Palace* or Castle being consum'd by Fire some years before, they were then laying the Foundation for a new one, which by the Model will be a stately Structure; as are likewise the House where the Estates meet, the Armoury, the publick Bank, and divers of the Great Mens Palaces. *Stockholm*

The Armoury, a noble Building, formerly belonging to Count *Magnus*, Uncle to the late King by Marriage, has many spacious Rooms; the first is fill'd with Pikes, Swords and Musquets, neatly kept; in several others about it you see the Colours and other Trophies taken in several Battels from the *Danes*, *Lunenburghers*, *Brandenburghers*, and other *German* Princes, especially in the Wars of *Gustavus Adolphus*: They tell you here a Story of a certain young *German* Count, who would not part with his Colours whilst living, and so wrapping himself in his life, was kill'd by the Enemy; the print of his bloody Face remains in the white Colours to this day: In divers other Rooms are to be seen many more Standards and Colours taken from the *Poles* and *Tartars*, and some in the *Spanish Netherlands* and *Ireland*. *The Armoury.*

They shew'd among other things a Trunk fill'd with combustible matter, to be fir'd by a Gun-lock, and so contriv'd by Springs to be wound up, that it might be discharg'd at what hour you pleas'd, the contrivance of a certain *German* who serv'd the *Danes* when they were engag'd in a War with *Carolus Gustavus*, and having lifted himself a Seaman on board the *Swedish* Fleet, then at Anchor in the Road of *Wisme*, intended to have blown up part of the said Fleet; but the matter being timely discover'd by the noise of the Springs, he was punish'd according to his desserts.

You are also shewn here several Suits of Armour belonging to their Warlike Kings and Generals, and among the rest you see the *Buff-coat* worn by *Gustavus Adolphus* that day he was kill'd, shot thro', with his bloody Shirt; the Skin of his Horse which he charg'd upon when he receiv'd his fatal Wound, is put upon a Horse of Wood. Among the old Armour in another Room stands a large Crucifix, found among the Ruins of the old Castle after the Fire in a Vault, with a *Gigantick* wooden Statue in Armour near the Crucifix, with these words written in old Characters, 1697.

This is the true Son of God.

They also shew'd me the King's Stables, and rich Harnesses, his precious Coronation Robes, some Pictures of the Royal Family, and among other Curiosities a most excellent Picture, an Original of *Peter Oloffson*, one of the Representatives of the Boors in the Assembly of the Estates, and a person noted for his Judgment much beyond his Birth and Condition: This *Oloffson* stood Godfather (as is usual) to a young Prince that was born during the said Assembly of the Estates. Here you see also a *Laplander*'s Sledge, such as they use in the Winter for travelling, and one of their Magick Drums, since forbidden on pain of Death.

Stockholm has seven Churches, that of S. *Nicholas*; the *German* Church, dedicated to *S. Gertrude*; the Church where are the Sepulchres of their Kings, formerly belonging to the *Grey Friers*; S. *Marys*, where the *English* have their Burying-place; S. *Catherine's*, S. *James's* and S. *Clara's*, besides two or three wooden Chapels, one of which belongs to the *Finlanders*. *Their Churches.*

The *Lutheran* is the Establish'd Religion in *Sweden*, introduc'd first in 1528, under the Reign of K. *Gustave* I. by some *German Soldiers* and *Swedish Students*, who had heard *Luther* at *Wittenburgh*. *Religion.*

The Government of the City is lodg'd in a *Stadtholder* and four *Burghermasters*: The City maintains a Guard of its own of three hundred Men, and the King's two Companies of *Guards du Corps* consist of two thousand four hundred Men; these are the ordinary Garison of the place, which else is of no great strength. *Government.*

Stockholm is a place of considerable Trade; the Commodities exported from thence of the Product of the Country are, *Corn*, *Pitch*, *Tarr*, *Deals*, *Masts*, *Copper-plates*, and *Wire*; the Commodities imported are for the most part *Salt* from S. *Ubes* and *French* Wines. *Trade.*

The King lives in another House (not intended for a Royal Palace) while the old one is rebuilding, which has nothing remarkable in it besides that the Rooms were all hung in Mourning, for the Death of the late King.

I took a view of *Jacob's Dahl*, one of the King's Country Seats, then fitted up for the reception of the Duke and Dutchess of *Holstein*. The Chapel belonging to it is little, but exceeding neat, and the Picture of our *Saviour* bound (over the Altar) is an excellent Piece. The Queen-Mother's Apartments, on the same Floor, were also not spacious, but very neat, the Hangings and Chairs of her Chamber being of green Velvet. Above these were three or four small Apartments belonging to the King; his Bedchamber had Hangings of Cloth of Gold, and the Bed and Chairs were of red Velvet; the Dining-room was hung with gilt Leather; under the Canopy sate *Charles* II. late King of *Sweden*, *Gustave Adolph* on the right hand, and *Charles Gustave* on the left; the Cieling was adorn'd with very good Painting in *fresco*. In one of the Withdrawing-rooms were the Pictures of the *Mecklenburgh* Family, and in the next Lodging-room the Pictures of all the late King's Children. The Anti-chamber to the late Queens Closet had divers exquisite pieces of Clockwork, and her Closet many fine Stones, and a long Unicorn's Horn. *Jacob's Dahl.*

The King has another Country Seat not far from the City, call'd *Carlberg* or *Ulrich's Dahl*; it being then in Mourning. I saw nothing remarkable there, except the Pictures of the *Saxon* and *Danish* Families in the Gallery, and in the Audience-room some curious Heads of the Family of Count *Magnus*, to whom this Palace formerly belong'd. *Carlberg or Ulrich's Dahl.*

The Queen-Mother has a Palace call'd *Drotningholm*, about five or six miles below *Stockholm*, fronting the Water-side, with very good Gardens behind it, which were enlarging then; here are very fine *Waterworks*, and a good number of excellent Statues both of Stone and Brass, (part of the Spoils of *Germany*) with divers delightful long Walks. The Housekeeper being out of the way, I could see only two or three Rooms, wherein the Painters were busie in making Draughts of Landskips *Drotningholm.*

where

where several Battels were fought betwixt the *Swedes* and *Danes* in the late War: The Entrance and Staircase is look'd upon by some as exceeding curious; 'tis certain that it is the most magnificent Palace of *Sweden*, being built at the charge of the Queen, Mother to the late King.

Upsal. From *Stockholm* I took a Tour to *Upsal*, an Archbishop's Seat, who is always Vicechancellor of this Univertity: As they have no Colleges here, so the Students are not distinguish'd by their Habits, but bestow themselves in the Town as they best can; their chief time of study is in Winter, in the Summer they go to their Friends in the Country, or such as have none go a begging, to get wherewithal to subsist at the Universtity in Winter.

They shew you in the Cathedral S. *Eric*'s Bones, preserv'd in a Silver Chest, as also the Garments of the Nobility put to death by King *Eric* XIV; the Whetstone sent by King *Albert* to Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*, to whet her Needles upon, who afterwards taking the said *Albert* Prisoner, set up the said Whetstone in the Church of *Roschild* in *Denmark*, whence it was remov'd by King *Charles Gustave* (after the taking of that place) and sent to *Upsal*.

Their Lakes. *Sweden* abounds in Lakes, the chiefest of which are the *Wetter*, the *Venner*, and the *Macler*, which, besides the great conveniency of travelling in the Winter with their Carriages, afford 'em vast plenty of Fish, the chief Food of the poor Country People, who dry 'em in the Sun, *Country people.* especially a certain Fish call'd *Stroomling*, not unlike our *Pilchards*, whence comes the *Low-Saxon* Proverb,

Were dee Stroomeling nicht geboren
So weren de Sweden *gantz wer lohren.*

i. e. *Without the Stroomelings the* Swedes *must be lost.*

For 'tis to be observ'd that the poor wretches in the Country live in the utmost misery, many of 'em in time of scarcity dying for want of Bread, in lieu of which they are forc'd to feed upon chopt Straw and the Bark of Trees, which they make up into a kind of Paste.

This Country abounding in Beach, Fuel is exceeding cheap here. They have one Silver and one Copper Mine, but many Iron Mines; the Forges are easily supplied with Charcoal, which the vast quantity of Wood furnishes them withal.

Having hitherto given you my Observations concerning *Sweden*, I will now proceed to the account of my Journey, and what I met with worth taking notice of in the places I went thro' towards *Denmark*.

It must be acknowledg'd that 'tis exceeding cheap travelling in *Sweden*, for by the King's Orders, you find Post-horses ready at every Stage, which are oblig'd to carry you a *Swedish* mile (six of our *English*) for Six-pence, except in a great City, where you pay double the price; and that no Deceit may be put upon Strangers, the distances of each Stage, and the price, is affix'd to certain Posts at the end of every Stage.

It being then in *January*, I took the advantage of the Sledges as far as within a league of *Helsingburgh*; I took *Norkioping and Nykoeping.* my way over *Nykoeping* and *Norkioping*, the chief place for Copper-plates and Wire in *Sweden*, by means of an infinite number of Wheels, turn'd by the Water that runs from the Lake *Wetter*. This Town has also some Trade and Shipping.

The next place of note I came to was *Linkioping*, and eleven or twelve *Swedish* leagues further *Jenkioping*, both Corporation Towns, of no great consequence: Thence I continued my Journey over *Jongley Markerve* to *Hepstingburgh*, sixty three *Swedish* leagues from *Stockholm*, or about three hundred and seventy *English* miles: The last *Helsingburgh.* Town on that side under the *Swedish* Jurisdiction is *Helsingburgh*; seated near the Sea-side, at the narrowest part of the *Sound*, directly over against the *Danish* Fortress of *Cronenburgh*, which makes it always provided with a Garrison of two or three hundred Men, tho' the place is without any Defence, except what the old Castle can afford 'em, which they boast was built a considerable time before our Saviour's Birth.

The Sound. The Passage of the *Sound* is very narrow here, tho' I remember that Monsr. *Terlon*, the *French* Ambassadour in *Sweden* at the time of the Siege of *Copenhagen*, is of opinion that no Cannon-shot can do any execution here half way, to back which he alledges the Passage of the *Dutch* Fleet thro' the *Sound*, when coming to the relief of *Copenhagen*, notwithstanding they were by the King of *Sweden*'s order ply'd both from *Helsingburgh* and *Cornenburgh* with great Cannon; of which, he says, he was an Eye-witness: But those who have seen the *Sound* in this place will easily agree with me, that he was mistaken in his computation, and that this passage of the *Dutch* must be ascrib'd to their Bravery at Sea, which they did not accompliish without great loss.

Cronenburgh. In this Castle of *Cronenburgh*, being remarkable both for its strength and admirable situation, the King of *Denmark* spends sometimes a Month or two in the Year: Thence you go to *Helsingore*, a Town of no consideration except that all Ships but the *Swedes* pay here the usual Customs of the *Sound*. Not far thence is the Isle of *Ween*, where that famous Astronomer *Tycho Brahe* liv'd, about 1575, (as is to be seen upon his Seat in the Church) and made his Observations from a Tower or Observatory to be seen there.

Helsingore. About five *Danish* leagues and a half from *Helsingore*, as you travel along the *Strand*, (the Sea to the left) lies *Copenhagen*, the Capital of *Denmark*, and the ordinary Residence of their Kings. As you approach the Town *Copenhagen.* you see the King's Ships lie close together, with their Masts appearing like a little Wood. The Buildings here are generally good, the Streets broad and handsom, and the Inhabitants very courteous to Strangers.

The Harbour is one of the best in *Europe*, notwithstanding which this City has no considerable Traffick, the Country not affording much for exportation, and the Air is none of the wholsomest here.

Churches. St. *Mary's* is the largest and handsom-st Church in *Copenhagen*, and adorn'd with several Tombs of the *Guldenlieu's*, Admiral *Adlet's*, and Mr. *Harbec's*. In that of St. *Nicholas* is a stately Tomb, erected to the memory of Count *Ros. Crantz*, one of the *Danish* Generals kill'd in *Schonen*, in their last War with the *Swedes*. That of the *Trinity*, adjoyning to the College, and belonging to the Universtity, contains the Tombs of General *Shack* (who so bravely defended *Copenhagen*) and Mr. *Van Stocken*.

University. Both their Schools and the Library have nothing remarkable in 'em, except some Mathematical Instruments of *Tycho Brahe*, and a certain Desk, so contriv'd, that turn it over as fast as you will, none of the Books will be remov'd out of their places.

The Royal Palace is a very indifferent Structure, surrounded with a dirty Ditch; tho' there are several other handsom Palaces in the City, as those of the two *Guldenlieu's* in the great Square, where stands a curious Brass Statue of the late King on Horseback.

Arsenal. The Arsenal (after leave obtain'd from the Admiral) is worth seeing: Here the Equipments for each Ship are laid up in so good an order, that the whole Fleet can be fitted out in a little time; besides that, a certain number of Seamen are kept in constant Pay, (under some small Allowance) who live with their Families together at that end of the Town, and must be ready upon all occasions.

Religion. The *Lutheran* is the Establish'd Religion in *Denmark*, tho' at the intercession of the Queen-Mother the *Calvinists* got leave to build a Church in 1689, at *Copenhagen*.

As the late King was a great Sportsman, and had the Islands which afford the best Hawks under his Jurisdiction, so he left a very fine Falconry behind him, which is near *Copenhagen*. His present Majesty also takes great delight in Hunting, and has his several Summer-seats for that purpose; at *Fredericksburgh*, a pleasant place seated among the Woods, the Court spends generally two or three months in the Summer.

I embark'd (*June* 20. 1699.) again for *Hamburgh*, and we set sail the next morning, but soon having a contrary Wind, we advanc'd but little that day; the following night the Wind continued at W. N. W. and on *Thursday* we got clear of the *Ancuit*, where the Rocks prove often fatal to Ships; the Wind veer'd about in the Evening to South-east, and held with a gentle gale till Morning, when it shifted and turn'd calm; on *Saturday* being afflicted with a contrary South-west Wind and a boistrous Sea, we put the next Morning into *Oester Isen*, a safe *Oester Isen in Norway.* Harbour of *Norway*, which we discover'd by the rocky Mountain, part of which is whiten'd over for a Land-mark to Mariners, which being done at the expence of the Lord of this poor Fishermens Village, every Ship coming in here by stress of weather pays him a *Rixdollar*, whereas such as load or unload here pay but half a *Dollar*; for some Ships come hither yearly from *England* and *Holland* to fetch Wood, who pay a certain Anchorage-money to the King, in proportion to their burthen. The adjacent Rocks afford vast store of Wood, besides which they have scarce any thing but Fish, except some Corn, brought thither from *Jutland*. They know not what a Flesh-market is, if they eat any, 'tis when two or three Families joyn together and divide a Sheep or Calf betwixt 'em.

The Wind turning fair after two days, we made out to Sea again, but, to our singular grief, instead of a North-east Wind (as it was in Harbour) met with a contrary West-north-west Wind, yet we struggled as well as we could along the Coast all the night following; the next morning a Pilot coming on board us about three leagues from the *Norway* Shore, conducted us to a little Creek call'd *Riperwich*, consisting only of four or five Fishermens Hutts. The Wind continued all that day and the day following at South-west and West-south-west, with Rains and Storms; on *Friday* morning the Wind shifted round the Compass, and at noon settled in the South-west.

Riperwich.

On *Saturday* the Wind holding contrary, and we being in want of Beer and Bread, the Master and I went early in the morning to *Christians-sand* to buy some Provisions, about two *German* leagues from the place where our Ship lay; this is a Corporation Town, and reckon'd the second place in *Norway*, tho' a poor and mean place; it is defended by three small Forts and a Garrison of two Companies of Soldiers. This Town lying upon a River which empties it self near it into the Sea, is seldom mention'd in Sea Maps; it has some few Ships belonging to it, and the *English*, *Dutch* and *Danes* drive some little Trade here.

Near the Sea lies a small Town call'd *Ulekery*, defended likewise by three Forts and a small Garrison.

Ulekery.

On *Sunday* morning we put to Sea again, the Wind at North-east, but were becalm'd at night. *Monday* about noon the Wind turn'd to the West, with foggy unpleasant weather; about six at night it chang'd to the North-west but the Fogs continued; *Tuesday* morning early it began to clear up, and a handsom gale from the North-west carried us over the *Rief* or *Jutland*; *Wednesday* morning the Wind turning to the North, we pass'd on with a fresh gale, which encreasing at night, made the Sea very rough; *Thursday*, by five of the clock in the morning, we found our selves under *Heglige-land*, i. e. the *Holy-land*, a little high Island, inhabited by Fishermen.

The Holy Land.

Thence we entred the River *Elbe*, having the Territories of *Lunenburgh* and *Sweden* on our right, and *Holstein* on the left side. All Ships must strike to the Castle of *Gluckstade*, belonging to the King of *Denmark*, and at *Stade* (on the *Swedish* side) they pay some small acknowledgment.

From hence I went post to *Hamburgh*, whence (after some days stay) I set forward again for *Bremen*, in my way for *Holland*.

Crossing the *Elbe*, I came to *Harburgh*, a Town with a Castle belonging to the Duke of *Zell*; I continued my Journey thence to *Bremen*, a free Imperial City, which by the assistance of its Neighbours has hitherto maintain'd its Liberty against the *Swedes*, who look upon it with a longing Eye, their Territories extending within a *English* mile of the Walls of the City.

Bremen was a place of greater Trade formerly than now, since *Hamburgh* has drawn great part of it away, because Ships of burthen are forc'd to unlade a great way from *Bremen*, and send their Commodities in Lighters to the City. It is generally well enough built, but their Townhouse and Armoury mean Buildings.

Bremen.

They have five Parish-Churches; the Cathedral belonging to the *Swedes* is for the use of the *Lutherans*, the rest are *Calvinists*, the most establish'd Religion here: There is a Vault in the Cathedral, the Air whereof is accounted so subtil and dry, that Bodies have been found there uncorrupted sixty or seventy years after they were buried; I my self was shewn the Corps of a Girl that died thirty years ago of the *Small-pox*, which, notwithstanding the nature of this Distemper, appear'd hard, uncorrupted and dry, like the rest.

In the Market-place stands a huge *Colossean* Statue of Stone, placed there in memory of one *Rowland*, a great Defender of the Privileges of several Cities. They have no less than seven Gates in *Bremen*.

From hence I travel'd by the way of *Oldenburgh* to *Norden* in *East Friesland*, and thence to *Embden*, and so over *Winshoochen* to *Groeningen*, a large City, which imparts its Name to a whole Province.

Groeningen.

Lewarden.

I continued my Journey to *Lewarden*, the Residence of the Prince of *Nassau*, Hereditary Stadtholder of *Friesland*. I made no stay in these places, so that I can only tell you that they were generally well built, the Streets neatly pav'd, and some of 'em very considerable for their strength.

I took afterwards the ordinary Passage-boat over the *Swyder-sea* to *Amsteldam*, but soon after the Wind turning against us, we made shift to come near *Enchuysen*, where putting out a pair of Breeches (the usual Signal) at the end of a Pole, a Boat came aboard us, which carried me and another Gentleman ashore at *Enchuysen*, a Town very considerable for its situation, the Water coming into the Town, notwithstanding which their chief Trade is now only in Herrings, and the place but indifferently Peopled, tho' for the rest the Town is large, and the Streets neatly pav'd with *Dutch* Bricks set edgewise, as is all the way betwixt this and *Horn*, whither we got early the same day; it is a very neat Town. And setting out thence with the first Treckschuyt the next morning for *Amsteldam*, we arriv'd there safely before Exchange time.

Enchuysen.

Horn.

Amsteldam being our near Neighbour, and so frequently visited by the *English*, I will not pretend to give you a description of it, which would be the work of an entire Volume; I will only say, that for Strength, Trade, Riches, and the commodiousness of its Harbour, it may stand in competition with any place in *Europe* except *London*, the number of their Ships sent to *Spain*, the *Straits*, *France*, *England*, and the *Baltick*, (besides what goes to the *East* and *West-Indies*) being almost incredible. The vast number of their Canals and Drawbridges, for the convenience of delivering their Merchandizes into and from their Warehouses without any considerable trouble, is a thing scarce to be met with, or at least in very few places of *Europe*; this makes their Merchants live in Palaces rather than Houses, curiously fitted up both within and without.

Amsteldam.

Among their publick Structures their Townhouse challenges the first place, not only here, but among all others of that kind in the World. The three Statues of Brass, representing *Justice*, *Fortitude* and *Plenty*, placed at its entrance, and the Woman of Marble in *relievo* supporting the City Arms, are most exquisite Pieces; the Tower above, with the Clock and its admirable Chimes; the *Atlas* with the Globe on his Shoulders, on the West side; the Treasury of the Bank of *Amsteldam*, kept in Vaults under this Structure; as also all the other Beauties and Ornaments of Sculptures and Paintings, are scarce to be match'd in *Europe*; all which being circumstantially describ'd in a Book in *folio* call'd *A Description of* Amsteldam, I will content my self with mentioning them only upon this occasion, as well as the rest of their magnificent publick Structures, as their several Houses of Correction, Hospitals, and the *East-India* House, with its vast Stores and Treasures. I must only add, that the Exchange of *Amsteldam*, tho' not so beautiful as ours of *London*, yet seems to exceed it in the number of People of all Nations, who resort thither as to a general Rendezvous. But with all these Advantages, this proud City enjoys not the benefit of a wholsom Air, by reason of its situation in so marshy a Country.

The next considerable place for Trade in *Holland* is *Rotterdam*, which for the commodiousness of its Harbour and the depth of its Canals excels even *Amsteldam* it self. Not far from their Exchange, in a spacious place near the great Bridge, you see a Statue of Brass erected to the memory of the great *Erasmus* their Countryman. In the great Church are divers noble Tombs of their Admirals, slain in the service of their Country.

Rotterdam.

In my way from *Rotterdam* to *Utrecht* I stopt at *Genda*, to see the famous Paintings on the Glass Windows of St. *John*'s Church, whereof a little entire Treatise has been publish'd in *Low Dutch*.

Genda.

Utrecht, one of the *Dutch* Universities, being seated in a much higher Country than the Towns in *Holland*, enjoys a much better Air, and consequently is much frequented by the Gentry, which together with the Students makes it a very populous place; the worst is, that the Government of the University is not so regulated as to keep this young Crew under a more strict Discipline, who frequently, in and after their Debaucheries, commit great Insolencies in the Streets, which upon that score are oftentimes scarce passable in the night-time.

Utrecht.

Without the Walls of the Town are very delightful Walks, planted with Trees; the Mall is very large, beautiful, and so pleasantly contriv'd and shaded with tall Elms on both sides, that the King of *France*, when his Armies committed all the inhuman Barbarities that can be conceiv'd in that Country, forbid under pain of Death not in the least to deface or injure these Walks.

Leyden is another University of the Province of *Holland*, exceeding *Utrecht* both in the number of Students and neatness of its Buildings; but the Canals in the Streets are in the Summer very often offensive to the Nostrils. As this University is well provided with excellent Masters in all Arts and Sciences requir'd for the cultivating both of the Mind and Body, so to give all imaginable Encouragement to the Students, they have divers Privileges before the Burghers. Their Anatomy-Hall, with its Rarities, being exactly describ'd both in *English* and

Leyden.

and *Low Dutch*, I refer the Reader wholly to that Treatise.

St. *Peter's* Church is a lofty noble Structure; the *French* Church has nothing to boast of but the Tomb of the Great *Scaliger*.

About three hours travelling in the *Treckschuyt* from *Leyden* is the *Hague*, the ordinary Residence of the Princes of *Orange* and all foreign Ministers sent to the States-General, who also hold their Assembly here. The Buildings are generally very good, and some of 'em most stately; the Streets are very pleasant, and many of 'em planted with Trees; in the Walks near the Court the Gentry make their *Tour à la mode* in their Coaches in the Evening.

In my way to the *Briel* I pass'd thro' *Delft*, where, in the great Church, I took notice of that noble Monument erected at the charge of the States, to the memory of *William* I. Prince of *Orange*, who was murther'd in this Town in his own Palace, by a *Burgundian* Ruffian, in 1584. This Church contains also the Tombs of Prince *Maurice* and *Frederick Henry*, as also of the famous Admiral *van Tromp*, slain in an Engagement with the *English*.

After a stay of four or five weeks in these Provinces, I came to the *Briel*, where I embark'd on board the Packet-boat, which brought me safely to my Native Country *England*.

AN ABSTRACT Of a Description of the HOLY-LAND.

By Mr. SANDYS.

THE *Holy-Land* is bounded on the North with the Mountains of *Libanus*, and part of *Phœnicia*, on the East with *Cœlo-Syria* and *Arabia-Petræa*, on the South with the same *Arabia* and *Idumea*, on the West with a part of *Phœnicia*, and the *Mediterranean* Sea. It extends from 31 to 33 deg. North Lat. So that in length, from *Dan* to *Bersheba*, it contains no more than 140 Miles, and where broadest not 50. It was divided into 3 Regions, *Judæa*, which lies to the South, *Samaria* in the midst, and *Galilee*, which extends unto *Libanus*; and is water'd by many Springs; but the principal River is *Jordan*, which runs from North to South, and makes two Lakes in its passage, the one in Upper *Galilee*, now called *Howle*, the other in the Lower, call'd the Sea of *Galilee*, or the Lake of *Tiberias*, in length 100 Furlongs, and 40 in breadth; but as it passes through the Plains of *Jericho*, it is at last swallowed up by the Lake *Asphaltides*, whose Waters are so heavy and so salt, that divers Men being cast into it, floated on the top: which sends forth such bituminous vapours, that Birds flying over are said to fall in. It is 70 Miles in length, and 10 over, and furnishes the whole Country with Salt. It was once a fruitful Valley, and call'd *Pentapolis*, from her 5 Cities, which were destroy'd with Fire from Heaven, and converted into this filthy Lake. Beyond *Jordan* are the warm Baths of *Callirhoe*, which discharge themselves into this Lake, and are good for divers diseases.

After many Revolutions, *Julius Cesar*, Lieutenant to *Adrian*, raz'd 50 strong Holds, 985 Towns, and carried the *Jews* Captive into *Spain*; from whence they were banish'd by *Ferdinand* in 1500. And now their Country having chang'd several Masters, is govern'd by Sanziacks under the Bassa of *Damasco*. It is for the most part inhabited by *Moors*, who live in the Valleys, and *Arabians* in the Mountains. There are in it few *Turks*, but many *Greeks*, and other *Christians*, of all Sects and Nations. Here live also some *Jews*, who are a People scatter'd over all the World, hated and despis'd every where, among whom there are three Sects, one that allows only the Books of *Moses*, call'd *Samaritan Jews*, who are said to worship a Calf; a second, which allows all the Books of the Old Testament; and a third, which mingles the same with the Traditions and Fables of the Rabbins inserted in the Talmud. They are commonly allow'd Synagogues in *Turkey* and *Christendom*, in the middle of which is a Scaffold, on which he stands that reads the Law in Savage tones, and sings their Liturgy in harsh tunes, with many ridiculous gestures. They stick up the Law in the Jambs of their Doors, and cover it with glass, written by their Cacams, *i. e.* Doctors of the Law, and sign'd with the Name of God, which they kiss when they go out and return. They write it on Parchment prepar'd on purpose, with a peculiar sort of Ink, not with a Quill but a Cane. Their familiar Speech is *Spanish*; their only Studies are Divinity and Physick, their Occupations Brokage and Usury, yet they take no Interest of one another, nor lend but upon Pawns, which being forfeited cannot be redeem'd. They bury the Dead in the Fields by themselves, setting a stone upright on their Graves, which once a Year they frequent, burning Incense, tearing their Garments, and fasting and mourning certain days, even for such as have been executed for Crimes. If a *Jew* deserves to die by the *Turkish* Law, they will either privately make him away, or accuse him of a Crime that deserves the like punishment. Their Women are generally fat and rank smell'd, and for the most part goggle-ey'd, but they are industrious, and will do any thing for profit, that can be done by the Art of a Woman. They are so well skill'd in Lamentations, that the *Greeks* hire them to cry at their Funerals.

Gaza is the principal of the 5 Cities that belong'd to the *Philistines*, at first famous for the Acts of *Sampson*, who liv'd about the time of the *Trojan* Wars, and is thought to have given occasion to the Fictions of *Hercules*. It stands upon a Hill encompass'd with Valleys, planted with all sorts of delicate Fruits, but the Buildings are mean both for Form and Matter. And indeed, they live in so much subjection to the *Turks*, that they dare not keep handsom Houses, or employ their Grounds to the best advantage, lest they should be counted wealthy; when we lodg'd in the City, there came a Captain, with

200 Spahi's, to raise 30000 Dollars of the few Inhabitants of that poor City. The *Grecians* here are forc'd to press out their Wine secretly, and to bury their Corn under ground, keeping that which is for present Use in long Vessels of Clay, lest it should be eaten with Worms.

Being thrust out of our Lodging by the Spahi's we return'd to our Caravan, and the next day we set forward, and pass'd through the most pleasant Valley that ever eye beheld: having on the Right hand a ridge of high Mountains whereon stands *Hebron*, and on the Left the *Mediterranean* Sea, border'd with a ridge of Mountains, between which lies a Champagne about 20 Miles over, full of flowry Hills, with Groves of Olives and other Fruits: And yet this rich bottom is only inhabited by some barbarous *Moors*, who Till no more than will feed them, because the place is often infested by Armies, before they go into the Field, who plunder the Towns and Passengers.

Ten Miles from *Gaza*, near to the Sea, stands *Ascalon*, formerly famous for the Temple of *Dagon*, and the Birth of *Semiramis*, begotten of the Goddess *Decreta*; and 10 Miles to the North of *Ascalon* is *Azotus*, and 10 Miles beyond that is *Acharon*, now places of no note.

After this, having pass'd through a large Valley, and a spacious Field of Olives, we pitch'd on a little Hill within a Furlong of *Rama*, where is a Monastery built by *Philip the Good*, in that place where the House of *Nicodemus* stood, built for the Relief of Pilgrims in their passage to *Jerusalem*, and serves to that purpose, being call'd *Sion-House*, because it belongs to the Monastery of *Mount Sion*.

A little out of our Road stands *Joppa*, having a bad Haven, which is expos'd to the fury of the North-wind, that drives the Ships against the ragged Rocks, tho' formerly it was call'd the Port of *Jewry*. The Merchandize here embark'd for *Christendom*, is only Cottons gather'd by certain *Frenchmen*, who reside at *Rama* in the House of *Sion*. The Western Pilgrims do for the most part come hither, and from hence are conducted to *Jerusalem* by a *Greek* of *Rama*, paying 7 Sultanies a-piece for his Mules, his labour, and discharge of *Cafar*, and by his means they pass securely, he being in Fee with the *Arabians* that possess the Mountains.

At length, from *Gaza* we came to *Jerusalem*, and we only were not suffer'd to enter in by the North-gate call'd formerly the Gate of *Ephraim*, now of *Damascus*; but having gone about the Wall to the West-gate, call'd the Gate of *Joppa*, we were met by two *Franciscan* Friars, who saluted us, and convey'd us to their Convent, which stands on the Left hand upon a part of *Mount Gihon*, where we were civilly entertain'd, and paid for 8 days Diet about 100 Dollars. And this is one part of their Income, That all Christian Pilgrims must resort to their Convent, and reward them for their Entertainment, which the Papists do out of Devotion, and the rest out of Civility. But to quicken our Charity, they told us of the great Extortions of the *Turks*, how that a little before our coming, a *Turk* being deny'd some trifle by a Friar, gave himself such a blow upon the Nose that the blood gushed out, and having complain'd to the Sanziack that he was beaten by the Friar, they were forc'd to pay 800 Dollars for this Sham-affront.

Another part of their Income is by the Knights of the Sepulchre, who pay 30 Sultanies a-piece to the Father-guardian that gives them their Dignity, which is now given to any one that has Money to purchase it. They take the Sacrament at their admission to hear Mass every day, if they can conveniently; to serve in the Wars against the Infidels, to promote other good Designs, and abstain from many Vices. And after this Oath, the Father-guardian lays his Hand upon his Head, as he kneels before the entrance into the Sepulchre, and bids him be a Loyal Soldier of Christ and the Sepulchre. And then he gives him the Spurs, which he puts on his Heels, and the Sword of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, wherewith he girts himself; who then arising, and kneeling with his Head inclining over the Sepulchre, is created by receiving three strokes on his shoulder, and saying thrice, *I Ordain thee a Knight of the Holy Sepulchre of our Lord Jesus Christ, in the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.* From the top of this Monastery you may survey the most part of the City, which is inhabited by Christians out of Devotion, and by *Turks* for the benefit they receive from Christians.

The same day we went into the Temple of the Sepulchre through a long descent, and then ascended to *Mount Calvary*, a rocky Hill, which formerly stood without the City, and was the place of Publick Execution, but now stands in the heart of the City. Here *Helena* built this magnificent Temple, which not only possesses the Mount, but the Garden below, together with a part of the Valley of *Carcases*, that lay between the Mount and the Wall of the old City. At Festival-times the *Turks* sit here to gather Money of those that enter, the profits arising being farm'd at the Yearly Rent of 8000 Sultanies; for each *Frank* pays 14, (except he be of a Religious Order, and then he's excus'd but the Christians subject to the *Turk* pay but a trifle. At other times the Door is seal'd with the Seal of the Sanziack, and not open'd without his direction, whereat their hang 7 Cords, which by the Bells that they ring, give notice to the 7 several Sects of Christians (who live within the Temple continually) of such as would speak with them, which they do through a Wicket, whereat they receive the Provision that is brought them.

The Roof of the Temple is of a high pitch, curiously arch'd, and supported with great Pillars of Marble, the Out-Isle gallery'd above, and the whole Fabrick stately and sumptuous. After we had dispos'd of our Luggage, the Confessor show'd us the holy and remarkable places of the Temple: And first, right against the Door, there lies a white Marble in the form of a Grave-stone, compass'd about with a Rail of Brass, which they say is the place where *Joseph* of *Arimathea* and *Nicodemus* anointed the Body of our Saviour with sweet Ointments. This they kiss and kneel to, rubbing upon it their Crucifixes, Beads and Handkerchiefs, nay, whole Webs of Linen, which they carry into far Countries to serve for Winding-Sheets; over this hang 7 Lamps continually burning. Against the East-end of this Stone is the Chappel of St. *John*, in which on the Right-hand is the Sepulchre of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, and on the Left his Brother *Baldwin*'s. Over this are the Chappels of *Mount Calvary*, to which we ascend on the North-side by 20 Steps. The Floor of the first Chappel is checker'd with divers colour'd Marbles, not to be trod upon by any feet that are shod. At the East-end, under a large arched concave of the Wall, is the place whereon our Saviour suffer'd, reputed the most holy in the World. In the middle is the place where the Cross did stand, lin'd with Silver gilt and emboss'd. On either side there standeth a Cross, that on the Right-side in the place where the good Thief was crucified, and that on the Left where the bad, divided from it by the rent of the Rock which clove asunder in the hour of his Passion. This place belongs to the *Georgians*, who are poor and take Alms, and no other Nation says Mass at that Altar; over which hang 46 Lamps continually burning. On the same Floor is that other Chappel belonging to the *Latines*, divided only by a Curtain, into which we enter through the former; and in the midst of the Pavement is a Square, enchas'd with stones of different colours, where Christ, they say, was nail'd upon the Cross. This place is too Holy to be trod upon, but is worn with the Peoples knees, and heated with their fervent kisses. These are the only 2 Chappels which stand on the top of the Rock, except that of the Immolation of *Isaac*, where they keep the Altar of *Melchisedeck*. About 20 paces Westward is the place where the B. Virgin stood, and the Disciple whom Jesus lov'd, when from the Cross he commended each to other. A little on the Right-hand of this you pass between certain Pillars, into that part of the Church which is call'd *the Temple of the Resurrection*, and of the *Holy Sepulchre*; a stately Round, cloister'd below and above, and much of the lower Cloyster is divided into sundry Chappels, belonging to several Nations and Sects, where they Exercise the Rites of their several Religions. This Round is cover'd with a Cupolo, sustain'd with Rafters of Cedar, being open in the middle like the *Pantheon* at *Rome*, whereat it receives the light. And just in the midst, and in the view of Heaven, stands the glorified Sepulchre, 108 foot distant from *Mount Calvary*, being a Natural Rock hewn in the form of a Chappel. The stone which the Angel roll'd from the mouth of the Sepulchre, is said to be remov'd by *Helena* to the Church of *St. Saviour*, standing where the Palace of *Caiaphas* was. On the North-side there is a Tomb of Marble, which takes up one half of the room, made in the form of an Altar, and will not hold above three at one time. 'Tis said, that long after our Saviour's Resurrection, this Tomb remain'd in the same form as when our Saviour lay there, but because the Pilgrims were continually carrying away little pieces of it, it was first enclos'd within an Iron-grate, and afterwards by *Helena* within this Marble Altar, which now belongeth to the *Latines*, whereon they only say Mass, tho' 'tis free for other Christians to Exercise their private Devotions at it: And there thousands of Christians perform their Vows, and offer their tears Yearly, with all the expressions of Sorrow and Affection. On the North-side, without the Limits of the Temple, is the Chappel of the Apparition, so call'd, because Christ there

there shew'd himself to his sorrowful Mother and comforted her. This serves the *Latines* for a Vestry, from whence they begin their solemn Procession. On the East-side of it there are 3 Altars, that in the middle is dedicated to God and our Lady, that on the Right-hand is call'd the Altar of the *Holy Cross*, where a great part of it was kept until the *Armenians* carried it away to *Sebastia*. That on the Left-hand is call'd the Altar of *Scourging*, behind which there is a piece of that Pillar, as they say, whereunto our Saviour was bound when they scourg'd him; it is 3 foot high, of a black vein'd Marble, spotted with red, which they affirm to be the marks of his Blood. 'Tis so encompass'd with a grate of Iron, that it cannot be touch'd but with a Stick, that is cover'd at the end with leather like a Foil, by which they convey their Kisses, and bless their Lips with the touch of that which has touched the Relique. Through the aforesaid Vestry, a passage leads to certain Rooms heretofore a part of the College of the *Knight-Templars*, where divers of their Statues are to be seen, and the posture us'd in their Burials, after the same manner as in the *Temple-Church* at *London*. We saw also the Chappel of the Angels, the Grot hewn out of a Rock, where they say the *Jews* imprison'd our Saviour, while they prepar'd things necessary for his Crucifixion; the place where the Title was preserv'd which hung over our Saviour's Head, and is now shown at *Rome* in the Church of the *Holy Cross* of *Jerusalem*; and the place where they say the Soldiers cast Lots for his Garments. 'Tis commonly reported, that the *Jews* threw our Saviour's Cross into the Valley of *Carcases*, and cover'd it with the filth of the City; but after 300 Years, the Empress *Helena* coming to visit those places which Christ had sanctified with his Corporal presence, threaten'd torture and death to the principal *Jews*, if they would not discover where their Ancestors had hid it; whereupon, an old *Jew* called *Judas*, show'd them the place, where they found 3 Crosses, and hard by the Superscription. And 'tis said, the Earth trembled, and breath'd from her crannies aromatick Odours. But when they were not able to distinguish the Cross of Christ from the other two, they say that *Macarius*, then Bishop of *Jerusalem*, going with the Empress to a Noble-woman sick of an incurable disease, by healing her with the touch of the Cross discover'd that it was Christ's. Whereupon the *Jew* became a Christian, was made Bishop of *Jerusalem*, and suffer'd Martyrdom in the Reign of *Julian*; and the 3d of *May* is still celebrated in Memory of the Invention. We saw also the Chappel of *Derision*, where under the Altar they say is a part of that Pillar to which Christ was bound, when *Pilate's* Servants cloath'd him in a purple Robe, crown'd him with Thorns, and put a Reed in his Hand instead of a Scepter, crying, *Hail, King of the Jews*. The Quire, which is like that in our Cathedral Churches, and is call'd the *Temple of Golgotha*, hath a little Pit in the Pavement, which they say is the Navel of the World, applying to that purpose the words of Scripture, *God wrought his Salvation in the midst of the Earth*; and this they fill with Holy Water.

On *Good-Friday* they carried the Image of Christ on a Sheet, supported by the 4 corners, in Procession, with Banners of the Passion: First, To the place where he was imprison'd, then in Order to the other; and laying it where they say he was fix'd on the Cross, the Friar-preacher made over it a short and passionate Oration, which drew tears from himself and the Hearers. At length they brought it to the place where they say it was Embalm'd, where the Father-guardian anointed the Image with sweet Oils, and strew'd it with aromatick Powders, and from thence convey'd it to the Sepulchre. At Night the Lights being put out, and the Company remov'd, they whipt themselves in their Chappel of *Mount Calvary*. On *Sunday* they carried the Cross in Procession to the said Chappel, creeping to it, kissing and lying groveling over it. On *Easter-day* they said solemn Service before the Door of the Sepulchre, and concluded with a triumphant Procession, bearing about the Banners of the Resurrection. The other Christians (except such as inhabit within, of each sort a few) enter'd not until *Good-Friday*, being *Grecians*, *Armenians*, *Coptites*, *Abyssins*, *Jacobites*, *Georgians*, *Maronites* and *Nestorians*. And on *Easter-day*, about One a Clock in the Morning, all these Nations and Sects, with joyful Clamours, according to their several Customs, encompass'd the Church, and visited the Holy places in a solemn Procession.

Upon *Easter-Monday* we hir'd certain Asses to ride to *Emaus*, and about Midway we saw a Monastery built by *Helena*, where they say Christ appear'd to the 2 Disciples. *Emaus* stands 7 miles Westward from *Jerusalem*, and there Christ was known by the breaking of Bread in the House of *Cleophas*, in which place a Temple was built by *Paula* a *Roman* Lady, whose Ruins are yet extant. This City was burnt in the *Jewish* Wars, but upon the destruction of *Jerusalem* rebuilt by the *Romans*, who call'd it *Nicopolis*. In our return we saw a Valley, which they say was the Field of that Battel, when the Sun and Moon stood still at the command of *Joshua*, and the place where the Prophet *Samuel* is said to be buried. On the North-west side of the City, we saw sundry places of Burial hewn out of the main Rock, and among the rest one call'd the *Sepulchre of the Prophets*, and another which is said to be the Monument of certain Kings of *Judah*; and hence we return'd to the Convent.

The next day we rid towards *Bethlehem*, which stands about 6 Miles South from *Jerusalem*; and going out by the Gate of *Joppa*, turning on the Left-hand by the foot of *Mount Sion*, we saw on the top of it the Tower of *David*, which had been a place of great strength and beauty; and on the Right-hand we saw the Fountain wherein they say *Bathsheba* bath'd her self. About two Miles from the City there grows a Turpentine-tree, which is generally believ'd to have given shelter to the Virgin *Mary*, and is a place of great Devotion; and a Mile beyond that a Cistern, call'd the *Cistern of the Star*, because there the Star appear'd again which led the Wise Men to the place of our Saviour's Birth; and near to that, we saw the place where they say the Angel took up *Habakkuk* by the hair of the Head, and convey'd him to *Babylon*; and half a Mile further, a Religious House dedicated to *Elias*, hard by the Rock on which they say he us'd to sleep. A little beyond are the Ruins of a Church, built they say where *Jacob* dwelt, and the Sepulchre of *Rachel*, which is kept entire, being encompass'd with a Wall. Below it, on the side of a Mountain, we saw the Ruins of that *Rama*, of which the Prophet says, *A voice was heard in Rama*, &c. Within half a Mile of *Bethlehem* are the Cisterns of *David*, whereof he desir'd so much to drink, and when the Water was brought to him he refus'd it.

At last we came to *Bethlehem*, first call'd *Ephrat*, a City of *David*, long possess'd by his Ancestors, seated on a Hill in a happy Soil, and having a pleasant prospect. And here we saw the Grot at the East-side of the City, which was employ'd for a Stable, where the Virgin *Mary* fell in travel, and brought forth the Saviour of the World: In which Cave *Helena* erected a goodly Temple, and call'd it *St. Maries* of *Bethlehem*, which is built in the form of a Cross; but now it is left for the most part desolate, the Altar naked, and no Service is said in it except at extraordinary times, being inhabited only by a few poor *Greeks* and *Armenians*. Adjoyning to this Church there is a Monastery of the *Franciscans*, and a Chappel dedicated to St. *Katherine*; from which we descended with Lights in our Hands into a little square Cave, where we saw the Vault in which the Infants slain by the Edict of *Herod* are said to be buried; and in another Grot the Monument of *Paula*, who built hard by this Church four Monasteries, and an Hospital for Pilgrims, and the Tomb of St. *Jerom*, who liv'd in her Time; and in another Grot his Cell, wherein he lay 50 Years, and there twice translated the Bible. After this, we return'd into the Chappel of *Innocents*, and by another Entry pass'd into a Vault, where we found an Altar garnish'd with a Table of the Nativity, a Manger hewn out in a Concave, wherein they say our Saviour was laid by the Virgin; and a Bench in a Rock like an Altar, wherein they say the Eastern *Magi* dispos'd of their Presents. All which places are in the possession of the *Franciscans*, and no less reverenc'd than *Calvary* or the Sepulchre. In the place where this City stood, there are now but a few poor Cottages standing, and the few Inhabitants being *Greeks* and *Armenians*, get a beggarly Living by selling unto Strangers the Models of the Sepulchre, and of the Grot of the Nativity, cut in Wood, or cast in Stone.

After Dinner we descended into the Valley which lieth East of the City, where *Jacob* fed his Flock, and is call'd his Field; but more famous for the Apparition of Angels, who there brought to the Shepherds the glad tydings of the Birth of a Saviour: upon which account, *Helena* built a Church in the midst of it, which she dedicated to the Angels, but is now ruin'd. Near to this is the Village where the Shepherds dwelt, where is the Well that the Virgin *Mary* desir'd to drink of, which being refus'd by the Villagers, they say the Well overflow'd to satisfy her desire. Nearer to *Bethlehem* are the Ruins of a Chappel, where *Joseph* had his Dwelling when the Angel commanded him to fly into *Egypt*, and the Cave wherein he hid our Saviour and his Mother, whilst he prepar'd things necessary for the Journey. The

The next day we directed our Course to the Mountains of *Judæa*, and having pass'd by a Village call'd *Bezec*, about two Miles further, we came to *Bethsur*, where we saw the Ruins of a great Church, and below that a Fountain, where they say *Philip* baptiz'd the Eunuch, which is therefore call'd the *Æthiopian* Fountain. About a Mile and a half further, we came to the Cave where *John the Baptist* is said to have liv'd from 7 Years of Age until he went into the Wilderness by *Jordan*. After this we turn'd towards *Jerusalem*, leaving the way of *Bethlehem* on the Right-hand, and that of *Emaus* on the Left; and the first place of note we met with, was that where once stood the Dwelling of *Zachary*, seated on the side of a fruitful Hill, well-stor'd with Olives and Vineyards. Hither came the Blessed Virgin to visit her Cousin *Elizabeth*, who died here, and was buried in a Grot, over which a good Church and Monastery were erected, which are now ruin'd. Near this stands a Temple built by *Helena*, and dedicated to *John the Baptist*, in the place where *Zachary* had another House, and the Prophet was born to him, which is a place of great Devotion.

The day following we went to review the remarkable places about the City, and there we were shew'd a small Chappel, having the Door and Windows ramm'd up, because, as they say, the *Mahumetans* became mortally sick who by chance came into it, standing where stood the Temple of St. *Thomas*. From hence we came to the Palace of *Annas*, destroy'd at the time of the Siege, where now standeth a Church dedicated to the blessed Angels; and hard by there is an old Olive-tree, encompass'd with a Wall, unto which 'tis said they bound our Saviour. After this we went out of the Port of *Sion*, and not far from thence, in the midst of the Mount, is the place, as they say, where Christ did eat his last Supper; where also, after his Resurrection, the Doors being shut, he appear'd to his Apostles, where they received the Holy Ghost, where *Peter* converted 3000, and where they also held the first Council. Here *Helena* built a most sumptuous Temple, including therein the *Cœnaculum*, where that Marble Pillar was preserv'd that stood before in the Palace of *Pilate*, to which they tied our Saviour when they whipp'd him. This Church was destroy'd by the *Saracens*, and now the *Turks* have a Mosque here, upon the account of a Tradition that this was the place of *David*'s Sepulchre. Between this and the Walls of the City, the *Franks* have their Burial-place, and hard by is the place where stood the proud Palace of *Caiaphas*, in which our Saviour was buffetted, spit upon, and spightfully revil'd; where *Helena* built a fair Church to St. *Peter*, but that being destroy'd, there is now a little one in the room of it, dedicated to *St. Saviour*. Not far from hence, they shew'd us the place where the Fire was made by which St. *Peter* stood when he denied his Master, and the Chapiter of the Pillar, whereon the Cock crowing, did move him to Contrition. At the upper-end of the Church, upon a large Altar, lieth the Stone which, as they say, was roll'd against the mouth of the Sepulchre. From hence we descended into the Valley of *Gehinnom*, which divideth *Mount Sion* from the *Mount of Offence*, where *Solomon*, by the perswasion of his Wives, sacrific'd to *Moloch*, which is now call'd by Christians the *Mountain of ill Counsel*, where, they say, the *Pharisees* took Counsel against Jesus. On the South-side of this Valley, near where it meeteth the Valley of *Jehosaphat*, on the side of the Mountain is *Aceldama*, or the *Field of Blood*, purchas'd, with the reward of Treason, to be a Burial-place for strangers, which is now the Sepulchre of the *Armenians*. A greedy Grave, for they say the Earth thereof, within the space of 48 hours, will consume the flesh laid in it, which is probable enough from the small compass of ground, and the great multitudes that are buried in it. Beyond this, on the point of the Hill, is a Cave hewn out of the Rock, consisting of several Rooms, where 6 of the Apostles are said to have hid themselves at the time of Christ's Passion. The Valley of *Jehosaphat* is about two Miles long, water'd by the torrent *Cedron*, which loseth its streams in the Lake *Alphaltis*: And here the *Jews*, *Latines* and *Mahometans*, do all agree that the General Judgment shall be kept. On that side of the Valley which is next the City, is the place where the Prophet *Esay* was sawn asunder and buried; and close below this stood the *Oak Rogel*, where now a white Mulberry grows. North of this, in a gut of a Hill, above which stood the Tower, was the Fish-pool of *Siloe*, now dry in the bottom. On the other side is the Sepulchre of *Zachary*, who was slain between the Temple and the Altar, all of the natural Rock, 18 foot high, 4 square, and beautified with dorick Columns of the same Stone. Near to this is another Rock, within which is a Grot, whither *James* retir'd, they say, after the Passion of our Saviour, having resolv'd never to eat until he saw him, who there appear'd to him after his Resurrection. A little farther, there is a Stone-Bridge over the torrent *Cedron*, and at the East-end of it stands the Pillar of *Absalom*, against which there lies a great heap of Stones, which encreases daily, for both *Jews* and *Mahometans* throw stones against it, still cursing *Absalom* for his Rebellion against *David*. A little more North once stood the Village *Gethsemane*, a place now fruitful in Olives, and hard by is the pleasant Garden wherein our Saviour was betray'd. They point at the place where he left his two Disciples; and a little higher the third, when he went to pray, and also the place where he was taken. In this Garden is the stone, whereon they say our Lady sat and beheld the Martyrdom of St. *Stephen*, who suffer'd on the side of the opposite Hill.

To come at the Sepulchre of the Blessed Virgin we must descend 50 steps, and passing by about the middle, the Sepulchres of *Joacim* and *Anna* on the one side, and of *Joseph* on the other, we enter into a spacious Church, in the midst whereof is a little square Chappel hewn out of the Rock, and at the far side of it stands her Tomb, now in the form of an Altar, under which they say she was decently buried by the Apostles. In this Chappel 18 Lamps burn continually, which are maintain'd partly by *Christians*, partly by *Mahumetans*; and against the North-end of the Sepulchre there is a Clift in the Rock, where the *Turks* say the Virgin did hide her self when she was persecuted by the *Jews*, into which I have seen their Women creep, and give the cold Rock warm kisses. Having remounted the same Stairs, not far from the Garden of *Gethsemane*, we descended into a vast round Cave, all of the natural Rock, the place they say where Christ did pray, when in his bloody Agony he was comforted by the Angels. From hence we went into the City, at the Gate of St. *Stephen*, by which the Cattle came in that were to be sacrific'd; and on the Left-hand there is a Stone-Bridge, which goes into the Court of *Solomon*'s Temple, and is the Head to the Pool *Bethesda*, where the Sacrifices us'd to be wash'd, which had 5 Ports in which diseased Persons lay, for he that went in next after the Angel had troubled the Water was cur'd.

The Temple of *Solomon* being finally destroy'd by *Titus*, the Court of it is still to be seen, and in the East Wall of it stands the golden Gate through which our Saviour pass'd in Triumph; and in the midst of this Court there is another, in which stands a Mosque finely adorned: and in the South-east corner there is a handsome Temple, call'd by the Christians the Church of the *Purification of the Virgin*, which is now also a Mosque.

Having repass'd the foresaid Bridge, on the North-side of the Street, we saw the Remains of a goodly Church and Monastery built to the Honour of St. *Anne*, and going onward we found the Palace of *Pilate*, which doubtless had been the Castle of *Antonia*, and is now the Residence of the Sanziack; and at the far end of the Street, we saw the Ruins of the stately Mansion of *Herod*. At the West corner of *Pilate*'s Palace, there are a pair of high Stairs, which lead to the place of Justice, and the Throne of the *Roman* President, where the Saviour of the World was condemn'd by the World. These Stairs are call'd *Scala Santta*, which I have seen at *Rome* in the *Lateran*, being translated thither by *Constantine*. Three pair there are in one front, divided by Walls, whereof the middlemost are of white Marble, 18 in number, worn by the knees of those who ascend them, and descend by the other. At the top there is a little Chappel call'd *Sanctum Sanctorum*, in which Mass is never said, because they say a Father saw in it a Procession of Angels, some Singing, and others bearing Torches. The way between the place of these Stairs and Mount *Calvary* is call'd the *dolorous Way*, through which our Saviour was led to his Passion; and in it they shew three places in which our Saviour fell under his Cross. A little beyond there is an arched Window, where *Pilate* presented Christ to the People. A hundred paces further there are the Relicks of a Church, where they say the Blessed Virgin stood when her Son pass'd by, and fell into a trance at the doleful sight. Sixty paces further they say they met with *Simon* of *Cyrene*, and compell'd him to bear our Saviour's Cross. Then on the Left-hand they shew'd us where the Women wept, and Christ reply'd, *Weep not for me ye Daughters of* Jerusalem, *&c.* But turning to the Right-hand, they shew'd us the place where *Veronica* dwelt, who gave our Saviour, as they say, a Napkin as he pass'd by the Door, to wipe off the Blood that had trickled from his Brows pierc'd with Thorns, and the Spittle wherewith they insulted and defil'd him, who return'd it enrich'd with his lively Picture,

Picture, which is now to be seen at *Rome* in St. *Peter's* Church. Fronting the end of this Street is the old Gate, where the Elders sate in Judgment, through which the Condemn'd were led to Execution in *Mount Calvary*, which was then 220 paces without, but is now in the heart of the City. Turning to the South, we were shew'd where once stood the Dwelling of *Zebedeus*, in which *James* and *John* were born; and a little higher the Iron-gate, which gave way to St. *Peter* when he was conducted by the Angel. From thence we went to the House of St. *Mark*, and the Church of St. *James*, standing where he was beheaded; and then we return'd to the Convent.

The next day we went out again at the Gate of *Sion*, and turning on the Left-hand, we were shew'd the place where *Peter* wept when he had deny'd our Saviour. Not far beyond we cross'd the Valley of *Jehosaphat*, and ascended the South-end of *Mount Olivet*, by the way of *Bethany*, to a good height; and on the Right-hand they shew'd us where *Judas* hang'd himself on a Sycamore-Tree, being buried in a Grot adjoyning; and nearer the top, where Christ curs'd the Fig-Tree, there being now many growing in the place. Descending the East-side of the Mount, on the Left-hand we saw the House of *Simon* the Leper, and then the Ruins of the Castle of *Lazarus*, Brother to *Mary* and *Martha*, under which lies *Bethany*, now a small Village inhabited by the *Arabians*. In it is the Vault where Christ rais'd *Lazarus* from the Dead; and above it are two little Chappels, where stood a stately Church built by *Helena*. North of *Bethany*, we saw the Ruins of a Monastery, in the place whither the Penitent *Mary* retir'd from the Vanities of the World. Southward stood the House of *Martha*, and in the Mid-way between there is a Stone, whereon they say Christ sate when the two Sisters entreated him to raise their Brother from the Dead. A little above there is a Fountain of excellent Water in a Rock, call'd the *Fountain of the Apostles*. Now we ascended *Mount Olivet* towards the North; and upon the Right-hand, not far from the top, stood *Bethphage*, from whence Christ went unto *Jerusalem* in Triumph upon an Asses Colt, which is Superstitiously imitated every *Palm-Sunday* by the Father-guardian.

Here I look back and survey the high Mountain *Quarantania*, and the low Plains of *Jericho*, *Jordan*, and the *Dead Sea*, of which I have spoken already, and shall now only add, that *Jordan* runs almost 30 Miles from *Jerusalem*, and in it the Pilgrims wash themselves, and carry away of its Water, which they say is a sovereign Remedy against many diseases. A great way on this side the River is a crooked Channel, where they say Christ was baptiz'd by *John*. On the Right-hand stood *Jericho*, formerly an Episcopal See, beautiful in her Palms, and proud of her *Balsamum*, from which that precious Gum is distill'd, which is now brought from *India*; but now there are only a few poor Cottages standing, and there grows nothing in the Valley, which is about 10 Miles over, but spiny Grass. It is bounded with high Mountains, among which *Quarantania* is the most eminent, being in that Wilderness where Christ for 40 days was tempted of the Devil, and from whence the Tempter shewed him all the Kingdoms of the Earth; and it is crown'd now with a Chappel.

After this we return'd to the top of *Mount Olivet*, higher than all the neighbouring Mountains, whose West-side gives a full view of the City, a place famous in Sacred History, as being often bless'd with the Presence of Christ, and Apparition of Angels. It extends from North to South, and has three Heads: On that in the middle there stands a little Chappel, all of white Marble, pav'd within with the natural Rock, which bears the impression of our Saviour's foot-step, the last that he set on Earth, when from thence he ascended into Heaven; a place highly honour'd by Christians, but possess'd by *Mahumetans*, yet free to both their Devotions. It was built by the Mother of *Constantine*, cover'd with a sumptuous Temple and a Monastery; and on the South-side they shew'd us the Cell of *Pelagia*, a rich Courtezan, who being converted, liv'd long here as a Hermit, and was never discover'd to be a Woman till she was dead. As we descended, we were shew'd by the way where our Saviour taught the *Pater-Noster*, foretold the Destruction of *Jerusalem*, and wept over the City. After this crossing the Valley, we return'd to the City and the Monastery.

The next day we set forth for *Tripoly*, and near the City on the Right-hand we saw *Shilo*, the Station for the Ark of the Covenant, which is the highest Mountain of *Jewry*, and has on the top some fragments of a City. After 4 Miles riding we descended into the Valley of *Teberinth*, famous for the slaughter of *Goliah*. About 4 Miles further they shew'd us *Modin*, the ancient Seat of the *Maccabees*, seated on a Hill where are the Ruins of a City, and some Miles further a ruinous place call'd the *House of the Good Thief*; from whence we came to *Rama* that Night, and lodg'd in *Sion-House*, on the ground.

The next day we departed from *Rama*, and travelling through a fruitful Valley, the first place we past by was *Lydda*, call'd afterward *Diospolis*, where yet stands a Christian Temple, built, as they say, by a King of *England*, to the Honour of St. *George*, who, after he became a Soldier of Christ, suffer'd Martyrdom; and here the *Greeks* show what they call his Skull. The next place we came to is the Castle of *Augia*, built like a Cane, and kept by a small Garrison, being about 8 Miles from *Rama*; and hence we travell'd with much hardship to *Mount Carmeli*, famous for the Habitation of *Elias*, whose House was after his Death converted into a Synagogue, where Oracles, 'tis said, were given by God. Of whom *Suetonius* says, That *Vespasian consulting of the God* Carmelius, *was assur'd by him that he should be successful in all his Undertakings*. From hence proceeded the Order of the *Carmelites*, as Successors to the Sons of the Prophets left there by *Elias*; and there is yet to be seen the Remains of a Monastery, with a Temple, dedicated to the Blessed Virgin, under which is a little Chappel or Cave, the ancient Dwelling of *Elias*. This is inherited by *Achmet*, an *Emer* of the *Arabians*, within whose Precinct stands the Castle of the *Peregrines*, upon a Cape almost encompass'd with the Sea, now call'd *Tortora*, built by *Raymond*, and after fortified by the Templars. Ten Miles South of this stood that famous *Cæsarea*, which was magnificently adorn'd by *Herod*, but is now quite ruin'd and abandon'd. We cross'd the Torrent *Hison*, which floweth from the Mountains of *Tabor* and *Hermon*, and gliding along the Skirts of *Carmel*, dischargeth it self into the Sea. *Carmel* is the South-bound to the large Valley of *Acre*, which on the North is bounded by *Sharon*, on the West by the Sea, and on the East with the Mountains of *Galilee*. When we enter'd the Town, which is mid-way between *Tripoly* and *Jerusalem*, we stay'd there with some *Englishmen* that were come from *London*.

This City was first call'd *Ace*, and then *Ptolemais* and *Acon*, and now *Acre*; it had many strong Castles, which are ruin'd, and has now a Haven for Ships on the South-side. After it was taken by *Saladine*, it was deliver'd by our *Richard* the First, who appears by the Ruins to be the Founder of some places there. About 100 Years after, it belong'd to the Knights Hospitallers of St. *John's*, and was call'd *St. John de Acre*, but is now under the Sanziack of *Saphet*, and has not above 2 or 300 Inhabitants. The *Franks* for the most part bring hither Ready Monies, and chiefly *Dutch* Dollars, which are here in *Jewry* equivalent to Rials of Eight, (tho' elsewhere less by 10 Aspers) and they fraught their Ships with Cottons, that grow abundantly in the Country adjoyning. The *English* are much respected by the principal *Moors*, as being the greatest Traders here. The Inhabitants do every night House their Goats and Sheep for fear of the Jaccals, which lurk in the Vault and Reedy Marshes, adjoyning to a Brook that abounds with Tortoises.

We waited 4 days at *Acre*, hoping, but in vain, to have gone with the Merchants to *Nazareth*, distant from hence about 15 Miles, now a small Village of *Galilee*, seated in a Vale between two Hills, where are the Remains of a goodly Temple erected over the House of the Blessed Virgin, whereof there is yet one Room to be seen, partly hewn out of the living Rock, which is much honoured by Christians; tho' the Papists relate, that the Room wherein she was born was carried by the Angels into *Italy*, and after several removes, at last settled at *Loretto*. No Christian is suffer'd to dwell at *Nazareth* by the *Moors* who inhabit it; most of the old City seems to have stood on the adjoyning Hill, which has the Ruins of divers Churches.

On the 8th of *April* we hois'd Sails for *Sidon*, and met with a mighty Storm, wherein the spouts of Water were seen to fall against the Promontory of *Carmel*, but came to *Sidon* about 4 a Clock, and could not reach the Harbour of the Rock, the safe place for Ships of burthen.

Phœnicia is a Province of *Syria*, between the Sea and *Galilee*, stretching North and South from the River *Valanus* to the Castle of the *Peregrines*, which is on the far side of Mount *Carmel*, so call'd from *Phœnix* Brother to *Cadmus*, and the 5th from *Jupiter*. It has on the Sea-coast these Cities, *Tripoly*, *Biblis*, *Berytus*, *Sidon*, *Tyrus* and *Acre*; whereof the most ancient is *Sidon*, of a pleasant and healthful situation, on the one side wall'd with the Sea,

Sea, on the other side with the fruitful Mountains that lie before *Libanus*, from which fall many Springs that overflow their Orchards, abounding with excellent Fruits. It was formerly an Episcopal See, but is now contracted into narrow Bounds, and has nothing of Antiquity but the suppos'd Sepulchre of *Zebulon*. The Inhabitants are of several Nations and Religions, govern'd by Princes, whom they call'd *Emers*, descended, they say, from the *Druses*, being the remainder of the *French* brought hither by *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, who being driven to the Mountains, could never be utterly destroy'd by the *Saracens*, and now are neither wholly Christians nor *Mahumetans*. This *Emer* coins new *Dutch* Dollars, has the 5th part of the encrease of all things, and has Head-money for *Christians*, *Jews*, and all Cattel in his Dominions. He treats *English* Merchants civilly, and they may travel without danger, paying 3 in the 100 for Custom: But if a Factor happens to die, he seizes on the Goods belonging to his Principals, and seems to do them a favour in admitting of a Redemption under value. The Merchandize of this place are Cottons, Silks, which are made in the Mulberry-Groves: Other Commodities, which are many, they fetch from *Damascus*, 2 days Journey from hence, over the tops of Mountains exceeding cold, the heat being then very great in the Valleys. Our Ship returning to *Alexandria*, we return'd to *Acre* by Land, and after 5 Miles riding, we met with a small Mosque, built, they say, over the Widows House that entertain'd *Elias*; close by it are the Foundations of *Sarepta*, and over against it is a new Town call'd *Sarapanta*; beyond which are many Caves cut out of a Rock, call'd, in the Book of *Joshua*, *Meara*, *i.e.* the Caves of the *Sidonians*.

Tyre was the Metropolis of *Phœnicia*, famous for Merchandize, and could boast of her Purple, which is a Shell-fish, that in the midst of his Jaws has a vein, that contains that precious Liquor. The *Boat* is a gaping Oyster, kept for that purpose long out of Water, into which the Purple puts his Tongue, and so by the sudden closing of the Oyster, is retain'd and drawn out. But now the *Purple* is no more to be had, either because that kind of Fish is extinct, or because the places they frequented, are now possess'd by the barbarous *Mahumetans*. When the Christian Religion grew powerful in these Parts, *Tyre* was the Seat of an Archbishop, having 14 Bishopricks under her Primacy; but now it is no more than a heap of Ruins, which may instruct the Beholder in its former Grandeur. The next Morning we ascended the high and wooddy Mountains of *Sharon*, which extend unto the Sea of *Galilee*, which are frequented only with Leopards, Bears, and such like Savage Inhabitants, and ere night we re-entred *Acre*.

An Abstract of the Reverend Mr. Maundrel's *Journey from* Aleppo *to* Jerusalem, *being a Supplement to Mr.* Sandys.

ON *February* 26. 1696. I set out with 14 *English* Gentlemen from *Aleppo*, designing to visit the *Holy-Land* at the next *Easter*, and the first night we took up our Quarters at the *Honey-Kane*, about an hour and a half West of *Aleppo*.

And here 'tis to be noted, that in travelling this Country, a Man does not meet every night with Inns as in *England*, but you must either lodge under your own Tent, or else in Publick-Houses, founded for the use of Travellers, call'd by the Turks *Kanes*, to which all Comers are welcome, paying a small Fee to the *Kane*-Keeper, if they be able. And here you must expect nothing generally but bare Walls, but all other Necessaries must be furnish'd by every one that travels.

On *February* 27. we parted from the *Honey-Kane*, and passing by *Oorem* and *Keffre*, we enter'd into the Plains of *Kefteen* of a vast compass, and in most places very fruitful. At our first descent into them at *Essoyn*, we counted 24 Villages; and *Kefteen* it self is a large Village on the West-side of the Plain, encompass'd with so many Fields of Corn, that the Inhabitants breed very many Pigeons. At this place we saw over the Door of a Bagnio a Marble-stone carv'd with the Sign of the Cross, and the *Gloria Patri*, &c. which was probably the Portal of some Church formerly.

Feb. 28. we left *Kefteen*, and continuing in the same Plain, abounding with Corn, Olives and Vines, we came to *Harbonose*, and from thence to a very rich Valley call'd *Rooge*, which is wall'd on both sides with high Mountains; and having travell'd in this Valley four hours, we pass'd through the Skirt of *Rooge*, and from thence we came to *Te-me-ree*, where we paid our first Caphar.

These Caphars are certain Duties paid by Travellers, to Officers that attend in their Stations to receive them. They were at first levy'd by Christians for repairing the Ways, and scouring them from Robbers; but under that pretence, the *Turks* now exact unreasonable Sums, tho' themselves are often the greatest Robbers.

After this Caphar, we cross'd over the Mountains on the West-side of the Valley of *Rooge*, and descending into a Valley we past *Bell-maer*, and came to *Shoggle*, which is a large but filthy Town, situate on the River *Orontes*, over which you pass to it by a Bridge of 13 small Arches. The River hereabouts is pretty deep, and yet so rapid, that it turns great Wheels, made for lifting up the Water, by its natural swiftness, without any force added to it, meerly by confining its stream. We lodg'd here in a large and handsome *Kane*, founded by the second *Caperli*, and so well endow'd, that it supplies every Traveller with a competent portion of Bread, Broth and Flesh. It was crouded with Turkish *Hadgees* or Pilgrims, bound for *Mecca*, but we found a peaceable reception among them.

March 1. we parted from *Shoggle*, and cross'd a Mountain on the West-side of the Valley, from which we descended into a third Valley like the two former; and having pass'd the Village *Bedame*, we entred into a wooddy Country, where our Road was very rocky and uneven, but yet pleasant, because it treated us with the prospect of Plants and Flowers of divers kinds, as Myrtles, Oleanders, Tulips, and other aromatick Herbs. After this we descended into a low Valley, at the bottom of which there is a Fissure, so narrow, that you cannot discern it till you come upon it, tho' you may hear the noise of the stream running into it at a great distance. They call it the *Sheeks Wife*, from a Woman of that quality that fell into it. From hence we came in one hour to a place call'd the *Sultan's Stone*, where we pitch'd our Tents and lodg'd for that night.

March 2. we left our Campagnia Lodging very early, the Weather being yet moist and cold, and came in an hour to the Caphar of *Crusia*, and from thence in another to the foot of a Mountain, call'd *Occaby*, which we ascended with great difficulty, and then we found a fine Country planted with Silk-Gardens, through which we came to *Belulca*, and there repair'd to a place which is both the *Kane* of the Village, and the *Aga*'s House, but tho' we gave him a small Present, we could hardly obtain a dry part of the House to lodge in. In the mean time, being inform'd that there were several Christians Inhabitants in this place, we went to visit their Church, which was only a Room about 4 or 5 Yards square, wall'd with Dirt, and cover'd with Bushes, in which was an Altar of the same materials with the Walls, pav'd at top with Potsherds and Slates; and in the middle of the Altar stood a Cross made of two Laths nail'd together, on each side of which there are 2 or 3 old Pictures of our Blessed Lord and the Virgin, &c. a very mean Habitation for the God of Heaven, but yet held in great esteem by the poor People, who come hither with great Devotion, and hang the Room with Bags of Silk-worms Eggs, that by the Holiness of the place they may bring a Blessing upon them, and encrease their Virtue.

March 3. we left *Belulca* and arriv'd at *Sholfatia*, a poor Village, situate upon a small River, now swoln so high with the late Rains that it was not Fordable; which put us to a Nonplus, not knowing what to do till the Rain abated, and then we pitch'd in the open Field,

Field, tho' thorowly soak'd with wet: But after the Rain had ceas'd a little while, it began to pour down afresh with Lightning and Thunder, and then we sent a *Turk* to a *Sheck*'s House hard by, to try if by any means we cou'd get admittance there; and at last, with good words, having declar'd that we had no intention to defile their Faith, we were permitted to secure our Baggage in the House, whilst we shelter'd our selves among the Tombs from the Rain, which pour'd down all night.

A *Sheck*'s House is a Stone Fabrick, of 6 or 8 Yards square, roof'd with a Cupola, erected over the Grave of some eminent *Sheck*, *i. e.* one who by his long Beard and Prayers, and *Pharasaical* Pride, (the great Vertues of the *Mahometan* Religion) have purchas'd the Reputation of a Saint; of which sort there are many in this Country, to which the People repair with their Vows and Prayers, which they offer in these Shrines, not to the Saints, as the Papists do, but to God only, whom alone they adore.

March 4. This Morning we found the River fordable, and got to the other side of it with our Baggage, from whence ascending a very steep Hill, at the top of it we were presented with the first prospect of the Ocean; and to the Westward, we had a view of the City *Laticheа*, built by *Seleucus Nicanor*, and by him call'd *Laodicea*, which Name it still retains with a little corruption. After it was reduc'd to a low condition, it now begins to flourish again, being put in a way of Trade by *Coplan* Aga, a Man of great Wealth and Authority in these Parts. From the Hill last mention'd, we descended into a spacious Plain, having the Sea on the Right-hand, and Mountains on the Left. In which Plain we discern'd 2 ancient Tombs, which were Chests of stone, 2 Yards and a half long each, cover'd over with large Tables of stone, carv'd on the outside with Ox-heads, and Wreaths hanging between them, after the manner of adorning Heathen Altars. Above an hour from these Tombs we were stopt by another stream, but here we found a safe passage to the other side, and then we were forc'd by the Rain to make the best of our way to *Jebilee*. After this manner our Bode continu'd for several days, between the Sea on the Right, and the Mountains on the Left-hand; but the Mountains go under different Names, and are inhabited by several rude People. In that part of them above *Jebilee*, there dwell a People call'd by the Turks *Neceres*, of a very singular Character, for 'tis their Principle to adhere to no certain Religion, but to put on the colour of that Religion which is profess'd by those with whom they converse: And so with *Christians* they profess themselves *Christians*, with *Mahometans* they are good *Mussulmans*, and with *Jews* they pass for *Jews*. All that is certain concerning them is, that they make very much and good Wine, and are great Drinkers, but in Religion they are very *Proteus*'s.

March 5. This whole day we spent in *Jebilee*, having a convenient new Kane to lodge in, built by *Ostan* the present Bashaw of *Tripoly*. *Jebilee* is seated close by the Sea, having a vast and fruitful Plain on the other sides of it; its ancient Name was *Gabala*, and so 'tis call'd by *Strabo*. In the time of the *Greek* Emperors it was a Bishop's See, and is still accounted a City, tho' it makes a very mean figure at present. The most remarkable things in it are a Mosque and an Alms-house, built by Sultan *Ibrahim*; in the former is his Tomb, which we found to be a great woodden Chest erected over his Grave, and cover'd with a Carpet of painted Callico, trick'd up with a great many Ropes of woodden Beads, which is the *Turks* usual way of adorning the Tombs of their holy Men. In this Mosque we saw several Incense-Pots, Candlesticks, and other Furniture, being the Spoils of Christian Churches. The *Turks* reported that he divested himself of his Royalty, and liv'd 20 Years in a Grotto by the Sea-side; and to confirm the truth of their Relation, they show the Cell where he abode, and another Grot twice as large, which had three Niches or Praying-places hewn in its South-side, as they always are, for that way the *Mussulmen* are oblig'd to set their faces, in reverence to the Tomb of their Prophet. From this Mosque our Guide carried us to a Christian Church, which we found to be nothing but a small Grotto in a Rock open towards the Sea, having a rude Pile of Stones for an Altar, which poor Chappel is the only place, as the Curate told us, allow'd to the *Greek* Christians for Divine Service. But the most considerable Antiquity in *Jebilee*, is the Remains of a noble Theatre, of which the Semi-circle is all that's now standing, being 100 Yards in compass, having in it 17 Windows, between which are large massy Pillars standing against the Wall, that is 3 Yards 3 Quarters thick of firm Stone, by which means it has been preserv'd thus long from the Jaws of Time, and the Ruin which the *Turks* bring upon most places.

March 6. Having done with *Jebilee*, our Road continu'd by the Sea-side, and banish'd us in two hours to a fair deep River, call'd the *King*'s *River*; on both sides of which we saw the footsteps of some considerable Buildings. About half an hour further we pass'd the River *Jobar*, and on the other side stood a great square Tower, and round about it there was the Rubbish of a great many other Buildings. And all along this days Journey we obsery'd the Ruins of Castles and Houses, which testify that this has been formerly a place of great strength and beauty. *Strabo* calls that whole Region, from *Jebilee* as far as *Aradus*, the Country of the *Aradii*, and gives the Names of several places situate along the Coast, which cannot be now distinctly known. Only the *Balanea* of *Strabo* seems to be that place which the *Turks* now call *Baneas*, which stands about a Furlong from the Sea, and has such a pleasant Situation, such Ruins, and such a Bay, as shews it to have been a commodious Habitation. Leaving *Baneas*, we went by the Sea-side, and in one quarter of an hour we pass'd by an old Castle, on the top of a high Mountain, built in the Figure of an equilateral Triangle, which the *Turks* call *Merchab*, which probably is the same Castle mention'd by *Adrichomius* under the Name of *Margath*, to which the Bishops of *Balanea* were forc'd to translate the See, by reason of the Insults of the *Saracens*. About an hour and half from *Baneas*, we met with a small clear stream, which induc'd us to take up our Lodgings near it, about 2 or 3 Furlongs from the Sea, having in sight on the Mountains above us a Village call'd *Sephia*, inhabited only by *Maronites*, and a little further *Resek*, possess'd by the *Turks*; and a little further *Merakiah*, possess'd by *Christians* and *Turks* together.

March 7. Next Morning we came in three hours to a deep River call'd *Nahor Hussine*, having one Arch large and well wrought; and in an hour and half more we reach'd *Tortosa*, anciently call'd *Orthosia*, being a Bishop's See in the Province of *Tyre*, frequently mention'd by the Writers of the Holy Wars as a strong place, as it appears to have been. What remains of it is the Castle, wash'd on one side by the Sea, on the others fortified by a double Wall, between which there is one Dith, and another compassing the outermost Wall. You enter this Fort over an old Draw-bridge which lands you in a spacious Room, which on one side resembles a Church, having at this day several holy Emblems, as that of a Dove descending, and that of the holy Lamb; but on the other side it has the face of a Castle, being built with Port-holes instead of Windows. On the South and East-side of it stood anciently the City, encompass'd with a good Wall and a Ditch, of which there are some Remains; but of other Buildings there is nothing left, except a Church which is 130 Foot long, 93 broad, and 61 high, so entire, that it might easily be repair'd, but it is now made a Stall for Cattel, in which we waded up to the knees in Dirt when we went to see it. From *Tortosa* we sent our Baggage before towards *Tripoly*, which we follow'd not long after, and within one quarter of an hour we came to a large Channel of a River, now almost dry; and in half an hour more we came to a small Island about a League from the shore, call'd by the Turks *Ruad*, which is suppos'd to be the ancient *Arphad*, or *Arpad*, (mention'd 2 *Kings* 19. 13. *Gen.* 10. 18. *Ezek.* 27. 11.) and the *Aradus* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, which seem'd to be fill'd with Buildings like Castles, and to have been anciently famous for Navigation. About a quarter of an hour further we came up with our *Muleteers*, who had pitch'd our Tents at a place where we found several notable Antiquities, having in it a Fountain call'd the *Serpent Fountain*. The first Antiquity that we obsery'd was a large Dike 30 Yards over at top, cut into the firm Rock, whose sides went sloping down with Stairs form'd out of the Rock; and this was on the North-side of the Fountain, but on the other side we found a Court of 55 Yards square, cut in the natural Rock, and compass'd about with Walls of the same Rock on three sides, but to the North it lay open. In the Center of this *Area* was a square part of the Rock left standing, being 3 Yards high, and 5 Yards and half square, which serv'd for a Pedestal to a Throne made of 4 large stones, two at the sides, one at the back, and another hanging over the top like a Canopy, which was 5 Yards and three quarters square, carv'd round with a handsome Cornish. The Court we imagin'd to be an Idol-Temple, and the Pile in the middle to be the Throne of the Idol, which seem'd the more probable, because *Hercules*, i. e. *the Sun*, the great abomination of the *Phenicians*, was wont to be ador'd in an open Temple.

March 8. We got up early to take a nearer view of the two Towers we saw the night before, whereof one was 33 Foot high, on a Pedestal 10 Foot high and 15 square, the other was 30 Foot high, on a Pedestal 6 Foot high, and 16 Foot 6 Inches square, supported by 4 Lions, the upper-part rear'd upon the Pedestal being all one single stone. Under these Monuments were several Sepulchres, to which we descended by steps, having several Cells for Corps hewn out of the Rock, some of which we found to be 8 Foot and half long. But the particular description of these, and some other Sepulchral Monuments, together with the Cuts of them, the Reader may see in Mr. *Maundrel*, p. 21, 22. Having parted from these Antiquities, we entred into a spacious Plain between the Sea and the Mountains, reaching almost as far as *Tripoly*, which the Natives call *Junia*. We were 7 hours in passing it, and found it all along very fruitful by reason of the many Rivers that are in it; of which the first being about 6 hours from *Tripoly*, has a Stone-Bridge of 3 Arches, and is call'd the great River. About half an hour further we came to another call'd the *Leper*'s River: In three quarters of an hour more we came to a third call'd *Nahor Accharo*; and two hours more brings you to a fourth, call'd the *Cold Waters*. Which Rivers I do particularly mention, because 'tis probable, according to the description of the Ancients, that one of them is the River *Eleutherus*, tho' the Moderns do all agree, that 'tis the same with a River between *Tyre* and *Sidon*, call'd by the Turks *Casimeer*, contrary to the account of *Strabo* and *Pliny*, who place it near *Orthosia*, or between that and *Tripoly*; and of *Ptolomy*, who places it yet more Northerly between *Orthosia* and *Balanca*.

March 9. our *Muliteers* were afraid lest their Beasts should be press'd for Publick Service, as indeed they were in spight of all their caution; and so we left them in the Plain of *Junia*, and arriv'd at *Tripoly* about Sun-set. It is seated about half an hour from the Sea, and the major part of the City lies between two Hills, one on the East, on which stands a Castle that commands the place, and the other on the West, between the City and the Sea, which is said to be first rais'd, and still encreas'd by Sand blown to it from the shore; whence arises a Prophecy, that the whole City shall in time be buried with this sandy Hill.

March 10. we were treated by Mr. *Fisher* in a narrow pleasant Valley by a Rivers-side, about a Mile from the City: A-cross the Valley there runs from Hill to Hill a lofty Aquæduct, carrying upon it so great a Body of Water as suffices the whole City. It was call'd the *Princes Bridge*, and is suppos'd to be built by *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*.

March 11. we all din'd at Consul *Hasting*'s House, and after Dinner we went to wait upon *Ostan* the Bassa of *Tripoly*, having first sent our Present after the manner of the *Turks*, to procure us a favourable reception; for 'tis counted uncivil in this Country to visit without an Offering in hand, which all great Men expect as a Tribute due to their Character. And even the inferiour People seldom visit without bringing a Flower or an Orange, or some such token of Respect, according to the ancient Oriental Custom, limited in 1 *Sam.* 9. 7. *If we go, says Saul, what shall we bring the Man of God? there is not a Present*, &c.

March 12. We went to visit *Bell-mount*, a Convent of *Greeks*, about two hours to the South of *Tripoly*, and we came there just as they were going to Evening Service. The Church is large but obscure, and the Altar is enclos'd within *Cancels*, which none but the Priest must approach, after the manner of the *Greek* Churches. They call the Congregation together by bearing a Tune with two Mallets on a long piece of Plank, hanging at the Church-door, Bells being an abomination to the *Turks*. Their Service consisted in a hasty chattering of certain Prayers and Hymns to our Blessed Saviour and the Virgin, and in some dark Ceremonies, for the Priest that officiated spent at least a third part of his time in compassing the Altar, and perfuming it with a Pot of Incense, and then going round the Congregation, tendring its smoke with three vibrations to every one present. Towards the end of the Service there was brought into the Body of the Church a small Table, cover'd with a Linen-cloth, on which were plac'd five small Cakes of Bread cross-wise; and in a hole made in each Cake, was fix'd a small lighted Wax-taper. And then the Priest read the Gospel concerning our Lord's feeding the Multitude with five Loaves; after which, the Bread was carried within the *Cancelli*, and being there broke to bits, was again brought out in a Basket, and presented to every one in the Assembly, that he might take a little. After this Collation, the Priest pronounc'd the Blessing, and so the Service ended. On both sides of the Church there were Seats for the Monks, being about 40 in all, and in each Seat there were Crutches, (as there are in most Churches of this Country) which are us'd by the Priest to ease him, by leaning on them, in case the Service be long, because by the Rubrick he is forbidden to sit down. We found the Monks good-natur'd, but very ignorant, for the chief of them told the Consul, that he was as glad to see him, as if he had beheld the Messiah in Person come to visit him. Nor is this Ignorance much to be wondred at, since they are forc'd to spend all the time, between their hours of Devotion, in managing their Flocks, cultivating the Land, and pruning their Vineyards, which they do with their own hands; and this they are oblig'd to do, not only for their own Sustenance, but to satisfy the unreasonable Exactions of the *Turks*. And to shew what kind of Men they are, I took particular notice, that the same Person whom we saw officiating at the Altar, in his embroider'd Priestly Robe, brought us the next day, on his own back, a Kid and a Goats-skin of Wine as a Present from the Convent.

March 13. This Morning we went again to wait upon *Ostan* Bassa, by his own appointment, and were receiv'd with great Civility after their manner, which is as follows: When you would make a Visit to a Person of Quality, you must send a Present by a Servant, who is to learn what time may be most seasonable to wait upon him: When you come to the House, some Servants receive you at the outermost Gate, and conduct you towards their Master's Apartment, and others in their several Stations meet you as you draw nearer to him. Coming into the Room, you find him prepar'd to receive you, either standing at the edge of the *Duan*, or lying down at one corner of it, as he thinks proper. These *Duans* are low Stages rais'd about 16 or 18 inches above the Floor, spread with Carpets, and furnish'd with Bolsters to lean upon; on which the *Turks* eat, sleep, smoke, say their Prayers, receive Visits, &c. Their whole Delight is in lolling on them, and their Luxury in furnishing them richly. Being come to the side of the *Duan*, you slip off your Shoes, and take your place first at some distance, and upon your knees, laying your hands formally before you; and there you must remain till the Man of Quality invites you to draw nearer, and to lean upon a Bolster. When you are thus fix'd, he discourses with you as occasion offers, the Servants standing round with profound Respect and Silence. When you have talk'd over your Business or Complements, he makes a sign to have the Entertainment brought in, which is generally a little sweet Meat, a Dish of Shirbet, and another of Coffee, which is presently brought in by the Servants, and tender'd to all the Guests in order with great care, for if any of them should make the least slip in giving or receiving his Dish, it might cost him 100 drubs on his bare feet to attone for his crime. At last comes the finishing part of the Entertainment, which is perfuming the Beards of the company; and for this purpose, they have a small silver Chasing-dish, with a lid full of holes, fix'd on a Plate, in which they put some fresh Coals, and upon them a piece of *Lignum-Aloes*, and then the smoke ascends with a grateful odour through the holes of the Cover. This smoke is held under every ones Chin, and offer'd as a Sacrifice to his Beard, which greedily drinks in the gummy steam, and retains the savour of it a good while after. This Ceremony is intended to give a civil dismission to the Visitants, intimating that they may go away as soon as they please, and the sooner after this the better.

Having ended our Visit to *Ostan* Bassa, we rid out after Dinner to view the Marine, which is about half an hour distant from the City. The Port is an open Sea, rather than an enclos'd Harbour, but is partly defended by two small Isles, about two Leagues out from the shore, one of which is call'd the *Bird*, and the other the *Coney-Island*, from the Creatures they severally produce. And for its security from Pirates, it has 6 several Castles on the shore at convenient distances. In the Fields, near the shore, there are many heaps of Ruins and Pillars of Granite, which are Indications of some great Buildings this way; which agrees with what *Causabon* says upon *Strabo*, that *Tripoly* was anciently a cluster of three Cities, of which the first was the Seat of the *Aradii*, the second of the *Sidonians*, and the third of the *Tyrians*, which may more probably be the occasion of the Name, than the Joynt-interest of three Cities in building it, as is commonly said.

March 14. we rested at *Tripoly*, and on the 15th our *Muliteers* having run away for fear of the Bassa of *Sidon*'s Servants, who press'd Mules every-where for their Master's Servants, we put our selves in a new posture of travelling.

travelling. We parted from *Tripoly*, and going close by the Sea-side, we came in an hour and half to *Callemone*, a Village just under *Bell-mount*, and from hence putting forward, we met with a high Promontory that lay in our way, and forc'd us to turn off to the Left-hand into a narrow Valley, where we took up our Quarters under some Olive-trees; which Promontory seems to be that which is call'd by *Strabo* the *Face of God*, and which he assigns for the end of Mount *Libanus*.

March 16. This Morning we cross'd over the fore-mention'd Cape, which we did in an hour, tho' it was very steep and rugged, and we came into a narrow Valley, which laid the Sea open again; and near the entrance is a small Fort that commands it, call'd *Temseida*. And in half an hour we came up with *Patrone*, which is thought to be *Botrus*, situate close by the Sea, in which we found some Remains of a Church and Monastery. In three hours more we came to *Gibyle*, call'd by the *Greeks Byblis*, a place once famous for the Birth and Temple of *Adonis*. It is compass'd with a dry Ditch and a Wall, with square Towers at 40 Yards distance, and on its South-side it has an old Castle. There is nothing else remarkable in it but many heaps of Ruins, and the fine Pillars in the Gardens near the Town. It is probably the Country of the *Giblites*, mention'd *Josh.* 13. 5. whom King *Hiram* made use of in preparing Materials for *Solomon's* Temple, as may be collected from 1 *King.* 5. 18. where the word rendred *Stone-squarers* in the *Hebrew* is *Giblim*, and in the Version of the 70 *Byblii*; *i.e.* the Men of *Byblus*, the former using the *Hebrew*, the latter the *Greek* Name of the place; which difference may be observ'd likewise in *Ezek.* 27. 4. where our Translation has the *Ancients of Gebel*, and the 70 the *Elders of Byblus*. Leaving *Gibyle*, we came to a River call'd by the *Turks Ibrahim Bassa*, which is doubtless that ancient River so famous for the Idolatrous Rites perform'd here in lamentation of *Adonis*, and we lodg'd on the Banks of it that night.

March 17. having had a very tempestuous night of Wind and Rain, we had an opportunity of discovering the occasion of that Opinion which *Lucian* relates, that this River at certain Seasons of the Year, especially about the Feasts of *Adonis*, is of a bloody colour, as he says, from a sympathy for the death of *Adonis*, who was kill'd by a wild Boar in the Mountains out of which this stream rises; for we found the water of a very red colour, which doubtless was occasion'd by a sort of *Minium*, or red Earth, wash'd into the River by the violence of the Rain. In an hour and a quarter we pass'd over the foot of Mount *Climar*, and enter'd into a large Bay call'd *Innia*, where we found an old Stone-Bridge, and at the bottom the high Mountains of *Castravan*, chiefly inhabited by *Maronites*, and famous for an excellent Wine. The *Maronite* Bishop of *Aleppo* dwells here in a Convent, and there are many other small Convents on the top of these Mountains. Towards the further side of the Bay we came to a square Tower or Castle, at which we paid a fourth Caphar, which is receiv'd by the *Maronites*, who are more exacting Rogues than the *Turks* themselves. In an hour more we came to the River *Lycus*, call'd also sometimes *Canis*, whose Name is deriv'd from an Idol in the form of a Dog or Wolf, which was worshipp'd and gave Oracles. The Body of it is shown to strangers lying in the Sea, but the Head they say is to be seen at *Venice*. This River, which is certainly different from *Adonis*, (tho' some Moderns confound them) issues into the Sea from between two Mountains very high and rocky, where we found a good Bridge of four Arches, and near the foot of it a piece of white Marble inlaid in the side of a Rock, with an *Arab* Inscription, that the Emir *Faccardine* was the Founder of it. Having pass'd the River, we presently ascend the Rock hanging over it on that side, where we met with a path above two Yards broad, cut along its side at a great height above the water, being the Work of the Emperor *Antoninus*, as appears by an Inscription engraven on a Table, plain'd in the side of the natural Rock. In passing this way we saw strange antick Figures of Men carv'd in the Rock, in *Mezzo relievo*, and in bigness equal to the Life; and close by each Figure there was a Table plain'd in the side of the Rock, on which something had been inscrib'd, tho' the Characters are generally now defac'd, which may deserve the further scrutiny of some Traveller. The Antonine way extends about a quarter of an hours travel, after which you come upon a smooth sandy shore, which brings you in an hour and half to the River *Beroot*, which has over it a Stone-Bridge of 6 Arches; and on the other side is a Plain near the Sea, which is said to be the Stage on which St. *George* duell'd and kill'd the Dragon. In memory of which, there is a small Chappel built upon the place, dedicated at first to that Christian Hero, but now perverted to a Mosque. From hence in an hour we arriv'd at *Beroot*, and quarter'd at a good Kane by the Sea-side.

March 18. This day we spent at *Beroot*, anciently called *Berytus*, (from which the Idol *Baal-Berith* is suppos'd to have had its Name) which was honour'd with many Privileges, and the new Name of *Julia Felix* by *Augustus*. Its greatest happiness at present consists in its situation, being seated by the Sea-side in a fertile Soil, which abounds with fresh Springs flowing down from the Hills. The Emir *Faccardine* had his chief Residence here, in the Reign of Sultan *Murat*, the 4th Emir or Prince of the *Druses*; who not content to be penn'd up in the Mountains, enlarg'd his Dominion into the Plain, all along the Sea-coast, as far as from this place to *Acra*, but was driven back again to the Mountains by the Grand Seignior. We went to his Palace, and found at the entrance a Marble Fountain of greater beauty than is usually seen in *Turky*. The best sight that the Palace affords (which is now much ruin'd) is the Orange-Garden, which contains a large quadrangular Plat of ground, divided into 16 lesser squares, 4 in a row, with Walks between them, which are shaded with Orange-trees of a fine growth, on which the Fruit hang'd thicker than ever I saw Apples in *England*. Every one of these 16 squares was border'd with Stone, and in the Stone-work were Troughs artificially contriv'd for conveying the Water all over the Garden, there being little outlets cut at every Tree for the stream, as it pass'd by, to flow out and water it. But the *Turks* have so little sense of such refin'd delights, that they use it now as a Fold for Sheep and Goats. In another Garden, we saw several Pedestals for Statues, and at one corner of it a Tower about sixty foot high, whose Wall's were 12 foot thick; from whence we had a view of the whole City, and saw a large Christian Church, which was said to have been consecrated to St. *John* the Evangelist, but is now the chief Mosque of the *Turks*. There is another Church, which being a very mean Fabrick, remains in the hands of the *Greeks*, which is adorn'd with many old Pictures. And among the rest, I saw one with this Inscription in Greek, *Cyaartus the first Archbishop of Berytus*, and just by it the figure of *Nestorius*, who commonly makes one in the *Greek* Church of his Sect, tho' they do not now profess, nor I believe know his Heresy. But there was one very odd figure of a Saint at full length, with a large Beard reaching down to his feet. And the Curate told us, that this was St. *Nicephorus*, who wanting the Ornament of a Beard to set off his other endowments, fell into a deep Melancholy; whereupon the Devil tempted him to comply with his suggestions, by promising to give him a Beard, but this beardless Saint rejected the temptation, and at the same time taking the downy tuft upon his Chin in his hand, he found the hair immediately stretch with the pluck he gave it, and he never left pulling his Beard till he had drawn it down to his feet. At the East-end of *Beroot* are to be seen seven or eight Pillars of Granite, and several pieces of Marble, having Greek and Latin Inscriptions, fragments of Statues, and other poor Relicks of its ancient Grandeur. On the Sea side is an old Castle, and some Remains of a Mole.

March 19. Leaving *Beroot* we came into a large Plain, and at the entrance of it there is a Grove of Pine-trees of *Faccardine's* Plantation, and at a distance we saw a small Village call'd *Suckfoar*, which belongs to the *Druses*, who possess at this day a long tract of Mountains as far as from *Castravan* to *Carmel*. Their present Prince is *Achmet* Grandson to *Faccardine*, an Old Man, and one who keeps up the Custom of his Ancestors of turning day into night, from a traditional Perswasion among them, that Princes can never sleep securely but by day, when Men's actions and designs are best observ'd by their Guards, and, if need be, most easily prevented; but in the night it concerns them to be always vigilant, lest the darkness should give Traytors an opportunity to assault them with Dagger or Pistol. Two hours from *Faccardine's* Grove brought us to the 5th Caphar, and another hour to the River *Damer*, anciently call'd *Tamyras*. Here were Country-fellows who had stript themselves naked to assist us in passing over; and to make their help more necessary, they brought us to a place where the water was deepest, which Cheat we saw them impose upon other Travellers, but we found a place of the stream which was broader and shallower, where we pass'd without their assistance; and just by we saw the Ruins of a Stone-Bridge, which might have been still entire, had not these Villains broke it down to make their advantage of Passengers, either in conducting them over

for good pay, or else if they have opportunity, drowning them for their Spoils. On the other side of the River the Mountains came closer to the Sea, leaving only a narrow rocky way between. From *Damer*, in 2 hours time, we came to another considerable River, not mention'd by any Geographer; but the *Maronite* Patriarch at *Canobine* told me it was call'd *Awle*, and had its Fountain near *Barook*, in Mount *Libanus*. At this River we were met by several *French* Merchants from *Sidon*, who have there the most considerable Factory they have in the *Levant*; and being arriv'd at *Sidon*, they conducted us to a large Kane close by the Sea, where the Consul and all the Nation are Quarter'd together. Before this Kane is an old Mole running into the Sea, which was fill'd up with rubbish by *Faccardine*, to prevent the *Turkish* Gallies from coming hither; so that all Ships that take in their burden here, are forc'd to ride at Anchor under a small ridge of Rocks about a Mile from the shore. *Sidon* is stock'd well enough with Inhabitants, but is very much shrunk from its ancient Extent, and more from its Splendor, as appears from many beautiful Pillars that lie in the Gardens without the Walls. On the South side stands an old Castle, said to be built by St. *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*; and not far from the Castle is an old Palace of *Faccardine*'s, which serves the Bassa for his Seraglio. Near to *Sidon* begin the Precincts of the *Holy-Land*, particularly of that part which was allotted to *Asher*, the borders of which Tribe extended from *Carmel* as far as great *Zidon*, as appears from *Josh.* 19. 26, 28. But the People on the Sea-coasts were never actually master'd by the *Israelites*, being left to be thorns in their sides for a reason given, *Jud.* 2. 1, 2, 3, *&c.* He who is the *French* Consul at *Sidon*, has also the Title of Consul of *Jerusalem*, and is oblig'd to visit the holy City every *Easter*; with whom we desir'd to joyn in this Year's Pilgrimage, but he set out from *Sidon* the day before our arrival there.

March 20. We set out early next Morning from *Sidon*, hoping to overtake the Consul, and travelling in a fruitful Plain, in half an hour we met with a large Pillar of Granite, lying cross the High-way, on which was a fragment of an Inscription; and some *English* Gentlemen, in 1699, found another Pillar with the like Inscription, about midway between *Jerusalem* and *Sidon*, by which we may observe the exactness of the *Romans* in measuring out their Roads, and marking down on every Pillar the number of Miles, as 1, 2, 3, *&c.*

A little beyond this Pillar we pass'd in sight of *Korie*, a large Village on the side of the Mountains, and in 12 hours and half more came to *Sarphan*, suppos'd to be the ancient *Sarephath*, or *Sarepta*, so famous for the Residence and Miracles of *Elijah*. From hence, in 7 hours, we arriv'd at *Casimeer*, a large River running down to the Sea, which had once a good Stone-bridge, of which there remains nothing now but the Supporters, between which are laid Beams and Boards to supply the room of Arches. This River, by Modern Geographers, is falsly thought to be the Old *Eleutherus*, as has been shown before; but it seems to be that River mention'd by *Strabo*, *p.* 521. falling into the Sea near *Tyre*, for within a Bow-shot of this River *Casimeer* is a Kane of the same Name, from which keeping near the Sea-side, you arrive in an hour at *Tyre*.

This City standing in the Sea upon a Peninsula, promises something magnificent at a distance, but when you come to it, you find nothing like the glory for which of Old it was so renown'd, as it is describ'd *Ezek. c.* 26, 27, 28. On the North side it has an old *Turkish* Castle, besides which there is nothing here but a meer *Babel* of broken Walls, Pillars, Vaults, *&c.* there being not so much as one entire House left. Its present Inhabitants are only a few poor Wretches, that harbour in Vaults, and subsist upon Fishing, whereby God seems to have fulfill'd his Word concerning *Tyre*, viz. *That it should be as the top of a Rock, a place for Fishers to dry their Nets on*, Ezek. 26. 14. In the midst of the Ruins there stands up one pile higher than the rest, which is the East-end of a great Church, probably of the Cathedral of *Tyre*, and may very well be the same that was erected by its Bishop *Paulinus*, and honour'd with that famous Consecration Sermon of *Eusebius*, recorded by himself in *Eccl. Hist. l.* 10. *c.* 4. And 'tis very observable, that in all the ruin'd Churches which we saw, being perhaps no fewer than 100, tho' their other parts were totally demolish'd, yet the East-end we always found standing, and tolerably entire. How this came to pass I cannot determine, but certainly a thing so universally observ'd by us in our Journey, could not proceed from blind Chance.

But to return; There being an old Stair-case in the Ruin above-mention'd, I got to the top of it; from whence I had a prospect of the Island-part of *Tyre*, the Isthmus, and the adjacent shore; and from that height I could discern the Isthmus to be a Soil of a different nature from the other, it lying lower than either, and being cover'd all over with Sand, which the Sea casts upon it. The Island of *Tyre*, in its natural state, seems to have been of a circular figure, about 40 Acres in compass, and the Foundations of the Wall that encompass'd it are still to be seen. It makes with the Isthmus two large Bays, one on its North-side, and the other on its South, which are in part defended from the Ocean by a long ridge, either of Walls or Rocks, resembling a Mole, stretching out directly on both sides from the head of the Island. Coming out of these Ruins, we saw the Foundation of a very strong Wall, running cross the neck of Land which served as a Barrier to secure the City on this side. And hence we past the sandy Isthmus, and came to the place we thought the natural shore, where we met with a fertile Plain, which extends to a vast compass before *Tyre*, whence we arrived in three quarters of an hour at *Roselayn*.

March 21. *Roselayn* is the place where are the Cisterns call'd *Solomon*'s, which according to the common Tradition are said to have been made by that King, as part of his Recompence to King *Hiram*, for the Materials he sent toward building the Temple: But tho' they are very ancient, yet they are of a later date than this Tradition makes them, because the Aquæduct which conveys the Water, is carried over that neck of Land by which *Alexander* joyn'd the City to the Continent at his Siege of this place; and so cannot be older than his time. Of these Cisterns there are three entire at this day, one about a Furlong and half distant from the Sea, the other two, a little further up. The former is of an Octogonal figure, being 22 Yards in diameter, and contains a vast Body of excellent water, which is so well supplied from its Fountain, that tho' there issues from it a stream like a Brook, driving four Mills between this place and the Sea, yet it is always brimful. On the East-side was the ancient Outlet of Water by an Aquæduct, having a Channel one Yard wide, which is now stopt up by the *Turks*, who have broke an Outlet on the other side, which makes a stream for grinding Corn.

The Aquæduct, now dry, is carried Eastward 120 paces, and then approaches the two other Cisterns, of which one is 12, the other 20 Yards square, and they had each a Channel, by which they rendred their Waters into the Aquæduct, and so the united streams of all the three Cisterns were carried together to *Tyre*. There still remain some fragments of the Aquæduct, and in its sides, and under its arches, we observ'd some heaps of Matter, produc'd by the leakage of the Water which petrified as it distill'd from above, and by continual accession of new Matter were grown to a great bulk. They were compos'd of innumerable Tubes of Stone of different sizes, cleaving to one another like Isicles, each tube having a cavity in its Centre, from which its parts were projected in the form of Rays to the Circumference, like the Stones call'd Thunder-stones. The Fountain of these Waters is as unknown as the Contriver of them, tho' 'tis certain, from their rising so high, they come from some part of the Mountains which are about a League distant.

From this pleasant place we came in an hour and half to the white Promontory, over which you pass by a Way about two Yards broad cut along its side, from which the prospect is dreadful, by reason of the steepness of the Mountains, and the raging of the Sea at bottom. This Way, and the Castle *Scandalium*, which is not far off, are said to be built by *Alexander*; from whence we come first to *Nachera*, and then to the Plain of *Acre*, over a deep Mountain, suppos'd to be part of Mount *Saron*. This Plain extends from Mount *Saron* as far as *Carmel*, and is 6 hours long, and 2 hours broad, between the Sea and the Mountains, and was a delicious Plain, but is now, for want of Culture, over-run with rank Weeds, which were, when we pass'd it, as high as our Horses backs.

Having travell'd about an hour in the Plain of *Acre*, we pass'd by an old Town call'd *Zib*, which probably is the Old *Achzib*, mention'd *Jos.* 19. 29. & *Jud.* 1. 31. and seems to be one of the places out of which the *Asherites* could not expel the *Canaanites*. Two hours further we came to the Fountain of the Blessed Virgin, as it is call'd by the *French* Merchants at *Acre*, at which place we arriv'd in an hour more.

Acre, anciently call'd *Accho*, is another of the places from which the *Israelites* could not drive the Natives; but being in after-times enlarg'd by *Ptolemy* the First, it was by him call'd *Ptolemais*. And once it was possess'd

by

by the *Turks*, like other Cities, having loſt its *Greek* Name, 'tis call'd by them *Acca*, or *Acra*. This City has often chang'd Maſters, and at laſt, by a long Siege, was taken and ruin'd by the *Turks*, in ſuch a manner as if they had taken revenge upon it for the Blood it coſt them. On the North and Eaſt 'tis compaſs'd with a ſpacious and fertile Plain, on the Weſt 'tis waſh'd by the *Mediterranean* Sea, and on the South by a large Bay, extending from the City as far as Mount *Carmel*. But notwithſtanding theſe advantages, beſides a large Kane in which are the *French* Factors, a Moſque, and a few poor Cottages, there is nothing now to be ſeen but vaſt Ruins, which ſhow its former ſtrength, for it appears to have been compaſs'd about with a double Wall defended with Towers, and without the Walls are Ditches, Ramparts, and a kind of Baſtions. In the Fields we find ſeveral large Balls of Stone, 13 or 14 inches in diameter, which were part of the Ammunition us'd in battering the City, Guns being then unknown. Within the Walls are the Ruins of the Cathedral dedicated to St. *Andrew*, of the Church of St. *John*, the Titular Saint of this City, and of the Convent of the Knights-Hoſpitallers, and near to it the Palace of the Grand Maſter of that Order; and laſtly, ſome Remains of a large Church, formerly belonging to a Nunnery, of which they tell this Story. The *Turks* having preſs'd this City with a long Siege, at laſt entred it by Storm, *May* 19. 1291. In which extremity, the Abbeſs fearing leſt ſhe and her Nuns ſhould be ſubjected to ſuch Beſtialities as is uſual in ſuch caſes, exhorted them all to cut and mangle their faces, as the only way to preſerve their Virgin purity; and to encourage them, ſhe made her ſelf the firſt example of her own Counſel, which the Nuns inſtantly follow'd, cutting off their Noſes, and diſfiguring their Faces with ſuch terrible gaſhes, as might excite horror rather than luſtful deſires. The conſequence of which was, that the Soldiers breaking into the Nunnery, and ſeeing inſtead of beautiful Ladies ſuch ſad Spectacles, put them all to the Sword in revenge for diſappointing their Luſts. There are many other Ruins here of Churches, Palaces, Monaſteries, Forts, &c. for more than half a Mile in length. But that which pleas'd us moſt was, to find the *French* Conſul *l'Empereur* here, who having ſtaid for us two days, reſolv'd to ſet forward next morning. But we were doubtful which way to take, becauſe of the Factions of the *Arabs*, which are kept up by the *Turks*, to prevent their uniting under one Prince, whereby they might be ſtrong enough to ſhake off the *Turkiſh* Yoke; for in theſe Diſcords ſtrangers are ſure to ſuffer, being a prey to each Party.

March 22. We ſet out early from *Acra*, having ſome *Turkiſh* Soldiers for our Convoy: And firſt we paſs'd by a ſmall River, which we took to be *Belus*, famous for its Sand, of which Glaſs is made. Here we declin'd from the Sea-coaſt to the Eaſt, and croſſing over the Plain, we arriv'd at its further ſide, where it is bounded by Mount *Carmel*; and here we found a narrow Valley, which led us out of the Plain of *Acra* into that of *Eſdraelon*. About this place is the end of the Tribe of *Aſher*, and the beginning of that of *Zabulon*, as their borders are deſcrib'd, *Joſh.* 19. 26.

Paſſing through the ſaid narrow Valley, we arriv'd in two hours at the River *Kiſhon*, which cuts his way down the middle of the Plain of *Eſdraelon*, and then continuing his Courſe by the ſide of Mount *Carmel*, falls into the Sea at a place call'd *Caypha*. We ſaw it when it was low, but we diſcern'd many torrents falling into it from the Mountains, which muſt make it ſwell, as it did at the deſtruction of *Siſera*'s Hoſt, *Jud.* 5. 21. In three hours and half from *Kiſhon*, we came to an old Village, and a good Kane call'd *Legune*, near to which we lodg'd this Night. From this place we view'd the Plain of *Eſdraelon*, which is very large and fertile, and about ſix hours diſtance ſtood within view *Nazareth*, and the two Mounts *Tabor* and *Hermon*; and here we felt the dew of *Hermon*, as the *Pſalmiſt* calls it, our Tents being as wet with it as if it had rain'd all night. About a miles diſtance from us was encamp'd *Chibly*, Emir of the *Arabs*, with his People and Cattle; and below upon the Brook *Kiſhon*, lay another Clan of the *Arabs*, being the adverſe Party to *Chibly*; and it was little to our ſatisfaction, that we were ſeated in the midſt between two ſuch bad Neighbours.

March 23. Leaving this Lodging, we went to the Emir's Tents, to whom we paid two Caphars, one of *Legune*, and the other of *Jeneen*, and whatever elſe he was pleas'd to demand. He very civilly eas'd us of ſome of our Coats, which begun now by reaſon of the heat to be troubleſome. Getting quit of *Chibly*, we return'd out of the Plain of *Eſdraelon*, and entred into the Precincts of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*. From hence our Road lay, for 4 hours, through narrow Valleys, pleaſantly wooded on both ſides; and we lodg'd at *Caphar Arab*.

March 24. Having paid our Caphar, we ſet out very early the next Morning, and leaving firſt *Arab*, and then *Rama*, on their Right-hand, we came to *Selee* and *Sebaſta*, where we leave the borders of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, and enter into thoſe of the Tribe of *Ephraim*.

Sebaſta is the ancient *Samaria*, the Imperial City of the 10 Tribes after their Revolt from the Houſe of *David*, and being rais'd by *Herod the Great* to a magnificent ſtate, was by him, in honour of *Auguſtus*, call'd *Sebaſta*. It is ſituate on a long Mount of an oval figure, and is now wholly converted into Gardens, having no other Remains of ſuch a place, but on the North-ſide a large ſquare Piazza, encompaſs'd with Pillars, and on the Eaſt ſome Ruins of a great Church, ſaid to be built by *Helena*, over the place where *John the Baptiſt* was impriſon'd and beheaded. In the Body of the Church you go down a Stair-caſe into the Dungeon where that blood was ſhed. The *Turks* hold that Priſon in great Veneration, and over it have erected a ſmall Moſque, but for a little piece of Money they ſuffer any one to go into it.

Leaving *Sebaſta* we paſt by *Sherack* and *Barſoba*, and then entring into a Valley, we arriv'd in an hour at *Naploſa*, which is the ancient *Sychem* or *Sychar*, as it is call'd in the New Teſtament. It ſtands in a narrow Valley between Mount *Gerizim* on the South, and *Ebal* on the North. From Mount *Gerizim* God commanded the Bleſſings to be pronounc'd upon the Children of *Iſrael*, and from Mount *Ebal* the Curſes, *Deut.* 11. 29. Upon the former the *Samaritans*, whoſe chief Reſidence is at *Sychem*, have a ſmall Temple, to which they are ſtill wont to repair for Religious Worſhip: But that their Religion conſiſts in worſhipping a Calf, as the *Jews* ſay, ſeems to have more of ſpight than truth in it. Upon one of theſe Mountains alſo it was, that God commanded the Children of *Iſrael* to ſet up great Stones, plaiſter'd over and inſcrib'd with the Body of the Law, and to erect an Altar, and offer Sacrifices, Feaſting and Rejoycing, before the Lord, *Deut.* 27. 4. But whether *Gerizim*, or *Ebal*, was the place appointed for this Solemnity, there is ſome cauſe to doubt; for the Hebrew *Pentateuch* and ours, from it aſſigns Mount *Ebal* for this uſe, but the *Samaritan* aſſerts it to *Gerizim*. Our Company haſting a little at *Naploſa*, I had an opportunity to viſit the chief Prieſt of the *Samaritans*, and to diſcourſe with him about this and other difficulties.

And firſt, as to the difference between the *Hebrew* and *Samaritan* Copy, *Deut.* 27. 4. the Prieſt pretended that the *Jews* had maliciouſly alter'd their Text out of odium to the *Samaritans*, putting for *Gerizim Ebal*, becauſe the *Samaritans* worſhipp'd in the former, which for that reaſon they would not have to be the true place appointed by God for his Worſhip. To confirm this, he alledg'd that *Ebal* was the Mountain of Curſing, *Deut.* 11. 29. and an unpleaſant place, whereas *Gerizim* was fertile and pleaſant, and the Mountain of Bleſſing; and therefore it was more probable, that this was the Mountain appointed for Religious Worſhip, and not *Ebal*. But he could not ſay that any of thoſe great ſtones, which God directed *Joſhua* to ſet up, were now to be ſeen in *Gerizim*, which would have determin'd the Queſtion clearly on this ſide.

I enquir'd alſo, what thoſe *Selavæ* were wherewith the Children of *Iſrael* were ſo long fed in the Wilderneſs, *Numb.* 11. he anſwer'd, They were a ſort of Fowls, which by his deſcription appear'd to be Quails. Then I ask'd him, what ſort of Plant or Fruit the *Dudaim* or Mandrakes were, which *Leah* gave to *Rachel* for the purchaſe of her Husband's embraces? He anſwer'd, They were Plants of a large leaf, bearing a Fruit like an Apple, ripe in Harveſt, but of an ill ſavour and unwholſome, and that the vertue of them was to help Conception, being laid under the genial Bed; to which purpoſe they are often made uſe of by Women at this day. Of theſe Plants, I ſaw ſeveral in the way to *Jeruſalem*, and if they were ſo common in *Meſopotamia* as here, we muſt conclude that either theſe were not the true Mandrakes, or elſe 'tis hard to give a reaſon why *Rachel* ſhould purchaſe ſuch common things at ſo beloved a price. *Naploſa* is at preſent in a very mean condition to what it has been anciently; it conſiſts of two Streets lying parallel under Mount *Gerizim*, but is full of People. Having paid our Caphar here, we proceeded in the ſame narrow Valley between *Gerizim* and *Ebal*, and juſt without the City we ſaw a ſmall Moſque, ſaid to be built over the Sepulchre purchas'd by *Jacob* of *Emmor* Father of *Sychem*, *Gen.* 33. 19. It goes by the Name of *Joſeph*'s Sepulchre.

pulchre, his Bones being interr'd here, *Josh.* 24. 32. About a quarter of an hour from *Naplosa* we came to *Jacob*'s Well, famous not only for its Author, but for the Conference it had there with the Womam of *Samaria*, *Joh.* 4. Over the Well there stood formerly a large Church erected by *Helena*, of which remains nothing now but some foundations. The Well is cover'd at present with a Stone Vault, into which you are let down through a very straight hole, and then removing a broad stone, you discover the mouth of the Well. It is dug in a firm Rock, and is about three Yards in diameter, and 35 deep, five of which we found full of water. At this Well the narrow Valley of *Sychem* ends, opening into a wide Field, very pleasant and fruitful, which is probably part of that parcel of ground given by *Jacob* to his Son *Joseph*, *Joh.* 4. 5.

From *Jacob*'s Well we went through a large Valley, and having pass'd by two Villages on the Right-hand call'd *Howar* and *Sawee*, we came in four hours to *Kane Lebun*, near a Village of the same Name, one of which is suppos'd to have been the *Lebonah*, mention'd *Jud.* 21. 19. and here we lodg'd this night.

March 25. From *Kane Lebun* our Road lay through a rocky Country; but having past by *Singa*, we enter'd into a narrow Valley between two rocky Hills, at the further end of which we found the Ruins of a Village and Monastery. In this place *Jacob*'s *Bethel* is suppos'd to have been, where he had his strong Couch made easie by the Vision of God, and of the Angels ascending and descending on a Ladder between Earth and Heaven, *Gen.* 28. near which place are the limits that part between *Ephraim* and *Benjamin*, *Josh.* 18. 13.

From hence we pass'd through large Olive-Yards, and having left *Geeb* and *Selwid* on the Right-hand we arriv'd at *Beer*; which is the place to which *Jotham* fled from the revenge of *Abimelech*, *Jud.* 9. 21. and is suppos'd to be the same with *Michmas*, 1 *Sam.* 14.

Beer is seated on the side of a Hill, which at the bottom has a Fountain of the same Name, and at its upper side are the Remains of an old Church built by *Helena*, in memory of the Blessed Virgin, who being in quest of the Child, *Luke* 2. 24. is said to have sate down here weary and pensive, because she cou'd not find him; but after her return to *Jerusalem*, she found him sitting in the Temple with the Doctors, both hearing them, and asking them questions. All along this days Journey we had nothing in view in most places but Rocks, Mountains and Precipices, which astonishes Pilgrims, as being contrary to those high Idea's they had form'd of the pleasantness and plenty of this Country, and almost startles their Faith, as thinking it hardly possible for a Land like this to feed so prodigious a number as are said to have been poll'd at one time, being no less than 1300000 fighting Men, besides Women and Children. But to remove these scruples, any one may observe that these Rocks and Hills must have been anciently cover'd with Earth and cultivated, and so they afforded a larger trace of ground than if the Country were level, which they husbanded by gathering up the stones, and placing them along the sides of the Hill in form of a Wall, which kept in the Mould, and form'd many Beds of excellent Soil, from the bottom to the top of the Mountains; of which form of Culture, we see plain footsteps in all the Mountains of *Palestine*. And there is nothing upon Earth more fruitful than the plain Country and Valleys, either for the production of Corn or Cattel. The Hills, tho' improper for any Cattel but Goats, yet being dispos'd into the Beds aforesaid, serv'd very well to bear Corn, Melons, Goards, Cucumbers, and such like Garden-stuff, which are the chief Food of these Countries for several Months of the Year. The most rocky parts might serve for Vines and Olive-trees, which delight in such dry and flinty places; and the great Plain joyning to the dead Sea, which by reason of its saltness could not serve for Corn, Vines or Olives, was yet very useful for the nourishment of Bees, and making of Honey, as *Josephus* testifies, *Bell. Jud. l.* 5. *c.* 4. and I found by experience, when I was there, finding in many places a strong smell of Honey and Wax. Thus the Country might very well maintain the vast numbers of its Inhabitants, being every where productive of Milk, Corn, Wine, Oil or Honey, which are the principal Food of these Eastern Nations.

Leaving *Beer* in two hours and a quarter, we came to the top of a Hill, from whence we had the first prospect of *Jerusalem*; *Rama*, anciently call'd *Gibeah* of *Saul*, being within view on the Right-hand, and the Plain of *Jericho*, and the Mountains of *Gilead*, on the Left. In an hour more we came to the Walls of *Jerusalem*, but durst not enter without leave of the Governour; which being obtain'd, we entred at the *Bethlehem-Gate*, mounted and arm'd, because we were in company with the *French* Consul, for otherwise all *Franks* that come not in with some publick Minister, are to dismount at the Gate, deliver their Arms, and enter on foot. We took our Lodging at the *French* Consul's, and our Board at the Latin-Convent, while we stay'd at *Jerusalem*.

March 26. being *Good-Friday* in the Latin Style, we were oblig'd to go with the Consul into the Church of the Sepulchre to keep the Feast with him, tho' 'twas a Week before our own *Easter*. We found the Church-doors guarded by *Janisaries*, who suffer none to go in until they have paid their Caphar, which for *Franks* is commonly 14 Dollars *per* Head, unless they be Ecclesiasticks, and then it is but half so much. This being once paid, you may go in and out *gratis* as oft as you please during the whole Feast, at the ordinary times when the door is open. All the Pilgrims being admitted, the Church-doors were lock'd, and open'd no more till *Easter-day*; and being confin'd for 3 days, we visited all the Holy places at so much leisure, that we might give a large description of them, but that Mr. *Sandys* has given us one already, so perfect that little can be added to it, and so exact that nothing in it can be corrected, and therefore I shall only relate what pass'd during the Festival, and say no more of the Church than is necessary to make my account intelligible.

The Church of the Holy Sepulchre is founded on *Mount Calvary*, a small Hill upon the greater Mount of *Moriah*; it was anciently appropriated to the Execution of Malefactors, and therefore shut out of the City as a polluted place, but since it was made the Altar on which the precious Sacrifice for the Sins of the World was offered, it stands in the midst of *Jerusalem*, a great part of the Hill of *Sion* being shut out of the Walls to make room for it.

Tho' a great part of this Hill was cut away to make it a fit Foundation for a Church, yet care was taken that none of those parts concern'd in our Lord's Passion should be alter'd or diminish'd; and so that very part of *Calvary* where Christ was fasten'd to the Cross remains entire, being about 10 or 12 Yards square, and standing so high above the floor of the Church, that you have 21 Steps to go up to its top; and the Holy Sepulchre, which at first was hewn into a Rock under-ground, is now a Grotto above ground, the Rock being cut away from it all round. The Church is less than 100 paces long, and not more than 60 wide, and yet it contains 12 or 13 Sanctuaries, consecrated by some particular actions relating to the Death or Resurrection of Christ: As, 1. The place where he was derided by the Soldiers. 2. Where the Soldiers divided his Garments. 3. Where he was shut up, while all was made ready for his Crucifixion. 4. Where he was nail'd to the Cross. 5. Where the Cross was erected. 6. Where the Soldiers stood that pierced his side. 7. Where his Body was anointed in order to his Burial. 8. Where his Body was laid in the Sepulchre. 9. Where the Angels appear'd to the Women after his Resurrection. 10. Where Christ himself appear'd to *Mary Magdalen*, *&c.* All which places, and many others of the same nature, are contain'd within this Church, and adorn'd with so many several Altars.

In Galleries about the Church, and little Buildings annex'd to it, every Christian Nation had anciently proper Quarters for a Society of Monks, but now, all except four, have forsaken these Quarters, because of the severe Rents impos'd upon them by their *Turkish* Landlords; and of these four, the *Cophtites* have only one to represent their Nation, and the *Armenians* are so much in Debt, that they are likely to desert the place quickly, and then the *Greeks* and *Latins* will only remain.

Besides their several Apartments, each Fraternity have their peculiar Altars and Sanctuary for their own use. But the great prize now disputed between the *Greeks* and *Latins* is the command of the Holy Sepulchre, in which Contention they have proceeded to blows and wounds, even at the door of the Sepulchre: and as an evidence of this fury, the Father-guardian show'd me a great Scar in his Arm, being the mark of a wound given by a *Greek* Priest; but at the request of the *French* King, this Holy Sepulchre was appropriated to the *Latins* in 1690, they alone having the Privilege to say Mass in it, tho' all other Christians may go into it for private Devotions. The *Latins*, of whom there are always 10 or 12 at Church, with a President over them, makes every day a solemn Procession, with Tapers and Crucifixes, to the several Sanctuaries, and sing at every one a Hymn relating to the Subject of the place. Their Ceremony begins on *Good-Friday* night, which is call'd by them the *nox tenebrosa*; and as soon as it grew dusk, all the Friars and Pilgrims

Pilgrims met in the Chappel of the Apparition, (which is on the North-side of the Holy Grave) to go in Procession round the Church. After a Sermon, at which all the Candles were put out to make a lively Image of the dark night, every one had a lighted Taper put into his hand; and amongst the other Crucifixes, there was one very large, which bore an Image of our Lord, as big as the Life, fastned to it with great Nails, crown'd with Thorns, besmear'd with Blood, and lively represented our Lord's Body as it hung upon the Cross. This Figure was carried in the head of the Procession, after which all the company follow'd to all the several Sanctuaries of the Church, singing at every one a Hymn.

The first place was that of the Pillar of Flagellation, kept in a little Cell just by the Chappel of Apparition; there they sung their Hymn, and a Friar preach'd in *Spanish* about the scourging of our Lord. From hence they proceeded to the Prison of Christ, where they had also a Hymn and a Sermon. From the Prison they went to the Altar of the division of Christ's Garments, where they only sung a Hymn; and from thence to the Chappel of Derision, where they had a Hymn and a fourth Sermon. From this place they went up to *Calvary*, leaving their Shoes at the foot of the Stairs. Here are two Altars, one where he was nail'd to the Cross, at which they laid down the great Crucifix, and acted the nailing of Christ to the Cross. The other where his Cross was erected, bearing the Image of our Lord's Body. At this Altar there is a hole in the natural Rock, in which the foot of our Lord's Cross stood; and here they set up their Cross, with the bloody crucified Image upon it, and then sung a Hymn, and preach'd a Passion-Sermon. About a Yard and half from the hole where the foot of the Cross was fix'd, is seen that cleft in the Rock which was made by the Earthquake at Christ's Death, when *the Rocks were rent*, *Matt.* 27. 51. It appears to be a natural breach, for the sides of it do answer each other like two Tallies, and it runs in such intricate windings as could not be counterfeited by Art. After the Ceremony of the Passion is over, two Friars personating *Joseph* of *Arimathea* and *Nicodemus*, come with a grave and solemn air, and take down the feigned Body from the Cross. The Limbs of the Image were soft and flexible, and it was surprizing to see the two Mourners bend down the Arms which were before extended, and lay them upon the Trunk, as is usually done in Corpses. The Body being taken down was receiv'd in a large Winding-sheet, and carried from *Mount Calvary* to the Stone of Unction, *i. e.* the place where our Lord's Body was anointed, *Joh.* 19. 39. And here while they cast over it sweet Powders and Spices, they sung a proper Hymn, and a Friar preach'd a Funeral Sermon in *Arabick*. After this they carried the feigned Corps and laid it in the Sepulchre, shutting up the door till *Easter* Morning.

March 27. This Morning the Pilgrims had leisure to make their Arms with the usual Ensigns of *Jerusalem*; and in the Afternoon, the Congregation was assembled in the *Area* before the Holy Grave, where the Friars sung over the Lamentation of *Jeremy*, which with the usual Procession to the holy Places was all the business of this day.

March 28. On *Easter* Morning the Sepulchre was again set open very early, and Mass was celebrated just before it, being the highest place in this Church, where the Father-Guardian in his Robes gave the Host to all that were dispos'd to receive it, not refusing Children of 7 or 8 Years old: Which Office being ended, we went out of the Sepulchre, return'd to the Convent, and din'd with the Friars. After Dinner we went to visit some of the remarkable places without the Walls; we began with those on the North-side. And first, we were conducted to a large Grot, a little without *Damascus*-gate, which is said to have been the Residence of *Jeremiah*: And here they shew'd us the Prophet's Bed, being a shelve on the Rock about 8 foot from the ground, and near it is the place where they say he wrote his Lamentations. This place is now a College of *Dervises*, much honour'd by *Turks* and *Jews*.

The next place we came to, was those famous Grots call'd the Sepulchres of Kings, for what reason I know not, unless they were the Sepulchres of the Sons of *David*, mention'd *Chron.* 32. 33. but it appears by the Labour and Expence to have been the work of Kings. At the East-end you enter through a Rock into an open Court about 40 paces square, cut down into the Rock. On the South-side is a Portico 9 paces long, and 4 broad, cut out of the natural Rock, and at the end of it you descend into the Sepulchres, within which is a fair Room about 7 of 8 Yards square, cut out of the natural Rock so exactly square, that nothing could be built more regular, and so firm, that it may be call'd a Chamber hewn out of one piece of Marble. From this Room you pass into 6 more one within another, all of the same Fabrick with the first. In every one of these Rooms, besides the first, were Coffins of Stone plac'd in niches on the sides of the Chamber, and in each Room there was a small Channel cut in the Floor, to drain the drops that constantly fall into it. But the most surprizing thing that belongs to these Rooms was their doors, of which there is only one remains hanging to puzzle the Beholders. It consisted of a Plank of Stone about 6 inches thick, of the size of an ordinary door. It was carv'd so as to resemble a piece of Wainscot, but the Stone was visibly of the same kind with the whole Rock, and turn'd upon two hinges like Axels, which were of the same Stone with the door, and contain'd in two holes of the Rock, one at the top, the other at the bottom. It seem'd to be a Riddle to Pilgrims, whether these doors were here cut out of the Rock, or brought hither; for resolving of which, I observ'd that the door left hanging did not touch its Lintel by at least two inches, and so might easily be lifted up and unhing'd, which intimates how this Work was done.

From these Sepulchres we return'd towards the City, and just by *Herod's* Gate were shown a Grotto full of Mire, which passes for *Jeremiah's* Dungeon, out of which he was dismiss'd by *Ebed Melech*, Jer. 38.

March 29. This day being *Easter-Monday*, the Mosolem, or Governour of the City, set out with some Bands of Soldiers to convey the Pilgrims to *Jordan*, and secure them from the Insolence of the *Arabs* in those Parts. The Fee to the Mosolem, upon this Occasion, is 12 Dollars for each *Frank* Pilgrim, and 6 for Ecclesiasticks, which every one must pay, whether they go the Journey or stay in the City. We went out at St. *Stephen's* Gate, being in all, of every Nation and Sex, about 2000 Pilgrims; and having cross'd the Valley of *Jehosaphat*, and part of Mount *Olivet*, we came in half an hour to *Bethany*. At the entrance into it there is an old Ruin call'd *Lazarus's* Castle, suppos'd to be his Mansion-House, and not far from it is the Sepulchre out of which he was rais'd by Christ, which is held in great veneration by the *Turks*, who use it for an Oratory, and demand of all Christians a Caphar for their admission into it.

A little further you pass by what they call *Mary Magdalen's* Habitation, and then descending a Hill you come to the Fountain of the Apostles, where they were wont to refresh themselves in their travels between *Jerusalem* and *Jericho*. After some hours travel in a barren Country, you come to the mountainous Desart into which our Saviour was led by the Spirit, to be tempted of the Devil; and from the top of these Hills we had a prospect of the Mountains of *Arabia*, the dead Sea, and the Plain of *Jericho*, into which we descended, and turning up on the Left-hand, we came to the foot of the *Quarantania*, which they say is the Mountain into which the Devil took our Saviour when he tempted him with that Visionary Scene of all the Kingdoms in the World, and the Glories of them. Turning down hence into the Plain, we came to the Fountain of *Elisha*, so call'd, because by him it was miraculously purg'd of its brackishness, at the request of the Men of *Jericho*, 2 *Kings* 2. 19. Its Waters now being receiv'd in a Basin, divide themselves into several small streams, which refresh the whole Field that lies between this and *Jericho*. A little from hence is *Jericho*, at present only a poor nasty Village of the *Arabs*; and here we saw the place where *Zaccheus's* House is said to have stood, which is an old square Stone-building on the South-side of *Jericho*.

March 30. we set out early for *Jordan*, and arriv'd there in two hours. We found the Plain very barren, producing nothing but Marine Plants; and in many places of the Road, where puddles of Water had stood, we observ'd a whiteness on the surface of the ground, which we found to be a Crust of Salt rais'd by the Water out of the Earth. About a Furlong from the River *Jordan*, was an old Church and Convent dedicated to St. *John*, in memory of his baptizing our Saviour; we were there in *March*, but could discern no sign of its overflowing, tho' it was the proper time for these Inundations. One Bank of the River is so beset with Bushes and Trees, that several sorts of wild Beasts are said to harbour in them; whose being wash'd out of their covert by the overflowings of the River, gave occasion to that allusion, *Jer.* 49. 19. *He shall come up like a Lion from the swelling of* Jordan. When we came to the River, some stript and bath'd themselves in it, others cut down boughs from the Trees, and every one was some way employ'd to take a Memorial of this famous stream.

Its

Its breadth was about 20 Yards over, and in depth it far exceeded my height. By the Mosolem's Leave we went towards the Dead Sea with a Guard to attend us. The Dead Sea is enclos'd on the East and West with very high Mountains; on the North it is bounded with the Plain of *Jericho*, on which side also it receives the Waters of *Jordan*. On the South it is open, and extends beyond the reach of the Eye. It is said to be 24 Leagues long, and 6 or 7 broad. On the shore of the Lake we found a black sort of Pebbles, which being held in the flame of a Candle soon burns, and yields a smoke of an intolerable stench; but by burning it loses only of its weight, and not of its bulk. It is a common Tradition, that Birds attempting to fly over this Sea, drop down dead into it; and that no Fish, nor other sort of Animal, can live in these Waters. The former Report I saw actually confuted, by several Birds flying over this Sea without any visible harm. The latter I have some reason to suspect as false, having observ'd on the shore two or three shells of Fish like Oyster-shells. As for the Bitumen, for which the Sea is famous, there was none at the place where we were, but it is gather'd near the Mountains on both sides in great plenty. It is so like Pitch, that it cannot be easily distinguish'd from it but by its Sulphureous smell and taste. The Water of the Lake was clear, and not only salt to the highest degree, but extreme bitter. To try its strength I went into it, and found it bore up my Body in swimming with an uncommon force. Tho' I diligently search'd, I could not find any Remains of those Cities here situated, which were made so dreadful an example of Divine Vengeance, neither could I discern any Smoke ascending above the Water, nor any Ruins. But the Father-guardian, and Procurator of *Jerusalem*, both assur'd me, that they had seen one of these Ruins, and the Water being very shallow they went to it, and found there several Pillars, and other Fragments of Buildings. On the West-side of this Sea is a small Promontory, near which, as our Guides told us, is the Monument of *Lot*'s Wife metamorphos'd. As to the Apples of *Sodom*, I neither saw nor heard of any such hereabouts, nor is there any Tree near the Lake from which one might expect such Fruit. In our return, about an hours distance from the Sea, we saw a ruin'd *Greek* Convent, and found a good part of the Church remaining, with the Figures of several Saints, and a *Greek* Inscription over the Altar. Hereabouts, and in many other places of the Plain, I perceiv'd a strong scent of Honey and Wax, the Sun being hot, and the Bees very industrious about the blossoms of that salt Weed the Plain produces. Amongst the Products of this place, I saw a notable Fruit call'd by the *Arabs Zacchone*; It grows on a thorny Bush with small leaves, and both in shape and colour resembles an unripe Wall-nut. The kernels of this Fruit the *Arabs* bray in a Mortar, and then putting the pulp into scalding Water, they skim off an Oil which rises to the top; which Oil they use inwardly for Bruises, and outwardly for green Wounds, and I have found it upon some trials a very healing Medicine.

March 31. This Morning we went in 6 hours near the Walls of *Jerusalem*, and thence to *Bethlehem* in 2 hours, through the Valley of *Bephaim*, famous for being the Theatre of *David*'s Victories, 2 *Sam.* 5. 23. In this Road we met, 1. With the House of *Simeon*, who having our Saviour in his arms sung his *Nunc dimittis*. 2. The Turpentine-tree under which the Virgin is said to have rested, when she carried Christ in her arms to present him to the Lord at *Jerusalem*. 3. A Convent dedicated to *Elias*, where the *Greek* Monks pretend to shew the impression of his Body in a stone that serv'd for his Bed; near to which is the Well of the Star that appear'd to the Wise Men, which there re-appear'd to them. 4. *Rachel*'s Tomb, mention'd *Gen.* 35. 19. which is a Modern Structure, but probably the true place of her Interment.

Being arriv'd at *Bethlehem*, we went to all the Holy places belonging to it, *viz.* the place where our Lord is said to be born, the Manger wherein he is said to be laid, the Chappel of *Joseph* his supposed Father, that of the Innocents, those of St. *Jerom*, of St. *Paula* and *Eustechium*, and of *Eusebius* of *Cremona*, and the School of St. *Jerom*; all which places I only name, being afore describ'd by Mr. *Sandys*.

From the top of the Church we had a view of *Tekoah*, about 9 Miles distant Southward, of *Engedi* about three Miles Eastward, and of a high Hill call'd the *Franks* Hill, being defended by the *Crusaders* 40 Years after the loss of *Jerusalem*.

April 1. We went to see the remarkable places near *Bethlehem*, and first to the famous Fountains, Pools and Gardens, which are said to be King *Solomon*'s, to which he seems to allude, *Eccl.* 2. 5, 6. The Pools are three in number, so dispos'd, that the Waters of the uppermost descend into the 2d, and the 2d into the 3d. The breadth in all is the same, being about 90 paces, but the length is different, that of the 1st being about 160 paces, that of the 2d 200, and the 3d 220. About 140 paces from them, is the Fountain from which they chiefly derive their Waters, which the Friars will have to be that seal'd Fountain to which the Spouse is compar'd, *Cant.* 4. 12. Here you find 4 places where the Water rises, from which it is convey'd into a Basin, and from thence is carried by a Subterraneous passage into the Pools; and by the way there is an Aquæduct of brick Pipes, which receives part of the stream, and carries it by many turnings about the Mountains to *Jerusalem*. These Pools may probably be the same with *Solomon*'s, because there is not the like store of good Spring-water to be met with any where else in *Palestine*. From these Memorials of *Solomon* we return'd to visit some places nearer *Bethlehem*, where we saw the Field in which they say the Shepherds were watching their Flocks, when they receiv'd the glad tydings of Christ's birth; and hard by the Village where they dwelt, and an old Nunnery built by St. *Paula*, in which she died; all which places lie Eastward about half a Mile from the Convent. But to the Westward we saw *David*'s Well, which he so much thirsted after. 2 *Sam.* 23. 15. and a little beyond it some Remains of an old Aquæduct, which convey'd the Waters from *Solomon*'s Pools to *Jerusalem*; which is said to have been the genuine Work of *Solomon*, but is now destroy'd by the *Turks*. Returning from this place, we went to see the *Greek* and *Armenian* Convents, contiguous to that of the *Latines*, each of which has a several door opening into the Chappel of the Holy Manger; and then we went to the Grot of the Blessed Virgin, within 40 Yards of the Convent, where she is said to have hid her self, and her Divine Babe, from the fury of *Herod*, some time before their departure into *Egypt*. This Grot is hollow'd into a chalky Rock, whose whiteness they say proceeds from some drops of the Virgin's Milk, that fell from her Breast while she was sucking the holy Infant; upon which account, they believe that this Chalk has a miraculous vertue of encreasing Womens Milk, and for that end 'tis often taken by Women *Turks*, *Arabs* and *Christians*, and they say with very good effect.

April 2. Having presented the Guardian with two *Chequeens* for his Civilities to us, we went from *Bethlehem* to go visit the Wilderness, and Convent of St. *John Baptist*, and in this Stage we first cross'd that famous Valley in which the Angel is said in one Night to have destroy'd many thousands in the Army of *Sennacherib*; and then we came to *Boatshellah*, in which they say no *Turk* can live above two Years, by which Report the *Christians* have it to themselves. A little further we came to a Fountain, where they told us, but falsly, that *Philip* baptiz'd the *Ethiopian* Eunuch; and then to the Village of St. *Philip*, at which ascending a steep Hill, we came to the Wilderness of St *John*, which is very rocky, but is well cultivated, and produces great plenty of Corn, Vines and Olive-trees. And here we saw the Cave and Fountain where the *Baptist* is said to have led an austere Life, *Mat.* 3. 4. Near this Cell are some Locust-trees, which the Friars say yielded him Sustenance, tho' they appear to be planted much later than his time. After this, as we went to the Convent of St. *John*, we pass'd along one side of the Valley of *Elah*, where *David* slew the Giant, 1 *Sam.* 17. and had a view of *Modin*, on the top of a Hill, the Burying-place of the *Maccabees*.

When we came near the Convent, we visited a place which they call the House of *Elizabeth* Mother of the *Baptist*; and in the Ruins of the Convent that was formerly here, is a Grotto in which they say the B. Virgin saluted *Elizabeth*, and pronounc'd her divine Magnificat, *Luke* 1. 46. The Convent of St. *John* has been rebuilt from the ground within these 4 Years, and is now a large square Building, and near all over; and has in it a very beautiful Church, at the North-end of which you go down 7 Marble-steps to a stately Altar, erected over the place where they say the *Baptist* was born. As we return'd from St. *John*'s to *Jerusalem*, we saw a Convent of the *Greeks*, taking its Name from the Holy Cross, because they say here is the Earth that nourish'd the Root that bore the Tree that yielded the Timber that made the Cross; and under the high Altar you are shown the hole in the ground where the stump of the Tree stood. After this we return'd to *Jerusalem*, and had our feet wash'd by the Guardian, and kiss'd by every Friar, who did all sing Latin Hymns at the time.

April 3. We went to see the Office of the Holy Fire.

a

a Ceremony kept up by the *Greeks* and *Armenians*, who believe that every *Easter-Eve* a miraculous flame descends from Heaven into the Holy Sepulchre, and kindles all the Lamps and Candles there. When we came to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, we found it crouded with a numerous Mob, who began their disorders by running round the Holy Sepulchre with all their might, crying out *Huia*, *i.e. This is he*, or *this is it*; by which they express the truth of the Christian Religion. After this they began to act many antick tricks, like Mad-men; sometimes they dragg'd one another round the Sepulchre, sometimes they set one Man upon anothers shoulders, and so march'd round; and sometimes they tumbled round the Sepulchre like Tumblers on a Stage, and acted the rudest things on this Occasion. This frantick humour continued from 12 to 4; and then the *Greeks* first set out in a Procession round the Sepulchre, who were immediately follow'd by the *Armenians*, in which Order they thrice compass'd the Sepulchre, producing their Standards, Crucifixes, and embroider'd Habits, upon this Occasion. Towards the end of this Procession, a Pigeon came fluttering into the Cupolo over the Sepulchre, at which there was a great shout; and the *Latines* told us, this was let fly by the *Greeks*, to deceive the People into an Opinion that it was a visible descent of the H. Ghost. The Procession being over, the Suffragan of the *Greek* Patriarch, and the principal *Armenian* Bishop, approach'd the door of the Sepulchre, and cutting the string with which it was fasten'd and seal'd entred in, shutting the door after him, all the Candles and Lamps within having been before extinguish'd in the presence of the *Turks*. And then the Exclamations were double as the Miracle drew nearer, and the People press'd with such vehemence to the door, that the *Turks* could not keep them off with the severest drubs, which they did out of a great desire to light their Candles at the holy Flame, as soon as it is brought out of the Sepulchre, for that is counted most sacred and pure, as coming immediately from Heaven. The two Miracle-mongers had not been above a minute in the Sepulchre, when the glimmering of the holy Fire was seen through some chinks of the door, which made the Mob as mad as any in *Bedlam*. Then presently came out the two Priests with blazing Torches in their hands, which they held up at the door of the Sepulchre, while the People throng'd with mighty Zeal to obtain a part of the first and purest flame, and could not be kept off by the hard blows of the *Turks* Clubs, who laid on without mercy. Those that got the Fire apply'd it to their Beards and Faces, pretending it would not burn like an Earthly flame, but I saw none that endur'd the trial long enough to make good the pretension. However, so many Tapers were presently lighted, that the whole Church seem'd to be in a flame; and with this Illumination the Ceremony ended. Those within the Church acted their part with great quickness and dexterity, but the behaviour of the Rabble without, which would better become a Bacchanale than a Christian Festival, very much discredited the Miracle. The *Latins* take a great deal of pains to expose this Ceremony as a shameful Imposture, and a Scandal to the Christian Religion, but the *Greeks* and *Armenians* pin their Faith upon it, and make their Pilgrimages chiefly upon this motive; and 'tis the unhappiness of their Priests, that having acted the cheat so long, they are forc'd now to stand to it for fear of endangering the Apostacy of their People. After the Rout was over, when we went out of Church we saw several People about the Stone of Unction, who having store of Candles lighted with the holy Fire, were daubing pieces of Linen with the wicks of them and the melting Wax, which were design'd for Winding-sheets; for they believe, that if they are buried in a Shroud smutted with this Fire, it will secure them from Hell-fire.

April 4. being our *Easter*, we did not go abroad, the time requiring employment of another nature.

April 5. we went to see some new Curiosities; and first we came to that which is call'd St. *Peter's* Prison, from which he was deliver'd by an Angel, *Acts* 12. next we came to an old Church in the place where the House of *Zebedee* stood; then to the place where stood the Iron-gate, which open'd to St. *Peter* of its own accord; and a little further is a small Church built over the House of St. *Mark*, whither *Peter* went after his miraculous Goal-delivery. The *Syrians* who keep it, pretend to show you the Window at which *Rhoda* look'd out when *Peter* knock'd at the door. In the Church they shew a *Syriac* MS. of the New-Testament, pretended to be 852 Years old, and a little Stone-Font us'd by the Apostles in baptizing. Beyond this, in the same Street, is that which is call'd the House of St. *Thomas*, formerly a Church, now a Mosque. A little further, in another Street, is the place where they say our Lord appear'd after his Resurrection to the *Maries*, *Matt.* 28. 9. And here the *Armenians* have their Convent and Gardens, which take up all that part of Mount *Sion* that is within the Walls of the City. Their Church is built over the place where they say St. *James*, the Brother of *John*, was beheaded, *Acts* 12. 2. and on the North-side of it is shown the place of his Decollation. In this Church are two Altars set out with extraordinary splendor, deck'd with rich Mitres, Copes, Crosses of silver and gold, &c. and in the middle a Pulpit made of Tortoise-shell, and Mother of Pearl, curiously mingled and inlaid in one another. In the Anti-chappel are three large rough stones esteem'd very precious, one of them being the Stone upon which *Moses* cast the two Tables when he broke them, the other two being brought, one from the place of our Lord's Baptism, and the other from that of his Transfiguration. After this we went to another Chappel of the *Armenians*, which is said to be founded in the place where *Annas*'s House stood; and in it is shown a hole, denoting the place where one of the Officers of the High-Priest smote our Saviour, *John* 18. 22. whom the Friars will have to be the same *Malchus* whose Ear our Lord heal'd. In the Court before this Chappel is an Olive-tree, to which they say Christ was chain'd for some time by Order of *Annas* to secure him from escaping.

From the House of *Annas* we went out of *Sion-gate*, which is near to that they call the House of *Caiaphas*, where is another small Chappel of the *Armenians*. Here under the Altar, they say is the Stone which was laid to the door of our Saviour's Sepulchre, *Matt.* 27. 60. which the *Armenians* stole from the Church of the Sepulchre and brought hither; it is two Yards and half long, one Yard high, and as much broad. Here is likewise shown a Cell, said to have been our Lord's Prison till the Morning, when he was carried hence before *Pilate*; and also the place where *Peter* was frighted into a denial of his Master. A little further without the Gate, was the Church of the *Cœnaculum*, where they say Christ instituted his last Supper, which is now a Mosque. Near this is a Well, which is said to be the place where the Apostles divided to go every one to his several Charge; and close by it is the Ruin of a House, in which the Virgin is said to have breathed her last. And a little lower is the Grot in which St. *Peter* wept so bitterly for denying his Master. After this we return'd to the Convent, and by the way had a view of the beautiful Gate of the Temple.

April 6. we took another progress about the City, and going out at *Bethlehem-Gate*, and turning on the Left-hand, we came to *Bathsheba*'s Pool, where she is said to be washing her self when *David* spied her from his Palace. A little below this Pool begins the Valley of *Hinnom*, on the West-side of which is the place call'd the *Field of Blood*, now call'd *Campo Santo*, which is about 30 Yards long, and half as broad. The Corpses are let down into it through 5 holes left open for that purpose, through which we could see the Bodies under several degrees of decay. A little below the *Campo Santo* is an intricate Cave, in which the Apostles are said to have hid themselves when they forsook their Master and fled. The Valley of *Jehoshaphat* crosses the end of that of *Hinnom*, in which is the Brook *Cedron*, which is always dry except in the Winter. In this Valley of *Jehoshaphat* we first went to the Well of *Nehemiah*, so call'd because it is reputed the place where he recover'd the Fire of the Altar after the *Babylonish* Captivity, 2 *Mac.* 1. 19. A little higher is the place where *Isaiah* is said to be sawn asunder; and above that is the Pool of *Siloam*. A little further is the Fountain of the B. Virgin, and over-against it the Village call'd *Siloe*, in which *Solomon* is said to have kept his strange Wives; and above it is a Hill call'd the *Mountain of Offence*, where *Solomon* built the high places, 1 *Kings* 11. 7. Not far from it they show another Field of Blood, where *Judas* met with his compounded death, *Matt.* 27. 5. Here also they show'd us two noble Antiquities, the Sepulchre of *Zachary*, and the Pillar of *Absalom*; and close by is the Sepulchre of *Jehoshaphat*. From hence keeping in the Valley, we saw the Sepulchres of the B. Virgin, St. *Anna* and *Joseph*. After this, going up the Hill, we saw a broad Stone on which they say St. *Stephen* was martyr'd, and not far from it a Grot into which the *Jews* cast his Body; from whence we went to St. *Stephen*'s Gate of the City.

April 7. we set out again to see the Holy places upon Mount *Olivet*, and as we ascended the Mount we saw certain Grotto's, call'd the Sepulchres of the Prophets. A little higher you come to the place where they say Christ utter'd his Prophecy concerning the destruction

of *Jerusalem*, *Matt.* 24. and on the Right-hand is the place where they say he dictated a second time the *Pater-Noster* to his Disciples, *Luke* 11. 1, 2. At the top of the Hill you come to the place of our Lord's Ascension. Here was anciently a large Church built in honour of that triumph, in which they shew the print of our Saviour's foot, but it is now us'd for a Mosque, as many other holy places about *Jerusalem* are, whether out of devotion or lucre I do not determine. Two furlongs Northward is the highest place of Mount *Olivet*, on which stood a high Tower call'd *Viri Galilæi*, in memory of the Apparition of the two Angels to the Apostles after Christ's ascension, which about two Years since was demolish'd by a *Turk*, who bought the Field in which it stood. From this place we descended the Mount by another way, and about midway they shew the place where Christ beheld the City and wept over it, *Luke* 19. 41. A little lower they shew *Gethsemane*, about 57 Yards square, lying between the foot of Mount *Olivet* and the Brook *Cedron*. It is well planted with Olive-trees, which are believ'd to be the same that stood here in our Saviour's time; which Opinion made the Olives and Oil an excellent Commodity in *Spain*. At the upper-part of the Garden is a flat ledge of Rocks, which is said to be the place on which *Peter*, *James* and *John*, fell asleep during our Saviour's agony; and just by is a Grotto, which is said to be the place in which our Saviour underwent that bitter part of his Passion. Not far off is a small shred of ground 12 Yards long and one broad, which is said to be the path on which *Judas* walk'd up to Christ, and said, *Hail, Master*, and kiss'd him; which narrow path is separated by a Wall out of the midst of the Garden, as a *terra damnata*; which is the more remarkable because it is done by the *Turks*, who, as well as *Christians*, detest the ground on which that infamous treachery was acted.

April 8. we went to see the Palace of *Pilate*, which is not far from St. *Stephen*'s Gate, from whence we had a prospect of the place where the Temple stood, which is all that is allow'd us, for we cannot go within the borders of it without forfeiting Life or Religion. It lies upon the top of Mount *Moriah*, over against Mount *Olivet*, the Valley of *Jehoshaphat* lying between. It was about 590 of my paces long, and 370 broad; in the middle of the Area stand now a Mosque, which is said to be built on the ground where formerly stood the *Sanctum Sanctorum*.

In this pretended House of *Pilate* is shown the Room where Christ was mock'd with the Ensigns of Royalty, and buffeted by the Soldiers. As you come out is a descent, where was formerly the *Scala Sancta*. On the other side of the Street is the Room where they say our Saviour was scourged, which is now a Weaver's Shop. Returning from *Pilate*'s Palace, we past along the dolorous Way, in which we saw, 1. The place where *Pilate* brought our Lord forth to the People, and said, *Behold the Man*. 2. Where Christ fainted thrice under the weight of the Cross. 3. Where the Blessed Virgin swoon'd at so tragical a spectacle. 4. Where *Veronica* presented him the Handerchief to wipe his bleeding brows. And, 5. Where the Soldiers compell'd *Simon* to bear his Cross. All which places I need only to name, being describ'd by Mr. *Sandys*.

April 9. we saw the Pool of *Bethesda*, which is 120 paces long, 40 broad, and 8 deep, but no water in it; and there we saw some Arches, which are said to be the Porches in which the Lame, Halt and Blind sate, *John* 5.

From hence we went to the Convent of St. *Anne*, where there is a large Church, and under it a Grotto, where they say the Blessed Virgin was born. Near this Church they shew the *Pharisees* House, where *Mary Magdalen* wash'd Christ's feet with her tears, and wip'd them with her hair, *Luke* 7. 38. In the Afternoon we saw the stately Pool of Mount *Gihon*, which is 106 paces long, and 67 broad, lin'd with a Wall, and well stor'd with water.

April 10. we went to take our leave of the Holy Sepulchre, which being the last time, the *Turks* allow free admittance to all People without any Fee, not only to the poor, but to the lewd, who prophan'd it as much as when the Heathen celebrated here their *Aphrodisia*.

April 11. Now began the *Turks* Byram, and we kept at home to avoid the affronts usual at such Festivals.

April 12 & 13. we prepar'd for our departure, and how to avoid the *Arabs*, by going along with the Mosolem.

April 14. we went with a small Present to wait on the Mosolem, who set out the next Morning, and before our departure I took the Measure of the City, going out at *Bethlehem-Gate*, and walking round about to the same Gate again, and found it in circumference to be 4630 paces, and 10 of my paces amounting to 9 Yards; this number makes 4167 Yards, which is just two Miles and a half.

April 15. This Morning having receiv'd our *Diplomata*, to certify that we had visited the Holy places, and presented the Convent with 50 Dollars a Man for their trouble, we set out with the Mosolem, and lodg'd at *Kane-Leban*. The Country People being at Plough, in order to sow Cotton, us'd Goads of an extraordinary size, being 8 foot long, having at one end a sharp prickle to drive the Oxen, and at the other a Paddle to cleanse the Plough, which is held by the same Person that drives; and such a Goad it seems to be that *Shamgar* made the great Slaughter with, *Jud.* 3. 31.

April 16. leaving *Kane-Leban*, we past by *Napulosa* and *Samaria*, and came to the Fountain *Selee*, where we lodg'd.

April 17. we travell'd in the same Road we came to *Caphar-Arab*, and then we left that Road, resolving to cross the Plain of *Esdraelon* and visit *Nazareth*, which we did, after paying our Caphars to Emir *Chibly*.

April 18. *Nazareth* is now a small Village, on a high Hill, where we were treated at a Convent of some Latin Fathers, who live in perpetual fear of the *Arabs*. The Church of *Nazareth* stands in a Cave, said to be the place where the Blessed Virgin received the Message from the Angel, *Hail thou that art highly favour'd*, &c. *Luke* 1. 28. It resembles the figure of a Cross, whereof the Tree is 14 paces long and 6 over, and the Traverse is 9 paces long and 4 broad; just at the Section are two Granite Pillars, whereof one stands at the place where the Angel, the other where the Blessed Virgin stood at at the time of the Annunciation.

After this we went to see the House of *Joseph*, where they say the Son of God liv'd for near 30 Years in subjection to Man, *Luke* 2. 51. and near this they shew the Synagogue, where our Lord preach'd that Sermon which so much exasperated his Country-men, *Luke* 4. Here are the Ruins of two Churches built by *Helena*.

April 19. About two hours distance from *Nazareth* Eastward is Mount *Tabor*, a high Mount round and beautiful, standing in the Plain of *Esdraelon* about 3 furlongs within the Plain. This is thought to be the Mountain on which our Lord was transfigur'd, *Matt.* 17. which has a plain Area at top very fertile, on which in several places are Cisterns of good water, and three Grotto's representing three Tabernacles, which St. *Peter* propos'd to erect, when he said, *Let us make three Tabernacles*, &c. And here I cannot but observe, that almost all Passages and Histories of the Gospel, are said by them who shew the places, to have been done in Grotto's. Thus the places of the Blessed Virgin's Birth, of the Annunciation, of the Virgins Salutation of *Elizabeth*, of the *Baptist*'s and *Christ*'s Nativity, of St. *Peter*'s Repentance, and the Transfiguration; all these places are said to be Grotto's, tho' 'tis no ways probable that so many various actions, with such circumstances as seem sometimes to require places of another nature, should be done in Grotto's.

From the top of *Tabor* you have a most delightful prospect: On the North-west you discern the *Mediterranean*, and all round you have the beautiful Plains of *Esdraelon* and *Galilee*, where you have a view of many places memorable for the Resort and Miracles of Christ; at the bottom stands *Daberah*, which is said to take its Name from *Deborah*, and near it is the Fountain of *Kishon*. Eastward you see Mount *Hermon*, and at the foot of it *Nani*, famous for our Lord's raising the Widow's Son there, *Luke* 7. 14. and *Endor*, where *Saul* consulted the Witch. Southward you see the Mountains of *Gilboa*, fatal to *Saul* and his Sons. Due East you discover the Sea of *Tiberias*, and close by it a steep Hill, down which the Herd of Swine ran and perish'd in the waters, *Matt.* 8. 32. Towards the North appears that which they call the Mountain of Beatitudes, where our Saviour deliver'd his Sermon, *Matt.* 5. 6, 7. And not far from this little Hill is the City *Saphet*, that stands upon a high Mountain, to which being then in view, our Saviour may be suppos'd to allude, when he says, *Matt.* 5. 14. *A City set on a Hill cannot be hid.* From Mount *Tabor*, we had also a sight of the place call'd *Dothami*, where they say *Joseph* was sold by his Brethren, and of the Field where our Saviour fed the Multitude with a few Loaves, and a fewer Fishes. After dinner we went to see the Mountain of the *Precipitation*, *i. e.* the brow of the Hill where they say the *Nazarites* would have thrown down our Saviour, *Luke* 4. had he not made a miraculous escape: And here the Friars shew some holes, which they call the prints of Christ's fingers, made in the hard stone, when he resisted the violence offer'd him.

April 20. we directed our Course to *Acra*, pass'd in view

view of *Cana* of *Galilee*, and came to *Sepharia*, the reputed Habitation of *Joachim* and *Anna*, Parents of the Blessed Virgin; over which stands a good part of a large Church. Here begins the Plain of *Zabulon*, from whence we came to *Acra*.

April 21. At *Acra* we were treated by the *French* Consul, and came the first night to our old Lodging at *Solomon*'s Cisterns.

April 22. About three hours from *Sidon*, we were carried to see a place we had not observ'd before, which was a high rocky Mountain; on the side of which were hewn a multitude of Grots, to the number of 200, as they were counted, which have an Entrance two foot square, and a Room within for the most part 4 yards square, which seem'd to be design'd for the use of the Living, and not of the Dead, because some of the Cells are no more than one yard square, and in the Rock are Cisterns for storing up water.

April 23. we continued at *Sidon*, being generously treated by the *French*.

April 24. having gone through the Olive-Yards of *Sidon*, we ascended *Libanus*, till we came to a Fountain call'd *Ambus-lee*.

April 25. This day we arriv'd at the highest ridge of the Mountain, where the Snow lay close by the Road; and then we begun to descend on the other side, and came to a Village call'd *Meshgarah*, where a Caphar was demanded by the *Druses*, who possess these Mountains. From hence, in one hour, we entred into a Valley call'd *Bocat*: This seems to be the same with *Bicath-Aven*, mention'd *Amos* 1. 5. together with *Eden* and *Damascus*, for there is very near it a place call'd *Eden* to this day; in this Valley there runs a large River call'd *Setane*, which falls at last into the River *Casimir*, sally call'd *Elentherus*. We cross'd a Bridge, and pitch'd our Tents on its Bank.

April 26. We pass'd through the Valley *Bocat*, and came to the foot of *Antilibanus*; and having pass'd by several Villages, we went through a narrow Clift between two rocky Mountains to *Demus*, a small Caphar.

April 27. This Morning we came to the River *Barrady*, which supplies all the Gardens and the City of *Damascus* with water; we cross'd over it at a Bridge, and our Road ascending brought us to the brink of a high precipice, from whence the *Turks* say their Prophet took a view of the City *Damascus*, which he found so pleasant and beautiful that he would enter into it, because he said there is but one Paradise design'd for Man, and he would not take his in this World. It is as near as I could guess about two Miles long, but compass'd with Gardens, extending to 30 Miles round; in which are Fruit-trees of all kinds, and many Turrets, Steeples and Summer-houses, peeping out from green boughs.

The River *Barrady*, near its Spring-head, is divided into three streams, whereof the middle most runs directly to *Damascus*, and is distributed in the City; the other two are drawn round to the borders of the Gardens, so that there is not a Garden but has a fine quick stream, which serves not only for watering the place, but for Fountains and other Water-works. This River was call'd by the *Greeks* and *Romans Chrysorrhoas*; but as for *Arbana* and *Pharpar*, Rivers of *Damascus*, mention'd 2 *Kings* 5. 12. I could find no memorial of them, but doubtless they were branches of the River *Barrady*. We continu'd a good while upon the Precipice, as being loth to leave such a charming prospect, tho' it allur'd us down to the City. Coming down the Hill into the Plains, we were conducted by a *Janisary* into the City, where we observ'd the Garden-walls to be made of great pieces of Earth, fashion'd like Bricks, and hardned in the Sun, being two yards long and one broad, and half of one thick. We also observ'd their method of scowring the Channels: They put a great bough of a Tree in the water, and fasten it to a Yoke of Oxen, upon the bough there sits a good heavy fellow to press it down and drive the Oxen; and thus the bough is dragg'd all along the Channel, and serves at once both to cleanse the bottom, and also to fatten the water; for the greater benefit of the Gardens.

April 28. We walk'd out to take a view of the City: And here we found all the Houses on the out-side built either with Sun-burnt Brick or *Flemish* Wall, very coarsely daub'd over; and so by the washing of the Houses upon a violent Rain, the whole City becomes as it were a Quagmire. But the Gates in these Mud-walls are adorn'd with Marble Portals, carv'd and inlaid with great beauty; and on the inside you find generally a large square Court, beautified with variety of fragrant Trees and Marble Fountains, and Duans floor'd with Marble, richly gilded, and furnish'd with Carpets and Cushions. In the next place we went to see the Church of St. *John Baptist*, now converted into a Mosque, which no Christian may enter into. Its Gates are vastly large, cover'd with Brass, stampt over with *Arab* Characters; and within it is spacious and lofty, built with three Isles, between which are rows of polish'd Marble of great beauty. In this Church is kept the Head of St. *John*, with other Relicks so holy, that 'tis death for a *Turk* to go into the Room where they are. From the Church we went to the Castle, and being admitted within the Gate we saw store of ancient Arms and Armour, and among the rest a *Roman* Balista, and a Chain cut in stone.

April 29. we went to see the Cavalcade of the *Hadgees* setting out for *Mecca*, which has been describ'd before. After this we went to see the Ager *Damascenus*, a beautiful Meadow just without the City, divided in the middle by a branch of the River *Barrady*; and 'tis a current Tradition here, that *Adam* was made of the Earth of this Field. Adjoyning to this is a large Hospital, enclos'd on the South-side by a stately Mosque, and on the other sides with Cloysters and Lodgings. Returning hence homeward we saw a beautiful Bagnio, and not far from it a Coffee-house capable of entertaining 4 or 500 People. It had two Quarters for Guests, one for Summer, and the other for Winter. That for Summer was a small Island, wash'd round with a large swift stream, shaded over head with Trees, and with Mats when the boughs fail. And here we found a multitude of *Turks* in the Duans, regaling themselves with Greens and Water, which two, with a beautiful face, according to their Proverb, are a perfect Antidote against Melancholy. In the Afternoon we went to visit what they call the House of *Ananias*, who restor'd sight to St. *Paul*, *Acts* 9. 17. And the place shown for it is a small Grotto, containing a *Christian* Altar and a *Turkish* Praying-place, seated too near one another. Our next Walk was out of the East-gate, to see the place of St. *Paul*'s Vision, which is about half a Mile from the City, close by the Way-side. A little nearer the City is a small Timber-structure with an Alter in it, where you are told St. *Paul* rested some time in his Way to the City after the Vision, *Acts* 9. 8. Being return'd to the City, we were shown the Gate at which St. *Paul* was let down in a Basket, *Acts* 9. 25. This Gate is at present wall'd up, by reason of its vicinity to the East-gate, which renders it of little use. In the City we saw the Patriarch of it, who told me there were more than 1200 of the *Greek* Communion in that City.

April 30. we went to visit the Gardens, and spent a day in one of them, where we found a pleasant Summer-house, with a plentiful stream of water running through it, and the Garden thick set with Fruit-trees. In visiting these Gardens, the *Franks* are oblig'd either to walk on foot, or ride on Asses, (which stand there ready to be hir'd) for the *Turks* will not allow them to ride a Horse.

May 1. we spent in another Garden, whose Summer-house was more splendid, and had greater variety of Fountains.

May 2. some of us went to *Sidonaia*, a *Greek* Convent, about 4 hours from *Damascus* to the Northward, and by the way we saw on the Right-hand a very high Hill, reputed the same on which *Cain* and *Abel* offer'd Sacrifices, and where the latter was slain by the former. *Sidonaiia* is situated at the further side of a large Vale, on the top of a Rock, which would be inaccessible but for the steps that are cut in it all the way up. It is fenc'd at top with a Wall which encloses the Convent, which was at first founded by *Justinian*, and is at present possess'd by 20 *Greek* Monks, and 40 Nuns, who live promiscuously together. Upon this Rock, and in a little compass round about it, are no less than 16 Churches or Oratories, dedicated to several Names, 1. To St. *John*. 2. To St. *Paul*. 3. To St. *Thomas*. 4. To St. *Babylas*. 5. To St. *Barbara*. 6. To St. *Christopher*. 7. To St. *Joseph*. 8. To St. *Lazarus*. 9. To the Blessed Virgin. 10. To St. *Demetrius*. 11. To St. *Saba*. 12. To St. *Peter*. 13. To St. *George*. 14. To *All-Saints*. 15. To the *Ascension*. 16. To the Transfiguration of our Lord; from all which we may conclude, that this place was highly esteem'd for Holiness. In the Chappel here made use of by the Convent for their daily Service, they pretend to a great Miracle, of which they give this account. In this Church they had once a little Picture of the Blessed Virgin, very famous for the many Cures and Blessings granted to Supplicants. This Picture was stole away by a sacrilegious Rogue, who had not kept it long but it turn'd into a Body of Flesh; which wonderful event struck him with such remorse, that he carried back the Prize, and begg'd pardon for his Crime. The

Monks

Monks having recover'd so great a Jewel, to secure it for the future, laid it in a Chest of Stone, and placing it in a little cavity behind the high Altar, fix'd an Iron-grate before it. Upon the Grates hang abundance of Toys, being the Offerings of many Voraries for the success of their Prayers made at this Shrine. Under the same Chest, in which the Incarnate picture was deposited, they always place a small silver Basin, to receive the holy Oil, which they pretend distils from the enclosed Image, and does wonderful Cures in many distempers, especially those affecting the eyes. On the East-side of the Rock is an ancient Sepulchre hollow'd in the firm stone, which is about 8 yards square, and contains 12 Chests for Corpses. At the entrance are 6 Statues in 3 Niches, 2 in each; at the Pedestals are some *Greek* words very dark.

May 3. we went to see the Street call'd *Straight*, *Acts* 9. 11. in which is shown the House of *Judas*, with whom St. *Paul* lodg'd; and in the same House is an old Tomb said to be *Ananias*'s, much reverenc'd by the *Turks*, who keep a Lamp always burning over it.

May 4. In an hour and half we came to a small Village call'd *Sinir*, just by which, on the top of a Hill, is an old Structure, suppos'd to be the Tomb of *Abel*, which is 30 yards long, and thought to be but just proportion'd to his stature; from whence the adjacent Country, in old times, was call'd *Abylene*.

May 5. we pass'd by the Fountain of *Barrady*, and came to a Village call'd *Surgawch*, from whence we arriv'd a second time in the Valley of *Bocat*, and hence going Northerly, we came in three hours to *Balbeck*, which is suppos'd to be the ancient *Heliopolis*, or City of the Sun, and so the word imports; for *Baal*, tho' it imports all Idols of whatever Sex, is very often appropriated to the Sun, which is the Sovereign Idol of this Country. The City has a pleasant situation on the East-side of the Valley of *Bocats*, of a square figure, compass'd with a good Wall, tho' its Houses are mean, as they are usually in *Turkish* Villages. There is in it a noble Ruin which was anciently a Heathen Temple, in which we observ'd, 1st, a round Pile of Building all of Marble, encircled with Columns of the *Corinthian* Order very beautiful, which support a Cornish that runs all round the Structure, of no ordinary state and beauty; and what remains of it at present is in a very tottering condition, but yet the *Greeks* use it for a Church, which should excite them to a little more fervour in their Prayers than they generally use, for they are seemingly the most indevout at their Divine Service of any People in the Christian World. But the further description of this Temple, together with a Cut of it, the Reader may see in the Reverend Mr. *Maundrel*, p. 133, 134, 135.

But besides this Temple, here is another Curiosity, which is so strange, that a Man may be thought to strain the Privilege of Travellers in relating it, and that is a large piece of the old Wall, which encompass'd all the Structures in the City; a Wall made of such prodigious great stones, that the Natives here ascribe the building of it to the Devil. Three of the stones we measur'd, and found them to extend to 61 yards in length, whereof one was 21, and the other two 20 yards long; these three stones lay in one row end to end. Here was also a single Column of the *Tuscan* Order about 14 yards high, and one yard and half diameter, having a Channel cut from the bottom to the top.

May 6. we left *Balbeck*, and went a-cross the Valley; and as we pass'd by the Walls of the City, we saw many stones inscrib'd with *Roman* Letters, which show that the Walls are made of the Ruins of the old City.

In two hours we saw near the Road an old Pillar, 19 yards high, and 5 foot in diameter. In an hour more we came to the other side of the Valley at the foot of *Anti-libanus*; and ascending the Mountain, we saw an old Lake call'd *Limone*, and thence in an hour more we arriv'd at the Snow. Here we lodg'd all night on the top of *Libanus*, which is free from Rocks, but very barren, and cover'd with a sort of white Slates. It is so high, that it proves a Conservatory of abundance of Snow, which thawing in the Summer, supplies with water the Rivers and Fountains in the Valleys below; and in the Snow we saw the print of the feet of wild Beasts, the sole Proprietors of these upper parts of the Mountain.

May 7. we went almost four hours upon Snow, which being frozen bore us and our Horses, and then descending about an hour, we came to a Fountain and a milder Region. From hence we design'd for *Canobine*, but our Guide being at a loss we steer'd to *Tripoly*, where we were nobly treated.

May 8. Mr. Consul *Hastings* carried us to see the Castle of *Tripoly*, which is situate on a Hill that commands the City; but being now unprovided with Arms, it serves rather for a Prison than a Garrison. There was in it a poor Christian call'd *Sheck Eunice*, a *Maronite*, one that had formerly renounc'd his Faith and turn'd *Mahometan*, but in his declining age retracted his Apostacy, and died to attone it; for he was Impal'd by Order of the Bassa two days after we had left *Tripoly*, which kind of punishment is certainly one of the greatest barbarities that can be offer'd to Humane Nature. The Execution is done after this manner: They take a Post about the bigness of a Man's leg, 8 or 9 foot long, which they make sharp at one end, and force the Criminal to carry to the place of Execution; and there they thrust in the Stake at his Fundament, and then taking him by the legs, draw on his body upon it till the point of the Stake appears at his shoulders, and then they erect the Stake, and fasten it in a hole dug in the ground. The Criminal sitting in this posture, does sometimes drink, smoke, and talk, for 24 hours; but generally, after he has remain'd an hour in this posture, one of the By-standers is permitted to give him a gracious stab to the heart, which puts an end to his unexpressible misery.

May 9. having cross'd the Plain of *Tripoly*, we came to the foot of *Libanus*; and thence ascending, in 4 hours we pass'd by a Village call'd *Eden*, and in two hours and half more we came to the Cedars which grow amongst the Snow, near the highest part of *Lebanon*, where we found some very old and of a prodigious bulk, of which sort I counted 16, and others younger, of a smaller size. I measur'd one of the largest, and found it 12 yards 6 inches in girt, and 37 yards in the spread of its boughs. It was still found, and about five yards from the ground was divided into five limbs, and each of which was equal to a great Tree. After we had staid about half an hour in this place, the Clouds began to thicken and fly upon the ground, which so obscur'd the Road, that with much ado we found the Way that goes down to *Canobine*; which is a Convent of the *Maronites*, and the Seat of a Patriarch, and is pleasantly situated near a Rupture in *Libanus*, cloath'd with Greens, and refresh'd with Fountains. It is seated on the North-side of this Chasm, about the midway in the Mountain, and was founded by *Theodosius the Great* at the mouth of a great Cave, having a few Rooms fronting outward that have the light of the Sun, the rest being all underground. The Valley of *Canobine* was anciently much resorted to for Religious retirement, as appears from the many Hermitages, Cells and Monasteries, here to be seen.

May 10. I took my Leave of the Patriarch and return'd to *Tripoly*, through a path cut in the side of the aforesaid Rupture.

May 11. we took our Leaves of our worthy Friends at *Tripoly*, and travelling the same way we came, we arriv'd in 8 days at the *Hony-Kane*, and found many of our *Aleppine* Friends there. All that occurr'd to us new in these days travel, was a particular way us'd by the Country-people in gathering Corn, which they pluck up by handfuls from the roots that they may lose none of their Straw, which is generally very short, and necessary for the sustenance of their Cattel, no Hay being made here. This is their practice in all places of the East I have seen, and seems to give light to that expression of the Psalmist, *Psal.* 129. 6. *which withereth afore it be plucked up*; and tho' there is mention in the next Verse of a Mower, yet being such as fills not his hand, this rather confirms the former sense.

FINIS.

Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca.

VOL. II. LIB. 4.

VOYAGES
TO THE
South Sea, several Parts of *America*, &c.

CHAP. I.

Sir John Narborough's *Voyage to the Streights of* Magellan, &c.

1669. May 15. 1669. HAVING received a Commission to command his Majesty's Ship the *Sweepstakes*, then at *Depford* in the River of *Thames*, set out at his Majesty's proper Charge, burthen 300 Tuns, with 36 Cannon and proportionable Ammunition, mann'd with 80 Men, and provided with 14 Months Provisions at full Allowance; instead of Beer we had 4 half Tuns of Brandy, and Stores of all sorts for 12 Months; as likewise Craft for Fishing and Fowling, as Hooks, Lines, Nets, 12 Fowling Pieces, Lead to make Shot, &c.

Sunday. Septem. 26. 1669. We began our Voyage in Company of the *Batchellor* Pink, burthen 70 Tuns, carrying 4 Pieces of Ordnance, with Ammunition in proportion; mann'd with Nineteen Men and One Boy, victualled for Twelve Months at full Allowance, Fishing and Fowling Craft; besides of the following Goods to the value of 300 Pounds, which were to be exchanged with the Natives at his Majesty's Cost, *viz. Knives, Scissars, Glasses, Beads, Hatchets, Bills, Hoes, Nails, Needles, Pins, Pipes, Bells, Boxes, Daffels Linnen, Cloth, Osenbrigs, Tobacco, Pipes*, &c.

Wednesd. Septem. 29. Hazy weather, the Wind North West by West with a fresh gale: About 12 a Clock at Noon I stood to the South Westward as near as I could; the *Lizard* bore N. of me a little to the East, about 12 Leagues distance, at 98 *d.* 35 *m.* Latitude: *Lizard* in *England* lies at 50 *d.* 10 *m.* Latitude, and in Longitude East from the Meridian of the West part of St. *Michael*, one of the *Azore's* Islands, 18 *d.* 30 *m.* Taking my departure from the *Lizard*, I intend to keep my daily Account of the difference of my Longitude from that Meridian.

Octob. 17. I made the Isle of *Madera*, having a high Land and irregular Hills, cover'd with Wood on the top and down the sides; as also Vines; planted by the *Portugueses*, who also make Sugar here. The chief City call'd *Fonchiale*, is seated at 32 *d.* 10 *m.* of North Latitude, and in Longitude West from the *Lizard* of *England*, 10 *d.* 1 *m.* and Meridian distance 143 Leagues, on a Bay at the South side of the Isle, just upon the Seashore, and is well wall'd, and provided with a good Artillery. Its length is about an *English* Mile, and its breadth 3 quarters of a Mile. A fair Rivulet carries a fresh Water Stream into the Sea, in the middle of the Bay, from under a spacious Arch in the Wall of the Town; near which Ships may ride within the reach of a good Cannon. Near the Shore in the Bay you see abundance of Peeble-Stones, and Rocks in other places; to the East side it has deep Ground. The *Desarts* are certain high, barren and rocky Isles, at the S. E. point of *Madera*, about a Miles distance from the Shore. They treat to the S. E. The Channel betwixt those Isles and the *Mederas* is so deep as to be passable without any danger, with very little Wind at N. W. and fair Weather, Course South West. 1669.

Madera. *Fonchiale.* *The Desarts.*

I make my Course from *Fonchiale* Bay till to Day at Noon S. South West, distance sailed 34 Miles 6 tenths, departure West 13 Miles, difference Latitude 00 *d.* 32 *m.* Latitude by Account 31 *d.* 38 *m.* Meridian distance from the *Lizard* West 147 Leagues 1 Mile. Longitude from the *Lizard* West 10 *d.* 17 *m.* Difference of Longitude from *Fonchiale* West 00 *d.* 16 *m.* About Noon I saw the Isle of *Madera*, bearing North by East, at about 11 Leagues distance; it makes in a bluff Body at the West, and treats to the East. The Course in the Afternoon South West, little Wind at Night; I order'd my Master to Steer his best and nearest Course with all the Sail he could make to the Isle of St. *Jago*, yet so as not to leave the Company of the *Batchelor* Pink. Sunday 17.

Saturday *October* 23. This day in the forenoon I cross'd the *Tropic* of *Cancer*, with a Gale from the North by East; all my Men in good Health, many of them having been with me in the *Indies* before, were let Blood, a thing I had in my former Voyages to St. *Helena*, and the Coast of *Guinea*, found by Experience to be a great Preservation against the Calentures, and other Distempers of those hot Climates; and in all those Voyages, nor in two years in the Mediterranean Sea, nor at the *Canaries*, I ever felt one day's Distemper, which I attributed to my breathing always a Vein as often I approach'd to the *Equinoctial*.

Thursday *October* 28. In the Morning with a stiff Gale from E. N. E. I got sight of the Isle of *Mayo*, bearing S. by W. about 8 Leagues distance: It appears high and craggy to the East part, but to the North West part are low Lands near the Shoar; It is 18 Leagues distant to South by West from *Bonaviste*.

The Island of *Mayo*. About Eleven in the forenoon I came to an Anchor in the Road, about a Mile from the Shore in 7 fathom Water, sandy Ground; the North point of the Road bearing North North West, half a point to the West, and the South point of the Road South East from me about a Mile and half distance. To the South of the Road are craggy Rocks near the Shore, but to the North it is low and sandy. The Road lies on the North West by West part of the Isle in a sandy Bay, a Bows shot from the Sea side: In the flat Grounds is a salt Pond, whereabouts I got ashore, and found a heap of Salt of 20 Tuns, of which I carried off about 2 Tuns and a half: This being my main intention of touching at this Isle, which I knew would stand us in great stead to preserve our Provisions. We caught here abundance of *Mullets*, some *Cavalle* and *Silver-Fish* with our Seyne Net. I continued here all Night with fair Weather, and an East Wind near a dry Shore without any Wood. The Wind continued fair from the North East.

1669.

Friday *October* 29. I sent this Morning my Boat a shore, who bought of the Inhabitants several Goats at half a piece of Eight *per* Head, and 8 Cows, very good Meat, at six pieces of Eight a Cow, but return'd the Hides: We caught also vast store of Fish, which we split and and laid in Pickle 4 Hours, afterwards they are dry'd, and afford very good Food at Sea, because they will keep in any Climate. In the forenoon I discovered a a Sail to the West, passing on the South side of the Isle, and in the afternoon several others coming from the North, which proving the *Portuguese* Fleet bound for *Brazil*, were steering their Course to *Port Praya* in the Isle of St. *Jago*; I weighed at 12 a Clock this Night, and stood away South West for *Port Praya*, with the Pink in Company.

Saturday *October* 30. This Morning I steer'd South West with a full Gale from North East by East, for the South side of St. *Jago*, where I arriv'd in *Port Praya* Road at 12 a Clock, lying South West from the Road of the Isle of *Mayo*, about 9 Leagues distant. I cast my best Bower-Anchor in 10 fathom rough Ground, the East Point bearing East of me, and the West Point West-south-west, at half a Miles distance. The *Portuguese* Admiral of a Fleet of 36 Sail, was a very large well built Ship, call'd the *Padre Eternel*; burthen 1700 Tuns, with Ports for Three Tiers of Guns flush, but carry'd only Eighty, and was poorly mann'd, and so were all the rest; 6 moderate Frigots might have master'd the whole Fleet. The Admiral saluted me with 7 Guns, which I return'd with as many; Captain *Francis Wilkshier* in the *Jerusalem* fired 5, I answered him with 3, and so did the Rear-Admiral, whom I return'd the same number, several of the Fleet fired 3, whom I answer'd with 3 for all. I saluted the Fort with 5 Guns, which return'd 3.

Sunday *October* 31. This Morning the Wind at North East, with fair Weather, *Don Carolus* and I, (after leave obtain'd from the Governour) went a shore to *Pryan*; with much ado, I got off one Boats load of Water, neither durst I return to send my Men a shore again for more, because some of the *Portuguese* Soldiers, that were watering there at the same time, had snatch'd away their Hats.

Port Praya in St. Jago's Isle. The Bay call'd *Port Praya* is no Port, but only a round Bay, with steep Cliffs on the East side, and in the bottom a Hill whereon stands the Castle, of a slender Force, and provided only with 4 pieces of Cannon; on the East side is another on the top of a Hill, which has no more than 3. The North West side of the Bay has a gravelly and sandy Shore, and a pleasant Grove of *Coco-Nut Trees*. A Brook of fresh Water carries its Stream through the Valley, and thence through the Sands soaks into the Sea. The Water is excellent good, and keeps very well at Sea. Near the West part of this Bay lies a small Isle, close to the shore, which affording very good Grass for Cattle, I cut some of it: These Forts are not the least safeguard for Ships riding here, for a Man of War may venture in without fearing the least dammage from them; and a whole Fleet may be destroy'd by Fire-Ships; for every Day blows a fresh Gale, and there is but two Points of Land, by which a Man may fetch into any part of the Bay; which lies open to the Sea from the East, and Southerly to West-south-west. It was here I declar'd to my Lieutenants and Master, that according to my Orders, I was from thence to steer my Course towards *America*, to the South of the River of *Plate*, and thence through the *Streights* of *Magellan* into the *South Seas*; I put them in mind to be careful to keep Easterly enough, to weather the shoals of *Brazil*, call'd the *Abrohollis*, at about 18 *d.* of South Latitude: For the Wind blows for the most part thereabouts between the Latitude of 10 South, and the Latitude of 20 South, at East by South, and East-south-east, fresh Gales. The Master telling me soon after that all things were stow'd, and the Wind a fresh Gale at E. by N. we agreed to steer our Course at present South and by East, so that as we got Southerly, and the Wind encreased, we might change our Course; so I order'd my Master to steer South by East by the Compass, and my Lieutenant to read Service to the Ship's Crew, to beg a prosperous Success of our Undertaking from God Almighty.

1669.

Instructions for Mr. Humphrey Fleming, *Commander of his Majesty's hired Pink the* Batchelour; *By Virtue of an Order from his Royal Highness, dated* 29 August, 1669. *to me directed.*

YOU are hereby required to sail with his Majesty's hired Pink the *Batchelour*, (under your Command) and to keep Company with the *Sweepstakes* (another of his Majesty's Ships) to the Coast of *America*, to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, and all along to the South of the Coast of *America*, till you come to the Streights of *Mallegan*, at 53 *d.* South Latitude; through these you are to pass into the *South Sea*, and sail along the *American* Coast to the North, as far as *Baldavia*, at about 40 *d.* South Latitude, where you shall receive farther Orders, either from me, or in my absence from the Commander in Chief aboard his Majesty's Ship the *Sweepstakes*, in case you keep Company with her, which you are to do, and not leave her upon any occasion whatsoever, unless you have Orders for so doing from the Commander of the *Sweepstakes* then aboard her; by whose Orders you shall also be employed in the discovery of Lands, Bays, Ports, Rivers Streights, *&c.*

The Design of this our Voyage being to make a Discovery both of the Seas and Coasts of that part of the World, and if possible to settle a Trade or Commerce there. You are not to touch, or send ashore on the Coast of *America*, without an extraordinary necessity, till you come to the S. of the *Rio de la Plata*; much less shall you meddle with, or do the least Injury to the *Spanish* Subjects inhabiting there: You shall with all possible accuracy take Observations, and cause your Master and Company to do the same, of all Headlands, Isles, Bays, Harbours, Roads, Mouths of Rivers, Rocks, Shoals, Soundings, Courses of Tides, flowings and settings of Currents, both in the *North* and *South Seas*, &c. and have Draughts made of them; as also take notice of all Trade-Wines you meet with, and of the Weather, but especially be exact in observing the Harbours of the *Streights* of *Magellan*, as also of the nature of the Soil of all places where you come, what Fruits, Woods, Grain, Fowls and Beasts each of them produces; what Stones and Minerals the Hills, and what Fish the Rivers and adjacent Seas do afford. As many sorts of Minerals as you are able to procure, you are to send to his Royal Highness's Secretary. The better to gain a Correspondence with the *Indians*, you shall dive into their Temper and Inclinations, and represent to them the Power and Wealth of the King and *English* Nation; and that you are sent to enter into a Friendly Commerce with them; to obtain which, you ought to be careful your Men don't by any mis-behaviour of theirs, create an Aversion in them to us, but rather to endeavour to gain their good Will, by civil Usage; such as act contrary to this, shall be Chastiz'd, wherewith you may acquaint your Men, that they may not plead Ignorance. You are also to Husband all sorts of Provisions to the utmost advantage, as well as your Ships Trimming, Sails, Cables, Anchors, *&c.* and not to neglect any opportunity of getting Provisions, Wood, and fresh Water, for the Preservation of your Men; whom you shall not expose to any Hazards, without an absolute necessity, many having been cut off in such Voyages for want of due care, and a sufficient guard. You shall keep a good Command over your Ships Crew, and, if any mutinous Practices should arise, impart the same immediately to me. You shall also keep your Ship sweet and clean, for the better preservation of your Men's Healths. God Prosper us.

Given on board his Maiesty's Ship the *Sweepstakes*, riding in *Port Praya* Road at the Isle of St. *Jago*, November 5, 1669.

John Narborough.

To

1666.

To Captain Humphrey Fleming, *Commander of the* Batchelour *Pink, Theſe.*

Inſtructions for the better finding each other in caſe of Separation by chance, Tempeſts, or otherwiſe.

YOu are by Theſe required to ſail with his Majeſty's hired Ship the *Batchelour*, (under your Command) and to keep Company with his Majeſty's Ship the *Sweepſtakes*, along the *American* Coaſt to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, as far as St. *Julian* on that Coaſt, at 49 *d.* 20 *m.* South Latitude. In caſe of Separation from each other, you ſhall endeavour to meet again, by looking abroad well at Sea and the next Poſt of Rendevouz; being as aforeſaid at Port St. *Julian*, you are to make all poſſible haſte thither; and if you reach that Place before the *Sweepſtakes*, to ſtay two whole Months for her, and ſhe ſhall do the ſame for you: In your Paſſage thither, after you are come to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, you may keep along the Coaſt of *America*, and to make Cape *Blanco* at 17 *d.* 20 *m.* South Latitude, and ſo to *Port Julian*; you may alſo enquire for me at *Port Deſier* at 48 *d.* South Latitude. If I ſhould be come to, and gone again from any place, before your coming thither, I will leave behind me a piece of Board nail'd to a long Pole or Tree, engraven, mentioning the Ships Name, the Day of my Departure, and the Port I intend to make next: Pray do you the ſame. I will do ſo likewiſe at Port St. *Julian*, and leave an Order directed to you, put up in a Glaſs-Bottle, and faſten'd to a Pole, which you ſhall find plac'd on the Iſle which lies at the Weſt end of the Harbour; where I will erect alſo my Tent, which I would have you look carefully after, as I will do for you. 'Tis poſſible I may touch on the Coaſts as I paſs along, to try whether I can eſtabliſh a Commerce with the Natives, but where-ever I come, you may be ſure I will leave the before-mention'd Memorials of my being there before you. God proſper our Intentions.

Given at *Port Praya*, read aboard the *Sweepſtakes* in the Iſle of St. *Jago*, *November* 8. 1669.

John Narborough.

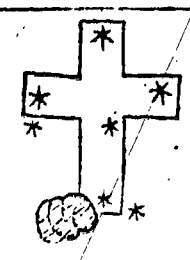
Decemb. 4. We ſaw many Fiſh, as flying Fiſh, *Bonettis*, *Sharks*, and *Albycores*, a Fiſh not unlike a Mackrel, but larger than the *Bonettis*, which are their Food, they are Feavoriſh; ſome we caught with Hooks, and one Shark, which our Men eat, and lik'd very well.

Decemb. 7. Two Butts of our Beer being leak'd out, we all drank Water that Day, every one always faring alike, from the Officer to the Cabin-Boy, in their Proviſions, to avoid all manner of Conteſt; I us'd to order one of the Ship's Crew blinded, to ſerve every Man his ſhare.

Saturday Decem. 18. I found all my Men in good Health, without any Calentures, moſt of them having been let Blood ſince our paſſing the *Tropic* of *Cancer*; I alſo uſed to allow in this hot Climate a quart of Vinegar to 6 Men *per* Week, to eat with their freſh Fiſh, which was always divided equally among the whole Ship's Company, whether we caught much or little.

Friday Decem. 24. I obſerv'd a conſiderable difference within the 48 hours, betwixt my *Dead Account*, as we call it, which is kept by the Log, and the Obſervations I made theſe two Days, when the Sun was on the Meridian; for I find my ſelf more South by 12 Miles, than the Log allows; I can't perceive any variation, and the Log is well kept, and the half Minute Glaſs good; I am of opinion, that the Current ſets to the South, now the Winds are at the Eaſt, and the Moon very near the full.

Decem. 30. This afternoon I took an *Azimuth*, and find 6 *d.* 10 *m.* variation Eaſterly, my Obſervation being of a good one; The Weather fair at 9 a Clock at Night, *Nebeles Major* appear'd very clear, and ſeems to be a piece of the *Milky way* broke from it; The South Conſtellations near the *Antarctick* Pole, the *Camelion Bird of Paradiſe*, the Tail of the *leſſer Hydra*, and the *Water-Snake*, all Stars of the 5th and 6th Magnitude, were viſible; but no *Pole-ſtar*, or any other fit for Obſervation within 15 *d.* of the Pole. The *Groſer Stars* of the firſt and ſecond Magnitude are good for Obſervation, and when on the Meridian above the Pole, appear thus:



1666.

We ſaw ſome Sea-gulls, Gannets, a black Sea-Fowl of the bigneſs of a Pigeon, and ſome larger, and three Tropick Birds of a grey Colour, with a long ſpired Tail, as big as Pigeons. We alſo took ſome *Bonetto's*, and a large broad flat Fiſh follow'd the Ship, not unlike a *Scate*; the Seamen call it a *String-Ray*, having a long Tail, with a ſharp bow at the end of it; ſome call them *Cloke-fiſhes*, the ſmall ones are good Food. Diverſorts of Sea-Fowls and Fiſh.

Variation of the Compaſs, by an Amplitude in the Morning 6 *d.* 46 *m.* Eaſt. This afternoon perceiving the Sea to look whiter than ordinary, whereby I judged my ſelf thwart of the Shoals of *Brazil*, I ſounded and found 184 fathom right down, without any Ground; Variation at Sun-ſet, 6 *d.* 46 *m.* Eaſt, the Wind Eaſt by North. I made all the Sail I could; ſome Fowls flying over the Ship, call'd *Men of War*; they feed on *Flying Fiſh*; we ſaw a few *Bonetto's*, and with certain ſmall Sea Fowls, call'd *Black Nodies*, two *Curlieus* flying to the Eaſt. January 5. Jan. 14.

Finding my ſelf 9 Miles farther to the South than I expected, I attribute the ſame to the Current that ſets out from *Rio de la Plata*; I have been very careful of my Courſe and Variation, which is but 18 *d.* 20 *m.* Eaſt, by an Amplitude taken to Night. Being open of the Mouth of *Rio de la Plata*, I ſounded at Night, but found no Ground at 140 fathom; The Wind at North by Eaſt; cloſe weather at Night: I ſteered South-weſt and by South. Jan. 24.

A calm Morning, at 8 a Clock the Wind turn'd to the North Weſt, with a fine Gale, at Eleven the Wind went round the Compaſs, and ſetled in the North, with Thunder and Lightning; we ſaw divers ſorts of Sea-Weeds driving on the ſurface of the Sea, with many Sea-Fowls of a browniſh colour ſwimming in it; Courſe ſteered is South-weſt by my Compaſs; Variation of Sun-riſing by an Amplitude 19 *d.* 43 *m.* All my Men very healthy. All the beforemention'd Fiſh have now quite left our Ship; we ſee no Fiſh but Whales. Monday Jan. 31.

A foggy Morning, with little Wind at South Eaſt. I ſtood to the South Weſt, and ſaw abundance of Sea-Fowls among the Sea-Weeds, driving near our Ship, ſtriking for ſmall Fiſh. In the afternoon calm, many ſmall Shrimps about the Ship, and 8 young Seal-Fiſhes, of the bigneſs of a moderate Spaniel-Dog, and a black colour, they ſwam to the Weſt. In the afternoon a freſh Gale at South-ſouth-eaſt. I ſteer'd to the South-by-Weſt by my Compaſs; and found the Air on a ſudden as cold here as in *England* in *September*: The Seas hereabouts are much expoſed to ſudden Guſts and variable Winds; The Wind has for theſe three Days run twice or thrice a day round the Compaſs: The Sea-Water being whiter than ordinary, I ſuppoſed I muſt be in Soundings, alſo by my account of Longitude, kept from the *Lizard*, I am not 1 *d.* 28 *m.* from Land, according to the *Mercator's* Draught. I ſounded towards Evening, and found 130 fathom without Ground, Wind at South. I ſteer'd Weſt-ſouth-weſt, and at 10 a Clock obſerv'd the Water to riple, as it does upon Shoals; I ſounded and found Ground at 70 fathom; fine red Sand, inclining to grey. Tueſday Feb. 1.

Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard* Weſt, 839 Leagues 2 Miles, eight tenths Longitude. At noon from the *Lizard* Weſt, 49 *d.* 43 *m.* Wind at South Weſt by South, with a ſmall Gale. I ſounded, but found no Ground at 140 fathom. I try'd the Current with my Boat, but could obſerve little or none; The Sea ripled in divers places; I ſounded, but found no Ground at 108 fathom. Several beds of Sea-Weeds of about 5 or 6 fathoms long drove to and fro; the Leaves are broad and browniſh, and on the Roots hangs a clod of Rock of two or three pound weight. Our Men kill'd ſome Sea-Fowl with their Birding-pieces, not unlike *Sea-Gulls*, and good Food; we ſaw ſome *Seals* and *Whales*. Feb. 2.

More beds of Rock-weeds and Sea-fowls, like Gannets, ſome black, others white, grey and pied; ſome ſmall Seals, with Heads like Dogs, which they will hold above Water a long time, and then dive under Water again very nimbly. This afternoon at 7 a Clock I was at 41 *d.* South Latitude, and of Longitude Weſt from the *Lizard* 52 *d.* 5 *m.* and in Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard* 895 Leagues; Meridian diſtance from *Port Praya* 616 Leagues, Longitude from *Port Praya* Feb. 5.

1666. West, 36 *d.* 34 *m.* I adviſed at Night with *Don Carolus*, (who had told us that he had been this way in a Galley, and knew all the Coaſts from the River of *Plata* to the *Streights*, and through them all along the *Weſt Coaſt*, to *Baldavia* and *Lima*) in what Latitude, or at what Cape or Harbour we had beſt hale in with the Land, being now to the South of *Rio de Plata* in *America*, and conſequently according to my Inſtructions, near the Coaſt to be diſcover'd; but I could get no other anſwer, than that I might do what I thought beſt, for he was not acquainted with the Coaſt, ſo that I ſuppoſe, he may have liv'd with a Governour in *America*, where he heard them talk of theſe Parts.

Feb. 8. At 7 a Clock in the afternoon I ſtood to the South, the Wind Weſt-ſouth-weſt; we ſaw much Rock-weed, and divers Sea-fowls, the ſeaſon very cold, being Summer; I ſhew'd *Don Carolus* how far we were to go through the *Streights* along the Weſt Coaſt; he anſwer'd me, He did not think we ſhould have come ſo far South; and that the *Spaniards* went to *Chili* a ſhorter way: I told him, They went into the River of *Plata*, and ſo by Land. My Men are generally healthy, except ſome few, unto whom I give Vinegar once a Week, to prevent the *Scurvy* in their Mouths; every Man is order'd to waſh his Mouth, Hands and Face every Morning, under forfeiture of that days Allowance, and to keep himſelf free from Lice, under the ſame Forfeiture; becauſe the foggy weather is a great Enemy to the keeping of every thing clean in the Ship.

Feb. 19. I ſounded often, and had 50 and 53 fathom; dark black Sand, with ſome bright Sand in it. Beds of Rock-weeds, *Seals* and *Porpiſes* ſeen; 3 *Whales*, many *Fowls*, and ſome *Penguins* ſwimming near the Ship. At 2 Clock in the afternoon, a brisk Gale at Eaſt by South; I ſtood to the South, cloſe haled under my Courſes; the Pink, half a Mile to Windward of me under hers, ſhe out ſails us; now it blows hard.

Monday *Feb.* 21. Paſt 8 in the Morning I ſaw the Land, bearing Weſt of me, diſtant 4 Leagues: I ſounded, and had 21 fathom, ſmall Stones and Sand; I ſtood Weſt by my Compaſs. The Land appear'd not very high near the Sea-ſide, but farther up, with round high Hills, of a reddiſh colour: The Nothermoſt Land I could ſee, (being *Cape Blanco*) bore 2 Leagues North-north-weſt of me; and the Southermoſt Land at the face of the Cape. The Land trented away to the South and South-weſt of me, of an indifferent height near the ſhore, but in the Land, like Hills flat on the top, with Hills and Valleys intermix'd like Downs of an ordinary height. At 9 a Clock in the Morning, I laid to half an Hour, till it clear'd up, that I might make the Land the better, being within 5 Miles of the ſhore, which made a kind of a Bay; I found at 17 fathom rough Ground, with ſmall Stones, drawn up in the Tallow of the Lead; the Fogs being clear'd betwixt 9 and 10 a Clock, I ſaw the Land appear plainly reddiſh like ſeared Graſs, without any Woods either on the Hills or Valleys, but like the Graſs Downs in *England*. I durſt not ſend my Boat aſhore by reaſon of the Fog, and the high Sea; a freſh Gale blowing along the ſhore, the Wind at North by Eaſt. The Land along the Sea-ſide lies South-ſouth-weſt, and North-north-eaſt, as far as I could ſee to the South, but could not diſcover either Fire or Smoak. Courſe made true after ſeveral Courſes from yeſterday 12 a Clock, till 9 this Morning, when I was 3 Leagues off of the Land; True Courſes Weſt. 6 *d.* 50 *m.* Southerly diſtance, ſailed 50 Miles, ſeven tenths departure Weſt 50 Miles; difference of Longitude Weſt, 1 *d.* 15 *m.* difference of Latitude, North 0 *d.* 6 *m.* Latitude by account is 47 *d.* 14 *m.* South; no Obſervations this 3 Days, being foggy Weather. Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard* Weſt 1041 Leagues, 1 Mile ſeven tenths Longitude, at 9 a Clock from the *Lizard*, Weſt 16 *d.* 56 *m.* and ſix tenths Longitude from *Port Praya*, Weſt 44 *d.* 38 *m.* and half Meridian diſtance from *Port Praya*, Weſt 735 Leagues, 1 Mile and half Variation of the Compaſs, Eaſterly, 18 *d.* I ſuppoſe we had paſs'd by *Port Deſier* in the Fog, becauſe the Iſles and Rocks we ſaw, were *Pengwin*, and ſome other Iſlands lying about it to the South of that Harbour; we ſaw *Seals*, *Penguins*, py'd *Porpiſes*, and Sea-fowl in abundance.

Thurſday *Feb.* 24. Hazy weather, Wind at Weſt-north-weſt. No ſight of the Pink, I ſuppoſe her to be got into *Port Deſier*; I weigh'd at 8 in the Morning, and ſtood to the North and whilſt the Ship ſails in the Offing, 2 Leagues from the ſhore, I went in my Pinnace along the ſhore to the North, which I ſaw, full of Beaches and ſcattered Wens; in ſome places the Tide of Flood was with us. At the North end of *Seals Bay* you ſee a little rocky Iſle, reſembling a Hay-cock, and cover'd over with grey colour'd Fowls Dung; Betwixt the Iſle and the Main the Tide runs very ſtrong, being not above a Cables length from the Point of the Main; about it are many broken Rocks, the main Land near the Sea-ſide low and ſandy, but deeper in the Country, large Downs and Hills, without Wood or freſh Water; we gave this Iſle the name of *Tomahawke*, which is all a craggy Rock, ſomething bigger than *Seals* Iſle, from whence it is 8 Leagues diſtant to the North-north-eaſt: It has abundance of *Seals* and *Sea-Fowls*. To the North Weſt of this Iſle is a deep rounding Bay, call'd in the Hydographigal Maps *Springs Bay*, wherein are three ſmall but pretty high Iſlands: The Land in the Country beyond the Bay being Hilly, and Rocky to the North part of the Bay. I croſs'd it in my Pinance, being 7 Miles broad and near 3 Leagues deep, I found in the midway 21 fathom; it rounds with a turning up to the North-north-weſt, behind a Point farther then I ſaw; upon which rounding Point are black Wens, reſembling an old Building with Towers. At my coming in, I ſail'd cloſe under the ſhore with my Boat, which I found ſteep, with Black Rocks, Low Bays, Peeble-Stones, and Sandy Beaches, green Graſs on the Hills, but without either Wood or freſh Water. At the North Eaſt Point of this *Spiring's Bay*, the Land jets out like a foreland in large plain Hills, with ſandy ſmall Bays; at the face of this foreland lie ſix rocky Iſles, one only a Muſquet-ſhot from the Main, the reſt farther off; the outwardmoſt being the biggeſt, and a Mile from the Main, and is call'd *Penguin-Iſland*, of an indifferent height at the ends, but low in the middle, which is Gravelly, and produces ſome Graſs, whereas the ends are craggy Rocks; its length is near three quarters of a Mile North-north-eaſt, and South-ſouth-weſt; its breadth a Mile Eaſt and Weſt. Here the great black *Gannets* and the *Penguins* lay their Eggs upon and under the Rocks in Holes; the *Seals* lie on the tops and on all ſides of them; theſe as alſo Sea-Fowls are to be found here in incredible numbers; but the *Penguins* frequent the biggeſt Iſland moſt. I took at one time in half an Hours time above 300 of them, and could have taken 3000 if my Boat would have carried them; for you may drive them in Flocks to the Boat, where the Men knock them on the Head with Truncheons. In the mean while the Ship was ſtanding to the North; about 2 Leagues thence many broken Rocks, and foul Ground lie betwixt theſe Iſlands, and without the Point of the outwardmoſt it makes a great ripling, occaſioned by the force of the Tide ſtruck back from the Iſlands againſt the other Tide. To the North of theſe Iſles is a Bay 4 Leagues long, and 1 and half deep; in the North Weſt whereof lies the Harbour call'd *Port Deſier*, which we could ſee from *Pengwin*-Iſlands, bearing North-north-weſt from them, at 3 Leagues diſtance: About the middle of this Bay is a ridge of white Cliffs 2 Miles long; the uppermoſt of which has black ſtreaks down to a fourth part, occaſioned by the draining of the Water; theſe Cliffs are plain on the top, but deeper into the Country high rounding Hills and Downs, deſcending lower and lower towards the Water-ſide; the South part of the Bay has craggy Rocks on the Main, like high Walls: Near the Sea is a ſandy Cave, juſt under the Rocks, where you may hale a Boat up in foul Weather.

1666.

Tomahawke Iſle.

Spring's Bay.

Penguin Iſle.

Penguins in prodigious Numbers.

Port Deſier.

Fair Weather, with a brisk Weſt Wind; I kept out Light all Night, for a ſignal to the Pink, and a Fire was made aſhore for the ſame purpoſe; the Weather cold: At 7 a Clock in the Morning I went aſhore with both my Boats, leaving the Ship within the Muſcle-bank at 6 fathom low Water; I ordered my Men to make a Fire upon the Hills on the North ſhore, as a ſignal to our Pink; I ſounded the Harbour at low Water, which I found very good, and fit for great Ships to ride in, provided they have good Cables and Anchors: On the ſhore I ſaw no Wood, little freſh Water, and on the Hilly large Downs a few Buſhes, and long dry Graſs growing in Knots and Tufts; the Soil gravelly and dry, mix'd with ſome black Mould in the Valleys: I ſaw neither People, Fire, nor Smoak, but the foot-ſteps where ſome had lain upon the Graſs behind the Buſhes, where they had made ſmall Fires: I ſaw alſo ſome Wool, Feathers, Bones of Beaſts, and ſhivers of Flints; but no Beaſts, except two Hares; I had left a Flag with Beads on it yeſterday on a Hill hard by, but could not perceive any body to have been near it; I let it ſtand where it was: We did not at this time advance above a Mile from the Sea-ſhore, yet found in the Valleys betwixt the Rocks great ſtore of *wild Peaſe*, with green Leaves and blewiſh Bloſſom, growing entangled together like Vines, and taſting like green Peaſe leaves in *England*; alſo ſome ſweet Herbs like Tares, very green, with

Saturday *Feb.* 26.

Wild Peaſe.

1666. with white and yellow Flowers, and another green Herb like *Sage*, but growing in Knots like our *Lettice*; theſe Herbs afforded a good Sallad to our People againſt the *Scurvy*; on the Rocks are abundance of Muſcles and Limpets, and in an Iſland hard by many Seals and Water-Fowls; the River has pied Divers as big as Ducks, ſome of a grey colour, and black Shags, Ducks, and other Sea-Fowl you alſo meet with among the Rocks and Buſhes; I caught in one of theſe little Iſlands, as many young *black Shags* in their Neſts as loaded my Pinnace; and ſo aboard I went with them and ſome Herbs, which were equally divided among the Men. It being a black cloudy Night, I kept out a Light in the Poop for the Pink; and the next day the Ship's Company feaſted upon the young *Seals* and *Penguins*, which they found very good Food. As our Ship wanted a little refitting, I judged this a fit Harbour for that purpoſe, eſpecially ſince from the tops of the Hills we might ſee our Pink a great way at Sea if ſhe ſhould approach that Coaſt.

Tomahawke Iſle.

Spring's Bay.

Two freſh Water Springs.

Our People diſcovered two Springs of freſh Water, one in a Valley, cloſe by the Water-ſide, half a Mile up the River; the other in a Valley between the Rocks, juſt over againſt where the Ship rid, about half a Mile from the Rivers ſide, right from *Cooper's-Bay* in the ſame Valley; they were both but ſmall and a little brackiſh, the Earth being naturally ſaltiſh; for both the Ground and Rocks have a white Rhime of Salt-petre hanging on them. I went 2 Miles North Weſt into the Country, which I found hilly, and dry, without Wood or Water, and ſome craggy Rocks, and low Valleys of a Salt-petre nature. Here and there are prickly Buſhes, with leaves like our *Engliſh White-Thorn Buſhes*; ſome leſſer Buſhes bearing dry Gauls, with a ſmall Seed, as hot in the Mouth as Pepper; I did not ſee one Tree; the Soil generally gravelly and ſandy, bearing tufts of dry Graſs. I digged in ſome places, but inſtead of Metals or Minerals, found nothing but Rocks and Sands; nor could I ſee the leaſt ſign of any Metals among the Rocks; I diſcovered the Land all round about from the Hills, to be all Hills and Downs like *Cornwall*; I ſaw the ſame day 9 Beaſts not unlike Deer, but longer, with larger Necks, though without Horns; when we came within a Furlong of them, they fell a neighing like Horſes, and ſo run away.

Penguin Iſle.

Some Plants.

Penguins in prodigious Numbers.

Tueſday March 1. A fair cold Morning, the Wind at North, I fill'd one of our Casks out of the Spring, which I cauſed to be dug deeper; I alſo erected a long Pole on a Hill, with a white Cloth faſtned to it, and ſome Beads, a Looking-glaſs, a Knife, a Hook, and an Hatchet, to intice the Inhabitants to come to us, but could ſee neither People, nor Fire, nor Smoak. I ſaw 3 Oſtriches, but they were too far to make a ſhot at them, and too nimble for my Greyhound; they were grey, and larger than an *Engliſh* Turkey-Cock; they never fly, but truſt to their long Legs. I ſaw in the Graſs two handfuls of red *Spaniſh* Wool, which they bring out of *India*. At 7 a Clock I return'd aboard; the Wind North, with hazy Weather; no ſight of the Pink; at 10 the Wind came to the South East.

Oſtriches.

Friday March 4. A fair Morning, the Wind at East; we fill'd more freſh Water; at 12 a Clock I went with both the Boats and 40 Men to *Seal-Iſland* into the Harbour, every Man with his Club; we drove them up together, and in half an Hours time kill'd 400 young and old; ſo ſoon as they were knock'd down, we cut their Throats, and ſo loading our Boats, carried them to the Bay, where the Tent was, and laid them upon the Rocks; whence they were fetch'd all at Night. The large *Male-Seals* are of the likeneſs of a good Calf, with ſhaggy Necks, Heads and Faces, like Lyons; the Females are alſo like Lioneſſes before, except that they are hairy and ſmooth all over like Horſes, whereas the Male is ſmooth only on his hind-parts, which is very deformed in both, for it tapers till it comes to a point, where grow two Fins like Feet, and two more out of the Breaſt, by means of which they can climb up high Rocks and Hills, though they delight chiefly to lie aſleep near the ſhore; ſome are 18 Foot long, thicker than a But in the Bilge, and very fat; many are 14 Foot long, and generally no leſs than 8 Foot, and all very fat.

Seal-Iſle.

The Seal-Iſle.

Saturday March 5. A fair Morning, Wind at South Weſt; we went aſhore to ſlay ſome *Seals*, we cut them in good pieces and ſalted them; the Meat looks as white as Lamb, but eats beſt a little ſalted; I mean the young ones, who ſuck their Dams; theſe as ſoon as they come aſhore bleat, when the young ones come to ſuck her; one old one ſuckles 4 or 5, and will not admit of other young ones that come near her; which ſeems to intimate that they have 4 or 5 young ones at a time; the young ones we dreſs'd were of the bigneſs of a middle-ſiz'd Dog; with their fat we fried our Proviſions, which our Men thought as good as Oil of Olives: The Fat of the old ones affords Oil for Lamps. 1666.

Blowing weather, Wind at Weſt: After Prayers I went aſhore on the South ſide of the River, with 12 Men well arm'd, and travelled 8 Miles into the Country, South Weſt by Weſt; my Lieutenant went in one of the Boats 9 or 10 Miles up the River, and my other Lieutenant went to the North ſide with 10 arm'd Men; I ſaw in my Travels one of theſe before-mentioned Beaſts like Deer, dead and whole, his back had pretty long Wooll of the colour of dry'd Roſe-leaves, and down the ſides; the belly white Wooll; he was of the bigneſs of a ſmall Colt, with a long neck, head like a Sheep, and ſo were the mouth and ears; his legs very long, with a cloven foot like a Deer, and a ſhort buſhy tail of a reddiſh Colour. As I took theſe Beaſts to be no other than *Peruvian* Sheep, *(Guianacoes)* and that I had heard ſome *Weſt-Indian Spaniards* affirm, that they have found the *Bezoar-Stone* in the *Guianacoes*. I had this opened, but found none, neither in his Stomach, or otherwiſe, tho' I turn'd all inſide outward: I ſaw afterwards ſometimes 30 or 40 in Herds together; I ſaw alſo 9 *Oſtriches*, but could not come within reach of my Gun to them, and they out-ran my Greyhound upon the Hills; we ſaw alſo a Fox, a wild Dog, and 5 or 6 Hares; of the laſt my Greyhound kill'd one, which was like an *Engliſh* Hare, but much larger, with a ſtub of an inch long, inſtead of a Tail, without Hair; they live under Ground like our Rabbets. We ſaw no Wood except a few Buſhes like *White-Thorns*. The Land is dry, the Soil ſandy and gravelly, riſing in moderate large rounding Hills, which produce nothing but Graſs in the Valleys, you ſee now and then ſome gullies of freſh Water, produced by the melted Snow. I ſaw no Fruits nor Herbs, nor any foot-ſteps of People, no Birds like thoſe of *Europe*, but Kites, and ſome ſmall ones like Sparrows and Linnets, ſome Flies and Humble-Bees: We alſo ſaw a fore-footed Animal, like what we call in *England* an Eft, Newt or Lizard; no Adder, or any other venomous Creature: Here would be good food for Horſes, Cows, Sheep and Goats. Returning aboard about 10 a Clock at Night, I found the Lieutenant (who had been up the River) return'd; he ſaw 3 Iſles, which had Sea-fowls and ſome Buſhes for fewel; the River grows broader upwards, and has ſeveral Rocks in it; upon the Banks they ſaw *Guianacoes*, *Oſtriches* and *Hares*, but no People nor Fire, or Smoke, tho' they diſcover'd the foot-ſteps of the Natives, where they had made Fire before; they met with no freſh Water nor Wood, nor any Metal or Mineral; the Country hilly, with Graſs on it. At 12 a Clock at Night thoſe ſent to the North ſide alſo return'd aboard, having been 8 Miles into the Land North Weſt, where they ſaw likewiſe no People, but ſome places where the Natives had made a Fire in the Graſs, and laid Graſs to fire the Buſhes; as alſo where they had plac'd Buſhes in Half-moons, to ſhelter themſelves as they lay upon the Graſs; they made a Fire on the top of a Hill, but no Body came near them. The Country they found full of rounding Hills, moderately like the Downs on the *Yorkſhire* Coaſt about *Burlington*, without freſh Water, Woods or Trees, except a Soil gravelly and ſandy, with ſome ridges of Rocks; they ſaw *Guianacoes*, *Oſtriches*, *Hares*, *Kites*, and ſome of the before-mentioned Creatures like *Efts*; but neither Fruit nor Berry, no Mineral nor Metal; for I had charged them to look for grains of Gold, or other Metal, in the Gullies, where the Water uſed to run; it being certain that Gold is found on the other ſide of this Country, within 200 Leagues hence. They ſaw much Salt-petre hang on the Earth where Water had been, and the very plaſhes of Water were as Salt as Brine: I ſaw Smelts 18 inches long lying dead on the Sea-ſide, but hitherto no Oyſters, or any other ſhell-Fiſh, as Craw-fiſh, Lobſter, Crabs, *&c.* As I was ſtanding near the Sea-ſide a *Seal-fiſh* chaſed aſhore a Fiſh of the bigneſs of a *Mackrel*, but not unlike a Mullet; it was dreſs'd and prov'd very good Meat. There muſt needs be a prodigious quantity of Fiſhes in theſe Seas, conſidering the vaſt number of *Seals*, *Penguins*, and other Fowls that live upon them, and are generally very fat.

1666.

Sunday March 6.

A certain four-legg'd Beaſt.

And ſome other Creatures.

A cold indifferent Morning, Wind at Weſt; I went up the River in my Boat, with 14 Men well arm'd; and paſſing the little Iſle where the bruſhy Buſhes are, and where we took the young *Shags*, I found the River there to grow broader a Mile from the North to the South ſhore, and continues thus for 4 Miles; when turning to the South-weſt, it becomes much narrower; at the Point of this turning is an Iſle, rocky but not high,

Sunday March 13.

1666. high, affording ſome Graſs, and a few ſmall Buſhes; I no ſooner came up to it, but found a Poſt ſet up of 5 foot long, (which had been the Timber of a Ship) with a piece of Board of a foot ſquare nail'd to it; at the foot of it we found a piece of Sheet-Lead, with this Inſcription engraven on it,

M D C X V.
EEN SCHIP ENDE EEN IACHT GENAEMT EENDRACHT EN HOORN GEARRIVEERT DEN VIII DECEMBER, VERTROKEN MET EEN SCHIP D'EENDRACHT DENX: IANVARY: MDCXVI.

C: IACQVES LE MAIRE
S. WILLEM CORNELIUS LE HOVTS
ARES CLASSEN
IAN CORNELIUS SCHOTS
CLAES IANSSEN BAN.

In a hole of the Poſt, ſtopt with a Plug, was a written Sheet of Paper encloſed in a Tin Box, but ſo conſumed with Ruſt, as not to be legible; I cut upon a Board with my Knife the Ship's Name, and the date of the Year and Month, which I nail'd upon the ſame Poſt, and carried away the Lead, giving the name of *Le Maire*'s Iſle to the place; we found here alſo ſeveral pieces of Boards of the Wreck of a Ship that had been burnt: From hence I went to the North-ſide of the River, 2 Miles into the Country, ſaw no Trees, but many *Oſtriches* and *Guianacoes*; the Soil marly and good, with moderate Hills like large plain Downs, with Graſs all over them. In 2 or 3 places where I dug, I found dry Ground a foot deep, then Marle; I believe it would make good Corn-ground, being not unlike our Ground on *New-Market* Heath. In the Gullies and broken Rocks I ſearch'd for Grains of Gold, or other Metals, but ſaw nothing like it: In my return rowing farther under the ſhore, I landed and mounted a ſteep rocky Hill, having ſome ſmall Buſhes; hence I could ſee the courſe of the River a great way, the Ground on both ſides covered with Graſs, but no Boats nor People; from hence ſeveral Creeks run a Mile or 2 into the Land; then croſſing the River to the South-eaſt ſhore, and having faſtned our Boat in a Creek near a Valley, we went 3 Miles up into the Country, where we ſaw *Oſtriches* and *Guianacoes*, but all without our reach; here I diſcovered the foot-ſteeps of 5 Men, I meaſured my foot with them, which was larger and longer by half an inch than any of them, but ſaw no People; we pluckt up ſome Graſs, which we laid upon all Night, keeping Watch two by two; a cold night, the Wind Weſt.

Le Maire's Iſle.

Monday *March* 14. It proved fair but cold, this Morning we went farther into the Land 4 Miles South-weſt by South, but met with no freſh Water, neither any People, tho' we made Fires on the Graſs, on purpoſe to draw them towards us; we met with *Guianacoes*, *Hares*, *Foxes*, *Wild Dogs*, (pretty large ones) and a *Grey Cat*, not unlike ours; we alſo catch'd an *Armadillo*, a Creature as big as a *Hedge-Hog*, and not unlike it, living in Holes like Coneys; we dug her out, and found the body covered with a Shell, jointed under one another like ſhells of Armour, no Dogs could hunt her. Rats we ſaw in abundance, and a kind of black *Pole-Cat*, with only two white ſtreaks on the Back; our Dogs kill'd 2 of them, they had a nauſeous ſcent. We ſaw alſo ſome *Partridges* and many *Kites*. The Land conſiſted of Hills, the Soil ſandy and gravelly, covered with Graſs, without freſh Water, Wood, Metal or Mineral. In our return in the afternoon, we paſs'd with our Boat thro' a Creek two Miles long, (dry at low Water) and only thirty Foot broad; it makes a pretty Iſland, of no great height, plain on the top, and covered with Graſs, a ſandy and marly Ground, without Wood or Water; its length is two Miles, its breadth half a Mile; we ſaw here above 20 Hares in a moment, of whom our Greyhound kill'd two; I call'd it the *Hare-Iſland*, being at a ſmall diſtance from the ſhore, eight miles up the River from the narrow, I went down the River, and came aboard; a cold Evening, Wind at Weſt, which turn'd to the North in the Morning; I could not find that theſe *Indians* have any ſort of Boats.

An *Armadillo*, or kind of *Hedge-Hog*.

The *Hare-Iſle*.

March 24. A hard Wind at Weſt, we began to get every thing ready to ſail again; I went aſhore that day to the peaked Rock on the South-ſide, which I found a natural Rock ſtanding upon a ſmall Hill, as if it had been placed there on purpoſe; it has a Cleft on the top, of the circumference of a good Butt; its height above the Hill is 40 foot, being ſurrounded with little Rocks; the biggeſt ſtick of Wood I ſaw in all the Country I went through, (which was above 20 miles) was not big enough to make the Helve of a Hatchet, but there are Buſhes fit for Fuel at Sea: Freſh Water is a ſcarce Commodity in *Port Deſier*, in the Summer; out of the before-mention'd two ſmall Springs, I made ſhift to fill 40 Tuns; the firſt Spring is on the North-ſide as you enter the Harbour, half a mile up a Valley in a Gully of Rocks; it bears North-north-weſt from the lower Rock; the other we call'd *Peckell's-Well*, is a mile up the River, likewiſe in a Gully, within a Bow-ſhot of the ſalt Water: The Valleys afford green and ſweet Graſs, and great ſtore of wild Peaſe; ſome ſmall Nutgals grow on few Buſhes, Salt might be made here near the Sea-ſide. 1666.

Gentlemen, I deſire you to take notice, that this Day I take poſſeſſion of this Harbour and River of *Port Deſier*, and of the Country on both ſhores, for the uſe of his Majeſty King *Charles* the Second, of *Great Britain*, and his Heirs; God ſave our King, and ſo we fired three Pieces of Ordnance, *March* 25.

Saturday *March* 26. I ſtood to the North Wind at Weſt. This Morning at ſix a Clock when the Sun appear'd above the Eaſt Horizon, the Moon ſet in the Weſt Horizon, being eclipſed at *London*, at Eleven a Clock, ten minutes in the forenoon, but here at ſix a Clock thirty minutes paſt, which gives four hours forty minutes difference of time, between the Meridian of *London* and the Meridian of *Cape Blanco*, which Cape lies in 47 *d.* 20 *m.* South Latitude, on the South-eaſt Coaſt of *America*, where I ſaw this Eclipſe 70 *d.* in Longitude to the Weſt of the Meridian of *London* by this Obſervation. It being cloudy I could not ſee the whole Eclipſe; I find *Cape Blanco* by my account of ſailing in the Longitude of 69 *d.* 16 *m.* to the Weſt of the Meridian of *London*: If it had not been cloudy I might have been exact in the Longitude, but believe my account is not much out.

Cape Blanco lies in the Latitude of 47 *d.* 20 *m.* South; and in Longitude from the *Lizard*, Weſt, 61 *d.* 56 *m.* and in Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard*, Weſt, 1014 Leagues 1 Mile and ſix tenths.

Penguin Iſland 47 *d.* 55 *m.* South Latitude, in Longitude from the *Lizard*, Weſt 61 *d.* 57 *m.* Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard*, Weſt 1014 Leagues 2 Miles.

Port Deſier in *America* in the South Latitude of 47 *d.* 48 *m.* In Longitude from the *Lizard*, Weſt, 61 *d.* 57 *m.* Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard*, Weſt, 1015 Leagues, 2 Miles and ſix tenths.

Variation of the Compaſs Eaſterly 17 *d.* 30 *m.*

April 1. The *Sweepſtakes* off of *Seals Bay* in the South Latitude of 48 *d.* 10 *m.* on the Coaſt of *Patagonia*.

Saturday *April* 2. A fair Morning, the Wind North-north-weſt, I ſteered away South-ſouth-weſt, and South by Weſt by my Compaſs, as the Coaſt lies; in 20 fathom Water, black Sand, 3 Leagues from the ſhore. At 9 a Clock in the forenoon I ſaw to the Weſt of me a little flat Iſle, a League from the ſhore, in the South Latitude of 48 *d.* 40 *m.* The Land, over againſt it high large Hills, ſome with round tops; 2 Leagues farther to the South, the Land is low, and a large Plain, and a Beach by the Sea-ſide; but the ſhore directly oppoſite to the Iſle is Rocky. I found 23 fathom black Sand, at 2 Leagues Eaſt from the flat Iſland; I haled cloſe in towards the ſhore, and ſailed within 5 miles of it. From this Iſle all along to *Port St. Julian*, I found 18 or 20 fathom black Sand; the Land low, the Sea-ſhore is a Beach, here and there a Rock; being in a Beach for 4 Leagues after you are to the South, a League off the Flat-Iſle; the ſhore lies South-ſouth-weſt, and north-north-eaſt: At the South end of this Beach in a Land are high round Hills, but juſt by the Sea-ſide a ſteep white Cliff, not very high, with a black ſtreak in it; beyond the Cliff the Hills round up to the top, having ſome few ſmall black Buſhes on the ſide, but no other Wood or Tree.

Port St. Julian. In this Bay is *Port St. Julian*, the mouth of the Harbour in the middle of the Bay, which you can't ſee without, one Point ſhutting in the other, unleſs you ſend in your Boat to view the Harbour at low Water, and the Bar without, for it is a barr'd Harbour: The Land in the Country near *Port St. Julian*, appears to the Weſt, in high round copling Hills, like blunt Sugar-loaves, being the higheſt Land and Hills on all that Coaſt; to the South the Land is level, without any Hills in eye-ſight; I anchored in the Bay before St. *Julian*, in 12 fathom Water black oaſie Sand, the Harbour's mouth being Weſt-ſouth-weſt of me, 2 Leagues diſtant: I ſent in a Boat to view the Harbour, and ſee whether the Pink was there; after its return, the Lieutenant told me that there was a ſafe Harbour, and Water enough for a much larger Ship, but not the leaſt ſight of the Pinks having been there; ſo I diſpaired of

ever

1670. ever seeing her again; the consideration of which put the Ship's Company somewhat out of Humour, considering they must be past all relief if in a stormy Season and unknown Coasts they should happen to run aground any where; but the hopes of the vast Riches I propos'd to them, and the instance of Captain *Drake*, who sail'd in one Ship round the World, when Navigation was not brought to the same perfection, put these suspicions at last out of their Heads. It was a calm Night, and a small Tide running where I rode; the Water ebbing near 3 fathom perpendicular; from the *Elu-Isle* to *St. Julian* is 9 Leagues South-south-west, and North-north-east as the shore lies.

The mouth of *Port St. Julian* in 49 *d.* 10 *m.* South Latitude, in Longitude from the *Lizard* 63 *d.* 10 *m.* and in Meridian distance from the *Lizard*, West 1030 Leagues; by an Amplitude here, the Compass has varied *West.* 10 *m.* East.

Wednesday *April* 31. Fair Weather, Wind at West, but cold, no sign of the Pink: I went ashore, and on the East side caught with our seyne Net (at the first Flood) in 4 Hours time 500 Fishes as big as *Mullets*, and not unlike them, grey, and full of Scales, some as big as a Man's Leg; they were all divided among the Company, who eat them with a great deal of satisfaction; on the Rocks we saw many good Muscles and Oyster-shells on the Sea side, but without any Meat in them: Wind at West to Night.

Monday *April* 18. A cold snowy Morning, Wind at South-west; the Winter advances with Storms that we shall not be able to hold the Coast in the Streights, because the Winds that blow altogether from the West and South-west in Gusts, will force the Ship off the Coast. I commanded the Purser to allow the Ship's Company a Quart *per* Week a Man of Brandy, and got a Boat's load of Fuel aboard: It blew hard at Night at South-west; the Ships Company had salted *Seal* and *Penguins* for their Allowance, which is very good, and keeps well a long time.

Friday *April* 22. A cold Air, Wind at South-west: I went ashore with 20 Men, to the North-west side to the salt Pond, which I found crusted over like a Pavement with white good Salt, 2 inches thick, 2 miles in length: In *February* you may have Salt enough here to fill 1000 Ships; we laid up two Tuns out of the Water, because there was some Water over the Salt; it was whiter than *French* Salt, and of an agreeable smell; I saw also some *Guianacoes* and *Ostriches*; the Hills and Valleys dry Earth, with some Grass on them; the high Hills had some Snow; we saw no People but the marks of Fire, and where they had lain under Bushes in several places; no Mineral nor Metal, Fruit or Tree; it freezes so hard that the Ice bears a Man.

Wednesday *April* 27. Cold frosty Weather, the Wind West by South; the Ice not permitting us to pass the *Streights*, we intend to Winter here; we have stormy Winds most out of the West, with long cold Nights.

Thursday *April* 28. The Port is safe, and affords some refreshments of Ducks, Peekes, Divers, *&c.* when the Sun comes in the *Southern Signs*, we shall have shorter Nights and more temperate Weather; in the Evening it rain'd, and blew so hard from the North-north-east, that the Boat sunk at the Ships Stern; late it turn'd to the W. and grew better.

Friday *May* 6. A pretty good day, Wind at West-north-west; I went ashore with 30 Men on the North-west side, and went up the Hills 7 or 8 miles in the Country, without seeing any People: The Country is Grass Downs in most places, and on the tops and sides of the Hills, both in the Veins of the Earth, and in the firm Rocks lie abundance of Oyster-shells of 6 and 7 inches broad, whereas there is not one Oyster to be found in the Harbour; we saw not the least sign of Minerals, nor Woods, nor Trees: Up among the Hills we met with a fresh-water Spring, which afterwards mixes with the salt-water Swashes: Six miles from the shore were several *Salt-Petre* Ponds; we saw *Ostriches*, *Guianacoes*, and a *Fox*, on the top of one of the highest Hills I made a Fire, but no answer was seen; we return'd at Night, which proved fair.

Large Oyster-Shells among the Hills.

Port St. Julian.

Friday *May* 13. The Weather indifferent, Wind at West-south-west; we fetch'd Salt this Day, and one Mr. *Wood*, a Gentleman belonging to the Ship, walking on the Isle of *Justice*, found there three small pieces of Gold Wire of the thickness of a large Pin, well hammered, in two *Muscle-shells*; which Shells were fastned together by a green Gut string: The Gold might be worth about two Shilling sterling.

Monday *June* 6. Cloudy cold Weather, Wind at South-west; I went ashore with 16 Men, and travell'd 10 miles to the West into the Land; we found the Hills covered with Snow, we could not go farther; on the Hill I was on, we saw nothing but Hills without Woods, Trees or Bushes, but all Grass-Downs, the tops of the Hills being flat, whence fresh Water runs into the Valleys, which being nothing but melted Snow, ceases as soon as the Snow is melted. We saw *Guianacoes* and *Ostriches* in abundance, but no People; though nearer the Sea side we discover'd in divers places where they had lain in the Snow on the Hills, and where they had kill'd and eat *Guianacoes* and *Ostriches*; which they seem not to roast, for we observ'd some raw Flesh hanging on the Bones still, which they had gnawed with their Teeth; so that their Fires being made only with a few small sticks, are only to warm their Children: I gathered also some *Guianacoes* Wool they had left there: These People must needs live worse than Beasts, the Country affording neither Fruit, Root, nor Herb; the Soil is dry, gravelly and sandy, a Marle in some places two foot below the Surface, the Grass grows in knots, thick but not long: In the Valleys the Ground participates much of *Salt-Petre*, we look'd in all places for Minerals but found none, and return'd at Night. 1670.

Tuesday *June* 7. A close dark Day, the Wind North-east by East: A new Moon to day, with fair but cold Weather at Night; the Stars near the *Antartick Pole* are very visible; some of the small Stars in the Constellation of the little *Hydra* are near the *Pole*; there are divers Stars near the *Pole* fit for observation, of the first and second Magnitude: the *Star* at the South end of *Ariadne*, the *Star* at *Hydra's Head*; the *Star* in the *Peacock's Eye*; the *Stars* in *Tucan's Bill*, and the *Stars* in *Tucan's Thigh* and *Back*; the *Stars* in *Grus's Head*, and *Wing*, and *Body*; but the brightest of all are the *Stars* in the fore foot of *Centaurus* and the *Crosiers*; the other *Stars* are of the third, fourth and fifth Magnitude: The two Clouds are seen plainly; and a small black Cloud, which the foot of the *Cross* is in, is always to be seen when the *Crosiers* are above the Horizon, as they always are here in these Latitudes. The Heavens in the South Hemisphere are the same as in the North Hemisphere, but no *Stars* for Observation within 18 *d.* of the *Pole*; no *Pole-Star*, as the *Star* in the Tail of the little *Bear* is in the North. The Air is cold but healthy here; every one has an excellent stomach; Foxes and Kites, whatever else we kill, nothing comes amiss, no Body complains of Cold in his Head or Coughs. The *Ostriches* here are not so big as those on the Coast of *Barbary*, nor of the same Colour and Feathers; for these are grey with shaggy Feathers of no use, white on their Bellies; with long Legs and small Wings, a long Neck, small Head, and beaked like a Goose; their meat is lean and dry, but sweet: To Night the Wind at West.

Stars visible near the *Antartick Pole*.

Ostriches.

Wednesday *June* 22. This day Wind at West-north-west; I went ashore on the East side, without seeing any Body; Mr. *Wood* went about the same time to the West side with three arm'd Men, they travell'd for four mile into the Land to the West by North, and on a Hill saw seven of the Natives, wafting them to the Ship, with a certain confused noise; three of the *Indians* advanced towards Mr. *Wood*, with their Bows and Arrows in hand, a loose skin about their Bodies, some Furs about their Heads, and pieces of skins tyed to their Feet; the rest of their Bodies naked; and their Faces painted red and white; they were very shy, and would not be touch'd by our Men (having perhaps heard of the Cruelties of the *Spaniards*;) they continued wafting with their Hands and repeated often *Oaſe*, *Oaſe*; they spoke harsh, and in the Throat; and would take any thing that Mr. *Wood* cast to them upon the ground, as a Knife, a Shash, Neck-cloath, and a bottle of Brandy, but they would not drink; Mr. *Wood* saw no Bracelets, or any other Ornaments they had about them: They were of a middle stature, not so tall as Mr. *Wood*, but well limb'd, of an Olive Colour, with black Hair, not very long; they appeared very barbarous in their behaviour, and took their own time to march away, without shewing any signs of thanks for what they had received; their Dogs, which were but small, following at their Heels: Mr. *Wood* return'd aboard the same Night.

The *Natives* near *Port St. Julian*.

Saturday *July* 2. The Wind at West: I went ashore to the East side, where I kill'd a *Guianaco* with my Greyhound. We look'd for the Bezoar-stone in his Paunch; but found none, and no People in all our way, but found a place where they had Glased earthen Vessels, because there lay some of their stuff run together. I return'd aboard at Night.

Sunday *July* 3. The Wind at South, close Weather. We found the *Guianaco* to weigh 250 pounds neat. It served the whole Ship Company for one day, and proved very good Meat.

Tuesday *July* 12. Little Wind at North by West. I found in the Fuller's-Earth Cliffs at the head of the Harbour, a Vein like

1670. like rotten Ising-glass, but is good for nothing. In two places I saw also pieces of rotten Floor-Timber of a Ship, and some of the biggest Bushes, cut down by Christians; which together with some wooden Plates, a piece of Cork, and an old Oar, shew'd some Christian Ship had been here formerly. I stay'd ashore all Night.

Sunday *July* 31. A fair day, Wind South-west, but as cold and rather sharper than in the middle of Winter in *England*. The Thighs and Legs of twelve of my Men (who were lazy, and cared not much for stirring) are turn'd as black as a Coal, with the Blood chill'd by the Cold; but those that use exercise are very well.

Tuesday *August* 2. A cold still day, Wind at South-west: We see hundreds of *Guianacoes* near the Water side, but my Greyhound being lame, we cannot catch any of them; we

Indian Swans. see also many *Ostriches*, green *Plovers*, and some *Swans*, not quite so large as ours; they are white, but the Head and half the Neck is black, and so are their Feet: Here are also white *Geese*, like those of *Europe*; their *Brant-Geese* are sometimes white, sometimes black and grey; their *Mallards*, *Ducks* and *Teals* are grey.

Tuesday *August* 16. A brisk gale at West-north-west. Some of my Men going to the East side for Water, saw two of the Natives behind a Bush, they went towards them, and made signs to stay for their coming, but they made the best of their way thence, leaving a bundle and two mungrel Dogs coupled together behind them, which my Men brought to me; I found in it several bags of Skins, with red and white Earth, wherewith they paint themselves; some Flint-stones, and Arrow heads, Bracelets of Shells, bits of Sticks, braided Thongs, Arrows, Muscle-shells, Armadillo-shells, and a small point of a Nail in a stick for a Bodkin: The Skins were pieces of *Seal* and *Guianacoes* Skins, sew'd together with small Guts, full of holes and very greasy; there were also pieces of Flints made fast with a green Gut in the split of a Stick, wherewith they knock their Arrow heads into shape, and some pieces of Sticks to get Fire with. The Bundle was ty'd together with Leathern thongs, braided round like Whip cord,

Their Dogs. and the Dogs (a kind of large Mungrel Curs, of the *Spanish* Race) were coupled with the same; they were grey, and painted with red spots, very lean, and so tame that any Body might handle them. Near the Bundle were found two Staves of tough Cane in short joints, of about four foot long.

Tuesday *August* 30. A still foggy Morning, the Wind North. We travell'd betwixt ten and twenty Miles farther into the Land; to the West we found dry Ground, with some Grass and thorny Bushes; the Hills high, covered with Snow on the tops, without Wood or Tree; the Water coming from the Hills, gathers into a fresh-water Rivulet, with good green Grass, some sedgy Bushes, and a certain Herb of a strong hot taste, growing on the brink; we see here some Teal and other Water-fowl. The Country has divers Salt-water Ponds; in the Valleps we saw Fowls like Herons, but red all over, a great many *Guianacoes* and twenty *Ostriches*, some

And other Creatures. *Hares* and *Partridges*, greyer and bigger than ours; as also some *Snipes* and small Birds, *Penne-wrens*, *Kites*, small *Hawks* and *Owls*, two *Foxes*, a *wild Dog*, and many *brant-Geese*: we caught two *Armadillos*. The Country is Hills and Valleys, the Soil gravel and sand, of a Salt-petre nature; the Grass sometimes short, sometimes long, but dry; we saw the Footsteps of People, where there had been Fire made, and some *Guianacoes* kill'd; the Bones and Ostrich Feathers lying scatter'd about; we found also the Skulls of three People very clean pick'd without Flesh, of the same bigness as those of the *Europeans*, with smooth, even and close set Teeth; one of these Skulls was broken; perhaps they are Man-eaters: As there is many Plains and Meadows here, so it would make a good Pasturage for Cattel, and as good for a Plantation as any in *America*, were it not for want of Wood to build with: It being a foggy afternoon we could not travel any farther, though we had our Compass along with us, without which there is no travelling in these large Plains and Downs.

Tuesday *September* 1. Hazy Weather, the Wind at North. The Water very cold; the farthest part of this Country I was in, was 25 Mile North-north-west from the mouth of the Harbour: What Creatures I saw I mentioned before; no manner of Snake or venomous Creature, nor Beasts of Prey, except Earth-worms, Caterpillers and Bugs, and these but seldom; for the rest the Country would produce *European* Grain, and breed good Cattel.

September 16. Some of my Men being very weak, I thought it best to sail to *Port Desier*, to refresh them with *Penguins* and *Seals*, and to salt up a good quantity of them, to lengthen out my Provisions. I set Sail this forenoon from *St. Julian*, steering North-north-east with a small Gale, which veering in the Night to the West-south-west, I made easie Sail, for fear of coming among the Eady Stone Rocks before Day-light. 1670.

Wednesday *September* 21. A fair Day; the Wind veering round the Compass, we loaded both our Boats with *Penguins* and *Penguin's* Eggs; these last are very good Nourishment.

Thursday *September* 22. A fair Day, the Wind at West. The Eggs were divided among the Seamen; the *Seal* and *Penguins* salted: Fair Weather at Night.

Friday *September* 23. Wind North in the Morning, turns to the South before Noon, with Storm and Rain: This day I and *Don Carolus* went ten Mile up the River with ten arm'd Men, and lay all Night on the South side, but saw no People; though the same Night the Natives came to our little fresh Water Well in the Valley, and stole thence an Iron Pot, three suits of Cloaths, with some Linen, that were laid a drying there, but did not touch the Beads that were fastned to a Pole on an adjacent Hill: In a Valley hard by, they had made the form of a Ship in Earth and Bushes, with Sticks instead of Masts, which Model I suppose, is to record our Ship: We left it untouch'd, only hung a string or two of Beads on it.

Tuesday *October* 11. A cold Snowy day, Wind at West-south-west. My Men are all in good Health now, being cured of the *Scurvy*, by the refreshments of fresh Meat, Herbs and wild green Pease Leaves they met with here; for we have plenty of Provisions; and I may confidently affirm it, that the *Island of Penguins* only affords more *Penguins* and *Seals* at present than three hundred Tuns of Cask can hold, when dress'd and salted; so that if you have Salt, you may provide your self with what quantity you please, and it will keep four Months at least very sweet, if care be taken in bleeding, dressing and salting, as I told you before; you may have Salt enough at *St. Julian's* Salt Pond in Summer, and I believe Salt may be made in the same Season at *Port Desier*, there being dry'd Salt in the holes of the Rocks; and here are several Flats, where you may make Pits and let in the Salt-water, for the making of Salt. The

The *Penguin*. *Penguin* is a Fowl living upon Fish, of the bigness of a *brant-Goose*, weighing commonly about eight pounds; instead of Wings, they have flat stumps like Fins; their Feather is a kind of Down, of a blackish colour, but grey on the Back and Head, and white about the Neck and down the Belly; their Legs are short like those of a Goose, they are full necked, with Heads and Backs like a Crow, except that the point of their Bill turns down a little. The bite severely, but are so tame, that you may drive them in Herds to the Boat side like Sheep, and there knock them in the head at leisure: Here are also great numbers of *Sea-Pies*, *Ducks*, *Ox-birds*, *Sea-Mews*, *Gulls*, white *Sea-Pigeons*, white breasted *Divers*, and *Dobchicks*.

October 13. I set Sail again from *Port-Desier*, standing to the South. I was at 49 *d.* 8 *m.* South Latitude, and the

October 16. 19th past'd by the Cape, called *Beachy-head*, and the Hill of St. *Ives* at 50 *d.* 10 *m.* Latitude. The variation of the Compass 16 *d.* 37 *m.* to the East. The Land here makes a Bay, where the River of St. *Cruce* goes in.

October 21. We pass'd by Cape *Fair-weather* at 50 *d.* 30 *m.* South Latitude. Here goes on the River of *Gallegoes*: We

October 22. came to *Cape Virgin-Mary*, at the very entrance of the Streights of *Magellan*. It lies at the North entrance at 52 *d.* 26 *m.* Latitude. In Longitude from the *Lizard* in *England*, W. 65 *d.* 42 *m.* Meridian distance from the *Lizard* in Leagues, West 1092 Leagues. Variation of the Compass to the East 17 *d.*

The entrance of the *Streights* of *Magellan*. All about this part of the Streight from *Cape Virgin-Mary*, till you come to the *Narrow*, is very good Anchorage and not much Tide, but in the *Narrow* the Tide runs much stronger than in the *Hope*; the Flood setts into the *Streights*, and the Ebb out, and keeps its Course as on other Coasts six hours Flood and two hours Ebb; it rises and falls near four fathoms perpendicular; it is an high Water here at the change day of the Moon at eleven a Clock. You see here many beds of Rock-weed driving. At two a Clock I was over against Point *Possession*; we steered two Leagues thence West-north-west, and then West and West-south-west, and South-west by South round the North shore. I found 22, 18, 16, 12, and 9 fathoms, sandy and sometimes gravelly Ground and Peeble-stones: Being not certain where the *Narrow* lay, I failed rounding the shore; for being shut in one Land with the other, I could not see the opening, yet enter'd it at five a Clock with a Gale at North-north-east, I steered into the

1670. the Chops of it South-west by South, but the Tide being so strong I could not get past a League into it, for fear of running the Ship upon the steep Rocks that lie on the Northside. These Rocks have abundance of Rock-weed, over them I found five foot Water, and on the side of them went to the Channel 14 fathom. They come trenting from the Point of the *Narrow* of the N. side, a Mile off. At six a Clock the Wind turn'd to the N. and at eight to the N. W. with dark rainy Weather, so that not being able to see the shore, I was forced to get back out of the *Narrow* as fast and as well as I could, and anchored at 25 Fathom Oazy Ground, and Peeble stones, a little Wind at S. W.

The Narrows of the Streights.

From the first *Narrow* to the second is above eight Leagues: The Reach from the first *Narrow* to the second is seven Leagues broad from the North to the South shore, and shews like an inland Sea, for we did not get sight of the second *Narrow*, till we had sail'd three Leagues within the first. At the Point of the second *Narrow* on the North shore, a mile or two to the North-east, is a Bay on the North shore, and a white Cliff of an indifferent height, call'd *Cape St. Gregory*; in the Bay you may ride in 8 Fathom clear sandy Ground, half a Mile from the shore; if the Wind be between the North-east and the South-west to the W. for here the Winds are most given to blow on the Western quarter. I found the Channel in the second *Narrow* to have 38 Fathom, small Stones: The North shore on this *Narrow* makes in a Bay at the East Point, with white Cliffs all the way through; this *Narrow* lies throughout West-south-west, and East-north-east; and at the West end of the *Narrow* the Land makes up into steep white Cliffs, as the South part rounds away South-east from this Foreland, and then it trents away to the South in Lowland. The North shore of this *Narrow* rounds up to the North in white Cliffs, and falls into Shores; there goes in a Harbour, having four Fathom in the Channel at high Water: The Harbour is flat and round, oazy Ground; I call'd it *Oaz-Harbour*: Coming to the West part of this *Narrow*, you will see three Islands, shewing like steep Cliffs, situate in a Triangle one of another, and four Leagues distant from the *Narrow*, West-south-west. The smallest and eastermost is call'd the Isle of St. *Bartholomews*, the biggest and westermost, *Elizabeth*: and the middle and southermost, St. *George's* or *Penguins* Isle, from the vast multitude of *Penguins* there. I anchored this Evening in eight fathoms black Sand, two mile off the Isle of *Elizabeth*: The East Point bearing South by East of me; fair Weather, the Wind South by West.

Three Isles, Elizabeth, St. Bartholomew, and St. George.

Elizabeth Isle.

I went ashore the next Morning on *Elizabeth-Isle*, nineteen of the Natives came down a Hill to me, with whom I exchanged Knives and Beads for their Bows, Arrows, and Skin Coats, made of young *Guianacoe's* Skins; I gave them a Hatchet, Knives, Beads, and such like Toys, wherewith they seem'd well pleased. I shew'd them Gold, they would also have taken it; I made them to understand by signs, that if they had any I would give them some of our Toys for it; I laid Gold and bright Copper upon the Ground, and looking about me, seim'd as if I found it, at which they look'd at and spoke one to another, but I did not understand their meaning; they were for laying hands on every thing they saw, after a very brutish way; and tried to break the Boats Iron-grapenel with Stones; I let them alone, bid them sit down, and put strings of Beads about their Neck, but the more I gave, the more they seem'd to crave. Mr. *Peckett* my Lieutenant danc'd with them hand in hand, and so did some of our Men; the Lieutenant having a red Coat on, a Colour they much covet, he chang'd it for one of theirs: After two hours Conference, I made signs we would go to fetch more things, and come again; they shew'd us a Cliff, under which they would have us land when we return'd, which I suppose was done with an intention to sink our Boat with Stones thrown down from the Cliff. They set themselves down on the Grass near the shore, unto which they set Fire soon after; I cannot guess where they could get Fire so suddenly. I found the Channel betwixt *Elizabeth* and St. *Bartholomew's* Isle very fair, a Mile over at the narrowest, thirty eight Fathom in the middle, and nine and ten near the shore side, gravelly Sand.

The Natives there.

Their Stature, Cloathing, &c.

These People were of a middle stature, well-limb'd, with round Faces, low Foreheads, little Noses, and small black Eyes and Ears; their Teeth are smooth, even and white, their Hair flaggy and very black, of an indifferent length; Men and Women alike; they are all full breasted, of an Olive Colour, and painted all over their Bodies with red Earth and Grease; their Faces daub'd in spots with white Clay, and black streaks made with Smut; their Arms and Feet the like; their Heads are generally small, their Fingers short, and their Bodies very active; their Cloathing is of the Skins of *Seals*, *Guianacoes* and *Otters*, sewed together; their Garments are in form of a Carpet five Foot square, which they wrap about them, as the *Scotch* Man does his Pladding: On their Heads they wear Caps of the Skins of Fowls with the Feathers, and on their Feet pieces of Skins to keep them from the Ground; they are very hardy, for tho' it was very Cold then, they don't wear these Skins when they go about any business that requires stirring: They have no Hair on any part of their Bodies or Faces, nor any thing to cover their Privitys, except that the Women have a piece of Skin hanging before it; the Men and Women are cloathed alike, except that the Women go without Caps, and wear Bracelets of Shells about their Necks, which the Men have not: The Men are something taller than the Women, and fuller fac'd; the Men have a harsher Voice, and rattle in the Throat, the Women somewhat shriller; they often repeat the word *Ursah*, and if they did not like any thing, would cry *Ur*, *Ur*; they feed both upon Fish and Flesh, live under no manner of Government, or worship any thing. At our Landing they came to us with a great noise, every one his Bow ready, and two Arrows in his Hand: Their Bows are about an Ell long, and every Arrow eighteen Inches, neatly made of Wood, headed with Flint stones, curiously wrought broad Arrow fashion, and well fastned to the Arrow; the other end being feathered with two Feathers, and ty'd on with the Gut of some Beast, whilst yet green and moist; the Bow-string is of twisted Guts. They have large Mungrel Dogs of several Colours, not unlike *Spanish* Dogs: I saw no other domestick Creatures, nor their Boats which then lay on the other side of the Island, towards the Main, where they waited for fair Weather to catch *Penguins*, of which there is a vast quantity on the Southermost of these three Isles, as also of white-breasted *Divers*.

1670. Weapons.

This Night I anchored in a small Bay, eleven Fathom Water, gravelly Ground half a Mile from the shore; no Tide runs here, the Water rises and falls perpendicularly ten Feet. This Bay had two fresh Water Brooks, and Timber Trees of eighteen Inches diameter, and forty Foot high; the Wood like Beech; and some wild Currants, and other Bushes. I call'd it *Fresh-water Bay*, lying nine Leagues South of the *Sweepstakes-Bay*; *Sand-point* is a low Point jetting out beyond the other Points into the Sea; few Trees grow on it.

October 30.

Fresh-water Bay.

From *Fresh-water Bay* to *Port Famen*, is 6 Leagues South, and North from one Point to the other, that which is nearest to *Port Famen* cannot be seen as you come Northward, but you come to bring the Point of St. *Anne* upon the North-west of you, for the Bay lies upon a little hook North-west, and the Sand on the West side of the Bay is low in a Point, and sandy, and some Grass grows on it: A little way within Land are brave green Woods, and in the Valleys large Timber Trees of two foot diameter, and some above forty foot long, not unlike our Beech Timber in *England*; and their Leaves are like green Birch tree Leaves, very sweet; the Woods shew at a distance like regular Plantations, having several clear places where Grass grows; on *Point St. Anne*, as you come Northward, you see large Bushes and tall Trees that grow on the very Point of it, which is rocky on the Sea side, but not dangerous, for you may be bold on it to get into *Port Famen* Bay.

Port-Famen Bay.

Here is both good Wooding and Watering, and we catch'd with our Net above 500 large Fish, like a *Mullet*, with *Seals*, and some *Smelts* twenty inches long, also vast store of *Anchovies* and small *Scates*; we fed wholly upon them, and filled up the rest: Here also grow great store of Trees of good Timber, forty inches diameter; the Leaves are green, not unlike those of the Bay-tree in *England*; the rind is thick, and grey on the outsides, and as hot as Pepper in the Mouth, and more quick, and when dry'd, smells like Spices; we used to season our Meat with it and steep it in our Water, it gave it a pretty flavor, and was very wholesome: These Trees grow in the Woods, in many places in the *Streights* on both shores, and on the Coasts on both sides of *Patagonia*, before you enter them. Perhaps this is the Winter-bark of the Shops.

A Spicy Bark.

Port Famen lies at 53 *d.* 35 *m.* South Latitude, Longitude West, from the *Lizard* 68 *d.* 9 *m.* Meridian distance 1092 Leagues West, according to my Account in Sailing. This Voyage I give no Credit to the plain

Port Famen.

1670. Sailing; therefore this Meridian distance signifies very little as to Navigation. I took a view of many places on the shore, but could see no Fruit-trees, or Oak, Ash, or Hazel, or any Timber like ours in *England*: These Woods affording only two sorts, *viz.* the *Pepper-rind* Tree, and another like *Beech*; hereabouts are the biggest Trees in all the *Streights*, some having two foot and half Diameter, and betwixt thirty and forty foot high: I search'd all the Gullies for grains of Gold, but could find none, or any other Mineral or Metal; some Herbs we met with, which we boil'd, and were relishing enough. The Soil in the Woods is gravelly and sandy, mixed with good brown Earth in some places: The Woods are for the most part on the sides of the Hills; for the Land on the North-west and West of *Port Famen* runs up to very high Hills, and the inland part is the same; the tops are so ragged and barren, being scarce ever free from Snow: The Land on the South shore is very high and peaked. We saw many Ducks and Brant-Geese near the shore, and in the fresh Waters, and some Whales in the main Channel.

I am of opinion that these Mountains contain either some Gold or Copper; for upon shewing my Ring to one of the *Natives* that came aboard us, he pointed to the Mountains, and said something I did not understand: They eat all that was set before them, and greased their Coats with the Oil; I made signs to them to bring me some Gold, some went away, the rest talk'd to one another sitting on the Grass, and pointing to the Ship. Their Language is much in the Throat, but slow. I obsery'd no superiority among them, except that the younger paid some sort of Obedience to the elder, and the Women to the Men; for when I would have laid one of the Men's Garments upon a Woman, he did take it again; I pretended to exchange one of our Lads with one of theirs, but the *Indian* refus'd, so I dismiss'd the Men with some Knives and Fishhooks, and the Women with some Looking-glasses and Beads, to gain their Affection; they refus'd to take any of the Brandy.

The Natives there.

Cape Froward. *Cape Froward* is the southermost Land of the vast Continent of *America*; the Land behind is very high, the Face steep Cliffs of Rocks, black grey, with deep Water near it; I found forty fathom close to it; in the Channel there is no Ground at two hundred fathom, and very little Tide; nor any ripling, but a fair Channel of three Leagues broad from the North to the South shore; but it is best to keep near the North shore, the Winds coming most generally from the West Quarter.

Cape Froward in the *Streights* of *Magellan*, lies at 53 *d.* 52 *m.* South Latitude. In Longitude West, from the *Lizard* 68 *d.* 40 *m.* West. Meridian distance 1099 Leagues, 2 Miles West. The Compass 16 *d.* Variation East at *Cape Froward*. As to the Firling Points I can't say any thing; I wanted a Needle.

Novemb. 4. I came in *Wood's Bay*, so call'd after my Mate. The fifth I was over against *Cape Holland*, near which lies *Cape Coventry* and *Andrews Bay*, also *Cordes* and *Fostenes Bay*, *Cape* and *Port Gallant*: But for a more exact situation of the Promontories, Bays, Harbours, Rivulets, Soundings, *&c.* I refer my Reader to the draught of the *Sreights* of *Magellan*, made by me on the place.

Over against the Bay, two Leagues off is the Isle call'd by me *Charles Island*, and *Monmouth Isle*; more to the West is *Fames Isle*, and *Ruperts Isle*, and the Lord *Arlingtons Isle*, and the Earl of *Sandwich's Isle*, and Secretary *Wrens Isle*: This Reach I call'd *English Reach*; a League more to the West of *Fostenes Bay* is *Cape Gallant*.

The Streight appears now as if there were no farther passage to the West; the South Land rounding up so much to the North-west, as to close the passage against the North Land, to a Man's sight. I saw two large openings into the South Land, one opposite to *Charles Isle*, the other more to the West, up of the round South Kite: Here I obsery'd many *Whales*, so call'd it *Whale-Bay*; as also *Brant-Geese* and *Ducks*: I discover'd a Fire made by the Natives in the Grass on the South side; and left some Beads and Knives in their Huts, to purchase their good Will.

The situation of the Streights. From the pitch of *Cape Froward* to the pitch of *Cape Holland*, the Streight lies in the Channel W. by N. nearest, and is distant full 5 Leagues: From the pitch of *Cape Holland* to the pitch of *Cape Gallant*, the Streight lies in the Channel W. by N. a little N. and is distant 8 Leag. From the pitch of *Cape Gallant* to a low Point 3 Leagues to the W. the Streight lies in the Channel N. W. by W. a little N. This Reach is 2 Miles broad from the North shore to the Islands which I call'd the *Royal Isles*: Just opposite to the Westermost Island, which I call'd *Rupert's Isle*, being in the middle of the Channel with the Ship, I shot off one of my Sakers with a shot, and the shot lodg'd close to the Islands side. This low Point on the North shore, over against *Rupert's Isle*, I call'd *Passage-Point-Passage*. This Evening at 6 a Clock I was past *Point-Passage*, half a Mile to the W. of it, with a fine gale from the East. 1670. *Passage-Point.*

A foggy Day, Wind at W. and sometimes at N. W. I rode close to the shore: In the Afternoon I went in my Boat to the South side, opposite to *Elizabeth's-Bay*, at the Point call'd *Whale-Point*, from the many *Whales* thereabouts. I mounted the Hills 2 Miles, saw no Metal, but irregular Rocks, and a mossy kind of Grass, the Ground boggy and rotten; I thrust a Pike of 16 foot long easily into it: I saw many *Juniper-Trees*, of a foot Diameter, the Wood not very sweet; and Brant-Geese, and Ducks, and much Snow on the the Mountains. In the Grass you might discern the footsteps of the Natives, but could get no sight of any; so I return'd to my Boat. On the Rocks are store of good Muscles 5 inches long, with good Fish, and many seed Pearls in them; and among the Rocks large Limpets and Sea-eggs. *Monday Novemb.* 7. *Whales Point.*

It is but an Hours time on both Tides Ebb and Floud, when the Tide runs strong, and the Tides are rather advantageous than prejudicial to the Navigation of the Streight, to help from Road to Road either way.

The Streight in the Reach betwixt *Elizabeth's Bay* and and *St. Jerom's* River is about 2 Leagues broad, with high Land on the S. side, which hath several brave Coves on it, like the Wet Dock at *Deptford*, where Ships may lie safe from Wind and Sea. I call'd this Bay *Muscles-Bay*, from the vast quantity of Muscles found here. The Sea side is rocky, and generally steep; no Ground in the main Channel at 100 fathom; it is also deep Water in the Bays on the S. side, and in these Bays, and close along the S. shore lie many small Islands. We saw here great numbers of *Whales* and *Pengnins*, and some *Seals*; the shores are woody on both sides, and boggy Ground, but the tops of the Rocks bare: Divers streams of Snow-water run down in the Cliffs of the Hills, 2 Leagues to the W. of *Elizabeth's Bay*. On the N. shore 'tis low and woody; in a Valley runs a fresh Water River, into which I went with my Boat, it is very shallow at low Water, but very convenient for Sloops and small Vessels; the Tide rises 8 or 9 foot at high Water: I gave it the name of *Batchelor's River*. I saw some of the *Indians* Arbors or Huts, but no People in them. At the entrance of this River in the Streights, is good anchoring at 9, 10 or 12 fathom sandy Ground; a fair birth off the shore: The Tide runs but ordinary, and the Floud-tide comes from the W. and the Tide that comes out of St. *Jerom's* Channel makes a ripling with the Tide, that comes along the Streight. I call'd the Road before *Batchelors River*, *York Road*; here is safe riding with W. Winds, and here can't go any great Sea; if a Cable give way, he may have the Streight open to carry it away; for the W. Winds that blow here are the greatest, witness the Trees, which stoop to these Winds, and lean to the E. and the W. side of all the Trees, that stand open are made flat with the Winds; the Trees of the Mountains look to the E. and the E Winds seldom blow strong here, as far as I observed: The Sea side that lies open to the E. has abundance of Grass down to the Water side; and the Trees on the E. side of the Hills are strait and tall, but on the W. shore the Grass and Trees are much weather-beaten, worn away and cripled, and the Shore sides much tewed with the surge of the Waters. *Muscles-Bay.* *Batchelors River.* *York-Road.*

At *Cape Quad*, the Lands shut one with the other, as if they had stopt up the passage, till coming nearer you discover the openings; more and more, as the Streight rounds more to the N. against *Cape Quad* is a steep, rocky, grey Cape on the N. shore, of a considerable height, appearing at the distance like an old Castle: It jets out in a Point so far from the other Mountains into the Channel of the Streight, that shutting in against the S. Land, it maketh an Elbow in the Streight, which here from shore to shore is not past 4 Mile broad: The Lands steep, rocky, craggy, and barren on both sides, having only a few Trees and Bushes, but much Snow on the Mountains. On the S. side opposite to *Cape Quad* is a spacious Bay call'd *Riders Bay*: I did not go into it, but if there be anchoring, it is a good Road for any Ships: In the Channel is no Ground at 100 fathom. This part of the Streights from *Point-Passage* to *Cape Quad*, being the most crooked part of all the Streights, I call'd it *Crooked-Reach*. On the North shore to the E. of *Cape Quad* are two small Isles. *Cape Quad.* *Riders-Bay.*

This

1670. This Morning I was abreſt of *Cape Munday* (as I call'd it) on the S. ſide, 13 Leagues diſtant from *Cape Quad*. The Streight here is 4 Miles broad, and the N. ſhore makes into the Land with great Sounds and broken Iſlands; the Land on both ſides, high, rocky, barren Hills, with little Wood or Graſs. At *Cape Munday* the Streight grows broader and broader to the W. but keeps the ſame Courſe N. W. by W. to *Cape Upright*, a ſteep upright Cliff on the S. ſide, 4 Leagues diſtant from *Cape Munday*. Near the Streight inclines to the W. half a Point; the Streight lies from *Cape Munday* W. N. W. half a Point N. right out into the S. Sea. I find little Tide here, either in the Channel or near the Shore; no Ground at 220 fathom, a Musket ſhot off the ſhore on either ſide. Here run into the South ſhore many Sounds and Coves; I ſail cloſe to the S. ſhore all this day, becauſe the N. ſhore makes in broken Iſles and Sounds. The S. ſhore has all along ſome ſmall Iſlands, but being ſteep, there is no danger near them. To day at Noon I was oppoſite to an Iſle on the N. ſhore of the Streight, which being high and rocky, I call'd it *Weſtminſter-Hall*; the Streight is 5 Leagues broad betwixt this and the S. ſhore, but between it and the N. ſhore lie many rocky Iſlands and broken Ground; as alſo to the E. and W. Theſe I call'd the *Lawyers*.

Novem. 14 *Cape Munday.*

The Iſle of *Weſtminſter Hall.*

The Situation of the Streight from *Cape Munday* to *Cape Deſſeada* is W. N. W. and E. S. E. half a Point N. and half a Point S. neareſt; their diſtance 15 Leagues. From *Cape Quad* to *Cape Deſſeada* is 28 Leagues, and the Streight lies N. W. by W. from *Cape Quad* into the S. Sea; and near in one Reach, which I call'd *Long Reach*, and our Seamen *Long Lane*. This part may moſt properly be call'd the Streights, having high Land and barren Rocks on both ſides, with Snow on them; whence I gave that Tract from *Cape Quad* into the S. Sea, the name of *The Land of Deſolation*.

Cape Deſſeada lies at 53 *d.* 10 *m.* S. Lat. In Longit. W. from the *Lizard* 72 *d.* 56 *m.* Meridian diſtance 1149. Variation of the Compaſs E. 14 *d.* 10 *m.* *Cape Pillar* lies at 53 *d.* 5. *m.* Lat. In Longit. W. from the *Lizard* 72 *d.* 49 *m.* Meridian diſtance 1143 Leagues Weſt.

Length of the *Streights of Magellan.*

I compute the whole length of the Streights of *Magellan* from *Cape Virgin Mary* to *Cape Deſſeada* with every Reach and Turning to be 116 Leagues. The beſt Landfall is to make the face of *Cape Deſſeada*, to come out of the S. Sea into the Streights of *Magellan*, they lie E. and W. at firſt till you come oppoſite to *Cape Pillar*, then the Courſe is S. E. by E. neareſt. Be careful to keep in ſight of the S. ſhore, for the N. ſhore being broken Iſlands and Sounds, you may eaſily miſtake the right Channel as you come from the S. Sea, if you loſe ſight of the S. ſhore.

At the N. part of the Streights Mouth in the S. Sea, lie 4 little Iſlands pretty near together: The Eaſtermoſt lies by it ſelf, a round copling Iſland like a Hay-Cock, or Sugar-Loaf, of an indifferent height; the other 3 flattiſh: They lie N. N. W. from *Cape Pillar*, 6 Leagues off by the true Compaſs; and from *Cape Victory* 4 Leagues S. W. I call'd them the Iſles of *Direction*.

The *Iſles of Direction.*

Novem. 26.

Many Iſlands near the main Land, large and high Hills In-land, with Snow on the top of them, ſtretching N. and S. At 8 a Clock I made the Iſland of *our Lady of Sucore*, as the *Spaniards* call it; I ſteer'd with it N. E. by E. it made a rounding up at the E. end, and lower in the middle than at either end: It has a ridge running from one end to the other, with Trees on it: The ſhore ſide is rocky on the S. ſide, with ſome broken Rocks near the ſhore. On the S. E. end ſtand 2 peaked copling Rocks cloſe to the ſhore, white on the top with Fowl dung. This Iſle is pretty high, woody on the N. ſide, the Trees growing down to the Water ſide, with many Spicy Trees, and freſh Water running down in 5 or 6 Gullies.

The Iſle of our Lady of *Sucore.*

Meridian diſtance at Noon from *Cape Pillar* E. 20 *d.* 0 *m.* four tenths Longit. at Noon from *Cape Pillar*, E. 1 *d.* 19 *m.* Longitude at Noon from the *Lizard*, W. 71 *d.* 42 *m.* Meridian diſtance at Noon from the *Lizard*, W. 1128 Leagues 2 Miles nine tenths. The *Iſle of our Lady of Sucore* lies at 45 *d.* S. Lat. In Long. E. from *Cape Pillar*, 1 *d.* 19 *m.* Meridian diſtance from *Cape Pillar*, E. 20 Leagues 0 Miles 4 tenths. Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard*, W. 1128 *d.* 2 *m.* nine tenths; Longit. from the Meridian of the *Lizard*, W. 71 *d.* 42 *m.* The Compaſs 11 *deg.* Variation East.

We provided our ſelves ſufficiently with freſh Water here; I ſaw on the ſhore an old Hut or Arbour of the Natives, but no ſign of any People on the Iſland; now I ſuppoſe they come hither at certain ſeaſons to get young Fowls; for I could ſee nothing elſe here, no Metals nor Minerals: The Soil is a ſandy and black Earth, grown all over with unpaſſable Woods, like Beech and Birch; 'tis white but fit only for fuel: No Fruit or Herbs; little Graſs, ſedgy and long; no wild Beaſts; ſome ſmall Birds like Sparrows, Fowls like Kites, black and white brant Geeſe, pied Shags, Pinks and Sea-mews. I made a Fire on the ſhore, but had no anſwer, ſo return'd aboard again.

1670.

Novem. 30.

Being on the main ſide this forenoon, I went aſhore in an Iſland adjacent to the Main: Betwixt that and the Main the Channel is ſo rocky and foul that I durſt not venture my Ship in it. The Iſle is 4 Leagues long from the N. to the S. point, in ſome places, in others 2 Leagues broad, covered with thick Woods; the Timber like as in the Iſle of *Socora*. The ſhore in ſome places ſandy, and rocky in others; the Earth of a ſandy black Soil, but wet with the continual Rains. Not finding the name of this Iſle in my Draughts, I took poſſeſſion of it in his Majeſty's name, and call'd it *Narborough's Iſland*.

Narboroughs Iſland.

South-eaſt from this Iſle on the Main about 3 Leagues diſtant runs into the Land a River or Sound, with ſome broken Ground before it: The ſhore is rocky, and the in-land Hills very high on both ſides of it; the opening lies E. and W. which I take to be the ſame call'd in the Draughts *St. Domingo*. It lies at 44 *d.* 50 *m.* S. Latitude. More to the S. lie many round copling Iſles, covered with Woods all along the Coaſts, not far from the Main of a great height.

St. Domingo.

All our Bread being now ſpent, all the Ship's Company and I my ſelf eat Peaſe inſtead of Bread; however all my Men, 72 in number, are indifferently in health: We could take no Fiſh; ſaw ſome Whales and Porpiſes, and ſome Sea-fowl: The Wind ſtrong at N. W.

No-Man's Iſland lies at 43 *d.* 47 *m.* S. Lat. In Longit. W. from the *Lizard* 71 *d.* 32 *m.* Meridian diſtance from the *Lizard* 1126 Leagues 1 Mile. Meridian diſtance from *Cape Pillar* E. 22 Leagues 2 Miles 2 tenths. In Longit. E. from *Cape Pillar* 1 *d.* 29 *m.* 1tenth. The Variation of the Compaſs 10 *d.* E.

No-Man's Iſle.

This Iſland is the ſame put in the Draughts at the S. end of the Iſle of *Caſtro* at the entrance of that Channel, which is betwixt *Caſtro* and the Main: The Draughts are not exact in deſcribing this Coaſt, which they make ſtreight without mentioning the ſeveral Iſlands that lie on it, no more than thoſe lying to the S. at the Latitude of 45 and half *deg.* For the reſt I found the Lat. of moſt places near the ſame as mentioned in the Draughts.

At 7 a Clock *Don Carolus* was ſet aſhore, on the S. ſide of the Harbour of *Baldavia* in a ſandy Creek, without the mouth of it a Mile, and two Mile within *Point-Gallery*, between the Point and the Mouth of the Harbour. He carried along with him a Sword, one Caſe of Piſtols, a Bag with Beads and Knives, Sciſſars, Looking-glaſſes, Combs, Rings, Pipes, Bells, Tobacco, to beſtow'd upon the Natives. Having deſired the Lieutenant (who ſet him aſhore) to look out for his Fire in the Night: He took the path near the Sea ſide, leading to the mouth of the Harbour; after a quarter of a Miles walk he turn'd out of ſight behind a Rock. The Sea ſhore is low and ſandy, with ſome ſcattered Rocks, the inland riſing up into large Hills, very woody; with thick tender Wood: My Lieutenant went to the edge of the Woods, where he gathered green Apples, which grow on Trees near the Water ſide, not unlike our *European* Winter Fruits, of the bigneſs of a good Walnut with its ſhell on: I did not obſerve any Current or Tide that could be prejudicial to Navigation, nor any Trade Winds: They are veerable, and blow hard on the Weſtern Quarter, with much Rain.

Decem. 15.

Apples.

The Mouth of the Harbour of *Baldavia* on the Coaſts of *Chili* in the S. Sea, lies at 39 *d.* 56 *m.* S. Lat. In Longit. W. from the *Lizard* 70 *d.* 19 *m.* In Longit. E. from *Cape Pillar* 2 *d.* 41 *m.* In Meridian diſtance from *Cape Pillar* E. 41 Leagues 2 Miles 1 tenth.

The Harbour of *Baldavia.*

According to the Account made by my ſailing from the Meridian of the *Lizard*, according to my daily computation of my Ships way; for I don't look upon the Account of plain Sailing fit for Obſervations at Sea, but the beſt is by *Mercator*, ſailing according to the Circle of the Globe, which I ever made uſe of, and keep my account of *Eaſting* and *Weſting* by *Longitude*, the beſt and trueſt Sailing, to give an exact Deſcription of the Globe: I have ſet down the daily Meridian diſtance, whereby ſuch Navigators as know better, may have that to give them the knowledge of the

1670. distance of places, according to their Understanding. Most of our modern Seamen sail, and keep their account of the Ships way by the plain Chart, though they sail near the Poles; a great Error! for they can't tell how to find their way home again, for want of understanding the true difference of the Meridians, according to their Miles of Longitude in the several Latitudes. I wish all Navigators would sail by *Mercator*'s Chart.

At 8 a Clock in the forenoon my Boat row'd ashore within *Point Gallery*, to the place where *Don Carolus* was landed, and so along the shore into the Harbour; on the S. side of which stands a small Fort of 7 Guns, call'd St. *Jago*'s Fort, which our Boat not perceiving till they were within reach of their Guns, the *Spaniards* wafted them with a white Flag; my Lieutenant row'd to them and ask'd them what Country-men they were? They answer'd, of *Spain*; and demanded our People who they were? They told them *English* Men; whereupon the *Spaniards* ask'd them to come ashore, which they did, in hopes of meeting with *Don Carolus* there, whom they had seen going along the Path leading directly to this Fort, betwixt the Woods and the Sea side.

St. *Jago*'s Fort. The Fort stands on a Wood side, on an ascent from the Sea, with a Breast-work of Earth cast up before the Ordnance, with some slight Pallisado works 4 Yards distant from the Guns to the S. The *Spanish* Garrison had Match-lock Musquetoons, but very indifferent ones, and very indifferently us'd.

My Lieutenant was receiv'd ashore by about 20 *Spaniards* and *Indians*, who conducted him to the Governour and two other *Spanish* Gentlemen seated under a great Tree; they bid him welcome ashore with a good Silver Bowl of Wine, asked his Company, whence they came, and which way into those Seas, who their Captain was, and such like questions? My Lieutenant having answer'd him: He ask'd whether they were at Wars with the *Indians*? He answer'd yes, wafting his Hand all about the Harbour, adding, that they were a barbarous and valiant People, and good Horsemen; and that they had lately kill'd one of their Captains near a Wood, which he shew'd them; for they have no ground belonging to the Fort, nor dare walk at a Musket-shots distance from the Pallisadoes, without being well arm'd. The *Spaniards* say the *Indians* abound so much in Gold, that the Breastplates of their Armour are of beaten Gold.

How our People were entertain'd there.

In the afternoon our People were entertain'd in a Tent out of the Fort with Oleos, Pullets and Fish, dress'd with hot Sawces and Sweetmeats, served in Silver Dishes, Plates and Pots, as were all the other Utensils, Stewing Pans, Basons, *&c.* The Hilts of the common Soldiers Swords were of Silver, and those of the Officers of Gold; nay, even the Plate at the But-end of the Stock of their Musquetoons was of the same Metal.

Four *Spanish* Gentlemen came aboard us with my Lieutenant, who offered to conduct her into the Harbour, but being well acquainted with the Treachery of the *Spaniards* in those parts, (an instance of which I remember'd in Captain *Hawkins* at St. *Juan de Ulloa*) I civilly refus'd it.

The condition of that Country. We had much discourse concerning *Baldavia*, and the Country of *Chili*; they told us, that there is much Gold about *Baldavia*, but that the Natives will not let them come at it, being a barbarous valiant People, of an almost Gigantick stature, and bring sometimes 8 or 10000 Horse in the Field. Their Weapons are long Lances, Bows, Arrows and Swords, and some Muskets taken from the *Spaniards*: That these *Indians* are very numerous about *Baldavia*, at *Orsono* on the Isle of *Castro*, and at *Chili*, and have much Gold at *Orsono* and *Chilue*, which they truck with the *Spaniards*.

They added, that every Year 6 Ships went from *Lima* to the Port of *Mannelos* in the *Philippine* Isles, in the Month of *January*, and perform their Voyage in two Months, within the Tropicks, with much E. Wind; and return'd back by the N. to gain the W. Wind, which carries them to *California*, and to the Port of *Aquapulco*, on the W. Coast of *New Spain*, from whence they come over *Panama* to *Lima* again. Their Cargo is rich Silks, Spices and Callicoes. For those of the *Mannelos* have a great Trade with *Japan* and *China*.

The Captain ask'd me whither I was bound? I answered, for *China*, and that I only had touch'd at the *Spanish* Settlement, to refresh my Men, and get some Provisions and fresh Water: He reply'd, I should have what the Country afforded; he shew'd me at the same time a Rivulet falling from the Hills, the Sand whereof contains Gold, which they wash, or separate from it in a Bowl.

A Gold Rivulet.

1670. The *Spaniards* buy much Gold from the Natives, which they gather in the Gullies of the Hills or barren Rocks, 30 Leagues from the Sea side: Betwixt which and these Hills the Country is plain and fruitful, stor'd with Horses, Cows, Goats and Sheep taken by the *Indians* from the *Spaniards*. These rocky Hills the *Spaniards* call *Andes*, and tell you that they run in one continued ridge from the *Streights of Magellan* to Saint *Martha*, which is on *Terra firma* near *Carthagena*.

The most Gold in all *America* is in *Chili*, as far as is known as yet; but I observ'd the *Spaniards* had but little Knowledge of the Country to the S. from *Baldavia* to the *Streights Mouth*; except in the Isle of *Castro*, and at *Orsono* on the Main, over against *Castro*, in both which places they have Settlements, and deal with the *Indians* for Gold. *Castro* lies at the Lat. of 43 *d.* 30 *m.* meaning its S. Point; but the N. End at 41 *d.* 40. *m.* Lat. It is a fine Isle, near the Main, fertile in Wheat: The *Spaniards* are but few, but the *Indians* numerous, a valiant large siz'd People, who keep the *Spaniards* from searching after their Wealth in the Country.

The Isle *Castro*.

A Ship laden with Provisions, Cloaths, Ammunition, Wines, Tobacco and Sugar, came from *Lima* to *Baldavia*; and in her return took in Gold, Bezoar-Stone, red Woolls and *Indian* Slaves: These last they carry to the Gold Mines in *Peru*, and in lieu of these bring back some of the *Peruvian Indians*, to serve for Soldiers here against the *Indians* of *Chili*; and to serve them as Interpreters to Trade with the Natives here; who, tho' at continual Wars with the *Spaniards*, yet will exchange their Gold for Knives, Scissars, Combs, *&c.* and sometimes for Arms, which are brought them by stealth. There were then 30 *Indians* and *Mustice* Soldiers in the Fort, commanded by 16 white Men.

They told us that the City of *Baldavia* was seated in a Plain 3 Leagues up the River, upon the very bank of it; containing about 1000 Souls, and defended by a Fort of 5 pieces of Cannon. They told me, there was a passage by Land from *Baldavia* to the other parts of *Chili*, but that they never us'd it, except when provided with a good Guard, for fear of the Natives: That they built no Ships at *Baldavia*, but at *Velperrazco*, that the Island of *Mocha* is inhabited by *Indians*, who, tho' no great Friends of the *Spaniards*, yet will exchange their Sheep, Goats, Hogs and Hens with them for Hatchets, Knives and Beads; but will not part with their Gold.

Baldavia.

The *Spaniards* have a Fort with 5 Guns on the Isle of St. *Mary*, and are Masters of it, tho' but few of them inhabit there. It abounds in Hogs, Sheep, Corn and Potatoes. I laid the Draught of all that Coast before them; asking them who liv'd at such a Port, and who liv'd at such a one? but they either could or would not answer me to any purpose, but were for waving the Discourse. They told me that some Ships went from *Lima* to the Isle of *Castro*.

The Isle of St. *Mary*.

There is anchorage on the N. E. part of the Isle of *Mocha* at 8 fathom near the shore, in a sandy Bay. The N. E. Wind is the worst for that Road. On the S. side of the Isle lies a ridge of Rocks, and some scattered Rocks not far from the shore: On the N. side of the Isle of St. *Mary* is the best anchorage in a sandy Bay at 8 or 9 fathom, at some distance from the shore; N. N. W. Wind is the worst for that Road. If we may credit the *Spaniards*, both these Isles afford Wood and fresh Water: The Tides are but little on that Coast; the Flood which comes from the S. not rising above 8 or 9 foot.

The Isle of *Mocha* lies at 38 *d.* 30 *m.* S. Lat. The Isle of St. *Mary* at 37 *d.* 14 *m.* S. Lat. They produce store of Apples, Plums, Pears, Olives, Apricocks, Peaches, Quinces, Oranges, Lemmons, Musk Melons, Water Melons, *&c.* These *Spaniards* described this Country to us like an earthly Paradise, where the People live in the greatest delight and plenty in the World; and to speak the Truth, these four *Spaniards* aboard us, as well as those we saw ashore, were very well complexion'd and corpulent.

Decem. 1. I sent ashore 18 of my best Men, to inspect the Harbour and Fortifications of the *Spaniards*, and to endeavour to settle a Commerce with the Natives; it being certain, that this Country is lost for want of true Knowledge of it. The *Spaniards* bought several things of them, for good pieces of Eight, but would not part with their Gold, or any Bread: As for instance, two Fowling-pieces worth 20 Shillings in *England*, for 16 pieces of Eight a piece; Cases of Knives worth 3 Shillings in *England*, for 5 pieces of Eight a piece; Leather Gloves of 10 pence a pair for a piece of Eight. They were

1670. were very eager to buy Cloaks and Bays Cloath, tho' their under Garments were very rich of Plush, Silk and Silver Brocadoes; with fine Linen, and good *Flanders* Lace, made for the most part after the *Spanish* fashion. Four of the *Spaniard*'s Wives would needs go into the Boat: They were white, born in *Peru* of *Spanish* Parents, and well apparelled after the *Spanish* fashion, with a large golden Chain about their Necks, and Pendants of *Saphir* in their Ears.

The Governour of Fort St. *Jago* presented my Lieutenant with a Silver Tobacco Box, a Silver-headed Cane, and a Plume of Ostrich Feathers, red, white and blew, dy'd in the Country; it was but small, and not so good as those of *Barbary*: Mr. *Wood* had another given him by a *Spanish* Gentleman, it was black and large, of the Ostriches Feathers of the Country, of which they have vast numbers, as well as of Guianacoes, the Beasts that bear the red Wool, whereof Hats are made in *England*.

Our People could not find the least opportunity of entring into a Conference with the Natives; for, tho' they made a Fire near the Wood side, and fastned a white Flag to a long Pole; the *Spaniards* would not permit our Boat's Crew to come near them. At their return they brought word that the Governour of Fort St. *Jago* had not orders for our fetching of Water, but with'd them to go to St. *Peter*'s Fort: Accordingly they went with a Fryar, two *Spaniards* and a Trumpeter; they were very civilly conducted to, and kindly received by the Governour, unto whom they delivered the Cheese, Butter, Spices, Glasses and Tobacco Pipes, I sent him; and desired him to let us fetch fresh water there: He drank to my Lieutenant and Mr. *Fortescue* in a Silver Bowl full of *Chili* Wine, and in the mean while sent some to seize on the Boat; the Lieutenant asking for what reason? He reply'd, he had orders from *Don Pedro de Montaies* Captain General of *Chili*, to detain them till the Ship came under the command of the Fort; and he was sorry he had no more of them in his possession.

Lieutenant Armiger's Letter to Capt. Narborough.

Sir,

Myself and Mr. Fortescue *are kept Prisoners here, for what reason I know not: They still pretend much Friendship, and say, if you will bring the Ship into the Harbour you shall have all the Accommodation that may be. Sir, I need not advise you farther.*

I am,
Thomas Armiger.
John Fortescue.

Decemb. 18.
1670.

After the return of the Seamen with the Boat, I found upon examination, that the *Spaniards* intended to get the Ship into their Power. Two *Indians* who spoke *Spanish* indifferently well, came aboard us, ask'd my Country, and when I was to come again? I told them my Country was not far off on the other side of the Sea, and that I would soon return with great store of Knives, Hatchets, Beads and Glasses, *&c.* I exalted the Power and Riches of our King and Nation; and that I was impowered to let them know we were sent on purpose to enter into a Commerce with them; desiring them to impart the same to the Inlanders. These poor Wretches being sensible of our kindness, seem'd to be unwilling to return ashore; telling us that the *Spaniards* are Devils, which I believe to be true enough, by reason of their insulting Temper. These *Indians* told us that both the *Indians* and *Spaniards* had much Ore or Gold: I gave to each of them a Knife, a Looking-glass, and some small Beads, wherewith they seem'd infinitely pleased, and promised to impart my Message to the inland Inhabitants.

The Natives near *Baldavia*.

These *Indians* were of a middle size, strong limb'd and fleshy, tawny colour'd, with long black shaggy Hair; of tolerable features, but a melancholly Countenance, active of Body and hardy in their Diet; on their Heads they wear small Caps like Mounteers, and on their Bodies a square piece of Woollen stuff, of their own weaving of the Wool of the *Guianacoes*: This has a hole in the middle, through which they put their Heads, and let it hang down over their Shoulders and whole Body, (being button'd before) like a Mantle, which reaches to the Knees, and sometimes to the middle Leg: Some also wear half Stockins, but neither Shoes nor Shirts; some have Breeches after the *Spanish* fashion, close to their Thighs and Knees.

Capt. Narborough's Note enclosed in his Letter to Lieutenant Armiger.

Lieutenant,

Take what notice you can of the Fortifications of the Fort, and what Forces they have in it, whether they are able to withstand a Ship, and what quantity of Provisions, and whether Don Carolus *be there; send me an account by* John Wilkins: *I will use all endeavours to bring you off when I know the strength of the place.* 1670.

I remain your loving Friend;
John Narborough.

Burn all the Letters you receive from me, and in case of Examination——

I found the Variation of the Compass 8 *d.* 10 *m.* E. *Decem.* 18. I am much at a stand about the reason of the difference of the Variation in the same Latitude between the E. and W. side of the Land of *America*; for on the E. side at the Latitude of 40 *d.* I found the Compass to have 20 *d.* Variation E. and here I find but 8 *d.* 10 *m.* and is but 8 *d.* of Longitude more W. in the same Parallels, differing betwixt these Observations and the difference of Variation. I found the Land but 125 Leagues broad from the E. to the W. side in the Latitude of 40 *d.* The attractive quality of the Magnet must be more powerful in the E. part of the Land, than in the W. part, which produces this difference; yet I admire how, being on both sides of the Land, the Compass should always have the same Variation E. for I was of opinion, the Variation would have been W. on the W. side, it being E. on the E. side; but finding the contrary by experience, I believe the attractive quality is not much in this part of *America*, but in some other more Easterly part; which I submit to better Judgment.

The Harbour of *Baldavia*.

Three handsome fresh water Rivers discharge themselves with a brisk Current into the Harbour of *Baldavia*, which makes the Water fresh just within the Harbour's mouth One of these Rivers comes from the S. E. the other from the E. and exonerates it self behind St. *Peter*'s Port: The third at the N. Point of the Harbours mouth between the Point and the North End of St. *Peter*'s Isle, coming from the N. E. It has about 9 or 10 Mills. From what I understand by the *Spaniards* (who never fail to exalt their own) *Baldavia* is no large place, being rather a Garrison maintain'd for the convenience of Commerce with the *Indians*, for Gold, Bezoar stones, Guianacoe Wooll, *&c.* I believe these Rivers come a great way out of the Country, though the *Spaniards* have but little knowledge of the inland parts; but they are scarce navigable, because they carry all their Goods in small flat-bottom'd Barges, of 10 or 12 Tuns, to the City of *Baldavia*: They steer with a Rudder, and have one Mast and Sail, like ours; the Sails of Callicoe, the Ropes of the rind of *Mangrove* Trees, wooden Crabclaws or Kellocks instead of Anchors, their Masts of white Cedar, which are heavy and break short; hence it is that Iron Anchors and Grapnels, Ropes and Cables of Hemp, and good Fir Masts are precious Commodities here: Their Canoes or smaller Boats are cut out of the Trunk of a Tree, shaped at the end like a Sloop; some are 30 foot long, and will carry 20 Men, being raised on the sides with a Board; those without a Board have a great Beam lashed fast on each side, to keep them from oversetting: They are rowed with Oars, the lesser sort with Paddles by *Indian* Slaves. The Land about *Baldavia* is low near the shore, but rises up into large Hills in the Country; some Bays are sandy, with broken Rocks glittering like Gold, shattered along the shore. The whole Country (as far as I saw) is covered with Woods, which are almost unpassable, by reason of the thick Under-wood.

Their Barges.

Canoes.

The Harbour being a mile and half broad, the Guns can't reach from one side to the other: St. *Peter*'s Fort is near 2 Miles from the Harbours Mouth; any Ship may beat the *Spaniards* from their Guns in St. *Jago*'s Fort, and St. *Andrew*'s Redoubt at the S. W. side of the Harbour; and after you are once in, St. *Peter*'s Fort can do but little harm. The *Spaniards* have no Plantation on the S. W. side: After you are within the Mouth of the Harbour, it is like a Sound to the S.

Near the Sea side grow many good *Bamboe* Canes among the Trees of the Woods, winding about them like Vines; some are 20 foot long, and taper from the root to the top, like an Angling-Rod. As they have no other *European* Commodities here, but what are brought from *Panama*, and by the River of *Plata*, so they are very scarce and dear here; as Linnen Cloaths, Silks, *Flanders* Lace, Silk stockings, Ribbons, Looking-glasses, and all sorts of *European* Workmanship; Gunpowder for Fowling is worth a piece of Eight *per* pound, and Bird-shot from one and half to 2 Ryals a pound. As the Country is better inhabited on the Coast of *Chili* to the N. near *Vale Perazo*, *Coquimo* and *Areca*, and that they are nearer the Mines of *Potosea* (the Silver whereof comes

1670. comes to *Areca*, and is thence transported to *Lima* by Sea) so no doubt all those Commodities bare a higher price; so that the most advantageous Trade in the World might be established in those parts, if the *English* had the freedom of these Ports; or else the same might be carried on by force in spite of all their Forts by 4 or 5 Ships, with 20 or 30 pieces of Ordnance a piece; and I don't question but that the Natives of the S. parts of *Chili*, about *Castro*, *Orsono* and *Baldavia*, when civilly treated, would be willing enough to exchange their Gold for Knives, Scissars, Glasses, Beads, Combs, Hatchets and such like Commodities.

I intend, if the Weather proves right, to sail from *Baldavia* to the S. to the Streights Mouth all along the Coast, as far as *Cape Desiade*, as also to view the Island of *Castro* and *Orsono*, to try whether it be true what the *Spaniards* told me of those parts.

The Names of the four Persons detain'd at *Fort St. Peters*.

Thomas Armiger Lieutenant, aged 40 Years, born in *Norfolk*.

John Forteseue Gent. aged 27 Years, a *Kentish* Man.

Hue Coe Trumpeter, aged 28 Years, born in *Wapping*.

Thomas Highway Interpreter, aged 33 Years, born of *Moorish* Parents in *Barbary*: He is a Tawny-Moor, has embraced Christianity, and lived formerly with an *English* Merchant at *Cadiz* in *Spain*.

As they were very healthy and well quallified Persons, so I hope they will live to give an exact Account of that Country.

Cape Gallery. *Cape Gallery*, the utmost Point on the S. side of the Harbour of *Baldavia*, lies at 39 *deg.* 57 *m.* S. Lat. In Longit. to the W. of the Meridian of the *Lizard* 70 *deg.* 20 *m.* according to my Account. In Meridian distance 1108 Leagues W. And in Longit. E. from the W. Mouth of the *Magellan* Streights, and *Cape Pillar* 2 *deg.* 40 *m.* In Meridian distance nearest 42 Leagues.

Thursday *Decem.* 22. A fair Morning; Wind at S. W. I plied to the windward along the Coasts 3 Leagues off the shore, to the S. of *Cape Gallery*, out of sight of the People of *Baldavia*, the Cape being shut in by the Land to the N. of the Harbour. At 12 a Clock I found my self at 40 *deg.* 3 *m.* S. Lat. 3 Leagues from the shore, no Ground at 80 fathom, S. of *Baldavia* Harbour.

Decem. 31. It blew and rain'd hard from the N. W. I steered S. W. by W. this Afternoon and Night, some white, pied, black and grey Porcupises, different from those in *Europe*.

Sunday *January* 1. Cold and cloudy Weather; the Wind N. W. with a high Sea, I steered S. S. W. After several Courses made from *Saturday* Noon till to day Noon, I made the true Course to be S. 39 *deg.* 0 *m.* W. and distance sailed 125 Miles, and departure W. 66 Miles. Difference of Longit. 101 *deg.* 37 *m.* 4 tenths, difference of Lat. 1 *deg.* 22 *m.* 3 tenths, Latitude by account 47 *deg.* 47 *m* S. W.

Wednesda. *Jan.* 4. Wind N. W. and sometimes W. N. W. my Course S. Some Porpises, Whales and Sea-fowl seen. I found the Compass to have 10 *deg.* 28 *m.* Variation. My Course made true from *Tuesday* Noon till to day Noon, is S. distance sailed 84. The difference of Lat. is 1 *deg.* 24 *m.* 8 tenths. Latitude by good observation 51 *deg.* 31 *m.* S. Meridian distance from *Point Gallery* W. 70 Leagues 1 Mile 5 tenths. Longit. from *Point Gallery* W. 4 *deg.* 48 *m.* 4 tenths. Longit. from the *Lizard* W. 75 *deg.* 8 *m.* 4 tenths. Meridian distance from the *Lizard* W. 1175 Leagues 1 Mile 5 tenths.

Friday *Jan.* 6. A foggy Morning, Wind S. W. I steer'd in to make the 4 Isles, whom I call'd the *Isles of Direction*, or to make *Cape Desiade*, my Course E. N. E. At 4 in the Morning I found no Ground at 80 fathom; I reckoned my self 10 Leagues from *Cape Desiade* at 52 *deg.* 53 *m.* S. Lat. Soon after it clearing up, we discovered the *Isles of Direction* lying at the Streights Mouth N. N. W. from *Cape Desiade*, about 8 Leagues distance; they were then 4 Leagues distant to the N. E. of me at 52 *deg.* 42 *m.* Lat. At 5 a Clock they bore 3 Leagues N. of me. I found no Ground at 70 Fathoms; I saw *Cape Desiade* 8 Leagues E. S. E. of me; it being then foggy on the top of the Hills, whereas in clear Weather *Cape Pillar* and *Cape Desiade* may be seen 15 or 16 Leagues at Sea; they are so high and ragged.

I steer'd by *Cape Pillar* E. by S. Wind at W. S. W. with a high Sea coming from the S. W. I saw the Waves break violently against some Rocks under and above the Water about 4 Leagues, and 2 Leagues West of the Point of *Cape Desiade*, some reaching within a League, nay within half a Mile of the Cape.

As I advanced to the Streights Mouth, I raised the Land on the N. side by *Cape Victory*, and the broken Islands within the Streights, call'd by me *Westminster Isle* and the *Lawyers*. At 9 a Clock *Cape Pillar* bore a Mile and a half of me. No Tide or Current either in or out the Streights to prejudice Navigation. 1670.

The difference of Longit. E. is 1 *deg.* 39 *m.* 4 tenths. The Lat. 52 *deg.* 52 *m.* S. but according to my former Account 52 *deg.* 58 *m.* Meridian distance at 9 a Clock from *Point Gallery* W. 35 Leagues 00 Miles 2 tenths. Longit. at 9 a Clock from *Point Gallery* W. 2 *deg.* 43 *m.* 1 tenth. Longit. at 9 a Clock from the *Lizard* W. 73 *deg.* 3 *m.* 1 tenth. Meridian distance at 9 a Clock from the *Lizard* W. 1153 Leagues 00 Miles 2 tenths.

I perceive but little Tide or Current in the Sea call'd *Mare del Zur*; for I am but 3 Minutes of Longit. out of my Account, in sailing between *Cape Gallery* and *Cape Pillar*, forwards and backwards.

If you are to enter the West mouth of the *Magellan* Streights, you had best bear in for the Land at 52 *deg.* 50 *m.* S. Lat. where you will discover the 4 *Isles of Direction*, somewhat to the N. before the Mouth of the Streights, 8 Leagues distant N. N. W. from *Cape Pillar*: The Sea breaks much on these Isles with W. Wind. *Cape Pillar* is a steep Point of Rocks on the W. side of the Streights Mouth, as *Cape Desiade* is the W. Point; for it falls off from *Cape Pillar* near S. W. and they are distant 2 Leagues from one another, which is the face of the Lands betwixt these two Capes: For at the Point of *Cape Desiade* the Land on the S. side of the Cape trents off to S. S. E. all ragged Mountains as far as I could see. At the pitch of *Cape Desiade*, lie many shatter'd Rocks, appearing like the Ruins of Houses above Water; others under Water about 4 Leagues off of the Cape, W. at 53 *deg.* 10 *m.* S. Lat. I call'd them the *Judges*, being near 10 Leagues S. by W. from the *Isles of Direction*, so broad is the first opening of the Streights; when you can once see the Land to make it, you are safe enough; without which it is difficult enough to pass it from the W. to E. there being at its first entrance from the S. Sea many Openings and Sounds on the N. side, which seem fairer for a passage than the Streight it self; therefore it is safest to keep the S. side: For from *Cape Pillar*, which is the Point at the Entrance, the Course will be E. by S. for 1 or 2 Miles, and then E. & E. and S. E. by E. so the Channel lieth to *Cape Quad*. *Cape Pillar.* Caution for entring the Streights from the West.

The N. side of the Streights from *Cape Victory* all along E. to *Cape Froward* for 15 Leagues is all a raggy, rocky mountainous Country, and abundance of small Islands scatterred along the shore; so that it is not safe for a Ship to keep the N. shore, for the thick and foggy W. Winds which blow most part of the Winter there, will make them mistake the right Channel. For want of a Sloop or some other small Vessel, I could not discover the many Sounds and Coves on the N. side betwixt *Cape Victory* and *Cape Quad*; and divers other places in the Streights I would willingly have seen.

In *Tuesday-bay* and *Island-bay* grow thick shrubby Bushes on the low Lands, with Berries like Hurts; they will serve for Fuel, and grow in a mossy Earth, lying 4 or 5 foot thick on the Rocks; here is also some thick sedgy Grass: We saw great store of Geese, Ducks, white and pied brant-Geese, grey Gulls, Sea Mews, Divers, and Penguins, and Muscles, and Limpets, and some Seals on the Rocks. I return'd aboard in a rainy Night, Wind at W. S. W. A great deal of fresh water comes running down the sides of the bare Rocks into the salt Water; some Whales spouting here. The Country is desolate.

At 8 a Clock in the Evening I anchored before *Batchelor's River* at 9 Fathom sandy Ground, 2 Cables length from the shore. Here is good riding with W. and N. Winds, the S. Wind blows directly into the Reach; but the Sea is never high here; the Streight in this Reach being but 2 Leagues over. The River is 5 Leagues E. of *Cape Quad*, and 2 to the E. of St. *Jerom's* Channel: on the N. side of it the Tide both Ebbs and flows, but with an indifferent strength: At St. *Jerom's* Channel it rises and falls perpendicular 8 or 9 foot: At the Entrance of *Batchelors River* is only 10 foot Water at High-water; but there is good fresh Water and Wooding thereabouts. The many Arbours (the *Indians* Houses) shew'd this place to be much frequented by the Natives.

A fine calm Sun-shining day, I rowed in my Boat with 20 Men 4 Mile up *Batchelor's River*, to a Lake of fresh Water in a Creek in a Valley, where the River has its source: Thence we marched 5 or 6 Mile into the Land, till we were stop'd by the Mountains and unpassable Woods: We made a Fire, but had no answer, nor saw we any Beast or living Creature, or Metal or Mineral: Abundance of fresh Water falling Sunday *January* 8.

in

1671. in ſtreams from the ſteep Rocks; ſome Buſhes with red Berries like Hurts; Trees like thoſe at *Port Famen*, and ſome ſmall Pepper-Trees: The Graſs-Land was very looſe and boggy, and the Rocks a kind of white Marble.

Here ends Sir *John Narborough*'s Manuſcript Journal, which we ſhall continue to *England* from the MS. Diary of Mr. *Nathaniel Pecket* his Lieutenant.

Wedneſda. *Jan.* 11. The Continuation of the Journal. Fair Weather, variable Wind from S. E. to S. W. We got into *Port Famen*, and anchored at 12 a Clock at 9 Fathom: Abundance of freſh Water and Wood, (whereof we took in good ſtore) of good wild Fowl, and Fiſhes like Mullets and Smelts.

Jan. 16. Wind W. The Lieutenant went 9 Mile up *Segar's River*, but could go no farther; ſaw nothing worth obſervation.

Jan. 29. Little Wind at S. W. The Captain went to the S. ſhore to ſee whether there were any part ſhort of *Port Famen*, there came an *Indian* to the Point of that Harbour, without Bow or Arrows; we invited him aboard, but he would not; he was a Slave and run away.

Tueſday *Jan.* 31. The Captain return'd aboard from the S. ſhore, but could find no Harbour nor *Indians*.

Saturday *Feb.* 4. Fair Weather, Wind W. by N. At 4 a Clock in the Morning we ſet Sail from *Port Famen*, at Eleven we were ſhort of *Freſh Water Bay*, and at ſix anchored in 12 Fathom water in a ſandy Bay, 4 Leagues N. of *Freſh Water Bay*.

Feb. 5. High Wind at S. W. and W. S. W.

Feb. 7. Fair weather, Wind N. The Captain ſent me in the Pinnace along the N. ſhore, between *Elizabeth*'s Iſle and the ſhore, to ſee for *Indians*, but it blowing hard I put back into a ſandy Bay, where I put aſhore and ſtay'd all Night: Here we got Smelts of 20 inches long and 8 inches about.

Wedneſda. *Feb.* 8. Wind W. S. W. This Morning I run down the Streights with the Pinnace, keeping the N. ſhore aboard, betwixt it and *Elizabeth*'s *Iſle*: I ſaw no *Indians*, but ſeveral places where they had lately been building their Canoes. From *Cape Deſiade* to *Elizabeth*'s *Iſland*, is plenty of Water and Wood, but from thence to *Cape Virgin Mary* both are very ſcarce. At 3 a Clock in the afternoon I return'd aboard, and at 4 we came to an Anchor at 8 Fathom black Sand, within a Mile of the ſhore: St. *George* and St. *Bartholomew*'s Iſland were both ſhut in one, bearing E. S. E. of me, and *Elizabeth*'s Iſle S. by E. Here we rid all Night.

Feb. 9. Fair weather, Wind W. The Captain ſent me to ſee for ſome *Indians*, but could ſee none; yet I fell in with a good Harbour for ſmall Veſſels at the N. ſhore, at the S. end of a great deep large Bay thwart of *Elizabeth*'s *Iſle*: The Entrance of the Harbour being but a Bow-ſhot from ſide to ſide; tho' from the Entrance to the upper end it is 7 Mile: There was 12 foot Water at low water, but within 3 fathom at low water I ſaw many Geeſe and Ducks; and aſhore great ſtore of Heath-berries and Black-berries, but no *Indians*. The Captain went into another Harbour one Mile to the S. of the ſecond Narrow on the N. ſhore; it had 4 fathom Water, and broad within; he ſaw many Sea-Crabs.

Saturday *Feb.* 11. Variable Wind; the Captain ordered me to diſcover the N. ſhore in the Pinnace, and if I could diſcover ſome part of the S. ſhore; as far as the firſt Narrow, and there to ſtay for the Ship: So I paſs'd the ſecond Narrow, and landed on the S. ſide in a ſandy Bay or Cove; I went 5 or 6 Miles into the Country, ſaw ſeveral Trees, but no *Indians*. At Night I return'd to the Boat, near which we pitch'd our Tent, where we catch'd 700 good and large Fiſhes like Mullets: The Land is barren. 1671.

Feb. 12. Fair weather, N. Wind: I went into a fine ſandy Bay, on the N. ſhore at 7, 8, 9 and 10 fathom Water, a Mile and a half from the ſhore: This Bay is betwixt the ſecond Narrow and *Cape Gregory*, cloſe under the Cape, which is 5 or 6 Mile E. of the ſecond Narrow. I went into the Country to look for *Indians*, but ſaw none; we lay all Night in our Tent near the Boat.

Feb. 13. A brisk gale at W. I run along the ſhore from *Cape Gregory* to the firſt Narrow, where I ſaw 3 Anchors in a ſmall ſandy Cove, above High water Mark: We landed, and one of our Men found an Iron Commander for ſome Ship's Poop: One of the Anchors was 12 foot long in the ſhank, the other two 11 apiece; they were *Spaniſh* Anchors. The Land here was dry and barren, without either Wood or freſh Water: For the ſpace of 5 or 6 Miles compaſs were vaſt numbers of Rats living under Ground like Coneys. All the way betwixt the firſt and ſecond Narrow are good ſandy Bays on the N. ſide, with 10 and 12 fathom of Water, a good Birth off.

Tueſday *Feb.* 14. Rainy and Windy weather at W. After the Ship was got through the *Narrow*, I came aboard her; we made all the Sail we could, and by Night ſhe got clear of the Streights into the N. Sea; and at 3 a Clock *Cape Virgin Mary* bore N. W. a Point N. diſtant 4 Leagues.

Thurſday *Feb.* 23. The Wind variable from N. N. W. to W. N. W. At 9 a Clock in the Evening we anchored at 22 fathom ſandy Ground on the S. part of *America*, at 47 *deg.* 16 *m.* S. Latitude: *Cape Blanco* bearing N. N. W. of us, diſtance 6 Leagues.

Feb. 24. A little Wind N. At 6 a Clock in the Evening we anchored in *Port Deſier* Bay, in 14 fathom Water.

Feb. 25. A brisk E. Wind: The Long Boat went into the Port to fetch ſome freſh water, but brought but little, and that brackiſh.

Sunday *Feb.* 26. A brisk gale at S. S. W. We ſet ſail for *England* at 47 *d. deg.* 10 *m.* S. Latitude; *Cape Blanco* to the N. but not by the Compaſs, for here is a Point and a half Variation E. At 4 a Clock *Cape Blanco* bore N. N. W. of us by the Compaſs, diſtance 9 Mile at 20 fathom Water; but when it bears N. N. W. from you, you are 8 Mile off, and will have but 10 fathom Water. Along this Coaſt from *Cape Virgin Mary*, which lies at 52 *deg.* 15 *m.* S. Lat. is good Sounding. For 5 Leagues from the Main there is 25 and 30 fathom Water; and 16 Leagues off, 50 and 55 fathom black Sand.

Wedneſda: *May* 17. 1671. This Evening we ſaw the Iſle of St. *Mary*, one of the *Azores*; it bore S. E. of us, diſtance 16 Leagues, Wind at South East.

May 19. Fair weather, Wind E. This Morning at 7 a Clock the Town of *Puncelegada* on the Iſle of St. *Michael*, one of the *Azores* bore N. of me, diſtance 2 Miles.

Tueſday *May* 23. Much Wind at N. E. We wanting Proviſions and freſh Water, we ſteer'd towards *Angria* at the *Terceras*.

May 24. We anchored this forenoon in *Angria* Road, at 16 fathom, Wind at N. E. by N.

Friday *May* 26. Little Wind at N. E. We ſet ſail thence for *England*.

June 10. Hazy weather, Wind at S. W. This Morning at 7 a Clock we ſaw *Scilly*, bearing N. E. by N. of us, diſtance 5 Leagues; and at 6 a Clock in the afternoon the *Lizard* N. of us about 3 Leagues: I make my diſference of Longitude from *Cape Blanco* to the *Lizard* in *England*, to be 60 *deg.* 45 *m.* 5 tenths; and the Meridian diſtance is 840 Leagues; I am ſo far to the Eaſt of the Cape.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The History of the Bucaneers *of* America; *from their first Origine down to this Time.*

1666.

§ 1. The Author embarks for the *West Indies.*

WE set sail from *Havre de Grace* (in *France*) *May* 2. 1666. in a Vessel call'd the St. *John*, belonging to the *French West India* Company, equipt with 28 great Guns, 20 Seamen, and 220 Passengers in all. Coming to the Cape of *Barfleur*, we staid there for 7 more Ships that came from *Diep*, (belonging also to the said Company) under Convoy of a Frigot of 37 Guns and 250 Men: Five of these were bound for the *Caribe Islands*, two for *Senegal*, as ours was for *Tortuga*; by the occasion of some other *French* Ships bound for *Newfoundland*, and some *Dutch* bound for *Nants*, *Rochel*, &c. Our whole Fleet was encreased to the number of 30 Sail, under the *Chevalier de Sourdis* Commodore. We set sail thence with a favourable Gale, and by the favour of some Mists pass'd undiscovered by 4 *English Frigots* of about 60 Guns each, who waited for our coming near *Aldernay*.

They escape the *English.*

As this made us keep as near the Coast of *France* as we could, so it caused no small fear among the Inhabitants, who took us for Enemies, tho' we did all we could to undeceive them, by putting out *French* Colours. We anchored in the Bay of *Conquet* in *Britany*, not far from *Ushant*; where having provided our selves with some fresh Water and Provisions, we pass'd by the *Ras* of *Fontenean*, being afraid to come near the *Sorlingues*, because the *English* were cruising thereabouts. The River *Ras* rowling here with a rapid current over the Rocks into the Sea, at 48 *deg.* 10 *m.* Latitude, makes this passage very dangerous; whence it is that the Mariners in this as well as some other peculiar passages perform a kind of Ceremony they call the Sea *Baptism*.

Sea Baptism used by the *French.*

The Master's Mate being dress'd up after an Antick ridiculous way, with a wooden Sword in his right, and a pot of Ink in his left Hand, causes all such aboard the Ship as never pass'd that way before to kneel down before him; and after having mark'd them with the sign of the Cross on their Foreheads with Ink, he gives them a stroke with his wooden naked Sword on the Shoulders, whilst the Standers by cast a Bucket of Water upon every one of them: Each Person thus Baptiz'd is oblig'd to give for a fee a bottle of Brandy (to be placed near the main Mast without speaking one word) for the use of the old Seamen: If the Ship never pass'd there before, the Coast is oblig'd to give them some entertainment of Wine, *&c.*

Sea Baptism by the *Dutch.*

The *Dutch* observe the same custom in this and several other Passages, but especially of the Rocks call'd the *Berlingues*, on the coast of *Portugal*, at 39 *deg.* 43 *m.* but in a different manner; for they hoist them up 3 or 4 times to the main Yards end, and thus dip them as often in the Sea; such as are unwilling to be dipt must ransom themselves with 12 Pence apiece, and Officers double or triple, according to their station: Passengers must agree with them as well as they can. They say this custom was introduced by the Emperor *Charles* V.

From *Ras* to Cape *Finis Terræ* we had very good weather; but then being overtaken by a Tempest, which lasted 8 Days, we lost the Company of all the other Ships. After this the weather and wind prov'd favourable till we came to the *Tropick of Cancer*, an imaginary Circle limiting the approach of the Sea towards the North Pole, at 23 *deg.* 30 *m.* Latitude. Here the beforementioned Sea-Baptism was perform'd a second time; as the same is likewise practised by the *French* under the Tropick of *Capricorn*. To our great joy we met with favourable weather under the Tropick, being then reduced already to a daily allowance of half a pint of fresh water a Man. At the Latitude of *Barbados* we were chased by an *English* Privateer, who finding us too strong, he steer'd away, and we after him, but he escap'd. Soon after we pass in sight of *Martinico*, but being overtaken by a Storm, we could not reach it, no more than the Isles of *Peter* and *Guadalupe*; so directing our Course towards *Tortuga*, we pass'd along the Coast of *Punta Rica*, (affording an agreeable prospect, by reason of the beautiful Woods there) we discovered *Hispaniola*, and coasted about till we came to an Anchor at the Isle of *Tortuga*.

Scarcity of fresh Water.

1666. *July* 7.

§. 2. A Description of *Tortuga.*

This Island which is 60 Leagues in Circuit, lies on the N. side of *Hispaniola* at 23 *deg.* 30 *m.* Latitude: Having got its name from its shape, which is like a *Sea Tortoise*, call'd *Tortuga de mar* by the *Spaniards*. The Country is all rocky, but notwithstanding this, full of tall Trees; the roots whereof appear bare upon the surface of them. The North part of the Isle is destitute of Inhabitants, by reason of its unwholesome Air, and ruggedness of the Coast; but the South part is pretty well Peopled: Here is only one Harbour capable of containing Ships of 70 Guns; you enter into it by two Channels. This Harbour is in that part of the inhabited Country they call the *Low Lands*. The Town is call'd *Cayona*, where the chief Planters have their Residence. The second is call'd the *Middle Plantation*, fit only for Tobacco. The third to the West part of the Isle is call'd *Ringot*; and the fourth *The Mountain*, where the first Plantations were erected.

Its Harbour.

Plantations.

Trees.

This Isle abounds in very tall Trees, fit for Timber, as also in the *yellow Saunder* the *Lignum Sanctum* or *Guajacum*, and the Trees that produce the *Gummi Elemi*. They have also store of *China* root, but none of the best; it is white and soft, and the wild Boars often feed upon it: They also don't want Aloes and divers other medicinal Drugs. Among the Fruits this Island affords, are the *Magniot*, *Potato's*, *Abajou* Apples, *Yannas*, *Bacoues*, *Poques*, *Caroseles*, *Mamayns*, *Annanes*, and in short many other sorts not inferiour to any, which other Islands produce in these parts. Here also grow vast number of very tall *Palm Trees*, which furnishes a juice to make Lime of, and the Leaves serve instead of Tiles, to cover their Houses.

Fruits.

They abound in wild Boars, the hunting of which is prohibited, in order to preserve them, in case of an Invasion, when the Inhabitants are oblig'd to retire to the Mountains and Woods.

Greatnumbers of wild Pigeons.

At a certain season of the Year the Inhabitants of this Isle feed upon nothing but *wild Pigeons*, which then are excellently good; but the same being past, they become lean and bitter in taste, the reason whereof is attributed to a certain bitter Seed these Birds eat at that time. The Sea shore affords vast quantity of Sea and Land Crabs, both are very large, but not wholesome; for eaten often they occasion Giddiness in the Head, and Dimness of Sight.

Land and Sea Crabs.

Hispaniola and *Tortuga* discovered by the *French.*

After the *French* were setled in the Isle of St. *Christopher*, they planted many Trees, which afterwards furnished them with Timber for the building of small Vessels; some whereof they sent West for the discovery of new Islands: These landed at *Hispaniola*, where they met with vast numbers of *Cows*, *Bulls*, *Horses*, and *wild Boars*; but knowing the Island to be pretty well stock'd with *Spaniards*, they seiz'd upon the Isle of *Tortuga*, without any opposition, where being no more than 10 or 12 *Spaniards* to guard it, as they pass'd and repass'd frequently in their Canoes to *Hispaniola*, they drew so many People thence to increase their Settlement at *Tortuga*, that the *Spaniards* became jealous of their strength, and with the assistance of some of their Neighbours, surpriz'd the *French* Colony at *Tortuga*, forcing them to retire with all they had to the Woods: But having found means to waft over in their Boats to the shore of *Hispaniola*, they there intrench'd themselves so well in the Forrests, that the *Spaniards* durst not attempt to drive them from thence. But at last being resolv'd to draw this Thorn out of their sides, they joyn'd all their Forces to dislodge them: The *French* having receiv'd intelligence that most of the arm'd *Spaniards* of *Tortuga* had joyn'd the rest in *Hispaniola*, laid hold of this opportunity, and before they could be attack'd by the Enemy, pass'd over to *Tortuga*; where meeting with no opposition, they intrench'd themselves, and sent to the *French* Governour of St. *Christophers* for aid, which he willingly granted; and at the same time sent them a Governour of their own, one Monsieur *Le Passeur*, (pursuant to their request) who ordered a Fort to be built upon the top of a high Rock, commanding the Etrance of the Harbour. This Fort having no other access than a narrow passage, he caused the same

They People it.

Are dispossess'd by the *Spaniards.*

Return thither.

Erect a Fort under their Governour.

AMERICA

Artick Circle

Tropick of Cancer

Æquinoctial Line

Tropick of Capricorn

THE NORTHERN OCEAN

THE PACIFICK SEA

THE SOUTHERN OCEAN

AZORES ISLANDS

CANARY ISLANDS

C. VERD ISLANDS

BAHAMA ISLANDS

ANTILLES ISLANDS

CARIBY ISLANDS

GULF OF MEXICO

TERRA DE LABRADOR

NEW BRITAIN

NEW CANADA

HUDSONS BAY

BUTTONS BAY

BAFFINS BAY

PART OF GROENLAND

STRAITS

The Great Lake of Theuay or Theya

CALIFORNIA

NEW MEXICO

GRENADA

BRASILIA

PARIA

PERU

CHILE

MAGELLANICA

The Bay of Biscay

FRANCE

SPAIN

PORTUGAL

C. FINISTERRA

C. VINCENT

C. BLANCO

SOMERS I.s

Cerro

Flores

Fayal

Pico

Graciosa

Terceira

St. Michael

Tergeira

S. Maria

Porto Santo

Madera I.

Salvages

Ferro

Canaria

Gomera

Palma

Tenariffe

Bonavista

Mayo

Fogo

Buenavista

St. Jago

St. Antonio

St. Vincent

St. Lucia

St. Nicholas

St. Iago

Mayo

Bonavista

Sal I.

Boavista

Maya

Fogo

Brava

Quivira

Florida

Bermudas

Barbadoes

Tobago

Trinidad

Granada

Martinico

Dominico

St. Lucia

St. Vincent

Barbuda

Antego

St. Christophers

Nevis

Montserrat

Guadaloupe

Mariegalante

Deseada

Barlovento

Aruba

Curaçao

Bonaire

Oruba

Margarita

Tortuga

Cumana

Trinidad

Guiana

Surinam

Cayenne

Amazones R.

Rio Grande

Rio Plata

Rio de la Plata

Rio de Janeiro

St. Vincent

St. Catherine

St. Francisco

St. Salvador

Bay of All Saints

Rio Real

Rio Dolce

Rio Tocantin

Rio Maranon

Rio Negro

Rio Parana

Rio Vermejo

Rio Tercero

Rio Quarto

Rio Colorado

Rio Salado

Rio Sauce

Rio Negro

Rio Gallegos

Rio Coig

Rio Santa Cruz

Rio Deseado

Rio Chico

Rio Gregorio

Rio Camarones

Rio Senguerr

Rio Chubut

Rio Negro

Rio Colorado

Rio Diamante

Rio Mendoza

Rio Tunuyan

Rio Desaguadero

Rio Salado

Ch

1665.

The ſe
attemp
the S
ards.

Cut a
thro' t
Rocks.

Are rou

The Fr
Weſt I
Compa
ſeize,
again b
Tortuga

The Au
thor ſo
twice.

6. III
A Deſcr
tion of
ſpaniola,
diſcover
by Colum
bus.

St. Jago.

Nueſtra S
nora de al
Gracia.

Iſle of S
vana.

Aſo.
St. John o
Gozve.

1665. to be broken, leaving no other ascent than by a Ladder. The Rock had a large Cavity, which served for a Storehouse; and a spring of fresh Water sufficient for 1600 Men. Having thus secur'd themselves, they began to follow their usual Employment of planting Tobacco, hunting and pyrating upon the *Spaniards*, who exasperated thereat, and fearing lest they should give them at last a visit upon *Hispaniola*, took the opportunity, when most of them were abroad, either in hunting or at Sea, and landed 800 well arm'd Men. But as they were not likely to continue there long unless they could master the Fort, they pitch'd upon an adjacent Mountain, to raise a Battery. The worst was that the said Mountain being inaccessible, they were forced to employ a great number of *Indians* and Slaves, who with their incredible pains hew'd a way through the circumjacent Rocks, through which, by the help of Pullies and Ropes they brought two great pieces of Cannon. The Hunters and Pyrates in the mean while, having understood what pass'd near the Fort, made shift to join in the night time; and being acquainted with these Rocks, surpriz'd the *Spaniards* by a back way, forc'd the greatest part to throw themselves down the Rocks, and cut the rest to pieces.

The second attempt of the Spaniards.

Cut a way thro' the Rocks.

Are routed.

The first *French* Planters kept in possession of the Isle of *Tortuga*, as Proprietors of the same, under their own Governours till 1664. when the *French West India* Company imposed upon them Monsieur *Ogeron* for their Governour, and sent their Factors thither to manage a Traffick as well with the Planters, Hunters, and Pyrates there, as with the neighbouring Isles; obliging the *French* Inhabitants to buy their Necessaries from them; but not being able to get sufficient payment of them to quit their Charges, they recall'd their Factors with their Effects, and sold their Slaves as well as they could, at the rate of 20 or 30 pieces of Eight *per* Head.

The French West India Company seize, and again leave Tortuga.

I being then in the service of the said Company, I had the misfortune to be sold to the chief Head of the *Island*, who being a barbarous Wretch, treated me so cruelly, as threw me into a dangerous Sickness; which however proved my happiness; for my Master fearing he should lose me, sold me to a Chyrurgeon for 70 pieces of Eight; who not only treated me very civilly, but also after one Years service, gave me my liberty, under condition only, that I should pay him a 100 pieces of Eight as soon as I could.

The Author sold twice.

Being now free, but naked, I resolved to enter my self into the List of the Pirates, which I did accordingly, and assisted in all their Exploits (of which more anon) till 1672. when I return'd to my native Country: But before I begin my Relation, I will give the Reader the best account I am able of the Isle of *Hispaniola*, seated towards the W. of *America*.

§. III. *A Description of Hispaniola, discovered by Columbus.*

The rich Isle of *Hispaniola* is situate from 17 to 19 *deg.* Latit. Its whole circumference 300 Leagues: Its length from E. to W. 126. and its breadth 50 Leagues. *Christopher Columbus* was the first Discoverer of it in 1492. ever since which time it has remained in the possession of the *Spaniards*, who have many good Cities, Towns, Villages and Plantations there.

The Metropolis of the whole Isle is the City of St. *Domingo*, seated on the S. side, and well stor'd with rich Merchants and Shopkeepers, as being the Residence of the Governour, and the Storehouse of the whole Isle, whence the other Cities are supply'd with all manner of Conveniencies: Its Inhabitants being oblig'd not to Traffick with any but the *Spaniards*. The Country round about affords a most delicious Prospect, by reason of the rich Plantations, verdant Meadows and fruitful Gardens.

St. Jago.

St. *Jago* is another City, but without Walls or Castle, seated at 19 *deg.* Latitude, inhabited by Hunters and Planters, the adjoining Soil being fit for both; and they trade much in Skins and Hides.

Nuestra Senora de alta Gracia.

In the S. part is another City call'd *Nuestra Senora de Alta Gracia*; the Territory whereof producing vast store of *Cocoes*, the Inhabitants trade much in Chocolate, as also Tobacco, Tallow and Ginger.

Isle of Savona.

The Isle of *Savona* being not far distant from *Hispaniola*, the Inhabitants resort thither for Fishing, especially for Tortoises, which bury their Eggs there in vast numbers in the Sand, and are hatch'd by the heat of the Sun. For the rest it is a barren Isle, and produces nothing but some *Lignum Guaiacum*.

Aso. St. John of Goave.

To the S. of St. *Domingo* is a place call'd *the Town of Aso (El Pueblo de aso)* who drive a great Trade with those of St. *Juan de Goave*, another Town in the middle of the Isle inhabited chiefly by Hunters and Butchers, who deal in nothing but Tallow and Hides. Their Territories for 20 Leagues round, feeding a prodigious number of wild Bulls and Cows. The Inhabitants are a mungrel sort of People, born either from *Europeans* and *Negroes* call'd *Mulatos*, or from *Indians* and *Europeans* call'd *Mesticos*, or from *Indians* and *Negroes* call'd *Alcatraces*. For it is the general opinion that the *Spaniards* love the *Negro* or Tawny Women better than the *Europeans*. These are the places of note under the *Spanish* jurisdiction, in this Isle, from the *Cape of Lobos* towards St. *John de Goave*, unto the *Cape of Samana* on the N. side, and from the E. part to the Sea call'd *Punta de Espada*, the rest being possess'd by the *French*; for tho' the *Spaniards* had also many good Towns and Villages on the N. side; these were quite left desolate by the *Spaniards*, since they were ruin'd by the *Dutch*. 1666.

Ports of Hispaniola.

On the W. side from *Cape of Lobos* to *Cape Tiburon*, are no less than four Ports, exceeding in goodness and largeness the best in *England*. From *Cape Tiburon* to the *Cape of Donna Maria* are two more excellent Harbours; and from this Cape to that of St. *Nicholas* twelve more. Each of these Ports lies near the confluence of two or three Rivers, which afford vast quantities of well tasted Fish, as the Sea shores do abound in *Tortoises*.

§. IV. *Fruits, Trees, and Animals of Hispaniola.*

In this Isle you see an infinite number of spacious Fields of 5 or 6 Leagues long, covered with divers sorts of fruit Trees, such as *Orange*, *Lemon*, *Citron*, *Toronjas* and *Limas* Trees; some of these are sweet, others sower, (call'd Crab-Lemons) and some of a pleasant tartish taste; but none of the Lemons are bigger than a good Hens Egg. Sometimes you meet with whole Plains full of *Date-Trees* of 150 or 200 foot high, but without Branches to the very top; within this grows a certain white Substance like a Cabbage, (whence the Leaves and Branches sprout) in which the Dates are contain'd, which ripens but once a Year; but one of the Branches falls every Month, and another sprouts forth instead of it. The Leaves are 7 or 8 foot long, and 3 or 4 broad, used for Tiles. These Cabbages (so we will call them) are greenish on the outside, but white within, which is used by the *Spaniards* as we do our Cabbages, boil'd with Meats. The Dates are much coveted by the Hedge-Hogs. From this white part is separated a Rind, which is as strong, and may be used as Parchment. The Trunks of these Trees are beyond the grasp of two Men, though they are not woody above 3 or 4 inches deep, the Marrow within being like Cheese. They make an incision 3 or 4 foot above the Root, whence distils a Liquor, which after fermentation becomes as strong as Wine. The *French* call them *Frank Palms*, and they grow only here, and in other saltish Grounds.

The Date or Palm-Tree.

Palm Wine.

Hispaniola has besides these, four other sorts of Palm-Trees, call'd the *Latanier*, the *Prickle Palm*, the *Wine Palm*, and *Rosary Palm*.

Latanier Palm.

The *Latanier Palm* is somewhat lower than the *Wine Palm*, but of the same shape, except that the Leaves resemble Women's Fans: It grows in sandy and gravelly Grounds, is 6 or 7 foot in circumference, has very sharp Prickles a foot and half long, and produces its Seed as that beforementioned.

Prickle Palm.

The *Prickle Palm* has got its name from the infinite number of thorny prickles which cover it, from the Root to the very Leaves; and therefore used by the *Indians* to torment their Captive Enemies. This *Palm-tree* differs from the *Latanier* in its Leaves, which are like those of the *Frank Palm*; and its Seed is something bigger and rounder than that of the rest, and full of little Kernels, as sweet as our Walnuts. It grows in marsh Grounds near the Sea side.

Wine Palm.

The *Wine Palm* owes its name to the great quantity of Liquor it affords; it grows on rocky Mountains, but seldom exceeds the height of 40 or 50 foot: About two thirds upwards from the Root the stem is not above 3 or 4 inches thick, but afterwards becomes as big as a good Milk-pail. Its Marrow is like a tender white Cabbage-stalk; which, by incision, furnishes them with the Liquor they by fermentation turn into *Palm-Wine*. The Fruit like that of other Palms, but smaller, not unlike a Cherry, and of a good taste, but causes Inflammations in the Throat.

The Rosary Palm.

The *Rosary Palm* has got its name from its Seed, which being hard and small is very fit for *Rosaries* or *Beads*. It grows on the tops of high Mountains, very strait and tall, with few Leaves. This Isle produces also vast quantities of a certain sort of *Apricot-trees*, whose Fruits are as big as our common Melons, with Stones as big as a Hens Egg: Their taste is the same with ours, but are of an Ash colour. They have another Tree call'd *Caramite*, like our Pear-tree; the Fruit whereof resembles our Damascene Plums, of a very delicious

Apricots.

Caramite-trees.

666. taste, but black on the inside, with three, four or five Kernels, as a big as *Lupine*. They are not so frequent as the *Apricots*, but both afford food for the Wild Boars.

Genipa-trees. The *Genipa-trees* are also found in great plenty, being not unlike our *Cherry-trees*: Their Fruit is as big as two Fists, and of an ash colour, enclosed in a skin, which if eaten causes Griping in the Guts. The juice of it before it ripens is as black as Ink, and is fit for writing, but quite disappears in nine Days. The Wood is very solid, and fit for Ships, being not apt to putrify in the Water.

There are many other excellent Fruits in this Isle, being described already by others, but I must not pass by *Cedars.* in silence the Cedars, which grow in all this part of the World in prodigious quantities. They use them *Canoes* how made. for building their Ships and Canoes, which are a kind of Wherry-boats, made of the Trunk of a Tree hollowed without any iron Instruments, by burning the Tree near the Root, and so governing the Fire afterwards according to their invention; thus they give them their shape, and go 60 or 80 Leagues with them.

Among the Medicinal Trees, that which produces the *Gummi Elemi*, the *Lignum Sanctum*, the *Aloe-wood*, *Cassia Lignea*, *China-roots*, and divers others, deserve a *Mapon.* place. The Tree *Mapon*, besides its Medicinal Vertues, is used for making Canoes, though its Wood is somewhat spungy. But the Wood of the Tree, call'd *Acoma* being very hard, is much used to make Oars for Sugar-mills.

Brazil-wood. This Isle abounds also in Brazil-wood, and that which the *Spaniards* call *Mancanilla*: The first serves chiefly for dying, and grows plentifully along the Coasts, especially near *Jucmel* and *Jaquina*, two convenient Bays fit for the reception of large Ships.

Mancanilla. The *Mancanilla*, or *Dwarf-apple-tree*, grows also near the Sea shore, being so low that the Branches always touch the Water. The Fruit is like our sweet Apples, Its venomous quality. but of a venomous quality; those that eat them, being seized immediately with a violent Thirst, and dying soon after: They even kill the Fish, if they happen to eat of this Fruit. The Tree affords a thick white Liquor, like the Fig-tree, which raises deep Blisters: I happened once to make use of one of the Branches of this Tree to drive away the Gnats, but found my Face swell'd and blister'd all over the next Day.

Yuca. The *Yuca* is a low Tree, growing in sandy Grounds near the River side, bearing a Fruit like our Damascene-plums, which fattens the wild Boars, as our *Abelcose.* Acrons do the Hogs. The Tree call'd *Abelcose* bears a Fruit of the same colour with the *Yucoes*, but of the bigness of a Melon, with a Kernel as big as a Hens Egg, that is yellow and of a pleasant taste: The Trees grow as tall, and near the same shape as our Pear-trees.

Three sorts of *Flies.* Among the Insects of this *Island*, I will only mention three sorts of Flies, which sorely afflict Strangers. The first sort are of the bigness of the common *European* Horse-flies, which stick to and suck the Blood of humane Bodies till they are quite fill'd. The *Spaniards* *Musquitos.* call them *Musquitos*; and the *French Marangnines.* The second The second are no bigger than a grain of Sand, and kind. make not the least noise; they penetrate unperceived the finest Linen Cloth. The Hunters, when going abroad, defend themselves against them by greasing their Faces; and in their Huts by burning Tobacco-leaves. The best is, that being so little, the least Wind disperses them; they are but seldom troublesome in the The third sort. Day time. The third are a kind of *Gnats*, of a red colour, but no bigger than a Mustard-seed; they don't sting but bite, and produce little Ulcers, but never after Sun-set. The *Spaniards* call them *Rajados*; and the *French Calarodes.*

Glow-worms. Here are also a kind of *Glow-worms*, call'd *Cochinillas* and *Moscas de fuego*, or *Fire-flies* by the *Spaniards*; they are somewhat bigger than those of *Europe*, with two little specks on their heads, which give a light like Fire by Night: I observed once three of them in my Hut at midnight, which shined so bright, that by the light they gave I could read a Book. I endeavoured to bring some of them into *Europe*, but with the change of the Climate they lost first their light, and afterwards their lives.

Crickets. *Hispaniola* has also an excessive number of Crickets, much bigger than ours, which make a hideous noise: As also many Serpents, and other Reptiles, but are *Serpents.* neither poisonous nor mischievous, except that now and then they will devour some Fowl, as Pigeons and Pullets. They also catch Rats and Mice, and after they have suck'd their Blood, throw away the Entrails, and swallow the rest entire, which they digest into soft Excrements. Another sort of *Reptiles* they have, 1666. call'd *Fly-catchers*, because they live upon nothing but Flies. *Fly-catchers.*

Of *Land-Tortoises* they have vast numbers; they breed in mead and marshy Grounds, and are accounted good Food by the Inhabitants. They have likewise a kind of a very large *Spider* that breeds in the roofs of Houses: They are of the bigness of a good Hen-Egg, with feet as long as a Sea-crab, very hairy, with four black Teeth, like a Rabbets both for bigness and shape; they bite very fierce, but are not venemous. This Island produces also *Millepedes* (or *Thousand-feet*) and *Scorpions*, but though the Wounds they give often are attended with Inflammations, yet the same disappear again without the application of any Remedy, so that no venemous Creature is found in *Hispaniola*.

However they are terribly pestred with the Beast call'd *Cayman*, a kind of *Crocodiles*, sometimes seventy foot long, and twelve in circumference. These place *Crocodiles.* themselves near the Fords of Rivers or Ponds, where Cattel usually drink, and floating upon the Water like a piece of Timber, with great agillity snatch at the first Man or Beast that comes: What is more surprising is, that they swallow two hundred weight of Stones, to render themselves more heavy, the better to stifle the prey after they have plunged it under Water; which done, they keep it four or 5 days, because they can't eat it unless it be half putrify'd. Thus they will drag Hides that are drying in the Field, into the Water, and keep them after the same manner. I had it from a creditable Person, that being one day busy in washing his Tent in the River, one of these *Crocodiles* took hold Their Cunning. of his Tent, which he being willing to save, pull'd it back with all his strength; at which the *Crocodile* snatched him under Water, and with his weight endeavoured to stifle him, but he having by good chance a very sharp Knife in his mouth (wherewith he had scrap'd the Tent) gave the *Cayman* so many Wounds with it in his Belly, that he expired upon his Body. He had the curiosity to open him, and found in his Stomach a hundred weight of Stones, of the bigness of a Fist.

The *Caymans* have little Scales, which having an aro- They catch matick Scent, the Flies settle and sting underneath *Flies.* them, which makes the *Cayman* devour them as fast as he can catch them. These *Caymans* lay their Eggs on How the some sandy Banks of a River exposed to the Sun, *Caymans* which they cover with their feet, and so leave them to are pro- be hatcht by the heat of the Sun-beams. As these *created.* Eggs are sometimes destroy'd by the Birds, so the female *Cayman* if she fears any of these flocks, swallows these Eggs by Night, and keeps them till the danger is over. As soon as they are hatcht they run to the Water and play with the Dam like Whelps. I have often disturb'd their play with throwing Stones at them to the opposite bank of a River, and us'd to see them run into their Dam's Throats, and come out again as Rabbets do in their holes. They are hatcht all in one season, for they never copulate but in *May*.

Hispaniola has also vast stores of all sorts of four-leg'd §. V. Beasts, as *Horses*, *Bulls*, *Cows*, *wild Boars*, and other Of the useful Animals: But besides it is mightily infested with Country, *wild Dogs*, who appear 50 or 60 together in the Fields, Beasts and and devour the *Colts* and *Calves*; nay, they will some- Birds of times assault entire herds of *wild Boars*, and worry this Isle. them till they have kill'd two or three of them. Of this I saw once a notable instance: Being in the Field with a *Bucanier*, we saw a *wild Boar* standing alone against a Tree, and defending it self couragiously a- A remarka- gainst a great number of *wild Dogs*: After having kill'd ble Story of and wounded several of them with his Tusks; he at- the *wild* tempted to fly, when one of the Dogs leaping on his *Dogs.* back fastned on his Testicles, and quite tore them out; at which the rest being encouraged, did fall unanimously upon the Boar, and soon kill'd him. This done, they all lay down quietly upon the Ground near the prey, till the first Dog, who had seiz'd the Boar had eat as much as he would, then all fell to, and eat till nothing was left.

Monsieur *Ogeron* the *French* Governour of *Tortuga* en- Endea- deavoured to extirpate these *wild Dogs* in 1668. by vours to causing poisoned Carrion to be laid in those places extirpate where they usually resorted; but though a vast num- these *Dogs.* ber of them were kill'd by this means, yet they multiply'd so fast, that this diminution was scarce perceivable. These *wild Dogs* are easily tam'd: The Hunters take the Puppies from the Bitches, and after they are bread up at home, they hunt better than other Dogs.

It is worth our inquiry how these Dogs came into How these this Island. After the Conquest of these Prats by the *Dogs* came *Spaniards*, their Inhabitants having conceived a general- hither.

aversion

1560. aversion against them, fled into the Woods, from whence they did considerable mischief to their new Masters. These for want of other remedies, sent for a great number of Dogs to search the Woods, whence they chased their Enemies, and kill'd vast numbers of them; which nevertheless was so far from reducing the rest, that they rather chose to dye in subterraneous Caverns, than submit to their merciless Conquerours. Hence it is that you see frequently large Caves full of human Bones in those parts. The *Spaniards* having no farther occasion for these Dogs, turn'd them out of their Houses, and these betook to the Woods for food, and grew wild in process of time.

Wild Horses. The whole Isle abounds in *wild Horses*; they are low and short, great heads, long necks, and thick legs; and appear always in Troops of two or three hundred, one always going before the rest. They will stand still till you come within reach of them, but then start and fly away on a sudden. They take them for their Skin's sake; sometimes they smoak their Flesh for the Sea.

Wild Bulls and Cows. Of *wild Bulls* and *Cows* they have also vast store, tho' many of them have been destroy'd by the Hunters. The *Bulls* are of a large size, but harmless. The Hides are from eleven to thirteen foot long.

Birds. Among the various sorts of Birds, I will content my self to mention only a few. They have certain *wood Pullets* (call'd *Pintadas* by the *Spaniards*) as good as our tame ones, and *Parrots* in vast numbers; these build in the holes of the *Palmito trees*, not of their own making, (for their Bills are too crooked) but excavated by a certain small Bird, no bigger than a *Sparrow*, call'd the *Carpinter*, which has a very sharp Bill. *Pigeons* in vast plenty, which are something fatter and bigger than those of *Tortuga*, and eatable at the same season. They have another sort of small Birds, call'd *Cabreros* or *Goat-keepers*, which are very like those call'd *Heronsetas*, and chiefly feed upon *Sea Crabs*. These Birds have seven distinct bladders of Gall, and their Flesh is as bitter as Aloes. *Crows* and *Ravens* are numberless here, being the same as in *Europe*, feeding upon dead Carcasses.

Wild Pullets. Parrots. Carpinters. Pigeons. Cabreros. Crows.

Settlement of the French in those parts. How the *French* came into these parts, we have mentioned before; we will add something concerning their manner of Living and Employments. These are of three sorts; Hunting, Planting, or Pirating at Sea. Whatever Employment they take to, they always join with a Partner (upon certain Articles) in a common Stock, whom if they dye without Wife or Children, they generally constitute their Heir.

The Hunters and Bucaniers. The Hunters are of two sorts: For those that Hunt the wild Bulls and Cows are call'd *Bucaniers*, but such as hunt the wild Boars properly *Hunters*. The first were formerly six hundred strong, but by the decrease of the Cattel are now reduced to three hundred. They commonly remain for two Years in the Woods, and after their return divide the Spoil, when they go to *Tortuga* to buy Guns, Powder and Shot for the next Expedition, and spend all the rest in Brandy, Wine, and lewd Women, being a very debauch'd Generation, and very cruel to their Servants: Neither are the Hunters of the wild Boars of a better stamp; they join five or six in Company, and go a hunting three or four Months together; the Flesh they salt, and sell to, or rather exchange with the Planters at a certain rate for Tobacco.

The Planters. The Planters began to cultivate first the Isle of *Tortuga* in 1598. The first Plantation was of Tobacco, which succeeded to admiration, but there being but little Ground fit for that purpose, they attempted to make Sugar, but that not answering the charge, the greatest part apply'd themselves to hunting and piracy.

But the Hunters being also too numerous, they were forced to endeavour to render some more Grounds fit for culture; so that now their number is encreased to two thousand, who have their Plantations in the following Quarters; *the great Anse, Nep, Rochelois, the little Grave, the great Grave*, and the *Angame*: Most of which they rendred fit for cultivation with incredible Pains, being forced to make their way through thick Woods, the Shrubs and little Trees whereof they set on fire, as well as the great ones, and then dug up the Roots as well as they could.

Beans, Potatoes. The first Seed they sow'd was Beans, which here ripen and dry in six Weeks. The second they attempted was *Potatos*, which come to perfection in four Months. These they boil in fair Water, and after they have covered them for half an hour with a Cloth, they become as soft as Chesnuts. Of these *Potatos* they make a Liquor call'd *Maiz*. They cut them into small slices, and cover them with hot Water, which being well imbibed they press it through a course Cloth: The Liquor being put in Vessels to settle, ferments in three Days, and having thrown off its Lees is kept for use, being of a pleasant sowrish taste, and not unwholesome. This invention is owing to the *Indians*. 1666.

Mandioca or Cazave Root. The third Fruit is the *Mandioca* Root, which does not come to perfection till after eight or nine Months, and when ripe may be left eleven or twelve Months in the Ground without corruption, but after that putrifies. Of this Root they make a kind of white Flower or Meal (for want of Wheat) thus: They grate them upon certain graters, made of Copper or Tin (such as they use in *Holland* to grate Horse-radishes with) and put the Ratlings into coarse linen Bags, and squeeze out the moisture. Then they sieve the gratings, and dry them upon hot iron Plates, whence they afterwards remove them to the tops of their Houses to be thoroughly dry'd in the Sun. What does not pass the Sieve is roll'd up in pieces of five or six inches thick, which being laid together till they begin to corrupt, produces a liquor call'd *Veycou*, not inferiour to *English* Beer.

Bananas. Of the *Bananas* they also prepare a liquor as strong and pleasant as the best *Spanish* Wine, but is apt to inflame the Throat. Of the *Guineas agudos* they make also a certain drink, but not so strong as the former: Both may be drank mixt with Water. *Guineas agudos.*

Tobacco. The manner of planting *Tobacco* is perform'd thus: They sow the *Tobacco* upon beds of twelve foot square, covered with Palmite Leaves, to keep off the Sun, and water them when it does not rain, till the *Tobacco* be grown to the bigness of our young *Lettuce*; then they plant them in the Fields in streight lines, each Plant three foot distant from one another. This must be done from *January* till the end of *March*, when the most rains fall. Then they weed it carefully, and when grown to the height of a foot and half, they cut off the tops; and as soon as it is come to perfection, lay it upon Poles or Rafters, (in certain Sheds made for that purpose) to dry; when it is thoroughly dry'd they strip the leaves from the stalks, which are made up into rolls. The *Tobacco* has this property, that if, whilst upon the ground, the leaves be pull'd off from the stalk, it will sprout forth again four times a year.

How planted. *And dry'd.*

It was not without great reluctancy the *French* Planters of *Hispaniola* submitted to the Governours of *Tortuga*: When in 1664 the *French West India* Company seized upon that Isle, the Planters of *Hispaniola* were so refractory to their Governour in the Isle of *Tortuga*, as proved one of the chiefest occasion of the Company's quitting that Colony. Afterwards the Governour of *Tortuga* endeavoured to reduce them, by intercepting their Commerce with *France*; but being supply'd with Necessaries by the *Dutch*, they bid defiance to the said Governour; and even proceeded so far as to enter into a Design to kill him, to possess themselves of the Isle of *Tortuga*, and erect a Commonwealth independent of the Crown of *France*: But the War breaking out not long after betwixt the *French* and *Dutch*, the Governour obtain'd two Frigots from the King with arm'd Men, who reduced the *French* Planters in *Hispaniola* to Obedience, under condition that they should be at liberty to trade with what Nation they thought fit.

Spaniards came subject to France.

Kidnapers. These Planters have but few Slaves, and these are such as for the most part are kidnapt in divers *European* Countries. They are oblig'd to serve only three Years, but during that undergo such intolerable Slavery and Drudgery as is not to be express'd; being much worse us'd than the Negro Slaves, who are their perpetual Slaves, whereas these being only bound for a short time, they care not whether they live or dye. This produces in many (of a weak and tender Constitution and Education) a Disease call'd *Crona*, which in a manner deprives them of their Senses: Besides that oftentimes they beat them to that degree that they expire under their hands. Of this I have been a Witness more than once: I remember that such a Servant being retaken by his cruel Patron (after having quitted his service) he ty'd him to a Tree, and there gave him so many lashes till his Body was quite covered with Blood; afterwards he caused Crab Lemon Juice, Salt and Pepper to be rubb'd into his Wounds; and having left him in this condition 24 Hours, lash'd him again the next Day, till he expired, wishing his Patron as many Torments before he dyed, as he had made him to feel; which was fulfill'd soon after: For in three or four Days after he run mad, howl'd like a Dog, and tore his own flesh from his bones till he dy'd.

Cruelty of the Planters.

How the English use their Slaves. Those of the *Cariby* Isles are rather accounted worse: In the Isle of St. *Christopher's* lives one *Betteſa*, who thus has kill'd above a hundred Slaves. The *English* are no better, nothing being more common among them than

1665. to use their Slaves with such rigour the last Year (they being bound for seven) as to force them to intreat their Masters to sell them to others for seven Years longer, and frequently for three or four: I have known some serve thus fifteen or twenty Years. They have also a Law in their Plantations, that in case a Man owes but 25 Shillings *English*, he is liable to be sold for six or 8 Months. But not to insist farther upon these matters, I will now proceed to give the Reader an impartial Account of the famous Exploits of the greatest Pirates, of which I my self have been an Eye-witness.

§. VI. Origine of these Pirates.

The first Pirate known upon *Tortuga* was *Peter the Great*, born at *Diep* in *Normandy*. The *Spaniards* having till this time scarcely sail'd through the Channel of *Bahama*, the said *Pierre le Grand* undertook the boldest attempt that ever was heard of before or since: For being at Sea with a Boat mann'd only with 28 Men, without meeting with any Prizes, and all their Provisions spent, the espy'd a stout Ship (being the Vice Admiral of the *Spanish Flota*) near the Cape of *Tiburon* on the West side of *Hispaniola*, which they resolv'd to attack in the dusk of the Evening. Having for this purpose order'd the Chirurgeon to bore a hole in the sides of the Boat (to take away all hopes of an escape) they climb'd up the sides of the Ship with no other Arms than each a Pistol in one and a Sword in the other hand; and whilst some seized the Captain in the great Cabin with other Officers, the rest made themselves masters of the Gun-room, killing all that made the least opposition; and at last forcing the rest to surrender the Ship, which *Pierre* carried to *France*, and never return'd to *America*.

Bold Attempt of *Pierre le Grand*.

Those of *Tortuga* turn'd Pirates.

However this rich Prize was a sufficient encouragement to many Hunters and Planters of *Tortuga* to follow his footsteps; but being unprovided with good Ships, they made use at first of Canoes only, wherewith they cruised upon the Cape of *Alvarez*; and having taken many of the *Spanish* Coasters trading with Tobacco and Hides to the *Havana*, they carry'd them to *Tortuga*, where being sold at a good rate, they met with sufficient opportunity to provide themselves with all Necessaries for a greater Expedition. Accordingly they sail'd, some to *Campeche*, others to *New Spain*, whereabouts they took within a Month four large Vessels, two whereof being bound with Plate from *Campeche* to *Caracas*, they stock'd the whole Isle of *Tortuga* with Riches. And as this success was a sufficient encouragement to the rest, so in this small Isle there were no less than twenty of these Ships equipt in a little time, which oblig'd the *Spaniards* to set out twelve Men of War for the defence of these Coasts.

§. VII. How they arm their Vessels and regulate their Voyages.

A certain number of Pirates being agreed to go to Sea, they meet at a certain day to appoint the time of their Embarkment, and settle the allotment of Provisions every Man is to bring, which is generally Flesh, and especially Pork, and next to that Tortoises. Their Pork they commonly steal out of the *Hog-yards* of the *Spaniards*, who have often 1000 heads of Swine together. Being all come aboard the Ship, they allow every Man whatever he can eat, without any distinction from the meanest Sailor to the Captain.

Articles of agreement among them.

Before their departure they enter into certain Articles, to regulate what summ of Money each particular Person is to have (besides his share in the Booty:) As first how much for the Captain for his Ship; next the Ship-wright, which is commonly 100 or 150 pieces of Eight. Then the Chirurgeon and his Chest 200 or 250 pieces of Eight. Next the Mariners and Wounded come into consideration; as for the loss of the right Arm 600 pieces of Eight, or 6 Slaves; for the left 500 or 5 Slaves; For a right Leg, 500 or 5 Slaves; for the left 400 or 4 Saves: for an Eye 100 or 1 Slave: for a Finger the same. All which is to be taken out of the common Stock of what they take, and an exact dividend to be made of the remainder, according to their respective Stations. Of this the Captain has five or six shares to what a common Seaman has: The Master's Mate two, and so in proportion; of the which they draw equal shares, and Boys half a share. 'Tis for this reason they are oblig'd to declare by a solemn Oath, that they have conceal'd nothing: For the rest, they are very charitable to one another, assisting one another upon all occasions. What Prisoners they take they commonly set ashore, except such as they stand in need of, who are also released in two or three Years.

Their Charity to one another.

At the Isle of *Cuba* they commonly careen their Vessels, and provide themselves with Tortoises, which they take from the Fishermen: Of these *America* produces four different sorts. The first have Scales so soft that they may be cut with a Knife; and weigh often 2000 or 3000 pounds, but are not fit for food. The second are greenish, indifferently big, and of a good taste, with a hard shell. The third is almost the same with the former, except that the head is something bigger, and affords no good food: The *French* call them *Cavana*. The fourth sort is like those of *Europe*, call'd *Caret* by the Inhabitants. These are generally seen among the Rocks, where they feed upon Sea Apples; as the others do upon Grass growing on the sandy Banks. Their Eggs are not unlike those of the *Crocodiles*, but without a shell, covered only with a thin film. If vast numbers of these Eggs were not destroy'd by the Birds, the Sea would be covered with *Tortoises*. They lay their Eggs at certain places every Year; the chief are the three Isles call'd *Caymanes*, at 20 *deg.* 15 *min.* Latitude, 45 Leagues N. of *Cuba*: While they are at these Isles they eat little or nothing, but the season of hatching being past, they retire to *Cuba*, where in a Months time they grow fat, and are taken in prodigious quantities, only by means of a sharp Nail fix'd at the end of a long Pole, which they strike into the *Tortoises* whenever they appear above Water. 1665. Four Different sorts of *Tortises*. Their *Eggs*. How taken.

The Inhabitants of *New Spain* and *Campeche* commonly transport their Commodities in Ships of great bulk. They sail from *Campeche* in the Winter to *Caracas*, the *Trinity Isles*, and that of St. *Margaret*, and return in the Summer. It is on these Coasts the Pirates us'd to keep their Stations in the proper seasons, but if they happen'd to miss their aim, they then used to undertake some more hazardous Enterprizes; of which I will give some Instances. Stations of the Pirates.

A certain Pirate named *Peter Francis*, having for a considerable time waited in vain for the return of the Ships from *Maracaibo* to *Campeche*, steer'd his Course to *Rancherias* near the *Plata* River at 12 *deg.* 30 *min.* N. Latit. where is a rich Pearl Fishery, managed every year by twelve Vessels sent thither from *Cartagena*, under Convoy of a Man of War. He found the said Pearl Fleet riding at anchor at the entrance of the River *de la Hacha*, in calm weather; the Convoy about half a League distant from the rest. With this intention he row'd along the Coast, as if he had been a *Spanish* Vessel, but being come up unawares with the Vice Commodore, carrying eight Guns and sixty Men, he boarded her, and forced the Crew to surrender; having compell'd them to assist him in his farther design, he sunk the Boat, and putting up *Spanish* Colours, set sail in hopes to surprize (by this Stratagem) the Commodore, and consequently the whole Fleet: But the Commodore fearing a Mutiny among the Mariners, and that they intended to go off with the Riches on board her; he set sail also, which made the Pirate change his resolutions, and to make the best of his way into the main Sea. Accordingly they laid on all the Sail they could, which prov'd their Ruin: For a sudden gust of Wind having brought the Main-Mast by the board, they were overtaken by the Man of War; with whom they engag'd couragiously for some time; but being no more than 22 sound Men, were oblig'd at last to surrender, on condition that they should not be made Slaves, but be set ashore on free Land. *Peter Francis*. He goes in quest of the Pearl Fleet. Takes the Vice Commodore. Loses his Main-mast. Is taken.

As bold an Attempt as this was made by another head of the Pirates, call'd *Bartholomew the Portuguese*, (he being a Native of *Portugal*) who setting sail from *Jamaica* in a Boat of 4 Guns and 30 Men, attacked upon the Cape of *Corriente* in *Cuba* a *Spanish* Ship bound from *Maracaibo* and *Cartagena* to the *Havana*, provided with 20 Guns and 70 Men; and after a dubious Fight made himself Master of her; but the Wind being contrary for *Jamaica*, they were forc'd to steer for Cape St. *Anthony* (to the West of *Cuba*) to get fresh Water; there being met by three stout *Spanish* Ships from *New Spain*, bound to the *Havana*, by whom they were retaken, with the whole Cargo, consisting in 120000 weight of *Cocao Nuts*, and 70000 pieces of Eight. These Vessels being afterwards separated by Storm, that which carried the Pirates got safe to *Campeche*, where the Magistrates condemn'd *Bartholomew* to be hang'd. Having soon got notice of their design, he prepar'd, for his escape, two earthen Jars well stopp'd, to help him in swimming (being not vers'd in that art) and to escape the vigilancy of his Centry, stab'd him with a Knife, and then throwing himself with the Jars into the Sea, he got ashore and retired into the Woods; thence making the best of his way to the *Golfo triste* (40 Leagues from *Campeche*) he after a most painful Journey of fourteen Days, safely arrived there; being forc'd to cross several Rivers upon old Boards fastned together with Osiers and twigs of Trees; the N°. 1. *Bartholomew the Portuguese*. Takes a great Ship. Is taken himself. Is brought to *Campeche*, and condemn'd to be hanged. Kills his Centry and swims ashore. Comes to *Cape Triste*.

1666. the old Nails whetted against a Stone serving instead of a Knife.

Here meeting with a Vessel of Pirates lately come from *Jamaica*, unto whom having related his whole Adventure, he desired only a Boat and 20 Men of them, promising he would return to *Campeche*, and assault the same Ships that had taken him before. His Comrades having granted his request, he retir'd in 8 Days to the River of *Campeche*, and with an undaunted Courage assaulted and took the beforementioned Ship, who taking him for a Boat that carried Contraband Goods aboard, were in no posture to resist him. *Bartholomew* seeing himself thus Master of the same Ship in which he had been so lately detain'd in order to be hang'd, was not a little rejoyc'd at this change of fortune, and made the best of his way out of the Port towards *Jamaica*; but near the Isle of *Pines* to the South of *Cuba*, was overtaken by a violent Tempest, which split his rich Prize against the *Jardines* rocks. However he and his Crew had the good fortune to escape in a Canoe to *Jamaica*, where soon after he went on new Adventures, but without success.

Returns with a Boat to Campeche.

Retakes the Ship by which he was taken, and loses her by Storm.

Returns to Jamaica.

N°. 2. *Roche Brasiliano.*

The Exploits of *Roche Brasiliano* are no less famous than those of the former. He being a Native of *Groningen* (in *Friesland*) and his name unknown, got the Sirname of *Brasiliano*, where he had liv'd a great while; and after the recovery of *Brasil* by the *Portugueze* from the *Dutch*, was fled to *Jamaica*. Here he entred into the Society of the Pirates, among whom he serv'd as a common Sailor for some time, and behaved himself so well, that upon a difference of a great part of the Ship's Crew with their Captain, those that left the Ship, made him Chief of a Vessel they were fitting out for the same purpose.

Is made Captain.

He had not been long at Sea before he took a rich *Spanish* Ship coming from *New Spain*, with a vast quantity of Plate aboard, which made his name celebrated at *Jamaica*; though otherwise he was a brutish Fellow, and very cruel in his Inclinations, especially against the *Spaniards*, whom he would sometimes order to be roasted alive.

Takes a rich Ship.

Is Shipwreck'd. Escapes in a Canoe.

After some time cruising betwixt *Campeche* and *Golfo triste*, he lost his Ship by Storm, but he and the Mariners got ashore in a Canoe, only with their Arms, Muskets, and Ammunition. Being on their Journey along the Coast to *Golfo triste* (the Rendezvouz of these Pirates) almost spent with hunger and thirst, they were stopt by 100 *Spaniards* well arm'd, whom they defeated after an obstinate Fight, though they were no more than thirty in number. As they were continuing their march along the Sea shore, they espy'd a small Man of War, a Convoy to some Canoes that were loading Wood there; *Basiliano* sent six of his Men in the Night to observe their motions, who having possess'd themselves of the Canoes by Stratagem, gave the signal to the rest, who coming timely to their assistance, they boarded and took the little Convoy. Thus being again Masters of a Ship, they wanted only Provisions; the defect whereof they supply'd by killing the Horses they had taken in their Journey; and so to Sea they went again, and soon after took a rich Ship going from *New Spain* to *Maracaibo*, with abundance of pieces of Eight, and other valuable Commodities; all which they carried to *Jamaica*, and according to their custom spent it all in Taverns and Stews: Nothing being more common among these Pirates than to spend 3000 pieces of Eight in a Night, without leaving themselves a Penny, or a Shirt the next Morning.

Takes a small Convoy.

As also a rich Ship from *New Spain*.

Returns to *Jamaica*.

Brasiliano and his Crew having spent all they got before, were forced to have recourse to their old Trade. Coming on the Coast of *Campeche*, he with most of his Men went in a Canoe to view the Port, but by misfortune was taken with all his Men, and committed to a Dungeon, in order to be hang'd; which they had infallibly been, had it not been for a Stratagem of *Brasiliano's*, who counterfeiting a Letter, writ in the name of the whole Society of the Pirates, found means to have it convey'd to the Governour. This Letter containing in substance, *That if he did any harm to those in his Custody, they would give no quarter to any* Spaniard *that should fall into their hands.* This had such an influence upon the Governour, (who knew the Coast of *Campeche* always to be infested with them) that he releas'd them, exacting only an Oath from them, that they would desist from Piracy for the future; and so sent them in the quality of common Seamen, in the Galleoons to *Spain*. But having got 800 pieces of Eight together in this Voyage, they made shift by the help thereof to return to *Jamaica*, from whence they set out to Sea again, and committed greater Robberies and Cruelties upon the *Spaniards* than before.

1666.

He goes to Sea again.

Is taken, and in danger of being hang'd, but escapes by a Stratagem.

Is sent to *Spain*, and returns to *Jamaica*.

This obliged the *Spaniards* to have recourse to other remedies, which they thought to have found in the diminishing the number of their Ships; which the Pirates soon perceiving, they gathered into Companies, and landed in their Dominions, spoiling and pillaging their Cities, Towns and Villages.

The Pirates begin to land in the *Spanish* Dominions.

The first Pirate who attempted to land in the *Spanish* Dominions was *Lewis Scot*, who sackt and put to an excessive ransom the City of *Campeche*. After him one *Mansvelt* invaded *Granada*, and penetrated to the South Sea; and being forced thence for want of Provisions, took the Isle of St. *Catherine*. But the great Actions of *John Davis* (a Native of *Jamaica*) in the Kingdom of *Granada Nueva* ought not to be pass'd by in silence. This Pirate having in vain cruised in the *Gulf* of *Pocatauro*, in an expectation of some Ships from *Cartagena*, bound to *Nicaragua*, at last resolved to pillage the last of these two places: He put 80 Men out of 90 into three Canoes, and entring the River in the dark of the Night, lurk'd by day near the Banks under the Trees, which grow thick along the River sides. The third Night approaching, the City and the Country taking them for Fisherboats, they set ashore an *Indian* who was run away from his Master; this Fellow having murthered the Centinel, they all entred the City; and being conducted to the wealthiest Houses and Churches, took all they thought worth carrying, without much Tumult for some time; till at last the whole City being put into an Alarm, the Pirates march'd off in good order with their Booty, and some Prisoners of note, and got safely aboard their Ship, though the City was 40 Leagues from the Sea.

Lewis Scot and *Mansvelt*.

John Davis.

They kill the Centry, and rob the City.

They brought above 50000 pieces of Eight in Money and Jewels to *Jamaica*; which being soon spent, they chose the said *John Davis* Commodore of 7 or 8 Vessels, wherewith he steer'd his Course to the North of *Cuba*, to wait for the Fleet from *New Spain*; but missing his aim there, directed his Course for *Florida*, where he landed his Men, and pillaged the City of St. *Austin* of *Florida* without the loss of one Man, tho' the Castle had a Garrison of 200 Men.

Carry off the Booty to *Jamaica*.

He goes to Sea again.

Sacks St. *Austin*.

Thus much of *Hispaniola* and *Tortuga*: We will now proceed to give you an account of the actions of two famous Pirates, who committed incredible Barbarities upon the *Spaniards*.

CHAP. III.

The second Part of the Bucaniers *of* America.

§. I. *Francis Lolonois* and his Robberies.

FRancis *Lolonois* was born in *France*, in that District known by the name of the *Sands of Olone*. He serv'd in his Youth as a Slave in the *Carriby* Islands, and afterwards coming to *Hispaniola*, lived among the Hunters, before he join'd with the Pirates.

N°. 3. Turns Pirate, and gets a Ship.

In his first two Voyages he serv'd as a common Sailor; in which station he behaved himself so well, that Monsieur *de la Place*, Governour of *Tortuga*, bestow'd a Ship upon him, wherewith he got great Riches. But being sometime after Shipwreck'd on the Coast of *Campeche*, and forced to save himself and his Men ashore, they were for the most part kill'd by the *Spaniards*, and he himself wounded, which sav'd his Life; for mingling Sand with the Blood of his Wounds, he so defaced all his Body, that lying among the Dead, he was taken for such by the *Spaniards*, who had no sooner quitted the Field, but he made shift to get into the Woods: Hence taking his way to *Campeche*, he went disguised in a *Spanish* habit through the City

Is Shipwreck'd, but escapes with Life.

Appears in disguise at *Campeche*.

1666. City, whilst the Citizens were making Bonfires for his Death; and having enticed some Slaves to follow his Fortune, they stole a Canoe, and came safe to *Tortuga*. Here he made a shift to get another Ship mann'd with 21 Sailors; with these he sail'd to *Cuba*, on the South whereof lies the Village *de los Cayos*, the Inhabitants whereof being very rich in Tobacco, Sugar and Hides, he hop'd to ease them of their Treasure, by sacking the Place. But these being forewarn'd by some Fishermen, obtain'd a stout Ship from the Governour of the *Havana*. The Pirates had no sooner notice of the arrival of this Ship, which carried 10 Guns and 90 Men, then at anchor in the River *Estera*, but they forced some Fishermen to conduct them into the Port; and coming up by 2 in the Morning with the Ship, (who took them for Fishermen) they assaulted the Vessel on both sides with their two Canoes, and drove the Crew with Sword in hand under the Hatches. The Governour of the *Havana* having expresly order'd the Captain not to give Quarter to any of the Pirates, ordered the *Spaniards* to be brought up one by one; and so had their Heads struck off, reserving only one alive, who he dispatch'd to the Governour, to let him know, that for the future he would serve all the *Spaniards* that fell into his hands in the same manner, and that he hop'd to execute the same upon his own Person. The Governour was so exasperated thereat, that he swore he would hang all the Pirates he took; but was oblig'd to recal his Oath, at the intercession of the Inhabitants, who living for a great part upon Fishing, were likely to have the worst of it.

Goes to Sea again.

Takes a great Ship.

Lolonois having now got a good Ship, but with few Men and little Provisions, he thought it his best way to return to *Tortuga*, to fit himself with both for a greater Enterprize; which he did accordingly, having the good fortune to take in his way thither another rich Prize, laden with Plate and other rich Commodities.

§. II. *Lolonois gets together a fleet.*

The good success of *Lolonois*, and the fame of his future designs soon got him together a body of 400 Pirates; which being join'd by another famous Pirate nam'd *Michael de Basso*, (an Inhabitant of *Tortuga*) they made in all 660 fighting Men, embark'd in eight Vessels, the biggest whereof carried ten Guns.

The first steer'd their Course for *Hispaniola*, where being join'd by a good number of *French* Hunters, and provided with several Necessaries, they sail'd for the East Cape of the Isle call'd *Punta de Espada*, whereabouts espying a Ship bound to *New Spain*, *Lolonois* alone went in quest of her, ordering the Rendevouz of the Fleet to be at *Savona*, to the East of Cape *Punta de Espada*. The *Spaniards* having 16 Guns and 50 sound Men aboard, receiv'd the Pirate couragiously, but after three Hours fight were forced to yield the Ship, in which they found 120000 weight of Cocoa Nuts, 40000 pieces of Eight, and 10000 more in Jewels. This Price he sent immediately to *Tortuga*, to be disposed of there, and to return with Provisions and Ammunition to *Savona*; where *Lolonois* was no sooner arriv'd, but he found that his Comrades had not been idle, having taken a *Spanish* Vessel of eight Guns, bound for *Hispaniola*, with 7000 weight of Powder, a great number of Muskuets, and 1200 pieces of Eight, which was a seasonable Booty for them at this juncture.

Takes a rich Ship.

The Pirates take another.

The Ship lately sent to *Tortuga* by *Lolonois*, was no sooner return'd with the desired Provisions, but he chose her for his own, giving that which he commanded hitherto to *Antony du Puis*; and thus equipt, they set sail for *Maracaibo* in *Nueva Venezuela*, at 12 *deg.* 10 *min.* N. Latitude. This Isle is 20 Leagues long and 12 broad, and to this Port belong the Isles of *Onega* and *Monges*. The West side is call'd *Cape of Caquibacoa*, and the East side *Cape St. Roman*, and the Gulf the *Gulf of Venezuela*, but the Pirates commonly call it the *Bay of Maracaibo*.

At the entrance of the Gulf are two Isles, extending from East to West. That to the East is call'd *Isla de las Vigilias*, having a Watch house on a high Hill. The other *Isla de la Palomos*: Between these two Isles is a fresh Water Lake 60 Leagues long and 30 broad; which disembogueing into the Ocean, dilates it self near these two Islands: Betwixt which is the Channel or passage for Ships, of the breadth of a Cannon shot of an eight Pounder. The *Isle of Pigeons* has a Fort commanding the Passage, by reason of the Sand banks on the opposite shore, with only 14 foot Water: There are many other Shelves 40 Leagues within the Lake, scarce 10 foot deep, and some not above 6 or 7.

The *Watch Isle*.

The *Pigeon Isle*.

The Lake of *Maracaibo*.

Sand Banks.

To the West hereof is seated the City of *Maracaibo*, pleasantly built all along the shore: It contains about 3000 or 4000 Souls, Slaves included, among whom 800 are capable of bearing Arms. It has one very handsome Parish Church, four Monasteries and one Hospital: It is under the Government of a Deputy of the Governour of *Caracas*. Their Trade consists in Hides and Tobacco; the Country for 30 Leagues round containing a vast number of Cattel, and good Plantations. Hence it is that those of *Gibraltar* are furnish'd hence with Flesh, in lieu whereof they send to *Maracaibo* Oranges, Lemons, Cocaos, and other sort of Fruits.

The City of *Maracaibo*.

1666.

Maracaibo has a secure and spacious Port, fit for the building of Ships, by reason of the cheapness of Timber near it. Near the City lies the small Isle of *Borrica*, which feeds great number of Goats, and some Sheep, but of a small size. In some Islands of this Lake, and in other places on the West side inhabit still certain Savage *Indians*, call *Bravos*, i. e. *Wild* by the *Spaniards*, which could never be reduced or civiliz'd by them. They dwell in small Huts, built upon Trees near the Water side, as do also many Fishermen on the East side of the Lake, for fear of Inundations which are frequently here, by reason of the conflux of no less than 25 Rivers into this Lake; an inconveniency the Town of *Gibraltar* is also often subject to.

Its Port.

The Isle *Borrica*.

Wild *Indians*.

Gibraltar is seated 40 Leagues within the Lake, containing about 1500 Inhabitants, 400 whereof are capable of bearing Arms. Their adjacent Fields afford good store of Sugar, Cocoas, Timber wood and Cedars, seven or 8 foot in circumference; being well furnished with Brooks and Channels for the conveniency of their Plantations, which produce abundance of that sort of Tobacco stiled for its excellency *Tobacco de Sacerdotes*. Their Territories are 20 Leagues in compass; and being surrounded with high Mountains, they are forced to carry all their Merchandizes upon Mules to *Merida*, a City on the other side of the Mountains, unto which *Gibraltar* owes its subjection.

Gibraltar.

Priests Tobacco.

Merida.

Lolonois coming to the Gulph of *Venezuela*, cast an anchor out of sight of the Watch Isle with his Fleet, and the next day entring the Lake of *Maracaibo*, landed his Men a League from a Fort, which commands the Bar, and therefore call'd the *Barra*, consisting only of some Baskets of Earth placed on a rising Ground, with 16 Guns planted behind, and a little Breast-work to cover the Gunners. The Governour having got notice of their landing, had laid an Ambuscade to cut them off in the Rear, whilst he attacked them in Front; but the Pirates having got intelligence of it, first routed those laid in Ambuscade, and having cut off their Retreat to the Fort, attacked the same with Sword and Pistol in hand so furiously, that after an obstinate Fight of three Hours, they at last became Masters of it. Whilst they were engaged near the Fort, those that been routed in the Ambuscade, retreated to *Maracaibo* 6 Leagues thence, and put the City into such a consternation, that the Inhabitants fled with all their best Moveables, some to the Woods, the rest to *Gibraltar*.

Lolonois comes into the Gulph.

Takes a Fort near *Maracaibo*.

The Castle was no sooner taken, but the Pirates ordered their Ships to advance; and having spent the remainder of the Day in demolishing the Fortifications, steer'd the next Day for *Maracaibo*, where they arriv'd the following Morning, and landed their Men, under the favour of the great Guns, for fear of Ambushes, though there was no Body to oppose them. Thus they entred the City without opposition, destitute of Inhabitants, but met with good store of Bread, Flower, Pork, Brandy, Wine and Poultry. After having placed convenient Guards, they sent out divers Parties, who brought back some Prisoners and 20000 pieces of Eight. They put the Prisoners to most violent Torments, to learn from them where their Inhabitants had buried their Riches, and *Lolonois* cut one of the *Spaniards* to pieces in sight of the rest, but whether it were that they were resolved not to own any thing, or that their fellow Citizens had removed their Effects to other places, they could find out nothing of moment.

Demolish it.

Land and plunder *Maracaibo*.

Lolonois cuts a *Spaniard* to pieces.

Thus after fifteen Days stay at *Maracaibo* they resolved to go to *Gibraltar*, not knowing that the Governour of *Merida* was come to their relief with 400 Men, and as he was a good Soldier, had raised two Batteries, one of twenty, the other of eight Guns, near the Sea shore, and barricado'd up the narrow passage by Land, through which they must advance towards the City, resolving to dispute it to the utmost with 800 chosen Men.

Gibraltar fortify'd by the Governour of *Merida*.

The

1666. The Pirates, I say, being ignorant of these preparations, steer'd towards *Gibraltar*, where finding the Royal Standard display'd in defiance of them, *Lolonois* call'd a Council of War, wherein, after many Debates, it was notwithstanding all the difficulties resolved to attempt the place, as not questioning but that all the Riches of *Maracaibo* were laid up at *Gibraltar*.

The Pirates land near *Gibraltar*.

Accordingly having cast an Anchor a quarter of a League from the Town, they landed 350 Men next Morning by break of Day, arm'd only with Cutlasses and Pistols, and Powder for 30 Charge each. After they had all shook Hands, *Lolonois* cry'd, *Brothers, follow me*; and so on they march'd, following their Guide, who brought them to the narrow barricado'd passage: But finding this place too hot for them, they turn'd off on one side into the Woods, but by reason of the boggy Ground, stuck in the Mire; the *Spaniards* playing upon them all this while with their Cannon: However they cut down the Branches of Trees, by the help whereof they got through the Wood: Here they were saluted by a Battery of six Guns, loaden with small Bullets and pieces of Iron, which together with a vigorous Sally made by the Enemy put them into confusion, and obliged them to look for some other passage; but finding all the Roads intercepted by Trees laid a cross, they were forced to have recourse to an old Stratagem; *Lolonois* ordered his Men to make a shew of flying, thereby to draw the *Spaniards* into the Field: This succeeded according to expectation; for these seeing them run away, sally'd out in great disorder, and pursuing the Pirates at a good distance from their Batteries, these rallied, and with incredible Bravery, fought their way through them to the Batteries; who seeing their Forces routed, and flying to the Woods, surrender'd at discretion, leaving the Town to the mercy of the Enemy. These set up their own Colours, carried all the Prisoners to the great Church, and there raised a Battery for their better defence, in case the *Spaniards* should rally their broken Forces. Above 500 *Spaniards* were slain upon this occasion, besides a great number wounded, and 150 taken Prisoners, without reckoning 500 Slaves. The Pirates had 40 kill'd, and 80 wounded, most whereof died by reason of the bad air. Here they spent near a Month in searching for what Riches they could meet with, not only in the Town, but also in the circumjacent Country; most of the wretched Prisoners dying in the mean while for hunger, except some few Women, who for hunger submitting to their brutish Lust, had better cheer allow'd them.

Are reduced to great straits.

Take *Gibraltar* by a Stratagem.

Prisoners die for hunger.

Receive 10000 pieces of Eight ransom for the Town.

Being ready to depart, they summon'd the *Spaniards* in the Woods to pay 10000 pieces of Eight, as a ransom for the Town in two Days; which being not paid at the appointed time, they fired it in several places, and burnt the Church belonging to the Convent. At last the said summ being paid, they embark'd all their Riches, and with such of the Prisoners as had not paid their ransom, return'd to *Maracaibo*, where they also demanded 30000 pieces of Eight, to save the City from burning. Whilst the Inhabitants were deliberating upon the matter, some of the Pirates got ashore, and carried away the Images and Bells of the great Church. This hastned their resolutions, for they offer'd 20000 pieces of Eight, and 500 Cows; which being deliver'd accordingly, they set sail for *Hispaniola* after they had exercited their Cruelties for two Months in those two places. Here they anchored in a Port call'd *Isla de la Vacca*, i. e. *Cow Isle*; which being inhabited by *French Bucaniers*, they unloaded their Treasure, which upon computation amounted to 260000 pieces of Eight, besides a 100000 more in Linen, Silks, other Commodities, and a vast sum of Money in Plate and Jewels: All which was divided according to agreement.

20000 more for *Maracaibo*.

Divide the Prey.

Then they set sail for *Tortuga*, where the Governour bought a whole Cargo of a Ship loaden with *Cocoa Nuts* for the 20th part of the value; there being just before arriv'd two Ships from *France*, with Brandy, Wines, and such like Commodities, the Owners made a good market of it, selling a Gallon of Brandy for 20*s.* sterling, which before they would gladly have sold for half the Money. Thus these Pirates having squandred away most of their Substance in three Weeks time, either at play, or in Taverns and Stews, they were soon forced to have recourse to the same methods of getting more.

§. III. *Lolonois* prepares to attack St. *James de Leon*.

The repute *Lolonois* had got in this last Expedition, soon got him together 700 Men; which being embark'd in six Vessels, they sail'd to *Baycha* in *Hispaniola* to take in Provisions, and thence steer'd their Course to the Port of *Matanzana* near the South side of *Cuba*; they took as many of the Fishermen's Canoes there as they had occasion for; and thus provided, sail'd towards the Cape of *Gracias a Dios*, on the Continent at 15 *deg.* N. Latitude, 100 Leagues from the Isles *de los Pinos*. But being becalm'd at Sea, they were forced to enter the *Gulph of Honduras*, and from thence in their Canoes into the River *Xagua*, inhabited by *Indians*, to seek for Provisions, of which they stood in great need: Here meeting with a good quantity of Millet, Hogs and Pullets, they pillaged and destroy'd all the Towns and Villages along the Gulph, as far as *Puerto Cavallo*, where the *Spaniards* had two Storehouses, wherein they lay up their Merchandizes, which are brought thither from the inland Country: These they burnt with all the other Houses of the place, and seized upon a *Spanish* Ship of 24 Guns and 16 Patareros, committing unheard of Cruelties upon the poor Wretches that fell into their Hands; so that all of them dy'd under the several Tortures inflicted upon them, except two that were preserv'd to shew them the way to St. *Pedro* 10 or 12 Leagues from *Puerto Cavallo*, whither *Lolonois* march'd at the Head of 300 Men, leaving the rest behind under the Command of *Moses Van Vin* his Lieutenant: But they had scarce advanced three Leagues, when they fell into an Ambuscade of *Spaniards*, out of which they disentangled themselves by their Bravery; the same they did with two more, killing most of the *Spaniards* that attacked them: But the worst of all was, that as they approached the Town, they found the Road (the only that did lead to it) barricado'd up, and the circumjacent Fields covered with a sort of thorny Shrub call'd *Requelites*. The *Spaniards* fired briskly upon the Pirates with their great Guns, which they avoided by falling upon their knees, and afterwards attacked them with Sword in Hand and Fire-balls, with so much vigour, that they forced them to capitulate under Conditions, that the Inhabitants should have liberty to dispose of themselves at pleasure for two Hours. This being granted, they carried away all their best moveables into the Woods, but *Lolonois* found means to be even with them; for the time being elapsed, he followed them, and seized their Goods, and made the Men Prisoners.

1666. Comes to the Gulph of *Honduras*.

Plunders the *Indians* and *Puerto Cavallo*.

Takes a great Ship there.

Marches to St. *Peter*.

Take it upon conditions.

After a stay of a few Days, (during which they committed all manner of Barbarities) they burnt the Town, and resolved to go to the other side of the Gulph to careen their Vessels, and provide themselves with Tortoises, having two Canoes with Men before the mouth of the River of *Guatemala*, on that Coast, to lay wait for a Vessel expected there from *Spain*.

They knitted Nets with the rinds of certain Trees call'd *Macoa*, whereof they made also Cables. This place affords also a kind of Pitch, like *Bitumen*, which being melted by the Sun beams near the Sea Coast, congeals in the Water in vast pieces like small Islands: I take these to be pieces of Wax mixed with Sand, carried from the Rivers into the Sea, the Country abounding much in Honey. After they had careen'd their Vessels, they kept cruising on the Coast of *Yucatan*, inhabited by *Indians*, who being reduced under the yoak of the *Spaniards*, were initiated by them in the Christian Religion; but being highly provoked by the Barbarities of their Conquerors, they return to their Idolatrous Rites, every one having his peculiar Idol unto whom he pays his Devotion: They observe an odd custom with their new born Babes; these they leave alone in the Temple naked in a hole fill'd with Ashes, the Temple being open on all sides; next Day the Parents come to see whether they can perceive the footsteps of any wild Beasts in the Ashes left near the hole, which if they find not, they leave the Child till they find the track of some Animal or other near it, unto which they afterwards Consecrate the Child, as to its Patron, unto whom the Child, (when grown up) makes his Offerings, which is a certain Gum of a pleasant smell, call'd *Copal*, which they burn as an Incense upon an Altar.

A sort of Bitumen or Wax.

The *Indians* on the Coast of *Yucatan*.

Their *Religion* and *Ceremonies*.

In this manner live these *Indian* Pagans, or Demi-Christians, in the Islands of the Gulph of *Honduras*, and on the Continent of *Yucatan*; where are divers excellent Ports, near which they inhabit.

The Pirates having staid three Months in that Gulph, and advice being brought that the so long expected Ship was unloading in a Port not far distant, they made all the Sail they could towards them, but the *Spanish* Vessel carrying 42 Guns and 120 Men, behaved her self so well, that the Pirates who had but 22 Guns, were forc'd to retire, and must quite have left her, had they not found means, under favour of the smoak, to board her, and forced the *Spaniards* to submit. But as the

The Pirates take a great Ship with little Booty.

1666. the Ship was above half unloaden, so the Booty did not answer their expectation.

This proved the occasion of no small contests among the Ship's Crew, some that were Novices in this Trade, and who at their setting out from *Tortuga* had imagin'd nothing but Riches to be met with at the first Encounter, being resolv'd to quit the Fleet, whilst others were not for returning home, without a considerable Booty. However the greatest part separated from the rest, choosing *Moses Van Vin* and one *Pierre le Picard* for their Leaders.

Lolonois is left by many of his Company.

They go to *Costa Rica*.

These coasted along the Continent to *Costa Rica*, where they landed near the River of *Veragnas*, and pillaged the Town of the same name, (after a brave resistance) but met with no great Booty, the whole not amounting to above 7 or 8 pound weight of Gold; which they wash out of the Sands of the neighbouring Rivers. They form'd afterwards a design against *Nata*, a rich Town seated on the Coast of the S. Sea; but understanding the *Spaniards* were upon their guard, they chang'd their resolution.

Lolonois stays behind.

Lolonois thus deserted, remain'd in the Gulph of *Honduras*, his Ship being too large to get out, where he was reduced to that extremity, that his People were forced to feed upon Monkeys. At last coming to the Isles call'd *Las Pertas* in the altitude of the Cape of *Gracias à Dios*, his Ship stuck upon the Sands, so that not being able to get her off, they were forced to break her to pieces, and build a Boat with part of her Planks and Nails.

Isles *De las Pertas*.

The Inhabitants.

The Inhabitants of these Isles are a barbarous unciviliz'd sort of People, very tall and as nimble as a Horse, and very dextrous at diving. They have no other Arms but Lances, of a fathom and a half long, and those without Iron, some having having points of Crocodiles Teeth. Their Plantations consisting of Potatoes, Bananas, Ananas, &c. are enclosed with Woods, and they are accounted Men-eaters; for a *Spaniard* of *Lolonois*'s Crew being missing, he sent some others to look for him, who found the *Indians* round a Fire, with some Men's Bones well roasted near them, and one Hand with two Fingers only remaining.

Men-Eaters.

Marching forward they seized upon five *Indian* Men and four Women, whom they brought aboard the Ship; and finding them very fearful, they endeavour'd to gain their Affections by some trifling presents of Knives, Beads, &c. which they seem'd to be pleased with, making signs that they would come again, tho' they never did, nor could they get sight of any *Indians* in this Island afterwards. But as the building of their Boat went on but slowly, they planted some *French* Beans, which came to maturity in six Weeks; and with these, together with some *Spanish* Wheat, Bananas, and some other Fruit, they sustain'd themselves for six Months.

The Pirates stay here six Months.

By this time the Long-boat being finish'd, they agreed to go to the River *Nicaragua*, in hopes to take some Canoes, in order to fetch off the rest of their Companions, who (by reason the Boat could hold but one half) were forced to stay behind in the Island.

Accordingly after having cast Lots, one half embark'd with *Lolonois*, and in a few Days arriv'd at the River *Nicaragua*, where they were scarce landed, but a strong body of *Indians* and *Spaniards* join'd together fell upon them so furiously, that they put them to the rout, killing most of the Pirates upon the spot, so that *Lolonois* not without great difficulty escap'd with the remainders of his broken Forces into his Boat. But persisting in his resolution not to return to the Isle of *Pertas* without taking some Canoes, he took his course to the Coast of *Carthagena*; where within few Days after his arrival, he was slain with most of his Companions; by the *Indians* of *Darien*.

Lolonois slain by the *Indians* of *Darien*.

His Companions join with a *Jamaica* Pirate.

Those that were left in the Isle of *Pertas* having for some time (but in vain) waited for the return of their Captain with his followers, at last embark'd aboard a *Jamaica* Pirate, bound for *Gracias a Dios*, who came that way. These two Crews being now join'd, and come to *Gracias a Dios* enter'd the River of *Carthagena*, 500 in number in Canoes, with an intent to take that City: As they did not question to meet with sufficient Provisions in the *Indian* Plantations near the River side, so they took nothing along with them. But the *Indians* having got some scent of their coming, left not the least thing fit for subsistance in their Settlement. This reduced them to such extremity, that they look'd for green Herbs and Roots in the adjacent Woods; and these proving insufficient for the subsistance of so great a body of Men, they were reduced to that distress as to feed upon their Shoe-leather, the sheaths of their Swords, Knives, and such like things; in hopes of meeting with some place or other where to satisfie their hunger, and afterwards to comfort themselves for these hardships by plunder of so rich a City. But at last finding themselves quite frustrated in their hopes, they return'd to the Sea side, where they had left their Ships, but so faint and weak, that the greatest part of them dy'd soon after, and the rest dispersed.

They make a vain attempt.

1666.

They disperse.

§. IV.

Capt. *Morgan*'s Descent and memorable Actions.

Henry Morgan was the Son of a good substantial Yeoman in *Wales*, but not liking his Father's Employment, he entred himself aboard a Vessel bound for *Barbados*; where he was no sooner arriv'd, but according to their custom he was sold, and served his Time in that Isle. After having obtain'd his liberty, he went to *Jamaica*, and engaged himself with some Pirates there, with such good success, that in three or four Voyages he got a pretty good stock of ready Money. This he join'd with some others of his Acquaintance, and bought a Vessel, whereof they having made him Commander, he sail'd from *Jamaica* to the Coast of *Campeche*, where he took several good Prizes.

Turns Pirate.

About that time there was an old Pirat at *Jamaica* call'd *Mansvelt*, who being then equipping a Fleet to pillage on the Continent, and hearing of the good success of *Morgan*, pitch'd upon him for his Vice Admiral in his intended Expedition. They sail'd from *Jamaica* with 15 Ships (great and small) mann'd with 500 Men, most *Walloons* and *French*; and not long after arriv'd at the Isle of St. *Catherine*, near the Continent of *Costa Rica*, and 33 Leagues from the River *Chagre*, at 12 *deg.* 30 *min.* Latit. They soon made themselves Masters of the Forts here, which being all demolish'd but one, they laid a Bridge over the Channel to an adjacent Isle, and without much difficulty also took possession of the same. This done, having left 100 Men behind at St. *Catherine*'s Isle, for its defence, they reimbark'd the rest, and sail'd to the Coast of *Rica*, and thence to the River *Costa*, with an intention to pillage the Sea Coast as far as *Nata*: But understanding that the Country had taken the Alarm, and that the Governour of *Panama* was ready to give them a hot reception, they thought it their safest way to return to St. *Catherines* Isle.

Is made their Vice Admiral under *Mansvelt*.

The Isle of St. *Catherine*.

Taken by the Pirates.

The *Sieur Simon*, a *French* Man by Birth, who had been left Governour of it, had been very industrious in putting the said Isle (during the absence of *Mansvelt*) in a good posture of defence; and to cultivate the lesser Island with fertile Plantations, which induced *Mansvelt* to take a resolution to keep these two Isles in his possession, by reason of their convenient situation near the *Spanish* Dominions.

With this intention he sail'd for *Jamaica*, where he proposed the same to the Governour; but being rejected by him, and *Mansvelt* knowing himself not in a condition to keep them without his assistance, he went to *Tortuga*, where he dy'd suddenly.

Mansvelt dy'd at *Tortuga*.

The *Sieur Simon* hearing no farther News from *Mansvelt*, was soon after attacked by the *Spaniards*: He defended his Ports for some time, but having no hopes of relief, surrender'd them upon certain Conditions. A few Days after the surrender, an *English* Ship sent thither with supplys from *Jamaica*, arriving in that Port, and not knowing what had happen'd, was seiz'd by the *Spaniards*, with the Men and Women aboard them.

The *Spaniards* regain the Isle of St. *Catherine*.

§. V.

The Isle of *Cuba*, he arrives at, and takes the Town of *El Puerto del Principe*.

Capt. *Morgan* equips a Fleet.

A description of the Isle of *Cuba*.

Capt. *Morgan* after the Death of his Predecessor, entertain'd the same thoughts concerning the keeping of the Isle of St. *Catherines*, but finding himself disappointed in his design, by the taking of that place by the *Spaniards*; he bent all his thoughts upon the equipping of a good Fleet, which he having encompass'd by degrees, he appointed their general Rendezvouz at a certain Port of *Cuba*, in order to concert measures there, against which place they should bend their Force.

The Isle of *Cuba* stretches in length from 20 to 23 *deg.* N. Latitude, about 150 *German* Leagues, and 40 in breadth. It is in fertility not inferiour to *Hispaniola*, and affords many things fit for Exportation, especially the Hides of divers Beasts, noted by the name of *Hides of Havana*. It has many Isles on all sides, call'd the *Cayes*, which serve for places of refuge to Privateers. *Cuba* is watered with divers good Rivers, and has spacious and secure Harbours, which bring thither a considerable Traffick. The chief Ports are St. *Tiago*, *Bayame*, St. *Maria*, *Espiritu Santo*, *Trinidad*, *Xagoa*, *Cabo de Corrientes* on the S. side of the Isle. Those on the N. side are *La Havana*, *Puerto Mariano*, *Santa Cruz*, *Mata Ricos*, and *Barracoa*.

The Isles of *Cayes*.

Its Rivers and Ports.

The Isle of *Cuba* has two chief Cities, *viz.* St. *Tiago* and the *Havanna*: The first lies on the S. side, and has under

Its Cities. St. *Tiago*.

1669. under its jurisdiction one half of the Isle: From hence they transport much Tobacco, Sugar and Hides to the *Canaries*. It is defended by a strong Fort, notwithstanding which it was pillaged by the Pirates of *Jamaica* and *Tortuga*.

The *Havana*. The City and Harbour of *Havana*, (one of the strongest places in the *West Indies*) is seated betwixt the N. and W. side of this Isle; its jurisdiction extends over the other half of the Isle; it is defended by three large and strong Forts, two whereof command the Port, the third the Town, being built on a Hill. It is said to contain 10000 Families. The Inhabitants transport thence Its Strength. Commerce. vast quantity of Tobacco to *New Spain*, *Costa Rica*, and over to the *South Sea*, besides what is sent to *Europe*. All the Ships that come from *New Spain*, *Campeche*, *Honduras*, *Florida*, from *Caracas*, *Carthagena* and *Costa Rica*, must take in their Provisions here for their Voyage to *Spain*. The *Spanish Flota* also touches here in her return home.

In two Months time Captain *Morgan* had got together twelve Vessels mann'd with 700 Men, in the Ports of *Cuba*. It was proposed by some to go and plunder the *Havana*; but that proposition being rejected as not practicable, the Town of *el Puerto de el Principe* was pitch'd upon as most proper for their purpose, being reputed a rich place. Accordingly they set sail towards the Coast neareſt to *el Puerto de el Principe*, and cast an Anchor at the Bay call'd *Puerto de Santa Maria*. They were no sooner arriv'd there, but a *Spanish* Prisoner swam ashore in the Night, and gave notice to those of *Puerto del Principe* of the design of the Pirates: Hereupon the Inhabitants removed all their best Effects and Riches, and the Governour arm'd 800 Men, most of whom he placed in Ambush, in order to fall upon the Pirates, whilst they were advanced to a certain Post, which he had barricado'd with Trees cut cross the way. Captain *Morgan* finding the avenues to the Town (which lies at a pretty good distance from the Sea) unpassable, he made his way through the Wood; and thus having escap'd their Ambuscades, enter'd the plain call'd *La Savana*, where they found the Governour at the head of a good body of Horse, who charg'd them very briskly in Front: But the Pirates being drawn up in form of a half Moon, gave them such a hot reception, that the Governour with most of his Men were slain upon the spot, without any considerable loss on their side. Then they march'd into the Town, where they met with more resistance than they expected they should have done, the *Spaniards* there defending the Entrance thereof as long as possibly they could; and afterwards retiring into the Houses, from whence they fired briskly upon the Pirates, till these threatning to destroy them all with Fire, they were forced to submit: Then they shut up all the *Spaniards* as well as Slaves in the Churches, where a great many of them (whilst the Pirates were making good chear) perished for want of Food; and some of them were tortured to Death with the most exquisite Torments that could be invented, to make them confess where they had hid their Goods.

They sail towards *Puerto de S. Maria*.

Their design betray'd.

Puerto del Principe taken by the Pirates.

Having got what plunder they could, they told the Prisoners, *That unless they did pay them a considerable Ransom, they should all be carried as Slaves to* Jamaica, *and the Town laid in Ashes*. Hereupon four of them were sent to look after the demanded Contribution; but being return'd, brought word, *That they were not able to find out any of their own Party, but that they would endeavour to raise the Money in fifteen Days*; which was granted.

But soon after some of the Pirates, as they were searching the Woods for Goods, seized a *Negro*, with Letters from the Governour of St. *Tiago*, to some of the Prisoners, intimating, *That they should endeavour to delay the payment of the Contribution, and that he would not fail to come shortly to their assistance*. After this intelligence Captain *Morgan* had all the Booty they had got brought aboard, and ordered the *Spaniards* to pay their Ransom the next day, without giving them the reason for it; but these alledging the impossibility of raising such a sum in so little time, he demanded of them 500 Oxen or Cows, with Salt sufficient to powder them, to be carried aboard his Ships: Which being perform'd accordingly with all possible haste, he set all the remaining Prisoners at liberty.

Letters intercepted from St. *Tiago*.

They leave *Puerto Principe*. This done, they set sail to a certain Isle, to make a dividend of their Booty, which amounting not to above fifty thousand pieces of Eight in Goods and Money; they resolved to undertake another Enterprize before their return to *Jamaica*. However the *French* not agreeing very well with the *English*, thought fit to leave Captain *Morgan*, though he did all he could to dissuade them from it, and promised to give them all imaginable satisfaction, in respect of a Murther committed upon one of their Countrymen by an *Englishman*; which he did punctually perform after his return to *Jamaica*, where he caused the Criminal to be hang'd.

1669. The *French* separate from the *English*.

§. VI.

He gets together another Fleet.

Captain *Morgan* not in the least discouraged at his being left by the *French*, knew so well how to animate his Men, that they all unanimously resolved to follow his Orders; and being soon after join'd by another Pirate of *Campeche*, they gathered a Fleet of nine Sail, great and small, mann'd with 460 Men, fit to bear Arms.

They set sail to *Puerto Velo*.

Soon after they set Sail, steering their Course toward *Costa Rica* on the Continent; and so soon as they discovered the Land, Captain *Morgan* declar'd his intentions, of attacking and plundering the City of *Puerto Velo*, to the rest of the Officers. These alledged that they had not a sufficient number of Men to take so large and strong a City; but he representing to them, that the Booty would be the greater: The hopes of getting vast Riches infallibly engag'd them to approve his resolution, in hopes they might find the *Spaniards* unprovided for a vigorous Defence.

A Description of that City.

The City of *Puerto Velo* is seated in the Province of *Costa Rica*, at 17 *deg.* N. Latitude 14 Leagues from the Gulph of *Darien*, and 8 Leagues W. from the Port of *Nombre de Dios*; being next to the *Havana* and *Carthagena*, accounted the strongest place under the *Spanish* jurisdiction in the *West Indies*, and defended by two strong Castles at the Entrance of the Harbour. The Garrison consists commonly of 300 Soldiers, and the Inhabitants are computed to be about 400 Families; because few of the Merchants dwell here, but only come hither for a while, and keep their Ware-houses here. This place being reputed very unhealthy.

They come to *Puerto Naos* and *Puerto Pontin*.

Captain *Morgan* who was well acquainted on this Coast, arrived with his Fleet in the Evening at *Puerto de Naos*, 10 Leagues W. of *Puerto Velo*: Here they enter'd the River, and came to an Anchor at another Harbour, call'd *Puerto Pontin*. From hence they went higher up the River in *Canoes* till midnight, when they landed at a place call'd *Estera longa Lemos*, and thence march'd by Land to the first advanced guard of the City: Here they seized the Centinel without any noise, and having ask'd him what questions they thought fit, and threatned him with immediate Death if they found him in a falshood, forced him to conduct them to the next Castle, about a Mile thence, which they surrounded immediately; and having posted themselves under the Walls, summon'd the Garrison to surrender; but being answer'd with Fire, they assaulted it with Sword in Hand so furiously, that the Garrison after a brave defence, were forced to surrender at discretion, but were all put to the Sword by the Pirates, except some of the Officers, whom they put into one Room, and afterwards blew them up into the air, together with the whole Castle, thereby to strike a Terrour into the Inhabitants of the City. These were put into such a consternation at the approach of the Pirates, that the Governour finding it impossible to make them face the Enemy, retir'd to one of the Castles, from whence he fired most furiously upon the Pirates; and these being resolved to conquer, or fall in the Attempt, left nothing undone that might facilitate the taking of it. The assault lasted from break of Day till Noon, when the Pirates endeavouring to try their utmost effort, threw in abundance of Hand-Granadoes; but being repaid in the same Coin by the *Spaniards* with Fire-pots and great Stones, Captain *Morgan* was quite at a stand what to do: Whilst he was pondering upon the matter, he saw a Troop of his Crew advancing towards him, proclaiming by their Shouts the Conquest they had made over another Castle. Being incouraged by this success, he resolved to continue the Assault, cost it what it would: Accordingly he ordered twelve Ladders to be made with all speed, of such a breadth that three or four Men might mount them abreast; which being done accordingly, he commanded all the Religious Men and Women (they had taken out of the Cloysters) to fix them against the Walls, in hopes thereby to induce the Governour to a surrender. It was a miserable spectacle to see these poor Wretches cry out and implore the Governour to spare their Lives, who was so far from hearkening to their Prayers, that he fired most furiously upon them; but could not prevent their fixing of the Ladders. This was no sooner done, but the Pirates scaled the Castle

The first Castle taken and blown up.

The great Castle assaulted.

A lesser Castle taken.

Religious People forced to fix the Ladders.

1669.

with undaunted Bravery; and being got to the top of the Walls threw their hand-Granadoes and Fire-pots so thick among the *Spaniards*, that they soon forced them to lay down their Arms, and to cry for Quarter, except the Governour, who in spite of all the entreaties of his Wife and Children, would not surrender, but fought till he was kill'd upon the spot, after having given signal proofs of his Bravery.

The great Castle taken.

The Governour kill'd.

After the taking of the Castle, the Pirates fell to Plundering and Debauchery, committing all manner of Insolencies, Rapes and other Violences; several of their Inhabitants being tortured to Death, to discover their Riches.

People tortured to Death.

The President of *Panama* being advertised of what had happen'd at *Puerto Velo*, gathered immediately what Forces he could to drive out the Pirates, who were now preparing to return aboard (after a stay of 15 Days) and therefore demanded a ransom of 100000 pieces of Eight. In the mean while the Governour of *Panama* was marching to *Puerto Velo* to cut off their retreat; but they being inform'd of his march, posted a hundred chosen Men on a pass, who charged the fore Troops of *Panama* so briskly, that the President thought it his safest way to retreat in time, leaving the Citizens to agree for their Contributions as well as they could, which they did accordingly, and soon after paid the demanded ransom of 100000 pieces of Eight. The Governour of *Panama* being surprized at the success of the Pirates, who had with 400 Men, made themselves Masters of so many strong Castles without any pieces of Ordnance, sent a Messenger to Captain *Morgan* to desire a pattern of these Arms, wherewith he had perform'd such stupendious Exploits. He was obligingly receiv'd by Captain *Morgan*, who gave him a Pistol and a few small Bullets, desiring him to tell his Master, *That these were the Arms wherewith he had taken the City; and that if he would keep them a twelve month he would come himself and fetch them thence.* But the Governour soon sent back the Pistol with this answer, *That he stood not in need of such Weapons, and that he had best save himself the trouble of coming to* Panama, *because he was not likely to succeed so well there as at* Puerto Velo.

The Governour of *Panama* beaten.

The City pays the ransom.

A Messenger sent to Capt. *Morgan*.

Captain *Morgan* having provided his Ships with all manner of Necessaries, and taken aboard the best Guns, set sail from *Puerto Velo* for *Cuba*, where having divided the Booty consisting of 250000 pieces of Eight, besides Linen, Silks, Cloth, &c. they return'd to their old Rendezvouz, I mean *Jamaica*; where they soon spent, in all manner of Debaucherys what they had purchased with so much hazard and labour.

§. VII.

The City of *Maracaibo* taken by Capt. *Morgan*: His Piracies in those Seas; they destroy three *Spanish* Men of War.

The repute of Captain *Morgan*, drew soon after to his aid many of the Pirates in those parts; he appointed their Rendezvouz at the Isle of *de la Vaca*, or *Cow Isle*, South of *Hispaniola*: There being at that time a stout *English* Vessel at *Jamaica*, mounted with 36 Guns, the same was order'd to join Captain *Morgan*, wherewith, and the other assistance he expected, he thought himself sufficiently provided for some Enterprize of note: However there happen'd to be at the same time another Ship of force of 24 iron and 12 brass Guns, in the same Port: but this being mann'd with *French*, would not join with the *English*.

The *French* Captain having not long ago met an *English* Vessel at Sea, had forced from her some Provisions, without paying ready Money for it; Captain *Morgan* who was very desirous to strengthen his Fleet by this Ship, laid hold of this opportunity, and inviting the *French* Captain and his chief Officers aboard the before-mention'd great Ship; he made them all Prisoners, under pretence of making reparation for the damnage and affront sustain'd by the *English* Vessel at Sea. This was no sooner done, but a Council being held on board the Vessel, and resolved to sail for the Isle of *Savona*, to wait for the *Flota* then expected from *Spain*, they fell a drinking of Healths, as is usual among Seamen; then on a sundden (by what accident is unknown) the Ship was blown up, and all the Men, *viz.* 350 *English* Men, besides the *French* Prisoners, only 30 escap'd, who were in the great Cabin.

Capt. *Morgan*'s Treachery.

Punish'd by the blowing up of 320 Men.

To remedy this disaster, as well as the circumstances of the matter would allow of, it was given out by Capt. *Morgan* and his Friends, that the *French* Prisoners had set Fire to the Ship, and out of revenge, and that the rest intended to commit Piracy upon the *English*.

Capt. *Morgan* sails for *Savona*.

Eight Days after the blowing up of the Ship Capt. *Morgan* set sail for *Savona*, the place appointed for their Rendezvouz, where were to meet no less than 15 Vessels, to be mann'd with 960 Men. The first place they came to, was *Cabo de Lobos*, South of *Hispaniola*, betwixt Cape *Tiburon* and Cape *Punta de Espada*: Here they were detain'd three Weeks by contrary Winds, and then continued their Voyage to the Port of *Ocoa*. Here they sent some Men ashore to fetch some Water, and to hunt for Beasts: The *Spaniards* dissatisfied to see their Beasts slaughter'd before their Faces, sent for 400 Men from St. *Domingo*, to lay in Ambush for the Pirates: These seeing a great herd of Cows guarded only by two or three Men, kill'd as many of them as they thought convenient, and were going to carry them aboard their Ships; but being unexpectedly surpriz'd by a good Body of Troops, they were forced to quit their Prey, and to retreat, which they did in very good order, firing continually upon the Enemy, who finding themselves sorely gall'd retreated to the Woods, but were for the most part kill'd in the pursuit. Next Day Captain *Morgan* went in Person with 200 Men into the Woods, but finding no *Spaniards* there, exercised his Cruelty upon the poor Peasant's Cottages.

1669.

An Ambush laid by the *Spaniards*.

Are defeated.

In the mean while Captain *Morgan* having waited for some time in vain, for the coming of some of his Ships, he steer'd for *Savona* in hopes to meet them there: But after a stay of some Days, hearing not the least news of their coming, he set sail with what Ships he had with him, being eight in number, mann'd with 500 Men, for the Isle of *Ruba*, with an intention to attack *Maracaibo*, being encouraged thereunto by a *French* Man, who had formerly serv'd *Lolonois* in the same Enterprize. The first place they got sight of was the Isle of *Curassao*, but landed at another 12 Leagues thence to the West, call'd *Ruba*, an Isle inhabited by *Roman Catholick Indians*, and defended by a slender *Spanish* Garrison. The Isle is barren and dry, producing only sustenance for some Sheep, Lambs and Kids, which they exchange with the Pirates for Linen, Thread, &c. It has abundance of venomous Creatures, and among the rest Spiders, by which if a Man is bitten, he dyes Mad, unless you tye immediately both his Hands and Feet, and so leave him 24 Hours, without the least Nourishment.

Capt. *Morgan* sails to *Savona*.

The Isle of *Ruba*.

After two Days stay, they set sail again in the Night, that they might not be discovered by the Inhabitants what course they steer'd, and arriv'd the next Day at the Lake of *Maracaibo*, where they anchored the next Day over against the Bar of the said Lake. Since the attempt of *Lolonois* the *Spaniards* had built another Fort here, from whence they fired briskly upon the Pirates, whilst they were busy in putting their Men into the Canoes, in order to land them. In the Night Captain *Morgan* approaching the Fort, to take a full view of it, perceived that they had deserted it; and entring the same found a Match lighted near a train of Powder, which he snatch'd up immediately, and thereby preserv'd himself and his Companions from being blown up: This done he demolish'd the Walls, and having divided the Arms and Ammunition he found there among his Ships, he order'd them to sail the next Day into the Lake for *Maracaibo*; but meeting with a Bank not passable for Ships, when the Waters are low, they were forced to make use of their Boats and Canoes, in which they embark'd some of their smallest pieces of Cannon, and their Men, and so row'd up towards the City. Their first landing was near the Fort *de la Barra*; which being found deserted as well as the former, they advanced to the Town without the least opposition: They were not a little surprized when they found the City as empty as the Forts, which obliged them to send several small Parties into the Woods, to look for the Inhabitants and their Goods, and they seldom return'd without success: The miserable Wretches thus taken, were put to the Rack to confess where the Inhabitants had shelter'd themselves with their Goods: Some had their Limbs stretch'd with Cords, and afterwards were beaten with Sticks; others had burning Matches put betwixt their Fingers, and others had small Cords twisted about their Heads till their Eyes burst out: At last Captain *Morgan* having gotten 100 of the best Families into his Hands, he resolved to go for *Gibraltar*: In order to this he sent some Prisoners thither to exhort them to surrender, and immediately after set sail with his whole Fleet, but was receiv'd at his arrival there with nothing but Cannon and Ball; however they made shift to land their Men, and by the help of the beforementioned *French* Guide left the open road; but instead thereof passing through the Woods, so surpriz'd the *Spaniards*, that without more ado they fled with all their best Moveables to the Woods, leaving no body behind them but one poor Wretch who was born a Fool; but this could not save him from the Rack; for having told the Pirates, that he was the

They come to the Lake of *Maracaibo*.

The Fort deserted by the *Spaniards*.

The Fort *La Barra*.

They take *Maracaibo*.

They sail for *Gibraltar*.

Brother

1669. Brother of the Governour of *Maracaibo*, they lifted him up with Cords, tying weights to his Feet, and putting burning Palm-trees to his Face, till he expired under their Hands. Not long after they hang'd also a poor Peasant taken in the Woods, because he had given them (as they supposed) wrong intelligence concerning the Inhabitants and their Goods.

Their Cruelties.

Among the rest, they had taken a Negro Slave, who, inticed by the promise of his liberty, led them into the Woods, where about 250 of the Citizens lay conceal'd, all these they made Prisoners, took many Mules loaden with Riches, and caused the Negro to kill several of them before their Faces, thereby to engage him for ever to their Interest. Among these there was an ancient *Portugheze*, who either not able or unwilling to discover what he had, they ty'd him with small Cords by his two Thumbs, and great Toes to four Stakes fixt in the Ground, so that the weight of his whole Body hung on the Cords; but not contented thus, they thrash'd upon the Cords with great Sticks, and laid 200 weight upon his Belly, appling at the same time burning Palm-leaves to his Beard, Hair and Face. Thus they kept him for several Days, till they made him promise them 1000 pieces of Eight for his ransom.

They torture many Prisoners to Death.

They exercised divers sorts of Torments upon other Prisoners; some they hung up by their Testicles till they were torn from their Bodies, and afterwards Murthered. Others had lighted Matches put betwixt their Fingers and Toes, and others their Feet put to the flames till they were half roasted, or expired in the midst of these Torments.

Discovery by a *Negro*.

Among the Slaves they had taken, there was a certain Negro who offered to discover a Ship with 4 Boats richly loaden, in one of the Rivers of the Lake of *Maracaibo*, as likewise where the Governour of *Gibraltar* kept himself concealed with most of the Women and their Treasures. Hereupon Captain *Morgan* sent two large Boats well mann'd to look after the Ship; but he himself at the head of 250 of his best Men advanc'd to a small Isle in the River, where the Governour had made a small Fort for his defence: But upon the approach of Captain *Morgan* retired to an adjacent Mountain, which being inaccessible except by one narrow path, he resolv'd to defend himself there to the last extremity. In the mean while Captain *Morgan* and his Men were extreamly harrass'd in their march, being often forced to wade up to their wastes in Water; besides that the continual Rains had spoil'd their Baggage and Ammunition, so that when they came to the Mountain, they durst not so much as attempt the assaulting of it, but were glad to return to *Gibraltar*, after having spent 12 Days in this fruitless Expedition, not without the loss of several of their Companions drowned, and most of the Women and Children they had taken by the way.

Capt. *Morgan* endeavours to take the Governour.

Miscarrys in his design.

However, within two Days after they were comforted by the return of their two great Boats, which had been much more successful in their Enterprize; for they had taken four Boats and some Prisoners, with a considerable Booty, though the *Spaniards* having got notice of their approach, had unloaded part of their loading beforehand.

They take four Boats with Goods.

After they had thus spent five Weeks, they began to think of their returning to *Maracaibo*, and at the same time demanded a ransom from the Town; but some of the Prisoners being sent into Woods, to endeavour to raise the same among their fellow Citizens, return'd with this answer, That not being able to find any of them, they were not in a condition to pay more than 5000 pieces of Eight for the present, but that if he would keep four of them as Hostages, they would endeavour to raise the remaining part whilst they staid at *Maracaibo*; Captain *Morgan* being not insensible of the danger his long absence from *Maracaibo* might produce, thought fit accept their offer, and set sail for *Maracaibo*, where he arrived in 4 Days time.

Return to *Maracaibo*.

They had not been long here, when they receiv'd intelligence by a poor old Man, that three *Spanish* Men of War were come to an anchor at the entrance of the Lake of *Maracaibo*, had rebuilt the Fort, and provided it with Guns and Ammunition, to dispute their passage out of the Lake. Captain *Morgan* being not a little surpriz'd at so unexpected a piece of News, sent out a Boat immediately to discover the truth of the matter; she return'd the next Day, and confirm'd what had been related, adding, that the biggest Ship carried 40 Guns, the second 30, and the third 24 Guns. These Ships being much beyond their strength, (because their biggest Ship carried not above 14 Guns) they were put to the greatest nonplus that could be, as seeing no way left to escape, either by Sea or Land: However, to put the best countenance upon the matter, Captain *Morgan* sent a *Spanish* Messenger to *Don Alonso del Campo y Espinosa* Commodore of that Squadron, to demand a ransom for the City of *Maracaibo*. The Messenger return'd in two Days with a Letter from the said Commodore to Captain *Morgan*, dated the 24th *April* 1669. aboard the *Magdalen*, wherein he offered *To let him, and his Ships pass without molestation, provided they would quit* Maracaibo, *and surrender every thing they had taken in this Expedition, as well Prisoners as Goods.*

They receive bad News.

1669. Boldness of Capt. *Morgan*.

Captain *Morgan* having read this Letter in publick, and asked their advice, they declar'd unanimously, That they would rather perish than part with their Booty; and one above all the rest offered to destroy the biggest of the *Spanish* Ships, by the help of a Fire-ship he intended to fit for that purpose; which, tho' it was approv'd of, yet it was thought expedient to endeavour an Accommodation upon the following Terms: *That they would quit the City of* Maracaibo *without a ransom, set all the Prisoners at liberty, as also one half of the Slaves, and send back the four Hostages from* Gibraltar. But these Propositions being rejected by the *Spanish* Commodore, the Pirates prepar'd for fighting. The first thing they did was to put the Prisoners under a strict Guard; then they prepar'd their Fire-work of Pitch, Tar and Brimstone done up in Palm Leaves: These they put in the Fire Ship, fitted with Port holes and false Guns, with Poles above Deck dress'd with Hats and Montera's, and arm'd with Swords and Muskets like Men, the better to deceive the Enemy.

Propositions for an Accommodation.

Are rejected.

A Stratagem used by the Pirates.

Thus fitted, they made the Fireship lead the Van; and having put the Prisoners and all the Booty in two or three Boats, they set sail, and follow'd the Fireship at some distance, and in the Evening, *April* 30. cast anchor in sight of the Enemy. Next Morning with break of Day they weigh'd anchor, and steer'd towards the *Spaniards*, who doing the same, the Fireship fell upon the *Spanish* Commodore's Ship, and grappled her. The *Spaniards* then beginning to perceive their Error, did all they could to get clear of her, but the Fire having already seized her Tackling, soon after consum'd the Stern, and made the Vessel sink to the bottom of the Sea. The second Ship seeing this Disaster, run ashore under the Fort, and was burnt by her own Men, and the third was taken by the Pirates, who could have saved some of the Men of the great Ship that were swimming towards the shore, but they refused to take Quarter, except a few, whom they took into their Boats: Among these was a Pilot, a Stranger, who being brought before Captain *Morgan*, and examin'd by him, told him that six Ships were sent by special Orders from *Spain* to Cruize upon the Pirates, under the Command of *Don Augustine de Bustos*: But being arriv'd at *Carthagena*, two of the biggest Ships were ordered to return to *Spain*, and *Don Alonso del Campo y Espinosa* was sent with the four remaining Vessels to the Bay of *Campeche*; where having lost one of their Vessels in a Storm, they sail'd for *Hispaniola*, and thence to St. *Domingo*. Here the *Spaniards* being inform'd that the Pirates had form'd a design against the City of *Caracas*, *Don Alonso* steer'd immediately for that place, but found none of the Pirates there: However they met a Boat, by which being certify'd that they were sail'd to the Lake of *Maracaibo*, the *Spaniards* also steer'd the course to the Entrance of the Lake, and having landed some of their Men, repossess'd themselves of the Fort, and provided it with great Guns, and a Garrison of 100 Men, the better to intercept their passage out of the Lake. He added that two Days before we came out to engage them, a *Negro* came aboard the *Spanish* Commodore, to forewarn him of our coming, and that we had prepar'd a Fireship to burn their Fleet: But the Commodore reply'd, *That he had neither Ingenuity, nor Instruments, nor Materials for a Fireship:* And thus despising the *Negro*'s Council, was catch'd in the Snare.

Two *Spanish* Ships burnt, and a third taken.

The Depositions of a Prisoner.

The Pilot was entertain'd in our Service, and Captain *Morgan* sent a Messenger to the *Spanish* Commodore, who was got into the Fort, to demand 30000 pieces of Eight and 500 Bullocks, as a ransom for the Town of *Maracaibo* and the Prisoners: They agreed for 20000 pieces of Eight, which were paid accordingly, and the Cattle deliver'd; but Captain *Morgan* refused to deliver up the Prisoners till he was got out of the reach of the Fort, in hopes by this means to facilitate his passage out of the Lake: For the same end he sent some of the Prisoners to the Fort, to let them know that unless they would let him and his Fleet pass unmolested,

Ransom for the Town and Prisoners.

Prisoners sent to request a free passage.

1670. molested, he would hang all the Prisoners in his Ships. These poor Wretches did all they could to move the Governour of the Fort to compassion, but were told, That had they not by their Cowardice opened the way to the Pirates into the Lake and their City, they needed not have given themselves the trouble of asking what could by no means be granted. The disconsolate *Spaniards* being return'd with this answer, Captain *Morgan* told them, That he would find a way to do it without the Governour's leave; and immediately order'd a dividend to be made of all the Booty, Slaves and Merchandizes; which was done accordingly, and distributed into the several Ships; the Money and Jewels only amounting to 250000 pieces of Eight.

They divide the Spoil.

A Stratagem to amuse the *Spaniards*.

This done, they contrived the following Stratagem to amuse the *Spaniards* in the Fort; the Day preceding the Night when they had resolved to get into the Lake, they embark'd a good number of their Men in Canoes, and going to the shore, as if they intended to land them, hid themselves for some time under the Branches of the Trees that hung over almost into the Water; then having caused the Men to lay flat down in the bottom of the Canoes, they return'd to the Ships empty in all appearance, no body being to be seen except those employ'd at the Oars. This pretended landing they reiterated several times, so that the *Spaniards* not questioning but to be attacked the next Night from the Land side, placed all their great Guns, and most of their Men on that side: Night being come, the Pirates weigh'd anchor, and the Moon shining bright, mounted themselves to the ebbing Tides without Sails; which having brought them directly opposite to the Fort, they hoisted their Sails, which the *Spaniards* perceiving, they brought their Guns as fast they could to the Sea side; but the Pirates having a fair Wind, soon came beyond their reach, without any considerable dammage: Then Captain *Morgan* sent back the Prisoners taken at *Maracaibo*, but kept the Hostages from *Gibraltar*. 1670.

They get safe out of the Lake.

The next Day they were surprized by a most violent Tempest, which oblig'd them to stand out at Sea, for fear of being cast ashore, where they could expect but very ill entertainment, both from the *Spaniards* and *Indians*; but the Wind ceasing soon after, they arriv'd safely at *Jamaica*. Here they met with some of the Men that had promised to meet them at their Rendezvouz at *Savona*, but coming too late, they chose one Captain *Hansel* their Commander in chief; being then 400 Men divided in four Ships and a Boat, it was resolved to attack the Town of *Commana*, on the Continent of *Caracas*, 60 Leagues to the West of the Isle *de la Trinadad*. They landed without much opposition, but near the Town were encounter'd by a good body of *Indians* and *Spaniards*, who gave them them so vigorous a reception, that they were glad to retire to their Ships.

Their Companions attack *Commana*.

CHAP. IV.

The Third Part of the History of the Bucaniers *of* America.

§. I. Capt. *Morgan* gathers a new fleet in *Hispaniola*, to infest the Coast of the *West Indies*.

CAptain *Morgan* flush'd with these several Expeditions, began now to meditate nothing less than the taking of *Panama*; and to gather a sufficient strength for so great an Enterprize, he stopt the Mouths of the Inhabitants, who were Creditors to the Privateers, and had encourag'd them in their Debaucheries, with the hopes of more profitable Attempts, by which means he got together a considerable number of these lewd Wretches, unto whom he appointed the Port on the South side of *Tortuga* for their Rendezvouz. He at the same time sent his Letters to the Hunters and Pirates of *Hispaniola*, to invite them to assist in this Expedition, which had so good an effect, that they were all present at the appointed place (*October* 24. 1670) *viz.* at the Port *Conillon*, over against the Isle *de la Vaca*. Here it was consider'd how to get Provisions sufficient for so great a number of People; and it being resolv'd to take all the *Maiz* and other Provisions they could get on the Continent, 400 Men were sent to the River *de la Hacha*, in order to assault the Village of *Rancheria*, that place and the Country thereabouts being very well stor'd with Corn. At the same time Captain *Morgan* sent another Party to hunt after Beasts, who kill'd a great number of them, whilst the rest were employ'd in equipping and fitting the Ships for their departure.

Capt. *Morgan* gathers a Fleet to burn *Panama*.

§. II. Their Exploits in the River *de la Hacha*.

The beforementioned 400 Men set sail from *Hispaniola* in four Ships, for the River *de la Hacha*, where being becalm'd within sight of Land, the Inhabitants had sufficient time to prepare for their reception. However, as soon as the Wind began to prove more favourable, they had the good fortune to seize upon a Ship from *Carthagena*, loaden with *Maiz*, and the next Morning landed their Men, though not without a brave resistance on the *Spaniards* side, who much annoy'd them from a Battery they had raised near the place, where they must land; which done, they pursu'd them to the Village, where a fierce Engagement ensued, which lasted till night, when the *Spaniards* were forced to retire to the Woods, leaving the Town a prey to the Pirates; however they took many Prisoners, from whom they extorted by Torments a free confession of their Riches, which they seized, and afterwards forced them to pay 4000 Buthels of *Maiz* for their ransom. Thus having obtain'd their end, they return'd after five Weeks absence to *Hispaniola*, to the great satisfaction of Captain *Morgan*, who had almost given them over for lost.

Take a Ship with Corn, and Land their Men.

They take the Town.

And return with a great Booty.

Soon after their return, they set sail hence for Cape *Tiburon*, where being join'd by some other Ships lately come from *Jamaica*, they made up a Fleet of 37 Ships, and 2000 fighting Men, besides Mariners, the Admiral being mounted with 28 Cannon, the rest with 20, 16, 18, and the smallest at least with 4, with Ammunition and Provisions proportionable to their number. The whole Fleet being divided into two Squadrons, and an agreement made what share every Officer and Seaman in his respective Station should have of the Booty; it was consulted, which of the three places they should attack, *viz. Carthagena*, *Panama*, or *Vera Cruz*; but *Panama* being pitch'd upon, it was thought convenient first of all to go to the Isle of St. *Catherine*, in order to get some of the *Banditti* there, to serve them as Guides to that City.

Panama pitch'd upon to be burnt.

§. III. They go from *Hispaniola* to the Isle of St. *Catherine*, which they take.

They set sail from the Cape of *Tiburon December* 16. and in four Days after came in sight of the Isle of St. *Catherine*, and the next Day anchored near the Island, in the Bay call'd *Aguada grande*, where the *Spaniards* had erected a Battery of four pieces of Cannon: Notwithstanding this Captain *Morgan* landed 1000 Men in divers places, and marching through a Wood, advanced to a place where the Enemy had erected a Platform; but upon the approach of the Pirates, abandon'd it, and fled to the little Island join'd to the great one by a short Bridge: Here they had fortify'd themselves with Forts and Batteries; and firing furiously upon the Pirates, forced them to intrench themselves in the Field, where, what with the vehement Rains, and want of Cloths and Provisions, they were put into such a distressed condition, that they were almost reduced beyond all hopes of succeeding in their Enterprize: However, to put the best face upon the matter, Captain *Morgan* sent a Messenger to the Governour, to let him know, *That in case he did not surrender himself and his Company within a few Hours, they must expect no Quarter.* The Messenger return'd soon after with this answer, That the Governour desired two Hours time to consult with his Officers: The time being expired, he sent two Persons accordingly, who told Captain *Morgan* that the Governour not being provided with a sufficient Force to defend the Isle against them, was willing to surrender it into his Hands: but that for the saving of their Reputation, he desired to have the same performed under the Covert of the following Stratagem, *viz.* That Capt. *Morgan* with his Land Forces should make a false attack upon the Bridge that joins the two Isles, and the Fort of St. *Jerom* adjoining to it; whilst his Fleet should advance towards the Fort of St. *Teresa* to attack it by Sea: That at the same time a certain Troop should land near the Battery of St. *Matthew*, and intercept the Governour, as he was going thence to the Fort of St. *Jerom*,

They come to and land in St. *Catherine's* Isle.

They attack the Castle, but are repulsed.

The surrender of that Isle upon Conditions.

1670. *Jerome*, who thereupon should be (seemingly) forced to deliver up the Fort, that in these attacks they should fire on both sides with Bullets. These propositions being accepted, and put in execution according to mutual agreement, this Mock-Engagement begun, wherein they forced the *Spaniards* from the two chief Forts, the rest soon submitted at discretion. For that of St. *Jerome* next the Bridge had no less than eight great Guns mounted; and that of St. *Teresa* twenty, being defended by a thick Stone Wall, and surrounded with a dry but deep Ditch of twenty foot deep; within the Wall was an inaccessible Mountain, defended by four pieces of Cannon; on the Sea side there was no coming at it by reason of the Rocks; and on the Land side it was accessible only by a path of three or four foot broad, leading up to the Mountain. There were besides these seven Forts and Batteries more, all well provided with Cannon, an hundred and ninety Soldiers, forty Inhabitants, thirty four Slaves, and thirty nine Negroes.

The Fort of St. *Teresa.*

The Pirates being extreamly glad to have purchased so many considerable Posts, and with them both the Isles, at so cheap a rate, disarm'd all the *Spaniards*, and demolish'd the Forts except that of St. *Jerome*, adjoining to the Bridge.

The next thing they did, was to get some Guides to conduct them to *Panama*; and having found three *Banditti's* who offered their Service upon promise of great Rewards, it was immediately resolv'd to send four hundred Men, embark'd in four Vessels and a Boat, to take the Castle of *Chagre* upon the River of the same name; which was put in execution accordingly, whilst Captain *Morgan* with the whole Fleet (to hide his design upon *Panama*) remain'd at the Isle of St. *Catherines*.

Four hundred Men sent to take the Castle of *Chagre.*

§. IV.

The Castle of *Chagre* taken by 400 Men, sent from the Isle of St. *Catherines.*

Capt. *Brodely* made Commodore.

The Castle of *Chagre.*

The small Squadron detach'd for the Expedition against the Castle of *Chagre*, being commanded by Captain *Brodely*, who had formerly signaliz'd himself on that Coast under *Mansvelt*, arrived in three Days after their departure in sight of the Castle of *Chagre*, call'd by the *Spaniards* St. *Lawrence*. This Castle is seated on a high Mountain, and defended by a Fortification of Wood, or Pallisado's fill'd with Earth: The top of the Mountain is divided in two parts by a broad Ditch of thirty foot deep, over which is laid a Draw Bridge leading into the body of the Castle. To the Land side it has four Bastions, and two to the Sea. On the South side it is unaccessible, being surrounded with craggy Rocks; and the North side is encompass'd by the River, which is very broad here. At the foot of the Mountain is a strong Fort, mounted with eight Guns, commanding the Entrance of the Rivers mouth, and somewhat lower are two other Batteries of 6 pieces of Cannon each, planted there for the same purpose: You ascend to the top of the Castle by steps hew'd out of the Rock, near the two great Store-houses of Ammunition and Merchandizes, brought thither out of the inland Countries. It has a small Port to the West about seven or eight Fathom deep, and before it at the Mouth of the River is a great Rock, which appears only at low Water.

They Land.

The Pirates anchored a League from the Castle, and marching through the Woods, till two a Clock in the Afternoon, as they were advancing through the Plain, were so warmly saluted by the *Spaniards* shot, that they were in doubt whether they should desist from, or go on in this Enterprize, which considering the situation of the Castle, appear'd very dangerous to them. However being resolv'd either to conquer or fall in the attempt, they made the assault with Sword in Hand, and Granadoes; but not being able to climb the Walls, were forced to retreat for that time, yet not without an intention to renew the assault at Night. Then they endeavoured to fire the wooden Pallisadoes, by means of some Fire-works, in which whilst they were employ'd, there happen'd an unexpected accident, which prov'd the occasion of their Conquest. One of the Pirats being wounded with an Arrow in his Back, pull'd it out near the Breast, and winding a little Cotton about it, put it into his Musquet, and shot it into the Castle: The Cotton being set on Fire by the Powder, set two or three Thatcht Houses on Fire, unperceiv'd by the *Spaniards*, till the Flame having communicated it self to a place where a considerable quantity of Gunpowder was laid up, the same was blown into the air to the great consternation of the *Spaniards*.

They attack the Castle, but are repulsed.

A remarkable accident.

They burn the Pallisado works.

The Pirats improving this opportunity of setting fire to the Pallisado Works in several places, whilst the *Spaniards* were employ'd in quenching the fire within. This continued all Night; in the Morning finding that the Earth betwixt the Pallisado's was fallen into the Ditch, and thereby had open'd them a Breach, they renewed the assault about Noon with the utmost vigour, and maugre all the resistance of the *Spanirds*, headed by the Governour in Person, entred the Breach, and immediately after made themselves Masters of the whole Castle; most of the *Spaniards* yet alive, chose rather to throw themselves into the Sea, than to ask for Quarter. The Governour himself, with some few, retreated to the Main *Crops du Guard*, and planted two pieces of Cannon before it, ready to sell his Life at the dearest rate he could, without asking Quarter; till at last being kill'd by a Musquet ball, the rest about 30 in number surrender'd, being all sorely wounded except ten, being all that were left of 314. of which the Garrison consisted, when the Pirats attacked it. It was very observable that not one Officer was found alive.

1670. Enter the Breach and take the Castle.

Only 30 left alive of 314.

By the Prisoners they were inform'd that the Governour of *Panama* had 3 Weeks ago receiv'd intelligence of their design upon that City, and therefore had sent 164 Men to reinforce the Garrison of this Castle, which before was not above 150 Men strong; they added, that he had laid divers Ambuthes along the River *Chagre*, and intended to encounter them in the open Field with a body of 3600 chosen Men.

However the Conquest of this Castle cost the Pirats very dear, for they had 100 Men kill'd and 70 wounded: But Captain *Morgan* had no sooner receiv'd intelligence of the taking of the Castle of *Chagre*, but he imbark'd all the Provisions and Corn, as also the Prisoners taken at St. *Catherine's* Isle, he set sail thence for the River of *Chagre*, where he arrived in 8 Days, but lost four of his Ships in the entrance of it; but the Men and Goods were all saved.

Capt. *Morgan* comes to the River of *Chagre.*

Loses four Ships.

He was no sooner received (with all marks of Joy) in the Castle, but he ordered the Pallisado works to be repaired; and having seized several *Spanish* Transport Ships in the River, he left a Garrison of 500 Men in the Castle, 150 more for a Guard of his Ships, and with the rest, being 1200 of the best Men, he embark'd in Canoes and Boats towards *Panama*, without carrying along with them any considerable quantity of Provisions, as not questioning but that they should be sufficiently provided among the *Spaniards* that lay in ambush for them in several places near the River.

Leaves a good Garrison at the Castle of *Chagre.*

§. V.

His Voyage to *Panama*, and taking the City.

It was *August* the 18*th* when Captain *Morgan* at the head of 1200 Men set forth from the Castle of *Chagre*, towards *Panama*, in 32 Canoes, with 5 Boats of Artillery: The first Day they made 6 Leagues to a place call'd *de los Bracos*, where his Men got ashore and sought for Victuals among the Plantations, but found none, the *Spaniards* being fled, and having left nothing behind them. The second Day in the Evening they came to *Cruz de Juan Gallego*, where they found the River very shallow, and therefore went ashore the third Day in the Morning, in order to march forward by Land, but the ways proving excessive bad, they were forced to reimbark, and row forward (not without great difficulty) to a place call'd *Cedro bueno*, but did not meet with either *Indians* or *Spaniards*, and consequently with no Provisions, of which they stood in great need, being almost spent with Hunger.

The fourth Day some of the Pirats continued their march by Land, the rest follow'd by Water; having their peculiar Guides and Spys, to discover the Ambushcado's on both sides of the River. About Noon they came to a place call'd *Torna Cavallos*, where they found a few Leathern Bags all empty, which were as welcome to them, as if they had met with the best Dainties in the World, for they feasted upon them with incredible eagerness, and were ready to quarrel who should have the best share.

They feast upon Leathern Bags.

Thence they went forwards to *Torna Munni*, where they arrived at Night, but found no Provisions. The fifth Day about Noon, they came to a place call'd *Barbacoa*; they search'd several Plantations thereabouts, but could meet with nothing that could relieve their Hunger, till at last they discovered a Grot, lately made, where they found two Sacks of Meal and Wheat, two Jars of Wine, and certain Fruits call'd *Platanos*, which was distributed among them.

The sixth Day they went on part by Land, part by Water, being obliged to pass through many rugged ways, and having nothing to subsist upon but Leaves of Trees, Grass and some green Herbs, till to their singular joy, they came about Noon to a Plantation, where meeting with a Barn full of *Maiz*, they soon beat down the Doors, and distributed the Corn among themselves. At the same time they saw 100 *Indians* on the other side of the River; some of the Pirats endeavoured to cross

1670.

croſs it, in order to take ſome of them, but they were too nimble, and kill'd ſeveral with their Arrows: The whole body of the Pirats being afterwards forced to croſs the River, they clean'd their Arms the ſeventh Day in the Morning, and leaving St. *Cruz*, arriv'd at Noon at the Village of *Cruz*: They ſaw at a diſtance a great ſmoak, which put them in hopes of good chear; but when they came to the place, found the Village all in a Flame, except the King's Store-houſes and Stables. In theſe they found ſome Cats and Dogs, 16 Jars of *Peru* Wine, and a Leather Sack full of Bread; all which were devoured in an inſtant: Soon after every Man of them falling very ill, they ſuſpected the Wine to have been poiſoned, which put them under an unſpeakable Conſternation, as giving themſelves over for loſt; whereas the ſame was only the effect of their having over-charged themſelves, after ſo much want of wholeſome Proviſions.

They go up the River to *Panama*.

This Village is ſeated at 9 *deg.* 2 *m.* North Latitude, 26 Leagues diſtant from the mouth of the River of *Chagre*, and 8 from *Panama*; and this being the laſt place to which Boats can come, the Pirats were forced here to ſend back their Canoes (for fear of being ſurprized) and to march by Land towards *Panama*.

They leave their Canoes.

The eight Day in the Morning, Captain *Morgan* finding the Roads ſo narrow, that not above 10 or 12 Men could march abreaſt, detach'd 200 Men to diſcover the way to *Panama*. After a march of 10 Hours they came to *Quebrada Obſcura*, where they were unexpectedly ſaluted with 3000 or 4000 Arrows; being not able to diſcover from whence this ſhower came, ſtill advancing forward into an adjacent Wood, they perceived a conſiderable number of *Indians* flying before them, in order to poſt themſelves at another paſs, to annoy them in their march: However one Troop of theſe *Indians* being reſolved to ſtand the brunt, fought the Pirats with undaunted Courage, till moſt of them were ſlain upon the ſpot, with their Leader, who being mortally wounded, would not ask Quarter, but raiſing himſelf up from the ground, ſtruck with his Javelin at one of the Pirats, but before he could accomplish his aim, was kill'd by a Muſquet ball.

Bravery of ſome *Indians*.

The Pirats did all they could to take ſome of the *Indians* Priſoners, but thoſe few that remain'd alive were too nimble to be taken. They march'd afterwards through a Champaign Country full of fertile Meadows, and thence to a Wood, having a Mountain on each ſide; one of which was poſſeſs'd by the *Indians*, the other by the Pirats; both Parties march'd at the ſame time down the Hills, which made Captain *Morgan* expect to be attacted by them; but as ſoon as they came near the Wood, they ſaw no more of them.

They diſcover the South Sea.

The ninth Day he marched forward with his Forces early in the Morning, and after ſome Hours march, diſcovered (to their unſpeakable joy) the *South Sea*. Soon after they paſs'd through a Valley, and meeting with good ſtore of Cattel, they kill'd as many Cows, Horſes, Bulls and Aſſes as they had occaſion for; the Fleſh whereof they carbonado'd and roaſted, and devour'd it like *Cannibals*.

They come in ſight of the Steeple of *Panama*.

After they had ſatisfy'd their hunger, they continu'd their March, and towards Evening diſcover'd the highest Steeple of *Panama*, whereat they expreſs'd their ſatisfaction, by loud *Huzzas*, throwing up of Hats, and ſounding of their Trumpets. Soon after they pitch'd their Tents in ſight of that City, they ſaw 50 Horſe coming from the City, to obſerve their Camp; and no ſooner were they return'd thither, but they began to play furiouſly from their great Cannon, upon the Camp, though without any conſiderable dammage; they being out of their reach.

Encamp not far from the City.

The Pirats having paſs'd the Night in feeding with great ſatisfaction upon the Meat they had got, and in reſting their wearied Limbs, march'd the tenth Day early in the Morning, in order of Battel directly to the City; but being advertis'd by one of the Spies, that the Avenues leading to the City were defended by ſeveral Batteries and Ambuſcados, they took their way thro' the Woods; which the Governour perceiving, he put his Forces, conſiſting of two Squadrons and 4 Regiments of foot, in Battel, in order to diſpute their paſſage towards the City. The Pirats coming to the top of a Hill, from whence they could diſcover the Champaign Country cover'd with arm'd Men, and a vaſt number of wild Bulls under the management of a great number of *Indians*, to break their Ranks, they began to repent their forwardneſs in ſo dangerous an Attempt; but being ſenſible that they muſt expect no Mercy at the Hands of their Enemies, they had no other advice to take, but either to conquer or dye.

They march againſt the *Spaniards*.

With this reſolution they divided themſelves into three Bodies, ſending at the ſame time 200 of their beſt Men, well acquainted with the uſe of Fire Arms, to make the firſt attack. The *Spaniards* expected their coming down the Hill in a ſpacious Field, and as ſoon as they approach'd, the *Spaniſh* Horſe begun the attack, but not being able to wheel about as they ſhould have done, by reaſon of the quaggy Ground, the 200 *Bucaniers* each with one Knee on the Ground, gave a full Volley of ſhot, and put them into ſome diſorder; but being ſeconded by their foot, endeavoured to break the Pirats ranks, by ſending the wild Bulls among them, in the rear; but the wild Beaſts terrify'd with the noiſe of the Fire Arms, turn'd back upon their Drivers, except a few that were kill'd by the *Engliſh*.

Engage them.

After the Engagement had laſted about two Hours, the *Spaniſh* Horſe being ſo totally ruin'd by the continual firing of the Pirats, were forced to leave their Foot; and theſe not able to ſtand the brunt without them, diſcharg'd their ſhot, and throwing down their Arms, ſought for their ſafety in their Heels, the Enemy being not in a condition to purſue them, by reaſon of their wearineſs, and being unprovided with Horſe, many hid themſelves in the Woods, but were taken and kill'd without Mercy. One of the Priſoners, a *Spaniſh* Captain, being examin'd concerning the ſtrength of *Panama*; aſſured them, That they had 400 Horſe, and 2400 Foot, and that 2000 Bulls were committed to the management of 60 *Indians*, to put them into confuſion: That the City was fortify'd with Trenches and Batteries at the Avenues, and that eſpecially on the Highway leading thither they had made a ſmall Fort mounted with 8 Guns.

And rout them.

Depoſitions of a *Spaniſh* Priſoner.

Hereupon Captain *Morgan* gave immediate Orders to march to the City another way, and though upon a review they found they had a conſiderable number kill'd and wounded in this laſt Action, yet, as they were ſenſible that the *Spaniards* loſt no leſs than 600, beſides wounded, they encouraged one another with the hopes of good ſucceſs, taking a ſolemn Oath that they would fight it out to the laſt Man. With this reſolution they march'd on couragiouſly, and maugre all the Fire from the *Spaniards* Batteries (which kill'd them a great many Men) they open'd their way in three Hours time into the City, putting all to the Sword that offered to oppoſe them.

600 *Spaniards* kil-led in the Action.

They take *Panama*.

The firſt fury being paſt, Captain *Morgan* who wiſely foreſaw the Debaucheries his Men would in all likelihood be guilty of, after the hardſhips they had endured, and how much the ſame might tend to their total deſtruction, if the *Spaniards* ſhould happen to rally, ſtrictly forbid, under ſevere Puniſhments, the drinking of any Wine; giving for a reaſon, That he had receiv'd unqueſtionable intelligence, that the *Spaniards* had poiſoned all the Wines they were forced to leave in the City.

Wine forbidden to the Pirates.

§. VI.

Captain *Morgan*, after having given the neceſſary Orders for the ſecurity of the City of *Panama*, ſeized a Boat in the Port; which with ſome others, he ſent into the *South Sea* to Cruize upon the *Spaniſh* Veſſels. The ſame Day he ſet ſecretly fire to ſeveral places of the City, (for what reaſon is unknown) which conſumed the greateſt and beſt part of it: Being blamed for this Action, he laid the fault upon the *Spaniards*; for the buildings of this City conſiſted of 7000 Houſes, 2000 whereof were curious and magnificent Structures of Cedar, and richly furniſhed, a great part whereof was loſt, with the Houſes. And as this City is an Epiſcopal See, it had eight ſtately Monaſteries, (one whereof was for Women) two noble Churches, and a Hoſpital. The Churches and Monaſteries were exceſſive rich in Gold and Silver Pieces dedicated to Divine Service, and curious Paintings, which were all hidden by the Eccleſiaſticks. Beſides theſe, there were reduc'd to aſhes no leſs than 200 Warehouſes, a great many Slaves, and vaſt ſtores of Meal; the Fire not ceaſing till four Weeks after it began. Hitherto the Pirates lay encamp'd without the City for fear of a ſurprize, their number being conſiderably diminiſh'd in their ſeveral Engagements: Beſides that Captain *Morgan* had detach'd a Convoy of 150 Men to the Caſtle of *Chagre*: They were afterwards quartered in the City in thoſe few Houſes that were left, where among the Aſhes and Ruins they found abundance of Plate, both of Gold and Silver; eſpecially in the Wells and Citterns.

Capt. *Morgan* ſends out Boats to the S. Sea with good Succeſs: He ſets fire to and burns the City of *Panama*; Cruelties committed by the Pirates in that City, till their retire to the Caſtle of *Chagre*. Seventeen hundred Houſes in the City.

Riches found in the Ruins.

The next Day Captain *Morgan* ſent 300 well arm'd Men in two Parties, to ſearch the Woods and other circumjacent parts for Priſoners, who brought in no leſs than 200 Men, Women and Children in a ſhort time. About the ſame time return'd the Boat ſent

1671. sent into the South Sea with three Prizes; but these were nothing in comparison of a Galeon loaden with the King's Plate, and other rich Merchandizes, besides the Nuns with all the rich Church-Ornaments: This vast Treasure narrowly escap'd their Hands, for the Galeon being a heavy Sailer, and of no great strength, might have been easily chased and taken, had they not by their Debauchery neglected the opportunity of getting into their Hands, that which was of greater value than all the rest they found at *Panama*.

They lose the taking of a rich Galeon by their Debaucheries.

They sent indeed soon after, a well-arm'd Boat in pursuit of this rich Vessel, but too late, the Galeon being got into some place of security; however they had the good fortune to seize upon some Vessels in the Ports of the Isles of *Tavoga* and *Tavogilla*, loaden with Cloth, Soap, Sugar, and Bisket, besides 20000 pieces of Eight, and many Prisoners of note.

But take some Prizes at *Taboga*, as also near *Chagre*.

At the same time the Convoy Captain *Morgan* sent to *Chagre*, return'd with News, that those of that Castle had sent out some Boats, which had chased a rich *Spanish* Ship (that was ignorant of what had happen'd there) into the Port, and taken her without the least opposition.

The Parties daily sent abroad by Captain *Morgan*, never return'd without a good Booty and many Prisoners, who were put to most exquisite Torments, to discover both their own and other Peoples wealth: Among these was a Servant of a Person of quality, who having in the hurry put on his Master's Silk Breeches, with a Silver Key hanging out of the pocket, they mistook him for a Person of note, and notwithstanding all his protestations to the contrary, put him to the Rack; twisted a Cord about his Forehead till his Eyes were ready to come out; and after all hung him up by the Testicles till he expired. Many other Prisoners underwent the same fate; for they spared neither Age nor Sex: The religious Persons were worse us'd than the rest, and the Women not much better, unless they would submit to their Lusts; in which they follow'd the footsteps of Captain *Morgan* their Leader, who never fail'd to assail the Chastity of such female Prisoners, as did fall into his Hands.

Their Cruelties and Lewdnesses.

Of this I saw an instance in a Lady of good quality, taken in the Isle of *Tavoga*; who for youth and beauty was not inferiour to most Women in *Europe*: This Lady being brought before Captain *Morgan*, he endeavour'd for three or four Days to bring her to consent to his Pleasures by all the enticements he could invent, ordering her to be treated according to her quality, and offering considerable presents of Gold, and other precious things, to engage her to his Will; this vertuous Lady having refus'd both his offers and presents, with a singular constancy and humility; he soon chang'd his tone, ordering her to be stript and put into a dark Cellar, with a slender allowance, not sufficient to sustain her Life. All which the poor Lady bore with such an unparallell'd Patience, that it moved even the Hearts of many of the Pirats to Compassion, who began to murmur at such rigorous proceedings with a Lady of Quality; but *Morgan* to stop their Mouths, alledged, that he us'd her thus for no other reason, but because she had kept a Correspondence with the *Spaniards*.

Chastity of a *Spanish* Lady.

She is severely us'd.

After they had stay'd 3 Weeks at *Panama*, Captain *Morgan* began to prepare for their departure, especially since he had receiv'd intelligence that there was a Combination carry'd on betwixt his Men, to seize upon a Ship that was in the Harbour, and therewith to Pirat in the *South Sea*: But Captain *Morgan* being inform'd of it by one of their Comrades, soon spoil'd the project, by ordering the Main Mast of the said Ship to be cut down and burnt, with all the Boats in that Port.

A Project discovered.

By this time the Pirats having got all the Mony, Prisoners, and Goods, both in the City and circumjacent Country, they left *Panama February* 14. carrying the most precious Spoils of Gold, Silver, *&c.* upon 175 Beasts, besides 600 Prisoners, Men, Women, Children and Slaves. It would have mov'd a Stone to hear the Cries and Lamentations of these miserable Creatures, who, besides the extremity of hunger and thirst they endured, now saw themselves torn away from their Friends and Relations, and likely to be carried into remote Places, to end their Days in perpetual Slavery. Among these the before-mentioned *Spanish* Lady, who had given such eminent proofs of her Vertue, being led betwixt two Pirats, broke out into most doleful Lamentations, telling the Pirats, that *She had entrusted two religious Men to procure her ransome, which they had received accordingly; but instead of employing it to recover her liberty, had bestowed the same for the redemption of some of their Friends.*

1671.

The before-mentiou'd *Spanish* Lady released.

This Complaint being brought to Captain *Morgan*, he examin'd into the truth of the matter, and finding by the confession of a Slave, who had brought the Letter to the Lady, that the same were not ill grounded, he gave her her liberty; but at the same time detain'd the 2 religious Men till they should repay the Sum, which they did in a few Days after. Captain *Morgan* stay'd for some time at the Town of *Cruz* upon the River *Chagre*, to provide himself with what Rice and *Maiz* they could get; and the 5th of *March* continued his march towards *Chagre*: About the middle of the way he caused every one of his Men to take an Oath, That they would not conceal the least thing; and not contented thus, he commanded one in every Company to search the rest, even to their very Shoes; and to remove all occation of murmuring, he would be search'd in the same manner as the rest; notwithstanding which, the *French* who were not accquainted with this way of searching, were highly discontented with it. This done, they embark'd in their Canoes, and the 9th of *March* arriv'd at the Castle of *Chagre*.

The Pirats return to *Chagre*.

Immediately after their arrival there, Captain *Morgan* sent all the Prisoners taken in the Isle of St. *Catherines* by Sea to *Puerto Velo*, and at the same time demanded a considerable Sum as a ransom, to save the Castle of *Chagre* from being burnt; but these refusing to pay one farthing upon that score, a dividend was made of all the Booty taken in this Voyage; which not amounting to above 200 pieces of Eight to a Man, and the same being not without reason judged a slender equivalent for all the Troubles and Dangers they had been expos'd to, both the *English* and *Dutch* murmur'd openly against Captain *Morgan*, some telling him to his face, That he had reserv'd the most precious Jewels for himself; but *Morgan* stop'd his Ears to their Complaints, yet dreading, not without reason, the consequence of this general dissatisfaction, he ordered the Ordnance of the Castle to be carried aboard his own Ship, and having demolish'd the Castle, as far as the shortness of time would permit, he set sail with his own Ship, without giving the least notice to the rest; being follow'd only by three or four Vessels, that were supposed to have had a share in that part of the Spoil which was conceal'd from the rest.

The Division of the Spoil made.

With great discontent.

Captain *Morgan* dreading to be pursued by some of our Ships (especially the *French*) had left us all so destitute of all manner of Necessaries, that each Ship was forced to shift for themselves, in order to their return towards *Jamaica*. The Boat I belong'd to being very foul, we took our Course along the Coast of *Costa Rica*, to get Provisions, and to careen our Vessel.

The Author, Captain Coxon, his return towards *Jamaica*, with his consorts in his Voyage.

In a few Days we arriv'd in the Bay of *Boca del Toro*, which being surrounded with Land like a Wall 4 Leagues in compass, afford a secure Harbour, and good store of eatable Fish and Tortoises. The *Indian* Inhabitants of these Isles were never subdu'd by the *Spaniards*, and are different in their Languages and way of living. Those inhabiting near the East side of the Bay used formerly to exchange the Flesh of divers Animals, with the Pirats, for Iron, Beads, Toys, *&c.* But being cruelly used by them, this Commerce has ceased since. Being not able to meet with any Provisions here but some Crocodile's Eggs, we steer'd to the East to try our Fortune that way; but meeting 3 of our Boats, (left behind by Captain *Morgan*) the Crew whereof inform'd us, that nothing was to be hop'd for thereabouts, we chang'd our course to the West. Here we found as many Tortoises as we had occasion for, but were in want of fresh Water, whereof there was enough in the Neighbouring Isles; but by reason of the Enmity of the *Indians*, durst scarce venture to Land: However, being forced to make a Virtue of Necessity, we all landed together in one of the Islands: but whilst we were busy in filling our Casks with fresh Water, a Troop of *Indians* advanced to attack us, but no sooner had we kill'd 3 or 4 of them with our Fire-arms, but the rest fled to the Woods.

The Pirats arrive at *Boca del Toro*.

Sail to the West.

Are forced to fight for fresh Water.

The next following Night we heard huge Cries ashore, which we supposed to be the Lamentations for their Friends kill'd the Day before, one whereof was a Person of note among them, which we could easily distinguish by his Habit. These *Indians* are so ignorant of the Sea, that they have not so much as a Fisher-boat belonging to them.

From hence we steer'd our course towards *Jamaica*; but meeting with one of our former Comrades in the late Expedition, we were forced by the contrary Winds, to go together into the before-mentioned Port,

call'd

1671. call'd *Boca del Toro*. From hence we directed our course to a place call'd *Boca del Dragon* to get some Provisions, especially of the Flesh of what the *Spaniards* call *Manentines*, and the *Dutch Sea Cows*, because they have a Head, Nose and Teeth like our Cows: They live on the Shallows under the Water, where there is good store of Grass, on which they feed. Instead of Ears, they have 2 holes of the bigness of a Man's little Finger; on each side of the Neck they have a Fin, and under them 2 Tedders like the Breasts of Women: The Hide on the Back is 2 inches thick, and as hard as a Whale-bone: For the rest all along the Belly to the Reins, they are like a Cow, and engender in the same manner, the Male being like a Bull. They have very quick hearing, and therefore those that fish for them must row very softly, and when they come in reach of them, they strike them with a kind of a Harpoon, like as they do Tortoises, except that this Javelin is something longer, and has 2 hooks at the end. I have seen some of these Creatures 20 or 24 foot long. Their Meat is wholesome enough, looks like Beef, but tastes like Pork: Out of the Fat they make Oyl.

Boca del Dragon.

Sea Cows.

How they catch them.

At a certain time we espy'd 2 *Indians* in a Canoe, but they no sooner saw our Vessels but they row'd to the shore, and perceiving us to follow them, not only run into an adjacent Wood, but also carried their Canoe along with them; though it weigh'd no less than 2000 pounds, as we found afterwards, eleven of us having enough to do to bring it into the Water again. One of our Pilots who was well acquainted on this Coast, seeing this action, told us, That some Years before a Squadron of Pirats arriving on that Coast, some of them went ashore in Canoes to catch Birds; whilst they were busy'd in this sport, the *Indians* got upon the Trees underneath which the Canoes lay, and leaping into them seized the Men that guarded them, whom together with the Canoes they carried into the Woods, and thereby cut off all hopes of relief from those that were ashore; for though the Pirates landed 500 Men, in hopes of delivering their Companions; the *Indians* flocking together in vast numbers, made them retreat to their Ships. In the above-mentioned Canoe we found nothing but a fishing Net and four Arrows made of Palm-tree Wood, seven foot long each; with four double hooks on each side. The Canoe was of Cedar, but roughly done, as if it had been made without any Iron Instruments.

Strength and Activity of the *Indians* on this Coast.

From hence we set sail for *Rio de Znera*, where we arriv'd in 24 Hours. The place is inhabited by *Spaniards*, who were all fled upon our approach, and had left nothing behind them but a certain Fruit call'd *Platanos*, wherewith having fill'd our Boats, we continued coasting along the shore for 14 Days, till with much ado we came to the Bay of *Blewfield*, where we refitted our Ship that was very leaky. At the same time some of our Men catch some *Porcupines* of a monstrous bigness, *Monkies* and *Pheasants* in the Woods. It was a pleasure to see the *Monkies* as soon as one of them was wounded, to flock together, some laying their Paws on the Wounded, others to thrust some Mess of the Trees to stop the Blood, whilst others gathered some Herbs, and chewing them in their Mouths, apply'd them like a Poultice.

Rio de Znera.

Vast Porcupines.

Monkeys and *Pheasants.*

Some Days after arrival, our Women Slaves being about their employments in an adjacent Wood, 2 of them were on a sudden kill'd with Arrows; when we came to their assistance, we found many Arrows sticking in their Bodies of an extraordinary shape: They were 8 foot long, and above an inch thick, having a hook of Wood ty'd with a string at one end, at the other a square Box like the Case of a pair of Tweezers, in which were small Stones: They were red and bright, roughly made without Iron Instruments. This accident made us embark with all speed what Provisions we had got, and to prepare for our departue.

The Arms of the *Indians* here.

§. VIII. They sail for the Cape of *Gracias a Dios*.

From hence we steer'd our course to the Cape of *Gracias a Dios*, in hopes to get some Provisions, there being a good Correspondence betwixt the Pirats and these *Indians*, who furnish them with what Provisions they have: For it is the custom, that every one of the Pirats buys himself an *Indian* Woman here for the time of his stay, the purchase being commonly made for a Knife, Hatchet, or old Ax; for which she provides him with all manner of Provisions the Country affords, which stands them in little but their labour; for there is such plenty of *Tortoises* and *Manita's* here, that one *Indian* alone is able to victual with them a whole Ship of 100 Men.

The Commerce of the *Indians* there with the Pirates; they go to the Isle *de los Pinos*, and thence to *Jamaica*.

The Cape *Gracias a Dios*.

They buy Women.

This constant entercourse makes some of these *Indians* speak very good *English* and *French*, as some of our People are well enough vers'd in their Language, Manners and Customs. One of our Crew, who had lived among them, gave us the following Account of them. The whole Isle is about 30 Leagues in Circuit; the Government being Democratick without any Sovereign: Their whole number consists in 1600 or 1700 Persons, and some Negro Slaves, and keep not the least Correspondence with the *Spaniards*. They live for the most part near the Sea shore, and are distinguished into 2 sorts of People; one of them apply themselves to Husbandry, the other sort are so idle as not to build themselves as much as small Huts to live in, neither have they any thing to cover their Bodies from the Rains (though very frequent here) except a few Palm-Trees, and a kind of Apron ty'd about the middle to cover their Privities. These are made of the rinds of Trees, beaten with Stones till they are soften'd; these also serve them instead of Bedding. Their Arms are a kind of Spears pointed with Iron or Crocodile's Teeth. They don't use any Divine Worship among them, though they seem to acknowledge a supream Being; neither do they Reverence the Devils, as some other *Americans* do. Their chief Food is Fruits; as *Bananos*, *Racoves*, *Ananas*, *Potatoes*, &c. as also some Crabs, and other Fish, which they strike with Darts. Of Liquors they have several sorts; that call'd *Achive* is made of a certain Seed of Palm-Tree, well bruised, and infused in hot Water, till it is well settled; and drained off; it is both pleasant and nourishing. They make another stronger Liquor of *Potatoes*: These they bruise into a Pap in great Calabashes, and put cold Water upon them for 8 Days, till it has well fermented: This they entertain their Friends withal upon extraordinary occasions; when they invite their Friends to their Liquors, they comb their Hairs very clean, and anoint their Face with Palm Oil, mix'd with black but the Women besmear their Faces with a Crimson colour: Then he that is Master of the Feast goes with two or three Spears to meet the invited Persons 3 or 400 steps from his Cottage, and as soon as they draw near, he prostrates himself upon his Face, till they come near enough to take him up; then they go together to the Hut, where the Guests perform the same Ceremony to him, and he takes them up one after another. Then the Calabashes of Liquor go briskly round, and the Guests divert themselves with Singing, Dancing, and making Caresses to the Women, which they do to that degree, that I have seen them to wound their Genitals, in Testimony of their Affection to them.

1671.

The Isle's Inhabitants.

Their Arms.

Religion.

For Drink and Liquor.

Their Inclinations.

When they are resolv'd to Marry, they address themselves to the Parents, or next Relations: If the Suitor is able to perform his Exercise, I mean to make a good Dart for Fishing, and to spin a certain Thread, they use about their Arrows, he is commonly approv'd of, and then the Father calls for a Calabash full of *Achioc*, drinks first himself, then gives it to the Bridegroom, and he to the Bride; if she drinks all that is left, the Marriage is concluded without any farther Ceremony.

Marriages.

After a Woman is delivered, she washes the new born Babe in the next Brook or River, and then goes about her ordinary business as before. When the Husband dies, his Spear and Ear-pendants, as also his Aprons are interr'd with him; and the Widow comes every Day to the Grave to bring him the best Drink and Meat, for a whole Year; which they divide into 15 Months. I know that some Authors assert of the *Carib* Isles, that the Devil carries away the Victuals from the Sepulchres; but erroneously, for I have often eaten of these Offerings my self.

Burials.

After the expiration of the first Year, the Widow is oblig'd to take her Husband's Bones out of the Grave; these she cleanses very well, and having dry'd them in the Sun, she puts them up in a Sachel, and thus carries them for a whole Year longer every Day upon her Back, and sleeps upon them every Night. After this she hangs them up in the Bag against the Post of her own Door; or if she has no House, at that of his nearest Relations.

An odd Custom for Widows.

After the 2 Years are over, the Widow may Marry again; but the Men are not oblig'd to the same Rules. The Negroes live here according to their own Customs.

Hence we sail'd to the Isle *de los Pinos*, where we arriv'd in 18 Days, and spent some time in refitting our leaky Vessel, and in fishing and hunting; we got as many Fishes in 7 Hours as would serve 1000 Men, and some of the *Indians* we brought along with us from *Gracias a Dios*, got us as many wild Cows and Tortoises

The Isle *Pinos*.

as

1673. as we had occasion for, wherewith we lived very plentifully, and salted the rest. All the trouble we had was from the Crocodiles, which proved often dangerous to such as went alone in the Woods; nay, they would often in the Night time climb up into the Vessel, one whereof we seized with an iron Hook, which instead of going backwards to the bottom, mounted up the Ladder of the Ship, till we kill'd it with other Instruments. One of our Men was thrown to the Ground by such a Crocodile, but being a strong and courageous Fellow, he kill'd it with a Knife he had in his Pocket. After we had refitted our Vessel, we sail'd towards *Jamaica*, where we arriv'd without any ill accident in a few Days after.

Dangerous Crocodiles.

They come back to Jamaica.

As we were the first of those left behind at *Chagre*, that arriv'd after Captain *Morgan*, so we found him very busy in engaging People into his Service, with an intention to possess and refortify the Isle of St. *Catherines*. But at the same time there arriving a Man of War from *England*, having aboard a new Governour of *Jamaica*, with strict Orders from his Majesty of *Great Britain*, not to permit any Pirates coming from that Port, to molest the *Spanish* Subjects; this Project soon vanish'd into Smoak. 'Tis true, some of the Pirats, then at Sea, did notwithstanding this, pillage the Town call'd *la Villa de los Calos* in the Isle of *Cuba*; but the said Governour having caused some of them to be hang'd; this so terrify'd the rest, that they retired to the Isle of *Tortuga*, and joining with the *French* Pirats there, continue with them to this Day.

The new Governour suppresses the Pirates.

§. IX. In the Year 1673. (whilst the War lasted betwixt *France* and *Holland* in *Europe*) the *French* of the Isle of *Tortuga* had equipp'd a considerable Fleet to chase the *Dutch* from the Isles belonging to them in the *West Indies*. Their first design being upon the Isle *Curasao*, they set sail under the Command of Monsieur *Ogeron*, Governour of *Tortuga*, but coming on the West side of St. *Jan de Puerto Rico*, were surpriz'd with a most violent Tempest, which carried the Admiral's Ship, mann'd with 500 Men, among the Rocks, where she stav'd to pieces, but all the Men got ashore in Boats, not far from *Puerto Rico*. The next Day being discover'd by the *Spaniards* inhabiting that Isle, they kill'd the greatest part of them, but at last finding them without any Arms, spared the rest, but ty'd them together with Cords, and so drove them through the Woods. As they were going along, they were often ask'd what was become of their Commander? They as often reply'd, he was drown'd; so that Monsieur *Ogeron* being unknown among them, and counterfeiting himself a Fool, was ty'd like the rest, but serv'd them for their Diversion. There was at the same time with them a Chyrurgeon, who having done formerly some service to the *Spaniards*, had the same favour granted him: With this Chyrurgeon Monsieur *Ogeron* consulted how to escape the Hands of their cruel Enemies, and finding him inclinable to the same design, they both fled into the Woods, with no other Arms but one single Hatchet. Coming to the Sea side in the Evening, they took a good quanty of Fish call'd *Corlabados* by the *Spaniards*, (which follow the lesser Fish close under the shore) and by rubbing 2 Sticks kindle a Fire to dress their Fish.

Monsieur Bertran Ogeron Governour of Tortuga

Ship wrackt, falls into the Hands of the Spaniards: How he makes his escape. His unfortunate Enterprize against Puerto Rico.

The French of Tortuga form a Design against the Dutch Isles.

The French Admiral's Ship cast away.

His Men partly kill'd, partly made Prisoners.

Ogeron mimicks a Fool.

Fly into the Woods with a Chyrurgeon.

The next Day whilst they were employ'd in cutting of Timber, to make a small Boat, to transport themselves to the Isle of St. *Cruz*, belonging to the *French*, they espy'd a Canoe with only 2 Fishermen in it, approaching the shore; they keeping themselves conceal'd in an adjacent Wood, they saw one of them a *Mulato*, go with 2 Calabashes to a Spring to fetch fresh Water, whilst the other a *Spaniard* stay'd behind near the Boat. They attack'd and soon kill'd the *Mulato* first, and immediately after the *Spaniard* before he could get into the Canoe, which they seized upon, and having taken what fresh Water they thought fit, threw both the dead Carcasses into the Sea, to hide them from the *Spaniards*.

They seize a Boat and kill two Men.

Come to Samana in Hispaniola.

Thus provided, they went along the Coast of *Puerto Rico* to *Cabo Roko*, whence they cross'd over to *Hispaniola*, and by the benefit of the Currents and favourable Winds, arriv'd at *Samana*, a Port in that Isle.

Ogeron returns with a Fleet to the Coast of Puerto Rico.

Here Monsieur *Ogeron* left the Chyrurgeon, to gather as many Men as he could, whilst he did the same at *Tortuga*; and thus having in a little time brought together a considerable number of Men and Ships, they set sail from *Tortuga* for the Coast of *Puerto Rico*, with a resolution to hazard all for the delivery of their Companions. The *French* had done all they could to cover their design, but the *Spaniards* having got some scent of the matter, had posted several Troops of Horse along the shore: These, upon the landing of the *French*, under the favour of their Cannon, retreated to an adjacent Wood, whither being follow'd by the *French*, a good number of Foot laid in Ambush there, gave them so hot a Volley of shot, that many of them being kill'd upon the spot, the rest were glad to get aboard their Ships again, and among them *Ogeron* himself, who ready to dye with Vexation at his ill success, was forc'd to leave that Coast and return to *Tortuga*. The poor *French* Prisoners that were left behind, met with worse usage afterwards from the *Spaniards* than before, and several of them having made their escape aboard the *Dutch* Squadron of Mr. *Jacob Binks*, which about that time touch'd at *Puerto Rico* to refresh themselves, the rest were sent to the *Havana* to work on the Fortifications of that place; the same being brought to perfection, they were by degrees transported into *Europe*; but met for the most part again in *France*, from whence they return'd to *Tortuga*, equipt a new Fleet, and under the Conduct of the *Sieur Alaintenon* a *French* Man, sack'd the Isle *de la Trinidad* (betwixt *Tabago* and the Coasts of *Paria*) and put it to a Ransom of 80000 pieces of Eight; and thence sail'd with the same design for the City of *Caracas* over against the *Dutch* Isle of *Curasao*.

1676.

But without success.

The French Prisoners sent to Europe.

Return to Tortuga.

The Colony setled in the Isle of *Tabago* by the Subjects of the Duke of *Courland*, being oblig'd to quit the same for want of timely supplys, the same did fall to the share of *Adrian*, and *Cornelius Lampsius*, Natives of *Flushing* in *Zealand*, as being the first possessors of it, after it had been quitted by the former. These arriving there with some *Dutch*, erected a good Fort there, for the defence of their new Colony; the strength whereof the *French* sufficiently try'd, as I shall relate anon, after I have given you an Account of what happen'd in 1676 before *Cayana*.

§. X. *What happen'd at the Isles of Cayana and Tabago, betwixt the Count d' Estres the French Admiral, and Mr. Jacob Binks Vice-Admiral of the Dutch, in the West Indies.*

The *Dutch* having resolv'd to recover this Isle from the *French*, sent Vice Admiral *Binks* with a good Squadron of Men of War and one Fireship upon that Expedition. He arriv'd near *Cayana May* 4. and having landed 900 Men, summon'd the Governour of the Fort Monsieur *Lesi* to surrender; who having answer'd, *That they would defend themselves to the last*, the *Dutch* attack the Fort in two places, with such fury, that after some resistance the Garrison was forc'd to surrender at discretion, with 37 pieces of Cannon belonging to the place, with the loss only of 14 Men kill'd, and 72 wounded on the *Dutch* side.

A Bay belong'd to the Duke of Courland, but is quitted by him, and possessed by the Dutch.

The *French* King had no sooner understood this loss, but he sent a Squadron under the Conduct of the Count *d' Estres* to retake the same; who arriv'd on that Coast in *December* following; and having receiv'd intelligence of the strength of the *Hollanders* by a *French* Vessel he met near the River *Aperouaco*, landed 800 Men 3 Leag. from the Castle, who whilst they march'd on by Land, the Fleet follow'd by Sea; *December* 19 he sent Monsieur *de Lesi* to summon the *Dutch* Governour; who having answer'd, *He would defend himself like a Man of Honour*, the *French* assaulted the Castle in seven several places at once the next Night, and put the *Dutch* so hard to it, that after a brave resistance, they surrender'd themselves Prisoners of War, and were carried afterwards to *France*.

They retake the Isle of Cayana.

The Count d' Estres sent to regain it.

The Fort is storm'd and taken.

From hence the Count *de Estres* sail'd to *Martinico*, where having receiv'd intelligence, that the *Dutch* Fleet under Vice Admiral *Binks* was then at *Tabago*, he set sail directly thither; and in two Days after came to an Anchor in the Bay of *Palmit*. At their approach the *Dutch* Admiral had sent all his Land Forces with some Mariners ashore, under the Command of three Captains, to provide for the defence of the Fort call'd the *Star Shans*; and as soon as he saw the *French* land their Men, order'd all the adjacent Houses to the Fort to be laid in Ashes. *February* 23 sent a Summons to the Governour of the Fort for the surrender of it; which being denied, things remained pretty quiet till the 3d of *March*, when the *French* Fleet came with full Sail upon the *Dutch* Squadron, whilst the *French* Land Forces advancing through the Woods, assaulted the Fort on that side most furiously, but in vain, being repulsed with the loss of 150 Men killd, and 200 wounded. All this while the Engagement at Sea continued with great fury, and equal obstinacy on both sides, till at last Monsieur *d' Estres* having lost his own Ship, and two more stranded in the Port, quitted the Bay, leaving the Victory to the *Dutch*; which however they did not purchase, but with the loss of several of their Ships burnt.

He sails to Martinico.

And then to Tabago.

1677.

Storms the Fort, but is repulsed.

Is beaten at Sea.

After this Miscarriage, the *French* Fleet set sail for *France*, and arriv'd at *Brest June* 21. The *French* King having receiv'd an account from Monsieur *d'Estres* own Mouth of this Enterprize, order'd Eight stout Men of

Returns to France.

1677. Comes with another Fleet to *Tortuga*.

War, and as many smaller Vessels to be got ready immediately: With this Squadron the Count *d' Estres* set sail from *Brest October* 3. and being by the way reinforced with some Recruits from *Martinico*, arriv'd at the Isle of *Tabago December* 7. where he landed 1500 Men, and *December* 19. landed his Artillery near a Port call'd *Le Fort*. The next Day Monsieur *d' Estres* took in Person a view of the Fort, and having summon'd it in vain, advanced towards it; the 11th and 12th began the Attack, by casting Fire-balls with great violence. The third Bomb that was thrown happen'd to break in the path-way leading to the Magazine of Powder, where much Powder being scattered by the negligence of those that carried it to and fro; the same took fire, and running in an instant to the Magazine, the same was blown up, and with it Vice Admiral *Binks* himself and all the Officers, except Captain *van Dongen*, who remained alive. During this Consternation the *French* mounted to the assault with 500 of their best Men, and with little resistance made themselves Masters of the Fort, where they found 300 Prisoners, who, (after Monsieur *d' Estres* had demolish'd the Fort) were sent aboard his Fleet into *France*.

1677. The Magazine of the Fort blown up.

And taken by the *French*.

CHAP. V.

The Fourth Part of the History of the Bucaniers *of* America: *Containing the Exploits of Captain* Bartholomew Sharp, *and others in the South Seas.*

§. I. Capt. *Coxons*, *Sawkins*, and *Sharp's* design against the Province of *Darien*, on the Continent of *America*.

THE Fleet of Pirates which had lately plunder'd *Puerto Velo* a second time, having appointed their Rendezvouz at *Boca del Toro*, they met in that place with two other *English* Vessels, Commanded by Captain *Peter Harris*, and Captain *Richard Sawkins*: And being inform'd that the *Indians* of *Darien* had been very serviceable to Captain *Bournano* a *French* Man, in his attempt upon the Town of *Chepo* near the South Sea, and had engaged to conduct him to a rich place call'd *Tocamora*, if he would return with more Men and Vessels, it was agreed to attempt that place. As there is plenty of Tortoises near this Port, and the Coast affords many small Creeks, we here refitted our Vessels; which done, we rendezvouz'd with the Nine following Ships at the Isle call'd by us the *Water-Key*: Captain *Coxon*'s Ship 8 Guns, 97 Men; Captain *Harris* 25 Guns, 107 Men; Captain *Bournano* 6 Guns, 86 Men; Captain *Sawkins* 1 Gun, 35 Men; Captain *Sharp* 2 Guns, 40 Men; Captain *Cook* 0 Gun, 43 Men; Captain *Allefton* 0 Gun, 24 Men; Captain *Row* 0 Gun, 25 Men; Captain *Macket* 0 Gun, 20 Men.

Their Strength by Sea and Land.

The Rendezvouz of the Pirates.

They set sail for the *Zamblas* Isles. 1679.

We set sail *March* 23. and touch'd at the *Zamblas*, certain Isles reaching 8 Leagues in length, 14 Leagues West of the River of *Darien*. Whilst we were at Anchor here, the *Indians* came in great numbers aboard us, with Fruits and Venison, which they exchanged with us for Beads, Needles, Knives, and other such like Toys, but they are most desirous of Axes and Hatchets, for the felling of Timber.

The *Indians* of these Isles.

The *Indian* Males hereabouts go quite naked, having only a tip hollow and sharp at the end, made of Gold, Silver, or Bark, to cover their Genitals, and fastned with a String about the waste. In their Noses they wear a Gold or Silver Plate hanging over their Mouth in the shape of a half Moon, but the Women have a pretty thick ring of Gold or Silver in their Noses; their Cloths are only Blankets wrapt about them; they have very good Features, and some of them are fairer than any Women of *Europe*, and have Hair as white as Flax. 'Tis said that their Eye-sight is better in the dark than by day light. The Men paint themselves with black, and the Women with red streaks.

They change their design.

The *Indians* here having dissuaded us from going to *Tocamora* (as we design'd) by reason of the Mountainous ways and desarts; we chang'd our resolution, with intention to proceed towards *Panama*, which being dislik'd by Captain *Bouriuano*, and Captain *Rows*, two *French* Commanders, we left them at the *Zamblas*, and were conducted by one *Andrew* an *Indian* Captain, to the *Golden Island*, situated a little to the West of the great River of *Darien*.

They go to the Golden Isle. 1680.

Here we all met, (being 7 Sail) *April* 3. and the *Indians* of this Isle having represented to us that a Town call'd *S. Maria* was seated upon a River of the same name, which exonerates it self into the South Sea by the Gulph of St. *Michael*; and that from thence we might easily go by Sea to *Panama*: We approv'd of their proposition, and landed immediately, *viz.* 5th of *April*, 331 Men on the Coast of *Darien*, leaving Capt. *Allefton* and Capt. *Macket* with the rest to take care of the Ships.

Form a design upon *S. Maria*.

They were no sooner landed, but having provided themselves with Bisket, and divided their Men into 7 Companies led by their respective Captains; they began their march towards *S. Maria*, under the Conduct of some *Indian* Guides.

§. II. Their march to the Town of *S. Maria*, are met by the *Indian* King of *Darien*: Difficulties in their march.

The first Day we march'd through a small skirt of Wood, then two Leagues through a woody Valley, lined here and there with Plantations: Afterwards coming to a River side, which was then almost dry; we were met here by another of the *Indian* Captains, named *Antonio*, who gave us great encouragement in our Enterprize; he desired us to avoid lying in the Grass for fear of the Adders, and shew'd us some Stones, which when broken to pieces, discovered some sparks of Gold; these are carried down from the Neighbouring Gold Mountains in the time of the Floods.

Find some Gold Stones.

The second Day passing a steep Hill, we came down the other side of it to the Bank of the River, which Captain *Andreas* told us, discharg'd it self into the South Sea, being the same upon which *S. Maria* stands. About noon we descended a very high and steep Mountain, with so narrow a path in some places, that not above one Man could pass at a time. In the evening we set up our Huts upon the Bank of the same River, having marched 18 Miles that Day.

They come to the River of *S. Maria*.

The third Day, being *April* 7. we kept travelling on along the River crossing it almost every half Mile, sometimes up to the middle: Its Current is very swift hereabouts. About Noon we came to an *Indian* Village, the Houses whereof were both spacious and neat, the sides built of Cabbage-Trees, and the roofs of wild Canes, thatcht with *Palmito* Leaves. They had only Ground Rooms, divided by several Partitions, and stood at a Stone's throw from one another, having each a large Plantane Walk before it. About half a Mile hence the King or chief Leader of these *Indians* of *Darien* had his residence, who came to give us a visit: His Crown was curiously twisted of small white Threads, with a red Silk lining, standing up at the top: About the middle of it was a thin Plate of Gold two inches broad, fastned behind, in which stuck three Ostriches Feathers: Round this Golden Plate was a row of Golden Beads, something bigger than our Peas, underneath which you might see the red lining. In his Nose he had a large Plate of Gold shaped like a half Moon, and in each Ear a large Gold Ring of four inches Diameter, with a round thin Plate of Gold of the same breadth, fastned to the ring through a hole in the Center of it. His Garment was a white Robe of Callicoe, reaching to the small of his Legs, and fringed at the bottom three inches deep, so that you could see no higher than his naked Ancles. He was arm'd with a long bright Launce, as sharp as a keen Knife: His three Sons had also each a Launce in their Hands, and were dress'd in white Robes, but stood bare-headed, as did also eight or nine Persons more that attended him. His Queen had a red Blanket girt close about her waste, and another hanging loosely over her Shoulders; in her Arms she had a female Babe, and two marriageable Daughters, next by her sides, covered all over with red streaks on their Necks and Arms, and with small Beads of divers Colours. The *Indian* Women are generally

Crosseth it frequently.

An *Indian* Village.

Their Houses.

They are met by the King of *Darien*.

His Habit.

The Queens Attire.

Their Women.

airy

1680. airy and brisk, but notwithstanding this very reserv'd in the presence of their Husbands, who are much addicted to Jealousie. We changed several Trifles with the Inhabitants, and found them very cunning in their Dealings. Here we rested our selves for one Day, and the King presented to each Man three Plantanes, with some Sugar Canes, but what we wanted more, we were forced to Truck for, which the King himself would do for his Plantains.

The fourth Day of our march, *viz. April* 9. we kept still along the Banks of the River, meeting now and then some *Indian* Houses, the Owners thereof would stand at their Doors, and take an account of our number, as we pass'd along, by dropping a grain of Corn for each Man, for otherwise they can tell no farther than twenty, nor know any greater number. We quarter'd that Night at some *Indian* Houses.

Some of them embark upon the River.

The fifth Day Captain *Sharp*, Captain *Coxon* and Captain *Cook* embark'd with seven others in fourteen Canoes upon the River, to go downwards with the Current; I was one of their number, and so was Captain *Andrew*, and two *Indians* in each Canoe. But we soon found to our cost, that instead of easing our selves, we had engaged in new difficulties, being forced frequently to hale our Boats over Sands, Rocks and Trees, that lay cross the River, nay sometimes over the very points of Land. At Night we took up our Lodgings in our own Huts.

Meet with great Difficulties.

The sixth Day of our march being the 11th of *April*, we went on with the same fatigues; at Night we saw a Tygre but durst not fire at him, for fear of being discover'd by the *Spaniards*, who lived, as we were told, not far from hence.

They are solicitous about their Companions.

The seventh Day *April* 12. our Pain and Troubles were redoubled, both by the difficulty of our passage, and the absence of our Companions, of whom we had heard no tidings since our Embarkment upon the River; which made us begin to suspect the Fidelity of our *Indians*.

The eighth Day being *April* 13. we continued to fall down the River to a beachy Point of Land, where another branch joins its Waters with this River, being the common place of Rendezvouz of the *Indians*, when they are to draw out against their declared Enemies, the *Spaniards*. Here we halted, in hopes of meeting with our Companions we had left to march by Land, and to our great satisfaction saw them coming towards us in the afternoon. We rested here the remaining part of the Day and the following Night, part whereof we spent in fitting our Arms for Action.

Meet with them.

The ninth Day of our march, *viz. April* 14. we embark'd to the number of 327 *English* Men, and 50 *Indians* in 68 Canoes; which now we managed with Oars and Paddles, whereas hitherto our *Indians* had guided them with long Poles. Thus rowing on with all possible speed, we landed about midnight at about half a Mile distance from the Town of *S. Maria*, the scope of our present design: The place being very deep and marshy, we were forced to lay down our Paddles, and uphold our selves at the same time by the boughs of the Trees, without which we must have stuck in the Mire; we were forced afterwards to open our ways into an adjacent Wood, by cutting down many Shrubs and Trees, where we absconded all Night, for fear of being discovered by the Inhabitants of the Town.

They land near *S. Maria*.

§. III.

They assault and take the Town of *S. Maria* without Difficulty; but are disappointed in their hopes of the Booty.

The next Morning, *viz. April* 15. by break of Day being allarm'd by the discharge of a Musket, and the beat of Drum in the Town, we put our selves in a posture to attack it: No sooner did we march out of the Wood, but the *Spaniards* (who had got intelligence of our coming) retreated into a large Pallizado Fort of twelve foot high, from whence they fired briskly among us; but our Vanguard advancing with all speed to the place, and pulling down two or three Pallisados, enter'd the Fort with Sword in Hand, and soon made themselves Masters of it, (though they were not above fifty strong) without the loss of one Man, having only two wounded. Notwithstanding the same was defended by 260 Men, of which 26 were kill'd, and 16 wounded; most of the rest escap'd by flight.

A Description of the Town, and circumjacent Country and River.

As we had great reason to be rejoiced at this unexpected Success, so on the other hand it grieved us to the Soul, when we found our selves disappointed in our expectation of a vast Booty here: For the Inhabitants had sent 200 Men to convey away the Gold which is brought thither from the neigbouring Gold Mines, by another branch of the River. These Mines are esteemed the richest in all the *Indies*, or at least of all these Western Parts of the World. Besides which, it was not above three Days before, that 300 weight of Gold was sent thence to *Panama* in the Ordinary Bark, which is sent thither three times a Year, to carry what Gold is brought to *S. Maria* from the Mountains to *Panama*. For the rest we found the Town of *S. Maria* to consist only of some Houses made of Cane, and scattered here and there; the place being chiefly design'd for a Garrison, to curb the Neighbouring *Indians*, and to receive the Gold dug in the adjacent Mountains.

The rich Mines near *S. Maria*.

1680.

The Town of *S. Maria*.

Immediately after we had taken the place, our *Indians* who had hid themselves during the assault in the Wood, came also into the Town, where they destroyed all the *Spaniards* they could meet with, because one of that Garrison had ravish'd the before-mention'd King's Daughter, whom we now reliev'd, and found her with Child. By this time finding our selves quite deceiv'd in our expectation of the huge Mass of Gold we had taken so much pains for, and being unwilling to return empty-handed after so much toil, we resolv'd to go to *Panama*, which being at no great distance, and fill'd with the Treasures of the Mines of all *Potosi* and *Peru*, we were sure to make our selves an ample amends, if we could become Masters of that place. With this resolution, having sent back what little Booty we had got, together with the Prisoners, under the Conduct of twelve of our Men, to our Ships, Captain *Coxon* was chosen by unanimous consent our Commander in chief, for the intended Expedition.

They relieve the King's Daughter.

Form a Design upon *Panama*.

Whilst we were preparing for our departure, the greatest part of the *Indians* that had conducted us hither, having got what Toys they could, would needs return home; but Captain *Andrew*, Captain *Antonio*, the King's Son, call'd by the *Spaniards*, *Bonete de Oro*, or *Golden Cap*, as also his Kinsman resolv'd to go along with us to *Panama*.

The chiefest of the *Indians* go along with them.

§. IV.

The *Bucaniers* go from *S. Maria* by Sea to take *Panama*: Accidents and Dangers of this Voyage.

After two Days stay at *S. Maria*, having at the request of the King of *Darien* burnt the Fort, Church and Town of *S. Maria*, we embark'd *April* 17. in 35 Canoes, to row down the River in quest of the South Sea, upon which *Panama* is seated, towards the Gulph of *Belona*, where we were to enter that Ocean: Most of our Prisoners choosing to follow us in such old Boats or Bark Logs as they could get, rather than to be left behind at the mercy of the *Indians*. It happen'd to be my misfortune to be with only three more in a sluggish Canoe; so that being left somewhat behind, and not knowing the true Channel among such variety of Streams, betwixt the Sands, we miss'd the true Channel, and the Tide running against us, we were forc'd to remain there till the turning of the Tide: Then we betook our selves again to our Oars, in hopes of overtaking our Companions, till 10 a Clock at Night, when we were forced to stick an Oar in the River, and stay there till break of Day; then to our great dissatisfaction, we discover'd our People, after we had row'd two Leagues; they having stay'd all Night at an *Embarcadero*, or Landing place to get fresh Water; being told by them that we must provide our selves with fresh Water here, we went to a little Pond not far off to fill our Jars; but by that time we return'd to our Canoe, found the rest gone already out of sight; we row'd after them with all possible speed, but being among a great number of small Isles, we could not without great trouble make that Mouth of the River call'd *Boca chica*, i. e. the *Little Mouth*, by the *Spaniards*: But the Stream by this time turning against us, we were forced to get ashore, just within the Mouth of it. So soon as the Tide was turn'd we row'd from thence to an Isle half a League distant from the Rivers Mouth, in the Gulph of St. *Miguel*, where we took up our resting place for that Night, though not without great danger, our Canoe being every Moment in danger of being over-set by the impetuosity of the Waves. The remembrance of the Danger, together with the violent Rains, made us pass the Night without Sleep, and notwithstanding we saw our selves surrounded with an impetuous Sea, and dreadful Rocks, nothing could have been more welcome to us than the dawning of the Day, which put us in hopes of seeing some period or other of our present Misery.

The Author put to great straits.

Is left by the Pirats a second time.

§. V.

Mr. *Primerose* the Author of this Narrative cast away; taken by the *Spaniards*, and miraculously preserved; with several other Disasters that befel him.

A Description of the Gulph of *Vallens*.

April 19. with break of Day we left the before-mention'd Isle rowing towards the Point of *San Lorenzo*. No sooner were we got into the open Sea, but the smallness of our Canoe put us every Moment in danger of being swallow'd up by the Waves, and though we strugled hard to escape these difficulties, by throwing out the Water without intermission; yet near one of the Islands of this Coast our Boat was over-turn'd, and we were forc'd to save our Lives by swimming ashore. By good fortune our Boat was droven thither also after

They burn and leave *S. Maria*.

1680. us, so that we saved our Arms and Powder-Horns, (being well wax'd down) but lost all our Bread and fresh Water.

Another Canoe cast away.

Whilst we were employ'd in cleaning our Arms, we saw a little to the Leeward of us another Canoe under the same Misfortune: The Persons in them proved to be six *Spaniards*, belonging to *S. Maria*, who for fear of the *Indians*, had follow'd our People in another Canoe. They came to us, and made a Fire, which boil'd us some Meat we had, but our greatest want was fresh Water. Their Canoe being old, soon split against the Rock; but ours being very strong, was in no great danger.

We began by this time to consult what was best to be done in this Exigency; most were of opinion to return and live among our friendly *Indians*, if we could not get back to the North-Sea, to our Ships; but I persuaded them to go forward for one Day longer: Whilst we were busy in debating the matter, our Watchman discover'd an *Indian* running into the Wood, but being overtaken by two of our Men, he proved to be one of our friendly *Indians*. He carried them to 7 more of his Companions, who soon after came to the place where I was, and express'd their satisfaction of seeing us alive; giving us to understand by Signs, That if we would go along with them in their Canoe, they would bring us by next Morning to our Companions.

After this kind Invitation, they began to ask who the other six Men were, (finding them different in their *Lingua* and Dress from us:) And being answered, they were *Spaniards*; they were going to kill them immediately, had I not interposed in their behalf; yet they would not be satisfy'd till I let them have one of them for a Slave; which I was forc'd to do, and to save the other five from the like danger, I gave them our Canoe, to shift for themselves, which they did.

The Author saves the Life of six *Spaniards*.

As we had all the reason in the World to be glad of the kind offer made us by our *Indian* Friends, so we embraced the same with joy, and embark'd in a large Canoe, well fitted for our purpose; and having a fresh Gale we had an easie passage: After the Miseries and Pains we had undergone of late, our Joy was redoubled, when about nine a Clock at Night espying some Fires ashore under the Point of St. *Lawrence*, our *Indians* cry'd out Captain *Antonio*, Captain *Andreas*, the names of their *Indian* Leaders, assuring us that these Fires were made by their Companions. Accordingly they row'd for the shore, but were much surpriz'd to see about sixty *Spaniards* arm'd with Clubs, coming out of an adjacent Wood, and taking hold of the Canoe, hale her upon the dry Land. Our *Indians* seeing their mistake, leapt over-board, and got into the Woods, but my Companions and I were made Prisoners; some of them understanding a little *Latin*, we perceiv'd that they were some of the *Spanish* Prisoners, who had been set ashore here by our People, for fear, if they should carry them nearer to *Panama*, they might perhaps find a way to discover their Design to the Enemy.

He puts to Sea again.

Is made a Prisoner.

They seem'd to be very glad, to have got us into their Hands, threatning to revenge upon us all the Miseries they had endur'd, by our taking and sacking the Town of *S. Maria*. Whilst the Captain of the *Spaniards* was examining me, in came the poor *Spaniard*, whom I was forced to give as a Slave to the *Indians*, and told them how I had sav'd him and his Companions from present Death. His Words had so powerful an influence upon the Mind of the generous *Spaniard*, that he immediately embraced me; saying, We were friendly Enemies, and desir'd me to sit down. Soon after he told us, That he not only gave me my Liberty, but for my sake also to my Companions, and to the *Indians* themselves, that were with us, who having been search'd for and found in the Woods; he conducted us in Person to our Canoe, and by a strange Catastrophe was now the first that push'd off our Canoe as he had before hailed it up. We row'd along the shore all Night, though it rain'd very hard, but the next Morning by 10 a Clock, we espy'd a Canoe making towards us, which proved one of our Companions, who mistaking ours for a *Spanish Periagua*, had sent her in quest of us. We were extreamly glad to meet again, after such various changes of Fortune; and soon after saw our whole Fleet coming out of a deep Bay behind the Point of Rocks, where they had been at Anchor all that Night.

Gratification of a *Spaniard*.

Is set at Liberty.

Overtakes the rest of the Fleet.

§. VI. The *Bucaniers* come within sight of *Panama*; take several Barks and Prisoners by the way; are discovered by the *Spaniards*: They command the *Indians* to kill the Prisoners.

Having with mutual satisfaction rejoin'd our Fleet, we steer'd together towards a high hammock of Land, as it appear'd at a distance, but is in reality an Isle seven Leagues from the before-mention'd Bay. On the highest Eminency of it the *Spaniards* have a Watch-house, or *Look-out*, whence perhaps this Isle has got its name, *viz. Farol de Plantanos*, i. e. the *Plantane Watch*. We landed the same Evening in the Isle, and going up by a steep Ascent to the Hill, where the Watch is kept, we soon took by surprize the old *Spanish* Watch-man, as he lay in his Hut. He assur'd us, that the *Spaniards* at *Panama* had no notice hitherto of our design, which not a little encouraged us to go on in our intended Enterprize.

1680.

They arrive at *Farol de Plantanos*.

Just before Night we saw a Bark come to an Anchor on the out-side of this Isle, which we soon surpriz'd with two of our Canoes well mann'd; the Prisoners declared, that they had been eight Days from *Panama*, and landed some Soldiers not far hence, to curb the *Indians* thereabouts: One hundred and thirty seven of our Men were immediately embark'd aboard this Vessel, and among them Captain *Bartholomew Sharp* and Captain *Cook*. The next Morning leaving this Isle, we row'd all along over shoal Water; in the Afternoon we saw another Bark, which was chased, and taken, after some dispute by Captain *Harris*, and mann'd with thirty of our Men. Towards Night, being for the most part separated from one another, we laid up the Canoe in which I was, ashore four Leagues to Leeward of the Isle of *Chepillo*, whither we had directed our Course.

They take a Bark coming from *Panama*.

They take another Bark.

Come to the Isle of *Chepillo*.

The next Morning we row'd towards the before-said Isle, and in our way espy'd another Bark, Captain *Coxon* was the first that came up with her, and had immediately a Man kill'd, and two wounded; after which the Wind freshing, she got away, to our singular Grief, as not questioning but that she would get before us to *Panama*, and bring them the News of our coming. About two a Clock in the Afternoon we all met at the Isle of *Chepillo*, we where took fourteen Prisoners, and good store of Plantanes, excellent good Water, and two fat Hogs. Our Commander order'd our *Indians* (for what reason I know not) to kill the Prisoners, which they went about with great chearfulness; but notwithstanding their eagerness, they all got away from them (though unarm'd) in spite of their Lances, and fled into the Woods, excepting one that was kill'd upon the spot. It being now agreed on all hands, that our Design had been discover'd at *Panama*, it was resolv'd to make all haste we could thither, that since there was no likelihood of taking the City, we might at least surprize some of their Shipping, and thereby render our selves Masters of those Seas.

Their Design upon *Panama* discover'd.

§. VII. They come in sight of *Panama*, engage 3 small Men of War, and defeat them with only 68 Men: They take divers Ships at the Isle of *Perico* near *Panama*.

We left this Isle (after a stay of some Hours) in the Afternoon, and it being only seven Leagues from thence to *Panama*, came the next Morning before Sun-rise (*viz. April* 23.) in sight of that City, which affords a gallant Prospect to the Sea side. Soon after we discover'd the Isle of *Perico*, two Leagues distant from *Panama*, and the Ships lying at Anchor near the Island, *viz.* five great Ships, and three large Barks, call'd by the *Spaniards Barcos de la Armadilla*, or small Men of War; which were mann'd on a sudden to dispute our Entrance into the Harbour. They no sooner espy'd us, but they came directly towards us: In our five Canoes were no more than 36 Men, and these much tired with rowing, and one *Periagua*, had only thirty two more; so that being only sixty eight in all, we were to engage these three Barks, so much superiour in strength to us; for the Commodore *Don Jacinto de Barahona* had no less than eighty six *Biscayners*, all Volunteers aboard; the second under the Command of *Don Francisco de Paralta*, a Native of *Andalusia*, 77 *Negroes*; and the third commanded by *Don Diego Carabaxal* with 68 *Mestizo's* and *Mulato's*, making in all 228.

The beginning of the Engagement.

Captain *Sawkin's* Canoe, and that wherein I was being much to the Leeward of the rest, the Ship of *Don Diego de Carabaxal* got in between us, and kill'd four of his Men, and one in our Canoe; but we soon repay'd him in the same Coin, killing with our first Volley several of his Men upon the Deck. By this time we were also got to the Windward, as the rest were before. The Commodore came up with us in an instant, but we being so fortunate as to kill his Man at the Helm, his Ship ran into the Wind, and her Sails lay aback. This gave us sufficient opportunity to come under his Stern, and firing without intermission, kill'd all that came to the Helm; and with our Shot cut asunder his main Sheet and Brace. By this time the Ship commanded by Captain *Peralta* came to the aid of the Admiral; whereupon Captain *Sawkins* went into the *Periagua* (his *Canoe* being quite disabled) and met the said *Peralta*: As they layd aboard one another, the

A particular account of the said Engagement.

dispute

1680. dispute was very hard between them; but whilst they were thus engag'd, *Carabaxal*'s Ship tack'd about, to relieve the Admiral, which we perceiving, two of our Canoes, *viz.* Captain *Springers* and ours, stood off to meet him, leaving the other two at the Admiral's Stern. Thus meeting him half way, we engaged him so closely, that having scarce Men enough left to carry off the Ship, he was forc'd to make hard shift to get into the Harbour. This done, we return'd again to the Admiral, and came so close under his Stern, that we wedged up the Rudder, and at the same time killing the Commodore and the head Pilot, and above two thirds of the Men being kill'd, the rest cry'd for Quarter; Captain *Coxon* coming aboard, he first put aboard her all the wounded Men, and among them Captain *Harris*, who was shot through both Legs: Which done, he sent immediately two Canoes to the assistance of Captain *Sawkins*, who had three times boarded *Peralta*, and was as often beaten back. We were no sooner come under *Peralta*'s side but we gave him a brisk Volley of Shot, and in a Minute after saw some of his Men that were abaft the Mast blown up; whereupon the *Spanish* Captain leapt over board, and got several of them into the Ship again, though he was miserably burnt himself; but whilst he was busy in recovering these Men, another Jar of Powder taking Fire, blew up several others upon the Fore-Castle; Captain *Sawkins* taking hold of this opportunity, boarded them once more, with the utmost fury, and soon made himself Master of the Ship.

One of the Enemy's Ships forc'd to fly.

The Admiral taken.

Capt. *Harris* wounded.

Another Ship taken.

Immediately after I went aboard the said Ship, where I beheld the most lamentable Spectacle I ever saw, there being not one Man there but was either kill'd, wounded, or miserably burnt. From hence I went to the Admiral's Ship, where I likewise saw what will scarce meet with Credit, but by those that were in the Action; for of 68 Persons there remain'd no more than 25 alive, and of these only 8 were able to bear Arms, the rest being quite disabled by their Wounds.

A miserable Spectacle aboard the *Spanish* Ships.

The Engagement being over, Captain *Peralta* being ask'd by Captain *Sawkins*, what Men there were aboard the great Ship we could see lying in the Harbour of *Perico*? and how many in the smaller Vessels? He told him, that the biggest alone had 350 Men, and that the rest were sufficiently mann'd to defend themselves against any attempt he could make upon them. But one of his Men, who lay mortally wounded upon the Deck, contradicting him in what he said, and telling Captain *Sawkins*, That they had taken all the Men out of them, to Man the *Armadilla*, or three little Men of War we steer'd our course to the said Isle, and found not one Person aboard them. The biggest of them was call'd *La Santissima Trinidad*, i. e. the *Holy Trinity*; they had set her on fire, which we quenched, and made her for the present our Hospital Ship. During this furious Engagement, which lasted from just after Sun-rise till Noon; we had eighteen Men kill'd and twenty two wounded; and two Days after the brave Captain *Harris* born in *Kent* died of the Wounds he receiv'd in the Engagement, and besides him only one Man more, all the rest being very well recover'd not long after. Whilst we were at Anchor before *Panama*, *Don Francisco de Peralta* our Prisoner, gave me the following Account concerning the City of *Panama*, and the adjacent Country.

Several Ships taken in the Harbour of *Perico*.

Capt. *Harris* Dyes.

§. VIII. An account of the City of *Panama*, and the circumjacent Country: What Vessels were taken, whilst they stay'd near that Harbour. Capt. *Coxon* returns home with 70 men; Capt. *Sawkins* chosen Commander in chief. Its situation. Strength.

The old City of *Panama*, which stood quite East from the Place where you see the Magnificent City of *New Panama*, being burnt by Sir *Henry Morgan*, and three several times since by accident, the Inhabitants remov'd to this Place, some few of the poorer sort excepted, who remain there to this Day, and perform their Religious Worship in the Cathedral, which makes a fair appearance at Sea. This new City, of which I am now going to speak, much exceeds the old one in bigness, being built of Brick and Stone in a circular form (except where it faces the Sea) in a deep Bay in the South Sea, at 9 *deg.* North Latitude: The Churches thereunto belonging are eight in number, but unfinished; the chief whereof is dedicated to our Lady. Its length is a Mile and half, and one in breadth. It has only two Gates, and is surrounded with a good Wall, except in one place where a Creek goes into the City, which at high Water admits Barks to furnish them with all manner of Necessaries. The constant Garrison of regular Troops consists of 300 Men, and their Militia of 1100. but at our coming there most of the Soldiers being absent, we might in all likelihood have carried the Place, had we gone ashore instead of engaging the *Armadilla*, for they had no notice of us, till within 24 Hours of our arrival. The Country for 7 Leagues about it is *Savanato*, as the *Spaniards* term it, i. e. plain and level Ground, intermix'd with some few Groves: In these Plains are many enclosures for Oxen and Cows, but the Ground on which the City stands being fenny, it renders it unhealthful; b sides that, the Water is very full of Worms, which being very pernicious to Ships, the King's Ships are for this reason always laid up at *Lima*, the Capital City of *Peru*, except at the time when the Galeons come from *Spain*, then they come down to *Panama*, to fetch the King's Treasure.

1680. Plains round about it.

At the before-mention'd Isle of *Perico*, we seized five Ships; the biggest call'd the *Trinidad*, (mentioned before) was of 400 Tuns, loaden with Wine, Sugar, Sweet-meats, Skins and Soap. The second Ship carried 300 Tuns, being half loaden with Iron. The third burthen 180 Tuns, her Cargo Sugar: This was given to Captain *Cook*, who had also another Ship of 50 Tuns, which he took along with him when he left us. The fifth was an old Ship loaden with Flower and Meal of 60 Tuns. Soon after our arrival before *Panama*, Captain *Coxon* being upbraided by some of our Company with Cowardice, by reason of his backwardness in the last Engagement with the *Spanish Armadillo*, determined to leave us; and having drawn 70 Men into his Party, they went back in the before-mentioned Ship, and a *Periagua*, to our Ships, we left at the Mouth of the River of *S. Maria* in the North Sea. The *Indian* King, and Captain *Antonio* and Captain *Andrew* went along with him, but the King left his Son and Nephew with Captain *Sawkins*, as a Pledge of his good Inclinations towards us: In his stead Captain *Sawkins* was unanimously declared our Commander in chief, in the absence of Captain *Sharp*, who rejoin'd us *April* 25. having been kept back for want of fresh Water, which he was forced to fetch as far as the King's Isles: Here he took a new Bark, which made him burn his old one; within two or three Days after his arrival, Captain *Harris*'s People also came to join with us, who having also taken another Bark, quitted their old one for her: The next Day we took another Bark coming from *Nata*.

Ships taken at *Perico*. In which they return'd home.

Capt. *Coxon* leaves them with 70 men.

Capt. *Sawkins* chosen in his room.

Capt. *Sharp* rejoins them, and Capt. *Harris* his men.

Three Barks taken.

After a stay of ten Days before *Panama*, we set sail *May* 2. from the Isle of *Perico* to the Isle of *Tavoga* two Leagues farther. It has a Town (bearing the same name) of about 100 Houses. Whilst we stay'd here divers Merchants from *Panama* came hither to exchange with us what Commodities we had taken, for such as we stood in need of; and as from hence we could discry all the Vessels going into the Port of *Panama*, we took several Barks with Fowls, and among the rest a Ship coming from *Truxillo*, loaden with 2000 Jars of Wine, 50 Jars of Gunpowder, and 51000 pieces of Eight. Within two Days after we took another Prize loaden with Flower: About the same time the President of *Panama* sent a Message to us by some of the Merchants, to ask Captain *Sawkins*, what had brought us into those Parts? Unto which the Captain reply'd, *That we were come to assist the King of* Darien, *the rightful Lord of the Country of* Panama; *but that in case he would allow every private Man* 500 *pieces of Eight for his share, and* 1000 *to every Commander, they would return, provided they would not molest the* Indians, *their Friends, for the future.* The next Day one of the said Merchants return'd with a Message from the Governour, to know, *That since he knew us to be* English *Men, from whom we had our Commissions, and unto whom he must address himself, to make reparation for the Dammages they had sustained by us.* Captain *Sawkins* only sent him this Answer, *That so soon as all his Company were met, they would give him a visit at* Panama, *and would make him read their Commissions by the Flame of their Gunpowder.*

They take several Prizes.

Capt. *Sawkins*'s Answer sent to a message from the President of *Panama*.

They go to the Isle of *Otoque*, and thence to *Cayboa*.

Captain *Sawkins* would willingly have stay'd longer here, to wait for a rich Ship, they had receiv'd intelligence was coming from *Peru* with 100000 pieces of Eight, but our Men being so eager after fresh Provisions, that notwithstanding all his entreaties, he could not persuade them to stay; they sail'd from thence *May* 15. to the Isle of *Ozoque*. Having sent our Boat ashore for some Fowls, Hogs, and other Refreshments, we steer'd to the Isle of *Cayboa*, noted for the Pearl Fishery thereabouts, and eight Leagues distant from *Puebla Nueba*, on the Main.

§. IX. Capt. *Sawkins* is killed at the taking of *Puebla Nueba*; they are repulsed there: Capt. *Sharp* chosen their Commander; many of the Company leave them, and return home over Land.

Whilst we stay'd at the Isle of *Cayboa*, Captain *Sawkins* and Captain *Sharp* went with 60 Men to the Entrance of the River, upon which *Puebla Nueba* is seated, *May* 22. coming to the Mouth of the River, they were conducted up the River by a *Negro*, one of our Prisoners; but the Inhabitants had not only (at a Mile's

1680.

Miles distance from the place) laid Trees cross the River, but also made three Retrenchments to prevent our landing. Here it was that Captain *Sawkins* advancing at the head of a few Men, to force one of them, was slain by the *Spaniards*; a Man both courageous and well-belov'd, and therefore much lamented by our Men, some of whom now resolv'd to leave us, and return to the North Sea over Land.

Captain *Sharp* in his return out of the River, took a Ship of 100 Tuns, loaden with Indigo, Otto, Butter and Pitch; and being now chosen Commander in chief, he bestow'd the said Ship upon Captain *Cook*, and his old Vessel upon such of our Men as would return by Land, being 63 in number, besides the *Indian* King's Son, and the other *Indians*, whom they took along with them for their Guides.

63 of their Men leave them.

The Isle of *Cayboa*.

They left us the 30th of *May* at *Cayba*, an Isle lying South south-east from the Mouth of the before-mention'd River: On the South-east side it has a long Shoal stretching a Mile into the Sea, within which we Anchored at 14 fathom Water: On this side are two great Bays, near one of which is a fresh Water Pond, where washing my self one Day under a *Manzanilla*-Tree, a small Rain happen'd to fall on the Tree, and from thence on my Skin; which produced immediately red Spots all over my Body, whereof I was ill for eight Days after. I eat here the largest Oysters I ever saw, being forc'd to cut them into four pieces.

Mutiny against Capt. *Cook*.

Three Days after the departure of our Men, those aboard Captain *Cook*'s Ship refused also to obey his Commands, whereupon he quitted the Vessel, and went aboard Captain *Sharp*'s Vessel, the *Trinadad*; in his stead *John Cox* was made Commander of the said Vessel: One Captain *Juan*, whom we had taken in a Ship at the Isle of *Taxoga*, having promised us to conduct us to several rich Places, but especially to *Guayaquil*; we prepared for our departure.

Capt. *Cox* put in his place.

§. X.

They set sail for the Isle of *Gorgona*, and their design of *Guayaquil*, go to plunder *Arica*.

June 6. we set sail from *Cayboa*, the Wind South-south-west, our Course South-east by East, and South-east. The third Day we discry'd *Quicara*, two Isles about three Leagues in length, the least whereof lies to the South. The fourth Day we were twenty Leagues South-south-west from these Isles.

The Isles of *Quicara*.

June 10. at 6 *deg.* 30 *min.* Latit. we saw abundance of *Tortoises*, *Dolphins*, *Bonites*, *Albicores*, *Mullets*, *Old Wives*, and other Fish. The 11th of *June* we came at 6 *deg.* North Latitude, the Winds being variable. *June* 13. we had very little Wind, the Current setting to the East. *June* 15. we saw vast numbers of Fish at 4. *deg.* 21 *m.* steering our Course to the *Galapagos*, i. e. the *Tortoise* Isles, situated under the Line a 100 Leagues from the Continent of *America* in the South Sea. We were all this while much afflicted with Calms and great Rains. *June* 17. we discry'd Land; which appear'd low and full of Creeks: Captain *Peralta* told us, it was call'd *Barbacoa*, being nothing but a Desart, and that to the Leeward about 10 Leagues distant lay the Isle of *Gorgona* at 1 *deg.* 0 *min.* North Latitude, which was seldom frequented by the *Spaniards*, by reason of the Rains that fall there almost without intermission. As we look'd upon this Place as the most convenient for the careening of our Vessels, we bore away for the said Island: According to the report of our Prisoners, there is on the Continent over against the Isle of *Gorgona* a great Lake, and upon it stands an *Indian* Town, where they are very rich in Grains of Gold. That at five Days sailing up a River of this Lake, live four *Spanish* Supervisers, who have the care of sixty *Indians*, employ'd in picking up the Gold which slippeth from the first Finders thereof, who are no less than seventy or eighty *Spaniards*, with a vast number of Slaves under them, and dwell twenty five or thirty Days sailing up the same River. That once a Year there comes a Ship from *Lima* to fetch the Gold that is gathered in these Parts, and to provide the People with Necessaries. From thence to *Lima* is six Weeks travelling.

The *Galapagos* Isles.

Gold Sand.

The Isle of *Gorgona*, or *Sharp*'s Isle.

The Isle of *Gorgona* is four Leagues distant from the Continent; its circumference is three Leagues and half; for the most part mountainous, and watered with 30 Rivers and Rivulets. Captain *Sharp* gave it the name of *Sharp*'s *Isle*. From *June* 13. to *July* 3. whilst we continued here to careen and refit our Vessels, we had no Rains, which the *Spaniards* look'd upon as a great rarity in this Place. We saw abundance of *Whales* and *Grampusses*, as also *Indian Conies*, *Monkeys*, *Snakes*, *Oysters*, *Crabs*, *Periwinkles*, and four *Tortoises*: We caught also a Beast call'd a *Sloath*, and by the *Spaniards* *Perezoa*, i. e. *Pigritia*.

By this time having no other Provisions left but Flower and Water, we prepar'd for our departure, though unresolved whither to go: Captain *Sharp* having chang'd his resolution of going to *Guayaquil*, as not questioning but that we must have been discover'd before that time. Whilst we were under this uncertainty, a certain old Man, who had liv'd at Sea many Years among the *Spaniards*, offered to carry us to *Arica*, a Place where all the Plate from *Potosi*, *Chuquisaca*, and other rich Mines of the South *Sea* is laid up, till it is fetch'd away by the Ships; which was approved of by all our People.

1680.

They alter their Resolution of going to *Guayaquil*.

§. XI.

They go towards *Arica*; lose one another and meet again at the *Plate* or *Drake*'s Isle: A Description of the said Isle.

A deep Coast.

The Isle of *Gallo*.

July 25. we set sail from this Isle with a North-west Wind: The 26. we found our selves five Leagues and half distant South-west from *Gorgona*; our *Spanish* Prisoners told us, that all along this low Land Coast there is sixty fathom Water. The 27th we saw the Isle of *Gorgona* twelve Leagues from us at East-north-east. The 28th early in the Morning lost sight of Captain *Cox*, neither did we meet again till we came to the Isle of *Plate*. We saw *Gorgona* 16 Leag. to the E. N. E. *July* 29. in the Afternoon, we saw the Isle of *Gallo* nine Leag. distant to the E. from the Continent, and twenty eight Leag. from *Gorgona*; it lies at 2 *deg.* 12 *min.* N. Latit. The 30th in the Afternoon we came in sight of another Isle, seven Leag. from *Gallo*, call'd *Gorgonilla*.

August 2. in the Morning we saw the high Land of St. *Tiago*, where begins the high Land on that Coast. *August* 4. we discovered three Hills to the East-north-east, which make the Land of St. *Matteo*, and in the Evening the Cape of St. *Francisco*. *August* 5. being then about the Cape, we saw two rocky Isles in the Bay, representing two Ships under full Sail. We are now come out of the rainy Region, into a pleasant and fair One, the Weather being dry, and the Sky clear. *August* 8. we sail'd close under a desart mountainous Country, and got sight of Cape *Passao*, at ten Leagues distance Windward of us. *August* 9. we observ'd that Cape *Passao* had three Points, and betwixt them two Bays: The Leewardmost is three, and the other four Leagues long. The *Spaniards* told us, that the Wind is always here betwixt the South-south-west, and West-south-west. The 10th as soon as it clear'd up, we stood a Mile within the shore, where we found seven fathom and half light clayey Ground. It ebbs and flows four fathom perpendicular: The Coast is full of high towring Cliffs. Beyond this Cape South from us, is Cape St. *Lawrence*. The 11th we were North-north-west from the high round Hills, call'd *Monte de Christo*. To the Leeward of it stretches a Point of Land, within which is the Point of *Manta*, a *Spanish* and *Indian* Settlement; seven Leagues to the Windward of this Port is Cape St. *Lawrence* jetting out into the Sea, like the top of a Church, rising higher and higher from *Manta*. We saw this Day about twenty or thirty Houses belonging to this Place, under a Mount. The 12th in the Morning we saw the Isle of *Plate*, five Leagues to the South-west of the Place, where we intended to refit our Rigging, and to get some Goats. The 13th in the Morning we came under the Isle of *Plate*, where we met with Captain *Cox* again; we came to an Anchor near a Gully in twelve fathom Water on the North-east side of the Isle, there being no landing any where else, by reason of the steepness of the shore, nor is there any Water to be found in it, except on the South-west side, where it is inaccessible, by reason of the Rocks and great Sea. This Isle is call'd *Drake's Isle* by the *English*, because Sir *Francis Drake* made his dividend here, after the taking of the *Spanish Armada*. Captain *Peralta* was much surpriz'd to see us advance so far in so little a time, which the *Spaniards* perform seldom under three or four Months, which he attributed to their keeping at too great a distance from the shore. He told us, that if we had gone to the *Gallapagos Isles* (as we intended) we should have been in great danger from the Currents and Calms. The Isle of *Plate* is three Leagues long, and full of dangerous and deep Bays, such as we call Gullies. We catch'd here abundance of *Tortoises* and vast numbers of Goats.

Monte de Christo 50 *min.* South Latitude.

Cape St. *Lawrence* 55 *min.* S. Latitude.

The Isle of *Plate* at 2 *deg.* 42 *min.* S. Latitude.

§. XII.

They depart from the Isle of *Plate* towards *Arica*; take two *Spanish* Vessels by the way: Tediousness and hardships of this Voyage.

We sail'd *August* 17. towards *Arica*, and the next Day found our selves eight Leagues to the West of the *Isle of Plate*. *August* 19. we continued a West course. The 21*st*. in the Morning we saw the same Isle again at North, and in the Afternoon another Isle call'd *Solango*, bearing East-north-east from us in the Evening. It lies close under the Continent. *August* 23. at six Leagues distant South by West, we discovered the Point of St. *Helen*, which is eleven Leagues from *Solango*. In the Low Countries hereabouts they make abundance of Pitch, Tar and Salt, and the Land is full of Bays: We found no great Current here. In the Afternoon a little

The Isle of *Solango*.

Point St. *Helen*.

1680. little without the Point we went near the shore with one of our Canoes, in pursuit of two Bark Logs, where we saw some Men, and a path leading up to the Hills. About five a Clock we doubled the Point, and then descry'd the Point *Chandy*, at six Leagues distance South-south-east from this Point.

Point Chandy.

August 24. we lost sight of Land, standing over for *Cape Blanco*, steering our course South by East, the Wind South-west by South. At the upper end of this Gulph which is made by the two before-mention'd Points, stands the City of *Guayaquil*, the Sea-Port of the rich City of *Quito*, whence they bring hither abundance of Gold, strong broad Cloth, Images, but especially Cocoa-nuts, whereof they make the best Chocolate. The Merchants of *Lima* sometimes send hither their Money in Barks, to be transported to *Spain*; by which means they cheat the King of his Custom. This Town has about 150 large Houses, and 300 lesser Ones: Ships of great Burthen anchor without *Lapina*, and send their Goods in small Vessels to the Town. The same Evening we took a *Spanish* Vessel (after a brisk Engagement of half an Hour) mann'd with 35 Men, and among them 24 *Spaniards*, and 5 or 6 Persons of Quality of the same Nation, who gave us a circumstantial Relation of the Preparations of the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land against us; and that they were sent with their Vessel from *Guayaquil* to discover which way we bent our course. This Evening we saw Point St. *Helen* 9 Leagues to the North East.

The Port of *Guayaquil.*

They take a Prize.

August 26. in the Morning we stood South; and having shared 3276 pieces of Eight taken in the Prize, a Fryar, who had been Chaplain aboard her, was shot to Death. At 10 in the Morning we saw Land, being then 16 Leagues Leeward of Cape *Blanco*. *August* 27. we saw the Continent to be all high white Cliffs, being then at 3 *deg.* 50. *min.* South Latitude. *August* 28. we brought all our Provisions and other Necessaries aboard the *Trinadad*, commanded by Captain *Sharp*, as also Captain *Cox*'s Crew, making now in all no more than 140 Men, 2 Boys, and 55 Prisoners; we weigh'd Anchor before Noon, and made 7 Leagues. The 29th. Captain *Peralta* told us, That the first Place where the *Spaniards* setled in those Parts, after *Panama*, was call'd *Tumber*, now to the Leeward of us: Towards Evening we came a-breast Cape *Blanco*, 3 Leagues distant East from us; were it not for the Windward Current it would be impossible for Ships to get about this Cape; there being such a violent Current to the Leeward in the offing. As we sail'd along we observ'd many Bays betwixt this Cape and Point *Parina*, of which anon. The 30th. by break of Day we were 5 Leagues to the Windward of this Cape, the Land growing lower and lower the nearer you come to *Point Parina*; towards the Evening we were West from the said Point. *August* 31. we stood out farther at Sea, for fear of being discover'd at *Paita*, a Sea-Port Town, seated in a deep Bay 2 Leagues to the Leeward of this Point; 13 Leagues from this Town higher into the Country is another great City call'd *Piura*, seated in a barren Country. This Day we found our selves at 4 *deg.* 55 *min.* South Latitude.

A Fryar punish'd with Death.

Cape *Blanco.*

The *Point. Parina.*

Paita and *Piura.*

September 1. our Course was South by West. The 2d. in the Morning we descry'd a Vessel about 6 Leagues from us in the Wind's Eye; at Night we were 4 Leagues to the Leeward of her, being then at 5 *deg.* 30 *min.* South Latitude: We were the next Morning 3 Leagues of her in the Wind's Eye, and at Night not above 2 Leagues, and half a League to the Leeward. *September* 4. she was only a League distant, and a Mile to the Windward, and coming up with her in the Afternoon, she was boarded and taken by 20 of our Men: Her Cargo consisted of Cocoa-nuts (for Chocolate) raw Silks, *Indian* Cloth, and Thread Stockings, and some Rigging for Ships. They told us, that they had been 19 Days from *Guayaquil*, and had heard of our Exploits near *Panama*, but not imagining we were come so far to the South, they did fall into our Hands. *September* 5. having embark'd all her Cargo aboard our Vessel, we sent most of our Prisoners (except those of Note) away in the said Vessel, being then 30 Leagues from Land at 7 *deg.* 1 *min.* South Latitude. The 6th we shar'd our Booty, at 7 *deg.* 26 *min.* South Latitude. *September* 8. we saw a Vessel at about 8 *deg.* 0 *min.* South Latitude, but did not chace her; being unwilling to be hindred in our Voyage to *Arica*. We saw here for divers Mornings successively a dark Cloud in the Sky, which in the North Sea is an infallible forerunner of a Tempest, but always dispersed here.

A Prize chased and taken.

An Observation of those Seas.

September 9. we steer'd South-west by South, and found our selves at 8 *deg.* 12 *min.* South Latitude. The 10th at 9 *deg.* 0 *min.* The 11th we lay by to mend our Rigging, at 10 *deg.* 9 *min.* South Latitude, supposing our selves West from *Cosmey* 90 Leagues. *September* 12. we computed our Westing from *Paita* 84 Leagues, being then at 11 *deg.* 40 *min.* South Latitude. The 13th there happening a great Eclipse of the Sun, I took the Judgment of our Longitude from the *Canary* Isles, which I found 285 *deg.* 35 *min.* and our Latitude 11 *deg.* 45 *min.* South. The 14th the Wind blew hard, yet had we no great Sea. The 15th I found my self to be 23 *deg.* Southward of my reckoning, being in the Latitude of 15 *deg.* 17 *min.* South. The 16th of *September* at 16 *deg.* 41 *min.* *September* 18. at 19 *deg.* 32 *min.* And the 19th of *September* at 20 *deg.* 6 *min.* South. Our Westing from *Paita* 164 Leagues. *September* 20. in the Night we saw the *Magellan Clouds*, so much celebrated among the Seamen in the South Seas: By a clear Observation, we found our selves at 20 *deg.* 25. *min.* South Latitude. *September* 22. at 19 *deg.* 30 *min.* South. And the 23d. *September* at 20 *deg.* 35 *min.* South. *September* 25th we were at 21 *deg.* 57 *min.* South Latitude. And the 26th at 22 *deg.* 5 *min.* South Latitude. The 27th having made 35 Leagues, we found our selves by Observation 22 *deg.* 45 *min.* South, our Meridian difference 68 Leagues and half. *September* 28. We had little Wind, but a great Sea at 22 *deg.* 40. *min.* South Latitude by Observation. *September* 29. we had 3 or 4 smart showers of Rain, the first we had, since we left *Cape Francisco*. By Observation we were at 21 *deg.* 59 *min.* South Latitude: Our allowance was now reduced to 3 Pints and half of Water, and one Cake of boil'd Bread to a Man *per diem*.

1680.

§. XIII. A continuation of their tedious Voyage to *Arica*; want of Water and Provisions: They are discover'd at *Arica*, and dare not Land; they go thence to *Puerto de Hilo*, land there, and take the Town. An Eclipse of the Sun. The *Magellan Clouds*.

Their Allowance shortned.

October 1. we began with 2 Pints and half a Day, and the second found our selves at 20 *deg.* 29 *min.* South Latitude: I reckon'd us to be 10 Leagues and half to the East of our Meridian, the Port of *Paita*. The 3d. we were at 19 *deg.* 45 *min.* South Latitude. And the 4th. at 19 *deg.* 8 *min.* South. The 6th we had such strong Winds, that our Main Mast was like to have been brought by the Board: By Observation we found our selves at 19 *deg.* 4 *min.* South Latitude. The 8th. of *October* we saw a huge shoal of Fish, some Water Snakes and Seals. *October* 10th. we had variable Winds and a smooth Sea; we saw some Sea-Grass floating upon the Sea, which gave us hopes of being not far from the shore. The Night was cloudy, and so proved the next Day; our Pilot told us it was always a hazy Sky near the shore on these Coasts. The 13th. we saw another sign of our approach towards the Land, *viz.* a Whale; which was confirm'd the next Day by the sight of several Land Fowls and small Birds, which our Pilot told us, appear only 2 or 3 Days sail from the shore. *October* 15th, we were by observation at 18 *deg.* 0 *min.* South Latitude.

Sea-Grass.

Hazy Sky near the shore.

October 17. early in the Morning we descry'd Land, about 8 Leagues distance: In the Evening being no more than 5 Leagues off the shore, the Land appear'd very high and steep. *October* 18. we could just see Land at North-north-east: By Observation we found Latitude 17 *deg.* 17 *min.* South. *October* 22. we saw the Land plain before us, at 6 or 7 Leagues distance, which our Pilot told us was the *Point of Hilo*, at 18 *deg.* 4 *min.* South Latitude. Every Morning and Evening there appears for 2 or 3 Hours a brightness over this Point, caused by the reflection of the Sun on the barren Ground. Being in excessive want of Water, we could have willingly landed here, but durst not for fear of being discover'd, though we had but half a Pint a Day allow'd us. *October* 24. it was resolv'd to land 112 Men at the Hill of *Mora de Sama* (to the South of the *Point of Hilo*) having 18 or 19 white Cliffs under it; but we only sent about night 80 Men in 4 Canoes, to the River of *Juan Diaz* close by *Mora de Sama*, to take some Fishermen; but they return'd the 25th. having not been able either to find the River, or any Houses thereabouts.

They descry Land.

Point of Hilo.

Mora de Sama.

October 26. being about 6 Leagues distant from *Arica*, we left the Ship about 6 a Clock in the Evening, with an intention to land a League to the Windward of that City; we row'd all Night to come to the landing place before Day; but being come near to the Place, we found to our great surprize, that the whole Country had taken the alarm already, several Troops of Horses appearing well arm'd all round the Bay, and on the top of the Hills: Notwithstanding which we would have landed had not the high Sea, which beats most furiously against the Rocks, prevented us from so doing; so we were forced to return to our Ship. The Hill

They endeavour to Land near *Arica*.

Bucare disappointed.

1680. Hill of *Arica* being almoſt cover'd with the Dung of Fowls that build their Neſts there, appears very white at Sea; to the Leeward of it is a ſmall Iſle a Mile from the ſhore, near which we ſaw ſix Ships at Anchor.

The Hill of *Arica*.

Thus finding our ſelves diſappointed in our deſign upon *Arica*, it was reſolved to bear away thence to the Village of *Hilo*. *October* 27. we were a League to the Windward of *Mora de Sama*, the Land betwixt that and *Hilo* forming 2 Bays, and the Coaſt running along North-weſt and South-eaſt. *October* 28. we ſent 50 Men in Canoes to plunder the Town of *Hilo*. The 29th we anchored with our Ships in the Port, 2 Mile from the Town, and found the *Engliſh* Colours put up, our Men having taken the Place without reſiſtance: The *Spaniards* after the firſt Volley of ſhot, being retreated to the Mountains, where they were conſtantly upon their Guard, which made Captain *Sharp* ſend for all the Men we could ſpare from aboard to be at hand, to obviate any ſurprize. *October* 30. ſixty of our beſt Men were ſent to ſearch the Valley belonging to the Town, which they found very well planted with Fig and Olive Trees, Orange, Lemmon, and Lime Trees, beſides many other Fruits. Some Miles up this Valley they came to a great Sugar Rock, where they met abundance of Oil and Moloſſus. From hence they could ſee the *Spaniards* on the tops of the Hills, unto whom they ſent Meſſengers to demand 80 Beeves as a ranſom for the Sugar Rock, which the *Spaniards* promiſed to deliver the next Day at the Port; but did not perform it, intending only to gain time under ſeveral pretences, till they could gather a greater force, to fall upon and cut us to pieces. Our Men beginning to be ſenſible of their intention, ſet Fire to the Sugar Rocks, deſtroy'd the Mills, Houſes, Canes, and Coppers, and carry'd off what Sugar they thought fit, abundance of Oils and moſt excellent Herbs, Roots, and Garden Fruits.

The Town of *Hilo* taken.

The Valley of *Hilo*.

They agree with the *Spaniards*, but are likely to be out-witted by them.

§. XIV. They ſail from *Hilo* to the Port of *Coquimbo*; land there, and put the *Spaniards* to flight: They take, plunder & burn the City of *Serena*. A Stratagem of the *Spaniards* diſcover'd; they retire from *Coquimbo* without any ranſom for the City. They are troubled with the Scurvy. They deſcry Land, but are deceiv'd. A Comet ſeen.

November 3. in the Morning we ſail'd from *Hilo* directly off to Sea. *November* 4. we ſaw the Port of *Hilo* 9 Leagues diſtant at Eaſt-north-eaſt. *November* 6. we were becalm'd, and the next following Day our People began to be much afflicted with the Scurvy, occaſion'd queſtionleſs by the great want of Proviſions we had been forced to endure for ſeveral Months; for before we came to *Hilo*, we liv'd only upon Bread and Water; and the *Spaniards* having carried away with them all Proviſions of Fleſh, we met only with one Mule there, which we kill'd and eat it for a great Dainty. The beſt was that we got ſome Chocolate, of which every Man had a Pint a Day. *November* 9. we found our ſelves by Obſervation at 20 *deg.* 18 *min.* South Latitude. The 10th. we deſcry'd a high Land to our great ſurprize, as believing our ſelves 35 or 40 Leagues from any ſhore; we ſuppos'd it to be *Mora Tarapaca:* But the 11th. in the Morning the like homing of Land appearing, we were ſenſible it was no Land we ſaw the Day before.

November 15. we remov'd our Weſting from *Hilo* 114 Leagues and one third, and our Latitude by Obſervation 23 *deg.* 25. *min.* South. *November* the 16th. at 23 *deg.* 35 *min.* *November* 17. at 23 *deg.* 46 *min.* And the 18th. of *November* 24 *deg.* 20 *min.* South Latitude. *November* 19th. an Hour before Day a Comet appear'd a degree North from the bright Star in *Libra*, the body dull, and the tail pale, ſtretching 18 or 20 *deg.* in length, and pointing directly North-north-weſt. *November* 21. we judged our ſelves 178 Leagues Weſt from *Hilo*, at 26 *deg.* 53 *min.* South Latitude: And the 23d. at 27 *deg.* 46 *min.* *November* 25. we found our ſelves by Obſervation at 29 *deg.* 57 *min.* The Meridian difference 135 Leagues and one third. *November* 28. we found our ſelves by Obſervation at 30 *deg.* 16 *min.* South Latitude; and Meridian diſtance 88 Leagues. *November* 29. we ſaw two or three great Fowls, which our Pilot told us, us'd to appear 70 or 80 Leagues off from the Iſle of *Juan Fernandez*.

December 2. We deſcry'd Land, which appeareth very high about Noon, at 6 Leagues diſtance, at 30 *deg.* 38 *min.* South Latitude, being the Coaſt of *Coquimbo*, and as we ſail'd with all the Sail we had, at the rate of 9 Leagues every Watch, we deſign'd to get into the Bay of *Coquimbo* before Night; but the Wind blowing too high, we were forced to lower our Sails; however about midnight, it being calm, we put 100 Men in our Canoes, with a deſign to ſurprize *Serena*, a conſiderable City on that Coaſt.

Great Sea Fowls.

They ſee Land.

Bay of *Coquimbo*.

December 3. When we left the Ship, we had two Leagues to row, and as the Canoe wherein I was, prov'd heavier than the reſt, we did not get aſhore till it was broad Day; near a Storehouſe, which we found our Men had paſs'd unperceived in the dark: After their landing, they perceiv'd themſelves to be diſcovered, being immediately encountred by 100 *Spaniſh* Horſe: we that were behind, at the noiſe of the Guns, made all the haſte we could to their aſſiſtance, but before we came up with them, they had already (though no more than 35 in number) forced the *Spaniards* to retreat towards the Town. Here they made a ſhew of rallying, but ſeeing our Forces united, they kept at a diſtance, never coming within the reach of our Guns. Coming to the Town we found the Inhabitants fled with their Riches and beſt Moveables; this City being a conſiderable Place in thoſe Parts, adorn'd with ſeven large Churches (four whereof belong to Monaſteries) and one Chapel: The Houſes had their Gardens and Orchards well ſtored with Fruits, and among the reſt with Strawberries as big as our Wal-nuts, and of a luſcious taſte. The Merchants and Tradeſmen of *Serena*, as I told you, having receiv'd intelligence of our approach from *Arica*, had either hidden or carry'd away all their precious Moveables; ſo our Boatſwain, with 40 Men, was ſent into the Country, to find out where the *Spaniards* lay conceal'd; but they having alſo receiv'd information of their coming, had withdrawn themſelves from thence to more remote places. This Morning our Ship anchored near the Storehouſe, call'd *Tertinga*, where we landed before with our Canoes.

1680. They land and take the City of *Serena*. They rout 100 *Spaniſh* Horſe.

Serena a conſiderable place. Large Strawberries.

Next Morning being *December* 4. a Meſſenger was ſent by the Enemy to offer a ranſom for the City, which was agreed for the ſumm of 95000 pieces of Eight, to be paid the next Day. The next following Day at 9 a Clock at Night there happen'd an Earthquake, of which we were very ſenſible in the Church of St. *John*, where we had our chief *Corps du Guard*. *December* 6. The *Spaniards* having made no account of their promiſe concerning the Ranſom, we ſet Fire to every Houſe in the Town, and thus left it, carrying along with us what Plunder we had got, beſides what we had ſent before with two Parties to the Ship. In our march towards the Bay, we beat up an Ambuſcade of 250 Horſe, laid there to ſurprize our Men, in caſe any Parties had been ſent before with the Booty to the Ship. Coming to the Sea ſide, we underſtood that our Ship had been likely to have been burnt by an unuſual Stratagem contriv'd by the *Spaniards*, they had blown up a Horſes Hide like a Bladder, upon which a Man had ventur'd to ſwim from the ſhore to the Stern of the Ship; where having cramm'd Brimſtone, and other combuſtible Matter betwixt the Rudder and the Stern, he fir'd it with a Match, and ſet the Rudder on Fire: Our Men miſtruſting the Priſoners, were at firſt put under a great conſternation, but recovering themſelves, did run to the place where the Fire was, and by good fortune extinguiſh'd it before it could make any conſiderable progreſs. They ſent a Boat aſhore immediately, and finding the Hide and a Match lighted at both ends, they were ſoon convinced what it was that had occaſion'd this danger: However our Officers, to rid their Hands of the Priſoners, who were only a burthen to them, and might perhaps by this example be enticed to make the like attempts, thought it their ſafeſt way to releaſe as well the Hoſtages given us for the Ranſom of the City, as the other Priſoners aboard us, as Captain *Peralta*, *Don Thomas de Argandona*, and ſeveral other Priſoners of Note: Which done, we all embark'd the ſame Day.

They agree about the Ranſom. An Earthquake. They fire *Serena*. An odd contrivance to burn a Ship. Diſcharge the Priſoners.

§. XV. They ſet ſail from *Coquimbo* for the Iſle of *Juan Fernandez*; miſery, and danger they undergo: They mutiny and declare Capt. *Watling* Commander in chief: They meet three *Spaniſh* Men of War at the ſaid Iſle. The *Iſle of Birds*. Large Birds ſeen.

The next Day in the Afternoon, being *December* 7. we ſet ſail, ſteering our courſe for the Iſle of *Juan Fernandez*, not far from the Coaſt of *Coquimbo*. At Night we were 5 Leagues diſtant thence, at North-weſt by North. The Southermoſt Iſle of thoſe call'd *de los Praxaros*, or *Iſle of Birds*, being North-north-weſt from us; and *December* 8. it bore North-eaſt of us, at 3 Leagues diſtance: It lies 4 Leagues from the Continent, and about 2 Leagues from the next Iſle of the ſame name. In the Evening we were 5 Leagues Weſt from the ſaid Iſle. *December* 9. We ſuppoſed our ſelves 13 Leagues Weſt from the ſaid Iſle. *December* 12. Being a fair Day, we were by Obſervation at 30 *deg.* 6 *min.* South Latitude: And the 13th at 30 *deg.* 45 *min.* The 14th of *December*, we found by Obſervation 30 *deg.* 30 *min.* South; and the 15th of *December* 30 *deg.* 42 *min.* South. The 17th. of *December* we took another Obſervation, and found 30 *deg.* 51 *min.* South Latitude. The 19th. we ſaw ſome of thoſe large Birds we mention'd before, which made our Pilot ſay, we were now in the Meridian of the Iſle of *Juan Fernandez*. The 20th. we found by Obſervation 32 *deg.* 20 *min.* South Latitude, and Meridian difference 123 Leagues. *December* 23d. We deſcry'd Land, we ſaw again in the Evening, and found it afterwards to be the Weſtremoſt Iſle of *Juan Fernandez*,

1680. *Fernandez*, which is nothing but a bare Rock, without Riding or Landing near it.

They see the Isle of *Juan Fernandez*.

December 24. We saw the Isle it self of *Juan Fernandez* 16 Leagues South by East, and at 8 a Clock the same Morning at 5 Leagues distance to the East. I observ'd neither Fish nor Fowls about this Isle, both usually found near other Islands: Our Pilot told me, That he had made many Voyages to this Island, but never saw either Fowl or Fish hereabouts. Our Latitude by observation 33 *deg.* 50 *min.* South. *December* 25. This Morning we were about 8 Leagues from the other Isle, bearing South-south-east from us; at 8 in the Morning we were right abreast with it. For here are 2 Isles together; the biggest being 3 Leagues and half in length, neareſt North-west and South-east, the lesser is only 1 League in circumference: Both the Isles appearing to us like one entire Rock, we sent out one of our Canoes to seek a good place for anchoring and landing; they found a stately Bay at the South end of the Isle, but it lies open to the South and South-east Winds Here we anchored towards Evening, at 11 fathom Water, about a Furlong from the shore; but before we could Land, we were forced to kill abundance of Seals, they lying so thick all along the Bay, that if we had not made room for us, we could not have set foot ashore. By a clear observation from the middle of the Isle, I found it at 33 *deg.* 45 *min.* South Latitude, and Meridian distance 99 Leagues. *December* 26. We sent a Canoe to see whether they could find any secure riding from the South Winds, which blow most on this Coast; they return'd, and brought word, that there was another Bay on the North side, where there was good riding at 14 fathom Water, a quarter of a Mile from the shore; and that there was store of Wood there, which we wanted here. At the same time, some Men sent out to catch Goats, kill'd about 600 of them. The 28th I and 10 more of our Company went ashore in 2 Canoes to fetch fresh Waters; but the Wind encreasing in the mean while our Ship was forced to put to Sea, so that we were forced to hide our selves in a Hole under the sides of a a Hill, where we observ'd abundance of Holes like those of our Cony-Warens, which are the nests and roosting places of certain Birds, call'd *Pradelas* by the *Spaniards*, that breed in vast numbers in this Isle. The 29th we went farther to the North to look for our Ship, where we made a Fire in the Bay, and saw some of the Amphibious Creatures, call'd by most Authors *Sea Lyons*, from 11 to 14 foot long. In the afternoon a Canoe came from aboard the Ship to bring us some Provisions, and to cut Wood; the Men told us, that our Ship came to an anchor in the North Bay, but that the Cable breaking in half an Hour, they were forced to get out again to Sea We reposed this Night upon Beds of Fern, and saw abundance of Trees like *English* Box, bearing a sort of green Berries, smelling like Pepper. *December* 30th. The Ship could not as yet come into the Harbour, but the next Day in the afternoon, they came to an anchor at 15 fathom Water, within a Cables length from the shore. About this Isle is vast plenty of Fish, especially of Seals, which delighting to lye in fresh Water, we were forced to send some Men before to beat them off, when our Men went to fill their Jars with Water.

Come to an Anchor here.

The Birds *Pradelas*.

Sea Lyons.

The Ship forced to Sea twice.

Is got in again.

1681. *January* 1. We catch'd Crawfish bigger than Lobsters: For 3 or 4 Days following we had much ado to keep at Anchors, by reason of the violent Gusts of Wind, and the impetuosity of the Current, and at last were forced to sail *January* 5. into the *West Bay*, where we achored at 25 fathom Water, a quarter of a Mile from the shore. The same time there arose a kind of a Mutiny among our Men, some being for returning to *England*, or some of the *English* Plantations, round about *America*, thro' the *Streights of Magellan*, (as Captain *Sawkins* design'd) others being for staying longer in those Seas, till they had got more Booty. *January* 6. The divisions among our Men were risen to that heighth, that they deposed Captain *Sharp*, and in his stead set up one of their Company, named *John Watling* for their Commander; which Captain *Sharp* and his Friends (being out numbred) were forced to consent to. *January* 7. We found in this Bay a Cross cut in the Bark of a Tree, and several Letters besides. *January* 10. I saw a shoal of Fish above a Mile long. The 11th some of our Men, who had been sent ashore, to fill Water, cut Wood, and catch Goats, return'd the 12th in the Morning, with advice, that they had seen 3 Ships like Men of War at Sea; within half an Hour we saw the Ships to the Leeward of the Isle; so taking all our Men aboard, and slipping our Cables, we put to Sea immediately. In this Isle of *Juan Fernandez* grew certain Trees call'd *Bilby Trees*, the top whereof are like our Cabbages, and used for the same purpose. Here is also plenty of Fish, some of 20 pound weight, and seldom under 2 pound. They abound also in very good Timber. It is situate at 33 *deg.* 45 *min.* South Latitude, 95 Leagues from the Continent. The Flats of both the Isles lie North-West and South-West.

Anchor in another Bay.

Mutiny among the men.

They chose Mr. *Watling* for their Commander.

They discry 3 Men of War.

1681. Cabbage Trees.

Being now out at Sea, we saw the 3 *Spanish* Men of War put out their bloody Flag, which we did also in defiance of them, tho' the biggest of them, call'd *El Santo Christo*, carried 800 Tuns and 12 Guns; the second named *S. Francisco*, 600 Tuns and 10 Guns; and the third, 350 Tuns. We out-brav'd them courageously that day, keeping close under the Wind, tho' we were not very willing to engage them. We observ'd them to be of the same mind, else it would have been no difficult matter for them to come up with us. *January* 13. We saw one of these Ships under the Leeward-side of the Isle, supposing the other two were at Anchor thereabouts, at 7 Leagues distance from us. We stood in towards the Isle as if we intended to engage them; but in the afternoon agreed with joint consent to give them the slip, which we did under favour of a North-east Wind and the approaching Night.

Strength of *Spanish* Men of War.

They give the *Spaniards* the slip.

Next morning, *viz. January* 14. we were 4 Leagues from the Isle of *Juan Fernandez*. The 15th and 16th, hazy Weather. The 17th, we found our selves by a clear observation 29 *deg.* 47 *min.* South Lat. Eastning 70 Leag. and the 18th, 27 *d.* 29 *m.* S. Lat. *Jan.* 19. finding our selves at 25 *deg.* 0 *min.* S. We resolved to steer our course for *Arica*, in hopes to make our Fortune there. In the evening we saw Land at a great distance. The 20th with break of day we saw Land again at 9 or 10 Leagues distance Eastning 92 Leagues. The 21st, we sail'd North by East and North North-East along the Continent. The 22d, we look'd out for the Isle of *Tyneque*. The 23d, we still kept along the Coast North North-East, which appears to be full of Bays, we were at 21 *deg.* 49 *min.* South. The 24th, we were at 21 *deg.* 2 *min.* South Latitude. Captain *Watling* with 25 Men in 2 Canoes, went to seek the Isle of *Tyneque*, being then 12 Leagues from the Shore; they return'd the next day, without being able to find it. One of these Canoes had landed on the Continent, where they found a Hutt made of Whalebones, and some broken Jars; they saw also divers good anchoring places along the Coast. The same evening, we sent another Canoe to seek for the same Island; and the 26th we sail'd North, two Leagues from Shore, at 20 *deg.* 21 *min.* South Lat.

§. XVI. They sail towards *Tyneque*, they resolve for *Arica*, which they attempt, but are repulsed.

They seek in vain for the Isle of *Tyneque*.

Whilst our *Spanish* Pilot was telling that there was very rich Silver Mines on the Continent just over against us, but that the *Spaniards* durst not venture to dig them for fear of an Invasion, we saw a Smoke made by our Men near a white Cliff, which prov'd to be the Isle of *Tyneque*. We sent immediately another Canoe with Men to second them; but soon after the other return'd, bringing along with them two old *Spaniards* and two *Indians*. Windward of the said Isle, is a little Village of 18 or 20 Houses, inhabited by about 50 People, who have a small Chapel of Stone. The poor *Indians*, the Natives of this Isle, are a strong sort of People, but go quite naked, and live like Brutes. Their fresh Water they are forced to fetch from the River of *Camarones*, 11 Leagues to the Leeward of the Isle. They frequently chaw a sort of Leaves, in taste coming near to our Bay-leaves, which make their Teeth turn green. *Jan.* 27. One of the old Prisoners taken the day before on this Isle, being examin'd about the present Condition of *Arica*, and having said several things not relishing according to Captain *Watling*'s sentiments, he was shot to death by his order, notwithstanding Captain *Sharp* was much against it; and seeing he could not prevail, washed his hands, told them, *They would pay for this piece of Cruelty at their next Attack upon Arica*; which prov'd too true to their cost. The other old Man told them, That the Isle of *Tyneque* was the Propriety of the Governor of *Arica*, where the *Spaniards* had made Entrenchments not only round the Town, but also in every Street, to defend themselves to the last extremity; That there were 3 Ships from *Chile* in the Harbour of *Arica*, which was lately strengthened by an additional Fort of 12 Guns, with several other matters relating to the present state of that Place. We found our selves that day at 20 *deg.* 13 *min.* South Latit. about 8 Leagues from shore, and took the Bark that fetches fresh Water from the River of *Camarones* for the Island. Aboard her and 5 Canoes we put our Men the next day, and row'd and sail'd all night towards the shore of *Arica*: whither we got, *January* 29. by break of day, and hid our selves all day

Silver Mines.

They find the Isle of *Tyneque*.

An old Prisoner shot to death.

Capt. *Sharp* opposes it.

They embark for *Arica*.

1681. among the Rocks (for fear of being discover'd) about 5 Leag. to the S. of *Arica* near *Quebrada de S. Vitor*; at night we row'd on; and the 30th by Sun-rise landed among some Rocks, 4 Mile to the S. of *Arica*. Here we landed 92 Men, leaving the rest for the defence of the Boats. At parting we agreed with them upon a certain Signal, *viz.* That in case they should see us make one Fire from the Town or adjacent Fields, they should come after us to the Harbour of *Arica* with one Canoe; but that if they saw the Smoke ascend in two places, they should bring all away. We were scarce come half way to Town, when we saw 3 Horsemen on a Hill, who no sooner got sight of us, but they rid in a full gallop towards the Town. Tho' this gave us sufficient reason to believe we were discover'd, Captain *Watling* order'd 40 of the best Men to attack the Fort, whilst the rest march'd on to the Town. Accordingly we assaulted the Castle for some time, but perceiving our Men in the Valley hard put to it by the Enemy, we advanced very seasonably to their assistance; several of our Men being already killed and wounded in this Engagement; but being reinforced by our Body, we made them give way, beating them from one Retrenchment to another, and filling the Streets with dead Carcases: The worst was, that having not a sufficient Number of Men to man them, the Enemy repossessed themselves of them, as soon as we had left them: Besides that, the Prisoners we took were no small incumberance to us. We thought it therefore our securest way to renew the Attack upon the Castle, which we did with great vigour; but perceiving that the Enemy had repossessed themselves of most of the advantageous Posts of the Town, in order to cut off our retreat, we turn'd against them. Here the Combat grew very hot, the Enemies encreasing still in number, and beating us from place to place: So that finding Captain *Watling* with many of our Men killed, and more of them wounded, we began to remember Captain *Sharp*'s words: And seeing our selves reduced to the utmost Distress, we had once more recourse to his Conduct, intreating him to take upon him the Command, in order to relieve us from this imminent Danger. It was a good while before he could be prevail'd upon to head this mutinous Crew; till at last moved by their earnest Entreaties, he gave his Orders, and carried us out of the Town without any considerable loss; they would have pursued us into the Plain, but perceiving that Captain *Sharp* by his good Conduct had embattled us in such a manner, as that we were ready to receive them, they retreated behind their Entrenchments. Thus we continued our march in good order to the Sea-side; and it was high time we did; for the *Spaniards* having examined our Surgeons, (left in the Town to look after our wounded Men) they were by them inform'd of the Signal we had left with our Men in the Boats, and thereupon immediately made 2 Fires: For no sooner came we to the Sea-side, but we saw our Boats already under sail, so that had we tarried any longer, we must of necessity have fallen into the Enemy's hands.

Land not far from it.

Are discovered.

They Assault the Fort.

Take the Town.

The Fort holds out.

Capt. *Watling* kill'd.

They are beaten back.

And retreat to their Canoes.

§. XVII. A description of *Arica*.

Thus having fail'd in our design upon *Arica* we ply'd *January ult.* to and from the Port. The Houses of *Arica* being built only of Earth, were scarce 11 Foot high. The Town was four-square, standing at one corner, and commanded by an adjacent Hill. It is the only Sea-port Town hereabouts; and hence is fetch'd all the Plate that is carried to *Lima*, the Metropolis of *Peru*. *February* the 1st, we shared some old Plate amounting only to 37 pieces of Eight a Man, at 19 *deg.* 6 *min.* S. Lat. and *February* 16, we were at 27 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. Lat. It being an Eclipse of the Moon, we had Calms for 5 or 6 days after. *March* 1. we found Lat. by observation 34 *deg.* 1 *min.* S. Lat. Now the rainy Weather began in these Seas. *March* 3, a sudden resolution was taken by the Crew to go to the Main for Water, thence to Leeward, and so to return by Land towards home, or at least to the *North Seas*; but Providence was pleased to order it otherwise. *March* 10. we were put to the allowance of one Bread Cake *per diem* for each Man. *March* 12. we fell in with the Main-land to the Leeward of *Coquimbo*. Within the Island of *Paxaros*, are double Lands, in the Valleys whereof the Copper that comes from the adjacent Mines is melted in Furnaces. Off to Seaboard is a rocky Land, and within sandy; 8 Leagues distant to the Leeward, is a rocky Point surrounded with several Rocks; about half a Mile to the Leeward of which Point, is the Harbour of *Guasco*, having three Rocks just against the Anchoring-place, close under the shore. Here we landed 60 Men, but upon our approach the People ran all away.

They sail from hence to the Port of *Guasco*.

They land again at *Hilo*.

The rainy Season begins.

They see the Continent. Copper Furnaces.

The Port of *Guasco*.

They land.

However, we took one *Indian* who conducted us 6 or 7 Miles into the Country to an *Indian* Town of about 80 Houses; thence we return'd back to the Church, which is a League from the Sea-side: We saw vast number of Sheep and Goats, of the first we carried off 120, and 80 of the last; as also 500 Jars of Water out of an adjacent fresh-water River, which was excellent good, but very hard to come at, by reason of the high Banks. They abound also in Oxen, but these they had driven away. The Country produces also Corn, Pease, Beans, and other sorts of Grain: For Fruits it equalizes if not surpasses *Coquimbo*. We saw here also a Corn-Mill, and found in it 200 bushels of Meal, which we carried aboard our Vessel, with the Sheep and Goats. Every House here has small Canals of Water in their Yards or Courts, but we found them empty of every thing except some Provisions. The Hills are barren, but the great Plain near the Port of *Guasco* very fruitful. It is govern'd by a Deputy-Governor and a Fryar, under the Jurisdiction of the City of *Serena*.

1681.

An account of *Guasco*.

March 15. we set sail from *Guasco*. *March* 20. we saw the high double Land call'd *Moro de Horse* to the E. by N. at 24 *deg.* S. Lat. and to the N. at 10 Leagues distance: The high Hill of *Morro Moreno* situate at 23 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. *March* 21. we were W. from the Bay of *Menillones*; the Point of which Bay 1 League upwards, represents a Sugar-loaf. *March* 22. our Canoes went to the River *Loa*, and 2 Leagues to the Leeward of it, to Fisher Town, but could find no landing place. The next day another Company of Men was sent, but return'd with no better success. If we may believe our Pilot, Sir *Francis Drake* watered and built a Church here, which is now standing on the Sea-side near the River, the entrance whereof is now dry. From the said Church goes a broad Path up the Hills leading to *Pica*.

Morro de Horse. *Morro Moreno*.

The River *Loa*.

March 24. we also saw Land at 18 Leagues distance, and found by observation 20 *deg.* 10 *min.* S. Latitude. *March* 27. we could see *Mora de Sama* and *Lacumba*, at 18 *deg.* 17 *min.* S. by observation. The same evening we landed, and surprized the Town of *Hilo*; and as the Inhabitants had no notice of our coming, so we catch'd most of them asleep, and made them Prisoners together with the Fryar. The River was overflow'd at that time.

They land and surprize the Town of *Hilo*.

Here we were inform'd that of the wounded Men we had left in *Arica*, only 10 were left alive, including the 3 Surgeons; but that we had killed 70 of the *Spaniards*, and wounded double the number. They farther told us, That of 45 Men sent from *Hilo* to the assistance of those of *Arica*, there return'd no more than 2. *March* 29. in the evening we set sail again from *Hilo*.

They hear of the wounded Men left at *Arica*.

From the 29th of *March* to the 10th of *April* nothing remarkable happen'd in our Voyage. We could this day hear the breaking of the Sea against the Shore, tho' we saw no Land, it being hazy Weather. However, about noon it clearing up, we found our selves in the Bay *de Malabrigo*. The Land of this Bay runs due E. and W. at 6 *deg.* 35 *min.* S. Lat. From hence we saw the Leeward Island of *Lobos*, a rocky, scraggy Isle, on the S. W. whereof is a red Hill much frequented by the *Indian* Fishermen, at 6 *deg.* 15 *min.* S. Lat. The same evening we descry'd the Point of *Aguja*. *Apr.* 26. we came within a League of the West-end of the Isle of *Plate*: And the next day there happen'd another Division among our People, some being for returning over Land; and accordingly 47 of them left our Ship, the rest engaging themselves to stand by one another to the last. We found our selves at 1 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. Lat. but *April* 18. at 25 *min.* N. Lat. The 21. we saw some Tortoises and abundance of Fish; we caught 26 small Dolphins. The 23d. there fell great showers of Rain, which made us save what Water we could. *April* 24. we had by an observation 7 *deg.* 37 *min.* N. Lat. Merid. difference 92 Leagues. We caught every day some Dolphins and Bonito's. *April* 25. by break of day we found our selves close under the Isle of *Cano*, at 8 *deg.* 34 *min.* N. Lat. we sent a Canoe ashore; they found good Water, but an open Road. The next day we came to an Anchor at the East side of it, where it is not above a League over. But in the afternoon we went from thence, and anchored within shot of the N. E. Point of the Isle. On the North-side it has many Rivulets of excellent Water in sandy Bays. It is full (all over) of Cocoa Trees; we saw also good Hogs, Turtle Doves, and vast store of Fish. *April* 30. we set sail from the said Isle, and stood N. W. We had great Thunder, Lightning and Rains, as likewise the next following day, being then at 9 *deg.* N. Latitude. *May* 5. in the Evening

§. XVIII. They sail towards the Gulph of *Nicoya*. Some observations belonging to that Voyage. The Bay of *Malabrigo*. The Isle of *Lobos*.

Forty seven of their Men leave them.

The Isle of *Cano*.

They set sail from the Isle of *Cano*.

1681. Evening we were right off of the Gulph of *Nicoya*, and *May* the 6th saw the Cape very plain before us. N. by E. from it are some Isles at 8 *Leagues* distance, but close to the Continent. We directed our course N.N.W. to the biggest of them, on whose E. S. E. side are two or three small Rocks. The Continent Eastward discover'd a fine Plain, with a spacious Road in it, to be seen a good way at Sea. At noon the Port of *Caldero* bore N. from us. We anchored near the *Eastern* Keys or Isles at 19 Fathom ouzy Ground. *May* the 8th, in the Morning, Captain *Sharp* went with 22 Men in two Canoes, to surprize some Vessels. Soon after he sent for more Men; so another Canoe with 8 Men went to his assistance to a small Isle call'd *Chira*, where they found about 8 or 9 Houses and a little Chapel, the poor Remnants of a considerable Nation, but now almost destroy'd by the *Spaniards*. Going a *League* up a Creek of the Sea, we took 2 Sail, and the 9th return'd to our Ship. That Night Captain *Sharp* with 24 Men went into another Creek, where they took several Prisoners, and among them a Shipwright with his Men and Tools, whom they brought ashore, as being likely to do us good service in altering our Ship. *May* the 16th, we began to work on our Ship. The 18th, we heard the firing of 30 or 40 Guns on the Continent, and had most prodigious Lightening and Thunder. *May* the 25th, we finish'd our Work, *viz.* the taking down the Deck of our Ship, and the length of every Mast, and so sent home the *Spanish* Carpenters. The 26th, we fell down as low as *Vanero*. The 27th, we drove down with the Tide as low as *Cavallo*, another place in this Gulph, where we took in some more Water. *May* the 28th, we sail'd thence; and at 29 *Leagues* off that rich and rocky Shore had no more than 7 Fathom Water. Behind the Isle is a Town call'd *New Cape Blanco*. *May* 29, we saw *Cape Blanco*.

Puerto Caldere.

The Isle of *Chira.*

They alter their Ship.

§. XIX. *June* the 1st, there being but little Wind, the Tide drove us to the West of the Cape *Blanco*. At 2 Miles distance off of this Cape, lies a very barren Isle, at 9 *deg.* 30 *min.* N. Lat. The Coast thence runs N. W. half W. and grows lower by degrees towards Cape *Gujones*, which we saw at 7 *Leagues* distance, at 10 *deg.* N. Lat.

Cape *Blanco*

Cape *de Gujones.*

Puerto de Velas. *June* the 2d, we saw the Sand of *Puerto de Velas* at N. W. by N. appearing like several Isles, at 7 *Leagues* distance. This Evening it was resolved to bear up for *Gulfo Dulce*, there to careen our Vessel, and then to cruize about the Equinoctial. *June* the 3d, our course was S. E. with a brisk gale. *June* the 4th, in the Evening we stood N. E. and descry'd Land, about 24 *Leagues* from Cape *Blanco*. *June* the 5th, we saw the Isle of *Cano* bearing E. S. E. from us. We saw abundance of Fish, and some Water-Snakes of divers colours. *June* the 6th, we had the Isle of *Cano* at 9 *Leagues* distance, and *Punta Borrica* at the same, lying at 8 *deg.* North Latitude.

Gulfo Dulce. The West-end of the *Golfo Dulce* is very high Land, with a high Rock lying close to it, besides two Rocks which lie farther off, the uttermost a Mile from the shore. The East-side is also high, but breaks into small Points and Bays, growing lower by degrees to the Point of *Borrica*. We anchored in 8 and a half Fathom of Water, a Mile within the Mouth of the Gulph, which is near 3 *Leagues* over. *June* the 7th, we weighed Anchor again, and going 2 *Leagues* higher, anchored in 7 and an half Fathom Water. *June* the 8th, we weighed Anchor again, and the higher we went in, the deeper we found the Gulph, at last to 30 Fathom. We sent a Canoe to fetch Water, and look out for a place to lay our Ship in: They landed, and brought an *Indian* with two Boys aboard us. We received them very civily, and they told us, That lately a *Spanish* Priest having been among them, charged them upon his Blessing not to come near any Ship with red Colours, meaning the *English*. We came to an Anchor close to one of the Isles, in a Bay, where two Rivers of fresh Water were within a Stone's cast off one another, in 27 and an half Fathom Water, not above a Cable's length from the Mark of low Water. The poor *Indians* inhabiting near this Gulph would come every Day aboard us, bring us Honey, Plantains, and other Necessaries, and converse very familiarly with our People. We observed their Darts to be headed with Iron, as sharp as any Razor. About this time one of our Prisoners taken in the Gulph of *Nicoya* inform'd us by what Stratagem the *Spaniards* had forced the *Indians* of *Darien* to conclude a Peace with them since our departure thence. They sent a certain *Frenchman*, who run away from us to the *Spaniards* at the Isle of *Tabago* to the Rivers Mouth, which discharges it self from the Province of *Darien* into the *South Sea*. Being arrived there, he told the *Indians*, that the *English* were come back from their Exploits in the *South Seas*, inviting them at the same time to come aboard them. The poor *Indians* overjoy'd at this News, 40 of their chief Men went aboard the *Spanish* Vessel, which carried them to *Panama*, where they were detained till they consented to a very disadvantageous Peace.

The *Indians* of *Golfo Dulce.*

The *Spaniards* force the *Indians* of *Darien* to a Peace by a Stratagem.

1681.

Our Vessel being careen'd, we began *June* 28. to turn out towards the Mouth of the *Golfo Dulce*, with an intention to cruize under the Line. *June* the 29th, the Gulph bore N. W. by W. 7 *Leagues* distant, and Point *Borrica* 3 and an half *Leagues*. The next Day, we reckoned our selves 18 and an half *Leagues* S. S. E. of Point *Borrica*. *July* the 1st, we were by observation 6 *deg.* 10 *min.* N. Lat. and saw great quantities of Fish. *July* the 2d, we were at 5 *deg.* 20 *min.* N. Lat. and the 5th, at 2 *deg.* 20 *min.* N. This Morning we saw Land to the S. which proved to be the Point of *Manglares*. *July* the 6th, in the Evening, we were close in with low Land, at 2 *deg.* 2 *min.* N. Lat. and the 7th, at 1 *deg.* 48 *min.* *July* the 8th, we made a high Land all along, being the Bay of *S. Mateo*. *July* the 9th, we stood fair in with the Harbour of *Tucames*; we were then at 1 *deg.* 22 *min.* N. Lat. by a clear observation. *July* the 10th, at 1 *deg.* 31 *min.* N. About Noon we descry'd a Sail, and made her prize before Night. She was call'd *S. Pedro*, and had 21000 pieces of Eight aboard her in eight Chests, 10000 more in Bags, and some Plate, besides 40 Seamen, and some Merchants and Fryars. We were the 12th of *July* at 1 *deg.* 20 *min.* N. Lat. *July* the 13th, seeing abundance of Fires ashore, we durst not venture into the Bay of *S. Mateo*, but bore away to the River of *S. Tiago* 6 *Leagues* N. E. from the Bay. *July* the 17th, we found the River of *S. Tiago*, where we spent the two next following Days in providing our selves with Plantains and fresh Water, which we were forced to fetch 4 Miles up the River. We saw several *Indians*, but they would not come near us. *July* the 21st, we stood out and in, and shared the Money in the Bags, reserving the rest till we should be past the Streights of *Magellan*. Our present dividend amounted to 234 pieces of Eight *per* Head. *July* the 23d, we made a clear observation of only 14 *min.* N. Lat. and saw Cape *S. Francisco* to the N. E. of us. *July* the 25th, we were at 1 *deg.* 20 *min.* S. Lat. and *July* the 27th, saw Cape *Passao* 6 *Leag.* distant, at S. S. W. The same Morning we descry'd a Sail; and coming up with her at Noon, she proved to be a Pacquet-boat sent with Letters from *Panama* to *Lima*. We found little of value in her, so we gave them leave to prosecute their Voyage.

§. XX. They sail towards the Line.

The Port of *Tucames*

The River of *S. Tiago.*

Cape *S. Francisco.*

Cape *Passao.*

§. XXI. The next Morning, *July* the 29th, we descry'd another Sail; which we chased, and found her to be a large *Spanish* Merchant Ship full laden. They fired 3 or 4 Guns at us; but no sooner had we given them a Volley of our small Arms, (by which the Captain was kill'd) but they cry'd out for Quarter. We lay at Anchor under Cape *Passao* till the 2d of *August*, where we took a great deal of Plate, some Money, 620 Jars of Wine and Brandy, besides other valuable things, out of the Prize; which done, we turn'd her away, together with the Prisoners, (to save our Provisions) except one *Biscaian*, he being a very good Pilot in these Seas. Then we shared the Plate and Linen, and set Sail with a fresh Gale. *August* the 4th, we shared the ready Money, amounting to 94 pieces of Eight to each Man.

They take a rich Prize

August the 6th, perusing some Letters taken in the last Prize, I understood that the last Party of our Men that left us, were forced to open their way by Land with their Swords, through the *Spaniards* and *Indians*, they having made Peace together since our departure. *August* the 8th, the Current ran so strong against us from the shore that in 24 Hours we lost 3 *Leagues*. *August* the 9th, we came in sight of *Manta*, a Seaport Town, having only a few Houses, but a large Brick Church. This and the next Day we lost in the Night by the Current what we got with the Wind in the Day. However, the 11th, we made hard shift to get to the Windward of the Isle of *Plate*, where we came to an Anchor the 12th.

The Town of *Manta.*

The Isle of *Plate.*

In the Evening, being all pretty much in Liquor, our Slaves took this opportunity to lay a Plot against our Lives, intending to cut us in pieces whilst we were asleep; which they might easily have put in execution, had not one of their Companions discover'd the matter. We staid here till the 16th, making good chear with the Wine and Brandy we had taken. We set sail again the 17th, and the 18th about Noon we were to the Windward of the Isle of *Solango*, being N. E. at three *Leagues* distance. About the same distance from the said

A Plot of the Slaves.

The Isle of *Solango.*

1681. said Isle, are two Rocks call'd *Los Aborcados*. There is also N. N. E. from Point *S. Helen* another high Rock, call'd *Chandny*, & *Leag.* from the said Point, running to the Windward thereof shoaling for half a Mile under Water, about 2 *Leagues* distant from the Continent. *Aug.* the 20th, we saw the Point of *S. Helena* at N. E. by N. 3 *Leagues* distance. *Aug.* the 21st, we reckoned our selves 25 *Leagues* to the S. of *S. Helena*. The 22d, we came close under the shore to the Leewards of a rocky Point call'd *Punta de Mero*. The 24th, about Noon, we were W. from Cape *Blanco*, at 4 *deg.* 13 *min.* South Latitude.

Point *S. Helena.*

The Point of *Mero.*

§. XXII. It being resolv'd among us to surprize *Paita*, Westward off to the Sea, *Aug.* the 25th, (for fear of being discover'd) but about Noon standing in again, we saw the Land, tho' the Weather was hazy. *Aug.* the 27th, we saw *la Silla de Paita* 5 *Leagues* W. S. W. of us. The 28th, at 10 a Clock at Night, we came in close with the Land about half a *League* to the Leeward of the Isle of *Lobos*, and by next Morning under a high and steep Rock, call'd *Pena Horadada*. We sent some of our Men in 2 Canoes to Land, to surprize the Town of *Paita*; but as they had by some way or other got intelligence of our coming, they were reinforc'd by 3 Companies of Horse and Foot, and had made Entrenchments along the Sea side; from whence they gave such a warm salute to our Men, before they got ashore, that they return'd aboard without daring to attempt the Place.

La Silla de Prita.

The Isle of *Lobos.*

They endeavour to surprize *Paita.*

Colan. From hence we stood down the Bay towards *Colan*, a great Town inhabited by rich Fishermen, 2 *Leagues* off *Paita*; they are for the most part *Indians*, as the Inhabitants of *Paita* are chiefly *Spaniards*.

Aug. 29th, finding our selves discover'd, and consequently disappointed of our hopes of making any considerable progress in the *South Seas*, it was unanimously resolv'd to sail towards the Streights of *Magellan*; we reckon'd our selves 13 and an half *Leagues* W. S. W. from *Paita*. *September* the 2d, we had by observation 7 *deg.* 40 *min.* S. Lat. The 6th, at 12 *deg.* 0 *min.* The 7th of *Sept.* 13 *deg.* 24 *min.* S. Lat. The 10th, at 16 *deg.* 40 *min.* S. The 12st, at 17 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. The 13th, at 18 *deg.* 12 *min.* S. The 15th, at 20 *deg.* 9 *min.* S. The 16th, at 20 *deg.* 48 *min.* The 17th, it being Full Moon, and calm, at 21 *deg.* 8 *min.* S. The 18th, at 21 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. The 21st, at 25 *deg.* 15 *min.* S. The 22d, at 26 *deg.* 42 *min.* The 23d, at 27 *deg.* 57 *min.* S. The 24th, at 28 *deg.* 57 *min.* S. We reckoned our selves now distant from *Paita* 302 *Leagues* and two thirds of a *League*. The 27th, at 32 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. with very fair Weather, and a smooth Sea. The 28th, we found by observation 33 *deg.* 16. *min.* S. The 30th, at 35 *deg.* 54 *min.* S.

They bear away for the Streights of *Magellan.*

October the 1st, we had variable Winds, at 36 *deg.* 50 *min.* S. by observation. *Octob.* the 2d, at 38 *deg.* 14. *min.* S. The 4th, at 41 *deg.* 34 *min.* The 5th, at 43 *deg.* 26 *min* S. with a huge Sea. The 8th, the Weather was so tempestuous, that all our Seamen agreed they had never seen the like before: However, it began somewhat to abate at Night. *October* the 9th, the strong W. N. W. Wind had drove us to the S. beyond what could be imagined, if by observation we had not found our selves at 48 *deg.* 15 *min.* S. *October* the 10th, we were at 49 *deg.* 41 *min.* S. Lat. And we reckoned our selves to be E. from *Paita* 69 and an half *Leagues*.

A great Storm.

§. XXIII. *October* the 12th, we were at 50 *deg.* 50 *min.* S. Lat. and our Easting from *Paita* 101 *Leagues*. This Morning at break of Day we descry'd Land to our singular good Fortune, being almost close under the shore before we saw it. Finding the same to be a knot of Islands, we steer'd in for the Continent, where we anchored in a Bay that appear'd pretty safe to us, at 40 Fathom Water, at a Stone's cast from the shore, in very smooth Water. Considering with our selves the time of the Year, and some other circumstances, we resolv'd to Winter here if we could get Provisions. We shot several Geese and small Fowl, and found great plenty of Mussels. Our Captain call'd these Isles *the Duke of York's Islands*. *October* the 13th, we began to moor our Ship into a rocky Point, in a hard and sandy bottom. The Tide flows here 7 Foot. We got this Evening good store of Lamparts. The 14th, we kill'd abundance of Fowl, not unlike Eagles, but with bigger Beaks, and their Nostrils rising from the top of the middle of their Beaks.

They see Land.

Come to an Anchor near the Duke of *York's* Islands.

Fowl and Fish.

A Fowl like an Eagle.

In the Evening, there fell abundance of Snow on the Hills round the Bay, but none where we lay at Anchor; and we caught great store of Lamperts. In some of the adjacent Isles, our Men found Grass of a Fathom long, and some Mussel and Lampert-shells, which made us judge they were not destitute of Inhabitants. 1681.

Sign of Inhabitants.

October the 15th, it blowing hard from the N. the Tree on which our Cable was fasten'd came up by the roots, so that our Rudder touch'd, and breaking our Goose Neck, we were in great danger, had the Wind continu'd. *October* the 17th, it snowed all the Night long on the Hills, and we saw ashore the Footsteps of People, but could find none. The 18th, we were by a clear observation at 50 *deg.* 40 *min.* S. Lat. We had every Day plenty of Lamperts. The 22d, we kill'd a *Penguin*. The 26th, we found Cockles like ours in *England*. The 27th, being a tempestuous Night, but a fair Day, some of our People were gone in a Canoe beyond the Bay where we first anchored, and thereabouts met with an *Indian* Boat, with 3 *Indians* in them, who at the sight of them leap'd over-board; one whereof our Men shot, the 2d being a Woman, got away; and the 3d, a Lad of 18 Years, was taken and brought aboard us. He had no other Covering but a Seal's Skin, was Squinteyed, and his Hair very short. We could understand nothing of his Language, but by the pointing with his Fingers to the Gulph, we understood that there were more People not far from thence with long Beards, and that were Maneaters. For the rest he appear'd very innocent and foolish. His Arms were a Club and a Dart to throw at an Enemy, pointed with Wood. The Boat was flat bottom'd and sharp built at both ends, in the middle whereof they had a Fire-place. The 28th, another Canoe was sent to search narrowly for more *Indians*, they saw several Huts, but the Inhabitants were fled. They return'd in the Evening with store of Lamperts and Mussels six and an half Inches long. The Mussels our *Indian* Prisoner opened with his Fingers better than our Men could do with their Knives. *Octob.* the 30th, we saw many *Penguins*; they will pad on the Water with their Wings very fast, but can't fly by reason of the bulk of their Bodies. This Day the Sun melted the Snow apace. *Octob.* the 31st, one of our Canoes return'd from the Eastern shore, and told us, That they had discover'd deep and safe Harbours, but they had some Rocks in them, which however were not dangerous, having Weeds for two Fathoms in circumference round them.

A Penguin Cockles.

They take an *Indian* Boat.

Large Mussels.

November the 2d, I took the Polar distance of the South Star of the Cocks Foot, and found it to be 28 *deg.* 25 *min.* I observed also the *Magellan* Clouds, the lesser at 14 *deg.* 5 *min.* and the greater at 14 *deg.* 25 *min.* *Nov.* the 3d, we began to prepare for our departure, there being no safe riding here, nor sufficient Provisions. As we went out, we perceiv'd at the East side of the Gulph, that the *Indians* had made a Fire, to give notice, as we supposed, of our departure. About 6 a Clock we got without the Mouth, and with much ado got clear of some Breeks, Riffs and Rocks, lying 4 *Leagues* from the Mouth of the Gulph.

§. XXIV. *November* the 6th, we had lost sight of Land; and the 7th, found our selves by observation at 52 *deg.* 3 *min.* Lat. and the variation of the Needle to N. E. about 15 *deg.* The 8th, we were by observation at 53 *deg.* 27 *min.* S. and saw abundance of Fowls and Seals. The 10th and 11th, we had exceeding tempestuous Weather; but the 12th, the fury of it was quite allay'd, and it cleared up at 10 in the Morning, at 55 *deg.* 25 *min.* S. Lat. We found a violent Current to the S. W. so we resolved for the Streights of *S. Vincent*, or the Streights of *Fernando de Magellan*. We saw this Day a kind of Sea-fowl, with Heads and Feet like *Muscovy* Ducks, with 2 Fins like the fore Fins of *Tortoises*, and their hinder Parts like those of *Seals*; for the rest, they have Feathers on their Bodies: The *Spaniards* call them *Paxaros Nimos*; they are about 1 Foot long, and weigh 7 pounds. *Nov.* the 14th, we saw Land about Noon, at 57 *deg.* 50 *min.* S. Lat. but the 15th we could see none, at 58 *deg.* 25 *min.* S. Lat. The 16th, we saw a very large Whale; and the 17th, it was a very hard Frost; and 2 or 3 *Leagues* to the S. of us, we saw several Islands of Ice about 10 or 12 Fathom above the Water, the biggest of them at least 2 *Leagues* in length, at 58 *deg.* 23 *min.* S. Lat. I found the variation of the Needle 18 *deg.* N. E. *Nov.* the 18th, all the Night was very fair, (if it may be call'd so, it being not dark at all) but the 20th, our Provision beginning to grow very scanty, we were now forced to be kept to a short allowance of such sorry Victuals as we had; besides that, the Cold was so excessive, that most of our Men were not able to endure it. We reckoned our selves this Day 205 *Leagues* and 2 thirds from the Gulph. *Nov.* the 21st, we saw some white Land-fowl, which gave us hopes of Land, but could see none. *Nov.* the 27th, by observation we found 52 *deg.* 48 *min.* S. Lat. and E. from the Gulph

A violent Storm.

A Sea-fowl call'd *Paxaros Nimos.*

Islands of Ice.

No Night hereabouts

Extremity of Cold.

1681. 285 *Leagues.* In the Evening we had a clear sight of the Sun, and found 30 *deg.* variation of the Needle; whence may be concluded, how difficult it is to direct a course of Navigation in these Parts. For, within the space of 25 *Leagues* sailing, we found 9 *deg.* of variation by a very good *Dutch* Azimuth Compass. *Nov.* the 28th, we saw a whole flight of Land-fowl, which gave us once more hopes of seeing Land, but had not the good fortune to discover it. *Nov.* the 29th, we were by observation at 49 *deg.* 45 *min.* S. Lat. The 30th, we had already 4 Hours of Night, and saw abundance of Rock-weed at 48 *deg.* 53 *min.* S.

Great Variation of the Needle.

Rock-weed

December the 2d, at 46 *deg.* 54 *min.* S. The 3d, at 45 *deg.* 28 *min.* and the 4th, at 44 *deg.* 1 *min.* The same Evening we found variation 17 *deg.* N. E. *Dec.* the 5th, we shared 8 Chests of Money still remaining undivided, amounting to 300 pieces of Eight to each Man, at 42 *deg.* 29 *min.* S. Lat. *Dec.* the 6th, we were by observation at 40 *deg.* 31 *min.* S. Lat. and *Dec.* the 7th, at 39 *deg.* 37 *min.* S. This Day Capt. *Sharp* had information given him, That a great part of our Men had framed a Plot against his Life, to be put in execution the next *Christmas-Day*; whereupon he order'd all the Wine to be shared among the Crew immediately, as not questioning that when the same was spent they would scarce attempt any such thing whilst they were sober. *Dec.* 8th, we found our selves at 33 *deg.* 29 *min.* S. Lat. By the observation of the rising and setting of the Sun, I found the variation to be 12 *deg.* 15 *min.* N. E. The 9th, we were at 37 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. The 10th, at 37 *deg.* 1 *min.* The 13th, we saw abundance of Grampusses, Whales, and Porpusses; and the 14th, found our selves by observation at 34 *deg.* 32 *min.* S. our whole Easting at 677 *Leagues* and 1 third. *Dec.* the 15th, we were at 33 *deg.* 46 *min.* S. Lat. and the 16th, at 32 *deg.* 9 *min.* and N. E. variation, 20 *deg.* 30 *min.* *Dec.* the 17th, we were at 31 *deg.* 4 *min.* The 18th, at 29 *deg.* 48 *mins.* and the 19th, at 28 *deg.* 29 *mins.* S. Lat. My whole Easting 760 *Leagues*, the Variation 2 *deg.* 50 *min.* N. E.

A Plot against Captain *Sharp*'s life.

Variation of the Needle.

§. XXV. *December* the 20th, we continued our Voyage, steering our course W. N. W. at 27 *deg.* 25 *min.* S. Latitude. *Dec.* the 25th, we celebrated *Christmas-Day* with a good Meal of Pork, for we kill'd a Hog which we had bred up from a sucking Pig aboard our Vessel, and weigh'd now 70 Pounds. *Dec.* the 28th, we were at 15 *deg.* 30 *min.* S. My whole Easting 825 *Leagues.* We saw some flying Fish, Dolphins, Bonito's, and Albicores, but they would not take the Hook. *Dec.* the 29th, I found variation 4 *deg.* 19 *min.* N. W. *Dec.* the 30th, we were by observation at 11 *deg.* 3 *min.* S. Lat. And the 31st, at 8 *deg.* 58 *min.* My whole Easting 884 *Leagues* and an half.

Abundance of Fish.

1682. *January* the 2d, we found our selves at 6 *deg.* 6 *min.* S. The 4th, at 3 *deg.* 9 *min.* The 5th, at 2 *deg.* 3 *min.* and the 6th, at 1 *deg.* 49 *min.* S. Lat. *Jan.* the 7th, we were at 0 *deg.* 32 *min.* N. Lat. The 8th at 1 *deg.* 55 *min.* N. The 10th at 3 *deg.* 16 *min.* N. The 11th, at 4 *deg.* 6 *min.* N. The 12th, at 5 *deg.* 49 *min.* N. and the 13th, at 6 *deg.* 41 *min.* N. without any considerable alteration of the Needle. *Jan.* 14. we were come to one Quart of Water for each Man *per Diem*, at 7 *deg.* 46 *min.* N. The 15th, at 9 *deg.* 18 *min.* N. with small variation of the Needle. *Jan.* the 16th, we were at 10 *deg.* 48 *min.* N. The 17th, at 12 *deg.* 19 *min.* N. The 18th, at 13 *deg.* 12 *min.* N. The 19th, at 13 *deg.* 1 *min.* N. *Jan.* 20th, we saw a Man of War Fowl, at 13 *deg.* 11 *min.* N. Lat. and abundance of Fish. The 21st, we found our selves by observation at 13 *deg.* 7 *min.* N. Lat. The 22d, at 13 *deg.* 17 *min.* N. The 23d, at 13 *deg.* 15 *min.* N. The 24th, at 13 *deg.* 12 *min.* N. Lat. *Jan.* the 25th, we saw divers *Tropick Birds* and a *Booby*, at 13 *deg.* 29 *min.* N. The 26th, we saw abundance of *Flying Fish*, and some *Booby's*, at 13 *deg.* 17 *min.* N. Lat. *Jan.* the 27th, a certain Bird call'd a *Noddy*, came aboard us, which we took for a sure sign that we were not far from Land; and the 28th we descry'd Land, which proved the Isle of *Barbado's* at S. S. W. from us, two *Leagues* and an half distant from *Chalky Mount*, standing S. W. by S. we saw several Ships at Anchor in *Spikes Road.* Soon after a Sloop coming betwixt us and the shore, and a Pinnace, we were inform'd that his Majesty's Ship the *Richmond* was then lying at Anchor at the *Bridge Town.* This made us bear away for *Antegoa*, standing N. by W. at 13 *deg.* 17 *min.* N. Lat. being 7 or 8 *Leagues* N. W. from the Body of the Isle of *Barbadoes.* We shared some remnants of Money, and in the Afternoon descry'd *S. Lucia*, one of the Western Isles not far distant from *Barbadoes.* The said Isle of *S. Lucia* bore 10 *Leagues* W. S. W. from us, and the Isle of *Martinico* 12 or 13 *Leagues* N. W. by W. *Jan.* the 29th, being at 15 *deg.* 45 *min.* N. Lat. we saw the Isle of *la Desseada*, bearing 8 *Leagues* N. W. from us. In the Evening, we saw the Isle of *Marigalanta*, another of the *Cariby* Isles, at S. W. by W. from us, and that of *Guadalupe*, both Westward and Northward. At 6 a Clock in the Evening we saw the Isle of *Monserrate* at a great distance. *Jan.* the 30th, at 8 of the Clock, we saw the Isle of *Antegoa* to the S. of us, and at Noon to the W. from us, at 17 *deg.* N. Lat.

A Man of War Fowl.

Tropick Birds.

A Booby.

A Noddy.

The Isle of *Barbadoes.*

The Isle of *S. Lucia.*

The Isle of *Martinico.*

The Isles of *Desseada*, *Marigalanta*, and *Guadalupe*, *Monserrate.*

Coming to the South of the Isle *February* the 1st, we sent to the Governour to ask leave to come into the Harbour, which he refusing, we agreed to give the Ship to such of our Companions as were poor, having lost all their Money at play, and then entred our selves aboard two Vessels bound for *England.* I and 13 more went aboard Captain *Robert Porteen's* Ship, call'd the *Lisbon Merchant*, and set sail from *Antegoa*, *Febr.* 11. for *England*, where we arrived and landed at *Dartmouth*, *March* 26. 1682.

CHAP. VI.

A Journal of a Voyage into the South-Sea *by the* Bucaniers *of* America, *from the Year* 1684 *to* 1689, &c. *by the* Sieur Raveneau de Lussan: *And of the* Sieur de Montauban, *on the Coast of* Guinea, *in the Year* 1695.

§. I. I Embark'd and set sail from *Diep* in *France*, *March* the 8th, 1679, and arriv'd without any remarkable Accident at S. *Domingo.* Here I had the misfortune to be chained to the Service of one of my Country-men above 3 Years, till I was released by the generosity of Monsr. *de Franquesnay* the King's Lieutenant. But having contracted some Debts which I was not in a condition to repay, my natural Inclination to Travelling, and the Rupture that happen'd at that time betwixt the Crowns of *France* and *Spain*, soon prompted me to engage with the *Bucaniers* aboard a Ship Commanded by Captain *Laurence de Graff*, Mann'd with 120 Men.

The Author sets sail from *Diep* for *America.*

Islands of Ice.

No Night hereabouts

Extremity of Cold.

1684. We set sail from *Petit Guaves*, *Nov.* the 22d, on the Coast of *S. Domingo*, with a design to join with a Fleet of *Bucaniers* lying then before *Havana*, a large City on the North-side of the Isle of *Cuba*, 14 *Leagues* distant from S. *Domingo.* The 4th of *Dec.* we anchored at the *Tortoise* Island to take in Water, and the 6th sail'd away again to the Coast of S. *Domingo*, (3 *Leagues* thence) where we cast Anchor at Cape *Francis.* We set sail again the 17th, but being pestred with contrary Winds, were put back to the Port of *Plata* on the Coast of S. *Domingo.*

The Author turns Freebooter.

Here we staid till the first of *January*: when setting sail again, we doubled the Cape of S. *Francis*; the 2d in the Morning, the Cape of *Cabron*; and about Noon that of *Sevona*, all situated on the same Coast. The 4th, we pass'd in sight of *la Mona.* And the 5th, about the Coast of *Puerto Rico*, and *la Savona*; and then steering S. E. by E. till the 11th, when we descry'd the Isles of *Ave*, which we made the 12th, and then kept the same course to the Isle of *la Roca.* The 13th, we saw the Continent of *America*; and with a brisk Gale steer'd N. N. E. till the 17th, when we descry'd 2 Ships and 4 Boats, which proved to be some of our Country-men, lying

1685.

1685. lying in wait for a *Spanish* Fleet they expected to come that way. However, the 19th we resolved to go from thence towards the Isle of *Curassol*, (belonging in part to the *Hollanders*) and the same Evening anchored in the Port of S. *Barba*, 2 *Leagues* to the Leeward of the Town of *Curassol*.

The 20th, we sent a Boat belonging to Captain *la Garde*, (one of our Company) to ask leave of the Governour to buy Masts, which he absolutely refus'd, tho' we sent him a Copy of our Commissions. The Isle of *Curassol* enjoys the same Climate, and produces the same Fruits as that of S. *Domingo*, besides *Maiz.* and small *Millet*, and is watered with several Rivers and Brooks. The Town is a Seaport, small but neatly built, and well fortify'd as well as the Fort. As there is a free exercise allow'd for all Religions, so it is inhabited by divers Nations, *Dutch*, *Jews*, *&c.* These Trade in Sugar that grows there; and in Wool, and Hides, the products of their Sheep and Oxen, bred in their low Pasture Grounds. They have their chief Trade with the *Spaniards*, and consequently are well affected to them.

A description of the Isle of *Curassol.*

Capella Vella.

The 27th, we directed our course for *Capella Vella*, on the Continent of *America*, where we intended to wait for a *Patacha*, expected that way from *Margarita*. The 30th, we anchored near the Cape, on the top whereof we placed several Centinels, to give us timely notice, as soon as they discover'd the *Patacha*. We went ashore and view'd the circumjacent Country of the Cape, which we were told was inhabited by a most savage sort of *Indians*, who have no Commerce either with the *Spaniards*, or any other Nation: They feed upon every thing they can lay hold of; are very fearful of Swords, but despise all sorts of Fire-arms.

The Inhabitants thereabouts.

The 8th of *February* it being our general opinion that the beforemention'd *Patacha* would not pass that way; a Council was held aboard our Ship, about forming another Design, but being not able to agree among our selves, 87 quitted the *Neptune* and came aboard the Ship in which we came from St. *Domingo*. The 13th Capt. *Lawrence* in the *Neptune* steer'd for St. *Domingo*, and Capt. *Michael* and Capt. *Rose* for *Carthagena*, and we follow'd the latter. The 15th a brisk E. Wind carried us beyond the River call'd *Rio Grande*, which has sweet Water 3 or 4 Leag. at Sea, from the mouth of it, provided you take it only from the surface. The same Day we saw *our Lady de la Pompa* on the same Continent. The 16th we anchored at the Isles of St. *Bernard*, and in the evening sent from thence 3 *Pirogues*, to get to the Windward of *Carthagena*, and to endeavour to get some Provisions, which is continually carried to that place. They return'd the 18th with 7 *Pirogues* loaden with *Maiz.* The 22d we set sail again, and at night saw *Point Picaron* on the Continent, and the Isles of *Palmas*. The next morning finding our selves separated from Capt. *Michael* and Capt. *Rose* resolv'd to attempt the passage by Land over the Continent, to the *South Sea*. Pursuant to this resolution we steer'd to the *Golden Isle*, inhabited by the *Indians* of the *Samballoes*, to learn what success some of the *Bucaniers*, that had taken that way before, had met with in the same attempt. The 25th we had no sooner anchored at the *Golden Isle* but we fir'd a Gun, for a signal to the *Indians* (our Friends) of our arrival; and having discover'd a Flag ashore, we went ashore, and met with 3 Men, belonging to the beforemention'd Crew, under Capt. *Gregnier* and Capt. *Lescuier*'s, who told us, that they would not go along with the rest to the *South Sea*. The 26th some *Indians* brought us certain Letters directed to the First *Free-Booters* that should come into that Road, to let them know, that 115 *English*, and not long after 170 *French* were gone that way to the *South Sea*. This, with some other Directions they gave us, and the News we receiv'd from some of the *Indians*, that the *French* under Capt. *Gronier* and Capt. *Lescuier* were not as yet past'd their Territories, engag'd us to prepare for our intended Expedition cross the Continent. The 27th Capt. *Mitchel* and Capt. *Rose* turning into the same Port to take in fresh Water, we communicated to them the beforemention'd Letters, which wrought so effectually upon them, that 118 of *Mitchel*'s Men quitted his Ship, and the whole Crew of Capt. *Rose* consisting of 64 Men. Thus we encamp'd ashore the 29th to the number of 264 Persons, with an unanimous resolution, to pursue our intended Journey cross the Continent to the *South Sea*.

The *Free-Booters* part.

Rio Grande.

They take 7 Prizes.

They resolve to pass over the Continent to the *South Sea.*

§. II. They begin their Voyage over Land to the *South Sea.*

March 1. We began our Journey over Land towards the *South Sea*, under the Command of Capt. *Rose*, Capt. *Picard*, and Capt. *Desmarais*, with 2 *Indian* Guides. After having travell'd 3 *Leagues* that day, we encamp'd near the bank of a River, whence we had an unwelcome aspect of those dreadful Mountains, Rocks, Precipices, and almost impenetrable Forests, we were to pass the next Day; the difficulties whereof were not a little encreased by a violent Rain which fell that day, and the trouble we were forced to undergo of carrying our Ammunition, warlike Instruments, and other Utensils along with us. 'Tis true, the spacious Plain that is beyond these Mountains, promised us some relief of our present Fatigues, but this prov'd of no great consequence, because we were forc'd to cross the beforemention'd River at least 44 times among the slippery Rocks, within the space of 2 *Leagues*. 1685.

They cross a River 44 times with in 2 Leag.

The 4th we took up our Quarter in an *Indian* Carbet, being a sort of a Lodging built like our Barns. The 5th we went out a Hunting, and met with abundance of Deer, and divers sorts of Birds: We saw among other Creatures, a kind of Animal call'd *Manipourye* by the *Indians*, and by our People a *Trefoil*, because each of its feet makes an impression, resembling that Plant on the Ground. For the rest it is of the bigness of a small Bullock, but with shorter Legs and Hair, and more slick; its head is like that of an Ass, but the nose somewhat sharper; you shall see it walk in the bottom of the Water, as well as on dry Ground. Their Hogs they call *Vents*, because they have an opening like a Navil on their backs. They have also certain Beasts, call'd by them *Agouttils* and *Oviatitils*, both being very like those Creatures we call *Indian* Pigs. The Monkies here are as big as our Sheep, living in the Forests, and most generally upon Trees, from whence they draw their sustenance; nay, if you happen to shoot them, they will twist themselves with their tails round the highest branches of the tallest Trees till they dye: I saw once one of these Creatures that was wounded in the belly, grasping with one of his Paws one of the branches of a Tree, whilst with the other he thrust his Entrails into that part of the Belly which remain'd entire. We also saw certain Birds call'd *Harats*, altogether like Parrots, but only much bigger and more beautiful, their Wings and long Tails being of a light flaming colour: As also a kind of Fowls call'd *Oecos*, not unlike our Turkeys, except that they have a small tuft of Feathers on their Heads like a Cock's Comb, and a yellow Circle about their Eyes. The Feathers of the Male are inclining to red, but of the Females, to black; they are always seen together. Their Partridges are larger than ours in *Europe*, their Flesh is whiter, but not so well tasted: Their Pheasants are lesser than ours, their note is the same, but their Flesh not quite so good.

The *Trefoil*, an Animal.

Their Hogs.

Agouttils and *Oviatitils*.

Monkeys.

A kind of *Parrots.*

Of *Turkeys.*

Partridges and *Pheasants.*

After six Days most toilsome travelling, beyond what is to be expres'd, we reach'd the River *Boca del Chica*, which exonerates it self into the *South Sea*. The next Day we went to work with such Tools as we had brought along with us, to make as many Canoes, as we should stand in need of, to carry us down the River into the *South Sea*. Having first purchased good store of Provisions, and the Friendship of the Neighbouring *Indians*, by giving them Cloth, Knives, Thread, Needles, Pins, Scissars, Hatchets, Combs, and other small Wares; without which it would have been impossible for us to pass that way, by reason of the many inaccessible Forests, and difficult Passages; and these *Indians*, unless reconciled by Presents, are a treacherous Generation, void of all Religion, or the Knowledge of God, but keep a certain Correspondence with the Devil, whom they consult in the Forests in the night time, and pretend to foretel certain futurities, which I have known sometimes to prove true in the event. They lead a vagabond Life, yet commonly set up their Huts near some River or other, from whence they part again so soon as they have consumed all the sustenance thereabouts. They wear no Cloths, covering only their Privities with a piece of Gold or Silver, made exactly in the shape, and pointed at the end like one of our Extinguishers. At their Feasts or solemn Meetings they appear, however, wrapt up in a piece of Callicoe, and have an oval plate of Gold, or Caracoby hanging in, and fastned to their Nose, through a hole. The Women wear a kind of short Callicoe Petticoat, from the Waste down to the Knees; and dye their Faces with a kind of small brown red Grain, call'd *Rocou*.

They come to the River of *Boca Chica.*

The *Indians* of those parts.

The 23d the Guide that had conducted the beforemention'd 115 *English* to the *South Seas*, return'd with the good News that they had already taken 2 *Spanish* Ships with Provisions. The 28th we receiv'd a Letter from the *French* Crew, gone along with Captain *Groignier* and Captain *Esmier* to the *South Sea*, in which they advised us to follow them with all possible speed,

in

1685. in order to partake of the Booty they hop'd to be Masters of, by taking of the Fleet of *Peru*; and that they would stay for us at the King's Isles. Having got every thing ready for our departure by the 1st. of *April*, we embark'd in 14 Canoes of 20 Oars each, under the conduct of 20 *Indians*, who were willing to be sharers with us both in the danger and booty we expected to meet with in the *South Sea*. We were forced to rest the 4th of *April*, to expect the coming up of some of our Men, and to refit our Canoes, much dammify'd in our passage over the Rocks and Flats of this River. The 5th we found the River much deeper, but much incumbred with Trees, carried down with the Current. The 6th we came to the place where the River grows much deeper and wider; and the 11th advanced towards the mouth of it, where we were inform'd by an *Indian* sent for that purpose in a Boat, that the *English* and *French Free-Booters* had sent us some Provisions to the little Bay of *Boca del Chica*, situate near the entrance of the River. The same day having receiv'd information, that 1000 *Spaniards* intended to lay in Ambush for us, we did not stir, till in the night time, and then without any noise, and so escaped the snare.

They embark upon the River in 14 Canoes.

Provisions sent them.

The 22d we cast anchor, because the Tide was strong against us, and from noon till night it rain'd most excessively, that we were afraid our Canoes would have been sunk every minute. About midnight we pass'd the mouth of the River into the *South Sea*, steering directly for the Bay of *Boca del Chica*, to make good chear with the Provisions sent us by our Comrades. Hence we set sail the 13th to an Island 4 *Leagues* distant from the mouth of the River, where having refreshed our selves for 2 whole Days, we weigh'd again the 16th, in order to find out the *English* and *French* Fleet, who had appointed their Rendezvouz either before *Panama*, or at the *King's-Islands*, not far from this River. We came to an anchor among these Isles, the 18th about 30 *Leagues* E. of *Panama*, the biggest of which is of a large compass, and very mountainous, and inhabited by such Negroes as run away from the *Spaniards* at *Panama*, and the adjacent places.

They enter the *South Sea*,

And come to the *King's Isles*.

A short account of the *South Sea*.

The *Spaniards*, after the Conquest of the Natives of those parts, are now the sole Possessors of many goodly maritime and inland Towns along this Coast, from the Isles of *Don Fernandez*, situated at the entrance of the Gulph of *Magellan*, or rather from *Chili* to the middle of the Streight, that is betwixt the Continent and the Isles of *California*, call'd *Mar-Bermejo* by the *Spaniards*; through which it is supposed a passage might be found from the *Northern* to the *Southern Seas*, without going about by the Streight of *Anian*: The chiefest of the beforemention'd Towns, beginning from the *South* are, *Arica*, *Sama*, *Nasca*, *Pachacama*, *Lima*, *Ciudade los Reyes*. The Port of *Callao*, *Panama*, *Realegno*, *Tecoantepeqna*, *Acapulco*, &c. The *Spaniards* in these parts having lived for some time in great Tranquillity before the *Bucaniers* found out the way into those Seas, they were scarce acquainted with the use of Fire Arms, notwithstanding they were in some parts frequently alarm'd by a sort of *White Indians*, inhabiting part of the Province of *Chili*, a Nation of a prodigious bulk, and such mortal Enemies to the *Spaniards*, that whenever they take any of them, they take the Plate of their Breasts, and cut out their Hearts.

Spanish Towns in that Sea.

White *Indians* of *Chili*.

The 22d the beforementioned Fleet of *English* and *French* consisting of 10 Sail, came to the *King's Isles*: The Admiral, commanded by Capt. *David*, carry'd 36 Guns; the Vice-Admiral, under the command of Capt. *Sammes*, 16 Guns; the 3d and 4th Ship, commanded by Capt. *Townsley*, and the 5th by Capt. *Groignier*; the others were 2 small Ships, and 2 Barks: The Commanders all *English* except Capt. *David*, who was a *Fleming*, and Capt. *Groignier*, who was a *Frenchman*. Our whole number consisted of 1100 Men, but among our Ships the Admiral and Vice-Admiral only were provided with great Guns. The 25th of *April* we took an Advice Boat, going to the Fleet of *Peru*, then riding at Anchor in the Port *Callao*, and having aboard some Packets from *Madrid* to *Panama*, and Letters from the Vice-Roy of *Lima*, containing an exact account of the number of the Men of War, Fire-Ships, and Merchant Men, whereof this Fleet consisted, and of the time they were likely to arrive at *Panama*. We strictly examin'd the Commander and Pilot, but could get nothing of any moment out of them, but that they had thrown the King's Packquet, and a Casket of Jewels over-board, having taken an Oath to one another, rather to dye, than to let the Packquet fall into our Hands, or to divulge any Secret relating to it.

A List of the *Bucaniers*.

The 28th in the evening we embark'd 500 Men in 22 Canoes, in order to attack *la Seppa*, a small Town, 7 *Leagues* to the Windward of *Panama*. The 29th in the forenoon we were met by 2 *Pirogues*, man'd with *Greeks*, as they call them hereabouts. These are a medley of divers Nations transplanted to this Coast from the *North Sea*, by the *Spaniards*, to serve them against their Enemies, because they look upon them as the better Soldiers. As soon as they perceiv'd who we were, they got ashore on one of the Isles in the Bay of *Panama*, and posting themselves upon a very advantageous rising Ground; from whence they fired most furiously upon us: As the ascent of the place where we landed was very difficult, so we were forced to take a considerable circumference before we could come at them, when after the space of an Hour we forc'd them to retreat into the Woods, with the loss of 30 Men slain, and 2 taken Prisoners.

1685.

Greeks what they are.

Are beaten by the *Bucaniers*.

After this defeat, having remain'd the rest of our Canoes, we continued to prosecute our Enterprize upon *la Seppa*: We were forc'd to go up a fine spacious River, bearing the same name, for 2 *Leagues*; on whose Banks the *Spaniards* having plac'd their Watchmen or Centinels, it was impossible but the Inhabitants must take the alarm before we could be ready to attack them: Notwithstanding which we assaulted and took it with the loss of one single Man; but they had carried away all their best Moveables to Places of security.

The *Bucaniers* take *la Seppa*.

The 1st of *May* we return'd to our Ships, lying then at anchor at a small Isle call'd *Sipilla*, about a *League* from the mouth of the River *la Seppa*, which makes a kind of Channel that forms the Bay of *Panama*, and make up a kind of Ridge or Bar all along, that divides the Channel into 2 parts, one to the East, and the other to the West. These Isles deservedly have got the name of the Gardens of *Panama*, because most Persons of note of that City have their Country Houses, Gardens and Orchards in them, watered with delightful Springs and Brooks, and stor'd with vast variety of Flowers and Fruits; among these the *Sappota*, *Sappotilla*, *Avocata*, and *las Cayemites*. The *Sappota* is like a Pear with a greenish rind, and 2 oval Kernels in the midst, each of the bigness of a small Walnut; when it is full ripe, the Pulp is pure red, very sweet, and of a delicious taste. The *Sappotilla* is of the same shape, but somewhat less, with a white rind, and the Pulp of an admirable taste. The *Avocata* is like our Quinces, except that the rind is much greener; when it ripens, it is soft and white like Cream, and has almost the same taste. The *Cayemites* are a sort of Damasens, of an excellent taste. Besides these they have Apricocks, Pomegranates, Goyaves, Juniperberries, Coco's, Bananoes, Figs, Melons, Oranges of all sorts, Citrons, Lemons, &c. Wherewith and the pure Water we met with here, we feasted our selves, and made our selves an ample amends for our past Miseries.

The *Isles* of the Bay of *Panama*.

What Fruits they produce.

The 8th of *May* we set sail thence, and pass'd in sight of the Old and New City of *Panama*, and came to an anchor near the most delightful Isle of *Taboga*: The which we sent out a long Bark to Cruize, in order to give us timely notice as soon as they should get sight of the *Spanish* Fleet. The 13th we prepar'd for the Engagement, and in the afternoon we heard the firing of many Guns at *Panama*, the cause whereof we could not guess at, at that time, but we were convinced afterwards, that the same was done for joy for the arrival of the Fleet we look'd for, which had pass'd through one of the beforemention'd Channels unperceiv'd by our Ships. As we knew nothing of this, so we anchored at the *King's Islands* till the 19th, when we came to an anchor betwixt the *Great Isle* and those in the East Channel. The 31st we came back again to the *Little Isles of Panama*, where we anchored the 1st of *June*. The 4th we sent out two Canoes, who took a Ship loaden with boards; the Prisoners told us, that the Fleet of *Peru* was got into *Panama* the 12th, and the Guns we heard on the 13th were discharg'd on account of their safe arrival; and that as soon as they refreshed, careen'd and mann'd, the would come out to fight us.

They lay in wait for the *Spanish* Fleet.

Our Men were so well pleased with this News, that they threw up their Hats for Joy, as reckoning all their own; and the 7th Capt. *Groignier*, who lay at an anchor farther from the *Island* than the rest, gave us the signal, that he descry'd the *Spanish* Fleet, consisting of 7 stout Ships, with a bloody Flag in the Stern. That day was spent in coming near to one another, we having the Weather-Gage of them; but the following night the Enemy putting a Lanthorn on one of their small Vessels, 2 *Leagues* to the Leeward of us, to amuse us: This Stratagem succeeded according to expectation

An Engagement.

1685.

An Engagement betwixt the *Bucaniers* and the *Spanish* Fleet.

pectation; for to our great surprize, we found our selves the next Morning, being the 8th of *June*, to the Leeward of the Enemy: We did all we could to recover the Weather-Gage, but in vain, so we were forc'd to engage with an Enemy not only much superior to us in strength, but also back'd by the advantage of the Wind; notwithstanding which we maintain'd the Fight without any considerable disadvantage on our side, till night parted both the Fleets, the *Spaniards* retreating into the Port of *Panama*, and ours bearing away for the *Isle of S. John de Cueblo*, 24 *Leagues* to the West of *Panama*, where we came to an anchor on the 26th. Upon a review, we found that Capt. *David* our Admiral, though he was most warmly ply'd by the *Spaniards* with their great Cannon, and had half his Rudder carried away by it, yet had no more than 6 Men wounded, 1 kill'd: Capt. *Sammes*, tho' he receiv'd several shots betwixt Wind and Water, had also no more than one Man kill'd, and only 3 wounded, and our lesser Vessels lost not one Man, and had no more than a few wounded among them; a thing that will scarce meet with credit, considering that the *Spanish* Admiral carried 56 Guns: their Vice-Admiral 40, and the rest about 16 Guns a piece. Had we had the good fortune to have met them before they got into *Panama*, and consequently were strengthen'd by new reinforcements; nay had we but got the Wind of them, we might in all probability have been Masters of a Treasure, which at once would have put a period to all our Troubles.

The strength of the *Spanish* Fleet.

The 29th we embark'd 300 Men in 5 Canoes at the *Isle of S. John*, in order to surprize the Town of *Pueblo Nuevo*, 6 *Leagues* thence, to get some Provisions: We landed the 31st, but being oblig'd to go up a very fine River for 2 *Leagues*, we were discover'd by their Watchmen, so that the Inhabitants having sufficient time to carry away all their Goods, we found no Provisions nor Inhabitants there: We return'd the 5th of *July* aboard our Ships, when upon occasion of some differences betwixt the *English* and us we parted Companies; and there being of the *French* about 330, we encamp'd separately from them on the *Island*. The *English* weigh'd the 9th, and came to an anchor 5 or 6 *Leagues* to the Leeward of us: When we were building some Canoes for our use, there being here abundance of *Mapou* and *Acanou* Trees near the Sea side, some whereof were so large, that the Trunk of one of them, when hollow'd out, would carry 80 Men.

The Town of *Pueblo Nuevo*.

The *English* and *French* part.

The 15th one of our Centinels, plac'd on a high Tree, brought us word that he saw a Ship at Sea; we gave her chace immediately, and found her to be a small *English* Vessel commanded by Capt. *Wilmot*, and mann'd with 40 *English* and 11 *French* Men. They told us, that having lately taken a Ship loaden with Corn, coming from the Port of *Sansonna*, on the Continent, 30 *Leagues* E. of the *Isle of S. John*, they had understood that there were *Free-Booters* in these Seas, and that thereupon they came to join with us: It happen'd unfortunately for us, that the *English* had at the same time sent a Canoe to meet her, who influenced Capt. *Wilmot* to go along with them with his Corn Prize, to the place where they were at anchor, to our singular regret.

Capt. *Wilmot* comes into these Seas.

The *Isle of S. John Cueblo* is situate 5 *Leagues* from the Continent E. and W. and N. and S. Its circuit is 12 *Leagues*, being separated from the Main by a branch of the Sea. It is very Mountainous and Woody, but watered with several good Rivers, though destitute of Inhabitants. As it is well stock'd with Deer, Monkeys, Agoutis and Tortoises, we did not question but to meet with sufficient Food, but the *English* had destroy'd all the Tortoises before, and we durst not spend what Powder and Shot we had left, in hunting after the Deer and Monkeys; but were forc'd chiefly to subsist upon such Fruits as the Woods afforded. The *English* being not insensible of our present necessity, sent to us to rejoin them, which we refused to do, unless they would allot us a Ship of our own; yet 30 of our Men, no longer able to endure fasting, join'd with them. For the rest this Isle produces a sort of dangerous Serpents, whose stinging proves Mortal immediately, unless they apply to the Wound a certain Fruit, chew'd, growing on a Tree upon the same place, and in divers other parts of this Country, which in its height and Leaves, resembles the Almond Tree, but the Fruit a Sea-Chestnut, of a greyish colour and a bitterish taste, containing a whitish Kernel, which must be chew'd well and apply'd immediately to the Wound. Two or three *Leagues* up the Country they have also a kind of Crocodiles, call'd *Cayamans*, living as well in the Sea and Rivers, as upon the Land.

An account of the Isle *S. John Cueblo*.

A sort of dangerous Serpents.

An antidote against them.

1685.

The 9th of *August* the *English* being gone, we embark'd 120 Men in 5 Canoes, under command of Capt. *Groignet*, to cross over to the Continent, where we landed the 13th in the Neighbourhood of the Town of *S. Jago*, 20 *Leagues* distant from *S. John's Isle*: Here we took some Prisoners in a Sugar Plantation, upon the River of *S. Jago*, and after examination, finding they had no news as yet of separation from the *English*, we sent a Canoe with some Victuals to our Companions at the *Isle of S. John*, and to acquaint them, that we were going towards *Panama*, to see whether we could seize some Vessels thereabouts for our use. The 15th we landed 40 *Leagues* to Leeward of *Panama*, and took 50 Prisoners in a great Beef Farm: Having receiv'd intelligence by some of them, that in a River 8 *Leagues* to the Windward, there lay 2 Barks loaden with *Maiz*, we sent thither and took them the 29th, steering our course thence to *S. John's Isle*, where we arriv'd the 3d of *September*. The 5th having careen'd our Ship, and provided our selves with Water and Wood, we were ready to leave this Isle, had it not been for continual Rains, which lasted 18 Days without intermission, and were so violent, that there was no staying above board; hence it is that the *Spaniards* call the distance betwixt the Bay of *Gorgona* and the *Isle of S. John*, the *Droppings of the South Sea*, there being only 4 Months fair Weather in the Year here, *viz. December*, *January*, *February* and *March*. These continual Rains, occasion not only the Bloody Flux, but also Worms of a Finger long, between the Flesh and the Skin. The 4th of *October* the Weather began to clear up, and the 8th we set sail towards the Sea Port of *Realegno* 180 *Leagues* W. and by N. W. of the *Isle of S. John*, and 260 *Leagues* W. of *Panama*. The 13th we descry'd Land, but the following Days being separated by Tempests, we did meet again the 19th, and discover'd the Bay of *Caldaira*; the 20th pass'd in sight of that of *Colebra*; and the 21st got to the height of the *Morros*, call'd *Papegaya's* by the *Spaniards*. The 22d we found our selves over against *Realegno*, a place very remarkable for the high Mountains, that surround it, but especially for a burning Hill, which emits a continual smoak. The 25th we landed about 100 Men, and after 3 Hours march took some Prisoners, by whom we were inform'd that the *English* had taken the Town of *Leon*, and burnt *Realegno*. The 26th one of our Quarter-Masters, a *Catalonian*, deserted to the *Spaniards*, which made us lay aside our design upon *Granada* for that time. The 27th we made for the Port of *Realegno* with our Canoes, where we found our Ship at anchor.

The *French Free-Booters* land near *S. Jago*.

Eight Months rains in the Year.

Realegno.

November 1. we arriv'd at the said Port, which has 2 Passages, and 2 little Points: The Passage to the Windward is narrow, but the best. A very fine River bearing the same name with the Town exonerates it self into the Road, where there is safe anchorage, and within it are 5 Isles. The Town of *Realegno* it self lies 3 *Leagues* within its mouth. As we went up the River, we saw the Ruins of 3 Entrenchments, and within Musquet-shot of the Town a fine Dock for the building of Ships.

Its Harbour.

The River of *Realegno*.

The Town is built upon the River in a fertile Country, watered with many Brooks and Rivulets, and the Ruins of the Churches and Houses (burnt by the *English*) shew'd it to have been a very beautiful Place. The River upon which it is seated, emits 8 Branches, by means whereof they convey their Commodities to and from their Farms and Sugar Plantations. The 6th we set forward to the number of 150. towards the Town of *Leon*, 4 *Leagues* thence: Having surpiz'd one of their Outguards, the 8th they told us, that above 2000 Men were ready to receive us there; so we return'd aboard the 9th, but the 10th march'd to a Sugar Plantation, 2 *Leagues* from that City, where we found nothing, but in our return were attackt by a body of Horse, whom we put to flight, and made the Captain a Prisoner; he told us, that he had mistaken us for a body of 280 *Mulattoes*, sent out on purpose to fight us.

The 13th the same Company of 150 Men were landed, to take the Town of *Pueblo Viejo*, 3 *Leagues* above *Realegno*. They pass'd through a place quite deserted by its Inhabitants, by reason of its being excommunicated; for it is a custom in those parts, that in case a Place has been several times taken by the *Free-Booters*, it is curs'd by the Bishop, and the Inhabitants lay under an Excommunication till they leave it. The 14th in the Morning we came to *Pueblo Viejo*, where we found the

Pueblo Viejo.

An odd way of Excommunication.

1685. the Inhabitants entrenched in the Market-place, but especially in the great Church, where they defended themselves for some time, but after some brisk Volleys given them, retreated through a back Door. We took all the Provisions and what else we could get, which we brought safely aboard the 16th. The 18th some of our Men took a Prisoner, the Master of an adjacent Beef-Farm, who told us that in our return from the Town, we had escaped an Ambush of 600 Men, by taking another Road; we made him give us some Provisions for his ransom. The 28th we prepar'd for our departure to the Isle of *S. John de Coeblo*, our Rendezvouz.

They take the Town.

December 3. we found our selves 100 *Leagues* out at Sea, and then made again toward the Land, and on the 5th sent 3 Canoes with 70 Men ashore to cross the Bay of *Caldaira*, and to endeavour to get some more Provisions, what we were able to get near *Realegno* being of no great consequence, because the *Spaniards* had carry'd it all deeper into the Country. Betwixt the Port of *Realegno* and *Panama* are many small Creeks and Harbours, but as the Entrances of them are very difficult to be found, so it is dangerous landing along this Coast, the Sea being always boisterous with the least S. E. and S. W. Wind standing upon it.

I have frequently made this observation betwixt the *South* and *North Seas*, That in the first, let the Wind blow never so hard, as soon as it ceases, the Sea is as calm as a River; but in the last, the agitation of the Waves continues for several Days after a Storm. The Storms in the *South Sea* that are formed to Leeward, are much more dangerous than those from the Windward; whereas it is directly contrary in the *North Sea*. Another observation is, That the *South Sea* is generally pacifick upon the Main, but boisterous near the Coast; and that the *North Sea* is for the most part calm under the Shore, but very turbulent at Sea. The *South Sea* produces a peculiar sort of Serpents, marbled with Spots, and about two Foot long; their Sting is so venemous as not to be cured by any Antidote, but the wounded Person dies soon after. If one of these Creatures happen to be cast by the Sea upon the Shore or any Sand, so as to touch the Ground, they die in an instant.

Difference betwixt the *South* and *North* Seas.

A peculiar sort of Serpents.

Esparso.

The 9th, having still kept along the Coast, we landed 50 Men, in order to take the Town of *Esparso*, three Leagues from *Caldaira*; but being inform'd by some of their Outguards we took, that they expected every moment a Reinforcement of 500 Men from *Carthagena*, we thought it best to delay our Design till a more convenient time, after we had kill'd and eaten the Centinels Horses.

The Bay of *Caldaira.*

The Bay of *Caldaira* bears the name of six Magazines, standing three Leagues E. to the Mouth of it, upon the Bank of the embarking place belonging to *Esparso*. This Bay (by others call'd the Bay of *Nicoya*) is one of the finest in the World. It's true, its entrance is very large, but on the other hand, it reaches 12 Leagues deep into the Country, and nothing but an East Wind can hurt it: The Bottom of it has also many Rivers, upon which are many Farms, Villages, and Sugar Plantations. You may anchor all over the Bay, from 6 to 100 Fathom.

The 10th, we went ashore again near a great *Banano's* Walk, where we loaded our Canoes with those Fruits. We took a Centinel belonging to the Town of *Nicoya*, but that being too far distant, we steered our course to the Point of *Borica*, where we arrived the 14th. Hereabouts we were greatly surpriz'd with a Walk consisting of five rows of Cocoa Trees, along the Bank, for 15 Leagues in length, and that in such an order, as if they had been planted by Art, whereas they are the bare product of Nature.

A Cocoa Walk of 15 Leagues long.

The 22d, we landed some Men, to seek for Provisions. After having travelled a League, they took two Prisoners in a Farm-house, who inform'd them, That the Town of *Chiriquita* was not above a League and an half distant, being defended by 600 Men. This made them hasten their retreat towards our Canoes, but were attack'd by 400 Horse, whom they fought, retreating till they came to the Sea side. They challeng'd us in threatning Language to come to their Town, which we did soon after to their cost: In the mean while, we sail'd for the Isle of S. *John*, where we arriv'd *January* the 1st, 1686, and found our Ship and two Barks at an Anchor.

§. III. The *Freebooters* Voyage to the *South* Sea in 1686.

January the 5th, we embark'd 230 Men in 8 Canoes, in order to give a visit to the Townsmen of *Chiriquita*, 20 Leagues distant from the Isle of S. *John*. We landed undiscover'd on the 6th, in the Night; we marched forward by the Moon-light both the 7th and 8th, and concealed our selves in the Woods by Day, not knowing all the while we had landed on the wrong side of the River; but finding our mistake, as much harrass'd as we were, we return'd immediately to our Canoes, pass'd over to the opposite Bank; and having taken the Town Watch, got to *Chiriquita* the 9th before break of Day. As we came undiscovered, so we surprized their *Corps de Guard*, their Men being all at play. In the Afternoon we perceived some *Spaniards* in a House not far from the Town, which made us send out 5 Men in quest of them; but they no sooner perceiv'd us to approach them, but 120 more came out and charged us on all sides; but being resolved to sell our Lives as dear as we could, we fought them, standing back to back for a whole Hour, when only 2 of us being left fit to fight, we were by good Fortune reliev'd by some of our Companions, brought thither by the firing. The *Spaniards* no sooner got sight of this Reinforcement, but they betook themselves to their Heels, leaving 30 of their Men dead upon the spot; so we return'd victorious to the Town, which we set on Fire immediately. The Town of *Chiriquita* is not very big, but most pleasantly seated in a great Plain or *Savannah*, watered by divers Brooks and Rivulets, and full of Farms; their chief Trade being Tallow and Hides.

1686.

They take *Chiriquita.*

5 Men engage 120.

They burn the Town.

The 10th, we went to an Island in the River upon which the Town stands, to stay for the Ransom we expected for the Prisoners we had taken. We were no sooner landed there, but we sent some of our Canoes to look after a Frigat that was unloading some Provisions higher up the River. When they came near it, they found 100 Men entrenched to defend her; but notwithstanding all their Fire, our Men possessed themselves of her. In one of the Letters found in her, information was given, how the Admiral of the *Peru* Fleet, having aboard 400 Men, was burnt with the whole Crew by Lightning; a thing the more extraordinary, because there Thunder or Rain are never heard or seen in the memory of Man.

The 16th, having received the promised Ransom, we return'd towards our Ship then at Anchor at the Isle of S. *John*. The 20th, seing our Ship was become useless for want of Sails, we began to build Canoes and Pirogues, upon the Banks of a fine River of that Island, which had store of tall Trees. The 27th, we descry'd 7 Sail out at Sea; and the 28th, our Centinels gave us notice, that they saw 6 Pirogues plying along the shore, which made us put 150 Men in ambush on both sides of the River, as suspecting them to be *Spaniards*; and such they proved; but fearing a Stratagem, they did not think fit to enter the River, but bore away the first of *February*.

Having finished the Work we were about by the 14th of *March*, we set sail from the Isle of S. *John* with 2 Barks, 1 half Galley of 40 Oars, 10 great Pirogues, and 10 Canoes, built of *Marpon*-Timber. We then renew'd our design of attacking the Town of *Granada*; but as the same was 200 Leagues distant, and that we should want Provisions for such a Voyage, we sent our half Galley and 4 Canoes, to seek for some at *Pueblo Nuevo*, with orders to rejoin us at the Isle of S. *Peter*. The 6th of *April*, before Day, coming near the River of *Pueblo Nuevo*, we saw by the Moon-light, a small Frigat, a long Bark, and a Pirogue, at the Mouth of it. As we supposed them to be *English Bucaniers*, we came within Pistol-shot of them, before we discover'd our mistake by a Volley of great and small Shot sent among us; this being part of the *Spanish* Squadron we had seen off of S. *John*'s Isle. We had 20 Men disabled by this mistake; but after we had recover'd our selves, we fought them briskly till Day-light, when the Enemy retired under the Cover of a Retrenchment; so we steer'd to the Isle of S. *Peter*, where we rejoin'd our Canoes the 8th. The 9th, being under great want of Provisions, we sent our wounded Men aboard 2 Barks we had appointed to meet us in the Bay of *Boca-del-Toro*. This done, we landed near a Town 10 Leagues to Leeward of *Chiriquita*, but met with none. In our return thence on the 11th, we fell into an ambush of 500 Men, through whom we opened our selves a passage with our Swords. The same Evening we set sail again for the Bay of *Boca-del-Toro*, where we rejoin'd our Barks the 13th, and spent 2 Days in hunting for Deer and Birds.

An Engagement with some *Spanish* Ships.

The 16th, we set sail for the Bay of *Caldaira*, and landing the 19th, we reach'd the Town of *Lesparso* about 11 in the Morning, but found it quite abandon'd, the Inhabitants being retir'd to *Carthagena*, 24 Leagues thence. The Town of *Lesparso* is seated 3 Leagues from the Sea side, (the way thither being very rugged) upon

Lesparso.

1686. an Eminency from whence you may see all the Ships coming in or going out of the Bay. It is environ'd with a Rivulet, and the Roads leading thence through the Plains to *Carthagena* are as good and spacious as any in *Europe*.

The 21st, being rejoin'd by our 2 Barks, we entred into a Debate how to Attack the Town of *Granada*; which being resolv'd upon, we left the Bay the same Evening; but being separated in the Night by a strong E. Wind, we found to our great surprize, the next Morning 13 Sail, whereas we knew our selves no more than 12 strong. But not long after, perceiving 5 more, we soon understood it was Capt. *Townsley* lately come from the Coast of *Acapulco*, to seek for some Bonanoes hereabouts. As we were now the stronger Party of the two, we made the *English* sensible, that it was now in our power to revenge our selves upon them for the former injuries we had received at their hands; but that we would rather bury in oblivion what was past, and so engag'd them to join with us in the design we had formed against the Town of *Granada*.

The *French* and *English* join.

Accordingly we embark'd all together in our Pirogues and Canoes the 25th, ordering our Ship and 2 Barks to coast it along to the place we intended to land, 20 *Leagues* to the Windward of Cape *Blanco*. We landed *April* the 7th with 345 Men, and marched all Day and Night till the 9th, when we rested at Night in a large Sugar Plantation, four *Leagues* distant from *Granada*. The 10th, we continued our march, and in our way took a Prisoner, by whom we were inform'd, That the Inhabitants having got intelligence of our design by the *Catalonian* Quarter-Master that deserted us, had raised a Fortification in the Market-place, defended with 14 pieces of Cannon and 6 Patarero's, and that they had 6 Troops of Horse to fall into the Rear.

Their design upon *Granada*.

All this did not in the least deter us from advancing [illegible] to the Suburbs; where having defeated a strong [illegible] *Spaniards* that opposed our entrance, we opened our [illegible] into the Town, and at the same time sent some of our Men to view the condition of the Fort in the Market place; which being done, they told us, that it was a quadrangular Fort, facing as many Streets in a direct Line; so it was resolved to begin the Assault with our whole Body on the side of that Street we were then in, for fear of being attack'd by the Enemy's Horse.

They Attack it.

Thus we advanced boldly notwithstanding the continual Fire from their great Guns; the effects whereof we avoided for the most part, by keeping on both sides of the Houses, and sometimes bowing low to the Ground. At last we got on an Eminency within reach of our small Arms, whence we ply'd them so warmly, that what with th's and the Hand-granado's thrown in by a Detachment of some of our chosen Men, we forced them to quit their Post; which we possessed our selves of immediately, with a great slaughter of the Enemies, and only four Men killed and wounded on our side: a cheap Victory, considering that this Fortification was spacious enough to contain 6000 Men, and was enclosed with a strong Wall.

And take it

After having gathered what Ammunition, Provisions, and other Plunder we could get, we sent out 150 Men to endeavour to get some Prisoners and Provisions, but the *Spaniards* being all withdrawn before, with all their Movables, from the Sugar Plantations, seated along the Lake of *Nicaragua*, into an Isle in the middle of the said Lake, this Expedition proved altogether fruitless. The next thing we did, was to demand a Ransom for the City; but the same being refused, we set it on Fire.

The City of *Granada*.

Granada is a spacious City, seated in a Valley upon the Lake of *Nicaragua*. It has several stately Churches, many well built Houses, and some Convents, but the circumjacent Country is destitute of Water.

The 12th, we left this City in order to return to the Sea side, which is 20 *Leagues* thence. We had scarce march'd a Mile, when we were attack'd by 2500 *Spaniards*, whom we soon dispersed by the help of 1 great Cannon, and 4 Patarero's we had brought along with us from *Granada*. We took up our Quarters that Night at *Massaga*, a handsome Village seated upon the before-mention'd Lake, where we were most courteously received by the Inhabitants, who furnish'd us with Water under hand, the *Spaniards* having spoil'd all the Springs before hand in the Village. These *Indians* were the remnants of those unfortunate Nations that flourished in those Parts before the arrival of the *Spaniards*, and by their cruel usage were forced to betake to the Mountains; from whence they have been by degrees brought down by the same *Spaniards*, who allow them to build and inhabit their own Villages; but after all, keep them under such hard subjection, that they would willingly embrace any opportunity of shaking off their Yoke.

The *Indians* hereabours.

1686.

We rested here for some time to refresh our wounded Men, 2 of whom died of the Cramp, a Symptom very common in these Parts, which seldom fails to kill such wounded Persons as are seized with it. The 17th, we continued our march to another Burrough 3 *Leagues* thence; And the 18th, as we were coming out of a Wood into a Plain, were unexpectedly encountred by 500 Men, headed by the before-mention'd *Catalonian*. But our Van Guard having forced them to quit an Eminency they were posted on, they betook themselves to their Heels, leaving their dead and wounded Men and 50 Horses behind them. The 19th, we lay at a Farm House; and the 20th, at an *Estancia* or Beef Farm, where we spent some Days in salting Provisions. The 26th, we re-embark'd, set sail the 27th, and the 28th anchored in the Port *Realegno*. Here we landed in the Morning, and by Noon came to the Town of *Pueblo Viejo*; which finding abandon'd by the Inhabitants, we gathered what Provisions we could, and so return'd the 1st of *May*.

Cramps Mortal.

Pueblo Viejo.

The 2d of *May*, we fetch'd 6 Caldrons from a neighbouring Sugar Work; and the 4th marched to *Ginandego*, a Town 2 *Leagues* from *Realegno*, where we arrived the 5th. The *Spaniards* had cast up an Entrenchment, which was defended by 200 of their best Men; but after the first Volley they thought fit to quit it, and to leave the Town to our mercy, which we set on Fire, and march'd off again immediately. We were no sooner come out of the Town into an adjacent Plain, but we saw 800 Men, who made a Mine to attack us; we advanced boldly against them, tho' we were only 150 strong; but as soon as they found us within Musquet-shot of them, they retreated, and we return'd the 6th to our Canoes.

Ginandego.

The 9th, a Council being call'd to consult what course we were to steer next, they were divided into 2 different Opinions; one Party being for going up before *Panama*, and the other for taking a contrary course lower to the West, there to Winter in some Island, till the Winter Season and Southern Winds should be past. This division arose to such a height, that 148 *Frenchmen* (besides the *English* under Captain *Townsley*) who were for going for *Panama*, separated from the rest, who put themselves under the Command of Captain *Groignet*.

They part Companies

The 19th, we set sail for *Panama*, under the Conduct of Captain *Townsley*, who on the 26th proposed the taking of the Town of *Villia*, 30 *Leagues* to Leeward of *Panama*. This being unanimously approved of, we steer'd our course thither; and the 29th came in sight of Cape *Blanco*. *June* the 2d, finding our selves between the Bay of *Boca del Toro* and the Point of *Barica*, we sail'd first South and by South E. and then putting out to Sea, bore North East to make the Isle of S. *John de Creblo*.

The 7th, we put in at the Isle of *Montosa*, 6 *Leagues* to the South of that of S. *John*; the last whereof we view'd all round with our Canoes. The 13th, we set sail with a West South-West Wind for *la Villia*; and the 15th, discovered the Point of *Puercos*, and bore off to Sea again. The 18th, we saw the 3 Rocks call'd the 3 *Brothers*, 3 *Leagues* to Leeward of the Bay of *la Villia*, whither we were bound. The 19th, we came in sight of the Point *Mala*, which is Leeward of that Bay, and the next Morning found our selves 6 *Leagues* from the shore. The 20th, we went aboard our Canoes, and rowing on bravely all Night, came the next Morning in sight of the place where we were to land, which we did the 22d, before break of Day; but having not time enough to get up to the Town before Day-light, we return'd aboard again, and landing again in the Evening, marched to the number of 160, all Night, with all imaginable expedition, yet could not reach the place before an Hour after Sun-rising. However, as they had not expected our coming, and most of them were at Mass, we entred without opposition, took 300 Prisoners, 15000 pieces of Eight, and in Merchandizes to the value of one Million and a half. This Booty we sent loaden upon Horses, under the Conduct of 80 Horsemen, to be embark'd in 2 Canoes lying in the River, and belonging to the *Spaniards*, whence they were to convoy them to the River's Mouth, where our Canoes lay at anchor. However, we sent the same Day (being the 24th) to the *Alcaide Major* or Chief Magistrate of the City, to know whether he would buy the Merchandizes, and ransom the Prisoners; both which being refused

The Isle of *Montosa*.

They take *la Villia* with a great Booty.

1686. refused, we set fire to the Town, and the 25th follow'd those we had sent before with the Booty, keeping along the Banks on one side as near as we could, whilst 600 *Spaniards* on the other side watch'd all the opportunity they could to recover their Booty. It happen'd that after we had march'd a *League*, we were forc'd to take a circumference round a Wood from the River side, in the mean while the two Canoes being forc'd by the Current at a good distance from that side of the River where we were, the *Spaniards* gave them a Volley of 50 Musquets from among the Thickets, where they lay conceal'd, by which four of our Men being kill'd and one wounded, the rest abandon'd the Canoes, which were carried by twelve *Indians*, who swam the River, to the *Spaniards* on the opposite side. Not long after we were come round the Wood, three of our Men, who had shelter'd themselves there, gave us an account of the Disaster that had befallen them.

The same is retaken by the Spaniards.

The 26th we went ashore near the Place, where our Men were surpriz'd the Day before: Here we found the two Canoes dash'd to pieces, and the Bodies of our dead Companions miserably mangled, and they had put the Head of one of our Men (whom they took Prisoner after he was wounded) upon a Pole, which so exasperated our People, that they instantly cut off the Heads of four of our Prisoners and put them likewise upon Poles.

The River La Villia. The River of *La Villia* is very large, but not deep, admitting only of 40 Tuns: About a *League* to the Windward of its Mouth is a Rock, which you see always covered with certain Sea Birds, as *Fregates*, *Manbies*, and *Goziers*. The embarking place belonging to the City of *Villia*, is three *Leagues* within the River, and the Town it self a Mile above it, having very regular Streets, well adorn'd Churches, and many other good Buildings. *Plata* the next Town of note near it, is seven *Leagues* distant.

The 27th a Person was sent aboard us to ransom the Prisoners, with whom we agreed for 10000 pieces of Eight, telling him withal, That in case they did not bring it by the 29th, we would cut off the Heads of all the Prisoners; the Messenger return'd the same Evening, and brought Word, that the same should be pay'd in two or three Days; and that in the mean while we should be furnish'd with 10 Oxen, 20 Sheep, and 2 packs of Meal a Day as long as we stay'd; which was perform'd accordingly.

They are paid the Ransom for the Prisoners.

July the 4th we set sail thence, and came to an anchor at the Isle of *Iguana*, to get some fresh Water, but finding none, resolv'd to land on the Continent, though the shore was guarded with no less than 4000 Men: Accordingly we set ashore 200 Men, whom the *Spaniards* made a line to oppose, but finding them resolute, retreated, and let them fill their Casks with Water without molestation.

The 7th we set sail for the *King's Isles*, and the 9th came to an anchor at *Point Puercos*, 14 *Leagues* to Leeward of the Isle *Iguana*. Here having provided our selves with more fresh Water, we set sail again the 10th, and 13th pass'd in sight of the Isle of *Galera*, which is to the Leeward of all the *King's Isles*, but the Currents that run all the Year round betwixt these Islands, made us soon go farther out at Sea. The 15th a strong North West Wind brought us nearer to the shore; and the 18th we discover'd *Cape Pin*, and kept all Day close under it, for fear of being discover'd by the Inhabitants of the circumjacent Isles.

Point Puercos.

The Isle of Galera.

The 21st we landed about Midnight in some of our Canoes, but were notwithstanding this discover'd by some of their Men that fish for Pearl Oysters here, that stick to the bottom of the Rocks, that surround these Isles. The 22d we descry'd from one of these Isles we had landed in, a Ship under sail, unto which we gave chace, and took her before Day-light. The Prisoners inform'd us, That those of *Panama* did not imagine us to be so near at hand; and that 36 *English* and *French* who were come from *Peru*, with an intention to pass by the way of the River *Boca del Chica* to the *North Sea*, had been met and defeated by the *Spaniards*, and that two *English* Parties of 40 Men each, intending to go from the *North* to the *South Sea*, had been all cut to pieces, except four, who were then Prisoners at *Panama*. They added, That in the River of *Boca del Chica* there lay a Vessel, expecting to have shortly 800 Pounds of Gold, dug in the Neighbouring Mines, in order to be transported to *Panama*.

The same Day we return'd aboard our Ships, which lay then at anchor at the biggest of the *King's Islands*.

The 30th we surpriz'd in one of these Isles a certain Person, whose Master being Commander in chief of the *Greek Ptrogues* mention'd before, was sent thither on purpose by the Governour of *Panama*, to draw us into a Snare, by giving us false intelligence. Pursuant to his Instructions, he told us several things of less moment, which we knew to be true, the better to gain credit among us, as that the Governour being inform'd that 30 more of our Men intended to pass from the *South* to the *North Sea*, had posted 100 Men near the River of *Boca del Chica*, to surprize them; but as his main Design was to draw us under the Forts of *Panama*, and knowing that we stood in need of good Vessels, he added, that there lay in the Harbour of *Panama* a small Frigat; and that every Day they sent out a Galley to observe our motions. 1686.

The Bucaniers are deceiv'd by a Spy.

According to this intelligence we sent four Canoes well mann'd, to seize the two beforemention'd Ships in the Harbour of *Panama*; and it being a bright Moonshiny Night, we thought we saw one of the Ships with her Sails loose, we made the best of our way towards her, but as good Fortune would have it, seeing a Vessel at the same time going out of the Port, we chased and took her without the least opposition: The Captain of the Vessel being strictly examin'd, frankly confess'd that a certain *Greek* was sent by the Governour to draw us into the Snare, and that the Sails we saw loose, was only a sham Ship built upon firm Land of sorry Planks, on purpose to draw us ashore, and by that means to destroy us.

August 1.

The Design discover'd, and the Author punish'd with Death.

This seasonable Discovery saved us from a most imminent Danger; and after we had given our *Greek* Intelligencer a Halter for his Reward, we went to possess our selves of the Isle of *Tavoga*, which had been repossess'd by the Inhabitants, since our leaving of the Coast of *Panama* the last time.

The 3d of *August* we sail'd thence, and took the Isle of *Ottoqua*, two *Leagues* North and South from it. The 4th as we were going to the Isle of *Sipilla*, we met our Galley with a Prize she had taken near the River of *Seppa*. The 5th we saw 5 sail between *Tavoga* and *Panama*, which prov'd our own Ships, which had taken another Prize coming from *Nata* with Provisions. The 6th we anchored at *Tavoga*, and the 7th sail'd for the *King's Islands*, where we came to an anchor the 9th, to stop the Leaks of our Ships, and in the mean while sent our Galley with 4 Canoes well mann'd for the River *Boca del Chica*, to burn the Town call'd *Terrible* upon that River, and to attack the before mention'd 100 *Spaniards* that lay in wait there for the 30 *Free-Booters*.

The 11th we came to an anchor at the Mouth of the River *Boca del Chica*, whence we were carried up with the Tide beyond the place we intended to land at, and on a sudden receiv'd a warm salute from the 100 *Spaniards*, placed in ambush there, but our Patarero's made them soon quit their Entrenchments, which we possess'd our selves of, after having kill'd them abundance of Men. The Prisoners confirm'd to us what we had been told before, concerning the Murther of the three beforemention'd Parties that were to cross the *Isthmus* by Land.

The Bucaniers force the Intrenchments on the River Boca del Chica.

The 12th we took a Pirogue with some Pounds of Gold Dust, and the 13th return'd down towards the Mouth of the River. Here we met one of our Barks, which not long before had surpriz'd another Pirogue with some Pounds of Gold. The same Evening we set sail towards the *King's Islands*, where we rejoin'd our Ships the 17th.

The 20th we went out again to cruize about *Tavoga*, and the 21st descry'd three sail, who no sooner perceiv'd us to make ready, but they got the Weather-Gage of us, and gave us some Guns: However they soon lost the Wind again for want of resolution, as not daring to pass between the Isle of *Tavagnilla* and a Rock, which we did; we engag'd them till Noon without any remarkable advantage, but then boarding the biggest, we set Fire, by the help of our Granadoes, to some loose Powder, which burning a good number of their Men, gave us an opportunity of making our selves Masters of the Ship, whilst one of our Barks at the same time boarded and took another of the Enemies. The third being a Galley, seeing her self pursued by our Galley and two *Pirogues*, ran ashore, and was stav'd to pieces. Their biggest Ship had 80 Men kill'd and wounded out of 120. and the second 70 out of 88. But of the Vessels that ran ashore not above 10 or 12 were saved; and there was not one Officer of all the Ships but what was either kill'd or sorely wounded.

A Sea Engagement with the Spaniards.

1686. Whilst we were employ'd in mending our Rigging, we saw 2 sail more coming towards us from *Panama*; and being inform'd by our Prisoners, that they were sent to their relief, we put up *Spanish* Colours with *English* and *French* ones under them. The *Spaniards* being deceived by this Stratagem, boldly approached their biggest Vessel we had taken, but were highly surpriz'd when they met with so hot a salute, as sent one of their Ships to the bottom, whilst the other was boarded and taken by one of our Pirogues; in this they found four packs of Cords of the same length; and it appearing by the Captain's Commission, that they were to give no quarter, except to the Chyrurgeons, we play'd them the same game they intended for us.

The 23d as we were sailing away to anchor at *Tavoga*, we took another Vessel as she was going to *Panama*, and found that in the whole Engagement we had but one Man kill'd, but no less than 20 wounded, (among whom was Captain *Townsley*) who dy'd for the most part of their Wounds, because the *Spaniards* had poison'd their Bullets.

The 24th we sent a Letter to the President of *Panama*, requiring him to deliver up five Prisoners they had taken out of the 3 Parties that were massacred in their passage over the *Isthmus*. As he refus'd to deliver them, and our Men were highly exasperated at the loss of their Companions, who dy'd daily of their Wounds, it was resolv'd to send 20 Heads of our *Spanish* Prisoners to the President, and to let him know, that unless he sent us the five Prisoners by the 28th, all the rest of the Prisoners in our Hands should pay with their Heads for it. This dreadful present had such an effect upon the haughty *Spaniard*, that the 27th we receiv'd a Letter from the Bishop of *Panama*, wherein he promised the releasement of our Prisoners, which was perform'd accordingly the 28th, then the Governour sent us our five Men, *viz.* four *English* and one *Frenchman*, with some Refreshments for the wounded Men, of which we sent him twelve in exchange for ours.

They send 20 Spaniards Heads to the President of *Panama*.

The same Day we came to an anchor again at *Tavoga* to take in Water. The 4th of *November* a Bark was sent from *Panama* to bring us 10000 pieces of Eight as a Ransom for the *Spanish* Prisoners, whom we sent back by the same Messenger. The 5th, we came to an anchor at *Ottoqua*; where on the 8th, our *Indian* Guides we had brought along with us from the *Isthmus* in our passage over Land, were either taken or murther'd by the *Spaniards*. The same Day, Captain *Townsley* died of his Wounds. The 10th, we cast anchor at the *King's Islands*, and afterwards cruized betwixt *Tavoga* and *Sipalia*, tho' the Winds were very boisterous and uncertain in this Channel all this while till the 28th, when the Weather growing more moderate, we discovered a Ship sail along the Coast of the Continent, which was endeavouring to get into the Port of *Panama*; but those in the Fort mistaking her for one of ours, she was forced to stand off, and was taken by 2 of our Pirogues. She came from *Nata*, and was loaden with Provisions and Sugar for *Panama*.

The Sea about the *King's Isles* produces abundance of Whales, who are at constant enmity with a certain Fish call'd *Espadon*: These have a Fish-bone like a Cymetar on their Heads, wherewith they wound the Whales, and make them take vast Leaps. Here are also (besides *Pear Oysters*) exceeding good and large Oysters, so that when they intend to eat them, they cut them into four pieces.

Whales and large Oysters.

The 24th, we came to an anchor again at the Isle of *Ottoqua*, where having gathered some *Maiz* and *Rice*, and put 19 Prisoners ashore, we set sail again the 29th, and came the 30th over against the Bay of *la Villa*. The 31st, at Midnight, we went ashore, but being led out of the way by our Guides, we were discover'd and charged by their Outguards, some of whom we dismounted, and made our Prisoners. They inform'd us, that being gone out of the way, we were still 3 Leagues distant from *la Villa*, and that they had been reinforced by 600 Men from *Panama*, we judged it the safest way to return aboard, which we could not do however till the 2d of *November*, being constantly charged in the Rear by the *Spaniards*. The same Evening we anchored betwixt the Isle of *Iguana* and the Continent, and went ashore the 3d to get some Provisions. We were forced to skirmish with a Body of *Spaniards*, who were not able to hinder our going to a neighbouring Farm; but finding little or no Provisions, we return'd aboard the 4th.

The 5th, we kept out to Sea, but could not double the Cape of *Puercos* before the 12th. The 13th, being still 13 Leagues to Leeward of the said Cape, we steer'd West North West to the Isle of *Tigres*, being 6 Leagues North and South from the Continent, between the River of S. *James* and the Cape. 1686.

The 16th, we came to S. *John's* Isle; and the 18th, brought our Vessels and Canoes ashore to clean them.

The 24th in the Morning, we went ashore 2 Leagues to the Leeward of the River *Pueblo Nuevo*. About 2 in the Afternoon we took a Horseman, who being examin'd, told us, that we were within half a League of the Burrough of S. *Lawrence*, where accordingly we arrived before Night, and made a great many Prisoners, with whom we return'd aboard the 26th. The Village of S. *Lawrence* stands upon a River one League and an half from the Sea shore, in an open Country, being inhabited both by *Spaniards* and *Indians*. Having agreed with our Prisoners for the Provisions to be given us for their Ransom, we sent the 27th the Curate of the Place to procure the same with all possible speed. We staid for his coming till the 2d of *December*, but no-body appearing, we set Fire to the Village. The *Spaniards* had no sooner discover'd the Flames, but they offered us a sum of Money a- a Ransom for the Prisoners; but as we wanted Provisions, we let them know, that unless they perform'd the Agreement made with the Prisoners, we would cut off their Heads: But instead thereof finding them busied on the 3d in raising an Entrenchment, we put the Prisoners ashore in an adjacent Island, without expecting their Ransom, and in the Evening set sail towards the Bay of *Boca del Toro*. The 5th, we doubled the Point of *Porica* 10 Leagues to Leeward of that Bay; whereabouts we were becalmed till the 10th, when a small Breeze brought us to the Mouth of the Bay, but was follow'd by so stupendious a Tempest, that had it not happen'd that our Sails and Rigging had been torn to pieces, we had been swallow'd up by the Waves.

They take S. *Lawrence*.

Are in danger of being cast away.

The furv of the Tempest being quite allay'd by Night, we came to an anchor in the Bottom of the Bay the 11th, where you may anchor within Pistol-shot from the shore. The Mouth of it is 4 or 5 Leagues from one Point to another, and 5 Leagues deep; but if you will enter without danger, you must avoid the East side. To the East and North East very near to the Continent, it contains 4 Isles, but being surrounded with Rocks, there is no good anchoring near them. Into this Bay disembogue themselves several very fine Rivers, inhabited by a sort of *Indians*, who maintain no Commerce or Correspondence with any other Nation, no more than those inhabiting betwixt the Cape *La Villa* and *Boca del Drago*: notwithstanding which the *Spaniards* carry their Caravans from *Lima* to *Panama*, through their Country, about 6 Leagues from the Sea side, but this they must not attempt without good Convoys. The 12th, we look'd out for some tall Trees to provide ourselves with new Canoes: and on the 25th, one of our Quarter-masters was stabb'd by a Cook in six places with a Knife, but was happily reliev'd and the Malefactor punish'd with death.

The Bay of *Boca del Toro*.

January the 1st, our Canoes being ready, we set [illegible] from hence to the Bay of *Caldaira*, where arriving [illegible] the 2d, we imbark'd 200 Men in our Canoes, to go [illegible] *Cagna*, a small Isle of difficult accels, a League North and South from the Continent, betwixt *Boca del Toro* and *Caldaira*.

§. IV. The Buccaneers leave the Bay of *Boca del Toro* to go to the *South Sea*. 1703. The Isle of *Cagna*.

As we put only forward in the Night-time, it was not till the 6th we got into the Bay, where our Guide put us ashore in the Night-time; but in so [illegible] a place, that we sunk to the middle in Mud. Not knowing where to turn our selves, we hi'ed up our Guide to one of the Trees, in hopes he might discover by the Moon-light, where to meet with some sound Land; but he no sooner found himself at liberty, but he skipped from Tree to Tree, and soon got out of our reach, leaving us to shift for our selves in that dismal condition.

They are led into the Mire.

By break of Day being return'd with much ado to our Canoes, and having cleaned our selves and our Arms, we found a River, which we entred, and going up two Leagues, landed near an Entrenchment, where we saw the Wrecks of two Ships once belonging to an *English* Bucanier, named *Bedshars*, but burnt by the *Spaniards* whilst they were careening here. We marched along the Road we found there for 2 Leag. when discovering by the Barking of the Dogs that we were near some Habitations, we on a sudden came to the Town of S. *Catalina*, and took all the Inhabitants Prisoners.

Take S. *Catalina*.

Being

1687. Being inform'd by them, that we had no farther than 3 Leagues to *Nicoya*, we mounted 60 Men to surprize that City; but these meeting with 2 Horse Centinels, they could not get thither before the Inhabitants got intelligence of their coming, and consequently had saved their best effects. Coming to the City, they met with some opposition in the Market-place; but after having sustain'd the first discharge, the *Spaniards* retreated and left the Place to their mercy.

Take Nicoya.

The 8th, having got some Money, and all the Governour's Plate and Furniture, we carried it back with our Prisoners to S. *Catalina*; which place we left the 9th, and the 10th got aboard our Ships, then at anchor in the Bay. We staid in expectation of the Ransom till the 12th, when we return'd to *Nicoya* to get some Provisions. Coming thither, we were inform'd that the Governour of *Costa Rica* had given no orders for any other Ransom but for the Prisoners. We staid till the 19th, when the said Ransom being paid, we sent back the Prisoners, and a Letter to the Governour, That if he did not send us a certain quantity of *Maiz* and Biscuit to ransom the Town, we would certainly burn it.

The 20th, we sail'd to one of the before-mentioned Isles in the Bay; and the 22d went ashore at *Caldaira*, and thence marched on to the little Town of *Lesparso*, which we found quite abandon'd. The 23d, we follow'd the first great Road that came in our sight; but scarce had marched a League, when we discover'd a Body of 200 *Spanish* Horse following our Rear; one among the rest frequently advancing at some distance from the Troop, in a menacing posture; which being perceived by some of our Men, five of them hid themselves among the long Grass till our main Body was pass'd, which being follow'd at some distance by the before-mention'd *Spaniard*, our Men took an opportunity to dismount and to seize him, before he could be relieved by his Companions. To be even with him for his Insolency, we gave him a taste of our usual Welcome, by putting him severely to the Rack immediately.

The Insolence of a Spaniard punish'd.

He declared we were on the High-way of *Carthagena*, which was 27 Leagues thence; that the Horse we saw in the Rear, were part of 400 sent out to observe our motion; and that in case of necessity, they were to retreat to an Entrenchment lately made 6 Leagues on this side of *Carthagena*. This being sufficient to stop our Journey, we return'd the 24th to our Canoes, by the way of *Lesparso*.

The 26th, we went on shore again, under the Conduct of our new Prisoner, when we had the pillaging of 2 large Farms, and were inform'd by some of the Prisoners, that a Body of *Free-booters* was lately landed at *Calebra*, which we supposing to be Captain *Groignet* with his Crew, we were soon convinced of the truth of it, when we found the said Captain with 3 Canoes in the same place where our Ships lay then at anchor. Captain *Groignet*'s design was to land in some uninhabited place, in order to pass by Land to the North Sea. But his Crew, consisting only of 60 Men, we dissuaded him from that Enterprize.

They are join'd by Capt. Groignet.

He told us that he had made several successful Descents in the Bay of *Napalla*; but that they had been in danger of being betray'd by 3 of their own Men, (corrupted by the *Spaniards*) who under pretence of conducting them to a rich Gold Mine 14 Leagues from the Sea side, and as many from *Tinsigal*, intended to betray them to the *Spaniards*, who were to have surpriz'd them by an Ambush laid in the way; but that they coming sooner to the Mine than was expected, they escaped the Snare, but got but little Booty, the *Spaniards* having carried away 450 Pounds Weight of Gold not an Hour before.

His Adventures.

They were in their return met by a Body of *Spaniards*, but they had not Courage enough to attack him; and so they return'd safe to their Canoes. He farther added, That some time after they got to *Pueblo Viejo*, by the way of a River that exonerates it self into the Bay of *Napalla*, which they took; but in their return were attack'd by 600 Men from an Entrenchment, which they took with the loss of 3 Men only on their side, tho' they made a great slaughter of the Enemy, and made a great number of Prisoners. That some Months after, 85 of his Men having taken a resolution to go to the Isles of *California*, he with the 60 remaining went in 3 Canoes towards *Panama*; where happening to meet some of ours, we gave him and his Crew room in our Ship.

The 30th, while we were busie in searching several Rivers that discharge themselves into the Bay of *Caldaira*, we 1687. went into a very fine and large one 10 Leagues, and all the way found her of the same depth and breadth. The *Spaniards* told us, that this River had its source out of a Mountain 50 Leag. thence; and that the River of S. *John* which falls into the North Sea at the *White Cape*, ow'd its rise to the same Mountains. Having refresh'd our selves till *February* the 6th in this River, we return'd aboard, and the 12th set sail in order to give them a third visit at *Nicoya*, where we arrived the 13th in the Evening; and the Ransom formerly demanded by the Town being once more refused us, we burnt and left it the 17th.

They burn the Town of Nicoya.

The Town of *Nicoya* was small but pleasantly seated upon a pretty River that waters one half of the Town, which is on all sides surrounded with Mountains. Their Churches (which at this as well as at other times we spared) are very stately, but the Houses meanly built. In our return, we were like to have been hemm'd in by the Fire which the *Spaniards* had set to the *Savannah's*, which is very dreadful in those Parts, where the long Grass and Woods dry'd by the excessive heat of the Sun, sometimes runs for several Leagues together, according to the course of the Wind, before it can be extinguish'd.

Burning of the Woods by the Spaniards.

The 23d, we proposed certain Conditions to the *English*, in order to attack *Quequilla*; which being not accepted by them, we parted Companies, 140 remaining with Captain *Groignet* in his Ships, and 162 embarking in our Frigat and long Boat.

The Bucaniers part Companies

The 24th, we set sail towards *Quequilla*, the first Sea-port Town on the South Coast, as you go thither from *Panama*. After various courses, we pass'd the Line on the 8th of *March*, leaving the 3 Isles, call'd the *Gallapa's*, situated North and South of the *White Cape*, and East and West from *Quequilla*, 12 Leagues to Leeward of us.

The Isles of Gallapa.

The Woods in these Isles swarm with *Tortoises*, *Lizzards*, and *Agouties*, and the Sea affords vast store of Fish: But on the other hand, they are destitute of Water. The 18th about Noon, we saw a Ship to the Windward of us, which proved to be the same Ship we had parted with in the Bay of *Caldaira*; and finding her the better Sailer, and consequently fearing she might get to *Quiaquilla* before us, we desir'd them to join with us in the same design.

The Bucaniers rejoin.

We were much puzzled to know what Latitude we were in, having not seen the Sun in ten Days; but the same appearing the 19th, we computed our selves to be 25 Leagues to Windward of *Quequilla*, and 60 Leag. from the shore. The 28th, finding our Provisions to decrease apace, we were reduced to one Meal in 48 Hours. The 29th, we computed our selves to be opposite to the Isle of *Plata*, 30 Leagues to Leeward of *Quequilla*. The 30th, we found our selves at 1 *deg.* North Lat.

The 6th of *April* in the Morning, we descry'd Land both to Windward and Leeward of us. The 8th, we were 4 or 5 Leagues off the Cape of *Pulao*, which is under the Equinoctial 30 Leagues to Leeward of the Isle of *Plata*; and the 11th, we were got to the height of that Isle 18 Leagues out at Sea. The 12th, we got sight of the Point of S. *Helena*, which is 15 Leagues to Leeward of *Quequilla*; and forms the beginning of the Bay that has given name to the Town. The next Morning, we descry'd a Ship, which proved to be a Prize laden with Wine and Corn, taken by one Captain *Davis*, who had put 8 Men aboard her, but was now separated from her.

They meet with another English Ship.

The Men told us, that they had made several descents at *Sagoa*, *Arica*, and *Pisca*; near the last of which they had routed 800 *Spaniards*; and having got near 5000 pieces of Eight a Man, they resolved to return to the *North Seas*, but that in the mean while many of their Men having lost all their Substance at gaming, and happening to meet with Captain *Wilmot*, another *Englishman*, in the Road of the Isles of *Don Fernandez*, (near the brink of the Streights of *Magellan*) who was come thither with the same design of going to the *North Sea*. Those of Captain *Davis*'s Crew who had lost their Money, altered their resolutions which made those that had made their Fortune by gaming, go over to Captain *Wilmot*'s Ship; as those of his Crew who were without Riches did aboard Captain *Davis*'s Ship; who thereupon, with 60 *English* and 20 *Frenchmen*, came back into the *South Sea*. As this Prize was well provided with Victuals, and they were uncertain when they might rejoin Captain *Davis*, we were easily induced to accept of their Company.

The

1687.

The 14th, we steer'd to the Bay, which is 30 Leagues in breadth; and the 15th discovered the *White Cape*, the Windward Point of this Bay. About 10 in the Morning, we embark'd 260 Men in our Canoes, and at Sunset came up with the Isle of S. *Clara*, which is only a Rock standing East and West 6 Leagues from the Continent.

They enter the Bay of *Queaquilla*.

The 16th, we were five Leagues from the shore, betwixt S. *Clara* and the Isle of *La Puna*. This Island may be seen at a great distance at Sea, standing 2 Leagues East and West from the Continent, opposite to the entrance of the River *Queaquilla*; and is 20 Leagues in circumference. It has a large Town belonging to it, where formerly were kept the King of *Spain*'s Magazines, because Ships of great burthen cannot enter the River betwixt this Isle and the Continent.

The Isle of *Puna*.

The 17th, we concealed our selves in a covered way of this Isle; and being informed of the true condition of the Town of *Queaquilla*, we disposed our Forces under the Command of Captain *Picard*, *Groignet*, and *Hewit*. In the Evening, we left our covert place in hopes to enter the River of *Queaquilla* before break of Day; but with much ado we could gain the Point of the Isle, directly opposite to the River, which we could not enter till the 18th at Night, by one of the two Mouths, and were carried up by the swiftness of the Current at least 4 Leagues in 2 Hours. The largest part of this River being half a League over, we concealed our selves under 2 Isles the 19th all Day long, and in the Evening advanced briskly again by the advantage of the Current, without the help of our Oars. Our Guide would fain have landed us beyond the Town, where it is weakest; but the Tide turning too soon against us, we were forced to go ashore within Cannon shot on this side of it, 2 Hours before break of Day, from whence we discovered many Lights, which they keep here all Night in their Houses. After our landing, we were forced to cut our way through shrubby Woods, which we had no sooner pass'd, but we heard the discharging of a small Pattereroe, which being readily answered by a whole discharge of Cannon, we did not question our being discovered; tho' we were not able to guess at the reason of it, being it seems occasion'd by the striking of Fire of one of our Men left to guard the Canoes, contrary to our express orders.

They enter the River *Queaquilla*.

Land near the City of that Name.

Notwithstanding this discovery, we march'd the 20th with break of Day, with Drums beating, and Colours flying; but at our approach to the Town, found 700 well arm'd Men posted behind a Wall 4 Foot and an half high, enclosed with a Ditch towards the River side. They kill'd us some Men as we were advancing against them; so that flush'd with this success, they would needs sally out upon us with Sword in Hand; but meeting with a hot reception, they soon retreated, and broke down the Bridges behind them: But our Granadiers following them close, soon after forced them from their Retrenchments into their Houses, and thence to the Market-place. Here they defended themselves very briskly for an Hour, from a Redoubt they had cast up; but being likewise chased from thence they retreated to another, and from this to the third, the largest and strongest of all the rest. From this Fort they fired most furiously upon us: and when we were got to the Foot of the Pallisado's, they sally'd upon us not without some success, but were at last forced to retreat into the Fort again, not without a considerable loss. At last finding our Ammunition to fail after 11 Hours Fighting, we resolved to carry the Fort, or to dye in the Attempt: And so redoubling our Force, carry'd it with Sword in Hand, tho' not without the loss of 9 Men killed and 12 wounded, which was inconsiderable however in comparison of the loss of the Enemy, which appear'd by the Carcases found in the Streets and Forts to amount to above 900, besides 700 of both Sexes taken Prisoners, and among them the Governour and his Family, he being sorely wounded, as well as all the Men of note, who fought bravely upon this occasion.

Attack and take it.

The City of *Queaquilla* is seated round a little Mountain, the Houses being only of Boards, and built upon Wooden Piles, to keep out the Water during the rainy Season, which begins with *January* and ends not till *April*. The Churches and Convents are goodly Structures. The largest Fort we had occasion to mention before, is fortify'd only on that side where it fronts the River, and was then furnish'd with 7 pieces of Cannon: The other two stand upon the descent of the Hill, where it [illegible]wards the River; they were surrounded with a [illegible] Wall, but defended only by *Pateroo's*. The great Fort is a Communication by a covert way, on each side whereof are 2 rows of Palisado's filled with Earth.

A Description of the City of *Queaquilla*.

1687.

Their chief Commodity here, is Chocolate; besides which we found also several sorts of other valuable Merchandizes, great store of Pearls and Precious Stones, a vast quantity of Silver Plate, and 70000 pieces of Eight; tho' they had carried away above 3 Millions whilst we were busied in taking the Forts. We sent 4 of our Canoes in pursuit of the Shallops that had these Riches aboard, but too late, for they got only 22000 pieces of Eight more, and a Vermillion Eagle gilt (belonging to some Church) weighing 68 Pounds, having 2 great Rocks of Emeralds instead of Eyes. The Governour's House was so sumptuously furnish'd, that nothing in *Europe* could exceed it. We found 14 Barks, and the same Galleys we were engaged with near *Pueblo Nuevo*, in this Port, besides 2 of the King's Ships upon the Stocks, almost finish'd. We agreed with the Governour for the Ransom of him, his Family, the City, Fort, Cannon, and Ships, for a Million of pieces of Eight.

They get a vast Booty.

The Women of this place were very handsom, and the Fathers here live in great familiarity with them. They had taken care to represent us to them as Man-eaters, and who had nothing of Humanity belonging to us.

The Women and Fathers.

A certain Waiting-Gentlewoman belonging to the Governour's Family being fallen into my Hands, begg'd with Tears in her Eyes, *not to Eat her*. Whereupon being ask'd, who had told her we used to devour People? She answered, the *Fathers*; who had also assured her that we were more like Monkeys than Men. But after they had once been undeceived from this opinion, they became sufficiently kind to many of our Men. The 21st, some of our Men set Fire to the Town by accident, which burnt one third part of it before it could be extinguish'd. Being sorely afraid that the *Spaniards* would refuse to pay the promised Ransom; under this pretence we sent them a Letter the 22d, intimating, That some of their own People must needs have fired the Town, in order to defraud us of the Merchandizes and Provisions, which they knew we stood in so much need of, and that in case they did not make good to us the Damage we had sustained by the Fire, we would cut off the Heads of 50 of the Prisoners: Whereupon they promised us entire satisfaction.

May the 2d, Captain *Groignet* dy'd of the Wounds he had receiv'd the Day we took the Town. The 4th, we sent our Galley to the Isle of *Plata*, to look for Captain *Davis*. The time appointed for the payment of the Ransom being expir'd, and we having sufficient reason to suspect that this delay proceeded from some treacherous design of the *Spaniards*, (which was afterwards confirm'd by an intercepted Letter from the *Tenient* of *Queaquilla* to the Viceroy of *Lima*) we were oblig'd to use the utmost severity to our Prisoners, and to make them cast Dice for their Lives; and the lot falling upon four, their Heads were cut off immediately and sent to *Queaquilla*.

Capt. *Groignet* dies.

The 14th, our Galley return'd from the Isle of *Plata*, being chased by 2 Ships about the Point of S. *Helena*, which we supposing to be Captain *Davis*, we sent a Canoe to get farther intelligence. She return'd the 22d, having met with Captain *Davis*'s Frigat and 4 Prizes he had taken the 16th; the last they brought along with them, and desired a Main-mast for Capt. *Davis*'s Ship, his having been much damnify'd in an Engagement with the Prize, which was a strong and rich Ship, call'd the *Catalina*.

During our stay at the Isle of *La Puna*, for above 30 Days, in expectation of the promised Ransom, we lived both very pleasantly and in great plenty: For, besides the daily allowance of Provisions brought thither from *Queaquilla* by the *Spaniards*, we had good store of Refreshments of our own; and the Town Musicians (our Prisoners) entertain'd our Ears with Lutes, Theorbs, Gittars, Harps, and other Instruments. Our Women Prisoners also added not a little to our satisfaction; for being once undeceived in the opinion the *Fathers* had infused into them concerning us, they were not sparing even of their last Favours, without the least violence. Among the rest, we had a young Gentlewoman, the Widow of the Treasurer of the City in our Hands; she having taken a liking to me, proposed her Husband's Place and a considerable Estate in case I would marry her.

§. VI. The other Transactions of the *Free-booters* in the *South Sea*, 1687.

They live plenteously at *la Puna*.

A Love Adventure of the Author.

I must confess, the temptations of a young pretty Woman, a good Place, and a plentiful Fortune, were no small inducements to a young Man in my circumstances,

1687. stances; but all these Advantages, tho' attended with the Tears of this young Woman, were not able to counterbalance the just fear I had of the revengful temper of the *Spaniards*, and therefore resolved to prefer the continuance of my present toilsom Life, before the torments of the perpetual suspicion I should have lived in, of the Treachery of the Inhabitants. The 23d, we sent a *Father* to *Queaquilla* to procure the before-mention'd Ransom; and soon after a Bark brought us 24 Sacks of Meal, and about 20000 pieces of Eight. The 25th, word was sent us, That the Tenient of *Queaquilla* would not pay any more than 220000 pieces of Eight for the remaining Ransom. Whereupon it was resolved to accept rather of the same, than to run any farther hazard, and to shed more innocent Blood. Accordingly it was order'd, that 50 of the chiefest of our Prisoners should be sent aboard as a security for the rest of the Money, and the others of less quality to be deliver'd as soon as the 22000 pieces of Eight should be paid to those we left with 2 Canoes at *Puna*, whilst we set sail to the Point of S. *Helena*, where our Canoes join'd us the 27th, and brought the 220000 pieces of Eight. The 27th, Capt. *Davis*'s Prize came to give us notice, that 2 *Spanish Armadilla*'s were cruising before the Bay to expect our coming out, and that Capt. *Davis* lay by to stay for us.

They leave Queaquilla.

We discover'd the Enemy by break of Day betwixt the Isle of S. *Clara* and the Point of S. *Helena*; and Captain *Davis* having join'd us soon after, we put 80 Men aboard him, because he wanted Men to manage his Guns. This done, we reserv'd only 2 Ships and a long Bark for the present occasion, and sent our Prizes with a guard of some Pirogues upon the Flats, where the *Spaniards* could not come at them. We endeavoured to get the Weather-gage of them, but could not, the Wind blowing always at this Season from the Sea. About Noon, the *Spaniards* coming upon us, we fought till Night, but without any considerable damage on either side: We cast anchor at Night, and prepared for a second Engagement the next Morning. We try'd again to get to the Windward of the Enemy, but could advance but little for want of our Pirogues to tow us. About 2 a Clock in the Afternoon, the two *Armadilla*'s bore upon us, and ply'd us with their Cannon till dark Night. We were much shatter'd, but had only one Man wounded.

A Sea Engagement betwixt the Spaniards and the Bucaniers.

The 29th, we remained at anchor till 3 in the Afternoon, when the Enemy attacking the biggest of our Prizes that lay only on the side of the Shallows, we prepared to relieve her. We came to so close an Engagement, that both our Cannon and small Arms came into play on both sides; yet we lost but one Man. The 30th, we spent in endeavouring to get the Weather-gage of one another; and the 31st, the Enemy having intercepted one of our Prizes before she could join us, we fired upon one another most furiously, from 2 in the Afternoon till an Hour within Night; during which they spoil'd most of our Tackle and Sails; but we had not so much as one Man kill'd or wounded.

June the 1st, about 10 in the Morning, the Enemy came close upon us, and giving us a Volley of their small Arms, with a discharge of their Cannon charg'd with Cartouches, we thought they would have boarded us; but we got clear of them, and gave a furious Volley in our turn, which made them stand off to refit. After an Hours time, they renew'd the Fight, which continued till Night. We had only 3 Men wounded that Day. The 2d, by break of Day, the Enemy being still Windward of us, ply'd us most vigorously with their Cannon and small Arms, but we gave them so hot a reception with our Fusees, that they were glad to bear away, having wounded us only 2 Men, but much endamag'd our Rigging. We did all we could to make ready to renew the Engagement the 3d of *June*; but in the Morning, to our great surprize, found they were grown weary of the sport; so we steered for, and anchored at the Isle of *Plata* the same Evening.

The Spaniards fleer away.

We weighed again the 6th, keeping along a level and fertile Coast inhabited by the *Spaniards* as far as *Barbacoa*. Being come to an anchor betwixt Cape *Pastoa* and that of S. *Francisco*, we put our Prisoners ashore the 10th, and the 11th made a dividend of the Gold, Precious Stones, and Pearls, by way of Auction, which were sold at a prodigious rate for Silver; which being of no such ease carriage, was scarce valu'd among us at that time, which was the reason that we left a vast quantity of Plate and Coined Silver behind us at *Queaquilla*, or at least would not take the trouble to look after it; for in this part of the Country they possess such a prodigious quantity of Silver, that they have all their Utensils, made of Steel, Copper, and Iron in *Europe*, of this Metal. 1687.

Prodigious quantity of Silver.

Besides the great quantity of Gold and Silver the Country of *Peru* affords, the Ground is exceeding fertile, and produces 3 Crops of Corn and Wine every Year. They have no more than 2 Seasons, the Summer of 9 Months, and the Winter of 3, when it freezes very hard on the Mountains, tho' the same is scarce to be perceiv'd in the Plains. They are well stock'd with Sheep (besides other Cattel) weighing 250 and 300 Pounds: These they use also for Carriage; for they will kneel down and take up 2 Jars of 20 Quarts each, and when they are to be taken off, will do the same to be discharged of their burthen.

A short account of Peru.

Large Sheep used for Carriage.

The 21st, Capt. *Davis* left us in order to return to the *North Sea* by the Streights of *Magellan*; but as our Vessels were very old, and we had not room to stow a sufficient quantity of Water, we resolved to go to the Eastern Coast, in order to go over Land to the *North Sea*. Accordingly, we set sail 13th, and the 15th anchored 20 Leagues to Windward of Point *Mangla*; whereabouts having surprized an Outguard of 15 *Spaniards*, they inform'd us, That they were set to guard this River call'd the *Elmeralda*, from the many great pieces of *Emeralds* found thereabouts: That in 8 Hours we might with our Canoes go from the Mouth of the River to *Quito*, a well peopled City, and formerly the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name; but that to go thither by Land, we must take a compass of 80 Leagues through a Country well stor'd with Inhabitants.

Capt. Davis sails for the North Sea.

The 17th, we set sail for the Isle of *Gallo*, which stands 100 Leagues to Leeward of *Queaquilla*, at the Mouth of the Bay of *Barbacoa*, where we came to anchor the 20th.

The Isles of Gallo and of Cocos.

The 25th, we sail'd for the Isle of *Coco's*, which stands North and South of *Realegno* 100 Leagues distant. The 30th, we discover'd the Isle of *Malpalla*, which stands 40 Leagues South off that of S. *John's*, and from thence sail'd to the Bay *Mapalla*, the Wind being contrary to go to the Isle of *Cocoes*.

The 13th of *July*, we found our selves 30 Leagues out at Sea from *Realegno*. The 16th, we discover'd the Mountains; and the 17th sent some Canoes to see what place we were near. They return'd in the Evening, and brought us word it was S. *Michael's* Bay, and not that of *Mapalla*, (as we supposed before) which stands 40 Leagues to Windward from the first. The 23d, we anchored at the Isle of *Tygres*, the nearest Isle to the Mouth of it; and the 24th, in the Morning, descry'd 3 sail of Ships that doubled the Point of *Harina* to Windward of that Bay, and 10 Leagues to Leeward of *Realegno*. We bore up to these Vessels, which proved a Galley and 2 Pirogues, and engaged them till 2 in the Afternoon, when they left us, after having wounded us a few Men, and done some damage to our Rigging. The 25th, being rejoin'd by our Canoes (upon a Signal given) that had laid concealed under the shore, we anchored the 26th at an Isle in the Bay; and the 28th took a *Spanish* Captain in a Canoe, who being put to the Rack, declar'd, that in the same Bay 30 Men were gone ashore not long before, who had fought no less that 600 *Spaniards*, and kill'd *Don Albarada*, their Leader, one of the most valiant Captains in those Parts.

A Sea Engagement with three Spanish Vessels.

The Bay of *Mapalla* is a glorious Bay, full of large Islands, and formerly well inhabited. There is good anchorage here, but no shelter against the blasts of Winds, which often break your Cables. The 6th, one of our Men as he was hunting upon the Isle where we lay at anchor, met with 2 *Frenchmen*, who told them, that they were 2 of the 30 that had engaged the before said 600 *Spaniards*, who had separated themselves from the 85 that left Capt. *Groignet* in order to go to *California*. As they had hid themselves after the beforemention'd Engagement in this Isle, so they call'd the other 28 their Companions, who having join'd Company with us, we sail'd from the Coast of *Acapulco* to look after the 55 that had separated from them, and must needs be reduced to a miserable Condition. We steer'd with an East Wind till we came to the height of *Sansonnat*.

The Bay of Mapalla.

The 27th, we discovered Land to Leeward of the Bay of *Tecoantepequa*, into which we went with our Canoes, ordering our Ships to rendezvous at the Port of *Vaulco*. The 29th, we found an embarking place, but so strongly fortify'd and guarded, that we thought it best to sail 2 Leagues more to Leeward. Here finding

They land in the Bay of Tecoantepequa.

1687. ing 320 Men posted upon a rising Ground, we detach'd 50 of our number, who soon put them to flight, and took 2 Prisoners. They told us, that the Road we were upon tended to the City of *Tecoantepequa* 4 Leagues thence. Pursuant to this intelligence, we continued our march the next Day, when about 2 in the Afternoon we had a full view of the place from an Eminency 2 Miles from thence. As the City is surrounded with 8 Suburbs, and was defended by no less than 3000 Men, whereas our whole number consisted only of 180. We were put to a great nonplus, whether to go forward or not; but as the extream want of Provisions had reduced us to that pitch, that we must either starve or purchase them with the hazard of our Lives, we soon resolved to confront our Enemies. After half an Hour's march, we found our selves at the brink of a rapid River, which divides the body of the City from 4 Suburbs, we found a body of *Spaniards* entrenched on the opposite Bank; notwithstanding which, we pass'd it, and made our selves masters of the Entrenchment after an Hour's Engagement, tho' we waded up to the middle through the Water. Then entring the Town, we penetrated with such fury to the Market-place, that the Enemies not being able to sustain the Assault, quitted the same by 2 in the Afternoon, and retreated to a fortified Abby which commanded the Town; but we sent a Detachment of 80 of our best Men, who soon dislodged them, and thereby made us absolute Masters of the whole City. We were extreamly surpriz'd at the spaciousness of the Town, the regularity of its Streets, the beauty of its Churches, and the strength of the beforemention'd Abby of S. *Francis*.

Come to the City of *Tecoantepequa*.

They attack and take it.

The 31st, we requir'd a Ransom for the City, for the payment of which we staid in one of the Suburbs (for fear of a surprize) till the 3d of *September*, when receiving no answer, we return'd towards our Canoes, without reaping any advantage by this Enterprize, and rejoin'd our Ships the 9th, in the Port of *Fanlco*. The 15th, we landed again, and marching up 12 Leag. into the Country, plundered several Villages, and in one of them took the Governour of *Merida* with his Family, who having promised us a good quantity of Provisions for his Ransom, we carry'd him aboard the 25th. We staid for the said Ransom till the 4th of *November*; for which we were not very pressing, because we found great plenty of Tortoises here, and good store of Victuals in the adjacent Farms; and we were in no danger from the Enemy. From *Sansonnat* to *Acapulco* is no landing place, except in the Bays: That call'd the *Salt-pits* is but small, 20 Leagues to Windward of that of *Tecoantepequa*. About 20 Leagues to Leeward of the Bay of *Tecoantepequa* is the Port of *Vasulco*, so small as not to be able to contain above 12 Ships, and is extreamly narrow at the entrance; 4 Leagues lower is another Habour, but not very safe; and a little farther is the Isle call'd the *Sacrifice*; 8 Leagues lower there are three other small Ports, the best whereof call'd the *Angels* is 60 Leagues from *Acapulco*, and betwixt these 2 is no Harbour. The Country betwixt the Bay of *Salt-pits* and *Acapulco* is the best inhabited of any in the *South Sea*, having many rich Towns and more Gold Mines than *Peru*, but the Metal is not altogether so fine. Those of *Tinsigal* alone are preferr'd before the Mines of *Potosi*, whence this Western Coast is call'd *Costa Rica* by the *Spaniards*, tho' in the Geographical Maps this name is given only to a small part of this spacious Tract.

They leave *Tecoantepequa*.

The Port of *Vasulco*.

The 7th, we made a Descent, and attack'd a small Town call'd *Mucmelma*, seated 8 Leagues to Windward of *Vasulco*, and 6 up the Country. Within 2 Leagues on this side of the place the *Spaniards* had made an Entrenchment on a Rock upon the Bank of a River; but at our approach, they quitted the same without much resistance, and left the Town also to our mercy, where we provided our selves with good Victuals. The 16th, we return'd aboard; but by the 20th, being not able to hear any thing of the 55 Men we look'd for on this Coast, we steer'd our course for the Bay of *Mapalla*, where we were to consult concerning the place by which we were to repass to the *North Sea*.

They take the Town of *Mucmelma*.

The 1st of *December*, we were separated by a Storm, which put us to great extremity for want of Water, all our Casks being run out; we endeavoured several times to land, but in vain, by reason of the boisterous Waves; and on the 10th, got some, not without great danger, 15 Leag. to Leeward of *Sansonnat*. The 12th, we took a Village, and some Refreshments in it, by the help whereof we arrived at last safely the 15th in the Bay of *Mapalla*, where we found the rest of our Vessels at anchor near one of the Isles within that Bay. It is observable, that all along this Coast we had favourable Land Winds in the Night-time, for 10 Leagues out at Sea; and these blew so briskly at certain seasons, that the Mariners are obliged to lower their sails. The 17th, it was debated what Passage we should pitch upon to go by Land to the *North Sea*, according to the Prisoners relations; but as we were not fully convinced of their sincerity, we sent the 18th 70 Men ashore to take some others, to see whether these would agree in their depositions with the rest. We march'd till the next Day at Noon, without seeing any body, which made most of our Men stay behind, only 18 of us follow'd the Road we had taken. After an Hour's march we took 3 Horsemen, by whom being inform'd that not above a Mile thence there was a small place call'd *Chiloteca*, inhabited by 400 white Men, besides *Mulatto's*, *Negroes*, and *Indians*. As we had all the reason to imagine that we were not discover'd as yet, we ventured upon the boldest or rather rashest Action that ever was undertaken; for, without sending for our Companions, we attack'd and surpriz'd (tho' only 18 in number) the Town, took the chief Magistrate and other chief Persons (about 50 in all) Prisoners, and frighten'd the rest to that degree, that they got on Horseback, and left the Town to our disposal; and well it was they did, we being scarce sufficient to guard the Prisoners we had taken already; which we did in a Church, where we entrench'd our selves. Soon after, those that were fled being recover'd of their first fright, entred the Town again; and approaching to the Church, charged some of our People very briskly. Our Prisoners within seeing us enter with some precipitation, and imagining we were routed, run to the Arms we had laid up there and wounded one of our Men; but we soon made them understand the truth of the matter, for we ceased not to fire at them till they were all kill'd except 4 Men and Women.

1687.

Debate about their return to the *North Sea*.

Eighteen *Bucaniers* take the Town of *Chiloteca*.

Being attack'd by the *Spaniards*, they kill the Prisoners.

The 20th, we rejoin'd our Companions that had staid behind; and the 22d return'd aboard our Ships, where the Prisoners being examin'd concerning our intended Passage, they told us, that we must expect to open our way through 6000 Men, posted in the Province of *Segovia* to obstruct our passage; besides many other Difficulties they proposed to us, which put many of our Men out of conceit with this Enterprize. But as there were but 2 ways left us, either to perish for want of Subsistance, or to open our passage by our Swords, we chose the last; and to cut off all pretences of returning aboard, we run our Vessels ashore, except the Pirogues, by the means whereof we must be transporttd from the Island to the Continent, where we arrived the 1st Day of *January*. Here meeting with 68 Horses, some of our Men (sent hither before hand) had got together, every one pack'd up his Baggage, and those that had the most Silver, beyond what they were able to manage, gave part of it to their Companions, who had none, under condition that they should have one half for their carriage; tho' my charge which cost me 30000 pieces of Eight, but consisted only in Gold, Pearls and precious Stones, was not very burthensom to me; yet having certain intelligence, that a certain Gang coming to us who had lost all their Money at play, had laid a plot to destroy such as had the most Riches, I judged it absolutely requisite for my safety, to divide what I had among several of my Companions, thereby to avoid the danger that threaten'd my Life, tho' with the loss of part of what I had gathered with so much toil and hardship.

The Port of *Vasulco*.

1688. Preparations for their Journey cross the Continent.

The 2d Day of *January* we began our march, and lay that Night near the Sea side, being 260 in number. The next Day we refresh'd our selves at a Farm House. The 4th. we came up to the Mountains, from whence being first discover'd by the *Spaniards*, they follow'd us afterwards either in our Flanks or Rear. The 5th, we lay at a great Farm; and the 6th, baited at a Beef Farm. The 7th, we met with the first Ambuscade, whom we soon made to retire, but they burnt all the Provisions and Grass in the Roads through which we were to pass, which together with the Trees they had cut down, much retarded our Journey, the chief thing they aimed at, that their Men might finish a Retrenchment, of which we shall say more anon. The 8th, as we pass'd by a fine Plantation, we took a Prisoner, who told us, that the *Spaniards* were drawing all their Forces together to oppose us; coming to a great Burrough, we saw 300 Men, who for ever after never left us, but so as to keep always on the other side of the Woods of Pine Trees. We encamp'd that Night upon a rising Ground

§. VI. They begin their Journey another way cross the Continent.

They anchor in the Bay of *Mapalla*.

1688. Ground (according to our constant custom) near the said Burrough. The 9th, having reinforced our advanced Guard, we ordered them always to fire at the entrance of any Woods, in order to discover the Ambuscades; which they neglecting but once, we had 2 Men kill'd before we were aware of the Enemy. The 10th, we beat up the Ambuscade, forcing them to leave their Horses behind them; we lay at another Burrough that Night.

They come to Segovia. The 11th, as we came near the Town of *Segovia*, we forced them out of another Ambuscade; which done, we entred the Town without opposition, but found no Provisions. However, we got a Prisoner, who conducted us to the River, from whence we were to go to the *North Sea*. The Town of *Segovia* is seated in a Bottom, being surrounded with Mountains of a great height, which makes the access to it very difficult, about 40 Leagues from the *South Sea*. The Churches are not very beautiful here, but the Houses in the Market-place exceeding magnificent. We found it very cold on and near the Mountains, but very hot in the Valleys, after 10 in the Forenoon.

Segovia described.

The 12th, leaving the Town, we pass'd over the Mountains with incredible difficulty, the Ways being barricaded up by the *Spaniards*. The 13th, as we were marching along an Eminency, we saw on the descent of a Mountain (from which we were divided only by a little Valley) 12 or 15 Horses, which made us send 40 Men to see how matters stood on that side, because we took them for Oxen: But we were not a little surprized, when at their return they told us, these Beefs were really saddled Horses, and that near the same place they had observed on the side of the Mountain 3 Entrenchments within Pistol-shot of one another, and of so difficult an access, that not above 1 or 2 Men could approach them abrest at a time. This unexpected News was no small allay to the hopes we had conceived of satisfying our hungry Stomachs with good Beef; but the worst of all was, that we saw no means how to go either forward or backward, having the Enemy both in our Front and Rear, and not being able to subsist long in this place without Provisions.

A most advantageous Entrenchment.

The Author's Advice.

Divers Counsels were proposed, but none but what appear'd very difficult in the execution. At last I proposed that we must go round about cross the Woods and Precipices, and surprize the Enemy in the Rear, whereabouts they were (as I supposed) not covered by their Entrenchments. Whilst we were deliberating upon the matter, some 4 Men, who had been sent abroad to take a view of the adjacent Mountains, brought word, that they saw a Road upon the highest of them, which they took to be the continuation of the Passage shut up by the *Spaniards*. This intelligence having determin'd the matter in favour of the advice I had given before, we order'd 80 Men to be left in our Camp with the Baggage, to amuse the *Spaniards* both in our Front and Rear. At the same time we set forward to the number of 200, and spent the whole Night to climb over the Precipices and Rocks cover'd with Woods, tho' in a streight Line we did not advance half a quarter of a League. By break of Day being got over the most dangerous passage of the Mountain, above the Entrenchment, we saw some *Spaniards* that went the Rounds, but thanks to the Fogs that usually hold here till 10 a Clock in the Morning, they did not perceive us: So after having taken breath for half an Hour, we follow'd the Road we had seen before, which leading us from above to their Camp, we met with 2 Centinels, on whom being forced to fire, this gave the alarm to the *Spaniards* in the first Entrenchment. These, tho' 500 in number, seeing us on that side where they so little expected us, quitted the same as soon as we came within reach of them. Those in the 2 other Retrenchments defended themselves for an Hour, but theirs being commanded by that we were Masters of, and we attacking them with extraordinary Vigour from above, they betook themselves to their Heels; but being stopt in their flight by the same Trees they had cut down on purpose to stop our passage, many of them were kill'd, and not a few taken Prisoners.

Is pursued.

And succeeds.

Immediately after this Victory, we sent 60 Men on Horseback, to give notice thereof to our People left with the Baggage. These were in great danger of having been surprized by the 300 Men that follow'd our Rear, who imagining that we were gone to attack the *Spanish* Entrenchments in Front, had sent a haughty Message to them, with a Summons to surrender themselves Prisoners of War: But they having found means to detain the Messenger till they saw us advance at a distance, we advanced with our join'd Forces against them, and cut a great many to pieces before they could get on Horseback. Both these Actions cost us not above 2 Men killed and 4 wounded, tho' we made a great slaughter of the Enemy, who lost their General among the rest upon this occasion.

They route the Spaniards that follow'd their Rear.

1688

Some of the Prisoners we had taken, told us, that about 6 Leagues thence, upon the same Road, there was another Retrenchment, which made us cut the Hams of 900 Horses, for fear the fugitive *Spaniards* should get thither before us. The 15th, we came to the said Entrenchment, which being as yet unfinish'd, we pass'd without opposition; and the 17th, arrived at the so much desir'd River, where we immediately fell to work to cut Timber to build Floats, by the means of which we were to convey our selves to the *North Sea*, where this River, which has its rise in the Mountains of *Segovia*, exonerates it self at the Cape of *Gracia a Dios*. The Floats (call'd *Piparies*) are composed of 4 or 5 Trunks of a Tree call'd *Mahot*, being a light floating Wood, tied together with a sort of Lines growing in the Woods, and clinging to the Tree like *Ivy*. Upon one of these they put 2 or 3 Men, who for the most part must stand upright, because sometimes the Floats go 2 or 3 Feet under Water. With such a Float as this we ventured upon a River, which besides the swiftness of its Current, has above 100 Cataracts or Waterfals, of such a stupendious height, that it makes a Man tremble at the very sight of them. Notwithstanding which, we were forced to go on, having no other Instrument to guide us but long Poles, to keep us from being forced with too much violence against the Rocks, which notwithstanding all our precaution, happen'd too frequently, and put us in no small danger, tho' we did all we could to prevent it, by keeping at a considerable distance from one another, having found by experience, that in keeping near each other, we often fell foul upon one another.

They come to the River which brings them to the North Sea.

Where they build Floats.

Tho' there is no want of good Game hereabouts, and that we had brought good store of salted Horse-flesh along with us, yet as our Arms and Powder were spoil'd by the wet, as well as our Meat, we were forced to be contented with the Bananiers we could find upon the Banks of this River, planted by the *Albavins* an *Indian* Nation inhabiting hereabouts. As we pass'd along, the before-mention'd Wretches who had laid a Plot against the Lives of their Companions, took an opportunity to put the same in execution; for having concealed themselves behind the Rocks upon the brink of the River, they kill'd 5 *Englishmen*, whom they knew to be best provided with precious Moveables. The 20th of *February*, we had still 60 Leagues to go; but finding now the River more large, and without Cataracts, Rocks, or Trees, we all staid for one another, and having built a sufficient number of Canoes for our farther Transportation, we got by the help of them happily the 9th of *March* to the Mouth of the River, and consequently to the *North Sea*, at the Cape of *Gracia de Dios*. After having travell'd above 300 Leagues upon this River to the South East, tho' the *Spanish* Maps don't allow it above 80 Leagues South. The ancient Inhabitants of this Cape were an *Indian* Nation named *Mosticks*; but a *Spanish* Ship, the Cargo whereof consisted in *Mulatters* and *Negroes* of both Sexes from *Guinea*, being cast away on this Coast, the Natives, who were Enemies to the *Spaniards*, received them with open Arms, and assign'd them a certain Tract of the most fertile Grounds in the *Savannah's* or Plain extending for 5 or 6 Leagues up the River. Here they planted *Maiz*, *Banano's*, and *Magniots*, and the Natives instructed them in the way of making a pleasant Drink call'd *Hoon*, prepared of a certain Fruit growing on the top of a kind of wild Palm-tree of 10 Foot high growing in the Woods. Each of these Trees bears no more than one Branch or Grape, the Grain whereof is of the shape and thickness of an Olive, some yellow, some red, with a very hard Stone containing an oily Kernel. One of these Branches is sufficient for a Man's carriage. The Fruit they bruise with Stone and Kernels, and so boil it together, which affords both a nourishing and pleasant Drink. These *Mulatters* are very tall of stature, wear no Cloaths, and only cover their privy Parts with a Kind of grey hairy Substance growing on the upper part of the Bastard Palm Tree. Of these they make also a kind of Rugs to cover themselves with. They are very bold and skilful Fishermen.

Their Food.

Five Englishmen murthered by their Companions.

The extent of the River.

The Cape of Gracia de Dios.

The Indians near the Cape.

As for the ancient *Mosticks*, they live now in those places they call *Sambey* and *Samibey*, 10 or 12 Leag. to Windward of Cape *Gracia de Dios*, being a kind of a lazy Generation, who neither plant nor sow, and are always served by their Wives. If press'd by Hunger, they

The Mosticks or Native Indians.

1694. go a Fishing, in which they are very expert; and never go out again till all is consumed. They lead a vagabond Life, go naked like the *Mulatters*, and are much afflicted with a kind of small Flys that sting most dreadfully.

The 14th of *March*, an *English* Vessel, of which we had some advice before, coming to an anchor here, 50 of us took the first opportunity to croud aboard her; and to prevent the rest from doing the same, (she being already over charged) we weigh'd anchor. We agreed with the Master for 40 pieces of Eight *per* Head to carry us to S. *Domingo*, where we arrived in the Port of *Petit Gnaves*, from whence we had set out 4 Years before.

An Account of a Voyage made by the Sieur de Montauban, *a Captain of a Privateer, on the Coast of* Guinea, *in* 1695.

NOT to trouble the Reader with the several Adventures that befel me in my former Voyages on the Coasts of *New Spain*, *Carthagena*, *Mexico*, *Florida*, *Cape Verd*, and of *Guinea*, I will confine my self to a succinct account of my last Voyage, begun in the Year 1694.

The *Sieur Montauban* takes two *English* Merchantmen, with their Convoy.

After having ravaged the Coast of *Caraqua*, I sail'd towards S. *Croix*, where understanding that some Merchant Ships with a Convoy from *Barbadoes* and *Nevis*, were going to *England*, I steer'd to the height of *Bermudos*. I was no sooner got thither, but having discover'd the Fleet I look'd for, I engaged the *Wolf*, their Convoy, which I took, and 2 Merchant Ships laden with Sugar, the rest making their escape during the Engagement. In my return to *France*, I took another *English* Ship of 16 Guns, which as well as the former Prize I carried to *Bourdeaux*, where I arrived in *September*.

1694.

Having disposed of my Prizes, and revictuall'd our Ships which carried 34 pieces of Cannon, I set sail again from *Bourdeaux* in *February*, with an intention to cruize on the Coast of *Guinea* in *Africa*. From the *Azores* I pass'd to the *Canaries*, where I cruized in hopes of some *Dutch* Ships for 14 Days, but they being got into Port, I sail'd for the *White Cape* and the Isles of *Cape Verd* at 18 *deg.* N. Lat. meeting with 2 *English* Interlopers of 30 Guns each, riding at anchor in the Road of the Isle of *May*, I resolved to board them, but they smelling the Rat, got away before I could come at 'em. This done, I steer'd for S. *Vincent*, another of the *Cape Verd* Isles, where being inform'd by a *Portuguese* Master of a Bark, that at the Isle of *Fugo*, not far from S. *Vincent*, there were 2 *English* Ships of about 30 Guns each: I made all the sail I could thither, but finding them gone some Days before, I steer'd for the Coast of *Guinea*; and coming to the *Cape of three Points*, I met thereabouts with the *Dutch* Guard Ship carrying 34 Guns. We saluted one another with a broad-side each, and fought in the same manner from Morning till 4 in the Afternoon. I not being able to get the Weather Gage of her, or to make use of our Fusees, so that I could not prevent the *Dutchmen* from anchoring under the Fort of the said Cape where there lay 2 *Dutch* Ships more, one of 14 and the other of 28 Guns. I staid for some time within a League of the shore, but finding they had no inclination to revenge their quarrel, I resolved to sail for Cape *Lopez*, and S. *Thomas*'s Isle.

1695.

He narrowly misses of several *English* Ships.

He engages a *Dutch* Ship.

I pass'd in sight of Cape S. *John* on the Continent, and happening to meet with an *English* Vessel of 20 Guns laden with Elephant's Teeth, Wax, and 350 *Negros*, I took her with little resistance. She came from *Ardra*, one of the chief Towns in *Guinea*, seated upon the Sea side, and the Residence of a Prince of that Country. From thence I set sail to *Princes Isle*, near which I took a *Brandenburgh* Privateer of 8 Guns, and sent away my *English* Prize to S. *Domingo* in *America*, but the same was retaken by the *English* not far from *Little Goave*.

Takes an *English* Vessel.

And a *Brandenburgh* Privateer.

After I had revictualled my Ship at the *Princes Isle*, I sail'd for the Isle of S. *Thomas*, where I gave chace to a *Dutch* Interloper, but she running ashore at the Isle of S. *Omers*, I lost 150 pounds of Gold Dust she had aboard her. From hence I sail'd to the Coast of *Angola*, which is 250 Leagues on the other side of the Line. Here I arrived *Sept.* the 22d, and 3 Leagues off of the Port of *Canada*, I understood that 2 *English* Vessels laden with *Negros* were in that place. As I bore out to Sea to Leeward of the said Port, I discover'd a Ship with *English* Colours, which proved to be a Man of War of 54 Guns. We were no sooner come within Cannon-shot, but the *English* Captain gave me 2 broad-sides, which I received without returning one, my intention being to come within the reach of our Fusees, which I kept concealed upon Deck. I no sooner found him come nearer, but I fired so briskly with small Arms, that without making any farther use of their Cannon, they boarded us with a great shout; but our Men ply'd them so furiously for 2 Hours with their Fusees, that they ran down between Decks, and cry'd out for Quarter. Whilst we were busied in taking possession of the Ship, and putting the *Englishmen* aboard their Sloops, the Enemies Powder suddenly taking fire by the means of a Match laid on purpose by the *English* Captain, both the Ships were at the same instant blown up into the Air, with so dreadful a Noise, as is rather to be imagined than described. I was then upon the Fore Deck of my own Ship; whence I was thrown backwards into the Sea; where taking hold of a Mast, I call'd to some of my Men swimming in the Water to lay hold of a Sloop we saw near us, which they did, and loosening a Canoe that was fastned to her, sixteen of us got into her, and with the help of some pieces of Boards instead of Oars, and a small Sail we made, we committed our selves to Providence. As we had no Provisions, so we made to the Cape of *Cathersica*, (the next we could reach) and landed notwithstanding the Bay that makes it unaccessible. Here we found Oysters sticking to the Branches of Trees, wherewith we satisfy'd our Hunger. We saw also whole Herds of Boufflers as big as Oxon, but they were so wild, that there was no coming at 'em. Thence we went to Cape *Corsa*, 12 Leag. farther, where being met by many *Negroes*, who came thither in hopes of trucking some of their Commodities with us for Toys, but finding we had nothing they wanted, we could not get any Provisions among them, tho' we were ready to dye for Hunger. At last, I prevail'd with them to carry us to Prince *Thomas*, the Son of the King of that Country, upon whom I had put several Obligations in my former Voyages.

1695.

He engages an *English* Man of War.

And takes her.

Both Ships blown up.

He is saved, and gets ashore.

Near Cape *Corsa*.

They gave us a few Bananiers or Figs, and the next Day brought us to the Prince's Habitation. I was in so pitiful a condition, that had it not been for a Scar I had in my Thigh, he would not have known me; but finding me to be the same Person he had so many Obligations to, he entertain'd me at his own Table, provided us all with Cloaths, and carry'd us to his Father's Residence about 6 Leagues thence. This was a Village consisting of 300 Huts cover'd with Palm Trees. The King himself was a large *Negro* of 50 Years old, and well shaped: He met me without his Doors, supported by 4 or 5 *Negro* Women. His Guard were *Negroes* arm'd with Launces and Fusees, and several Drums, Trumpets, and *Spaniards* marched before him. He gave me his Hand as a testimony of his Friendship; and having ask'd several Questions concerning the King my Master, he drank his Health in a great Crystal Glass, whilst all the *Negroes* held up their right Arm with a most profound silence. Prince *Thomas* ask'd me, what my King's Name was? And I having told him, it was *Lewis le Grand*; he answer'd, that I should stand Godfather to a Child of his of 8 Months old, which he intended to give the same Name. I could not but smile at it, but was forced to comply with his request; the Ceremony was performed accordingly soon after, and the Child named *Lewis le Grand* by a *Portuguese* Priest. Whilst I was thus entertain'd with all imaginable Civility, an *English* Ship happening to come to the Cape *Lopez*, I contracted so intimate a Friendship with the Captain, that I did not in the least scruple to commit my self and my Men to his Conduct, who brought us safe to *Barbados*. Colonel *Russel* being at that time Governour there, he received me with all imaginable Civility; and tho' it was not in his power to treat us otherwise than Prisoners of War, yet was I very conveniently lodged; he himself presented us with a Purse of 40 Pistols to defray my Charges, and at last discharg'd us all without any Ransom. Not long after, a Bark sent by the Count *de Blenat*, General of the *French* Isle, arriving at *Barbados* about the exchange of Prisoners, we went aboard the said Vessel, and soon after arrived happily at *Port-Royal* in *Martinico*. Having paid my respects to the Governour there, I embark'd aboard the *Virgin*, a Ship bound for *Bourdeaux* in *France*, where we arrived after a prosperous Voyage.

Is kindly received by the Prince of the Country.

He goes aboard an *English* Vessel.

Comes to *Barbados*.

To *Martinico*.

And to *Bourdeaux* in *France*.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

An Account of Captain William Dampier's *Voyage round the World, &c.*

1681.

The Author sets Sail from England.

I set Sail from *England* as a Passenger aboard the *Royal Merchant* of *London*, bound for *Jamaica*, commanded by Mr. *Knapman*. We sail'd with a fair Wind along the South Sea of the Isle of *Hispaniola* by the small Islands call'd *Vacca* or *Ash*, and arrived safely at *Port-Royal* in *Jamaica*, in *April* 1679. I sold what *English* Commodities I had brought along with me, intending to undertake a Voyage to the Bay of *Campeachy* in the Gulph of *Mexico*; but changing my Resolution I remained all that Year at *Jamaica*, till about *Christmas*, when being ready to reimbark for *England*, Mr. *Hobby* engag'd me to go along with him on account of a trading Voyage to the *Moskito's* (of whom anon) which I having accepted of, we set Sail for the *Negril*-Bay at the West end of *Jamaica*, where we had no sooner cast Anchor, but meeting there with Captain *Seaor*, *Saukins*, *Sharp*, and some other Privateers, *Hobby's* Men went all over to the Privateers, and left not so much as one remaining with him, besides my self, which after some days Consideration, at last obliged me also to joyn with the rest in their intended Expedition. Accordingly in *January* we set Sail for *Porto Bello*, where succeeding according to Wish, we agreed to pass by *Lapond* Cross, the Isthmus of *Darien*, into the South Sea. We landed *April* the 8th. on the Isthmus near the *Golden Isle* (one of the *Sambaloes*) near 400 Men in all, provided with all sorts of Necessaries, and after 9 days Journey came to St. *Maria*, which we took, and after a stay of 3 Days went on to the South Sea Coast, where we imbark'd in divers Canoes and other Boats, furnish'd us by the *Indians* that were our Friends. *April* the 23th. We got sight of *Panama*, but being repulsed in our Attempt upon *Puebla Nova* (where Captain *Sauking's* lost his Life) we came to an Anchor at the adjacent Isles of *Quibo*. Here we resolv'd to go more to the South of the Coast of *Peru*, and accordingly sail'd thence *June* the 6th. first, to the Isles of *Gorgonia* and *Plata*, and thence to *Ulo* a small Place on the *Peruvian* Coast which we took in *October*, and in *November* following came to *Cequembo* on the same Coast, and towards the latter end of *December* to the Isle of *John Fernando*, the farthest to the South we came to.

Forts with some Privateers.

1680.

They cross the Isthmus of America by Land.

Are repulsed before Puebla Nova.

Whilst we stay'd at this last Isle, Captain *Sharp* our Commodore, was by general consent displaced, and Captain *Watling* put in his Place; but this last being kill'd afterwards before *Arica*, the younger Sort were for restoring *Sharp* to his former Command; but the elder Sort (disliking his Conduct) vigorously opposing the same, it was agreed, that what Party should appear the strongest should remain Masters of the Ship, which being done accordingly, it was carried on Captain *Sharp's* Side. For you must know that in *January* we sail'd back to the North to *Arica*, a Town strongly seated on the Coast of *Peru*, which we attack'd, but were vigorously repulsed; so continued our Voyage more to the North, till the middle of *April* in the sight of the Isle *de la Plata*, lying a little South to the Equinoctial Line; here it was that I joyn'd with those that were against Captain *Sharp*; so that having (according to agreement) provided our selves with what Necessaries we wanted to carry over Land (pursuant to our Resolution) we prepared for our Departure. The Success of which Voyage you have before in the History of the *Buccaniers*.

Arica attack'd in vain.

1681.

The Author sets out for the South Sea.

Parts from Captain Sharp.

April the 17th. We parted from Captain *Sharp* 12 Leagues N. W. from the Isle *de la Plata*, and imbark'd to the number of 44 (besides a *Spanish Indian* and two *Moskito Indians*) into a Lanch or kind of long Boat and two Canoes, with a design to sail for the River of St. *Mary's* in the Gulph of St. *Michael*, 200 Leagues distant from the Isle of *Plata*; having spent three whole Days in lifting of Flower, and providing us with Chocolate and such like portable Provisions. We got the same Night by two of the Clock 7 Leagues to the Windward of Cape *Pastao* under the Equinoctial, where being becalmed till the 18th. in the Afternoon, we then stood with a S. S. W. Wind to the North. About 7 of the Clock in the Evening we spied a small Bark at Anchor in a Creek near Cape *Pastao*, to the Leeward of it, loaden with Timber from *Galleo*, and bound for *Guiaquil*; our Boats being too small for our purpose, we seized her for our use.

1681.

They come to Gorgonia.

The 19th. early we anchored 12 Leagues to the South of *Cape St. Francis*, where having spent some Hours in cleansing our new Vessel, we kept our Course with a S. S. W. Wind along the Coast towards *Gorgonia*, where we arrived the 14th. but did not land till towards Night for fear of the *Spaniards*. We were no sooner come a Shoar, but by a House lately built (able to contain a 100 Men) with a large Cross upon the Door, we found that they did expect us thereabouts; in this Opinion we were soon confirmed by the Confession of our Prisoners, who told us, that a *Pereago* (or large Canoo) had of late come once in two or three Days from the Continent to *Gorgonia*, to look after us, and that the same was to return to *Panama*, to give Advice of our Arrival there.

We spent most part of the Day in careening our Bark, to make her the nimbler, and having provided our selves with Water, set Sail the 25th. with a brisk Gale from S. W. but the Wind encreasing, we lost one of our Canoes, which would have been very Serviceable to us in the River. The 27th. we sail'd on with a moderate S. W. Wind, and the 28th. descried a League and half to the West two large Ships, being then two Leagues from the Shoar, and two Leagues South of Point *Garrachina*.

Anchor at Point Garrachina.

Knowing them to be Cruisers, we rowed close under the Shoar; for in case they had been bound for *Panama*, this Wind must carry them thither; and had they come from thence, they would have kept on the North Side of the Bay as far as the Isles of *Quibo* to the West: It proving cloudy soon after, they could not get sight of us; so the 29th. in the Morning, we came safely to an Anchor at Point *Garrachina*, seven Leagues S. from the point Gar Gulph of St. *Michael*. Here we went on Shoar and spent rachina. all the Day in drying our wet Cloaths and Ammunition, and cleansing our Guns, and kept a strict Watch for fear of the Enemy.

At Night we set Sail thence, and the 30th. early entred into the Mouth of St. *Michael's* Gulph; at nine of the Clock we cast Anchor near a large Isle, lying 4 M. from the River's Mouth; we sent a Canoe on Shoar on the Isle, where we discovered a Ship close to the Shoar at the Mouth of the River, and a large Tent near it. After the return of the Canoe with this News, being sensible we had no other way left now, but to take the first Opportunity to get safe over Land, we rowed again to the Island, to observe the Enemy's Motion: Here having dispersed our selves in several Parties, we saw at high Water a small Canoe coming from the Ship to the Isle; we got presently into our Canoe, and lying close to the Shoar till she came within Pistol shot of us, we surprised her with one white Man and two *Indians* in her; upon examination they inform'd us, that the Ship we saw had waited for our coming there six Months, being mann'd with 150 Men, and 12 Guns, and that besides these, 300 Men belonging to the Mines, were arm'd and near at hand: They assured us also, that betwixt this Gulph and *Gorgonia*, 2 Ships, one of 20 Guns and 200 Men, the other of 10 Guns and 150 Men were cruising upon us, being the same we had seen before.

They land near Cape St. Lawrence.

Being sufficiently convinced there was no safe staying here, we brought our Prisoners on board, and got under Sail with the Ebb-Tyde; But it blowing hard out of the South, and the Tyde pretty well spent, we could not get far. I would fain have persuaded them to make the large River *Congo* (but three Leagues thence) whither the South Wind would easily have carried us; but they remaining resolv'd to land somewhere else, we rowed and towed against the Wind all Night, till we got about the Cape of St. *Lawrence* in the Morning, and then sailing to a small Creek four Miles further to the West, rowed up betwixt two little Isles about a Mile into the Creek, where we landed *May* the 1st. and no sooner got every thing on Shoar, but sunk our Ship, with which whilst we were busied, our two before mentioned *Moskito Indians* got us good store of Fish, which were a welcome Dish to us.

The Moskito Indians.

These *Moskito Indians* are a certain Tribe consisting not of above a 100 Men, who have their Habitations on the North Side of the Continent, near Cape *Gratia Dios*, between Cape *Honduras* and *Nicaragoa*; they look upon the King of *England* as their Prince, and upon the

1681. Governor of *Jamaica* as a great King and their Chief; they will appear there in good Apparel, but when they come into their own Country again, wear nothing but a Linnen Cloth ty'd about the middle, and hanging down before: For the rest, they are tall and strong of Stature, nimble, with long Visages, lank black Hair, and a dark olive Complexion. They are extreamly dexterous at throwing a Launce, Dart or Harpeen, to which they are trained up from their Infancy, as likewise how to put by either of these Arms. This they perform thus. Two Boys placed at a small distance, dart blunt Sticks at one another, each having another Stick in the right hand, wherewith either of them puts by that thrown at him, this renders them so dexterous by continual Exercise, that with a small Stick they will defend themselves against divers Arrows darted at them, provided two are not sent at a time at them. With their Darts and Harpeens they strike Fishes, Tortoises and *Manatees* or *Sea Cows* (of which more anon) they have very good Eyes at a distance, are very good at the management of Fire-Arms (when once taught) and will never flinch in an Engagement from the Christians; having an opinion of them, that they know best, how and when to engage; but they don't much love the *French*, and abominate the *Spaniards*, but are very kind to the *English*, yet you must let them act in every thing after their own manner.

Their Dexterity.

Bravery.

I could never observe any thing resembling Religion among them, except that they seem to dread the Devil, call'd by them *Pallasaw*, who they say, appears to no body but their Priests, and that they must take great care not to disoblige him: They have no more than one Wife; immediately after their Marriage they erect a small Plantation where they please, near the Sea or some River; but these containing only some few Plantain Trees, Potatoes, a little *Indian* Pepper, as also a small quantity of Pine-Apples (whereof they make a kind of strong Liquor) the same are not sufficient to maintain the Family, the further want whereof is supply'd by the Husband, who, whilst the Wife looks after the Plantation, either strikes Fish in the Sea or River, or kills *Peccary* or *Warree*, i. e. wild Hogs and Deer in the Woods, but does not stir abroad again to get more, till all is consumed.

Manner of Living.

We landed as I told you *May* the 1st. and at three in the Afternoon set forwards on our Journey towards the N. E. according to the direction of our pocket Compasses; it raining very hard we travel'd but two Miles to the foot of a Hill, where we wrested our selves in Huts built by us for that purpose. Next Day early coming up the Hill we found a small Path, which we follow'd for some time, till perceiving it to lead too far to the East, we got upon some high Trees (of which there were many upon the Hill) whence we discover'd some Huts in a Valley on the North Side; but the Hill being excessive steep on that side, we were forced to follow the former Track, which brought us down on the East Side to an *Indian* Village, having travel'd six Miles that Day. Among all the Inhabitants we met but with one Man who could speak a little broken *Spanish* by whom we understood that we were not above three Miles from the entrance of the River *Congo*, where we saw the Ship two Days ago: We supp'd very well upon Fowls and wild Hogs, and brought some Potatoes and Plantains for our further use. Having agreed with an *Indian* Guide for a Hatchet to carry us to some *Indian* Plantation where they could speak *Spanish*, we continued our Journey the 3d. early in the Morning (leaving one of our Men behind who was tired) and travell'd 8 Miles by 12 of the Clock, when coming to a certain *Indian*'s House upon the bank of the River *Congo*, who spoke *Spanish* very well, we asked him such Questions as were most proper for our present purpose; but tho' we did all we could to engage him, by presenting him with Mony, Beads, Hatchets, Knives and other Toys, yet could we get no satisfactory Answer of him, till one of our Company pull'd out a blew Petticoat and presented it to his Wife, which had so marvelous an Effect upon her, that she soon prattled her Husband into a good Humour, so that he not only shew'd us the way to the North Side: but would have gone himself along with us, had his Foot not been lamed some Days before; however he engaged the same Guide that had brought us hither (for another Hatchet) to conduct us two Days further. We travell'd 3 Miles further the same Day, and lodged at Night in our Huts.

Their passage over the Hills of Darien.

May the 4th.

The next Morning we set out early, because the Forenoons were generally fair, but the Afternoons rainy. We travell'd 12 Miles and cross'd the Rivers above thirty times, the *Indians* guiding themselves by the Rivers. It rained violently all the Night, and tho' we lay in our Hutts, yet having but little Fewel and Belly-Timber, we pass'd our time but scurvily. 1681.

We continued our Journey in the Morning, and after 7 Miles travelling the pathless Woods, came to a young *Spanish Indian*'s House, who being well vers'd in the *Spanish* Language entertained us very kindly, and furnish'd us with Potatoes, Eggs, *&c.* but no Flesh: 'Tis true, we shot two fat Monkeys, but these were distributed among our sick Men. A *Spanish Indian* belonging to our Company, being intreated by our Host to stay with him, with a Promise of his Sister in Marriage, we would not consent to dismiss him, for fear of any Treachery, but promised to send him back in two or three Days, which we did accordingly. The same Day Mr. *Wafer* our Chirurgeon, as he was drying his Powder, had the Misfortune to have his Knee scorch'd by the carelessness of a Fellow, who pass'd by accidentally with his Pipe lighted. This *Indian* Plantation being just seated at the West Side of the River *Congo*, where we must ferry over to the East; we might have come thus far in our Canoes, if the rest would have taken my Advice.

The 5th.

Being now provided with a fresh Guide, we pass'd the River *Congo*, and after we had travell'd two Miles to the East were forc'd to foord another River, as well then as several times after, tho' it was very deep, which put us to no small Difficulties, which I foreseeing, had provided my self with a large joint of a Bamboe Cane, in which I preserv'd my Journal and other Writings, and stopt both ends with Wax. Two of our Company not being in a condition to keep pace with the rest, came after us as well as they could; we stay'd for them some time, but the River swelling so high, that they could not come over, we Marched on four Miles further, and there set up our Hutts on a rising Ground, but had scarce finished them when the overflowing of the River obliged us to remove them again: There we were forced to stay all the next Day and Night in the Woods, the Water coming up very high into our Hutts; which together with the tempestuous Weather accompanied with Thunder and Lightning, made us forgetful of setting our Centuries, and gave Opportunity to our Slaves (except one) to run away, and to carry off our Chirurgeon's Gun and Mony.

May the 6th. They ferry'd over the River Congo.

The next Morning the River being fallen considerably we endeavoured to foord it again, which being not able to do, we tryed at swimming, but the Current running too swift, it was agreed, to send over one Man with a Line to be fastened on the opposite Bank, and so to hall over our Baggage, and afterwards the Men. One *George Gayny* undertook this Task; so that one end of the Line being fastened about his Neck and the other left on Shoar to be managed by another to see it go clear he swam away, but was scarce got into the Stream when the Line entangled, and he that had the other end, endeavouring to recover it, stopt on a sudden and threw him upon his Back, and he having 300 Dollers ty'd to his Back was carried away with the Current, and never seen afterwards alive. The two Men we left behind (who did not rejoyn us till we came into the North Sea) saw him lying in a Creek with the Mony on his Back, but would not take it, for fear of incumbring themselves.

May the 8th.

The only thing we had left us was to fell a tall Tree cross the River, which we did, and so got over to the other side, where whilst we were busie in gathering Plantains in an Orchard our Guide left us for some Hours, but afterwards return'd with an old *Indian*, under whose Conduct we march'd forward, and after we had pass'd another River came into one of the most fertile Vallies that ever I saw, full of very stately Trees; through this we march'd for four Miles successively, and then came to our Guide's Hunting-House, where we refresh'd our selves with some Potatoes and Plantains that grew there: Here it was that we dismiss'd our beforementioned *Spanish Indian*.

May the 9th.

The next Day the old *Indian* led us five Miles thro' the same Valley, and then five Miles further over divers Hills to his own House or Plantation; coming to a Path half a Mile on this side of the Village, we saw many wooden Crosses, but found only *Indian* Inhabitants there, who received us very obligingly, and entertained us with what they had, which was but little, their Settlement consisting of new Plantations; they had only two Lads among them that understood a little *Spanish*, these we engaged to be our Guides by some Presents; and Mr. *Wafer* our Chirurgeon being in great pain ever since the burning of his Knee, we left him with

1681. with two others that were not in a condition to travel further among these good natur'd *Indians*. We continued our Journey the next Morning, descending the
May the 10th. Hill on which the Village was seated into a pleasant Valley, following the Tract of a River which we cross'd 32 times. After we had travell'd nine Miles we set up our Hutts for our Night's rest. Our Guides observing us to look frequently on our pocket Compasses, and to point out the way we judg'd we ought to go, would smile and tell us they were pretty Baubles, but uncertain Guides. This Evening the only Slave we had left, run away, and I shot a *Quaum* (a Bird of the bigness of a good Turky) which served our Guides for a Supper. The 11th. we marched 10 Miles and
May the 11th. slept supperless in our Hutts. The next Morning early we pass'd another deep River by the help of a Tree
May the 12th. laid across, and marched 7 Miles thro' very marshy Grounds, till we came to a large and deep River, where we fix'd our Hutts. Next Morning finding the
May the 13th. Banks overflown, our Guides gone, and our selves reduced to live upon nothing but *Macaw* Berries, we began to repent our haste in leaving the last Settlement, where they would fain have kept us a little longer, but
May the 14th. the Waters being return'd to their Bounds the next Day and our Guides returning, we took fresh Courage, and setting our Axmen to work they fell'd a very tall Tree just cross the River, by the help whereof we got over, and afterwards cross'd another River 3 times, till after 6 Miles travelling we came to a Plantation inhabited only by one *Indian* and a Boy his Servant, where we were kindly entertained that Night, and kill'd four Monkeys.

May the 15th. The next Day this *Indian* and his Boy would needs conduct us in his Canoe over divers large Rivers for 2 Miles. 5 Miles further we took up our Nights Lodgings at a large Plantain Orchard, where we fed plentifully, both upon ripe and green ones. We travell'd no
May the 16th. more than 3 Miles the next Day, then coming to a large Village we rested our selves, our Feet being blistered all over with the ruggedness of the Ways; we also kill'd three Monkeys which served for Supper: Hitherto it had been very rainy Weather, but from this Day it continued fair till our Arrival on the North Sea.

May the 18th. Next Morning early the *Indians* carried us in five Canoes three Miles up a River; after our landing we travell'd three more and then set up our Hutts. The next
May the 19th. following Day our Guides having lost their way we made only two Miles, and came the next by twelve
May the 20th. of the Clock to the River *Cheapo*, the last on this side that falls into the South Sea, as do all those we had cross'd before. After we had foorded the River we marched nine Miles to the foot of a high Mountain where we set up our Hutts.

May the 21st. Our next day's Journey was to the top and on the ridge of the Mountain; after we began to descend we came to a delicious Spring, where we took up our
May the 22d. Night's Lodgings. The next Morning we marched further over the ridge of another high Mountain for five Miles, and as soon as we came to the North Side we saw to our signal Joy the Sea; we descended in three Companies and took up our Quarters upon the Bank of a River, the first that exonerates it self into the North Sea.

May the 23d. Our Passage the next Morning was thro' large Plantain Walks and Orchards till ten of the Clock, when coming to an *Indian* House we got some Canoes to car-
They come to the North Sea. ry us down the River of *Conception* having travell'd seven Miles that Day. At the entrance of the River we found many Habitations of the *Indians*, who used to exchange their Potatoes, Plantains, Sugar-Canes, Fowls and Eggs with the Privateers for such Commodities as they bring thither. By these we were informed that several *English* and *French* Privateers were lately gone thence, but that one of them, a *French* Man, was still at *Lasenia*d's Isle, which lies about three Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Conception*, being one of
The Sambello Islands. the *Sambelloes*, a range of small Isles of twenty Leagues in length reaching to the East from Point *Sambelloes* to the *Golden Island*. They were in 1679 made the first Rendesvouz of the *Freebooters*, for the conveniency of careening their Vessels.

Thus at last we accomplish'd our intended Journey from the South Sea to the North Sea in twenty-three Days amounting in all to 110 Miles, in which we pass'd divers high Mountains, but many Rivers and deep Grounds with the loss of one Man only, who was
A shorter Passage over the Isthmus. drowned, tho' at the same time we travell'd at least fifty Miles more than we need to have done: For, had we first of all gone up the River *Cheapo*, or of St. *Mary's*, a Man may from either of them go in three Days from one Sea to the other, and the *Indians* perform it in one Day and a half. 'Tis true, as the *Indians* were our Friends, so they served us for our Guides, and assisted us with Provisions; but in case such a thing was to be undertaken by 500 or 600 Men, they might encompass it easie enough without being beholding to the Natives, tho', no doubt but it is better to have their Friendship

1681.

Having taken our Night's rest at the River's Mouth, May the we went aboard the *French* Vessel riding at *Lasound's* 24th. Isle, Captain *Tristian* Commander, where having *They go aboard a French Privateer.* bought as many Beads, Scissars, Knives and other such like things as we could get, we gratify'd our Friends with them, and half a Rix Doller a piece, at which they were so highly satisfy'd, that after their return they and their Friends shewed all manner of kindness to those of our Men that were left behind; and as these stay'd a considerable time longer among the Natives, so I will leave the future Description of the Inland Countries to Mr. *Water*, who, I understand is preparing a full account of it for the Press.

Within two Days after we set Sail on board our *They go to* *French* Privateer for *Springer's* Isle, another of the *Sam-* Springer's *belloe's* seven or eight Leagues hence, where we met *Isle.* with these following Privateers: Capt. *Coxon*, ten Guns, *from with other Privateers.* 100 Men; Capt. *Payne*, the same number of Men and Guns; Capt. *Wright*, four Guns, forty Men; and Capt. *Williams*, a small Bark, all *English* Men; Capt. *Yanky*, a *Dutch* Man, carrying four Guns and sixty Men, *English*, *French* and *Dutch*; Capt. *Achemboe*, eight Guns, forty Men; Capt. *Vodeker*, six Guns, seventy Men; and Capt. *Rose*, in a small Bark, all *French* Men.

Just before our coming to the Fleet, Capt. *Wright* was return'd from betwixt *Chagre* and *Porto Bello* (which is a great Passage to *Panama*) to take some Prisoners, which he had done accordingly, by taking a large Canoe or *Periago* laden with Meal. We found all the Commanders aboard Capt. *Wright* busie in examining all the Prisoners, who being come but six Days before from *Panama*, they told them the news of our coming by Land over the Isthmus: But no sooner did they hear of our Arrival but they came aboard Capt. *Tristian*, being all overjoy'd to see us, especially Capt. *Consultation about attacking Panama.* *Coxon*, who had left us a Year ago in the South Sea: As they had a design to alarm *Panama*, and for that purpose to pass thither over Land, so they asked us many Questions in relation to our Passage, and what Discoveries we had made betwixt these two Seas; all which we having answered according to the truth of the matter, they were so much discouraged at the many Difficulties they were likely to encounter, that they laid aside that Design.

Several other Propositions were made concerning what Places were to be attempted, but after divers Debates Pro and Con, nothing was resolved upon at *The Freebooters know all the Places along the Coast.* that time: For you must know, that the *Freebooters* have an exact account of the condition of all Places seated within twenty Leagues of the Sea side from *Tridado* to *Vera Cruz*; this they learn from the Prisoners they take at Sea, whom they examine upon pain of Life, about the Strength, Riches Traffick, Inhabitants, their Out-wards and Watchmen, Harbours, Creeks and such like Questions; and thus by comparing the Answers of such Prisoners examined separately and at divers times, they are able to form to themselves so exact an Idea of these Parts as is to be admired.

After seven or eight day's Debate, it was resolved to attempt a certain Town (the Name whereof I don't remember) seated a good way into the Country, but not so far as *Panama*; in order to which we were to go up *Carpenter's* River, sixty Leagues distant from the West of *Porto Bello*. But as we had no Canoes or Boats, *The Isle of St. Andrew.* it was resolved to sail to the Isle of St. *Andrew*, a little uninhabited Island not far from the Isle of *Providence* to the West of it, at 13 *d.* 15 *m.* N. Latitude and 70 Leagues N. N. West from *Porto Bello*. Besides the nearness of this Isle to *Carpenter's* River, we should here meet with plenty of Cedar Wood, which being excellent good for the building of Boats, is to be had without any other charge but the cutting; this is the reason that those of *Jamaica* frequently build their Sloops *Cedars fit for the building of Boats.* here, tho' the mountainous Part of *Jamaica* is well stored also with Cedars, but those of St. *Andrew* are much the larger, from fifty, sixty, to seventy Foot long, and proportionable in bulk: They are also found in the *Bermudos* Islands and *Virginia*, where the Soil is for the most part sandy. I never observed any on the Coast of the South Sea, except on the Isthmus, nor e-

1681 ver met with any of them in the *East-Indies*. This Tree is reckoned the best to build Canoes and Paraguas with; they are both nothing else than the Trunk of the Tree hollow'd out, with a flat Bottom; the Canoes are pointed at both ends, but the Periago is flat at one. What is related of the Cedars to be never Worm-eaten, is a vulgar Error.

Periago.

With this resolution we set sail for St. *Andrew*'s Isle, the first Day with good success; but the following Night a strong N. E. wind scattered us pretty well; and the next Day the Tempest encreasing, we were dispersed one from another, and the succeeding Night lost all our Company; I and the rest of those that were come over the Isthmus, were then aboard Captain *Archembo* a *French*-Man, who wanted Men; we liked our Captain well enough, but the *French* Seamen were such idle Fellows, that even in the greatest Storm they would not stir out of their Hammocks. With much ado we got at last the 4th day to the Isle of St. *Andrew*, whither Captain *Wright* was come the Day before with a *Spanish* Prize, having thirty Men aboard; they related that they came from *Carthagena* in company of eleven *Armadillos*, or small Men of War, but parted from them two Days before: They assured us, that this Squadron was ordered for the *Samballoes*, to look for us there; and in case they did not meet with us thereabouts, to stay at *Porto-Bello* for further Orders.

They come to St. Andrew's Isle.

They go aboard the Spanish Prize.

By this time we that had travel'd over the Isthmus, were acquainted by the *French*, entreated Captain *Wright* to keep his Prize for us; as he lived among the *French* in *Hispaniola*, and was well respected among them, so he was willing to grant our Request; but seeing us resolved to go ashoar and to build some Canoes for our selves (a thing allowed among the *Freebooters*) he at last comply'd, under condition that we should remain under his Command as if we belonged to his own Ship.

We staid here ten Days in expectation of the rest, but none coming except Captain *Tucker*, we resolved to go in quest of them to *Boccadelataw* or *Blewfield*-River, on the Continent; especially since this Isle afforded neither Fish, Fowl nor Deer. We steer'd our Course towards the *Coral*-Isles, lying near the Continent at 12 deg. 16 min. N. Lat. These I take to be the same known in the Maps by the Name of the *Pearl*-Isles. The next Day we got ashoar in one of them in hopes of getting some Corn, but met with none but a few poor Wretches, who had been strip'd of all by the Privateers, who also frequently make them their Slaves, for they are very fit for that purpose, being of a low stature, but strong Limb'd; for the rest they are of a dark Olive Colour, with round Faces, black Hair, and small Eyes of the same Colour; with Eye brows hanging over their Eyes, low Fore-heads, short, thick and flat Noses, full Lips, and short Chins. They have a peculiar Fashion of cutting holes in the Lips of the Boys whilst yet Infants, which they keep open with small Peggs till they are fourteen or fifteen Years of Age; then they put in them something resembling a long Beard, made of Tortoise-shell, as you see it represented here. At the pointed end is a little notch which they put through the hole betwixt the Lips and the Teeth, and so the other part hangs down below the Chin; they take it out every Night, but seldom appear without it all Day. Both Boys and Girls have holes bored in their Ears, which by degrees they stretch to the bigness of a Crown-piece, and wear in them round and smooth Pieces of Wood, so that their Ears seem woode unless only in a small Skin. As they have very little Feet, (notwithstanding they are bare footed) so the Females take a great pride in their Legs, which they tie very hard from the Ankle to the beginning of the Calf with a piece of Callicoe, which renders their Calfs very round and beautiful. They have no other Cloathing but a Clout about their Middle. We set sail hence for *Blewfield*-River, where whilst we were cleaning our Tartane, Captain *Archembo* and *Tucker* left us, and sail'd to *Bocco-del-toro*.

The Coral or Pearl Isles.

The Inhabitants.

Blewfield River.

Blewfield-River exonerates it self into the Sea, betwixt *Nicaragua* and *Veraguay*, being deep at the mouth, with a fine sandy Bay near it, but shallow within; no Barks above 60 or 70 Tuns being able to enter far into it. This River has got its Name from *Blewfield*, a noted *Freebooter* or Privateer, who lived in *Providence*-Island, then Inhabited by the *English*, and belonging to the Earl of *Warwick* long before the *English* settled at *Jamaica*. We saw a Canoe coming down the stream but no Body in it, nor in any other part (tho' we saw some footsteps of them) and by the meanness of the Canoe, guess'd they had no correspondence with the *Spaniards*, nor with the other *Indians* that have. 1681

Whilst we lay at Anchor here, our *Moskito Indians* were very useful to us in striking divers *Manatees* or Sea Cows. These Creatures I have seen also in *Campeachy*-Bay, on the Coast of *Bocca del Drago*, and *Bocca del Toro* on the River of *Darien*, and among the small Isles of *Cuba*, as also at *Mindanao* one of the *Philippine*-Islands, and on the Coast of *New Holland*. I have been told they are also seen sometimes on the North side of *Jamaica*, and in the Rivers of *Surinam* in vast numbers. The *Manatee* is of the bigness of a tall Horse, but ten or twelve Foot long; it has thick Lips and a wide Mouth like a Cow, instead of Ears two small holes in each side of the Head, and two Eyes of the bigness of a small Pea. The Neck is so short and thick, that it exceeds the Head in bulk, but its biggest part is about the Shoulders, underneath which it has two large Fins on each side of the Belly, and under each of these Fins, a small Dug for the suckling of their young Ones. It is of the same bulk about a foot from the Shoulders downwards to the Tail, and so becomes smaller by degrees to the very Tail; which is flat, about 14 Inches broad, 2 long, and 4 or 5 thick in the middle; but near the edges scarce 2 Inches thick. I have been inform'd that some of these Creatures have weigh'd One thousand two hundred Pounds; but those that ever I saw were not so large. For the rest, their whole Body is smooth and round, without any Fins except the before-mentioned.

Manatee.

They delight in brackish Water, but chiefly in the Creeks and near the entrances of Rivers, where they meet with a sort of Grass of seven or eight Inches long, but of a narrow blade, growing in the Sea near the shoar of the Continent, among the Isles, and in the Creeks of great Rivers, which they feed upon; and this I suppose to be the reason why they are never met with in the South Sea, where there is a bad Shoar and deep Water. Their Flesh as well as their Fat, is white, sweet and wholsome Food, especially of the sucking Calves; and the Tail of a young Cow is esteem'd a Dainty; whereas the Head and Tail of an old one, are tough and hard Meat, but a piece of the Belly of the old ones, is not despisable when roasted. The Privateers make use of the Skin of this Creature, for they cut it into Straps, and fastning them to their Canoes, put their Oars through them instead of Tholes or Pegs. The Skin of the Back being very thick, they cut their Thongs whilst green, and twist them, and afterwards dry them, which serve for Horse-whips.

Their Food.

The *Moskito Indians* have peculiar Canoes of a small size for Fishing: These are not managed with Oars, but Paddles, the broad part whereof does not go slanting towards the Staff or Handle as in an Oar, nor is it used on the side of the Boat; but they hold it perpendicularly by the Staff, and so with both Hands force back the Water with very quick stroaks. Two Men always belong to one of these Boats, the one sitting in the Stern, and the other kneeling in the Head; they both move thus to and fro with a quick motion, till espying what they look for, they go on more gently, and he in the head lays by his Paddle, and arising takes hold of his striking Staff, to be ready as occasion requires. This Staff or Pole is near eight Foot long, of the thickness of a Man's Arm at the biggest end, where it has a hole to fasten the Harpen-Iron in. At the other end of the Pole is fastned a piece of light Wood, call'd *Bobwood*, having a hole through which the end of the Staff comes; to the light Wood is fastned a Line of ten or twelve Fathoms wound closely about, the end of the Line being ty'd to it; the other end of the Line being made fast to the Harpen-Iron, and the Fisherman holds a fathom of it in his Hand. When he strikes at the *Manatee*, the Harpen-Iron comes out of the Pole or Staff, and as the Fish swims away, the Line follows running from the Bobwood, which will soon rise again after it has been under Water with the Staff. The *Moskito* or Fisherman paddles after the Fish as she swims away, and as soon as they have taken up the Staff and Bob, begin to draw in the Line, which the *Manatee* perceiving swims away as fast as she can, and they with the Canoe after her with a most violent motion, till perceiving that the *Manatee*'s strength begins to fail, they draw in the Line by degrees, and finding her quite spent, they hawl her close to the Boats side, and so knock her on the Head, and afterwards hawl her into shoal Water; where laying their Boat upon one side, they rowl her into it, and so carry their Prey ashoar. I have known two *Moskitos* thus bring two *Manatees* ashoar every Day for a Week together, the least whereof weighed six hundred Pounds. After they have struck a Cow they are sure of her Calf, for the either carries it under

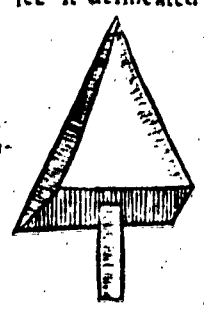
How the Moskitos go on a fishing.

How they catch the Manatee.

one

1681. one of her Fins, or if it be too big, it will certainly follow her wherever she swims, so that they can't miss to strike her.

How they strike the Tortoises. They catch the *Tortoises* much after the same manner with this difference only, that with these they need not be so cautious in managing their Paddles without any noise, which they must carefully observe with the *Manatees*, who have a quick hearing; but the *Tortoise* has much better Eyes than Ears. For these they use also a square Iron instead of the Harpen: This is four square, of the length of an Inch, and pointed at one end as you see it delineated *. To the small spike at the broad end the Line is fastned, and goes into a hole at the end of the striking Staff, which flies off as soon as the *Tortoise* is struck, and the Iron with the Line fastned to it enters quite within the Shell. The *Moskitos* make their own Harpens, Lines, and other Fishing Instruments. These last are made of the Bark of a certain Tree or Shrub, call'd *Maho*, which grows in vast plenty all over the *West Indies*; it is composed of very strong Threds or Strings, and consequently used sometimes for Cordage by the Privateers.



Their Fishing Instruments.

Bocca-del-Toro. But to return to our Voyage. We sail'd from hence to *Bocca del Toro*, being a kind of small Harbour or Creek betwixt two Isles, at 10 deg. 10 min. N. Lat. betwixt the Rivers *Veragne* and *Chagre*; a Haven much frequented by the Privateers, as affording a good careening place and vast plenty of *Tortoises*; besides that the Natives have no Commerce with the *Spaniards*, nor indeed will they have any with other Europeans, being a very barbarous Generation, whereof several of the Privateers have had most direful Experience, and among the rest Captain *Pain* of late, who had four of his Men murthered by them in the Night time in a Tent. This Coast produces abundance of *Vinelloes*, which is used to Perfume Chocolate, of which more in another place. Here we met Captain *Tanky*, who told us how Captain *Tristian*, *Pain* and *Williams*, had been chaced by the beforementioned *Armadillos*, in their way to *Bocca del Toro*, but that he remained undiscover'd by the *Spaniards*, and believed the others had also escaped their Hands.

Thus as the case stood, there being but little hopes of meeting together again, Captain *Wright* and Captain *Tanky*, resolved to cruise on the Coast of *Carthagena*, and I went along with the first. The wet Season being near at hand, we set sail immediately, and pass'd in sight of *Scuda* a small Isle, where according to common report, were interr'd the Bowels of Sir *Francis Drake*. Hence we came to a little Isle to the W. of *Chagra*, where we seiz'd two new Canoes, and carried them along with us to the *Sambelloes*; coming at last with a west Wind to the point of *Sambelloes*, Captain *Wright* and *Tanky* sail'd forward to the Coast of *Carthagena*, leaving us with the Tartane to get ready the Canoes. We spent part of our time in fishing among the Isles where we recruited, and whilst our *Moskitos* provided us with half green Tortoises, we went ashoar every Day into the Woods, where we never miss'd either of wild Hogs, Deer, fat Monkeys, *Corrosoes* (a kind of large wild Fowl) Pidgeons, Parrots and Turtle-Doves. In some of these Islands we met with whole Woods of *Sapadilly* Trees, bearing a Fruit not unlike a Pear, but more juicy; underneath the Trees we found a kind of Testaceous Animals having but small Bodies, but large Claws like Crabs; we found them very good Food. But one time some of our Men met with some large ones in another place, and feeding very heartily upon them, they grew very sick after them; we attributed this to the *Manchancel* Trees, of which there grow great store in this Isle; the Fruit of them is not unlike a Crab, and has a very agreeable scent, but is extreamly unwholsome, and so are all the Creatures that feed upon it. Hence it is that the Privateers take it for a general Rule, whenever they meet with any unknown Fruits, that unless they perceive them peck'd by the Birds, they never eat of them. Most of the other *Sambelloe* Isles abound likewise in these Trees.

The Isle of Scuda.

The Products of the Sambelloes.

The Manchancel Tree.

One Day as we were a cruising among these Isles, we accidentally met with a Sloop from *Jamaica* to Trade on this Coast, she sail'd along with us to *La-sounds* Isle, where we came to an Anchor, and the next Morning fired two Guns as a Signal to the *Indians* living on the Continent, who were our Friends. Accordingly the *Indians* came aboard us with the five Men we had left behind us in *May* last (it being now *August*) Mr. *Wafer* being Painted and Dress'd like an *Indian*, was some time aboard before any of us did know him, and one *Richard Colson* dy'd within a few Days after.

How they meet with their Men left behind them.

Then we sail'd to other Isles more to the E. in quest of Captain *Wright* and *Tanky*; who having been in chase of a whole Fleet loaden with *Indian* Wheat, Hogs, and Fowls bound for *Carthagena*, had forced them and their Convoy ashoar, except two which they took.

1681.

Thus being well stor'd with Corn, we sail'd for the Coast of *Carthagena*, and pass'd by the Mouth of the River of *Darien* which is very broad, but has not above 6 foot Water at high Tide. Captain *Coxen* did some Months before go up that River with a certain number of Men; they went at least a hundred Leagues upwards, before they met with any Town or Village, but which was Inhabited by *Spaniards*, who used to Trade with the *Indians* in Gold. The Inhabitants were surpriz'd to see them there and much more how they could come thither, without being attack'd by a certain barbarous *Indian* Nation, who as they said would not keep or admit of the least Correspondence with any white People: They told them that they lived betwixt them and the Rivers mouth and both sides of it sixty Leagues from the Sea, and were always in War with the *Darien Indians* our Friends. Their chief warlike Instrument is a Trunk of eight foot long, out of which they blow poisoned Darts made of *Macaw*-wood, no bigger nor longer than a knitting Needle, wound about with Cotten on one end, and sharp and knotched on the other, like a Harpen. I had this from several of Captain *Coxen's* Men, who accompany'd him in this Expedition; and among the rest from one Mr. *Cook*, a Person of unquestionable Credit.

We sailed, without any remarkable Accident by the way, in sight of the famous City of *Carthagena*, which lying upon the Sea, we had a full view of it, as well as of the Convent of *Madra de Popa*, or *Nuestra Senora de Popa*, dedicated to our Lady, and seated on the top of a very steep Hill on the back-side of the City; it contains an incredible Wealth, gathered by the Offerings made there by the *Spaniards* of these Parts, who come hither on Pilgrimage, as the *Europeans* do to our Lady of *Loretto*.

We sailed forward to *Rio Grande*, where we took in some fresh Water a League without the Mouth of the River. Thence directing our Course to the East, we passed in sight of St. *Martha*, a goodly place, and commodious Harbour, belonging to the *Spaniards*, built close to the Sea shore; within few Years before it has been twice ransack'd by the Privateers; it is at 12 d. North Latitude. Deeper into the Country is a vast peeked Mountain, which I judge to be higher than the *Tenariffa* of the *Canaries*; I have seen it 50 Leagues at Sea, and I have heard others say, they saw it 60 Leagues off; I have heard others say, that they have seen at once *Jamaica*, *Hispaniola*, and the Mountain of St. *Martha*, tho' the nearest of these two Places is 120 Miles from it, and *Jamaica* near 150 Leagues; but I must doubt whether either of these two Isles can be seen 50 Leagues off. The top of this Mountain is commonly covered with Clouds; but when it is not it appears white, perhaps from the Snow wherewith it is covered.

Rio Grande.

St. Martha.

After we came 6 Leagues to the East of St. *Martha*, we went back in our Canoes to the entrance of *Rio Grande*, which exonerates it self into the Sea near St. *Martha*, with an intention to attempt some Places within the River, but finding them upon their Guard we return'd to our Ships and sail'd to *Rio la Hacha*, where there is a strong Town, bearing the same Name, seated on the West side of the River, where is a good sandy Road for Ships. This Town had been several times ransacked by the Privateers, but was lately rebuilt again by the *Spaniards*, who drive a considerable Trade with the *English* of *Jamaica*. We soon made our selves Masters of a Fort with two great Guns, which we carried aboard; then we march'd to two small *Indian* Villages, call'd the *Rancheries*, near which, within five Leagues from the Shore is a Pearl Bank, whither the *Spaniards* send their Barks, and by the help of certain *Indian* Divers, who go down two and two at a time, with a Basket let down after them, bring up the Oisters till the Vessel is fill'd, which being carried ashore, *Indian* old Men and Women, appointed for that purpose, open the Oister, and in the presence of a *Spanish* Surveyor gather the Pearls; notwithstanding which, the *Indians* sometimes keep some of the choicest for themselves, which they sell to the *Jamaica* Men. The Meat of the Oisters they dry in the Sun. We saw great heaps of Oister Shells, but no People, nor any thing else. But betwixt this and *La Hacha* we took some of the Natives, who appear'd to us a barbarous and fierce sort of People, with longish Visages, black

La Hacha.

Pearl Banks.

The Natives Hair.

1681 Hair, and high Notes. The *Spaniards* say they are a considerable Nation, who live under their own Government, yet admit some *Spanish* Priests among them. They inhabit a barren sandy champain Country, which however produces some thin coarse Grass, which maintains a considerable quantity of Cattel, and belongs in common to the Natives, they having no other Propriety but as far as their Houses and small Plantations, or Inclosures reach, which they are at liberty to remove when they please. Hereabout they are not so much pester'd with Rains as to the West of St. *Martha*, yet are they not free from Thunder shores; but these are also neither so violent, nor so frequent, as on the Coasts of *Porto Bello* and *Carthagena*, no more than the West Winds in the W. *Monsoon*.

After some stay here, we sail'd again to the Coast of *Carthagena*; but being met by the West Winds, betwixt *Rio Grande* and that place, we were kept three or four Days to the East of it. Here we descry'd a Sail, which Captain *Wright*, who sail'd the best, chac'd, and engaged by Noon, and in half an Hour after Captain *Young* coming up with her, they boarded and took her, before our Tartane could come to their assistance; she prov'd a Ship carrying 12 Guns, and 40 Men, loaden with Sugar, Tobacco, and Marmalet, bound for *Carthagena* from St. *Jago* in *Cuba*.

They take a Prize near Carthagena.

We were no sooner return'd with her to *Rio Grande*, to repair our Rigging, but a contest arose betwixt Captain *Wright* and *Young* about the Prize, which in Justice belong'd to the first; but the Men being most against him, the Prize did fall to Captain *Young*'s share.

We set sail again for *La Hacha*, where having set the Prisoners on Shore, and in the beginning of *Novemb.* steer'd our Course to *Curisao*, under favour of the West *Monsoon*, where Captain *Wright*, going a-shoar, offered the Sugar to sale to the Governour, which he excused, alledging his good Correspondence with the *Spaniards*; but that if we would sail to St. *Thomas*, an Isle under the Jurisdiction of *Denmark*, he would lend both Goods and Money to deal with us for the Sugar at a certain Rate.

The Isle of Curisao. The Isle of *Curisao* is the only considerable Island under the *Dutch* Government in the West *Indies*, at 12 Deg. 40 Min. North Latitude; the North point eight Leagues from the Continent, opposite to *Cape Romano*. Its length is near five Leagues, and its Circuit about ten Leagues. At the East end, on the South side, it has a goodly Haven, call'd St. *Barbara*, but its chiefest Harbour is on the same South side, three Leagues from the S. E. Point, where is a strong Fort, and a pretty large Town, inhabited by the *Dutch*. Ships that are to go in must keep close to the entrance of the Haven, and have a Rope ready to send one end a-shore to the Tent; for the Current setting to the West, there is no safe Anchorage at the Mouth, but within it is secure riding. The Island is for the most part level, except two high Hills at the East end, which formerly was all Pasture for Cattel, but of late they have made some Sugar Works and Plantations. But what makes this Island considerable is, its Traffick with the *Spaniards*, who used to come from *Carthagena* and *Porto Bello*, and buy up Negroes and *European* Commodities there; and tho' a great part of that Trade is now manag'd by those of *Jamaica*, yet the *Dutch* still drive a vast Trade in all sorts of *European* Goods all over the West *Indies*.

The Isles of Aruba and Bon Airy. There are two other Isles (but of much less moment) belonging to the *Dutch* in these Parts; one is called *Aruba*, eight Leagues West of *Curisao*; the other *Bon Airy*, ten Leagues to the East of it; these furnish the *Dutch* of *Curisao* with Provisions. I was inform'd that the first is in all respects like *Bon Airy*, only something less, therefore I will give you a description anon. There lies another Isle not above a League long, call'd Little *Curisao*, betwixt Great *Curisao* and *Bon Airy*.

Curisao being so conveniently seated for Traffick, the *French* about 25 Years ago, tempted the Governour to betray the same to them for a good sum of Money, which he did accordingly; but his Death prevented the execution of that Design. Notwithstanding this, the *French* did not lay aside all their hopes, but after the taking of *Tobago*, the Count *d'Estree* was sent with a Squadron of Men of War to *Martinico*, where being join'd by two Privateers, they sail'd towards *Curisao*; but in their Voyage were all lost on a ridge of Rocks jetting out from the Isles of *Aves*, except two Ships, one a Privateer, and the other a *French* Frigot.

The French enterprize against Curisao.

Finding that we could not succeed with the *Dutch* Governour of *Curisao*, we sail'd to *Bon Airy*, where we truck'd some of our Sugar for *Irish* Beef. 1681

Bon Airy lies the most East of the *Dutch* Isles in these Parts, and is also the largest, tho' not the most considerable, being 17 Leagues in Circumference, at 12 Degrees 16 Minutes. The Harbour is in the middle of the Isle, on the South side of it, in a deep Bay, where Ships may ride securely in sixty Fathom Water at half a Cables length of the Shore, where they must take care to fasten the Ship with a Rope, for fear of the Land Winds which blow in the Night time, the Ground being so steep as not to be able to hold the Anchor against the force of the Wind. Half a Mile to the West of this Haven, some low Lands jet out into the Sea, with a Channel betwixt them and the Isle. About half a Mile from the Shoar, directly opposite to the Harbour, is a small Village, inhabited by a few *Indian* Families, and Soldiers, and a Deputy Governour, tho' there is no Fort there. The *Indians* live upon Husbandry; upon feeding of Cattel, Goats, Horses and Cows, but have no Sheep. They also plant Maiz and *Guiney* Corn. There is a fresh Water Spring near the Village, and at the West end is another, near which live three or four Families more; besides which there are no other Springs, nor Houses, in the whole Isle. But on the South side, not far from the East end, is a good Salt-pond. *Bon Airy.*

From hence we set Sail to the Isle of *Aves*, i. e. the *Birds Isle*, situate about eight or nine Leagues to the East of *Bon Airy*, and fifteen Leagues from the Continent, at 11 Degrees 45 Minutes North Latitude. It is scarce four Miles long, and at the East end not above half a Mile broad. The North side is all low Ground; but on the South side is a rocky ridge. The West end is a Champain Country without any Trees. About the middle of the Isle, on the North side, is a very Commodious Harbour, especially for Careening, which makes it much frequented by the Privateers, who have found out divers good Springs thereabouts. The ridge of Rocks, where, as we told you, the *French* Fleet was lost, begins at the East Point, and extends three Miles to the North; then turning off to the West runs in the shape of a half Moon. To the West of this rocky Bank (which has three little Isles, three Mile from the Main within it) is safe Anchorage and Sandy Ground. *The Isle of Aves.*

The before mentioned *French* Squadron, coming from the East, the Admiral's Ship fell in unexpectedly on the back of this ridge, and fired several Guns as a warning to the rest; but these misconstruing the matter, and imagining he was engaged with some of the Enemy's Ships, made all the Sails they could, and run after him upon the Rocks, within half a Mile of one another, his Light on the Main top being an unhappy Guide to them. Most of the Men got on Shoar, but dy'd with the hardships they endured; whereas the Privateers, that were better accustom'd to such Disasters, lived very well upon the Wines, Brandies, and other Provisions that were not ashore, which served them for three Weeks, without Bread, till they met with an opportunity of being transported to *Hispaniola*. They saw about 400 *French* men carried with part of a Ship into the Sea, without ever being heard of afterwards; they were all drunk, and went off singing and roaring, having not the least sense of their Danger. *The French Squadron lost near this Isle.*

Soon after, a pleasant Adventure happen'd to Captain *Pain*, a Privateer of six Guns, who wanting some new Rigging, came to this Island to furnish himself with Masts, and such other things as he wanted, and as he supposed were cast ashear thereabouts; but before he had done, a *Dutch* Man of War of twenty Guns came thither from *Curisao* to take up the Guns; but perceiving a Vessel within the Riff, prepared to attack her the next Morning. Captain *Pain* made all possible preparations for a brave defence, but with little hopes of saving himself, when in the dusk of the Evening, he saw a *Dutch* Sloop come to an Anchor in the Harbour, at the West end of the Isle; looking upon this as a favourable opportunity to make his escape, he sent in the Night time two of his Canoes, who boarding the Ship without any resistance, took her, and finding her a rich Prize, he went away with her, leaving his empty Ship to the Enemy. *The first Prize that Capt. Pain takes.*

The Isle of *Aves* has got its name from the vast quantity of Birds found there, especially those called *Boobies*, and *Men of War*. The *Boobies* are a kind of Water Fowl, of an Ash colour, and of the bigness of a small Pullet; they have Bills longer and bigger than those of a Crow, and somewhat broader at the end, with *The Isle of Aves has its name from the Birds.*

1681 with flat Feet like a Duck. I took notice that these Birds are whiter here than in other places, and that they build their Nests on the Ground, whereas every where else, that ever I saw, they build upon Trees Their Flesh is black, and tastes much after Fish.

The Man of War. The *Men of War* is a Bird resembling both in shape and bigness to a Kite, but is black, and has a red Neck. It feeds on Fish, which when she intends to catch, she comes down Head-foremost, like a Kite, to the surface of the Water, and nimbly snatching the Prey, with the Bill, out of the Water, soars aloft again. Her Wings are long, her Feet like those of the other Land-fowl, and she builds her Nest on Trees, if she can meet with any.

The little Isle of Aves. About four Leagues to the East of this Isle is another, call'd the little Isle of *Aves*, destitute of Inhabitants, and producing scarce any thing else but *Mangrove* Trees, some Pines, but especially *Boobies*.

1682 We stay'd at the Island of *Aves* till *February* 1682, when we sailed thence to the Isles of *Roca*, where whilst near one of them, we were employ'd in Careening our Sugar Prize, we made a kind of a House to shelter our selves in. About the same time a *French* Man of War of 36 Guns coming into the Road, thro' the Isles, we sold about ten Tuns of our Sugar to her, and I was kindly entertained aboard her by the Captain and Lieutenant, who was a Knight of *Maltha*.

The Isles of Roca. The *Roca's* are a knot of little uninhabited Isles, seated sixteen Leagues from the Continent, stretching in length, from East to West five Leagues, and three Leagues broad, at 11 Degrees, 40 Minutes; Latitude 20 Degrees; N. W. by W. from *Tortuga*, and seven to the West of *Orchilla*, another Isle at the same distance from the Continent. Among all these Isles the Northern-most is most remarkable, by reason of a high white Rock at the West end of it, to be seen at a great distance at Sea, and is full of *Boobies*, *Men of War*, *Tropick-Birds* and *Noddies*. The *Noddy* is a kind of a *The Noddy.* small Black-bird, which builds in Rocks, and rarely is seen far from the Shoar; I never saw any of their Nests except in this Place. The *Tropick Bird* is of the big- *The Tropick Bird.* ness of a Pidgeon, but shap'd like a Partridge; it is white all over, with two or three ash-colour'd Feathers only in each Wing; it has also a single Feather, or rather a Quill, seven Inches long, growing out of the Rump in lieu of a Tail. The Bill is short and thick, of a yellowish Colour. It has got its name because it is never seen far from either of the *Tropicks*. Both these Birds are very good Meat, and the last I never saw but at Sea a great way from the Shoar, and in this Isle, where they build their Nests.

On the South side of this Rock, near the Sea-shoar, issues a Spring of fresh Water from the Rocks, but so gently, that in twenty four Hours it does not afford above forty Gallons, being of a rough and aluminous taste. The middle of this Isle is all low and plain Ground, which produces good store of long Grass, which harbours a vast multitude of a kind of small grey wild Fowl, of the bigness of a Black-bird; but they lay Eggs bigger than those of Magpyes, whence *Egg-bird.* they are commonly called *Egg-birds*. The East part of this Isle is covered with *Mangrove* Trees.

Mangrove trees. Of the *Mangrove* Trees there are three different sorts; the *black*, *red* and *white* ones; the first is the biggest of the three, its Circumference being as big as a stout Oak, and its height twenty Foot. The Wood is very hard and durable, but too heavy for Building. The *Red Mangrove* Tree grows near the Sea-side, or by Creeks, and on the Banks of Rivers; this kind grows out from the Roots in divers Stalks, which about eight or ten Foot above the Ground join into one Stem or Trunk; the Wood is good for Timber and other uses; the inside of the Bark is red, and is used by the Tanners in the West *Indies*. The *white Mangrove* is neither so big nor of any considerable use. The Ground on the East end, where they grow, is sandy, and often overflown by the spring Tides: But the Harbour is on the South side, about the middle of the Isle.

The rest of the *Roca* Isles are low; and the next adjacent to the South is very flat and small, full of good Grass, but without Trees. On the South end of it there is a Pond, but the Water is brackish, near it is good Anchorage. Not above a League from this are two other small Islands, covered with red *Mangrove* Trees, which above all the rest delight in marshy Grounds, as these Islands are. The two small Isles are separated from one another by a Channel only, not above 200 Yards broad, which nevertheless affords a safe Passage to Ships of burthen. The East end of the Westernmost of these Islands is a dry sandy Soil, without Trees or Shrubs. On the South side of this Point we Careen'd, because Ships may come close to the Shoar, and a few Guns planted on the Point will secure the Channel. Among, or within, these Islands is good riding, but not without, unless to the W. or S. W. of them; for on the E. or N. E. side the *Monsoon* or Trade-wind makes the Sea very Boisterous, and on the South side there is no Ground at 70, 80 or 100 Fathom, close under the Shoar. 1682

After we had provided our selves with Water, we set Sail again in *April* to *Salt Tortuga*, so call'd for 1682 distinction sake; from the shoals of *Dry Tortuga* near Cape *Florida*, and from the Isle of *Tortuga* near *Hispaniola*, formerly known by the name of *French Tortuga*. It is a pretty spacious Isle abounding in Salt, but destitute of Inhabitants; at 11 deg. N. Lat. 14 Leagues distance to the N. W. from *Margarita*, a rich Isle Inhabited by *Spaniards*; and 17 or 18 Leagues from Cape *Blanco* on the Continent. As you sail betwixt these Isles to the S. you may at once see the Shoar on the Main, and the Islands of *Margarita* and *Tortuga*, provided it be bright Weather. This last Isle is Rocky at the E. end, jutting out a good way into the Sea; and at the S. E. end is a pretty good Road, near the Salt-Ponds two hundred Paces from the Sea; where I have seen a whole Fleet of Ships from the *Caribbe*-Islands, who bring thither good Store of Rum, Sugar and Lime-juice, in *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*; which they exchange for Salt. At the W. end towards the S. is another small Harbour; which, besides the beforementioned Road, is the only place where Ships can safely ride at Anchor. It produces some Goats, and great store of Tortoises, which lay their Eggs in the sandy Bays, whence it has got its Name.

Being disappointed in our design of selling our Sugar here to the *English*, we steer'd our Course to the Isle of *Trinidada*, not far from the Continent, under the *Spanish* Jurisdiction, but the E. winds and Current forcing us betwixt *Margarita* and the Continent, we sail'd forward to *Blanco*, a large Isle to the N. of *Margarita*, 30 Leagues from the Continent, at 11 Degree 30 *The Isle of Blanco.* Min. N. Lat. it is flat and low Ground not Inhabited, but healthy, producing abundance of long Grass, and some Trees of *Lignum-Vitæ*, with good store of Under-wood betwixt them.

This Isle has abundance of *Guano's*, a Creature of the bigness of a Man's Arm, with a small Tail, but *Guano's.* long and sharp at the end, which if you take hold on near the Body, it will come off in one of the Joints; for the rest they are like a Lizard, but of divers Colours, brown, black, yellow, green and speckled. It is an Amphibious Animal, and its Eggs, as well as the Flesh, are good Food; the last affords very good Broth for the sick Sea-men. The Water is so deep near the Shoar, that there is no riding any where, except at the N. W. end in a small Bay. On the W. side is a fresh Water Spring, and on the same Shoar are divers Sands, whither abundance of green Tortoises resort to lay their Eggs; these, both for bigness and good taste, exceed all others in the West *Indies*. Of the several sorts of Tortoises I shall have occasion to say more, when I return to the South Seas.

I know that some modern Authors speak of good store of Goats in this Isle, but tho' I have gone all over it, I never could meet with any; perhaps there may have been some formerly, it being unquestionable, that many Places in the West *Indies* have undergone very remarkable Changes of late Years; witness the City of *Nombre de Dios*, once so famous in those parts, of which, to my own Knowledge, there is at this time nothing left but the bare Name, the place where it stood being now a thick Wood.

After a stay of fourteen Days at the Isle of *Blanco*, we sail'd back to *Salt Tortuga*, and thence in four Days more to the Coast of *Caracca* on the Continent; being a continued Tract of Hills and small Valleys for 20 *The Coast of Caracca.* Leagues in length, running from E. to W. but the Valleys and Ridges pointing to the Shoar from S. to N. about four or five Miles into the Country, tho' most of them are not above one or two Furlongs wide. Behind these Valleys (which lye open to the Sea) runs another Ridge parallel with the broken Hills, the last whereof are so high and close together, that at some distance at Sea the Valleys are not discernable, but the Hills appear like one continued ridge of Mountains. They are barren except on the lowermost parts, which are covered with a good black Mould, the same that is in the Valleys, which are extreamly fertile and well cultivated by the *Spaniards*, who abound in Maiz, Plan-

1682. Plantains, *Indian* Fowls and Hogs; but their chief Product is the *Coco*-Trees, which feed the Nuts whereof the Chocolate is made.

Coco-Trees and Nuts. The *Coco*-Trees don't grow in all Parts of the *West-Indies*, nor of the N. Sea; but only in the Bay of *Campeachy*, on *Costa Rica*, betwixt *Porto Bello* and *Nicaragua*, along *Carpenter's* River, and on the Coast of *Caraccos*, as high as the Isle of *Trinidada*. In the S. Sea you meet with them upon the River of *Griaquil* to the S. of the Line, in the Valley of *Collima*, and on the S side of the Continent of *Mexico*; some of them are also left at *Jamaica*, but these are not many, because notwithstanding all the care taken with them, they are very subject to be blighted. The Coco Nuts of *Costa Rica* are flat, and larger than those of the Coast of *Caraccos*; but these last are much fatter, and consequently better, being so oily that the *Spaniards* here (who use abundance of Chocolate) dry them before they rub them up, which if you you don't do, you must rub them with Water. I know that my old Companion Mr. *Ringrose*, prefers the Nuts of *Griaquil* before all the rest; but as I have been acquainted with all the parts where the Coco-nuts grow, so I freely assert, that those of *Caraccos* exceed all the others for goodness, tho' at the same time, after they are dry'd up by the *Spaniards*, they may not be so acceptable in *Europe* for the making of Chocolate.

Their difference.

How they are cultivated. The largest Coco-Trees have a Trunk of one Foot and a half thick, and 7 or 8 Foot high to the Branches, which spread like those of an Oak, with smooth dark green Leaves, like the Plum-tree, but larger. The Cods, which contain about 100 Nuts each (bigger or less in proportion of the Cod) are commonly of the bigness of two Mens Fists, hanging on a small tough Stalk from all parts of the body of the Tree, but especially near the joints of the large Branches, but never on the Boughs. A good Tree produces two Crops every Year, *viz.* in *December* and *June*, the last is the best, tho' commonly you seldom see more than 20 or 30 Cods upon one Tree. The Cod, or Shell it self, is much of the same substance as those of the Lemons, but something harder and brittle, knobb'd and unequal like them. At first it is dark green, and the side towards the Sun dark red, which as it ripens turns to a lively red, and the green to a bright yellow. They ripen, and are gathered not at once, but for a Month successively as they turn red; the Cods thus gathered are laid up in heaps to sweat, and afterwards the Nuts are taken out (which lie close together) and dry upon Matts in the Sun. The Oil, in which they abound, preserves them without any further care, so that even the Sea Water will do them no harm, as I have found by my own Experience. The young Trees are raised out of the Nuts with the thick end downwards, in a black Mould, and in the same places where they bare, which is in four or five Years. I have seen set from 500 to 2000 of them in one Plantation, or Coco Walk as they call them) which they shelter for the first two or three Years with Plantains, especially near the Shoar, where the Vallies lie altogether open to the N. yet have I never seen the Cocos here blighted, as I have done in other places. In the Bay of *Campeachy* they use Coco-nuts instead of Money.

Ordered.

The Town of Caraccas. A considerable way within the Country, behind the beforementioned ridge of Mountains, is situate the City of *Caraccas*, the chief of all this Country, inhabited by the Owners of the Plantations in these Vallies, and consequently very rich, being seated in a Champain Country, which maintains great store of Cattel. I heard a *Spaniard*, who inhabited there, say, it is as big and more populous than *Corunna* in *Gallicia*.

The Town of Griare. Upon the Coast, close to the Sea side, is a goodly Town called *La Griare*, which tho' but a bad Harbour, yet is much frequented by the *English* and *Dutch*, who ride safe enough in some of the sandy Bays of the Vallies. The Town has no other Defence but a pretty strong Fort, which together with the place, was taken some Years ago by Captain *Wright*. It lies five Leagues W. of Cape *Blanco*, the Easternmost Point and Boundaries of this Coast. About 20 Leagues more to the East, the Sea sends forth a Branch into the Country, but the entrance of this same is not capable of admitting any Ships of Burthen, tho' it has many goodly Towns round its borders: It is called *Laguna del Venezuela*, and near its Mouth is a place called *Comana*, famous for its brave Defence, this being the only place in the North-sea the *Buckaneers* attack'd in vain for several Years. Not far from it is the Village of *Varina*, famous for its Plantations of Tobacco, reputed the best in the World.

The Lake of Venzuela.

Varina Tobacco.

As I have been often upon this Coast, I have always observed, that we used to be pester'd with scab-by Lips, occasion'd, as I supposed, by the dry N. E. Winds, which blow on this Coast frequently in different Seasons, for the rest of the Air is very serene and Healthy. The *Dutch*, and some of our *Jamaica* Men, have a considerable Trade here, by vending the *European* Commodities, but especially Linnen, which they exchange for Silver and Cocoes.

We took on this Coast 7 or 8 Tuns of Coco, and three Vessels laden with Hides, Earthen-ware, Brandy and other *European* Merchandizes, and sailed with them to the *Roca* Isles, where we shared our Booty and Vessels, and twenty of us set sail in one of them directly for *Virginia*. We took in our way several sucking Fishes with Hooks. These Fishes are of the bigness of a large Whiting, and not unlike in shape, only that their Head is flatter; from thence, down to the middle of the Back, grew a hard grizly Substance, like that of the *Limpit*, or the Head of a Shell Snail. This excrescency is oval 7 or 8 Inches long, 6 broad, and half an Inch high, and composed of small ridges, wherewith it will fasten it self to any thing it meets with, as a Snail does to a Wall; in fair Weather they swim about the Ship, but as soon as it grows boisterous they fasten to the Vessel, their chief Food being the filth that is thrown over-board. They will also stick to large Fishes, such as the Shark, to Tortoises, Trees, Planks, &c. perhaps this may be the *Remora* of the Ancients. They are found in great numbers in the Bay of *Campeachy*, and thence to the Coast of *Caraccos*, and among the Isles.

Sucking Fish.

CHAP. V.

The Author's Voyage to the Isles of John Fernando, *in the* South *Sea. Their arrival at the Isles of Cape* Verd. *A description of these Islands, of* Sherborough *River on the Coast of* Guinea, *and of the Isle of* John Fernando; *of the* Pacific *Sea; the* Andes *of* Peru *and* Chili; *of the Isles of* Cocos, *Cape* Blanco, *the Bay of* Caldera; *of the Isle and Harbour of* Rio-Leka, *and of the Gulf and Isles of* Amapalla.

1683. CAptain *Cook* coming in *April* with a *French* Prize of 18 Guns he had taken in *Virginia*, and such of my Fellow Travellers over the Isthmus of *America*, as were then in *Virginia*, engaged with the said Captain to enter with him upon an expedition into the South Seas. Accordingly we set sail (our Ships Crew consisting of 70 Men) *August* 23. and met with nothing remarkable but a most violent Storm, till we arrived at the *Salt-Isles* one of the most Easternmost of the Cape *Verd* Islands, of which there are ten in number; extending from the *African* Cape *Verd* about 5 Deg. of Long. in breadth, and as many of Lat. in length, *viz.* from 14 to 19 N. and inhabited by *Portuguese* Banditties. The Isle of *Salt* it self, is situate at 16 D. Lat. and in Long. 19 D. 33 M. W. from the *Lizard* in *England*. Its length from N. to S. is 9 Leagues, and its breadth about 2 Leagues. It has abundance of Salt-ponds, (whence it has got its Name) but no Trees or Grass, that ever I saw; some few poor Goats feed upon Shrubs near the Sea side. I have also seen some wild Fowl here, and especially the *Flamingos*, a reddish Fowl, of the shape of a *Hern*, but much larger, living in Ponds or Muddy places; we shot about 14 of them, tho' they are very shie. Their Nests they build with the Mud in the shallow places of Ponds, or standing Waters; this they raise up like Hillocks, tapering to the top, two Foot above the surface of the Water, where they leave a hole to lay their Eggs in; which when they do, or are hatching them, they stand with their long Legs in the Water, close to the Hillocks, and so

The Flamingos.

How they build their Nests.

1683. so cover the hollowness only with their Rumps, for if they should sit down upon them the weight of their Bodies would break them. The young ones can't fly nor come to their true Colour (being grey at first) or Shape till they are ten or eleven Months old, but run very fast; their Flesh is lean and black, but not ill tasted; they have large Tongues, and near the root of them a piece of Fat which is accounted a great Dainty. I saw at another time great store of these Birds at the Isle of *Rio la Hacha* near the Continent of *America* opposite to *Querisao*, but never could so fully observe their Nests or young ones as here.

We found not above five or six Men in the Isle of *Sall*; the Chief of them brought us three or four poor Goats, in requital of which and some Salt we bought of him, we gave him some old Cloathes. One of the *Portugueses* did secretly sell a piece of Ambergreese to one of our Men at a cheap rate, tho' I believe it was dear enough, for it had no Smell, was soft, and of the Colour of Goat's Dung. At the *Nequabars* in the East *Indies* I saw some sold that was of a much lighter Colour and hard, but of as little Scent, which makes me suppose it was a Cheat as well as this, tho' both these Places afford true Ambergreese: For I remember that one *John Read* who was an Apprentice to a Merchant trading to the Isles of *Cape Verd*, that once he saw a great lump of true Ambergreese swimming near *Fogo* (one of these Isles) and that at another time he took up a good piece; at the same time it is certain, that the Natives of these Places as well as of *Florida* have got the way of adulterating this precious Commodity: I remember that Mr. *Benjamin Barker*, a curious Person and of my old acquaintance, told Mr. *Hill* our Chirurgion, that in one of the Isles of the Bay of *Honduras*, he found a-shoar of a sandy Bay something above high Water-mark, a lump of true Ambergreese which weighed above two Pounds. Mr *Hill* shew'd me a piece of it which Mr. *Barker* bestowed upon him for a Present; it was of a dark brown Colour, of the hardness of a good mellow Cheese, and of a very agreeable Scent. I am credibly inform'd that at *Bermudos* and the *Bahama* Isles in the West *Indies*, as also on the *African* Coast with the adjacent Isles from *Mozambique* to the *Red Sea* abundance of Ambergreese is found and sold by the Natives.

Amber-greese.

Adulterated by the Natives

St. Nicholas, another of the Cape Verd Isles.

We set Sail from *Sall* to St. *Nicholas* another of the *Cape Verd* Isles 22 Leagues W. S. West, from thence we came to an Anchor on the S. E. side: It is of a Triangular Form, the longest side to the East being thirty Leagues in length, and the other two twenty Leagues each. Near the Shoar it is rocky and barren, but has some Valleys deeper into the Country which produce Vines and Grass for Goats. The chief of the Isle with two or three Gentlemen brought some of the Wine aboard us, which was of a pale Colour, and tasted like the *Madera* Wine, but was muddy: He told us that the principal Village was in a Valley fourteen Miles from the Bay where we then were, and contained about 100 Families: They were of a dark swarthy Complexion.

After having spent five or six Days here in digging of Wells to get fresh Water, we sailed to *Mago* another of the *Cape Verd* Isles forty Miles East by South from the last, where we came to an Anchor on the N. W. side of it. We would have provided our selves with some Beef and Goats here (of which they have good store) but they would not let our Men come a shoar, because one Captain *Bond* a *Bristol* Man had not long before carried off some of the chief Inhabitants under the same Pretext. This Isle is but small, and the Coast full of Shoals, yet has a considerable Traffick in Salt and Cattle. In *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*, a sort of Tortoises lay their Eggs here, but they don't approach in goodness to those of the West *Indies*. They also plant here Potatoes, some Plantains and Corn, tho' the Inhabitants live exceeding poorly here as well as in all the other *Cape Verd* Islands, except those of the Isle of St. *Jago* four or five Leagues hence to the West.

St. Mago, another of these Isles.

St. Jago, another of these Isles.

For, tho' the Isle of St. *Jago* is mountainous, yet is it the best inhabited of all, as having a very good Harbour on the East side, much frequented by *European* Ships bound to the East *Indies* and the *Guinea* Coast, as also the *Portugese* Ships bound for *Brasil*, who come hither to provide themselves with Beef, Pork Goats, Fowls, Eggs Plantains and Cocoe Nutts in exchange for Shirts Drawers, Handkerchiefs, Hats, Wastecoats Breeches and all sorts of Linnen Cloath which is in high esteem here with the Inhabitants, who are much inclined to Theft. There is a Fort on the top of a Hill that commands the Harbour; I was credibly inform'd that this Isle has two pretty large Towns and divers Villages; and the same sort of Wine we drank at St. *Nicholas*. 1683.

There are two more of those Isles *Fogo* and *Brava*, both small Islands to the West of St. *Jago*; the first is remarkable for its being one intire burning Mountain, on the top whereof issues a fiery Substance, which may be discerned a great way at Sea, but only in the Night time. A few Inhabitants live near the Sea side at the foot of the Mountain, who subsist upon Goats, Fowls, Plantains and Cocoe Nutts. The rest of the *Cape Verd* Isles are St. *Anthonio*, St. *Lucia*, St. *Vincent* and *Buna Vista*.

Fogo and Brava, two of the Cape Verd Isles.

From the *Cape Verd* Isles we steer'd our Course to the South with an E. N. E. Wind directly to the Streights of *Magellan*, but at 10 *d.* N. Latitude, the Wind blowing hard at S. by West and S. S. West, we directed our Course to the *Guinea* Coast and came in a few Days to an Anchor at the Mouth of *Sherborough* River, where is an *English* Factory South of *Sierra Liona*, where, as they told me, we have a considerable Trade with Camwood used by the Dyers. Not far from the Shoar we saw a pretty large Village inhabited by Negroes; the Houses were but low, except one in the middle, where they entertained us with Palm Wine, and brought aboard us good store of Rice, Fowls, Honey and Sugar Canes.

Sherborough River and Factory.

About the middle of *November* we prosecuted our Voyage to the Streights of *Magellan*, but as soon as we got out to Sea we met with frequent Tornadoes three or four in a Day which together with Calms made us advance but slowly, the Wind veering about at Intervals to the South and by East and S. S. East, till we were past the Equinoctial Line about a degree to the East of the before-mentioned Isle of St. *Jago*. After we were come a degree to the South of the Line the Wind turned to the East, which made us steer S. W. by West and the further we got to the South the Wind increased upon us from the East. At 3 *d.* S. Latitude we had the Wind at S. East, and at 5 *d.* at E. S. East, where it held a considerable time, and carried us by the 15th of *January* to 36 *d.* S. Latitude without any remarkable Accident. 1683.

The Sea hereabouts being of a pallish Colour, we thought to have found ground with our Line, but found none at 100 Fathom. At Noon I computed to be 48 *d.* 50 *m.* West from the *Lizard*, the variation 15. *d.* 50 *m. January* the 28th. we made the *Sibbel de Wards* three Isles lying at 51 *d.* 25. *m.* S. Lat. and Longit. West from the *Lizard* of *England* 57 *d.* 28 *m.* the variation 33 *d.* 10 *m.* I persuaded Captain *Cook* to anchor near these Islands, being sensible of the danger that was likely to attend us in our Passage thro' the Streights of *Magellan*; considering especially, that the Men aboard the Privateers are not so strictly at command as in other Vessels. We came to an Anchor within two Cables length of the Shoar of the furthermost of these three Isles, where we found foul rocky Ground, and the Island barren and destitute of Trees, but some Dildo Bushes growing near the Sea side. We saw the same Day vast Shoals of small red Lobsters, no bigger than ones Finger, but were altogether like Lobsters, except in their Colour. 1683.

The Sibbel de Wards

Finding neither safe Anchorage nor fresh Water at these Isles, we made the best of our way towards the Streights of *Magellan*. *Feburary* the sixth we came in sight of the Streights *La Maire*, which we found very narrow, with high Land on both sides; the Wind at N. N. West we sail'd with a brisk Gale till within four Miles of the Mouth, where being becalmed we found a very strong Tide setting out of the Streights to the North, but whether it flow'd or ebb'd we were not able to distinguish, because it did run on all ways, breaking on all sides, and tossing our Ship at such a rate as I never saw before nor since. At eight of the Clock at Night we sail'd with a W. N. W. Wind to the East in order to sail round the *State's* Isle, at the East end of which we cast Anchor the seventh at Noon and found our selves at 54 *d.* 52 *m.* S. Latitude. At this end are three small rocky Islands white with the Dung of Birds; we steer'd to the South with an intention to sail round to the South of Cape *Horne* the southermost Point of *Terra del Fuego*; but the Winds running betwixt the N. W. and West we did not see the *Terra del Fuego* after the first Evening we made the Streight *La Maire*; as I did not see the Sun at rising or setting from the time we left the *Sibbel de Ward's* Isles till we came into the South Sea, so I am not able to tell you the variation. I made indeed an observation at Noon in Latitude 59 *d.* 30 *m.* the Wind at W. by North, and at Night the

The Streights La Maire.

The States Isle.

1684. Wind veer'd about to the S. West at 60 *d.* Lat. the furthest S. Lat. I ever was in.

February the 14th. We were surprized by a most violent Storm at 55 *d.* Lat. to the West of Cape *Horne*, which continued till the 3d of *March* from the S. West and S. W. by West and W. S. West.

March the 3d. It blew a fresh Gale from the South, and afterwards from the East, which brought us into the South Sea. The 9th. We found our selves at 47 *d.* 10 *m.* and the variation 15 *d.* 30 *m.* East. The 17th. we had a fair Gale from the S. East at 36 *d.* Lat. the variation 8 *d.* East. The 19th. early in the Morning we descried a Sail to the South of us, which we supposed to be a *Spanish* Merchant-Man bound from *Baldivia* to *Lima*, but proved one Captain *Eaton* from *London*, who being bound to the South Seas as well as we, we kept company with him quite thro' the Streights.

They pass the Streights of Magellan.

1684. *March* the 24th. We got in sight of the Isle of *John Fernando*, and soon after came to an Anchor in a Bay at the South end in 25 Fathom Water within two Cable's length of the Shoar; we sent immediately a-shoar to look after a *Muskito* Man we had been forced to leave there three Years before, and who notwithstanding all the search made by the *Spaniards* after him had kept himself concealed in the Woods. When he was left there by Captain *Watlin* (after Captain *Sharp* was turn'd out, he had with him a Gun, a Knife and some Powder and Shot which being all spent, he made a Saw of his Knife, by knotching it, wherewith he saw'd his Gun Barrel into small pieces, and these he made up into Harpeens, Hooks and such like Instruments, first heating them in the Fire, and then beating them out and bending them with Stones, or grinding them to an edge, all which tho' it may seem strange, yet is commonly practised among the *Muskito Indians* who make all their fishing Instruments without either Forge or Anvil: And the other *Indians* who have not as yet got the use of Iron from the *Europeans*, make their Hatchets wherewith they cut their Timber and Wood of a very hard Stone; in the hollowing out of their Canoes they make use also of Fire besides their Hatchets. The Stone Hatchets of the *Indians* near *Blewfield* River are 12 Inches long, 14 broad, and 2 Inches thick in the middle, ground away flat and sharp at both ends; the Handle is in the midst, being a deep knotch of a Finger's length, which they bind round with a Withe of about 4 Foot long: Thus the *Indians* of *Patagonia* head their Arrows very artificially with grounded Flints. With these before-mentioned Instruments our *Muskito* Man used to strike Goats and Fish for his Subsistence; his Hut being half a Mile from the Sea side, made of Goat's Skins, as was also his Bed, the same serving also for his Cloathing; those he had when he was left, being quite wore out. As he spied our Ship at some distance, so he had dress'd three Goats with Cabbage for our Reception; and we were no sooner landed, when another *Muskito* aboard our Ship leapt towards his Country-man, and after he had thrown himself with his Face upon the ground embraced him with all the Marks of Tenderness, which Ceremony (according to the custom of their Country) being over, he came to us as his old Friends: His Name was *William*, and [illegible], tho' they have no Names among themselves, they love to have Names given them by the *Europeans*.

A Muskito Man left there by Capt. Watlin.

How the Indians strike Fish.

The Isle of *John Fernando* is about twelve Leagues Circuit, seated 120 Leagues from the Continent at [illegible]. The whole Country is a pleasant mixture of high Hills and Valleys, the sides of the Hills being partly Woodlands, partly *Savannacks*, clear pieces of Land naturally so without Wood; for, Places clear'd of Wood by Industry, are call'd by that Name. In the Bay of *Campeachy* are very spacious *Savannacks*, and near the River of *Plate*, some from 30 to 100 Miles long; in *Jamaica*, *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, the *Savannaks* are interspersed with Wood. The Grass in the Plains of *John Fernando's* Isle is not so flaggy, but much kinder than that of those in the West *Indies*. They have here also good Wood for Timber, but none for Masts: Their Cabbage Trees are exceeding good, but not so large as in other Places. It is observable that the Goats that feed towards the West end of the Isle are much fatter and better than those of the East end, tho' in the last there is both better and greater plenty of Grass and sweet Water in the Valleys; whereas the West end is a champain Country, the Grass dry, and scarce any Wood or fresh Water. Notwithstanding its Fertility it is destitute of Inhabitants, who might live here in great Plenty, the Plains being in a condition to maintain a great number Cattle, and the Sea affording vast store of divers sorts of Fish, as Seals, Sea-Lyons, Snappers and Rock Fish.

The Isle of *John Fernando* described.

1684. The Seals being sufficiently known and described in other Places, we will pass by in silence here. I will only mention that they are most seen in the North parts of *America* and *Europe*, and the South parts of *Africa*, and on the *American* Coast of the South Sea, from *Terra del Fuego* to the Equinoctial Line, but are never seen in the East *Indies* nor to the North of the Line till at 2 *d.* N. Lat. The Sea-Lyons are not unlike the Seals, but much bigger, being 12 or 14 Foot long, and of the Bulk of a large Bull. They have no Hair, and are of a dun Colour with large Eyes, and Teeth 3 Inches long; one of them will yield a good quantity of sweet Oyl fit to fry Meat withal. They feed upon Fish, yet is their Flesh tolerable good Food. The Snapper Fish has a large Head, Mouth and Gills, the Back red, and Belly ash-colour'd like a Roach, but much larger, and its Scales of the bigness of a Shilling: Their Meat is very good Food; I have seen them no where but in the West *Indies*, and especially in the South Sea.

Seals.

Sea-Lyons.

The Snapper and Rock Fish.

The Rock Fish call'd *Baccalao* by the *Spaniards* from its likeness to a Cod Fish, is rounder than the former, and of a dark brown Colour with small Scales; it likewise affords good Meat, and is found in vast plenty on the Coast of *Peru* and *Chili*.

This Island has only two Bays fit for Anchorage, with a Rivulet of fresh Water in each; both these are at the East end, and so conveniently situate that they might be strengthned and defended by a slender Force against a powerful Army, there being no access to them from the West over the high Mountains: Here it was that five *English* Men left here by Captain *Davis*, secured themselves against a great number of *Spaniards*.

After a stay of fourteen Days at *John Fernando's* Isle, we set Sail again *April* the 8th. in company of Captain *Eaton* to the *Pacifick* Sea, properly so call'd, being that part of the *Mare Australe* or *Mar del Zur*, (as it is call'd in the Maps) which extends from South to North betwixt 30 *d.* and the 40 *d.* S. Lat. and from the *American* Shoar to the West without limitation, as far as I knew. I have sail'd in the Sea 250 Leagues from the Land without any dark or rainy Clouds, Tempests, Tornadoes, Hurricans or any other Winds, except the Trade Wind, notwithstanding which the Sea runs high at the new and full Moon, and makes landing very unsafe. I have however frequently taken notice of hazy and foggy Weather in the Mornings, so as to hinder the observation of the Sun.

1684. The Pacifick Sea.

We continued our Course towards the Line to the 24 *d.* S. Lat. in sight of the Continent of the South of *America*.

The Coast of Chili and Peru.

This vast tract of Land belonging to *Chili* and *Peru* being very mountainous, we sail'd no nearer than 12 or 16 Leagues to it, for fear of being discovered by the *Spaniards*; and the Land from 24 to 10 *d.* S. Lat. still exceeds the former in height, being enclosed by three or four ridges of Mountains within one another, the furthermost within the Country surpassing the rest in height; they exceed in my Opinion in height the Peak of *Teneriff* and of St. *Martha*, and any other in the World that ever I saw. Sir *John Narborough* in his Voyage to *Baldicia* mentions very high Lands near that City lying upon that Coast; and I have been inform'd from divers credible *Spaniards*, that from *Coquimbo* (at 30 *d.* S. Lat.) to *Baldicia* (at 40 *d.* S.) the Shoar is also very high which makes me conclude, that these Ridges extend all along the South Sea Coast from one end of *Peru* and *Chili* to the other, call'd the *Andes* or *Sierra Nuevada des Andes*. This I believe to be their reason why but few, and those very small Rivers exonerate themselves into the Sea, scarce any of them being navigable, and some drying up at a certain season of the Year; Thus the River of *Rio* runs with a brisk Current from *January* to *June*, and then decreases till *September*, when it quite dries up till *January* again, as I can tell by my own experience, and as I have heard the *Spaniards* affirm the same of other Rivers on this Coast, so I look upon them rather as Torrents (occasioned by Rains at certain Seasons) than Rivulets.

The Andes or Sierra Nuevada des Andes.

The Rivers on that Coast.

We continued our Course at some distance along the Coast till *May* the 3d. at 9 *d.* 40 *m.* S. Lat. when we discerying a Vessel Captain *Eaton* took her, being loaden with Timber. Afterwards we steer'd our Course to the Isle of *Lobos* at 6 *d.* 24 *m.* S. Lat. five Leagues from the Continent. This Isle is call'd *Lobos de la Mar*, to distinguish it from another nearer the Continent, and therefore call'd *Lobos de la Terra*; *Lobos* signifying as much

1684. much as a Seal in *Spanish*, of which there is great plenty hereabouts.

Lobos de la Mar. *May* the 9th. we anchored near *Lobos de la Mar* with our Prize. This is properly a double Island, each of a Mile in circuit, separated by a small Channel only, not capable of receiving any Ships of Burthen. A little way from the Shoar on the North side several Rocks lie scattered in the Sea; at the West end of the Eastermost Isle is a small sandy Creek where Ships may be secure from the Winds, all the rest of the Shoar being rocky Cliffs. The Land is also rocky and sandy, without any fresh Water, Trees or Shrubs, or any Land Animal, except Fowls, as *Boobies*; but above all *Penguins*, a sort of Sea-Fowl of the bigness of a Duck and having just such Feet, but the Bill is pointed; their Wings are no more than Stumps (like our Goslins) which serve them instead of Finns in the Water, and they are covered rather with Down than Feathers: As they feed on Fish so their Flesh is but of an indifferent Taste, but the Eggs are very good. The *Penguins* are to be seen all over the South Sea on the Coast of *Newfound Land* and on the Cape of *Good Hope*: I observed here also and at *John Fernando's* Isle a sort of Blackbird that all night rests in holes made in the Sand; the Road is betwixt the before-mentioned Rocks and the Eastermost Isle from 10 to 14 Fathom, which lying East and West shelters it from the Winds which for the most part blow here from the South and S. S. East.

Penguins.

Upon examination of the Prisoners, being convinced that we were discovered by the *Spaniards*, and consequently that they would keep all their richest Ships in Port, it was considered whether we should attack some Places thereabouts, and *Truxillo*, (tho' a populous City and of a difficult access in landing at the Port of *Guanchaquo* 6 Miles thence) being pitched upon as the most likely place, we prepared for the said Expedition, and *May* the 17th found our whole number to consist of 108 sound *Men*

The Design to attack Truxillo.

But the next Day some of our Men descrying three Vessels, two to the West without the Isles, and one betwixt the Isle and the Continent, we gave them chace, we in Captain *Cook's* Ship towards the Continent, and Captain *Eaton* the other two. They were soon taken and proved to be loaden with Flower from *Guanchaquo* to *Panama*. In one of them we found a Letter from the Vice-Roy of *Lima* to the President of *Panama*, intimating, that having certain notice of some Enemies lately come into these Seas, he had immediately sent away these three Ships to supply their want. At the same time being inform'd by the Prisoners, that those of *Truxillo* were erecting a Fort near their Harbour of *Guanchaquo*; we resolved to give over our design of attacking that Place and steer'd with our three Prizes to the Isles of *Gallapagos*. *May* the 19th. Leaving our Timber Prize in the Road of the Isle of *Lobos*, we set Sail with a S. W. Wind (the ordinary Trade Wind) taking our Course N. W. by North, when we came within 40 *m.* of the Line to the West with a moderate South Wind. *May* the 31st. We got in sight of the Islands of *Gallapages*, and at Night came to an Anchor at the East side of one of the Eastermost Isles, a Mile from the Shoar in 16 fathom Water clear, white, hard Sand.

They take 3 Prizes.

After their Resolution and steer towards the Gallapagos Isles.

The Isles of *Gallapagos* are a good number of large Lands situate under and on both sides of the Lines, destitute of Inhabitants, the Eastermost of them being 110 Leagues from the Continent. According to their position in the Maps they are in the Longit. of 181 extending to the West as far as 176, according to which the Longit. from *England* West is 68 *d.* tho' I fear the Hydrographical Charts have not placed them far enough to the West. The *Spaniards* who were the first Discoverers of them, describe them to be a great number of Isles extending N. West from the Equator to 5 *d.* North. We saw no more than fourteen or fifteen, some of which were seven or eight Leagues in length and three or four in breadth, pretty high and flat; four or five of the eastermost we found rocky and barren, without either Trees, Herb or Grass, except what was very near the Sea side, where grew some Bushes of *Burton* Wood which afford good Fuel; of this I saw good store in *Campeachy* Bay and in the *Samballoes*, but never in any other place in these Seas. These Isles produce also the *Dildo* Tree, a sort of a Shrub of the bigness of a Man's Leg and ten or twelve Foot high, but without either Fruit or Leaves, instead whereof it has thick rows of sharp Prickles from top to bottom. These Islands afford also some Water in Ponds and Cavities of the Rocks; some of the Isles are low and more fertile and produce Trees not unknown in *Europe*: Some of the westermost Islands are bigger than the rest, being nine or ten Leagues long, and six or seven broad, and afford store of Trees, especially *Mammee* Trees; they have also some pretty large fresh-water Rivers and many Rivulets.

The Isles of Gallapagos described.

Burton Wood and the Dildo Tree.

1684.

As there is no place in the World so much stored with *Guanoes* and land Tortoises as these Isles, so the *Spaniards* gave them the Name of *Gallapago's*; the first are fat and of an extraordinary size, and exceeding tame; and the land Tortoises so numerous, that some hundred Men may subsist for a considerable time upon them, they being very fat and as pleasant Food as a Pullet, and of such a bigness, that one of them weighs from 150 to 200 Pounds, and are from 2 Foot to 2 Foot 6 Inches over the Belly, whereas in any other Places I never met with any above 30 pound Weight, tho' I have heard them say, that at St. *Lawrence* or *Madagascar*, and at the Isle of *Don Mascarin* (near it) there are also very large ones. There are 3 or 4 sorts of land Tortoises in the West *Indies*; one is call'd by the *Spaniards Hacatee*, which keep most in fresh-water Ponds; they have small Legs and long Necks with flat Feet, and commonly weigh betwixt 10 and 15 Pounds. The second sort they call *Tenopen*, much less than the former and something rounder, but for the rest not unlike them, except that the Shell on their Backs is naturally clouded with a curious carv'd Work; both sorts afford very good Meat, and these last delight in marshy and low Places, and are in vast numbers on the Isle of *Pines* near *Cuba*, among the Woods. The Tortoises in the *Gallapago* Islands are in shape like the first with long Necks and small Heads, but that they are much bigger. These Islands have also some green Snakes and great store of tame Turtle-Doves, something less than our Pigeons, but very sweet and fat.

Land Tortoises here.

Three sorts of Land Tortoises.

Betwixt some of these Islands are large Channels capable of receiving Ships of a moderate Burthen; upon the Shoals grows great plenty of Turtle-Grass which maks these Channels abound in that sort of Sea-Tortoise which is call'd the *Green-Turtle* or *Tortoise*: For you must know, that there are no less than 4 or 5 different sorts of Sea-Tortoises; *viz.* the *Trunk-Tortoise*, the *Loggerhead*, the *Hawksbill* and the *Green-Tortoise*. The first is bigger and has a rounder and higher Back than the rest, but its Flesh is neither wholsome nor well-tasted, no more than that of the *Loggerhead*, which feeds upon the Moss of Rocks; it has got its Name from its large Head. The *Hawks-bill* (so call'd from its long small Mouth) is the least, and that bears the so much esteem'd Shell out of which they make Cabinets, Boxes, Combs, &c. in *Europe*. Of this Shell each has from 3 to 4 Pounds, tho' some have also less; their Flesh is but indifferent, yet somewhat better than that of the *Loggerheads*, tho' those taken betwixt the *Samballoes* and *Porto Bello* make those that eat their Meat vomit and purge most vehemently; the same is observable in some other Fish in the West *Indies*, of which more anon. It is further observable, that the Meat of the *Hawksbill-Tortoise* differs according to their Food; for those that keep and feed upon Moss among the Rocks have a much yellower Fat and Flesh, and not so well-tasted as those that feed upon Grass; besides that, their Shells are not so transparent. These *Hawksbill-Tortoises* are in divers parts of the West-*Indies*, and have their peculiar Isles where they lay their Eggs, and seldom intermix with any other sort of Tortoises.

Turtle Grass.

Four sorts of Sea-Tortoises.

The Trunk-Tortoise.

Hawksbill Tortoise.

However these as well as all other sorts of Tortoises lay their Eggs in the Sands, and after the same manner; their laying time is about *May*, *June* and *July*, a little sooner or later, and they lay 3 times every Season, 80 or 90 Eggs each time, which are round and of the bigness of a good Hen-Egg, but covered only with a white thin Skin. In some of the Bays on the North side of *Jamaica* the *Hawksbills* lay their Eggs, as likewise on the Isles of the Bay of *Honduras*, and in divers places on the Continent of the Coast of *America*, from *Trinidado* to *Vera Cruz* up the Bay of *New Spain*. After a *Sea-Tortoise* gets on Shoar to lay, she is an Hour before she returns, because she always chooses her Place above the high Water-Mark, where she makes a large Hole with her Finns in the Sand to lay her Eggs in, which done she covers up 2 Foot deep with the same Sand she had raked out before; sometimes they will take a view of the Place at Night before-hand, and be sure to return to the same the next Day to lay. They take the Tortoises in the Night upon the Shoar, when they turn them upon their Backs above the high Water-Mark, and so fetch them the next Morning; but a large *Green-Tortoise* will give work enough to two able Fellows to turn her upon her Back. The *Hawksbills* are also found in the East *Indies* and on the *Guinea*

How and when Tortoises lay their Eggs.

How they are taken.

1684. Coast, but I never met with any of them in the *S. Seas*.

The green Tortoise. The *Green Tortoise* has got its name from the greenish Colour of its Shell, which is better clouded than the *Hawks-bill*, but has a round and small Head, and the body is of such a bulk, as to weigh from 200 to 300 Pounds. Its meat is accounted the best of all the rest, tho' there is a considerable difference as well in their Bulk as in the goodness of the Flesh. At *Blanco* in the *West-Indies*, (where they have only this kind) are larger than any in the N. Sea, weighing generall 250 or 300 Pounds; their fat is yellow, the lean white and both very good; but those of *Boca Toro* to the W. of *Porto Bello*, are neither so large nor have so white and well tasted Flesh; and those found in the Bay of *Honduras* and *Campeachy* are less than these, and their fat of a greenish Colour. I was told that at *Port-Royal* in *Campeachy* Bay, they once catch'd one of these *Green Tortoises* which was four Foot thick from the Back to the Belly, which was 6 Foot broad; a Boy of 10 Years old (the Son of Captain *Roch*) went in it, instead of a Boat, aboard his Father's Ship then at Anchor a quarter of a Mile from the Shoar; the fat of this Creature yielded 8 Gallons of Oil. The Tortoises found among the little Isles on the S. side of *Cuba* are some bigger some less, and their Flesh sometimes green, sometimes yellow; these are carried to *Port-Royal* in *Jamaica*, where they are kept in Wires made with Stakes.

Their difference.

A monstrous large Tortoise.

Trees Food. The green Tortoises feed upon Grass of a quarter of an inch broad and six inches long, growing in three, four, five or six fathom Water; it is quite different from the *Manatee's* Grass, which has a slender blade. The Tortoises of the Isles of *Gallapagos*, are a bastard kind of the green Tortoises, their Shell being thicker than the others, but their Flesh not so good; besides that they are much larger, and frequently two or three foot thick, and their Bellies five foot broad. In the S. Sea are another kind of green Tortoise no bigger than the smallest Hawk's Bill; as they feed on Mols, so their Meat is rank, tho' very fat. Both these kinds differ from all the rest; for whereas in other places the Female only goes ashoar, and that in the Night time: among these both the Male and Female go together by Day, and return together; both are very fat at first, but when they are ready to return, they are lean, tho' the Female not so much as the Male.

How they engender. It is the common opinion here, that they are nine Days engendring, the He on the She's back in the Water. This is certain, that at that time the He will not forsake the She, who is much more fearful, and often endeavours to get away, but that the Male keeps her with his Fins; so that if you strike the She first at their coupling time, you are sure of the He. They are supposed to live many Years, being a long time coming to their full growth.

Another kind of Green Tortoise. In the S. Seas on the west end of the Coast of *Mexico*, is another kind of green Tortoises much smaller than all the rest, but their Flesh very well tasted. There is one thing more extreamly surprising in all these Creatures, that for three Months, whilst they are laying their Eggs, they forsake their ordinary places of resort, and get others where they lay their Eggs; and it is generally supposed that they neither Eat nor Drink all that Season. The most noted places where they breed, is the Isle of *Caimanes* in the *West-Indies*, and the Isle of *Ascension* in the western Ocean; and no sooner is their Coupling time past, but they are all gone, tho' it be certain that they must swim a vast way to come to either of these Places; since it has been taken notice of, that all the beforemention'd Tortoises have been found at *Caimanes* in breeding time. The nearest place from whence these Creatures can swim thither, are the Isles of *Cuba*, 40 Leagues thence. Those that breed at the Isle of *Ascension* coming from the Continent, must at least go three hundred Leagues; it being certain that their constant Places of aboad are always near the Shoar. Thus in the S. Sea they go from the *Gallapagos* to lay their Eggs on the Continent, which is above a hundred Leagues thence. It is further observable, that not all the Tortoises leave their ordinary Places at breeding time, but many remain there; and those that go, are follow'd by great numbers of Fishes, especially Sharks, that those Coasts are left destitute of Fish till their return.

Some after Ascension coming the breeding of the Tortoises.

The Air of the Gallapagos. As the Sea Breezes by Day, and the Night Winds without intermission refresh the Air of the Isles of *Gallapagos*; so they are not so much troubled with excessive Heats, nor so unwholsome as most other Places near the Equator. During the rainy Season in *November*, *December* and *January*, they are pelted with most violent Tempests, Thunder and Lightning; before and after these Months they have refreshing Showers, and their Summer Season in *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*, without any Rains. We Anchored near several of these Islands, and found frequently the Sea Tortoises sunning themselves in the Day time, (a thing not usual in most other Places) whereof we kill'd as many as we wanted. Captain *Davis* at another time came to an Anchor on the W. side of these Isles, where he and his Men did feed upon Land Tortoises for three Months, and saved sixty Jars of Oil made of them. He met on that side with divers good Channels and Anchorage betwixt the Isles; several fresh Water Rivulets, and store of good Trees and Fuel. Captain *Harris* (of whom hereafter) found also in some of these Islands abundance of *Mummee*-Trees, and divers large Rivers. The Sea adjoining to these Islands, is well stored with large and good Fish, especially with Sharks. I took the height of the Sun with an *Astrolabe*; at the N. end of the second Isle we Anchored at 28 m. N. from the Line.

After a stay of twelve Days among these Isles, one of our *Indian* Prisoners a Native of *Rio Leka*, having given us an ample Account of the Riches of that Place, and offered his Service to conduct us thither, it was resolved to take his Advice, and accordingly set sail the 12th of *June*, with an intention to touch in our way at the Isle of *Cocos*. We took our Course N. till 4 deg. 40 min. Lat. with a S. and by W. and S. S. W. winds, and as we came W. to the Isle of *Cocos*, the Wind S. W. by S. Thus we continued our Course to 5 deg. 40 min. N. Lat. when despairing to make the Isle of *Cocos* as the Wind stood (being too far to the N. of it) we directed our Course to the Continent.

They take the Galleon Pagolo.

The Isle of *Cocos* (so call'd from its vast plenty of *Coco*-Trees) lies at 5 deg. 15 min. N. Lat. Its Circuit is 7 or 8 Leagues, but has no Inhabitants. Near the Sea side it produces a certain pleasant Herb in the low Grounds, call'd *Geamadael* by the *Spaniards*. As it is environ'd with steep Rocks, so there is no coming near it, except that on the N. E. end Ships may ride safely in a small Creek. This is what I learnt from the *Spaniards*, and was confirm'd to me by Captain *Eaton*.

Cape Blanco, or the white Cape. The fair Weather and small Winds conducted us by the beginning of *July* to Cape *Blanco* on the Continent of *Mexico*, so call'd of two white Rocks half a Mile from the Cape, at 9 deg. 56 min. Lat. they are taper, high and steep, like two high Towers: The Cape it self is about the same height as *Beachy*-head, on the Coast of *Sussex* in *England*; being a full point jetting out with steep Rocks to the Sea; but having an easie descent on both sides from the Flat on the Top; which being covered with tall Trees, affords a pleasant Prospect.

The Bay of Caldera. On the N. W. side from the Cape, the Land runs in N. E. for four Leagues, making a small Bay, call'd the *Caldera*-Bay, at the entrance whereof at the N. W. side of the Cape, a sweet Water Rivulet exonerates it self into the Sea among the low Lands, which are very rich and abounding in lofty Trees, which extend a Mile N. E. beyond the Rivulet, where the *Savannahs* begin, and run several Leagues into the Country; being here and there beautify'd with small Groves of Trees, and covered with a sweet, thick and long Grass, some of the best I ever saw in the *West Indies*. Deeper into the Bay the low Lands are stor'd with *Mangroves*, but further into the Country the Land is higher, partly Woods, partly Hilly *Savannahs*, the Grass whereof is not so good as the former, neither are the Trees in the Woods so tall, but small and short. From the bottom of this Bay, you may travel over Hilly *Savannahs* for 14 or 15 Leagues, to the Lake of *Nicaragua*, on the Coast of the N. Sea.

The Country about Rio Leka. Volcan Veja a burning Mountain.

The Harbour.

Capt. Cook dies. Captain *Cook* who had been very ill ever since our departure from *John Fernando's*-Isle, dyed as soon as we came within two or three Leagues of this Cape (a thing frequent at Sea, for People to die in view of the Land after a long Illness) and as in a few Hours after we came to Anchor a League within the Cape, near the Mouth of the beforementioned Rivulet, at fourteen Fathom clean, hard Sand; so he was immediately carried on Shore under a Guard of twelve arm'd Men, in order to his Interment. Whilst our Men were busie in digging the Grave, three *Spanish Indians* came to them, asking them several impertinent Questions, which our People having answered as they thought convenient, they kept them in discourse till they found means to seize them all three, tho' one of them escaped their Hands again. The other two being carried aboard, confess'd that they were sent hither as Spies, to inform themselves concerning us, from *Nicoya*, a small *Mulatto* Town twelve or fourteen Leagues hence, seated upon the Banks of a River bearing the same Name; which being a place very convenient for building and refitting

The Town of Rio Leka.

Nicoya.

of

1684. of Ships, the President of *Panama* had sent advice of our coming into these Seas to their Magistrates. Con-
The Inhabitants of the Country. cerning the Inhabitants of the Country, they told us, that they lived most upon manuring of their Grounds for Corn, and feeding their Cattle in the *Savannahs* or Plains, of which they had great store; and that they sent their Ox-hides (the Flesh being not much regarded) to the N. Sea by the Lake of *Nicaragua*, as they did also a certain red Wood (which I suppose to be the same call'd at *Jamaica*, *Blood-Wood* or *Nicaragua-wood*,) used for Dying, which they exchanged there for Linnen and Woollen Commodities, brought thither from *Europe*. They added, that not far thence was a large Beef Pen, where we might provide our selves with what Cows or Bulls we had occasion for.

As this was a scarce Commodity among us at that time, so twenty four of us were immediately dispatch'd in two Boats, who under the conduct of one of the *Indians*, landed at a place a League from the Ship, and hawled their Boats upon the dry Sand. Thus led by their Guide, they came to the Pen in a large *Savannah* two Miles from the Boats; where finding abundance of Cows and Bulls feeding, some were for killing three or four of them immediately, but the rest opposed the same alledging they had better stay all Night, and in the Morning kill as many as they had occasion for; hereupon I and 11 more thought fit to return aboard,
A narrow escape of 12 Men left ashoar. which we did without the least opposition expecting the coming of the rest the next Day; but hearing nothing of them by four a clock in the Afternoon, 10 Men were sent in a Canoe to look after them; they were no sooner come into the Bay where they had landed before, but found their Comrades upon a small Rock half a Mile from the Shoar, standing up to the middle in Water, whither they had taken refuge to escape the hands of 40 or 50 well arm'd *Spaniards* with Guns and Lances, who had burnt their Boat; they were got upon the Rock at low-water, but it being then flowing Water, they must have infallibly have perished had our Canoes come but one Hour later, which now brought them safe aboard. We afterwards seized upon two Canoes ready fitted in this Bay, for Ships and Barks they have none, nor any Instruments for fishing, there being scarce any Fish hereabouts. This Country a-
Lance-Wood. bounding in Wood, call'd *Lance-Wood*, growing strait like so many Ashes, and very hard and tough; we cut good store of it to make Handles or Staves for Oars, and scowring Rods for our Guns, they being much more durable than those made of Ash.

The 19th of *July*, the Day before our departure from the Bay of *Caldera*, Mr. *Edward Davis* our Quarter-master, was constituted Captain in the room of Captain *Cook* deceased, and the next Day we set sail in company of Captain *Eaton*, and one of our Meal Prizes, towards *Rio Leka* with a moderate N. Wind, which brought us in three Days over against the said Port.

The Country about Rio Leka. The Country about *Rio Leka* is easily discovered at Sea, by reason of a high peeked burning Mountain call'd *Vulcan Vejo*, i. e. the *Old Vulcan*, by the *Spaniards*.
Volcan Vejo a burning Mountain. It is easily distinguished, being very high, so as to be seen 20 Leagues at Sea, besides, that there is no other Mountain like this on that Coast, and it smoaks all Day and sends forth Flames at Night. If you will make the Harbour, the Mountain must bear N. E. then steering directly with the Mountain, that Course will bring you to the Harbour, the entrance whereof you
The Harbour. see about three Leagues off it. You must take the advantage of the Sea-winds to enter, which are here at S. S. W. The Harbour is enclosed by a low Isle of a Mile in length, a quarter of a Mile broad, and one and a half from the Continent; at each end is a Channel, the E. Channel being narrow and having a very strong Tide is scarce ever used; but that on the W. end being much larger is most frequented by Ships, which must, however, have a care of a certain sandy Shoal on the N. W. point of the Isle, which as soon as they are past, they must keep close to the Shoar of the Isle, there being a Sand Bank which runs above half way out from the Continent; after which there is very good Riding near the main Shoar in 7 or 8 Fathom Water, clear hard Sand. This Port is able to contain 200 Ships.

The Town of Rio Leka. About two Leagues thence is seated the Town of *Rio Leka* in a Fenny Country, full of red *Mangrove* Trees, betwixt two narrow branches of the Seas, the Westernmost whereof reaches up to the Town, and the Easternmost runs up near the back side of it, but no shipping can come up to the Town; the description whereof I will give the Reader in my return hither. We now resume the Thread of our Voyage: Being in sight of the *Volcan Vejo*, 7 or 8 Leagues from the Shoar, the Mount bearing N. E. we took in our Top-sails and made toward the Harbour, and then setting out our Canoes, row'd up to the small Isle that makes the Harbour of *Rio Leka* by 9 a clock in the Morning, where we discovered a House, and soon after three Men going into a Canoe on the inside of the Island, and making what haste they could to row to the Continent, which before they could reach, we overtook them, and carried them back to the little Isle; at the same time we observed one a Horse-back on the Continent riding away full speed towards the Town. They frankly confess'd that they had been placed there by the Governour of *Rio Leka*, who had been advised of our coming into those Parts, to keep watch there Day and Night, and that Horse-man we saw riding away was placed upon the same account on the Continent, within an Hours riding of the Town. Thus finding our selves discovered, the Horse-man being gone three Hours before *Eaton* and his Canoes came to the Island, the design upon that Town was laid aside for this time.

1684.

They are frustrated in their design.

This small Island has a curious Spring of fresh Water, some Trees, and good store of Grass, but no Beasts to feed upon it, and is situate at 12 Deg. 10 Min. N. Lat. We staid till 4 a Clock in the Afternoon, then we went aboard again, and pursuant to a Consultation held betwixt Captain *Eaton* and Captain *Davis*, the 26th of *July*, took our Course, the next Day, for the Gulf of *Amapalla*.

This Gulf is a large Branch of the Sea, entring 8 or 10 Leagues deep into the Country. On the S. side of its entrance it has the Point or Cape *Caswina*, and on the N. W. side St. *Michael's* Mountain, at 12 Deg. 40 min. N. Lat. They both appear very remarkable at Sea; for the Cape is a high round Point, appearing at a distance like an Isle, the Land near it being very low, and Mount *Michael* is a high peaked Hill, not very steep; at the foot whereof, to the S. E is a low Plain of a Mile in length. Here it is the Gulf enters on that side, and betwixt these low Grounds, and Point *Caswina*, are two high Isles at 2 Miles distance from one another, the Southernmost being called *Mangera*, the other *Amapalla*.

The Gulf of Amapalla.

Mangera is a high, round Island 2 Leagues in circuit, enclosed on all sides with Rocks, except in one place on the N. E. side, where is a small sandy Creek. The Soil is black, but not deep, and full of Stones, and produces very lofty Trees; It has one Town in the middle, inhabited by *Indians*, with a goodly *Spanish* Church. The Inhabitants have a few Plantations of Maiz and Plantains, and no other sort of tame Fowl but some Cocks and Hens, nor any other Beasts but Cats and Dogs. From the Town to the Creek is a steep and rocky Path.

The Isle of Mangera.

The Isle of *Amapalla* has the same Soil as the former, but is much larger, having 2 Towns, 2 Miles asunder, one to the N. the other to the E. The last stands in a little Plain on the top of a Hill, a Mile from the Sea, and has a fair Church. The other Town is less, yet has a good handsome Church. I have observed one thing in most of the *Indian* Towns under the *Spanish* Jurisdiction, that the Images of their Saints in their Churches, are represented with an *Indian* Complexion, and partly in their Dress; whereas, in the Towns inhabited by *Spaniards* they retain their own Complexion and Dress. But to return to the Inhabitants, they have good store of Maiz and large Hog-plums, but few Plantains. The Hog-Plum-tree is of the same bigness as our largest Plum-trees, with leaves of the same breadth, but shaped like the Hawthorn-leaf, and light Green; the Wood is brittle, and the Fruit oval, of the bigness of a small Horse-plum. At first it is Green, but when ripe, half red and half yellow, with a large Stone and little Pulp about it. It has a pleasing taste, but it is hard to meet with any of them ripe without Magots in them; this is the only Place I ever saw them at in the *South-seas*. In *Campeachy* Bay they grow in great plenty, and in *Jamaica* they fence their Grounds with them. They have also some Fowls, and no *Spaniards* live there except the Father or Priest, who takes care of these 2 and the Town in the Isle of *Mangera*, As they have little or no Money, so they pay their Tribute in Maiz to the Governour of St. *Michael's* Town, seated at the foot of St. *Michael's* Mount, and the Ghostly Father has the Tenths of all, which tho' it amounts to no great Matter here, and in other places where they are poor, yet in other Towns where the *Indians* are rich, they know very well how to feather their Nests; besides this Priest, we found but one here (the Secretary of the Town) who could speak and write

The Isles of Amapalla.

An observation concerning the Saints of America.

The Hog-plums.

1684 write *Spaniſh*, for their *Caſica*, or Magiſtrate, could do neither.

The Harbour in the Gulf of Amapalla. This Bay, or Gulf, has many other Iſlands, but uninhabited; one pretty large one we ſaw, belonging to a Monaſtery, where four or five *Indians* look'd after the Cattel that fed there in great numbers. This Gulf has 2 Channels, one betwixt the Cape *Caſwina* and *Mangera*, the other betwixt this laſt place and *Amapalla*.

The beſt Anchorage is on the E. ſide of *Amapalla*, oppoſite to the low Grounds, the reſt being high Lands. As you go in deeper you may ride on the N. E. ſide of *Amapalla*, cloſe to the Main; this the *Spaniards* call the Port of *Martin Lopez*. The Gulf extends a great way beyond the Iſle, but is not deep enough to bear Ships of burthen.

Captain *Davis* being ſent before with two Canoes into this Gulf to get ſome Priſoners, he came to *Mangera*, where finding a Path from the Creek, he followed it towards the Town. But the Inhabitants no ſooner had notice of his coming, but they run all into the Woods, leaving only the Prieſt behind them, who being taken with 2 Boys his Attendants, Captain *Davis* made them conduct him to the Iſle of *Amapalla*, where being landed, he march'd up to the beforementioned place, a Mile from the landing-place, on the top of the Hill. *They come into the Gulf.* The Inhabitants, who ſaw them advance, were ready to retire into the Woods; but the beforementioned Secretary, an Enemy to the *Spaniards*, having perſwaded them that they were Friends, who craved their aſſiſtance againſt their common Oppreſſors, they bid *Davis* and his Men welcome; after the firſt Salutations they marched towards the Church (the Prieſt brought along by Captain *Davis* at the head of them) their only place *Churches of the Indians places of Mirth.* of publick Meeting, whether for Conſultations, Diverſions or Paſtimes; where they keep their Vizards, Hautboys, Strumſtrums, (a kind of a Cittern) and other muſical Inſtuments; here they meet to make merry, eſpecially in the Night preceeding or next enſuing any Holy Day, where they dance, ſing and play with antick dreſſes and geſtures, tho' to ſpeak truth, their Muſick and mirth has ſomething very melancholy in it, ſuitable to the heavy yoke they grown under, I mean the *Spaniards*. But to return to Captain *Davis*, his intention was, that as ſoon as they were all got into the Church, to engage them into his aſſiſtance againſt the *Spaniards*, to accompliſh which, the Prieſt had promiſed his good Offices. But juſt as a few of the remaining *Indians* were entring the Church, one of Captain *Davis*'s Men puſh'd them forward, to haſten into the Church, which the *Indian* being frightned at, he ſet up his Heels, and the reſt taking the allarum followed as faſt as they could; ſo that Captain *Davis* and the Fryar being left alone in the Church, he ordered to fire at them, which being done, the Secretary was killed in the Fray, and ſo the whole project vaniſhed into Smoak by the fooliſhneſs of one inconſiderate fellow. 1684

A good project loſt by the folly of one perſon.

The ſame Afternoon, our Ships being entred the Gulf, betwixt Point *Caſwina* and the Iſle of *Mangera*, came to an Anchor on the E. ſide, near the Iſle of *Amapalla*. Captain *Davis* came aboard us with the Fryar, who told us, that ſince the Secretary was kill'd, they had no other way than to ſend for the *Caſica*; which being done by the Prieſt, he came attended by 6 other *Indians*, who did us conſiderable ſervice, in conducting us whither we had occaſion to go, eſpecially to fetch Beef, for which they were rewarded to their ſatisfaction. On this ſame Iſland of *Amapalla* a Company of *Engliſh* and *French* landed afterwards, and thence came to the Continent, and marched by Land to the Cape *River*, which has got its name from its diſcharging it ſelf into the North Seas near Cape *Gratia Dios*. At the ſource of this River they made Bark-logs (deſcribed hereafter) wherewith they paſſed into the North Seas. However they were not the firſt inventers of this Paſſage, ſomething of it having been diſcovered by ſome *Engliſh* thirty Years before, who went up this *Cape River* out of the North Seas in Canoes, to the ſame place where the *French* built their Bark-logs, and thence to an inland Town call'd *Segovia*. They performed this not without incredible difficulty and in no leſs than a Months time, by reaſon of the many Cataracts of this River, which oblig'd them frequently to hale their Canoes aſhoar, and drag them over Land, till they were paſſed theſe Water-falls. I have ſpoke with ſeveral that were in this Expedition, and if I miſtake not, Captain *Sharp* was one of them.

Some French & Engliſh go by Land hence to the N. Seas.

But to return to our Voyage. After we had Careen'd and provided our Ships with freſh Water, Captain *Davis* and *Eaton* broke off Partnerſhip, and the laſt left the Gulf the 2d of *September*.

Capt. Davis and Eaton part.

CHAP. VII.

A Deſcription of the Iſle of Plata; *of the Buildings and Soil of* Peru; *of the Bay, River and Town of* Guiaquil. *Their deſign upon that place miſcarries. The Coaſt betwixt Cape* Paſſao *and Cape St.* Franciſco *to* Panama. *The Inhabitants of the River of St.* Jago. *The Iſles of* Gallo *and* Gorgona, *and the Pearl Oyſters there. The Cape* Corientes *and* Garachina. *Several other Iſlands in theſe Seas. A Deſcription of the Bay of* Panama; *of old* Panama, *and the new City. The Gulf of St.* Michael, *and the Rivers of* Congos, Sambo, *and St.* Maria. *An account of the* Spaniſh *Fleet, and of an Engagement with the Privateers.*

The Author ſets ſail from the Gulf of Amapalla, 1684. THE 3d of *September* 1684, having ſent the Fryar on Shoar, we ſail'd with the Land Wind at W.N.W. out of the Gulf of *Amapalla*, thro' the Channel betwixt *Mangera* and the Iſle of *Amapalla*, directing our Courſe to the Coaſt of *Peru*. As the Turnadoes, with Thunder, Lightning and Rains, are very frequent on theſe Coaſts from *June* to *November*, ſo we had our ſhare of them, coming moſt from the S. E. but afterwards the Wind veering to the W. it held till we came in ſight of Cape St. *Franciſco*, where we met with fair Weather and a South Wind.

The Cape of St. Franciſco. This Cape being a high, full Point of Land, lies at 1 d. 20 m. N. Lat. and is covered with lofty Trees. As you paſs by it from the N. ſide, you may eaſily miſtake a ſmall low Point for the Cape; but ſoon after you paſs it, you will diſcover it with three triple Points. The Land near it is high, and the Mountains appear black; we plied along the Shoar to take the advantage, both of the Sea and Land Winds; the firſt from the S. as the Land-Winds do from the S. S. E. tho' ſometimes, when we come oppoſite to the Rivers Mouths, the Wind would turn to the S. E.

September 20, we came to an Anchor near the Iſle of *Plata*, at 16 Fathom, being now fallen in with the places whence I begun the account of this Voyage, after having compaſſed the whole Continent of the South *America*.

The Iſle of Plata. The Iſle of *Plata*, ſituated at 1 Deg. 10 Min. South Lat. is about 4 Miles in length, and one and a half in breath, of a pretty good hight, and encloſed with rocky Cliffs, except in one place on the E. ſide, where is the only place where a freſh Water Torrent falls down from the Rocks. The top is flat and plain, the Soil ſandy, yet it produces three or four ſorts of low and ſmall Trees, not known in *Europe*. Theſe Trees were much over-grown with Moſs and pretty good Graſs is to be found here in the beginning of the Year, but have no Land Animals to feed upon it; that vaſt number of Goats that uſed to be here formerly, being all deſtroyed now: However they have good ſtore of *Boobies* and *Men of War* Birds. *Whence it got its Name.* Some ſay the *Spaniards* have given it the name of *Plate* Iſland after Sir *Francis Drake* carried thither the *Cacafoga*, a rich Ship of theirs, laden with Plate. The place for anchorage is on the E. ſide, about the middle of the Iſle, cloſe to the Shoar, within two Cables length of the ſandy Bay, in 18 or 20 Fathom, of faſt ouzey Ground and very ſmooth Water; becauſe the S. E. point of the Iſle keeps off the force of the S. Winds which commonly blow here. In this ſandy Bay, oppoſite to the anchoring place, is good landing, this being the only place that leads you up into the

1684. the Isle. From the S.E. point comes out a small Shoal about a quarter of a Mile into the Sea, where when it flows, you see great rising in the Water; the Tide is strong, flowing to the S. and ebbing to the N. At the same Point are three small, but high Rocks, about a Cables length from the Isle; and such another, but much larger, at the N. E. end. All round the Island is deep Water, except in the before mentioned Road, and near the Shoal; it has great plenty of these small Sea Turtles mentioned in the second Book, and bears four or five Leagues W. S. W. from Cape St. *Laurenzo.*

The Point of Hellena. After a stay of one Day we continued our Voyage to Point St. *Hellena*, bearing S. from the Isle of *Plata*, at 2 Deg. 15 Min. S. Lat. It appears high and flat at a distance, like an Isle, being surrounded with low Grounds, and covered on the top with Thistles, but without Trees. As it jets out W. into the Sea, it makes a good large Bay to the N. side, a Mile within which, at the very Sea side stands a wretched Village called alSo St. *Hellena*, inhabited by *Indians*; but the Ground tho' low, being sandy and barren, they have neither Trees nor Grass, or any Fruit or Corn, except Water-Melons, which are very good here, and they are forced to fetch their fresh Water as far as the River *Colanche*, four Leagues thence, at the bottom of the same Bay: They live chiefly upon Fish, and are supplied with some Maiz from *Algatrane*. Near this Town, about five Paces above the High-water Mark, issues forth out of the Earth a certain bituminous Substance, called *Algatrane* by the *Spaniards*, which by long boiling becomes hard like Pitch, and used as such by the *Spaniards*. To the Leeward of the Point, directly opposite to the Village, is good anchorage, but on the W. side very deep Water.

A Village of the same Name.

A kind of Pitch issuing out of the Earth.

Some of our Men being sent in the Night time to take the Village, they landed in their Canoes in the Morning, and took some Prisoners, and a small Bark set on Fire by the Inhabitants, alledging, that they had done it by special order from the Vice-Roy. Our Men returning the same Evening, we return'd again to the Isle of *Plata*, where we anchor'd *September* 26; the same Evening we sent some of our Men to *Nanta*, an *Indian* Village, 2 or 3 Leagues W. of Cape St. *Lorenzo*, to get more Prisoners, in hopes of better Intelligence.

They return to the Isle of Plata.

The Town of Manta. *Manta* is a small Village inhabited by *Indians* on the Continent, 7 or 8 Leagues from the Isle of *Plata*. Its Buildings are but mean and scatter'd, but being built on an easie ascent, afford a very agreeable Prospect towards the Sea side. The Church here is very fine and adorned with good carved Work, because this place was formerly inhabited by *Spaniards*. As the Grounds about it are dry and sandy so they bear neither Grain orRoots, but only a few Shrubs. They are supplied with Provisions by Sea, this being the first place where the Ships bound from *Panama* to *Lima*, and other parts of *Peru* refresh themselves. They have an excellent Spring of fresh Water betwixt the Village and the Sea. Just opposite to the Village, one Mile and a half from the Shoar, is a Rock, which proves often dangerous, because it never appears above Water; but a Mile within this Rock is safe Anchorage, at 6, 8 or 10 Fathom hard and clear Sand. About a Mile to the W. from the anchoring place, a Shoal runs out a Mile into the Sea.

Behind the Town, directly S. of it, a good way into the Country, stands a very high Mountain, rising up into the Clouds like a Sugar-loaf, and therefore serves for a good Sea mark, there being no other like it on all that Coast. But more of this Coast in another place.

Monte Christo.

We return'd to our Men, who landed with Day-break one Mile and a half from the Village; but the Inhabitants being already stirring took the alarum, and so got all away except two old Women, who being taken Prisoners, declared that the Vice-roy upon News brought him, that a good number of the Enemy being come over the Isthmus of *Darien* into the *South-Seas*, he had ordered the burning of their Ships, the destroying of all the Goats in the Isle of *Plata*, and to keep no more Provisions than for their own present use.

With this News we returned the next Day to the Isle of *Plata*, where we found our Ship; here we staid unresolved what course to take till the second of *October*, when Captain *Swan* Commander of the *Cygnet* of *London*, a rich Ship, and design'd to Trade on that Coast, came to an Anchor in the same Road, but being disappointed in his hopes to Traffick thereabouts, his Men had forced him to take aboard a company of Privateers he met with at *Nicoya*, being the same we were told of at *Manta*; for they were come by Land under the command of Captain *Peter Harris*, Nephew to the same Captain *Harris* who was killed before *Panama*. Captain *Swan's* Ship being unfit for service, by reason of his Cargo, most of the Goods were sold upon Credit, and the rest thrown over-board, except the fine Commodities and some Iron for Ballast. Then Captain *Davis* and Capt. *Swan* join'd Company by consent, and *Harris* had a small Bark given him. Our Bark which had been sent 3 days before a Cruizing, brought in a Prize laden with Timber which they had taken on the Bay of *Guiaquil*; the Commander told us, that it was credibly reported at *Guiaquil*, that the Vice-roy was fitting out ten Frigots to chase us out of these Seas. This made us wish for Captain *Eaton*, and it was resolved to send our small Bark towards *Lima*, to invite him to join Company with us.

Capt. Swan arrives at the Isle of Plata.

1684.

This done, we fitted up another small Bark into a a Fireship, and the 20th of *October* set sail for the Isle of *Lobos*; the Wind being very slack we did not pass by the Point of St. *Hellena* till the 23d, and the 25th crossed the Bay of *Guiaquil*. The 30th we doubled the Cape of *Blanco* at 3 deg. 48 min. the worst Cape in the *South Seas* to double, because you can't here, as in most other places, stand off at Sea by reason of the strong Current, which setting N. W. will carry a Ship off more in 2 Hours, than she can get again in 5. Thus we were forced to keep near the Shoar, which is often performed not without great difficulty; for as there are no Land Winds here, so it generally blows hard at S. S. W. or S. by W. The Cape is surrounded with white Rocks on the Sea side, whence questionless it has got its Name; and the Country near it appears steep and rugged.

They continue their Voyage.

The second of *November* we lay about 6 Leagues off of *Payta*, whence we sent several Canoes man'd with 110 Men to attack the Town, a small Sea-port, belonging to the *Spaniards*, at 5 deg. 15 m. built on a sandy Rock near the Sea side, under a high Hill. It has 2 Churches, but only 75 or 80 Houses, low and meanly built; 'tis like most of the other Buildings all along the Coast of *Peru*. They build their Walls with a kind of Brick made of Earth and Straw, dry'd only in the Sun 3 Foot long and 2 broad, and one and a half thick. In some places they only lay Poles across covered with Mats, instead of Roofs; but sometimes they use Roofs. The reason why they build so meanly is, partly because they want Materials of good Stone and Timber, partly because it never Rains, which makes them only sollicitous to keep out the Sun; and these Walls, tho' never so slight and brittle, yet will hold as firm for a considerable time as they were at first, as being not shaken or mouldred by the Wind and Rains. The Timber, the better sort make use of in their Buildings is brought thither from other Places; their Walls as well as those of the Churches, are neatly whitened, both within and without, with very large Beams, Posts and Doors, all adorned with carved work; besides good Pictures brought thither from *Spain*, and rich Hangings of Tapestry or painted Callico's. But the Houses of *Payta* were not of that sort, tho' their Churches are both large and handsome. Close by the Sea is a small Fort, which with Muskets only commands the Harbour, as another on the top of a Hill commands both that and this Fort. They are obliged to fetch their fresh Water, as also their Fowl, Hogs, Plantains, and Maiz from *Colan*, a Town 2 Leagues N. N. E. from *Payta*, a fresh Water River, which disembogues into the Sea.

The Town of Payta.

The Buildings of Peru.

The Torrid or dry Tract of this Country, begins to the N. from Cape *Blanco* to *Coquimbo*, at 30 deg. S. Lat. where I never saw or heard of any Rain, nor of any green thing growing, neither in the Mountains or Vallies, except in some places water'd constantly with divers Rivers.

As those of *Colan* are much addicted to fishing, so they perform it in *Bark-logs*. These are composed of divers round Logs of Wood, in manner of a Rafter, but after a different manner, according to the use they are intended for, or the custom of the People that make them. Those intended for fishing are only 3 or 4 Logs of light Wood 8 Foot long, join'd to each other on the sides with wooden Pegs and Withes. The middlemost is always longer than the rest, especially at the forepart, which ends by degrees into a point, the better to cut the Waves. Those designed for the carrying of Merchandizes are made after the same manner and shape, of 20 or 30 great Trunks of Trees joined together, 30 or 40 Foot long. Upon these they fasten, with wooden Pins, another shorter row of Logs cross-wise; from this double

Bark-logs, how made.

Fishing Bark-logs.

Bark-logs for carriage

Bottom

1684 Bottom they raiſe a Raft of 10 Foot high, by the means of Poſts ſet upright, which are the ſupporters of 2 thick Trees laid a-croſs each other, juſt like our Wood-piles, but not ſo cloſe as in the bottom of the Float, but at the ends and ſides only, the innermoſt part being hollow. In this, at 4 Foot high from the Beam of the bottom they lay ſmall Poles cloſe together, which ſerves for a bottom of another Room, on the top whereof they make juſt ſuch another Floor. The firſt Story ſerves for a Cellar for Ballaſt and Water Casks or Jars, and the ſecond for the Sea-men, and what belongs to them. Above this ſecond Floor the Goods are ſtowed as high as they think fit, which ſeldom exceeds 10 Foot; ſome ſpace is left behind for the ſteers-man, and before for the Kitchen, eſpecially in long Voyages, becauſe they go ſometimes 500 or 600 Leagues. They *How they are manag-ed.* have a very large Rudder, and in the midſt of this Machine a Maſt with a large Sail, like our Weſt-Country Barges. As they can't go otherwiſe but before the Wind, ſo they are only fit for theſe Seas, where the Wind blows conſtantly one way, ſeldom varying above a Point or two in the whole Voyage betwixt *Lima* and *Panama*; if thereabouts they meet, as ſometimes it happens, with a N. Wind, they drive before it till it changes, having nothing elſe to do in the mean while but to avoid the ſhoar, for they will never ſink at Sea. Theſe laſt Bark-logs carry 60 or 70 Tuns of Wine, Oil, Flower, Sugar, *Quito* Cloth, Soap, dreſs'd Goat-skins, &c. They are manag'd by 3 or 4 Boats Men only, who after they come to *Panama*, ſell both the Goods and Veſſel there, becauſe they can't go back in them with the Trade-wind.

The beforementioned fiſhing *Bark-logs* (carrying not above 4 Tun each) are likewiſe furniſhed with Maſts and Sails, and are much eaſier managed than the large ones; theſe get out at Night with the Land-wind, and *East-India Bark-logs.* return in the Day time with the Sea-wind. Theſe ſmall Bark-logs are uſed in a great many places in the *Weſt-Indies*, and in ſome in the *Eaſt-Indies*, on the Coaſt of *Coromandel* (belonging to the laſt) they uſe only one, or ſometimes two Legs, made of a light Wood, without Sail or Rudder, manag'd by one ſingle Man, who with his Legs in the Water ſteers the Log with a Paddle.

Piura. The next Town of conſequence to *Payta* is *Piura*, a ſpacious place 40 Miles thence, ſeated in a Valley upon a River which exonerates it ſelf into the Bay of *The Bay of Chirapee.* Chirapee, at 7 deg. N. Lat. This Bay, tho' much nearer to *Piura* than *Payta*, yet is ſeldom ſailed by Ships of burthen, being full of Shoals; but inſtead *The Harbour of* thereof, ſail to *Payta*, one of the beſt Harbours on the *Payta.* Coaſt of *Peru*, being ſhelter'd at the S. W. end by a Point of Land which renders the Bay very ſmooth, and conſequently ſafe for anchorage from 6 to 20 Fathom in clear Sand. Moſt Ships bound either to the N. or S. touch at *Payta* for freſh Water, which is brought thither from *Colan* at a reaſonable Rate.

November 3, early in the Morning, our Men landed *Payta ta-ken.* 4 Mile S. of *Payta*, where they took ſome Priſoners that were ſet for a Watch, who told us, that the Governour of *Piura* was come with 100 Men to their aſſiſtance; notwithſtanding this our Men attacked the Fort on the Hill, and took it with little oppoſition, whereupon the Governour and Inhabitants quitting the Town, our People ſoon entered it, but found it empty of Money, Goods and Proviſions. The ſame Evening we came with our Ships to an Anchor not far from the Town, a Mile from the Shoar, at 10 Fathom Water, we ſtaid 6 Days in hopes of getting a Ranſom for the Town; but perceiving we were not likely to have any, it was laid in Aſhes.

At Night we ſet ſail hence with the Land-winds towards *Lobos*. The 14 Day we came in ſight of the Iſle of *Lobos de Terra*, bearing E. from us, and at 8 a Clock at Night came to an Anchor at the N. E. end of it, at 4 Fathom Water. The Iſle of *Lobos de la Terra* is of an indifferent hight, and at a diſtance appears *The Iſle of* altogether like the Iſle of *Lobos de la Mar*; we anchor'd Lobos de at the N. E. end of it, in 4 Fathom Water. It has at la Mar. the N. end a Rock a quarter of a Mile from the Shoar, and betwixt it a Channel of 7 Fathom Water. In the afternoon we ſail'd with a S. E. Wind to *Lobos de la Mar*, where we arrived *May* 19. The 26th in the Evening we diſcovered a Bark at a diſtance, which (as we were informed) was ſent to ſee whether we were in theſe Seas; but we keeping cloſe under the Shoar, *The Bay of* remained there undiſcovered. The 29th in the Morn-Guiaquil. ing we ſet ſail for the Bay of *Guiaquil*, ſituate betwixt Cape *Blanco* to the S. and Point *Chandy* to the N. 25 Leagues from Cape *Blanco*; in the bottom of this Bay lies a ſmall Iſle called St. *Clara*, extending E. and W. having many Shoals to the N. which makes the Ships bound for the River of *Guiaquil* to paſs on the S. ſide of it. The *Spaniards* ſay there lies a very rich Wreck on the N. ſide, but that there is very hard coming at it, by reaſon of the great multitude of Cat-fiſhes, a *The Cat-fiſh* Fiſh not unlike a Whiting, but with three Fins, one on the back, and one on each ſide, which have each a Bone, wherewith if they ſtrike into the Fleſh, it proves frequently mortal. They are to be ſeen all along the *American* Coaſts, and likewiſe in the *Eaſt-Indies*. Their Fleſh is both ſweet and wholſome.

From the Iſles of St. *Clara* to *Puna Arena*, i. e. the *Sandy Point*, being the Weſternmoſt Point of the Iſles of *Puna*, is 7 Leagues E. & N. E. Here Ships bound for *Guiaquil* take in their Pilots, which live in a Town of the ſaid Iſle, bearing the ſame Name, on the S. ſide 7 Leagues from Point *Arena*. The Iſle of *Puna* it ſelf *The Iſles of* is low, ſtretching 14 Leagues E. and W. and 5 Leag. Puna. broad. It has a ſtrong Tide round the Shoar, which is full of ſmall Creeks and Rivers. Near this Town is a ſmall Point, where the Inhabitants are obliged to keep a conſtant watch. The inland part of the Iſle is good Paſture Ground, intermixed with ſome Wood-lands, producing divers unknown Trees, and among the reſt abundance of *Palmetos*, a Tree about the *The Palme-to Tree.* thickneſs of an ordinary Aſh, and 30 Foot high, with a ſtrait Trunk without Branches or Leaf, except at the very top, where ſpreading into ſmall Branches of 3 or 4 Foot long, each of them produces at the extremity one ſingle Leaf, of the breadth of a large Fan, which at firſt ſprouts and ſpreads like a Fan pleated together; but by degrees opens and ſpreads like a Fan unfolded. The Houſes of the Town of *Puna* are built on Poſts, 10 or 12 Foot high, into which they go up by Ladders, and are Thatch'd with Palmeto Leaves; the like I have ſeen among the *Malayans* in the *Eaſt-Indies*. The beſt place for anchorage is directly oppoſite to the Town, within a Cable's length from the Shoar, at 5 Fathom Water.

From *Puna* to *Guiaquil* is 7 Leagues, and 1 League to the entrance of the River *Guiaquil*, which is 2 Mile *The River* over, and afterwards runs up into the Country with a *of* Guia-pretty ſtrait Channel; the Grounds on both ſides marſhy quil. and full of red Mangrove-trees. About 4 Miles on this ſide of the Town of *Guiaquil* the River is divided by a ſmall low Iſland into 2 Channels; that to the S. W. is the broadeſt, tho' the other is as deep. From the upper end of this Iſle to the Town is near a League, and the River thereabouts of the ſame breadth, where Ships of great Burthen may ride with ſafety, eſpecially towards that ſide where the Town ſtands.

It is ſeated cloſe by the River, partly on an aſcent, *The Town* and partly on the Foot of a ſmall Hill, with a great de- *of* Guia-ſcent towards the River ſide. It is defended by 2 Forts quil. erected on the low Grounds, and another on the Hill, being one of the beſt Sea-ports belonging to the *Spaniards* in the *South Sea*, under the juriſdiction of a Governour, and beautify'd with divers fine Churches, and other good Buildings. They export Cocoes, Hides, Tallow, Sarſaparilla, Drugs, and woollen Cloath, called *Quito* Cloth.

The Coco grows on both ſides of the River above the Town, having a ſmaller Nut than thoſe of *Campeachy*. The Sarſaparilla delights in watery places near the River ſide, and the *Quito* Cloth is made in an inland Town called *Quito*; it is coarſe and therefore worn only by the Vulgar ſort all over the Kingdom of *Peru*. As the Goods exported or imported from and to *Quito*, paſs to and by *Guiaquil*.

Quito is a populous Place, ſeated in the heart of the *The Town* Country, inhabited by ſome *Spaniards*, but moſt *Indians*, *of* Quito. under the *Spaniſh* Juriſdiction, being encloſed with a ridge of high Mountains, which abound in Gold, the Rivers ariſing among them carry abundance of Gold Duſt along with them into the lower Grounds, eſpecially after violent Rains (wherewith theſe parts are much troubled) and is afterwards cleanſed and waſhed from the Sand; for the manner whereof I refer my ſelf to Mr. *Wafer's* Treatiſe. *Quito* is reckon'd the richeſt place for Gold in all *Peru*, but unwholſome, the Inhabitants being frequently ſubject to Fevers, Head-ach, Griping in the Guts, and Fluxes; but *Guiaquil* is much more wholſome.

Having form'd a deſign again the Town of *Guiaquil*, *They form* we left our Ships at Cape *Blanco*, and ſteered with a *a deſign* Bark and ſome Canoes to the Iſle of St. *Clara*, in the *on Guia-*Bay of *Guiaquil*, and thence in 2 Canoes to Point *Arena*, *quil.* where we took the next Day ſome of the Fiſhermen of *Puna*, and afterwards their Watch, together with the whole

1685. whole Town and its Inhabitants. The next Ebb they took a Bark loaden with *Quito* Cloth coming from *Guiaquil*, the Master whereof told us, that there were three Barks full of Negroes coming with the next Tide from *Guiaquil*; we lying near the Town of *Puna*, we embarked all our Men in Canoes, leaving only 5 Men aboard the Bark, with orders not to fire at any thing till next Morning at 8 a Clock, by which time we supposed we should have taken the Town. We had not rowed above two Miles, but we met with, and took one of the Barks laden with Negroes; the Master whereof having told us, that the other 2 would not come out till the next Tide, we rowed forward; but our Canoes being heavily laden, it was break of Day before we came within 2 Leagues of the Town; there being not above an Hours Flood now, we absconded all Day in an adjacent Creek, and at the same time sent one of our Canoes to our Bark left near *Puna*, not to fire till the next Day, but to no purpose, for the before mentioned 2 Barks with Negroes, being come out of the Harbour, with the Evening Tide, passed by without being seen or heard by us, and falling down with the Ebb towards *Puna*, our Bark seeing them full of Men, fired 3 Guns at them, before our Canoe could bring them our last Orders; but we took the Masters of both the Barks as they were making their escape ashoar.

Mistarry by a Mistake.

The firing of these 3 Guns put us all into a great Consternation, as not questioning but that thereby the Townsmen had taken the Allarum; and therefore some were for advancing to the Town immediately, others for returning to our Ships. But as the Ebb Tide hindred us from going upward, so Captain *Davis* with 50 of his Men resolved to march by Land to the place; the rest judging it impracticable remained in the Creek to see the issue of the enterprize. After 4 Hours Captain *Davis* and his Men, having been almost choaked in the Marshes among the Mangrove Woods, returned without having been able to advance far, on their way to the Town. It was then resolved to row up in sight of the Town, and if we found our selves discovered, to retire without attempting it; so rowing thro' the N. E. Channel, we got in the Night in sight of the Town, when at the discharge of a Musquet, we saw on a sudden the whole Town full of Lights, whereas there was but one seen before. This appeared to the most an infallible sign that we were discovered; but as some alledg'd, that these Lights were used by the *Spaniards* in the Nights before Holidays (the next Day being really such) we upbraided Captain *Swan* and his Men with Cowardice, we landed in a place 2 Miles on this side of the Town; which being all over-run with Woods, we were fain to expect Day-light. We had 2 *Indian* Guides, one who was run away from *Guiaquil*, the other a Prisoner we had taken 3 Days before, this last being led by a Cord by one of Captain *Davis*'s Men who seemed one of the most forward in the Enterprize, but now, perhaps, beginning to repent his rashness, cut the Rope wherewith the Guide was ty'd (as he confest afterwards) and so let him make his escape into the Town; when he judged him to be out of danger of being retaken, he cry'd out that some body had cut the Rope; so that after we had searched in vain for our Guides, it was unanimously resolv'd to desist. However, about break of Day we rowed up into the middle of the River, where we lay still about half an Hour, without being in the least molested from the Town; tho' we landed on the opposite bank to a Beef Enclosure, and killed a Cow.

They return on board.

We returned the 9th to *Puna*, and in our way seized upon the 3 before mention'd Barks, laden with 1000 lusty Negroes; out of them we kept only about 60, and left the rest, with the Barks, behind; whereas if we had carried them all to St. *Maria* (not long before taken and destroy'd by Capt. *Harris*) on the Isthmus of *Darien*, we might with their assistance have work'd the Gold Mines on that side, and by erecting a Fort or two, at the entrance of the River of St. *Maria*, and with the assistance of the Natives, our Friends, and some thousands of *English* and *French* Privateers from all parts of the *West-Indies*, have not only maintained our selves there against all the power of *Spain*, but also extended our Conquests to the Coast and Gold Mines of *Quito*.

Miss great opportunity

1684. We set sail again the 13th, and arrived at the Isle of *Plata* the 16th, where after we had provided our selves with fresh Water on the Continent, we parted our Cloth, and resolved unanimously to direct our Course to *la Velia*, a Town in the Bay of *Panama*; accordingly we set sail *December* 23d, with a brisk S. S. W. towards the Bay of *Panama*; the next Morning we passed in sight of Cape *Passao*, 0 deg. 8 min. S. of the Line, being a round Point, but very high, divided in the middle, bare towards the Sea, but covered with fruit Trees to the Land side. The Land hilly and woody. Betwixt this and Cape St. *Francisco*, you see abundance of small Points, which enclose so many sandy Creeks full of Trees of divers sorts. As our design was to look for Canoes in some River or other unfrequented by the *Spaniards*, so our *Indian* Pilots were but of little use to us; however, as we were indifferent for the rest, what River we came to, so we endeavoured to make the River of St. *Jago*, by reason of its nearness to the Isle of *Gallo* (a place abounding in Gold) where there was safe anchorage for our Ships. We passed by Cape St. *Francisco*, whence to the N. the Sea side is full of Trees of a vast hight and thickness; from this Cape the Land runs more Easterly into the Bay of *Panama*, this Cape being its Boundary to the S. as the Isles of *Cobaya* or *Quibo*, are to the N. Betwixt this Cape and the Isle of *Gallo*, are several large Rivers, but we passed them all to go to St. *Jago*, a large Navigable River 2 deg. N. of the Line; about 7 Leagues up in the Country it divides it self into 2 Branches, which enclose an Isle 4 Leagues in Circumference. The broadest is the S. W. Channel; they are both very deep, but the narrowest has sandy Banks at its Entrance, so that at a low Ebb a Canoe can't pass over them. Beyond the Isle the River is a League broad, the Channel strait, with a swift Current; it flows 3 Leagues up the River, but to what hight I am not able to tell. It runs thro' a very rich Soil, producing all sorts of the tallest Trees usually found in this Climate, but especially *red* and *white Cotton* Trees, and Cabbage Trees of the largest kind.

1685. 15 5.

Cape St. Francisco.

The River of St. Jago.

The white Cotton Tree grows not unlike an Oak, but much taller and bigger; the Trunk strait, without any Branches to the top, where it sends forth strong Branches; the Bark is very good and smooth, the Leaves of a bigness of a Plum-tree Leaf, dark green, oval, smooth and jagged at the edges. They are not always biggest near the Roots, but in the middle of the Trunk. The Cotton they bear is called Silk Cotton, which falls in *November* and *December* upon the Ground; but not not so substantial as that of the Cotton Shrub, but rather like a Down of Thistles; they don't think it worth their while to gather it in the *West-Indies*, but in the *East-Indies* they put it into their Pillows. In *April* the old Leaves fall off, which in a Weeks time are supply'd by fresh ones.

The white Cotton-tree.

Silk-cotton.

The red Cotton-Tree is somewhat less, but for the rest altogether like the other, except that it produces no Cotton, and its Wood is something hard, tho' both are somewhat spungy. They are found in the fat Grounds, both in the *East* and *West-Indies*.

Red Cotton-tree.

The Cabbage-tree is the tallest (as the preceding are the biggest) in these Woods, some being above 120 Foot high. It is likewise without Boughs or Branches, except on the top, where it sends forth its Branches of the thickness of a Man's Arm, and 12 or 14 Foot long; 2 Foot from the Stem comes forth small long Leaves of an Inch broad, so thick and regularly on both sides, that they cover the whole Branch. In the midst of these high Branches shoots forth the Cabbage it self, which when taken out of the outward Leaves, if of a Foot in length, and of the thickness of the small of a Man's Leg, being white like Milk, sweet and wholesome. Betwixt the Cabbages and the large Branches sprout forth other small Twigs 2 Foot long, very close together, at the extremities of which grow hard and round Berries, of the bigness of a large Cherry, which once a Year fall from the Trees, and are excellent food for the Hogs. The Trunk has Rings half a Foot asunder; the Bark is thin and brittle, the Wood hard and black, and the Pith white. As the Tree dies after its head is gone, so they cut them down before they gather the Fruit.

Cabbage-tree.

Indian-Cabbage.

As the Coast and Country of *Lima* is afflicted with continual dry weather, so this part of *Peru* is seldom without Rains, which perhaps is one reason why they have made but small Discoveries on this Coast; add to this, that when they go from *Panama* to *Lima* they don't pass along the Coast, but sail up to the W. as far as the *Cobaya* Isles for the W. Winds, and thence stand over to the Cape St. *Francisco*. In their return they Coast it, but their Ships being then loaden, are not fit to enter the Rivers, which as well as the Sea side are covered with Woods and Bushes, and therefore would serve for fit places for the Natives to lye in ambush. These *Indians* have some Plantations of Maiz and Plantains, as also some Fowls and Hogs.

This part of Peru subject to continual Rains.

1685. We enter'd the River of St. *Jago* with four Canoes *December* 27, by the leſſer Branches, and met with no Inhabitants, till at 6 Leagues within its Mouth, where we diſcovered two ſmall Huts thatch'd with Palmeto-leaves, and at the ſame time the *Indians* with their Families, and Houſhold Goods, paddling againſt the Stream much faſter than we could row, becauſe they kept near the Banks. On the oppoſite ſide, to the W. we ſaw a League off many other Huts; but the Current being very rapid, we did not care to venture croſs it. In the beforemention'd two Huts, on the E. ſide, we found nothing but a few Plantains, Fowls, and one Hog, which ſeem'd to be of the *European* kind, ſuch as the *Spaniards* brought formerly into *America*, but eſpecially to *Jamaica*, *Hiſpaniola* and *Cuba*, where they feed in the Woods (being marked beforehand) in the Day time, and at Night are called and kept in Pens by the ſounding of a Conch-ſhell: On the Continent of *America* they don't turn their Hogs into the Woods.

We enter the River of St. Jago.

We returned the next Morning to the Rivers mouth, with an intention to ſail to the Iſle of *Gallo*, whither we had order'd our Ships to meet us. This Iſle is but ſmall, and without Inhabitants, ſeated at 3 deg. N. Lat. in a ſpacious Bay, three Leagues from the mouth of the River *Tomaco*, and four Leagues and a half from an *Indian* Village of the ſame Name. It is indifferently high, and well ſtor'd with Timber Trees; at the N. End is a good ſandy Bay, near which is a fine Spring of freſh Water, and againſt the Bay is good Anchorage at 6 or 7 Fathom Water; there is but one Channel to approach the Iſle at 4 Fathom Water, but you muſt go in with the Flood and come out with the Ebb.

The Iſle of Gallo.

The River of *Tomaco*, ſuppos'd to have its riſe among the rich Mountains of *Quito*, has borrowed its Name from an adjacent Village of the ſame name; its Banks are well Peopled with *Indians* and ſome *Spaniards*, who Traffick for Gold with them. It's ſo ſhallow at the entrance that only Barks can enter it.

The River of Tomaco.

The Town of *Tomaco* is a ſmall Place, ſeated near the mouth of the River, for the Entertainment of the *Spaniards*, who Traffick in thoſe Parts. From this place to the Branch of the River of St. *Jago*, where we then were at Anchor, is 5 Leagues. As the Land here is low and full of Creeks, we left the River *December* 21, and croſſed theſe ſmall Bays in our Canoes; in our way we ſaw an *Indian* Houſe, whence we took the Maſter and whole Family, and ſo rowed forward, and came at 12 a Clock at Night at *Tomaco*; here we ſeiz'd upon all the Inhabitants, and among the reſt one *Don Diego de Pimit*, a *Spaniſh* Knight, whoſe Ship was not far off at Anchor to lade Timber, ſo we took her, and found 13 Jars of good Wine aboard her, but no other lading. An *Indian* Canoe came aboard us with 3 of the Natives, who were ſtrait and well limb'd, but of low ſtature, with black Hair, long Viſages, and ſmall Noſes and Eyes, and of a dark Complexion. The 31ſt ſeveral of our Men, who had been 7 or 8 Leagues up the River, returned in their Canoe, and brought along with them ſome Ounces of Gold they had found in a *Spaniſh* Houſe, but the People were fled.

The Town of Tomaco.

The Indians near the River Tomaco.

1685. *January* 1, as we were going in our Canoes from *Tomaco* towards *Gallo*, we took a Pacquet of Letters in a *Spaniſh* Boat ſent from *Panama* to *Lima*, whereby we underſtood, that the Preſident of *Panama* wrote to haſten the departure of the Plate-Fleet thither from *Lima*, the Armada from *Spain* being come to *Porto-Bello*. This News made us ſoon alter our Reſolution of going to *Lavelia*, inſtead whereof, it was reſolved to rendezvouze among the *King* or *Pearl Iſles*, not far diſtant from *Panama*, and by which, all Ships bound to *Panama* from the Coaſt of *Lima* muſt of neceſſity paſs. Accordingly we ſet ſail the 7th; the 8th we took a Ship of 90 Tun loaden with Flower, and continued our Voyage with a gentle S. Wind towards *Gorgonia*, an Iſle 25 Leagues diſtant from that of *Gallo*, where we anchored the 9th, at the W. ſide of it, in 38 Fathoms clean Ground, two Cables length from the Shoar, in a ſandy Bay, the Land againſt it being low. This Iſle is ſeated at 3 deg. N. Lat. and is remarkable for two high riſings, call'd the *Saddles*; its length is 2 Leagues and its breadth 1 League, about 4 Leagues from the Continent. At the W. end is another ſmall Iſle. *Gorgonia* is full of large Trees, and watered by many Rivulets. It has no other Animals but Monkies, Conies and Snakes; it is mighty ſubject to Rains, and the only difference obſervable in the Seaſons is, That in the Summer the Rains are more moderate. The Sea round it is ſo deep, that there is no anchorage, except at the W. end, where the Tide riſes 8 Foot: Muſcles and Perewinckles are here in great plenty: the Monkies open the Shells at low Water. 1684.

They take a Pacquet of Letters of conſequence

The Iſle of Gorgonia.

Here are alſo abundance of Pearl-Oyſters; theſe are found 4, 5 or 6 Fathom under Water, to the looſe Rocks, by Beards or ſmall Roots, like the Muſcles. They are like our Oyſters, but ſomething ſharter and thinner; the Fleſh is ſlimy, and not to be eaten, unleſs dry'd beforehand and boil'd; ſome have 20 or 30 Seed Pearls, others one or two pretty large ones, lying at the head of the Oyſters, betwixt the Fiſh and the Shell, but the inſide of the Pearl carries a brighter luſtre than the Pearls themſelves. *Pearl Oyſters.*

The 13th we purſued our Voyage to the *King's-Iſle*, being now 2 Men of War and 2 Tenders, 1 Fireſhip and the Prize; we ſail'd forward with the common Trade Wind at S. along low Land on the Continent, near the Sea ſide, but Mountainous deeper into the Country. The 16th we paſs'd by Cape *Corientes*, at 5 deg. 10 min. Lat. being a high Point with four ſmall Hillocks on the top; the Current did then run ſtrong to the N. The 21ſt we came in ſight of Point *Garachina*, at 7 deg. 20 min. N. Lat. the Land is high Rocks, without Trees, near the Sea ſide; within the Point is plenty of Oyſters and Muſcles. *The Cape of Corientes.* *Point Garachina.*

About 12 Leagues from this Point are, the *King's*, or *Pearl-Iſles*, betwixt theſe and the beforemention'd Point of *Garachina*, is a ſmall flat, barren Iſle, call'd *Gallera*, near which we came to an Anchor for that time. The *King's*, or *Pearl-Iſles*, are a good number of low woody Iſlands, 7 Leagues from the Continent, and 12 Leagues from *Panama*, and 14 Leagues in length N. N. W. by N. and S. E. by S. In the Maps they are call'd the *Pearl-Iſles*, tho' I never could ſee one Pearl Oyſter, or any thing like it, near them. The Northernmoſt of theſe is called *Pachea*, or *Pachequa*, a ſmall Iſle 11 or 12 Leagues from *Panama*; the Southernmoſt's name is St. *Paul's*, the reſt, tho' bigger, have no particular Names. Some of theſe are planted with Plantains, Bananoes and Rice, by the Negroes belonging to thoſe of *Panama*. The Channel betwixt them and the Continent is 7 or 8 Leagues broad, of a moderate depth, and has good anchoring all along. The Iſles, tho' lying cloſe together, yet have their Channels fit for Boats. At the S. end of St. *Paul's* Iſle is a convenient Careening place, in a good deep Channel, encloſed by the Land; you muſt enter it on the N. ſide where the Tide riſes 10 foot perpendicular. The 25th we brought our Ships in with a ſpring Tide, and after having clean'd our Barks firſt, we ſent them the 27th to Cruize towards *Panama*; they brought us the fourth Day after a Prize coming from *Lavelia* with Maiz or *Indian* Corn, ſalted Beef and Fowls. *Lavelia* is a large Town, ſeated on the Bank of a River, on the N. ſide of the Bay of *Panama*, 7 Leagues from the Sea ſide, as *Neuta* is another Town, ſeated in a Plain near another Branch of the ſame River; theſe 2 places ſupply *Panama* with Hogs, Fowls, Beef and Maiz. In the Harbour where we careen'd we found abundance of Oyſters, Muſcles, Limpits and Clams; theſe laſt are Oyſters that ſtick ſo cloſe to the Rocks that you muſt open them where they grow, if you will eat the Meat; we alſo met with ſome Pidgeons and Turtle-doves. *The King's Iſles.* *Lavelia.* *Neuta.* *Clams.*

Our Ships being well Careen'd by the 14th of *Feb.* and provided with Fuel and Water, we ſailed out from among the Iſles the 18th, and anchored in the great Channel betwixt the Iſles and the Continent, at 25 Fathom Water, ſoft ouzy Ground, and the next Day Cruized in the ſame Channel towards *Panama*, whereabouts the Shoar appears very beautiful, with variety of ſmall Woods and Hills; beſides that, a League from the Continent, you ſee divers ſmall Iſles, ſcatter'd parly with, partly without Trees, and the *King's-Iſles* on the other ſide of the Channel, afford a very fair Proſpect, according to their various ſhapes and ſituations. The 16th we anchored within a League of the Iſle of *Pachoque*, in 17 Fathom Water, and the 18th ſteer'd our Courſe with a N. N. E. Wind directly towards *Panama*, where we anchored directly oppoſite to old *Panama*, once a place of Note in theſe Parts, but the greateſt part thereof being laid in Aſhes in 1673, by Sir *Henry Morgan*; it was never rebuilt ſince. 1685. *The Coaſts about Panama.* *Old Panama.*

About 4 Leagues from the Ruins of old *Panama*, near the Sea ſide, ſtands *New Panama*, a very handſome City, in a ſpacious Bay of the ſame name, into which diſembogue many long Navigable Rivers, ſome whereof are not without Gold; beſides that, it is beautify'd with many pleaſant Iſles, the Country about it being of a delightful Proſpect to the Sea, by reaſon of its varieties of adjacent Hills, Vallies, Groves and Plains. The Houſes are for the moſt part of Brick, and pretty lofty. *New Panama.* *The Bay of Panama.*

lofty, especially the President's, the Churches, Monasteries and other Publick Structures, which make the best Show I ever saw in the *West-Indies*. It is encompassed with a high Wall of Stone, on which are mounted a good number of great Guns, which formerly, before they were acquainted with the Privateers in those Parts, were only planted to the Land-side, but now also to the Sea. This City has a vast Traffick, as being the Staple for all exported and imported Goods, to and from all Parts of *Peru* and *Chili*; besides that, once every three Years, when the *Spanish* Armada comes to *Porto Bello*, the Plate Fleet comes hither with the King's Plate, besides what belongs to the Merchants, whence it is carried upon Mules by Land to *Porto Bello*; at that time every thing is excessive dear at this place.

An Account of the Spanish Armada.

The *Spanish* Armada which comes every three Years into the *West-Indies*, arrives first of all at *Carthagena*, whence they dispatch immediately, one Express by Land to *Lima*, and another with two Packets of Letters by Sea, one for the Vice-Roy of *Lima*, the other for the Vice-Roy of *Mexico*. I can't absolutely tell which way the Packet for *Mexico* goes after its Arrival at *Porto Bello*, whether by Sea, or Land, but I suppose by Sea, to *La Vera Cruz*; but that for *Lima*, goes by Land to *Panama*, and so by Sea to *Lima*. Upon this occasion, I can't but tell the Reader, that some time before my first going into the South Seas, being then aboard Captain *Coxon*'s Ship in Company of 3 or 4 other Privateers, we took the Packets bound from *Carthagena* to *Porto Bello* 4 Leagues from this last place; in these we found many Letters from the Merchants of *Spain*, directed to their Correspondents in these Ports, intimating, that the same Year a certain Prophecy being published in *Spain*, *That some* English *Privateers would open themselves a way into the South Seas*, they desired them to be upon their Guard. As by this Door we rightly understood the Passage by Land over the Isthmus of *Darien*, and those *Indians* had sought our assistance of late against the *Spaniards*, so this gave us the first Encouragement to venture upon that Enterprize, and as we knew the *Spaniards* to be a bigotted Generation, we sent most of the Letters (seal'd up again) to *Porto Bello*, to augment their fear.

The occasion of the Privateers venturing into the South Sea.

How they contracted a Friendship with the Indians of Darien.

The first occasion of our contracting a Friendship with the *Indians* on the Isthmus of *Darien* happened thus: About 15 Years before Captain *Wright* took a young *Indian* Lad among the *Samballo* Isles, unto whom he gave the Name of *John Gratt*, and bestowed him afterwards upon some *Moskitoes*, who carried him to their Country, where he married, learnt their Language, and staid among them till 6 or 8 Months before our taking the said Packet. Captain *Wright* took another *Indian* Boy 12 Years old, the Son of a Man of note among them, whom he carried to the Country of the *Moskitoes* to be educated by them. Here meeting with *John Gratt*, he persuaded the Captain to restore the Boy to his Friends, and thereby to entertain a Friendship with them; but the Captain alledging the fierceness of those Nations, *Gratt* offered his Service to bring the matter about: Accordingly being set a-shoar in his *Indian* Habit, he call'd out to them in his own Tongue, and they acknowledging him for their Countryman, he proposed to them a strict Alliance with the *English*, alledging, that they were a good sort of People and declared Enemies of the *Spaniards*, telling also the Father of the Boy, that if he would go aboard the Vessel he shewed them, being at Anchor, he might have his Son again; whereupon about 30 of them went aboard Captain *Wright* with Refreshments, and being kindly entertained there, they returned with the Boy and Captain *Wright* a-shoar, and entred into a strict Confederacy against the *Spaniards*, and thereby opened the way by Land into the South Seas, the Discovery whereof, is in a great measure owing to the before-mentioned Letters, and the taking of *John Gratt*.

The Progress of the Spanish Armada in the West-Indies.

But it is time to return to the *Spanish* Armada at *Carthagena*; the same, after a stay of sixty Days in this Port sails thence to *Porto Bello*, where it tarries only thirty Days, and takes in the King's Treasure brought thither from *Panama*, which is said to amount to 24000000 Pieces of Eight, besides the Merchant's Plate and Goods. When the Merchants have a mind to steal the Custom of the Plate, they pack it up among Merchandizes and send it to *Vera Cruz* upon the River *Chagre*, where they fall down the River and so go further by Sea to *Porto Bello*. From this Harbour they weigh'd Anchor precisely on the 20th. Day to the River's Mouth, where the Admiral will sometimes stay a Week longer to oblige the Merchants. From *Porto Bello* the Armada returns to *Carthagena*, where it meets with the King's Money brought thither out of the Country, as also with a large *Spanish* Galleon (call'd by them a *Patache*) which upon the first Arrival of the Armada at *Carthagena* from *Spain*, goes along the Coast to gather the King's Tribute; after a set time the Armada returns from *Carthagena* by the way of the *Havana* in the Isle of *Cuba*, where meeting with the Flota, or a small Squadron of Ships, come thither from *Vera Cruz* with the richest of the City and Country of *Mexico*, and what is brought thither by the yearly Passage Ship from the *Philippine* Isles, they all joyn and so set Sail for *Spain* thro' the Gulph of *Florida*.

The Flota.

Porto Bello being an unhealthy Place, the Merchants of *Lima* make as short a stay there as possibly they can; but *Panama* is seated in a much better Air, as enjoying the Benefit of the Sea-wind from ten or eleven of the Clock in the Morning till eight or nine of the Clock at Night, and the Land-wind from nine till the Morning; besides that, *Panama* being encompass'd on the Land side with an open champain Country, it is seldom troubled with Fogs, nor is the wet Season which holds from *May* till *November* so excessive at *Panama* as on either side of the Bay, tho' it is severe enough in the Months of *June*, *July* and *August*, which is the reason that the Merchants of *Peru* who are used to a constant serene Air, without Wet or Fogs, cut off their Hair to preserve them from Fevers whilst they were obliged to stay here.

The healthfulness situation of Panama.

The 20th. We anchored within a League of three little rocky Isles call'd the *Perico* Islands, and the 21st. took another Prize loaden with Hogs, Beef, Fowl and Salt from *Soveria*; the 24th. steer'd over to the Isle of *Tabago* in the same Bay, 6 Leagues S. off *Panama*; its Length is 3 Miles and its Breadth 2; it is very rocky and steep, except on the North side, where it has an easie Descent; and as the Soil is black and good up to the middle of the Mountains they produce abundance of Fruit, as Plantains, Bananoes, and near the Sea side Cocoe and Mammet Trees. These last are large and strait, without Knots, without Boughs or Bunches, and 60 or 70 Foot high; at the tops sprout forth some small Branches thick and close together: The Fruit is of the bigness of a large Quince, round and covered with a grey Rind, which before it is ripe is brittle, but when come to maturity turns yellow and will peel with ease. The ripe Fruit is of the same Colour like a Carrot, smells and tastes well, and has two rough flat Stones in the middle, each of the bigness of a good Almond. The S. W. side is covered with Trees and Fire-wood, but the North side has a very fine fresh-water Spring, which falls from the Mountains into the Sea: Near it formerly stood a pretty Town with a fair Church, but the greatest part has been destroyed by the Privateers; opposite to the Town, a Mile from the Shoar is good Anchoring at 16 or 18 Fathoms Water, soft ouzy ground; at the N. W. end lies a small Isle call'd *Tobagilla*, with a Channel betwixt both, and on the N. E. side of *Tobago* another small one without a Name.

The Isle of Tobago.

The Mammet Trees and Fruit.

Tobagilla.

Whilst we were at an Anchor near *Tobago*, we were in great danger of having been trapan'd by a pretended Merchant of *Panama*, who under pretence of trading privately with us, was to bring his Bark loaden with Merchandizes in the Night to the South of the *Perico* Isles, where we were then at Anchor according to his appointment, which was intended for our destruction; for instead of a Bark he advanc'd with a Fireship pretty near us, haling us with the Water-word; thereupon some of our Men more suspicious than the rest, bid her come to an Anchor, which she not doing they fired at her, which so terrified the Men that they got into their Canoes after they had set her on fire, and we were forced to cut our Cables to escape the danger: At the same time Captain *Swan* who lay a Mile from us at Anchor, saw a small Flota with only one Man upon it, driving towards his Ship, but soon after disappear'd; he supposed this to have been a Machine made up with combustible matter to fasten to his Rudder (as it happen'd to Captain *Sharp* near *Coquimbo*) but that the Fellow thinking himself discovered, had not Courage enough to go forward in the Enterprize, but Captain *Swan* thought also fit to cut his Cables and to keep under Sail all the Night.

Davis's and Swan's Ships likely to be burnt by Treachery.

This Fireship was framed and managed by one Captain *Bond*, who formerly run away from us to the *Spaniards*, without whose assistance they could not have fitted her out, it being almost past belief how grosly ignorant the *Spaniards*, especially in the South Seas, are in Sea Affairs; nay, what is worse, you seldom see above one *Spaniard* (perhaps the Commander) in one

Ignorance of the Spaniards in the West-Indies in Sea Affairs.

1685. of their Ships in the *West-Indies*, the rest being *Indians*.

In the Morning whilst we were busie in recovering our Anchors, we discovered a whole Fleet of Canoes filled with Men, pass betwixt *Tabago* and the other Isle, who proved *English* and *French* Privateers, lately come out of the North Sea over the Isthmus of *Darien*; there were of them 280 in all, 200 *French*, and 80 *English*; those last were taken aboard Captain *Davis* and *Swan*, and the rest put in our Flower Prize, under the Command of Captain *Grenes* their Countryman, in Retaliation of which he offered both Captain *Davis* and Captain *Swan* each a Commission from the Governor of *Petit Guavis*, it being their Custom to carry along with them blank Commissions from the said Governor. Captain *Davis* accepted of one, but Captain *Swan* having one from the Duke of *York*, refused it.

1685. Every thing being thus disposed we set Sail *March* the 2d. towards the Gulph of St. *Michael* in quest of Captain *Townley* (who they told us, was coming with 180 *English* over the Isthmus of *Darien*.) This Gulph lies 30 Leagues S. E. from *Panama* and you must turn for your Passage betwixt the *King*'s Isles and the Continent: In it many Rivers disembogue into the Sea; on the South it is bounded by the Point *Garrachina* at 6 Deg. 40 Min. N. Lat. and to the North by Cape St. *Lorenzo*; whereas the Name of Point *Garrachina* in the Maps is given to the North Cape, and that of the South Cape quite left out, as well as that of St. *Lorenzo*, which properly belongs to the North Cape. The most noted Rivers that exonerate themselves into the Gulph of St *Michael*, are St. *Maria*, *Sambo* and *Congos*. This last has its rise deep in the Country, and being joyned by many small Streams on both sides, disembogues on the North side of this Gulph 1 League from Cape St. *Lorenzo*; it is deep and navigable some Leagues into the Country, but not very broad; it is neglected by the *Spaniards*, by reason of the nearness to St. *Maria* River, where they have their Gold Mines.

The Gulph of St. Michael.

Error of the Maps.

The River Congos.

The River Sambo.

As I was never in the River *Sambo*, so I can't tell much of it, except that the Tide at its Mouth seems to denote it a large River; it exonerates it self into the Sea on the South side of the Gulph near Point *Garrachina*. Between the Mouths of these two Rivers on either side the Gulph it runs narrower towards the Land, making 5 or 6 Isles, beyond which, deeper inward; the Shoar closes so near with two Points of low Land, as to make a strait Channel not half a Mile broad; this is the Entrance to the innermost part of the Gulph, making a Bay of 3 Leagues over, to the East end whereof, are the Mouths of divers Rivers, but especially of St. *Maria*, the largest River of all that falls into this Gulph, being navigable for 8 or 9 Leagues, as far as the Tide flows, beyond which, it is divided into several Branches, fit only for Canoes; the Flood rises 18 Foot in this River.

The River of St. Maria.

Near 6 Leagues to the South of the Entrance of the River of St. *Maria*, the *Spaniards* built about 20 Years ago the Town of St. *Maria*, by reason of its nearness to the Gold Mines; soon after it was taken by Captain *Coxon*, *Harris* and *Sharp*, but was rebuilt afterwards again; for, when Captain *Harris* (the Nephew of the former) took it afterwards, he found in it great stores of Wine, Iron, Pickaxes and other Instruments the Slaves used in digging the Gold Mines. I have been told, that besides what Gold they get out of the Oar and Sand, they find sometimes Lumps as big as a Hen's Egg, and bigger, wedg'd in betwixt the Rocks; such a one Mr. *Harris* (who had 120 Pounds of Gold there) keeps by him; it has several Crevises full of Earth and Dust. In the adjacent Mines the *Spaniards* employ their Slaves in the dry Season, but when the Rivers overflow they can't work without great Inconveniency, and then it is, that the *Indians* wash the Gold out of the Sands, forced down from the Mountains by the violent Rains, which the *Spaniards* buy of them, and gain as much by it, as they do by their Mines: For, during the wet Season, they retire with their Slaves to *Panama*. Captain *Grenes* saw Captain *Townley* with his Crew at this Town, making Canoes, being at that time abandoned by the *Spaniards*. Near the Mouth of this River of St. *Maria*, on the North side they have lately built another Town, call'd *Scuchadaroes*, being a more airy Place than that of St. *Maria*. The Land all about the Gulph is low and fertile, producing abundance of large Trees.

The Town of St. Maria.

The Gold Mines near it.

The Town Scuchadaroes.

March the 3d. As we were steering to the Gulph Captain *Swan* kept near to the Continent, as we did nearer to the *Kings* Isles, where at 2 of the Clock in the Afternoon, near the place where we had careen'd our Ships, we met Captain *Townley* with his Crew in 2 Barks which they had taken, one loaden with Brandy, Wine and Sugar, the other with Flower; as he wanted room for his Men, and had occasion for the Jars in which the *Spaniards* carry their Wines, Brandy and Oil in these Parts, containing 7 or 8 Gallons a-piece, so he distributed part thereof among our Ships, being then all at Anchor among the *Kings* Isles; but, as it was towards the latter end of the dry Season, and all the Water dried up, we sail'd to the Point of *Garrachina* in hopes of fresh Water. The 21st. we anchored 2 Miles from the Point, and found the Tide very strong, coming out of the River *Sambo*. The 22d. we anchored at 4 Fathom within the Point; we found the Tide to rise 9 Foot, and the Flood to set N. N. East, and the Ebb S. S. West. The Natives brought us some Refreshments, but as they did not understand in the least the *Spanish* Tongue, so I suppose they had no Commerce with the *Spaniards*.

1685. *They meet with Captain Townley.*

Meeting with no fresh Water here, we set Sail for *Porto-Pinas*, lying 7 Leagues Southand by West hence, at 7 Deg. N. Lat. It has got its Name from the vast numbers of Pine Trees growing there. The Country rises from the Sea side by a gentle Ascent to a considerable height, and is pretty woody near the Shoar. At the entrance of the Harbour are 2 small Rocks, which renders the Passage into it narrow, and the Harbour but of a slender Compass; besides that, it lies exposed to the S. W. Wind. This made us not go into the Harbour, but sent our Boats to fetch some fresh Water, which they could not perform, by reason of the high Sea near the Shoar, so we turn'd towards Point *Garrachina*, where we arrived the 29th. In our way we took a Vessel loaden with Coco from *Guiaquil*. Finding our selves here also disappointed in getting of fresh Water, we set Sail the 30th. for *Tobago*, with a S. S. E. Wind, being now in all nine Ships. The first of *April* we anchored at the Isle of *Pacheque*; and the 3d. at *Perica*: Our Men took a Canoe with four *Indians* and a *Mulata*, who being found to have been in the same Fireship that was sent out to burn our Ship was hanged immediately. Whilst we were employ'd in filling of Water and cutting of Wood for Fuel, we sent four Canoes to the Continent, to get some Sugar in the adjacent Sugar Rocks, to make our Coco up into Chocolate, but especially to get some Coppers, which we much wanted to boil our Victuals in, since our number was so considerably increased; they brought us three Coppers.

The Pine-Harbour.

They come to Tobago.

In the mean while Captain *Davis* sent his Bark to the Isle of *Otoque*, seated in the Bay of *Panama*, but uninhabited, except by a few Negro Slaves, who breed up some Fowls and Hogs there: Here our Men did light upon a Messenger sent to *Panama*, with an account that the *Lima* Fleet was at Sea; most of the Letters had been thrown into the Sea, yet out of the remaining part we understood, that the Fleet was coming under a Convoy composed of all the Ships of Strength that they had been able to bring together from *Peru*. Being inform'd that the King's Ships did always come that way where we now lay, we sail'd the 10th. from *Tobago* to the King's Isles, and the 11th. anchored at the place, where we careen'd: Here we met with Captain *Harris* who had brought along with him some Men, (we had heard the *Indians* mention before) from the River *St. Maria*, but they were not near so many in number. The 19th. 250 Men were sent in Canoes to the River *Cheapo*, to surprize the Town of the same Name. The 21st. we follow'd and arrived the 22d. at the Isle of *Chepelio*, a pleasant Island seated in the Bay of *Panama* 7 Leagues from the City of that Name, and 1 League from the Continent, being about 2 Miles Long, and as many broad, low on the North side, but rising by an easie Ascent to the South. The Soil is very good, producing in the low Grounds store of delicious Fruits, such as Plantains, Sapadilloes, Avogato-Pears, Mammees, Mammee-Sappota's, Star-Apples, &c. On the North side, half a Mile from the Shoar, is a good anchoring Place, where is also a very good Spring of fresh Water near the Sea side: This Isle lies directly opposite to the River *Cheapo*.

The Isle of Otoque.

The Isle of Chepelio.

The Sapadillo-Tree is altogether like a Pear-Tree, and the Fruit like a Burgama-Pear, only it is something longer; when it is first gathered it is hard, and the Juice clammy, but a few Days after becomes juicy and sweet; it has two or three black Kernels like a Pumkin Seed.

The Sapadillo-Tree.

The Avogato-Pear-Tree is as high, and higher than our Pear-Trees, with a black, but smooth Bark, large oval

The Avogato-Pear-Tree.

1685. oval Leaves. the Fruit of the bigneſs of a large Lemon, of a green Colour at firſt, but yellow when ripe; the Pulp is yellowiſh and as ſoft as Butter, and after they have been gathered 3 or four Days the Rind will come off with eaſe; the Stone is as big as a good Horſe-Plum; as this Fruit is inſipid, ſo it is commonly eaten with Sugar and Lime-juice, being look'd upon by the *Spaniards* as a great Provocative, who have therefore planted them in moſt Places in the North Sea where they inhabit.

The Mammee Sappota-Tree. The Mamme-Sappota-Tree is neither ſo big nor ſo tall as the Mammee at *Tobago*, nor is the Fruit either ſo large or ſo round; The Pulp is alſo quite red, with a rough flat longiſh Stone, and the Rind ſmooth; it is a pleaſant and wholſome Fruit: There are alſo ſome *Wild Mammee-Trees.* wild Mammee-Trees which grow very tall and ſtrait, and conſequently uſed for Maſts; but the Fruit is not eſteemed.

The Star ſomewhat reſembles our Quince-Tree, but much larger, bearing abundance of oval broad Leaves; the Fruit is of the bigneſs of a large Apple, it is reckoned a very good Fruit, but I never taſted it.

The River of Cheapo. The River of *Cheapo* has its riſe in the Mountains on the North ſide, being encloſed afterwards betwixt them and the Mountains; on the South ſide it turns to the Weſt, and at laſt forcing its way to the South Weſt, makes a kind of a Semi-circle, and afterwards runs gently to the Sea, where it exonerates it ſelf 7 Leagues from *Panama*; it is very deep and a quarter of a Mile broad, but by reaſon of the Lands that choak up its entrance, is navigable only by Barks.

The Town of Cheapo. About 6 Leagues from the Sea ſide ſtands the Town of *Cheapo* on the left bank of the River, in a champain Country, very pleaſant to behold, by reaſon of divers adjacent Hills covered with Woods, tho' the greateſt part is good paſture Ground; but the South ſide of the River is all Wood-land for many Leagues. The 250 Men before-mentioned ſent to this Place, returned the 24th. having taken the Place without the leaſt oppoſition, but found nothing worth mentioning there: In the way thither they took a Canoe with armed Men, ſent to watch our motions; but the Men eſcaped for the moſt part.

The 25th. being joyn'd by Captain *Harris* (which made us to ſail) we ſet Sail the 26th. and arrived at *Tobago* the 28. and finding our ſelves now 1000 Men ſtrong, it was conſulted whether we ſhould make an attempt upon *Panama*; but being inform'd by our Priſoners, that they had received a conſiderable Reinforcement from *Porto Bello*, that deſign was laid aſide.

May the 4th. we ſet Sail again for the *King*'s Iſles, whereabouts we cruized till the 22d. when we ſent two Canoes to the Iſle of *Chepelio* to get ſome Priſoners; they returned the 25th. with three, being Seamen of *Panama*, who declared that the Preſident of *Panama* having iſſued a ſtrict Order there not to ſerch any Plantains from the adjacent Iſles; this had occaſioned a great ſcarcity among the Poor, and that they expected every Day the Arrival of the Fleet from *Lima*. On the South ſide of the Iſle of *Pacheque* lie two or three very ſmall Iſles, and betwixt them a Channel not above 7 Paces wide, and a Mile in length; on the Eaſt ſide of this Channel we lay at Anchor with our whole Fleet, conſiſting of ten Sail, but only two Men of War. *viz.* Captain *Davis* 36 Guns, 156 Men, and Captain *Swan* 16 Guns, 140 Man; the reſt being provided only with ſmall Arms, and provided in all with 960 Men; we had alſo one Fireſhip. 1685. *They ſtay for the Spaniſh Plate fleet.*

Hitherto we had had the Wind at N. N. Eaſt with fair Weather, but the 28th. the rainy Seaſon began. About eleven of the Clock it beginning to clear up, we diſcovered the *Spaniſh* Fleet 3 Leagues W. N. Weſt from the Iſle of *Pacheque* ſtanding to the Eaſt, we being then at Anchor a League S. Eaſt from the Iſle betwixt it and the Continent. About three in the Afternoon we ſet Sail bearing downright before the Wind upon the *Spaniards*, who kept cloſe on a Wind to come up with us; but Night approaching we exchanged only a few Shot; as ſoon as it began to be dark, the *Spaniſh* Admiral put out a light in his Top, as a Signal for the Fleet to come to an Anchor; in half an Hour after it was taken down again, but appear'd ſoon after as before, which we ſuppoſing to be in the Admiral's Top, we kept under Sail, being to the Windward, but found our ſelves deceived in our expectation by a Strategem contriv'd by the *Spaniards*, who having put this ſecond light on the Topmaſt-head of one of their Barks ſent her to the Leeward, ſo, that in the Morning we found them to have got the Weathergage of us; they came up on us with full Sail, ſo we were forced to make a running Fight of it all day, almoſt quite round the Bay of *Panama*, for we came to an Anchor againſt the Iſle of *Pacheque*. Captain *Townley* being hardly preſs'd upon by the *Spaniards*, was forced to make a bold run thro' the before-mentioned Channel betwixt *Pacheque* and the three adjacent ſmall Iſles, and Captain *Harris* was forced away from us during the Fight: Thus our long projected deſign vaniſh'd into Smoak. The *Spaniſh* Fleet according to the report of ſome Priſoners taken afterwards by Captain *Wright*, conſiſted of 14 Sail, beſides Periagoes, or Boats of 12 and 14 Oars apiece, among which were 8 Ships of good Force, *viz.* from 8 to 48 Guns; they were computed to have 3000 Men aboard the whole Fleet, and two Fireſhips. The 30th. in the Morning we ſaw the *Spaniſh* Fleet 3 Leagues to the Leeward of us at Anchor, and at ten of the Clock with an eaſie Gale from the South making the beſt of their way to *Panama*; we don't know their loſs; we had but one Man kill'd. Captain *Gronet* who was not in the Fight, laid the fault thereof on his Men; he was ordered to leave us in a Conſultation held for that purpoſe, where it was alſo reſolved to ſet Sail for the Iſles of *Quibo* or *Cobaya* in queſt of Captain *Harris*. *Get ſight of it.* *They are engaged by the Spaniſh Fleet,* *and are worſted.*

CHAP. VIII.

A Deſcription of the Coaſt to the Weſt of the Bay of Panama; *of the Iſles of* Quibo, Quicaro, Rancheria, Canales *and* Cantarras. Puebla Nova *and the City of* Leon *taken. The Harbour and Creek of* Rio-Laka. *The* Volcan *of* Guatimala, *and the Coaſt further to the N. Weſt; as alſo the Iſle of* Tangola *and the adjacent Continent, deſcribed. The Iſle* Sacrificio. *The Town and Harbour of* Acapulco. *The Burning Mountain, Town, Valley and Bay of* Colima. *Cape* Corientes. *The Iſles of* Chamethy, *and City of* Purification. *The Point and Iſles of* Pontique. *The River and Town of* Roſario. *The Rivers of* Olerta *and St.* Jago. *Of* California *and the N. Weſt and N. Eaſt Paſſage. They propoſe a Voyage to the* Eaſt-Indies.

1685. WE ſet ſail *June* the 1ſt. with a S. S. Weſt Wind, paſſing betwixt the Point *Garrachina* and the *Kings* Iſles. The 5th we paſs'd in ſight of the Iſle *Chuche*, a ſmall, low, round, woody Iſle 4 Leagues S. S. Weſt from *Pacheque*, uninhabited, and the laſt of the Iſles in the Bay of *Panama*. We ſail'd forward on the North ſide of the Bay (which way all Ships from *Panama* muſt paſs) and came the 10th in ſight of the *Monaro de Porcos*, a high round Hill on the Coaſt of *Lavelia*. This ſide of the Bay of *Panama* runs out Weſt to the Iſles of *Quibo*; on this Coaſts are many Rivers and Creeks, but not near ſo large as thoſe on the South ſide of the ſaid Bay. Near the Sea ſide this Coaſt is partly hilly, partly low Grounds, with very thick Woods, but deeper in the Country; they have fruitful Plains for Cattle. *The Iſle of Chuche.* *The Hogs Mount.* *The Coaſt to the Weſt of the Bay of Panama.*

Some of the Rivers on this ſide afford alſo Gold, but not ſuch a quantity as thoſe on the other ſide. There is ſcarce any Settlement along this Coaſt, except what is along the Rivers, that lead to *Lavelia* and *Nata*, theſe being the only I know of betwixt *Panama* and *Puebla Nova*. From *Panama* is good travelling all over *Mexico* thro' the *Savannahs* or Plains, but towards *Peru* there is no Paſſage beyond the River *Cheapo*, by reaſon of the thick Woods and many Rivers.

In our Voyage to *Quibo* the Wind being conſtantly at S. S. Weſt and S. Weſt we met with very bad Weather, ſo that we did not reach theſe Iſles till *June* the 15th.

1685. 15th. where we met with Captain *Harris*. The Isle of *Quibo* or *Cobaya* at 7 Deg. 14 Min. N. Lat. is near 7 Leagues long, and 4 broad, being all low Land, except at the N. East end, on which side, as also to the East, there is excellent good Water. It abounds in Trees of all sorts, in Deer and black Monkeys, whose Flesh is reackoned very wholsome and good: It has also some Guanaoes and Snakes. From the S. East end of this Isle runs out a sand Bank half a Mile into the Sea, and a League to the North side of this, to the East side is a Rock a Mile from the Shoar, which at the last quarter Ebb is seen above Water: For the rest, Ships may come to an Anchor at any other place a quarter of a Mile from the Shoar at six, eight, ten and twelve Fathom clean Sand and Ouze.

The Isle of Quibo.

Besides this, there are several Isles lying some on the S. West side, some to the North and N. East. The Isle of *Quicaro* is pretty large lying to the S. West of *Quibo*, and to the North of it is a small Isle called *Rancheria*, which produces great plenty of *Palma Maria* Trees; they are very strait-bodied, tough and of a very good length, and consequently fit for Masts, the grain of the Wood running twisted gradually; they have no resemblance to the Palm Tree. To the N. East of *Rancheria* lie the little Isles of *Canales* and *Cantarras* with their Channels betwixt them, where there is good Anchorage: They have plenty of good Water and Trees, and appear at a distance to be part of the Continent; but the Isle of *Quibo* being the longest and most considerable of them all, they are generally comprehended under the Name of the Isles of *Quibo*.

The Isles of Quicaro and Rancaria.

The Palma Maria-Tree.

The Isles of Canales and Cantarras.

June the 16th. it being agreed, that since we had miss'd at Sea, to try our Fortune by Land; the City of *Leon* was pitch'd upon (on the Coast of *Mexico*) as being nearest to us; but wanting Canoes to land our Men, we cut down Trees to make as many as we had occasion for: In the mean time 150 Men were sent to make themselves Masters of *Puebla Nova* (a Town on the Continent near these Isles) in hopes of getting some Provisions there; they took the Town without much difficulty, and returned the 20th. but met with nothing there but an empty Bark. *July* the 5th. Captain *Knight* came to us having been further to the West, where meeting with no Purchase he sail'd to the South as far as the Bay of *Guiaguil*, where he took two Bark-Logs with Wine, Oil, Brandy, Sugar, Soap, &c. The Master declared that the Merchant's Ship design'd to have been sent away with the *Spanish* Fleet to *Panama*, did stay behind at *Peyta* till further Orders, and that, had he had more strength they might easily have been taken. In a Month's time our Canoes being got ready, Captain *Harris* with his Men went on board Captain *Davis* and Captain *Swan* (his Ship being rotten) and the 20 of *July* we set sail from *Quibo* towards *Rio Leka*, the next Port to the City of *Leon*, being now 640 Men, Ships, 3 Tenders and a Fireship, the Wind at S. S. West. Coasting along we pass'd by the Gulph of *Nicoya*, that of *Dulce* and the Isle of *Canao*, the Coast low and covered with Wood, and almost destitute of Inhabitants; we had variable Winds, but most S. W. and W. S. W. the Land Winds at N. N. E. We were much pester'd with Tornadoes.

Puebla Nova.

They set sail towards Leon.

August the 8th. at 11 Deg. 20 Min. Lat. we discover'd the *Volcan Vejo* or *Old Vulcan* (the Sea-Mark of *Rio-Leka*) bearing N. E. by North, and no sooner had we brought the said Mountain to bear N. East, but we made provision for landing the next Day. The 9th. of *August* we sent 520 of our Men in 31 Canoes towards the Harbour of *Rio-Leka*; the Weather was fair and the Wind favourable till two in the Afternoon, when a Tempest mixt with Thunder and Lightning had almost buried us in the Sea; but, after half an Hour it began to abate, and so did the agitation of the Sea, it being observable in these hot Countries, that the Waves soon rise and fall; at 7 of the Clock at Night it was calm, but finding we could not be ready to land before Day, (being 5 Leagues from Shoar) we stay'd hereabouts till next Evening for fear of being discovered; but about 3 of the Clock another Tornado had been likely to have put an end to our Enterprize: However, as the same did not last long, we entred the Creek lying on the S. E. side of the Harbour leading to *Leon* in the Night, but durst not go further till Day break, when we rowed deeper into the Creek, which is very narrow, and the Land on both sides marshy near the Banks, and full of *Mangrove*-Trees, so that there is no passing thro' them. Beyond these *Mangrove*-Trees upon the firm Ground they cast up a small Entrenchment; we rowed as fast as we could and landed 470 Men, leaving the rest (of which number I was one) to guard the Canoes.

They land at the Harbour of Rio-Leka.

The City of *Leon* stands 20 Miles in the Country in a sandy Plain near a peaked burning Mountain, thence called the *Volcan* of *Leon*, the way to it being thro' a campaign Country covered with long Grass; betwixt the landing place and the City were several Sugar-works, and about the mid-way a delicious fordable River, being the only thing they met with in their way. Two Miles on this side the City is an *Indian* Town, where a pleasant sandy Road leads you to the City, the Houses whereof are strong, of Stone, and large with Gardens about them, but low and covered with Pantile: It has three Churches and a Cathedral, its Situation in a sandy Plain with Savannahs all round about it, which drink up the Rain, and afford a free Passage to the Breezes from all sides, and make it both healthful and pleasant, tho' also it is no place of much Traffick, all their substance being in Cattle and Sugar-works. 1685.

The City of Leon

Our Men march'd at 8 of the Clock, Captain *Townley* leading the Van at the head of 80 of the choicest Men, Captain *Swan* follow'd with 100 more, and Captain *Davis* brought up the Rear with 170 in conjunction with Captain *Knight*. Captain *Townley* being advanced two Miles before the rest, having forced 70 Horse to a retreat 4 Miles on this side of the City, he marched forward, and at 3 of the Clock in the Afternoon with his 80 Men only entred the Town without resistance, but met with some opposition from 500 Foot and 200 Horse, first in a broad Street, and afterwards in the great Market-place; but the Foot seeing the Horse take to their Heels, also retreated, leaving the Town to the Enemy's Mercy; Captain *Swan* came not into the Town till 4 of the Clock, *Davis* about 5, and *Knight* with the remainder not till 6. The *Spaniards* kill'd one of our Men that straggled behind, being very old and refusing to accept of Quarter, and took one *Smith* Prisoner. Next Day the Governor sent word he would ransom the Town; we demanded 30000 pieces of Eight and Provisions for 1000 Men for 4 Months, which he not relishing, we set the City on Fire the 14th. and march'd towards our Canoes. The next Morning *Smith* was exchanged for a Gentlewoman; we released another Gentleman upon his Parole, to deliver to us 150 Oxen for his Ransom at *Rio-Leka*, the place we intended to attack next.

is attacked and taken.

The 16th. in the Afternoon we came back in our Canoes to the Harbour of *Rio-Leka*, where our Ships were come to an Anchor by that time.

The Creek that leads from *Rio-Leka* extends from the N. W. part of the Harbour to the North about 2 Leagues from the Isle in the Harbour's Mouth to the Town. The first two third parts are broad, but afterwards closes in a narrow deep Channel, lined on both sides with many Coco Trees; a Mile from the entrance of the Creek it winds to the West: Hereabouts it was that the *Spaniards* cast up an Entrenchment fronting the entrance of the Creek, defended by 100 Soldiers and 20 Guards; below it a Boom of Trees was made cross the Creek, so that they might have kept of 1000 Men, had they not wanted courage to keep their Post; but at the firing of two of our Guns they quitted it, leaving us at liberty to cut down the Boom; this done we landed, and march'd to the Town of *Rio-Leka*, a goodly place seated a Mile thence upon a small River in a Plain; it has three Churches and an Hospital with a handsom Garden to it, the place being seated in an unwholsome Air among the Fens and Marshes which send forth a noisom Scent; we took the Town without the least opposition. The Country about it has many Sugar-works and Enclosures for Cattle; and good store of Pitch Tar and Cordage is made by the Country People: It produces also Melons, Pine-Apples, Guavoes and Prickle-Pears.

The Creek leading to the Town of Rio-Leka.

They land.

attack and take the Town.

The Shrub that bears the Guavo Fruit has long and small Boughs, a white and smooth Bark, and Leaves like the Hazle; the Fruit resembles a Pear with a thin rind, and many hard Seeds; it may be eaten whilst yet green, a thing seldom observ'd in the Fruits both in the *East* and *West-Indies*: It is yellow, soft and well-tasted, after it is ripe may be baked like Pears, and will coddle like some Apples; there are different sorts distinguish'd by their Shape, Taste and Colour, some being red, others yellow on the inside: Before it is ripe it is astringent, but afterwards loosning. The Prickle-Pear grows upon a Shrub of 5 Foot high in many places of the *West-Indies*; it thrives best in saltish sandy Grounds near the Sea-shoar; each Branch of this Shrub has 2 or 3 round Leaves of the breadth of a Man's Hand, not unlike House-leek edged with Prickles of an Inch long. At the extremity of the Leaf grows the Fruit of the bigness of a large Plum, small toward

The Guava Fruit.

The Prickle Pear.

1685. towards the Leaf and thicker to the end, where it opens like a Medler; the Fruit has also small Prickles, is green at first, but turns red by degrees. The Pulp is of the same colour of the substance of a thick Syrup, with small black Seeds. Its taste is pleasant and cooling. I have often observed, that if you eat 20 or more of them at a time, they will colour the Urine as red as Blood, but without any ill consequence. We found nothing of moment in the Town, except 500 Pecks of Flower, and some Pitch, Tar, and Cordage; we received also the 150 Oxen promised by the Gentleman we released at *Leon*, which together with the Sugar and some other Cattel we found in the Country, was extreme welcome to us.

We stay'd here from the 17th till the 24th. The 25th Capt. *Davis* and Captain *Swan* parted, the first having a mind to return to the Coast of *Peru*, the other intending to go further to the W. As I had a curiosity to be better acquainted with the Northern parts of the Continent of *Mexico*, I left Captain *Davis* and went aboard Capt. *Swan*, Capt. *Townley* with his 2 Barks joined with us, but Captain *Harris* and Capt. *Knight* followed Captain *Davis*. The 27th Capt. *Davis* with his Ships went out of the Harbour, but we stay'd some time behind, to provide our selves with Water and Fuel.

They part.

By this time our Men began to be much afflicted with Fevers, which we attributed to the remnants of a contagious Distemper that lately raged at *Rio Leha*; for Captain *Davis*'s Men (as he told me afterwards) underwent the same Fate. The 3d of *September* we set sail again, steering to the W. We had bad Weather all along the Coast, with violent Turnadoes, Thunder and Lightning; the Turnadoes came commonly out of the N. E. The tempestuous Weather kept us out at Sea, so that we saw no Land till the 14th, when at 12 deg. 50 min. Lat. we came in sight of the *Volcan*, or burning Mountain of *Guatimala*. It appears with a double Peak, like 2 Sugar-loaves, betwixt which you see, sometimes, break out the Fire and Smoak, especially against bad Weather.

The Volcan of Guatimala.

The City of *Guatimala* is seated near the Foot of this high Mountain, 8 Leagues from the *South Sea*, and 40 or 50 Leagues from the Gulf of *Matique*, in the Bay of *Honduras*, in the *North Sea*. It is accounted a rich City, the Country about it abounding in several Commodities peculiar to it, and transported thence into *Europe*, especially the four noted Dies, Indico, Otta, or Anatta, Silvester and Cochineel.

Indico.

Indico is made of the Stalk and Herb, growing about 2 Foot high, with Branches and Leaves like Flax, but more substantial; this they put in a Cistern, in the Ground, half full of Water, where they let it soak till all the pulpy substance be dissolved, the rest is taken out, and the Indico afterwards settling to the bottom, they draw off the Water, and let the Sediment dry in the Sun, till it become hard.

Otta, or Anatta.

The Otta, or Anatta, a red sort of Dye, is made of red Flowers, growing on Shrubs 7 or 8 Foot high; they pick the Leaves from the head, and these only they put in Cisterns with Water, like the Indico, till they are dissolved; then they draw off the Water, and make up the Sediment into rolls to be dry'd in the Sun. The *Jamaica* Men buy much Indico and Otta at *Porto Rico*, where they used to buy the first for 3 Rials, and Otta for 4 Rials a Pound, which is no more than 2 *s.* 3 *d.* of *English* Money, and sell it again at *Jamaica*, the Otta for 5 *s.* and the Indico for 3 *s.* 6 *d.* the Pound. But since Capt. *Coxon* by chance met with a vast quantity of both these Commodities, in the Gulf of *Matique*, in the Bay of *Honduras*, and carried it to *Jamaica*, and they have now found the way to trade with the *Spaniards* on that side.

1679.

Cochineel.

The Cochineel is nothing else but an Insect bred in a certain Fruit, not unlike the Prickle-pear, 5 Foot high; the Leaves are not quite so big, but the Fruit exceeds the other in bigness. Just on the top of the Fruit sprouts fourth a red Flower, which as soon as the Fruit is ripe, and begins to open, covers the top of it so that no Rain or wet can enter the inside; in 2 Days after, the Flower being dry'd away by the heat of the Sun, the Fruit opens as broad as the mouth of a Pint Pot, and winged Insects appear on the inside, who having consumed all the substance of the Fruit beforehand, the Country People, who have large Plantations of these Trees, spread a linnen Cloth under the Tree, and by shaking and beating the Branches drive the Insects out of their Nests, who for some time fly about the Tree, till being quite spent by the scorching Beams of the Sun, they fall down dead upon the Cloth, where the

An Insect.

How taken.

Indians leave them for 3 Days longer, till they are well dry'd. When they fly up they appear red, when they fall down black, and as soon as they dry are as white as Paper, but change their colour somewhat afterwards. These are the Insects that afford us the precious Scarlet Dye. Abundance of these Trees are planted about *Guatimala*, *Cheape* and *Guaxaca*, all three in the Kingdom of *Mexico*.

1685.

The Silvester is a red Grain, or Seed, growing in a Fruit much resembling the Cochineel Fruit, and the Shrub that bears it is not unlike the Tree; first of all shoots forth a yellow Flower, which produces the Fruit, something longer than *Cochineel* Fruit. After it's ripe it opens and discovers its Grains or Seeds, which are shaken out with the least touch. These Trees grow wild, 8 or 10 of these Fruits yield about an Ounce of Seed; but of the Cochineel Fruits, 3 or 4 will yield the same quantity of the Insects. The Colour of this is very near as fine as the Cochineel, but of a much lower price, tho' they are often mistaken for one another. I used to be very inquisitive in the *West Indies* how the Cochineel and the Silvester did grow, but could never be rightly satisfied in the matter, till a *Spanish* Gentleman of Credit, who had lived 30 Years in these parts, gave me this account of them.

Silvester.

The Land near the *Volcan* of *Guatimala* is low near the Sea side, but rises by degrees higher and higher; for about 10 Leagues from the Shoar, we saw abundance of drift Wood, and Pumice-stones floating in the Sea; these last were questionless thrown out by the Mountain, and wash'd by the Rains into the Sea. The 24th at 14 deg. 30 min. N. Lat. the Weather being settled, Capt. *Townley* went ashoar with 106 Men to the W. in hopes to find a landing place, and some Refreshments for our sick Men; we lay by till the 26th, when Coasting along to the W. with a N. Wind, we saw a tract of high Land, beginning in the E. and running for 10 Leagues, within the Land, to the W. where it ended by an easy descent. On this side of it, near to the Sea, we saw rich Pasture Plains, mix'd with pleasant Groves; the Country near the Sea shoar was defended by sandy Hills, but the boisterous Waves would not let our Men land with their Canoes; we were forced to Coast still for 8 or 9 Leagues farther, but Captain *Townley* seeing no prospect of Landing returned aboard with his Men, *October* 2: but being resolved to try his Fortune again, he forced his Canoes ashoar in a sandy Bay, where we landed with the loss of one Man, and most of their Powder spoil'd by the salt Water; when they were got ashoar, they found the Country full of Torrents, and unfordable Rivulets, that they were forc'd to return to their Canoes. They were charg'd by 200 *Spaniards* and *Indians*, but these they soon repulsed, and forced them to take the way of *Teguantepeque*, the same Town that Captain *Townley* went to look for, but could not get sight of it.

Drift wood and Pumice stones in the Sea.

Immediately after his return, we set sail again with a brisk E. N. E. Wind, still coasting to the W. within 2 Miles of the Shoar; at 6 Mile from the Land we found 19 Fathom, and 8 Mile 21 Fathom course Sand; we could not discover either Creek or Bay for twenty Leagues farther, till we came to the Isle of *Tangola*, where there is safe Anchorage. It is high but small, yet well furnished with Wood and Water, about a League from the Continent, which has curious Pasture Grounds near the Sea, but high Wood Lands deeper in the Country; we sailed a League farther to the Port of *Guatulco*, one of the best in the Kingdom of *Mexico*, at 15 deg. 30 min. Lat. On the E. side of the Entrance of the Harbour, about a Mile from it, is a small Isle adjacent to the Shoar, and on the W. side of the said Entrance, a great hollow Rock, open at the top, thro' which the Waves of the Sea force their passage like thro' a Pipe, with a great noise and hight, and that even in the calmest Weather, so that it affords a good mark to Sea-men bound for this Port. The whole depth of the Harbour is about 3 Mile, and its breadth 1 Mile, it runs in N. W. The W. side is the most secure because the rest is exposed to the S. W. Winds, which are frequently on this Coast. The Ground is good any where, the soundings being from 6 to 16 Fathom, the shoar sandy and smooth; and at the bottom of the Harbour falls a curious fresh Water Rivulet into the Sea; here formerly stood a *Spanish* Town, destroy'd by Sir *Francis Drake*; there remains nothing of it now except a little Chappel in the middle of a Grove 200 Paces from the Sea side; the Land appears in small ridges rising higher, gradually, deeper in the Country.

The Isles of Tongola.

The Harbour of Guatulco.

A hollow Rock in the Sea.

Here

1685. Here Captain *Townley* landed again with some Men and marching to the E. came to the River *Capalita*, which has a very swift Current, but is deep at its entrance; a League from *Guatulco* two of our Men swam over the River, where they seized upon 3 *Indians* that were placed there to keep watch. As they could not speak *Spanish*, so they made signs they could conduct them to a Village, whereupon 140 Men were sent under the Conduct of Capt. *Townley* (my self being one) who return'd the 8th, having found after 14 Miles march, a small *Indian* Village, where they found nothing else but some *Vinelloes* drying in the Sun.

October 6.

The Vinelloe.

The *Vinello* grows on a small kind of Vine creeping up about the Trees; this at first bears a yellow Flower, which produces a Cod of the bigness of the Stem of a Tobacco Leaf, and about 4 or 5 Inches long. This Cod is green at first, but when ripe turns yellow; the Seeds are black; after it is gather'd they lay them in the Sun, which makes them soft, and of Chesnut colour; they squeeze it flat afterwards with their Fingers. The *Spaniards*, who buy this Commodity very cheap of the *Indians*, sleek them afterwards with Oil; I never heard of any of these *Vinelloes* except hereabouts, about *Caiboca*, in the Bay of *Campeachy*, and *Bocco-toro*. Near this last place I gathered them my self, and endeavoured to cure them, but could not; and as I know other Persons, who have lived many Years in these Parts and have attempted the same with no better success, so I am apt to believe, the *Indians* have some peculiar way to cure them that is unknown to us as yet.

The 16th we sent 4 Canoes before to the W. to expect our coming at Port *Angels*, and in the mean while to endeavour to take some Prisoners; the 12th we set sail with our Ships from *Guatulco*, the Land lying along to the W. inclining to the S. for 20 or 30 Leagues; the Sea Winds at W. S. W. and S. W; the Land Winds at N. we coasted along as near as we could to the Shoar, to take the benefit of the Land-wind, the Sea-wind being against us; besides that, we were kept back by the Current setting to the East, so that we were forced to come to an Anchor at *Sacrificio*, an Isle half a Mile long, a League to the W. of *Guatulco*, and half a Mile from the Continent; to the W. of the Isle appears a good Bay, but is rocky, the best Anchorage is betwixt the Isle and the Continent, at 5 or 6 Fathom Water, tho' the Tide is pretty strong here, the Sea rising about 6 Foot.

They set sail from Guatulco.

The Isles of Sacrificio.

The 18th we continued coasting to the W. near the Shoar, which was high and woody, with divers sandy Bays, but the Waves very boisterous near the Shoar. Two of our Canoes return'd the 22d, and told us they had lost Company of the other two; that they could not find Port *Angels*, and had endeavoured in vain to land at a place where they saw great store of Cattel; Being then just a-breast of Point *Angels*, tho' those in the Canoes did not know it, we went in and came to an anchor there. It is a broad open Bay, having two or three Rocks at the W. end, for the rest there is good riding at 13, 20 and 30 Fathom Water, but Ships lay exposed to all Winds, the Land-winds excepted, till they come at 12 or 13 Fathom Water, when they are sheltred against the Trade-winds, which are W. S. W. The Flood rises about 5 Foot, sets to the N. E. and the Ebb at S. W. the landing place is close to the W. side, before the beforementioned Rock, but as the Waves run very high, there is but indifferent landing. It lies at 15 deg. North Lat. and is enclosed on the Land side by high sandy Grounds, partly Woods partly Plains, stor'd with very good Grass. The 23d we landed 100 Men, who feasted 2 or 3 days upon salt Beef, and got store of Salt, Maiz, Hogs, Cocks and Hens, in an adjacent House to the Plain, but could cary but little aboard, by reason of the great distance from the Sea side.

The Port Angels.

The 27th we set sail in the Morning, with the Land-wind; about Noon the Sea-wind came upon us, and at Night anchored at 16 Fathom Water, near a small rocky Isle, 6 Leagues W. from Port *Angels*, and half a Mile from the Continent. The 28th we continued our Voyage with the Land-wind, the Sea-wind blew hard in the Afternoon, and at Night we met with the other two Canoes we had sent out from *Guatulco*; they had been as far as the Port of *Apulco*, and in their return took in fresh Water in a River in spight of 150 *Spaniards* that would have opposed it; thence they came into a salt Water Lake or Pond, where finding abundance of dry Fish, they brought some aboard us. As we were just abreast of this Lake, we sent 12 Men in a Canoe for more Fish; the entrance of this Lake is so closely hemm'd in with Rocks on both sides, that the passage betwixt them is not above Pistol shot over, but within the Lake is of a considerable compass; the *Spaniards* being allarum'd before, now seeing our Canoe approach the Lake, posted themselves behind the Rocks, and gave such a volley of shot upon our Canoe, at her entring into the Pond, that they wounded 5 of our Men, however our People rowed forward into the Lagune or Pond, without Gun-shot, where they stay'd 2 Days 3 Nights, not daring to attempt to repass the same way they came; at last Captain *Townly*, who lay nearer to the shoar than we, hearing the firing of some Guns that way, man'd one of his Canoes, and beating the *Spaniards* from the Rocks, opened them a free passage, so they returned aboard the 31st of *October*. This Lake is at 16 deg. 40 min. N. Lat.

They meet with 2 of their Canoes given over for lost.

A Salt Water Lake.

1685.

Coasting forward to the W. (the Current setting to the W. also) we pass'd, *Novemb.* 2. by the Rock of *Algatross*; the Land near it is high and woody, and Mountainous in the Country; 6 Miles to the W. of the said Rock, lye 7 or 8 white Cliffs to the S. by W. whereof a large shoal runs out 5 Miles at Sea; two Leagues to the W. of these Cliffs is a handsome River, having a small Isle at its entrance, the E. Channel is shallow and sandy, but that to the W. will admit of Canoes. The 3d we came to an anchor opposite to this River, one Mile and a half from the Shoar, at 14 Fathoms. The *Spaniards* having cast up an Entrenchment along the W. Channel, defended by 200 Men, we landed our Men and forced them thence with little opposition; we found here good store of Salt, design'd for the salting of the Fish they take in the Lake, but we found neither Nets, Hooks or Lines, nor any Bark, Canoe or Boat; marching 3 Leagues into the Country we took a *Mulatto* Prisoner, who informed us that lately there was a stout Ship come from *Lima* to *Acapulco*; Capt. *Townley* standing in want of a good Ship, it was agreed (tho' not without some opposition from Captain *Swan*) to fetch the said Ship out of that Harbour. The 5th we continued coasting to the W. toward *Acapulco*; the 7th, 12 Leagues from the Shoar, we saw the high Land of *Acapulco*, very remarkable for a round Hill betwixt 2 other Hills, the Westernmost being the biggest and highest, with 2 Hillocks on the top, but the Easternmost is higher and more peaked than the middlemost.

The Rock of Algatross.

Acapulco is a Town and Harbour at 17 deg. N. on the W. side of the Continent, belonging to the City of *Mexico*, being the only place of Traffick on the W. Coast, tho' at the same time there are only 3 Ships that come hither, *viz.* 2 that constantly go every Year betwixt this Port and *Manilla* in *Luconia* (one of the *Philippine* Isles, and another once a Year to and from *Lima*.) This last comes to *Acapulco* about Christmas, loaden with Quicksilver, Coco and pieces of eight, and stays there till the *Manilla* Ships arrives; from these she take in her Cargo of Spices, Callicoes, Muslins, &c. for *Peru*, and so returns to *Lima*. This is but a moderate Vessel, but the two Ships from *Manilla* carry about 1000 Tuns; these 2 so order their Voyage, as that one or other of them is always at *Manilla*; one of them sets sail from *Acapulco* about the beginning of *April*, and after 60 Days touches at *Guam*, for Refreshments, one of the *Ladrone* Isles; after 3 Days stay she continues her Voyage to *Manilla*, where she commonly arrives in *June*. Soon after, the other Ship being ready to sail from *Manilla* with the *East-India* Commodities, she steers her Course thence to 36 or 40 deg. N. Lat. before she can get the Wind to carry her to the Coast of *America*; first she falls in towards the shoar of *California*, and then coasting to the S. certainly meets a Wind to bring her to *Acapulco*. After she has made the Cape of St. *Lucas*, the S. Point of *California*, she runs over to Cape *Corientes*, at 20 deg. N. Lat. whence she Coasts to *Sallagua*, where having put ashoar the Passengers, bound for the City of *Mexico*, she continues Coasting along to *Acapulco*, which commonly happens about *Christmas*; and upon her return to *Manilla* the other Ship undertakes her Voyage to *Acapulco*, a Port so large and convenient, as to be able to contain some hundreds of Ships without danger.

The Port and City of Acapulco.

How the Manilla Ships come to Acapulco.

Cross the entrance of the Harbour is a low Isle, one Mile and a half long, and half a Mile broad, stretching from E. to W. At each end is a deep Channel for the entrance of their Ships and their coming out, provided they enter with the Sea-wind, and come out with the Land-wind, and these blow at their certain times of the Day or Night. The Channel at the W. end is narrow, but so deep that there is no anchorage; thro' this the Ships come in from *Manilla*; but the Ships from

Lima

Its entrance.

1685. *Lima* pass thro' the S. W. Channel. The Harbour runs in 8 Miles to the N. then closing up into a narrow Channel goes a Mile farther to the W. At the entrance of this Channel, on the N. W. side, just by the Sea side, stands the Town of *Acapulco*, near which is a Platform with a good number of Guns; and over against the Town, on the E. side, stands a strong Castle, defended by no less than 40 great Guns; Ships commonly ride within reach of this Castle at the bottom of the Harbour.

The Castle of Acapulco.

Captain *Townley* went with 140 Men in 12 Canoes to fetch out the *Lima* Ship, but by stress of Weather was forced into Port *Marquis*, a good Harbour, a League E. of the Port of *Acapulco*; here they stay'd all Day. and the next Night rowed softly to *Acapulco*, where they found the Ship riding at anchor, 100 Yards from the Castle and Platform, so that finding it impossible to carry her off, he returned much dissatisfied aboard.

Port Marquis.

Captain Townley's design upon a Ship in this Port miscarries.

The 11th we set sail further to the W. with the Land-wind at N. E. as the Sea-winds are here at S. W. We sailed along a sandy Bay 20 Leagues in length, where there was good anchorage two Mile from the Shoar, but the Sea Waves fall with such a violence against it, that there is no safe landing place. Near the Sea side the Grounds are low, and well stor'd with Trees, especially with spreading Palm-trees, which are sometimes 20 or 30 Foot high, but no bigger than an ordinary Ash. The inland Country is intermix'd with many small peaked Hills, which are for the most part barren, but the Vallies very fertile.

A Bay of 20 Leagues long.

At the W. end of this Bay jets out into the Sea the Hill of *Petaplan*, at 17 deg. 20 min. N. Lat. being a round Point that appears like an Isle at Sea; a little farther to the W. is a knot of round Hills; we entred betwixt these and the Point, where we anchored at the N. W. side of the Hill, at 11 Fathom Water. Here we sent 170 Men ashoar, who marching 14 Miles into the Country, came to a wretched *Indian* Village, left by the Inhabitants, so that we met with no body but a *Mulatto* Woman with 4 small Children. Being brought aboard she declared, that a Caravan of Mules, laden with Flower and other Goods, design'd for *Acapulco*, had stop'd their Journey on the Road to the W. of this Village; so we sailed farther to the W. the 18th about 2 Leagues, to a place called *Chequetan*, a pretty good Harbour, having the conveniency of a fresh Water River, and good store of Wood. We landed 95 Men the 19th, in 6 Canoes (having the *Mulatto* Woman for their Guide) at *Estapa*, a League W. of *Chequetan*; hence they were carried, by their Guide, thro' a pathless Wood along a River, into a Plain, and near which, in a Farm House, they found the beforementioned Caravan, consisting of 60 Mules laden with Flower, Chocolate, Cheeses, and Earthen-ware; all this they convey'd, except the Earthen Vessels, with some Beef they had killed, and brought to their Canoes, and thence to our Ships. Capt. *Swan* went afterwards ashoar and kill'd 18 Cows more, without the least opposition. The Country is woody, but fertile, and water'd with many Brooks and Rivers.

The Point of Petaplan.

The Harbour of Chequetan.

They take a Caravan of Mules.

The 21st we sail'd with the Land-wind, which is at N. here, and the Sea-wind at W. S. W. Coasting along to the W. At first the Land appears with ragged Hills, but further to the W. with fruitful Vallies betwixt them. The 25th we passed by a high Hill, divided into two Parts or Peaks, at 18 deg. 8 min. N. Lat. the *Spaniards* say there stands a Town call'd *Thelupan*, not far from it, but we could not find the way to it. The 26th 200 Men were sent to endeavour to find out the City of *Colima*, a rich place; but tho' they row'd 20 Leagues along the Shoar, they could not meet with any place to land in, and saw not the least sign of any Inhabitants. At two places they saw two Horse-men, and our Men followed them, but lost the tract in the Woods, so we returned the 28th aboard, and soon after the *Volcan* or burning Mountain of *Colima*, very remarkable for its height, at 18 deg. 36 min. N. Lat. 6 Leagues from the Sea side appeared, with two high Points, from each of which issues always, either Fire or Smoak. The Valley in which it stands bears the name of the Mountain, as does likewise the adjacent Town, the chief City of all the Circumjacent Country.

The Volcan of Colima.

The Valley of Colima.

If we may credit the *Spaniards* it is a most delightful and fertile Valley, abounding in Cocoes, Corn and Plantains, being 10 or 12 Leagues wide to the Sea, and stretching a great way into the Country; but there is no landing place near it, by reason of the impetuosity of the Waves: for about two Leagues from the E. side is low woody Ground, at the end whereof is a deep River which disembogues into the Sea, but by reason of a Land-bank at the Mouth, there is no entrance, even for Canoes. 1685.

The 29th 200 Men were sent again to try whether they could find any Path or Tract leading to the Town of *Sallagua*, seated, as the *Spaniards* report, at the W. end of the Bay of the Valley of *Colima*; but the Waves running so high that there was no landing, they returned aboard the 30th. The first of *December* we came in sight of the Port of *Sallagua*, at 18 deg. 52 min. It is a Bay parted by a rocky Point about the middle, so that it appears like two distinct Harbours, in either of which is safe anchoring at 10 or 12 fathom Water, tho' the W. Harbour is the best, having besides this the conveniency of a fresh Water Rivulet falling into the Sea; we saw a good number of armed *Spaniards*, unto whom we gave a visit the next Morning with 200 of our best Men, but the Foot never stood one Charge, and the Horse did soon follow them. In the pursuit, our Men fighting upon a broad Road leading thro' a woody and rocky Country, followed it for 4 Leagues, but finding not the least foot-steps of any Inhabitants, they turned back, and in their way took 2 straggling *Mulatto's*, who assured them that the broad Road did lead to the City of *Carrah*, four long Days travelling from hence, and that these Men were sent from that City, to secure the Ship from *Manilla*, that was to set Passengers ashoar there. The *Spanish* Maps place the Town of *Sallagua* hereabouts, but we could see no signs of it.

The Port of Sallagua.

The City of Carrah.

The 6th of *December* we set sail again, Coasting it to the West towards Cape *Corientes*, in hopes of meeting thereabouts with the Ship expected from the *Philippines*. The Sea-winds are here N. W. and the Land-wind at N. the Land indifferent high, interspers'd with many ragged Points, and woody. Here I was afflicted with the Dropsy, and so were many of our Men, this being a common Disease on this Coast: the Natives pretend to cure it with the Stone, or Cod, of an Allegator, (of which they have four, *viz.* one near each Leg, within the Flesh) beaten to Powder, but we had not the good Fortune to meet with any of these Creatures, tho' they are sometimes found hereabouts.

The Dropsy a general Distemper on this Coast.

Betwixt *Sallagua* and Cape *Corientes* are divers good Ports we did not touch at; as we approach'd the Cape it appear'd with many white Cliffs, and deeper into the Country with peaked Hills; to the W. of these runs a ridge of Mountains, beginning with a high steep Mountain at the E. end, with 3 Peaks resembling a Crown, whence the *Spaniards* call it *Coronada*, i. e. the *Crown Land*; but at the W. end it terminates into an easie descent.

The Coronada.

The 11th we were in sight of Cape *Corientes*, bearing N. by W. and the *Coronada* to the N. This Cape is pretty high, very steep and Rocky towards the Sea, but flat on the top, and covered with Trees; it is at 20 deg. 28 min. N. Lat. I found its Longitude from *Tenariff* 230 d. 56 min. keeping my Longitude to the W. according to our Course; pursuant to which computation it is from the *Lizard* in *England* 121 d. 41 min. and the difference of Time 8 Hours 6 min. The Ship from the *Philippines* being obliged to make this Point in her Voyage homewards, we took our Stations, with our 4 Sail so, as that we judg'd we could not well miss the Ship; but as we wanted Provisions, 50 or 60 Men were sent in a Bark to the W. of the Cape to get some; they returned the 17th, but without any purchase, not being able to get about the Cape, the Wind being generally N. W. and S. W. on this Coast, however they left 4 Canoes man'd with 46 Men behind, who intended to row to the W. The 18th we set sail towards the Isles of *Chametly*, 18 Leagues to the E. of Cape *Corientes*; they are five low, small, and woody Isles, surrounded with Rocks, and lying in form of a Half-moon, within a Mile from the Shoar, betwixt which and these Isles, is safe Anchorage; they are Inhabited by Fishermen, Servants to some of the Inhabitants of the City of *Purification*, a considerable place 14 Leagues up in the Country. The 20th we entred on the S. E. side, and anchored betwixt the Isles and the Continent; we found here fresh Water, Wood and Rock-fish in great plenty. The 21st 60 of our Men, under Capt. *Townley*, were sent 7 or 8 Leagues to the W. to surprize an *Indian* Village.

Cape Corientes.

They cruize in expectation of a rich Prize.

The Isles of Chametly.

The 24th the four Canoes left thereabouts by Capt. *Townley's* Bark return'd to us near the Cape, having got beyond it by the help of their Oars, and landed in the Valley of *Valderas*, or *Val d'Iris*, i. e. they *Valley of Flags*, lying at the bottom of a deep Bay, enclosed between

The Valley of Valderas.

1686 reen Cape *Corientes* on the S. E. and the Point *Pontique* on the N. W. The breadth of the Valley is three Leagues; the Sandy Bay is level to the Sea, and affords a good landing place; in the midst is a good fresh Water River, Navigable with Boats; but at the latter end of the dry Season, *viz.* in *February*, *March* and *April*, it becomes brackish. On the Land side this Valley is bounded by a green Hill, which by its easie descent into the Valley affords a delightful Prospect, no less than the spacious Plains of Pasture Grounds stor'd with Cattel, the pleasant Groves of Guavaes, Orange and Lime Trees, which grow wild here in vast numbers.

A fierce Skirmish between the Spaniards and some Privateers.

In this delightful Valley we landed 37 Men, who advancing three mile into the Country, were attack'd by 150 *Spaniards*, Horse and Foot; by good chance there was an adjacent Wood which afforded a happy retreat to our Men, who from thence fired so furiously upon the *Spaniards*, that they kill'd their Leader and seventeen Troopers, besides many wounded, with the loss only of four Men, and two wounded, this made the Enemy retreat; however, had the Foot seconded the Horse, scarce one of our Men would have escaped.

The 28th Capt. *Townley* return'd aboard with forty Bushels of Maiz, which he had taken in an *Indian* Village to the E. of Cape *Corientes*, five Leagues in the Country. We continued Cruizing, off this Cape, till the first of *January*, when we set sail for the Valley of *Valderas*, to provide our selves with some Beef; at Night we anchored at 60 Fathom Water, a Mile from the Shoar. We continued here till the 7th, and landed 240 Men, (50 whereof were constantly employ'd to watch the motions of the *Spaniards*) we killed and salted as much Beef as would serve us two Months, and had we not wanted Salt, we might have had much more.

1685.

Their Design upon the Manilla Ship miscarries.

By this time our hopes of meeting with the *Manilla* Ship being quite vanished, we concluded, that whilst we had been employ'd in looking for Provision ashoar, she had given us the slip to the E. which proved true according to the account we had afterwards by several Prisoners; the loss of so great and rich a Prize must chiefly be attributed to the Wilfulness of Capt. *Swan*, who would needs attempt the taking of the *Lima* Ship in the Harbour of *Acapulco*, when at the same time we ought to have provided our selves (as we could have done) with Beef and Maiz for such an Enterprize, which whilst we were forced to seek we lost our Prey; whereas, had we not wanted Necessaries we might have gone even as far as to Cape *Lucas* in *California*, where Sir *Thomas Cavendish* formerly took one of these *Manilla* Ships. Hitherto we had a double Design in view; first, The taking the *Manilla* Ship; secondly, the search after rich Towns and Mines near this Coast, not knowing that the Wealth hereabouts did lie in the inland Country; but now finding our selves quite deceived in our Hopes we parted, Capt. *Townley* going back to the East, and we in Captain *Swan*'s Ship to the West.

And for what reason.

The Point Pontique.

The 7th of *January* we set sail from this Valley, the Land-wind at N. W. and at Night passed by *Pontique*, the W. Point of the Valley of *Valderas*, 10 Leagues from Cape *Corientes*, at 20 deg. 50 min. N. Lat. A League beyond it to the W. are 2 little Isles call'd the *Pontiques*; beyond these the Shoar runs ragged to the North for 18 Leagues. The 14th we came to anchor in a Channel, betwixt a small white rocky Isle and the Continent, at 14 Fathom, at 21 deg. 15 min. The Isle is 3 Leagues from the Main, we anchored one League from it. From this Island the Land runs in N. making a sandy Bay; we anchored one League from the Continent, but there is no landing; we found the Land-wind all along here at N. E. and the Sea-wind at N. W. The 20th we anchored one League on the E. side of the Isles of *Chametly* (different from the beforementioned) being a knot of 6 small Isles, at 23 deg. 11 min. a little to the South of the Tropick of *Cancer*, 3 Leagues from the Continent; one or two of them, only, have some sandy Creeks to the Sea side, and produce a certain Fruit call'd Penguins. These are of two sorts red and yellow; the last grows on a Stem of the thickness of a Man's Arm, a foot from the Ground, with Leaves of half a Foot long, and one Inch broad, edg'd with prickles. The Fruit grows just at the top of the Stalk in clusters; they are round, and of the bigness of a Hens Egg; the Rind is pretty thick, and the Pulp full of black Seeds, of a delightful Taste. The red Penguin is no bigger than a dry Onion, but of the shape of one of our Nine-pins; it does not grow on a Stalk,

The Isles of Chametly.

The Penguins.

but immediately out of the Ground, standing upright, sometimes 60 or 70 in a cluster, being encompassed with prickly Leaves of one Foot and a half long, or two Foot long. 1686.

Captain *Swan* went with 100 Men to the North, to find out the River *Cullacan*, supposed to lye at 24 deg. N. Lat. in the Province of *Cullacan*, with a fair rich Town upon its Banks; but tho' they had row'd above 30 Leagues they could find no River, neither was there any safe landing place. 7 Leagues N. N. W. from the Isles of *Chametly*, is a Lake with a narrow entrance, at 23 deg. 30 min. call'd *Rio de Sall* by the *Spaniards*; it having Water enough for Canoes to enter; our Men landed on the W. side, and took some Maiz at an adjacent Farm-house; and at another landing an *Indian*, who inform'd us, that 5 Leagues thence there was an *Indian* Town, so our Men marched towards it, and coming near the place were encountred by a good body of *Spaniards* and *Indians*; but these being beaten back after the first Charge, they entred the Town, where they found only two or three wounded *Indians*, who told them, that the Town was called *Massalcan*, and that 5 Leagues thence there were two rich Gold Mines. We staid here till the 2d of *February*, when 80 Men were sent and landed in the River *Rosario*. About three Leagues from the Sea they came to a pretty little Town (of the same Name) where the Prisoners assured them, that the beforementioned Mines were not above two Leagues thence; but as we had present occasion for Provisions, we carried aboard 90 Bushels of Maiz, without searching after the Mines. The 3d we anchor'd against the mouth of the River *Rosario*, one League from the Shoar, in 7 Fathom, at 22 deg. 51 min. N. Lat. But as this small quantity of Provisions was not likely to do our business for our intended Voyage, we landed the 8th 40 Men, to seek the River *Oleta* (supposed to lye to the East of the River *Rosario*) but they returning without any Booty, or without being able to find it, we resolved to go on to the East, to the River of St. *Jago*, where we anchored the 11th, two miles from the Shoar, in 7 Fathom Water, soft ouzy Ground, three Leagues from the white high Rock of *Manenteibo*, bearing W. N. W. as the high Hill of *Xelisco* bore S. E. of us.

The Salt Lake.

The Town of Massalcan.

The River Rosario.

The River of St. *Jago*, one of the most considerable on this Coast, is at 22 deg. 15 min. it has 10 Foot Water on the Bar at low Water, but the hight it flows I am not able to tell; its breadth at the Entrance is about half a Mile, but it is broader within, 3 or 4 Rivers exonerating themselves into it there. The Water is brackish, but near the Mouth, on the sandy Shoar, you may dig fresh Water at 3 or 4 Foot. Captain *Swan* sent out 70 Men to look for a Town, the Country having a fair aspect. After they had row'd up and down two Days, they landed in a plentiful Corn field, where whilst they were busy in gathering the Maiz (which was near ripe) they espy'd, and seiz'd, an *Indian*, who told them, that four League further there was a Town call'd St. *Pecaque*. They were no sooner come on board but Captain *Swan* with 140 Men, went in 8 Canoes 5 Leagues up the River, which was thereabouts not above a Pistol-shot wide, with high Banks, and landing his Men march'd thro' fertile Plains and Woods for 3 or 4 Hours; at their approach the *Spaniards* quitted the place, so we entred it without opposition.

The River of St. Jago.

The Town of St. *Pecaque* is seated on the side of a Wood in a spacious Plain; it is not very large but neatly built, with a square Market place in the middle, as most *Spanish* Towns are, and has two Churches. There are Silver Mines 5 or 6 Leagues from this Town, the Oar whereof, is carried from this Town by Mules to *Compostella*, where it is refined.

The Town of St. Pecaque.

Compostella is the Capital City of this part of *Mexico*, 21 Leagues distant from *Pecaque*, inhabited by about 70 white Families, and 5 or 600 *Mulattoes* and *Indians*. As our Men found plenty of Maiz, Sugar, Salt and Salt-fish here, so Captain *Swan* ordered one half of them to carry the Provisions aboard, whilst the other half took care of the Town; this they did by turns, having got some Horses to ease them in their labour. Thus they continued for two Days, but the 19th Captain *Swan* being inform'd by a Prisoner, that 1000 arm'd Men were lately march'd from St. *Jago* (a rich Town upon the River three Leagues thence) to attack our Men, he order'd his Men to get all the Horses they could, and to march altogether, with what Provisions they could carry, to their Canoes; but they refusing to obey him, till all the Provisions could be carried aboard, he was forced to let

The City of Compostella.

one

1686. one half of them go on with 54 Horſes; but they had not marched a Mile before the *Spaniards* (who did lie in ambuſh) attack'd and kill'd them all upon the ſpot. Captain *Swan* march'd to their relief, but came too late, they being all ſlain and ſtript, tho' at the ſame time they never attempted to engage him, having queſtionleſs paid pretty dear for their Victory. Among the ſlain was Mr. *Ringroſe*, who publiſhed the Account of Captain *Sharp*'s Adventures.

Fifty Priſoners kill'd.

Captain *Swan* being return'd aboard with the reſt of his Men with what Proviſions they had got, it was reſolved to ſail to Cape St. *Lucas* on *California*, in hopes of getting a Commerce with the *Indians* there, and conſequently in the Lake of *California*. This Lake is properly a Channel or part of the Sea betwixt the Iſle and the Continent, but either not much known by the *Spaniards*, or elſe concealed by them, for fear that the other *European* Nations ſhould find out that way to the Mines of *New-Mexico*, for they vary conſiderably about it in their Charts; ſome make it an Iſle, ſome joyn it with the Continent, but not one of them, that I know of, give an account of the Tides the Depth, Harbours in or near this Lake, whereas their Hydrographical Maps deſcribe the Coaſt towards *Aſia* on the Weſt ſide of the Iſle from Cape St. *Lucas* to 40 Deg. N.

The Lake of California.

New-Mexico.

New-Mexico (according to the report of the *Spaniards* and ſome *Engliſh* Priſoners there) lies near 50 Leagues N. W. from *Old-Mexico*, where the richeſt Mines of all this Country are ſuppoſed to be, tho' there are queſtionleſs ſome alſo in other Parts hereabouts as well as on the Continent near the Continent of *California*; tho' as the *Spaniards* have Mines enough to manage, they have not taken the pains to diſcover them, and the vaſt diſtance of this Country has no doubt been the occaſion that no Diſcoveries have been made by others, nor are likely to be made, unleſs a nearer way could be found hither, I mean by the N. W.

I am not ignorant that divers unſucceſsful attempts have been made for the diſcovery of a N. W. Paſſage, the reaſon whereof, I attribute to their ſearching for that Paſſage at the beginning thro' *Davis*'s or *Hudſon*'s Bay; whereas in my opinion, the ſame ought to be begun in the South Seas, and thence along by *California*, and ſo ſeek a Paſſage back into the Weſt Seas. The ſame Rule might be obſerved in diſcovering the N. E. Paſſage, *viz.* to winter about *Japan*, *Corea* and the N. E. part of *China*, and ſo to take the advantage of the approaching Spring and Summer to go along the Coaſt of *Tartary*, whence you may have time enough to reach *Archangel* or ſome other Port on thoſe Coaſts. 1686.

The N. W. and N. E. Paſſages.

From hence we ſet ſail the 21ſt. towards *California* with a N. W. and W. N. W. Wind; after we came paſt the Iſles of *S. Maria*, we had ſtrong Winds at N. and N. N. W. and at N. (the uſual Trade-wind) and conſequently loſt ground till the 6th. of *February*; ſo that the 7th. we were forced to ſteer to the Eaſt again to the *Maria*'s, where we anchored the 7th. at the Eaſt end of the middlemoſt of theſe Iſles in 8 Fathom good clean Sand; this Iſle we call'd *Prince George*'s Iſle.

The Iſles call'd *Maria*'s are three Iſlands ſtretching N. W. and S. E. 14 Leagues, of an indifferent height, ſtony, barren and uninhabited, at 21 Deg. 40 Min. Lat. 40 Leagues diſtant from Cape St. *Lucas* on *California*, bearing E. S. E. and 20 Leagues from Cape *Corientes*, bearing upon the ſame Points of the Compaſs with Cape St. *Lucas*. They produce ſome Cedars, and near the Sea ſide a green prickly Plant, with Leaves not unlike the *Penguin* Leaf, and a Root like that of the *Semper-vive*, but much longer. The *Indians* of *California* have great part of their ſubſiſtance from theſe Roots; we bak'd and eat ſome of them, and found them to taſte like the *Engliſh* Burdock boil'd. I had been long ſick with the Dropſie, ſo I was laid in the Sand and covered up to the Head for half an Hour; I did ſweat exceedingly, and I believe with good effect, for I began to mend ſoon after. We ſpent here in careening till the 26th; but as there is no freſh Water to be got here in the dry Seaſon, ſo we were forced to ſail to the Valley of *Valderas*, where we anchored the 28th. near the Mouth of the beforementioned River, which being alſo brackiſh at this time, we ſail'd 3 Leagues nearer to the Cape *Corientes* and anchored by a ſmall round Iſle half a Mile from the Shoar, 4 Leagues to the N. of the Cape. The Rivulet where we fill'd our Water is on the Continent juſt oppoſite to the Iſle.

The Iſles Maria's

Being by this time ſufficiently convinced of our miſtake concerning the Riches of this Coaſt, and the Probability of finding ſome Sea-ports worth our taking, founded upon an erroneous opinion, we had conceived, that the Commerce on this Coaſt was carried on by Sea, whereas the ſame is managed by Land, by the help of Mules; I ſay, we being now to our coſt convinced of our error, we were the ſooner prevail'd upon to try our Fortune in the *Eaſt-Indies*.

CHAP. IX.

They ſet Sail for Guam, *and thence to the* Eaſt-Indies. *A Deſcription of the* Philippine *Iſlands, and the Port and Town of* Manilla. *Of the Iſle of* Mindanao; *of* Pulo Condore. *The Iſle of St.* John *on the* Chineſe *Coaſt. Of the Iſles of the* Piſcadores *and* Formoſa.

OUR Men, as I told you, being encouraged with the hopes of better ſucceſs for the Future (notwithſtanding a thouſand obſtacles that lay in our way) and the perſuaſions of Captain *Swan*, we ſet ſail from Cape *Corientes March* the 31ſt. with the Land-wind at E. N. E. till 4 Leagues at Sea, when a freſh Sea-wind at W. N. W. carried us by Night 9 Leagues S. W. from the Cape. Next Morning the Sea-wind blowing briskly at N. N. E. we were at noon 30 Leagues from the Cape; for ſo ſoon as you are clear of the Shoar and Land-winds, the Sea Breezes are at E. N. E. where it ſtood till we found our ſelves within 40 Leagues of *Guam*. After the firſt Day we advanced apace in our Voyage, having very fair Weather and a freſh Trade-wind. At our firſt ſetting out we directed our courſe to 13 Deg. Lat. which is much the ſame Latitude with *Guam*; then we ſteered Weſt in that Latitude. In all this Voyage, we ſaw neither Fiſh nor Fowl, except once, being then, according to my account 4975 Miles W. from Cape *Corientes* in the Kingdom of *Mexico*; then we ſaw a vaſt number of Boobies, ſuppoſed to come from ſome Rocks not far off, and mentioned in ſome Hydrographical Maps; but we did not ſee them. After we had ſail'd 1900 Miles our Men began to murmur, but being encouraged with fair words by captain *Swan* we ſail'd forward, and ſeeing ſome Clouds ſetting in the Weſt, the ſame were look'd upon as the forerunners of Land. The 20th of *May* at 4 of the Clock in the Afternoon (being at 12 Deg. 55 Min. Lat. and ſteering Weſt) we diſcovered to our great joy the Iſle of *Guam* at 8 Leagues diſtance; for as our Bark paſs'd over a rocky Shoal, and that no mention of ſuch a Shoal is made in the *Spaniſh* Charts, we were not a little doubtful, whether the Land we ſaw was the Iſle of *Guam*; for we had only 3 Day's Proviſion left. Now the Iſle of *Guam* bore N. N. E. 8 Leagues; this gives 22 Min. to my Latitude, and takes 9 from my Merid. diſtance; ſo, that the Iſle is at 12 Deg. 21 Min. Lat. and the Meridian diſtance from *Corientes* 7302 Miles, or 125 Deg. 11 Min.

1686. *They ſet ſail for the* Ladrone *Iſlands.*

The Sea-men murmur.

They diſcover Guam.

Guam is one of the *Ladrone* Iſles under the *Spaniſh* juriſdiction; its length is 12 Leagues, and its breadth 4, lying North and South, defended by a ſmall Fort with 6 Guns, and a Garriſon of 30 Soldiers, under the conduct of a *Spaniſh* Governor; for the conveniency of the *Philippine* Ships that touch here for refreſhments in their Voyage from *Acapulco* to *Manilla*. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, producing Rice, Pine-Apples, Water-melons, Musk-melons, Oranges, Limes, Coco-Nuts and a certain Fruit call'd the Bread-fruit, growing on a Tree as big as our large Apple Trees, with dark Leaves. The Fruit is round and grows in the Boughs like Apples, of the bigneſs of a good Penny Loaf; when it ripens it turns yellow, ſoft and ſweet; but the Natives take it green and bake it in an Oven, till the rind is turn'd black; this they ſcrape off and eat the inſide, which is ſoft and white like the inſide of new-bak'd Bread, having neither Seed nor Stone;

The Iſle of Guam.

The Bread-fruit.

1686. but if it is kept above 24 Hours it turns harsh. As this Fruit is in season 8 Months in the Year, the Natives feed upon no other sort of Bread during that time; they told us, that all the *Ladrone* Isles had plenty of it; I never heard of it in any other place.

1686. *May* the 21 we came to an Anchor on the West side of this Isle near the middle of it 1 Mile from the Shoar, there being no anchoring on the East side, by reason of the Trade-wind, which forces the Waves with great violence against it on that side. The Natives are strong limb'd, copper-colour'd, with long black Hair, small Eyes, high Noses, thick Lips and very white Teeth, and of a stern Countenance, tho' they were very affable to us. The Air is accounted very wholsome, except in the wet Season betwixt *June* and *October*. They are extremely ingenious in building certain Boats or Proes (used all over the *East-Indies*) of about 26 or 28 Foot long, and about 5 or 6 Foot high from the Keel, which is made of the Trunk of a Tree (like the Canoes) and sharp at both ends. They manage these Boats by a Paddle, instead of a Rudder and a square Sail, with such incredible swiftness, that they will sail 20 or 24 Miles an Hour: These Boats are perpendicular on one side like a Wall, but the other is round and full-belly'd like other Vessels; along this side parallel with the Boat at 6 or 7 Foot distance, is fastned a Log of light Wood of one Foot and a half wide and sharp at each end, by 2 Bamboes of 8 or 10 Foot long laid at each end of the Boat; this Log keeps the Boat from oversetting; the *Dutch* and *English* call it an Outlayer. For the rest, these *Indians* inhabit in small Villages on the West side near the Shoar, and have certain Priests to instruct them in the Christian Religion. By the means of some Presents sent to the Governor, and an obliging Letter from Captain *Swan*, we obtained good store of Hogs, Coco-Nuts, Rice, Wheaten Biskets and other Refreshments, besides 50 Pounds of *Manilla* Tobacco; and being inform'd by one of the Fryars, that the Isle of *Mindanao*, one of the *Philippine* Isles inhabited by *Mahometans* (lying in our way towards *Manilla*) was well stored with Provisions, we set sail *June* the 2d. with a strong East Wind, and

1686. arrived the 21st. at the Isle of St. *Joan* one of the *Philippine* Islands.

The *Philippine* Isles are a Range of large Islands reaching from 7 Deg. N. Lat. to 19 Deg. in length, and in breadth to 16. Deg. Longit. The chief of them is *Luconia*, where *Magellan* was kill'd with a poisoned Arrow, and is now entirely under the *Spanish* Subjection. Their Capital City here is *Manilla*, a large City and Sea-port seated at the S. E. end opposite to the Isle of *Mindora*, a place of good Strength and vast Trade, because the 2 great beforementioned Ships from *Acapulco* fetch thence vast quantities of *East-India* Commodities, brought thither by the *Chineses* and *Portugueses*, and sometimes also by the *English* of Port St. *George*; tho' by stealth; the *Spaniards* allowing no Commerce here to the *English* or *Dutch*, for fear they should discover both their Weakness and Riches of those Isles which abound in Gold. To the South of *Luconia* are 12 or 14 other large Isles (besides an infinite number of lesser ones) inhabited by *Spaniards*; but the two southermost, *viz.* that of St. *John* and *Mindanao*, are the only ones not subject to the *Spanish* jurisdiction. The Isle of St. *John* lies at betwixt 7 and 8 Deg. N. Lat. on the East side of *Mindanao* about 4 Leagues from it: Its length from N. N. W. to S. S. E. is 38 Leagues, and its breadth about the middle 24 Leagues: The Soil is very fat and fertile. The 22d. coming one League of the East side of the Isle of *Mindanao* with a S. East Wind, we steered along the East side toward the North end, till we came at 7 Deg. 40 Min. where we cast Anchor in a small Bay a Mile from the Shoar, in ten Fathom rocky foul Ground.

The Isle of *Mindanao* is next to *Luconia*, the largest of all the *Philippine* Isles, its length being 60 Leagues, and its breadth 40 or 50; the South end at 5 Deg. N. Lat. and the N. W. end reaching almost to 8 Deg. N. Lat. The Soil is generally fat, and the stony Hills produce great store of Trees, most of which are not known among us. The Valleys are watered with fresh Brooks and Rivulets, and stored with divers sorts of Semper-virent-Trees, with Rice, Water-melons, Plantains, Bananoes, Guavoes, Nutmegs, Cloves, Betel-nuts, Durians, Jacks or Jacas, Coco-nuts, Oranges, *&c.* But above all the rest a sort of Trees which grow wild in Groves Woods several Miles long, call'd the Libby-Tree, by the Natives, which furnishes the *Sago*; the poor People feed upon it instead of Bread here for 3 or 4 Months in the Year. The Tree is not unlike the Cabbage-tree, the Bark and Wood hard, full of a white Peth like that of the Elder-tree: They cut down the Tree and splitting it in the middle take out the Peth, which they stamp or beat well in a Mortar or Trough: which done, they put it in a Cloth, and pouring Water upon it, stir it up well till the Water carries also the best substance with it thro' the Cloth into the Trough; this after it is well settled they separate from the Water (by drawing it off) and bake it into Cakes. The *Sago* transported hence into other parts of the *East-Indies* is dried into small pieces like Comfits, and used with Milk of Almonds, as a good Remedy against Fluxes, being very astringent. The other Fruits being either very well known or sufficiently described by divers Authors we will forbear to describe in this place. I will only add, that the Nutmegs here are extremely large and good; but they don't care to propagate them, for fear the *Dutch*, who monopolize the Trade of the Spice Islands, should be inticed to give them a visit.

This Isle affords also both wild and tame Beasts in good numbers, as Horses, Cows, Buffles, Goats, wild Hogs, Deer, Monkeys, Guanaoes, Lizards, Snakes, Scorpions (whose Sting is in their Tails) and those call'd Centupees or 40 Leggs by the *English*, no bigger than a Goose-quill, but 5 Inches long; they sting fiercer than a Scorpion. Of tame Fowls they have only Ducks and Hens; but of the wild kind, Pidgeons, Parrots, Parakites, Turtle-Doves, Batts as big as our Kites, and of small Birds an infinite number. Their Hogs feed in a prodigious number in the Woods, and have thick knobs growing over their Eyes. In the heart of the Country are Mountains that afford a considerable deal of Gold. Their chief Fish are Bonetoes, Snooks, Cavallies, Bremes, Mullets and Sea-Tortoises; neither do they want Harbours, Creeks and Rivers. The Climate of *Mindanao* is not so excessive hot, especially near the Sea side, considering its situation near the Line, where the Sea Breezes cool the Air by Day, as the Sea-winds do at Night. The Wind blows from the East from *October* till *May*, when it blows West till *October* again. These West Winds produce the wet Season, which is fiercest in *July* and *August* and begin to remit by degrees in *September*, and cease in *October*, when the East Winds brings fair Weather till *May*.

Tho' the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Mindanao* are generally alike in Colour, Stature, and in their Religion (being *Mahometans*) yet they differ in their Language and Government. I will only mention such as are come to my knowledge; the *Hilanoones* or *Mountaineers* living in the heart of the Isle are Masters of the Golden Mines, and abound also in Bees-wax, both which they exchange with the *Mindanayans* for foreign Commodities. The *Sologues* inhabiting the N. W. end of the Isle traffick without those of *Manilla*, and some other adjacent Islands; but not with those of *Mindanao*. The *Alfoorees* were formerly under the same Government with the *Mindanayans*, but were separated from them by falling to the share of the younger Children of the Sultan of *Mindanao*, who of late has laid claim to them again. The *Mindanayans* properly so call'd, are low statur'd with small Limbs, little Heads and strait Bodies; small Eyes, short Noses, large Mouths, thin red Lips and black Teeth, but sound: Their Hair is black and strait, their Complexion tawny, but something lighter than most of the other *Indians*: They are ingenious and nimble, but much addicted to Idleness; are civil and obliging to Strangers; but implacable when once disobliged.

Their Clothings are a Turbant tied once round the Head with both the ends fringed or laced, tied in a knot and hanging down; they wear also Breeches and Frocks over them, but neither Stockings nor Shooes. The Women tie their black and long Hair in a knot hanging down behind; they are smaller featured than the Men, and have very little Feet; their Garments are only a piece of Cloth sew'd together at both ends, and a Frock reaching a little below the Waste: They covet the acquaintance and conversation of white Men, and will be very free with them, as far as they have liberty to do: One peculiar Custom they have in the City of *Mindanao*, that so soon as any Strangers arrive, the Men of *Mindanao* come aboard to invite them to their Houses, where they are sure to enquire whether one of them has a *Pagally* (or innocent Female Friend) the Strangers are in civility obliged to accept of the offer made them of such a Friend, and to shew their gratitude by a small Present; as the continuance of the same Friendship must be purchased by some other Trifles; in return whereof they have the liberty

to

1686. to eat, drink or sleep in the Friend's House (for their Money) they having no other entertainment there *Gratis*, but a little Tobacco and Betel, a certain way of begging, tho' practised even among the richest of the place.

The City of Mindanao. The Capital City of this Isle bears the same Name with the Island, and is seated on the South side 2 Miles from the Sea side upon the Bank of a small River at 7 Deg. 20 Min. N. Lat. Their Houses are built upon Posts from 14 to 20 Foot high, having only one Floor, but with many Rooms or Partitions. The Sultan's House did rest upon 150 great Posts, and was much higher than the rest, with great broad Stairs leading up to it: In the Hall stood twenty iron pieces of Canon placed on field Carriages; the General and other great Men have also some Guns in their Houses; the Floors whereof are generally well matted, they using no Chairs, but sitting cross-leg'd. *Their Food.* Their ordinary Food here is Rice, Sago and some small Fish; but the better sort eat Boufflos and Fowl, but a great deal of Rice with them; they use no Spoons, but take their Victuals up in their Fingers. *Languages.* They speak in the City of *Mindanao* both the *Mindanayan* and *Mahayan* Languages; their Prayers are in Arabick, and they retain also some *Turkish* words: Some of the old People of both Sexes can speak *Spanish*, because the *Spaniards* had formerly divers Forts on this Isle, and would without question have brought it under their subjection, had not the fear they were in of being attack'd by the *Chineses* at *Manilla* obliged them to withdraw their Troops thither, which opportunity the present Sultan's Father laid hold on to make himself Master of their Forts, and to expel them from the Isle; but at this time, as they are most afraid of the *Dutch*, so they have often invited the *English* to make a settlement there, as believing them not so encroaching as either of the beforementioned Nations.

Trades. The chief Trades in this City are Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, Carpenters and Shipwrights; for they build good Ships for Trade, War and Pleasure. *Traffick.* Their chief Commodities exported are Gold, Bees-wax and Tobacco; the two first they purchase from the *Highlanders* or *Mountaneers*, and the last grows all over the Isle in vast plenty: These they exchange for Calicoes, *Their Tobacco.* Muslins and *China* Silks. The *Mindanao* Tobacco is reckoned not inferior to that of *Manilla*, yet you may buy ten or twelve Pound of it for a Rial. The People of *Mindanao* are generally affected with a dry Scurf all over their Bodies with violent Itchings, which when scratched, raiseth the Skin into small white Flakes, like the Scales of small Fish, and after it goes away, leaves broad white Spots on their Bodies: As it is not infectious, so I did not perceive they made any great account of it. They are also sometimes troubled with the Small-Pox; but their ordinary Distempers are Fe- *Distempers.* vers, Agues, Fluxes, violent Pains and griping in the Guts. They have many Wives, but I never could learn *Marriages* their Ceremonies, except that they feast their Friends for the most part of the Night. They are under the *Their Sultan.* Government of a Sultan, who is poor enough, but so absolute, that he even commands every private Subject's Purse at pleasure; he was betwixt fifty and sixty Years old, and had twenty nine Concubines besides his Queen. When he goes abroad he is carried in a Couch upon four Mens Shoulders, attended by a Guard of *his Brother* eight or ten Men. He has a Brother call'd *Raja Laut*, who is both chief Minister and General; a shrewd Man *Their Wars.* of good Conversation, who both speaks and writes *Spanish* very well. In their Wars they make use of Swords, Lances and Hand-Cressers, a weapon much like a Bagonet, which the greatest to the meanest always wear about them; they never fight any pitch'd Battle in the Field, but make small wooden Forts defended by Guns, wherein they encamp, and so endeavour to surprize one another by small Parties; and they neither give nor take Quarter.

Religion. They are *Mahometans*, their Sabbath being on Friday, when the Sultan goes to his Mosque twice. In his Mosque they have a great Drum with one head only, call'd a *Gong*; this they use instead of a Bell, and is beaten by a Man at twelve, three, six and at nine of *Circumcision.* the Clock Day and Night. They never circumcise their Males till they are eleven or twelve Years old, which as it is done with a great deal of Solemnity, so private People keep their Children till some Man of quality or other circumcises his, and so make a general Circumcision. This Office is perform'd by a *Mahometan* Priest, who takes hold of the fore Skin with two Sticks, and snips it off with a pair of Scissars. We were present at the Circumcision of *Raja-Laut's* Son, which was performed with extraordinary Magnificence. 1686.

Their great Fast. Their only Fast I ever heard of is their Ramdam time, which was then in *August*; then they spend a whole Month in fasting every Day till Evening, when they spend an Hour in Prayers and afterwards go to Supper. This Fast begins at the new Moon, and continues till they see the next new Moon.

They anchor near the Isle of Mindanao. But it is time to return to our Voyage; we came to anchor at the N. E. side of the Isle; but understanding by some of the Natives, that the City of *Mindanao* was on the West side, we steered to the S. E. with a S. W. Wind. Coming to the S. E. end of the Isle we sail'd to the East of two small Isles three Leagues distant from the Shoar, and the 4th. of *July* anchored on the S W. side of a deep Bog four Leagues N. W. from the two beforementioned small Isles, in fifteen Fathom Water. The Land within the Bay on the East side was high and woody, yet watered with several Rivers; but on the West side bordering on the Sea, we saw large Plains abounding in long Grass, and vast store of Deer, of which we kill'd as many as we thought fit. We staid here till the 12th. when steering our Course to the W. we arrived *July* the 18th. at the entrance of the River *Come to the Mouth of the River of* of *Mindanao* at 6 Deg. 22 Min. N. Lat. and 23 Deg. *Mindanao.* 12 Min. Longit. West from the Lizard of *England*, where we anchored in 15 fathom Water clear hard Sand two Miles from the Shoar. Soon after *Raja Laut* and one of the Sultan's Sons came aboard us and demanded in *Spanish* who we were, and being told that we were *English*, they asked whether we were come to settle among them, of which they had had some promise before, and were now in hopes to see it effected, and to serve them for a Protection against the *Dutch*, whom they much dread. Truly, had we consider'd the matter, it would have been much for our advantage to have done so, considering the advantageous situation of the Isle of *Mindanao* betwixt the spice Islands (the three Isles of *Meangis* abounding in Spice and Cloves being scarce twenty Leagues hence) and the *Philippine*: *A Probability of a settlement here.* Neither did we want any thing requisite for such a settlement, being provided with all sorts of Artificers, as Carpenters, Bricklayers, Shoomakers, Taylors, &c. As also with convenient Tools and Arms, Guns, great and small, and Ammunition sufficient for such a beginning. And considering the great distance of this Island from *England*, yet we needed not to have been without hopes of seasonable Supplies thence, provided the Ships did set out from that Kingdom the latter end of *August*, and passing round *Terra del Fuego* stretch over towards *Mindanao*; or else they might coast down near the *American* Shoar, as far as it was found requisite, and then direct their Course for this Isle to avoid the *The best way to sail to the Philippine Isles.* *Dutch* Settlements, and to have the advantage of the East Trade-wind after they were past *Terra del Fuego*, by which means this Voyage might be perform'd in six or seven Months, which in passing by the Cape of *Good Hope* would at least require eight or nine Months.

But to return to *Raja Laut* and his Nephew, they invited Captain *Swan* a-shoar, and promised to furnish him with what Provisions he wanted; designing, that in the mean time we would secure our Ship in the River, for fear of the approaching West Winds, which Captain *Swan* after some consideration agreed to.

The River of Mindanao. The River on which *Mindanao* stands being but narrow, and having not above eleven foot Water on the Bar at Spring Tide, we had much ado to get our Ship about a quarter of a Mile within the Mouth, where we moved her Head and Stern in a hole, so that she always lay afloat. The City of *Mindanao* is a Mile in length, but not very broad, stretching along the right Bank of the River as you enter it, tho' it has also some Houses on the opposite side. The Inhabitants frequently came aboard us, and invited our Men to their Houses, where they were kindly entertain'd after their manner, with Tobacco and Betel; and such of them as had Money and Cloaths, did not want their *Pagallies* or *Platonique* Companions: Captain *Swan* was daily entertain'd at *Raja Laut's* House, and such of his Men as had no Money, had boil'd Rice, scraps of Fowl and of Buffloes Meat given them. After their Ramdam was over we were diverted with the Women Dancers, and such like Sports, as are usual in this Country. *They are kindly receiv'd by their Inhabitants.*

But notwithstanding all these outward appearances of Friendship, we soon after began to discover *Raja Laut's* sinister Intentions; for our Ships bottom being much eaten with the Worms (for this is the worst place in the World for Worms) and we beginning in *November* to remove the sheathing Plank to see whether the Worm had penetrated to the main Plank, in the presence of the said *Raja*, he could not forbear to discover

1687. ver his Diſappointment, by ſhaking his Head and telling us, *That he had never ſeen a Ship with two Bottoms before.* Beſides, that he did not perform his Promiſe in providing us with Beef, pretending he could get none; and borrow'd a conſiderable Sum of Gold of Captain *Swan*, which he never paid, notwithſtanding he had received conſiderable Preſents of him before. Theſe Diſappointments began to induce the greateſt part of our Men to think of leaving this Place (ſuch eſpecially as had not much Mony) therefore our Ship being provided with new Plank inſtead of the Worm-eaten, and the Bottom Sheathed and Tallow'd, by the 10th of *December*, they began to urge Captain *Swan* to prepare for the continuation of their Voyage. Captain *Swan* appointed them the 13th of *January* to be all aboard ready to ſail; but many of them being unwilling to part ſo ſoon, others having diſpers'd themſelves in the Country, (by the encouragement of *Raja Laut*) and the Captain himſelf not being very ready to come aboard by reaſon of ſome Diſorders among our Men; they depoſed him from his Command, and having choſen Captain *Teat* in his room, they weighed the 13th in the Morning, and ſet ſail the 14th of *January* from the River *Mindanao*, leaving Captain *Swan* with about ſourty four of his Men, (beſides ſixteen buried there) behind in the Town and City of *Mindanao*. We coaſted to the W. along the S. ſide of the Iſle of *Mindanao*; and the next Day we paſt in ſight of *Chambungo*, a Town of this Iſle 30 Leagues from the River of *Mindanao*, ſaid to be a good Harbour; ſix Leagues on this ſide of the W. end of the Iſle of *Mindanao*, we ſaw a great many ſmall low Iſles, and three Leagues to the S. of them another Iſland ſtretching twelve Leagues in length N. E and S. W. Betwixt theſe Iſles, and alſo betwixt them and the great Iſle, are good Channels but a ſtrong Tide. The 17th we anchored on the E. ſide of theſe Iſles in eight Fathom; and to the W. upon the Shoar of *Mindanao*, ſaw the Ruins of an old Stone Fort formerly belonging to the *Spaniards*. The 27th, we got about the W. point of *Mindanao*, lying under the Shoar to the N. with a freſh N. N. E. Gale, and continued the ſame Courſe till we came abreaſt ſome of the other *Philippine*-Iſles to the N. of us, and then ſteer'd towards them, yet ſo as to keep on the W. ſide. *February* 3d. we Anchored in a Bay on the W. ſide of a nameleſs Iſle, at 9 deg. 15 min. on the W. ſide of the Iſle of *Sebo*, in thirteen Fathom Water ouzy Ground. Its length is eight or ten Leagues. In the middle of this Bay we ſaw a low ſmall woody Iſle, haunted by a ſort of Batts of the bigneſs of a large Fowl, their Wings when extended being ſeven or eight Foot long. Every Night we ſaw them in vaſt ſwarms take their Flight towards the great Iſle, and return to the little one in the Morning.

Prepared for their Departure. *They leave Mindanao.* *And Proceed on their Voyage.* *Prodigious Batts.*

February 10th, we ſet Sail hence with a N. wind, coaſting along on the W. ſide of the reſt of the *Philippine*-Iſles. In our paſſage by *Panay* (a large Iſle Inhabited by the *Spaniards*) we ſaw many Fires, ſuppoſed to be lighted to give notice of our Approach, it being rare to ſee a Ship on this Coaſt. The 18th, we came to an Anchor at the N. W. end of the Iſle of *Mindora* in ten Fathom. It is a large Iſle, the middle of it lying at 13 deg. Lat. it ſtretches in length 40 Leagues N. W. and S. E. A ſmall Brook of freſh Water runs into the Sea near the Place were we Anchored; and we ſaw good ſtore of Hogs and Oxen, but they were ſo wild we could catch or kill none.

The Iſle of Mindora.

Whilſt we were here a Canoe with four *Indians* came hither from *Manilla*, who told us, *That the Harbour of* Manilla *was ſeldom without twenty or thirty Veſſels*, Chineſe, Portugueſe *and* Spaniards; *and that if we had a mind to Trade (clandeſtinely) they would carry our Letters to certain Merchants there.* The 21ſt, we ſet ſail again, and the 23th came to the S. E. end of the Iſle of *Luconia*, we took two *Spaniſh* Barks from *Pagaſanan*, a ſmall Town on the N. end of this Iſle, bound to *Manilla*. One of theſe had Goods aboard for the *Acapulco* Ship. The Iſle of *Luconia* extends in length 6 or 7 deg. of Lat. and its breadth near the middle 60 Leagues. The S. end is at 12 deg. 30 min. and the N. end at 19 deg. N. Lat. It is ſurrounded by many other ſmall Iſles, eſpecially at the N. end. *Mindora* is the Chief and the neareſt to it, and imparts its Name to a Channel that runs betwixt it and the Iſle of *Luconia*; call'd the Streights of *Mindora*. The Country is partly compoſed of large paſture Plains, partly of Mountains. Theſe afford ſome Gold, as the Savannahs or Plains are well ſtor'd with Buaffaloes, Bullocks, Horſes, Sheep, Goats and Hogs. The Inhabitants who live in little Towns, are *Indians* under the *Spaniſh* Juriſdiction, and inſtructed in the Romiſh Religion by *Spaniſh* Prieſts.

The Iſle of Luconia. *The Streights of Mindora.*

1687.

Manilla is the Chief, if not the only City of the Iſle of *Luconia*, ſeated at the foot of a ridge of high Hills fronting the Harbour, near the S. W. point of the Iſle, at 14 deg. N. Lat. It is defended by a ſtrong Wall, the Houſes are ſpacious, ſtrong, and covered with Pantile; and the Streets large and regular, with a Market-place in the midſt. They have many fair Churches and Convents. The Harbour is very large. Beſides the two great *Acapulco* Ships they have abundance of ſmall Veſſels of their own, the *Chineſe* have commonly thirty or forty Junks or ſtout Veſſels here; and the *Portugueſe* have alſo liberty of Trafficking in this Iſle. Many *Chineſe* Merchants reſide conſtantly in this City, a League on this ſide. The City is a ſtrong Fort to defend the Harbour where the great Ships lay at Anchor. The greateſt part of this Relation I had from Mr. *Coppinger*, our Chirurgion, who came hither from the Coaſt of *Coromandel*.

The City and Harbour of Manilla.

The time of the Year being too far ſpent for our purpoſe, we reſolved to ſail for *Pulo Condore*, a knot of ſmall Iſles on the Coaſt of *Cambodia*, and to return in *May* to lay in wait for the *Acapulco* Ship. Accordingly the 26th of *February* we ſet ſail from *Luconia*, coming to 14 deg. N. Lat. we ſteer'd S. by W. for *Pulo Condore*, and in our way thither got ſight at the S. end of the *Pracel* ſhoals, of three little ſandy Iſles or large ſpots of Sand ſtanding juſt above the Water a Mile from us. The 13th of *March*, we came in ſight of *Pulo Condore*, i. e. The Iſle of *Condore*, and Anchored the 14th on the N. ſide of the Iſle in ten Fathom clean hard Sand, two Mile from the Shoar. *Pulo Condore* is the Chief of a knot of Iſles, and the only Inhabited one of them, at 8 deg. 40 min. N. Lat. forty Leagues S. by E. from the mouth of the River of *Cambodia*. Two of theſe Iſles are pretty high and large, the reſt very ſmall. That we ſpeak of is five Leagues long lying E. and W. and three Miles broad, but in ſome places not a Mile; the other large Iſle is three miles long, ſtretching N. and S. Betwixt theſe two at the W. end of the largeſt, is a convenient Harbour, the Entrance at the north ſide, where theſe two Iſles lie a Mile aſunder. On the largeſt Iſle grows a tall Tree, the Trunk three or four Foot Diameter; which the Inhabitants cut horizontically half through a Foot from the Ground, and then cutting the upper part aſlope inwardly down till it meets with the tranſverſe Cut; thence diſtills a Liquor into a hollow made in the ſemicircular Stump, which when boil'd becomes good Tar, and if boil'd more, perfect Pitch; and anſwers both uſes. Such a Tree affords two Quarts of Juice every Day for a Month together, then dries up and recovers again. Here are alſo *Mango*-Trees, the Fruit whereof they Pickle whilſt green, with Salt, Vinegar and a little Garlick. Grapes grow in this Iſle on a ſtrait Tree of a foot Diameter, in cluſters about the Body of the Tree like the Cocoes, They are both Red and White much like our Grapes, and of a pleaſant Taſte.

The Pracel-Shoals. *The Iſle of Condore.* *A Tree affording Pitch and Tar.* *Mangoes.* *The Vine-Tree.*

This Iſle alſo abounds in wild Nutmeg Trees: Theſe are of the bigneſs of our Walnut-Trees, and the Fruit grows among the Boughs like our Walnuts: It is ſmaller than the true Nutmeg, but grows like it, and is of the ſame ſhape, but without Smell or Taſte. Beſides Hogs, Guanoes and Lizards, theſe Iſles have divers ſorts of Birds, as Parrots, Parakites, Turtle-Doves, Pigeons and wild Cocks and Hens. The Sea affords Limpits, Muſſels and Tortoiſes. They have many freſh Water Brooks running into the Sea for ten Months in the Year; and lie very conveniently for Traffique with *Japan*, *China*, *Manilla*, *Tunquin*, *Cochinchina*, &c. The Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Condore*, are originally *Cochinchineſes*; of a mean Stature, but well ſhaped, much darker than the *Mindanayans*; their Hair is ſtreight and black, their Eyes of the ſame Colour, but ſmall, and ſo are their Noſes, yet pretty high; their Lips thin, with a little Mouth and white Teeth. They are very Civil but Poor, having no other Employment but to gather the Juice for Tar, and draw ſome Oil from the Fat of the Tortoiſes; which they Tranſport to *Cochinchina*. They offer their Women to all Strangers for a very ſmall matter, a Cuſtom uſed alſo at *Peru*, *Siam*, *Cochinchina* and *Cambodia*, in the *Weſt-Indies*, and on the Coaſt of *Guinea* in *Africa*, and alſo at *Tunquin*. They are Pagans, and Worſhip chiefly the Elephant and Horſe, beſides other Images of Birds and Fiſh; but I obſerved none of a human Shape. The 15th of *March* we look'd for a Place to careen in, and having met with one, we entred the ſame the 16th, where we ſtay'd till the 16th of *April*; when we went hence

Wild Nutmeg-Tree. *The Inhabitants.* *Their Religion.*

1687 hence to the place where we Anchored before on the north side of the great Isle, to fill fresh Water, which being accomplish'd by the 21th, we set sail again from *Pulo Condore*, our Course W. by S. with an E. N. E. Wind for the Bay of *Siam*.

Pulo Ubi. The 23th we came to the Isle of *Ubi* forty Leagues W. of the Isle of *Condore*, lying at the Entrance near the S. W. Point of Land, that makes the Bay of *Siam*; call'd the Point of *Cambodia*. Its Circumference is seven or eight Leagues, being higher Land than any of the *Condore*-Isles. It has good Water on the N. side, where you may Anchor; but the best Anchorage is on the E. side against a small Bay. The 24th we entred the Bay of *Siam*, which is very deep; and went in among the Isles at the bottom of the Bay. In one of these we found a small Village inhabited by Fishermen, but no Fish, so we turn'd back; but being becalm'd did not return to *Pulo Ubi* till *May* 13th, where we cast Anchor on the east side, and were detain'd by Tempests till the 20th. The 21th of *May*, we set sail thence back for *Pulo Condores*, where we came to an Anchor the 24th. Here five or six of our Men going aboard a *Malayan* Vessel, were stabb'd by the Ship's Crew. *June* the 4th, being provided with Fuel and fresh Water, we set sail from *Pulo Condore* with a S. W. Wind, intended to sail for *Manilla*; but the Wind soon after turning E. and S. E. and continuing so for ten Days, we were forced to alter our Course, and to steer for the Isle of *Prata*, a small low Island enclosed with Rocks, in the way betwixt *Canton* (a *Chinese* Sea-Port) and *Manilla*, at 20 deg. 4 min. N. Lat. But the east Winds continuing for five or six Days longer with great violence; we saw our selves obliged to alter our Resolution once more, and to follow the Wind which brought us near the *Chinese* Shoar the 25th of *June*, where we came to an Anchor on the N. E. end of the Isle of S. *John*, lying on the Sea Coast of *Quanteng* or *Canton* in *China*, at 22 deg. 30 min. N. Lat. The only Grain we observed here, was Rice in great plenty. Their tame Cattle were *China* Hoggs, Buffaloes, Goats and some Oxen. The Inhabitants were *Chineses*, and consequently now under the Subjection of the *Tartars*. For a more particular Account of both these Nations, I will refer my self to other Authors who have dwelt a considerable time in this vast Empire. In the Isle of S. *John* was a small Town built in a marshy Ground upon Posts, the Houses mean and low and ill Furnish'd. The Inhabitants live for the most part upon cultivating their Grounds, which produce Rice. Whilst we lay at Anchor here a *Chinese* Jonk Anchored near us. She was flat both at the Head and Stern, with little Hutts on her Deck of three Foot high, covered with *Palmeto*-Trees. She had a large Cabbin with an Altar and Lamp burning in it. The Hold was divided into several Partitions each of them so tight, that if a Leak should spring in one, the Goods in the next would receive no Damage. Every Merchant has his peculiar Room, where he stows his Goods, and sometimes lodges in it himself. These Jonks have no more than two Masts, *viz.* a Main-mast and Fore mast. The last has a square Sail and square Yard; but the Main-mast has a Sail narrow aloft like a Sloop's Sail; in fair Weather they use also a Top-sail, which they hawl down on the Deck in foul Weather, Yard and all. The Main-mast of the biggest Jonks are as big as any of our third Rate Men of War, but not pieced, being all of one Tree.

The Isle of Prata. *The Isle of S. John.* *A Chinese Jonk.*

As we saw the fore-runners of an approaching Tempest, we weighed Anchor not to want Sea room. It was not long before we found our guess too true, for the next Day being the 4th of *July*, the Wind coming to the N. E. we were surprized by the most violent Tempest I ever remember in all my Voyages, which lasted by intervals till the 6th, when the Weather proved very serene; we refitted our Ship, but our Men being terrify'd to the highest degree by the last Storm and dreading the approaching full Moon, resolved to steer towards the *Piscadores* or *Fisher*-Isles, at 23 deg. N. Lat. These are a good number of Islands lying betwixt the Isle of *Formosa*, and the Continent of *China*. Betwixt the two eastermost is a good Harbour; and on the west side of the eastermost is a large Town and Fort, defended by a *Tartarian* Garrison of three hundred Men. The Houses were low, but neatly built. On the Island on the west side of the Harbour near the Sea side, we saw another small Town Inhabited by *Chineses*, and most of the other Isles have some *Chineses* (more or less) living on them. We came to an Anchor in the Harbour *July* 20th, and sending our Boat ashoar, were civilly received by the *Tartarian* Governor; who sent us some Presents (among the rest a Heifer, the finest Beef I ever eat in my Life) but would not allow us either to Trade there, or come ashoar on that Isle. In return of which Mr. *Read* (now our Captain) sent him a Silver hilted Sword, a Carbine and a Golden Chain.

The Pisca-dore-Isles.

1687.

We set sail again from hence the 29th, with a S. W. Wind steering for certain Islands we had pitch'd upon that lie betwixt *Formosa* and *Luconia*, being known by no other Names than the *Five*-Isles. We sail'd by the S. W. end of *Formosa*, a large Isle situated betwixt 21 deg. 20 min. and 25 deg. 10 min. N. Lat. from S. to N. Its Longit. is from 142 deg. 5 min. to 143 deg. 16 min. E. from the Pike of *Teneriff*. It was formerly well Inhabited by the *Chinese* and *English*, but the *Tartars* have since spoil'd the Harbour for fear the *Chineses* should Fortifie themselves there. *August* 6th, we came to an Anchor on the east side of the northermost of the *Five*-Isles in fifteen Fathom Water. They lye at 20 deg. 20 min. N. Lat. and their Longit. according to the Charts is 141 deg. 50 min. Contrary to our expectation we found on the Isle near which we Anchored, three or four large Towns. The westermost Isle is the biggest; this the *Dutch* among us call'd the Prince of *Orange*'s Isle, being seven or eight Leagues long, and two broad, stretching N. and S. There are two more large Isles; the northermost we call'd *Grafton*-Isle; it stretches four League in length N. and S. and is one League and a half broad; unto the third great Isle, we gave the Name of *Monmouth*-Isle, lying to the south of *Grafton*-Isle, three Leagues long N. and S. and one broad. The other two Isles lying E. and W. betwixt *Monmouth* and the S. end of *Orange*-Isle, they are call'd the *Bashee* (from a certain Liquor we did drink there) and the *Goat*-Isles. *Orange*-Island is the largest but uninhabited, being Rocky and Barren, and no Anchorage near it. *Monmouth* and *Grafton*-Isles are Hilly, but well Inhabited. The *Goat* and *Bashee*-Isles, are flat and even, and the first has one Town in it.

The five Isles. *The Isle of Formosa.* *Orange-Isle.* *Grafton-Isle.* *Monmouth Isle* *The Goat and Bashee Isles.*

The Hills of all these Isles are Rocky, but the Valleys fertile in Grass, Plantains, Bananoes, Pine-Apples, Pumkins, Sugar-Canes, Potatoes, and some Cotten; and are well watered with Brooks of Fresh Water. They are also well stor'd with Goats and Hogs, but scarce any Fowl either Wild or Tame. The Natives are short and thick, round Visaged, with low Fore-heads and thick Eye-brows; their Eyes of a Hazel colour and small, but much bigger than the *Chineses*. Their Noses are both low and short; their Lips and Mouth middle siz'd, with white Teeth; and thick, black, lank Hair, cut short to the Ears; their Complexion is of a dark Copper colour. They go always bare Headed, and the greatest part have no other Cloaths but a Clout about the middle. Some have Jackets of Plantain-leaves as rough as a Bear-skin. The Women have a kind of a short Petticoat of a course Callicoe (of their own making) which reaches a little below the Knees. Both Sexes wear Ear-rings made of a yellow Metal (they dig out of their Mountains) having the weight and colour of true Gold, but something paler, whether it were such in effect or no I am not able to tell; for it looks of a fine Colour at first, but afterwards fades; which made us suspect it, and therefore our People did not buy too much of it. We observed the Natives to besmear it with a red Earth, and then putting it into a quick Fire till it was red hot, brought it to its former Colour again. Their Houses are small and scarce five foot high. They inhabit in Villages built on the sides of rocky Hills, three or four Rows above one another. These rocky Precipices are fram'd by nature into different degrees, or as it were deep Steps or Stories, upon each of which they build a row of their Houses, and ascend up to them gradually by Ladders set from each of these Rows, up to one another in the middle of it; which if they remove, there is no coming at them.

The Inhabitants. *A Metal like Gold.* *Their Houses and Villages.*

They are also very expert in building their Boats (for the Men live most upon Fishing) much like our *Deal*-Yalls. They have also larger Vessels managed with twelve or fourteen Oars, two Men on one Bank. They never kill any Goats or Hogs themselves, but feed upon the Guts or Entrails, and their Skins, which they broil after they have singed the Hair off. They make also a Dish of Locusts which come at certain Seasons to devour their Potatoes; they take them with Nets, and broil or bake them in an earthen Pan: This Dish eats well enough. Their ordinary Drink is Water, but besides this they boil a sort of Liquor out of the Juice of Sugar-Canes, mix'd with a sort of black Berries. This they put afterwards into Jars and let it work

Their Boats. *Their Food and Drink.*

1687. work four or five Days; after it is settled it becomes clear, and affords a strong and pleasant Liquor in Taste and Colour not unlike *English* Beer. The Natives call this Liquor *Bashee*, whence our Crew gave this Name to one of the Isles. What Language they speak I know not, as having not any affinity either with the *Chinese* or *Malayan* Languages. The Men's only Arms, are Lances headed with Iron; and they wear a kind of Armour of a Buffaloe's Hide, without any Sleeves, and reaches down below the Knees, where it is three Foot wide, and as stiff as a Board; but close about their Shoulders. I could not find them to worship any thing, nor saw I any Idols; or any Precedency or Government among themselves, except that the Children were very respectful to their Parents. However 'tis likely they have some antient Customs instead of Laws, for we saw a young Lad buried alive, as we supposed, for Theft. They have but one Wife, and the Children are very obedient to their Parents. The Boys are educated to Fishing, and the Girls to work with their Mothers in the Plantations, which are in the Valleys, where every Man plants his own Ground according to the bigness of his Family. For the rest they are a sort of civil and quiet People, not only to Strangers but also among themselves; for in all the time we were here, whilst they came frequently aboard us, and used to exchange their yellow Metal, their Goats and Fruits for Iron, we never observed them to differ either among themselves or with our Men, even when there was not occasion wanting. They have no Coin or Seals, but give their Pieces of yellow Metal by guess. During our stay here we had provided our selves with seventy or eighty fat Hogs, and good store of Potatoes for our intended Voyage to the Isle of *Manilla*. But the 25th of *September*, being again surprized by a most violent Tempest, which forced us out at Sea, where we were every moment in danger of being swallow'd up by the Sea till the 29th, when the fury of the Winds being somewhat allay'd, we made the best of our way back towards the Isle, of which we got sight the 30th, but could not come to an Anchor in the same place where we were before till the first of *October*. This last Storm so disheartned our Men, that they all resolved to lay aside their design of Cruizing before *Manilla*; but at the persuasions of Captain *Read*, and Captain *Teat* the Master, they resolved to go to Cape *Comorin*, and thence into the *Red* Sea. As the Eastern Monsoon was at hand, our nearest and best way had been to pass through the Streights of *Malacca*. But Captain *Teat* persuaded them to go round on the east side of the *Philippine*-Isles, and so keeping S. to the *Spice*-Isles, to pass into the *Indian* Ocean about the Isle of *Timor*.

Bashee a good Liquor

Their Arms and Armour.

Religion and Government.

Marriages.

1687.

CHAP. X.

The Isle Celebes *and* Bouton. Callasusung, *its Chief Town and Harbour.* New Holland. *The* Nicobar-*Isles.* Cudda *a Harbour on the Coast of* Malacca. *A Golden Mountain in* Sumatra. *The River and Town of* Passange Jonca. *Of Prince* Yeoly *who dy'd at* Oxford, *and the Isle of* Meangis *his Native Country. A Description of the Cape of* Good Hope, *and the* Dutch *Factory.*

1687. WE set sail the 3d of *October* from the Isles to the S. intending to pass through the *Spice*-Islands. We sail'd on the east side of *Luconia* and the other *Philippine*-Isles coasting to the S. From the Isle of *Luconia* we steer'd to the S. and on the 15th with a N.E. wind directed our Course W. for the Isle of *Mindanao*, where we Anchored at the S. E. end the 16th, between two small Isles lying at 5 deg. 10 min. N. Lat. four Leagues from the Isle of *Mindanao*. Whilst we laid here, the young Prince of one of the adjacent *Spice*-Islands, came aboard us, and told us, *That Captain* Swan *and some of his Men were still in the City of* Mindanao, *and highly esteem'd there for the great Services they had done against the* Alfoores. But I have been inform'd since that he and his Surgeon as they were going aboard a *Dutch* Ship in that Road, were overset and drown'd by the Natives, by *Raja Laut*'s Order (as was supposed) who had seized all his Gold.

November 2d, We set sail hence for the Island *Celebes*, where we Anchored the 9th at the N. E. end. The Isle extends its length from N. to S. at 7 deg. Lat. and in breadth 3 deg. It lies under the Line, the north end at 1 deg. 30 min. N. Lat. and the south end at 5 deg. 30 min. S. Lat. At the S. end of the Isle is a Gulph eight Leagues wide and fifty long, running directly N. into the Country, having divers small Islands in the middle of it. Near the S. end at the W. side of the Isle is seated *Macasser*, a rich and strong Town belonging to the *Dutch*. By reason of the strong Current setting to the W. we had much ado to get to the E. side of the Isle, and the 22d, being at 1 deg. 20 min. S. Lat. we saw a large Opening like a Creek, and 6 Leagues to the S. of it, a rang of large and small Isles, and many Shoals; betwixt which and the Isle of *Celebes*, we pass'd not without trouble, and came to an Anchor half a Mile from the great Island in eight Fathom sandy Ground, at 1 deg. 50 min. S. Lat. we stay'd there till the 29th, and the 30th steer'd away S. betwixt two Shoals, at 3 deg. S. Lat. ten Leagues from the Isle of *Celebes*. Towards the Evening we saw two or three Spouts. A Spout is a Piece of a Cloud hanging down seemingly sloping, and sometimes bending like a Bow, but never perpendicular. After which the Sea begins to foam, and you see the Sea move gently round, till increasing in a whirling motion, it flies upwards a hundred Spaces in circumference at the bottom, but lessening gradually to the smalness of a Spout; through which the Sea Water appears to be convey'd into the Clouds; as is manifest by the encrease of the Bulk and Blackness of the Clouds. Then you see immediately the Cloud (which was immoveable before) drive along, and the Spout keeping the same course for half an hour, till the sucking is over, and then breaking off, all the Water which was below the Spout or pendulous Cloud, falls again into the Sea with a terrible Noise and Clashing. However these Spouts are more terrible than hurtful.

The Isle of Celebes.

A Spout at Sea.

December 1st, steering S. with an E. S. E. wind at 3 deg. 34 min. S. Lat. we got sight of the Isle of *Bouton*, about ten Leagues S. W. of us. The 5th we got close to the N. W. end of *Bouton*-Isle, but the Harbour is at the east side at 4 deg. 54 min. S. Lat. This Island stretches twenty five Leagues in length S. W. and N. E. four Leagues from the S. E. end of the Isle of *Celebes*; its breadth is ten Leagues. Within a League of the Harbour and a Mile from the Sea, is a large Town call'd *Callasusung*, seated on the top of a small Hill, in a pleasant Plain enclosed with a Walk of Cocoe-Trees, and about these with a strong stone Wall. The Inhabitants are not unlike the *Mindanayans*, but neater, are Mahometans, and speak the *Malayan* Language. The Sultan is absolute Master over them. The 6th they brought us Eggs, Fowls, Potatoes, &c. aboard, and the Sultan came soon after in Person, in a Boat guarded by ten or twelve Musquetteers. We stay'd here till the 12th and then steering to the S. E. we pass'd near four or five small Isles at 5 deg. 40 min. S. Lat. six Leagues from *Callasusung* Harbour; we saw three Towns on them, and heard the Drums beating all Night as we were among the Shoals, lying on the S. W. side of these Isles. The 16th we got clear of the Shoals, and the 20th pass'd by *Omba*, a high Island at 8 deg. 20 min. S. Lat. six Leagues from the N. E. part of the Isle of *Timor*. Its length is fourteen Leagues its breadth six Leagues. Eight Leagues to the West of *Omba* we saw another Isle with a large Town on it, and Fires by Night, which by its situation we guess'd to be the Isle of *Pentare*; here we were beaten among the Shoals till the 23d. when we got thro' with a N. Wind keeping close by *Pentare*. The 28th. we saw the N. W. Point of *Timor*, distant eight Leagues S. E. by East. The Isle of *Timor* is high and mountainous stretching in length seventy Leagues N. E. and S. W. its breadth sixteen Leagues; the middle of it at 9 deg. S. Lat. The 29th, we discover'd two small Isles near the S. W. end of *Timor*, and being got clear of these, we stood off S. towards *New Holland*, part of the *Terra Australis incognita*.

The Isle of Bouton.

The Town of Callasusung.

The Isle of Omba.

The Isle of Pentare.

The Isle of Timor.

The 31st. we stood to the S. wind at W. at 13 deg. 20 min. Lat. At Night we stood to the N. for fear of a Shoal, laid down in the Charts at 23 deg. 50 min.

bear-

1688 bearing S. by W. from the E. end of *Timor*. In the Morning we saw the Shoal, being a spot of Land appearing above the Surface of the Water, with divers Rocks about it ten Foot above the Water; it is of a triangular Form, each side one League and a half long. This Shoal is represented in our Charts sixteen or twenty Leagues from *New Holland*; but we run at least sixty Leagues afterwards due S. before we fell in with it; and I am very certain that no part of *New Holland* lies so far to the N. by forty Leagues as it is laid down in our Hydrographical Maps; for I found the Tides on the Coast of *New Holland* keeping their constant Course, the Flood running N. by E. and the Ebb S. by E. The 4th of *January* we fell in with the Land of *New Holland*, at 16 deg. 50 min. Lat. and running along to the E. twelve Leagues, came to a Point of Land, three Leagues to the E. of which is a deep Bay. We Anchored a League to the E. of this Point *January* the 5th, two Mile from the Shoar, in twenty nine Fathom hard Sand and clean Ground.

Error of the Maps concerning N. Holland.

1688.

New Holland is a vast Tract of Land, but whether an Isle or part of the Continent, is unknown hitherto; thus much I am sure of, that it neither joins to *Asia*, *Africa*, or *America*. Hereabouts it was even, low and sandy Ground, the Points only excepted, which are Rocky, and some Isles in this Bay. This part had no fresh Water except what was dug, but divers sorts of Trees, and among the rest the Dragon-Tree, which produces the Gum-*Dragon* or *Dragon's Blood*. We saw neither Fruit Trees, nor as much as the Tract of any living Animal except one, which seem'd to be the Foot-step of a Beast of the bigness of a large mastiff Dog. Some few Land Birds they have, but none bigger than a black Bird, and scarce any Water Fowl. Neither does the Sea afford any other Fish except Tortoises and Manatees, of both which they have vast Plenty. The Inhabitants are the most miserable Wretches in the Universe, having no Houses or Covering but the Heavens, no Garments, except a piece of the Bark of a Tree ty'd like a Girdle round the Waste; no Sheep, Poultry, or Fruits; but feed upon a few Fish, Cockles, Mussels and Periwincles; without Religion or Government, but co-inhabit promiscuously. For the rest, their Bodies are strait, thin, and long Limb'd; with great Heads and Eyebrows, and round Foreheads. Their Eye-lids are constantly half closed to keep the Flies out, which are excessive troublesome here. They have large bottle Noses, thick Lips and wide Mouths. Both Men and Women, Old and Young, want the two Fore-Teeth of the upper Jaw, but whether they draw them I am not able to tell. They have no Beards, but black short curl'd like the *African* Negroes, and are as black as these. Their Weapons are a sort of wooden Cutlasses; instead of a Lance they have a strait Pole sharpned and hardned at the end. Of their Language I can say nothing, but that they speak pretty much in the Throat. We landed several times, and at last brought them to something of a familiarity with us, by giving them some old Cloaths; but could never prevail with them to give us the least Assistance in carrying Water or otherwise, they being very averse to working.

N. Holland.

The Dragon-Tree, and Gum-Dragon.

Its Inhabitants.

1688. We set sail from hence *March* the 12th, taking our Course N. The 26th we were in the Latit. of the *Cocoe*-Island, which lies at 12 deg. 12 min. The 28th we fell in with a small Isle at 10 deg. 30 min. We set sail from thence the same Afternoon, the wind at W. and N. W. which continued with tempestuous Weather till *April* 7th, when we got sight of the Isle of *Sumatra*, bearing N. being then at 7 deg. S. Lat. and the 8th saw the W. end of that Isle, being at 6 deg. S. Lat. We sail'd along the W. side of *Sumatra*, and the 12th came to *Triste*, an Isle scarce a Mile in Circumference, so low that the Tide over-flows it; it has a sandy Soil, and store of Coco-nuts. Its situation is 4 deg. S. 15 Leagues W. of *Sumatra*. The 19th being in 3 deg. 25 min. S. Lat. we saw the S. W. point of the Isle of *Nassaw*, bearing N. five Mile distance. The 25th we crost the Line, coasting to the N. on the W. side of *Sumatra*. *May* the 1st, we run down by the N. W. end of *Sumatra*, directing our course to the *Nicobar* Islands; we got sight of them the 4th. A cluster of Islands lying S. of the *Ordemans* Isles, but the most southerly of them is properly called the *Nicobar*, lying forty Leagues N. N. W. from the N. W. end of *Sumatra*. The Inhabitants Trade promiscuously with all the European Nations, their chief Commodities being Ambergreese and Fruits. The 5th of *May* we Anchored in a small Bay at the N. W. end of the Isle of *Nicobar*, properly so call'd, in eight Fathom Water. Its length is twelve Leagues, the breadth three or four, at 7 deg. 30 min. N. Lat. It produces great plenty of Cocoes and Mellories, a Fruit of the bigness of the *Bread*-Fruit at *Guam* (before-mentioned) which the Natives boil with Water in covered Jars. The Inhabitants here are strait Limb'd, long Visag'd, with black Eyes, and well proportion'd Noses; their Hair is lank and black, their Complexion of a Copper-colour. The Women have no Eye-brows, I suppose they pull'd them out, because the Men did not like them. The Men wear only a kind of Sash round their middle: And the Women nothing but a Petticoat from the Waste to the Knees. Their Language had some Words of *Malayan* and *Portuguese* in it. Their Habitations were built upon Posts near the Sea side; but I could find no settled Government among them. Their Canoes were flat on one side with Outlayers like those of *Guam*. Mr. *Hall*, Mr. *Ambrose* and I, being desirous to leave this unruly Crew, were set ashoar on this Isle, with an Intention to go hence to *Achin*.

1691. *The Inhabitants.*

The Author leaves the Ship.

1688. Accordingly we left this Isle *May* the 15th, with four *Malayans* and a *Portuguese* in a *Nicobar* Canoe, not much bigger than one of our below Bridge *London* Wherries. We Row'd to the S. four at a time, by turns. The 17th we look'd out for *Sumatra*, supposing we were within twenty Leagues of it, but instead thereof saw *Nicobar* at eight Leagues distance. At Noon we found 6 deg. 55 min. Lat. The 18th the Wind encreasing upon us, we were forced to run before the Wind and Sea. The Tempest was so violent, that we expected every moment to have been swallow'd by the Sea-waves. The 19th to our great Joy, one of our *Malayan* Friends, cry'd out, *Pulo Way*, i. e. the Isle of *Way*, situated near the N. W. end of *Sumatra*, which about Noon we discovered to be the Coast of *Sumatra* it self; the high Land they had mistaken for the Isle of *Way*, proved the *Golden*-Mountain of *Sumatra*. The 20th we steer'd with a W. wind for the Shoar, and in the Afternoon Anchored near the Mouth of the River *Passange Jonca* (in the Isle of *Sumatra*) thirty six Leagues to the E. of *Achin*, and six Leagues to the W. of *Diamond*-point. As we were half dead with the Fatigues of this Voyage, we were carried to a small Fisher Town near the River, where we were kindly treated by the Inhabitants, and staid till *June*, when we left this place and in three Days sail arrived at *Achin*. In *July* following I went with Captain *Welden* to *Tonquin*, and return'd to *Achin* in *April*, where I staid till *September*, when making a short Voyage to *Malacca*, I came thither again at *Christmas*. Soon after I went to Fort S. *George*, whence after a stay of five Months, I came back to *Bencouli*, an *English* Factory on the W. Coast of *Sumatra*. But before I give you an Account of my return to *England*, I must not forget to remember one Passage concerning the Painted Prince who dy'd at *Oxford*. His Name was *Feoly*, and was purchased by one Mr. *Moody* at *Mindanao*, together with his Mother. Mr. *Moody* and I went together to *Bencouli*, where at parting he gave me half the share in this Painted Prince and his Mother, and left them in my custody. They were born in the Isle of *Meangis*, abounding in Gold, Cloves and Nutmegs, as he himself told me. He was curiously Painted down the Breast, betwixt his Shoulders behind, but most of all on the Thighs before; after the nature of Flower-works. By what I could understand this Painting was done by pricking the Skin, and rubbing in it a certain Gum of a Tree call'd *Dammer*, used instead of Pitch in some parts of the *Indies*. He told me that they wore golden Ear-Rings, and Bracelets about their Arms and Legs. That their Food was Potatoes, Fowl and Fish. As to his Captivity, he said, that one Day as he, his Father and Mother, were going in a Canoe to one of the two adjacent Isles, they were taken by some *Mindanayan* Fishermen, who sold them all to the Interpreter of *Raja Laut*, with whom he and his Mother lived as Slaves five Years, and then were sold for sixty Dollars to Mr. *Moody*. Some time after Mr. *Moody* presented me also with his Share in them, but the Mother died not long after, and I had much a do to save the Son's Life.

1691.

The Golden Mountain.

The River Passange Jonca.

1688.

1689.

1690.

The Painted Prince.

During my stay at *Bencouli* I served in the quality of a Gunner of the Fort; but my time being expired, I got aboard Captain *Heath* with my Painted Prince, aboard the *Defence*, in order to my return for *England*. We set sail *January* the 25th in Company of three Ships more, but had not been long at Sea before a fatal Distemper raged aboard us, which we attributed to the badness of the Water taken in at *Bencouli* during the Land-floods, which are often impregnated with the Tinctures of poisonous Roots or Herbs. The best Remedy we had was to mix some Tamarinds with

The Author imbarks in order to his return for England.

1691.

1688. They leave New Holland.

The Isle of Triste.

The Isle of Nassaw.

The Nicobar-Isles. Nicobar properly so call'd.

1691. the Rice they eat, which I believe preserv'd the lives of many of our Men, having scarce so many left as were able, and not without great difficulty, to bring us to the Cape of *Good-Hope*, where we came to an 1691 anchor the beginning of *April*, by the assistance of a *Dutch* Captain and his Men.

The Cape of Good-Hope. The Cape of *Good-Hope* is the Southernmost Point of the Continent of *Africa*, at 34 deg. 30 min. S. Lat. in a very temperate Climate. It appears at Sea in divers remarkable Points or Eminencies, affording an agreeable Prospect, the most considerable among which is a Mountain on the W. side of the Cape, called the *The Table Mountain.* *Table Mountain*, from its flatness on the top. To the North of it is a large Harbour, with a low flat Isle lying off it, by which you may enter at either side; the best riding is near the Continent. The Country hereabouts produces good, but short, Grass and Trees, *The products of the Country.* but not in great plenty, and when cultivated affords plenty of Wheat, Barly and Pease, besides Fruits of divers sorts, as Apples, Pears, Quinces, large Pomgranates, and such plenty of Grapes as furnishes them with Wine sufficient not only for their own use, but also for sale to such Ships as come to this Cape; the Wine is sweet, pleasant and strong. Near the Harbour are but few Farms, but twenty Leagues in the Country are many Settlements of the *Dutch* and *French* Refugees. They have also plenty of Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Horses and Cows, but Oxen thrive not so well here, by reason of the short Pasturage; they have some wild Beasts, but I saw only the wild Ass, a beautiful Creature, with black and white stripes; neither do they want Ducks, Dunghil Fowl, and Ostriches, and the Sea *The Dutch Fort.* affords them abundance of Fish. Opposite to the Harbour, near the Shoar, the *Dutch* have a strong Fort (the Residence of the Governour) and to the West of it a *Dutch* Town; on the back-side whereof is the House belonging to the *East India* Company, with a spacious neat Garden, stor'd with all manner of Fruits, Herbs, Roots, Walks and Arbours.

The Hottentots. The Natives of this Country are call'd the *Hottentots*, a middle siz'd People, with small Limbs, and active Bodies, flat oval Faces, large Eye-brows and black Eyes. They besmeer their Bodies with Grease; upon their Heads they wear nothing but some Shells, and on their Bodies a Mantle of Sheep Skin, with the woolly side outwards, and another piece like an Apron hanging before from the Navel; instead of this the Women have a Sheep Skin fastned round the middle. Their Houses are very mean, and so is their Furniture, 1691. consisting only in two or three Earthen Pots to dress their Victuals in, which is Herbs, Flesh, or Shell-fish, these they catch among the Rocks. They have neither Temples, Idols, or any other peculiar place of Worship; they celebrate indeed several nocturnal Dances, with singing, at the new and full Moon; but these are performed near their Huts, and seem to be rather Pastimes, or merry meetings than any thing relating to religious Worship; for the rest, they are a lazy Generation, for they never manure their Grounds, but are contented with feeding their Cattle which they exchange for Tobacco.

After a stay of six Weeks here, we set sail, *May* 23. towards St. *Helena*, an Isle seated at 16 deg. S. Lat. where we arrived the 20th of *June*. It is about nine Leagues long, and tho' 400 Leagues from the Continent, enjoys a serene Air (except in the rainy Season) and a temperate and healthy Climate, which together with the refreshing Herbs this Isle produces, is the reason that our *East-India* Ships touch here to recover their Sea-men from the Scurvy, which they do in a little time. *They leave the Cape of Good-Hope.*

This Isle, after its first discovery by the *Portuguese*, was possess'd by the *Dutch*, but these relinquishing it for the Cape of *Good Hope*, the *English* settled here till 1672, when they were beaten out by the *Dutch*, but were forced soon after to surrender it again to the *English*, under Captain *Monday*, who have now a Fort there with a Garrison, and a good number of great Guns to defend the common landing place, being a small Bay not above 500 Paces wide; within this Bay stands a small *English* Town, the Inhabitants having their Plantations deeper into the Country, which furnish them with Potatoes, Plantains, Bonanoes, Hogs, Bullocks, Cocks and Hens, Ducks, Geese and Turkies, in vast plenty. *The Isle of St Helena.*

July 2, we left this Isle, steering our Course for *England*: we took the mid-way betwixt *Africa* and the *American* Continent, till to the North of the Line, and came to an Anchor in the *Downs* the 16th of *September* following. After my arrival in the *Thames*, being in want of Money, I sold at first, part of the Propriety I had in the beforementio'nd Prince *Icely*, and by degrees all the rest: I understood afterwards, that he was carried about for a sight, and shown for Money, and that at last he died of the small Pox at *Oxford*. 1691.

CHAP. XI.

The Author's departure from Achin *through the Streights of* Malacca. *The River* Domao. *His arrival at* Cachao. *A description of* Tonquin, *and of* Cachao. *The state of Christianity in these Parts. The Author's departure from* Tonquin. *Of the Country of* Cambodia. *The Author's departure from* Malacca, *and arrival at* Achin; *a description of that place; of the Coast of* Sumatra *and of* Malacca; *of the Isle of* Dinding; *of Fort St.* George, *and of* Bencoyl *in* Sumatra.

1688. *The Author's departure for* Achin. IN the last Chapter I told you, that I took several Voyages from *Achin* to divers places on the adjacent Coasts. I set sail with Captain *Welden* thence thro' the Streights of *Malacca*, and keeping near the Shoar past'd by the mouth of the River *Ichore*, owing its name to the capital City of the little Kingdom of *Ichore*, on the Continent of *Malacca*, inhabited by Mahometans. At the farther end of the Streights of *Malacca* are the Isles of *Ora* and *Timaon*. Being got clear of the Islands, we steer'd away in the Ocean till we came in sight of the Isle of *Condore*, which leaving on our Starboard, we haul'd over for the Continent to the River of *Cambodia*; but leaving that also on our Starboard side, we coasted to the East, near the *Champa* Shoar, till we had doubled the S. W. Point of the Bay of *Tonquin*. This Isle is at 13 deg. N. bordering upon the *Cochinese*. We kept Coasting along this Shoar to the Isles of *Champello*, on the Coast of *Cochinchina*, at 16 deg. 45 min. and 13 deg. 45 min. Opposite to these, on the Continent, a large navigable River exonerates it self into the Sea, upon which stands *Quinam*, the Capital City of *Cochinchina*, trading in Pepper, Lignum, Aloes and Agoala-wood.

We kept just without the Isles 6 Leagues further, and then stood over towards the N. E. End of the Bay of *Tonquin*; the entrance of this Bay is between the S. E. Point of *Champa* on the West side, 12 deg. N. Lat. and the Isles of *Aynam* near the S. W. part of *China* on the East side. This Isle lies at 19 deg. N. Latitude, and is Inhabited by *Chineses*. Just before the mouth of the Bay the great Shoal of *Pracel* stretches for a considerable length, yet so, that Ships may pass thro' the two Channels at each end. The Bay of *Tonquin* is twenty Leagues wide, and forty six Fathom Water where it is deepest. The chief River of *Tonquin* exonerates it self in several Branches into this Bay; one is call'd *Rokbo*, near the N. W. corner of the Bay, at 20 deg. 6 min. N. Latitude; the other call'd *Domea* disembogues twenty Leagues N. E. of *Rokbo*, at 20 deg. 45 min. this is both longer and deeper than the former, and frequented by the *European* Ships; we entred at about half Flood at fourteen Foot and a half Water at the Bar. Six Leagues within the mouth is the Village of *Domea*, where the *Dutch* always anchor, but we went one League higher, where we staid for the coming of our Merchants in Boats from *Cachao* the chief City of this Kingdom; eighty Miles higher up the River from our anchoring place, the Tide runs forty Miles beyond where we now lay, and sixty Miles thence stands the City of *Hean*, Inhabited by Soldiers and some *Chinese* Merchants. Here the *French* have also their Factory, and one of their Bishops resides in this place, as does the *Two Branches of a great River.* *The City of Hean.*

1688. the *Indian* Governour of the adjacent Province, without whose Licenſe no Ship or Boat can go up or down the River. From this City to *Cachao* is two Days rowing againſt the Tide.

The Kingdom of Tonquin. The Kingdom of *Tonquin* borders to the N. and N. E. upon *China*; to the W. upon the Kingdom of *Laos*; to the S. and E. upon *Conchinchina* and the Sea; the Land is for the moſt part very low, and the Soil rich and fertile, and water'd with divers good Rivers that join their Waters with the two beforemention'd Branches of the grand River, which about *Cachao* is as broad as the *Thames* at *Lambeth*, yet fordable on Horſe-back in the dry Seaſon: at *Hean*, twenty Miles lower, it is as broad as at *Graveſend*, and ſo lower, to the place where it divides it ſelf into two Channels.

Its eight Provinces. This Kingdom is compoſed of eight large Provinces, *viz.* The Eaſt and Weſt Provinces, the North and South Provinces, and the Provinces of *Cachao* in the midſt of theſe four; the three Provinces of *Tenan*, *Tenehoa* and *Ngeam*, lie upon the Frontiers. Theſe Provinces produce whatever is neceſſary, either for the Subſiſtence or Pleaſure of Life; they have great ſtore of Rice, Potatoes and Herbage; wild Purſlain, and among the reſt a ſort of Herb growing on the ſurface of ſtanding Waters, which is reputed a great Antidote. Their Gardens furniſh them with Onions, Bonanoes, Pumpkins, Melons, Pine-apples, Mangoes, Oranges, Limes, Cocoes, Guavaes, Mulberries, Betle, *&c.* Their Land Animals are, Elephants, Buffloes, Bullocks, Goats, Deer, Hogs, ſome Sheep, Dogs, Cats, Lizards, Snakes, Scorpions, Centupees, Toads, Frogs, *&c.* They abound alſo in tame Fowls, as Cocks, Hens, Ducks, Geeſe, Parrots, Partridges, Parakites, Turtle-Doves, Wild-ducks, Widgeons, Teals, Herns, Pelicans and Crabcatchers; they have alſo a certain kind of Locuſt of the bigneſs of a Man's Finger, which are good Food either freſh or pickled. Their Rivers and Ponds abound in ſeveral ſorts of very good Fiſh, and in large Frogs, which they take with the Angle; the Sea furniſhes them with Sea and Land Crabs, Crawfiſh, Shrimps and Prawns, beſides Sea Tortoiſes; they have alſo good ſtore of Anchovies; their way of fiſhing is much like ours. All theſe Proviſions are ſold in the Market once a Week, and their Shambles are, beſides other Meat, furniſhed likewiſe with Horſe-fleſh, Cats and Dogs, and Elephants Fleſh, and the Trunk of this Beaſt is look'd upon as a ſingular Dainty here.

Their product. *Land Animals.* *Wild and tame Fowls.* *Fiſhes.*

The Air and Climate. The Kingdom of *Tonquin* is very Healthy and pleaſant in the dry Seaſon; but in the wet Seaſon, if the Sun breaks thro' the Clouds, it is exceſſive hot. The wet Seaſon begins about *May*, and holds till *September*, then they are peſtred with violent Rains, yet not without ſome intervals of fine Weather, which occaſion thoſe Land-floods that never fail at their annual Periods to the Countries betwixt the Tropicks. In *Auguſt* the Weather begins to be more moderate, both in reſpect of heat and wet, and *September* and *October* are more moderate ſtill; but theſe Months are the moſt dangerous for Seamen, by reaſon of certain violent Storms from the N. E. which at intervals infeſt this Coaſt for twelve Hours together. *November* and *December* are very dry, warm and pleaſant Months, and ſo are the three ſucceeding Months, except that it is commonly Foggy in the morning, and often very ſharp, eſpecially if the Wind is at N. E. or N. N. E.

The Natives. The Kingdom of *Tonquin* abounds in People and Villages; they are clean limb'd and middle ſiz'd, and not ſo tawny as moſt of the other *Indians*; their Faces are flat, but their Noſes and Lips like the *Europeans*; they have black, lank, and thick Hair hanging over their Shoulders. As they look upon black Teeth as a ſingular Ornament, ſo they dye them with a black Pigment when they are Ten or Twelve Years old; for the reſt they are very Active and Ingenious, witneſs their Silk-ſtuffs and Lacker-work; they are very Docile and Faithful, and conſequently make good Servants, but are much addicted to gaiming as well as the *Chineſes*.

Their Cloaths The poorer ſort wear Cloth made of Cotton, and Perſons of Quality *(Mandarins) Engliſh* Cloth; green and red are the Colours they moſt affect; when they appear in the King's preſence they wear long Gowns and Caps, the vulgar ſort go always bare-headed, have a Jacket and Breeches, but without Shirts, Shoes or Stockings. *Houſes.* Their Houſes and Furniture are ſuitable to their Cloathing; they are low, made of Mud, and divided in two or three Partitions with Canes; the Furniture conſiſts in a mean Bed, two or three in the inner Room, and a few Benches, or Chairs in the outer Room, a Table and a little Altar with two Incenſe-pots on it, in one you ſee abundance of Ruſhes burnt at the ends; this ſerves alſo for a Kitchen; for the reſt they dwell together in Villages ſurrounded with Banks and deep Ditches, to keep out the Land-floods, and to preſerve the Water in the dry Seaſon. 1688.

The City of Cachao. *Cachao*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, is ſeated on the Weſt ſide of the great River, eighty miles from the Sea, on a ſandy riſing Ground, without either Wall, Bank or Ditch; their Houſes are the ſame as before deſcribed, except that they have a kind of an arched Oven ſix Foot high in a back Yard, contrived on purpoſe to ſave their Goods in caſe of Fire, which happens very frequently here; theſe Ovens are of Brick. The Streets are broad, and pav'd very ill with ſmall Stones. *The Royal Palaces.* As this City is the reſidence of their Kings, ſo he has two or three Palaces here; two are but mean, and of Timber, yet have large Stables, and Squares to draw up the Soldiers in; the third is more magnificent, but alſo of Timber, the Wall about it is three Leagues in circuit, its hight ſixteen Foot, and its breadth the ſame, fac'd on both ſides with Brick.

The Engliſh and Dutch Factories. The Houſe belonging to the *Engliſh* Factory is a handſome, but low Structure, facing the River at the North end of the City; the *Dutch* Factory adjoins to it on the South ſide, but is not ſo large as ours. The Bank of the River, on which the City ſtands, is lin'd with a maſſy Frame of Timber ſeventeen Foot above the Water, to contain the River within its bounds on that ſide.

But to return to the People; the trading part is very civil, but the *Mandarins* are exceſſive proud, the Soldiers inſolent, and the Poor addicted to Theft. I never ſaw any of their Marriage Ceremonies: Polygamy is allowed here; they have alſo a Cuſtom (even not excepting the great Men) to let out their Daughters at a certain rate to Strangers to get them a Portion; they have no publick burying places, every Man being interr'd in his own Ground; a Month after they make a funeral Feaſt, which is chiefly manag'd by the Prieſt. If it be a Man of note, a wooden Tower twenty five Foot high, and eight Foot ſquare, is erected over the Grave, from whence the Prieſt makes a Speech to the People, which done, they burn the Tower, and fall to the Meat provided for them. *Their Funerals.*

Annual Feaſts. They have two annual Feaſts, the firſt begins with the firſt new Moon of the Year, which begins with the firſt new Moon that falls out after the middle of *January*, then they make merry with feaſting and ſporting for twelve Days ſucceſſively; the ſecond Feaſt is at the beginning of *June*, after their *May* Crop is houſed.

Religion. They are Pagans, yet acknowledge an Omnipotent, ſupreme Being, the Immortality of the Soul, and a reward of good and evil Actions. *Their Idols.* Some of their Idols are made in humane Shape, but ſo as to repreſent, either in their Countenance, or in their make, ſomething extraordinary; the reſt are like Beaſts, but eſpecially Horſes and Elephants, theſe ſtand in the midſt of their Pagodes or Temples, which are neither large nor magnificent; *Temples.* their Prieſts have their Habitations near them *Prieſts.* who are obliged to Abſtinency from Women and ſtrong Liquor; their buſineſs is to offer the Petitions of the People to the Idols. The *Mandarins* ſeldom frequent the *Pagodes*, but have their Prieſts at home, and perform their religious Worſhip, with Eyes lift up to Heaven, without any Idols. *Language.* The *Tonquineſes* ſpeak much thro' the Throat, and their Language has a great affinity to the *Chineſe* Language, eſpecially that uſed at their Court, contrary to what Mr. *Tavernier* aſſerts upon that Head, *viz.* That the *Malayan* is the Court Language here; for their Characters are the ſame with the *Chineſe*, and they have no Commerce with the *Malayans*. They have certain Nurſeries for the Education of Youth; ſince the coming of the Jeſuits into theſe Parts, they are much improved in Aſtronomy, natural Philoſophy and Mechanicks; they have Smiths, Carpenters, Sawyers, Joiners, Tanners, Weavers, Taylors, Potters, Painters, Bell-founders, Lacker Work-men and Paper-makers. They have two ſorts of Papers, one of Silk, the other of the Bark of Trees. The *Lack* is a Gummous Liquor which iſſues both from the Trunk and Branches of the Trees; they have alſo plenty of Turpentine, of *Commodities.* coarſe Earthen-ware, and ſome Dying-wood.

Government. The Government here is Tyrannical, managed by two Kings at once, call'd *Bova* and *Chova*, the firſt whereof being deſcended from the Race of their antient Kings, retains the Royal Title, whilſt the *Chova*, whoſe Predeceſſors uſurp'd the Kingdom, manages all Affairs of State, keeping the other like a Priſoner in the grand Palace beforementioned. *Trees and Arms.* The *Chova* has above 300 Horſes, and 200 Elephants in his Stables,

1688. and maintains betwixt 70000 and 80000 Soldiers as his ſtanding Army, 30000 of which he always keeps near his Perſon, and the reſt near the Frontiers, tho' they have no Forts, and fight no pitch'd Battles, but make Excurſions, and Skirmiſh with one another; they are for the moſt part Foot, arm'd with Swords and Hand-Guns four Foot in the Barrel, the Bore not above the bigneſs of a Horſe-piſtol. Their Field-pieces are ſo ſmall as not to carry above four Ounces of Shot, the Barrels ſix or ſeven Foot long; one of theſe is carried upon a Man's Shoulder upon the March, and another bears the Carriage. Their Naval force conſiſts of ſome flat bottom'd Gallies, from fifty to ſeventy Foot long, and ten or twelve broad; theſe they chiefly uſe, either for State, or the tranſportation of Soldiers; they have a ſmall Sail, but are chiefly managed by ſixteen, twenty or twenty four Oars, and are very ſerviceable in Rivers, or near the Shoar.

Juſtice. They have no Courts of Judicature, but Juſtice is adminiſtred by ſingle Magiſtrates, who iſſue Warrants for the apprehending of Criminals; after they are taken they are tried immediately, and as the Sentence admitts of no appeal, ſo it is put in Execution upon the Spot: Theft is not puniſh'd with Death.

The Mandarins. Their Magiſtrates and great Men are call'd *Mandarins*, and ſuch of them as are generally about the King are Eunuchs, without which they can hardly pretend to any preferment at Court; I never heard of but three *Mandarins* of note that were not Eunuchs. Theſe *Mandarins* live in great State, and are attended by a certain number of Soldiers, and have the chief Government of the Provinces; among other things, it is their Duty once a Year, to receive the Oath of Allegiance to the King, from all the Officers under their Juriſdiction: They cut the Throat of a Hen, and ſave the Blood in a Baſon of *Arack*; of this every Man, after having taken the Oath, takes a ſmall draught, as a confirmation of his ſincere Intentions.

After my firſt coming to *Cachoa*, I return'd after a few Days ſtay to our Ship, where I lay ſick for ſome time, till finding my ſelf a little on the mending hand,
1688. I went a ſecond time to *Cachoa* on Foot in *November*, and got the fifth Day to the City of *Hean*, where I addreſs'd my ſelf to the *French* Biſhop reſiding here, at
The Authors Conference with a French Miſſionary. the North end of the Town, near the River ſide: Here I met with a *French* Prieſt who ſpeaking *Spaniſh* and *Portugueſe* very well, we had abundance of Diſcourſe together, concerning the progreſs of the Goſpel in theſe Parts; he told me, that there was a *French* Biſhop in *Siam*, with ſeveral Miſſionaries, by whoſe indefatigable Care, *Conſtant Faulion*, the chief Miniſter of State, was converted to the Chriſtian Religion, and that the King ſhew'd a great Inclination to follow his Foot-ſteps, and had given leave to the Miſſionaries to uſe
The progreſs of the Goſpel. their utmoſt endeavour to propagate the Goſpel among the People, who were not much inclin'd to it. That on the other hand, the Court of *Tonquin* was averſe to our Doctrin, and that therefore the Miſſionaries were forced to appear there in the Quality of Merchants, but that nevertheleſs, they had made about 14000 Converts. But I have been credibly inform'd ſince, that moſt of them were very poor People, who had chiefly embraced Chriſtianity for the ſake of the Rice they uſed to diſtribute among them in ſcarce times, and that moſt of them, ſo ſoon as the Rice became cheap, returned to their former Idolatry. He afterwards entertained me with ſome broil'd Fowl, and got me a Lodging in a *Tonquineſe* Chriſtians Houſe. After having refreſhed my ſelf a little, I got into a Boat about the bigneſs of one of our *Graveſend* Wherries the ſame Night, and by the next morning at nine a Clock, was ſet aſhoar ſix Miles ſhort of *Cachao*, whither the reſt of the Company went along with the Boat; here I was detained for ſome time by a Flux, ſo that my weakneſs encreaſing, I took the opportunity to go along with Captain *Weldon* aboard the *Curtane*, bound for Fort St. *George*.

We ſet ſail from the River of *Tonquin* in the beginning of *February* with an Eaſt Wind; coming out of
1689. the Bay we ſtood away to the South, the Shoals of *Pratel* on our Larboard, and the Coaſts of *Cochinchina*,
Cambodia *Champa* and *Cambodia* on our Starboard. *Cambodia* is a low and woody Country (much like *Tonquin*) lying on both ſides of a large River, which has its riſe in the North, and paſſing thro' a large Tract of Ground diſembogues into the Sea near the Iſle of *Condore*. Both the Kingdom and the River are not much known to the *Engliſh*; we kept ſtill to the South till we came near the Iſle of *Condore*, and thence ſteer'd more to the Weſt, to paſs thro' the Streights of *Malacca*, thro' which we came before; but finding our ſelves the next Day to the S. of the Streights firſt Mouth, we ventur'd to go in at the Southernmoſt entrance (call'd *Brewers Streights*) which is ſometimes frequented by ſmall Veſſels from *Batavia* to *Malacca*, being a nearer cut than to ſail as far as the Iſle of *Timaon* or the Streights of *Syncapore*. We found but fourteen or fifteen fathom Water in this Channel in ſome places, but lying among the Iſles there runs no great Sea. We ſtaid for ſome time at *Malacca*, and then ſteer'd towards *Achin*, where Captain *Weldon* had a mind to touch in his way to Fort St. *George*. We came to an Anchor in the Road of *Achin* in the beginning of *March*; I found my ſelf ſo weakned with the Flux, that notwithſtanding the advantageous Offers made me by Captain *Weldon* at Fort St. *George*, I thought it my ſafeſt way to continue for ſome time at *Achin*.

1689. *Brewer's Streights.*

This Kingdom, which makes the N. W. end of the Iſle of *Sumatra*, is the moſt populous of all the other petty Kingdoms in this Iſle, and extends fifty or ſixty Leagues from the N. W. Point to the Eaſt. Near the N. W. end of *Sumatra* ſtands the *Golden Mountain*: within five or 6 Miles of which is the City of *Achin*: This Mount may be ſeen forty Leagues at Sea. The Road of *Achin* is encloſed by a range of Iſles (under the Juriſdiction of that King) ſtretching along in form of a Half-moon, of about ſeven Leagues Diameter. The Eaſternmoſt is called the Iſle of *Way*, being alſo the largeſt; and twenty Miles Weſt from *Way*, and three Leagues from the N. W. Point of *Sumatra* is another large Iſle called *Gomez*. There are three or four more Iſlands hereabouts, as that call'd *Pulo rondo*, i. e. the *Round Iſle*, at the bending of the N. E. part of the Semi-circle. Betwixt all theſe Iſles are deep Channels, capable of affording a ſafe Paſſage to Ships of good Burthen; the *Surat* and *Bengal* Channels are moſt frequented, being the deepeſt and largeſt. Betwixt the Iſle of *Sumatra* and the Iſle of *Way* is another Channel of three or four Leagues broad; here is good riding at what diſtance you pleaſe; in it a ſmall navigable River diſembogues into the Sea, the entrance of it ſeven Leagues from the *Round Iſland*, four Leagues from *Way*, and as many from *Gomez*; the two laſt are water'd with ſeveral freſh Water Brooks, and afford divers ſorts of Animals, but eſpecially Hogs in vaſt plenty.

The Kingdom of Achin.

The Iſles of Way and Gomez.

The Kingdom *Achin* in general has many Rivulets, but are not navigable; the River of *Achin* it ſelf admitting only ſmall Veſſels. The Land is partly woody, partly fit for paſturage; they have ſome Coco and Cabbage-trees; their other Fruits are Plantains, Bonanoes, Oranges, Limes, Durians, Pomplenoſes, Mangoes, Mangaſtans, Citrons, Water-melons, Musk melons, Pine-Apples, &c. The Mangeſtan is not unlike a Pomegranate, but leſs, with a thicker, but ſofter rind, of a dark red; the Pulp is white and juicy, divided into four Cloves, incloſing a ſmall black Kernel. There is another Fruit at *Achin* not unlike a Sloe, which the Author of the *New Voyage to the* Eaſt Indies, has miſtaken for the Mangeſtan. The Pomplenoſe is like a large Citron, with a thick uneven Rind; the Pulp conſiſts of many juicy Cloves, as big as a Barley Corn. Of late they have planted abundance of Rice. They have a certain Herb called *Ganga* or *Bang*, it appears like Hemp, and if infuſed in any Liquor, it exerts its operation, upon thoſe that take it, after a very odd manner, according to their different Conſtitutions; for ſome it ſtupifies, others it makes ſleepy, others merry, and ſome quite mad. They have great plenty of Camphire; this they ſend to *Japan*, where it is refin'd before it is tranſported to *Europe*. The whole Iſle abounds in Pepper, and the Kingdom of *Achin* in particular in Gold. Their Land Animals are Deer, Hogs, Elephants, Goats, Bullocks, Bouffloes, Horſes, Porcupines, Monkies, Squirrels, Granoas, Lizards, Snakes, &c. Of tame Fowls, they have only Dunghil Fowls and Ducks; but the Woods afford Maccaws, Parrots, Parakites, Pidgeons and Turtle-doves of divers ſorts. The Rivers and Sea furniſh them with plenty of Fiſh, as Snooks, Mullets, Eels, Cavallies, Crawfiſh, Shrimps, &c.

Its product.

The Mangeſtan.

The Pomplenoſe.

The Herb Ganga.

Camphire.

Land Animals.

The Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Achin* are originally *Malayans*, ſpeak the ſame Language (with very little difference) of the ſame *Mahometan* Religion, and of the ſame Temper; for the reſt, they are of a middle ſize, and well ſhap'd: Their Complexion is dark like the reſt of the *Indians*; their Hair lank and black, with black Eyes, tolerable good Noſes, thin Lips and black Teeth. They are naturally lazy and idle, and the poorer ſort addicted to Theft, but good natur'd to Strangers. They build their Houſes on Poſts.

The Inhabitants.

Their

1689. Their common Food is Rice, but the better ſort eat Fowls, Fiſh and Bouffloes Fleſh dreſs'd with Garlick and Pepper and ſeaſoned with Pickles. The Poor wear a pair of Breeches only and a Turbant, the Rich a Cap fitted to their Heads, and a piece of Silk thrown over their Shoulders, and a pair of Sandals, but no Stockings.

Their Food and Dreſs.

The City of *Achin*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, is ſeated on the Banks of a River two Miles from the Sea, not far from the N. W. end of the Iſle of *Sumatra*; it contains about eight thouſand Houſes much larger and better furniſhed than thoſe of *Mindanao*, and inhabited, beſides the Natives, by the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *Danes*, *Portugueſes*, *Chineſes* and *Guzurats*. It has neither Walls nor Ditch. The chief Trades of *Achin* are Carpenters, Goldſmiths, Blackſmiths and Fiſhermen; theſe laſt are the richeſt and moſt in number.

The City of Achin.

Their Gold Mines are near the *Golden Mountain*, none but *Mahometans* are permitted to go thither; theſe carry thither ſuch Commodities (thro' very difficult ways) as are wanting by the Miners, in lieu whereof they bring back Gold. The *Engliſh* are highly eſteem'd here. Such of the *Hollanders* as are free Merchants may trade hither; but the Company's Servants have not the ſame Liberty. But the *Chineſes* out-do all the reſt. Many of them dwell conſtantly in the City; the reſt come with their Ships in *June*, take up their Shops in the *Chineſe* Quarter, where they ſell their Commodities for two or three Months. They don't much frequent the Moſques, yet are very zealous in their Religion. They are very ſtrict and ſhort in the Adminiſtration of Juſtice; for as ſoon as a Criminal is brought before the Magiſtrate, he is either acquitted or puniſhed upon the ſpot. Theft is puniſhed with the cutting off a Hand or Leg; the Stump they bind up tite with a piece of Leather or Blader to ſtop the Blood. Such as deſerve Death are generally impal'd; but thoſe of a noble extraction have a Priviledge to fight for their Lives with their uſual Weapons, which ſtand them in little ſtead, for the whole Multitude falls upon them and diſpatches them in an Inſtant.

Their Gold Mines.

Their Puniſhments.

Government.

The Kingdom is governed by a Queen, and is elected out of the Royal Family; ſhe muſt be a Maid, and is in a manner confin'd to her Palace; the management of all Affairs belonging to twelve *Oronkeys* or Great Men of the Kingdom. Mr. *Hackluit* or *Purchas* mention a King here in our King *James* the I. time: But certain it is, that of late Years they have conſtantly been govern'd by Queens; and the *Engliſh* reſiding here are of opinion, that it was always the ſame. During my Voyage to *Tonquin* there was an Election of a new Queen; but ſome of the *Oronkeys* being againſt it, an inteſtine War enſued, which was however ſoon compoſed to the advantage of the new Queen. The Weather at *Achin* is much the ſame as in other Countries to the North of the Line, and ſo are the dry and wet Seaſons and the Land-Floods; as the River here runs only a ſhort Courſe, ſo it ſooner overflows its Banks, and a great part of the City. I can't forbear to add, that they frequently waſh in this River, both upon a religious account, and in reſpect of Health: For my part, I can aſſert it by my own experience, that it cured me of the Flux that had afflicted me ſo long before, which I attributed to its cooling quality, of which I found the effects in my Bowels as often as I waſhed in the River. The Heat is not ſo exceſſive here as at *Tonquin*, for they are conſtantly refreſhed every twenty four Hours with the Sea and Land Breezes.

1689. About the middle of *September* I ſet ſail in quality of Mate to Captain *Minchin* (who had purchaſed a Veſſel here) from *Achin*, but being often becalmed we did not come in ſight of Point *Diamond* (forty Leagues from *Achin*) till eight Days after. About four Leagues ſhort of this Point we had like to have ſuffer'd Shipwrack by the careleſsneſs of the Man at the Helm (whilſt we were at Supper) who inſtead of ſteering E. S. E. as he was ordered to do, ſteered S. S. E. directly upon the Shoar. We ſail'd on towards the River *Dilly*, twenty eight Leagues from Point *Diamond*; the Land as far as this River belonging to the Kingdom of *Achin*. A League on this ſide the River, two Miles from the Shoar we perceived the Water of a muddy grey colour and ſweet, it being a thing not uncommon at Sea, to take up freſh Water againſt the Mouth of a River; it floats above the Water, and therefore you muſt not let your Bucket go in above a Foot deep. This River is at 3 Deg. 50 Min. N. Lat. It is very large but little known to the *Europeans*. In the Morning we ſaw the Iſle of *Verero*, lying at 3 Deg. 30 Min. N. Lat. 7 Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Dilly*, where we came to an Anchor at 8 of the Clock at Night; where we met with a *Daniſh* Ship riding at Anchor. Thence we ſteered in nearer ſtill to the Shoar of *Sumatra*, till we came in ſight of *Pulo Arii* at 3 Deg. 2 Min. N. Lat. Theſe Iſles lie S. E. by E. 32 Leagues to the Eaſt from *Pulo Verero*, being very good Marks for Ships, bound thro' the Streights; for when they bear S. Eaſt four Leagues diſtant, you muſt take your Courſe E. by S. for the *Malacca* Shoar, which is twenty Leagues thence. The firſt Land we got ſight of was a peaked Hill, ſome Miles within the Shoar of the Coaſt of *Malacca*, ſtanding in the midſt of a low Country call'd *Pulo Parſelore*, from its appearance like an Iſle; then keeping within the Shoar we had the City of *Malacca* eighteen Leagues to the S. E. by E. where we arrived about the middle of *October*. After having paſs'd a good broad Channel betwixt the Land and ſome Shoals ſtretching along the Shoar, the ſafeſt way is to keep near the Continent, where there is dead Water and good anchoring.

Point Diamond.

The River Dilly.

Freſh Water at Sea.

Pulo Verero.

1689.

The Iſles of Arii.

The Mount Pulo Parſelore.

Malacca is a handſome City inhabited by two hundred or three hundred *Dutch* and *Portugueſe* Families, beſides the *Malayans* and *Chineſes* living in the Suburbs. The Streets are ſpacious, but not paved, and the *Dutch* Houſes of Stone; at the N. W. end is a Wall and Gate, and a ſmall Fort; its Situation is low, cloſe by the Sea: On the Eaſt ſide of the Town is a Rivulet which at Spring-Tide will bear ſmall Boats; from the midſt of the Town (one hundred Paces from the Sea) there is a Draw-bridge leading croſs the River to a ſtrong Fort on the other ſide. This is built on a low level Ground at the foot of a ſmall Hill, which is ſurrounded by it in form of a half Moon, being founded upon rocky Ground, and defended by high and thick Walls which are waſhed by the Sea every Tide. On the back of the Hill a Channel is cut from the Sea, thro' the low Grounds to the River, which makes it an Iſland, which being Paliſadoe within makes it inacceſſible, except by the Draw-bridge. The Church belonging to the City ſtands on the top of this Hill. The *Portugueſes* were the firſt that poſſeſs'd themſelves of this place, but were forced thence by the *Dutch*, who are now Maſters of it. This City is more conſiderable for its ſituation on this Paſſage towards the more Eaſtern Nations, than for Traffick: For the reſt they have plenty of Fiſh; neither do they want Fruits, ſuch as theſe parts afford, as Plantains, Bonanoes, Pine-Apples, Oranges, Water-melons, Mangoes, Pomplenoſes, &c. But thoſe are only the products of their Gardens. Moſt of our walking Canes uſed in *England* are brought from this place. As they have but little Paſturage ſo they don't abound much in Cattle, yet they have ſome Oxen and Bullocks, but good ſtore of tame Fowl.

The City of Malacca.

The great Fort.

Belonging to the Dutch.

Having diſpoſed of our Goods and loaded our Veſſel again, we ſet ſail from *Malacca* towards *Achin* about the middle of *November* with the Land-wind, which turning to the N. W. with great violence, our Fore-yard broke, which being repair'd we continued plying with the Ebb till we came to *Pulo Parſalore*, where our Captain would not paſs the ſame way we came in, but within the Shoals: However it was not long, before he had reaſon to repent of it; for we did run upon a Shoal and had much ado to get off; and keeping along the Shoar came in three Days to the *Pulo Sambilura i. e.* the Nine Iſlands, ſo call'd from their number; thence we ſail'd along the Coaſt to a *Dutch* Iſle call'd *Dinding*, ſeated near the Continent. On the Eaſt ſide betwixt the Iſle and the Continent is good anchoring; the Sea-wind brings the Ships in, and the Land-wind carries them out; it is only inhabited by *Dutch* who have a four-ſquare Fort about twelve Yards ſquare, without any Baſtions, in a ſmall Creek on the Eaſt ſide cloſe by the Sea, defended by fourteen Guns mounted on Platforms within the Wall, and thirty Soldiers. The Governor treated us very handſomly at Supper; but before we had half done we were alarm'd by a falſe Rumour of the approach of the neighbouring *Malayans* from the Continent. The next Day we ſet ſail with the Land-wind ſteering to the North along the Coaſt; but the next Day the Wind turning N. and N. N. E. we ſtood over to *Sumatra*, and paſs'd by *Diamond* Point the ſame Evening, and in two Days more with an E. N. E. Wind got to *Achin* about the end of *November*.

1689.

Pulo Dinding.

The Dutch *Fort.*

1689. In the beginning of *January* we ſail'd again from *Achin* towards the *Nicobar* Iſles, and leaving the ſame our Sternboard ſtood more to the North as high as *Pallacat*, whence with a fair N. E. Wind we run along the Coaſt to the Fort of St. *George*; the beautiful Proſpect thereof with its ſituation, being ſufficiently known to our Countrymen, I will forbear to repreſent

They arrive at Achin. 1690.

Fort St. George.

1674. sent to you at this time. Here I ſtaid till *July*, when I engaged my ſelf aboard Captain *Hord*; we kept along the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, before we ſtood over to *Sumatra*, and then made all the ſail we could to *Bencouli*, ſeated on the Weſt Coaſt of *Sumatra* at 4 Deg. S. Lat. The Port is very remarkable for a high adjacent Hill in the Country, and a ſmall Iſle at its entrance, within which the Ships ride at anchor. The Point of *Sillabar* lies to the South of it about three Leagues, making a ſmall Bay; as ſoon as you come within two or three Leagues of the Shoar, the *Engliſh* Fort makes a very glorious appearance fronting the Sea; to the N. W. whereof is a pleaſant Rivulet. Near the Sea ſide ſtands an *Indian* Village in a marſhy Ground. The Climate is not very agreeable nor wholſome, by reaſon of the great Rains and exceſſive Heats: 'Tis true, the the Sea Breezes in fair Weather are very comfortable, but the Winds otherwiſe when ſomewhat high, as they often are, render it exceſſive cold; and the Land-winds blowing over the Marſhes bring a very nauſeous ſtench along with them. The Soil is very different, but generally fruitful enough, and produces the ſame Fruits as the Country about *Achin* and *Malacca*, and the ſame Animals. The Natives are ſwarthy like the reſt of the *Indians* here, ſlender and active of Body; they uſe the *Malacca* Tongue, are *Mahometans*, and have ſome Mechanicks; as Smiths, Carpenters, *&c.* among them. The generality live upon fiſhing and planting of Roots, Rice and Pepper-buſhes. It was the Pepper-Trade that brought the *Engliſh* hither, after the loſs of *Bantam* in 1685. They have ſince built a Fort fronting the Sea, one hundred Paces from the Shoar; but it is neither regular nor faced with brick Work, tho' deſign'd for a Pentagone.

Bencouli

The Point of Sillabar.

1675

The Natives.

The Engliſh Fort.

CHAP. XII.

The Author's Voyage to the Bay of Campeachy, *and the adjacent Parts. The* Caribee Indians. *The Iſles of* Triet, *of* Pines *and the* Triangle *Iſlands. The Town of* Campeachy, Campeton *River and* Port Royal *Iſle and Harbour. Leg-Worms in the* Weſt-Indies. *The River of St.* Peter *and* Paul; Tobaſco *Iſle and River*, &c.

1674. *The Author's departure for* Jamaica.

IN the beginnig of the Year 1674 (being then two and twenty Years of age) I left the *Thames* aboard the *Content* of *London*, Captain *Kent* Commander, bound for *Jamaica*. After we had paſs'd the Iſle of *Barbados* we got ſight of the Iſle of *Lucia*, one of the *Caribee* Iſlands, thirty Leagues thence. The *Engliſh* have endeavoured to ſettle here, but in vain hitherto, for fear of the *Caribees*, a ſort of *Indians* inhabiting chiefly on the Continent, who infeſt thoſe Seas and the *Caribee* Iſles, in their Canoes at certain Seaſons of the Year. St. *Vincent* is another of theſe Iſles, near St. *Lucia*; in this laſt we bought ſome Plantains, Bonanoes, Pine-Apples and Sugar-Canes of the Natives. From hence we ſteered farther to the Weſt, till falling in with the Eaſt end of *Hiſpaniola* we coaſted along the South ſide to Cape *Tiburon*, on the Weſt end of that Iſle, and thence got in a ſhort time to *Jamaica*.

The Caribees.

He arrives at Jamaica.

The next Day after my Arrival I went to St. *Jago de la Vega* a *Spaniſh* Town, whence I travell'd to ſixteen *Mile Walk*, a Plantation belonging to Captain *Hellier*. After ſix Months ſtay here, I engaged my ſelf to Captain *Hening*, to look after his Plantation at St. *Anns*, ſo was forced to croſs the *Mount Diabolo*, part of the ridge of Hills ſtretching all the length of this Iſle from Eaſt to Weſt. The Eaſt part is called the *Blew Mountain*.

Mount Diabolo.

1675. *His departure from* Jamaica *for the Bay of* Campeachy.

In the beginning of *Auguſt* we ſet ſail aboard Captain *Hodſel* from *Port Royal* in *Jamaica* towards the Bay of *Campeachy*, to load Logwood. As this Voyage all the way before the Wind, and the Weather proved fair, we were not above fourteen Days in our Paſſage thither; we ſail'd by the Iſle of *Pines* and thence Weſt to Cape *Corientes*, and ſo along the South ſide of *Cuba* to Cape *Antonio*, and thence by *Yucatan* to Cape *Catoch*, and ſo farther to Cape *Condecedo*: Theſe two Capes are eighty Leagues aſunder, and betwixt them is the River *de la Gartes*, a ſmall, but pretty deep River; to the Eaſt of it are a few Huts belonging to *Indian* Fiſhermen, who catch here good ſtore of Snappers, Gropers, Snooks, Dogfiſh and Torpens. To the Weſt of this River along the Coaſt are ſeveral Watch-Towers, contrived by the *Spaniards* for the *Indians* to watch in, in their turns; hereabouts are alſo divers ſalt Ponds belonging to the Towns of *Linehanchee* and *Chinhanchee*; not far thence is a *Spaniſh* Fort, guarded by fifty Soldiers, from whence there is a Road to the City of *Merida*, the Capital City of the Province of *Yucatan*, which is none of the moſt fruitful, but pretty populous, at ſome diſtance from the Sea ſide. From Cape *Condecedo* we ſteer'd South for *Triet*, an Iſle where is the only Road for big Ships; but ſmall Veſſels croſs a kind of a Lake or inland Sea, where they anchor at a place call'd *One Buſhkey*, a little Iſle about forty Paces long, and ſix broad, covered with Shells, and having only one crooked Tree, whence it has got its Name; here we anchored at twelve foot Water, ſoft and ouzy Ground: Our Cargo was Rum and Sugar, which we exchanged with the Logwood Cutters for Logwood, the Commodity we came for. The latter end of *September* we ſail'd from *One Buſhkey* again, and in fourteen Days got no further than to the Eaſt at the River *de la Gartos*; whence we ſteer'd for the Shoar of *Yucatan*, near which we ſtruck upon a Rock, and had not the Water been very ſmooth muſt have been infallibly loſt. Upon taking a view of our Draught we found we were fallen foul of the *Alcranes*, five or ſix low Iſles twenty five Leagues from the Coaſt of *Yucatan*, two or three Miles diſtant from one another with deep Channels betwixt them. They have good anchoring on the Weſt ſides; they have great plenty of large Rats, of *Boobies*, of *Men of War* and *Egg-Birds*; each of theſe keep in their particular Iſlands. Of Fiſh they have *Shark*, *Sword-Fiſh* and *Nurſes*. To the North of theſe Iſles ſtretches a long ridge of Rocks in the form of a half Moon, three Leagues from them; they are in length four Leagues, and about twelve Yards wide, joyning cloſe together above Water, except in two places, where the Paſſages are not above ten Yards broad. It was in one of theſe we ſtruck on the Rock in the Night time; we ſtay'd two or three Days among theſe Iſlands, and then ſteer'd South for the Continent, till we came to the Leeward of Cape *Catoch*, and thence to the North towards Cape *Antonio*, the Weſt Point of the Iſle of *Cuba*, forty Leagues from Cape *Catoch*. In a Week after we got up with and coaſted along the Iſle of *Pines* for eight Leagues together, and thence ſtanding again to Sea, fell in the 3d. Day with the Weſt end of the Iſle of *Caymanes* forty Leagues South from the Iſle of *Pines*. From hence we went back to theſe Iſles of *Pines*, where we anchored in four fathom Water, clean Sand, about 5 Miles North from the Weſt end againſt a ſmall Creek.

The Iſles of Triet, *of* Pines *and the* Triangle *Iſlands.*

The Town of Campeachy.

The River of Campeachy, Campeton *River and* Port Royal *Iſle and Harbour.*

The Iſles of Alcranes.

A Riff of Rocks in the Sea.

The Logwood-trees.

The Iſle of *Pines* lies South towards the Weſt end of *Cuba*, four Leagues diſtant; Cape *Corientes* is five Leagues to the Weſt of it. Betwixt this Iſle and *Cuba* are divers ſmall Iſlands, near any of which is good anchoring in the Channels; and Ships have the advantage of good Land-winds. The Iſle of *Pines* is twelve Leagues long, and four broad: The Weſt and South ſide towards the Sea is low Ground, but rocky; but the inland Country is hilly, with a high peaked Mountain in the middle: In the marſhy Grounds are abundance of red Mangroves, but the Hills abound in Pine-Trees ſo ſtrait and tall that they are fit to make Maſts for ſmall Veſſels. Their Land Animals are Bullocks, Hogs, Deer, *Indian* Rabbets, Land-Tortoiſes and Land-Crabs of two ſorts, white and red; both theſe live under ground like Conies, and come out only in the Night time to feed upon Herbs and Fruit: Thoſe that feed on *Manchianel* are noxious to thoſe that eat them; but the reſt are wholſome Meat. The white ones are biggeſt; they have alſo many Alligators and Crocodiles on this Iſle, and the *Spaniards* keep their Herds of Hogs here: We went a-ſhoar to hunt wild Hogs and Bullocks, but got none, except one, which we roaſted. Having ſcarce any Proviſions left, it was reſolv'd to go to the *South Keys* or Iſles which might have proved a troubleſome Voyage, conſidering the want we lay under; but to our good Fortune we ſoon got ſight of *Blew-fields* Hill, and of the adjacent Coaſt

The Iſle of Pines.

Land Crabs.

The Logwood Cutters.

and

1676. and anchored the next Day at Point *Nigril*; whence we sail'd the next following Day with a N. W. Wind to *Port Royal* in *Jamaica*.

The Author's second Voyage to the Bay of Campeachy.

After a short stay here I engaged my self as a Passenger on board Captain *Johnson*, bound for the Bay of *Campeachy*; we set sail *February* 1676 and had fair Wind and Weather as far as Cape *Catoch*, from whence we got with the Trade-wind at E. N. East to the Isle of *Triest*.

A Description of that Bay. 1676.

The Bay of *Campeachy* runs in deep within the Land betwixt Cape *Condecedo* to the East and a Point of high Land of St. *Martins* to the West, 120 Leagues distant from one another; it has many navigable and broad Lakes. From Cape *Condecedo* to the *Salinas* is fifteen Leagues, the Coast running South, being a small Harbour for Barks; a little way from the Shoar is a large *Salina* or salt Pond, which affords abundance of Salt, and is thence transported to the Bay of *Mexico*. From hence to *Campeachy* is twenty Leagues, the Coast running South by West; six Leagues on this side of it is the Hill of *Hina*. *Campeachy* is a handsome City seated near the Shoar in a small Creek, the only place on this Coast near the Sea from Cape *Catoch* to *La Vera Cruz*. It is defended by a strong Fort at one end, which commands the Town and Harbour, yet it was taken from the *Spaniards*; first by St. *Christopher Mims* in 1659, and afterwards in 1678 by the *English* and *French* Privateers. The place is not very wealthy, they having no other vendible Commodities but Cotten-Cloth and Salt. Formerly it was also the sale of Logwood Trade, which the *Spaniards* used to cut at the River of *Campeton*. From this River the Harbour call'd *Port Royal* is eighteen Leagues; it has a broad entrance into a salt Lake ten Leagues in length, with two Mouths at each end: The West entrance is made by a low Isle call'd thence *Port Royal* Isle; it stretches three Leagues long East and West. On the West side of this is another small Isle call'd *Trist*, making also East and West four Leagues in length: This together with the *Beef* Isle makes the second entrance into the Lake three Miles wide, which is call'd *Laguna Termina* by the *Spaniards*: On the East part as you enter it is the River *Summa Senta*, which discharges it self on the South side near the middle of the *Lagune*. From this River to *One Bushkey* the Shoar runs five Leagues to the West: Hereabouts are several small Creeks, and the Country abounds in Logwood.

The Town of Campeachy.

The River of Campeton.

Port Royal.

The River Summa Senta.

This part of the Bay of *Campeachy* lies at 18 Deg. N. Lat. The Sea-winds are here at N. N. E. or North; the Land-winds at S. S. East. The dry Season holds from *September* till *April* or *May*. The Logwood-tree grows in wet Grounds, not unlike our white Thorns in *England* (but much bigger) and the Leaves are the same; some of the old Trees are five or six Foot in circumference: It is a very ponderous Wood; when the old Tree is cut, the Sap is white and the Heart red; the last being used only for dying; they chip off all the white Sap before it is carried aboard; it will after some time turn so black, that it tinges Water like Ink: The chief Places where it grows are here at Cape *Catoch* and on the South side of *Yucatan* in the Bay of *Honduras*; and that only in some places near the Sea side.

The Logwood-trees.

The Animals of this Country are Horses, Bullocks, Deer, Warrees, Pecary, Squashes, Possums, Monkeys, Ant-Bears, Sloths, Armadilloes, Porcupines, Land-Tortoises, Guanoes, and Lizards of all kinds. Their Fowls are *Humming*-Birds, Blackbirds, Turtle-Doves, Pigeons, Parrots, Parakites, Quames, Correscoes, Turkeys, Carrion Crows, Subtle Jacks, Rill-Birds, Cockerecoes, &c. As for the Water Fowls here they are the Duck and Mallard, Curlews, Herons, Crabcatchers, Pelicans, Cormorants, Fishing-Haws, Men of War Birds, Boobies, &c. Their Fish are Mullets, Snooks, Tenpounders, Turpoms, Cavallies, Paricotas, Garfish, Stingrays, *Spanish* Mackrel, &c. besides *Manatees* and *Tortoises*. This Country affords also Alligators and Crocodiles.

The Logwood Cutters.

The Logwood Cutters inhabit the Creek of the East and West *Lagones*, where they erect their Huts, which are slightly built, but well thatch'd with Palmeto Leaves; they are hard working Fellows, but when invited aboard a Ship will drink very hard, and spend all their Money in strong Liquor. Commonly they go a hunting every Saturday for Beef, which is very fat in *February*, *March* and *April*, and fleshy at all times; these feed in the Savannahs and are droven into the adjacent Woods when they have a mind to kill them. After some stay here I perceived a hard red swelling like a Boil in my Leg, which I brought to a head with roasted white Lilleys, and squeezed out of it two small Worms of the bigness of a Hen's quil, and near an Inch long: These Worms were of a quite different kind from the *Guinea* Worms, which are frequent in several places in the *West-Indies*. 1676.

Worms in the Legs.

Soon after there happened the most violent Tempest that had been heard of in the memory of Man; several *English* Vessels were damaged by it, and some cast ashoar, especially at *Beef-Island*, extending seven Leagues in length East and West, and the East end being towards the Isle of *Trist*. The West end is washed with the River St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*: Three Leagues higher from the Mouth of this River comes forth a small Branch running to the East and dividing this Isle from the Continent on the South, and making a great Lake of fresh Water, call'd *Fresh Water Lagune*, which falls into the salt Lake, call'd *Man of War Lagune*, and this afterwards into *Laguna Termina*, two Leagues from the S. E. Point of the Isle. This Isle properly belongs to one *John d'Acosta* a *Spaniard* of *Campeachy* Town, who used to trade with the Privateers and to furnish them with Beef, which he hocksed after the *Spanish* fashion, a way peculiar to themselves. The Hocksers is mounted on a Horse with a Hocking-iron fastened to a Pole in his Hand; thus armed he rides after the Cattle, and hamstrings them till they fall down dead upon the Ground.

Beef Isle.

How they hocks Cattle.

The River of St. *Peter* and *Paul* has its rise twenty Leagues from the Sea in the Mountains of *Chia*. Nearer to the Sea it divides it self into two Branches; the Western River falls into the River *Tobasco*; the other continues its Course four Leagues from the Sea and there subdivides again: The Eastermost separates *Beef-Isle* from the Continent; the other disembogues betwixt *Beef-Isle* and the Island of *Tobasco*. This River is said to be very broad before it sends forth its Branches, and near it are fruitful Plains, full of Bullocks, Horses and other Animals, among which the Mountain Cow call'd *Ante* by the *Saniards*, a Beast not unlike a Cow feeding on a kind of Mos that grows in the Woods near the great Rivers, but never in the Savannahs or Plains.

The River of St. Peter and St. Paul.

The Mountain Cow.

The West Branch of the River of St. *Peter* and *Paul* loses it self four Leagues from the Sea in *Tobasco* River and so makes *Tobasco* Isle, which is twelve Leagues long, and four broad. The River of *Tobasco* rises also in the Mountains of *Chiapo*, and afterwards being augmented by the beforementioned Branch of St. *Peter* and *Paul*'s River, it runs North till it falls into the Sea. There is no Settlement on this River till above eight Leagues from the Mouth, where the *Spaniards* have raised some Entrenchments. About four Leagues beyond it stands a small Town with a Fort at the West end of it, and four Leagues beyond it the Town of *Estapo*, and three Leagues further another rich City, call'd *Halpo*, four Leagues beyond which is a wealthy place call'd *Taentalp*. The Ships that bring *European* Commodities into these parts go up no further than *Villa de Moise*; near this last place grows a sort of white Coco I never saw any where else, and good store of Maiz. They have *Spanish* Priests among them to instruct the Natives in the Christian Religion. *These have their Tithes from their Ducks, Turkeys and other dunghill Fowl. Their Clothing is a Jacket and Breeches of Cotten stuff, and Petticoats for Women. They are middle-siz'd and well-shap'd, and the Women generally fatter than the Men, with low Foreheads, little Eyes, small but full Mouths, white Teeth and a tawny Complexion. Their Beds are only Hammocks fastned to Poles, and their Houshold Goods a few Earthen Pots and Calabashes. They are a harmless and submissive sort of People, yet when harrass'd beyond their Ability by the *Spaniards*, will leave whole Towns desolate, and retire with their Families into the Woods.

The Isle and River of Tobasco.

The Town of Villa de Moise.

**See Mr. Gage's Survey of the West-Indies.*

The Natives.

As to the West Coast of *Campeachy* Bay the River of *Checopeques* is seven Leagues from *Tobasco* River; it is rather a Creek than a River; it runs E. S. E. for two Miles, and then turns to the South. A League West from this River is another small River call'd *Dos Boccas*, fit only for Boats, and that not above a League within the Mouth. The *Indians* cultivate no more Maiz than is requisite for their Families, and to pay their Taxes, but breed abundance of Poultry, and some good store of Cocoes, which they exchange with the Carriers that bring hither all sorts of *European* Commodities upon Mules. From *Dos Boccas* to the River *Palmas* is four Leagues; from thence to the *Halecover* (a small neck of Land betwixt the Sea and a Lake) two Leagues, from the *Halecover* to St. *Anns* six Leagues, being the Entrance of the said Lake; from thence to *Tondelo* is five Leagues. The River of *Tondelo* is narrow, but

The River of Checopaque.

The River of Tondelo.

1699. but capable of carrying Vessels of fifty or sixty Tuns: From this River to that of *Goasick Walp* is eight Leagues, the Coast still West; it is one of the chiefest Rivers on this Coast, not half so broad as *Tobasco* River, but deeper, and has its rise near the South Sea; and the River *Tegoantepequo* that disembogues into the South Sea, has its Source near the head of the River of *Goasick Walp*, not above twelve Leagues asunder; the Town of note on the South Sea is *Tegoantepaquo*, and on the North Sea *Keyhooca* near this River; this last is a wealthy place, four Leagues to the West from the River *Goasick Walp*.

The Cape of St. Martins. From this River the Land runs West three Leagues, and then to the North sixteen Leagues to the Cape of St. *Martins*, the West Bounds of the Bay of *Campeachy*.

The River Alvarado. From this Point to the River *Alvarado* is twenty Leagues; it is a Mile broad at the Entrance, but very shallow; the Land on each side, Sand Banks of two hundred Foot high; it come out of the Country in three several Branches which rejoyn just within the Mouth. Six Leagues from this River to the West is another large opening, which, as some report, has a Communication with the River of *Alvarado*: From hence to *La Vera Cruz* is six Leagues more to the West. This

La vera Cruz.

1699. last is a handsome Town seated in the bottom of the Bay of *Mexico* at the S. W. side; it has a very good Harbour, and a Fort that commands it, call'd St. *John d'Ulloa*. This is a place of vast Trade, being the Sea-port to the City of *Mexico*, and of most of the other places of that Kingdom. Hither the Riches brought from *Mexico* are brought by Land from *Acapulco*; the Flota from *Spain* comes hither every three Years, and the *Barralaventa* Fleet arrives constantly in *October*. This is a small Squadron of *Spanish* Men of War which every year visit all the *Spanish* Sea-port Towns in those parts, to clear the Seas of Privateers and Interlopers. From hence to *Old Vera Cruz* is five Leagues, and thence to *Tippo* fifteen Leagues: From this place to the River of *Panuck* is twenty Leagues, a spacious River coming out of the heart of the Country and disemboguing in the Gulf of *Mexico* at 21 Deg. 50. Min. The noted City of *Panuck* (a Bishop's See) stands upon it twenty Leagues from the Sea: One Branch of this River arises out of the Lake of *Tompeque* and joyns its Water with it three Leagues before it runs into the Sea, when as it is sometimes call'd the River of *Tompeque*.

The Barralaventa Fleet.

The River of Panuck.

CHAP. XIII.

The Author's Voyage to New-Holland. *A Description of the Bay of* All-Saints *in* Brasil, *with the Forts and Town; Of* Shark's *Bay, and the Isles and Coast of* New-Holland.

The Author's Voyage from the Downs *to the Canaries.* ON Saturday *January* the 14th. I set sail in his Majesty's Ship the *Roe-Buck*, and passing up the Channel, the first Land that I got sight of afterwards was Cape *Finisterre*, which we made the 19th. and the 28th. *Lancerota*, one of the *Canary* Islands, standing away for the Isle of *Teneriffe*, where I anchored *January* the 30th in the Harbour of St. *Cruz* at the East end of the Isle, as *Oratovia* lies at the West end. St. *Cruz* is a small unwall'd Town defended only by two Forts: Here Admiral *Blake* burnt the *Spanish* Galleons, the Wrecks whereof lie in fifteen fathom Water. Soon after my Arrival I went by Land to the City of *Laguna*, the Metropolis of this Isle and the Residence of the present Governor General of the *Canary* Isles, a Native of this Country; it is strongly, but not regularly built, part on the side of a Hill, and part in a Level, and has two Parish-Churches, two Nunneries, one Hospital, four Convents and divers Chappels and Gentlemens Houses handsomely built. Near the Prison you see a goodly Conduit, which being supplied with Water from the Hills behind the Plain, adjacent to the City, furnishes the Inhabitants with fresh Water. On the S. W. side beyond these Hills you see a small peaked Mountain higher than the rest, which is the so much celebrated Pike of *Teneriffe*. Besides the *Canary* and *Verdona* or *Green-Wine*, this Isle produces the true *Malmesy* Wine. The *Canary* Wine growing chiefly on the West side, is for the most part sent to the Port of *Oratavia*, a Place (as they told me larger than *Laguna*) where the *English* Consul and most of the Merchants reside, tho' the Fort is very indifferent, especially when the N. W. Winds blow. This Island as well as the other *Canary* Isle have also store of Beans, Pease and Cockle, a sort of Grain like Maiz, Papahs, Apples, Pears, Plums, Cherries, excellent Peaches, Apricocks, Guavoes, Pomegranets, Citrons, Oranges, Lemons, Limes, Pumkins, the best Onions in the World, Cabbages, Turnips, Potatoes, &c. They are also well stor'd with Horses, Cows, Asses, Mules, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Conies and Deer.

The City of Laguna.

The Peak of Teneriffe.

Oratavia.

The Products of the Canary Isles.

1699. *February* the 4th. we set sail from St. *Cruz* towards the Isle of *Mayo*, one of the *Cape Verd* Islands. The 9th. being in the Lat. of 15 Deg. 4 Min. we steer'd away W. N. West for the said Isle, where we anchored the 11th. in the Road, which is the Leeward part of Isle in 14 fathom clean Sand and smooth Water. The Isle of *Mayo* is roundish seven Leagues in Circuit at 15 Deg. N. Lat. On the West side of it where the Road for Ships is, there is a large sandy Bay, within which is a spacious salt-Pond; those who come hither to lade Salt take it up as it kerns, and lay it up in heaps. The *English* have a considerable Trade here in Salt, which costs nothing but the labour to take it out and wheel it from the Pond, and the Carriage thence to the Trake-Boat (by which it is conveyed aboard the Ships) being perform'd by Mules is very cheap. For the rest it is generally barren, the Soil being Sand or loose Stone, without any fresh-water Rivers or Ponds, except one Spring in the Center of the Isle running thro' a Valley where the Inhabitants have three small Towns, *Pinose*, *St. Johns* and *Lagoa*. The Inhabitants are Negroes, *Africans* by Descent, and resembling those of *Africa*; as they are Subjects of *Portugal*, so they follow their Religion, but have Priests and a Governor of their own Nation. Their Fruits are chiefly Figs and Water-Melons; their best Land Animals, Goats and Asses: The Sea affords them Dolphins, Bonettaes, Mullets, Snappers, Silver-Fish, Garfish and Green Tortoises, during the wet Season in *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*.

The Isle of Mayo.

Its Inhabitants.

The 19th. of *February* we set sail from hence for St. *Jago* six Leagues to the West, and the next Day anchored near St. *Jago* Town, lying on the S. W. side of the Isle at 16 Deg. N. Lat. the Residence of the *Portuguese* Governor and of the Bishop of all the *Cape Verd* Isles. The Town being built on the sides of two Mountains, there is a Valley of two hundred Yards broad betwixt them, thro' which runs a fresh-water Rivulet into the Sea, in a sandy Creek, where there is very good landing. Just by this place is a small Fort level with the Sea, and on the top of the Hill above there stands another. The Inhabitants are generally black or swarthy (some few of the better sort excepted) and for the most part wan, having no Trade but what comes by chance Ships; who export some of their strip'd Calicoes, and about one hundred Tun of Sugar. They have Vines sufficient for their own use; Oranges, Plantains, Lemons, Citrons, Melons, Limes, Guavoes, Pomegranets, Quinces, Custard Apples and Papahs. The Custard Apples are not unlike a Pomegranate, but have a white, sweet and soft Pulp resembling a Custard, with some small black Kernels, but no Core; the Tree resembles a Quince Tree. The Papah is like a Musk-melon both on the in and outside, but has blackish Seeds instead of flat Kernels; they are of the bigness of a Pepper-corn, and hot on the Tongue. Their Land Animals are Horses, Asses, Bullocks, Mules, Deer, Goats, Hogs and Monkeys; of Fowls Cocks and Hens, Ducks, Parakites, Parrots, Pidgeons, Turtle-Doves, Herons, Hawks, Crabcatchers, &c. Their Fish are the same as at *Mayo*. The Road of St. *Jago* is one of the worst that ever I saw.

The Isle and Town of St. Jago.

February the 22d. we set sail from St. *Jago* with a brisk E. N. E. and a N. E. Wind towards the Coast of *Brasil*. The 10th. of *March* we pass'd the Line, and the 23d, came in sight of the Coast of *Brasil*, and the 25th. came to an Anchor directly against the Town of *Bahia de Todos los Santos* at 13 Deg. S. Lat. It is the chief City of all *Brasil*, as well in respect of its Bulk, as of its Trade and Harbour, capable of receiving Ships of the greatest Burthen: Its Entrance is defended by the Fort of St. *Antonio*, besides several others, one where-

1699. *The Author's Voyage to Brasil.*

Bahia de todos los Santos.

of

1699. of ſtands on a Rock in the Sea, half a mile from the Sea; betwixt this and another call'd the *Dutch* Fort, all Ships muſt paſs that Anchor here. There is alſo another Fort on the ſame Hill where the Town ſtands, which has at leaſt two thouſand Houſes, beſides thirteen Churches, Chappels, Hoſpitals and Convents, and one Nunnery. The Governors and Archiepiſcopal Palaces are very noble Structures, but indifferently furniſhed within. Abundance of rich Merchants reſide here. I ſaw here betwixt thirty and forty great Ships at a time. They are moſt *Portugueſes*, Foreigners having ſcarce any Commerce here. The chief Commodities brought hither from *Europe*, are Bays, Serges, Hatts, Stockings, Biskets, Wheat, Flower, Wine, Oil, Butter, Cheeſe, Salt-beef, Pork, *&c.* as alſo Iron and Pewter-Veſſels, Looking-glaſſes, and Toys. In lieu whereof they tranſport thence Sugar, Tobacco in Roll or Snuff, Dye-woods, *Braſil*-woods, raw Hides, Tallow, Whale Oil, *&c.* The *Braſil*-Sugar is better than what is brought from our Plantations, being all refin'd with Clay.

The Country of Braſil.

The Country about the City is flat, neither very high nor exceſſive low, ſufficiently Water'd with Rivers and Brooks. The Soil is generally good, and when cultivated, produces beſides other Vegetables, Sugar-Canes, Cotten, Indico, Tobacco, Maiz and Fruit-Trees, beſides ſome Trees peculiar to this Country, as the *Sapiera*, *Vermiatico*, *Comeſteric*, *Gritteba Serrie*, three Sorts of *Mangrove* Trees, and as many ſorts of Cotten Trees both wild and planted. They have alſo a ſort of baſtard Coco-Nut, not near ſo big as the common ones in the *Eaſt* or *Weſt Indies*. The Kernel is ſweet but hard. At the top of theſe baſtard Coco-Trees, grows a black Thread like Horſe-hair, but longer; of theſe they make Cables, which are more ſerviceable and laſting than thoſe made of Hemp. The reſt of their Fruits, are Oranges of ſeveral ſorts, eſpecially *China* Oranges, Limes, Pome-granates, Pome-citrons, Plantains, Bonano's, right Coco-Nuts, Guavoes, Coco-Plumbs wild Grapes (beſides *European* Grapes) Hog-Plumbs, Cuſtard-Apples, Sourſops, Caſhews, Papahs, Jennipahs, Manchinel Apples and Mangoes, (tho' theſe laſt are but rare as yet) Ariſahs, Mericaſahs, Petangoes, *&c.* (Fruits not to be ſeen in other Countries) Petumbos, Mungareos, Mackiſhaws, Juguas, Otee, Muſteraw de Ovas, Palm-berries, Phyſick Nutts, Cabbage Trees, *&c.* They have alſo good ſtore of Ground Fruit, ſuch as Callavances, Pine Apples, Pumkins, Water-melons, Musk-melons, Cowcumbers, of Wots, Yams, Potatos, Caſſavas, of Garden-herbs, Cabbages, Turnips, Onions, Leeks, and all ſorts of Salading. They have great plenty and variety of wild Fowl, *viz.* Yemmas, Maccaws, (a large ſort of Parrots) common Parrots, Flamingoes, Carion-Crows, Chattering-Crows, Cockrecoes, curious colour'd Bill-birds, Correſoes, Turtle-Doves, Pigeons, Jenetees, Clocking-Hens, Crabcatchers, Curreeos, *Muſcovy*-Ducks and common Ducks, Widgeons, Teal, Curlews, Men of War Birds, Boobies, Noddies, Pelicans, *&c.* The chief of their tame Fowl, are Ducks and other Dunghil Fowl, of theſe they have two ſorts, one of the ſame ſize with ours, and another much larger, which are ſold at a dear rate here. Their Land Animals are Horſes, black Cattle, Sheep, Goats, Conies, Hogs, Leopards, Tygers, Foxes, Monkeys, Pecary, (a ſort of wild Hogs) Armadillos, Allegators, Guanoes, Lizards, Serpents, Toads, Frogs, and a ſort of amphibious Creature, call'd *Cachora de Agua* by the *Portugueſes*, and Water-Dogs by the *Engliſh*, from their reſemblance to a ſhaggy Maſtiff-Dog, with four ſhort Leggs They have here alſo the *Amphisbana*, or two headed Snake, of a grey Colour with black Streaks. Its Bite is reckoned incurable; the beſt is, that it ſeldom wounds, having only two Specks in the Head inſtead of Eyes; ſome ſay it is altogether blind, and lives under Ground like a Mole. Its length is about fourteen Inches, with a Head on each end; whence the *Portugueſes* call it *Cobra de dos Cabeſes*, i. e. *The Snake with two Heads*. The Sea hereabouts affords Tarpems, Mullets, Gropers, Snooks, Garfiſh, Goraſſes, Barramas, Coquindas, Cavallies, Dog-fiſh, Herrings, Serrew, *Oleo de Boy*-Whales, Lobſters, Craw-fiſh, Shrimps, Crabs, common Oiſters, Conchs, Wilks, Cockles, Muſſels, Perriwinkles, and three ſorts of Sea-Tortoiſe, *viz.* The Hawsbill, Loggerhead, and Green Tortoiſe. The firſt is the moſt eſteem'd, its Shell being the moſt beautiful before the reſt; and therefore ſold very dear. Beſides the Harbour of *Bahia de todos los Santos*, there are two more excellent Ports in *Braſil*, viz. *Peruambuco* and *Rio Janeiro*: Next to theſe the Haven of St. *Paul* is much in requeſt, by reaſon of a good quantity of Gold found thereabouts; but the Country is Inhabited by a ſort of Banditti.

Their living Creatures.

Baſtard Co-co-Nuts.

Its Products

The Water-Dogs.

The Amphisbana, or 2 headed Snake.

1699.

The 23d of *April* in the Morning we ſet ſail from this Harbour, and at twelve a Clock Cape *Salvadore* bore N. diſtant ſix Leagues. The 27th we came in the Lat. of the *Abrohlo*-Shoals at 18 and 19 deg. S. Lat. The 3d of *May* at 20 deg. 0 min. Lat. our Merid. diſt. from Cape *Salvadore* was 234 mil. the variat. 7 deg. The 12th being in Lat. 31 deg. 10 min. we began to have W. Winds, but met with nothing of moment, except a dead Whale, the Carcaſs whereof was covered all over with Birds of divers ſorts, as Pintado-Birds, Shear-Waters, Petrels, *&c.* We ſaw alſo abundance of Sea-weeds at 39 deg. 32 min. Lat. near the Meridian of the Iſle *Triſtian d' Aconha*. The 2d of *June* I ſaw a large black Fowl with a white flat Bill, which are ſaid never to fly above thirty Leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*, whereas according to my account, we were ninety Leagues thence; but ſoon after found I was not above twenty five Leagues from the Cape. The 3d of *June* ſteering to the E. we ſaw a Sail which proved the *Antelope* of *London*, coming the Day before from the Cape. We kept Company till the next Day, when they ſteer'd for the *Eaſt Indies*, and I for the Coaſt of *New Holland*, lying N. E. from the Cape; we did not loſe ſight of one another till *June* the 6th. The 7th it was very tempeſtuous Weather, and the Wind continued pretty high till the 16th, and moderate till the 19th, the Wind from W. N. W. to S. by W. when we had run ſix hundred Leagues, when we were at 34 deg. 17 min. S. Lat. and Long. from the Cape 39 deg. 24 min. E. The Winds continued at N. E. by E till the 27th, and afterwards between the N. N. W. and S. S. W. till the 4th of *July*, in which time we ſail'd ſeven hundred eighty two Miles. All this while we met with nothing of remark, except ſome Birds and Whales, eſpecially as we came nearer to the Shoar. About ninety Leagues from the Land, we began to ſee Sea-weeds, and about thirty Leagues diſtant, ſome Scuttle-bones floating on the Water. *July* the 25th, being at 26 deg. 14 min. S. Lat. and Long. from the Cape of *Good Hope* 85 deg. 52 min. we ſaw more Sea-weeds like Moſs. The 28th the ſame encreaſed upon us, and the 29th we ſaw Scuttle-bones, Bonetoes and Skip-Jacks, a Fiſh of eight Inches long, not unlike a Roach. The 30th we ſaw more Scuttle-bones and Sea-weeds, and a ſort of Fowls we had not ſeen before, of a grey Colour, with red ſharp Bills, but for the reſt not unlike Lapwings.

1699. *They ſet ſail from* Bahia to dos los Santos.

Auguſt the firſt, as we ſtood inſtowards the Land to ſeek for a Harbour to refreſh our ſelves after a Voyage of 114 deg. from *Braſil*; we ſaw an opening at 26 deg. S. Lat. but finding nothing but Rocks and foul Ground, we ſtood off again the 2d. *Auguſt* the 4th, we had ſixty, fifty ſix, and fifty five Fathom Water, and the 5th ſaw Land again ten Leagues diſtant, at 25 deg. 30 min. Lat. The 6th we ſaw an opening in the Land, in which we Anchored in two Fathom and a half of Water. *Auguſt* 7th, I call'd the Mouth of this Sound, *Shark's* Bay, lying at 25 deg. S. Lat. and according to our reckoning 87 deg. Longit. from the Cape of *Good Hope*, which is leſs by a Hundred ninety five Leagues than is laid down in the common Draughts. The Land is pretty high, but even; the Shoar ſteep to the Sea. The Grounds produce ſome Graſs, Plants and Shrubs, but none above ten foot high. We ſaw ſome Eagles, but few other Land Fowls except ſome ſmall Birds. As for Water Fowls, they are Ducks, Curlews, Crabcatchers, Cormorants, Gulls, Pelicans, and ſome Water Fowl I never ſaw any where elſe. The Land Animals I ſaw here, were a ſort of *Raccoons* different from thoſe in the *Weſt Indies*. but as good Meat as theſe; as alſo a ſort of *Guano's* differing from thoſe deſcribed before in their Heads, which are larger; and their Tail, which is only a ſtump. The Sea-Fiſh here, are Sharks, Skates, Thornbacks, Garfiſh, *Bonettoes*, Muſſels, Periwincles, Limpits and Oiſters, both for eating and of the Pearl kind; ſome Cockles and green Tortoiſes.

They ſee the Coaſt of New-Holland.

Shark's Bay.

Its Living Creatures.

We Anchored at three ſeveral Places in this Bay. 1. The 7th of *Auguſt* at the W. ſide, here we ſtaid till the 11th. We ſearch'd for freſh Water but found none, however we got ſome Wood for Fuel. The 11th we ſteer'd further in, and in the Afternoon ſaw the Land a-head that makes the S. of the Bay; but meeting with Shoals, I ſteer'd away to the E. and the 12th paſs'd the N. point of the Land; and ſtood further into the Bay to ſee what Land we could ſee to the E. which we ſaw right a-head; but having but ſhoal Water, I made the beſt of my way to return to the W. entrance.

1690 *August* the 14th, I ſet ſail again out of this Bay to the N. E. coaſting along the Shoar. The 15th we were at 24 deg. 41 min. And the 16th at 23 deg. 22 min. The 17th we ſaw Land again. The 18th we ſaw abundance of Whales near a Shoal point, at 22 deg. 22 min. and the 19th at 21 deg. 42 min. The 20th, at 19 deg. 37 min. The 21ſt, we ſaw abundance of Sea Snakes of two different ſorts and ſhapes. At Noon bearing in S. E. by E. the Land appear'd like a Cape, but Anchoring about five Leagues from the bluff Point, it proved the E. end of an Iſle ſix Leagues in length, and one in breadth; being ſurrounded on all ſides with many other ſmall rocky Iſles, which in all appearance are a range of Iſlands ſtretching from E. N. E. to W. S. W. perhaps as far as *Shark*'s Bay, and nine or ten Leagues in breadth towards *New Holland*. The Tides I met with a little while after, gave me a ſuſpicion that there might be a kind of Archipelago of Iſles, and a paſſage to the S. of *New Holland* and *New Guinea* into the great S. Sea Eaſtward; but being in want of Water I could not attempt the Diſcovery of it. This Place is at 20 deg. 21 min. whereas *Taſman* in his Draught has laid it down at 19 deg. 50 min. and has repreſented the Shoar as joining in one ridge to the Continent. We went aſhoar in the Iſle with the bluff Point, where I found two or three Shrubs, one like Roſemary (whence I call'd it Roſemary-Iſle) and two ſorts of Grain like Beans; one growing on Buſhes, the other on a kind of a creeping Vine. We ſaw alſo ſome Cormorants, Gulls, Crabcatchers, *&c.* as alſo Limpits, Perriwinkles, Oiſters on the Rocks; ſome green Tortoiſes, Sharks and Water-Snakes. 1690

Auguſt 23th, we ran out again, and the 25th we ſtill coaſted along. The 27th and 28th we ſaw no Land; but the 30th at 18 deg. 21 min. made the Land, and Anchored in eight Fathom Water thirty Leagues from the Shoar. The 31ſt, we went aſhoar well Arm'd to find ſome freſh Water; we dug pretty deep, but could find none but what was brackiſh. We got ſight of ſome few of the Natives, who appear'd to me much the ſame I had ſeen on this Coaſt in my Voyage round the World, and ſo did the Country; the place where we landed at that time being not above fifty Leagues to the E. from hence. We ſaw here ſome Shrubs with Bloſſoms of a delicious ſmell, ſome Yellow, ſome Blew and White, as alſo a Fruit like Peaſe-Cods with ten ſmall Peaſe in each. We ſaw alſo ſome of the ſame Beans I mentioned in *Roſemary*-Iſle. The Land Animals we ſaw here, were Lizards, and ſome Beaſts like lean and hungry Wolves. Their Land Fowls were Crows, Hawks, Kites, and ſmall Turtle-Doves, but fat. The Sea Fowl, Pelicans, Boobies, Noddies, Curlews, Sea-pies, *&c.* The Sea has large Whales in plenty, and green Tortoiſes, as alſo ſome Sharks, Oiſters, Conchs, Muſſels, Limpits, Perriwinkles, *&c.* Being diſappointed in our hopes of meeting with freſh Water here, and my Men growing ſcorbutick, I had no opportunity to ſearch further, but reſolved to ſail thence towards *Timor*, which I did accordingly in the beginning of *September*. *The Natives and Coaſt of New Holland.*

CHAP. XIV.

A new Diſcovery of a large Country in the Northern America, *extending above Four Thouſand Miles. By Father* Lewis Hennepin.

A Voyage to North America.

FInding in my ſelf a ſtrong Inclination to retire from the World, I entred into the *Franciſcan* Order, where I was overjoy'd in reading the Travels of the Fathers of my own Order, who were indeed the firſt that undertook Miſſions into any Foreign Country. I thought nothing Greater or more Glorious than to Inſtruct the Ignorant and Barbarous, and lead 'em to the Light of the Goſpel. In order to which I went Miſſionary for *Canada*, by Command from my Superiors; and embarked at *Rochel* in Company of Mr. *de Laval*, ſince Biſhop of *Quebec* the Capital City of *Canada*. Our Crew was about one hundred Men, to three fourths of whom I adminiſtred the Sacrament, they being Catholicks. I likewiſe performed divine Service every Day when the Weather was Calm, and we ſung the *Itinerary* of the Clergy, Tranſlated into *French* Verſe, after Evening Prayers.

I ſhall omit the Accidents that befel us, being ſuch only as are inſeparable Companions of all great Voyages. Soon after my Arrival I was ſent in Miſſion about One hundred and twenty Leagues beyond *Quebec*, accompanied by Father *Luke Buiſſet*. We went up the River St. *Laurence* ſouthwards till we came to Fort *Frontenac*, diſtant from *Quebec* One hundred Leagues. It was built to prevent the Excurſions of the *Iroqueſe*, and to interrupt the Trade of Skins theſe Savages maintain with the Inhabitants of *New York*, who furniſh them with Commodities at cheaper Rates than the *French* of *Canada*.

The *Iroqueſe* are an inſolent and barbarous Nation, and have ſhed the Blood of more than two Millions of People in that vaſt extended Country. They would never ceaſe from diſturbing the repoſe of the Europeans, were it not for fear of their Fire-Arms. For they entertain no Commerce with them unleſs it be for Arms, which they buy on purpoſe to uſe againſt their Neighbours; and by means of which they have extended their bloody Conqueſts five or ſix hundred Leagues beyond their own Precincts, exterminating whatever Nation they hate.

I had already acquired ſome ſmall knowledge of the *Iroqueſe* Language, and Father *Luke* and I tranſlated the Creed, Lord's Prayer and Litany, which we cauſed them to get by heart, and repeat to their Children. They pronounce no Labial Letters, ſuch as B, P, M, F. Here we remained two Years and a half, till we ſaw our Houſe of Miſſion finiſhed, and then returned in a Canoe down the River St. *Lawrence* to *Quebec*.

1678 Having tarried there till thoſe who were expected from *Europe* to bear part in this Diſcovery were arrived, I embarked in a ſmall Canoe, made of the Bark of Birch-Trees, carrying nothing with me but a portable Chappel, one Blanket, and a Matt of Ruſhes, which was to ſerve me for Bed and Quilt. I arrived at Fort *Frontenac* the 2d of *November* 1678. and on the 18th embark'd in a Brigantine of about ten Tuns and fifteen Men, the Sieur *de la Motte*, Commander. We ſailed on till we came to the further end of the Lake *Ontario*, and on the 6th of *January* entred the River *Niagara*; where we ſet our Carpenters and the reſt of the Crew to work in building a Fort and ſome Houſes; but foreſeeing that this was like to give Jealouſie to the *Iroqueſe*, and to the *Engliſh* who dwell near them, and have a great Commerce with them, we told thoſe of the Village of *Niagara*, that we did not intend to build a Fort on the Bank of their River, but only a great Store-houſe to keep the Commodities we had brought to ſupply their Occaſions. And to remove their Suſpicion, Mr. *de la Motte* thought it abſolutely neceſſary to ſend an Embaſſie to the *Iroqueſe*; telling me, *He was reſolved to take along with him ſeven Men out of ſixteen that we were in all, and deſired me to accompany him becauſe I underſtood in a manner the Language of their Nation.* We paſſed through Forreſts thirty two Leagues, and after five Days Journey came to a great Village, and were immediately carried to the Cabin of their Principal. The younger Savages waſhed our Feet, and rubbed them over with the Greaſe of Deer, wild Goats, and Oil of Bears. They are for the moſt part tall and well ſhaped, covered with a ſort of Robe made of Beavers and Wolves Skins, or black Squirrels, holding a Pipe or *Calumet* in their Hands. The Senators of *Venice* do not appear with a graver Countenance, and perhaps don't ſpeak with more Majeſty and Solidity than thoſe ancient *Iroqueſes*. 1678 *January.* 1679 *January.* 1679

One of our Men who well underſtood their Language, told the Aſſembly.

1. That we were come to pay them a Viſit, and ſmoke with them in their Pipes. Then we delivered our Preſents, conſiſting of Axes, Knives, a great Collar of white and blew Porcelain, with ſome Gowns. The ſame Preſents were renewed upon every Point we propoſed to them.

2. We deſired them to give notice to the five Cantons of their Nation, that were about to build a Ship or great Canoe above the great Fall of the River *Niagara*, to go and fetch *European* Commodities by a more convenient Paſſage than that of the River St. *Laurence*, whoſe

1679 Whose rapid Currents make it dangerous and long. And that by these means we should afford them our Commodities cheaper than the *English* of *Boston*, or the *Dutch* (at that time Masters) of *New York*. This Pretence was specious enough, and very well contrived to engage the barbarous Nation to extirpate the *English* and *Dutch* out of that part of *America*.

3. We told them that we should provide them at the River *Niagara*, with a Blacksmith and a Gunsmith to mend their Guns, Axes, *&c.* they having no Body among them that understood that Trade. We added many other Reasons which we thought proper to persuade them to favour our Design. The Presents we made unto them in Cloth or Iron, were worth above four hundred Livres, besides some other *European* Commodities very scarce in that Country. For the best Reasons in the World are not listned to among them unless they are enforced with Presents.

The next Day their Speaker answer'd our Discourse Article by Article, seeming to be pleased with our Proposals tho' they were not really so, having a greater Inclination for the *English* and *Dutch* than for us. Whilst we were with them their Parties had made an Excursion towards *Virginia*, and brought two Prisoners. They spared the Life of one, but put to Death the other with most exquisite Torments. They commonly use this Inhumanity towards all their Prisoners, and their Torments sometimes last a Month. When they have brought them into their *Canton*, they lay them on pieces of Wood like a St. *Andrew*'s Cross, to which they tie their Legs and Arms, and expose them to Gnats and Flies, who sting them to Death. Children cut pieces of Flesh out of their Flanks, Thighs or other Parts, and boyling them, force those poor Souls to eat thereof. Their Parents eat some themselves, and the better to inspire into their Children a hatred of their Enemies, give them some of their Blood to drink. This Cruelty obliged us to leave them sooner than we would have done, to shew them the Horror we had of their Inhumanity, and never eat with them afterwards; but returned the same way we went through the Woods to the River *Niagara*, where we arrived the 14th of *January*, much fatigued with our Voyage, having no Food on the way but *Indian* Corn. Mr. *de la Motte* no longer able to endure so laborious a Life, gave over his Design and returned to *Canada*, having about two hundred Leagues to travel.

January. On the 20th, Mr. *de la Salle* arrived from Fort *Frontenac* with a great Bark to supply us with Provisions, Rigging and Tackling for the Ship we designed to build at the Mouth of the Lake *Erie*; but that Bark was unfortunately cast away on the Lake *Ontario*, within two Leagues of *Niagara*. On the 22d, we went two Leagues above the great Fall of *Niagara*, where we made a Dock for building the Ship; Mr. *de la Salle* returned to Fort *Frontenac*, leaving one *Tonti* an *Italian* for our Commander. He undertook this Journey a-foot over the Snow, having no other Provision but a little Sack of roasted *Indian* Corn. However he got home safely with two Men and a Dog, who dragged his Baggage over the frozen Snow.

Most of the *Iroquese* were now gone to wage War on the other side the Lake *Erie*, and our Men continued with great Application to build our Ship; for the *Iroquese* who were left behind, were not so insolent as before, though they came sometimes to our Dock and expressed some discontent at what we were doing.

We made all the haste we could to get our Ship afloat, tho' not altogether finished, to prevent their designs of burning it. She was called the *Griffin*, about sixty Tuns, and carried five small Guns. We fired three Guns and sung *Te Deum*, and carrying our Hammocks aboard, the same Day were out of the reach of the Savages.

Before we could proceed in our intended Discovery, I was obliged to return to Fort *Frontenac*, to bring along with me two Monks of my own Order to help me in the Function of my Ministry. I concealed part of the Discouragements I had met with, because I designed to engage Father *Gabriel* and *Zenobe* in our Voyage. Having dispatched our Affairs, we three went aboard a Brigantine, and in a short time arrived at the River which runs into the Lake *Ontario*, where we continued several Days, our Men being very busie in bartering their Commodities with the Natives, who exchanged their Skins for Knives, Guns, Powder and Shot, but especially Brandy, which they love above all things. Mr. *de la Salle* arrived in a Canoe eight Days after. These Impediments retarded us so long that we could not reach the River *Niagara* before the 30th of *July*. Father *Gabriel* and I went over Land to view the great Fall, the like whereof is not in the whole World. It is compounded of two great cross streams of Water and two Falls, with an Isle sloping along the middle of it. The Waters which fall from this vast height do foam and boil after the most hideous manner imaginable, making an outragious Noise more terrible than that of Thunder; so that when the Wind blows from the S. their dismal Roaring may be heard above fifteen Leagues off. 1679 *July.*

The River *Niagara* having thrown it self down this incredible Precipice, continues its impetuous Course for two Leagues with an inexpressible Rapidity; and the Brinks are so prodigious high, that it makes one tremble to look steadily on the Water, rolling along with a Rapidity not to be imagined. It is so rapid above the descent, that it violently hurries down the wild Beasts, endeavouring to pass it to feed on the other side, casting them down headlong above six hundred Foot. A Bark or greater Vessel may pass from Fort *Frontenac* until you come within two Leagues of the Fall, for which two Leagues the People are obliged to carry their Goods over-land; but the Way is very good, and the Trees are but few, and they chiefly Furs and Oaks. Were it not for this vast Cataract which interrupts Navigation, we might sail with Barks or greater Vessels above four hundred and fifty Leagues further.

On the 7th of *August* we went on board, being in all thirty four Men, and sailed from the Mouth of the Lake *Erie*, and on the 11th entred a Strait thirty Leagues long and one broad, except in the middle, which makes the Lake of St. *Claire*. On the 23d we got into the Lake *Huron*. The 26th we had so violent a Storm that we brought down our Yards and Topmasts, and let the Ship drive at the Mercy of the Wind, knowing no Place to run into to shelter our selves. Mr. *la Salle* notwithstanding he was a couragious Man, began to fear, and told us we were undone, whereupon every Body fell on his Knees to say his Prayers and prepare himself for Death, except our Pilot, whom we could never oblige to pray; and he did nothing all that while but Curse and Swear against Mr. *la Salle*, who had brought him thither to make him Perish in a nasty Lake, and lose the Glory he had acquired by his long and happy Navigations on the Ocean. When the Wind abated we hoisted our Sail, and the next Day arrived at *Missilimakinak*. *August.*

On the 2d of *September* we weighed Anchor and sailed to an Island at the Mouth of the Bay of *Puans*, forty Leagues from *Missilimakinak*. The Chief among them who had been formerly in *Canada*, received us with all the Civility imaginable. Mr. *la Salle* without asking any other Body's Advice, resolved to send back the Ship to *Niagara*, laden with Furs and Skins, to discharge his Debts. Our Pilot and five Men with him were therefore sent back, and order'd to return with all imaginable Speed to join us towards the southern Parts of the Lake, where we should stay for them among the *Illinois*. They sailed the 18th with a westerly Wind, and fired a Gun as taking leave. It was never known what Course they steered, nor how they Perished; but 'tis supposed that the Ship struck upon a Sand, and was there buried. This was a great loss for Mr. *la Salle* and other Adventurers, for that Ship with its Cargo cost above sixty thousand Livres. *September.* *The Ship Griffin lost.*

We continued our Voyage in four Canoes, being fourteen Men in all, and departed the 19th of *September*. We steered to the South towards the Continent, distant from the Island near forty Leagues. On the first of *October* after twelve Leagues Rowing, we were in so great danger by stress of Weather, that we were forced to throw our selves into the Water, and carry our Canoes on our Shoulders to save them from being broken to pieces. I carried Father *Gabriel* on my Back, whose great Age, being sixty five Years, did not permit him to venture into the Water. *October.*

Having no acquaintance with the Savages of the Village near which we landed, we prepared to make a vigorous Defence in case of an Attack, and in order to it possessed our selves of a rising Ground where we could not be surprized. We then sent three Men to buy Provisions in the Village, with the *Calumet* or Pipe of Peace, which those of the Island had given us. And because the *Calumet* of Peace is the most sacred Thing among the Savages, I shall here describe the same.

1679

It is a large Tobacco-Pipe, of a red, black, or white Marble. The Head is finely polished. The Quill which is commonly two Foot and a half long, is made of a pretty strong Reed or Cane, adorned with Feathers of all Colours, interlaced with locks of Womens Hair. Every Nation adorns it as they think fit, and according to the Birds they have in their Country.

Such a Pipe is a safe Conduct amongst all the Allies of the Nation who has given it. And in all Embassies the *Calumet* is carried as a Symbol of Peace. The Savages being generally persuaded that some great Misfortune would befal them, if they should violate the publick Faith of the *Calumet*. They fill this Pipe with the best Tobacco they have, and then present it to those with whom they have concluded any great Affair, and smoke out of the same after them.

Our three Men provided with this Pipe, and very well Armed, went to the little Village three Leagues from the Place where we landed; but finding no Body therein, took some *Indian* Corn, and left instead of it some Goods, to let them see that we were no Robbers, nor their Enemies. However twenty of them armed with Axes, small Guns, Bows and Clubs, advanced near the Place where we stood; whereupon Mr. *la Salle* with four Men very well Armed, went toward them to speak with them, and desired them to come near us, for fear a Party of our Men who were gone a Hunting, should meet with them and kill them. They sat down at the foot of the Eminence where we were Posted, and Mr. *la Salle* spoke to them all the while concerning his Voyage, which he told them he had undertaken for their Good and Advantage. This was only to amuse them till our three Men returned, who appearing with the *Calumet* of Peace, the Savages made a great Shout, and rose and began to dance. We excused our taking some of their Corn, telling them we had left the true value of it in Goods; which they took so well, that they sent immediately for more, and gave us next Day as much as we could carry away in our Canoes. They retired towards Evening, and Mr. *la Salle* ordered some Trees to be cut down, and laid cross the Way, to prevent any surprize from them. The oldest of them came to us next Morning with their *Calumet* of Peace, and brought us some wild Goats. We presented them with some Axes, Knives, and several little Toys for their Wives, with which they were well pleased.

We left that place the 2d of *October*, and coasted along the Lake, which is so steep that we could hardly find any place to land. The Violence of the Wind obliged us to drag our Canoes sometimes to the top of the Rocks to prevent their being dashed in pieces. The stormy Weather lasted four Days, during which, we suffered very much, and our Provisions failed us again; which with the Fatigues of Rowing, caused old Father *Gabriel* to faint away in such manner, that I thought verily he could not live. We had no other subsistence but a handful of *Indian* Corn once every twenty four Hours, which we Roasted or else Boyled in Water; and yet Rowed almost every Day from Morning till Night. Being in this dismal Distress, we saw upon the Coast a great many Ravens and Eagles, from whence we conjectured there was some Prey; and having landed upon that place, we found above the half of a fat wild Goat which the Wolves had strangled. This Provision was very acceptable to us, and the rudest of our Men could not but praise the divine Providence who took so particular a care of us.

Having thus refreshed our selves, we continued our Voyage directly to the southern parts of the Lake. On the 16th we met with abundance of Game. A Savage we had with us killed several Stags and wild Goats, and our Men a great many Turkies very fat and big; wherewith we provided our selves for several Days, and so embark'd again. *November.* On the first of *November* we came to the Mouth of the River of the *Miamis*, which runs from the South and falls into the Lake. Here we spent all that Month in building a Fort forty Foot long, and eighty broad; made with great square pieces of Timber laid one upon the other.

December. On the 3d of *December* we embarked, being thirty three Men in eight Canoes, and having Rowed about twenty five Leagues up the River *Miamis* to the S. W. we could not find the place where we were to land, and carry our Canoes and Equipage into the River of the *Illinois*, which falls into *Mississipi*. Our Savage who was hunting afloar, not finding us at the place of Portage, came higher up the River, and told us we had missed it. So we returned and carried our Canoes over Land to the head of the *Illinois* River, which is but a League and a half from that of *Miamis*. We continued our Course upon this River very near the whole Month of *December*, towards the end of which we arrived at the Village of the *Illinois*, about One hundred and thirty Leagues from Fort *Miamis*. We found no Body in the Village, which caused a great Perplexity among us: For tho' we wanted Provisions, yet we durst not meddle with the Corn they had laid under Ground for their Subsistence, and to sow their Lands with; It being the most sensible Wrong one can do them, in their Opinion, to take some of their Corn in their absence. However our Necessity being very great, and it being impossible to continue our Voyage without it, Mr. *la Salle* took about forty Bushels of it, hoping to appease them with some Presents.

1680

We embarked again with this fresh Provision, and fell down the River the first of *January* 1680. We *January.* took the Elevation of the Pole, which was 33 deg. 45 min. Although we used all the precaution we could, we found our selves on a sudden in the middle of their Camp, which took up both sides of the River. The *Illinois* being much terrified, tho' they were several thousand Men, tendred us the *Calumet* of Peace, and we offered them ours. Mr. *la Salle* presented them with *Martinico* Tobacco, and some Axes. He told them, *He knew how necessary their Corn was to them; but that being reduced to an unspeakable Necessity when he came to their Village, and seeing no probability to subsist, he had been forced to take some Corn from their Habitations without their leave. That he would give them Axes and other Things in lieu of it if they could spare it; and if they could not, they were free to take it again.* The Savages consider'd our Proposals, granted our Demands and made an Alliance with us.

Some Days after *Nikanape*, Brother to the most considerable Man among them, who was then absent, invited us to a great Feast. And before we sate down, told us, *That he had invited us not so much to give us a Treat, as to endeavour to dissuade us from the Resolution we had taken to go down to the Sea by the great River* Mississipi. He said, *That the Banks of that River were Inhabited by barbarous and bloody Nations, and that several had perished upon the same Enterprize.* Our Interpreter told him by order of Mr. *la Salle*, *That we were much obliged to him for his Advice; but that the Difficulties and Dangers he had mentioned, would make our Enterprize still more glorious. That we feared the Master of the Life of all Men, who ruled the Sea and all the World, and therefore would think it Happiness to lay down our Lives to make his Name known to all his Creatures.* However *Nikanape's* Discourse had put some of our Men under such terrible Apprehensions, that we could never recover their Courage nor remove their Fears, so that six of them who had the guard that Night (among which were two Sawyers, the most necessary of our Workmen for building our Ship) ran away, taking with them what they thought necessary. But considering the Country through which they were to Travel, and the Season of the Year, we may say, that for avoiding an Uncertainty, they exposed themselves to a most certain Danger.

Mr. *la Salle* seeing those six Men were gone, exhorted the rest to continue firm in their Duty; assuring them, that if any were afraid of venturing themselves upon the River of *Mississipi* because of the Dangers *Nikanape* had mentioned, he would give them leave to return next Spring to *Canada*, and allow them a Canoe to make their Voyage; whereas they could not venture to return home at this time of the Year, without exposing themselves to Perish with Hunger, Cold, or the Hands of the Savages.

On the 15th we made choice of an Eminence on the Bank of the River, defended on that side by the River, and on two others by two deep Ditches made by the Rains; so that it was accessible only by one way. We cast a Line to join those two natural Ditches, and made the Eminence steep on every side, supporting the Earth with great Pieces of Timber. By the first of *March* our Fort was near finished, and we named it *Crevecœur*, because the desertion of our Men, with the difficulties we laboured under, had almost broke our Hearts: We had also built a Bark for the continuance of our Disco-

They build Fort Crevecœur.

very

1680 very. It was forty two Foot long by the Keel, and was in such a forwardness, that we should have been in a condition to sail in a very short time, had we been provided with all other Necessaries. But hearing nothing of our Ship *Griffin*, and therefore wanting the Rigging and other Tackle we expected by her, we found our selves in great Perplexity, and did not know what to do in this sad Juncture, being above five hundred Leagues from Fort *Frontenac*; whither it was almost impossible to return at that time, because the Snow made Travelling very dangerous by Land, and the Ice made it impracticable to our Canoes.

Mr. *la Salle* did now no longer doubt but his beloved *Griffin* was lost; but neither this nor the other Difficulties dejected him. His great Courage buoy'd him up, and he resolved with three Men to return to Fort *Frontenac* by Land, notwithstanding the Snow and the unspeakable Dangers attending so great a Journey; and so to bring along with him the necessary Things to proceed on our Discovery; while I with two Men should go in a Canoe to the River *Missisipi*, to get the Friendship of the Nations inhabiting the Banks thereof. Then calling his Men together, told them, *He would leave Mr. Tonti to Command in the Fort, and desired them to obey his Orders in his absence, to live in a Christian Union and Charity, to be Courageous and Firm in their Design.* He assured them, *He would return with all the Speed imaginable, and bring with him a fresh Supply of Meat, Ammunition, and Rigging for our Bark; and that in the mean time he left them Arms and other Things necessary for a vigorous Defence, in case their Enemies should attack them before his return.*

Mr. la Salle *returns with three Men to Fort* Frontenac *by Land, above five hundred Leagues.*

Then telling me, *That he expected I should depart without further delay.* He embraced me and gave me a *Calumet* of Peace, with two Men to manage our Canoe, *Picard* and *Ako*, to whom he gave some Commodities to the value of about one thousand Livres, to Trade with the Savages or make Presents. He gave to me in particular, and for my own use, ten Knives, twelve Shoemaker's Awls or Bodkins, a small Roll of *Martinico*-Tobacco, two Pounds of *Rassade*, i. e. little Pearls or Rings of coloured Glass to make Bracelets for the Savages; and a small Parcel of Needles; telling me, *He would have given me a greater Quantity if it had been in his Power.*

Thus relying on the Providence of God, and receiving the Blessing of Father *Gabriel*, I embraced all our Men and took my leave of Mr. *la Salle*, who set out a few Days after for *Canada* with three Men, without any Provisions but what they killed in their Journey, during which they suffered very much by cold Weather, Snow and Hunger.

The Author departs in a Canoe with two Men to discover the River Missisipi.

We set out from Fort *Crevecœur* 29th of *Feb.* my self, *Picard* and *Ako*, and when we had gone fifty Leagues down the River, we came to the Place where it falls into the *Missisipi*, between 35 and 36 deg. of Lat. The *Missisipi* runs to the S. S. W. between two ridges of Mountains, is in some places a League broad, and half a League where it is narrowest. The Ice which came down stopt us here till the 12th of *March*. Then after Prayers we embarked, and continuing our Course down the River, we discovered three Savages on the 15th, and landing, marched up to them; whereupon they ran away. But after some signs, one returned, and presented us the *Calumet* of Peace, which when we had received, the two others came back. We could not understand one Word of their Language: And *March.* when we named two or three different Nations to them, one answered three times, *Chiquacha*. They gave us some Pelicans they had killed with their Arrows, and we presented them with part of our Meat. Two Days after we saw many Savages near the River, crying aloud, *Sasacouest*, that is, *Who goes there?* as I have been informed. They sent a Pirogue or heavy wooden Canoe towards us, wherein were the three Savages we had met two Days before. We presented our *Calumet* of Peace, which they received, but gave us to understand by signs that we must go to the *Akansa*, pointing to the Savages ashoar. We could not avoid it, and as soon as we were landed, the three *Chiquachas* took our Canoe upon their Shoulders, and carried it to the Village. These Savages received us very kindly, and presented us with Beans, *Indian* Corn and Flesh to eat. We made them also a Present of some of our *European* Commodities, which they admired, putting their Fingers upon their Mouths, especially when they saw our Guns. The 18th we embarked again, after having been entertained with Dancing and Feasting; and carried away our Commodities, tho' the Savages were very loath to part with them; but having accepted our *Calumet* of Peace, they did not presume to stop us by force. 1680

We passed by the Nations of *Taensa* and *Coroa*, by both which we were kindly received, and on the 24th came to the Nation of *Quiniquissa*. The next Day we came to a Point where the *Missisipi* divides it self into three Channels. We took the middle one, which is very broad and deep. The Water began there to tast brackish, but four Leagues lower was as Salt as the Sea. We rowed about four Leagues further and discovered the Sea. The mouth of the River is very deep, without being interrupted with any Sands, so that great Ships may go up as far as the *Illinois* River, which is two hundred Leagues. Its Course from its Source to the Sea, may be eight hundred Leagues, including windings and turnings. It falls into the Gulph of *Mexico*, between 27 and 28 deg. of Lat. Its Mouth may be about thirty Leagues from *Rio Bravo*, sixty from *Palmas*, and eighty or one hundred from *Rio Panuco*, the neareſt Habitation of the *Spaniards*.

They come to the Sea.

My two Men were very glad of this Discovery: But on the other hand they expressed a great deal of Dissatisfaction to have been at such trouble without making any Profit, having found no Furs to exchange for their Commodities. They were also much afraid of the *Spaniards* of *New Mexico*, and were perpetually telling me, *That if they were taken, the* Spaniards *would never spare their Lives, or at least give them the Liberty to return into* Europe. I knew their Fears were not altogether unreasonable; and therefore I resolved to go no further, tho' I had no reason to be afraid for my self, our Order being so numerous in *New Mexico*, that on the contrary, I might expect to have had in that Country a peaceable and easie Life.

We lay during the time we were ashoar, under our Canoe supported with four Forks, and made Curtains of some Rolls of Birch Bark, hanging from the Top to the Ground, to defend us from the Rain. We saw no Body, and therefore cannot tell whether that Coast be Inhabited. We squared a Tree of twelve Foot high, and making a Cross of it, erected it in that Place, leaving there a Letter signed by me and my two Men, containing an Account of our Voyage, Country, and Profession. Then kneeling near the Cross, we sung some Hymns, and embarked again on the first of *April*, to return towards the Source of the River. *April.*

They return.

'Tis observable that during the whole Course of our Sailing, God protected us against the Crocodils, which are very numerous in that River, especially towards the Mouth. They look'd dreadful, and would have attack'd us, had we not been very careful to avoid them.

Our Canoe being loaded with three Men only, and our Provisions, did not draw three Inches Water, and therefore we could Row very near the Shoar, and avoid the Current of the River. The next Day, *April* 2d, we saw towards break of Day a great Smoak not far from us, and soon after discover'd four Savage Women loaden with Wood, marching as fast as they could to get to their Village before us. But some Buffards coming near us, one of my Men could not forbear to shoot at them, which so frighted the Women that they left their Wood, and ran away to their Village, where they arrived before us. The Savages having heard the noise, were in as great Fear as their Wives, and left their Village upon our Approach. But I landing, immediately advanc'd alone with the *Calumet* of Peace, whereupon they return'd, and received us with all the Respect and Civility imaginable. We made them some small Presents to shew our Gratitude, and left that Place *April* the 4th, and Rowed with such diligence that we arrived the same Day at *Koroa*. I was surprized to see their *Indian* Corn which was left very green, grown already to maturity: But I have learned since, that their Corn is ripe sixty Days after it is sown. They have three or four Crops of *Indian* Corn in a Year, having no other Winter than some Rain. They have all sorts of Trees we have in *Europe*, and many other unknown to us. There are the finest Cedars in the World, and another Tree from which drops a most fragrant Gum, which in my opinion exceeds our best Perfumes. The Cotten Trees are of a prodigious height; the Savages make them hollow with Fire, to make their Pirogues of them. We saw some of them all of a Piece above one hundred Foot long. They told us, *That to the Westward are some Beasts who carry Men upon their Backs*, and shewed us the Hoof and part of the Leg of one, which was certainly the Hoof of a Horse. And surely Horses are not utterly unknown in the Northern *America*, for near the Cape named

Cotten-Trees one hundred Foot long.

1680 named by us St. *Anthony*, we saw a Horse and some other Beasts Painted upon the Rock with red Colours by the Savages. But whereas we had been told that the *Spaniards* of *New Mexico* lived not above forty Leagues from them, and supplied them with *European* Commodities; we found nothing amongst them that might be suspected to come from thence, unless it be some little pieces of Glass strung upon a Thread, with which the Women adorn their Heads. We left the Habitations of the *Akansas* the 4th of *April*, and during sixty Leagues saw no Savage. Our Provisions being spent, we had nothing to live upon but the Game we killed, or the Fish we could catch. On the 12th as my two Men were boyling a Bussard, and my self refitting our Canoe on the Bank of the River, I perceived on a sudden, about two of the Clock in the Afternoon, no less than fifty Canoes made of Bark, manned with one hundred and twenty Savages stark Naked, coming down the River with an extraordinary swiftness to surprize the *Miamis* and *Illinois* their Enemies.

We threw away the Broth which was preparing, and getting aboard as fast as we could, made towards them, crying out in the *Iroquese* and *Algonquin* Languages, *Comerades, We are Men of wooden Canoes*; for so they call those that sail in great Vessels. This had no effect; for they understood not what we said; so that surrounding us immediately, they began to let fly their Arrows at us, till the Eldest amongst them perceiving that I had a *Calumet* of Peace in my Hand, came up to us and prevented our being Murther'd by their Warriours.

They are taken Prisoners by the Savages.

They presently jumped out of their Canoes, some upon Land, others into the Water; surrounding us on all sides with Shrieks and Outcries that were indeed very terrifying. 'Twas to no purpose to resist, being but three to so great a number. One of them snatch'd the Pipe of Peace out of my Hand. We presented them with some small Pieces of *Martinico* Tobacco, and made signs to them with our Oars upon the Sand, that the *Miamis* their Enemies, whom they were in search of, had passed the River, and were gon to join the *Illinois*.

Being then out of all hopes of surprizing their Enemies, three or four of the eldest of them laid their Hands on my Head, and began to weep bitterly, accompanying their Tears with such mournful accents as can hardly be expressed; while I with a sorry Handkerchief I had left, made shift to dry up their Tears: However to very little purpose; for refusing to smoke in our Calumet, they thereby gave us to understand, that their design was still to murther us; and one hundred of their Leaders coming up to us, made us to understand by Signs, that their Warriors were resolved upon our Death. This obliged me to apply my self to their Chiefs, and presented them with six Hatchets, fifteen Knives and some pieces of Tobacco; after which bending my Neck and pointing to a Hatchet, I signified to them by that submission, that we threw our selves on their Mercy.

The Present had the good effect to soften some of them, who, according to their Custom, gave us some Beaver's Flesh to eat, themselves putting the three first Bits in our Mouths, having first blown upon it, because it was hot; after this they set their Platter before us, made of the Bark of a Tree, leaving us at liberty to feed after our own fashion. These Civilities did not hinder us from passing the Night away very uneasily, because in the Evening before they went to sleep, they had returned us our Calumet of Peace. The two Canoe-men resolved to sell their Lives as dear as they could, and to defend themselves like Men to the last, in case they should attack us. For my part, I told them, I resolved to suffer my self to be slain without the least resistance, in imitation of our Saviour. However, we watch'd all Night by turns, that we might not be surprized in our Sleep.

The next Morning early one of their Captains who had been for killing us, came and demanded my Pipe of Peace, it being deliver'd him, he fill'd it with Tobacco, and made the rest who had been for putting us to Death to smoke in it; then he made Signs that we must go along with them into their Country to which they were then returning. This Proposal was very welcome to us, and we rowed in their company for nineteen Days together, sometimes North, and sometimes N. East, according to the best observations we could make by our Compass; so that after these Barbarians had forced us to follow them, we made more than two hundred and fifty Leagues up the River *Mississipi*, and we were got about one hundred and fifty Leagues up the same, above that of the *Illinois*, when we were first taken by them. One of the fifteen Days of our most irksome Voyage a Captain call'd *Aquipaguetin*, who afterwards adopted me for his Son, had killed a large fat Deer, to which he invited the chief Captains of the Warriors. After the Repast the Savages with their Hair anointed with Oil of Bears, and stuck all over with red and white Feathers, and their Heads covered with the Down of Birds, began to dance with their Hands upon their Hips, and striking their Feet with great force against the ground. During the Dance one of the Sons of the Master of the Ceremonies made them all smoke in the Pipe of War, himself shedding abundance of Tears. The Father in the mean while laying his Hands on our Heads, and lifting up his Eyes to Heaven, bathed himself in Tears. As for us, as far as we could judge, all this Grimace boaded us no good: And indeed, we afterwards understood, that he meant nothing less than our Destruction by it. But finding the opposition he was like to meet from the other Chiefs, who were of a contrary opinion, he was content to suffer us to reimbark, resolving however to make use of some other Straragem to get into his own Hands by little and little the rest of our things; not daring to take them from us openly by force, for fear of the rest of his own Nation; by which it plainly appears, that he was a crafty designing Knave. His Son was kill'd by the *Miamis*, and finding he could not revenge himself on that Nation, vented his Passion upon us. Having thus travell'd nineteen Days in our Canoe by Water, we came within six Leagues of the Fall of St. *Anthony*, where they held an Assembly to consult what they should do with us. At last they separated and gave us to three of their Chiefs, instead of three of their Sons which had been kill'd in the War. Then they seized our Canoe and took away all our Equipage; our Canoe they pull'd to pieces; their own they hid among the Alders; so that tho' we might have gone conveniently enough quite up into their Country by Water, yet were we obliged by their conduct to travel no less than sixty Leagues a-foot.

1680

Our ordinary Marches were from break of Day till ten at Night; and when we met with any Rivers we swam them, themselves (who for the most part are of an extraordinary size) carrying our Cloaths and Equipage on their Heads. We never eat but once in twenty four Hours, and then nothing but a few scraps of Meat dried in Smoak, after their Fashion, which they afforded us with abundance of regret.

I was so weak that I often lay down, resolving rather to die than follow these Savages any farther, who travell'd at a rate so extraordinary, as far surpasses the strength of any *European*: However, to hasten us, they sometimes set fire to the dry Grass in the Meadows thro' which we pass'd; so that our choice was, march, or burn. When we had thus travell'd sixty Leagues a-foot, and undergone all the Fatigues of Hunger, Thirst and Cold, besides a thousand Outrages daily done to our Persons, as soon as we approached their Habitations, which are situated in Morasses inaccessible to their Enemies, they thought it a proper time to divide the Merchandize they had taken from us. Here they were like to fall out and cut one anothers Throats about the Roll of *Martinico* Tobacco, which might still weigh about fifty Pound: Then arose a high dispute about the distribution they were to make of our Persons. At last *Aquipaguetin*, as Head of the Party carried it; who turning towards me, presented me his Calumet of Peace to smoke in, receiving from me at the same time that which we had brought, and then adopted me for his Son in the room of him he had lost in the War.

Two other Captains did the same by the two Canoe-Men. This separation was very grievous to us, tho' somewhat allay'd by the satisfaction we had to find our Lives were safe. *Picard* being sensible of the uncertain condition his Life was in among so barbarous a People, took me aside to confess him. I should have been overjoy'd to have seen *Ako* so well disposed. Being thus parted, the Savages led us away, each to his own Village.

I came to *Aquipaguetin*'s Habitation in the Month of *May* 1680. The next Day he shewed me to six or seven of his Wives, telling them that they were to esteem me as one of their Sons, and ordered those about him to give me the Title that was due to the rank which I was to hold amongst my new Kindred. *May.*

I spent three Months very ill in this place among the *Issati* and *Nadoveſſians*. My new Father gave me nothing to eat but a few wild Oats five or six times a Week, and the Roes of dried Fish. He sent me into a neighbouring Isle with his Wives, Children and Servants,

1680. vants, where I digged with a Pickax and Shovel I had recovered from those that robbed us. Here we planted Tobacco, and some *European* Pulse which I brought from thence, and were highly prized by *Aquipaguetin*.

During my stay among them, there arrived four Savages in Embassy, who said they were come above 500 Leagues from the West, and had been four Moons upon the way. They assured us there was no such place as the Strait of *Anian*, and that they had marched without resting, except to sleep, or kill Game for their subsistence, and had not seen or passed over any great Lake; by which Phrase they always mean the Sea.

No Strait of Anian.

They farther inform'd us, that the Nation of the *Assenipoulacs*, who lie N. E. from the *Issati*, was not above six or seven Days Journey from us: That none of the Nations within their Knowledge, who lie to the W. or N. W. of them had any great Lake about their Countries, which were very large, but only Rivers, which coming from the North run cross the Countries of their neighbouring Nations which border on their Confines on the side of the great Lake, which in their Language is the same as Sea. They farther assured us, that there were very few Forests in the Countries thro' which they passed in their way hither, in so much that now and then they were so put to it for Fuel, that they were forced to make Fires of Bulls Dung to boil their Victuals. All these Circumstances make it appear, that there is no such place as the Streights of *Anian*, as we usually see them set down in Maps. And whatever Efforts have been made for many Years past by the *English* and *Dutch*, the two Nations of the World, who are the greatest Navigators to find out a Passage to *China* and *Japan* thro' the frozen Sea, they have not yet been able to effect it. But by the help of my Discovery and the assistance of God, I doubt not but a Passage may still be found, and that an easy one too. For example, One may be transported into the *Pacifick* Sea by Rivers which are large and capable of carrying great Vessels, and from thence it is easy to go to *China* and *Japan* without crossing the Equinoctial Line: And in all probability *Japan* is on the same Continent as *America*.

July. Toward the end of *July* the *Sieur de Luth* accompanied with five Men arrived in our Camp from *Canada*; and because I had some knowledge of the Language of the *Issati*, he desired that I, with *Picard* and *Ako*, might accompany him to the Villages of those People. I was very willing to undertake it, especially when I understood that they had not received the Sacraments in the whole two Years and a half that they had been out upon their Voyage. We arrived at the Villages of the *Issati* the 14th of *August*, and having exchanged our Commodities we returned to the Camp. Towards the end of *September* we let them understand, that to procure them Iron and other Merchandizes which was useful for them, it was convenient that we should return to *Canada*, and that at a certain time when we should agree upon between us, they should come half the way with their Furs, and we the other half with our *European* Commodities; upon this they held a great Council, and consented to our return. *Ouasicoude* their chief Captain gave us some Bushels of wild Oats for our subsistence by the way, having first regaled us in the best manner he could. These Oats are better and more wholsome than Rice: Then with a Pencil he marked down on a sheet of Paper which I had left, the Course we were to keep for 400 Leagues together. 1681.

We put our selves into two Canoes, being eight *Europeans* of us in all. We fell down the River of St. *Francis* into the *Mississipi*, and thence went up the River *Ouisconsin*, navigable for large Vessels above one hundred Leagues; then we carried our Canoes over-land half a League. Thus having made more than four hundred Leagues by Water since our departure from the Country of the *Issati*, we arrived at last at the great Bay of the *Puans*, where we found many *Canadians*, who were come hither to trade; they having some Wine with them, I administred the Sacrament and preached. After two Days stay we departed, and after one hundred Leagues rowing, having coasted along the great Bay of *Puans*, we arrived at *Missilimakinak*, where we were forced to winter.

They are set at liberty.

We parted from *Missilimakinak* in *Easter* Week 1681, 1681. and having rowed one hundred Leagues along the side of the Lake *Huron*, we passed the Streights which are thirty Leagues thro', and the Lake of St. *Claire* which is in the middle: Thence over the Lake *Erie* to the fall of *Niagara*, from whence we carried our Canoe two Leagues below, and came to the Lake of *Ontario* or *Frontenac*. When we came to the Fort we were kindly received by Father *Luke Buisset* and Mr. *la Fleur*, who had the command of the Fort in the absence of Mr. *la Salle*. But our Men being eager to return to *Canada*, we took leave and went for *Quebec*. In two Days we came to *Montreal*, sixty Leagues. Count *Frontenac* looking out at a Window saw me in the Canoe, and took me for Father *Luke Fillatre*, who served him as Chaplain: But one of his Guards knowing me again went to him and acquainted him with my coming: He was so kind as to come and meet me, and gave me the best reception that a Missionary might expect from a Person of that Rank and Quality: He wondred to see me so much alter'd, being lean, tired and tann'd. He carried me to his own House, where I continued twelve Days to refresh my self: He forbad all his Servants to give me any thing to eat, lest I should fall sick if left to my own discretion after so long Hardships; and gave me himself what he thought best.

When I desired his permission to go to *Quebec*, he appointed two of his Guards who understood very well to manage a Canoe, to carry me thither, where the Provincial Commissary of the Recollects order'd me to return to *Europe*.

CHAP. XV.

An Account of Mr. la Salle's *undertaking to discover the River* Mississipi, *by way of the Gulph of* Mexico, *By* Lewis Hennepin.

MR. *Robert Cavelier de la Salle* was a Person qualified for the greatest Undertakings and may be justly ranked amongst the most famous Travellers that ever were. This will appear to whomsoever will consider that he spent his own Estate about the greatest, most important and most perilous Discovery that has been yet made. His design was to find out a Passage from the Northern to the South Sea without crossing the Line, which a great many have hitherto sought in vain. The River *Mississipi* does not indeed run that way; but he was in hopes by means of that River to discover some other River running into the South Sea. In order whereunto he endeavour'd to find out by Sea the Mouth of *Mississipi*, which discharges it self into the Gulph of *Mexico*, to settle there a Colony and build a good Fort to be as his Magazine, and serve as a retreat both by Sea and Land in case of any mishap.

He made his Proposals to the *French* King's Council, who approving the design, his most Christian Majesty gave him all necessary Authority, and supplied him with Ships, Men and Money. The Ships were the *Toby*, one of the King's Men of War of fifty six Guns, a great Fly-Boat, a small Frigat and a Ketch. This Fleet was commanded by Mr. *Beaujeau*, who was victualled for a Year; and Mr. *du Salle* had under his Command one hundred and fifty Land-Men who were to settle in the Country: He had also with him twelve Gentlemen who appeared to him vigorous, and like to bear the Fatigues of the Voyage, among whom were two of his Nephews, *viz.* Mr. *Moranger* and Mr. *Cavalier*, the last but fourteen Years old.

They sailed from *Rochel August* the 5th. 1684 and 1684. passing by *Martinico* and *Guardalupe* took in fresh Provisions and Water, with divers Volunteers. The Ketch being separated by Storm was taken by the *Spaniards*; the other three Ships arrived about the middle of *February* in the Bay of *Spirito santo*, and about ten Leagues off found a large Bay, which Mr. *la Salle* took for the right Arm of the *Mississipi*, and call'd it St. *Lewis*. He sounded the Bay, which he found deep, but narrow, and therefore had expresly forbid the Captain of the Fly-Boat to attempt to come into it, without having on board the Pilot of the Frigat, who was an experienced Man; and for a greater security, had commanded him to August.

1685 to unlade his Guns into the Pinnace to make the Ship the lighter; yet that Brute neglecting those Orders, and without taking notice of the Poles they had placed on the Sands to shew him the Channel, sailed his Ship at random, and ran her against a Sand where she remained. Mr. *la Salle* was a-shoar, and fearing the fate of his Ship, was going on board to save her, but was prevented by about one hundred and twenty Savages who came to attack him. He put his Men in a posture of Defence, but the noise alone of the Drums put the Savages to flight. Mr. *la Salle* following them presented the Calumet of Peace, which they accepted, and came along with him to his Camp, where he entertained them, and sent them back with some Presents. They were so pleased that they brought some Provisions the next Day and made an Alliance with him, which would have proved very advantageous to Mr. *la Salle* had not an unlucky Accident broke that good intelligence.

As they were unlading the Fly-Boat which had struck upon the Sand to endeavour to get her off, a Pack of Blankets fell into the Sea, which the Waves drove upon the Shoar. The Savages found it; and Mr. *la Salle* having notice of it, sent to demand it of them in a very civil manner: They shewed some reluctancy, whereupon the Officer instead of acting the prudent part, threatened to kill them unless they restored it immediately. This so frighted and incensis'd them, that they resolv'd to be avenged of that affront, and in order
1685. March. thereto got together in the Night time the 7th. of *March*, and marched to surprize the *French* Camp. They advanced as near as they would, the Centinel being asleep, and made a discharge of their Arrows, which killed four Gentlemen Officers and Volunteers, and wounded M. *Moranger* and another Volunteer. The *French* ran to their Arms and fired upon the Savages, who ran away, tho' none were wounded; and the next Day kill'd two of Mr. *la Salle*'s Men whom they found sleeping.

In the mean time the Fly-Boat was unladed, which was too far sunk to be got off, and most of the Goods saved; and as they were endeavouring to save the rest, she was dashed in pieces by the violence of the Waves, and several Men were in danger of being drowned; but by the Grace of God all escaped.

Mr. *Beaujeau* seeing all the Goods and Merchandize landed, and a Fort almost finished, sailed the 12th. of *March* for *France*; and Mr. *la Salle* having fortified his Magazine or Fort, left one hundred Men under command of Mr. *Moranger* his Nephew for defence of it, and with the rest being fifty, and three Missionaries, *viz.* Mr. *Cavalier*, Brother to Mr. *la Salle*, *Zenobe* and *Maxime*, advanced into the Country, in hopes of finding the *Missisipi*.

Fort Lewis. They built a Fort in a very advantageous Post, defended by twelve pieces of Canon, and then razed the first Fort. The Men grew so sickly that a great many died within a few Days, notwithstanding they were carefully look'd after and supplied with proper Remedies. On the 9th of *August* three of our Men being gone a shooting, the noise of their Guns was heard by the Savages, who immediately got together in great numbers and surrounded the three *Europeans*, who killed with the first Shot the General of the Savages. This sad Accident terrified them so much that they ran away, notwithstanding the disproportion in number; but they continued lurking about the Fort, and kill'd a *French* Man who had advanced too far into the Woods.

Mr. *la Salle* seeing no way to bring them to an Alliance, resolved to make War upon them to oblige them to come to Peace, and supply him with their *Pirogues* or wooden Canoes, which he wanted. Therefore he set out from his Fort the 13th. of *October* with sixty stout Men, having provided them with a kind of Breast-piece of Wood to cover them against the Arrows of the Savages. He was not far advanc'd when he found them encamp'd, and had several Skirmishes, killing and wounding a great many, and returned with many Prisoners. He had order'd the Captain of the Frigat to suffer none of his Men to lie a-shoar; however the Captain with six of his best Men charm'd with the sweetness of the Country went a-shoar, and leaving their Canoe upon the Owze with their Arms, went into a Meadow where they fell asleep, and were all kill'd by the Savages, who broke their Arms and Canoe. This sad Accident put the Colony into a consternation. Mr. *la Salle* having buried his Men resolved to travel along the Coast to find out the Mouth of the *Missisipi*, and leaving the Inhabitants and Soldiers who were to remain in the Fort, set out with twenty Men and Mr. *Cavalier* his Brother. The continual Rains made the Ways very bad, and swelled several small Rivulets, which gave him a world of trouble. 1686. At last on the 13th. of *February* he thought to have found his so much wish'd for River; and having fortified a Post on his Bank, and left part of his Men for its security, he returned to his Fort the 31st. of *March*, charm'd with his Discovery. But this Joy was overbalanced by Grief for the loss of his Frigat: This was the only Ship left unto him, with which he intended to sail in few Days for St. *Domingo*, to bring a new supply of Men and Goods to carry on his design: But it ran unfortunately a-ground by the negligence of the Pilot, and was dash'd in pieces. All the Men were drowned, except the Sieur *Chefdeville*, the Captain and four Seamen: The Goods, Linnen and Cloth of the Colony with the Provisions and Tools were all lost. February. March.

Mr. la Salle seeing all his affairs ruined by the loss of his Ship, and having no way to return into *Europe* but by *Canada*, resolved upon so dangerous a Journey, and took twenty Men along with him, with one Savage call'd *Nicana*, who had followed him into *France*, and had given such proofs of his affection to his Master, that he relied more upon him than upon any *European*. Mr. *Cavalier*, *Moranger* and Father *Anastas* desired likewise to accompany him. They took with them Powder and Shot, two Axes, two dozen of Knives, several Pounds of glass Beads, and two Kettles to boil their Meat, contenting himself with these Provisions, in hopes to find out easily the *Illinois* and return in a short time. Having assisted at the Divine Service in the Chappel of the Fort to implore God's Mercy and Protection, he set out the 22d. of *April* 1686, directing his March to the N. E. 'Tis likely they wanted Pirogues and Canoes, or else Mr. *la Salle* was not sure that he had found out the Mouth of *Missisipi*, otherwise it had been much easier to have found out the *Illinois* Country by Water, he knowing that the River of the *Illinois* runs into the *Missisipi*. *He sets out with twenty Men to find the Illinois River.* April.

After three Days March they discovered the finest campain Country in the World, and were met by many Men on Horse-back, with Boots, Spurs and Saddles, which shews they had Commerce with the *Spaniards*: Then marching two Days over vast Meadows, they saw such numbers of wild Oxen, that the least Droves consisted of about four hundred: They killed ten of them, and rested two or three Days to broil the Meat for the rest of their Voyage.

Mr. *la Salle* here alter'd his Course, marching directly to the Eastward. As he told no body the reason of it, it was impossible to know what was his Motive: He was secret to a fault, and likely would have prospered better, had he been somewhat more communicative. In their March *Nicana* the Savage cried out of a sudden that he was a dead Man, having been stung by a Rattle Snake. This obliged them to tarry some Days in that place. They gave him immediately some Orvietan, and having scarified the Wound, applied to it some Salt of Vipers, whereby he was recovered.

After several Days march thro' a most delicious Country, they came to a Village of the *Cenis*, one of the most populous and largest in *America*, being about twenty Leagues long, not in a continued Street, but because the Hamlets are so near one another, that the Whole looks as if it were but one. They found among them several things which they must have from the *Spaniards*, as Pieces of Eight, Silver Spoons, Lace, Cloaths and Horses. They had also a Bull of the Pope, exempting the *Spaniards* of *New-Mexico* from fasting in Summer. Horses are so common, that one was exchanged for an Ax, and a fine one was offer'd for Father *Anastas*'s Capuch. They presented Mr. *la Salle* with their Calumet of Peace in great Ceremony. By them he understood their Country to be but six Days Journey from the *Spaniards*. Having tarried several Days among the *Cenis*, he continued his march thro' the Country of the *Nassonis*, where four of his Men ran away to that People, which sadly vexed him; and a few Days after, he together with Mr. *Moranger* his Nephew fell sick of a violent Fever which obliged our Travellers to tarry in that place for several Weeks: For notwithstanding they recover'd, it was a long time before they were able to continue their Voyage. This Distemper disappointed all their Measures, and was the occasion of several Misfortunes that befel them afterwards. They tarried two whole Months, being reduced to the greatest extremities. Their Powder was almost spent, tho' they were not advanced above one hundred and fifty Leagues in a direct Line. Some of his Men had deserted; others began to be irresolute; and all these things being carefully considered, Mr. *la Salle* resolv'd

to

1686. to return to Fort *Lewis*. Every body approving it, they returned the ſame way, without meeting any remarkable Accident, except that one of them was ſwallowed by a Crocodile of a prodigious ſize, in repaſſing a River. They came to their Camp the 17th. of *October* 1686, where they were received with an incredible Joy by their Companions, who gave them over for loſt among thoſe barbarous Nations. He remained two Months and a half at Fort *Lewis*, during which time he forgot not to comfort his ſmall Colony, which began to multiply, ſeveral Children being born ſince their Arrival.

He returns to Fort Lewis.

October.

Having caſt up an intrenchment about a large Enclosure, wherein were the Habitations of the Colony, under the Cannon of the Fort and taken all other Precautions for their ſecurity, he call'd the Inhabitants together, and made ſo pathetical a Speech to them about the neceſſity he was under to make a Voyage to the *Illinois* Country, that he drew Tears from every one of the Aſſembly; for he was very much beloved: Then taking twenty Men with him, with his Brother, his two Nephews, Father *Anaſtaſius* and the Sieur *Joutel*, after publick Prayer, he ſet out a ſecond time from Fort *Lewis*, and reſolv'd not to return till he had found the *Illinois*.

1687. Mr. *la Salle* ſet out from the Fort the 7th. of *January* 1687, and having croſſed the River *Salbonniere* and *Hiens*, with divers others which were mightily ſwoln by the Rains, they came into a fine Country for hunting, where his People refreſh'd themſelves after their tireſome Travel with excellent good Chear for ſeveral Days together. He had ſent out Mr. *Moranger* his Nephew, his Laquey *Saget* and ſeven or eight of his Men to a certain place where *Nika* his Huntſman aforementioned, had laid up a ſtock of wild Bull's Fleſh, that they might get it ſmoaked and dried to carry along with them, and ſo not be obliged to halt ſo frequently to hunt for Proviſions.

January.

He ſet out again to find the Illinois.

With all his Prudence he could not diſcover the Conſpiracy of ſome of his People to kill his Nephew; for they reſolved upon it, and put it in execution all of a ſudden on the 17th. of *March*, wounding him in the Head with a Hatchet: They ſlew likewiſe the Laquey and poor *Nika*, who had provided for them by his hunting, with great Toil and Danger. *Moranger* languiſhed under his Wound for two Hours, forgiving his Murtherers, and embracing them frequently. But theſe Wretches not content with this bloody Fact, reſolv'd not to ſtick here, but contrived how to kill their Maſter too, for they feared he would juſtly puniſh them for their Crime. Mr. *la Salle* was two Leagues from the place where *Moranger* was killed, and being concerned at his Nephew's tarrying ſo long (for they had been gone two or three Days) was afraid they were ſurprized by the Savages; whereupon he deſired Father *Anaſtaſius* to accompany him in looking after his Nephew, and took two Savages along with him. Upon the way he entertained the Father with a pious diſcourſe of Divine Providence, which had preſerv'd him in the many dangers he had undergone during twenty Years abode in *America*; when all of a ſudden Father *Anaſtaſius* obſerved that he fell into a deep Sorrow, of which he himſelf could give no account: He grew mighty unquiet and full of trouble, a Temper he was never ſeen in before.

March.

Mr. Moranger kill'd.

When they were got about two Leagues he found his Laquey's bloody Cravat, and perceived two Eagles (a common Bird in thoſe parts) hovering over his Head; and at the ſame time ſpied his People by the Waterſide: He went to them and inquired for his Nephew, they made him little anſwer, but pointed to the place where he lay. Father *Anaſtaſius* and he kept going on by the River ſide, till at laſt they came to the fatal place, where two of the Villains lay hid in the Graſs, one on one ſide, and one on the other, with their Pieces cock'd: The firſt preſented at him but miſſed Fire; the other fired at the ſame time and ſhot him into the Head, of which he died an Hour after, *March* the 19th. 1687.

Mr la Salle murthered.

Father *Anaſtaſius* ſeeing him fall a little way from him with his Face all bloody, ran to him, took him up in his Arms and wept over him, exhorting him as well as he could in this conjuncture to die a good Chriſtian. The unfortunate Gentleman had juſt time enough to confeſs part of his Life to him, who gave him Abſolution, and ſoon after died. In his laſt moments he performed as far as he was capable whatſoever was proper for one in his condition preſſing the Father's Hand at every thing he ſaid to him, eſpecially when he admoniſhed him to forgive his Enemies. In the mean while the Murtherers ſtruck with horror at what they had committed, began to beat their Breaſts and deteſt their Raſhneſs. *Anaſtaſius* would not ſtir from the place till he buried the Body as decently as he could, and placed a Croſs over his Grave.

1687.

Thus fell the Sieur *de la Salle*, a Man of conſiderable Merit, conſtant in Adverſities, intrepid, generous, courteous, ingenious, learned and capable of every thing. He had formerly been of the Society of *Jeſus* for ten or eleven Years, and quitted the Order with conſent of his Superiors. He once ſhewed me a Letter written at *Rome* by the General of the Order, teſtifying that the Sieur *la Salle* had behaved himſelf prudently in every thing, without giving the leaſt occaſion to be ſuſpected guilty of a venial Sin. He had the ill hap to be maſſacred by his own Servants in the vigour of his Age. The pious deſign he was upon, in relation to the Converſion of thoſe ignorant Nations, ſeems to have deſerv'd a better Fate; but as God's ways are not our ways, we muſt ſubmit to Divine Providence, without troubling our ſelves about a vain inquiry into the Secrets of God Almighty.

Father *Anaſtaſius* haſtned to find out Mr. *Cavalier*, Brother of the Defunct Mr. *la Salle*, who was a pious and diſcreet Eccleſiaſtick, perfectly qualified for a Miſſionary, to whom he related his Death. The Murtherers came rudely into the ſame Cabbin or Hut preſently after, ſeizing upon all they found in it. Mr. *Cavalier* and the Sieur *Cavalier* his Nephew, expecting the Villains came to butcher them, fell down on their Knees and prepared themſelves to die like Chriſtians: But the Aſſaſſines moved with compaſſion at the ſight of the venerable old Man, and being ſorry beſides for their late wicked Deeds, reſolved to ſpare them upon condition they ſhould never return into *France*; but they were a long time e're they fix'd upon granting them Mercy. Some of them that had a mind to ſee their Kindred once again, endeavour'd to clear themſelves from ſo deteſtable an action; others ſaid it was ſafeſt to rid their hands of theſe two innocent Men, or elſe they might one Day call them to an account, if ever they met again in *France*. They choſe the Murtherer of Mr. *de la Salle* for their Leader, and upon deliberation reſolved to go to the famous Nation of the *Cenis*. Theſe infamous Murtherers in their march made the two *Cavaliers* ſerve them as Valets, giving them nothing but their leavings to eat. Upon the way a Conteſt aroſe betwen the Murtherer of Mr. *la Salle* and one *Hans* a *German* about Superiority; whereupon their Men divided, one Party following *Hans*, the other the Murtherer; *Hans* taking his opportunity fired a Piſtol at the Murtherer, the Bullet pierced his Heart, and he drop'd down dead upon the place. One of *Hans's* Crew ſhot him that killed Mr. *Moranger* in the ſide, and another let fly juſt at his Head; there was no Ball in his Musket, but the Powder ſetting fire to his Hair, catched his Shirt and Cloaths with ſo much violence that he could not put it out, but expired in the Flame.

Thus *Hans* became Leader of this miſerable Troop, and the *Cenis* being then ready to march againſt their Enemies took *Hans* and ſome other *Europeans* along with them; the reſt waited till they ſhould return, tho' *Hans* would have perſuaded them all to go, but they would not ſtir. As ſoon as *Hans* and his Party were gone, the two *Cavaliers*, the Sieur *Joutel*, Father *Anaſtaſius* and others departed out of the Country. The *Cenis* gave them two Savages for Guides. Each had his Horſe, Powder and Lead, with ſome Goods to defray their Charges on the way. They march'd N. Eaſtwards thro' the fineſt Country in the World. On the 5th of *September* they arrived at the Mouth of the River *Illinois*, diſtant one hundred Leagues from Fort *Crevecœur*, and navigable all the way for large Veſſels. A Savage ſeeing them enter his Village, ran by Land to carry the News to Mr. *Belle Fontain* Commander of the Fort, who would not believe him. They following apace after him came to the Fort *September* the 14th, and were preſently conducted to the Chappel, where *Te Deum* was thankfully ſung. They tarried here till the Spring 1688, and arriving at *Quebec* the 27th. of *July*, they ſailed for *France* the 20th. of *Auguſt* following.

September.

Some Obſervations of the Author's on the barbarous and uncivil Manners of the Savages.

In the Northern Parts the Men and Women hide nothing but their Privities; and thoſe of the South are quite naked, having not the leaſt ſentiment of Shame. They do the neceſſities of Nature before all the World without the leaſt Scruple, and without regard to any Man. The

1690 common discourse both of Men and Women is downright bawdy.

They never wash their wooden Platters or Spoons. When the Women have cleaned their Infants with their Hands, they wipe them very superficially upon a piece of Bark, after which they will handle the Meat that they eat. This often turned my Stomach that I could not eat with them, when I was invited to their Cabbins. They seldom or never wash their Hands or Face. When they eat fat Meat, they rub their Hands upon their Face and Hair to clean them; and are perpetually belching. They seldom cut their Nails. Those that have truckt Shirts with the *Europeans* never wash them, but commonly let them rot on their Backs. Instead of Hatchets and Knives they make use of sharp Stones, which they tie with Thongs of Leather in the end of a cleft Stick. Instead of Awls, they use a sharp Bone, which is above the Heel of an Elk.

To make Fire, they take a Triangle of Cedar-wood of a Foot and a half, in which they make some holes of a small depth; then taking a Switch or little stick of hard Wood, they twirl it between both their Hands in the hole, and by the quick motion produce a kind of Dust or Meal, which is converted into Fire; then pouring out this white Powder upon a bunch of dried Herbs, they rub altogether, blowing upon the Powder which is upon the Herbs, and the Fire blazes in a moment.

They swathe their Children with bands of large Skins and a sort of Cotten, that they may not be too hot; then tying them upon a board with a skin girdle, hang it on the branch of a Tree, or in some place of their Cabbin; so that their little ones never lie in Bed. They hang perpendicularly; and to the end their Urine may not hurt them, they place conveniently a piece of birch Bark, so that it runs away as it were in a Gutter, and touches not the Child's Body.

When they marry, they don't intend to bind themselves for so long time as they shall live, but for so long only as they shall agree together and love each other. As soon as they are discontented, they say, my Wife is uneasy to me, and I to her; she'll agree well enough with such a one who is weary of his Wife; there's no reason why we four should live unquietly all our Days: So without more ado, without any clamour or noise they separate, making no more Words on't than I quit thee; that's all, and are perfectly indifferent to each other ever after, and take no more notice when they meet, than if they had never seen one another.

Among the Northern Savages, and particularly the *Iroquois*, some have two Wives; but not for any long time. When they part, the Children commonly follow their Mother. If the Women would keep their conjugal Vows, we might marry as many of them as we would to *Europeans*; but they have no inclination to Constancy, and there are but very few of them that can withstand the temptation of a woolen Blanket, or any other trivial Present.

When the Savages go to hunt the Beaver in the Spring, they frequently leave their Wives in the Village to sow *Indian* Corn and Gourds, and hire another to go along with them. When they return, they give them a Beaver or two, and send them back to their Cabbin: But if the last pleases best, they take her, and turn away the first without more ado, and wonder the *Europeans* don't take the same Course.

Those that intend for the Wars seldom have to do with the Women till thirty Years of age; because, say they, it exhausts their Strength, weakens their Knees and renders them heavy in the Course. Those who marry before that age, are look'd upon as Men unfit for War or hunting, and are despised as effeminate Persons.

They bury their Dead with the greatest magnificence they can devise. They put on the Corps the best Attire, painting the Face and Body with all sorts of Colours; then putting it in a sort of Coffin made of the bark of Trees, they polish the outside with light Pumice-stones and place it in a manner of a *Mausoleum*, encompassed with Stakes or Palisadoes twelve or thirteen Foot high.

They put into the Coffin whatever they esteem valuable, tho' to the value of two or three hundred Crowns. They put in Shoes of pinked Skins, a pair of Tongs, a Hatchet, Necklaces of Purple, a Pipe, Tobacco, a Caldron, *Indian* Corn and some fat Meat. If it be a Man, they bury with him a Gun, Powder and Ball; or if he have no Fire-arms, with Bow and Arrows, to use in hunting when they come into the Country of Souls.

Of the Obstacles that are found in the Conversion of the Savages. 1690

There are many Obstacles which hinder the Conversion of the Savages.

1. The indifferency they have to every thing. When we speak to them of the Creation of the World, or of the Mysteries of the Christian Religion, they applaud all we say: For 'tis their Custom not to contradict any Man, and think every Man ought to be left to his own Opinion without being thwarted. They believe or make as if they believed all you say to them, but at the same time are so indifferent for every thing, especially Matters of our Religion, that they never trouble themselves about it.

2. The second Obstacle is, That every Nation has a peculiar Language, and those Languages have little or no affinity one with another; So that some of them who live not ten Leagues asunder, must use an Interpreter to talk together.

3. The third is, That they are not fixt to a place, tarrying no longer in the Villages than till Harvest be over, which is but a small time; all the rest of the Year they pass in Wars and Hunting. Then they carry their Families with them, and are absent eight or nine Months. Their Children then which had begun to learn something, forget all, and return to their former manner of Living.

4. Another Obstacle is, The deceitful Dealing of Christian Merchants, who never scruple at Cheating and Lying to get the Furs of the Savages cheap. This without doubt causes an Aversion from a Religion which they see accompanied, by the Professors of it, with so many Artifices and Cheats.

5. Another great Obstacle to their Conversion is, That most of them have several Wives, which in the northern Parts they change as often as they please, and can't conceive how People can tie themselves indissolubly to one Person.

6. The last Obstacle proceeds from their great Superstition. One would be apt to suspect that these *Americans* originally sprung from the *Jews*, some of whom might casually have been wrack'd and cast upon that part of the World; for they have several Customs not unlike theirs. They make their Cabins in the form of Tents like as the *Jews* did. They anoint themselves with Oil, and are superstitiously addicted to Divination from Dreams. They bewail over their Dead with great Lamentation. The Women go into Mourning for their near Relations a whole Year, wearing a sort of Hood upon their Heads: And commonly the Father or Brother of the Deceased take care of the Widow. Moreover we may observe some Conformity between *Moses*'s Relation of the Creation of the World, and the Belief of these Savages about it. Their Notion of the Creation of the World is this, That a Woman came down from Heaven; and hovered a while in the Air because she could find no place to set her Foot upon. The Fish of the Sea compassionating her, held a Council to determine who should receive her. The Tortoise offered himself, and presenting his Back above Water, the Woman placed her self upon it, and staid there. In time the Filth of the Sea gathering and setling about the Tortoise by little and little, form'd a great extent of Land, which is that we now call *America*.

Now say they, This Woman being uneasie at her living solitary, and troubled to have no Body to pass the time with more agreeable than she did; there descended from high a Spirit, who found her fallen asleep with Melancholy. He approached her unperceived, and from that Conjunction came forth two Sons out of her side, who after they were grown up could never agree together. One was a better Hunter than the other, and every Day there was some Scuffling between them. At last their Animosities grew to so great a height, that they could not endure one another. He that was of a peaceable Temper, unable any longer to submit to his Brothers rude Behaviour, resolved to separate himself from him. So he flew up into Heaven; whence to denote his just Resentment, he rattles his Thunder from time to time over his unhappy Brother's Head. 1683.

Some time after the Spirit came down again to the Woman, and then she brought forth a Daughter, from whom is descended that numerous People, who now take up one of the largest Parts of the World.

How fabulous soever this Story be in it self, yet we may discern a Ray of Truth in it. This Woman's sleep, and the Birth of two Sons, has something in it a kin

o

1683. to *Adam*'s ſleep, whilſt God took one of his Ribs to form *Eve*. The diſagreement of the two Brothers, reſembles the irreconcilable Hatred of *Cain* and *Abel*. The retreat of one of them to Heaven, repreſents the Death of *Abel*. And the Thunder grumbling in the Sky, may be compared with the Curſe pronounced by God upon the wretched *Cain* for inhumanly killing his Brother.

Beſides it ſeems as if God had laid a particular Malediction upon thoſe People as he did upon the *Jews*. They have no fixt Place of Abode, and perſiſt unalterably in their Opinions. They are ſubtil and crafty in their worldly Concerns, and obſtinately Superſtitious.

It requires a great deal of time to ſhew them the falſity of their Superſtitions, and much more to perſuade them to embrace the Verities of the Goſpel. So that Chriſtianity is not like to gain much ground among them, and we ſee that after ſo many Years of Miſſion, there has been but little Progreſs made. They are the ſame they were forty Years ago and above, and yet many Books are publiſhed of the great Converſions of the *Iroqueſe* and *Hurons*. I do not deny but that the Miſſionaries have faithfully diſcharg'd their Miniſtry: But the Seed has fallen upon an ungrateful Soil, either upon the high Way, or among the Thorns; ſo that unleſs the Holy Ghoſt do inſpire extraordinarily, little Fruit can be expected from theſe barbarous People. 1683.

CHAP. XVI.

A Voyage to North America. *Or a Geographical Deſcription of* Canada. *By the Baron* La Hontan, *Lord Lieutenant of the* French *Colony at* Placentia *in* Newfound-Land.

'TIS above a Century and a half ſince *Canada* was firſt Diſcover'd by *John Veraſan*, who was eaten up by the Savages. *James Cartier* was the next that went thither, who after he had ſailed above *Quebec*, return'd to *France* with a ſorry Opinion of that Country. About the beginning of the laſt Century a Colony was ſent thither from *Rovan*, which ſettled there after a great deal of Oppoſition from the Natives.

At this Day the Colony is computed to contain One hundred and eighty Thouſand Souls. The common People live in good and well furniſhed Houſes, which are of Wood two Stories high. They pay no Taxes, enjoy the Liberty of Hunting and Fiſhing, and live with more Eaſe and Conveniency than many Gentlemen in *France*. The Cold is extream from *December* to *April*, during which time the River is always frozen over, notwithſtanding the Flowing and Ebbing of the Sea, and the Snow upon the Ground is three or four foot deep; which is very ſtrange in a Country that lies in the Latitude of 47 deg. and ſome odd Minutes. The Capital City is *Quebec*, which is divided into the upper and lower City; both Commanded by a Caſtle which ſtands on the higheſt Ground. There are ſix Churches in the high City. The Cathedral conſiſts of a Biſhop and twelve Prebendaries, who live in common in the Chapter-Houſe, the Magnificence and Architecture of which is truly wonderful. Theſe poor Prieſts are a very good ſort of People; they content themſelves with bare Neceſſaries, and meddle with nothing but the Affairs of the Church, where the Service is performed after the *Roman* Way. The Jeſuits Church ſtands in the Center of the City, and is a ſtately Edifice. But their College is ſo ſmall, that at the beſt they have ſcarce fifty Scholars at a time. *Quebec* wants two eſſential Things, a Key and Fortifications, both which might be eaſily made, conſidering the conveniency of Stones lying upon the ſpot. The Governor General reſides here, and has twenty thouſand Crowns a Year, including the pay of his Company of Guards, and the particular government of the Fort: Not to mention the Preſents made to him by the Farmers of the Beavers Skins, and other ways and means whereby he ſucks as much Money out of the Country as the above mentioned Articles amount to. The Biſhops Incomes are ſo ſmall, that if the King were not graciouſly pleaſed to add to his Biſhoprick ſome other Benefices in *France*, he would be reduced to as ſhort Commons as a hundred of his Character are in the Kingdom of *Naples*. A Captain has one hundred and twenty Livres a Month; a Lieutenant ninety, and a common Soldier ſix *Sous* a Day of the current Money of the Country.

1683. From *Quebec* I went up the River St. *Lawrence* to *Trois Rivieres*, and thence to *Montreal*. Both ſides of the River from *Quebec* to this place are ſo repleniſh'd with Inhabitants, that one may juſtly call them two continued Villages of ſixty Leagues in length. When the River is frozen, they travel hither upon Sledges drawn by Horſes, which will run fifteen Leagues in a Day. Others have their Sledges drawn by two Maſtif Dogs; but then they are longer by the way. This River affords the biggeſt and longeſt Eels in the World, which they catch in this manner. At low Water they ſtretch out Hurdles at the low Water-mark, and that ſpace of Ground being then dry by the retreat of the Water, is ſhut up by the Hurdles. Between the Hurdles are placed Baſkets like Beehives: Then they let all ſtand in this faſhion for three Months in the Spring, and two in the Autumn. Now as often as the Tide comes in, the Eels looking out for ſhallow places, and making toward the Shoar, crowd in among the Hurdles, which hindring them from retiring with the Ebb Water, they are forced to bury themſelves in the Baſkets, which are ſometimes ſo over cramm'd that they break. They give an admirable reliſh in all Sauces, and being ſalted up in Barrels, will keep a whole Year without ſpoiling.

Here every one is allow'd to trade; and indeed 'tis the beſt place for getting an Eſtate in a ſhort time. All the Merchants have ſuch a perfect underſtanding one with another, that they all ſell at the ſame Price. Gentlemen who have a charge of Children, eſpecially Daughters, are obliged to be good Husbands, in order to bear the expence of the magnificent Cloaths with which they are let off; for Pride, Vanity and Luxury reign as much in *New-France*, as in *Old-France*. They muſt alſo be very cautious in carrying fair with the Eccleſiaſticks, it being in their Power to ſerve the Daughters of ſuch Gentlemen, by finding them agreeable and rich Husbands. It can hardly be imagined to what a pitch theſe Eccleſiaſtick Lords have ſcrewed their Authority in this Country. They excommunicate all the Masks wherever they ſpy them; they run after them to uncover their Faces, and abuſe them in a reproachful manner. They prohibit under pain of Excommunication the reading of Romances and Plays, and playing at *Ombre* or *Lanſquenet*. Their Zeal goes ſo far as even to name Perſons in their Pulpits. They cry out againſt thoſe that do not receive the Sacrament once a Month; and at *Eaſter* oblige all ſorts of Perſons to give in Bills to their Confeſſors. They prohibit and burn all Books that treat of any other Subject but Devotion. The Curate of this place came one Day to my Lodging, and finding the Romance of the Adventures of *Petronius* upon my Table, he fell upon it with an unimaginable fury and tore out almoſt all the Leaves. The Governor General himſelf that means to neglect no opportunity of inriching himſelf, does commonly hear two Maſſes a Day, and is obliged to confeſs once in twenty four Hours. He has always Clergymen hanging about him wherever he goes; and indeed properly ſpeaking, they are his Councellors. When a Governor is thus back'd by the Clergy, the Intendants, the Under-Governors and the ſovereign Council, dare not cenſure his Conduct, be it never ſo faulty; for the Protection of the Eccleſiaſticks ſhelters him from all the Charges that can be laid againſt him.

CHAP. XVII.

The Expedition of Mr. de la Barre *the Governor General, against the* Iroquese.

1684. I set forth with my Company from *Monreal* the 23d. of *June* 1684, every Canoe carrying two Soldiers; we arrived at Fort *Frontenac* in twenty Days. Towards the end of *August* Mr. *de la Barre* joyned us with the Militia he had raised in the neighbourhood of *Quebec*, to march against the *Iroquese*; but he and his Men were so sickly, that he was forced to send most of them back to the Colony. As soon as he was recovered he imbark'd, and rowing Night and Day we came in six Days before the River of *Frainin*. The Governor being in great perplexity, and having no hopes of compassing the end of his expedition, sent Mr. *le Moine*, who understood their Language, to their Village, which lay eighteen Leagues up the River, with Orders to endeavour by all means to bring along with him some of the old Standers of that Nation. He return'd in few Days with one of their most considerable Grandees, who had a Train of thirty young Warriors, and was distinguish'd by the Title of the *Grangula*. The Governor had used the precaution of sending the sick back to the Colony, that the *Iroquese* might not perceive the weakness of his Forces; and to favour the Stratagem, Mr. *le Moine* represented to the *Grangula*, that the Body of the Army was left behind at Fort *Frontenac*, and that the Troops he saw in our Camp were the General's Guards. But unhappily one of our *Iroquese* who had a smattering of the *French* Tongue, having strouled in the Night towards our Tents, over-heard what we said, and so revealed the Secret. Two Days after they had an Interview, the *Grangula* being seated at some distance before his Men, who all set squat upon their Tails, with his Pipe in his Mouth and the great *Calumet* of Peace before him; Mr. *de la Barre* being placed in a Chair of State spoke to him by his Interpreter to this purpose.

The King my Master being informed that the 5 Iroquese *Nations have for a long time stript, rob'd and abus'd all the Forest-Rangers Trading to the Country of the* Illinois *and other Nations who are my Master's Children, hath ordered me to demand an Interview in the neighbourhood of my Camp. This great Monarch means that you and I should smoke together in the great* Calumet *of Peace, provided, that you engage to make reparation to his Subjects: And in case of refusal, War is positively proclaimed.*

This Colier makes my Words good.

Coliers are Swathes 2 or 3 Foot long and 6 Inches broad, decked with Beads made of Shells found on the Sea-shoar. No Contracts are made among the Savages without them.

The Warriors of the 5 *Nations have introduced the* English *to the Lakes belonging to the King my Master, and into the Country of those Nations to whom my Master is a Father. This they have done with a design to ruin the Commerce of his Subjects, and to oblige those Nations to depart from their due Allegiance; notwithstanding the Remonstrances of the late Governor of* New-York, *who saw thro' the dangers that both they and the* English *exposed themselves to.*

This Colier warrants my Words.

The same Warriors have made several barbarous Incursions into the Country of the Illinois *and* Oumamis, *and have massacred Men, Women and Children, and carried off an infinite number of the Natives. These are my Master's Children, and therefore I charge you to restore them to their liberty, and to send them home without delay: Otherwise I have express Order to declare War.*

This Colier makes my Words good.

My Master wishes that the 5 *Nations had not obliged him to send a potent Army to the Fort of* * Cataracony, *and will be much troubled if it so falls out that this Fort which is a work of Peace, must be employ'd for a Prison to your Militia. I wish my Words may produce the desired Effect; for if they do not, I am obliged to joyn the Governor of* New-York, *who has Orders from the King his Master to assist me to burn the* 5 *Villages, and cut you off.*

* call'd by the *French Frontenac.*

This Colier confirms my Word.

During this Harangue the *Grangula* did nothing but look upon the end of his Pipe; then rising and taking 5 or 6 Turns in the Ring that the *French* and Savages made, he return'd to his place, and standing upright spoke thus to the General, sitting in his Chair of State: 1684.

Onnuntio, *I honour you, and all the Warriors who are with me do the same. In setting out from* Quebec *you must needs have fancied that the scorching Beams of the Sun had burnt down the Forests, which render our Country inaccessible to the* French; *or else, that the Inundations of the Lakes had confined us Prisoners. But now you have an opportunity of being undeceiv'd: For I and my Warlike Retinue come to assure you, that the* 5 Cantons *are not yet destroy'd. I return you Thanks in their name for bringing the* Calumet *of Peace; and at the same time I congratulate your Happiness in having left under Ground the bloody Ax that has been so often died with the blood of the* French. *I perceive that the* Onnuntio *raves in a Camp of sick People, and that while he pretends to come with no other design than to smoke with us in the great* Calumet *of Peace, he intended to knock us on the head, if the* French *Arms had not been so much weakned.*

This Title they give to the Governor of *Canada.*

Burying the Ax signifies Peace.

We have rob'd no French, *but such as have supplied our Enemies with Fusees, Powder and Ball. We have conducted the* English *to our Lakes, in order to trafick with the* Hurons: *just as the* Algonkins *conducted the* French *to our* 5 *Cantons, in order to carry on a Commerce that the* English *lay claim to as their Right. We are born Freemen, and have no dependance either upon the* Onnuntio, *or the* * Corlar. *We have a Power to go where we please, to conduct whom we will to the places where we resort to, and to buy and sell where we think fit. If your Allies are your Slaves and Children, you may treat 'em as such, and rob 'em of the liberty of entertaining any other Nation but your own.*

* The Title of the Governor of New-York.

This Colier comprehends my Word.

We fell upon the Illinois *and* Oumamis, *because they cut down the Trees of Peace that served for Limits or Boundaries to our Frontiers. They supplied our Enemies with Fire-arms, and hunted Beavers upon our Lands. We have done less than the* English *and the* French, *who without any right have usurped the Grounds they are now possess'd of, and of which they have dislodged several Nations, to make way for their building of Cities, Villages and Forts.*

This Colier contains my Word.

My Voice is the Voice of the 5 Iroquese *Cantons, who declare that they interr'd the Ax of* Cataracony *in the presence of your Predecessor in the very Center of the Fort, and planted the Tree of Peace in the same place; that it was then stipulated that the Fort should be used as a place of retreat for Merchants, and not a refuge for Soldiers. You ought to take care that so great a number of martial Men as I now see, being shut up in so small a Fort do not stifle and choak the Tree of Peace, and hinder it from shading both your Country and ours with its Leaves; and I do assure you that we will never dig up the Ax to cut it down, till the* Onnuntio *and the* Corlar *shall either joyntly or separately offer to invade our Country, which the great Spirit has disposed of in favour of our Ancestors.*

This Colier contains my Word.

As soon as he had done Mr. *le Moine* and the Jesuits that were present, explained his Answer to Mr. *de la Barre*, who thereupon retired to his Tent, storming and blustering. The *Grangula* danced by way of prelude to his Entertainment, in which he regaled several of the *French*. Two Days after he and his Retinue return'd to their own Country, and our Army set out in their Canoes for *Monreal*.

Having frequent occasion to mention their Warriors, you must take notice, that the way of waging War among the Savages is so harsh, that one must have a Body of Steel to bear the Fatigues they are obliged to undergo. They give but little Quarter, and if any are taken Prisoners, they are never exchanged. As soon as they are put in Chains, their Relations and the whole Nation to which they retain, look upon 'em as dead, unless they were so much wounded when they were taken, that they could not possibly kill themselves. These indeed they receive when they make their escape; but if the other Prisoners should offer to return, they would be contemned by their nearest Relations, and no body would receive them: So that we must not think it strange, if the number of their Warriors is so small, that sometimes one Nation can scarce muster up a Thousand.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Expedition of the Marquess Denonville *against the* Iroquese.

1687. IN the beginning of *July* 1687 the Marquess *Denonville*, who succeeded Mr. *de la Barre*, came from *Quebec* to *Monreal* with all the Militia of the Country, being fifteen Hundred who were joyned by our twenty Companies of Mariners and five hundred converted Savages. He had the Year before sent to our Allies to favour our design of extirpating the *Iroquese*. Mr. *Campigni* was sent before us with a strong Guard, and arriving at Fort *Frontenac*, presently sent away two or three hundred *Canadees* to surprize two Villages seven or eight Leagues from the Fort. The *Canadese* coming upon them when they least thought of any alarm, had no great difficulty in mastering them, and brought them Prisoners to the Fort, where they were tied to Posts with Cords round their Necks, Hands and Feet. The poor Wretches sung Day and Night, as their practice is when they fall into the hands of their Enemies. I told one of them who was about twenty five Years old, and had frequently entertained me in his Hut in the Year of Mr. *de la Barre*'s Expedition, that I was heartily grieved to see him in that dismal posture; that I would take care to have Victuals and Drink conveyed to him twice a Day, and would give him Letters to my Friends at *Monreal*, in order to his being used more favourably than his Companions. He replied hat he saw and was very well acquainted with the horror that most of the *French* were affected with, upon view of the Cruelty they underwent; and that he scorned to be fed or used more civilly than his Fellow Prisoners. Some young Savages on our side burnt the Fingers of these poor Wretches in their lighted Pipes, which provoked me to thresh 'em soundly; but I was severely reprimanded for my pains, and confin'd to my Tent for five or six Days. The poor Prisoners were carried to *Quebec*, from whence they were sent to the *French* Gallies.

The Sieur *de la Forest* arrived at the Fort with the News that the *Illinois* and *Oumamis* waited for the *Hurons* and the *Outaouas* in order to joyn them, and to march with joynt Forces against the *Iroquese*: He added, that Mr. *Durantais* assisted by the Savages our Allies, had taken an *English* Company near *Missilimakinac*, conducted by some *Iroquese*, who had fifty thousand Crowns worth of Goods in their Canoes: As also that Mr. *Dulhut* had taken another *English* Convoy, and kept the *English* and *Iroquese* as Prisoners, as well as their Commander, call'd Major *Gregory*. In fine, he represented to Mr. *Denonville*, that it was high time for him to set out from Fort *Frontenac*, if he meaned to appear at the general Rendevouze. So the next Day being the 3d. of *July* we imbarked and stood to the opposite side of the Lake. As soon as we landed we hawl'd up our Canoes and set a strong Guard about them. The next Day a young *Canadese* was unjustly shot to death. His Case is this: Having travell'd all over the Continent, he was perfectly well acquainted with the Country; and after the doing several good Services to the King, desired leave from the Governor to continue his Travels, in order to carry on some little Trade; but his Request was never granted. Upon that he resolv'd to remove to *New-England*, the two Crowns being then in Peace. The Planters of *New-England* gave him a very welcome Reception; for he was an active Fellow, and understood almost all the Languages of the Savages. Upon this consideration he was employed to conduct the *English* Convoys I spoke of but now, and had the misfortune to be taken along with them. Now to my mind, the usage he met with from us was extreme hard, we being then in Peace with *England*; and besides, that Crown lays claim to the property of the Lakes of *Canada*.

The next Day we began our march towards a great Village of the *Iroquese*, without any other Provisions than ten Baskets a Man, which every one carried for himself: We had but seven Leagues to march in a great Wood of tall Trees in a smooth even Ground. The Forest Rangers with a Party of Savages led the Van, and the rest of the Savages brought up the Rear, our regular Troops and Militia being posted in the middle. The first Day we marched four Leagues, and the advanced Guards made no discovery. The second Day our advanced Parties marched up to the very Fields of the Village without perceiving any thing, tho' they passed within a Pistol-shot of five hundred *Iroquese* who lay flat upon the Ground. We marched up with equal Precipitation and Confusion, thinking that the *Iroquese* were fled, and that at least their Women, Children and superannuated Persons would fall into our hands. When we came to the bottom of the Hill upon which the Ambuscade was placed, they began to raise their wonted Cry, which was follow'd by the firing of some Muskets. Our Batalions were divided into straggling Parties, and instead of firing upon the Enemy, we fired upon one another: We were so disordered that the Enemy were going to close upon us with their Clubs in their Hands, when the Savages on our side repulsed the Enemy, and brought off the Heads of eighty, wounding a great many. In this Action we lost ten Savages and one hundred *French*: We had twenty two wounded, among whom was Father *Ancleran* the Jesuit, who received a Musket-shot in his Privy Parts. When the Savages brought in the Heads of their Enemies to Mr. *Denonville*; they asked him why he halted, and did not march up? He answered that he could not leave his wounded Men behind, and that he thought it proper to encamp, that the Chirurgeons might have time to dress their Wounds. To obviate this Pretence, the Savages offered to make Litters to transport 'em to the Village that lay but a little way off: But our General did not approve of their advice; whereupon they drew up into a Body, and tho' they consisted of ten different Nations, agreed in a joint Resolution of pursuing their Enemy. Our General earnestly desired them to rest one Day and not to depart from his Camp, and that the next Day he would burn their Villages, and starve them to death by spoiling their Crop: But they took this Complement so ill, that most of them returned to their own Country; remonstrating, *That the* French *came to fetch a Walk, rather than to wage War: That their Ardour, like a flash of Fire, was extinguished as soon as kindled: That 'twas a fruitless Adventure to draw together so many Warriors from all parts to burn some Huts of Bark that the Enemy could rebuild in four Days: That the* Iroquese *did not matter the spoiling of their Corn, because the other* Cantons *were able to supply them: In fine, That since they had joyned the* French *twice together to no purpose, they would never trust 'em for the future.* The next Day we marched to the great Village, carrying our wounded Men upon Litters; but found nothing there but Ashes, the *Iroquese* having burnt the Village themselves; then we spent five or six Days in cutting down their Corn with our Swords; and having done the like Exploits at two little Villages three Leagues off, we returned to the Lake side. We found in these Villages plenty of Horses, black Cattle, Fowl and Hogs. The Forests were repleniss'd with Oak, Walnut and wild Chesnut Trees. 1687.

Two Days after we imbark'd for *Niagara*, where we arrived in four Days. The Water Fall is seven or eight hundred Foot high, and half a League broad; towards the middle of it is an Island that leans towards the Precipice, as if it were ready to fall. All the Beasts that cross the Water within half a quarter of a League above this Island, are suck'd in by force of the Stream; and both Beasts and Fish that are thus kill'd by the prodigious Fall, serve for Food to about Fifty *Iroquese*, who are settled about two Leagues below. Between the surface of the Water that shelves off prodigiously, and the foot of the Precipice, three Men may cross in a breast without any other damage than a sprinkling of some few drops of water.

The Savages our Allies took their leave of Mr. *Denonville*, telling him, that they depended upon his Promise of continuing the War till the five Nations should be either destroyed or dispossess'd by their Country; and that since their Alliance with *France* was chiefly grounded upon the Promises the *French* made of listening to no Proposals of Peace till the five Nations should be quite extirpated, they therefore hoped they would be as good as their word, especially considering that a cessation of Arms would sully the Honour of the *French*, and infallibly disengage their Allies. Mr. *Denonville* protested that he would prosecute the War so vigorously, that in the end these Barbarians should be quite cut off, or obliged to shift their Seats.

The

1687. The General calling for me that very Day acquainted me, that in regard I understood the Language of the Savages, I was to go with a Detatchment to cover their Country, pursuant to their Request. In obedience to my Orders I made all suitable preparations for my Voyage, and took leave of my Friends, who made me Presents of Cloaths, Tobacco, Books and other things they could with conveniency spare: And three Days after Mr. *Denonville* return'd to the Colony. 1688.

CHAP. XIX.

The Author is sent with his Detachment to Fort St. Joseph; *from whence being joyned by some of the* French *Allies, he makes another Expedition against the* Iroquese.

I Imbarked with my Detachment in Canoes *August* the 3d. and arrived the 14th. of *September* at Fort St. *Joseph*; of which I was ordered to take possession. In *December* following I had intelligence by some *Iroquese* Prisoners, that the Fort of *Niagara* was block'd up by eight hundred *Iroquese*, who meaned to appear before my Post very speedily. This troublesome piece of News galled me to the last degree, and finding that my Provisions were almost out, I resolved to go to *Missilimakinac* to buy Corn from the *Hurons*; so leaving some Soldiers to guard the Fort in my absence, I imbarked
1688 with the rest of my Detachment the first of *April* 1688, and arrived the 18th. It lies in Latitude 45 deg. 30 min. and is a place of great Importance; all that trade with the Savages of the South and West being obliged to pass this way. The Jesuits have here a little House or College adjoyning to a sort of Church. These good Fathers lavish away all their Divinity and Patience to no purpose, in endeavouring to convert such ignorant Infidels: All they can bring them to is, that oftentimes they'll desire Baptism for their dying Children; and some few superannuated Persons consent to receive the Sacrament of Baptism, when they find themselves at the point of Death.

My Orders were, that as soon as I had bought Corn, I should march to Fort St. *Mary* to engage the *Sauteurs* to joyn with us and the *Outaouas* against the *Irequese*. I set out from *Missilimakinac* with my Detatchment the 2d. of *June*, and arriving at *Saut* St. *Mary*, I persuaded forty young warlike *Sauteurs* to joyn the *Outaouas*, who tarried for us at the Isle of *Detour*, where we arrived the 16th. We imbarked again the 18th. and in four Days made the Island of *Manitoualin*, which is twenty five Leagues long, and seven or eight broad. On the 25th. we made the River of *Theontucale*, where we were detained four or five Days by a W. S W. Wind. We reimbarked the 29th. and arrived at Fort St. *Joseph* the 1st. of *July*, where the Soldiers I had left waited for us with great impatience. Having landed some Sacks of Corn at the Fort, we set out again on the 3d. for the *Iroquese* Country; and sailing thro' the Strait, stood to the South side of the Lake *Erie*, and arrived on the 17th. in the River of *Conde*. Immediately upon landing, the Savages cut down Trees to make a Redoubt for securing our Canoes and Baggage, and for a safe retreat in case of necessity.

The 20th. they march'd, each Man provided with a little Bag containing ten pound of the Flower of *Indian* Corn. They had resolved if they found the Country clear, to march up and surprize some of their Villages; but they were soon eased of their trouble: For, they had not march'd two Days when their Scouts discovered three hundred *Iroquese*, and had much ado to return to the Body of the Party which immediately betook themselves to flight. The next Day a Party of *Iroquese* appear'd in sight of our Redoubt, and a Slave who made his escape thither, assuring us that the *Iroquese* were no less than four hundred, we thereupon imbarked again on the 24th. and steer'd with a great deal of Precaution and Care, rowing all Night and lying by all Day.

On the 28th, as we lay in a Creek, we descried two Canoes making towards us; we judged them to be *Iroquese*; the Leader of the *Sauteurs* offer'd to go ashoar with his Men, and post himself without discovery till such time as we could force 'em ashoar. As soon as the Enemy perceived us, they made towards the Shoar with all imaginable Precipitation; and just when they were going to knock their Prisoners on the Head, the *Sauteurs* fell upon them, but missed of their aim in taking them all alive. The *Sauteurs* lost only four Men; and of twenty *Iroquese* they kill'd three, wounded five, and took the rest Prisoners, so that not one of 'em escap'd. They had with them eighteen Slaves of the *Oumamis*, who were all wounded, and seven big Belly'd Women. By these we were inform'd, that the rest of the Party were then upon their return by Land upon the Banks of the Lake, having thirty four Prisoners of both Sexes, and that they could not then be far off. Hereupon it was resolv'd to attempt the rescue of these Prisoners. So having made up a little sort of a Fort in seven or eight Hours, we sent out our Scouts on every side, while the main Body was kept in readiness to march upon the first Alarm.

August the 4th, two of our Spies return'd upon full Speed, to acquaint us that the *Iroquese* were not above three Leagues off, advancing towards us, and that there was a little Brook on the Road, upon which an Ambuscado might be conveniently laid. Our Savages ran immediately to take possession of that advantagious Post, but knew not how to make a right use of it. The *Outaouas* were too hasty in Firing, and by shooting at too great a distance, gave all the Enemies opportunity of making their Escapes, except twelve, whose Heads they brought with them to the little Fort where I staid. The Slaves indeed were all retaken, and stowing them in our Canoes, we steer'd through the Strait of the Lake of *Huron*, and arrived the 24th at Fort St. *Joseph*.

Assoon as I landed, I was inform'd that the Scurvy had made such a terrible havock at the Fort of *Niagara*, that it had swept off the Commander and all the Soldiers except twelve; and had carried off as many Soldiers at Fort *Frontenac* as at *Niagara*; and that Mr. *de Denonville* was negotiating a Peace with the *Iroquese*. Thereupon consulting with the three different Nations posted in my Fort; they after mature Reflection upon the Intelligence laid before them, came to this Resolution, That since the Marquis *de Denonville* had a mind to clap up a Peace, and the Fort of *Niagara* was abdicated, the Fort I then commanded would be of no use. In pursuance of this Resolution, we set Fire to the Fort on the 27th, and embarking the same Day, arriv'd at *Missilimakinac* the 10th of *September*.

Here I received Orders from the Governour to return to the Colony if the Season and other Circumstances would permit, or else to tarry till the Spring. I advised with the *French* and Savages, who all thought it impossible for me to return with my Soldiers before the Spring. And because I would not mew my self up all the Winter, I resolved to make the best use of my time in travelling through the southern Countries, and engaged four good Huntsmen of the *Outaouas* to go along with me.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

The Author's Journal of his Voyage from Miſſilimakinac *to the River* Miſſiſipi, *and thence up the Long River.*

1688. I Departed from *Miſſilimakinac* the 24th of *September*, accompanied with my own Detachment and the five Huntſmen of the *Outaouas*, who did me a great deal of Service. All the Soldiers were provided with new Canoes loaded with Proviſions and Ammunition, and ſuch Commodities as are proper for the Savages. The Wind at North wafted us in three Days to the Bay of *Poutcotamis* that lay forty Leagues off. The 29th we came to the Villages of the *Sakis*, the *Poutcotamis*, &c. on the ſide of a little River, where the Jeſuits have a Houſe or College. Aſſoon as I landed, the Warriors of thoſe Nations came by turns to regale me with the *Calumet* Dance, and with the Captains Dance; the former being a token of Friendſhip, and the latter of Reſpect. I return'd the Complement with a Preſent of ſome Rolls of *Braſil* Tobacco, which they value mightily, and ſome Strings of *Venice* Beads. They invited me to a Feaſt next Day. Firſt we had Singing and Dancing, which laſted two Hours. Then the Company ſet down, every one being provided with his Meſs. Four Platters were ſet down before me, in the firſt of which were two white Fiſh boiled: In the ſecond, the Tongue and Breaſt of a Roe-buck boiled: In the third, two Wood-hens, the hind Feet or Trotters of a Bear, and the Tail of a Beaver, all roaſted: And the fourth contain'd a large quantity of Broth made of ſeveral ſorts of Meat. Our Drink was Syrrup of Maple beat up with Water. The Feaſt laſted two Hours. I took my leave of them, and purſuing my Voyage we landed on the 13th of *October* upon the Shoar of a little Lake where the Head of the *Outagamis* reſided.

After we had rear'd up our Hurs, that General gave me a Viſit, and inquired, *Which way I intended to move.* I anſwer'd, *That I was ſo far from deſigning to march towards the* Nadoveſſians *his Enemies, that I ſhould not come near 'em by one hundred Leagues: And to confirm the Innocency of my Intentions, I pray'd him to ſend ſix Warriors along with me to the long River, which I deſign'd to trace up to its Source.* He replied, *That he was extream glad to find that I carried neither Arms nor Cloaths to the* Hadoveſſians; *and that inſtead of ſix Warriors he would give me ten who underſtood the Lingua.* I ſtaid with him two Days, during which time he regaled me nobly. I preſented him with a Fuſee, twelve Flint Stones, two Pound of Powder, four of Ball, and a little Ax. I gave to each of his two Sons a great Coat and a Roll of *Braſil* Tobacco. My four *Outaouas* were ſo tranſported with this little Reinforcement, that they told me, *We might venture ſafely as far as the Plantation of the Sun.* I embarked the 16th at Noon, and arriv'd at Night at the Land-Carriage of *Ouisconſine*, and ſo leaving the River of *Puants*, we tranſported our Canoes and Baggage to the River *Ouisconſine*, being about three quarters of a League.

The 19th we embarked, and arrived in four Days at the place where it empties it ſelf into the River *Miſſiſipi*, which is about half a League broad in that part. We ſounded as we went, and found nine Foot Water in the ſhalloweſt place. The 3d of *November* we entred *November.* the Mouth of the long River, which looks like a Lake full of Bull-ruſhes. In the middle is a narrow Channel upon which we ſteer'd. The next Morning we found the River pretty narrow, and the Shoar covered with lofty Trees. In our Paſſage we killed ſeveral wild Beevas, which we broiled, and catch'd ſeveral large Dabs. The 6th. a gentle Gale ſprung up, which wafted us twelve Leagues higher, where we landed. Our Paſſage to this place was very quick, notwithſtanding the great Calm that prevails upon this River, which I take to be the leaſt rapid River in the World. 'Tis ſtrange, that we ſaw no Bucks nor Turkies in theſe parts, which we met with ſo frequently elſewhere. The 7th. the ſame Wind drove us to an Iſland ten or twelve Leagues further, where my Savages killed thirty or forty Pheaſants.

The 8th. the Wind proving unſerviceable to us, by reaſon it was intercepted by Hills covered with Firs, we plied our Oars, and deſcried on the left hand large Meadows, and ſome Huts a quarter of a League from the River. Our Savages and ten of the Soldiers jumped a-ſhoar, and directed their Courſe to the Houſes, where they found fifty or ſixty Huntſmen prepared to receive them with their Bows and Arrows. As ſoon as the Huntſmen heard the voice of the *Outagamis* they threw down their Arms, and preſented the Company with ſome Deer they had juſt killed, and helped to bring it to my Canoes. They were ſome of the *Eokaros*, who had left their Villages and come thither to hunt. I preſented them with Tobacco, Knives and Needles, which they could not but admire. Upon this, they repair'd with expedition to their Villages to acquaint their Aſſociates what a good ſort of People they had met with, which had ſo much influence, that the next Evening there appear'd upon the River ſide above two thouſand Savages, who danced as ſoon as they diſcried us. Thereupon our *Outagamis* went a-ſhoar, and after a ſhort conference, ſome of the principal Savages imbarked on board our Canoes, and ſo we all ſteered to the chief Village, which we did not reach till Midnight. I ordered our Huts to be made up on a point of Land a quarter of a League from the Village, and the *Outagamis* caution'd the Savages not to approach our Camp in the Night. Next Day I went to viſit the Grandees of this Nation, to whom I gave Preſents of Knives, Sciſſars, Needles and Tobacco. They gave me to underſtand, that they were infinitely well pleaſed with our Arrival in their Country, becauſe they had heard the Savages of other Nations ſpeak very honourably of the *French*. I took leave of them on the 12th. and ſet out with a Convoy of five or ſix hundred Savages, who march'd upon the Shoar, keeping pace with our Canoes. I paſſed from Village to Village without ſtopping, unleſs it were to encamp all Night, or to preſent the Savages with ſome Trinkets, and ſo ſteered on to the laſt Village, with a deſign to get Intelligence. As ſoon as we arrived, the great Governor, who indeed was a venerable old Gentleman, ſent out Hunters to bring us good Cheer. He inform'd me that ſixty Leagues higher I ſhould meet with the Nation of the *Eſſanapes*, who waged War with him; that if it had not been for their being at War, he would have given me a Convoy to their Country: That however, he would give me ſix Slaves of that Country which I might carry home, and make uſe of as I ſaw occaſion; and that in ſailing up the River, I had nothing to fear, but the being ſurprized in the Night time. 1688.

The Commanders of this People told me, they had twelve Villages peopled by twenty thouſand Warriors. Both Men and Women were naked all over, except their Privities. There ſeems to be ſomething of Government and Subordination among them; and they have their Houſes fortified with the Branches of Trees, and Faſcines ſtrengthened with fat Earth.

The 21ſt. we imbarked at break of Day, and on the 25th. being come within ſixteen or eighteen Leagues of the *Eſſanapes*; I ſent two of the Slaves of that Nation to give notice of our Arrival. The 27th. we approached the firſt Village, and putting up the great *Calumet* of Peace upon the Prow of one of my Canoes, lay upon our Oars.

Upon our firſt appearance, three or four hundred *Eſſanapes* came running towards us, and after dancing, invited us a-ſhoar. I landed with the ten *Outagamis*, the four *Outaouas* and twenty Soldiers. Our Conductors ſtopped us at the Gate, till the Governor, a Man of fifty Years of age, marched out with five or ſix hundred Men, armed with Bows and Arrows. The *Outagamis* of my Company charged 'em with Inſolence in receiving Strangers with their Arms about them, and called out to them to lay down their Arms; upon which they flung their Bows and Arrows aſide all on a ſudden. We entred their Village with our Fuſees in our Hands, which the Savages admired mightily. When I and my twenty Soldiers had entred, they ſtopt the *Outagamis*, affirming, that they did not deſerve the priviledge of entring within the place of Peace, ſince they had endeavoured to create a difference between us and them. In the

1688 the mean time I ordered my Men to open the Door and to call out to the *Outagamis*, that they should offer no manner of Injury. But they instead of coming in, press'd me to return with all expedition to the Canoes, which accordingly I did, without loss of time, and carried with me the four *Essanape* Slaves, in order to leave them at the first Village we came to. We had no sooner imbarked than the two other Slaves came to acquaint me, that the Governor would stop me in his River; but the *Outagamis* made answer, that he could not do that without throwing a Mountain into it; so we rowed to the next Village about three Leagues off, and there I resolv'd not to stop at the other Village, where I should only lose time and lavish my Tobacco, but steered directly to the Metropolitan, in order to complain to their Generalissimo.

We arrived at the Capital Canton the 30th. of *November*, and there met with a very honourable Reception. The *Outagamis* complained of the affront they had receiv'd; but the Head General being already inform'd of the matter, made answer, that they ought to have carried off the Leading Officer, and brought him along with them. In passing from the first Village to this, we run fifty Leagues. After our Men had fitted up our Huts at the distance of a Cannon shot from the Village, we went in a joynt Body with the *Outagamis* and *Outaouas* to the Cacick of that Nation; and in the mean time the six *Essanape* Slaves were brought before him by ten of my Soldiers. I was in the presence of this petty King, when these Slaves spent half an Hour in prostrating themselves before him. I made him a Present of Tobacco, Knives, Needles, Scissars, two Fire-locks, some Hooks and a very pretty Cutlas. He was better satisfied with these trifling things, which he had never seen before, than I could have been with a plentiful Fortune. He testified his acknowledgment by a seasonable Counter-present of Pease, Beans, Bucks, Roe-Bucks, Geese and Ducks, of which he sent great plenty to our Camp. He told me, that since I design'd to visit the *Gnasitares*, he would give me a Convoy of two or three hundred Men: That they were a very honest sort of People, and were linked with his People, by a common Interest in guarding of the *Mozemleks*, which were a turbulent and warlike Nation, who never took the Field with less than two hundred thousand Men. I asked four Pirogues of him, which he granted very frankly, allowing me to pick and choose that number out of fifty. I ordered my Carpenters to plane them, by which they were thinner and lighter by one half. I left my Canoes with the Prince, and begg'd of him that they might remain untouch'd by any body; in which point he was very faithful to me.

December. *December* the 4th. I took leave, having ten Soldiers on board of my own Pirogue, besides the ten *Outagamis*, the four *Outaouas* and the four *Essanape* Slaves. Here ended the Credit and Authority of the *Calumet* of Peace. The first day we had enough to do to run six or seven Leagues, by reason of the Bulrushes with which the Lake is incumbred. The two following Days we sailed twenty Leagues. The 4th. Day, a W. N. W. Wind surprized us with that violence, that we were forced to put a-shoar, and lay two Days upon a sandy Ground, where we were in danger of starving for Hunger and Cold: For the Country was so barren that we could not find a chip of Wood wherewith to warm our selves, or to dress our Victuals; and as far as our Eye could reach, there was nothing to be seen, but Fens covered with Reeds and Clay. On the 19th. of *December* we arriv'd at the Point or Lands end of that Island marked in my Map with a Flower-de-luce. As soon as I had landed and fitted up my Huts, I sent my *Essanape* Slaves to the first of the three Villages that lay before us. They returned in a great alarm occasioned by the unfavourable Answer they received from the *Gnasitares*, who took us for *Spaniards*, and were angry with them for conducting us to their Country. I thereupon immediately imbarked, and posted my self in another Island. In the mean time the *Gnasitares* sent expeditious Courriers to the People, who live eighty Leagues to the Southward of them, to desire they would send some of their number to examine us; for that People were supposed to be well acquainted with the *Spaniards* of *New-Mexico*. The length of the Journey did not discourage them, for they came as chearfully as if it had been upon a national Concern; and after taking a view of our Cloaths, Fusees, our Air, Complexion and manner of Speech, were forced to own that we were not true *Spaniards*. These Considerations joyn'd to the account I gave 'em of the reasons of my undertaking the Voyage, had so much influence as to undeceive them. They then invited me to incamp in their Island, where- 1688
upon I crossed with my Savages and ten Soldiers well arm'd; and after breaking the Ice in certain places (for it had freezed hard for ten or twelve Days) I landed within two Leagues of one of their Villages, to which I walk'd up by Land. In this and the other Islands, I saw large Parks or Inclosures stock'd with wild Beeves for the use of the People. On the 7th of *January* I had an Interview for two Hours with the *January.* Governor or *Cacick*: Our Conferences related chiefly to the *Spaniards* of *New Mexico*, who, as he assured me, were not distant from his Country above eighty Tazous, each of which is three Leagues. Two Days after he came to make me a visit, bringing with him four hundred of his Subjects and four *Mozeemlek* Slaves, whom I took for *Spaniards*. They were clothed, had thick bushy Beards, their Hair hanging down under their Ears, their Complexion swarthy and of a grave Meen. They gave me a Description of their Country, which the *Gnasitares* represented by way of a Map upon a Deer's Skin, as you see it drawn in this Map. These Villages stand upon a River that springs out of a ridge of Mountains; from which the long River likewise derives its source, there being many Brooks there, which by their confluence form the River. When the *Gnasitares* have a mind to hunt wild Beeves, they set out in Pirogues, which they make use of till they come to the Cross mark'd thus ✝ at the confluence of two little Rivers; and this hunting of wild Bucks, with which all the Vallies are covered in the Summer, is sometimes the occasion of a cruel War: For the other Cross ✝ which you see in the Map is one of the Boundaries of *Mozeemlek*; and if either of these two Nations advances but a little beyond their Limits, it gives rise to a bloody Engagement. These Mountains are six Leagues broad, and so high that one must make many Windings and Turnings to cross them. Bears and wild Beasts are their only Inhabitants. 1689.

The *Mozeemlek* Nation is numerous and puissant. The four Slaves of that Country inform'd me, that one hundred and fifty Leagues from the place where I then was, their principal River empties it self into a salt Lake of three hundred Leagues in circumference; the said River runs all along Westward, and its Mouth is about two Leagues broad; that the lower part of that River is adorn'd with six noble Cities, the Houses whereof have no Roof, but are open above like a Platform, as you see 'em drawn in the Map; that besides the Cities, there were above one hundred Towns round that sort of Sea, upon which they navigate in such Boats as you see drawn in the Map; that the People of that Country made Stuffs, Copper-Axes and several other Manufactures, which my Interpreters could not make me understand, being altogether unacquainted with such things; that their Government was despotick; that they call themselves *Tahuglauk*, and that the *Mozeemleks* supply 'em with great numbers of little Calves which they take upon the above-mentioned Mountains; and they not only eat their Flesh, but bring 'em up to labour, and make Cloaths, Boots &c. of their Skins. One of 'em had a reddish sort of a Copper Medal hanging upon his Neck, the Figure of which is represented in the Map. I had it melted; and it became heavier and deeper coloured, and withal somewhat tractable. I would fain have satisfied my Curiosity in being an Eye-witness of the Manner and Custom of the *Tahuglauk*; but that being impracticable, I was forced to be instructed at second hand by these *Mozeemlek* Slaves. 1609.

In the mean time it began to thaw, upon which I gave notice to the great *Cacick* of the *Gnasitares*, that I was desirous to return to *Canada*. Upon that occasion I repeated my Presents, in compensation of which, my Pirogues were stowed with Beef as full as they could hold. This done, I imbarked, and cross'd over from the little Island to the Continent, where I fixed a great long Pole with the Arms of *France* upon a plate of Lead. I set out the 26th. of *January*, and arrived the 5th. of *February* in the Country of the *Essanapes*. The Stream *February.* of the Long River is very slack, altho' the Channel be so strait that it scarce winds at all. 'Tis true, 'tis not very pleasant, for most of its Banks have a dismal Prospect, and the Water has an ugly Taste. 'Tis navigable with the greatest ease, and will bear Barks of fifty Tuns, till you come to that place which is mark'd with a Flower-de-luce in the Map, and where I put up the Post which my Soldiers named *La Hontan's* Limit. *March* the 2d. I arriv'd in the *Missisipi*, which was now *March.* much more rapid than before, by reason of Rains and Land-floods. Its narrowest part is half a League over, and the shallowest is a Fathom and a half deep. As for

Shelves

1693 Shelves or Banks of Sand, I met with none in it: 'Tis full of Isles which look like Groves: Its Banks are Woods, Meadows and Hills. I cannot be positive whether it winds much in other places; but as far as I could see, its Course is very different from our Rivers in *France*. And indeed all the Rivers of *America* run pretty strait. On the 9th of *April* we came to the River of the *Illinois*, and in six Days more arrived at Fort *Crevecœur*, where I was received by Mr. *Tonti* with all imaginable Civility. The 24th I arriv'd at *Chekakou*, where my ten *Outagamis* took leave of me, in order to return to their own Country. The next Day I imbarked and arriv'd the 22d. at *Missilimakinak*. Having put my Soldiers into Quarters, I set out *June* the 8th with two Canoes for the Colony, and on the 9th of *July* arriv'd at *Montreal*. 1690 *April.*

CHAP. XXI.

Giving an Account of Mr. de Frontenac's *Arrival. A fatal Embassy sent by the* French *to the* Iroquese. *And an Expedition of the* English *against* Quebec.

THE Marquess *de Denonville* being recall'd, Mr. *de Frontenac* who had been Governor seven or eight
1689. Years before, was reinstated in his Government. He arriv'd at *Quebec* the 15th. of *October*, and brought with him some of those *Iroquese* that Mr. *de Denonville* had sent to the Gallies (as is related in the 3d. Chap) the rest having perished in their Chains. Four or five Days after his Arrival, he set out in a Canoe for *Montreal*, notwithstanding all the Remonstrances drawn from the Hardships and Inconveniences of his Voyage, when the Season was so cold and so far advanced, and he then in the 68th. Year of his age. I had the honour to accom-
1609. pany him, and had a free access to his Table during the Winter. As soon as the Rivers were navigable, he propos'd to send me with offers of Peace to the *Iroquese*. I made answer, that since his Pocket and Table had been free to me, I could not imagine that he had a mind to be rid of me so soon. Being oblig'd by this reply to unfold my meaning, I remonstrated to him, *That the King of* England *having lost his Crown, and War being proclaimed, the Governor of* New England *and* New-York *would infallibly use their utmost Efforts to excite the* Iroquese *to redouble their Incursions: That for that end they would furnish them with Ammunition* gratis, *and even joyn 'em in order to attack our Towns.* I therefore humbly requested of him, *To have some other Person in view, in case he persisted in his design of making a Trial of that Nature.* The Chevalier *De* was singled out for this fatal Embassy, being attended by one *Colin* as Interpreter, and two young *Canadans*. They set out in a Canoe, and when they came in sight of the Village of the *Onnontagues*, were received with the honourable *Salvo* of several good Blows, and conducted with the same Ceremony to the Village. The antient Men being quickly assembled thought it most proper to send 'em back with a favourable Answer, and in the mean time to engage some of the other Cantons to lie in wait for 'em at the Cataracts of the River, and there kill three and send the fourth back to *Quebec*. This Project had actually been put in execution, if it had not been for some of the Planters of *New-York* who were then among 'em, having come thither on purpose to animate 'em against us. These Planters knew so well how to influence the *Barbarians* who were already bent upon revenge, that a Company of young *Barbarians* burnt 'em all alive, excepting the Chevalier *De*, whom they tied Hand and Foot, and sent him bound to *Boston*, with a design to pump out of him the condition of our Colonies and Forces. When Mr. *de Frontenac* receiv'd this dismal News, he declar'd, that out of twenty Captains that offer'd to execute that Commission, and would have taken the employment for an Honour, I was the only one that foresaw its bad Success.

In the beginning of *October* Mr. *de Frontenac* then at *Montreal*, receiv'd advice that a strong Fleet of *English* Ships amounting to thirty four Sail, was seen near *Tadoussac*. Immediately he got aboard his Brigantine, and ordered all the Troops to imbark in Canoes and Boats, and to row Night and Day to prevent the Enemy. At the same time he ordered Mr. *de Callieres* to bring down as many of the Inhabitants as possibly he could. We rowed with such expedition, that we arriv'd the third Day at *Quebec*. As soon as Mr. *de Frontenac* debarked, he ordered the weakest Posts to be fortified without loss of time. He raised Batteries in several places, and tho' in that Capital City we had but twelve great Guns and but little Ammunition, yet he seem'd to be resolutely bent upon an obstinate resistance to the efforts of the Enemy's Fleet, which in the mean time stood catching of Flies at the distance of two Leagues from *Quebec*. We took the advantage of their slow approaches, and work'd incessantly to put our selves in a posture of Defence. Our Troops, our Militia and our confederate Savages came to us on all hands. 'Tis certain, that if the *English* Admiral had made his descent before our Arrival at *Quebec*, or even two Days after, he had carried the place without striking a blow; for at that time there were not two hundred *French* in the City, which lay open and exposed on all hands. But instead of doing that he lost three Days in consulting with the Captains of the Ships before they came to a Resolution. He took the Sieur *Joliet* with his Lady and Mother in Law in a Bark on the River. Pursuant to the Resolutions of the Councils of War, the *English* Admiral sent out his Sloop with a *French* Flag on his Prow, which made up to the City with sound of Trumpet. Upon this Mr. *de Frontenac* sent our another with a *French* Officer to meet it, who found an *English* Major in the Sloop, who told him, that he had the charge of a Letter from his General to the Governor of *Canada*, and hoped he might be allowed to deliver it himself. Upon that the *French* Officer took him into his Sloop, and having blind-folded him, conducted him to the Governor's Chamber, where his Face being uncover'd, he delivered him a Letter, the substance of which was this:

I Sir William Phips, *General of the Forces of* New-England, *by Sea and Land, to* Count Frontenac *Governor General of* Quebec, *by Order from and in the name of* William *and* Mary *the Third, King and Queen of* England, *am come to make my self Master of this Country: But in regard that I have nothing so much in view as the preventing effusion of Blood, I require you to surrender at discretion your Cities, Castles, Forts and Towns, as your Persons; assuring you at the same time, that you shall meet with all manner of good Usage, Civility and Humanity. If you do not accept of this Proposal without, any restriction, I will endeavour by the assistance of Heaven on which I rely, and the force of my Arms to make a Conquest of them. I expect a positive Answer in writing in the space of an Hour, and in the mean time give you notice, that after the commencement of Hostilities, I shall not entertain any thoughts of Accommodation.*

Signed,
William Phips.

After the Interpreter had translated the Letter to Mr. *de Frontenac*, who was then surrounded with Officers, he ordered the Captain of his Guards to make a Gibbet before the Fort, in order to hang the poor Major, who in all appearance understood *French*; for upon the pronouncing this fatal Sentence, he was like to swoon away. And indeed I must say the Major had some reason to be affected, for he had certainly been hang'd, if the Bishop and Intendant, who to his good luck were then present, had not interceded on his behalf. Mr. *de Frontenac* pretended that they were a Fleet of Pyrates, or of Persons without Commission, for that the the King of *England* was then in *France*. But at last the Governor being appeased, ordered the Major to repair forthwith on board his Admiral, against whom he could defend himself the better, for not being attack'd. At the same time he declared, that he knew no other King of *Great Britain* than *James* II. that his rebellious Subjects were Pyrates, and that he dreaded neither their Force nor their Threats. This said, he threw Admiral *Phip's* Letter in the Major's Face, and then turned his Back upon him: Upon that the poor Ambassador took fresh Courage, and looking upon his

1690 his Watch, took the liberty to ask Mr. *de Frontenac* if he could not have his Answer in writing before the Hour elapsed. But the Governor made answer with all the haughtiness and disdain imaginable, that his Admiral deserv'd no other Answer than what flew from the Mouth of Cannons and Muskets. These words were no sooner pronounced than the Major was forc'd to take his Letter again, and being blind-folded, was reconducted to his Sloop, which rowed toward the Fleet with all Expedition.

The next Day about two in the Afternoon, sixty Sloops were sent a-shoar with ten or twelve hundred Men, who stood upon the Sand in very good order. Then the Sloops went back to the Ships and brought a-shoar the like Compliment of Men, which was afterward joyn'd by a third Compliment of the same number. As soon as these Troops were landed, they began to march towards the City with Drums beating and Colours flying. This Descent was made over against the Isle of *Orleans*, about a League and a half below *Quebec*; but 'twas not so expeditious, but that our Confederate Savages with two hundred Forest-Rangers and fifty Officers had time to post themselves in a Copse of thick Brambles which lay half a League from the place of landing. It being impossible for so small a Party to come to an open Battle with a numerous Enemy, they were forced to fight after the manner of the Savages, that is, to lay Ambuscadoes from place to place in the Copse, which was a quarter of a League broad. This way of waging War proved wonderfully successful to us, for our Men being posted in the middle of the Copse, we suffer'd the *English* to enter, and then fired upon them, lying flat upon the Ground till the *English* fired their Pieces, after which we sprung up, and drawing into Knots here and there, repeated our Fire with such success, that the *English* (perceiving our Savages) fell into confusion, and their Battalions were broke, insomuch that they betook themselves to flight, crying out, *Indians, Indians*, and gave our Savages the opportunity of making a bloody Slaughter among them, for we found three hundred left upon the spot, without any other loss on our side than that of ten Forest-Rangers, four Officers and two Savages. The next Day the *English* landed four pieces of brass Cannon mounted like Field-pieces, and fought very bravely, tho' they were very ill disciplin'd. 'Tis certain there was no want of Courage on their side, and their want of Success must be imputed to their unacquaintedness with Military Discipline, to their being enfeebled by the Fatigues of the Sea, and to the ill Conduct of Sir *William Phips*, who upon this Enterprize could not have done more than he did, if he had been engaged by us to stand still with his Hands in his Pockets. This Day pass'd over more peaceably than the next; for then the *English* made a fresh attempt to force their Passage thro' the Copse by the help of their Artillery; but they lost two or three hundred more in the attempt, and were forced to retire with all Diligence to the landing place. On our side we lost Mr. *de St. Helene*, who died of a Wound in his Leg, and about forty *French* Men and Savages. This Victory animated us so much, that we pursued the *English* to their Camp, and lay all Night flat upon the Ground by it, with a design to attack it by the break of Day; But they saved us the labour; for they imbarked about midnight with such confusion, that we kill'd fifty more of 'em, rather by chance than dexterity, while they were getting into their Boats. When Day came we transported to *Quebec* their Tents and their Cannon which they had left behind 'em, the Savages being employ'd in stripping the Dead in the Wood. 1690

The same Day the Descent was made Sir *William Phips* weigh'd and came to an Anchor with four great Ships, at the distance of a Musket-shot from the lower City, where we had only one Battery of six or eight Pounders. There he cannonado'd so handsomely, that the Fire of the great Guns equal'd that of the small Arms, and the like damage they did to the Roofs of Houses, amounted to five or six Pistoles; for the Walls of the Houses are so hard, that a Ball cannot pierce them.

When Sir *William Phips* had made an end of these glorious Exploits, he sent to demand of Mr. *de Frontenac* some *English* Prisoners in exchange for the Sieur *Joliet*, with his Wife, Mother, and some Sea-men, which was forthwith put in Execution. This done, the Fleet weighed Anchor and steered homeward. Mr. *de Frontenac* ordered a Frigat to be rigg'd, and told me, that the making of *France* as soon as I could would be a piece of important Service, and that I ought rather to perish than to suffer my self to be taken by the Enemy, or to put in at any Port by the way. I put to Sea the 20th of *November*, and meeting with contrary Winds about one hundred and fifty Leagues off the Coast of *France*, I did not arrive at *Rochel* untill the beginning of *January*.

CHAP. XXII.

Containing an Account of the Author's Departure from Rochel *to* Quebec. *Of a Rencounter with an* English *Ship. Of an* Iroquese *burnt alive.*

1691. August. WE sailed from *Rochel* 28th of *July* 1691, the Count of *Aunay* being order'd to keep us company as far as Cape *Finisterre*. On the 5th of *August* we perceived a great Ship, which the Count having a better Sailer, gave chase to and came up with her in three Hours time, whereupon they put up *Genoese* Colours. Some of the fore-chase Guns we fired to oblige her to strike, but the Commander was so obstinate, that Mr. *d'Aunay* was forced to give her a Broad-side, which kill'd four or five of the Sea-men, which obliged the rest to put out their Long-boat, and carry to his Ship their Pass-ports and Bills of Lading.

On the 10th the Pilots thinking they were even with Cape *Finisterre*, Mr. *d'Aunay* sent out his Long-boat to acquaint me, that he was then upon his return home, upon which I wrote him a Letter of Thanks. On the

September. 6th of *September* we discovered a Ship bearing down upon us with a full Sail. We thought at first that they were *French*, but their way of working the Ship discover'd to us that they were Enemies. They being about a League to Windward of us, were quickly within Musket-shot: Presently they put up *English* Colours, and gave us a Broad-side; and we put up our own Colours and paid them home in their own Coin. The Fight lasted two Hours, and both sides fired continually; but the Sea being tempestuous, we were oblig'd to shear off as Night came on, without suffering any other loss than the wounding of two Sea-men, and the receiving about thirty Shot in our Masts, Sails and Rigging. On the 18th we anchored before *Quebec*. I landed with the Chevalier *Meaupou*, whom I conducted to the House of Mr. *Frontenac*, who offer'd to him as well as to me the use of his Table and House. Here I was told, that three hundred *English* and two hundred *Iroquese* had two Months before approach'd to the Isle of *Montreal*; That the Governor of the Isle having transported fifteen Companies from the other side of the River to watch their motions, a Detatchment of the Enemy having surprized our Out-guards, attack'd the whole Body of 'em, and our Camp at the same time with so much vigour and courage, that they kill'd upon the spot more than three hundred Soldiers, besides two Captains, six Lieutenants and five Ensigns, and that after this fatal Expedition, Mr. *Valrenes* a Captain of the Marines, set out from *Montreal* with a Detachment of *French* and Savages, and meeting a Party of *English* and *Iroquese*, attack'd 'em vigorously and defeated them.

About the beginning of this Year the Governor order'd the Chevalier *Beaucour* with one hundred and fifty Soldiers and fifty Savages to march on the Ice to- 1692.
wards *Frontenac*. About thirty or forty Leagues from *Montreal*, they met a Company of sixty *Iroquese*, who were all kill'd or taken Prisoners. The Sieur *de la Plante* who liv'd in Slavery with these Wretches, had the good Fortune to be present in their Company when they were defeated, and had certainly been kill'd with his Masters if he had not cried out with all his might, *Spare me, I am a* French *Man*. The Chevalier *Beaucour* brought with him twelve Prisoners. As soon as they arrived at *Quebec*, Mr. *Frontenac* did very judiciously condemn two of the wickedest of the Company to be burnt alive with a slow Fire. This Sentence extreamly terrified the Governor's Lady and the Jesuits. The Lady used all manner of supplication to procure a moderation of the terrible Sentence, but the Judge

was

1692 was inexorable, and the Jeſuits employ'd all their Eloquence in vain upon this occaſion. The Governor anſwer'd 'em, 'That it was abſolutely neceſſary to make 'ſome terrible Examples of Severity to frighten the *Iroqueſe*: That ſince theſe Barbarians burnt almoſt all the *French* who had the misfortune to fall into their Hands, they muſt be treated after the ſame manner, becauſe the Indulgence which had hitherto been ſhewn them ſeem'd to authorize them to invade our Plantations, and ſo much the rather to do it, becauſe they ran no other Hazard than that of being taken and well kept at their Maſters Houſes: But when they ſhould underſtand that the *French* cauſed them to be burnt, they would have a care for the future how they advanced with ſo much boldneſs to the very Gates of our Cities; and in fine, That the Sentence of Death being paſt, theſe two Wretches muſt prepare to take a Journey into the other World. This Obſtinacy appear'd ſurprizing in Mr. *Frontenac*, who but a little before had favoured the eſcape of three or four Perſons lyable to the Sentence of Death, upon the importunate Prayer of Madam the Governeſs. The Jeſuits were ſent to baptize 'em, and oblige 'em to acknowledge the Trinity and the Incarnation, and to repreſent to them the Joys of Paradiſe, and the Torments of Hell within the ſpace of eight or ten Hours. This may ſeem a very bold way of treating theſe great Myſteries, and that to endeavour to make the *Iroqueſe* underſtand them ſo quickly, was to expoſe them to their Laughter. As ſoon as they were acquainted with this fatal News, they ſent back the good Father without ever hearing them, and then began to ſing the Song of Death, according to the Cuſtom of the Savages. Some charitable Perſon having thrown a Knife to them in the Priſon, he who had the leaſt Courage of the two thruſt it into his Breaſt and died of the Wound immediately. Some young *Hurons* of fourteen or fifteen Years old, came to ſeize the other, and carry him away to the *Diamant Cape*, where a great pile of Wood was prepared. He ran to Death with a greater unconcernedneſs than *Socrates* would have done, if he had been in his caſe. During the time of Execution he ſung continually: 'That he was a Warrior brave and 'undaunted, That the moſt cruel kind of Death could 'not ſhock his Courage; That no Torments could extort from him any Cries; That his Companion was a 'Coward for having kill'd himſelf for fear of Torment: 'And laſtly, That if he was burnt, he had this Comfort, that he had treated many *French* and *Hurons* after the ſame Manner. All that he ſaid was very true, and chiefly as to his own Courage and firmneſs of Soul. For I can truly ſwear that he never ſhed Tears, nor was ever perceived to ſigh; but on the contrary, during all the time that he ſuffer'd the moſt horrible Torments that could be invented, and which laſted about three Hours, he never ceaſed from ſinging. The Soles of his Feet were roſted before two great Stones red hot, for more than a quarter of an Hour: the tops of his Fingers were ſcorch'd in a Stove of lighted Pipes; during which Torture he did not draw back his Hand. After this, the ſeveral Joynts of his Body were cut off, one after another. The Nerves and Limbs of his Arms were diſtorted with a little iron Wand, after ſuch a manner as cannot poſſibly be expreſſed. In fine, after many other Tortures, the Hair of his Head was taken off after ſuch a manner, that there remained nothing but the Scull, upon which the young *Hurons* were going to throw ſome burning Sand, when a certain Slave by order of Madam the Governeſs, knock'd him on the Head with a Club. The Prologue of this Tragedy created in me ſo great a Horror, that I had not the Curioſity to ſee the end of it, nor to hear this poor Wretch ſing to the laſt moment of his Life. I have ſeen ſo many burnt againſt my Will, amongſt thoſe People where I ſojourned, during the Courſe of my Voyages, that I cannot think of it without trouble: 'Tis a ſad ſpectacle at which every one is obliged to be preſent, when he happens to ſojourn among theſe Nations; for if any one ſhould pretend to ſhun this ſight, or expreſs any Compaſſion for them, he would be eſteem'd by them a Man of no Courage. All the Savages practiſe this barbarous Cruelty when Evidence is brought that the poor Slave has kill'd Women or Children in his Life time. But if he can make it appear that he only kill'd Men, they content themſelves with ſhooting him. 1692

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Author's Departure for France, *and his ſtopping at* Placentia, *which was attack'd by an* Engliſh *Fleet. How the* Engliſh *failed in their Deſign. He purſues his Voyage to* France, *where the King beſtows on him the Lieutenancy of* New-found-Land *and* Acadia. *He returns to* Placentia. *A Fleet of Thirty* Engliſh *Ships come to ſeize the Place. The Reaſon of their bad Succeſs. The Author's Adventure with the Governor of* Placentia, *and Departure for* Portugal.

I Had formerly ſpoken to the Governor about building three Forts upon the Courſe of the Lakes, with ſome Veſſels to go with Oars, mann'd with forty Sea-men; which Project if well executed would oblige the *Iroqueſe* in two Years time to abandon their Country. He now concurr'd with me in that Opinion, and reſolved to ſend me to Court with the Propoſals.

July the 27th, I imbarked at *Quebec*, and arrived the 18th of *Auguſt* in the Port of *Placentia*, where I found fifty fiſhing Veſſels of *French Biſcay*, and thought to have ſet out for *France* along with them in four Days. But they were longer in getting ready than I thought for, and when we were juſt ready to break ground we were inform'd by ſome Fiſher-men, that five large *Engliſh* Ships were come to an Anchor near Cape St. *Mary*. This Intelligence proved very true; for on the 15th of *September* they caſt Anchor in ſight of *Placentia*. The 16th they weigh'd and came to an Anchor in the Road out of the reach of our Guns. Upon this the Governor was not a little perplexed, for he had but fifty Soldiers in his Fort, and but little Ammunition; beſides the Fort was commanded by a Mountain, from whence he might be galled with Stones out of Slings; and 'twas to be fear'd the *Engliſh* would poſſeſs themſelves of that high Ground. I march'd with ſixty Sea-men belonging to the Fiſher-men to prevent their Landing, in caſe they attempted to make a Deſcent at a place call'd *la Fontain*, and compaſs'd my end without firing a Gun. Six or ſeven hundred *Engliſh* put into the Land with twenty Sloops, with a deſign to have landed at that Place, upon which my Men appear'd too ſoon upon the Shoar in ſpight of my Teeth, and by that means oblig'd the *Engliſh* to row with all their Might to the back of a little Cape, where they threw in a Barrel of Pitch that burnt ſome Thickets. The 18th about Noon, perceiving that a little Sloop put off from the Admiral with a white Flag on its Prow, and made toward the Fort; I ran in thither immediately. The Governor had ſent out one of his own Sloops with the ſame Flag to meet the other, and was ſurpriz'd when ſhe return'd with two *Engliſh* Officers on board. Theſe Officers gave the Governor to underſtand, that the Admiral deſired he would ſend an Officer on board of him, which was done accordingly; for Mr. *de Coſte Belle* and I went on board the Admiral, who receiv'd us with all Reſpect and Civility, regaling us with Sweet-meats and ſeveral ſorts of Wines, with which we drank the Healths of the Admirals of *France* and *England*. He ſhew'd us his whole Ship, to the very Carriages of the Guns, and then told the Sieur *de Coſte Belle*, that 'twould be a great trouble to him to be oblig'd to take *Placentia* by force of Arms, in regard he foreſaw ſuch an Enterprize would prove fatal to the Governor, to the Garriſon and all the Inhabitants upon the account that he ſhould find a great deal of difficulty in preventing Pillaging and other Diſorders. That in order to avoid this Misfortune, 'twould be a prudential part in the Governor to come to a Compoſition. Our Officer being fully acquainted with the Governor's Mind, made anſwer in his Name, That he was reſolved upon a vigorous Defence, and would rather ſpring the place in the Air than ſurrender it to the Enemies of the King his Maſter. After a mutual exchange of Compliments we took leave of him, and being ready to get into our Sloop, he told us with Embraces, that he was infinitely ſorry he could not ſalute us with his

1692 Guns, in the room of which he ordered 5 or 6 Huzza's with a *Long Live the King*. When we went into the Boat, we return'd him the same number of Shouts, to which he return'd a seventh that finished the Ceremony. Upon our return to the Fort, Mr. *de Coste Belle* gave the Governor an account of the Force of the Admiral's Ship. She was call'd the *St. Albans*, carried 66 Guns, and 600 Men, but the rest appear'd to be of less Force.

The next Day which was the 19th, they advanced within Cannon-shot of the Fort, where they lay by, while a Sloop rowed up to the Batteries. The Governor sent out another Sloop to know what the matter was, and was answer'd, that if he had a mind for a Party in the time of the Engagement, he should put up a red Flag for a Signal. I was then posted at *la Fontain* to oppose a Descent; for that was the only place that could be serviceable to the *English*, in order to master *Placentia*. The *English* ought to have consider'd that their Cannon would do no service against an impenetrable Rampart, and that they would lose their labor in shooting against Flints and Earth. But it seems they were oblig'd by express Orders from the Prince of *Orange* to do it, and at the same time to expose themselves to the danger of being sunk; which had certainly been effected, if we had had Powder and Ball enough; for the Cannonading lasted almost 5 Hours.

The 20th, a *French* Prisoner who was on board of the Admiral made his Escape, by throwing himself into the Sea in the Night. He landed at the place where I lay in Ambuscade, and after he had given me an account of what had pass'd in the Fleet, I sent him to the Governor's House. He inform'd me that they had design'd a Descent with 7 or 800 Men, but altered their Resolution upon the Apprehension that there were 14 or 1500 Sea-men ready to oppose 'em. That they were of opinion, that my 60 *Biscayans* who discovered themselves upon the Shoar of *la Fontain*, had no other view but to draw 'em into an Ambuscade, by tempting 'em to come up. The 21st they set sail, after having burnt all the Houses at Point *Verte*. I may justly say, that if it had not been for the Captains of the *Biscay* Ships that were then at *Placentia*, that place had undoubtedly fall'n into the Hands of the *English*. In this Expdition the *English* lost 6 Men; and on our side the Sieur *Boat* had his Arm shot off. The *English* did all that Men could do; so that nothing can be said against their Conduct.

October the 6th, I took shipping in pursuit of my Voyage to *France*, accompanied with several other Vessels. The westerly Winds were so favourable, that we anchored on the 23d. at St. *Nezere* 8 Leagues from *Nantes*; from whence I went to *Versailles*, where I presented Mr. *Frontenac*'s Letters to Mr. *Ponchartrain*. I was answered that it would not be proper to execute the Project I proposed, because the 40 Sea-men which were necessary for my purpose, could not now be allow'd me; and besides the King had given Orders to Mr. *Frontenac* to make Peace with the *Iroquese* upon any terms whatsoever. This Inconveniency also was found to attend the Project, that after the Forts which I intended to build upon the Lakes were intirely finish'd, the Savages that are our Friends and Confederates, would, when they were sure of such Places of Retreat, rather seek after Glory by making War upon the *Iroquese*, than take pleasure in hunting the Beavers, which would be a considerable damage to the Colonies of *Canada*. Thus my Project about the Lakes of *Canada* came to nothing: However, I had the good Fortune to have the Lieutenancy of the Isle of *New-found-Land* and *Acadia* conferred upon me by his Majesty; for which I must own my self oblig'd to the *English* who attack'd us at *Placentia* last Year; who after their Arrival in *England*, publickly declar'd, tho' without any just ground, that they had infallibly taken that place, if I had not opposed their Descent: Whereas in truth, I had no share in that Action: and hereby we may see that Men are often prefer'd, who have no other Patrons in the World but pure Chance.

1693 I sailed again from *Nantes* the 12th of *May*, and arriv'd at *Placentia* the 20 of *June*. After I landed, I went to salute Mr. *Brouillon* Governor of *Placentia*, and declar'd to him, how glad I was to obey the Orders of so wise a Commander. He answer'd that he was much 1693 surpriz'd to find that I had follicited to be employ'd there without acquainting him with it the preceding Year; and that he now plainly perceived, that the Projects about the Lakes of *Canada* (which I had mentioned to him as the cause of my Voyage to *France*) was a meer sham Pretence. I endeavour'd in vain to persuade him to the contrary; for t'was not possible for me to undeceive him.

On the 16th of *September* we perceived an *English* Fleet of 24 Sail which cast Anchor in the Road. It was commanded by Sir *Francis Wheeler*, who had gone to *Martinico* with a design to seize that Isle, and in his return from thence had sailed to *New-England*, to take in some Forces and Ammunition there, in order to make himself Master of *Placentia*. But when he discovered a Redoubt of Stone lately built upon the top of the Mountain, he thought it more advisable to return quickly into *Europe*, than to make a fruitless Atrempt. We had planted 4 Cannon upon this high Redoubt, which so gall'd the Ships of his Fleet that they were forc'd to weigh Anchor sooner than they intended. The Fault of the *English* was, that they did not enter the Harbour the same Day that they appear'd before the Place. I have observed it many times, that Atrempts do commonly miscarry by delaying them for a little while. But now I return to the Quarrel the Governor had with me.

Fancying that I had sollicited my Employment without taking notice of him, he treated me with all manner of Reproaches and Outrages from the time of my landing to that of my departure. One Night while I was entertaining at Supper some of the Inhabitants, he came mask'd into my House with his Servants and broke the Glass-Windows, Bottles and Drinking-Glasses, throwing down the Tables, Chairs, Chests of Drawers, and every thing that came to hand. Next Morning his Servants fell upon mine, who expected nothing less than to be thresh'd to Death with Clubs. As I was meditating some Revenge, the Recollects came and remonstrated to me, that I must dissemble my Resentment, to prevent any Innovation in the King's Affairs; and advised me withal to go and see him, and to intreat him to put an end to these Differences, assuring him at the same time, that I was intirely his Servant and Friend. I went accordingly to his House, and being with him alone, spoke to him for a quarter of an Hour in the most submissive Terms; but instead of listning to my Reasons and treating friendly with me, he loaded me with a Torrent of bitter Reproaches. At last the Recollects remonstrated to him of what consequence it would be for us to live in a good Correspondence; so we soon embrac'd one another with mutual Protestations of forgetting all that had pass'd between us.

After this Reconciliation, I had reason to believe that his Heart would not give the Lye to his Mouth, because I thought he was not so imprudent as to inform the Court of some Trifles, wherein he would appear to have prostituted his Honour, but I was deceived; for his Papers by chance falling into my Hands, I shew'd 'em to the Recollects, who, when they had read the Allegations contain'd in them, made no scruple to advise me to take care of my self. This wholesome advice made me perceive the danger to which I should be expos'd if I continued any longer at *Placentia*; insomuch that the fear I had of being sent to the *Bastile*, after the Arrival of the Ships from *France*, made me resolve to abandon all hopes of making my Fortune here, and to throw up my Places. Pursuant to this Resolution (leaving at *Placentia* a great deal of Houshold Furniture, which I could neither sell nor carry off) I imbark'd the 14th of *December* in a little Vessel, which was the only one, and the last that was to go for *France*. My Enemy had used the precaution of writing to the Governors of *Belle* Isle, the Isle of *Rhe* and of *Rochelle*, to seize me as I should land. But I had agreed with the Captain for 1000 Crowns to land me on the Coast of *Portugal*, and after the encountring 3 terrible Storms in our Passage, in the last of which, we ran 150 Leagues in 3 Days, without any Sail, he set me ashoar at *Viana*, and continued his Course to *France*.

CHAP. XXIV.

A short View of the Manners and Customs, and of the Diseases and Remedies of the Savages.

THose who have represented the Savages as rough as Bears, have never had the opportunity of seeing them; for they have no Beards, neither have they Hair in any part of their Bodies, not so much as under their Arm-pits. They are generally proper, well made Persons, of an Olive Colour, their Eyes large and black, as is also the Hair on their Heads. 'Tis a great rarity to find any among 'em lame, hunch back'd, one-ey'd, blind

1693 blind or dumb. They are Strangers to diſtinction of Property. Money is in uſe with none of them but thoſe that are Chriſtians, who live in the Suburbs of our Towns. The others will not touch nor ſo much as look upon Silver. They think it unaccountable that one Man ſhould have more than another, and that the Rich ſhould have more Reſpect than the Poor. They ſcoff at Arts and Sciences, and laugh at the difference of Degrees obſerv'd among us. They pretend that their contented way of living far ſurpaſſes our Riches, and that all our Sciences are not ſo valuable as the Art of leading a calm peaceful Life.

Their Feaſts are the bane and ruin of their Stomachs, at which they value themſelves upon leaving nothing. Their Victuals are either boil'd or roaſted, and they lap great quantities of the Broth both of Meat and Fiſh. Their Meat is little more than half done, but their Fiſh is always over-boil'd. They cannot bear the taſt of Salt or Spices, and wonder that we are able to live ſo long as 30 Years, conſidering our Wines, our Spices, and immoderate uſe of Women. They never touch Sallad, becauſe all cold Herbs oblige the Stomach to hard labour.

Their Health is firm, notwithſtanding they uſe no Caution to preſerve it; but on the contrary, uſe violent exerciſe in hunting, and in their warlike Expeditions, in which they have frequent returns of Heats and Colds in a Day, which in *Europe* would occaſion a mortal Diſtemper. They are unacquainted with a great many Diſeaſes that afflict the *Europeans*; ſuch as the Palſy, Dropſy, Gout, Phthiſick, Aſthma, the Gravel and the Stone. Sometimes indeed they are ſeized with Pluriſies, but theſe are as unfrequent as they are mortal: For this is the only Diſtemper that all their Remedies cannot conquer. The Small-Pox are as common in the North as the Great-Pox are to the Southward, and is very dangerous in Winter, by reaſon of the difficulty of Perſpiration; but the Savages matter it ſo little, that when it is upon 'em they walk about from Hut to Hut if they are able, or are carried about by their Slaves. The Venereal Diſtemper is very common in the Southern Parts: I ſaw one of them who uncovering himſelf, ſhew'd me part of his Body that was ready to fall off with Rottenneſs: He was then buſied in boiling Roots, and told me, that he hoped to be cured in a Month's time, by drinking the Juice of 'em, and eating conſtantly the Broth or Decoction of Meat and Fiſh.

When they are ſick of a Pluriſie, they only drink Broth, and eat ſparingly; but as for other Diſeaſes, they get over 'em with the greateſt danger in the World, uſing all means imaginable to burſt themſelves by eating and drinking when they have groſs Fevers upon 'em; and when the Fit is over, ſmoking of *Braſil* Tobacco, which without diſpute is the ſtrongeſt ſort that we know of.

Brandy makes a terrible havock among 'em. That Liquor, which of it ſelf is murdering ſtuff, and which is brew'd and adulterated before 'tis imported into this Country, ſweeps off Men ſo faſt, that one who has not ſeen the fatal Effects of it can ſcarce credit 'em: It extinguiſhes their natural Heat, and throws almoſt all of 'em into that languiſhing Diſorder which we call a Conſumption, and makes 'em to look pale, livid and gaſtly like Skeletons. 1693

They are alwaies againſt making uſe of our Surgeons and Phyſicians; they affirm that all mixtures of Drugs are Poiſon, that deſtroys natural Heat, and that Glyſters are only proper for the *Europeans*. They think all Purgations inflame the maſs of Blood, and weaken the Veins and Arteries by their violent Shocks, and cannot conceive how we come to be ſuch Fools as to make uſe of Vomits; for whenever they ſee a *French* Man take down ſuch a violent Remedy, they cannot forbear ſaying, that he ſwallows an *Iroqueſe*. But they are yet more aſtoniſh'd at our cuſtom of Bleeding; For, ſay they, the Blood being the Taper of Life, we have more occaſion to pour it in than to take out; and that after loſs of Blood, Nature acts but feebly; the Entrals are overheated, and all the Parts are dried, which gives riſe to Diſeaſes that afflict the *Europeans*. All their Cure conſiſts in ſweating well, in drinking Broth, in keeping themſelves very warm, in ſleeping if they can, and in drinking the Lake or Spring-water, in the Paroxims of Fevers, as well as in other Diſtempers.

They are never 8 Days together without ſweating, whether they be well or ill; only they obſerve this difference, that when they are perfectly well, they throw themſelves, while the ſweating Moiſture is yet upon 'em, into the River in Summer, and into the Snow in Winter; whereas when they are out of order, they go immediately into a warm Bed. The reaſon of throwing themſelves into the Water is, that the Pores being unlock'd by ſweating, to let out the deprav'd Humours, they take care to ſhut 'em ſoon after, leſt the nutritive Juice ſhould glide out by the ſame Paſſage. Five or ſix ſweat together in a ſort of Oven or Stove covered with Mats, Skins, *&c.* In the middle of this Bagnio, there ſtands a Diſh or Porringer full of burning Brandy, or of great red hot Stones, which cauſes ſuch a piercing heat, that in the twinkling of an Eye they ſweat prodigiouſly.

There's no Wound or Diſlocation which they cannot cure with Simples or Plants, whoſe Virtues they are well acquainted with; and which indeed is ſingular, their Wounds never run to a Gangrene. But after all, this is not to be imputed to theſe Herbs, nor to the Air of the Country, but to their hale Conſtitutions; for notwithſtanding the uſe of theſe very Remedies, a Gangrene invades the Wounds of the *French*. This People attribute our liableneſs to Gangrenes, and indeed all our Diſeaſes, to the Salt that we eat; for they cannot taſt any ſalt thing without being ſick, and drinking perpetually. 'Tis in vain to viſit 'em when they lye at the point of Death, in order to preſs 'em to bleed or take a Purge; for they ſtill make anſwer, that they cannot conſent to the forwarding of their Death by the Remedies of the *French*, which they take to be as bad as the Perſons who exhibit them

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Beaſts, Birds, Fiſhes, Inſects, Trees and Fruits of the Northern America.

A Great Beaver is 26 Inches long from the hind Head to the root of the Tail; 'tis about 3 Foot and 8 Inches round; its Head 7 Inches long and 6 broad; its Tail 14 Inches long and 6 broad. Upon this they carry the Clay and Earth to make their Banks and Kennels. Before their Muzzles are four Fore-teeth, two in each Jaw, an Inch long and a quarter of an Inch broad, very ſtrong and ſharp, with which they cut down Trees as big as an Hogſhead. When they have cut down Trees in that manner, they drag them along as they ſwim in the Water, and ranging them acroſs at the bottom of a Meadow, load themſelves with Graſs and fat Earth, which they tranſport upon their great Tails, and throw in between the Trees with ſo much Art and Induſtry, that the moſt skilful Bricklayer can hardly make a ſtronger Wall with Lime and Mortar. In the Night they are heard to work with ſo much Vigour and Diligence, that one would think 'em to be Men at work: And thus they will make Banks of 4 or 500 Paces long, 20 Foot high, and 7 or 8 thick, tho' there are not above 100 of them at moſt. Their Art of making them fall upon the Water is very ſurprizing, for it requires Judgment and cloſe Attention to ſucceed in it, and chiefly to nick the time when the Wind can aſſiſt them to make the fall of the Trees more eaſy, and to make them fall that way they would have them. They never go above 20 Paces from the edge of their Lake, and always ſet Centinels to watch, who cry out to give 'em notice when they hear the leaſt noiſe, whereupon they all dive under Water, and return to their Kennels which are placed exactly in the middle of the Lake; ſo that neither Wolves, Foxes nor Bears, *&c.* can attack them, and they have no danger to fear but only from Men.

The Writers of natural Hiſtory are very much out in relating that Beavers bite off their Teſticles, which is impoſſible to be done without rendring the Nerves of the Groin, in which they are ſeated juſt by the Share-Bone: Neither is *Caſtoreum* lodg'd in the Teſticles, but in a certain Bag which Nature ſeems to have form'd on purpoſe for theſe Animals, and which they make uſe of to clean their Teeth. They are caught by Traps baited with pieces of red Aſp. They may likewiſe be kill'd when they ſwim upon the Water, or when they come a-ſhoar to cut down Trees; but then you muſt lye hid and not ſtir. They are taken in Autumn, by making a great hole under their Banks and draining out the Water: And in Winter when the Lakes are frozen, they make holes, round the Kennels of the Beavers, upon which they place Nets that reach from one to the other; then laying open the Kennels with an Ax, the Beavers throw themſelves into the Water, and coming to take breath at theſe holes, are catch'd in the Nets. At this rate not one of 'em eſcapes; but the Savages having

1693 having no mind to extirpate 'em, throw back into the holes a dozen of Females and half a dozen Males.

The *Michibichi* is a sort of Tyger less than the common Tyger, and not so much speckled. As soon as it descries a Man, it runs away and climbs up the first Tree. It attacks all bruit Animals whatsoever, and conquers them with ease; and which is very singular and peculiar to it above all other Animals, it runs in to the assistance of the Savages when they pursue Bears and wild Beeves, and sallies out with fury upon the hunted Animal. The Savages esteem 'em to such a degree, that they would choose rather to die than to kill one of 'em.

The reddish Bears are mischievous Creatures, and fall fiercely upon the Huntsmen, whereas the black ones fly from them. The former sort are less and more bimble than the latter.

The white Bears are a monstrous Animal and extraordinary long. They are so fierce, that they'll attack a Sloop in the Sea with 7 or 8 Men in it. 'Tis said they'll swim 6 or 7 Leagues. They live upon Fish and Shels upon the Sea-shoar. I never saw but one of 'em in my Life, which had certainly torn me to pieces, if I had not spied it at a distance, and so had time to run back for shelter at *Placentia*.

The Flying Squirrels are as big as a large Rat, and are so call'd in regard that they fly from one Tree to another by means of a certain Skin which stretches it self out in form of a Wing, when they make these little Flights.

The white Hares are only such in Winter, for as soon as the Spring comes on they begin to turn grayish, and by degrees recover the same Colour our Hares have in *France*, which they hold till the end of Autumn.

The Crocodiles of *Missisipi* are exactly the same with those of the *Nile*. The most usual method for taking them alive, is to throw great Wreaths or Cords made of the Barks of Trees, with a running Knot upon their Neck, middle of their Body, Paws, &c. And when they are thus seized, they shoot 'em between 10 or 12 Stakes, and there tie 'em after their Belly is turn'd upwards. While they lie in this posture, they flea 'em without touching their Head or Tail, and give 'em a Coat of Fir-Bark, to which they set fire, to make 'em howl and cry dreadfully. The Savages in swimming over the River, or in sleeping upon its Banks, are frequently devoured by 'em.

Birds. The Red Partridges are wild and little, and much different from those we have in *Europe*, as well as the Pheasant, whose Feathers being of a white colour with black specks, make a very agreeable diversity.

The White Partridges are as big as our Red. It is the most stupid Animal in the World; it sits upon the Snow and suffers it self to be knock'd on the Head with a Pole without offering to stir. I am of opinion, that this unaccountable numness is occasioned by its long flight from *Greenland* to *Canada*.

The Black Partridges are very pretty. They are bigger than ours, and their Beak together with the circle of their Eyes and the Feet are red, their Plumage being of a shining black colour.

Parrots are met with in the *Illinois* Country, and upon the River *Missisipi*. They are very small, and are the same with those we bring from *Brasil*.

Fish. The White Porpoises are as big as Oxen: They go up with the Tide till they come at fresh Water, and then retire with the Ebb.

The Lake Sturgeons are commonly 5 or 6 Foot long: But I have seen one of 10 and another of 12 Foot in length.

The *Missisipi* Carps are of an extraordinary size, of the same Form with ours, and admirably well tasted.

The largest Trouts are 5 Foot and a half long, and 1 Foot Diameter; their Flesh is red, and they are catch'd with great Hooks fastned to pieces of Wier.

The Fish in the Lakes are better than those of the Sea or Rivers; and the Savages prefer the Broth of Fish to Meat Broth, when they are indisposed.

The Rivers of *Canada* are replenished with an infinity of other Fish not known in *Europe*. Those taken in the *Long River* which disembogue into the *Missisipi*, savour so rank of Mud and Clay, that it is impossible to eat 'em.

The Adders of *Canada* do no harm at all. The Asps indeed are very dangerous when the People bath in the stagnating Water towards the South Countries.

The Rattle Snake is so call'd from a sort of Case in the extremity of its Tail, containing certain Bones, which make such a noise when the Serpent creeps along that 'tis heard 30 Paces off. These Serpents betake themselves to flight when they hear the sound of Mens Feet, and never sting but when they are trod upon.

The Lowing Frogs are so call'd from their croaking, which sounds like the lowing of an Ox, and are twice as large as those we have in *Europe*.

The Brulots are a sort of Hand Worms, which cleave so hard to the Skin, that their prickling occasions the same pain as if it were a spark of Fire. These little Animals are pretty numerous, but so small that they are unperceivable.

Trees and Fruits. The Birch Trees are different from ours, both for bulk and quality. The Savages make Canoes of the Bark, some of which is red, and some white; and Books may be made thereof, the Leaves of which will be as fine as Paper.

The Pine Trees are very tall, strait and thick, and are often transported to *France* for Masts. 'Tis said some of 'em are big enough to serve for a Mast to a First Rate Ship.

The Maple Trees are some of 'em as tall as the loftiest Oaks, and as big as an Hogshead. It bears no resemblance to that sort we have in *Europe*. It yields a Sap which has a much pleasanter taste than the best *Limonade* or Cherry-Water, and makes the wholsomest Drink in the World. This Liquor is drawn by cutting the Tree 2 Inches deep in the Wood, the Cut being run slooping to the length of 10 or 12 Inches. At the lower end of this Gash a Knife is thrust into the Tree sloopingly, so that the Water running along the Cut or Gash, as thro' a Gutter, and falling upon the Knife that lies across the Channel, runs out upon the Knife, which has Vessels placed underneath to receive it. Some Trees will yield 5 or 6 Bottles of this Water a Day; and some Inhabitants might draw 20 Hogsheads of it in one Day, by notching all the Trees in their respective Plantations. The Gash does no harm to the Tree. Of this Sap they make Sugar and Syrup, which is so valuable, that there can't be a better Remedy for fortifying the Stomach. The North Country Maples have more Sap than those of the South, but the Sap is not so sweet.

The Vines twine round the Trees to the very top; and the Branches of those Trees are so covered with Grapes, that one would take the Grape to be the Fruit of the Tree. There has been some Wine press'd towards *Missisipi*, where the Grape is long and thick, which after long standing became as sweet as Canary, and as black as Ink.

The Citrons are so called because they resemble ours. Instead of a Rind they have only a single Skin. This Fruit is wholsome, but the Juice of its Root is a mortal subtil Poison.

Maidenhair is as common in the Forests as Fern in *France*; insomuch that the Inhabitants of *Quebec* prepare great quantities of its Syrup, which they send to *Paris*, *Nants*, *Rouan* and other Cities in *France*.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Interest of the French and English in North America.

ALtho' in several Treaties of Peace between these two Kingdoms, the Boundaries were in a manner marked out in some places, yet the Limits of *New-France* and *New-England* have never been well adjusted, especially in the Island of *New-found-Land* and *Acadia*, as also *Labrador*, *Hudson's* Bay and other Countries lying to the Northwards of the River St. *Laurence*.

See the Map p. 25.

The Island of *New-found-Land* is 300 Leagues in circumference; it lies at the distance of 650 Leagues from *France*, and 40 or 50 Leagues from the Bank of the same Name. The South side of the Island belongs to the *French*, who have several Settlements there for the fishing of Cod. The East side is inhabited by the *English*, who are possess'd of several considerable Posts in certain Ports, Bays and Havens, which they have taken care to fortify. The West of the Island is waste, and was never yet possess'd. The Island is of a Triangular Figure, and full of Mountains and impracticable Forests; it has some great Meadows, or rather Heaths, which are covered with a sort of Moss instead of Grass. The Soil of this Country is good for nothing, as being a mixture of Gravel, Sand and Stones; so that the Fishery was the only motive that induced the *French* and *English* to settle there. It affords great store of Game,

1693 Game, for Water-Fowl, Partridges and Hares; but as for the Stags 'tis almoſt impoſſible to come at them, by reaſon that the Mountains are ſo high and the Woods ſo thick. There are no ſettled Savages in the Iſland, but they ſometimes croſs over to it in great Sloops at the Strait of *Belle-Iſle* to ſurprize Fiſhermen upon the Coaſt. Two conſiderable Inconveniences attend the landing upon this Iſland. In the firſt place, the Fogs are ſo thick in Summer for 20 Leagues off into the Main, that the moſt expert Sailers dare not ſtand into the Land while they laſt; ſo that all Ships are oblig'd to lye by for a clear Day, in order to make the Land. The ſecond Inconveniency, which is yet greater, proceeds from the Currents which run to and again, by which means Ships are ſometimes driven in upon the Coaſt, when they reckon upon ten Leagues Offing: But which is worſt of all, the motion of the rowling Waves throws 'em back upon the Rocks, which they cannot poſſibly avoid, for want of Ground to anchor upon.

The *French* Settlements are at *Placentia*, the Iſland of St. *Peter* and in the Bay of *Trepaſſez*. The firſt is the Poſt of the greateſt importance and ſervice to the King, in regard that 'tis a place of Refuge to the Ships that are oblig'd to put into Harbour when they go or come from *Canada*, and even to thoſe that come from South *America*, when they want to take in freſh Water or Proviſions, and have ſprung their Maſts, or been damaged in a Storm. It is ſituated in the Latitude of 47 deg. and ſome minutes, almoſt at the bottom of the Bay that goes by the ſame name. The Bay is 10 or 12 Leagues broad, and 20 odd Leagues long. The Fort ſtands upon the ſide of a Neck or narrow Strait, which is 60 Paces over, and 6 Fathom deep. The Ships that enter into the Port are oblig'd to graze (ſo to ſpeak) upon the Angle of the Baſtions. The Port or Harbour is a League long, and a quarter of a League over. Before the Port there's a large firm Road, which is a League and a half wide, but lies ſo bleak to the N. W. and W. N. W. Winds, that neither Cables nor Anchors, nor large ſtout Ships can withſtand their furious Shocks; tho' indeed theſe violent Storms ſeldom happen but in the latter end of Autumn. This Road has ſome hidden Rocks on the North ſide, beſides thoſe at Point *Verte*. The Inhabitants and *French* Fiſhermen ſend their Sloops every Day 2 Leagues off the Port to purſue the Fiſhery, which commences in the beginning of *June*, and ends about the middle of *Auguſt*: There commonly come 30 or 40 Ships from *France* every Year, and ſometimes 60. Some come to fiſh, others to truck with the Inhabitants: To conclude, *Placentia* is in great want of Gravel to ſpread their Cod-Fiſh upon, in order to have 'em dried by the Sun after they are ſalted. The Soil is good for nothing, and bears neither Corn, nor Rice, nor Peaſe; and if it were as good and fertile as any in *Canada*, yet no body would give themſelves the trouble to cultivate it, becauſe one Man earns more in Cod-fiſhing than ten would do in the way of Husbandry.

Acadia extends from *Kenebeki* one of the Frontiers of *New-England*, to *l'Iſle Percee*, near the Mouth of the River of St. *Laurence*. This Sea-coaſt runs almoſt 300 Leagues, and has upon it two great navigable Bays, namely, the Bay call'd *Francoiſe*, and the Bay *des Chaleurs*: It has many little Rivers, the Mouths of which are deep and clean enough for the greateſt Ships. The River of St. *John* is a very pleaſant River, and navigable for 12 Leagues up from its Mouth. Between the Point of *Acadia* and the Iſland of Cape *Breton* is the Strait *des Canſeaux*, about 2 Leagues broad, and deep enough to carry the greateſt Ships in *France*, which is clear at all ſeaſons of the Year, whereas the Channel of Cape *de Raye* is oftentimes covered with Ice in *April*.

Moſt part of *Acadia* abounds with Corn, Peaſe, Fruit and Pulſe. Several Places afford Maſts as ſtrong as thoſe we have from *Norway*; and if there were occaſion all ſorts of Ships might be built there, the Oak of that Country being thought by Carpenters to be better than ours in *Europe*. The Knowledge I have of this Country makes me foreſee that the *Engliſh* will be Maſters of it ſome time or other: They have already begun to ruin the Commerce the *French* had with the Savages, and in a ſhort time they'll compaſs its intire Deſtruction. The *French* will priz their Goods too high, tho' they are not ſo good as thoſe of the *Engliſh*, and yet the *Engliſh* ſell their Commodities cheaper. 'Twere a pity that we ſhould tamely leave to the *Engliſh* a Country, the Conqueſt of which they attempted ſo often, in conſideration of our Fur-trade and Cod-fiſhing. 'Tis impoſſible to hinder 'em from poſſeſſing the Settlements on the Coaſt of *Acadia*, by reaſon that they lie at ſuch a diſtance from one another; ſo that they'll certainly ſucceed in ſuch Enterprizes, as indeed they have done already. The *French* Governors act with the ſame view, as many of thoſe who are employ'd in Poſts beyond Sea. They look upon their Places as Gold Mines given 'em in order to inrich themſelves; ſo that the Publick Good muſt always march behind private Intereſt. Mr. *de Meneval* ſuffer'd the *Engliſh* to poſſeſs themſelves of *Port Royal*, becauſe that place was cover'd with nothing but ſingle Paliſadoes: But why was it not better fortified? I can tell you the reaſon; he thought he had time enough to fill his Pockets before the *Engliſh* would attack it. This Governor ſucceeded Mr. *Perrot* who was broke with diſgrace, for having made it his chief buſineſs to inrich himſelf; and after returning to *France* went back again with ſeveral Ships laden with Goods, to ſet up for a private Merchant in that Country. While Mr. *Perrot* was Governor, he ſuffer'd the *Engliſh* to poſſeſs themſelves of ſeveral advantagious Poſts, without offering to ſtir. His chief Buſineſs was to go in Barks from River to River, to truck with the Savages; and after he was diſgrac'd, he was not content with a Commerce upon the Coaſt of *Acadia*, but would needs extend it to the *Engliſh* Plantations; but it coſt him dear, for ſome Pyrats fell in with him, and after ſeizing his Barks, duck'd himſelf, upon which he died immediately.

1693

Thoſe Savage Nations who have fix'd Habitations upon the Coaſts of *Acadia*, are intirely in the Intereſt of the *French*; and I muſt ſay that in time of War, they gall the *Engliſh* Colonies with their Incurſions ſo much, that we ought to take care to perpetuate a good underſtanding between them and us.

Port-Royal, the Capital or the only City of *Acadia*, is in effect no more than a little paltry Town that is ſomewhat inlarg'd ſince the War broke out in 1689, by the occaſion of the Inhabitants that liv'd near *Boſton* the Metropolis of *New-England*, who retir'd hither upon the apprehenſion that the *Engliſh* would pillage 'em and carry 'em into their Country. Mr. *de Meneval*, when he ſurrendred this place to the *Engliſh* (as I ſaid before) capitulated with the Commander of the Party that made the Attack; but the *Engliſh* Officer broke his Word to him, and uſed him both ignominiouſly and harſhly. It lies in the Latitude of 44 deg. and 40 min. upon the edge of a Baſin, a League broad and 2 Leagues long, having at the entry 16 or 18 fathom Water on one ſide, and 6 or 7 on the other.

On the other ſide of the River St. *Laurence* lies the wide extended Country of *Labrador*. The *Danes* were the firſt Diſcoverers of this Country which is full of Ports, Havens and Bays, which the *Quebec* Barks reſort to in Summer, to truck with the Savages for the Skins of Sea-Calves. It is a very large Country, and their number of Warriors, or Men that bear Arms, amounts to 30000 Men. They croſs over to the Iſland of *New-found-Land* every Day, at the Strait of *Belle Iſle*, which is not above 7 Leagues over; but never come ſo far as *Placentia*, for fear of meeting with other Savages there. *Hudſon*'s Bay adjoyns to *Labrador*, and extends from the 52th deg. and 30 min. to the 63d. of Lat. Captain *Henry Hudſon* an *Engliſh* Man, obtain'd a Ship from the *Dutch*, in order to trace a Paſſage to *China* thro' an imaginary Strait to the Northward of *America*. He had firſt form'd a Deſign of going by the way of *Nova Zembla*, but upon ſeeing the Memoirs of a *Daniſh* Pilot who was his Friend, he dropt that thought. This Pilot, whoſe Name was *Frederic Anſchild*, had ſet out from *Norway* or *Yſlandia* ſome Years before with a deſign to find out a Paſſage to *Japan* thro' that Chimerical Strait. The firſt Land he deſcried was *Savage* Bay, on the North ſide of *Labrador*; then ſweeping along the Coaſt he entred a Strait, which about 20 or 30 Years afterwards was chriſten'd *Hudſon*'s Strait; after that ſteering to the Weſtward, he came upon ſome Coaſts that run North and South; upon which he ſtood to the North, flattering himſelf with the hopes of finding an open Paſſage to croſs the Sea of *Jeſſo*: But after ſailing to the Polar Circle, and running the riſque of periſhing in the Ice, without meeting with any Paſſage or open Sea, he took up a reſolution of turning back; but the Seaſon was then ſo far advanced, and the Water ſo cover'd with Ice, that he was forc'd to put into *Hudſon*'s Bay and winter there, where ſeveral Savages furniſh'd his Crew with Proviſions and excellent Skins; and as ſoon as the Sea was open he return'd to *Denmark*. Captain *Hudſon* being acquainted with this *Dane*, undertook up his Journal to attempt a Paſſage, but the Enterprize fail'd, as well as that of one Mr. *Button* and ſome others. However, *Hudſon* put into the Bay that now goes by his Name, where he receiv'd a great quantity of Skins from the Savages, and after that diſcover'd *New-Holland*, now call'd *New-York*, and ſome other Countries retaining to *New-England*. Upon this the *Engliſh* form'd a Company for carrying on this new Commerce, and fitted out ſome Ships under the Command of Captain *Nelſon*, who loſt ſome of 'em in the Ice not far from the Strait, having eſcap'd narrowly himſelf. At laſt he entred the Bay,

and

1693 and placed himself at the Mouth of a great River, which rises towards the Lake of the *Assimpoualis* and falls into the Bay at a place where he built a Redoubt, and mounted some Cannon upon it. In the space of 3 or 4 Years after, the *English* made some other little Forts near that River, which prov'd a considerable Baulk to the Commerce of the *French*, who found that the Savages who used to deal with them in Furs on the North side of the upper Lakes, were not then to be seen.

It came to pass in process of time, that two *French* Men met some Savages in that Lake, who promis'd to conduct 'em to the bottom of the Bay, where the *English* had not yet penetrated, and were as good as their Word. The two *French* Men return'd to the upper Lake the same way they went, and thence to *Quebec*, where they offer'd to the chief Merchants to carry Ships to *Hudson's* Bay, but their Project was rejected. Thence they went to *France* in hopes of a more favourable hearing at Court. But after presenting divers Memorials, and spending a great deal of Money, they were treated as whimsical Fellows. Upon that occasion, the King of *England's* Ambassador did not lose the opportunity of perswading 'em to go to *London*, where they met with such a favourable Reception, that they got several Ships, which they carry'd to the Bay, not without difficulty, and built several Forts in different places that did great service in promoting Commerce. Then the Court of *France* repented, tho' too late, that they did not give ear to their Memorials; and finding no other Remedy, resolv'd to dislodge the *English* at any Rate. In effect, they attack'd 'em vigorously by Sea and Land, and dispossess'd 'em of all their Forts, excepting Fort *Nelson*, where they could not expect such an easie Conquest. Some Years after, the *English* resolv'd to make their utmost Efforts to retake these Posts; and their Resolution was crown'd with Success, for they dislodg'd the *French* in their turn, and at this Day the *French* are making preparations to repay 'em in their own Coin.

I must say, that the *English* in these Colonies are too careless and lazy. 'Tis well known that there's a great Consumption of Cod-fish in the Southern parts of *Europe*, and that few Commodities meet with a better and readier Market. It therefore behoves the Inhabitants of *New-England* to render the Cod-fishing more beneficial to the Colony, by taking such measures as many other People would, if they were as advantagiously seated. They ought to engage the Savages of *Acadia* in their Interest, which they may do with little charge. As for the fitting out of Fleets to destroy the Colony, if they were assur'd of Success, 'tis but some Places that can be reckon'd worth the while.

'Tis the Interest of the *English* to perswade the five Nations of the *Iroquese*, that the *French* have nothing less in view than to destroy them as soon as they meet with an opportunity; that the growing populousness of *Canada* is a sufficient cause of alarm; and that the only way to oblige the Inhabitants to abdicate the Colony, and discourage others from coming from *France*, is by ravaging their Settlements, and waging continual War against them.

Farther, if the *English* would pursue their measures to the best advantage, they ought to engage the *Tsonontouans* or the *Gogoguans* to go and settle upon the Banks of the Lake *Errie*, near the Mouth of the River of *Conde*; and at the same time they ought to build a Fort there, with some long Barks or Brigantines: This being the most convenient and advantagious Post of all that Country. Besides this Fort, they should build another at the Mouth of the River *des Francois*, and then 'twould be absolutely impossible for the Forrest-Rangers to carry Arms and Ammunition to the Allies of the *French* upon the Lakes.

The *French* of *Canada* subsisting chiefly upon the Fur-trade, 'tis their Interest to encourage the Savages to shoot Beavers, by furnishing 'em with what Arms and Ammunition they have occasion for. 'Twould be no difficult matter to draw the *Iroquese* over to their side, to keep 'em from plaguing their Allies, and at the same time to ingross all the Commerce with the 5 *Iroquese* Nations, that is now in the hands of the *English* at *New-York*. This might be effected by building Barks at Fort *Frontenac*, to convey to the River of the *Tsonontouans* and the *Onnontagueses* such Commodities as are proper for 'em; for whereas they now transport their Beaver Skins 60 or 80 Leagues upon their Backs to *New-York*, they have not above 7 or 8 Leagues travelling from their own Village to the Banks of the Lake of *Frontenac*. It is also very difficult for the *Iroquese* to find subsistence upon the Road, between their Villages and *New-York*, because they go thither in the great Bodies for fear of being surpriz'd, and there's no Venison on that side of the Country: And besides, in marching so far from their Villages, they expose their Wives, Child ren and superannuated Men for a Prey to their Enemies. 1693

To alledge that these Barbarians have a dependence upon the *English*, is a foolish Plea; their Respect for the *English* proceeding meerly from the occasion they have to make use of 'em. This is the only motive which induces 'em to treat the *English* as their Brethren; and if the *French* would sell 'em the Necessaries of Life, as well as Arms and Ammunition at easier Rates, they would not make many Journeys to the *English* Colonies.

1588 *Spanish* Invasion, 1588.

Those who alledge that the Destruction of the *Iroquese* would promote the Interest of the Colonies of *New-France*, are Strangers to the true Interest of that Country, for if that were once accomplish'd, those Savages who are now the *French* Allies, would turn their greatest Enemies, as being then rid of their other Fears; they would not fail to call in the *English*, by reason that their Commodities are cheaper and more esteem'd than ours; and by that means the whole Commerce of that wide Country would be wrested out of our hands.

I conclude therefore, that 'tis the Interest of the *French* to weaken the *Iroquese*, but not to see 'em intirely defeated. I own, that at this Day they are too strong, and have nothing less in view than to cut off all the Nations they know, let their Situation be never so remote from their Country. 'Tis our business to reduce 'em to one half of the Power they are now possess'd of, if 'twere possible; but we do not go the right way to work. There's an infinity of Disorders that want to be reform'd. In the first place, the Militia ought to be model'd and disciplin'd, that upon occasion they may be as serviceable as the regular Troops. Officers should be prohibited to stop the Soldiers Pay, and should be enjoyn'd to discipline their Men every *Sunday* and *Holy-day*. Commodities ought to be rated at a reasonable Price, so that the Merchant may have his Profit without exacting upon the Savages. The setting up Manufactories for Linnen, Stuffs, &c. would be very useful. And I have often wondred, that instead of Banishing the Protestants out of *France*, who in removing to the Countries of our Enemies, have done so much damage to the Kingdom by carrying their Money along with them, and setting up Manufactories in those Countries, that the Court did not think it more proper to transport 'em to *New-France*. I am convinc'd that if they had receiv'd positive Assurances of enjoying a liberty of Conscience, a great many of 'em would have made no scruple to go thither. Some have reply'd, that the Remedy would have been worse than the Disease, in regard that some time or other they would not have fail'd to expel the Catholicks by the assistance of the *English*: But to that may be answer'd, that the *Greeks* and *Armenians*, who are Subjects to the Grand Signior, and of a different Religion from that of the *Turks*, did scarce ever implore the aid of foreign Powers, in order to rebel and shake off the Yoak: And 'tis as probable, that if the *Huguenots* had been transported to *New-France*, they had never departed from the Fealty they ow'd to their Natural Sovereign; and by this means *New-France* would become a finer and more flourishing Kingdom than several others in *Europe*.

F I N I S.

APPENDIX.

The SPANISH *INVASION.* Anno Christi, 1588.

1588 *Spanish Invasion,* 1588.

TO name no other Reasons for this Grand Expedition, than that *Elizabeth* Queen of *England* assisted the Revolt in the *Netherlands* from the Crown of *Spain*; and that *Philip* II. was an ambitious Prince, and emulous of new Conquests: There were some Years spent in making vast Preparations for the Conquest of *England*, which would much faciliate the Subjection of the *Netherlands*; the *Spanish* Fleet, taken in all Respects, was the best that ever before Sailed upon the Ocean, the same consisting of One hundred and thirty Ships, whereof these were the Principal, *viz.* the Admiral Galleon of St. *Martins* of One Thousand Tun, had in her One hundred seventy seven Mariners, Three hundred Soldiers, Fifty Pieces of Canon, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Johns*, One thousand and seventy Tuns, One hundred and sixty Seamen, Two hundred thirty one Soldiers, Fifty Pieces of Canon, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Mark*, Seven hundred ninety two Tun, One hundred and seventeen Seamen, Two hundred ninety two Soldiers, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Philip*, Eight hundred Tun, One hundred and seventeen Seamen, Four hundred fifteen Soldiers, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Lewis*, Eight hundred and thirty Tuns, One hundred and sixteen Seamen, Three hundred seventy six Soldiers, Forty Guns, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Matthew*, Seven hundred and fifty Tun, Fifty Seamen, One hundred seventy seven Soldiers and Forty Guns, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *James*, Five hundred and twenty Tun, One hundred Seamen, Three hundred Soldiers and Fifty two Guns, *&c.* The Galleon of *Florence*, Nine hundred sixty one Tuns, One hundred Seamen, Three hundred Soldiers and Fifty two Guns, *&c.* The Galleon of St. *Christopher*, Three hundred fifty two Tuns, Ninety Seamen, Three hundred Soldiers, Thirty Guns, *&c.* A Ship of St. *Angelo*, Seven hundred sixty eight Tuns, One hundred and fourteen Seamen, Three hundred twenty three Soldiers, Thirty Canons, *&c.* The *Gangrine*, One thousand one hundred and sixty Tuns, One hundred and ten Seamen, Three hundred Soldiers, Three hundred and sixty Canon, *&c.* The Ship St. *James*, Six hundred and sixty Tuns, One hundred and two Seamen, Two hundred and fifty Soldiers, Thirty Guns, *&c.* The *Manuel*, Five hundred and twenty Tuns, Fifty four Seamen, One hundred and thirty Soldiers, Sixteen Guns, *&c.* The St. *Mary*, Seven hundred and seven Tuns, Fifty Mariners, Two hundred and twenty Soldiers, Thirty Guns, *&c.*

Its not necessary we should descend to any more such Particulars; let it therefore suffice, that in their Fleets consisting of One hundred and thirty Ships as already mentioned, which contained Fifty Seven Thousand, Eight hundred and eight Tuns, Eight Thousand, forty five Seamen, Nineteen Thousand two hundred ninety five Soldiers, And Two Thousand eighty eight Gally-Slaves: There was all other suitable Provision made. They had Twenty Thousand two hundred Canon-Balls. Four Thousand two hundred Quintals of Powder, each Quintal containing One hundred Pound weight. One hundred Quintals of Lead for Bullets. One Thousand two hundred Quintals of Match. Seven thousand Muskets. Ten Thousand Partisans and Halberts, with sufficient Store of battering, double Canon and Field-Pieces. They had likewise a great Stock of Provision, enough to last for six Months: In a word, the Army was Thirty two Thousand strong, and Cost the King of *Spain* Thirty two Thousand Ducats every Day. The General was the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, the Admiral *Don John Martinez de Richalde*. The Prince of *Parma* likewise in the *Netherlands*, by the Command of the King of *Spain*, built Ships and a great many flat-bottom'd Boats, each of them big enough to carry thirty Horse, with Bridges fitted to ship and unship the Horses; One hundred flat-bottom'd Boats more lay ready in the Port of *New Port*, tho' not as big as the former, besides Thirty seven Men of War at *Dunkirk*. He sharpned Piles to stop up the Mouths of Rivers; at *Gravelin* they had Twenty thousand empty Casks, with Cords and other Furniture to make floating Bridges to stop up the Havens, besides an infinite number of Faggots; they shipped likewise a great number of Saddles, Bridles, *&c.* Near unto *Newport* there lay ready Thirty Companies of *Italians*, Two of *Walloons*, and Eight of *Burgundians*: At *Dixmude* there were Eighty Companies of *Netherlanders*, Sixty of *Spaniards*, as many of *High-Dutch*, and among them about Seven hundred fugitive *English* under the Command of Sir *William Standley*; there were moreover Four Thousand Men posted at *Conick*, and Nine hundred Horse at *Walene*: These being the vast Preparations made for the Invading of poor *England*, and the same having received the Pope's Benediction; The Queen to obviate this grand Design, constituted *Charles* Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, Admiral; Sir *Francis Drake*, Vice-Admiral; and the Lord *Henry Seymour* to lye upon the Coast of the *Netherlands* with Forty Ships, to watch the Motion of the Prince of *Parma*; the Earl of *Leicester* was constituted General by Land, and Twenty thousand of the Militia were disposed along our South Coast; besides which she had two Armies, one of which consisting of a Thousand Horse, and Twenty two Thousand Foot, was Incamped at *Tilbury* near the *Thames's* Mouth, where the Enemy designed to Land: The other was Commanded by the Lord *Hunsdon*, consisted of Thirty four Thousand Foot, and One Thousand Horse, who were to Guard the Queen's Person: *Arthur* Lord *Grey*, Sir *Francis Knolles*, Sir *John Norris*, Sir *Richard Bingham* and Sir *Roger Williams*, were appointed to Consult about the Management of the Land Service.

1588

On the other hand the *Spaniard* to amuse her Majesty to a Security, seemed very desirous to treat of Peace; and imploying the Prince of *Parma* as his Instrument therein, he writ very pressingly into *England* that a Treaty might be set on foot, affirming, That he had full Authority from the King of *Spain* for that purpose. Her Majesty on her part, being sincere and desirous of Peace, in *February* sent *Henry* Earl of *Derby*, *William Brook* Lord *Cobham*, Sir *James Crofts*, *Valentine Dale* and *John Rogers*, Doctors of Law, her Pleniporentiaries, into the *Netherlands*; and *Ostend* was appointed for the Place of Treaty. The *Spanish* Pleniporentiaries, who were the Count of *Aremberg* Governor of *Antwerp*, *Richardot* President of *Artois*, with some other Civilians, staid at *Bruges* notwithstanding their pretended haste; But having at last adjusted the Point about Precedency in favour of the *English*, these last demanded a Cessation of Arms: That the Foreign Troop should

1588 be ſent away out of the *Netherlands* for the Security of *England*; That the Queen ſhou'd be reſtor'd the Mony ſhe had lent to the States, and which the King had promis'd; That the *Netherlanders* might enjoy their antient Liberties and Priviledges, have Liberty of Conſcience; and that the Pacification of *Ghent* and the like Treaties might be obſerved. To which the *Spaniards* reply'd, That their Sea Preparations, which the Queen miſtruſted, did not at all concern *England*. That the King could not reſolve to ſend away the Soldiers out of the *Netherlands*, till the Country had ſubmitted to him. That as to their Priviledges, it not belonged to the Queen, neither was ſhe to preſcribe Laws to the King of *Spain*; and he was ſo far from tolerating Religion, that he would not as much as hear of it. And as for thoſe Places which had been taken from him, and the Mony expended about them; they ſaid that the *Spaniard* might demand as many Myriads of Ducats to be repaid him by the Queen, as he had expended upon the *Low-Country* Wars, from the time ſhe had ſupported the Revolters, and took them into her Protection: In a word, there was ſuch Artifice uſed in the Management of this Treaty, that the ſame was ſpecious till the *Spaniſh* Fleet came within ſight of *England*, and the Thundring of the Canon was heard from Sea; which made the *Engliſh* Plenipotentiaries very uneaſie: However the Prince of *Parma* gave them a ſafe Conduct for *England*, who as well as the *Spaniard*, had in the mean time put on the Fox's Skin on the Lyon's Head, and made diligent Preparations to give the Enemy a ſharp Reception.

And now that we are come to ſpeak of this Invincible *Armada*, Twelve of which Ships were called by the Names of the Twelve Apoſtles; the Fleet on the 29th of *May* ſet Sail from the *Tagus*, ſteering towards the *Groyne* in *Gallicia*, the Place of general Rendezvous; but a cruel Storm ariſing, drove the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* back into the *Groyne*; eight of the other Ships were diſperſed at Sea and loſt their Maſts; beſides three *Portugal* Gallies which were driven upon the Coaſt of *Bayon* in *France*, where, by the Valour of one *David Gain* an *Engliſh* Captive, and the Aſſiſtance of other Slaves. *French* and *Mahometans*, they were deliver'd into the Hands of the *French*. About the ſame time the *Engliſh* Admiral, who had in all about One hundred Ships, whereof Fifteen were Victuallers, and Nine Volunteers of *Devonſhire* Gentlemen, having certain Information that the *Spaniſh* Fleet was ready to Sail, reſolved to put out of *Plymouth* to meet them; but being drove back to that Port by Storm, and Intelligence being brought that the *Spaniards* were in want, their great Ships diſperſed, the reſt much damaged by a Storm, and their Men ſwept away in great Numbers; The Admiral thinking to make ſome Advantage hereof, upon the 8th of *July* put to Sea, and Sailing almoſt within ſight of *Spain*, deſign'd there to Surprize and Fight the Enemy upon their own Coaſt; but the Wind coming ſuddenly about to the South, and he wiſely foreſeeing that the Enemy might paſs by him undiſcover'd, he returned again to his own Coaſt and came to an Anchor in *Plimouth*. At the ſame time they had freſh, tho' falſe Advice, not only in the Fleet but alſo at Court, that the *Spaniſh* Fleet could not poſſibly put to Sea that Year; which was ſo far believ'd by her Majeſty, that ſhe order'd four of her biggeſt Ships to be brought about and laid up at *Chatham*; but the Admiral fearing the worſt, got the Order countermanded, and expreſt himſelf willing to retain them at his own Charge rather than be without them in ſuch a Juncture; and indeed it very providentially fell out, that in the very nick of time, News was brought him by Captain *Fleming*, that the *Spaniſh* Fleet was come into the Britiſh Seas, and ſeen near the *Lizzard*. Accordingly on the 20th of *July*, they were deſcry'd by the *Engliſh*, ſailing on with a S. W. Wind, and was a kind of Surprize to them, ſince it was ſaid, that many of their Men were gone aſhoar. However the brave Admiral took ſuch Ships as were ready, out of the Haven, and being come in ſight of the *Spaniards*, they ſaw their Ships with lofty Towers like Caſtles, in Front like a half Moon, and extending ſeven Miles in breadth; they carried an eaſie Sail, and ſeemed as if they made for *Plymouth*; but when they deſcryed the *Engliſh* out of the Harbour, they ſteered towards *Calais*, in Expectation to meet with the Prince of *Parma* from the *Netherlands*; and the *Engliſh* willingly ſuffer'd them to paſs by, that they might more conveniently give Chaſe as they ſaw occaſion.

On the 21ſt of *July* the *Engliſh* Admiral ſent a Pinace called the *Defiance*, to denounce War againſt them by Firing upon the Enemy, and following himſelf in the *Ark Royal*, fell upon (as he thought) the *Spaniſh* Admiral, but it proved to be *Alonſo de Leva*'s Ship; between whom enſued a ſmart Engagement: Soon after *Drake*, *Hawkins* and *Forbiſher*, came up with the hindermoſt Squadron of the Enemy, Commanded by *Richalde*, who did all he could to keep his Men from running for ſhelter to the main Fleet. At what time the Duke of *Medina* put the whole Fleet into Order, and kept his intended Courſe towards *Calais*; and indeed he could not well do otherwiſe, ſince the Wind favour'd the *Engliſh*, and that he himſelf found the Inconveniency of their great and high-built Ships, that could defend well, but at the ſame time were very unweildy; whereas the *Engliſh* were nimble and ready on all ſides to annoy them, but being low-built were eaſily overſhot. Hereupon he order'd them to draw up cloſe in the form of an half Moon, and to ſlacken their Sails, that their whole Fleet might keep together. But the *Engliſh* Admiral having now been hotly Engaged for the ſpace of two Hours, thought not good to continue the Fight any longer, eſpecially ſince he had yet hardly Thirty Ships with him. In this firſt Day's Engagement, the St. *Catherine* a *Spaniſh* Ship, having been ſeverely Battered, was taken into the midſt of their Fleet to be repaired; and a great Ship of *Biſcay* of *Don Quevedoes*, wherein was a great part of the King's Treaſure, began to be all in a Flame by the Powder that was fired on purpoſe by a *Flemiſh* Gunner, for being miſuſed by them; but the Fire was ſoon quenched: However the *Spaniards* for want of Courage, which they called Commiſſion, endeavoured all they could to decline Fighting, and forming themſelves continually into Roundells, (their ſtoureſt Ships as it were Walling in the reſt) they made all the Sail they could towards *Calais*, before which a great Galleon wherein was *Don Pedro Devaldes* and ſeveral other Noblemen, having been much ſhattered by the *Engliſh*, fell foul upon another Ship, and having loſt her Fore-maſt, ſhe was diſabled from keeping up with the reſt of his Fleet; which being perceiv'd by the *Engliſh* Admiral, who ſuppoſed they had left neither Soldiers nor Seamen aboard her, and fearing to loſe ſight of the Enemy, he paſſed by her, and follow'd the Lanthorn, which he thought to be carried by *Drake* according to Order; but he was eagerly in Chaſe of five great Hulks, which he took to be *Spaniards*, tho' when he came up with them, they prov'd to be Eaſt Country Ships and Friends: Yet by this Miſtake of Sir *Francis*, the greateſt part of the Fleet wanting the direction of his Light, was forced to lie by; ſo that himſelf and the reſt of them could not till towards the Evening of the next Day with the Admiral himſelf, who all the preceding Night with the *Bear* and the *Mary-Roſe*, follow the *Spaniſh* Lanthorn. 1588

July 22. *Drake* eſpying the forementioned lagging Gallion, ſent his Pinace to command her to Yield: But *Cõdes* anſwer'd they were four hundred and fifty ſtrong; that himſelf was *Don Pedro*, and propoſed Terms, which the other refuſing, the Spaniard thought it beſt to Strike; he and forty of his Companions went on Board Sir *Francis*, and by way of Complement, proteſted, that both himſelf and his Men were reſolv'd to have died Fighting, had they not fallen into his Hands whoſe Valour and Felicity was ſo great, that *Mars* and *Neptune* ſeem'd to wait upon him in all his Enterpriſes, and whoſe Noble and generous Mind had been often experienc'd, even by the greateſt of his Enemies: To verify which, *Drake* entertain'd him at his own Table, and gave him his own Cabin; but for the reſt, he ſent them to *Plymouth*, where they remain'd Priſoners for eighteen Months, till by the Payment of their Ranſom they obtained their Liberty: In the mean time *Drake*'s Men having beſides other things, found 55000 Ducats of Gold in the Ship, they merrily ſhar'd it among themſelves. The ſame day *Michael de Oquendo*, Admiral of the Squadron *Guypuſco*, and Vice-Admiral of the whole Fleet, ſuffer'd no leſs a Diſaſter; for his Ship, which was one of the biggeſt Galley's, taking Fire, all the upper part of her was Burnt, and moſt of them loſt: However, the Powder in the Hold not taking fire, the Ship fell into the hands of the Engliſh, which together with the ſcorched *Spaniards* in her, were brought into *Plymouth*. The Duke of *Medina* did all he could this day to bring his Fleet into Order, and

Com-

1588 commanded *Alphonso de Leccа* to unite the first and last Squadrons, and form a Line, and order'd every Ship to her Station, pursuant to the Form prescrib'd them before they came out of *Spain*, and requir'd them not to desert the same upon pain of Death. After which he sent *Glitich* an Ensign, to the Prince of *Parma*, to acquaint him with his Condition.

Next day, *viz.* the 23d. the *Spaniards* early in the Morning taking their benefit of a Northerly Wind, when they came over against Port *Claud* tacked about upon the English; but they being nimble, so worked their Ships, that at last they got the Weather-gage of the Enemy, and continued the Fight from Morning till Night, with very great Fury; on the one side, the English bravely relieved the *London* Ships that were hem'd in by the *Spaniards*; and on the other, the *Spaniards* as bravely disengaged *Richalde*, and brought him off: The chief of the Engagement was indeed this day, and yet the Shot of the *Spaniards* for the most part flew over the English, without doing them damage; only *Lock*, an English-man, died with great Honour in a little Ship of his own, in the midst of the Enemy: The English Ships being far smaller than the Enemy's, attack'd them with great Activity, and Tacked frequently as they saw occasion; however the Admiral did not think it proper to grapple with them, as some unadvisedly would have perswaded him; for he knew they had an Army of Land-Soldiers on Board, whereas he had none; that their Ships were more Numerous, Larger, Stronger, and could not be Boarded without Disadvantage: Wherefore continuing the other and better way of Engaging, before the Day was spent, a great *Venetian* Ship with some other smaller ones, were Supriz'd and Taken by the English, and the *Spaniards* forced for their farther Safety, to draw up into a Roundel, as already mentioned.

The Fight on the 24th, was only between four great Galleasses and some of the English Ships; the *Spaniards* upon this occasion, had great Advantage, since their Ships had Oars, and ours, by reason of a Calm, had no use of their Sails: However the English gauled the Enemy very much with their great and Chain Shot: But at last wanting Powder, and other Necessaries to continue the Fight, the Admiral sent some Vessels into the next Port for a Supply, which occasion'd divers Discourses and strange Surmizes in *Holland*, that we should thus want upon our own Coasts. In the mean time, a Council of War was held, wherein it was agreed the Fleet should be divided into four Squadrons, to be Commanded, one by the Admiral himself in the *Ark-Royal*, the next by *Drake* in the *Revenge*; the third by *Hawkins*; and the fourth by *Forbisher*. Besides these, there were several other brave Commanders in others of her Majesty's Ships, as the Lord *Thomas Howard* in the *Lyon*, the Lord *Sheffeild* in the *Boar*, *Baker* in the *Victory*, and *Fenner* in the Galleon *Leicester*. It was likewise farther agreed, that out of every Squadron some small Ships should attack the Enemy from divers Posts in the dead of the Night; but the Calm continuing, his Design could not be executed. The *Spaniards* on the 25th, being come over against the *Isle of Wight*, a terrible Fight ensued between them and the English, now not above 120 Yards from them: Here the St. *Ann*, a *Portugueze* Galleon, being not able to keep up with the rest, was attacked by several small English Ships, and *Don Diego Telles Enriques* with three Galleasses coming to her Assistance, the English Admiral himself, and the Lord *Thomas Howard* towed their Ships to bear to them by reason of the Calm, and attacked them with so much Fury, that they had much ado to bring the Galleon off; so that none of the Galleasses from thence forward would undertake the Fight. The *Spaniards* reported that the *English* the same Day beat the *Spanish* Admiral, slew many of his Men, brought his Main-mast by the Board, and he had been in great Danger of being lost, had not *Mexia* and *Richalde* come timely to his Assistance; but that the *Spanish* Admiral and his Men, seconded by *Richalde* and others, set upon the *English* Admiral, who by the turning of the Wind happily escap'd: That the *Spaniards* hereupon gave over the Pursuit, kept on their Course, sent to the Prince of *Parma*, to come speedily with his Fleet to joyn the *Armada*; and withal, to send them a Supply of Cannon-Ball; but these Things the *English* knew nothing of. We have an Account that they shot down the Lantern from one of the Enemy's Ships, and the Peak-Head from another, and that they had done much Damage to a Third; that the *Non-Pareil* and *Mary-Rose* fought for some time with the Enemy, and that other Ships had relieved the Triumph, which was in Danger. In short, the *English* had so batter'd the Enemy, that they had recourse once more to the Form of a Roundel, for their better Security. The *English* Admiral the next Day, to encourage his Commanders, conferr'd the Honour of Knighthood upon the Lords, *Howard* and *Sheffield*, *Roger Townsend*, *John Hawkins*, *Martin Forbisher* and others: yet such was the Vanity of the Enemy, that they caused a Report to be spread in *France*, that *England* was entirely conquer'd by them. Another Council of War was held by the *English*, wherein it was resolv'd, they should no more attack the Enemy till they came to the Streights of *Calais*, where the Lord *Henry Seymour* and Sir *William Winter*, with the Ships under their Command for the Guard of the narrow Seas, waited their coming; soon after which, the *Spanish* Fleet bore away, and the *English* close at the Heels of them; nay, so far were they from terrifying our *English* Coast with the Name of Invincible, that a great many brave *English* Gentlemen with wonderful Alacrity, leaving their Friends and dearest Relations, hired Ships from all Parts at their own Charges, and Mann'd the Fleet in several Numbers, among whom were the Earls of *Oxford*, *Cumberland* and *Northumberland*; *Thomas* and *Robert Cecil*, *Henry Brook* and *Charles Blunt*, *Walter Raleigh*, *William Hatton*, *Rober Carey*, *Ambrose Willoughby*, *Thomas Gerard* and divers others. 1588

July the 27th. The *Spanish* Fleet came to an Anchor before *Calais*, intending for *Dunkirk*, there to joyn with the Prince of *Parma's* Forces. The *English* on their Part follow'd them close and anchor'd within Culverin Shot of them, at what time being joyn'd by *Seymour* and *Winter*, the *English* Fleet consisted now of 140 Sail fit for fighting, tho' there were not above 15 that had sustain'd the main Burthen of the Engagement. The Duke of *Medina* sent from hence once more to hasten the Junction of the Prince of *Parma*, with which Messengers many of the *Spanish* Noblemen went a-shoar, having had their Bellies full of the liquid Element, of which Number was the Prince of *Ascoli*, the King's Natural Son, who return'd to his Ship no more; and indeed it was well for him, since his Galleon was afterwards cast away upon the Coast of *Ireland*. The Messengers press'd the Prince of *Parma* very much to put to Sea with his Army, which should be protected safely by the *Spanish* Fleet, till landed in *England*. And they tell us, that the Prince hearing the best, and not the worst of the Expedition, made all the necessary Preparations for the intended Conquest of *England*, whose Crown Cardinal *Allen* flatter'd him he should wear; that he left the Government of the *Netherlands* in the Hands of Count *Mansfield* the Elder, and having made his Vows to the Lady of *Hall in Heinault*, he marched away for *Dunkirk*; and upon the way thither hearing the Thundring of the Cannon at Sea, he had next Evening News of the bad Success of the *Spaniards*, and let him do all that ever he could, he could not be ready at their Call for his flat-bottom'd Boat; for the shallow Channels leak'd, his Provisions were not ready, and his Seamen, who had hitherto been detain'd against their Wills, deserted him; there lay also before *Dunkirk* and *Newport*, from whence he was to put to Sea, the *Holland* and *Zealand* Men of War, that were so well provided with Cannon and small Arms, that he could not well put off from the Shoar without manifest Danger of being ruin'd.

But the Queen of *England's* Fore-sight prevented both the Prince's Diligence and the vain Hopes of the *Spaniards*: For the Lord Admiral pursuant to her Command, the next Day after the *Spaniards* had cast Anchor, made eight of his worst Ships ready, and fill'd them with Wild-fire, Pitch, Rosin, Brimstone and other combustible Matter. They also charg'd their Cannon with Bullets, Chains and the like destructive Things. Then ordering all the Men to quit the Vessels, they were, *July* 28th. at two in the Morning suffer'd to drive with the Wind and Tide, (under the Conduct of *Young* and *Prouse*) among the *Spanish* Fleet; and so the Pilots returning, and the Trains taking Fire, the sudden Blow strangely amazed the *Spaniards*, who for fear of being burnt cut their Cable, but in such Confusion, that one of their greatest Galleasses fell foul upon another Ship and lost her Rudder, and run aground upon the Sands near *Calais*. She was commanded by *Hugh de Moncado*, who expecting Relief from the Prince of *Parma*, made a stout Resistance; but Sir *Amias Preston* ply'd him so close, that the Com-

1588 Commander being slain, he boarded her, and having kill'd and drown'd a great many *Spaniards*, took her. She carried four hundred Soldiers and three hundred Slaves, and had aboard 50000 Ducats of the King of *Spain*'s Treasure; a due Reward for *English* Valour.

The *Spaniards* relate, that the Duke of *Medina*, when these Fire-ships drew near, order'd the whole Fleet to weigh Anchor, only to avoid the present Danger, and then to return again to their former Stations, upon a Signal given by the Admiral: But that in this general Consternation was heard but by a few; so that many of their Ships were drove out to Sea, and others upon the Flats of *Flanders*. The *Spaniards* next Day managed the Fleet as well as they could, and stood over against *Gravelin*, where the *English* once more getting the Weather gage of them, depriv'd 'em of the Conveniency of *Calais* Road, and kept 'em from receiving any Supply from *Dunkirk*. In the mean time *Drake* and *Fenner* fir'd very furiously upon 'em, and were briskly seconded by *Fenton*, *Southwel*, *Beston*, *Cross*, *Riman*; and lastly, by the Admiral himself, with the Lords *Thomas Howard* and *Sheffield*. On the other hand, the Duke of *Medina*, *Leva*, *Oquenda*, *Richalde* and others of the Enemy, with much ado got clear of the Flats, tho' not without being severely handled by the *English*, who continu'd the Fight from Morning till Evening, sunk a great Galleon of *Biscay*, and two great Saiks more; and the Galleon St. *Matthew* coming to relieve *don Francisco de Toledo* in the St. *Philip*, they were both miserably shatter'd by *Seymour* and *Winter*, and being driven on the Coast of *Ostend*, were likewise there also ill handled by the *Zealanders*. But the *Spanish* Commander, *Don Diego Picmentelli*, for whom the Duke of *Medina* sent his own Ship, refusing to leave his Ship, did all he could to disengage himself, and therefore making towards the Coast of *Flanders*, he was there again attack'd by five *Dutch* Men of War, and was forc'd at last to strike to *Peter Bauderdues*, who carried him into *Zealand*, and for a Trophy of his Victory, hung his Flag in the Church of *Leyden*, which reach'd from Top to Bottom; during which, another of the *Spanish* Ships was cast away on the *Flemish* Coast. *Francisco de Toledo*, who, as well as *Diego*, was Colonel over thirty two Companies, Steering with his Galleon for the Coast of *Flanders*, she prov'd so leaky, that he was forc'd to quit her and go a-shoar at *Ostend*, and the same fell into the Hands of the *Flushingers*.

The *Spaniards* were now very glad to be on the Defensive; but the Wind coming S. W. and the *English* Admiral fearing the Prince of *Parma* might lay hold of the Opportunity to put to Sea, dispatch'd the Lord *Henry Seymour* with his Squardron to the *Flemish* Coast, to join there with the *Dutch* under *Justin Nassaw* their Admiral, to keep them in. The *Dutch* Fleet consisted of Thirty five Ships well Manned with Seamen, besides One thousand Two hundred Musketeers. On the last Day of *July* the Wind blowing hard N. W. the *Spanish* Fleet endeavour'd to recover the Streights of *Calais*, but were driven towards *Zealand*, upon which the *English* gave over the Chase, expecting hardly any thing else than their utter Ruin, for they could not under those Circumstances well avoid running aground upon the Sands and Flats of *Zealand*: But the Wind coming about to the S. W. and by W. they sail'd before the Wind and got clear of the Flats, and having that Evening call'd a Council of War, they resolv'd by the Northern Ocean to return into *Spain*, since they wanted many Necessaries, especially Canon-Ball; that their Ships were much shatter'd; and that there was no hopes of their being joined by the Prince of *Parma*. Pursuant to this Resolution they put out to Sea, and steering Northward, the *English* still following them lest they should put into *Scotland*, against whom they now and then turn'd head, yet stood not into it, but steer'd away for *Norway*; and being now got to 57 Deg. North Lat. the *English* Admiral left them there, and only sent some Advice-boats to observe their farther Motion. The *Spaniards* on their Part being now got clear of the Enemy, seriously consulted what was next to be done by them. They were very tender of the *Pope*'s Reputation, who had Prophecy'd, that this Enterprize would prove successful. They were also afraid of the Indignation of King *Philip* their Master, and their Invincible *Armada* would become a Scorn to the *English*, if they should return home without making any further Attempt; but considering on the other hand, that Five thousand of their Soldiers were slain, a great many of their Men sick and wounded, twelve of their greatest Ships sunk, lost or taken, their Rigging sorely torn by the Enemy's Shot, their Anchors left in *Calais* Road, their Provision short, their Water spent, the Enemy bold and successful, the Prince of *Parma*, tho' long preparing, yet not ready, and kept in by the *Dutch* Squadron; they resolv'd to make the best of their way for *Spain*. But withal, knowing that the King of *Scotland* would afford them no Relief, and that they had as little Hopes of having any thing from *Norway*, they thought it best to throw all their Horses and Mules over-board to save their Water; and so steering about *Cathness* and for the Coast of *Ireland*, they pass'd between the *Orchades* and the Isles of *Farr*, to 61. Deg. N. Lat. from whence the Duke of *Medina*, with those Ships that were best provided, made the best of his way for *Biscay*, and at last arriv'd in *Spain*, where he was forbid to come to Court, and live privately. The rest of the Ships, being in all about forty, fell in with the *Irish* Coast, and intended to touch at *Cape Clear*, in hopes of meeting there with some Refreshment; but the Wind proving contrary, and the Weather tempestuous, many of them perish'd on the *Irish* Shoars; and amongst others, a great Galleon under the Command of *Michal de Oquando*, and two other *Venetian* Ships of great Burden, besides thirty eight more with most of the Men on board them. Those that got clear, were some of them driven by a strong W. Wind into the *English* Channels, where Part of them were attack'd again, and taken by the *English*, others by the *Rochellers*, and some arriv'd at *New-Haven* in *Normandy*; so that of 134 Sail that came out of *Lisbon*, only 53 return'd to *Spain*. Of the four Galleasses of *Naples*, but one; the like of the four Galleons of *Portugal*; of the 91 Galleons and great Hulks from divers Provinces, only 33 return'd, 58 being lost. In a Word, they lost 81 Ships in this Expedition, and 13500 and odd Soldiers. There were above 2000 Prisoners taken in *England*, *Ireland* and the *Low Countries*. Amongst these in *England* were *Don Pedro de Valdez*, *Don Vasques de Silvea*, and *Don Alonzo de Saies* and others were kept for their Ransom. In *Ireland* *Don Aolnzo de Lazon*, *Roderigo de Lesse*; and in *Zealand*, *Don Diego Piementelli*. In a Word, there was hardly a Noble Family in all *Spain* that had not lost a Son, Brother or Kinsman; whereas the *English* lost not one Ship, save only that of Captain *Cocks*, and not above 100 Men in all. To perpetuate the Memory of this Glorious Defeat of the *Spaniards*, the *English* stamp'd Medals, whereon there was a Fleet flying with full Sails, with this Inscription, *Venit Vidit, Fugit*. Others were done in Honour of the Queen, with Flaming Ships, and a Fleet in great Confusion, and this Motto, *Dux Femina Facti*.

1588

In the fore-mentioned Wreck above 700 Soldiers and Sea men were forc'd a-shoar in *Scotland*, who, at the Request of the Prince of *Parma* and the Queen's leave, were after a Years time sent over into the *Netherlands*. But for those whose hard Fate it was to be cast on the *Irish* Shoar, some of them were slain by the Wild *Irish*, their old Friends, and others put to Death by the Lord Depury's Command; for he fearing they might joyn with the *Irish* to disturb the Peace of the Kingdom, commanded *Bingham*, Governor of *Conaught*, to destroy them. But that Gentleman refusing to exercise such Cruelty to those who had surrender'd themselves Prisoners of War, *Force*, the Depury Marshal was sent thither, who cut off above 200 of those miserable Wretches, to the Grief afterwards of the good Queen. The Remainders being terrified therewith, committed themselves to the Mercy of the Sea in their shatter'd Ships, and were many of 'em swallow'd up by the Waves.

Here it is observable, that Queen *Elizabeth* being one Night in the Army at *Tilbury*, the old Lord Treasurer *Burleigh* came hither, delivered to the Earl of *Leicester* the Examination of *Don Pedro*, who was taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, which the Earl gave to Dr. *Sharp*, in order to Publish it in his next Sermon to the Army; and the same in substance was, *That* Don Pedro *being ask'd by some of the Privy Council what was the Intent of their coming*, He boldly answer'd, *What? But to Conquer your Nation and Root it out*. Well, said the Lords, *What then did you intend to do with the* Roman Catholicks? *We design'd* said he, *to send them, Good Men, directly to Heaven, as well as you that are* Heretick's *to Hell*. But continued the Lords, *What had you to do with your Gold and*

Wier

1588 *Wier Whips, whereof you had such a Number in your Ships. What?* Reply'd he, *We intended to whip the Hereticks to Death, that have assisted my Master's Rebels, and done such Dishonour to our Catholick King and People. But what would you have done,* said they, *to their young Children? They,* answer'd he, *which were above seven Years old, should have gone the same way with their Fathers; the rest should have liv'd; only we would have branded them in the Fore-head with the Letter* L *for* Lutheran, *and kept them in perpetual Bondage.* 1588

England being thus freed from the impending Storm, on the 8th. of *September* was appointed a Day of Thanksgiving in the Cathedral Church of St. *Pauls*, to the Almighty, for this great Deliverance, at what time eleven of the *Spanish* Standards were hung upon the lower Battlements of that Church; and on the 24th. the Queen her self went from her Palace at *White-Hall* to *Westminster*, the Streets being hung with blue Cloth and lin'd with the Trainbands, and was from thence drawn in her Chariot to St. *Paul's* Church, where on her Knees at the West Door she audibly Praised God for her and her Peoples Defender; and after a Sermon suitable to the Occasion, she after a most Royal and Christian manner exhorted her Subjects to a due Performance of those Religious Duties of Thankfulness, which the Almighty expected at their Hands. About the same time the Fair being kept in *Southwark*, the *Spanish* Flags were hung out upon *London* Bridge, and *Tuesday* the 19th. of *Nov.* appointed a solemn Day of Thanksgiving throughout the Kingdom. On the other hand, the *Zealanders*, to perpetuate the Action, caus'd Silver Medals to be strück, on one side of which they had the Arms of their Country with these Words, *Glory to God alone*; and on the Reverse, great Ships under writ, the *Spanish* Fleet; and round, *It Came, it Went, it Was, Anno* 1588. On other Medals, there were Ships floating and sinking; and on the Reverse, Supplicants upon their Knees, with this Motto, *Man proposeth, God disposeth*, 1588. Others there were with *Spanish* Ships, and this Motto, *Impius fugit nemine sequente.*

An Abstract of the Portugal *Voyage*, A. D. 1589. *under Sir* John Norris *and Sir* Francis Drake, *Generals.*

WHEN our Generals first set out from *England*, they were disappointed of several Things necessary for this Expedition, for they wanted eight of the twelve Pieces of Artillery, which lost her Majesty the Possession of the *Groyne* and several other Places; they wanted six hundred *English* Horses, and seven of the old Companies from the *Low-Countries*; four *Dutch* Companies, and six of their Men of War, all which Things were promis'd them before they left *England*: Besides the loss of twenty thousand Pounds of Adventures, and of our Victuals, during the Month we lay Wind-bound at *Plymouth*, and of twenty five of our Companies ship'd in part of the Fleet, which were parted from us by cross Winds, being either unable or unwilling to double *Ushant*. But tho' the want of these Things hinder'd us from attempting or performing several things which otherwise we might have done, yet notwithstanding all these Disadvantages by the good Conduct of our two Excellent Generals, *Norris* by Land, and *Drake* by Sea, we did in a short time archieve several considerable Exploits, as will appear in the Sequel of this Discourse. Some that had a mind to return home, after a short stay with us, quarrel'd, but without just Cause, at the great Mortality that was among us, the neglect of Discipline in the Army, wherein Men were suffer'd to be drunk, the scarcity of Surgeons, the want of Carriages for the Sick and Wounded, and the scarcity of Victuals in the Camp: But it appear'd by a strict Examination of our Musters, that we were never thirteen Thousand in all, and we brought home with us above six Thousand, from whence we may plainly see how false the Report was, which was spread abroad that we had lost sixteen Thousand by Sickness.

After six Days sailing from the Coast of *England*, on the 20th. of *April* 1589. we landed in a Bay more than an *English* Mile from the *Groyne*, in our Boats and Pinaces without any hindrance; from whence we presently march'd toward the Town, and within half a Mile of it we were encounter'd by the Enemy, whom we charg'd and drove backward within the Gates. For that Night our Army lying in the Villages, Houses and Mills round about the Town, was shot at by some Ships and Gallies which lay in the Road. But the next Morning General *Norris* having landed some Artillery, upon the planting the first Piece, the Gallies left the Road, and upon discharging our Guns and Muskets, the Galleon (which was one of the last Years *Armada* against *England*) left off playing upon us. Our next Design was to surprize the lower Town; for that end we appointed to be landed twelve hundred Men in Long-Boats and Pinaces, on one side by Water, who were to play upon the Town with Artillery as they approach'd it; and on the other side five hundred Men were to enter at Low-Water, if they found it passable, or else to scale the Walls with Ladders; and by Land three hundred Men were to enter by Escalade: and all these were to charge at the same Instant. The Boats landed without any great Difficulty, only some Men were wounded; and those who assaulted it by Land enter'd without any Resistance. And thus the Lower Town being entred in three several Places at once, the Inhabitants fled to the Upper Town by such ways as we knew not, except by those that were put to the Sword, or fled to the Rocks, or hid themselves in Chambers and Cellars, of which there were great Numbers; and among the rest, one *de Luna* surrender'd himself, and a Commissary of Victuals was taken, who confess'd that there were in the Town five hundred of these Soldiers that had been in the Voyage to *England*, and all kind of Provision for Shipping and War, which was the beginning of a Magazine for a new Voyage into *England*. We kill'd about five hundred after we entred the Town, and the Soldiers finding the Cellars full of Wine, indulg'd themselves so much in excessive Drinking, that many of 'em fell sick and dy'd,

The next Morning the Enemy abandon'd their Ships, and left the Galleon on fire, having so overcharg'd the Pieces in her, that of fifty there remain'd only sixteen entire. The same Day we took the Cloyster, standing on the South-side close by the Wall of the Town, and the 2d. Day Colonel *Huntley* went into the Country and brought home great Store of Kine and Sheep. The 3d. Day the General design'd to take a long Ammunition-House upon the Wall, which would have been of great Advantage to us, but was disappoined by the Enemy, who set fire to it in the beginning of the Evening.

The 4th. Day we planted under the Guard of the Cloysters two Demi-Cannons and two Culverins against the Town, which were defended with a Cross-Wall thro' which our Battery lay; but the first and second Tire of it shook all the Wall down, so that the Ordnance lay open to the Enemy, and some of our Men were wounded and some slain. However the General having planted his Ordnance, caus'd the Town to be surrounded, and they desir'd a Parley, to tell us, that he who had shot at our Drum was hang'd; but they would not surrender the Town.

General *Norris* having taken a View of the Town caus'd a Mine to be dug, in which a great quantity of Gunpowder was lodg'd to blow up the Wall, and appointed several Companies to make an Assault upon the Town at the same time, some at the Breach made by the Cannon, and others which should be made by the Mine; but the Powder breaking out backwards (for the Mine was too high) nothing could be done in either Place for that Day. But the Mine being afterwards better laid under the Wall, Fire was laid to the Train, which blew up one half of the Tower under which it lay: Whereupon the aforesaid Companies, according to Order, presently made the Assault; but as it happen'd, too soon; for having entred the top of the Breach, the other half of the Tower, which at first was only shaken with the force of the Powder, fell upon our Men and kill'd twenty or thirty of 'em, which so amaz'd the rest, that they forsook their Commanders. And the Breach made

1589 by the Cannon, tho' it was well assaulted by our Men, who came to push off Pike at the top of the Breach, and were ready to enter, yet the loose Earth slipping outwards, by reason of their Weight, half the Wall remain'd entire; and so nothing was done, because our Culverin and Demi-Cannon, of which we had but three Pieces, were not sufficient to batter a defensible Rampart.

In our Retreat from both Breaches thro' a narrow Lane, many of our Men were wounded; and the Insuccessfulness of our Attempt may chiefly be attributed to the fall of the Tower, which hindred our Men from proceeding in that Attack, whereby they might doubtless have taken the Town, because the Enemy had made but little Defence there where they did not expect to be assaulted.

The next Day the General hearing by a Prisoner that was brought him, that *Conde de Andrada* had assembl'd an Army of eight Thousand at *Puente de Burges*, six Miles from us, and that they were suddenly to be increas'd with a greater Army that was coming to 'em, and were to march either to relieve the *Groyne*, or to hinder our imbarking by encamping near the Place, or to hinder the Excursions of our Men into the Country, who brought us in great Store of Provisions: The General, I say, hearing of this Army, resolv'd the next Day to visit 'em, against whom he carry'd but nine Regiments, leaving the other five with General *Drake* for the Guard of the Cloyster and Artillery. The next Day being the 6th. of *May*, our Army march'd in three Bodies, and Captain *Middleton* having given the first Charge, was seconded by Captain *Wingfield*, who beat 'em from place to place, till they fled to a Stone-Bridge over a Creek of the Sea: On the further side of which the Enemy's Camp was strongly intrench'd. Nevertheless Sir *Edward Norris* at the Head of the Pikes, with divers others pass'd over the Bridge to the further end of it, which was barricado'd with Barrels: But they who should have guarded it, seeing our proud Approach forsook the Barricade, where Sir *Edward* entred, and charging the first he met, with too much eagerness, he fell and was wounded with a Sword, as were also several other Gentlemen that accompanied him; yet were they so well seconded by the General, that the Enemy's bravest Men being destroy'd, the whole Army was put to flight, whom our Men chas'd for three Miles in four sundry Ways that they took. We took the Standard with the *King's Arms*, and kill'd as many as two thousand Men could reach in the Pursuit: Besides a great many that were dispatch'd in Vineyards and Hedges, and two hundred that our Men put to the Sword in a Cloyster. After the Battle was over, our General sent the Van-Guard one way, and the Body of the Army another way into the Country, of which you might have seen more than three Miles in compass all on fire. On our Side only one Captain and one private Soldier were kill'd, and several wounded. There was found in the Camp good Store of Ammunition and Victuals, some Plate and rich Apparel. Our Seamen also landed in an Island next adjoyning to our Ships, where they burnt and spoil'd all they found. After this we return'd to the *Groyne*, and the next Day was spent in Shipping our Artillery that was landed, and the rest taken at the *Groyne*, and at our Departure we set fire to every House in the Lower Town, and to all the Rooms in the Cloyster.

The next Day being the 8th. of *May*, we imbark'd our Army without loss of a Man, which we could not have done, if we had not defeated the Enemy at *Puente de Burges*. And having put off from thence, we had the Wind so contrary, that we could not under four Days recover the *Burlings*, in which Passage the Earl of *Essex* with his Forces came into the Fleet: For tho' he had put off with the same Wind from *Falmouth* with which we left *Plymouth*, yet not knowing, it seems, where we were to land, he had been as far as *Cadiz*, and sail'd up and down about the South *Cape*, where he took some Ships laden with Corn, which he brought in to us.

The 16th. Day we landed at *Piniche* in *Portugal* under the shot of the Castle, more than a Mile from the Town, and many were in danger of drowning by the greatness of the Wind, which overturn'd one Boat wherein twenty five Men perish'd. Five Companies of *Spaniards* sallied out of the Town against us: But the Earl of *Essex* having landed two Troops, left one to go by the Water-side, while he led the other over the Sand-hills; which the Enemy seeing, drew theirs likewise further in to Land now to encounter us. But that they might have a speedier Passage by flight, which yet they perform'd in such sort, that being charg'd by ours, they stood it till they came to push off Pike, and kill'd one of our Captains. The Enemy being fled further than we had reason to follow 'em, all our Companies were drawn to the Town, which being unfortify'd was presently taken; and the same Night the Castle being summon'd, was surrender'd by the Governor, upon Assurance given him, that *Don Antonio* was landed. We found in the Castle about a hundred Muskets and Pikes, and twenty Barrels of Powder, which *Don Emmanuel* had furnish'd his *Portugals* withal; and here we rested one Day, and some *Friars* and other poor Men came to their new King, and promis'd, that in two Days he should have a Supply of Horse and Foot for his Assistance from the Neighbouring Country. 1589

Here it was resolv'd that the Army should march over Land to *Lisbon* under General *Norris*, and that General *Drake* should meet him there in the River with the Fleet: And in this March one of our Men having broke open a House for Pillage, was hang'd, which Example restrain'd the rest from doing the like. That Night we lodg'd at *Lorinha*, and next Day came to *Torres Vedras*, where we took Possession of the Town and Castle, being desested by the Enemy. Here we were in great want of Victuals, but the King being told of it, took care to provide better for our Army.

The 3d. Day we lodg'd at three several Villages, and in this March Captain *Turk* made Trial of the Enemies Horse, by breaking thro' two hundred of 'em with forty, and one of his Corporals by charging with eight Horses thro' forty of 'em, who stay'd no longer than they could make away from 'em. The next Day we march'd to *Lores*, where we expected to meet with the Enemy, who shew'd themselves upon an Hill, but they retir'd. But General *Drake*'s Regiment having lodg'd that Night about a Mile nearer the Enemy, they came down upon it, crying, *Viva el Rey don Antonio*, whereupon they were kindly receiv'd by our young Soldiers; but having got within the Guard, they fell to cutting of Throats. This occasion'd an Alarm to be given, which brought down two of the next Companies, who fell upon 'em and drove 'em away with the loss of several of their Men, after they had kill'd fourteen of ours, and wounded six or seven.

Next Day we lodg'd at *Alvelana* about three Miles from *Lisbon*, where many of our Men were poyson'd by drinking standing Waters: And the Earl of *Essex* having laid an Ambuscade of about a thousand Men, allarm'd the Enemy, but they did not issue forth.

May the 25. we came to the Suburbs of *Lisbon*, where Captain *Wingfield* scour'd the Streets with thirty Musketeers, and met with none but old Folks and Beggers crying up the new King. We disposed of our Van-Guard and Rere-Ward in convenient Places, who kept Guard that Night, and the main Battle stood in Arms all Night in a Field near to *Alcantara*: But our Men being weary with their marching and watching, fell a-sleep, of which the Enemy having notice, sallied out and fell upon us, but chiefly on Colonel *Bret*'s Quarter, who having rous'd his Men and rally'd 'em as soon as he could, made Head against 'em, and he with two other Captains perish'd in the Encounter: But the Enemy met with so warm a Reception, both here and in our Quarters, that they were suddainly put to flight, in which the Earl of *Essex* chas'd 'em to the Gates of the Town, and they lost many of their best Commanders: Many of 'em also that fled into Houses for shelter were slain by our Men; so that their Loss was triple to ours, both for Quality and Quantity.

During our March to this Place, General *Drake* with the Fleet was come to *Cascais*, and possess'd the Town without any Resistance; but many of the Inhabitants fled into the Mountains, till a *Portugal* Pilot sent by General *Drake*, upon promise of kind Treatment, provided they would accept their King, and furnish Necessaries to the Army, persuaded 'em to return, which they gladly offer'd to do by two of their Chief Men. But as our Fleet was casting Anchor, a Ship from *Brasil* coming into the same Road, was by a Pinace or two of ours forc'd upon the Rocks, where all the Men escap'd, and the Lading being Sugars was spoil'd by the Salt-Water: And as we sail'd thither, we took some Ships off the Port of *Portugal*, sent from thence, and fifteen others laden with Men and Victuals to *Lisbon*.

The

1589 The next Day General *Norris* conſulted with all his Colonels, whether it would be more expedient to tarry here and wait for the *Portugal* Horſe and Foot the King had promis'd to ſend, and to bring hither the Artillery and Ammunition that was left at our Ships; or whether it were better to march away preſently, rather than wait for the promis'd Recruits, of which there was little Appearance. Some Colonels were of one Opinion and ſome of another: But the General being willing to cut off all occaſion of Blame that might be laid upon him, reſolv'd to wait for the Performance of the King's Promiſe, that he ſhould have that Night three thouſand of his Country-men. But after two Nights ſtay at *Lisbon*, the King could not with all his Horſe make a Cornet of forty, nor with his Foot furniſh two Enſigns, tho' he had aſſur'd the General, that upon his firſt landing there would be a Revolt of his Subjects. The General therefore ſeeing it was in vain to depend any longer upon his Promiſes, and that by ſtaying longer he might engage himſelf ſo far as he could not with Honour come off again, againſt a Town well fortify'd, wherein there were more Soldiers than we had to aſſault it withal, gave Order to the Army to march out of the Town, having appointed two Captains to guard the Rear, in caſe the Enemy ſhould attack 'em which they did not; and ſo we march'd the firſt Night to *Caſcais*. Had we march'd thro' his Country as Enemies, our Army had been well ſupply'd with all ſorts of Proviſions; or had we plunder'd the Suburbs of *Lisbon*, we had made our ſelves the richeſt Army that ever came out of *England*, for beſides the Wealth of private Houſes there were many great Ware-Houſes by the Water-ſide, full of all ſorts of rich Merchandize; but we were reſtrain'd from both theſe. As we travel'd along the River-ſide the Gallies ſhot at us, but did us little harm, and the Horſe Men follow'd us afar off, and cut off the ſick Men for whom we had no Carriage. After we had ſtay'd two Days at *Caſcais*, we had Intelligence by a Fryar, that the Enemy was marching towards us, and was come as far as St. *Julian*, which News was ſo welcom to the Generals, that each of 'em promis'd to give the Meſſenger a hundred Crowns if it were true: And to provoke 'em to fight, the Earl of *Eſſex* ſent a Meſſenger with a Cartel to the General of the Army, wherein he challeng'd him to meet him next Morning with his Army, and to try the Juſtice of their Cauſe by a Battle, or to fight himſelf with any one that was of his Quality, or to fight with ten Men againſt an equal Number of theirs to try their Fortunes. Accordingly the General march'd the next Morning to the Place where they had been encamp'd with his Army; but found they had fled away in the Night-time, and the Trumpet who follow'd 'em to *Lisbon*, was threaten'd to be hang'd for bringing ſuch a Meſſage, tho' they durſt not do it, for fear of our taking Reprizals upon the Priſoners we had of theirs. After this our Army ſummon'd the Caſtle of *Caſcais* to yeild, which the Governor promis'd to do, after we had ſhot off five or ſix Cannon; but he ſurrender'd after the firſt Tire was diſcharg'd, and Capitulated to march off with his Baggage and Arms, tho' he might have held out much longer, having ſixty five Soldiers well provided with all Neceſſaries. We put one Company into it, till the Artillery was all taken out, and then our Army imbark'd ſafely, which otherwiſe we could not have done. 1596

During the time we lay in the Road, our Fleet fetch'd in about ſixty Hulks of *Dantzick*, *Stetin*, &c. laden with *Spaniſh* Goods and going for *Lisbon*, into which our Men that before were in Fly-boats were put, and the Fly-boats ſent home with an Offer of Corn to the Value of their hire: But the Wind being fair for *Rochel*, they choſe rather to loſe the Corn than the Wind, and ſo departed: And with 'em the General ſent his Horſes to be tranſported from *Rochel* to *England*.

On the 2d. of *June* we imbark'd all our Army, and on the 6th. the Earl of *Eſſex* upon receipt of Letters from her Majeſty by them that brought us Victuals, preſently departed for *England*. About this time four or five Ships were ſent to *Peniche* to fetch away the Companies left there; but Captain *Barton* having receiv'd Letters from the Generals over Land, was departed before, being unable by the Enemies coming thither, either to bring away the Artillery or all the Men; for he was no ſooner gon than the Enemy took poſſeſſion of the Town and Caſtle, and ſhot at our Ships as they came into the Road. And the 12 Gallies which lay in the River of *Lisbon* and durſt not attempt us, when we lay by 'em at St. *Julian*, being now joyn'd by nine more, upon our Departure fell in with our Fleet and ſeiz'd a Bark, and two Hulks that had ſtraggled from the other Ships, which we could not get up to relieve, by reaſon of a great Calm, tho' they fought ſo long that we judg'd the Enemy muſt needs ſuffer great Loſs.

From that Day to the 19th. of *June*, according to our General's Direction, we ſteer'd to *Bayon*, where Admiral *Drake* put in alſo, and paſs'd up the River more than a Mile above *Vigo*.

The next Day we landed all our fighting Men, which were not above two Thouſand (having left many on board) and with 'em we imbark'd to the Town of *Vigo*, where Captain *Wingfield* entred with a Troop on one ſide, and General *Drake* on the other; but tho' every Street's end was ſtrongly barricado'd, all but one Man abandon'd the Town, and fled to *Bayon*, our Vice-Admiral with ſome Ships lying cloſe before the Town to batter it with Artillery. In the Afternoon three hundred of our Men burnt a Village between *Vigo* and *Bayon*, call'd *Borſis*, and all the Houſes and Corn in the Country for the ſpace of ſeven or eight Miles. Next Morning two Troops were ſent into *Vigo* to ſet all the Houſes in it on fire, after which we imbark'd again.

After this General *Drake* having put to Sea with twenty of the beſt Ships, to ſee if he could meet with the *Indian* Fleet, General *Norris* with the reſt directed his Courſe for *England*, and on *July* the 2d. arriv'd at *Plymouth*, where he found General *Drake* and all the Queen's Ships, with many of the others, but not all, ſome having put in with their Hulks into other Ports to make their private Advantage by 'em.

An Abſtract of a Voyage to Cadiz, *and the taking of it by the* Engliſh *Fleet in* 1596.

CAdiz had been in the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh* for the ſpace of two hundred and two Years, from the time of *Edward* the III. who took it *An.* 1346. But after that it was firſt taken by the *French* in the Days of Q. *Mary*, and then by the *Spaniard* in *April* 1596. Whereupon Q. *Elizabeth* reſolv'd to ſend a Fleet under the Command of the Earl of *Eſſex*, and the Lord *Howard* High-Admiral of *England*, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Lord *Warden*, beſides many others, both *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who joyn'd with 'em in this Expedition.

Before they departed from *Plymouth* they Printed a Manifeſto, ſhewing the juſt and urgent Cauſes why the Queen at this time ſet forth ſo great a Navy, and threatning all Nations which ſhould any way aſſiſt the *Spaniard* againſt 'em: And then having got all things ready, on the 1ſt. of *June* they put to Sea, with one hundred and fifty Sail of Ships, or thereabouts; and coming to the *North-Cape* we call'd a ſelect Council, by hanging out a Flag of the Arms of *England*; and many Letters of Inſtruction were ſent to every Captain of a Ship, which they were requir'd not to open upon pain of Death, unleſs they happen'd to be ſeparated from the reſt by a Storm; but if they fell into the Enemy's hand, ſeal'd as they were, ſhould be thrown into the Sea. Beyond the *North-Cape* of St. *Vincent* two of our Ships fought three *Hamburgers* and took 'em; and on the 18th. we took an *Iriſh-Man*, who came from *Cadiz*, and told us, there were many Ships at *Cadiz*; that eighteen or nineteen Gallies were ready, among which was the *Philip* of *Spain*. On the 20th. we came to *Cadiz*, where we met with ſome tall Ships coming out of the Bay attended by the Gallies, which kept cloſe to the Town, Caſtle and Forts, and that Day we did nothing but ſalute one another with ſome great Guns: But on the 21ſt. we ſet upon the Ships being fifty nine, attended with nineteen or twenty Gallies, as they were coming out of the Mouth of the Bay of *Cadiz* towards *Puente de Suaro* on *Granada* Side.

The

1596 The Enemy seem'd to have the advantage of us from the straitness of the Place, and the situation of the Bay; for tho' it is very large, so that from *Cadiz* to *Port St. Maries* is 6 or 7 *English* Miles over; yet there are so many Rocks, Sands and Shallows in it, that there is not above two or three Miles Sea-room for Ships of any great Burden, but they must either run aground, or fall foul upon one another. But notwithstanding this our Generals order'd the Vice-Admiral, the Lord *Howard*, and the Rear-Admiral, *Sir Walter Raleigh*, with some others to give the onset, whom the Generals themselves with others should second: And the Fight growing hot, the Earl of *Essex* on *Port St. Maries* side, thrust himself among the foremost; and the other General perceiving that he could not come near in his great Ship for want of Water, put himself in a Pinnace, where he continued till the Battle was ended. The Fight was terrible on all sides, and the event was doubtful till about two a Clock in the Afternoon, when the *Philip*, in which they trusted most, began to yield, and her Men hastned a-shore, having fir'd the Ship. Presently after two other great Ships were set on Fire, and then the rest of the Ships ran aground as far as they could, two of them were taken and boarded by our Men, but the rest at the Bridge *Puente de Suaro* so shelter'd themselves, that our Ships could not come at them.

The Ships were richly furnish'd, being bound either for the *Indies* or for *Lisbon*, insomuch that for the Redemption of them we were offer'd two Millions and a half of Ducats. In this cruel Fight we had not above 100 of our Men either killed or wounded, tho' divers of our Ships were shot thro' and thro'. We lost also a Pinnace which was burnt with the *Philip*, when we thought to board her, but all the Men were sav'd. But one of the *Fleming* Fly-Boats was unfortunately blown up with its own Powder, in which we suppose there were no fewer than 100 Men, who were all lost except seven or eight, who were sav'd by the help of some other Ships.

Immediately after this Victory at Sea, the Earl of *Essex* landed about three thousand Soldiers, whereof one half was sent to the Bridge *Puente de Suaro*; and with the other half the Earl himself with several other Lords march'd on Foot toward the Town of *Cadiz*, whom the Enemy stood ready to receive without the Town, having a great number of Horse and Foot. But the Earl and his Troops run towards them with such unspeakable Courage and swiftness, that in less than an Hour the Horse were put to flight, the Leader being struck down at the first Encounter; and the Foot being frighted with the *English*-men's fierce Attack, retir'd with all haste into the Town. After this our Men with invincible resolution scal'd the Walls, and in half an Hours time beat off the Enemy, and possess'd themselves of the Wall; and then having display'd the *English* Colours upon it, they march'd thro' the Town with Sword and Musquet, fighting his way at every turn, wherein he was seconded by my Lord *Howard*, who joyn'd the Earl with his Companies, and gave him the best assistance he could. And when they came to the Market-place, there was a hot Skirmish, in which Sir *John Wingfield* was slain: But before eight a Clock that Night, the Generals were Masters of the Market-place, the Forts, and the whole Town; only the Castle held out, to which they sent a Message, that if they did not surrender it the next Morning, they should all be put to the Sword; but before break of Day they hung out a Flag of Truce, and yielded themselves to their Mercy. After this Surrender, Proclamation was made to forbear all manner of Cruelty and Violence to Man, Woman or Child, which was strictly observ'd by the *English*, tho' they had the Spoil of some part of the Town for certain Days. 1596

In the mean time the next Day being the two and twentieth of *June*, all the Ships that had run aground in the Bay of *Cadiz*, were by the *Spaniards* themselves set on Fire, and about three Days after, the Gallies that run aground at *Puente de Suaro*, put to Sea, and escap'd to *Rota* near *St. Luca's*.

Cadiz is a beautiful and large and very strong Town, the Buildings are all of hard Stone, flat-roof'd at top, on which were great Heaps of Stones pil'd up, which the Women might throw down upon such as walk'd the Streets, which are generally very narrow. It had in it 4000 Foot and 600 Horse at least, well provided with all Necessaries. We may guess at the Wealth of the Town by the goodly Furniture that was defac'd, and the great quantity of Spices and Raisins left by the Soldiers, as not worth carrying away.

We show'd great Respect to the Religious Men and Women, and transported them in convenient Barks, and more then a hundred Gentlewomen and Merchants with several Suits of Apparel, and many Jewels and Chains. After this above sixty Gentlemen were Knighted, and Divine Service being read in the Abbey, the Bishop of *Cusco*, whom we had taken Prisoner in one of the Ships going to the *Indies* was releas'd without any Ransom. And 32 *Turks*, who had been a long while Gally-slaves, having made an Escape at the time of the Sea-fight, petition'd our Admirals, who were pleas'd to Cloth them, furnish them with Mony, and give them a Bark and Pilot to convey them safe to *Barbary*.

The 28th Day our Admiral wrote Letters to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, for the deliverance of *English* Captives who serv'd at the Gallies, of whom 39 were releas'd on the fifth of *July*, some whereof had been there six Years, some Eight or Ten. But on the fourth of *July* the Town of *Cadiz* was set on Fire and defac'd as much as could be, and all the Provision for Shipping which we could not either carry away, or had no occasion for, was destroy'd.

The true Reason why *Port St. Maries*, *Xeres* and *Rota* were not attack'd, was because we believ'd there was no Wealth left in them, and they might have prov'd a Trap and a Snare.

As to the Taking and Burning of *Faraon* in *Portugal* as we were returning Home, the Account of that Action may be better given by one that was present at it. But 'tis certain, that the taking of *Cadiz* so terrified the neighbour Towns, that the Inhabitants fled out of them, and *St. Luca* had been easily taken, if a few Ships had assaulted it; and that 18 *Spanish* Ships coming from the *Indies*, were taken by the *English*, being very wealthy.

An Abstract of the Relation of the barbarous Proceedings of the Dutch *against the* English *at* Amboyna. *Publish'd by the* English East-India *Company.*

AFter several fruitless Treaties between the *Dutch* and *English*, at last all matters relating to Trade and Commerce, and any Differences between their two *East-India* Companies, were fully setled by the Treaty made in, 1619. by which it was agreed, that the *Dutch* should enjoy 2 Thirds of the Trade in the Isles of the *Molucco's* *Banda* and *Amboyna*, and the *English* the other Third; and that the charge of maintaining the Forts should be levied upon the Merchandise by an equal Tax. But not long after the *English* who liv'd in a House of their own at *Amboyna*, under the protection of the *Dutch* Castle, complain'd, that they were not only put to unnecessary Expences in building their Forts, which were brought to the common Accompt; but that the *Dutch* paid the Garrisons with the Victuals and Cloath of *Coromandel*, which they put off to the Soldiers at three or four times the Value, which was not allow'd to the *English*, who were oblig'd to pay their part in ready Mony, which amounted to more than two thirds of the whole Charge, instead of one third which was their due. These Complaints were first sent to the Council of Defence of both Nations at *Jaccatra* in *Java Major*, who not agreeing, sent them over into *Europe*, to be decided by both Companies here, or in default of their Agreement, by the King's Majesty and the States General, according to an Article of the Treaty in 1619. In the mean time these Differences still continued and encreas'd, until a Sword was found to cut the Knot asunder which could not be otherwise unty'd. And this hapned after the following manner.

About the 11th of *February* 1622. a *Japonese* at *Amboyna* walking in the Night upon the Wall ask'd a *Dutch*

1623 a *Dutch* Sentinel some Questions about the strength of the Castle, and the People that were in it, which he had reason to do, that he might understand the course of their Watches, and the strength of the Aid he might expect, if any sudden attempt should happen in his Quarter, where he served the *Dutch* upon occasion as a Soldier. Yet the *Dutch* who wanted a Pretence to make a Plot, laid hold of this opportunity to wreek their Malice upon the *English*, and having apprehended the *Japoneſe* put him to the Torture, and extorted from him a Confession that himself and others of his Country-men, by the instigation of the *English*, had contriv'd to take the Castle: Whereupon other *Japoneſe* were also examin'd and tortur'd, as also a *Portugueſe*, the Guardian of the Slaves under the *Dutch*, which lasted three or four Days. During this Examination the *English* went freely to the Castle, heard of their Accusation and Torture, but being conscious of their own Innocence never offered to fly. At the same time *Abel Price*, Surgeon to the *English*, being a Prisoner in the Castle for offering to set a *Dutch* House on Fire in his Drunkenness, was told that the *Japoneſe*, whom they shew'd him most grievously tortur'd, had confeſs'd that the *English* had conspir'd with them to take the Castle on New Years Day 1623. and that if he would not confeſs, they would use him as bad or worse than the *Japoneſe*. Whereupon having given him the torture, he quickly confeſs'd whatever they ask'd him, on *February* 15th 1622. And the same Day they sent for Captain *Towerſon* and the rest of the *English* that were in the Town, who came all save one to the Governors, who told them they were accus'd of a Conspiracy to surprize the Castle, and were to remain Prisoners till further Trial. After this they presently seiz'd him who was left at home in the House, took the Merchandize of the *English* Company into their Custody by Inventory, and seiz'd all the Chests, Boxes, Books, Writings and other things in the *English* House. Captain *Towerſon* was committed to his Chamber with a Guard of *Dutch* Soldiers, *Emanuel Tomſon* was kept Prisoner in the Castle, and the rest being seven, were sent aboard the *Dutch* Ships riding in the Harbour, and all made fast in Irons. The same Day the Governor sent to the two lesser Factories in the same Isle, and apprehended *Colſon*, *Clark* and *Sharrock* at *Hitto*, and *Coſtins*, *Webber* and *Sadler* at *Larica*, and they were all brought Prisoners to *Amboyna February* 16th, on which Day three more were apprehended at *Cambello*, and three more at *Lobo*, two little Factories of the *English*, and brought in Irons to *Amboyna*, *February* the 20th.

Having thus extorted by Torture from the *Japoneſe* and others a Confession, or rather Declaration of what they knew to be false, they proceeded in the next place to Torture the *English* whom they had seiz'd to make them confeſs themselves and one another to be guilty of this pretended Conspiracy. The manner of their Torture was as follows: They first hois'd him up that was tortur'd by the Hands upon a large Door, where they made him fast upon two Staples of Ivory, at the top of the Door-posts, with his Hands stretch'd out as wide as they could endure; then his Feet being rais'd two Foot from the Ground, they stretch'd them out as far as they could, and fasten'd them to the Door on each side. After this they bound a Cloth about his Neck and Face so close, that little or no Water could go by, and then pour'd the Water softly upon his Head until the Cloth was full up to the Mouth and Nostrils, and somewhat higher, so that he could not draw Breath, but he must suck in the Water, which being still continu'd to be pour'd in softly, forc'd his inward Parts, came out of his Nose, Ears and Eyes, and many times so stifled him and took away his Breath, that he fell into a swooning Fit, which as soon as they perceiv'd they quickly took him down, and made him Vomit up the Water. But after he was a little recover'd, they drew him up again, and pour'd in the Water as before, still taking him down as soon as he seem'd to be stifled. In this manner they handled him three or four several times with Water, till his Body was swell'd twice or thrice as big as before, his Cheeks were like great Bladders, and his Eyes star'd out beyond his Fore-head; and if he would not accuse himself and others of this Conspiracy after all this Torture, as several of them did not, then they hoisted him up again as before, and burnt him with lighted Candles in the bottom of his Feet, until the Fat dropping put out the Candles, and then applied fresh Lights unto him. They burnt him also under the Elbows, on the Palms of the Hands, and under the Armpits, until his inward Parts might plainly be seen: And after he was thus wearied and overcome with Torments; if he did not make any Confession of himself, they propos'd to him leading Questions of their own framing, to which he answer'd yea; and this was taken for his Confession, and produc'd as Evidence against himself and others, tho' he deny'd it upon Oath before and after the Torture. But to finish their barbarous Torture. The poor Man who had been thus Martyr'd, was carried away to a Dungeon, where he lay five or six Days without any Surgeon to dress him, until his Flesh being putrified, great Maggots dropt and crept from him in a most loathsom and noysom manner. 1623

Of the *English* that were examin'd, some endur'd this Torture by Fire and Water to the last extremity, before they were forc'd to confeſs what they never knew, as Mr. *Thomſon*, *Johnſon*, *Collins* and *Clark*: others endur'd the Torture of Water for an Hour or two, before they could be brought to accuse themselves and others of this pretended Conspiracy, as Mr. *Brown*, *Collins*, *Wetheral*, *Fardo*, &c. Others being terrified with the fear of the Torture, which produc'd dreadful Effects in others, chose rather to confeſs all they were ask'd, or to devise a Lye to save themselves from Torment: But most of them at the time of the Examination, before or after the forc'd Confession of a design to seize the Castle, declar'd and protested their Innocence and the Falshood of all they had said in accusing others of a Conspiracy, as Mr. *Collins*, *Sharrock*, &c. and so Mr. *Colſon*, *Grigs* and *Fardo*, being brought to confront Captain *Towerſon* (who deeply protested his Innocence) fell down upon their Knees, and praying God to forgive them, declar'd that all they had said against him was false, and spoken only to avoid Torment. Tho' after that being threatned with the Torture, they then affirm'd their former pretended Confessions. In fine all the *English* that were condemned to Die (the rest being either acquitted or pardon'd by the Interest of some *Dutch* Friends) did after Sentence solemnly vow and protest, as they hop'd for Pardon and Salvation, that themselves and all whom they had charg'd were innocent of the Crime for which they Died. So Captain *Towerſon* at the end of a Bill writes, *That he was innocent of what was laid to his Charge, for which he was then to Die.* And *Grigs* who had accus'd him, writes in his Table-Book in the Name of himself, Mr. *Beaumont*, *Price* and *Brown*; That by extreme Torment they were constrain'd to say what they never meant, and take it upon their Death, that they died guiltless of the Accusation laid to their Charge. And *Samuel Colſon* writes, that upon his Salvation, as he hop'd for Redemption by the Death of Christ, he was clear of that Conspiracy for which he was to Die, neither did he know any *English* Man guilty thereof. And in another Writing he declares, That he did confeſs that, which as he hopes to be sav'd is not true (particularly against Captain *Towerſon*) being forc'd for fear of Torment, and that as he hopes for pardon of his Sins, he knows no more of this Business than the Child unborn: Dated *March* the 5th, subscrib'd with his Name. These Writings were preserv'd, but other Writings to the same purpose, particularly of Captain *Towerſon's*, who was observ'd to write much in Prison, were suppreſt by the *Dutch*; and his Examination and *Tomſon's* being kept apart, are not yet come to light.

On the 26th of *February*, when all the Prisoners were brought into the Hall of the Castle (except Captain *Towerſon* and Mr. *Tomſon*) to be prepar'd for Death, all the *Japoneſe* cry'd out, O ye *English*! when did we ever eat or talk with you? And the *English* answering, Why have you then accus'd us? The poor Men shew'd them their tortur'd Bodies, and said, *If a Stone were thus burnt, would it not change its Nature, how much more we that are Fleſh and Blood?* And when the *Dutch* Ministers came to the ten *English* in the Hall, exhorting them to make a true Confession, because they had but a short time to live, they still profeſs'd their Innocence, and pray'd they might receive the Sacrament, as a Seal of the Pardon of their Sins, and to confirm this their Profeſſion; and this was deny'd them. But when the Preacher told them the clearer they were of any guilt, the greater should be their Reward, Mr. *Colſon* gave him his Purse, and pray'd him to exhort the

1623 Governour (whom he freely forgave) to repent of this bloody Tragedy acted upon theſe innocent Souls. And all the reſt of the *Engliſh* ſignified their conſent to what he ſaid. And when Mr. *Fardo* charg'd them all as they will anſwer it at God's Judgment Seat, if any of them were guilty of this matter, to confeſs the Truth for ſatisfaction of the World: Mr. *Colſon* anſwer'd, *If I be guilty of it more or leſs, let me never be partaker of the Joys of Heaven*: At which Words, every one of the reſt cry'd out, *Amen for me, good Lord.* After this, each of them knowing whom he had accus'd, went one to another, begging Forgiveneſs for their falſe Accuſation, being extorted by the pains or fear of Torture; and they all freely forgave one another, for none was falſly accus'd, but himſelf had falſly Accus'd another. After this, they ſpent the reſt of the Night in Prayer, ſinging of Pſalms, and comforting one another, while the Dutch Guards offer'd them Wine, and bid them drink *luſtick*, and drive away Sorrow.

February 21, being the day of Execution, the Condemn'd Perſons firſt requeſted *John Powle*, and afterwards all that were Acquitted and Pardon'd, to bear Witneſs to their Friends in *England*, of their Innocency, and that they were meerly Murder'd by the *Dutch*, whom they pray'd God to forgive, and to have Mercy on their own Souls.

Being brought to the place of Execution, *Emanuel Tomſon* told the reſt, he did not doubt, but God would ſhew ſome ſign of their Innocence, and then every one of them ſeverally took it upon theirDeath, that they were utterly Guiltleſs, and ſo they cheerfully ſubmitted to the fatalStroke, *viz.* Mr. *Towerſon*, Agent of the Engliſh at *Amboyna*, Mr. *Colſon*, *Tomſon*, *Johnſon*, *Wetheral*, *Clarke*, *Grigs*, *Fardo*, *Price* and *Brown*. The *Portugueſe*, whoſe name was *Perez*, ſwore upon the Croſs, that he was Innocent; and the *Japoneſe*, being Nine in number, in their way, profeſs'd alſo their Innocence.

At the inſtant of the Execution, there aroſe a great Darkneſs with a ſtormy Wind and Tempeſt, whereby two of the Dutch Ships riding in the Harbour, were driven from their Anchors, and hardly ſav'd from the Rocks: And in a few days after, one *Dunckin*, (who told the Governor, that Mr. *Brown* had ſaid to him, he hop'd in ſix Months the Engliſh would have as much to do in the Caſtle as the Dutch) fell down on the Grave where all the Engliſh were Buried (except Mr. *Towerſon*) and having lain there a while, he roſe up again ſtark Mad, and ſo continued two or three days, and then died. Quickly after there was a new Sickneſs at *Amboyna*, which ſwept away about 1000 People, *Dutch* and *Amboyners*; in the ſpace wherein there did not uſually die above 30 at other times. Which Signs were by the Engliſh, referr'd to the Prediction of Mr. *Tomſon*; and by the Natives, interpreted as a token of God's Wrath for the barbarous Tyranny of the *Hollanders*. The next day, the new Dutch General ſent Mr. *Beaumont*, *Sharrock*, *Collins*, and *Webber*, the four that were Pardon'd, to ſeveral Factories, and diſpatch'd *Collins*, who was free'd by caſting Lots to *Faccatra*, whither Captain *Welden* having ſent three of them to other Places, he quickly after carried them all in a Pinnace.

The Narrative of theſe Proceedings is taken out of the Depoſitions of ſix *Engliſh* Factors, whereof four were Condemn'd and Pardon'd, and the other acquitted at *Amboyna*, being ſince their return into *England* examin'd upon Oath in the Admiralty-Court. And becauſe the *Dutch* defend themſelves by the Confeſſions of the Parties executed, I ſhall here put together ſeveral Circumſtances whereby the Innocence of the *Engliſh*, and the unjuſt Proceedings of the *Dutch* againſt them will plainly appear.

And Firſt, The *Japoneſe* being examin'd and tortur'd for three or four Days before the *Engliſh* were ſeiz'd, who knew on the firſt Day what was the Crime charg'd upon them, for which they were Tortur'd, the *Engliſh* had time enough, if they had been conſcious to themſelves of any guilt, to have made an Eſcape by the Curricurries or ſmall Boats of the Natives; but ſince they neither fled, nor attempted to flee in this Caſe, this is a ſtrong Preſumption, that they were as little privy to any Treaſon of their own, as ſuſpicious of any treacherous Deſign laid for their Blood.

2. Let us conſider how apparently impoſſible it was for the *Engliſh* to compaſs ſuch a Deſign of ſeizing the Caſtle of *Amboyna*: For in this Caſtle is a Garriſon of two or three hundred Men, and there are as many free Burgers in the Town; and durſt ten *Engliſh*, with as many *Japoneſe*, being all unarm'd, attempt a Place of ſo great Strength? What hopes could they have of Succeſs, eſpecially when in the *Engliſh* Houſe there was no more found, but three Swords, two Muſquets, and half a Pound of Powder, and the *Japoneſe* are not allow'd to have any Arms except a *Catan* or ſhort Sword. But ſuppoſe theſe twenty Perſons ſhould be ſo deſperate as to attempt the Caſtle, how ſhould they be able to maſter the *Dutch* in it, or to keep poſſeſſion of it when they had gotten it? Whom had they to ſecond them? There was neither Ship nor Pinnace in the Harbour; and there was not one *Engliſh*-man more, and not above twenty *Japoneſe* in the Iſland. The *Engliſh* at *Banda* who were neareſt, were forty Leagues from *Amboyna*, and thoſe were but Nine, who were all clear'd from any ſuſpicion of this pretended Crime. But on the other ſide, the *Dutch*, beſide the ſtrength of the Caſtle and Town of *Amboyna*, had three other ſtrong Caſtles in the ſame Iſle, and at *Cambello*, well furniſh'd with Soldiers; they had alſo in the Road at *Amboyna* eight Ships and Veſſels: And what a madneſs were it, for ſo few Perſons deſtitute of Arms, or any hope of Supplies, to attack a Caſtle ſo well provided with Arms and Men, and freſh Recruits of Forces ready to aſſiſt them. 1623

3. Suppoſe it were poſſible for the *Engliſh* to have overcome all theſe Difficulties, yet to what purpoſe ſhould they put themſelves in ſuch Danger? They knew that it was agreed between both Companies, that the Forts of the *Indies* ſhould remain in the Hands of thoſe that were poſſeſs'd of them at the date of the Treaty in 1619. and that his Majeſty is a Religious Obſerver of his Treaties with all the World; what then could they hope for as a Reward of the dangerous Exploit, but to be treated as diſturbers of the Peace between both Nations, as is provided in the Treaty.

4. Let them be as fooliſh as the *Dutch* would have them, yet who can believe that all of them ſhould be ſuch deſperate Villains and Hypocrites, as to deny at the time of their Examination, or after Sentence, that they ever knew of any ſuch Plot, and to affirm with moſt ſolemn Proteſtations their Innocence, and the falſhood of the Confeſſions and Accuſations which were extorted by the Fear or Pains of Torture; that they ſhould crave God's Mercy or Judgment according to their Innocence in this Cauſe, and deſire to receive the Sacrament in token of it. And Laſtly, that they ſhould all perſiſt in the ſame Mind to the laſt, profeſſing to their Country-men at parting with them, their Innocence, and ſealing thisProfeſſion with their laſt Breath and Blood, in the very Article of Death! what horrible Diſſimulation were this? If one or more had been ſo fearfully deſperate, yet 'tis incredible but there ſhould have been one who durſt not appeal to a future Judgment for his Innocence, or ſhould have relented at the laſt, when he ſaw there was no hopes of Mercy, and that he was inſtantly to give an Account of what he ſaid to the great Judge of the World; and it were ſtrange, that all the four *Japoneſe* and the *Portugueſe* ſhould all concur in the ſame Story, and not one confeſs the Truth at the laſt. But we find that at the time of Execution every one took it upon his Death that he was innocent.

The *Dutch* to colour this barbarous Proceeding pretend that the Governor dealt ſo impartially as to execute ſome of their own Country-men for the ſame Treaſon; which appears to be a mereSham, both by the Teſtimony of the ſix Witneſſes aforementioned, and of other credible Perſons lately come from theſe Parts; from all which I conclude that it was not any real Crime in the *Engliſh*, but the inſatiable Covetouſneſs of the *Dutch*, to gain the whole Trade of the *Moluccas*, *Banda* and *Amboyna* into their own Hands, (which they have now ſeiz'd) that was the Cauſe of this bloody Tragedy; a Tragedy ſo full of barbarous inhumanity to thoſe who liv'd in Partnerſhip and Amity with them, confirmed by a moſt ſolemn Treaty, that it is not capable of any Aggravation.

But becauſe the *Dutch* have endeavour'd to vindicate themſelves in a Declaration of their proceedings, at *Amboyna*, I ſhall briefly ſhew the weakneſs and falſhood of their Allegations which may ſerve to confirm further the truth of the Preceding Narrative.

And 1ſt. the Author of the ſaid Declaration alledges the great ſuſpicion there was of a Plot from the unwonted Inſolence of the *Ternatans* in the *Moluccoes* and *Amboyna*; for theſe in the *Moluccoes*, he ſays, had con-

1623 contrary to the Treaty in 1606. made with the *Dutch*, and without their knowledge, made Peace with the King of *Tedore*, and a Truce with the *Spaniard*: But how impertinently this is alledg'd to his preſent purpoſe of confirming the pretended Plot of the *Engliſh*, does plainly appear by the Journals of theſe Parts, which ſhew that this Treaty between *Ternate* and *Tedore* was in *November* 1621. *i. e.* fifteen Months before this forg'd Conſpiracy, and that it was diſſolv'd by the *Dutch* the ſeventh of *December* next, when an Edict was publiſh'd by the King of *Ternate*, commanding all the *Tedorians* to depart from his Iſle, upon pain of being made Slaves: After which, the *Dutch* contin'd in good correſpondence with the *Ternatans*, who communicated with them in the Triumphs of their Daily Exploits againſt the *Spaniards*, until after the Execution of the *Engliſh* at *Amboyna*, as may be prov'd by many particular Inſtances; ſo inſincere and impertinent is the Author in pretending a diffidence between the *Dutch* and the King of *Ternate*, and applying it to the Buſineſs of *Amboyna*.

The next point is, that the *Ternatans* in the *Molucco's* made a Truce with the *Spaniards*, without the knowledge of the *Dutch*, which is no leſs impertinent than the former Pretence; for it appears by the Journals that this Truce was made *July* the 19th 1623. which was five Months after the Execution of the *Engliſh*, and ſo can be no cauſe of ſuſpicion againſt them.

The next Suſpicion is rais'd from the Inſolence of the *Ternatans* of *Amboyna* dwelling at *Lobo* and *Cambello*, who ſlew ſome of the *Dutch*, and burnt two of their Houſes, one at *Lobo*, and another at *Manichels*, for which Injuries, when the *Dutch* crav'd reparation, they were brav'd by the *Ternatans* with a ſtronger Fleet. But this alſo appears to be a mere ſham pretence; for when the *Dutch* ſet forth their laſt Fleet, they were in good Terms with the *Ternatans* at *Lobo*, neither of the Factories here mention'd being then burnt or injur'd. 'Tis true the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* joyn'd together to retake an *Engliſh* Slave, who was fled and reſcu'd, and inſtead of Mr. *Beaumont* who was way-laid, a *Dutch* Servant was ſlain; but the next Day *Beaumont* was ſhot in the Hand by the Reſcuers, and Mr. *Grigs* had like to have been Kill'd, who retook the Slave; upon which occaſion both the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* left the Factory at *Lobo*, and ſo this could give no ſuſpicion to the *Dutch* againſt the *Engliſh*, that it was ſhortly after burnt by theſe *Ternatans*, and much leſs the burning of the other Factory at *Manichels*, which was done after the *Engliſh* were ſeiz'd, or the braving of the *Dutch* Fleet by the *Ternatans*, which was after the Execution of the *Engliſh*.

The laſt Suſpicion is this, That about this time the *Dutch* underſtood that theſe of *Lobo* and *Cambello* held ſecret Correſpondence with the *Engliſh*: But the Author gives no particular Proof of this matter; but there is plain Evidence to the contrary, from the burning of the *Engliſh* as well as *Dutch* Factories there, from their aſſaulting Mr. *Beaumont* and *Grigs*, and outraging our People as well as the *Dutch*: How then came they to underſtand this ſecret Correſpondence with the *Engliſh*; except it was by the Governor's Dreams, which as he told Mr. *Welden* and others were a motive to him to examine the firſt *Japoneſe*.

After this Preface of Suſpicion, the Auther ſets down the occaſion and manner of the Diſcovery of this pretended Plot, and then the Confeſſions of the *Japoneſe* and *Engliſh*. But he mentions no Preſumption why the firſt *Japoneſe* ſhould be put to the Torture, but only his Queſtions about ſetting and changing the Watch, and the number of Soldiers in the Caſtle, which he being a Soldier of their own had reaſon to put, that he might know the courſe of the Watches, and the aid he was to expect in caſe of a ſudden Attack, and this inquiry was no more a juſt Preſumption than the Dreams of the Governor. But he conceals what leading Queſtions were put to the *Japoneſe*, to make the Plot juſt as the *Dutch* had contriv'd it, and what other Anſwers they made before they were thus directed. I ſhall not now repeat what has been ſaid to prove the improbability, or rather impoſſibility of this prerended Plot, but conſider ſome Circumſtances in this *Dutch* relation of it, that are not in the *Engliſh*, that the Truth may the more clearly appear.

And Firſt it is alledg'd that *Abel Price* the *Engliſh* Barber was made uſe of as a Meſſenger to concert this Deſign with the *Japoneſe*; and 'tis true indeed he would Dice and Drink with them and the *Dutch* alſo. But is it credible, that Mr. *Towerſon* would entruſt a Matter of ſuch dangerous Conſequence to a drunken Sot, who had threatned to cut his Throat for chaſtiſing him; beſides, this relation makes *Price* ſay, that all the *Engliſh* Merchants in the out Factories were privy to this Plot, when the Governor found Mr. *Powle*, *Ramſey* and two others innocent. 1623

In the next place he hath enroll'd a goodly Army for executing this pretended Plot; for of the ten *Japoneſe* eight were to have been plac'd by two in a company at the four Points of the Caſtle, to kill all that ſhould reſiſt, and take the reſt Priſoners; which Project muſt ſuppoſe, that the three or four Hundred *Dutch* in the Caſtle would ſcorn to make any advantage of their Numbers, but would fight the *Japoneſe* by two at a time, and ſo give them leave to kill or take them. The other two *Japoneſe* were to have waited in the great Chamber to kill the Governor; yet this Relation ſays elſewhere, that this Plot ſhould have been executed when the Governor was abroad. Thus the *Japoneſe* were diſpos'd of within the Caſtle; but who ſhould have open'd the Gates to the *Engliſh* and their other Aids, who ſhould have kill'd the Court of Guard at the Gate? Theſe things muſt be done by thoſe that were without: And therefore let us take a View of the Army which the *Dutch* Relation has muſter'd up for this purpoſe, which is ſaid to conſiſt of fourteen *Engliſh*, whereof eleven were Merchants, beſides many *Engliſh* Saylors, Slaves and *Ternatans*. And firſt for the *Engliſh* Merchants, how skilful they are in taking Forts, is very well known; and how ill they were provided for ſuch a Deſign appears by what was found in the *Engliſh* Houſe when the *Dutch* ſeiz'd it, which was no more than three Swords, two hand Guns, and about half a Pound of Powder. But ſtill it is pretended, that the *Engliſh* Ships would have brought both fitter Men and better Proviſion. This were ſomething if they could tell us, how Mr. *Towerſon* knew that thoſe in the *Engliſh* Ships when they came would joyn with him in a Work ſo dangerous and contrary to the Treaty; why he did not delay the opening of the Plot till the Ships were come; and how he came to open the Plot to all the *Engliſh* at *Amboyna*, ſo long before the execution of it, and before he knew the Minds of his chief Aſſiſtants, of whoſe arrival he was uncertain. But ſay the *Dutch*, he was ſure of the Slaves of the *Engliſh*, and the *Ternatans* of *Lobo* with their *Curricurries*. This is the remainder of the Army. Now the Slaves of the *Engliſh* were juſt ſix, and all Boys, and the *Ternatans* were Enemies to the *Engliſh* as well as *Dutch*, as is already prov'd. And if there had been any ſuch aſſiſtance expected from the *Ternatans*, it muſt have been enquir'd after, and confeſs'd by one or other amidſt ſo many Tortures: But there is no ſuch Confeſſion in all the Examinations; and the truth is, the *Dutch* Governor knew well enough, that whatever had been confeſs'd in this Point, would not have been believ'd by their own People there, who knew the outrages committed by the *Ternatans* upon the *Engliſh* as well as *Dutch*.

As to the time of executing the Plot, the *Dutch* ſay it was not yet fix'd, but left to the next Meeting, which ſhould be ſhortly holden. This is a ſtrange Plot indeed! They met on *New-Years-Day*, and plotted, as is above related, and now it was the twenty fifth of *February*, and nothing is done all this while, not ſo much as a new Conſultation held, and this is ſaid to be confeſs'd by all the *Engliſh*. But as to Mr. *Towerſon*, the *Dutch* ſay, that at his Examination he confeſs'd, that if he had taken the Caſtle, he would have crav'd the aid of the *Engliſh* at *Jaccatra*, which if they granted, he would have held the Caſtle for the *Engliſh* Company; but if they deny'd him, he would have held it for himſelf, and he would have agreed with the *Indians* to aſſiſt him. And this alſo is a very ridiculous Pretence, for what hope could Mr. *Towerſon* have that the Preſident and *Engliſh* Council at *Jaccatra*, who live under the command of the *Dutch* Fort, and are ſubject to them, durſt joyn in any ſuch Action as might give the *Dutch* occaſion to Torture and Condemn them of Treaſon, eſpecially conſidering what Advantages they ſeek againſt the *Engliſh*, and how captious and zealous they are in all their Dealings with them, whereof there were many Inſtances well known to Mr. *Towerſon*: And that he ſhould keep the Caſtle for himſelf, and agree with the *Indians* for their help, is yet more improbable;

for

1623 for if the *Portugueſe* and *Indians* were not able to keep out the *Dutch* when they had no footing at *Amboyna*, how could twenty or thirty *Engliſh* and *Japoneſe*, without Ship or Pinnace, with the help of the naked *Indians*, be able to drive them out, when they have three Caſtles there well furniſh'd with Men and Arms, beſides their Naval Strength? And this Author confeſſes, that the *Indians* themſelves durſt not undertake any thing againſt the State of *Amboyna*, without the aid of ſome Nation of *Europe*: How then could Mr. *Towerſon* being forſaken by his own Nation, as the Caſe is here put, hold the Caſtle for himſelf by the help of thoſe *Indians*? And indeed to all that know the Power of the *Dutch* and weakneſs of the *Indians*, this will appear a mad Plot.

This Author inſiſts much on a ſaying of Mr. *Towerſon*'s after he was examin'd, who being upbraided by the Governor with the many Civilities receiv'd from him, anſwer'd with a deep Sigh, *Oh if this were to be begun again, it ſhould never be done!* which is atteſted by the *Dutch* Governor and five others: This, ſays the Author, was his voluntary Confeſſion made the Ninth of *March*, when the Plot was to be put in execution, after he was examin'd *February* the twenty eighth before. But 1ſt this pretended Confeſſion is not deliver'd upon the Credit of the Court or Council of *Amboyna*; but of the Governor and five other *Dutch* Men, the principal Actors of this bloody Tragedy. Secondly, Neither is the time nor place mention'd in their Certificate, where or when the Words were ſpoken, tho' this Author without any ground ſays, they were ſpoken the ninth of *March*; for they might be ſpoken on the Day when he was examin'd, and in the Place of Torture, and then they are no more voluntary, according to their own Law, than the Confeſſion made upon the Rack. But ſince he makes ſo much of this poor Circumſtance, which is deliver'd upon the Troth inſtead of the Oath of the Certifiers, 'tis a plain Argument that they wanted other good Proof: What, was there not a Letter or other Paper to be found in all the Cheſts and Boxes of the *Engliſh*, ſo ſuddenly ſeiz'd at *Amboyna*, *Larica*, *Hitto* and *Cambello*, to diſcover this Treaſon? Among ſo many Complices was there no falſe Brother to betray the reſt, and accuſe them voluntarily; but the Proceſs muſt begin with the Torture, without any juſt Preſumption; and the Heathens Confeſſion upon Torture, be ſufficient to bring Chriſtians to Torture, and the debauch'd and infamous *Price*'s Confeſſion muſt bring ſober and good Chriſtians to the Torture; tho' this Author owns, that *Price*'s Confeſſion was drawn from him by the Examiner's ſpecifying of Place, Perſons and Time to him.

But here is no particular of any one's Confeſſion but *Price*'s, *Towerſon*'s and all the reſt being blended together in one Body. Did not ſome of them confeſs more than the reſt? Where is *Sharrock*'s Confeſſion that he was at *Amboyna* on *New Years* Day, when ten or twelve of the *Dutch* witneſs'd, that he was at *Hitto*? Where is his Confeſſion of *Clark*'s Plot to go to *Macaſſar*, and deal with the *Spaniards* there? Where is *Collins*'s Confeſſion of another Plot about two Months and a half before his Examination, undertaken by himſelf and five more? Where be the leading Interrogatories, by which they were directed how to frame the Accuſation, leſt there ſhould be as many ſeveral Treaſons confeſs'd, as there were Perſons examin'd? Not a Word of all this, nor a great deal more of this kind, which are here prov'd by the Oath of credible Perſons, to have paſs'd in the Examinations.

As to the Formalities of the Proceſs the Author proves, that the States General are Sovereign in all Cauſes, Criminal and Civil, and can puniſh Treaſon with Death in their own Subjects and Servants, as theſe *Japoneſe* were: And then he adds, that the *Engliſh* were not apprehended upon the firſt Suſpicion, but after the joynt Confeſſion of the *Japoneſe*, that the *Engliſh* bir'd 'em to execute the Treaſon: But if the whole Proceſs was begun from the Confeſſion of one Perſon tortur'd without juſt Cauſe, which mov'd 'em to apprehend and torture another without other Evidence, tho' it brought forth more Confeſſions and other Circumſtances, yet it was againſt all the Laws about Tortures. But he ſays, ſome of the *Engliſh* confeſs'd without or before Torture, and to this Purpoſe he alledges, that *Price* was either not at all, or but very ſlightly tortur'd. But then he was ſhew'd the tortur'd Bodies of the poor *Japoneſe*, Martyr'd with Fire and Water; and told, that if he would not confeſs, he ſhould be tortur'd as bad, or worſe than they: and the fear of Torture is by their own Law equal'd to the Torture it ſelf, and conſequently the Confeſſion made upon that Fear, is no more an Evidence to bring another to Torture, than the Confeſſion made upon the Rack. 1623

Next as to the Juriſdiction of the *Dutch* Governor and Council at *Amboyna*, over the *Engliſh* there, by the thirtieth Article of the Treaty in 1619. 'tis expreſsly order'd, that all Diſputes which cannot be decided by the Council of Defence, ſhould be remitted into *Europe*, firſt to the two Companies there; and if they do not agree, to the King and States: Why then was not the Diſpute firſt referr'd to the Council of Defence, ſince there is nothing in the former Articles to hurt their Power? And this Article enlarges their Power to ſuch Caſes as were not before expreſsly provided for, as appears plainly by the Explanation of the Commiſſioners on both ſides agreed and ſubſcrib'd to in 1619. wherein this way of Proceeding is expreſsly directed, in all Matters happening in the common Abodes; and from the King's Declaration ſent to the States, that both Nations in the *Indies* ſhould lay aſide all Pretence of Sovereignty, which was by them accepted before this bloody Butchery was executed. But ſuppoſe the *Dutch* are abſolute Lords of their Partners the *Engliſh* in thoſe Parts, yet at leaſt they are bound to obſerve the Laws of the united Provinces. And do theſe allow to begin the Proceſs at the Torture, and to bring Perſons of honeſt Fame to the Rack upon others Confeſſion made in the Torture? Do their Laws allow of the leading Interrogatories above-mention'd, to direct the Priſoner what to ſay to avoid the Torture? Where in the united Provinces is the drowning with Water, or the Torture with Fire in uſe, that were us'd to ſeveral of the *Engliſh*? Where do they uſe to ſplit Mens Toes, lance their Breaſts, put in Gun-powder, and then ſet Fire to it? By which Torments *Clark* and *Tomſon* were both ſo mangl'd, that they were fain to be carry'd to the Execution, tho' they were tortur'd many Days before.

Laſtly their Confeſſions were contradictory, apparently falſe, and of things impoſſible to be done, and therefore ought not by their Law to have been believ'd, nor the Priſoners to have been condemn'd upon 'em, without other ſufficient Evidence beſides.

In the laſt Place, as to the Torture, he ſays, there was no Cruelty us'd in it, becauſe there is no mention of a cruel Torture in the Acts. But is it any Wonder, that the Authors of this barbarous Proceſs, who drew up the Acts, ſhould omit that which made againſt themſelves? It is to be preſum'd, that the Acts kept by the People at *Poloway* in *Banda*, have omitted many things of their Proceſs againſt the poor *Polaroons*, whom in *Auguſt* 1622. being about ſix Months before the Execution of the *Engliſh*, their Governor us'd much after the ſame manner as the Governor of *Amboyna* did the *Engliſh*, of which I ſhall give a ſhort Account, to ſhew the merciful Diſpoſition of the *Dutch*, which this Author boaſts of.

Polaroon, one of the Iſles of *Banda*, being poſſeſs'd by the *Engliſh* at the time of the Treaty 1619. was to remain in their Hands: But after this Treaty came to the *Indies*, the *Dutch* would not ſuffer it to be Publiſh'd in the Iſles of *Banda*, till they had taken *Polaroon*. But knowing that it muſt be reſtor'd again, according to the Treaty, they take care to demoliſh the Buildings, tranſplant the Nutmeg-Trees to their own Iſles of *Nera* and *Poloway*, and at laſt find a means to diſpeople it, that ſo it might be of no uſe to the *Engliſh* worth the Charge of keeping it; which was upon this Occaſion. A young Man of *Polaroon* having comitted Felony, for which he was to die by the Law, to ſave his Life fled to another Iſle of *Banda*, and there turn'd Chriſtian: But underſtanding that would not ſave him, he fled to *Nera*, another Iſle where the *Dutch* have a Fort, and told the *Dutch* Governor, that the *Orankeys*, or Gentlemen of *Polaroon*, had contriv'd to maſſacre the *Dutch* at *Polaroon* and *Poloway*, with the help of the People of *Saran*, that ſhould ſend over thirty Curricurries for that purpoſe. Immediately upon the diſcovery of this Malefactor, certain Fiſher-Boats of the *Polaroons* were ſeiz'd, and the People made Priſoners, and an Order was ſent by the *Dutch* Governor to *Polaroon*, that all the *Orankeys* ſhould come over to him: whereupon the Prieſt of the *Polaroons* and ſeventy *Orankeys* inſtantly took a Prow, or ſmall Veſſel, and imbark'd for *Poloway*. And as they were at Sea, being met by

Captain Smith's Birth and Education

His firſt Travels and Return.

Goes to France and is rob'd.

by a Fisher-Boat of *Bandanese*; they were told how all the rest were apprehended, and that if they went to *Poloway* they were all but dead Men. Nevertheless the Priest and the rest, tho' they might easily have escap'd to *Seran* and other Places of safety; yet being Conscious of their own Innocency, would go to *Poloway* to purge themselves. Where as soon as they were arriv'd, they were carried Prisoners to the Castle, whither the Governor with a Force of 200 Men brought all the rest of the *Orankeys* that were at *Polaroon*. As soon as they were come they were presently brought to the Torture of Fire and Water, as was done to the *English* at *Amboyna*, but with this difference, that Two of these who were Tortur'd at *Poloway*, died in the Tortures, and the rest being 162 were all upon their own forc'd Confessions Condemn'd and Executed. When the Priest came to the Place of Execution, he spoke to the People in the *Malayan* Tongue, *All ye Great and Small, Black and White, look to it, we have Committed no Fault.* And when he would have Spoken more, he was taken by the Hands and Feet, laid along, and Cut in Two by the Middle with a Sword. And immediately the Governor caus'd the Wives, Children and Slaves of those of *Polaroon* to be Transplanted into other Isles subject to the *Dutch*, and so clear'd the Country of all the Natives, without whom neither the *English* nor *Dutch* can maintain their Trade in the *Indies*: And indeed 'tis no wonder that they use so little Justice and Moderation, since few of their Fiscals and the rest of the Country know any thing of Law, being for the most part very young Men, and lew'd, drunken and debauch'd Persons: And yet these must be Judges as well of our *English* as the *Indians* there.

The Author endeavours to justify their Proceedings from the Law of *England*, which orders Men to be press'd to Death, which he saith is much more cruel then any Torture us'd by them. But this Argument is wholly impertinent, for no Man in *England* is press'd for not confessing, which is the Cause of Torture in *Dutchland*, but because he refuses to be try'd by his Country, and challenges the Judges as incompetent. Yet no Man blames them for proceeding according to the Law of their Country, when they break the Legs and Arms of Malefactors, and then set them upon a Wheel on the end of a great Pole, there to languish to Death, which is a much more painful and dreadful Death than the *English* way of pressing them, which puts them suddenly out of pain, and is so seldom us'd. The Author pretends indeed that little or no Torture was us'd in this Process against the *English*, because the Officers of *Amboyna* have conceal'd it. But shall we not believe those who have suffer'd it themselves? Or being themselves acquitted, yet heard the Cries and saw the tortur'd Bodies of *Johnson*, *Clark* and *Tomson*, and have confirm'd the Relation by their corporal Oaths? As to the Act of the 25th of *February*, it cannot be a true Act, because it says that all the *English* were examin'd on that Day, one by one, and some before and some after the Torture confess'd the Fact: Whereas it appears not only by the *English* Relation, but by the very Author in the preceeding Page, that the Examination lasted six Days together, to the 3d of *March* inclusive. How then could the Act of the 25th of *February* have all their Confessions? And by this it plainly appears what Credit is to be given to these Acts or to this Author. This is all that deserves an Answer in this *Dutch* Relation, which has not been already sufficiently answer'd; and from what has been said, That this Relation is stuff'd with groundless Suspicions, false Narratives ridiculous Absurdities and Impossibilities, impertinent Allegations and Arguments.

An Abridgment of the Travels, Adventures and Observations of Captain John Smith.

Captain Smith's Birth and Education.

Captain *John Smith* was born of good Parents at *Willoughby* in *Lincolnshire*, and being from his Infancy of a Rambling Temper, while he was yet at School, he sold his Satchel and Books with a Design to go in quest of his Fortune; but being diverted from that by the Death of his Parents, and detain'd at Home till the Age of Fifteen, he was then Bound Prentice to a Merchant of *Lynne*, who not sending him immediately to Sea as he expected, deserting his Apprentiship, he got to attend a Person of Quality's Son to *France*; (for tho' his Father had left him a competent Fortune, his Guardians gave him only Ten Shillings to begin his Travels with) but soon after his Arrival at *Orleans*, being dismiss'd from his Service, and having Money given him to return to *England*; he having no Inclination homewards, took the Road to *Paris*, where falling Acquainted with a *Scotch* Gentleman, he obtain'd of him Recommendatory Letters to his Friends in that Country; but Listing himself by the way in the Army, he did not go thither till four Years afterwards; and after some stay there, returning to *Willoughby*, and recovering (it seems) a part of his own Estate, he put himself in a better Condition than that in which he formerly had been, to Travel into Foreign Countries, being equally disgusted with idle Company and Solitude, of both which he had taken a trial at *Willoughby*.

His first Travels and Return.

Goes to France and is rob'd.

In this Resolution he happen'd to fall into the Company of an unknown Adventurer, who being attended by three such Villains as himself, pass'd for a *French* Lord, and perswading *Smith* to go with him by the way of *France*, to the War in *Hungary*, upon his Arrival in *Picardy*, he was Robb'd of his Baggage and Money by his four Companions, in concert with the Master of the Vessel; but being inform'd by a Soldier of the Place, of their Birth, and finding some of them in *Britany* (but in no Condition to make him any Satisfaction) being reduc'd to great Extremities, and by various Accidents reliev'd, meeting in his Rambles with one of his Robbers in a more miserable Condition than himself, he Fought and desperately Wounded him; and so passing by *Rhenes*, *Nants*, *Rochel*, *Poitiers* and *Bourdeaux* to *Bayonne* in *Biskay*; he afterwards travell'd thro' *Gascony* and *Languedoc* into *Provence*, (making at that rate a Circuit of above a thousand Miles) and imbarking himself at *Marseilles* for *Italy*, after being driv'n into *Thoulon* by contrary Winds, putting to Sea again, he was by some mutinous *Provencials* and Pilgrims a going to *Rome*, thrown over-board; and getting safe to a desolate Island, was thence accidentally deliver'd next Morning by Captain *La Roche* of St. *Maloes*, with whom having Coasted a great part of the *Mediterranean*, when they had discharged their Loading at *Alexandria*, sailed thence to *Scandaroon*: After having passed by the Coasts of *Asia* and *Graecia*, they arriv'd in the Mouth of the *Adriatick* Gulph, where they had a most desperate Conflict with a *Venetian* Ship, the Event of which was this, That *La Roche* having with the loss of Fifteen of his Men, taken her, and loaded his own Ship with the most precious of the Cargo, to a great Value, dismiss'd the remaining *Venetians* with the rest; and soon after rewarding *Smith's* Courage with a large Sum of Money, and (at his own request) setting him ashoar at *Antibes*, he there imbark'd himself for *Leghorn*, and passing thence thro' many famous Cities in *Italy* to *Rome*, he happen'd to see the Pope and Cardinals creep up the Stair call'd *Holy*, by which 'tis by them pretended, that our Saviour went up to *Pilate*. And afterwards imbarking at *Civita Vecchia* for *Naples*, after he had visited a great many Places on the *Adriatick* Gulph and elsewhere in *Italy*, going to *Grates* in *Stiria*, he there had the Honour to be known to the Lord *Ebershaughe*, Earl of *Meldrich*, and several other Persons of Quality, with whom going to *Vienna*, he entred into the Emperor's Service, in the aforesaid Earl of *Meldrich's* Regiment of Horse.

Goes to Italy and is cast over-board. Is sav'd.

A Fight.

Smith Lands, goes to Rome and sees the Ceremonies.

Goes to the Army of the Emperor.

Soon after he went to the Field, the *Turks* having Besieg'd *Olumpach*, of which the aforesaid *Ebershaughe* was Governor, *Smith* acquainted him by a Signal formerly agreed to between them, of the Time that the Imperialists should attack the Besiegers, which having been very well manag'd, and the *Turks* put into a Consternation by a Stratagem of *Smith's*, who caus'd some Thousand of Matches, supported by Staves, and stuck full of Gun-Powder, to be Fir'd at such a distance, that the *Turks* thinking that there was an Army on that side, and preparing to encounter those false Fires, the Besieged by these means receiv'd such Succours, that the *Turks* were

And performs several notable Stratagems.

forc'd to raise the Siege; for which Service *Smith* was rewarded with the Command of a Troop of 250 Horses, in the Regiment in which he serv'd. Not long after that the Emperor having divided his Army into three Bodies, that under the Command of the Duke of *Mercœur*, receiv'd Orders to Besiege *Stoll Weissenburgh*, a Place so Fortify'd by Nature and Art, that it was judg'd almost impregnable. But Captain *Smith* having put in practice a certain new Invention of his, did upon all Occasions so terribly annoy the Besieged with a sort of Fire-Works which he threw into the Town, that Duke *Mercœur* and Earl *Meldrich* taking an Opportunity while the *Turks* were in Confusion within, surpriz'd the Place, put most of the Garrison to the Sword, and took the *Bashaw* Prisoner. After which the *Grand Signior* sending *Assan Bashaw* with 60000 Men against the Imperialists, 20000 of them being sent to Besiege *Stoll Weissenburgh* again; the Grand Army of the *Turks* was overthrown by Duke *Mercœur*, the Siege was rais'd; and the Duke dividing his Army and returning to *Vienna*, after receiving great Honours there, in his way to *France* to raise Forces for the next Campaign, Died suddenly by the way. In that Battle *Smith* was Dismounted and Wounded, but soon recovered.

Alba Regalis is besieg'd and taken.

And being again besieg'd by the Turks, the Siege rais'd, and Duke Mercœur dies.

Mean time Earl *Meldrich* going with the Troops he Commanded to serve Prince *Sigismund* in *Trasilvania*, after meeting with extraordinary Difficulties in his March, having laid Siege to a Town before which it was not easie to raise Batteries; in the Interim a *Turkish* Officer having Challeng'd any of the Christian Captains to Fight a single Combat with him, *Smith* accepted the Challenge; a Truce was concluded, and the *Turk* appearing in the Field with a vast Train of Hautbois and a Magnificent Equipage, was some Minutes afterwards met by *Smith*, preceeded only by a Page that carried his Lance; and after the ordinary Salutation, the Trumpets sounding a Charge, *Smith* overthrew the *Turk* at the first Encounter, and Cutting off his Head (which he presented to the General) was receiv'd with the universal Acclamations of the Christian Army. And having next Day accepted the like Challenge from a Friend of the deceased *Turk*, he serv'd him in the same manner that he had done the other, tho' with a little more Difficulty and Danger. But he was yet worse put to it by a third whom he had Challeng'd himself, and of whom having receiv'd a Blow which had almost thrown him on the Ground, while the *Turk* was Ravish'd with the Shouts that were made from the Rampant, to Congratulate his supposed Victory; *Smith* recovering his Saddle with his Senses, having Pierc'd him thro' the Body, left him as Headless as he had done his other two Companions. Upon which the whole Army admiring the extraordinary Courage and Resolution of that brave Gentleman, conducted him with a Guard of 5000 Men and three led Horses (a *Turk*'s Head being carried before each) to the General's Tent, where he was receiv'd with all imaginable Tokens of Respect and Esteem, and had several valuable Presents made him.

Smith *fights 3 single Combats and Conquers.*

His Triumph.

The Batteries being by this time rais'd against the Town, Fighting soon began to be more universal, and the Town being taken with a great Effusion of Blood, the Garrison retiring to the Castle, and offering to Capitulate, were refus'd any Conditions, and the Earl having taken it next Day, put all to the Sword that were able to bear Arms, and set their Heads upon Stakes round the Walls, as they had formerly serv'd the Christians. After which the Army having sack'd *Veratio*, *Solmos*, and *Rupronka*, retiring to *Esenberg*, where Prince *Sigismund* having been presented with the Prisoners (which were about 2000, for the most part Women and Children) and being acquainted with the signal Services perform'd by Captain *Smith*, having bestow'd upon him a Yearly Pension of 300 Ducats with his own Picture in Gold; she gave him a Patent under his Hand and Seal, to wear three *Turk's* Heads in a Shield for his Arms, with an Oath that he should always afterwards wear the same thing in his Colours.

The Town is Taken, and Smith *greatly honour'd, &c.*

However, the Emperor being jealous of Prince *Sigismund's* Success, sent a powerful Army under the Conduct of his General *Busca*, to try his Fortune in *Transilvania*, to which tho' he unjustly pretended, its lawful Sovereign Prince *Sigismund* having agreed upon certain Conditions to yield his Country to the Emperor, his Lieutenant having without his knowledge attackt the *Imperial* Army, was defeated; but the Emperor being inform'd of the Prince's Innocence, did punctually keep the former Capitulation, and so being put in possession of *Transilvania*, his Troops likewise entered *Wallachia*, as well as those of Prince *Sigismund*, all under the Command of the Imperial General *Busca*, who making a Feint as if he intended to avoid coming to Blows, drew the *Turks* into a Place so disadvantagious to them, that he entirely routed them, killing several *Bashaws*, a great many other Officers, and little less than 20000 Soldiers. Upon which there coming News that some straggling *Crim Tartars* were Foraging and Wasting the adjacent Country, *Meldrich* having been sent out against them with 13000 Men, instead of Straglers found the *Cham* of *Tartary* with his two Sons and above 30000 Men, besides the *Turkish* General who had escap'd out of the late Battel with 15000 more, upon which having in vain us'd all their endeavours to make their Retreat, after having kill'd or taken Prisoners 2000 *Turks* (with whom they accidentally met one Morning as they came out of a Wood, thro' which with incredible Celerity they had cut a Passage) being inform'd of the Place where the 15000 *Turks* were separately encamp'd; Captain *Smith* having propos'd another Stratagem, *viz.* To accommodate some Hundreds of Trunks with Wild-fire upon the Heads of Lances, and setting Fire to them in the Night, to attack the Enemy at the same time; that being perform'd, the *Turkish* Horses (as well as their Men) were so amaz'd with the blazing of the Flames, that immediately falling into Confusion, they were cut to pieces, with scarce any loss at all to *Meldrich*. But it being still impossible for them to secure their Retreat from the huge Army of the *Tartars* that were at hand, the Valiant *Meldrich* drawing up his victorious (but unfortunate) handful of Men, in a Valley near *Rottenton*, in the manner that the disparity of their numbers requir'd; after one of the most obstinate and resolute Battels that ever was fought (in which the *Christians* kill'd almost twice their number of the *Tartars*) there only escap'd from the Slaughter, or from Captivity about 13 or 1400 Horse, who with their General bravely swam the River in the face of their Enemies. Captain *Smith* being desperately wounded was taken Prisoner and after his Cure, being Sold for a Slave at *Axopolis* to Bashaw *Bogal*, he was by him sent for a Present to his Mistress at *Constantinople*, whither he was led with a great many others, Chain'd by the Neck, twenty and twenty together.

His Troops enter Wallachia and defeat the Turk twice.

Meldrich with a Detachment is entirely routed, and Capt. Smith is taken and made a Slave, and sent to Constantinople.

That Lady (who could speak *Italian*) understanding by himself that he was an *English* Man whom her Gallant had bought (and not a *Bohemian* Lord vanquished by his Hand with a great many others, whose Ransoms should adorn her with the Glory of his Conquests, as he had written to her) compassionating his unfortunate Circumstances, and being apprehensive that her Mother might sell him, sent him immediately with recommendatory Letters to her Brother, the *Timor Bashaw* of *Nalboits* in *Cambia*, which is a Province of *Tartary*. But the cruel and inhumane Brother suspecting by his Sister's kind Expressions in favour of the unfortunate Captive, the Design which she entertain'd of making him her Husband, if she could, caus'd him to be treated much more barbarously than any of the other Slaves in that Country, tho' in effect, the happiest of them is miserable, beyond our Imagination; but his Cruelty prov'd at last to be the occasion of the Captain's Liberty.

Cambia in Tartary.

The Cambian Tartars Food, Rayment and Habitations.

'Tis almost impossible to believe how miserably the *Cambian Tartars* live, the proud *Bashaw* himself thought boil'd Rice and Garnaces, with some little bits of Mutton amongst it, very good Cheer; and 'tis very ordinary amongst them to eat Horse-flesh, and that of other Animals much less edible; nor do the common People often feed so delicately, so that I shall not pretend to be able to express the miserable Diet of the Christian Slaves; whose best Victuals is the Entrails of Horses and other more loathsom Animals. The Bread of *Cambia* is proportionable to the rest of their good Fare, their best Drink is very bad Coffee, and they have a great Opinion of any sort of Milk, for which they have Reason, if things be only valuable for their Rarity. Their Quality dress like the *Turks*, but the Attire of the common sort is a black Sheep's Skin upon their Back, and another upon their Belly, with the Legs tied about their Neck and Middle; two other Skins serve them for Breeches, and a Cap of the same Stuff adorns their

Head

Head. As for their Habitations, there are few (if any) in moſt Places of *Tartary* that deſerve the Name of *Houſes*, their principal Shelter being a ſort of Tents.

The Crim-Tartars. The *Crim-Tartars* do much excel the *Cambians'* both in their Food, Rayment, Habitations, Diſcipline and Manners; and the removing Court of their Prince is as orderly as ſome *European* Camps for the ſituation and rank which every one obſerves; and (not to ſpeak of the great Attendance of their *Cham*) ſome of their Lords or Princes will have above 100 Tents upon great Carts drawn by Oxen and Camels, for themſelves and their Wives: They are much better dreſs'd than the *Cambian Tartars*, for tho' they wear divers ſorts of Skins, they are lin'd with a ſort of Stuff made of Cotton: They have better Meat than the others, but as they eat very little of it, they abound in Cattle, and the multiplicity of Captive Women they have to Breed upon, make them very numerous; for (as all the *Mahometans*) they may keep as many Wives as they can maintain. They uſe their Slaves very barbarouſly, putting them to all ſorts of Work, as we do Beaſts. Their Princes uſe Foreign Ambaſſadors ſometimes barbarouſly, but for the moſt part bountifully; however, they muſt deliver their Meſſage and their Preſents Kneeling, and ſometimes they're gratified with Veſtures of Silk wrought with Gold, with a Horſe or two, and perhaps a Slave of their own Country. And indeed, the *Cham* of *Crim Tartary* is ſerv'd and attended by his Subjects with very much Reverence and Reſpect. That Prince can make no War without the Permiſſion of the Grand Signior, whom he is oblig'd to aſſiſt with an Army within a Month after he receives his Orders, which he can eaſily do. Every Soldier being oblig'd to provide himſelf three Months Victuals, which principally conſiſt in parch'd Millet ground to Meal, (which they mix with Water) and Curds dried and beat to Powder, which being infus'd into Water makes it ſomething like Milk; and ſome dried Fleſh. Their *Cham* and his Nobles have ſome Bread and *Aqua Vitæ*, and likewiſe live Cattle, of which they are very ſparing. There is no Foot in their Army, but all Horſe, which by their ſwiftneſs do abundance of Miſchief; their principal Arms are Bows and Darts, for the Nobility only can afford to wear ſuch Arms as the *Turks*, in which they very much glory; and ſome of the other Troops have ſometimes *European* Arms, which they take from the *Chriſtians* they can ſurpriſe. When they invade any Country, they put moſt of the Men to the Sword, but ſpare all the Women and Children, of whom they make Slaves; of whom their *Cham* or Emperor picking out ſuch as he likes, the reſt are divided amongſt the Army, according to each Man's quality, and ſo remain in perpetual Servitude, except they can be ranſom'd. The only thing Good amongſt them, is their Law, which (being utter Strangers to Lawyers) is very plain and ſimple; they have Juſtices in every Village, but make no uſe of Attornys; and all Affairs of Moment are decided by the *Cham* and his Privy-Counſel, with ſo little Partiality, and ſo great Expedition, that even amongſt that barbarous People, ſcarce ſix Cauſes are heard in ſix Months.

Their Cuſtoms.

Their Laws.

Their Wars.

Smith kills the Timor and eſcapes to Muſcovy. After *Smith* had remain'd a conſiderable time in this miſerable Captivity, being made a Threſher in a Grange about a League from *Nalbrits*, the *Timor* going frequently to viſit his Granges, took occaſion to beat him moſt unmercifully, inſomuch that *Smith* one Day that he was alone, being exaſperated with that unſupportable uſage, beating out the *Timor*'s Brains with his Threſhing-Bat, put on his Cloths, and hiding his Body under the Straw, fill'd his Knap-ſack with Corn, and ſhutting the Doors, mounted upon the *Timor*'s Horſe and recommending himſelf to God, rid out into the Deſart, without well knowing whither he went, till falling accidentally upon a Road, which by ſome Poſts that were ſet up upon it, he knew to be that which led to *Muſcovy*. After 16 Days Travel in that barren Country, arriving at *Ægopolis*, and diſcovering himſelf, he was kindly entertain'd by the *Muſcovite* Governour, from whom obtaining Recommendatory Letters to the Governor of *Caraganaw*, he thence paſs'd by *Letch*, *Donko*, *Berniske*, *Newgrod*, *Coroski*, *Duberesko*, *Duritchell*, *Drohobus*, *Oſtroge*, *Saſtaw*, *Laſco*, *Hallico* and *Colionia*, to *Hermanſtadt* in *Tranſilvania*; in all which Journy from *Ægopolis* to *Hermanſtadt*, he was treated with a great deal of Civility, by the Governors and other Perſons of Quality, who not only defrayed his Charges, but gave him ſeveral valuable Preſents. And after many Congratulations, and much good Entertainment in *Tranſilvania*, paſſing thro' *Hungary* and *Moravia*, he arrived at *Prague* in *Bohemia*; and going to *Lipſwick* in *Miſenland*, was there moſt graciouſly receiv'd by the Illuſtrious Prince *Sigiſmund*, who giving him a very honourable Paſsport and 1500 Ducats of Gold; taking his leave of the Prince, and viſiting *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Heſſe*, *Franconia*, the *Palatinate*, and moſt other Places that he had not ſeen in *Germany*, paſſing thro' *Lorain*, he went into *France*; and departing from *Paris* by the way of *Orleans* and *Angiers*, to *Nants*, imbarking there for *Biſca* in *Spain*; after viſiting *Madrid*, *Sevil*, *Cadiz*, and all the other moſt remarkable Towns in that Country, he paſs'd over from *Gibraltar* by the way of *Ceuta* and *Tangier*, to *Saffee* in *Barbary*; where falling acquainted with the Captain of a *French* Man of War, he went with him and twelve more to view the Monuments of the famous City of *Morocco*, of which little then was ſtanding but the King's Palace (which ſeem'd almoſt to be a City it ſelf) and the *Inderea*, which is likewiſe very large, and inhabited by the *Jews*; there were likewiſe ſome Tents for *Moors*, and every where there was to be ſeen the Ruins of a great and Magnificent City, but little elſe.

He goes to Tranſilvania.

And thence to Bohemia.

He is remarked by Prince Sigiſmund, and goes thro' Germany and France *to* Spain, *and thence into* Barbary.

As for the Temper and manner of Government of the Emperors of *Morocco*, 'tis ſo univerſally known, that there needs not much here to be ſaid about it; they are Tributary to the *Turks*, and of the Religion of *Mahomet*; and the *Chriſtians* which are taken at Sea by their Pyrates, are made Slaves. Their Kings by the multiplicity of their Concubines, cannot miſs of having a numerous Iſſue; yet is there no Country under the Sun where the Royal Family (if theirs deſerves ſo great a Name) is more in danger of failing, for upon the Death of the Father, all the Brothers generally fall by the Ears, and cut each other's Throats, till there's but one remaining, and then he curs off his Brother's Iſſue (if any remains) that he may be ſure of the Kingdom for himſelf; their Princes are more Magnificent (as being more converſant with the *Europeans*) than thoſe of the *Tartars* before-mention'd; but for all that, they are ſtill ſo little civiliz'd, that they are moſtly very impertinent to Foreign Ambaſſadors. Their Complexion is Tawny or Yellowiſh (yet is there to be found ſome very handſome Women amongſt them) and as for their Country, it produces very many precious and valuable Commodities, which they vend to the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *French* and other *European* Nations.

The Cuſtoms, &c. of Barbary.

Amongſt other fierce Animals, with which all *Africa* abounds, there is plenty of Lyons; and two young ones having been given to one Mr. *Archer*, who then liv'd at *Saffee*; he putting them into a Garden, the Male having kill'd the Female, he afterwards took it into his Houſe, and letting it lie upon his own Bed like a Dog, it grew in a little time as big as a Maſtiff; nor was there ever a Dog more tame and tractable than was that Lyon, with ſuch as he knew. However, Mr. *Archer* being about to return into *England*, made a Preſent of this Lyon to a Merchant at *Marſeilles*, and he having afterwards preſented him to the *French* King, he ſent him over to King *James* I. So that one Mr. *Bull*, who had been Mr. *Archer*'s Servant when the Lyon was given him in *Barbary*, going one Day with ſome of his Friends to ſee the King's Lyons in the Tower of *London*, tho' 'twas above ten Years after the Lyon had ſeen Mr. *Bull* at his Maſter's Houſe in *Barbary*, he ſo fawn'd and made ſuch Signs of Submiſſion and Joy, at the ſight of Mr. *Bull*, that he being inform'd in what manner the Lyon was brought thither, prevail'd with the Keeper to open the Door and let him in, upon which the Lyon fell immediately to licking of his Hands, Face and Feet, and expreſs'd ſuch Marks of Joy and Satisfaction as a Brute could ſcarcely be believ'd to be capable of; and was ſo dejected at Mr. *Bull*'s departure, that he fell a roaring and making a moſt hideous Noiſe, and would neither eat nor drink for above four Days; which Story for its oddneſs, I thought did here deſerve to be inſerted.

An odd Story of a Lyon.

After theſe Travellers had ſufficiently view'd what moſt deſerv'd to be ſeen in the Inland Parts of *Barbary* already mention'd, upon their return to *Saffee*, the Captain of the Man of War having invited Captain *Smith* to a Treat on Board of his Ship, and ſparing nothing to make him and the reſt of the Company welcome, they ſtaid till it was too late to go aſhore; for there ariſing a furious Tempeſt about Midnight, they

1639 they were forc'd to slip Cable and Anchor, and put to Sea; and being driven in towards the *Canaries*, after they had spent some time in refitting themselves, putting again to Sea to return to *Saffee*, they took in their Passage some small Barks, one of which was loaded with Wine from *Teneriff*, and two others in their Ballast; but coming up soon after with two *Spanish* Men of War between *Bojadora* and *Cape Nos*, upon the *African* shore, *Merham* (for so was the Captain nam'd) hailing the *Spaniards* to know what they were, they hoping to put a Trick upon him, answer'd that they were two distressed Ships of *Biscay*, and added, that he might come aboard if he pleas'd and take what he would; but *Merham* being too cunning to be decoy'd by that fair Sham, they soon began to explain themselves by the louder Language of their Ordnance, and so commenc'd one of the most obstinate Fights that ever has perhaps been heard of, which continued two Days successively, during which time *Merham* was twice boarded, and his Ship once Fir'd; but notwithstanding, by his own, Captain *Smith's*, and some other Gentlemen's extraordinary Conduct and Bravery, and the undaunted Courage and Resolution of his Mariners, he got clear of both the *Spaniards*, after having kill'd 200 Men in the greatest Ship (which was so shatter'd that 'twas judg'd she would founder at Sea) and likewise done a great deal of Damage and kill'd a great many Men in the other, with the loss of 27 Men kill'd in his Ship, besides 15 wounded; after which arriving in a short time at *Saffee*, Captain *Smith* being desirous to take another View of his Native Country, return'd with the first Opportunity to *England*. 1639

An obstinate Sea-Fight.

After this, Captain *Smith* made many useful Voyages to *Virginia*, *New-England*, *Barbadoes*, the Isle of *Mevis* and several other Plantations, where he did the Nation considerable Services; but there being much later Accounts of the State of those Places than his, and there happening but few Occasions in which he could have an opportunity to signalize his personal Valour, it would seem preposterous to insert them in this Place; since a sufficient Account is already given of all those Plantations.

The Captivity of William Okeley, William Adams, John Anthony, John Jeplis, *&c. at* Algiers, *with their wonderful Escape in a Boat of Canvass, and the Extremities they endur'd at Sea, till their Arrival at* Majorca.

The Captivity of Okeley, Adams, &c. in Algiers.

HAving in *June* 1639. Embarked on board the *Mary* of *London*, carrying six Guns, of which Mr. *Boarder* was Master, and being bound for the Isle of *Providence* in the *West-Indies*, and having two Ships more in Company, on the sixth Day after they set sail from the Isle of *Wight*, and discover'd three Ships in the Morning, about three or four Leagues to Leeward of them, which indeed prov'd to be *Algerines*, and well perceiving the *English* run for it, quickly came up, Fought, Boarded, and took them all three, the *Mary* having six Men Slain and wounded in the Action: They were kept close Prisoners while at Sea, and after five or six Weeks time were brought to *Algiers*, which City is pleasantly situated on the side of the Hills, overlooking the *Mediterranean* that lies to the North of it: It's pretty large, the Walls being above three Miles in Circumference, beautified and adorned with five Gates; Port *Marine* to the North, and Port *Piscadore* not far off, and *Porta Nova* to the South; the West Gate, which they call *Bubamile*, and the East *Bubagoon*: The private Buildings are beautiful enough, flat roof'd, adorned with Galleries towards their Courts, supported by Pillars, and their Temples or Mosques very magnificent. Next Day after their being brought ashoar, the Captives were conducted to the *Basha's* Palace, who according to Custom, is to have the tenth of every Slave for his share, and the Day after they were carryed to Market, publickly to be expos'd to Sale, which is performed in this manner; they lead them up and down the Place, and when a Chapman bids any Mony, they presently cry a *Rache! a Rache!* That is, here is so much Mony bid, Who bids more? and they that cheapen them are very circumspect, and examine the Mouth, and all other parts of the Body, and more particularly see whether the Hands be hard or delicate and tender, from which last, as supposing them to be Gentlemen or Merchants, they expect a large Ransom.

William Okeley, the Author of this Relation, was sold to a *Tagareen*, and for about half a Year; his Business was to trudge on Errands, bear Burdens, and perform other servile Offices; but his Patron having a share in a Man of War that carryed twelve Guns, and being with the rest of the Owners much elated with a rich Booty she had lately made of an *English* Ship laden with Plate, and bound from *Cadiz* to *London*, they resolv'd to fit her out again, and *Okeley* must by his Patron's Command go also aboard her; but the Ship having cruised nine Weeks at Sea, within and without the *Streights*, without meeting any Prize worth taking, *Okeley's* Patron, now he came ashore, told him he must live there, and pay him ten Dollars *per* Month, let him get it where he could. Perplext with this hard Sentence, he at length fell in with a Country-man of his own, and his Patron, upon his representation of the matter, having lent him a small Modicum to set up, he became Partner with the other, who privately sold Lead, Iron, Shot, Strong-Waters, Tobacco, and other Things; and beginning to thrive upon it, they ventur'd upon no less than a whole But of Wine, but the other Partner proving a bad Husband, the whole stress of the Business fell upon *Okeley*, who had now an opportunity of affording some Relief to *John Randal*, his Wife and Child, that had been made Captives at the same time with himself.

Now it hapning that *Okeley* and *Randal* (who was not well) should take a Walk one Day into the Fields; when they came to the end of their Tedder, they were desirous to go a little farther to view the Coasts, tho' not with any Design of making their Escape: However they were presently charg'd with a Spy for attempting it, and then met by another, by whom they were led to a little House, where they searched them, and took away 20 *s.* which *Okeley* had before put into his Friends Hands, and after that his Doublet, and then carryed them before the Vice-Roy and his Council: They were very strictly examined, and threatned with the Batroon, but they stifly denyed all, refusing to make themselves Criminal, when they were not so, and then see if they must abide the Bastinado, they would sit down by the Sticks: As for the way of Punishment by the *Batoon*, 'tis thus; they have a strong Staff about 6 Foot long, in the middle whereof there are two Holes bored, into which a Cord is put, and the ends of the Cord fastned on the one side the Staff, with Knots, so that it makes a Loop on the other side; into this Loop of the Cord, both the Feet of the Person Condemn'd to this Punishment are put; then two lusty Fellows, one at each end of the Staff, lifts it up in their Arms, and twitting the Staff about, till his Feet are fast pinched with the Cord by the Ankles, they raise his Feet with the Soles upwards near as high as their Shoulders, and in this Posture they hold them, the poor Man in the mean while resting only with his Neck and Shoulders on the Ground: Then comes another lusty sturdy Knave behind him, and with a tough short Truncheon gives him as many violent Blows on the Soles of his Feet as the Council shall Order: The Basha and Council, indeed deferred the Punishment upon these two supposed Runaways, but ordered them to be laid in Chains, till their Patrons should demand their Liberty. It was *Randal's* severe Fate to have a barbarous Master, who ordered him 300 Blows upon the Soles of his Feet before his Enlargment; whereas *Okeley* by his Master's direction was put to Weaving; but being no proficient in that Trade, he commanded him to go to the Shop and make Mony of his Goods, in order to pay what he had borrowed of him towards his setting up; but alas you must think they were gone to wreck, for his Partner had some time before this Misfortune left him; and so returning to his Master again, whom he acquainted he could sell nothing, he remanded him to the Shop,

there

there to Trade, paying him the two Dollars a Month as before; but at length *Okeley*'s Patron falling to Decay, and it being his fortune and another's to be mortgaged to a Cap-Maker and a grave old Gentleman, who could not well agree about the Division of them, they were both ordered to appear at noon Day at an appointed Place, where they agreed to cast Lots for them; only because *Okeley* was in a handsome way of Trade, they agreed that he to whose share he fell, should pay the other 50 Doubles: It was his good Fortune to fall into the old Gentleman's Hands, who was exceeding kind to him; but for all that, being not able to bear the thoughts of Slavery, he was continually projecting how to make his Escape, and judging seven Persons would be enough to manage and carry on the Design, he communicated the same to *John Anthony*, a Carpenter, who had been a Slave 15 Years; to *William Adams*, who during his Captivity had learnt to be a Bricklayer, who had been a Slave 11 Years; to *John Oeples* a Sea-man that had been a Captive above five Years, and to *John*——— a Carpenter, who had been a Slave five Years; also there were two others, whose Business it was to wash small Cloths on the Sea-side, who had their share in carrying on the Work, tho' they went not along with them; *William Okeley* the Author of this Narrative, who was taken *Aug.* 11th 1639. and escaped *June* 30th 1644. made up the number of Seven.

Thus having fixed their Resolutions to attempt an Escape, they provided a piece of Timber about 12 Foot long to make the Keel of a Boat, which was to be wrought in *Okeley*'s Cellar; then took care of Timbers or Ribs for the Boat, every one of which was made of three Pieces, and joynted in two Places, yet these Joints were not made with Mortice and Tenon, but the flat side of one of the three Pieces was laid over the other, and two Holes were bored in every Joynt, into which two Nails were to be put when they were to joyn the parcels of the Boat together. But it must be noted that these two Holes at every Joynt were not made in a strait Line parallel with the Sides of the Pieces, for then the three Pieces, which make one Rib, being joyned together, would have made one strait Piece, a form that would not at all serve their turn, but so that when both the Nails were in the Holes, each Joynt would make an obtuse Angle, and so incline as near a semicircular Figure, as occasion required; and for the Cloathing of the naked Ribs of their Boat, instead of Boards, they bought as much strong Canvass, as would cover it twice over, upon the Convex of the Carcen, as also as much Pitch, Tar and Tallow, as would make it a kind of a Tarpawling Sear-Cloth, with earthen Pots to melt down their Materials in; having with no small difficulty fitted up the whole Boat, and then taken all to Pieces again, the next Work was how to convey all out of Town, and fix them in a secure Place; and first for the Keel, they unanimously agreed that *William Adams* was the fittest Person to execute that part, who for that purpose having accoutred himself with his Apron before him, his Trowel in his Hand, and one of the Pieces upon his Shoulder, went cleverly away with it, and having hid it in the bottom of an Hedge, soon after carryed and lodged its fellow in the same Place; as for the Timbers they were easily, because of their folding in the middle, carryed off by one of those who washed small Cloaths, in his Bag, and hid near the Keel. But to convey the Tarpawlin safe, was the greatest difficulty; by Night it was impossible, and by Day exceeding difficult; however they ventured on this way; they put it into a large Sack, and committed it to him that used to wash Cloaths, and left any should clap a jealous Hand upon it; they put a Pillow over their Canvass within the Bag. Oars were still wanting; for the supplying of which, they took two Pipe-staves, and slitting them across from Corner to Corner with a Hand-saw; they made of each of them two rude Things, which they named the Blades, for a pair of Oars, and these were easily conveyed out without Suspition. The next thing was Provision for the Voyage, of which they laid up but a small quantity of Bread: They had also two Goats Skins stripped off whole, and so tanned (a kind of Bottle much used by the *Algerines* to carry Milk and Water in) and these they filled with Water. They also called to mind, that a Sail might be of good use to them in their Expedition, and therefore having bought as much Canvass as would serve, *Okeley* undertook to carry it, but had not gone a quarter of a Mile out of the Town, when he discovered the same Spy, who had once before seiz'd him, which put him to a great Non-plus; however, having on a sudden plucked up his Spirits, and espying an *English* man washing Cloaths by the Sea-side, he went directly to him, and desired his help to wash that Canvass, while the leering Spy all the while stood upon a Rock just over their Heads to watch their Motions; but *Okeley* having a little formerly washed the Canvass, still to amuse him, spread it before his Face on the top of the Rock to dry, after which the Spy sheer'd off, but so that the Christian remaining still very Jealous of him, thought it best, fairly to carry his Burden back again into the City. His Companions tho' not a little discouraged hereat, yet at length agreed on the Time and Place where they should meet in the Night for their departure: They pitched upon a Hill for this purpose, but at their meeting together, retired to an adjacent Valley: They had indeed hid several of their Materials near the top of the Hill, where there grew also a small Fig-tree, which they had marked with their Eye, as judging it would be useful to strengthen the Keel of their Boat, and therefore two of them were immediately dispatch'd to saw it down, and to bring it and the Parcels of their Boat there deposited away with them: Having accomplish'd this Work, not without danger of being discovered by two Men with Dogs that came near them; they by Signs by reason of the vicinity of some Gardens, went about to joyn their Boat together; they soon fix'd the two parts of the Keel; then opening the Timbers, which had already a Nail in every Joynt, they groped out for the other Hole, and puts its Nails into it: Then they opened them at their full length, and apply'd them to the top of the Keel, fastning them with Rope-Yarns and small Cords, and so they served all the Joynts to keep them firm and stable; then they bound small Canes all along the Ribs length-ways, both to keep them from veering, and also to bear out the Canvass very stiff, against the pressing Water: After this they made Notches upon the ends of the Ribs, wherein the Oars might ply, and having tyed down the Seats, and strengthned their Keel with the Fig-tree, they lastly drew on their double Canvass Case, which before had been fitted on: This done, Four of the Company carry'd it on their Shoulders to the Sea-side, which was about half a Mile off; being come upon the Sea-shore, they immediately stripp'd themselves naked, and putting their Cloths into the Boat, carryed both it and them as far as they could wade into the Sea, and then all Seven of them got into her; but alass! they were no sooner imbarked, then that the Boat was ready to sink under them; but at last one whose Heart most failed him, going Ashore, and another soon following, she then held up her Head very stoutly, and seemed hearty enough for the Voyage.

They launched out on the 30th of *June* 1644. as afore-noted, and laboured the harder that Night, because they would gladly be out of the Ken of their old Masters by Daylight; but for all that they were within sight of their Ships that lay in the Haven and Road, yet the Boat was so small and snug, that they were not discovered, or else seemed not worth taking notice of. They found upon all Occasions their want of forecast, for now their Bread had lain soaking in the Salt-Water, and was quite spoiled, and their Fresh-Water stank of the tanned Skins and Owze, having lain sobbing in the Salt-Water, which made it nauseous, to supply the want or defect of which, they had nothing but their own Urine; and their Bread, tho' very bad as it was, yet lasted them but three Days; and what yet still seemed to be worse than all the rest, the Wind proved so very contrary, that they came to debate at last, whether it were not better for them to go back to *Algiers* with ease, than painfully make towards their Freedom. However they manfully carryed it for the last, as that their Labour was without intermission, and the heat of the Sun was so extream, that the only help they had (if it might be so called) was from the fifth Man, who emptyed the Boat of the Salt-Water, and threw it upon the Bodies of the rest that rowed to cool them, with which and the scorching of the Sun they were so bleached, that they rose up all over in Blisters, and brought them much Pain. The Directions they steered by in the Day time, was only a Pocket-Dyal that one of the Company had, and they were in the Night guided by the motion of the Stars, and when they dis-

appear'd, by that of the Clouds, having continued four Days and Nights in this wretched Condition, and being now so far upon the brink of Despair, as to lay by their Oars and leave off Labour. On the 5th they discovered a Tortoise, not far from them, asleep in the Sea, and having silently rowed to the Prey, they took it into the Boat with great Triumph, cut off her Head, and having let her bleed into a Pot, drank the Blood, eat the Liver, and sucked the Flesh, with which they were much refreshed; and about Noon they discovered, or at least thought they discovered Land. Being in a short time after fully satisfied it was Land, they laboured hard to come at it; but being at length wearied with Labour, and cooled a little with the Sea, into which they had now unwarily enough jumped to refresh themselves, they took a little repose in the Boat, and then renewing their Diligence, towards Evening discover'd another Island: The first they saw was *Majorca*, and this *Fromentere*, which last being very much infested with venemous Serpents, and very little, if at all Inhabited, they resolved to make for the other, rowed very hard all Night, kept within Sight of it all the next Day, which was the sixth of *July*, and about ten at Night came under the Island; but the Rocks were so steep and craggy, that they could not climb up, but having at length found a convenient Place, where they might thrust in their Weather-beaten Boat, they got safe Ashore.

They had no Food since the Tortoise before-mention'd, and therefore leaving three of their Company with the Boat, the other two, *viz. William Okeley* and *John Anthony*, which last could speak both *Spanish* and *Italian* very well, and the other a little *Spanish*, were sent out in search for fresh Water, and coming to a watch Tower of the *Spaniards*, as soon as they were within call, they spoke to the Watch, and having acquainted him with their miserable Condition and Circumstances; he kindly threw down an old mouldy Cake to them, and then directed them to fresh Water hard by: Having with some difficulty got some of the Cake and Water thro' the diffused Passage of their Throats into their clamorous Stomachs, they return'd with the good Tidings to their Companions at the Boat, and crawling as well as they could towards the Well, *William Adams* attempting to Drink, and after many Essays, being not able to swallow the Water, sunk down to the Ground, and faintly said, *I am a Dead Man*; but his Companions coming to his assistance, they after much forcing, got some of the Water and Cake down his Throat; and being all of them in some measure refreshed, they rested themselves here by the Well-side till the Morning. When the Day fully appear'd, they made their application once more to the Man upon the Watch-Tower, intreating him to direct them the ready way to the next House or Town; this he kindly did, and pointing to a House about two Miles off, they made the best of their way thither, and upon a true representation of their deplorable state, received a very kind Entertainment, after which they began their Journy towards the Town of *Majorca*; being come next Morning into the Suburbs, the strangeness of their Habit, they being bare Foot, bare Legg'd, and having nothing on but loose Coats over their Shirts, drew a Crowd of People about them, and shew'd themselves human enough to relieve them, but told them they must be oblig'd to tarry in the Suburbs till the Vice-Roy sent for them, who as soon as he had information of their being there, commanded their appearance before him. Having examined them about many Affairs touching *Algiers*, and their own Escape he ordered them to be maintained at his own Charge, till they could find Passage into their own Country. In the mean time the People having made a Collection for them, bought them Cloaths and Shoes. Now *Majorca* being a Place where *English* Ships seldom come, they petitioned the Governor that they might have Passage in the King of *Spain*'s Gallies then in the Road, and bound for *Alicant*, which he readily granted; and imbarking at *Alicant* on board two *English* Merchant Ships, they were soon chased by two *Turkish* Rovers, but being near *Gibralter*, they escaped, and here *William Okeley*, *John Anthony*, and *John*—— Carpenter, having already known enough of Slavery, went ashore, from whence *Okeley* having got Passage by Sea to *Cadiz*, and the rest travelling thither by Land, they agreed to go to St. *Lucar*, and imbarking on Board Captain *Smith* of *Redriff*, after five Weeks sailing, safely arrived in the *Downs* in the Month of *September*, 1644.

Johnson's *Narrative of a great Deliverance in a Voyage to the* East Country.

EMbarking at *Harwich Sept.* the 29th 1648. they had not been many Days at Sea, when the Ship sprung a Leak or rather a Plank, and having try'd in vain to remedy the Evil, they threw out their Long-boat, having first fired off eight or nine Guns, as a Signal to *Bartholamew Cook*, Master of another Ship that went out in Company with them, to come to their Relief: The Divine, I mean *Johnson*, who had been sick all the while, was in great danger of being drowned by getting into the Boat; however all of them being safe in, and rowing now they knew not whither in the North Seas, without Compass to guide them, or Provision to sustain them, the three Bags of Pieces of Eight, to the value of three hundred Pounds Sterling, which they had reserv'd could do them no good, the same in the Author's own Words being then but *inutile Pondus*, a Burden of no value: But when they were reduced to an absolute Despair of all outward Means of deliverance, they saw a Vessel make towards them; but being not able to get on board her by reason of the badness of the Weather, they found themselves ready to perish, when they looked Safety in the Face; however Night coming, tho' it was an Evil in it self, yet it proved a Benefit to them; for not perceiving then so well their Danger, they applyed two to an Oar, and made the best way they could, as they conceived, towards the Ship, the Master of which hung out a Light to guide them: But lest the *Howzon*, for he was one of *Howzon*, should think they were lost, and so hoise Sail and be gone (because he could not see them in the Night) they agreed when a Wave took them up to give a great Shout: Being come near at length, and the Sea-men nimbly enough getting on Board, the poor Doctor was in greater Danger of being lost than before; for besides the natural weakness he had in his Hands, they were so benummed with the wet and cold, that he could not climb up a Rope, tho' it were to save his Life: Having try'd several ways for his Deliverance, at last two Sea-men came down the side of the Ship, and would have heaved him up; but the wetness of his Cloths having made him too heavy a Burden for them, one of the Mariners threw him a Rope with a Nooz for him to put it about his Middle, with which he first drew him into the Sea, but his weight forc'd the Rope so fast thro' the Sea-man's Hands, that had there not been a Knot at the end of it by meer Chance, he had gone to the bottom in a Moment: The next pull struck him severely against the side of the Ship, which he says was like an Opiate, that made him forget himself as well as his Sorrow, for he found himself next Morning in the Master's Cabin, where he had slept all Night very well, but yet very sore and lame all over.

Next Day it blew very hard for the Coast of *Norway*, whither their Ship was bound, and about Noon descry'd Land; but that Night the Ship with full Sail ran upon a Rock, and stuck so fast in the Cleft or rather between two Sledges of Rocks, with her Bow over the main Rock, that the fore-part of it stood as firm for the present as the Rock it self; but quickly breaking in the Stern, one of the Sea-men leaped from the Bow with a Rope in his Hand, which was fastned to one of our Masts, and held it so tightly that another slipt down by it, and so all the Company, and some of the Danes, to the Number of eight and twenty got safe to the Rock that way: Our Author was the last that got down the Ship that way, which from that very Moment began to decline from them, and with which the Master (who was still on board) and four of his Seamen perished.

Some of the Crew upon the Rock having measured it round with their Feet, found it both a Rock and an Island, and contrary to all their Hopes uninhabitable;

table; so that waiting with all the patience they could till Morning, they had a glimpse of the Coast of *Norway*, but at such a distance, that they could not possibly reach it any otherwise than with their Desires: However about ten that Day having discovered a Ship with full Sails making towards them, it revived their drooping Spirits; but tho' they made all the Signals they could from the top of the Rock, they never came at them, nor sent out their Boat, to know what they were: Despairing of relief this way, the Sea-man that first leaped upon the Rock, proposed to make a Raft and Venture to Sea, saying he had rather be drowned, than lye there and be Starved. All things fell out happily to further the Design, for the Water had now fallen from the Rock, and left on the side of it the Bottom of the Ship, the Anchors, Masts, and Sails lying on the Rock as Linnen upon a Hedge, so that in a short time they brake a Mast in Pieces, untwisted a Cable, made small Cords, tyed four or five Boards to the broken Mast, put up the small end of the Missen-Mast, cut out a small Sail, with some slight Stern they had made, and so two *Danes* and as many *English* venturing to Sea on these Ruins, they got safely on shore on *Waller* Island in *Norway*; from thence the rest of the Men were fetched off by several Shawls, and having received a kind Entertainment here, they travelled to *Frederickstade*, and so to *Osterfound*, where our Author and the other *English* imbarking for *England*, after many Difficulties arrived at last safely at *Yarmouth*.

The Discoveries of John Lederer *from* Virginia *to the West of* Carolina, *and other Parts of the Continent of* North-America, *begun in* March, 1669. *And ended in* September, 1670.

Lederer's *discoveries in* North-America, 1669, &c.

NOrth as well as South *America* may be divided into three Parts, *viz.* the Plains, Highlands and Mountains; the first being the Territories between the Eastern Coast and the Falls of the great Rivers that run into the *Atlantick*, in extent taking generally ninety Miles; the High-lands begin at those falls, and end at the foot of the great ridge of Mountains, that run thro' the middle of the Continent, North and South-East, called *Apealatei* by the *Spaniards*, and *Pemolnick* by the *Indians*, they lying, according to the Author's best Observation, parallel to the *Atlantick* Shoar, that bearing from *Canada* to Cape *Florida*, North East and South West, and then falling off directly as the Mountains do at *Sara*, where they take the name of *Suala*. As for the Flats or Plains already so well describ'd by others, he only says, that by the rankness of the Soil, and saltish moistness of the Air, dayly discoveries of Fish-Shells three Fathom deep in the Earth are made, and by the Tradition of the *Indians*, these Parts are supposed some Ages ago to have lain under Water. The high Lands, tho' under the same Parallel, have yet a more temperate and healthful Air, the Earth is overgrown with Under-wood in divers Places, and that so interwoven with Vines, that a Traveller must here sometimes cut his way thro': These Thickets harbour all sorts of Beasts of Prey, as Lions, Leopards, &c. tho' not so large and fierce as those of *Asia* and *Africa*; as also small Vermine, such as wild Cats, Foxes and Ratoons: These Parts were formerly possessed by the *Valli* or *Dogi*, but they are extinct, and the *Indians* fixed here are distinguished into the several Nations of *Maboe*, *Nuntaneck* or *Naulaly*, *Nahyssan*, *Sapan*, *Manageg*, *Maugoack*, *Akenatzi*, *Manakin*, &c. who have one Language in common, tho' they differ in Dialects; the Parts inhabited are pleasant and fruitful, clear of Wood and laid open to the Sun; the Valleys feed numerous Herds of Deer and Elks, larger than Oxen; they are called Savena's, the same being Marshy Grounds, and Yearly laid under Water, in the beginning of Summer, by Floods of melted Snow falling down from the Mountains. The *Apalatean* Mountains are barren Rocks where live nothing but Bears in the Hollow Clifts, yet to the Eastward they shoot out into great Promontories of rich Land, known by the high and spreading Trees which they bear, and are called by the *Indians Tauz Pemotnick* or *Aquott*; the Mountains rise higher to the N. E. and at *Sara* they sink so low, that they are easily passed over, but here as before noted they change their Course and Name, running due West, and are called *Sualy*, which rise higher and higher to the Westward.

The *Indians* in these Parts are none of those which the *English* removed from *Virginia*, but were driven by an Enemy from the North West, and invited to fix here by an Oracle, as they pretend above 400 Years ago; for the ancient Inhabitants of *Virginia* were far more rude and barbarous, feeding only upon raw Flesh and Fish, untill those taught them to sow Corn, and shewed them the use of it. These People have three ways of supplying their want of Letters; first by Counters; secondly by Emblems or Hierogliphicks; thirdly by Tradition from Father to Son, in Cony-holes, which when Children, they must learn by rote: They use Pebbles or short scaullings of Straw or Reeds for Counters, and where a Battle has been fought or a Colony Planted, they erect a small Pyramid of these Stones, consisting of the Slain or transplanted Numbers: Their Reeds and Straws serve them in Religious Ceremonies, for they lay them orderly in a Circle, when they are preparing for their Devotion or Sacrifices, and that performed, the Circle still remains; since 'tis Sacriledge to disturb or touch it; and the Dispositions and sorting of the Straws and Reeds, shew what kinds of Rites have been there celebrated, as Invocation, Sacrifice, Burial, &c. The Faculties of the Body and Mind, they usually express by Emblems, as by a Stag they instance Swiftness, Wrath by a Serpent, Courage by a Lyon, Fidelity by a Dog, and by a Swan they signifie the *English*, alluding to their Complexion and flight over the Sea; they keep an Account of Time and other Things on a String or Leather Thong tyed into small Knots of several Colours, and the *Oenacks* use small Wheels; every Nation gives his particular Arms, the *Sasquesabanaugh* bear a Tarapine or small Tortoise; the *Akenatzi* a Serpent; the *Vahyssanes* three Arrows, &c. They Worship one God, the Creator of all Things, who some call *Okee*, others *Mannith*, to whom alone the High Priest or *Perikn* offers Sacrifice, and that they believe he had no regard to sublunary Things; but Commits the Government of Mankind to lesser Deities, as *Quiaxosough* and *Tagkamsough*, i. e. Good and Evil Spirits; to these the inferior Priests pay their Devotion and Sacrifice, at which they recite in a lamentable Tone the Feats of their Ancestors: From four Women, *viz. Pask*, *Sepoy*, *Askarin* and *Maraskarin*, they deduce the Race of Mankind, which for that Reason they divide into four Tribes, distinguished under those several Names; they very religiously observe the degrees of Marriage, which they limit not to distance of Consanguinity, but difference of Tribes, which are continued in the Issue of Females, and for two of the same Tribe to Match, is abhorred as Incest, and punished with the greatest severity; they divide their Burying-Place into four Quarters, assigning one to every Tribe; for to mingle their Bodies, even when Dead, they esteem to be wicked and ominous. They commonly wrap up the Corps in Beasts Skins, and with it buy Provision and Houshold Stuff for its use in the other World, and when their great Men dye, they also kill some Prisoners of War to bear them Company: They believe the Transmigration of Souls; for they say, the Angry is possest with the Spirit of a Serpent, the Bloody with that of a Wolf, the Amorous of a Deer, the Faithful of a Dog, &c. and therefore they are figur'd by these Emblems: They Place the Residence of their lesser Deities beyond the Mountains and *Indian* Ocean; and tho' they want those means of improving natural Reason, which the use of Letters does afford us, yet they are not wholly destitute of Learning and Sciences, for by those little helps they have found out, many improve themselves to a considerable knowledge in Physick, Rhetorick, and Policy of State, for the Author, says he, had been present at several of their Consultations and Debates, and to his Admiration had heard

heard some of their Seniors deliver themselves with as much Judgment and Eloquence as he could have expected from Men of a liberal Education and good Literature.

He began his first Expedition *March* the 9th 1669 in the Company of three *Indians*, and went out at the Falls of *Pemeoncock*, or *York* River in *Virginia*, from an *Indian* Village called *Shichehamani*, and lay that Night in the Woods, encountring nothing remarkable but a Rattle-Snake of an extraordinary size, since he judged it two Yards and an half long, and as thick as a Man's Arm; by the distention of her Belly they thought her big with Young, but having killed and opened her, they found a small Squirrel there, and the *Indians* in resolving our Traveller's Doubts about the strangeness of such a Thing, plunged him into a greater astonishment, when they told him it was usual with these Serpents, when they lay basking in the Sun, to fetch down these Squirrels from the Tops of Trees by fixing their Eyes stedfastly upon them, with the Horror of which those little Animals were so terrified, that they had not Power to keep themselves from tumbling down into the very Jaws of their Enemy, who took in all his sustenance without chewing, tho' others have affirm'd that these Serpents climb up the Trees, and surprize their Prey in the Nest. Entring next Day into Marshy Grounds between *Pemeoncock*, and the head of the River *Matanenenah*, the heaviness of the way obliged him to cross *Pemeoncock* at the Confluence of it, and South Branches of it, in the *Peninsula* made, by which a great *Indian* King called *Totopotteme* was formerly Slain in Battle, fighting for the Christians against the *Malecocks* and *Nalissians*, from whence it retains its Name to this Day: Travelling thro' the Woods, a Doe seiz'd by a wild Cat, crossed the way, the miserable Creature being even spent with the Burden and Cruelty of her Rider, who having fastned on her Shoulder, ceased not to suck her Blood till she sunk under him, which being perceived by one of the *Indians*, he luckily shot her thro' the Belly with his Arrow, made her quit her Prey, making a terrible Grimace at them, but they escap'd her Revenge, which very probably had ensued, if the Wound had not been mortal: This Cat was somewhat bigger than an *English* Fox, of a reddish Grey, fierce, ravenous and cunning; for finding Deer too swift for them, they watch them upon the Branches of Trees, and as they walk or feed under them, jump down upon them; the Fur of the wild Cat, tho' not very fine, is yet valued for its vertue in removing Colds, Aches and Pains, if worn next the Body; their Flesh tho' very rank is eaten by the *Indians*: They found the way rough on the eleventh and twelfth, but on the thirteenth they reached the first Spring of *Pemeoncock*, having crossed the River that Day four Times, which was so shallow that it could hardly wet his Horses Patterns; here a little under the Earth, he found flat Pieces of petrified Matter, being Loadstone on one side, but Isinglass on the other, several of which Pieces, with a transparent Stone like Crystal, that cut Glass, and a white *Marchasite* that he bought of the *Indians*, he presented to Sir *William Berkley*, Governor of *Virginia*: On the fourteenth they descry'd from an high Hill the *Apalatean* Mountains to the West of them, but at such great distance that he could not distinguish whether they were Mountains or Clouds, until his *Indian* Fellow-Travellers prostrating themselves by way of Adoration, howled out after a barbarous manner, *Okie Peze*, i. e. God is nigh; next Day passing over the South Branch of *Rappahanock* River, he was almost swallowed up with a Quick-Sand: He dayly saw great Herds of red and fallow Deer, and Bears crashing most like Swine, on the sides of the Hills: Small Leopards he saw in the Woods, but never any Lyons, tho' their Skins are much wore by the *Indians*. The Wolfs are extreamly ravenous in these Parts, and are only feared by Fire; Beaver and Otter are in every River, and the Woods are full of Grey Foxes. On the seventeenth they reached the *Apalatei*, where the Air is very thick and Chill, and the Waters issuing out of the Mountains side, of a blue Colour, and allomith Taste. Having on the eighteenth attempted in vain to ride up, he left his Horse with one of the *Indians*, and with the other two *Indians*, and no small difficulty, got at last up to the Top of the Mountain, which is so high, that tho' he set out with the first appearance of Day, yet it was late before he reached the Top of the Mountain, from whence next Morning he saw the *Atlantick* Ocean, washing the *Virginian* Shoar; but to the North and West his sight was suddenly bounded with Mountains higher than that he stood upon; here he wandred in Snow for the most part till the 29th, hapning to find some Passage thro' the Mountains; but he was so oppress with Cold, that he was necessitated at last to return to the *Indian* with his Horse at the foot of the Mountain, the same way he went.

The Author began his second Expedition on the the 20th of *May* 1670. in Company with one Major *Harris*, twenty Christian Horsemen, and five *Indians*; and marched from the Falls of *James* River in *Virginia* towards the *Manakins*, by whom on the 22d they were welcomed by Volleys of Shot; near that Village they observed a Pyramid of Stone piled up together, which their Priests laid there, was the number of an *Indian* Colony drawn out by Lot from a neighbouring Country overstocked with People, and led thither by one *Monack*, from whom they were denominated. Here inquiring the way into the Mountains, an old Man with a Staff describ'd two Paths on the Ground, one pointing to *Mahocks*, and the other to *Nahyssans*, but the Author's *English* Company (for by the way you must know he was a *German*) slighting the *Indians* direction, formed their Course by the Compass due West, and so it fell out with them, as it does with those Land-Crabs that crawling backwards in a direct Line, cannot avoid those Trees that stand in their way, but climbing over their very tops, descend again on the other side, and so after a whole Days Labour, gain not above two foot of Ground; thus the Company going direct West, rode over steep and craggy Clifts, which beat their Horses quite off the Hoof, and in these Mountains they wandered from the 25th of *May* till the 3d of *June*, finding very little Sustenance, either for Man or Horse; but then they came to the South Branch of *James* River, which Major *Harris* observing to run southward, vainly suppos'd to be an Arm of the Lake of *Canada*, and was so elevated with the fancy, that he would have erected a Pillar in memory of the Discovery, if the fear of the *Mahock Indians*, and want of Food, had allowed him to stay; here our Author would have them cross the River and march on, but the rest of the Company were so weary of the Enterprise, that he must have run some danger of his Life, had he not been furnished with a private Commission from the Governor of *Virginia* to proceed, tho' the rest of the Company should forsake him. The lesser Hills or *Akeutshuck* are here impassable, and the Rocks at a distance resembled Eggs set an end. *James* River is here as broad as 'tis a 100 Miles lower at *Manakin*, and the Passage over it very dangerous; from the observation they made of Straws and rotten Chunks hanging in the Boughs of Trees on the Bank, and 22 Foot above Water, they argued that the melting Snow falling from the Mountains swelled the River to that height, the Air in these Parts was so moist, that all their Bisket became mouldy, and not fit to be eaten, so that some of them would now be glad of *Indian* Meal parched.

On the 5th of *June*, the Author and his Company parted good Friends, they return'd, and he with *Jack Setacon*, a *Susquesahanough Indian*, pursuing his Journy changed his Course from West to South West and by South, to avoid the Mountains. Major *Harris* at parting gave him a Gun, believing him a lost Man and given up as a Prey to *Indians* or savage Beasts, which made him forwarder in *Virginia* to relate strange things to his own Advantage and my Discredit: From the 5th to the 9th he travelled thro' difficult ways, without seeing any Town or *Indian*, and then arrived at *Stapan*, a Village of the *Nahyssans*, about 100 Miles distance from *Mahock*, upon a Branch of *Shawan* or *Korenock* River, and tho' he had just cause to be afraid of these *Indians*, because they had been in continual hostility with the Christians for ten Years before, yet presuming that the Barter which he carryed with him would procure him welcome, he entrusted himself with them, who examined him strictly from whence he came, whither he was going, and what his Business was; but when he had bestowed some Trifles of Glass and Metal amongst them, they were contented with easy Answers, and shewed him all the demonstrations of Kindness imaginable, as offering of Sacrifice, a Compliment shewed only to such as they designed to honour in a more particular manner. Yet they went further and consulted their Gods, whether they should admit him

into their Nation and Councils, and oblige him to dwell amongſt them by a Marriage with the King's, or ſome of their great Men's Daughters; but having with much ado waved their Courteſy, he got his Paſs-port, after he had given his Word he would return to them within ſix Months again. *Sapon* is within the Limits of *Carolina*, pleaſantly and advantageouſly ſituated, and tho' it ſtands high and upon a dry Ground, has the benefit of a fine River and a rich Soil. Their King's Reſidence, called *Pintabe*, is not far from hence, upon the ſame River, and happy in the ſame Advantages, both of Pleaſure and Profit; this Nation is governed by an abſolute Monarch; the People tall of Stature, Warlike and Rich: He ſaw great ſtore of Pearl unbored in their Temples or Oratories, which among other Spoils they had won from the *Indians* of *Florida*, and value as much as we do. From hence he directed his Courſe to *Akenatzi*, an Iſland bearing South and by Weſt, and about 50 Miles diſtant from *Sapon*, on a Branch of the ſame River: The Country tho' high is level, and for the moſt part a rich Soil, as he judged by the growth of the Trees; yet where it was inhabited by *Indians*, it lay open in ſpacious Plains, has a very good Air, and tho' he travelled in *June*, the heat of the Weather hindred him not from riding at all Hours, without being much incommoded by the Sun; he arrived at *Akenatzi June* 12th, where the Current of the River was ſo ſtrong, that his Horſe had much difficulty to reſiſt it; this Iſland tho' ſmall, maintains many Inhabitants, who are here ſecure enough, being naturally fortifyed with faſtneſſes of Mountains and Water on every ſide: Upon the North Shoar they Yearly reap great Crops of Corn, of which they always have a twelve Months Proviſion beforehand, for fear of an Invaſion from their powerful Neighbours: They are under the Government of two Kings, one excelling in Arms, and the other in Hunting and Agriculture: They hold all things, except their Wives, in common, and their Cuſtom in eating is, that every Man in his turn Feaſts all the reſt, and he that makes the Entertainment is ſeated between the two Kings, where having highly commended his own Cheer, they carve and diſtribute it among the Gueſts. At his arrival here, he met four Stranger *Indians*, whoſe Bodies were painted in various Colours, with the forms of Animals, the likeneſs of which he had never ſeen, and from ſome Diſcourſe and Signs that paſſed between them, he collected that they were the only Survivors of 50; who ſetting out together from a great Iſland, as is ſuppoſed from the North Weſt they croſſed a great Water, wherein moſt of them periſhed in a Storm, the reſt being famiſhed to Death in the Marſhes and Mountains, after two Months Voyage by Land and Water, in queſt of this Iſle of *Akenatzi*: The moſt reaſonable Conjecture he can form of this Relation is, that theſe *Indians* might come from *New Albion* or *California*, from whence we may imagine ſome great Arm of the *Indian* Ocean or Bay ſtretches into the Continent, towards the *Alapatean* Mountains in the nature of a midland Sea, wherein many of theſe *Indians* might have periſhed; to confirm which he adds, that he had heard ſeveral *Indians* teſtify, that the *Rickohockans*, who inhabit not far Weſt of the *Apalatean* Mountains, are ſeated upon a Land, as they term it, of great Waves, whereby 'tis ſuppos'd they mean the Sea-ſhoar: The Day after his Arrival at *Akenatzi*, a *Rickohockan* Ambaſſador, attended with five *Indians* with painted Faces, was receiv'd, and that Night invited to a *Ball*, according to their Faſhion, but in the height of their Jollity, the Room was ſuddenly darkned by a Smoak contrived on purpoſe, and for what Cauſe is unknown, the *Rickohockan* and his Retinue were barbarouſly Murdered, at which the *German* was ſo terrified, that he ſtole away next Day with his *Indian* Companion, without taking his leave of them.

On the 14th of *June* he purſued his Journey a South South Weſt Courſe, ſometimes by a beaten Path, and ſometimes over Hills and Rocks, and was forced to lye in the Woods; for tho the *Oenock Indians*, whom he ſought in a direct Line were not above thirty odd Miles diſtant from *Akenatzi*, yet he was obliged by the way to go ſo far round about, that he could not reach *Oenock* till the 16th, where the Country by the Induſtry of theſe *Indians* is very open and clear of Woods; their Town is built round a Field, where in their Sports, they exerciſe ſo much Labour and Violence, and in ſuch great Numbers, that he ſaw the Ground wet with the Sweat that dropped from their Bodies. Their chief Recreation is flinging of Stones; the People are of mean Stature and Courage, Covetous and Thieviſh, but induſtrious to earn a Penny, and therefore hire themſelves out to their Neighbours, who imploy them as Porters or Carryers. They plant abundance of Corn, reap three Crops in a Summer, and ſupply all the adjacent Parts out of their Graneries: They build their Houſes of Watling and Plaiſter; in the heat of Summer they go abroad in the Night under their Arbours of wild Palm; ſome make their Houſes of Reed and Bark: They generally build them round, and to each Houſe belongs a little Hovel like an Oven, where they lay up their Corn and Maſt, and keep it dry. They parch their Nuts and Acorns over the Fire, to take away their rank Oilineſs, which being afterwards preſſed, yield a Milky Liquor, and the Acorns an Amber-coloured Oyl: In theſe mixed together they dip their Cakes at great Entertainments, and ſo ſerve them up to their Gueſts as an extraordinary Dainty. Their Government is Democratical, and the Sentences of their old Men are received like Laws, or rather Oracles by them.

The *Shakory Indians* dwell fourteen Miles W. S. W. of the *Oenocks*, in a rich Soil, abounding, but yet agreeing in Cuſtom and Manners with the other; he paſſed them by, and after two Days Journey on the 19th of *June* arrived at *Watery*, about 40 Miles diſtant, and bearing W. S. W. off *Shakory*. This Nation differs in Government from all the other *Indians* in theſe Parts, for they are Slaves rather than Subjects to their King; their Monarch when he was there was a grave Man, and courteous to Strangers; yet he could not without ſorrow ſee his barbarous Superſtition, in hiring three Youths, and ſending them out to kill as many young Women of their Enemies as they could light on, to ſerve his Son, then newly dead, in the other World, as he vainly fancyed; and accordingly theſe Youths returned with the Skins torn off the Heads and Faces of three young Girls, which they preſented to his barbarous Majeſty, and were gratefully accepted by him. *June* 21ſt he left *Watary*, and keeping a Weſt Courſe, for near 30 Miles, came to *Sara* or *Suala*, ſituate near thoſe Mountains, from whence the *Indians* draw great quantities of Cinabar, with which when beaten to Powder, they colour their Faces, it being a deeper Purple than Vermilion, and is the ſame which is in ſo much eſteem with Phyſitians, being the firſt Element of Quickſilver; he alſo wondered to find here Cakes of white Salt amongſt them, but whether made of Sea-water, or taken out of Pits he knew not; tho' he was apt to believe the latter, becauſe the Sea was ſo remote from them: Theſe *Indians* are ſo indiſcreetly fond of their Children, that they will not chaſtiſe them for any Miſchief or Inſolence done by them. A Little Boy would have ſhot our Traveller thro' the Body with an Arrow had he not reconciled him with Preſents, and all this, becauſe he ſpurred his Horſe out of another Arrows way, which he levelled at him; this cauſed ſuch a Mutiny among the Youth of the Town, that the Seniors taking his Horſe and himſelf under Protection, had much ado to appeaſe them.

From *Sara* he kept a South South Weſt Courſe till the 25th of *June*, and then reached *Wiſacky*, which three Days Journy was more troubleſome to him than all his Travels beſides; the direct way from the one place to the other, being over a continued Marſh over-grown with Reeds, from whoſe Roots ſprung knotty Stumps, as hard and ſharp as Flint; he was forced to lead his Horſe all the way: This Nation was ſubject to a neighbouring King, reſiding on the Bank of a great Lake, called *Uſhery*, invironed on all ſides with Mountains and *Wiſacky* Marſh. Having on the 26th croſs'd a freſh River that runs into the Lake of *Uſhery*, he came to a Town which was more populous than any he had ſeen in his Journy. The King lived about three Miles from it, and tho' his Dominions were large and populous, yet he was in continual fear of the *Ouſtack-Indians* living on the oppoſite ſide of the Lake, a People ſo addicted to Arms, that even their Women take the Field, and ſhoot Arrows over their Husbands Shoulders, who ſhield them with Leathern Targets; the Men it ſeems fought with Silver Hatchets, for one of the *Uſheries* told him they were of the ſame Mettle with the Pommel of his Sword. They are a cruel Generation and prey upon People, whom they either ſteal or force away from the *Uſheries* in *Periagos*, to ſacrifice them

to their Idols. The *Ushery* Women delight much in Feather Ornaments, whereof they have great variety, but Peacocks are most in esteem; they are tolerably handsome, and are civiler in their Demeanor than the other Nations: These miserable Wretches are strangely infatuated with Satanical Illusions; it was horrible to see one of them with his Neck all on one side, foam at the Mouth, stand bare-foot upon burning Coals for near an Hour, and then recovering his Senses, leap out of the Fire without any sign of hurt. The Water of *Ushery* Lake seemed a little Brackish to his Taste, which he rather imputes to some mineral Waters that flow into it, than any Saltness it can have from the Sea; many pleasant Rivulets run into it, and it is well stored with Fish. He judged it to be about 10 Leagues broad, but how far the Lake extended westerly, he could neither learn nor guess: He understood upon enquiry, that two Days and an halfs Journey from hence to the South West there was a powerful Nation of Bearded Men, whom he supposed to be *Spaniards*, because the *Indians* never have any Beards, it being an universal Custom amongst them, to prevent their growth by plucking the young Hair up by the Roots. Westward lay a Government inhospitable to Strangers, and to the North, over the small Mountains lay the *Kickekockans*; he thought it not safe to venture himself amongst the *Spaniards*, and therefore on the 28th faced about and looked homewards.

To avoid *Wisacky* Marsh, he shaped his Course North East, and after three Days travelling over hilly ways, where he met with neither Path nor Road, he fell into a barren sandy Desart, where he suffered miserably for want of Water, the heat of the Summer having dryed up all the Springs, and left no sign of any, but the gravelly Channels thro' which they ran, so that if he had not now and then found a standing Pool, beset by Nature with shady Oaks, to defend it from the Ardour of the Sun, his *Indian* Companion, Horse and himself must certainly have perished. In this distress he travelled till the 12th of *July*, but then found the Head of a River, which afterwards proved to be the *Ernco*, whereby they were not only refreshed, but likewise had hopes of coming into a Country again, where they might find Game for Food at least, if not discover some new Nation or People. Wherefore having twice crossed that River, they were led by it on the 14th of *July* to the Town of *Katearas*, a Place of good Trade, and the Residence of the haughty Emperor of the *Toskiroro's*, called *Kaskesara*, vulgarly *Kaskous*: The grim Prince at his first appearance demanded his Gun and Shot, which he readily parted with, for fear of a worse Treatment. The People here at that time seemed prepared for some extraordinary Solemnity, for the better sort both of Men and Women, had very finely adorned themselves with bright Pieces of Copper in their Hair and Ears, and about their Arms and Necks, which upon festival Occasions they used as an extraordinary Bravery, whereby it seemed this Country had rich Mines of Copper; but feared the bloody *Kascous*; would not allow him to tarry for further information; wherefore leaving *Kascaras*, he travelled thro' the Woods till the 16th, when he arrived at *Kawitziokan*, an *Indian* Town upon a Branch of the River *Rorenoke*, which there he pass'd over and continued his Journey to *Meucherick*, from whence departing the 17, he lay all Night in the Woods, and next Morning betimes passing by *Natoway*, he that Evening reached *Apamatuck* in *Virginia*.

Lederer began his last Expedition *August* 20th 1670. in the Company of Colonel *Collet* of *Virginia*, 9 *English* Horse-men and 5 *Indians* on Foot, and that Night reached the Falls of *Rappahanock* River in *Indian-Manatepeuk*; next Day they passed it over, where it divides into two Branches North and South, keeping the main Branch North of them. They found it so shallow on the 23d, that it only wet their Horses Hoofs; on the 24th they travelled thro' the *Savanas*, and a little after arrived at the *Promontories* or Spurs of the *Apalatean* Mountains; the *Savanas* now mentioned are exceeding Pleasant, and feed vast numbers of red Deer, who for their unusual largness are improperly called *Elks*; for indeed the right *Elk*, tho' very common in *New-Scotland*, *Canada*, and those Northern Parts, is never seen on this side the Continent, since that which the *Virginians* call *Elk*, differs not at all from the red Deer of *Europe* but in his Dimensions, which are far greater, but yet the true *Elk* far exceeds them in bigness: Their Heads and Horns are not very different, but the Neck of the *Elk* is so short, that it hardly separates the Head from the Shoulders, which is the reason they cannot feed upon level Ground, but by falling on their Knees, tho' their Heads be a Yard Long; therefore they commonly either Brouse upon Trees, or standing up to the Belly in Ponds or Rivers feed upon the Banks; their Cingles or Tails are hardly three Inches long.

On the 26th of *August*, they came to the Mountains, where they were necessitated to leave their Horses with two or three *Indians*, and go up on foot; the ascent was so steep, and the Cold so intense, that after they had gained the top, they were discouraged from attempting to proceed any further, they seeing from hence another Mountain bearing North and by West to them of a prodigious height; for according to the Observation of the distance taken by Colonel *Collet*, it could not be less than fifty Leagues from the Place where they stood. Here *Ledeger* was stung in his Sleep by a Mountain-Spider, which had killed him, had not an *Indian* sucked out the Poison; for receiving the hurt in the tip of one of his Fingers, the Venom immediately shot up into his Shoulder, and so inflamed his Side, that its impossible to express the Torment: The method of Cure used, was first a small Dose of Snake-Root Powder, which he took in a little Water, and then making a kind of Plaister of the same, applyed it near to the Part affected. Having so done, the *Indian* swallowed some by way of Antidote himself, and sucked the Patients Finger's Ends so violently, that he felt the Venom retire back from his Side into his Shoulder, and from thence down his Arm: Having thus sucked half a score times and spit as often, he was eased of all his Pain, and perfectly recovered. This venemous Mountain-Spider is not unlike our great Blue-Spider, only 'tis sometimes somewhat longer, and he supposes the nature of its Poison to be much like that of the *Tarantula*: Our Patient being thus recovered, they unanimously returned back to the Place where they had left their Horses, and from thence rode home without attempting any further Discoveries.

Our Author says, they must certainly be in a great Error, who imagine that the Continent of *America* is but 8 or 10 Days Journey over from the *Atlantick* to the *Indian* Ocean, which must be acknowledged, if it be considered that *Drake* kept a W. N. W. Course from Cape *Mendocino* to *California*; however by what he could gather from the stranger *Indians* at *Akenatzi* of their Voyage by Sea, to the very Mountains from a far distant N. W. Country, he is brought over to the Opinion of those who think that the *Indian* Ocean does extend an Arm from *California* into the Continent, as far as the *Apalatean* Mountains, answerable to the gulphy end of *Florida* and *Mexico* on this side; yet he is far from believing that such great and Navigable Rivers are to be found on the other side of the *Apalateans*, falling into the *Indian* Ocean, as those which run from them to the Eastward: His first reason he deduces from the knowledge and experience already had of South *America*, whose *Andes* send the greatest Rivers in the World into the *Atlantick*, but none into the *Pacifick* Sea; and then he insists that all our Water-Fowls which delight in Lakes and Rivers, as Swans, Geese, *&c.* Come over the Mountains from the Lake of *Canada*, when 'tis frozen over every Winter, to our fresh Rivers, which they would never do, could they find any on the other side of the *Apalateans*.

As for those who would go upon Discoveries into the North Continent of *America*, they must take notice there are two Breaches in the *Apalatean* Mountains, opening a Passage into the western Parts of the Continent, one according to the Account he had from the *Indians*, is at a Place called *Tynodon*, to the Northward, the other at *Sara*, where he himself had been; but the way thither being thro' a vast Forest, where they seldom meet with any Path or Road, a Traveller must form his Course by a Compass; and for want of that some have taken their direction from the North side of the Trees, which is distinguished from the rest by quantities of thick Moss growing thereon. There will not many Obstructions occur to you on Horse-back, in your Passage to the Mountains, but where the Course is interrupted by the Branches of the great Rivers, which in many Places are not fordable, and therefore if you be unprovided of means or strength to make a Bridge by felling Trees across,

you

you may be forced to go a great way about: In this respect Company is necessary, but in others so inconvenient, that he would not advise above half a dozen or ten at most, to travel together, and of these the major part *Indians*, since the Nations in your way are apt to be jealous of Christians coming amongst them in any Numbers, but are as courteous and hearty to a few, from whom they apprehend no Danger: When you pass thro' an even level Country, where you can take no particular remarks from Hill or Waters to guide your self when you come back, you are not to forget to notch the Trees as you go along, with your small Hatcher, that at your return you may know when you fall into the same way you went: Instead of Bread, our Traveller used Meal of parched Maiz or *Indian* Wheat, which he seasoned at Meals with a little Salt; the same being more portable and strengthning than Bisket, and will suffer no mouldiness by any Weather; as for other Provisions, you may safely trust to your Gun, both for Deer and Fowl, but you must not forget to dry or parboil some of the last before you come to the Mountains, where you will meet with no Game, except a few Bears. Such as cannot lye on the Ground must be provided with light Hammocks, which hung in the Trees, are more cool and pleasant than any Bed whatsoever. The Expedition should be thus ordered; an *Indian* Scout or two ought to march before the Company as far as they can in sight, both for the finding out Provision, and discovering of Ambushes, if any should be laid by Enemies: The other *Indians* should keep on the right and left, armed not only with Guns, but Bills and Hatchets, to build some Arbours or Cottages of Boughs and Barks of Trees, to shelter and defend you from the injury of the Weather: Its necessary to make great Fires at Night round about the Place where you take up your Quarters, as well to scare wild Beasts away, as to purify the Air; neither must you fail to go the round at the close of the Evening, for then, and betimes in the Morning, the *Indians* put all their Designs in Execution; and never attempt any thing in the Night. When in the remote Parts you draw near to an *Indian* Town, you must by your Scouts inform your self whether they hold any Correspondence with the *Saſqueſahanaughs*; for to such you must give notice of your Approach by your Gun, which is not to be practised amongst other *Indians*, who not knowing their use, it would frighten and dispose them to some treacherous Practice against you. When you come to a Town, enter into no House till you are invited, and then seem not afraid to be led in pinioned like a Prisoner, for that is the Ceremony they use to Friends and Enemies without distinction: You must accept of an Invitation from the Seniors, before that of young Men; and refuse nothing that is offered or set before you, since they are very Jealous and sensible of the least slight and neglect from Strangers, and prone to Revenge.

As for Trade with the *Indians* our Traveller says, if you design to have one with Neighbouring *Indians* for the Skins of Deer, Beaver, Otter, wild Cat, Fox, *&c.* their best Truck is a sort of coarse trading Cloth, of which a Yard and an half makes a Mantle-Coat or Mantle fit for their wear; as also Axes, Hoes, Knives, Scisars, and all sorts of edged Tools; Guns, Powder and Shot, *&c.* they will greedily barter for; but to supply the *Indians* with Arms and Ammunition is prohibited in all *English* Governments. In dealing with the *Indians* you must be positive and at a Word, for if they find you fall any thing in your Price, they will spend time in higling for farther Abatements, and seldom conclude any Bargain. You may sometimes with Brandy or strong Liquor dispose them to an Humour of giving you ten times the value of your Commodity, but at other times they are so hard bound, that they will not offer half the Market-Price, especially if they be aware you have a design to Circumvent them with Drink, or that they think you have a desire to their Goods, which you must seem to slight and disparage: To the remoter *Indians* you must carry other kind of Truck, such as small Looking-Glasses, Pictures, Beads and Bracelets of Glass, Knives, Scisars, and all manner of Toys for Children, which they will purchase at any rate, either with their Current Coyn of small Shells, or perhaps with Pearl, Vermilion, and Pieces of Cristal; and towards *Ushery* with some odd Pieces of Plate or Bullion, which they sometimes receive in Truck from the *Oestacks*: To justify which Account our Traveller purchased some Pieces of unwrought Silver of the *Usheries*, for no other end than to justify this Account he gave of his second Expedition, which had not determined at *Ushery*, had he been accompanyed with half a score resolute Youths, that would have stuck to him in a farther Discovery towards the *Spanish* Mines.

The Captivity of Thomas Phelps *at* Machaness *in* Barbary, *and his strange escape from thence.*

Phelps *his Captivity at* Machaness *and Escape,* 1684, &c

ON the 27th of *Aug.* 1684. he sailed from the *Downs* in the *Success* of *London*, bound with Salt for *Bantry* in *Ireland*, from whence on the 20th of *September* he set Sail for the *Maderas*; but on the 5th of *October* being 100 Leagues West off the Rock of *Lisbon*, he espyed a Sail to Windward, who gave him Chase, and upon hailing one another made answer she was from *Algiers*, and sent out her Boat, but the *English* giving three Shouts, it so surprised the Enemy, that they went on board again; but tho' the *English* Man hereupon made all the Sail he could, yet the *Turk* quickly fetcht him up again, kept after her all Night, and in the Morning put up *Turkish* Colours, commanded the *English* Man to brace his Head Sails, and sent a Boat to demand his Pass. Aboard her was an ancient Moor, who had formerly been a Slave in *England*, and spoke the Language very well; he seeing the *English* in a readiness, with what Arms they had, asked if they had a mind to break the Peace, and told the Master out of the Boat, that he need not trouble himself to keep them out of his Vessel, for none of them could be persuaded to come on board him: The Master hereupon having shewed his Custom-house Cockets, for he had no Pass-boards, the *Moor* carryed them to the Captain, whom nothing would satisfie but that the Master himself must come on board him; after which having wheedled all his Men, under pretence that they were *Portuguese* on board him also, except two; he now as freely discovered what before he as industriously concealed, that he was a *Salle*-Man, and took the Ship, after which they cruised about 30 Leagues to the west of the Northern Cape, and in about a fortnight took one *Samuel Crompton* from *Faro*, and then a small Ketch from *Cadiz*, with Sherry and Raisins, bound for *Limerick*; so that the number of Christians taken on board the three Prizes, amounted to 25, besides 12 that were before on Board the Pyrate: This done, he made all the Sail he could for *Salle*, on whose Bar runs a great Sea, which obliged them to come to an Anchor near it, at what time all the Christian Captives were let loose from their Iron Shackles, and the Captain sent his Boat ashoar, during which the Christians observing the *Moors* fell all asleep, and that the Captain also with his Head over the Rail upon the half Deck, seemed deeply engaged; *Phelps* observing the Opportunity, would have engag'd his fellow Slaves to have dispatch'd the Infidels, and seized the Ship, but one of them standing off, the design proved abortive. They stood in at four in the Afternoon for the Bar, and at Night the Prisoners being carryed Ashoar, were lodged in an old Barn, without the least Accommodations, and in a short time an Order came, that all of them should be carryed to *Machaness*, which is about 70 Miles distant from *Salle* where they arrived in two Days and an half; being brought before the Emperor, *Muley Ismael*, he ordered them to be sent amongst the rest of his Slaves: Its impossible to relate the many Cruelties of this Prince; our Author was an Eye-Witness the second Day after his arrival there, of his lancing 27 Negroes one after another, and every Day after till

New-

New-Years Day, he saw or heard of some inhuman Action perpetrated by him. Nay *Hansed Ben Haddu* that was Ambassador in *England* two or three Years before, notwithstanding all the Civility shewed him there, and his seeming good Deportment, was so far from retaliating our Nations Kindness, that his usual Salutations to the *English* Slaves was *Alli Hazzebuck*, i. e. *God roast your Soul.* The Bread they were fed with was of Barley, but Black, and withal stunk, the Corn being kept seven Years under Ground before used, and one Days allowance, if sold, would not yield above three Farthings: Beef and Mutton was cheap, but Mony very scarce. The work of the Slaves was continually building Houses and Walls, the Materials and Method very odd; for there are Boxes of Wood of Dimensions according to Pleasure, which they fill with Earth powdred, and Lime and Gravel well beat together, and tempered with Water, and when full they remove the Box according to order, and withdraw the Box Planks, and leave this matter to Dry, which then will acquire an incredible hardness, and is very durable: The Emperor himself has sometimes worked in the Lime and Dirt for an Hour together, and would incourage the Slaves, saying *Liferal, God send you to your own Countries.* The Reader may very well imagine, how weary the Christians were of their Captivity: Indeed *Phelps* his Friends in *England* had given order to Mr. *Luddington*, an *English* Merchant in *Barbary*, to endeavour his relief, if 150 *l.* would effect it; but that being refused, he resolved to search out all Opportunities to make his Escape, tho' with the hazzard of his Life; at length he open'd his Mind to Mr. *Baxter*, who about two Years and an half before had made an unlucky Attempt to run away, but being taken, received the Bastinado in such a manner, that he could not Work for a 12 Month after, having Irons continually on his Legs, and who, notwithstanding all he had suffered, engaged in the Enterprise with two *Bristol* Men, who were ready at an Hours warning, when the other appointed: There were then about 800 Christian Slaves of all Nations at *Machaness*, of which 260 were *English*, many of whom offered good Ransoms, and the King refused to discharge none particularly, but that they should go all together, and having set forwards on the first of *July* towards *Santa Cruz* with a Potent Army against his Nephew, so as to leave none of them any hopes of their Liberty till his return; *Phelps* and his Companions, *viz. Edmund Baxter*, *Anthony Bayle*, and *James Ingram*, thought it high time to put their projected escape in Execution.

They agreed on the 29th of *May*, with their Guardian *Moors* for a Blankil, *i. e.* two Pence apiece to have the liberty to be excused from Working that Day; wherefore they went to the Town of *Machaness*, and having but a small matter of Mony about them, *viz.* nine Blankils, they laid it out in Bread, and two small Bullocks Bladders, with a little Burdock to carry Water in. About three in the Afternoon they began their Journy, designing to go as far as an old House, called the King's House, 3 Miles from the Town, where they designed to hide themselves till Night; but proceeding in their Journy they discovered upon a loaded Horse, the *Moors* who lived at that House, which obliged them to quicken their Pace, and keep ahead of him, and coming near the House they discovered about 20 *Moors* sitting there, at which they were much surprised, but providentially discovering a Parcel of Lime-Kills on one side of the House, they struck up to them immediately, without the *Moors* observations, where they lay flat on their Bellies: About half an Hour after came two *Moorish* Women thither to gather some loose Wood, at which they thinking it not convenient to show themselves fearful, lest they should be taken for Renagadoes, spoke to them, and so continuing there without any molestation till Night, they pursued their Journey, travelled 19 Miles that Night, and passed by a great many Tents, from whence the *Moors* saw 'em, but mistook them for their own Country-men: They crossed the great River that runs down to *Mamora*, and about a Mile from the Creeks thereof, found a convenient Bush, where they remained all the following Day, without any disturbance: They found themselves under a necessity at Night of returning to the same River to be supply'd with Water, and so continued their Progress twelve Miles before Day-break, when they found a convenient Bush near to a great Valley, where they reposed themselves, and tho' they saw a great many Cattle in the bottom, and *Moors* looking after them, yet by Divine Providence none came near them, and so they lay safe all that Day, which was the last of *May*.

They set forwards at Night thro' the Woods, where there were no *Moorish* Inhabitants, but only wild Beasts, who never attempted to come near them: They travelled 10 Miles that Night, then crossed a River, which supplyed them with Water, whereof they stood in need; on the other side of the River they observed the Footsteps of a great many Cattle, which rendred the Place, as they thought, unsafe for them, and therefore they advanced a little farther in the Morning to the top of the Hill, where under a large Oak they found a Bush convenient for their reception that Day, but they were soon disturbed, for observing the Cattle to come grasing up the Hill, directly to that Bush, with *Moors* at their Heels, they hastily trussed up their Baggage, and ran a Mile farther undiscovered, till they came to a Pear-tree surrounded with long Grass, where they took up their Quarters all that Day. They thought to have pursued their Journy next Night; but *Phelps* hapned to be so lamed with the Gout, that he was not able to stand, and therefore they were necessitated to tarry there all that Night, and next Day also. The readiest Expedient he had for his Distemper was to make a Fire in a Hole in the Ground, into which he put his Foot, to draw out the Pain, having also a Lancet with them, he endeavoured to breath a Vein in his Foot, but could not, however the force of the Fire gave him some Ease: His Company being sensible of the delay occasioned by his Distemper, told him, if he could not march with them that Night, they must leave him; the apprehensions whereof made him strain his utmost *June* 3d at Night to advance forward, tho' in great Pain, so that he could not proceed above three Miles, and therefore they consented to rest with him the remainder of that Night under a Pear-tree; he kept bathing his Foot all the next Day in the Ground, till about two in the Afternoon, in the interim of which he got Mr. *Baxter* to make him a Wooden Leg, and having perswaded his Companions to travel about 3 or 4 Miles that Afternoon, which would a little ease the Labour of the Night, he went four Miles with that Leg, and then rested on the top of an high Hill till Night, when they shaped their Course clear of the Tents in the Valley before them, and travelled over the Edge of the Plain about six Miles, passing by several Corn-Fields, from which the *Moors* in the mean time hallowed to frighten the wild Beasts: Crossing a River that Night, they saw and heard several Lyons, some of which drew so near, that they could almost have touched them, but as soon as they struck Fire, they presently went off. They rested and concealed themselves next Day as well as they could, and at Night pursued their Journey. *Phelps* was still lame, and much obstructed his Companions. Their Bread was also almost spent, the Consideration of which made him strain hard to get 8 Miles that Night; by resting next Day he found himself somewhat better, but to qualifie his Joy, *Anthony Bayle* began to sink and give over. They travelled ten Miles on the 6th of *June* at Night; and coming to a great Swamp, where *Phelps* his Pain renewed, he could by no Intreaties perswade his Companions to stay, and therefore sharing their Bread, it came to no more than two half Rusks apiece; but suddenly thro' Divine Mercy his Pain abated, and they travelled that Night over a high barren Hill, from whence they fancyed they heard the Noise of the Sea, which made them mend their Pace till they came to a Garden, where their Bread being now spent, they were refreshed with some small Pumkins: They travelled no more than eight Miles that Night, for meeting with a great Oak which was blown down, they would not overslip so advantageous a retirement for next Day, and the rather because they heard a great many *Moors*, tho' they could not see them. They lay still all the next Day, being much pleased with hearing the Noise of the Sea, and in the Night going upon the Shoar, they found themselves to the Southward of *Mamora*, which made them direct their Course for two Miles Northwards, when they could discern the Castle, but could not get to the North of it, because the great River goes directly up into the Country, wherefore they retired to a convenient Bush, and tarryed there all that Day.

They

They gathered about half a Peck of Snails on the 8th, and caught a Land Torroiſe, which they roaſted and eat heartily, and the ſame Day they ſaw a Ship in the *Offing*, in the Night made down to the Caſtle, and before they were aware fell upon a *Moor* making a Fire, ſo that they were forced to take a round to the Caſtle, where there was ſo ſtrong a Watch, that they reſolved to go for *Salle*, about 18 or 20 Miles to the Southward, and reſolved to ſteer their Courſe by the Sea-ſide, but reſt all the next Day without any diſturbance: As they travelled on the 9th they ſaw a great deal of Raft-Timber, which made them reſolve, ſeeing the Ship in the *Offing*, to make a Raft, but it would not Swim, and ſo they came aſhoar, and cutting all their Laſhings, left it to the mercy of the Sea; that Night they travelled 5 Miles towards *Salle*, and took up their Quarters in a Fir-tree, about ſeven Miles ſhort of it, they ſet forward on the 10th, and fell upon a parcel of Tents, where tho' the Dogs were ready to ſeize them, they paſſed on without making any Anſwer to the *Moors* that called to them, gathered ſome Pumkins in an adjacent Garden, and lay in a Buſh in a great Valley about a Mile out of the Town: About Eleven a Clock that Day, they ſaw a Boy with a Dog keeping of Sheep, but yet not forgetting his Game, which was hunting Partridges, he beat the Buſh wherein they lay, threw in Stones, and the Dog alſo did his Part, but by a Miracle, as they thought, they were not diſcovered. On the 11th at Night they went down to the River of *Salle*, about a Mile above the Town, where they found a Boat, but could not with all their Strength launch her. *Phelps* and *Bayle*, who were the only Swimmers, made over to the South Side of the River, where they found three Boats, but all aground, ſo that they could do no good with them; but then ſearching about the new Ships building there, which were Five in Number, they found two Oars, with which they Swam over to their Comrades, and going down by the Rivers ſide to the Harbours Mouth, they could meet with no Boat to put their Oars in, they ſaw two *Dutch* Men in the River, who kept ſuch ſtrict Watch, that they could not carry off their Boat, wherefore having concluded to bury their Oars in the Sand, they betook themſelves to find out a Sanctuary for the following Day, which was in a Fig-tree full of Leaves, in an unfrequented Place, as they thought, on the North ſide of the River, yet within call of the Ships, which were then a building. Here they ſafely had protection for the next Day, tho' a *Moor* came and hung up his Shirt to dry upon the very ſame Tree, and ſate down not far off, to lowſe himſelf; on the 12th at Night they went down to the River Side, to look after a Boat they obſerved was moored there, and padled her down cloſe by the *Dutch*-men, who ſaw, but ſaid nothing to them, then putting aſhoar, and fetching their Oars, they continued padling till they had paſt a *French*-Man, who likewiſe took no notice of them, after which having ſhipped our their Oars, they rowed right into the Sea, their Courſe by the North Star being W. N. W. having rowed about four Miles they ſaw a Ship at Anchor, which obliged them to alter their Courſe, and row Northward till they had paſſed her about two Leagues then lay upon their Oars: When Day broke they ſaw her with her Sails looſe, upon which *Phelps* told his Comrades, that it was his Opinion, if ſhe were a *Sale-Man*, ſhe would make in for the Bar at that time, becauſe the Tide and the Sea-Breeze were then both favourable, it being high Water at 7 a Clock, but if ſhe were an *Engliſh* Man of War, as they heartily wiſhed, then they thought the Sea-breeze would make her ſtand off to Sea; and at length having perſwaded the Company to row in to her, they happily found her to be the *Lark* Frigate, Captain *Leighton* Commander.

After ſome Examination and Diſcourſe about the Means and Methods of their Eſcape, *Phelps* propoſed to the Captain that if he would accommodate him with his Boat and thoſe belonging to the other two Men of War in Company, he would undertake to Pilote them in, and burn what Ships there were then in *Mamora*, which made the Captain immediately ſtand to the Northward and come up with the other two Ships, which were the *Bonadventure* and *Greyhound*: The Admiral was Sick at *Cadiz*, ſo that they went on Board Captain *Mackdonald*, who was the Eldeſt Commander, and ſending for Mr. *Fairborn*, who was then Captain under Captain *Prieſtman*, Sick as aforeſaid, they held a Council what to do, and at laſt conſidering the forwardneſs of the Men, who that very Day had eſcaped a heavy Slavery, and were yet willing that Night to engage in the Action, they concluded the Enterpriſe both poſſible and feaſible; after which *Phelps* returning on Board the *Lark*, and having communicated the reſult of the Council to his Comrade Mr. *Baxter*, he being well acquainted with the Bar, was much pleaſed, and ordered into the *Bonadventure*'s Boat. This done, Orders were preſently given to ſhave ſome Deal-Boards, and ſaw ſome Tar-Barrels, and all Things being ready by ſeven at Night, the *Greyhound*'s Boat, wherein was *Phelps*, was commanded ahead, and the reſt had Orders to follow them; there were three Barges in all and one Yawl, the number of Men engaged in the Action was 42, who were ſtrickly charged upon pain of Death, not to ſeek after Plunder, which was punctually obſerved; about 8 they put off from the Ships, and betwixt 9 and 10 fell a little to the Northward of the Bar; but by *Baxter*'s aſſiſtance they quickly righted themſelves, and found the Bar: There was a great Noiſe on the Shoar, all having taken the Alarm, but the *Engliſh* not a wit diſcouraged, perſued their Deſign towards the Ships, aboard which there being a great many Lights, they obſerved the *Moors* looking over the ſide of the firſt they came to, which was the biggeſt, and called to keep off, but they anſwering the Infidels with about 20 Granadoes, ſoon drove them over-board, ſo that the *Engliſh* preſently entred, and being not long in taking in their Shavings and Tarr-barrels, ſet her on Fire in ſeveral Places; ſoon after which hearing the Noiſe of ſome People in the Hold, they opened the Hatches, and thereby ſaved the Lives of three *Dutch* Men and one *French* Man, who told them that the Ship on Fire was Admiral, and belonged to *Aly-Hackum*, and the other which quickly after run the ſame Fate, and was called *Plummage Cortike*, was the very Ship that in *October* before took *Thomas Phelps*, the Author of this Relation Captive: The Flame was ſo fierce, that they were forced to keep off from the Ship's Sides, whereby they became expos'd to the great and ſmall Shot of the *Moors* from the Caſtle Walls, tho' with little or no Execution, for the *Engliſh* made very ſmart returns upon them, and with that eagerneſs, that they quite neglected their Oars, ſo that if the Tide had not turned to Ebb, they ſhould have ran a great Riſque; the Men were ſo full of Joy, that they never minded the Dangers they might be ſubject to, they were therefore forced to tow the *Bonadventure*'s Yawl, who had loſt all her Oars. They had but one Man mortally wounded, and two or three ſlightly hurt in the whole Action: *Phelps* and his Comrade Captives continued on Board Captain *Mackdonald*, till they came to *Cadiz*, where they went aſhoar, in order to a Paſſage for *England* with the firſt Opportunity, *Mackdonald* having firſt given them Certificates of their Service in the late Action, and then *Phelps* and *Baxter* took their leave of him, and not long after having the conveniency of a Paſſage, on Board Captain *Atkins*, they left *Cadiz July* 1ſt, 1658. and on the 26th of the ſame Month arrived ſafely in the *Downs*.

The Expedition of the Engliſh *and* Dutch *Fleets to* Vigo *in* Gallicia, *with the Land Forces under the Command of the Duke of* Ormond, *in* 1702.

Expedition to Vigo. 1702.

SIR *George Rook*, Vice Admiral of *England*, and Admiral of her Majeſties Fleet, returning home on the 21ſt of *September* from the unfortunate Expedition before *Cadiz*, ſent the *Eagle*, *Sterling-Caſtle*, and the *Pembroke*, with ſome Tranſports to take in Water at *Lagos-Bay*, where arriving on the 22th about five in the Afternoon, the Land Officers on Board the *Pembroke* went aſhoar, in whoſe Company was Mr. *Beauvoir*, Chaplain of the Ship: When they came to the Town they could find no Body that could underſtand them, ſo that rowing for ſome time from Place to Place, the Chaplain at length eſpying a Gentleman, who by his Countenance and Garb appear'd to be no *Portugueſe*, and addreſſing himſelf to him in the *French* Language, he proved to be the *French* Conſul, into whoſe Favour Mr. *Beauvoir* ſo far inſinuated himſelf, that the other offered the uſe of his Houſe, both for himſelf and ſome of his Friends; they lay there two Nights, during which time, the Chaplain having an opportunity of ſeveral Converſations with the Conſul; the later boaſtingly magnified the Power of *France*, adding that his Moſt Chriſtian Majeſty would have ſuch a Potent Fleet at Sea the following Summer, that neither the *Engliſh* nor *Dutch* ſhould dare to ſtir out of their Harbours; for the proving of which he gave the Chaplain broad Hints of Mr. *Chateaurenaud*'s being ſafe not far off with the Galleons. On the 24th in the Evening the Chaplain being informed that there was a Gentleman come from *Lisbon*, bound for the Fleet, and that he deſigned next Morning to go on board one of the *Engliſh* Men of War, his Curioſity led him to ſend to the Gentleman, to acquaint him, that if he did not go on Board that Night, he would looſe his Paſſage, ſince the Squadron was to ſail away early next Morning, and that if he pleaſed to go off, he had a Boat at his Service, and he ſhould be welcome on board the *Pembroke*; the Gentleman having accepted the Invitation, and both of them now waiting aſhoar for the Boat, *Beauvoir* asked the Gentleman what News, great News anſwered the other, for *Chateaurenaud* is at *Vigo*, with thirty Men of War, and two and twenty Galleons, being much the ſame Number the *French* Conſul had mentioned to the Chaplain, whoſe Curioſity increaſing, he inquired farther who he was, and from whence he came, to which the Gentleman replyed, he was both a *Spaniard* and a *German*, that he came from *Lisbon*, was ſent by the Imperial Ambaſſador at that Court to *Faro*, in order to go on Board the Fleet, which they ſuppoſed to be ſtill before *Cadiz*; but that coming thither, he found the Fleet had paſſed by, and that being informed of an *Engliſh* Squadron being in *Lagos-Bay*, he came to that Town to get him a Paſſage, and that he had two Letters, one for the Prince of *Heſſe*, and the other for Mr. *Methwen*, Junior; which contained the particulars of that Important News, for the confirming of which he pulled them out of his Pocket, and ſhewed them to Mr. *Beauvoir*; the latter being ſatisfied with the Truth of what the Gentleman ſaid, and at the ſame time knowing that the Prince of *Heſſe*, and Mr. *Methwen* were gone from on Board the Fleet for *Lisbon*, he had ſo much Preſence of Mind as to conceal it from the Meſſenger, leaſt he ſhould refuſe to go along with him, and ſo carryed him on Board the *Pembroke*, where they found the Captain already a Bed, and the Meſſenger being tired with his long Journy, went alſo immediately to repoſe himſelf. However the Chaplain impatient of diſcovering what Intelligence he had got, bolted into the great Cabbin, awaked Captain *Hardy*, and having acquainted him with the News of the *French* Squadron and *Spaniſh* Galleons being at *Vigo*, the Meſſenger next Morning confirmed the ſame, and produced his Letters; but when he heard that the Prince and Mr. *Methwen* were gone by Sea to *Lisbon*, he was much ſurpriſed, and earneſtly deſired to be put Aſhoar, which the Captain agreed to, and having at the ſame time acquainted Captain *Wiſhard*, who Commanded the *Eagle*, and all the Squadron with the Intelligence he had gained; there was immediately a Conſultation of Captains held, wherein it was reſolved, that this News was of ſuch vaſt Importance that a Ship ſhould be ſent to acquaint the Admiral with it, and as Captain *Hardy* had the beſt Sailor, and was Maſter of the Intelligence, he was pitched upon to ſail a head to find out the Fleet; he was put upon ſo very difficult a Piece of Work, that had he not been a very experienced Sea-man, and eminently Zealous for the Service, he had ſcarce ever have been able to have effected it; for to ſay nothing of the Fleets having ſteered various Courſes, by reaſon of the variableneſs of the Weather, the Head of his Ship was looſe, which endangered his Maſts, his Ship very leaky, and himſelf and all his Men were reduced to two Biskets a Day. However, bravely ſurmounting all thoſe Difficulties, and the preſſing Inſtances of his Men to bear away for *England*, he traverſed the Sea, and Cruiſed till the Sixth of *October*, when he happily found the Fleet, and acquainted the Admiral with the News, he imparted the ſame immediately to the *Dutch* Admiral, and having declared it his Opinion that they ſhould all directly ſet ſail for *Vigo*, the *Dutch* Admiral readily concurr'd; and Sir *George* having next Day called a Council of Flag-Officers, it was reſolved that in regard the attempting and deſtroying the *French* and *Spaniſh* Ships at *Vigo*, would be of great Advantage to her Majeſty, and no leſs honourable to her and her Allies, and lead in a great meaſure to reduce the exorbitant Power of *France*, the Fleet ſhould make the beſt of their way to that Port, and fall on immediately with the whole Line, if there were room ſufficient for it, otherwiſe to attack the Enemy with ſuch Detachments as might render the Enterpriſe moſt effectual and ſucceſsful.

The Fleet, purſuant to the Reſolutions of the Council of War, began to ſteer their Courſe towards *Vigo*, and the Admiral having diſpatched two Frigats for Intelligence, they return'd on the 9th of *October* at Night, with a Confirmation of Captain *Hardy*'s Account, adding, that the Enemies Ships lay up the River in *Radondella* Harbour, and one of Sir *Cloudſley Shovel*'s Squadron coming into the Fleet next Morning, that that Admiral was off Cape *Finiſter*, there was Orders ſent him to joyn the Grand Fleet: On the 11th in the Afternoon the Fleet came to an Anchor at *Vigo*, the Weather having proved ſo hazy, that the Town never diſcovered them, till they were juſt upon it, and tho' they fired very much from that Place, yet the Confederates took little notice of it. The *French* Admiral *Chateaurenaud* to give him his due Commendation, had taken all humane Precautions to ſecure his Fleet, for he had not only drawn them up beyond a very narrow Streight, defended by a Caſtle at the one ſide, and Platforms on both Sides of the Streight, whereon he had planted his beſt Guns, but he had likewiſe laid athwart it a very ſtrong Boom, made up of Maſts, Yards, Cables, Top-Chains and Caſts, about three Yards in Circumference, and kept ſteddy by Anchors caſt on both ſides of it: On the other hand, as ſoon as the Confederate Fleet came to an Anchor, the Admiral called a general Council of Sea and Land Officers, wherein it was concluded; that ſince the whole Fleet could not attempt the Enemies Ships without manifeſt Danger of running foul upon one another, a Detachment of fifteen *Engliſh* and ten *Dutch* Men of War, of the Line of Battle, with all the Fire-ſhips, ſhould be ſent in with Orders to uſe their beſt Endeavours to take or deſtroy the Enemies Fleet; that the Frigates and Bomb-Veſſels ſhould follow the rear of the Detatchment, and that the great Ships ſhould move after them and go in, if there ſhould be occaſion; that the Army at the ſame time ſhould Land and attack the Port on the South of *Rodondella*, and thence proceed on, where they might moſt effectually annoy the Enemy; that becauſe it was not well known what depth of Water there might be, the Attempt ſhould be made with the ſmaller Ships, and that to give the better Countenance to the Service, all the Flag-Officers ſhould go in with the Squadron.

For

For the better Execution of these Resolutions, the Admiral spent a great part of the Night in going from Ship to Ship, in his own Boat, to give the necessary Orders, and to incourage both Officers and Sea-men to do their Duty next Day, which was the 12th of *October* in the Morning, the Duke of *Ormand* being landed in a Sandy-Bay about two Leagues distance from *Viga*, with near 2500 on the South Side of the River, and without any opposition, ordered the Granadeers, under my Lord *Shannon* and Collonel *Pierce*, to march directly to the Fort that guarded the Entrance into the Harbour, where the Boom lay, which they executed with much Alacrity and Courage; and the Duke himself at the Head of the rest of the Forces marched on Foot over craggy Mountains to sustein the first Detachment: At the same time there appeared about eight thousand Men, between the Fort and the Hills, yet made only a feint shew of Skirmishing at a distance, and as the Granadeers advanced, they retired, and the former in like manner driving before them another Party of of the Enemy, followed them to the very Port, and bravely made themselves Masters of the lower Platform, whereon were 28 Pieces of Cannon; hereupon Lieutenant General *Churchil's* Regiment advanced on the left, and took their Posts as they saw most Convenient: The Batteries being taken, the Enemy retired into an old Castle or Stone-Tower, and from thence for some short time fired briskly upon the *English*, but the Granadeers plying them warmly with their Granadoes, and pelting them with their Fuzees as soon as they appear'd on the Wall. M. *de Soree*, a valiant *French* Captain of a Man of War, who Commanded in the Fort, having incouraged his Men to make a daring push for their Lives, opened the Gates, intending to force his way thro' the *English* with Sword in Hand; but the Granadeers rushing immediately into the Castle, made themselves Masters of it, and took near three hundred *French* Seamen, and fifty *Spaniards*, with their Officers, Prisoners at discretion: A small Party of the Enemy endeavoured to make their escape thro' the Water, but were stopped by a Detatchment of the *Dutch*; nor were those in the Fleet Idle Spectators of all this Bravery of our Men by Land, for as soon as the Land Forces were got on Shoar, the Admiral gave the Signal to weigh, the Line was formed, and the Squadron was briskly bearing up to the Boom, but when the Van was got within Cannon Shot of the Batteries, it fell calm, so that they were necessitated to come to an Anchor again, however a fresh Gale coming up not long after, Vice-Admiral *Hopson* in the *Torbay*, being next the Enemy, immediately cut his Cables, clapt on all his Sails, and bearing up directly upon the Boom, amidst all the Enemies Fire, broke thro' it at once, cast Anchor between the *Bourbon* and *L'Esperance*, or the *Hope*, two *French* Men of War, which Count *Chateaurenaud* had placed near the Boom, and with unparelled Resolution received several Broad-sides from them: The rest of Vice-Admiral *Hopson's* Division, and Vice-Admiral *Vandergoes*, with his Detatchment having weighed at the same time, sailed a breast towards the Boom, to add the greater weight and force to the Shock, but being becalmed they all stuck and were obliged to hack and cut their way thro'; but a fresh Gale blowing again, the *Dutch* Vice-Admiral made such good use of it, that having nicked the Passage which the valiant *Hopson* had made, he boldly went in and made himself Master of the *Bourbon*. All this while Admiral *Hopson* was in extream Danger, for being clapt on Board by a *French* Fire-ship, whereby his Rigging was presently set on Fire, he expected every Moment to be Burnt, but it very fortunately fell out, that the *French* Ship, which indeed was a Merchant Man laden with Snuff, and fitted up in haste for a Fire, being blown up, the Snuff in some measure extinguished the Fire, and preserved the *English* Man of War from being consumed: However the Vice-Admiral received considerable Damage in this Action, for besides his having the Fore-top-mast Shot by the Board, 115 Men killed and Drowned, and Nine Wounded, most of his Sails were Burnt and Scorched, his Fore-yard burnt to a Coal, and his Larboard Shrouds fore and aft burnt at the Dead Eyes, insomuch that he was afterwards necessitated to leave his own Ship, and hoist his Flag on board the *Monmouth*: At the same time Captain *Bucknam* in the *Association* laid his Broad-side against a Battery of 17 Guns on the other side of the Harbour, so that for a long while there was a considerable Firing of great and small Shot on both sides, till the *French* Admiral seeing the Platform and Fort in the Hands of the victorious *English*, his Fireship spent in vain, the *Bourbon* taken, the Boom cut, and the Confederate Fleet pouring in upon him, he set Fire to his own Ship, and ordered the rest of the Captains under his Command to follow his Example, yet could not be so punctually obeyed, but that several Men of War and Galleons were taken by the *English* and *Dutch*, as appears by the following List.

French Ships in the Harbour of *Redondello*.

Ships Names.	Captains Names.	N. G.
1. *Le Fort*,	*Chateau Renault*,	76
2. *Le Prompte*,	*Beaujeu*,	76
3. *L'Assure*,	*D'Aliegre*,	66
4. *L'Esperance*,	Mar. *Gallisoniere*,	70
5. *Le Bourbon*,	*Mon. Bolt*,	68
6. *La Sirenne*,	*Mon. Gen*,	60
7. *Le Solide*,	*Chamelin*,	56
8. *Le Firme*,	*Boissier*,	72
9. *Le Prudent*,	*Grand Pre*,	62
10. *Le Modere*,	*L'Aurier*,	56
11. *Le Superbe*,	*Botteville*,	70
12. *La Dauphie*,	*Duplesis*,	46
13. *Le Volontaire*,	*Soree*,	46
14. *Le Triton*,	*De Counte*,	42
15. *L'Enflame*.	*Tricumbault*,	64

Abovesaid Ships taken and destroy'd, are as follows:

1. Burnt.
2. Taken, and will be carried Home.
3. Taken, and will be carried Home.
4. Taken, but run ashore and bilg'd and sunk.
5. Taken by the *Dutch*.
6. Taken, but run ashore and bilg'd.
7. Burnt.
8. Taken, and will be carried Home.
9. Burnt.
10. Taken, and will be carried Home.
11. Taken, but run ashore and bilg'd.
12. Burnt.

12. Burnt.
13. Taken, but run aſhore and bilg'd.
14. Taken, and will be carried Home.
15. Burnt.

Frigats, 2. The *L'Entreprenant*, 22 Guns, Capt. *Poligna*, Burnt. The *Choquante*, 8 Guns, Capt. *St. Oſman*, Burnt. *Le Fercis*, Fireſhip, Capt. *Deloſiallets*, Burnt.

Seventeen Galleons, 4 afloat, 2 aſhore, taken; and 5 taken by the *Dutch*, the reſt Burnt.

Spaniſh Men of War and Galleons.

Commanders.	Ships.	Guns.
Don Manuel de Valaſco, Genral,	*Jeſus Maria Joſeph*,	70
Don Joſephus Checen, Admiral,	*La Buſſoena*,	54
Don Fernando Checen,	*La Capitana de Aſſogos*,	54

Three Men of War, 178

Commanders.	Galleons.
Don Viſenti Alvarez,	*Sante Chriſto de Mariacaia*,
Don Franciſco Blanco,	*Sante Chriſto de buen Viaje.*
Don Allonzo Ipparrero,	*Santa Cruz.*
Don Cozmo Antonio Montag.	*Noſtredam de Marcy.*
Don Michael Cannitee,	*Santa Domingo.*
Don Ignatio Aſcoubritio,	*Le Trinidad.*
Don Franciſco Baragrand,	*Neuſtra Senora de Mercedes.*
Don Anton. Gomes de Aureſia,	*St. Juan de Baptiſta.*
	Philippo Quinto.
Don Juan Dunge,	*Jalaſhe del General.*
Don Frebuſia Bernar. de vera,	*La Sacra Familia.*
Don Alonzo Lopes,	*Santa Cruz.*
Don Martin Mogueta,	*Santa Suſanna.*

Thirteen Galleons, with from 20 to upwards of 30 Guns each, and all burnt and ſunk, except Five Galleons which we took.

Of theſe 13 Galleons which carryed from twenty to upwards of thirty Guns, four were taken by the *Engliſh*, five by the *Dutch*, and the reſt were all deſtroyed; and to make this Victory ſtill the more glorious and memorable, it was obtained with very inconſiderable Loſs on the Confederates Side, for beſides the Dammage received by Vice-Admiral *Hopſon*, as before-mentioned, the *Kent* had only her Foremaſt ſhot, and her Boatſwain wounded; the *Aſſociation* her Main maſt Shot, and two Men killed, the *Barfleur* had her Main-maſt Shot, two Men kill'd, and as many wounded; and the *Mary* her Bolt-ſprit Shot: Of the Land-men two Lieutenants and about forty Soldiers were killed, Colonel *Pierce* was wounded with a Cannon Shot from our own Men of War in the Thigh, and Colonel *Seymour*, Colonel *Newton*, and Mr. *Talmaſh*, with about thirty private Men were alſo wounded. The conſequence of this Victory was a vaſt Booty both of Plate and other Things, the value of which can never be computed; but tho' the Duke of *Ormond* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Redondello*, and would have attacked *Vigo* and Wintered there, yet the Circumſtances of Things would not allow of it, ſo that both the Land Forces and Fleet returned for *England*, where they ſoon after happily arrived.

An

An ABRIDGMENT *of a Relation of the Wonderful Preservation of Eight Men who were accidentally left in* Greenland, *Written by* Edward Pelham, *one of their Number.*

THIS *Edward Pelham*, with seven other Men, having, about the middle of *August* in the year 1630. been sent ashoar by the Captain, (who was a Whale fishing upon the Coast of *Greenland*) to hunt for some Venison for the Ship's Provision; and having very good Success, killing in two days time above twenty Deer (with which the parts about *Green Harbour* abound;) the third, embarking themselves and their Purchase in their Shallop, they found that their Ship had been obliged to put to Sea, to get clear of the great Shoals of Ice, which were already driven upon the Coast. Upon which hurling their Venison over-board, and making all the speed they could to *Bell-Sound*, which was then the Rendezvous of all the *English* Ships then in *Greenland*; having unhappily miss'd the Point, by the obstinate Humour of one of their Number, who affirm'd it to be more to the Southward than it was, and discovering too late their Error, at their Arrival there they found, to their great Sorrow, that all their Ships were sailed for *England*; which afforded them sufficient matter of dismal and melancholy Reflections and Lamentations. And indeed it must be acknowledged that their Circumstances were miserable beyond Expression, being left in a Country destitute of all things necessary for human Life, without any Cloaths to protect them from the Rigour of that most frigid Climate, having no Food of any sort to subsist on, and no Fuel to dress it with, if they had had never so much Meat. However, it pleased Almighty God so to bless their own Industry and Endeavours to preserve their Lives, that their Deliverance does really seem to be miraculous; and that so much the more that the Difficulties which they had to wrestle with, were more insuperable far, than those under which several *Dutch*, who were left on purpose with all manner of Necessaries, were forced to succumb; as well as nine *Englishmen*, who had been formerly left as they were, by the same Man that left them, which nine Men all died of Hunger and Cold upon the place.

However, considering that Astonishment and Confusion would only add to their Misery, they took a generous Resolution, to use their utmost endeavours for their own Preservation, in hopes that God would provide for their Subsistance by some means which might be beyond their Imagination. And so they all agreed to take the next Opportunity of fair Weather, to go to *Green-Harbour*, and kill what Venison they could for their Winter Provision. And accordingly, arriving there the 25th of *August*, they went next day to a place called *Coals-Park*, about two Leagues distant from *Green Harbour*, and returned that night with seven Deers and four Bears.

That day's good Success encouraging them to make a second Voyage to *Coles-Park*, spying some Deer upon the side of a Hill in their way thither, they there went ashoar, and killed twelve Deer besides several Bears, with all which returning to *Green-Harbour*, they loaded another Shallop, left there by the Ship's Company, with the Greaves of the Whales that had been boil'd that year; and sanctifying as well as they could (without Books or Persons very capable to perform any part of Divine Service to a Company) the Sabbath day which ensued, they next day set out for *Bell-Sound*, to which place the Conveniency of a vast Tent or sort of a large House of Boards, erected for the Lodging and Accommodation of the Coopers, &c. invited them to take up their abode during that Winter. But being in their way thither benighted, they having hal'd up their Boats and fix'd them as well as they could, getting ashoar themselves to seek some shelter against the Rigour of the Cold, their Boats were driven from their places, and a great part of their Venison wash'd over-board and cast ashoar. But *Sept.* 3. being a clear day, having pick't up their Venison and launched their Boats, they got safe into *Bell-Sound*; where being arrived they applied themselves with all possible Diligence to make as good Provision as they could for their Subsistence during the Winter Season, in that place.

The great Tent, already spoken of, was 80 Foot in Length and 50 in Breadth; and not far from it their being another of a more narrow compass, they pull'd down the latter to get materials for building a little Habitation for themselves within the great Tent; which having accomplish'd, and made a very warm sort of a Chamber, by the means of about a 1000 Bricks, a few Casks of Lime, and good Store of Boards and Ratters, which they found in the little Tent they had pull'd down, they afterwards made four little Cabins to lie in; their Beds were the Deer-skins dried, which they found to be very warm and useful to them in their great Distress; and as for Firing, they made bold with some hundreds of empty Casks, which they found in the aforesaid Tents, besides several old Boats or Shallops, which had been left there by the Fleet. And so recommending themselves to the powerful Protection of Almighty God, they patiently expected a happy Deliverance in due time.

However patient and submissive they endeavour'd to be, their Case was very lamentable, especially during several months together; that being in fear of starving for want of Food, because they found that what they had, was not near sufficient for their Maintenance till the arrival of the Fleet, and had no hopes of getting any more in that Country; they were forc'd to reduce themselves to three meals a week on Bear and Venison; besides which, they had nothing to feed upon during the other four days of the week, but the unsavory and mouldy Frittars and Greaves of Whales (which are the scraps of Fat, that after the Oil is taken out of them, are thrown away) which had been spoil'd too, by the wet they got; and for an addition to their Misfortunes, they began at the same time to lose sight of the Sun, which did not appear from the 14th of *October*, till the 3d of *February*, all their day being a glimmering sort of light, which lasted but some few hours, and from the 11t to the 20th of *December*, did not appear at all, but left them in continual Darkness.

With the New Year, the Cold began to be so very excessive, that there being no possibility of finding any Water below the Ice, as formerly they had done, all the Drink they had from the 10th of *January* till the 20th of *May*, was melted Snow.

By the last of *January*, the days coming to be prolong'd to seven or eight hours, they begun to take a little more Heart; but viewing their Provisions, and finding, that even at the miserable rate they then lived, they could not last above six weeks, it put them once more upon very melancholy Reflections; till the Weather beginning to be tolerably fair, and the Wild Beasts now appearing, besides a Sea-Horse or two that they kill'd, and seven or eight Bears, they caught above fifty Foxes in Traps, and likewise thirty Fowls as big as Pigeons, by which means they liv'd much better than they had formerly done, taking sometimes two or three Meals a day, till the 25th of *May* following; when there arriving in the Sound, two Ships from *Hull*, the Master of the first having heard that some Men had been left, sent ashoar some of his Crew, with order to hale up their Boat, and walk over the Snow to the great Tent, to see whether they were yet alive; but they being about to go to Prayers in the Inner Tent, and only waiting for one of their number that was doing something in the great one, the *Hull-men* according to the Fashion of the Sea, crying *Hey*, upon their approach to the Tent, were immediately answered by him that was in the great Tent, *Ho*; upon which the other seven turning all out, after many kind Embraces and Congratulations, they led their Friends into the Tent, and presented them with some Venison that had been roasted four months before, and a Cup of cold Water which they for Novelties sake did very kindly accept; and afterwards carrying the eight Men on board their Ship, they remain'd there till the arrival of the *London* Fleet, which happening three days afterwards, they going on board of the *Commadore*, were very kindly receiv'd and entertain'd; he having immediately commanded Cloaths and all other Necessaries to be given them, so that in a matter of fifteen days they had all recover'd their former Vigour, and so returning with the Fleet to *London*, were gratified and rewarded by the *Muscovy* Company, in whose Service they had endur'd the aforesaid Hardships.

An ABRIDGMENT *of Two Journals of Fourteen Sailors, seven of which passed a Part of that preceeding the Year* 1634, *and seven others a Part of the following Winter; the first in the Isle of St.* Maurice *in* Greenland, *and the second at* Spitzbergen, *in which two Places they all died.*

To which is Subjoin'd,

An ACCOUNT *of the Death of Forty-two Persons who perish'd by Shipwreck, near the aforesaid* Spitzbergen, *in the Year* 1646.

And a DESCRIPTION *of the* Island *likewise Abridg'd.*

THE Committee of the *Dutch-Greenland*-Company, having in the year 1633, publish'd a Resolution they had taken, of making as exact a Discovery as could be of the Climate of *Greenland*; seven bold and able Sea-men voluntarily presenting themselves for that Service, were by order of the Company left on the Island of St. *Maurice*, and provided with what Provisions and Materials were thought necessary for their subsistance in that uninhabited Place; who having all died there, I shall here-under give the Reader, in a very small Compass, the Substance of what was found in the Journal they left behind them, as it was publish'd in their own Language and Country, by Publick Authority.

The *Dutch* Fleet having set Sail for *Holland* on the 26th of *August*, the Wind frequently chang'd from *N. W.* to *N. E.* at which Points it continued with pretty Sun-shiny days, and now and then a little Snow, till the 7th of *September* at Night, that the Wind blowing *S. E.* by *S.* it turned very Rainy; the 8th at Night, they were frightned by a noise of something falling as they thought very heavy upon the Ground, but could see nothing; the 9th was a warm Sun-shiny Day, and the Night Rainy; that Day they saw plainly the *Bears Mountain*; and about this time they could find a little Sallering, as they did likewise eight Days after that: and in short, from the 11th to the 20th, they had various Changes of Winds from *S. E.* and *S. W.* *N. E.* and *N. W.* *N. W.* and by *W.* &c. during which time they saw abundance of Sea-Gulls, and had various Changes of Weather, sometimes Rain, sometimes Snow, and sometimes clear Sun-shiny days, and Moon-light nights. The 20th (which it seems is the latest that any Ship is seen in those Parts) they discharg'd their great Guns, being out of all danger of Privateers, &c. for that Season; the 23d they saw a Whale, which they could not catch; and about the same time they made a diligent search for Salering, but all was gone. The Weather then began to be more tempestuous and stormy than before, and the Frosts were sometimes very violent till the 9th of *October*, when they observ'd the Sun, from their Hutt, to be in the *South*, a little above the *Red-Hill*; and they could likewise spy the *Bears Mountain*. The Wind turning the 8th to the *N. E.* and afterwards to the *N.* it began to be exceeding tempestuous with Frost and Snow, which increasing on the 9th, they could no longer subsist without a continual Fire, and the Wind turning now to *N. E.* by *N.* the which alteration they began to be sensible of in their Bodies, by a giddiness in their Heads. &c. The 12th their Beer froze in the Barrel, tho' within a Fathom of the Fire. The 14th they went abroad and saw two Whales, which (being too few in number) they in vain endeavour'd to catch; and the 16th, the Severity of the Weather, made a greater alteration than before in their Bodies: However, the 18th they observed the Sun to set between *S. W.* by *N.* and *S. W.* The 19th was a Sun-shiny day, but the Sun did not rise high enough to reach over the Hill to their Hutt, which was in the Bay. The 20th they spy'd a Bear, which they would gladly have caught, but could not. The Beasts now began to come down towards the Sea-side, and the Bay to be almost entirely fill'd with Ice; nor was there one drop of Water to be found upon the Island, and several of their Vessels were frozen to peices; but their Beer they sav'd by putting it in a Cellar, where neither could it have been safe, without a continual Fire. The 1st of *Nov.* the Wind being *N. E.* the Cold extremely increas'd, and the Bears appear'd towards night in such numbers about their Tent, that they scarce durst venture abroad; and tho' they still had ten hours day, the Sun Beams appear'd only on the South-side of the Hill. The 2d they had the good Fortune to kill a Bear, and the 3d another; upon which they fed (for want of other fresh Meat) with a great deal of satisfaction. The 5th a South-wind brought such a violent Snow, that they durst not stir out of their Hutt, and the 7th and 8th, the Wind turning *N. E.* and afterwards *N.* it was excessive Cold, and they made use of melted Snow instead of Water. The 9th they got to the Southern Shore, where they saw no Ice, but plainly discover'd the Sun, which they had not seen for three weeks before that, and then observ'd to be above half an hour above the Horizon; and about that time they saw some Sea-Gulls, as they likewise did abundance of Bears, which always retir'd, upon their appearance, to the Ice in the Bay. The 19th, the Wind being again at *N.* they pass'd once more (but with great difficulty) to the Southern Coast, where they had a plain view of the *Bears Mountain*, and saw the Sun just above the Surface of the Sea; having no more light than was requisite to let them see to read and write, which now (to their exceeding Grief) they could not do in their Hutt. The 23d the Wind turning *N. W.* by *W.* brought Weather which continued 5 or 6 days (they thought) as mild as it us'd to be in *Holland*, at that Season. They shot the same day, a Bear thro' the Body, but he, notwithstanding the lois of very much Blood, escap'd to the Ice in the Bay, without seeming to have receiv'd much harm; which (tho' ordinary there) would seem very odd here: During that time they saw great numbers of Sea-Gulls, which always retir'd to the Mountains towards night. The 29th they past again to the Southern Shore, which was then all cover'd over with Ice, tho' scarce any was at that time to be seen within half a Mile of the Northern-shore. The first of *December* a Southerly-wind produc'd Rain, both which in some measure continued with as mild an Air (in their Opinion) as it could then be in *Holland*. The 10th the Wind being Westerly, they went upon the Hill, from whence they could spy nothing but Ice. The 12th, having shot a young Bear thro' the head, they fed heartily upon a Leg of him which they roasted, and from that to the 22d, the Wind being mostly *S. E.* and *S. W.* and sometimes *E.* they had various changes of Weather, and the Ice was several times blown out of the Bay, and back again; except on the 17th, when the Wind being at *South*, it thaw'd, and they saw abundance of Sea-Gulls: During this time, they went up the Hill, but discover'd nothing. The 22d they had still four hours day-light, but it being the coldest day they had yet felt, they durst not stir out of their Hutt; and so the Weather continued very severe, with various changes of the Wind, which was mostly to the *S.* and *S. W.* till the end of that Month and Year.

The 1st of *January* 1634, after wishing each other a Happy New Year, they recommended themselves to God by Prayer, desiring good Success in their Enterprise. But the severity of the Weather (especially of the Nights) increased so sensibly, for the most part with Easterly and North-East Winds, that they felt the Effects thereof in their Bodies. The 9th the Shoals of Ice in the Bay appear'd from the Top of their Hutt like white Hills or Skies; and they could not now see the Moon till she was seven or eight days old, because of the great Hills between her and them. From that to the 16th North-East, South-East, and Easterly Winds produced very severe Weather; and then a Southerly Wind (as it usually did) brought a milder Day: but the Wind turning

ing to the East and North-East, the Weather was again very sharp till the 23d, when it appearing clear, they got with great difficulty to the South-side, but could not make any Observation about the Height of the Sun, because of the Clouds which appear'd; till returning on the 30th, which was fairer, they guess'd him to be an Hour and an half high.

The first of *February* being fair and calm, they saw the Sun from the Hill very clear, and tho' the Wind was changeable, the Weather began to grow milder. The Bears being now very shy of them, having caught none since the 13th of *January*, they heartily wish'd for one, but in vain. The Weather continuing much the same, on the 16th they spy'd a Falcon and two Wild-Fowls not unlike Geese, but (to their exceeding Grief) could not come within reach of them. The 19th they got to the Red-Hill, but saw nothing; and so they did the the 21st. The 25th in the Afternoon, the Weather clearing up with a Westerly Wind, they saw the Sun again from their Hutt; and observ'd it to set at South-West by South. The 27th a Southerly Wind brought milder Weather and a Thaw, removing the Ice from the Bay almost out of sight, into the Ocean.

In the beginning of *March* a North-East Wind brought the Ice partly into the Bay again, and Northerly and North-East Wind brought sharp Weather, till the 11th that it began to be so mild and pleasant that they greatly rejoiced at it; and on the 12th the Ice was removed out of sight of the Bay. The 25th they happily shot a Bear through the Head, and dressing what their present Necessity requir'd, they sprinkled the rest with a little Salt; for they began by that time to be grievously afflicted with the Scurvy, which was occasion'd by nothing else but their Salt Victuals and want of convenient Refreshments. From that time to the 22d, several Changes of the Wind produc'd Alterations in the Weather, and several times removed and brought back the Ice. About this time they all began to be mightily discouraged for want of Refreshments, being grown so very ill of the Scurvy that they could scarce stand. The Wind being for the most part Southerly and South-East. On the 28th they spy'd a huge Whale in the Morning, and several others that Day, both on the Northern and the Southern shoar, whither they had made a shift to walk; and almost every day after that, they saw vast numbers of those great Animals, and prodigious Quantities of other such Fish as that Place affords. The Winds had been for the most part Southerly, and the Season tolerable good in the Month of *March*; on the 30th day of which they got sight of a She-Bear with three young ones, but to their extream Sorrow they all escap'd out of their hands. And in short, being destitute of all manner of refreshment, now comes on the melancholy part of their dismal Story.

The Weather turning very sharp in *April*, with changeable Northerly, North-West, and sometimes Westerly Winds, the Bay was several times filled again with Ice, which was now and then carried off with Southerly Winds, which did not last. The 3d of this Month five of the seven were quite crippled with the Scurvy, and in a very miserable condition, they kill'd the only two Pullets they had left, at the request of the sick Men, who fed heartily upon them. The Weather still continuing sharp, the two that yet retain'd some Health, went but very little abroad; about the middle of the Month, they grew worse, and I don't see that after that time any of 'em went much abroad. The 16th, being *Easter-day*, their unfortunate Number began to be lessen'd by the Death of him they call'd their Clerk; and from that time they grew worse and worse, beginning to give over all thoughts of Recovery; not only because of their great want of Necessaries, but because of the excessive Cold, from which they were not able to defend themselves by any Exercise, in that condition. By the 23d, they were reduced to that deplorable state, that but one of them was upon his legs. That day he help'd their Commander out of his Cabin, and says, that he being then struggling with Death, imagin'd by that Motion, to ease in some measure his Pain. They had some time before that given over all Hopes of Relief, and now had no other thoughts but of Gods Mercy, of which they stood very much in need. The 27th they made a shift to kill their Dog for Want of other Refreshment: and now (the Weather continuing very bad, for the most part with Northerly, North East and North-West Winds) they all grew towards their End. The latest date of their Journal, which was continued by him that remained longest in Health, was the last of *April*; which he says was a clear Sun-shiny Day, with a North-East Wind, and then concludes with the melancholy word *D I E*; so that probable being about to write something else, and finding his Spirits to fail him, he had only time to write these three Letters before he got into his Cabin, where he surrendred his Spirit to his Creator.

The first of the *Dutch* Fleet arriving at that Island the fourth of *June* following 1634, found his Body who died first in a Coffin, and the other six (who probably died much about one time, which must be supposed to be the beginning of *May*, since their Journal was continu'd to the end of *April* and mentions only the Death of the first) in their Cabins. Near one of them lay some Bread and Cheese, which 'tis like was his last Victuals; and hard by another was found a Prayer Book and a Box of Ointment, with which 'tis probable he had been rubbing his Joints and Teeth, his Arm being extended to his Mouth. 'Tis certain they might have resisted the Cold if they had been able to defend themselves against the Scurvy, which I believe might not have been impossible, if sufficient Precautions had been taken for it. How miserable their Condition was (and especially they or he who out-liv'd the rest) I shall leave it to the World to judge, being sensible that 'tis far beyond Human Capacity to express it.

The Commodore having order'd the other six to be immediately put in Coffins, and all to be buried under the Snow, till the Heat of the Sun had render'd the Ground more tractable; they were on S *John*'s day following as honourably inter'd, as the Place and Circumstances could permit; with a general Discharge of all the Artillery from the Fleet.

The Second Journal of Seven other Dutchmen, *who died next Year at* Spitzbergen; *in which the Observations about the Weather are omitted.*

THE following Year, *viz.* 1634. seven other Seamen being left in the same manner at *Spitzbergen* with what Provisions were thought necessary for their Subsistence till the next Season; after various Changes of the Weather, and the entire Departure of the Sun, which left them the 21st of *October*, on the 24th of *November* the Scurvy beginning to appear amongst them, they in vain search'd after green Herbs, Bears, Foxes, &c. and finding none endeavour'd to comfort each other, in hopes God would be pleased to provide some Refreshment for them. But in the beginning of *December* growing worse and worse, several of them took Medicinal Potions for the Scurvy; and tho' they saw now and then a Bear, not having the good fortune to catch any, they fell into a very deplorable Condition. So that one of them dying the 14th and another the 15th of *January* 1635, the 17th likewise died he in whom (under God) they had put their Trust; leaving the other four in a condition miserable enough to give them some ground to envy their Happiness whose Misfortunes had been ended by Death. However, bad as they were, they made a shift to perform the last Offices of Humanity to their three dead Companions, whom they put in Coffins. The 7th of the following Month, they catch'd (to their great Satisfaction) a Fox; but in effect, were too far gone in their Distemper to receive any benefit thereby. They now began to see abundance of Bears, sometimes eight or ten together; but being seiz'd with most exquisite Pains in their Loins, Belly, and elsewhere, they were not able so much as to gnaw their Biskets, and much less to handle their Muskets. The 23d they were reduced to such a low Condition that they could not stir out of their Tent. The 24th they saw the Sun for the first time, and 26th (suppos'd the last day that any of them was able to write) they left the following Memorial of that date. *Four of us that are yet alive, lie flat upon the ground in our Tent; We believe we could not feed if our Pain had not disabled us all from stirring out to get some Fuel; we employ our time in constant Prayers, that God may be pleas'd to end our Miseries by Death, for which we are ready at his Call, and cannot certainly subsist long without Food or Fire, but every one must bear his own Burthen.*

When the *Dutch* Fleet arriv'd there in 1635. the three first were found in Coffins, two others in their respective Cabins, and the remaining two lay upon some Sails spread upon the Ground, having their Knees drawn up to their Chin. And Coffins having been prepar'd, by order of the Commodore, they were all decently buried.

An Account of the Shipwreck of Forty-two Persons, who all perish'd but one, amongst the Ice near Spitzbergen *in* Greenland, *in the Year* 1646.

JOHN CORNELIUS *of Munniken*, being, in the beginning of *June* 1646, a Whale-fishing without the Bay of *Spitzbergen*, the Men who row'd the Sloop, which was sent out to watch the Motion of those huge Animals, discovering something white upon a great shoal of Ice, which was floating upon the Water; they at first took it to be a Bear, (which Animals are there of that Colour:) but making up that way, and coming nearer, they found it to be a Man, who making what signals he could of great Distress, and rowing with all their Oars to the Shoal, they were much surprized to find there (besides one dead) four Men alive, expressing upon their bended Knees, their Thankfulness for such unexpected Deliverance from the jaws of Death. Upon enquiry they found them all to be *Englishmen*; and carrying them from thence on board their Ship, which then lay in the Bay, they made their Deliverers the following Relation of their Disaster, *viz.*

"That they being, at the time of their Shipwreck, "forty two, and escaping in their Sloop, with some Victuals and Tools, to huge shoal of Ice; their Commander, thinking that a very dangerous situation, had "gone ashore with seventeen of the Men in the Sloop, "in order to endeavour to bring them some Assistance "from thence; but probably had perish'd in the way, "it having blow'd very hard after his departure, and "they never having heard of him since. The Provisions of the twenty four remaining upon the Ice, being "entirely exhausted, they had divided themselves into "several Parties upon separate shoals of Ice, in hopes "that some of them meeting with Succour, might induce their Relievers to go in quest of the rest. The "four taken up alive had digged a sort of a subterraneous Cave in the Ice, at the entrance of which they "had placed the pieces taken out of the Cavity, to defend themselves against the Violence of the Weather; "and their only Food, during their miraculous abode "in that cold and miserable Habitation, had been a "Leathern Belt, which they had equally divided amongst 'em.

Tho' the *Hollanders* used all possible means to save the unfortunate Remainder which they had taken up, they all died a few days afterwards, but one, who, by God's blessing upon the *Dutch* Doctor's Endeavours, recover'd; and arriving in the *Meuse* in *September* following, did thence come over to *England*, which (as I have already said) was his Native Country.

A Description of ISELAND.

ISELAND (qu. *Iceland*) so called it seems by its Discoveries, because of the great quantities of Ice which are mostly to be seen about it, is an Isle under the obedience of the King of *Denmark*, situates in 13 *deg.* 30 *min.* Longitude, and 65 *deg.* 44 *min.* Latitude; bounding towards the *North* by the frozen Sea of *Greenland*, having likewise the Cape of *Farewel* in that Country opposite to it, upon the *West*; being wash'd by the *Den-Caledonian* Sea towards the *South*, and by the *Hyperborean* on the *East*.

The Sentiments of the Learned concerning the time when this Isle was peopled, are various; but the Inhabitants themselves being very curious, not only in their own Annals, but likewise in the History of other Neighbouring Nations, they have kept exact Account enough of their later Transactions; and tho' *Arngrim Jonas* (a Native of that place) does obstinately averr, That *Ingulph* (of whom more shall be said hereafter) was the first Planter of that Isle; I am positively of the Opinion of several other Learned Men, who agree that *Iseland* is the *Toule* of the Antients; for which they bring Reasons which to me seems very satisfactory; but being too tedious to be here related at length, I shall content my self with barely mentioning one or two of them.

In the first place the famous *Casaubon*, in his Commentary upon *Strabo*, tells us positively, that our modern *Iseland* is the antient *Thule*, mentioned by that great Geographer; and, amongst other Reasons for maintaining that Position, takes notice, that all the Antients having situated *Thule* at the Extremity of the *Caledonian* Sea, and made it the most remote of the *British* Isles; that Name and Situation can agree with no place but *Iseland*, which Reason I truly think unanswerable.

Secondly, I shall mention a Passage of the aforesaid *Arngrim Jonas*, where he seems to confute himself, by taking notice that the *Islanders* were very nice in recording the Histories of several *European* Nations, which Records (he says) they keep in their Libraries, and look upon them as Authentick Proofs of their own Antiquity. Now, there being yet extant, in *Denmark*, a Record of the *Western* part of *Iseland*, in which they are to be found several Passages of the antient History, not only of *Norway*, *Denmark*, the *Orcades*, and other adjacent Isles, but likewise of *England* and other Countries, and particularly of the Invasion and Settlement of the *Normans* in that part of *France* to which they gave their Name; that Invasion having happen'd before the Arrival of *Ingulph* (whom *Arngrim Jonas* and several others would have to be the Planter of *Iseland*) in that Country; it consequently follows, That *Iseland* was inhabited before *Ingulph* went thither; it being absurd to imagine that any other Nation could record the Transactions and History of an unknown and uninhabited Isle. So that, to reconcile both Parties, I think it may rationally be suppos'd, that what formerly was Pagan *Thule* of the Antients, is now Christian *Iseland* of the Moderns; it being very probable that *Ingulph* was the first that planted here the Christian Faith, in the Year 870, or soon after, tho' 'tis acknowledg'd that Paganism was not entirely abolish'd 'till the Year of our Lord 1000.

As to this *Ingulph* or *Ingulphus*, the aforesaid *Arngrim Jonas* says, *That being a Baron of* Norway, *he and his Brother-in-law* Hiorleifus *having killed two of the most considerable Men in that Kingdom, and being banished for that Fact, and it was then customary for Exiles to carry the Doors of their Houses with them*; Ingulph *having cast Anchor upon the Coast of* Iseland, *threw his Doors overboard to facilitate his Landing*; *but being driven thence to another place of the Isle, and finding, a long time afterwards, his Doors cast ashore, he took a Resolution to settle there for good and all, in the Year* 874. *whence the Chronicles of* Iseland *takes their* Epocha.

Now, as this very Chronicle says that *Ingulph* found the Isle desart and uncultivated, 'tis not therefore to be imagin'd that it was then entirely destitute of Inhabitants, or never had been possess'd before; for the same Chronicle does likewise acknowledge, that some *English* and *Irish* Miners had been cast ashore there, and likewise that there had frequently been *Irishmen* on the Isle, upon other occasions; and that the antient *Islanders* call'd the *Irish Papa's*, and thence gave the Western part of the Isle, where the *Irish* used to land, the Name of *Paper*. So that, in all probability, the antient *Thule* and the modern *Iseland* are one and the same thing; for as to the Desarmess of the Isle, and Scarcity of Inhabitants, 'tis probable that they might have been reduced to that low pass, in which *Ingulph* found them, by Famine, Tempest, and Pestilencious Diseases, to which it may reasonably be suppos'd such a barren Country may easily expose its Inhabitants.

As to its Extent, for Length or Breadth, we have no very exact account of that, but 'tis generally suppos'd to be about twice as big as the Isle of *Sicily*. About the Summer Solstice, while the Sun is in the Signs of *Gemini* and *Cancer*, it never goes entirely below the Horizon, but some part of it always remains above it, in the

the *North* of *Iſeland*; and during the longeſt days one half of it remains above the Horizon from ten at Night till two in the Morning, at which hours it ſets and riſes; and conſequently about the Winter Solſtice, while the Sun is in *Sagittarius* and *Capricornus*, the whole Body of the Sun does not riſe above the Horizon, and in the ſhorteſt days not above the half of it is ſeen, and that only from ten in the Morning till two in the Afternoon, at which hours it then riſes and ſets.

It was formerly reputed to be very fertile in Wheat, and abounding in Wood fit for building of great Ships, in which, and in all the parts of Navigation, the Inhabitants were ſaid to be very expert, and 'tis alleged that they were then very powerful at Sea: but now, having no Corn of any ſort, they are frequently forced to beat dry'd Fiſh into powder, of which they make Bread, when the Rigour of the Winter-Seaſon hinders their being ſupply'd by their good Neighbours, to whom if they were not obliged for Flour and other Neceſſaries (ſuch as Wood for their Buildings, and Fuel) they would certainly ſtarve; tho' for their ordinary Firing they have two ſorts of Turf, and they likewiſe make uſe in their Buildings of the Bones of Whales and other great Fiſhes: and ordinarily in the Month of *May* the Wind brings from the more Northerly parts, together with the ſhoals of *Ice*, vaſt quantities of Wood, of which they make uſe in their Structures; it being recorded in the Chronicles of that Country, that a Tree was driven thither with the Ice, ſixty three Cubits in length and ſeven in circumference. And beſides that, there are driven likewiſe with theſe ſhoals of Ice, a great many Beaſts, ſuch as white and black Bears, Unicorns, Stags, Wolves, red and white Foxes, *&c.* of which the *Iſelanders* do daily go in queſt each ſeaſon.

The Country is ſtrong and mountainous, and (however barren in other things) ſo fertile in paſture, that their Cattle (if not duly remov'd) are ſometimes in danger of burſting; and their Graſs is of ſo good a Scent that Foreigners tranſport it dried to put among Linen. However their Beef is not reckoned to be of the beſt, and their Mutton is pretty rank, but they much abate that by drying it (as they do their other Meat) in the Sun and the Wind, which preſerves it better than Salt. They make abundance of Butter, which they keep in Tubs, if they have any, and otherwiſe pile it up in the Houſe without any further Ceremony. Their ordinary Drink is Milk or Whey, which they ſometimes mix with Water. They have pretty good Horſes, which, during the Winter, feed upon dry'd Fiſh, when Hay falls ſhort, as well as their Oxen and Sheep. They have abundance of fine, clear and wholſome Springs, and, amongſt others, ſome whoſe water has a nouriſhing Quality like Beer. Nor are they deſtitute of Hot Springs fit for Bathing, nor of ſeveral Hot and Cold Springs, Lakes, and Currents, which have various Virtues and Effects upon Perſons and Things; a particular Deſcription of which this ſhort Abridgment cannot well admit. But I muſt not forget to tell, that their Ponds, Lakes, navigable, and other Rivers abound with many different ſorts of excellent Fiſh.

Iſeland affords no Mines nor Minerals but Brimſtone, which is plenti'ul in moſt places of the Iſle, but eſpecially in Mount *Hecla* ſituate in the South-Eaſt part thereof; which ſometimes appearing all in flames, like Mount *Veſuvius*, ſends forth whole Torrents of ſulphurious Liquor, which burns like Spirits of Wine; and thoſe Eruptions are frequently follow'd by vaſt Quantities of black Aſhes and Stones. They commonly ceaſe with a Wetterly Wind, and the Inhabitants take that occaſion to go up the Mountain, when they have a mind to ſee it, but frequently they have been ſwallow'd up by the Earth that has ſunk under them in the Aſcent. About this there are many ſuperſtitious and imaginary Stories, amongſt the ignorant Inhabitants, who imagine that to be the place where the Souls of the Damn'd are tormented.

They have no Trade but the Barters they make with Foreigners of ſeveral Nations, to whom they give dry'd Fiſh, Butter, Tallow, Brimſtone, and Foxes, Bears, Stags and Wolves Skins, for Flour, Beer, Wine, Strong-waters, Iron, Woollen and Linen Cloths, Cloaks, Shoes, Looking glaſſes, Knives, and ſuch like Toys. *Bleſkenius* talks of another ſort of Commerce, pretty odd, alleging that the Women of that Country (who are tolerable handſome but miſerable clad) do ordinarily go to the Tents of thoſe Strangers who come to traffick with them, to whom they proſtitute themſelves for a little Bread, ſome Biſket, or any ſuch Trifle. Nay further, he ſays, that their Fathers often carry them to thoſe Foreigners themſelves, eſteeming it a lucky chance if they happen to be with Child by them; which, he ſays, contributes very much to the Advancement of their Fortunes by Marriage among the *Iſelanders*, who, at that rate, would ſeem to be afraid of (or at leaſt to have an Averſion for) Maidenheads.

Some other very indecent Maxims and Cuſtoms this *Bleſkenius* attributes to the Females of *Iſeland*; but as the aforeſaid *Arngrim Jonas* boldly accuſes him of Falſhood for cauſleſsly expoſing the Reputation of his Country-women, affirming them to be as modeſt in their different Stations as their Equals in other Countries; I ſhall leave the Reader the Freedom of uſing his own Judgment for the Deciſion of that Controverſie.

Bleſkenius further talks of Sorcerers in *Iſeland*, and ſays, that the Inhabitants in general pretend to ſell a Wind to any Foreigner that will purchaſe it, at a very ſmall Price, he likewiſe adds, that the *Iſelanders* have Familiar Spirits, by whom they are attended as Servants, and are acquainted when they ſhall be ſucceſsful in running, *&c.* with ſeveral other things of that nature: ſome of which truly do not ſeem abſolutely improbable, conſidering the miſerable Ignorance and Superſtition of the Inhabitants of that Country, who are not yet ſo well inſtructed and enlightned by the feeble Knowledge to which they have attain'd in the *Chriſtian Religion*, as to have entirely relinquiſh'd the remaining Habits of their Primitive Darkneſs and Idolatry.

Their Religion is now the *Lutheran*, as is that of the *Danes*, to whom they are ſubject, and their Laws are a mixture of thoſe of their own Iſle and of *Denmark*. They were firſt conquer'd by the Kings of *Norway*, and fell, with that Kingdom, by Succeſſion to thoſe of *Denmark*, who now govern *Iſeland* by their Vice roys, whoſe ordinary Reſidence is in the Caſtle of *Beſeſtat*, ſituate in the Weſtern part of the Iſle; and to whom (or to perſons appointed by them) the Tributes impoſ'd by the King of *Denmark*, are paid in ſuch Commodities as I have already ſaid to be the Product of the Iſle.

Many other odd Cuſtoms, *&c.* are related of them by antient Authors; but theſe being neither very uſeful nor diverting, did not ſeem neceſſary to be inſerted in this Abridgment; in which I only propoſed to mention what ſeem'd moſt worthy to be taken notice of amongſt 'em.

An Account of the Shipwreck of a Dutch *Veſſel upon the Coaſt of the Iſle of* Quelpaert; *with a Deſcription of the Kingdom of* Corea *in the* Eaſt-Indies.

ALSO

Of the Tedious Captivity of 36 Men, who got aſhore upon that Iſle; and of the Eſcape of 8 of 'em to Japan, *and thence to* Holland. *Firſt publiſh'd in that Country by the Clerk of the Ship, who was one of them that eſcap'd: ſince Tranſlated and Abridg'd.*

A *Dutch* Veſſel, in the year 1653. being bound from *Batavia* to *Japan*, after ſuffering a moſt violent Storm of ſeveral days continuance, ſpringing a Leak ſo wide that there was no means to drain the Water that ruſh'd into the Hold, ſeveral that happen'd to be then under Deck were drowned before they could get up, and each Man betaking himſelf to his ſhifts, 36 (of 64 that they were in all) got aſhore upon the Iſland of *Quelpaert*, and thoſe too ſeverely bruiſed and hurt in ſaving themſelves from the terrible Fate of their more unfortunate Companions. However

However, walking next day along the shoar, to see whether the Bodies of those that had been drowned were cast upon the Land by the Waves, they found none but that of their Captain, which they buried with as much Decency as their Circumstances could then permit.

They then made a diligent search along the Sands, to see whether any of their Provisions had been cast ashore, but found only one Sack of Meal, a small Cask of Salt Meat, a little Bacon, and a Hogshead of Claret; which was a very acceptable piece of news to the Sick Men.

Their Shipwreck happening the 15th, on the 16th at night they gather'd enough of the Sails and other Ruins of the Wreck, to make them a sort of a Shelter or Tent, and on the 17th, being discovered by the Inhabitants, there came down in the Evening an hundred Armed Men, who, after counting them, kept them inclosed all that Night.

On the 18th in the Morning, they began to enlarge their Tent; but there coming down, about Noon, two thousand Armed Men, both Horse and Foot, who drew up in Battalia before their Tent; their Clerk, chief Pilot, with his Mate and a Boy going forth to meet them; their Commander immediately caus'd an Iron Chain with a Bell to be put about their Necks, and in that Equipage were they forced to prostrate themselves before him, upon which all his Men gave a shout, and immediately afterward those in the Tent were served in the same manner. And being afterwards made to kneel, many Questions were put to them, which they could not understand; no more could the *Chinese* what they endeavour'd to make them comprehend, *viz. That they were* Dutchmen, *bound from* Batavia *to* Nangasaky *in* Japan. Upon which the Commander of the *Chinese* ordering a Cup of a certain Liquor called *Arac* to be given to each of them, sent them back to their Tent; and understanding that they had little or no Provisions, sent them an hour afterwards, Rice boiled in Water, of which the *Chinese* gave them very sparingly lest it should do them harm; for they imagin'd that before they had been half starved. In the Afternoon they came with Ropes in their hands, which a little surprized the *Dutch*, till they saw that their Design was to draw what they could of the Wreck ashoar; and the Admiral of the Island coming down with the Commander, the *Dutch* presented each with a Perspective-Glass and some pots of Claret, which they fill'd out in their Captain's Silver Cup; and they, liking the Liquor very well, drank till they were pretty merry, and then returning them the Cup, with many Tokens of Friendship, return'd to the place of their Residence, and let the *Dutch* retire to their Tent.

On the 29th, the *Chinese* burn'd the Wood of the Ship to get out the Iron, which they value at a high rate, and the Fire coming to two Guns which hapned to be loaded, they were so frightned at the Report they made, that they all ran away, and would not return till the *Dutch* by signs assur'd them that the Danger was over, and that would happen no more.

The 21st, some Persons were accus'd before the Governour of having embezzled some inconsiderable matters found in the Wreck, for which they were immediately condemn'd to have thirty strokes given them on the Soles of their Feet, with a Cudgel as thick as a Man's Arm, which made several of their Toes to drop off. And the rest of the things sav'd out of the Wreck being seal'd up, Horses were provided for the *Dutch*, who being attended by a numerous Guard, arriv'd the 22d in the Evening at the Town of *Moggan* or *Moxco*, the Residence of the Governour of the Island, before whom being prostrated as formerly, and interrogated about their Country and Design, they answer'd all those Questions by signs which were partly understood, and were that night conducted to a Castle, where they had an Allowance of twelve ounces of Rice, and as much Flour a day for every Man; and were treated with a great deal of Humanity and Civility by that Governour, who allow'd them to go abroad by turns, six and six at a time, to take the Air and wash their Linen; and their Sick were taken care of; and in a word they were used by that compassionate Lord with more Bounty and Tenderness, than they would have been by some Christians.

The 29th of *October* they were again called before the Governour, where they found an old *Dutchman*, who had been detain'd in *Corea* ever since the Year 1626. that had been taken coming ashoar out of a *Dutch* Ship to fetch Water, with two others who were dead. He told them that he was sent thither by the King of *Corea*, to interpret for them, and that it was not the Custom of that People to let any Strangers depart thence, that fell into their hands; but that they would have Diet and Cloaths provided them as long as they liv'd.

The Governour being exactly inform'd of our Circumstances, gave us every one (during his Abode there) fresh Marks of his Bounty and Compassion; but his time being unhappily expir'd the beginning of *December* following. 'Tis almost impossible to express the Marks of Kindness and Affection he shew'd them at his Departure, giving each of them a Coat well-lin'd, two pair of Shoes, and a pair of Hose made of Skins, which was a very seasonable Present for Persons in their Circumstances.

The new Governour being of a much less Humane Temper, gave them Barley instead of *Rice*, and Meal instead of Flour, and us'd them in every thing with so much Harshness and Severity, that meditating their Escape, and six of them entring into a Shallop, with which they designed to put to Sea; being overtaken, they were puni'h'd by receiving 25 strokes upon the bare Buttocks with a flat piece of Wood four fingers broad and an inch thick, which obliged them to keep their Beds a long time; and all the rest were more closely guarded and hardly used than before.

In the month of *May* they were sent for to Court, and being put on board of Boats, with Fetters on their Feet, were carried over from the Island to the Continent.

This Island (which the Natives call *Schesure*) lies 12 or 13 Leagues South of the Coast of *Corea*, it abounds with Horses and Cattel, but the Inhabitants are very poor, and despis'd by those of the Continent of *Corea*: which Continent, as well as the Island, is of very difficult Access to such as are unacquainted with the Coast.

After travelling about seventy five Leagues Northward in the Continent, they arriv'd at the City of *Sior*, which is the Residence of the King; who having himself examin'd them by his *Dutch* Interpreter; refus'd to let 'em return to their Wives and Families; and incorporating them in his Guards, caus'd a Musket and Sword to be given to every one of them, bidding them give over all thoughts of returning to their native Country. In their Journey to the Court one of their number died, and was decently buried by order of the Governour of the place where he happen'd to die.

Some time after, news being brought to Court of another Vessel being Shipwreckt upon the Coast of the Isle of *Quelpaert*, three of them, that best understood the *Corean* Language were order'd to go thither to interpret for the Persons that were sav'd; the other *Dutch* Interpreter being too old to perform that Journey.

The *Coreans* being Tributary to the *Tartars*, the *Cham* of *Tartary's* Ambassador comes three or four times every Year to receive the Tribute, which obliged the King, during the Ambassador's stay, to remove the *Dutchmen* out of his way, for it seems that the *Tartar* does not allow the *Coreans* to entertain any Strangers; but two of the *Dutchmen* presenting themselves to him as he passed by, which he not understanding, order'd them to follow him to the place where he was to lie that Night; of which the King having notice by the old *Dutch* Interpreter, who was sent for by the *Tartarian* Ambassador; but the King having made him a Present, that matter was entirely stifled, and the two poor *Dutchmen* convey'd to a Prison, where they soon after died, whether by a natural or violent Death is uncertain. And if the King had not been a more merciful and compassionate Man than his Courtiers all the rest had been destroy'd; but he being advised by his Council to rid himself of them, sent them back to the Isle of *Quelpaert*, where they were soon after join'd to the other three that had been sent thither before, so that they were now thirty three in all.

They remaining several years Prisoners in a Castle appointed for them, were sometimes very kindly, and sometimes very barbarously used by the Governours of the Province where they liv'd; for those Governours being changed once in three Years, most of them at their first Accession to the Government, depriv'd the *Dutch* of their Liberty and Advantages which had been granted them by the former. However, having obtained leave to make the best provision they could of Cloaths and other Necessaries by begging; they found the *Chinese* in general (but especially their Religious Men) very charitable. And so, notwithstanding a grievous Death, which lasted some Years, they subsisted very well, and liv'd pretty easy till the Year 1660, when there came a Governour, who was kinder to the *Dutch* than any of his Predecessors; but he being succeeded soon after by a very wicked one, they were depriv'd of all their Privileges, and reduced to a very miserable Condition; till he being succeeded by another more worthy of that Station, they were relieved of all their Hardships, had their former Privileges restor'd, and new ones added to them. But however, in his time they had the

Misfortune

Misfortune to be separated by a positive order from Court; and being harder used than ever they had been by any other Governour, five of them, that liv'd together, having got a *Coresian* that was their particular Acquaintance and Friend, and to whom they had done several pieces of Service, to buy them a Bark under pretence of going to beg Cotton in the Neighbouring Islands; they sending for another *Dutchman*, whom they knew to be an able Mariner, and detaining two others whom their good Fortune had brought to visit them, embarked in a very dark Night, and carrying aboard Rice and what other Provisions they could get, together with a Cask of fresh Water, they pass'd undiscover'd by all the King's Frigats; and about two days afterwards arriving upon the Coast of *Japan*, and seeing several Boats come off towards them from one of the Islands upon that Coast: being ask'd by Signs who they were and whither they were going? they answer'd by displaying a Flag with the Arms of *Orange*, crying *Holland*, *Nangasaki*; upon which the *Japonese* making them signs to go ashore, after they had remain'd three days at Anchor before that Island (called *Gotto*) where they were most courteously treated by the Inhabitants of all sorts, they were conducted in their own Bark to *Nangasaki*; where being very well receiv'd and provided with every thing necessary for them, they were thence sent by the first Ships to *Batavia*; where having presented their Journal to the General, he, after a very favourable Reception, put them on board a Fleet soon after bound for *Holland*, where all the eight that had escap'd arriv'd safely the 20th of *July*, 1668.

The Kingdom known to us by the Name of *Corea*, is called by the Natives sometimes *Tiozencouk*, and sometimes *Coali*. It is of the form of a long Square, situate from 34 to 44 degrees of North Latitude, lying North and South about 150 Leagues, in length, and 75 in breadth.

It is divided into eight Provinces, containing 360 Cities and Towns, besides Forts and Castles, which are generally built upon Mountains.

Towards the South-East it is but little more than 20 Leagues distant from *Japan*, between which and the Kingdom of *Corea* is situated the Island *Suissima*, which is called *Taymaera* by the *Coreans*, who at a certain Treaty of Peace concluded between the two Nations, exchanged it with the *Japonese* for the Isle of *Quelpoerts*, which formerly belong'd to them. The Bay of *Nanking*, interposes on the West between *Corea* and *China*, which are only join'd on the North by a long and high Mountain; and on the North-East *Corea* is wash'd by the Ocean, where a great many Whales are taken, and likewise in the Winter-time great store of Herring.

The Cold is sometimes so intense in that Country, and there is such abundance of Snow, that upon the Mountains they make Paths to go under it, and such as go above it only wear under their Shoes small Boards like Battledores to keep them from sinking.

The People inhabiting the Northern Coasts of *Corea*, are very poor and have few Cloaths but such as are made of Skins; nor does that part of the Country produce any valuable Commodity, but the Root called *Nissy*, with which they pay the *Tartars* their Tribute, and drive a great Trade to *China* and *Japan*. The rest of the Country is fruitful, and produces Rice and other Grain, Hemp, Cotton, Silver, Lead, Horses, Oxen, Beans, Deer, Swine, &c. and several other Animals. They have likewise Silk-worms, but cannot work the Silk right. As for Fowls and Birds, they have Swans, Geese, Ducks, Herons, Storks, Eagles, Faulcons, Kites, Pigeons, Woodcocks, Magpies, Daws, Larks, Lapwings, Pheasants, Hens, &c. all which they have in abundance.

Their King is a Sovereign Prince, and none dare call any thing in question that he does. He keeps a good Army always on foot about his Capital City; and once in seven years all the Provinces must send their Freemen, who guard the King's Person (besides his ordinary Guards) by turns. Their Horsemen wear Cuirasses, Head-pieces and Swords, besides Bows and Arrows; and the Foot likewise wear Corselets and Head-pieces, and carry Muskets and Half-Pikes and Swords. Every Town in *Corea* is obliged to maintain a Ship of War, such as they use, and to provide Ammunition and all Necessaries for it, and every Province has its Admiral to command 'em. These Ships of War are a sort of Gallies, carrying about 30 Oars, with some small Pieces of Cannon, and abundance of Artificial Fireworks.

Most of the King's Revenue, for the maintenance of his Houshold and Army, arises out of the Duties paid upon the Product of the Country, and upon Goods imported. His chief Officers attend every day at Court to serve him in whatever occurs, and his Counsellours must give their Advice in nothing till ask'd. The Governours and most other Officers have no great Estates but the Revenues annex'd to their Offices, and the Lands granted to them by the King, revert to him upon the Death of the Grantees; by which means he keeps most of the Great ones in a continual dependance upon him. The great Offices about Court are for Life, except some Misdemeanour intervene, and in that case Justice is very severely administred. Rebellion is punish'd by the Death of the Rebel and all his Race, but private Crimes involve only the Guilty in the Punishment. 'Tis no great matter amongst them for a Man to kill his Slave for a small fault; but, in all other cases, Murder is severely punished. If a Man catch his Wife in Adultery, he may lawfully kill her; but that happens but seldom, because the *Coresians* are so jealous that they hardly permit their best Friends to see their Wives. Double Adultery is punish'd with Death, and the Criminal's Father or nearest Relation must be the Executioner: and if a single Man commits that Sin with a married Woman, after much ignominious and shameful Usage, his Punishment ends with 40 or 50 stroaks with a Cudgel on his bare Buttocks, of which many die; but Women receive that Chastisement with wet Drawers on: and all their Punishments are so inhumane, and extort such heavy Cries and Lamentations from the Criminals, that 'tis no small Punishment to be a Spectator of them.

The *Coresians* have scarce any Religion, nor do they respect their Idols half so much as other barbarous Nations do. They believe however that Vertue shall be rewarded, and Vice punished in the other World; and their whole Country swarms with religious Men and Women, much of the same nature with those that are in *Roman Catholick* Countries, from whom (besides several other points) they differ in this, *viz.* That it is lawful for any Man in *Corea* to go in and come out of a Monastery when he pleases, and their King may make such Alterations as he pleases in all Affairs of this Nature.

The Houses of the *Coresians* are only one Story high, having a Garret to lay their Provisions in, those of their Great Men are generally very magnificent, according to their manner, having a large Square before them, with Walks, Fish-ponds, and other Ornaments. The Women are kept in the most retir'd place of the House; and tho' they are allow'd to have each but one Wife, they may divorce them for a very slender Fault, and turn them out of doors with their Children; and likewise may keep as many Concubines abroad as they please, but the Great Men keep them in their own Houses.

They are generally very careful in the Education of their Children, and diligently instruct them in all their Learning, which chiefly consists in Reading and Writing, and in explaining the History of their own Country, in all which they use no severe means to make their Youth good Scholars, but excite by Praises and Rewards to a Noble Emulation to out-do one another, which is a very commendable and successful Method. In every thing the Parents are very indulgent to their Children, who are no less respectful to them. When a *Coresian* dies, his Children mourn three years for him, during which time they lead a Life austere beyond credibility, and at their Funerals practise so many Fopperies, that it would be too tedious here to mention them.

The *Coresians* are generally of a fraudulous Temper, and yet very credulous. Before the Irruption of the *Tartars*, and the Descent of the *Japonese* into that Country, they minded nothing but Luxury and Debauchery; but the Tributes they now pay to their imperious Masters oblige them to live harder then they us'd to do. However, they are still very effeminate and cowardly, which Qualities are no ways scandalous amongst them; for they hate Fighting, and bemoan their Fate who are forc'd to that Exercise: in so much that when the *Tartars* invaded their Country, many more died by Cold and Hunger in the Woods, than by the Sword of the Enemy.

They have no Trade but with the *Chinese* and *Japonese*, who bring them Pepper, Allom, Sweet-wood, and other trifling Commodities in exchange for the Product of their Country. They weigh their Silver in little Ingots, like those brought from *Japan*.

When their King goes abroad, he is attended by a vast number of Courtiers and Guards, which march after him at a distance, but with such a deep Silence that not the least Noise is to be heard within a great way of him; and all persons, Guards as well as others, before whom

whom he passes in the streets, must turn their Backs to him, without so much as coughing or making any other Noise: and when the *Tartarian* Ambassadour comes (which is thrice every year) to receive the Tribute, he is, by all manner of Persons, as much (if not more) respected as the King."

A Description of the Isle of FORMOSA, *situate on the Coast of* China *in the* East-Indies; *first written by Mr.* George Candidius, *a* Dutch *Minister, who resided at the Factory of that Nation, in the aforesaid Island, a considerable time; now Abridg'd.*

WITH

Some Additional Remarks upon the Empire of JAPAN.

THE Island of *Formosa*, being 130 Leagues in circumference, is situate in the 22d degree of Northern Latitude; 'tis very populous and full of large and beautiful Villages; it abounds in Cattel and Wild Beasts, and there is likewise good store of Fish in that Country, which if it were cultivated and improv'd would be very fertile; and as it is it produces Cinamon, Ginger, and several other valuable Commodities.

The Men are tall and well-limb'd, the Women low and fat, and both of a darkish brown Complexion, like the other *Indians* thereabouts. The Men go frequently naked in the Summer, but the Women are never seen so, but when they wash themselves, which, in warm Weather, they commonly do twice a day.

Tho' the Inhabitants appear to be wild and barbarous, they prov'd very good natur'd, affable and kind to the *Dutch*. They are so faithful to one another, that rather then betray their Trust they'll suffer Death; and so honest, that if they happen to discover any stol'n Goods, they're never at ease till they're restor'd to the Owner.

Notwithstanding their inviolable Fidelity to one another, they don't deal very fairly by their Enemies, either when they're at War among themselves, or have to do with Foreign Enemies.

As to their Religion and Government, 'twould be a very hard task to give any tolerable account. In the first, they have this particular to themselves, That Women only are employ'd in their Sacred things. They believe the Immortality of the Soul; but entertain ridiculous Notions about the Distribution of Rewards and Punishments in another World; for they look upon the grossest Immoralities as Trifles, and make heinous Vices meritorious amongst them. For example, their Priestesses forbid all Women to bring any living Children into the World till they be past the Age of six and thirty; and accordingly the Infants are murder'd in the Mother's Womb by these inhumane Priestesses, who thereby put the Mother to much more torment than if their Children were born into the World in the ordinary manner; and if any Woman has sav'd her Child before she come to that Age, they hold her to be in a worse condition after Death, than such as have committed the greatest Crimes. What other things they reckon most heinous, are only breaches of their own foolish and impious Traditions.

They have an Infinity of imaginary Gods, of which the chief are called *Temigisanchan*, *Taxancpada*, *Talafula* and *Tapaliape*; unto whom they offer Prayers and Sacrifices, and other pieces of Homage and Religious Adoration.

Their Worship, I think, of all the Nations under the Sun, is the most impious and abominable; for those infernal Priestesses, (whom they call *Inibs*) after abundance of ridiculous Ceremonies, pretending that their Gods have appeared to them; strip themselves of all their Cloaths, in the presence of the whole Congregation, pointing with their hands, and pretending to shew their Gods what Nature has ordain'd to be hid, address in that posture, their impious Prayers, in a long and tedious Harangue.

As for Government, they have in effect none at all; for all the Resemblance that is amongst them of a Civil Society, is a sort of Council of 12 Men in every Village, who remain in that Office only two years, and have scarce any Power at all; for the greatest Punishment they can impose is a Fine of a few Buck-skins or such sleight Penalty as that, but they cannot in any manner inflict any Corporal Punishment, much less put any body to death. Murder is but a Trifle with them, and is usually made up between the Relations of the Defunct and the Murderer for a few Skins or some such Trifle; and as for Fornication, imagining that their Gods take a great deal of pleasure in it, they indulge it in their young People, the Men not being allow'd to marry before the Age of 21, but the Women as soon as they come to Maturity. And the Women, having in their own hands the Dispensation of their Sacred things, are pleased likewise to keep possession of the Breeches, for the Men are there as much subject to the Women in most things, as that Sex are to the Men in other Countries; and in case of hard usage they have their Grievances as easily redress'd, and likewise obtain a Divorce, if occasion be. And generally speaking, Men and Women both are lascivious; and in that Country Fornication never spoils a Woman's Marriage.

There being in this Island a great number of little Villages independent one of another, there frequently fall out Differences which occasion Wars, in the Prosecution of which 'tis hard to determine whether they are most treacherous or cruel. For, lying in wait for their Enemies in the Fields or elsewhere, if they catch but one or two poor innocent Creatures, tho' not in Arms, but employ'd in Agriculture &c. immediately murdering them, they sometimes cut them into 20 or 30 pieces; and returning with their Heads upon their Lances, they enter their Villages in Triumph, feasting and revelling for 14 days afterwards; during which Solemnity, the Performers of that great Exploit are had in such Respect, that scarce any body dares come near 'em.

As in most other things, they are likewise very ridiculous in their Funerals; for they neither bury nor burn the Dead Bodies, as other barbarous Nations do; but drying them before a Fire, and washing them for several days consecutively, they let 'em afterwards lie above ground about three years, when, there remaining generally nothing but the Bones, they inter them with abundance of Foppish Ceremonies. Which is all that I thought necessary to insert for the Reader's Diversion in this Abridgment of the Description of it.

The

A JOURNAL of the Expedition undertaken to Surrat, by Mr. WILLIAM DANIEL.

HE left *London*, May 4. 1700. At *Graves-end* the Wind and Tide being against him, he took Post for *Dover* next Morning early, and ariv'd there by Eleven o' Clock. Being there at a loss for a Conveyance to the *French* Coast, a Merchant of that Nation, who had hired a small Boat for *Bologn*, frankly entertain'd him; but the whole Crew being only six Men, his Companion and himself, he was forced to be Steersman. But a great Storm arising, with extreme Thunder and Lightning; beside Night coming on, and that Coast being very rocky and dangerous, they were forced to put before the Wind for *Calais*; till soon after accidentally meeting with a Billander of *Dunkirk* bound for *Bologn*, they embark'd thereon, (it being morally impossible their small Boat could have liv'd in such a Tempest much longer) and got safe there at 7 next Morning; where being handsomly regaled by his Companion, while his Horses were getting ready, and refitted with a Hat, his own being lost in the Storm; departing immediately he lay that Night at *Abbeville*, 28 Leagues from *Calais*; where, having Letters of Recommendation to the Post-Master, he was furnish'd with the best of his Horses, wherewith, having no Luggage, he reach'd *Paris* next day.

Early next Morning *May* 9. he took Post for *Lions* and *Marseilles*, at which last he arrived on the 15th. and next day waited on Messieurs *S. Amand Lamb* and *Barker*, upon whom he had Bills; which having receiv'd in Pistoles, *May* 17. he embark'd in a *Felucca* for *Genoa*, in Company of a *French* Marquis going to *Venice* on account of an Amour, concerning which he, as are most of that Nation, was very free in discovering himself. They lay that night in an old Castle, 80 Miles from *Marseilles*; whence next day wanting Wind they made but 60 Miles to a Village call'd *S. Turpe*, where contrary Winds forced them to lie by two days. Then it being somewhat calmer, they put to Sea again, and in two hours were strangely frighted with the Sight of a small *Tartan*, which they apprehended to be an *Algerine*, but prov'd to be no better than a Boat of *Trepano* fishing for Coral. The *Genoese*, who are cowardly and superstitious to excess, during this doughty Consternation, lighted up a Lamp, and placed before it a little Saint they had painted on a Board, whose Assistance they implored with such Eagerness and Devotion, as if they seriously thought the *Punchanello* could indeed have serv'd 'em much in their Distress. Mean while the Marquis and Mr. *Daniel* diverted themselves with shooting Rabbets; and upon their Return found their Fear, and consequently their Devotion, to be at an end: so they sail'd again, and lay that night at *Monaco*. Next morning they had not been out above 4 hours, but it blew so hard, they were forced to put into *S. Remy*. Here tarrying for the Settlement of the Weather, and being tired with Delays, he agreed with a Bark bound for *Civita Vecchia* to put him ashore at *Legborn*, where he arrived *May* 26. too late for a Ship he expected, which was departed four days before; and here he receiv'd the ill News of his Father Sir *Peter Daniel's* Death.

June 2. He embark'd on a *French* Ship bound for *Alexandria*, where, after an indifferent Passage of 18 days, he safely arrived; and thence immediately hired a Bark for *Scanderoon*, and dispatch'd an Express to *Grand Cairo* to Consul *Fleetwood*, who had travel'd *Judea*, for his Advice; and next day after the Return thereof, which gave him great Encouragement, he hired a Boat for *Rosetto*, and arrived there about Noon, after a very dangerous Passage over a *Bogasse* or *Bar*, at the Disembogation of the *Nile*, which about that time began its Increase.

Here he fortunately met with a *French* Merchant bound for *Cairo*, and hiring a Boat to themselves they put off that Evening, and arriv'd safe there; after some Impositions, entring the Suburb called *Bollack*, whence he sent to the Consul at Old *Cairo* for his Janizaries to conduct him to his House; where during his 4 days stay, he was most civilly treated by him; as well as Messieurs *Vernon*, *Goodman*, *Merchant* and *Bower*, Factors there. The *French* also, who abound here, as in most Scales of the *Levant*, were very courteous, accompanying him with the *English* Merchants to shew him the Curiosities of the Place; as the famous *Pyramides*, the Castle, and several other famous Antiquities. Amongst which, five Miles *South-East* from thence, where once flourish'd the Regal City of *Memphis*, the Strength and Glory of old *Egypt*, stands the sumptuous Temples of *Apis* and *Vulcan*, the ancient *Mummies*, *Joseph's*-Well, and his *Granaries*; obliging to the Curiosities of most Strangers; as also the *Pillar* of *Marcus Aurelius*; and at his Return to Old *Cairo*, most kindly entertained him at the Convent of *Capuchines*, where our Blessed Saviour CHRIST and his Holy Mother were hid, when the Soldiers of *Herod* pursued them. This City is very large and populous, to such a vast degree, that it is credibly aver'd, that in the year 1618, there died above 600000 People of the Plague, and scarcely to be miss'd. This City is divided into 4 Parts, as Old *Cairo*, New *Cairo*, *Bollak* and *Carafar*; (but by the *Arabians* only known by the name of *Mizar* and in the midst of which is a large fair Plain, which is very pleasant in all its Seasons, especially in *March*, being full of Corn: and in the Month of *June* he had the Diversion of seeing the *Bashaw* drawing up his Soldiers, consisting of several thousand beautiful Horse and Foot, adorn'd with very rich Equipage and Furniture; Yet tho' this Plain in the Season of *June* be proper and convenient to exercise their Military Affairs, yet it is otherwise in that of *August*, being emerged by the Overflowing of the *Nile*, and during that time, as full of Boats as the River *Thames* on a *Lord-Mayors-Day*; and in the Night illustrating their Splendour by frequent and admirable *Fire-Works*, and rejoycing, after their barbarous Manner, as much as possibly they can, for the expected Plenty of the Year ensuing; the Water leaving a strange kind of *Nitre* behind, as its ebbing away, which improves the Land for the Growth of Grain to a very wonderful degree.

This City by several Authors is accounted to be the largest in the World, whose Extent, Number of Houses, Streets, Mosques, Caves, Bazars, *&c.* may be found in many modern Authors.

Here he luckily found an *Englishman* of the *West*-Country, surnamed *Gardiner* before, but now called *Haggi Biram*, who was grown very rich, and extremely civil, being indeed the only person there that thought it worth his while to be civil to Strangers, the Natives being generally morose, slothful, and lazy: The Men daily lie basking in the Sun, wholly depending upon the *Nile's* Fertility for their Subsistence; and the Women so sauntring, sluttish and negligent, not caring for Employment, tho' 'tis to keep themselves clean, having, by reason of the Heat, very few Cloaths on, and the Virgins commonly wearing none at all.

This kind Renegade *Haggi Biram*, whose great Courtesie Mr. *Daniel* most gratefully acknowledges, not only procured him a *Firmand* from the *Bashaw*, to embark on the *Red-Sea*, but also recommended him to a Guide to conduct him safe to *Sues*, who was the Prince of the Rogues of that Country; obliging him to be very careful in furnishing him with good Camels, which he did accordingly, and mounted him on his own Mare.

Thus having taken leave of his Friends, *July* 7. he departed with a Caravan consisting of about 12000 Camels laden with Merchandise for *Sues*, and tho' 'tis not above 70 Miles from *Cairo*, it cost 'em a four Days Journey, by reason of the vast and almost unpassable Sands, with the violent Heat; and having no other Water than what they carried with them, all which rendred the Fatigue beyond expectation intolerable. At last however they arrived at SUES, a Sea-Port-Town at the bottom of the Red-Sea, giving Name to the Isthmus of *Sues*, to which Port belong about 40 Sail of Ships, who Trade every Year between that Place and *Judda*, their outward Merchandise being little or nothing but *Provisions* and *Pieces of Eight*, and their Return all sorts of *Spices*, *Muslins*, *Silks*, precious *Stones*, *Pearls*, and *Amber-Greese*, *Musk*, *Coffee*, and many other *Drugs*, which are brought by the Trading-Vessels which come yearly from *India* to *Mocha* and *Judda*, and transported over Land on Camels to *Cairo* and *Alexandria*. Here Mr. *Daniel* arriving late was forced to take up his Lodg-

ing on the Terrace of a poor Greek Church, where he was miserably annoy'd with all the Vermin of the Season; but in a little time after he had Advice of a Ship just departing for *Judda*, aboard whereof were 100 of the best *Janizaries* from Grand *Cairo*, appointed for that Years Guard for the Mosque of *Mecca*. With some difficulty, and not 'till he produced the Grand Seignior's *Firmand*, with a Purse of Gold, he agreed with the Capt. *July* 12. he embark'd, and after 18 Days of fruitless stays and unnecessary Anchorings every Night, with time of refitting after a terrible Storm, they arrived *Aug.* 1. at a small Village called *Mocha*, where they took in fresh Water, and the next Day departed for *Jembo*, and that Evening came to an Island in the middle of the *Red-Sea*, where they were more embarass'd than in any of their former Voyage.

The *Red-Sea*, or *Mar de la Mecca*, is a Branch of the *Indian*, or *Ethiopian Ocean*, parting *Arabia* from *Africa* and *Egypt*, and runs from N. to S. above 1200 Miles. And tho' Mr. *Thevenot*, who, it seems, travel'd some Days on its shoars, affirms it not to be above 8 or 9 Miles over towards the *North*, he assures it to be above 100 Leagues in breadth, in some parts, tho' full of sunk Rocks very dangerous to Sailors, and innumerable Islands; for which, and other reasons, it is not much frequented, since the way to the *Indies* was discovered by the *Ocean*. That part of it which lies between *Boges* and *Egypt*, and *Judda*, the Port of *Mecca*, is two Days sail, and full of Flats and Rocks, and some little Islands, which in the Winter have no Inhabitants, except *Seamend* and *Sameri*, which are always inhabited; the latter by *Samaritan Jews*. It is good Sailing in the middle of this Sea by Day or Night, in clear Weather, being 25 or 30 Fathom deep; but towards the Western Shoar, by reason of Shoals and Rocks, 'tis unnavigable by night, and abounds with all manner of Fish. The *Hebrews* call this Sea *JAMSUPH*, or *Mare algosum*; this *Red-Sea* will be famous to all Ages, upon the Account of the *Israelites* passing through it dry-footed, when they went up out of *Egypt*.

Here they were obliged to go ashoar, and pray to a Saint formerly buried there, and also to present him with a Shirt, and light his *Lamps*; this being accustomed time out of mind, and perform'd by all Ships that pass this way: The Ceremony over, they proceeded on their Voyage, much Joy appearing in the Faces of all the Company, proposing to themselves a Certainty of good Success, after having paid their Devotion to their *Saint*. But it happen'd quite otherwise, for they were scarce out of sight of the Saint's Mansion, when there arose a terrible Storm, and in the most dangerous part of the Sea; which was in a few Minutes afterwards so violent, that it drove 'em fast on a sunk Rock, where they stuck four Days, using all means to get off, but in vain; and at last they were forced to throw over above 200 *Bales* of Goods: And no sooner were they got off, but the leaky Vessel set them to pumping 3 Days and 3 Nights together, after which, with much Pains and Diligence, they arriv'd safe in the Harbour of *Jembo*.

Here it may be taken Notice of, that tho' the Storm aforemention'd was very violent, yet they had not run their Ship ashoar, had not there been a mischievous design between the Capt. and Pilot: For their Ship being full laden, before the Arrival of the 100 *Janizaries* aforesaid, which was not expected, and he being obliged to carry the Goods before on board, having receiv'd *Freight*, and sign'd *Bills of Loading*, could not possibly receive these *Janizaries* and their Effects, without this *Fraud* as follows; which was by taking out clandestinely by night the Merchants Goods, and putting them aboard other Ships in Port, to make room for the live Cargo; and then *Aug.* 4. he purposely ran the Ship ashoar; and under pretence of clearing her again, threw over the foresaid Quantity of Goods of the *Janizaries* and *Merchants*; in which Mr. *Daniel* had a considerable Share; and this done, upon their Arrival at *Jembo*, the Capt. delivered the rest of the Goods to the Factors there, and at *Judda*, made a Protest, that he was forced to use those means, the violent Storm running him ashoar. But afterwards the Goods he had put aboard the other Ships, came all safe to *Judda*, which this Villain converted to his own Use.

JEMBO is the Sea-Port Town of that famous City *Medena*, where lies the Body of their Prophet *Mahomet*; and understanding there that five *Indian* Ships were at *Judda* ready to depart, he hired a Boat and took four *Janizaries* into his Service, designing to go off at midnight; but the Governour being inform'd that he was a Christian, stopt him and detain'd him two days; but by the Assistance of his *Janizaries*, whom he had well feed, he got off, after being forced to make the Governour a Present of 100 *Venetian Chequeens*, and as many among his Officers; besides a Present of Rice, Honey, Sugar, Coffee and Tobacco, for his Wives and Slaves, and the Lois of his Boat-hire.

This is the chief City of the *Beniequebys* or *Bengebres*, formerly call'd *Saracens*, living mainly upon Robberies, being very numerous, and able in 24 hours to raise 50000 men. An Instance he gives in that about 4 hours after he paid the Money extorted, as is said before, there arriv'd an Express to the Governour, from his Brother, to the great Joy of the People of that Town, with the News of their having robbed and destroyed the whole *Caravan* of *Pilgrims* and Merchants in their Return from *Mecca* to *Damascus*, and other Parts of *Asia*, consisting of 70000 men, giving a glad Account how they had barbarously murdered those that resisted, strip the rest stark naked in that wild, scorching, and intolerable Desart; and most savagely forced their Women away with them. The Number of these Villains was computed at 100000.

This News not only affrighted him, but his *Janizaries*. However they embark'd, and *Aug.* 29. arrived at *Judda*; but the *Indian* Ships being departed three days before, *Hagge Joseph* a Turk, to whom he was recommended, gave him hopes of overtaking the Ships, they sometimes using to water and take in fresh Provisions, and Coffee, in the Country *Temen*, where being arriv'd, he understood they were past by for *Mocha* two days before. Hereupon, having hired *Dromedaries*, and, as he thought, fully satisfied the Governour of that Place, who took from him 20 pieces of Eight, and two valuable Strings of Coral, as a *Cafar*, or *Passage-Money*, he departed the same night. But he being inform'd that he was a *Frank*, sent four Horsemen after him to bring him back again, and he was forced for his Liberty to present him with 100 Pieces of Eight; which the Haste of his Business would not give him time to complain of to the King, who would have righted him. So he went onward, and arrived at *Mocha*, *Sept.* 13. hoping to have found there some *European* Vessel, if the *Indian* had been gone; but it proved quite otherwise; so that after many Endeavours in vain to get a Conveyance, he had no Choice left him, but either to stay there till next year, or to return to *Europe*. The former of these would have been to no purpose, therefore with the same Dromedaries he return'd to *Temen*, where telling the Governour his Misfortune, and shewing the Bassa of *Mocha*'s Letter, who was his Superiour, he was treated more civilly than before.

Temen is a small Village, but Sea-port of the City *Collebee*; from whence is exported all the Coffee which supplies *Europe*, by way of *Suez* and *Grand Cairo*, (as *Mocha* is the Sea-port-Town of *Bideilfeke*, whence comes all the Coffee that supplies *India* and *Europe*, by way of the Cape) and from whence were exported that year for *Judda* 40000 Bales.

Sept. 21. He embark'd for *Judda* on one of their largest Vessels, in which were 1400 Bales of Coffee: Her Keel, Beams, Planks, and Rudder being sew'd and ty'd together, and then pitch'd; not having one Nail, or piece of Iron in her: Her Sails were made of Date-Leaves matted or plaited together, and adorn'd with Ostriches Eggs and Feathers; and her Stern very prettily painted. After a fair Wind for about 12 hours, they had a violent North-West-Wind, which put them to some trouble; and they had hardly out-rid that, and cast Anchor near the Island *Comaran*, but they had dreadful Thunder and Lightning continually flashing, and Rain pouring from the Clouds, not by Drops, but by Streams; which they were forced to endure four days and four nights, which caus'd many of their Men to die of the Bloody-flux.

Sept. 26. The Storm ceasing they refitted, and arrived at *Judda*, *Octob.* 4. where being obliged to stay 50 days for a Conveyance, in great Uneasiness and Danger; seeing in that time an Instance of their outragious Insolence; when the *Xeriff* of the *Arabs* coming in person before the City, with 20000 Horse, demanded of the Bassa, his only Friend, 100000 Chequins, saying, 'That his Master 'the Grand Seignior was the Son of a Christian Whore, 'and that he would not own him to be a Protector of the 'Mahometan Religion, since he had made a Peace with 'those Unbelievers the Christians; but that he would marry his Daughter to the King of *Morocco*: Whereupon the Bassa was forced to send him the Money, to save his Head. Few days after, a Vessel arrived from *Abys*, on the Coast of *Ethiopia*, on board of which was a *Frenchman*, who had been sent with a Jesuit, as an Interpreter, to the King of *Abyssinia*; But the Jesuit died, leaving him to return to the Court of *France*, to give an Account of his Expedition and Proceedings.

This

This *Frenchman*, among other divertive Discourses of his Travels, gave him in effect the following Account of the *Nile*: "As to the Original and Rise of this great "*African* River, there are different Judgments: Some "will have its Beginning to be in *Upper Ethiopia*, in "the Kingdom of the *Abysses*, from very high Moun-"tains, which are called the *Mountains of the Moon*; "but our modern Opinions agree more reasonably, "That the *Nile* is form'd the Increase of two Lakes "called *Zembre* and *Zaflan*, which are fill'd by Rain "falling into 'em from Precipices." And for several days Journey he observ'd himself, the Source of Water is heard roaring through the Caverns under ground, a great way off, before it is seen to enter these Lakes. And particularly Mr. *Daniel* declares, "That, as other "Writers affirm its Evacuation into the *Mediterranean* "to be by five or seven Streams, it only flows from *two*, "which form a triangular Figure, like △; the Eastern "Branch falling into the *Mediterranean* at *Damiata*, and "the Western near *Roset*; both which he pass'd going "and returning, with great Satisfaction and Pleasure; "the Banks all along being delicately beautify'd with "Villages, having, between *Grand Cairo* and *Roset*, a-"bove 500.

The *Genius* of the *Egyptians* can never enough extol the extraordinary Effects and Blessings proceeding from this *Nile*, which causes the Fertility of the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*; beginning every year to flow in *June*, and swelling sometimes to 24 Cubits, which over-flows their whole Country about the middle of *August*, and decreases about the middle of *September*, and in *October* they cultivate and sow their Ground, and in *April* following reap their Harvest, without half the Trouble of our Northern Fatigues. Nor do the *Egyptians* owe only their Food, but in a great measure their Lives too to the flowing of this River; it being observ'd, that when 500 die of the Plague in *Grand Cairo* the day *before*, not one dies *after* it begins to increase; but more especially after the Feast of St. *John*, on which day the Plague has been observ'd to cease, tho' it had raged several Weeks before.

The Waters are sweet and grateful to the taste, cool, wholesome and very nourishing both to Plants and Animals. It abounds with great Plenty of Fish, but not very wholsome, the Bottom being muddy, not having any Gravel or Stones, and very much infected with Crocodiles, that are very pernicious, some of them having been taken thirty foot long.

During the Over-flowing of the *Nile*, the Country People keep their Cattel upon the tops of the Hills, till the Decrease of the Waters; their Towns and Villages appearing in the time of the Flood, like so many little Islands, holding a Commerce by Boats and Chaloups, in which they transport their vendible Commodities. 'Tis generally noted among the Natives, that if the River does not overflow, it is not only a Fore-runner of the Plague and Famine, but prognosticates some ensuing Mischief to the Prince and State, as is confirmed by the Testimony of good and credible Authors. And in the year 1688, Mr. *Daniel* was an Eye-witness of its Effects, being then in the Holy Land, whither many Families came for Refuge from the Plague, which not flowing of the River, the year before fore-told.

December 8. They embark'd for *Sues*, and, after an indifferent Passage, they arriv'd at *Jembo*. Here they were forc'd to remain some time, the Captain having private business at *Medena*; whereof he gave the following account.

Medena is one of the chiefest Cities of *Arabia Petræa*, and is very considerable among the *Mahometans*, the Body of their famous Prophet *Mahomet* being there deposited; which some say was removed hither from *Mecca*, after *Albukerk* (General of the *Portuguese*) attempted to take it thence, and surprize the Town of *Judda* to favour his Retreat; but others, of his Profession, that were more zealous, will have it that *Mahomet* himself desired to be buried there, to be reveng'd on the incredulous People of *Mecca* (the place of his Birth) for banishing him and despising his Doctrine, when he first set up for a Prophet. This City is about four days journey from *Mecca*, and stands upon a small River called *Lakie*. The Houses are very low, except those inhabited by the *Dervises* and other Religious *Mahometans*, who are very much esteemed by the *Turks* for their pretended Sanctity and Skill in the *Alcoran*. The chief Mosque is called *Mosque Akiba*, which signifies *Most Holy*; it is supported by 400 Pillars, and adorned with 3000 Silver Lamps, and there is within the Mosque, at the end, a small Chappel, glittering with Plates of Silver, in which stands *Mahomet*'s Coffin, cover'd with Cloth of Gold, under a very rich Canopy, which the *Bassaw* of *Egypt* renews every year, by the *Grand Seignior*'s Order. 'Tis commonly reported that his Coffin is Iron, and suspended in the Air by two Load stones; but this is a meer Fable, and the ridiculous Assertion only of such who would impose upon the Ignorant by their travelling Authority; for 'tis supported by two black Marble Pillars of fifteen foot high, each surrounded with a Balister of Silver, on which hang a great number of Silver Lamps, whose Smoak and Height (being very high) render the Place obscure, and the black Marble Pillars invisible. The *Turks* are obliged by an Article of their Religion to visit this Mosque once in their Life-time; but yet there are but few that strictly observe it, except the Common-People, the *Mufties* absolving the Richer sort from that Obligation. The other four Articles are, 1. To observe Cleanness in the outward parts of their Bodies and Garments. 2. To pray five times a day. 3. To observe the *Ramazan* or Fasts: and 4. To perform the *Zeckat* or giving Alms. All Christians are forbid, upon pain of Death, to come within fifteen Leagues of this place.

All this the Captain, at his return, gave him an account of; and also of the more famous City of *Mecca*, where is the greatest and most frequented of all *Mahometan* Mosques, it standing in the middle of the City, and being conspicuous at a great distance by his Roof, which is rais'd in the fashion of a Dome, with two Towers of extraordinary Height and Architecture. It has above an hundred Gates, each having a Window over it. The Plan of the Mosque has a Descent of twelve steps, which the Zealous here account to be Holy; they alleging that *Abraham* built his first House there: but especially that 'tis the place of *Mahomet*'s Birth. This Mosque is adorn'd with rich Tapestry and Gildings, and fine Inscriptions; and a certain particular Place at the East Corner of the Mosque there is, which has no Roof, and which is supposed by them to include the place where *Abraham*'s House stood: the Entrance into it is by a Door of Silver of the Height of a Man; on one side whereof is a Fountain whose Water is salt, and believ'd by the superstitious *Mahometans*, to have the Virtue of *washing away their Sins*. They solemnize a Festival here once a year, *viz. May* 23, where meet four Caravans, one from *Egypt* on the Coast of *Barbary*, another from *Constantinople*, another from *Persia*, and a fourth from the Country of *Yemen*; which meeting together are computed to be near 400000 Souls, who come there as Pilgrims, and under pretence of Religion; but Merchandizing is their chief Business, each Caravan bringing the Commodities and Product of their respective Countries, which they barter one with another this Fair: it continues twenty days; and all this time the Dervises are wholly employ'd in distributing and selling the *Holy Water* to the ignorant People.

This and such like was the Captain's Discourse when he came again on board, *Jan.* 5. Then they sail'd again, but meeting with contrary Winds and bad Weather, they arriv'd at *Sharne*, a Village not above 200 Leagues from *Jembo*, not till *March* 12. Here, having endur'd many Hardships through the Want or Damage of their Meal and Provisions, they resolv'd rather to venture the Danger of the murd'rous *Arabs* by Land, than their paltry Galley. Accordingly Mr *Daniel* dealt with one of the Country (and they are all very Rogues) to furnish him with Camels, and to conduct him to Mount *Sinai*; where at last, through many Fears and Fatigues, he arriv'd, having by the way almost lost his Sight by the Heat and Sand; and having been forc'd to go two days about, by reason of an Earthquake, which had thrown down a Mountain, and stopt the usual Passage.

Zinai or *Sinai*, according to the Relation he had, is a Mountain of *Arabia Petræa*, two days Journey from the *Red-Sea*, of which Mount *Horeb* is a part. This, as antient Authors generally agree, and as my Interpreter told me, was the twelfth Station of the *Israelites*, in their passage to the *Holy-Land*; about which Mountains they wander'd near a year, during which time all those things happen'd which are mentioned in the Scripture, from *Exodus* 19. to the end of *Leviticus*, and from the beginning of *Numbers* to Chap. 10. the Chief of all was, the Almighty's giving the Law in person there to *Moses*. The *Mahometans* call this Mountain *Gibel Mousa*, or the *Mountain of Moses*. It's form'd of the uniting of three Mountains, as it were, one standing on the Top of the other, and had formerly many Chapels upon it; several yet remaining, serv'd by 1400 Hermits; among which are three famous, on account of three Sons of a King of *Ethiopia*, who led retir'd Lives there above 40 years; as also of the famous Convent called *Orei*, which was very strong and rich, and the Walls not inferiour to

those of the Tower of *London*; all Pilgrims who come there being drawn up by a Pulley, fearing the Insult of the *Arabs*.

From this Convent Pilgrims go up to the top of the Mountain by 1400 Steps cut out of the Rock, by the Order and Charge of S. *Helena*.

At some distance from the Foot of this Mountain, there still runs that excellent Spring of Water, which gush'd out of the Rock when *Moses* struck it, at the Murmuring of the Children of *Israel*; and at the third part of the way are two Gates shut, which are not to be open'd till they have made their Confession; and then, the Gates being open'd, they are permitted to pass. Somewhat higher is a great Stone, which an Angel, as 'tis said, laid there to hinder the Passage of *Elias*. On the top of the Mountain, under a great hollow Rock, opening towards the West, is the place where *Moses* liv'd, during the forty days that he was upon the Mount. And a little beyond this Rock, going towards the Right, there is a *Greek* Church, dedicated to St. *Katherine*.

Having staid there all Night, next Morning they visited the Monastery of the forty Martyrs, which is in the Valley between Mount *Horeb* and that of *Sinai*. Here there is a fair Church and most delicious Gardens, with all sorts of Fruit-trees and Flowers, a Spring running through the middle of it; and 'tis so much the more delightful, that there is no other Garden, great Trees or Water, within ten days Journey of it; as also the *Grotto* of St. *Onuphrius*, cut out in the Rock; and many other Curiosities.

After twelve days stay here, the Patriarch gave him a Pass to his *Caffargees*, and also some necessary Provision for his Journey to *Cairo*, and a Promise of his daily Prayers for him, his Friends and Relations; it being a venerable Custom among the *Greek* Pilgrims that come there to give five Crowns for themselves or any others, for whom they have the greatest Love and Care (to use their Interest with God Almighty, and procure them a good place in Heaven.) He presented them with forty Crowns and two pair of Spectacles, to pray for King *William*, the Honourable *East-India* Company, himself and Relations.

Hence he went to *Grand Cairo*, ten Days Journey, then terribly infected with the Plague, which so raged, that in ten Days time there died above 40000, and all the *Europeans*, as *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, and *Venetians* were close shut up, having laid in their Provisions at the beginning of the Plague, and keeping no Communication with the People of the Town. Even the *English* Consul would not at first entertain him; but soon used him kindly, and furnished him with Cloaths and other Necessaries.

April 20. He hired a Boat, and arrived at *Alexandria* the 25th, where he embark'd for *Marseilles* in his way for *England*.

AN

An ABSTRACT OF THE CHARTER Granted by His MAJESTY K. CHARLES II. TO THE *EAST-INDIA* COMPANY,

Under the Great Seal of *England*, the Third Day of *April*, in the Year 1661, and the Thirteenth of that PRINCE's Reign.

CHARLES II. by the Grace of God King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France* and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all to whom these Presents shall come greeting. Whereas our well-beloved Subjects, the Governour and Company of Merchants trading to the *East-Indies*, have been of long time a Corporation, to the Honour and Profit of this Nation, and have enjoy'd, and do still enjoy divers Liberties, Privileges and Immunities, by virtue of Letters Patents and Charters, heretofore granted them, by our late Royal Progenitors, Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James* of Blessed Memory. But of late divers Disorders have been committed, as well by our own Subjects as by Foreigners, to the great Detriment and Interruption of the Trade of the said Company; they having humbly besought us to confirm their said Charters, and to grant and allow some Alterations and Additions, tending to the Benefit and Advancement of their Traffick.

Know ye, that we taking the Premises into our Royal Consideration, and well considering how much it imports this our Realm, that the Grievances of the said Corporation be redress'd, the better to remove all Incumberances and Inconveniences that may have hitherto obstructed their Trade; have granted and confirmed unto the said Governour and Company, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, that they from henceforth be, and for ever shall be, one Body Corporate and Politick, in Deed and in Name, by the Name of the *Governour and Company of Merchants of* London, *trading to the* East-Indies. And we do ordain, that by the Name aforesaid, they shall have perpetual Succession, and that they and their Successors by the said Name, be now and at all times hereafter, Persons able and capable in Law, and a Body Corporate and Politick, capable in Law to have, purchase, receive, possess, enjoy and retain Lands, Rents, Privileges, Liberties, Jurisdictions, Franchises and Hereditaments, of what kind, nature and quality soever they be, to them and their Successors. And also to give, grant, devise, alien, assign, and dispose of Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, and to do and execute all and singular other things, by the same Name that to them shall or may appertain to do. And that they and their Successors, by the said Name, may plead and be impleaded, answer and be answered, defend and be defended, in whatsoever Courts and Places, and before whatsoever Judges and Justices, and other Persons and Officers, in all and singular Actions, Pleas, Suits, Quarrels, Causes, and Demands whatsoever, of whatsoever kind, nature or sort, in such Manner and Form, as any other of our Liege People of this our Realm of *England*, being Persons able and capable in Law, may or can have purchase, receive, possess, enjoy, retain, give, grant, devise, alien, assign, dispose, plead, defend and be defended, release and be released, do permit and execute: And we also grant and allow, that the said Company and their Successors, under the Name aforesaid, may have a Common Seal, and may likewise break and alter the same at their Pleasure.

And further we ordain, that the said Company shall elect one of the Members thereof to be their Governour, and twenty four of the said Members to be Committees; who shall have the Direction of the Voyages of and for the said Company, and the Provision of the Shipping, and Merchandizes thereunto belonging; and also the Sale of all Merchandizes, Goods, and other things return'd, in all or any of the Voyages and Ships, of or for the said Company, and the managing and handling of all other Business, Affairs, and things belonging to the said Company. And we ordain, that the said Governour and Company, shall be ruled and ordred as is hereafter express'd, and not otherwise; and that they shall likewise enjoy the Liberties, Privileges, and Immunities herein specified, and no other. And for the better execution of our said Will and Grant in this behalf, we nominate, constitute and appoint, Sir *Andrew Riccard*, to be the first and present Governour, and *George* Lord *Berkley*, Sir *John Lewis*, Sir *William Thomson*, Sir *Richard Ford*, Sir *James Drax*, Sir *John Frederick*, Sir *Theophilus Biddulph*, Sir *William Vincent*, Sir *Thomas Bludworth*, Sir *William Ryder*, Sir *Stephen White*, and Sir *George Smith*, Knights; *William Love*, Esq; *William Williams*, *John Jolliffe*, *Peter Middleton*, *Thomas Kendal*, *Maurice Thomson*, *Samuel Mayer*, *Christopher Boone*, *Francis Clerk*, *John Masçal*, *Thomas Pearle*, and *Christopher Willoughby*, Gentlemen; to be the twenty-four first and present Committees for the said Company, from the date of these Presents, until the said tenth Day of *April*, then also next following; and so until new Committees shall be chosen in form hereafter express'd. And further we will and ordain, that the said Governour and Company, at any General Court, may elect a *Deputy Governour*, who shall take an Oath before the Governour, and five or more of the Committees for the time being, well, faithfully and truly to execute his said Office of *Deputy* to the Governour of the said Company. And the said Governour and Company shall have Power yearly, between the 10th and the last Day of *April*, to meet and to elect a Governour for one whole year, who shall take an Oath before the last Governour or his Deputy, and six more of the Committees, that he shall well and truly execute the Office of Governour of the said Company: And in like manner, every Member of the said Company, before their admission into it, shall take an Oath before the Governour of the said Company or his Deputy, to such effect, as by the said Governour and Company, or the greater part of them in any Court, to be held for the said Company, shall be in a reasonable manner devised.

And

And further we Will and Grant, that the ſaid Governour or Deputy-Governour, and the Company or their Succeſſors, for the time being, may meet yearly, between the 10th and the laſt of *April*, and elect twenty four Committees for the year enſuing, who ſhall, before their admiſſion into their ſaid Stations, take an Oath before the Governour or his Deputy and five more of the laſt Committees, their immediate Predeceſſors, that they ſhall truly and faithfully execute their ſaid Office of Committees.

And further we will and grant, That upon the Death or Removal of the Governour of the ſaid Company (which Governour not demeaning himſelf well in his Office we will to be removeable at the Pleaſure of the ſaid Company or the greater part of them, at any of their General Courts) the Reſidue of the ſaid Company or the greater part of them, may elect another Governour, who ſhall exerciſe the ſaid Office during the Reſidue of the Year, having firſt taken an Oath, as aboveſaid, for the due Execution thereof. And in like manner, any of the Committees dying or being removed (which Committees not demeaning themſelves well, may be removed at the Pleaſure of the Governour and Company at any of their General Meetings) the Governour, or his Deputy, and Company for the time being, may elect and nominate one or more of the ſaid Company, to be Committee or Committees of the ſaid Company, in the place and ſtead, or places and ſteads of him or them of the former Committees ſo dying or removed; which Perſon or Perſons ſo elected ſhall take an Oath (as aboveſaid) for the right and due Execution of their aforeſaid Office or Offices.

And further we will and grant, That the Sons, Factors and Servants of the Members of the ſaid Company, that are of one and twenty years of age or above, may freely trade in any part of *Aſia*, *Africa* and *America*, (beyond the *Cape of Good-Hope*, to the *Streights of Magellan*, in ſuch manner as ſhall be agreed to at any General Court, and not otherwiſe.

And we further will and grant, That the ſaid Governour or his Deputy, and the ſaid Company may aſſemble in any place to hold Court, and there make Laws for the Government and Management of their Trade, and may impoſe Penalties on Offenders, and may levy the ſame without any Accompt, ſo as the ſaid Penalties be reaſonable, and not contrary to Law.

And alſo we will and grant, That the ſaid Governour and Company of Merchants, and their Agents, Factors and Aſſigns ſhall have ſix Months time for the Payment of one half, and ſix Months time longer for the payment of the other half of all Duties, Poundage, Cuſtoms, and Subſidies, for all manner of Goods; they, the ſaid Governour and Company of Merchants, always giving ſufficient Bond with Surety for the Payment thereof at the Terms aforeſaid. And when any Goods exported from *England*, for which the ſaid Governour and Company have paid the Cuſtom here, or given Bond for the payment thereof, ſhall happen to miſcarry, or be loſt before their ſafe Arrival at the Ports for which they were deſigned; due Proof being made thereof before the Treaſurer of *England*, the Duties paid for ſuch Goods ſhall be deducted out of the Duties of the firſt Goods ſhipt off afterwards for the ſaid Company's Accompt.

And further we grant unto the ſaid Governour and Company, That it ſhall be lawful for them and their Succeſſors, or any the natural Subjects of this our Realm which may or ſhall buy any *Eaſt-India* Goods by them imported, to tranſport the ſame in *Engliſh* Bottoms freely out of this Realm, without paying any further Duties than thoſe that were paid at the Entry, provided the ſaid Goods be exported within the ſpace and term of thirteen Months.

And moreover we grant to the ſaid Governour and Company, That it ſhall be lawful for them to tranſport in their Voyages all ſuch Foreign Coin of Silver, *Spaniſh* or other Foreign Silver or Bullion of Silver, as they ſhall bring or cauſe to be brought into this Realm of *England* from the Parts beyond the Seas, either in the ſame kind, ſort, ſtamp or faſhion which it ſhall have when they bring it in, or in any other form, ſtamp or faſhion to be com'd in our Mint within our Tower of *London*, at their pleaſure, ſo as the whole Quantity tranſported exceed not 50000 *l.* in one Voyage.

And we further will and grant, That the ſaid Company and their Succeſſors ſhall have and enjoy the whole and entire Trade to the *Eaſt-Indies*; and in any time of Reſtraint, they may ſend ſix good Ships and ſix good Pinnaces well furniſh'd with Ordnance and other Munition for their Defence, and 500 Marriners, *Engliſhmen*, to guide and ſail in the ſaid ſix Ships and ſix Pinnaces; except when we having juſt cauſe to arm our Navy in Warlike manner, in Defence of our Realm, or for Offence of our Enemies, or that it ſhould be found needful to joyn to our Navy the Ships of our Subjects, to be alſo arm'd for the Wars, to ſuch a number as cannot be ſupply'd if the ſaid ſix Ships and ſix Pinnaces ſhould be permitted to depart; then, upon knowledge given by us or our Admiral to the ſaid Governour and Company, about the 20th day of *July*, or three Months before the ſaid Governour and Company ſhall begin to make ready the ſaid ſix Ships and Pinnaces, then they forbear to ſend the ſame, till we ſhall recal or withdraw our Navy from the Service againſt our Enemies.

And further we prohibit and forbid all our other Subjects to viſit or trade into the *Eaſt-Indies*, unleſs by Licence from the ſaid Governour and Company upon pain of Forfeiture of Ship and Goods, one half to us and the other half to the Company, and the Offenders to ſuffer Impriſonment during our pleaſure, and ſuch other Puniſhment as we ſhall think fit to inflict on them.

And further we have granted and condeſcended, That the ſaid Governour and Company may give Licence, under their common Seal, to any Perſon or Perſons to ſail, Trade or Traffick into or from the *Eaſt-Indies* upon ſome conſideration or benefit by them to be given. And we, our Heirs or Succeſſors ſhall not give nor grant any ſuch Licence to any Perſon or Perſons without their Conſent.

And we further grant, That if it ſhall happen that any Perſon or Perſons that are or ſhall be free of the ſaid Company, ſhall, before the going forth of any Ship or Fleet, ſubſcribe for any Sum or Sums of Money towards the furniſhing Proviſion or Maintenance for any Voyage or Voyages, ſet forth or to be ſet forth by the ſaid Governour and Company, and ſhall not, within the ſpace of twenty Days, next after warning given to him or them, by the ſaid Governour and Company, or their known Officer or Miniſter, bring in and deliver to the Treaſurer or Treaſurers appointed for the Company, the Sum or Sums ſubſcribed for; it ſhall be lawful for the ſaid Governour and Company, at any General Court, to diſfranchiſe the ſaid Perſon or Perſons. And alſo the ſaid Governour and Company, at any General Court (as aboveſaid) may admit into their Freedom all ſuch Perſons as they ſhall think fit.

And further the ſaid Governour and Company do, by theſe preſents, for themſelves and their Succeſſors, promiſe and covenant to and with us, that within ſix Months after every Return from every Voyage (the firſt Voyage only excepted) they ſhall bring into this Realm, from the *Eaſt-Indies*, or from other Parts beyond the Seas, as great or a greater Quantity of Bullion, Gold or Silver, reſpectively for every Voyage, as that which by virtue of our Letters Patents they exported. And that all the Silver which ſhall be by them or their Succeſſors tranſported out of our Dominions, ſhall be ſhipt off at the Port of *London*, being firſt duly enter'd without Cuſtom or Subſidy, as likewiſe what ſhall be imported.

And to prevent Clandeſtine Trading, no Entry of *Eaſt-India* Goods ſhall be permitted to be made, but what is allow'd of by the Company. And all Adventurers in the Company ſhall have Votes according to their Stocks.

And we do further grant, That all the Company's Plantations, Forts, Fortifications, Factories and Colonies ſhall be immediately under their own Command; and that they may appoint Governours and Officers who may judge all Perſons living under them, in all Cauſes whether Civil or Criminal, or elſe may tranſmit them to *England*. And may ſend Ships of War, Men, and Ammunition for defence of their Factories; as alſo to make Peace or War with any not Chriſtians, and right and recompence themſelves for any Injuries or Wrongs received or ſuſtained by them.

And we further grant, That they may build, plant and fortifie at St. *Helens*, and ſend out ſupplies of Cloathing without Cuſtom.

And we alſo grant to the ſaid Governour and Company the Power of inflicting Puniſhments for Miſdemeanours; and likewiſe to ſeize upon the Perſons of all ſuch of our Subjects as they find in the *Indies* without their Licence, and ſend them into *England*. And that the Company may puniſh all Perſons in their own Service there; or, in caſe of Appeal, ſend them Priſoners into *England*.

And further we will and grant, That, for Diſcovery of Injuries, the Officers of the ſaid Company there may examine upon Oath all Perſons whom they ſhall think it meet and convenient ſo to examine; ſo as the ſaid Oath

Oath, and the matter therein contained be not repugnant to the Laws of *England*.

Provided always, and our Will and Pleasure is, that these our Letters Patents and Charters shall not give the said Company leave to Trade to any place already in the possession of any Christian Prince in League and Amity with us, who shall overtly declare against it.

Provided also, That if we find this Grant unprofitable for us or our Realm, then after three Years warning the same is to cease. Charging all our Admirals and other Officers to be aiding thereunto, *&c.*

In witness whereof we have caused these our Letters to be made Patents. Witness our self at *Westminster* the third Day of *April*, in the thirteenth Year of our Reign.

An ABSTRACT OF THE CHARTER Granted by His MAJESTY King JAMES II. TO THE *EAST-INDIA* COMPANY,

Under the Great Seal of *England*, the 12th Day of *April*, in the Year 1686, and the Second of that PRINCE's Reign.

JAMES II. by the Grace of God, *of England, Scotland, France*, and *Ireland*, King, Defender of the Faith, *&c.* To all to whom these Presents shall come greeting. Whereas our well beloved Subjects, the Governour and Company of Merchants trading to the *East-Indies*, have been of long time a Corporation, to the Honour and Profit of this Nation, and have enjoy'd, and do still enjoy divers Liberties, Privileges and Immunities, by Virtue of Letters Patents and Charters, heretofore granted them, by our late Royal Progenitors and Predecessors, Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James*. And whereas the late King *Charles* II. our dearly beloved Brother of ever blessed Memory, did by his Royal Charter, dated at *Westminster* the third Day of *April* in the thirteenth Year of his Reign, confirm the said precedent Charters and Patents, and grant that the said Governour and Company should be for ever a Body Corporate and Politick in Name and in Deed; and that their Sons, Apprentices and Servants might for ever freely Trade and Merchandise to and from *India*, by the ways then or thereafter to be discovered, in such manner as should at any General Court (the Governour or his Deputy being always one) be limited and agreed to, any Statute, *&c.* to the contrary notwithstanding; so as they Trade not to any place in the lawful possession of any Christian Prince or State in League or Amity with this Nation, that would not accept of such Trade, but openly declare against it.

And further the said King did thereby for himself, his Heirs and Successors, grant unto the said Governour and Company for themselves and their Successors, that they should for ever enjoy the whole and entire Trade to the *Indies*; and that no part of the said *Indies* should be frequented and visited by any of His Majesty's Subjects. And his said Majesty did also by his Prerogative Royal, straightly prohibit all his Subjects from Trading into the said *Indies*, other than the said Governour and Company, their Factors and Servants, *&c.* except by License obtain'd of them, under their Common Seal, under the Penalties, Pains, and Forfeitures, in the said Letters Patents, at large express'd.

And whereas the said late King *Charles* II. by his Royal Charter, or Letters Patents, dated at *Westminster* the 27th Day of *March*, in the 20th Year of his Reign, by the Advice of his Privy-Council, in all the Grants and Matters therein; did grant, transfer, and confirm for himself, his Heirs and Successors, unto the said Governour and Company, all the Port and Island of *Bombay* in the *East-Indies*, with all the Rights, Profits, Territories, and Appurtenances thereof whatsoever, and all and singular Royalties, Revenues, Rents, Customs, Castles, Forts, Buildings and Fortifications, Privileges, Franchises, Preheminences, and Hereditaments whatsoever, within the Premises, or to them, or any of them belonging, or any ways appertaining in as large and ample manner, to all Intents, Constructions and Purposes, as the said late King then had and enjoy'd the same, or might or ought to have had and enjoy'd the same, by Virtue and Force of the Grant of the then King of *Portugal*, and not further or otherwise. And them the said Governour and Company, did make and constitute the absolute Proprietors thereof, always reserving unto himself, his Heirs and Successors, the Faith and Allegiance to him due and belonging, and his Royal Power and Sovereignty of and over his Subjects and Inhabitants there: To have, hold, possess and enjoy, the said Port and Island, and all and singular the Premises therein before granted, or mention'd to be granted unto the said Governour and Company, their Successors and Assigns, and to the only Use of them for evermore: To be holden of him the said late King, his Heirs and Successors as of his Mannor of *East-Greenwich*, in the County of *Kent*, in Free and Common Soccage, and not *in capite*, or by the Knight's Service; yielding and paying therefore to him the said late King, his Heirs and Successors, at the Custom House, *London*; the Rent and Sum of 10*l.* of Good and Lawful Money of *England* in Gold, on the 30th Day of *Sept* Yearly, for ever. And the said late King did, by his said Charter, also grant them, and order that they should enjoy in the said Island, all the Privileges and Advantages that they might enjoy in the other Parts of *India*, by Virtue of his said Majesty's former Patent, dated the 3d Day of *April*, in the 13th Year of his Reign, in as large and ample manner, as if particularly express'd in the second recited Charter or Letters Patents. And whereas the said late King, by his Charter dated the 5th of Oct. in the 28th Year of his Reign, did confirm all Rights formerly granted the said Company

pany, notwithſtanding any former Miſ-uſer, Non-uſer, or Abuſer thereof whatſoever. And whereas the ſaid late King, by his Royal Charter dated the 16th of *Decemb.* in the 25th year of his Reign, did grant unto the ſaid Company, the Iſland of St. *Helena*, with all and ſingular the Rights, Profits, Territories, and Appurtenances whatſoever; and all the Soil, Lands, Fields, Woods, Mountains, Farms, Lakes, Pools, Harbours, Rivers, Bays, Iſles, Iſlets, ſituate or being within the Bounds or Limits thereof; with the fiſhing of all ſorts of Fiſh, Whales, Sturgeons, and all other Royal Fiſhes in the Bays, Iſlets, or Rivers, within the ſame Premiſes, and the Fiſh therein taken, and all the Veins, Mines and Quarries, as well Royal Mines, as other Mines; wherher the ſame were then diſcover'd, or not diſcover'd; and alſo all Gold, Silver, Jems, and precious Stones, and all other whatſoever, be it of Stones, Metals, or any thing whatſoever then found, or to be found within the Veins, Mines and Quarries, of the ſame Iſland and Premiſes, with all and ſinguler Royalries, Revenues, Rents, Cuſtoms, Caſtles, Forts and Buildings, then erected or to be erected. And whereas the ſaid late King did create and conſtitute the ſaid Company, abſolute Lords and Proprietors of the ſaid Iſland (always reſerving the Faith and Allegiance of the Inhabitants) to the only uſe of the ſaid Company, to be holden of the ſaid late King, his Heirs and Succeſſors as of the Mannor of *Eaſt-Greenwich*, in Free and Common Soccage, and not *in capite*, nor by Knight's Service, as in and by the ſaid Letters Patents, may more fully appear.

And whereas the ſame late King, by his Royal Charter, dated the 9th of *Aug.* in the 35th Year of his Reign, did erect a Court of Judicature to be holden as the Company ſhould direct, to determine all Caſes of Forfeitures and Seizures of Ships, as alſo all Cauſes *Mercantile* or *Maritime*, and all Treſpaſſes upon the High-Sea, or any of the Regions and Territories, Countries or Places, therein for that purpoſe mentioned, concerning any Perſon or Perſons reſiding, being or coming into the Parts of *Aſia*, *Africa* and *America*, within the Bounds and Limits therein mentioned; all which Caſes ſhall be judg'd and determin'd by that Court, upon due Examination and Proof, according to the Cuſtoms of Merchants, and the Rules of Equity and good Conſcience; and by ſuch Methods, as the ſaid late King ſhould direct, under his Great or Privy-Seal, and for want thereof, as the Judges of the ſaid Court ſhould think meet; and all Judgments, Determinations and Decrees of that Court, were to be put in Writing, and ſignify'd to the Perſons that were preſent at the making of them, and ſhould contain a ſhort ſtate of the Matter of Fact, as it appear'd to them and their Sentence and Adjudication thereupon; as in and by the foreſaid Charter and Letters Patents, doth and may more fully appear.

And whereas ſeveral Perſons, in Contempt of the firſt recited Letters Patents, have preſumed (without Licenſe) to ſend out Ships, and to Trade within the Limits compriz'd in the ſaid Charter, to the great Damage of the ſaid Company, and the manifeſt Hazard of ruining of that Trade; whereupon the ſaid Governour and Company have humbly beſought us to grant and confirm the ſaid Charters, with ſome Additions. Now well weighing how highly it imports the Honour and Welfare of this Realm, that thoſe Diſorders ſhould be redreſs'd, and that Trade improv'd to the utmoſt; that the ſaid Company may be encourag'd by all lawful Aſſiſtance, in that difficult and hazardous Trade. Know ye, that we taking the Premiſes into our Royal Conſideration, have of our ſpecial Grace, *&c.* ratify'd and confirm'd, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do ratifie and confirm unto the ſaid Governour and Company, and their Succeſſors for ever, all the ſaid Charters and Letters Patents, and all and ſingular the Rights, Grants, Liberties, Covenants, Franchiſes, Preheminences and Authorities, in all the ſaid Charters, or any of them compriz'd, as fully to all Intents and Purpoſes; as if ever diſtinct Right, Grant, Power, Liberty, Covenant, Franchiſe, Preheminence and Authority, compriz'd in the ſaid Letters Patents, were herein recited, and hereby confirm'd ſeparately and apart by itſelf. And further we eſtabliſh to them, all ſuch and the like Liberties and Privileges, as ever they had; with Power to the ſaid Company, their Preſidents, *&c.* to adminiſter the Freeman's Oath, and ſuch other lawful Oath, as the Court ſhall direct. And we do further erect and eſtabliſh a Court of Judicature, at ſuch Places as they ſhall appoint; which Court ſhall conſiſt of one Perſon learn'd in the Civil Law, and two Merchants, who (or the Major part of them, the Civilian being always one) ſhall have Power to determine of all Forfeitures, Seizures, *&c.* and all Cauſes *Mercantile* or *Maritime*, and all Treſpaſſes on the High-ſeas, or any of the Regions aforeſaid, according to the Cuſtoms of Merchants, and the Rules of Equity and Good Conſcience, and according to ſuch Methods of proceeding as we ſhall appoint, and in Default thereof, by ſuch ways as they ſhall think fit, all which Judgments and Determinations, *&c.* ſhall be put in Writing, according to the manner preſcrib'd in the Letters Patents of the ſaid late King *Charles* II. as aboveſaid.

And whereas the ſaid late King, did grant the ſaid Company Power to appoint Governours of Forts, Caſtles, Factories, *&c.* to raiſe Arms, train and muſter what Military Forces to them ſhould ſeem requiſite; we do hereby confirm the ſame. And further, underſtanding that many of the Native Princes, taking Advantage of the late Licentious Trading, and the Evil Conſequences thereof, have violated many of the Company's Privileges and Liberties, for which they intend to demand Satisfaction in a peaceable way; and if not that way attainable to uſe Force of Arms for recovering their Loſs. We do therefore grant them full Power to appoint Admirals, Vice-Admirals, Rear-Admirals, Captains, and other Sea Officers, from time to time, in all or any Ship or Ships, ſerving the ſaid Company in the *Eaſt-Indies*, within the Limits of any of the above recited Charters; who have hereby Power to raiſe, train and muſter Sea-men or others, and to execute Martial Law, beyond the Cape of *Good-Hope*, reſerving to our ſelves Power to revoke this Grant touching Martial Law.

And further by theſe Preſents, we give the ſaid Company Power to coin any Species of Money uſually coin'd by the Princes of thoſe Countries, ſo as it be agreeable to their Standards in weight and fineneſs, and that they coin not any *European* Money.

And laſtly, we ſtrictly charge and command all our Admirals, and all other our Officers whatſoever, to be aiding and aſſiſting to the ſaid Governour and Company, in executing and enjoying the Premiſes: And finally, our Will and Pleaſure is, that theſe our Letters Patents, ſhall be conſtituted in the moſt favourable manner on behalf of the Company that can be, any Statute, Act, Proclamation or Reſtriction, or any other thing to the contrary, in any ways notwithſtanding. In Witneſs whereof, we have cauſed theſe our Letters to be made Patents; Witneſs our ſelves at *Weſtminſter* the 12th day of *April*, in the Second year of our Reign.

By Writ of Privy-Seal,

Pigott.

An

An Abstract of a Charter of Regulations, *granted to the* East-India Company, *by their Majesties King* William *and Queen* Mary; *under the Great Seal of* England, *on* Nov. 11. 1693. *in the fifth Year of their Majesties Reign.*

WILLIAM and MARY by the Grace of God King and Queen of *England, Scotland, France* and *Ireland*, Defenders of the Faith, &c. To all to whom these Presents shall come Greeting. Whereas the Governour and Company of Merchants trading to the *East-Indies*, have been long a Corporation, to the Honour and Profit of this Nation, and have enjoy'd divers Liberties, Privileges and Immunities by vertue of Letters Patents and Charters, granted them by our late Royal Progenitors and Predecessors, Queen *Elizabeth*, King *James* I. King *Charles* II. and King *James* II. And whereas some Doubt hath arisen touching the Validity of the Charters heretofore granted to the said Company, by the not actual payment of the first quarterly payment of the Tax of five pounds *per Cent.* charged on the general Joint-Stock of the said Company, according to a late Act of Parliament entitled, *An Act for continuing certain Acts therein mentioned, and for charging several Joint-Stocks.*

We having taken the same into our Royal consideration, and well weighing the Disorders and Inconveniences that would befal the said Company and the persons employ'd in their Trade every where, and especially in the more remote places of the World, if advantage were taken of that Forfeiture; did, by our Letters Patents dated the 7th of *October* last, constitute Sir *Thomas Cook* Kt. and one of the Aldermen of the City of *London*, *Francis Tyssen* Esquire, *George* Earl of *Berkley*, Sir *John Fleet* Kt. then Lord Mayor of the City of *London*, Sir *Josiah Child* Bar. Sir *William Langhorn* Bar. Sir *Benjamin Bathurst* Kt. Sir *John Moore* Kt. one of the Alderman of the City of *London*, Sir *Samuel Dashwood* Kt. and one of the Aldermen of the City of *London*, Sir *Edward de Bouvery* Kt. Sir *Tho. Rawlinson* Kt. Sir *William Gore* Kt. and one of the Aldermen of the City of *London*, Sir *Joseph Herne* Kt. Sir *Rowland Ainsworth* Kt. *John Pery* Esq; *George Bohun* Esq; *Richard Hutchinson* jun. Esq; *Frederick Herne* Esq; *Ralph Marshall* Esq; *Richard Alton*, *John Cook* of *Hackney*, *Francis Gosfright*, *John du Bois*, *Isaac Houblon*, *Samuel Ongley* and *Nathaniel Mountency* Gentlemen, and all and other Person and Persons who were Members of the said Company on the 24 day of *March* last past, who had not before the said last recited Letters Patents parted with their Stocks in the said Company, and all and every other Person or Persons, who after the said 24th Day of *March* last past, and before the date of the said recited Letters Patents, by buying Stocks or otherwise had come into and then remained in a capacity of being Members of the said Company, should be a Body Corporate and Politick in deed and in name, by the name of *The Governour and Company of Merchants of* London, *trading to the* East-Indies. And them by that name one Body Corporate and Politick in Deed and in Name, really and fully for ever, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, we did make, declare, establish and confirm. And also granted and restored unto them all the Ports, Islands, Plantations, Territories, Forts, Castles, Ordnance, Armour, Artillery, Munition, Arms, Guns, Powder, Shot, Victuals, Magazines, Stores, Ammunition and Provisions of War, Ships, Junks, Vessels, Boats, Joint-Stocks, Mannors, Lordships, Messuages, Houses, Lands, Tenements, Hereditaments, Goods, Wares, Merchandizes, Cattel, Chattels real and personal, Debts, Dues, Duties, Right of Actions and Demands in Law or Equity, Powers, Privileges, Liberties, Franchises, Jurisdictions, Customs, Rights, Royalties, Immunities and Advantages whatsoever, and all and sundry other things, which were or might be lawfully enjoy'd by them on or before the 24th of *March* last, or at any time before the Date of the said last recited Letters Patents, by Virtue of any Charters formerly granted or confirmed to them, to enjoy the Premises in the same manner they might have done on the 24th of *March* last past, as if the Powers and Privileges by the said Charters granted, had been particularly recited, but under the Limitations therein contained.

And whereas in the said Charter of the 7th of *October*, is contain'd the *Proviso* following, *viz. If the Company do not accept of and effectually execute such Orders, Directions, Additions, Alterations, Restrictions and Qualifications, relating to the Constitution, Continuance, Determination, Rights, Powers, or Privileges of the said Company, or of the Government thereof, or of the said Governour and Company, or of the Encouragement, Management, Regulation, or Advancement of Trade, or of the present or future Joint-Stock of the said Company, or concerning any future Subscriptions, to be made by way of Increase or Addition to the Joint-Stock, or for ascertaining the true Values of the said Joint-Stock, at and during the time of any such future Subscriptions, which we, our Heirs and Successors, with the Advice of our or their Privy-Council, shall at any time before the 29th day of* Sept. 1694, *think fit to make, insert, limit, direct, appoint or express, in or by any further or other Charters or Letters Patents, under our or their Great Seal of* England; *then these presents may be determin'd, made void, and revok'd, and all the Powers therein contain'd shall cease.*

Now know ye, that we considering how highly it imports this Kingdom, that the *East-India* Trade should be continu'd, and being desirous to make the same more National (which is best to be done in a Joint-Stock) have, for the Purposes aforesaid, by the Advice of our Privy-Council, ordain'd and constituted; and the said Company does agree, that all our natural Subjects and Persons naturaliz'd and endeniz'd, who shall hereafter subscribe and pay down the Sums of Money by them subscrib'd, in such manner as is herein after directed, shall be Members of the said Company, as is after expressed.

And our Will and Pleasure is, that 744000*l.* be subscrib'd in a Book of Vellum (within six Days to be provided) to lye open daily from 8 to 12 in the Morning, and from 2 to 6 in the Afternoon, till the 10th of *January* next; none being to subscribe above 10000*l.* And if the Subscriptions exceed the aforesaid Sum of 744000*l.* they shall be reduc'd to that Sum by the Court of Committees; the Subscribers being to make Oath, that the Money subscrib'd is their own, and not in trust; which Oath the Governour or his Deputy, and three more of the Committees are to take care to administer to them, and one third part of all Sums subscribed for, shall be paid down to the Committee of the Treasury of the Company or their Cashier, at the time of the Subscription, and the rest before or upon the 10th of *January* next.

And further our Will and Pleasure is, that in all General Courts every qualified Member shall have a Vote for every 1000*l.* he has in the Fund, but no Person shall have above ten Votes, and no Person shall Vote under 1000*l.*

And we further order and appoint, that all persons who were before free of the said Company, or capable to be so by former Charters, and all new subscribers, who shall pay into the Joint-stock the Sums by them subscribed for, in manner above-directed, shall have their Freedom *gratis*; but such as shall come in by purchase of any of the said Company's Joint-stock, shall pay for their Freedom 5*l.* and they, with the Subscribers, shall take the Oaths appointed to be taken by a late Act of Parliament, entitled *An Act for the abrogating the Oaths of Supremacy and Allegiance, and appointing other Oaths*; and also the Oath usually taken by all Persons made free of the said Company, before the Governour or Deputy-Governour for the time being, to whom we hereby give Power to administer the same accordingly.

And further it shall be lawful for the Governour or Deputy-Governour of the said Company to call General Courts and Courts of Committees, to consist only of such as have 1000*l.* in the Joint-stock, each in their own right, and have taken the Oaths aforesaid; and the Governour or (in his Absence) his Deputy shall have a Casting Voice in the said Courts. The said Governour, Deputy, and twenty four Committees shall be chosen yearly in *April*; the Governour to have 4000*l.* in the Joint-stock in his own right, the Deputy as much, and each Committee 1000*l.* And if the Governour, Deputy, or any of the Committees die within the year, others (duly qualified) shall be elected in their stead.

The Governour, Deputy and Committees, before they enter upon the Exerciſe of their Offices, being to take the ſeveral Oaths as aboveſaid.

And further we grant, That the Governour and other qualified Members of the Company may aſſemble and hold general Courts where they pleaſe, and (the Governour or Deputy being preſent) may make By-Laws for the Company's better Government, and revoke or alter them, and may impoſe lawful Penalties, Fines, *&c.* upon Delinquents, and levy the ſame to their own uſe, all which By-Laws, *&c.* ſhall be kept and obſerved, if approv'd by a general Court, and not repugnant to the Laws of the Land. Provided always, and our further Will and Pleaſure is, that no permiſſion be granted to any Perſon to trade, or Ships to paſs into or from the *Eaſt Indies* on any private account, on penalty of forfeiting this and the laſt Charter. And further, no private Contract for the Sale of any Goods or Merchandizes ſhall be made, (excepting only ſuch Salt-petre as ſhall be ſold for the uſe of Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors) but all the Company's Goods ſhall be openly and publickly Sold by Inch of Candle at their publick Sales, and the Money ariſing thereby apply'd to the Company's uſe; no Lot (except Jewels) being to exceed 500 *l.*

And, for the better Increaſe of Trade, and encouraging the Manufactures of this Kingdom. Our Will and Pleaſure is, that the ſaid Company do yearly export to *India*, of the Growth and Product of *England*, the value of 100000 *l.* And the ſaid Governour and Company do hereby covenant, promiſe and agree to furniſh the Crown yearly with 500 Tun of good, clear and merchantable Salt-petre, conſiſting 112 *ll.* to the hundred weight, at 38 *l.* 10 *s.* *per* Tun in time of Peace, and 45 *l.* in time of War.

And our further Will and Pleaſure is, that all Dividends of Profits, ariſing to the Company by the Joint-ſtock, be made in time to come in Money only, and not otherwiſe. And further, we do order and appoint, that the Company and their Succeſſors do cauſe an Accomptant to enter in a Book or Books, to be provided and kept in their publick Office for that purpoſe, the Value of the Joint-ſtock of the ſaid Company to be atteſted upon Oath, which Book ſhall from time to time lie open to be viewed and peruſed by all Perſons concerned. And our Will and Pleaſure further is, that all Mortgages, Alienations, Transfers and Aſſignments be from time to time enter'd and regiſter'd either in the Ordinary or in other Books, likewiſe to lie open to the view of all concerned.

And our further Will and Pleaſure is, and we do hereby, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, order, direct, limit and appoint that the Joint-ſtock of the ſaid Governour and Company of *Merchants trading to the* Eaſt-Indies, ſhall continue for twenty one years, to be compured from the date of theſe Preſents; a year before which time Books for new Subſcriptions ſhall be provided by the Governour and Company, and lie open at their publick Office for a new Joint-ſtock.

Provided always, and our expreſs Meaning is, that if the ſaid Governour and Company do not accept of and act and conform themſelves in every thing to all the Orders, Directions, Additions, Qualifications, Reſtrictions, *&c.* which we, our Heirs or Succeſſors by the Advice of our or their Privy-Council, ſhall from time to time, at any time before the 29th of *September* 1694. think fit to make and appoint, then not only theſe Preſents, but likewiſe our former Charter or Letters Patents of the 7th of *October* laſt paſt, herein beforementioned, ſhall be by Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, revoked, and made null and void. And from and immediately after the paſſing ſuch Letters of Revocation, all the Powers and Privileges, *&c.* contained in our ſaid former Charter or Letters Patents of the 7th of *October* laſt ſhall ceaſe, determine and be abſolutely void to all intents and purpoſes, any thing to the contrary notwithſtanding. In witneſs whereof we have cauſed theſe our Letters to be made Patents. Witneſs Our ſelves at *Weſtminſter* the 11th day of *November*, in the fifth year of our Reign.

By Writ of Privy Seal.

Pigott.

An Abſtract of the Charter of Regulations *granted to the* Eaſt-India Company *by their Majeſties King* William *and Queen* Mary, *under the Great Seal of* England, Sept. 28. 1694, *in the ſixth Year of their Majeſties Reign.*

WILLIAM and MARY by the Grace of God of *England, Scotland, France* and *Ireland*, King and Queen, Defenders of the Faith, *&c.* *To the Governour and Company of* Merchants *Trading to the* Eaſt-Indies, and to all others to whom theſe Preſents ſhall come Greeting. Whereas by our Charter dated the 7th of *October* 1693. we did appoint Sir *Thomas Cook* Kt. *Francis Tyſſen* Eſq; and others, to be a Body Corporate and Politick in deed and in name, by the Name of *The Governour and Company of Merchants of* London *trading to the* Eaſt-Indies, under the *Proviſo's* therein mentioned; and did grant them and their Succeſſors divers Liberties, Privileges and Powers, *&c.* with a Clauſe, *That if the ſaid Governour and Company ſhould not comply with and accept of ſuch farther Regulations and Reſtrictions as by Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, with the Advice of our Privy Council, be made and propoſed at any time between the* 29th *of* September 1694. *and put under the Great Seal of* England, *then the ſaid Charter ſhould be revokable, and immediately after paſſing of Letters of Revocation under the Great Seal of* England, *the Powers, Privileges and Grants therein contained ſhould be void and ceaſe.* And whereas by our Charter dated the 11th of *November* laſt ſeveral Regulations and Reſtrictions, *&c.* have been propoſed purſuant to the ſaid *Proviſo*, and the ſaid *Proviſo* has been renewed and repeated, *viz. That the Company not conforming themſelves, and acting in every thing according to the Regulations and Reſtrictions, &c. which by Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, with the Advice of our or their Privy-Council, ſhould be made before the ſaid* 29th *of* September 1694. *then the ſaid Charter and the precedent ſhould be void and ceaſe, and the Powers and Privileges therein granted, ſhould abſolutely end and determine to all intents and purpoſes.*

Now know ye, that in purſuance of the ſaid two *Proviſo's*, and by virtue of what otherwiſe we may lawfully put in execution, We do by this Writing under our Great Seal, by Advice of our Privy-Council order and direct that every Perſon qualified to vote by our laſt Charter or otherwiſe, in a General or other Court, to be hereafter holden by the Company; ſhall, before admittance to ſuch Votes, take an Oath before the Governour or Deputy or any of the Committees (if requir'd by any Member of the Committee having 1000 *l.* in his own right in the Joint-ſtock) that he or ſhe deſiring to vote is then really entitled to ſo much Stock for his or their own uſe and right (and not in truſt) as qualifies him or her to give in ſuch Votes as he or ſhe deſires. Which Oath the Governour, Deputy, or any of the Committees are requir'd to adminiſter, and no Perſon, not taking ſuch Oath, ſhall be admitted to give any Vote, nor their Votes to be of any effect or avail, if given.

And our further Will and Pleaſure is, That no Perſon, not being born our natural Subject or endeniz'd, ſhall be admitted a Freeman of the ſaid Company. And further, every Perſon fairly elected by the Plurality of Voices to be a Governour, Deputy or Committee ſhall, before his being or acting as ſuch, take an Oath in the General Court before the Governour or Deputy or one or more of the 24 Committees, that at the time of his election and taking his Oath he is entitled in his own right, and not in truſt, to ſo much Stock as qualifies him for ſuch Election, which Oath the ſaid Governour or Depury are requir'd to adminiſter, and ſuch Perſon elected, not taking the ſame, his Election ſhall be null and void; and the Court ſhall proceed to a new Election, according to this and the laſt Charter.

And

And our further Will and Pleaſure is, that no Perſon that is or ſhall be choſen Governour or Deputy of the Company ſhall continue in their Places more than two Years together, and no Perſon that hath ſerved therein two Years together ſhall be capable of being re-elected till two Years after. And further, if above ſixteen of the precedent Years Committee-men be new choſen at the next annual Election, the Supernumeraries, who have the feweſt Votes, their Election ſhall be void, and others choſen in their places, ſo that at leaſt eight new ones ſhall be elected.

And whereas by our Charter of *Nov.* 11. 1693. we did order that the ſaid Governour and Company ſhould not give Licence to any Perſon or Ships to Trade or Sail into or from the *Eaſt-Indies*, upon any private Account on pain of making void the two laſt Charters. Now we do hereby direct, That the ſaid Governour and Company may licenſe the Commanders and Mariners of their own Ships (and no other) to Trade in ſuch Commodities, and to ſuch a value as ſhall be allow'd of by any general Court and no otherwiſe. Provided always that due Entries be made thereof, and the Duties paid at the Cuſtom-houſe before the Landing; any former Charter to the contrary notwithſtanding.

And whereas by the aforeſaid Charter we order'd the ſaid Governour and Company yearly to export the value of 100000 *l.* of Engliſh Manufacture; to the end the truth thereof may appear, we do hereby order them to give in unto us, in our Privy Council, in the Month of *Auguſt* yearly, a true Accompt fairly written, under the Governour or Deputy's Hand, of the Nature, Quantity, Value, and Coſt of ſuch Goods by them exported yearly, and from what Place, and that upon the Oath of the proper Officers and Servants of the Company. And we do hereby order, that none of the Goods ſo exported ſhall be again landed in *England*, or carried elſewhere, than within the Limits of the Company's Charter.

And our further Will and Pleaſure is, that if any ſix or more of the Adventurers have 1000 *l.* each, or more in his own Right in the Joint-Stock, and qualified to vote by the laſt Charter, ſhall at any time hereafter, by writing under their Hands deliver'd to or left for the Governour or Deputy at the *Eaſt-India* Houſe, requeſt that a general Court may be call'd; the Governour or his Deputy ſhall within eight days ſummons a general Court, accordingly which (or any other) ſhall not be broken up without the Conſent of the majority of the preſent Members capable to vote. And our further Will and Pleaſure is, that all private Committees ſhall be choſen by the general Court, and no Governour, Deputy or Committees, ſhall lend any of the Company's Money, unleſs they be previouſly authoriz'd by the general Court; nor ſhall any Goods ſold be deliver'd to the Buyer, till the Money is paid down for the ſame, or ſecurity given to the Company's Satisfaction; nor no Court of Committees, nor any Members of the ſaid Company, ſhall by any Agreement bind the general Stock of the Company for receiving or delivering Stock without leave of a General Court.

And further our Will and Pleaſure is, That the Company's Cath be kept in effective Money within their own Houſe, and always be in Cuſtody of three (at leaſt) of the Committees of the Treaſury, and by them iſſued out to the Caſhier, as the Company's occaſions require. And no Sum of Money ſhall be allow'd on the Company's Accompt, but when it ſhall appear when and to whom, and for what it has been paid, excepting only when the General Court has previouſly authoriz'd any to diſpoſe thereof without Accompt.

And whereas by the late King *Charles's* Patent of *April.* 3. 1661. the Company was allow'd two ſix months for the payment of the Duties and Cuſtoms of Goods. Notwithſtanding that Clauſe in the aboveſaid Charter, they ſhall after two years hence (in caſe we ſhall require the ſame writing) make preſent Payment of the Cuſtoms due by them on Goods imported, and ſhall be allow'd for ſuch payment a Diſcount of 4 *l.* 10 *s. per cent. per annum*, in lieu of the ſaid two ſix Months; and 6 *l.* 5 *s. per cent. per annum* on Additional Duties, in lieu of the four three months allow'd by Act of Parliament.

Provided always, and our poſitive and expreſs Meaning is, That if the ſaid Charters of the *October* 7, or *November* 11. or theſe Preſents, or the Continuation thereof in whole or in part, ſhall not appear to be profitable to us or our Realm; then, after three Years warning, all the ſaid Charters ſhall be determined and void, and the ſaid Governour and Company ſhall no longer continue a Corporation.

And further, the ſaid Governour and Company ſhall by writing under their common Seal, to be approved of by our Attorney or Sollicitor-General, declare their Acceptance and Submiſſion to the Conditions and Regulations of the two laſt and this preſent Charter. Which if they either refuſe or neglect to do, they ſhall no longer act as a Corporation. In witneſs whereof we have cauſed theſe our Letters to be made Patents. Witneſs our Selves at *Weſtminſter*, the 28th Day of *September*, in the ſixth Year of our Reign.

Per ipſos Regem & Reginam.

Pigott.

An Abſtract of the Charter *granted to the* New Eaſt-India Company *by His Majeſty King* William, *under the Great Seal of* England, Sept. 5. 1698. *and the Tenth Year of His Majeſty's Reign.*

WILLIAM the Third, by the Grace of God, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. To whom theſe Preſents ſhall come greeting. Whereas by a late Act of Parliament, Entituled, *An Act for raiſing a Sum not exceeding two Millions, upon a Fund for Payment of Annuities, after the rate of* 8 per Cent. per Annum, *and for ſettling a Trade to the* Eaſt-Indies. It is, amongſt other things, Enacted, That all the Monies ariſing by the ſeveral Duties upon ſeveral Commodities therein mentioned, ſhall be brought and paid in the Receipt of our Exchequer, as is there preſcribed, under the Penalties therein mentioned; and that yearly, (Reckoning the firſt Year to begin the 29th of *September* 1698.) the full Sum of 160000 *l.* of the ſaid Moneys, ſhall be the whole and entire Fund; and if the ſaid Moneys do not extend to that Sum, then they ſhall be part of the Fund towards the paying of the ſeveral Annuities there expreſſed.

And it is further Enacted, that it might be lawful for us to appoint Perſons to take in voluntary Subſcriptions of all Natives and Foreigners, for themſelves or in truſt, and Bodies Politick and Corporate (the Governor and Company of the Bank of *England* only excepted) no Perſon ſubſcribing for leſs than one hundred Pounds, all the Subſcriptions not to exceed two Millions to be paid into our Exchequer, ſubject to ſuch Allowances and defalcations as are therein expreſſed, and the Subſcriptions to be made on or before the ſaid 29th Day of *September* 1698. And that all Bodies Corporate and Politick, and all other Perſons whatſoever, ſo Subſcribing, and paying in their Subſcriptions and their Succeſſors, &c. ſhould have for ever one certain Yearly Sum or Annuity, at the rate of 8 *per Cent per Annum*, in the manner thereby preſcrib'd.

And it is further Enacted, That it might be lawful for us to incorporate all ſuch Perſons ſo ſubſcribing and paying, as is in the ſaid Act expreſſed into one Body Politick and Corporate, by the Name of, The GENERAL SOCIETY, *Entituled to the Advantages given by an Act of Parliament for advancing a Sum not exceeding two Millions for the Service of the Crown of* England. And that the ſaid Sum of two Millions, one Moiety or any greater Part thereof being ſo ſubſcribed, on or before the ſaid 29th of *September* 1698. All ſuch Subſcribers and their Succeſſors, for ever, ſhould have Liberty freely to Traffick, and uſe the Trade of Merchandiſe into, and from the *Eaſt-Indies*, and Parts and Limits in the ſaid Act, mentioned

tioned, and subject to such Restrictions as are there expressed. And that it should be lawful for us by our Charters or Letters Patents, to direct how the Shares of all Persons concern'd in the Fund of the General Society, should be transferr'd.

And it is likewise Enacted, That in case the Duties appropriated for the Payment of the Annuities of the said Fund, should be at any time deficient, the said Annuites should be made up out of the next Aids raised by Parliament, in the manner therein mention'd.

And whereas by our Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, of the 14th of *July* last past, we did Nominate and Appoint Commissioners for taking and receiving such Subscriptions as above-said. And did declare, That if that Sum, or one moiety thereof at least were subscribed for, by that time we would make out our Royal Charter for the Incorporation of the Subscribers into a General Society; and that we would also make out another Charter, constituting them to be *One Company* by the Name of The *English Company Trading to the* East Indies. With such Powers and Privileges as are therein expressed.

And whereas we have by our said Letters Patents, declared, That the Share and Shares of all, or any of the said Subscribers, may be transferrable and assignable to any other Person or Persons whatsoever, willing to purchase the same, so as the said Transferrences and Assignments be made in Writing, and in such manner and form as has already been in the said Charter, or is or shall be in this or any other, by Us, our Heirs or Successors appointed.

And whereas it appears to us, that the Sum of two Millions of Pounds Sterling, have been already subscribed, and the first Tenth part thereof hath been paid or Answer'd to our Use, pursuant to the said Act on or before the 16th Day of *July* last past, by Us, and by, *&c.* And by several other Persons in the said Book of Subscriptions, and in the Duplicate, thereof particularly nam'd.

And whereas by our Royal Charter or Letters Patents of the Third day of this present Month of *September*, we Created and Established the said Corporation or Body Politick, called *The General Society*, Entituled to the Advantages, *&c.* And they being desirous to be incorporated as a Company, with a Joint Stock, the better to manage their Trade. *Now Know Ye*, That We, in pursuance of the Powers and Clauses in the said Act of Parliament, and of Our gracious Promise and Declaration, and by Virtue of Our Royal Prerogative, *&c.* have made, ordained, constituted, declared, appointed and establish'd the said Subscribers and their Successors for ever, and all Persons and Bodies Politick or Corporate deriving Title from them or any of them to any Share in the Fund or Annuities of the said Subscribers to be one Body Politick and Corporate, under the Name of *The English Company Trading to the East-Indies*, and them and their Successors for ever, under the said Name one Body Corporate and Politick in Deed and in Name, we make, constitute and appoint for Us our Heirs and Successors for ever, granting, allowing, and ordaining that they shall have a perpetual Succession, and may use a Common Seal for the Affairs and Business of the Company, with Power to break, alter, and renew their Seal, as often as to them shall seem meet; and they shall for ever be capable in Law to have purchase, receive, hold, possess, and retain for the use of themselves and Successors, any Mannors, Messuages, Lands, Rents, Tenements, Liberties, Privileges, Franchises, Hereditaments, Possessions, Goods and Chattels, of what kind, nature or quality soever; and moreover to purchase and acquire all Goods and Things whatsoever, from which they are not restrained by the said Act, and also to sell, grant, demise, alien, or dispose of all the abovesaid Things, or any of them; and also sue and implead, and be sued and impleaded, answer and defend, and be answered and defended, in all Courts whatsoever, and before all Judges, Justices, Officers and Ministers of Us our Heirs and Successors, and in all Causes, Suits and Pleas whatsoever. And all Corporations or Persons who shall derive any Right or Title from any of the said Subscribers or their Successors, shall be esteemed Members of the said Company, and received and admited as such *Gratis*.

And our Royal Will and Pleasure further is, that if any Person being a Member of the general Society, and not of the Company, shall hereafter desire to be received as a Member of the said Company, and to join his Share in the Capital Stock of the general Society, to and with the English Company trading to the *Indies*, the general Court of the Company (if they think fit) may admit him, and after such Admittance, his Share of the Capital Fund of the Society shall be transferr'd to the Company and become part of their Capital Stock. Provided always, that within six days after such Admittance an Entry thereof be made in the Books of the Company, and notice thereof be given to the Auditor of our Exchequer, that he may pay the Annuity to the Company. And we do hereby direct our High Treasurer, Commissioners of the Treasury, and under Treasurer, to pay the said Annuities without any other Warrant from us, as far as the Moneys arising from the Deputies appropriated to that Use, come in.

And it shall further be lawful for the said Company to augment their Capital Stock (if the Trade require it) but with such Limitations always, as in the said Act of Parliament, are expressed. But the said Company shall not send out of *England*, or any other Country, Goods, Wares, Coin, Bullion or Merchandize, above what is expressed in the said Act of Parliament but shall be subject in every thing, to the Restrictions therein contained, but shall trade according to the true meaning of the said Act, to the Parts of *Asia*, *Africa* and *America*, beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*, and to the *Streights* of *Magellan*. And all Persons, before their admission into the said Company, shall take an Oath before two or more of the Directors or Managers to be faithful to the said Company, and always to assist with their best Advice and Council, for the good Management and Government thereof; and that they shall not in any manner or way whatsoever, trade within the Limits of the Company's Charter, for their own private Account. And *Quakers*, instead of such Oaths, shall make a Solemn Declaration in Writing to the same effect.

And Our further Will and Pleasure is, That the said Company shall cause Books to be kept in their Office, in which Entry shall be made before two or more of the Directors of the said Company (upon the Oath of the proper Officers) of all Goods and Coins, *&c.* Shipt off, *&c.* And in case more be shipt off then Entered, they shall be seized, and together with the Penalties, to be levied upon the Offenders, according to the Act of Parliament, shall be applied to the Uses mentioned in the said Act.

And Our further Will and Pleasure is, That the said Company shall give Security, as the Act directs, for bringing their Goods to *England* or *Wales*, (except in such Cases as the Act excepts.) And also all Goods so imported by them into *England* or *Wales*, shall be sold publickly by Inch of Candle, and not otherwise, and no Lot of Goods so Sold (except Jewels) shall exceed 1000*l.* And further, the said Company Promise and Covenant by those Presents, that they shall export yearly, in Goods of the Growth and Product, and Manufacture of *England*, the value of one tenth part of the Fund, with which they trade to the said *East Indies*, of which they shall give us in yearly to our Privy Council, in the Month of *October*, a true Account fairly written, and Signed by two or more of the Directors, that the Truth thereof may the better appear, and that upon the Oath of the proper Officers; nor shall any of the said Goods be landed again in *England* or carried into any Place or Country, without the Limits of the Company's Charter.

And the said Company does hereby propose and Covenant to furnish to the Crown yearly (the Crown allowing the Prime Cost, Charges and Duties) such a quantity of *Salt Petre*, as is under, *viz. As the Sum of two Millions reckon'd in Money, is to five Hundred Tuns of Salt Petre, in the whole, so the Sum which the said Company may by Virtue of the Act, trade for in one Year, shall be to the quantity of Salt Petre, the said Company shall furnish to the Crown.* Which quantity the said Company (as Members of the General Society) was to furnish according to the Act of Parliament.

And for the Encouragement of the said Company, we further promise, That they and their Successors shall be allow'd the same Discompt in the payment of their Duties and Customs, that was granted to the present Governour and Company, trading to the *Indies* by a Clause in our Charter of Regulations of the 28th of *Sept.* 1694.

And We do hereby Will and Appoint, that the said Company maintain a Minister and a School-Master in the Island of St. *Helena*, as soon as the said Island shall be in their Possession, and also a Minister in every Garrison and Superior Factory, and a Chaplain in every Ship of 500 Tunns or upwards, all which Ministers and Chaplains shall be first approved by the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, or Bishop of *London*; and at their Arri-

val

val there, shall give themselves to the learning of the *Portuguese* Language, and the Language of the Countries where they reside, the better to instruct the People, and when any such Minister dies, his Place shall be supplied by the Chaplain of the next Ship. And the Company shall also provide School-Masters in the said Factories and Garrisons.

And for the better managing their Affairs, the Company shall chuse twenty four Directors, who (or any thirteen, or more of them) shall be called, *A Court of the Directors, for the ordering, managing, and directing the Affairs of the* said Company and Corporation. And We do further appoint, That *Edward Allen, Abraham Beake, James Bateman, John Cary*, Sir *Henry Furnese, Peter Godfrey, Peter Gost, Gilbert Heathcote, Edmund Harrison*, Sir *Theodore Janssen, Samuel Lock, Edward Littleton, Joseph Martin, Streynsham Masters, Ephraim Montague, Peter Paggen, Robert Raworth, Benjamin Rokeby, Samuel Shepherd*, Sir *William Scawen, William Steward, Thomas Vernon, William Withers*, and *George White*, (who are chosen for this purpose by a Majority of the Subscribers) shall be the first and present Directors, and shall continue in that Station till the 25th of *March* 1700, at which time others shall be chosen; and if any of the said Directors die or be removed before that Time, another shall be chosen in his stead.

And We do further grant, That the said Company may meet about their Affairs in a general Court, when and where they please. Their Directors shall be chosen yearly, between the 25th of *March* and the 25th of *April*; each Person having 500*l.* share, and being personally present, shall have a Vote; and each Corporation having that Sum, shall depute such Person as they please to Vote; and none shall have Power to Vote as an Elector, nor at the General Courts for making of By-Laws, who does not (he being required to do it by any Member of the Company there present having 500*l.* in the Stock) take the following Oath, *viz.* I *A. B. do swear, that* 500*l. or more, of the Capital Stock of the Body Politick, call'd by the Name of* The *English* Company trading to the *East Indies, doth at this time belong to me in my own Right, and not in trust for any other Person or Persons whatsoever.* And no Members shall give more than one Vote, whatever Interest they may have in the Stock. And *Quakers* shall take a solemn Declaration in lieu of the Oath. And the Deputies of Corporations shall swear or declare, That, to the best of their Knowledge, their respective Corporations have 500*l.* or more in the Stock in their Right; nor shall any Person be capable of being chosen a Director, but natural or naturaliz'd Subjects of *England*, and such as have in their own Right 2000*l.* at least in the Stock, which all Persons already, or hereafter chosen Directors, shall be oblig'd to take their corporal Oath upon, as also to take this other Oath. *viz.* I A. B. *do faithfully promise, that in the Office of Director,* &c. *I will be indifferent and equal to all manner of Persons, and give my best Advice and Assistance for the Support and good Government of the Company; and in the Execution of my said Office, I will faithfully and honestly demean my self, according to the best of my Skill and Understanding.* Such as are *Quakers* shall take a Declaration to this Effect, and the said Oaths and Declarations may be administred by Our Chancellor of *England*, Chancellors of the Exchequer, or two or more of the Directors, they having themselves taken the said Oaths first. And the said Court of Directors shall have Power to administer Oaths of Fidelity to all inferior Officers, Agents, Factors, and Servants, &c.

And Our Will and Pleasure further is, That the said Directors summon four General Courts every Year, in the Months of *December, March, June* and *September*, and any of them failing to meet in the Month appointed, shall meet the Month after. And the said Directors shall (being thereto requir'd by nine or more Members qualify'd to Vote) shall be oblig'd to call General Courts within ten Days after such Request made to them, failing of which it shall be lawful for the said nine, or more Members aforesaid, upon ten days Notice in Writing, to be fix'd upon the *Royal Exchange* of *London*, to summon and hold a general Court, to dispatch any Business and cognosce of any Complaint against any Director, of which if he cannot vindicate himself to the Court's Satisfaction, he may in another General Court, to be holden ten Days after that, be depos'd, and another qualify'd Member chosen in his Place. And We do further grant, that the said Directors may meet about the Business of their Company, and act in every thing according to the By-Laws given them by any General Court; and where they have no By-Laws, as they think meet. And the General Courts of the said Company may punish Delinquents amongst themselves as they please, and levy the Mulcts and Fines impos'd upon such without being accountable to any. And the first General Court of the said Company We appoint to meet within 40 Days after the Day of the Date of these presents. And the said Company shall cause a Book or Books to be kept by an Accomptant in their Office, in which shall be enter'd, from time to time, the Accompt as well of the principal Joynt Stock of the said Company, as of the additional Stock, (if any be) which the said Accomptant shall attest upon Oath, if requir'd so to do.

And we do appoint the Method of Assigning to be as follows, *I A. B. this Day of in the Year of our Lord do assign and transfer of my Interest or Share, or being my Interest or Share, in the principal Stock and in the additional Stock,* &c. *Fund of the* English *Company trading to the* East-Indies, *and all Benefit arising thereby, unto his Executors, Administrators, and Assigns, Witness my Hand*

Or if the Person be not present, it must be done by another, by Vertue of a Letter of Attorney, of which mention must be made in the Assignment. And by dying Persons it may be done in their Wills, attested by three credible Witnesses.

And our further Will and Pleasure is, that when there shall happen an Equality of Voices in a General Court, the matters in question shall be determined by Lots.

And whereas by the said Act of Parliament all Goods imported are charged with a Duty of 5 *per Cent.* for the uses therein mentioned, We hereby charge all our respective Officers to pay back the said Duty to the Company, deducting only the necessary Charges for collecting it, to be applied as in the said Act is expressed.

And further Our Royal Will and Pleasure is, that they, the said Company, enjoy the whole and entire Trade to the *East Indies*, and that none other of our Subjects presume to visit or haunt the same; so as the Governour and Company of Merchants of *London*, formerly constituted and trading to the *Indies*, be not hereby restrained from continuing to trade thither till *Sept.* 29. 1701. and so as such Ships, not in the Service of the said Governour and Company, as were cleared outward from *England* or elsewhere, for the *East Indies* or Limits aforesaid, before *July* 1. 1698, or the Lading thereof, so as they return into some Port of this Kingdom, without breaking bulk in any other part of *Europe*, shall not be liable to the Penalties aforesaid.

And We further grant Power to the said Company to seize all Goods in the *Indies* or in *England*, that are seizable, by virtue of the said Act of Parliament; allowing the said Company Power to license their own Officers and Servants to trade and import what precious Commodities they think fit, due Entries being first made of the same. And we also grant to the said Company the Power of appointing Governours and Officers for their Forts and Factories, who may raise, train and muster such military Forces as shall be necessary for their Defence. Reserving always the Sovereign Right, Power and Dominion over all the said Forts, Plantations, to us, our Heirs and Successors.

And further We grant the said Company power to establish one or more such Courts of Judicature as the other Company of Merchants trading to the *East Indies* was allow'd to establish, by the Charter granted them by the late King *James*, in the second Year of his Reign.

And further We grant that the said Company shall enjoy, to all intents and purposes, all Privileges in the City of *London* as fully as any Company of Merchants whatsoever. And we hereby charge and command all our Admirals, &c. and other Officers by Sea and Land, to be aiding to them in the Enjoyment of the Premises.

And We further declare, that these our Letters Patents or the Inrolment thereof, shall be in and by all things valid and effectual in Law, according to the true intent and meaning of the same, and shall be taken, construed, and adjudged in the most favourable and beneficial Sense, for the best advantage of the said Company, as well in all our Courts of Record as elsewhere; notwithstanding any Non-recital, Mis-recital, Defect, Incertainty or Imperfection in these our Letters Patents.

And We further promise and declare, that We, our Heirs and Successors in all times coming, will from time to time give and grant to the said Company all the Liberties, Privileges and Immunities, that may or can be reasonably desired by them or granted by us. In witness whereof we have caused these our Letters to be made Patents. Witness *Thomas* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the rest of the Keepers and Justices of the Kingdom, at *Westminster*, the fifth day of *September* in the tenth Year of our Reign.

By Writ of Privy-Seal, Pigott.

Heads

Heads of Agreement between the Two East-India Companies.

1. THAT the Effects of each Company be brought home with all convenient ſpeed for their ſeparate Accounts, and that all Proviſions be made for enabling both Companies to bring home their Effects with ſecurity, and that neither the Crown nor the New Company take any Advantage, under Pretence of Forfeiture from the Old Company, in reſpect thereof.

2. That mutual Releaſes be given to each Company from the others, and to their reſpective Factors and Servants.

3. That the Old Company pay 315001. and the Fund, be immediately, upon Execution of their Agreement, united to the Capital Stock of the New Company.

4. That the Old Company do purchaſe, and the New Company do procure 8 Members to transfer to the Old Company in their Politick Capacity, 673500*l.* in the Capital Stock and Fund of 1662000*l.* with the Benefits, after the Execution of the Agreement, to ariſe thereby; ſo that the Old Company may have 988500*l.* in the ſaid Fund, which will make the Old Company equal with the New in Fund and Title to the Trade, which Stock of 673500*l.* ſhall be transferred as follows, *viz.* one fourth part at the Execution of the Agreement; one fourth part at *Michaelmas* next; one fourth part at *Lady-day* after, and the remaining fourth part *Michaelmas*, 1703; and each fourth part ſhall be paid for at the time of ſuch Transfer, at a 160*l.* for a 100*l.*

5. That the Old Company's Dead Stock at home and abroad be valued at 330000*l.* and the New Company's Dead Stock at home and abroad at 70000*l.* and that the Old Company at time of transferring the firſt fourth part of the ſaid 673500*l.* do transfer all their Dead Stock abroad and at home to the New Company; the New Company paying for one Moiety thereof at the ſame time 165000*l.* and that the Old Company do alſo pay to the New Company 35000*l.* for the Moiety of their Dead Stock; and thereupon the Old Company ſhall have and be entituled to a Moiety of both the ſaid Dead Stocks, as Members of the New Company.

6. That the Old Company have the ſole Benefit of their Dead Stock at home for 7 Years.

7. That the Members of the New Company transferring, ſhall be entituled to the Arrears of the Annuity, until the time of the ſeveral Transfers; after which time all Annuities ariſing by ſuch Transfers, and by the Old Company's 315000*l.* ſhall be paid to ſuch Perſons, as ſhall be appointed for that purpoſe, by the Old Company for their Uſe.

8. That the New Company ſhall have the Benefit of all Moneys ariſing by ſuch Licenſes granted before their Agreement, and alſo the 5 *per Cent.* on all Ships enter'd or cleared out before this Agreement, except the Ships of the Old Company now abroad, or that ſhall go out before the executing their Agreement, and the 5 *per Cent.* that ſhall ariſe upon the Effects loaden on the ſaid Old Company's Ships, ſhall be wholly for Benefit of the Old Company.

9. That each Company do deſiſt from any ſeparate Exportation, from and after the executing of the Agreement.

10. That during ſeven Years, each Company ſhall have an equal Power in the Adminiſtration and Management of the Fund and Trade, and that for that Purpoſe 12 Perſons ſhall be Yearly appointed by the general Courts of each Company reſpectively, out of the Court of Committees and Directors of the ſaid Companies, who ſhall be called in the New Charter, the Managers of the united Trade to *India*.

11. That a new Additional Stock ſhall be raiſed for carrying on the future Trade, and advanced in ſuch Proportions, as the ſaid 24 Managers, or the *major* part of them ſhall from time to time appoint: The general Courts of each Company agreeing thereunto.

12. That during the ſpace of 7 Years, the Old Company ſhall preſerve their Stock in their Politick Capacity, and for that time remain a ſeparate Corporation, and transfer and aſſign in their own Books, as now they do; and at the end of the ſaid 7 Years, the Old Company ſhall transfer and aſſign in the Books of the New Company their ſhare in the Fund to their ſeveral Members, who ſhall be then entituled to the ſame; and thereupon the ſaid Members of the Old Company ſhall become and be admitted Members of the New Company, *Gratis*.

13. That each Company do indemnifie the other from their Reſpective Debts and Demands, and that a proper Proviſion be made for that Purpoſe.

14. That the New Company ſhall not, after the executing their Agreement, take up any Money upon their Common Seal, or do any other Act, except what relates to their ſeparate Effects as aforeſaid, without the Concurrence of the Old Company.

15. That the Old Company within 3 Months before the end of the ſaid ſpace of 7 Years, ſhall grant and aſſign to his Majeſty, the Effects and Produce of their preſent Stock, as ſhall be then ſtanding out to the Intent; his Majeſty may regrant the ſame to ſuch Truſtees as ſhall then be nominated by the Old Company in truſt, in the firſt place to indemnifie Them from all Expences and Damages they ſhall ſuſtain in the Execution of their Truſts, and in the next place for the Payment of the Creditors of the Old Company, if any ſuch there ſhall then be; and afterwards in truſt for the Members of the Old Company, or for ſuch other Purpoſes as the Old Company ſhall appoint.

16. His Majeſty covenants to make ſuch a Regrant within 10 Days after the making ſuch Grant and Aſſignment as aforeſaid.

17. A Covenant from the Old Company within one Month after the ſaid ſeven Years, to ſurrender their Charters and Corporation, and a Covenant to the King to accept the ſame.

18. A Covenant from the King within 10 Days after ſuch Surrender, to make a new Grant to the ſame Truſtees, and ſubject to the ſame Truſt of all ſuch Eſtates and Effects of the Old Company, as ſhall come to or devolve upon the Crown, by reaſon of ſuch Surrender.

19. That immediately from and after the ſaid Surrender, the New Company does change its Name, and be called the United Company of Merchants of *England* trading to the *Eaſt-Indies*; nevertheleſs the future Management of the ſaid Stock and Trading, after the ſaid term of 7 Years, is to be according to the New Company's Charter of the 5th of *Sept.* 1698.

20. That for the better attaining of the Purpoſes aforeſaid, there be a Tripartite Indenture to be executed by his Majeſty, if he ſo pleaſe; and both the ſaid Companies, wherein ſuch proper Covenants and Proviſions may be made, as ſhall be thought reaſonable, with proper Releaſes from his Majeſty to each Company.

An

The Charter of Settlement *for the Trade to the* EAST-INDIES.

Granted upon the Agreement *of the* Two Companies.

By way of *ABSTRACT.*

Being an Indenture Tripartite, dated July 22, 1702. *between the* Queen, *the* Governour *and* Company of Merchants Trading to the *Eaſt-Indies, and the* Engliſh Company Trading to the *Eaſt-Indies.*

REciting, That the Governour and Company being poſſeſſed of 315000*l.* in the General Society, and in right thereof entitled to 25200*l. per Annum* in the Fund. And the Engliſh Company entitled to 1662000*l.* Capital Stock, and 132960*l. per Annum* in the Fund. To obviate all future Diſputes, &c. both Companies do agree,

That the Governour and Company ſhall purchaſe of the Engliſh Company ſo much as will make each Company's ſhare equal to the other. And the whole Trade to be carried on for the ſaid two united Stocks for ſeven Years, for the benefit of all the Members of the Engliſh Company. And that the ſaid Governour and Company ſhall have a Right and Power equal to the reſt of the Members of the Engliſh Company, in the Management of the ſaid Trade for ſeven Years. And at the end of ſeven Years the Trade to be carried on by the Engliſh Company, by whatſoever Name it ſhall then be called (ſubject to the Redemption by Parliament) according to their Charter of *Sept.* 5. 1698.

The Engliſh Company covenant to ſell and transfer to the Governour and Company 673500*l.* Capital Stock, the Governour and Company paying for the ſame an 100*l.* for 100*l.* the firſt Payment to begin on *July* 25. 1702. the ſecond on *Sept.* 29. following, the reſt at two half yearly Payments following. The Engliſh Company to receive the Arrears of the Annuity till the Stock is transferred; and the Governour and Company to accept the Stock, and pay for the ſame accordingly. The Charge of the Transfers to be born by both Companies equally: and both Companies covenant to do any further Act that may be neceſſary for more effectually uniting them.

The Governour and Company to keep their Stock in their Politick Capacities for ſeven years, without transferring to their particular Members.

It being agreed that the Dead Stock of the Governour and Company ſhall be valued at 330000*l.* and that of the Engliſh Company at 70000*l.* 'tis covenanted that it ſhall be veſted in the Engliſh Company for the Benefit of the United Trade, and to be accepted as 400000*l.* towards the new Additional Stock agreed to be advanced: In purſuance of which, the Governour and Company are to convey theirs to the Engliſh Company; and the Engliſh Company to pay to them 130000*l.* to make up their proportion, and to ſtand ſeized of the ſaid Dead Stock, and of their own Dead Stock, for the Benefit of the united Trade.

The Governour and Company to receive the Arrears of Rents and Profits, &c. of their Dead Stock, and pay all Charges to the Date hereof, and to have the uſe of their Dead Stock at home for ſeven Years.

Her Majeſty confirms the Engliſh Company's Charter of *Sept.* 5. 1698. and each Company be as a Corporation for ſeven Years, and ſeparately hold general Courts, &c. raiſe Money to be furniſhed two ways for carrying on the United Trade, and to their own ſeparate Buſineſs; and each Company are made liable to their own Debts; and the particular Members of both Companies to be liable thereunto, ſo far forth, as they are made ſo by the Act of Parliament; and the two Companies to bear each other harmleſs, from either Company's Debts reſpectively; But the Debts contracted on account of the United Trade, to be for and paid by the Stock of the United Trade.

The Governour and Company to bring home their ſeparate Eſtate with all convenient ſpeed, and divide it amongſt their Members; and the Engliſh Company to aſſiſt them in getting in their Effects.

The Engliſh Company are to pay the Governour and Company ſo much of the 5 *per Cent.* as ſhall, after the Date of theſe Preſents, be due and paid by the ſaid Governour and Company, their Officers, &c. in purſuant of the Act of Parliament: But the Governour and Company are not to ſend any Goods, Bullion, &c. on their ſeparate Account after the Date hereof; as alſo the Engliſh Company are to ſend more on theirs.

The Engliſh Company to bring home their ſeparate Eſtates with all convenient ſpeed, and divide the ſame amongſt their Members: The Governour and Company obliging themſelves to aſſiſt them in getting in their Effects: both Companies for their ſeparate Effects, ſhall have ſuch Uſe of the Ware-Houſes in *India*, as the Managers ſhall direct; and the Governour and Company further covenant to do any other Act that ſhall be thought neceſſary to enable the Engliſh Company to collect the Reſerv'd Annuities, with the Arrears and Deficiencies of them, and the Debts, Goods, Merchandizes, Eſtate and Stock in Trade, belonging to the Engliſh Company, and the Duty of 5 *per Cent.* for Goods ſent before the final Execution of this Agreement (excepting the Goods of the Governour and Company, their Factors, &c.) alſo the Profits and Money ariſing by Licenſes, &c. to that time; and to diſtribute the ſame amongſt the aforeſaid preſent Additional Stock, excluſive of the aforeſaid Governour and Company, and without laying any Claim to the ſame, in reſpect of their Stock of 315000*l.* of 673500*l.* to be by them purchaſed.

The carrying on of the United Trade to be (for 7 Years) by ſuch Orders as ſhall be made by the General Courts of both Companies, in the Name of the Engliſh Company trading to the *Eaſt-Indies*, but by Direction of 24 Managers, whereof 12 is to be choſen out of each Company, who are to act according to ſuch Rules as ſhall be given them by both General Courts, or for want of ſuch Orders at their Diſcretion, and may appoint a Treaſurer, a Caſheer, Governours abroad, Factors, &c. as they think fit.

Both Companies are to chuſe their 12 Managers on the 10th of *April*, and each ſend the Names to the other in 3 days after; and the ſaid General Courts have Power, without aſſigning any Cauſe, to remove any Manager they have choſen at Pleaſure; and every Year each Company obliges them to chuſe 4 new ones of the 12 they are to elect: all the Managers are to take an Oath to be Indifferent and Equal to all manner of Perſons, and to give their beſt Advice and Aſſiſtance for the Management of the Trade, &c. and upon neglect of taking the Oath for fourteen days, the Office to be void.

Both Companies covenant to pay an equal Proportion for carrying on the United Trade, which ſhall be called the New Additional Stock of the Engliſh Company. And the Members of each Company may tranſfer their Stocks in the Books of the ſame Company reſpectively, ſo as the Governour and Company keep their Stock in their Politick Capacity for 7 years.

It is further covenanted, That the Annuity after the 24th of *July*, 1702. ſhall be paid to the Managers Treaſurer, authoriz'd under the Common Seal for 7 years, and afterwards to the Treaſurer of the Engliſh Company.

Both Companies covenant with her Majeſty, That the Engliſh Company ſhall export to the *Eaſt-Indies* of the Growth, &c. of *England*, at leaſt a 10th of the whole Sum that they ſhall Trade for, by Virtue of the Act of Parliament; and that an Accompt thereof ſhall be

be delivered to the Privy-Council in *April* yearly. And that they will ſell and deliver to the Office of Ordnance 494 Tun and a quarter of good Salt-Petre at 45*l. per* Tun, in time of Peace, and 35*l.* in time of War; the Refraction whereof ſettled at 15*l. per Cent.*

Her Majeſty appoints that a Proteſtant Miniſter and School-maſter be maintained in St. *Helena* and all the ſuperiour Factories; and a Chaplain on board every Ship of 500 Tuns, to be approved by the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*; who ſhall be next after the fifth Perſon that ſhall be of the Council in any of the ſuperiour Factories, and ſhall have the like Treatment in their Paſſages, to and from *India*; who ſhall be obliged within one year after their Arrival to learn the *Portugueſe* Language, and ſhall apply themſelves to learn the Native Language of the Country where they ſhall reſide.

It is appointed by Her Majeſty, That the Companies Seals ſhall be taken for all Cuſtoms except the Duties of 15 *per Cent*, on Muſlins.

And empowers the Managers, or thirteen of them to adminiſter an Oath to their Officers, Agents, *&c.* That they ſhall faithfully execute their reſpective Offices, *&c.*

The General Courts of both Companies are empower'd to make By-Laws for the united Trade: and each Company ſeparately for their ſeparate Affairs.

The Engliſh Company are to borrow no Money on their Common Seal, nor contract any Debts, except for Cuſtoms, *&c.* on the ſeparate Accompt, or elſe by conſent of both Companies, or the Managers, by whom the Seal is to be kept: and to uſe no other Seal during the ſeven years, which the Engliſh Company may have recourſe to for their ſeparate concerns.

Her Majeſty grants, That the Managers or any deputed from them, may ſeize Ships or Goods forfeited, and do all things that Cuſtom-houſe Officers can do. One fourth part of the Forfeitures to go to the Informer, and the other three Fourths (after the Deduction of Charges) to be divided amongſt all the Members of the united Trade.

But it is provided and agreed, that the Engliſh Company ſhall grant Licenſes to the Factors, Mariners, *&c.* employ'd in the united Trade, to traffick, in the manner and form as the Managers ſhall think fit: and alſo to the Governour and Company to bring home their Effects; likewiſe to licenſe Free Merchants to import Diamonds.

Her Majeſty grants, That the General Courts of both Companies, or the Managers, to have the ſole Government of Forts, *&c.* and liberty to build any Forts and Caſtles, *&c.* and to provide Military Forces, *&c.* with liberty likewiſe to coin Foreign Coins in *India*. And that the Governour and Company may convey to the Engliſh Company *Bombay* and St. *Helena*. And commands her Admirals, *&c.* to aſſiſt the Engliſh Company trading to the *Eaſt-Indies*, and thoſe employ'd under them.

It is further agreed, That the Governour and Company will not give their ſingle Voices at the General Courts of the Engliſh Company. And Her Majeſty grants to the Governour and Company, that they may admit any Perſon into their Company, without Fine or Oath unleſs they think fit to require it, during the ſeven years time they are to continue a Corporation, notwithſtanding any preceeding Charters.

It is further appointed, That the Governour and Company ſhall, after ſeven years, within forty days, transfer their Stock amongſt the then Members of their own Company, except 100000*l.* which may be aſſigned to particular Perſons in truſt for ſecuring the Payment of ſuch Debts as they ſhall then own, and the then ſeveral Members of the Governour and Company ſhall thereupon be ſeverally admitted to become Members of the Engliſh Company. *&c.* by whom, after the ſaid ſeven years, the whole Trade ſhall be managed, in purſuance of their Charter, *Sept.* 5. 1698.

The Governour and Company, at ſome time before the end of the ſeven years, are to grant all their Debts and Effects to the Crown, which the Queen will regrant back again, within ten days, to Perſons in truſt for the Company. And the Governour and Company oblige themſelves to ſurrender their Charter within two months after the end of the ſeven years; which her Majeſty promiſes to accept; and after the Surrender, the Engliſh Company is to change its Name, and be called, *The United Company of Merchants trading to the Eaſt-Indies*. And from that time are to carry on their Trade by their own Directors, and according to the Charter before-mentioned.

Her Majeſty covenants to grant any further reaſonable Powers and Privileges. And releaſes both Companies of all Forfeitures, Miſdemeanours, *&c.* that they may have committed either in *England* or Parts beyond Sea. Likewiſe declares, That this Indenture ſhall be conſtrued in the moſt favourable ſenſe for the Advantage of both Companies.

AN INDEX OF THE

Kingdoms, Countries, Rivers, Towns, Places, &c. in the Second Volume of *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca.*

Note, For Shortneſs; *cp* ſignifies *Cape*, *ct Coaſt*, *ctry Country*, *dm Dukedom*, *f Fort*, *il Iſle*, *l Lake*, *pr Province* or *Principality*, *r River*, *t Town*, *City* or *Village*, &c.

AAin Ettudgiar *f* 443
Abbeville *t* 728
Acapulco *t* 888
Achim *km* 140, 900
— *t* 901
Acre *t* 442, 787, 792
Adda *r* 690
Adgeroud *f* 435
Adige *r* 543
Adirbeitzan *pr* 53
Adom *il* 502
Adria *t* 634
Adrobe *r* 43
Æolides *il* 569
Æthiopia, *ctry* 431
Ætna, M. 378, 394
Agouſta *t* 395
Agra *t* 356
Agria *t* 117
Ajut *t* 230
Aiora *il* 419
Aix *t* 591, 601
Aix la Chapelle, *v.* Aken
Aken *t* 538, 552, 699
Akſai *r* 109
Alambater *il* 347
Albfountain *t* 717
Alba Græca, *vid.* Belgrade
Albano *t* 562, 631
Albanus *r* 109
Albaza *f* 256
Alcantara *t* 743
Alcola de Henares, *vide* Compoſtel.
Aldersberg *t* 720
Aleppo *t* 308
Alexandretta *t* *Ibid.*
Alexandria *t* 420, 421, 693
Alicant *t* 769
Allachars *t* 306
Allout-neur *t* 454
Aloſt *t* 718
Alps, M. 650, 730
Altinum, *vide* Tolna.
Altorf *t* 528, 557, 586
Ama *f* and *t* 446
Amadabad *t* 353
Amadebath *t* 114
Amadie *t* 316
St. Amand. 720
Ama-palla *il* 877
Amboyna *il* 143
Amſterdam, 176, 523, 550, 641, 707—709, 782
Amycla *t* 628
Anargia *t* 320
Ancona *t* 581, 633, 659
Andernach *t* 526, 553
Andra *il* 396
Andre *t* 109, 730
St. Andrews *il* 502, 867
Andy *t* 352
Angara *r* 232
Angom *il* 347
Angra *t* 162
Angulas *cp* 154
Anna *t* 317
Anti-libanus, M. 800
Antioch *t* 308, *l* *Ibid.*
Antwerp *t* 525, 548, 700, 713
Appenine, M. 546, 606
Aquapendente *t* 576, 684
Arachoſia *pr* 327
Aranjeux, 760, 768
Ararat, M. 51
Arauw *t* 586
Araxes *r* 62, 324, 327
Arbella *t* 311
Arbuchemie, M. and *t* 43
Arcangell *t* 17, 182
Arche *r* 730
Ardebil *t* 65
Arecque *t* 129
Argentara *il* 419
Argenteau *f* 715
Argos Pelaſgicum *t* 509
Argun *t* and *r* 233
Arica *t* 839, 842
Arles *t* 591
Armenia *pr* 327
Armolia *t* 417
Armuyden *t* 711
Arnheim *t* 642
Arnſbeck *t* 9
Arragon *km* 738
Arrarat, M. 303
Arras *r* 104
Arſinoe *t* 435
Aſcalon *t* 784
Aſcenſion *il* 157
Aſchula *r* 43
Aſo *t* 817
Aſoph *t* 224
Aſſi *r* 446
Aſſyria, *v.* Curdiſtan, 311
Aſta *t* 129
Aſtabat *t* 304
Aſtracan *t* 46, 111, 249
Atek *t* 355
Atteny *t* 129
Aveyro *t* 764
Averno *l* 668
Aves *il* 870
Aveſia *il* 397
Augsburg *t* 557, 647
Avignon *t* 601
Aureng-abad *t* 357
Azac *t* 317
Azem *km* 386
Azmer *t* 383
Azores *or* Flemiſh Iſles, 161

B

Babylon *t* 313
Baccharach *t* 526, 643
Bachiam *il* 146
Baſtriana *pr* 327
Badajos *t* 766
Baden *t* 518, 556
Badoula *t* 454
Badue *t* 8
Bagnet *t* 312
Bahor *t* 351
Baiæ 630, 669
Baikala *l* 256
Balagatta, M. 129
Balaton *l* 502
Balbeck *t* 800
Baldavia *t* 811, 812
Ballowa *t* 129
Balſari *t* 121, 309—313
Baly *il* 143
Bamba *pr* 159
Banarou *t* 346
Banda *il* 144
Bander Congo *t* 314, 347,
—Abaſi 314, 346
Baniana *t* 354
Bantam *t* 140
Bargant *t* 354
Barmach, M. 56
Barnoli *t* 351
Baroche *t* 353
Baruth *t* 446
Baſantagan *t* 121
Baſil *t* 555, 697
Baſſano *t* 583
Baſſarin *t* 347
Baſſiligorod *t* 41
Batavia *t* 143
Batchelor's River 810
Batta *pr* 159
Bayonne *t* 733
Beer *t* 794
Bejebeg *t* 129
Belfort *t* 661
Belgrade *t* 502, 507
Bencock *t* [465]
Bendimir *r* 344, 345
Bengala *km* 136, 352, 395
Beny *km* 160
Berce *t* 129
Beredon *t* 313
Bergama *t* 564
Bergen-op-Zoom *t* 549
Bern *t* 586, 697
Beroot *t* 791
Berrady *r* 799
Berry *t* 116
Bellis *t* 316
Bethany *t* 439
Bethlehem *t* 439, 785
Bethphage 787
Bethſur 786, 796
Bethulia *f* 440, 442
Betzirwan, M. and *ctry* 62
Bezouart *t* 362
Beitma *r* 43
Biela *t* 17
Bſelejezoro, *Dchy.* 17
Bielks *pr.* *Ib.*
Bidaſſoa *r* 734
Bing *t* 527, 553, 644
Bir *t* 310
Birbieſca *t* 735
Biſcay *ctry* 734
Blanco *il* 871
Bleufield *r* 868
Boca Chica *r* 847
Boca del Dragon *t* 832
Boca del Toro 831, 869
Bodbeys *t* 435
Bodrou *Caſtle* 419
Boinitz *t* 517
Bois-le-Duc *t* 710
Boloclea *r* 45
Bologna *t* 563, 583, 606, 688, 771
Bolſano, *vide* Bolzen.
Bolzen *t* 585, 650, 684, 772, 776
Bombarecca *rk* 347
Bommel *t* 710
Bona *t* 526, 553, 643
Bonn, *vide* Bona.
Borgo di Valle *t* 546
Boriſthenes *r* 18
Borneo *il* and *t* 143
Bornholm *il* 1, 779
Borrica *il* 822
Boſch, *vide* Boiſleduc
Boticilla *t* 440
Boulac *ct* 421
Bouquier *f* *Ibid.*
Boutan *km* 385
Bouton *il* 896
Braga *t* 765
Brampour *t* 352
Brandam *t* 140
Brazil *ctry* 905
Breda *t* 524, 549, 710
Bremen *t* 782
Breſcia *t* 564, 639, 690
Briel *t* 703
Briſack *t* 555, 698
Brixen *t* 650
Brodra *t* 113
Broitſchia *t* *Ibid.*
Bruges *t* 541, 547, 701, 719
Brunitz *t* 3, 13
Bruſſels *t* 525, 548, 699, 714
Bry *t* 551
Buda *t* 502, 505
Budeua *t* 3
Buitrago *t* 740
Bulcapen *t* 8
Burgos *t* 736
Burſa *t* 414
Buſtro *r* 109
Buzzolo *t* 689
Byblis, *vide* Gibyle.

C

Cabo. Falſo 154
Cabul *pr* and *t* 355
Cachao *t* 899
Caeta *t* 628
Cajam *t* 140
Cajeta *t* 664
Cairo *t* 421—423
Old Cairo *t* 425
Calais *t* 547, 728
Callabas *t* 352
Callaſuſung *t* 896
Calliar *t* 129
Callimacha *t* 416
Calmar Streights 9
Cambaya *pr* & *t* 116, 353
Cambia *t* 417
Cambodia *km* 138, 900
Cambray *t* 721
Camena *t* 765
Campeachy-Bay 903
—— *t* *Ibid.*
Cana *t* 442
Cananor *t* 133
Canary Iſlands 162
Candebar *t* 347, 348
Candi *t* 454
Candich *t* 384
Candy *km* 134
Cannobin *t* 446
Canopus *t* 421
Canterbury *t* 163
Cape of Good Hope 154, 898
— Verde 158
— Cuodos 318
— Bona 448
— Blanco 803, 805, 839, 876
— Froward 810
Capenour *t* 362
Caprara *il* 449
Capua *t* 628, 665, 772
Cara *t* 310
Caracios *t* 872
Caramania *pr* 327
Carmel, M. 441, 787
Carmout *t* 346
Carnuntum, *vide* Petronel.
Carthage the Ancient, 263, 449
Carthagena *t* 824, 869
Caſal *t* 339, 693
Caſan *pr.* 42
— *t* 229
Caſan *t* 41, 112—326
Caſanka *r* 41
Caſbin *t* 305—325
Caſpian Sea 52, 248
Caſſinagorod *t* 39
Caſſumpaſha *t* 403
Caſtelfranco *f* 564
Caſurn *t* 69, 100
Cataipha *t* 446
Catamna *t* 3
Catanea *t* 570
Catie *t* 435
Carſhanich *f* 508
Catſland *il* 711
Caucaſus, M. 51, 321
Caucreſtan *t* 346
Cauniones *t* 435

Cayas *il* 824
Cayboa *il* 838
Cazeron *t* 310
Celebes *il* 143, 896
Cenis, M. 602, 696, 731
Cerigo *il* 395
Cerines *t* 312
Cervia *t* 582, 659
Ceſena *t* 634, 659
Ceylon *il* 134, 450. 453—484
Chalaour *t* 354
Chalcedon *t* 396
Chaldea *pr* 327
Chambery *t* 602, 696, 730
Charabaon *t* 140
Charenton *t* 728
Charleroy *t* 718
Chateau Neuf. 727
Cheapo *r* and *t* 885
Chekiam *pr* [487]
Cheytepour *t* 121
Chike-ſera *t* 356
Chili *ctry* 812
Chimolo *il* 419
China *km* 136—151 [487]—[524]
Chinkiam *t* [492]
Chio *il* and *t* 416
Chioza *t* 583, 651
Chira *il* 843
Chitor *t* 384
Chitpour *t* 354
Chizeco *t* 396
Choraſan *pr* 54
Chremnitz *t* 515
Chutiſtan *pr* 54
Cidaye *t* 140
Circaſſia *ctry* 49, 318
Citta de la Vigna. 663
Civita Caſtellana *t* 580
Clagenfurt *t* 519
Cleurn *t* 585
Cliſſura, M. 508
Clitumnus *r* 662
S. Cloud 727
Coblentz *t* 526, 553, 643
Cochin *km* 134
Coimbria *t* 764
Coira *t* 585, 602
Colan *t* 844
Colchis, *vide* Mingrelia 318
Col-fiorito *t* 581
Collaſar *r* 352
Cologne *t* 526, 553, 642
Columna *t* 39
Com *t* 325
Commana *t* 828
Comorin *cp* 134
Connorrah *t* 505
Compoſtel *t* 767
Compoſtella *t* 890
Comſhe *t* 344
Condor *il* 894
Conegliano *t* 560
Congo *km* 159
Congos *r* 884
Coningsberg *t* 8
Conſtance *t* 556
Conſtantinople *t* 397—403
Contalli *il* 397
Coos *il* 419
Copenhagen 781
Coraſſan *pr* 327
Cordomolo *t* 416
Cordona *dm* and *t* 593
Cordova 596
Corientes *cp* 882, 889
Cormondel *ct* 135
Corodiza *t* 3
Corondel *t* 433
Coron *t* 305
Corſica *il* 158
Cortryck *t* 720
Coſim *il* 41
Coſta Rica *t* 824
Cotemul *r* 454
Courland *duby* 8
Crema *t* 564, 639
Cremona *t* 689
Crevecœur *f* 908
Cronenburgh *f* 781
Cruſtroyatz *t* 507
S. Cruz *t* 904
Cteſiphon *t* 326
Cuba *il* 824
Curaſſol *il* 846
Curdiſtan *t* 311, 327
Curſiſtan *pr* 327
Cutialar *t* 316
Cyprus *km* 311, 420
Cyrus *r* 62, 321

D

Daberah *t* 798
Daca *t* 358
Dadacardan *t* 310
Daman *t* 129, 347
Damaſcus *t* 443—445, 799
Damietta *t* 427
Damm *t* 719
Danda *t* 129
Dangala *t* 431
Dantzick *t* 8, 259, 779
Danube *r* 501, 507
Darien *ctry* 866
Davaſhiter *t* 316
Dauma *t* 140
Dauri *pr* 232
Dead Sea 439
Debul *t* 130
Decan *km* 130
Degligy-neur *t* 455
Dehidombe *t* 346
Dehigherdou *t* 344
Dehly *t* 356
Delft *t* 522, 549, 640
Dely Jan *t* 322
Delos *il* 418
Delta *il* 428
S. Denis 727
Derbent *t* 106
Devogli *t* 316
Dgib *t* 436
Diarbeck *pr* 54
Diarbequir *t* 310, 315
Diep *t* 728
Ditcauly *t* 129
Dixmuyde *t* 719
Diu *cp*, *il* and *t* 121, 347
Doesburgh *t* 642
Dolgoi *il* 46
S. Domingo *il* 811
S. Domingo *t* 817
Domo *t* 129
Don *r* 18
Donawert *t* 557
Donſlow *t* 318
Doria Reka *r* 230
Dorpt *t* 1
Dort *t* 524, 549
Dover *t* 163
Drave *r* 501
Dreſden *t* 535, 777
Duina *pr* 17 *r* 18, 182
Duisburgh *t* 642
Dultabat *t* 359
Dunkirk *t* 541, 547, 721
Duſſeldorp *t* 642

E

Ebal, M. 793
Eblier *t* 325
Ecbatane *t* 304
Edzerbaijan *ctry* 327
Eiſenbach *t* 514
Elba *il* 449
Elbing *t* 8, 779
Elbit *t* 443
Elim 433
Elizabeth *il* 157, 809
Elizian Fields 630, 669
St. Elmo *f* 572
Elvas *t* 706
Embs *t* 529
Emmaus *t* 441, 785
Emoui *il* [492]
Enchuyſen *t* 782
Engedi, M. 440
Enghien *t* 714
Epheſus *t* 306, 415
Erack *pr* 53
Erivan *t* 303, 323, 327
Erzerom *t* 302
Eſdraelon *t* 442
Eſdrellon *plain* 443
Eſtramoze *t* 766
Eutin *t* 112

F

Faenza *t* 583, 634
Famagoſta *t* 312
Fano *t* 582, 633, 659
Farillon *f* 420
Farrs *pr* 53
Farſiſtan *pr* 327
Fauces Hyrcaniæ 101
Fayal *il* 162
Ferrara *t* 563, 583, 634 658, 775
Fiero *il* 163
Fiſchtelberg 537
Fitta *t* 417
The Five Iſles 895
Florence *t* 574, 575, 607, —610, 686—688, 771
Flores *il* 162
Huſſingen *t* 525, 549, 711
Fogo *il* 873
Fokien *pr* [487]
Foligno *t* 580, 662
Fonchiale *t* 801
Fondi *t* 664
Fontarabia *f* 734
Forli *t* 634
Formoſa *il* 149
Fort Louis 698
Foſſa Nuova 663
Fountainbleau 600, 727
France *km* 722—730
Franchimont *t* and *f* 716
Frankendal, *vide* Franken-thal *t* 554, 645
Frankfort *t* 527, 553, 644
Freibergh *t* 536
Freilach *t* 559
Freſcati *t* 480, 631
Fretcour 717
Friburg *t* 586, 698
Frieſtadt *t* 513
Fuligni *t* 775
Fundi *t* 628
Furli *t* 775
Fygera *t* 765

G

Gadoro *il* 397
Gaieta *il* 772
Galapagos *il* 838, 875
Galata *t* 403
Galera *il* 851
Galina *t* 234
Gallicia *pr* 765
Gallipoli *t* 396
Gallo *il* 882
Gam *f* 2
Gamma Lamma *t* 145
Gamron *t* 117
Gandel *r* 358
Gandicot *t* 363
Gangea *t* 248
Ganges *r* 357
Gaudui *t* 121
Gaza *t* 436, 783
Gebeltour, M. 443
Gedroſia *pr* 327
Gehanabad *t* 356
Genaſſai *r* 257
Geneſareth *l* 443
Geneva *t* 587, 588, 601, 606
Gennure 630
Genoa *t* 565, 692, 693, 770
Genoua, *vide* Genoa
St. George *f* and *t* 362, 901
St. George *il* 162
Georgia *ctry* 421
Gerizim, M. 443, 793
S. Germain 727
Germany, Em. 776
Gerrici *t* 140
Gethſemane 798
Gezire *t* 316
Ghent *t* 540, 548, 701, 718
Gibraltar *t* 822
Gibyle *t* 791
Gie *t* 446
Gileto *il* 143
Glaris, Can 585
Glaſs-hilten *t* 514
Goa *t* 130, 359
St. Goar *t* 526, 553
Goga *t* 121
Golconda *km* 373
Golconda *t* 136, 360
Goldon Iſland. 834
Gombeſtala *f* 344
Gomez *il* 900
Gomorrah, *vid.* Comorrah
Gorcum *t* 524, 710
Gorgona *il.* 449, 838, 882
Gorno *t* 313
Gory *t* 321
Gotevy *t* 129
Gothland *il* 9, 780
Gottorp *t* 9
Goualeur *t* 352, 353
Gozo *il* 393
Graeen *t* 129
Gran *r* 501
— *t* 502, 505
Granada *t* 850
Gratioſa *il* 162
Graveling *t* 541, 547, 721
Gravemakeren *t* 717
Green Iſlands 161
Greenland
Greny, M. 730
Griare *t* 872
Griſons 585
Grodno *t* 259
Groeningen *t* 782
Gruntz *t* 3
Guam *il* 891
Guaſco *t* 842
Guatulco *t* 887
Guaquil *r* and *t* 880
Guilan *pr* 327
Gurguſtan *pr* 247
Guriel *ctry* 320
Gufti *t* 115
Guzuratte *pr* 120, 121

H

La Hacha *r* and *t* 869
Hague *t* 522, 550, 640
Halabas *t* 358
Hall *t r* 714, 777
Hamburgh *t* 537, 778
Hamcheu *t* [492]
Hanque *t* 435
Hannabath *t* 115
Hare Iſland 805
Harlem 176, 522, 550, 641, 707
Haſenabath *t* 82
Havana *t* 825
Heambo *r* [495]
Hean *t* 898
Heidelberg *t* 527, 554, 645
St. Helen *il* 157, 898
St. Helena *t* 417
Helſingburgh *t* 781
Helvia Ricina *t* 661
Hems *t* 446
Heribach *t* 117
Hermanſtein *t* 526
Hermon, M. 442, 798
Hermus *r* 306
Herrn-grundt *t* 516
Heſdin *t* 721
Hilo *t* 840
Hindoo *t* 354
Hippopothon *il* 324
Hiſpaniola *il* 817
Hogland *il* 10
Holſtein *t* 112
Holy Land *il* 782
Holy Land *ctry* 783—788
Honan *pr* [487]
Honey Kane *t* 788
Honſlaerdike 705
Horeb, M. 434
Horn *t* 782
Hotcourly *pr* 454
Hungary *km* 501, 504
Hunningen *t* 694
Huquam *pr* [487]
Hyrcania *pr* 327

I

Jacatra *t* 140
Jacob's Tower 440
Jaffa *t* 441
St. Jago *il* and *t* 161, 802, 817, 873, 881, 904
Jabor *t* and *r* 139
S. James de Compoſtella *t* 737
Japan 146—148
Japara *t* 140
Jarka *r* 46
Jaſques *cp* 347
Jaſſi *t* 262
Java *il* 140
Idria *t* and *f* 520
Jebilee *t* 789
Jedo Caſtle 146
Jenako *r* 232
Jenekinsko *t* 230, 231
Jenza *r* 231
Jerawena *t* 233
Jericho *t* 439, 787
Jeroſlaw *t* 229
Jeroſtat *duby* 17
Jeruſalem *t* 436—439, 784—786, 794
Iglaw *t* 534
Ilha de Noas *il* 138
Ilha de Pedro *il* 138
Iſim *r* 232
Iman-ſhade *t* 344
Imeretta *km* 320
India *t* 137
Indoſtan 119
Ingolſtadt *t* 647
Inſpruck *t* 649, 776
Joartam *t* 140
S. John *il* 895
— John Cuehlo *il* 848
— John de Luz *t* 733
— John Morienne *t* 730
John Fernand *il* 874
Jokutsky *t* 232
Joppa *t* 441, 784
Jordan *r* 439, 795
Iran *pr* 53
Irkutskoy *t* 232
Irtiſh *r* 231
Iſola *t* 572
Iſola longa *il* 419
Iſpahan *t* 79, 327, 328, 344, 347
Iſſelampour *t* 129
Iſſer ſioor *t* 446
Italy *ctry* 599—339, 639 —702, 770—775
S. Juan de Goave *t* 817
Juan Fernandez *il* 841
Juanogorod *t* 12
Jucatan *ctry* 823
Jugarie *pr* 17
Julfar *pt* 347
S. Julian *pt* 805
Juliers *t* 538, 553, 698
Julpha *t* 324
Juſtice *il* 807

K

Kab-Kabi *t* 362
Kaffa *t* 317
Kama *r* 42, 229
Kamſcha *t* 115
Kapurga *t* 2
Karaſara *t* 311
Kars *t* 302
Kaſembaſar *t* 373
Kaſikermen *t* 224
Kaſilagate *t* 103
Kaſma *t* 232
Katchan *t* 71, 100
Kebrabath *t* 82
Keckmiſh *il.* 314
Kefteen *t* 788
Keiſerwaert *t* 642
Kengavar *t* 316
Kenneroſe *t* 387
Kerman *pr* 327
Kerman *t* 307, 327
Keſker *pr* 54
Kiam *r* [495]
Kianſi *pr* [487]
Kiel *t* 9, 112
Kilan *pr* 54, 101
Kiliſhim, M. 100
Kine *r* 230
Kings Iſles 882
Kirman *pr* 54
Kiſhon *r* 793
Kiſſoſein *r* 68
Kiſmiſch *il* 117
Kitay *ctry* 252
Knittlefield *t* 559
Kockſchaga *t* 41
Koiſa *r* 49, 109
Kom *t* 70, 100, 305
Koningsberg *t* 259, 779
Korie *t* 792
Koſtowata *il* 43

Krembs t 559
Krissovisa t 3
Kriu il 41
Krus r 62
Kurban t 103
Kusmademianski t 41
Kyssar il 45

L

Laar t 116
Laba t 3
Labach t 519
Ladoga l 2, 3
Lagiaso t 770
Lago di Garda 543,563
Laguna t 904
Lahe'zan pr 54
Lahor t 120
Lahors t 355,384
Lake of Zirchnitz 519
Lampedosa il 447
Landsbergh t 556
Langerkunan pr 103
Lanuvium, vide Citta de la Vigna.
Lar pr 346
— t Ibid.
Larecca il. 347
Lareza il 314
Larissa t 508
Lasnebourgh t 731
Lavelia t 882
Lausanna t 586,601,697
Lazia t 765
Leghorn t 567,611,685, 772
Leipsick t 537,777
Le Mair il 805
Lena r 257
Leopoldstadt f 513
Leoua t 508
Letia t 663
Lewarden t 782
Lewben t 559
Lewis f 912
Leyden t 522,550,640, 705,706,782
Libanus, M. 446,799
Lido 560
Liege t 540,552,699,715
Lima pr 347
Limburgh t 539,552
Limonia t 560
Lindaw t 556
Lintz t 529,559,776
Lions t 589,601,729
Lisbon t 743,763
Lille t 720
Lisran r 43
Livonia ctry 11
Lobos il 842
Lobos de la Mar il 875, 880
Lodi t 605
Lolgnitzgoth t 229
London t 163
Loir r 728
Loretto t 581,632,660, 661,775
L'orzi nuovi t 564
Louvain t 540,548,699, 714
Louvo t [465]
Louvre t 722
Lubeck t 9,778
Lubiana, vide Labach.
Luca t 566,611,685,772
Lucca, vide Luca
Lucern t 586
S. Lucia il 845
Luconia il 894
Lucrin l 668
Luibel, M. 519
Lunenburgh ctry and t 778
Luxemburgh t 717
Lycus r 791
Lydda t 436,787
Lyons, vide Lions.
Lyperitza r 508

M

Macoa f [492]
Macassar km and t 143,388
Macerata t 581,775
Machedraba t 317
Machiam il 146
Machsud t 115
Madagascar il 155
Madera il 801
Madere Suleiman t 115
Madrid 774—749.759, 766—768
Madura il 143
Maese r 703
Maesland Sluys t Ibid.
Maestricht t 525,540, 551,699,711
Magdeburg t 537,778
Magerda r 448
S. Mago il 873
Majar t 115
Makran pr 327
Makritz il 41
Malacca t and Neck of Land 138,901
Maldive Illands 135
Malines, vide Mechlin.
Malta t 26,308
— il 395,571,572
Mamadebath t 114
Mandoua r 359
Mangera il 877
Mangerol t 121
Manheim t 527,554,645
Manila t 146,894
Mannersdorff t 533
Mansoura t 426
Manta t 843,879
Mantua t 546,563,639, 689
Maracaibo t and l 822
Marant t 324
Mardike t 541
S. Maria r and t 834,884
Marienburgh t 780
Marignano t 605
S. Marino t 582,659
Marli 727
Marmora il 396,397
Marra t 446
Marseilles t 591,601
S. Martha t 869
Marvas, M. 115
St. Mary il 162,812
Massa t 566.
Massalcan t 890
Matapan cp 395
Matharee 426
Matram t 140
Mavelagonga r 454
Mayence t 527,553,644
Mayo il 801,904
Mazandran pr 327
Meccha t 423
Mechlin t 548,700,714
Medoa pr 324,327
Medina t 424
Megellan Streights 145
Meissen t 777
Meliapour 135
Mellingen t 586
Memel t 8
Memmingen t 556
Memphis t 426
Menam r 136 [465]
Menang-kang t [465]
Menia t 443
Menin t 720
Mentz, vide Mayence.
Merdin t 310
Mergetheim t 528
Merguy t [466]
Merida t 766,822,902
Meroe il 428
Mesenderan pr 54
Mesopotamia km 320,327
Messano t 121
Messina t 394,569
Mesta t 417
Mexico 756
Miana r 824
St. Michael il 162
Middleburg t 524,529,676
Milan t and dm 564,604, 690,770
Milo il 418
Mina 159
Mindanao il and t 892, 893
Mindora il 894
Mingrelia t 360
Mingrelia km 318
Minturna t 628,665,772
Mira t 765
Miranda d' Ebro t 735
Mirandola t 639
Mirda pr and t 354
Mirdsi t 129
Mismills t 516
Mississipi r 909
Mitgannis t 427
Mittau t 8
Mittenwald 649
Modena t 564,606,689, 771
Modin t 439,784
Mohatz t 506
Mokuskoy t 231
Moldavia pr 262
Monaster t 508
Mons t 718
Montagma t 396
Montargis t 601,728
Monte Christo 879
Monte Fiascone 576,612, 684,772
Monte Nuovo 631,668
Montefalco t 662
Montmelian f 602,696, 730
Montpelier t 590
Morumna t 40
Mosandon cp 347
Moska r 39
Moulins t 728
Mountain of St. Catharine 433
—— of Moses Ib.
Mouse-Tower 527
Mousul t 311
Mozambique il 156
Multan pr and t 354
Munchen t 556,648
Munde f 779
Munich, vide Munchen.
Murat t 691
— l 697
Muripons, vide Prug.
Musco t 16,112
Musulipatan t 136

N

Nabgion il 347
Nachivan t 324
Nader t 352
Naerden t 709
Nagaia pr 46
Nahor Hissine r 789
Nain t 442
Namur t 718
Nankin pr [487]
— t [491]
Naor el Kelb r 446
Naples t 567, 629, 665, 666, 773
— km 628
Naplouse, vide Sichem.
Nariad t 114
Narim t 231
Narni t 580,662
Nasonotska il 45
Nassar t 121
Natron l 428
Natrus t 71
Navapoura t 352
Naugrocot, M. 386
Naun t 232 r 233
Naurecaleva pr 454
Naxos il 417
Nazareth t 442,787,798
Nebk t 446
Nefte r 106
Nellembi-Neur t 454
Nemours t 728
Nertza r 233
Nertzinskoy t Ib.
Nerva t 1,10 r 12,112
Neva r 230
Newburgh t 647
Nevers t 728
Newhausel t 505
New-Holland ctry 897
New-Mexico ctry 891
Newogorod t 230
Newport t 541,719
Neurenburgh t 557
Newsidler-lake 533
Newsol t 516
Newstadt t 518,559,779
Neuta t 882
Niagara r 907
Nialabath t 55
Nicaria il 419
Nice t 396
Nicea t 302
S. Nicholas il 873
Nuobar Isles 897
Nicola Darebna t 14
Nicomedia t 396
Nicoya t and r 853,876
Nile r 428,432
Nineve t 311
Nio il 418
Nise t 112
Nisenovogorod t 40
Nitra r 505
Nitrea t Ibid.
Nixia il 417
No mans Isles 811
Noreburg t 2
Novarra t 565
Novegne t 715
Novi t 604, 692
Novogorod t 3, 13
Nuchar t 316
Nueftra Senora de alta Gracia t 817
Nurenberg t 528, 646
Nycoeping and Norcoeping t 781
Nysbantz f 2

O

Oarra t 889
Obdorie pr 17
Oby r 231, 257
Occa and Moska 2 r join 39
Odland il 780
Oeren t 129
Oester Isen. 781
Oliarus il 416
Oliva 779
Olivet, M. 787,798
Olympus, M. 509
S. Omer t 721
Ongdioun t 344
Opium t 306
Orange t 589
Ormus il t 118,346
Orontes, vide Assi.
Ossino il 44
Ostend t 541,547,701, 719
Otricoli t 663
Ourfa t 310
Outemela t 363

P

Pacifick Sea 834
Pactolus r 306
Padoua t 541,542,562, 638,652,775
Padua, vide Padoua.
Paita t 839
Palemburgh t 646
Palicate 362
Pamba pr 159
Panama t 755,830,882
Pango pr 159
Pantalaria il 447,448
Pantzina r 44
Paris t 722—727
Parma t 546,564,606, 689,771
Paro il 418
Parthia pr 325—327
Paschiora 638
Passaro cp 570
Passaw t 528,558,776
Patana km 139
Pathmos il 417
Pati t 140
Patino il 417
Patmora il Ibid.
Patna t 358
Pavia t 604,692,776
Paufilipus, M. 568
Payta t 879
Pease-field. 440
S. Pecuque t 890
Pegu km 136
Pekin pr and t 235 [487] [488]—[490]
Peloponnesus pr 327
Peneus r 508,509
Penguin il 803,805
Pera t 403
Peresla t 39
Pergi t 417
Perinthus t 397
Permie pr 17
Pernau t 8
Peronne t 722
Peroslaw t 229
Persepolis t 115
Persia km 327
Peru ctry 855
Pettau t 121
Pettepatane t Ib.
Pesaro t 582,634,659,775.
Pest t 502,506
Petersburgh t 711
Petronel t 504
Petzoro pr and r 17
Praltz f 643
Pharos il 420
Phasis r 321
Philadelphia, vide Allachars.
Philipsburgh t 555,698
Phillipine Islands 146, 892
Phœnicia pr 787
Piacenza t 605,771
Pico il 162
Piedmont pr 731,732
Pigeon Isle 822
Piombesera t 352
Pipesno t 663
Pisa t 566,611,685,772
Piscador Illes 895
Pisonium, vide Presburgh.
Pistoia t 618
Pitombo il 347
Pitsanoulock t [465]
Piura t 839,888
Placenza t 564, 689
Plata il 878
Platsee, vide Balaton.
Plescow dchy 17
Plotbus t 233
Po r 546
Poggi Bonzi 772
Poggio Imperiale 609
Point of Hilo 839
Policandre il 418
Pont t 722
Ponte Angelo 613
Ponte felice 580
Ponte Vedra t 765
Pontieba t 560
Porselouc, vide Pitsanouloc.
Port Famen 809
Porto t 764
Portugal km 763—766
Posonium, vide Presburgh
Pozzuolo. 568
Prabat t [465]
Prague, old and new, t 535,777
Prata il 895
Presburgh t 502,504
Pretz t 9
Prima Porta 580
Privernum, vide Piperno
Pruck an der Mure t 559
Prug t 518
Prussia km 778,779
Ptolemais t 442
Puebla nova t 886
Puerto velo 755,825
Pulo-ubi il 895
Puna il 854,880
Puzzuolo t 630,668
Pylas. 109
Pyrenees, M. 734

Q

Quacheou t [492]
Qualampour t 121
Quamsi pr [487]
Quantum pr Ibid.

Qua-

Quarantama, M. 787
Queaquilla r and f 854
Quebara f 735
Quebec f 915
Queicheu pr [487]
Queriſao 870
Queſchimo il 347
Quibo il 886
St. Quiricho f 576
Quito f 859,880

R

Raab f 504
Rab r 501
Radicofani f 576,684
Raduntella f 765
Rage-Mehale f 358
Rama f 436
Ramala f Ibid.
Rammekens f 781
Ratisbone f 558
Ravenna f 582,658
Ravy r 355
Realeguo f and r 848
Recanati f 661
Red-Sea 435
Reggio f 564,689,771,
Regium, vide Rhegio.
Rephidim f 433
Reſcht pr 54,102
Reſh r 230
Refwick 705
Revel f 2,10,112
Rey f 325
Rhegio f 573
Rheſan pr 17,39
Rhodes il 419
Rialto 634
Riche f 435
Riga f 1
Rimini f 582,634,659,
775
Rimino r 582
Rio del zenra 832
Rio grande 846
Rio leca r and f 886
Riperwich 782
River of Darien 869
Roan f 728
Rock of Striſe. 433
Rodoſto f 397
Roll's Iſland 158
Romaſeja 230
Rome f 577—580, 613
—627, 672—684, 773
—775
Roſapour f 130
Roſelayn 792
Roſenheim f 776
Roſſetto f 421
Roſtock f 9
Roſtoph f 229
Roſthow dchy 17
Rotenberg f 528
Rotterdam f 522, 549,
640, 703, 782
Roy f 722
Rſchoovia f 17
Rſchoovie pr Ibid.
Roveredo f 651
Rovigo f 658, 775
Rouſſelaer f 720
Ruba il 826
Rudna f 230
Ruigo f 634
Ruſſana r 44
Ruſſian Narva f 2

S

Saal f 518
Saba f 70, 100
Sabakzar f 41
Sabluſthan pr 54
Sabremetti r 353
Saide, vide Sidon
Salahia f 435
Salerno f 574
Salmaſtrie p 316
Samachie, M. 105
Samar r 43
Samara f 18, 43, 112
Samaria, vide Sebaſte.
Samojedea 19
Samos il 419
Sampion, M. 692
Samuel's Town. 436
Sanſeron f 358
Santorini il 418
Saphet f 798
Saragoſſa f 738
Saratoff f 44, 112
Sardis f 306
Saribe f 560
Sariggiole p 508
Sariza f 112
Sarzana f 566
Sava f 305, 325
Save r 501
Saulkſpas f 13
Savidoua Ibid.
Savona il 817
Savoy dm 730—732
Scala Nova il 416
Scandal, M. 441
Schadtwien f 514
Schamachie f 248
Schardingen f 776
Schelde r 525
Schemnitz f 513
Schileka r 233
Schiras f 116, 310, 344
Schirwan pr 53
Schladſtadt f 698
Schotwien, v. Schadtwien.
Scuderet f 403
Scyra il 419
Seal-Iſland 804
Sebaſte f 443, 793
St. Sebaſtian f 597, 734
Sedrille il 418
Segovia f 857
Selame il 347
Semenut f 427
Senderou r 329
Senderut r 79
Sene or Senla f 505
Senegallia f 633, 659
Senkan f 68
Senlis f 722
Serena f 840
Serindib, vide Ceilon.
Seronge f 352
Sephet f 443
Sevenhauſe, f 550
Shamaquy f 315
Sharmly f 320
Shilo, M. 787
Shirazoul f 311
Siam km and f 387 [465]
— [485]
Siberia pr 17. the chief Cities therein. 230
Sibyl's Grot 669
Sichem f 443, 793
Sicily il 394, 573
Sidon f 446, 787, 792
Siena f 576, 684, 772
Sierra de S. Adrian, M. 734
Sigan f [491]
Siloam Pool 441
Silva Reka r 230
Sinai, M. 432
Singa r 447
Sion, M. 441
Sion f 602
Sitziſtan pr 54
Skopia f 508
Skuskajam p 229
Sligorod f Ibid.
Sluys f 547, 710
Smolensko pr 17 f 213
Smyrna f 306, 415
Sogdiana pr 327
Soleur f 601
Solfatara, M. 568
Soliza f 3
Solokamsko f 229
Solocurn f 586, 697
Solua, vide Saal.
Sonem f 564
Songo pr 159
The Sound 781
Sour, vide Tyre.
Soutelay f 715
South Sea 847
Spaa f 539, 552, 716
Spain km 592—598, 733
—762, 766—769
Spaniſh Netherlands 713
—722
Spartonda f 417
Spilimberg f 560
Spires f 527, 554, 698
Spoleto f 580, 662
Stablo f 717
Stanchio il 419
Stettin f 8
Stockholm 780
Straits of Magellan 808
Strasburgh f 555, 698
Straubing f 558
Strigonium, vide Gran.
Sucagna r 229
Suchin f (492)
Suchuen pr (487)
Suez f and f 432, 435
Sumatra il 139
Sumurskojam f 231
Sunda pr 159
Surabaia f 140
Surat f 119, 349, 350
Surgut f 231
Surma f 115
Suſa f 602, 696, 731
Suſowa r 230
Sweden 780, 781
Suitaski f 41
Switz f 585
Sulthanie f 68
Suratte f 120
Suſa f 327
Suidal dchy 17
Sufter f 327
Siam km 136
Syracuſe 301, 570

T

Taba f 317
Tabago il 833
Taban f 140
Taboan f Ibid.
Tabor, M. 443, 798
Tabourbe f 448
Tabriſabath f 81
Tadmor f 447
Taduan f 316
Tafda r 230
Tageroort il 10
Taggal f 140
Tajamento r 521
Talſenghe f 129
Tamba f Ib.
Tanuſtar f 356
Taprobana, vide Ceilon.
Tarbarque il 448
Tarku f 107
Taro r 546
Tarviſium, vide Treviſa.
Tauris f 304, 315, 324
Tche-elminar f 344
Tecoantepequa f 856
Tefflis f 317
Tenara f 361
Tenafferim r (466)
Teneriffe il 162
Tenes il 418
Tercera il 162
Terki f 50, 110
Ternate il 145 M. Ibid.
Terni f 662, 775
Terracina f 772
Ter-vere f 524, 549, 711
Tetma f 229
Tetus f 42
Terd f 307
Therafia il 418
Thermia il 419
Theſſaly cnty 511
Theyſſe r 501
St. Thomas il 158
Thoulon f 591
S. Tiago f 824
Tiber, vide Tyber.
Tiberias f 442
Tibur, vide Tivoli.
Ticinum r 604
Ticota f 129
Tidore il 146
Tienen f 715
Tim r 231
Tine il 418
Tipra km 386
Tivoli f 580, 631
Tmolus, M 306
Tobago il 883
Tobaſco il and r 903
Tobolsko f 230
Tocat f 302
Toledo 760, 766
Tolentino f 581, 632
Tollener f 350
Tolna f 506
Tomaco r and f 882
Tomahauke il 803
Tonbo il 347
Tongeren f 715
Tongola il 887
Tongres f 540
Tonguſi r 223
Tonquin km 899
Tor f 433
Torſok f 4
Tortoſa f 446, 789
Tortuga il 816
Tournay f 720
Tran f 734
Travemund f 112
Tre Taberne 628
Trenſchin f 517
Trent f 583, 650, 776
Trevi f 580
Treviſo f 521, 560
Tripante f 363
Tripeti f 379
Tripoli f 446, 790
Troy f 396
Trukillo f 766
S. Truyen f 715
Tſhaſiclou f 306
Tugin il 149
Tunis km and f 448
Tunko f 235
Tunquin km 388
Tura r 230
Turich il 41
Turin f 565, 603, 693, 731
Twere f 4, 13
Tyber r 632, 677
Tyre f 445, 788, 792
Tzavat f 105
Tzilminar f 115
Tzornogar f 45, 111
Tzulfa f 81

V

Vacia f 505
Valence km and f 594
Valentia f 765
Valenciennes f 720
Valetta f 571
Valley of Giants. 441
Valley of Jehoſaphat 798
Valtoline cnty 602
Van f 314
Varca r 612
Varvariſo f 417
Vaſſenburgh f 776
The Vatican 615
Vaudais cnty 732
Udinſkoy f 232
St. Veit f 518
Velitri f 663, 772
Venice f 560, 561, 634
—638, 653—658, 670—
672, 776
Venſonga f 560
Venzuela l 872
La-vera-cruz f 904
Vercelli f 565, 732
Verona f 543—547, 563,
638, 651
Verſailles 727
Veſuvius, M. 568, 629, 667
Via Appia 628, 663
Via Flaminia 580
Viæ Conſulares 664
Viana f 767
Vianen f 524, 710
Vicegrade f 505
Vicenza f 542, 562, 638,
652
Vichi f 417
S. Vicoigne 720
Victoria f 735
Vienna f 529—534, 559,
777
Vienne f 601
Vigo f 765
Villa nova de Silvero f 765
Villach f 521, 560
La Villia r 851
Vilvorden f 714
Vincenza f 776
Viſapour km 373
Viſiapour f 129, 359
Viterbo f 576, 612, 684,
772
Vittoria f 597
Ulekery f 782
Ulko f 229
Ulvarado r 904
Underwalden f 586
Uneroſkova f 42
United Provinces 703—712
Voghera f 692
Volcan-vejo, M. 877
Voliſſo f 417
Vollo pr. 509
Vologda f 17
Upſal f 780
Urban f 606, 771
Uſhgorodiſſino f 229
Uſkagorod f Ibid.
Uſka r 42
Uſolſko r 229
Uſſa r 43
Uſtinga pr 17 f 229
Utrecht f 524, 551, 642,
709, 782
Utriculi f 580
Vuern f 719
Vywaur, vide Newhauſel.

W

Waag r 501
Wache r 231
Walenſtadt f 585
Warſaw f 213
Watch-Iſle 822
Weiſſenberg f 557
Werad f 129
Wergaturia f 230
Weſel f 642
Weſet f 715
Wiathka pr 17
Wiſtzegda f 229
Wien r 529
Wight il 163
Wimphen f 646
Winoxberghen f 721
Winſheim f 646
Wiſelzea r 229
Wiſmar f 9
Wiſoko f 3
Wolodomir pr 17
Wologda r and f 3, 4, 18,
40, 45, 46, 182, 229
Wolſok f 3
Workum f 524, 710
Worms f 554, 644

X

Xanſi pr (487)
Xantum pr (Ibid.)
Xantuning f 235
Xenſi pr (487)
Xungukou f 235

Y

Yamcheu f (492)
Yamur r 233, 257
Yeſdecas f 310, 344
D. York's Iſles 844
Ypres f 720
Yunnan pr (487)

Z

Zacotora il 118
Zagra r 44
Zaire r 159
Zamblo il 834
Zariza f 45
Zerdick f 42
Zia il and f 396
Zib f 792
Zigeth f 506
Zimbre il 448
Zirchnitz f 519
Zorofgorod f 45
Zugh f 686
Zulpha f 329
Zurick f 556, 603
Zurick-Sea. 556

AN INDEX OF

Persons, Things, and Matters contain'd in the Second Volume of *Navigantium atque Itinerantium Bibliotheca.*

A

ABas, King of *Persia*, succeeds *Sefi*, Page 96
Accounts of *Persia* from Authentick Authors that have writ thereon, 85, 86
Adogbeda, a *Chinese* Lord that introduces Ambassadors, &c. Their Customs therein, 234
Adventures in the *Turkish* Camp, 262
Agaricus Tree, 230
Agats, 353, (467)
Abu, a kind of Deer, 62
Alcoran, 405
Aloes of *Zacotora*, 118, 155
Allom-Works, 717
— of Two Sorts at *Ceilon*, 457
— in *Siam*, (466)
Ambassadors of the D. of *Holstein*'s Travels into *Muscovy*, 1 — Reception on the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, 2, 3 —Reception at *Musco*, 4 — Admitted to Audience, 5 — Ceremonies then, *Ibid.* — Presents from the Czar, 8 — Leave *Musco*, *Ibid.*—Return to *Gostorp*, 9 — Their 2d Ambassie, with their Retinue, &c *Ibid.* — Pass the *Streights* of *Calmar*, and come to *Gothland*, Ibid, — Are Ship-wrack'd, 10 — Land in *Livonia*, and come to *Revel*, *Ibid.* — Come to *Narva*, and proceed on their Journey, 12 — Received on the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, and come to *Novogorod*, 13 — Entrance into *Musco*, their Allowance and Audience, 14—The Czar's Letter for their safe Passage into *Persia*, &c, 15 — Visit a *Tartar* Prince, 48 — Treated by a *Persian* Merchant, *Ibid* — Take in Provisions for their Voyage, and leave *Astrachan*, Ibid. — A Mutiny in the Ship. The Reception of the Ambassadors Envoys by a *Tartar* Prince. — The Collation Curiosities of the *Tartar* Ladies, &c. 50
The Ambassadors leave *Turkey*.—Meet with a violent Tempest, &c. 51—Shipwrack'd, 52
Ambassador from *Turkey*. See *Turkish*.
—from *Crim Tartars*. See *Crim Tartars*.
—from *Poland*. See *Polish*.
— from *Persia*. See *Persian*.
—from the Czar of *Muscovy*, in which he came himself *Incognito*. See Czar of *Muscovy*.
— in *Siam*, (479)
Ambassadors of the D. of *Holstein*'s Travels into *Persia*, 53 — Leave *Niasabath*, and go with a Caravan for *Persia*. — Their Entrance into *Schamachie*.— Are met by the Chan thereof, who entertains them.— The Feast, &c. 56, 57 — Their Presents to the Chan, 58 — Visited by an *Austin* Fryer, 59—Enterance into *Ardebil*, 62— Treated by the Chan. — His Summer-House described, 63— Visit the Tomb of *Schich Sefi*, 66 —Diversions at *Casurin*.— The Ambassadors leave it, 70 — Make their Entrance into *Ispahan*, 71 — Entertain'd out of the King's Kitchin. A bloody Quarrel with some *Indians*. — Their Allowance, Audience, Presents, Reception, &c. 72, 73, 74— Invited to the King's Hunting-Match, 76 —Presents to the King of *Persia*, Ibid. — Take their Leave of the King of *Persia*. — His Presents to them, 78— Their Return from *Ispahan* in *Persia* to *Holstein*, from 100 to 112
Ambassie. See Embassie.
Amber, 375, 386—461
Ambergrease, 114—375—875
Amboyna, the Inhabitants thereof, their Religion,— they consult the Devil,— Their Marriages,— Sorceries,— Qualities, &c. 144
America, how first Peopled, 257
Amphitheatre at *Padua*, 542
Anacardium, a Plant, 142
Anana, a Fruit, 141
Ancient *Arsacia*, or *Casurin*, the Language there,— Royal Palace and Gardens, and other Curiosities, 69
Ancient and Modern Religion of the *Muscovites*, 238
Antilopes, 384
Ants of divers kinds in *Ceilon*, 458
— at *Verona*, 546—651
— of *Vespasian*, 774
Apes worship'd, 354— Enemies to one another, 362 — Their antick Tricks, 423
Apparel of the *Indians*, 357
Apples of *Sodom*, 439
Aqua vitæ, (472)
Arabians, their Habits, 423— Their Government,—Arms,— Wars,— Religion, Marriages, &c. 434, 435
Armadillo, or Hedge-Hog, 805
Armenian Lords, their Magnificence.— Visit and entertain the Ambassadors of the D. of *Holstein*, 74
The *Armenians* Manner of blessing the Waters at the Consecration of the Cross, 57— The Ceremonies of the Consecration, 58 — Marriages, — Baptism, 75 — Of washing the Feet.—Of the New Year, &c. 105 — Their Patriarch, — Churches, — Rites, &c. 303— Patriarch, 323— Their Riches and Privileges, 329
Armenian Christians, their Customs, — Liturgy,— Marks, Way of Living, &c. 413
Arms of *Persia*, 91 — Of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, 308
Arsenal at *Malta*, 311
Asoph, the Particulars of the last Siege thereof, and the Taking it by the Czar of *Muscovy*, 224, 225
Arrecque, or Arec-Tree, (469)
Assa Fetida, a Gum, where the best, &c. 127
Astrologers in *Persia*, 76—90
Astronomy in *Persia*, 90— In the Mogul's Country, 382— In *Ceilon*, 482
Arts and Sciences in *China*, (508)
Avarell (Father) his Travels to discover a new Way by Land into *China*. — Sets Sail from *Legborn*, 244 — Arrives at *Alexandretta*, 245 — Comes to *Aleppo*, 245 To *Berlis*, — Arrives at *Erzerum*, 246 — Travels thro' part of *Tartary*, 247 — Comes to *Astrachan*, 249 —Embarks on the *Wolga* for *Musco*.— Are in great Danger and Misery, and like to be taken by the *Tartars*, 250, 251— Arrives at *Musco*, 252—Journey into *Poland*.—Has Orders to associate with the *Polish* Jesuits, 258 — Leaves *Dantzick*. — Comes to *Koninsberg*.— To *Grodno*, 259—Comes to *Warsaw*, 260—Travels into *Moldavia*, 262 — Comes to *Galatz*, 263 — Returns to *Thoulon*, 265
Augans, a People of *India*, that are great Robbers, 355
Aureng-Zeb, the History of him, by Mr. *Tavernier* and *Bernier*, 365

B

Baccha's Palace, 418
Badgers, a Sort whose Flesh is good Food, 157
Banyns's. See *Indian* Fig.
Banians, 377
Bank of *Amsterdam*, 709
Barbaro's Description of *Schamachie* in his Travels, 60
Barnacle Shells found on the Backs of Tortoises, 571
Barr (Monsieur *de la*) his Expedition against the *Iroquoise*, 916
Barley ripe in Forty Day, 502
Baths of *Buda*, 505. Near *Banea*, 513— Of *Glass Hitten*, 514— Of *Baden*, 518— Of *Villach*, 521—Call'd *Wild Bath*, — At *Fischabeg*, 537—Of *Aken*, 539—Of the *Spaa*, 1010.—Of *Albano*, 562—Of *Irtioli*, 568 —At *Rome*, 578— Of *Balleruci*, 591— Of *Antonius*, 620— Of *Diocletian*, 623 — Of *Tritola*, 631
Baths of St. *Germains*, 667
Bats as big as Crows, 115
— A strange Sort, 384
Bears great Lovers of Honey. — They sleep all the Winter, 260. — Not dangerous in *Ceilon*, 458
Beasts bred for Fight, 357
— in the Mogul's Country, 383
— the *Turks* Charity to them, 407
— of divers Kinds in *Ceilon*, 458— in *Siam*, (467)— call'd, *A Savage Man*, (524)— in *China*, Ibid.— call'd an *Ore Ox*, very fierce, 779
—of *Hispaniola*, 818
Bees of divers Kinds, — in *Ceilon*, 458 — Eaten there, *Ibid.*
Beggars in *Ceilon*, 470
Bell, the great one in *Musco*, 186 — At *Pekin* in *China*, (490) A miraculous one, 736
Belluia, or White Fish, 230
Benejans, their Religion.— They adore the Devil.— The Cloathing of their Women, — Marriage, — Ceremonies, — Temples. — Their God *Brama*, — His Deputies. — Four Sects of the *Benejans*, viz *Ceurawath*, — *Samarab*, — *Bisnow* and *Geogby*, 122, 123, 249
Benzoine, producing Gum, 142
Bernier's History of *Aureng-Zebe*, and the Revolutions in the Empire of the Great Mogul, 365
Betle-Nuts, 455
Bezoar, 375
Biram, or the *Turks Easter*, 406
Birds of Paradise, 146
— of divers Sorts, 153
— called *Flamencos*, 161
— in the Mogul's Country, 383.
— Nests eaten, the chief Ragou in *Tunquin*, 391
— The *Turks* Charity to them, 407
— About the *Nile*, 427
— Divers Kinds in *Ceilon*, 459
— in *Siam*, (468)
— of *Hispaniola*, 819
Bisket for *Mecca*, 445
Bisnow Bramans, their Way of Living, &c. 124
Bizzarius his Account of the *Caspian* Sea in his Travels to *Persia*, 53
Black-Sea described, 263

Boats made of Wicker, cover'd with an Ox's Hide, 363
Bogdoi, or Eastern *Tartars*, 254
Bojars, Great Lords of *Muscovy*, 32
Boronez, i.e. a Lamb, a Gourd growing in *Muscovy* resembling a Lamb, 18
Borax, how it grows, 127
Boris Goudenau, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, 27
Botarga. See *Cajavar*.
Botargo, how made, 591
Bramans, 121, 122, &c. See *Benjans*, 376 —Their Religion, &c. 377—469.
Brand, his Journey from *Muscovy* over Land into *China*, 229
Brazil-Wood, 818
Bridge on a Mountain, where never any Water comes, 304—of *Aliverdy-Kan*, 329 —on a Mountain, an extraordinary Piece of Architecture, 345
Bridge near *Tunis*, 448— of Boats at *Buda*, 502—of *Esseck*, 507— of *Aduan*, Ibid.— of *Vienna*, 530 — of *Rimino*, 582 — of Wood, Two Miles long over the Lake of *Coire*, 602— at *Venice*, 634 — of *Rialto* at *Venice*, 656 —at *Narni*, 663—of Paradise, vulgar Error concerning it, 706 — at *Paris*, 726
Brown (Dr. *Edward*) his Travels into divers Parts of *Europe*, viz. *Hungaria*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia*, *Thessaly*, *Austria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Friuli*, *Germany*, the *Low Countries*, *Lombardy*, &c. with curious Observations upon all those Parts, 501
La Bruck, his Voyage to *Angola*, *Guiny*, &c. 114
Brugman, one of the Duke of *Holstein*'s Ambassadors, his Barbarity, 104
Bucaniers, the History of them in the *West-Indies*, 816 — Their Origin, 820 — How they arm their Vessels and regulate their Voyage.— Their Articles among themselves, Stations, &c. 820 — An Account of those under *Piere Le Grand*, Ibid. — under *Pet. Francis*, Ibid.—under *Bartbol.* the *Portuguese*, Ibid. — under *Fran. Lolonois*, 821 — under Capt. *Morgan*, 824 — under *Coxon*, *Sawkins* and *Sharp*, 834 — under Capt. *Watlin*, 841—under *Raveau de Lusan*, 845 — under the Sieur *Montauban*, 858
Bucentore Galleys at *Venice*, 637
Burial of an *Italian*, 651
Burnaby (Father) goes to *Irvan*, 247 — Embarks at *Roan*. — Lost by Shipwrack, 259
Burnham's Remarks on the *Dutch*, 552
Burying-Place. See Sepulchre or Tomb.
Butter, how made in *Ceilon*, 478

C

Cajavar, how made, 23—249—306.
Calamba, a Tree, 142
The *Calenters* Feast in *Persia*, 58
Callicuts in *India*, 352—Super-fine, 352 — called *Chites*, 373
Calmuck Tartars, 230, 249, 254
Camelion, 415
Camels, the Revengefulness of one 83 — A particular Account of them by *Tavernier*, 307 — 351 — Chear'd up by Drums and Trumpets, 432
Canes, called *Trombos*, 3 or 4 Foot long, 154
Candles made of the Fruit of a Tree, (474)
Canoes, how made, 818
Capers, how prepared, 591
Capeices in *Turkey*, their miserable Condition, 511
Capital City of the *Circassian Tartars*, 110
Caravan, the Use of them, 145 — What Goods to be carried by them, 307— To *Mecca*, 423
Caravans of *Persia* and *Tartary*, 44 — 56 — 307 — or *Caravanseras*, 83
Cardamum, 373
Carcapuli, or *Indian* Cherries, 142
Carlisle (Earl of) his Ambassie from King *Charles* II. to the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, 177— His Train,— Voyage from *London* to *Archangel*,— with the Hardships, &c. that attended them, 177— His Entry into *Archangel*, 178 — Voyage to *Vologda* upon the *Dwina*, 182—Residence at *Vologda*, 183 — Journey from *Vologda* to *Musco*, 184 — His Entry into *Musco*, 184— His Letter to the Czar, 185 — Residence at *Musco*, 186—His Audience, with the Ceremonies, 187—His Speech to the Czar, 189—Memorials deliver'd by him, 191 — Several other Memorials, Answers, &c. 194, 195, 196, &c. Entertain'd at a Feast by the Czar, 201 — Letters to the Lord Chancellor, 203, 204 — Residence at *Riga*, 205—Voyage from *Riga* to *Stockholm*, Ibid. — Entry into *Stockholm*, 206 — Speech to the King of *Sweden*, and to the Queen, 207, 208 — Voyage to *Copenhagen*, 209 — Negotiations, Speeches, &c. there, 210, 211 — Voyage from *Copenhagen* to *London*, 212, 213
Carnaval at *Venice*, 656
Cartwright (*John*) his Travels to *Persia*, 61
Carriages and Way of Travelling in *India*, 351— Drawn by Oxen, *Ibid.*
Caspian Sea. It's a Sea by it self.— What Rivers run into it.—What becomes of all those Rivers.— The Length and Breadth thereof.— Water salt. — Neither ebbs nor flows, &c. 52, 53— Described by Father *Avarell*, 249
Cassia-Trees, 361
Catacombs, or Caves for Burying, 425— 618— At *Rome*, &c. 682
Cataract, or Water-fall, 579
St. *Catherine*'s Convent, 433 — Mount and Monastery, *Ibid.*
Catholicos, or High-Priest in *Mingrelia*, 316
Caucasus, a Mount in *Mingrelia*, 51
Cave of *Custoza*, 562
Caviar. See *Cajavar*.
Ceremony of Washing the Feet of the *Armenians*, 105— At *Grand Cairo*, on the *Nile*, beginning to flow, 424
Cæsar's Palace, 421
Cenrawath Bramans, their Belief, Temples, &c. 123
Ceylon, the Inhabitants there.—Their Character, 469—Artificers Houses, &c. 470— Their Religion, Customs, Manners, &c. 471 — Festivals, 473 — Their Houses, Diet, Housewifry, Salutation, Apparel, &c. 475 — Lodging, Bedding, Whoredom, Marriages and Children, 477— Employments and Recreations, 478— Laws and Languages, 580— Learning, Astronomy and Magick, 482— Sickness, Death and Burial, 484
Chan of *Amadat*, his Wealth,— Expence,— Discourse with the Author. — His Character, 115, 116
Chancellor to the King of *Persia*, treats the Ambassadors.— His Origin. — His Presents to the King his Master, 77, 78
Characters, those of *Persia*, 90— *Runick* 34
Charados, or Foot Soldiers in *India*, 377
Chardin (Sir *John*) his Travels into *Persia*. — The occasion of his Travels, 317
Chinese Wall, the Description of it, 234
Chinese cunning Traders, 141 — Their Government,— Climate,— Extent of their Country,— Cloathing, — Ingenuity, — Provision for the Poor,— Marriages, — Religion, &c. 151, 152— Their Antiquity, Nobility, Manners, Qualities, &c. (496) — Their Oeconomy and Magnificence (499)— Their Wit and Temper, (508) — Their Policy and Government, (511) — Their Religion, &c. (517)
Chocolate, (472)
St. *Chrisostom*'s Rock, 302
Christian Religion, when first planted in *Muscovy*, 34— In *Æthiopia*, 369— In the *Indies*, 376— Planted in *China*, (519) The Progress thereof (522)
Christians, *Indians*, 135— In *Turkey*, 303— 313, 412, 413 — In *Egypt*, called *Copti*, 429— *Sabeans*, their Opinions, Customs, &c. 313
Christmas Jollities, 533
Cimbrians, where they enter'd *Italy*, 543, 3
Cinamon, how managed, 456—(466)
Cinnabar, 514
City of *Musco* described, 186
Civet, 431
Civility of a *Persian* Merchant, 49
Cleopatra's Palace, 421
Cloves and Spice, 145—373 — Tree, 145
Coaches drawn by Dogs, 699
Cocheneel, what made of, 324
Cockle-Shells petrified, where found, 557
Coco-Tree, of which whole Ships are made at the *Maldive* Islands, 139—160 (467)
Coffee (472)
Coins. See Monies.
Colossus of *Rhodes*, 420
Column of *Trajan*, 682
Combat between a Man and a Lion — A Man and Tyger, 119
Commodities. See Merchandize, 373
Le Comte's Account of *China*, 486 — His Voyage thither, *Ib.*
Confucius his Life, Morals, &c. (505)
Contarin his Account of the *Caspian* Sea, in his Travels, 52
Convent of *Austin* Friars in *India*, 131
Coral-Fishing, where, 375 — Good Commodity, 386 — Black, 461
Corah, *Dathan*, and *Abiram* swallowed up, 434
Cordovan-Skins, 310
Corn, as Wheat, how kept, 162 — Of *Persia*, 308,— Several Sorts in *Ceilon*, 455 — In *Siam*, (468)
Coronation, Ceremonies thereof in *Persia*, 91
Cosos, a Creature that feeds on Fruit, 146
Costus Indicus, a Plant, 142
Cotton, 312—332 — In *Ceilon*, 461
Council of *Trent*, 650
Cow, adored, 362
Crane Hunting, 76
Crim Tartar's Ambassie to *Musco*, 7 — Audience, Presents, 87
Crocodile, 30 Foot long, with a Woman in its Belly, 115—358 — Very large, 387 428—818
Cubeb, a Tree, 142
Curiosities about *Surat*, 350 — At *Grand Cairo*, 422
Customs paid for Goods at *Goa*, 133 — At *Ballara*, 313 — At *Surat*, 349
Cyrus and *Araxes*, their Conflux, 62
Czar, the Signification of the Word, 26
Czar of *Muscovy*. his Arms, 26 — His Absolute Power — How Ambassadors are treated, &c. 26 — His Letters to the D. of *Holstein*, 28, 29 — His Coronation, with the Ceremonies, &c. thereat, 30 — His Revenue, — Expences, — Courts of Justice, &c. 32 — His Country, Government, Religion, Greatness, &c. described by Lord *Carlisle*, 178, 179, 180, 181 — His Commissioner's Answer to Lord *Carlisle*'s Memorial, 191, 192, 193
Czar of *Muscovy*, An. 1697, comes *incognito* thro' divers Parts of *Europe*, 226, 227, 228, — Comes from *Musco* to *Plescow*; thence thro' *Livonia*, *Courland*, *Samogitia*, &c. Arrives at *Koningsberg*; thence to *Berlin*, 226 — Comes to *Amsterdam*, — Lives privately at *Sardam*, Ib. — Comes to *Utrecht*, and has an Interview with King *William*, — His splendid Reception at the *Hague*, &c. 226 — His Arrival in *England*, — Entertainment there, — Returns back to *Musco* through *Germany*, &c. 228

D

Dardanel Castles not very strong, 263
Darius, where slain by *Bessus*, 326
Dalai Lama, or Patriarch of the *Tartars*, is *Prester John*, 254
Dampier (Capt. *William*) his Voyages round the World, 865 — Joins the *Buccaniers*, Ib. — Crosses the Isthmus of *Darien*, — Comes into the South Sea, *Ib.* — Journey over the Isthmus of *Darien*, 866 — Comes to the North Sea, 867 — His Voyage to the Island *John Fernando*, in the South Sea, &c. 872 — Description of the Isle *Plata*. — Of *Peru*, &c. 878 — Of the Coast to the West of the Bay of *Panama*, &c. 885,— His Voyage to the *East-Indies*, 891 — His Voyage to the Bay of *Campechy*, and adjacent Parts, 897 — To *North Holland*, &c. 904
Darien, a particular Account of all the Enterprizes there, 834
David's Well, 440
Deluge of *Ducalion*, 510
Demetrius, an Impostor, made Czar of *Musco*, — Is kill'd, 27
Dervizes, their Humour, &c. 345

The INDEX.

Desart, for Ten Days Journey, wherein is vast Mountains of Ice, 232
Desart of *Astrachan*, 111
Description of *Indostan*, 119
— Of *Cambaya*, 116
— Of *Agria*, 117
— Of *Goa*, 131
— Of *Cape Verde*, 160
— Of *Grand Cairo*, 421
— Of *Jerusalem*, 438
— Of *Larissa* and *Thessaly*, 508
— Of *Rome*, with all its Rarities, 579
— Of St. *Macarius*, and the Monastries in it, 427
— Of *Arabia*; a Tempest there, 432 — The Beasts, Birds, &c. there, 433
Deys of *Tunis*, 448
Diadem of *Charlemain*, 646
Diamonds, where found, 143
— Mines, 361—373—374
Dillander (*George*) his Travels, 103
Dionysius's Ear; a Grotto, 579
Diversions of the *English* at *Suratte*, 119
Dog-fishes, or Sea-hounds, 49
Dogs draw Sledges, 231
Dolorous Way, 436
Don John of *Austria* his Death and Character, 761
Donnonville (Marquis) his Expedition against the *Iroquoise*, 917
Dragon's-Blood; a Gum, 155
Drake-Hunting, 76
Drinks in *Siam*, called *Tari* and *Nari*, (471)
Dromodaries and Camels, where they differ, 432
Drugs of *Java*, 142 — Of the Isle *Baily*, 143 — Of other Parts of *E. India*, 373
Drunkenness; a Punishment for it, 383
Du Mont his Travels into the *Levant*, 394
Durianos; a Fruit, 142
Dutch establish themselves at *Ceylon*, 134 — Settlement in *Siam*, 138 — At *Java*, 142 — Take *Amboyna*, 144 — Their Forts at *Banda*, 144 — Settlement at *Japan*, 148 — At *Formosa*, 149 — Settlement at *Mina*, 159 — Factory in *Golconda*, 362 — Account of their Affairs from time to time in *Ceylon*, 454 — Their Manners and Customs in *Holland*, 551
Dyal, a very curious One, 715

E

Eagles Stones, 430
Easter, how observed by the *Muscovites*, 201
East-India Company at *Amsterdam*, 708
Ebony, the best Sort, 153
Eclipse; the Idolaters Superstition at it, 379 — Peoples Practice thereat, 381
Education of Children in *Persia*, 89 — Among the *Mahometans*, 125 — In *Siam*, 138 — Among the *Japonese*, 148 — In *Persia*, 337
Egyptians, their Customs, Manners, Religion, Apparel, Language, &c. 429 — Their Punishments, Medicines, &c. 430, 431
Elephants how taken and tamed, 362 — Teeth; how long they live, 363 — Washing them, 363—376—385—388 — Scared by Fire-works, 391 — How taken, tamed, &c. in *Ceylon*, 458 — (467) — In *Siam* (472)
St. *Elias*'s Mount, 417 — Stone, 433
Elisha's Well, 439
Embalmed Birds, *Ibid.*
Embalming, 426
Embassie from the Czar of *Muscovy* over Land into *China*, by *Everard Isbrand*, An. 1693, 94 and 95. Written by *Adam Brand*, Secretary to the Embassie, 229 — Their Arrival at *Pekin* in *China*, with the Description of their Entry, 235 — The Presents made them, &c. 236 — Their Return back to *Muscow*, 236, 237 — From *Crim Tartars*, 533
Emeralds, 374
Emmets Nests, 387
Emperor of *China* his Court described, &c. (488) — Of *Germany*, his Character, &c. by Dr. *Brown*, 531
English Gentlewoman, her Constancy to her Religion, 35 — Factory in *East-India*, 362
St. *Ephrim*'s Tree, and the dry Sea, 427
Epitaph on *S. Paula*, by *S. Jerome*, 440 — Of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, 664 — Of Note at *Naples*, 666
Eruptions of Fire, 418
Escurial described, 767
D'Estrees, Admiral of the *French* Fleet in the *West-Indies*; beaten by *Binks*, Admiral — of the *Dutch*, 833
Ethiopians, their Manners, Customs, Religion, Food, &c. 431, 432
Eunuch falls in Love with a Maid, 369
Excrements of the King of *Boutan* dry'd and taken as Snuff, 386
Exercises and Recreations in *Muscovy*, 180

F

Fable of *Lockman*, 69
Faquirs of Three Sorts, 376 — Their Original, 377
Feast to a Serpent, 379 — At the Death of the Chief *Bramin*, 380 — In Memory of *Adam*, Ib. — At *Jaganate*, 381 — Of *Houli*, 384
Fenugreek sow'd like Lentills, and used to feed Horses with, 55
Ferry-Boats, an odd kind, 246
Fertility of the Province of *Schiruan*, 54 — Their Houses, &c. 55
Field Mice, 110
Fighting of wild Beasts, 779
Fiery Furnace, the Annual thereof in *Muscovy*, 184
Fire Worshippers, 324
Fish of several Sorts in *Ceylon*, 460 — The Way to catch them, *Ibid.* — Tame, *Ibid.* — In *China*, (496) (510) — Of several Kinds in the *Danube*, 502—533 — In *Italy*, 694
Fishing, a peculiar Way, 42 — In *China*, 151 — In *Siam* (476)
Flea's, how destroyed in *Ceylon*, 456
Flesh of Colts and Dogs, chief Rarities in *Tanquin*, 391
Florentines, their Manners, Customs, &c. 611
Flowers of divers Kinds in *Ceylon*, 457
Foedor Borissowitz, Czar of *Muscovy*, 27
Foedor Juanowitz, Gr. Duke of *Muscovy*, 26
Font wherein St. *John* baptized, 415
Food in *Siam*, (470)
Foot Posts, very quick, 563
Forest of the *Bokovines*, 262
Fountain of Lovers, 422 — Sealed, 440 — — Of St. *Paul*, 444 — That boils, 591 — Fountains in *Spain*, 760
Fowling in *Egypt*, 429
Franks, their Consuls, &c. 430
Fruits of several Kinds, 155 — In the *Mogul*'s Country, 383 — Of *Siam*, 389 — In *Ceylon*, 455 — In *Siam*, (466) — Of *China*, (493) — Called *Carobba*, 664 — In *Italy*, 694 — Of *Hispaniola*, 818
Funerals at *Jagin*, in *E. India*, 150 — Of the *Chinese*, 152 — Pomp of the Kings of *Tunquin*, 392 — In *Siam*, (483)

G

Galanga, a Plant, 142
Gallichin (Prince) his History, 214, 215, 216, &c.
Galls, where and how they grow, 306
Gardening. See Husbandry.
Garden of *Schach-Bagg*, 115 — *Tschilberg*, 117 — A very curious One, 315 — Of *Eczar-Dgerib*, 329 — Of the Princess at *Surat*, 351 — On Roofs of Houses, 360 Of Lovers, 422
Gardens in *China*, (502) — Of *Rodolphus* the 2d, 532 — Of *Ferneses*, 621 — Of *Montalto*, 623 — Of *Valmanara*, 652 — Of *Cicero*, 664 — Of *D'Este*, 676 — In the Air, 692 — Of Mr. *Bodovini*, 695 — Of *Arscot*, 714 — Of *Lewis* the 14th, 723
Gaures, People that adore the Fire, 307
Geese and Cormorants very large, 49
Genoese, their Customs, Manners, Government, &c. 604
Gentiles in *India*, 377
Geoghy *Bramans* their Belief, &c. 124
Geography in *India*, 382
St. *George* Fort in the *E. Indies*, where the *English* chief Factory is, 362
Georgians, their Religion, Habit, Trade, Houses, &c. 323
A *German* living among the *Tartars*, 108
Ginger, 142, 372
Ginseng, a Plant, (467)
Glew how made in *Ceylon*, 478
Glow Worms, 818
Goats for Carriage, 386
Goddess of Stone 128 Foot high, with 700 Hands, 235, — Ram — Ram, 379
Gog and *Magog*, 445
Golden Calf cast, 434
— Bull of the Emp. *Ch.* 5. 554, 644
Gold in *Japan* and *China*, 375
Golden Rivulet, 812
Gondalos at *Venice*, 634
Grand Seignior his Way of Eating, Cloaths, &c. 402 — His going Abroad for his Pleasure, 409 — Ministers of State, 410 Courts of Justice, 411 — Force by Sea and Land, *Ibid.*
Grand Seignior's Seraglio described by Monsr. *Thevenot*, M. *Tavernier*, Mr. *Wisher* and Mr. *Greaves*, 398, 399, &c.
Grapes of 60 sorts, 324
Grashoppers very large, 68
A great Draught, 117
Greek Christians, 302 — In *Turkey*; their Customs, Religion, &c. 413 — Marriages, &c. 414 — Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the Ceremonies used by him, &c. 430
Greenland described, the Inhabitants, their Language, Cloathing, Employments, Religion, &c. 20
Grotto's and Sepulchres, 421 — Where the Blessed Virgin lived, 426 — In *China* (500) — Of *Puzzoli*, 667 — Of the *Dogg* 667 — Of *Sibill*, 669
Guelph and *Gebeline* Factions, 686
Guns, where said first to be invented, 387
Guzaratte, the People; their Expertness in Shooting, Learning, Diseases, Commerce, Weights, Measures, Coins, &c. 127, 128

H

Habitations under Ground, 507
Habits in *Muscovy*, 179
— Of the *Circassian Tartars*, 319
— Of the *Turkish* Women, 506 — Of *Bulgarian* Women 507
Haly's pretended Miracle, 103 — Where he lived, 312
Han, the finest, 446
Handicrafts in *India*, 377
Hannibal's Tomb, 302
Hantan (Baron *La*) his Voyage to North *America*, *Newfoundland*, &c. 915 — His Expedition against the *Iroquoise*, 918 — Journal of his Voyage from *Missilimakinac* to the *Long River*, 919 — His Account of the *English* Expedition against *Quebec*, 921 — His Departure from *Newfoundland*, Arrival in *Portugal*, &c. and at last in *England*, 923 — His Description of the Manners, Customs, Diseases, &c. of the Savages, 924 — Of the Beasts, Birds, Fishes, &c. in North *America*, 925 — Of the Interest of the *French* and *English* in North *America*, 927
Hennepin (*Lewis*) his Description of North *America*, 906 — His Observations on the Manners of the Inhabitants, 913
Herbs of divers sorts in *Ceylon*, 457
Herod's Palace, 436
Hippopotamus, or Sea-Horse; described, 428
History of Prince *Palagy*, 69 — Of the Kings of *Persia*, 92, 93, 94, 95, &c. — Of *Karib*, 102 — Of Prince *Gallichin*, 214, 215, 216, 217, &c. — By Father *Avarel*, 261 — Of Princess *Sophia*, Sister to the present Czar of *Muscovy*, 220, 221, &c. — Of Count *Syri*, 259 — Of the King of *Iveta* and *Mengrelia*, 260 — Tragical Account of a Gentleman of *Brabant*, 261 — Of *Mizzo Morto*, 263 — Of *Morat Bache*, 353 — Of *Febcarguir*, — Of Sultan *Couron*, — Of *Cha-Jehan*, 364, 365 — Of *Emir-Imla*, — Of Sultan *Sujah*, — Of *Auren-Zeb*, 365 Of *Morad-Bache*, — Of *Soliman Checon*, 365 — Of *Dara-Cha*, — Of *Raja-Jesseine* and *Dely-Kan*, 366 — Of Sultans *Sujah* and *Mahmoud*, 367 — Of *Gion-Kan*, 368 — Of *Cha-Hest Kan*, 370 — Of Sultan *Mazum*, 371 — Of *Mahabet Kan*, 371 — Of *Seva Gi*, Ib. — Of *Andromeda*, 441 — Of the Rebellion in *Ceylon*, 467 — Of a Merchant and his Slave, 480 — Of *Ranuncius*, Prince of *Parma*, 674 — Of *Christiana*, Queen of *Sweden*, 739 — Of King *Philip* the 4th, 740 — Of Two *Jews*, 743 — Of a sad Accident at a Bull-Feast, 754 — Of *Piere le Grand*, a Buccanier, 820 — Of *Peter Francus*, another, *Ib.* — Of *Bartholomew* the *Portuguese*, another, *Ib.* — Of *Fran. Lolonois*, another, 821 — Of Capt *Mor-*

Morgan, the famous *Buccanier*, 824 — Of Monſ. *Ogeron*, Governour of *Tortuga*, 833 — Of Mr. *Primroſe*, another of the Buccaniers, 835 — Of Capt. *Watlin*, another Buccanier, 841.
Holland deſcribed, 640
Horſe-man without Hands or Feet, 68
Horſes very good in *Tartary*, 319 — In *Perſia*, 339 — The Elector of *Saxony*'s at *Dreſden*, 536
Hoſpital at *Goa*, 131 — For Beaſts, 354 — Of moſt Nations at *Goa*, 613
Houſes in *Muſcovy*, 179 — Of *Caiphas*, 441 — Of *Annas*, Ib. — Of St. *Mark*, Ib. — Of *Zebedee*, Ib. — Of *Simon* the Tanner, *Ib.* — Of *Joſeph*, 442 — Of the *Teſterdar*, 444 — Of *Annanias*, Ib. — Of the *Siameſe*, (470) And Buildings in *China*, (488) — In *Turkey*, 510 — Where K. *Charles* the IId reſided in his Exile, 719
Humour and Diſpoſition of the *Muſcovites*, 179
Hungary deſcribed, 501
Huſbands can ſell there Wives and Children (474)
Huſbandry in *Ceylon*, 478 — In *Siam* (469) — In *Bologna*, 563

I

JAca, a Fruit, 142
Jacob's Tower, 440
Javans, their Marriages, Qualifications, Slaves, &c. 141
Ice in Summer, 383
Idolaters in *India*, their Tribes, &c. 376 — Print of a Man's Foot worſhipped, 454 (465)
Idols of divers ſorts, 235 — Of Clay richly gilt, 236 — How worſhipped, 359 — Ram, 362, 379, 387 — *Reſora*, 378, 379, 383, 384, 388, 392, 426 — *Buddon* in *Ceylon*, 471 — In *Siam*, (470)
Jeruſalem deſcribed, 438 — Marks, and how to make them, 440
Jeſuits, 500 have been loſt going to *China*, 244
Jewel of an ineſtimable Price, 361
Jews of *Goa*, 133 — A *Jew* his Courage — Subjects to the Grand Seignior, 412 — Their Habits, 423 — In *Egypt*, 430 — *Jews* Mountain, 432 — Of *Amſterdam*, 523 — Of *Vienna*, 534 — Of *Prague*, 535 — At *Rome*, 680 — Of *Amſterdam*, 708
Image of our Lady of *Loretto*, 660 — 688
Images graven on a Mountain, 316 — In the *Lutheran* Church, 713
Imperial Chamber, 554
Indian Fig, 140 — Swans, Dogs, &c. 808
Indian Fig-Tree, 117 — Women burnt voluntarily — How this Cuſtom was introduced, 116, 663.
Indian Ambaſſador at *Iſpahan*, his Quarrel with D. of *Holſtein*'s Ambaſſador, 72
Indian Dancing-Women, handſome and well ſhaped, — Their Habit, &c. 75
Indico, how made, &c. 127, 353 — Of ſeveral ſorts, 373
Indoſtans, 126. See *Mogul*.
Ink, how made in *China* (504)
Indou's and *Fenitves*, a Sect of Pagans, 125
Inſcription of Chriſt's Croſs, 437
Inſects in *Siam*, (468) — In *China*, (524) — The Flying Glow-Worm, 731 — In *Eliſpaniola*, 819
Inſtructions to a Traveller, 702
Inſurrection at *Muſco*, 28, 31 — At *Pleſcow*, 31
St. *John*'s Body, and Grotto, 417 — Church, 420
Jonas's Burying-Place, 311
Journey out of *Poland* into *Muſcovy*, with a Relation of the Expeditions of the *Muſcovites* againſt the *Crim Tartars*, the Tumults that were chiefly managed by the Princeſs *Sophia*, Siſter to the preſent Czar, 213 — From *Vienna* in *Auſtria*, to *Larriſſa* in *Theſſaly*, 502 — From *Vienna* to the Mines at *Idria*, and remarkable Places of the *Alps*, 518 — From *Norwich* to *Cologn*, 522 — From *Cologn* to *Vienna*, 526 — From *Vienna* to *Hamborough*, 534 — From *Cologn* in *Germany* to *London*, 538 — From *Venice* to *Genoua*, 541 — Thro' the *Low Countries*, *Germany*, *Italy* and *France*, 547 — From *Liſbon* to *Madrid*, 766 — From *Madrid* to *Genoua*, 769 — From *Aleppo* to *Jeruſalem*, by Mr. *Manderell*, 788 — Over the Iſthmus of *Darien*, 866
Joſeph's Well, Hall, Dungeon, &c. 322 — Granary, 425
Iron how made in *Ceylon*, 478 — Turn'd into Copper, 515
Iſland ſtarted out of the Sea, 162
Iſpahan, c. Curioſities there to be ſeen, 79, 80, 81
Italians, their Manners and Cuſtoms, 583 — Their Vices, Diet, &c. 584 — Their Cuſtoms, Manners, &c. by Mr. *Laſſells*, 599—694
Italy deſcribed, in a Voyage thither, 602

K

KIeks in *Perſia*, their Habits, &c. 102
King of *Perſia* hunts with the Court Ladies, — Is profuſe in his Debauches, 77 — Preſents to the D. of *Holſtein*'s Ambaſſadors, 78 — Of *France*, Letter to the K. of *China*, 259
Kings of *Perſia*, their Power and Government, — A Hiſtory of them, — Their Revenues, — Great Officers of State, Military and Civil, with other Things relating thereto, by Mr. *Tavernier*, from 327, to 339 — Of *Delhy* of *Agra*, 356 — Of *Golconda* his Revenues, Riches, Equipage, &c. 361 — Of *Boutan* adored, — His Excrements dried, and taken as Snuff, — Of *Siam*, 388 — Of *Tunquin*, 390 — Of *Ceylon*, — An Account of their Government, Policy, &c. 462 — Diverſions, Religion, Cruelty, &c. 464 — Revenues, Officers, &c. 465
Knights of *Malta*, 442
Knox (Capt.) his Hiſtory of *Ceylon*, 450 — Voyage thither, *Ib.* — Made Captive, *Ib.* His Father dies, 451 — His Burial, *Ibid.* — He obtains a Bible to his great Comfort, *Ib.* — His Traffick in the Country, and Way of Living during his Captivity, *Ib.* — Makes his Eſcape to the *Dutch* Factories, — Returns Home, and is made a Captain, 450, 451
Kurban, or Sacrifices of the *Perſians*, 63

L

LAcque, a Red Gum, 113
Lady's Travels into *Spain*, in 1700, 733. Lake of *Zirchnitz*, 519 — Of *Newſider*, 533
Lamb, a Gourd, 18
Lambechius (*Petr.*) his Deſcription of the Imperial Library, 504
Language of *Perſia*, 89 — Of the *Muſcovites*, 179 — Of the *Turks*, 405 — Books, Characters, &c. of the *Chineſe*, (502) — Of the *Hungarians*, 503 — Of the *Malteſe*, 572 — *Walloons*, 717
Lantor, a Tree, 142
Lapis Lazuli, 375
Laſſell's Voyage to *Italy*, 599—613
Laudanum, how made, 418
Leather of *Ruſſia*, where beſt dreſt, 229 — Blue *Turkey*, where the Beſt made, 202
Le Brun his Travels into the *Levant*, 394 — Journey from *Smyrna* to *Epheſus*, 415
Leeches in *Ceylon*, 459
Leopards, 76
Letter of the King of *France* to the Emperor of *China*, 260
Ley to whiten Silk, 387
Library, the Imperial one, 531 — Of *Lazaretto*, 605 — At *Florence*, 607 — At *Sienna*, 611 — At *Rome*, 613 — Of *Raphael*, 617 — Of the Dukes of *Urbin* and *Heidelberg*, 616 — Of the *Vatican*, Ibid. — Library, called, *Bibliotheca Angelica*, 627 — At *Nuremberg*, 646 — At *Munich*, 648 — Of the *Vatican*, 673—775 Of St. *Lawrence*, 687 — Of St. *Ambroſe*, 691, 770 — Of *Geneva*, 697 — At *Leiden*, 707 — At *Utrecht*, 709 — Of the preſent *French* King, 724 — At *Madrid*, 762—769
Lime, how made in *Ceylon*, 479
Linnen called *Ornis*, 352
Liquoriſh in great Plenty, 45
Litharge, 514
Living, their Manner of it, in *Muſcovy*, 180
Livonia deſcribed, with their Manners, Cuſtoms, &c. 11 — Their Nobility, Government, &c. 12 — By Lord *Carliſle*, 204
Loadſtone, Declenſion of it, 157 — Where found, (467)
Lobier's Hiſtory of *Siam*, [465]
Locuſts, 309, 436
Louvre deſcribed, 722

M

MAce, 144
Magick practiſed in *Ceylon*, 482
Mahomet and *Sergius*, 405
Mahomet a Camel-driver, 434
Mahometan Baths, Feaſts, &c. 120
Mahometaniſm overſpreads the *Indies*, 376
Mahometans in *India*, their Marriage-Ceremonies, Divorces, Education of Children, Burials, Stature and Complection, Cloaths, Houſes, Handicrafts, &c. 125, 126
Mahometans in *Turkey*, their Religion, Funerals, &c. 312 — In *Perſia* ſeveral Sects of them; their Religion, Feſtivals, Marriages, &c. 330, 331
Malabars, 133 — Emperor of them, 134
Mamalucks deſtroyed, 421
Mandarins (479), (497)
Manderell his Journey from *Aleppo* to *Jeruſalem*, being a Supplement to Mr. *Sandy*'s Travels, 788
Mandelſloe's Travels into the *Eaſt-Indies*, 115 — His Indiſpoſition, 116 — In great Danger, 120 — Returns back through *England* into his own Country, 176
Maneſius, a *Scotch* Man, a Major-General of great Repute in *Muſcovy*, 214
Mangoes, how pickled, &c. 141
Mangoſtan, a Fruit, 142
Marriages in *Perſia*, 89 — Among the *Japoneſe*, 148 — At *Tugin* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, 150 — Of the *Chineſe*, 152 — Of the *Georgians*, 322 — Of the *Perſians*, 323 — In *India* very early, 385 — In *Siam*, 389 — In *Turkey*, 408 — Of the *Greeks*, 414 — Of the *Arabians*, 434 — In *Ceylon*, 470 — In *China* (516) — At *Venice*, 656
Marchaſite, 514
Market for Silks, 303
Maronites, their Religion, &c. 312
Martins how taken, 384
Maſtick, the beſt, and its Uſe — Trees, 416 — Forms, 416
Maurice Iſland 153
Maxims of Government in *Muſcovy*, 180, 181
Meaſures in *Ceylon* 479 — In *Siam* (476)
Medicinal Waters, 67
Melons in *Muſcovy* 18
Memphis 426
Merchandize carried from *Smyrna*, 306 — At *Surat* 350 — Brought out of the Dominions of the Great *Mogul*; As alſo out of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, *Vaſapour*, and other Parts of *India* 373 — Of *Siam* 389 — The divers Kinds in *Ceylon* 461 — In *Siam* (473) — In *China* (498) — Of *Bologna* 606 — At *Ausburg* 648 — In *Spain* 749 — Of *Sweden* 780
Michael Federovitz choſen Gr. Duke of *Muſcovy* 28
Mineral Springs 539—555
Mines of Gold and Silver 134 — At *Japan* 148 — Of Gold in *Congo* 159 — In the Kingdom of *Boutan* 386, 387 — Of Gold in *Siam* (467) — In *Hungary* 513 — Their Way of Smelting, &c. the Oar 517 — Of Quickſilver 516 — Of Vitriol, *Ib.* — Of Salt 517 — Of Quickſilver at *Idria*, with the Working them 520 — Of Lead 521 — Of Silver in *Hungary* 534 — Of *Aken* and *Limburg* 539 — Of *Lapis Calaminaris* 553
Mingrelians, their Religion, Marriages, and other Rites and Cuſtoms 320
Moguls 126 — An Account of the Empire of *Indoſtan*, with the *Mogul*'s Court, and Wars, 364 — Their Religion, — The Greatneſs of their *Reja's* and *Omrahs*, &c. 372 — Their Armies, Militia, &c. *Ibid.*
Mogul worſhips the Sun, 117 — His Seraglio, Treaſure, Chief Officers, Revenue, Arms, Artillery, Martial Diſcipline, Encampments, Retinue, 118 — Change his Reſidence with the Seaſon, — Birth-day, Diverſiſements, 119

Moluque Islands, properly but Five, *viz. Ternate, Tidar, Mobel, Machian*, and *Bathia*, 144
Monastry of St. *John* the Little, *&c.* 427 — Of S. *Saviour* at *Jerusalem*, 438 — Of *Georgians*, 439
Moneys of *Decam*, 130 — Of *Goa*, 133 — Of the Town of *India*, 138 — Of *Japan*, 148 — Of *Congo*, 160 — In *Turkey*, 302 — Of *Persia*, 307 — Of *India*, 349 — In the *Mogul*'s Country, 361 — Of *Siam*, 387 — Of *Egypt*, 431 — Of *Ethiopia*, 432 — Of *Ceilon*, 479 — Of *China*, (516).
Mongul Tartars, 232 — Their Religion and Customs, 234—254
Monkeys, divers Kinds, 459 — (468)
Monstruous Elephant, 70
Moonsons, or Seasons of Sailing, 349
Morals of the *Chinese*, (513)
Moses and *Mahomet*'s Commandment, 406
Moses Well, 432 — Mountain, 433
Mount *Horeb*, 434 — Of *Scandall*, 441 — *Sion*, Ib. — *Carmel*, 441 — *Hermon*, 442 — *Tabor*, 443 — *Gezerem*, Ib. — *Libanus*, 446 — *Luibell*, 519 — Cinder Mountain, 568 — *Solfasara*, Ib. — *Vesuvius*, Ib. 669. *Paufilipus*, Ib. 667 — *Sampion*, 602 — *Cenis*, Ib. — *Appennines*, 606 — Of *Portheards*, 676
Mountain of the *Cossacks*, 43 — *Appennines*, 546
Mountebanks, their strange Tricks, 353
Mourning-Day Tree in *Achim*, 139
Mummies, or embalm'd Bodies, 425, 426
Musco, t. described, 16 — Insurrection against the *Poles* there, 28 — Another Insurrection there, in 1636, p. 31
Muscovy, Dm. described, 17 — Air wholesom about *Musco*; cold in *Winter* and hot in *Summer*: Its Fertility, Harvest, Fruits, Flowers, Plants, *&c.* 18 — Its Fowl, Fish, Deer, *&c.* 19 — Revolution there, 26 — By E. of *Carlisle*, 178 — The present State of it, in a Letter, written by a Person of Quality, Native of *Germany*, 223—375—386
Muscovites, their Anniversary Ceremonies, 2 — Their Processions, 3 — New-Year's-Day, 6 — Festivals, 7 — Their Gr. Duke's Pilgrimage, *Ib.* — Another Procession, *Ib.* The *Czar*'s Cruelties, 13 — Their Idol *Perun*, Ib. — Procession on *Palm Sunday*, 14 — Their *Easter*, 14 — Their Stature, Women, Habit, Way of Living, Temper, *&c.* 21,22 — Slavery; Soldiery good to defend a Town, but not in the Field; House-keeping, Food, Drink, *&c.* 23 — Their Baths, Marriages, Diversions, Superstitions, Grievances, Money, *&c.* 24, 25, 26 — Their Tortures, Punishments, Religion, *&c.* 33 — Their Churches, Ecclesiastical Government, Prelates, Priests, Monastries, Fasts, Confessions, Burials, *&c.* 34,35,36,37,38,39 — See *Carlisle* his Embassie, 178 — Procession on *Palm-Sunday*, 201 — Their Ancient and Modern Religion, 238 — Have the Bible in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, which they make their Rule of Faith. — Believe the Roman Catholicks to be Hereticks. — *Lutheran* and *Calvinist* tolerated; their Priests, 239 — Excommunicate all that are not of their Opinion every *Holy Thursday*, 240 — Use Pilgrimages; their chief Feasts, 241 — Doctrine of the Trinity, Baptism, Holy Sacraments, Fasts, &c. 242,243 — Go and come from *Pekin* in Four Months, 256
Musqueto Flyes, 818
Mussulman, the Etymology of it, 97
Mute Language, 11

N

Nagaian Tartars, 249
Narborough (Sir *John*) his Voyage through the Streights of *Magalaine*, 801
Nartin, a Sect of Gentiles; their Abstinence, Patience, *&c.* 355, 356
Nations that inhabit near *China*, 254
Natives in the *Magalaine* Streights described, 809, 810
Natural Philosophy of the *Indians*, 382
Nayers, or Gentlemen of the Country, 133
Newstad his Observations on the present State of *Muscovy*, 213
Nile, the Source of it; the Cause of its Inundation, 369 — Its Cataracts, Flood, &c. 428,429 — Account of its Rise, by Monsieur *Thevenot*, 432
Nitre Works, 717
Noah's Burying-place, 303 — Wife, where buried, 304 — Vineyard, 323
Northleigh (Dr.) his Observations in divers Parts of *Europe*, 703
Nuns of St. *Dominick*, 418
Nutmegs, 144—373

O

Officers of the Grand Seignior, 309
Onocratulus, a Fowl, so called by *Pliny*, 49
Opalls, 374
Opera's at *Venice*, 656 — In *Spain*, 751
Opium how made, *&c.* 127—345
Organ that goes by Water, 631
Ostiaky, a People near the River *Oby*; their miserable Way of Living, *&c.* 231
Ostriges, their Eggs, *&c.* 429
Oysters 300 Weight, 141

P

Padars, they use a particular Dialect, composed of *Turkish* and *Persian*, 55—106—126
Pagod for the *Courtizans*, 353 — Of *Sanctidas*, 354 — With lascivious Pictures, 362—378, 379—384 — Very numerous, 388—393 — In *Siam*, (470)
Painting Earths, 312
Pala de Cuebra, a Tree, 142
Palace of the great Master of *Malta*, 395
Palm-Sunday Procession on that Day by the *Muscovites*, 201 —
Palm-Tree, 817
Palm Wine, 120—140—817
Pampus the Passage thereof, 708
Paper how made in *Siam* (466) — In *China* (503)
Parsis, a Sect of Pagans, their Belief, Way of Living, Burials, 124,125
Parthians, their Original, 325
Particular Account of the *Turks* and *Persians* Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, 63,64
Passage into *China* by Land; described by a *Bokara* Merchant, 249 — An Account of it by the K. of *Poland*, 258
Patans. See *Padars*.
Peace made between the *Poles* and *Muscovites*, An. 1686, and the Particulars of it, 216
Pearl-Fishing, 118 — At *Baharen*, 314 — In the *Persian* Gulf, *&c.* 374 — (524) — Pearls the fineft in the World, 374 — — Bred in Oisters, 374—461
Pease Field, 440
Persians, their Justice, Monies, 339, 340 — Customs and Habits, Astrology, Divinations, *&c.* 340 — Their Apparel; the Womens Habits, 341 — Their Reckoning of Time, Months; Manufactures, 241,242,243 — Their Diseases, Burials, Monuments, Opinions of a Future State, &c. 343,344 — All writ by Mr. *Tavernier*.
Peguans, their Religion, odd Customs, Forces, Idols, Arms, *&c.* 136
Penguins in vast Numbers, 803
Pepper how cultivated, 140—473 — In *Ceylon*, 461 — In *Siam* (466)
Persian Characters, 90 — Poets, *Ib.* — Law and Physick, Astronomy, Astrology, Lunar and Solar Years, Political Constitutions, *&c.* 90,91 — History of their Kings, 92,93,94, *&c.* — Saints, 97 — Their odd Opinions; dedicate their Children to Saints; their Lent, Interments, *&c.* 98, 99
Persian Army all Horse; their Military Officers; the *Schach*'s Revenue; his Officers Military and Civil, 96, 97 — Horses much valued in *India*, 118
Persian Ambassador comes to *Astrachan*; Purchases a Wife; 111
Persia described by Mr. *Tavernier*, what Countries it contains, Air, Fruits, Beasts, 327, 328
Persians, some odd Customs, Feasts, Fireworks; their Interment of *Hossein*; Bloody Devotion, *&c.* 64, 65 — Their Women travel in Chests, 69 — Silver Pails to water Horses with; Golden Vessels, Musick, Festival of St. *Austin*, 73,74 — Money, 81 — Their Stature, Habit, &c. paint their Hands and Nails, 84, 85 — Womens Apparel; their Neatness, Ingenuity, Friendship, Modesty; addicted to Venery, Sodomy, and Polygamy; their House-keeping, Food, use of Tobacco, Coffee, Thea, 86,87,88 — Superstitious Cures, 100
Persia, the Climate, Soil, Distempers, Manufactures, Domestick Creatures, as Goats, Bouffiers, Camels, (but few or no Hogs, abhorring that Flesh) 82, 83 — Horses, Mules, Asses, Fruits, Silk, Salt, Iron, *&c* 84 85
Ancient *Persians* and *Indians*, their perpetual Fire, 61
Persian College and School for Children, 58, 59
Persian Prelates Dress, 59 — Feast in Memory of *Ealy*, with the Procession, *Ib.* 60 — Sepulchers of Saints, 61 — *Kurban*, or Sacrifice, 63
Persia, the Custom there not to come empty handed before Persons of Quality, 47.
A *Persian* Treat, 54.
Persian Ruptzi, 44 — Visits the D. of *Holstein*'s Ambassador, 48 — His Feast, *Ib.*
Persian Lord, an Executioner, 77
Persian Eunuch visits the Ambassadors, 450
Persians, their Superstition, 56 — And *Turks* Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, 63
Perun, an Idol, 13
Pestiferous Dew, 695
Petreus his Description of the *Caspian* Sea, in his History of *Muscovy*, 52
Petrified Shells, 557—573
Pharoah's Tomb, 425 — Bath, 433
Physical Learning of the *Indians*, 382 — At *Tunquin*, 390 — Of the *Turks*, 405 — In *Ceylon*, 457—483 — In *Siam*, (474) — In *China*, (508)
Pidgeon Hunting, 77 — Sent with Letters to *Aleppo*, 245—308—(471)
Pillar of Flagellation, 437 — Of Exprobration, *Ib.* — Called *Milliarium*, 681
Pirates of *Malabar*, 359
Plants between *Cologne* and *Mayence*, 553 — About *Genoa* and *Piedmont*, 565 — About *Legborn*, 567 — About *Naples*, 588 — About *Messina*, 569 — About *Punto Cerciola*, 570 — About *Salerno*, 574 — About *Florence*, 576 — About *Geneva*, 587 — Of *Italy*, 695 — About *Coblentz*, 716 — In *Piedmont*, 731 — In the Streights of *Megalaine*, 804
Pleskow, an Insurrection there, 31
Poetry admired by the *Persians*, 90
Polish Ambassador's Entrance, *&c.* into *Musco*, 15
A *Polish* and *Persian* Ambassador, 48 — 100
A *Polish* Ambassador kill'd, 107
Polish Ambassador to *Muscovy* goes from *Warsaw* to *Smolensko*, 213 — Passage from thence to *Musco*, 214
St. *Polycarp* his Martyrdom and Tomb 415
Polygamy, 86 — Ill Consequences of it, 88 — Allowed in *Turkey*, 408 — In *Siam*, (474)
Pompey's Pillar, 404—421
Pool of *Siloam*, 441
Porcupine Stone, 375
Portæ Caspiæ, or *Ferriæ* (mention'd in ancient *Gr. Lat.* Historians) their Ruines, 56

Portugueſe conquer *Ormus*; an Account of that Matter, and of that Iſland, 118 — Their Cuſtoms, Manners, &c. at *Goa*, 132, 133 — Poſſeſs themſelves of *Ceylon*, and make their Kings Tributary, 134 — Account of their Affairs in *Ceylon*, 453 — Their Manners, Cuſtoms, Habits, &c. 763
Precious Stones, as Diamonds, &c. where found, 373, 374 — Coloured Stones, *Ib.* Opals, Rubies, Torquoiſes, Emeralds, Pearls, &c. 374 — Of divers kinds in *Ceylon*, 461 — In *Siam*, (467)
Preſents to the *Czar* of *Muſcovy* from D. of *Holſtein*, 4
Prieſts called *Bonze*, 388 — Of divers ſorts in *Ceylon*, 472
Printing in *China* (503) — Where invented, 641—707 — Houſe of *Plantin*, 713
Pumice-Stones, 695
Puniſhments in *Muſcovy*, 181 — At *Tunis*, 449 — In *Ceylon*, 463 — In *Siam* (478) — In *China*, (515)
Purcellain, or Earthen Ware in *China* (499)
Pyramidal Salt, 428
Pyramids of *Egypt*, 425—Of *Rhodaphe*, 426 — Of *Julius Cæſar*, 447

Q

R

Rainbows of the Moon, 385
Raiſins how made, 591
Ramazan, or Lent of the *Turks*, 406
Rarities purchaſed in the Holy Land, 439 — Seen at *Damaſcus*, 444 — The Emperors Collection of them, 532 — At *Dreſden* in *Saxony*, 535 — At *Florence*, 607 — Of Mr. *Vian*, 646 — At *Insburgh*, 649
Rarities of Count *Maſcardo*, 651 — Of *Naples*, 666 — Of *Puzzoli*, 668 — Of *Baja*, 669 — Of *Rome*, 675 — *Albano*, 679 — Of Mr. *Belloris*, 683 — Of *Kercher*, Ib. — Of Mr. *Van Uliets*, 704 — At *Voorburgh*, 705 — At *Tongeren*, 715 —Of *Lewis* the 14th, 723 — At *Dreſden*, 777
Reſpouts, a Sect of Idolaters in *India*, 377
Rats, divers kinds in *Ceylon*, 460
Rats Tower, 643
Rey (*John*) his Travels through divers Parts of *Europe*, 547
Rattle-Snake, 706
Relicks, 304
Religion of the *Kebbers*, 82 — Of the *Perſians*, 97—Different Opinions among the *Perſians*, firſt Riſe of it amongſt them, 97 — Of the *Peguans*, 136 — Of the *Siameſes*, 137 — Of the People of *Amboyna*, 144 — Of the People of *Tugin* in *E. India*, 150 — Of the *Chineſe*, 152 — Of the People at *Madagaſcar*, 156 — Of the People of *Muſcovy*, 181 — Of the *Wogultzoi*, a ſort of Pagans, ſubject to the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, 230 — Of the *Oſtiakys*, 231 — Of the *Tongueſeys*, 232 — Of the *Brutskors*, on the Frontiers of *China*, 232 — Ancient and Modern of the *Muſcovites*, 238 — Of the *Sabeans* or Chriſtians of St. *John*, 313 — Of the *Hordes*, or *Circaſſian Tartars*, 318, 319 — Of the *Mingrelians*, 320 — Of the *Georgians*, 322 —Of the *Perſians* and *Armenians*, 329, 330, 331, 333
Religions practiſed in the *Eaſt-Indies*, and what relates thereto, 376 — Of the *Bramins*, 378 — Of the People of *Boutan*, 386 — Of the People of *Siam*, 388 — In *Tonquin*, 392 — Religion of the *Turks*, 405 — Of the *Arabians*, 434 — Of the *Siameſe*, (483) — Of the *Chineſe*, 517 — Of the *Indians* of *Jaoban*, 823
Reſwick, the Palace there, 705
Revolutions in *Muſcovy*, 26
Rhenish Wine, the Staple of it, 704
Rhinoceros, 141
Ribiera (*John*) his Hiſtory of *Ceylon*, 450
Rice, the Beſt, 352—385 — The Huſbandry of it in *Ceylon*, 455 — In *Siam* (468)
Riſa, an Impoſtor, 69
Road from *Goa* to *Vaſapour*, 129 — The ſeveral that lead by Land to *China*, 253 — From *Paris* to *Conſtantinople*, 301 — From *Conſtantinople* to *Iſpahan*, by *Tavernier*, 301 — Of *Kars* in *Turkey*, the cheapeſt becauſe pays leaſt Cuſtom, 302 — From *Tauris* to *Ardevil*, 305 — By *Kan* and *Kachan*, 305 — From *Smyrna* to *Iſpahan*, 306 — From *Paris* to *Iſpahan*, thro' the Southern Part of *Turkey* and the Deſarts, 308
Road from *Aleppo* to *Iſpahan*, 309 — From *Paris* to *Iſpahan*, through *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, 310 — From *Paris* to *Ormus*, 311 — Other Roads from *Paris* to *Iſpahan*, 315 — Several others into *Perſia* and the *Indies*, 317 — By the *Black Sea*, and the Dangers of it, *Ib.* — From *Warſaw* to *Iſpahan*, 326 — From *Iſpahan* to *Moſco*, 326 — From *Iſpahan* to the *Eaſt-Indies*, 344 — Road through *Candahar* into the *Indies*, 347 — Road from *Surat* to *Agria*, 347—353 — From *Candahar* to *Agria*, 354 — From *Agra* to *Patna* and *Daca* in *Bengale*, 357 — From *Surat* to *Golconda*, *Maſlapatan*, *Gandicot*, &c. 359 — From *Patna* to *Boutan*, 385 — Road from *Grand Cairo* through the Deſarts of *Arabia* and the *Red Sea*, 432 — The Several through *Italy*, 600
A Robber made a *Chan*, 104 — And Pirates do much Miſchief, but are ſuppreſs'd by *Cha-Heſi-Chan*, 370
Robbery how puniſhed, (481)
Rock of Strife, 433
Rome, why ſtyled Holy, 613
Ronas, a Root uſed in Dying, 304
Roots of divers ſorts in *Ceylon*, 457
Rubard, 386
Rubies how ſold, and of what Value, 374
Ruins of *Perſepolis*, 115 — Of *Tadmor*, 447
Runick Characters, 34

S

Sables, from whence they come, the Beaſts how catch'd, 230, 231
Sacrifices to the Sea, 384
Sagu, a ſort of *Meale*, 145
Sailing Sledges, 256
St. *Anthony's* Convent, 13
Salt made of Herbs, 387 — Made of Rain-Water, 435 — How made in the *Mediterranean*, 591
Salt Veins near *Aſtracan*, 46 — Pits where 20000 Men are employ'd, 229—417 — A Plain of it, 306 — Pans, 778
Salt-Petre how made, &c. 127 — 373 — 385
Samaca a Fruit, 142
Samarab Bramans their Belief, &c. 123
Samojedes (*Anthropophagi*) their Habitations, Food, Cloathing, Stature, &c. 19 — People and Country deſcribed by Ld. *Carliſle*, 182
Sandal, a Tree, 142
Mr. *Sandy's* Travels through the Holy Land, 783
Saphirs, (467)
Salles (Monſ.) his Diſcoveries in *North America*, 911
Our Saviour, the Pillar where he was whipt 623 — The Holy Crib, &c. Ib.
Satins purfled, where beſt made, 305
Savoyards, their Cuſtoms, Manners, &c. 603
Schach Abbas, King of *Perſia*, his Wars againſt the *Turks* and *Tartars*, 92 — Extraordinary Severity; puts his Eldeſt Son to Death, 93 — *Babylon* taken by him; *Ormus* taken from the *Portugueſe*; he dies, 94
Schich Seffi's Feaſt of 40 Days, 66 — His Sepulchre; *Ib.*
Scorpions and other venomous Creatures, with the Remedy againſt them, 71 — Sting not mortal in *Italy*, 694
Seaſons of the Year (Three) at *Surat*, 119
Sea-Hogs, 153 — Wolves, 157 — Calves, 269 — Exeretments, 347 — Horſe. See *Hippopotamus*, — Lions, 841
Sea-Baptiſm among the *Dutch*, 816
Seal-Fiſh, 804
Seberians, their Cities, Manners, &c. deſcribed, 230
Sefi, K. of *Perſia*, his cruel Reign, 94 — Temerity; loves Wine; his Wives and Concubines; his Death, 95
Sepulchre of a *Perſian* Saint, 56 — Of the *Perſian* Kings, 67 — Of *Kaf*, 114 — Of an inceſtuous Father, 115 — Of St. *Xaviers*, 131 — Of *Shu Sefi*, 305 — Of *Sidi Fatima*, 305 —Of *Judge Michali*, the fineſt in the World, 357 — Of *Ecbar*, Ib. — Of the *Turkiſh* Emperors, 314 — Of our Saviour, 436 — Of *Nicodemus* and *Joſeph* of *Aramethea*, 438 — Of the Kings of *Jeruſalem*, 439 — And Houſe of *Lazarus*, Ib. — Of *Rachael*, 440 — In *Turkey*, 512 — Of *Theodorich*, King of the *Oſtrogoths*, 659 — Of *Agrippina*, 669 — Of *Virgil*, *Ib.* — Of *Sannazarey*, *Ib.* — Of our Saviour, 719 — Of *Charles*, D. of *Burgundy*, Ib. — Of *Philip* the 4th of *Spain*, 762 — Of the Kings of *Spain*, 768
Seraglio. See Grand Seignior.
— Of private Perſons, 403
Serpent-Stone, 375
Serpents very plenty on the Snaky Mountain, near *Aſtracan*, 49—110—115 — That guard a Magazine, 352—387 —Of divers kinds in *Ceylon*, 460 — Some of which are very poiſonous, *Ib.* 818
Sheep rid on, 357
Shells in Mountains far from the Sea, 56 — Money, 349
Shipping, the ſeveral kinds in *China*, (510)
Siameſe, their Cuſtoms, Habits, Manners, Religion, &c. 137, 138, 388 — From (465) to (486)
Silk of *Bengall*, 373
Simeon the Juſt his Houſe, 440
Simples, as the Herb *Eſula*, &c. of a vaſt Bigneſs, 49
Slaves burn themſelves with their Miſtreſſes, 380 — How uſed in the Plantation, 819
Sledges in *Muſcovy* deſcribed, 252
Snakes. See Serpent.
Snow, a Bridge of it, 246
Sodomy, 87
Soil, &c. of *China*, (493)
Solomon's Temple, 438 — Fiſh-Ponds, 440
Sophi, the Title of the Kings of *Perſia*, 91
Sophia, Princeſs) ſhe and her *Pariſians* ſeized at *Muſco*, 214 — Her Intreagues againſt the preſent *Czar*, 215
Spaniards, their Plays, 735 — Character of the People, *Ib.* — Deſcription of their Inns, *Ib.* — Tricks of their Inn-keepers, 737 — How their Widows mourn, *Ibid.* — Their Grandees, Habit, &c. 740 — Order of Knighthood, 741 — Great Officers, 742 — Inſolence of their Servants, *Ib.*
Spaniards, their Inns about *Madrid*, 742 — Habit and Cuſtoms of their Ladies, 743—745 — Their Humours, Cuſtoms, Entertainments, &c. 746 — Their Big-bellied Women very troubleſome, 747 — Their Lents, Meats, Diſcipline, Inquiſition, &c. 748 — Their Bull-feaſts, 752 — Their Land Gallies, Proceſſions, Holy Tragedies, &c. 754 — Their Jealouſie, Revenge, &c. 756 — Their Pride, &c. 758 — Way of Living, 759
Spateus his Obſervations of a Journey by Land, from *Muſcovy* into *China*, 213 — Settles a convenient Paſſage by Land, from *Muſcovy* to *China*, 223
Sphinx, 425
Spices of ſeveral kinds, 144, 145
Spiders of divers ſorts in *Ceylon*, ſome of which are very large, 460
Springs that turn Wood into Stone, &c. 162 — Of *Euphrates* and *Kars*, 303 — That cure the Biting of Serpents, 304—Their Origine, 571 — Of *Petrolium*, 591 — One inverted, 751 — Of Chalibeat Waters in the Middle of a River, 717
Sports uſed, 436

Stage-

Stage-Plays in *Siam*, (473) — In *China*, (514)
Stars visible near the *Antarctick* Pole, 807
Statue of *Venus*, 363 — Of *Charles* the Great, 539—541 — At *Rome*, 547 — Very fine ones, 617 — Of our Blessed Lady, 632 — Of *Erasmus*, 640 — Of *Esculapius*, 665 — Of the Q. of *Sweden*'s Palace, 674 — Of the Duke of *Alva* in *Antwerp*, 700 — Of *Erasmus*, 704
Stone with an odd Inscription, 43 — Tables, 426 — Chains, 444 — Found in the Gall of a Hog good against all Poisons, 143 — Quarries near *Maestricht*, 540 — Called the Shining one, 564 — Dead Stone, 565
Story of *Haly*'s Horse, 71 — Two pleasant Ones, 89 — Another, 119 — Of St. *Thomas*, 135 — Of *Sammona Codom*, God of the *Siamese*, and of *Theverat*, (485) — Of a Lady, 550 — Of Pope *Joan*, 619
Story of *John* of *Leiden*, 341 — Of a Dolphin, 668 — Of St. *Mark*'s Ring, 671 — Of *Est*, *Est*, *Est*, 684—Of some *Jacobine* Fryers, 697 — Of a rich and generous Merchant, 700 — Of a Robber, 738
Story of the Holy Face, 769 — Of wild Dogs, 818
Strange Tree, 163 — Adventure of a *Dutch* Man, 176 — Of four Christians, *Ibid.* — Strange Feast at *Malde* in the *East-Indies*, 380
Streights of *Megelan*, 145
Struys, a Journal of his Travels, 247
Stuffs of Dogs Hair, 150
Sturgeons, 230 — Sugar the best, 355
Sugar Canes in *Siam*, (466)
Sulphureous Sources, 67
Sun worshipp'd, 117 — Dials, (516)
Suratte, the chief Factory of the *English*; its Gates, Houses, Castle, Port, Inhabitants, &c. 120, 121
Sweden described, with the Manners, Customs, &c. of the People, 780
Swiss Cantons described, 585
Sword-fish how taken, 573—711

T

Talopins, their Original, &c. (482) — Their Rites, Customs, &c. 483 — Their Morals, &c. (484)
Taprobane of the Ancients, 134
Tarantula, Two sorts, 695
Tartar Prince visits the D. of *Holstein*'s Ambassador, 47—55
Tartarian Ladies, their Curiosities, 50 — Huts, with their Manner of moving from Place to Place, 62 — Feast, 108
Tartars, a Cavalcade of them, 6 — Of *Casan*, called *Ceremisses*, their Manner of Living, Sacrifices, &c. 41 — Conquered by the *Muscovites*; they rebel, overcome them, and make themselves Masters of *Musco*, 42 — But are expelled from thence by the *Muscovites*, *Ib.*
Tartars of *Nagaia*, their Fish, Fowl, Fruits, Stature, Cloathing, Food, Religion, Manners, Customs, &c. 46, 47 — Great Hawkers, 48
Tartars of *Dageshan*, their Habits, Arms, Government, &c. 107
Tartars Circassian, their Capital City, Government, Language, Habit, Women, Religion, Sacrifices, Burials, &c. 110 — Their Country, Customs, &c. described, 254,255,256 — *Hordes*, their Way of Living, Trades, Religion, 318 — Their Customs, &c. described by *Le Comte*, (487)
Tavernier (*John Baptista*) his Travels thro' *Turkey* into *Persia*, and the *East-Indies*, 301 — From *Smyrna* to *Ispahan* through *Natolia*, 306 — Through the Southern Parts of *Turkey* and the Deserts, 308 — Third Voyage through *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, 310 — Fourth Voyage into *Asia*, from *Paris* to *Ormus*, 311 — Fifth Voy. from *Paris* to *Ispahan*, 315 — Sixth Voyage to *Ispahan* through lesser Roads, *Ibid.* — *Persia* described by him, 327 to 348
Tea, and Preparing it in *Siam*, (471) — Several sorts of it in *China*, (509)
Tenguese, their Habitations, Religion, Manners, &c. 232
Terry. See Palm-Wine, 140
Texeira's Description of *Persia*, 120
Theberick of the *Persians*, 63
Thalisches in *Persia*, their Habits, &c. 102
Theatin Fryars, 321
Theers, People without any Religion, 125
Thevenot (Monsieur) his Travels into the *Levant*, 394 — An Account of the Author and his Travels, 395 — Comes to *Messina*, *Sicily*, *Saracuse*, *Malta*, and so to *Constantinople*, 395, 396, 397 — Buildings, &c. at *Constantinople* described, 398 — *Seraglio* of the Grand Seignior described, *Ib.* — Account of the Shape, Strength, Cloathing, Customs and Manners of the *Turks*, 404 — Of the Learning and Religion of the *Turks*, 405 — Government of the *Turks*, 409 — Forces of the Grand Seignior, 411 — *Christians* and *Jews* subject to the Grand Seignior, 412 — Voyage from *Constantinople* to *Alexandria*, and *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*, 314 — Travels into *Egypt*, with his Observations there, 425 — From *Cairo* into the Deserts of *Arabia*, and to the *Red-Sea*, 432 — To *Jerusalem* and other Parts of *Judea*, 435 — Travels from *Alexandria* in *Egypt* to *Legborn*, &c. 447
Thieves very crafty, 307
Things most remarkable at *Ephesus*, 315
Thousand Doors in one House, 71
Thracian Bosphorus, described, 317
Tilling the Ground how done in *Bolonia*, 563
Tin in *Asia*, 376 — In *Siam*, (467)
Tobacco how managed, 819
Tomb of *Schich Sefi*'s Father, 67 — Of *Cheda-bende*, 68 — Of the Son of *Hossein*, 69 — Of *Aly*, 309 — Of *Fatima*, 326 — Of *Morach-Bache*, 353 — Of the Kings of *Boutan*, 387 — Of St. *Polycarp*, 415 — Of *Baldwin*'s Children, 437 — Of *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, Ib. — Of the *Maccabees*, 439 — Of *Jonah*, 442 — Of *Elisha*, *Abdias* and St. *John Baptist*, 443 — St. *George*, 444 — Of *Ovid*, 503 — Of the Electors of *Saxony*, 536
Tomb of Prince *William* of *Nassau*, and *Van Trump*, 549 — Of St. *Ambrose*, 604 — Of Saints at *Rome*, 615 — Of St. *Cecilia*, 617 — Of Cardinal *Adams*, Ib. — Of *Cestius*, 618 — Of *Augustus*, 627 — Of *Sannazarus*, 630 — Of *Virgil*, Ibid. — Of *Agrippina*, 630 — Of *Antenor*, 638 — Of St. *Antonius*, Ib. — Of *Drusus Germanicus*, 644 — Of *Antenor*, 652
Tomb of *Livius*, 653 — Of *Michael Angelo*, 687 — Of St. *Austin*, 692 — Of *Cornelius de Wit* and *Cortenaer*, 704 — Of *William* of *Nassau*, Ib. — Of *Van Trump* and *Van Heene*, Ib. — Of *Opdam*, 705 — Of *De Ruyter*, 708 — Of *Van Gaunt*, 709 — Of the Family of *Arscot*, 715 — Of Sir *John Mandevil*, 716 — Of Count *Mansfelt*, 717 — Of *Des Cartes*, 725 — Of the D. of *Momorancy*, 728 — Of St. *James*, 737
Torquoises. See Precious Stones.
Tortoises, 62—153 — How taken, 570 — Land Tortoises, 818 — of Three sorts, 875
Town hewn out of a Rock, 302
Trade of the *Malabars*, 128 — In *Cloues* Spice, &c. at the *Moluque* Islands, 145 — To *Archangel*; Ships arrive there in *July*, and return in *September*, 223 — Of *Aleppo*, 309 — of *Balsora*, 313 — of the *Circassian Tartars*, 318 — of the *Georgians*, 322 — of Corn, 325 — of the *Persians*, with their several Arts and Artisans, 337, 338 — of *Surat*, 350 — For Horses at *Caboul*, 355 — Trading at the Diamond Mines, 374 — of the *Chions*, 417 — of *Alexandria* and *Rossetto*, 420, 421 — of the *Siamese*, (476)
Tragical Account of a Clock-Maker, 75, 76
Travels thro' *Portugal*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Germany*, *Prussia*, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *United Provinces*, by an *English* Gentleman, 763
Travelling in *Muscovy*, 179 — The Way and Charges of it in the Holy Land, 438 — In *Turkey*, 511
Trees of several sorts in *Ceylon*, 456 — In *Siam*, (466)
Triumphal Arch of *Ancona*, 660 — of *Titus* and *Constantine*, 682 — At *Paris*, 726
Tumblers in *Siam*, (473)
Tun, the great one at *Heidelberg*, 527—554—645
Tunquinese, their Customs, Manners, Religion, &c. 390, 391, to 394
Turcomans, People that live in Tents, 307
Turf, how made in *Holland*, 550
Turks, their Church-yards, 302 — *Carnaval*, 423 — Their good Qualities, Justice, &c. 512
Turkish Ambassador's Entrance into *Musco*, 6 — Audience there, 7 — Camp, a famed Adventure there, 262
Turnaments in *Germany*, 536
Tzetland, an Island in the *Caspian* Sea, 51
Tygers in *Ceylon*, 458
A *Typhon* described, (486)

V

VAlley of *Eshcol*, 439 — Of Giants, 441
Varnishes in *China* (449)
Venesars, a People in *India*, 130
Venice Soap how made, 561
Venomous Herb, 62
Verdegreece how made, 590
Via Appia, 628—663 — *Consularis*, 664
Villages about *Ispahan*, with the Manufacture of the Inhabitants, 82
Virgins Well, 440
Virgula Divina used in Mining, 536
Vitriol, natural in a Mine, 514, 515. How made, 536
Uladislaus made Gr. Duke of *Musco*, 28
Unicorns Horns, 691
Voyage. See Journey, 769

W

WAter turn'd into Stone, 303 — Congealed, 304 — Spouts from the Sea, 347 — That fixes Colours, 352 — of *Ganges* sacred, 357 — of *Bourbon*, 728
Wax how whiten'd, 590
Wedding at *Nurenburg*, 647
Weights of *Grand Cairo*, 431 — In *Ceylon*, 479 — of *Geneva*, 696
Weights. See Measures, (476)
West Winds reign from the *Azores* to *England*, 163
Wheat ripe in Sixty Days, 302
Wild Hogs how caught, 459 — Men or *Vaddahs*, 468
Wild Fowl in the *Alps*, 650
Wild Asses Flesh eaten by the *Persians*, 76
Willoughby (Sir *Francis*) his Voyage thro' *Spain*, 592
Wind that kills Persons, 355
Wine, a sort call'd *Thuack*, 145 — At *Formosa*, 149
Wogultzoi, a sort of Pagans, subject to the *Czar* of *Muscovy*, 230 — Their Religion, Marriages, Burials, Way of Living, &c. 230

Wolf and Bear, remarkable Story, 12
Woman revived from the Dead, 643
Women deſtroy their Children till Thirty Five Years of Age, 150
Women Prieſts, 150
Women marry at 8 or 9 Years of Age, 383 — Rule their Husbands, 419
Women, why they burn themſelves with their dead Husbands, 123 — The Cuſtom and Manner of it, 380 — Widows that have Children are not to do it; Ceremonies thereat, 380 — Sold for Whoredom (476) — Their odd Dreſſes in *Germany*, 644 — At *Nuremburg*, 647 — At *Augsburgh*, 648 — At *Ancona*, 660
Wood that's Incombuſtible, 146
Writing Paper, Ink, &c. in *Perſia*, 89

X

Y

YGourt, or Butter-milk, how prepared and drunk, 445

Z

ZAporogian Coſſacks diſcover the Country beyond *Oby*; how they hunt the Sables, 253
Zerombet, a Fruit, 142
Zinganes, Pirates in the *Eaſt-Indies*, 347
Zurick Sea, 556
Zuski made Great Duke of *Muſco*, 27 — Dies, and is buried in the High-way, 28
Zuski, a Counterfeit, ſets up for Czar of *Muſcovy*; his Cheats; burns his Wife, and retires into *Poland*; craves Protection of the *Coſſacks*; turns *Turk* at *Conſtantinople*, Papiſt at *Rome*, and *Lutheran* at *Leipſick*, 28 — Is ſeized at *Newſtadt* in *Holſtein*, brought to *Muſco*, tortured and executed, 28, 29, 30

FINIS.